

**2019
CFA[®] PROGRAM
CURRICULUM
LEVEL I
VOLUMES 1-6**



© 2018, 2017, 2016, 2015, 2014, 2013, 2012, 2011, 2010, 2009, 2008, 2007, 2006 by CFA Institute. All rights reserved.

This copyright covers material written expressly for this volume by the editor/s as well as the compilation itself. It does not cover the individual selections herein that first appeared elsewhere. Permission to reprint these has been obtained by CFA Institute for this edition only. Further reproductions by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying and recording, or by any information storage or retrieval systems, must be arranged with the individual copyright holders noted.

CFA®, Chartered Financial Analyst®, AIMR-PPS®, and GIPS® are just a few of the trademarks owned by CFA Institute. To view a list of CFA Institute trademarks and the Guide for Use of CFA Institute Marks, please visit our website at www.cfainstitute.org.

This publication is designed to provide accurate and authoritative information in regard to the subject matter covered. It is sold with the understanding that the publisher is not engaged in rendering legal, accounting, or other professional service. If legal advice or other expert assistance is required, the services of a competent professional should be sought.

All trademarks, service marks, registered trademarks, and registered service marks are the property of their respective owners and are used herein for identification purposes only.

ISBN 978-1-946442-07-9 (paper)

ISBN 978-1-946442-31-4 (ebk)

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

Please visit our website at
www.WileyGlobalFinance.com.

WILEY



CFA Institute[®]
CFA Program

ETHICAL AND PROFESSIONAL STANDARDS AND QUANTITATIVE METHODS

CFA[®] Program Curriculum
2019 • LEVEL I • VOLUME 1

WILEY

CONTENTS

How to Use the CFA Program Curriculum		ix
Curriculum Development Process		ix
Organization of the Curriculum		x
Features of the Curriculum		x
Designing Your Personal Study Program		xi
Feedback		xiii
Ethical and Professional Standards		
Study Session 1	Ethical and Professional Standards	3
Reading 1	Ethics and Trust in the Investment Profession	5
	Introduction	5
	Ethics	6
	Ethics and Professionalism	9
	Challenges to Ethical Conduct	11
	The Importance of Ethical Conduct in the Investment Industry	15
	Ethical vs. Legal Standards	17
	Ethical Decision-Making Frameworks	20
	Applying the Framework	22
	Conclusion	27
	<i>Summary</i>	28
	<i>Practice Problems</i>	29
	<i>Solutions</i>	30
Reading 2	Code of Ethics and Standards of Professional Conduct	33
	Preface	33
	Evolution of the CFA Institute Code of Ethics and Standards of Professional Conduct	34
	<i>Standards of Practice Handbook</i>	34
	Summary of Changes in the Eleventh Edition	35
	CFA Institute Professional Conduct Program	37
	Adoption of the Code and Standards	38
	Acknowledgments	38
	Ethics and the Investment Industry	39
	Why Ethics Matters	39
	CFA Institute Code of Ethics and Standards of Professional Conduct	43
	Preamble	43
	The Code of Ethics	44
	Standards of Professional Conduct	44
Reading 3	Guidance for Standards I–VII	49
	Standard I: Professionalism	49
	Standard I(A) Knowledge of the Law	49
	Guidance	49

Recommended Procedures for Compliance	54
Application of the Standard	55
Standard I(B) Independence and Objectivity	58
Guidance	58
Recommended Procedures for Compliance	63
Application of the Standard	64
Standard I(C) Misrepresentation	71
Guidance	71
Recommended Procedures for Compliance	74
Application of the Standard	76
Standard I(D) Misconduct	81
Guidance	81
Recommended Procedures for Compliance	82
Application of the Standard	82
Standard II: Integrity of Capital Markets	84
Standard II(A) Material Nonpublic Information	84
Guidance	84
Recommended Procedures for Compliance	88
Application of the Standard	91
Standard II(B) Market Manipulation	96
Guidance	96
Application of the Standard	97
Standard III: Duties to Clients	101
Standard III(A) Loyalty, Prudence, and Care	101
Guidance	101
Recommended Procedures for Compliance	105
Application of the Standard	106
Standard III(B) Fair Dealing	110
Guidance	110
Recommended Procedures for Compliance	112
Application of the Standard	114
Standard III(C) Suitability	118
Guidance	118
Recommended Procedures for Compliance	121
Application of the Standard	122
Standard III(D) Performance Presentation	125
Guidance	125
Recommended Procedures for Compliance	126
Application of the Standard	126
Standard III(E) Preservation of Confidentiality	129
Guidance	129
Recommended Procedures for Compliance	131
Application of the Standard	131
Standard IV: Duties to Employers	133
Standard IV(A) Loyalty	133
Guidance	133
Recommended Procedures for Compliance	137
Application of the Standard	137
Standard IV(B) Additional Compensation Arrangements	144

Guidance	144
Recommended Procedures for Compliance	144
Application of the Standard	144
Standard IV(C) Responsibilities of Supervisors	146
Guidance	146
Recommended Procedures for Compliance	148
Application of the Standard	150
Standard V: Investment Analysis, Recommendations, and Actions	154
Standard V(A) Diligence and Reasonable Basis	154
Guidance	154
Recommended Procedures for Compliance	158
Application of the Standard	158
Standard V(B) Communication with Clients and Prospective Clients	165
Guidance	166
Recommended Procedures for Compliance	168
Application of the Standard	169
Standard V(C) Record Retention	174
Guidance	174
Recommended Procedures for Compliance	175
Application of the Standard	176
Standard VI: Conflicts of Interest	177
Standard VI(A) Disclosure of Conflicts	177
Guidance	177
Recommended Procedures for Compliance	180
Application of the Standard	180
Standard VI(B) Priority of Transactions	185
Guidance	185
Recommended Procedures for Compliance	186
Application of the Standard	188
Standard VI(C) Referral Fees	190
Guidance	190
Recommended Procedures for Compliance	190
Application of the Standard	190
Standard VII: Responsibilities as a CFA Institute Member or CFA Candidate	193
Standard VII(A) Conduct as Participants in CFA Institute Programs	193
Guidance	193
Application of the Standard	195
Standard VII(B) Reference to CFA Institute, the CFA Designation, and the CFA Program	198
Guidance	198
Recommended Procedures for Compliance	200
Application of the Standard	201
<i>Practice Problems</i>	203
<i>Solutions</i>	213
Reading 4	
Introduction to the Global Investment Performance Standards (GIPS)	221
Why Were the GIPS Standards Created?	221
Who Can Claim Compliance?	222
Who Benefits from Compliance?	222

Composites	223
Verification	223
The Structure of the GIPS Standards	224
Reading 5	
Global Investment Performance Standards (GIPS)	225
☐ Preface	225
☐ History	226
Introduction	227
Preamble—Why Is a Global Investment Performance Standard Needed?	227
Objectives	227
Overview	228
Historical Performance Record	228
Compliance	229
Effective Date	229
Implementing a Global Standard	229
☐ Sponsors	230
Provisions of the Global Investment Performance Standards	231
Fundamentals of Compliance	233
☐ Input Data	235
☐ Calculation Methodology	235
☐ Composite Construction	236
☐ Disclosure	237
☐ Presentation and Reporting	240
☐ Real Estate	242
☐ Private Equity	247
☐ Wrap Fee/Separately Managed Account (SMA) Portfolios	250
☐ GIPS Valuation Principles	252
☐ Fair Value Definition	252
☐ Valuation Requirements	253
☐ Valuation Recommendations	254
☐ GIPS Advertising Guidelines	256
☐ Purpose of the GIPS Advertising Guidelines	256
☐ Requirements of the GIPS Advertising Guidelines	256
☐ Verification	258
☐ Scope and Purpose of Verification	258
☐ Required Verification Procedures	259
☐ Performance Examinations	262
GIPS Glossary	262
<i>Appendix A: Sample Compliant Presentations</i>	272
☐ <i>Appendix B: Sample Advertisements</i>	289
☐ <i>Appendix C: Sample List of Composite Descriptions</i>	292
<i>Practice Problems</i>	296
<i>Solutions</i>	297

Quantitative Methods

Study Session 2	Quantitative Methods (1)	301
Reading 6	The Time Value of Money	303
	Introduction	303
	Interest Rates: Interpretation	304
	The Future Value of a Single Cash Flow	306
	The Frequency of Compounding	310
	Continuous Compounding	312
	Stated and Effective Rates	313
	The Future Value of a Series of Cash Flows	314
	Equal Cash Flows—Ordinary Annuity	315
	Unequal Cash Flows	316
	The Present Value of a Single Cash Flow	317
	Finding the Present Value of a Single Cash Flow	317
	The Frequency of Compounding	319
	The Present Value of a Series of Cash Flows	320
	The Present Value of a Series of Equal Cash Flows	320
	The Present Value of an Infinite Series of Equal Cash Flows— Perpetuity	325
	Present Values Indexed at Times Other than $t = 0$	326
	The Present Value of a Series of Unequal Cash Flows	328
	Solving for Rates, Number of Periods, or Size of Annuity Payments	328
	Solving for Interest Rates and Growth Rates	329
	Solving for the Number of Periods	331
	Solving for the Size of Annuity Payments	332
	Review of Present and Future Value Equivalence	336
	The Cash Flow Additivity Principle	338
	<i>Summary</i>	339
	<i>Practice Problems</i>	340
	<i>Solutions</i>	345
Reading 7	Discounted Cash Flow Applications	359
	Introduction	359
	Net Present Value and Internal Rate of Return	360
	Net Present Value and the Net Present Value Rule	360
	The Internal Rate of Return and the Internal Rate of Return Rule	362
	Problems with the IRR Rule	365
	Portfolio Return Measurement	367
	Money-Weighted Rate of Return	368
	Time-Weighted Rate of Return	369
	Money Market Yields	374
	<i>Summary</i>	379
	<i>Practice Problems</i>	381
	<i>Solutions</i>	384

Reading 8	Statistical Concepts and Market Returns	387
	Introduction	388
	Some Fundamental Concepts	388
	The Nature of Statistics	389
	Populations and Samples	389
	Measurement Scales	390
	Summarizing Data Using Frequency Distributions	391
	The Graphic Presentation of Data	399
	The Histogram	400
	The Frequency Polygon and the Cumulative Frequency Distribution	401
	Measures of Central Tendency	404
	The Arithmetic Mean	404
	The Median	408
	The Mode	411
	Other Concepts of Mean	411
	Other Measures of Location: Quantiles	421
	Quartiles, Quintiles, Deciles, and Percentiles	421
	Quantiles in Investment Practice	425
	Measures of Dispersion	427
	The Range	428
	The Mean Absolute Deviation	428
	Population Variance and Population Standard Deviation	430
	Sample Variance and Sample Standard Deviation	433
	Semivariance, Semideviation, and Related Concepts	437
	Chebyshev's Inequality	438
	Coefficient of Variation	440
	The Sharpe Ratio	442
	Symmetry and Skewness in Return Distributions	445
	Kurtosis in Return Distributions	451
	Using Geometric and Arithmetic Means	455
	<i>Summary</i>	457
	<i>Practice Problems</i>	460
	<i>Solutions</i>	467
Reading 9	Probability Concepts	471
	Introduction	472
	Probability, Expected Value, and Variance	472
	Portfolio Expected Return and Variance of Return	494
	Topics in Probability	502
	Bayes' Formula	502
	Principles of Counting	506
	<i>Summary</i>	510
	<i>Practice Problems</i>	513
	<i>Solutions</i>	517

Study Session 3	Quantitative Methods (2)	521
Reading 10	Common Probability Distributions	523
	Introduction to Common Probability Distributions	524
	Discrete Random Variables	525
	The Discrete Uniform Distribution	526
	The Binomial Distribution	528
	Continuous Random Variables	537
	Continuous Uniform Distribution	538
	The Normal Distribution	541
	Applications of the Normal Distribution	547
	The Lognormal Distribution	549
	Monte Carlo Simulation	555
	<i>Summary</i>	561
	<i>Practice Problems</i>	564
	<i>Solutions</i>	571
Reading 11	Sampling and Estimation	579
	Introduction	580
	Sampling	580
	Simple Random Sampling	580
	Stratified Random Sampling	582
	Time-Series and Cross-Sectional Data	583
	Distribution of the Sample Mean	586
	The Central Limit Theorem	586
	Point and Interval Estimates of the Population Mean	589
	Point Estimators	589
	Confidence Intervals for the Population Mean	591
	Selection of Sample Size	597
	More on Sampling	599
	Data-Mining Bias	599
	Sample Selection Bias	602
	Look-Ahead Bias	603
	Time-Period Bias	603
	<i>Summary</i>	605
	<i>Practice Problems</i>	608
	<i>Solutions</i>	613
Reading 12	Hypothesis Testing	619
	Introduction	620
	Hypothesis Testing	621
	Hypothesis Tests Concerning the Mean	630
	Tests Concerning a Single Mean	630
	Tests Concerning Differences between Means	638
	Tests Concerning Mean Differences	642
	Hypothesis Tests Concerning Variance	646
	Tests Concerning a Single Variance	646
	Tests Concerning the Equality (Inequality) of Two Variances	648

	Other Issues: Nonparametric Inference	652
	Tests Concerning Correlation: The Spearman Rank Correlation Coefficient	653
	Nonparametric Inference: Summary	656
	<i>Summary</i>	656
	<i>Practice Problems</i>	660
	<i>Solutions</i>	668
Reading 13	Technical Analysis	675
	Introduction	675
	Technical Analysis: Definition and Scope	676
	Principles and Assumptions	676
	Technical and Fundamental Analysis	678
	Technical Analysis Tools	680
	Charts	680
	Trend	689
	Chart Patterns	692
	Technical Indicators	703
	Cycles	720
	Elliott Wave Theory	721
	Intermarket Analysis	724
	<i>Summary</i>	726
	<i>Practice Problems</i>	729
	<i>Solutions</i>	734
	<i>Appendices</i>	737
	Glossary	G-1
	Index	I-1

How to Use the CFA Program Curriculum

Congratulations on your decision to enter the Chartered Financial Analyst (CFA®) Program. This exciting and rewarding program of study reflects your desire to become a serious investment professional. You are embarking on a program noted for its high ethical standards and the breadth of knowledge, skills, and abilities (competencies) it develops. Your commitment to the CFA Program should be educationally and professionally rewarding.

The credential you seek is respected around the world as a mark of accomplishment and dedication. Each level of the program represents a distinct achievement in professional development. Successful completion of the program is rewarded with membership in a prestigious global community of investment professionals. CFA charterholders are dedicated to life-long learning and maintaining currency with the ever-changing dynamics of a challenging profession. The CFA Program represents the first step toward a career-long commitment to professional education.

The CFA examination measures your mastery of the core knowledge and skills required to succeed as an investment professional. These core knowledge and skills are the basis for the Candidate Body of Knowledge (CBOK™). The CBOK consists of four components:

- A broad outline that lists the major topic areas covered in the CFA Program (www.cfainstitute.org/cbok);
- Topic area weights that indicate the relative exam weightings of the top-level topic areas (www.cfainstitute.org/level_1);
- Learning outcome statements (LOS) that advise candidates about the specific knowledge, skills, and abilities they should acquire from readings covering a topic area (LOS are provided in candidate study sessions and at the beginning of each reading); and
- The CFA Program curriculum that candidates receive upon exam registration.

Therefore, the key to your success on the CFA examinations is studying and understanding the CBOK. The following sections provide background on the CBOK, the organization of the curriculum, and tips for developing an effective study program.

CURRICULUM DEVELOPMENT PROCESS

The CFA Program is grounded in the practice of the investment profession. Beginning with the Global Body of Investment Knowledge (GBIK), CFA Institute performs a continuous practice analysis with investment professionals around the world to determine the competencies that are relevant to the profession. Regional expert panels and targeted surveys are conducted annually to verify and reinforce the continuous feedback from the GBIK collaborative website. The practice analysis process ultimately defines the CBOK. The CBOK reflects the competencies that are generally accepted and applied by investment professionals. These competencies are used in practice in a generalist context and are expected to be demonstrated by a recently qualified CFA charterholder.

The Education Advisory Committee, consisting of practicing charterholders, in conjunction with CFA Institute staff, designs the CFA Program curriculum in order to deliver the CBOK to candidates. The examinations, also written by charterholders, are designed to allow you to demonstrate your mastery of the CBOK as set forth in the CFA Program curriculum. As you structure your personal study program, you should emphasize mastery of the CBOK and the practical application of that knowledge. For more information on the practice analysis, CBOK, and development of the CFA Program curriculum, please visit www.cfainstitute.org.

ORGANIZATION OF THE CURRICULUM

The Level I CFA Program curriculum is organized into 10 topic areas. Each topic area begins with a brief statement of the material and the depth of knowledge expected.

Each topic area is then divided into one or more study sessions. These study sessions—19 sessions in the Level I curriculum—should form the basic structure of your reading and preparation.

Each study session includes a statement of its structure and objective and is further divided into specific reading assignments. An outline illustrating the organization of these 19 study sessions can be found at the front of each volume of the curriculum.

These readings are drawn from content commissioned by CFA Institute, textbook chapters, professional journal articles, research analyst reports, and cases. Each reading includes LOS and the core material to be studied, often a combination of text, exhibits, and in-text examples and questions. A reading typically ends with practice problems followed by solutions to these problems to help you understand and master the topic areas. The LOS indicate what you should be able to accomplish after studying the material. The LOS, the core material, and the practice problems are dependent on each other, with the core material and practice problems providing context for understanding the scope of the LOS and enabling you to apply a principle or concept in a variety of scenarios.

The entire readings, including the practice problems at the end of the readings, are the basis for all examination questions and are selected or developed specifically to teach the knowledge and skills reflected in the CBOK.

You should use the LOS to guide and focus your study because each examination question is based on one or more LOS and the core material and practice problems associated with the LOS. As a candidate, you are responsible for the entirety of the required material in a study session.

We encourage you to review the information about the LOS on our website (www.cfainstitute.org/programs/cfaprogram/courseofstudy/Pages/study_sessions.aspx), including the descriptions of LOS “command words” (www.cfainstitute.org/programs/Documents/cfa_and_cipm_los_command_words.pdf).

FEATURES OF THE CURRICULUM

Required vs. Optional Segments You should read all of an assigned reading. In some cases, though, we have reprinted an entire chapter or article and marked certain parts of the reading as “optional.” The CFA examination is based only on the required segments, and the optional segments are included only when it is determined that they might help you to better understand the required segments (by seeing the required material in its full context). When an optional segment begins, you will see an icon and a dashed

How to Use the CFA Program Curriculum

vertical bar in the outside margin that will continue until the optional segment ends, accompanied by another icon. *Unless the material is specifically marked as optional, you should assume it is required.* You should rely on the required segments and the reading-specific LOS in preparing for the examination.


END OPTIONAL
SEGMENT

Practice Problems/Solutions *All practice problems at the end of the readings as well as their solutions are part of the curriculum and are required material for the exam.* In addition to the in-text examples and questions, these practice problems should help demonstrate practical applications and reinforce your understanding of the concepts presented. Many of these practice problems are adapted from past CFA examinations and/or may serve as a basis for exam questions.

Glossary and Index For your convenience, we have printed a comprehensive glossary in each volume. Throughout the curriculum, a **bolded** word in a reading denotes a term defined in the glossary. The curriculum eBook is searchable, but we also publish an index that can be found on the CFA Institute website with the Level I study sessions.

LOS Self-Check We have inserted checkboxes next to each LOS that you can use to track your progress in mastering the concepts in each reading.

Source Material The authorship, publisher, and copyright owners are given for each reading for your reference. We recommend that you use the CFA Institute curriculum rather than the original source materials because the curriculum may include only selected pages from outside readings, updated sections within the readings, and problems and solutions tailored to the CFA Program. Note that some readings may contain a web address or URL. The referenced sites were live at the time the reading was written but may have been deactivated since then.



Some readings in the curriculum cite articles published in the *Financial Analysts Journal*[®], which is the flagship publication of CFA Institute. Since its launch in 1945, the *Financial Analysts Journal* has established itself as the leading practitioner-oriented journal in the investment management community. Over the years, it has advanced the knowledge and understanding of the practice of investment management through the publication of peer-reviewed practitioner-relevant research from leading academics and practitioners. It has also featured thought-provoking opinion pieces that advance the common level of discourse within the investment management profession. Some of the most influential research in the area of investment management has appeared in the pages of the *Financial Analysts Journal*, and 12 Nobel laureates have contributed more than 40 articles.

Candidates are not responsible for familiarity with *Financial Analysts Journal* articles that are cited in the curriculum. But, as your time and studies allow, we strongly encourage you to begin supplementing your understanding of key investment management issues by reading this practice-oriented publication. Candidates have full online access to the *Financial Analysts Journal* and associated resources. All you need is to log in on www.cfapubs.org using your candidate credentials.

DESIGNING YOUR PERSONAL STUDY PROGRAM

Create a Schedule An orderly, systematic approach to exam preparation is critical. You should dedicate a consistent block of time every week to reading and studying. Complete all reading assignments and the associated problems and solutions in each

study session. Review the LOS both before and after you study each reading to ensure that you have mastered the applicable content and can demonstrate the knowledge and skills described by the LOS and the assigned reading. Use the LOS self-check to track your progress and highlight areas of weakness for later review.

As you prepare for your exam, we will e-mail you important exam updates, testing policies, and study tips. Be sure to read these carefully. Curriculum errata are periodically updated and posted on the study session page at www.cfainstitute.org.

Successful candidates report an average of more than 300 hours preparing for each exam. Your preparation time will vary based on your prior education and experience, and you will probably spend more time on some study sessions than on others. As the Level I curriculum includes 19 study sessions, a good plan is to devote 15–20 hours per week for 19 weeks to studying the material and use the final four to six weeks before the exam to review what you have learned and practice with practice questions and mock exams. This recommendation, however, may underestimate the hours needed for appropriate examination preparation depending on your individual circumstances, relevant experience, and academic background. You will undoubtedly adjust your study time to conform to your own strengths and weaknesses and to your educational and professional background.

You should allow ample time for both in-depth study of all topic areas and additional concentration on those topic areas for which you feel the least prepared.

An interactive study planner is provided along with your practice questions and mock exams to help you plan your study time. The interactive study planner calculates your study progress and pace based on the time remaining until examination.

CFA Institute Practice Questions The CFA Institute practice question sets are intended to assess your mastery of individual topic areas as you progress through your studies. After each practice question set, you will receive immediate feedback noting the correct responses and indicating the relevant assigned reading so you can identify areas of weakness for further study. For more information on the practice question sets, please visit www.cfainstitute.org.

CFA Institute Mock Exams The three-hour mock exams simulate the morning and afternoon sessions of the actual CFA examination, and are intended to be taken after you complete your study of the full curriculum so you can test your understanding of the curriculum and your readiness for the exam. You will receive feedback at the end of the mock exam, noting the correct responses and indicating the relevant assigned readings so you can assess areas of weakness for further study during your review period. We recommend that you take mock exams during the final stages of your preparation for the actual CFA examination. For more information on the mock examinations, please visit www.cfainstitute.org.

Preparatory Providers After you enroll in the CFA Program, you may receive numerous solicitations for preparatory courses and review materials. When considering a prep course, make sure the provider is in compliance with the CFA Institute Approved Prep Provider Program (www.cfainstitute.org/utility/examprep/Pages/index.aspx). Just remember, there are no shortcuts to success on the CFA examinations; reading and studying the CFA curriculum is the key to success on the examination. The CFA examinations reference only the CFA Institute assigned curriculum—no preparatory course or review course materials are consulted or referenced.

SUMMARY

Every question on the CFA examination is based on the content contained in the required readings and on one or more LOS. Frequently, an examination question is based on a specific example highlighted within a reading or on a specific practice problem and its solution. To make effective use of the CFA Program curriculum, please remember these key points:

- 1 All pages of the curriculum are required reading for the examination except for occasional sections marked as optional. You may read optional pages as background, but you will not be tested on them.
- 2 All questions, problems, and their solutions—found at the end of readings—are part of the curriculum and are required study material for the examination.
- 3 You should make appropriate use of the topic tests and mock examinations and other resources available at www.cfainstitute.org.
- 4 Use the interactive study planner to create a schedule and commit sufficient study time to cover the 18 study sessions, review the materials, and take topic tests and mock examinations.
- 5 Some of the concepts in the study sessions may be superseded by updated rulings and/or pronouncements issued after a reading was published. Candidates are expected to be familiar with the overall analytical framework contained in the assigned readings. Candidates are not responsible for changes that occur after the material was written.

FEEDBACK

At CFA Institute, we are committed to delivering a comprehensive and rigorous curriculum for the development of competent, ethically grounded investment professionals. We rely on candidate and member feedback as we work to incorporate content, design, and packaging improvements. You can be assured that we will continue to listen to your suggestions. Please send any comments or feedback to info@cfainstitute.org. Ongoing improvements in the curriculum will help you prepare for success on the upcoming examinations and for a lifetime of learning as a serious investment professional.

Ethical and Professional Standards

STUDY SESSION

Study Session 1

Ethical and Professional Standards

TOPIC LEVEL LEARNING OUTCOME

The candidate should be able to explain the need for high ethical standards in the investment industry and the ethical responsibilities required by the CFA Institute Code of Ethics and Standards of Professional Conduct and to demonstrate the application of the Code and Standards. The candidate should also be able to demonstrate an understanding of the Global Investment Performance Standards.

Trust in the investment profession is achieved only if those practicing within the industry adhere to the highest levels of ethical conduct and behavior. The CFA Institute Code of Ethics and Standards of Professional Conduct (Code and Standards) serve as the ethical foundation for the CFA Institute self-regulatory program.

The Standards of Practice Handbook provides practical application of the Code and Standards by explaining the purpose and scope of each standard, presenting recommended procedures for compliance, and providing examples of each standard in practice.

The Global Investment Performance Standards (GIPS®) establish global standards for performance reporting by investment managers. By providing a consistent set of standards and methodology, GIPS facilitate the fair and accurate comparison of managers around the world, while minimizing the potential for ambiguous or misleading performance reporting practices.

ETHICAL AND PROFESSIONAL STANDARDS STUDY SESSION

1

Ethical and Professional Standards

This study session introduces ethics, related challenges to ethical behavior, and the role played by ethics in the investment profession. A framework to support ethical decision-making is provided to help guide behavior. The CFA Institute Code of Ethics and Standards of Professional Conduct (Code and Standards) are examined, with attention given to each standard and its application. The session concludes with coverage of the Global Investment Performance Standards.

READING ASSIGNMENTS

Reading 1	Ethics and Trust in the Investment Profession by Bidhan L. Parmar, PhD, Dorothy C. Kelly, CFA, and David B. Stevens, CIMC, CFA
Reading 2	Code of Ethics and Standards of Professional Conduct <i>Standards of Practice Handbook</i> , Eleventh Edition
Reading 3	Guidance for Standards I–VII <i>Standards of Practice Handbook</i> , Eleventh Edition
Reading 4	Introduction to the Global Investment Performance Standards (GIPS)
Reading 5	Global Investment Performance Standards (GIPS)

READING

1

Ethics and Trust in the Investment Profession

by Bidhan L. Parmar, PhD, Dorothy C. Kelly, CFA, and David B. Stevens, CIMC, CFA

Bidhan L. Parmar, PhD, is at the University of Virginia (USA). Dorothy C. Kelly, CFA, is at McIntire School of Commerce, University of Virginia (USA). David B. Stevens, CIMC, CFA, is at Wells Fargo Private Bank (USA).

LEARNING OUTCOMES

<i>Mastery</i>	<i>The candidate should be able to:</i>
<input type="checkbox"/>	a. explain ethics;
<input type="checkbox"/>	b. describe the role of a code of ethics in defining a profession;
<input type="checkbox"/>	c. identify challenges to ethical behavior;
<input type="checkbox"/>	d. describe the need for high ethical standards in the investment industry;
<input type="checkbox"/>	e. distinguish between ethical and legal standards;
<input type="checkbox"/>	f. describe and apply a framework for ethical decision making.

INTRODUCTION

1

As a candidate in the CFA Program, you are both expected and required to meet high ethical standards. This reading introduces ideas and concepts that will help you understand the importance of ethical behavior in the investment industry. You will be introduced to various types of ethical issues within the investment profession and learn about the CFA Institute Code of Ethics. Subsequently, you will be introduced to a framework as a way to approach ethical decision making.

Imagine that you are employed in the research department of a large financial services firm. You and your colleagues spend your days researching, analyzing, and valuing the shares of publicly traded companies and sharing your investment recommendations with clients. You love your work and take great satisfaction in knowing that your recommendations can help the firm's investing clients make informed investment decisions that will help them meet their financial goals and improve their lives.

Several months after starting at the firm, you learn that an analyst at the firm has been terminated for writing and publishing research reports that misrepresented the fundamental risks of some companies to investors. You learn that the analyst wrote the reports with the goal of pleasing the management of the companies that were the subjects of the research reports. He hoped that these companies would hire your firm's investment banking division for its services and he would be rewarded with large bonuses for helping the firm increase its investment banking fees. Some clients bought shares based on the analyst's reports and suffered losses. They posted stories on the internet about their losses and the misleading nature of the reports. When the media investigated and published the story, the firm's reputation for investment research suffered. Investors began to question the firm's motives and the objectivity of its research recommendations. The firm's investment clients started to look elsewhere for investment advice, and company clients begin to transfer their business to firms with untarnished reputations. With business declining, management is forced to trim staff. Along with many other hard-working colleagues, you lose your job—through no fault of your own.

Imagine how you would feel in this situation. Most people would feel upset and resentful that their hard and honest work was derailed by someone else's unethical behavior. Yet, this type of scenario is not uncommon. Around the world, unsuspecting employees at such companies as SAC Capital, Stanford Financial Group, Everbright Securities, Enron, Satyam Computer Services, Arthur Andersen, and other large companies have experienced such career setbacks when someone else's actions destroyed trust in their companies and industries.

Businesses and financial markets thrive on trust—defined as a strong belief in the reliability of a person or institution. In a 2013 study on trust, investors indicated that to earn their trust, the top three attributes of an investment manager should be that it (1) has transparent and open business practices, (2) takes responsible actions to address an issue or crisis, and (3) has ethical business practices.¹ Although these attributes are valued by customers and clients in any industry, this reading will explore why they are of particular importance to the investment industry.

People may think that ethical behavior is simply about following laws, regulations, and other rules, but throughout our lives and careers we will encounter situations in which there is no definitive rule that specifies how to act, or the rules that exist may be unclear or even in conflict with each other. Responsible people, including investment professionals, must be willing and able to identify potential ethical issues and create solutions to them even in the absence of clearly stated rules.

2

ETHICS

Through our individual actions, each of us can affect the lives of others. Our decisions and behavior can harm or benefit a variety of **stakeholders**—individuals or groups of individuals who could be affected either directly or indirectly by a decision and thus have an interest, or stake, in the decision. Examples of stakeholders in decisions made by investment industry professionals include our colleagues, our clients, our employers, the communities in which we live and work, the investment profession, and other financial market participants. In some cases, our actions may benefit all of these stakeholder groups; in other cases, our actions may benefit only some stakeholder groups; and in still other cases, our actions may benefit some stakeholder groups and

¹ CFA Institute and Edelman, "Investor Trust Study" (2013): <http://www.cfapubs.org/doi/pdf/10.2469/ccb.v2013.n14.1>.

harm others. For example, recall the research analyst in the introduction who wrote misleading research reports with the aim of increasing the financial benefit to himself and his employer. In the very short term, his conduct seemed to directly benefit some stakeholders (certain clients, himself, and his employer) and to harm other stakeholders (clients who invested based on his reports). Over a longer time period, his conduct resulted in harm to himself and many other stakeholders—his employer, his employer’s clients, his colleagues, investors, and through loss of trust when the story was published, the larger financial market.

Ethics encompasses a set of moral principles and rules of conduct that provide guidance for our behavior. The word “ethics” comes from the Greek word “ethos,” meaning character, used to describe the guiding beliefs or ideals characterizing a society or societal group. Beliefs are assumptions or thoughts we hold to be true. A principle is defined as a belief or fundamental truth that serves as the foundation for a system of belief or behavior or a chain of reasoning. Our beliefs form our values—those things we deem to have worth or merit.

Moral principles or **ethical principles** are beliefs regarding what is good, acceptable, or obligatory behavior and what is bad, unacceptable, or forbidden behavior. Ethical principles may refer to beliefs regarding behavior that an individual expects of himself or herself, as well as shared beliefs regarding standards of behavior expected or required by a community or societal group.

Another definition of **ethics** is the study of moral principles, which can be described as the study of good and bad behavior or the study of making good choices as opposed to bad choices. The study of ethics examines the role of consequences and personal character in defining what is considered good, or ethical, conduct.

Ethical conduct is behavior that follows moral principles and balances self-interest with both the direct and the indirect consequences of the behavior on others. Ethical actions are those actions that are perceived as beneficial and conforming to the ethical expectations of society. An action may be considered beneficial if it improves the outcomes or consequences for stakeholders affected by the action. Telling the truth about the risks or costs associated with a recommended investment, for example, is an ethical action—that is, one that conforms to the ethical expectations of society in general and clients in particular. Telling the truth is also beneficial; telling the truth builds trust with customers and clients and enables them to make more informed decisions, which should lead to better outcomes for them and higher levels of client/customer satisfaction for you and your employer.

Widely acknowledged ethical principles include honesty, fairness or justice, diligence, and respect for the rights of others. Most societal groups share these fundamental ethical principles and build on them, establishing a shared set of rules regarding how members should behave in certain situations. The principles or rules may take different forms depending on the community establishing them.

Governments and related entities, for example, may establish laws and/or regulations to reflect widely shared beliefs about obligatory and forbidden conduct. Laws and regulations are rules of conduct specified by a governing body, such as a legislature or a regulator, identifying how individuals and entities under its jurisdiction should behave in certain situations. Most countries have laws and regulations governing the investment industry and the conduct of its participants. Differences in laws may reflect differences in beliefs and values.

In some countries, for example, the law requires that an investment adviser act in the best interests of his or her clients. Other countries require that investment professionals recommend investments that are suitable for their clients. Investment advisers and portfolio managers who are required by law to act in their clients’ best interests must always put their clients’ interests ahead of their own or their employers’ interests. An investment adviser who is required by law to act in a client’s best interest must understand the client’s financial objectives and risk tolerance, research

and investigate multiple investment opportunities, and recommend the investment or investment portfolio that is *most* suitable for the client in terms of meeting his or her long-term financial objectives. In addition, the investment adviser would be expected to monitor the client's financial situation and investments to ensure that the investments recommended remain the *best* overall option for meeting the client's long-term financial objectives. In countries with only a suitability requirement, it is legal for investment professionals to recommend a suitable investment to a client even if other, similar suitable investments with lower fees are available. These differences in laws reflect differences in beliefs and values.

Specific communities or societal groups in which we live and work sometimes codify their beliefs about obligatory and forbidden conduct in a written set of principles, often called a **code of ethics**. Universities, employers, and professional associations often adopt a code of ethics to communicate the organization's values and overall expectations regarding member behavior. The code of ethics serves as a general guide for how community members should act. Some communities will also expand on their codes of ethics and adopt explicit rules or standards that identify specific behaviors required of community members. These **standards of conduct** serve as benchmarks for the minimally acceptable behavior of community members and can help clarify the code of ethics. Members can choose behaviors that demonstrate even higher standards. By joining the community, members are agreeing to adhere to the community's code of ethics and standards of conduct. To promote their code of ethics and reduce the incidence of violations, communities frequently display their codes in prominent locations and in written materials. In addition, most communities require that members commit to their codes in writing on an annual or more frequent basis.

Violations of a community's established code of ethics and/or standards of conduct can harm the community in a variety of ways. Violations have the potential to damage the community's reputation among external stakeholders and the general public. Violations can also damage the community's reputation internally and lead to reduced trust among community members and can cause the organization to fracture or splinter from within. To protect the reputation of its membership and limit potential harm to innocent members, the community may take corrective actions to investigate possible violations, repair any damages, and attempt to discipline the violator or, in severe cases, revoke the violator's membership in the community.

CFA Institute is an example of a community with an established code of ethics and standards of conduct. Its members and candidates commit to adhere to shared beliefs about acceptable conduct for individuals participating in the investment industry. These beliefs are presented in the Code of Ethics and Standards of Professional Conduct (Code and Standards), which are included in the CFA Institute *Standards of Practice Handbook*. The Code of Ethics communicates the organization's principles, values, and expectations. For example, the Code states that members and candidates "place the integrity of the investment profession and the interests of clients above their own personal interests." The Standards of Professional Conduct outline minimally acceptable behaviors expected of all CFA Institute members and candidates. For example, one standard requires that "Members and Candidates must act for the benefit of their clients and place their clients' interests before their employer's or their own interests." Another standard requires that "Members and Candidates must make full and fair disclosure of all matters that could reasonably be expected to impair their independence and objectivity or interfere with respective duties to their clients, prospective clients, and employer. Members and Candidates must ensure that such disclosures are prominent, are delivered in plain language, and communicate the relevant information effectively."

CFA Institute members and candidates re-affirm their commitment to adhere to the Code and Standards each year. In addition, to protect the reputation of the community, members and candidates agree to submit a Professional Conduct Statement each year

disclosing conduct that may have violated the Code and Standards. To protect members and candidates, CFA Institute has an established disciplinary process. Members and candidates who violate the Code and Standards are subject to disciplinary action.

EXAMPLE 1**Ethics**

- 1 Which of the following statements is *most* accurate? Ethics can be described as:
 - A a commitment to upholding the law.
 - B an individual's personal opinion about right and wrong.
 - C a set of moral principles that provide guidance for our behavior.
- 2 Which of the following statements is *most* accurate? Standards of conduct:
 - A are a necessary component of any code of ethics.
 - B serve as a general guide regarding proper conduct by members of a group.
 - C serve as benchmarks for the minimally acceptable behavior required of members of a group.

Solution to 1:

C is correct. Ethics can be described as a set of moral principles that provide guidance for our behavior; these may be moral principles shared by a community or societal group.

Solution to 2:

C is correct. Standards of conduct serve as benchmarks for the minimally acceptable behavior required of members of a group. Some organizations will adopt only a code of ethics, which communicates the organization's values and overall expectations regarding member behavior. Others may adopt both a code of ethics and standards of conduct. Standards of conduct identify specific behavior required of community members and serve as benchmarks for the minimally acceptable behavior of community members.

ETHICS AND PROFESSIONALISM**3**

As you progress in your career, you may find that attitudes among your peers vary: Some of your peers may be happy to have a job, others may consider themselves fortunate to find a vocation, and some may consider themselves part of a profession. What are the differences? A job is very simply the work someone does to earn a living. A vocation is a job or occupation to which someone is particularly well suited and is very dedicated. Often, people will refer to a vocation as a calling: They work in service of a cause they consider worthy. A profession is the ultimate evolution of an occupation, resulting from the efforts of members practicing the occupation at a high level and creating a set of ethics and standards of conduct for the entire group. A profession has several characteristics that distinguish it from ordinary occupations. A profession is

- 1 based on specialized knowledge and skills.

- 2 based on service to others.
- 3 practiced by members who share and agree to adhere to a common code of ethics.

Professionals use their specialized knowledge and skills to serve their clients—with whom they have a special relationship and to whom they have a special duty. Clients differ from customers. A customer purchases goods or services in a single transaction or series of transactions and pays for each transaction or series of transactions. A client, in contrast, enters into an ongoing relationship with a professional, hiring the professional to use his or her special knowledge for the benefit of the client, usually for a fee. The relationship between client and professional is based on trust rather than transactions. In exchange for the agreed-on fee, the professional accepts the duty to place the client's interests first at all times.

In any given profession, the code of ethics communicates the shared principles and expected behaviors of its members. In addition to providing members with guidance for decision making, a code of ethics may generate confidence among not only members of the profession but also individuals who are not members of the profession, such as clients, prospective clients, and/or the general public. The code of ethics informs and provides some assurance to the public that the profession's members will use their specialized skills and knowledge in service of others.

Some codes will be enhanced and clarified by the adoption of standards of conduct or specific benchmarks of behavior required of members. These standards may be principle based or rule based. The CFA Institute Code and Standards are an example of principle-based standards; they are based on the shared principles of honesty, integrity, transparency, diligence, and placing client interests first. Rule-based standards are often narrowly defined, applying to specific groups of individuals in specific circumstances. Principle-based standards, such as those of CFA Institute, apply to all candidates and members at all times regardless of title, position, occupation, geographic location, or specific situation.

As a CFA Program candidate, you are expected to act in accordance with the ethical and professional competency responsibilities of the investment profession as expressed in the Code and Standards. The Code and Standards are designed to foster and reinforce a culture of responsibility and professionalism. The Code and Standards apply to all your professional activities, including but not limited to trading securities for yourself and/or others, providing investment advice, conducting research, and performing other investment services.

EXAMPLE 2

Ethics and Professionalism

- 1 Which of the following statements *best* describes how professionals use their specialized knowledge and skills? Professionals use their specialized knowledge and skills:
 - A in service to others.
 - B to advance their career.
 - C for the exclusive benefit of their employers.
- 2 Which of the following statements is *most* accurate? A profession's code of ethics:
 - A includes standards of conduct or specific benchmarks for behavior.

- B** ensures that all members of a profession will act ethically at all times.
- C** publicly communicates the shared principles and expected behaviors of a profession's members.

Solution to 1:

A is correct. Professionals use specialized knowledge and skills in service to others. Their career and employer may benefit, but those results are not the primary focus of a professional's use of his or her specialized knowledge and skills.

Solution to 2:

C is correct. A profession's code of ethics publicly communicates the shared principles and expected behaviors of a profession's members. The existence of a code of ethics does not ensure that all members will behave in a manner consistent with the code and act ethically at all times. A profession will often establish a disciplinary process to address alleged violations of the code of ethics. A profession may adopt standards of conduct to enhance and clarify the code of ethics.

CHALLENGES TO ETHICAL CONDUCT

4

Professionals generally aim to be responsible and to adhere to high moral standards, so what is the benefit of studying ethics? Throughout our careers, we may find ourselves in difficult or at least unfamiliar situations in which an appropriate course of action is not immediately clear and/or there may be more than one seemingly acceptable choice; studying ethics helps us prepare for such situations. This section addresses challenges to engaging in ethical conduct. Failure to acknowledge, understand, or consider these challenges can lead to poor decision making, resulting in unintentional consequences, such as unethical conduct and potential violations of the Code and Standards.

Several challenges can make adherence to ethical conduct difficult. First, people tend to believe that they are ethical people and that their ethical standards are higher than average. Of course, everyone cannot be above average. However, surveys show this belief in above averageness remains. As reported in *A Crisis of Culture* (2013), for example, 71% of surveyed financial services executives rated their firm's reputation for ethical conduct better than the rest of the industry.² Among those surveyed, 59% rated the industry's reputation for ethical conduct as positive. In contrast, a survey of global consumer sentiment conducted the same year revealed that only 46% of consumers surveyed trusted financial service providers to do the right thing.³ In fact, financial services was the least trusted of all industries included in the survey.

These survey results illustrate overconfidence, a common behavioral bias that can lead to faulty decision making. Studies have shown that our beliefs and emotions frequently interfere with our cognitive reasoning and result in behavioral bias, a tendency to behave in a way that is not strictly rational.⁴ As a result of the overconfidence bias, we are more likely to overestimate the morality of our own behavior, particularly in situations that we have not faced before. The overconfidence bias can result in a

² Economist Intelligence Unit, "A Crisis of Culture: Valuing Ethics and Knowledge in Financial Services," Economist Intelligence Unit Report sponsored by CFA Institute (2013).

³ CFA Institute and Edelman, "Investor Trust Study" (2013): <http://www.cfapubs.org/doi/pdf/10.2469/ccb.v2013.n14.1>.

⁴ Max H. Bazerman and Don A. Moore, *Judgment in Managerial Decision Making*, 8th ed. (Hoboken, NJ: John Wiley & Sons, 2013).

failure to consider, explicitly or implicitly, important inputs and variables needed to form the best decision from an ethical perspective. In general, the overconfidence bias leads us to place too much importance on internal traits and intrinsic motivations, such as “I’m honest and would not lie,” even though studies have shown that internal traits are generally not the main determinant of whether or not someone will behave ethically in a given situation.⁵

A second challenge is that decision makers often fail to recognize and/or significantly underestimate the effect of situational influences, such as what other people around them are doing. **Situational influences** are external factors, such as environmental or cultural elements, that shape our thinking, decision making, and behavior. Social psychologists have studied how much situational influences affect our behavior and have found that even good people with honorable motives can and often will be influenced to do unethical things when put into difficult situations.⁶ Experiments have shown that even people who consider themselves strong, independent, free thinkers will conform to social pressures in many situations.⁷ The bystander effect, for example, demonstrates that people are less likely to intervene in an emergency when others are present. Fortunately, experiments have also shown that situational influences can induce people to act more ethically. For example, people tend to behave more ethically when they think someone else is watching or when there is a mirror placed close to them.⁸ The important concept to understand is that situational influences have a very powerful and often unrecognized effect on our thinking and behavior. Thus, learning to recognize situational influences is critical to making good decisions.

Common situational influences in the investment industry that can shape thinking and behavior include money and prestige. One experiment found that simply mentioning money can reduce ethical behavior. In the experiment, participants were less likely to cooperate when playing a game if the game was called the Wall Street Game, rather than the Community Game.⁹ In the investment industry, large financial rewards—including individual salaries, bonuses, and/or investment gains—can induce honest and well-intentioned individuals to act in ways that others might not consider ethical. Large financial rewards and/or prestige can motivate individuals to act in their own short-term self-interests, ignoring possible short-term risks or consequences to themselves and others as well as long-term risks or consequences for both themselves and others. Another extremely powerful situational influence is loyalty. Loyalty to supervisors or organizations, fellow employees, and other colleagues can tempt individuals to make compromises and take actions that they would reject under different situational influences or judge harshly when taken by others.

Situational influences often blind people to other important considerations. Bonuses, promotions, prestige, and loyalty to employer and colleagues are examples of situational influences that frequently have a disproportionate weight in our decision making. Our brains more easily and quickly identify, recognize, and consider these short-term situational influences than longer-term considerations, such as a commitment to maintaining our integrity and contributing to the integrity of the financial markets. Although absolutely important, these long-term considerations often have

⁵ Lee Ross and Richard E. Nisbett, *The Person and the Situation: Perspectives of Social Psychology* (New York: McGraw-Hill, 1991).

⁶ Stanley Milgram, *Obedience to Authority: An Experimental View* (New York: Harper & Row, 1974).

⁷ Philip G. Zimbardo, *The Power and Pathology of Imprisonment: Hearings Before Subcommittee No. 3 of the Committee on the Judiciary, 92nd Congress, Corrections: Part II, Prisons, Prison Reform, and Prisoners' Rights* Congressional Record (Serial No. 15, 25 October 1971).

⁸ John M. Darley and C. Daniel Batson, “From Jerusalem to Jericho: A Study of Situational and Dispositional Variables in Helping Behavior,” *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, vol., 27, no. 1 (1973): 100–108.

⁹ Varda Liberman, Steven M. Samuels, and Lee Ross, “The Name of the Game: Predictive Power of Reputations versus Situational Labels in Determining Prisoner’s Dilemma Game Moves,” *Personality and Social Psychology Bulletin*, vol. 30, no. 9 (September 2004): 1175–1185.

less immediate consequences than situational influences, making them less obvious as factors to consider in a decision and, therefore, less likely to influence our overall decision making. Situational influences shift our brain's focus from the long term to the short or immediate term. When our decision making is too narrowly focused on short-term factors and/or self-interest, we tend to ignore and/or minimize the longer-term risks and/or costs and consequences to ourselves and others, and the likelihood of suffering ethical lapses and making poor decisions increases.

The story of Enron Corporation, a US energy company, illustrates the power of situational influences. In the late 1990s, with approximately 20,000 employees, the company's culture focused on increasing current revenues and the share price without regard for the long-term sustainability or consequences of such a culture. Management received significant stock options, which provided strong motivation to make decisions and take actions that would increase the share price. The focus on share price was inescapable; employees were greeted by the stock ticker in lobbies and elevators and on their computer screens. The focus on share price overshadowed considerations about stakeholders and the long-term sustainability of the business and its profits. Under these situational influences, some senior managers made poor decisions and eventually succumbed to unethical conduct. They devised and adopted complex accounting strategies that inflated revenues, obscured the company's financial performance, and hid billions of dollars in debt. In October 2001, the financial press revealed what Enron's accounting practices had previously concealed. Shares of Enron, which had reached a high of US\$90.75 in mid-2000, fell to less than US\$1 by the end of November 2001. The company, which had claimed revenues of nearly US\$111 billion in 2000, secured a place in the record books as one of the largest bankruptcies in US history. Dozens of former executives and employees were investigated, and many were charged with fraud and/or conspiracy. Sixteen individuals pled guilty, including Chief Financial Officer (CFO) Andrew S. Fastow, who pled guilty to conspiracy, forfeited nearly US\$30 million in cash and property, and was sentenced to six years in prison. After a lengthy investigation and trial, former Chief Executive Officer Jeffrey K. Skilling was convicted in May 2006 of fraud, conspiracy, insider trading, and making false statements. He was sentenced to more than 24 years in prison, a sentence that was eventually reduced to 14 years.¹⁰

Loyalty to employer and/or colleagues is an extremely powerful situational influence. Our colleagues can influence our thinking and behavior in both positive and negative ways. For example, colleagues may have encouraged you to signal your commitment to your career and high ethical standards by enrolling in the CFA Program. If you work for or with people who are not bound by the Code and Standards, they might encourage you to take actions that are consistent with local law, unaware that the recommended conduct falls short of the Code and Standards.

Well-intentioned firms may adopt or develop strong compliance programs to encourage adherence to rules, regulations, and policies. A strong compliance policy is a good start to developing an ethical culture, but a focus on adherence to rules may not be sufficient. A compliance approach may not encourage decision makers to consider the larger picture and can oversimplify decision making. Taken to the extreme, a strong compliance culture can become another situational influence that blinds employees to other important considerations. In a firm focused primarily on compliance, employees may adopt a "check the box" mentality rather than an ethical decision-making approach. Employees may ask the question "What *can* I do?" rather than "What *should* I do?" At Enron, for example, in compliance with procedures, CFO Fastow dutifully disclosed that he was the owner of several partnerships planning to

¹⁰ Chairman Kenneth M. Lay was also convicted of fraud, conspiracy, and making false statements. Lay died on 5 July 2006 of heart failure while awaiting sentencing. Because he died before he could appeal the verdict, the convictions were subsequently vacated.

transact business with Enron. With powerful situational influences at work, Fastow and board members focused on “What *can* I do?” rather than “What *should* I do?” Compliance required that Fastow make the ownership disclosures and request approval for the proposed business transactions from Enron’s board of directors, which he did. Board members seemed to focus on the compliance requirements to provide board approval of the proposed transactions rather than considering their obligations to shareholders. In so doing, they neglected to view the issue from a broader perspective and consider “What *should* we do?” Consequently, they failed to recognize that the proposed transactions placed Fastow’s interests in direct conflict with those of his employer and its shareholders. By focusing on the compliance requirements to provide board approval, board members failed to prevent Fastow from engaging in activity that enriched himself at the expense of his employer and its shareholders. The Enron case illustrates both the power of situational influences and the limitations of a compliance approach, which can contribute to overconfidence and is insufficient for ensuring ethical decision making,

EXAMPLE 3

Challenges to Ethical Conduct

- 1 Which of the following will *most likely* determine whether an individual will behave unethically?
 - A The person’s character
 - B The person’s internal traits and intrinsic motivation
 - C External factors, such as environmental or cultural elements
- 2 Which of the following statements is *most* accurate?
 - A Large financial rewards, such as bonuses, are the most powerful situational influences.
 - B When decision making focuses on short-term factors, the likelihood of ethical conduct increases.
 - C Situational influences can motivate individuals to act in their short-term self-interests without recognizing the long-term risks or consequences for themselves and others.

Solution to 1:

C is correct. Social psychologists have shown that even good people may behave unethically in difficult situations. Situational influences, which are external factors (e.g., environmental or cultural elements), can shape our thinking, decision making, and behavior and are more likely to lead to unethical behavior than internal traits or character.

Solution to 2:

C is correct. Situational influences can motivate individuals to act in their short-term self-interests without recognizing the long-term risks or consequences for themselves and others. Large financial rewards are powerful situational influences, but in some situations, other situational influences, such as loyalty to colleagues, may be even more powerful.

THE IMPORTANCE OF ETHICAL CONDUCT IN THE INVESTMENT INDUSTRY

5

Why are high ethical standards so important for the investment industry and investment professionals? As the global financial crisis of 2008 demonstrated, isolated and seemingly unimportant individual decisions, such as approving loans to individuals unable to provide proof of stable income, in aggregate can precipitate a market crisis that can lead to economic difficulties and job losses for millions of individuals. In an interconnected global economy and marketplace, each market participant must strive to understand how his or her decisions and actions, and the products and services he or she provides, may affect others not just in the short term but also the long term.

The investment industry serves society by matching those who supply capital, or money, with those who seek capital to finance, or fund, their activities. For simplicity, let us refer to those who supply capital as investors and those who seek capital as borrowers. Borrowers may seek capital to achieve long-term goals, such as building or upgrading factories, schools, bridges, highways, airports, railroads, or other facilities. They may also seek short-term capital to fund short-term goals and/or support their daily operations. Borrowers seeking capital to meet short- and long-term objectives include sovereign entities, businesses, schools, hospitals, companies, and other organizations that serve others. Some borrowers will turn to banks or other lending institutions to finance their activities; others will turn to the financial markets to access the funds they need to achieve their goals.

In exchange for supplying capital to fund the borrowers' endeavors, investors expect that their investments will generate returns that compensate them for the use of their funds and the risks involved. Before providing capital, diligent and disciplined investors will evaluate the risks and rewards of providing the capital. Some risks, such as a downturn in the economy or a new competitor, could adversely affect the returns expected from the investment. To help evaluate the potential risks and rewards of the investment, investors conduct research, reading and evaluating the borrower's financial statements, management's business plan, research reports, industry reports, and competitive analyses. Responsible investors will not invest their capital unless they trust that their capital will be used in the way that has been described and is likely to generate the returns they desire. Investors and society benefit when capital flows to borrowers that can create the most value from the capital through their products and services.

Capital flows more efficiently between investors and borrowers when financial market participants are confident that all parties will behave ethically. Ethical behavior builds and fosters trust, which has benefits for individuals, firms, the financial markets, and society. When people believe that a person or institution is reliable and acts in accordance with their expectations, they are more willing to take risks involving those people and institutions. For example, when people trust their financial advisers, institutions, and the financial markets, they are more likely to invest their money and accept the risk of short-term price fluctuations because they can reasonably believe that their investments will provide them with long-term benefits. Entrepreneurs are more likely to accept the risk of expanding their businesses, and hiring additional employees, if they believe they will be able to attract investors with the funds needed to expand at a reasonable cost. The higher the level of trust in the financial system, the more people are willing to participate in the financial markets. Broad participation in the financial markets enables the flow of capital to fund the growth in goods, services, and infrastructure that benefits society with new and often better hospitals, bridges, products, services, and jobs. Broad participation in the financial markets also means

that the need and demand for investment professionals increase, resulting in more job opportunities for those seeking to use their specialized skills and knowledge of the financial markets in service to others.

Ethics always matter, but ethics are of particular importance in the investment industry because the investment industry and financial markets are built on trust. Trust is important to all business, yet it is especially important in the investment industry for several reasons, including the nature of the client relationship, differences in knowledge and access to information, and the nature of investment products and services.

In the client relationship, investors entrust their assets to financial firms for care and safekeeping. By doing so, clients charge the firm and its employees with a special responsibility; they are putting their faith and trust in the firm and its employees to protect their assets. If the firm and its employees fail to protect clients' assets, it could have severe consequences for those clients. Without trust in that protection, the firm and its employees would not have any business.

Those who work in the investment industry, as well as those who work in other professions, have specialized knowledge and sometimes better access to information. Having specialized knowledge and better access to information is an advantage in any relationship, giving one party more power than the other. Investors trust that the professionals they hire will not use their knowledge to take advantage of them. They rely on the investment professional to use his or her specialized knowledge to serve or benefit their clients' interests.

Another reason why trust is so important in the investment industry has to do with the nature of its products and services. In other industries—such as the transportation industry, the technology industry, the retail industry, or the food industry—companies produce products and/or provide services that are tangible and/or clearly visible. We can hold an electronic tablet in our hands and inspect it. We can use software programs, shop at retailers, dine at restaurant chains, and watch films. We can judge the quality of the product or service based on a variety of factors: How well does it perform its intended function? How efficient is it? How durable is it? How appealing is it? Is the price reasonable or appropriate for the product or service?

In the investment industry, many investments are intangible and appear only as numbers on a page or a screen. Investors cannot hold, inspect, or test their intended purchases as they can a smartphone or a television set, each of which often come with warranties should they fail to function as advertised. Without tangible products to inspect, and with no warranties for protection should the product or service fail to perform as expected, investors must rely on the information provided about the investment—both before and after purchase. When they call their financial adviser and ask to see their investments, they receive either an electronic or printed statement with a list of holdings. They trust that the information is accurate and complete—a fair representation—just as they trust that the investment professionals with whom they are dealing will protect their interests. The globalization of finance also means that investment professionals are likely to have business opportunities in new or unfamiliar places. Without trust, financial transactions, including global transactions, are less likely to occur.

Because of these factors, trust is the very foundation of the financial markets. This trust is built, fostered, and maintained by the ethical actions of all the individuals who work and/or participate in the markets, including those who work for companies, banks, investment firms, sovereign entities, rating agencies, accounting firms, financial advisers and planners, and institutional and retail investors. When market participants act ethically, investors and others can trust that the numbers on the screen or the page are accurate representations and be confident that investing and participating in the financial markets is worthwhile.

Ethical behavior by all market participants can lead to broader participation in the markets, protection of clients' interests, and more opportunities for investment professionals and their firms. Ethical behavior by firms can lead to higher levels of success and profitability for the firms as well as their employees. Clients are attracted to firms with trustworthy reputations, leading to more business, higher revenues, and more profits. Ethical firms may also enjoy lower relative costs than unethical firms because regulators are less likely to have cause to initiate costly investigations or impose significant fines on firms in which high ethical standards are the norm.

Conversely, unethical behavior erodes and can even destroy trust. When clients and investors suspect that they are not receiving accurate information or that the market is not a level playing field, they lose trust. Investors with low trust are less willing to accept risks. They may demand a higher return for the use of their capital, choose to invest elsewhere, or choose not to invest at all. Any of these actions would increase costs for borrowers seeking capital to finance their activities. Without access to capital, borrowers may not be able to meet their goals of building new factories, bridges, or hospitals. Decreases in investments can harm society by reducing jobs, growth, and innovation. Unethical behavior ultimately harms not only clients, but also the firm, its employees, and others.

Diminished trust in financial markets can reduce growth in the investment industry and tarnish the reputation of firms and individuals in the industry, even if they did not participate in the unethical behavior. Unethical behavior interferes with the ability of markets to channel capital to the borrowers that can create the most value from the capital, contributing to economic growth. Both markets and society suffer when unethical behavior destroys trust in financial markets. For you personally, unethical behavior can cost you your job, reputation, and professional stature and can lead to monetary penalties and possibly time in jail.

EXAMPLE 4

The Importance of Ethical Conduct in the Investment Industry

Which of the following statements is *most* accurate? Investment professionals have a special responsibility to act ethically because:

- A the industry is heavily regulated.
- B they are entrusted to protect clients' assets.
- C the profession requires compliance with its code of ethics.

Solution:

B is correct. Investment professionals have a special responsibility because clients entrust them to protect the clients' assets.

ETHICAL VS. LEGAL STANDARDS

6

Many times, stakeholders have common ethical expectations. Other times, different stakeholders will have different perceptions and perspectives and use different criteria to decide whether something is beneficial and/or ethical.

Laws and regulations often codify ethical actions that lead to better outcomes for society or specific groups of stakeholders. For example, some laws and regulations require businesses and their representatives to tell the truth. They require specific

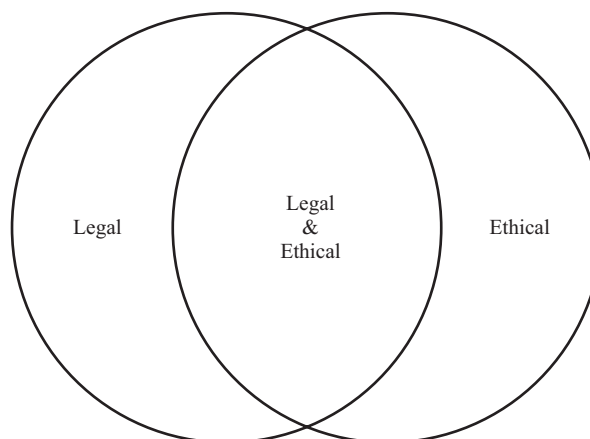
written disclosures in marketing and other materials. Complying with such rules is considered an ethical action; it creates a more satisfactory outcome that conforms to stakeholders' ethical expectations. As an example, consider disclosure requirements mandated by securities regulators regarding the risks of investing. Complying with such rules creates better outcomes for you, your clients, and your employer. First, compliance with the rule reduces the risk that clients will invest in securities without understanding the risks involved, which, in turn, reduces the risk that clients will file complaints and/or take legal action if their investments decline in value. Complying with the rules also reduces the risk that regulators will initiate an investigation, file charges, or/and discipline or sanction you and/or your employer. Any of these actions could jeopardize the reputation and future prospects of you and your employer. Conduct that reduces these risks (e.g., following disclosure rules) would be considered ethical; it leads to better outcomes for you, your clients, and your employer and conforms to the ethical expectations of various stakeholders.

Although laws frequently codify ethical actions, legal and ethical conduct are not always the same. Think about the diagram in Exhibit 1. Many types of conduct are both legal and ethical, but some conduct may be one and not the other. Some legal behaviors or activities may be considered unethical, and some behaviors or activities considered ethical may be deemed illegal in certain jurisdictions. Acts of civil disobedience, such as peaceful protests, may be in response to laws that individuals consider unethical. The act of civil disobedience may itself be considered ethical, and yet it violates existing local laws.

The investment industry has examples of conduct that may be legal but considered by some to be unethical. Some countries, for example, do not have laws prohibiting trading while in possession of material nonpublic information, but many investment professionals and CFA Institute consider such trading unethical.

Another area in which ethics and laws may conflict is the area of "whistleblowing." Whistleblowing refers to the disclosure by an individual of dishonest, corrupt, or illegal activity by an organization or government. Depending on the circumstances, a whistleblower may violate organizational policies and even local laws with the disclosure; thus, a whistleblower's actions may be deemed illegal and yet considered by some to be ethical.

Exhibit 1 Types of Conduct



Some people advocate that increased regulation and monitoring of the behavior of participants in the investment industry will increase trust in the financial markets. Although this approach may work in some circumstances, the law is not always the

best mechanism to reduce unethical behavior for several reasons. First, laws typically follow market practices; regulators may proactively design laws and regulations to address existing or anticipated practices that may adversely affect the fairness and efficiency of markets or reactively design laws and regulations in response to a crisis or an event that resulted in significant monetary losses and loss of confidence/trust in the financial system. Regulators' responses typically take significant time, during which the problematic practice may continue or even grow. Once enacted, a new law may be vague, conflicting, and/or too narrow in scope. A new law may reduce or even eliminate the existing activity while simultaneously creating an opportunity for a different, but similarly problematic, activity. Additionally, laws vary across countries or jurisdictions, allowing questionable practices to move to places that lack laws relevant to the questionable practice. Laws are also subject to interpretation and compliance by market participants, who may choose to interpret the law in the most advantageous way possible or delay compliance until a later date. For these reasons, laws and regulations are insufficient to ensure the ethical behavior of investment professionals and market participants.

Ethical conduct goes beyond what is legally required and encompasses what different societal groups or communities, including professional associations, consider to be ethically correct behavior. To act ethically, individuals need to be able to think through the facts of the situation and make good choices even in the absence of clear laws or rules. In many cases, there is no simple algorithm or formula that will always lead to an ethical course of action. Ethics requires judgment—the ability to make considered decisions and reach sensible conclusions. Good ethical judgment requires actively considering the interests of stakeholders and trying to benefit multiple stakeholders—clients, family, colleagues, employers, market participants, and so forth—and minimize risks, including reputational risk.

EXAMPLE 5

Ethical vs. Legal Standards

- 1 Which of the following statements is *most* accurate?
 - A All legal behavior is ethical behavior.
 - B Some ethical behavior may be illegal.
 - C Legal standards represent the highest standard.
- 2 Which of the following statements is *most* accurate?
 - A Increased regulations are the most useful means to reduce unethical behavior by market participants.
 - B Regulators quickly design and implement laws and regulations to address practices that adversely affect the fairness and efficiency of markets.
 - C New laws designed to reduce or eliminate conduct that adversely affects the markets can create opportunities for different, but similarly problematic, conduct.

Solution to 1:

B is correct. Some ethical behavior may be illegal. Civil disobedience is an example of what may be illegal behavior that some consider to be ethical. Legal and ethical behavior often coincide but not always. Standards of conduct based on ethical principles may represent a higher standard of behavior than the behavior required by law.

Solution to 2:

C is correct. New laws designed to reduce or eliminate conduct that adversely affects the markets can create opportunities for different, but similarly problematic, conduct.

7**ETHICAL DECISION-MAKING FRAMEWORKS**

Laws, regulations, professional standards, and codes of ethics can guide ethical behavior, but individual judgment is a critical ingredient in making principled choices and engaging in appropriate conduct. One strategy to increase trust in the investment industry is to increase the ability and motivation of market participants to act ethically and help them minimize the likelihood of unethical actions. By integrating ethics into the decision-making activities of employees, firms can enhance the ability and the motivation of employees to act ethically, thereby reducing the likelihood of unethical actions. The ability to relate an ethical decision-making framework to a firm's or profession's code of ethics allows investment professionals to bring the principles of the code of ethics to life. An investment professional's natural desire to "do the right thing" can be reinforced by building a culture of integrity in the workplace. Development, maintenance, and demonstration of a strong culture of integrity within the firm by senior management may be the single most important factor in promoting ethical behavior among the firm's employees.

Adopting a code that clearly lays out the ethical principles that guide the thought processes and conduct the firm expects from its employees is a critical first step. But a code of ethics, although necessary, is insufficient. Simply nurturing an inclination to do right is no match for the multitude of daily decisions that investment professionals make. We need to exercise ethical decision-making skills to develop the muscle memory necessary for fundamentally ethical people to make good decisions despite the reality of conflicts and our natural instinct for self-preservation. Just as coaching and practice transform our natural ability to run across a field into the technique and endurance required to run a race, teaching, reinforcing, and practicing ethical decision-making skills prepare us to confront the hard issues effectively. It is good for business, individuals, firms, the industry, and the markets, as well as society as a whole, to engage in the investment management profession in a highly ethical manner. A strong ethical culture that helps honest, ethical people engage in ethical behavior will foster the trust of investors, lead to robust global financial markets, and ultimately benefit society. That is why ethics matter.

When faced with decisions that can affect multiple stakeholders, investment professionals must have a well-developed set of principles; otherwise, their thought processes can lead to, at best, indecision and, at worst, fraudulent conduct and destruction of the public trust. Establishing an ethical framework to guide your internal thought process regarding how to act is a crucial step to engaging in ethical conduct. Investment professionals are generally comfortable analyzing and making decisions from an economic (profit/loss) perspective. Given the importance of ethical behavior in carrying out professional responsibilities, it is also important to analyze decisions and their potential consequences from an ethical perspective. Using a framework for ethical decision making will help investment professionals to effectively examine their choices in the context of conflicting interests common to their professional obligations (e.g., researching and gathering information, developing investment recommendations, and managing money for others). Such a framework will allow investment professionals to analyze and choose options in a way that allows them to meet high standards of ethical behavior. An ethical decision-making framework

provides investment professionals with a tool to help them adhere to a code of ethics. By applying the framework and analyzing the particular circumstances of each available alternative, investment professionals are able to determine the best course of action to fulfill their responsibilities in an ethical manner.

An ethical decision-making framework will help a decision maker see the situation from multiple perspectives and pay attention to aspects of the situation that may be less evident with a short-term, self-focused perspective. The goal of getting a broader picture of a situation is to be able to create a plan of action that is less likely to harm stakeholders and more likely to benefit them. If a decision maker does not know or understand the effects of his or her actions on stakeholders, the likelihood of making a decision and taking action that harms stakeholders is more likely to occur, even if unintentionally. Finally, an ethical decision-making framework helps decision makers justify their actions to a broader audience of stakeholders.

Ethical decision-making frameworks are designed to facilitate the decision-making process for all decisions. They help people look at and evaluate a decision from multiple perspectives, enabling them to identify important issues they might not otherwise consider. Using an ethical decision-making framework consistently will help you develop sound judgment and decision-making skills and avoid making decisions that have unanticipated ethical consequences. Ethical decision-making frameworks come in many forms with varying degrees of detail. A general ethical decision-making framework is shown in Exhibit 2.

Exhibit 2 Ethical Decision-Making Framework

- Identify: Relevant facts, stakeholders and duties owed, ethical principles, conflicts of interest
- Consider: Situational influences, additional guidance, alternative actions
- Decide and act
- Reflect: Was the outcome as anticipated? Why or why not?

The ethical decision-making process includes multiple phases, each of which has multiple components. The process is often iterative, and you, the decision maker, may move between phases in an order different from what is presented. For simplicity, we will discuss the phases sequentially. In the initial phase, you will want to identify the important facts that you have available to you, as well as information that you may not have but would like to have to give yourself a more complete understanding of the situation. You will also want to identify the stakeholders—clients, family, colleagues, your employer, market participants, and so forth—and the duties you have to each of them. You will then want to identify relevant ethical principles and/or legal requirements that might apply to the situation. You should also identify any potential conflicts of interest inherent in the situation or conflicts in the duties you hold to others. For example, your duty to your client may conflict with your duty to your employer.

In the second phase of ethical decision making, you will take time to consider the situational influences as well as personal behavioral biases that could affect your thinking and thus decision making. These situational influences and biases could include a desire to please your boss, to be seen as successful by your peers and family, to gain acceptance, to earn a large bonus, and so on. During this phase, you may seek additional guidance from trusted sources—perhaps a family member, colleague, or mentor who can help you think through the situation and help you identify and evaluate alternative actions. You may turn to your compliance department for assistance or you may even consult outside legal counsel. Seeking additional guidance is a critical

step in viewing the situation from different perspectives. You should seek guidance from someone who is not affected by the same situational influences and behavioral biases as you are and can, therefore, provide a fresh perspective. You should also seek guidance from your firm's policies and procedures and the CFA Institute Code and Standards. A helpful technique might be to imagine how an ethical peer or role model might act in the situation.

The next phase of the framework is to make a decision and act. After you have acted on your decision, you should take the time to reflect on and assess your decision and its outcome. Was the outcome what you anticipated? Why or why not? Had you properly identified all the important facts, stakeholders, duties to stakeholders, conflicts of interest, and relevant ethical principles? Had you considered the situational influences? Did you identify personal behavioral biases that might affect your thinking? Had you sought sufficient guidance? Had you considered and properly evaluated a variety of alternative actions? You may want to reflect on the decision multiple times as the immediate and longer-term consequences of your decision and actions become apparent.

The process is often iterative. After identifying the relevant facts and considering situational influences, you may, for example, decide that you cannot make a decision without more information. You may seek additional guidance on how to obtain the information you need. You may also begin considering alternative actions regarding how to proceed based on expectations of what the additional information will reveal, or you may wait until you have more information, reflect on what you have done and learned so far, and start the process over again. Sometimes cases can be complicated and multiple iterations may reveal that no totally acceptable solution can be created. Applying an ethical decision-making framework can help you evaluate the situation so you can make the best possible decision. The next section shows applications of the framework shown in Exhibit 2.

7.1 Applying the Framework

To illustrate how the framework could be applied in your career, consider the scenario in Example 6.

EXAMPLE 6

Applying an Ethical Decision-Making Framework I

You have been hired as a junior analyst with a major investment bank. When you join the bank, you receive a copy of the firm's policies as well as training on the policies. Your supervisor is the senior technology analyst for the investment bank. As part of your duties, you gather information, draft documents, conduct analysis, and perform other support functions for the senior analyst.

Your employer is one of several investment banks working on the initial public offering (IPO) of a well-known technology company. The IPO is expected to generate significant revenues for the investment banks participating in the offering. The IPO has been highly anticipated and is in the news every day.

You are thrilled when your supervisor asks you to work on several research projects related to analyzing and valuing the upcoming IPO for investors. You eagerly compile information and draft a one-page outline. You stop to consider what other information you could add to improve the report before proceeding. You realize that you have two excellent contacts in the technology industry who could review your work and provide some additional and potentially valuable perspectives. You draft an email to your contacts reading:

I am working on an analysis and valuation of Big Tech Company for investors. My employer is one of the banks participating in the IPO, and I want to make sure I have considered everything. I was hoping you could give me feedback on the prospects and risks facing Big Tech. Please treat all the attached material as confidential.

Before hitting the send button, you stop and think about the ethical decision-making framework you have studied. You decide to apply the framework and jot down some notes as you work through the process: On the first page, you work through the identification phase and make a list of the relevant facts, stakeholders to whom you owe a duty, potential conflicts of interest, and ethical principles. This list is shown in Exhibit 3.

Exhibit 3 Identification Phase

- 1 Relevant facts:
 - *Working on the deal/IPO of the decade*
 - *Employer is one of several investment banks working on IPO*
 - *The IPO is highly anticipated*
 - *A successful IPO could lead to additional investment banking deals and revenues for the firm*
 - *Supervisor is relying on me*
 - *Employer has documented policies and procedures*
 - *Industry is regulated, with many rules and regulations in place*
- 2 Stakeholders and duties owed. I have a duty to the following:
 - *Supervisor*
 - *Employer*
 - *Employer's corporate client, the technology company*
 - *Employer's asset management and other investing clients*
 - *Employer's partners in the IPO*
 - *Investors and market participants interested in the IPO*
 - *All capital market participants*
- 3 Conflicts or potential conflicts of interest include the following:
 - *Gathering additional research versus maintaining confidentiality*
 - *Duty to supervisor versus desire to impress*
 - *Duty to corporate client versus duty to other clients of the firm*
 - *The firm's corporate client benefits from a high IPO price whereas the firm's asset management clients would benefit from a low IPO price*
 - *Desire to work on more deals/IPOs versus objective analysis of the investment potential of this deal*
 - *My bonus, compensation, and career prospects are tied to my supervisor's and the IPO's success; duty to employer*
- 4 Ethical principles that are relevant to this situation include the following:
 - *Duty of loyalty to employer*

(continued)

Exhibit 3 (Continued)

- *Client interests come first*
- *Maintain confidences and confidentiality of information*

On the next page, you write notes relating to the second phase of the framework, considering the various situational factors and the guidance available to you before considering alternative actions. These notes are shown in Exhibit 4.

Exhibit 4 Consideration Phase**1** Situational influences:

- *The firm's written policies*
- *The bank will earn big fees from the IPO*
- *I want to impress my boss—and potential future bosses*
- *My bonus, compensation, and career prospects will be influenced by my contribution to this deal and other deals*
- *I am one of very few people working on this deal; it is a real honor, and others would be impressed that I am working on this deal*
- *My employer is filled with successful and wealthy people who are go-getters; I want to be successful and wealthy like them*

2 Additional guidance. I could seek guidance from the following:

- *The firm's code of ethics*
- *The firm's written policies*
- *A peer in my firm*
- *My supervisor, the senior analyst*
- *The compliance department*
- *A mentor either at the firm or perhaps from university*
- *The CFA Institute Code and Standards*

3 Alternative actions. I could consider the following:

- *Asking contacts what they have heard*
- *Submitting the report as a draft and suggesting that contacts in the industry might be able to provide more perspective*
- *Sending a survey to various technology industry veterans soliciting their viewpoints on developments*

After completing these steps, you decide to check the firm's policies. Under a section entitled "Research Analyst Role in Securities Offerings," the manual states, "You may not distribute any written (which include email, fax, electronic, and other means) material related to companies and/or their offerings . . . during the course of any offering and the related quiet period."

You read further and note a section entitled "Wall Crossing Policy and Procedures" that states that "employees with confidential information may not communicate the information to anyone who does not have a valid need to know" without first obtaining clearance from the legal and compliance department.

You decide that your contacts do not have a “valid need to know” and that it is unlikely the firm’s legal and compliance professionals would approve sharing the information. You then decide to mention your contacts to the senior research analyst. He suggests that they may have some useful perspective and that you might talk to them to hear their perspective and cautions you not to disclose any information about any of the firm’s clients, pending deals, or research. You return to your desk, delete the email, and following the senior research analyst’s advice, call your contacts on the telephone to discuss the technology sector, its prospects, and its challenges. During the calls, you take care not to reveal any details about Big Tech Company or its offering.

Whatever action you take, you should take time afterward to reflect on the decision and the outcome. Was the outcome as anticipated? Why or why not?

The initial facts presented in the example are based on the real-life experience of a young junior analyst working on a highly anticipated IPO. The junior analyst may or may not have used an ethical decision-making framework to evaluate his situation. Without seeking additional guidance, the junior analyst sent an email similar to the one in the example with an attachment that included confidential, proprietary information, including the senior analyst’s analysis and forecasts. Months later, long after the IPO offering, the junior analyst’s email was discovered by his employer. When questioned, he admitted that he had received training regarding the firm’s policies and that he did not discuss or seek approval from anyone before sending the email. Two days later, the firm terminated the junior analyst’s employment and reported to regulatory authorities that he had been terminated for distributing written materials, by email, during a securities offering in violation of firm policies that prohibit the dissemination of any written materials during the course of a securities offering and related periods. The junior analyst’s supervisor also lost his job for failing to properly supervise the analyst. Multiple regulators investigated the matter, and the firm was fined millions of dollars for failing to supervise its employees properly. The information regarding the junior analyst’s termination was posted and remains available on the regulator’s website for all to see. Future employers conducting routine background checks will know that the analyst was terminated for violating firm policies relating to a securities offering.

The example presented is similar to situations faced by many analysts. Using an ethical decision-making framework will help you evaluate situations from multiple perspectives, avoid poor decision making, and avoid the consequences that can result from taking an ill-conceived course of action. Using an ethical decision-making framework is no guarantee of a positive outcome but may help you avoid making unethical decisions.

EXAMPLE 7

Applying an Ethical Decision-Making Framework II

A financial adviser has been saving a portion of his salary to purchase a new vehicle. He is on track to have enough saved within the next three months. His employer has offered a special bonus for this quarter, which will go to the team that attracts the most new investors into the firm’s investment funds. In addition to the potential bonus, the firm pays a 5% commission to employees who sell shares in the firm’s investment funds. Several of the funds are highly rated, including one designed to provide steady income to investors.

The financial adviser has added only a few new investors to the firm's funds, but his teammates have been very successful in their efforts. The end of the quarter is one week away, and his team is competing closely with another team for the bonus. One of his teammates informs the financial adviser that he really needs the bonus so his elderly mother can receive medical treatment.

Later that day, the financial adviser meets with an elderly client on a limited income who is seeking more income from his investment portfolio. The client is 89 years old and in poor health. According to the client's will, the client's investment portfolio will go to his favorite charity upon his death.

- 1 Which of the following situational influences is likely to have the *most* effect on the financial adviser's efforts to get new clients to invest in the funds? His relationship with his:
 - A client.
 - B employer.
 - C teammates.
- 2 Which of the following statements is *most* accurate? An ethical decision-making framework:
 - A is only beneficial when a firm lacks a code of ethics.
 - B is used to improve compliance with laws and regulations.
 - C is a tool for analyzing the potential alternative actions and consequences of a decision.
- 3 Which of the following is *most* accurate? Ethical decision-making frameworks:
 - A raise awareness of different perspectives.
 - B focus attention on short-term consequences.
 - C allocate more weight to those who will directly benefit from the decision.
- 4 Which of the following is *most* accurate? Ethical decision-making frameworks:
 - A are not needed if behavior is legal.
 - B identify who gains the most from a decision.
 - C can help reduce unanticipated ethical lapses and unexpected consequences.
- 5 Using an ethical decision-making framework, which of the following duties would *most likely* take precedence in the scenario described? The financial adviser's duty to his:
 - A client.
 - B employer.
 - C colleagues.
- 6 Using an ethical decision-making framework, the financial adviser would *most likely*:
 - A recommend that the elderly client invest at least some of his assets in the highly rated fund.
 - B research other investments that can provide steady income before making a recommendation to his elderly client.
 - C disclose the commission he would earn before recommending that the elderly client invest at least some of his assets in the highly rated fund.

Solution to 1:

C is correct. The financial adviser's relationship with his teammates is likely to have the most effect on the financial adviser's efforts.

Solution to 2:

C is correct. An ethical decision-making framework is a tool for analyzing the potential alternative actions and consequences of a decision.

Solution to 3:

A is correct. Ethical decision-making frameworks raise awareness of different perspectives.

Solution to 4:

C is correct. Ethical decision-making frameworks can help avoid unanticipated ethical consequences.

Solution to 5:

A is correct. Using an ethical decision-making framework, the financial adviser's relationship with his client would most likely take precedence in this scenario. The adviser should put his client's interests first. The exception to client interests taking precedence occurs when market integrity effects take precedence.

Solution to 6:

B is correct. Using an ethical decision-making framework, the financial adviser would identify the relevant facts, stakeholders, duties owed, and potential conflicts. In this scenario, the financial adviser owes a duty to his client as well as his employer. His client's interests take precedence over all other interests. The bonus and his colleague's desire to help his mother are situational influences. To navigate this situation, the financial adviser should seek additional information; he should research the risk and return parameters and fee structures of other investments that can provide steady income before making a recommendation to his client.

CONCLUSION

8

This reading introduced ideas and concepts that will help you understand the importance of ethical behavior in the investment industry as well as the challenges to adhering to high ethical standards. A code of ethics will communicate an organization's values and the expected behavior of its members as well as provide guidance for decision making. A code of ethics may be further enhanced and clarified by the adoption of standards of conduct. An ethical decision-making framework combined with a code of ethics may help investment professionals analyze their decisions in a way that identifies potential conflicts and negative consequences.

Knowing the rules to apply in a particular situation, although important, may not be sufficient to ensure ethical conduct if used alone. Responsible professionals in the investment industry must be able both to recognize areas that are prone to ethical pitfalls and to identify and process those circumstances and influences that can impair judgment and lead to ethical lapses.

SUMMARY

- Ethics refers to the study of making good choices. Ethics encompasses a set of moral principles and rules of conduct that provide guidance for our behavior.
- Situational influences are external factors that may shape our behavior.
- Challenges to ethical behavior include being overconfident in our own morality, underestimating the effect of situational influences, and focusing on the immediate rather than long-term outcomes or consequences of a decision.
- In any given profession, the code of ethics publicly communicates the established principles and expected behavior of its members.
- Members of a profession use specialized knowledge and skills to serve others; they share and agree to adhere to a common code of ethics to serve others and advance the profession.
- A code of ethics helps foster public confidence that members of the profession will use their specialized skills and knowledge to serve their clients and others.
- High ethical standards always matter and are of particular importance in the investment industry, which is based almost entirely on trust. Clients trust investment professionals to use their specialized skills and knowledge to serve clients and protect client assets. All stakeholders gain long-term benefits when investment professionals adhere to high ethical standards.
- Rules and laws often codify ethical actions that lead to better outcomes for society or specific groups of stakeholders.
- Organizations and individuals generally adhere to legal standards, but legal standards are often created to address past ethical failings and do not provide guidance for an evolving and increasingly complex world.
- Legal standards are often rule based. Ethical conduct goes beyond legal standards, balancing self-interest with the direct and indirect consequences of behavior on others.
- A framework for ethical decision making can help people look at and evaluate a decision from different perspectives, enabling them to identify important issues, make wise decisions, and limit unintended consequences.

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

- 1 Benchmarks for minimally acceptable behaviors of community members are:
 - A a code of ethics.
 - B laws and regulations.
 - C standards of conduct.
- 2 Specialized knowledge and skills, a commitment to serve others, and a shared code of ethics *best* characterize a(n):
 - A vocation.
 - B profession.
 - C occupation.
- 3 Which of the following *best* identifies an internal trait that may lead to poor ethical decision making?
 - A Overconfidence
 - B Loyalty to employer
 - C Promise of money or prestige
- 4 Situational influences in decision making will *most likely* be minimized if:
 - A strong compliance programs are in place.
 - B longer-term consequences are considered.
 - C individuals believe they are truthful and honest.
- 5 Decision makers who use a compliance approach are *most likely* to:
 - A avoid situational influences.
 - B oversimplify decision making.
 - C consider more factors than when using an ethical decision-making approach.
- 6 When unethical behavior erodes trust in an investment firm, that firm is *more likely* to experience:
 - A lower revenues only.
 - B higher expenses only.
 - C lower revenues and higher expenses.
- 7 Which is an example of an activity that may be legal but that CFA Institute considers unethical?
 - A Making legally required disclosures in marketing materials
 - B Trading while in possession of material nonpublic information
 - C Disclosure by an employee of his or her own company's dishonest activity
- 8 An ethical decision-making framework will *most likely*:
 - A include a pre-determined, uniform sequence.
 - B focus exclusively on confirmable facts and relationships.
 - C help avoid a decision that has unanticipated ethical consequences.

SOLUTIONS

- 1 C is correct. Standards of conduct are applied to specific communities or societal groups and identify specific behaviors required of community members. These standards of conduct serve as benchmarks for the minimally acceptable behavior of community members. Codes of ethics serve as a general guide for how community members should act; they communicate the organization's values and overall expectations regarding member behavior, but they do not identify specific behaviors required of community members. Laws and regulations are rules of conduct defined by governments and related entities about obligatory and forbidden conduct broadly applicable for individuals and entities under their jurisdiction.
- 2 B is correct. A profession has several characteristics that distinguish it from an occupation or vocation, such as specialized knowledge and skills, service to others, and a code of ethics shared by its members. A profession is the ultimate evolution of an occupation, resulting from excellence in practice and expected adherence to a code of ethics and standards of practice.
- 3 A is correct. An overconfidence bias can lead individuals to put too much importance on internal traits and intrinsic motivations, such as their own perceptions of personal honesty, that can lead to faulty decision making. Loyalty to an employer and promise of money or prestige are situational influences that can lead to faulty decision making.
- 4 B is correct. Consciously considering long-term consequences will help offset situational influences. We more easily recognize and consider short-term situational influences than longer-term considerations because longer-term considerations have fewer immediate consequences than situational influences do. When decision making is too narrowly focused on short-term factors, we tend to ignore longer-term risks and consequences, and the likelihood of poor ethical decision making increases. A strong compliance policy is a good first step toward developing an ethical culture; a focus on rules adherence may not be sufficient. Emphasis on compliance may not encourage decision makers to consider the larger picture and can oversimplify decision making. Taken to the extreme, a strong compliance culture can become another situational influence that blinds employees to other important considerations. An overconfidence bias can place too much importance on internal traits and intrinsic motivations, such as "I'm honest and would not lie," even though studies have shown that internal traits are generally not the main determinant of whether or not someone will behave ethically in a given situation.
- 5 B is correct. A compliance approach can oversimplify decision making and may not encourage decision makers to consider the larger picture. A strong compliance culture may be a good start in developing an ethical culture but can become another situational influence that may result in employees failing to consider other important factors.
- 6 C is correct. Unethical behavior ultimately harms investment firms. Clients are not attracted if they suspect unethical behavior, leading to less business and lower revenues. Investment firms may also experience higher relative costs because regulators are more likely to have cause to initiate costly investigations.

- 7 B is correct. The investment industry has examples of conduct that may be legal but that CFA Institute considers unethical. Trading while in possession of material nonpublic information is not prohibited by law worldwide and can, therefore, be legal, but CFA Institute considers such trading unethical.
- 8 C is correct. Using an ethical decision-making framework consistently will help you develop sound judgment and decision-making skills and avoid making decisions that have unanticipated ethical consequences. The decision-making process is often iterative, and the decision maker may move between phases of the framework. A decision maker should consider more than confirmable facts and relationships; for example, the decision maker should consider situational influences and personal biases.

READING

2

Code of Ethics and Standards of Professional Conduct

LEARNING OUTCOMES

<i>Mastery</i>	<i>The candidate should be able to:</i>
<input type="checkbox"/>	a. describe the structure of the CFA Institute Professional Conduct Program and the process for the enforcement of the Code and Standards;
<input type="checkbox"/>	b. state the six components of the Code of Ethics and the seven Standards of Professional Conduct;
<input type="checkbox"/>	c. explain the ethical responsibilities required by the Code and Standards, including the sub-sections of each Standard.

PREFACE

The *Standards of Practice Handbook (Handbook)* provides guidance to the people who grapple with real ethical dilemmas in the investment profession on a daily basis; the *Handbook* addresses the professional intersection where theory meets practice and where the concept of ethical behavior crosses from the abstract to the concrete. The *Handbook* is intended for a diverse and global audience: CFA Institute members navigating ambiguous ethical situations; supervisors and direct/indirect reports determining the nature of their responsibilities to each other, to existing and potential clients, and to the broader financial markets; and candidates preparing for the Chartered Financial Analyst (CFA) examinations.

Recent events in the global financial markets have tested the ethical mettle of financial market participants, including CFA Institute members. The standards taught in the CFA Program and by which CFA Institute members and candidates must abide represent timeless ethical principles and professional conduct for all market conditions. Through adherence to these standards, which continue to serve as the model for ethical behavior in the investment profession globally, each market participant does his or her part to improve the integrity and efficient operations of the financial markets.

The *Handbook* provides guidance in understanding the interconnectedness of the aspirational and practical principles and provisions of the Code of Ethics and Standards of Professional Conduct (Code and Standards). The Code contains high-level aspirational ethical principles that drive members and candidates to create a

positive and reputable investment profession. The Standards contain practical ethical principles of conduct that members and candidates must follow to achieve the broader industry expectations. However, applying the principles individually may not capture the complexity of ethical requirements related to the investment industry. The Code and Standards should be viewed and interpreted as an interwoven tapestry of ethical requirements. Through members' and candidates' adherence to these principles as a whole, the integrity of and trust in the capital markets are improved.

Evolution of the CFA Institute Code of Ethics and Standards of Professional Conduct

Generally, changes to the Code and Standards over the years have been minor. CFA Institute has revised the language of the Code and Standards and occasionally added a new standard to address a prominent issue of the day. For instance, in 1992, CFA Institute added the standard addressing performance presentation to the existing list of standards.

Major changes came in 2005 with the ninth edition of the *Handbook*. CFA Institute adopted new standards, revised some existing standards, and reorganized the standards. The revisions were intended to clarify the requirements of the Code and Standards and effectively convey to its global membership what constitutes “best practice” in a number of areas relating to the investment profession.

The Code and Standards must be regularly reviewed and updated if they are to remain effective and continue to represent the highest ethical standards in the global investment industry. CFA Institute strongly believes that revisions of the Code and Standards are not undertaken for cosmetic purposes but to add value by addressing legitimate concerns and improving comprehension.

Changes to the Code and Standards have far-reaching implications for the CFA Institute membership, the CFA Program, and the investment industry as a whole. CFA Institute members and candidates are *required* to adhere to the Code and Standards. In addition, the Code and Standards are increasingly being adopted, in whole or in part, by firms and regulatory authorities. Their relevance goes well beyond CFA Institute members and candidates.

Standards of Practice Handbook

The periodic revisions of the Code and Standards have come in conjunction with updates of the *Standards of Practice Handbook*. The *Handbook* is the fundamental element of the ethics education effort of CFA Institute and the primary resource for guidance in interpreting and implementing the Code and Standards. The *Handbook* seeks to educate members and candidates on how to apply the Code and Standards to their professional lives and thereby benefit their clients, employers, and the investing public in general. The *Handbook* explains the purpose of the Code and Standards and how they apply in a variety of situations. The sections discuss and amplify each standard and suggest procedures to prevent violations.

Examples in the “Application of the Standard” sections are meant to illustrate how the standard applies to hypothetical but factual situations. The names contained in the examples are fictional and are not meant to refer to any actual person or entity. Unless otherwise stated (e.g., one or more people specifically identified), individuals in each example are CFA Institute members and holders of the CFA designation. Because factual circumstances vary so widely and often involve gray areas, the explanatory material and examples are not intended to be all inclusive. Many examples set forth in the application sections involve standards that have legal counterparts; *members*

are strongly urged to discuss with their supervisors and legal and compliance departments the content of the Code and Standards and the members' general obligations under the Code and Standards.

CFA Institute recognizes that the presence of any set of ethical standards may create a false sense of security unless the documents are fully understood, enforced, and made a meaningful part of everyday professional activities. The *Handbook* is intended to provide a useful frame of reference that suggests ethical professional behavior in the investment decision-making process. This book cannot cover every contingency or circumstance, however, and it does not attempt to do so. The development and interpretation of the Code and Standards are evolving processes; the Code and Standards will be subject to continuing refinement.

Summary of Changes in the Eleventh Edition

The comprehensive review of the Code and Standards in 2005 resulted in principle requirements that remain applicable today. The review carried out for the eleventh edition focused on market practices that have evolved since the tenth edition. Along with updates to the guidance and examples within the *Handbook*, the eleventh edition includes an update to the Code of Ethics that embraces the members' role of maintaining the social contract between the industry and investors. Additionally, there are three changes to the Standards of Professional Conduct, which recognize the importance of proper supervision, clear communications with clients, and the expanding educational programs of CFA Institute.

Inclusion of Updated CFA Institute Mission

The CFA Institute Board of Governors approved an updated mission for the organization that is included in the Preamble to the Code and Standards. The new mission conveys the organization's conviction in the investment industry's role in the betterment of society at large.

Mission:

To lead the investment profession globally by promoting the highest standards of ethics, education, and professional excellence for the ultimate benefit of society.

Updated Code of Ethics Principle

One of the bullets in the Code of Ethics was updated to reflect the role that the capital markets have in the greater society. As members work to promote and maintain the integrity of the markets, their actions should also help maintain the social contract with investors.

Old:

Promote the integrity of and uphold the rules governing capital markets.

New:

Promote the integrity and viability of the global capital markets for the ultimate benefit of society.

New Standard Regarding Responsibilities of Supervisors [IV(C)]

The standard for members and candidates with supervision or authority over others within their firms was updated to bring about improvements in preventing illegal and unethical actions from occurring. The prior version of Standard IV(C) focused on the detection and prevention of violations. The updated version stresses broader compliance expectations, which include the detection and prevention aspects of the original version.

Old:

Members and Candidates must make reasonable efforts to detect and prevent violations of applicable laws, rules, regulations, and the Code and Standards by anyone subject to their supervision or authority.

New:

Members and Candidates must make reasonable efforts to ensure that anyone subject to their supervision or authority complies with applicable laws, rules, regulations, and the Code and Standards.

Additional Requirement under the Standard for Communication with Clients and Prospective Clients [V(B)]

Given the constant development of new and exotic financial instruments and strategies, the standard regarding communicating with clients now includes an implicit requirement to discuss the risks and limitations of recommendations being made to clients. The new principle and related guidance take into account the fact that levels of disclosure will differ between products and services. Members and candidates, along with their firms, must determine the specific disclosures their clients should receive while ensuring appropriate transparency of the individual firms' investment processes.

Addition:

Disclose to clients and prospective clients significant limitations and risks associated with the investment process.

Modification to Standard VII(A)

Since this standard was developed, CFA Institute has launched additional educational programs. The updated standard not only maintains the integrity of the CFA Program but also expands the same ethical considerations when members or candidates participate in such programs as the CIPM Program and the CFA Institute Investment Foundations certificate program. Whether participating as a member assisting with the curriculum or an examination or as a sitting candidate within a program, we expect them to engage in these programs as they would participate in the CFA Program.

Old:

Conduct as Members and Candidates in the CFA Program

Members and Candidates must not engage in any conduct that compromises the reputation or integrity of CFA Institute or the CFA designation or the integrity, validity, or security of the CFA examinations.

New:**Conduct as Participants in CFA Institute Programs**

Members and Candidates must not engage in any conduct that compromises the reputation or integrity of CFA Institute or the CFA designation or the integrity, validity, or security of CFA Institute programs.

General Guidance and Example Revision

The guidance and examples were updated to reflect practices and scenarios applicable to today's investment industry. Two concepts that appear frequently in the updates in this edition relate to the increased use of social media for business communications and the use of and reliance on the output of quantitative models. The use of social media platforms has increased significantly since the publication of the tenth edition. And although financial modeling is not new to the industry, this update reflects upon actions that are viewed as possible contributing factors to the financial crises of the past decade.

CFA Institute Professional Conduct Program

All CFA Institute members and candidates enrolled in the CFA Program are required to comply with the Code and Standards. The CFA Institute Board of Governors maintains oversight and responsibility for the Professional Conduct Program (PCP), which, in conjunction with the Disciplinary Review Committee (DRC), is responsible for enforcement of the Code and Standards. The DRC is a volunteer committee of CFA charterholders who serve on panels to review conduct and partner with Professional Conduct staff to establish and review professional conduct policies. The CFA Institute Bylaws and Rules of Procedure for Professional Conduct (Rules of Procedure) form the basic structure for enforcing the Code and Standards. The Professional Conduct division is also responsible for enforcing testing policies of other CFA Institute education programs as well as the professional conduct of Certificate in Investment Performance Measurement (CIPM) certificants.

Professional Conduct inquiries come from a number of sources. First, members and candidates must self-disclose on the annual Professional Conduct Statement all matters that question their professional conduct, such as involvement in civil litigation or a criminal investigation or being the subject of a written complaint. Second, written complaints received by Professional Conduct staff can bring about an investigation. Third, CFA Institute staff may become aware of questionable conduct by a member or candidate through the media, regulatory notices, or another public source. Fourth, candidate conduct is monitored by proctors who complete reports on candidates suspected to have violated testing rules on exam day. Lastly, CFA Institute may also conduct analyses of scores and exam materials after the exam, as well as monitor online and social media to detect disclosure of confidential exam information.

When an inquiry is initiated, the Professional Conduct staff conducts an investigation that may include requesting a written explanation from the member or candidate; interviewing the member or candidate, complaining parties, and third parties; and collecting documents and records relevant to the investigation. Upon reviewing the material obtained during the investigation, the Professional Conduct staff may conclude the inquiry with no disciplinary sanction, issue a cautionary letter, or continue proceedings to discipline the member or candidate. If the Professional Conduct staff believes a violation of the Code and Standards or testing policies has occurred, the member or candidate has the opportunity to reject or accept any charges and the proposed sanctions.

If the member or candidate does not accept the charges and proposed sanction, the matter is referred to a panel composed of DRC members. Panels review materials and presentations from Professional Conduct staff and from the member or candidate. The panel's task is to determine whether a violation of the Code and Standards or testing policies occurred and, if so, what sanction should be imposed.

Sanctions imposed by CFA Institute may have significant consequences; they include public censure, suspension of membership and use of the CFA designation, and revocation of the CFA charter. Candidates enrolled in the CFA Program who have violated the Code and Standards or testing policies may be suspended or prohibited from further participation in the CFA Program.

Adoption of the Code and Standards

The Code and Standards apply to individual members of CFA Institute and candidates in the CFA Program. CFA Institute does encourage firms to adopt the Code and Standards, however, as part of their code of ethics. Those who claim compliance should fully understand the requirements of each of the principles of the Code and Standards.

Once a party—nonmember or firm—ensures its code of ethics meets the principles of the Code and Standards, that party should make the following statement whenever claiming compliance:

“[Insert name of party] claims compliance with the CFA Institute Code of Ethics and Standards of Professional Conduct. This claim has not been verified by CFA Institute.”

CFA Institute welcomes public acknowledgement, when appropriate, that firms are complying with the CFA Institute Code of Ethics and Standards of Professional Conduct and encourages firms to notify us of the adoption plans. For firms that would like to distribute the Code and Standards to clients and potential clients, attractive one-page copies of the Code and Standards, including translations, are available on the CFA Institute website (www.cfainstitute.org).

CFA Institute has also published the Asset Manager Code of Professional Conduct, which is designed, in part, to help asset managers comply with the regulations mandating codes of ethics for investment advisers. Whereas the Code and Standards are aimed at individual investment professionals who are members of CFA Institute or candidates in the CFA Program, the Asset Manager Code was drafted specifically for firms. The Asset Manager Code provides specific, practical guidelines for asset managers in six areas: loyalty to clients, the investment process, trading, compliance, performance evaluation, and disclosure. The Asset Manager Code and the appropriate steps to acknowledge adoption or compliance can be found on the CFA Institute website (www.cfainstitute.org).

Acknowledgments

CFA Institute is a not-for-profit organization that is heavily dependent on the expertise and intellectual contributions of member volunteers. Members devote their time because they share a mutual interest in the organization's mission to promote and achieve ethical practice in the investment profession. CFA Institute owes much to the volunteers' abundant generosity and energy in extending ethical integrity.

The CFA Institute Standards of Practice Council (SPC), a group consisting of CFA charterholder volunteers from many different countries, is charged with maintaining and interpreting the Code and Standards and ensuring that they are effective. The SPC draws its membership from a broad spectrum of organizations in the securities

field, including brokers, investment advisers, banks, and insurance companies. In most instances, the SPC members have important supervisory responsibilities within their firms.

The SPC continually evaluates the Code and Standards, as well as the guidance in the *Handbook*, to ensure that they are

- representative of high standards of professional conduct,
- relevant to the changing nature of the investment profession,
- globally applicable,
- sufficiently comprehensive, practical, and specific,
- enforceable, and
- testable for the CFA Program.

The SPC has spent countless hours reviewing and discussing revisions to the Code and Standards and updates to the guidance that make up the eleventh edition of the *Handbook*. Following is a list of the current and former members of the SPC who generously donated their time and energy to this effort.

James E. Hollis III, CFA, Chair

Rik Albrecht, CFA

Terence E. Burns, CFA

Laura Dagan, CFA

Samuel B. Jones, Jr., CFA

Ulrike Kaiser-Boeing, CFA

Jinliang (Jack) Li, CFA

Christopher C. Loop, CFA,

James M. Meeth, CFA

Guy G. Rutherford, Jr., CFA

Edouard Senechal, CFA

Wenliang (Richard) Wang, CFA

Peng Lian Wee, CFA

ETHICS AND THE INVESTMENT INDUSTRY

Society ultimately benefits from efficient markets where capital can freely flow to the most productive or innovative destination. Well-functioning capital markets efficiently match those needing capital with those seeking to invest their assets in revenue-generating ventures. In order for capital markets to be efficient, investors must be able to trust that the markets are fair and transparent and offer them the opportunity to be rewarded for the risk they choose to take. Laws, regulations, and enforcement play a vital role but are insufficient alone to guarantee fair and transparent markets. The markets depend on an ethical foundation to guide participants' judgment and behavior. CFA Institute maintains and promotes the Code of Ethics and Standards of Professional Conduct in order to create a culture of ethics for the ultimate benefit of society.

Why Ethics Matters

Ethics can be defined as a set of moral principles or rules of conduct that provide guidance for our behavior when it affects others. Widely acknowledged fundamental ethical principles include honesty, fairness, diligence, and care and respect for others. Ethical conduct follows those principles and balances self-interest with both the direct and the indirect consequences of that behavior for other people.

Not only does unethical behavior by individuals have serious personal consequences—ranging from job loss and reputational damage to fines and even jail—but unethical conduct from market participants, investment professionals, and those who service investors can damage investor trust and thereby impair the sustainability of

the global capital markets as a whole. Unfortunately, there seems to be an unending parade of stories bringing to light accounting frauds and manipulations, Ponzi schemes, insider-trading scandals, and other misdeeds. Not surprisingly, this has led to erosion in public confidence in investment professionals. Empirical evidence from numerous surveys documents the low standing in the eyes of the investing public of banks and financial services firms—the very institutions that are entrusted with the economic well-being and retirement security of society.

Governments and regulators have historically tried to combat misconduct in the industry through regulatory reform, with various levels of success. Global capital markets are highly regulated to protect investors and other market participants. However, compliance with regulation alone is insufficient to fully earn investor trust. Individuals and firms must develop a “culture of integrity” that permeates all levels of operations and promotes the ethical principles of stewardship of investor assets and working in the best interests of clients, above and beyond strict compliance with the law. A strong ethical culture that helps honest, ethical people engage in ethical behavior will foster the trust of investors, lead to robust global capital markets, and ultimately benefit society. That is why ethics matters.

Ethics, Society, and the Capital Markets

CFA Institute recently added the concept “for the ultimate benefit of society” to its mission. The premise is that we want to live in a socially, politically, and financially stable society that fosters individual well-being and welfare of the public. A key ingredient for this goal is global capital markets that facilitate the efficient allocation of resources so that the available capital finds its way to places where it most benefits that society. These investments are then used to produce goods and services, to fund innovation and jobs, and to promote improvements in standards of living. Indeed, such a function serves the interests of the society. Efficient capital markets, in turn, provide a host of benefits to those providing the investment capital. Investors are provided the opportunity to transfer and transform risk because the capital markets serve as an information exchange, create investment products, provide liquidity, and limit transaction costs.

However, a well-functioning and efficient capital market system is dependent on trust of the participants. If investors believe that capital market participants—investment professionals and firms—cannot be trusted with their financial assets or that the capital markets are unfair such that only insiders can be successful, they will be unlikely to invest or, at the very least, will require a higher risk premium. Decreased investment capital can reduce innovation and job creation and hurt the economy and society as a whole. Reduced trust in capital markets can also result in a less vibrant, if not smaller, investment industry.

Ethics for a global investment industry should be universal and ultimately support trust and integrity above acceptable local or regional customs and culture. Universal ethics for a global industry strongly supports the efficiency, values, and mission of the industry as a whole. Different countries may be at different stages of development in establishing standards of practice, but the end goal must be to achieve rules, regulations, and standards that support and promote fundamental ethical principles on a global basis.

Capital Market Sustainability and the Actions of One

Individuals and firms also have to look at the indirect impacts of their actions on the broader investment community. The increasingly interconnected nature of global finance brings to the fore an added consideration of market sustainability that was, perhaps, less appreciated in years past. In addition to committing to the highest levels of ethical behavior, today’s investment professionals and their employers should consider the long-term health of the market as a whole.

As recent events have demonstrated, apparently isolated and unrelated decisions, however innocuous when considered on an individual basis, in aggregate can precipitate a market crisis. In an interconnected global economy and marketplace, each participant should strive to be aware of how his or her actions or the products he or she distributes may have an impact on capital market participants in other regions or countries.

Investment professionals should consider how their investment decision-making processes affect the global financial markets in the broader context of how they apply their ethical and professional obligations. Those in positions of authority have a special responsibility to consider the broader context of market sustainability in their development and approval of corporate policies, particularly those involving risk management and product development. In addition, corporate compensation strategies should not encourage otherwise ethically sound individuals to engage in unethical or questionable conduct for financial gain. Ethics, sustainability, and properly functioning capital markets are components of the same concept of protecting the best interests of all. To always place the interests of clients ahead of both investment professionals' own interests and those of their employer remains a key ethos.

The Relationship between Ethics and Regulations

Some equate ethical behavior with legal behavior: If you are following the law, you must be acting appropriately. Ethical principles, like laws and regulations, prescribe appropriate constraints on our natural tendency to pursue self-interest that could harm the interests of others. Laws and regulations often attempt to guide people toward ethical behavior, but they do not cover all unethical behavior. Ethical behavior is often distinguished from legal conduct by describing legal behavior as what is required and ethical behavior as conduct that is morally correct. Ethical principles go beyond that which is legally sufficient and encompass what is the right thing to do.

Given many regulators' lack of sufficient resources to enforce well-conceived rules and regulations, relying on a regulatory framework to lead the charge in establishing ethical behavior has its challenges. Therefore, reliance on compliance with laws and regulation alone is insufficient to ensure ethical behavior of investment professionals or to create a truly ethical culture in the industry.

The recent past has shown us that some individuals will succeed at circumventing the regulatory rules for their personal gain. Only the application of strong ethical principles, at both the individual level and the firm level, will limit abuses. Knowing the rules or regulations to apply in a particular situation, although important, may not be sufficient to ensure ethical conduct. Individuals must be able both to recognize areas that are prone to ethical pitfalls and to identify and process those circumstances and influences that can impair ethical judgment.

Applying an Ethical Framework

Laws, regulations, professional standards, and codes of ethics can guide ethical behavior, but individual judgment is a critical ingredient in making principled choices and engaging in appropriate conduct. When faced with an ethical dilemma, individuals must have a well-developed set of principles; otherwise, their thought processes can lead to, at best, equivocation and indecision and, at worst, fraudulent conduct and destruction of the public trust. Establishing an ethical framework for an internal thought process prior to deciding to act is a crucial step in engaging in ethical conduct.

Most investment professionals are used to making decisions from a business (profit/loss) outlook. But given the importance of ethical behavior in carrying out professional responsibilities, it is critical to also analyze decisions and potential conduct from an ethical perspective. Utilizing a framework for ethical decision making will help investment professionals effectively examine their conduct in the context of conflicting interests common to their professional obligations (e.g., researching

and gathering information, developing investment recommendations, and managing money for others). Such a framework will allow investment professionals to analyze their conduct in a way that meets high standards of ethical behavior.

An ethical decision-making framework can come in many forms but should provide investment professionals with a tool for following the principles of the firm's code of ethics. Through analyzing the particular circumstances of each decision, investment professionals are able to determine the best course of action to fulfill their responsibilities in an ethical manner.

Commitment to Ethics by Firms

A firm's code of ethics risks becoming a largely ignored, dusty compilation if it is not truly integrated into the fabric of the business. The ability to relate an ethical decision-making framework to a firm's code of ethics allows investment professionals to bring the aspirations and principles of the code of ethics to life—transforming it from a compliance exercise to something that is at the heart of a firm's culture.

An investment professional's natural desire to "do the right thing" must be reinforced by building a culture of integrity in the workplace. Development, maintenance, and demonstration of a strong culture of integrity within the firm by senior management may be the single most important factor in promoting ethical behavior among the firm's employees. Adopting a code that clearly lays out the ethical principles that guide the thought processes and conduct the firm expects from its employees is a critical first step. But a code of ethics, while necessary, is insufficient.

Simply nurturing an inclination to do right is no match for the multitude of daily decisions that investment managers make. We need to exercise ethical decision-making skills to develop the muscle memory necessary for fundamentally ethical people to make good decisions despite the reality of agent conflicts. Just as coaching and practice transform our natural ability to run across a field into the technique and endurance required to run a race, teaching, reinforcing, and practicing ethical decision-making skills prepare us to confront the hard issues effectively. It is good for business, individuals, firms, the industry, and the markets, as well as society as a whole, to engage in the investment management profession in a highly ethical manner.

Ethical Commitment of CFA Institute

An important goal of CFA Institute is to ensure that the organization and its members and candidates develop, promote, and follow the highest ethical standards in the investment industry. The CFA Institute Code of Ethics (Code) and Standards of Professional Conduct (Standards) are the foundation supporting the organization's quest to uphold the industry's highest standards of individual and corporate practice and to help serve the greater good. The Code is a set of principles that define the overarching conduct CFA Institute expects from its members and CFA Program candidates. The Code works in tandem with the Standards, which outline professional conduct that constitutes fair and ethical business practices.

For more than 50 years, CFA Institute members and candidates have been required to abide by the organization's Code and Standards. Periodically, CFA Institute has revised and updated its Code and Standards to ensure that they remain relevant to the changing nature of the investment profession and representative of the highest standard of professional conduct. Within this *Handbook*, CFA Institute addresses ethical principles for the profession, including individual professionalism; responsibilities to capital markets, clients, and employers; ethics involved in investment analysis, recommendations, and actions; and possible conflicts of interest. Although the investment world has become a far more complex place since the first publication of the *Standard of Practice Handbook*, distinguishing right from wrong remains the paramount principle of the Code and Standards.

New challenges will continually arise for members and candidates in applying the Code and Standards because many decisions are not unambiguously right or wrong. The dilemma exists because the choice between right and wrong is not always clear. Even well-intentioned investment professionals can find themselves in circumstances that may tempt them to cut corners. Situational influences can overpower the best of intentions.

CFA Institute has made a significant commitment to providing members and candidates with the resources to extend and deepen their understanding of how to appropriately apply the principles of the Code and Standards. The product offerings from CFA Institute offer a wealth of material. Through publications, conferences, webcasts, and podcasts, the ethical challenges of investment professionals are brought to light. Archived issues of these items are available on the CFA Institute website (www.cfainstitute.org).

By reviewing these resources and discussing with their peers, market participants can further enhance their abilities to apply an effective ethical decision-making framework. In time, this should help restore some of the trust recently lost by investors.

Markets function to an important extent on trust. Recent events have shown the fragility of this foundation and the devastating consequences that can ensue when it is fundamentally questioned. Investment professionals should remain mindful of the long-term health of financial markets and incorporate this concern for the market's sustainability in their investment decision making. CFA Institute and the Standards of Practice Council hope this edition of the *Handbook* will assist and guide investment professionals in meeting the ethical demands of the highly interconnected global capital markets for the ultimate benefit of society.

CFA INSTITUTE CODE OF ETHICS AND STANDARDS OF PROFESSIONAL CONDUCT

Preamble

The CFA Institute Code of Ethics and Standards of Professional Conduct are fundamental to the values of CFA Institute and essential to achieving its mission to lead the investment profession globally by promoting the highest standards of ethics, education, and professional excellence for the ultimate benefit of society. High ethical standards are critical to maintaining the public's trust in financial markets and in the investment profession. Since their creation in the 1960s, the Code and Standards have promoted the integrity of CFA Institute members and served as a model for measuring the ethics of investment professionals globally, regardless of job function, cultural differences, or local laws and regulations. All CFA Institute members (including holders of the Chartered Financial Analyst [CFA] designation) and CFA candidates have the personal responsibility to embrace and uphold the provisions of the Code and Standards and are encouraged to notify their employer of this responsibility. Violations may result in disciplinary sanctions by CFA Institute. Sanctions can include revocation of membership, revocation of candidacy in the CFA Program, and revocation of the right to use the CFA designation.

The Code of Ethics

Members of CFA Institute (including CFA charterholders) and candidates for the CFA designation (“Members and Candidates”) must:

- Act with integrity, competence, diligence, and respect and in an ethical manner with the public, clients, prospective clients, employers, employees, colleagues in the investment profession, and other participants in the global capital markets.
- Place the integrity of the investment profession and the interests of clients above their own personal interests.
- Use reasonable care and exercise independent professional judgment when conducting investment analysis, making investment recommendations, taking investment actions, and engaging in other professional activities.
- Practice and encourage others to practice in a professional and ethical manner that will reflect credit on themselves and the profession.
- Promote the integrity and viability of the global capital markets for the ultimate benefit of society.
- Maintain and improve their professional competence and strive to maintain and improve the competence of other investment professionals.

Standards of Professional Conduct

I. PROFESSIONALISM

A Knowledge of the Law

Members and Candidates must understand and comply with all applicable laws, rules, and regulations (including the CFA Institute Code of Ethics and Standards of Professional Conduct) of any government, regulatory organization, licensing agency, or professional association governing their professional activities. In the event of conflict, Members and Candidates must comply with the more strict law, rule, or regulation. Members and Candidates must not knowingly participate or assist in and must dissociate from any violation of such laws, rules, or regulations.

B Independence and Objectivity

Members and Candidates must use reasonable care and judgment to achieve and maintain independence and objectivity in their professional activities. Members and Candidates must not offer, solicit, or accept any gift, benefit, compensation, or consideration that reasonably could be expected to compromise their own or another’s independence and objectivity.

C Misrepresentation

Members and Candidates must not knowingly make any misrepresentations relating to investment analysis, recommendations, actions, or other professional activities.

D Misconduct

Members and Candidates must not engage in any professional conduct involving dishonesty, fraud, or deceit or commit any act that reflects adversely on their professional reputation, integrity, or competence.

II. INTEGRITY OF CAPITAL MARKETS

A Material Nonpublic Information

Members and Candidates who possess material nonpublic information that could affect the value of an investment must not act or cause others to act on the information.

B Market Manipulation

Members and Candidates must not engage in practices that distort prices or artificially inflate trading volume with the intent to mislead market participants.

III. DUTIES TO CLIENTS

A Loyalty, Prudence, and Care

Members and Candidates have a duty of loyalty to their clients and must act with reasonable care and exercise prudent judgment. Members and Candidates must act for the benefit of their clients and place their clients' interests before their employer's or their own interests.

B Fair Dealing

Members and Candidates must deal fairly and objectively with all clients when providing investment analysis, making investment recommendations, taking investment action, or engaging in other professional activities.

C Suitability

- 1 When Members and Candidates are in an advisory relationship with a client, they must:
 - a Make a reasonable inquiry into a client's or prospective client's investment experience, risk and return objectives, and financial constraints prior to making any investment recommendation or taking investment action and must reassess and update this information regularly.
 - b Determine that an investment is suitable to the client's financial situation and consistent with the client's written objectives, mandates, and constraints before making an investment recommendation or taking investment action.
 - c Judge the suitability of investments in the context of the client's total portfolio.
- 2 When Members and Candidates are responsible for managing a portfolio to a specific mandate, strategy, or style, they must make only investment recommendations or take only investment actions that are consistent with the stated objectives and constraints of the portfolio.

D Performance Presentation

When communicating investment performance information, Members and Candidates must make reasonable efforts to ensure that it is fair, accurate, and complete.

E Preservation of Confidentiality

Members and Candidates must keep information about current, former, and prospective clients confidential unless:

- 1 The information concerns illegal activities on the part of the client or prospective client,
- 2 Disclosure is required by law, or
- 3 The client or prospective client permits disclosure of the information.

IV. DUTIES TO EMPLOYERS

A Loyalty

In matters related to their employment, Members and Candidates must act for the benefit of their employer and not deprive their employer of the advantage of their skills and abilities, divulge confidential information, or otherwise cause harm to their employer.

B Additional Compensation Arrangements

Members and Candidates must not accept gifts, benefits, compensation, or consideration that competes with or might reasonably be expected to create a conflict of interest with their employer's interest unless they obtain written consent from all parties involved.

C Responsibilities of Supervisors

Members and Candidates must make reasonable efforts to ensure that anyone subject to their supervision or authority complies with applicable laws, rules, regulations, and the Code and Standards.

V. INVESTMENT ANALYSIS, RECOMMENDATIONS, AND ACTIONS

A Diligence and Reasonable Basis

Members and Candidates must:

- 1 Exercise diligence, independence, and thoroughness in analyzing investments, making investment recommendations, and taking investment actions.
- 2 Have a reasonable and adequate basis, supported by appropriate research and investigation, for any investment analysis, recommendation, or action.

B Communication with Clients and Prospective Clients

Members and Candidates must:

- 1 Disclose to clients and prospective clients the basic format and general principles of the investment processes they use to analyze investments, select securities, and construct portfolios and must promptly disclose any changes that might materially affect those processes.
- 2 Disclose to clients and prospective clients significant limitations and risks associated with the investment process.
- 3 Use reasonable judgment in identifying which factors are important to their investment analyses, recommendations, or actions and include those factors in communications with clients and prospective clients.
- 4 Distinguish between fact and opinion in the presentation of investment analysis and recommendations.

C Record Retention

Members and Candidates must develop and maintain appropriate records to support their investment analyses, recommendations, actions, and other investment-related communications with clients and prospective clients.

VI. CONFLICTS OF INTEREST

A Disclosure of Conflicts

Members and Candidates must make full and fair disclosure of all matters that could reasonably be expected to impair their independence and objectivity or interfere with respective duties to their clients, prospective clients, and employer. Members and Candidates must ensure that such disclosures are prominent, are delivered in plain language, and communicate the relevant information effectively.

B Priority of Transactions

Investment transactions for clients and employers must have priority over investment transactions in which a Member or Candidate is the beneficial owner.

C Referral Fees

Members and Candidates must disclose to their employer, clients, and prospective clients, as appropriate, any compensation, consideration, or benefit received from or paid to others for the recommendation of products or services.

VII. RESPONSIBILITIES AS A CFA INSTITUTE MEMBER OR CFA CANDIDATE

A Conduct as Participants in CFA Institute Programs

Members and Candidates must not engage in any conduct that compromises the reputation or integrity of CFA Institute or the CFA designation or the integrity, validity, or security of CFA Institute programs.

B Reference to CFA Institute, the CFA Designation, and the CFA Program

When referring to CFA Institute, CFA Institute membership, the CFA designation, or candidacy in the CFA Program, Members and Candidates must not misrepresent or exaggerate the meaning or implications of membership in CFA Institute, holding the CFA designation, or candidacy in the CFA Program.

READING

3


Guidance for Standards I–VII

LEARNING OUTCOMES

<i>Mastery</i>	<i>The candidate should be able to:</i>
<input type="checkbox"/>	a. demonstrate the application of the Code of Ethics and Standards of Professional Conduct to situations involving issues of professional integrity;
<input type="checkbox"/>	b. distinguish between conduct that conforms to the Code and Standards and conduct that violates the Code and Standards;
<input type="checkbox"/>	c. recommend practices and procedures designed to prevent violations of the Code of Ethics and Standards of Professional Conduct.

STANDARD I: PROFESSIONALISM

Standard I(A) Knowledge of the Law



Members and Candidates must understand and comply with all applicable laws, rules, and regulations (including the CFA Institute Code of Ethics and Standards of Professional Conduct) of any government, regulatory organization, licensing agency, or professional association governing their professional activities. In the event of conflict, Members and Candidates must comply with the more strict law, rule, or regulation. Members and Candidates must not knowingly participate or assist in and must dissociate from any violation of such laws, rules, or regulations.

Guidance

Highlights:

- *Relationship between the Code and Standards and Applicable Law*
- *Participation in or Association with Violations by Others*
- *Investment Products and Applicable Laws*

Members and candidates must understand the applicable laws and regulations of the countries and jurisdictions where they engage in professional activities. These activities may include, but are not limited to, trading of securities or other financial instruments, providing investment advice, conducting research, or performing other investment services. On the basis of their reasonable and good faith understanding, members and candidates must comply with the laws and regulations that directly govern their professional activities and resulting outcomes and that protect the interests of the clients.

When questions arise, members and candidates should know their firm’s policies and procedures for accessing compliance guidance. This standard does not require members and candidates to become experts, however, in compliance. Additionally, members and candidates are not required to have detailed knowledge of or be experts on all the laws that could potentially govern their activities.

During times of changing regulations, members and candidates must remain vigilant in maintaining their knowledge of the requirements for their professional activities. New financial products and processes, along with uncovered ethical missteps, create an environment for recurring and potentially wide-ranging regulatory changes. Members and candidates are also continually provided improved and enhanced methods of communicating with both clients and potential clients, such as mobile applications and web-based social networking platforms. As new local, regional, and global requirements are updated to address these and other changes, members, candidates, and their firms must adjust their procedures and practices to remain in compliance.

Relationship between the Code and Standards and Applicable Law

Some members or candidates may live, work, or provide investment services to clients living in a country that has no law or regulation governing a particular action or that has laws or regulations that differ from the requirements of the Code and Standards. When applicable law and the Code and Standards require different conduct, members and candidates must follow the more strict of the applicable law or the Code and Standards.

“Applicable law” is the law that governs the member’s or candidate’s conduct. Which law applies will depend on the particular facts and circumstances of each case. The “more strict” law or regulation is the law or regulation that imposes greater restrictions on the action of the member or candidate or calls for the member or candidate to exert a greater degree of action that protects the interests of investors. For example, applicable law or regulation may not require members and candidates to disclose referral fees received from or paid to others for the recommendation of investment products or services. Because the Code and Standards impose this obligation, however, members and candidates must disclose the existence of such fees.

Members and candidates must adhere to the following principles:

- Members and candidates must comply with applicable laws or regulations related to their professional activities.
- Members and candidates must not engage in conduct that constitutes a violation of the Code and Standards, even though it may otherwise be legal.
- In the absence of any applicable law or regulation or when the Code and Standards impose a higher degree of responsibility than applicable laws and regulations, members and candidates must adhere to the Code and Standards. Applications of these principles are outlined in Exhibit 1.

The applicable laws governing the responsibilities of a member or candidate should be viewed as the minimal threshold of acceptable actions. When members and candidates take actions that exceed the minimal requirements, they further support the conduct required of Standard I(A).

CFA Institute members are obligated to abide by the CFA Institute Articles of Incorporation, Bylaws, Code of Ethics, Standards of Professional Conduct, Rules of Procedure, Membership Agreement, and other applicable rules promulgated by CFA Institute, all as amended periodically. CFA candidates who are not members must also abide by these documents (except for the Membership Agreement) as well as rules and regulations related to the administration of the CFA examination, the Candidate Responsibility Statement, and the Candidate Pledge.

Participation in or Association with Violations by Others

Members and candidates are responsible for violations in which they *knowingly* participate or assist. Although members and candidates are presumed to have knowledge of all applicable laws, rules, and regulations, CFA Institute acknowledges that members may not recognize violations if they are not aware of all the facts giving rise to the violations. Standard I(A) applies when members and candidates know or should know that their conduct may contribute to a violation of applicable laws, rules, or regulations or the Code and Standards.

If a member or candidate has reasonable grounds to believe that imminent or ongoing client or employer activities are illegal or unethical, the member or candidate must dissociate, or separate, from the activity. In extreme cases, dissociation may require a member or candidate to leave his or her employment. Members and candidates may take the following intermediate steps to dissociate from ethical violations of others when direct discussions with the person or persons committing the violation are unsuccessful. The first step should be to attempt to stop the behavior by bringing it to the attention of the employer through a supervisor or the firm's compliance department. If this attempt is unsuccessful, then members and candidates have a responsibility to step away and dissociate from the activity. Dissociation practices will differ on the basis of the member's or candidate's role in the investment industry. It may include removing one's name from written reports or recommendations, asking for a different assignment, or refusing to accept a new client or continue to advise a current client. Inaction combined with continuing association with those involved in illegal or unethical conduct may be construed as participation or assistance in the illegal or unethical conduct.

CFA Institute strongly encourages members and candidates to report potential violations of the Code and Standards committed by fellow members and candidates. Although a failure to report is less likely to be construed as a violation than a failure to dissociate from unethical conduct, the impact of inactivity on the integrity of capital markets can be significant. Although the Code and Standards do not compel members and candidates to report violations to their governmental or regulatory organizations unless such disclosure is mandatory under applicable law (voluntary reporting is often referred to as whistleblowing), such disclosure may be prudent under certain circumstances. Members and candidates should consult their legal and compliance advisers for guidance.

Additionally, CFA Institute encourages members, nonmembers, clients, and the investing public to report violations of the Code and Standards by CFA Institute members or CFA candidates by submitting a complaint in writing to the CFA Institute Professional Conduct Program via e-mail (pcprogram@cfainstitute.org) or the CFA Institute website (www.cfainstitute.org).

Investment Products and Applicable Laws

Members and candidates involved in creating or maintaining investment services or investment products or packages of securities and/or derivatives should be mindful of where these products or packages will be sold as well as their places of origination. The applicable laws and regulations of the countries or regions of origination and expected sale should be understood by those responsible for the supervision of

the services or creation and maintenance of the products or packages. Members or candidates should make reasonable efforts to review whether associated firms that are distributing products or services developed by their employing firm also abide by the laws and regulations of the countries and regions of distribution. Members and candidates should undertake the necessary due diligence when transacting cross-border business to understand the multiple applicable laws and regulations in order to protect the reputation of their firm and themselves.

Given the complexity that can arise with business transactions in today's market, there may be some uncertainty surrounding which laws or regulations are considered applicable when activities are being conducted in multiple jurisdictions. Members and candidates should seek the appropriate guidance, potentially including the firm's compliance or legal departments and legal counsel outside the organization, to gain a reasonable understanding of their responsibilities and how to implement them appropriately.

Exhibit 1 Global Application of the Code and Standards

Members and candidates who practice in multiple jurisdictions may be subject to varied securities laws and regulations. If applicable law is stricter than the requirements of the Code and Standards, members and candidates must adhere to applicable law; otherwise, they must adhere to the Code and Standards. The following chart provides illustrations involving a member who may be subject to the securities laws and regulations of three different types of countries:

NS: country with no securities laws or regulations

LS: country with *less* strict securities laws and regulations than the Code and Standards

MS: country with *more* strict securities laws and regulations than the Code and Standards

Applicable Law	Duties	Explanation
Member resides in NS country, does business in LS country; LS law applies.	Member must adhere to the Code and Standards.	Because applicable law is less strict than the Code and Standards, the member must adhere to the Code and Standards.
Member resides in NS country, does business in MS country; MS law applies.	Member must adhere to the law of MS country.	Because applicable law is stricter than the Code and Standards, member must adhere to the more strict applicable law.
Member resides in LS country, does business in NS country; LS law applies.	Member must adhere to the Code and Standards.	Because applicable law is less strict than the Code and Standards, member must adhere to the Code and Standards.
Member resides in LS country, does business in MS country; MS law applies.	Member must adhere to the law of MS country.	Because applicable law is stricter than the Code and Standards, member must adhere to the more strict applicable law.

Exhibit 1 (Continued)

Applicable Law	Duties	Explanation
Member resides in LS country, does business in NS country; LS law applies, but it states that law of locality where business is conducted governs.	Member must adhere to the Code and Standards.	Because applicable law states that the law of the locality where the business is conducted governs and there is no local law, the member must adhere to the Code and Standards.
Member resides in LS country, does business in MS country; LS law applies, but it states that law of locality where business is conducted governs.	Member must adhere to the law of MS country.	Because applicable law of the locality where the business is conducted governs and local law is stricter than the Code and Standards, member must adhere to the more strict applicable law.
Member resides in MS country, does business in LS country; MS law applies.	Member must adhere to the law of MS country.	Because applicable law is stricter than the Code and Standards, member must adhere to the more strict applicable law.
Member resides in MS country, does business in LS country; MS law applies, but it states that law of locality where business is conducted governs.	Member must adhere to the Code and Standards.	Because applicable law states that the law of the locality where the business is conducted governs and local law is less strict than the Code and Standards, member must adhere to the Code and Standards.
Member resides in MS country, does business in LS country with a client who is a citizen of LS country; MS law applies, but it states that the law of the client's home country governs.	Member must adhere to the Code and Standards.	Because applicable law states that the law of the client's home country governs (which is less strict than the Code and Standards), member must adhere to the Code and Standards.
Member resides in MS country, does business in LS country with a client who is a citizen of MS country; MS law applies, but it states that the law of the client's home country governs.	Member must adhere to the law of MS country.	Because applicable law states that the law of the client's home country governs and the law of the client's home country is stricter than the Code and Standards, the member must adhere to the more strict applicable law.

Recommended Procedures for Compliance

Members and Candidates

Suggested methods by which members and candidates can acquire and maintain understanding of applicable laws, rules, and regulations include the following:

- *Stay informed:* Members and candidates should establish or encourage their employers to establish a procedure by which employees are regularly informed about changes in applicable laws, rules, regulations, and case law. In many instances, the employer’s compliance department or legal counsel can provide such information in the form of memorandums distributed to employees in the organization. Also, participation in an internal or external continuing education program is a practical method of staying current.
- *Review procedures:* Members and candidates should review, or encourage their employers to review, the firm’s written compliance procedures on a regular basis to ensure that the procedures reflect current law and provide adequate guidance to employees about what is permissible conduct under the law and/or the Code and Standards. Recommended compliance procedures for specific items of the Code and Standards are discussed in this *Handbook* in the “Guidance” sections associated with each standard.
- *Maintain current files:* Members and candidates should maintain or encourage their employers to maintain readily accessible current reference copies of applicable statutes, rules, regulations, and important cases.

Distribution Area Laws

Members and candidates should make reasonable efforts to understand the applicable laws—both country and regional—for the countries and regions where their investment products are developed and are most likely to be distributed to clients.

Legal Counsel

When in doubt about the appropriate action to undertake, it is recommended that a member or candidate seek the advice of compliance personnel or legal counsel concerning legal requirements. If a potential violation is being committed by a fellow employee, it may also be prudent for the member or candidate to seek the advice of the firm’s compliance department or legal counsel.

Dissociation

When dissociating from an activity that violates the Code and Standards, members and candidates should document the violation and urge their firms to attempt to persuade the perpetrator(s) to cease such conduct. To dissociate from the conduct, a member or candidate may have to resign his or her employment.

Firms

The formality and complexity of compliance procedures for firms depend on the nature and size of the organization and the nature of its investment operations. Members and candidates should encourage their firms to consider the following policies and procedures to support the principles of Standard I(A):

- *Develop and/or adopt a code of ethics:* The ethical culture of an organization starts at the top. Members and candidates should encourage their supervisors or managers to adopt a code of ethics. Adhering to a code of ethics facilitates solutions when people face ethical dilemmas and can prevent the need for employees to resort to a “whistleblowing” solution publicly alleging

concealed misconduct. CFA Institute has published the *Asset Manager Code of Professional Conduct*, which firms may adopt or use as the basis for their codes (visit www.cfainstitute.org).

- *Provide information on applicable laws:* Pertinent information that highlights applicable laws and regulations might be distributed to employees or made available in a central location. Information sources might include primary information developed by the relevant government, governmental agencies, regulatory organizations, licensing agencies, and professional associations (e.g., from their websites); law firm memorandums or newsletters; and association memorandums or publications (e.g., *CFA Institute Magazine*).
- *Establish procedures for reporting violations:* Firms might provide written protocols for reporting suspected violations of laws, regulations, or company policies.

Application of the Standard

Example 1 (Notification of Known Violations):

Michael Allen works for a brokerage firm and is responsible for an underwriting of securities. A company official gives Allen information indicating that the financial statements Allen filed with the regulator overstate the issuer's earnings. Allen seeks the advice of the brokerage firm's general counsel, who states that it would be difficult for the regulator to prove that Allen has been involved in any wrongdoing.

Comment: Although it is recommended that members and candidates seek the advice of legal counsel, the reliance on such advice does not absolve a member or candidate from the requirement to comply with the law or regulation. Allen should report this situation to his supervisor, seek an independent legal opinion, and determine whether the regulator should be notified of the error.

Example 2 (Dissociating from a Violation):

Lawrence Brown's employer, an investment banking firm, is the principal underwriter for an issue of convertible debentures by the Courtney Company. Brown discovers that the Courtney Company has concealed severe third-quarter losses in its foreign operations. The preliminary prospectus has already been distributed.

Comment: Knowing that the preliminary prospectus is misleading, Brown should report his findings to the appropriate supervisory persons in his firm. If the matter is not remedied and Brown's employer does not dissociate from the underwriting, Brown should sever all his connections with the underwriting. Brown should also seek legal advice to determine whether additional reporting or other action should be taken.

Example 3 (Dissociating from a Violation):

Kamisha Washington's firm advertises its past performance record by showing the 10-year return of a composite of its client accounts. Washington discovers, however, that the composite omits the performance of accounts that have left the firm during the 10-year period, whereas the description of the composite indicates the inclusion of all firm accounts. This omission has led to an inflated performance figure. Washington is asked to use promotional material that includes the erroneous performance number when soliciting business for the firm.

Comment: Misrepresenting performance is a violation of the Code and Standards. Although she did not calculate the performance herself, Washington would be assisting in violating Standard I(A) if she were to use the inflated performance number when soliciting clients. She must dissociate herself from the activity. If discussing the misleading number with the person responsible is not an option for correcting the problem, she can bring the situation to the attention of her supervisor or the compliance department at her firm. If her firm is unwilling to recalculate performance, she must refrain from using the misleading promotional material and should notify the firm of her reasons. If the firm insists that she use the material, she should consider whether her obligation to dissociate from the activity requires her to seek other employment.

Example 4 (Following the Highest Requirements):

James Collins is an investment analyst for a major Wall Street brokerage firm. He works in a developing country with a rapidly modernizing economy and a growing capital market. Local securities laws are minimal—in form and content—and include no punitive prohibitions against insider trading.

Comment: Collins must abide by the requirements of the Code and Standards, which might be more strict than the rules of the developing country. He should be aware of the risks that a small market and the absence of a fairly regulated flow of information to the market represent to his ability to obtain information and make timely judgments. He should include this factor in formulating his advice to clients. In handling material nonpublic information that accidentally comes into his possession, he must follow Standard II(A)—Material Nonpublic Information.

Example 5 (Following the Highest Requirements):

Laura Jameson works for a multinational investment adviser based in the United States. Jameson lives and works as a registered investment adviser in the tiny, but wealthy, island nation of Karramba. Karramba's securities laws state that no investment adviser registered and working in that country can participate in initial public offerings (IPOs) for the adviser's personal account. Jameson, believing that, as a US citizen working for a US-based company, she should comply only with US law, has ignored this Karrambian law. In addition, Jameson believes that as a charterholder, as long as she adheres to the Code and Standards requirement that she disclose her participation in any IPO to her employer and clients when such ownership creates a conflict of interest, she is meeting the highest ethical requirements.

Comment: Jameson is in violation of Standard I(A). As a registered investment adviser in Karramba, Jameson is prevented by Karrambian securities law from participating in IPOs regardless of the law of her home country. In addition, because the law of the country where she is working is stricter than the Code and Standards, she must follow the stricter requirements of the local law rather than the requirements of the Code and Standards.

Example 6 (Laws and Regulations Based on Religious Tenets):

Amanda Janney is employed as a fixed-income portfolio manager for a large international firm. She is on a team within her firm that is responsible for creating and managing a fixed-income hedge fund to be sold throughout the firm's distribution centers to high-net-worth clients. Her firm receives expressions of interest from potential clients from the Middle East who are seeking investments that comply with Islamic

law. The marketing and promotional materials for the fixed-income hedge fund do not specify whether or not the fund is a suitable investment for an investor seeking compliance with Islamic law. Because the fund is being distributed globally, Janney is concerned about the reputation of the fund and the firm and believes disclosure of whether or not the fund complies with Islamic law could help minimize potential mistakes with placing this investment.

Comment: As the financial market continues to become globalized, members and candidates will need to be aware of the differences between cultural and religious laws and requirements as well as the different governmental laws and regulations. Janney and the firm could be proactive in their efforts to acknowledge areas where the new fund may not be suitable for clients.

Example 7 (Reporting Potential Unethical Actions):

Krista Blume is a junior portfolio manager for high-net-worth portfolios at a large global investment manager. She observes a number of new portfolios and relationships coming from a country in Europe where the firm did not have previous business and is told that a broker in that country is responsible for this new business. At a meeting on allocation of research resources to third-party research firms, Blume notes that this broker has been added to the list and is allocated payments for research. However, she knows the portfolios do not invest in securities in the broker's country, and she has not seen any research come from this broker. Blume asks her supervisor about the name being on the list and is told that someone in marketing is receiving the research and that the name being on the list is OK. She believes that what may be going on is that the broker is being paid for new business through the inappropriate research payments, and she wishes to dissociate from the misconduct.


Comment: Blume should follow the firm's policies and procedures for reporting potential unethical activity, which may include discussions with her supervisor or someone in a designated compliance department. She should communicate her concerns appropriately while advocating for disclosure between the new broker relationship and the research payments.

Example 8 (Failure to Maintain Knowledge of the Law):

Colleen White is excited to use new technology to communicate with clients and potential clients. She recently began posting investment information, including performance reports and investment opinions and recommendations, to her Facebook page. In addition, she sends out brief announcements, opinions, and thoughts via her Twitter account (for example, "Prospects for future growth of XYZ company look good! #makingmoney4U"). Prior to White's use of these social media platforms, the local regulator had issued new requirements and guidance governing online electronic communication. White's communications appear to conflict with the recent regulatory announcements.

Comment: White is in violation of Standard I(A) because her communications do not comply with the existing guidance and regulation governing use of social media. White must be aware of the evolving legal requirements pertaining to new and dynamic areas of the financial services industry that are applicable to her. She should seek guidance from appropriate, knowledgeable, and reliable sources, such as her firm's compliance department, external service providers, or outside counsel, unless she diligently follows legal and regulatory trends affecting her professional responsibilities.

Standard I(B) Independence and Objectivity



Members and Candidates must use reasonable care and judgment to achieve and maintain independence and objectivity in their professional activities. Members and Candidates must not offer, solicit, or accept any gift, benefit, compensation, or consideration that reasonably could be expected to compromise their own or another's independence and objectivity.

Guidance

Highlights:

- *Buy-Side Clients*
- *Fund Manager and Custodial Relationships*
- *Investment Banking Relationships*
- *Performance Measurement and Attribution*
- *Public Companies*
- *Credit Rating Agency Opinions*
- *Influence during the Manager Selection/Procurement Process*
- *Issuer-Paid Research*
- *Travel Funding*

Standard I(B) states the responsibility of CFA Institute members and candidates in the CFA Program to maintain independence and objectivity so that their clients will have the benefit of their work and opinions unaffected by any potential conflict of interest or other circumstance adversely affecting their judgment. Every member and candidate should endeavor to avoid situations that could cause or be perceived to cause a loss of independence or objectivity in recommending investments or taking investment action.

External sources may try to influence the investment process by offering analysts and portfolio managers a variety of benefits. Corporations may seek expanded research coverage, issuers and underwriters may wish to promote new securities offerings, brokers may want to increase commission business, and independent rating agencies may be influenced by the company requesting the rating. Benefits may include gifts, invitations to lavish functions, tickets, favors, or job referrals. One type of benefit is the allocation of shares in oversubscribed IPOs to investment managers for their personal accounts. This practice affords managers the opportunity to make quick profits that may not be available to their clients. Such a practice is prohibited under Standard I(B). Modest gifts and entertainment are acceptable, but special care must be taken by members and candidates to resist subtle and not-so-subtle pressures to act in conflict with the interests of their clients. Best practice dictates that members and candidates reject any offer of gift or entertainment that could be expected to threaten their independence and objectivity.

Receiving a gift, benefit, or consideration from a *client* can be distinguished from gifts given by entities seeking to influence a member or candidate to the detriment of other clients. In a client relationship, the client has already entered some type of compensation arrangement with the member, candidate, or his or her firm. A gift from a client could be considered supplementary compensation. The potential for obtaining influence to the detriment of other clients, although present, is not as great

as in situations where no compensation arrangement exists. When possible, prior to accepting “bonuses” or gifts from clients, members and candidates should disclose to their employers such benefits offered by clients. If notification is not possible prior to acceptance, members and candidates must disclose to their employer benefits previously accepted from clients. Disclosure allows the employer of a member or candidate to make an independent determination about the extent to which the gift may affect the member’s or candidate’s independence and objectivity.

Members and candidates may also come under pressure from their own firms to, for example, issue favorable research reports or recommendations for certain companies with potential or continuing business relationships with the firm. The situation may be aggravated if an executive of the company sits on the bank or investment firm’s board and attempts to interfere in investment decision making. Members and candidates acting in a sales or marketing capacity must be especially mindful of their objectivity in promoting appropriate investments for their clients.

Left unmanaged, pressures that threaten independence place research analysts in a difficult position and may jeopardize their ability to act independently and objectively. One of the ways that research analysts have coped with these pressures in the past is to use subtle and ambiguous language in their recommendations or to temper the tone of their research reports. Such subtleties are lost on some investors, however, who reasonably expect research reports and recommendations to be straightforward and transparent and to communicate clearly an analyst’s views based on unbiased analysis and independent judgment.

Members and candidates are personally responsible for maintaining independence and objectivity when preparing research reports, making investment recommendations, and taking investment action on behalf of clients. Recommendations must convey the member’s or candidate’s true opinions, free of bias from internal or external pressures, and be stated in clear and unambiguous language.

Members and candidates also should be aware that some of their professional or social activities within CFA Institute or its member societies may subtly threaten their independence or objectivity. When seeking corporate financial support for conventions, seminars, or even weekly society luncheons, the members or candidates responsible for the activities should evaluate both the actual effect of such solicitations on their independence and whether their objectivity might be perceived to be compromised in the eyes of their clients.

Buy-Side Clients

One source of pressure on sell-side analysts is buy-side clients. Institutional clients are traditionally the primary users of sell-side research, either directly or with soft dollar brokerage. Portfolio managers may have significant positions in the security of a company under review. A rating downgrade may adversely affect the portfolio’s performance, particularly in the short term, because the sensitivity of stock prices to ratings changes has increased in recent years. A downgrade may also affect the manager’s compensation, which is usually tied to portfolio performance. Moreover, portfolio performance is subject to media and public scrutiny, which may affect the manager’s professional reputation. Consequently, some portfolio managers implicitly or explicitly support sell-side ratings inflation.

Portfolio managers have a responsibility to respect and foster the intellectual honesty of sell-side research. Therefore, it is improper for portfolio managers to threaten or engage in retaliatory practices, such as reporting sell-side analysts to the covered company in order to instigate negative corporate reactions. Although most portfolio managers do not engage in such practices, the perception by the research analyst that a reprisal is possible may cause concern and make it difficult for the analyst to maintain independence and objectivity.

Fund Manager and Custodial Relationships

Research analysts are not the only people who must be concerned with maintaining their independence. Members and candidates who are responsible for hiring and retaining outside managers and third-party custodians should not accept gifts, entertainment, or travel funding that may be perceived as impairing their decisions. The use of secondary fund managers has evolved into a common practice to manage specific asset allocations. The use of third-party custodians is common practice for independent investment advisory firms and helps them with trading capabilities and reporting requirements. Primary and secondary fund managers, as well as third-party custodians, often arrange educational and marketing events to inform others about their business strategies, investment process, or custodial services. Members and candidates must review the merits of each offer individually in determining whether they may attend yet maintain their independence.

Investment Banking Relationships

Some sell-side firms may exert pressure on their analysts to issue favorable research reports on current or prospective investment banking clients. For many of these firms, income from investment banking has become increasingly important to overall firm profitability because brokerage income has declined as a result of price competition. Consequently, firms offering investment banking services work hard to develop and maintain relationships with investment banking clients and prospects. These companies are often covered by the firm's research analysts because companies often select their investment banks on the basis of the reputation of their research analysts, the quality of their work, and their standing in the industry.

In some countries, research analysts frequently work closely with their investment banking colleagues to help evaluate prospective investment banking clients. In other countries, because of past abuses in managing the obvious conflicts of interest, regulators have established clear rules prohibiting the interaction of these groups. Although collaboration between research analysts and investment banking colleagues may benefit the firm and enhance market efficiency (e.g., by allowing firms to assess risks more accurately and make better pricing assumptions), it requires firms to carefully balance the conflicts of interest inherent in the collaboration. Having analysts work with investment bankers is appropriate only when the conflicts are adequately and effectively managed and disclosed. Firm managers have a responsibility to provide an environment in which analysts are neither coerced nor enticed into issuing research that does not reflect their true opinions. Firms should require public disclosure of actual conflicts of interest to investors.

Members, candidates, and their firms must adopt and follow perceived best practices in maintaining independence and objectivity in the corporate culture and protecting analysts from undue pressure by their investment banking colleagues. The "firewalls" traditionally built between these two functions must be managed to minimize conflicts of interest; indeed, enhanced firewall policies may go as far as prohibiting all communications between these groups. A key element of an enhanced firewall is separate reporting structures for personnel on the research side and personnel on the investment banking side. For example, investment banking personnel should not have any authority to approve, disapprove, or make changes to research reports or recommendations. Another element should be a compensation arrangement that minimizes the pressures on research analysts and rewards objectivity and accuracy. Compensation arrangements should not link analyst remuneration directly to investment banking assignments in which the analyst may participate as a team member. Firms should also regularly review their policies and procedures to determine whether

analysts are adequately safeguarded and to improve the transparency of disclosures relating to conflicts of interest. The highest level of transparency is achieved when disclosures are prominent and specific rather than marginalized and generic.

Performance Measurement and Attribution

Members and candidates working within a firm's investment performance measurement department may also be presented with situations that challenge their independence and objectivity. As performance analysts, their analyses may reveal instances where managers may appear to have strayed from their mandate. Additionally, the performance analyst may receive requests to alter the construction of composite indexes owing to negative results for a selected account or fund. The member or candidate must not allow internal or external influences to affect their independence and objectivity as they faithfully complete their performance calculation and analysis-related responsibilities.

Public Companies

Analysts may be pressured to issue favorable reports and recommendations by the companies they follow. Not every stock is a "buy," and not every research report is favorable—for many reasons, including the cyclical nature of many business activities and market fluctuations. For instance, a "good company" does not always translate into a "good stock" rating if the current stock price is fully valued. In making an investment recommendation, the analyst is responsible for anticipating, interpreting, and assessing a company's prospects and stock price performance in a factual manner. Many company managers, however, believe that their company's stock is undervalued, and these managers may find it difficult to accept critical research reports or ratings downgrades. Company managers' compensation may also be dependent on stock performance.

Due diligence in financial research and analysis involves gathering information from a wide variety of sources, including public disclosure documents (such as proxy statements, annual reports, and other regulatory filings) and also company management and investor-relations personnel, suppliers, customers, competitors, and other relevant sources. Research analysts may justifiably fear that companies will limit their ability to conduct thorough research by denying analysts who have "negative" views direct access to company managers and/or barring them from conference calls and other communication venues. Retaliatory practices include companies bringing legal action against analysts personally and/or their firms to seek monetary damages for the economic effects of negative reports and recommendations. Although few companies engage in such behavior, the perception that a reprisal is possible is a reasonable concern for analysts. This concern may make it difficult for them to conduct the comprehensive research needed to make objective recommendations. For further information and guidance, members and candidates should refer to the CFA Institute publication *Best Practice Guidelines Governing Analyst/Corporate Issuer Relations* (www.cfainstitute.org).

Credit Rating Agency Opinions

Credit rating agencies provide a service by grading the fixed-income products offered by companies. Analysts face challenges related to incentives and compensation schemes that may be tied to the final rating and successful placement of the product. Members and candidates employed at rating agencies should ensure that procedures and processes at the agencies prevent undue influences from a sponsoring company during the analysis. Members and candidates should abide by their agencies' and the industry's standards of conduct regarding the analytical process and the distribution of their reports.

The work of credit rating agencies also raises concerns similar to those inherent in investment banking relationships. Analysts may face pressure to issue ratings at a specific level because of other services the agency offers companies—namely, advising on the development of structured products. The rating agencies need to develop the necessary firewalls and protections to allow the independent operations of their different business lines.

When using information provided by credit rating agencies, members and candidates should be mindful of the potential conflicts of interest. And because of the potential conflicts, members and candidates may need to independently validate the rating granted.

Influence during the Manager Selection/Procurement Process

Members and candidates may find themselves on either side of the manager selection process. An individual may be on the hiring side as a representative of a pension organization or an investment committee member of an endowment or a charitable organization. Additionally, other members may be representing their organizations in attempts to earn new investment allocation mandates. The responsibility of members and candidates to maintain their independence and objectivity extends to the hiring or firing of those who provide business services beyond investment management.

When serving in a hiring capacity, members and candidates should not solicit gifts, contributions, or other compensation that may affect their independence and objectivity. Solicitations do not have to benefit members and candidates personally to conflict with Standard I(B). Requesting contributions to a favorite charity or political organization may also be perceived as an attempt to influence the decision-making process. Additionally, members and candidates serving in a hiring capacity should refuse gifts, donations, and other offered compensation that may be perceived to influence their decision-making process.

When working to earn a new investment allocation, members and candidates should not offer gifts, contributions, or other compensation to influence the decision of the hiring representative. The offering of these items with the intent to impair the independence and objectivity of another person would not comply with Standard I(B). Such prohibited actions may include offering donations to a charitable organization or political candidate referred by the hiring representative.

A clear example of improperly influencing hiring representatives was displayed in the “pay-to-play” scandal involving government-sponsored pension funds in the United States. Managers looking to gain lucrative allocations from the large funds made requested donations to the political campaigns of individuals directly responsible for the hiring decisions. This scandal and other similar events have led to new laws requiring additional reporting concerning political contributions and bans on hiring—or hiring delays for—managers that made campaign contributions to representatives associated with the decision-making process.

Issuer-Paid Research

In light of the recent reduction of sell-side research coverage, many companies, seeking to increase visibility both in the financial markets and with potential investors, have hired analysts to produce research reports analyzing their companies. These reports bridge the gap created by the lack of coverage and can be an effective method of communicating with investors.

Issuer-paid research conducted by independent analysts, however, is fraught with potential conflicts. Depending on how the research is written and distributed, investors may be misled into believing that the research is from an independent source when, in reality, it has been paid for by the subject company.

Members and candidates must adhere to strict standards of conduct that govern how the research is to be conducted and what disclosures must be made in the report. Analysts must engage in thorough, independent, and unbiased analysis and must fully disclose potential conflicts of interest, including the nature of their compensation. Otherwise, analysts risk misleading investors.

Investors need clear, credible, and thorough information about companies, and they need research based on independent thought. At a minimum, issuer-paid research should include a thorough analysis of the company's financial statements based on publicly disclosed information, benchmarking within a peer group, and industry analysis. Analysts must exercise diligence, independence, and thoroughness in conducting their research in an objective manner. Analysts must distinguish between fact and opinion in their reports. Conclusions must have a reasonable and adequate basis and must be supported by appropriate research.

Independent analysts must also strictly limit the type of compensation that they accept for conducting issuer-paid research. Otherwise, the content and conclusions of the reports could reasonably be expected to be determined or affected by compensation from the sponsoring companies. Compensation that might influence the research report could be direct, such as payment based on the conclusions of the report, or indirect, such as stock warrants or other equity instruments that could increase in value on the basis of positive coverage in the report. In such instances, the independent analyst has an incentive to avoid including negative information or making negative conclusions. Best practice is for independent analysts, prior to writing their reports, to negotiate only a flat fee for their work that is not linked to their conclusions or recommendations.

Travel Funding

The benefits related to accepting paid travel extend beyond the cost savings to the member or candidate and his firm, such as the chance to talk exclusively with the executives of a company or learning more about the investment options provided by an investment organization. Acceptance also comes with potential concerns; for example, members and candidates may be influenced by these discussions when flying on a corporate or chartered jet or attending sponsored conferences where many expenses, including airfare and lodging, are covered. To avoid the appearance of compromising their independence and objectivity, best practice dictates that members and candidates always use commercial transportation at their expense or at the expense of their firm rather than accept paid travel arrangements from an outside company. Should commercial transportation be unavailable, members and candidates may accept modestly arranged travel to participate in appropriate information-gathering events, such as a property tour.

Recommended Procedures for Compliance

Members and candidates should adhere to the following practices and should encourage their firms to establish procedures to avoid violations of Standard I(B):

- *Protect the integrity of opinions:* Members, candidates, and their firms should establish policies stating that every research report concerning the securities of a corporate client should reflect the unbiased opinion of the analyst. Firms should also design compensation systems that protect the integrity of the investment decision process by maintaining the independence and objectivity of analysts.

- *Create a restricted list:* If the firm is unwilling to permit dissemination of adverse opinions about a corporate client, members and candidates should encourage the firm to remove the controversial company from the research universe and put it on a restricted list so that the firm disseminates only factual information about the company.
- *Restrict special cost arrangements:* When attending meetings at an issuer's headquarters, members and candidates should pay for commercial transportation and hotel charges. No corporate issuer should reimburse members or candidates for air transportation. Members and candidates should encourage issuers to limit the use of corporate aircraft to situations in which commercial transportation is not available or in which efficient movement could not otherwise be arranged. Members and candidates should take particular care that when frequent meetings are held between an individual issuer and an individual member or candidate, the issuer should not always host the member or candidate.
- *Limit gifts:* Members and candidates must limit the acceptance of gratuities and/or gifts to token items. Standard I(B) does not preclude customary, ordinary business-related entertainment as long as its purpose is not to influence or reward members or candidates. Firms should consider a strict value limit for acceptable gifts that is based on the local or regional customs and should address whether the limit is per gift or an aggregate annual value.
- *Restrict investments:* Members and candidates should encourage their investment firms to develop formal policies related to employee purchases of equity or equity-related IPOs. Firms should require prior approval for employee participation in IPOs, with prompt disclosure of investment actions taken following the offering. Strict limits should be imposed on investment personnel acquiring securities in private placements.
- *Review procedures:* Members and candidates should encourage their firms to implement effective supervisory and review procedures to ensure that analysts and portfolio managers comply with policies relating to their personal investment activities.
- *Independence policy:* Members, candidates, and their firms should establish a formal written policy on the independence and objectivity of research and implement reporting structures and review procedures to ensure that research analysts do not report to and are not supervised or controlled by any department of the firm that could compromise the independence of the analyst. More detailed recommendations related to a firm's policies regarding research objectivity are set forth in the CFA Institute statement *Research Objectivity Standards* (www.cfainstitute.org).
- *Appointed officer:* Firms should appoint a senior officer with oversight responsibilities for compliance with the firm's code of ethics and all regulations concerning its business. Firms should provide every employee with the procedures and policies for reporting potentially unethical behavior, violations of regulations, or other activities that may harm the firm's reputation.

Application of the Standard

Example 1 (Travel Expenses):

Steven Taylor, a mining analyst with Bronson Brokers, is invited by Precision Metals to join a group of his peers in a tour of mining facilities in several western US states. The company arranges for chartered group flights from site to site and for accommodations in Spartan Motels, the only chain with accommodations near the mines,

for three nights. Taylor allows Precision Metals to pick up his tab, as do the other analysts, with one exception—John Adams, an employee of a large trust company who insists on following his company’s policy and paying for his hotel room himself.

Comment: The policy of the company where Adams works complies closely with Standard I(B) by avoiding even the appearance of a conflict of interest, but Taylor and the other analysts were not necessarily violating Standard I(B). In general, when allowing companies to pay for travel and/or accommodations in these circumstances, members and candidates must use their judgment. They must be on guard that such arrangements not impinge on a member’s or candidate’s independence and objectivity. In this example, the trip was strictly for business and Taylor was not accepting irrelevant or lavish hospitality. The itinerary required chartered flights, for which analysts were not expected to pay. The accommodations were modest. These arrangements are not unusual and did not violate Standard I(B) as long as Taylor’s independence and objectivity were not compromised. In the final analysis, members and candidates should consider both whether they can remain objective and whether their integrity might be perceived by their clients to have been compromised.

Example 2 (Research Independence):

Susan Dillon, an analyst in the corporate finance department of an investment services firm, is making a presentation to a potential new business client that includes the promise that her firm will provide full research coverage of the potential client.

Comment: Dillon may agree to provide research coverage, but she must not commit her firm’s research department to providing a favorable recommendation. The firm’s recommendation (favorable, neutral, or unfavorable) must be based on an independent and objective investigation and analysis of the company and its securities.

Example 3 (Research Independence and Intrafirm Pressure):

Walter Fritz is an equity analyst with Hilton Brokerage who covers the mining industry. He has concluded that the stock of Metals & Mining is overpriced at its current level, but he is concerned that a negative research report will hurt the good relationship between Metals & Mining and the investment banking division of his firm. In fact, a senior manager of Hilton Brokerage has just sent him a copy of a proposal his firm has made to Metals & Mining to underwrite a debt offering. Fritz needs to produce a report right away and is concerned about issuing a less-than-favorable rating.

Comment: Fritz’s analysis of Metals & Mining must be objective and based solely on consideration of company fundamentals. Any pressure from other divisions of his firm is inappropriate. This conflict could have been eliminated if, in anticipation of the offering, Hilton Brokerage had placed Metals & Mining on a restricted list for its sales force.

Example 4 (Research Independence and Issuer Relationship Pressure):

As in Example 3, Walter Fritz has concluded that Metals & Mining stock is overvalued at its current level, but he is concerned that a negative research report might jeopardize a close rapport that he has nurtured over the years with Metals & Mining’s CEO, chief finance officer, and investment relations officer. Fritz is concerned that a negative report might result also in management retaliation—for instance, cutting him off from participating in conference calls when a quarterly earnings release is made,

denying him the ability to ask questions on such calls, and/or denying him access to top management for arranging group meetings between Hilton Brokerage clients and top Metals & Mining managers.

Comment: As in Example 3, Fritz’s analysis must be objective and based solely on consideration of company fundamentals. Any pressure from Metals & Mining is inappropriate. Fritz should reinforce the integrity of his conclusions by stressing that his investment recommendation is based on relative valuation, which may include qualitative issues with respect to Metals & Mining’s management.

Example 5 (Research Independence and Sales Pressure):

As support for the sales effort of her corporate bond department, Lindsey Warner offers credit guidance to purchasers of fixed-income securities. Her compensation is closely linked to the performance of the corporate bond department. Near the quarter’s end, Warner’s firm has a large inventory position in the bonds of Milton, Ltd., and has been unable to sell the bonds because of Milton’s recent announcement of an operating problem. Salespeople have asked her to contact large clients to push the bonds.

Comment: Unethical sales practices create significant potential violations of the Code and Standards. Warner’s opinion of the Milton bonds must not be affected by internal pressure or compensation. In this case, Warner must refuse to push the Milton bonds unless she is able to justify that the market price has already adjusted for the operating problem.

Example 6 (Research Independence and Prior Coverage):

Jill Jorund is a securities analyst following airline stocks and a rising star at her firm. Her boss has been carrying a “buy” recommendation on International Airlines and asks Jorund to take over coverage of that airline. He tells Jorund that under no circumstances should the prevailing buy recommendation be changed.

Comment: Jorund must be independent and objective in her analysis of International Airlines. If she believes that her boss’s instructions have compromised her, she has two options: She can tell her boss that she cannot cover the company under these constraints, or she can take over coverage of the company, reach her own independent conclusions, and if they conflict with her boss’s opinion, share the conclusions with her boss or other supervisors in the firm so that they can make appropriate recommendations. Jorund must issue only recommendations that reflect her independent and objective opinion.

Example 7 (Gifts and Entertainment from Related Party):

Edward Grant directs a large amount of his commission business to a New York–based brokerage house. In appreciation for all the business, the brokerage house gives Grant two tickets to the World Cup in South Africa, two nights at a nearby resort, several meals, and transportation via limousine to the game. Grant fails to disclose receiving this package to his supervisor.

Comment: Grant has violated Standard I(B) because accepting these substantial gifts may impede his independence and objectivity. Every member and candidate should endeavor to avoid situations that might cause or be perceived to cause a loss of independence or objectivity in recommending

investments or taking investment action. By accepting the trip, Grant has opened himself up to the accusation that he may give the broker favored treatment in return.

Example 8 (Gifts and Entertainment from Client):

Theresa Green manages the portfolio of Ian Knowlden, a client of Tisbury Investments. Green achieves an annual return for Knowlden that is consistently better than that of the benchmark she and the client previously agreed to. As a reward, Knowlden offers Green two tickets to Wimbledon and the use of Knowlden's flat in London for a week. Green discloses this gift to her supervisor at Tisbury.

Comment: Green is in compliance with Standard I(B) because she disclosed the gift from one of her clients in accordance with the firm's policies. Members and candidates may accept bonuses or gifts from clients as long as they disclose them to their employer because gifts in a client relationship are deemed less likely to affect a member's or candidate's objectivity and independence than gifts in other situations. Disclosure is required, however, so that supervisors can monitor such situations to guard against employees favoring a gift-giving client to the detriment of other fee-paying clients (such as by allocating a greater proportion of IPO stock to the gift-giving client's portfolio).

Best practices for monitoring include comparing the transaction costs of the Knowlden account with the costs of other accounts managed by Green and other similar accounts within Tisbury. The supervisor could also compare the performance returns with the returns of other clients with the same mandate. This comparison will assist in determining whether a pattern of favoritism by Green is disadvantaging other Tisbury clients or the possibility that this favoritism could affect her future behavior.

Example 9 (Travel Expenses from External Manager):

Tom Wayne is the investment manager of the Franklin City Employees Pension Plan. He recently completed a successful search for a firm to manage the foreign equity allocation of the plan's diversified portfolio. He followed the plan's standard procedure of seeking presentations from a number of qualified firms and recommended that his board select Penguin Advisors because of its experience, well-defined investment strategy, and performance record. The firm claims compliance with the Global Investment Performance Standards (GIPS) and has been verified. Following the selection of Penguin, a reporter from the *Franklin City Record* calls to ask if there was any connection between this action and the fact that Penguin was one of the sponsors of an "investment fact-finding trip to Asia" that Wayne made earlier in the year. The trip was one of several conducted by the Pension Investment Academy, which had arranged the itinerary of meetings with economic, government, and corporate officials in major cities in several Asian countries. The Pension Investment Academy obtains support for the cost of these trips from a number of investment managers, including Penguin Advisors; the Academy then pays the travel expenses of the various pension plan managers on the trip and provides all meals and accommodations. The president of Penguin Advisors was also one of the travelers on the trip.

Comment: Although Wayne can probably put to good use the knowledge he gained from the trip in selecting portfolio managers and in other areas of managing the pension plan, his recommendation of Penguin Advisors may be tainted by the possible conflict incurred when he participated in a trip partly paid for by Penguin Advisors and when he was in the daily company of the president of Penguin Advisors. To avoid violating Standard I(B),

Wayne's basic expenses for travel and accommodations should have been paid by his employer or the pension plan; contact with the president of Penguin Advisors should have been limited to informational or educational events only; and the trip, the organizer, and the sponsor should have been made a matter of public record. Even if his actions were not in violation of Standard I(B), Wayne should have been sensitive to the public perception of the trip when reported in the newspaper and the extent to which the subjective elements of his decision might have been affected by the familiarity that the daily contact of such a trip would encourage. This advantage would probably not be shared by firms competing with Penguin Advisors.

Example 10 (Research Independence and Compensation Arrangements):

Javier Herrero recently left his job as a research analyst for a large investment adviser. While looking for a new position, he was hired by an investor-relations firm to write a research report on one of its clients, a small educational software company. The investor-relations firm hopes to generate investor interest in the technology company. The firm will pay Herrero a flat fee plus a bonus if any new investors buy stock in the company as a result of Herrero's report.

Comment: If Herrero accepts this payment arrangement, he will be in violation of Standard I(B) because the compensation arrangement can reasonably be expected to compromise his independence and objectivity. Herrero will receive a bonus for attracting investors, which provides an incentive to draft a positive report regardless of the facts and to ignore or play down any negative information about the company. Herrero should accept only a flat fee that is not tied to the conclusions or recommendations of the report. Issuer-paid research that is objective and unbiased can be done under the right circumstances as long as the analyst takes steps to maintain his or her objectivity and includes in the report proper disclosures regarding potential conflicts of interest.

Example 11 (Recommendation Objectivity and Service Fees):

Two years ago, Bob Wade, trust manager for Central Midas Bank, was approached by Western Funds about promoting its family of funds, with special interest in the service-fee class of funds. To entice Central to promote this class, Western Funds offered to pay the bank a service fee of 0.25%. Without disclosing the fee being offered to the bank, Wade asked one of the investment managers to review Western's funds to determine whether they were suitable for clients of Central Midas Bank. The manager completed the normal due diligence review and determined that the new funds were fairly valued in the market with fee structures on a par with competitors. Wade decided to accept Western's offer and instructed the team of portfolio managers to exclusively promote these funds and the service-fee class to clients seeking to invest new funds or transfer from their current investments.

Now, two years later, the funds managed by Western begin to underperform their peers. Wade is counting on the fees to reach his profitability targets and continues to push these funds as acceptable investments for Central's clients.

Comment: Wade is violating Standard I(B) because the fee arrangement has affected the objectivity of his recommendations. Wade is relying on the fee as a component of the department's profitability and is unwilling to offer other products that may affect the fees received.

See also Standard VI(A)–Disclosure of Conflicts.

Example 12 (Recommendation Objectivity):

Bob Thompson has been doing research for the portfolio manager of the fixed-income department. His assignment is to do sensitivity analysis on securitized subprime mortgages. He has discussed with the manager possible scenarios to use to calculate expected returns. A key assumption in such calculations is housing price appreciation (HPA) because it drives “prepays” (prepayments of mortgages) and losses. Thompson is concerned with the significant appreciation experienced over the previous five years as a result of the increased availability of funds from subprime mortgages. Thompson insists that the analysis should include a scenario run with –10% for Year 1, –5% for Year 2, and then (to project a worst-case scenario) 0% for Years 3 through 5. The manager replies that these assumptions are too dire because there has never been a time in their available database when HPA was negative.

Thompson conducts his research to better understand the risks inherent in these securities and evaluates these securities in the worst-case scenario, an unlikely but possible environment. Based on the results of the enhanced scenarios, Thompson does not recommend the purchase of the securitization. Against the general market trends, the manager follows Thompson’s recommendation and does not invest. The following year, the housing market collapses. In avoiding the subprime investments, the manager’s portfolio outperforms its peer group that year.

Comment: Thompson’s actions in running the worst-case scenario against the protests of the portfolio manager are in alignment with the principles of Standard I(B). Thompson did not allow his research to be pressured by the general trends of the market or the manager’s desire to limit the research to historical norms.

See also Standard V(A)–Diligence and Reasonable Basis.

Example 13 (Influencing Manager Selection Decisions):

Adrian Mandel, CFA, is a senior portfolio manager for ZZYY Capital Management who oversees a team of investment professionals who manage labor union pension funds. A few years ago, ZZYY sought to win a competitive asset manager search to manage a significant allocation of the pension fund of the United Doughnut and Pretzel Bakers Union (UDPBU). UDPBU’s investment board is chaired by a recognized key decision maker and long-time leader of the union, Ernesto Gomez. To improve ZZYY’s chances of winning the competition, Mandel made significant monetary contributions to Gomez’s union reelection campaign fund. Even after ZZYY was hired as a primary manager of the pension, Mandel believed that his firm’s position was not secure. Mandel continued to contribute to Gomez’s reelection campaign chest as well as to entertain lavishly the union leader and his family at top restaurants on a regular basis. All of Mandel’s outlays were routinely handled as marketing expenses reimbursed by ZZYY’s expense accounts and were disclosed to his senior management as being instrumental in maintaining a strong close relationship with an important client.

Comment: Mandel not only offered but actually gave monetary gifts, benefits, and other considerations that reasonably could be expected to compromise Gomez’s objectivity. Therefore, Mandel was in violation of Standard I(B).

Example 14 (Influencing Manager Selection Decisions):

Adrian Mandel, CFA, had heard about the manager search competition for the UDPBU Pension Fund through a broker/dealer contact. The contact told him that a well-known retired professional golfer, Bobby “The Bear” Finlay, who had become a licensed broker/dealer serving as a pension consultant, was orchestrating the UDPBU manager search. Finlay had gained celebrity status with several labor union pension

fund boards by entertaining their respective board members and regaling them with colorful stories of fellow pro golfers' antics in clubhouses around the world. Mandel decided to improve ZZYY's chances of being invited to participate in the search competition by befriending Finlay to curry his favor. Knowing Finlay's love of entertainment, Mandel wined and dined Finlay at high-profile bistros where Finlay could glow in the fan recognition lavished on him by all the other patrons. Mandel's endeavors paid off handsomely when Finlay recommended to the UDPBU board that ZZYY be entered as one of three finalist asset management firms in its search.

Comment: Similar to Example 13, Mandel lavished gifts, benefits, and other considerations in the form of expensive entertainment that could reasonably be expected to influence the consultant to recommend the hiring of his firm. Therefore, Mandel was in violation of Standard I(B).

Example 15 (Fund Manager Relationships):

Amie Scott is a performance analyst within her firm with responsibilities for analyzing the performance of external managers. While completing her quarterly analysis, Scott notices a change in one manager's reported composite construction. The change concealed the bad performance of a particularly large account by placing that account into a new residual composite. This change allowed the manager to remain at the top of the list of manager performance. Scott knows her firm has a large allocation to this manager, and the fund's manager is a close personal friend of the CEO. She needs to deliver her final report but is concerned with pointing out the composite change.

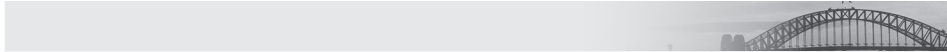
Comment: Scott would be in violation of Standard I(B) if she did not disclose the change in her final report. The analysis of managers' performance should not be influenced by personal relationships or the size of the allocation to the outside managers. By not including the change, Scott would not be providing an independent analysis of the performance metrics for her firm.

Example 16 (Intrafirm Pressure):

Jill Stein is head of performance measurement for her firm. During the last quarter, many members of the organization's research department were removed because of the poor quality of their recommendations. The subpar research caused one larger account holder to experience significant underperformance, which resulted in the client withdrawing his money after the end of the quarter. The head of sales requests that Stein remove this account from the firm's performance composite because the performance decline can be attributed to the departed research team and not the client's adviser.

Comment: Pressure from other internal departments can create situations that cause a member or candidate to violate the Code and Standards. Stein must maintain her independence and objectivity and refuse to exclude specific accounts from the firm's performance composites to which they belong. As long as the client invested under a strategy similar to that of the defined composite, it cannot be excluded because of the poor stock selections that led to the underperformance and asset withdrawal.

Standard I(C) Misrepresentation



Members and Candidates must not knowingly make any misrepresentations relating to investment analysis, recommendations, actions, or other professional activities.

Guidance

Highlights:

- *Impact on Investment Practice*
- *Performance Reporting*
- *Social Media*
- *Omissions*
- *Plagiarism*
- *Work Completed for Employer*

Trust is the foundation of the investment profession. Investors must be able to rely on the statements and information provided to them by those with whom the investors have trusted their financial well-being. Investment professionals who make false or misleading statements not only harm investors but also reduce the level of investor confidence in the investment profession and threaten the integrity of capital markets as a whole.

A misrepresentation is any untrue statement or omission of a fact or any statement that is otherwise false or misleading. A member or candidate must not knowingly omit or misrepresent information or give a false impression of a firm, organization, or security in the member's or candidate's oral representations, advertising (whether in the press or through brochures), electronic communications, or written materials (whether publicly disseminated or not). In this context, "knowingly" means that the member or candidate either knows or should have known that the misrepresentation was being made or that omitted information could alter the investment decision-making process.

Written materials include, but are not limited to, research reports, underwriting documents, company financial reports, market letters, newspaper columns, and books. Electronic communications include, but are not limited to, internet communications, webpages, mobile applications, and e-mails. Members and candidates who use webpages should regularly monitor materials posted on these sites to ensure that they contain current information. Members and candidates should also ensure that all reasonable precautions have been taken to protect the site's integrity and security and that the site does not misrepresent any information and does provide full disclosure.

Standard I(C) prohibits members and candidates from guaranteeing clients any specific return on volatile investments. Most investments contain some element of risk that makes their return inherently unpredictable. For such investments, guaranteeing either a particular rate of return or a guaranteed preservation of investment capital (e.g., "I can guarantee that you will earn 8% on equities this year" or "I can guarantee that you will not lose money on this investment") is misleading to investors. Standard I(C) does not prohibit members and candidates from providing clients with information on investment products that have guarantees built into the structure of the products themselves or for which an institution has agreed to cover any losses.

Impact on Investment Practice

Members and candidates must not misrepresent any aspect of their practice, including (but not limited to) their qualifications or credentials, the qualifications or services provided by their firm, their performance record and the record of their firm, and the characteristics of an investment. Any misrepresentation made by a member or candidate relating to the member's or candidate's professional activities is a breach of this standard.

Members and candidates should exercise care and diligence when incorporating third-party information. Misrepresentations resulting from the use of the credit ratings, research, testimonials, or marketing materials of outside parties become the responsibility of the investment professional when it affects that professional's business practices.

Investing through outside managers continues to expand as an acceptable method of investing in areas outside a firm's core competencies. Members and candidates must disclose their intended use of external managers and must not represent those managers' investment practices as their own. Although the level of involvement of outside managers may change over time, appropriate disclosures by members and candidates are important in avoiding misrepresentations, especially if the primary activity is to invest directly with a single external manager. Standard V(B)–Communication with Clients and Prospective Clients discusses in further detail communicating the firm's investment practices.

Performance Reporting

The performance benchmark selection process is another area where misrepresentations may occur. Members and candidates may misrepresent the success of their performance record through presenting benchmarks that are not comparable to their strategies. Further, clients can be misled if the benchmark's results are not reported on a basis comparable to that of the fund's or client's results. Best practice is selecting the most appropriate available benchmark from a universe of available options. The transparent presentation of appropriate performance benchmarks is an important aspect in providing clients with information that is useful in making investment decisions.

However, Standard I(C) does not require that a benchmark always be provided in order to comply. Some investment strategies may not lend themselves to displaying an appropriate benchmark because of the complexity or diversity of the investments included. Furthermore, some investment strategies may use reference indexes that do not reflect the opportunity set of the invested assets—for example, a hedge fund comparing its performance with a “cash plus” basis. When such a benchmark is used, members and candidates should make reasonable efforts to ensure that they disclose the reasons behind the use of this reference index to avoid misrepresentations of their performance. Members and candidates should discuss with clients on a continuous basis the appropriate benchmark to be used for performance evaluations and related fee calculations.

Reporting misrepresentations may also occur when valuations for illiquid or non-traded securities are available from more than one source. When different options are available, members and candidates may be tempted to switch providers to obtain higher security valuations. The process of shopping for values may misrepresent a security's worth, lead to misinformed decisions to sell or hold an investment, and result in overcharging clients advisory fees.

Members and candidates should take reasonable steps to provide accurate and reliable security pricing information to clients on a consistent basis. Changing pricing providers should not be based solely on the justification that the new provider reports a higher current value of a security. Consistency in the reported information

will improve the perception of the valuation process for illiquid securities. Clients will likely have additional confidence that they were able to make an informed decision about continuing to hold these securities in their portfolios.

Social Media

The advancement of online discussion forums and communication platforms, commonly referred to as “social media,” is placing additional responsibilities on members and candidates. When communicating through social media channels, members and candidates should provide only the same information they are allowed to distribute to clients and potential clients through other traditional forms of communication. The online or interactive aspects of social media do not remove the need to be open and honest about the information being distributed.

Along with understanding and following existing and newly developing rules and regulations regarding the allowed use of social media, members and candidates should also ensure that all communications in this format adhere to the requirements of the Code and Standards. The perceived anonymity granted through these platforms may entice individuals to misrepresent their qualifications or abilities or those of their employer. Actions undertaken through social media that knowingly misrepresent investment recommendations or professional activities are considered a violation of Standard I(C).

Omissions

The omission of a fact or outcome can be misleading, especially given the growing use of models and technical analysis processes. Many members and candidates rely on such models and processes to scan for new investment opportunities, to develop investment vehicles, and to produce investment recommendations and ratings. When inputs are knowingly omitted, the resulting outcomes may provide misleading information to those who rely on it for making investment decisions. Additionally, the outcomes from models shall not be presented as fact because they represent the expected results based on the inputs and analysis process incorporated.

Omissions in the performance measurement and attribution process can also misrepresent a manager’s performance and skill. Members and candidates should encourage their firms to develop strict policies for composite development to prevent cherry picking—situations in which selected accounts are presented as representative of the firm’s abilities. The omission of any accounts appropriate for the defined composite may misrepresent to clients the success of the manager’s implementation of its strategy.

Plagiarism

Standard I(C) also prohibits plagiarism in the preparation of material for distribution to employers, associates, clients, prospects, or the general public. Plagiarism is defined as copying or using in substantially the same form materials prepared by others without acknowledging the source of the material or identifying the author and publisher of such material. Members and candidates must not copy (or represent as their own) original ideas or material without permission and must acknowledge and identify the source of ideas or material that is not their own.

The investment profession uses a myriad of financial, economic, and statistical data in the investment decision-making process. Through various publications and presentations, the investment professional is constantly exposed to the work of others and to the temptation to use that work without proper acknowledgment.

Misrepresentation through plagiarism in investment management can take various forms. The simplest and most flagrant example is to take a research report or study done by another firm or person, change the names, and release the material as one’s

own original analysis. This action is a clear violation of Standard I(C). Other practices include (1) using excerpts from articles or reports prepared by others either verbatim or with only slight changes in wording without acknowledgment, (2) citing specific quotations as attributable to “leading analysts” and “investment experts” without naming the specific references, (3) presenting statistical estimates of forecasts prepared by others and identifying the sources but without including the qualifying statements or caveats that may have been used, (4) using charts and graphs without stating their sources, and (5) copying proprietary computerized spreadsheets or algorithms without seeking the cooperation or authorization of their creators.

In the case of distributing third-party, outsourced research, members and candidates may use and distribute such reports as long as they do not represent themselves as the report’s authors. Indeed, the member or candidate may add value for the client by sifting through research and repackaging it for clients. In such cases, clients should be fully informed that they are paying for the ability of the member or candidate to find the best research from a wide variety of sources. Members and candidates must not misrepresent their abilities, the extent of their expertise, or the extent of their work in a way that would mislead their clients or prospective clients. Members and candidates should disclose whether the research being presented to clients comes from another source—from either within or outside the member’s or candidate’s firm. This allows clients to understand who has the expertise behind the report or whether the work is being done by the analyst, other members of the firm, or an outside party.

Standard I(C) also applies to plagiarism in oral communications, such as through group meetings; visits with associates, clients, and customers; use of audio/video media (which is rapidly increasing); and telecommunications, including electronic data transfer and the outright copying of electronic media.

One of the most egregious practices in violation of this standard is the preparation of research reports based on multiple sources of information without acknowledging the sources. Examples of information from such sources include ideas, statistical compilations, and forecasts combined to give the appearance of original work. Although there is no monopoly on ideas, members and candidates must give credit where it is clearly due. Analysts should not use undocumented forecasts, earnings projections, asset values, and so on. Sources must be revealed to bring the responsibility directly back to the author of the report or the firm involved.

Work Completed for Employer

The preceding paragraphs address actions that would constitute a violation of Standard I(C). In some situations, however, members or candidates may use research conducted or models developed by others within the same firm without committing a violation. The most common example relates to the situation in which one (or more) of the original analysts is no longer with the firm. Research and models developed while employed by a firm are the property of the firm. The firm retains the right to continue using the work completed after a member or candidate has left the organization. The firm may issue future reports without providing attribution to the prior analysts. A member or candidate cannot, however, reissue a previously released report solely under his or her name.

Recommended Procedures for Compliance

Factual Presentations

Members and candidates can prevent unintentional misrepresentations of their qualifications or the services they or their firms provide if each member and candidate understands the limit of the firm’s or individual’s capabilities and the need to be accurate and complete in presentations. Firms can provide guidance for employees who make

written or oral presentations to clients or potential clients by providing a written list of the firm's available services and a description of the firm's qualifications. This list should suggest ways of describing the firm's services, qualifications, and compensation that are both accurate and suitable for client or customer presentations. Firms can also help prevent misrepresentation by specifically designating which employees are authorized to speak on behalf of the firm. Regardless of whether the firm provides guidance, members and candidates should make certain that they understand the services the firm can perform and its qualifications.

Qualification Summary

In addition, to ensure accurate presentations to clients, each member and candidate should prepare a summary of his or her own qualifications and experience and a list of the services the member or candidate is capable of performing. Firms can assist member and candidate compliance by periodically reviewing employee correspondence and documents that contain representations of individual or firm qualifications.

Verify Outside Information

When providing information to clients from a third party, members and candidates share a responsibility for the accuracy of the marketing and distribution materials that pertain to the third party's capabilities, services, and products. Misrepresentation by third parties can damage the member's or candidate's reputation, the reputation of the firm, and the integrity of the capital markets. Members and candidates should encourage their employers to develop procedures for verifying information of third-party firms.

Maintain Webpages

Members and candidates who publish a webpage should regularly monitor materials posted on the site to ensure that the site contains current information. Members and candidates should also ensure that all reasonable precautions have been taken to protect the site's integrity, confidentiality, and security and that the site does not misrepresent any information and provides full disclosure.

Plagiarism Policy

To avoid plagiarism in preparing research reports or conclusions of analysis, members and candidates should take the following steps:

- ***Maintain copies:*** Keep copies of all research reports, articles containing research ideas, material with new statistical methodologies, and other materials that were relied on in preparing the research report.
- ***Attribute quotations:*** Attribute to their sources any direct quotations, including projections, tables, statistics, model/product ideas, and new methodologies prepared by persons other than recognized financial and statistical reporting services or similar sources.
- ***Attribute summaries:*** Attribute to their sources any paraphrases or summaries of material prepared by others. For example, to support his analysis of Brown Company's competitive position, the author of a research report on Brown might summarize another analyst's report on Brown's chief competitor, but the author of the Brown report must acknowledge in his own report the reliance on the other analyst's report.

Application of the Standard

Example 1 (Disclosure of Issuer-Paid Research):

Anthony McGuire is an issuer-paid analyst hired by publicly traded companies to electronically promote their stocks. McGuire creates a website that promotes his research efforts as a seemingly independent analyst. McGuire posts a profile and a strong buy recommendation for each company on the website indicating that the stock is expected to increase in value. He does not disclose the contractual relationships with the companies he covers on his website, in the research reports he issues, or in the statements he makes about the companies in internet chat rooms.

Comment: McGuire has violated Standard I(C) because the website is misleading to potential investors. Even if the recommendations are valid and supported with thorough research, his omissions regarding the true relationship between himself and the companies he covers constitute a misrepresentation. McGuire has also violated Standard VI(A)–Disclosure of Conflicts by not disclosing the existence of an arrangement with the companies through which he receives compensation in exchange for his services.

Example 2 (Correction of Unintentional Errors):

Hijan Yao is responsible for the creation and distribution of the marketing materials for his firm, which claims compliance with the GIPS standards. Yao creates and distributes a presentation of performance by the firm's Asian equity composite that states the composite has ¥350 billion in assets. In fact, the composite has only ¥35 billion in assets, and the higher figure on the presentation is a result of a typographical error. Nevertheless, the erroneous material is distributed to a number of clients before Yao catches the mistake.

Comment: Once the error is discovered, Yao must take steps to cease distribution of the incorrect material and correct the error by informing those who have received the erroneous information. Because Yao did not knowingly make the misrepresentation, however, he did not violate Standard I(C). Because his firm claims compliance with the GIPS standards, it must also comply with the GIPS Guidance Statement on Error Correction in relation to the error.

Example 3 (Noncorrection of Known Errors):

Syed Muhammad is the president of an investment management firm. The promotional material for the firm, created by the firm's marketing department, incorrectly claims that Muhammad has an advanced degree in finance from a prestigious business school in addition to the CFA designation. Although Muhammad attended the school for a short period of time, he did not receive a degree. Over the years, Muhammad and others in the firm have distributed this material to numerous prospective clients and consultants.

Comment: Even though Muhammad may not have been directly responsible for the misrepresentation of his credentials in the firm's promotional material, he used this material numerous times over an extended period and should have known of the misrepresentation. Thus, Muhammad has violated Standard I(C).

Example 4 (Plagiarism):

Cindy Grant, a research analyst for a Canadian brokerage firm, has specialized in the Canadian mining industry for the past 10 years. She recently read an extensive research report on Jefferson Mining, Ltd., by Jeremy Barton, another analyst. Barton provided extensive statistics on the mineral reserves, production capacity, selling rates, and marketing factors affecting Jefferson's operations. He also noted that initial drilling results on a new ore body, which had not been made public, might show the existence of mineral zones that could increase the life of Jefferson's main mines, but Barton cited no specific data as to the initial drilling results. Grant called an officer of Jefferson, who gave her the initial drilling results over the telephone. The data indicated that the expected life of the main mines would be tripled. Grant added these statistics to Barton's report and circulated it within her firm as her own report.

Comment: Grant plagiarized Barton's report by reproducing large parts of it in her own report without acknowledgment.

Example 5 (Misrepresentation of Information):

When Ricki Marks sells mortgage-backed derivatives called "interest-only strips" (IOs) to public pension plan clients, she describes them as "guaranteed by the US government." Purchasers of the IOs are entitled only to the interest stream generated by the mortgages, however, not the notional principal itself. One particular municipality's investment policies and local law require that securities purchased by its public pension plans be guaranteed by the US government. Although the underlying mortgages are guaranteed, neither the investor's investment nor the interest stream on the IOs is guaranteed. When interest rates decline, causing an increase in prepayment of mortgages, interest payments to the IOs' investors decline, and these investors lose a portion of their investment.

Comment: Marks violated Standard I(C) by misrepresenting the terms and character of the investment.

Example 6 (Potential Information Misrepresentation):

Khalouck Abdrabbo manages the investments of several high-net-worth individuals in the United States who are approaching retirement. Abdrabbo advises these individuals that a portion of their investments be moved from equity to bank-sponsored certificates of deposit and money market accounts so that the principal will be "guaranteed" up to a certain amount. The interest is not guaranteed.

Comment: Although there is risk that the institution offering the certificates of deposits and money market accounts could go bankrupt, in the United States, these accounts are insured by the US government through the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation. Therefore, using the term "guaranteed" in this context is not inappropriate as long as the amount is within the government-insured limit. Abdrabbo should explain these facts to the clients.

Example 7 (Plagiarism):

Steve Swanson is a senior analyst in the investment research department of Ballard and Company. Apex Corporation has asked Ballard to assist in acquiring the majority ownership of stock in the Campbell Company, a financial consulting firm, and to prepare a report recommending that stockholders of Campbell agree to the acquisition. Another investment firm, Davis and Company, had already prepared a report for Apex analyzing both Apex and Campbell and recommending an exchange ratio. Apex has

given the Davis report to Ballard officers, who have passed it on to Swanson. Swanson reviews the Davis report and other available material on Apex and Campbell. From his analysis, he concludes that the common stocks of Campbell and Apex represent good value at their current prices; he believes, however, that the Davis report does not consider all the factors a Campbell stockholder would need to know to make a decision. Swanson reports his conclusions to the partner in charge, who tells him to “use the Davis report, change a few words, sign your name, and get it out.”

Comment: If Swanson does as requested, he will violate Standard I(C). He could refer to those portions of the Davis report that he agrees with if he identifies Davis as the source; he could then add his own analysis and conclusions to the report before signing and distributing it.

Example 8 (Plagiarism):

Claude Browning, a quantitative analyst for Double Alpha, Inc., returns from a seminar in great excitement. At that seminar, Jack Jorrely, a well-known quantitative analyst at a national brokerage firm, discussed one of his new models in great detail, and Browning is intrigued by the new concepts. He proceeds to test the model, making some minor mechanical changes but retaining the concepts, until he produces some very positive results. Browning quickly announces to his supervisors at Double Alpha that he has discovered a new model and that clients and prospective clients should be informed of this positive finding as ongoing proof of Double Alpha’s continuing innovation and ability to add value.

Comment: Although Browning tested Jorrely’s model on his own and even slightly modified it, he must still acknowledge the original source of the idea. Browning can certainly take credit for the final, practical results; he can also support his conclusions with his own test. The credit for the innovative thinking, however, must be awarded to Jorrely.

Example 9 (Plagiarism):

Fernando Zubia would like to include in his firm’s marketing materials some “plain-language” descriptions of various concepts, such as the price-to-earnings (P/E) multiple and why standard deviation is used as a measure of risk. The descriptions come from other sources, but Zubia wishes to use them without reference to the original authors. Would this use of material be a violation of Standard I(C)?

Comment: Copying verbatim any material without acknowledgement, including plain-language descriptions of the P/E multiple and standard deviation, violates Standard I(C). Even though these concepts are general, best practice would be for Zubia to describe them in his own words or cite the sources from which the descriptions are quoted. Members and candidates would be violating Standard I(C) if they either were responsible for creating marketing materials without attribution or knowingly use plagiarized materials.

Example 10 (Plagiarism):

Through a mainstream media outlet, Erika Schneider learns about a study that she would like to cite in her research. Should she cite both the mainstream intermediary source as well as the author of the study itself when using that information?

Comment: In all instances, a member or candidate must cite the actual source of the information. Best practice for Schneider would be to obtain the information directly from the author and review it before citing it in

a report. In that case, Schneider would not need to report how she found out about the information. For example, suppose Schneider read in the *Financial Times* about a study issued by CFA Institute; best practice for Schneider would be to obtain a copy of the study from CFA Institute, review it, and then cite it in her report. If she does not use any interpretation of the report from the *Financial Times* and the newspaper does not add value to the report itself, the newspaper is merely a conduit of the original information and does not need to be cited. If she does not obtain the report and review the information, Schneider runs the risk of relying on second-hand information that may misstate facts. If, for example, the *Financial Times* erroneously reported some information from the original CFA Institute study and Schneider copied that erroneous information without acknowledging CFA Institute, she could be the object of complaints. Best practice would be either to obtain the complete study from its original author and cite only that author or to use the information provided by the intermediary and cite both sources.

Example 11 (Misrepresentation of Information):

Paul Ostrowski runs a two-person investment management firm. Ostrowski's firm subscribes to a service from a large investment research firm that provides research reports that can be repackaged by smaller firms for those firms' clients. Ostrowski's firm distributes these reports to clients as its own work.

Comment: Ostrowski can rely on third-party research that has a reasonable and adequate basis, but he cannot imply that he is the author of such research. If he does, Ostrowski is misrepresenting the extent of his work in a way that misleads the firm's clients or prospective clients.

Example 12 (Misrepresentation of Information):

Tom Stafford is part of a team within Appleton Investment Management responsible for managing a pool of assets for Open Air Bank, which distributes structured securities to offshore clients. He becomes aware that Open Air is promoting the structured securities as a much less risky investment than the investment management policy followed by him and the team to manage the original pool of assets. Also, Open Air has procured an independent rating for the pool that significantly overstates the quality of the investments. Stafford communicates his concerns to his supervisor, who responds that Open Air owns the product and is responsible for all marketing and distribution. Stafford's supervisor goes on to say that the product is outside of the US regulatory regime that Appleton follows and that all risks of the product are disclosed at the bottom of page 184 of the prospectus.

Comment: As a member of the investment team, Stafford is qualified to recognize the degree of accuracy of the materials that characterize the portfolio, and he is correct to be worried about Appleton's responsibility for a misrepresentation of the risks. Thus, he should continue to pursue the issue of Open Air's inaccurate promotion of the portfolio according to the firm's policies and procedures.

The Code and Standards stress protecting the reputation of the firm and the sustainability and integrity of the capital markets. Misrepresenting the quality and risks associated with the investment pool may lead to negative consequences for others well beyond the direct investors.

Example 13 (Avoiding a Misrepresentation):

Trina Smith is a fixed-income portfolio manager at a pension fund. She has observed that the market for highly structured mortgages is the focus of salespeople she meets and that these products represent a significant number of trading opportunities. In discussions about this topic with her team, Smith learns that calculating yields on changing cash flows within the deal structure requires very specialized vendor software. After more research, they find out that each deal is unique and that deals can have more than a dozen layers and changing cash flow priorities. Smith comes to the conclusion that, because of the complexity of these securities, the team cannot effectively distinguish between potentially good and bad investment options. To avoid misrepresenting their understanding, the team decides that the highly structured mortgage segment of the securitized market should not become part of the core of the fund's portfolio; they will allow some of the less complex securities to be part of the core.

Comment: Smith is in compliance with Standard I(C) by not investing in securities that she and her team cannot effectively understand. Because she is not able to describe the risk and return profile of the securities to the pension fund beneficiaries and trustees, she appropriately limits the fund's exposure to this sector.

Example 14 (Misrepresenting Composite Construction):

Robert Palmer is head of performance for a fund manager. When asked to provide performance numbers to fund rating agencies, he avoids mentioning that the fund manager is quite liberal in composite construction. The reason accounts are included/excluded is not fully explained. The performance values reported to the rating agencies for the composites, although accurate for the accounts shown each period, may not present a true representation of the fund manager's ability.

Comment: "Cherry picking" accounts to include in either published reports or information provided to rating agencies conflicts with Standard I(C). Moving accounts into or out of a composite to influence the overall performance results materially misrepresents the reported values over time. Palmer should work with his firm to strengthen its reporting practices concerning composite construction to avoid misrepresenting the firm's track record or the quality of the information being provided.

Example 15 (Presenting Out-of-Date Information):

David Finch is a sales director at a commercial bank, where he directs the bank's client advisers in the sale of third-party mutual funds. Each quarter, he holds a division-wide training session where he provides fact sheets on investment funds the bank is allowed to offer to clients. These fact sheets, which can be redistributed to potential clients, are created by the fund firms and contain information about the funds, including investment strategy and target distribution rates.

Finch knows that some of the fact sheets are out of date; for example, one long-only fund approved the use of significant leverage last quarter as a method to enhance returns. He continues to provide the sheets to the sales team without updates because the bank has no control over the marketing material released by the mutual fund firms.

Comment: Finch is violating Standard I(C) by providing information that misrepresents aspects of the funds. By not providing the sales team and, ultimately, the clients with the updated information, he is misrepresenting the potential risks associated with the funds with outdated fact sheets. Finch

can instruct the sales team to clarify the deficiencies in the fact sheets with clients and ensure they have the most recent fund prospectus document before accepting orders for investing in any fund.

Example 16 (Overemphasis of Firm Results):


Bob Anderson is chief compliance officer for Optima Asset Management Company, a firm currently offering eight funds to clients. Seven of the eight had 10-year returns below the median for their respective sectors. Anderson approves a recent advertisement, which includes this statement: “Optima Asset Management is achieving excellent returns for its investors. The Optima Emerging Markets Equity fund, for example, has 10-year returns that exceed the sector median by more than 10%.”

Comment: From the information provided it is difficult to determine whether a violation has occurred as long as the sector outperformance is correct. Anderson may be attempting to mislead potential clients by citing the performance of the sole fund that achieved such results. Past performance is often used to demonstrate a firm’s skill and abilities in comparison to funds in the same sectors.

However, if all the funds outperformed their respective benchmarks, then Anderson’s assertion that the company “is achieving excellent returns” may be factual. Funds may exhibit positive returns for investors, exceed benchmarks, and yet have returns below the median in their sectors.

Members and candidates need to ensure that their marketing efforts do not include statements that misrepresent their skills and abilities to remain compliant with Standard I(C). Unless the returns of a single fund reflect the performance of a firm as a whole, the use of a singular fund for performance comparisons should be avoided.

Standard I(D) Misconduct



Members and Candidates must not engage in any professional conduct involving dishonesty, fraud, or deceit or commit any act that reflects adversely on their professional reputation, integrity, or competence.

Guidance

Whereas Standard I(A) addresses the obligation of members and candidates to comply with applicable law that governs their professional activities, Standard I(D) addresses *all* conduct that reflects poorly on the professional integrity, good reputation, or competence of members and candidates. Any act that involves lying, cheating, stealing, or other dishonest conduct is a violation of this standard if the offense reflects adversely on a member’s or candidate’s professional activities. Although CFA Institute discourages any sort of unethical behavior by members and candidates, the Code and Standards are primarily aimed at conduct and actions related to a member’s or candidate’s professional life.

Conduct that damages trustworthiness or competence may include behavior that, although not illegal, nevertheless negatively affects a member’s or candidate’s ability to perform his or her responsibilities. For example, abusing alcohol during business hours might constitute a violation of this standard because it could have a detrimental effect

on the member's or candidate's ability to fulfill his or her professional responsibilities. Personal bankruptcy may not reflect on the integrity or trustworthiness of the person declaring bankruptcy, but if the circumstances of the bankruptcy involve fraudulent or deceitful business conduct, the bankruptcy may be a violation of this standard.

In some cases, the absence of appropriate conduct or the lack of sufficient effort may be a violation of Standard I(D). The integrity of the investment profession is built on trust. A member or candidate—whether an investment banker, rating or research analyst, or portfolio manager—is expected to conduct the necessary due diligence to properly understand the nature and risks of an investment before making an investment recommendation. By not taking these steps and, instead, relying on someone else in the process to perform them, members or candidates may violate the trust their clients have placed in them. This loss of trust may have a significant impact on the reputation of the member or candidate and the operations of the financial market as a whole.

Individuals may attempt to abuse the CFA Institute Professional Conduct Program by actively seeking CFA Institute enforcement of the Code and Standards, and Standard I(D) in particular, as a method of settling personal, political, or other disputes unrelated to professional ethics. CFA Institute is aware of this issue, and appropriate disciplinary policies, procedures, and enforcement mechanisms are in place to address misuse of the Code and Standards and the Professional Conduct Program in this way.

Recommended Procedures for Compliance

In addition to ensuring that their own behavior is consistent with Standard I(D), to prevent general misconduct, members and candidates should encourage their firms to adopt the following policies and procedures to support the principles of Standard I(D):

- *Code of ethics:* Develop and/or adopt a code of ethics to which every employee must subscribe, and make clear that any personal behavior that reflects poorly on the individual involved, the institution as a whole, or the investment industry will not be tolerated.
- *List of violations:* Disseminate to all employees a list of potential violations and associated disciplinary sanctions, up to and including dismissal from the firm.
- *Employee references:* Check references of potential employees to ensure that they are of good character and not ineligible to work in the investment industry because of past infractions of the law.

Application of the Standard

Example 1 (Professionalism and Competence):

Simon Sasserman is a trust investment officer at a bank in a small affluent town. He enjoys lunching every day with friends at the country club, where his clients have observed him having numerous drinks. Back at work after lunch, he clearly is intoxicated while making investment decisions. His colleagues make a point of handling any business with Sasserman in the morning because they distrust his judgment after lunch.

Comment: Sasserman's excessive drinking at lunch and subsequent intoxication at work constitute a violation of Standard I(D) because this conduct has raised questions about his professionalism and competence. His behavior reflects poorly on him, his employer, and the investment industry.

Example 2 (Fraud and Deceit):

Howard Hoffman, a security analyst at ATZ Brothers, Inc., a large brokerage house, submits reimbursement forms over a two-year period to ATZ's self-funded health insurance program for more than two dozen bills, most of which have been altered to increase the amount due. An investigation by the firm's director of employee benefits uncovers the inappropriate conduct. ATZ subsequently terminates Hoffman's employment and notifies CFA Institute.

Comment: Hoffman violated Standard I(D) because he engaged in intentional conduct involving fraud and deceit in the workplace that adversely reflected on his integrity.

Example 3 (Fraud and Deceit):

Jody Brink, an analyst covering the automotive industry, volunteers much of her spare time to local charities. The board of one of the charitable institutions decides to buy five new vans to deliver hot lunches to low-income elderly people. Brink offers to donate her time to handle purchasing agreements. To pay a long-standing debt to a friend who operates an automobile dealership—and to compensate herself for her trouble—she agrees to a price 20% higher than normal and splits the surcharge with her friend. The director of the charity ultimately discovers the scheme and tells Brink that her services, donated or otherwise, are no longer required.

Comment: Brink engaged in conduct involving dishonesty, fraud, and misrepresentation and has violated Standard I(D).

Example 4 (Personal Actions and Integrity):

Carmen Garcia manages a mutual fund dedicated to socially responsible investing. She is also an environmental activist. As the result of her participation in nonviolent protests, Garcia has been arrested on numerous occasions for trespassing on the property of a large petrochemical plant that is accused of damaging the environment.

Comment: Generally, Standard I(D) is not meant to cover legal transgressions resulting from acts of civil disobedience in support of personal beliefs because such conduct does not reflect poorly on the member's or candidate's professional reputation, integrity, or competence.

Example 5 (Professional Misconduct):

Meredith Rasmussen works on a buy-side trading desk of an investment management firm and concentrates on in-house trades for a hedge fund subsidiary managed by a team at the investment management firm. The hedge fund has been very successful and is marketed globally by the firm. From her experience as the trader for much of the activity of the fund, Rasmussen has become quite knowledgeable about the hedge fund's strategy, tactics, and performance. When a distinct break in the market occurs and many of the securities involved in the hedge fund's strategy decline markedly in value, Rasmussen observes that the reported performance of the hedge fund does not reflect this decline. In her experience, the lack of effect is a very unlikely occurrence. She approaches the head of trading about her concern and is told that she should not ask any questions and that the fund is big and successful and is not her concern. She is fairly sure something is not right, so she contacts the compliance officer, who also tells her to stay away from the issue of the hedge fund's reporting.

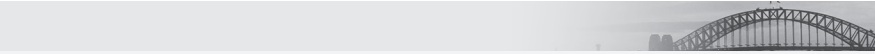
Comment: Rasmussen has clearly come across an error in policies, procedures, and compliance practices within the firm's operations. According to the firm's procedures for reporting potentially unethical activity, she

should pursue the issue by gathering some proof of her reason for doubt. Should all internal communications within the firm not satisfy her concerns, Rasmussen should consider reporting the potential unethical activity to the appropriate regulator.

See also Standard IV(A) for guidance on whistleblowing and Standard IV(C) for the duties of a supervisor.

STANDARD II: INTEGRITY OF CAPITAL MARKETS

Standard II(A) Material Nonpublic Information



Members and Candidates who possess material nonpublic information that could affect the value of an investment must not act or cause others to act on the information.

Guidance

Highlights:

- *What Is “Material” Information?*
- *What Constitutes “Nonpublic” Information?*
- *Mosaic Theory*
- *Social Media*
- *Using Industry Experts*
- *Investment Research Reports*

Trading or inducing others to trade on material nonpublic information erodes confidence in capital markets, institutions, and investment professionals by supporting the idea that those with inside information and special access can take unfair advantage of the general investing public. Although trading on inside information may lead to short-term profits, in the long run, individuals and the profession as a whole suffer from such trading. These actions have caused and will continue to cause investors to avoid capital markets because the markets are perceived to be “rigged” in favor of the knowledgeable insider. When the investing public avoids capital markets, the markets and capital allocation become less efficient and less supportive of strong and vibrant economies. Standard II(A) promotes and maintains a high level of confidence in market integrity, which is one of the foundations of the investment profession.

The prohibition on using this information goes beyond the direct buying and selling of individual securities or bonds. Members and candidates must not use material nonpublic information to influence their investment actions related to derivatives (e.g., swaps or option contracts), mutual funds, or other alternative investments. *Any* trading based on material nonpublic information constitutes a violation of Standard II(A). The expansion of financial products and the increasing interconnectivity of financial markets globally have resulted in new potential opportunities for trading on material nonpublic information.

What Is “Material” Information?

Information is “material” if its disclosure would probably have an impact on the price of a security or if reasonable investors would want to know the information before making an investment decision. In other words, information is material if it would significantly alter the total mix of information currently available about a security in such a way that the price of the security would be affected.

The specificity of the information, the extent of its difference from public information, its nature, and its reliability are key factors in determining whether a particular piece of information fits the definition of material. For example, material information may include, but is not limited to, information on the following:

- earnings;
- mergers, acquisitions, tender offers, or joint ventures;
- changes in assets or asset quality;
- innovative products, processes, or discoveries (e.g., new product trials or research efforts);
- new licenses, patents, registered trademarks, or regulatory approval/rejection of a product;
- developments regarding customers or suppliers (e.g., the acquisition or loss of a contract);
- changes in management;
- change in auditor notification or the fact that the issuer may no longer rely on an auditor’s report or qualified opinion;
- events regarding the issuer’s securities (e.g., defaults on senior securities, calls of securities for redemption, repurchase plans, stock splits, changes in dividends, changes to the rights of security holders, and public or private sales of additional securities);
- bankruptcies;
- significant legal disputes;
- government reports of economic trends (employment, housing starts, currency information, etc.);
- orders for large trades before they are executed; and
- new or changing equity or debt ratings issued by a third party (e.g., sell-side recommendations and credit ratings).

In addition to the substance and specificity of the information, the source or relative reliability of the information also determines materiality. The less reliable a source, the less likely the information provided would be considered material. For example, factual information from a corporate insider regarding a significant new contract for a company is likely to be material, whereas an assumption based on speculation by a competitor about the same contract is likely to be less reliable and, therefore, not material. Additionally, information about trials of a new drug, product, or service under development from qualified personnel involved in the trials is likely to be material, whereas educated conjecture by subject experts not connected to the trials is unlikely to be material.

Also, the more ambiguous the effect of the information on price, the less material that information is considered. If it is unclear whether and to what extent the information will affect the price of a security, the information may not be considered material. The passage of time may also render information that was once important immaterial.

What Constitutes “Nonpublic” Information?

Information is “nonpublic” until it has been disseminated or is available to the marketplace in general (as opposed to a select group of investors). “Disseminated” can be defined as “made known.” For example, a company report of profits that is posted on the internet and distributed widely through a press release or accompanied by a filing has been effectively disseminated to the marketplace. Members and candidates must have a reasonable expectation that people have received the information before it can be considered public. It is not necessary, however, to wait for the slowest method of delivery. Once the information is disseminated to the market, it is public information that is no longer covered by this standard.

Members and candidates must be particularly aware of information that is selectively disclosed by corporations to a small group of investors, analysts, or other market participants. Information that is made available to analysts remains nonpublic until it is made available to investors in general. Corporations that disclose information on a limited basis create the potential for insider-trading violations.

Issues of selective disclosure often arise when a corporate insider provides material information to analysts in a briefing or conference call before that information is released to the public. Analysts must be aware that a disclosure made to a room full of analysts does not necessarily make the disclosed information “public.” Analysts should also be alert to the possibility that they are selectively receiving material nonpublic information when a company provides them with guidance or interpretation of such publicly available information as financial statements or regulatory filings.

A member or candidate may use insider information provided legitimately by the source company for the specific purpose of conducting due diligence according to the business agreement between the parties for such activities as mergers, loan underwriting, credit ratings, and offering engagements. In such instances, the investment professional would not be considered in violation of Standard II(A) by using the material information. However, the use of insider information provided by the source company for other purposes, especially to trade or entice others to trade the securities of the firm, conflicts with this standard.

Mosaic Theory

A financial analyst gathers and interprets large quantities of information from many sources. The analyst may use significant conclusions derived from the analysis of public and nonmaterial nonpublic information as the basis for investment recommendations and decisions even if those conclusions would have been material inside information had they been communicated directly to the analyst by a company. Under the “mosaic theory,” financial analysts are free to act on this collection, or mosaic, of information without risking violation.

The practice of financial analysis depends on the free flow of information. For the fair and efficient operation of the capital markets, analysts and investors must have the greatest amount of information possible to facilitate making well-informed investment decisions about how and where to invest capital. Accurate, timely, and intelligible communication is essential if analysts and investors are to obtain the data needed to make informed decisions about how and where to invest capital. These disclosures must go beyond the information mandated by the reporting requirements of the securities laws and should include specific business information about items used to guide a company’s future growth, such as new products, capital projects, and the competitive environment. Analysts seek and use such information to compare and contrast investment alternatives.

Much of the information used by analysts comes directly from companies. Analysts often receive such information through contacts with corporate insiders, especially investor-relations staff and financial officers. Information may be disseminated in the

form of press releases, through oral presentations by company executives in analysts' meetings or conference calls, or during analysts' visits to company premises. In seeking to develop the most accurate and complete picture of a company, analysts should also reach beyond contacts with companies themselves and collect information from other sources, such as customers, contractors, suppliers, and the companies' competitors.

Analysts are in the business of formulating opinions and insights that are not obvious to the general investing public about the attractiveness of particular securities. In the course of their work, analysts actively seek out corporate information not generally known to the market for the express purpose of analyzing that information, forming an opinion on its significance, and informing their clients, who can be expected to trade on the basis of the recommendation. Analysts' initiatives to discover and analyze information and communicate their findings to their clients significantly enhance market efficiency, thus benefiting all investors (see *Dirks v. Securities and Exchange Commission*). Accordingly, violations of Standard II(A) will *not* result when a perceptive analyst reaches a conclusion about a corporate action or event through an analysis of public information and items of nonmaterial nonpublic information.

Investment professionals should note, however, that although analysts are free to use mosaic information in their research reports, they should save and document all their research [see Standard V(C)—Record Retention]. Evidence of the analyst's knowledge of public and nonmaterial nonpublic information about a corporation strengthens the assertion that the analyst reached his or her conclusions solely through appropriate methods rather than through the use of material nonpublic information.

Social Media

The continuing advancement in technology allows members, candidates, and the industry at large to exchange information at rates not previously available. It is important for investment professionals to understand the implications of using information from the internet and social media platforms because all such information may not actually be considered public.

Some social media platforms require membership in specific groups in order to access the published content. Members and candidates participating in groups with membership limitations should verify that material information obtained from these sources can also be accessed from a source that would be considered available to the public (e.g., company filings, webpages, and press releases).

Members and candidates may use social media platforms to communicate with clients or investors without conflicting with this standard. As long as the information reaches all clients or is open to the investing public, the use of these platforms would be comparable with other traditional forms of communications, such as e-mails and press releases. Members and candidates, as required by Standard I(A), should also complete all appropriate regulatory filings related to information distributed through social media platforms.

Using Industry Experts

The increased demand for insights for understanding the complexities of some industries has led to an expansion of engagement with outside experts. As the level of engagement increased, new businesses formed to connect analysts and investors with individuals who have specialized knowledge of their industry (e.g., technology or pharmaceuticals). These networks offer investors the opportunity to reach beyond their usual business circles to speak with experts regarding economic conditions, industry trends, and technical issues relating to specific products and services.

Members and candidates may provide compensation to individuals for their insights without violating this standard. However, members and candidates are ultimately responsible for ensuring that they are not requesting or acting on confidential information received from external experts, which is in violation of security regulations

and laws or duties to others. As the recent string of insider-trading cases displayed, some experts are willing to provide confidential and protected information for the right incentive.

Firms connecting experts with members or candidates often require both parties to sign agreements concerning the disclosure of material nonpublic information. Even with the protections from such compliance practices, if an expert provides material nonpublic information, members and candidates would be prohibited from taking investment actions on the associated firm until the information became publicly known to the market.

Investment Research Reports

When a particularly well-known or respected analyst issues a report or makes changes to his or her recommendation, that information alone may have an effect on the market and thus may be considered material. Theoretically, under Standard II(A), such a report would have to be made public at the time it was distributed to clients. The analyst is not a company insider, however, and does not have access to inside information. Presumably, the analyst created the report from information available to the public (mosaic theory) and by using his or her expertise to interpret the information. The analyst's hard work, paid for by the client, generated the conclusions.

Simply because the public in general would find the conclusions material does not require that the analyst make his or her work public. Investors who are not clients of the analyst can either do the work themselves or become clients of the analyst to gain access to the analyst's expertise.

Recommended Procedures for Compliance

Achieve Public Dissemination

If a member or candidate determines that information is material, the member or candidate should make reasonable efforts to achieve public dissemination of the information. These efforts usually entail encouraging the issuing company to make the information public. If public dissemination is not possible, the member or candidate must communicate the information only to the designated supervisory and compliance personnel within the member's or candidate's firm and must not take investment action or alter current investment recommendations on the basis of the information. Moreover, members and candidates must not knowingly engage in any conduct that may induce company insiders to privately disclose material nonpublic information.

Adopt Compliance Procedures

Members and candidates should encourage their firms to adopt compliance procedures to prevent the misuse of material nonpublic information. Particularly important is improving compliance in such areas as the review of employee and proprietary trading, the review of investment recommendations, documentation of firm procedures, and the supervision of interdepartmental communications in multiservice firms. Compliance procedures should suit the particular characteristics of a firm, including its size and the nature of its business.

Members and candidates are encouraged to inform their supervisor and compliance personnel of suspected inappropriate use of material nonpublic information as the basis for security trading activities or recommendations being made within their firm.

Adopt Disclosure Procedures

Members and candidates should encourage their firms to develop and follow disclosure policies designed to ensure that information is disseminated to the marketplace in an equitable manner. For example, analysts from small firms should receive the

same information and attention from a company as analysts from large firms receive. Similarly, companies should not provide certain information to buy-side analysts but not to sell-side analysts, or vice versa. Furthermore, a company should not discriminate among analysts in the provision of information or “blackball” particular analysts who have given negative reports on the company in the past.

Within investment and research firms, members and candidates should encourage the development of and compliance with procedures for distributing new and updated investment opinions to clients. Recommendations of this nature may represent material market-moving information that needs to be communicated to all clients fairly.

Issue Press Releases

Companies should consider issuing press releases prior to analyst meetings and conference calls and scripting those meetings and calls to decrease the chance that further information will be disclosed. If material nonpublic information is disclosed for the first time in an analyst meeting or call, the company should promptly issue a press release or otherwise make the information publicly available.

Firewall Elements

An information barrier commonly referred to as a “firewall” is the most widely used approach for preventing the communication of material nonpublic information within firms. It restricts the flow of confidential information to those who need to know the information to perform their jobs effectively. The minimum elements of such a system include, but are not limited to, the following:

- substantial control of relevant interdepartmental communications, preferably through a clearance area within the firm in either the compliance or legal department;
- review of employee trading through the maintenance of “watch,” “restricted,” and “rumor” lists;
- documentation of the procedures designed to limit the flow of information between departments and of the actions taken to enforce those procedures; and
- heightened review or restriction of proprietary trading while a firm is in possession of material nonpublic information.

Appropriate Interdepartmental Communications

Although documentation requirements must, for practical reasons, take into account the differences between the activities of small firms and those of large, multiservice firms, firms of all sizes and types benefit by improving the documentation of their internal enforcement of firewall procedures. Therefore, even at small firms, procedures concerning interdepartmental communication, the review of trading activity, and the investigation of possible violations should be compiled and formalized.

Physical Separation of Departments

As a practical matter, to the greatest extent possible, firms should consider the physical separation of departments and files to prevent the communication of sensitive information that should not be shared. For example, the investment banking and corporate finance areas of a brokerage firm should be separated from the sales and research departments, and a bank’s commercial lending department should be segregated from its trust and research departments.

Prevention of Personnel Overlap

There should be no overlap of personnel between the investment banking and corporate finance areas of a brokerage firm and the sales and research departments or between a bank's commercial lending department and its trust and research departments. For a firewall to be effective in a multiservice firm, an employee should be on only one side of the firewall at any time. Inside knowledge may not be limited to information about a specific offering or the current financial condition of a company. Analysts may be exposed to much information about the company, including new product developments or future budget projections that clearly constitute inside knowledge and thus preclude the analyst from returning to his or her research function. For example, an analyst who follows a particular company may provide limited assistance to the investment bankers under carefully controlled circumstances when the firm's investment banking department is involved in a deal with the company. That analyst must then be treated as though he or she were an investment banker; the analyst must remain on the investment banking side of the wall until any information he or she learns is publicly disclosed. In short, the analyst cannot use any information learned in the course of the project for research purposes and cannot share that information with colleagues in the research department.

A Reporting System

A primary objective of an effective firewall procedure is to establish a reporting system in which authorized people review and approve communications between departments. If an employee behind a firewall believes that he or she needs to share confidential information with someone on the other side of the wall, the employee should consult a designated compliance officer to determine whether sharing the information is necessary and how much information should be shared. If the sharing is necessary, the compliance officer should coordinate the process of "looking over the wall" so that the necessary information will be shared and the integrity of the procedure will be maintained.

A single supervisor or compliance officer should have the specific authority and responsibility of deciding whether information is material and whether it is sufficiently public to be used as the basis for investment decisions. Ideally, the supervisor or compliance officer responsible for communicating information to a firm's research or brokerage area would not be a member of that area.

Personal Trading Limitations

Firms should consider restrictions or prohibitions on personal trading by employees and should carefully monitor both proprietary trading and personal trading by employees. Firms should require employees to make periodic reports (to the extent that such reporting is not already required by securities laws) of their own transactions and transactions made for the benefit of family members. Securities should be placed on a restricted list when a firm has or may have material nonpublic information. The broad distribution of a restricted list often triggers the sort of trading the list was developed to avoid. Therefore, a watch list shown to only the few people responsible for compliance should be used to monitor transactions in specified securities. The use of a watch list in combination with a restricted list is an increasingly common means of ensuring effective control of personal trading.

Record Maintenance

Multiservice firms should maintain written records of the communications between various departments. Firms should place a high priority on training and should consider instituting comprehensive training programs, particularly for employees in sensitive areas.

Proprietary Trading Procedures

Procedures concerning the restriction or review of a firm's proprietary trading while the firm possesses material nonpublic information will necessarily depend on the types of proprietary trading in which the firm may engage. A prohibition on all types of proprietary activity when a firm comes into possession of material nonpublic information is *not* appropriate. For example, when a firm acts as a market maker, a prohibition on proprietary trading may be counterproductive to the goals of maintaining the confidentiality of information and market liquidity. This concern is particularly important in the relationships between small, regional broker/dealers and small issuers. In many situations, a firm will take a small issuer public with the understanding that the firm will continue to be a market maker in the stock. In such instances, a withdrawal by the firm from market-making activities would be a clear tip to outsiders. Firms that continue market-making activity while in the possession of material nonpublic information should, however, instruct their market makers to remain passive with respect to the market—that is, to take only the contra side of unsolicited customer trades.

In risk-arbitrage trading, the case for a trading prohibition is more compelling than it is in the case of market making. The impetus for arbitrage trading is neither passive nor reactive, and the potential for illegal profits is greater than in market making. The most prudent course for firms is to suspend arbitrage activity when a security is placed on the watch list. Those firms that continue arbitrage activity face a high hurdle in proving the adequacy of their internal procedures for preventing trading on material nonpublic information and must demonstrate a stringent review and documentation of firm trades.

Communication to All Employees

Members and candidates should encourage their employers to circulate written compliance policies and guidelines to all employees. Policies and guidelines should be used in conjunction with training programs aimed at enabling employees to recognize material nonpublic information. Such information is not always clearly identifiable.

Employees must be given sufficient training to either make an informed decision or to realize they need to consult a supervisor or compliance officer before engaging in questionable transactions. Appropriate policies reinforce that using material nonpublic information is illegal in many countries. Such trading activities based on material nonpublic information undermine the integrity of the individual, the firm, and the capital markets.

Application of the Standard

Example 1 (Acting on Nonpublic Information):

Frank Barnes, the president and controlling shareholder of the SmartTown clothing chain, decides to accept a tender offer and sell the family business at a price almost double the market price of its shares. He describes this decision to his sister (SmartTown's treasurer), who conveys it to her daughter (who owns no stock in the family company at present), who tells her husband, Staple. Staple, however, tells his stockbroker, Alex Halsey, who immediately buys SmartTown stock for himself.

Comment: The information regarding the pending sale is both material and nonpublic. Staple has violated Standard II(A) by communicating the inside information to his broker. Halsey also has violated the standard by buying the shares on the basis of material nonpublic information.

Example 2 (Controlling Nonpublic Information):

Samuel Peter, an analyst with Scotland and Pierce Incorporated, is assisting his firm with a secondary offering for Bright Ideas Lamp Company. Peter participates, via telephone conference call, in a meeting with Scotland and Pierce investment banking employees and Bright Ideas' CEO. Peter is advised that the company's earnings projections for the next year have significantly dropped. Throughout the telephone conference call, several Scotland and Pierce salespeople and portfolio managers walk in and out of Peter's office, where the telephone call is taking place. As a result, they are aware of the drop in projected earnings for Bright Ideas. Before the conference call is concluded, the salespeople trade the stock of the company on behalf of the firm's clients and other firm personnel trade the stock in a firm proprietary account and in employees' personal accounts.

Comment: Peter has violated Standard II(A) because he failed to prevent the transfer and misuse of material nonpublic information to others in his firm. Peter's firm should have adopted information barriers to prevent the communication of nonpublic information between departments of the firm. The salespeople and portfolio managers who traded on the information have also violated Standard II(A) by trading on inside information.

Example 3 (Selective Disclosure of Material Information):

Elizabeth Levenson is based in Taipei and covers the Taiwanese market for her firm, which is based in Singapore. She is invited, together with the other 10 largest shareholders of a manufacturing company, to meet the finance director of that company. During the meeting, the finance director states that the company expects its workforce to strike next Friday, which will cripple productivity and distribution. Can Levenson use this information as a basis to change her rating on the company from "buy" to "sell"?

Comment: Levenson must first determine whether the material information is public. According to Standard II(A), if the company has not made this information public (a small group forum does not qualify as a method of public dissemination), she cannot use the information.

Example 4 (Determining Materiality):

Leah Fechtman is trying to decide whether to hold or sell shares of an oil-and-gas exploration company that she owns in several of the funds she manages. Although the company has underperformed the index for some time already, the trends in the industry sector signal that companies of this type might become takeover targets. While she is considering her decision, her doctor, who casually follows the markets, mentions that she thinks that the company in question will soon be bought out by a large multinational conglomerate and that it would be a good idea to buy the stock right now. After talking to various investment professionals and checking their opinions on the company as well as checking industry trends, Fechtman decides the next day to accumulate more stock in the oil-and-gas exploration company.

Comment: Although information on an expected takeover bid may be of the type that is generally material and nonpublic, in this case, the source of information is unreliable, so the information cannot be considered material. Therefore, Fechtman is not prohibited from trading the stock on the basis of this information.

Example 5 (Applying the Mosaic Theory):

Jagdish Teja is a buy-side analyst covering the furniture industry. Looking for an attractive company to recommend as a buy, he analyzes several furniture makers by studying their financial reports and visiting their operations. He also talks to some designers and retailers to find out which furniture styles are trendy and popular. Although none of the companies that he analyzes are a clear buy, he discovers that one of them, Swan Furniture Company (SFC), may be in financial trouble. SFC's extravagant new designs have been introduced at substantial cost. Even though these designs initially attracted attention, the public is now buying more conservative furniture from other makers. Based on this information and on a profit-and-loss analysis, Teja believes that SFC's next quarter earnings will drop substantially. He issues a sell recommendation for SFC. Immediately after receiving that recommendation, investment managers start reducing the SFC stock in their portfolios.

Comment: Information on quarterly earnings data is material and nonpublic. Teja arrived at his conclusion about the earnings drop on the basis of public information and on pieces of nonmaterial nonpublic information (such as opinions of designers and retailers). Therefore, trading based on Teja's correct conclusion is not prohibited by Standard II(A).

Example 6 (Applying the Mosaic Theory):

Roger Clement is a senior financial analyst who specializes in the European automobile sector at Rivoli Capital. Because he has been repeatedly nominated by many leading industry magazines and newsletters as a "best analyst" for the automobile industry, he is widely regarded as an authority on the sector. After speaking with representatives of Turgot Chariots—a European auto manufacturer with sales primarily in South Korea—and after conducting interviews with salespeople, labor leaders, his firm's Korean currency analysts, and banking officials, Clement analyzed Turgot Chariots and concluded that (1) its newly introduced model will probably not meet sales expectations, (2) its corporate restructuring strategy may well face serious opposition from unions, (3) the depreciation of the Korean won should lead to pressure on margins for the industry in general and Turgot's market segment in particular, and (4) banks could take a tougher-than-expected stance in the upcoming round of credit renegotiations with the company. For these reasons, he changes his conclusion about the company from "market outperform" to "market underperform." Clement retains the support material used to reach his conclusion in case questions later arise.

Comment: To reach a conclusion about the value of the company, Clement has pieced together a number of nonmaterial or public bits of information that affect Turgot Chariots. Therefore, under the mosaic theory, Clement has not violated Standard II(A) in drafting the report.

Example 7 (Analyst Recommendations as Material Nonpublic Information):

The next day, Clement is preparing to be interviewed on a global financial news television program where he will discuss his changed recommendation on Turgot Chariots for the first time in public. While preparing for the program, he mentions to the show's producers and Mary Zito, the journalist who will be interviewing him, the information he will be discussing. Just prior to going on the air, Zito sells her holdings in Turgot Chariots. She also phones her father with the information because she knows that he and other family members have investments in Turgot Chariots.

Comment: When Zito receives advance notice of Clement's change of opinion, she knows it will have a material impact on the stock price, even if she is not totally aware of Clement's underlying reasoning. She is not a client

of Clement but obtains early access to the material nonpublic information prior to publication. Her trades are thus based on material nonpublic information and violate Standard II(A).

Zito further violates the Standard by relaying the information to her father. It would not matter if he or any other family member traded; the act of providing the information violates Standard II(A). The fact that the information is provided to a family member does not absolve someone of the prohibition of using or communicating material nonpublic information.

Example 8 (Acting on Nonpublic Information):

Ashton Kellogg is a retired investment professional who manages his own portfolio. He owns shares in National Savings, a large local bank. A close friend and golfing buddy, John Mayfield, is a senior executive at National. National has seen its stock price drop considerably, and the news and outlook are not good. In a conversation about the economy and the banking industry on the golf course, Mayfield relays the information that National will surprise the investment community in a few days when it announces excellent earnings for the quarter. Kellogg is pleasantly surprised by this information, and thinking that Mayfield, as a senior executive, knows the law and would not disclose inside information, he doubles his position in the bank. Subsequently, National announces that it had good operating earnings but had to set aside reserves for anticipated significant losses on its loan portfolio. The combined news causes the stock to go down 60%.

Comment: Even though Kellogg believes that Mayfield would not break the law by disclosing inside information and money was lost on the purchase, Kellogg should not have purchased additional shares of National. It is the member's or candidate's responsibility to make sure, before executing investment actions, that comments about earnings are not material nonpublic information. Kellogg has violated Standard II(A).

Example 9 (Mosaic Theory):

John Doll is a research analyst for a hedge fund that also sells its research to a select group of paying client investment firms. Doll's focus is medical technology companies and products, and he has been in the business long enough and has been successful enough to build up a very credible network of friends and experts in the business. Doll has been working on a major research report recommending Boyce Health, a medical device manufacturer. He recently ran into an old acquaintance at a wedding who is a senior executive at Boyce, and Doll asked about the business. Doll was drawn to a statement that the executive, who has responsibilities in the new products area, made about a product: "I would not get too excited about the medium-term prospects; we have a lot of work to do first." Doll incorporated this and other information about the new Boyce product in his long-term recommendation of Boyce.

Comment: Doll's conversation with the senior executive is part of the mosaic of information used in recommending Boyce. When holding discussions with a firm executive, Doll would need to guard against soliciting or obtaining material nonpublic information. Before issuing the report, the executive's statement about the continuing development of the product would need to be weighed against the other known public facts to determine whether it would be considered material.

Example 10 (Materiality Determination):

Larry Nadler, a trader for a mutual fund, gets a text message from another firm's trader, whom he has known for years. The message indicates a software company is going to report strong earnings when the firm publicly announces in two days. Nadler has a buy order from a portfolio manager within his firm to purchase several hundred thousand shares of the stock. Nadler is aggressive in placing the portfolio manager's order and completes the purchases by the following morning, a day ahead of the firm's planned earnings announcement.

Comment: There are often rumors and whisper numbers before a release of any kind. The text message from the other trader would most likely be considered market noise. Unless Nadler knew that the trader had an ongoing business relationship with the public firm, he had no reason to suspect he was receiving material nonpublic information that would prevent him from completing the trading request of the portfolio manager.

Example 11 (Using an Expert Network):

Mary McCoy is the senior drug analyst at a mutual fund. Her firm hires a service that connects her to experts in the treatment of cancer. Through various phone conversations, McCoy enhances her understanding of the latest therapies for successful treatment. This information is critical to Mary making informed recommendations of the companies producing these drugs.

Comment: McCoy is appropriately using the expert networks to enhance her evaluation process. She has neither asked for nor received information that may be considered material and nonpublic, such as preliminary trial results. McCoy is allowed to seek advice from professionals within the industry that she follows.

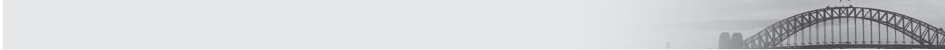
Example 12 (Using an Expert Network):

Tom Watson is a research analyst working for a hedge fund. To stay informed, Watson relies on outside experts for information on such industries as technology and pharmaceuticals, where new advancements occur frequently. The meetings with the industry experts often are arranged through networks or placement agents that have specific policies and procedures in place to deter the exchange of material nonpublic information.

Watson arranges a call to discuss future prospects for one of the fund's existing technology company holdings, a company that was testing a new semiconductor product. The scientist leading the tests indicates his disappointment with the performance of the new semiconductor. Following the call, Watson relays the insights he received to others at the fund. The fund sells its current position in the company and buys many put options because the market is anticipating the success of the new semiconductor and the share price reflects the market's optimism.

Comment: Watson has violated Standard II(A) by passing along material nonpublic information concerning the ongoing product tests, which the fund used to trade in the securities and options of the related company. Watson cannot simply rely on the agreements signed by individuals who participate in expert networks that state that he has not received information that would prohibit his trading activity. He must make his own determination whether information he received through these arrangements reaches a materiality threshold that would affect his trading abilities.

Standard II(B) Market Manipulation



Members and Candidates must not engage in practices that distort prices or artificially inflate trading volume with the intent to mislead market participants.

Guidance

Highlights:

- *Information-Based Manipulation*
- *Transaction-Based Manipulation*

Standard II(B) requires that members and candidates uphold market integrity by prohibiting market manipulation. Market manipulation includes practices that distort security prices or trading volume with the intent to deceive people or entities that rely on information in the market. Market manipulation damages the interests of all investors by disrupting the smooth functioning of financial markets and lowering investor confidence.

Market manipulation may lead to a lack of trust in the fairness of the capital markets, resulting in higher risk premiums and reduced investor participation. A reduction in the efficiency of a local capital market may negatively affect the growth and economic health of the country and may also influence the operations of the globally interconnected capital markets. Although market manipulation may be less likely to occur in mature financial markets than in emerging markets, cross-border investing increasingly exposes all global investors to the potential for such practices.

Market manipulation includes (1) the dissemination of false or misleading information and (2) transactions that deceive or would be likely to mislead market participants by distorting the price-setting mechanism of financial instruments. The development of new products and technologies increases the incentives, means, and opportunities for market manipulation. Additionally, the increasing complexity and sophistication of the technologies used for communicating with market participants have created new avenues for manipulation.

Information-Based Manipulation

Information-based manipulation includes, but is not limited to, spreading false rumors to induce trading by others. For example, members and candidates must refrain from “pumping up” the price of an investment by issuing misleading positive information or overly optimistic projections of a security’s worth only to later “dump” the investment (i.e., sell it) once the price, fueled by the misleading information’s effect on other market participants, reaches an artificially high level.

Transaction-Based Manipulation

Transaction-based manipulation involves instances where a member or candidate knew or should have known that his or her actions could affect the pricing of a security. This type of manipulation includes, but is not limited to, the following:

- transactions that artificially affect prices or volume to give the impression of activity or price movement in a financial instrument, which represent a diversion from the expectations of a fair and efficient market, and
- securing a controlling, dominant position in a financial instrument to exploit and manipulate the price of a related derivative and/or the underlying asset.

Standard II(B) is not intended to preclude transactions undertaken on legitimate trading strategies based on perceived market inefficiencies. The intent of the action is critical to determining whether it is a violation of this standard.

Application of the Standard

Example 1 (Independent Analysis and Company Promotion):

The principal owner of Financial Information Services (FIS) entered into an agreement with two microcap companies to promote the companies' stock in exchange for stock and cash compensation. The principal owner caused FIS to disseminate e-mails, design and maintain several websites, and distribute an online investment newsletter—all of which recommended investment in the two companies. The systematic publication of purportedly independent analyses and recommendations containing inaccurate and highly promotional and speculative statements increased public investment in the companies and led to dramatically higher stock prices.

Comment: The principal owner of FIS violated Standard II(B) by using inaccurate reporting and misleading information under the guise of independent analysis to artificially increase the stock price of the companies. Furthermore, the principal owner violated Standard V(A)—Diligence and Reasonable Basis by not having a reasonable and adequate basis for recommending the two companies and violated Standard VI(A)—Disclosure of Conflicts by not disclosing to investors the compensation agreements (which constituted a conflict of interest).

Example 2 (Personal Trading Practices and Price):

John Gray is a private investor in Belgium who bought a large position several years ago in Fame Pharmaceuticals, a German small-cap security with limited average trading volume. He has now decided to significantly reduce his holdings owing to the poor price performance. Gray is worried that the low trading volume for the stock may cause the price to decline further as he attempts to sell his large position.

Gray devises a plan to divide his holdings into multiple accounts in different brokerage firms and private banks in the names of family members, friends, and even a private religious institution. He then creates a rumor campaign on various blogs and social media outlets promoting the company.

Gray begins to buy and sell the stock using the accounts in hopes of raising the trading volume and the price. He conducts the trades through multiple brokers, selling slightly larger positions than he bought on a tactical schedule, and over time, he is able to reduce his holding as desired without negatively affecting the sale price.

Comment: John violated Standard II(B) by fraudulently creating the appearance that there was a greater investor interest in the stock through the online rumors. Additionally, through his trading strategy, he created the

appearance that there was greater liquidity in the stock than actually existed. He was able to manipulate the price through both misinformation and trading practices.

Example 3 (Creating Artificial Price Volatility):

Matthew Murphy is an analyst at Divisadero Securities & Co., which has a significant number of hedge funds among its most important brokerage clients. Some of the hedge funds hold short positions on Wirewolf Semiconductor. Two trading days before the publication of a quarter-end report, Murphy alerts his sales force that he is about to issue a research report on Wirewolf that will include the following opinions:

- quarterly revenues are likely to fall short of management’s guidance,
- earnings will be as much as 5 cents per share (or more than 10%) below consensus, and
- Wirewolf’s highly respected chief financial officer may be about to join another company.

Knowing that Wirewolf has already entered its declared quarter-end “quiet period” before reporting earnings (and thus would be reluctant to respond to rumors), Murphy times the release of his research report specifically to sensationalize the negative aspects of the message in order to create significant downward pressure on Wirewolf’s stock—to the distinct advantage of Divisadero’s hedge fund clients. The report’s conclusions are based on speculation, not on fact. The next day, the research report is broadcast to all of Divisadero’s clients and to the usual newswire services.

Before Wirewolf’s investor-relations department can assess the damage on the final trading day of the quarter and refute Murphy’s report, its stock opens trading sharply lower, allowing Divisadero’s clients to cover their short positions at substantial gains.

Comment: Murphy violated Standard II(B) by aiming to create artificial price volatility designed to have a material impact on the price of an issuer’s stock. Moreover, by lacking an adequate basis for the recommendation, Murphy also violated Standard V(A)—Diligence and Reasonable Basis.

Example 4 (Personal Trading and Volume):

Rajesh Sekar manages two funds—an equity fund and a balanced fund—whose equity components are supposed to be managed in accordance with the same model. According to that model, the funds’ holdings in stock of Digital Design Inc. (DD) are excessive. Reduction of the DD holdings would not be easy, however, because the stock has low liquidity in the stock market. Sekar decides to start trading larger portions of DD stock back and forth between his two funds to slowly increase the price; he believes market participants will see growing volume and increasing price and become interested in the stock. If other investors are willing to buy the DD stock because of such interest, then Sekar will be able to get rid of at least some of his overweight position without inducing price decreases. In this way, the whole transaction will be for the benefit of fund participants, even if additional brokers’ commissions are incurred.

Comment: Sekar’s plan would be beneficial for his funds’ participants but is based on artificial distortion of both trading volume and the price of the DD stock and thus constitutes a violation of Standard II(B).

Example 5 (“Pump-Priming” Strategy):

ACME Futures Exchange is launching a new bond futures contract. To convince investors, traders, arbitrageurs, hedgers, and so on, to use its contract, the exchange attempts to demonstrate that it has the best liquidity. To do so, it enters into agreements with members in which they commit to a substantial minimum trading volume on the new contract over a specific period in exchange for substantial reductions of their regular commissions.

Comment: The formal liquidity of a market is determined by the obligations set on market makers, but the actual liquidity of a market is better estimated by the actual trading volume and bid–ask spreads. Attempts to mislead participants about the actual liquidity of the market constitute a violation of Standard II(B). In this example, investors have been intentionally misled to believe they chose the most liquid instrument for some specific purpose, but they could eventually see the actual liquidity of the contract significantly reduced after the term of the agreement expires. If the ACME Futures Exchange fully discloses its agreement with members to boost transactions over some initial launch period, it will not violate Standard II(B). ACME’s intent is not to harm investors but, on the contrary, to give them a better service. For that purpose, it may engage in a liquidity-pumping strategy, but the strategy must be disclosed.

Example 6 (Creating Artificial Price Volatility):

Emily Gordon, an analyst of household products companies, is employed by a research boutique, Picador & Co. Based on information that she has gathered during a trip through Latin America, she believes that Hygene, Inc., a major marketer of personal care products, has generated better-than-expected sales from its new product initiatives in South America. After modestly boosting her projections for revenue and for gross profit margin in her worksheet models for Hygene, Gordon estimates that her earnings projection of US\$2.00 per diluted share for the current year may be as much as 5% too low. She contacts the chief financial officer (CFO) of Hygene to try to gain confirmation of her findings from her trip and to get some feedback regarding her revised models. The CFO declines to comment and reiterates management’s most recent guidance of US\$1.95–US\$2.05 for the year.

Gordon decides to try to force a comment from the company by telling Picador & Co. clients who follow a momentum investment style that consensus earnings projections for Hygene are much too low; she explains that she is considering raising her published estimate by an ambitious US\$0.15 to US\$2.15 per share. She believes that when word of an unrealistically high earnings projection filters back to Hygene’s investor-relations department, the company will feel compelled to update its earnings guidance. Meanwhile, Gordon hopes that she is at least correct with respect to the earnings direction and that she will help clients who act on her insights to profit from a quick gain by trading on her advice.

Comment: By exaggerating her earnings projections in order to try to fuel a quick gain in Hygene’s stock price, Gordon is in violation of Standard II(B). Furthermore, by virtue of previewing her intentions of revising upward her earnings projections to only a select group of clients, she is in violation of Standard III(B)–Fair Dealing. However, it would have been acceptable for Gordon to write a report that

- framed her earnings projection in a range of possible outcomes,

- outlined clearly the assumptions used in her Hygene models that took into consideration the findings from her trip through Latin America, and
- was distributed to all Picador & Co. clients in an equitable manner.

Example 7 (Pump and Dump Strategy):

In an effort to pump up the price of his holdings in Moosehead & Belfast Railroad Company, Steve Weinberg logs on to several investor chat rooms on the internet to start rumors that the company is about to expand its rail network in anticipation of receiving a large contract for shipping lumber.

Comment: Weinberg has violated Standard II(B) by disseminating false information about Moosehead & Belfast with the intent to mislead market participants.

Example 8 (Manipulating Model Inputs):

Bill Mandeville supervises a structured financing team for Superior Investment Bank. His responsibilities include packaging new structured investment products and managing Superior's relationship with relevant rating agencies. To achieve the best rating possible, Mandeville uses mostly positive scenarios as model inputs—scenarios that reflect minimal downside risk in the assets underlying the structured products. The resulting output statistics in the rating request and underwriting prospectus support the idea that the new structured products have minimal potential downside risk. Additionally, Mandeville's compensation from Superior is partially based on both the level of the rating assigned and the successful sale of new structured investment products but does not have a link to the long-term performance of the instruments.

Mandeville is extremely successful and leads Superior as the top originator of structured investment products for the next two years. In the third year, the economy experiences difficulties and the values of the assets underlying structured products significantly decline. The subsequent defaults lead to major turmoil in the capital markets, the demise of Superior Investment Bank, and the loss of Mandeville's employment.

Comment: Mandeville manipulates the inputs of a model to minimize associated risk to achieve higher ratings. His understanding of structured products allows him to skillfully decide which inputs to include in support of the desired rating and price. This information manipulation for short-term gain, which is in violation of Standard II(B), ultimately causes significant damage to many parties and the capital markets as a whole. Mandeville should have realized that promoting a rating and price with inaccurate information could cause not only a loss of price confidence in the particular structured product but also a loss of investor trust in the system. Such loss of confidence affects the ability of the capital markets to operate efficiently.

Example 9 (Information Manipulation):


Allen King is a performance analyst for Torrey Investment Funds. King believes that the portfolio manager for the firm's small- and microcap equity fund dislikes him because the manager never offers him tickets to the local baseball team's games but does offer tickets to other employees. To incite a potential regulatory review of the manager, King creates user profiles on several online forums under the portfolio manager's name and starts rumors about potential mergers for several of the smaller

companies in the portfolio. As the prices of these companies' stocks increase, the portfolio manager sells the position, which leads to an investigation by the regulator as King desired.

Comment: King has violated Standard II(B) even though he did not personally profit from the market's reaction to the rumor. In posting the false information, King misleads others into believing the companies were likely to be acquired. Although his intent was to create trouble for the portfolio manager, his actions clearly manipulated the factual information that was available to the market.

STANDARD III: DUTIES TO CLIENTS

Standard III(A) Loyalty, Prudence, and Care



Members and Candidates have a duty of loyalty to their clients and must act with reasonable care and exercise prudent judgment. Members and Candidates must act for the benefit of their clients and place their clients' interests before their employer's or their own interests.

Guidance

Highlights:

- *Understanding the Application of Loyalty, Prudence, and Care*
- *Identifying the Actual Investment Client*
- *Developing the Client's Portfolio*
- *Soft Commission Policies*
- *Proxy Voting Policies*

Standard III(A) clarifies that client interests are paramount. A member's or candidate's responsibility to a client includes a duty of loyalty and a duty to exercise reasonable care. Investment actions must be carried out for the sole benefit of the client and in a manner the member or candidate believes, given the known facts and circumstances, to be in the best interest of the client. Members and candidates must exercise the same level of prudence, judgment, and care that they would apply in the management and disposition of their own interests in similar circumstances.

Prudence requires caution and discretion. The exercise of prudence by investment professionals requires that they act with the care, skill, and diligence that a reasonable person acting in a like capacity and familiar with such matters would use. In the context of managing a client's portfolio, prudence requires following the investment parameters set forth by the client and balancing risk and return. Acting with care requires members and candidates to act in a prudent and judicious manner in avoiding harm to clients.

Standard III(A) sets minimum expectations for members and candidates when fulfilling their responsibilities to their clients. Regulatory and legal requirements for such duties can vary across the investment industry depending on a variety of factors,

including job function of the investment professional, the existence of an adviser/client relationship, and the nature of the recommendations being offered. From the perspective of the end user of financial services, these different standards can be arcane and confusing, leaving investors unsure of what level of service to expect from investment professionals they employ. The single standard of conduct described in Standard III(A) benefits investors by establishing a benchmark for the duties of loyalty, prudence, and care and clarifies that all CFA Institute members and candidates, regardless of job title, local laws, or cultural differences, are required to comply with these fundamental responsibilities. Investors hiring members or candidates who must adhere to the duty of loyalty, prudence, and care set forth in this standard can be confident that these responsibilities are a requirement regardless of any legally imposed fiduciary duties.

Standard III(A), however, is not a substitute for a member's or candidate's legal or regulatory obligations. As stated in Standard I(A), members and candidates must abide by the most strict requirements imposed on them by regulators or the Code and Standards, including any legally imposed fiduciary duty. Members and candidates must also be aware of whether they have "custody" or effective control of client assets. If so, a heightened level of responsibility arises. Members and candidates are considered to have custody if they have any direct or indirect access to client funds. Members and candidates must manage any pool of assets in their control in accordance with the terms of the governing documents (such as trust documents and investment management agreements), which are the primary determinant of the manager's powers and duties. Whenever their actions are contrary to provisions of those instruments or applicable law, members and candidates are at risk of violating Standard III(A).

Understanding the Application of Loyalty, Prudence, and Care

Standard III(A) establishes a minimum benchmark for the duties of loyalty, prudence, and care that are required of all members and candidates regardless of whether a legal fiduciary duty applies. Although fiduciary duty often encompasses the principles of loyalty, prudence, and care, Standard III(A) does not render all members and candidates fiduciaries. The responsibilities of members and candidates for fulfilling their obligations under this standard depend greatly on the nature of their professional responsibilities and the relationships they have with clients. The conduct of members and candidates may or may not rise to the level of being a fiduciary, depending on the type of client, whether the member or candidate is giving investment advice, and the many facts and circumstances surrounding a particular transaction or client relationship.

Fiduciary duties are often imposed by law or regulation when an individual or institution is charged with the duty of acting for the benefit of another party, such as managing investment assets. The duty required in fiduciary relationships exceeds what is acceptable in many other business relationships because a fiduciary is in an enhanced position of trust. Although members and candidates must comply with any legally imposed fiduciary duty, the Code and Standards neither impose such a legal responsibility nor require all members or candidates to act as fiduciaries. However, Standard III(A) requires members and candidates to work in the client's best interest no matter what the job function.

A member or candidate who does not provide advisory services to a client but who acts only as a trade execution professional must prudently work in the client's interest when completing requested trades. Acting in the client's best interest requires these professionals to use their skills and diligence to execute trades in the most favorable terms that can be achieved. Members and candidates operating in such positions must use care to operate within the parameters set by the client's trading instructions.

Members and candidates may also operate in a blended environment where they execute client trades and offer advice on a limited set of investment options. The extent of the advisory arrangement and limitations should be outlined in the agreement with the client at the outset of the relationship. For instance, members and candidates should

inform clients that the advice provided will be limited to the propriety products of the firm and not include other products available on the market. Clients who want access to a wider range of investment products would have the information necessary to decide not to engage with members or candidates working under these restrictions.

Members and candidates operating in this blended context would comply with their obligations by recommending the allowable products that are consistent with the client's objectives and risk tolerance. They would exercise care through diligently aligning the client's needs with the attributes of the products being recommended. Members and candidates should place the client's interests first by disregarding any firm or personal interest in motivating a recommended transaction.

There is a large variety of professional relationships that members and candidates have with their clients. Standard III(A) requires them to fulfill the obligations outlined explicitly or implicitly in the client agreements to the best of their abilities and with loyalty, prudence, and care. Whether a member or candidate is structuring a new securitization transaction, completing a credit rating analysis, or leading a public company, he or she must work with prudence and care in delivering the agreed-on services.

Identifying the Actual Investment Client

The first step for members and candidates in fulfilling their duty of loyalty to clients is to determine the identity of the "client" to whom the duty of loyalty is owed. In the context of an investment manager managing the personal assets of an individual, the client is easily identified. When the manager is responsible for the portfolios of pension plans or trusts, however, the client is not the person or entity who hires the manager but, rather, the beneficiaries of the plan or trust. The duty of loyalty is owed to the ultimate beneficiaries.

In some situations, an actual client or group of beneficiaries may not exist. Members and candidates managing a fund to an index or an expected mandate owe the duty of loyalty, prudence, and care to invest in a manner consistent with the stated mandate. The decisions of a fund's manager, although benefiting all fund investors, do not have to be based on an individual investor's requirements and risk profile. Client loyalty and care for those investing in the fund are the responsibility of members and candidates who have an advisory relationship with those individuals.

Situations involving potential conflicts of interest with respect to responsibilities to clients may be extremely complex because they may involve a number of competing interests. The duty of loyalty, prudence, and care applies to a large number of persons in varying capacities, but the exact duties may differ in many respects in accord with the relationship with each client or each type of account in which the assets are managed. Members and candidates must not only put their obligations to clients first in all dealings but also endeavor to avoid all real or potential conflicts of interest.

Members and candidates with positions whose responsibilities do not include direct investment management also have "clients" that must be considered. Just as there are various types of advisory relationships, members and candidates must look at their roles and responsibilities when making a determination of who their clients are. Sometimes the client is easily identifiable; such is the case in the relationship between a company executive and the firm's public shareholders. At other times, the client may be the investing public as a whole, in which case the goals of independence and objectivity of research surpass the goal of loyalty to a single organization.

Developing the Client's Portfolio

The duty of loyalty, prudence, and care owed to the individual client is especially important because the professional investment manager typically possesses greater knowledge in the investment arena than the client does. This disparity places the individual client in a vulnerable position; the client must trust the manager. The manager in these situations should ensure that the client's objectives and expectations for the

performance of the account are realistic and suitable to the client's circumstances and that the risks involved are appropriate. In most circumstances, recommended investment strategies should relate to the long-term objectives and circumstances of the client.

Particular care must be taken to detect whether the goals of the investment manager or the firm in conducting business, selling products, and executing security transactions potentially conflict with the best interests and objectives of the client. When members and candidates cannot avoid potential conflicts between their firm and clients' interests, they must provide clear and factual disclosures of the circumstances to the clients.

Members and candidates must follow any guidelines set by their clients for the management of their assets. Some clients, such as charitable organizations and pension plans, have strict investment policies that limit investment options to certain types or classes of investment or prohibit investment in certain securities. Other organizations have aggressive policies that do not prohibit investments by type but, instead, set criteria on the basis of the portfolio's total risk and return.

Investment decisions must be judged in the context of the total portfolio rather than by individual investment within the portfolio. The member's or candidate's duty is satisfied with respect to a particular investment if the individual has thoroughly considered the investment's place in the overall portfolio, the risk of loss and opportunity for gains, tax implications, and the diversification, liquidity, cash flow, and overall return requirements of the assets or the portion of the assets for which the manager is responsible.

Soft Commission Policies

An investment manager often has discretion over the selection of brokers executing transactions. Conflicts may arise when an investment manager uses client brokerage to purchase research services, a practice commonly called "soft dollars" or "soft commissions." A member or candidate who pays a higher brokerage commission than he or she would normally pay to allow for the purchase of goods or services, without corresponding benefit to the client, violates the duty of loyalty to the client.

From time to time, a client will direct a manager to use the client's brokerage to purchase goods or services for the client, a practice that is commonly called "directed brokerage." Because brokerage commission is an asset of the client and is used to benefit that client, not the manager, such a practice does not violate any duty of loyalty. However, a member or candidate is obligated to seek "best price" and "best execution" and be assured by the client that the goods or services purchased from the brokerage will benefit the account beneficiaries. "Best execution" refers to a trading process that seeks to maximize the value of the client's portfolio within the client's stated investment objectives and constraints. In addition, the member or candidate should disclose to the client that the client may not be getting best execution from the directed brokerage.

Proxy Voting Policies

The duty of loyalty, prudence, and care may apply in a number of situations facing the investment professional besides those related directly to investing assets.

Part of a member's or candidate's duty of loyalty includes voting proxies in an informed and responsible manner. Proxies have economic value to a client, and members and candidates must ensure that they properly safeguard and maximize this value. An investment manager who fails to vote, casts a vote without considering the impact of the question, or votes blindly with management on nonroutine governance issues (e.g., a change in company capitalization) may violate this standard. Voting of proxies is an integral part of the management of investments.

A cost–benefit analysis may show that voting all proxies may not benefit the client, so voting proxies may not be necessary in all instances. Members and candidates should disclose to clients their proxy voting policies.

Recommended Procedures for Compliance

Regular Account Information

Members and candidates with control of client assets (1) should submit to each client, at least quarterly, an itemized statement showing the funds and securities in the custody or possession of the member or candidate plus all debits, credits, and transactions that occurred during the period, (2) should disclose to the client where the assets are to be maintained, as well as where or when they are moved, and (3) should separate the client’s assets from any other party’s assets, including the member’s or candidate’s own assets.

Client Approval

If a member or candidate is uncertain about the appropriate course of action with respect to a client, the member or candidate should consider what he or she would expect or demand if the member or candidate were the client. If in doubt, a member or candidate should disclose the questionable matter in writing to the client and obtain client approval.

Firm Policies

Members and candidates should address and encourage their firms to address the following topics when drafting the statements or manuals containing their policies and procedures regarding responsibilities to clients:

- *Follow all applicable rules and laws:* Members and candidates must follow all legal requirements and applicable provisions of the Code and Standards.
- *Establish the investment objectives of the client:* Make a reasonable inquiry into a client’s investment experience, risk and return objectives, and financial constraints prior to making investment recommendations or taking investment actions.
- *Consider all the information when taking actions:* When taking investment actions, members and candidates must consider the appropriateness and suitability of the investment relative to (1) the client’s needs and circumstances, (2) the investment’s basic characteristics, and (3) the basic characteristics of the total portfolio.
- *Diversify:* Members and candidates should diversify investments to reduce the risk of loss, unless diversification is not consistent with plan guidelines or is contrary to the account objectives.
- *Carry out regular reviews:* Members and candidates should establish regular review schedules to ensure that the investments held in the account adhere to the terms of the governing documents.
- *Deal fairly with all clients with respect to investment actions:* Members and candidates must not favor some clients over others and should establish policies for allocating trades and disseminating investment recommendations.
- *Disclose conflicts of interest:* Members and candidates must disclose all actual and potential conflicts of interest so that clients can evaluate those conflicts.
- *Disclose compensation arrangements:* Members and candidates should make their clients aware of all forms of manager compensation.

- *Vote proxies:* In most cases, members and candidates should determine who is authorized to vote shares and vote proxies in the best interests of the clients and ultimate beneficiaries.
- *Maintain confidentiality:* Members and candidates must preserve the confidentiality of client information.
- *Seek best execution:* Unless directed by the client as ultimate beneficiary, members and candidates must seek best execution for their clients. (Best execution is defined in the preceding text.)
- *Place client interests first:* Members and candidates must serve the best interests of clients.

Application of the Standard

Example 1 (Identifying the Client—Plan Participants):

First Country Bank serves as trustee for the Miller Company's pension plan. Miller is the target of a hostile takeover attempt by Newton, Inc. In attempting to ward off Newton, Miller's managers persuade Julian Wiley, an investment manager at First Country Bank, to purchase Miller common stock in the open market for the employee pension plan. Miller's officials indicate that such action would be favorably received and would probably result in other accounts being placed with the bank. Although Wiley believes the stock is overvalued and would not ordinarily buy it, he purchases the stock to support Miller's managers, to maintain Miller's good favor toward the bank, and to realize additional new business. The heavy stock purchases cause Miller's market price to rise to such a level that Newton retracts its takeover bid.

Comment: Standard III(A) requires that a member or candidate, in evaluating a takeover bid, act prudently and solely in the interests of plan participants and beneficiaries. To meet this requirement, a member or candidate must carefully evaluate the long-term prospects of the company against the short-term prospects presented by the takeover offer and by the ability to invest elsewhere. In this instance, Wiley, acting on behalf of his employer, which was the trustee for a pension plan, clearly violated Standard III(A). He used the pension plan to perpetuate existing management, perhaps to the detriment of plan participants and the company's shareholders, and to benefit himself. Wiley's responsibilities to the plan participants and beneficiaries should have taken precedence over any ties of his bank to corporate managers and over his self-interest. Wiley had a duty to examine the takeover offer on its own merits and to make an independent decision. The guiding principle is the appropriateness of the investment decision to the pension plan, not whether the decision benefited Wiley or the company that hired him.

Example 2 (Client Commission Practices):

JNI, a successful investment counseling firm, serves as investment manager for the pension plans of several large regionally based companies. Its trading activities generate a significant amount of commission-related business. JNI uses the brokerage and research services of many firms, but most of its trading activity is handled through a large brokerage company, Thompson, Inc., because the executives of the two firms have a close friendship. Thompson's commission structure is high in comparison with charges for similar brokerage services from other firms. JNI considers Thompson's

research services and execution capabilities average. In exchange for JNI directing its brokerage to Thompson, Thompson absorbs a number of JNI overhead expenses, including those for rent.

Comment: JNI executives are breaching their responsibilities by using client brokerage for services that do not benefit JNI clients and by not obtaining best price and best execution for their clients. Because JNI executives are not upholding their duty of loyalty, they are violating Standard III(A).

Example 3 (Brokerage Arrangements):

Charlotte Everett, a struggling independent investment adviser, serves as investment manager for the pension plans of several companies. One of her brokers, Scott Company, is close to consummating management agreements with prospective new clients whereby Everett would manage the new client accounts and trade the accounts exclusively through Scott. One of Everett's existing clients, Crayton Corporation, has directed Everett to place securities transactions for Crayton's account exclusively through Scott. But to induce Scott to exert efforts to send more new accounts to her, Everett also directs transactions to Scott from other clients without their knowledge.

Comment: Everett has an obligation at all times to seek best price and best execution on all trades. Everett may direct new client trades exclusively through Scott Company as long as Everett receives best price and execution on the trades or receives a written statement from new clients that she is *not* to seek best price and execution and that they are aware of the consequence for their accounts. Everett may trade other accounts through Scott as a reward for directing clients to Everett only if the accounts receive best price and execution and the practice is disclosed to the accounts. Because Everett does not disclose the directed trading, Everett has violated Standard III(A).

Example 4 (Brokerage Arrangements):

Emilie Rome is a trust officer for Paget Trust Company. Rome's supervisor is responsible for reviewing Rome's trust account transactions and her monthly reports of personal stock transactions. Rome has been using Nathan Gray, a broker, almost exclusively for trust account brokerage transactions. When Gray makes a market in stocks, he has been giving Rome a lower price for personal purchases and a higher price for sales than he gives to Rome's trust accounts and other investors.

Comment: Rome is violating her duty of loyalty to the bank's trust accounts by using Gray for brokerage transactions simply because Gray trades Rome's personal account on favorable terms. Rome is placing her own interests before those of her clients.

Example 5 (Client Commission Practices):

Lauren Parker, an analyst with Provo Advisors, covers South American equities for her firm. She likes to travel to the markets for which she is responsible and decides to go on a trip to Chile, Argentina, and Brazil. The trip is sponsored by SouthAM, Inc., a research firm with a small broker/dealer affiliate that uses the clearing facilities of a larger New York brokerage house. SouthAM specializes in arranging South American trips for analysts during which they can meet with central bank officials, government ministers, local economists, and senior executives of corporations. SouthAM accepts commission dollars at a ratio of 2 to 1 against the hard-dollar costs of the research fee for the trip. Parker is not sure that SouthAM's execution is competitive, but without informing her supervisor, she directs the trading desk at Provo to start giving

commission business to SouthAM so she can take the trip. SouthAM has conveniently timed the briefing trip to coincide with the beginning of Carnival season, so Parker also decides to spend five days of vacation in Rio de Janeiro at the end of the trip. Parker uses commission dollars to pay for the five days of hotel expenses.

Comment: Parker is violating Standard III(A) by not exercising her duty of loyalty to her clients. She should have determined whether the commissions charged by SouthAM are reasonable in relation to the benefit of the research provided by the trip. She also should have determined whether best execution and prices could be received from SouthAM. In addition, the five extra days are not part of the research effort because they do not assist in the investment decision making. Thus, the hotel expenses for the five days should not be paid for with client assets.

Example 6 (Excessive Trading):

Vida Knauss manages the portfolios of a number of high-net-worth individuals. A major part of her investment management fee is based on trading commissions. Knauss engages in extensive trading for each of her clients to ensure that she attains the minimum commission level set by her firm. Although the securities purchased and sold for the clients are appropriate and fall within the acceptable asset classes for the clients, the amount of trading for each account exceeds what is necessary to accomplish the client's investment objectives.

Comment: Knauss has violated Standard III(A) because she is using the assets of her clients to benefit her firm and herself.

Example 7 (Managing Family Accounts):

Adam Dill recently joined New Investments Asset Managers. To assist Dill in building a book of clients, both his father and brother opened new fee-paying accounts. Dill followed all the firm's procedures in noting his relationships with these clients and in developing their investment policy statements.

After several years, the number of Dill's clients has grown, but he still manages the original accounts of his family members. An IPO is coming to market that is a suitable investment for many of his clients, including his brother. Dill does not receive the amount of stock he requested, so to avoid any appearance of a conflict of interest, he does not allocate any shares to his brother's account.

Comment: Dill has violated Standard III(A) because he is not acting for the benefit of his brother's account as well as his other accounts. The brother's account is a regular fee-paying account comparable to the accounts of his other clients. By not allocating the shares proportionately across *all* accounts for which he thought the IPO was suitable, Dill is disadvantaging specific clients.

Dill would have been correct in not allocating shares to his brother's account if that account was being managed outside the normal fee structure of the firm.

Example 8 (Identifying the Client):

Donna Hensley has been hired by a law firm to testify as an expert witness. Although the testimony is intended to represent impartial advice, she is concerned that her work may have negative consequences for the law firm. If the law firm is Hensley's client, how does she ensure that her testimony will not violate the required duty of loyalty, prudence, and care to one's client?

Comment: In this situation, the law firm represents Hensley's employer and the aspect of "who is the client" is not well defined. When acting as an expert witness, Hensley is bound by the standard of independence and objectivity in the same manner as an independent research analyst would be bound. Hensley must not let the law firm influence the testimony she provides in the legal proceedings.

Example 9 (Identifying the Client):

Jon Miller is a mutual fund portfolio manager. The fund is focused on the global financial services sector. Wanda Spears is a private wealth manager in the same city as Miller and is a friend of Miller. At a local CFA Institute society meeting, Spears mentions to Miller that her new client is an investor in Miller's fund. She states that the two of them now share a responsibility to this client.

Comment: Spears' statement is not totally correct. Because she provides the advisory services to her new client, she alone is bound by the duty of loyalty to this client. Miller's responsibility is to manage the fund according to the investment policy statement of the fund. His actions should not be influenced by the needs of any particular fund investor.

Example 10 (Client Loyalty):

After providing client account investment performance to the external-facing departments but prior to it being finalized for release to clients, Teresa Nguyen, an investment performance analyst, notices the reporting system missed a trade. Correcting the omission resulted in a large loss for a client that had previously placed the firm on "watch" for potential termination owing to underperformance in prior periods. Nguyen knows this news is unpleasant but informs the appropriate individuals that the report needs to be updated before releasing it to the client.


Comment: Nguyen's actions align with the requirements of Standard III(A). Even though the correction may lead to the firm's termination by the client, withholding information on errors would not be in the best interest of the client.

Example 11 (Execution-Only Responsibilities):

Baftija Sulejman recently became a candidate in the CFA Program. He is a broker who executes client-directed trades for several high-net-worth individuals. Sulejman does not provide any investment advice and only executes the trading decisions made by clients. He is concerned that the Code and Standards impose a fiduciary duty on him in his dealing with clients and sends an e-mail to the CFA Ethics Helpdesk (ethics@cfa institute.org) to seek guidance on this issue.

Comment: In this instance, Sulejman serves in an execution-only capacity and his duty of loyalty, prudence, and care is centered on the skill and diligence used when executing trades—namely, by seeking best execution and making trades within the parameters set by the clients (instructions on quantity, price, timing, etc.). Acting in the best interests of the client dictates that trades are executed on the most favorable terms that can be achieved for the client. Given this job function, the requirements of the Code and Standards for loyalty, prudence, and care clearly do not impose a fiduciary duty.

Standard III(B) Fair Dealing



Members and Candidates must deal fairly and objectively with all clients when providing investment analysis, making investment recommendations, taking investment action, or engaging in other professional activities.

Guidance

Highlights:

- *Investment Recommendations*
- *Investment Action*

Standard III(B) requires members and candidates to treat all clients fairly when disseminating investment recommendations or making material changes to prior investment recommendations or when taking investment action with regard to general purchases, new issues, or secondary offerings. Only through the fair treatment of all parties can the investment management profession maintain the confidence of the investing public.

When an investment adviser has multiple clients, the potential exists for the adviser to favor one client over another. This favoritism may take various forms—from the quality and timing of services provided to the allocation of investment opportunities.

The term “fairly” implies that the member or candidate must take care not to discriminate against any clients when disseminating investment recommendations or taking investment action. Standard III(B) does not state “equally” because members and candidates could not possibly reach all clients at exactly the same time—whether by printed mail, telephone (including text messaging), computer (including internet updates and e-mail distribution), facsimile (fax), or wire. Each client has unique needs, investment criteria, and investment objectives, so not all investment opportunities are suitable for all clients. In addition, members and candidates may provide more personal, specialized, or in-depth service to clients who are willing to pay for premium services through higher management fees or higher levels of brokerage. Members and candidates may differentiate their services to clients, but different levels of service must not disadvantage or negatively affect clients. In addition, the different service levels should be disclosed to clients and prospective clients and should be available to everyone (i.e., different service levels should not be offered selectively).

Standard III(B) covers conduct in two broadly defined categories—investment recommendations and investment action.

Investment Recommendations

The first category of conduct involves members and candidates whose primary function is the preparation of investment recommendations to be disseminated either to the public or within a firm for the use of others in making investment decisions. This group includes members and candidates employed by investment counseling, advisory, or consulting firms as well as banks, brokerage firms, and insurance companies. The criterion is that the member’s or candidate’s primary responsibility is the preparation of recommendations to be acted on by others, including those in the member’s or candidate’s organization.

An investment recommendation is any opinion expressed by a member or candidate in regard to purchasing, selling, or holding a given security or other investment. The opinion may be disseminated to customers or clients through an initial detailed research report, through a brief update report, by addition to or deletion from a list of recommended securities, or simply by oral communication. A recommendation that is distributed to anyone outside the organization is considered a communication for general distribution under Standard III(B).

Standard III(B) addresses the manner in which investment recommendations or changes in prior recommendations are disseminated to clients. Each member or candidate is obligated to ensure that information is disseminated in such a manner that all clients have a fair opportunity to act on every recommendation. Communicating with all clients on a uniform basis presents practical problems for members and candidates because of differences in timing and methods of communication with various types of customers and clients. Members and candidates should encourage their firms to design an equitable system to prevent selective or discriminatory disclosure and should inform clients about what kind of communications they will receive.

The duty to clients imposed by Standard III(B) may be more critical when members or candidates change their recommendations than when they make initial recommendations. Material changes in a member's or candidate's prior investment recommendations because of subsequent research should be communicated to all current clients; particular care should be taken that the information reaches those clients who the member or candidate knows have acted on or been affected by the earlier advice. Clients who do not know that the member or candidate has changed a recommendation and who, therefore, place orders contrary to a current recommendation should be advised of the changed recommendation before the order is accepted.

Investment Action

The second category of conduct includes those members and candidates whose primary function is taking investment action (portfolio management) on the basis of recommendations prepared internally or received from external sources. Investment action, like investment recommendations, can affect market value. Consequently, Standard III(B) requires that members or candidates treat all clients fairly in light of their investment objectives and circumstances. For example, when making investments in new offerings or in secondary financings, members and candidates should distribute the issues to all customers for whom the investments are appropriate in a manner consistent with the policies of the firm for allocating blocks of stock. If the issue is oversubscribed, then the issue should be prorated to all subscribers. This action should be taken on a round-lot basis to avoid odd-lot distributions. In addition, if the issue is oversubscribed, members and candidates should forgo any sales to themselves or their immediate families in order to free up additional shares for clients. If the investment professional's family-member accounts are managed similarly to the accounts of other clients of the firm, however, the family-member accounts should not be excluded from buying such shares.

Members and candidates must make every effort to treat all individual and institutional clients in a fair and impartial manner. A member or candidate may have multiple relationships with an institution; for example, the member or candidate may be a corporate trustee, pension fund manager, manager of funds for individuals employed by the customer, loan originator, or creditor. A member or candidate must exercise care to treat all clients fairly.

Members and candidates should disclose to clients and prospective clients the documented allocation procedures they or their firms have in place and how the procedures would affect the client or prospect. The disclosure should be clear and complete so that the client can make an informed investment decision. Even when

complete disclosure is made, however, members and candidates must put client interests ahead of their own. A member's or candidate's duty of fairness and loyalty to clients can never be overridden by client consent to patently unfair allocation procedures.

Treating clients fairly also means that members and candidates should not take advantage of their position in the industry to the detriment of clients. For instance, in the context of IPOs, members and candidates must make bona fide public distributions of "hot issue" securities (defined as securities of a public offering that are trading at a premium in the secondary market whenever such trading commences because of the great demand for the securities). Members and candidates are prohibited from withholding such securities for their own benefit and must not use such securities as a reward or incentive to gain benefit.

Recommended Procedures for Compliance

Develop Firm Policies

Although Standard III(B) refers to a member's or candidate's responsibility to deal fairly and objectively with clients, members and candidates should also encourage their firms to establish compliance procedures requiring all employees who disseminate investment recommendations or take investment actions to treat customers and clients fairly. At the very least, a member or candidate should recommend appropriate procedures to management if none are in place. And the member or candidate should make management aware of possible violations of fair-dealing practices within the firm when they come to the attention of the member or candidate.

The extent of the formality and complexity of such compliance procedures depends on the nature and size of the organization and the type of securities involved. An investment adviser who is a sole proprietor and handles only discretionary accounts might not disseminate recommendations to the public, but that adviser should have formal written procedures to ensure that all clients receive fair investment action.

Good business practice dictates that initial recommendations be made available to all customers who indicate an interest. Although a member or candidate need not communicate a recommendation to all customers, the selection process by which customers receive information should be based on suitability and known interest, not on any preferred or favored status. A common practice to assure fair dealing is to communicate recommendations simultaneously within the firm and to customers.

Members and candidates should consider the following points when establishing fair-dealing compliance procedures:

- *Limit the number of people involved:* Members and candidates should make reasonable efforts to limit the number of people who are privy to the fact that a recommendation is going to be disseminated.
- *Shorten the time frame between decision and dissemination:* Members and candidates should make reasonable efforts to limit the amount of time that elapses between the decision to make an investment recommendation and the time the actual recommendation is disseminated. If a detailed institutional recommendation that might take two or three weeks to publish is in preparation, a short summary report including the conclusion might be published in advance. In an organization where both a research committee and an investment policy committee must approve a recommendation, the meetings should be held on the same day if possible. The process of reviewing reports and printing and mailing them, faxing them, or distributing them by e-mail necessarily involves the passage of time, sometimes long periods of time. In large firms with extensive review processes, the time factor is usually not within the control of the analyst who prepares the report. Thus, many firms and their analysts communicate

to customers and firm personnel the new or changed recommendations by an update or “flash” report. The communication technique might be fax, e-mail, wire, or short written report.

- *Publish guidelines for pre-dissemination behavior:* Members and candidates should encourage firms to develop guidelines that prohibit personnel who have prior knowledge of an investment recommendation from discussing or taking any action on the pending recommendation.
- *Simultaneous dissemination:* Members and candidates should establish procedures for the timing of dissemination of investment recommendations so that all clients are treated fairly—that is, are informed at approximately the same time. For example, if a firm is going to announce a new recommendation, supervisory personnel should time the announcement to avoid placing any client or group of clients at an unfair advantage relative to other clients. A communication to all branch offices should be sent at the time of the general announcement. (When appropriate, the firm should accompany the announcement of a new recommendation with a statement that trading restrictions for the firm’s employees are now in effect. The trading restrictions should stay in effect until the recommendation is widely distributed to all relevant clients.) Once this distribution has occurred, the member or candidate may follow up separately with individual clients, but members and candidates should not give favored clients advance information when such advance notification may disadvantage other clients.
- *Maintain a list of clients and their holdings:* Members and candidates should maintain a list of all clients and the securities or other investments each client holds in order to facilitate notification of customers or clients of a change in an investment recommendation. If a particular security or other investment is to be sold, such a list can be used to ensure that all holders are treated fairly in the liquidation of that particular investment.
- *Develop and document trade allocation procedures:* When formulating procedures for allocating trades, members and candidates should develop a set of guiding principles that ensure
 - fairness to advisory clients, both in priority of execution of orders and in the allocation of the price obtained in execution of block orders or trades,
 - timeliness and efficiency in the execution of orders, and
 - accuracy of the member’s or candidate’s records as to trade orders and client account positions.

With these principles in mind, members and candidates should develop or encourage their firm to develop written allocation procedures, with particular attention to procedures for block trades and new issues. Procedures to consider are as follows:

- requiring orders and modifications or cancellations of orders to be documented and time stamped;
- processing and executing orders on a first-in, first-out basis with consideration of bundling orders for efficiency as appropriate for the asset class or the security;
- developing a policy to address such issues as calculating execution prices and “partial fills” when trades are grouped, or in a block, for efficiency;
- giving all client accounts participating in a block trade the same execution price and charging the same commission;

- when the full amount of the block order is not executed, allocating partially executed orders among the participating client accounts pro rata on the basis of order size while not going below an established minimum lot size for some securities (e.g., bonds); and
- when allocating trades for new issues, obtaining advance indications of interest, allocating securities by client (rather than portfolio manager), and providing a method for calculating allocations.

Disclose Trade Allocation Procedures

Members and candidates should disclose to clients and prospective clients how they select accounts to participate in an order and how they determine the amount of securities each account will buy or sell. Trade allocation procedures must be fair and equitable, and disclosure of inequitable allocation methods does not relieve the member or candidate of this obligation.

Establish Systematic Account Review

Member and candidate supervisors should review each account on a regular basis to ensure that no client or customer is being given preferential treatment and that the investment actions taken for each account are suitable for each account's objectives. Because investments should be based on individual needs and circumstances, an investment manager may have good reasons for placing a given security or other investment in one account while selling it from another account and should fully document the reasons behind both sides of the transaction. Members and candidates should encourage firms to establish review procedures, however, to detect whether trading in one account is being used to benefit a favored client.

Disclose Levels of Service

Members and candidates should disclose to all clients whether the organization offers different levels of service to clients for the same fee or different fees. Different levels of service should not be offered to clients selectively.

Application of the Standard

Example 1 (Selective Disclosure):

Bradley Ames, a well-known and respected analyst, follows the computer industry. In the course of his research, he finds that a small, relatively unknown company whose shares are traded over the counter has just signed significant contracts with some of the companies he follows. After a considerable amount of investigation, Ames decides to write a research report on the small company and recommend purchase of its shares. While the report is being reviewed by the company for factual accuracy, Ames schedules a luncheon with several of his best clients to discuss the company. At the luncheon, he mentions the purchase recommendation scheduled to be sent early the following week to all the firm's clients.

Comment: Ames has violated Standard III(B) by disseminating the purchase recommendation to the clients with whom he has lunch a week before the recommendation is sent to all clients.

Example 2 (Fair Dealing between Funds):

Spencer Rivers, president of XYZ Corporation, moves his company's growth-oriented pension fund to a particular bank primarily because of the excellent investment performance achieved by the bank's commingled fund for the prior five-year period.

Later, Rivers compares the results of his pension fund with those of the bank's commingled fund. He is startled to learn that, even though the two accounts have the same investment objectives and similar portfolios, his company's pension fund has significantly underperformed the bank's commingled fund. Questioning this result at his next meeting with the pension fund's manager, Rivers is told that, as a matter of policy, when a new security is placed on the recommended list, Morgan Jackson, the pension fund manager, first purchases the security for the commingled account and then purchases it on a pro rata basis for all other pension fund accounts. Similarly, when a sale is recommended, the security is sold first from the commingled account and then sold on a pro rata basis from all other accounts. Rivers also learns that if the bank cannot get enough shares (especially of hot issues) to be meaningful to all the accounts, its policy is to place the new issues only in the commingled account.

Seeing that Rivers is neither satisfied nor pleased by the explanation, Jackson quickly adds that nondiscretionary pension accounts and personal trust accounts have a lower priority on purchase and sale recommendations than discretionary pension fund accounts. Furthermore, Jackson states, the company's pension fund had the opportunity to invest up to 5% in the commingled fund.

Comment: The bank's policy does not treat all customers fairly, and Jackson has violated her duty to her clients by giving priority to the growth-oriented commingled fund over all other funds and to discretionary accounts over nondiscretionary accounts. Jackson must execute orders on a systematic basis that is fair to all clients. In addition, trade allocation procedures should be disclosed to all clients when they become clients. Of course, in this case, disclosure of the bank's policy would not change the fact that the policy is unfair.

Example 3 (Fair Dealing and IPO Distribution):

Dominic Morris works for a small regional securities firm. His work consists of corporate finance activities and investing for institutional clients. Arena, Ltd., is planning to go public. The partners have secured rights to buy an arena football league franchise and are planning to use the funds from the issue to complete the purchase. Because arena football is the current rage, Morris believes he has a hot issue on his hands. He has quietly negotiated some options for himself for helping convince Arena to do the financing through his securities firm. When he seeks expressions of interest, the institutional buyers oversubscribe the issue. Morris, assuming that the institutions have the financial clout to drive the stock up, then fills all orders (including his own) and decreases the institutional blocks.

Comment: Morris has violated Standard III(B) by not treating all customers fairly. He should not have taken any shares himself and should have prorated the shares offered among all clients. In addition, he should have disclosed to his firm and to his clients that he received options as part of the deal [see Standard VI(A)–Disclosure of Conflicts].

Example 4 (Fair Dealing and Transaction Allocation):

Eleanor Preston, the chief investment officer of Porter Williams Investments (PWI), a medium-size money management firm, has been trying to retain a client, Colby Company. Management at Colby, which accounts for almost half of PWI's revenues, recently told Preston that if the performance of its account did not improve, it would find a new money manager. Shortly after this threat, Preston purchases mortgage-backed securities (MBSs) for several accounts, including Colby's. Preston is busy with a number of transactions that day, so she fails to allocate the trades immediately or write up the trade tickets. A few days later, when Preston is allocating trades, she notes

that some of the MBSs have significantly increased in price and some have dropped. Preston decides to allocate the profitable trades to Colby and spread the losing trades among several other PWI accounts.

Comment: Preston has violated Standard III(B) by failing to deal fairly with her clients in taking these investment actions. Preston should have allocated the trades prior to executing the orders, or she should have had a systematic approach to allocating the trades, such as pro rata, as soon as practical after they were executed. Among other things, Preston must disclose to the client that the adviser may act as broker for, receive commissions from, and have a potential conflict of interest regarding both parties in agency cross-transactions. After the disclosure, she should obtain from the client consent authorizing such transactions in advance.

Example 5 (Selective Disclosure):

Saunders Industrial Waste Management (SIWM) publicly indicates to analysts that it is comfortable with the somewhat disappointing earnings-per-share projection of US\$1.16 for the quarter. Bernard Roberts, an analyst at Coffey Investments, is confident that SIWM management has understated the forecasted earnings so that the real announcement will cause an “upside surprise” and boost the price of SIWM stock. The “whisper number” (rumored) estimate based on extensive research and discussed among knowledgeable analysts is higher than US\$1.16. Roberts repeats the US\$1.16 figure in his research report to all Coffey clients but informally tells his large clients that he expects the earnings per share to be higher, making SIWM a good buy.

Comment: By not sharing his opinion regarding the potential for a significant upside earnings surprise with all clients, Roberts is not treating all clients fairly and has violated Standard III(B).

Example 6 (Additional Services for Select Clients):

Jenpin Weng uses e-mail to issue a new recommendation to all his clients. He then calls his three largest institutional clients to discuss the recommendation in detail.

Comment: Weng has not violated Standard III(B) because he widely disseminated the recommendation and provided the information to all his clients prior to discussing it with a select few. Weng’s largest clients received additional personal service because they presumably pay higher fees or because they have a large amount of assets under Weng’s management. If Weng had discussed the report with a select group of clients prior to distributing it to all his clients, he would have violated Standard III(B).

Example 7 (Minimum Lot Allocations):

Lynn Hampton is a well-respected private wealth manager in her community with a diversified client base. She determines that a new 10-year bond being offered by Healthy Pharmaceuticals is appropriate for five of her clients. Three clients request to purchase US\$10,000 each, and the other two request US\$50,000 each. The minimum lot size is established at US\$5,000, and the issue is oversubscribed at the time of placement. Her firm’s policy is that odd-lot allocations, especially those below the minimum, should be avoided because they may affect the liquidity of the security at the time of sale.

Hampton is informed she will receive only US\$55,000 of the offering for all accounts. Hampton distributes the bond investments as follows: The three accounts that requested US\$10,000 are allocated US\$5,000 each, and the two accounts that requested US\$50,000 are allocated US\$20,000 each.

Comment: Hampton has not violated Standard III(B), even though the distribution is not on a completely pro rata basis because of the required minimum lot size. With the total allocation being significantly below the amount requested, Hampton ensured that each client received at least the minimum lot size of the issue. This approach allowed the clients to efficiently sell the bond later if necessary.

Example 8 (Excessive Trading):

Ling Chan manages the accounts for many pension plans, including the plan of his father's employer. Chan developed similar but not identical investment policies for each client, so the investment portfolios are rarely the same. To minimize the cost to his father's pension plan, he intentionally trades more frequently in the accounts of other clients to ensure the required brokerage is incurred to continue receiving free research for use by all the pensions.

Comment: Chan is violating Standard III(B) because his trading actions are disadvantaging his clients to enhance a relationship with a preferred client. All clients are benefiting from the research being provided and should incur their fair portion of the costs. This does not mean that additional trading should occur if a client has not paid an equal portion of the commission; trading should occur only as required by the strategy.

Example 9 (Limited Social Media Disclosures):

Mary Burdette was recently hired by Fundamental Investment Management (FIM) as a junior auto industry analyst. Burdette is expected to expand the social media presence of the firm because she is active with various networks, including Facebook, LinkedIn, and Twitter. Although Burdette's supervisor, Joe Graf, has never used social media, he encourages Burdette to explore opportunities to increase FIM's online presence and ability to share content, communicate, and broadcast information to clients. In response to Graf's encouragement, Burdette is working on a proposal detailing the advantages of getting FIM onto Twitter in addition to launching a company Facebook page.

As part of her auto industry research for FIM, Burdette is completing a report on the financial impact of Sun Drive Auto Ltd.'s new solar technology for compact automobiles. This research report will be her first for FIM, and she believes Sun Drive's technology could revolutionize the auto industry. In her excitement, Burdette sends a quick tweet to FIM Twitter followers summarizing her "buy" recommendation for Sun Drive Auto stock.

Comment: Burdette has violated Standard III(B) by sending an investment recommendation to a select group of contacts prior to distributing it to all clients. Burdette must make sure she has received the appropriate training about FIM's policies and procedures, including the appropriate business use of personal social media networks before engaging in such activities.


See Standard IV(C) for guidance related to the duties of the supervisor.

Example 10 (Fair Dealing between Clients):

Paul Rove, performance analyst for Alpha-Beta Investment Management, is describing to the firm's chief investment officer (CIO) two new reports he would like to develop to assist the firm in meeting its obligations to treat clients fairly. Because many of the firm's clients have similar investment objectives and portfolios, Rove suggests a report detailing securities owned across several clients and the percentage of the portfolio the security represents. The second report would compare the monthly performance of portfolios with similar strategies. The outliers within each report would be submitted to the CIO for review.

Comment: As a performance analyst, Rove likely has little direct contact with clients and thus has limited opportunity to treat clients differently. The recommended reports comply with Standard III(B) while helping the firm conduct after-the-fact reviews of how effectively the firm's advisers are dealing with their clients' portfolios. Reports that monitor the fair treatment of clients are an important oversight tool to ensure that clients are treated fairly.

Standard III(C) Suitability

- 
- 1 When Members and Candidates are in an advisory relationship with a client, they must:
 - a Make a reasonable inquiry into a client's or prospective client's investment experience, risk and return objectives, and financial constraints prior to making any investment recommendation or taking investment action and must reassess and update this information regularly.
 - b Determine that an investment is suitable to the client's financial situation and consistent with the client's written objectives, mandates, and constraints before making an investment recommendation or taking investment action.
 - c Judge the suitability of investments in the context of the client's total portfolio.
 - 2 When Members and Candidates are responsible for managing a portfolio to a specific mandate, strategy, or style, they must make only investment recommendations or take only investment actions that are consistent with the stated objectives and constraints of the portfolio.

Guidance**Highlights:**

- *Developing an Investment Policy*
- *Understanding the Client's Risk Profile*
- *Updating an Investment Policy*
- *The Need for Diversification*
- *Addressing Unsolicited Trading Requests*
- *Managing to an Index or Mandate*

Standard III(C) requires that members and candidates who are in an investment advisory relationship with clients consider carefully the needs, circumstances, and objectives of the clients when determining the appropriateness and suitability of a given investment or course of investment action. An appropriate suitability determination will not, however, prevent some investments or investment actions from losing value.

In judging the suitability of a potential investment, the member or candidate should review many aspects of the client's knowledge, experience related to investing, and financial situation. These aspects include, but are not limited to, the risk profile of the investment as compared with the constraints of the client, the impact of the investment on the diversity of the portfolio, and whether the client has the means or net worth to assume the associated risk. The investment professional's determination of suitability should reflect only the investment recommendations or actions that a prudent person would be willing to undertake. Not every investment opportunity will be suitable for every portfolio, regardless of the potential return being offered.

The responsibilities of members and candidates to gather information and make a suitability analysis prior to making a recommendation or taking investment action fall on those members and candidates who provide investment advice in the course of an advisory relationship with a client. Other members and candidates may be simply executing specific instructions for retail clients when buying or selling securities, such as shares in mutual funds. These members and candidates and some others, such as sell-side analysts, may not have the opportunity to judge the suitability of a particular investment for the ultimate client.

Developing an Investment Policy

When an advisory relationship exists, members and candidates must gather client information at the inception of the relationship. Such information includes the client's financial circumstances, personal data (such as age and occupation) that are relevant to investment decisions, attitudes toward risk, and objectives in investing. This information should be incorporated into a written investment policy statement (IPS) that addresses the client's risk tolerance, return requirements, and all investment constraints (including time horizon, liquidity needs, tax concerns, legal and regulatory factors, and unique circumstances). Without identifying such client factors, members and candidates cannot judge whether a particular investment or strategy is suitable for a particular client. The IPS also should identify and describe the roles and responsibilities of the parties to the advisory relationship and investment process, as well as schedules for review and evaluation of the IPS. After formulating long-term capital market expectations, members and candidates can assist in developing an appropriate strategic asset allocation and investment program for the client, whether these are presented in separate documents or incorporated in the IPS or in appendices to the IPS.

Understanding the Client's Risk Profile

One of the most important factors to be considered in matching appropriateness and suitability of an investment with a client's needs and circumstances is measuring that client's tolerance for risk. The investment professional must consider the possibilities of rapidly changing investment environments and their likely impact on a client's holdings, both individual securities and the collective portfolio. The risk of many investment strategies can and should be analyzed and quantified in advance.

The use of synthetic investment vehicles and derivative investment products has introduced particular issues of risk. Members and candidates should pay careful attention to the leverage inherent in many of these vehicles or products when considering them for use in a client's investment program. Such leverage and limited liquidity, depending on the degree to which they are hedged, bear directly on the issue of suitability for the client.

Updating an Investment Policy

Updating the IPS should be repeated at least annually and also prior to material changes to any specific investment recommendations or decisions on behalf of the client. The effort to determine the needs and circumstances of each client is not a one-time occurrence. Investment recommendations or decisions are usually part of an ongoing process that takes into account the diversity and changing nature of portfolio and client characteristics. The passage of time is bound to produce changes that are important with respect to investment objectives.

For an individual client, important changes might include the number of dependents, personal tax status, health, liquidity needs, risk tolerance, amount of wealth beyond that represented in the portfolio, and extent to which compensation and other income provide for current income needs. With respect to an institutional client, such changes might relate to the magnitude of unfunded liabilities in a pension fund, the withdrawal privileges in an employee savings plan, or the distribution requirements of a charitable foundation. Without efforts to update information concerning client factors, one or more factors could change without the investment manager's knowledge.

Suitability review can be done most effectively when the client fully discloses his or her complete financial portfolio, including those portions not managed by the member or candidate. If clients withhold information about their financial portfolios, the suitability analysis conducted by members and candidates cannot be expected to be complete; it must be based on the information provided.

The Need for Diversification

The investment profession has long recognized that combining several different investments is likely to provide a more acceptable level of risk exposure than having all assets in a single investment. The unique characteristics (or risks) of an individual investment may become partially or entirely neutralized when it is combined with other individual investments within a portfolio. Some reasonable amount of diversification is thus the norm for many portfolios, especially those managed by individuals or institutions that have some degree of legal fiduciary responsibility.

An investment with high relative risk on its own may be a suitable investment in the context of the entire portfolio or when the client's stated objectives contemplate speculative or risky investments. The manager may be responsible for only a portion of the client's total portfolio, or the client may not have provided a full financial picture. Members and candidates can be responsible for assessing the suitability of an investment only on the basis of the information and criteria actually provided by the client.

Addressing Unsolicited Trading Requests

Members and candidates may receive requests from a client for trades that do not properly align with the risk and return objectives outlined in the client's investment policy statement. These transaction requests may be based on the client's individual biases or professional experience. Members and candidates will need to make reasonable efforts to balance their clients' trading requests with their responsibilities to follow the agreed-on investment policy statement.

In cases of unsolicited trade requests that a member or candidate knows are unsuitable for a client, the member or candidate should refrain from making the trade until he or she discusses the concerns with the client. The discussions and resulting actions may encompass a variety of scenarios depending on how the requested unsuitable investment relates to the client's full portfolio.

Many times, an unsolicited request may be expected to have only a minimum impact on the entire portfolio because the size of the requested trade is small or the trade would result in a limited change to the portfolio's risk profile. In discussing the trade, the member or candidate should focus on educating the investor on how the request

deviates from the current policy statement. Following the discussion, the member or candidate may follow his or her firm's policies regarding the necessary client approval for executing unsuitable trades. At a minimum, the client should acknowledge the discussion and accept the conditions that make the recommendation unsuitable.

Should the unsolicited request be expected to have a material impact on the portfolio, the member or candidate should use this opportunity to update the investment policy statement. Doing so would allow the client to fully understand the potential effect of the requested trade on his or her current goals or risk levels.

Members and candidates may have some clients who decline to modify their policy statements while insisting an unsolicited trade be made. In such instances, members or candidates will need to evaluate the effectiveness of their services to the client. The options available to the members or candidates will depend on the services provided by their employer. Some firms may allow for the trade to be executed in a new unmanaged account. If alternative options are not available, members and candidates ultimately will need to determine whether they should continue the advisory arrangement with the client.

Managing to an Index or Mandate

Some members and candidates do not manage money for individuals but are responsible for managing a fund to an index or an expected mandate. The responsibility of these members and candidates is to invest in a manner consistent with the stated mandate. For example, a member or candidate who serves as the fund manager for a large-cap income fund would not be following the fund mandate by investing heavily in small-cap or start-up companies whose stock is speculative in nature. Members and candidates who manage pooled assets to a specific mandate are not responsible for determining the suitability of the *fund* as an investment for investors who may be purchasing shares in the fund. The responsibility for determining the suitability of an investment for clients can be conferred only on members and candidates who have an advisory relationship with clients.

Recommended Procedures for Compliance

Investment Policy Statement

To fulfill the basic provisions of Standard III(C), a member or candidate should put the needs and circumstances of each client and the client's investment objectives into a written investment policy statement. In formulating an investment policy for the client, the member or candidate should take the following into consideration:

- client identification—(1) type and nature of client, (2) the existence of separate beneficiaries, and (3) approximate portion of total client assets that the member or candidate is managing;
- investor objectives—(1) return objectives (income, growth in principal, maintenance of purchasing power) and (2) risk tolerance (suitability, stability of values);
- investor constraints—(1) liquidity needs, (2) expected cash flows (patterns of additions and/or withdrawals), (3) investable funds (assets and liabilities or other commitments), (4) time horizon, (5) tax considerations, (6) regulatory and legal circumstances, (7) investor preferences, prohibitions, circumstances, and unique needs, and (8) proxy voting responsibilities and guidance; and
- performance measurement benchmarks.

Regular Updates

The investor's objectives and constraints should be maintained and reviewed periodically to reflect any changes in the client's circumstances. Members and candidates should regularly compare client constraints with capital market expectations to arrive at an appropriate asset allocation. Changes in either factor may result in a fundamental change in asset allocation. Annual review is reasonable unless business or other reasons, such as a major change in market conditions, dictate more frequent review. Members and candidates should document attempts to carry out such a review if circumstances prevent it.

Suitability Test Policies

With the increase in regulatory required suitability tests, members and candidates should encourage their firms to develop related policies and procedures. The procedures will differ according to the size of the firm and the scope of the services offered to its clients.

The test procedures should require the investment professional to look beyond the potential return of the investment and include the following:

- an analysis of the impact on the portfolio's diversification,
- a comparison of the investment risks with the client's assessed risk tolerance, and
- the fit of the investment with the required investment strategy.

Application of the Standard

Example 1 (Investment Suitability—Risk Profile):

Caleb Smith, an investment adviser, has two clients: Larry Robertson, 60 years old, and Gabriel Lanai, 40 years old. Both clients earn roughly the same salary, but Robertson has a much higher risk tolerance because he has a large asset base. Robertson is willing to invest part of his assets very aggressively; Lanai wants only to achieve a steady rate of return with low volatility to pay for his children's education. Smith recommends investing 20% of both portfolios in zero-yield, small-cap, high-technology equity issues.

Comment: In Robertson's case, the investment may be appropriate because of his financial circumstances and aggressive investment position, but this investment is not suitable for Lanai. Smith is violating Standard III(C) by applying Robertson's investment strategy to Lanai because the two clients' financial circumstances and objectives differ.

Example 2 (Investment Suitability—Entire Portfolio):

Jessica McDowell, an investment adviser, suggests to Brian Crosby, a risk-averse client, that covered call options be used in his equity portfolio. The purpose would be to enhance Crosby's income and partially offset any untimely depreciation in the portfolio's value should the stock market or other circumstances affect his holdings unfavorably. McDowell educates Crosby about all possible outcomes, including the risk of incurring an added tax liability if a stock rises in price and is called away and, conversely, the risk of his holdings losing protection on the downside if prices drop sharply.

Comment: When determining suitability of an investment, the primary focus should be the characteristics of the client's entire portfolio, not the characteristics of single securities on an issue-by-issue basis. The basic characteristics of the entire portfolio will largely determine whether investment

recommendations are taking client factors into account. Therefore, the most important aspects of a particular investment are those that will affect the characteristics of the total portfolio. In this case, McDowell properly considers the investment in the context of the entire portfolio and thoroughly explains the investment to the client.

Example 3 (IPS Updating):

In a regular meeting with client Seth Jones, the portfolio managers at Blue Chip Investment Advisors are careful to allow some time to review his current needs and circumstances. In doing so, they learn that some significant changes have recently taken place in his life. A wealthy uncle left Jones an inheritance that increased his net worth fourfold, to US\$1 million.

Comment: The inheritance has significantly increased Jones's ability (and possibly his willingness) to assume risk and has diminished the average yield required to meet his current income needs. Jones's financial circumstances have definitely changed, so Blue Chip managers must update Jones's investment policy statement to reflect how his investment objectives have changed. Accordingly, the Blue Chip portfolio managers should consider a somewhat higher equity ratio for his portfolio than was called for by the previous circumstances, and the managers' specific common stock recommendations might be heavily tilted toward low-yield, growth-oriented issues.

Example 4 (Following an Investment Mandate):

Louis Perkowski manages a high-income mutual fund. He purchases zero-dividend stock in a financial services company because he believes the stock is undervalued and is in a potential growth industry, which makes it an attractive investment.

Comment: A zero-dividend stock does not seem to fit the mandate of the fund that Perkowski is managing. Unless Perkowski's investment fits within the mandate or is within the realm of allowable investments the fund has made clear in its disclosures, Perkowski has violated Standard III(C).

Example 5 (IPS Requirements and Limitations):

Max Gubler, chief investment officer of a property/casualty insurance subsidiary of a large financial conglomerate, wants to improve the diversification of the subsidiary's investment portfolio and increase its returns. The subsidiary's investment policy statement provides for highly liquid investments, such as large-cap equities and government, supranational, and corporate bonds with a minimum credit rating of AA and maturity of no more than five years. In a recent presentation, a venture capital group offered very attractive prospective returns on some of its private equity funds that provide seed capital to ventures. An exit strategy was already contemplated, but investors would have to observe a minimum three-year lockup period and a subsequent laddered exit option for a maximum of one-third of their shares per year. Gubler does not want to miss this opportunity. After extensive analysis, with the intent to optimize the return on the equity assets within the subsidiary's current portfolio, he invests 4% in this seed fund, leaving the portfolio's total equity exposure still well below its upper limit.

Comment: Gubler is violating Standard III(A)–Loyalty, Prudence, and Care as well as Standard III(C). His new investment locks up part of the subsidiary's assets for at least three years and up to as many as five years and possibly beyond. The IPS requires investments in highly liquid investments and describes accepted asset classes; private equity investments with

a lockup period certainly do not qualify. Even without a lockup period, an asset class with only an occasional, and thus implicitly illiquid, market may not be suitable for the portfolio. Although an IPS typically describes objectives and constraints in great detail, the manager must also make every effort to understand the client's business and circumstances. Doing so should enable the manager to recognize, understand, and discuss with the client other factors that may be or may become material in the investment management process.

Example 6 (Submanager and IPS Reviews):

Paul Ostrowski's investment management business has grown significantly over the past couple of years, and some clients want to diversify internationally. Ostrowski decides to find a submanager to handle the expected international investments. Because this will be his first subadviser, Ostrowski uses the CFA Institute model "request for proposal" to design a questionnaire for his search. By his deadline, he receives seven completed questionnaires from a variety of domestic and international firms trying to gain his business. Ostrowski reviews all the applications in detail and decides to select the firm that charges the lowest fees because doing so will have the least impact on his firm's bottom line.

Comment: When selecting an external manager or subadviser, Ostrowski needs to ensure that the new manager's services are appropriate for his clients. This due diligence includes comparing the risk profile of the clients with the investment strategy of the manager. In basing the decision on the fee structure alone, Ostrowski may be violating Standard III(C).

When clients ask to diversify into international products, it is an appropriate time to review and update the clients' IPSs. Ostrowski's review may determine that the risk of international investments modifies the risk profiles of the clients or does not represent an appropriate investment.

See also Standard V(A)—Diligence and Reasonable Basis for further discussion of the review process needed in selecting appropriate submanagers.

Example 7 (Investment Suitability—Risk Profile):

Samantha Snead, a portfolio manager for Thomas Investment Counsel, Inc., specializes in managing public retirement funds and defined benefit pension plan accounts, all of which have long-term investment objectives. A year ago, Snead's employer, in an attempt to motivate and retain key investment professionals, introduced a bonus compensation system that rewards portfolio managers on the basis of quarterly performance relative to their peers and to certain benchmark indexes. In an attempt to improve the short-term performance of her accounts, Snead changes her investment strategy and purchases several high-beta stocks for client portfolios. These purchases are seemingly contrary to the clients' investment policy statements. Following their purchase, an officer of Griffin Corporation, one of Snead's pension fund clients, asks why Griffin Corporation's portfolio seems to be dominated by high-beta stocks of companies that often appear among the most actively traded issues. No change in objective or strategy has been recommended by Snead during the year.

Comment: Snead violated Standard III(C) by investing the clients' assets in high-beta stocks. These high-risk investments are contrary to the long-term risk profile established in the clients' IPSs. Snead has changed the investment strategy of the clients in an attempt to reap short-term rewards offered by her firm's new compensation arrangement, not in response to changes in clients' investment policy statements.

See also Standard VI(A)—Disclosure of Conflicts.


Example 8 (Investment Suitability):

Andre Shrub owns and operates Conduit, an investment advisory firm. Prior to opening Conduit, Shrub was an account manager with Elite Investment, a hedge fund managed by his good friend Adam Reed. To attract clients to a new Conduit fund, Shrub offers lower-than-normal management fees. He can do so because the fund consists of two top-performing funds managed by Reed. Given his personal friendship with Reed and the prior performance record of these two funds, Shrub believes this new fund is a winning combination for all parties. Clients quickly invest with Conduit to gain access to the Elite funds. No one is turned away because Conduit is seeking to expand its assets under management.

Comment: Shrub has violated Standard III(C) because the risk profile of the new fund may not be suitable for every client. As an investment adviser, Shrub needs to establish an investment policy statement for each client and recommend only investments that match each client's risk and return profile in the IPS. Shrub is required to act as more than a simple sales agent for Elite.

Although Shrub cannot disobey the direct request of a client to purchase a specific security, he should fully discuss the risks of a planned purchase and provide reasons why it might not be suitable for a client. This requirement may lead members and candidates to decline new customers if those customers' requested investment decisions are significantly out of line with their stated requirements.

See also Standard V(A)–Diligence and Reasonable Basis.

Standard III(D) Performance Presentation

When communicating investment performance information, Members and Candidates must make reasonable efforts to ensure that it is fair, accurate, and complete.

Guidance

Standard III(D) requires members and candidates to provide credible performance information to clients and prospective clients and to avoid misstating performance or misleading clients and prospective clients about the investment performance of members or candidates or their firms. This standard encourages full disclosure of investment performance data to clients and prospective clients.

Standard III(D) covers any practice that would lead to misrepresentation of a member's or candidate's performance record, whether the practice involves performance presentation or performance measurement. This standard prohibits misrepresentations of past performance or reasonably expected performance. A member or candidate must give a fair and complete presentation of performance information whenever communicating data with respect to the performance history of individual accounts, composites or groups of accounts, or composites of an analyst's or firm's performance results. Furthermore, members and candidates should not state or imply that clients will obtain or benefit from a rate of return that was generated in the past.

The requirements of this standard are not limited to members and candidates managing separate accounts. Whenever a member or candidate provides performance information for which the manager is claiming responsibility, such as for pooled funds, the history must be accurate. Research analysts promoting the success or accuracy of their recommendations must ensure that their claims are fair, accurate, and complete.

If the presentation is brief, the member or candidate must make available to clients and prospects, on request, the detailed information supporting that communication. Best practice dictates that brief presentations include a reference to the limited nature of the information provided.

Recommended Procedures for Compliance

Apply the GIPS Standards

For members and candidates who are showing the performance history of the assets they manage, compliance with the GIPS standards is the best method to meet their obligations under Standard III(D). Members and candidates should encourage their firms to comply with the GIPS standards.

Compliance without Applying GIPS Standards

Members and candidates can also meet their obligations under Standard III(D) by

- considering the knowledge and sophistication of the audience to whom a performance presentation is addressed,
- presenting the performance of the weighted composite of similar portfolios rather than using a single representative account,
- including terminated accounts as part of performance history with a clear indication of when the accounts were terminated,
- including disclosures that fully explain the performance results being reported (for example, stating, when appropriate, that results are simulated when model results are used, clearly indicating when the performance record is that of a prior entity, or disclosing whether the performance is gross of fees, net of fees, or after tax), and
- maintaining the data and records used to calculate the performance being presented.

Application of the Standard

Example 1 (Performance Calculation and Length of Time):

Kyle Taylor of Taylor Trust Company, noting the performance of Taylor's common trust fund for the past two years, states in a brochure sent to his potential clients, "You can expect steady 25% annual compound growth of the value of your investments over the year." Taylor Trust's common trust fund did increase at the rate of 25% per year for the past year, which mirrored the increase of the entire market. The fund has never averaged that growth for more than one year, however, and the average rate of growth of all of its trust accounts for five years is 5% per year.

Comment: Taylor's brochure is in violation of Standard III(D). Taylor should have disclosed that the 25% growth occurred only in one year. Additionally, Taylor did not include client accounts other than those in the firm's common trust fund. A general claim of firm performance should take into account the performance of all categories of accounts. Finally, by

stating that clients can expect a steady 25% annual compound growth rate, Taylor is also violating Standard I(C)—Misrepresentation, which prohibits assurances or guarantees regarding an investment.

Example 2 (Performance Calculation and Asset Weighting):

Anna Judd, a senior partner of Alexander Capital Management, circulates a performance report for the capital appreciation accounts for the years 1988 through 2004. The firm claims compliance with the GIPS standards. Returns are not calculated in accordance with the requirements of the GIPS standards, however, because the composites are not asset weighted.

Comment: Judd is in violation of Standard III(D). When claiming compliance with the GIPS standards, firms must meet *all* of the requirements, make mandatory disclosures, and meet any other requirements that apply to that firm's specific situation. Judd's violation is not from any misuse of the data but from a false claim of GIPS compliance.

Example 3 (Performance Presentation and Prior Fund/Employer):

Aaron McCoy is vice president and managing partner of the equity investment group of Mastermind Financial Advisors, a new business. Mastermind recruited McCoy because he had a proven six-year track record with G&P Financial. In developing Mastermind's advertising and marketing campaign, McCoy prepares an advertisement that includes the equity investment performance he achieved at G&P Financial. The advertisement for Mastermind does not identify the equity performance as being earned while at G&P. The advertisement is distributed to existing clients and prospective clients of Mastermind.

Comment: McCoy has violated Standard III(D) by distributing an advertisement that contains material misrepresentations about the historical performance of Mastermind. Standard III(D) requires that members and candidates make every reasonable effort to ensure that performance information is a fair, accurate, and complete representation of an individual's or firm's performance. As a general matter, this standard does not prohibit showing past performance of funds managed at a prior firm as part of a performance track record as long as showing that record is accompanied by appropriate disclosures about where the performance took place and the person's specific role in achieving that performance. If McCoy chooses to use his past performance from G&P in Mastermind's advertising, he should make full disclosure of the source of the historical performance.

Example 4 (Performance Presentation and Simulated Results):

Jed Davis has developed a mutual fund selection product based on historical information from the 1990–95 period. Davis tested his methodology by applying it retroactively to data from the 1996–2003 period, thus producing simulated performance results for those years. In January 2004, Davis's employer decided to offer the product and Davis began promoting it through trade journal advertisements and direct dissemination to clients. The advertisements included the performance results for the 1996–2003 period but did not indicate that the results were simulated.

Comment: Davis violated Standard III(D) by failing to clearly identify simulated performance results. Standard III(D) prohibits members and candidates from making any statements that misrepresent the performance achieved by them or their firms and requires members and candidates

to make every reasonable effort to ensure that performance information presented to clients is fair, accurate, and complete. Use of simulated results should be accompanied by full disclosure as to the source of the performance data, including the fact that the results from 1995 through 2003 were the result of applying the model retroactively to that time period.

Example 5 (Performance Calculation and Selected Accounts Only):

In a presentation prepared for prospective clients, William Kilmer shows the rates of return realized over a five-year period by a “composite” of his firm’s discretionary accounts that have a “balanced” objective. This composite, however, consisted of only a few of the accounts that met the balanced criterion set by the firm, excluded accounts under a certain asset level without disclosing the fact of their exclusion, and included accounts that did not have the balanced mandate because those accounts would boost the investment results. In addition, to achieve better results, Kilmer manipulated the narrow range of accounts included in the composite by changing the accounts that made up the composite over time.

Comment: Kilmer violated Standard III(D) by misrepresenting the facts in the promotional material sent to prospective clients, distorting his firm’s performance record, and failing to include disclosures that would have clarified the presentation.

Example 6 (Performance Attribution Changes):

Art Purell is reviewing the quarterly performance attribution reports for distribution to clients. Purell works for an investment management firm with a bottom-up, fundamentals-driven investment process that seeks to add value through stock selection. The attribution methodology currently compares each stock with its sector. The attribution report indicates that the value added this quarter came from asset allocation and that stock selection contributed negatively to the calculated return.

Through running several different scenarios, Purell discovers that calculating attribution by comparing each stock with its industry and then rolling the effect to the sector level improves the appearance of the manager’s stock selection activities. Because the firm defines the attribution terms and the results better reflect the stated strategy, Purell recommends that the client reports should use the revised methodology.

Comment: Modifying the attribution methodology without proper notifications to clients would fail to meet the requirements of Standard III(D). Purell’s recommendation is being done solely for the interest of the firm to improve its perceived ability to meet the stated investment strategy. Such changes are unfair to clients and obscure the facts regarding the firm’s abilities.

Had Purell believed the new methodology offered improvements to the original model, then he would have needed to report the results of both calculations to the client. The report should also include the reasons why the new methodology is preferred, which would allow the client to make a meaningful comparison to prior results and provide a basis for comparing future attributions.

Example 7 (Performance Calculation Methodology Disclosure):

While developing a new reporting package for existing clients, Alisha Singh, a performance analyst, discovers that her company’s new system automatically calculates both time-weighted and money-weighted returns. She asks the head of client services and retention which value would be preferred given that the firm has various investment

strategies that include bonds, equities, securities without leverage, and alternatives. Singh is told not to label the return value so that the firm may show whichever value is greatest for the period.

Comment: Following these instructions would lead to Singh violating Standard III(D). In reporting inconsistent return values, Singh would not be providing complete information to the firm's clients. Full information is provided when clients have sufficient information to judge the performance generated by the firm.

Example 8 (Performance Calculation Methodology Disclosure):

Richmond Equity Investors manages a long–short equity fund in which clients can trade once a week (on Fridays). For transparency reasons, a daily net asset value of the fund is calculated by Richmond. The monthly fact sheets of the fund report month-to-date and year-to-date performance. Richmond publishes the performance based on the higher of the last trading day of the month (typically, not the last business day) or the last business day of the month as determined by Richmond. The fact sheet mentions only that the data are as of the end of the month, without giving the exact date. Maggie Clark, the investment performance analyst in charge of the calculations, is concerned about the frequent changes and asks her supervisor whether they are appropriate.

Comment: Clark's actions in questioning the changing performance metric comply with Standard III(D). She has shown concern that these changes are not presenting an accurate and complete picture of the performance generated.

Standard III(E) Preservation of Confidentiality

Members and Candidates must keep information about current, former, and prospective clients confidential unless:

- 1 The information concerns illegal activities on the part of the client;
- 2 Disclosure is required by law; or
- 3 The client or prospective client permits disclosure of the information.

Guidance

Highlights:

- *Status of Client*
- *Compliance with Laws*
- *Electronic Information and Security*
- *Professional Conduct Investigations by CFA Institute*

Standard III(E) requires that members and candidates preserve the confidentiality of information communicated to them by their clients, prospective clients, and former clients. This standard is applicable when (1) the member or candidate receives information because of his or her special ability to conduct a portion of the client's business or personal affairs and (2) the member or candidate receives information that arises

from or is relevant to that portion of the client's business that is the subject of the special or confidential relationship. If disclosure of the information is required by law or the information concerns illegal activities by the client, however, the member or candidate may have an obligation to report the activities to the appropriate authorities.

Status of Client

This standard protects the confidentiality of client information even if the person or entity is no longer a client of the member or candidate. Therefore, members and candidates must continue to maintain the confidentiality of client records even after the client relationship has ended. If a client or former client expressly authorizes the member or candidate to disclose information, however, the member or candidate may follow the terms of the authorization and provide the information.

Compliance with Laws

As a general matter, members and candidates must comply with applicable law. If applicable law requires disclosure of client information in certain circumstances, members and candidates must comply with the law. Similarly, if applicable law requires members and candidates to maintain confidentiality, even if the information concerns illegal activities on the part of the client, members and candidates should not disclose such information. Additionally, applicable laws, such as inter-departmental communication restrictions within financial institutions, can impose limitations on information flow about a client within an entity that may lead to a violation of confidentiality. When in doubt, members and candidates should consult with their employer's compliance personnel or legal counsel before disclosing confidential information about clients.

Electronic Information and Security

Because of the ever-increasing volume of electronically stored information, members and candidates need to be particularly aware of possible accidental disclosures. Many employers have strict policies about how to electronically communicate sensitive client information and store client information on personal laptops, mobile devices, or portable disk/flash drives. In recent years, regulatory authorities have imposed stricter data security laws applying to the use of mobile remote digital communication, including the use of social media, that must be considered. Standard III(E) does not require members or candidates to become experts in information security technology, but they should have a thorough understanding of the policies of their employer. The size and operations of the firm will lead to differing policies for ensuring the security of confidential information maintained within the firm. Members and candidates should encourage their firm to conduct regular periodic training on confidentiality procedures for all firm personnel, including portfolio associates, receptionists, and other non-investment staff who have routine direct contact with clients and their records.

Professional Conduct Investigations by CFA Institute

The requirements of Standard III(E) are not intended to prevent members and candidates from cooperating with an investigation by the CFA Institute Professional Conduct Program (PCP). When permissible under applicable law, members and candidates shall consider the PCP an extension of themselves when requested to provide information about a client in support of a PCP investigation into their own conduct. Members and candidates are encouraged to cooperate with investigations into the conduct of others. Any information turned over to the PCP is kept in the strictest confidence. Members and candidates will not be considered in violation of this standard by forwarding confidential information to the PCP.

Recommended Procedures for Compliance

The simplest, most conservative, and most effective way to comply with Standard III(E) is to avoid disclosing any information received from a client except to authorized fellow employees who are also working for the client. In some instances, however, a member or candidate may want to disclose information received from clients that is outside the scope of the confidential relationship and does not involve illegal activities. Before making such a disclosure, a member or candidate should ask the following:

- In what context was the information disclosed? If disclosed in a discussion of work being performed for the client, is the information relevant to the work?
- Is the information background material that, if disclosed, will enable the member or candidate to improve service to the client?

Members and candidates need to understand and follow their firm's electronic information communication and storage procedures. If the firm does not have procedures in place, members and candidates should encourage the development of procedures that appropriately reflect the firm's size and business operations.

Communicating with Clients

Technological changes are constantly enhancing the methods that are used to communicate with clients and prospective clients. Members and candidates should make reasonable efforts to ensure that firm-supported communication methods and compliance procedures follow practices designed for preventing accidental distribution of confidential information. Given the rate at which technology changes, a regular review of privacy protection measures is encouraged.

Members and candidates should be diligent in discussing with clients the appropriate methods for providing confidential information. It is important to convey to clients that not all firm-sponsored resources may be appropriate for such communications.

Application of the Standard

Example 1 (Possessing Confidential Information):

Sarah Connor, a financial analyst employed by Johnson Investment Counselors, Inc., provides investment advice to the trustees of City Medical Center. The trustees have given her a number of internal reports concerning City Medical's needs for physical plant renovation and expansion. They have asked Connor to recommend investments that would generate capital appreciation in endowment funds to meet projected capital expenditures. Connor is approached by a local businessman, Thomas Kasey, who is considering a substantial contribution either to City Medical Center or to another local hospital. Kasey wants to find out the building plans of both institutions before making a decision, but he does not want to speak to the trustees.

Comment: The trustees gave Connor the internal reports so she could advise them on how to manage their endowment funds. Because the information in the reports is clearly both confidential and within the scope of the confidential relationship, Standard III(E) requires that Connor refuse to divulge information to Kasey.

Example 2 (Disclosing Confidential Information):

Lynn Moody is an investment officer at the Lester Trust Company. She has an advisory customer who has talked to her about giving approximately US\$50,000 to charity to reduce her income taxes. Moody is also treasurer of the Home for Indigent Widows (HIW), which is planning its annual giving campaign. HIW hopes to expand its list

of prospects, particularly those capable of substantial gifts. Moody recommends that HIW's vice president for corporate gifts call on her customer and ask for a donation in the US\$50,000 range.

Comment: Even though the attempt to help the Home for Indigent Widows was well intended, Moody violated Standard III(E) by revealing confidential information about her client.

Example 3 (Disclosing Possible Illegal Activity):

Government officials approach Casey Samuel, the portfolio manager for Garcia Company's pension plan, to examine pension fund records. They tell her that Garcia's corporate tax returns are being audited and the pension fund is being reviewed. Two days earlier, Samuel had learned in a regular investment review with Garcia officers that potentially excessive and improper charges were being made to the pension plan by Garcia. Samuel consults her employer's general counsel and is advised that Garcia has probably violated tax and fiduciary regulations and laws.

Comment: Samuel should inform her supervisor of these activities, and her employer should take steps, with Garcia, to remedy the violations. If that approach is not successful, Samuel and her employer should seek advice of legal counsel to determine the appropriate steps to be taken. Samuel may well have a duty to disclose the evidence she has of the continuing legal violations and to resign as asset manager for Garcia.

Example 4 (Disclosing Possible Illegal Activity):

David Bradford manages money for a family-owned real estate development corporation. He also manages the individual portfolios of several of the family members and officers of the corporation, including the chief financial officer (CFO). Based on the financial records of the corporation and some questionable practices of the CFO that Bradford has observed, Bradford believes that the CFO is embezzling money from the corporation and putting it into his personal investment account.

Comment: Bradford should check with his firm's compliance department or appropriate legal counsel to determine whether applicable securities regulations require reporting the CFO's financial records.

Example 5 (Accidental Disclosure of Confidential Information):

Lynn Moody is an investment officer at the Lester Trust Company (LTC). She has stewardship of a significant number of individually managed taxable accounts. In addition to receiving quarterly written reports, about a dozen high-net-worth individuals have indicated to Moody a willingness to receive communications about overall economic and financial market outlooks directly from her by way of a social media platform. Under the direction of her firm's technology and compliance departments, she established a new group page on an existing social media platform specifically for her clients. In the instructions provided to clients, Moody asked them to "join" the group so they may be granted access to the posted content. The instructions also advised clients that all comments posted would be available to the public and thus the platform was not an appropriate method for communicating personal or confidential information.

Six months later, in early January, Moody posted LTC's year-end "Market Outlook." The report outlined a new asset allocation strategy that the firm is adding to its recommendations in the new year. Moody introduced the publication with a note informing her clients that she would be discussing the changes with them individually in their upcoming meetings.

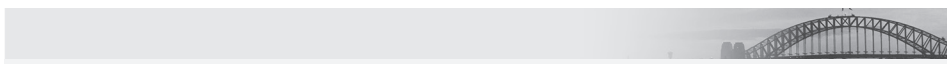
One of Moody's clients responded directly on the group page that his family recently experienced a major change in their financial profile. The client described highly personal and confidential details of the event. Unfortunately, all clients that were part of the group were also able to read the detailed posting until Moody was able to have the comment removed.

Comment: Moody has taken reasonable steps for protecting the confidentiality of client information while using the social media platform. She provided instructions clarifying that all information posted to the site would be publically viewable to all group members and warned against using this method for communicating confidential information. The accidental disclosure of confidential information by a client is not under Moody's control. Her actions to remove the information promptly once she became aware further align with Standard III(E).

In understanding the potential sensitivity clients express surrounding the confidentiality of personal information, this event highlights a need for further training. Moody might advocate for additional warnings or controls for clients when they consider using social media platforms for two-way communications.

STANDARD IV: DUTIES TO EMPLOYERS

Standard IV(A) Loyalty



In matters related to their employment, Members and Candidates must act for the benefit of their employer and not deprive their employer of the advantage of their skills and abilities, divulge confidential information, or otherwise cause harm to their employer.

Guidance

Highlights:

- *Employer Responsibilities*
- *Independent Practice*
- *Leaving an Employer*
- *Use of Social Media*
- *Whistleblowing*
- *Nature of Employment*

Standard IV(A) requires members and candidates to protect the interests of their firm by refraining from any conduct that would injure the firm, deprive it of profit, or deprive it of the member's or candidate's skills and ability. Members and candidates

must always place the interests of clients above the interests of their employer but should also consider the effects of their conduct on the sustainability and integrity of the employer firm. In matters related to their employment, members and candidates must not engage in conduct that harms the interests of their employer. Implicit in this standard is the obligation of members and candidates to comply with the policies and procedures established by their employers that govern the employer–employee relationship—to the extent that such policies and procedures do not conflict with applicable laws, rules, or regulations or the Code and Standards.

This standard is not meant to be a blanket requirement to place employer interests ahead of personal interests in all matters. The standard does not require members and candidates to subordinate important personal and family obligations to their work. Members and candidates should enter into a dialogue with their employer about balancing personal and employment obligations when personal matters may interfere with their work on a regular or significant basis.

Employer Responsibilities

The employer–employee relationship imposes duties and responsibilities on both parties. Employers must recognize the duties and responsibilities that they owe to their employees if they expect to have content and productive employees.

Members and candidates are encouraged to provide their employer with a copy of the Code and Standards. These materials will inform the employer of the responsibilities of a CFA Institute member or a candidate in the CFA Program. The Code and Standards also serve as a basis for questioning employer policies and practices that conflict with these responsibilities.

Employers are not obligated to adhere to the Code and Standards. In expecting to retain competent employees who are members and candidates, however, they should not develop conflicting policies and procedures. The employer is responsible for a positive working environment, which includes an ethical workplace. Senior management has the additional responsibility to devise compensation structures and incentive arrangements that do not encourage unethical behavior.

Independent Practice

Included in Standard IV(A) is the requirement that members and candidates abstain from independent competitive activity that could conflict with the interests of their employer. Although Standard IV(A) does not preclude members or candidates from entering into an independent business while still employed, members and candidates who plan to engage in independent practice for compensation must notify their employer and describe the types of services they will render to prospective independent clients, the expected duration of the services, and the compensation for the services. Members and candidates should not render services until they receive consent from their employer to all of the terms of the arrangement. “Practice” means any service that the employer currently makes available for remuneration. “Undertaking independent practice” means engaging in competitive business, as opposed to making preparations to begin such practice.

Leaving an Employer

When members and candidates are planning to leave their current employer, they must continue to act in the employer’s best interest. They must not engage in any activities that would conflict with this duty until their resignation becomes effective. It is difficult to define specific guidelines for those members and candidates who are planning to compete with their employer as part of a new venture. The circumstances

of each situation must be reviewed to distinguish permissible preparations from violations of duty. Activities that might constitute a violation, especially in combination, include the following:

- misappropriation of trade secrets,
- misuse of confidential information,
- solicitation of the employer's clients prior to cessation of employment,
- self-dealing (appropriating for one's own property a business opportunity or information belonging to one's employer), and
- misappropriation of clients or client lists.

A departing employee is generally free to make arrangements or preparations to go into a competitive business before terminating the relationship with his or her employer as long as such preparations do not breach the employee's duty of loyalty. A member or candidate who is contemplating seeking other employment must not contact existing clients or potential clients prior to leaving his or her employer for purposes of soliciting their business for the new employer. Once notice is provided to the employer of the intent to resign, the member or candidate must follow the employer's policies and procedures related to notifying clients of his or her planned departure. In addition, the member or candidate must not take records or files to a new employer without the written permission of the previous employer.

Once an employee has left the firm, the skills and experience that an employee obtained while employed are not "confidential" or "privileged" information. Similarly, simple knowledge of the names and existence of former clients is generally not confidential information unless deemed such by an agreement or by law. Standard IV(A) does not prohibit experience or knowledge gained at one employer from being used at another employer. Firm records or work performed on behalf of the firm that is stored in paper copy or electronically for the member's or candidate's convenience while employed, however, should be erased or returned to the employer unless the firm gives permission to keep those records after employment ends.

The standard does not prohibit former employees from contacting clients of their previous firm as long as the contact information does not come from the records of the former employer or violate an applicable "noncompete agreement." Members and candidates are free to use public information after departing to contact former clients without violating Standard IV(A) as long as there is no specific agreement not to do so.

Employers often require employees to sign noncompete agreements that preclude a departing employee from engaging in certain conduct. Members and candidates should take care to review the terms of any such agreement when leaving their employer to determine what, if any, conduct those agreements may prohibit.

In some markets, there are agreements between employers within an industry that outline information that departing employees are permitted to take upon resignation, such as the "Protocol for Broker Recruiting" in the United States. These agreements ease individuals' transition between firms that have agreed to follow the outlined procedures. Members and candidates who move between firms that sign such agreements may rely on the protections provided as long as they faithfully adhere to all the procedures outlined.

For example, under the agreement between many US brokers, individuals are allowed to take some general client contact information when departing. To be protected, a copy of the information the individual is taking must be provided to the local management team for review. Additionally, the specific client information may only be used by the departing employee and not others employed by the new firm.

Use of Social Media

The growth in various online networking platforms, such as LinkedIn, Twitter, and Facebook (commonly referred to as social media platforms), is providing new opportunities and challenges for businesses. Members and candidates should understand and abide by all applicable firm policies and regulations as to the acceptable use of social media platforms to interact with clients and prospective clients. This is especially important when a member or candidate is planning to leave an employer.

Social media use makes determining how and when departure notification is delivered to clients more complex. Members and candidates may have developed profiles on these platforms that include connections with individuals who are clients of the firm, as well as individuals unrelated to their employer. Communications through social media platforms that potentially reach current clients should adhere to the employer's policies and procedures regarding notification of departing employees.

Social media connections with clients are also raising questions concerning the differences between public information and firm property. Specific accounts and user profiles of members and candidates may be created for solely professional reasons, including firm-approved accounts for client engagements. Such firm-approved business-related accounts would be considered part of the firm's assets, thus requiring members and candidates to transfer or delete the accounts as directed by their firm's policies and procedures. Best practice for members and candidates is to maintain separate accounts for their personal and professional social media activities. Members and candidates should discuss with their employers how profiles should be treated when a single account includes personal connections and also is used to conduct aspects of their professional activities.

Whistleblowing

A member's or candidate's personal interests, as well as the interests of his or her employer, are secondary to protecting the integrity of capital markets and the interests of clients. Therefore, circumstances may arise (e.g., when an employer is engaged in illegal or unethical activity) in which members and candidates must act contrary to their employer's interests in order to comply with their duties to the market and clients. In such instances, activities that would normally violate a member's or candidate's duty to his or her employer (such as contradicting employer instructions, violating certain policies and procedures, or preserving a record by copying employer records) may be justified. Such action would be permitted only if the intent is clearly aimed at protecting clients or the integrity of the market, not for personal gain.

Nature of Employment

A wide variety of business relationships exists within the investment industry. For instance, a member or candidate may be an employee or an independent contractor. Members and candidates must determine whether they are employees or independent contractors in order to determine the applicability of Standard IV(A). This issue will be decided largely by the degree of control exercised by the employing entity over the member or candidate. Factors determining control include whether the member's or candidate's hours, work location, and other parameters of the job are set; whether facilities are provided to the member or candidate; whether the member's or candidate's expenses are reimbursed; whether the member or candidate seeks work from other employers; and the number of clients or employers the member or candidate works for.

A member's or candidate's duties within an independent contractor relationship are governed by the oral or written agreement between the member and the client. Members and candidates should take care to define clearly the scope of their

responsibilities and the expectations of each client within the context of each relationship. Once a member or candidate establishes a relationship with a client, the member or candidate has a duty to abide by the terms of the agreement.

Recommended Procedures for Compliance

Employers may establish codes of conduct and operating procedures for their employees to follow. Members and candidates should fully understand the policies to ensure that they are not in conflict with the Code and Standards. The following topics identify policies that members and candidates should encourage their firms to adopt if the policies are not currently in place.

Competition Policy

A member or candidate must understand any restrictions placed by the employer on offering similar services outside the firm while employed by the firm. The policy may outline the procedures for requesting approval to undertake the outside service or may be a strict prohibition of such service. If a member's or candidate's employer elects to have its employees sign a noncompete agreement as part of the employment agreement, the member or candidate should ensure that the details are clear and fully explained prior to signing the agreement.

Termination Policy

Members and candidates should clearly understand the termination policies of their employer. Termination policies should establish clear procedures regarding the resignation process, including addressing how the termination will be disclosed to clients and staff and whether updates posted through social media platforms will be allowed. The firm's policy may also outline the procedures for transferring ongoing research and account management responsibilities. Finally, the procedures should address agreements that allow departing employees to remove specific client-related information upon resignation.

Incident-Reporting Procedures

Members and candidates should be aware of their firm's policies related to whistleblowing and encourage their firm to adopt industry best practices in this area. Many firms are required by regulatory mandates to establish confidential and anonymous reporting procedures that allow employees to report potentially unethical and illegal activities in the firm.

Employee Classification

Members and candidates should understand their status within their employer firm. Firms are encouraged to adopt a standardized classification structure (e.g., part time, full time, outside contractor) for their employees and indicate how each of the firm's policies applies to each employee class.

Application of the Standard

Example 1 (Soliciting Former Clients):

Samuel Magee manages pension accounts for Trust Assets, Inc., but has become frustrated with the working environment and has been offered a position with Fiduciary Management. Before resigning from Trust Assets, Magee asks four big accounts to

leave that firm and open accounts with Fiduciary. Magee also persuades several prospective clients to sign agreements with Fiduciary Management. Magee had previously made presentations to these prospects on behalf of Trust Assets.

Comment: Magee violated the employee–employer principle requiring him to act solely for his employer’s benefit. Magee’s duty is to Trust Assets as long as he is employed there. The solicitation of Trust Assets’ current clients and prospective clients is unethical and violates Standard IV(A).

Example 2 (Former Employer’s Documents and Files):

James Hightower has been employed by Jason Investment Management Corporation for 15 years. He began as an analyst but assumed increasing responsibilities and is now a senior portfolio manager and a member of the firm’s investment policy committee. Hightower has decided to leave Jason Investment and start his own investment management business. He has been careful not to tell any of Jason’s clients that he is leaving; he does not want to be accused of breaching his duty to Jason by soliciting Jason’s clients before his departure. Hightower is planning to copy and take with him the following documents and information he developed or worked on while at Jason: (1) the client list, with addresses, telephone numbers, and other pertinent client information; (2) client account statements; (3) sample marketing presentations to prospective clients containing Jason’s performance record; (4) Jason’s recommended list of securities; (5) computer models to determine asset allocations for accounts with various objectives; (6) computer models for stock selection; and (7) personal computer spreadsheets for Hightower’s major corporate recommendations, which he developed when he was an analyst.

Comment: Except with the consent of their employer, departing members and candidates may not take employer property, which includes books, records, reports, and other materials, because taking such materials may interfere with their employer’s business opportunities. Taking any employer records, even those the member or candidate prepared, violates Standard IV(A). Employer records include items stored in hard copy or any other medium (e.g., home computers, portable storage devices, cell phones).

Example 3 (Addressing Rumors):

Reuben Winston manages all-equity portfolios at Target Asset Management (TAM), a large, established investment counselor. Ten years previously, Philpott & Company, which manages a family of global bond mutual funds, acquired TAM in a diversification move. After the merger, the combined operations prospered in the fixed-income business but the equity management business at TAM languished. Lately, a few of the equity pension accounts that had been with TAM before the merger have terminated their relationships with TAM. One day, Winston finds on his voice mail the following message from a concerned client: “Hey! I just heard that Philpott is close to announcing the sale of your firm’s equity management business to Rugged Life. What is going on?” Not being aware of any such deal, Winston and his associates are stunned. Their internal inquiries are met with denials from Philpott management, but the rumors persist. Feeling left in the dark, Winston contemplates leading an employee buyout of TAM’s equity management business.

Comment: An employee-led buyout of TAM’s equity asset management business would be consistent with Standard IV(A) because it would rest on the permission of the employer and, ultimately, the clients. In this case,

however, in which employees suspect the senior managers or principals are not truthful or forthcoming, Winston should consult legal counsel to determine appropriate action.

Example 4 (Ownership of Completed Prior Work):

Laura Clay, who is unemployed, wants part-time consulting work while seeking a full-time analyst position. During an interview at Bradley Associates, a large institutional asset manager, Clay is told that the firm has no immediate research openings but would be willing to pay her a flat fee to complete a study of the wireless communications industry within a given period of time. Clay would be allowed unlimited access to Bradley's research files and would be welcome to come to the offices and use whatever support facilities are available during normal working hours. Bradley's research director does not seek any exclusivity for Clay's output, and the two agree to the arrangement on a handshake. As Clay nears completion of the study, she is offered an analyst job in the research department of Winston & Company, a brokerage firm, and she is pondering submitting the draft of her wireless study for publication by Winston.

Comment: Although she is under no written contractual obligation to Bradley, Clay has an obligation to let Bradley act on the output of her study before Winston & Company or Clay uses the information to their advantage. That is, unless Bradley gives permission to Clay and waives its rights to her wireless report, Clay would be in violation of Standard IV(A) if she were to immediately recommend to Winston the same transactions recommended in the report to Bradley. Furthermore, Clay must not take from Bradley any research file material or other property that she may have used.

Example 5 (Ownership of Completed Prior Work):

Emma Madeline, a recent college graduate and a candidate in the CFA Program, spends her summer as an unpaid intern at Murdoch and Lowell. The senior managers at Murdoch are attempting to bring the firm into compliance with the GIPS standards, and Madeline is assigned to assist in its efforts. Two months into her internship, Madeline applies for a job at McMillan & Company, which has plans to become GIPS compliant. Madeline accepts the job with McMillan. Before leaving Murdoch, she copies the firm's software that she helped develop because she believes this software will assist her in her new position.

Comment: Even though Madeline does not receive monetary compensation for her services at Murdoch, she has used firm resources in creating the software and is considered an employee because she receives compensation and benefits in the form of work experience and knowledge. By copying the software, Madeline violated Standard IV(A) because she misappropriated Murdoch's property without permission.

Example 6 (Soliciting Former Clients):

Dennis Elliot has hired Sam Chisolm, who previously worked for a competing firm. Chisolm left his former firm after 18 years of employment. When Chisolm begins working for Elliot, he wants to contact his former clients because he knows them well and is certain that many will follow him to his new employer. Is Chisolm in violation of Standard IV(A) if he contacts his former clients?

Comment: Because client records are the property of the firm, contacting former clients for any reason through the use of client lists or other information taken from a former employer without permission would be a

violation of Standard IV(A). In addition, the nature and extent of the contact with former clients may be governed by the terms of any noncompete agreement signed by the employee and the former employer that covers contact with former clients after employment.

Simple knowledge of the names and existence of former clients is not confidential information, just as skills or experience that an employee obtains while employed are not “confidential” or “privileged” information. The Code and Standards do not impose a prohibition on the use of experience or knowledge gained at one employer from being used at another employer. The Code and Standards also do not prohibit former employees from contacting clients of their previous firm, in the absence of a noncompete agreement. Members and candidates are free to use public information about their former firm after departing to contact former clients without violating Standard IV(A).

In the absence of a noncompete agreement, as long as Chisolm maintains his duty of loyalty to his employer before joining Elliot’s firm, does not take steps to solicit clients until he has left his former firm, and does not use material from his former employer without its permission after he has left, he is not in violation of the Code and Standards.

Example 7 (Starting a New Firm):

Geraldine Allen currently works at a registered investment company as an equity analyst. Without notice to her employer, she registers with government authorities to start an investment company that will compete with her employer, but she does not actively seek clients. Does registration of this competing company with the appropriate regulatory authorities constitute a violation of Standard IV(A)?

Comment: Allen’s preparation for the new business by registering with the regulatory authorities does not conflict with the work for her employer if the preparations have been done on Allen’s own time outside the office and if Allen will not be soliciting clients for the business or otherwise operating the new company until she has left her current employer.

Example 8 (Competing with Current Employer):

Several employees are planning to depart their current employer within a few weeks and have been careful to not engage in any activities that would conflict with their duty to their current employer. They have just learned that one of their employer’s clients has undertaken a request for proposal (RFP) to review and possibly hire a new investment consultant. The RFP has been sent to the employer and all of its competitors. The group believes that the new entity to be formed would be qualified to respond to the RFP and be eligible for the business. The RFP submission period is likely to conclude before the employees’ resignations are effective. Is it permissible for the group of departing employees to respond to the RFP for their anticipated new firm?

Comment: A group of employees responding to an RFP that their employer is also responding to would lead to direct competition between the employees and the employer. Such conduct violates Standard IV(A) unless the group of employees receives permission from their employer as well as the entity sending out the RFP.

Example 9 (Externally Compensated Assignments):

Alfonso Mota is a research analyst with Tyson Investments. He works part time as a mayor for his hometown, a position for which he receives compensation. Must Mota seek permission from Tyson to serve as mayor?

Comment: If Mota's mayoral duties are so extensive and time-consuming that they might detract from his ability to fulfill his responsibilities at Tyson, he should discuss his outside activities with his employer and come to a mutual agreement regarding how to manage his personal commitments with his responsibilities to his employer.

Example 10 (Soliciting Former Clients):

After leaving her employer, Shawna McQuillen establishes her own money management business. While with her former employer, she did not sign a noncompete agreement that would have prevented her from soliciting former clients. Upon her departure, she does not take any of her client lists or contact information and she clears her personal computer of any employer records, including client contact information. She obtains the phone numbers of her former clients through public records and contacts them to solicit their business.

Comment: McQuillen is not in violation of Standard IV(A) because she has not used information or records from her former employer and is not prevented by an agreement with her former employer from soliciting her former clients.

Example 11 (Whistleblowing Actions):

Meredith Rasmussen works on a buy-side trading desk and concentrates on in-house trades for a hedge fund subsidiary managed by a team at the investment management firm. The hedge fund has been very successful and is marketed globally by the firm. From her experience as the trader for much of the activity of the fund, Rasmussen has become quite knowledgeable about the hedge fund's strategy, tactics, and performance. When a distinct break in the market occurs, however, and many of the securities involved in the hedge fund's strategy decline markedly in value, Rasmussen observes that the reported performance of the hedge fund does not reflect this decline. In her experience, the lack of any effect is a very unlikely occurrence. She approaches the head of trading about her concern and is told that she should not ask any questions and that the fund is big and successful and is not her concern. She is fairly sure something is not right, so she contacts the compliance officer, who also tells her to stay away from the issue of this hedge fund's reporting.

Comment: Rasmussen has clearly come upon an error in policies, procedures, and compliance practices in the firm's operations. Having been unsuccessful in finding a resolution with her supervisor and the compliance officer, Rasmussen should consult the firm's whistleblowing policy to determine the appropriate next step toward informing management of her concerns. The potentially unethical actions of the investment management division are appropriate grounds for further disclosure, so Rasmussen's whistleblowing would not represent a violation of Standard IV(A).

See also Standard I(D)–Misconduct and Standard IV(C)–Responsibilities of Supervisors.

Example 12 (Soliciting Former Clients):

Angel Crome has been a private banker for YBSafe Bank for the past eight years. She has been very successful and built a considerable client portfolio during that time but is extremely frustrated by the recent loss of reputation by her current employer and subsequent client insecurity. A locally renowned headhunter contacted Crome a few days ago and offered her an interesting job with a competing private bank. This bank offers a substantial signing bonus for advisers with their own client portfolios. Crome figures that she can solicit at least 70% of her clients to follow her and gladly enters into the new employment contract.

Comment: Crome may contact former clients upon termination of her employment with YBSafe Bank, but she is prohibited from using client records built by and kept with her in her capacity as an employee of YBSafe Bank. Client lists are proprietary information of her former employer and must not be used for her or her new employer's benefit. The use of written, electronic, or any other form of records other than publicly available information to contact her former clients at YBSafe Bank will be a violation of Standard IV(A).

Example 13 (Notification of Code and Standards):

Krista Smith is a relatively new assistant trader for the fixed-income desk of a major investment bank. She is on a team responsible for structuring collateralized debt obligations (CDOs) made up of securities in the inventory of the trading desk. At a meeting of the team, senior executives explain the opportunity to eventually separate the CDO into various risk-rated tranches to be sold to the clients of the firm. After the senior executives leave the meeting, the head trader announces various responsibilities of each member of the team and then says, "This is a good time to unload some of the junk we have been stuck with for a while and disguise it with ratings and a thick, unreadable prospectus, so don't be shy in putting this CDO together. Just kidding." Smith is worried by this remark and asks some of her colleagues what the head trader meant. They all respond that he was just kidding but that there is some truth in the remark because the CDO is seen by management as an opportunity to improve the quality of the securities in the firm's inventory.

Concerned about the ethical environment of the workplace, Smith decides to talk to her supervisor about her concerns and provides the head trader with a copy of the Code and Standards. Smith discusses the principle of placing the client above the interest of the firm and the possibility that the development of the new CDO will not adhere to this responsibility. The head trader assures Smith that the appropriate analysis will be conducted when determining the appropriate securities for collateral. Furthermore, the ratings are assigned by an independent firm and the prospectus will include full and factual disclosures. Smith is reassured by the meeting, but she also reviews the company's procedures and requirements for reporting potential violations of company policy and securities laws.

Comment: Smith's review of the company policies and procedures for reporting violations allows her to be prepared to report through the appropriate whistleblower process if she decides that the CDO development process involves unethical actions by others. Smith's actions comply with the Code and Standards principles of placing the client's interests first and being loyal to her employer. In providing her supervisor with a copy of the Code and Standards, Smith is highlighting the high level of ethical conduct she is required to adhere to in her professional activities.

Example 14 (Leaving an Employer):

Laura Webb just left her position as portfolio analyst at Research Systems, Inc. (RSI). Her employment contract included a non-solicitation agreement that requires her to wait two years before soliciting RSI clients for any investment-related services. Upon leaving, Webb was informed that RSI would contact clients immediately about her departure and introduce her replacement.

While working at RSI, Webb connected with clients, other industry associates, and friends through her LinkedIn network. Her business and personal relationships were intermingled because she considered many of her clients to be personal friends. Realizing that her LinkedIn network would be a valuable resource for new employment opportunities, she updated her profile several days following her departure from RSI. LinkedIn automatically sent a notification to Webb's entire network that her employment status had been changed in her profile.

Comment: Prior to her departure, Webb should have discussed any client information contained in her social media networks. By updating her LinkedIn profile after RSI notified clients and after her employment ended, she has appropriately placed her employer's interests ahead of her own personal interests. In addition, she has not violated the non-solicitation agreement with RSI, unless it prohibited any contact with clients during the two-year period.

Example 15 (Confidential Firm Information):


Sanjay Gupta is a research analyst at Naram Investment Management (NIM). NIM uses a team-based research process to develop recommendations on investment opportunities covered by the team members. Gupta, like others, provides commentary for NIM's clients through the company blog, which is posted weekly on the NIM password-protected website. According to NIM's policy, every contribution to the website must be approved by the company's compliance department before posting. Any opinions expressed on the website are disclosed as representing the perspective of NIM.

Gupta also writes a personal blog to share his experiences with friends and family. As with most blogs, Gupta's personal blog is widely available to interested readers through various internet search engines. Occasionally, when he disagrees with the team-based research opinions of NIM, Gupta uses his personal blog to express his own opinions as a counterpoint to the commentary posted on the NIM website. Gupta believes this provides his readers with a more complete perspective on these investment opportunities.

Comment: Gupta is in violation of Standard IV(A) for disclosing confidential firm information through his personal blog. The recommendations on the firm's blog to clients are not freely available across the internet, but his personal blog post indirectly provides the firm's recommendations.

Additionally, by posting research commentary on his personal blog, Gupta is using firm resources for his personal advantage. To comply with Standard IV(A), members and candidates must receive consent from their employer prior to using company resources.

Standard IV(B) Additional Compensation Arrangements



Members and Candidates must not accept gifts, benefits, compensation, or consideration that competes with or might reasonably be expected to create a conflict of interest with their employer's interest unless they obtain written consent from all parties involved.

Guidance

Standard IV(B) requires members and candidates to obtain permission from their employer before accepting compensation or other benefits from third parties for the services rendered to the employer or for any services that might create a conflict with their employer's interest. Compensation and benefits include direct compensation by the client and any indirect compensation or other benefits received from third parties. "Written consent" includes any form of communication that can be documented (for example, communication via e-mail that can be retrieved and documented).

Members and candidates must obtain permission for additional compensation/benefits because such arrangements may affect loyalties and objectivity and create potential conflicts of interest. Disclosure allows an employer to consider the outside arrangements when evaluating the actions and motivations of members and candidates. Moreover, the employer is entitled to have full knowledge of all compensation/benefit arrangements so as to be able to assess the true cost of the services members or candidates are providing.

There may be instances in which a member or candidate is hired by an employer on a "part-time" basis. "Part-time" status applies to employees who do not commit the full number of hours required for a normal work week. Members and candidates should discuss possible limitations to their abilities to provide services that may be competitive with their employer during the negotiation and hiring process. The requirements of Standard IV(B) would be applicable to limitations identified at that time.

Recommended Procedures for Compliance

Members and candidates should make an immediate written report to their supervisor and compliance officer specifying any compensation they propose to receive for services in addition to the compensation or benefits received from their employer. The details of the report should be confirmed by the party offering the additional compensation, including performance incentives offered by clients. This written report should state the terms of any agreement under which a member or candidate will receive additional compensation; "terms" include the nature of the compensation, the approximate amount of compensation, and the duration of the agreement.

Application of the Standard

Example 1 (Notification of Client Bonus Compensation):

Geoff Whitman, a portfolio analyst for Adams Trust Company, manages the account of Carol Cochran, a client. Whitman is paid a salary by his employer, and Cochran pays the trust company a standard fee based on the market value of assets in her portfolio. Cochran proposes to Whitman that "any year that my portfolio achieves at least a 15% return before taxes, you and your wife can fly to Monaco at my expense

and use my condominium during the third week of January.” Whitman does not inform his employer of the arrangement and vacations in Monaco the following January as Cochran’s guest.

Comment: Whitman violated Standard IV(B) by failing to inform his employer in writing of this supplemental, contingent compensation arrangement. The nature of the arrangement could have resulted in partiality to Cochran’s account, which could have detracted from Whitman’s performance with respect to other accounts he handles for Adams Trust. Whitman must obtain the consent of his employer to accept such a supplemental benefit.

Example 2 (Notification of Outside Compensation):

Terry Jones sits on the board of directors of Exercise Unlimited, Inc. In return for his services on the board, Jones receives unlimited membership privileges for his family at all Exercise Unlimited facilities. Jones purchases Exercise Unlimited stock for the client accounts for which it is appropriate. Jones does not disclose this arrangement to his employer because he does not receive monetary compensation for his services to the board.

Comment: Jones has violated Standard IV(B) by failing to disclose to his employer benefits received in exchange for his services on the board of directors. The nonmonetary compensation may create a conflict of interest in the same manner as being paid to serve as a director.

Example 3 (Prior Approval for Outside Compensation):


Jonathan Hollis is an analyst of oil-and-gas companies for Specialty Investment Management. He is currently recommending the purchase of ABC Oil Company shares and has published a long, well-thought-out research report to substantiate his recommendation. Several weeks after publishing the report, Hollis receives a call from the investor-relations office of ABC Oil saying that Thomas Andrews, CEO of the company, saw the report and really liked the analyst’s grasp of the business and his company. The investor-relations officer invites Hollis to visit ABC Oil to discuss the industry further. ABC Oil offers to send a company plane to pick Hollis up and arrange for his accommodations while visiting. Hollis, after gaining the appropriate approvals, accepts the meeting with the CEO but declines the offered travel arrangements.

Several weeks later, Andrews and Hollis meet to discuss the oil business and Hollis’s report. Following the meeting, Hollis joins Andrews and the investment relations officer for dinner at an upscale restaurant near ABC Oil’s headquarters.

Upon returning to Specialty Investment Management, Hollis provides a full review of the meeting to the director of research, including a disclosure of the dinner attended.

Comment: Hollis’s actions did not violate Standard IV(B). Through gaining approval before accepting the meeting and declining the offered travel arrangements, Hollis sought to avoid any potential conflicts of interest between his company and ABC Oil. Because the location of the dinner was not available prior to arrival and Hollis notified his company of the dinner upon his return, accepting the dinner should not impair his objectivity. By disclosing the dinner, Hollis has enabled Specialty Investment Management to assess whether it has any impact on future reports and recommendations by Hollis related to ABC Oil.

Standard IV(C) Responsibilities of Supervisors



Members and Candidates must make reasonable efforts to ensure that anyone subject to their supervision or authority complies with applicable laws, rules, regulations, and the Code and Standards.

Guidance

Highlights:

- *System for Supervision*
- *Supervision Includes Detection*

Standard IV(C) states that members and candidates must promote actions by all employees under their supervision and authority to comply with applicable laws, rules, regulations, and firm policies and the Code and Standards.

Any investment professional who has employees subject to her or his control or influence—whether or not the employees are CFA Institute members, CFA charterholders, or candidates in the CFA Program—exercises supervisory responsibility. Members and candidates acting as supervisors must also have in-depth knowledge of the Code and Standards so that they can apply this knowledge in discharging their supervisory responsibilities.

The conduct that constitutes reasonable supervision in a particular case depends on the number of employees supervised and the work performed by those employees. Members and candidates with oversight responsibilities for large numbers of employees may not be able to personally evaluate the conduct of these employees on a continuing basis. These members and candidates may delegate supervisory duties to subordinates who directly oversee the other employees. A member's or candidate's responsibilities under Standard IV(C) include instructing those subordinates to whom supervision is delegated about methods to promote compliance, including preventing and detecting violations of laws, rules, regulations, firm policies, and the Code and Standards.

At a minimum, Standard IV(C) requires that members and candidates with supervisory responsibility make reasonable efforts to prevent and detect violations by ensuring the establishment of effective compliance systems. However, an effective compliance system goes beyond enacting a code of ethics, establishing policies and procedures to achieve compliance with the code and applicable law, and reviewing employee actions to determine whether they are following the rules.

To be effective supervisors, members and candidates should implement education and training programs on a recurring or regular basis for employees under their supervision. Such programs will assist the employees with meeting their professional obligations to practice in an ethical manner within the applicable legal system. Further, establishing incentives—monetary or otherwise—for employees not only to meet business goals but also to reward ethical behavior offers supervisors another way to assist employees in complying with their legal and ethical obligations.

Often, especially in large organizations, members and candidates may have supervisory responsibility but not the authority to establish or modify firm-wide compliance policies and procedures or incentive structures. Such limitations should not prevent

a member or candidate from working with his or her own superiors and within the firm structure to develop and implement effective compliance tools, including but not limited to:

- a code of ethics,
- compliance policies and procedures,
- education and training programs,
- an incentive structure that rewards ethical conduct, and
- adoption of firm-wide best practice standards (e.g., the GIPS standards, the CFA Institute Asset Manager Code of Professional Conduct).

A member or candidate with supervisory responsibility should bring an inadequate compliance system to the attention of the firm's senior managers and recommend corrective action. If the member or candidate clearly cannot discharge supervisory responsibilities because of the absence of a compliance system or because of an inadequate compliance system, the member or candidate should decline in writing to accept supervisory responsibility until the firm adopts reasonable procedures to allow adequate exercise of supervisory responsibility.

System for Supervision

Members and candidates with supervisory responsibility must understand what constitutes an adequate compliance system for their firms and make reasonable efforts to see that appropriate compliance procedures are established, documented, communicated to covered personnel, and followed. "Adequate" procedures are those designed to meet industry standards, regulatory requirements, the requirements of the Code and Standards, and the circumstances of the firm. Once compliance procedures are established, the supervisor must also make reasonable efforts to ensure that the procedures are monitored and enforced.

To be effective, compliance procedures must be in place prior to the occurrence of a violation of the law or the Code and Standards. Although compliance procedures cannot be designed to anticipate every potential violation, they should be designed to anticipate the activities most likely to result in misconduct. Compliance programs must be appropriate for the size and nature of the organization. The member or candidate should review model compliance procedures or other industry programs to ensure that the firm's procedures meet the minimum industry standards.

Once a supervisor learns that an employee has violated or may have violated the law or the Code and Standards, the supervisor must promptly initiate an assessment to determine the extent of the wrongdoing. Relying on an employee's statements about the extent of the violation or assurances that the wrongdoing will not reoccur is not enough. Reporting the misconduct up the chain of command and warning the employee to cease the activity are also not enough. Pending the outcome of the investigation, a supervisor should take steps to ensure that the violation will not be repeated, such as placing limits on the employee's activities or increasing the monitoring of the employee's activities.

Supervision Includes Detection

Members and candidates with supervisory responsibility must also make reasonable efforts to detect violations of laws, rules, regulations, firm policies, and the Code and Standards. The supervisors exercise reasonable supervision by establishing and implementing written compliance procedures and ensuring that those procedures are followed through periodic review. If a member or candidate has adopted reasonable procedures and taken steps to institute an effective compliance program, then the member or candidate may not be in violation of Standard IV(C) if he or she does not detect violations that occur despite these efforts. The fact that violations do occur may

indicate, however, that the compliance procedures are inadequate. In addition, in some cases, merely enacting such procedures may not be sufficient to fulfill the duty required by Standard IV(C). A member or candidate may be in violation of Standard IV(C) if he or she knows or should know that the procedures designed to promote compliance, including detecting and preventing violations, are not being followed.

Recommended Procedures for Compliance

Codes of Ethics or Compliance Procedures

Members and candidates are encouraged to recommend that their employers adopt a code of ethics. Adoption of a code of ethics is critical to establishing a strong ethical foundation for investment advisory firms and their employees. Codes of ethics formally emphasize and reinforce the client loyalty responsibilities of investment firm personnel, protect investing clients by deterring misconduct, and protect the firm's reputation for integrity.

There is a distinction, however, between codes of ethics and the specific policies and procedures needed to ensure compliance with the codes and with securities laws and regulations. Although both are important, codes of ethics should consist of fundamental, principle-based ethical and fiduciary concepts that are applicable to all of the firm's employees. In this way, firms can best convey to employees and clients the ethical ideals that investment advisers strive to achieve. These concepts need to be implemented, however, by detailed, firm-wide compliance policies and procedures. Compliance procedures assist the firm's personnel in fulfilling the responsibilities enumerated in the code of ethics and make probable that the ideals expressed in the code of ethics will be adhered to in the day-to-day operation of the firm.

Stand-alone codes of ethics should be written in plain language and should address general fiduciary concepts. They should be unencumbered by numerous detailed procedures. Codes presented in this way are the most effective in stressing to employees that they are in positions of trust and must act with integrity at all times. Mingling compliance procedures in the firm's code of ethics goes against the goal of reinforcing the ethical obligations of employees.

Separating the code of ethics from compliance procedures will also reduce, if not eliminate, the legal terminology and "boilerplate" language that can make the underlying ethical principles incomprehensible to the average person. Above all, to ensure the creation of a culture of ethics and integrity rather than one that merely focuses on following the rules, the principles in the code of ethics must be stated in a way that is accessible and understandable to everyone in the firm.

Members and candidates should encourage their employers to provide their codes of ethics to clients. In this case also, a simple, straightforward code of ethics will be best understood by clients. Unencumbered by the compliance procedures, the code of ethics will be effective in conveying that the firm is committed to conducting business in an ethical manner and in the best interests of the clients.

Adequate Compliance Procedures

A supervisor complies with Standard IV(C) by identifying situations in which legal violations or violations of the Code and Standards are likely to occur and by establishing and enforcing compliance procedures to prevent such violations. Adequate compliance procedures should

- be contained in a clearly written and accessible manual that is tailored to the firm's operations,
- be drafted so that the procedures are easy to understand,

- designate a compliance officer whose authority and responsibility are clearly defined and who has the necessary resources and authority to implement the firm's compliance procedures,
- describe the hierarchy of supervision and assign duties among supervisors,
- implement a system of checks and balances,
- outline the scope of the procedures,
- outline procedures to document the monitoring and testing of compliance procedures,
- outline permissible conduct, and
- delineate procedures for reporting violations and sanctions.

Once a compliance program is in place, a supervisor should

- disseminate the contents of the program to appropriate personnel,
- periodically update procedures to ensure that the measures are adequate under the law,
- continually educate personnel regarding the compliance procedures,
- issue periodic reminders of the procedures to appropriate personnel,
- incorporate a professional conduct evaluation as part of an employee's performance review,
- review the actions of employees to ensure compliance and identify violators, and
- take the necessary steps to enforce the procedures once a violation has occurred.

Once a violation is discovered, a supervisor should

- respond promptly,
- conduct a thorough investigation of the activities to determine the scope of the wrongdoing,
- increase supervision or place appropriate limitations on the wrongdoer pending the outcome of the investigation, and
- review procedures for potential changes necessary to prevent future violations from occurring.

Implementation of Compliance Education and Training

No amount of ethics education and awareness will deter someone determined to commit fraud for personal enrichment. But the vast majority of investment professionals strive to achieve personal success with dedicated service to their clients and employers.

Regular ethics and compliance training, in conjunction with adoption of a code of ethics, is critical to investment firms seeking to establish a strong culture of integrity and to provide an environment in which employees routinely engage in ethical conduct in compliance with the law. Training and education assist individuals in both recognizing areas that are prone to ethical and legal pitfalls and identifying those circumstances and influences that can impair ethical judgment.

By implementing educational programs, supervisors can train their subordinates to put into practice what the firm's code of ethics requires. Education helps employees make the link between legal and ethical conduct and the long-term success of the business; a strong culture of compliance signals to clients and potential clients that the firm has truly embraced ethical conduct as fundamental to the firm's mission to serve its clients.

Establish an Appropriate Incentive Structure

Even if individuals want to make the right choices and follow an ethical course of conduct and are aware of the obstacles that may trip them up, they can still be influenced to act improperly by a corporate culture that embraces a “succeed at all costs” mentality, stresses results regardless of the methods used to achieve those results, and does not reward ethical behavior. Supervisors can reinforce an individual’s natural desire to “do the right thing” by building a culture of integrity in the workplace.

Supervisors and firms must look closely at their incentive structure to determine whether the structure encourages profits and returns at the expense of ethically appropriate conduct. Reward structures may turn a blind eye to how desired outcomes are achieved and encourage dysfunctional or counterproductive behavior. Only when compensation and incentives are firmly tied to client interests and *how* outcomes are achieved, rather than *how much* is generated for the firm, will employees work to achieve a culture of integrity.

Application of the Standard

Example 1 (Supervising Research Activities):

Jane Mattock, senior vice president and head of the research department of H&V, Inc., a regional brokerage firm, has decided to change her recommendation for Timber Products from buy to sell. In line with H&V’s procedures, she orally advises certain other H&V executives of her proposed actions before the report is prepared for publication. As a result of Mattock’s conversation with Dieter Frampton, one of the H&V executives accountable to Mattock, Frampton immediately sells Timber’s stock from his own account and from certain discretionary client accounts. In addition, other personnel inform certain institutional customers of the changed recommendation before it is printed and disseminated to all H&V customers who have received previous Timber reports.

Comment: Mattock has violated Standard IV(C) by failing to reasonably and adequately supervise the actions of those accountable to her. She did not prevent or establish reasonable procedures designed to prevent dissemination of or trading on the information by those who knew of her changed recommendation. She must ensure that her firm has procedures for reviewing or recording any trading in the stock of a corporation that has been the subject of an unpublished change in recommendation. Adequate procedures would have informed the subordinates of their duties and detected sales by Frampton and selected customers.

Example 2 (Supervising Research Activities):

Deion Miller is the research director for Jamestown Investment Programs. The portfolio managers have become critical of Miller and his staff because the Jamestown portfolios do not include any stock that has been the subject of a merger or tender offer. Georgia Ginn, a member of Miller’s staff, tells Miller that she has been studying a local company, Excelsior, Inc., and recommends its purchase. Ginn adds that the company has been widely rumored to be the subject of a merger study by a well-known conglomerate and discussions between them are under way. At Miller’s request, Ginn prepares a memo recommending the stock. Miller passes along Ginn’s memo to the portfolio managers prior to leaving for vacation, and he notes that he has not reviewed the memo. As a result of the memo, the portfolio managers buy Excelsior stock immediately. The day Miller returns to the office, he learns that Ginn’s only sources for the report were her brother, who is an acquisitions analyst with Acme Industries, the “well-known conglomerate,” and that the merger discussions were planned but not held.

Comment: Miller violated Standard IV(C) by not exercising reasonable supervision when he disseminated the memo without checking to ensure that Ginn had a reasonable and adequate basis for her recommendations and that Ginn was not relying on material nonpublic information.

Example 3 (Supervising Trading Activities):

David Edwards, a trainee trader at Wheeler & Company, a major national brokerage firm, assists a customer in paying for the securities of Highland, Inc., by using anticipated profits from the immediate sale of the same securities. Despite the fact that Highland is not on Wheeler's recommended list, a large volume of its stock is traded through Wheeler in this manner. Roberta Ann Mason is a Wheeler vice president responsible for supervising compliance with the securities laws in the trading department. Part of her compensation from Wheeler is based on commission revenues from the trading department. Although she notices the increased trading activity, she does nothing to investigate or halt it.

Comment: Mason's failure to adequately review and investigate purchase orders in Highland stock executed by Edwards and her failure to supervise the trainee's activities violate Standard IV(C). Supervisors should be especially sensitive to actual or potential conflicts between their own self-interests and their supervisory responsibilities.

Example 4 (Supervising Trading Activities and Record Keeping):

Samantha Tabbings is senior vice president and portfolio manager for Crozet, Inc., a registered investment advisory and registered broker/dealer firm. She reports to Charles Henry, the president of Crozet. Crozet serves as the investment adviser and principal underwriter for ABC and XYZ public mutual funds. The two funds' prospectuses allow Crozet to trade financial futures for the funds for the limited purpose of hedging against market risks. Henry, extremely impressed by Tabbings' performance in the past two years, directs Tabbings to act as portfolio manager for the funds. For the benefit of its employees, Crozet has also organized the Crozet Employee Profit-Sharing Plan (CEPSP), a defined contribution retirement plan. Henry assigns Tabbings to manage 20% of the assets of CEPSP. Tabbings' investment objective for her portion of CEPSP's assets is aggressive growth. Unbeknownst to Henry, Tabbings frequently places S&P 500 Index purchase and sale orders for the funds and the CEPSP without providing the futures commission merchants (FCMs) who take the orders with any prior or simultaneous designation of the account for which the trade has been placed. Frequently, neither Tabbings nor anyone else at Crozet completes an internal trade ticket to record the time an order was placed or the specific account for which the order was intended. FCMs often designate a specific account only after the trade, when Tabbings provides such designation. Crozet has no written operating procedures or compliance manual concerning its futures trading, and its compliance department does not review such trading. After observing the market's movement, Tabbings assigns to CEPSP the S&P 500 positions with more favorable execution prices and assigns positions with less favorable execution prices to the funds.

Comment: Henry violated Standard IV(C) by failing to adequately supervise Tabbings with respect to her S&P 500 trading. Henry further violated Standard IV(C) by failing to establish record-keeping and reporting procedures to prevent or detect Tabbings' violations. Henry must make a reasonable effort to determine that adequate compliance procedures covering all employee trading activity are established, documented, communicated, and followed.

Example 5 (Accepting Responsibility):

Meredith Rasmussen works on a buy-side trading desk and concentrates on in-house trades for a hedge fund subsidiary managed by a team at the investment management firm. The hedge fund has been very successful and is marketed globally by the firm. From her experience as the trader for much of the activity of the fund, Rasmussen has become quite knowledgeable about the hedge fund's strategy, tactics, and performance. When a distinct break in the market occurs and many of the securities involved in the hedge fund's strategy decline markedly in value, however, Rasmussen observes that the reported performance of the hedge fund does not at all reflect this decline. From her experience, this lack of an effect is a very unlikely occurrence. She approaches the head of trading about her concern and is told that she should not ask any questions and that the fund is too big and successful and is not her concern. She is fairly sure something is not right, so she contacts the compliance officer and is again told to stay away from the hedge fund reporting issue.

Comment: Rasmussen has clearly come upon an error in policies, procedures, and compliance practices within the firm's operations. According to Standard IV(C), the supervisor and the compliance officer have the responsibility to review the concerns brought forth by Rasmussen. Supervisors have the responsibility of establishing and encouraging an ethical culture in the firm. The dismissal of Rasmussen's question violates Standard IV(C) and undermines the firm's ethical operations.

See also Standard I(D)–Misconduct and, for guidance on whistleblowing, Standard IV(A)–Loyalty.

Example 6 (Inadequate Procedures):

Brendan Witt, a former junior sell-side technology analyst, decided to return to school to earn an MBA. To keep his research skills and industry knowledge sharp, Witt accepted a position with On-line and Informed, an independent internet-based research company. The position requires the publication of a recommendation and report on a different company every month. Initially, Witt is a regular contributor of new research and a participant in the associated discussion boards that generally have positive comments on the technology sector. Over time, his ability to manage his educational requirements and his work requirements begin to conflict with one another. Knowing a recommendation is due the next day for On-line, Witt creates a report based on a few news articles and what the conventional wisdom of the markets has deemed the "hot" security of the day.

Comment: Allowing the report submitted by Witt to be posted highlights a lack of compliance procedures by the research firm. Witt's supervisor needs to work with the management of On-line to develop an appropriate review process to ensure that all contracted analysts comply with the requirements.

See also Standard V(A)–Diligence and Reasonable Basis because it relates to Witt's responsibility for substantiating a recommendation.

Example 7 (Inadequate Supervision):

Michael Papis is the chief investment officer of his state's retirement fund. The fund has always used outside advisers for the real estate allocation, and this information is clearly presented in all fund communications. Thomas Nagle, a recognized sell-side research analyst and Papis's business school classmate, recently left the investment bank he worked for to start his own asset management firm, Accessible Real Estate. Nagle is trying to build his assets under management and contacts Papis about gaining some of the retirement fund's allocation. In the previous few years, the performance

of the retirement fund's real estate investments was in line with the fund's benchmark but was not extraordinary. Papis decides to help out his old friend and also to seek better returns by moving the real estate allocation to Accessible. The only notice of the change in adviser appears in the next annual report in the listing of associated advisers.

Comment: Papis's actions highlight the need for supervision and review at all levels in an organization. His responsibilities may include the selection of external advisers, but the decision to change advisers appears arbitrary. Members and candidates should ensure that their firm has appropriate policies and procedures in place to detect inappropriate actions, such as the action taken by Papis.

See also Standard V(A)–Diligence and Reasonable Basis, Standard V(B)–Communication with Clients and Prospective Clients, and Standard VI(A)–Disclosure of Conflicts.

Example 8 (Supervising Research Activities):

Mary Burdette was recently hired by Fundamental Investment Management (FIM) as a junior auto industry analyst. Burdette is expected to expand the social media presence of the firm because she is active with various networks, including Facebook, LinkedIn, and Twitter. Although Burdette's supervisor, Joe Graf, has never used social media, he encourages Burdette to explore opportunities to increase FIM's online presence and ability to share content, communicate, and broadcast information to clients. In response to Graf's encouragement, Burdette is working on a proposal detailing the advantages of getting FIM onto Twitter in addition to launching a company Facebook page.

As part of her auto industry research for FIM, Burdette is completing a report on the financial impact of Sun Drive Auto Ltd.'s new solar technology for compact automobiles. This research report will be her first for FIM, and she believes Sun Drive's technology could revolutionize the auto industry. In her excitement, Burdette sends a quick tweet to FIM Twitter followers summarizing her "buy" recommendation for Sun Drive Auto stock.

Comment: Graf has violated Standard IV(C) by failing to reasonably supervise Burdette with respect to the contents of her tweet. He did not establish reasonable procedures to prevent the unauthorized dissemination of company research through social media networks. Graf must make sure all employees receive regular training about FIM's policies and procedures, including the appropriate business use of personal social media networks.

See Standard III(B) for additional guidance.

Example 9 (Supervising Research Activities):

Chen Wang leads the research department at YYRA Retirement Planning Specialists. Chen supervises a team of 10 analysts in a fast-paced and understaffed organization. He is responsible for coordinating the firm's approved process to review all reports before they are provided to the portfolio management team for use in rebalancing client portfolios.

One of Chen's direct reports, Huang Mei, covers the banking industry. Chen must submit the latest updates to the portfolio management team tomorrow morning. Huang has yet to submit her research report on ZYX Bank because she is uncomfortable providing a "buy" or "sell" opinion of ZYX on the basis of the completed analysis. Pressed for time and concerned that Chen will reject a "hold" recommendation, she researches various websites and blogs on the banking sector for whatever she can find on ZYX. One independent blogger provides a new interpretation of the recently reported data Huang has analyzed and concludes with a strong "sell" recommendation for ZYX. She is impressed by the originality and resourcefulness of this blogger's report.

Very late in the evening, Huang submits her report and “sell” recommendation to Chen without any reference to the independent blogger’s report. Given the late time of the submission and the competence of Huang’s prior work, Chen compiles this report with the recommendations from each of the other analysts and meets with the portfolio managers to discuss implementation.

Comment: Chen has violated Standard IV(C) by neglecting to reasonably and adequately follow the firm’s approved review process for Huang’s research report. The delayed submission and the quality of prior work do not remove Chen’s requirement to uphold the designated review process. A member or candidate with supervisory responsibility must make reasonable efforts to see that appropriate procedures are established, documented, communicated to covered personnel, and followed.

STANDARD V: INVESTMENT ANALYSIS, RECOMMENDATIONS, AND ACTIONS

Standard V(A) Diligence and Reasonable Basis

Members and Candidates must:

- 1 Exercise diligence, independence, and thoroughness in analyzing investments, making investment recommendations, and taking investment actions.
- 2 Have a reasonable and adequate basis, supported by appropriate research and investigation, for any investment analysis, recommendation, or action.

Guidance

Highlights:

- *Defining Diligence and Reasonable Basis*
- *Using Secondary or Third-Party Research*
- *Using Quantitatively Oriented Research*
- *Developing Quantitatively Oriented Techniques*
- *Selecting External Advisers and Subadvisers*
- *Group Research and Decision Making*

The application of Standard V(A) depends on the investment philosophy the member, candidate, or firm is following, the role of the member or candidate in the investment decision-making process, and the support and resources provided by the member’s or candidate’s employer. These factors will dictate the nature of the diligence and thoroughness of the research and the level of investigation required by Standard V(A).

The requirements for issuing conclusions based on research will vary in relation to the member’s or candidate’s role in the investment decision-making process, but the member or candidate must make reasonable efforts to cover all pertinent issues

when arriving at a recommendation. Members and candidates enhance transparency by providing or offering to provide supporting information to clients when recommending a purchase or sale or when changing a recommendation.

Defining Diligence and Reasonable Basis

Every investment decision is based on a set of facts known and understood at the time. Clients turn to members and candidates for advice and expect these advisers to have more information and knowledge than they do. This information and knowledge is the basis from which members and candidates apply their professional judgment in taking investment actions and making recommendations.

At a basic level, clients want assurance that members and candidates are putting forth the necessary effort to support the recommendations they are making. Communicating the level and thoroughness of the information reviewed before the member or candidate makes a judgment allows clients to understand the reasonableness of the recommended investment actions.

As with determining the suitability of an investment for the client, the necessary level of research and analysis will differ with the product, security, or service being offered. In providing an investment service, members and candidates typically use a variety of resources, including company reports, third-party research, and results from quantitative models. A reasonable basis is formed through a balance of these resources appropriate for the security or decision being analyzed.

The following list provides some, but definitely not all, examples of attributes to consider while forming the basis for a recommendation:

- global, regional, and country macroeconomic conditions,
- a company's operating and financial history,
- the industry's and sector's current conditions and the stage of the business cycle,
- a mutual fund's fee structure and management history,
- the output and potential limitations of quantitative models,
- the quality of the assets included in a securitization, and
- the appropriateness of selected peer-group comparisons.

Even though an investment recommendation may be well informed, downside risk remains for any investment. Members and candidates can base their decisions only on the information available at the time decisions are made. The steps taken in developing a diligent and reasonable recommendation should minimize unexpected downside events.

Using Secondary or Third-Party Research

If members and candidates rely on secondary or third-party research, they must make reasonable and diligent efforts to determine whether such research is sound. Secondary research is defined as research conducted by someone else in the member's or candidate's firm. Third-party research is research conducted by entities outside the member's or candidate's firm, such as a brokerage firm, bank, or research firm. If a member or candidate has reason to suspect that either secondary or third-party research or information comes from a source that lacks a sound basis, the member or candidate must not rely on that information.

Members and candidates should make reasonable enquiries into the source and accuracy of all data used in completing their investment analysis and recommendations. The sources of the information and data will influence the level of the review a member or candidate must undertake. Information and data taken from internet

sources, such as personal blogs, independent research aggregation websites, or social media websites, likely require a greater level of review than information from more established research organizations.

Criteria that a member or candidate can use in forming an opinion on whether research is sound include the following:

- assumptions used,
- rigor of the analysis performed,
- date/timeliness of the research, and
- evaluation of the objectivity and independence of the recommendations.

A member or candidate may rely on others in his or her firm to determine whether secondary or third-party research is sound and use the information in good faith unless the member or candidate has reason to question its validity or the processes and procedures used by those responsible for the research. For example, a portfolio manager may not have a choice of a data source because the firm's senior managers conducted due diligence to determine which vendor would provide services; the member or candidate can use the information in good faith assuming the due diligence process was deemed adequate.

A member or candidate should verify that the firm has a policy about the timely and consistent review of approved research providers to ensure that the quality of the research continues to meet the necessary standards. If such a policy is not in place at the firm, the member or candidate should encourage the development and adoption of a formal review practice.

Using Quantitatively Oriented Research

Standard V(A) applies to the rapidly expanding use of quantitatively oriented research models and processes, such as computer-generated modeling, screening, and ranking of investment securities; the creation or valuation of derivative instruments; and quantitative portfolio construction techniques. These models and processes are being used for much more than the back testing of investment strategies, especially with continually advancing technology and techniques. The continued broad development of quantitative methods and models is an important part of capital market developments.

Members and candidates need to have an understanding of the parameters used in models and quantitative research that are incorporated into their investment recommendations. Although they are not required to become experts in every technical aspect of the models, they must understand the assumptions and limitations inherent in any model and how the results were used in the decision-making process.

The reliance on and potential limitations of financial models became clear through the investment crisis that unfolded in 2007 and 2008. In some cases, the financial models used to value specific securities and related derivative products did not adequately demonstrate the level of associated risks. Members and candidates should make reasonable efforts to test the output of investment models and other pre-programmed analytical tools they use. Such validation should occur before incorporating the process into their methods, models, or analyses.

Although not every model can test for every factor or outcome, members and candidates should ensure that their analyses incorporate a broad range of assumptions sufficient to capture the underlying characteristics of investments. The omission from the analysis of potentially negative outcomes or of levels of risk outside the norm may misrepresent the true economic value of an investment. The possible scenarios for analysis should include factors that are likely to have a substantial influence on the investment value and may include extremely positive and negative scenarios.

Developing Quantitatively Oriented Techniques

Individuals who create new quantitative models and services must exhibit a higher level of diligence in reviewing new products than the individuals who ultimately use the analytical output. Members and candidates involved in the development and oversight of quantitatively oriented models, methods, and algorithms must understand the technical aspects of the products they provide to clients. A thorough testing of the model and resulting analysis should be completed prior to product distribution.

Members and candidates need to consider the source and time horizon of the data used as inputs in financial models. The information from many commercially available databases may not effectively incorporate both positive and negative market cycles. In the development of a recommendation, the member or candidate may need to test the models by using volatility and performance expectations that represent scenarios outside the observable databases. In reviewing the computer models or the resulting output, members and candidates need to pay particular attention to the assumptions used in the analysis and the rigor of the analysis to ensure that the model incorporates a wide range of possible input expectations, including negative market events.

Selecting External Advisers and Subadvisers

Financial instruments and asset allocation techniques continue to develop and evolve. This progression has led to the use of specialized managers to invest in specific asset classes or diversification strategies that complement a firm's in-house expertise. Standard V(A) applies to the level of review necessary in selecting an external adviser or subadviser to manage a specifically mandated allocation. Members and candidates must review managers as diligently as they review individual funds and securities.

Members and candidates who are directly involved with the use of external advisers need to ensure that their firms have standardized criteria for reviewing these selected external advisers and managers. Such criteria would include, but would not be limited to, the following:

- reviewing the adviser's established code of ethics,
- understanding the adviser's compliance and internal control procedures,
- assessing the quality of the published return information, and
- reviewing the adviser's investment process and adherence to its stated strategy.

Codes, standards, and guides to best practice published by CFA Institute provide members and candidates with examples of acceptable practices for external advisers and advice in selecting a new adviser. The following guides are available at the CFA Institute website (www.cfainstitute.org): Asset Manager Code of Professional Conduct, Global Investment Performance Standards, and Model Request for Proposal (for equity, credit, or real estate managers).

Group Research and Decision Making

Commonly, members and candidates are part of a group or team that is collectively responsible for producing investment analysis or research. The conclusions or recommendations of the group report represent the consensus of the group and are not necessarily the views of the member or candidate, even though the name of the member or candidate is included on the report. In some instances, a member or candidate will not agree with the view of the group. If, however, the member or candidate believes that the consensus opinion has a reasonable and adequate basis and is independent and objective, the member or candidate need not decline to be identified with the report. If the member or candidate is confident in the process, the member or candidate does not need to dissociate from the report even if it does not reflect his or her opinion.

Recommended Procedures for Compliance

Members and candidates should encourage their firms to consider the following policies and procedures to support the principles of Standard V(A):

- Establish a policy requiring that research reports, credit ratings, and investment recommendations have a basis that can be substantiated as reasonable and adequate. An individual employee (a supervisory analyst) or a group of employees (a review committee) should be appointed to review and approve such items prior to external circulation to determine whether the criteria established in the policy have been met.
- Develop detailed, written guidance for analysts (research, investment, or credit), supervisory analysts, and review committees that establishes the due diligence procedures for judging whether a particular recommendation has a reasonable and adequate basis.
- Develop measurable criteria for assessing the quality of research, the reasonableness and adequacy of the basis for any recommendation or rating, and the accuracy of recommendations over time. In some cases, firms may consider implementing compensation arrangements that depend on these measurable criteria and that are applied consistently to all related analysts.
- Develop detailed, written guidance that establishes minimum levels of scenario testing of all computer-based models used in developing, rating, and evaluating financial instruments. The policy should contain criteria related to the breadth of the scenarios tested, the accuracy of the output over time, and the analysis of cash flow sensitivity to inputs.
- Develop measurable criteria for assessing outside providers, including the quality of information being provided, the reasonableness and adequacy of the provider's collection practices, and the accuracy of the information over time. The established policy should outline how often the provider's products are reviewed.
- Adopt a standardized set of criteria for evaluating the adequacy of external advisers. The policy should include how often and on what basis the allocation of funds to the adviser will be reviewed.

Application of the Standard

Example 1 (Sufficient Due Diligence):

Helen Hawke manages the corporate finance department of Sarkozi Securities, Ltd. The firm is anticipating that the government will soon close a tax loophole that currently allows oil-and-gas exploration companies to pass on drilling expenses to holders of a certain class of shares. Because market demand for this tax-advantaged class of stock is currently high, Sarkozi convinces several companies to undertake new equity financings at once, before the loophole closes. Time is of the essence, but Sarkozi lacks sufficient resources to conduct adequate research on all the prospective issuing companies. Hawke decides to estimate the IPO prices on the basis of the relative size of each company and to justify the pricing later when her staff has time.

Comment: Sarkozi should have taken on only the work that it could adequately handle. By categorizing the issuers by general size, Hawke has bypassed researching all the other relevant aspects that should be considered when pricing new issues and thus has not performed sufficient due diligence. Such an omission can result in investors purchasing shares at prices that have no actual basis. Hawke has violated Standard V(A).

Example 2 (Sufficient Scenario Testing):

Babu Dhaliwal works for Heinrich Brokerage in the corporate finance group. He has just persuaded Feggans Resources, Ltd., to allow his firm to do a secondary equity financing at Feggans Resources' current stock price. Because the stock has been trading at higher multiples than similar companies with equivalent production, Dhaliwal presses the Feggans Resources managers to project what would be the maximum production they could achieve in an optimal scenario. Based on these numbers, he is able to justify the price his firm will be asking for the secondary issue. During a sales pitch to the brokers, Dhaliwal then uses these numbers as the base-case production levels that Feggans Resources will achieve.

Comment: When presenting information to the brokers, Dhaliwal should have given a range of production scenarios and the probability of Feggans Resources achieving each level. By giving the maximum production level as the likely level of production, he has misrepresented the chances of achieving that production level and seriously misled the brokers. Dhaliwal has violated Standard V(A).

Example 3 (Developing a Reasonable Basis):

Brendan Witt, a former junior sell-side technology analyst, decided to return to school to earn an MBA. To keep his research skills and industry knowledge sharp, Witt accepted a position with On-line and Informed, an independent internet-based research company. The position requires the publication of a recommendation and report on a different company every month. Initially, Witt is a regular contributor of new research and a participant in the associated discussion boards that generally have positive comments on the technology sector. Over time, his ability to manage his educational requirements and his work requirements begin to conflict with one another. Knowing a recommendation is due the next day for On-line, Witt creates a report based on a few news articles and what the conventional wisdom of the markets has deemed the "hot" security of the day.

Comment: Witt's knowledge of and exuberance for technology stocks, a few news articles, and the conventional wisdom of the markets do not constitute, without more information, a reasonable and adequate basis for a stock recommendation that is supported by appropriate research and investigation. Therefore, Witt has violated Standard V(A).

See also Standard IV(C)—Responsibilities of Supervisors because it relates to the firm's inadequate procedures.

Example 4 (Timely Client Updates):

Kristen Chandler is an investment consultant in the London office of Dalton Securities, a major global investment consultant firm. One of her UK pension funds has decided to appoint a specialist US equity manager. Dalton's global manager of research relies on local consultants to cover managers within their regions and, after conducting thorough due diligence, puts their views and ratings in Dalton's manager database. Chandler accesses Dalton's global manager research database and conducts a screen of all US equity managers on the basis of a match with the client's desired philosophy/style, performance, and tracking-error targets. She selects the five managers that meet these criteria and puts them in a briefing report that is delivered to the client 10 days later. Between the time of Chandler's database search and the delivery of the report to the client, Chandler is told that Dalton has updated the database with the information that one of the firms that Chandler has recommended for consideration

lost its chief investment officer, the head of its US equity research, and the majority of its portfolio managers on the US equity product—all of whom have left to establish their own firm. Chandler does not revise her report with this updated information.

Comment: Chandler has failed to satisfy the requirement of Standard V(A). Although Dalton updated the manager ratings to reflect the personnel turnover at one of the firms, Chandler did not update her report to reflect the new information.

Example 5 (Group Research Opinions):

Evelyn Mastakis is a junior analyst who has been asked by her firm to write a research report predicting the expected interest rate for residential mortgages over the next six months. Mastakis submits her report to the fixed-income investment committee of her firm for review, as required by firm procedures. Although some committee members support Mastakis's conclusion, the majority of the committee disagrees with her conclusion, and the report is significantly changed to indicate that interest rates are likely to increase more than originally predicted by Mastakis. Should Mastakis ask that her name be taken off the report when it is disseminated?

Comment: The results of research are not always clear, and different people may have different opinions based on the same factual evidence. In this case, the committee may have valid reasons for issuing a report that differs from the analyst's original research. The firm can issue a report that is different from the original report of an analyst as long as there is a reasonable and adequate basis for its conclusions.

Generally, analysts must write research reports that reflect their own opinion and can ask the firm not to put their name on reports that ultimately differ from that opinion. When the work is a group effort, however, not all members of the team may agree with all aspects of the report. Ultimately, members and candidates can ask to have their names removed from the report, but if they are satisfied that the process has produced results or conclusions that have a reasonable and adequate basis, members and candidates do not have to dissociate from the report even when they do not agree with its contents. If Mastakis is confident in the process, she does not need to dissociate from the report even if it does not reflect her opinion.

Example 6 (Reliance on Third-Party Research):

Gary McDermott runs a two-person investment management firm. McDermott's firm subscribes to a service from a large investment research firm that provides research reports. McDermott's firm makes investment recommendations on the basis of these reports.

Comment: Members and candidates can rely on third-party research but must make reasonable and diligent efforts to determine that such research is sound. If McDermott undertakes due diligence efforts on a regular basis to ensure that the research produced by the large firm is objective and reasonably based, McDermott can rely on that research when making investment recommendations to clients.

Example 7 (Due Diligence in Submanager Selection):

Paul Ostrowski's business has grown significantly over the past couple of years, and some clients want to diversify internationally. Ostrowski decides to find a submanager to handle the expected international investments. Because this will be his

first subadviser, Ostrowski uses the CFA Institute model “request for proposal” to design a questionnaire for his search. By his deadline, he receives seven completed questionnaires from a variety of domestic and international firms trying to gain his business. Ostrowski reviews all the applications in detail and decides to select the firm that charges the lowest fees because doing so will have the least impact on his firm’s bottom line.

Comment: The selection of an external adviser or subadviser should be based on a full and complete review of the adviser’s services, performance history, and cost structure. In basing the decision on the fee structure alone, Ostrowski may be violating Standard V(A).

See also Standard III(C)–Suitability because it relates to the ability of the selected adviser to meet the needs of the clients.

Example 8 (Sufficient Due Diligence):

Michael Papis is the chief investment officer of his state’s retirement fund. The fund has always used outside advisers for the real estate allocation, and this information is clearly presented in all fund communications. Thomas Nagle, a recognized sell-side research analyst and Papis’s business school classmate, recently left the investment bank he worked for to start his own asset management firm, Accessible Real Estate. Nagle is trying to build his assets under management and contacts Papis about gaining some of the retirement fund’s allocation. In the previous few years, the performance of the retirement fund’s real estate investments was in line with the fund’s benchmark but was not extraordinary. Papis decides to help out his old friend and also to seek better returns by moving the real estate allocation to Accessible. The only notice of the change in adviser appears in the next annual report in the listing of associated advisers.

Comment: Papis violated Standard V(A). His responsibilities may include the selection of the external advisers, but the decision to change advisers appears to have been arbitrary. If Papis was dissatisfied with the current real estate adviser, he should have conducted a proper solicitation to select the most appropriate adviser.

See also Standard IV(C)–Responsibilities of Supervisors, Standard V(B)–Communication with Clients and Prospective Clients, and Standard VI(A)–Disclosure of Conflicts.

Example 9 (Sufficient Due Diligence):

Andre Shrub owns and operates Conduit, an investment advisory firm. Prior to opening Conduit, Shrub was an account manager with Elite Investment, a hedge fund managed by his good friend Adam Reed. To attract clients to a new Conduit fund, Shrub offers lower-than-normal management fees. He can do so because the fund consists of two top-performing funds managed by Reed. Given his personal friendship with Reed and the prior performance record of these two funds, Shrub believes this new fund is a winning combination for all parties. Clients quickly invest with Conduit to gain access to the Elite funds. No one is turned away because Conduit is seeking to expand its assets under management.

Comment: Shrub violated Standard V(A) by not conducting a thorough analysis of the funds managed by Reed before developing the new Conduit fund. Shrub’s reliance on his personal relationship with Reed and his prior knowledge of Elite are insufficient justification for the investments. The funds may be appropriately considered, but a full review of their operating procedures, reporting practices, and transparency are some elements of the necessary due diligence.

See also Standard III(C)–Suitability.

Example 10 (Sufficient Due Diligence):

Bob Thompson has been doing research for the portfolio manager of the fixed-income department. His assignment is to do sensitivity analysis on securitized subprime mortgages. He has discussed with the manager possible scenarios to use to calculate expected returns. A key assumption in such calculations is housing price appreciation (HPA) because it drives “prepays” (prepayments of mortgages) and losses. Thompson is concerned with the significant appreciation experienced over the previous five years as a result of the increased availability of funds from subprime mortgages. Thompson insists that the analysis should include a scenario run with –10% for Year 1, –5% for Year 2, and then (to project a worst-case scenario) 0% for Years 3 through 5. The manager replies that these assumptions are too dire because there has never been a time in their available database when HPA was negative.

Thompson conducts his research to better understand the risks inherent in these securities and evaluates these securities in the worst-case scenario, a less likely but possible environment. Based on the results of the enhanced scenarios, Thompson does not recommend the purchase of the securitization. Against the general market trends, the manager follows Thompson’s recommendation and does not invest. The following year, the housing market collapses. In avoiding the subprime investments, the manager’s portfolio outperforms its peer group that year.

Comment: Thompson’s actions in running the scenario test with inputs beyond the historical trends available in the firm’s databases adhere to the principles of Standard V(A). His concerns over recent trends provide a sound basis for further analysis. Thompson understands the limitations of his model, when combined with the limited available historical information, to accurately predict the performance of the funds if market conditions change negatively.

See also Standard I(B)–Independence and Objectivity.

Example 11 (Use of Quantitatively Oriented Models):

Espacia Liakos works in sales for Hellenica Securities, a firm specializing in developing intricate derivative strategies to profit from particular views on market expectations. One of her clients is Eugenie Carapalis, who has become convinced that commodity prices will become more volatile over the coming months. Carapalis asks Liakos to quickly engineer a strategy that will benefit from this expectation. Liakos turns to Hellenica’s modeling group to fulfill this request. Because of the tight deadline, the modeling group outsources parts of the work to several trusted third parties. Liakos implements the disparate components of the strategy as the firms complete them.

Within a month, Carapalis is proven correct: Volatility across a range of commodities increases sharply. But her derivatives position with Hellenica returns huge losses, and the losses increase daily. Liakos investigates and realizes that although each of the various components of the strategy had been validated, they had never been evaluated as an integrated whole. In extreme conditions, portions of the model worked at cross-purposes with other portions, causing the overall strategy to fail dramatically.

Comment: Liakos violated Standard V(A). Members and candidates must understand the statistical significance of the results of the models they recommend and must be able to explain them to clients. Liakos did not take adequate care to ensure a thorough review of the whole model; its components were evaluated only individually. Because Carapalis clearly

intended to implement the strategy as a whole rather than as separate parts, Liakos should have tested how the components of the strategy interacted as well as how they performed individually.

Example 12 (Successful Due Diligence/Failed Investment):

Alton Newbury is an investment adviser to high-net-worth clients. A client with an aggressive risk profile in his investment policy statement asks about investing in the Top Shelf hedge fund. This fund, based in Calgary, Alberta, Canada, has reported 20% returns for the first three years. The fund prospectus states that its strategy involves long and short positions in the energy sector and extensive leverage. Based on his analysis of the fund's track record, the principals involved in managing the fund, the fees charged, and the fund's risk profile, Newbury recommends the fund to the client and secures a position in it. The next week, the fund announces that it has suffered a loss of 60% of its value and is suspending operations and redemptions until after a regulatory review. Newbury's client calls him in a panic and asks for an explanation.

Comment: Newbury's actions were consistent with Standard V(A). Analysis of an investment that results in a reasonable basis for recommendation does not guarantee that the investment has no downside risk. Newbury should discuss the analysis process with the client while reminding him or her that past performance does not lead to guaranteed future gains and that losses in an aggressive investment portfolio should be expected.

Example 13 (Quantitative Model Diligence):

Barry Cannon is the lead quantitative analyst at CityCenter Hedge Fund. He is responsible for the development, maintenance, and enhancement of the proprietary models the fund uses to manage its investors' assets. Cannon reads several high-level mathematical publications and blogs to stay informed of current developments. One blog, run by Expert CFA, presents some intriguing research that may benefit one of CityCenter's current models. Cannon is under pressure from firm executives to improve the model's predictive abilities, and he incorporates the factors discussed in the online research. The updated output recommends several new investments to the fund's portfolio managers.

Comment: Cannon has violated Standard V(A) by failing to have a reasonable basis for the new recommendations made to the portfolio managers. He needed to diligently research the effect of incorporating the new factors before offering the output recommendations. Cannon may use the blog for ideas, but it is his responsibility to determine the effect on the firm's proprietary models.

See Standard VII(B) regarding the violation by "Expert CFA" in the use of the CFA designation.

Example 14 (Selecting a Service Provider):

Ellen Smith is a performance analyst at Artic Global Advisors, a firm that manages global equity mandates for institutional clients. She was asked by her supervisor to review five new performance attribution systems and recommend one that would more appropriately explain the firm's investment strategy to clients. On the list was a system she recalled learning about when visiting an exhibitor booth at a recent conference. The system is highly quantitative and something of a "black box" in how it calculates the attribution values. Smith recommended this option without researching the others because the sheer complexity of the process was sure to impress the clients.

Comment: Smith's actions do not demonstrate a sufficient level of diligence in reviewing this product to make a recommendation for selecting the service. Besides not reviewing or considering the other four potential systems, she did not determine whether the "black box" attribution process aligns with the investment practices of the firm, including its investments in different countries and currencies. Smith must review and understand the process of any software or system before recommending its use as the firm's attribution system.

Example 15 (Subadviser Selection):

Craig Jackson is working for Adams Partners, Inc., and has been assigned to select a hedge fund subadviser to improve the diversification of the firm's large fund-of-funds product. The allocation must be in place before the start of the next quarter. Jackson uses a consultant database to find a list of suitable firms that claim compliance with the GIPS standards. He calls more than 20 firms on the list to confirm their potential interest and to determine their most recent quarterly and annual total return values. Because of the short turnaround, Jackson recommends the firm with the greatest total return values for selection.

Comment: By considering only performance and GIPS compliance, Jackson has not conducted sufficient review of potential firms to satisfy the requirements of Standard V(A). A thorough investigation of the firms and their operations should be conducted to ensure that their addition would increase the diversity of clients' portfolios and that they are suitable for the fund-of-funds product.

Example 16 (Manager Selection):

Timothy Green works for Peach Asset Management, where he creates proprietary models that analyze data from the firm request for proposal questionnaires to identify managers for possible inclusion in the firm's fund-of-funds investment platform. Various criteria must be met to be accepted to the platform. Because of the number of respondents to the questionnaires, Green uses only the data submitted to make a recommendation for adding a new manager.

Comment: By failing to conduct any additional outside review of the information to verify what was submitted through the request for proposal, Green has likely not satisfied the requirements of Standard V(A). The amount of information requested from outside managers varies among firms. Although the requested information may be comprehensive, Green should ensure sufficient effort is undertaken to verify the submitted information before recommending a firm for inclusion. This requires that he go beyond the information provided by the manager on the request for proposal questionnaire and may include interviews with interested managers, reviews of regulatory filings, and discussions with the managers' custodian or auditor.

Example 17 (Technical Model Requirements):

Jérôme Dupont works for the credit research group of XYZ Asset Management, where he is in charge of developing and updating credit risk models. In order to perform accurately, his models need to be regularly updated with the latest market data.

Dupont does not interact with or manage money for any of the firm's clients. He is in contact with the firm's US corporate bond fund manager, John Smith, who has only very superficial knowledge of the model and who from time to time asks very basic questions regarding the output recommendations. Smith does not consult Dupont with respect to finalizing his clients' investment strategies.

Dupont's recently assigned objective is to develop a new emerging market corporate credit risk model. The firm is planning to expand into emerging credit, and the development of such a model is a critical step in this process. Because Smith seems to follow the model's recommendations without much concern for its quality as he develops his clients' investment strategies, Dupont decides to focus his time on the development of the new emerging market model and neglects to update the US model.

After several months without regular updates, Dupont's diagnostic statistics start to show alarming signs with respect to the quality of the US credit model. Instead of conducting the long and complicated data update, Dupont introduces new codes into his model with some limited new data as a quick "fix." He thinks this change will address the issue without needing to complete the full data update, so he continues working on the new emerging market model.

Several months following the quick "fix," another set of diagnostic statistics reveals nonsensical results and Dupont realizes that his earlier change contained an error. He quickly corrects the error and alerts Smith. Smith realizes that some of the prior trades he performed were due to erroneous model results. Smith rebalances the portfolio to remove the securities purchased on the basis of the questionable results without reporting the issue to anyone else.

Comment: Smith violated standard V(A) because exercising "diligence, independence, and thoroughness in analyzing investments, making investment recommendations, and taking investment actions" means that members and candidates must understand the technical aspects of the products they provide to clients. Smith does not understand the model he is relying on to manage money. Members and candidates should also make reasonable enquiries into the source and accuracy of all data used in completing their investment analysis and recommendations.

Dupont violated V(A) even if he does not trade securities or make investment decisions. Dupont's models give investment recommendations, and Dupont is accountable for the quality of those recommendations. Members and candidates should make reasonable efforts to test the output of pre-programmed analytical tools they use. Such validation should occur before incorporating the tools into their decision-making process.

See also Standard V(B)—Communication with Clients and Prospective Clients.

Standard V(B) Communication with Clients and Prospective Clients

Members and Candidates must:

- 1 Disclose to clients and prospective clients the basic format and general principles of the investment processes they use to analyze investments, select securities, and construct portfolios and must promptly disclose any changes that might materially affect those processes.

- 2 Disclose to clients and prospective clients significant limitations and risks associated with the investment process.
- 3 Use reasonable judgment in identifying which factors are important to their investment analyses, recommendations, or actions and include those factors in communications with clients and prospective clients.
- 4 Distinguish between fact and opinion in the presentation of investment analyses and recommendations.

Guidance

Highlights:

- *Informing Clients of the Investment Process*
- *Different Forms of Communication*
- *Identifying Risk and Limitations*
- *Report Presentation*
- *Distinction between Facts and Opinions in Reports*

Standard V(B) addresses member and candidate conduct with respect to communicating with clients. Developing and maintaining clear, frequent, and thorough communication practices is critical to providing high-quality financial services to clients. When clients understand the information communicated to them, they also can understand exactly how members and candidates are acting on their behalf, which gives clients the opportunity to make well-informed decisions about their investments. Such understanding can be accomplished only through clear communication.

Standard V(B) states that members and candidates should communicate in a recommendation the factors that were instrumental in making the investment recommendation. A critical part of this requirement is to distinguish clearly between opinions and facts. In preparing a research report, the member or candidate must present the basic characteristics of the security(ies) being analyzed, which will allow the reader to evaluate the report and incorporate information the reader deems relevant to his or her investment decision-making process.

Similarly, in preparing a recommendation about, for example, an asset allocation strategy, alternative investment vehicle, or structured investment product, the member or candidate should include factors that are relevant to the asset classes that are being discussed. Follow-up communication of significant changes in the risk characteristics of a security or asset strategy is required. Providing regular updates to any changes in the risk characteristics is recommended.

Informing Clients of the Investment Process

Members and candidates must adequately describe to clients and prospective clients the manner in which they conduct the investment decision-making process. Such disclosure should address factors that have positive and negative influences on the recommendations, including significant risks and limitations of the investment process used. The member or candidate must keep clients and other interested parties informed on an ongoing basis about changes to the investment process, especially newly identified significant risks and limitations. Only by thoroughly understanding the nature of the investment product or service can a client determine whether changes to that product or service could materially affect his or her investment objectives.

Understanding the basic characteristics of an investment is of great importance in judging the suitability of that investment on a standalone basis, but it is especially important in determining the impact each investment will have on the characteristics

of a portfolio. Although the risk and return characteristics of a common stock might seem to be essentially the same for any investor when the stock is viewed in isolation, the effects of those characteristics greatly depend on the other investments held. For instance, if the particular stock will represent 90% of an individual's investments, the stock's importance in the portfolio is vastly different from what it would be to an investor with a highly diversified portfolio for whom the stock will represent only 2% of the holdings.

A firm's investment policy may include the use of outside advisers to manage various portions of clients' assets under management. Members and candidates should inform the clients about the specialization or diversification expertise provided by the external adviser(s). This information allows clients to understand the full mix of products and strategies being applied that may affect their investment objectives.

Different Forms of Communication

For purposes of Standard V(B), communication is not confined to a written report of the type traditionally generated by an analyst researching a security, company, or industry. A presentation of information can be made via any means of communication, including in-person recommendation or description, telephone conversation, media broadcast, or transmission by computer (e.g., on the internet).

Computer and mobile device communications have rapidly evolved over the past few years. Members and candidates using any social media service to communicate business information must be diligent in their efforts to avoid unintended problems because these services may not be available to all clients. When providing information to clients through new technologies, members and candidates should take reasonable steps to ensure that such delivery would treat all clients fairly and, if necessary, be considered publicly disseminated.

The nature of client communications is highly diverse—from one word (“buy” or “sell”) to in-depth reports of more than 100 pages. A communication may contain a general recommendation about the market, asset allocations, or classes of investments (e.g., stocks, bonds, real estate) or may relate to a specific security. If recommendations are contained in capsule form (such as a recommended stock list), members and candidates should notify clients that additional information and analyses are available from the producer of the report.

Identifying Risks and Limitations

Members and candidates must outline to clients and prospective clients significant risks and limitations of the analysis contained in their investment products or recommendations. The type and nature of significant risks will depend on the investment process that members and candidates are following and on the personal circumstances of the client. In general, the use of leverage constitutes a significant risk and should be disclosed.

Members and candidates must adequately disclose the general market-related risks and the risks associated with the use of complex financial instruments that are deemed significant. Other types of risks that members and candidates may consider disclosing include, but are not limited to, counterparty risk, country risk, sector or industry risk, security-specific risk, and credit risk.

Investment securities and vehicles may have limiting factors that influence a client's or potential client's investment decision. Members and candidates must report to clients and prospective clients the existence of limitations significant to the decision-making process. Examples of such factors and attributes include, but are not limited to, investment liquidity and capacity. Liquidity is the ability to liquidate an investment on a timely basis at a reasonable cost. Capacity is the investment amount beyond which returns will be negatively affected by new investments.

The appropriateness of risk disclosure should be assessed on the basis of what was known at the time the investment action was taken (often called an *ex ante* basis). Members and candidates must disclose significant risks known to them at the time of the disclosure. Members and candidates cannot be expected to disclose risks they are unaware of at the time recommendations or investment actions are made. In assessing compliance with Standard V(B), it is important to establish knowledge of a purported significant risk or limitation. A one-time investment loss that occurs after the disclosure does not constitute a pertinent factor in assessing whether significant risks and limitations were properly disclosed. Having no knowledge of a risk or limitation that subsequently triggers a loss may reveal a deficiency in the diligence and reasonable basis of the research of the member or candidate but may not reveal a breach of Standard V(B).

Report Presentation

Once the analytical process has been completed, the member or candidate who prepares the report must include those elements that are important to the analysis and conclusions of the report so that the reader can follow and challenge the report's reasoning. A report writer who has done adequate investigation may emphasize certain areas, touch briefly on others, and omit certain aspects deemed unimportant. For instance, a report may dwell on a quarterly earnings release or new-product introduction and omit other matters as long as the analyst clearly stipulates the limits to the scope of the report.

Investment advice based on quantitative research and analysis must be supported by readily available reference material and should be applied in a manner consistent with previously applied methodology. If changes in methodology are made, they should be highlighted.

Distinction between Facts and Opinions in Reports

Standard V(B) requires that opinion be separated from fact. Violations often occur when reports fail to separate the past from the future by not indicating that earnings estimates, changes in the outlook for dividends, or future market price information are *opinions* subject to future circumstances.

In the case of complex quantitative analyses, members and candidates must clearly separate fact from statistical conjecture and should identify the known limitations of an analysis. Members and candidates may violate Standard V(B) by failing to identify the limits of statistically developed projections because such omission leaves readers unaware of the limits of the published projections.

Members and candidates should explicitly discuss with clients and prospective clients the assumptions used in the investment models and processes to generate the analysis. Caution should be used in promoting the perceived accuracy of any model or process to clients because the ultimate output is merely an estimate of future results and not a certainty.

Recommended Procedures for Compliance

Because the selection of relevant factors is an analytical skill, determination of whether a member or candidate has used reasonable judgment in excluding and including information in research reports depends heavily on case-by-case review rather than a specific checklist.

Members and candidates should encourage their firms to have a rigorous methodology for reviewing research that is created for publication and dissemination to clients.

To assist in the after-the-fact review of a report, the member or candidate must maintain records indicating the nature of the research and should, if asked, be able to supply additional information to the client (or any user of the report) covering factors not included in the report.

Application of the Standard

Example 1 (Sufficient Disclosure of Investment System):

Sarah Williamson, director of marketing for Country Technicians, Inc., is convinced that she has found the perfect formula for increasing Country Technicians' income and diversifying its product base. Williamson plans to build on Country Technicians' reputation as a leading money manager by marketing an exclusive and expensive investment advice letter to high-net-worth individuals. One hitch in the plan is the complexity of Country Technicians' investment system—a combination of technical trading rules (based on historical price and volume fluctuations) and portfolio construction rules designed to minimize risk. To simplify the newsletter, she decides to include only each week's top five "buy" and "sell" recommendations and to leave out details of the valuation models and the portfolio structuring scheme.

Comment: Williamson's plans for the newsletter violate Standard V(B). Williamson need not describe the investment system in detail in order to implement the advice effectively, but she must inform clients of Country Technicians' basic process and logic. Without understanding the basis for a recommendation, clients cannot possibly understand its limitations or its inherent risks.

Example 2 (Providing Opinions as Facts):

Richard Dox is a mining analyst for East Bank Securities. He has just finished his report on Boisy Bay Minerals. Included in his report is his own assessment of the geological extent of mineral reserves likely to be found on the company's land. Dox completed this calculation on the basis of the core samples from the company's latest drilling. According to Dox's calculations, the company has more than 500,000 ounces of gold on the property. Dox concludes his research report as follows: "Based on the fact that the company has 500,000 ounces of gold to be mined, I recommend a strong BUY."

Comment: If Dox issues the report as written, he will violate Standard V(B). His calculation of the total gold reserves for the property based on the company's recent sample drilling is a quantitative opinion, not a fact. Opinion must be distinguished from fact in research reports.

Example 3 (Proper Description of a Security):

Olivia Thomas, an analyst at Government Brokers, Inc., which is a brokerage firm specializing in government bond trading, has produced a report that describes an investment strategy designed to benefit from an expected decline in US interest rates. The firm's derivative products group has designed a structured product that will allow the firm's clients to benefit from this strategy. Thomas's report describing the strategy indicates that high returns are possible if various scenarios for declining interest rates are assumed. Citing the proprietary nature of the structured product underlying the strategy, the report does not describe in detail how the firm is able to offer such returns or the related risks in the scenarios, nor does the report address the likely returns of the strategy if, contrary to expectations, interest rates rise.

Comment: Thomas has violated Standard V(B) because her report fails to describe properly the basic characteristics of the actual and implied risks of the investment strategy, including how the structure was created and the degree to which leverage was embedded in the structure. The report should include a balanced discussion of how the strategy would perform in the case of rising as well as falling interest rates, preferably illustrating how the strategies might be expected to perform in the event of a reasonable variety of interest rate and credit risk–spread scenarios. If liquidity issues are relevant with regard to the valuation of either the derivatives or the underlying securities, provisions the firm has made to address those risks should also be disclosed.

Example 4 (Notification of Fund Mandate Change):

May & Associates is an aggressive growth manager that has represented itself since its inception as a specialist at investing in small-cap US stocks. One of May’s selection criteria is a maximum capitalization of US\$250 million for any given company. After a string of successful years of superior performance relative to its peers, May has expanded its client base significantly, to the point at which assets under management now exceed US\$3 billion. For liquidity purposes, May’s chief investment officer (CIO) decides to lift the maximum permissible market-cap ceiling to US\$500 million and change the firm’s sales and marketing literature accordingly to inform prospective clients and third-party consultants.

Comment: Although May’s CIO is correct about informing potentially interested parties as to the change in investment process, he must also notify May’s existing clients. Among the latter group might be a number of clients who not only retained May as a small-cap manager but also retained mid-cap and large-cap specialists in a multiple-manager approach. Such clients could regard May’s change of criteria as a style change that distorts their overall asset allocations.

Example 5 (Notification of Fund Mandate Change):

Rather than lifting the ceiling for its universe from US\$250 million to US\$500 million, May & Associates extends its small-cap universe to include a number of non-US companies.

Comment: Standard V(B) requires that May’s CIO advise May’s clients of this change because the firm may have been retained by some clients specifically for its prowess at investing in US small-cap stocks. Other changes that require client notification are introducing derivatives to emulate a certain market sector or relaxing various other constraints, such as portfolio beta. In all such cases, members and candidates must disclose changes to all interested parties.

Example 6 (Notification of Changes to the Investment Process):

RJZ Capital Management is an active value-style equity manager that selects stocks by using a combination of four multifactor models. The firm has found favorable results when back testing the most recent 10 years of available market data in a new dividend discount model (DDM) designed by the firm. This model is based on projected inflation rates, earnings growth rates, and interest rates. The president of RJZ decides to replace its simple model that uses price to trailing 12-month earnings with the new DDM.

Comment: Because the introduction of a new and different valuation model represents a material change in the investment process, RJZ's president must communicate the change to the firm's clients. RJZ is moving away from a model based on hard data toward a new model that is at least partly dependent on the firm's forecasting skills. Clients would likely view such a model as a significant change rather than a mere refinement of RJZ's process.

Example 7 (Notification of Changes to the Investment Process):

RJZ Capital Management loses the chief architect of its multifactor valuation system. Without informing its clients, the president of RJZ decides to redirect the firm's talents and resources toward developing a product for passive equity management—a product that will emulate the performance of a major market index.

Comment: By failing to disclose to clients a substantial change to its investment process, the president of RJZ has violated Standard V(B).

Example 8 (Notification of Changes to the Investment Process):

At Fundamental Asset Management, Inc., the responsibility for selecting stocks for addition to the firm's "approved" list has just shifted from individual security analysts to a committee consisting of the research director and three senior portfolio managers. Eleanor Morales, a portfolio manager with Fundamental Asset Management, thinks this change is not important enough to communicate to her clients.

Comment: Morales must disclose the process change to all her clients. Some of Fundamental's clients might be concerned about the morale and motivation among the firm's best research analysts after such a change. Moreover, clients might challenge the stock-picking track record of the portfolio managers and might even want to monitor the situation closely.

Example 9 (Sufficient Disclosure of Investment System):

Amanda Chinn is the investment director for Diversified Asset Management, which manages the endowment of a charitable organization. Because of recent staff departures, Diversified has decided to limit its direct investment focus to large-cap securities and supplement the needs for small-cap and mid-cap management by hiring outside fund managers. In describing the planned strategy change to the charity, Chinn's update letter states, "As investment director, I will directly oversee the investment team managing the endowment's large-capitalization allocation. I will coordinate the selection and ongoing review of external managers responsible for allocations to other classes." The letter also describes the reasons for the change and the characteristics external managers must have to be considered.

Comment: Standard V(B) requires the disclosure of the investment process used to construct the portfolio of the fund. Changing the investment process from managing all classes of investments within the firm to the use of external managers is one example of information that needs to be communicated to clients. Chinn and her firm have embraced the principles of Standard V(B) by providing their client with relevant information. The charity can now make a reasonable decision about whether Diversified Asset Management remains the appropriate manager for its fund.

Example 10 (Notification of Changes to the Investment Process):

Michael Papis is the chief investment officer of his state's retirement fund. The fund has always used outside advisers for the real estate allocation, and this information is clearly presented in all fund communications. Thomas Nagle, a recognized sell-side research analyst and Papis's business school classmate, recently left the investment bank he worked for to start his own asset management firm, Accessible Real Estate. Nagle is trying to build his assets under management and contacts Papis about gaining some of the retirement fund's allocation. In the previous few years, the performance of the retirement fund's real estate investments was in line with the fund's benchmark but was not extraordinary. Papis decides to help out his old friend and also to seek better returns by moving the real estate allocation to Accessible. The only notice of the change in adviser appears in the next annual report in the listing of associated advisers.

Comment: Papis has violated Standard V(B). He attempted to hide the nature of his decision to change external managers by making only a limited disclosure. The plan recipients and the fund's trustees need to be aware when changes are made to ensure that operational procedures are being followed.

See also Standard IV(C)–Responsibilities of Supervisors, Standard V(A)–Diligence and Reasonable Basis, and Standard VI(A)–Disclosure of Conflicts.

Example 11 (Notification of Errors):

Jérôme Dupont works for the credit research group of XYZ Asset Management, where he is in charge of developing and updating credit risk models. In order to perform accurately, his models need to be regularly updated with the latest market data.

Dupont does not interact with or manage money for any of the firm's clients. He is in contact with the firm's US corporate bond fund manager, John Smith, who has only very superficial knowledge of the model and who from time to time asks very basic questions regarding the output recommendations. Smith does not consult Dupont with respect to finalizing his clients' investment strategies.

Dupont's recently assigned objective is to develop a new emerging market corporate credit risk model. The firm is planning to expand into emerging credit, and the development of such a model is a critical step in this process. Because Smith seems to follow the model's recommendations without much concern for its quality as he develops his clients' investment strategies, Dupont decides to focus his time on the development of the new emerging market model and neglects to update the US model.

After several months without regular updates, Dupont's diagnostic statistics start to show alarming signs with respect to the quality of the US credit model. Instead of conducting the long and complicated data update, Dupont introduces new codes into his model with some limited new data as a quick "fix." He thinks this change will address the issue without needing to complete the full data update, so he continues working on the new emerging market model.

Several months following the quick "fix," another set of diagnostic statistics reveals nonsensical results and Dupont realizes that his earlier change contained an error. He quickly corrects the error and alerts Smith. Smith realizes that some of the prior trades he performed were due to erroneous model results. Smith rebalances the portfolio to remove the securities purchased on the basis of the questionable results without reporting the issue to anyone else.

Comment: Smith violated V(B) by not disclosing a material error in the investment process. Clients should have been informed about the error and the corrective actions the firm was undertaking on their behalf.

See also Standard V(A)–Diligence and Reasonable Basis.

Example 12 (Notification of Risks and Limitations):

Quantitative analyst Yuri Yakovlev has developed an investment strategy that selects small-cap stocks on the basis of quantitative signals. Yakovlev's strategy typically identifies only a small number of stocks (10–20) that tend to be illiquid, but according to his backtests, the strategy generates significant risk-adjusted returns. The partners at Yakovlev's firm, QSC Capital, are impressed by these results. After a thorough examination of the strategy's risks, stress testing, historical back testing, and scenario analysis, QSC decides to seed the strategy with US\$10 million of internal capital in order for Yakovlev to create a track record for the strategy.

After two years, the strategy has generated performance returns greater than the appropriate benchmark and the Sharpe ratio of the fund is close to 1.0. On the basis of these results, QSC decides to actively market the fund to large institutional investors. While creating the offering materials, Yakovlev informs the marketing team that the capacity of the strategy is limited. The extent of the limitation is difficult to ascertain with precision; it depends on market liquidity and other factors in his model that can evolve over time. Yakovlev indicates that given the current market conditions, investments in the fund beyond US\$100 million of capital could become more difficult and negatively affect expected fund returns.

Alan Wellard, the manager of the marketing team, is a partner with 30 years of marketing experience and explains to Yakovlev that these are complex technical issues that will muddy the marketing message. According to Wellard, the offering material should focus solely on the great track record of the fund. Yakovlev does not object because the fund has only US\$12 million of capital, very far from the US\$100 million threshold.

Comment: Yakovlev and Wellard have not appropriately disclosed a significant limitation associated with the investment product. Yakovlev believes this limitation, once reached, will materially affect the returns of the fund. Although the fund is currently far from the US\$100 million mark, current and prospective investors must be made aware of this capacity issue. If significant limitations are complicated to grasp and clients do not have the technical background required to understand them, Yakovlev and Wellard should either educate the clients or ascertain whether the fund is suitable for each client.

Example 13 (Notification of Risks and Limitations):


Brickell Advisers offers investment advisory services mainly to South American clients. Julietta Ramon, a risk analyst at Brickell, describes to clients how the firm uses value at risk (VaR) analysis to track the risk of its strategies. Ramon assures clients that calculating a VaR at a 99% confidence level, using a 20-day holding period, and applying a methodology based on an *ex ante* Monte Carlo simulation is extremely effective. The firm has never had losses greater than those predicted by this VaR analysis.

Comment: Ramon has not sufficiently communicated the risks associated with the investment process to satisfy the requirements of Standard V(B). The losses predicted by a VaR analysis depend greatly on the inputs used in the model. The size and probability of losses can differ significantly from what an individual model predicts. Ramon must disclose how the inputs were selected and the potential limitations and risks associated with the investment strategy.

Example 14 (Notification of Risks and Limitations):

Lily Smith attended an industry conference and noticed that John Baker, an investment manager with Baker Associates, attracted a great deal of attention from the conference participants. On the basis of her knowledge of Baker’s reputation and the interest he received at the conference, Smith recommends adding Baker Associates to the approved manager platform. Her recommendation to the approval committee included the statement “John Baker is well respected in the industry, and his insights are consistently sought after by investors. Our clients are sure to benefit from investing with Baker Associates.”

Comment: Smith is not appropriately separating facts from opinions in her recommendation to include the manager within the platform. Her actions conflict with the requirements of Standard V(B). Smith is relying on her opinions about Baker’s reputation and the fact that many attendees were talking with him at the conference. Smith should also review the requirements of Standard V(A) regarding reasonable basis to determine the level of review necessary to recommend Baker Associates.

Standard V(C) Record Retention


Members and Candidates must develop and maintain appropriate records to support their investment analyses, recommendations, actions, and other investment-related communications with clients and prospective clients.

Guidance**Highlights:**

- *New Media Records*
- *Records Are Property of the Firm*
- *Local Requirements*

Members and candidates must retain records that substantiate the scope of their research and reasons for their actions or conclusions. The retention requirement applies to decisions to buy or sell a security as well as reviews undertaken that do not lead to a change in position. Which records are required to support recommendations or investment actions depends on the role of the member or candidate in the investment decision-making process. Records may be maintained either in hard copy or electronic form.

Some examples of supporting documentation that assists the member or candidate in meeting the requirements for retention are as follows:

- personal notes from meetings with the covered company,
- press releases or presentations issued by the covered company,
- computer-based model outputs and analyses,
- computer-based model input parameters,
- risk analyses of securities’ impacts on a portfolio,
- selection criteria for external advisers,

- notes from clients from meetings to review investment policy statements, and
- outside research reports.

New Media Records

The increased use of new and evolving technological formats (e.g., social media) for gathering and sharing information creates new challenges in maintaining the appropriate records and files. The nature or format of the information does not remove a member's or candidate's responsibility to maintain a record of information used in his or her analysis or communicated to clients.

Members and candidates should understand that although employers and local regulators are developing digital media retention policies, these policies may lag behind the advent of new communication channels. Such lag places greater responsibility on the individual for ensuring that all relevant information is retained. Examples of non-print media formats that should be retained include, but are not limited to,

- e-mails,
- text messages,
- blog posts, and
- Twitter posts.

Records Are Property of the Firm

As a general matter, records created as part of a member's or candidate's professional activity on behalf of his or her employer are the property of the firm. When a member or candidate leaves a firm to seek other employment, the member or candidate cannot take the property of the firm, including original forms or copies of supporting records of the member's or candidate's work, to the new employer without the express consent of the previous employer. The member or candidate cannot use historical recommendations or research reports created at the previous firm because the supporting documentation is unavailable. For future use, the member or candidate must re-create the supporting records at the new firm with information gathered through public sources or directly from the covered company and not from memory or sources obtained at the previous employer.

Local Requirements

Local regulators often impose requirements on members, candidates, and their firms related to record retention that must be followed. Firms may also implement policies detailing the applicable time frame for retaining research and client communication records. Fulfilling such regulatory and firm requirements satisfies the requirements of Standard V(C). In the absence of regulatory guidance or firm policies, CFA Institute recommends maintaining records for at least seven years.

Recommended Procedures for Compliance

The responsibility to maintain records that support investment action generally falls with the firm rather than individuals. Members and candidates must, however, archive research notes and other documents, either electronically or in hard copy, that support their current investment-related communications. Doing so will assist their firms in complying with requirements for preservation of internal or external records.

Application of the Standard

Example 1 (Record Retention and IPS Objectives and Recommendations):

One of Nikolas Lindstrom's clients is upset by the negative investment returns of his equity portfolio. The investment policy statement for the client requires that the portfolio manager follow a benchmark-oriented approach. The benchmark for the client includes a 35% investment allocation in the technology sector. The client acknowledges that this allocation was appropriate, but over the past three years, technology stocks have suffered severe losses. The client complains to the investment manager for allocating so much money to this sector.

Comment: For Lindstrom, having appropriate records is important to show that over the past three years, the portion of technology stocks in the benchmark index was 35%, as called for in the IPS. Lindstrom should also have the client's IPS stating that the benchmark was appropriate for the client's investment objectives. He should also have records indicating that the investment has been explained appropriately to the client and that the IPS was updated on a regular basis. Taking these actions, Lindstrom would be in compliance with Standard V(C).

Example 2 (Record Retention and Research Process):

Malcolm Young is a research analyst who writes numerous reports rating companies in the luxury retail industry. His reports are based on a variety of sources, including interviews with company managers, manufacturers, and economists; on-site company visits; customer surveys; and secondary research from analysts covering related industries.

Comment: Young must carefully document and keep copies of all the information that goes into his reports, including the secondary or third-party research of other analysts. Failure to maintain such files would violate Standard V(C).


Example 3 (Records as Firm, Not Employee, Property):

Martin Blank develops an analytical model while he is employed by Green Partners Investment Management, LLP (GPIM). While at the firm, he systematically documents the assumptions that make up the model as well as his reasoning behind the assumptions. As a result of the success of his model, Blank is hired to be the head of the research department of one of GPIM's competitors. Blank takes copies of the records supporting his model to his new firm.

Comment: The records created by Blank supporting the research model he developed at GPIM are the records of GPIM. Taking the documents with him to his new employer without GPIM's permission violates Standard V(C). To use the model in the future, Blank must re-create the records supporting his model at the new firm.

STANDARD VI: CONFLICTS OF INTEREST

Standard VI(A) Disclosure of Conflicts



Members and Candidates must make full and fair disclosure of all matters that could reasonably be expected to impair their independence and objectivity or interfere with respective duties to their clients, prospective clients, and employer. Members and Candidates must ensure that such disclosures are prominent, are delivered in plain language, and communicate the relevant information effectively.

Guidance

Highlights:

- *Disclosure of Conflicts to Employers*
- *Disclosure to Clients*
- *Cross-Departmental Conflicts*
- *Conflicts with Stock Ownership*
- *Conflicts as a Director*

Best practice is to avoid actual conflicts or the appearance of conflicts of interest when possible. Conflicts of interest often arise in the investment profession. Conflicts can occur between the interests of clients, the interests of employers, and the member's or candidate's own personal interests. Common sources for conflict are compensation structures, especially incentive and bonus structures that provide immediate returns for members and candidates with little or no consideration of long-term value creation.

Identifying and managing these conflicts is a critical part of working in the investment industry and can take many forms. When conflicts cannot be reasonably avoided, clear and complete disclosure of their existence is necessary.

Standard VI(A) protects investors and employers by requiring members and candidates to fully disclose to clients, potential clients, and employers all actual and potential conflicts of interest. Once a member or candidate has made full disclosure, the member's or candidate's employer, clients, and prospective clients will have the information needed to evaluate the objectivity of the investment advice or action taken on their behalf.

To be effective, disclosures must be prominent and must be made in plain language and in a manner designed to effectively communicate the information. Members and candidates have the responsibility of determining how often, in what manner, and in what particular circumstances the disclosure of conflicts must be made. Best practices dictate updating disclosures when the nature of a conflict of interest changes materially—for example, if the nature of a conflict of interest worsens through the introduction of bonuses based on each quarter's profits as to opposed annual profits. In making and updating disclosures of conflicts of interest, members and candidates should err on the side of caution to ensure that conflicts are effectively communicated.

Disclosure of Conflicts to Employers

Disclosure of conflicts to employers may be appropriate in many instances. When reporting conflicts of interest to employers, members and candidates must give their employers enough information to assess the impact of the conflict. By complying with employer guidelines, members and candidates allow their employers to avoid potentially embarrassing and costly ethical or regulatory violations.

Reportable situations include conflicts that would interfere with rendering unbiased investment advice and conflicts that would cause a member or candidate to act not in the employer's best interest. The same circumstances that generate conflicts to be reported to clients and prospective clients also would dictate reporting to employers. Ownership of stocks analyzed or recommended, participation on outside boards, and financial or other pressures that could influence a decision are to be promptly reported to the employer so that their impact can be assessed and a decision on how to resolve the conflict can be made.

The mere appearance of a conflict of interest may create problems for members, candidates, and their employers. Therefore, many of the conflicts previously mentioned could be explicitly prohibited by an employer. For example, many employers restrict personal trading, outside board membership, and related activities to prevent situations that might not normally be considered problematic from a conflict-of-interest point of view but that could give the appearance of a conflict of interest. Members and candidates must comply with these restrictions. Members and candidates must take reasonable steps to avoid conflicts and, if they occur inadvertently, must report them promptly so that the employer and the member or candidate can resolve them as quickly and effectively as possible.

Standard VI(A) also deals with a member's or candidate's conflicts of interest that might be detrimental to the employer's business. Any potential conflict situation that could prevent clear judgment about or full commitment to the execution of a member's or candidate's duties to the employer should be reported to the member's or candidate's employer and promptly resolved.

Disclosure to Clients

Members and candidates must maintain their objectivity when rendering investment advice or taking investment action. Investment advice or actions may be perceived to be tainted in numerous situations. Can a member or candidate remain objective if, on behalf of the firm, the member or candidate obtains or assists in obtaining fees for services? Can a member or candidate give objective advice if he or she owns stock in the company that is the subject of an investment recommendation or if the member or candidate has a close personal relationship with the company managers? Requiring members and candidates to disclose all matters that reasonably could be expected to impair the member's or candidate's objectivity allows clients and prospective clients to judge motives and possible biases for themselves.

Often in the investment industry, a conflict, or the perception of a conflict, cannot be avoided. The most obvious conflicts of interest, which should always be disclosed, are relationships between an issuer and the member, the candidate, or his or her firm (such as a directorship or consultancy by a member; investment banking, underwriting, and financial relationships; broker/dealer market-making activities; and material beneficial ownership of stock). For the purposes of Standard VI(A), members and candidates beneficially own securities or other investments if they have a direct or indirect pecuniary interest in the securities, have the power to vote or direct the voting of the shares of the securities or investments, or have the power to dispose or direct the disposition of the security or investment.

A member or candidate must take reasonable steps to determine whether a conflict of interest exists and disclose to clients any known conflicts of the member's or candidate's firm. Disclosure of broker/dealer market-making activities alerts clients that a purchase or sale might be made from or to the firm's principal account and that the firm has a special interest in the price of the stock.

Additionally, disclosures should be made to clients regarding fee arrangements, subadvisory agreements, or other situations involving nonstandard fee structures. Equally important is the disclosure of arrangements in which the firm benefits directly from investment recommendations. An obvious conflict of interest is the rebate of a portion of the service fee some classes of mutual funds charge to investors. Members and candidates should ensure that their firms disclose such relationships so clients can fully understand the costs of their investments and the benefits received by their investment manager's employer.

Cross-Departmental Conflicts

Other circumstances can give rise to actual or potential conflicts of interest. For instance, a sell-side analyst working for a broker/dealer may be encouraged, not only by members of her or his own firm but by corporate issuers themselves, to write research reports about particular companies. The buy-side analyst is likely to be faced with similar conflicts as banks exercise their underwriting and security-dealing powers. The marketing division may ask an analyst to recommend the stock of a certain company in order to obtain business from that company.

The potential for conflicts of interest also exists with broker-sponsored limited partnerships formed to invest venture capital. Increasingly, members and candidates are expected not only to follow issues from these partnerships once they are offered to the public but also to promote the issues in the secondary market after public offerings. Members, candidates, and their firms should attempt to resolve situations presenting potential conflicts of interest or disclose them in accordance with the principles set forth in Standard VI(A).

Conflicts with Stock Ownership

The most prevalent conflict requiring disclosure under Standard VI(A) is a member's or candidate's ownership of stock in companies that he or she recommends to clients or that clients hold. Clearly, the easiest method for preventing a conflict is to prohibit members and candidates from owning any such securities, but this approach is overly burdensome and discriminates against members and candidates.

Therefore, sell-side members and candidates should disclose any materially beneficial ownership interest in a security or other investment that the member or candidate is recommending. Buy-side members and candidates should disclose their procedures for reporting requirements for personal transactions. Conflicts arising from personal investing are discussed more fully in the guidance for Standard VI(B).

Conflicts as a Director

Service as a director poses three basic conflicts of interest. First, a conflict may exist between the duties owed to clients and the duties owed to shareholders of the company. Second, investment personnel who serve as directors may receive the securities or options to purchase securities of the company as compensation for serving on the board, which could raise questions about trading actions that might increase the value of those securities. Third, board service creates the opportunity to receive material nonpublic information involving the company. Even though the information is confidential, the perception could be that information not available to the public is being communicated to a director's firm—whether a broker, investment adviser, or other

type of organization. When members or candidates providing investment services also serve as directors, they should be isolated from those making investment decisions by the use of firewalls or similar restrictions.

Recommended Procedures for Compliance

Members or candidates should disclose special compensation arrangements with the employer that might conflict with client interests, such as bonuses based on short-term performance criteria, commissions, incentive fees, performance fees, and referral fees. If the member's or candidate's firm does not permit such disclosure, the member or candidate should document the request and may consider dissociating from the activity.

Members' and candidates' firms are encouraged to include information on compensation packages in firms' promotional literature. If a member or candidate manages a portfolio for which the fee is based on capital gains or capital appreciation (a performance fee), this information should be disclosed to clients. If a member, a candidate, or a member's or candidate's firm has outstanding agent options to buy stock as part of the compensation package for corporate financing activities, the amount and expiration date of these options should be disclosed as a footnote to any research report published by the member's or candidate's firm.

Application of the Standard

Example 1 (Conflict of Interest and Business Relationships):

Hunter Weiss is a research analyst with Farmington Company, a broker and investment banking firm. Farmington's merger and acquisition department has represented Vimco, a conglomerate, in all of Vimco's acquisitions for 20 years. From time to time, Farmington officers sit on the boards of directors of various Vimco subsidiaries. Weiss is writing a research report on Vimco.

Comment: Weiss must disclose in his research report Farmington's special relationship with Vimco. Broker/dealer management of and participation in public offerings must be disclosed in research reports. Because the position of underwriter to a company entails a special past and potential future relationship with a company that is the subject of investment advice, it threatens the independence and objectivity of the report writer and must be disclosed.

Example 2 (Conflict of Interest and Business Stock Ownership):

The investment management firm of Dover & Roe sells a 25% interest in its partnership to a multinational bank holding company, First of New York. Immediately after the sale, Margaret Hobbs, president of Dover & Roe, changes her recommendation for First of New York's common stock from "sell" to "buy" and adds First of New York's commercial paper to Dover & Roe's approved list for purchase.

Comment: Hobbs must disclose the new relationship with First of New York to all Dover & Roe clients. This relationship must also be disclosed to clients by the firm's portfolio managers when they make specific investment recommendations or take investment actions with respect to First of New York's securities.

Example 3 (Conflict of Interest and Personal Stock Ownership):

Carl Fargmon, a research analyst who follows firms producing office equipment, has been recommending purchase of Kincaid Printing because of its innovative new line of copiers. After his initial report on the company, Fargmon's wife inherits from a distant relative US\$3 million of Kincaid stock. He has been asked to write a follow-up report on Kincaid.

Comment: Fargmon must disclose his wife's ownership of the Kincaid stock to his employer and in his follow-up report. Best practice would be to avoid the conflict by asking his employer to assign another analyst to draft the follow-up report.

Example 4 (Conflict of Interest and Personal Stock Ownership):

Betty Roberts is speculating in penny stocks for her own account and purchases 100,000 shares of Drew Mining, Inc., for US\$0.30 a share. She intends to sell these shares at the sign of any substantial upward price movement of the stock. A week later, her employer asks her to write a report on penny stocks in the mining industry to be published in two weeks. Even without owning the Drew stock, Roberts would recommend it in her report as a "buy." A surge in the price of the stock to the US\$2 range is likely to result once the report is issued.

Comment: Although this holding may not be material, Roberts must disclose it in the report and to her employer before writing the report because the gain for her will be substantial if the market responds strongly to her recommendation. The fact that she has only recently purchased the stock adds to the appearance that she is not entirely objective.

Example 5 (Conflict of Interest and Compensation Arrangements):

Samantha Snead, a portfolio manager for Thomas Investment Counsel, Inc., specializes in managing public retirement funds and defined benefit pension plan accounts, all of which have long-term investment objectives. A year ago, Snead's employer, in an attempt to motivate and retain key investment professionals, introduced a bonus compensation system that rewards portfolio managers on the basis of quarterly performance relative to their peers and to certain benchmark indexes. In an attempt to improve the short-term performance of her accounts, Snead changes her investment strategy and purchases several high-beta stocks for client portfolios. These purchases are seemingly contrary to the clients' investment policy statements. Following their purchase, an officer of Griffin Corporation, one of Snead's pension fund clients, asks why Griffin Corporation's portfolio seems to be dominated by high-beta stocks of companies that often appear among the most actively traded issues. No change in objective or strategy has been recommended by Snead during the year.

Comment: Snead has violated Standard VI(A) by failing to inform her clients of the changes in her compensation arrangement with her employer, which created a conflict of interest between her compensation and her clients' IPSs. Firms may pay employees on the basis of performance, but pressure by Thomas Investment Counsel to achieve short-term performance goals is in basic conflict with the objectives of Snead's accounts.

See also Standard III(C)—Suitability.

Example 6 (Conflict of Interest, Options, and Compensation Arrangements):

Wayland Securities works with small companies doing IPOs or secondary offerings. Typically, these deals are in the US\$10 million to US\$50 million range, and as a result, the corporate finance fees are quite small. To compensate for the small fees, Wayland Securities usually takes “agent options”—that is, rights (exercisable within a two-year time frame) to acquire up to an additional 10% of the current offering. Following an IPO performed by Wayland for Falk Resources, Ltd., Darcy Hunter, the head of corporate finance at Wayland, is concerned about receiving value for her Falk Resources options. The options are due to expire in one month, and the stock is not doing well. She contacts John Fitzpatrick in the research department of Wayland Securities, reminds him that he is eligible for 30% of these options, and indicates that now would be a good time to give some additional coverage to Falk Resources. Fitzpatrick agrees and immediately issues a favorable report.

Comment: For Fitzpatrick to avoid being in violation of Standard VI(A), he must indicate in the report the volume and expiration date of agent options outstanding. Furthermore, because he is personally eligible for some of the options, Fitzpatrick must disclose the extent of this compensation. He also must be careful to not violate his duty of independence and objectivity under Standard I(B).

Example 7 (Conflict of Interest and Compensation Arrangements):

Gary Carter is a representative with Bengal International, a registered broker/dealer. Carter is approached by a stock promoter for Badger Company, who offers to pay Carter additional compensation for sales of Badger Company’s stock to Carter’s clients. Carter accepts the stock promoter’s offer but does not disclose the arrangements to his clients or to his employer. Carter sells shares of the stock to his clients.

Comment: Carter has violated Standard VI(A) by failing to disclose to clients that he is receiving additional compensation for recommending and selling Badger stock. Because he did not disclose the arrangement with Badger to his clients, the clients were unable to evaluate whether Carter’s recommendations to buy Badger were affected by this arrangement. Carter’s conduct also violated Standard VI(A) by failing to disclose to his employer monetary compensation received in addition to the compensation and benefits conferred by his employer. Carter was required by Standard VI(A) to disclose the arrangement with Badger to his employer so that his employer could evaluate whether the arrangement affected Carter’s objectivity and loyalty.

Example 8 (Conflict of Interest and Directorship):

Carol Corky, a senior portfolio manager for Universal Management, recently became involved as a trustee with the Chelsea Foundation, a large not-for-profit foundation in her hometown. Universal is a small money manager (with assets under management of approximately US\$100 million) that caters to individual investors. Chelsea has assets in excess of US\$2 billion. Corky does not believe informing Universal of her involvement with Chelsea is necessary.

Comment: By failing to inform Universal of her involvement with Chelsea, Corky violated Standard VI(A). Given the large size of the endowment at Chelsea, Corky’s new role as a trustee can reasonably be expected to be time consuming, to the possible detriment of Corky’s portfolio responsibilities with Universal. Also, as a trustee, Corky may become involved in the investment decisions at Chelsea. Therefore, Standard VI(A) obligates Corky to discuss becoming a trustee at Chelsea with her compliance officer

or supervisor at Universal before accepting the position, and she should have disclosed the degree to which she would be involved in investment decisions at Chelsea.

Example 9 (Conflict of Interest and Personal Trading):

Bruce Smith covers eastern European equities for Marlborough Investments, an investment management firm with a strong presence in emerging markets. While on a business trip to Russia, Smith learns that investing in Russian equities directly is difficult but that equity-linked notes that replicate the performance of underlying Russian equities can be purchased from a New York–based investment bank. Believing that his firm would not be interested in such a security, Smith purchases a note linked to a Russian telecommunications company for his own account without informing Marlborough. A month later, Smith decides that the firm should consider investing in Russian equities by way of the equity-linked notes. He prepares a write-up on the market that concludes with a recommendation to purchase several of the notes. One note he recommends is linked to the same Russian telecom company that Smith holds in his personal account.

Comment: Smith has violated Standard VI(A) by failing to disclose his purchase and ownership of the note linked to the Russian telecom company. Smith is required by the standard to disclose the investment opportunity to his employer and look to his company’s policies on personal trading to determine whether it was proper for him to purchase the note for his own account. By purchasing the note, Smith may or may not have impaired his ability to make an unbiased and objective assessment of the appropriateness of the derivative instrument for his firm, but Smith’s failure to disclose the purchase to his employer impaired his employer’s ability to decide whether his ownership of the security is a conflict of interest that might affect Smith’s future recommendations. Then, when he recommended the particular telecom notes to his firm, Smith compounded his problems by not disclosing that he owned the notes in his personal account—a clear conflict of interest.

Example 10 (Conflict of Interest and Requested Favors):

Michael Papis is the chief investment officer of his state’s retirement fund. The fund has always used outside advisers for the real estate allocation, and this information is clearly presented in all fund communications. Thomas Nagle, a recognized sell-side research analyst and Papis’s business school classmate, recently left the investment bank he worked for to start his own asset management firm, Accessible Real Estate. Nagle is trying to build his assets under management and contacts Papis about gaining some of the retirement fund’s allocation. In the previous few years, the performance of the retirement fund’s real estate investments was in line with the fund’s benchmark but was not extraordinary. Papis decides to help out his old friend and also to seek better returns by moving the real estate allocation to Accessible. The only notice of the change in adviser appears in the next annual report in the listing of associated advisers.

Comment: Papis has violated Standard VI(A) by not disclosing to his employer his personal relationship with Nagle. Disclosure of his past history with Nagle would allow his firm to determine whether the conflict may have impaired Papis’s independence in deciding to change managers.

See also Standard IV(C)–Responsibilities of Supervisors, Standard V(A)–Diligence and Reasonable Basis, and Standard V(B)–Communication with Clients and Prospective Clients.

Example 11 (Conflict of Interest and Business Relationships):

Bob Wade, trust manager for Central Midas Bank, was approached by Western Funds about promoting its family of funds, with special interest in the service-fee class. To entice Central to promote this class, Western Funds offered to pay the bank a service fee of 0.25%. Without disclosing the fee being offered to the bank, Wade asked one of the investment managers to review the Western Funds family of funds to determine whether they were suitable for clients of Central. The manager completed the normal due diligence review and determined that the funds were fairly valued in the market with fee structures on a par with their competitors. Wade decided to accept Western's offer and instructed the team of portfolio managers to exclusively promote these funds and the service-fee class to clients seeking to invest new funds or transfer from their current investments. So as to not influence the investment managers, Wade did not disclose the fee offer and allowed that income to flow directly to the bank.

Comment: Wade is violating Standard VI(A) by not disclosing the portion of the service fee being paid to Central. Although the investment managers may not be influenced by the fee, neither they nor the client have the proper information about Wade's decision to exclusively market this fund family and class of investments. Central may come to rely on the new fee as a component of the firm's profitability and may be unwilling to offer other products in the future that could affect the fees received.

See also Standard I(B)—Independence and Objectivity.

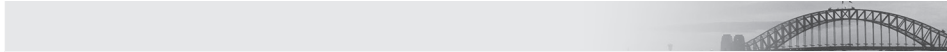
Example 12 (Disclosure of Conflicts to Employers):

Yehudit Dagan is a portfolio manager for Risk Management Bank (RMB), whose clients include retirement plans and corporations. RMB provides a defined contribution retirement plan for its employees that offers 20 large diversified mutual fund investment options, including a mutual fund managed by Dagan's RMB colleagues. After being employed for six months, Dagan became eligible to participate in the retirement plan, and she intends to allocate her retirement plan assets in six of the investment options, including the fund managed by her RMB colleagues. Dagan is concerned that joining the plan will lead to a potentially significant amount of paperwork for her (e.g., disclosure of her retirement account holdings and needing preclearance for her transactions), especially with her investing in the in-house fund.

Comment: Standard VI(A) would not require Dagan to disclose her personal or retirement investments in large diversified mutual funds, unless specifically required by her employer. For practical reasons, the standard does not require Dagan to gain preclearance for ongoing payroll deduction contributions to retirement plan account investment options.

Dagan should ensure that her firm does not have a specific policy regarding investment—whether personal or in the retirement account—for funds managed by the company's employees. These mutual funds may be subject to the company's disclosure, preclearance, and trading restriction procedures to identify possible conflicts prior to the execution of trades.

Standard VI(B) Priority of Transactions



Investment transactions for clients and employers must have priority over investment transactions in which a Member or Candidate is the beneficial owner.

Guidance

Highlights:

- *Avoiding Potential Conflicts*
- *Personal Trading Secondary to Trading for Clients*
- *Standards for Nonpublic Information*
- *Impact on All Accounts with Beneficial Ownership*

Standard VI(B) reinforces the responsibility of members and candidates to give the interests of their clients and employers priority over their personal financial interests. This standard is designed to prevent any potential conflict of interest or the appearance of a conflict of interest with respect to personal transactions. Client interests have priority. Client transactions must take precedence over transactions made on behalf of the member's or candidate's firm or personal transactions.

Avoiding Potential Conflicts

Conflicts between the client's interest and an investment professional's personal interest may occur. Although conflicts of interest exist, nothing is inherently unethical about individual managers, advisers, or mutual fund employees making money from personal investments as long as (1) the client is not disadvantaged by the trade, (2) the investment professional does not benefit personally from trades undertaken for clients, and (3) the investment professional complies with applicable regulatory requirements.

Some situations occur where a member or candidate may need to enter a personal transaction that runs counter to current recommendations or what the portfolio manager is doing for client portfolios. For example, a member or candidate may be required at some point to sell an asset to make a college tuition payment or a down payment on a home, to meet a margin call, or so on. The sale may be contrary to the long-term advice the member or candidate is currently providing to clients. In these situations, the same three criteria given in the preceding paragraph should be applied in the transaction so as to not violate Standard VI(B).

Personal Trading Secondary to Trading for Clients

Standard VI(B) states that transactions for clients and employers must have priority over transactions in securities or other investments for which a member or candidate is the beneficial owner. The objective of the standard is to prevent personal transactions from adversely affecting the interests of clients or employers. A member or candidate having the same investment positions or being co-invested with clients does not always create a conflict. Some clients in certain investment situations require members or candidates to have aligned interests. Personal investment positions or transactions of members or candidates or their firm should never, however, adversely affect client investments.

Standards for Nonpublic Information

Standard VI(B) covers the activities of members and candidates who have knowledge of pending transactions that may be made on behalf of their clients or employers, who have access to nonpublic information during the normal preparation of research recommendations, or who take investment actions. Members and candidates are prohibited from conveying nonpublic information to any person whose relationship to the member or candidate makes the member or candidate a beneficial owner of the person's securities. Members and candidates must not convey this information to any other person if the nonpublic information can be deemed material.

Impact on All Accounts with Beneficial Ownership

Members or candidates may undertake transactions in accounts for which they are a beneficial owner only after their clients and employers have had adequate opportunity to act on a recommendation. Personal transactions include those made for the member's or candidate's own account, for family (including spouse, children, and other immediate family members) accounts, and for accounts in which the member or candidate has a direct or indirect pecuniary interest, such as a trust or retirement account. Family accounts that are client accounts should be treated like any other firm account and should neither be given special treatment nor be disadvantaged because of the family relationship. If a member or candidate has a beneficial ownership in the account, however, the member or candidate may be subject to preclearance or reporting requirements of the employer or applicable law.

Recommended Procedures for Compliance

Policies and procedures designed to prevent potential conflicts of interest, and even the appearance of a conflict of interest, with respect to personal transactions are critical to establishing investor confidence in the securities industry. Therefore, members and candidates should urge their firms to establish such policies and procedures. Because investment firms vary greatly in assets under management, types of clients, number of employees, and so on, each firm should have policies regarding personal investing that are best suited to the firm. Members and candidates should then prominently disclose these policies to clients and prospective clients.

The specific provisions of each firm's standards will vary, but all firms should adopt certain basic procedures to address the conflict areas created by personal investing. These procedures include the following:

- ***Limited participation in equity IPOs:*** Some eagerly awaited IPOs rise significantly in value shortly after the issue is brought to market. Because the new issue may be highly attractive and sought after, the opportunity to participate in the IPO may be limited. Therefore, purchases of IPOs by investment personnel create conflicts of interest in two principal ways. First, participation in an IPO may have the appearance of taking away an attractive investment opportunity from clients for personal gain—a clear breach of the duty of loyalty to clients. Second, personal purchases in IPOs may have the appearance that the investment opportunity is being bestowed as an incentive to make future investment decisions for the benefit of the party providing the opportunity. Members and candidates can avoid these conflicts or appearances of conflicts of interest by not participating in IPOs.

Reliable and systematic review procedures should be established to ensure that conflicts relating to IPOs are identified and appropriately dealt with by supervisors. Members and candidates should preclear their participation in IPOs, even in situations without any conflict of interest between a member's or candidate's participation in an IPO and the client's interests. Members and

candidates should not benefit from the position that their clients occupy in the marketplace—through preferred trading, the allocation of limited offerings, or oversubscription.

- *Restrictions on private placements:* Strict limits should be placed on investment personnel acquiring securities in private placements, and appropriate supervisory and review procedures should be established to prevent noncompliance.

Firms do not routinely use private placements for clients (e.g., venture capital deals) because of the high risk associated with them. Conflicts related to private placements are more significant to members and candidates who manage large pools of assets or act as plan sponsors because these managers may be offered special opportunities, such as private placements, as a reward or an enticement for continuing to do business with a particular broker.

Participation in private placements raises conflict-of-interest issues that are similar to issues surrounding IPOs. Investment personnel should not be involved in transactions, including (but not limited to) private placements, that could be perceived as favors or gifts that seem designed to influence future judgment or to reward past business deals.

Whether the venture eventually proves to be good or bad, managers have an immediate conflict concerning private placement opportunities. If and when the investments go public, participants in private placements have an incentive to recommend the investments to clients regardless of the suitability of the investments for their clients. Doing so increases the value of the participants' personal portfolios.

- *Establish blackout/restricted periods:* Investment personnel involved in the investment decision-making process should establish blackout periods prior to trades for clients so that managers cannot take advantage of their knowledge of client activity by “front-running” client trades (trading for one’s personal account before trading for client accounts).

Individual firms must decide who within the firm should be required to comply with the trading restrictions. At a minimum, all individuals who are involved in the investment decision-making process should be subject to the same restricted period. Each firm must determine specific requirements related to blackout and restricted periods that are most relevant to the firm while ensuring that the procedures are governed by the guiding principles set forth in the Code and Standards. Size of firm and type of securities purchased are relevant factors. For example, in a large firm, a blackout requirement is, in effect, a total trading ban because the firm is continually trading in most securities. In a small firm, the blackout period is more likely to prevent the investment manager from front-running.

- *Reporting requirements:* Supervisors should establish reporting procedures for investment personnel, including disclosure of personal holdings/beneficial ownerships, confirmations of trades to the firm and the employee, and preclearance procedures. Once trading restrictions are in place, they must be enforced. The best method for monitoring and enforcing procedures to eliminate conflicts of interest in personal trading is through reporting requirements, including the following:

- **Disclosure of holdings in which the employee has a beneficial interest.** Disclosure by investment personnel to the firm should be made upon commencement of the employment relationship and at least annually thereafter. To address privacy considerations, disclosure of personal holdings should be handled in a confidential manner by the firm.

- **Providing duplicate confirmations of transactions.** Investment personnel should be required to direct their brokers to supply to firms duplicate copies or confirmations of all their personal securities transactions and copies of periodic statements for all securities accounts. The duplicate confirmation requirement has two purposes: (1) The requirement sends a message that there is independent verification, which reduces the likelihood of unethical behavior, and (2) it enables verification of the accounting of the flow of personal investments that cannot be determined from merely looking at holdings.
- **Preclearance procedures.** Investment personnel should examine all planned personal trades to identify possible conflicts prior to the execution of the trades. Preclearance procedures are designed to identify possible conflicts before a problem arises.
- *Disclosure of policies:* Members and candidates should fully disclose to investors their firm’s policies regarding personal investing. The information about employees’ personal investment activities and policies will foster an atmosphere of full and complete disclosure and calm the public’s legitimate concerns about the conflicts of interest posed by investment personnel’s personal trading. The disclosure must provide helpful information to investors; it should not be simply boilerplate language, such as “investment personnel are subject to policies and procedures regarding their personal trading.”

Application of the Standard

Example 1 (Personal Trading):

Research analyst Marlon Long does not recommend purchase of a common stock for his employer’s account because he wants to purchase the stock personally and does not want to wait until the recommendation is approved and the stock is purchased by his employer.

Comment: Long has violated Standard VI(B) by taking advantage of his knowledge of the stock’s value before allowing his employer to benefit from that information.

Example 2 (Trading for Family Member Account):

Carol Baker, the portfolio manager of an aggressive growth mutual fund, maintains an account in her husband’s name at several brokerage firms with which the fund and a number of Baker’s other individual clients do a substantial amount of business. Whenever a hot issue becomes available, she instructs the brokers to buy it for her husband’s account. Because such issues normally are scarce, Baker often acquires shares in hot issues but her clients are not able to participate in them.

Comment: To avoid violating Standard VI(B), Baker must acquire shares for her mutual fund first and acquire them for her husband’s account only after doing so, even though she might miss out on participating in new issues via her husband’s account. She also must disclose the trading for her husband’s account to her employer because this activity creates a conflict between her personal interests and her employer’s interests.

Example 3 (Family Accounts as Equals):

Erin Toffler, a portfolio manager at Esposito Investments, manages the retirement account established with the firm by her parents. Whenever IPOs become available, she first allocates shares to all her other clients for whom the investment is appropriate; only then does she place any remaining portion in her parents' account, if the issue is appropriate for them. She has adopted this procedure so that no one can accuse her of favoring her parents.

Comment: Toffler has violated Standard VI(B) by breaching her duty to her parents by treating them differently from her other accounts simply because of the family relationship. As fee-paying clients of Esposito Investments, Toffler's parents are entitled to the same treatment as any other client of the firm. If Toffler has beneficial ownership in the account, however, and Esposito Investments has preclearance and reporting requirements for personal transactions, she may have to preclear the trades and report the transactions to Esposito.

Example 4 (Personal Trading and Disclosure):

Gary Michaels is an entry-level employee who holds a low-paying job serving both the research department and the investment management department of an active investment management firm. He purchases a sports car and begins to wear expensive clothes after only a year of employment with the firm. The director of the investment management department, who has responsibility for monitoring the personal stock transactions of all employees, investigates and discovers that Michaels has made substantial investment gains by purchasing stocks just before they were put on the firm's recommended "buy" list. Michaels was regularly given the firm's quarterly personal transaction form but declined to complete it.

Comment: Michaels violated Standard VI(B) by placing personal transactions ahead of client transactions. In addition, his supervisor violated Standard IV(C)—Responsibilities of Supervisors by permitting Michaels to continue to perform his assigned tasks without having signed the quarterly personal transaction form. Note also that if Michaels had communicated information about the firm's recommendations to a person who traded the security, that action would be a misappropriation of the information and a violation of Standard II(A)—Material Nonpublic Information.


Example 5 (Trading Prior to Report Dissemination):

A brokerage's insurance analyst, Denise Wilson, makes a closed-circuit TV report to her firm's branches around the country. During the broadcast, she includes negative comments about a major company in the insurance industry. The following day, Wilson's report is printed and distributed to the sales force and public customers. The report recommends that both short-term traders and intermediate investors take profits by selling that insurance company's stock. Seven minutes after the broadcast, however, Ellen Riley, head of the firm's trading department, had closed out a long "call" position in the stock. Shortly thereafter, Riley established a sizable "put" position in the stock. When asked about her activities, Riley claimed she took the actions to facilitate anticipated sales by institutional clients.

Comment: Riley did not give customers an opportunity to buy or sell in the options market before the firm itself did. By taking action before the report was disseminated, Riley's firm may have depressed the price of the calls and increased the price of the puts. The firm could have avoided a conflict

of interest if it had waited to trade for its own account until its clients had an opportunity to receive and assimilate Wilson's recommendations. As it is, Riley's actions violated Standard VI(B).

Standard VI(C) Referral Fees



Members and Candidates must disclose to their employer, clients, and prospective clients, as appropriate, any compensation, consideration, or benefit received from or paid to others for the recommendation of products or services.

Guidance

Standard VI(C) states the responsibility of members and candidates to inform their employer, clients, and prospective clients of any benefit received for referrals of customers and clients. Such disclosures allow clients or employers to evaluate (1) any partiality shown in any recommendation of services and (2) the full cost of the services. Members and candidates must disclose when they pay a fee or provide compensation to others who have referred prospective clients to the member or candidate.

Appropriate disclosure means that members and candidates must advise the client or prospective client, before entry into any formal agreement for services, of any benefit given or received for the recommendation of any services provided by the member or candidate. In addition, the member or candidate must disclose the nature of the consideration or benefit—for example, flat fee or percentage basis, one-time or continuing benefit, based on performance, benefit in the form of provision of research or other noncash benefit—together with the estimated dollar value. Consideration includes all fees, whether paid in cash, in soft dollars, or in kind.

Recommended Procedures for Compliance

Members and candidates should encourage their employers to develop procedures related to referral fees. The firm may completely restrict such fees. If the firm does not adopt a strict prohibition of such fees, the procedures should indicate the appropriate steps for requesting approval.

Employers should have investment professionals provide to the clients notification of approved referral fee programs and provide the employer regular (at least quarterly) updates on the amount and nature of compensation received.

Application of the Standard

Example 1 (Disclosure of Referral Arrangements and Outside Parties):

Brady Securities, Inc., a broker/dealer, has established a referral arrangement with Lewis Brothers, Ltd., an investment counseling firm. In this arrangement, Brady Securities refers all prospective tax-exempt accounts, including pension, profit-sharing, and endowment accounts, to Lewis Brothers. In return, Lewis Brothers makes available to Brady Securities on a regular basis the security recommendations and reports of its research staff, which registered representatives of Brady Securities use in serving customers. In addition, Lewis Brothers conducts monthly economic and market reviews for Brady Securities personnel and directs all stock commission business generated by referral accounts to Brady Securities.

Willard White, a partner in Lewis Brothers, calculates that the incremental costs involved in functioning as the research department of Brady Securities are US\$20,000 annually.

Referrals from Brady Securities last year resulted in fee income of US\$200,000 for Lewis Brothers, and directing all stock trades through Brady Securities resulted in additional costs to Lewis Brothers' clients of US\$10,000.

Diane Branch, the chief financial officer of Maxwell Inc., contacts White and says that she is seeking an investment manager for Maxwell's profit-sharing plan. She adds, "My friend Harold Hill at Brady Securities recommended your firm without qualification, and that's good enough for me. Do we have a deal?" White accepts the new account but does not disclose his firm's referral arrangement with Brady Securities.

Comment: White has violated Standard VI(C) by failing to inform the prospective customer of the referral fee payable in services and commissions for an indefinite period to Brady Securities. Such disclosure could have caused Branch to reassess Hill's recommendation and make a more critical evaluation of Lewis Brothers' services.

Example 2 (Disclosure of Interdepartmental Referral Arrangements):

James Handley works for the trust department of Central Trust Bank. He receives compensation for each referral he makes to Central Trust's brokerage department and personal financial management department that results in a sale. He refers several of his clients to the personal financial management department but does not disclose the arrangement within Central Trust to his clients.

Comment: Handley has violated Standard VI(C) by not disclosing the referral arrangement at Central Trust Bank to his clients. Standard VI(C) does not distinguish between referral payments paid by a third party for referring clients to the third party and internal payments paid within the firm to attract new business to a subsidiary. Members and candidates must disclose all such referral fees. Therefore, Handley is required to disclose, at the time of referral, any referral fee agreement in place among Central Trust Bank's departments. The disclosure should include the nature and the value of the benefit and should be made in writing.

Example 3 (Disclosure of Referral Arrangements and Informing Firm):

Katherine Roberts is a portfolio manager at Katama Investments, an advisory firm specializing in managing assets for high-net-worth individuals. Katama's trading desk uses a variety of brokerage houses to execute trades on behalf of its clients. Roberts asks the trading desk to direct a large portion of its commissions to Naushon, Inc., a small broker/dealer run by one of Roberts' business school classmates. Katama's traders have found that Naushon is not very competitive on pricing, and although Naushon generates some research for its trading clients, Katama's other analysts have found most of Naushon's research to be not especially useful. Nevertheless, the traders do as Roberts asks, and in return for receiving a large portion of Katama's business, Naushon recommends the investment services of Roberts and Katama to its wealthiest clients. This arrangement is not disclosed to either Katama or the clients referred by Naushon.

Comment: Roberts is violating Standard VI(C) by failing to inform her employer of the referral arrangement.

Example 4 (Disclosure of Referral Arrangements and Outside Organizations):

Alex Burl is a portfolio manager at Helpful Investments, a local investment advisory firm. Burl is on the advisory board of his child's school, which is looking for ways to raise money to purchase new playground equipment for the school. Burl discusses a plan with his supervisor in which he will donate to the school a portion of his service fee from new clients referred by the parents of students at the school. Upon getting the approval from Helpful, Burl presents the idea to the school's advisory board and directors. The school agrees to announce the program at the next parent event and asks Burl to provide the appropriate written materials to be distributed. A week following the distribution of the flyers, Burl receives the first school-related referral. In establishing the client's investment policy statement, Burl clearly discusses the school's referral and outlines the plans for distributing the donation back to the school.

Comment: Burl has not violated Standard VI(C) because he secured the permission of his employer, Helpful Investments, and the school prior to beginning the program and because he discussed the arrangement with the client at the time the investment policy statement was designed.

Example 5 (Disclosure of Referral Arrangements and Outside Parties):

The sponsor of a state employee pension is seeking to hire a firm to manage the pension plan's emerging market allocation. To assist in the review process, the sponsor has hired Thomas Arrow as a consultant to solicit proposals from various advisers. Arrow is contracted by the sponsor to represent its best interest in selecting the most appropriate new manager. The process runs smoothly, and Overseas Investments is selected as the new manager.

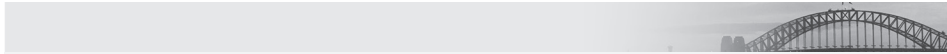
The following year, news breaks that Arrow is under investigation by the local regulator for accepting kickbacks from investment managers after they are awarded new pension allocations. Overseas Investments is included in the list of firms allegedly making these payments. Although the sponsor is happy with the performance of Overseas since it has been managing the pension plan's emerging market funds, the sponsor still decides to have an independent review of the proposals and the selection process to ensure that Overseas was the appropriate firm for its needs. This review confirms that, even though Arrow was being paid by both parties, the recommendation of Overseas appeared to be objective and appropriate.

Comment: Arrow has violated Standard VI(C) because he did not disclose the fee being paid by Overseas. Withholding this information raises the question of a potential lack of objectivity in the recommendation of Overseas by Arrow; this aspect is in addition to questions about the legality of having firms pay to be considered for an allocation.

Regulators and governmental agencies may adopt requirements concerning allowable consultant activities. Local regulations sometimes include having a consultant register with the regulatory agency's ethics board. Regulator policies may include a prohibition on acceptance of payments from investment managers receiving allocations and require regular reporting of contributions made to political organizations and candidates. Arrow would have to adhere to these requirements as well as the Code and Standards.

STANDARD VII: RESPONSIBILITIES AS A CFA INSTITUTE MEMBER OR CFA CANDIDATE

Standard VII(A) Conduct as Participants in CFA Institute Programs



Members and Candidates must not engage in any conduct that compromises the reputation or integrity of CFA Institute or the CFA designation or the integrity, validity, or security of CFA Institute programs.

Guidance

Highlights:

- *Confidential Program Information*
- *Additional CFA Program Restrictions*
- *Expressing an Opinion*

Standard VII(A) covers the conduct of CFA Institute members and candidates involved with the CFA Program and prohibits any conduct that undermines the public's confidence that the CFA charter represents a level of achievement based on merit and ethical conduct. There is an array of CFA Institute programs beyond the CFA Program that provide additional educational and credentialing opportunities, including the Certificate in Investment Performance Measurement (CIPM) Program and the CFA Institute Investment Foundations™ Program. The standard's function is to hold members and candidates to a high ethical criterion while they are participating in or involved with any CFA Institute program. Conduct covered includes but is not limited to

- giving or receiving assistance (cheating) on any CFA Institute examinations;
- violating the rules, regulations, and testing policies of CFA Institute programs;
- providing confidential program or exam information to candidates or the public;
- disregarding or attempting to circumvent security measures established for any CFA Institute examinations;
- improperly using an association with CFA Institute to further personal or professional goals; and
- misrepresenting information on the Professional Conduct Statement or in the CFA Institute Continuing Education Program.

Confidential Program Information

CFA Institute is vigilant about protecting the integrity of CFA Institute programs' content and examination processes. CFA Institute program rules, regulations, and policies prohibit candidates from disclosing confidential material gained during the exam process.

Examples of information that cannot be disclosed by candidates sitting for an exam include but are not limited to

- specific details of questions appearing on the exam and
- broad topical areas and formulas tested or not tested on the exam.

All aspects of the exam, including questions, broad topical areas, and formulas, tested or not tested, are considered confidential until such time as CFA Institute elects to release them publicly. This confidentiality requirement allows CFA Institute to maintain the integrity and rigor of exams for future candidates. Standard VII(A) does not prohibit candidates from discussing nonconfidential information or curriculum material with others or in study groups in preparation for the exam.

Candidates increasingly use online forums and new technology as part of their exam preparations. CFA Institute actively polices blogs, forums, and related social networking groups for information considered confidential. The organization works with both individual candidates and the sponsors of online or offline services to promptly remove any and all violations. As noted in the discussion of Standard I(A)—Knowledge of the Law, candidates, members, and the public are encouraged to report suspected violations to CFA Institute.

Additional CFA Program Restrictions

The CFA Program rules, regulations, and policies define additional allowed and disallowed actions concerning the exams. Violating any of the testing policies, such as the calculator policy, personal belongings policy, or the Candidate Pledge, constitutes a violation of Standard VII(A). Candidates will find all of these policies on the CFA Program portion of the CFA Institute website (www.cfainstitute.org). Exhibit 2 provides the Candidate Pledge, which highlights the respect candidates must have for the integrity, validity, and security of the CFA exam.

Members may participate as volunteers in various aspects of the CFA Program. Standard VII(A) prohibits members from disclosing and/or soliciting confidential material gained prior to or during the exam and grading processes with those outside the CFA exam development process.

Examples of information that cannot be shared by members involved in developing, administering, or grading the exams include but are not limited to

- questions appearing on the exam or under consideration,
- deliberation related to the exam process, and
- information related to the scoring of questions.

Members may also be asked to offer assistance with other CFA Institute programs, including but not limited to the CIPM and Investment Foundations programs. Members participating in any CFA Institute program should do so with the same level of integrity and confidentiality as is required of participation in the CFA Program.

Expressing an Opinion

Standard VII(A) does *not* cover expressing opinions regarding CFA Institute, the CFA Program, or other CFA Institute programs. Members and candidates are free to disagree and express their disagreement with CFA Institute on its policies, its procedures, or any advocacy positions taken by the organization. When expressing a personal opinion, a candidate is prohibited from disclosing content-specific information, including any actual exam question and the information as to subject matter covered or not covered in the exam.

Exhibit 2 Sample of CFA Program Testing Policies

Candidate Pledge	<p>As a candidate in the CFA Program, I am obligated to follow Standard VII(A) of the CFA Institute Standards of Professional Conduct, which states that members and candidates must not engage in any conduct that compromises the reputation or integrity of CFA Institute or the CFA designation or the integrity, validity, or security of the CFA exam.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Prior to this exam, I have not given or received information regarding the content of this exam. During this exam, I will not give or receive any information regarding the content of this exam. ■ After this exam, I will not disclose ANY portion of this exam and I will not remove ANY exam materials from the testing room in original or copied form. I understand that all exam materials, including my answers, are the property of CFA Institute and will not be returned to me in any form. ■ I will follow ALL rules of the CFA Program as stated on the CFA Institute website and the back cover of the exam book. My violation of any rules of the CFA Program will result in CFA Institute voiding my exam results and may lead to suspension or termination of my candidacy in the CFA Program.
------------------	---

Application of the Standard**Example 1 (Sharing Exam Questions):**

Travis Nero serves as a proctor for the administration of the CFA examination in his city. In the course of his service, he reviews a copy of the Level II exam on the evening prior to the exam's administration and provides information concerning the exam questions to two candidates who use it to prepare for the exam.

Comment: Nero and the two candidates have violated Standard VII(A). By giving information about the exam questions to two candidates, Nero provided an unfair advantage to the two candidates and undermined the integrity and validity of the Level II exam as an accurate measure of the knowledge, skills, and abilities necessary to earn the right to use the CFA designation. By accepting the information, the candidates also compromised the integrity and validity of the Level II exam and undermined the ethical framework that is a key part of the designation.

Example 2 (Bringing Written Material into Exam Room):

Loren Sullivan is enrolled to take the Level II CFA examination. He has been having difficulty remembering a particular formula, so prior to entering the exam room, he writes the formula on the palm of his hand. During the afternoon section of the exam, a proctor notices Sullivan looking at the palm of his hand. She asks to see his hand and finds the formula.

Comment: Because Sullivan wrote down information from the Candidate Body of Knowledge (CBOK) and took that written information into the exam room, his conduct compromised the validity of his exam performance and violated Standard VII(A). Sullivan's conduct was also in direct contradiction with the rules and regulations of the CFA Program, the Candidate Pledge, and the CFA Institute Code and Standards.

Example 3 (Writing after Exam Period End):

At the conclusion of the morning section of the Level I CFA examination, the proctors announce, “Stop writing now.” John Davis has not completed the exam, so he continues to randomly fill in ovals on his answer sheet. A proctor approaches Davis’s desk and reminds him that he should stop writing immediately. Davis, however, continues to complete the answer sheet. After the proctor asks him to stop writing two additional times, Davis finally puts down his pencil.

Comment: By continuing to complete his exam after time was called, Davis has violated Standard VII(A). By continuing to write, Davis took an unfair advantage over other candidates, and his conduct compromised the validity of his exam performance. Additionally, by not heeding the proctor’s repeated instructions, Davis violated the rules and regulations of the CFA Program.

Example 4 (Sharing Exam Content):

After completing Level II of the CFA exam, Annabelle Rossi posts on her blog about her experience. She posts the following: “Level II is complete! I think I did fairly well on the exam. It was really difficult, but fair. I think I did especially well on the derivatives questions. And there were tons of them! I think I counted 18! The ethics questions were really hard. I’m glad I spent so much time on the Code and Standards. I was surprised to see there were no questions at all about IPO allocations. I expected there to be a couple. Well, off to celebrate getting through it. See you tonight?”

Comment: Rossi did not violate Standard VII(A) when she wrote about how difficult she found the exam or how well she thinks she may have done. By revealing portions of the CBOK covered on the exam and areas not covered, however, she did violate Standard VII(A) and the Candidate Pledge. Depending on the time frame in which the comments were posted, Rossi not only may have assisted future candidates but also may have provided an unfair advantage to candidates yet to sit for the same exam, thereby undermining the integrity and validity of the Level II exam.

Example 5 (Sharing Exam Content):

Level I candidate Etienne Gagne has been a frequent visitor to an internet forum designed specifically for CFA Program candidates. The week after completing the Level I examination, Gagne and several others begin a discussion thread on the forum about the most challenging questions and attempt to determine the correct answers.

Comment: Gagne has violated Standard VII(A) by providing and soliciting confidential exam information, which compromises the integrity of the exam process and violates the Candidate Pledge. In trying to determine correct answers to specific questions, the group’s discussion included question-specific details considered to be confidential to the CFA Program.

Example 6 (Sharing Exam Content):

CFA4Sure is a company that produces test-preparation materials for CFA Program candidates. Many candidates register for and use the company’s products. The day after the CFA examination, CFA4Sure sends an e-mail to all its customers asking them to share with the company the hardest questions from the exam so that CFA4Sure can better prepare its customers for the next exam administration. Marisol Pena e-mails a summary of the questions she found most difficult on the exam.

Comment: Pena has violated Standard VII(A) by disclosing a portion of the exam questions. The information provided is considered confidential until publicly released by CFA Institute. CFA4Sure is likely to use such feedback to refine its review materials for future candidates. Pena's sharing of the specific questions undermines the integrity of the exam while potentially making the exam easier for future candidates.

If the CFA4Sure employees who participated in the solicitation of confidential CFA Program information are CFA Institute members or candidates, they also have violated Standard VII(A).

Example 7 (Discussion of Exam Grading Guidelines and Results):

Prior to participating in grading CFA examinations, Wesley Whitcomb is required to sign a CFA Institute Grader Agreement. As part of the Grader Agreement, Whitcomb agrees not to reveal or discuss the exam materials with anyone except CFA Institute staff or other graders. Several weeks after the conclusion of the CFA exam grading, Whitcomb tells several colleagues who are candidates in the CFA Program which question he graded. He also discusses the guideline answer and adds that few candidates scored well on the question.

Comment: Whitcomb violated Standard VII(A) by breaking the Grader Agreement and disclosing information related to a specific question on the exam, which compromised the integrity of the exam process.

Example 8 (Compromising CFA Institute Integrity as a Volunteer):

Jose Ramirez is an investor-relations consultant for several small companies that are seeking greater exposure to investors. He is also the program chair for the CFA Institute society in the city where he works. Ramirez schedules only companies that are his clients to make presentations to the society and excludes other companies.


Comment: Ramirez, by using his volunteer position at CFA Institute to benefit himself and his clients, compromises the reputation and integrity of CFA Institute and thus violates Standard VII(A).

Example 9 (Compromising CFA Institute Integrity as a Volunteer):

Marguerite Warrenski is a member of the CFA Institute GIPS Executive Committee, which oversees the creation, implementation, and revision of the GIPS standards. As a member of the Executive Committee, she has advance knowledge of confidential information regarding the GIPS standards, including any new or revised standards the committee is considering. She tells her clients that her Executive Committee membership will allow her to better assist her clients in keeping up with changes to the Standards and facilitating their compliance with the changes.

Comment: Warrenski is using her association with the GIPS Executive Committee to promote her firm's services to clients and potential clients. In defining her volunteer position at CFA Institute as a strategic business advantage over competing firms and implying to clients that she would use confidential information to further their interests, Warrenski is compromising the reputation and integrity of CFA Institute and thus violating Standard VII(A). She may factually state her involvement with the Executive Committee but cannot infer any special advantage to her clients from such participation.

Standard VII(B) Reference to CFA Institute, the CFA Designation, and the CFA Program



When referring to CFA Institute, CFA Institute membership, the CFA designation, or candidacy in the CFA Program, Members and Candidates must not misrepresent or exaggerate the meaning or implications of membership in CFA Institute, holding the CFA designation, or candidacy in the CFA Program.

Guidance

Highlights:

- *CFA Institute Membership*
- *Using the CFA Designation*
- *Referring to Candidacy in the CFA Program*

Standard VII(B) is intended to prevent promotional efforts that make promises or guarantees that are tied to the CFA designation. Individuals must not exaggerate the meaning or implications of membership in CFA Institute, holding the CFA designation, or candidacy in the CFA Program.

Standard VII(B) is not intended to prohibit factual statements related to the positive benefit of earning the CFA designation. However, statements referring to CFA Institute, the CFA designation, or the CFA Program that overstate the competency of an individual or imply, either directly or indirectly, that superior performance can be expected from someone with the CFA designation are not allowed under the standard.

Statements that highlight or emphasize the commitment of CFA Institute members, CFA charterholders, and CFA candidates to ethical and professional conduct or mention the thoroughness and rigor of the CFA Program are appropriate. Members and candidates may make claims about the relative merits of CFA Institute, the CFA Program, or the Code and Standards as long as those statements are implicitly or explicitly stated as the opinion of the speaker. Statements that do not express opinions have to be supported by facts.

Standard VII(B) applies to any form of communication, including but not limited to communications made in electronic or written form (such as on firm letterhead, business cards, professional biographies, directory listings, printed advertising, firm brochures, or personal resumes) and oral statements made to the public, clients, or prospects.

CFA Institute Membership

The term “CFA Institute member” refers to “regular” and “affiliate” members of CFA Institute who have met the membership requirements as defined in the CFA Institute Bylaws. Once accepted as a CFA Institute member, the member must satisfy the following requirements to maintain his or her status:

- remit annually to CFA Institute a completed Professional Conduct Statement, which renews the commitment to abide by the requirements of the Code and Standards and the CFA Institute Professional Conduct Program, and
- pay applicable CFA Institute membership dues on an annual basis.

If a CFA Institute member fails to meet any of these requirements, the individual is no longer considered an active member. Until membership is reactivated, individuals must not present themselves to others as active members. They may state, however, that they were CFA Institute members in the past or refer to the years when their membership was active.

Using the CFA Designation

Those who have earned the right to use the Chartered Financial Analyst designation are encouraged to do so but only in a manner that does not misrepresent or exaggerate the meaning or implications of the designation. The use of the designation may be accompanied by an accurate explanation of the requirements that have been met to earn the right to use the designation.

“CFA charterholders” are those individuals who have earned the right to use the CFA designation granted by CFA Institute. These people have satisfied certain requirements, including completion of the CFA Program and required years of acceptable work experience. Once granted the right to use the designation, individuals must also satisfy the CFA Institute membership requirements (see above) to maintain their right to use the designation.

If a CFA charterholder fails to meet any of the membership requirements, he or she forfeits the right to use the CFA designation. Until membership is reactivated, individuals must not present themselves to others as CFA charterholders. They may state, however, that they were charterholders in the past.

Given the growing popularity of social media, where individuals may anonymously express their opinions, pseudonyms or online profile names created to hide a member’s identity should not be tagged with the CFA designation.

Use of the CFA designation by a CFA charterholder is governed by the terms and conditions of the annual Professional Conduct Statement Agreement, entered into between CFA Institute and its membership prior to commencement of use of the CFA designation and reaffirmed annually.

Referring to Candidacy in the CFA Program

Candidates in the CFA Program may refer to their participation in the CFA Program, but such references must clearly state that an individual is a *candidate* in the CFA Program and must not imply that the candidate has achieved any type of partial designation. A person is a candidate in the CFA Program if

- the person’s application for registration in the CFA Program has been accepted by CFA Institute, as evidenced by issuance of a notice of acceptance, and the person is enrolled to sit for a specified examination or
- the registered person has sat for a specified examination but exam results have not yet been received.

If an individual is registered for the CFA Program but declines to sit for an exam or otherwise does not meet the definition of a candidate as described in the CFA Institute Bylaws, then that individual is no longer considered an active candidate. Once the person is enrolled to sit for a future examination, his or her CFA Program candidacy resumes.

CFA Program candidates must never state or imply that they have a partial designation as a result of passing one or more levels or cite an expected completion date of any level of the CFA Program. Final award of the charter is subject to meeting the CFA Program requirements and approval by the CFA Institute Board of Governors.

If a candidate passes each level of the exam in consecutive years and wants to state that he or she did so, that is not a violation of Standard VII(B) because it is a statement of fact. If the candidate then goes on to claim or imply superior ability by obtaining the designation in only three years, however, he or she is in violation of Standard VII(B).

Exhibit 3 provides examples of proper and improper references to the CFA designation.

Exhibit 3 Proper and Improper References to the CFA Designation

Proper References	Improper References
“Completion of the CFA Program has enhanced my portfolio management skills.”	“CFA charterholders achieve better performance results.”
“John Smith passed all three CFA Program examinations in three consecutive years.”	“John Smith is among the elite, having passed all three CFA examinations in three consecutive attempts.”
“The CFA designation is globally recognized and attests to a charterholder’s success in a rigorous and comprehensive study program in the field of investment management and research analysis.”	“As a CFA charterholder, I am the most qualified to manage client investments.”
“The credibility that the CFA designation affords and the skills the CFA Program cultivates are key assets for my future career development.”	“As a CFA charterholder, Jane White provides the best value in trade execution.”
“I enrolled in the CFA Program to obtain the highest set of credentials in the global investment management industry.”	“Enrolling as a candidate in the CFA Program ensures one of becoming better at valuing debt securities.”
“I passed Level I of the CFA Program.”	“CFA, Level II”
“I am a 2010 Level III candidate in the CFA Program.”	“CFA, Expected 2011”
“I passed all three levels of the CFA Program and may be eligible for the CFA charter upon completion of the required work experience.”	“CFA, Expected 2011” “John Smith, Charter Pending”

Recommended Procedures for Compliance

Misuse of a member’s CFA designation or CFA candidacy or improper reference to it is common by those in a member’s or candidate’s firm who do not possess knowledge of the requirements of Standard VII(B). As an appropriate step to reduce this risk, members and candidates should disseminate written information about Standard VII(B) and the accompanying guidance to their firm’s legal, compliance, public relations, and marketing departments (see www.cfainstitute.org).

For materials that refer to employees’ affiliation with CFA Institute, members and candidates should encourage their firms to create templates that are approved by a central authority (such as the compliance department) as being consistent with Standard VII(B). This practice promotes consistency and accuracy in the firm of references to CFA Institute membership, the CFA designation, and CFA candidacy.

Application of the Standard

Example 1 (Passing Exams in Consecutive Years):

An advertisement for AZ Investment Advisors states that all the firm's principals are CFA charterholders and all passed the three examinations on their first attempt. The advertisement prominently links this fact to the notion that AZ's mutual funds have achieved superior performance.

Comment: AZ may state that all principals passed the three examinations on the first try as long as this statement is true, but it must not be linked to performance or imply superior ability. Implying that (1) CFA charterholders achieve better investment results and (2) those who pass the exams on the first try may be more successful than those who do not violates Standard VII(B).

Example 2 (Right to Use CFA Designation):

Five years after receiving his CFA charter, Louis Vasseur resigns his position as an investment analyst and spends the next two years traveling abroad. Because he is not actively engaged in the investment profession, he does not file a completed Professional Conduct Statement with CFA Institute and does not pay his CFA Institute membership dues. At the conclusion of his travels, Vasseur becomes a self-employed analyst accepting assignments as an independent contractor. Without reinstating his CFA Institute membership by filing his Professional Conduct Statement and paying his dues, he prints business cards that display "CFA" after his name.

Comment: Vasseur has violated Standard VII(B) because his right to use the CFA designation was suspended when he failed to file his Professional Conduct Statement and stopped paying dues. Therefore, he no longer is able to state or imply that he is an active CFA charterholder. When Vasseur files his Professional Conduct Statement, resumes paying CFA Institute dues to activate his membership, and completes the CFA Institute reinstatement procedures, he will be eligible to use the CFA designation.

Example 3 ("Retired" CFA Institute Membership Status):

After a 25-year career, James Simpson retires from his firm. Because he is not actively engaged in the investment profession, he does not file a completed Professional Conduct Statement with CFA Institute and does not pay his CFA Institute membership dues. Simpson designs a plain business card (without a corporate logo) to hand out to friends with his new contact details, and he continues to put "CFA" after his name.

Comment: Simpson has violated Standard VII(B). Because he failed to file his Professional Conduct Statement and ceased paying dues, his membership has been suspended and he has given up the right to use the CFA designation. CFA Institute has procedures, however, for reclassifying a member and charterholder as "retired" and reducing the annual dues. If he wants to obtain retired status, he needs to file the appropriate paperwork with CFA Institute. When Simpson receives his notification from CFA Institute that his membership has been reclassified as retired and he resumes paying reduced dues, his membership will be reactivated and his right to use the CFA designation will be reinstated.

Example 4 (Stating Facts about CFA Designation and Program):

Rhonda Reese has been a CFA charterholder since 2000. In a conversation with a friend who is considering enrolling in the CFA Program, she states that she has learned a great deal from the CFA Program and that many firms require their employees to be CFA charterholders. She would recommend the CFA Program to anyone pursuing a career in investment management.

Comment: Reese's comments comply with Standard VII(B). Her statements refer to facts: The CFA Program enhanced her knowledge, and many firms require the CFA designation for their investment professionals.

Example 5 (Order of Professional and Academic Designations):

Tatiana Prittima has earned both her CFA designation and a PhD in finance. She would like to cite both her accomplishments on her business card but is unsure of the proper method for doing so.

Comment: The order of designations cited on such items as resumes and business cards is a matter of personal preference. Prittima is free to cite the CFA designation either before or after citing her PhD. Multiple designations must be separated by a comma.

Example 6 (Use of Fictitious Name):

Barry Glass is the lead quantitative analyst at CityCenter Hedge Fund. Glass is responsible for the development, maintenance, and enhancement of the proprietary models the fund uses to manage its investors' assets. Glass reads several high-level mathematical publications and blogs to stay informed on current developments. One blog, run by Expert CFA, presents some intriguing research that may benefit one of CityCenter's current models. Glass is under pressure from firm executives to improve the model's predictive abilities, and he incorporates the factors discussed in the online research. The updated output recommends several new investments to the fund's portfolio managers.

Comment: "Expert CFA" has violated Standard VII(B) by using the CFA designation inappropriately. As with any research report, authorship of online comments must include the charterholder's full name along with any reference to the CFA designation.

See also Standard V(A), which Glass has violated for guidance on diligence and reasonable basis.

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

Unless otherwise stated in the question, all individuals in the following questions are CFA Institute members or candidates in the CFA Program and, therefore, are subject to the CFA Institute Code of Ethics and Standards of Professional Conduct.

- 1 Smith, a research analyst with a brokerage firm, decides to change his recommendation for the common stock of Green Company, Inc., from a “buy” to a “sell.” He mails this change in investment advice to all the firm’s clients on Wednesday. The day after the mailing, a client calls with a buy order for 500 shares of Green Company. In this circumstance, Smith should:
 - A Accept the order.
 - B Advise the customer of the change in recommendation before accepting the order.
 - C Not accept the order because it is contrary to the firm’s recommendation.
- 2 Which statement about a manager’s use of client brokerage commissions violates the Code and Standards?
 - A A client may direct a manager to use that client’s brokerage commissions to purchase goods and services for that client.
 - B Client brokerage commissions should be used to benefit the client and should be commensurate with the value of the brokerage and research services received.
 - C Client brokerage commissions may be directed to pay for the investment manager’s operating expenses.
- 3 Jamison is a junior research analyst with Howard & Howard, a brokerage and investment banking firm. Howard & Howard’s mergers and acquisitions department has represented the Britland Company in all of its acquisitions for the past 20 years. Two of Howard & Howard’s senior officers are directors of various Britland subsidiaries. Jamison has been asked to write a research report on Britland. What is the best course of action for her to follow?
 - A Jamison may write the report but must refrain from expressing any opinions because of the special relationships between the two companies.
 - B Jamison should not write the report because the two Howard & Howard officers serve as directors for subsidiaries of Britland.
 - C Jamison may write the report if she discloses the special relationships with the company in the report.
- 4 Which of the following statements clearly *conflicts* with the recommended procedures for compliance presented in the CFA Institute *Standards of Practice Handbook*?
 - A Firms should disclose to clients the personal investing policies and procedures established for their employees.
 - B Prior approval must be obtained for the personal investment transactions of all employees.
 - C For confidentiality reasons, personal transactions and holdings should not be reported to employers unless mandated by regulatory organizations.
- 5 Bronson provides investment advice to the board of trustees of a private university endowment fund. The trustees have provided Bronson with the fund’s financial information, including planned expenditures. Bronson receives a

phone call on Friday afternoon from Murdock, a prominent alumnus, requesting that Bronson fax him comprehensive financial information about the fund. According to Murdock, he has a potential contributor but needs the information that day to close the deal and cannot contact any of the trustees. Based on the CFA Institute Standards, Bronson should:

- A Send Murdock the information because disclosure would benefit the client.
 - B Not send Murdock the information to preserve confidentiality.
 - C Send Murdock the information, provided Bronson promptly notifies the trustees.
- 6 Miller heads the research department of a large brokerage firm. The firm has many analysts, some of whom are subject to the Code and Standards. If Miller delegates some supervisory duties, which statement best describes her responsibilities under the Code and Standards?
- A Miller's supervisory responsibilities do not apply to those subordinates who are not subject to the Code and Standards.
 - B Miller no longer has supervisory responsibility for those duties delegated to her subordinates.
 - C Miller retains supervisory responsibility for all subordinates despite her delegation of some duties.
- 7 Willier is the research analyst responsible for following Company X. All the information he has accumulated and documented suggests that the outlook for the company's new products is poor, so the stock should be rated a weak "hold." During lunch, however, Willier overhears a financial analyst from another firm whom he respects offer opinions that conflict with Willier's forecasts and expectations. Upon returning to his office, Willier releases a strong "buy" recommendation to the public. Willier:
- A Violated the Standards by failing to distinguish between facts and opinions in his recommendation.
 - B Violated the Standards because he did not have a reasonable and adequate basis for his recommendation.
 - C Was in full compliance with the Standards.
- 8 An investment management firm has been hired by ETV Corporation to work on an additional public offering for the company. The firm's brokerage unit now has a "sell" recommendation on ETV, but the head of the investment banking department has asked the head of the brokerage unit to change the recommendation from "sell" to "buy." According to the Standards, the head of the brokerage unit would be permitted to:
- A Increase the recommendation by no more than one increment (in this case, to a "hold" recommendation).
 - B Place the company on a restricted list and give only factual information about the company.
 - C Assign a new analyst to decide if the stock deserves a higher rating.
- 9 Albert and Tye, who recently started their own investment advisory business, have registered to take the Level III CFA examination. Albert's business card reads, "Judy Albert, CFA Level II." Tye has not put anything about the CFA designation on his business card, but promotional material that he designed for the business describes the CFA requirements and indicates that Tye participates in the CFA Program and has completed Levels I and II. According to the Standards:
- A Albert has violated the Standards, but Tye has not.

- B** Tye has violated the Standards, but Albert has not.
- C** Both Albert and Tye have violated the Standards.
- 10** Scott works for a regional brokerage firm. He estimates that Walkton Industries will increase its dividend by US\$1.50 a share during the next year. He realizes that this increase is contingent on pending legislation that would, if enacted, give Walkton a substantial tax break. The US representative for Walkton's home district has told Scott that, although she is lobbying hard for the bill and prospects for its passage are favorable, concern of the US Congress over the federal deficit could cause the tax bill to be voted down. Walkton Industries has not made any statements about a change in dividend policy. Scott writes in his research report, "We expect Walkton's stock price to rise by at least US\$8.00 a share by the end of the year because the dividend will increase by US\$1.50 a share. Investors buying the stock at the current time should expect to realize a total return of at least 15% on the stock." According to the Standards:
- A** Scott violated the Standards because he used material inside information.
- B** Scott violated the Standards because he failed to separate opinion from fact.
- C** Scott violated the Standards by basing his research on uncertain predictions of future government action.
- 11** Which one of the following actions will help to ensure the fair treatment of brokerage firm clients when a new investment recommendation is made?
- A** Informing all people in the firm in advance that a recommendation is to be disseminated.
- B** Distributing recommendations to institutional clients prior to individual accounts.
- C** Minimizing the time between the decision and the dissemination of a recommendation.
- 12** The mosaic theory holds that an analyst:
- A** Violates the Code and Standards if the analyst fails to have knowledge of and comply with applicable laws.
- B** Can use material public information and nonmaterial nonpublic information in the analyst's analysis.
- C** Should use all available and relevant information in support of an investment recommendation.
- 13** Jurgen is a portfolio manager. One of her firm's clients has told Jurgen that he will compensate her beyond the compensation provided by her firm on the basis of the capital appreciation of his portfolio each year. Jurgen should:
- A** Turn down the additional compensation because it will result in conflicts with the interests of other clients' accounts.
- B** Turn down the additional compensation because it will create undue pressure on her to achieve strong short-term performance.
- C** Obtain permission from her employer prior to accepting the compensation arrangement.
- 14** One of the discretionary accounts managed by Farnsworth is the Jones Corporation employee profit-sharing plan. Jones, the company president, recently asked Farnsworth to vote the shares in the profit-sharing plan in favor of the slate of directors nominated by Jones Corporation and against the directors sponsored by a dissident stockholder group. Farnsworth does not want to lose this account because he directs all the account's trades to a brokerage firm that provides Farnsworth with useful information about tax-free investments. Although this information is not of value in managing the Jones Corporation

account, it does help in managing several other accounts. The brokerage firm providing this information also offers the lowest commissions for trades and provides best execution. Farnsworth investigates the director issue, concludes that the management-nominated slate is better for the long-run performance of the company than the dissident group's slate, and votes accordingly. Farnsworth:

- A Violated the Standards in voting the shares in the manner requested by Jones but not in directing trades to the brokerage firm.
 - B Did not violate the Standards in voting the shares in the manner requested by Jones or in directing trades to the brokerage firm.
 - C Violated the Standards in directing trades to the brokerage firm but not in voting the shares as requested by Jones.
- 15 Brown works for an investment counseling firm. Green, a new client of the firm, is meeting with Brown for the first time. Green used another counseling firm for financial advice for years, but she has switched her account to Brown's firm. After spending a few minutes getting acquainted, Brown explains to Green that she has discovered a highly undervalued stock that offers large potential gains. She recommends that Green purchase the stock. Brown has committed a violation of the Standards. What should she have done differently?
- A Brown should have determined Green's needs, objectives, and tolerance for risk before making a recommendation of any type of security.
 - B Brown should have thoroughly explained the characteristics of the company to Green, including the characteristics of the industry in which the company operates.
 - C Brown should have explained her qualifications, including her education, training, and experience and the meaning of the CFA designation.
- 16 Grey recommends the purchase of a mutual fund that invests solely in long-term US Treasury bonds. He makes the following statements to his clients:
- I. "The payment of the bonds is guaranteed by the US government; therefore, the default risk of the bonds is virtually zero."
 - II. "If you invest in the mutual fund, you will earn a 10% rate of return each year for the next several years based on historical performance of the market."

Did Grey's statements violate the CFA Institute Code and Standards?

- A Neither statement violated the Code and Standards.
 - B Only statement I violated the Code and Standards.
 - C Only statement II violated the Code and Standards.
- 17 Anderb, a portfolio manager for XYZ Investment Management Company—a registered investment organization that advises investment firms and private accounts—was promoted to that position three years ago. Bates, her supervisor, is responsible for reviewing Anderb's portfolio account transactions and her required monthly reports of personal stock transactions. Anderb has been using Jonelli, a broker, almost exclusively for brokerage transactions for the portfolio account. For securities in which Jonelli's firm makes a market, Jonelli has been giving Anderb lower prices for personal purchases and higher prices for personal sales than Jonelli gives to Anderb's portfolio accounts and other investors. Anderb has been filing monthly reports with Bates only for those months in which she has no personal transactions, which is about every fourth month. Which of the following is *most likely* to be a violation of the Code and Standards?
- A Anderb failed to disclose to her employer her personal transactions.

- B** Anderb owned the same securities as those of her clients.
- C** Bates allowed Anderb to use Jonelli as her broker for personal trades.
- 18** Which of the following is a correct statement of a member's or candidate's duty under the Code and Standards?
- A** In the absence of specific applicable law or other regulatory requirements, the Code and Standards govern the member's or candidate's actions.
- B** A member or candidate is required to comply only with applicable local laws, rules, regulations, or customs, even though the Code and Standards may impose a higher degree of responsibility or a higher duty on the member or candidate.
- C** A member or candidate who trades securities in a securities market where no applicable local laws or stock exchange rules regulate the use of material nonpublic information may take investment action based on material nonpublic information.
- 19** Ward is scheduled to visit the corporate headquarters of Evans Industries. Ward expects to use the information he obtains there to complete his research report on Evans stock. Ward learns that Evans plans to pay all of Ward's expenses for the trip, including costs of meals, hotel room, and air transportation. Which of the following actions would be the *best* course for Ward to take under the Code and Standards?
- A** Accept the expense-paid trip and write an objective report.
- B** Pay for all travel expenses, including costs of meals and incidental items.
- C** Accept the expense-paid trip but disclose the value of the services accepted in the report.
- 20** Which of the following statements is *correct* under the Code and Standards?
- A** CFA Institute members and candidates are prohibited from undertaking independent practice in competition with their employer.
- B** Written consent from the employer is necessary to permit independent practice that could result in compensation or other benefits in competition with a member's or candidate's employer.
- C** Members and candidates are prohibited from making arrangements or preparations to go into a competitive business before terminating their relationship with their employer.
- 21** Smith is a financial analyst with XYZ Brokerage Firm. She is preparing a purchase recommendation on JNI Corporation. Which of the following situations is *most likely* to represent a conflict of interest for Smith that would have to be disclosed?
- A** Smith frequently purchases items produced by JNI.
- B** XYZ holds for its own account a substantial common stock position in JNI.
- C** Smith's brother-in-law is a supplier to JNI.
- 22** Michelieu tells a prospective client, "I may not have a long-term track record yet, but I'm sure that you'll be very pleased with my recommendations and service. In the three years that I've been in the business, my equity-oriented clients have averaged a total return of more than 26% a year." The statement is true, but Michelieu only has a few clients, and one of his clients took a large position in a penny stock (against Michelieu's advice) and realized a huge gain. This large return caused the average of all of Michelieu's clients to exceed 26% a year. Without this one investment, the average gain would have been 8% a year. Has Michelieu violated the Standards?

- A No, because Michelieu is not promising that he can earn a 26% return in the future.
 - B No, because the statement is a true and accurate description of Michelieu's track record.
 - C Yes, because the statement misrepresents Michelieu's track record.
- 23 An investment banking department of a brokerage firm often receives material nonpublic information that could have considerable value if used in advising the firm's brokerage clients. In order to conform to the Code and Standards, which one of the following is the best policy for the brokerage firm?
- A Permanently prohibit both "buy" and "sell" recommendations of the stocks of clients of the investment banking department.
 - B Establish physical and informational barriers within the firm to prevent the exchange of information between the investment banking and brokerage operations.
 - C Monitor the exchange of information between the investment banking department and the brokerage operation.
- 24 Stewart has been hired by Goodner Industries, Inc., to manage its pension fund. Stewart's duty of loyalty, prudence, and care is owed to:
- A The management of Goodner.
 - B The participants and beneficiaries of Goodner's pension plan.
 - C The shareholders of Goodner.
- 25 Which of the following statements is a stated purpose of disclosure in Standard VI(C)–Referral Fees?
- A Disclosure will allow the client to request discounted service fees.
 - B Disclosure will help the client evaluate any possible partiality shown in the recommendation of services.
 - C Disclosure means advising a prospective client about the referral arrangement once a formal client relationship has been established.
- 26 Rose, a portfolio manager for a local investment advisory firm, is planning to sell a portion of his personal investment portfolio to cover the costs of his child's academic tuition. Rose wants to sell a portion of his holdings in Household Products, but his firm recently upgraded the stock to "strong buy." Which of the following describes Rose's options under the Code and Standards?
- A Based on his firm's "buy" recommendation, Rose cannot sell the shares because he would be improperly prospering from the inflated recommendation.
 - B Rose is free to sell his personal holdings once his firm is properly informed of his intentions.
 - C Rose can sell his personal holdings but only when a client of the firm places an order to buy shares of Household.
- 27 A former hedge fund manager, Jackman, has decided to launch a new private wealth management firm. From his prior experiences, he believes the new firm needs to achieve US\$1 million in assets under management in the first year. Jackman offers a \$10,000 incentive to any adviser who joins his firm with the minimum of \$200,000 in committed investments. Jackman places notice of the opening on several industry web portals and career search sites. Which of the following is *correct* according to the Code and Standards?

- A** A member or candidate is eligible for the new position and incentive if he or she can arrange for enough current clients to switch to the new firm and if the member or candidate discloses the incentive fee.
- B** A member or candidate may not accept employment with the new firm because Jackman's incentive offer violates the Code and Standards.
- C** A member or candidate is not eligible for the new position unless he or she is currently unemployed because soliciting the clients of the member's or candidate's current employer is prohibited.
- 28** Carter works for Invest Today, a local asset management firm. A broker that provides Carter with proprietary research through client brokerage arrangements is offering a new trading service. The broker is offering low-fee, execution-only trades to complement its traditional full-service, execution-and-research trades. To entice Carter and other asset managers to send additional business its way, the broker will apply the commissions paid on the new service toward satisfying the brokerage commitment of the prior full-service arrangements. Carter has always been satisfied with the execution provided on the full-service trades, and the new low-fee trades are comparable to the fees of other brokers currently used for the accounts that prohibit soft dollar arrangements.
- A** Carter can trade for his accounts that prohibit soft dollar arrangements under the new low-fee trading scheme.
- B** Carter cannot use the new trading scheme because the commissions are prohibited by the soft dollar restrictions of the accounts.
- C** Carter should trade only through the new low-fee scheme and should increase his trading volume to meet his required commission commitment.
- 29** Rule has worked as a portfolio manager for a large investment management firm for the past 10 years. Rule earned his CFA charter last year and has decided to open his own investment management firm. After leaving his current employer, Rule creates some marketing material for his new firm. He states in the material, "In earning the CFA charter, a highly regarded credential in the investment management industry, I further enhanced the portfolio management skills learned during my professional career. While completing the examination process in three consecutive years, I consistently received the highest possible scores on the topics of Ethics, Alternative Investments, and Portfolio Management." Has Rule violated Standard VII(B)—Reference to CFA Institute, the CFA Designation, and the CFA Program in his marketing material?
- A** Rule violated Standard VII(B) in stating that he completed the exams in three consecutive years.
- B** Rule violated Standard VII(B) in stating that he received the highest scores in the topics of Ethics, Alternative Investments, and Portfolio Management.
- C** Rule did not violate Standard VII(B).
- 30** Stafford is a portfolio manager for a specialized real estate mutual fund. Her firm clearly describes in the fund's prospectus its soft dollar policies. Stafford decides that entering the CFA Program will enhance her investment decision-making skill and decides to use the fund's soft dollar account to pay the registration and exam fees for the CFA Program. Which of the following statements is *most likely* correct?
- A** Stafford did not violate the Code and Standards because the prospectus informed investors of the fund's soft dollar policies.
- B** Stafford violated the Code and Standards because improving her investment skills is not a reasonable use of the soft dollar account.

- C Stafford violated the Code and Standards because the CFA Program does not meet the definition of research allowed to be purchased with brokerage commissions.
- 31 Long has been asked to be the keynote speaker at an upcoming investment conference. The event is being hosted by one of the third-party investment managers currently used by his pension fund. The manager offers to cover all conference and travel costs for Long and make the conference registrations free for three additional members of his investment management team. To ensure that the conference obtains the best speakers, the host firm has arranged for an exclusive golf outing for the day following the conference on a local championship-caliber course. Which of the following is *least likely* to violate Standard I(B)?
- A Long may accept only the offer to have his conference-related expenses paid by the host firm.
 - B Long may accept the offer to have his conference-related expenses paid and may attend the exclusive golf outing at the expense of the hosting firm.
 - C Long may accept the entire package of incentives offered to speak at this conference.
- 32 Andrews, a private wealth manager, is conducting interviews for a new research analyst for his firm. One of the candidates is Wright, an analyst with a local investment bank. During the interview, while Wright is describing his analytical skills, he mentions a current merger in which his firm is acting as the adviser. Andrews has heard rumors of a possible merger between the two companies, but no releases have been made by the companies concerned. Which of the following actions by Andrews is *least likely* a violation of the Code and Standards?
- A Waiting until the next day before trading on the information to allow time for it to become public.
 - B Notifying all investment managers in his firm of the new information so none of their clients are disadvantaged.
 - C Placing the securities mentioned as part of the merger on the firm's restricted trading list.
- 33 Pietro, president of Local Bank, has hired the bank's market maker, Vogt, to seek a merger partner. Local is currently not listed on a stock exchange and has not reported that it is seeking strategic alternatives. Vogt has discussed the possibility of a merger with several firms, but they have all decided to wait until after the next period's financial data are available. The potential buyers believe the results will be worse than the results of prior periods and will allow them to pay less for Local Bank.
- Pietro wants to increase the likelihood of structuring a merger deal quickly. Which of the following actions would *most likely* be a violation of the Code and Standards?
- A Pietro could instruct Local Bank to issue a press release announcing that it has retained Vogt to find a merger partner.
 - B Pietro could place a buy order for 2,000 shares (or four times the average weekly volume) through Vogt for his personal account.
 - C After confirming with Local's chief financial officer, Pietro could instruct Local to issue a press release reaffirming the firm's prior announced earnings guidance for the full fiscal year.
- 34 ABC Investment Management acquires a new, very large account with two concentrated positions. The firm's current policy is to add new accounts for the purpose of performance calculation after the first full month of management.

- Cupp is responsible for calculating the firm's performance returns. Before the end of the initial month, Cupp notices that one of the significant holdings of the new accounts is acquired by another company, causing the value of the investment to double. Because of this holding, Cupp decides to account for the new portfolio as of the date of transfer, thereby allowing ABC Investment to reap the positive impact of that month's portfolio return.
- A** Cupp did not violate the Code and Standards because the GIPS standards allow composites to be updated on the date of large external cash flows.
 - B** Cupp did not violate the Code and Standards because companies are allowed to determine when to incorporate new accounts into their composite calculation.
 - C** Cupp violated the Code and Standards because the inclusion of the new account produces an inaccurate calculation of the monthly results according to the firm's stated policies.
- 35** Cannan has been working from home on weekends and occasionally saves correspondence with clients and completed work on her home computer. Because of worsening market conditions, Cannan is one of several employees released by her firm. While Cannan is looking for a new job, she uses the files she saved at home to request letters of recommendation from former clients. She also provides to prospective clients some of the reports as examples of her abilities.
- A** Cannan violated the Code and Standards because she did not receive permission from her former employer to keep or use the files after her employment ended.
 - B** Cannan did not violate the Code and Standards because the files were created and saved on her own time and computer.
 - C** Cannan violated the Code and Standards because she is prohibited from saving files on her home computer.
- 36** Quinn sat for the Level III CFA exam this past weekend. He updates his resume with the following statement: "In finishing the CFA Program, I improved my skills related to researching investments and managing portfolios. I will be eligible for the CFA charter upon completion of the required work experience."
- A** Quinn violated the Code and Standards by claiming he improved his skills through the CFA Program.
 - B** Quinn violated the Code and Standards by incorrectly stating that he is eligible for the CFA charter.
 - C** Quinn did not violate the Code and Standards with his resume update.
- 37** During a round of golf, Rodriguez, chief financial officer of Mega Retail, mentions to Hart, a local investment adviser and long-time personal friend, that Mega is having an exceptional sales quarter. Rodriguez expects the results to be almost 10% above the current estimates. The next day, Hart initiates the purchase of a large stake in the local exchange-traded retail fund for her personal account.
- A** Hart violated the Code and Standards by investing in the exchange-traded fund that included Mega Retail.
 - B** Hart did not violate the Code and Standards because she did not invest directly in securities of Mega Retail.
 - C** Rodriguez did not violate the Code and Standards because the comments made to Hart were not intended to solicit an investment in Mega Retail.

- 38** Park is very frustrated after taking her Level II exam. While she was studying for the exam, to supplement the curriculum provided, she ordered and used study material from a third-party provider. Park believes the additional material focused her attention on specific topic areas that were not tested while ignoring other areas. She posts the following statement on the provider's discussion board: "I am very dissatisfied with your firm's CFA Program Level II material. I found the exam extremely difficult and myself unprepared for specific questions after using your product. How could your service provide such limited instructional resources on the analysis of inventories and taxes when the exam had multiple questions about them? I will not recommend your products to other candidates."
- A** Park violated the Code and Standards by purchasing third-party review material.
 - B** Park violated the Code and Standards by providing her opinion on the difficulty of the exam.
 - C** Park violated the Code and Standards by providing specific information on topics tested on the exam.
- 39** Paper was recently terminated as one of a team of five managers of an equity fund. The fund had two value-focused managers and terminated one of them to reduce costs. In a letter sent to prospective employers, Paper presents, with written permission of the firm, the performance history of the fund to demonstrate his past success.
- A** Paper did not violate the Code and Standards.
 - B** Paper violated the Code and Standards by claiming the performance of the entire fund as his own.
 - C** Paper violated the Code and Standards by including the historical results of his prior employer.
- 40** Townsend was recently appointed to the board of directors of a youth golf program that is the local chapter of a national not-for-profit organization. The program is beginning a new fund-raising campaign to expand the number of annual scholarships it provides. Townsend believes many of her clients make annual donations to charity. The next week in her regular newsletter to all clients, she includes a small section discussing the fund-raising campaign and her position on the organization's board.
- A** Townsend did not violate the Code and Standards.
 - B** Townsend violated the Code and Standards by soliciting donations from her clients through the newsletter.
 - C** Townsend violated the Code and Standards by not getting approval of the organization before soliciting her clients.

SOLUTIONS

- 1 The correct answer is B. This question involves Standard III(B)—Fair Dealing. Smith disseminated a change in the stock recommendation to his clients but then received a request contrary to that recommendation from a client who probably had not yet received the recommendation. Prior to executing the order, Smith should take additional steps to ensure that the customer has received the change of recommendation. Answer A is incorrect because the client placed the order prior to receiving the recommendation and, therefore, does not have the benefit of Smith's most recent recommendation. Answer C is also incorrect; simply because the client request is contrary to the firm's recommendation does not mean a member can override a direct request by a client. After Smith contacts the client to ensure that the client has received the changed recommendation, if the client still wants to place a buy order for the shares, Smith is obligated to comply with the client's directive.
- 2 The correct answer is C. This question involves Standard III(A)—Loyalty, Prudence, and Care and the specific topic of soft dollars or soft commissions. Answer C is the correct choice because client brokerage commissions may not be directed to pay for the investment manager's operating expenses. Answer B describes how members and candidates should determine how to use brokerage commissions—that is, if the use is in the best interests of clients and is commensurate with the value of the services provided. Answer A describes a practice that is commonly referred to as "directed brokerage." Because brokerage is an asset of the client and is used to benefit the client, not the manager, such practice does not violate a duty of loyalty to the client. Members and candidates are obligated in all situations to disclose to clients their practices in the use of client brokerage commissions.
- 3 The correct answer is C. This question involves Standard VI(A)—Disclosure of Conflicts. The question establishes a conflict of interest in which an analyst, Jamison, is asked to write a research report on a company that is a client of the analyst's employer. In addition, two directors of the company are senior officers of Jamison's employer. Both facts establish that there are conflicts of interest that must be disclosed by Jamison in her research report. Answer B is incorrect because an analyst is not prevented from writing a report simply because of the special relationship the analyst's employer has with the company as long as that relationship is disclosed. Answer A is incorrect because whether or not Jamison expresses any opinions in the report is irrelevant to her duty to disclose a conflict of interest. Not expressing opinions does not relieve the analyst of the responsibility to disclose the special relationships between the two companies.
- 4 The correct answer is C. This question asks about compliance procedures relating to personal investments of members and candidates. The statement in answer C clearly conflicts with the recommended procedures in the *Standards of Practice Handbook*. Employers should compare personal transactions of employees with those of clients on a regular basis regardless of the existence of a requirement by any regulatory organization. Such comparisons ensure that employees' personal trades do not conflict with their duty to their clients, and the comparisons can be conducted in a confidential manner. The statement in answer A does not conflict with the procedures in the *Handbook*. Disclosure of such policies will give full information to clients regarding potential conflicts of interest on the part of those entrusted to manage their money. Answer B is incorrect because firms are encouraged to establish policies whereby employees clear their personal holdings and transactions with their employers.

- 5 The correct answer is B. This question relates to Standard III(A)–Loyalty, Prudence, and Care and Standard III(E)–Preservation of Confidentiality. In this case, the member manages funds of a private endowment. Clients, who are, in this case, the trustees of the fund, must place some trust in members and candidates. Bronson cannot disclose confidential financial information to anyone without the permission of the fund, regardless of whether the disclosure may benefit the fund. Therefore, answer A is incorrect. Answer C is incorrect because Bronson must notify the fund and obtain the fund’s permission before publicizing the information.
- 6 The correct answer is C. Under Standard IV(C)–Responsibilities of Supervisors, members and candidates may delegate supervisory duties to subordinates but such delegation does not relieve members or candidates of their supervisory responsibilities. As a result, answer B is incorrect. Moreover, whether or not Miller’s subordinates are subject to the Code and Standards is irrelevant to her supervisory responsibilities. Therefore, answer A is incorrect.
- 7 The correct answer is B. This question relates to Standard V(A)–Diligence and Reasonable Basis. The opinion of another financial analyst is not an adequate basis for Willier’s action in changing the recommendation. Answer C is thus incorrect. So is answer A because, although it is true that members and candidates must distinguish between facts and opinions in recommendations, the question does not illustrate a violation of that nature. If the opinion overheard by Willier had sparked him to conduct additional research and investigation that justified a change of opinion, then a changed recommendation would be appropriate.
- 8 The correct answer is B. This question relates to Standard I(B)–Independence and Objectivity. When asked to change a recommendation on a company stock to gain business for the firm, the head of the brokerage unit must refuse in order to maintain his independence and objectivity in making recommendations. He must not yield to pressure by the firm’s investment banking department. To avoid the appearance of a conflict of interest, the firm should discontinue issuing recommendations about the company. Answer A is incorrect; changing the recommendation in any manner that is contrary to the analyst’s opinion violates the duty to maintain independence and objectivity. Answer C is incorrect because merely assigning a new analyst to decide whether the stock deserves a higher rating will not address the conflict of interest.
- 9 The correct answer is A. Standard VII(B)–Reference to CFA Institute, the CFA Designation, and the CFA Program is the subject of this question. The reference on Albert’s business card implies that there is a “CFA Level II” designation; Tye merely indicates in promotional material that he is participating in the CFA Program and has completed Levels I and II. Candidates may not imply that there is some sort of partial designation earned after passing a level of the CFA exam. Therefore, Albert has violated Standard VII(B). Candidates may communicate that they are participating in the CFA Program, however, and may state the levels that they have completed. Therefore, Tye has not violated Standard VII(B).
- 10 The correct answer is B. This question relates to Standard V(B)–Communication with Clients and Prospective Clients. Scott has issued a research report stating that he expects the price of Walkton Industries stock to rise by US\$8 a share “because the dividend will increase” by US\$1.50 per share. He has made this statement knowing that the dividend will increase only if Congress enacts certain legislation, an uncertain prospect. By stating that the dividend will increase, Scott failed to separate fact from opinion.

The information regarding passage of legislation is not material nonpublic information because it is conjecture, and the question does not state whether the US representative gave Scott her opinion on the passage of the legislation in confidence. She could have been offering this opinion to anyone who asked. Therefore, statement A is incorrect. It may be acceptable to base a recommendation, in part, on an expectation of future events, even though they may be uncertain. Therefore, answer C is incorrect.

- 11 The correct answer is C. This question, which relates to Standard III(B)—Fair Dealing, tests the knowledge of the procedures that will assist members and candidates in treating clients fairly when making investment recommendations. The step listed in C will help ensure the fair treatment of clients. Answer A may have negative effects on the fair treatment of clients. The more people who know about a pending change, the greater the chance that someone will inform some clients before the information's release. The firm should establish policies that limit the number of people who are aware in advance that a recommendation is to be disseminated. Answer B, distributing recommendations to institutional clients before distributing them to individual accounts, discriminates among clients on the basis of size and class of assets and is a violation of Standard III(B).
- 12 The correct answer is B. This question deals with Standard II(A)—Material Nonpublic Information. The mosaic theory states that an analyst may use material public information and nonmaterial nonpublic information in creating a larger picture than shown by any individual piece of information and the conclusions the analyst reaches become material only after the pieces are assembled. Answers A and C are accurate statements relating to the Code and Standards but do not describe the mosaic theory.
- 13 The correct answer is C. This question involves Standard IV(B)—Additional Compensation Arrangements. The arrangement described in the question—whereby Jurgen would be compensated beyond the compensation provided by her firm, on the basis of an account's performance—is not a violation of the Standards as long as Jurgen discloses the arrangement in writing to her employer and obtains permission from her employer prior to entering into the arrangement. Answers A and B are incorrect; although the private compensation arrangement could conflict with the interests of other clients and lead to short-term performance pressures, members and candidates may enter into such agreements as long as they have disclosed the arrangements to their employer and obtained permission for the arrangement from their employer.
- 14 The correct answer is B. This question relates to Standard III(A)—Loyalty, Prudence, and Care—specifically, a member's or candidate's responsibility for voting proxies and the use of client brokerage. According to the facts stated in the question, Farnsworth did not violate Standard III(A). Although the company president asked Farnsworth to vote the shares of the Jones Corporation profit-sharing plan a certain way, Farnsworth investigated the issue and concluded, independently, the best way to vote. Therefore, even though his decision coincided with the wishes of the company president, Farnsworth is not in violation of his responsibility to be loyal and to provide care to his clients. In this case, the participants and the beneficiaries of the profit-sharing plan are the clients, not the company's management. Had Farnsworth not investigated the issue or had he yielded to the president's wishes and voted for a slate of directors that he had determined was not in the best interest of the company, Farnsworth would have violated his responsibilities to the beneficiaries of the plan. In addition, because the brokerage firm provides the lowest commissions and best execution for securities transactions, Farnsworth has met his obligations to the client

in using this brokerage firm. It does not matter that the brokerage firm also provides research information that is not useful for the account generating the commission because Farnsworth is not paying extra money of the client's for that information.

- 15 The correct answer is A. In this question, Brown is providing investment recommendations before making inquiries about the client's financial situation, investment experience, or investment objectives. Brown is thus violating Standard III(C)–Suitability. Answers B and C provide examples of information members and candidates should discuss with their clients at the outset of the relationship, but these answers do not constitute a complete list of those factors. Answer A is the best answer.
- 16 The correct answer is C. This question involves Standard I(C)–Misrepresentation. Statement I is a factual statement that discloses to clients and prospects accurate information about the terms of the investment instrument. Statement II, which guarantees a specific rate of return for a mutual fund, is an opinion stated as a fact and, therefore, violates Standard I(C). If statement II were rephrased to include a qualifying statement, such as “in my opinion, investors may earn . . .,” it would not be in violation of the Standards.
- 17 The correct answer is A. This question involves three of the Standards. Anderb, the portfolio manager, has been obtaining more favorable prices for her personal securities transactions than she gets for her clients, which is a breach of Standard III(A)–Loyalty, Prudence, and Care. In addition, she violated Standard I(D)–Misconduct by failing to adhere to company policy and by hiding her personal transactions from her firm. Anderb's supervisor, Bates, violated Standard IV(C)–Responsibilities of Supervisors; although the company had requirements for reporting personal trading, Bates failed to adequately enforce those requirements. Answer B does not represent a violation because Standard VI(B)–Priority of Transactions requires that personal trading in a security be conducted after the trading in that security of clients and the employer. The Code and Standards do not prohibit owning such investments, although firms may establish policies that limit the investment opportunities of members and candidates. Answer C does not represent a violation because the Code and Standards do not contain a prohibition against employees using the same broker for their personal accounts that they use for their client accounts. This arrangement should be disclosed to the employer so that the employer may determine whether a conflict of interest exists.
- 18 The correct answer is A because this question relates to Standard I(A)–Knowledge of the Law—specifically, global application of the Code and Standards. Members and candidates who practice in multiple jurisdictions may be subject to various securities laws and regulations. If applicable law is more strict than the requirements of the Code and Standards, members and candidates must adhere to applicable law; otherwise, members and candidates must adhere to the Code and Standards. Therefore, answer A is correct. Answer B is incorrect because members and candidates must adhere to the higher standard set by the Code and Standards if local applicable law is less strict. Answer C is incorrect because when no applicable law exists, members and candidates are required to adhere to the Code and Standards, and the Code and Standards prohibit the use of material nonpublic information.
- 19 The correct answer is B. The best course of action under Standard I(B)–Independence and Objectivity is to avoid a conflict of interest whenever possible. Therefore, for Ward to pay for all his expenses is the correct answer. Answer C details a course of action in which the conflict would be disclosed, but the solution is not as appropriate as avoiding the conflict of interest.

- Answer A would not be the best course because it would not remove the appearance of a conflict of interest; even though the report would not be affected by the reimbursement of expenses, it could appear to be.
- 20** The correct answer is B. Under Standard IV(A)–Loyalty, members and candidates may undertake independent practice that may result in compensation or other benefit in competition with their employer as long as they obtain consent from their employer. Answer C is not consistent with the Standards because the Standards allow members and candidates to make arrangements or preparations to go into competitive business as long as those arrangements do not interfere with their duty to their current employer. Answer A is not consistent with the Standards because the Standards do not include a complete prohibition against undertaking independent practice.
- 21** The correct answer is B. This question involves Standard VI(A)–Disclosure of Conflicts—specifically, the holdings of an analyst’s employer in company stock. Answers A and C do not describe conflicts of interest that Smith would have to disclose. Answer A describes the use of a firm’s products, which would not be a required disclosure. In answer C, the relationship between the analyst and the company through a relative is so tangential that it does not create a conflict of interest necessitating disclosure.
- 22** The correct answer is C. This question relates to Standard I(C)–Misrepresentation. Although Michelieu’s statement about the total return of his clients’ accounts on average may be technically true, it is misleading because the majority of the gain resulted from one client’s large position taken against Michelieu’s advice. Therefore, this statement misrepresents the investment performance the member is responsible for. He has not taken steps to present a fair, accurate, and complete presentation of performance. Answer B is thus incorrect. Answer A is incorrect because although Michelieu is not guaranteeing future results, his words are still a misrepresentation of his performance history.
- 23** The correct answer is B. The best policy to prevent violation of Standard II(A)–Material Nonpublic Information is the establishment of firewalls in a firm to prevent exchange of insider information. The physical and informational barrier of a firewall between the investment banking department and the brokerage operation prevents the investment banking department from providing information to analysts on the brokerage side who may be writing recommendations on a company stock. Prohibiting recommendations of the stock of companies that are clients of the investment banking department is an alternative, but answer A states that this prohibition would be permanent, which is not the best answer. Once an offering is complete and the material nonpublic information obtained by the investment banking department becomes public, resuming publishing recommendations on the stock is not a violation of the Code and Standards because the information of the investment banking department no longer gives the brokerage operation an advantage in writing the report. Answer C is incorrect because no exchange of information should be occurring between the investment banking department and the brokerage operation, so monitoring of such exchanges is not an effective compliance procedure for preventing the use of material nonpublic information.
- 24** The correct answer is B. Under Standard III(A)–Loyalty, Prudence, and Care, members and candidates who manage a company’s pension fund owe these duties to the participants and beneficiaries of the pension plan, not the management of the company or the company’s shareholders.

- 25 The correct answer is B. Answer B gives one of the two primary reasons listed in the *Handbook* for disclosing referral fees to clients under Standard VI(C)–Referral Fees. (The other is to allow clients and employers to evaluate the full cost of the services.) Answer A is incorrect because Standard VI(C) does not require members or candidates to discount their fees when they receive referral fees. Answer C is inconsistent with Standard VI(C) because disclosure of referral fees, to be effective, should be made to prospective clients before entering into a formal client relationship with them.
- 26 The correct answer is B. Standard VI(B)–Priority of Transactions does not limit transactions of company employees that differ from current recommendations as long as the sale does not disadvantage current clients. Thus, answer A is incorrect. Answer C is incorrect because the Standard does not require the matching of personal and client trades.
- 27 Answer C is correct. Standard IV(A)–Loyalty discusses activities permissible to members and candidates when they are leaving their current employer; soliciting clients is strictly prohibited. Thus, answer A is inconsistent with the Code and Standards even with the required disclosure. Answer B is incorrect because the offer does not directly violate the Code and Standards. There may be out-of-work members and candidates who can arrange the necessary commitments without violating the Code and Standards.
- 28 Answer A is correct. The question relates to Standard III(A)–Loyalty, Prudence, and Care. Carter believes the broker offers effective execution at a fee that is comparable with those of other brokers, so he is free to use the broker for all accounts. Answer B is incorrect because the accounts that prohibit soft dollar arrangements do not want to fund the purchase of research by Carter. The new trading scheme does not incur additional commissions from clients, so it would not go against the prohibitions. Answer C is incorrect because Carter should not incur unnecessary or excessive “churning” of the portfolios (excessive trading) for the purpose of meeting the brokerage commitments of soft dollar arrangements.
- 29 Answer B is correct according to Standard VII(B)–Reference to CFA Institute, the CFA Designation, and the CFA Program. CFA Program candidates do not receive their actual scores on the exam. Topic and subtopic results are grouped into three broad categories, and the exam is graded only as “pass” or “fail.” Although a candidate may have achieved a topical score of “above 70%,” she or he cannot factually state that she or he received the highest possible score because that information is not reported. Thus, answer C is incorrect. Answer A is incorrect as long as the member or candidate actually completed the exams consecutively. Standard VII(B) does not prohibit the communication of factual information about completing the CFA Program in three consecutive years.
- 30 Answer C is correct. According to Standard III(A)–Loyalty, Prudence, and Care, the CFA Program would be considered a personal or firm expense and should not be paid for with the fund’s brokerage commissions. Soft dollar accounts should be used only to purchase research services that directly assist the investment manager in the investment decision-making process, not to assist the management of the firm or to further education. Thus, answer A is incorrect. Answer B is incorrect because the reasonableness of how the money is used is not an issue; the issue is that educational expense is not research.
- 31 Answer A is correct. Standard I(B)–Independence and Objectivity emphasizes the need for members and candidates to maintain their independence and objectivity. Best practices dictate that firms adopt a strict policy not to accept compensation for travel arrangements. At times, however, accepting paid

- travel would not compromise one's independence and objectivity. Answers B and C are incorrect because the added benefits—free conference admission for additional staff members and an exclusive golf retreat for the speaker—could be viewed as inducements related to the firm's working arrangements and not solely related to the speaking engagement. Should Long wish to bring other team members or participate in the golf outing, he or his firm should be responsible for the associated fees.
- 32** Answer C is correct. The guidance to Standard II(A)—Material Nonpublic Information recommends adding securities to the firm's restricted list when the firm has or may have material nonpublic information. By adding these securities to this list, Andrews would uphold this standard. Because waiting until the next day will not ensure that news of the merger is made public, answer A is incorrect. Negotiations may take much longer between the two companies, and the merger may never happen. Andrews must wait until the information is disseminated to the market before he trades on that information. Answer B is incorrect because Andrews should not disclose the information to other managers; no trading is allowed on material nonpublic information.
- 33** Answer B is correct. Through placing a personal purchase order that is significantly greater than the average volume, Pietro is violating Standard IIB—Market Manipulation. He is attempting to manipulate an increase in the share price and thus bring a buyer to the negotiating table. The news of a possible merger and confirmation of the firm's earnings guidance may also have positive effects on the price of Local Bank, but Pietro's actions in instructing the release of the information does not represent a violation through market manipulation. Announcements of this nature are common and practical to keep investors informed. Thus, answers A and C are incorrect.
- 34** Answer C is correct. Cupp violated Standard III(D)—Performance Presentations when he deviated from the firm's stated policies solely to capture the gain from the holding being acquired. Answer A is incorrect because the firm does not claim GIPS compliance and the GIPS standards require external cash flows to be treated in a consistent manner with the firm's documented policies. Answer B is incorrect because the firm does not state that it is updating its composite policies. If such a change were to occur, all cash flows for the month would have to be reviewed to ensure their consistent treatment under the new policy.
- 35** Answer A is correct. According to Standard V(C)—Record Retention, Cannan needed the permission of her employer to maintain the files at home after her employment ended. Without that permission, she should have deleted the files. All files created as part of a member's or candidate's professional activity are the property of the firm, even those created outside normal work hours. Thus, answer B is incorrect. Answer C is incorrect because the Code and Standards do not prohibit using one's personal computer to complete work for one's employer.
- 36** Answer B is correct. According to Standard VII(B)—Reference to CFA Institute, the CFA Designation, and the CFA Program, Quinn cannot claim to have finished the CFA Program or be eligible for the CFA charter until he officially learns that he has passed the Level III exam. Until the results for the most recent exam are released, those who sat for the exam should continue to refer to themselves as "candidates." Thus, answer C is incorrect. Answer A is incorrect because members and candidates may discuss areas of practice in which they believe the CFA Program improved their personal skills.

- 37** Answer A is correct. Hart’s decision to invest in the retail fund appears directly correlated with Rodriguez’s statement about the successful quarter of Mega Retail and thus violates Standard II(A)–Material Nonpublic Information. Rodriguez’s information would be considered material because it would influence the share price of Mega Retail and probably influence the price of the entire exchange-traded retail fund. Thus, answer B is incorrect. Answer C is also incorrect because Rodriguez shared information that was both material and nonpublic. Company officers regularly have such knowledge about their firms, which is not a violation. The sharing of such information, however, even in a conversation between friends, does violate Standard II(A).
- 38** Answer C is correct. Standard VII(A)–Conduct as Members and Candidates in the CFA Program prohibits providing information to candidates or the public that is considered confidential to the CFA Program. In revealing that questions related to the analysis of inventories and analysis of taxes were on the exam, Park has violated this standard. Answer B is incorrect because the guidance for the standard explicitly acknowledges that members and candidates are allowed to offer their opinions about the CFA Program. Answer A is incorrect because candidates are not prohibited from using outside resources.
- 39** Answer B is correct. Paper has violated Standard III(D)–Performance Presentation by not disclosing that he was part of a team of managers that achieved the results shown. If he had also included the return of the portion he directly managed, he would not have violated the standard. Thus, answer A is incorrect. Answer C is incorrect because Paper received written permission from his prior employer to include the results.
- 40** Answer A is correct. Townsend has not provided any information about her clients to the leaders or managers of the golf program; thus, she has not violated Standard III(E)–Preservation of Confidentiality. Providing contact information about her clients for a direct-mail solicitation would have been a violation. Answer B is incorrect because the notice in the newsletter does not violate Standard III(E). Answer C is incorrect because the golf program’s fund-raising campaign had already begun, so discussing the opportunity to donate was appropriate.

READING

4

Introduction to the Global Investment Performance Standards (GIPS)

LEARNING OUTCOMES

<i>Mastery</i>	<i>The candidate should be able to:</i>
<input type="checkbox"/>	a. explain why the GIPS standards were created, what parties the GIPS standards apply to, and who is served by the standards;
<input type="checkbox"/>	b. explain the construction and purpose of composites in performance reporting;
<input type="checkbox"/>	c. explain the requirements for verification.

The objective of this reading is to orient the Level I candidate approaching the assigned sections of the GIPS standards. It explains why the GIPS standards were created, who can claim compliance, and who benefits from compliance. It also introduces the key notion of composites, states the purpose of verification, and previews the structure of the Standards.

WHY WERE THE GIPS STANDARDS CREATED?

I.

Institutions and individuals are constantly scrutinizing past investment performance returns in search of the best manager to achieve their investment objectives.

In the past, the investment community had great difficulty making meaningful comparisons on the basis of accurate investment performance data. Several performance measurement practices hindered the comparability of performance returns from one firm to another, while others called into question the accuracy and credibility of performance reporting overall. Misleading practices included:

- **Representative Accounts:** Selecting a top-performing portfolio to represent the firm's overall investment results for a specific mandate.

- **Survivorship Bias:** Presenting an “average” performance history that *excludes* portfolios whose poor performance was weak enough to result in termination of the firm.
- **Varying Time Periods:** Presenting performance for a selected time period during which the mandate produced excellent returns or out-performed its benchmark—making comparison with other firms’ results difficult or impossible.

Making a valid comparison of investment performance among even the most ethical investment management firms was problematic. For example, a pension fund seeking to hire an investment management firm might receive proposals from several firms, all using different methodologies for calculating their results.

The GIPS standards are a practitioner-driven set of ethical principles that establish a standardized, industry-wide approach for investment firms to follow in calculating and presenting their historical investment results to prospective clients. The GIPS standards ensure fair representation and full disclosure of investment performance. In other words, the GIPS standards lead investment management firms to avoid misrepresentations of performance and to communicate all relevant information that prospective clients should know in order to evaluate past results.

II.

WHO CAN CLAIM COMPLIANCE?

First, any investment management firm may choose to comply with the GIPS standards. Complying with the GIPS standards is voluntary. Compliance with the GIPS standards is not typically required by legal or regulatory authorities.

Second, only investment management firms that *actually manage* assets can claim compliance with the Standards. Plan sponsors and consultants cannot make a claim of compliance unless they actually manage assets for which they are making a claim of compliance. They can claim to endorse the Standards and/or require that their investment managers comply with the Standards. Similarly, software (and the vendors who supply software) cannot be “compliant.” Software can assist firms in achieving compliance with the GIPS standards (e.g., by calculating performance in a manner consistent with the calculation requirements of the Standards) but only an investment management firm can claim compliance once the firm has satisfied all requirements of the Standards.

Third, compliance is a firm-wide process that cannot be achieved on a single product or composite. A firm has only two options with regard to compliance with the GIPS standards: fully comply with *all* requirements of the GIPS standards and claim compliance through the use of the GIPS Compliance Statement; or not comply with all requirements of the GIPS standards and not claim compliance with, or make any reference to, the GIPS standards.

III.

WHO BENEFITS FROM COMPLIANCE?

The GIPS standards benefit two main groups: investment management firms and prospective clients.

- By choosing to comply with the GIPS standards, investment management firms assure prospective clients that the historical “track record” they report is both complete and fairly presented. Compliance enables the GIPS-compliant firm to

participate in competitive bids against other compliant firms throughout the world. Achieving and maintaining compliance may also strengthen the firm's internal controls over performance-related processes and procedures.

- Investors have a greater level of confidence in the integrity of performance presentations of a GIPS-compliant firm and can more easily compare performance presentations from different investment management firms. While the GIPS standards certainly do not eliminate the need for in-depth due diligence on the part of the investor, compliance with the Standards enhances the credibility of investment management firms that have chosen to undertake this responsibility.

COMPOSITES

IV.

One of the key concepts of the Standards is the required use of composites. A composite is an aggregation of one or more portfolios managed according to a similar investment mandate, objective, or strategy. A composite must include all actual, fee-paying, discretionary portfolios managed in accordance with the same investment mandate, objective, or strategy. For example, if a GIPS-compliant firm presents its track record for a Global Equity Composite (the Composite), the Composite must include all portfolios that are managed, or have historically been managed, in the firm's Global Equity strategy. The firm may not subjectively select which Global Equity portfolios will be included in or excluded from the calculation and presentation of the Global Equity Composite. The determination of which portfolios to include in the Composite should be done according to pre-established criteria (i.e., on an ex-ante basis), not after the fact. This prevents a firm from including only their best-performing portfolios in the Composite.

VERIFICATION

V.

Firms that claim compliance with the GIPS standards are responsible for their claim of compliance and for maintaining that compliance. That is, firms self-regulate their claim of compliance. Once a firm claims compliance with the Standards, they may voluntarily hire an independent third party to perform a verification in order to increase confidence in the firm's claim of compliance. Verification may also increase the knowledge of the firm's performance measurement team and improve the consistency and quality of the firm's compliant presentations.

Verification is performed with respect to an entire firm, not on specific composites. Verification does not ensure the accuracy of any specific composite presentation. Verification tests:

- whether the investment firm has complied with all the composite construction requirements of the GIPS standards on a firm-wide basis, and
- whether the firm's policies and procedures are designed to calculate and present performance in compliance with the GIPS standards.

Verification must be performed by an independent third party. A firm cannot perform its own verification.

Third-party verification brings additional credibility to a firm's claim of compliance. A verified firm may provide existing and prospective clients with greater assurance about its claim of compliance with the GIPS standards. Verification may also provide improved internal processes and procedures as well as marketing advantages to the firm.

VI.

THE STRUCTURE OF THE GIPS STANDARDS

The provisions within the 2010 edition of the GIPS standards are divided into nine sections: Fundamentals of Compliance, Input Data, Calculation Methodology, Composite Construction, Disclosure, Presentation and Reporting, Real Estate, Private Equity, and Wrap Fee/Separately Managed Account (SMA) Portfolios. The provisions are further categorized into requirements and recommendations.

Global Investment Performance Standards (GIPS)

LEARNING OUTCOMES

<i>Mastery</i>	<i>The candidate should be able to:</i>
<input type="checkbox"/>	a. describe the key features of the GIPS standards and the fundamentals of compliance;
<input type="checkbox"/>	b. describe the scope of the GIPS standards with respect to an investment firm's definition and historical performance record;
<input type="checkbox"/>	c. explain how the GIPS standards are implemented in countries with existing standards for performance reporting and describe the appropriate response when the GIPS standards and local regulations conflict;
<input type="checkbox"/>	d. describe the nine major sections of the GIPS standards.

PREFACE

CFA Institute is a global not-for-profit association of investment professionals with the mission of leading the investment profession globally by setting the highest standards of ethics, education, and professional excellence. CFA Institute has a long-standing history of and commitment to establishing a broadly accepted ethical standard for calculating and presenting investment performance based on the principles of fair representation and full disclosure. The goals in developing and evolving the Global Investment Performance Standards (GIPS®) are to establish them as the recognized standard for calculating and presenting investment performance around the world and for the GIPS standards to become a firm's "passport" to market investment management services globally. As of January 2010, CFA Institute has partnered with organizations in 32 countries that contribute to the development and promotion of the GIPS standards.

OPTIONAL
SEGMENT

History

In 1995, CFA Institute, formerly known as the Association for Investment Management and Research (AIMR), sponsored and funded the Global Investment Performance Standards Committee to develop global standards for calculating and presenting investment performance, based on the existing AIMR Performance Presentation Standards (AIMR-PPS®).

In 1998, the proposed GIPS standards were posted on the CFA Institute website and circulated for comment to more than 4,000 individuals who had expressed interest. The result was the first Global Investment Performance Standards, published in April 1999.

The initial edition of the GIPS standards was designed to create a minimum global investment performance standard that would:

- Permit and facilitate acceptance and adoption in developing markets;
- Give the global investment management industry one commonly accepted approach for calculating and presenting performance; and
- Address liquid asset classes (equity, fixed income, and cash).

In 1999, the Global Investment Performance Standards Committee was replaced by the Investment Performance Council (IPC) to further develop and promote the GIPS standards. The development of the GIPS standards was a global industry initiative with participation from individuals and organizations from more than 15 countries.

The IPC was charged with developing provisions for other asset classes (e.g., real estate, private equity) and addressing other performance-related issues (e.g., fees, advertising) to broaden the scope and applicability of the GIPS standards. This was accomplished when the second edition of the GIPS standards was published in February 2005.

With the release of the 2005 edition of the GIPS standards and growing adoption and expansion of the GIPS standards, the IPC decided to move to a single global investment performance standard and eliminate the need for local variations of the GIPS standards. All country-specific performance standards converged with the GIPS standards, resulting in 25 countries adopting a single, global standard for the calculation and presentation of investment performance.

In 2005, with the convergence of country-specific versions to the GIPS standards and the need to reorganize the governance structure to facilitate involvement from GIPS sponsors, CFA Institute dissolved the IPC and created the GIPS Executive Committee and the GIPS Council. The GIPS Executive Committee serves as the decision-making authority for the GIPS standards, and the GIPS Council facilitates the involvement of all sponsors in the ongoing development and promotion of the GIPS standards.

To maintain global relevance, and in recognition of the dynamic nature of the investment industry, the GIPS standards must be continually updated through interpretations, guidance, and new provisions. In 2008, the GIPS Executive Committee began its review of the GIPS standards in an effort to further refine the provisions as well as eliminate provisions that are no longer necessary and add new requirements and recommendations that promote best practice. The GIPS Executive Committee worked in close collaboration with its technical subcommittees, specially formed working groups, and GIPS sponsors. These groups reviewed the existing provisions and guidance and conducted surveys and other research as part of the efforts to produce the 2010 edition of the GIPS standards.

INTRODUCTION

Preamble—Why Is a Global Investment Performance Standard Needed?

Standardized Investment Performance

Financial markets and the investment management industry have become increasingly global in nature. The growth in the types and number of financial entities, the globalization of the investment process, and the increased competition among investment management firms demonstrate the need to standardize the calculation and presentation of investment performance.

Global Passport

Asset managers and both existing and prospective clients benefit from an established global standard for calculating and presenting investment performance. Investment practices, regulation, performance measurement, and reporting of performance vary considerably from country to country. By adhering to a global standard, firms in countries with minimal or no investment performance standards will be able to compete for business on an equal footing with firms from countries with more developed standards. Firms from countries with established practices will have more confidence in being fairly compared with local firms when competing for business in countries that have not previously adopted performance standards. Performance standards that are accepted globally enable investment firms to measure and present their investment performance so that investors can readily compare investment performance among firms.

Investor Confidence

Investment managers that adhere to investment performance standards help assure investors that the firm's investment performance is complete and fairly presented. Both prospective and existing clients of investment firms benefit from a global investment performance standard by having a greater degree of confidence in the performance information presented to them.

Objectives

The establishment of a voluntary global investment performance standard leads to an accepted set of best practices for calculating and presenting investment performance that is readily comparable among investment firms, regardless of geographic location. These standards also facilitate a dialogue between investment firms and their existing and prospective clients regarding investment performance.

The goals of the GIPS Executive Committee are:

- To establish investment industry best practices for calculating and presenting investment performance that promote investor interests and instill investor confidence;
- To obtain worldwide acceptance of a single standard for the calculation and presentation of investment performance based on the principles of fair representation and full disclosure;
- To promote the use of accurate and consistent investment performance data;
- To encourage fair, global competition among investment firms without creating barriers to entry; and
- To foster the notion of industry “self-regulation” on a global basis.

Overview

Key features of the GIPS standards include the following:

- The GIPS standards are ethical standards for investment performance presentation to ensure fair representation and full disclosure of investment performance. In order to claim compliance, firms must adhere to the requirements included in the GIPS standards.
- Meeting the objectives of fair representation and full disclosure is likely to require more than simply adhering to the minimum requirements of the GIPS standards. Firms should also adhere to the recommendations to achieve best practice in the calculation and presentation of performance.
- The GIPS standards require firms to include all actual, discretionary, fee-paying portfolios in at least one composite defined by investment mandate, objective, or strategy in order to prevent firms from cherry-picking their best performance.
- The GIPS standards rely on the integrity of input data. The accuracy of input data is critical to the accuracy of the performance presentation. The underlying valuations of portfolio holdings drive the portfolio's performance. It is essential for these and other inputs to be accurate. The GIPS standards require firms to adhere to certain calculation methodologies and to make specific disclosures along with the firm's performance.
- Firms must comply with all requirements of the GIPS standards, including any updates, Guidance Statements, interpretations, Questions & Answers (Q&As), and clarifications published by CFA Institute and the GIPS Executive Committee, which are available on the GIPS website (www.gipsstandards.org) as well as in the *GIPS Handbook*.

The GIPS standards do not address every aspect of performance measurement or cover unique characteristics of each asset class. The GIPS standards will continue to evolve over time to address additional areas of investment performance. Understanding and interpreting investment performance requires consideration of both risk and return. Historically, the GIPS standards focused primarily on returns. In the spirit of fair representation and full disclosure, and in order to provide investors with a more comprehensive view of a firm's performance, the 2010 edition of the GIPS standards includes new provisions related to risk.

Historical Performance Record

- A firm is required to initially present, at a minimum, five years of annual investment performance that is compliant with the GIPS standards. If the firm or the composite has been in existence less than five years, the firm must present performance since the firm's inception or the composite inception date.
- After a firm presents a minimum of five years of GIPS-compliant performance (or for the period since the firm's inception or the composite inception date if the firm or the composite has been in existence less than five years), the firm must present an additional year of performance each year, building up to a minimum of 10 years of GIPS-compliant performance.
- Firms may link non-GIPS-compliant performance to their GIPS-compliant performance provided that only GIPS-compliant performance is presented for periods after 1 January 2000 and the firm discloses the periods of non-compliance. Firms must not link non-GIPS-compliant performance for periods beginning on or after 1 January 2000 to their GIPS-compliant performance.

Firms that manage private equity, real estate, and/or wrap fee/separately managed account (SMA) portfolios must also comply with Sections 6, 7, and 8, respectively, of the Provisions of the GIPS standards that became effective as of 1 January 2006.

Compliance

Firms must take all steps necessary to ensure that they have satisfied all the requirements of the GIPS standards before claiming compliance. Firms are strongly encouraged to perform periodic internal compliance checks. Implementing adequate internal controls during all stages of the investment performance process—from data input to preparing performance presentations—will instill confidence in the validity of performance presented as well as in the claim of compliance.

Firms may choose to have an independent third-party verification that tests the construction of the firm's composites as well as the firm's policies and procedures as they relate to compliance with the GIPS standards. The value of verification is widely recognized, and being verified is considered to be best practice. The GIPS Executive Committee strongly recommends that firms be verified. In addition to verification, firms may also choose to have specifically focused composite testing (performance examination) performed by an independent third-party verifier to provide additional assurance regarding a particular composite.

Effective Date

The effective date for the 2010 edition of the GIPS standards is 1 January 2011. Compliant presentations that include performance for periods that begin on or after 1 January 2011 must be prepared in accordance with the 2010 edition of the GIPS standards. Prior editions of the GIPS standards may be found on the GIPS website (www.gipsstandards.org).

Implementing a Global Standard

The presence of a local sponsoring organization for investment performance standards is essential for effective implementation and ongoing support of the GIPS standards within a jurisdiction. Such sponsors also provide an important link between the GIPS Executive Committee, the governing body for the GIPS standards, and the local markets in which investment managers operate.

The sponsor, by actively supporting the GIPS standards and the work of the GIPS Executive Committee, ensures that the jurisdiction's interests are taken into account as the GIPS standards are developed. Compliance with the GIPS standards is voluntary, and support from the local market sponsor helps to drive the adoption of the GIPS standards.

The GIPS Executive Committee strongly encourages countries without an investment performance standard to promote the GIPS standards as the local standard and translate them into the local language when necessary. Although the GIPS standards may be translated into many languages, if a discrepancy arises, the English version of the GIPS standards is the official governing version.

The GIPS Executive Committee will continue to promote the principles of fair representation and full disclosure and develop the GIPS standards so that they maintain their relevance within the changing investment management industry.

The self-regulatory nature of the GIPS standards necessitates a strong commitment to ethical integrity. Self-regulation also assists regulators in exercising their responsibility for ensuring the fair disclosure of information within financial markets. The GIPS Executive Committee encourages regulators to:

- Recognize the benefit of voluntary compliance with standards that represent global best practices;
- Give consideration to taking enforcement actions against firms that falsely claim compliance with the GIPS standards; and
- Recognize and encourage independent third-party verification.

Where existing laws, regulations, or industry standards already impose requirements related to the calculation and presentation of investment performance, firms are strongly encouraged to comply with the GIPS standards in addition to applicable regulatory requirements. Compliance with applicable law and/or regulation does not necessarily lead to compliance with the GIPS standards. In cases in which laws and/or regulations conflict with the GIPS standards, firms are required to comply with the laws and regulations and make full disclosure of the conflict in the compliant presentation.

**OPTIONAL
SEGMENT**

Sponsors

The presence of a local sponsoring organization for investment performance standards, known as a “sponsor,” is essential for effective implementation of the GIPS standards and ongoing support within a local market. Sponsors collectively form the GIPS Council, which provides a formal role in the ongoing development and oversight of the GIPS standards. Sponsors:

- Promote the GIPS standards locally;
- Provide local market support and input for the GIPS standards;
- Present local market–specific issues to the GIPS Executive Committee; and
- Participate in the governance of the GIPS standards via membership in the GIPS Council and Regional Investment Performance Subcommittees.

Each organization undergoes a formal review before being endorsed as a sponsor. Additional information and a current list of sponsors can be found on the GIPS website (www.gipsstandards.org).

Endorsed GIPS Sponsors (as of 1 January 2010)

Australia	Investment and Financial Services Association Limited— Performance Analyst Group
Austria	1) Österreichische Vereinigung für Finanzanalyse und Asset Management and 2) Vereinigung Österreichischer Investmentgesellschaften
Belgium	Belgian Asset Managers Association
Canada	Canadian Investment Performance Committee
Denmark	The Danish Society of Financial Analysts and CFA Denmark
France	1) Société Française des Analystes Financiers and 2) Association Française de la Gestion Financière

Germany	German Asset Management Standards Committee: 1) Bundesverband Investment und Asset Management e.V., 2) Deutsche Vereinigung für Finanzanalyse und Asset Management, and 3) German CFA Society
Greece	Hellenic CFA Society
Hong Kong	Local Sponsor: The Hong Kong Society of Financial Analysts
Hungary	1) CFA Society of Hungary and 2) the Association of Hungarian Investment Fund and Asset Management Companies
Ireland	Irish Association of Investment Managers
Italy	Italian Investment Performance Committee: 1) L'Associazione Bancaria Italiana, 2) L'Associazione Italiana degli Analisti Finanziari, 3) Assogestioni, 4) Sviluppo Mercato Fondi Pensione, 5) Assirevi, and 6) Italian CFA Society
Japan	The Security Analysts Association of Japan
Kazakhstan	Kazakhstan Association of Financial and Investment Analysts
Liechtenstein	Liechtenstein Bankers' Association
Micronesia	Asia Pacific Association for Fiduciary Studies
The Netherlands	The Netherlands Beroepsvereniging van Beleggingsprofessionals
New Zealand	CFA Society of New Zealand
Norway	The Norwegian Society of Financial Analysts
Pakistan	CFA Association of Pakistan
Portugal	Associação Portuguesa de Analista Financeiros
Russia	National League of Management Companies
Singapore	Investment Management Association of Singapore
South Africa	Association for Savings and Investment, South Africa
South Korea	Korea GIPS Committee
Spain	Asociación Española de Presentación de Resultados de Gestión
Sri Lanka	CFA Sri Lanka
Sweden	Swedish Society of Financial Analysts
Switzerland	Swiss Bankers Association
Ukraine	The Ukrainian Association of Investment Business
United Kingdom	UK Investment Performance Committee: 1) Association of British Insurers, 2) Investment Management Association, and 3) National Association of Pension Funds
United States	CFA Institute—US Investment Performance Committee

END OPTIONAL
SEGMENT

PROVISIONS OF THE GLOBAL INVESTMENT PERFORMANCE STANDARDS

I.

The provisions within the GIPS standards are divided into the following nine sections: Fundamentals of Compliance, Input Data, Calculation Methodology, Composite Construction, Disclosure, Presentation and Reporting, Real Estate, Private Equity, and Wrap Fee/Separately Managed Account (SMA) Portfolios.

The provisions for each section are categorized into requirements and recommendations. Firms must meet all the requirements to claim compliance with the GIPS standards. Firms are encouraged to implement as many of the recommendations as possible. These recommended provisions are considered to be industry best practice and assist firms in fully adhering to the spirit and intent of the GIPS standards.

- 0 Fundamentals of Compliance:** Several core principles create the foundation for the GIPS standards, including properly defining the firm, providing compliant presentations to all prospective clients, adhering to applicable laws and regulations, and ensuring that information presented is not false or misleading. Two important issues that a firm must consider when becoming compliant with the GIPS standards are the definition of the firm and the firm's definition of discretion. The definition of the firm is the foundation for firm-wide compliance and creates defined boundaries whereby total firm assets can be determined. The firm's definition of discretion establishes criteria to judge which portfolios must be included in a composite and is based on the firm's ability to implement its investment strategy.
- 1 Input Data:** Consistency of input data used to calculate performance is critical to effective compliance with the GIPS standards and establishes the foundation for full, fair, and comparable investment performance presentations. For periods beginning on or after 1 January 2011, all portfolios must be valued in accordance with the definition of fair value and the GIPS Valuation Principles.
- 2 Calculation Methodology:** Achieving comparability among investment management firms' performance presentations requires uniformity in methods used to calculate returns. The GIPS standards mandate the use of certain calculation methodologies to facilitate comparability.
- 3 Composite Construction:** A composite is an aggregation of one or more portfolios managed according to a similar investment mandate, objective, or strategy. The composite return is the asset-weighted average of the performance of all portfolios in the composite. Creating meaningful composites is essential to the fair presentation, consistency, and comparability of performance over time and among firms.
- 4 Disclosure:** Disclosures allow firms to elaborate on the data provided in the presentation and give the reader the proper context in which to understand the performance. To comply with the GIPS standards, firms must disclose certain information in all compliant presentations regarding their performance and the policies adopted by the firm. Although some disclosures are required for all firms, others are specific to certain circumstances and may not be applicable in all situations. One of the essential disclosures for every firm is the claim of compliance. Once a firm meets all the requirements of the GIPS standards, it must appropriately use the claim of compliance to indicate compliance with the GIPS standards. The 2010 edition of the GIPS standards includes a revised compliance statement that indicates if the firm has or has not been verified.
- 5 Presentation and Reporting:** After constructing the composites, gathering the input data, calculating returns, and determining the necessary disclosures, the firm must incorporate this information in presentations based on the requirements in the GIPS standards for presenting investment performance. No finite set of requirements can cover all potential situations or anticipate future developments in investment industry structure, technology, products, or practices. When appropriate, firms have the responsibility to include in GIPS-compliant presentations information not addressed by the GIPS standards.

- 6 Real Estate:** Unless otherwise noted, this section supplements all of the required and recommended provisions in Sections 0–5. Real estate provisions were first included in the 2005 edition of the GIPS standards and became effective 1 January 2006. The 2010 edition of the GIPS standards includes new provisions for closed-end real estate funds. Firms should note that certain provisions of Sections 0–5 do not apply to real estate investments or are superseded by provisions within Section 6. The provisions that do not apply have been noted within Section 6.
- 7 Private Equity:** Unless otherwise noted, this section supplements all of the required and recommended provisions in Sections 0–5. Private equity provisions were first included in the 2005 edition of the GIPS standards and became effective 1 January 2006. Firms should note that certain provisions in Sections 0–5 do not apply to private equity investments or are superseded by provisions within Section 7. The provisions that do not apply have been noted within Section 7.
- 8 Wrap Fee/Separately Managed Account (SMA) Portfolios:** Unless otherwise noted, this section supplements all of the required and recommended provisions in Sections 0–5. Firms should note that certain provisions in Sections 0–5 of the GIPS standards do not apply to wrap fee/SMA portfolios or are superseded by provisions within Section 8. The provisions that do not apply have been noted within Section 8.

Defined Terms: Words appearing in small capital letters in the GIPS standards are defined in the GIPS **Glossary**, which is located at the end of this reading.

0 Fundamentals of Compliance

Fundamentals of Compliance—Requirements

- 0.A.1** FIRMS MUST comply with all the REQUIREMENTS of the GIPS standards, including any updates, Guidance Statements, interpretations, Questions & Answers (Q&As), and clarifications published by CFA Institute and the GIPS Executive Committee, which are available on the GIPS standards website (www.gipsstandards.org) as well as in the *GIPS Handbook*.
- 0.A.2** FIRMS MUST comply with all applicable laws and regulations regarding the calculation and presentation of performance.
- 0.A.3** FIRMS MUST NOT present performance or performance-related information that is false or misleading.
- 0.A.4** The GIPS standards MUST be applied on a FIRM-wide basis.
- 0.A.5** FIRMS MUST document their policies and procedures used in establishing and maintaining compliance with the GIPS standards, including ensuring the existence and ownership of client assets, and MUST apply them consistently.
- 0.A.6** If the FIRM does not meet all the REQUIREMENTS of the GIPS standards, the FIRM MUST NOT represent or state that it is “in compliance with the Global Investment Performance Standards except for . . .” or make any other statements that may indicate partial compliance with the GIPS standards.
- 0.A.7** Statements referring to the calculation methodology as being “in accordance,” “in compliance,” or “consistent” with the Global Investment Performance Standards, or similar statements, are prohibited.

- 0.A.8** Statements referring to the performance of a single, existing client PORTFOLIO as being “calculated in accordance with the Global Investment Performance Standards” are prohibited, except when a GIPS-compliant FIRM reports the performance of an individual client’s PORTFOLIO to that client.
- 0.A.9** FIRMS MUST make every reasonable effort to provide a COMPLIANT PRESENTATION to all PROSPECTIVE CLIENTS. FIRMS MUST NOT choose to whom they present a COMPLIANT PRESENTATION. As long as a PROSPECTIVE CLIENT has received a COMPLIANT PRESENTATION within the previous 12 months, the FIRM has met this REQUIREMENT.
- 0.A.10** FIRMS MUST provide a complete list of COMPOSITE DESCRIPTIONS to any PROSPECTIVE CLIENT that makes such a request. FIRMS MUST include terminated COMPOSITES on the FIRM’S list of COMPOSITE DESCRIPTIONS for at least five years after the COMPOSITE TERMINATION DATE.
- 0.A.11** FIRMS MUST provide a COMPLIANT PRESENTATION for any COMPOSITE listed on the FIRM’S list of COMPOSITE DESCRIPTIONS to any PROSPECTIVE CLIENT that makes such a request.
- 0.A.12** FIRMS MUST be defined as an investment firm, subsidiary, or division held out to clients or PROSPECTIVE CLIENTS as a DISTINCT BUSINESS ENTITY.
- 0.A.13** For periods beginning on or after 1 January 2011, TOTAL FIRM ASSETS MUST be the aggregate FAIR VALUE of all discretionary and non-discretionary assets managed by the FIRM. This includes both fee-paying and non-fee-paying PORTFOLIOS.¹
- 0.A.14** TOTAL FIRM ASSETS MUST include assets assigned to a SUB-ADVISOR provided the FIRM has discretion over the selection of the SUB-ADVISOR.
- 0.A.15** Changes in a FIRM’S organization MUST NOT lead to alteration of historical COMPOSITE performance.
- 0.A.16** When the FIRM jointly markets with other firms, the FIRM claiming compliance with the GIPS standards MUST be sure that it is clearly defined and separate relative to other firms being marketed, and that it is clear which FIRM is claiming compliance.

Fundamentals of Compliance—Recommendations

- 0.B.1** FIRMS SHOULD comply with the RECOMMENDATIONS of the GIPS standards, including RECOMMENDATIONS in any updates, Guidance Statements, interpretations, Questions & Answers (Q&As), and clarifications published by CFA Institute and the GIPS Executive Committee, which will be made available on the GIPS website (www.gipsstandards.org) as well as in the *GIPS Handbook*.
- 0.B.2** FIRMS SHOULD be verified.
- 0.B.3** FIRMS SHOULD adopt the broadest, most meaningful definition of the FIRM. The scope of this definition SHOULD include all geographical (country, regional, etc.) offices operating under the same brand name regardless of the actual name of the individual investment management company.
- 0.B.4** FIRMS SHOULD provide to each existing client, on an annual basis, a COMPLIANT PRESENTATION of the COMPOSITE in which the client’s PORTFOLIO is included.

¹ For periods prior to 1 January 2011, TOTAL FIRM ASSETS MUST be the aggregate of the MARKET VALUE of all discretionary and non-discretionary assets under management within the defined FIRM.

1 Input Data

Input Data—Requirements

- 1.A.1 All data and information necessary to support all items included in a COMPLIANT PRESENTATION MUST be captured and maintained.
- 1.A.2 For periods beginning on or after 1 January 2011, PORTFOLIOS MUST be valued in accordance with the definition of FAIR VALUE and the GIPS Valuation Principles.²
- 1.A.3 FIRMS MUST value PORTFOLIOS in accordance with the COMPOSITE-specific valuation policy. PORTFOLIOS MUST be valued:
 - a For periods beginning on or after 1 January 2001, at least monthly.³
 - b For periods beginning on or after 1 January 2010, on the date of all LARGE CASH FLOWS. FIRMS MUST define LARGE CASH FLOW for each COMPOSITE to determine when PORTFOLIOS in that COMPOSITE MUST be valued.
 - c No more frequently than required by the valuation policy.
- 1.A.4 For periods beginning on or after 1 January 2010, FIRMS MUST value PORTFOLIOS as of the calendar month end or the last business day of the month.
- 1.A.5 For periods beginning on or after 1 January 2005, FIRMS MUST use TRADE DATE ACCOUNTING.
- 1.A.6 ACCRUAL ACCOUNTING MUST be used for fixed-income securities and all other investments that earn interest income. The value of fixed-income securities MUST include accrued income.
- 1.A.7 For periods beginning on or after 1 January 2006, COMPOSITES MUST have consistent beginning and ending annual valuation dates. Unless the COMPOSITE is reported on a non-calendar fiscal year, the beginning and ending valuation dates MUST be at calendar year end or on the last business day of the year.

Input Data—Recommendations

- 1.B.1 FIRMS SHOULD value PORTFOLIOS on the date of all EXTERNAL CASH FLOWS.
- 1.B.2 Valuations SHOULD be obtained from a qualified independent third party.
- 1.B.3 ACCRUAL ACCOUNTING SHOULD be used for dividends (as of the ex-dividend date).
- 1.B.4 FIRMS SHOULD accrue INVESTMENT MANAGEMENT FEES.

2 Calculation Methodology

Calculation Methodology—Requirements

- 2.A.1 TOTAL RETURNS MUST be used.
- 2.A.2 FIRMS MUST calculate TIME-WEIGHTED RATES OF RETURN that adjust for EXTERNAL CASH FLOWS. Both periodic and sub-period returns MUST be geometrically LINKED. EXTERNAL CASH FLOWS MUST be treated according to the FIRM'S COMPOSITE-specific policy. At a minimum:

² For periods prior to 1 January 2011, PORTFOLIO valuations MUST be based on MARKET VALUES (not cost basis or book values).

³ For periods prior to 1 January 2001, PORTFOLIOS MUST be valued at least quarterly.

- a For periods beginning on or after 1 January 2001, FIRMS MUST calculate PORTFOLIO returns at least monthly.
 - b For periods beginning on or after 1 January 2005, FIRMS MUST calculate PORTFOLIO returns that adjust for daily-weighted EXTERNAL CASH FLOWS.
- 2.A.3** Returns from cash and cash equivalents held in PORTFOLIOS MUST be included in all return calculations.
- 2.A.4** All returns MUST be calculated after the deduction of the actual TRADING EXPENSES incurred during the period. FIRMS MUST NOT use estimated TRADING EXPENSES.
- 2.A.5** If the actual TRADING EXPENSES cannot be identified and segregated from a BUNDLED FEE:
- a When calculating GROSS-OF-FEES returns, returns MUST be reduced by the entire BUNDLED FEE or the portion of the BUNDLED FEE that includes the TRADING EXPENSES. FIRMS MUST NOT use estimated TRADING EXPENSES.
 - b When calculating NET-OF-FEES returns, returns MUST be reduced by the entire BUNDLED FEE or the portion of the BUNDLED FEE that includes the TRADING EXPENSES and the INVESTMENT MANAGEMENT FEE. FIRMS MUST NOT use estimated TRADING EXPENSES.
- 2.A.6** COMPOSITE returns MUST be calculated by asset-weighting the individual PORTFOLIO returns using beginning-of-period values or a method that reflects both beginning-of-period values and EXTERNAL CASH FLOWS.
- 2.A.7** COMPOSITE returns MUST be calculated:
- a For periods beginning on or after 1 January 2006, by asset-weighting the individual PORTFOLIO returns at least quarterly.
 - b For periods beginning on or after 1 January 2010, by asset-weighting the individual PORTFOLIO returns at least monthly.

Calculation Methodology—Recommendations

- 2.B.1** Returns SHOULD be calculated net of non-reclaimable withholding taxes on dividends, interest, and capital gains. Reclaimable withholding taxes SHOULD be accrued.
- 2.B.2** For periods prior to 1 January 2010, FIRMS SHOULD calculate COMPOSITE returns by asset-weighting the individual PORTFOLIO returns at least monthly.

3 Composite Construction

Composite Construction—Requirements

- 3.A.1** All actual, fee-paying, discretionary PORTFOLIOS MUST be included in at least one COMPOSITE. Although non-fee-paying discretionary PORTFOLIOS may be included in a COMPOSITE (with appropriate disclosure), non-discretionary PORTFOLIOS MUST NOT be included in a FIRM'S COMPOSITES.
- 3.A.2** COMPOSITES MUST include only actual assets managed by the FIRM.
- 3.A.3** FIRMS MUST NOT LINK performance of simulated or model PORTFOLIOS with actual performance.

- 3.A.4** COMPOSITES MUST be defined according to investment mandate, objective, or strategy. COMPOSITES MUST include all PORTFOLIOS that meet the COMPOSITE DEFINITION. Any change to a COMPOSITE DEFINITION MUST NOT be applied retroactively. The COMPOSITE DEFINITION MUST be made available upon request.
- 3.A.5** COMPOSITES MUST include new PORTFOLIOS on a timely and consistent basis after each PORTFOLIO comes under management.
- 3.A.6** Terminated PORTFOLIOS MUST be included in the historical performance of the COMPOSITE up to the last full measurement period that each PORTFOLIO was under management.
- 3.A.7** PORTFOLIOS MUST NOT be switched from one COMPOSITE to another unless documented changes to a PORTFOLIO'S investment mandate, objective, or strategy or the redefinition of the COMPOSITE makes it appropriate. The historical performance of the PORTFOLIO MUST remain with the original COMPOSITE.
- 3.A.8** For periods beginning on or after 1 January 2010, a CARVE-OUT MUST NOT be included in a COMPOSITE unless the CARVE-OUT is managed separately with its own cash balance.⁴
- 3.A.9** If the FIRM sets a minimum asset level for PORTFOLIOS to be included in a COMPOSITE, the FIRM MUST NOT include PORTFOLIOS below the minimum asset level in that COMPOSITE. Any changes to a COMPOSITE-specific minimum asset level MUST NOT be applied retroactively.
- 3.A.10** FIRMS that wish to remove PORTFOLIOS from COMPOSITES in cases of SIGNIFICANT CASH FLOWS MUST define "significant" on an EX-ANTE, COMPOSITE-specific basis and MUST consistently follow the COMPOSITE-specific policy.

Composite Construction—Recommendations

- 3.B.1** If the FIRM sets a minimum asset level for PORTFOLIOS to be included in a COMPOSITE, the FIRM SHOULD NOT present a COMPLIANT PRESENTATION of the COMPOSITE to a PROSPECTIVE CLIENT known not to meet the COMPOSITE'S minimum asset level.
- 3.B.2** To remove the effect of a SIGNIFICANT CASH FLOW, the FIRM SHOULD use a TEMPORARY NEW ACCOUNT.

4 Disclosure

Disclosure—Requirements

- 4.A.1** Once a FIRM has met all the REQUIREMENTS of the GIPS standards, the FIRM MUST disclose its compliance with the GIPS standards using one of the following compliance statements. The claim of compliance MUST only be used in a COMPLIANT PRESENTATION.

For FIRMS that are verified:

"[Insert name of FIRM] claims compliance with the Global Investment Performance Standards (GIPS®) and has prepared and presented this report in compliance with the GIPS standards.

⁴ For periods prior to 1 January 2010, if CARVE-OUTS were included in a COMPOSITE, cash MUST have been allocated to the CARVE-OUT in a timely and consistent manner.

[Insert name of FIRM] has been independently verified for the periods [insert dates]. The verification report(s) is/are available upon request.

Verification assesses whether (1) the firm has complied with all the composite construction requirements of the GIPS standards on a firm-wide basis and (2) the firm's policies and procedures are designed to calculate and present performance in compliance with the GIPS standards. Verification does not ensure the accuracy of any specific composite presentation."

For COMPOSITES of a verified FIRM that have also had a PERFORMANCE EXAMINATION:

"[Insert name of FIRM] claims compliance with the Global Investment Performance Standards (GIPS®) and has prepared and presented this report in compliance with the GIPS standards. [Insert name of FIRM] has been independently verified for the periods [insert dates].

Verification assesses whether (1) the firm has complied with all the composite construction requirements of the GIPS standards on a firm-wide basis and (2) the firm's policies and procedures are designed to calculate and present performance in compliance with the GIPS standards. The [insert name of COMPOSITE] composite has been examined for the periods [insert dates]. The verification and performance examination reports are available upon request."

For FIRMS that have not been verified:

"[Insert name of FIRM] claims compliance with the Global Investment Performance Standards (GIPS®) and has prepared and presented this report in compliance with the GIPS standards. [Insert name of FIRM] has not been independently verified."

- 4.A.2** FIRMS MUST disclose the definition of the FIRM used to determine TOTAL FIRM ASSETS and FIRM-wide compliance.
- 4.A.3** FIRMS MUST disclose the COMPOSITE DESCRIPTION.
- 4.A.4** FIRMS MUST disclose the BENCHMARK DESCRIPTION.
- 4.A.5** When presenting GROSS-OF-FEES returns, FIRMS MUST disclose if any other fees are deducted in addition to the TRADING EXPENSES.
- 4.A.6** When presenting NET-OF-FEES returns, FIRMS MUST disclose:
 - a** If any other fees are deducted in addition to the INVESTMENT MANAGEMENT FEES and TRADING EXPENSES;
 - b** If model or actual INVESTMENT MANAGEMENT FEES are used; and
 - c** If returns are net of any PERFORMANCE-BASED FEES.
- 4.A.7** FIRMS MUST disclose the currency used to express performance.
- 4.A.8** FIRMS MUST disclose which measure of INTERNAL DISPERSION is presented.
- 4.A.9** FIRMS MUST disclose the FEE SCHEDULE appropriate to the COMPLIANT PRESENTATION.
- 4.A.10** FIRMS MUST disclose the COMPOSITE CREATION DATE.
- 4.A.11** FIRMS MUST disclose that the FIRM'S list of COMPOSITE DESCRIPTIONS is available upon request.
- 4.A.12** FIRMS MUST disclose that policies for valuing PORTFOLIOS, calculating performance, and preparing COMPLIANT PRESENTATIONS are available upon request.

- 4.A.13** FIRMS MUST disclose the presence, use, and extent of leverage, derivatives, and short positions, if material, including a description of the frequency of use and characteristics of the instruments sufficient to identify risks.
- 4.A.14** FIRMS MUST disclose all significant events that would help a PROSPECTIVE CLIENT interpret the COMPLIANT PRESENTATION.
- 4.A.15** For any performance presented for periods prior to 1 January 2000 that does not comply with the GIPS standards, FIRMS MUST disclose the periods of non-compliance.
- 4.A.16** If the FIRM is redefined, the FIRM MUST disclose the date of, description of, and reason for the redefinition.
- 4.A.17** If a COMPOSITE is redefined, the FIRM MUST disclose the date of, description of, and reason for the redefinition.
- 4.A.18** FIRMS MUST disclose changes to the name of a COMPOSITE.
- 4.A.19** FIRMS MUST disclose the minimum asset level, if any, below which PORTFOLIOS are not included in a COMPOSITE. FIRMS MUST also disclose any changes to the minimum asset level.
- 4.A.20** FIRMS MUST disclose relevant details of the treatment of withholding taxes on dividends, interest income, and capital gains, if material. FIRMS MUST also disclose if BENCHMARK returns are net of withholding taxes if this information is available.
- 4.A.21** For periods beginning on or after 1 January 2011, FIRMS MUST disclose and describe any known material differences in exchange rates or valuation sources used among the PORTFOLIOS within a COMPOSITE, and between the COMPOSITE and the BENCHMARK.⁵
- 4.A.22** If the COMPLIANT PRESENTATION conforms with laws and/or regulations that conflict with the REQUIREMENTS of the GIPS standards, FIRMS MUST disclose this fact and disclose the manner in which the laws and/or regulations conflict with the GIPS standards.
- 4.A.23** For periods prior to 1 January 2010, if CARVE-OUTS are included in a COMPOSITE, FIRMS MUST disclose the policy used to allocate cash to CARVE-OUTS.
- 4.A.24** If a COMPOSITE contains PORTFOLIOS with BUNDLED FEES, FIRMS MUST disclose the types of fees that are included in the BUNDLED FEE.
- 4.A.25** For periods beginning on or after 1 January 2006, FIRMS MUST disclose the use of a SUB-ADVISOR and the periods a SUB-ADVISOR was used.
- 4.A.26** For periods prior to 1 January 2010, FIRMS MUST disclose if any PORTFOLIOS were not valued at calendar month end or on the last business day of the month.
- 4.A.27** For periods beginning on or after 1 January 2011, FIRMS MUST disclose the use of subjective unobservable inputs for valuing PORTFOLIO investments (as described in the GIPS Valuation Principles) if the PORTFOLIO investments valued using subjective unobservable inputs are material to the COMPOSITE.
- 4.A.28** For periods beginning on or after 1 January 2011, FIRMS MUST disclose if the COMPOSITE's valuation hierarchy materially differs from the RECOMMENDED hierarchy in the GIPS Valuation Principles.
- 4.A.29** If the FIRM determines no appropriate BENCHMARK for the COMPOSITE exists, the FIRM MUST disclose why no BENCHMARK is presented.

⁵ For periods prior to 1 January 2011, FIRMS MUST disclose and describe any known inconsistencies in the exchange rates used among the PORTFOLIOS within a COMPOSITE and between the COMPOSITE and the BENCHMARK.

- 4.A.30** If the FIRM changes the BENCHMARK, the FIRM MUST disclose the date of, description of, and reason for the change.
- 4.A.31** If a custom BENCHMARK or combination of multiple BENCHMARKS is used, the FIRM MUST disclose the BENCHMARK components, weights, and rebalancing process.
- 4.A.32** If the FIRM has adopted a SIGNIFICANT CASH FLOW policy for a specific COMPOSITE, the FIRM MUST disclose how the FIRM defines a SIGNIFICANT CASH FLOW for that COMPOSITE and for which periods.
- 4.A.33** FIRMS MUST disclose if the three-year annualized EX-POST STANDARD DEVIATION of the COMPOSITE and/or BENCHMARK is not presented because 36 monthly returns are not available.
- 4.A.34** If the FIRM determines that the three-year annualized EX-POST STANDARD DEVIATION is not relevant or appropriate, the FIRM MUST:
 - a** Describe why EX-POST STANDARD DEVIATION is not relevant or appropriate; and
 - b** Describe the additional risk measure presented and why it was selected.
- 4.A.35** FIRMS MUST disclose if the performance from a past firm or affiliation is LINKED to the performance of the FIRM.

Disclosure—Recommendations

- 4.B.1** FIRMS SHOULD disclose material changes to valuation policies and/or methodologies.
- 4.B.2** FIRMS SHOULD disclose material changes to calculation policies and/or methodologies.
- 4.B.3** FIRMS SHOULD disclose material differences between the BENCHMARK and the COMPOSITE'S investment mandate, objective, or strategy.
- 4.B.4** FIRMS SHOULD disclose the key assumptions used to value PORTFOLIO investments.
- 4.B.5** If a parent company contains multiple firms, each FIRM within the parent company SHOULD disclose a list of the other firms contained within the parent company.
- 4.B.6** For periods prior to 1 January 2011, FIRMS SHOULD disclose the use of subjective unobservable inputs for valuing PORTFOLIO investments (as described in the GIPS Valuation Principles) if the PORTFOLIO investments valued using subjective unobservable inputs are material to the COMPOSITE.
- 4.B.7** For periods prior to 1 January 2006, FIRMS SHOULD disclose the use of a SUB-ADVISOR and the periods a SUB-ADVISOR was used.
- 4.B.8** FIRMS SHOULD disclose if a COMPOSITE contains PROPRIETARY ASSETS.

5 Presentation and Reporting

Presentation and Reporting—Requirements

- 5.A.1** The following items MUST be presented in each COMPLIANT PRESENTATION:
 - a** At least five years of performance (or for the period since the FIRM'S inception or the COMPOSITE INCEPTION DATE if the FIRM or the COMPOSITE has been in existence less than five years) that meets the REQUIREMENTS of the GIPS standards. After a FIRM presents a minimum of five years of GIPS-compliant performance (or for the period since the FIRM'S inception

or the COMPOSITE INCEPTION DATE if the FIRM or the COMPOSITE has been in existence less than five years), the FIRM MUST present an additional year of performance each year, building up to a minimum of 10 years of GIPS-compliant performance.

- b** COMPOSITE returns for each annual period. COMPOSITE returns MUST be clearly identified as GROSS-OF-FEES or NET-OF-FEES.
 - c** For COMPOSITES with a COMPOSITE INCEPTION DATE of 1 January 2011 or later, when the initial period is less than a full year, returns from the COMPOSITE INCEPTION DATE through the initial annual period end.
 - d** For COMPOSITES with a COMPOSITE TERMINATION DATE of 1 January 2011 or later, returns from the last annual period end through the COMPOSITE TERMINATION DATE.
 - e** The TOTAL RETURN for the BENCHMARK for each annual period. The BENCHMARK MUST reflect the investment mandate, objective, or strategy of the COMPOSITE.
 - f** The number of PORTFOLIOS in the COMPOSITE as of each annual period end. If the COMPOSITE contains five or fewer PORTFOLIOS at period end, the number of PORTFOLIOS is not REQUIRED.
 - g** COMPOSITE assets as of each annual period end.
 - h** Either TOTAL FIRM ASSETS or COMPOSITE assets as a percentage of TOTAL FIRM ASSETS, as of each annual period end.
 - i** A measure of INTERNAL DISPERSION of individual PORTFOLIO returns for each annual period. If the COMPOSITE contains five or fewer PORTFOLIOS for the full year, a measure of INTERNAL DISPERSION is not REQUIRED.
- 5.A.2** For periods ending on or after 1 January 2011, FIRMS MUST present, as of each annual period end:
- a** The three-year annualized EX-POST STANDARD DEVIATION (using monthly returns) of both the COMPOSITE and the BENCHMARK; and
 - b** An additional three-year EX-POST risk measure for the BENCHMARK (if available and appropriate) and the COMPOSITE, if the FIRM determines that the three-year annualized EX-POST STANDARD DEVIATION is not relevant or appropriate. The PERIODICITY of the COMPOSITE and the BENCHMARK MUST be identical when calculating the EX-POST risk measure.
- 5.A.3** FIRMS MUST NOT LINK non-GIPS-compliant performance for periods beginning on or after 1 January 2000 to their GIPS-compliant performance. FIRMS may LINK non-GIPS-compliant performance to GIPS-compliant performance provided that only GIPS-compliant performance is presented for periods beginning on or after 1 January 2000.
- 5.A.4** Returns for periods of less than one year MUST NOT be annualized.
- 5.A.5** For periods beginning on or after 1 January 2006 and ending prior to 1 January 2011, if a COMPOSITE includes CARVE-OUTS, the FIRM MUST present the percentage of COMPOSITE assets represented by CARVE-OUTS as of each annual period end.
- 5.A.6** If a COMPOSITE includes non-fee-paying PORTFOLIOS, the FIRM MUST present the percentage of COMPOSITE assets represented by non-fee-paying PORTFOLIOS as of each annual period end.
- 5.A.7** If a COMPOSITE includes PORTFOLIOS with BUNDLED FEES, the FIRM MUST present the percentage of COMPOSITE assets represented by PORTFOLIOS with BUNDLED FEES as of each annual period end.

- 5.A.8 a** Performance of a past firm or affiliation **MUST** be **LINKED** to or used to represent the historical performance of a new or acquiring **FIRM** if, on a **COMPOSITE**-specific basis:
- i.** Substantially all of the investment decision makers are employed by the new or acquiring **FIRM** (e.g., research department staff, portfolio managers, and other relevant staff);
 - ii.** The decision-making process remains substantially intact and independent within the new or acquiring **FIRM**; and
 - iii.** The new or acquiring **FIRM** has records that document and support the performance.
- b** If a **FIRM** acquires another firm or affiliation, the **FIRM** has one year to bring any non-compliant assets into compliance.

Presentation and Reporting—Recommendations

- 5.B.1** **FIRMS SHOULD** present **GROSS-OF-FEES** returns.
- 5.B.2** **FIRMS SHOULD** present the following items:
- a** Cumulative returns of the **COMPOSITE** and the **BENCHMARK** for all periods;
 - b** Equal-weighted mean and median **COMPOSITE** returns;
 - c** Quarterly and/or monthly returns; and
 - d** Annualized **COMPOSITE** and **BENCHMARK** returns for periods longer than 12 months.
- 5.B.3** For periods prior to 1 January 2011, **FIRMS SHOULD** present the three-year annualized **EX-POST STANDARD DEVIATION** (using monthly returns) of the **COMPOSITE** and the **BENCHMARK** as of each annual period end.
- 5.B.4** For each period for which an annualized **EX-POST STANDARD DEVIATION** of the **COMPOSITE** and the **BENCHMARK** are presented, the corresponding annualized return of the **COMPOSITE** and the **BENCHMARK SHOULD** also be presented.
- 5.B.5** For each period for which an annualized return of the **COMPOSITE** and the **BENCHMARK** are presented, the corresponding annualized **EX-POST STANDARD DEVIATION** (using monthly returns) of the **COMPOSITE** and the **BENCHMARK SHOULD** also be presented.
- 5.B.6** **FIRMS SHOULD** present additional relevant **COMPOSITE**-level **EX-POST** risk measures.
- 5.B.7** **FIRMS SHOULD** present more than 10 years of annual performance in the **COMPLIANT PRESENTATION**.
- 5.B.8** **FIRMS SHOULD** comply with the **GIPS** standards for all historical periods.
- 5.B.9** **FIRMS SHOULD** update **COMPLIANT PRESENTATIONS** quarterly.

6 Real Estate

Unless otherwise noted, the following **REAL ESTATE** provisions supplement the **REQUIRED** and **RECOMMENDED** provisions of the **GIPS** standards in Sections 0–5.

REAL ESTATE provisions were first included in the **GIPS** standards in 2005 and became effective 1 January 2006. All **COMPLIANT PRESENTATIONS** that included **REAL ESTATE** performance for periods beginning on or after 1 January 2006 were **REQUIRED** to meet all the **REQUIREMENTS** of the **REAL ESTATE** provisions of the 2005 edition of the **GIPS** standards. The following **REAL ESTATE** provisions are effective 1

January 2011. All REAL ESTATE COMPOSITES that include performance for periods beginning on or after 1 January 2011 MUST comply with all the REQUIREMENTS and SHOULD adhere to the RECOMMENDATIONS of the following REAL ESTATE provisions.

The following investment types are not considered REAL ESTATE and, therefore, MUST follow Sections 0–5 of the Global Investment Performance Standards:

- Publicly traded REAL ESTATE securities;
- Commercial mortgage-backed securities (CMBS); and
- Private debt investments, including commercial and residential loans where the expected return is solely related to contractual interest rates without any participation in the economic performance of the underlying REAL ESTATE.

Real Estate—Requirements

Input Data—Requirements (the following provisions do not apply: 1.A.3.a, 1.A.3.b, and 1.A.4)

- 6.A.1** For periods beginning on or after 1 January 2011, REAL ESTATE investments MUST be valued in accordance with the definition of FAIR VALUE and the GIPS Valuation Principles in Chapter II.⁶
- 6.A.2** For periods beginning on or after 1 January 2008, REAL ESTATE investments MUST be valued at least quarterly.⁷
- 6.A.3** For periods beginning on or after 1 January 2010, FIRMS MUST value PORTFOLIOS as of each quarter end or the last business day of each quarter.
- 6.A.4** REAL ESTATE investments MUST have an EXTERNAL VALUATION:
 - a** For periods prior to 1 January 2012, at least once every 36 months.
 - b** For periods beginning on or after 1 January 2012, at least once every 12 months unless client agreements stipulate otherwise, in which case REAL ESTATE investments MUST have an EXTERNAL VALUATION at least once every 36 months or per the client agreement if the client agreement requires EXTERNAL VALUATIONS more frequently than every 36 months.
- 6.A.5** EXTERNAL VALUATIONS must be performed by an independent external PROFESSIONALLY DESIGNATED, CERTIFIED, OR LICENSED COMMERCIAL PROPERTY VALUER/APPRaiser. In markets where these professionals are not available, the FIRM MUST take the necessary steps to ensure that only well-qualified independent property valuers or appraisers are used.

Calculation Methodology—Requirements (the following provisions do not apply: 2.A.2.a, 2.A.4, and 2.A.7)

- 6.A.6** FIRMS MUST calculate PORTFOLIO returns at least quarterly.
- 6.A.7** All returns MUST be calculated after the deduction of actual TRANSACTION EXPENSES incurred during the period.

⁶ For periods prior to 1 January 2011, REAL ESTATE investments MUST be valued at MARKET VALUE (as previously defined for REAL ESTATE in the 2005 edition of the GIPS standards).

⁷ For periods prior to 1 January 2008, REAL ESTATE investments MUST be valued at least once every 12 months.

- 6.A.8** For periods beginning on or after 1 January 2011, INCOME RETURNS and CAPITAL RETURNS (component returns) MUST be calculated separately using geometrically LINKED TIME-WEIGHTED RATES OF RETURN.
- 6.A.9** COMPOSITE TIME-WEIGHTED RATES OF RETURN, including component returns, MUST be calculated by asset-weighting the individual PORTFOLIO returns at least quarterly.

Disclosure—Requirements (the following provisions do not apply: 4.A.5, 4.A.6.a, 4.A.15, 4.A.26, 4.A.33, and 4.A.34)

- 6.A.10** The following items MUST be disclosed in each COMPLIANT PRESENTATION:
- a** The FIRM'S description of discretion;
 - b** The INTERNAL VALUATION methodologies used to value REAL ESTATE investments for the most recent period;
 - c** For periods beginning on or after 1 January 2011, material changes to valuation policies and/or methodologies;
 - d** For periods beginning on or after 1 January 2011, material differences between an EXTERNAL VALUATION and the valuation used in performance reporting and the reason for the differences;
 - e** The frequency REAL ESTATE investments are valued by an independent external PROFESSIONALLY DESIGNATED, CERTIFIED, OR LICENSED COMMERCIAL PROPERTY VALUER/APPRaiser;
 - f** When component returns are calculated separately using geometrically LINKED TIME-WEIGHTED RATES OF RETURN; and
 - g** For periods prior to 1 January 2011, if component returns are adjusted such that the sum of the INCOME RETURN and the CAPITAL RETURN equals the TOTAL RETURN.
- 6.A.11** For any performance presented for periods prior to 1 January 2006 that does not comply with the GIPS standards, FIRMS MUST disclose the periods of non-compliance.
- 6.A.12** When presenting GROSS-OF-FEES returns, FIRMS MUST disclose if any other fees are deducted in addition to the TRANSACTION EXPENSES.
- 6.A.13** When presenting NET-OF-FEES returns, FIRMS MUST disclose if any other fees are deducted in addition to the INVESTMENT MANAGEMENT FEES and TRANSACTION EXPENSES.

Presentation and Reporting—Requirements (the following provisions do not apply: 5.A.1.i, 5.A.2, and 5.A.3)

- 6.A.14** FIRMS MUST present component returns in addition to TOTAL RETURNS. COMPOSITE component returns MUST be clearly identified as GROSS-OF-FEES OR NET-OF-FEES.
- 6.A.15** FIRMS MUST NOT LINK non-GIPS-compliant performance for periods beginning on or after 1 January 2006 to their GIPS-compliant performance. FIRMS may LINK non-GIPS-compliant performance to their GIPS-compliant performance provided that only GIPS-compliant performance is presented for periods beginning on or after 1 January 2006.
- 6.A.16** The following items MUST be presented in each COMPLIANT PRESENTATION:

- a As a measure of INTERNAL DISPERSION, high and low annual TIME-WEIGHTED RATES OF RETURN for the individual PORTFOLIOS in the COMPOSITE. If the COMPOSITE contains five or fewer PORTFOLIOS for the full year, a measure of INTERNAL DISPERSION is not REQUIRED.
- b As of each annual period end, the percentage of COMPOSITE assets valued using an EXTERNAL VALUATION during the annual period.

The following provisions are additional REQUIREMENTS for REAL ESTATE CLOSED-END FUND COMPOSITES:

Calculation Methodology—Requirements

- 6.A.17 FIRMS MUST calculate annualized SINCE INCEPTION INTERNAL RATES OF RETURN (SI-IRR).
- 6.A.18 The SI-IRR MUST be calculated using quarterly cash flows at a minimum.

Composite Construction—Requirements

- 6.A.19 COMPOSITES MUST be defined by VINTAGE YEAR and investment mandate, objective, or strategy. The COMPOSITE DEFINITION MUST remain consistent throughout the life of the COMPOSITE.

Disclosure—Requirements

- 6.A.20 FIRMS MUST disclose the FINAL LIQUIDATION DATE for liquidated COMPOSITES.
- 6.A.21 FIRMS MUST disclose the frequency of cash flows used in the SI-IRR calculation.
- 6.A.22 FIRMS MUST disclose the VINTAGE YEAR of the COMPOSITE and how the VINTAGE YEAR is defined.

Presentation and Reporting—Requirements

- 6.A.23 The following items MUST be presented in each COMPLIANT PRESENTATION:
 - a FIRMS MUST present the NET-OF-FEES SI-IRR of the COMPOSITE through each annual period end. FIRMS MUST initially present at least five years of performance (or for the period since the FIRM'S inception or the COMPOSITE INCEPTION DATE if the FIRM or the COMPOSITE has been in existence less than five years) that meets the REQUIREMENTS of the GIPS standards. Each subsequent year, FIRMS MUST present an additional year of performance.
 - b For periods beginning on or after 1 January 2011, when the initial period is less than a full year, FIRMS MUST present the non-annualized NET-OF-FEES SI-IRR through the initial annual period end.
 - c For periods ending on or after 1 January 2011, FIRMS MUST present the NET-OF-FEES SI-IRR through the COMPOSITE FINAL LIQUIDATION DATE.
- 6.A.24 If the GROSS-OF-FEES SI-IRR of the COMPOSITE is presented in the COMPLIANT PRESENTATION, FIRMS MUST present the GROSS-OF-FEES SI-IRR of the COMPOSITE for the same periods as the NET-OF-FEES SI-IRR is presented.
- 6.A.25 FIRMS MUST present, as of each annual period end:
 - a COMPOSITE SINCE INCEPTION PAID-IN CAPITAL;
 - b COMPOSITE SINCE INCEPTION DISTRIBUTIONS;
 - c COMPOSITE cumulative COMMITTED CAPITAL;
 - d TOTAL VALUE to SINCE INCEPTION PAID-IN CAPITAL (INVESTMENT MULTIPLE or TVPI);

- e SINCE INCEPTION DISTRIBUTIONS to SINCE INCEPTION PAID-IN CAPITAL (REALIZATION MULTIPLE or DPI);
 - f SINCE INCEPTION PAID-IN CAPITAL to cumulative COMMITTED CAPITAL (PIC MULTIPLE); and
 - g RESIDUAL VALUE to SINCE INCEPTION PAID-IN CAPITAL (UNREALIZED MULTIPLE or RVPI).
- 6.A.26** FIRMS MUST present the SI-IRR of the BENCHMARK through each annual period end. The BENCHMARK MUST:
- a Reflect the investment mandate, objective, or strategy of the COMPOSITE;
 - b Be presented for the same time period as presented for the COMPOSITE; and
 - c Be the same VINTAGE YEAR as the COMPOSITE.

Real Estate—Recommendations

Input Data—Recommendations (the following provision does not apply: 1.B.1)

- 6.B.1** For periods prior to 1 January 2012, REAL ESTATE investments SHOULD be valued by an independent external PROFESSIONALLY DESIGNATED, CERTIFIED, OR LICENSED COMMERCIAL PROPERTY VALUER/APPRaiser at least once every 12 months.
- 6.B.2** REAL ESTATE investments SHOULD be valued as of the annual period end by an independent external PROFESSIONALLY DESIGNATED, CERTIFIED, OR LICENSED COMMERCIAL PROPERTY VALUER/APPRaiser.

Disclosure—Recommendations

- 6.B.3** FIRMS SHOULD disclose the basis of accounting for the PORTFOLIOS in the COMPOSITE (e.g., US GAAP, IFRS).
- 6.B.4** FIRMS SHOULD explain and disclose material differences between the valuation used in performance reporting and the valuation used in financial reporting as of each annual period end.
- 6.B.5** For periods prior to 1 January 2011, FIRMS SHOULD disclose material changes to valuation policies and/or methodologies.

Presentation and Reporting—Recommendations (the following provisions do not apply: 5.B.3, 5.B.4, and 5.B.5)

- 6.B.6** FIRMS SHOULD present both GROSS-OF-FEES and NET-OF-FEES returns.
- 6.B.7** FIRMS SHOULD present the percentage of the total value of COMPOSITE assets that are not REAL ESTATE as of each annual period end.
- 6.B.8** FIRMS SHOULD present the component returns of the BENCHMARK, if available.

The following provision is an additional RECOMMENDATION for REAL ESTATE CLOSED-END FUND COMPOSITES:

Calculation Methodology—Recommendations

- 6.B.9** The SI-IRR SHOULD be calculated using daily cash flows.

7 Private Equity

Unless otherwise noted, the following PRIVATE EQUITY provisions supplement the REQUIRED and RECOMMENDED provisions of the GIPS standards in Sections 0–5.

PRIVATE EQUITY provisions were first included in the GIPS standards in 2005 and became effective 1 January 2006. All COMPLIANT PRESENTATIONS that included PRIVATE EQUITY performance for periods ending on or after 1 January 2006 were REQUIRED to meet all the REQUIREMENTS of the PRIVATE EQUITY provisions of the 2005 edition of the GIPS standards. The following PRIVATE EQUITY provisions are effective 1 January 2011. All PRIVATE EQUITY COMPOSITES that include performance for periods ending on or after 1 January 2011 MUST comply with all the REQUIREMENTS and SHOULD comply with the RECOMMENDATIONS of the following PRIVATE EQUITY provisions.

The following are provisions that apply to the calculation and presentation of PRIVATE EQUITY investments made by fixed life, fixed commitment PRIVATE EQUITY investment vehicles including PRIMARY FUNDS and FUNDS OF FUNDS. These provisions also apply to fixed life, fixed commitment SECONDARY FUNDS, which MUST apply either the provisions applicable to PRIMARY FUNDS or the provisions applicable to FUNDS OF FUNDS, depending on which form the SECONDARY FUND uses to make investments. PRIVATE EQUITY OPEN-END and EVERGREEN FUNDS MUST follow Sections 0–5 in the Provisions of the Global Investment Performance Standards. REAL ESTATE CLOSED-END FUNDS MUST follow Section 6 in the Provisions of the Global Investment Performance Standards.

Private Equity—Requirements

Input Data—Requirements (the following provisions do not apply: 1.A.3.a, 1.A.3.b, and 1.A.4)

- 7.A.1** For periods ending on or after 1 January 2011, PRIVATE EQUITY investments MUST be valued in accordance with the definition of FAIR VALUE and the GIPS Valuation Principles in Chapter II.⁸
- 7.A.2** PRIVATE EQUITY investments MUST be valued at least annually.

Calculation Methodology—Requirements (the following provisions do not apply: 2.A.2, 2.A.4, 2.A.6, and 2.A.7)

- 7.A.3** FIRMS MUST calculate annualized SINCE INCEPTION INTERNAL RATES OF RETURN (SI-IRR).
- 7.A.4** For periods ending on or after 1 January 2011, the SI-IRR MUST be calculated using daily cash flows. Stock DISTRIBUTIONS MUST be included as cash flows and MUST be valued at the time of DISTRIBUTION.⁹
- 7.A.5** All returns MUST be calculated after the deduction of actual TRANSACTION EXPENSES incurred during the period.
- 7.A.6** NET-OF-FEES returns MUST be net of actual INVESTMENT MANAGEMENT FEES (including CARRIED INTEREST).
- 7.A.7** For FUNDS OF FUNDS, all returns MUST be net of all underlying partnership and/or fund fees and expenses, including CARRIED INTEREST.

⁸ For periods ending prior to 1 January 2011, PRIVATE EQUITY investments MUST be valued according to either the GIPS Private Equity Valuation Principles in Appendix D of the 2005 edition of the GIPS standards or the GIPS Valuation Principles in the 2010 edition of the GIPS standards.

⁹ For periods ending prior to 1 January 2011, the SI-IRR MUST be calculated using either daily or monthly cash flows.

Composite Construction—Requirements (the following provision does not apply: 3.A.10)

- 7.A.8** COMPOSITE DEFINITIONS MUST remain consistent throughout the life of the COMPOSITE.
- 7.A.9** PRIMARY FUNDS MUST be included in at least one COMPOSITE defined by VINTAGE YEAR and investment mandate, objective, or strategy.
- 7.A.10** FUNDS OF FUNDS MUST be included in at least one COMPOSITE defined by VINTAGE YEAR of the FUND OF FUNDS and/or investment mandate, objective, or strategy.

Disclosure—Requirements (the following provisions do not apply: 4.A.5, 4.A.6.a, 4.A.6.b, 4.A.8, 4.A.15, 4.A.26, 4.A.32, 4.A.33, and 4.A.34)

- 7.A.11** FIRMS MUST disclose the VINTAGE YEAR of the COMPOSITE and how the VINTAGE YEAR is defined.
- 7.A.12** FIRMS MUST disclose the FINAL LIQUIDATION DATE for liquidated COMPOSITES.
- 7.A.13** FIRMS MUST disclose the valuation methodologies used to value PRIVATE EQUITY investments for the most recent period.
- 7.A.14** For periods ending on or after 1 January 2011, FIRMS MUST disclose material changes to valuation policies and/or methodologies.
- 7.A.15** If the FIRM adheres to any industry valuation guidelines in addition to the GIPS Valuation Principles, the FIRM MUST disclose which guidelines have been applied.
- 7.A.16** FIRMS MUST disclose the calculation methodology used for the BENCHMARK. If FIRMS present the PUBLIC MARKET EQUIVALENT of a COMPOSITE as a BENCHMARK, FIRMS MUST disclose the index used to calculate the PUBLIC MARKET EQUIVALENT.
- 7.A.17** FIRMS MUST disclose the frequency of cash flows used in the SI-IRR calculation if daily cash flows are not used for periods prior to 1 January 2011.
- 7.A.18** For GROSS-OF-FEES returns, FIRMS MUST disclose if any other fees are deducted in addition to the TRANSACTION EXPENSES.
- 7.A.19** For NET-OF-FEES returns, FIRMS MUST disclose if any other fees are deducted in addition to the INVESTMENT MANAGEMENT FEES and TRANSACTION EXPENSES.
- 7.A.20** For any performance presented for periods ending prior to 1 January 2006 that does not comply with the GIPS standards, FIRMS MUST disclose the periods of non-compliance.

Presentation and Reporting—Requirements (the following provisions do not apply: 5.A.1.a, 5.A.1.b, 5.A.1.c, 5.A.1.d, 5.A.1.e, 5.A.1.i, 5.A.2, and 5.A.3)

- 7.A.21** The following items MUST be presented in each COMPLIANT PRESENTATION:
 - a** FIRMS MUST present both the NET-OF-FEES and GROSS-OF-FEES SI-IRR of the COMPOSITE through each annual period end. FIRMS MUST initially present at least five years of performance (or for the period since the FIRM's inception or the COMPOSITE INCEPTION DATE if the FIRM or the COMPOSITE has been in existence less than five years) that meets the REQUIREMENTS of the GIPS standards. Each subsequent year, FIRMS MUST present an additional year of performance. COMPOSITE returns MUST be clearly identified as GROSS-OF-FEES or NET-OF-FEES.

- b For periods beginning on or after 1 January 2011, when the initial period is less than a full year, FIRMS MUST present the non-annualized NET-OF-FEES and GROSS-OF-FEES SI-IRR through the initial annual period end.
 - c For periods ending on or after 1 January 2011, FIRMS MUST present the NET-OF-FEES and GROSS-OF-FEES SI-IRR through the COMPOSITE FINAL LIQUIDATION DATE.
- 7.A.22** For periods ending on or after 1 January 2011, for FUND OF FUNDS COMPOSITES, if the COMPOSITE is defined only by investment mandate, objective, or strategy, FIRMS MUST also present the SI-IRR of the underlying investments aggregated by VINTAGE YEAR as well as other measures as REQUIRED in 7.A.23. These measures MUST be presented gross of the FUND OF FUNDS INVESTMENT MANAGEMENT FEES and MUST be presented as of the most recent annual period end.
- 7.A.23** FIRMS MUST present as of each annual period end:
 - a COMPOSITE SINCE INCEPTION PAID-IN CAPITAL;
 - b COMPOSITE SINCE INCEPTION DISTRIBUTIONS;
 - c COMPOSITE cumulative COMMITTED CAPITAL;
 - d TOTAL VALUE to SINCE INCEPTION PAID-IN CAPITAL (INVESTMENT MULTIPLE or TVPI);
 - e SINCE INCEPTION DISTRIBUTIONS to SINCE INCEPTION PAID-IN CAPITAL (REALIZATION MULTIPLE or DPI);
 - f SINCE INCEPTION PAID-IN CAPITAL to cumulative COMMITTED CAPITAL (PIC MULTIPLE); and
 - g RESIDUAL VALUE to SINCE INCEPTION PAID-IN CAPITAL (UNREALIZED MULTIPLE or RVPI).
- 7.A.24** FIRMS MUST present the SI-IRR for the BENCHMARK through each annual period end. The BENCHMARK MUST:
 - a Reflect the investment mandate, objective, or strategy of the COMPOSITE;
 - b Be presented for the same time periods as presented for the COMPOSITE; and
 - c Be the same VINTAGE YEAR as the COMPOSITE.
- 7.A.25** For FUND OF FUNDS COMPOSITES, if the COMPOSITE is defined only by investment mandate, objective, or strategy and a BENCHMARK is presented for the underlying investments, the BENCHMARK MUST be the same VINTAGE YEAR and investment mandate, objective, or strategy as the underlying investments.
- 7.A.26** For periods ending on or after 1 January 2011, for FUND OF FUNDS COMPOSITES, FIRMS MUST present the percentage, if any, of COMPOSITE assets that is invested in DIRECT INVESTMENTS (rather than in fund investment vehicles) as of each annual period end.
- 7.A.27** For periods ending on or after 1 January 2011, for PRIMARY FUND COMPOSITES, FIRMS MUST present the percentage, if any, of COMPOSITE assets that is invested in fund investment vehicles (rather than in DIRECT INVESTMENTS) as of each annual period end.
- 7.A.28** FIRMS MUST NOT present non-GIPS-compliant performance for periods ending on or after 1 January 2006. For periods ending prior to 1 January 2006, FIRMS may present non-GIPS-compliant performance.

Private Equity—Recommendations**Input Data—Recommendations (the following provision does not apply: 1.B.1)**

7.B.1 PRIVATE EQUITY investments SHOULD be valued at least quarterly.

Calculation Methodology—Recommendations (the following provision does not apply: 2.B.2)

7.B.2 For periods ending prior to 1 January 2011, the SI-IRR SHOULD be calculated using daily cash flows.

Composite Construction—Recommendations (the following provision does not apply: 3.B.2)**Disclosure—Recommendations**

7.B.3 FIRMS SHOULD explain and disclose material differences between the valuations used in performance reporting and the valuations used in financial reporting as of each annual period end.

7.B.4 For periods prior to 1 January 2011, FIRMS SHOULD disclose material changes to valuation policies and/or methodologies.

Presentation and Reporting—Recommendations (the following provisions do not apply: 5.B.2, 5.B.3, 5.B.4, and 5.B.5)

7.B.5 For periods ending on or after 1 January 2011, for FUND OF FUNDS COMPOSITES, if the COMPOSITE is defined only by VINTAGE YEAR of the FUND OF FUNDS, FIRMS SHOULD also present the SI-IRR of the underlying investments aggregated by investment mandate, objective, or strategy and other measures as listed in 7.A.23. These measures SHOULD be presented gross of the FUND OF FUNDS INVESTMENT MANAGEMENT FEES.

7.B.6 For periods ending prior to 1 January 2011, for FUND OF FUNDS COMPOSITES, FIRMS SHOULD present the percentage, if any, of COMPOSITE assets that is invested in DIRECT INVESTMENTS (rather than in fund investment vehicles) as of each annual period end.

7.B.7 For periods ending prior to 1 January 2011, for PRIMARY FUND COMPOSITES, FIRMS SHOULD present the percentage, if any, of COMPOSITE assets that is invested in fund investment vehicles (rather than in DIRECT INVESTMENTS) as of each annual period end.

8 Wrap Fee/Separately Managed Account (SMA) Portfolios

The following provisions apply to the calculation and presentation of performance when presenting a COMPLIANT PRESENTATION to a WRAP FEE/SMA PROSPECTIVE CLIENT (which includes prospective WRAP FEE/SMA sponsors, prospective WRAP FEE/SMA clients, and existing WRAP FEE/SMA sponsors). Unless otherwise noted, the following WRAP FEE/SMA provisions supplement all the REQUIRED and RECOMMENDED provisions of the GIPS standards in Sections 0–5.

Although there are different types of WRAP FEE/SMA structures, these provisions apply to all WRAP FEE/SMA PORTFOLIOS where there are BUNDLED FEES and the WRAP FEE/SMA sponsor serves as an intermediary between the FIRM and the end user of the investment services. These provisions are not applicable to PORTFOLIOS defined as other types of BUNDLED FEE PORTFOLIOS. These provisions are also not applicable to model PORTFOLIOS that are provided by a FIRM to a WRAP FEE/SMA sponsor if

the FIRM does not have discretionary PORTFOLIO management responsibility for the individual WRAP FEE/SMA PORTFOLIOS. Similarly, a FIRM or overlay manager in a Multiple Strategy Portfolio (MSP) or similar program is also excluded from applying these provisions to such PORTFOLIOS if they do not have discretion.

All WRAP FEE/SMA COMPLIANT PRESENTATIONS that include performance results for periods beginning on or after 1 January 2006 MUST meet all the REQUIREMENTS of the following WRAP FEE/SMA provisions.

Wrap Fee/SMA Requirements

Composite Construction—Requirements

8.A.1 FIRMS MUST include the performance record of actual WRAP FEE/SMA PORTFOLIOS in appropriate COMPOSITES in accordance with the FIRM's established PORTFOLIO inclusion policies. Once established, these COMPOSITES (containing actual WRAP FEE/SMA PORTFOLIOS) MUST be used in the FIRM's COMPLIANT PRESENTATIONS presented to WRAP FEE/SMA PROSPECTIVE CLIENTS.

Disclosure—Requirements (the following provision does not apply: 4.A.15)

8.A.2 For all WRAP FEE/SMA COMPLIANT PRESENTATIONS that include periods prior to the inclusion of an actual WRAP FEE/SMA PORTFOLIO in the COMPOSITE, the FIRM MUST disclose, for each period presented, that the COMPOSITE does not contain actual WRAP FEE/SMA PORTFOLIOS.

8.A.3 For any performance presented for periods prior to 1 January 2006 that does not comply with the GIPS standards, FIRMS MUST disclose the periods of non-compliance.

8.A.4 When FIRMS present COMPOSITE performance to an existing WRAP FEE/SMA sponsor that includes only that sponsor's WRAP FEE/SMA PORTFOLIOS (resulting in a "sponsor-specific COMPOSITE"):

- a** FIRMS MUST disclose the name of the WRAP FEE/SMA sponsor represented by the sponsor-specific COMPOSITE; and
- b** If the sponsor-specific COMPOSITE COMPLIANT PRESENTATION is intended for the purpose of generating WRAP FEE/SMA business and does not include performance net of the entire WRAP FEE, the COMPLIANT PRESENTATION MUST disclose that the named sponsor-specific COMPLIANT PRESENTATION is only for the use of the named WRAP FEE/SMA sponsor.

Presentation and Reporting—Requirements (the following provision does not apply: 5.A.3)

- 8.A.5** When FIRMS present performance to a WRAP FEE/SMA PROSPECTIVE CLIENT, the COMPOSITE presented MUST include the performance of all actual WRAP FEE/SMA PORTFOLIOS, if any, managed according to the COMPOSITE investment mandate, objective, or strategy, regardless of the WRAP FEE/SMA sponsor (resulting in a “style-defined COMPOSITE”).
- 8.A.6** When FIRMS present performance to a WRAP FEE/SMA PROSPECTIVE CLIENT, performance MUST be presented net of the entire WRAP FEE.
- 8.A.7** FIRMS MUST NOT LINK non-GIPS-compliant performance for periods beginning on or after 1 January 2006 to their GIPS-compliant performance. FIRMS may LINK non-GIPS-compliant performance to their GIPS-compliant performance provided that only GIPS-compliant performance is presented for periods beginning on or after 1 January 2006.

II.

GIPS VALUATION PRINCIPLES

The GIPS standards are based on the ethical principles of fair representation and full disclosure. In order for the performance calculations to be meaningful, the valuations of PORTFOLIO investments must have integrity and fairly reflect their value. Effective 1 January 2011, the GIPS standards REQUIRE FIRMS to apply a FAIR VALUE methodology following the definition and REQUIREMENTS listed below. The GIPS Valuation Principles, including the definition of FAIR VALUE, were developed with consideration of the work done by the International Accounting Standards Board (IASB) and the Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) as well as other organizations.

The shift to a broader FAIR VALUE REQUIREMENT has implications for all FIRMS claiming compliance with the GIPS standards. For liquid securities in active markets, the change to FAIR VALUE from MARKET VALUE will typically not result in a change to valuations. FIRMS MUST use the objective, observable, unadjusted quoted market prices for identical investments on the measurement date, if available.

Markets are not always liquid and investment prices are not always objective and/or observable. For illiquid or hard to value investments, or for investments where no observable MARKET VALUE or market price is available, additional steps are necessary. A FIRM’s valuation policies and procedures MUST address situations where the market prices may be available for similar but not identical investments, inputs to valuations are subjective rather than objective, and/or markets are inactive instead of active. There is a RECOMMENDED valuation hierarchy in Section C below. FIRMS MUST disclose if the COMPOSITE’s valuation hierarchy materially differs from the RECOMMENDED valuation hierarchy.

Although a FIRM may use external third parties to value investments, the FIRM still retains responsibility for compliance with the GIPS standards, including the GIPS Valuation Principles.

FIRMS claiming compliance with the GIPS standards MUST adhere to all the REQUIREMENTS and SHOULD comply with the RECOMMENDATIONS below.

Fair Value Definition

FAIR VALUE is defined as the amount at which an investment could be exchanged in a current arm’s length transaction between willing parties in which the parties each act knowledgeably and prudently. The valuation MUST be determined using the objective,

observable, unadjusted quoted market price for an identical investment in an active market on the measurement date, if available. In the absence of an objective, observable, unadjusted quoted market price for an identical investment in an active market on the measurement date, the valuation **MUST** represent the **FIRM'S** best estimate of the **MARKET VALUE**. **FAIR VALUE MUST** include accrued income.

Valuation Requirements

FIRMS MUST comply with the following valuation **REQUIREMENTS**:

- 1 For periods beginning on or after 1 January 2011, **PORTFOLIOS MUST** be valued in accordance with the definition of **FAIR VALUE** and the GIPS Valuation Principles (Provision 1.A.2) Chapter II.
- 2 **FIRMS MUST** value investments using objective, observable, unadjusted quoted market prices for identical investments in active markets on the measurement date, if available.
- 3 **FIRMS MUST** comply with all applicable laws and regulations regarding the calculation and presentation of performance (Provision 0.A.2). Accordingly, **FIRMS MUST** comply with applicable laws and regulations relating to valuation.
- 4 If the **COMPLIANT PRESENTATION** conforms with laws and/or regulations that conflict with the **REQUIREMENTS** of the GIPS standards, **FIRMS MUST** disclose this fact and disclose the manner in which the laws and/or regulations conflict with the GIPS standards (Provision 4.A.22). This includes any conflicts between laws and/or regulations and the GIPS Valuation Principles.
- 5 **FIRMS MUST** document their policies and procedures used in establishing and maintaining compliance with the GIPS standards, including ensuring the existence and ownership of client assets, and **MUST** apply them consistently (Provision 0.A.5). Accordingly, **FIRMS MUST** document their valuation policies, procedures, methodologies, and hierarchy, including any changes, and **MUST** apply them consistently.
- 6 **FIRMS MUST** disclose that policies for valuing **PORTFOLIOS**, calculating performance, and preparing **COMPLIANT PRESENTATIONS** are available upon request (Provision 4.A.12).
- 7 For periods beginning on or after 1 January 2011, **FIRMS MUST** disclose the use of subjective unobservable inputs for valuing **PORTFOLIO** investments (as described in the GIPS Valuation Principles) if the **PORTFOLIO** investments valued using subjective unobservable inputs are material to the **COMPOSITE** (Provision 4.A.27).
- 8 For periods beginning on or after 1 January 2011, **FIRMS MUST** disclose if the **COMPOSITE'S** valuation hierarchy materially differs from the **RECOMMENDED** hierarchy in the GIPS Valuation Principles (Provision 4.A.28).

Additional Real Estate Valuation Requirements

- 9 **REAL ESTATE** investments **MUST** have an **EXTERNAL VALUATION** (Provision 6.A.4).
- 10 The **EXTERNAL VALUATION** process **MUST** adhere to practices of the relevant valuation governing and standard setting body.
- 11 The **FIRM MUST NOT** use **EXTERNAL VALUATIONS** where the valuer's or appraiser's fee is contingent upon the investment's appraised value.

- 12 EXTERNAL VALUATIONS must be performed by an independent external PROFESSIONALLY DESIGNATED, CERTIFIED, OR LICENSED COMMERCIAL PROPERTY VALUER/APPRaiser. In markets where these professionals are not available, the FIRM MUST take necessary steps to ensure that only well-qualified independent property valuers or appraisers are used (Provision 6.A.5).
- 13 FIRMS MUST disclose the INTERNAL VALUATION methodologies used to value REAL ESTATE investments for the most recent period (Provision 6.A.10.b).
- 14 For periods beginning on or after 1 January 2011, FIRMS MUST disclose material changes to valuation policies and/or methodologies (Provision 6.A.10.c).
- 15 For periods beginning on or after 1 January 2011, FIRMS MUST disclose material differences between an EXTERNAL VALUATION and the valuation used in performance reporting and the reason for the differences (Provision 6.A.10.d).
- 16 FIRMS MUST present, as of each annual period end, the percentage of COMPOSITE assets valued using an EXTERNAL VALUATION during the annual period (Provision 6.A.16.b).

Additional Private Equity Valuation Requirements

- 17 The valuation methodology selected MUST be the most appropriate for a particular investment based on the nature, facts, and circumstances of the investment.
- 18 FIRMS MUST disclose the valuation methodologies used to value PRIVATE EQUITY investments for the most recent period (Provision 7.A.13).
- 19 For periods ending on or after 1 January 2011, FIRMS MUST disclose material changes to valuation policies and/or methodologies (Provision 7.A.14).
- 20 If the FIRM adheres to any industry valuation guidelines in addition to the GIPS Valuation Principles, the FIRM MUST disclose which guidelines have been applied (Provision 7.A.15).

Valuation Recommendations

FIRMS SHOULD comply with the following valuation RECOMMENDATIONS:

- 1 **Valuation Hierarchy:** FIRMS SHOULD incorporate the following hierarchy into the policies and procedures for determining FAIR VALUE for PORTFOLIO investments on a COMPOSITE-specific basis.
 - a Investments MUST be valued using objective, observable, unadjusted quoted market prices for identical investments in active markets on the measurement date, if available. If not available, then investments SHOULD be valued using;
 - b Objective, observable quoted market prices for similar investments in active markets. If not available or appropriate, then investments SHOULD be valued using;
 - c Quoted prices for identical or similar investments in markets that are not active (markets in which there are few transactions for the investment, the prices are not current, or price quotations vary substantially over time and/or between market makers). If not available or appropriate, then investments SHOULD be valued based on;
 - d Market-based inputs, other than quoted prices, that are observable for the investment. If not available or appropriate, then investments SHOULD be valued based on;

- e Subjective unobservable inputs for the investment where markets are not active at the measurement date. Unobservable inputs SHOULD only be used to measure FAIR VALUE to the extent that observable inputs and prices are not available or appropriate. Unobservable inputs reflect the FIRM's own assumptions about the assumptions that market participants would use in pricing the investment and SHOULD be developed based on the best information available under the circumstances.
- 2 FIRMS SHOULD disclose material changes to valuation policies and/or methodologies (Provision 4.B.1).
- 3 FIRMS SHOULD disclose the key assumptions used to value PORTFOLIO investments (Provision 4.B.4).
- 4 For periods prior to 1 January 2011, FIRMS SHOULD disclose the use of subjective unobservable inputs for valuing PORTFOLIO investments (as described in the GIPS Valuation Principles in Chapter II) if the PORTFOLIO investments valued using subjective unobservable inputs are material to the COMPOSITE (Provision 4.B.6).
- 5 Valuations SHOULD be obtained from a qualified independent third party (Provision 1.B.2).

Additional Real Estate Valuation Recommendations

- 6 Although appraisal standards may allow for a range of estimated values, it is RECOMMENDED that a single value be obtained from external valuers or appraisers because only one value is used in performance reporting.
- 7 It is RECOMMENDED that the external appraisal firm be rotated every three to five years.
- 8 FIRMS SHOULD explain and disclose material differences between the valuation used in performance reporting and the valuation used in financial reporting as of each annual period end (Provision 6.B.4).
- 9 For periods prior to 1 January 2011, FIRMS SHOULD disclose material changes to valuation policies and/or methodologies (Provision 6.B.5).

Additional Private Equity Valuation Recommendations

- 10 FIRMS SHOULD explain and disclose material differences between the valuations used in performance reporting and the valuations used in financial reporting as of each annual period end (Provision 7.B.3).
- 11 For periods prior to 1 January 2011, FIRMS SHOULD disclose material changes to valuation policies and/or methodologies (Provision 7.B.4).
- 12 The following considerations SHOULD be incorporated into the valuation process:
 - a The quality and reliability of the data used in each methodology;
 - b The comparability of enterprise or transaction data;
 - c The stage of development of the enterprise; and
 - d Any additional considerations unique to the enterprise.



GIPS ADVERTISING GUIDELINES

Purpose of the GIPS Advertising Guidelines

The GIPS Advertising Guidelines provide FIRMS with options for advertising performance when mentioning the FIRM'S claim of compliance. The GIPS Advertising Guidelines do not replace the GIPS standards, nor do they absolve FIRMS from presenting a COMPLIANT PRESENTATION as REQUIRED by the GIPS standards. These guidelines only apply to FIRMS that already satisfy all the REQUIREMENTS of the GIPS standards on a FIRM-wide basis and claim compliance with the GIPS standards in an advertisement. FIRMS that choose to claim compliance in an advertisement MUST follow the GIPS Advertising Guidelines or include a COMPLIANT PRESENTATION in the advertisement.

Definition of Advertisement

For the purposes of these guidelines, an advertisement includes any materials that are distributed to or designed for use in newspapers, magazines, FIRM brochures, letters, media, websites, or any other written or electronic material addressed to more than one PROSPECTIVE CLIENT. Any written material, other than one-on-one presentations and individual client reporting, distributed to maintain existing clients or solicit new clients for a FIRM is considered an advertisement.

Relationship of GIPS Advertising Guidelines to Regulatory Requirements

FIRMS advertising performance MUST adhere to all applicable laws and regulations governing advertisements. FIRMS are encouraged to seek legal or regulatory counsel because additional disclosures may be REQUIRED. In cases where applicable laws and/or regulations conflict with the REQUIREMENTS of the GIPS standards and/or the GIPS Advertising Guidelines, FIRMS are REQUIRED to comply with the law or regulation.

The calculation and advertisement of pooled unitized investment vehicles, such as mutual funds and open-ended investment companies, are regulated in most markets. The GIPS Advertising Guidelines are not intended to replace applicable laws and/or regulations when a FIRM is advertising performance solely for a pooled unitized investment vehicle.

Other Information

The advertisement may include other information beyond what is REQUIRED under the GIPS Advertising Guidelines provided the information is shown with equal or lesser prominence relative to the information REQUIRED by the GIPS Advertising Guidelines and the information does not conflict with the REQUIREMENTS of the GIPS standards and/or the GIPS Advertising Guidelines. FIRMS MUST adhere to the principles of fair representation and full disclosure when advertising and MUST NOT present performance or performance-related information that is false or misleading.

Requirements of the GIPS Advertising Guidelines

All advertisements that include a claim of compliance with the GIPS standards by following the GIPS Advertising Guidelines MUST disclose the following:

- 1 The definition of the FIRM.
- 2 How a PROSPECTIVE CLIENT can obtain a COMPLIANT PRESENTATION and/or the FIRM'S list of COMPOSITE DESCRIPTIONS.
- 3 The GIPS compliance statement for advertisements:

“[Insert name of FIRM] claims compliance with the Global Investment Performance Standards (GIPS®).”

All advertisements that include a claim of compliance with the GIPS standards by following the GIPS Advertising Guidelines and that present performance MUST also disclose the following information, which MUST be taken or derived from a COMPLIANT PRESENTATION:

- 4 The COMPOSITE DESCRIPTION.
- 5 COMPOSITE TOTAL RETURNS according to one of the following:
 - a One-, three-, and five-year annualized COMPOSITE returns through the most recent period with the period-end date clearly identified. If the COMPOSITE has been in existence for less than five years, FIRMS MUST also present the annualized returns since the COMPOSITE INCEPTION DATE. (For example, if a COMPOSITE has been in existence for four years, FIRMS MUST present one-, three-, and four-year annualized returns through the most recent period.) Returns for periods of less than one year MUST NOT be annualized.
 - b Period-to-date COMPOSITE returns in addition to one-, three-, and five-year annualized COMPOSITE returns through the same period of time as presented in the corresponding COMPLIANT PRESENTATION with the period end date clearly identified. If the COMPOSITE has been in existence for less than five years, FIRMS MUST also present the annualized returns since the COMPOSITE INCEPTION DATE (For example, if a COMPOSITE has been in existence for four years, FIRMS MUST present one-, three-, and four-year annualized returns in addition to the period-to-date COMPOSITE return.) Returns for periods of less than one year MUST NOT be annualized.
 - c Period-to-date COMPOSITE returns in addition to five years of annual COMPOSITE returns (or for each annual period since the COMPOSITE INCEPTION DATE if the COMPOSITE has been in existence for less than five years) with the period end date clearly identified. The annual returns MUST be calculated through the same period of time as presented in the corresponding COMPLIANT PRESENTATION.
- 6 Whether returns are presented GROSS-OF-FEES and/or NET-OF-FEES.
- 7 The TOTAL RETURN for the BENCHMARK for the same periods for which the COMPOSITE return is presented. FIRMS MUST present TOTAL RETURNS for the same BENCHMARK as presented in the corresponding COMPLIANT PRESENTATION.
- 8 The BENCHMARK DESCRIPTION.
- 9 If the FIRM determines no appropriate BENCHMARK for the COMPOSITE exists, the FIRM MUST disclose why no BENCHMARK is presented.
- 10 The currency used to express performance.
- 11 The presence, use, and extent of leverage, derivatives, and short positions, if material, including a description of the frequency of use and characteristics of the instruments sufficient to identify risks.
- 12 For any performance presented in an advertisement for periods prior to 1 January 2000 that does not comply with the GIPS standards, FIRMS MUST disclose the periods of non-compliance.
- 13 If the advertisement conforms with laws and/or regulations that conflict with the REQUIREMENTS of the GIPS standards and/or the GIPS Advertising Guidelines, FIRMS MUST disclose this fact and disclose the manner in which the laws and/or regulations conflict with the GIPS standards and/or the GIPS Advertising Guidelines.

IV.

VERIFICATION

VERIFICATION is intended to provide a FIRM and its existing clients and PROSPECTIVE CLIENTS additional confidence in the FIRM's claim of compliance with the GIPS standards. VERIFICATION may increase the knowledge of the FIRM's performance measurement team and improve the consistency and quality of the FIRM's COMPLIANT PRESENTATIONS. VERIFICATION may also provide improved internal processes and procedures as well as marketing advantages to the FIRM. Verification does not ensure the accuracy of any specific COMPOSITE presentation.

The GIPS standards RECOMMEND that FIRMS be verified. VERIFICATION brings additional credibility to the claim of compliance and supports the overall guiding principles of fair representation and full disclosure of a FIRM's investment performance.

The VERIFICATION procedures attempt to strike a balance between ensuring the quality, accuracy, and relevance of performance presentations and minimizing the cost to FIRMS.

Scope and Purpose of Verification

- 1 VERIFICATION MUST be performed by a qualified independent third party.
- 2 VERIFICATION assesses whether:
 - a The FIRM has complied with all the COMPOSITE construction REQUIREMENTS of the GIPS standards on a FIRM-wide basis and
 - b The FIRM's policies and procedures are designed to calculate and present performance in compliance with the GIPS standards.
- 3 A single VERIFICATION REPORT is issued with respect to the whole FIRM. VERIFICATION cannot be carried out on a COMPOSITE and, accordingly, does not provide assurance about the performance of any specific COMPOSITE. FIRMS MUST NOT state that a particular COMPOSITE has been "verified" or make any claim to that effect.
- 4 The initial minimum period for which VERIFICATION can be performed is one year (or from FIRM inception date through period end if less than one year) of a FIRM's presented performance. The RECOMMENDED period over which VERIFICATION is performed is that part of the FIRM's performance for which compliance with the GIPS standards is claimed.
- 5 A VERIFICATION REPORT MUST opine that:
 - a The FIRM has complied with all the COMPOSITE construction REQUIREMENTS of the GIPS standards on a FIRM-wide basis, and
 - b The FIRM's policies and procedures are designed to calculate and present performance in compliance with the GIPS standards.

The FIRM MUST NOT state that it has been verified unless a VERIFICATION REPORT has been issued.
- 6 A principal verifier may accept the work of another verifier as part of the basis for the principal verifier's opinion. A principal verifier may also choose to rely on the audit and/or internal control work of a qualified and reputable independent third party. In addition, a principal verifier may choose to rely on the other audit and/or internal control work performed by the VERIFICATION firm. If reliance on another party's work is planned, the scope of work, including time period covered, results of procedures performed, qualifications, competency, objectivity, and reputation of the other party, MUST be assessed by the principal verifier when making the determination as to whether to place any reliance on

such work. Reliance considerations and conclusions **MUST** be documented by the principal verifier. The principal verifier **MUST** use professional skepticism when deciding whether to place reliance on work performed by another independent third party.

- 7 Sample PORTFOLIO Selection: Verifiers **MUST** subject the entire FIRM to testing when performing VERIFICATION procedures unless reliance is placed on work performed by a qualified and reputable independent third party or appropriate alternative control procedures have been performed by the verifier. Verifiers may use a sampling methodology when performing such procedures. Verifiers **MUST** consider the following criteria when selecting samples:
 - a Number of COMPOSITES at the FIRM;
 - b Number of PORTFOLIOS in each COMPOSITE;
 - c Type of COMPOSITE;
 - d TOTAL FIRM ASSETS;
 - e Internal control structure at the FIRM (system of checks and balances in place);
 - f Number of years being verified; and
 - g Computer applications, software used in the construction and maintenance of COMPOSITES, the use of external performance measurers, and the method of calculating performance.

This list is not all-inclusive and contains only the minimum criteria that **MUST** be considered in the selection and evaluation of a sample. For example, one potentially useful approach would be to include in the sample a PORTFOLIO that has the largest impact on COMPOSITE performance because of its size or because of extremely good or bad performance. Missing or incomplete documents, or the presence of errors, would normally be expected to warrant selecting a larger sample or applying additional VERIFICATION procedures.

- 8 After performing the VERIFICATION, the verifier may conclude that the FIRM is not in compliance with the GIPS standards or that the records of the FIRM cannot support a VERIFICATION. In such situations, the verifier **MUST** issue a statement to the FIRM clarifying why a VERIFICATION REPORT could not be issued. A VERIFICATION REPORT **MUST NOT** be issued when the verifier knows that the FIRM is not in compliance with the GIPS standards or the records of the FIRM cannot support a VERIFICATION.
- 9 The minimum VERIFICATION procedures are described below in Section B. The VERIFICATION REPORT **MUST** state that the VERIFICATION has been conducted in accordance with these VERIFICATION procedures.

Required Verification Procedures

The following are the minimum procedures that verifiers **MUST** follow when conducting a VERIFICATION. Verifiers **MUST** complete the VERIFICATION in accordance with these procedures prior to issuing a VERIFICATION REPORT to the FIRM:

- 1 Pre-VERIFICATION Procedures:
 - a Knowledge of the GIPS Standards: Verifiers **MUST** understand all the REQUIREMENTS and RECOMMENDATIONS of the GIPS standards, including any updates, Guidance Statements, interpretations, Questions & Answers (Q&As), and clarifications published by CFA Institute and the GIPS Executive Committee, which are available on the GIPS standards website (www.gipsstandards.org) as well as in the *GIPS Handbook*.

- b** Knowledge of Regulations: Verifiers **MUST** be knowledgeable of applicable laws and regulations regarding the calculation and presentation of performance and **MUST** consider any differences between these laws and regulations and the GIPS standards.
 - c** Knowledge of the FIRM: Verifiers **MUST** gain an understanding of the FIRM, including the corporate structure of the FIRM and how it operates.
 - d** Knowledge of the FIRM's Policies and Procedures: Verifiers **MUST** understand the FIRM's policies and procedures for establishing and maintaining compliance with all the applicable REQUIREMENTS and adopted RECOMMENDATIONS of the GIPS standards. The verifier **MUST** obtain a copy of the FIRM's policies and procedures used in establishing and maintaining compliance with the GIPS standards and ensure that all applicable policies and procedures are properly included and adequately documented.
 - e** Knowledge of Valuation Basis and Performance Calculations: Verifiers **MUST** understand the policies, procedures, and methodologies used to value PORTFOLIOS and compute investment performance.
- 2** VERIFICATION Procedures:
- a** Fundamentals of Compliance: Verifiers **MUST** perform sufficient procedures to determine that:
 - i.** The FIRM is, and has been, appropriately defined;
 - ii.** The FIRM has defined and maintained COMPOSITES in compliance with the GIPS standards;
 - iii.** All the FIRM's actual, fee-paying, discretionary PORTFOLIOS are included in at least one COMPOSITE;
 - iv.** The FIRM's definition of discretion has been consistently applied over time;
 - v.** At all times, all PORTFOLIOS are included in their respective COMPOSITES and no PORTFOLIOS that belong in a particular COMPOSITE have been excluded;
 - vi.** The FIRM's policies and procedures for ensuring the existence and ownership of client assets are appropriate and have been consistently applied;
 - vii.** The COMPOSITE BENCHMARK reflects the investment mandate, objective, or strategy of the COMPOSITE;
 - viii.** The FIRM's policies and procedures for creating and maintaining COMPOSITES have been consistently applied;
 - ix.** The FIRM's list of COMPOSITE DESCRIPTIONS is complete; and
 - x.** TOTAL FIRM ASSETS are appropriately calculated and disclosed.
 - b** Determination of Discretionary Status of PORTFOLIOS: Verifiers **MUST** obtain a list of all PORTFOLIOS. Verifiers **MUST** select PORTFOLIOS from this list and perform sufficient procedures to determine that the FIRM's classification of the PORTFOLIOS as discretionary or non-discretionary is appropriate by referring to the PORTFOLIO's investment management agreement and/or investment guidelines and the FIRM's policies and procedures for determining investment discretion.
 - c** Allocation of PORTFOLIOS to COMPOSITES: Verifiers **MUST** obtain lists of all open (both new and existing) and closed PORTFOLIOS for all COMPOSITES for the periods being verified. Verifiers **MUST** select PORTFOLIOS from these lists and perform sufficient procedures to determine that:

- i. The timing of inclusion in the COMPOSITE is in accordance with policies and procedures of the FIRM.
 - ii. The timing of exclusion from the COMPOSITE is in accordance with policies and procedures of the FIRM.
 - iii. The PORTFOLIO's investment mandate, objective, or strategy, as indicated by the PORTFOLIO's investment management agreement, investment guidelines, PORTFOLIO summary, and/or other appropriate documentation, is consistent with the COMPOSITE DEFINITION.
 - iv. PORTFOLIOS are completely and accurately included in COMPOSITES by tracing selected PORTFOLIOS from:
 - a. The PORTFOLIO's investment management agreement and/or investment management guidelines to the COMPOSITE(S); and
 - b. The COMPOSITE(S) to the PORTFOLIO's investment management agreement and/or investment guidelines.
 - v. PORTFOLIOS sharing the same investment mandate, objective, or strategy are included in the same COMPOSITE.
 - vi. Movements from one COMPOSITE to another are appropriate and consistent with documented changes to a PORTFOLIO's investment mandate, objective, or strategy or the redefinition of the COMPOSITE.
- d. Data Review: For selected PORTFOLIOS, verifiers MUST perform sufficient procedures to determine that the treatment of the following items is consistent with the FIRM's policy:
 - i. Classification of PORTFOLIO flows (e.g., receipts, disbursements, dividends, interest, fees, and taxes);
 - ii. Accounting treatment of income, interest, and dividend accruals and receipts;
 - iii. Accounting treatment of taxes, tax reclaims, and tax accruals;
 - iv. Accounting treatment of purchases, sales, and the opening and closing of other positions; and
 - v. Accounting treatment and valuation methodologies for investments, including derivatives.
- e. Performance Measurement Calculation: Recognizing that VERIFICATION does not provide assurance that specific COMPOSITE returns are correctly calculated and presented, verifiers MUST determine that the FIRM has calculated and presented performance in accordance with the FIRM's policies and procedures. Verifiers MUST perform the following procedures:
 - i. Recalculate rates of return for a sample of PORTFOLIOS, determine that an acceptable return formula as REQUIRED by the GIPS standards is used, and determine that the FIRM's calculations are in accordance with the FIRM's policies and procedures. The verifier MUST also determine that any fees and expenses are treated in accordance with the GIPS standards and the FIRM's policies and procedures.
 - ii. Take a sample of COMPOSITE and BENCHMARK calculations to determine the accuracy of all required numerical data (e.g., risk measures, INTERNAL DISPERSION).
 - iii. If a custom BENCHMARK or combination of multiple BENCHMARKS is used, take a sample of the BENCHMARK data used by the FIRM to determine that the calculation methodology has been correctly applied and the data used are consistent with the BENCHMARK disclosure in the COMPLIANT PRESENTATION.

- f **COMPLIANT PRESENTATIONS:** Verifiers **MUST** perform sufficient procedures on a sample of **COMPLIANT PRESENTATIONS** to determine that the presentations include all the information and disclosures **REQUIRED** by the GIPS standards. The information and disclosures **MUST** be consistent with the **FIRM'S** records, the **FIRM'S** documented policies and procedures, and the results of the verifier's procedures.
- g **Maintenance of Records:** The verifier **MUST** maintain sufficient documentation to support all procedures performed supporting the issuance of the **VERIFICATION REPORT**, including all significant judgments and conclusions made by the verifier.
- h **Representation Letter:** The verifier **MUST** obtain a representation letter from the **FIRM** confirming that policies and procedures used in establishing and maintaining compliance with the GIPS standards are as described in the **FIRM'S** policies and procedures documents and have been consistently applied throughout the periods being verified. The representation letter **MUST** confirm that the **FIRM** complies with the GIPS standards for the period being verified. The representation letter **MUST** also contain any other specific representations made to the verifier during the **VERIFICATION**.

Performance Examinations

In addition to a **VERIFICATION**, a **FIRM** may choose to have a specifically focused **PERFORMANCE EXAMINATION** of a particular **COMPOSITE COMPLIANT PRESENTATION**. However, a **PERFORMANCE EXAMINATION REPORT** **MUST NOT** be issued unless a **VERIFICATION REPORT** has also been issued. The **PERFORMANCE EXAMINATION** may be performed concurrently with the **VERIFICATION**.

A **PERFORMANCE EXAMINATION** is not **REQUIRED** for a **FIRM** to be verified. The **FIRM** **MUST NOT** state that a **COMPOSITE** has been examined unless the **PERFORMANCE EXAMINATION REPORT** has been issued for the specific **COMPOSITE**.

Please see the Guidance Statement on **PERFORMANCE EXAMINATIONS** for additional guidance.

END OPTIONAL
SEGMENT

V.

GIPS GLOSSARY

ACCRUAL ACCOUNTING	The recording of financial transactions as they come into existence rather than when they are paid or settled.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION	Information that is REQUIRED or RECOMMENDED under the GIPS standards and is not considered SUPPLEMENTAL INFORMATION .
ADMINISTRATIVE FEE	All fees other than TRADING EXPENSES and the INVESTMENT MANAGEMENT FEE . ADMINISTRATIVE FEES include CUSTODY FEES , accounting fees, auditing fees, consulting fees, legal fees, performance measurement fees, and other related fees. (See " BUNDLED FEE ")

ALL-IN FEE	A type of BUNDLED FEE that can include any combination of INVESTMENT MANAGEMENT FEES , TRADING EXPENSES , CUSTODY FEES , and ADMINISTRATIVE FEES . ALL-IN-FEES are client specific and typically offered in certain jurisdictions where asset management, brokerage, and custody services are offered by the same company.
BENCHMARK	A point of reference against which the COMPOSITE 's performance and/or risk is compared.
BENCHMARK DESCRIPTION	General information regarding the investments, structure, and/or characteristics of the BENCHMARK . The description MUST include the key features of the BENCHMARK or the name of the BENCHMARK for a readily recognized index or other point of reference.
BUNDLED FEE	A fee that combines multiple fees into one total or "bundled" fee. BUNDLED FEES can include any combination of INVESTMENT MANAGEMENT FEES , TRADING EXPENSES , CUSTODY FEES , and/or ADMINISTRATIVE FEES . Two examples of BUNDLED FEES are WRAP FEES and ALL-IN-FEES .
CAPITAL EMPLOYED (real estate)	The denominator of the return calculations and is defined as the "weighted-average equity" (weighted-average capital) during the measurement period. CAPITAL EMPLOYED does not include any INCOME RETURN or CAPITAL RETURN earned during the measurement period. Beginning capital is adjusted by weighting the EXTERNAL CASH FLOWS that occurred during the period.
CAPITAL RETURN (real estate)	The change in value of the REAL ESTATE investments and cash and/or cash equivalent assets held throughout the measurement period, adjusted for all capital expenditures (subtracted) and net proceeds from sales (added). The CAPITAL RETURN is computed as a percentage of the CAPITAL EMPLOYED . Also known as "capital appreciation return" or "appreciation return."
CARRIED INTEREST (real estate and private equity)	The profits that GENERAL PARTNERS are allocated from the profits on the investments made by the investment vehicle. Also known as "carry" or "promote."
CARVE-OUT	A portion of a PORTFOLIO that is by itself representative of a distinct investment strategy. It is used to create a track record for a narrower mandate from a multiple-strategy PORTFOLIO managed to a broader mandate. For periods beginning on or after 1 January 2010, a CARVE-OUT MUST be managed separately with its own cash balance.
CLOSED-END FUND (real estate and private equity)	A type of investment vehicle where the number of investors, total COMMITTED CAPITAL , and life are fixed and not open for subscriptions and/or redemptions. CLOSED-END FUNDS have a capital call (drawdown) process in place that is controlled by the GENERAL PARTNER .

(continued)

COMMITTED CAPITAL (real estate and private equity)	Pledges of capital to an investment vehicle by investors (LIMITED PARTNERS and the GENERAL PARTNER) or by the FIRM . COMMITTED CAPITAL is typically not drawn down at once but drawn down over a period of time. Also known as “commitments.”
COMPLIANT PRESENTATION	A presentation for a COMPOSITE that contains all the information REQUIRED by the GIPS standards and may also include ADDITIONAL INFORMATION or SUPPLEMENTAL INFORMATION . (See Sample COMPLIANT PRESENTATIONS in Appendix A)
COMPOSITE	An aggregation of one or more PORTFOLIOS managed according to a similar investment mandate, objective, or strategy.
COMPOSITE CREATION DATE	The date when the FIRM first groups one or more PORTFOLIOS to create a COMPOSITE . The COMPOSITE CREATION DATE is not necessarily the same as the COMPOSITE INCEPTION DATE .
COMPOSITE DEFINITION	Detailed criteria that determine the assignment of PORTFOLIOS to COMPOSITES . Criteria may include investment mandate, style or strategy, asset class, the use of derivatives, leverage and/or hedging, targeted risk metrics, investment constraints or restrictions, and/or PORTFOLIO type (e.g., segregated or pooled, taxable versus tax exempt.)
COMPOSITE DESCRIPTION	General information regarding the investment mandate, objective, or strategy of the COMPOSITE . The COMPOSITE DESCRIPTION may be more abbreviated than the COMPOSITE DEFINITION but MUST include all key features of the COMPOSITE and MUST include enough information to allow a PROSPECTIVE CLIENT to understand the key characteristics of the COMPOSITE ’s investment mandate, objective, or strategy. (See the Sample List of Composite Descriptions in Appendix C)
COMPOSITE INCEPTION DATE	The initial date of the COMPOSITE ’s performance record. The COMPOSITE INCEPTION DATE is not necessarily the same as the COMPOSITE CREATION DATE .
COMPOSITE TERMINATION DATE	The date that the last PORTFOLIO exits a COMPOSITE .
CUSTODY FEE	The fees payable to the custodian for the safekeeping of PORTFOLIO assets. CUSTODY FEES are considered to be ADMINISTRATIVE FEES and typically contain an asset-based portion and a transaction-based portion. The CUSTODY FEE may also include charges for additional services, including accounting, securities lending, and/or performance measurement. Custodial fees that are charged per transaction SHOULD be included in the CUSTODY FEE and not included as part of TRADING EXPENSES .
DIRECT INVESTMENTS (private equity)	Investments made directly in PRIVATE EQUITY investments rather than investments made in fund investment vehicles or cash and/or cash equivalents.

DISTINCT BUSINESS ENTITY	A unit, division, department, or office that is organizationally and functionally segregated from other units, divisions, departments, or offices and that retains discretion over the assets it manages and that should have autonomy over the investment decision-making process. Possible criteria that can be used to determine this include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ being a legal entity, ■ having a distinct market or client type (e.g., institutional, retail, private client, etc.), and ■ using a separate and distinct investment process.
DISTRIBUTION (real estate and private equity)	Cash or stock distributed to LIMITED PARTNERS (or investors) from an investment vehicle. DISTRIBUTIONS are typically at the discretion of the GENERAL PARTNER (or the FIRM). DISTRIBUTIONS include both recallable and non-recallable DISTRIBUTIONS.
DPI (real estate and private equity)	SINCE INCEPTION DISTRIBUTIONS divided by SINCE INCEPTION PAID-IN CAPITAL. (See “REALIZATION MULTIPLE”)
EVERGREEN FUND (private equity)	An OPEN-END FUND that allows for on-going subscriptions and/or redemptions by investors.
EX-ANTE	Before the fact.
EX-POST	After the fact.
EXTERNAL CASH FLOW	Capital (cash or investments) that enters or exits a PORTFOLIO.
EXTERNAL VALUATION (real estate)	An assessment of value performed by an independent external third party who is a qualified, PROFESSIONALLY DESIGNATED, CERTIFIED, OR LICENSED COMMERCIAL PROPERTY VALUER/ APPRAISER.
FAIR VALUE	The amount at which an investment could be exchanged in a current arm’s length transaction between willing parties in which the parties each act knowledgeably and prudently. The valuation MUST be determined using the objective, observable, unadjusted quoted market price for an identical investment in an active market on the measurement date, if available. In the absence of an objective, observable, unadjusted quoted market price for an identical investment in an active market on the measurement date, the valuation MUST represent the FIRM’S best estimate of the MARKET VALUE. FAIR VALUE MUST include accrued income.
FEE SCHEDULE	The FIRM’S current schedule of INVESTMENT MANAGEMENT FEES OR BUNDLED FEES relevant to the particular COMPLIANT PRESENTATION.
FINAL LIQUIDATION DATE (real estate and private equity)	The date when the last PORTFOLIO in a COMPOSITE is fully distributed.
FIRM	The entity defined for compliance with the GIPS standards. (See “DISTINCT BUSINESS ENTITY”)

(continued)

FUND OF FUNDS (private equity)	An investment vehicle that invests in underlying investment vehicles. PRIVATE EQUITY FUNDS OF FUNDS predominately invest in CLOSED-END FUNDS and may make opportunistic DIRECT INVESTMENTS.
GENERAL PARTNER (real estate and private equity)	A class of partner in a LIMITED PARTNERSHIP. The GENERAL PARTNER (GP) retains liability for the actions of the LIMITED PARTNERSHIP. The GENERAL PARTNER is typically the fund manager, and the LIMITED PARTNERS (LPs) are the other investors in the LIMITED PARTNERSHIP. The GENERAL PARTNER earns an INVESTMENT MANAGEMENT FEE that typically includes a percentage of the LIMITED PARTNERSHIP'S profits. (See "CARRIED INTEREST")
GROSS-OF-FEES	The return on investments reduced by any TRADING EXPENSES incurred during the period.
GROSS-OF-FEES (real estate and private equity)	The return on investments reduced by any TRANSACTION EXPENSES incurred during the period.
INCOME RETURN (real estate)	The investment income earned on all investments (including cash and cash equivalents) during the measurement period net of all non-recoverable expenditures, interest expense on debt, and property taxes. The INCOME RETURN is computed as a percentage of the CAPITAL EMPLOYED.
INTERNAL DISPERSION	A measure of the spread of the annual returns of individual PORTFOLIOS within a COMPOSITE. Measures may include, but are not limited to, high/low, range, or STANDARD DEVIATION (asset weighted or equal weighted) of PORTFOLIO returns.
INTERNAL VALUATION (real estate)	A FIRM'S best estimate of value based on the most current and accurate information available under the circumstances. INTERNAL VALUATION methodologies include applying a discounted cash flow model, using a sales comparison or replacement cost approach, or conducting a review of all significant events (both general market and asset specific) that could have a material impact on the investment.
INVESTMENT MANAGEMENT FEE	A fee payable to the FIRM for the management of a PORTFOLIO. INVESTMENT MANAGEMENT FEES are typically asset based (percentage of assets), performance based (see "PERFORMANCE-BASED FEE"), or a combination of the two but may take different forms as well. INVESTMENT MANAGEMENT FEES also include CARRIED INTEREST.
INVESTMENT MULTIPLE (TVPI) (real estate and private equity)	TOTAL VALUE divided by SINCE INCEPTION PAID-IN CAPITAL.
LARGE CASH FLOW	The level at which the FIRM determines that an EXTERNAL CASH FLOW may distort performance if the PORTFOLIO is not valued. FIRMS MUST define the amount in terms of the value of cash/asset flow or in terms of a percentage of the PORTFOLIO assets or the COMPOSITE assets.

LIMITED PARTNER (real estate and private equity)	An investor in a LIMITED PARTNERSHIP. The GENERAL PARTNER is liable for the actions of the LIMITED PARTNERSHIP, and the LIMITED PARTNERS are generally protected from legal actions and any losses beyond their COMMITTED CAPITAL.
LIMITED PARTNERSHIP (real estate and private equity)	The legal structure used by most PRIVATE EQUITY and REAL ESTATE CLOSED-END FUNDS. LIMITED PARTNERSHIPS are usually fixed life investment vehicles. The GENERAL PARTNER manages the LIMITED PARTNERSHIP pursuant to the partnership agreement.
LINK	<p>1 <i>Mathematical Linking</i>: The method by which sub-period returns are geometrically combined to calculate the period return using the following formula:</p> $\text{Period return} = [(1 + R_1) \times (1 + R_2) \dots (1 + R_n)] - 1,$ <p>where R_1, R_2, \dots, R_n are the sub-period returns for sub-period 1 through n, respectively.</p> <p>2 <i>Presentational Linking</i>: To be visually connected or otherwise associated within a COMPLIANT PRESENTATION (e.g., two pieces of information are LINKED by placing them next to each other).</p>
MARKET VALUE	The price at which investors can buy or sell an investment at a given time multiplied by the quantity held plus any accrued income.
MUST	A provision, task, or action that is mandatory or REQUIRED to be followed or performed. (See "REQUIRE/REQUIREMENT")
MUST NOT	A task or action that is forbidden or prohibited.
NET-OF-FEES	The GROSS-OF-FEES return reduced by INVESTMENT MANAGEMENT FEES (including PERFORMANCE-BASED FEES and CARRIED INTEREST).
OPEN-END FUND (real estate and private equity)	A type of investment vehicle where the number of investors and the total COMMITTED CAPITAL is not fixed and is open for subscriptions and/or redemptions. (See "EVERGREEN FUND")
PAID-IN CAPITAL (real estate and private equity)	Capital inflows to an investment vehicle. COMMITTED CAPITAL is typically drawn down from LIMITED PARTNERS (or investors) over a period of time through a series of capital calls, which are at the discretion of the GENERAL PARTNER OR FIRM. PAID-IN CAPITAL is equal to the amount of COMMITTED CAPITAL that has been drawn down SINCE INCEPTION. PAID-IN CAPITAL includes DISTRIBUTIONS that are subsequently recalled by the GENERAL PARTNER OR FIRM and reinvested into the investment vehicle.
PERFORMANCE-BASED FEE	A type of INVESTMENT MANAGEMENT FEE that is typically based on the performance of the PORTFOLIO on an absolute basis or relative to a BENCHMARK.

(continued)

PERFORMANCE EXAMINATION	A detailed examination of a specific COMPOSITE'S COMPLIANT PRESENTATION by an independent verifier.
PERFORMANCE EXAMINATION REPORT	A PERFORMANCE EXAMINATION REPORT is issued after a PERFORMANCE EXAMINATION has been performed and opines that a particular COMPOSITE'S COMPLIANT PRESENTATION has been prepared and presented in compliance with the GIPS standards.
PERIODICITY	The length of the time period over which a variable is measured (e.g., a variable that is measured at a monthly PERIODICITY consists of observations for each month).
PIC MULTIPLE (real estate and private equity)	SINCE INCEPTION PAID-IN CAPITAL divided by cumulative COMMITTED CAPITAL.
PORTFOLIO	An individually managed group of investments. A PORTFOLIO may be an account or pooled investment vehicle.
PRIMARY FUND (private equity)	An investment vehicle that makes DIRECT INVESTMENTS rather than investing in other investment vehicles.
PRIVATE EQUITY	Investment strategies include, but are not limited to, venture capital, leveraged buyouts, consolidations, mezzanine and distressed debt investments, and a variety of hybrids, such as venture leasing and venture factoring.
PROFESSIONALLY DESIGNATED, CERTIFIED, OR LICENSED COMMERCIAL PROPERTY VALUER/APPRaiser (real estate)	In Europe, Canada, and parts of Southeast Asia, the predominant professional designation is that of the Royal Institution of Chartered Surveyors (RICS). In the United States, the professional designation is Member [of the] Appraisal Institute (MAI). In addition, each state regulates REAL ESTATE appraisers and registers, licenses, or certifies them based on their experience and test results.
PROPRIETARY ASSETS	Investments owned by the FIRM, the FIRM'S management, and/or the FIRM'S parent company that are managed by the FIRM.
PROSPECTIVE CLIENT	Any person or entity that has expressed interest in one of the FIRM'S COMPOSITE strategies and qualifies to invest in the COMPOSITE. Existing clients may also qualify as PROSPECTIVE CLIENTS for any strategy that is different from their current investment strategy. Investment consultants and other third parties are included as PROSPECTIVE CLIENTS if they represent investors that qualify as PROSPECTIVE CLIENTS.
PUBLIC MARKET EQUIVALENT (PME) (private equity)	The performance of a public market index expressed in terms of an internal rate of return (IRR), using the same cash flows and timing as those of the COMPOSITE over the same time period. A PME can be used as a BENCHMARK by comparing the IRR of a PRIVATE EQUITY COMPOSITE with the PME of a public market index.

REAL ESTATE	Investments in: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ wholly owned or partially owned properties; ■ commingled funds, property unit trusts, and insurance company separate accounts; ■ unlisted, private placement securities issued by private REAL ESTATE investment trusts (REITs) and REAL ESTATE operating companies (REOCs); and ■ equity-oriented debt (e.g., participating mortgage loans) or any private interest in a property where some portion of return to the investor at the time of investment is related to the performance of the underlying REAL ESTATE.
REALIZATION MULTIPLE (DPI) (real estate and private equity)	SINCE INCEPTION DISTRIBUTIONS divided by SINCE INCEPTION PAID-IN CAPITAL.
RECOMMEND/RECOMMENDATION	A suggested provision, task, or action that SHOULD be followed or performed. A RECOMMENDATION is considered to be best practice but is not a REQUIREMENT. (See “SHOULD”)
REQUIRE/REQUIREMENT	A provision, task, or action that MUST be followed or performed. (See “MUST”)
RESIDUAL VALUE (private equity and real estate)	The remaining equity that LIMITED PARTNERS (or investors) have in an investment vehicle at the end of the performance reporting period.
RVPI (real estate and private equity)	RESIDUAL VALUE divided by SINCE INCEPTION PAID-IN CAPITAL. (See “UNREALIZED MULTIPLE”)
SECONDARY FUND (private equity)	An investment vehicle that buys interests in existing investment vehicles.
SETTLEMENT DATE ACCOUNTING	Recognizing the asset or liability on the date when the exchange of cash and investments is completed.
SHOULD	A provision, task, or action that is RECOMMENDED to be followed or performed and is considered to be best practice but is not REQUIRED. (See “RECOMMEND/RECOMMENDATION”)
SIGNIFICANT CASH FLOW	The level at which the FIRM determines that a client-directed EXTERNAL CASH FLOW may temporarily prevent the FIRM from implementing the COMPOSITE strategy. The measure of significance MUST be determined as either a specific monetary amount (e.g., €50,000,000) or a percentage of PORTFOLIO assets (based on the most recent valuation).
SINCE INCEPTION (real estate and private equity)	From the initial cash flow of a COMPOSITE.
SINCE INCEPTION INTERNAL RATE OF RETURN (SI-IRR) (real estate and private equity)	The internal rate of return (IRR) is the implied discount rate or effective compounded rate of return that equates the present value of cash outflows with the present value of cash inflows. The SI-IRR is a special case of the IRR that equates the present value of all cash flows (capital calls and DISTRIBUTIONS) with the period end value. The SI-IRR is always annualized except when the reporting period is less than one year, in which case the SI-IRR is not annualized.

(continued)

STANDARD DEVIATION	A measure of the variability of returns. As a measure of INTERNAL DISPERSION, STANDARD DEVIATION quantifies the distribution of the returns of the individual PORTFOLIOS within the COMPOSITE. As a measure of historical risk, STANDARD DEVIATION quantifies the variability of the COMPOSITE and/or BENCHMARK returns over time. Also referred to as “external STANDARD DEVIATION.”
SUB-ADVISOR	A third-party investment manager hired by the FIRM to manage some or all of the assets for which a FIRM has investment management responsibility.
SUPPLEMENTAL INFORMATION	Any performance-related information included as part of a COMPLIANT PRESENTATION that supplements or enhances the REQUIRED and/or RECOMMENDED provisions of the GIPS standards.
TEMPORARY NEW ACCOUNT	An account for temporarily holding client-directed EXTERNAL CASH FLOWS until they are invested according to the COMPOSITE strategy or disbursed. FIRMS can use a TEMPORARY NEW ACCOUNT to remove the effect of a SIGNIFICANT CASH FLOW on a PORTFOLIO. When a SIGNIFICANT CASH FLOW occurs in a PORTFOLIO, the FIRM may direct the EXTERNAL CASH FLOW to a TEMPORARY NEW ACCOUNT according to the COMPOSITE’S SIGNIFICANT CASH FLOW policy.
TIME-WEIGHTED RATE OF RETURN	A method of calculating period-by-period returns that negates the effects of EXTERNAL CASH FLOWS.
TOTAL FIRM ASSETS	All discretionary and non-discretionary assets for which a FIRM has investment management responsibility. TOTAL FIRM ASSETS includes assets assigned to a SUB-ADVISOR provided the FIRM has discretion over the selection of the SUB-ADVISOR.
TOTAL RETURN	The rate of return that includes the realized and unrealized gains and losses plus income for the measurement period.
TOTAL RETURN (real estate)	The rate of return, including all CAPITAL RETURN and INCOME RETURN components, expressed as a percentage of the CAPITAL EMPLOYED over the measurement period.
TOTAL VALUE (real estate and private equity)	RESIDUAL VALUE plus DISTRIBUTIONS.
TRADE DATE ACCOUNTING	Recognizing the asset or liability on the date of the purchase or sale and not on the settlement date. Recognizing the asset or liability within three days of the date the transaction is entered into (trade date, T+1, T+2, or T+3) satisfies the TRADE DATE ACCOUNTING REQUIREMENT for purposes of the GIPS standards. (See “SETTLEMENT DATE ACCOUNTING”)
TRADING EXPENSES	The actual costs of buying or selling investments. These costs typically take the form of brokerage commissions, exchange fees and/or taxes, and/or bid–offer spreads from either internal or external brokers. Custodial fees charged per transaction SHOULD be considered CUSTODY FEES and not TRADING EXPENSES.

TRANSACTION EXPENSES (real estate and private equity)	All actual legal, financial, advisory, and investment banking fees related to buying, selling, restructuring, and/or recapitalizing PORTFOLIO investments as well as TRADING EXPENSES, if any.
TVPI (real estate and private equity)	TOTAL VALUE divided by SINCE INCEPTION PAID-IN CAPITAL. (See “INVESTMENT MULTIPLE”)
UNREALIZED MULTIPLE (RVPI) (real estate and private equity)	RESIDUAL VALUE divided by SINCE INCEPTION PAID-IN CAPITAL.
VERIFICATION	A process by which an independent verifier assesses whether <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 the FIRM has complied with all the COMPOSITE CONSTRUCTION REQUIREMENTS of the GIPS standards on a FIRM-wide basis and 2 the FIRM’s policies and procedures are designed to calculate and present performance in compliance with the GIPS standards.
VERIFICATION REPORT	A VERIFICATION REPORT is issued after a VERIFICATION has been performed and opines that the FIRM has complied with all the COMPOSITE CONSTRUCTION REQUIREMENTS of the GIPS standards on a FIRM-wide basis and that the FIRM’s policies and procedures are designed to calculate and present performance in compliance with the GIPS standards.
VINTAGE YEAR (real estate and private equity)	Two methods used to determine VINTAGE YEAR are: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 the year of the investment vehicle’s first draw-down or capital call from its investors; or 2 the year when the first COMMITTED CAPITAL from outside investors is closed and legally binding.
WRAP FEE	WRAP FEES are a type of BUNDLED FEE and are specific to a particular investment product. The WRAP FEE is charged by a WRAP FEE SPONSOR for investment management services and typically includes associated TRADING EXPENSES that cannot be separately identified. WRAP FEES can be all-inclusive, asset-based fees and may include a combination of INVESTMENT MANAGEMENT FEES, TRADING EXPENSES, CUSTODY FEES, and/or ADMINISTRATIVE FEES. A WRAP FEE PORTFOLIO is sometimes referred to as a “separately managed account” (SMA) or “managed account.”

APPENDIX A: SAMPLE COMPLIANT PRESENTATIONS

SAMPLE 1 INVESTMENT FIRM BALANCED GROWTH COMPOSITE

1 January 2002 through 31 December 2011

Year	Composite Gross Return (%)	Composite Net Return (%)	Custom		Number of Portfolios	Internal Dispersion (%)	Composite Assets (\$ M)	Firm Assets (\$ M)
			Benchmark Return (%)	Composite 3-Yr St Dev (%)				
2002	-10.5	-11.4	-11.8		31	4.5	165	236
2003	16.3	15.1	13.2		34	2.0	235	346
2004	7.5	6.4	8.9		38	5.7	344	529
2005	1.8	0.8	0.3		45	2.8	445	695
2006	11.2	10.1	12.2		48	3.1	520	839
2007	6.1	5.0	7.1		49	2.8	505	1,014
2008	-21.3	-22.1	-24.9		44	2.9	475	964
2009	16.5	15.3	14.7		47	3.1	493	983
2010	10.6	9.5	13.0		51	3.5	549	1,114
2011	2.7	1.7	0.4	7.1	7.4	54	575	1,236

Sample 1 Investment Firm claims compliance with the Global Investment Performance Standards (GIPS®) and has prepared and presented this report in compliance with the GIPS standards. Sample 1 Investment Firm has been independently verified for the periods 1 January 2000 through 31 December 2010. The verification report is available upon request. Verification assesses whether (1) the firm has complied with all the composite construction requirements of the GIPS standards on a firm-wide basis and (2) the firm's policies and procedures are designed to calculate and present performance in compliance with the GIPS standards. Verification does not ensure the accuracy of any specific composite presentation.

Notes:

- 1 Sample 1 Investment Firm is a balanced portfolio investment manager that invests solely in US-based securities. Sample 1 Investment Firm is defined as an independent investment management firm that is not affiliated with any parent organization. Policies for valuing portfolios, calculating performance, and preparing compliant presentations are available upon request.
- 2 The Balanced Growth Composite includes all institutional balanced portfolios that invest in large-cap US equities and investment-grade bonds with the goal of providing long-term capital growth and steady income from a well-diversified strategy. Although the strategy allows for equity exposure ranging between 50–70%, the typical allocation is between 55–65%. The account minimum for the composite is \$5 million.

- 3 The custom benchmark is 60% YYY US Equity Index and 40% ZZZ US Aggregate Bond Index. The benchmark is rebalanced monthly.
- 4 Valuations are computed and performance is reported in US dollars.
- 5 Gross-of-fees returns are presented before management and custodial fees but after all trading expenses. Composite and benchmark returns are presented net of non-reclaimable withholding taxes. Net-of-fees returns are calculated by deducting the highest fee of 0.83% from the monthly gross composite return. The management fee schedule is as follows: 1.00% on the first \$25 million; 0.60% thereafter.
- 6 This composite was created in February 2000. A complete list of composite descriptions is available upon request.
- 7 Internal dispersion is calculated using the equal-weighted standard deviation of annual gross returns of those portfolios that were included in the composite for the entire year.
- 8 The three-year annualized standard deviation measures the variability of the composite and the benchmark returns over the preceding 36-month period. The standard deviation is not presented for 2002 through 2010 because monthly composite and benchmark returns were not available and is not required for periods prior to 2011.

SAMPLE 2 ASSET MANAGEMENT COMPANY ACTIVE WORLD EQUITY COMPOSITE

Creation Date: 1 July 2005

Reporting Currency: EUR

Year	Gross Return (%)	XYZ World Index Return (%)	Dispersion (Range) (%)	# of Portfolios	Composite Assets (€ M)	% of Firm Assets (%)
2011	-1.9	-0.5	0.2	6	224.9	2.1
2010	16.3	13.5	0.7	8	256.7	2.0
2009	29.0	25.8	1.5	8	205.6	1.9
2008	-39.8	-36.4	1.3	7	164.1	1.5
2007	-2.8	-2.7	n/a	≤ 5	143.7	1.2
2006	9.3	7.5	n/a	≤ 5	62.8	0.4
2005*	14.2	12.6	n/a	≤ 5	16.1	< 0.1

*Returns are for the period from 1 July 2005 (inception date) through 31 December 2005.

Compliance Statement

Sample 2 Asset Management Company claims compliance with the Global Investment Performance Standards (GIPS®) and has prepared and presented this report in compliance with the GIPS standards. Sample 2 Asset Management Company has not been independently verified.

Definition of the Firm

Sample 2 Asset Management Company is an independent investment management firm that was established in 1997. Sample 2 Asset Management Company manages a variety of equity, fixed-income, and balanced assets for primarily European clients.

Policies

Sample 2 Asset Management Company's policies for valuing portfolios, calculating performance, and preparing compliant presentations are available upon request.

Composite Description

The Active World Equity Composite includes accounts whose objective is to exceed the XYZ World Index by 2% over a rolling three-year period. Securities are selected using the firm's proprietary analytics tool, which selects securities expected to be the top performers from within the XYZ World Index universe. Portfolios are more concentrated, typically holding approximately 100–120 securities, versus the benchmark, which reflects the performance of more than 500 holdings. Composite returns may, therefore, have a lower correlation with the benchmark than a more diversified global equity strategy.

Benchmark

The benchmark is the XYZ World Index, which is designed to measure the equity market performance of developed market countries. The benchmark is market-cap weighted and is composed of all XYZ country-specific developed market indexes. Sources of foreign exchange rates may be different between the composite and the benchmark; however, there have not been material differences to date. Benchmark returns are net of withholding taxes.

Fees

Returns are presented gross of management fees, custodial fees, and withholding taxes but net of all trading expenses.

List of Composites

A list of all composite descriptions is available upon request.

Fee Schedule

The standard fixed management fee for accounts with assets under management of up to €50 million is 0.35% per annum; 0.25% thereafter.

Minimum Account Size

The minimum portfolio size for inclusion in the composite is €1 million.

Internal Dispersion

Internal dispersion is calculated using the asset-weighted standard deviation of annual gross-of-fees returns of those portfolios that were included in the composite for the entire year. For those years when less than six portfolios were included in the composite for the full year, no dispersion measure is presented.

Ex-Post Standard Deviation

The three-year annualized ex-post standard deviation of the composite and benchmark as of each year end is as follows:

Year	Composite 3-Yr St Dev (%)	Benchmark 3-Yr St Dev (%)
2011	12.9	14.6
2010	13.2	14.1
2009	17.0	16.3
2008	15.6	14.2

SAMPLE 3 REAL ESTATE: OPEN-END FUNDS/SEPARATE ACCOUNTS**Real Estate Advisors Value-Added Strategy Composite
Schedule of Performance Results 1 January 2002 through 31 December 2011**

Year	Composite Gross-of-Fees Returns					Composite Net-of-Fees Returns	Value-Added Benchmark Returns (Open-End Funds/ Separate Accounts)			Composite Statistics at Year End					
	Income Return (%)	Capital Return (%)	Total Return (%)	Low (%)	High (%)		Total Return (%)	Income Return (%)	Capital Return (%)	Total Return (%)	# of Portfolios	Composite Assets (HKD Million)	External Appraisal % of Composite Assets	Total Firm Assets (HKD Million)	Non-Real Estate % of Composite Assets
2002	7.9	1.9	9.9	n/a	n/a	8.8	8.4	-1.6	7.1	≤ 5	3,085	25	13,919	0	
2003	8.5	2.9	11.7	5.8	20.4	10.5	8.0	1.0	9.2	6	3,294	25	14,911	0	
2004	8.2	2.6	10.9	5.5	19.2	8.3	7.5	6.7	14.4	7	3,348	44	15,144	0	
2005	6.6	11.2	18.1	9.0	31.6	16.6	6.8	12.7	19.7	7	3,728	72	19,794	0	
2006	6.1	7.9	14.2	7.1	24.9	12.5	6.2	9.9	16.3	8	4,022	46	20,482	0	
2007	5.4	8.0	13.7	6.8	23.9	11.8	5.6	9.9	15.6	7	4,348	33	24,219	0	
2008	5.2	-11.4	-6.6	-9.8	-1.6	-8.2	5.1	-11.1	-5.9	7	3,836	100	21,447	0	
2009	7.5	2.7	10.3	5.2	18.1	7.4	7.3	3.2	10.8	7	3,371	52	16,601	0	
2010	7.2	1.7	9.0	4.2	19.5	6.9	7.8	3.1	11.1	7	2,852	38	4,516	0	
2011	7.2	2.8	10.2	5.1	17.8	8.1	7.1	3.2	10.6	7	3,457	50	17,414	5	
Annualized Returns (%)															
3 Year	7.3	1.9	9.8			7.5	7.4	3.2	10.8						
5 Year	6.5	2.9	7.1			5.0	6.6	1.4	8.2						
7 Year	6.4	2.6	9.6			7.6	6.6	4.2	10.9						
10 Year	7.0	11.2	10.0			8.1	7.0	3.5	10.7						
Since Inception	7.0	7.9	10.0			8.1	7.0	3.5	10.7						

Disclosures**Compliance Statement**

Sample 3 Real Estate Advisors claims compliance with the Global Investment Performance Standards (GIPS®) and has prepared and presented this report in compliance with the GIPS standards. Sample 3 Real Estate Advisors has been independently verified for the periods 1 January 2006 through 31 December 2011. The verification reports are available upon request.

Verification assesses whether 1) the firm has complied with all the composite construction requirements of the GIPS standards on a firm-wide basis and 2) the firm's policies and procedures are designed to calculate and present performance in compliance with the GIPS standards. Verification does not ensure the accuracy of any specific composite presentation.

The Firm

Sample 3 Real Estate Advisors (the "Firm"), a subsidiary of Sample 3 Capital, Inc., is based in Hong Kong and manages international real estate strategies. A list of the Firm's composite descriptions is available upon request.

The Composite

The Value-Added Strategy Composite consists of all discretionary open-end funds and separate accounts managed by the Firm using a value-added investment strategy with an equal income and appreciation focus and having a minimum portfolio size of HKD 10 million. Portfolio management will invest in only Asian multi-family, office, industrial, and retail property types that require correction or mitigation of the investments' operating, financial, redevelopment, and/or

management risk(s). A moderate level of leverage ranging between 30% and 40% is used. Real estate investments are generally illiquid, and the investment outlook may change given the availability of credit or other financing sources.

The composite was created on 1 January 2006. The returns presented for periods prior to 2006 are not in compliance with the GIPS standards. Annual internal dispersion is presented using the high and low gross total returns for those portfolios that have been in the composite for the entire year.

Description of Discretion

The Firm has responsibility for sourcing, valuing, and managing the acquisition and disposition of assets. Although some of the Firm's separate accounts require client approval for the acquisition and disposition of assets, the Firm defines such portfolios as discretionary because its recommendations are consistent with the investment strategy and such client approvals are typically perfunctory.

Valuation

Real estate assets are internally valued by the Firm quarterly. For periods prior to 1 January 2011, assets were externally appraised by an independent appraiser at least every 36 months. Beginning 1 January 2011, assets are externally appraised annually unless client agreements stipulate otherwise, in which case such assets are appraised at least every 36 months or per the client agreement if the client agreement requires external valuation more frequently than every 36 months. The percentage of composite assets valued using an external valuation is shown for each annual period. When market circumstances dictate, the Firm may increase the frequency of external appraisals. All valuations are performed as of calendar quarter-ends.

Internal property valuations are determined by applying market discount rates to future projections of gross cash flows and capitalized terminal values over the expected holding period for each asset. To the extent leverage (debt) is used, the debt is valued separately from the real estate. Property mortgages, notes, and loans are marked to market using prevailing interest rates for comparable property loans if the terms of existing loans preclude the immediate repayment of such loans. Due to the nature of real estate investments, valuations are based upon subjective unobservable inputs.

Basis of Accounting

All funds in the composite report their assets and liabilities on a fair value basis using International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRS).

Calculation of Performance Returns

Returns are presented in Hong Kong dollars and are net of leverage. Net-of-fee returns are net of actual investment management fees including incentive fees, which are recorded on an accrual basis. Returns include cash and cash equivalents and related interest income.

Capital expenditures, tenant improvements, and lease commissions are capitalized, included in the cost of property, and reflected in the capital return component. Income and capital returns may not equal total returns due to the compounding linking of quarterly returns. Composite returns are calculated quarterly on an asset-weighted basis using beginning-of-period values. Annual returns are calculated by linking quarterly composite returns.

Policies for valuing portfolios, calculating performance, and preparing compliant presentations are available upon request.

Investment Management Fees

Some of the funds in the composite pay incentive fees ranging between 10% and 20% of profits in excess of a targeted SI-IRR. The standard annual investment management fee schedule for separately managed institutional accounts is as follows:

Up to HKD 30 million:	1.6%
HKD 30–50 million:	1.3%
Over HKD 50 million:	1.0%

Benchmark

The benchmark is the Value-Added Open-End Fund/Separate Account Index (the “Benchmark”). The Benchmark returns have been taken from published sources. The Benchmark is leveraged, includes various real estate property types, and excludes cash, cash equivalents, and other non-property-related assets, liabilities, income, and expenses. The extent of leverage used by the Benchmark may be different from that of the portfolios in the composite. As of 31 December 2011, the Benchmark leverage was 52%.

SAMPLE 4 REAL ESTATE: CLOSED-END FUND
**2006 Value-Added Strategy Closed-End Fund Composite
Schedule of Performance Results 1 April 2006 through 31 December 2011**

Year	Composite Gross TWR			Composite NET TWR	Benchmark			# of Portfolios	Composite Assets (U.S. Million)	Leverage (%)	Composite at Year-End			
	Income Return (%)	Capital Return (%)	Total Return (%)	Total Return (%)	Income Return (%)	Capital Return (%)	Total Return (%)				External Appraisal % of Composite Assets	Total Firm Assets (U.S. Million)	% of Firm Assets	Non-Real Estate % of Composite Assets
4/06–12/06	-3.2	0.8	-2.5	-4.0	4.9	2.2	7.2	1	70	40	35	2,641	20	0
2007	2.5	3.4	6.0	4.5	5.8	1.1	7.1	1	164	45	28	3,125	18	0
2008	6.2	1.9	8.2	6.7	6.9	3.8	10.9	1	215	50	100	2,754	18	0
2009	7.4	30.7	38.6	36.1	7.0	10.2	17.4	1	256	53	44	2,142	21	0
2010	6.6	-13.7	-7.3	-8.8	6.1	-8.8	-2.5	1	111	57	28	1,873	19	0
2011	5.8	-1.5	4.3	2.8	5.4	-2.6	3.0	1	112	60	85	2,247	20	15

Year	Gross SI-IRR		Total Committed Capital (U.S. Million)	Paid-In Capital (U.S. Million)	Cumulative Distributions (U.S. Million)	TVPI Multiple	DPI Multiple	RVPI Multiple	PIC Multiple
	4/06–12/06	-2.3	-3.1	250	71	0	0.99	0.00	0.99
2007	3.7	2.2	250	161	1	1.02	0.01	1.02	0.64
2008	5.8	4.2	250	226	26	1.07	0.12	0.95	0.90
2009	18.5	15.2	250	236	76	1.41	0.32	1.08	0.94
2010	11.5	9.8	250	240	201	1.30	0.84	0.46	0.96
2011	10.8	9.1	250	245	208	1.31	0.85	0.46	0.98

TVPI (investment multiple) = total value to paid-in capital

DPI (realization multiple) = cumulative distributions to paid-in capital

RVPI (unrealized multiple) = residual value to paid-in capital

PIC (PIC multiple) = paid-in capital to committed capital

Disclosures

Compliance Statement

Sample 4 Real Estate Managers claims compliance with the Global Investment Performance Standards (GIPS®) and has prepared and presented this report in compliance with the GIPS standards. Sample 4 Real Estate Managers has been independently verified for the periods 1 January 2006 through 31 December 2011. The verification reports are available upon request.

Verification assesses whether (1) the firm has complied with all the composite construction requirements of the GIPS standards on a firm-wide basis and (2) the firm's policies and procedures are designed to calculate and present performance in compliance with the GIPS standards. Verification does not ensure the accuracy of any specific composite presentation.

The Firm

Sample 4 Real Estate Managers (the "Firm") is a registered investment adviser under the Investment Advisers Act of 1940. A list of the Firm's composite descriptions is available upon request.

The Composite

The 2006 Value-Added Strategy Closed-End Fund Composite includes a single closed-end commingled fund managed by the Firm using a value-added investment strategy with a focus on both income and appreciation. Portfolio management intends to invest in properties located in major markets within the United States with higher operational risk than traditional property types. The target level of leverage is 50% with a maximum allowable level of 60%. Real estate investments are generally illiquid, and the investment outlook may change given the availability of credit or other financing sources. If investment opportunities and/or exit strategies become limited, the life of the fund may be extended and capital calls and distributions may be delayed. The composite was created on 1 January 2006. The composite vintage year is 2006, which was determined based on the fund's first capital call in April 2006.

Description of Discretion

The Firm has complete discretion for all investment activities within the fund.

Valuation

Real estate investments are internally valued by the Firm quarterly. For periods prior to 1 January 2011, investments were externally appraised by an independent appraiser at least every 36 months. Beginning 1 January 2011, assets are externally appraised annually. The percentage of composite assets valued using an external valuation is shown for each annual period. When market circumstances dictate, the Firm may increase the frequency of external appraisals. All valuations are performed as of calendar quarter-ends. Internal investment valuations are determined by applying market discount rates to future projections of net cash flows (gross real estate cash flows less debt service) and capitalized terminal values over the expected holding period for each asset. Due to the nature of real estate investments, valuations are based upon subjective unobservable inputs.

Basis of Accounting

All assets and liabilities are reported on a fair value basis using US Generally Accepted Accounting Principles for non-operating companies.

Calculation of Performance Returns and Metrics

Returns are presented in US dollars and are net of leverage. Net-of-fee returns are net of actual investment management fees, including incentive fees, which are recorded on an accrual basis.

Capital expenditures, tenant improvements, and lease commissions are capitalized, included in the cost of property, and reflected in the capital return component. Income and capital returns may not equal total returns due to the compounding linking of quarterly returns. Composite time-weighted returns are calculated quarterly on an asset-weighted basis using beginning-of-period values. Annual returns are calculated by linking quarterly composite returns.

SI-IRRs are calculated using quarterly cash flows through 2010 and daily cash flows starting in 2011.

Policies for valuing portfolios, calculating performance, and preparing presentations are available upon request.

Investment Management Fees

The fund pays an incentive fee of 15% of profits if the SI-IRR exceeds a preferred return to investors of 11%. The incentive fee is calculated annually. The standard annual investment management fee schedule for separately managed institutional accounts is as follows:

Up to \$100 million:	1.50%
Over \$100 million:	1.25%

Benchmark

The benchmark is the Value-Added Closed-End Fund Index (the "Benchmark"). The Benchmark is a time-weighted return index and returns have been taken from published sources. The Benchmark is leveraged and includes various real estate investment and property types, cash and other non-property-related assets, liabilities, income, and expenses. The extent of leverage used by the Benchmark may be different from that of the fund in the composite. As of 31 December 2011, the Benchmark leverage was 60%. There is no SI-IRR benchmark available for the 2006 vintage year.

SAMPLE 5 PRIVATE EQUITY: FUND OF FUNDS BY INVESTMENT STRATEGY

ABC Fund of Funds Manager, LLC
2006 Buyout Strategy Fund of Funds Composite
Results Reported as of Calendar Year End

Year End	# of Portfolios	Gross-of-Fees SI-IRR (%)	Net-of-Fees SI-IRR (%)	Benchmark SI-IRR (%)	Composite Assets (\$ Mil)	Composite % of Firm Assets
2006*	8	26.9	26.4	17.2	2,336	80.8
2007	10	18.5	17.8	10.2	2,512	83.6
2008	11	18.7	18.1	11.0	3,227	84.2
2009	13	19.6	18.9	11.5	4,518	84.8
2010	13	20.7	20.1	11.8	6,330	85.2
2011	13	21.9	21.3	11.8	9,269	86.0

(continued)

(Continued)

Year End	# of Portfolios	Gross-of-Fees SI-IRR (%)	Net-of-Fees SI-IRR (%)	Benchmark SI-IRR (%)	Composite Assets (\$ Mil)	Composite % of Firm Assets
2012	14	22.2	21.7	12.3	12,286	86.4
2013	14	15.1	14.4	9.6	12,346	87.7

*Partial year from 15 April 2006 (inception) through 31 December 2006.

Year End	Paid-In Capital (\$ Mil)	Cumulative Committed Capital (\$ Mil)	Since Inception Distributions	Investment Multiple (TVPI)	Realization Multiple (DPI)	Unrealized Multiple (RVPI)	PIC Multiple (PIC)
2006	1,556	3,177	1,205	1.5	0.8	0.7	0.48
2007	1,908	3,675	1,341	1.3	0.7	0.6	0.51
2008	2,371	5,166	1,623	1.4	0.7	0.7	0.45
2009	3,254	6,401	2,186	1.4	0.7	0.7	0.50
2010	4,400	8,370	2,950	1.4	0.7	0.8	0.51
2011	6,303	11,344	4,138	1.5	0.7	0.8	0.54
2012	8,167	13,713	6,513	1.5	0.8	0.7	0.69
2013	9,651	15,290	7,091	1.3	0.7	0.5	0.71

Aggregate Performance of Underlying Investments by Vintage Year
Results Reported as of 31 December 2013

Vintage Year	Gross-of-Fees Annualized SI-IRR (%)	Benchmark SI-IRR (%)
2006	22.3	2.5
2007	13.4	1.9
2008	26.0	7.1
2009	18.1	3.9
2010	0.7	1.0
2011	-16.2	-7.5
2012	-25.6	-19.9
2013	-49.9	-40.3

Vintage Year	Paid-In Capital (\$ Mil)	Cumulative Committed Capital (\$ Mil)	Since Inception Distributions (\$ Mil)	Investment Multiple (TVPI)	Realization Multiple (DPI)	Unrealized Multiple (RVPI)	PIC Multiple (PIC)
2006	731	724	939	3.0	1.3	1.7	1.0
2007	710	234	294	1.8	0.4	1.3	3.0
2008	1,475	1,220	1,442	2.0	1.0	1.0	1.2

Vintage Year	Paid-In Capital (\$ Mil)	Cumulative Committed Capital (\$ Mil)	Since Inception Distributions (\$ Mil)	Investment Multiple (TVPI)	Realization Multiple (DPI)	Unrealized Multiple (RVPI)	PIC Multiple (PIC)
2009	1,640	1,048	1,156	1.9	0.7	1.2	1.6
2010	1,896	3,695	1,124	1.9	0.6	1.4	0.5
2011	1,984	4,518	1,100	2.1	0.6	1.5	0.4
2012	680	1,998	938	2.2	1.4	0.8	0.3
2013	535	1,853	100	1.1	0.2	0.9	0.3

TVPI (investment multiple) = total value to paid-in capital

DPI (realization multiple) = cumulative distributions to paid-in capital

RVPI (unrealized multiple) = residual value to paid-in capital

PIC (PIC multiple) = paid-in capital to committed capital

Compliance Statement

ABC Fund of Funds Manager, LLC, claims compliance with the Global Investment Performance Standards (GIPS®) and has prepared and presented this report in compliance with the GIPS standards. ABC Fund of Funds Manager, LLC, has been independently verified for the periods 15 April 2006 through 31 December 2012.

Verification assesses whether (1) the firm has complied with all the composite construction requirements of the GIPS standards on a firm-wide basis and (2) the firm's policies and procedures are designed to calculate and present performance in compliance with the GIPS standards. Verification does not ensure the accuracy of any specific composite presentation. The verification report is available upon request.

The Firm

ABC Fund of Funds Manager, LLC, is an independent private equity investment firm with offices in New York, London, and Tokyo. The firm's list of composite descriptions, as well as information regarding the firm's policies for valuing investments, calculating performance, and preparing compliant presentations, are available upon request.

The Composite

The 2006 Buyout Strategy Fund of Funds Composite includes primary and secondary partnership investments with strategies focused on leveraged and growth-oriented buyouts primarily in the United States. Managers of partnerships are expected to focus on reducing costs, preparing companies for downturn, and providing operational improvement rather than financial engineering. Investments may be in small, medium, and large buyout partnerships, aiming to make selective commitments diversifying across stages, industries, and vintage years. Secondary deals take advantage of distressed primary partnership sales providing access to an increased mix of assets. The underlying funds are leveraged 100–300%. Private equity investments are illiquid and, therefore, if investment opportunities and/or exit strategies become limited, the life of the fund may be extended and capital calls and distributions may be delayed. The composite was created on 31 December 2006. The vintage year is 2006 and was determined by the initial subscription date of the fund of funds.

Valuation

The firm uses valuations reported by the general partner of the investment partnerships. Given the nature of the investments, all valuations are determined using both subjective observable and subjective unobservable inputs.

Calculation of Performance Returns

The fund's SI-IRR calculation uses daily cash flows. All cash flows and values used to calculate returns are in, or have been converted to, US dollars. Gross returns are net of all underlying investment partnership expenses, management fees, and carried interest but gross of ABC Fund of Funds Manager's management fees. Net returns are net of all underlying partnership fees and expenses, including ABC Fund of Funds Manager's management fees.

Investment Management Fee

ABC Fund of Funds Manager's management fee varies based on the size of the commitment and structure of the program. The management fee is 100 basis points, based on the total commitment to a fund of funds, plus a 10% carry on total gains. Net returns are calculated using actual management fees of the fund of funds and underlying funds, including performance fees.

Benchmark

The benchmark is derived from private equity dollar-weighted IRRs, and the calculation is based on the overall market return for buyout fund of funds as determined by benchmark provider GHI. Individual vintage year benchmarks are the median SI-IRR for the applicable vintage years, at 31 December 2013.

SAMPLE 6 PRIVATE EQUITY: FUND OF FUNDS BY VINTAGE YEAR
**Investments 2002 Fund of Funds Composite
Results Reported as of Calendar Year End**

Calendar Year	Gross-of-Fees SI-IRR (%)	Net-of-Fees SI-IRR (%)	Benchmark SI-IRR (%)	Composite Assets (\$ Mil)	Total Firm Assets (\$ Mil)	# of Portfolios
2002*	2.5	-5.5	8.5	2.6	250	≤ 5
2003	-4.2	-12.3	-3.8	4.7	300	≤ 5
2004	12.5	6.5	14.4	7.5	350	≤ 5
2005	45.8	40.8	42.7	24.2	400	≤ 5
2006	35.6	31.5	30.2	21.6	450	≤ 5
2007	22.2	19.3	13.5	14.7	500	≤ 5
2008	17.4	15.5	8.1	11.8	550	≤ 5
2009	17.3	15.3	7.5	11.0	600	≤ 5
2010	16.5	14.8	8.0	9.3	650	≤ 5
2011	15.9	13.5	8.5	8.1	700	≤ 5
2012	16.8	14.0	10.3	6.5	750	≤ 5

*Returns are for the period from 1 May 2002 (inception date) through 31 December 2002.

Calendar Year	Cumulative Committed Capital (\$ Mil)	Paid-In Capital (\$ Mil)	Cumulative Distributions (\$ Mil)	DPI	RVPI	TVPI	PIC
2002	20	3	0	0.00	1.04	1.04	0.15
2003	20	5	0	0.00	0.93	0.93	0.25
2004	20	8	2	0.22	0.94	1.16	0.40
2005	20	15	4	0.23	1.62	1.85	0.75
2006	20	17	12	0.71	1.25	1.96	0.85
2007	20	18	16	0.89	0.82	1.71	0.90
2008	20	19	17	0.89	0.62	1.51	0.95
2009	20	19	19	0.99	0.57	1.56	0.96
2010	20	20	23	1.18	0.47	1.65	0.98
2011	20	20	25	1.25	0.41	1.66	1.00
2012	20	20	29	1.45	0.33	1.78	1.00

Underlying Partnership Investments by Strategy Results Reported as of 31 December 2012

Investment Strategy	SI-IRR Gross-of-Fees (%)	Benchmark Return (%)	Committed Capital (\$ Mil)	Paid-In Capital (\$ Mil)	Cumulative Distributions (\$ Mil)	Assets (\$ Mil)	DPI Multiple	RVPI Multiple	TVPI Multiple	PIC Multiple
Venture Capital	65.3	32.6	8.0	8.0	16.0	2.0	2.0	0.3	2.3	1.0
Buyout	11.3	10.2	12.0	12.0	13.0	4.5	1.1	0.4	1.5	1.0

Disclosures

Sample 6 Investments claims compliance with the Global Investment Performance Standards (GIPS®) and has prepared and presented this report in compliance with the GIPS standards. Sample 6 Investments has not been independently verified.

Sample 6 Investments is an independent private equity manager of fund of funds strategies with offices in Zurich, Menlo Park, New York, and Hong Kong. The composite was created in May 2002 and includes one closed-end fund that invests in buyout and venture capital funds. The fund of funds has an 8–10 year investment time horizon, but it may be longer based on the life of the underlying funds, which may be extended due to changes in investment and/or exit opportunities. As more fully described in the fund's offering memorandum, primary risks include industry and geographic concentration depending on investment opportunities, and liquidity risks due to the nature of the fund's investments.

The composite's vintage year is 2002, which was determined using the date of the initial capital call of the fund of funds. Returns are presented in US dollars.

The 2002 Fund of Funds Composite complies with PQR's valuation guidelines, which are consistent with the GIPS Valuation Principles. Valuations are normally based on valuations provided by the manager of the underlying investments' partnerships. Because fund investments are not publicly traded, all investments are considered to be valued using subjective unobservable inputs.

All returns for the 2002 Fund of Funds Composite reflect the deduction of administrative expenses (legal, auditing, etc.) of the closed-end fund. Gross returns do not reflect the deduction of Sample 6 Investments' management fees. Net returns reflect the deduction of actual management fees and accrued carried interest, if any.

The fund's SI-IRR calculation incorporates daily cash flows. Sample 6 Investments' annual management fee is 1% on the total committed capital.

The Vendor ABC Private Equity Fund of Funds Index (vintage year 2002) is used as the benchmark.

A complete list of the firm's composite descriptions is available upon request, as are policies for valuing portfolios, calculating performance, and preparing compliant presentations.

SAMPLE 7 PRIVATE EQUITY: PRIMARY FUND VEHICLE

Private Equity Capital Management 2001 Venture Capital Composite Results Reported as of 31 December

Year End	Paid-In Capital (AUD Mil)	Since Inception Distributions (AUD Mil)	Cumulative Committed Capital (AUD Mil)	Composite Assets (AUD Mil)	% of Firm Assets
2001*	40.3	0.0	175.0	38.5	64.2
2002	82.3	1.0	175.0	78.8	52.5
2003	129.5	29.9	175.0	105.0	58.3
2004	143.5	42.3	175.0	120.8	41.6
2005	157.5	97.0	175.0	119.0	37.8
2006	166.2	129.3	175.0	112.0	31.1
2007	171.5	184.7	175.0	98.0	28.0
2008	182.5	184.7	175.0	78.8	21.0
2009	182.5	184.7	175.0	49.0	11.9
2010	182.5	184.7	175.0	31.5	7.5
2011	182.5	205.8	175.0	5.2	1.1

*Returns are for the period from 3 February 2001 (inception date) through 31 December 2001.

Year End	TVPI	DPI	RVPI	PIC	Composite Gross-of-Fees SI-IRR (%)	Composite Net-of-Fees SI-IRR (%)	Benchmark SI-IRR (%)
2001	0.96	0.00	0.96	0.23	-7.5	-9.5	-12.5
2002	0.97	0.01	0.96	0.47	0.3	-1.6	-3.5
2003	1.04	0.23	0.81	0.74	4.1	2.3	1.2
2004	1.14	0.29	0.84	0.82	8.2	6.4	7.4
2005	1.37	0.62	0.76	0.90	11.0	9.3	8.2
2006	1.45	0.78	0.67	0.95	13.0	10.1	9.7
2007	1.65	1.08	0.57	0.98	18.1	12.3	11.4
2008	1.44	1.01	0.43	1.04	16.9	10.4	10.1

Year End	TVPI	DPI	RVPI	PIC	Composite Gross-of-Fees	Composite Net-of-Fees	Benchmark SI-IRR (%)
					SI-IRR (%)	SI-IRR (%)	
2009	1.28	1.01	0.27	1.04	14.9	8.7	7.2
2010	1.18	1.01	0.17	1.04	14.0	7.7	6.8
2011	1.16	1.13	0.03	1.04	11.2	6.2	5.5

TVPI = Total Value to Since Inception Paid-In Capital

DPI = Since Inception Distributions to Since Inception Paid-In Capital

PIC = Since Inception Paid-In Capital to Cumulative Committed Capital

RVPI = Residual Value to Since Inception Paid-In Capital

Disclosures

Compliance Statement

Private Equity Capital Management claims compliance with the Global Investment Performance Standards (GIPS®) and has prepared and presented this report in compliance with the GIPS standards. Private Equity Capital Management has been independently verified for the periods 3 February 2001 through 31 December 2010.

Verification assesses whether (1) the firm has complied with all the composite construction requirements of the GIPS standards on a firm-wide basis and (2) the firm's policies and procedures are designed to calculate and present performance in compliance with the GIPS standards. The 2001 Venture Capital Composite has been examined for the periods 1 January 2005 through 31 December 2010. The verification and performance examination reports are available upon request.

Firm & Composite

Private Equity Capital Management ("PECM") is an independent private equity investment firm with offices in New York, London, and Sydney. The 2001 Venture Capital Composite includes one fund, whose objective is to seek long-term capital appreciation by acquiring minority interests in early-stage technology companies. The fund invests in technology companies in Europe, Asia Pacific, and emerging markets. European venture investments are more concentrated than in the other regions and are focused in a few high-quality companies. Exit opportunities include IPOs, trade sales, and secondary sales. Opportunities in China and India will be targeted for investment, and an allocation to Chinese high-tech will be at least 10% of the invested capital over the life of the fund. International venture capital investments are generally illiquid and are subject to currency risk. If investment opportunities and/or exit strategies become limited, the life of the fund may be extended and capital calls and distributions may be delayed. The 2001 Venture Capital Composite was created in 2001. The vintage year of the composite is 2001 and was determined by the year of the first drawdown. The firm's list of composite descriptions and the firm's policies for calculating performance and preparing compliant presentation are available upon request.

Input Data & Calculation

The 2001 Venture Capital Composite complies with the LMN Venture Capital Association's valuation guidelines as well as the GIPS Valuation Principles. Valuations are prepared by PECM's valuation committee and reviewed by an independent advisory board. All investments within the composite are valued

using either a most recent transaction or an earnings multiple. Policies for valuing investments are available upon request. Due to the nature of private equity investments, all investments are valued using subjective unobservable inputs.

The SI-IRR calculation incorporates monthly cash flows for periods prior to 31 December 2009 and daily cash flows thereafter. Performance is expressed in Australian dollars (AUD).

Gross returns are net of transaction expenses and all administrative expenses. Net returns are net of transaction expenses, administrative expenses, management fees, and carried interest. The standard fee schedule currently in effect is as follows:

The manager will receive an annual management fee equal to 2% of capital commitments. The manager's participation in profits (carried interest) begins after the limited partners have been provided an 8% preferred return. The manager collects 20% of the distributed profits from that point forward. Subsequently, if the amount of cumulative carried interest exceeds 20% of the net cumulative gains, the manager will repay the excess amount to the fund for distribution to the limited partners.

There is only one fund in the composite for all periods; therefore, the internal dispersion of portfolio returns is not applicable.

Benchmark

The benchmark return is derived from private equity dollar-weighted IRRs, and the calculation is based on the overall market return for international venture capital funds as published by Benchmark Provider GHI. Vintage year benchmarks are median returns for the applicable vintage year, as of each year end.

SAMPLE 8 INVESTMENTS LARGE-CAP SMA COMPOSITE

1 January 2001 through 31 December 2010

Year	Net Return (%)	XYZ Index Return (%)	Internal Dispersion (%)	As of 31 December			
				Number of Portfolios	Composite Assets (\$ Millions)	Firm Assets (\$ Millions)	% of SMA Portfolios
2010	8.4	10.2	0.7	1,834	2,125	18,222	100
2009	21.1	21.1	1.1	1,730	2,130	17,635	100
2008	-39.7	-39.8	1.0	1,631	2,141	19,246	100
2007	1.4	6.2	1.2	1,532	2,127	14,819	100
2006	11.4	10.5	0.9	1,428	2,116	12,362	100
2005	1.0	4.3	0.8	68	1,115	12,051	0
2004	6.8	4.9	1.0	52	1,110	13,419	0
2003	23.9	27.0	1.1	46	990	10,612	0
2002	-24.4	-19.1	0.9	38	975	9,422	0
2001	-17.7	-12.8	0.8	41	870	8,632	0

Notes:

- 1** Sample 8 Investments claims compliance with the Global Investment Performance Standards (GIPS®) and has prepared and presented this report in compliance with the GIPS standards. Sample 8 Investments has been independently verified for the period from 1 April 1996 through 31 December 2009.

Verification assesses whether (1) the firm has complied with all the composite construction requirements of the GIPS standards on a firm-wide basis and (2) the firm's policies and procedures are designed to calculate and present performance in compliance with the GIPS standards. The Large Cap SMA Composite has been examined for the period from 1 January 2006 through 31 December 2009. The verification and performance examination reports are available upon request.
- 2** Sample 8 Investments is an independent investment adviser registered under the Investment Advisers Act of 1940, was founded in March 1996, and manages global large-cap equity, fixed-income, and balanced strategies.
- 3** Beginning 1 January 2006, the composite includes only wrap fee (SMA) portfolios benchmarked to the XYZ Index. Performance results prior to 2006 are based on the Large-Cap Institutional Composite returns.
- 4** The Large-Cap SMA Composite is composed of portfolios invested in US equities which have a market capitalization greater than \$5 billion.
- 5** The composite was created in February 2006. A list of composite descriptions is available upon request.
- 6** All returns are expressed in US dollars. Policies for valuing portfolios, calculating performance, and preparing compliant presentations are available upon request.
- 7** The XYZ Index returns are provided to represent the investment environment existing during the time periods shown. For comparison purposes, the index is fully invested and includes the reinvestment of income. The returns for the index do not include any trading costs, management fees, or other costs. Index returns have been taken from published sources.
- 8** "Pure" gross returns, presented below as supplemental information, from 2006 through 2010 do not reflect the deduction of any trading costs, fees, or expenses and are presented for comparison purposes only. "Pure" gross returns prior to 2006 reflect the deduction of trading costs. The SMA fee includes all charges for trading costs, portfolio management, custody, and other administrative fees. Net returns are calculated by subtracting the highest applicable SMA fee (2.50% on an annual basis, or 0.21% monthly) on a monthly basis from the "pure" gross composite monthly return. The standard fee schedule in effect is as follows: 2.50% on total assets.
- 9** The dispersion is measured by the equal-weighted standard deviation of annual returns of those portfolios that are included in the composite for the full year.
- 10** At 31 December 2010, the three-year annualized ex-post standard deviation of the composite and the benchmark are 12.3% and 13.2%, respectively.
- 11** Past performance is not an indicator of future results.

Supplemental Information

Year	"Pure" Gross Return* (%)	Net Return (%) Assuming 3% SMA Fees	Net Return (%) Assuming 2% SMA Fees
2010	11.1	7.9	9.0
2009	24.0	20.5	21.7
2008	-38.0	-40.1	-39.4
2007	4.0	0.9	2.0
2006	14.1	10.8	11.9
2005	3.5	0.5	1.5
2004	9.5	6.3	7.4
2003	26.9	23.3	24.5
2002	-22.3	-24.8	-23.9
2001	-15.5	-18.1	-17.2

* "Pure" gross-of-fees returns do not reflect the deduction of any expenses, including trading costs. "Pure" gross-of-fees returns are supplemental to net returns.

APPENDIX B: SAMPLE ADVERTISEMENTS

1. SAMPLE ADVERTISEMENT WITHOUT PERFORMANCE

Generic Asset Management

Generic Asset Management is the institutional asset management division of Generic Inc. and is a registered investment advisory firm specializing in qualitative growth-oriented investment management.

Generic Asset Management claims compliance with the Global Investment Performance Standards (GIPS®). To receive a list of composite descriptions of Generic Asset Management and/or a presentation that complies with the GIPS standards, contact Jean Paul at (123) 456-7890, or write to Generic Asset Management, 123 Main Street, Returnsville 12345, or jpaul@genericassetmanagement.com.

2. SAMPLE ADVERTISEMENT INCLUDING ONE-, THREE-, AND FIVE-YEAR ANNUALIZED RETURNS

Generic Asset Management: Global Equity Growth Composite

	Ending 31 Mar 2012		
	1-Year	3-Year Annualized	5-Year Annualized
Global Equity Growth Composite	-0.3%	13.7%	0.1%
XYZ World Index	-0.5%	13.8%	-0.6%

Note: Returns are shown in US dollars net of fees.

Generic Asset Management is the institutional asset management subsidiary of Generic Inc. and is a registered investment adviser specializing in qualitative growth-oriented investment management. The Global Equity Growth strategy focuses on earnings, growth of earnings, and key valuation metrics. The benchmark is the XYZ World Index, which is designed to measure the equity market performance of developed market countries. The benchmark is market-cap weighted and is composed of all XYZ developed market indexes.

Generic Asset Management claims compliance with the Global Investment Performance Standards (GIPS®). To receive a list of composite descriptions of Generic Asset Management and/or a presentation that complies with the GIPS standards, contact Jean Paul at (123) 456-7890, or write Generic Asset Management, One Plain Street, Returnsville 12345, or jpaul@genericassetmanagement.com.

3. SAMPLE ADVERTISEMENT INCLUDING PERIOD-TO-DATE AND ONE-, THREE-, AND FIVE-YEAR ANNUALIZED RETURNS

Generic Asset Management: Global Equity Growth Composite

	Ending 31 Mar 2012	Ending 31 Dec 2011		
	Period to Date (3 months)	1-Year	3-Year Annualized	5-Year Annualized
Global Equity Growth Composite	-3.84%	1.3%	15.0%	-1.2%
XYZ World Index	-4.94%	1.5%	14.1%	-0.7%

Note: Returns are shown in US dollars net of fees.

Generic Asset Management is the institutional asset management subsidiary of Generic Inc. and is a registered investment adviser specializing in qualitative growth-oriented investment management. The Global Equity Growth strategy focuses on earnings, growth of earnings, and key valuation metrics. The benchmark is the XYZ World Index, which is designed to measure the equity market performance of developed market countries. The benchmark is market-cap weighted and is composed of all XYZ developed market indexes.

Generic Asset Management claims compliance with the Global Investment Performance Standards (GIPS®). To receive a list of composite descriptions of Generic Asset Management and/or a presentation that complies with the GIPS standards, contact Jean Paul at (123) 456-7890, or write Generic Asset Management, One Plain Street, Returnsville 12345, or jpaul@genericassetmanagement.com.

4. SAMPLE ADVERTISEMENT INCLUDING FIVE YEARS OF ANNUAL RETURNS

Generic Asset Management: Global Equity Growth Composite

	Period to Date (3 months to 31 Mar 2012)	Annual Returns Periods Ended 31 December				
		2011	2010	2009	2008	2007
Global Equity Growth Composite	-3.84%	1.3%	13.0%	33.0%	-40.6%	9.6%
XYZ World Index	-4.94%	1.5%	11.8%	30.8%	-40.3%	9.6%

Note: Returns are shown in US dollars net of fees.

Generic Asset Management is the institutional asset management subsidiary of Generic Inc. and is a registered investment adviser specializing in qualitative, growth-oriented investment management. The Global Equity Growth strategy focuses on earnings, growth of earnings, and key valuation metrics. The

benchmark is the XYZ World Index, which is designed to measure the equity market performance of developed market countries. The benchmark is market-cap weighted and is composed of all XYZ developed market indexes.

Generic Asset Management claims compliance with the Global Investment Performance Standards (GIPS®).

To receive a list of composite descriptions of Generic Asset Management and/or a presentation that complies with the GIPS standards, contact Jean Paul at (123) 456-7890, or write to Generic Asset Management, 123 Main Street, Returnsville 12345, or jpaul@genericassetmanagment.com.

APPENDIX C: SAMPLE LIST OF COMPOSITE DESCRIPTIONS

1 Unconstrained Activist UK Equity Composite

The Unconstrained Activist UK Equity Composite includes all institutional portfolios invested in both listed and unlisted UK equities that pursue an activist investment policy; there is no restriction on the market capitalization of companies held. Portfolios within this composite are highly concentrated, holding approximately 15 securities, so returns may have lower correlation with the benchmark than a fully diversified strategy. In times of increased market volatility, the composite characteristics may change significantly and stock liquidity could be reduced. Due to their more concentrated nature, portfolios will tend to have more stock-specific risk than a more diversified strategy. Portfolios can use both exchange-traded and OTC derivative contracts for efficient portfolio management, which may expose the strategy to counterparty risk. The benchmark is the FTSE All Share® Index.

2 Emerging Market High Yield Fixed Income Composite

The Emerging Market High Yield Fixed Income Composite includes all institutional and retail portfolios invested in high yield debt securities issued by countries outside the OECD. The strategy allows for investment in foreign currency denominated assets over which the manager has full discretion on hedging. The strategy aims to deliver a total return primarily through income but with some capital growth. High yield bonds carry increased levels of credit and default risk and are less liquid than government and investment grade bonds. Investment in less regulated markets carries increased political, economic, and issuer risk. The benchmark is the J.P. Morgan Emerging Market Bond Index (EMBI+).

3 UK Liquidity Plus Composite

The UK Liquidity Plus Composite includes all institutional portfolios invested in a broad range of short-dated interest-bearing deposits, cash equivalents, short-term commercial paper, and other money market investments issued by major UK clearing banks and lending institutions. The strategy has a targeted modified duration of less than one year. The principal investment objectives are preservation of capital, maintenance of liquidity, and provision of yield greater than that available for the benchmark, the three-month Libor rate. The UK Liquidity Plus strategy differs from more conventional cash strategies in that it additionally holds short-term commercial paper, which has a greater exposure to credit risk.

4 Socially Responsible Investment (SRI) Composite

The Socially Responsible Investment Composite includes all segregated institutional and pooled portfolios that invest in global equity securities issued by companies that make a positive contribution to society and the environment through sustainable and socially responsible practices. The strategy aims to provide long-term capital appreciation together with a growing income stream through investment in a portfolio of core equity holdings diversified by economic sector, industry group, and geographic business concentration. All foreign currency exposures are fully hedged back to US dollars.

The SRI process tends to screen out certain companies and sectors, which may result in a more concentrated strategy than a fully diversified strategy. Changes in legislation, scientific thinking, national and supra-national policies, and

behaviors could significantly affect the stocks of companies held within the strategy. The benchmark is the Morningstar Ethical/SRI Global GIF Sector peer group.

5 Leveraged Bond Composite

The Leveraged Bond Composite includes all institutional segregated portfolios invested in a diversified range of high yield corporate and government bonds with the aim of providing investors with a high level of income while seeking to maximize the total return. The portfolios are invested in domestic and international fixed income securities of varying maturities. The strategy allows investment in exchange-traded and OTC derivative contracts (including, but not limited to, options, futures, swaps, and forward currency contracts) for the purposes of risk, volatility, and currency exposure management. The strategy allows leverage up to but not exceeding twice the value of a portfolio's investments through the use of repurchase financing arrangements with counterparties. Inherent in derivative instrument investments is the risk of counterparty default. Leverage may also magnify losses as well as gains to the extent that leverage is employed. The benchmark is the Bloomberg Barclays Global Aggregate Bond Index.

6 Global Commodity Composite

The Global Commodity Composite includes institutional portfolios that globally invest in a diversified range of companies that provide exposure to commodities, energy, and materials. Investment is primarily through the common or ordinary stock of these companies. Investment directly in raw materials is allowable to a maximum exposure of 10%. Exchange-traded funds and exchange-traded commodity securities up to a maximum 20% exposure are also allowed. The base currency is US dollars, and any or all of the currency risk associated with investments in currencies other than dollars may be hedged between 0% and 100% at the manager's discretion. The strategy cannot gear or otherwise deploy leverage but may use exchange-traded derivative instruments for efficient portfolio management.

Investments directly or indirectly in commodities may add to portfolio volatility. Global commodity prices can be affected by changes in legislation, national and supra-national policies, and behaviors. In times of commodity price volatility, the liquidity of directly held commodities and the correlation with the broad market can change quickly. The benchmark is the Dow Jones–UBS Commodity Index Total ReturnSM.

7 Large Cap Equity Growth Composite

The Large Cap Equity Growth Composite includes all institutional portfolios that invest in large capitalization US stocks that are considered to have growth in earnings prospects that is superior to that of the average company within the benchmark, the Russell 3000[®] Growth Index. The targeted tracking error between the composite and the benchmark is less than 3%.

8 Balanced Growth Composite

The Balanced Growth Composite includes all institutional balanced portfolios that invest in large-cap US equities and investment-grade bonds with the goal of providing long-term capital growth and steady income from a well-diversified strategy. Although the strategy allows for equity exposure ranging between 50% and 70%, the typical allocation is between 55% and 65%.

9 Currency Overlay Composite

The Currency Overlay Composite includes all institutional and retail portfolios invested in a broad range of foreign-currency-denominated deposits or instruments, such as forward contracts, futures, or foreign exchange derivatives. The principal investment objective is alpha generation through currency appreciation and/or risk mitigation from adverse movements in exchange rates where the original currency exposure stems from a global or international portfolio. Hedging strategies may range from passive to fully active. Currency-related investing carries inherent risks due to changes in macroeconomic policy, which can be amplified in the case of emerging markets, where political regime shifts and changes in the control of capital may be more prevalent. In volatile periods, liquidity and correlations between currencies may change expected returns drastically. Foreign exchange forwards and derivatives traded over the counter have counterparty default risk.

10 Asian Market Neutral Composite

The Asian Market Neutral Composite includes a single hedge fund with a market neutral strategy that invests in publically traded Asian equities with a market capitalization greater than \$500 million. The strategy uses a risk controlled quantitative screening and optimization process that invests at least 85% of the net asset value in long equity positions and at least 85% of the net asset value in short equity positions. The long portion of the strategy will overweight those securities that have been quantitatively identified as potentially exhibiting superior and sustainable earnings growth compared with the market; conversely, the short portion of the strategy will consist of securities that have been identified as having inferior growth prospects or that may also be adversely affected by either specific events or by momentum considerations. The principal objective of the strategy is to outperform the return on three-month US Treasury Bills through active trading of long and short equity positions.

The Asian Market Neutral strategy seeks to dollar balance exposures between long and short positions so that broad market movements are neutralized. In certain market conditions, the investment process behind the strategy can give rise to unmatched country, sector, industry, market capitalization, and/or style bias exposures in the portfolio. The active trading strategy will involve significantly greater stock turnover when compared with passive strategies.

11 2001 Venture Capital Composite

The 2001 Venture Capital Composite includes one fund, whose objective is to seek long-term capital appreciation by acquiring minority interests in early-stage technology companies. The fund invests in technology companies in Europe, Asia Pacific, and emerging markets. European venture investments are more concentrated than in the other regions and are focused in a few high-quality companies. Exit opportunities include IPOs, trade sales, and secondary sales. Opportunities in China and India will be targeted for investment, and an allocation to Chinese high-tech will be at least 10% of the invested capital over the life of the fund. International venture capital investments are generally illiquid and are subject to currency risk. If investment opportunities and/or exit strategies become limited, the life of the fund may be extended and capital calls and distributions may be delayed.

12 2006 Buyout Strategy Fund of Funds Composite

The 2006 Buyout Strategy Fund of Funds Composite includes primary and secondary partnership investments with strategies focused on leveraged and growth-oriented buyouts primarily in the United States. Managers of partnerships are expected to focus on reducing costs, preparing companies for downturn, and providing operational improvement rather than financial engineering.

Investments may be in small, medium, and large buyout partnerships, aiming to make selective commitments diversifying across stages, industries, and vintage years. Secondary deals take advantage of distressed primary partnership sales providing access to an increased mix of assets. The underlying funds are leveraged 100–300%. Private equity investments are illiquid and, therefore, if investment opportunities and/or exit strategies become limited, the life of the fund may be extended and capital calls and distributions may be delayed.

13 Value-Added Strategy Non-Closed-End Real Estate Composite

The Value-Added Strategy Composite consists of all discretionary open-end funds and separate accounts managed by the Firm using a value-added investment strategy with an equal income and appreciation focus and having a minimum portfolio size of \$10 million. Portfolio management will invest in multi-family, office, industrial, and retail property types only within Asia that require correction or mitigation of the investments' operating, financial, redevelopment, and/or management risk(s). A moderate level of leverage ranging between 30% and 40% is used. Real estate investments are generally illiquid, and the investment outlook may change given the availability of credit or other financing sources.

14 Value-Added Strategy Closed-End Real Estate Composite

The Value-Added Strategy Composite includes a single closed-end commingled fund managed by the Firm using a value-added investment strategy with a focus on both income and appreciation. Portfolio management intends to invest in properties located in major markets within the United States with higher operational risk than traditional property types. The target level of leverage is 50% with a maximum allowable level of 60%. Real estate investments are generally illiquid, and the investment outlook may change given the availability of credit or other financing sources. If investment opportunities and/or exit strategies become limited, the life of the fund may be extended and capital calls and distributions may be delayed.

15 US Core Equity Composite (Terminated Composites)

The US Core Equity Composite includes all institutional portfolios and pooled funds managed to a GARP (growth at a reasonable price) strategy through investment in a high-quality, focused portfolio of domestic, large-capitalization stocks that are expected to generate returns above the S&P 500[®] Index over a market cycle. Sample Asset Management Firm uses a quantitative screening process together with fundamental research and then overlays macroeconomic factors and economic sector exposures to construct portfolios. The benchmark is the S&P 500 Index. Quantitative-driven investment screening relies on historical stock correlations, which can be adversely affected during periods of severe market volatility. The composite terminated in March 2009.

Detailed composite definitions are available upon request.

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

- 1 With respect to the Global Investment Performance Standards, which of the following is one of the nine sections containing investment performance provisions?
 - A Real Estate.
 - B Derivatives.
 - C Legal and Ethical Considerations.
- 2 According to the Fundamentals of Compliance section of the Global Investment Performance Standards, issues that a firm must consider when claiming compliance include all of the following *except*:
 - A replicating performance.
 - B properly defining the firm.
 - C documenting firm policies and procedures used in establishing and maintaining compliance with the Standards.
- 3 G&F Advisors claims compliance with the Global Investment Performance Standards (GIPS) in its marketing materials. The compliant presentation includes a footnote which indicates that the firm has been verified by an independent third party. An additional note states that G&F is in compliance with the GIPS standards except for its private equity investments. Is it *likely* that G&F violated the GIPS standards?
 - A No, because the footnotes meet the requirements of the Standards.
 - B No, because the provisions do not apply to the private equity investments.
 - C Yes, because they cannot claim compliance unless all requirements of the Standard are met.

SOLUTIONS

- 1 A is correct. Real Estate is one of the nine sections in the 2010 edition of the GIPS standards. Derivatives and Legal and Ethical Considerations are not sections of the Standards.
- 2 A is correct. Replication of performance is not included in the Fundamentals of Compliance section within the GIPS standards.
- 3 C is correct. Firms must meet all the requirements set forth in the GIPS standards and cannot claim partial compliance.

Quantitative Methods

STUDY SESSIONS

Study Session 2	Quantitative Methods (1)
Study Session 3	Quantitative Methods (2)

TOPIC LEVEL LEARNING OUTCOME

The candidate should be able to explain and demonstrate the use of time value of money, data collection and analysis, elementary statistics, probability theory, and probability distribution theory in financial decision-making.

The quantitative concepts and applications that follow are fundamental to financial analysis and are used throughout the CFA Program curriculum. Quantitative methods are used widely in securities and risk analysis and in corporate finance to value capital projects and select investments. Descriptive statistics provide the tools to characterize and assess risk and return and other important financial or economic variables. Probability theory supports investment and risk decision making in the presence of uncertainty.

QUANTITATIVE METHODS STUDY SESSION

2

Quantitative Methods (1)

This study session introduces quantitative concepts and techniques used in financial analysis and investment decision making. The time value of money and discounted cash flow analysis form the basis for cash flow and security valuation. Descriptive statistics used for conveying important data attributes such as central tendency, location, and dispersion are presented. Characteristics of return distributions such as symmetry, skewness, and kurtosis are also introduced. Finally, all investment forecasts and decisions involve uncertainty: Therefore, probability theory and its application quantifying risk in investment decision making is considered.

READING ASSIGNMENTS

- | | |
|------------------|---|
| Reading 6 | The Time Value of Money
by Richard A. DeFusco, PhD, CFA, Dennis W. McLeavey,
CFA, Jerald E. Pinto, PhD, CFA, and David E. Runkle,
PhD, CFA |
| Reading 7 | Discounted Cash Flow Applications
by Richard A. DeFusco, PhD, CFA, Dennis W. McLeavey,
CFA, Jerald E. Pinto, PhD, CFA, and David E. Runkle,
PhD, CFA |
| Reading 8 | Statistical Concepts and Market Returns
by Richard A. DeFusco, PhD, CFA, Dennis W. McLeavey,
CFA, Jerald E. Pinto, PhD, CFA, and David E. Runkle,
PhD, CFA |
| Reading 9 | Probability Concepts
by Richard A. DeFusco, PhD, CFA, Dennis W. McLeavey,
CFA, Jerald E. Pinto, PhD, CFA, and David E. Runkle,
PhD, CFA |

READING

6

The Time Value of Money

by **Richard A. DeFusco, PhD, CFA, Dennis W. McLeavey, CFA, Jerald E. Pinto, PhD, CFA, and David E. Runkle, PhD, CFA**

Richard A. DeFusco, PhD, CFA, is at the University of Nebraska-Lincoln (USA). Dennis W. McLeavey, CFA, is at the University of Rhode Island (USA). Jerald E. Pinto, PhD, CFA, is at CFA Institute (USA). David E. Runkle, PhD, CFA, is at Trilogy Global Advisors (USA).

LEARNING OUTCOMES

<i>Mastery</i>	<i>The candidate should be able to:</i>
<input type="checkbox"/>	a. interpret interest rates as required rates of return, discount rates, or opportunity costs;
<input type="checkbox"/>	b. explain an interest rate as the sum of a real risk-free rate and premiums that compensate investors for bearing distinct types of risk;
<input type="checkbox"/>	c. calculate and interpret the effective annual rate, given the stated annual interest rate and the frequency of compounding;
<input type="checkbox"/>	d. solve time value of money problems for different frequencies of compounding;
<input type="checkbox"/>	e. calculate and interpret the future value (FV) and present value (PV) of a single sum of money, an ordinary annuity, an annuity due, a perpetuity (PV only), and a series of unequal cash flows;
<input type="checkbox"/>	f. demonstrate the use of a time line in modeling and solving time value of money problems.

INTRODUCTION

1

As individuals, we often face decisions that involve saving money for a future use, or borrowing money for current consumption. We then need to determine the amount we need to invest, if we are saving, or the cost of borrowing, if we are shopping for a loan. As investment analysts, much of our work also involves evaluating transactions with present and future cash flows. When we place a value on any security, for example, we are attempting to determine the worth of a stream of future cash flows. To carry out all the above tasks accurately, we must understand the mathematics of time value of money problems. Money has time value in that individuals value a given amount of money more highly the earlier it is received. Therefore, a smaller amount

of money now may be equivalent in value to a larger amount received at a future date. The **time value of money** as a topic in investment mathematics deals with equivalence relationships between cash flows with different dates. Mastery of time value of money concepts and techniques is essential for investment analysts.

The reading¹ is organized as follows: Section 2 introduces some terminology used throughout the reading and supplies some economic intuition for the variables we will discuss. Section 3 tackles the problem of determining the worth at a future point in time of an amount invested today. Section 4 addresses the future worth of a series of cash flows. These two sections provide the tools for calculating the equivalent value at a future date of a single cash flow or series of cash flows. Sections 5 and 6 discuss the equivalent value today of a single future cash flow and a series of future cash flows, respectively. In Section 7, we explore how to determine other quantities of interest in time value of money problems.

2

INTEREST RATES: INTERPRETATION

In this reading, we will continually refer to interest rates. In some cases, we assume a particular value for the interest rate; in other cases, the interest rate will be the unknown quantity we seek to determine. Before turning to the mechanics of time value of money problems, we must illustrate the underlying economic concepts. In this section, we briefly explain the meaning and interpretation of interest rates.

Time value of money concerns equivalence relationships between cash flows occurring on different dates. The idea of equivalence relationships is relatively simple. Consider the following exchange: You pay \$10,000 today and in return receive \$9,500 today. Would you accept this arrangement? Not likely. But what if you received the \$9,500 today and paid the \$10,000 one year from now? Can these amounts be considered equivalent? Possibly, because a payment of \$10,000 a year from now would probably be worth less to you than a payment of \$10,000 today. It would be fair, therefore, to **discount** the \$10,000 received in one year; that is, to cut its value based on how much time passes before the money is paid. An **interest rate**, denoted r , is a rate of return that reflects the relationship between differently dated cash flows. If \$9,500 today and \$10,000 in one year are equivalent in value, then $\$10,000 - \$9,500 = \$500$ is the required compensation for receiving \$10,000 in one year rather than now. The interest rate—the required compensation stated as a rate of return—is $\$500/\$9,500 = 0.0526$ or 5.26 percent.

Interest rates can be thought of in three ways. First, they can be considered required rates of return—that is, the minimum rate of return an investor must receive in order to accept the investment. Second, interest rates can be considered discount rates. In the example above, 5.26 percent is that rate at which we discounted the \$10,000 future amount to find its value today. Thus, we use the terms “interest rate” and “discount rate” almost interchangeably. Third, interest rates can be considered opportunity costs. An **opportunity cost** is the value that investors forgo by choosing a particular course of action. In the example, if the party who supplied \$9,500 had instead decided to spend it today, he would have forgone earning 5.26 percent on the money. So we can view 5.26 percent as the opportunity cost of current consumption.

Economics tells us that interest rates are set in the marketplace by the forces of supply and demand, where investors are suppliers of funds and borrowers are demanders of funds. Taking the perspective of investors in analyzing market-determined interest

¹ Examples in this reading and other readings in quantitative methods at Level I were updated in 2013 by Professor Sanjiv Sabherwal of the University of Texas, Arlington.

rates, we can view an interest rate r as being composed of a real risk-free interest rate plus a set of four premiums that are required returns or compensation for bearing distinct types of risk:

$$r = \text{Real risk-free interest rate} + \text{Inflation premium} + \text{Default risk premium} + \text{Liquidity premium} + \text{Maturity premium}$$

- The **real risk-free interest rate** is the single-period interest rate for a completely risk-free security if no inflation were expected. In economic theory, the real risk-free rate reflects the time preferences of individuals for current versus future real consumption.
- The **inflation premium** compensates investors for expected inflation and reflects the average inflation rate expected over the maturity of the debt. Inflation reduces the purchasing power of a unit of currency—the amount of goods and services one can buy with it. The sum of the real risk-free interest rate and the inflation premium is the **nominal risk-free interest rate**.² Many countries have governmental short-term debt whose interest rate can be considered to represent the nominal risk-free interest rate in that country. The interest rate on a 90-day US Treasury bill (T-bill), for example, represents the nominal risk-free interest rate over that time horizon.³ US T-bills can be bought and sold in large quantities with minimal transaction costs and are backed by the full faith and credit of the US government.
- The **default risk premium** compensates investors for the possibility that the borrower will fail to make a promised payment at the contracted time and in the contracted amount.
- The **liquidity premium** compensates investors for the risk of loss relative to an investment's fair value if the investment needs to be converted to cash quickly. US T-bills, for example, do not bear a liquidity premium because large amounts can be bought and sold without affecting their market price. Many bonds of small issuers, by contrast, trade infrequently after they are issued; the interest rate on such bonds includes a liquidity premium reflecting the relatively high costs (including the impact on price) of selling a position.
- The **maturity premium** compensates investors for the increased sensitivity of the market value of debt to a change in market interest rates as maturity is extended, in general (holding all else equal). The difference between the interest rate on longer-maturity, liquid Treasury debt and that on short-term Treasury debt reflects a positive maturity premium for the longer-term debt (and possibly different inflation premiums as well).

Using this insight into the economic meaning of interest rates, we now turn to a discussion of solving time value of money problems, starting with the future value of a single cash flow.

² Technically, 1 plus the nominal rate equals the product of 1 plus the real rate and 1 plus the inflation rate. As a quick approximation, however, the nominal rate is equal to the real rate plus an inflation premium. In this discussion we focus on approximate additive relationships to highlight the underlying concepts.

³ Other developed countries issue securities similar to US Treasury bills. The French government issues BTFs or negotiable fixed-rate discount Treasury bills (*Bons du Trésor à taux fixe et à intérêts précomptés*) with maturities of up to one year. The Japanese government issues a short-term Treasury bill with maturities of 6 and 12 months. The German government issues at discount both Treasury financing paper (*Finanzierungsschätze des Bundes* or, for short, *Schätze*) and Treasury discount paper (*Bubills*) with maturities up to 24 months. In the United Kingdom, the British government issues gilt-edged Treasury bills with maturities ranging from 1 to 364 days. The Canadian government bond market is closely related to the US market; Canadian Treasury bills have maturities of 3, 6, and 12 months.

3

THE FUTURE VALUE OF A SINGLE CASH FLOW

In this section, we introduce time value associated with a single cash flow or lump-sum investment. We describe the relationship between an initial investment or **present value (PV)**, which earns a rate of return (the interest rate per period) denoted as r , and its **future value (FV)**, which will be received N years or periods from today.

The following example illustrates this concept. Suppose you invest \$100 ($PV = \100) in an interest-bearing bank account paying 5 percent annually. At the end of the first year, you will have the \$100 plus the interest earned, $0.05 \times \$100 = \5 , for a total of \$105. To formalize this one-period example, we define the following terms:

PV = present value of the investment

FV_N = future value of the investment N periods from today

r = rate of interest per period

For $N = 1$, the expression for the future value of amount PV is

$$FV_1 = PV(1 + r) \quad (1)$$

For this example, we calculate the future value one year from today as $FV_1 = \$100(1.05) = \105 .

Now suppose you decide to invest the initial \$100 for two years with interest earned and credited to your account annually (annual compounding). At the end of the first year (the beginning of the second year), your account will have \$105, which you will leave in the bank for another year. Thus, with a beginning amount of \$105 ($PV = \105), the amount at the end of the second year will be $\$105(1.05) = \110.25 . Note that the \$5.25 interest earned during the second year is 5 percent of the amount invested at the beginning of Year 2.

Another way to understand this example is to note that the amount invested at the beginning of Year 2 is composed of the original \$100 that you invested plus the \$5 interest earned during the first year. During the second year, the original principal again earns interest, as does the interest that was earned during Year 1. You can see how the original investment grows:

Original investment	\$100.00
Interest for the first year ($\$100 \times 0.05$)	5.00
Interest for the second year based on original investment ($\$100 \times 0.05$)	5.00
Interest for the second year based on interest earned in the first year ($0.05 \times \$5.00$ interest on interest)	0.25
Total	\$110.25

The \$5 interest that you earned each period on the \$100 original investment is known as **simple interest** (the interest rate times the principal). **Principal** is the amount of funds originally invested. During the two-year period, you earn \$10 of simple interest. The extra \$0.25 that you have at the end of Year 2 is the interest you earned on the Year 1 interest of \$5 that you reinvested.

The interest earned on interest provides the first glimpse of the phenomenon known as **compounding**. Although the interest earned on the initial investment is important, for a given interest rate it is fixed in size from period to period. The compounded interest earned on reinvested interest is a far more powerful force because, for a given interest rate, it grows in size each period. The importance of compounding increases with the magnitude of the interest rate. For example, \$100 invested today would be worth about \$13,150 after 100 years if compounded annually at 5 percent, but worth more than \$20 million if compounded annually over the same time period at a rate of 13 percent.

To verify the \$20 million figure, we need a general formula to handle compounding for any number of periods. The following general formula relates the present value of an initial investment to its future value after N periods:

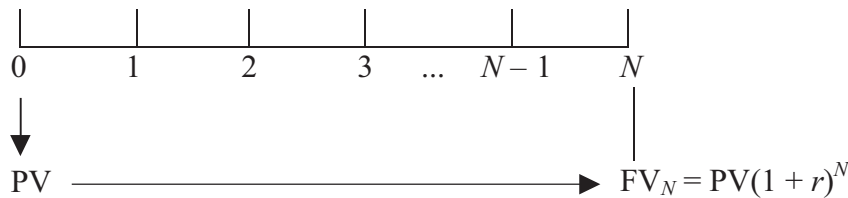
$$FV_N = PV(1 + r)^N \tag{2}$$

where r is the stated interest rate per period and N is the number of compounding periods. In the bank example, $FV_2 = \$100(1 + 0.05)^2 = \110.25 . In the 13 percent investment example, $FV_{100} = \$100(1.13)^{100} = \$20,316,287.42$.

The most important point to remember about using the future value equation is that the stated interest rate, r , and the number of compounding periods, N , must be compatible. Both variables must be defined in the same time units. For example, if N is stated in months, then r should be the one-month interest rate, unannualized.

A time line helps us to keep track of the compatibility of time units and the interest rate per time period. In the time line, we use the time index t to represent a point in time a stated number of periods from today. Thus the present value is the amount available for investment today, indexed as $t = 0$. We can now refer to a time N periods from today as $t = N$. The time line in Figure 1 shows this relationship.

Figure 1 The Relationship between an Initial Investment, PV, and Its Future Value, FV



In Figure 1, we have positioned the initial investment, PV, at $t = 0$. Using Equation 2, we move the present value, PV, forward to $t = N$ by the factor $(1 + r)^N$. This factor is called a future value factor. We denote the future value on the time line as FV and position it at $t = N$. Suppose the future value is to be received exactly 10 periods from today's date ($N = 10$). The present value, PV, and the future value, FV, are separated in time through the factor $(1 + r)^{10}$.

The fact that the present value and the future value are separated in time has important consequences:

- We can add amounts of money only if they are indexed at the same point in time.
- For a given interest rate, the future value increases with the number of periods.
- For a given number of periods, the future value increases with the interest rate.

To better understand these concepts, consider three examples that illustrate how to apply the future value formula.

EXAMPLE 1

The Future Value of a Lump Sum with Interim Cash Reinvested at the Same Rate

You are the lucky winner of your state's lottery of \$5 million after taxes. You invest your winnings in a five-year certificate of deposit (CD) at a local financial institution. The CD promises to pay 7 percent per year compounded annually.

This institution also lets you reinvest the interest at that rate for the duration of the CD. How much will you have at the end of five years if your money remains invested at 7 percent for five years with no withdrawals?

Solution:

To solve this problem, compute the future value of the \$5 million investment using the following values in Equation 2:

$$PV = \$5,000,000$$

$$r = 7\% = 0.07$$

$$N = 5$$

$$\begin{aligned} FV_N &= PV(1 + r)^N \\ &= \$5,000,000(1.07)^5 \\ &= \$5,000,000(1.402552) \\ &= \$7,012,758.65 \end{aligned}$$

At the end of five years, you will have \$7,012,758.65 if your money remains invested at 7 percent with no withdrawals.

In this and most examples in this reading, note that the factors are reported at six decimal places but the calculations may actually reflect greater precision. For example, the reported 1.402552 has been rounded up from 1.40255173 (the calculation is actually carried out with more than eight decimal places of precision by the calculator or spreadsheet). Our final result reflects the higher number of decimal places carried by the calculator or spreadsheet.⁴

EXAMPLE 2

The Future Value of a Lump Sum with No Interim Cash

An institution offers you the following terms for a contract: For an investment of ¥2,500,000, the institution promises to pay you a lump sum six years from now at an 8 percent annual interest rate. What future amount can you expect?

Solution:

Use the following data in Equation 2 to find the future value:

$$PV = ¥2,500,000$$

$$r = 8\% = 0.08$$

$$N = 6$$

$$\begin{aligned} FV_N &= PV(1 + r)^N \\ &= ¥2,500,000(1.08)^6 \\ &= ¥2,500,000(1.586874) \\ &= ¥3,967,186 \end{aligned}$$

You can expect to receive ¥3,967,186 six years from now.

⁴ We could also solve time value of money problems using tables of interest rate factors. Solutions using tabled values of interest rate factors are generally less accurate than solutions obtained using calculators or spreadsheets, so practitioners prefer calculators or spreadsheets.

Our third example is a more complicated future value problem that illustrates the importance of keeping track of actual calendar time.

EXAMPLE 3**The Future Value of a Lump Sum**

A pension fund manager estimates that his corporate sponsor will make a \$10 million contribution five years from now. The rate of return on plan assets has been estimated at 9 percent per year. The pension fund manager wants to calculate the future value of this contribution 15 years from now, which is the date at which the funds will be distributed to retirees. What is that future value?

Solution:

By positioning the initial investment, PV, at $t = 5$, we can calculate the future value of the contribution using the following data in Equation 2:

$$PV = \$10 \text{ million}$$

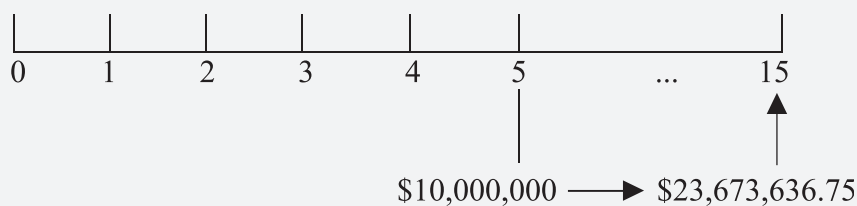
$$r = 9\% = 0.09$$

$$N = 10$$

$$\begin{aligned} FV_N &= PV(1 + r)^N \\ &= \$10,000,000(1.09)^{10} \\ &= \$10,000,000(2.367364) \\ &= \$23,673,636.75 \end{aligned}$$

This problem looks much like the previous two, but it differs in one important respect: its timing. From the standpoint of today ($t = 0$), the future amount of \$23,673,636.75 is 15 years into the future. Although the future value is 10 years from its present value, the present value of \$10 million will not be received for another five years.

Figure 2 The Future Value of a Lump Sum, Initial Investment Not at $t = 0$



As Figure 2 shows, we have followed the convention of indexing today as $t = 0$ and indexing subsequent times by adding 1 for each period. The additional contribution of \$10 million is to be received in five years, so it is indexed as $t = 5$ and appears as such in the figure. The future value of the investment in 10 years is then indexed at $t = 15$; that is, 10 years following the receipt of the \$10 million contribution at $t = 5$. Time lines like this one can be extremely useful when dealing with more-complicated problems, especially those involving more than one cash flow.

In a later section of this reading, we will discuss how to calculate the value today of the \$10 million to be received five years from now. For the moment, we can use Equation 2. Suppose the pension fund manager in Example 3 above were to receive \$6,499,313.86 today from the corporate sponsor. How much will that sum be worth at the end of five years? How much will it be worth at the end of 15 years?

$$PV = \$6,499,313.86$$

$$r = 9\% = 0.09$$

$$N = 5$$

$$\begin{aligned} FV_N &= PV(1 + r)^N \\ &= \$6,499,313.86(1.09)^5 \\ &= \$6,499,313.86(1.538624) \\ &= \$10,000,000 \text{ at the five-year mark} \end{aligned}$$

and

$$PV = \$6,499,313.86$$

$$r = 9\% = 0.09$$

$$N = 15$$

$$\begin{aligned} FV_N &= PV(1 + r)^N \\ &= \$6,499,313.86(1.09)^{15} \\ &= \$6,499,313.86(3.642482) \\ &= \$23,673,636.74 \text{ at the 15-year mark} \end{aligned}$$

These results show that today's present value of about \$6.5 million becomes \$10 million after five years and \$23.67 million after 15 years.

3.1 The Frequency of Compounding

In this section, we examine investments paying interest more than once a year. For instance, many banks offer a monthly interest rate that compounds 12 times a year. In such an arrangement, they pay interest on interest every month. Rather than quote the periodic monthly interest rate, financial institutions often quote an annual interest rate that we refer to as the **stated annual interest rate** or **quoted interest rate**. We denote the stated annual interest rate by r_s . For instance, your bank might state that a particular CD pays 8 percent compounded monthly. The stated annual interest rate equals the monthly interest rate multiplied by 12. In this example, the monthly interest rate is $0.08/12 = 0.0067$ or 0.67 percent.⁵ This rate is strictly a quoting convention because $(1 + 0.0067)^{12} = 1.083$, not 1.08; the term $(1 + r_s)$ is not meant to be a future value factor when compounding is more frequent than annual.

With more than one compounding period per year, the future value formula can be expressed as

$$FV_N = PV \left(1 + \frac{r_s}{m} \right)^{mN} \quad (3)$$

where r_s is the stated annual interest rate, m is the number of compounding periods per year, and N now stands for the number of years. Note the compatibility here between the interest rate used, r_s/m , and the number of compounding periods, mN .

⁵ To avoid rounding errors when using a financial calculator, divide 8 by 12 and then press the %i key, rather than simply entering 0.67 for %i, so we have $(1 + 0.08/12)^{12} = 1.083000$.

The periodic rate, r_s/m , is the stated annual interest rate divided by the number of compounding periods per year. The number of compounding periods, mN , is the number of compounding periods in one year multiplied by the number of years. The periodic rate, r_s/m , and the number of compounding periods, mN , must be compatible.

EXAMPLE 4

The Future Value of a Lump Sum with Quarterly Compounding

Continuing with the CD example, suppose your bank offers you a CD with a two-year maturity, a stated annual interest rate of 8 percent compounded quarterly, and a feature allowing reinvestment of the interest at the same interest rate. You decide to invest \$10,000. What will the CD be worth at maturity?

Solution:

Compute the future value with Equation 3 as follows:

$$PV = \$10,000$$

$$r_s = 8\% = 0.08$$

$$m = 4$$

$$r_s/m = 0.08/4 = 0.02$$

$$N = 2$$

$$mN = 4(2) = 8 \text{ interest periods}$$

$$\begin{aligned} FV_N &= PV \left(1 + \frac{r_s}{m} \right)^{mN} \\ &= \$10,000(1.02)^8 \\ &= \$10,000(1.171659) \\ &= \$11,716.59 \end{aligned}$$

At maturity, the CD will be worth \$11,716.59.

The future value formula in Equation 3 does not differ from the one in Equation 2. Simply keep in mind that the interest rate to use is the rate per period and the exponent is the number of interest, or compounding, periods.

EXAMPLE 5

The Future Value of a Lump Sum with Monthly Compounding

An Australian bank offers to pay you 6 percent compounded monthly. You decide to invest A\$1 million for one year. What is the future value of your investment if interest payments are reinvested at 6 percent?

Solution:

Use Equation 3 to find the future value of the one-year investment as follows:

$$PV = \text{A\$}1,000,000$$

$$r_s = 6\% = 0.06$$

$$m = 12$$

$$r_s/m = 0.06/12 = 0.0050$$

$$N = 1$$

$$mN = 12(1) = 12 \text{ interest periods}$$

$$\begin{aligned} FV_N &= PV \left(1 + \frac{r_s}{m} \right)^{mN} \\ &= \text{A\$}1,000,000(1.005)^{12} \\ &= \text{A\$}1,000,000(1.061678) \\ &= \text{A\$}1,061,677.81 \end{aligned}$$

If you had been paid 6 percent with annual compounding, the future amount would be only $\text{A\$}1,000,000(1.06) = \text{A\$}1,060,000$ instead of $\text{A\$}1,061,677.81$ with monthly compounding.

3.2 Continuous Compounding

The preceding discussion on compounding periods illustrates discrete compounding, which credits interest after a discrete amount of time has elapsed. If the number of compounding periods per year becomes infinite, then interest is said to compound continuously. If we want to use the future value formula with continuous compounding, we need to find the limiting value of the future value factor for $m \rightarrow \infty$ (infinitely many compounding periods per year) in Equation 3. The expression for the future value of a sum in N years with continuous compounding is

$$FV_N = PVe^{r_s N} \tag{4}$$

The term $e^{r_s N}$ is the transcendental number $e \approx 2.7182818$ raised to the power $r_s N$. Most financial calculators have the function e^x .

EXAMPLE 6

The Future Value of a Lump Sum with Continuous Compounding

Suppose a \$10,000 investment will earn 8 percent compounded continuously for two years. We can compute the future value with Equation 4 as follows:

$$PV = \$10,000$$

$$r_s = 8\% = 0.08$$

$$N = 2$$

$$\begin{aligned} FV_N &= PVe^{r_s N} \\ &= \$10,000e^{0.08(2)} \\ &= \$10,000(1.173511) \\ &= \$11,735.11 \end{aligned}$$

With the same interest rate but using continuous compounding, the \$10,000 investment will grow to \$11,735.11 in two years, compared with \$11,716.59 using quarterly compounding as shown in Example 4.

Table 1 shows how a stated annual interest rate of 8 percent generates different ending dollar amounts with annual, semiannual, quarterly, monthly, daily, and continuous compounding for an initial investment of \$1 (carried out to six decimal places).

As Table 1 shows, all six cases have the same stated annual interest rate of 8 percent; they have different ending dollar amounts, however, because of differences in the frequency of compounding. With annual compounding, the ending amount is \$1.08. More frequent compounding results in larger ending amounts. The ending dollar amount with continuous compounding is the maximum amount that can be earned with a stated annual rate of 8 percent.

Table 1 The Effect of Compounding Frequency on Future Value

Frequency	r_s/m	mN	Future Value of \$1	
Annual	$8\%/1 = 8\%$	$1 \times 1 = 1$	$\$1.00(1.08)$	= \$1.08
Semiannual	$8\%/2 = 4\%$	$2 \times 1 = 2$	$\$1.00(1.04)^2$	= \$1.081600
Quarterly	$8\%/4 = 2\%$	$4 \times 1 = 4$	$\$1.00(1.02)^4$	= \$1.082432
Monthly	$8\%/12 = 0.6667\%$	$12 \times 1 = 12$	$\$1.00(1.006667)^{12}$	= \$1.083000
Daily	$8\%/365 = 0.0219\%$	$365 \times 1 = 365$	$\$1.00(1.000219)^{365}$	= \$1.083278
Continuous			$\$1.00e^{0.08(1)}$	= \$1.083287

Table 1 also shows that a \$1 investment earning 8.16 percent compounded annually grows to the same future value at the end of one year as a \$1 investment earning 8 percent compounded semiannually. This result leads us to a distinction between the stated annual interest rate and the **effective annual rate (EAR)**.⁶ For an 8 percent stated annual interest rate with semiannual compounding, the EAR is 8.16 percent.

3.3 Stated and Effective Rates

The stated annual interest rate does not give a future value directly, so we need a formula for the EAR. With an annual interest rate of 8 percent compounded semiannually, we receive a periodic rate of 4 percent. During the course of a year, an investment of \$1 would grow to $\$1(1.04)^2 = \1.0816 , as illustrated in Table 1. The interest earned on the \$1 investment is \$0.0816 and represents an effective annual rate of interest of 8.16 percent. The effective annual rate is calculated as follows:

$$\text{EAR} = (1 + \text{Periodic interest rate})^m - 1 \tag{5}$$

⁶ Among the terms used for the effective annual return on interest-bearing bank deposits are annual percentage yield (APY) in the United States and equivalent annual rate (EAR) in the United Kingdom. By contrast, the **annual percentage rate (APR)** measures the cost of borrowing expressed as a yearly rate. In the United States, the APR is calculated as a periodic rate times the number of payment periods per year and, as a result, some writers use APR as a general synonym for the stated annual interest rate. Nevertheless, APR is a term with legal connotations; its calculation follows regulatory standards that vary internationally. Therefore, “stated annual interest rate” is the preferred general term for an annual interest rate that does not account for compounding within the year.

The periodic interest rate is the stated annual interest rate divided by m , where m is the number of compounding periods in one year. Using our previous example, we can solve for EAR as follows: $(1.04)^2 - 1 = 8.16$ percent.

The concept of EAR extends to continuous compounding. Suppose we have a rate of 8 percent compounded continuously. We can find the EAR in the same way as above by finding the appropriate future value factor. In this case, a \$1 investment would grow to $\$1e^{0.08(1.0)} = \1.0833 . The interest earned for one year represents an effective annual rate of 8.33 percent and is larger than the 8.16 percent EAR with semiannual compounding because interest is compounded more frequently. With continuous compounding, we can solve for the effective annual rate as follows:

$$\text{EAR} = e^{r_s} - 1 \quad (6)$$

We can reverse the formulas for EAR with discrete and continuous compounding to find a periodic rate that corresponds to a particular effective annual rate. Suppose we want to find the appropriate periodic rate for a given effective annual rate of 8.16 percent with semiannual compounding. We can use Equation 5 to find the periodic rate:

$$\begin{aligned} 0.0816 &= (1 + \text{Periodic rate})^2 - 1 \\ 1.0816 &= (1 + \text{Periodic rate})^2 \\ (1.0816)^{1/2} - 1 &= \text{Periodic rate} \\ (1.04) - 1 &= \text{Periodic rate} \\ 4\% &= \text{Periodic rate} \end{aligned}$$

To calculate the continuously compounded rate (the stated annual interest rate with continuous compounding) corresponding to an effective annual rate of 8.33 percent, we find the interest rate that satisfies Equation 6:

$$\begin{aligned} 0.0833 &= e^{r_s} - 1 \\ 1.0833 &= e^{r_s} \end{aligned}$$

To solve this equation, we take the natural logarithm of both sides. (Recall that the natural log of e^{r_s} is $\ln e^{r_s} = r_s$.) Therefore, $\ln 1.0833 = r_s$, resulting in $r_s = 8$ percent. We see that a stated annual rate of 8 percent with continuous compounding is equivalent to an EAR of 8.33 percent.

4

THE FUTURE VALUE OF A SERIES OF CASH FLOWS

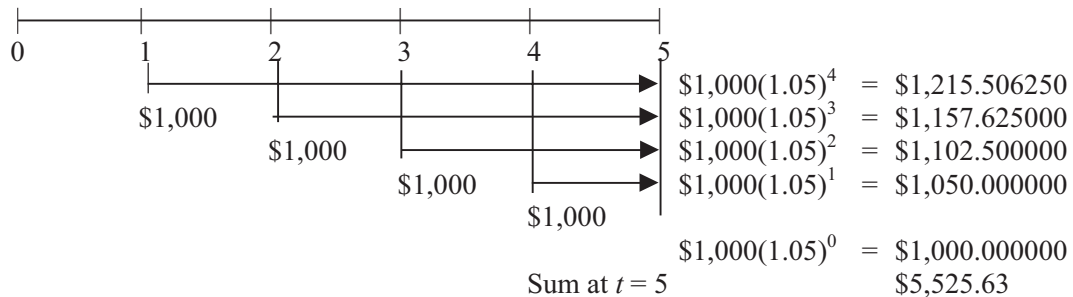
In this section, we consider series of cash flows, both even and uneven. We begin with a list of terms commonly used when valuing cash flows that are distributed over many time periods.

- An **annuity** is a finite set of level sequential cash flows.
- An **ordinary annuity** has a first cash flow that occurs one period from now (indexed at $t = 1$).
- An **annuity due** has a first cash flow that occurs immediately (indexed at $t = 0$).
- A **perpetuity** is a perpetual annuity, or a set of level never-ending sequential cash flows, with the first cash flow occurring one period from now.

4.1 Equal Cash Flows—Ordinary Annuity

Consider an ordinary annuity paying 5 percent annually. Suppose we have five separate deposits of \$1,000 occurring at equally spaced intervals of one year, with the first payment occurring at $t = 1$. Our goal is to find the future value of this ordinary annuity after the last deposit at $t = 5$. The increment in the time counter is one year, so the last payment occurs five years from now. As the time line in Figure 3 shows, we find the future value of each \$1,000 deposit as of $t = 5$ with Equation 2, $FV_N = PV(1 + r)^N$. The arrows in Figure 3 extend from the payment date to $t = 5$. For instance, the first \$1,000 deposit made at $t = 1$ will compound over four periods. Using Equation 2, we find that the future value of the first deposit at $t = 5$ is $\$1,000(1.05)^4 = \$1,215.51$. We calculate the future value of all other payments in a similar fashion. (Note that we are finding the future value at $t = 5$, so the last payment does not earn any interest.) With all values now at $t = 5$, we can add the future values to arrive at the future value of the annuity. This amount is \$5,525.63.

Figure 3 The Future Value of a Five-Year Ordinary Annuity



We can arrive at a general annuity formula if we define the annuity amount as A , the number of time periods as N , and the interest rate per period as r . We can then define the future value as

$$FV_N = A \left[(1+r)^{N-1} + (1+r)^{N-2} + (1+r)^{N-3} + \dots + (1+r)^1 + (1+r)^0 \right]$$

which simplifies to

$$FV_N = A \left[\frac{(1+r)^N - 1}{r} \right] \tag{7}$$

The term in brackets is the future value annuity factor. This factor gives the future value of an ordinary annuity of \$1 per period. Multiplying the future value annuity factor by the annuity amount gives the future value of an ordinary annuity. For the ordinary annuity in Figure 3, we find the future value annuity factor from Equation 7 as

$$\left[\frac{(1.05)^5 - 1}{0.05} \right] = 5.525631$$

With an annuity amount $A = \$1,000$, the future value of the annuity is $\$1,000(5.525631) = \$5,525.63$, an amount that agrees with our earlier work.

The next example illustrates how to find the future value of an ordinary annuity using the formula in Equation 7.

EXAMPLE 7**The Future Value of an Annuity**

Suppose your company's defined contribution retirement plan allows you to invest up to €20,000 per year. You plan to invest €20,000 per year in a stock index fund for the next 30 years. Historically, this fund has earned 9 percent per year on average. Assuming that you actually earn 9 percent a year, how much money will you have available for retirement after making the last payment?

Solution:

Use Equation 7 to find the future amount:

$$A = €20,000$$

$$r = 9\% = 0.09$$

$$N = 30$$

$$\text{FV annuity factor} = \frac{(1+r)^N - 1}{r} = \frac{(1.09)^{30} - 1}{0.09} = 136.307539$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{FV}_N &= €20,000(136.307539) \\ &= €2,726,150.77 \end{aligned}$$

Assuming the fund continues to earn an average of 9 percent per year, you will have €2,726,150.77 available at retirement.

4.2 Unequal Cash Flows

In many cases, cash flow streams are unequal, precluding the simple use of the future value annuity factor. For instance, an individual investor might have a savings plan that involves unequal cash payments depending on the month of the year or lower savings during a planned vacation. One can always find the future value of a series of unequal cash flows by compounding the cash flows one at a time. Suppose you have the five cash flows described in Table 2, indexed relative to the present ($t = 0$).

Table 2 A Series of Unequal Cash Flows and Their Future Values at 5 Percent

Time	Cash Flow (\$)	Future Value at Year 5
$t = 1$	1,000	$\$1,000(1.05)^4 = \$1,215.51$
$t = 2$	2,000	$\$2,000(1.05)^3 = \$2,315.25$
$t = 3$	4,000	$\$4,000(1.05)^2 = \$4,410.00$
$t = 4$	5,000	$\$5,000(1.05)^1 = \$5,250.00$
$t = 5$	6,000	$\$6,000(1.05)^0 = \$6,000.00$
	Sum	$= \$19,190.76$

All of the payments shown in Table 2 are different. Therefore, the most direct approach to finding the future value at $t = 5$ is to compute the future value of each payment as of $t = 5$ and then sum the individual future values. The total future value at Year 5 equals \$19,190.76, as shown in the third column. Later in this reading, you will learn shortcuts to take when the cash flows are close to even; these shortcuts will allow you to combine annuity and single-period calculations.

THE PRESENT VALUE OF A SINGLE CASH FLOW

5

5.1 Finding the Present Value of a Single Cash Flow

Just as the future value factor links today's present value with tomorrow's future value, the present value factor allows us to discount future value to present value. For example, with a 5 percent interest rate generating a future payoff of \$105 in one year, what current amount invested at 5 percent for one year will grow to \$105? The answer is \$100; therefore, \$100 is the present value of \$105 to be received in one year at a discount rate of 5 percent.

Given a future cash flow that is to be received in N periods and an interest rate per period of r , we can use the formula for future value to solve directly for the present value as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}
 FV_N &= PV(1+r)^N \\
 PV &= FV_N \left[\frac{1}{(1+r)^N} \right] && (8) \\
 PV &= FV_N(1+r)^{-N}
 \end{aligned}$$

We see from Equation 8 that the present value factor, $(1+r)^{-N}$, is the reciprocal of the future value factor, $(1+r)^N$.

EXAMPLE 8

The Present Value of a Lump Sum

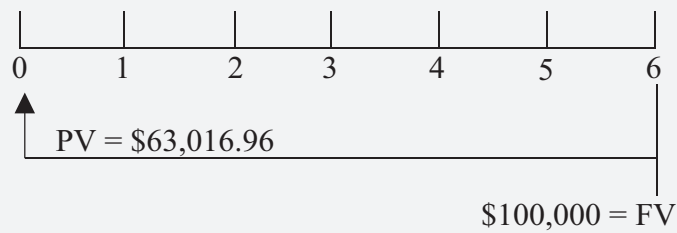
An insurance company has issued a Guaranteed Investment Contract (GIC) that promises to pay \$100,000 in six years with an 8 percent return rate. What amount of money must the insurer invest today at 8 percent for six years to make the promised payment?

Solution:

We can use Equation 8 to find the present value using the following data:

$$\begin{aligned}
 FV_N &= \$100,000 \\
 r &= 8\% = 0.08 \\
 N &= 6 \\
 PV &= FV_N(1+r)^{-N} \\
 &= \$100,000 \left[\frac{1}{(1.08)^6} \right] \\
 &= \$100,000(0.6301696) \\
 &= \$63,016.96
 \end{aligned}$$

We can say that \$63,016.96 today, with an interest rate of 8 percent, is equivalent to \$100,000 to be received in six years. Discounting the \$100,000 makes a future \$100,000 equivalent to \$63,016.96 when allowance is made for the time value of money. As the time line in Figure 4 shows, the \$100,000 has been discounted six full periods.

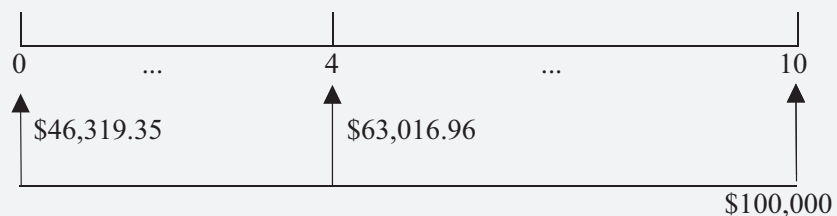
Figure 4 The Present Value of a Lump Sum to Be Received at Time $t = 6$ **EXAMPLE 9****The Projected Present Value of a More Distant Future Lump Sum**

Suppose you own a liquid financial asset that will pay you \$100,000 in 10 years from today. Your daughter plans to attend college four years from today, and you want to know what the asset's present value will be at that time. Given an 8 percent discount rate, what will the asset be worth four years from today?

Solution:

The value of the asset is the present value of the asset's promised payment. At $t = 4$, the cash payment will be received six years later. With this information, you can solve for the value four years from today using Equation 8:

$$\begin{aligned}
 FV_N &= \$100,000 \\
 r &= 8\% = 0.08 \\
 N &= 6 \\
 PV &= FV_N(1+r)^{-N} \\
 &= \$100,000 \frac{1}{(1.08)^6} \\
 &= \$100,000(0.6301696) \\
 &= \$63,016.96
 \end{aligned}$$

Figure 5 The Relationship between Present Value and Future Value

The time line in Figure 5 shows the future payment of \$100,000 that is to be received at $t = 10$. The time line also shows the values at $t = 4$ and at $t = 0$. Relative to the payment at $t = 10$, the amount at $t = 4$ is a projected present value, while the amount at $t = 0$ is the present value (as of today).

Present value problems require an evaluation of the present value factor, $(1 + r)^{-N}$. Present values relate to the discount rate and the number of periods in the following ways:

- For a given discount rate, the farther in the future the amount to be received, the smaller that amount's present value.
- Holding time constant, the larger the discount rate, the smaller the present value of a future amount.

5.2 The Frequency of Compounding

Recall that interest may be paid semiannually, quarterly, monthly, or even daily. To handle interest payments made more than once a year, we can modify the present value formula (Equation 8) as follows. Recall that r_s is the quoted interest rate and equals the periodic interest rate multiplied by the number of compounding periods in each year. In general, with more than one compounding period in a year, we can express the formula for present value as

$$PV = FV_N \left(1 + \frac{r_s}{m}\right)^{-mN} \quad (9)$$

where

m = number of compounding periods per year

r_s = quoted annual interest rate

N = number of years

The formula in Equation 9 is quite similar to that in Equation 8. As we have already noted, present value and future value factors are reciprocals. Changing the frequency of compounding does not alter this result. The only difference is the use of the periodic interest rate and the corresponding number of compounding periods.

The following example illustrates Equation 9.

EXAMPLE 10

The Present Value of a Lump Sum with Monthly Compounding

The manager of a Canadian pension fund knows that the fund must make a lump-sum payment of C\$5 million 10 years from now. She wants to invest an amount today in a GIC so that it will grow to the required amount. The current interest rate on GICs is 6 percent a year, compounded monthly. How much should she invest today in the GIC?

Solution:

Use Equation 9 to find the required present value:

$$FV_N = \text{C\$}5,000,000$$

$$r_s = 6\% = 0.06$$

$$m = 12$$

$$r_s/m = 0.06/12 = 0.005$$

$$N = 10$$

$$mN = 12(10) = 120$$

$$\begin{aligned} PV &= FV_N \left(1 + \frac{r_s}{m}\right)^{-mN} \\ &= \text{C\$}5,000,000(1.005)^{-120} \\ &= \text{C\$}5,000,000(0.549633) \\ &= \text{C\$}2,748,163.67 \end{aligned}$$

In applying Equation 9, we use the periodic rate (in this case, the monthly rate) and the appropriate number of periods with monthly compounding (in this case, 10 years of monthly compounding, or 120 periods).

6**THE PRESENT VALUE OF A SERIES OF CASH FLOWS**

Many applications in investment management involve assets that offer a series of cash flows over time. The cash flows may be highly uneven, relatively even, or equal. They may occur over relatively short periods of time, longer periods of time, or even stretch on indefinitely. In this section, we discuss how to find the present value of a series of cash flows.

6.1 The Present Value of a Series of Equal Cash Flows

We begin with an ordinary annuity. Recall that an ordinary annuity has equal annuity payments, with the first payment starting one period into the future. In total, the annuity makes N payments, with the first payment at $t = 1$ and the last at $t = N$. We can express the present value of an ordinary annuity as the sum of the present values of each individual annuity payment, as follows:

$$PV = \frac{A}{(1+r)} + \frac{A}{(1+r)^2} + \frac{A}{(1+r)^3} + \dots + \frac{A}{(1+r)^{N-1}} + \frac{A}{(1+r)^N} \quad (10)$$

where

A = the annuity amount

r = the interest rate per period corresponding to the frequency of annuity payments (for example, annual, quarterly, or monthly)

N = the number of annuity payments

Because the annuity payment (A) is a constant in this equation, it can be factored out as a common term. Thus the sum of the interest factors has a shortcut expression:

$$PV = A \left[\frac{1 - \frac{1}{(1+r)^N}}{r} \right] \quad (11)$$

In much the same way that we computed the future value of an ordinary annuity, we find the present value by multiplying the annuity amount by a present value annuity factor (the term in brackets in Equation 11).

EXAMPLE 11

The Present Value of an Ordinary Annuity

Suppose you are considering purchasing a financial asset that promises to pay €1,000 per year for five years, with the first payment one year from now. The required rate of return is 12 percent per year. How much should you pay for this asset?

Solution:

To find the value of the financial asset, use the formula for the present value of an ordinary annuity given in Equation 11 with the following data:

$$A = \text{€}1,000$$

$$r = 12\% = 0.12$$

$$N = 5$$

$$\begin{aligned} PV &= A \left[\frac{1 - \frac{1}{(1+r)^N}}{r} \right] \\ &= \text{€}1,000 \left[\frac{1 - \frac{1}{(1.12)^5}}{0.12} \right] \\ &= \text{€}1,000(3.604776) \\ &= \text{€}3,604.78 \end{aligned}$$

The series of cash flows of €1,000 per year for five years is currently worth €3,604.78 when discounted at 12 percent.

Keeping track of the actual calendar time brings us to a specific type of annuity with level payments: the annuity due. An annuity due has its first payment occurring today ($t = 0$). In total, the annuity due will make N payments. Figure 6 presents the time line for an annuity due that makes four payments of \$100.

Figure 6 An Annuity Due of \$100 per Period

As Figure 6 shows, we can view the four-period annuity due as the sum of two parts: a \$100 lump sum today and an ordinary annuity of \$100 per period for three periods. At a 12 percent discount rate, the four \$100 cash flows in this annuity due example will be worth \$340.18.⁷

Expressing the value of the future series of cash flows in today's dollars gives us a convenient way of comparing annuities. The next example illustrates this approach.

EXAMPLE 12

An Annuity Due as the Present Value of an Immediate Cash Flow Plus an Ordinary Annuity

You are retiring today and must choose to take your retirement benefits either as a lump sum or as an annuity. Your company's benefits officer presents you with two alternatives: an immediate lump sum of \$2 million or an annuity with 20 payments of \$200,000 a year with the first payment starting today. The interest rate at your bank is 7 percent per year compounded annually. Which option has the greater present value? (Ignore any tax differences between the two options.)

Solution:

To compare the two options, find the present value of each at time $t = 0$ and choose the one with the larger value. The first option's present value is \$2 million, already expressed in today's dollars. The second option is an annuity due. Because the first payment occurs at $t = 0$, you can separate the annuity benefits into two pieces: an immediate \$200,000 to be paid today ($t = 0$) and an ordinary

⁷ There is an alternative way to calculate the present value of an annuity due. Compared to an ordinary annuity, the payments in an annuity due are each discounted one less period. Therefore, we can modify Equation 11 to handle annuities due by multiplying the right-hand side of the equation by $(1 + r)$:

$$PV(\text{Annuity due}) = A \left\{ \left[\frac{1 - (1 + r)^{-N}}{r} \right] (1 + r) \right\}$$

annuity of \$200,000 per year for 19 years. To value this option, you need to find the present value of the ordinary annuity using Equation 11 and then add \$200,000 to it.

$$A = \$200,000$$

$$N = 19$$

$$r = 7\% = 0.07$$

$$\begin{aligned} PV &= A \left[\frac{1 - \frac{1}{(1+r)^N}}{r} \right] \\ &= \$200,000 \left[\frac{1 - \frac{1}{(1.07)^{19}}}{0.07} \right] \\ &= \$200,000(10.335595) \\ &= \$2,067,119.05 \end{aligned}$$

The 19 payments of \$200,000 have a present value of \$2,067,119.05. Adding the initial payment of \$200,000 to \$2,067,119.05, we find that the total value of the annuity option is \$2,267,119.05. The present value of the annuity is greater than the lump sum alternative of \$2 million.

We now look at another example reiterating the equivalence of present and future values.

EXAMPLE 13

The Projected Present Value of an Ordinary Annuity

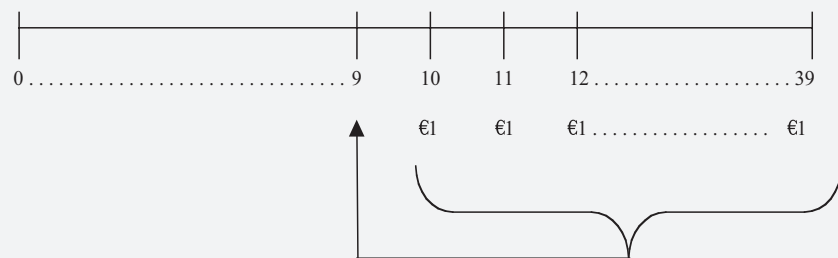
A German pension fund manager anticipates that benefits of €1 million per year must be paid to retirees. Retirements will not occur until 10 years from now at time $t = 10$. Once benefits begin to be paid, they will extend until $t = 39$ for a total of 30 payments. What is the present value of the pension liability if the appropriate annual discount rate for plan liabilities is 5 percent compounded annually?

Solution:

This problem involves an annuity with the first payment at $t = 10$. From the perspective of $t = 9$, we have an ordinary annuity with 30 payments. We can compute the present value of this annuity with Equation 11 and then look at it on a time line.

$$\begin{aligned}
 A &= \text{€}1,000,000 \\
 r &= 5\% = 0.05 \\
 N &= 30 \\
 PV &= A \left[\frac{1 - \frac{1}{(1+r)^N}}{r} \right] \\
 &= \text{€}1,000,000 \left[\frac{1 - \frac{1}{(1.05)^{30}}}{0.05} \right] \\
 &= \text{€}1,000,000(15.372451) \\
 &= \text{€}15,372,451.03
 \end{aligned}$$

Figure 7 The Present Value of an Ordinary Annuity with First Payment at Time $t = 10$ (in Millions)



On the time line, we have shown the pension payments of €1 million extending from $t = 10$ to $t = 39$. The bracket and arrow indicate the process of finding the present value of the annuity, discounted back to $t = 9$. The present value of the pension benefits as of $t = 9$ is €15,372,451.03. The problem is to find the present value today (at $t = 0$).

Now we can rely on the equivalence of present value and future value. As Figure 7 shows, we can view the amount at $t = 9$ as a future value from the vantage point of $t = 0$. We compute the present value of the amount at $t = 9$ as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}
 FV_N &= \text{€}15,372,451.03 \text{ (the present value at } t = 9) \\
 N &= 9 \\
 r &= 5\% = 0.05 \\
 PV &= FV_N(1+r)^{-N} \\
 &= \text{€}15,372,451.03(1.05)^{-9} \\
 &= \text{€}15,372,451.03(0.644609) \\
 &= \text{€}9,909,219.00
 \end{aligned}$$

The present value of the pension liability is €9,909,219.00.

Example 13 illustrates three procedures emphasized in this reading:

- finding the present or future value of any cash flow series;
- recognizing the equivalence of present value and appropriately discounted future value; and
- keeping track of the actual calendar time in a problem involving the time value of money.

6.2 The Present Value of an Infinite Series of Equal Cash Flows—Perpetuity

Consider the case of an ordinary annuity that extends indefinitely. Such an ordinary annuity is called a perpetuity (a perpetual annuity). To derive a formula for the present value of a perpetuity, we can modify Equation 10 to account for an infinite series of cash flows:

$$PV = A \sum_{t=1}^{\infty} \left[\frac{1}{(1+r)^t} \right] \quad (12)$$

As long as interest rates are positive, the sum of present value factors converges and

$$PV = \frac{A}{r} \quad (13)$$

To see this, look back at Equation 11, the expression for the present value of an ordinary annuity. As N (the number of periods in the annuity) goes to infinity, the term $1/(1+r)^N$ approaches 0 and Equation 11 simplifies to Equation 13. This equation will reappear when we value dividends from stocks because stocks have no predefined life span. (A stock paying constant dividends is similar to a perpetuity.) With the first payment a year from now, a perpetuity of \$10 per year with a 20 percent required rate of return has a present value of $\$10/0.2 = \50 .

Equation 13 is valid only for a perpetuity with level payments. In our development above, the first payment occurred at $t = 1$; therefore, we compute the present value as of $t = 0$.

Other assets also come close to satisfying the assumptions of a perpetuity. Certain government bonds and preferred stocks are typical examples of financial assets that make level payments for an indefinite period of time.

EXAMPLE 14

The Present Value of a Perpetuity

The British government once issued a type of security called a consol bond, which promised to pay a level cash flow indefinitely. If a consol bond paid £100 per year in perpetuity, what would it be worth today if the required rate of return were 5 percent?

Solution:

To answer this question, we can use Equation 13 with the following data:

$$A = £100$$

$$r = 5\% = 0.05$$

$$PV = A/r$$

$$= £100/0.05$$

$$= £2,000$$

The bond would be worth £2,000.

6.3 Present Values Indexed at Times Other than $t = 0$

In practice with investments, analysts frequently need to find present values indexed at times other than $t = 0$. Subscripting the present value and evaluating a perpetuity beginning with \$100 payments in Year 2, we find $PV_1 = \$100/0.05 = \$2,000$ at a 5 percent discount rate. Further, we can calculate today's PV as $PV_0 = \$2,000/1.05 = \$1,904.76$.

Consider a similar situation in which cash flows of \$6 per year begin at the end of the 4th year and continue at the end of each year thereafter, with the last cash flow at the end of the 10th year. From the perspective of the end of the third year, we are facing a typical seven-year ordinary annuity. We can find the present value of the annuity from the perspective of the end of the third year and then discount that present value back to the present. At an interest rate of 5 percent, the cash flows of \$6 per year starting at the end of the fourth year will be worth \$34.72 at the end of the third year ($t = 3$) and \$29.99 today ($t = 0$).

The next example illustrates the important concept that an annuity or perpetuity beginning sometime in the future can be expressed in present value terms one period prior to the first payment. That present value can then be discounted back to today's present value.

EXAMPLE 15

The Present Value of a Projected Perpetuity

Consider a level perpetuity of £100 per year with its first payment beginning at $t = 5$. What is its present value today (at $t = 0$), given a 5 percent discount rate?

Solution:

First, we find the present value of the perpetuity at $t = 4$ and then discount that amount back to $t = 0$. (Recall that a perpetuity or an ordinary annuity has its first payment one period away, explaining the $t = 4$ index for our present value calculation.)

- i. Find the present value of the perpetuity at $t = 4$:

$$A = £100$$

$$r = 5\% = 0.05$$

$$PV = A/r$$

$$= £100/0.05$$

$$= £2,000$$

- ii. Find the present value of the future amount at $t = 4$. From the perspective of $t = 0$, the present value of £2,000 can be considered a future value. Now we need to find the present value of a lump sum:

$$FV_N = £2,000 \text{ (the present value at } t = 4)$$

$$r = 5\% = 0.05$$

$$N = 4$$

$$\begin{aligned} PV &= FV_N(1+r)^{-N} \\ &= £2,000(1.05)^{-4} \\ &= £2,000(0.822702) \\ &= £1,645.40 \end{aligned}$$

Today's present value of the perpetuity is £1,645.40.

As discussed earlier, an annuity is a series of payments of a fixed amount for a specified number of periods. Suppose we own a perpetuity. At the same time, we issue a perpetuity obligating us to make payments; these payments are the same size as those of the perpetuity we own. However, the first payment of the perpetuity we issue is at $t = 5$; payments then continue on forever. The payments on this second perpetuity exactly offset the payments received from the perpetuity we own at $t = 5$ and all subsequent dates. We are left with level nonzero net cash flows at $t = 1, 2, 3,$ and 4 . This outcome exactly fits the definition of an annuity with four payments. Thus we can construct an annuity as the difference between two perpetuities with equal, level payments but differing starting dates. The next example illustrates this result.

EXAMPLE 16

The Present Value of an Ordinary Annuity as the Present Value of a Current Minus Projected Perpetuity

Given a 5 percent discount rate, find the present value of a four-year ordinary annuity of £100 per year starting in Year 1 as the difference between the following two level perpetuities:

Perpetuity 1 £100 per year starting in Year 1 (first payment at $t = 1$)

Perpetuity 2 £100 per year starting in Year 5 (first payment at $t = 5$)

Solution:

If we subtract Perpetuity 2 from Perpetuity 1, we are left with an ordinary annuity of £100 per period for four years (payments at $t = 1, 2, 3, 4$). Subtracting the present value of Perpetuity 2 from that of Perpetuity 1, we arrive at the present value of the four-year ordinary annuity:

$$PV_0(\text{Perpetuity 1}) = £100 / 0.05 = £2,000$$

$$PV_4(\text{Perpetuity 2}) = £100 / 0.05 = £2,000$$

$$PV_0(\text{Perpetuity 2}) = £2,000 / (1.05)^4 = £1,645.40$$

$$\begin{aligned} PV_0(\text{Annuity}) &= PV_0(\text{Perpetuity 1}) - PV_0(\text{Perpetuity 2}) \\ &= £2,000 - £1,645.40 \\ &= £354.60 \end{aligned}$$

The four-year ordinary annuity's present value is equal to $£2,000 - £1,645.40 = £354.60$.

6.4 The Present Value of a Series of Unequal Cash Flows

When we have unequal cash flows, we must first find the present value of each individual cash flow and then sum the respective present values. For a series with many cash flows, we usually use a spreadsheet. Table 3 lists a series of cash flows with the time periods in the first column, cash flows in the second column, and each cash flow's present value in the third column. The last row of Table 3 shows the sum of the five present values.

Table 3 A Series of Unequal Cash Flows and Their Present Values at 5 Percent

Time Period	Cash Flow (\$)	Present Value at Year 0
1	1,000	$\$1,000(1.05)^{-1} = \952.38
2	2,000	$\$2,000(1.05)^{-2} = \$1,814.06$
3	4,000	$\$4,000(1.05)^{-3} = \$3,455.35$
4	5,000	$\$5,000(1.05)^{-4} = \$4,113.51$
5	6,000	$\$6,000(1.05)^{-5} = \$4,701.16$
	Sum	$= \$15,036.46$

We could calculate the future value of these cash flows by computing them one at a time using the single-payment future value formula. We already know the present value of this series, however, so we can easily apply time-value equivalence. The future value of the series of cash flows from Table 2, \$19,190.76, is equal to the single \$15,036.46 amount compounded forward to $t = 5$:

$$PV = \$15,036.46$$

$$N = 5$$

$$r = 5\% = 0.05$$

$$FV_N = PV(1 + r)^N$$

$$= \$15,036.46(1.05)^5$$

$$= \$15,036.46(1.276282)$$

$$= \$19,190.76$$

7

SOLVING FOR RATES, NUMBER OF PERIODS, OR SIZE OF ANNUITY PAYMENTS

In the previous examples, certain pieces of information have been made available. For instance, all problems have given the rate of interest, r , the number of time periods, N , the annuity amount, A , and either the present value, PV , or future value, FV . In real-world applications, however, although the present and future values may be given, you may have to solve for either the interest rate, the number of periods, or the annuity amount. In the subsections that follow, we show these types of problems.

7.1 Solving for Interest Rates and Growth Rates

Suppose a bank deposit of €100 is known to generate a payoff of €111 in one year. With this information, we can infer the interest rate that separates the present value of €100 from the future value of €111 by using Equation 2, $FV_N = PV(1 + r)^N$, with $N = 1$. With PV, FV, and N known, we can solve for r directly:

$$\begin{aligned} 1 + r &= FV/PV \\ 1 + r &= €111/€100 = 1.11 \\ r &= 0.11, \text{ or } 11\% \end{aligned}$$

The interest rate that equates €100 at $t = 0$ to €111 at $t = 1$ is 11 percent. Thus we can state that €100 grows to €111 with a growth rate of 11 percent.

As this example shows, an interest rate can also be considered a growth rate. The particular application will usually dictate whether we use the term “interest rate” or “growth rate.” Solving Equation 2 for r and replacing the interest rate r with the growth rate g produces the following expression for determining growth rates:

$$g = (FV_N/PV)^{1/N} - 1 \quad (14)$$

Below are two examples that use the concept of a growth rate.

EXAMPLE 17

Calculating a Growth Rate (1)

Hyundai Steel, the first Korean steelmaker, was established in 1953. Hyundai Steel’s sales increased from ₩10,503.0 billion in 2008 to ₩14,146.4 billion in 2012. However, its net profit declined from ₩822.5 billion in 2008 to ₩796.4 billion in 2012. Calculate the following growth rates for Hyundai Steel for the four-year period from the end of 2008 to the end of 2012:

- 1 Sales growth rate.
- 2 Net profit growth rate.

Solution to 1:

To solve this problem, we can use Equation 14, $g = (FV_N/PV)^{1/N} - 1$. We denote sales in 2008 as PV and sales in 2012 as FV_4 . We can then solve for the growth rate as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} g &= \sqrt[4]{₩14,146.4/₩10,503.0} - 1 \\ &= \sqrt[4]{1.346891} - 1 \\ &= 1.077291 - 1 \\ &= 0.077291 \text{ or about } 7.7\% \end{aligned}$$

The calculated growth rate of about 7.7 percent a year shows that Hyundai Steel’s sales grew substantially during the 2008–2012 period.

Solution to 2:

In this case, we can speak of a positive compound rate of decrease or a negative compound growth rate. Using Equation 14, we find

$$\begin{aligned} g &= \sqrt[4]{\frac{\$796.4}{\$822.5}} - 1 \\ &= \sqrt[4]{0.968267} - 1 \\ &= 0.991971 - 1 \\ &= -0.008029 \text{ or about } -0.80\% \end{aligned}$$

In contrast to the positive sales growth, the rate of growth in net profit was approximately -0.80 percent during the 2008–2012 period.

EXAMPLE 18**Calculating a Growth Rate (2)**

Toyota Motor Corporation, one of the largest automakers in the world, had consolidated vehicle sales of 7.35 million units in 2012. This is substantially less than consolidated vehicle sales of 8.52 million units five years earlier in 2007. What was the growth rate in number of vehicles sold by Toyota from 2007 to 2012?

Solution:

Using Equation 14, we find

$$\begin{aligned} g &= \sqrt[5]{7.35/8.52} - 1 \\ &= \sqrt[5]{0.862676} - 1 \\ &= 0.970889 - 1 \\ &= -0.029111 \text{ or about } -2.9\% \end{aligned}$$

The rate of growth in vehicles sold was approximately -2.9 percent during the 2007–2012 period. Note that we can also refer to -2.9 percent as the compound annual growth rate because it is the single number that compounds the number of vehicles sold in 2007 forward to the number of vehicles sold in 2012. Table 4 lists the number of vehicles sold operated by Toyota from 2007 to 2012.

Table 4 Number of Vehicles Sold, 2007–2012

Year	Number of Vehicles Sold (Millions)	$(1 + g)_t$	t
2007	8.52		0
2008	8.91	$8.91/8.52 = 1.045775$	1
2009	7.57	$7.57/8.91 = 0.849607$	2
2010	7.24	$7.24/7.57 = 0.956407$	3
2011	7.31	$7.31/7.24 = 1.009669$	4
2012	7.35	$7.35/7.31 = 1.005472$	5

Source: www.toyota.com.

Table 4 also shows 1 plus the one-year growth rate in number of vehicles sold. We can compute the 1 plus five-year cumulative growth in number of vehicles sold from 2007 to 2012 as the product of quantities (1 + one-year growth rate). We arrive at the same result as when we divide the ending number of vehicles sold, 7.35 million, by the beginning number of vehicles sold, 8.52 million:

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{7.35}{8.52} &= \left(\frac{8.91}{8.52}\right)\left(\frac{7.57}{8.91}\right)\left(\frac{7.24}{7.57}\right)\left(\frac{7.31}{7.24}\right)\left(\frac{7.35}{7.31}\right) \\ &= (1 + g_1)(1 + g_2)(1 + g_3)(1 + g_4)(1 + g_5) \\ 0.862676 &= (1.045775)(0.849607)(0.956407)(1.009669)(1.005472)\end{aligned}$$

The right-hand side of the equation is the product of 1 plus the one-year growth rate in number of vehicles sold for each year. Recall that, using Equation 14, we took the fifth root of $7.35/8.52 = 0.862676$. In effect, we were solving for the single value of g which, when compounded over five periods, gives the correct product of 1 plus the one-year growth rates.⁸

In conclusion, we do not need to compute intermediate growth rates as in Table 4 to solve for a compound growth rate g . Sometimes, however, the intermediate growth rates are interesting or informative. For example, at first (from 2007 to 2008), Toyota Motors increased its number of vehicles sold. We can also analyze the variability in growth rates when we conduct an analysis as in Table 4. Most of the decline in Toyota Motor's sales occurred in 2009. Elsewhere in Toyota Motor's disclosures, the company noted that the substantial decline in vehicle sales in 2009 was due to the steep downturn in the global economy. Sales declined further in 2010 as the market conditions remained difficult. Each of the next two years saw a slight increase in sales.

The compound growth rate is an excellent summary measure of growth over multiple time periods. In our Toyota Motors example, the compound growth rate of -2.9 percent is the single growth rate that, when added to 1, compounded over five years, and multiplied by the 2007 number of vehicles sold, yields the 2012 number of vehicles sold.

7.2 Solving for the Number of Periods

In this section, we demonstrate how to solve for the number of periods given present value, future value, and interest or growth rates.

EXAMPLE 19

The Number of Annual Compounding Periods Needed for an Investment to Reach a Specific Value

You are interested in determining how long it will take an investment of €10,000,000 to double in value. The current interest rate is 7 percent compounded annually. How many years will it take €10,000,000 to double to €20,000,000?

⁸ The compound growth rate that we calculate here is an example of a geometric mean, specifically the geometric mean of the growth rates. We define the geometric mean in the reading on statistical concepts.

Solution:

Use Equation 2, $FV_N = PV(1 + r)^N$, to solve for the number of periods, N , as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}(1 + r)^N &= FV_N / PV = 2 \\ N \ln(1 + r) &= \ln(2) \\ N &= \ln(2) / \ln(1 + r) \\ &= \ln(2) / \ln(1.07) = 10.24\end{aligned}$$

With an interest rate of 7 percent, it will take approximately 10 years for the initial €10,000,000 investment to grow to €20,000,000. Solving for N in the expression $(1.07)^N = 2.0$ requires taking the natural logarithm of both sides and using the rule that $\ln(x^N) = N \ln(x)$. Generally, we find that $N = [\ln(FV/PV)] / \ln(1 + r)$. Here, $N = \ln(€20,000,000/€10,000,000) / \ln(1.07) = \ln(2) / \ln(1.07) = 10.24$.⁹

7.3 Solving for the Size of Annuity Payments

In this section, we discuss how to solve for annuity payments. Mortgages, auto loans, and retirement savings plans are classic examples of applications of annuity formulas.

EXAMPLE 20

Calculating the Size of Payments on a Fixed-Rate Mortgage

You are planning to purchase a \$120,000 house by making a down payment of \$20,000 and borrowing the remainder with a 30-year fixed-rate mortgage with monthly payments. The first payment is due at $t = 1$. Current mortgage interest rates are quoted at 8 percent with monthly compounding. What will your monthly mortgage payments be?

⁹ To quickly approximate the number of periods, practitioners sometimes use an ad hoc rule called the **Rule of 72**: Divide 72 by the stated interest rate to get the approximate number of years it would take to double an investment at the interest rate. Here, the approximation gives $72/7 = 10.3$ years. The Rule of 72 is loosely based on the observation that it takes 12 years to double an amount at a 6 percent interest rate, giving $6 \times 12 = 72$. At a 3 percent rate, one would guess it would take twice as many years, $3 \times 24 = 72$.

Solution:

The bank will determine the mortgage payments such that at the stated periodic interest rate, the present value of the payments will be equal to the amount borrowed (in this case, \$100,000). With this fact in mind, we can use

Equation 11, $PV = A \left[\frac{1 - \frac{1}{(1+r)^N}}{r} \right]$, to solve for the annuity amount, A , as the present value divided by the present value annuity factor:

$$PV = \$100,000$$

$$r_s = 8\% = 0.08$$

$$m = 12$$

$$r_s/m = 0.08/12 = 0.006667$$

$$N = 30$$

$$mN = 12 \times 30 = 360$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Present value annuity factor} &= \frac{1 - \frac{1}{[1 + (r_s/m)]^{mN}}}{r_s/m} = \frac{1 - \frac{1}{(1.006667)^{360}}}{0.006667} \\ &= 136.283494 \\ A &= PV/\text{Present value annuity factor} \\ &= \$100,000/136.283494 \\ &= \$733.76 \end{aligned}$$

The amount borrowed, \$100,000, is equivalent to 360 monthly payments of \$733.76 with a stated interest rate of 8 percent. The mortgage problem is a relatively straightforward application of finding a level annuity payment.

Next, we turn to a retirement-planning problem. This problem illustrates the complexity of the situation in which an individual wants to retire with a specified retirement income. Over the course of a life cycle, the individual may be able to save only a small amount during the early years but then may have the financial resources to save more during later years. Savings plans often involve uneven cash flows, a topic we will examine in the last part of this reading. When dealing with uneven cash flows, we take maximum advantage of the principle that dollar amounts indexed at the same point in time are additive—the **cash flow additivity principle**.

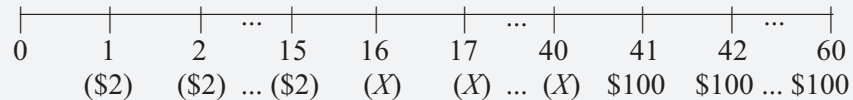
EXAMPLE 21**The Projected Annuity Amount Needed to Fund a Future-Annuity Inflow**

Jill Grant is 22 years old (at $t = 0$) and is planning for her retirement at age 63 (at $t = 41$). She plans to save \$2,000 per year for the next 15 years ($t = 1$ to $t = 15$). She wants to have retirement income of \$100,000 per year for 20 years, with the first retirement payment starting at $t = 41$. How much must Grant save each year from $t = 16$ to $t = 40$ in order to achieve her retirement goal? Assume she plans to invest in a diversified stock-and-bond mutual fund that will earn 8 percent per year on average.

Solution:

To help solve this problem, we set up the information on a time line. As Figure 8 shows, Grant will save \$2,000 (an outflow) each year for Years 1 to 15. Starting in Year 41, Grant will start to draw retirement income of \$100,000 per year for 20 years. In the time line, the annual savings is recorded in parentheses (\$2) to show that it is an outflow. The problem is to find the savings, recorded as X , from Year 16 to Year 40.

Figure 8 Solving for Missing Annuity Payments (in Thousands)



Solving this problem involves satisfying the following relationship: the present value of savings (outflows) equals the present value of retirement income (inflows). We could bring all the dollar amounts to $t = 40$ or to $t = 15$ and solve for X .

Let us evaluate all dollar amounts at $t = 15$ (we encourage the reader to repeat the problem by bringing all cash flows to $t = 40$). As of $t = 15$, the first payment of X will be one period away (at $t = 16$). Thus we can value the stream of X s using the formula for the present value of an ordinary annuity.

This problem involves three series of level cash flows. The basic idea is that the present value of the retirement income must equal the present value of Grant's savings. Our strategy requires the following steps:

- 1 Find the future value of the savings of \$2,000 per year and index it at $t = 15$. This value tells us how much Grant will have saved.
- 2 Find the present value of the retirement income at $t = 15$. This value tells us how much Grant needs to meet her retirement goals (as of $t = 15$). Two substeps are necessary. First, calculate the present value of the annuity of \$100,000 per year at $t = 40$. Use the formula for the present value of an annuity. (Note that the present value is indexed at $t = 40$ because the first payment is at $t = 41$.) Next, discount the present value back to $t = 15$ (a total of 25 periods).
- 3 Now compute the difference between the amount Grant has saved (Step 1) and the amount she needs to meet her retirement goals (Step 2). Her savings from $t = 16$ to $t = 40$ must have a present value equal to the difference between the future value of her savings and the present value of her retirement income.

Our goal is to determine the amount Grant should save in each of the 25 years from $t = 16$ to $t = 40$. We start by bringing the \$2,000 savings to $t = 15$, as follows:

$$A = \$2,000$$

$$r = 8\% = 0.08$$

$$N = 15$$

$$\begin{aligned} FV &= A \left[\frac{(1+r)^N - 1}{r} \right] \\ &= \$2,000 \left[\frac{(1.08)^{15} - 1}{0.08} \right] \\ &= \$2,000(27.152114) \\ &= \$54,304.23 \end{aligned}$$

At $t = 15$, Grant's initial savings will have grown to \$54,304.23.

Now we need to know the value of Grant's retirement income at $t = 15$. As stated earlier, computing the retirement present value requires two substeps. First, find the present value at $t = 40$ with the formula in Equation 11; second, discount this present value back to $t = 15$. Now we can find the retirement income present value at $t = 40$:

$$A = \$100,000$$

$$r = 8\% = 0.08$$

$$N = 20$$

$$\begin{aligned} PV &= A \left[\frac{1 - \frac{1}{(1+r)^N}}{r} \right] \\ &= \$100,000 \left[\frac{1 - \frac{1}{(1.08)^{20}}}{0.08} \right] \\ &= \$100,000(9.818147) \\ &= \$981,814.74 \end{aligned}$$

The present value amount is as of $t = 40$, so we must now discount it back as a lump sum to $t = 15$:

$$FV_N = \$981,814.74$$

$$N = 25$$

$$r = 8\% = 0.08$$

$$\begin{aligned} PV &= FV_N (1+r)^{-N} \\ &= \$981,814.74(1.08)^{-25} \\ &= \$981,814.74(0.146018) \\ &= \$143,362.53 \end{aligned}$$

Now recall that Grant will have saved \$54,304.23 by $t = 15$. Therefore, in present value terms, the annuity from $t = 16$ to $t = 40$ must equal the difference between the amount already saved (\$54,304.23) and the amount required for retirement (\$143,362.53). This amount is equal to $\$143,362.53 - \$54,304.23 =$

\$89,058.30. Therefore, we must now find the annuity payment, A , from $t = 16$ to $t = 40$ that has a present value of \$89,058.30. We find the annuity payment as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}
 PV &= \$89,058.30 \\
 r &= 8\% = 0.08 \\
 N &= 25 \\
 \text{Present value annuity factor} &= \left[\frac{1 - \frac{1}{(1+r)^N}}{r} \right] \\
 &= \left[\frac{1 - \frac{1}{(1.08)^{25}}}{0.08} \right] \\
 &= 10.674776 \\
 A &= PV / \text{Present value annuity factor} \\
 &= \$89,058.30 / 10.674776 \\
 &= \$8,342.87
 \end{aligned}$$

Grant will need to increase her savings to \$8,342.87 per year from $t = 16$ to $t = 40$ to meet her retirement goal of having a fund equal to \$981,814.74 after making her last payment at $t = 40$.

7.4 Review of Present and Future Value Equivalence

As we have demonstrated, finding present and future values involves moving amounts of money to different points on a time line. These operations are possible because present value and future value are equivalent measures separated in time. Table 5 illustrates this equivalence; it lists the timing of five cash flows, their present values at $t = 0$, and their future values at $t = 5$.

To interpret Table 5, start with the third column, which shows the present values. Note that each \$1,000 cash payment is discounted back the appropriate number of periods to find the present value at $t = 0$. The present value of \$4,329.48 is exactly equivalent to the series of cash flows. This information illustrates an important point: A lump sum can actually generate an annuity. If we place a lump sum in an account that earns the stated interest rate for all periods, we can generate an annuity that is equivalent to the lump sum. Amortized loans, such as mortgages and car loans, are examples of this principle.

Table 5 The Equivalence of Present and Future Values

Time	Cash Flow (\$)	Present Value at $t = 0$	Future Value at $t = 5$
1	1,000	$\$1,000(1.05)^{-1} = \952.38	$\$1,000(1.05)^4 = \$1,215.51$
2	1,000	$\$1,000(1.05)^{-2} = \907.03	$\$1,000(1.05)^3 = \$1,157.63$
3	1,000	$\$1,000(1.05)^{-3} = \863.84	$\$1,000(1.05)^2 = \$1,102.50$
4	1,000	$\$1,000(1.05)^{-4} = \822.70	$\$1,000(1.05)^1 = \$1,050.00$
5	1,000	$\$1,000(1.05)^{-5} = \783.53	$\$1,000(1.05)^0 = \$1,000.00$
		Sum: \$4,329.48	Sum: \$5,525.64

To see how a lump sum can fund an annuity, assume that we place \$4,329.48 in the bank today at 5 percent interest. We can calculate the size of the annuity payments by using Equation 11. Solving for A , we find

$$\begin{aligned} A &= \frac{PV}{\frac{1 - \left[1/(1+r)^N\right]}{r}} \\ &= \frac{\$4,329.48}{\frac{1 - \left[1/(1.05)^5\right]}{0.05}} \\ &= \$1,000 \end{aligned}$$

Table 6 shows how the initial investment of \$4,329.48 can actually generate five \$1,000 withdrawals over the next five years.

To interpret Table 6, start with an initial present value of \$4,329.48 at $t = 0$. From $t = 0$ to $t = 1$, the initial investment earns 5 percent interest, generating a future value of $\$4,329.48(1.05) = \$4,545.95$. We then withdraw \$1,000 from our account, leaving $\$4,545.95 - \$1,000 = \$3,545.95$ (the figure reported in the last column for time period 1). In the next period, we earn one year's worth of interest and then make a \$1,000 withdrawal. After the fourth withdrawal, we have \$952.38, which earns 5 percent. This amount then grows to \$1,000 during the year, just enough for us to make the last withdrawal. Thus the initial present value, when invested at 5 percent for five years, generates the \$1,000 five-year ordinary annuity. The present value of the initial investment is exactly equivalent to the annuity.

Now we can look at how future value relates to annuities. In Table 5, we reported that the future value of the annuity was \$5,525.64. We arrived at this figure by compounding the first \$1,000 payment forward four periods, the second \$1,000 forward three periods, and so on. We then added the five future amounts at $t = 5$. The annuity is equivalent to \$5,525.64 at $t = 5$ and \$4,329.48 at $t = 0$. These two dollar measures are thus equivalent. We can verify the equivalence by finding the present value of \$5,525.64, which is $\$5,525.64 \times (1.05)^{-5} = \$4,329.48$. We found this result above when we showed that a lump sum can generate an annuity.

Table 6 How an Initial Present Value Funds an Annuity

Time Period	Amount Available at the Beginning of the Time Period (\$)	Ending Amount before Withdrawal	Withdrawal (\$)	Amount Available after Withdrawal (\$)
1	4,329.48	$\$4,329.48(1.05) = \$4,545.95$	1,000	3,545.95
2	3,545.95	$\$3,545.95(1.05) = \$3,723.25$	1,000	2,723.25
3	2,723.25	$\$2,723.25(1.05) = \$2,859.41$	1,000	1,859.41
4	1,859.41	$\$1,859.41(1.05) = \$1,952.38$	1,000	952.38
5	952.38	$\$952.38(1.05) = \$1,000$	1,000	0

To summarize what we have learned so far: A lump sum can be seen as equivalent to an annuity, and an annuity can be seen as equivalent to its future value. Thus present values, future values, and a series of cash flows can all be considered equivalent as long as they are indexed at the same point in time.

7.5 The Cash Flow Additivity Principle

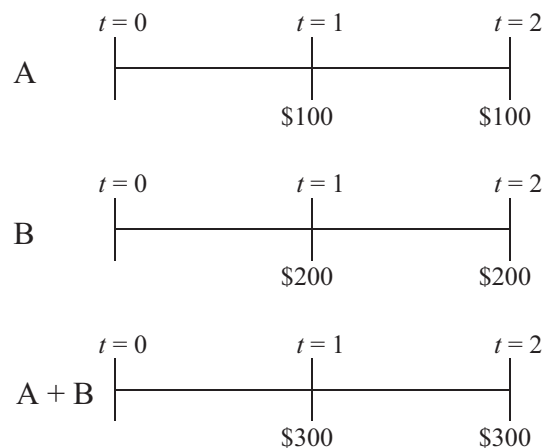
The cash flow additivity principle—the idea that amounts of money indexed at the same point in time are additive—is one of the most important concepts in time value of money mathematics. We have already mentioned and used this principle; this section provides a reference example for it.

Consider the two series of cash flows shown on the time line in Figure 9. The series are denoted A and B. If we assume that the annual interest rate is 2 percent, we can find the future value of each series of cash flows as follows. Series A's future value is $\$100(1.02) + \$100 = \$202$. Series B's future value is $\$200(1.02) + \$200 = \$404$. The future value of (A + B) is $\$202 + \$404 = \$606$ by the method we have used up to this point. The alternative way to find the future value is to add the cash flows of each series, A and B (call it A + B), and then find the future value of the combined cash flow, as shown in Figure 9.

The third time line in Figure 9 shows the combined series of cash flows. Series A has a cash flow of \$100 at $t = 1$, and Series B has a cash flow of \$200 at $t = 1$. The combined series thus has a cash flow of \$300 at $t = 1$. We can similarly calculate the cash flow of the combined series at $t = 2$. The future value of the combined series (A + B) is $\$300(1.02) + \$300 = \$606$ —the same result we found when we added the future values of each series.

The additivity and equivalence principles also appear in another common situation. Suppose cash flows are \$4 at the end of the first year and \$24 (actually separate payments of \$4 and \$20) at the end of the second year. Rather than finding present values of the first year's \$4 and the second year's \$24, we can treat this situation as a \$4 annuity for two years and a second-year \$20 lump sum. If the discount rate were 6 percent, the \$4 annuity would have a present value of \$7.33 and the \$20 lump sum a present value of \$17.80, for a total of \$25.13.

Figure 9 The Additivity of Two Series of Cash Flows



SUMMARY

In this reading, we have explored a foundation topic in investment mathematics, the time value of money. We have developed and reviewed the following concepts for use in financial applications:

- The interest rate, r , is the required rate of return; r is also called the discount rate or opportunity cost.
- An interest rate can be viewed as the sum of the real risk-free interest rate and a set of premiums that compensate lenders for risk: an inflation premium, a default risk premium, a liquidity premium, and a maturity premium.
- The future value, FV , is the present value, PV , times the future value factor, $(1 + r)^N$.
- The interest rate, r , makes current and future currency amounts equivalent based on their time value.
- The stated annual interest rate is a quoted interest rate that does not account for compounding within the year.
- The periodic rate is the quoted interest rate per period; it equals the stated annual interest rate divided by the number of compounding periods per year.
- The effective annual rate is the amount by which a unit of currency will grow in a year with interest on interest included.
- An annuity is a finite set of level sequential cash flows.
- There are two types of annuities, the annuity due and the ordinary annuity. The annuity due has a first cash flow that occurs immediately; the ordinary annuity has a first cash flow that occurs one period from the present (indexed at $t = 1$).
- On a time line, we can index the present as 0 and then display equally spaced hash marks to represent a number of periods into the future. This representation allows us to index how many periods away each cash flow will be paid.
- Annuities may be handled in a similar fashion as single payments if we use annuity factors instead of single-payment factors.
- The present value, PV , is the future value, FV , times the present value factor, $(1 + r)^{-N}$.
- The present value of a perpetuity is A/r , where A is the periodic payment to be received forever.
- It is possible to calculate an unknown variable, given the other relevant variables in time value of money problems.
- The cash flow additivity principle can be used to solve problems with uneven cash flows by combining single payments and annuities.

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

- 1 The table below gives current information on the interest rates for two two-year and two eight-year maturity investments. The table also gives the maturity, liquidity, and default risk characteristics of a new investment possibility (Investment 3). All investments promise only a single payment (a payment at maturity). Assume that premiums relating to inflation, liquidity, and default risk are constant across all time horizons.

Investment	Maturity (in Years)	Liquidity	Default Risk	Interest Rate (%)
1	2	High	Low	2.0
2	2	Low	Low	2.5
3	7	Low	Low	r_3
4	8	High	Low	4.0
5	8	Low	High	6.5

Based on the information in the above table, address the following:

- A** Explain the difference between the interest rates on Investment 1 and Investment 2.
- B** Estimate the default risk premium.
- C** Calculate upper and lower limits for the interest rate on Investment 3, r_3 .
- 2 A couple plans to set aside \$20,000 per year in a conservative portfolio projected to earn 7 percent a year. If they make their first savings contribution one year from now, how much will they have at the end of 20 years?
- 3 Two years from now, a client will receive the first of three annual payments of \$20,000 from a small business project. If she can earn 9 percent annually on her investments and plans to retire in six years, how much will the three business project payments be worth at the time of her retirement?
- 4 To cover the first year's total college tuition payments for his two children, a father will make a \$75,000 payment five years from now. How much will he need to invest today to meet his first tuition goal if the investment earns 6 percent annually?
- 5 A client can choose between receiving 10 annual \$100,000 retirement payments, starting one year from today, or receiving a lump sum today. Knowing that he can invest at a rate of 5 percent annually, he has decided to take the lump sum. What lump sum today will be equivalent to the future annual payments?
- 6 You are considering investing in two different instruments. The first instrument will pay nothing for three years, but then it will pay \$20,000 per year for four years. The second instrument will pay \$20,000 for three years and \$30,000 in the fourth year. All payments are made at year-end. If your required rate of return on these investments is 8 percent annually, what should you be willing to pay for:
- A** The first instrument?
- B** The second instrument (use the formula for a four-year annuity)?

- 7 Suppose you plan to send your daughter to college in three years. You expect her to earn two-thirds of her tuition payment in scholarship money, so you estimate that your payments will be \$10,000 a year for four years. To estimate whether you have set aside enough money, you ignore possible inflation in tuition payments and assume that you can earn 8 percent annually on your investments. How much should you set aside now to cover these payments?
- 8 A client plans to send a child to college for four years starting 18 years from now. Having set aside money for tuition, she decides to plan for room and board also. She estimates these costs at \$20,000 per year, payable at the beginning of each year, by the time her child goes to college. If she starts next year and makes 17 payments into a savings account paying 5 percent annually, what annual payments must she make?
- 9 A couple plans to pay their child's college tuition for 4 years starting 18 years from now. The current annual cost of college is C\$7,000, and they expect this cost to rise at an annual rate of 5 percent. In their planning, they assume that they can earn 6 percent annually. How much must they put aside each year, starting next year, if they plan to make 17 equal payments?
- 10 The nominal risk-free rate is *best* described as the sum of the real risk-free rate and a premium for:
- A maturity.
 - B liquidity.
 - C expected inflation.
- 11 Which of the following risk premiums is most relevant in explaining the difference in yields between 30-year bonds issued by the US Treasury and 30-year bonds issued by a small private issuer?
- A Inflation
 - B Maturity
 - C Liquidity
- 12 A bank quotes a stated annual interest rate of 4.00%. If that rate is equal to an effective annual rate of 4.08%, then the bank is compounding interest:
- A daily.
 - B quarterly.
 - C semiannually.
- 13 The value in six years of \$75,000 invested today at a stated annual interest rate of 7% compounded quarterly is *closest* to:
- A \$112,555.
 - B \$113,330.
 - C \$113,733.
- 14 A client requires £100,000 one year from now. If the stated annual rate is 2.50% compounded weekly, the deposit needed today is *closest* to:
- A £97,500.
 - B £97,532.
 - C £97,561.
- 15 For a lump sum investment of ¥250,000 invested at a stated annual rate of 3% compounded daily, the number of months needed to grow the sum to ¥1,000,000 is *closest* to:
- A 555.
 - B 563.

- C 576.
- 16 Given a €1,000,000 investment for four years with a stated annual rate of 3% compounded continuously, the difference in its interest earnings compared with the same investment compounded daily is *closest* to:
- A €1.
B €6.
C €455.
- 17 An investment pays €300 annually for five years, with the first payment occurring today. The present value (PV) of the investment discounted at a 4% annual rate is *closest* to:
- A €1,336.
B €1,389.
C €1,625.
- 18 A perpetual preferred stock makes its first quarterly dividend payment of \$2.00 in five quarters. If the required annual rate of return is 6% compounded quarterly, the stock's present value is *closest* to:
- A \$31.
B \$126.
C \$133.
- 19 A saver deposits the following amounts in an account paying a stated annual rate of 4%, compounded semiannually:

Year	End of Year Deposits (\$)
1	4,000
2	8,000
3	7,000
4	10,000

- At the end of Year 4, the value of the account is *closest* to:
- A \$30,432
B \$30,447
C \$31,677
- 20 An investment of €500,000 today that grows to €800,000 after six years has a stated annual interest rate *closest* to:
- A 7.5% compounded continuously.
B 7.7% compounded daily.
C 8.0% compounded semiannually.
- 21 A sweepstakes winner may select either a perpetuity of £2,000 a month beginning with the first payment in one month or an immediate lump sum payment of £350,000. If the annual discount rate is 6% compounded monthly, the present value of the perpetuity is:
- A less than the lump sum.
B equal to the lump sum.
C greater than the lump sum.
- 22 At a 5% interest rate per year compounded annually, the present value (PV) of a 10-year ordinary annuity with annual payments of \$2,000 is \$15,443.47. The PV of a 10-year annuity due with the same interest rate and payments is *closest* to:

- A \$14,708.
 B \$16,216.
 C \$17,443.
- 23 Grandparents are funding a newborn's future university tuition costs, estimated at \$50,000/year for four years, with the first payment due as a lump sum in 18 years. Assuming a 6% effective annual rate, the required deposit today is *closest* to:
- A \$60,699.
 B \$64,341.
 C \$68,201.
- 24 The present value (PV) of an investment with the following year-end cash flows (CF) and a 12% required annual rate of return is *closest* to:

Year	Cash Flow (€)
1	100,000
2	150,000
5	-10,000

- A €201,747.
 B €203,191.
 C €227,573.
- 25 A sports car, purchased for £200,000, is financed for five years at an annual rate of 6% compounded monthly. If the first payment is due in one month, the monthly payment is *closest* to:
- A £3,847.
 B £3,867.
 C £3,957.
- 26 Given a stated annual interest rate of 6% compounded quarterly, the level amount that, deposited quarterly, will grow to £25,000 at the end of 10 years is *closest* to:
- A £461.
 B £474.
 C £836.
- 27 Given the following timeline and a discount rate of 4% a year compounded annually, the present value (PV), as of the end of Year 5 (PV_5), of the cash flow received at the end of Year 20 is *closest* to:



- A \$22,819.
 B \$27,763.
 C \$28,873.
- 28 A client invests €20,000 in a four-year certificate of deposit (CD) that annually pays interest of 3.5%. The annual CD interest payments are automatically reinvested in a separate savings account at a stated annual interest rate of 2% compounded monthly. At maturity, the value of the combined asset is *closest* to:
- A €21,670.

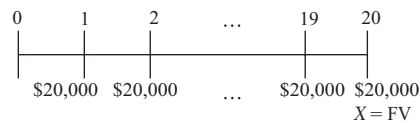
B €22,890.

C €22,950.

SOLUTIONS

- 1 A** Investment 2 is identical to Investment 1 except that Investment 2 has low liquidity. The difference between the interest rate on Investment 2 and Investment 1 is 0.5 percentage point. This amount represents the liquidity premium, which represents compensation for the risk of loss relative to an investment's fair value if the investment needs to be converted to cash quickly.
- B** To estimate the default risk premium, find the two investments that have the same maturity but different levels of default risk. Both Investments 4 and 5 have a maturity of eight years. Investment 5, however, has low liquidity and thus bears a liquidity premium. The difference between the interest rates of Investments 5 and 4 is 2.5 percentage points. The liquidity premium is 0.5 percentage point (from Part A). This leaves $2.5 - 0.5 = 2.0$ percentage points that must represent a default risk premium reflecting Investment 5's high default risk.
- C** Investment 3 has liquidity risk and default risk comparable to Investment 2, but with its longer time to maturity, Investment 3 should have a higher maturity premium. The interest rate on Investment 3, r_3 , should thus be above 2.5 percent (the interest rate on Investment 2). If the liquidity of Investment 3 were high, Investment 3 would match Investment 4 except for Investment 3's shorter maturity. We would then conclude that Investment 3's interest rate should be less than the interest rate on Investment 4, which is 4 percent. In contrast to Investment 4, however, Investment 3 has low liquidity. It is possible that the interest rate on Investment 3 exceeds that of Investment 4 despite 3's shorter maturity, depending on the relative size of the liquidity and maturity premiums. However, we expect r_3 to be less than 4.5 percent, the expected interest rate on Investment 4 if it had low liquidity. Thus $2.5 \text{ percent} < r_3 < 4.5 \text{ percent}$.

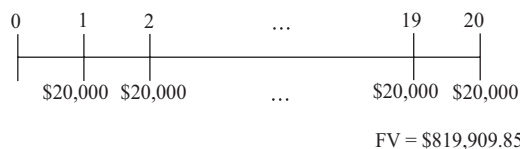
- 2 i.** Draw a time line.



- ii.** Identify the problem as the future value of an annuity.

- iii.** Use the formula for the future value of an annuity.

$$\begin{aligned}
 FV_N &= A \left[\frac{(1+r)^N - 1}{r} \right] \\
 &= \$20,000 \left[\frac{(1+0.07)^{20} - 1}{0.07} \right] \\
 &= \$819,909.85
 \end{aligned}$$



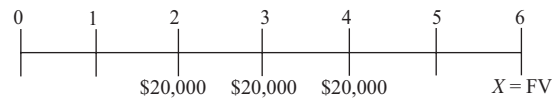
- iv.** Alternatively, use a financial calculator.

Notation Used on Most Calculators	Numerical Value for This Problem
N	20
$\%i$	7
PV	n/a (= 0)
FV compute	X
PMT	\$20,000

Enter 20 for N , the number of periods. Enter 7 for the interest rate and 20,000 for the payment size. The present value is not needed, so enter 0. Calculate the future value. Verify that you get \$819,909.85 to make sure you have mastered your calculator's keystrokes.

In summary, if the couple sets aside \$20,000 each year (starting next year), they will have \$819,909.85 in 20 years if they earn 7 percent annually.

- 3 i. Draw a time line.



- ii. Recognize the problem as the future value of a delayed annuity. Delaying the payments requires two calculations.

- iii. Use the formula for the future value of an annuity (Equation 7).

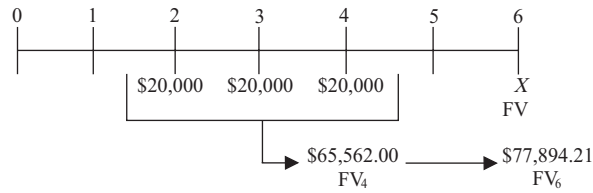
$$FV_N = A \left[\frac{(1+r)^N - 1}{r} \right]$$

to bring the three \$20,000 payments to an equivalent lump sum of \$65,562.00 four years from today.

Notation Used on Most Calculators	Numerical Value for This Problem
N	3
$\%i$	9
PV	n/a (= 0)
FV compute	X
PMT	\$20,000

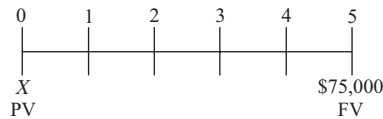
- iv. Use the formula for the future value of a lump sum (Equation 2), $FV_N = PV(1+r)^N$, to bring the single lump sum of \$65,562.00 to an equivalent lump sum of \$77,894.21 six years from today.

Notation Used on Most Calculators	Numerical Value for This Problem
N	2
$\%i$	9
PV	\$65,562.00
FV compute	X
PMT	n/a (= 0)



In summary, your client will have \$77,894.21 in six years if she receives three yearly payments of \$20,000 starting in Year 2 and can earn 9 percent annually on her investments.

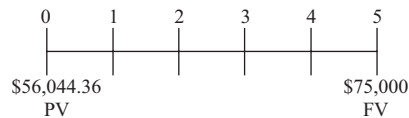
- 4 i. Draw a time line.



- ii. Identify the problem as the present value of a lump sum.

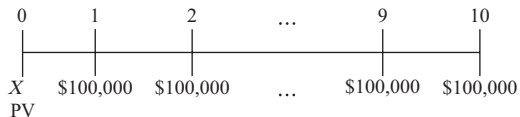
- iii. Use the formula for the present value of a lump sum.

$$\begin{aligned} PV &= FV_N(1+r)^{-N} \\ &= \$75,000(1+0.06)^{-5} \\ &= \$56,044.36 \end{aligned}$$



In summary, the father will need to invest \$56,044.36 today in order to have \$75,000 in five years if his investments earn 6 percent annually.

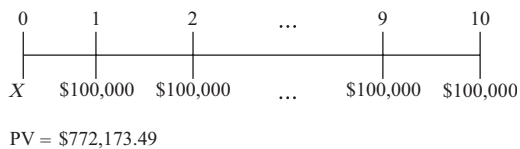
- 5 i. Draw a time line for the 10 annual payments.



- ii. Identify the problem as the present value of an annuity.

- iii. Use the formula for the present value of an annuity.

$$\begin{aligned} PV &= A \left[\frac{1 - \frac{1}{(1+r)^N}}{r} \right] \\ &= \$100,000 \left[\frac{1 - \frac{1}{(1+0.05)^{10}}}{0.05} \right] \\ &= \$772,173.49 \end{aligned}$$



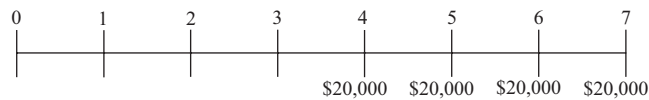
- iv. Alternatively, use a financial calculator.

Notation Used on Most Calculators	Numerical Value for This Problem
N	10
$\%i$	5
PV compute	X
FV	n/a (= 0)
PMT	\$100,000

In summary, the present value of 10 payments of \$100,000 is \$772,173.49 if the first payment is received in one year and the rate is 5 percent compounded annually. Your client should accept no less than this amount for his lump sum payment.

6 A To evaluate the first instrument, take the following steps:

i. Draw a time line.



ii.

$$\begin{aligned}
 PV_3 &= A \left[\frac{1 - \frac{1}{(1+r)^N}}{r} \right] \\
 &= \$20,000 \left[\frac{1 - \frac{1}{(1+0.08)^4}}{0.08} \right] \\
 &= \$66,242.54
 \end{aligned}$$

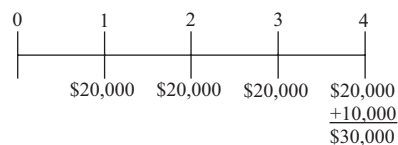
iii.

$$PV_0 = \frac{PV_3}{(1+r)^N} = \frac{\$66,242.54}{1.08^3} = \$52,585.46$$

You should be willing to pay \$52,585.46 for this instrument.

B To evaluate the second instrument, take the following steps:

i. Draw a time line.



The time line shows that this instrument can be analyzed as an ordinary annuity of \$20,000 with four payments (valued in Step ii below) and a \$10,000 payment to be received at $t = 4$ (valued in Step iii below).

ii.

$$\begin{aligned} PV &= A \left[\frac{1 - \frac{1}{(1+r)^N}}{r} \right] \\ &= \$20,000 \left[\frac{1 - \frac{1}{(1+0.08)^4}}{0.08} \right] \\ &= \$66,242.54 \end{aligned}$$

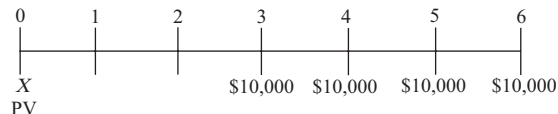
iii.

$$PV = \frac{FV_4}{(1+r)^N} = \frac{\$10,000}{(1+0.08)^4} = \$7,350.30$$

iv. Total = \$66,242.54 + \$7,350.30 = \$73,592.84

You should be willing to pay \$73,592.84 for this instrument.

7 i. Draw a time line.



ii. Recognize the problem as a delayed annuity. Delaying the payments requires two calculations.

iii. Use the formula for the present value of an annuity (Equation 11).

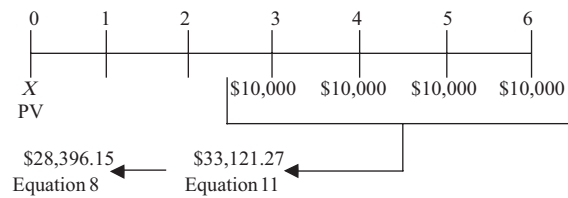
$$PV = A \left[\frac{1 - \frac{1}{(1+r)^N}}{r} \right]$$

to bring the four payments of \$10,000 back to a single equivalent lump sum of \$33,121.27 at $t = 2$. Note that we use $t = 2$ because the first annuity payment is then one period away, giving an ordinary annuity.

Notation Used on Most Calculators	Numerical Value for This Problem
N	4
$\%i$	8
PV compute	X
PMT	\$10,000

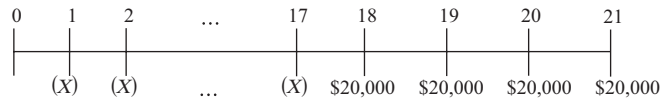
iv. Then use the formula for the present value of a lump sum (Equation 8), $PV = FV_N(1+r)^{-N}$, to bring back the single payment of \$33,121.27 (at $t = 2$) to an equivalent single payment of \$28,396.15 (at $t = 0$).

Notation Used on Most Calculators	Numerical Value for This Problem
N	2
$\%i$	8
PV compute	X
FV	\$33,121.27
PMT	n/a (= 0)



In summary, you should set aside \$28,396.15 today to cover four payments of \$10,000 starting in three years if your investments earn a rate of 8 percent annually.

- 8 i. Draw a time line.



- ii. Recognize that you need to equate the values of two annuities.
 iii. Equate the value of the four \$20,000 payments to a single payment in Period 17 using the formula for the present value of an annuity (Equation 11), with $r = 0.05$. The present value of the college costs as of $t = 17$ is \$70,919.

$$PV = \$20,000 \left[\frac{1 - \frac{1}{(1.05)^4}}{0.05} \right] = \$70,919$$

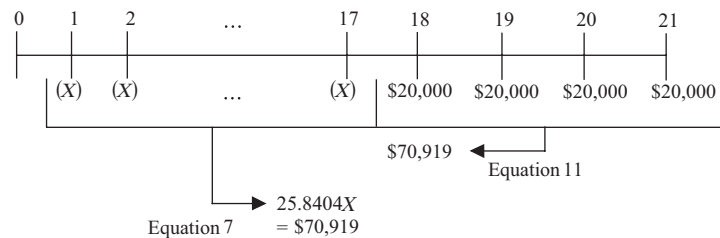
Notation Used on Most Calculators	Numerical Value for This Problem
N	4
$\%i$	5
PV compute	X
FV	n/a (= 0)
PMT	\$20,000

- iv. Equate the value of the 17 investments of X to the amount calculated in Step iii, college costs as of $t = 17$, using the formula for the future value of an annuity (Equation 7). Then solve for X .

$$\$70,919 = \left[\frac{(1.05)^{17} - 1}{0.05} \right] X = 25.840366X$$

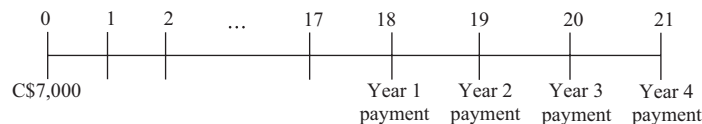
$$X = \$2,744.50$$

Notation Used on Most Calculators	Numerical Value for This Problem
N	17
$\%i$	5
PV	n/a (= 0)
FV	\$70,919
PMT compute	X

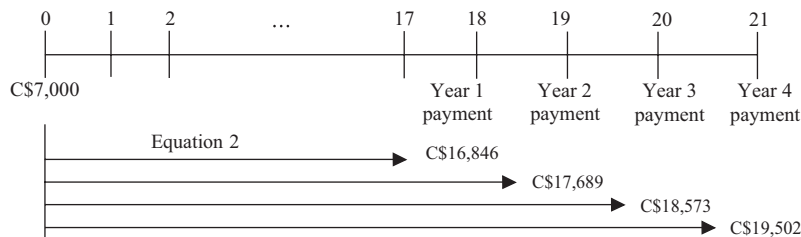


In summary, your client will have to save \$2,744.50 each year if she starts next year and makes 17 payments into a savings account paying 5 percent annually.

- 9 i. Draw a time line.



- ii. Recognize that the payments in Years 18, 19, 20, and 21 are the future values of a lump sum of C\$7,000 in Year 0.
- iii. With $r = 5\%$, use the formula for the future value of a lump sum (Equation 2), $FV_N = PV(1+r)^N$, four times to find the payments. These future values are shown on the time line below.

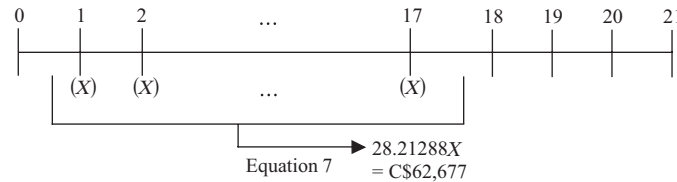


- iv. Using the formula for the present value of a lump sum ($r = 6\%$), equate the four college payments to single payments as of $t = 17$ and add them together. $C\$16,846(1.06)^{-1} + C\$17,689(1.06)^{-2} + C\$18,573(1.06)^{-3} + C\$19,502(1.06)^{-4} = C\$62,677$
- v. Equate the sum of C\$62,677 at $t = 17$ to the 17 payments of X , using the formula for the future value of an annuity (Equation 7). Then solve for X .

$$C\$62,677 = X \left[\frac{(1.06)^{17} - 1}{0.06} \right] = 28.21288X$$

$$X = C\$2,221.58$$

Notation Used on Most Calculators	Numerical Value for This Problem
N	17
$\%i$	6
PV	n/a (= 0)
FV	C\$62,677
PMT compute	X



In summary, the couple will need to put aside C\$2,221.58 each year if they start next year and make 17 equal payments.

- 10** C is correct. The sum of the real risk-free interest rate and the inflation premium is the nominal risk-free rate.
- 11** C is correct. US Treasury bonds are highly liquid, whereas the bonds of small issuers trade infrequently and the interest rate includes a liquidity premium. This liquidity premium reflects the relatively high costs (including the impact on price) of selling a position.
- 12** A is correct. The effective annual rate (EAR) when compounded daily is 4.08%.

$$\text{EAR} = (1 + \text{Periodic interest rate})^m - 1$$

$$\text{EAR} = (1 + 0.04/365)^{365} - 1$$

$$\text{EAR} = (1.0408) - 1 = 0.04081 \approx 4.08\%$$

- 13** C is correct, as shown in the following (where FV is future value and PV is present value):

$$\text{FV} = \text{PV} \left(1 + \frac{r_s}{m} \right)^{mN}$$

$$\text{FV}_6 = \$75,000 \left(1 + \frac{0.07}{4} \right)^{(4 \times 6)}$$

$$\text{FV}_6 = \$113,733.21.$$

- 14** B is correct because £97,531 represents the present value (PV) of £100,000 received one year from today when today's deposit earns a stated annual rate of 2.50% and interest compounds weekly, as shown in the following equation (where FV is future value):

$$\text{PV} = \text{FV}_N \left(1 + \frac{r_s}{m} \right)^{-mN}$$

$$\text{PV} = £100,000 \left(1 + \frac{0.025}{52} \right)^{-52}$$

$$\text{PV} = £97,531.58.$$

- 15** A is correct. The effective annual rate (EAR) is calculated as follows:

$$\text{EAR} = (1 + \text{Periodic interest rate})^m - 1$$

$$\text{EAR} = (1 + 0.03/365)^{365} - 1$$

$$\text{EAR} = (1.03045) - 1 = 0.030453 \approx 3.0453\%$$

Solving for N on a financial calculator results in (where FV is future value and PV is present value):

$$\begin{aligned}(1 + 0.030453)^N &= FV_N/PV = \text{¥}1,000,000/\text{¥}250,000 \\ &= 46.21 \text{ years, which multiplied by 12 to convert to months results in } 554.5, \\ &\text{or } \approx 555 \text{ months.}\end{aligned}$$

- 16** B is correct. The difference between continuous compounding and daily compounding is

$$\text{€}127,496.85 - \text{€}127,491.29 = \text{€}5.56, \text{ or } \approx \text{€}6, \text{ as shown in the following calculations.}$$

With continuous compounding, the investment earns (where PV is present value)

$$\begin{aligned}PVe^{r,N} - PV &= \text{€}1,000,000e^{0.03(4)} - \text{€}1,000,000 \\ &= \text{€}1,127,496.85 - \text{€}1,000,000 \\ &= \text{€}127,496.85\end{aligned}$$

With daily compounding, the investment earns:

$$\text{€}1,000,000(1 + 0.03/365)^{365(4)} - \text{€}1,000,000 = \text{€}1,127,491.29 - \text{€}1,000,000 = \text{€}127,491.29.$$

- 17** B is correct, as shown in the following calculation for an annuity (A) due:

$$PV = A \left[\frac{1 - \frac{1}{(1+r)^N}}{r} \right] (1+r)$$

where $A = \text{€}300$, $r = 0.04$, and $N = 5$.

$$PV = \text{€}300 \left[\frac{1 - \frac{1}{(1+.04)^5}}{.04} \right] (1.04)$$

$$PV = \text{€}1,388.97, \text{ or } \approx \text{€}1,389.$$

- 18** B is correct. The value of the perpetuity one year from now is calculated as:

$PV = A/r$, where PV is present value, A is annuity, and r is expressed as a quarterly required rate of return because the payments are quarterly.

$$PV = \$2.00/(0.06/4)$$

$$PV = \$133.33.$$

The value today is (where FV is future value)

$$PV = FV_N(1+r)^{-N}$$

$$PV = \$133.33(1 + 0.015)^{-4}$$

$$PV = \$125.62 \approx \$126.$$

- 19 B is correct. To solve for the future value of unequal cash flows, compute the future value of each payment as of Year 4 at the semiannual rate of 2%, and then sum the individual future values, as follows:

Year	End of Year Deposits (\$)	Factor	Future Value (\$)
1	4,000	$(1.02)^6$	4,504.65
2	8,000	$(1.02)^4$	8,659.46
3	7,000	$(1.02)^2$	7,282.80
4	10,000	$(1.02)^0$	10,000.00
		Sum =	30,446.91

- 20 C is correct, as shown in the following (where FV is future value and PV is present value):

If:

$$FV_N = PV \left(1 + \frac{r_s}{m} \right)^{mN}$$

Then:

$$\left(\frac{FV_N}{PV} \right)^{\frac{1}{mN}} - 1 = \frac{r_s}{m}$$

$$\left(\frac{800,000}{500,000} \right)^{\frac{1}{2 \times 6}} - 1 = \frac{r_s}{2}$$

$$r_s = 0.07988 \text{ (rounded to 8.0\%)}$$

- 21 C is correct. As shown below, the present value (PV) of a £2,000 per month perpetuity is worth approximately £400,000 at a 6% annual rate compounded monthly. Thus, the present value of the annuity (A) is worth more than the lump sum offer.

$$A = £2,000$$

$$r = (6\%/12) = 0.005$$

$$PV = (A/r)$$

$$PV = (£2,000/0.005)$$

$$PV = £400,000$$

- 22 B is correct.

The present value of a 10-year annuity (A) due with payments of \$2,000 at a 5% discount rate is calculated as follows:

$$PV = A \left[\frac{1 - \frac{1}{(1+r)^N}}{r} \right] + \$2,000$$

$$PV = \$2,000 \left[\frac{1 - \frac{1}{(1 + 0.05)^9}}{0.05} \right] + \$2,000$$

$$PV = \$16,215.64.$$

Alternatively, the PV of a 10-year annuity due is simply the PV of the ordinary annuity multiplied by 1.05:

$$PV = \$15,443.47 \times 1.05$$

$$PV = \$16,215.64.$$

- 23** B is correct. First, find the present value (PV) of an ordinary annuity in Year 17 that represents the tuition costs:

$$\$50,000 \left[\frac{1 - \frac{1}{(1 + 0.06)^4}}{0.06} \right]$$

$$= \$50,000 \times 3.4651$$

$$= \$173,255.28.$$

Then, find the PV of the annuity in today's dollars (where FV is future value):

$$PV_0 = \frac{FV}{(1 + 0.06)^{17}}$$

$$PV_0 = \frac{\$173,255.28}{(1 + 0.06)^{17}}$$

$$PV_0 = \$64,340.85 \approx \$64,341.$$

- 24** B is correct, as shown in the following table.

Year	Cash Flow (€)	Formula $CF \times (1 + r)^t$	PV at Year 0
1	100,000	$100,000(1.12)^{-1} =$	89,285.71
2	150,000	$150,000(1.12)^{-2} =$	119,579.08
5	-10,000	$-10,000(1.12)^{-5} =$	-5,674.27
			203,190.52

- 25 B is correct, calculated as follows (where A is annuity and PV is present value):

$$\begin{aligned}
 A &= (\text{PV of annuity}) \left[\frac{1 - \frac{1}{(1 + r_s/m)^{mN}}}{r_s/m} \right] \\
 &= (£200,000) \left[\frac{1 - \frac{1}{(1 + r_s/m)^{mN}}}{r_s/m} \right] \\
 &= (£200,000) \left[\frac{1 - \frac{1}{(1 + 0.06/12)^{12(5)}}}{0.06/12} \right] \\
 &= (£200,000)/51.72556 \\
 &= £3,866.56
 \end{aligned}$$

- 26 A is correct. To solve for an annuity (A) payment, when the future value (FV), interest rate, and number of periods is known, use the following equation:

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{FV} &= A \left[\frac{\left(1 + \frac{r_s}{m}\right)^{mN} - 1}{\frac{r}{m}} \right] \\
 £25,000 &= A \left[\frac{\left(1 + \frac{0.06}{4}\right)^{4 \times 10} - 1}{\frac{0.06}{4}} \right]
 \end{aligned}$$

$$A = £460.68$$

- 27 B is correct. The PV in Year 5 of a \$50,000 lump sum paid in Year 20 is \$27,763.23 (where FV is future value):

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{PV} &= \text{FV}_N(1 + r)^{-N} \\
 \text{PV} &= \$50,000(1 + 0.04)^{-15} \\
 \text{PV} &= \$27,763.23
 \end{aligned}$$

- 28 B is correct, as the following cash flows show:



The four annual interest payments are based on the CD's 3.5% annual rate.

The first payment grows at 2.0% compounded monthly for three years (where FV is future value):

$$FV_N = €700 \left(1 + \frac{0.02}{12} \right)^{3 \times 12}$$

$$FV_N = 743.25$$

The second payment grows at 2.0% compounded monthly for two years:

$$FV_N = €700 \left(1 + \frac{0.02}{12} \right)^{2 \times 12}$$

$$FV_N = 728.54$$

The third payment grows at 2.0% compounded monthly for one year:

$$FV_N = €700 \left(1 + \frac{0.02}{12} \right)^{1 \times 12}$$

$$FV_N = 714.13$$

The fourth payment is paid at the end of Year 4. Its future value is €700.

The sum of all future value payments is as follows:

€20,000.00	CD
€743.25	First payment's <i>FV</i>
€728.54	Second payment's <i>FV</i>
€714.13	Third payment's <i>FV</i>
€700.00	Fourth payment's <i>FV</i>
€22,885.92	Total <i>FV</i>

READING

7

Discounted Cash Flow Applications

by **Richard A. DeFusco, PhD, CFA**, **Dennis W. McLeavey, CFA**,
Jerald E. Pinto, PhD, CFA, and **David E. Runkle, PhD, CFA**

Richard A. DeFusco, PhD, CFA, is at the University of Nebraska-Lincoln (USA). Dennis W. McLeavey, CFA, is at the University of Rhode Island (USA). Jerald E. Pinto, PhD, CFA, is at CFA Institute (USA). David E. Runkle, PhD, CFA, is at Trilogy Global Advisors (USA).

LEARNING OUTCOMES

<i>Mastery</i>	<i>The candidate should be able to:</i>
<input type="checkbox"/>	a. calculate and interpret the net present value (NPV) and the internal rate of return (IRR) of an investment;
<input type="checkbox"/>	b. contrast the NPV rule to the IRR rule, and identify problems associated with the IRR rule;
<input type="checkbox"/>	c. calculate and interpret a holding period return (total return);
<input type="checkbox"/>	d. calculate and compare the money-weighted and time-weighted rates of return of a portfolio and evaluate the performance of portfolios based on these measures;
<input type="checkbox"/>	e. calculate and interpret the bank discount yield, holding period yield, effective annual yield, and money market yield for US Treasury bills and other money market instruments;
<input type="checkbox"/>	f. convert among holding period yields, money market yields, effective annual yields, and bond equivalent yields.

INTRODUCTION

1

As investment analysts, much of our work includes evaluating transactions involving present and future cash flows. In the reading on the time value of money (TVM), we presented the mathematics needed to solve those problems and illustrated the techniques for the major problem types. In this reading we turn to applications. Analysts must master the numerous applications of TVM or discounted cash flow analysis in equity, fixed income, and derivatives analysis as they study each of those topics individually. In this reading, we present a selection of important TVM applications: net present value and internal rate of return as tools for evaluating cash flow streams,

portfolio return measurement, and the calculation of money market yields. Important in themselves, these applications also introduce concepts that reappear in many other investment contexts.

The reading is organized as follows. Section 2 introduces two key TVM concepts, net present value and internal rate of return. Building on these concepts, Section 3 discusses a key topic in investment management, portfolio return measurement. Investment managers often face the task of investing funds for the short term; to understand the choices available, they need to understand the calculation of money market yields. The reading thus concludes with a discussion of that topic in Section 4.

2

NET PRESENT VALUE AND INTERNAL RATE OF RETURN

In applying discounted cash flow analysis in all fields of finance, we repeatedly encounter two concepts, net present value and internal rate of return. In the following sections we present these keystone concepts.

We could explore the concepts of net present value and internal rate of return in many contexts, because their scope of application covers all areas of finance. Capital budgeting, however, can serve as a representative starting point. Capital budgeting is important not only in corporate finance but also in security analysis, because both equity and fixed income analysts must be able to assess how well managers are investing the assets of their companies. There are three chief areas of financial decision-making in most businesses. **Capital budgeting** is the allocation of funds to relatively long-range projects or investments. From the perspective of capital budgeting, a company is a portfolio of projects and investments. **Capital structure** is the choice of long-term financing for the investments the company wants to make. **Working capital management** is the management of the company's short-term assets (such as inventory) and short-term liabilities (such as money owed to suppliers).

2.1 Net Present Value and the Net Present Value Rule

Net present value (NPV) describes a way to characterize the value of an investment, and the net present value rule is a method for choosing among alternative investments. The **net present value** of an investment is the present value of its cash inflows minus the present value of its cash outflows. The word “net” in net present value refers to subtracting the present value of the investment's outflows (costs) from the present value of its inflows (benefits) to arrive at the net benefit.

The steps in computing NPV and applying the NPV rule are as follows:

- 1 Identify all cash flows associated with the investment—all inflows and outflows.¹

¹ In developing cash flow estimates, we observe two principles. First, we include only the **incremental cash flows** resulting from undertaking the project; we do not include sunk costs (costs that have been committed prior to the project). Second, we account for tax effects by using after-tax cash flows. For a full discussion of these and other issues in capital budgeting, see Brealey, Myers, and Allen (2017).

- 2 Determine the appropriate discount rate or opportunity cost, r , for the investment project.²
- 3 Using that discount rate, find the present value of each cash flow. (Inflows have a positive sign and increase NPV; outflows have a negative sign and decrease NPV.)
- 4 Sum all present values. The sum of the present values of all cash flows (inflows and outflows) is the investment's net present value.
- 5 Apply the **NPV rule**: If the investment's NPV is positive, an investor should undertake it; if the NPV is negative, the investor should not undertake it. If an investor has two candidates for investment but can only invest in one (i.e., **mutually exclusive projects**), the investor should choose the candidate with the higher positive NPV.

What is the meaning of the NPV rule? In calculating the NPV of an investment proposal, we use an estimate of the opportunity cost of capital as the discount rate. The opportunity cost of capital is the alternative return that investors forgo in undertaking the investment. When NPV is positive, the investment adds value because it more than covers the opportunity cost of the capital needed to undertake it. So a company undertaking a positive NPV investment increases shareholders' wealth. An individual investor making a positive NPV investment increases personal wealth, but a negative NPV investment decreases wealth.

When working problems using the NPV rule, it will be helpful to refer to the following formula:

$$NPV = \sum_{t=0}^N \frac{CF_t}{(1+r)^t} \tag{1}$$

where

- CF_t = the expected net cash flow at time t
- N = the investment's projected life
- r = the discount rate or opportunity cost of capital

As always, we state the inputs on a compatible time basis: If cash flows are annual, N is the project's life in years and r is an annual rate. For instance, suppose you are reviewing a proposal that requires an initial outlay of \$2 million ($CF_0 = -\2 million). You expect that the proposed investment will generate net positive cash flows of $CF_1 = \$0.50$ million at the end of Year 1, $CF_2 = \$0.75$ million at the end of Year 2, and $CF_3 = \$1.35$ million at the end of Year 3. Using 10 percent as a discount rate, you calculate the NPV as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} NPV &= -\$2 + \$0.50/(1.10) + \$0.75/(1.10)^2 + \$1.35/(1.10)^3 \\ &= -\$2 + \$0.454545 + \$0.619835 + \$1.014275 \\ &= \$0.088655 \text{ million} \end{aligned}$$

Because the NPV of \$88,655 is positive, you accept the proposal under the NPV rule.

Consider an example in which a research and development program is evaluated using the NPV rule.

² The **weighted average cost of capital** (WACC) is often used to discount cash flows. This value is a weighted average of the after-tax required rates of return on the company's common stock, preferred stock, and long-term debt, where the weights are the fraction of each source of financing in the company's target capital structure. For a full discussion of the issues surrounding the cost of capital, see Brealey, Myers, and Allen (2017).

EXAMPLE 1**Evaluating a Research and Development Program Using the NPV Rule**

As an analyst covering the RAD Corporation, you are evaluating its research and development (R&D) program for the current year. Management has announced that it intends to invest \$1 million in R&D. Incremental net cash flows are forecasted to be \$150,000 per year in perpetuity. RAD Corporation's opportunity cost of capital is 10 percent.

- 1 State whether RAD's R&D program will benefit shareholders, as judged by the NPV rule.
- 2 Evaluate whether your answer to Part 1 changes if RAD Corporation's opportunity cost of capital is 15 percent rather than 10 percent.

Solution to 1:

The constant net cash flows of \$150,000, which we can denote as \overline{CF} , form a perpetuity. The present value of the perpetuity is \overline{CF}/r , so we calculate the project's NPV as

$$\text{NPV} = CF_0 + \overline{CF}/r = -\$1,000,000 + 150,000/0.10 = \$500,000$$

With an opportunity cost of 10 percent, the present value of the program's cash inflows is \$1.5 million. The program's cost is an immediate outflow of \$1 million; therefore, its net present value is \$500,000. As NPV is positive, you conclude that RAD Corporation's R&D program will benefit shareholders.

Solution to 2:

With an opportunity cost of capital of 15 percent, you compute the NPV as you did above, but this time you use a 15 percent discount rate:

$$\text{NPV} = -\$1,000,000 + \$150,000/0.15 = \$0$$

With a higher opportunity cost of capital, the present value of the inflows is smaller and the program's NPV is smaller: At 15 percent, the NPV exactly equals \$0. At NPV = 0, the program generates just enough cash flow to compensate shareholders for the opportunity cost of making the investment. When a company undertakes a zero-NPV project, the company becomes larger but shareholders' wealth does not increase.

2.2 The Internal Rate of Return and the Internal Rate of Return Rule

Financial managers often want a single number that represents the rate of return generated by an investment. The rate of return computation most often used in investment applications (including capital budgeting) is the internal rate of return (IRR). The internal rate of return rule is a second method for choosing among investment proposals. The **internal rate of return** is the discount rate that makes net present value equal to zero. It equates the present value of the investment's costs (outflows) to the present value of the investment's benefits (inflows). The rate is "internal" because it depends only on the cash flows of the investment; no external data are needed. As a result, we can apply the IRR concept to any investment that can be represented as

a series of cash flows. In the study of bonds, we encounter IRR under the name of yield to maturity. Later in this reading, we will explore IRR as the money-weighted rate of return for portfolios.

Before we continue, however, we must add a note of caution about interpreting IRR: Even if our cash flow projections are correct, we will realize a compound rate of return that is equal to IRR over the life of the investment *only if* we can reinvest all interim cash flows at exactly the IRR. Suppose the IRR for a project is 15 percent but we consistently reinvest the cash generated by the project at a lower rate. In this case, we will realize a return that is less than 15 percent. (This principle can work in our favor if we can reinvest at rates above 15 percent.)

To return to the definition of IRR, in mathematical terms we said the following:

$$NPV = CF_0 + \frac{CF_1}{(1 + IRR)^1} + \frac{CF_2}{(1 + IRR)^2} + \dots + \frac{CF_N}{(1 + IRR)^N} = 0 \quad (2)$$

Again, the IRR in Equation 2 must be compatible with the timing of the cash flows. If the cash flows are quarterly, we have a quarterly IRR in Equation 2. We can then state the IRR on an annual basis. For some simple projects, the cash flow at $t = 0$, CF_0 , captures the single capital outlay or initial investment; cash flows after $t = 0$ are the positive returns to the investment. In such cases, we can say $CF_0 = -\text{Investment}$ (the negative sign indicates an outflow). Thus we can rearrange Equation 2 in a form that is helpful in those cases:

$$\text{Investment} = \frac{CF_1}{(1 + IRR)^1} + \frac{CF_2}{(1 + IRR)^2} + \dots + \frac{CF_N}{(1 + IRR)^N}$$

For most real-life problems, financial analysts use software, spreadsheets, or financial calculators to solve this equation for IRR, so you should familiarize yourself with such tools.³

The investment decision rule using IRR, the **IRR rule**, states the following: “Accept projects or investments for which the IRR is greater than the opportunity cost of capital.” The IRR rule uses the opportunity cost of capital as a **hurdle rate**, or rate that a project’s IRR must exceed for the project to be accepted. Note that if the opportunity cost of capital is equal to the IRR, then the NPV is equal to 0. If the project’s opportunity cost is less than the IRR, the NPV is greater than 0 (using a discount rate less than the IRR will make the NPV positive). With these comments in mind, we work through two examples that involve the internal rate of return.

EXAMPLE 2

Evaluating a Research and Development Program Using the IRR Rule

In the previous RAD Corporation example, the initial outlay is \$1 million and the program’s cash flows are \$150,000 in perpetuity. Now you are interested in determining the program’s internal rate of return. Address the following:

- 1 Write the equation for determining the internal rate of return of this R&D program.
- 2 Calculate the IRR.

³ In some real-world capital budgeting problems, the initial investment (which has a minus sign) may be followed by subsequent cash inflows (which have plus signs) and outflows (which have minus signs). In these instances, the project can have more than one IRR. The possibility of multiple solutions is a theoretical limitation of IRR.

Solution to 1:

Finding the IRR is equivalent to finding the discount rate that makes the NPV equal to 0. Because the program's cash flows are a perpetuity, you can set up the NPV equation as

$$\text{NPV} = -\text{Investment} + \overline{\text{CF}}/\text{IRR} = 0$$

$$\text{NPV} = -\$1,000,000 + \$150,000/\text{IRR} = 0$$

or as

$$\text{Investment} = \overline{\text{CF}}/\text{IRR}$$

$$\$1,000,000 = \$150,000/\text{IRR}$$

Solution to 2:

We can solve for IRR as $\text{IRR} = \$150,000/\$1,000,000 = 0.15$ or 15 percent. The solution of 15 percent accords with the definition of IRR. In Example 1, you found that a discount rate of 15 percent made the program's NPV equal to 0. By definition, therefore, the program's IRR must be 15 percent. If the opportunity cost of capital is also 15 percent, the R&D program just covers its opportunity costs and neither increases nor decreases shareholder wealth. If it is less than 15 percent, the IRR rule indicates that management should invest in the program because it more than covers its opportunity cost. If the opportunity cost is greater than 15 percent, the IRR rule tells management to reject the R&D program. For a given opportunity cost, the IRR rule and the NPV rule lead to the same decision in this example.

EXAMPLE 3**The IRR and NPV Rules Side by Side**

The Japanese company Kageyama Ltd. is considering whether or not to open a new factory to manufacture capacitors used in cell phones. The factory will require an investment of ¥1,000 million. The factory is expected to generate level cash flows of ¥294.8 million per year in each of the next five years. According to information in its financial reports, Kageyama's opportunity cost of capital for this type of project is 11 percent.

- 1 Determine whether the project will benefit Kageyama's shareholders using the NPV rule.
- 2 Determine whether the project will benefit Kageyama's shareholders using the IRR rule.

Solution to 1:

The cash flows can be grouped into an initial outflow of ¥1,000 million and an ordinary annuity of five inflows of ¥294.8 million. The expression for the present value of an annuity is $A[1 - (1 + r)^{-N}]/r$, where A is the level annuity payment. Therefore, with amounts shown in millions of Japanese yen,

$$\text{NPV} = -1,000 + 294.8 \left[1 - (1.11)^{-5} \right] / 0.11$$

$$\text{NPV} = -1,000 + 1,089.55 = 89.55$$

Because the project's NPV is positive ¥89.55 million, it should benefit Kageyama's shareholders.

Solution to 2:

The IRR of the project is the solution to

$$NPV = -1,000 + 294.8 \left[1 - (1 + IRR)^{-5} \right] / IRR = 0$$

This project’s positive NPV tells us that the internal rate of return must be greater than 11 percent. Using a calculator, we find that IRR is 0.145012 or 14.50 percent. Table 1 gives the keystrokes on most financial calculators.

Table 1 Computing IRR

Notation Used on Most Calculators	Numerical Value for This Problem
<i>N</i>	5
% <i>i</i> compute	<i>X</i>
PV	-1,000
PMT	294.8
FV	n/a (= 0)

Because the IRR of 14.50 percent is greater than the opportunity cost of the project, the project should benefit Kageyama’s shareholders. Whether it uses the IRR rule or the NPV rule, Kageyama makes the same decision: Build the factory.

In the previous example, value creation is evident: For a single ¥1,000 million payment, Kageyama creates a project worth ¥1,089.55 million, a value increase of ¥89.55 million. Another perspective on value creation comes from converting the initial investment into a capital charge against the annual operating cash flows that the project generates. Recall that the project generates an annual operating cash flow of ¥294,800,000. If we subtract a capital charge of ¥270,570,310 (the amount of a five-year annuity having a present value of ¥1,000 million at 11 percent), we find ¥294,800,000 – ¥270,570,310 = ¥24,229,690. The amount of ¥24,229,690 represents the profit in each of the next five years after taking into account opportunity costs. The present value of a five-year annuity of ¥24,229,690 at an 11 percent cost of capital is exactly what we calculated as the project’s NPV: ¥89.55 million. Therefore, we can also calculate NPV by converting the initial investment to an annual capital charge against cash flow.

2.3 Problems with the IRR Rule

The IRR and NPV rules give the same accept or reject decision when projects are independent—that is, when the decision to invest in one project does not affect the decision to undertake another. When a company cannot finance all the projects it would like to undertake—that is, when projects are mutually exclusive—it must rank the projects from most profitable to least. However, rankings according to IRR and NPV may not be the same. The IRR and NPV rules rank projects differently when

- the size or scale of the projects differs (measuring size by the investment needed to undertake the project), or
- the timing of the projects’ cash flows differs.

When the IRR and NPV rules conflict in ranking projects, we should take directions from the NPV rule. Why that preference? The NPV of an investment represents the expected addition to shareholder wealth from an investment, and we take the maximization of shareholder wealth to be a basic financial objective of a company. To illustrate the preference for the NPV rule, consider first the case of projects that differ in size. Suppose that a company has only €30,000 available to invest.⁴ The company has available two one-period investment projects described as A and B in Table 2.

Table 2 IRR and NPV for Mutually Exclusive Projects of Different Size

Project	Investment at $t = 0$	Cash Flow at $t = 1$	IRR (%)	NPV at 8%
A	-€10,000	€15,000	50	€3,888.89
B	-€30,000	€42,000	40	€8,888.89

Project A requires an immediate investment of €10,000. This project will make a single cash payment of \$15,000 at $t = 1$. Because the IRR is the discount rate that equates the present value of the future cash flow with the cost of the investment, the IRR equals 50 percent. If we assume that the opportunity cost of capital is 8 percent, then the NPV of Project A is €3,888.89. We compute the IRR and NPV of Project B as 40 percent and €8,888.89, respectively. The IRR and NPV rules indicate that we should undertake both projects, but to do so we would need €40,000—more money than is available. So we need to rank the projects. How do the projects rank according to IRR and NPV?

The IRR rule ranks Project A, with the higher IRR, first. The NPV rule, however, ranks Project B, with the higher NPV, first—a conflict with the IRR rule's ranking. Choosing Project A because it has the higher IRR would not lead to the largest increase in shareholders' wealth. Investing in Project A effectively leaves €20,000 (€30,000 minus A's cost) uninvested. Project A increases wealth by almost €4,000, but Project B increases wealth by almost €9,000. The difference between the two projects' scale creates the inconsistency in the ranking between the two rules.

IRR and NPV can also rank projects of the same scale differently when the timing of cash flows differs. We can illustrate this principle with Projects A and D, presented in Table 3.

Table 3 IRR and NPV for Mutually Exclusive Projects with Different Timing of Cash Flows

Project	CF0 (€)	CF1 (€)	CF2 (€)	CF3 (€)	IRR (%)	NPV at 8%
A	-10,000	15,000	0	0	50.0	€3,888.89
D	-10,000	0	0	21,220	28.5	€6,845.12

⁴ Or suppose the two projects require the same physical or other resources, so that only one can be undertaken.

The terms CF_0 , CF_1 , CF_2 , and CF_3 represent the cash flows at time periods 0, 1, 2, and 3. The IRR for Project A is the same as it was in the previous example. The IRR for Project D is found as follows:

$$-10,000 + \frac{21,220}{(1 + \text{IRR})^3} = 0$$

The IRR for Project D is 28.5 percent, compared with 50 percent for Project A. IRRs and IRR rankings are not affected by any external interest rate or discount rate because a project's cash flows alone determine the internal rate of return. The IRR calculation furthermore assumes reinvestment at the IRR, so we generally cannot interpret them as achievable rates of return. For Project D, for example, to achieve a 28.5 percent return we would need to earn 28.5 percent on €10,000 for the first year, earn 28.5 percent on $€10,000(1.285) = €12,850$ the second year, and earn 28.5 percent on $€10,000(1.285)^2 = €16,512.25$ the third year.⁵ A reinvestment rate such as 50 percent or 28.5 percent may be quite unrealistic. By contrast, the calculation of NPV uses an external market-determined discount rate, and reinvestment is assumed to take place at that discount rate. NPV rankings can depend on the external discount rate chosen. Here, Project D has a larger but more distant cash inflow (€21,220 versus €15,000). As a result, Project D has a higher NPV than Project A at lower discount rates.⁶ The NPV rule's assumption about reinvestment rates is more realistic and more economically relevant because it incorporates the market-determined opportunity cost of capital as a discount rate. As a consequence, the NPV is the expected addition to shareholder wealth from an investment.

In summary, when dealing with mutually exclusive projects, choose among them using the NPV rule when the IRR rule and NPV rule conflict.⁷

PORTFOLIO RETURN MEASUREMENT

3

Suppose you are an investor and you want to assess the success of your investments. You face two related but distinct tasks. The first is **performance measurement**, which involves calculating returns in a logical and consistent manner. Accurate performance measurement provides the basis for your second task, **performance appraisal**.⁸ Performance measurement is thus of great importance for all investors and investment managers because it is the foundation for all further analysis.

In our discussion of portfolio return measurement, we will use the fundamental concept of **holding period return** (HPR), the return that an investor earns over a specified holding period. For an investment that makes one cash payment at the end of the holding period, $\text{HPR} = (P_1 - P_0 + D_1)/P_0$, where P_0 is the initial investment, P_1 is the price received at the end of the holding period, and D_1 is the cash paid by the investment at the end of the holding period.

⁵ The ending amount $€10,000(1.285)^3 = €21,218$ differs from the €21,220 amount listed in Table 3 because we rounded IRR.

⁶ There is a crossover discount rate above which Project A has a higher NPV than Project D. This crossover rate is 18.94 percent.

⁷ Technically, different reinvestment rate assumptions account for this conflict between the IRR and NPV rules. The IRR rule assumes that the company can earn the IRR on all reinvested cash flows, but the NPV rule assumes that cash flows are reinvested at the company's opportunity cost of capital. The NPV assumption is far more realistic. For further details on this and other topics in capital budgeting, see Brealey, Myers, and Allen (2017).

⁸ The term "performance evaluation" has been used as a synonym for performance appraisal.

Particularly when we measure performance over many periods, or when the portfolio is subject to additions and withdrawals, portfolio performance measurement is a challenging task. Two of the measurement tools available are the money-weighted rate of return measure and the time-weighted rate of return measure. The first measure we discuss, the money-weighted rate of return, implements a concept we have already covered in the context of capital budgeting: internal rate of return.

3.1 Money-Weighted Rate of Return

The first performance measurement concept that we will discuss is an internal rate of return calculation. In investment management applications, the internal rate of return is called the money-weighted rate of return because it accounts for the timing and amount of all cash flows into and out of the portfolio.⁹

To illustrate the money-weighted return, consider an investment that covers a two-year horizon. At time $t = 0$, an investor buys one share at \$200. At time $t = 1$, he purchases an additional share at \$225. At the end of Year 2, $t = 2$, he sells both shares for \$235 each. During both years, the stock pays a per-share dividend of \$5. The $t = 1$ dividend is not reinvested. Table 4 shows the total cash inflows and outflows.

Table 4 Cash Flows

Time	Outlay
0	\$200 to purchase the first share
1	\$225 to purchase the second share
Time	Proceeds
1	\$5 dividend received from first share (and not reinvested)
2	\$10 dividend (\$5 per share × 2 shares) received
2	\$470 received from selling two shares at \$235 per share

The money-weighted return on this portfolio is its internal rate of return for the two-year period. The portfolio's internal rate of return is the rate, r , for which the present value of the cash inflows minus the present value of the cash outflows equals 0, or

$$\text{PV (outflows)} = \text{PV (inflows)}$$

$$\$200 + \frac{\$225}{(1+r)} = \frac{\$5}{(1+r)} + \frac{\$480}{(1+r)^2}$$

The left-hand side of this equation details the outflows: \$200 at time $t = 0$ and \$225 at time $t = 1$. The \$225 outflow is discounted back one period because it occurs at $t = 1$. The right-hand side of the equation shows the present value of the inflows: \$5 at time $t = 1$ (discounted back one period) and \$480 (the \$10 dividend plus the \$470 sale proceeds) at time $t = 2$ (discounted back two periods).

⁹ In the United States, the money-weighted return is frequently called the dollar-weighted return. We follow a standard presentation of the money-weighted return as an IRR concept.

To solve for the money-weighted return, we use either a financial calculator that allows us to enter cash flows or a spreadsheet with an IRR function.¹⁰ The first step is to group net cash flows by time. For this example, we have $-\$200$ for the $t = 0$ net cash flow, $-\$220 = -\$225 + \$5$ for the $t = 1$ net cash flow, and $\$480$ for the $t = 2$ net cash flow. After entering these cash flows, we use the spreadsheet's or calculator's IRR function to find that the money-weighted rate of return is 9.39 percent.¹¹

Now we take a closer look at what has happened to the portfolio during each of the two years. In the first year, the portfolio generated a one-period holding period return of $(\$5 + \$225 - \$200)/\$200 = 15$ percent. At the beginning of the second year, the amount invested is $\$450$, calculated as $\$225$ (per share price of stock) \times 2 shares, because the $\$5$ dividend was spent rather than reinvested. At the end of the second year, the proceeds from the liquidation of the portfolio are $\$470$ (as detailed in Table 4) plus $\$10$ in dividends (as also detailed in Table 4). So in the second year the portfolio produced a holding period return of $(\$10 + \$470 - \$450)/\$450 = 6.67$ percent. The mean holding period return was $(15\% + 6.67\%)/2 = 10.84$ percent. The money-weighted rate of return, which we calculated as 9.39 percent, puts a greater weight on the second year's relatively poor performance (6.67 percent) than the first year's relatively good performance (15 percent), as more money was invested in the second year than in the first. That is the sense in which returns in this method of calculating performance are "money weighted."

As a tool for evaluating investment managers, the money-weighted rate of return has a serious drawback. Generally, the investment manager's clients determine when money is given to the investment manager and how much money is given. As we have seen, those decisions may significantly influence the investment manager's money-weighted rate of return. A general principle of evaluation, however, is that a person or entity should be judged only on the basis of their own actions, or actions under their control. An evaluation tool should isolate the effects of the investment manager's actions. The next section presents a tool that is effective in that respect.

3.2 Time-Weighted Rate of Return

An investment measure that is not sensitive to the additions and withdrawals of funds is the time-weighted rate of return. In the investment management industry, the time-weighted rate of return is the preferred performance measure. The **time-weighted rate of return** measures the compound rate of growth of $\$1$ initially invested in the portfolio over a stated measurement period. In contrast to the money-weighted rate of return, the time-weighted rate of return is not affected by cash withdrawals or additions to the portfolio. The term "time-weighted" refers to the fact that returns are averaged over time. To compute an exact time-weighted rate of return on a portfolio, take the following three steps:

- 1 Price the portfolio immediately prior to any significant addition or withdrawal of funds. Break the overall evaluation period into subperiods based on the dates of cash inflows and outflows.

¹⁰ In this particular case we could solve for r by solving the quadratic equation $480x^2 - 220x - 200 = 0$ with $x = 1/(1 + r)$, using standard results from algebra. In general, however, we rely on a calculator or spreadsheet software to compute a money-weighted rate of return.

¹¹ Note that the calculator or spreadsheet will give the IRR as a periodic rate. If the periods are not annual, we annualize the periodic rate.

- 2 Calculate the holding period return on the portfolio for each subperiod.
- 3 Link or compound holding period returns to obtain an annual rate of return for the year (the time-weighted rate of return for the year). If the investment is for more than one year, take the geometric mean of the annual returns to obtain the time-weighted rate of return over that measurement period.

Let us return to our money-weighted example and calculate the time-weighted rate of return for that investor's portfolio. In that example, we computed the holding period returns on the portfolio, Step 2 in the procedure for finding the time-weighted rate of return. Given that the portfolio earned returns of 15 percent during the first year and 6.67 percent during the second year, what is the portfolio's time-weighted rate of return over an evaluation period of two years?

We find this time-weighted return by taking the geometric mean of the two holding period returns, Step 3 in the procedure above. The calculation of the geometric mean exactly mirrors the calculation of a compound growth rate. Here, we take the product of 1 plus the holding period return for each period to find the terminal value at $t = 2$ of \$1 invested at $t = 0$. We then take the square root of this product and subtract 1 to get the geometric mean. We interpret the result as the annual compound growth rate of \$1 invested in the portfolio at $t = 0$. Thus we have

$$(1 + \text{Time-weighted return})^2 = (1.15)(1.0667)$$

$$\text{Time-weighted return} = \sqrt{(1.15)(1.0667)} - 1 = 10.76\%$$

The time-weighted return on the portfolio was 10.76 percent, compared with the money-weighted return of 9.39 percent, which gave larger weight to the second year's return. We can see why investment managers find time-weighted returns more meaningful. If a client gives an investment manager more funds to invest at an unfavorable time, the manager's money-weighted rate of return will tend to be depressed. If a client adds funds at a favorable time, the money-weighted return will tend to be elevated. The time-weighted rate of return removes these effects.

In defining the steps to calculate an exact time-weighted rate of return, we said that the portfolio should be valued immediately prior to any significant addition or withdrawal of funds. With the amount of cash flow activity in many portfolios, this task can be costly. We can often obtain a reasonable approximation of the time-weighted rate of return by valuing the portfolio at frequent, regular intervals, particularly if additions and withdrawals are unrelated to market movements. The more frequent the valuation, the more accurate the approximation. Daily valuation is commonplace. Suppose that a portfolio is valued daily over the course of a year. To compute the time-weighted return for the year, we first compute each day's holding period return:

$$r_t = \frac{MVE_t - MVB_t}{MVB_t}$$

where MVB_t equals the market value at the beginning of day t and MVE_t equals the market value at the end of day t . We compute 365 such daily returns, denoted r_1, r_2, \dots, r_{365} . We obtain the annual return for the year by linking the daily holding period returns in the following way: $(1 + r_1) \times (1 + r_2) \times \dots \times (1 + r_{365}) - 1$. If withdrawals and additions to the portfolio happen only at day's end, this annual return is a precise time-weighted rate of return for the year. Otherwise, it is an approximate time-weighted return for the year.

If we have a number of years of data, we can calculate a time-weighted return for each year individually, as above. If r_i is the time-weighted return for year i , we calculate an annualized time-weighted return as the geometric mean of N annual returns, as follows:

$$r_{\text{TW}} = [(1 + r_1) \times (1 + r_2) \times \dots \times (1 + r_N)]^{1/N} - 1$$

Example 4 illustrates the calculation of the time-weighted rate of return.

EXAMPLE 4

Time-Weighted Rate of Return

Strubeck Corporation sponsors a pension plan for its employees. It manages part of the equity portfolio in-house and delegates management of the balance to Super Trust Company. As chief investment officer of Strubeck, you want to review the performance of the in-house and Super Trust portfolios over the last four quarters. You have arranged for outflows and inflows to the portfolios to be made at the very beginning of the quarter. Table 5 summarizes the inflows and outflows as well as the two portfolios' valuations. In the table, the ending value is the portfolio's value just prior to the cash inflow or outflow at the beginning of the quarter. The amount invested is the amount each portfolio manager is responsible for investing.

Table 5 Cash Flows for the In-House Strubeck Account and the Super Trust Account

	Quarter			
	1 (\$)	2 (\$)	3 (\$)	4 (\$)
<i>In-House Account</i>				
Beginning value	4,000,000	6,000,000	5,775,000	6,720,000
Beginning of period inflow (outflow)	1,000,000	(500,000)	225,000	(600,000)
Amount invested	5,000,000	5,500,000	6,000,000	6,120,000
Ending value	6,000,000	5,775,000	6,720,000	5,508,000
<i>Super Trust Account</i>				
Beginning value	10,000,000	13,200,000	12,240,000	5,659,200
Beginning of period inflow (outflow)	2,000,000	(1,200,000)	(7,000,000)	(400,000)
Amount invested	12,000,000	12,000,000	5,240,000	5,259,200
Ending value	13,200,000	12,240,000	5,659,200	5,469,568

Based on the information given, address the following.

- 1 Calculate the time-weighted rate of return for the in-house account.
- 2 Calculate the time-weighted rate of return for the Super Trust account.

Solution to 1:

To calculate the time-weighted rate of return for the in-house account, we compute the quarterly holding period returns for the account and link them into an annual return. The in-house account's time-weighted rate of return is 27 percent, calculated as follows:

$$1\text{Q HPR: } r_1 = (\$6,000,000 - \$5,000,000) / \$5,000,000 = 0.20$$

$$2\text{Q HPR: } r_2 = (\$5,775,000 - \$5,500,000) / \$5,500,000 = 0.05$$

$$3\text{Q HPR: } r_3 = (\$6,720,000 - \$6,000,000) / \$6,000,000 = 0.12$$

$$4\text{Q HPR: } r_4 = (\$5,508,000 - \$6,120,000) / \$6,120,000 = -0.10$$

$$(1 + r_1)(1 + r_2)(1 + r_3)(1 + r_4) - 1 = (1.20)(1.05)(1.12)(0.90) - 1 = 0.27 \text{ or } 27\%$$

Solution to 2:

The account managed by Super Trust has a time-weighted rate of return of 26 percent, calculated as follows:

$$1\text{Q HPR: } r_1 = (\$13,200,000 - \$12,000,000) / \$12,000,000 = 0.10$$

$$2\text{Q HPR: } r_2 = (\$12,240,000 - \$12,000,000) / \$12,000,000 = 0.02$$

$$3\text{Q HPR: } r_3 = (\$5,659,200 - \$5,240,000) / \$5,240,000 = 0.08$$

$$4\text{Q HPR: } r_4 = (\$5,469,568 - \$5,259,200) / \$5,259,200 = 0.04$$

$$(1 + r_1)(1 + r_2)(1 + r_3)(1 + r_4) - 1 = (1.10)(1.02)(1.08)(1.04) - 1 = 0.26 \text{ or } 26\%$$

The in-house portfolio's time-weighted rate of return is higher than the Super Trust portfolio's by 100 basis points.

Having worked through this exercise, we are ready to look at a more detailed case.

EXAMPLE 5**Time-Weighted and Money-Weighted Rates of Return Side by Side**

Your task is to compute the investment performance of the Walbright Fund during 2014. The facts are as follows:

- On 1 January 2014, the Walbright Fund had a market value of \$100 million.
- During the period 1 January 2014 to 30 April 2014, the stocks in the fund showed a capital gain of \$10 million.
- On 1 May 2014, the stocks in the fund paid a total dividend of \$2 million. All dividends were reinvested in additional shares.
- Because the fund's performance had been exceptional, institutions invested an additional \$20 million in Walbright on 1 May 2014, raising assets under management to \$132 million (\$100 + \$10 + \$2 + \$20).
- On 31 December 2014, Walbright received total dividends of \$2.64 million. The fund's market value on 31 December 2014, not including the \$2.64 million in dividends, was \$140 million.
- The fund made no other interim cash payments during 2014.

Based on the information given, address the following.

- 1 Compute the Walbright Fund's time-weighted rate of return.
- 2 Compute the Walbright Fund's money-weighted rate of return.
- 3 Interpret the differences between the time-weighted and money-weighted rates of return.

Solution to 1:

Because interim cash flows were made on 1 May 2014, we must compute two interim total returns and then link them to obtain an annual return. Table 6 lists the relevant market values on 1 January, 1 May, and 31 December as well as the associated interim four-month (1 January to 1 May) and eight-month (1 May to 31 December) holding period returns.

Table 6 Cash Flows for the Walbright Fund

1 January 2014	Beginning portfolio value = \$100 million
1 May 2014	Dividends received before additional investment = \$2 million
	Ending portfolio value = \$110 million
	Holding period return = $\frac{\$2 + \$10}{\$100} = 12\%$
	New investment = \$20 million
	Beginning market value for last 2/3 of year = \$132 million
31 December 2014	Dividends received = \$2.64 million
	Ending portfolio value = \$140 million
	Holding period return = $\frac{\$2.64 + \$140 - \$132}{\$132}$
	= 8.06%

Now we must geometrically link the four- and eight-month returns to compute an annual return. We compute the time-weighted return as follows:

$$\text{Time-weighted return} = 1.12 \times 1.0806 - 1 = 0.2103$$

In this instance, we compute a time-weighted rate of return of 21.03 percent for one year. The four-month and eight-month intervals combine to equal one year. (Taking the square root of the product 1.12×1.0806 would be appropriate only if 1.12 and 1.0806 each applied to one full year.)

Solution to 2:

To calculate the money-weighted return, we find the discount rate that sets the present value of the outflows (purchases) equal to the present value of the inflows (dividends and future payoff). The initial market value of the fund and all additions to it are treated as cash outflows. (Think of them as expenditures.) Withdrawals, receipts, and the ending market value of the fund are counted as inflows. (The ending market value is the amount investors receive on liquidating the fund.) Because interim cash flows have occurred at four-month intervals, we must solve for the four-month internal rate of return. Table 6 details the cash flows and their timing.

The present value equation (in millions) is as follows:

$$\text{PV}(\text{outflows}) = \text{PV}(\text{inflows})$$

$$\$100 + \frac{\$2}{(1+r)^1} + \frac{\$20}{(1+r)^1} = \frac{\$2}{(1+r)^1} + \frac{\$2.64}{(1+r)^3} + \frac{\$140}{(1+r)^3}$$

The left-hand side of the equation shows the investments in the fund or outflows: a \$100 million initial investment followed by the \$2 million dividend reinvested and an additional \$20 million of new investment (both occurring at the end of the first four-month interval, which makes the exponent in the denominator 1). The right-hand side of the equation shows the payoffs or inflows: the \$2 million dividend at the first four-month interval followed by the \$2.64 million dividend and the terminal market value of \$140 million (both occurring at the end of the third four-month interval, which makes the exponent in the denominator 3). The second four-month interval has no cash flow. We can bring all the terms to the right of the equal sign, arranging them in order of time. After simplification,

$$0 = -\$100 - \frac{\$20}{(1+r)^1} + \frac{\$142.64}{(1+r)^3}$$

Using a spreadsheet or IRR-enabled calculator, we use -100 , -20 , 0 , and $\$142.64$ for the $t = 0$, $t = 1$, $t = 2$, and $t = 3$ net cash flows, respectively.¹² Using either tool, we get a four-month IRR of 6.28 percent. The quick way to annualize this is to multiply by 3. A more accurate way is $(1.0628)^3 - 1 = 0.20$ or 20 percent.

Solution to 3:

In this example, the time-weighted return (21.03 percent) is greater than the money-weighted return (20 percent). The Walbright Fund's performance was relatively poorer during the eight-month period, when the fund owned more shares, than it was overall. This fact is reflected in a lower money-weighted rate of return compared with time-weighted rate of return, as the money-weighted return is sensitive to the timing and amount of withdrawals and additions to the portfolio.

The accurate measurement of portfolio returns is important to the process of evaluating portfolio managers. In addition to considering returns, however, analysts must also weigh risk. When we worked through Example 4, we stopped short of suggesting that in-house management was superior to Super Trust because it earned a higher time-weighted rate of return. With risk in focus, we can talk of risk-adjusted performance and make comparisons—but only cautiously. In other readings, we will discuss the Sharpe ratio, an important risk-adjusted performance measure that we might apply to an investment manager's time-weighted rate of return. For now, we have illustrated the major tools for measuring the return on a portfolio.

4

MONEY MARKET YIELDS

In our discussion of internal rate of return and net present value, we referred to the opportunity cost of capital as a market-determined rate. In this section, we begin a discussion of discounted cash flow analysis in actual markets by considering short-term debt markets.

¹² By convention, we denote outflow with a negative sign, and we need 0 as a placeholder for the $t = 2$.

To understand the various ways returns are presented in debt markets, we must discuss some of the conventions for quoting yields on money-market instruments. The **money market** is the market for short-term debt instruments (one-year maturity or less). Some instruments require the issuer to repay the lender the amount borrowed plus interest. Others are **pure discount instruments** that pay interest as the difference between the amount borrowed and the amount paid back.

In the US money market, the classic example of a pure discount instrument is the US Treasury bill (T-bill) issued by the federal government. The **face value** of a T-bill is the amount the US government promises to pay back to a T-bill investor. In buying a T-bill, investors pay the face amount less the discount, and receive the face amount at maturity. The **discount** is the reduction from the face amount that gives the price for the T-bill. This discount becomes the interest that accumulates, because the investor receives the face amount at maturity. Thus, investors earn a dollar return equal to the discount if they hold the instrument to maturity. T-bills are by far the most important class of money-market instruments in the United States. Other types of money-market instruments include commercial paper and bankers' acceptances, which are discount instruments, and negotiable certificates of deposit, which are interest-bearing instruments. The market for each of these instruments has its own convention for quoting prices or yields. The remainder of this section examines the quoting conventions for T-bills and other money-market instruments. In most instances, the quoted yields must be adjusted for use in other present value problems.

Pure discount instruments such as T-bills are quoted differently from US government bonds. T-bills are quoted on a **bank discount basis**, rather than on a price basis. The bank discount basis is a quoting convention that annualizes, based on a 360-day year, the discount as a percentage of face value. Yield on a bank discount basis is computed as follows:

$$r_{\text{BD}} = \frac{D}{F} \frac{360}{t} \quad (3)$$

where

r_{BD} = the annualized yield on a bank discount basis

D = the dollar discount, which is equal to the difference between the face value of the bill, F , and its purchase price, P_0

F = the face value of the T-bill

t = the actual number of days remaining to maturity

360 = bank convention of the number of days in a year

The bank discount yield (often called simply the discount yield) takes the dollar discount from par, D , and expresses it as a fraction of the face value (not the price) of the T-bill. This fraction is then multiplied by the number of periods of length t in one year (that is, $360/t$), where the year is assumed to have 360 days. Annualizing in this fashion assumes simple interest (no compounding). Consider the following example.

EXAMPLE 6

The Bank Discount Yield

Suppose a T-bill with a face value (or par value) of \$100,000 and 150 days until maturity is selling for \$98,000. What is its bank discount yield?

Solution:

For this example, the dollar discount, D , is \$2,000. The yield on a bank discount basis is 4.8 percent, as computed with Equation 3:

$$r_{\text{BD}} = \frac{\$2,000}{\$100,000} \frac{360}{150} = 4.8\%$$

The bank discount formula takes the T-bill's dollar discount from face or par as a fraction of face value, 2 percent, and then annualizes by the factor $360/150 = 2.4$. The price of discount instruments such as T-bills is quoted using discount yields, so we typically translate discount yield into price.

Suppose we know the bank discount yield of 4.8 percent but do not know the price. We solve for the dollar discount, D , as follows:

$$D = r_{\text{BD}} F \frac{t}{360}$$

With $r_{\text{BD}} = 4.8$ percent, the dollar discount is $D = 0.048 \times \$100,000 \times 150/360 = \$2,000$. Once we have computed the dollar discount, the purchase price for the T-bill is its face value minus the dollar discount, $F - D = \$100,000 - \$2,000 = \$98,000$.

Yield on a bank discount basis is not a meaningful measure of investors' return, for three reasons. First, the yield is based on the face value of the bond, not on its purchase price. Returns from investments should be evaluated relative to the amount that is invested. Second, the yield is annualized based on a 360-day year rather than a 365-day year. Third, the bank discount yield annualizes with simple interest, which ignores the opportunity to earn interest on interest (compound interest).

We can extend Example 6 to discuss three often-used alternative yield measures. The first is the holding period return over the remaining life of the instrument (150 days in the case of the T-bill in Example 6). It determines the return that an investor will earn by holding the instrument to maturity; as used here, this measure refers to an unannualized rate of return (or periodic rate of return). In fixed income markets, this holding period return is also called a **holding period yield (HPY)**.¹³ For an instrument that makes one cash payment during its life, HPY is

$$\text{HPY} = \frac{P_1 - P_0 + D_1}{P_0} \quad (4)$$

where

P_0 = the initial purchase price of the instrument

P_1 = the price received for the instrument at its maturity

D_1 = the cash distribution paid by the instrument at its maturity (i.e., interest)

When we use this expression to calculate the holding period yield for an interest-bearing instrument (for example, coupon-bearing bonds), we need to observe an important detail: The purchase and sale prices must include any **accrued interest** added to the

¹³ Bond-market participants often use the term "yield" when referring to total returns (returns incorporating both price change and income), as in yield to maturity. In other cases, yield refers to returns from income alone (as in current yield, which is annual interest divided by price). As used in this volume and by many writers, holding period yield is a bond market synonym for holding period return, total return, and horizon return.

trade price because the bond was traded between interest payment dates. Accrued interest is the coupon interest that the seller earns from the last coupon date but does not receive as a coupon, because the next coupon date occurs after the date of sale.¹⁴

For pure discount securities, all of the return is derived by redeeming the bill for more than its purchase price. Because the T-bill is a pure discount instrument, it makes no interest payment and thus $D_1 = 0$. Therefore, the holding period yield is the dollar discount divided by the purchase price, $HPY = D/P_0$, where $D = P_1 - P_0$. The holding period yield is the amount that is annualized in the other measures. For the T-bill in Example 6, the investment of \$98,000 will pay \$100,000 in 150 days. The holding period yield on this investment using Equation 4 is $(\$100,000 - \$98,000)/\$98,000 = \$2,000/\$98,000 = 2.0408$ percent. For this example, the periodic return of 2.0408 percent is associated with a 150-day period. If we were to use the T-bill rate of return as the opportunity cost of investing, we would use a discount rate of 2.0408 percent for the 150-day T-bill to find the present value of any other cash flow to be received in 150 days. As long as the other cash flow has risk characteristics similar to those of the T-bill, this approach is appropriate. If the other cash flow were riskier than the T-bill, then we could use the T-bill's yield as a base rate, to which we would add a risk premium. The formula for the holding period yield is the same regardless of the currency of denomination.

The second measure of yield is the **effective annual yield (EAY)**. The EAY takes the quantity 1 plus the holding period yield and compounds it forward to one year, then subtracts 1 to recover an annualized return that accounts for the effect of interest-on-interest.¹⁵

$$EAY = (1 + HPY)^{365/t} - 1 \quad (5)$$

In our example, we can solve for EAY as follows:

$$EAY = (1.020408)^{365/150} - 1 = 1.050388 - 1 = 5.0388\%$$

This example illustrates a general rule: The bank discount yield is less than the effective annual yield.

The third alternative measure of yield is the **money market yield** (also known as the **CD equivalent yield**). This convention makes the quoted yield on a T-bill comparable to yield quotations on interest-bearing money-market instruments that pay interest on a 360-day basis. In general, the money market yield is equal to the annualized holding period yield; assuming a 360-day year, $r_{MM} = (HPY)(360/t)$. Compared to the bank discount yield, the money market yield is computed on the purchase price, so $r_{MM} = (r_{BD})(F/P_0)$. This equation shows that the money market yield is larger than the bank discount yield. In practice, the following expression is more useful because it does not require knowing the T-bill price:

$$r_{MM} = \frac{360r_{BD}}{360 - (t)(r_{BD})} \quad (6)$$

For the T-bill example, the money market yield is $r_{MM} = (360)(0.048)/[360 - (150)(0.048)] = 4.898$ percent.¹⁶

¹⁴ The price with accrued interest is called the **full price**. Trade prices are quoted "clean" (without accrued interest), but accrued interest, if any, is added to the purchase price. For more on accrued interest, see the Level I CFA Program curriculum reading "Understanding Fixed-Income Risk and Return."

¹⁵ Effective annual yield was called the effective annual rate (Equation 5) in the reading on the time value of money.

¹⁶ Some national markets use the money market yield formula, rather than the bank discount yield formula, to quote the yields on discount instruments such as T-bills. In Canada, the convention is to quote Treasury bill yields using the money market formula assuming a 365-day year. Yields for German Treasury discount paper with a maturity less than one year and French BTfs (T-bills) are computed with the money market formula assuming a 360-day year.

Table 7 summarizes the three yield measures we have discussed.

Table 7 Three Commonly Used Yield Measures

Holding Period Yield (HPY)	Effective Annual Yield (EAY)	Money Market Yield (CD Equivalent Yield)
$\text{HPY} = \frac{P_1 - P_0 + D_1}{P_0}$	$\text{EAY} = (1 + \text{HPY})^{365/t} - 1$	$r_{\text{MM}} = \frac{360r_{\text{BD}}}{360 - (t)(r_{\text{BD}})}$

The next example will help you consolidate your knowledge of these yield measures.

EXAMPLE 7

Using the Appropriate Discount Rate

You need to find the present value of a cash flow of \$1,000 that is to be received in 150 days. You decide to look at a T-bill maturing in 150 days to determine the relevant interest rate for calculating the present value. You have found a variety of yields for the 150-day bill. Table 8 presents this information.

Table 8 Short-Term Money Market Yields

Holding period yield	2.0408%
Bank discount yield	4.8%
Money market yield	4.898%
Effective annual yield	5.0388%

Which yield or yields are appropriate for finding the present value of the \$1,000 to be received in 150 days?

Solution:

The holding period yield is appropriate, and we can also use the money market yield and effective annual yield after converting them to a holding period yield.

- *Holding period yield* (2.0408 percent). This yield is exactly what we want. Because it applies to a 150-day period, we can use it in a straightforward fashion to find the present value of the \$1,000 to be received in 150 days. (Recall the principle that discount rates must be compatible with the time period.) The present value is

$$\text{PV} = \frac{\$1,000}{1.020408} = \$980.00$$

Now we can see why the other yield measures are inappropriate or not as easily applied.

- *Bank discount yield* (4.8 percent). We should not use this yield measure to determine the present value of the cash flow. As mentioned earlier, the bank discount yield is based on the face value of the bill and not on its price.

- *Money market yield* (4.898 percent). To use the money market yield, we need to convert it to the 150-day holding period yield by dividing it by $(360/150)$. After obtaining the holding period yield $0.04898/(360/150) = 0.020408$, we use it to discount the \$1,000 as above.
- *Effective annual yield* (5.0388 percent). This yield has also been annualized, so it must be adjusted to be compatible with the timing of the cash flow. We can obtain the holding period yield from the EAY as follows:

$$(1.050388)^{150/365} - 1 = 0.020408$$

Recall that when we found the effective annual yield, the exponent was $365/150$, or the number of 150-day periods in a 365-day year. To shrink the effective annual yield to a 150-day yield, we use the reciprocal of the exponent that we used to annualize.

In Example 7, we converted two short-term measures of annual yield to a holding period yield for a 150-day period. That is one type of conversion. We frequently also need to convert periodic rates to annual rates. The issue can arise both in money markets and in longer-term debt markets. As an example, many bonds (long-term debt instruments) pay interest semiannually. Bond investors compute IRRs for bonds, known as yields to maturity (YTM). If the semiannual yield to maturity is 4 percent, how do we annualize it? An exact approach, taking account of compounding, would be to compute $(1.04)^2 - 1 = 0.0816$ or 8.16 percent. This is what we have been calling an effective annual yield. An approach used in US bond markets, however, is to double the semiannual YTM: $4\% \times 2 = 8\%$. The yield to maturity calculated this way, ignoring compounding, has been called a **bond equivalent yield**. Annualizing a semiannual yield by doubling is putting the yield on a bond-equivalent basis. In practice the result, 8 percent, would be referred to simply as the bond's yield to maturity. In money markets, if we annualized a six-month period yield by doubling it, in order to make the result comparable to bonds' YTM's we would also say that the result was a bond equivalent yield.

SUMMARY

In this reading, we applied the concepts of present value, net present value, and internal rate of return to the fundamental problem of valuing investments. We applied these concepts first to corporate investment, the well-known capital budgeting problem. We then examined the fundamental problem of calculating the return on a portfolio subject to cash inflows and outflows. Finally we discussed money market yields and basic bond market terminology. The following summarizes the reading's key concepts:

- The net present value (NPV) of a project is the present value of its cash inflows minus the present value of its cash outflows. The internal rate of return (IRR) is the discount rate that makes NPV equal to 0. We can interpret IRR as an expected compound return only when all interim cash flows can be reinvested at the internal rate of return and the investment is maintained to maturity.
- The NPV rule for decision making is to accept all projects with positive NPV or, if projects are mutually exclusive, to accept the project with the higher positive NPV. With mutually exclusive projects, we rely on the NPV rule. The IRR rule is

to accept all projects with an internal rate of return exceeding the required rate of return. The IRR rule can be affected by problems of scale and timing of cash flows.

- Money-weighted rate of return and time-weighted rate of return are two alternative methods for calculating portfolio returns in a multiperiod setting when the portfolio is subject to additions and withdrawals. Time-weighted rate of return is the standard in the investment management industry. Money-weighted rate of return can be appropriate if the investor exercises control over additions and withdrawals to the portfolio.
- The money-weighted rate of return is the internal rate of return on a portfolio, taking account of all cash flows.
- The time-weighted rate of return removes the effects of timing and amount of withdrawals and additions to the portfolio and reflects the compound rate of growth of one unit of currency invested over a stated measurement period.
- The bank discount yield for US Treasury bills (and other money-market instruments sold on a discount basis) is given by $r_{BD} = (F - P_0)/F \times 360/t = D/F \times 360/t$, where F is the face amount to be received at maturity, P_0 is the price of the Treasury bill, t is the number of days to maturity, and D is the dollar discount.
- For a stated holding period or horizon, holding period yield (HPY) = (Ending price – Beginning price + Cash distributions)/(Beginning price). For a US Treasury bill, $HPY = D/P_0$.
- The effective annual yield (EAY) is $(1 + HPY)^{365/t} - 1$.
- The money market yield is given by $r_{MM} = HPY \times 360/t$, where t is the number of days to maturity.
- For a Treasury bill, money market yield can be obtained from the bank discount yield using $r_{MM} = (360 \times r_{BD})/(360 - t \times r_{BD})$.
- We can convert back and forth between holding period yields, money market yields, and effective annual yields by using the holding period yield, which is common to all the calculations.
- The bond equivalent yield of a yield stated on a semiannual basis is that yield multiplied by 2.

REFERENCES

Brealey, Richard A., Stewart C. Myers, and Franklin Allen.
2017. *Principles of Corporate Finance*. 12th ed. New York:
McGraw-Hill.

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

- The net present value (NPV) of an investment is equal to the sum of the expected cash flows discounted at the:
 - internal rate of return.
 - risk-free rate.
 - opportunity cost of capital.
- A \$2.2 million investment will result in the cash flows shown below:

Year	Year-End Cash Flow (millions)
1	\$1.3
2	\$1.6
3	\$1.9
4	\$0.8

- Using an 8% opportunity cost of capital, the project's net present value (NPV) is *closest* to:
- \$2.47 million.
 - \$3.40 million.
 - \$4.67 million.
- A firm is considering three projects as shown below.

	Net Present Value (NPV)	Internal Rate of Return (IRR)	Hurdle Rate
Project A	\$47,000	10%	5%
Project B	\$58,000	20%	12%
Project C	\$52,000	22%	12%

- If the firm can only accept one project, to maximize shareholder wealth, the firm is *most likely* to select:
- Project A.
 - Project B.
 - Project C.
- The internal rate of return (IRR) is *best* described as the:
 - opportunity cost of capital.
 - time-weighted rate of return.
 - discount rate that makes the net present value equal to zero.
 - A three-year investment requires an initial outlay of £1,000. It is expected to provide three year-end cash flows of £200 plus a net salvage value of £700 at the end of three years. Its internal rate of return (IRR) is *closest* to:
 - 10%.
 - 11%.
 - 20%.

- 6 The internal rate of return (IRR) rule indicates acceptance of a project when the IRR is:
- A greater than zero.
 - B less than the opportunity cost of capital.
 - C greater than the opportunity cost of capital.
- 7 Suppose a company has only €1,000,000 available to invest. The three projects available are described in the table:

Year	Project A Cash Flow (€)	Project B Cash Flow (€)	Project C Cash Flow (€)
0	-1,000,000	-1,000,000	-500,000
1	1,200,000	0	0
2	0	0	0
3	0	1,600,000	850,000
Internal rate of return (IRR)	20.00%	16.96%	19.35%

If the opportunity cost of capital is 12%, which project should be accepted?

- A Project A.
 - B Project B.
 - C Project C.
- 8 An investor buys a share of stock for \$52.68 and receives an \$0.88 dividend one year later. If the share sells for \$57.50 just after the dividend payment, the holding period return is *closest* to:
- A 9.1%.
 - B 9.9%.
 - C 10.8%.
- 9 An investor performs the following transactions on the shares of a firm.
- At $t = 0$, she purchases a share for \$1,000.
 - At $t = 1$, she receives a dividend of \$25 and then purchases three additional shares for \$1,055 each.
 - At $t = 2$, she receives a total dividend of \$100 and then sells the four shares for \$1,100 each.

The money-weighted rate of return is *closest* to:

- A 4.5%.
 - B 6.9%.
 - C 7.3%.
- 10 A fund receives investments at the beginning of each year and generates returns as shown in the table.

Year of Investment	Amount of Investment	Return during Year of Investment
1	\$1,000	15%
2	\$4,000	14%
3	\$45,000	-4%

Which return measure over the three-year period is negative?

- A Geometric mean return
 - B Time-weighted rate of return
 - C Money-weighted rate of return
- 11 At the beginning of Year 1, a fund has \$10 million under management; it earns a return of 14% for the year. The fund attracts another \$100 million at the start of Year 2 and earns a return of 8% for that year. The money-weighted rate of return is *most likely*:
- A less than the time-weighted rate of return.
 - B the same as the time-weighted rate of return.
 - C greater than the time-weighted rate of return.
- 12 An investor buys a bond for \$980. After six months, she collects a semiannual coupon of \$30 and sells the bond for \$990. Her six-month holding period yield (HPY) is *closest* to:
- A 1.0%.
 - B 4.1%.
 - C 8.3%.
- 13 A portfolio manager pays \$99,500 for a 182-day US T-bill with face value of \$100,000. The T-bill will be held to maturity. A yield of 0.5025% calculated for this T-bill when it is purchased is *most* accurately described as the:
- A bank discount yield.
 - B money market yield.
 - C holding period yield.
- 14 A 123-day T-bill with a maturity value of \$100,000 is priced at \$99,620. The bill's effective annual yield is *closest* to:
- A 0.38%.
 - B 1.12%.
 - C 1.14%.
- 15 For a T-bill purchased at \$97,000 that matures at \$100,000 in 300 days, which of the following yields is *closest* to 3.71%?
- A Money market yield
 - B Holding period yield (HPY)
 - C Effective annual yield
- 16 A 223-day T-bill with a maturity value of \$100,000 has a bank discount yield of 2.05%. The bill's holding period yield is *closest* to:
- A 1.29%.
 - B 2.08%.
 - C 2.11%.
- 17 Given a 300-day holding period yield (HPY) of 7%, the effective annual yield (EAY) is *closest* to:
- A 8.4%.
 - B 8.5%.
 - C 8.6%.

SOLUTIONS

- 1 C is correct. The NPV sums the project's expected cash flows (CF) discounted at the opportunity cost of capital. The NPV calculation is

$$\text{NPV} = \sum_{t=0}^N \frac{\text{CF}_t}{(1+r)^t}$$

where

CF_t = the expected net cash flow at time t

N = the investment's projected life

r = the discount rate or opportunity cost of capital

- 2 A is correct.

$$\text{The NPV} = -\$2.2 + \frac{\$1.3}{(1.08)} + \frac{\$1.6}{(1.08)^2} + \frac{\$1.9}{(1.08)^3} + \frac{\$0.8}{(1.08)^4} = \$2.47 \text{ million.}$$

- 3 B is correct. According to the NPV rule, shareholder wealth is maximized by selecting a project with the highest NPV. The IRR rule also signals acceptance; however, the IRR rule should not be used to rank projects. In this case, Project B adds the most value to the firm.
- 4 C is correct. The internal rate of return is computed by identifying all cash flows and solving for the rate that makes the net present value of those cash flows equal to zero.
- 5 B is correct. IRR is determined by setting the net present value equal to zero for the cash flows shown in the table.

Year	Cash Flow (£)
0	-1,000
1	200
2	200
3	900

- 6 C is correct. The IRR investment decision rule states, "Accept projects or investments for which the IRR is greater than the opportunity cost of capital."
- 7 B is correct. The projects are mutually exclusive because the amount to invest is constrained to €1,000,000. Therefore, the net present value (NPV) rule should be used to choose among them when the IRR rule and NPV rule conflict. Based on the opportunity cost of capital of 12%, the NPV of Project B is €138,848, which is higher than the NPV of €71,429 for Project A and the NPV of \$105,013 for Project C.
- Project A NPV = $-\text{€}1,000,000 + \text{€}1,200,000/(1.12) = \text{€}71,429$
- Project B NPV = $-\text{€}1,000,000 + \text{€}1,600,000/(1.12)^3 = \text{€}138,848$
- Project C NPV = $-\text{€}500,000 + \text{€}850,000/(1.12)^3 = \text{€}105,013$
- 8 C is correct. The formula for the holding period return is

$$\frac{P_1 - P_0 + D_1}{P_0}$$

where P_0 is the initial investment, P_1 is the final value at the end of the holding period, and D_1 is the cash dividend paid at the end of the holding period. This investment results in a holding period return (HPR) of

$$\text{HPR} = \frac{\$57.50 - \$52.68 + \$0.88}{\$52.68} = 10.82\%$$

- 9 B is correct. Computation of the money-weighted return, r , requires finding the discount rate that sets the present value (outflows) equal to the present value (inflows).

Solving for r ,

$$\$1,000 + \frac{\$3,165}{(1+r)} = \frac{\$25}{(1+r)} + \frac{\$4,500}{(1+r)^2}$$

results in a value of $r = 6.91\%$

- 10 C is correct. The money-weighted rate of return considers both the timing and amounts of investments into the fund. The investment at the beginning of Year 1 will be worth $\$1,000(1.15)(1.14)(0.96) = \$1,258.56$ at the end of Year 3. The investment made at the beginning of Year 2 will be worth $\$4,377.60 = \$4,000(1.14)(0.96)$ at the end of Year 3. The investment of $\$45,000$ at the beginning of Year 3 decreases to a value of $\$45,000(0.96) = \$43,200$ at the end of Year 3.

Solving for r ,

$$\$1,000 + \frac{\$4,000}{(1+r)} + \frac{\$45,000}{(1+r)^2} = \frac{\$1,258 + \$4,377.60 + \$43,200}{(1+r)^3}$$

results in $r = -2.08\%$

Note that B is incorrect because the time-weighted rate of return (TWR) of the fund is the same as the geometric mean return of the fund and is thus positive:

$$\text{TWR} = \sqrt[3]{(1.15)(1.14)(0.96)} - 1 = 7.97\%$$

- 11 A is correct. The money-weighted rate of return is found by setting the present value (PV) of investments into the fund equal to the PV of the fund's terminal value. Because most of the investment came during Year 2, the measure will be biased toward the performance of Year 2. Set the PV of investments equal to the PV of the fund's terminal value:

$$\$10 + \frac{100}{(1+r)} = \frac{10 \times 1.14 \times 1.08 + 100 \times 1.08}{(1+r)^2}$$

Solving for r results in $r = 8.53\%$.

The time-weighted return of the fund is $= \sqrt[2]{(1.14)(1.08)} - 1 = 10.96\%$.

- 12 B is correct. The HPY for the bond is

$$\frac{P_1 - P_0 + D_1}{P_0} = \frac{\$990 - \$980 + \$30}{\$980} = 4.08\%$$

- 13 C is correct. The 182-day holding period yield (HPY) is calculated as follows:

$$\text{HPY} = \frac{P_1 - P_0 + D_1}{P_0} = \frac{\$100,000 - \$99,500}{\$99,500} = 0.5025\%$$

- 14 C is correct. The effective annual yield (EAY) is calculated as follows (where HPY is holding period yield):

$$\text{HPY} = \frac{P_1 - P_0 + D_1}{P_0} = \frac{\$100,00 - \$99,620}{\$99,620} = 0.3814\%$$

$$\text{EAY} = (1 + \text{HPY})^{365/123} - 1 = (1 + .003814)^{365/123} - 1 = 1.1362\%$$

- 15 A is correct. The money market yield is equal to the annualized HPY, assuming a 360-day year. $r_{\text{MM}} = (\text{HPY})(360/t)$. A T-bill purchased at \$97,000 has a HPY of $[(\$100,000 - \$97,000)/\$97,000] = 3.09\%$. The money market yield for this T-bill is $(3.09\%)(360/300) = 3.71\%$. The effective annual yield for this T-bill is $(1 + 0.0309)^{365/300} - 1 = 3.77\%$.

- 16 A is correct. The holding period yield of a bill can be computed from the bank discount yield by finding the bill's discount D :

$$r_{\text{BD}} = \frac{D}{F} \times \frac{360}{t}, \text{ so } 0.0205 = \frac{D}{\$100,000} \times \frac{360}{223}$$

Solving for D results in a discount of \$1,269.86. This result implies a purchase price of $\$100,000 - \$1,269.86 = \$98,730.14$.

The holding period yield (HPY) then computes as:

$$\text{HPY} = \frac{\$1,269.86}{\$98,730.14} = 1.286\%$$

B is incorrect because it is the money market yield and C is incorrect because it is the equivalent annual yield.

- 17 C is correct. The EAY is one plus the HPY, compounded forward one year, and then subtract one:

$$\text{EAY} = (1 + \text{HPY})^{365/t} - 1$$

$$(1 + 0.07)^{365/300} - 1 = 8.58\% \approx 8.6\%$$

READING

8

Statistical Concepts and Market Returns

by Richard A. DeFusco, PhD, CFA, Dennis W. McLeavey, CFA,
Jerald E. Pinto, PhD, CFA, and David E. Runkle, PhD, CFA

Richard A. DeFusco, PhD, CFA, is at the University of Lincoln-Nebraska (USA). Dennis W. McLeavey, CFA, is at the University of Rhode Island (USA). Jerald E. Pinto, PhD, CFA, is at CFA Institute (USA). David E. Runkle, PhD, CFA, is at Trilogy Global Advisors (USA).

LEARNING OUTCOMES

<i>Mastery</i>	<i>The candidate should be able to:</i>
<input type="checkbox"/>	a. distinguish between descriptive statistics and inferential statistics, between a population and a sample, and among the types of measurement scales;
<input type="checkbox"/>	b. define a parameter, a sample statistic, and a frequency distribution;
<input type="checkbox"/>	c. calculate and interpret relative frequencies and cumulative relative frequencies, given a frequency distribution;
<input type="checkbox"/>	d. describe the properties of a data set presented as a histogram or a frequency polygon;
<input type="checkbox"/>	e. calculate and interpret measures of central tendency, including the population mean, sample mean, arithmetic mean, weighted average or mean, geometric mean, harmonic mean, median, and mode;
<input type="checkbox"/>	f. calculate and interpret quartiles, quintiles, deciles, and percentiles;
<input type="checkbox"/>	g. calculate and interpret 1) a range and a mean absolute deviation and 2) the variance and standard deviation of a population and of a sample;
<input type="checkbox"/>	h. calculate and interpret the proportion of observations falling within a specified number of standard deviations of the mean using Chebyshev's inequality;
<input type="checkbox"/>	i. calculate and interpret the coefficient of variation and the Sharpe ratio;
<input type="checkbox"/>	j. explain skewness and the meaning of a positively or negatively skewed return distribution;

(continued)

LEARNING OUTCOMES

<i>Mastery</i>	<i>The candidate should be able to:</i>
<input type="checkbox"/>	k. describe the relative locations of the mean, median, and mode for a unimodal, nonsymmetrical distribution;
<input type="checkbox"/>	l. explain measures of sample skewness and kurtosis;
<input type="checkbox"/>	m. compare the use of arithmetic and geometric means when analyzing investment returns.

1

INTRODUCTION

Statistical methods provide a powerful set of tools for analyzing data and drawing conclusions from them. Whether we are analyzing asset returns, earnings growth rates, commodity prices, or any other financial data, statistical tools help us quantify and communicate the data's important features. This reading presents the basics of describing and analyzing data, the branch of statistics known as descriptive statistics. The reading supplies a set of useful concepts and tools, illustrated in a variety of investment contexts. One theme of our presentation, reflected in the reading's title, is the demonstration of the statistical methods that allow us to summarize return distributions.¹ We explore four properties of return distributions:

- where the returns are centered (central tendency);
- how far returns are dispersed from their center (dispersion);
- whether the distribution of returns is symmetrically shaped or lopsided (skewness); and
- whether extreme outcomes are likely (kurtosis).

These same concepts are generally applicable to the distributions of other types of data, too.

The reading is organized as follows. After defining some basic concepts in Section 2, in Sections 3 and 4 we discuss the presentation of data: Section 3 describes the organization of data in a table format, and Section 4 describes the graphic presentation of data. We then turn to the quantitative description of how data are distributed: Section 5 focuses on measures that quantify where data are centered, or measures of central tendency. Section 6 presents other measures that describe the location of data. Section 7 presents measures that quantify the degree to which data are dispersed. Sections 8 and 9 describe additional measures that provide a more accurate picture of data. Section 10 provides investment applications of concepts introduced in Section 5.

2

SOME FUNDAMENTAL CONCEPTS

Before starting the study of statistics with this reading, it may be helpful to examine a picture of the overall field. In the following, we briefly describe the scope of statistics and its branches of study. We explain the concepts of population and sample. Data

¹ Ibbotson Associates (www.ibbotson.com) generously provided some of the data used in this reading. We also draw on Dimson, Marsh, and Staunton's (2011) history and study of world markets as well as other sources.

come in a variety of types, affecting the ways they can be measured and the appropriate statistical methods for analyzing them. We conclude by discussing the basic types of data measurement.

2.1 The Nature of Statistics

The term **statistics** can have two broad meanings, one referring to data and the other to method. A company's average earnings per share (EPS) for the last 20 quarters, or its average returns for the past 10 years, are statistics. We may also analyze historical EPS to forecast future EPS, or use the company's past returns to infer its risk. The totality of methods we employ to collect and analyze data is also called statistics.

Statistical methods include descriptive statistics and statistical inference (inferential statistics). **Descriptive statistics** is the study of how data can be summarized effectively to describe the important aspects of large data sets. By consolidating a mass of numerical details, descriptive statistics turns data into information. **Statistical inference** involves making forecasts, estimates, or judgments about a larger group from the smaller group actually observed. The foundation for statistical inference is probability theory, and both statistical inference and probability theory will be discussed in later readings. Our focus in this reading is solely on descriptive statistics.

2.2 Populations and Samples

Throughout the study of statistics we make a critical distinction between a population and a sample. In this section, we explain these two terms as well as the related terms "parameter" and "sample statistic."²

- **Definition of Population.** A **population** is defined as all members of a specified group.

Any descriptive measure of a population characteristic is called a **parameter**. Although a population can have many parameters, investment analysts are usually concerned with only a few, such as the mean value, the range of investment returns, and the variance.

Even if it is possible to observe all the members of a population, it is often too expensive in terms of time or money to attempt to do so. For example, if the population is all telecommunications customers worldwide and an analyst is interested in their purchasing plans, she will find it too costly to observe the entire population. The analyst can address this situation by taking a sample of the population.

- **Definition of Sample.** A **sample** is a subset of a population.

In taking a sample, the analyst hopes it is characteristic of the population. The field of statistics known as sampling deals with taking samples in appropriate ways to achieve the objective of representing the population well. A later reading addresses the details of sampling.

Earlier, we mentioned statistics in the sense of referring to data. Just as a parameter is a descriptive measure of a population characteristic, a sample statistic (statistic, for short) is a descriptive measure of a sample characteristic.

- **Definition of Sample Statistic.** A **sample statistic** (or **statistic**) is a quantity computed from or used to describe a sample.

² This reading introduces many statistical concepts and formulas. To make it easy to locate them, we have set off some of the more important ones with bullet points.

We devote much of this reading to explaining and illustrating the use of statistics in this sense. The concept is critical also in statistical inference, which addresses such problems as estimating an unknown population parameter using a sample statistic.

2.3 Measurement Scales

To choose the appropriate statistical methods for summarizing and analyzing data, we need to distinguish among different **measurement scales** or levels of measurement. All data measurements are taken on one of four major scales: nominal, ordinal, interval, or ratio.

Nominal scales represent the weakest level of measurement: They categorize data but do not rank them. If we assigned integers to mutual funds that follow different investment strategies, the number 1 might refer to a small-cap value fund, the number 2 to a large-cap value fund, and so on for each possible style. This nominal scale categorizes the funds according to their style but does not rank them.

Ordinal scales reflect a stronger level of measurement. Ordinal scales sort data into categories that are ordered with respect to some characteristic. For example, the Morningstar and Standard & Poor's star ratings for mutual funds represent an ordinal scale in which one star represents a group of funds judged to have had relatively the worst performance, with two, three, four, and five stars representing groups with increasingly better performance, as evaluated by those services.

An ordinal scale may also involve numbers to identify categories. For example, in ranking balanced mutual funds based on their five-year cumulative return, we might assign the number 1 to the top 10 percent of funds, and so on, so that the number 10 represents the bottom 10 percent of funds. The ordinal scale is stronger than the nominal scale because it reveals that a fund ranked 1 performed better than a fund ranked 2. The scale tells us nothing, however, about the difference in performance between funds ranked 1 and 2 compared with the difference in performance between funds ranked 3 and 4, or 9 and 10.

Interval scales provide not only ranking but also assurance that the differences between scale values are equal. As a result, scale values can be added and subtracted meaningfully. The Celsius and Fahrenheit scales are interval measurement scales. The difference in temperature between 10°C and 11°C is the same amount as the difference between 40°C and 41°C. We can state accurately that $12^{\circ}\text{C} = 9^{\circ}\text{C} + 3^{\circ}\text{C}$, for example. Nevertheless, the zero point of an interval scale does not reflect complete absence of what is being measured; it is not a true zero point or natural zero. Zero degrees Celsius corresponds to the freezing point of water, not the absence of temperature. As a consequence of the absence of a true zero point, we cannot meaningfully form ratios on interval scales.

As an example, 50°C, although five times as large a number as 10°C, does not represent five times as much temperature. Also, questionnaire scales are often treated as interval scales. If an investor is asked to rank his risk aversion on a scale from 1 (extremely risk-averse) to 7 (extremely risk-loving), the difference between a response of 1 and a response of 2 is sometimes assumed to represent the same difference in risk aversion as the difference between a response of 6 and a response of 7. When that assumption can be justified, the data are measured on an interval scale.

Ratio scales represent the strongest level of measurement. They have all the characteristics of interval measurement scales as well as a true zero point as the origin. With ratio scales, we can meaningfully compute ratios as well as meaningfully add and subtract amounts within the scale. As a result, we can apply the widest range of statistical tools to data measured on a ratio scale. Rates of return are measured on a ratio scale, as is money. If we have twice as much money, then we have twice the purchasing power. Note that the scale has a natural zero—zero means no money.

Now that we have addressed the important preliminaries, we can discuss summarizing and describing data.

EXAMPLE 1

Identifying Scales of Measurement

State the scale of measurement for each of the following:

- 1 Credit ratings for bond issues.³
- 2 Cash dividends per share.
- 3 Hedge fund classification types.⁴
- 4 Bond maturity in years.

Solution to 1:

Credit ratings are measured on an ordinal scale. A rating places a bond issue in a category, and the categories are ordered with respect to the expected probability of default. But the difference in the expected probability of default between AA⁻ and A⁺, for example, is not necessarily equal to that between BB⁻ and B⁺. In other words, letter credit ratings are not measured on an interval scale.

Solution to 2:

Cash dividends per share are measured on a ratio scale. For this variable, 0 represents the complete absence of dividends; it is a true zero point.

Solution to 3:

Hedge fund classification types are measured on a nominal scale. Each type groups together hedge funds with similar investment strategies. In contrast to credit ratings for bonds, however, hedge fund classification schemes do not involve a ranking. Thus such classification schemes are not measured on an ordinal scale.

Solution to 4:

Bond maturity is measured on a ratio scale.

SUMMARIZING DATA USING FREQUENCY DISTRIBUTIONS

3

In this section, we discuss one of the simplest ways to summarize data—the frequency distribution.

- **Definition of Frequency Distribution.** A **frequency distribution** is a tabular display of data summarized into a relatively small number of intervals.

³ Credit ratings for a bond issue gauge the bond issuer's ability to meet the promised principal and interest payments on the bond. For example, one rating agency, Standard & Poor's, assigns bond issues to one of the following ratings, given in descending order of credit quality (increasing probability of default): AAA, AA⁺, AA, AA⁻, A⁺, A, A⁻, BBB⁺, BBB, BBB⁻, BB⁺, BB, BB⁻, B⁺, B, B⁻, CCC⁺, CCC⁻, CC, C, D. For more information on credit risk and credit ratings, see the Level I CFA Program curriculum reading "Fixed-Income Securities: Defining Elements."

⁴ "Hedge fund" refers to investment vehicles with legal structures that result in less regulatory oversight than other pooled investment vehicles such as mutual funds. Hedge fund classification types group hedge funds by the kind of investment strategy they pursue.

Frequency distributions help in the analysis of large amounts of statistical data, and they work with all types of measurement scales.

Rates of return are the fundamental units that analysts and portfolio managers use for making investment decisions and we can use frequency distributions to summarize rates of return. When we analyze rates of return, our starting point is the holding period return (also called the total return).

- **Holding Period Return Formula.** The holding period return for time period t , R_t , is

$$R_t = \frac{P_t - P_{t-1} + D_t}{P_{t-1}} \quad (1)$$

where

P_t = price per share at the end of time period t

P_{t-1} = price per share at the end of time period $t - 1$, the time period immediately preceding time period t

D_t = cash distributions received during time period t

Thus the holding period return for time period t is the capital gain (or loss) plus distributions divided by the beginning-period price. (For common stocks, the distribution is a dividend; for bonds, the distribution is a coupon payment.) Equation 1 can be used to define the holding period return on any asset for a day, week, month, or year simply by changing the interpretation of the time interval between successive values of the time index, t .

The holding period return, as defined in Equation 1, has two important characteristics. First, it has an element of time attached to it. For example, if a monthly time interval is used between successive observations for price, then the rate of return is a monthly figure. Second, rate of return has no currency unit attached to it. For instance, suppose that prices are denominated in euros. The numerator and denominator of Equation 1 would be expressed in euros, and the resulting ratio would not have any units because the units in the numerator and denominator would cancel one another. This result holds regardless of the currency in which prices are denominated.⁵

With these concerns noted, we now turn to the frequency distribution of the holding period returns on the S&P 500 Index.⁶ First, we examine annual rates of return; then we look at monthly rates of return. The annual rates of return on the S&P 500 calculated with Equation 1 span the period January 1926 to December 2012, for a total of 87 annual observations. Monthly return data cover the period January 1926 to December 2012, for a total of 1,044 monthly observations.

We can state a basic procedure for constructing a frequency distribution as follows.

Construction of a Frequency Distribution.

- 1 Sort the data in ascending order.
- 2 Calculate the range of the data, defined as Range = Maximum value – Minimum value.
- 3 Decide on the number of intervals in the frequency distribution, k .

⁵ Note, however, that if price and cash distributions in the expression for holding period return were not in one's home currency, one would generally convert those variables to one's home currency before calculating the holding period return. Because of exchange rate fluctuations during the holding period, holding period returns on an asset computed in different currencies would generally differ.

⁶ We use the total return series on the S&P 500 from January 1926 to December 2012 provided by Ibbotson Associates.

- 4 Determine interval width as Range/k .
- 5 Determine the intervals by successively adding the interval width to the minimum value, to determine the ending points of intervals, stopping after reaching an interval that includes the maximum value.
- 6 Count the number of observations falling in each interval.
- 7 Construct a table of the intervals listed from smallest to largest that shows the number of observations falling in each interval.

In Step 4, when rounding the interval width, round up rather than down, to ensure that the final interval includes the maximum value of the data.

As the above procedure makes clear, a frequency distribution groups data into a set of intervals.⁷ An **interval** is a set of values within which an observation falls. Each observation falls into only one interval, and the total number of intervals covers all the values represented in the data. The actual number of observations in a given interval is called the **absolute frequency**, or simply the frequency. The frequency distribution is the list of intervals together with the corresponding measures of frequency.

To illustrate the basic procedure, suppose we have 12 observations sorted in ascending order: $-4.57, -4.04, -1.64, 0.28, 1.34, 2.35, 2.38, 4.28, 4.42, 4.68, 7.16,$ and 11.43 . The minimum observation is -4.57 and the maximum observation is $+11.43$, so the range is $+11.43 - (-4.57) = 16$. If we set $k = 4$, the interval width is $16/4 = 4$. Table 1 shows the repeated addition of the interval width of 4 to determine the endpoints for the intervals (Step 5).

Table 1 Endpoints of Intervals

-4.57	+	4.00	=	-0.57
-0.57	+	4.00	=	3.43
3.43	+	4.00	=	7.43
7.4	+	4.00	=	11.43

Thus the intervals are $[-4.57 \text{ to } -0.57)$, $[-0.57 \text{ to } 3.43)$, $[3.43 \text{ to } 7.43)$, and $[7.43 \text{ to } 11.43]$.⁸ Table 2 summarizes Steps 5 through 7.

Table 2 Frequency Distribution

Interval		Absolute Frequency	
A	$-4.57 \leq \text{observation} < -0.57$		3
B	$-0.57 \leq \text{observation} < 3.43$		4
C	$3.43 \leq \text{observation} < 7.43$		4
D	$7.43 \leq \text{observation} \leq 11.43$		1

Note that the intervals do not overlap, so each observation can be placed uniquely into one interval.

⁷ Intervals are also sometimes called classes, ranges, or bins.

⁸ The notation $[-4.57 \text{ to } -0.57)$ means $-4.57 \leq \text{observation} < -0.57$. In this context, a square bracket indicates that the endpoint is included in the interval.

In practice, we may want to refine the above basic procedure. For example, we may want the intervals to begin and end with whole numbers for ease of interpretation. We also need to explain the choice of the number of intervals, k . We turn to these issues in discussing the construction of frequency distributions for the S&P 500.

We first consider the case of constructing a frequency distribution for the annual returns on the S&P 500 over the period 1926 to 2012. During that period, the return on the S&P 500 had a minimum value of -43.34 percent (in 1931) and a maximum value of $+53.99$ percent (in 1933). Thus the range of the data was $+54\% - (-43\%) = 97\%$, approximately. The question now is the number k of intervals into which we should group observations. Although some guidelines for setting k have been suggested in statistical literature, the setting of a useful value for k often involves inspecting the data and exercising judgment. How much detail should we include? If we use too few intervals, we will summarize too much and lose pertinent characteristics. If we use too many intervals, we may not summarize enough.

We can establish an appropriate value for k by evaluating the usefulness of the resulting interval width. A large number of empty intervals may indicate that we are trying to organize the data to present too much detail. Starting with a relatively small interval width, we can see whether or not the intervals are mostly empty and whether or not the value of k associated with that interval width is too large. If intervals are mostly empty or k is very large, we can consider increasingly larger intervals (smaller values of k) until we have a frequency distribution that effectively summarizes the distribution. For the annual S&P 500 series, return intervals of 1 percent width would result in 97 intervals and many of them would be empty because we have only 87 annual observations. We need to keep in mind that the purpose of a frequency distribution is to *summarize* the data. Suppose that for ease of interpretation we want to use an interval width stated in whole rather than fractional percents. A 2 percent interval width would have many fewer empty intervals than a 1 percent interval width and effectively summarize the data. A 2 percent interval width would be associated with $97/2 = 48.5$ intervals, which we can round up to 49 intervals. That number of intervals will cover $2\% \times 49 = 98\%$. We can confirm that if we start the smallest 2 percent interval at the whole number -44.0 percent, the final interval ends at $-44.0\% + 98\% = 54\%$ and includes the maximum return in the sample, 53.99 percent. In so constructing the frequency distribution, we will also have intervals that end and begin at a value of 0 percent, allowing us to count the negative and positive returns in the data. Without too much work, we have found an effective way to summarize the data. We will use return intervals of 2 percent, beginning with $-44\% \leq R_t < -42\%$ (given as “ -44% to -42% ” in the table) and ending with $52\% \leq R_t \leq 54\%$. Table 3 shows the frequency distribution for the annual total returns on the S&P 500.

Table 3 includes three other useful ways to present data, which we can compute once we have established the frequency distribution: the relative frequency, the cumulative frequency (also called the cumulative absolute frequency), and the cumulative relative frequency.

- **Definition of Relative Frequency.** The **relative frequency** is the absolute frequency of each interval divided by the total number of observations.

The **cumulative relative frequency** cumulates (adds up) the relative frequencies as we move from the first to the last interval. It tells us the fraction of observations that are less than the upper limit of each interval. Examining the frequency distribution given in Table 3, we see that the first return interval, -44 percent to -42 percent, has one observation; its relative frequency is $1/87$ or 1.15 percent. The cumulative frequency for this interval is 1 because only one observation is less than -42 percent. The cumulative relative frequency is thus $1/87$ or 1.15 percent. The next return interval has zero observations; therefore, its cumulative frequency is 0 plus 1 and its cumulative relative frequency is 1.15 percent (the cumulative relative frequency from

the previous interval). We can find the other cumulative frequencies by adding the (absolute) frequency to the previous cumulative frequency. The cumulative frequency, then, tells us the number of observations that are less than the upper limit of each return interval.

As Table 3 shows, return intervals have frequencies from 0 to 7 in this sample. The interval encompassing returns between -10 percent and -8 percent ($-10\% \leq R_t < -8\%$) has the most observations, seven. Next most frequent are returns between 4 percent and 6 percent ($4\% \leq R_t < 6\%$) and between 18 percent and 20 percent ($18\% \leq R_t < 20\%$), with six observations in each interval. From the cumulative frequency column, we see that the number of negative returns is 24. The number of positive returns must then be equal to $87 - 24$, or 63. We can express the number of positive and negative outcomes as a percentage of the total to get a sense of the risk inherent in investing in the stock market. During the 87-year period, the S&P 500 had negative annual returns 27.6 percent of the time (that is, $24/87$). This result appears in the fifth column of Table 3, which reports the cumulative relative frequency.

The frequency distribution gives us a sense of not only where most of the observations lie but also whether the distribution is evenly distributed, lopsided, or otherwise distinctive. In the case of the S&P 500, we can see that more than half of the outcomes are positive and most of those annual returns are larger than 10 percent. (Only 14 of the 63 positive annual returns—about 22 percent—were between 0 and 10 percent.)

Table 3 permits us to make an important further point about the choice of the number of intervals related to equity returns in particular. From the frequency distribution in Table 3, we can see that only six outcomes fall between -44 percent to -16 percent and only five outcomes fall between 38 percent to 54 percent. Stock return data are frequently characterized by a few very large or small outcomes. We could have collapsed the return intervals in the tails of the frequency distribution by choosing a smaller value of k , but then we would have lost the information about how extremely poorly or well the stock market had performed. A risk manager may need to know the worst possible outcomes and thus may want to have detailed information on the tails (the extreme values). A frequency distribution with a relatively large value of k is useful for that. A portfolio manager or analyst may be equally interested in detailed information on the tails; however, if the manager or analyst wants a picture only of where most of the observations lie, he might prefer to use an interval width of 4 percent (25 intervals beginning at -44 percent), for example.

The frequency distribution for monthly returns on the S&P 500 looks quite different from that for annual returns. The monthly return series from January 1926 to December 2012 has 1,044 observations. Returns range from a minimum of approximately -30 percent to a maximum of approximately $+43$ percent. With such a large quantity of monthly data we must summarize to get a sense of the distribution, and so we group the data into 37 equally spaced return intervals of 2 percent. The gains from summarizing in this way are substantial. Table 4 presents the resulting frequency distribution. The absolute frequencies appear in the second column, followed by the relative frequencies. The relative frequencies are rounded to two decimal places. The cumulative absolute and cumulative relative frequencies appear in the fourth and fifth columns, respectively.

Table 3 Frequency Distribution for the Annual Total Return on the S&P 500, 1926–2012

Return Interval (%)	Frequency		Relative Frequency (%)		Cumulative Frequency		Cumulative Relative Frequency (%)		Return Interval (%)	Frequency		Relative Frequency (%)		Cumulative Frequency		Cumulative Relative Frequency (%)	
	Frequency	Relative Frequency (%)	Cumulative Frequency	Cumulative Relative Frequency (%)	Frequency	Relative Frequency (%)	Cumulative Frequency	Cumulative Relative Frequency (%)		Frequency	Relative Frequency (%)	Cumulative Frequency	Cumulative Relative Frequency (%)	Frequency	Relative Frequency (%)	Cumulative Frequency	Cumulative Relative Frequency (%)
-44.0 to -42.0	1	1.15	1	1.15	1	1.15	1	1.15	4.0 to 6.0	6	6.90	33	37.93				
-42.0 to -40.0	0	0.00	1	1.15	1	1.15	1	1.15	6.0 to 8.0	4	4.60	37	42.53				
-40.0 to -38.0	0	0.00	1	1.15	1	1.15	1	1.15	8.0 to 10.0	1	1.15	38	43.68				
-38.0 to -36.0	1	1.15	2	2.30	2	2.30	2	2.30	10.0 to 12.0	4	4.60	42	48.28				
-36.0 to -34.0	1	1.15	3	3.45	3	3.45	3	3.45	12.0 to 14.0	1	1.15	43	49.43				
-34.0 to -32.0	0	0.00	3	3.45	3	3.45	3	3.45	14.0 to 16.0	4	4.60	47	54.02				
-32.0 to -30.0	0	0.00	3	3.45	3	3.45	3	3.45	16.0 to 18.0	2	2.30	49	56.32				
-30.0 to -28.0	0	0.00	3	3.45	3	3.45	3	3.45	18.0 to 20.0	6	6.90	55	63.22				
-28.0 to -26.0	1	1.15	4	4.60	4	4.60	4	4.60	20.0 to 22.0	3	3.45	58	66.67				
-26.0 to -24.0	1	1.15	5	5.75	5	5.75	5	5.75	22.0 to 24.0	5	5.75	63	72.41				
-24.0 to -22.0	1	1.15	6	6.90	6	6.90	6	6.90	24.0 to 26.0	2	2.30	65	74.71				
-22.0 to -20.0	0	0.00	6	6.90	6	6.90	6	6.90	26.0 to 28.0	2	2.30	67	77.01				
-20.0 to -18.0	0	0.00	6	6.90	6	6.90	6	6.90	28.0 to 30.0	2	2.30	69	79.31				
-18.0 to -16.0	0	0.00	6	6.90	6	6.90	6	6.90	30.0 to 32.0	5	5.75	74	85.06				
-16.0 to -14.0	1	1.15	7	8.05	7	8.05	7	8.05	32.0 to 34.0	4	4.60	78	89.66				
-14.0 to -12.0	0	0.00	7	8.05	7	8.05	7	8.05	34.0 to 36.0	0	0.00	78	89.66				
-12.0 to -10.0	4	4.60	11	12.64	11	12.64	11	12.64	36.0 to 38.0	4	4.60	82	94.25				
-10.0 to -8.0	7	8.05	18	20.69	18	20.69	18	20.69	38.0 to 40.0	0	0.00	82	94.25				
-8.0 to -6.0	1	1.15	19	21.84	19	21.84	19	21.84	40.0 to 42.0	0	0.00	82	94.25				
-6.0 to -4.0	1	1.15	20	22.99	20	22.99	20	22.99	42.0 to 44.0	2	2.30	84	96.55				
-4.0 to -2.0	1	1.15	21	24.14	21	24.14	21	24.14	44.0 to 46.0	0	0.00	84	96.55				
-2.0 to 0.0	3	3.45	24	27.59	24	27.59	24	27.59	46.0 to 48.0	1	1.15	85	97.70				
0.0 to 2.0	2	2.30	26	29.89	26	29.89	26	29.89	48.0 to 50.0	0	0.00	85	97.70				
2.0 to 4.0	1	1.15	27	31.03	27	31.03	27	31.03	50.0 to 52.0	0	0.00	85	97.70				
									52.0 to 54.0	2	2.30	87	100.00				

Note: The lower class limit is the weak inequality (\leq) and the upper class limit is the strong inequality ($<$). Cumulative relative frequency totals reflect calculations using full precision, with results rounded to two decimal places.

Source: Ibbotson Associates.

Table 4 Frequency Distribution for the Monthly Total Return on the S&P 500, January 1926 to December 2012

Return Interval (%)	Absolute Frequency	Relative Frequency (%)	Cumulative Absolute Frequency	Cumulative Relative Frequency (%)
-30.0 to -28.0	1	0.10	1	0.10
-28.0 to -26.0	0	0.00	1	0.10
-26.0 to -24.0	1	0.10	2	0.19
-24.0 to -22.0	1	0.10	3	0.29
-22.0 to -20.0	2	0.19	5	0.48
-20.0 to -18.0	2	0.19	7	0.67
-18.0 to -16.0	3	0.29	10	0.96
-16.0 to -14.0	2	0.19	12	1.15
-14.0 to -12.0	6	0.57	18	1.72
-12.0 to -10.0	7	0.67	25	2.39
-10.0 to -8.0	23	2.20	48	4.60
-8.0 to -6.0	34	3.26	82	7.85
-6.0 to -4.0	59	5.65	141	13.51
-4.0 to -2.0	98	9.39	239	22.89
-2.0 to 0.0	157	15.04	396	37.93
0.0 to 2.0	220	21.07	616	59.00
2.0 to 4.0	173	16.57	789	75.57
4.0 to 6.0	137	13.12	926	88.70
6.0 to 8.0	63	6.03	989	94.73
8.0 to 10.0	25	2.39	1,014	97.13
10.0 to 12.0	15	1.44	1,029	98.56
12.0 to 14.0	6	0.57	1,035	99.14
14.0 to 16.0	2	0.19	1,037	99.33
16.0 to 18.0	3	0.29	1,040	99.62
18.0 to 20.0	0	0.00	1,040	99.62
20.0 to 22.0	0	0.00	1,040	99.62
22.0 to 24.0	0	0.00	1,040	99.62
24.0 to 26.0	1	0.10	1,041	99.71
26.0 to 28.0	0	0.00	1,041	99.71
28.0 to 30.0	0	0.00	1,041	99.71
30.0 to 32.0	0	0.00	1,041	99.71
32.0 to 34.0	0	0.00	1,041	99.71
34.0 to 36.0	0	0.00	1,041	99.71
36.0 to 38.0	0	0.00	1,041	99.71
38.0 to 40.0	2	0.19	1,043	99.90
40.0 to 42.0	0	0.00	1,043	99.90
42.0 to 44.0	1	0.10	1,044	100.00

Note: The lower class limit is the weak inequality (\leq) and the upper class limit is the strong inequality ($<$). The relative frequency is the absolute frequency or cumulative frequency divided by the total number of observations. Cumulative relative frequency totals reflect calculations using full precision, with results rounded to two decimal places.

(continued)

Table 4 (Continued)*Source:* Ibbotson Associates.

The advantage of a frequency distribution is evident in Table 4, which tells us that the vast majority of observations ($687/1,044 = 66$ percent) lie in the four intervals spanning -2 percent to $+6$ percent. Altogether, we have 396 negative returns and 648 positive returns. Almost 62 percent of the monthly outcomes are positive. Looking at the cumulative relative frequency in the last column, we see that the interval -2 percent to 0 percent shows a cumulative frequency of 37.93 percent, for an upper return limit of 0 percent. This means that 37.93 percent of the observations lie below the level of 0 percent. We can also see that not many observations are greater than $+12$ percent or less than -12 percent. Note that the frequency distributions of annual and monthly returns are not directly comparable. On average, we should expect the returns measured at shorter intervals (for example, months) to be smaller than returns measured over longer periods (for example, years).

Next, we construct a frequency distribution of average inflation-adjusted returns over 1900–2010 for 19 major equity markets.

EXAMPLE 2**Constructing a Frequency Distribution**

How have equities rewarded investors in different countries in the long run? To answer this question, we could examine the average annual returns directly.⁹ The worth of a nominal level of return depends on changes in the purchasing power of money, however, and internationally there have been a variety of experiences with price inflation. It is preferable, therefore, to compare the average real or inflation-adjusted returns earned by investors in different countries. Dimson, Marsh, and Staunton (2011) presented authoritative evidence on asset returns in 19 countries for the 111 years 1900–2010. Table 5 excerpts their findings for average inflation-adjusted returns.

Table 5 Real (Inflation-Adjusted) Equity Returns: Nineteen Major Equity Markets, 1900–2010

Country	Arithmetic Mean (%)
Australia	9.1
Belgium	5.1
Canada	7.3
Denmark	6.9
Finland	9.3
France	5.7
Germany	8.1
Ireland	6.4

⁹ The average or arithmetic mean of a set of values equals the sum of the values divided by the number of values summed. To find the arithmetic mean of 111 annual returns, for example, we sum the 111 annual returns and then divide the total by 111. Among the most familiar of statistical concepts, the arithmetic mean is explained in more detail later in the reading.

Table 5 (Continued)

Country	Arithmetic Mean (%)
Italy	6.1
Japan	8.5
Netherlands	7.1
New Zealand	7.6
Norway	7.2
South Africa	9.5
Spain	5.8
Sweden	8.7
Switzerland	6.1
United Kingdom	7.2
United States	8.3

Source: Dimson, Marsh, and Staunton (2011), Table 1.

Table 6 summarizes the data in Table 5 into five intervals spanning 5 percent to 10 percent. With nineteen markets, the relative frequency for the 5.0 to 6.0 percent return interval is calculated as $3/19 = 15.79$ percent, for example.

Table 6 Frequency Distribution of Average Real Equity Returns

Return Interval (%)	Absolute Frequency	Relative Frequency (%)	Cumulative Absolute Frequency	Cumulative Relative Frequency (%)
5.0 to 6.0	3	15.79	3	15.79
6.0 to 7.0	4	21.05	7	36.84
7.0 to 8.0	5	26.32	12	63.16
8.0 to 9.0	4	21.05	16	84.21
9.0 to 10	3	15.79	19	100.00

As Table 6 shows, there is substantial variation internationally of average real equity returns. More than a quarter of the observations fall in the 7.0 to 8.0 percent interval, which has a relative frequency of 26.32 percent. Either three or four observations fall in each of the other four intervals.

THE GRAPHIC PRESENTATION OF DATA

4

A graphical display of data allows us to visualize important characteristics quickly. For example, we may see that the distribution is symmetrically shaped, and this finding may influence which probability distribution we use to describe the data. In this section, we discuss the histogram, the frequency polygon, and the cumulative frequency

distribution as methods for displaying data graphically. We construct all of these graphic presentations with the information contained in the frequency distribution of the S&P 500 shown in either Table 3 or Table 4.

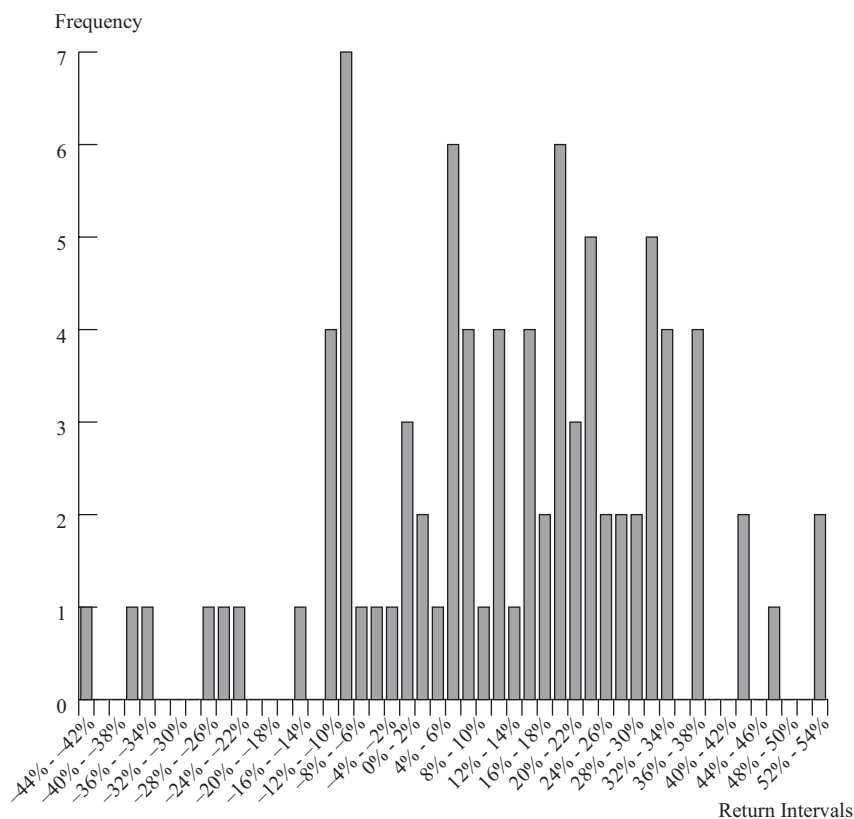
4.1 The Histogram

A histogram is the graphical equivalent of a frequency distribution.

- **Definition of Histogram.** A **histogram** is a bar chart of data that have been grouped into a frequency distribution.

The advantage of the visual display is that we can see quickly where most of the observations lie. To see how a histogram is constructed, look at the return interval $18\% \leq R_t < 20\%$ in Table 3. This interval has an absolute frequency of 6. Therefore, we erect a bar or rectangle with a height of 6 over that return interval on the horizontal axis. Continuing with this process for all other return intervals yields a histogram. Figure 1 presents the histogram of the annual total return series on the S&P 500 from 1926 to 2012.

Figure 1 Histogram of S&P 500 Annual Total Returns: 1926 to 2012



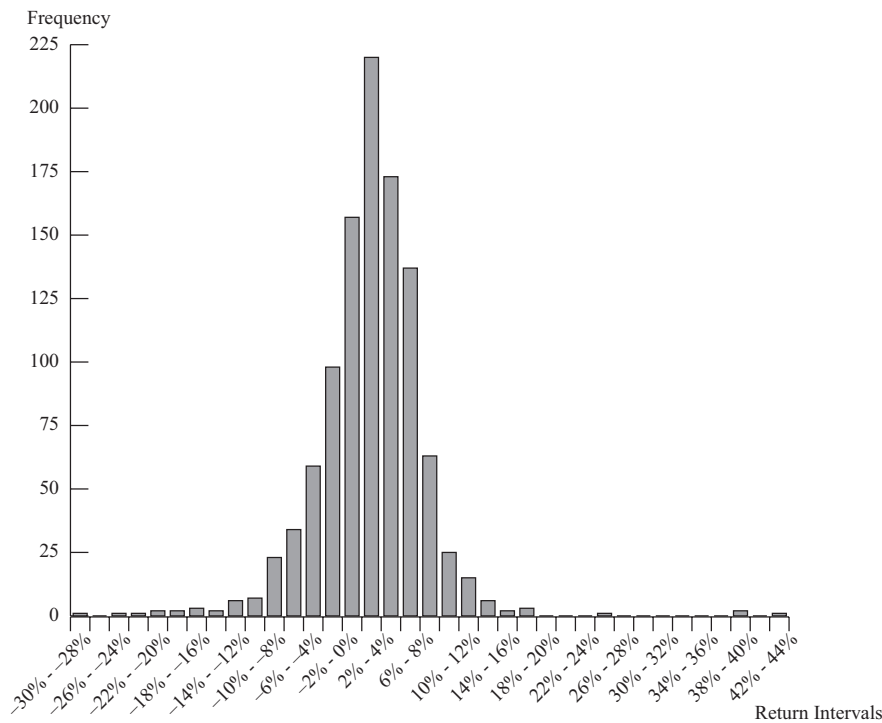
Note: Because of space limitations, only every other return interval is labeled below the horizontal axis.
Source: Ibbotson Associates

In the histogram in Figure 1, the height of each bar represents the absolute frequency for each return interval. The return interval $-10\% \leq R_t < -8\%$ has a frequency of 7 and is represented by the tallest bar in the histogram. Because there are no gaps

between the interval limits, there are no gaps between the bars of the histogram. Many of the return intervals have zero frequency; therefore, they have no height in the histogram.

Figure 2 presents the histogram for the distribution of monthly returns on the S&P 500. Somewhat more symmetrically shaped than the histogram of annual returns shown in Figure 1, this histogram also appears more bell-shaped than the distribution of annual returns.

Figure 2 Histogram of S&P 500 Monthly Total Returns: January 1926 to December 2012

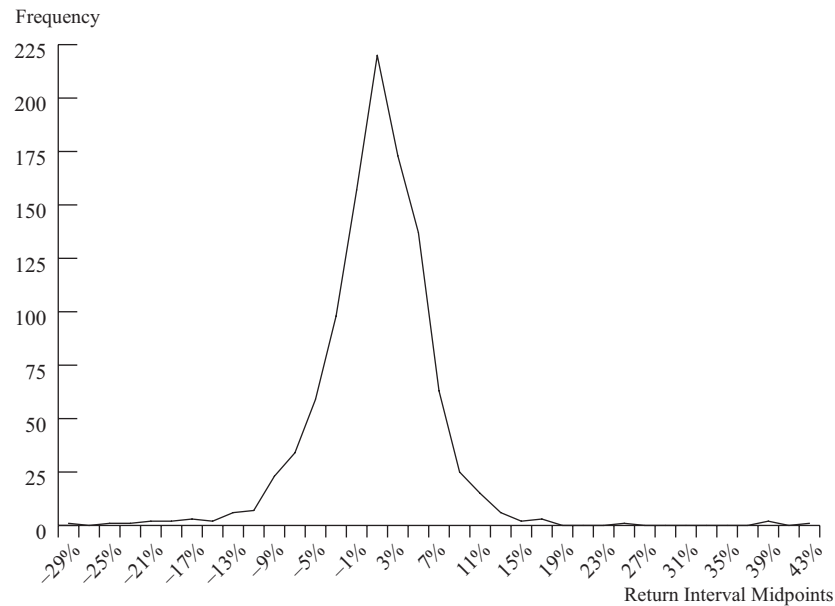


Source: Ibbotson Associates

4.2 The Frequency Polygon and the Cumulative Frequency Distribution

Two other graphical tools for displaying data are the frequency polygon and the cumulative frequency distribution. To construct a **frequency polygon**, we plot the midpoint of each interval on the *x*-axis and the absolute frequency for that interval on the *y*-axis; we then connect neighboring points with a straight line. Figure 3 shows the frequency polygon for the 1,044 monthly returns for the S&P 500 from January 1926 to December 2012.

Figure 3 Frequency Polygon of S&P 500 Monthly Total Returns: January 1926 to December 2012



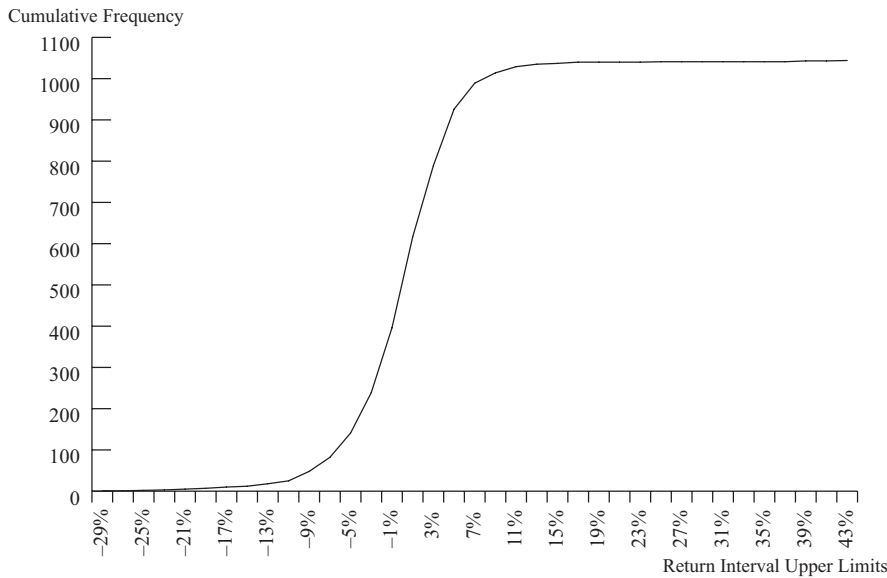
Source: Ibbotson Associates

In Figure 3, we have replaced the bars in the histogram with points connected with straight lines. For example, the return interval 0 percent to 2 percent has an absolute frequency of 220. In the frequency polygon, we plot the return-interval midpoint of 1 percent and a frequency of 220. We plot all other points in a similar way.¹⁰ This form of visual display adds a degree of continuity to the representation of the distribution.

Another form of line graph is the cumulative frequency distribution. Such a graph can plot either the cumulative absolute or cumulative relative frequency against the upper interval limit. The cumulative frequency distribution allows us to see how many or what percent of the observations lie below a certain value. To construct the cumulative frequency distribution, we graph the returns in the fourth or fifth column of Table 4 against the upper limit of each return interval. Figure 4 presents a graph of the cumulative absolute distribution for the monthly returns on the S&P 500. Notice that the cumulative distribution tends to flatten out when returns are extremely negative or extremely positive. The steep slope in the middle of Figure 4 reflects the fact that most of the observations lie in the neighborhood of -2 percent to 6 percent.

¹⁰ Even though the upper limit on the interval is not a return falling in the interval, we still average it with the lower limit to determine the midpoint.

Figure 4 Cumulative Absolute Frequency Distribution of S&P 500 Monthly Total Returns: January 1926 to December 2012



Source: Ibbotson Associates

We can further examine the relationship between the relative frequency and the cumulative relative frequency by looking at the two return intervals reproduced in Table 7. The first return interval (0 percent to 2 percent) has a cumulative relative frequency of 59 percent. The next return interval (2 percent to 4 percent) has a cumulative relative frequency of 75.57 percent. The change in the cumulative relative frequency as we move from one interval to the next is the next interval's relative frequency. For instance, as we go from the first return interval (0 percent to 2 percent) to the next return interval (2 percent to 4 percent), the change in the cumulative relative frequency is 75.57% – 59.00% = 16.57%. (Values in the table have been rounded to two decimal places.) The fact that the slope is steep indicates that these frequencies are large. As you can see in the graph of the cumulative distribution, the slope of the curve changes as we move from the first return interval to the last. A fairly small slope for the cumulative distribution for the first few return intervals tells us that these return intervals do not contain many observations. You can go back to the frequency distribution in Table 4 and verify that the cumulative absolute frequency is only 25 observations (the cumulative relative frequency is 2.39 percent) up to the 10th return interval (–12 percent to –10 percent). In essence, the slope of the cumulative absolute distribution at any particular interval is proportional to the number of observations in that interval.

Table 7 Selected Class Frequencies for the S&P 500 Monthly Returns

Return Interval (%)	Absolute Frequency	Relative Frequency (%)	Cumulative Absolute Frequency	Cumulative Relative Frequency (%)
0.0 to 2.0	220	21.07	616	59.00
2.0 to 4.0	173	16.57	789	75.57

5

MEASURES OF CENTRAL TENDENCY

So far, we have discussed methods we can use to organize and present data so that they are more understandable. The frequency distribution of an asset class's return series, for example, reveals the nature of the risks that investors may encounter in a particular asset class. As an illustration, the histogram for the annual returns on the S&P 500 clearly shows that large positive and negative annual returns are common. Although frequency distributions and histograms provide a convenient way to summarize a series of observations, these methods are just a first step toward describing the data. In this section we discuss the use of quantitative measures that explain characteristics of data. Our focus is on measures of central tendency and other measures of location or location parameters. A **measure of central tendency** specifies where the data are centered. Measures of central tendency are probably more widely used than any other statistical measure because they can be computed and applied easily. **Measures of location** include not only measures of central tendency but other measures that illustrate the location or distribution of data.

In the following subsections we explain the common measures of central tendency—the arithmetic mean, the median, the mode, the weighted mean, and the geometric mean. We also explain other useful measures of location, including quartiles, quintiles, deciles, and percentiles.

5.1 The Arithmetic Mean

Analysts and portfolio managers often want one number that describes a representative possible outcome of an investment decision. The arithmetic mean is by far the most frequently used measure of the middle or center of data.

- **Definition of Arithmetic Mean.** The **arithmetic mean** is the sum of the observations divided by the number of observations.

We can compute the arithmetic mean for both populations and samples, known as the population mean and the sample mean, respectively.

5.1.1 The Population Mean

The population mean is the arithmetic mean computed for a population. If we can define a population adequately, then we can calculate the population mean as the arithmetic mean of all the observations or values in the population. For example, analysts examining the fiscal 2013 year-over-year growth in same-store sales of major US wholesale clubs might define the population of interest to include only three companies: BJ's Wholesale Club (a private company since 2011), Costco Wholesale Corporation, and Sam's Club, part of Wal-Mart Stores.¹¹ As another example, if a

¹¹ A wholesale club implements a store format dedicated mostly to bulk sales in warehouse-sized stores to customers who pay membership dues. As of the early 2010s, those three wholesale clubs dominated the segment in the United States.

portfolio manager's investment universe (the set of securities he or she must choose from) is the Nikkei 225 Index, the relevant population is the 225 shares on the First Section of the Tokyo Stock Exchange that compose the Nikkei.

- **Population Mean Formula.** The **population mean**, μ , is the arithmetic mean value of a population. For a finite population, the population mean is

$$\mu = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^N X_i}{N} \quad (2)$$

where N is the number of observations in the entire population and X_i is the i th observation.

The population mean is an example of a parameter. The population mean is unique; that is, a given population has only one mean. To illustrate the calculation, we can take the case of the population mean of profit as a percentage of revenue of US companies running major wholesale clubs for 2012. During the year, profit as a percentage of revenue for BJ's Wholesale club, Costco Wholesale Corporation, and Wal-Mart Stores was 0.9 percent, 1.6 percent, and 3.5 percent, respectively, according to the Fortune 500 list for 2012. Thus the population mean profit as a percentage of revenue was $\mu = (0.9 + 1.6 + 3.5)/3 = 6/3 = 2$ percent.

5.1.2 The Sample Mean

The sample mean is the arithmetic mean computed for a sample. Many times we cannot observe every member of a set; instead, we observe a subset or sample of the population. The concept of the mean can be applied to the observations in a sample with a slight change in notation.

- **Sample Mean Formula.** The **sample mean** or average, \bar{X} (read "X-bar"), is the arithmetic mean value of a sample:

$$\bar{X} = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^n X_i}{n} \quad (3)$$

where n is the number of observations in the sample.

Equation 3 tells us to sum the values of the observations (X_i) and divide the sum by the number of observations. For example, if a sample of price-to-earnings (P/E) multiples for six publicly traded companies contains the values 35, 30, 22, 18, 15, and 12, the sample mean P/E is $132/6 = 22$. The sample mean is also called the arithmetic average.¹² As we discussed earlier, the sample mean is a statistic (that is, a descriptive measure of a sample).

Means can be computed for individual units or over time. For instance, the sample might be the 2013 return on equity (ROE) for the 100 companies in the FTSE Eurotop 100, an index of Europe's 100 largest companies. In this case, we calculate mean ROE in 2013 as an average across 100 individual units. When we examine the characteristics of some units at a specific point in time (such as ROE for the FTSE Eurotop 100), we are examining **cross-sectional data**. The mean of these observations is called a cross-sectional mean. On the other hand, if our sample consists of the historical monthly returns on the FTSE Eurotop 100 for the past five years, then we have **time-series**

¹² Statisticians prefer the term "mean" to "average." Some writers refer to all measures of central tendency (including the median and mode) as averages. The term "mean" avoids any possibility of confusion.

data. The mean of these observations is called a time-series mean. We will examine specialized statistical methods related to the behavior of time series in the reading on times-series analysis.

Next, we show an example of finding the sample mean return for 16 European equity markets for 2012. In this case, the mean is cross-sectional because we are averaging individual country returns.

EXAMPLE 3

Calculating a Cross-Sectional Mean

The MSCI EAFE (Europe, Australasia, and Far East) Index is a free float-adjusted market capitalization index designed to measure developed-market equity performance excluding the United States and Canada.¹³ As of September 2013, the EAFE consisted of 22 developed market indexes, including indexes for 16 European markets, 2 Australasian markets (Australia and New Zealand), 3 Far Eastern markets (Hong Kong, Japan, and Singapore), and Israel.

Suppose we are interested in the local currency performance of the 16 European markets in the EAFE in 2012. We want to find the sample mean total return for 2012 across these 16 markets. The return series reported in Table 8 are in local currency. Because this return is not stated in any single investor's home currency, it is not a return any single investor would earn. Rather, it is an average of returns in local currencies of the 16 markets.

Table 8 Total Returns for European Equity Markets, 2012

Market	Total Return in Local Currency (%)
Austria	20.72
Belgium	33.99
Denmark	28.09
Finland	8.27
France	15.90
Germany	25.24
Greece	-2.35
Ireland	2.24
Italy	6.93
Netherlands	15.36
Norway	6.05
Portugal	-2.22
Spain	-4.76
Sweden	12.66
Switzerland	14.83
United Kingdom	5.93

Source: www.msci.com.

¹³ The term “free float adjusted” means that the weights of companies in the index reflect the value of the shares actually available for investment.

Using the data in Table 8, calculate the sample mean return for the 16 equity markets in 2012.

Solution:

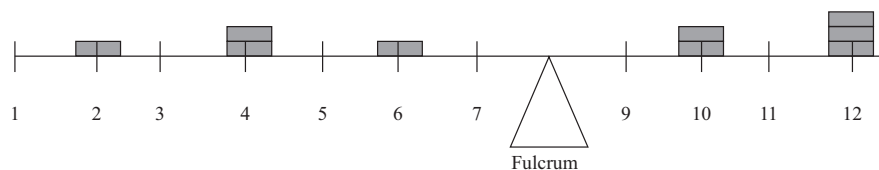
The calculation applies Equation 3 to the returns in Table 8: $(20.72 + 33.99 + 28.09 + 8.27 + 15.90 + 25.24 - 2.35 + 2.24 + 6.93 + 15.36 + 6.05 - 2.22 - 4.76 + 12.66 + 14.83 + 5.93)/16 = 186.88/16 = 11.68$ percent.

In Example 3, we can verify that eight markets had returns less than the mean and eight had returns that were greater. We should not expect any of the actual observations to equal the mean, because sample means provide only a summary of the data being analyzed. Also, although in this example the number of values below the mean is equal to the number of values above the mean, that need not be the case. As an analyst, you will often need to find a few numbers that describe the characteristics of the distribution. The mean is generally the statistic that you will use as a measure of the typical outcome for a distribution. You can then use the mean to compare the performance of two different markets. For example, you might be interested in comparing the stock market performance of investments in Pacific Rim countries with investments in European countries. You can use the mean returns in these markets to compare investment results.

5.1.3 Properties of the Arithmetic Mean

The arithmetic mean can be likened to the center of gravity of an object. Figure 5 expresses this analogy graphically by plotting nine hypothetical observations on a bar. The nine observations are 2, 4, 4, 6, 10, 10, 12, 12, and 12; the arithmetic mean is $72/9 = 8$. The observations are plotted on the bar with various heights based on their frequency (that is, 2 is one unit high, 4 is two units high, and so on). When the bar is placed on a fulcrum, it balances only when the fulcrum is located at the point on the scale that corresponds to the arithmetic mean.

Figure 5 Center of Gravity Analogy for the Arithmetic Mean



When the fulcrum is placed at 8, the bar is perfectly balanced.

As analysts, we often use the mean return as a measure of the typical outcome for an asset. As in the example above, however, some outcomes are above the mean and some are below it. We can calculate the distance between the mean and each outcome and call it a deviation. Mathematically, it is always true that the sum of the deviations around the mean equals 0. We can see this by using the definition of the arithmetic

mean shown in Equation 3, multiplying both sides of the equation by n : $n\bar{X} = \sum_{i=1}^n X_i$.

The sum of the deviations from the mean can thus be calculated as follows:

$$\sum_{i=1}^n (X_i - \bar{X}) = \sum_{i=1}^n X_i - \sum_{i=1}^n \bar{X} = \sum_{i=1}^n X_i - n\bar{X} = 0$$

Deviations from the arithmetic mean are important information because they indicate risk. The concept of deviations around the mean forms the foundation for the more complex concepts of variance, skewness, and kurtosis, which we will discuss later in this reading.

An advantage of the arithmetic mean over two other measures of central tendency, the median and mode, is that the mean uses all the information about the size and magnitude of the observations. The mean is also easy to work with mathematically.

A property and potential drawback of the arithmetic mean is its sensitivity to extreme values. Because all observations are used to compute the mean, the arithmetic mean can be pulled sharply upward or downward by extremely large or small observations, respectively. For example, suppose we compute the arithmetic mean of the following seven numbers: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, and 1,000. The mean is $1,021/7 = 145.86$ or approximately 146. Because the magnitude of the mean, 146, is so much larger than that of the bulk of the observations (the first six), we might question how well it represents the location of the data. In practice, although an extreme value or outlier in a financial dataset may only represent a rare value in the population, it may also reflect an error in recording the value of an observation, or an observation generated from a different population from that producing the other observations in the sample. In the latter two cases in particular, the arithmetic mean could be misleading. Perhaps the most common approach in such cases is to report the median in place of or in addition to the mean.¹⁴ We discuss the median next.

5.2 The Median

A second important measure of central tendency is the median.

- **Definition of Median.** The **median** is the value of the middle item of a set of items that has been sorted into ascending or descending order. In an odd-numbered sample of n items, the median occupies the $(n + 1)/2$ position. In an even-numbered sample, we define the median as the mean of the values of items occupying the $n/2$ and $(n + 2)/2$ positions (the two middle items).¹⁵

Earlier we gave the profit as a percentage of revenue of three wholesale clubs as 0.9, 1.6, and 3.5. With an odd number of observations ($n = 3$), the median occupies the $(n + 1)/2 = 4/2 = 2$ nd position. The median was 1.6 percent. The value of 1.6 percent is the “middlemost” observation: One lies above it, and one lies below it. Whether we use the calculation for an even- or odd-numbered sample, an equal number of observations lie above and below the median. A distribution has only one median.

A potential advantage of the median is that, unlike the mean, extreme values do not affect it. The median, however, does not use all the information about the size and magnitude of the observations; it focuses only on the relative position of the ranked observations. Calculating the median is also more complex; to do so, we need to order

¹⁴ Other approaches to handling extreme values involve variations of the arithmetic mean. The **trimmed mean** is computed by excluding a stated small percentage of the lowest and highest values and then computing an arithmetic mean of the remaining values. For example, a 5 percent trimmed mean discards the lowest 2.5 percent and the largest 2.5 percent of values and computes the mean of the remaining 95 percent of values. A trimmed mean is used in sports competitions when judges' lowest and highest scores are discarded in computing a contestant's score. A **Winsorized mean** assigns a stated percent of the lowest values equal to one specified low value, and a stated percent of the highest values equal to one specified high value, then computes a mean from the restated data. For example, a 95 percent Winsorized mean sets the bottom 2.5 percent of values equal to the 2.5th percentile value and the upper 2.5 percent of values equal to the 97.5th percentile value. (Percentile values are defined later.)

¹⁵ The notation M_d is occasionally used for the median. Just as for the mean, we may distinguish between a population median and a sample median. With the understanding that a population median divides a population in half while a sample median divides a sample in half, we follow general usage in using the term “median” without qualification, for the sake of brevity.

the observations from smallest to largest, determine whether the sample size is even or odd and, on that basis, apply one of two calculations. Mathematicians express this disadvantage by saying that the median is less mathematically tractable than the mean.

To demonstrate finding the median, we use the data from Example 3, reproduced in Table 9 in ascending order of the 2012 total return for European equities. Because this sample has 16 observations, the median is the mean of the values in the sorted array that occupy the $16/2 = 8$ th and $18/2 = 9$ th positions. Finland's return occupies the eighth position with a return of 8.27 percent, and Sweden's return occupies the ninth position with a return of 12.66 percent. The median, as the mean of these two returns, is $(8.27 + 12.66)/2 = 10.465$ percent. Note that the median is not influenced by extremely large or small outcomes. Had Spain's total return been a much lower value or Belgium's total return a much larger value, the median would not have changed. Using a context that arises often in practice, Example 4 shows how to use the mean and median in a sample with extreme values.

**Table 9 Total Returns for European Equity Markets, 2012
(in Ascending Order)**

No.	Market	Total Return in Local Currency (%)
1	Spain	-4.76
2	Greece	-2.35
3	Portugal	-2.22
4	Ireland	2.24
5	United Kingdom	5.93
6	Norway	6.05
7	Italy	6.93
8	Finland	8.27
9	Sweden	12.66
10	Switzerland	14.83
11	Netherlands	15.36
12	France	15.90
13	Austria	20.72
14	Germany	25.24
15	Denmark	28.09
16	Belgium	33.99

Source: www.msci.com.

EXAMPLE 4

Median and Arithmetic Mean: The Case of the Price–Earnings Ratio

Suppose a client asks you for a valuation analysis on the seven-stock US common stock portfolio given in Table 10. The stocks are equally weighted in the portfolio. One valuation measure that you use is P/E, the ratio of share price to earnings per share (EPS). Many variations exist for the denominator in the P/E, but you are examining P/E defined as current price divided by the current mean of all

analysts' EPS estimates for the company for the fiscal year 2013 ("Consensus Current EPS" in the table).¹⁶ The values in Table 10 are as of 9 September 2013. For comparison purposes, the average current P/E on the companies in the S&P 500 index was 18.80 at that time

Table 10 P/Es for a Client Portfolio

Stock	Consensus Current EPS	Consensus Current P/E
Caterpillar, Inc.	6.34	13.15
Ford Motor Company	1.55	10.97
General Dynamics	6.96	12.15
Green Mountain Coffee Roasters	3.25	25.27
McDonald's Corporation	5.61	17.16
Qlik Technologies	0.17	204.82
Questcor Pharmaceuticals	4.79	13.94

Note: Consensus current P/E was calculated as price as of 9 September 2013 divided by consensus EPS as of the same date.

Source: www.nasdaq.com.

Using the data in Table 10, address the following:

- 1 Calculate the arithmetic mean P/E.
- 2 Calculate the median P/E.
- 3 Evaluate the mean and median P/Es as measures of central tendency for the above portfolio.

Solution to 1:

The mean P/E is $(13.15 + 10.97 + 12.15 + 25.27 + 17.16 + 204.82 + 13.94)/7 = 297.46/7 = 42.49$.

Solution to 2:

The P/Es listed in ascending order are:

10.97 12.15 13.15 13.94 17.16 25.27 204.82

The sample has an odd number of observations with $n = 7$, so the median occupies the $(n + 1)/2 = 8/2 = 4$ th position in the sorted list. Therefore, the median P/E is 13.94.

Solution to 3:

Qlik Technologies' P/E of approximately 205 tremendously influences the value of the portfolio's arithmetic mean P/E. The mean P/E of about 42 is much larger than the P/E of six of the seven stocks in the portfolio. The mean P/E also misleadingly suggests an orientation to stocks with high P/Es. The mean P/E of the stocks excluding Qlik Technologies, or excluding the largest- and smallest-P/E stocks (Qlik Technologies and Ford Motor Company), is below the average P/E of 18.80 for the companies in the S&P 500 Index. The median P/E of 13.94 appears to better represent the central tendency of the P/Es.

¹⁶ For more information on price multiples, see the Level I CFA Program curriculum reading "Equity Valuation: Concepts and Basic Tools."

It frequently happens that when a company's EPS is quite low—at a low point in the business cycle, for example—its P/E is extremely high. The high P/E in those circumstances reflects an anticipated future recovery of earnings. Extreme P/E values need to be investigated and handled with care. For reasons related to this example, analysts often use the median of price multiples to characterize the valuation of industry groups.

5.3 The Mode

The third important measure of central tendency is the mode.

- **Definition of Mode.** The **mode** is the most frequently occurring value in a distribution.¹⁷

A distribution can have more than one mode, or even no mode. When a distribution has one most frequently occurring value, the distribution is said to be unimodal. If a distribution has two most frequently occurring values, then it has two modes and we say it is bimodal. If the distribution has three most frequently occurring values, then it is trimodal. When all the values in a data set are different, the distribution has no mode because no value occurs more frequently than any other value.

Stock return data and other data from continuous distributions may not have a modal outcome. When such data are grouped into intervals, however, we often find an interval (possibly more than one) with the highest frequency: the **modal interval** (or intervals). For example, the frequency distribution for the monthly returns on the S&P 500 has a modal interval of 0 percent to 2 percent, as shown in Figure 2; this return interval has 220 observations out of a total of 1,044. The modal interval always has the highest bar in the histogram.

The mode is the only measure of central tendency that can be used with nominal data. When we categorize mutual funds into different styles and assign a number to each style, the mode of these categorized data is the most frequent mutual fund style.

5.4 Other Concepts of Mean

Earlier we explained the arithmetic mean, which is a fundamental concept for describing the central tendency of data. Other concepts of mean are very important in investments, however. In the following, we discuss such concepts.

EXAMPLE 5

Calculating a Mode

Table 11 gives the credit ratings on senior unsecured debt as of September 2002 of nine US department stores rated by Moody's Investors Service. In descending order of credit quality (increasing expected probability of default), Moody's ratings are Aaa, Aa1, Aa2, Aa3, A1, A2, A3, Baa1, Baa2, Baa3, Ba1, Ba2, Ba3, B1, B2, B3, Caa1, Caa2, Caa3, Ca, and C.¹⁸

¹⁷ The notation M_o is occasionally used for the mode. Just as for the mean and the median, we may distinguish between a population mode and a sample mode. With the understanding that a population mode is the value with the greatest probability of occurrence, while a sample mode is the most frequently occurring value in the sample, we follow general usage in using the term "mode" without qualification, for the sake of brevity.

¹⁸ For more information on credit risk and credit ratings, see Petitt, Pinto, and Pirie (2015).

Table 11 Senior Unsecured Debt Ratings: US Department Stores, September 2013

Company	Credit Rating
Bon-Ton Stores Inc.	B3
Dillard's, Inc.	Ba2
Kohl's Corporation	Baa1
Macy's, Inc.	Baa3
Neiman Marcus Group, Inc.	B2
Nordstrom, Inc.	Baa1
Penney, JC, Company, Inc.	Caa1
Saks Incorporated	Ba2
Sears, Roebuck and Co.	B3

Source: www.moodys.com.

Using the data in Table 11, address the following concerning the senior unsecured debt of US department stores:

- 1 State the modal credit rating.
- 2 State the median credit rating.

Solution to 1:

The group of companies represents six distinct credit ratings, ranging from Baa1 to Caa1. To make our task easy, we first organize the ratings into a frequency distribution.

Table 12 Senior Unsecured Debt Ratings: US Department Stores, Distribution of Credit Ratings

Credit Rating	Frequency
Baa1	2
Baa3	1
Ba2	2
B2	1
B3	2
Caa1	1

Credit ratings Baa1, Ba2, and B3 have a frequency of 2, and the other three ratings have a frequency of 1. Therefore, the credit rating of US department stores in September 2013 was trimodal, with Baa1, Ba2, and B3 being the three modes. Moody's considers bonds rated Baa to be of moderate credit risk, Ba to be of substantial credit risk, and B to be of high credit risk.

Solution to 2:

For the group $n = 9$, an odd number. The group's median occupies the $(n + 1)/2 = 10/2 = 5$ th position. We see from Table 12 that Ba2 occupies the fifth position. Therefore the median credit rating at September 2013 was Ba2.

5.4.1 The Weighted Mean

The concept of weighted mean arises repeatedly in portfolio analysis. In the arithmetic mean, all observations are equally weighted by the factor $1/n$ (or $1/N$). In working with portfolios, we need the more general concept of weighted mean to allow different weights on different observations.

To illustrate the weighted mean concept, an investment manager with \$100 million to invest might allocate \$70 million to equities and \$30 million to bonds. The portfolio has a weight of 0.70 on stocks and 0.30 on bonds. How do we calculate the return on this portfolio? The portfolio's return clearly involves an averaging of the returns on the stock and bond investments. The mean that we compute, however, must reflect the fact that stocks have a 70 percent weight in the portfolio and bonds have a 30 percent weight. The way to reflect this weighting is to multiply the return on the stock investment by 0.70 and the return on the bond investment by 0.30, then sum the two results. This sum is an example of a weighted mean. It would be incorrect to take an arithmetic mean of the return on the stock and bond investments, equally weighting the returns on the two asset classes.

Consider a portfolio invested in Canadian stocks and bonds. The stock component of the portfolio includes the RBC Canadian Index Fund, which tracks the performance of the S&P/TSX Composite Total Return Index. The bond component of the portfolio includes the RBC Bond Fund, which invests in high-quality fixed-income securities issued by Canadian governments and corporations. The portfolio manager allocates 60 percent of the portfolio to the Canadian stock fund and 40 percent to the Canadian bond fund. Table 13 presents total returns for these funds from 2008 to 2012.

Table 13 Returns for Canadian Equity and Bond Funds, 2008–2012

Year	Equity Fund (%)	Bond Fund (%)
2008	-33.1	-0.1
2009	34.1	11.0
2010	16.8	6.4
2011	-9.2	8.4
2012	6.4	3.8

Source: funds.rbcgam.com.

- **Weighted Mean Formula.** The **weighted mean** \bar{X}_w (read “X-bar sub-w”), for a set of observations X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n with corresponding weights of w_1, w_2, \dots, w_n is computed as

$$\bar{X}_w = \sum_{i=1}^n w_i X_i \quad (4)$$

where the sum of the weights equals 1; that is, $\sum_i w_i = 1$.

In the context of portfolios, a positive weight represents an asset held long and a negative weight represents an asset held short.¹⁹

The return on the portfolio under consideration is the weighted average of the return on the Canadian stock fund and the Canadian bond fund (the weight of the stock fund is 0.60; that of the bond fund is 0.40). We find, using Equation 4, that

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Portfolio return for 2008} &= w_{\text{stock}}R_{\text{stock}} + w_{\text{bonds}}R_{\text{bonds}} \\ &= 0.60(-33.1) + 0.40(-0.1) \\ &= -19.9\%\end{aligned}$$

It should be clear that the correct mean to compute in this example is the weighted mean and not the arithmetic mean. If we had computed the arithmetic mean for 2008, we would have calculated a return equal to $\frac{1}{2}(-33.1\%) + \frac{1}{2}(-0.1\%) = (-33.1\% - 0.1\%)/2 = -16.6\%$. Given that the portfolio manager invested 60 percent in stocks and 40 percent in bonds, the arithmetic mean would underweight the investment in stocks and overweight the investment in bonds, resulting in a number for portfolio return that is too high by 3.3 percentage points ($-16.6\% - (-19.9\%) = -16.6\% + 19.9\%$).

Now suppose that the portfolio manager maintains constant weights of 60 percent in stocks and 40 percent in bonds for all five years. This method is called a constant-proportions strategy. Because value is price multiplied by quantity, price fluctuation causes portfolio weights to change. As a result, the constant-proportions strategy requires rebalancing to restore the weights in stocks and bonds to their target levels. Assuming that the portfolio manager is able to accomplish the necessary rebalancing, we can compute the portfolio returns in 2009, 2010, 2011, and 2012 with Equation 4 as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Portfolio return for 2009} &= 0.60(34.1) + 0.40(11.0) = 24.9\% \\ \text{Portfolio return for 2010} &= 0.60(16.8) + 0.40(6.4) = 12.6\% \\ \text{Portfolio return for 2011} &= 0.60(-9.2) + 0.40(8.4) = -2.2\% \\ \text{Portfolio return for 2012} &= 0.60(6.4) + 0.40(3.8) = 5.4\%\end{aligned}$$

We can now find the time-series mean of the returns for 2008 through 2012 using Equation 3 for the arithmetic mean. The time-series mean total return for the portfolio is $(-19.9 + 24.9 + 12.6 - 2.2 + 5.4)/5 = 20.8/5 = 4.2$ percent.

Instead of calculating the portfolio time-series mean return from portfolio annual returns, we can calculate the arithmetic mean stock and bond fund returns for the five years and then apply the portfolio weights of 0.60 and 0.40, respectively, to those values. The mean stock fund return is $(-33.1 + 34.1 + 16.8 - 9.2 + 6.4)/5 = 15.0/5 = 3.0$ percent. The mean bond fund return is $(-0.1 + 11.0 + 6.4 + 8.4 + 3.8)/5 = 29.5/5 = 5.9$ percent. Therefore, the mean total return for the portfolio is $0.60(3.0) + 0.40(5.9) = 4.2$ percent, which agrees with our previous calculation.

¹⁹ The formula for the weighted mean can be compared to the formula for the arithmetic mean. For a set of observations X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n , let the weights w_1, w_2, \dots, w_n all equal $1/n$. Under this assumption, the formula for the weighted mean is $(1/n)\sum_{i=1}^n X_i$. This is the formula for the arithmetic mean. Therefore, the arithmetic mean is a special case of the weighted mean in which all the weights are equal.

EXAMPLE 6**Portfolio Return as a Weighted Mean**

Table 14 gives information on the asset allocation of the pension plan of the Canadian Broadcasting Corporation in 2012 as well as the returns on these asset classes in 2012.²⁰

Table 14 Asset Allocation for the Pension Plan of the Canadian Broadcasting Corporation in 2012

Asset Class	Asset Allocation (Weight)	Asset Class Return (%)
Cash and short-term investments	3.8	1.3
Nominal bonds	33.7	6.6
Real return bonds	14.8	2.9
Canadian equities	10.4	8.8
Global equities	21.4	13.3
Strategic investments	15.8	9.5
Bond overlay	0.1	0.8

Source: Canadian Broadcasting Corporation Pension Plan, 2012 Annual Report

Using the information in Table 14, calculate the mean return earned by the pension plan in 2012.

Solution:

Converting the percent asset allocation to decimal form, we find the mean return as a weighted average of the asset class returns. We have

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{Mean portfolio return} &= 0.038(1.3\%) + 0.337(6.6\%) + 0.148(2.9\%) \\
 &\quad + 0.104(8.8\%) + 0.214(13.3\%) + 0.158(9.5\%) \\
 &\quad + 0.001(0.8\%) \\
 &= 0.049\% + 2.224\% + 0.429\% + 0.915\% + 2.846\% \\
 &\quad + 1.501\% + 0.001\% \\
 &= 8.0 \text{ percent}
 \end{aligned}$$

The previous examples illustrate the general principle that a portfolio return is a weighted sum. Specifically, a portfolio's return is the weighted average of the returns on the assets in the portfolio; the weight applied to each asset's return is the fraction of the portfolio invested in that asset.

Market indexes are computed as weighted averages. For market-capitalization indexes such as the CAC-40 in France or the TOPIX in Japan or the S&P 500 in the United States, each included stock receives a weight corresponding to its outstanding market value divided by the total market value of all stocks in the index.

²⁰ In Table 14, strategic investments include investments in property, private investments, and hedge fund investments. Bond overlay consists of derivatives used to hedge interest rate and inflation changes.

Our illustrations of weighted mean use past data, but they might just as well use forward-looking data. When we take a weighted average of forward-looking data, the weighted mean is called **expected value**. Suppose we make one forecast for the year-end level of the S&P 500 assuming economic expansion and another forecast for the year-end level of the S&P 500 assuming economic contraction. If we multiply the first forecast by the probability of expansion and the second forecast by the probability of contraction and then add these weighted forecasts, we are calculating the expected value of the S&P 500 at year-end. If we take a weighted average of possible future returns on the S&P 500, we are computing the S&P 500's expected return. The probabilities must sum to 1, satisfying the condition on the weights in the expression for weighted mean, Equation 4.

5.4.2 The Geometric Mean

The geometric mean is most frequently used to average rates of change over time or to compute the growth rate of a variable. In investments, we frequently use the geometric mean to average a time series of rates of return on an asset or a portfolio, or to compute the growth rate of a financial variable such as earnings or sales. In the reading on the time value of money, for instance, we computed a sales growth rate (Example 17). That growth rate was a geometric mean. Because of the subject's importance, in a later section we will return to the use of the geometric mean and offer practical perspectives on its use. The geometric mean is defined by the following formula.

- **Geometric Mean Formula.** The **geometric mean**, G , of a set of observations X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n is

$$G = \sqrt[n]{X_1 X_2 X_3 \dots X_n} \quad (5)$$

with $X_i \geq 0$ for $i = 1, 2, \dots, n$.

Equation 5 has a solution, and the geometric mean exists, only if the product under the radical sign is non-negative. We impose the restriction that all the observations X_i in Equation 5 are greater than or equal to zero. We can solve for the geometric mean using Equation 5 directly with any calculator that has an exponentiation key (on most calculators, y^x). We can also solve for the geometric mean using natural logarithms. Equation 5 can also be stated as

$$\ln G = \frac{1}{n} \ln(X_1 X_2 X_3 \dots X_n)$$

or as

$$\ln G = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^n \ln X_i}{n}$$

When we have computed $\ln G$, then $G = e^{\ln G}$ (on most calculators, the key for this step is e^x).

Risky assets can have negative returns up to -100 percent (if their price falls to zero), so we must take some care in defining the relevant variables to average in computing a geometric mean. We cannot just use the product of the returns for the sample and then take the n th root because the returns for any period could be negative. We must redefine the returns to make them positive. We do this by adding 1.0 to the returns expressed as decimals. The term $(1 + R_t)$ represents the year-ending value relative to an initial unit of investment at the beginning of the year. As long as we use $(1 + R_t)$, the observations will never be negative because the biggest negative return is -100 percent. The result is the geometric mean of $1 + R_t$ by then subtracting 1.0 from this result, we obtain the geometric mean of the individual returns R_t . For example, the returns

on RBC Canadian Index Fund during the 2008–2012 period were given in Table 13 as $-0.331, 0.341, 0.168, -0.092,$ and 0.064 , putting the returns into decimal form. Adding 1.0 to those returns produces $0.669, 1.341, 1.168, 0.908,$ and 1.064 . Using Equation 5 we have $\sqrt[5]{(0.669)(1.341)(1.168)(0.908)(1.064)} = \sqrt[5]{1.012337} = 1.002455$.

This number is 1 plus the geometric mean rate of return. Subtracting 1.0 from this result, we have $1.002455 - 1.0 = 0.002455$ or approximately 0.25 percent. The geometric mean return of RBC Canadian Index Fund during the 2008–2012 period was 0.25 percent.

An equation that summarizes the calculation of the geometric mean return, R_G , is a slightly modified version of Equation 5 in which the X_i represent “1 + return in decimal form.” Because geometric mean returns use time series, we use a subscript t indexing time as well.

$$1 + R_G = \sqrt[T]{(1 + R_1)(1 + R_2)\dots(1 + R_T)}$$

$$1 + R_G = \left[\prod_{t=1}^T (1 + R_t) \right]^{\frac{1}{T}}$$

which leads to the following formula.

- **Geometric Mean Return Formula.** Given a time series of holding period returns $R_t, t = 1, 2, \dots, T$, the geometric mean return over the time period spanned by the returns R_1 through R_T is

$$R_G = \left[\prod_{t=1}^T (1 + R_t) \right]^{\frac{1}{T}} - 1 \quad (6)$$

We can use Equation 6 to solve for the geometric mean return for any return data series. Geometric mean returns are also referred to as compound returns. If the returns being averaged in Equation 6 have a monthly frequency, for example, we may call the geometric mean monthly return the compound monthly return. The next example illustrates the computation of the geometric mean while contrasting the geometric and arithmetic means.

EXAMPLE 7

Geometric and Arithmetic Mean Returns (1)

As a mutual fund analyst, you are examining, as of early 2013, the most recent five years of total returns for two US large-cap value equity mutual funds.

Table 15 Total Returns for Two Mutual Funds, 2008–2012

Year	Selected American Shares (SLASX)	T. Rowe Price Equity Income (PRFDX)
2008	-39.44%	-35.75%
2009	31.64	25.62
2010	12.53	15.15
2011	-4.35	-0.72
2012	12.82	17.25

Source: performance.morningstar.com.

Based on the data in Table 15, address the following:

- 1 Calculate the geometric mean return of SLASX.
- 2 Calculate the arithmetic mean return of SLASX and contrast it to the fund's geometric mean return.
- 3 Calculate the geometric mean return of PRFDX.
- 4 Calculate the arithmetic mean return of PRFDX and contrast it to the fund's geometric mean return.

Solution to 1:

Converting the returns on SLASX to decimal form and adding 1.0 to each return produces 0.6056, 1.3164, 1.1253, 0.9565, and 1.1282. We use Equation 6 to find SLASX's geometric mean return:

$$\begin{aligned} R_G &= \sqrt[5]{(0.6056)(1.3164)(1.1253)(0.9565)(1.1282)} - 1 \\ &= \sqrt[5]{0.968084} - 1 = 0.993534 - 1 = -0.006466 \\ &= \mathbf{-0.65\%} \end{aligned}$$

Solution to 2:

For SLASX, $\bar{R} = (-39.44 + 31.64 + 12.53 - 4.35 + 12.82) / 5 = 13.20 / 5 = 2.64\%$. The arithmetic mean return for SLASX exceeds the geometric mean return by $2.64 - (-0.65) = 3.29\%$ or 329 basis points.

Solution to 3:

Converting the returns on PRFDX to decimal form and adding 1.0 to each return produces 0.6425, 1.2562, 1.1515, 0.9928, and 1.1725. We use Equation 6 to find PRFDX's geometric mean return:

$$\begin{aligned} R_G &= \sqrt[5]{(0.6425)(1.2562)(1.1515)(0.9928)(1.1725)} - 1 \\ &= \sqrt[5]{1.081859} - 1 = 1.015861 - 1 = 0.015861 \\ &= \mathbf{1.59\%} \end{aligned}$$

Solution to 4:

PRFDX, $\bar{R} = (-35.75 + 25.62 + 15.15 - 0.72 + 17.25) / 5 = 21.55 / 5 = 4.31\%$. The arithmetic mean for PRFDX exceeds the geometric mean return by $4.31 - 1.59 = 2.72\%$ or 272 basis points. The table below summarizes the findings.

Table 16 Mutual Fund Arithmetic and Geometric Mean Returns: Summary of Findings

Fund	Arithmetic Mean (%)	Geometric Mean (%)
SLASX	2.64	-0.65
PRFDX	4.31	1.59

In Example 7, for both mutual funds, the geometric mean return was less than the arithmetic mean return. In fact, the geometric mean is always less than or equal to the arithmetic mean.²¹ The only time that the two means will be equal is when there is no variability in the observations—that is, when all the observations in the series are the same.²² In Example 7, there was variability in the funds' returns; thus for both funds, the geometric mean was strictly less than the arithmetic mean. In general, the difference between the arithmetic and geometric means increases with the variability in the period-by-period observations.²³ This relationship is also illustrated by Example 7. Casual inspection suggests that the returns of SLASX are somewhat more variable than those of PRFDX, and consequently, the spread between the arithmetic and geometric mean returns is larger for SLASX (329 basis points) than for PRFDX (272 basis points).²⁴ Arithmetic and geometric returns need not always rank funds similarly, however, in this example, PRFDX has both higher arithmetic and geometric mean returns than SLASX. However, the difference between the geometric mean returns of the two funds (2.24%) is greater than the difference between the arithmetic mean returns of the two funds (1.67%). How should the analyst interpret these results?

The geometric mean return represents the growth rate or compound rate of return on an investment. One dollar invested in SLASX at the beginning of 2008 would have grown (or, in this case, decreased) to $(0.6056)(1.3164)(1.1253)(0.9565)(1.1282) = \0.9681 , which is equal to 1 plus the geometric mean return compounded over five periods: $[1 + (-0.006466)]^5 = (0.993534)^5 = \0.9681 , confirming that the geometric mean is the compound rate of return. For PRFDX, one dollar would have grown to a larger amount, $(0.6425)(1.2562)(1.1515)(0.9928)(1.1725) = \1.0819 , equal to $(1.015861)^5$. With its focus on the profitability of an investment over a multiperiod horizon, the geometric mean is of key interest to investors. The arithmetic mean return, focusing on average single-period performance, is also of interest. Both arithmetic and geometric means have a role to play in investment management, and both are often reported for return series. Example 8 highlights these points in a simple context.

EXAMPLE 8

Geometric and Arithmetic Mean Returns (2)

A hypothetical investment in a single stock initially costs €100. One year later, the stock is trading at €200. At the end of the second year, the stock price falls back to the original purchase price of €100. No dividends are paid during the two-year period. Calculate the arithmetic and geometric mean annual returns.

Solution:

First, we need to find the Year 1 and Year 2 annual returns with Equation 1.

$$\text{Return in Year 1} = 200/100 - 1 = 100\%$$

$$\text{Return in Year 2} = 100/200 - 1 = -50\%$$

²¹ This statement can be proved using Jensen's inequality that the average value of a function is less than or equal to the function evaluated at the mean if the function is concave from below—the case for $\ln(X)$.

²² For instance, suppose the return for each of the three years is 10 percent. The arithmetic mean is 10 percent. To find the geometric mean, we first express the returns as $(1 + R_t)$ and then find the geometric mean: $[(1.10)(1.10)(1.10)]^{1/3} - 1.0 = 10$ percent. The two means are the same.

²³ We will soon introduce standard deviation as a measure of variability. Holding the arithmetic mean return constant, the geometric mean return decreases for an increase in standard deviation.

²⁴ We will introduce formal measures of variability later. But note, for example, the 71.08 percentage point swing in returns between 2008 and 2009 for SLASX versus the 61.37 percentage point for PRFDX. Similarly, note the 19.11 percentage point swing in returns between 2009 and 2010 for SLASX versus the 10.47 percentage point for PRFDX.

The arithmetic mean of the annual returns is $(100\% - 50\%)/2 = 25\%$.

Before we find the geometric mean, we must convert the percentage rates of return to $(1 + R_t)$. After this adjustment, the geometric mean from Equation 6 is $\sqrt{2.0 \times 0.50} - 1 = 0$ percent.

The geometric mean return of 0 percent accurately reflects that the ending value of the investment in Year 2 equals the starting value in Year 1. The compound rate of return on the investment is 0 percent. The arithmetic mean return reflects the average of the one-year returns.

5.4.3 The Harmonic Mean

The arithmetic mean, the weighted mean, and the geometric mean are the most frequently used concepts of mean in investments. A fourth concept, the **harmonic mean**, \bar{X}_H , is appropriate in a limited number of applications.²⁵

- **Harmonic Mean Formula.** The harmonic mean of a set of observations X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n is

$$\bar{X}_H = n / \sum_{i=1}^n (1/X_i) \quad (7)$$

with $X_i > 0$ for $i = 1, 2, \dots, n$

The harmonic mean is the value obtained by summing the reciprocals of the observations—terms of the form $1/X_i$ —then averaging that sum by dividing it by the number of observations n , and, finally, taking the reciprocal of the average.

The harmonic mean may be viewed as a special type of weighted mean in which an observation's weight is inversely proportional to its magnitude. The harmonic mean is a relatively specialized concept of the mean that is appropriate when averaging ratios (“amount per unit”) when the ratios are repeatedly applied to a fixed quantity to yield a variable number of units. The concept is best explained through an illustration. A well-known application arises in the investment strategy known as **cost averaging**, which involves the periodic investment of a fixed amount of money. In this application, the ratios we are averaging are prices per share at purchase dates, and we are applying those prices to a constant amount of money to yield a variable number of shares.

Suppose an investor purchases €1,000 of a security each month for $n = 2$ months. The share prices are €10 and €15 at the two purchase dates. What is the average price paid for the security?

In this example, in the first month we purchase $\text{€}1,000/\text{€}10 = 100$ shares and in the second month we purchase $\text{€}1,000/\text{€}15 = 66.67$, or 166.67 shares in total. Dividing the total euro amount invested, €2,000, by the total number of shares purchased, 166.67, gives an average price paid of $\text{€}2,000/166.67 = \text{€}12$. The average price paid is in fact the harmonic mean of the asset's prices at the purchase dates. Using Equation 7, the harmonic mean price is $2/[(1/10) + (1/15)] = \text{€}12$. The value €12 is less than the arithmetic mean purchase price $(\text{€}10 + \text{€}15)/2 = \text{€}12.5$. However, we could find the correct value of €12 using the weighted mean formula, where the weights on the purchase prices equal the shares purchased at a given price as a proportion of the total shares purchased. In our example, the calculation would be $(100/166.67)\text{€}10.00 + (66.67/166.67)\text{€}15.00 = \text{€}12$. If we had invested varying amounts of money at each date, we could not use the harmonic mean formula. We could, however, still use the weighted mean formula in a manner similar to that just described.

²⁵ The terminology “harmonic” arises from its use relative to a type of series involving reciprocals known as a harmonic series.

A mathematical fact concerning the harmonic, geometric, and arithmetic means is that unless all the observations in a data set have the same value, the harmonic mean is less than the geometric mean, which in turn is less than the arithmetic mean. In the illustration given, the harmonic mean price was indeed less than the arithmetic mean price.

OTHER MEASURES OF LOCATION: QUANTILES

6

Having discussed measures of central tendency, we now examine an approach to describing the location of data that involves identifying values at or below which specified proportions of the data lie. For example, establishing that 25, 50, and 75 percent of the annual returns on a portfolio are at or below the values -0.05 , 0.16 , and 0.25 , respectively, provides concise information about the distribution of portfolio returns. Statisticians use the word **quantile** (or **fractile**) as the most general term for a value at or below which a stated fraction of the data lies. In the following, we describe the most commonly used quantiles—quartiles, quintiles, deciles, and percentiles—and their application in investments.

6.1 Quartiles, Quintiles, Deciles, and Percentiles

We know that the median divides a distribution in half. We can define other dividing lines that split the distribution into smaller sizes. **Quartiles** divide the distribution into quarters, **quintiles** into fifths, deciles into tenths, and **percentiles** into hundredths. Given a set of observations, the y th percentile is the value at or below which y percent of observations lie. Percentiles are used frequently, and the other measures can be defined with respect to them. For example, the first quartile (Q_1) divides a distribution such that 25 percent of the observations lie at or below it; therefore, the first quartile is also the 25th percentile. The second quartile (Q_2) represents the 50th percentile, and the third quartile (Q_3) represents the 75th percentile because 75 percent of the observations lie at or below it.

When dealing with actual data, we often find that we need to approximate the value of a percentile. For example, if we are interested in the value of the 75th percentile, we may find that no observation divides the sample such that exactly 75 percent of the observations lie at or below that value. The following procedure, however, can help us determine or estimate a percentile. The procedure involves first locating the position of the percentile within the set of observations and then determining (or estimating) the value associated with that position.

Let P_y be the value at or below which y percent of the distribution lies, or the y th percentile. (For example, P_{18} is the point at or below which 18 percent of the observations lie; $100 - 18 = 82$ percent are greater than P_{18} .) The formula for the position of a percentile in an array with n entries sorted in ascending order is

$$L_y = (n + 1) \frac{y}{100} \quad (8)$$

where y is the percentage point at which we are dividing the distribution and L_y is the location (L) of the percentile (P_y) in the array sorted in ascending order. The value of L_y may or may not be a whole number. In general, as the sample size increases, the percentile location calculation becomes more accurate; in small samples it may be quite approximate.

As an example of the case in which L_y is not a whole number, suppose that we want to determine the third quartile of returns for 2012 (Q_3 or P_{75}) for the 16 European equity markets given in Table 8. According to Equation 8, the position of the third

quartile is $L_{75} = (16 + 1)(75/100) = 12.75$, or between the 12th and 13th items in Table 9, which ordered the returns into ascending order. The 12th item in Table 9 is the return to equities in France in 2012, 15.90 percent. The 13th item is the return to equities in Austria in 2012, 20.72 percent. Reflecting the “0.75” in “12.75,” we would conclude that P_{75} lies 75 percent of the distance between 15.90 percent and 20.72 percent.

To summarize:

- When the location, L_y , is a whole number, the location corresponds to an actual observation. For example, if Denmark had not been included in the sample, then $n + 1$ would have been 16 and, with $L_{75} = 12$, the third quartile would be $P_{75} = X_{12}$, where X_i is defined as the value of the observation in the i th ($i = L_{75}$) position of the data sorted in ascending order (i.e., $P_{75} = 15.90$).
- When L_y is not a whole number or integer, L_y lies between the two closest integer numbers (one above and one below), and we use **linear interpolation** between those two places to determine P_y . Interpolation means estimating an unknown value on the basis of two known values that surround it (lie above and below it); the term “linear” refers to a straight-line estimate. Returning to the calculation of P_{75} for the equity returns, we found that $L_y = 12.75$; the next lower whole number is 12 and the next higher whole number is 13. Using linear interpolation, $P_{75} \approx X_{12} + (12.75 - 12)(X_{13} - X_{12})$. As above, in the 12th position is the return to equities in France, so $X_{12} = 15.90$ percent; $X_{13} = 20.72$ percent, the return to equities in Austria. Thus our estimate is $P_{75} \approx X_{12} + (12.75 - 12)(X_{13} - X_{12}) = 15.90 + 0.75 [20.72 - 15.90] = 15.90 + 0.75(4.82) = 15.90 + 3.62 = 19.52$ percent. In words, 15.90 and 20.72 bracket P_{75} from below and above, respectively. Because $12.75 - 12 = 0.75$, using linear interpolation we move 75 percent of the distance from 15.90 to 20.72 as our estimate of P_{75} . We follow this pattern whenever L_y is a non-integer: The nearest whole numbers below and above L_y establish the positions of observations that bracket P_y and then interpolate between the values of those two observations.

Example 9 illustrates the calculation of various quantiles for the dividend yield on the components of a major European equity index.

EXAMPLE 9

Calculating Percentiles, Quartiles, and Quintiles

The EURO STOXX 50 is an index of 50 publicly traded companies, which provides a blue-chip representation of supersector leaders in the Eurozone. Table 17 shows the market capitalization on the 50 component stocks in the index, as provided by STOXX Ltd. in September 2013. The market capitalizations are ranked in ascending order.

Table 17 Market Capitalizations of the Components of the EURO STOXX 50

No.	Company	Market Cap (Euro Billion)
1	Arcelor-Mittal	8.83
2	CRH	10.99
3	RWE	11.92
4	Carrefour	12.13
5	Repsol	12.84
6	Saint-Gobain	13.60

Table 17 (Continued)

No.	Company	Market Cap (Euro Billion)
7	France Telecom	14.09
8	Unibail-Rodamco	15.96
9	Enel	16.33
10	Essilor International	16.85
11	Intesa Sanpaolo	17.00
12	Assicurazioni Generali	17.76
13	Vivendi	17.84
14	VINCI	18.64
15	Philips	19.04
16	EADS	19.37
17	Inditex	19.66
18	UniCredit	19.69
19	Iberdrola	20.29
20	BMW	20.69
21	ASML	20.71
22	Société Générale	20.92
23	GDF Suez	21.10
24	Volkswagen	21.57
25	Munich RE	22.25
26	E.ON	24.83
27	Deutsche Telekom	25.60
28	ING	25.93
29	Air Liquide	28.98
30	L'Oreal	29.20
31	Schneider Electric	29.75
32	AXA	30.13
33	Deutsche Bank	30.92
34	LVMH Moët Hennessy	32.36
35	Danone	33.36
36	BBVA	34.56
37	Telefonica	39.00
38	ENI	41.42
39	Daimler	42.42
40	BNP Paribas	43.09
41	Unilever	46.04
42	Allianz	47.72
43	Anheuser-Busch InBev	49.40
44	SAP	50.93
45	BCO Santander	51.17
46	BASF	63.88
47	Siemens	64.27
48	Bayer	65.83
49	Total	81.06
50	Sanofi	93.29

Source: www.stoxx.com accessed 27 September 2013.

Using the data in Table 17, address the following:

- 1 Calculate the 10th and 90th percentiles.
- 2 Calculate the first, second, and third quartiles.
- 3 State the value of the median.
- 4 How many quintiles are there, and to what percentiles do the quintiles correspond?
- 5 Calculate the value of the first quintile.

Solution to 1:

In this example, $n = 50$. Using Equation 8, $L_y = (n + 1)y/100$ for position of the y th percentile, so for the 10th percentile we have

$$L_{10} = (50 + 1)(10/100) = 5.1$$

L_{10} is between the fifth and sixth observations with values $X_5 = 12.84$ and $X_6 = 13.60$. The estimate of the 10th percentile (first decile) for dividend yield is

$$\begin{aligned} P_{10} &\approx X_5 + (5.1 - 5)(X_6 - X_5) = 12.84 + 0.1(13.60 - 12.84) \\ &= 12.84 + 0.1(0.76) = 12.92 \end{aligned}$$

For the 90th percentile,

$$L_{90} = (50 + 1)(90/100) = 45.9$$

L_{90} is between the 45th and 46th observations with values $X_{45} = 51.17$ and $X_{46} = 63.88$, respectively. The estimate of the 90th percentile (ninth decile) is

$$\begin{aligned} P_{90} &\approx X_{45} + (45.9 - 45)(X_{46} - X_{45}) = 51.17 + 0.9(63.88 - 51.17) \\ &= 51.17 + 0.9(12.71) = 62.61. \end{aligned}$$

Solution to 2:

The first, second, and third quartiles correspond to P_{25} , P_{50} , and P_{75} , respectively.

$$L_{25} = (51)(25/100) = 12.75 \quad L_{25} \text{ is between the 12th and 13th entries with values } X_{12} = 17.76 \text{ and } X_{13} = 17.84.$$

$$\begin{aligned} P_{25} &= Q_1 \approx X_{12} + (12.75 - 12)(X_{13} - X_{12}) \\ &= 17.76 + 0.75(17.84 - 17.76) \\ &= 17.76 + 0.75(0.08) = 17.82 \end{aligned}$$

$$L_{50} = (51)(50/100) = 25.5 \quad L_{50} \text{ is between the 25th and 26th entries with values, } X_{25} = 22.25 \text{ and } X_{26} = 24.83.$$

$$\begin{aligned} P_{50} &= Q_2 \approx X_{25} + (25.50 - 25)(X_{26} - X_{25}) \\ &= 22.25 + 0.50(24.83 - 22.25) \\ &= 22.25 + 0.50(2.58) = 23.54 \end{aligned}$$

$$L_{75} = (51)(75/100) = 38.25 \quad L_{75} \text{ is between the 38th and 39th entries with values } X_{38} = 41.42 \text{ and } X_{39} = 42.42.$$

$$\begin{aligned} P_{75} &= Q_3 \approx X_{38} + (38.25 - 38)(X_{39} - X_{38}) \\ &= 41.42 + 0.25(42.42 - 41.42) \\ &= 41.42 + 0.25(1.00) = 41.67 \end{aligned}$$

Solution to 3:

The median is the 50th percentile, 23.54. This is the same value that we would obtain by taking the mean of the $n/2 = 50/2 = 25$ th item and $(n + 2)/2 = 52/2 = 26$ th items, consistent with the procedure given earlier for the median of an even-numbered sample.

Solution to 4:

There are five quintiles, and they are specified by P_{20} , P_{40} , P_{60} , and P_{80} .

Solution to 5:

The first quintile is P_{20} .

$$L_{20} = (50 + 1)(20/100) = 10.2 \quad L_{20} \text{ is between the 10th and 11th observations} \\ \text{with values } X_{10} = 16.85 \text{ and } X_{11} = 17.00.$$

The estimate of the first quintile is

$$P_{20} \approx X_{10} + (10.2 - 10)(X_{11} - X_{10}) = 16.85 + 0.2(17.00 - 16.85) \\ = 16.85 + 0.2(0.15) = 16.88.$$

6.2 Quantiles in Investment Practice

In this section, we discuss the use of quantiles in investments. Quantiles are used in portfolio performance evaluation as well as in investment strategy development and research.

Investment analysts use quantiles every day to rank performance—for example, the performance of portfolios. The performance of investment managers is often characterized in terms of the quartile in which they fall relative to the performance of their peer group of managers. The Morningstar mutual fund star rankings, for example, associates the number of stars with percentiles of performance relative to similar-style mutual funds.

Another key use of quantiles is in investment research. Analysts refer to a group defined by a particular quantile as that quantile. For example, analysts often refer to the set of companies with returns falling below the 10th percentile cutoff point as the bottom return decile. Dividing data into quantiles based on some characteristic allows analysts to evaluate the impact of that characteristic on a quantity of interest. For instance, empirical finance studies commonly rank companies based on the market value of their equity and then sort them into deciles. The 1st decile contains the portfolio of those companies with the smallest market values, and the 10th decile contains those companies with the largest market value. Ranking companies by decile allows analysts to compare the performance of small companies with large ones.

We can illustrate the use of quantiles, in particular quartiles, in investment research using the example of Ibbotson et al. (2013). That study proposed an investment style based on liquidity—buying stocks of less liquid stocks and selling stocks of more liquid stocks. It compared the performance of this style with three already popular investment styles, which include (1) firm size (buying stocks of small firms and selling stocks of large firms), (2) value/growth (buying stocks of value firms, defined as firms for which the stock price is relatively low in relation to earnings per share, book value per share, or dividends per share, and selling stocks of growth firms, defined as firms for which the stock price is relatively high in relation to those same measures), and (3) momentum (buying stocks of firms with a high momentum in returns, or winners, and selling stocks of firms with a low momentum, or losers.)

Ibbotson et al. examined the top 3,500 US stocks by market capitalization for the period of 1971–2011. For each stock, they computed yearly measures of liquidity as the annual share turnover (the sum of the 12 monthly volumes divided by each month's shares outstanding), size as the year-end market capitalization, value as the trailing earnings-to-price ratio as of the year end, and momentum as the annual return. They assigned one-fourth of the total sample with the lowest liquidity in a year to Quartile 1 and the one-fourth with the highest liquidity in that year to Quartile 4. The stocks with the second-highest liquidity formed Quartile 3 and the stocks with the second-lowest

liquidity, Quartile 2. Treating each quartile group as a portfolio composed of equally weighted stocks, they measured the returns on each liquidity quartile in the following year (so that the quartiles are constructed “before the fact.”) The authors repeated this process for each of the other three investment styles (size, value, and momentum.) The results from Table 1 of their study are included in Table 18. We have added a column with the spreads in returns from Quartile 1 to Quartile 4.

Table 18 reports each investment style’s geometric and arithmetic mean returns and standard deviation of returns for each quartile grouping. In each style, moving from Quartile 1 to Quartile 4, mean returns decrease. For example, the geometric mean return for the least liquid stocks is 14.50% and for the most liquid stocks is 7.24%. Only for the case of size does standard deviation decrease at each step moving from Quartile 1 to Quartile 4. Thus, the table provides evidence that the investment styles generally having incremental value in explaining returns in relation to standard deviation. The authors conclude that liquidity appears to differentiate the returns approximately as well as the other styles.

Table 18 Cross-Sectional Investment Style Returns (%) and Standard Deviations of Returns (%), 1972–2011

Investment Style	Q ₁	Q ₂	Q ₃	Q ₄	Spread in Return, Q1 to Q4
<i>Size</i> (Q1 = micro; Q4 = large)					
Geometric Mean	13.04	11.93	11.95	10.98	+2.06
Arithmetic Mean	16.42	14.69	14.14	12.61	+3.81
Standard deviation	27.29	24.60	21.82	18.35	
<i>Value</i> (Q1 = value; Q4 = growth)					
Geometric Mean	16.13	13.60	10.10	7.62	+8.51
Arithmetic Mean	18.59	15.42	12.29	11.56	+7.03
Standard deviation	23.31	20.17	21.46	29.42	
<i>Momentum</i> (Q1 = winners; Q4 = losers)					
Geometric Mean	12.85	14.25	13.26	7.18	+5.67
Arithmetic Mean	15.37	16.03	15.29	11.16	+4.21
Standard deviation	23.46	19.79	21.21	29.49	
<i>Liquidity</i> (Q1 = low; Q4 = high)					
Geometric Mean	14.50	13.97	11.91	7.24	+7.26
Arithmetic Mean	16.38	16.05	14.39	11.04	+5.34
Standard deviation	20.41	21.50	23.20	28.48	

Note: Each investment style portfolio contains an average of 742 stocks a year.

Source: Ibbotson et al.

To address the concern that liquidity may simply be a proxy for firm size, with investing in less liquid firms being equivalent to investing in small firms, the authors examined how less liquid stocks performed relative to more liquid stocks while controlling for firm size. This step involved constructing equally-weighted double-sorted portfolios in firm size and liquidity quartiles. That is, they constructed 16 different

liquidity and size portfolios ($4 \times 4 = 16$) and investigated the interaction between these two styles. The results from Table 2 of their article are included in Table 19. We have added a column with the spreads in returns from Quartile 1 to Quartile 4 for each size category.

Table 19 Mean Annual Returns (%) and Standard Deviations of Returns (%) of Size and Liquidity Quartile Portfolios, 1972–2011

Quartile	Q ₁ (Low liquidity)	Q ₂	Q ₃	Q ₄ (High liquidity)	Spread in Return, Q ₁ to Q ₄
<i>Microcap</i>					
Geometric Mean	15.36	16.21	9.94	1.32	+14.04
Arithmetic Mean	17.92	20.00	15.40	6.78	+11.14
Standard deviation	23.77	29.41	35.34	34.20	
<i>Small cap</i>					
Geometric Mean	15.30	14.09	11.80	5.48	+9.82
Arithmetic Mean	17.07	16.82	15.38	9.89	+7.18
Standard deviation	20.15	24.63	28.22	31.21	
<i>Midcap</i>					
Geometric Mean	13.61	13.57	12.24	7.85	+5.76
Arithmetic Mean	15.01	15.34	14.51	11.66	+3.35
Standard deviation	17.91	20.10	22.41	28.71	
<i>Large cap</i>					
Geometric Mean	11.53	11.66	11.19	8.37	+3.16
Arithmetic Mean	12.83	12.86	12.81	11.58	+1.25
Standard deviation	16.68	15.99	18.34	25.75	

Source: Ibbotson et al.

The table shows that within the quartile with the smallest firms, the low-liquidity portfolio earned an annual geometric mean return of 15.36%, in contrast to the high-liquidity portfolio return of 1.32%, producing a liquidity effect of 14.04 percentage points (1,404 basis points). While the liquidity effect is strongest for the smallest firms, it does persist in other three size quartiles also. These results indicate that size does not capture liquidity (i.e., the liquidity effect holds regardless of size group).

MEASURES OF DISPERSION

7

As the well-known researcher Fischer Black has written, “[t]he key issue in investments is estimating expected return.”²⁶ Few would disagree with the importance of expected return or mean return in investments: The mean return tells us where returns, and investment results, are centered. To completely understand an investment, however,

²⁶ Black (1993).

we also need to know how returns are dispersed around the mean. **Dispersion** is the variability around the central tendency. If mean return addresses reward, dispersion addresses risk.

In this section, we examine the most common measures of dispersion: range, mean absolute deviation, variance, and standard deviation. These are all measures of **absolute dispersion**. Absolute dispersion is the amount of variability present without comparison to any reference point or benchmark.

These measures are used throughout investment practice. The variance or standard deviation of return is often used as a measure of risk pioneered by Nobel laureate Harry Markowitz. William Sharpe, another winner of the Nobel Prize in economics, developed the Sharpe ratio, a measure of risk-adjusted performance. That measure makes use of standard deviation of return. Other measures of dispersion, mean absolute deviation and range, are also useful in analyzing data.

7.1 The Range

We encountered range earlier when we discussed the construction of frequency distribution. The simplest of all the measures of dispersion, range can be computed with interval or ratio data.

- **Definition of Range.** The **range** is the difference between the maximum and minimum values in a data set:

$$\text{Range} = \text{Maximum value} - \text{Minimum value} \quad (9)$$

As an illustration of range, the largest monthly return for the S&P 500 in the period from January 1926 to December 2012 is 42.56 percent (in April 1933) and the smallest is -29.73 percent (in September 1931). The range of returns is thus 72.29 percent [42.56 percent - (-29.73 percent)]. An alternative definition of range reports the maximum and minimum values. This alternative definition provides more information than does the range as defined in Equation 9.

One advantage of the range is ease of computation. A disadvantage is that the range uses only two pieces of information from the distribution. It cannot tell us how the data are distributed (that is, the shape of the distribution). Because the range is the difference between the maximum and minimum returns, it can reflect extremely large or small outcomes that may not be representative of the distribution.²⁷

7.2 The Mean Absolute Deviation

Measures of dispersion can be computed using all the observations in the distribution rather than just the highest and lowest. The question is, how should we measure dispersion? Our previous discussion on properties of the arithmetic mean introduced the notion of distance or deviation from the mean ($X_i - \bar{X}$) as a fundamental piece of information used in statistics. We could compute measures of dispersion as the arithmetic average of the deviations around the mean, but we would encounter a problem: The deviations around the mean always sum to 0. If we computed the mean of the deviations, the result would also equal 0. Therefore, we need to find a way to address the problem of negative deviations canceling out positive deviations.

²⁷ Another distance measure of dispersion that we may encounter, the interquartile range, focuses on the middle rather than the extremes. The **interquartile range** (IQR) is the difference between the third and first quartiles of a data set: $\text{IQR} = Q_3 - Q_1$. The IQR represents the length of the interval containing the middle 50 percent of the data, with a larger interquartile range indicating greater dispersion, all else equal.

One solution is to examine the absolute deviations around the mean as in the mean absolute deviation.

- **Mean Absolute Deviation Formula.** The **mean absolute deviation** (MAD) for a sample is

$$\text{MAD} = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^n |X_i - \bar{X}|}{n} \quad (10)$$

where \bar{X} is the sample mean and n is the number of observations in the sample.

In calculating MAD, we ignore the signs of the deviations around the mean. For example, if $X_i = -11.0$ and $\bar{X} = 4.5$, the absolute value of the difference is $|-11.0 - 4.5| = |-15.5| = 15.5$. The mean absolute deviation uses all of the observations in the sample and is thus superior to the range as a measure of dispersion. One technical drawback of MAD is that it is difficult to manipulate mathematically compared with the next measure we will introduce, variance.²⁸ Example 10 illustrates the use of the range and the mean absolute deviation in evaluating risk.

EXAMPLE 10

The Range and the Mean Absolute Deviation

Having calculated mean returns for the two mutual funds in Example 7, the analyst is now concerned with evaluating risk.

Table 15 Total Returns for Two Mutual Funds, 2008–2012 (Repeated)

Year	Selected American Shares (SLASX)	T. Rowe Price Equity Income (PRFDX)
2008	-39.44%	-35.75%
2009	31.64	25.62
2010	12.53	15.15
2011	-4.35	-0.72
2012	12.82	17.25

Source: performance.morningstar.com.

Based on the data in Table 15 on the previous page, answer the following:

- 1 Calculate the range of annual returns for (A) SLASX and (B) PRFDX, and state which mutual fund appears to be riskier based on these ranges.
- 2 Calculate the mean absolute deviation of returns on (A) SLASX and (B) PRFDX, and state which mutual fund appears to be riskier based on MAD.

²⁸ In some analytic work such as optimization, the calculus operation of differentiation is important. Variance as a function can be differentiated, but absolute value cannot.

Solution to 1:

- A** For SLASX, the largest return was 31.64 percent and the smallest was -39.44 percent. The range is thus $31.64 - (-39.44) = 71.08\%$.
- B** For PRFDX, the range is $25.62 - (-35.75) = 61.37\%$. With a larger range of returns than PRFDX, SLASX appeared to be the riskier fund during the 2008–2012 period.

Solution to 2:

- A** The arithmetic mean return for SLASX as calculated in Example 7 is 2.64 percent. The MAD of SLASX returns is

$$\begin{aligned} \text{MAD} &= \frac{|-39.44 - 2.64| + |31.64 - 2.64| + |12.53 - 2.64| + |-4.35 - 2.64| + |12.82 - 2.64|}{5} \\ &= \frac{42.08 + 29.00 + 9.89 + 6.99 + 10.18}{5} \\ &= \frac{98.14}{5} = 19.63\% \end{aligned}$$

- B** The arithmetic mean return for PRFDX as calculated in Example 7 is 4.31 percent. The MAD of PRFDX returns is

$$\begin{aligned} \text{MAD} &= \frac{|-35.75 - 4.31| + |25.62 - 4.31| + |15.15 - 4.31| + |-0.72 - 4.31| + |17.25 - 4.31|}{5} \\ &= \frac{40.06 + 21.31 + 10.84 + 5.03 + 12.94}{5} \\ &= \frac{90.18}{5} = 18.04\% \end{aligned}$$

SLASX, with a MAD of 19.63 percent, appears to be slightly riskier than PRFDX, with a MAD of 18.04 percent.

7.3 Population Variance and Population Standard Deviation

The mean absolute deviation addressed the issue that the sum of deviations from the mean equals zero by taking the absolute value of the deviations. A second approach to the treatment of deviations is to square them. The variance and standard deviation, which are based on squared deviations, are the two most widely used measures of dispersion. **Variance** is defined as the average of the squared deviations around the mean. **Standard deviation** is the positive square root of the variance. The following discussion addresses the calculation and use of variance and standard deviation.

7.3.1 Population Variance

If we know every member of a population, we can compute the **population variance**. Denoted by the symbol σ^2 , the population variance is the arithmetic average of the squared deviations around the mean.

- **Population Variance Formula.** The population variance is

$$\sigma^2 = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^N (X_i - \mu)^2}{N} \quad (11)$$

where μ is the population mean and N is the size of the population.

Given knowledge of the population mean, μ , we can use Equation 11 to calculate the sum of the squared differences from the mean, taking account of all N items in the population, and then to find the mean squared difference by dividing the sum by N . Whether a difference from the mean is positive or negative, squaring that difference results in a positive number. Thus variance takes care of the problem of negative deviations from the mean canceling out positive deviations by the operation of squaring those deviations. The profit as a percentage of revenue for BJ's Wholesale Club, Costco, and Walmart was given earlier as 0.9, 1.6, and 3.5, respectively. We calculated the mean profit as a percentage of revenue as 2.0. Therefore, the population variance of the profit as a percentage of revenue is $(1/3)[(0.9 - 2.0)^2 + (1.6 - 2.0)^2 + (3.5 - 2.0)^2] = (1/3)(-1.1^2 + -0.4^2 + 1.5^2) = (1/3)(1.21 + 0.16 + 2.25) = (1/3)(3.62) = 1.21$.

7.3.2 Population Standard Deviation

Because the variance is measured in squared units, we need a way to return to the original units. We can solve this problem by using standard deviation, the square root of the variance. Standard deviation is more easily interpreted than the variance because standard deviation is expressed in the same unit of measurement as the observations.

- **Population Standard Deviation Formula.** The **population standard deviation**, defined as the positive square root of the population variance, is

$$\sigma = \sqrt{\frac{\sum_{i=1}^N (X_i - \mu)^2}{N}} \quad (12)$$

where μ is the population mean and N is the size of the population.

Using the example of the profit as a percentage of revenue for BJ's Wholesale Club, Costco, and Walmart, according to Equation 12 we would calculate the variance, 1.21, then take the square root: $\sqrt{1.21} = 1.10$.

Both the population variance and standard deviation are examples of parameters of a distribution. In later readings, we will introduce the notion of variance and standard deviation as risk measures.

In investments, we often do not know the mean of a population of interest, usually because we cannot practically identify or take measurements from each member of the population. We then estimate the population mean with the mean from a sample drawn from the population, and we calculate a sample variance or standard deviation using formulas different from Equations 11 and 12. We shall discuss these calculations in subsequent sections. However, in investments we sometimes have a defined group that we can consider to be a population. With well-defined populations, we use Equations 11 and 12, as in the following example.

EXAMPLE 11**Calculating the Population Standard Deviation**

Table 20 gives the yearly portfolio turnover for the 12 US equity funds that composed the 2013 *Forbes* Magazine Honor Roll.²⁹ Portfolio turnover, a measure of trading activity, is the lesser of the value of sales or purchases over a year divided by average net assets during the year. The number and identity of the funds on the *Forbes* Honor Roll changes from year to year.

Table 20 Portfolio Turnover: 2013 *Forbes* Honor Roll Mutual Funds

Fund	Yearly Portfolio Turnover (%)
Bruce Fund (BRUFX)	10
CGM Focus Fund (CGMFX)	360
Hotchkis And Wiley Small Cap Value A Fund (HWSAX)	37
Aegis Value Fund (AVALX)	20
Delafield Fund (DEFIX)	49
Homestead Small Company Stock Fund (HSCSX)	1
Robeco Boston Partners Small Cap Value II Fund (BPSCX)	32
Hotchkis And Wiley Mid Cap Value A Fund (HWMAX)	72
T Rowe Price Small Cap Value Fund (PRSVX)	9
Guggenheim Mid Cap Value Fund Class A (SEVAX)	19
Wells Fargo Advantage Small Cap Value Fund (SSMVX)	16
Stratton Small-Cap Value Fund (STSCX)	11

Source: Forbes (2013).

Based on the data in Table 20, address the following:

- 1 Calculate the population mean portfolio turnover for the period used by *Forbes* for the 12 Honor Roll funds.
- 2 Calculate the population variance and population standard deviation of portfolio turnover.
- 3 Explain the use of the population formulas in this example.

Solution to 1:

$$\begin{aligned}\mu &= (10 + 360 + 37 + 20 + 49 + 1 + 32 + 72 + 9 + 19 + 16 + 11)/12 \\ &= 636 / 12 = 53 \text{ percent.}\end{aligned}$$

²⁹ *Forbes* magazine annually selects US equity mutual funds meeting certain criteria for its Honor Roll. The criteria relate to capital preservation (performance in bear markets), continuity of management (the fund must have a manager with at least six years' tenure), diversification, accessibility (disqualifying funds that are closed to new investors), and after-tax long-term performance.

Solution to 2:

Having established that $\mu = 53$, we can calculate $\sigma^2 = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^N (X_i - \mu)^2}{N}$ by first calculating the numerator in the expression and then dividing by $N = 12$. The numerator (the sum of the squared differences from the mean) is

$$(10 - 53)^2 + (360 - 53)^2 + (37 - 53)^2 + (20 - 53)^2 + (49 - 53)^2 + (1 - 53)^2 + (32 - 53)^2 + (72 - 53)^2 + (9 - 53)^2 + (19 - 53)^2 + (16 - 53)^2 + (11 - 53)^2 = 107,190$$

Thus $\sigma^2 = 107,190/12 = 8,932.50$.

To calculate standard deviation, $\sigma = \sqrt{8,932.50} = 94.51$ percent. (The unit of variance is percent squared so the unit of standard deviation is percent.)

Solution to 3:

If the population is clearly defined to be the *Forbes* Honor Roll funds in one specific year (2013), and if portfolio turnover is understood to refer to the specific one-year period reported upon by *Forbes*, the application of the population formulas to variance and standard deviation is appropriate. The results of 8,932.50 and 94.51 are, respectively, the cross-sectional variance and standard deviation in yearly portfolio turnover for the 2013 *Forbes* Honor Roll Funds.³⁰

7.4 Sample Variance and Sample Standard Deviation

In the following discussion, note the switch to Roman letters to symbolize sample quantities.

7.4.1 Sample Variance

In many instances in investment management, a subset or sample of the population is all that we can observe. When we deal with samples, the summary measures are called statistics. The statistic that measures the dispersion in a sample is called the sample variance.

■ **Sample Variance Formula.** The **sample variance** is

$$s^2 = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^n (X_i - \bar{X})^2}{n - 1} \quad (13)$$

where \bar{X} is the sample mean and n is the number of observations in the sample.

Equation 13 tells us to take the following steps to compute the sample variance:

- i. Calculate the sample mean, \bar{X} .
- ii. Calculate each observation's squared deviation from the sample mean, $(X_i - \bar{X})^2$.

³⁰ In fact, we could not properly use the Honor Roll funds to estimate the population variance of portfolio turnover (for example) of any other differently defined population, because the Honor Roll funds are not a random sample from any larger population of US equity mutual funds.

iii. Sum the squared deviations from the mean: $\sum_{i=1}^n (X_i - \bar{X})^2$.

iv. Divide the sum of squared deviations from the mean by

$$n - 1: \sum_{i=1}^n (X_i - \bar{X})^2 / (n - 1).$$

We will illustrate the calculation of the sample variance and the sample standard deviation in Example 12.

We use the notation s^2 for the sample variance to distinguish it from population variance, σ^2 . The formula for sample variance is nearly the same as that for population variance except for the use of the sample mean, \bar{X} , in place of the population mean, μ , and a different divisor. In the case of the population variance, we divide by the size of the population, N . For the sample variance, however, we divide by the sample size minus 1, or $n - 1$. By using $n - 1$ (rather than n) as the divisor, we improve the statistical properties of the sample variance. In statistical terms, the sample variance defined in Equation 13 is an unbiased estimator of the population variance.³¹ The quantity $n - 1$ is also known as the number of degrees of freedom in estimating the population variance. To estimate the population variance with s^2 , we must first calculate the mean. Once we have computed the sample mean, there are only $n - 1$ independent deviations from it.

7.4.2 Sample Standard Deviation

Just as we computed a population standard deviation, we can compute a sample standard deviation by taking the positive square root of the sample variance.

■ **Sample Standard Deviation Formula.** The **sample standard deviation**, s , is

$$s = \sqrt{\frac{\sum_{i=1}^n (X_i - \bar{X})^2}{n - 1}} \quad (14)$$

where \bar{X} is the sample mean and n is the number of observations in the sample.

To calculate the sample standard deviation, we first compute the sample variance using the steps given. We then take the square root of the sample variance. Example 12 illustrates the calculation of the sample variance and standard deviation for the two mutual funds introduced earlier.

EXAMPLE 12

Calculating Sample Variance and Sample Standard Deviation

After calculating the geometric and arithmetic mean returns of two mutual funds in Example 7, we calculated two measures of dispersions for those funds, the range and mean absolute deviation of returns, in Example 10. We now calculate the sample variance and sample standard deviation of returns for those same two funds.

³¹ We discuss this concept further in the reading on sampling.

Table 15 Total Returns for Two Mutual Funds, 2008–2012 (Repeated)

Year	Selected American Shares (SLASX)	T. Rowe Price Equity Income (PRFDX)
2008	-39.44%	-35.75%
2009	31.64	25.62
2010	12.53	15.15
2011	-4.35	-0.72
2012	12.82	17.25

Source: performance.morningstar.com.

Based on the data in Table 15 repeated above, answer the following:

- 1 Calculate the sample variance of return for (A) SLASX and (B) PRFDX.
- 2 Calculate sample standard deviation of return for (A) SLASX and (B) PRFDX.
- 3 Contrast the dispersion of returns as measured by standard deviation of return and mean absolute deviation of return for each of the two funds.

Solution to 1:

To calculate the sample variance, we use Equation 13. (Deviation answers are all given in percent squared.)

A SLASX

i. The sample mean is

$$\bar{R} = (-39.44 + 31.64 + 12.53 - 4.35 + 12.82) / 5 = 13.20 / 5 = 2.64\%$$

ii. The squared deviations from the mean are

$$(-39.44 - 2.64)^2 = (-42.08)^2 = 1,770.73$$

$$(31.64 - 2.64)^2 = (29.00)^2 = 841.00$$

$$(12.53 - 2.64)^2 = (9.89)^2 = 97.81$$

$$(-4.35 - 2.64)^2 = (-6.99)^2 = 48.86$$

$$(12.82 - 2.64)^2 = (10.18)^2 = 103.63$$

iii. The sum of the squared deviations from the mean is $1,770.73 + 841.00 + 97.81 + 48.86 + 103.63 = 2,862.03$.

iv. Divide the sum of the squared deviations from the mean by $n - 1$:
 $2,862.03 / (5 - 1) = 2,862.03 / 4 = 715.51$

B PRFDX

i. The sample mean is

$$\bar{R} = (-35.75 + 25.62 + 15.15 - 0.72 + 17.25) / 5 = 21.55 / 5 = 4.31\%$$

ii. The squared deviations from the mean are

$$(-35.75 - 4.31)^2 = (-40.06)^2 = 1,604.80$$

$$(25.62 - 4.31)^2 = (21.31)^2 = 454.12$$

$$(15.15 - 4.31)^2 = (10.84)^2 = 117.51$$

$$(-0.72 - 4.31)^2 = (-5.03)^2 = 25.30$$

$$(17.25 - 4.31)^2 = (12.94)^2 = 167.44$$

- iii. The sum of the squared deviations from the mean is $1,604.80 + 454.12 + 117.51 + 25.30 + 167.44 = 2,369.17$.
- iv. Divide the sum of the squared deviations from the mean by $n - 1$: $2,369.17/4 = 592.29$

Solution to 2:

To find the standard deviation, we take the positive square root of variance.

A For SLASX, $s = \sqrt{715.51} = 26.7\%$.

B For PRFDX, $s = \sqrt{592.29} = 24.3\%$.

Solution to 3:

Table 21 summarizes the results from Part 2 for standard deviation and incorporates the results for MAD from Example 10.

Table 21 Two Mutual Funds: Comparison of Standard Deviation and Mean Absolute Deviation

Fund	Standard Deviation (%)	Mean Absolute Deviation (%)
SLASX	26.7	19.6
PRFDX	24.3	18.0

Note that the mean absolute deviation is less than the standard deviation. The mean absolute deviation will always be less than or equal to the standard deviation because the standard deviation gives more weight to large deviations than to small ones (remember, the deviations are squared).

Because the standard deviation is a measure of dispersion about the arithmetic mean, we usually present the arithmetic mean and standard deviation together when summarizing data. When we are dealing with data that represent a time series of percent changes, presenting the geometric mean—representing the compound rate of growth—is also very helpful. Table 22 presents the historical geometric and arithmetic mean returns, along with the historical standard deviation of returns, for the S&P 500 annual and monthly return series. We present these statistics for nominal (rather than inflation-adjusted) returns so we can observe the original magnitudes of the returns.

Table 22 Equity Market Returns: Means and Standard Deviations

Return Series	Geometric Mean (%)	Arithmetic Mean (%)	Standard Deviation
<i>Ibbotson Associates Series: 1926–2012</i>			
S&P 500 (Annual)	9.84	11.82	20.18
S&P 500 (Monthly)	0.79	0.94	5.50

Source: Ibbotson.

7.5 Semivariance, Semideviation, and Related Concepts

An asset's variance or standard deviation of returns is often interpreted as a measure of the asset's risk. Variance and standard deviation of returns take account of returns above and below the mean, but investors are concerned only with downside risk, for example, returns below the mean. As a result, analysts have developed semivariance, semideviation, and related dispersion measures that focus on downside risk. **Semivariance** is defined as the average squared deviation below the mean. **Semideviation** (sometimes called semistandard deviation) is the positive square root of semivariance.³² To compute the sample semivariance, for example, we take the following steps:

- i. Calculate the sample mean.
- ii. Identify the observations that are smaller than or equal to the mean (discarding observations greater than the mean).
- iii. Compute the sum of the squared negative deviations from the mean (using the observations that are smaller than or equal to the mean).
- iv. Divide the sum of the squared negative deviations from Step iii by the *total* sample size minus 1: $n - 1$. A formula for semivariance approximating the unbiased estimator is

$$\sum_{\text{for all } X_i \leq \bar{X}} (X_i - \bar{X})^2 / (n - 1)$$

To take the case of Selected American Shares with returns (in percent) of -39.44 , 31.64 , 12.53 , -4.35 , and 12.82 , we earlier calculated a mean return of 2.64 percent. Two returns, -39.44 and -4.35 , are smaller than 2.64 . We compute the sum of the squared negative deviations from the mean as $(-39.44 - 2.64)^2 + (-4.35 - 2.64)^2 = -42.08^2 + -6.99^2 = 1,770.73 + 48.86 = 1,819.59$. With $n - 1 = 4$, we conclude that semivariance is $1,819.59/4 = 454.9$ and that semideviation is $\sqrt{454.9} = 21.3$ percent, approximately. The semideviation of 21.3 percent is less than the standard deviation of 26.7 percent. From this downside risk perspective, therefore, standard deviation overstates risk.

In practice, we may be concerned with values of return (or another variable) below some level other than the mean. For example, if our return objective is 12.75 percent annually, we may be concerned particularly with returns below 12.75 percent a year. We can call 12.75 percent the target. The name **target semivariance** has been given to average squared deviation below a stated target, and **target semideviation** is its positive square root. To calculate a sample target semivariance, we specify the target as a first step. After identifying observations below the target, we find the sum of the squared negative deviations from the target and divide that sum by the number of observations minus 1. A formula for target semivariance is

$$\sum_{\text{for all } X_i \leq B} (X_i - B)^2 / (n - 1)$$

where B is the target and n is the number of observations. With a target return of 12.75 percent, we find in the case of Selected American Shares that three returns (-39.44 , 12.53 , and -4.35) were below the target. The target semivariance is $[(-39.44 - 12.75)^2 + (12.53 - 12.75)^2 + (-4.35 - 12.75)^2] / (5 - 1) = 754.06$, and the target semideviation is $\sqrt{754.06} = 27.5$ percent, approximately.

³² This is an informal treatment of these two measures; see the survey article by N. Fred Choobinbeh (2005) for a rigorous treatment.

When return distributions are symmetric, semivariance and variance are effectively equivalent. For asymmetric distributions, variance and semivariance rank prospects' risk differently.³³ Semivariance (or semideviation) and target semivariance (or target semideviation) have intuitive appeal, but they are harder to work with mathematically than variance.³⁴ Variance or standard deviation enters into the definition of many of the most commonly used finance risk concepts, such as the Sharpe ratio and beta. Perhaps because of these reasons, variance (or standard deviation) is much more frequently used in investment practice.

7.6 Chebyshev's Inequality

The Russian mathematician Pafnuty Chebyshev developed an inequality using standard deviation as a measure of dispersion. The inequality gives the proportion of values within k standard deviations of the mean.

- **Definition of Chebyshev's Inequality.** According to Chebyshev's inequality, for any distribution with finite variance, the proportion of the observations within k standard deviations of the arithmetic mean is at least $1 - 1/k^2$ for all $k > 1$.

Table 23 illustrates the proportion of the observations that must lie within a certain number of standard deviations around the sample mean.

Table 23 Proportions from Chebyshev's Inequality

k	Interval around the Sample Mean	Proportion (%)
1.25	$\bar{X} \pm 1.25s$	36
1.50	$\bar{X} \pm 1.50s$	56
2.00	$\bar{X} \pm 2s$	75
2.50	$\bar{X} \pm 2.50s$	84
3.00	$\bar{X} \pm 3s$	89
4.00	$\bar{X} \pm 4s$	94

Note: Standard deviation is denoted as s .

When $k = 1.25$, for example, the inequality states that the minimum proportion of the observations that lie within $\pm 1.25s$ is $1 - 1/(1.25)^2 = 1 - 0.64 = 0.36$ or 36 percent.

The most frequently cited facts that result from Chebyshev's inequality are that a two-standard-deviation interval around the mean must contain at least 75 percent of the observations, and a three-standard-deviation interval around the mean must contain at least 89 percent of the observations, no matter how the data are distributed.

The importance of Chebyshev's inequality stems from its generality. The inequality holds for samples and populations and for discrete and continuous data regardless of the shape of the distribution. As we shall see in the reading on sampling, we can make

³³ We discuss skewness later in this reading.

³⁴ As discussed in the reading on probability concepts and the various readings on portfolio concepts, we can find a portfolio's variance as a straightforward function of the variances and correlations of the component securities. There is no similar procedure for semivariance and target semivariance. We also cannot take the derivative of semivariance or target semivariance.

much more precise interval statements if we can assume that the sample is drawn from a population that follows a specific distribution called the normal distribution. Frequently, however, we cannot confidently assume that distribution.

The next example illustrates the use of Chebyshev's inequality.

EXAMPLE 13

Applying Chebyshev's Inequality

According to Table 22, the arithmetic mean monthly return and standard deviation of monthly returns on the S&P 500 were 0.94 percent and 5.50 percent, respectively, during the 1926–2012 period, totaling 1,044 monthly observations. Using this information, address the following:

- 1 Calculate the endpoints of the interval that must contain at least 75 percent of monthly returns according to Chebyshev's inequality.
- 2 What are the minimum and maximum number of observations that must lie in the interval computed in Part 1, according to Chebyshev's inequality?

Solution to 1:

According to Chebyshev's inequality, at least 75 percent of the observations must lie within two standard deviations of the mean, $\bar{X} \pm 2s$. For the monthly S&P 500 return series, we have $0.94\% \pm 2(5.50\%) = 0.94\% \pm 11.00\%$. Thus the lower endpoint of the interval that must contain at least 75 percent of the observations is $0.94\% - 11.00\% = -10.06\%$, and the upper endpoint is $0.94\% + 11.00\% = 11.94\%$.

Solution to 2:

For a sample size of 1,044, at least $0.75(1,044) = 783$ observations must lie in the interval from -10.06% to 11.94% that we computed in Part 1. Chebyshev's inequality gives the minimum percentage of observations that must fall within a given interval around the mean, but it does not give the maximum percentage. Table 4, which gave the frequency distribution of monthly returns on the S&P 500, is excerpted below. The data in the excerpted table are consistent with the prediction of Chebyshev's inequality. The set of intervals running from -10.0% to 12.0% is about equal in width to the two-standard-deviation interval -10.06% to 11.94% . A total of 1,004 observations (approximately 96 percent of observations) fall in the range from -10.0% to 12.0% .

Table 4 Frequency Distribution for the Monthly Total Return on the S&P 500, January 1926 to December 2012 (Excerpt)

Return Interval (%)	Absolute Frequency
-10.0 to -8.0	23
-8.0 to -6.0	34
-6.0 to -4.0	59
-4.0 to -2.0	98
-2.0 to 0.0	157
0.0 to 2.0	220
2.0 to 4.0	173

(continued)

Table 4 (Continued)

Return Interval (%)	Absolute Frequency
4.0 to 6.0	137
6.0 to 8.0	63
8.0 to 10.0	25
10.0 to 12.0	15
	1,004

7.7 Coefficient of Variation

We noted earlier that standard deviation is more easily interpreted than variance because standard deviation uses the same units of measurement as the observations. We may sometimes find it difficult to interpret what standard deviation means in terms of the relative degree of variability of different sets of data, however, either because the data sets have markedly different means or because the data sets have different units of measurement. In this section we explain a measure of relative dispersion, the coefficient of variation that can be useful in such situations. **Relative dispersion** is the amount of dispersion relative to a reference value or benchmark.

We can illustrate the problem of interpreting the standard deviation of data sets with markedly different means using two hypothetical samples of companies. The first sample, composed of small companies, includes companies with 2003 sales of €50 million, €75 million, €65 million, and €90 million. The second sample, composed of large companies, includes companies with 2003 sales of €800 million, €825 million, €815 million, and €840 million. We can verify using Equation 14 that the standard deviation of sales in both samples is €16.8 million.³⁵ In the first sample, the largest observation, €90 million, is 80 percent larger than the smallest observation, €50 million. In the second sample, the largest observation is only 5 percent larger than the smallest observation. Informally, a standard deviation of €16.8 million represents a high degree of variability relative to the first sample, which reflects mean 2003 sales of €70 million, but a small degree of variability relative to the second sample, which reflects mean 2003 sales of €820 million.

The coefficient of variation is helpful in situations such as that just described.

- **Coefficient of Variation Formula.** The **coefficient of variation**, CV, is the ratio of the standard deviation of a set of observations to their mean value:³⁶

$$CV = s/\bar{X} \quad (15)$$

where s is the sample standard deviation and \bar{X} is the sample mean.

When the observations are returns, for example, the coefficient of variation measures the amount of risk (standard deviation) per unit of mean return. Expressing the magnitude of variation among observations relative to their average size, the coefficient of

³⁵ The second sample was created by adding €750 million to each observation in the first sample. Standard deviation (and variance) has the property of remaining unchanged if we add a constant amount to each observation.

³⁶ The reader will also encounter CV defined as $100(s/\bar{X})$, which states CV as a percentage.

variation permits direct comparisons of dispersion across different data sets. Reflecting the correction for scale, the coefficient of variation is a scale-free measure (that is, it has no units of measurement).

We can illustrate the application of the coefficient of variation using our earlier example of two samples of companies. The coefficient of variation for the first sample is $(\text{€}16.8 \text{ million})/(\text{€}70 \text{ million}) = 0.24$; the coefficient of variation for the second sample is $(\text{€}16.8 \text{ million})/(\text{€}820 \text{ million}) = 0.02$. This confirms our intuition that the first sample had much greater variability in sales than the second sample. Note that 0.24 and 0.02 are pure numbers in the sense that they are free of units of measurement (because we divided the standard deviation by the mean, which is measured in the same units as the standard deviation). If we need to compare the dispersion among data sets stated in different units of measurement, the coefficient of variation can be useful because it is free from units of measurement. Example 14 illustrates the calculation of the coefficient of variation.

EXAMPLE 14

Calculating the Coefficient of Variation

Table 24 summarizes annual mean returns and standard deviations computed using monthly return data for select stock market indexes of four Asia-Pacific markets. The indexes are: S&P/ASX 200 Index (Australia), Hang Seng Index (Hong Kong), Straits Times Index (Singapore), and KOSPI Composite Index (South Korea).

Table 24 Arithmetic Mean Annual Return and Standard Deviation of Returns, Asia-Pacific Stock Markets, 2003–2012

Market	Arithmetic Mean Return (%)	Standard Deviation of Return (%)
Australia	5.0	13.6
Hong Kong	9.4	22.4
Singapore	9.3	19.2
South Korea	12.0	21.5

Source: finance.yahoo.com.

Using the information in Table 24, address the following:

- 1 Calculate the coefficient of variation for each market given.
- 2 Rank the markets from most risky to least risky using CV as a measure of relative dispersion.
- 3 Determine whether there is more difference between the absolute or the relative riskiness of the Hong Kong and Singapore markets. Use the standard deviation as a measure of absolute risk and CV as a measure of relative risk.

Solution to 1:

$$\text{Australia: CV} = 13.6\%/5.0\% = 2.720$$

$$\text{Hong Kong: CV} = 22.4\%/9.4\% = 2.383$$

$$\text{Singapore: CV} = 19.2\%/9.3\% = 2.065$$

South Korea: $CV = 21.5\%/12.0\% = 1.792$

Solution to 2:

Based on CV, the ranking for the 2003–2012 period examined is Australia (most risky), Hong Kong, Singapore, and South Korea (least risky).

Solution to 3:

As measured both by standard deviation and CV, Hong Kong market was riskier than the Singapore market. The standard deviation of Hong Kong returns was $(22.4 - 19.2)/19.2 = 0.167$ or about 17 percent larger than Singapore returns, compared with a difference in the CV of $(2.383 - 2.065)/2.065 = 0.154$ or about 15 percent. Thus, the CVs reveal slightly less difference between Hong Kong and Singapore return variability than that suggested by the standard deviations alone.

7.8 The Sharpe Ratio

Although CV was designed as a measure of relative dispersion, its inverse reveals something about return per unit of risk because the standard deviation of returns is commonly used as a measure of investment risk. For example, a portfolio with a mean monthly return of 1.19 percent and a standard deviation of 4.42 percent has an inverse CV of $1.19\%/4.42\% = 0.27$. This result indicates that each unit of standard deviation represents a 0.27 percent return.

A more precise return–risk measure recognizes the existence of a risk-free return, a return for virtually zero standard deviation. With a risk-free asset, an investor can choose a risky portfolio, p , and then combine that portfolio with the risk-free asset to achieve any desired level of absolute risk as measured by standard deviation of return, s_p . Consider a graph with mean return on the vertical axis and standard deviation of return on the horizontal axis. Any combination of portfolio p and the risk-free asset lies on a ray (line) with slope equal to the quantity (Mean return – Risk-free return) divided by s_p . The ray giving investors choices offering the most reward (return in excess of the risk-free rate) per unit of risk is the one with the highest slope. The ratio of excess return to standard deviation of return for a portfolio p —the slope of the ray passing through p —is a single-number measure of a portfolio's performance known as the Sharpe ratio, after its developer, William F. Sharpe.

- **Sharpe Ratio Formula.** The **Sharpe ratio** for a portfolio p , based on historical returns, is defined as

$$S_h = \frac{\bar{R}_p - \bar{R}_F}{s_p} \quad (16)$$

where \bar{R}_p is the mean return to the portfolio, \bar{R}_F is the mean return to a risk-free asset, and s_p is the standard deviation of return on the portfolio.³⁷

³⁷ The equation presents the *ex post* or historical Sharpe ratio. We can also think of the Sharpe ratio for a portfolio going forward based on our expectations for mean return, the risk-free return, and the standard deviation of return; this would be the *ex ante* Sharpe ratio. One may also encounter an alternative calculation for the Sharpe ratio in which the denominator is the standard deviation of the series (Portfolio return – Risk-free return) rather than the standard deviation of portfolio return; in practice, the two standard deviation calculations generally yield very similar results. For more information on the Sharpe ratio (which has also been called the Sharpe measure, the reward-to-variability ratio, and the excess return to variability measure), see Elton, Gruber, Brown, and Goetzmann (2013) and Sharpe (1994).

The numerator of the Sharpe measure is the portfolio's mean return minus the mean return on the risk-free asset over the sample period. The $\bar{R}_p - \bar{R}_F$ term measures the extra reward that investors receive for the added risk taken. We call this difference the **mean excess return** on portfolio p . Thus the Sharpe ratio measures the reward, in terms of mean excess return, per unit of risk, as measured by standard deviation of return. Those risk-averse investors who make decisions only in terms of mean return and standard deviation of return prefer portfolios with larger Sharpe ratios to those with smaller Sharpe ratios.

To illustrate the calculation of the Sharpe ratio, consider the performance of two exchange traded funds. SPDR S&P 500 seeks to track the investment results of the S&P 500 Index (large capitalization US stocks) and iShares Russell 2000 Index seeks to track the investment results of the Russell 2000 Index (small capitalization US stocks). Table 25 presents the historical arithmetic mean return, along with the historical standard deviation of returns, for annual returns series of these two funds and the US 30-day T-bill during the 2003–2012 period.

Table 25 Exchange Traded Fund and US 30-Day T-Bill Mean Return and Standard Deviation of Return, 2003–2012

Fund/T-Bill	Arithmetic Mean (%)	Standard Deviation of Return (%)
iShares Russell 2000 Index	9.26	22.36
SPDR S&P 500 Index	6.77	19.99
30-day T-bill	1.58	1.78

Sources: finance.yahoo.com and www.federalreserve.gov.

Using the mean US 30-day T-bill return to represent the risk-free rate, we find the following Sharpe ratios

$$\text{iShares Russell 2000: } S_{h,IWM} = \frac{9.26 - 1.58}{22.36} = 0.34$$

$$\text{SPDR S\&P 500: } S_{h,SPY} = \frac{6.77 - 1.58}{19.99} = 0.26$$

Although US small stocks (iShares Russell 2000 Index) had a higher standard deviation, they performed better than the US large stocks (SPDR S&P 500 Index), as measured by the Sharpe ratio.

The Sharpe ratio is a mainstay of performance evaluation. We must issue two cautions concerning its use, one related to interpreting negative Sharpe ratios and the other to conceptual limitations.

Finance theory tells us that in the long run, investors should be compensated with additional mean return above the risk-free rate for bearing additional risk, at least if the risky portfolio is well diversified. If investors are so compensated, the numerator of the Sharpe ratio will be positive. Nevertheless, we often find that portfolios exhibit negative Sharpe ratios when the ratio is calculated over periods in which bear markets for equities dominate. This raises a caution when dealing with negative Sharpe ratios. With positive Sharpe ratios, a portfolio's Sharpe ratio decreases if we increase risk, all else equal. That result is intuitive for a risk-adjusted performance measure. With negative Sharpe ratios, however, increasing risk results in a numerically larger Sharpe ratio (for example, doubling risk may increase the Sharpe ratio from -1 to -0.5). Therefore, in a comparison of portfolios with negative Sharpe ratios, we cannot

generally interpret the larger Sharpe ratio (the one closer to zero) to mean better risk-adjusted performance.³⁸ Practically, to make an interpretable comparison in such cases using the Sharpe ratio, we may need to increase the evaluation period such that one or more of the Sharpe ratios becomes positive; we might also consider using a different performance evaluation metric.

The conceptual limitation of the Sharpe ratio is that it considers only one aspect of risk, standard deviation of return. Standard deviation is most appropriate as a risk measure for portfolio strategies with approximately symmetric return distributions. Strategies with option elements have asymmetric returns. Relatedly, an investment strategy may produce frequent small gains but have the potential for infrequent but extremely large losses.³⁹ Such a strategy is sometimes described as picking up coins in front of a bulldozer; for example, some hedge fund strategies tend to produce that return pattern. Calculated over a period in which the strategy is working (a large loss has not occurred), this type of strategy would have a high Sharpe ratio. In this case, the Sharpe ratio would give an overly optimistic picture of risk-adjusted performance because standard deviation would incompletely measure the risk assumed.⁴⁰ Therefore, before applying the Sharpe ratio to evaluate a manager, we should judge whether standard deviation adequately describes the risk of the manager's investment strategy.

Example 15 illustrates the calculation of the Sharpe ratio in a portfolio performance evaluation context.

EXAMPLE 15

Calculating the Sharpe Ratio

In earlier examples, we computed the various statistics for two mutual funds, Selected American Shares (SLASX) and T. Rowe Price Equity Income (PRFDX), for a five-year period ending in December 2012. Table 26 summarizes selected statistics for these two mutual funds for a longer period, the 10-year period ending in 2012.

Table 26 Mutual Fund Mean Return and Standard Deviation of Return, 2003–2012

Fund	Arithmetic Mean (%)	Standard Deviation of Return (%)
SLASX	8.60	20.02
PRFDX	8.91	18.12

Source: performance.morningstar.com.

The US 30-day T-bill rate is frequently used as a proxy for the risk-free rate. Earlier, Table 25 gave the average annual return on T-bills for the 2003–2012 period as 1.58 percent.

³⁸ If the standard deviations are equal, however, the portfolio with the negative Sharpe ratio closer to zero is superior.

³⁹ This statement describes a return distribution with negative skewness. We discuss skewness later in this reading.

⁴⁰ For more information, see Amin and Kat (2003).

Using the information in Table 25 and the average annual return on 30-day T-bills, address the following:

- 1 Calculate the Sharpe ratios for SLASX and PRFDX during the 2003–2012 period.
- 2 State which fund had superior risk-adjusted performance during this period, as measured by the Sharpe ratio.

Solution to 1:

We already have in hand the means of the portfolio return and standard deviations of returns and the mean annual risk-free rate of return from 2003 to 2012.

$$\text{SLASX: } S_{h,\text{SLASX}} = \frac{8.60 - 1.58}{20.02} = 0.35$$

$$\text{PRFDX: } S_{h,\text{PRFDX}} = \frac{8.91 - 1.58}{18.12} = 0.40$$

Solution to 2:

PRFDX had a higher positive Sharpe ratio than SLASX during the period. As measured by the Sharpe ratio, PRFDX's performance was superior. This is not surprising as PRFDX had a higher return and a lower standard deviation than SLASX.

SYMMETRY AND SKEWNESS IN RETURN DISTRIBUTIONS

8

Mean and variance may not adequately describe an investment's distribution of returns. In calculations of variance, for example, the deviations around the mean are squared, so we do not know whether large deviations are likely to be positive or negative. We need to go beyond measures of central tendency and dispersion to reveal other important characteristics of the distribution. One important characteristic of interest to analysts is the degree of symmetry in return distributions.

If a return distribution is symmetrical about its mean, then each side of the distribution is a mirror image of the other. Thus equal loss and gain intervals exhibit the same frequencies. Losses from –5 percent to –3 percent, for example, occur with about the same frequency as gains from 3 percent to 5 percent.

One of the most important distributions is the normal distribution, depicted in Figure 6. This symmetrical, bell-shaped distribution plays a central role in the mean–variance model of portfolio selection; it is also used extensively in financial risk management. The normal distribution has the following characteristics:

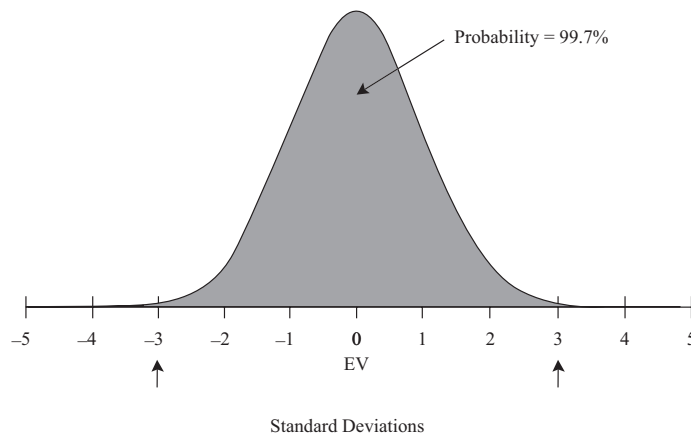
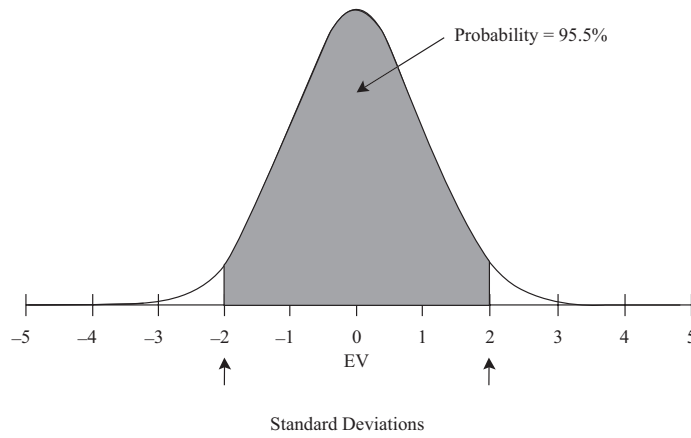
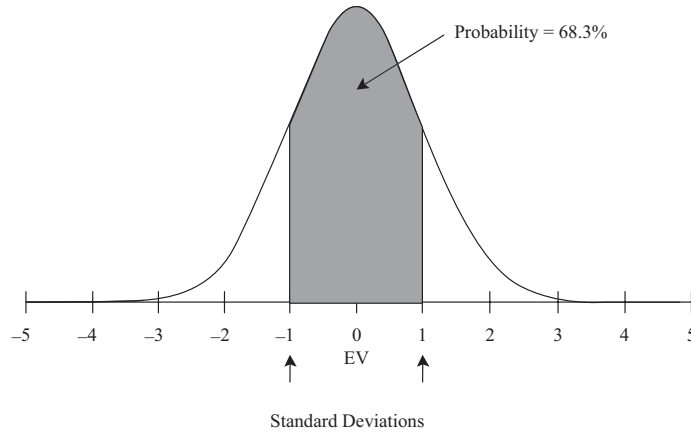
- Its mean and median are equal.
- It is completely described by two parameters—its mean and variance.
- Roughly 68 percent of its observations lie between plus and minus one standard deviation from the mean; 95 percent lie between plus and minus two standard deviations; and 99 percent lie between plus and minus three standard deviations.

A distribution that is not symmetrical is called **skewed**. A return distribution with positive skew has frequent small losses and a few extreme gains. A return distribution with negative skew has frequent small gains and a few extreme losses. Figure 7 shows

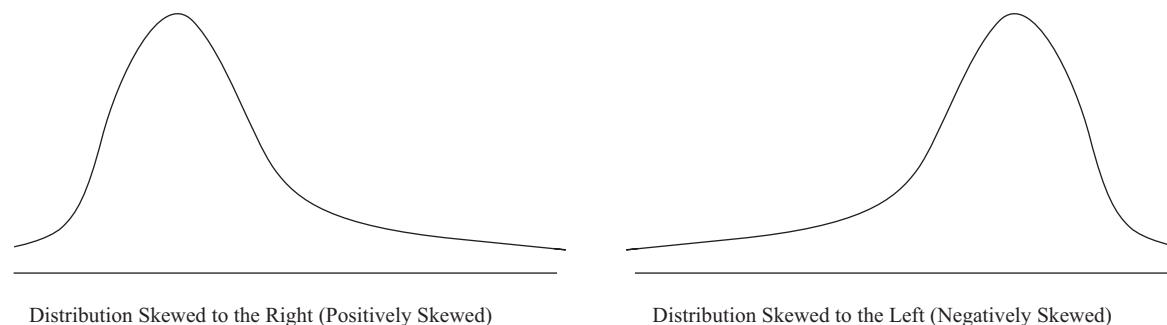
continuous positively and negatively skewed distributions. The continuous positively skewed distribution shown has a long tail on its right side; the continuous negatively skewed distribution shown has a long tail on its left side. For the continuous positively skewed unimodal distribution, the mode is less than the median, which is less than the mean. For the continuous negatively skewed unimodal distribution, the mean is less than the median, which is less than the mode.⁴¹ Investors should be attracted by a positive skew because the mean return falls above the median. Relative to the mean return, positive skew amounts to a limited, though frequent, downside compared with a somewhat unlimited, but less frequent, upside.

⁴¹ As a mnemonic, in this case the mean, median, and mode occur in the same order as they would be listed in a dictionary. Von Hippel (2005) explores exceptions to the relationships among these measures for distributions that vary from those shown in Figure 7.

Figure 6 Properties of a Normal Distribution (EV 5 Expected Value)



Source: Reprinted from *Fixed Income Analysis*. Copyright CFA Institute.

Figure 7 Properties of a Skewed Distribution

Source: Reprinted from *Fixed Income Analysis*. Copyright CFA Institute.

Skewness is the name given to a statistical measure of skew. (The word “skewness” is also sometimes used interchangeably for “skew.”) Like variance, skewness is computed using each observation’s deviation from its mean. **Skewness** (sometimes referred to as relative skewness) is computed as the average cubed deviation from the mean standardized by dividing by the standard deviation cubed to make the measure free of scale.⁴² A symmetric distribution has skewness of 0, a positively skewed distribution has positive skewness, and a negatively skewed distribution has negative skewness, as given by this measure.

We can illustrate the principle behind the measure by focusing on the numerator. Cubing, unlike squaring, preserves the sign of the deviations from the mean. If a distribution is positively skewed with a mean greater than its median, then more than half of the deviations from the mean are negative and less than half are positive. In order for the sum to be positive, the losses must be small and likely, and the gains less likely but more extreme. Therefore, if skewness is positive, the average magnitude of positive deviations is larger than the average magnitude of negative deviations.

A simple example illustrates that a symmetrical distribution has a skewness measure equal to 0. Suppose we have the following data: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, and 9. The mean outcome is 5, and the deviations are $-4, -3, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, 3,$ and 4 . Cubing the deviations yields $-64, -27, -8, -1, 0, 1, 8, 27,$ and 64 , with a sum of 0. The numerator of skewness (and so skewness itself) is thus equal to 0, supporting our claim. Below we give the formula for computing skewness from a sample.

- **Sample Skewness Formula.** **Sample skewness** (also called sample relative skewness), S_K , is

$$S_K = \left[\frac{n}{(n-1)(n-2)} \right] \frac{\sum_{i=1}^n (X_i - \bar{X})^3}{s^3} \quad (17)$$

where n is the number of observations in the sample and s is the sample standard deviation.⁴³

⁴² We are discussing a moment coefficient of skewness. Some textbooks present the Pearson coefficient of skewness, equal to $3(\text{Mean} - \text{Median})/\text{Standard deviation}$, which has the drawback of involving the calculation of the median.

⁴³ The term $n/[(n-1)(n-2)]$ in Equation 17 corrects for a downward bias in small samples.

The algebraic sign of Equation 17 indicates the direction of skew, with a negative S_K indicating a negatively skewed distribution and a positive S_K indicating a positively skewed distribution. Note that as n becomes large, the expression reduces to the mean

cubed deviation, $S_K \approx \left(\frac{1}{n}\right) \frac{\sum_{i=1}^n (X_i - \bar{X})^3}{s^3}$. As a frame of reference, for a sample size of 100 or larger taken from a normal distribution, a skewness coefficient of ± 0.5 would be considered unusually large.

Table 27 shows several summary statistics for the annual and monthly returns on the S&P 500. Earlier we discussed the arithmetic mean return and standard deviation of return, and we shall shortly discuss kurtosis.

Table 27 S&P 500 Annual and Monthly Total Returns, 1926–2012: Summary Statistics

Return Series	Number of Periods	Arithmetic Mean (%)	Standard Deviation (%)	Skewness	Excess Kurtosis
S&P 500 (Annual)	87	11.82	20.18	-0.3768	0.0100
S&P 500 (Monthly)	1,044	0.94	5.50	0.3456	9.4288

Source: Ibbotson Associates.

Table 27 reveals that S&P 500 annual returns during this period were negatively skewed while monthly returns were positively skewed, and the magnitude of skewness was greater for the annual series. We would find for other market series that the shape of the distribution of returns often depends on the holding period examined.

Some researchers believe that investors should prefer positive skewness, all else equal—that is, they should prefer portfolios with distributions offering a relatively large frequency of unusually large payoffs.⁴⁴ Different investment strategies may tend to introduce different types and amounts of skewness into returns. Example 16 illustrates the calculation of skewness for a managed portfolio.

EXAMPLE 16

Calculating Skewness for a Mutual Fund

Table 28 presents 10 years of annual returns on the T. Rowe Price Equity Income Fund (PRFDX).

Table 28 Annual Rates of Return: T. Rowe Price Equity Income, 2003–2012

Year	Return (%)
2003	25.78
2004	15.05
2005	4.26
2006	19.14

(continued)

⁴⁴ For more on the role of skewness in portfolio selection, see Reilly and Brown (2018) and Elton et al. (2013) and the references therein.

Table 28 (Continued)

Year	Return (%)
2007	3.30
2008	-35.75
2009	25.62
2010	15.15
2011	-0.72
2012	17.25

Source: performance.morningstar.com.

Using the information in Table 28, address the following:

- 1 Calculate the skewness of PRFDX showing two decimal places.
- 2 Characterize the shape of the distribution of PRFDX returns based on your answer to Part 1.

Solution to 1:

To calculate skewness, we find the sum of the cubed deviations from the mean, divide by the standard deviation cubed, and then multiply that result by $n/[(n - 1)(n - 2)]$. Table 29 gives the calculations.

Table 29 Calculating Skewness for PRFDX

Year	R_t	$R_t - \bar{R}$	$(R_t - \bar{R})^3$
2003	25.78	16.87	4,801.150
2004	15.05	6.14	231.476
2005	4.26	-4.65	-100.545
2006	19.14	10.23	1,070.599
2007	3.30	-5.61	-176.558
2008	-35.75	-44.66	-89,075.067
2009	25.62	16.71	4,665.835
2010	15.15	6.24	242.971
2011	-0.72	-9.63	-893.056
2012	17.25	8.34	580.094
$n =$	10		
$\bar{R} =$	8.91%		
		Sum =	-78,653.103
$s =$	18.12%	$s^3 =$	5,949.419
		Sum/ $s^3 =$	-13.2203
		$n/[(n - 1)(n - 2)] =$	0.1389
		Skewness =	-1.84

Source: performance.morningstar.com.

Using Equation 17, the calculation is:

$$S_K = \frac{\left[\frac{10}{(9)(8)} \right] - 78,653.103}{18.12^3} = -1.84$$

Solution to 2:

Based on this small sample, the distribution of annual returns for the fund appears to be negatively skewed. In this example, four deviations are negative and six are positive. While, there are more positive deviations, they are much more than offset by a huge negative deviation in 2008, when the stock markets sharply went down as a consequence of the global financial crisis. The result is that skewness is a negative number, implying that the distribution is skewed to the left.

KURTOSIS IN RETURN DISTRIBUTIONS

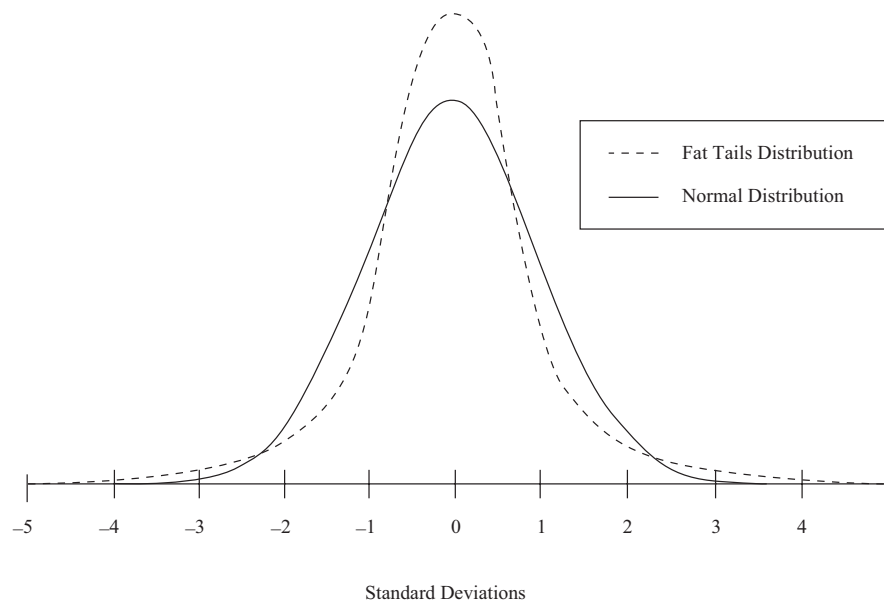
9

In the previous section, we discussed how to determine whether a return distribution deviates from a normal distribution because of skewness. One other way in which a return distribution might differ from a normal distribution is its relative tendency to generate large deviations from the mean. Most investors would perceive a greater chance of extremely large deviations from the mean as increasing risk.

Kurtosis is a measure of the combined weight of the tails of a distribution relative to the rest of the distribution—that is, the proportion of the total probability that is in the tails. A distribution that has fatter tails than the normal distribution is called **leptokurtic**; a distribution that has thinner tails than the normal distribution is called **platykurtic**; and a distribution identical to the normal distribution as concerns relative weight in the tails is called **mesokurtic**. A leptokurtic distribution tends to generate more-frequent extremely large deviations from the mean than the normal distribution.⁴⁵

Figure 8 illustrates a leptokurtic distribution. It has fatter tails than the normal distribution. By construction, the leptokurtic and normal distributions have the same mean, standard deviation, and skewness. Note that the leptokurtic distribution is more likely than the normal distribution to generate observations in the tail regions defined by the intersection of graphs near a standard deviation of about ± 2.5 . The leptokurtic distribution is also more likely to generate observations that are near the mean, defined here as the region ± 1 standard deviation around the mean. In compensation, to have probabilities sum to 1, the leptokurtic distribution generates fewer observations in the regions between the central region and the two tail regions.

⁴⁵ See Wheeler (2011) for definitions and further reading.

Figure 8 Leptokurtic: Fat Tailed

Source: Reprinted from *Fixed Income Analysis*. Copyright CFA Institute.

The calculation for kurtosis involves finding the average of deviations from the mean raised to the fourth power and then standardizing that average by dividing by the standard deviation raised to the fourth power.⁴⁶ For all normal distributions, kurtosis is equal to 3. Many statistical packages report estimates of **excess kurtosis**, which is kurtosis minus 3.⁴⁷ Excess kurtosis thus characterizes kurtosis relative to the normal distribution. A normal or other mesokurtic distribution has excess kurtosis equal to 0. A leptokurtic distribution has excess kurtosis greater than 0, and a platykurtic distribution has excess kurtosis less than 0. A return distribution with positive excess kurtosis—a leptokurtic return distribution—has more frequent extremely large deviations from the mean than a normal distribution. Below is the expression for computing kurtosis from a sample.

■ **Sample Excess Kurtosis Formula.** The **sample excess kurtosis** is

$$K_E = \left(\frac{n(n+1)}{(n-1)(n-2)(n-3)} \frac{\sum_{i=1}^n (X_i - \bar{X})^4}{s^4} \right) - \frac{3(n-1)^2}{(n-2)(n-3)} \quad (18)$$

where n is the sample size and s is the sample standard deviation.

⁴⁶ This measure is free of scale. It is always positive because the deviations are raised to the fourth power.

⁴⁷ Ibbotson and some software packages, such as Microsoft Excel, label “excess kurtosis” as simply “kurtosis.” This highlights the fact that one should familiarize oneself with the description of statistical quantities in any software packages that one uses.

In Equation 18, **sample kurtosis** is the first term. Note that as n becomes large, Equation 18 approximately equals $\frac{n^2}{n^3} \frac{\sum (X - \bar{X})^4}{s^4} - \frac{3n^2}{n^2} = \frac{1}{n} \frac{\sum (X - \bar{X})^4}{s^4} - 3$. For a sample of 100 or larger taken from a normal distribution, a sample excess kurtosis of 1.0 or larger would be considered unusually large.

Most equity return series have been found to be leptokurtic. If a return distribution has positive excess kurtosis (leptokurtosis) and we use statistical models that do not account for the fatter tails, we will underestimate the likelihood of very bad or very good outcomes. For example, the return on the S&P 500 for 19 October 1987 was 20 standard deviations away from the mean daily return. Such an outcome is possible with a normal distribution, but its likelihood is almost equal to 0. If daily returns are drawn from a normal distribution, a return four standard deviations or more away from the mean is expected once every 50 years; a return greater than five standard deviations away is expected once every 7,000 years. The return for October 1987 is more likely to have come from a distribution that had fatter tails than from a normal distribution. Looking at Table 27 given earlier, the monthly return series for the S&P 500 has very large excess kurtosis, approximately 9.4. It is extremely fat-tailed relative to the normal distribution. By contrast, the annual return series has about no excess kurtosis. The results for excess kurtosis in the table are consistent with research findings that the normal distribution is a better approximation for US equity returns for annual holding periods than for shorter ones (such as monthly).⁴⁸

The following example illustrates the calculations for sample excess kurtosis for one of the two mutual funds we have been examining.

EXAMPLE 17

Calculating Sample Excess Kurtosis

Having concluded in Example 16 that the annual returns on T. Rowe Price Equity Income Fund were negatively skewed during the 2003–2012 period, what can we say about the kurtosis of the fund's return distribution? Table 28 (repeated below) recaps the annual returns for the fund.

Table 28 Annual Rates of Return: T. Rowe Price Equity Income, 2003–2012 (Repeated)

Year	Return (%)
2003	25.78
2004	15.05
2005	4.26
2006	19.14
2007	3.30
2008	-35.75
2009	25.62
2010	15.15

(continued)

⁴⁸ See Campbell, Lo, and MacKinlay (1997) for more details.

Table 28 (Continued)

Year	Return (%)
2011	-0.72
2012	17.25

Source: performance.morningstar.com.

Using the information from Table 28 repeated above, address the following:

- 1 Calculate the sample excess kurtosis of PRFDX showing two decimal places.
- 2 Characterize the shape of the distribution of PRFDX returns based on your answer to Part 1 as leptokurtic, mesokurtic, or platykurtic.

Solution to 1:

To calculate excess kurtosis, we find the sum of the deviations from the mean raised to the fourth power, divide by the standard deviation raised to the fourth power, and then multiply that result by $n(n + 1)/[(n - 1)(n - 2)(n - 3)]$. This calculation determines kurtosis. Excess kurtosis is kurtosis minus $3(n - 1)^2/[(n - 2)(n - 3)]$. Table 30 gives the calculations.

Table 30 Calculating Kurtosis for PRFDX

Year	R_t	$R_t - \bar{R}$	$(R_t - \bar{R})^4$
2003	25.78	16.87	80,995.395
2004	15.05	6.14	1,421.260
2005	4.26	-4.65	467.533
2006	19.14	10.23	10,952.229
2007	3.30	-5.61	990.493
2008	-35.75	-44.66	3,978,092.479
2009	25.62	16.71	77,966.098
2010	15.15	6.24	1,516.137
2011	-0.72	-9.63	8,600.133
2012	17.25	8.34	4,837.981
$n =$	10		
$\bar{R} =$	8.91%		
		Sum =	4,165,839.738
$s =$	18.12%	$s^4 =$	107,803.478
		Sum/ $s^4 =$	38.643
		$n(n + 1)/[(n - 1)(n - 2)(n - 3)] =$	0.2183
		Kurtosis =	8.434
		$3(n - 1)^2/[(n - 2)(n - 3)] =$	4.34
		Excess Kurtosis =	4.09

Source: performance.morningstar.com.

Using Equation 18, the calculation is

$$K_E = \left[\frac{110}{(9)(8)(7)} \right] \frac{4,165,839.738}{18.12^4} - \frac{3(9)^2}{(8)(7)} = 4.09$$

Solution to 2:

The distribution of PRFDX's annual returns appears to be leptokurtic, based on a positive sample excess kurtosis. The fairly large excess kurtosis of 4.09 indicates that the distribution of PRFDX's annual returns is fat-tailed relative to the normal distribution. With a negative skewness and a positive excess kurtosis, PRFDX's annual returns do not appear to have been normally distributed during the period.⁴⁹

USING GEOMETRIC AND ARITHMETIC MEANS

10

With the concepts of descriptive statistics in hand, we will see why the geometric mean is appropriate for making investment statements about past performance. We will also explore why the arithmetic mean is appropriate for making investment statements in a forward-looking context.

For reporting historical returns, the geometric mean has considerable appeal because it is the rate of growth or return we would have had to earn each year to match the actual, cumulative investment performance. In our simplified Example 8, for instance, we purchased a stock for €100 and two years later it was worth €100, with an intervening year at €200. The geometric mean of 0 percent is clearly the compound rate of growth during the two years. Specifically, the ending amount is the beginning amount times $(1 + R_G)^2$. The geometric mean is an excellent measure of past performance.

Example 8 illustrated how the arithmetic mean can distort our assessment of historical performance. In that example, the total performance for the two-year period was unambiguously 0 percent. With a 100 percent return for the first year and -50 percent for the second, however, the arithmetic mean was 25 percent. As we noted previously, the arithmetic mean is always greater than or equal to the geometric mean. If we want to estimate the average return over a one-period horizon, we should use the arithmetic mean because the arithmetic mean is the average of one-period returns. If we want to estimate the average returns over more than one period, however, we should use the geometric mean of returns because the geometric mean captures how the total returns are linked over time.

As a corollary to using the geometric mean for performance reporting, the use of **semilogarithmic** rather than arithmetic scales is more appropriate when graphing past performance.⁵⁰ In the context of reporting performance, a semilogarithmic graph has an arithmetic scale on the horizontal axis for time and a logarithmic scale on the vertical axis for the value of the investment. The vertical axis values are spaced according to the differences between their logarithms. Suppose we want to represent

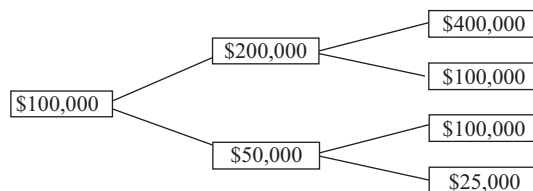
⁴⁹ It is useful to know that we can conduct a Jarque–Bera (JB) statistical test of normality based on sample size n , sample skewness, and sample excess kurtosis. We can conclude that a distribution is not normal with no more than a 5 percent chance of being wrong if the quantity $JB = n \left[\left(\frac{S_K^2}{6} \right) + \left(\frac{K_E^2}{24} \right) \right]$ is 6 or greater for a sample with at least 30 observations. In this mutual fund example, we have only 10 observations and the test described is only correct based on large samples (as a guideline, for $n \geq 30$). Gujarati, Porter, and Gunasekar (2013) provides more details on this test.

⁵⁰ See Campbell (1974) for more information.

£1, £10, £100, and £1,000 as values of an investment on the vertical axis. Note that each successive value represents a 10-fold increase over the previous value, and each will be equally spaced on the vertical axis because the difference in their logarithms is roughly 2.30; that is, $\ln 10 - \ln 1 = \ln 100 - \ln 10 = \ln 1,000 - \ln 100 = 2.30$. On a semilogarithmic scale, equal movements on the vertical axis reflect equal percentage changes, and growth at a constant compound rate plots as a straight line. A plot curving upward reflects increasing growth rates over time. The slopes of a plot at different points may be compared in order to judge relative growth rates.

In addition to reporting historical performance, financial analysts need to calculate expected equity risk premiums in a forward-looking context. For this purpose, the arithmetic mean is appropriate.

We can illustrate the use of the arithmetic mean in a forward-looking context with an example based on an investment's future cash flows. In contrasting the geometric and arithmetic means for discounting future cash flows, the essential issue concerns uncertainty. Suppose an investor with \$100,000 faces an equal chance of a 100 percent return or a -50 percent return, represented on the tree diagram as a 50/50 chance of a 100 percent return or a -50 percent return per period. With 100 percent return in one period and -50 percent return in the other, the geometric mean return is $\sqrt{2(0.5)} - 1 = 0$.



The geometric mean return of 0 percent gives the mode or median of ending wealth after two periods and thus accurately predicts the modal or median ending wealth of \$100,000 in this example. Nevertheless, the arithmetic mean return better predicts the arithmetic mean ending wealth. With equal chances of 100 percent or -50 percent returns, consider the four equally likely outcomes of \$400,000, \$100,000, \$100,000, and \$25,000 as if they actually occurred. The arithmetic mean ending wealth would be $\$156,250 = (\$400,000 + \$100,000 + \$100,000 + \$25,000)/4$. The actual returns would be 300 percent, 0 percent, 0 percent, and -75 percent for a two-period arithmetic mean return of $(300 + 0 + 0 - 75)/4 = 56.25$ percent. This arithmetic mean return predicts the arithmetic mean ending wealth of $\$100,000 \times 1.5625 = \$156,250$. Noting that 56.25 percent for two periods is 25 percent per period, we then must discount the expected terminal wealth of \$156,250 at the 25 percent arithmetic mean rate to reflect the uncertainty in the cash flows.

Uncertainty in cash flows or returns causes the arithmetic mean to be larger than the geometric mean. The more uncertain the returns, the more divergence exists between the arithmetic and geometric means. The geometric mean return approximately equals the arithmetic return minus half the variance of return.⁵¹ Zero variance or zero uncertainty in returns would leave the geometric and arithmetic return approximately equal, but real-world uncertainty presents an arithmetic mean return larger than the geometric. For example, for the nominal annual returns on S&P 500 from 1926 to 2012, Table 27 reports an arithmetic mean of 11.82 percent and standard deviation of 20.18 percent. The geometric mean of these returns is 9.84 percent. We can see the geometric mean is approximately the arithmetic mean minus half of the variance of returns: $R_G \approx 0.1182 - (1/2)(0.2018^2) = 0.0978$, or 9.78 percent.

⁵¹ See Bodie, Kane, and Marcus (2017).

SUMMARY

In this reading, we have presented descriptive statistics, the set of methods that permit us to convert raw data into useful information for investment analysis.

- A population is defined as all members of a specified group. A sample is a subset of a population.
- A parameter is any descriptive measure of a population. A sample statistic (statistic, for short) is a quantity computed from or used to describe a sample.
- Data measurements are taken using one of four major scales: nominal, ordinal, interval, or ratio. Nominal scales categorize data but do not rank them. Ordinal scales sort data into categories that are ordered with respect to some characteristic. Interval scales provide not only ranking but also assurance that the differences between scale values are equal. Ratio scales have all the characteristics of interval scales as well as a true zero point as the origin. The scale on which data are measured determines the type of analysis that can be performed on the data.
- A frequency distribution is a tabular display of data summarized into a relatively small number of intervals. Frequency distributions permit us to evaluate how data are distributed.
- The relative frequency of observations in an interval is the number of observations in the interval divided by the total number of observations. The cumulative relative frequency cumulates (adds up) the relative frequencies as we move from the first interval to the last, thus giving the fraction of the observations that are less than the upper limit of each interval.
- A histogram is a bar chart of data that have been grouped into a frequency distribution. A frequency polygon is a graph of frequency distributions obtained by drawing straight lines joining successive points representing the class frequencies.
- Sample statistics such as measures of central tendency, measures of dispersion, skewness, and kurtosis help with investment analysis, particularly in making probabilistic statements about returns.
- Measures of central tendency specify where data are centered and include the (arithmetic) mean, median, and mode (most frequently occurring value). The mean is the sum of the observations divided by the number of observations. The median is the value of the middle item (or the mean of the values of the two middle items) when the items in a set are sorted into ascending or descending order. The mean is the most frequently used measure of central tendency. The median is not influenced by extreme values and is most useful in the case of skewed distributions. The mode is the only measure of central tendency that can be used with nominal data.
- A portfolio's return is a weighted mean return computed from the returns on the individual assets, where the weight applied to each asset's return is the fraction of the portfolio invested in that asset.
- The geometric mean, G , of a set of observations X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n is $G = \sqrt[n]{X_1 X_2 X_3 \dots X_n}$ with $X_i \geq 0$ for $i = 1, 2, \dots, n$. The geometric mean is especially important in reporting compound growth rates for time series data.
- Quantiles such as the median, quartiles, quintiles, deciles, and percentiles are location parameters that divide a distribution into halves, quarters, fifths, tenths, and hundredths, respectively.

- Dispersion measures such as the variance, standard deviation, and mean absolute deviation (MAD) describe the variability of outcomes around the arithmetic mean.
- Range is defined as the maximum value minus the minimum value. Range has only a limited scope because it uses information from only two observations.

$$\frac{\sum_{i=1}^n |X_i - \bar{X}|}{n}$$

- MAD for a sample is $\frac{\sum_{i=1}^n |X_i - \bar{X}|}{n}$ where \bar{X} is the sample mean and n is the number of observations in the sample.
- The variance is the average of the squared deviations around the mean, and the standard deviation is the positive square root of variance. In computing sample variance (s^2) and sample standard deviation, the average squared deviation is computed using a divisor equal to the sample size minus 1.
- The semivariance is the average squared deviation below the mean; semideviation is the positive square root of semivariance. Target semivariance is the average squared deviation below a target level; target semideviation is its positive square root. All these measures quantify downside risk.
- According to Chebyshev's inequality, the proportion of the observations within k standard deviations of the arithmetic mean is at least $1 - 1/k^2$ for all $k > 1$. Chebyshev's inequality permits us to make probabilistic statements about the proportion of observations within various intervals around the mean for any distribution with finite variance. As a result of Chebyshev's inequality, a two-standard-deviation interval around the mean must contain at least 75 percent of the observations, and a three-standard-deviation interval around the mean must contain at least 89 percent of the observations, no matter how the data are distributed.
- The coefficient of variation, CV, is the ratio of the standard deviation of a set of observations to their mean value. A scale-free measure of relative dispersion, by expressing the magnitude of variation among observations relative to their average size, the CV permits direct comparisons of dispersion across different data sets.
- The Sharpe ratio for a portfolio, p , based on historical returns, is defined as $S_h = \frac{\bar{R}_p - \bar{R}_F}{s_p}$, where \bar{R}_p is the mean return to the portfolio, \bar{R}_F is the mean return to a risk-free asset, and s_p is the standard deviation of return on the portfolio.
- Skew describes the degree to which a distribution is not symmetric about its mean. A return distribution with positive skewness has frequent small losses and a few extreme gains. A return distribution with negative skewness has frequent small gains and a few extreme losses. Zero skewness indicates a symmetric distribution of returns.
- Kurtosis measures combined weight of the tails of a distribution relative to the rest of the distribution. Distributions are characterized as leptokurtic, mesokurtic, or platykurtic according to whether there is relatively more, the same, or less weight in the tails. The calculation for kurtosis involves finding the average of deviations from the mean raised to the fourth power and then standardizing that average by the standard deviation raised to the fourth power. Excess kurtosis is kurtosis minus 3, the value of kurtosis for all normal distributions.

REFERENCES

- Amin, Gaurav, and Harry Kat. 2003. "Stocks, Bonds, and Hedge Funds." *Journal of Portfolio Management*, vol. 29, no. 4:113–120.
- Black, Fischer. 1993. "Estimating Expected Return." *Financial Analysts Journal*, vol. 49, no. 5:36–38.
- Bodie, Zvi, Alex Kane, and Alan J. Marcus. 2017. *Investments*, 11th edition. New York: McGraw-Hill Education.
- Campbell, Stephen K. 1974. *Flaws and Fallacies in Statistical Thinking*. Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice-Hall.
- Campbell, John, Andrew Lo, and A. Craig MacKinlay. 1997. *The Econometrics of Financial Markets*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press.
- Choobinbeh, N. Fred. 2005. "Semivariance" in *The Encyclopedia of Statistical Sciences*. New York: Wiley.
- Dimson, Elroy, Paul Marsh, and Mike Staunton. 2011. "Equity Premiums around the World" in *Rethinking the Equity Risk Premium*. Charlottesville, VA: Research Foundation of CFA Institute.
- Elton, Edwin J., Martin J. Gruber, Stephen J. Brown, and William N. Goetzmann. 2013. *Modern Portfolio Theory and Investment Analysis*, 9th edition. Hoboken, NJ: Wiley.
- Forbes. 16 September 2013. "The Honor Roll." New York: Forbes Management Co., Inc.
- Gujarati, Damodar N., Dawn C. Porter, and Sangeetha Gunasekar. 2013. *Basic Econometrics*, 5th edition. New York: McGraw-Hill Irwin.
- Ibbotson, Roger G., Zhiwu Chen, Daniel Y.-J. Kim, and Wendy Y. Hu. 2013. "Liquidity as an Investment Style." *Financial Analysts Journal*, vol. 69, no. 3:30–44.
- Reilly, Frank K., and Keith C. Brown. 2018. *Investment Analysis and Portfolio Management*, 11th edition. Mason, OH: Cengage South-Western.
- Sharpe, William. 1994. "The Sharpe Ratio." *Journal of Portfolio Management*, vol. 21, no. 1:49–59.
- Von Hippel, Paul T. 2005. "Mean, Median, and Skew: Correcting a Textbook Rule." *Journal of Statistics Education*, vol. 13, no. 2. www2.amstat.org/publications/jse/v13n2/vonhippel.html. Accessed 2 January 2018.
- Wheeler, Donald J. 2011. "Problems with Skewness and Kurtosis, Part One: What Do the Shape Parameters Do?" *Quality Digest Daily*, August 1-2, 2011. <https://www.spcpress.com/pdf/DJW231.pdf>. Accessed 2 January 2018.

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

- Which of the following groups *best* illustrates a sample?
 - The set of all estimates for Exxon Mobil's FY2015 EPS
 - The FTSE Eurotop 100 as a representation of the European stock market
 - UK shares traded on 13 August 2015 that also closed above £120/share on the London Stock Exchange
- Published ratings on stocks ranging from 1 (strong sell) to 5 (strong buy) are examples of which measurement scale?
 - Ordinal
 - Interval
 - Nominal
- In descriptive statistics, an example of a parameter is the:
 - median of a population.
 - mean of a sample of observations.
 - standard deviation of a sample of observations.
- A mutual fund has the return frequency distribution shown in the following table.

Return Interval (%)	Absolute Frequency
-10.0 to -7.0	3
-7.0 to -4.0	7
-4.0 to -1.0	10
-1.0 to +2.0	12
+2.0 to +5.0	23
+5.0 to +8.0	5

Which of the following statements is correct?

- The relative frequency of the interval “-1.0 to +2.0” is 20%.
 - The relative frequency of the interval “+2.0 to +5.0” is 23%.
 - The cumulative relative frequency of the interval “+5.0 to +8.0” is 91.7%.
- An analyst is using the data in the following table to prepare a statistical report.

Portfolio's Deviations from Benchmark Return, 2003–2014 (%)

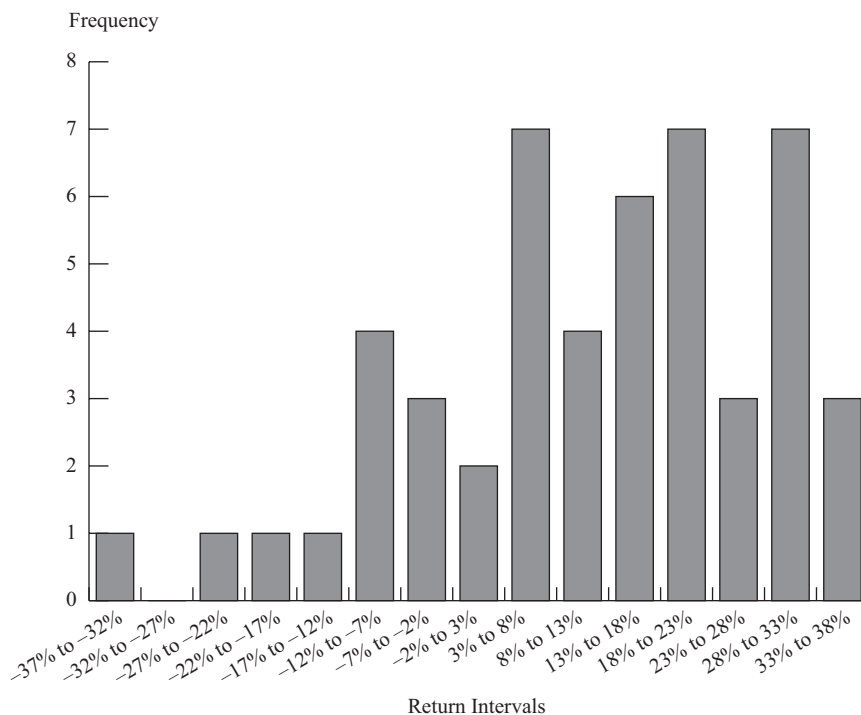
2003	2.48	2009	-9.19
2004	-2.59	2010	-5.11
2005	9.47	2011	1.33
2006	-0.55	2012	6.84
2007	-1.69	2013	3.04
2008	-0.89	2014	4.72

The cumulative relative frequency for the interval $-1.71\% \leq x < 2.03\%$ is *closest* to:

- A 0.250.
- B 0.333.
- C 0.583.

The following information relates to Questions 6–7

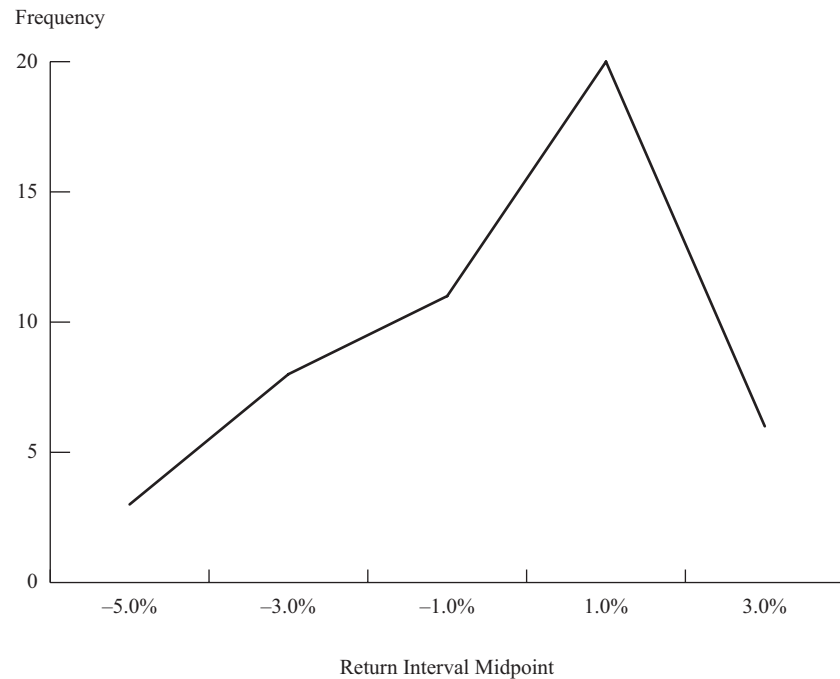
The following histogram shows a distribution of the S&P 500 Index annual returns from 1964 to 2013:



- 6 The interval containing the median return is:
- A 3% to 8%.
 - B 8% to 13%.
 - C 13% to 18%.
- 7 Based on the previous histogram, the distribution is *best* described as having:
- A one mode.
 - B two modes.
 - C three modes.

-
- 8 The following is a frequency polygon of monthly exchange rate changes in the US dollar/Japanese yen spot exchange rate from January 2010 to December 2013. A positive change represents yen appreciation (the yen buys more dollars), and a negative change represents yen depreciation (the yen buys fewer dollars).

Monthly Changes in the US Dollar/Japanese Yen Spot Exchange Rate



Based on the chart, yen appreciation:

- A occurred more than 50% of the time.
 - B was less frequent than yen depreciation.
 - C in the 0.0 to 2.0 interval occurred 20% of the time.
- 9 The annual returns for three portfolios are shown in the following table. Portfolios P and R were created in 2009, Portfolio Q in 2010.

	Annual Portfolio Returns (%)				
	2009	2010	2011	2012	2013
Portfolio P	-3.0	4.0	5.0	3.0	7.0
Portfolio Q		-3.0	6.0	4.0	8.0
Portfolio R	1.0	-1.0	4.0	4.0	3.0

The median annual return from portfolio creation to 2013 for:

- A Portfolio P is 4.5%.
 - B Portfolio Q is 4.0%.
 - C Portfolio R is higher than its arithmetic mean annual return.
- 10 In 2015, an investor allocated his retirement savings in the asset classes shown in the following table.

Asset Class	Asset Allocation (%)	Asset Class Return (%)
Large-cap US equities	20.0	8.0
Small-cap US equities	40.0	12.0
Emerging market equities	25.0	-3.0
High-yield bonds	15.0	4.0

The portfolio return in 2015 is *closest to*:

- A 5.1%.
- B 5.3%.
- C 6.3%.

11 The following table shows the annual returns for Fund Y.

Fund Y (%)	
2010	19.5
2011	-1.9
2012	19.7
2013	35.0
2014	5.7

The geometric mean for Fund Y is *closest to*:

- A 14.9%.
- B 15.6%.
- C 19.5%.

12 A manager invests €5,000 annually in a security for four years at the prices shown in the following table.

Purchase Price of Security (€)	
Year 1	62.00
Year 2	76.00
Year 3	84.00
Year 4	90.00

The average price paid for the security is *closest to*:

- A €76.48.
- B €77.26.
- C €78.00.

The following information relates to Questions 13–14

The following table shows the annual MSCI World Index total returns for 2004–2013.

2004	15.25%	2009	30.79%
2005	10.02%	2010	12.34%
2006	20.65%	2011	-5.02%
2007	9.57%	2012	16.54%
2008	-40.33%	2013	27.37%

13 The fourth quintile return for the MSCI World Index is *closest to*:

- A 20.65%.
- B 26.03%.
- C 27.37%.

- 14 For 2009–2013, the mean absolute deviation of the MSCI World Index total returns is *closest* to:
- A 10.20%.
 - B 12.74%.
 - C 16.40%.

- 15 Annual returns and summary statistics for three funds are listed in the following table:

Year	Annual Returns (%)		
	Fund ABC	Fund XYZ	Fund PQR
2009	−20.0	−33.0	−14.0
2010	23.0	−12.0	−18.0
2011	−14.0	−12.0	6.0
2012	5.0	−8.0	−2.0
2013	−14.0	11.0	3.0
Mean	−4.0	−10.8	−5.0
Standard deviation	17.8	15.6	10.5

The fund that shows the highest dispersion is:

- A Fund PQR if the measure of dispersion is the range.
 - B Fund XYZ if the measure of dispersion is the variance.
 - C Fund ABC if the measure of dispersion is the mean absolute deviation.
- 16 Over the past 240 months, an investor's portfolio had a mean monthly return of 0.79%, with a standard deviation of monthly returns of 1.16%. According to Chebyshev's inequality, the minimum number of the 240 monthly returns that fall into the range of −0.95% to 2.53% is *closest* to:
- A 80.
 - B 107.
 - C 133.
- 17 The mean monthly return and the standard deviation for three industry sectors are shown in the following table.

Sector	Mean Monthly Return (%)	Standard Deviation of Return (%)
Utilities (UTIL)	2.10	1.23
Materials (MATR)	1.25	1.35
Industrials (INDU)	3.01	1.52

Based on the coefficient of variation, the riskiest sector is:

- A utilities.
 - B materials.
 - C industrials.
- 18 Three equity fund managers have performance records summarized in the following table:

	Mean Annual Return (%)	Standard Deviation of Return (%)
Manager 1	14.38	10.53
Manager 2	9.25	6.35
Manager 3	13.10	8.23

Given a risk-free rate of return of 2.60%, which manager performed best based on the Sharpe ratio?

- A Manager 1
- B Manager 2
- C Manager 3

The following information relates to Questions 19–21

The following table shows various statistics for Portfolios 1, 2, and 3.

	Mean Return (%)	Standard Deviation of Returns (%)	Skewness	Excess Kurtosis
Portfolio 1	7.8	15.1	0.0	0.7
Portfolio 2	10.2	20.5	0.9	-1.8
Portfolio 3	12.9	29.3	-1.5	6.2

- 19 An investment adviser bases his allocation on the Sharpe ratio. Assuming a risk-free rate of 1.5%, which portfolio is he *most likely* to recommend?
- A Portfolio 1
 - B Portfolio 2
 - C Portfolio 3
- 20 The skewness of Portfolio 1 indicates its mean return is *most likely*:
- A less than its median.
 - B equal to its median.
 - C greater than its median.
- 21 Compared with a normal distribution, the distribution of returns for Portfolio 3 *most likely*:
- A has less weight in the tails.
 - B has a greater number of extreme returns.
 - C has fewer small deviations from its mean.
-
- 22 Two portfolios have unimodal return distributions. Portfolio 1 has a skewness of 0.77, and Portfolio 2 has a skewness of -1.11. Which of the following is correct?
- A For Portfolio 1, the median is less than the mean.
 - B For Portfolio 1, the mode is greater than the mean.

- C For Portfolio 2, the mean is greater than the median.
- 23 When analyzing investment returns, which of the following statements is correct?
- A The geometric mean will exceed the arithmetic mean for a series with non-zero variance.
 - B The geometric mean measures an investment's compound rate of growth over multiple periods.
 - C The arithmetic mean accurately estimates an investment's terminal value over multiple periods.

SOLUTIONS

- 1 B is correct. The FTSE Eurotop 100 represents a sample of all European stocks. It is a subset of the population of all European stocks.
- 2 A is correct. Ordinal scales sort data into categories that are ordered with respect to some characteristic and may involve numbers to identify categories but do not assure that the differences between scale values are equal. The buy rating scale indicates that a stock ranked 5 is expected to perform better than a stock ranked 4, but it tells us nothing about the performance difference between stocks ranked 4 and 5 compared with the performance difference between stocks ranked 1 and 2, and so on.
- 3 A is correct. Any descriptive measure of a population characteristic is referred to as a parameter.
- 4 A is correct. The relative frequency is the absolute frequency of each interval divided by the total number of observations. Here, the relative frequency is calculated as: $(12/60) \times 100 = 20\%$. B is incorrect because the relative frequency of this interval is $(23/60) \times 100 = 38.33\%$. C is incorrect because the cumulative relative frequency of the last interval must equal 100%.
- 5 C is correct. The cumulative relative frequency of an interval identifies the fraction of observations that are less than the upper limit of the given interval. It is determined by summing the relative frequencies from the lowest interval up to and including the given interval. The following table shows the relative frequencies for all the intervals of the data from the previous table:

Lower Limit (%)	Upper Limit (%)	Absolute Frequency	Relative Frequency	Cumulative Relative Frequency
$-9.19 \leq$	< -5.45	1	0.083	0.083
$-5.45 \leq$	< -1.71	2	0.167	0.250
$-1.71 \leq$	< 2.03	4	0.333	0.583
$2.03 \leq$	< 5.77	3	0.250	0.833
$5.77 \leq$	≥ 9.51	2	0.167	1.000

The interval $-1.71\% \leq x < 2.03\%$ has a cumulative relative frequency of 0.583.

- 6 C is correct. Because there are 50 data points in the histogram, the median return would be the mean of the $50/2 = 25$ th and $(50 + 2)/2 = 26$ th positions. The sum of the return interval frequencies to the left of the 13% to 18% interval is 24. As a result, the 25th and 26th returns will fall in the 13% to 18% interval.
- 7 C is correct. The mode of a distribution with data grouped in intervals is the interval with the highest frequency. The three intervals of 3% to 8%, 18% to 23%, and 28% to 33% all have a high frequency of 7.
- 8 A is correct. Twenty observations lie in the interval "0.0 to 2.0," and six observations lie in the 2.0 to 4.0 interval. Together, they represent $26/48$, or 54.17% of all observations, which is more than 50%.
- 9 C is correct. The median of Portfolio R is 0.8% higher than the mean for Portfolio R.
- 10 C is correct. The portfolio return must be calculated as the weighted mean return, where the weights are the allocations in each asset class:

$$(0.20 \times 8\%) + (0.40 \times 12\%) + (0.25 \times -3\%) + (0.15 \times 4\%) = 6.25\%, \text{ or } \approx 6.3\%.$$

- 11 A is correct. The geometric mean return for Fund Y is found as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Fund Y} &= [(1 + 0.195) \times (1 - 0.019) \times (1 + 0.197) \times (1 + 0.350) \times (1 + 0.057)] \\ &\quad^{(1/5)} - 1 \\ &= 14.9\%.\end{aligned}$$

- 12 A is correct. The harmonic mean is appropriate for determining the average price per unit. It is calculated by summing the reciprocals of the prices; then averaging that sum by dividing by the number of prices; and finally, taking the reciprocal of the average:

$$4/[(1/62.00) + (1/76.00) + (1/84.00) + (1/90.00)] = \text{€}76.48.$$

- 13 B is correct. Quintiles divide a distribution into fifths, with the fourth quintile occurring at the point at which 80% of the observations lie below it. The fourth quintile is equivalent to the 80th percentile. To find the y th percentile (P_y), we first must determine its location. The formula for the location (L_y) of a y th percentile in an array with n entries sorted in ascending order is $L_y = (n + 1) \times (y/100)$. In this case, $n = 10$ and $y = 80\%$, so

$$L_{80} = (10 + 1) \times (80/100) = 11 \times 0.8 = 8.8.$$

With the data arranged in ascending order (-40.33% , -5.02% , 9.57% , 10.02% , 12.34% , 15.25% , 16.54% , 20.65% , 27.37% , and 30.79%), the 8.8th position would be between the 8th and 9th entries, 20.65% and 27.37% , respectively. Using linear interpolation, $P_{80} = X_8 + (L_y - 8) \times (X_9 - X_8)$,

$$\begin{aligned}P_{80} &= 20.65 + (8.8 - 8) \times (27.37 - 20.65) \\ &= 20.65 + (0.8 \times 6.72) = 20.65 + 5.38 \\ &= 26.03\%.\end{aligned}$$

- 14 A is correct. The formula for mean absolute deviation (MAD) is

$$\text{MAD} = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^n |X_i - \bar{X}|}{n}$$

Column 1: Sum annual returns and divide by n to find the arithmetic mean (\bar{X}) of 16.40% .

Column 2: Calculate the absolute value of the difference between each year's return and the mean from Column 1. Sum the results and divide by n to find the MAD.

These calculations are shown in the following table:

	Column 1	Column 2
Year	Return	$ X_i - \bar{X} $
2009	30.79%	14.39%
2010	12.34%	4.06%
2011	-5.02%	21.42%
2012	16.54%	0.14%
2013	27.37%	10.97%
Sum:	82.02%	Sum: 50.98%

	Column 1		Column 2
Year	Return		$ X_i - \bar{X} $
n :	5	n :	5
\bar{X} :	16.40%	MAD:	10.20%

- 15 C is correct. The mean absolute deviation (MAD) of Fund ABC's returns is greater than the MAD of both of the other funds.

$$\text{MAD} = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^n |X_i - \bar{X}|}{n}, \text{ where } \bar{X} \text{ is the arithmetic mean of the series.}$$

MAD for Fund ABC =

$$\frac{|-20 - (-4)| + |23 - (-4)| + |-14 - (-4)| + |5 - (-4)| + |-14 - (-4)|}{5} = 14.4\%$$

MAD for Fund XYZ =

$$\frac{|-33 - (-10.8)| + |-12 - (-10.8)| + |-12 - (-10.8)| + |-8 - (-10.8)| + |11 - (-10.8)|}{5} = 9.8\%$$

MAD for Fund PQR =

$$\frac{|-14 - (-5)| + |-18 - (-5)| + |6 - (-5)| + |-2 - (-5)| + |3 - (-5)|}{5} = 8.8\%$$

A and B are incorrect because the range and variance of the three funds are as follows:

	Fund ABC	Fund XYZ	Fund PQR
Range	43%	44%	24%
Variance	317	243	110

The numbers shown for variance are understood to be in "percent squared" terms so that when taking the square root, the result is standard deviation in percentage terms. Alternatively, by expressing standard deviation and variance in decimal form, one can avoid the issue of units; in decimal form, the variances for Fund ABC, Fund XYZ, and Fund PQR are 0.0317, 0.0243, and 0.0110, respectively.

- 16 C is correct. According to Chebyshev's inequality, the proportion of the observations within k standard deviations of the arithmetic mean is at least $1 - 1/k^2$ for all $k > 1$.

The upper limit of the range is 2.53%, which is $2.53 - 0.79 = 1.74\%$ above the mean. The lower limit is -0.95 , which is $0.79 - (-0.95) = 1.74\%$ below the mean. As a result, $k = 1.74/1.16 = 1.50$ standard deviations.

Because $k = 1.50$, the proportion of observations within the interval is at least $1 - 1/1.5^2 = 1 - 0.444 = 0.556$, or 55.6%. Thus, the number of observations in the given range is at least $240 \times 55.6\%$, which is ≈ 133 .

- 17 B is correct. The coefficient of variation (CV) is the ratio of the standard deviation to the mean, where a higher CV implies greater risk per unit of return.

$$CV_{UTIL} = \frac{s}{\bar{X}} = \frac{1.23\%}{2.10\%} = 0.59$$

$$CV_{MATR} = \frac{s}{\bar{X}} = \frac{1.35\%}{1.25\%} = 1.08$$

$$CV_{INDU} = \frac{s}{\bar{X}} = \frac{1.52\%}{3.01\%} = 0.51$$

- 18 C is correct. The Sharpe ratio (S) is the mean excess portfolio return per unit of risk, where a higher Sharpe ratio indicates better performance:

$$S_1 = \frac{\bar{R}_p - \bar{R}_F}{s_p} = \frac{14.38 - 2.60}{10.53} = 1.12$$

$$S_2 = \frac{\bar{R}_p - \bar{R}_F}{s_p} = \frac{9.25 - 2.60}{6.35} = 1.05$$

$$S_3 = \frac{\bar{R}_p - \bar{R}_F}{s_p} = \frac{13.10 - 2.60}{8.23} = 1.28$$

- 19 B is correct. The Sharpe ratio measures a portfolio's return per unit of risk and

is defined as $S_1 = \frac{\bar{R}_p - \bar{R}_F}{s_p}$, where \bar{R}_p is the mean return for the portfolio, \bar{R}_F

is the mean return to a risk-free asset, and s_p is the standard deviation of return on the portfolio. The Sharpe ratios for the three portfolios are as follows:

$$\text{Portfolio 1} = (7.8 - 1.5)/15.1 = 6.3/15.1 = 0.417$$

$$\text{Portfolio 2} = (10.2 - 1.5)/20.5 = 8.7/20.5 = 0.424$$

$$\text{Portfolio 3} = (12.9 - 1.5)/29.3 = 11.4/29.3 = 0.389$$

So Portfolio 2 has the highest return per unit of risk.

- 20 B is correct. Portfolio 1 has a skewness of 0.0, which indicates that the portfolio's return distribution is symmetrical and thus its mean and median are equal.
- 21 B is correct. Portfolio 3 has positive excess kurtosis (i.e., kurtosis greater than 3), which indicates that its return distribution is leptokurtic and has fatter tails than the normal. The fatter tails mean Portfolio 3 has a greater number of extreme returns.
- 22 A is correct. Portfolio 1 is positively skewed, so the mean is greater than the median, which is greater than the mode.
- 23 B is correct. The geometric mean compounds the periodic returns of every period, giving the investor a more accurate measure of the terminal value of an investment.

Probability Concepts

by **Richard A. DeFusco, PhD, CFA, Dennis W. McLeavey, CFA, Jerald E. Pinto, PhD, CFA, and David E. Runkle, PhD, CFA**

Richard A. DeFusco, PhD, CFA, is at the University of Nebraska-Lincoln (USA). Dennis W. McLeavey, CFA, is at the University of Rhode Island (USA). Jerald E. Pinto, PhD, CFA, is at CFA Institute (USA). David E. Runkle, PhD, CFA, is at Trilogy Global Advisors (USA).

LEARNING OUTCOMES

<i>Mastery</i>	<i>The candidate should be able to:</i>
<input type="checkbox"/>	a. define a random variable, an outcome, an event, mutually exclusive events, and exhaustive events;
<input type="checkbox"/>	b. state the two defining properties of probability and distinguish among empirical, subjective, and a priori probabilities;
<input type="checkbox"/>	c. state the probability of an event in terms of odds for and against the event;
<input type="checkbox"/>	d. distinguish between unconditional and conditional probabilities;
<input type="checkbox"/>	e. explain the multiplication, addition, and total probability rules;
<input type="checkbox"/>	f. calculate and interpret 1) the joint probability of two events, 2) the probability that at least one of two events will occur, given the probability of each and the joint probability of the two events, and 3) a joint probability of any number of independent events;
<input type="checkbox"/>	g. distinguish between dependent and independent events;
<input type="checkbox"/>	h. calculate and interpret an unconditional probability using the total probability rule;
<input type="checkbox"/>	i. explain the use of conditional expectation in investment applications;
<input type="checkbox"/>	j. explain the use of a tree diagram to represent an investment problem;
<input type="checkbox"/>	k. calculate and interpret covariance and correlation;
<input type="checkbox"/>	l. calculate and interpret the expected value, variance, and standard deviation of a random variable and of returns on a portfolio;

(continued)

LEARNING OUTCOMES

<i>Mastery</i>	<i>The candidate should be able to:</i>
<input type="checkbox"/>	m. calculate and interpret covariance given a joint probability function;
<input type="checkbox"/>	n. calculate and interpret an updated probability using Bayes' formula;
<input type="checkbox"/>	o. identify the most appropriate method to solve a particular counting problem and solve counting problems using factorial, combination, and permutation concepts.

1

INTRODUCTION

All investment decisions are made in an environment of risk. The tools that allow us to make decisions with consistency and logic in this setting come under the heading of probability. This reading presents the essential probability tools needed to frame and address many real-world problems involving risk. We illustrate how these tools apply to such issues as predicting investment manager performance, forecasting financial variables, and pricing bonds so that they fairly compensate bondholders for default risk. Our focus is practical. We explore in detail the concepts that are most important to investment research and practice. One such concept is independence, as it relates to the predictability of returns and financial variables. Another is expectation, as analysts continually look to the future in their analyses and decisions. Analysts and investors must also cope with variability. We present variance, or dispersion around expectation, as a risk concept important in investments. The reader will acquire specific skills in using portfolio expected return and variance.

The basic tools of probability, including expected value and variance, are set out in Section 2 of this reading. Section 3 introduces covariance and correlation (measures of relatedness between random quantities) and the principles for calculating portfolio expected return and variance. Two topics end the reading: Bayes' formula and outcome counting. Bayes' formula is a procedure for updating beliefs based on new information. In several areas, including a widely used option-pricing model, the calculation of probabilities involves defining and counting outcomes. The reading ends with a discussion of principles and shortcuts for counting.

2

PROBABILITY, EXPECTED VALUE, AND VARIANCE

The probability concepts and tools necessary for most of an analyst's work are relatively few and simple but require thought to apply. This section presents the essentials for working with probability, expectation, and variance, drawing on examples from equity and fixed income analysis.

An investor's concerns center on returns. The return on a risky asset is an example of a **random variable**, a quantity whose **outcomes** (possible values) are uncertain. For example, a portfolio may have a return objective of 10 percent a year. The portfolio manager's focus at the moment may be on the likelihood of earning a return that is less than 10 percent over the next year. Ten percent is a particular value or outcome

of the random variable “portfolio return.” Although we may be concerned about a single outcome, frequently our interest may be in a set of outcomes: The concept of “event” covers both.

■ **Definition of Event.** An **event** is a specified set of outcomes.

We may specify an event to be a single outcome—for example, *the portfolio earns a return of 10 percent*. (We use italics to highlight statements that define events.) We can capture the portfolio manager’s concerns by defining the event as *the portfolio earns a return below 10 percent*. This second event, referring as it does to all possible returns greater than or equal to -100 percent (the worst possible return) but less than 10 percent, contains an infinite number of outcomes. To save words, it is common to use a capital letter in italics to represent a defined event. We could define $A = \textit{the portfolio earns a return of 10 percent}$ and $B = \textit{the portfolio earns a return below 10 percent}$.

To return to the portfolio manager’s concern, how likely is it that the portfolio will earn a return below 10 percent?

The answer to this question is a **probability**: a number between 0 and 1 that measures the chance that a stated event will occur. If the probability is 0.40 that the portfolio earns a return below 10 percent, there is a 40 percent chance of that event happening. If an event is impossible, it has a probability of 0. If an event is certain to happen, it has a probability of 1. If an event is impossible or a sure thing, it is not random at all. So, 0 and 1 bracket all the possible values of a probability.

Probability has two properties, which together constitute its definition.

■ **Definition of Probability.** The two defining properties of a probability are as follows:

- 1 The probability of any event E is a number between 0 and 1: $0 \leq P(E) \leq 1$.
- 2 The sum of the probabilities of any set of mutually exclusive and **exhaustive** events equals 1.

P followed by parentheses stands for “the probability of (the event in parentheses),” as in $P(E)$ for “the probability of event E .” We can also think of P as a rule or function that assigns numerical values to events consistent with Properties 1 and 2.

In the above definition, the term mutually exclusive means that only one event can occur at a time; **exhaustive** means that the events cover all possible outcomes. The events $A = \textit{the portfolio earns a return of 10 percent}$ and $B = \textit{the portfolio earns a return below 10 percent}$ are mutually exclusive because A and B cannot both occur at the same time. For example, a return of 8.1 percent means that B has occurred and A has not occurred. Although events A and B are mutually exclusive, they are not exhaustive because they do not cover outcomes such as a return of 11 percent. Suppose we define a third event: $C = \textit{the portfolio earns a return above 10 percent}$. Clearly, A , B , and C are mutually exclusive and exhaustive events. Each of $P(A)$, $P(B)$, and $P(C)$ is a number between 0 and 1, and $P(A) + P(B) + P(C) = 1$.

The most basic kind of mutually exclusive and exhaustive events is the set of all the distinct possible outcomes of the random variable. If we know both that set and the assignment of probabilities to those outcomes—the probability distribution of the random variable—we have a complete description of the random variable, and we can assign a probability to any event that we might describe.¹ The probability of any event is the sum of the probabilities of the distinct outcomes included in the definition of the event. Suppose the event of interest is $D = \textit{the portfolio earns a return above the risk-free rate}$, and we know the probability distribution of portfolio returns. Assume

¹ In the reading on common probability distributions, we describe some of the probability distributions most frequently used in investment applications.

the risk-free rate is 4 percent. To calculate $P(D)$, the probability of D , we would sum the probabilities of the outcomes that satisfy the definition of the event; that is, we would sum the probabilities of portfolio returns greater than 4 percent.

Earlier, to illustrate a concept, we assumed a probability of 0.40 for a portfolio earning less than 10 percent, without justifying the particular assumption. We also talked about using a probability distribution of outcomes to calculate the probability of events, without explaining how a probability distribution might be estimated. Making actual financial decisions using inaccurate probabilities might have grave consequences. How, in practice, do we estimate probabilities? This topic is a field of study in itself, but there are three broad approaches to estimating probabilities. In investments, we often estimate the probability of an event as a relative frequency of occurrence based on historical data. This method produces an **empirical probability**. For example, Thanatawee (2013) reports that of his sample of 1,927 yearly observations for nonfinancial SET (Stock Exchange of Thailand) firms during the years 2002 to 2010, 1,382 were dividend paying firms and 545 were non dividend paying firms. The empirical probability of a Thai firm paying a dividend is thus $1,382/1,927 = 0.72$, approximately. We will point out empirical probabilities in several places as they appear in this reading.

Relationships must be stable through time for empirical probabilities to be accurate. We cannot calculate an empirical probability of an event not in the historical record or a reliable empirical probability for a very rare event. There are cases, then, in which we may adjust an empirical probability to account for perceptions of changing relationships. In other cases, we have no empirical probability to use at all. We may also make a personal assessment of probability without reference to any particular data. Each of these three types of probability is a **subjective probability**, one drawing on personal or subjective judgment. Subjective probabilities are of great importance in investments. Investors, in making buy and sell decisions that determine asset prices, often draw on subjective probabilities. Subjective probabilities appear in various places in this reading, notably in our discussion of Bayes' formula.

In a more narrow range of well-defined problems, we can sometimes deduce probabilities by reasoning about the problem. The resulting probability is an **a priori probability**, one based on logical analysis rather than on observation or personal judgment. We will use this type of probability in Example 6. The counting methods we discuss later are particularly important in calculating an a priori probability. Because a priori and empirical probabilities generally do not vary from person to person, they are often grouped as **objective probabilities**.

In business and elsewhere, we often encounter probabilities stated in terms of odds—for instance, “the odds for E ” or the “odds against E .” For example, as of November 2013, analysts' fiscal year 2014 EPS forecasts for JetBlue Airways ranged from \$0.55 to \$0.69. Suppose one analyst asserts that the odds for the company beating the highest estimate, \$0.69, are 1 to 7. Suppose a second analyst argues that the odds against that happening are 15 to 1. What do those statements imply about the probability of the company's EPS beating the highest estimate? We interpret probabilities stated in terms of odds as follows:

■ **Probability Stated as Odds.** Given a probability $P(E)$,

- 1 Odds for $E = P(E)/[1 - P(E)]$. The odds for E are the probability of E divided by 1 minus the probability of E . Given odds for E of “ a to b ,” the implied probability of E is $a/(a + b)$.

In the example, the statement that the odds for *the company's EPS for FY2014 beating \$0.69* are 1 to 7 means that the speaker believes the probability of the event is $1/(1 + 7) = 1/8 = 0.125$.

- 2 Odds against $E = [1 - P(E)]/P(E)$, the reciprocal of odds for E . Given odds against E of “ a to b ,” the implied probability of E is $b/(a + b)$.

The statement that the odds against *the company's EPS for FY2014 beating \$0.69* are 15 to 1 is consistent with a belief that the probability of the event is $1/(1 + 15) = 1/16 = 0.0625$.

To further explain odds for an event, if $P(E) = 1/8$, the odds for E are $(1/8)/(7/8) = (1/8)(8/7) = 1/7$, or “1 to 7.” For each occurrence of E , we expect seven cases of non-occurrence; out of eight cases in total, therefore, we expect E to happen once, and the probability of E is $1/8$. In wagering, it is common to speak in terms of the odds against something, as in Statement 2. For odds of “15 to 1” against E (an implied probability of E of $1/16$), a \$1 wager on E , if successful, returns \$15 in profits plus the \$1 staked in the wager. We can calculate the bet's anticipated profit as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Win:} & \quad \text{Probability} = 1/16; \text{ Profit} = \$15 \\ \text{Loss:} & \quad \text{Probability} = 15/16; \text{ Profit} = -\$1 \\ \text{Anticipated profit} & = (1/16)(\$15) + (15/16)(-\$1) = \$0 \end{aligned}$$

Weighting each of the wager's two outcomes by the respective probability of the outcome, if the odds (probabilities) are accurate, the anticipated profit of the bet is \$0.

EXAMPLE 1

Profiting from Inconsistent Probabilities

You are examining the common stock of two companies in the same industry in which an important antitrust decision will be announced next week. The first company, SmithCo Corporation, will benefit from a governmental decision that there is no antitrust obstacle related to a merger in which it is involved. You believe that SmithCo's share price reflects a 0.85 probability of such a decision. A second company, Selbert Corporation, will equally benefit from a “go ahead” ruling. Surprisingly, you believe Selbert stock reflects only a 0.50 probability of a favorable decision. Assuming your analysis is correct, what investment strategy would profit from this pricing discrepancy?

Consider the logical possibilities. One is that the probability of 0.50 reflected in Selbert's share price is accurate. In that case, Selbert is fairly valued but SmithCo is overvalued, as its current share price overestimates the probability of a “go ahead” decision. The second possibility is that the probability of 0.85 is accurate. In that case, SmithCo shares are fairly valued, but Selbert shares, which build in a lower probability of a favorable decision, are undervalued. You diagram the situation as shown in Table 1.

Table 1 Worksheet for Investment Problem

	True Probability of a “Go Ahead” Decision	
	0.50	0.85
SmithCo	Shares Overvalued	Shares Fairly Valued
Selbert	Shares Fairly Valued	Shares Undervalued

The 0.50 probability column shows that Selbert shares are a better value than SmithCo shares. Selbert shares are also a better value if a 0.85 probability is accurate. Thus SmithCo shares are overvalued relative to Selbert shares.

Your investment actions depend on your confidence in your analysis and on any investment constraints you face (such as constraints on selling stock short).² A conservative strategy would be to buy Selbert shares and reduce or eliminate any current position in SmithCo. The most aggressive strategy is to short SmithCo stock (relatively overvalued) and simultaneously buy the stock of Selbert (relatively undervalued). This strategy is known as **pairs arbitrage trade**: a trade in two closely related stocks involving the short sale of one and the purchase of the other.

The prices of SmithCo and Selbert shares reflect probabilities that are not **consistent**. According to one of the most important probability results for investments, the **Dutch Book Theorem**,³ inconsistent probabilities create profit opportunities. In our example, investors, by their buy and sell decisions to exploit the inconsistent probabilities, should eliminate the profit opportunity and inconsistency.

To understand the meaning of a probability in investment contexts, we need to distinguish between two types of probability: unconditional and conditional. Both unconditional and conditional probabilities satisfy the definition of probability stated earlier, but they are calculated or estimated differently and have different interpretations. They provide answers to different questions.

The probability in answer to the straightforward question “What is the probability of this event A ?” is an **unconditional probability**, denoted $P(A)$. Unconditional probability is also frequently referred to as **marginal probability**.⁴

Suppose the question is “What is the probability that *the stock earns a return above the risk-free rate* (event A)?” The answer is an unconditional probability that can be viewed as the ratio of two quantities. The numerator is the sum of the probabilities of stock returns above the risk-free rate. Suppose that sum is 0.70. The denominator is 1, the sum of the probabilities of all possible returns. The answer to the question is $P(A) = 0.70$.

Contrast the question “What is the probability of A ?” with the question “What is the probability of A , given that B has occurred?” The probability in answer to this last question is a **conditional probability**, denoted $P(A | B)$ (read: “the probability of A given B ”).

Suppose we want to know the probability that *the stock earns a return above the risk-free rate* (event A), given that *the stock earns a positive return* (event B). With the words “given that,” we are restricting returns to those larger than 0 percent—a new element in contrast to the question that brought forth an unconditional probability. The conditional probability is calculated as the ratio of two quantities. The numerator is the sum of the probabilities of stock returns above the risk-free rate; in this particular case, the numerator is the same as it was in the unconditional case, which we gave as 0.70. The denominator, however, changes from 1 to the sum of the probabilities for all outcomes (returns) above 0 percent. Suppose that number is 0.80, a

² *Selling short* or *shorting stock* means selling borrowed shares in the hope of repurchasing them later at a lower price.

³ The theorem’s name comes from the terminology of wagering. Suppose someone places a \$100 bet on X at odds of 10 to 1 against X , and later he is able to place a \$600 bet against X at odds of 1 to 1 against X . Whatever the outcome of X , that person makes a riskless profit (equal to \$400 if X occurs or \$500 if X does not occur) because the implied probabilities are inconsistent. He is said to have made a *Dutch book* in X . Ramsey (1931) presented the problem of inconsistent probabilities. See also Lo (1999).

⁴ In analyses of probabilities presented in tables, unconditional probabilities usually appear at the ends or *margins* of the table, hence the term *marginal probability*. Because of possible confusion with the way *marginal* is used in economics (roughly meaning *incremental*), we use the term *unconditional probability* throughout this discussion.

larger number than 0.70 because returns between 0 and the risk-free rate have some positive probability of occurring. Then $P(A | B) = 0.70/0.80 = 0.875$. If we observe that the stock earns a positive return, the probability of a return above the risk-free rate is greater than the unconditional probability, which is the probability of the event given no other information. The result is intuitive.⁵ To review, an unconditional probability is the probability of an event without any restriction; it might even be thought of as a stand-alone probability. A conditional probability, in contrast, is a probability of an event given that another event has occurred.

In discussing approaches to calculating probability, we gave one empirical estimate of the probability that a change in dividends is a dividend decrease. That probability was an unconditional probability. Given additional information on company characteristics, could an investor refine that estimate? Investors continually seek an information edge that will help improve their forecasts. In mathematical terms, they are attempting to frame their view of the future using probabilities conditioned on relevant information or events. Investors do not ignore useful information; they adjust their probabilities to reflect it. Thus, the concepts of conditional probability (which we analyze in more detail below), as well as related concepts discussed further on, are extremely important in investment analysis and financial markets.

To state an exact definition of conditional probability, we first need to introduce the concept of joint probability. Suppose we ask the question “What is the probability of both A and B happening?” The answer to this question is a **joint probability**, denoted $P(AB)$ (read: “the probability of A and B ”). If we think of the probability of A and the probability of B as sets built of the outcomes of one or more random variables, the joint probability of A and B is the sum of the probabilities of the outcomes they have in common. For example, consider two events: *the stock earns a return above the risk-free rate* (A) and *the stock earns a positive return* (B). The outcomes of A are contained within (a subset of) the outcomes of B , so $P(AB)$ equals $P(A)$. We can now state a formal definition of conditional probability that provides a formula for calculating it.

- **Definition of Conditional Probability.** The conditional probability of A given that B has occurred is equal to the joint probability of A and B divided by the probability of B (assumed not to equal 0).

$$P(A | B) = P(AB)/P(B), P(B) \neq 0 \quad (1)$$

Sometimes we know the conditional probability $P(A | B)$ and we want to know the joint probability $P(AB)$. We can obtain the joint probability from the following **multiplication rule for probabilities**, which is Equation 1 rearranged.

- **Multiplication Rule for Probability.** The joint probability of A and B can be expressed as

$$P(AB) = P(A | B)P(B) \quad (2)$$

⁵ In this example, the conditional probability is greater than the unconditional probability. The conditional probability of an event may, however, be greater than, equal to, or less than the unconditional probability, depending on the facts. For instance, the probability that *the stock earns a return above the risk-free rate* given that *the stock earns a negative return* is 0.

EXAMPLE 2**Conditional Probabilities and Predictability of Mutual Fund Performance (1)**

Vidal-Garcia (2013) examined whether historical performance predicts future performance for a sample of mutual funds that included 1,050 actively managed equity funds in six European countries during the period of 1988 through 2010. Funds were classified into nine investment styles based on combinations of investment focus (growth, blend, and value) and fund's market capitalization (small, mid, and large cap). One approach Vidal-Garcia used involved calculating each fund's annual benchmark-adjusted return by subtracting a benchmark return from the annual return of the fund. MSCI (Morgan Stanley Capital International) style indexes were used as benchmarks. For each style of fund in each country, funds were classified as winners or losers for each of two consecutive years. The top 50 percent of funds by benchmark-adjusted return for a given year were labeled winners; the bottom 50 percent were labeled losers. An excerpt from the results of the study for 135 French funds classified as large value funds is given in Table 2. It shows the percentage of those funds that were winners in two consecutive years, winner in one year and then loser in the next year, losers then winners, and losers in both years. The winner–winner entry, for example, shows that 65.5% of the first-year winner funds were also winners in the second year. Note that the four entries in the table can be viewed as conditional probabilities.

Table 2 Persistence of Returns for Large Value Funds in France: 1988 through 2010

	Year 2 Winner	Year 2 Loser
Year 1 winner	65.5%	34.5%
Year 1 loser	15.5%	84.5%

Source: Vidal-Garcia (2013), Table 4.

Based on the data in Table 2, answer the following questions:

- 1 State the four events needed to define the four conditional probabilities.
- 2 State the four entries of the table as conditional probabilities using the form $P(\text{this event} \mid \text{that event}) = \text{number}$.
- 3 Are the conditional probabilities in Part 2 empirical, a priori, or subjective probabilities?
- 4 Using information in the table, calculate the probability of the event a *fund is a loser in both Year 1 and Year 2*. (Note that because 50 percent of funds are categorized as losers in each year, the unconditional probability that a fund is labeled a loser in either year is 0.5.)

Solution to 1:

The four events needed to define the conditional probabilities are as follows:

Fund is a Year 1 winner

Fund is a Year 1 loser

Fund is a Year 2 loser

Fund is a Year 2 winner

Solution to 2:

From Row 1:

$$P(\text{fund is a Year 2 winner} \mid \text{fund is a Year 1 winner}) = 0.655$$

$$P(\text{fund is a Year 2 loser} \mid \text{fund is a Year 1 winner}) = 0.345$$

From Row 2:

$$P(\text{fund is a Year 2 winner} \mid \text{fund is a Year 1 loser}) = 0.155$$

$$P(\text{fund is a Year 2 loser} \mid \text{fund is a Year 1 loser}) = 0.845$$

Solution to 3:

These probabilities are calculated from data, so they are empirical probabilities.

Solution to 4:

The estimated probability is 0.423. With A the event that a *fund is a Year 2 loser* and B the event that a *fund is a Year 1 loser*, AB is the event that a *fund is a loser in both Year 1 and Year 2*. From Table 2, $P(A \mid B) = 0.845$ and $P(B) = 0.50$. Thus, using Equation 2, we find that

$$P(AB) = P(A \mid B)P(B) = 0.845(0.50) = 0.4225$$

or a probability of approximately 0.423.

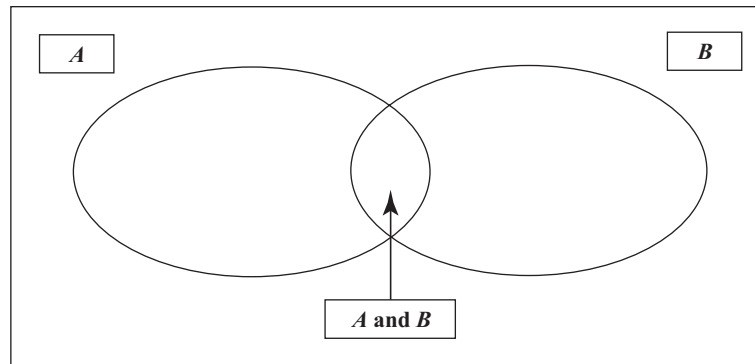
Equation 2 states that the joint probability of A and B equals the probability of A given B times the probability of B . Because $P(AB) = P(BA)$, the expression $P(AB) = P(BA) = P(B \mid A)P(A)$ is equivalent to Equation 2.

When we have two events, A and B , that we are interested in, we often want to know the probability that either A or B occurs. Here the word “or” is inclusive, meaning that either A or B occurs or that both A and B occur. Put another way, the probability of A or B is the probability that at least one of the two events occurs. Such probabilities are calculated using the **addition rule for probabilities**.

- **Addition Rule for Probabilities.** Given events A and B , the probability that A or B occurs, or both occur, is equal to the probability that A occurs, plus the probability that B occurs, minus the probability that both A and B occur.

$$P(A \text{ or } B) = P(A) + P(B) - P(AB) \quad (3)$$

If we think of the individual probabilities of A and B as sets built of outcomes of one or more random variables, the first step in calculating the probability of A or B is to sum the probabilities of the outcomes in A to obtain $P(A)$. If A and B share any outcomes, then if we now added $P(B)$ to $P(A)$, we would count twice the probabilities of those shared outcomes. So we add to $P(A)$ the quantity $[P(B) - P(AB)]$, which is the probability of outcomes in B net of the probability of any outcomes already counted when we computed $P(A)$. Figure 1 illustrates this process; we avoid double-counting the outcomes in the intersection of A and B by subtracting $P(AB)$. As an example of the calculation, if $P(A) = 0.50$, $P(B) = 0.40$, and $P(AB) = 0.20$, then $P(A \text{ or } B) = 0.50 + 0.40 - 0.20 = 0.70$. Only if the two events A and B were mutually exclusive, so that $P(AB) = 0$, would it be correct to state that $P(A \text{ or } B) = P(A) + P(B)$.

Figure 1 Addition Rule for Probabilities

The next example shows how much useful information can be obtained using the few probability rules presented to this point.

EXAMPLE 3**Probability of a Limit Order Executing**

You have two buy limit orders outstanding on the same stock. A limit order to buy stock at a stated price is an order to buy at that price or lower. A number of vendors, including an internet service that you use, supply the estimated probability that a limit order will be filled within a stated time horizon, given the current stock price and the price limit. One buy order (Order 1) was placed at a price limit of \$10. The probability that it will execute within one hour is 0.35. The second buy order (Order 2) was placed at a price limit of \$9.75; it has a 0.25 probability of executing within the same one-hour time frame.

- 1 What is the probability that either Order 1 or Order 2 will execute?
- 2 What is the probability that Order 2 executes, given that Order 1 executes?

Solution to 1:

The probability is 0.35. The two probabilities that are given are $P(\text{Order 1 executes}) = 0.35$ and $P(\text{Order 2 executes}) = 0.25$. Note that if Order 2 executes, it is certain that Order 1 also executes because the price must pass through \$10 to reach \$9.75. Thus,

$$P(\text{Order 1 executes} \mid \text{Order 2 executes}) = 1$$

and

$$P(\text{Order 1 executes and Order 2 executes}) = P(\text{Order 1 executes} \mid \text{Order 2 executes})P(\text{Order 2 executes}) = 1(0.25) = 0.25$$

To answer the question, we use the addition rule for probabilities:

$$\begin{aligned} P(\text{Order 1 executes or Order 2 executes}) &= P(\text{Order 1 executes}) \\ &+ P(\text{Order 2 executes}) - P(\text{Order 1 executes and Order 2 executes}) \\ &= 0.35 + 0.25 - 0.25 = 0.35 \end{aligned}$$

Note that the outcomes for which Order 2 executes are a subset of the outcomes for which Order 1 executes. After you count the probability that Order 1 executes, you have counted the probability of the outcomes for which Order 2 also executes. Therefore, the answer to the question is the probability that Order 1 executes, 0.35.

Solution to 2:

If the first order executes, the probability that the second order executes is 0.714. In the solution to Part 1, you found that $P(\text{Order 1 executes and Order 2 executes}) = P(\text{Order 1 executes} \mid \text{Order 2 executes})P(\text{Order 2 executes}) = 1(0.25) = 0.25$. An equivalent way to state this joint probability is useful here:

$$\begin{aligned} P(\text{Order 1 executes and Order 2 executes}) &= 0.25 \\ &= P(\text{Order 2 executes} \mid \text{Order 1 executes})P(\text{Order 1 executes}) \end{aligned}$$

Because $P(\text{Order 1 executes}) = 0.35$ was a given, you have one equation with one unknown:

$$0.25 = P(\text{Order 2 executes} \mid \text{Order 1 executes})(0.35)$$

You conclude that $P(\text{Order 2 executes} \mid \text{Order 1 executes}) = 0.25/0.35 = 5/7$, or about 0.714. You can also use Equation 1 to obtain this answer.

Of great interest to investment analysts are the concepts of independence and dependence. These concepts bear on such basic investment questions as which financial variables are useful for investment analysis, whether asset returns can be predicted, and whether superior investment managers can be selected based on their past records.

Two events are independent if the occurrence of one event does not affect the probability of occurrence of the other event.

- **Definition of Independent Events.** Two events A and B are **independent** if and only if $P(A \mid B) = P(A)$ or, equivalently, $P(B \mid A) = P(B)$.

When two events are not independent, they are **dependent**: The probability of occurrence of one is related to the occurrence of the other. If we are trying to forecast one event, information about a dependent event may be useful, but information about an independent event will not be useful.

When two events are independent, the multiplication rule for probabilities, Equation 2, simplifies because $P(A \mid B)$ in that equation then equals $P(A)$.

- **Multiplication Rule for Independent Events.** When two events are independent, the joint probability of A and B equals the product of the individual probabilities of A and B .

$$P(AB) = P(A)P(B) \quad (4)$$

Therefore, if we are interested in two independent events with probabilities of 0.75 and 0.50, respectively, the probability that both will occur is $0.375 = 0.75(0.50)$. The multiplication rule for independent events generalizes to more than two events; for example, if A , B , and C are independent events, then $P(ABC) = P(A)P(B)P(C)$.

EXAMPLE 4

BankCorp's Earnings per Share (1)

As part of your work as a banking industry analyst, you build models for forecasting earnings per share of the banks you cover. Today you are studying BankCorp. The historical record shows that in 55 percent of recent quarters BankCorp's

EPS has increased sequentially, and in 45 percent of quarters EPS has decreased or remained unchanged sequentially.⁶ At this point in your analysis, you are assuming that changes in sequential EPS are independent.

Earnings per share for 2Q:2014 (that is, EPS for the second quarter of 2014) were larger than EPS for 1Q:2014.

- 1 What is the probability that 3Q:2014 EPS will be larger than 2Q:2014 EPS (a positive change in sequential EPS)?
- 2 What is the probability that EPS decreases or remains unchanged in the next two quarters?

Solution to 1:

Under the assumption of independence, the probability that 3Q:2014 EPS will be larger than 2Q:2014 EPS is the unconditional probability of positive change, 0.55. The fact that 2Q:2014 EPS was larger than 1Q:2014 EPS is not useful information, as the next change in EPS is independent of the prior change.

Solution to 2:

The probability is $0.2025 = 0.45(0.45)$.

The following example illustrates how difficult it is to satisfy a set of independent criteria even when each criterion by itself is not necessarily stringent.

EXAMPLE 5

Screening Stocks for Investment

You have developed a stock screen—a set of criteria for selecting stocks. Your investment universe (the set of securities from which you make your choices) is the Russell 1000 Index, an index of 1,000 large-capitalization US equities. Your criteria capture different aspects of the selection problem; you believe that the criteria are independent of each other, to a close approximation.

Criterion	Fraction of Russell 1000 Stocks Meeting Criterion
First valuation criterion	0.50
Second valuation criterion	0.50
Analyst coverage criterion	0.25
Profitability criterion for company	0.55
Financial strength criterion for company	0.67

How many stocks do you expect to pass your screen?

Only 23 stocks out of 1,000 pass through your screen. If you define five events—the stock passes the first valuation criterion, the stock passes the second valuation criterion, the stock passes the analyst coverage criterion, the company

⁶ *Sequential* comparisons of quarterly EPS are with the immediate prior quarter. A sequential comparison stands in contrast to a comparison with the same quarter one year ago (another frequent type of comparison).

passes the profitability criterion, the company passes the financial strength criterion (say events A , B , C , D , and E , respectively)—then the probability that a stock will pass all five criteria, under independence, is

$$\begin{aligned} P(ABCDE) &= P(A)P(B)P(C)P(D)P(E) = (0.50)(0.50)(0.25)(0.55)(0.67) \\ &= 0.023031 \end{aligned}$$

Although only one of the five criteria is even moderately strict (the strictest lets 25 percent of stocks through), the probability that a stock can pass all five is only 0.023031, or about 2 percent. The size of the list of candidate investments is $0.023031(1,000) = 23.031$, or 23 stocks.

An area of intense interest to investment managers and their clients is whether records of past performance are useful in identifying repeat winners and losers. The following example shows how this issue relates to the concept of independence.

EXAMPLE 6

Conditional Probabilities and Predictability of Mutual Fund Performance (2)

The purpose of the Vidal-Garcia (2013) study, introduced in Example 2, was to address the question of repeat European mutual fund winners and losers. If the status of a fund as a winner or a loser in one year is independent of whether it is a winner in the next year, the practical value of performance ranking is questionable. Using the four events defined in Example 2 as building blocks, we can define the following events to address the issue of predictability of mutual fund performance:

Fund is a Year 1 winner and fund is a Year 2 winner

Fund is a Year 1 winner and fund is a Year 2 loser

Fund is a Year 1 loser and fund is a Year 2 winner

Fund is a Year 1 loser and fund is a Year 2 loser

In Part 4 of Example 2, you calculated that

$$P(\text{fund is a Year 2 loser and fund is a Year 1 loser}) = 0.423$$

If the ranking in one year is independent of the ranking in the next year, what will you expect $P(\text{fund is a Year 2 loser and fund is a Year 1 loser})$ to be? Interpret the empirical probability 0.423.

By the multiplication rule for independent events, $P(\text{fund is a Year 2 loser and fund is a Year 1 loser}) = P(\text{fund is a Year 2 loser})P(\text{fund is a Year 1 loser})$. Because 50 percent of funds are categorized as losers in each year, the unconditional probability that a fund is labeled a loser in either year is 0.50. Thus $P(\text{fund is a Year 2 loser})P(\text{fund is a Year 1 loser}) = 0.50(0.50) = 0.25$. If the status of a fund as a loser in one year is independent of whether it is a loser in the prior year, we conclude that $P(\text{fund is a Year 2 loser and fund is a Year 1 loser}) = 0.25$. This probability is a priori because it is obtained from reasoning about the problem. You could also reason that the four events described above define categories and that if funds are randomly assigned to the four categories, there is a $1/4$ probability of *fund is a Year 1 loser and fund is a Year 2 loser*. If the classifications in Year 1 and Year 2 were dependent, then the assignment of funds to categories would not be random. The empirical probability of 0.423 is above 0.25. Is this

apparent predictability the result of chance? A test conducted by Vidal-Garcia indicated a less than 1 percent chance of observing the tabled data if the Year 1 and Year 2 rankings were independent.

In investments, the question of whether one event (or characteristic) provides information about another event (or characteristic) arises in both time-series settings (through time) and cross-sectional settings (among units at a given point in time). Examples 4 and 6 examined independence in a time-series setting. Example 5 illustrated independence in a cross-sectional setting. Independence/dependence relationships are often also explored in both settings using regression analysis, a technique we discuss in a later reading.

In many practical problems, we logically analyze a problem as follows: We formulate scenarios that we think affect the likelihood of an event that interests us. We then estimate the probability of the event, given the scenario. When the scenarios (conditioning events) are mutually exclusive and exhaustive, no possible outcomes are left out. We can then analyze the event using the **total probability rule**. This rule explains the unconditional probability of the event in terms of probabilities conditional on the scenarios.

The total probability rule is stated below for two cases. Equation 5 gives the simplest case, in which we have two scenarios. One new notation is introduced: If we have an event or scenario S , the event not- S , called the **complement** of S , is written S^C .⁷ Note that $P(S) + P(S^C) = 1$, as either S or not- S must occur. Equation 6 states the rule for the general case of n mutually exclusive and exhaustive events or scenarios.

■ **The Total Probability Rule.**

$$\begin{aligned} P(A) &= P(AS) + P(AS^C) \\ &= P(A | S)P(S) + P(A | S^C)P(S^C) \end{aligned} \tag{5}$$

$$\begin{aligned} P(A) &= P(AS_1) + P(AS_2) + \dots + P(AS_n) \\ &= P(A | S_1)P(S_1) + P(A | S_2)P(S_2) + \dots + P(A | S_n)P(S_n) \end{aligned} \tag{6}$$

where S_1, S_2, \dots, S_n are mutually exclusive and exhaustive scenarios or events.

Equation 6 states the following: The probability of any event [$P(A)$] can be expressed as a weighted average of the probabilities of the event, given scenarios [terms such as $P(A | S_1)$]; the weights applied to these conditional probabilities are the respective probabilities of the scenarios [terms such as $P(S_1)$ multiplying $P(A | S_1)$], and the scenarios must be mutually exclusive and exhaustive. Among other applications, this rule is needed to understand Bayes' formula, which we discuss later in the reading.

In the next example, we use the total probability rule to develop a consistent set of views about BankCorp's earnings per share.

EXAMPLE 7

BankCorp's Earnings per Share (2)

You are continuing your investigation into whether you can predict the direction of changes in BankCorp's quarterly EPS. You define four events:

⁷ For readers familiar with mathematical treatments of probability, S , a notation usually reserved for a concept called the sample space, is being appropriated to stand for *scenario*.

Event	Probability
A = Change in sequential EPS is positive next quarter	0.55
A^C = Change in sequential EPS is 0 or negative next quarter	0.45
S = Change in sequential EPS is positive in the prior quarter	0.55
S^C = Change in sequential EPS is 0 or negative in the prior quarter	0.45

On inspecting the data, you observe some persistence in EPS changes: Increases tend to be followed by increases, and decreases by decreases. The first probability estimate you develop is $P(\text{change in sequential EPS is positive next quarter} \mid \text{change in sequential EPS is 0 or negative in the prior quarter}) = P(A \mid S^C) = 0.40$. The most recent quarter's EPS (2Q:2014) is announced, and the change is a positive sequential change (the event S). You are interested in forecasting EPS for 3Q:2014.

- 1 Write this statement in probability notation: "the probability that the change in sequential EPS is positive next quarter, given that the change in sequential EPS is positive the prior quarter."
- 2 Calculate the probability in Part 1. (Calculate the probability that is consistent with your other probabilities or beliefs.)

Solution to 1:

In probability notation, this statement is written $P(A \mid S)$.

Solution to 2:

The probability is 0.673 that the change in sequential EPS is positive for 3Q:2014, given the positive change in sequential EPS for 2Q:2014, as shown on the following page.

According to Equation 5, $P(A) = P(A \mid S)P(S) + P(A \mid S^C)P(S^C)$. The values of the probabilities needed to calculate $P(A \mid S)$ are already known: $P(A) = 0.55$, $P(S) = 0.55$, $P(S^C) = 0.45$, and $P(A \mid S^C) = 0.40$. Substituting into Equation 5,

$$0.55 = P(A \mid S)(0.55) + 0.40(0.45)$$

Solving for the unknown, $P(A \mid S) = [0.55 - 0.40(0.45)]/0.55 = 0.672727$, or 0.673.

You conclude that $P(\text{change in sequential EPS is positive next quarter} \mid \text{change in sequential EPS is positive the prior quarter}) = 0.673$. Any other probability is not consistent with your other estimated probabilities. Reflecting the persistence in EPS changes, this conditional probability of a positive EPS change, 0.673, is greater than the unconditional probability of an EPS increase, 0.55.

In the reading on statistical concepts and market returns, we discussed the concept of a weighted average or weighted mean. The example highlighted in that reading was that portfolio return is a weighted average of the returns on the individual assets in the portfolio, where the weight applied to each asset's return is the fraction of the portfolio invested in that asset. The total probability rule, which is a rule for stating an unconditional probability in terms of conditional probabilities, is also a weighted average. In that formula, probabilities of scenarios are used as weights. Part of the definition of weighted average is that the weights sum to 1. The probabilities of mutually exclusive and exhaustive events do sum to 1 (this is part of the definition of probability). The next weighted average we discuss, the expected value of a random variable, also uses probabilities as weights.

The expected value of a random variable is an essential quantitative concept in investments. Investors continually make use of expected values—in estimating the rewards of alternative investments, in forecasting EPS and other corporate financial variables and ratios, and in assessing any other factor that may affect their financial position. The expected value of a random variable is defined as follows:

- **Definition of Expected Value.** The **expected value** of a random variable is the probability-weighted average of the possible outcomes of the random variable. For a random variable X , the expected value of X is denoted $E(X)$.

Expected value (for example, expected stock return) looks either to the future, as a forecast, or to the “true” value of the mean (the population mean, discussed in the reading on statistical concepts and market returns). We should distinguish expected value from the concepts of historical or sample mean. The sample mean also summarizes in a single number a central value. However, the sample mean presents a central value for a particular set of observations as an equally weighted average of those observations. To summarize, the contrast is forecast versus historical, or population versus sample.

EXAMPLE 8

BankCorp’s Earnings per Share (3)

You continue with your analysis of BankCorp’s EPS. In Table 3, you have recorded a probability distribution for BankCorp’s EPS for the current fiscal year.

Table 3 Probability Distribution for BankCorp’s EPS

Probability	EPS (\$)
0.15	2.60
0.45	2.45
0.24	2.20
0.16	2.00
1.00	

What is the expected value of BankCorp’s EPS for the current fiscal year?

Following the definition of expected value, list each outcome, weight it by its probability, and sum the terms.

$$\begin{aligned} E(\text{EPS}) &= 0.15(\$2.60) + 0.45(\$2.45) + 0.24(\$2.20) + 0.16(\$2.00) \\ &= \$2.3405 \end{aligned}$$

The expected value of EPS is \$2.34.

An equation that summarizes your calculation in Example 8 is

$$E(X) = P(X_1)X_1 + P(X_2)X_2 + \dots + P(X_n)X_n = \sum_{i=1}^n P(X_i)X_i \quad (7)$$

where X_i is one of n possible outcomes of the random variable X .⁸

The expected value is our forecast. Because we are discussing random quantities, we cannot count on an individual forecast being realized (although we hope that, on average, forecasts will be accurate). It is important, as a result, to measure the risk we face. Variance and standard deviation measure the dispersion of outcomes around the expected value or forecast.

- **Definition of Variance.** The **variance** of a random variable is the expected value (the probability-weighted average) of squared deviations from the random variable's expected value:

$$\sigma^2(X) = E\left\{\left[X - E(X)\right]^2\right\} \quad (8)$$

- The two notations for variance are $\sigma^2(X)$ and $\text{Var}(X)$.

Variance is a number greater than or equal to 0 because it is the sum of squared terms. If variance is 0, there is no dispersion or risk. The outcome is certain, and the quantity X is not random at all. Variance greater than 0 indicates dispersion of outcomes. Increasing variance indicates increasing dispersion, all else equal. Variance of X is a quantity in the squared units of X . For example, if the random variable is return in percent, variance of return is in units of percent squared. Standard deviation is easier to interpret than variance, as it is in the same units as the random variable. If the random variable is return in percent, standard deviation of return is also in units of percent. In the following example, when the variance of returns is stated as a percent or amount of money, to conserve space the reading may suppress showing the unit squared. Note that when the variance of returns is stated as a decimal, the complication of dealing with units of “percent squared” does not arise.

- **Definition of Standard Deviation.** **Standard deviation** is the positive square root of variance.

The best way to become familiar with these concepts is to work examples.

EXAMPLE 9

BankCorp's Earnings per Share (4)

In Example 8, you calculated the expected value of BankCorp's EPS as \$2.34, which is your forecast. Now you want to measure the dispersion around your forecast. Table 4 shows your view of the probability distribution of EPS for the current fiscal year.

Table 4 Probability Distribution for BankCorp's EPS

Probability	EPS (\$)
0.15	2.60
0.45	2.45
0.24	2.20

(continued)

⁸ For simplicity, we model all random variables in this reading as discrete random variables, which have a countable set of outcomes. For continuous random variables, which are discussed along with discrete random variables in the reading on common probability distributions, the operation corresponding to summation is integration.

Table 4 (Continued)

Probability	EPS (\$)
0.16	2.00
1.00	

What are the variance and standard deviation of BankCorp's EPS for the current fiscal year?

The order of calculation is always expected value, then variance, then standard deviation. Expected value has already been calculated. Following the definition of variance above, calculate the deviation of each outcome from the mean or expected value, square each deviation, weight (multiply) each squared deviation by its probability of occurrence, and then sum these terms.

$$\begin{aligned}\sigma^2(\text{EPS}) &= P(\$2.60)[\$2.60 - E(\text{EPS})]^2 + P(\$2.45)[\$2.45 - E(\text{EPS})]^2 \\ &\quad + P(\$2.20)[\$2.20 - E(\text{EPS})]^2 + P(\$2.00)[\$2.00 - E(\text{EPS})]^2 \\ &= 0.15(2.60 - 2.34)^2 + 0.45(2.45 - 2.34)^2 \\ &\quad + 0.24(2.20 - 2.34)^2 + 0.16(2.00 - 2.34)^2 \\ &= 0.01014 + 0.005445 + 0.004704 + 0.018496 = 0.038785\end{aligned}$$

Standard deviation is the positive square root of 0.038785:

$$\sigma(\text{EPS}) = 0.038785^{1/2} = 0.196939, \text{ or approximately } 0.20.$$

An equation that summarizes your calculation of variance in Example 9 is

$$\begin{aligned}\sigma^2(X) &= P(X_1)[X_1 - E(X)]^2 + P(X_2)[X_2 - E(X)]^2 \\ &\quad + \dots + P(X_n)[X_n - E(X)]^2 = \sum_{i=1}^n P(X_i)[X_i - E(X)]^2\end{aligned}\tag{9}$$

where X_i is one of n possible outcomes of the random variable X .

In investments, we make use of any relevant information available in making our forecasts. When we refine our expectations or forecasts, we are typically making adjustments based on new information or events; in these cases we are using **conditional expected values**. The expected value of a random variable X given an event or scenario S is denoted $E(X | S)$. Suppose the random variable X can take on any one of n distinct outcomes X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n (these outcomes form a set of mutually exclusive and exhaustive events). The expected value of X conditional on S is the first outcome, X_1 , times the probability of the first outcome given S , $P(X_1 | S)$, plus the second outcome, X_2 , times the probability of the second outcome given S , $P(X_2 | S)$, and so forth.

$$E(X | S) = P(X_1 | S)X_1 + P(X_2 | S)X_2 + \dots + P(X_n | S)X_n\tag{10}$$

We will illustrate this equation shortly.

Parallel to the total probability rule for stating unconditional probabilities in terms of conditional probabilities, there is a principle for stating (unconditional) expected values in terms of conditional expected values. This principle is the **total probability rule for expected value**.

■ **The Total Probability Rule for Expected Value.**

$$E(X) = E(X | S)P(S) + E(X | S^C)P(S^C)\tag{11}$$

$$E(X) = E(X | S_1)P(S_1) + E(X | S_2)P(S_2) + \dots + E(X | S_n)P(S_n) \quad (12)$$

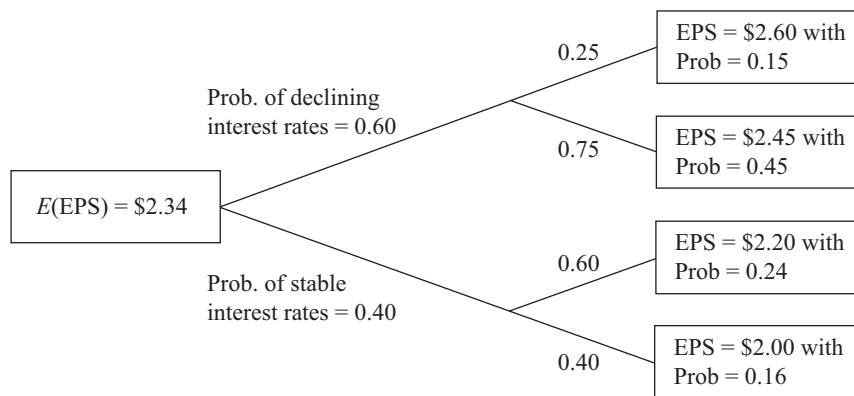
where S_1, S_2, \dots, S_n are mutually exclusive and exhaustive scenarios or events.

The general case, Equation 12, states that the expected value of X equals the expected value of X given Scenario 1, $E(X | S_1)$, times the probability of Scenario 1, $P(S_1)$, plus the expected value of X given Scenario 2, $E(X | S_2)$, times the probability of Scenario 2, $P(S_2)$, and so forth.

To use this principle, we formulate mutually exclusive and exhaustive scenarios that are useful for understanding the outcomes of the random variable. This approach was employed in developing the probability distribution of BankCorp's EPS in Examples 8 and 9, as we now discuss.

The earnings of BankCorp are interest rate sensitive, benefiting from a declining interest rate environment. Suppose there is a 0.60 probability that BankCorp will operate in a *declining interest rate environment* in the current fiscal year and a 0.40 probability that it will operate in a *stable interest rate environment* (assessing the chance of an increasing interest rate environment as negligible). If a *declining interest rate environment* occurs, the probability that EPS will be \$2.60 is estimated at 0.25, and the probability that EPS will be \$2.45 is estimated at 0.75. Note that 0.60, the probability of *declining interest rate environment*, times 0.25, the probability of \$2.60 EPS given a *declining interest rate environment*, equals 0.15, the (unconditional) probability of \$2.60 given in the table in Examples 8 and 9. The probabilities are consistent. Also, $0.60(0.75) = 0.45$, the probability of \$2.45 EPS given in Tables 3 and 4. The **tree diagram** in Figure 2 shows the rest of the analysis.

Figure 2 BankCorp's Forecasted EPS



A declining interest rate environment points us to the **node** of the tree that branches off into outcomes of \$2.60 and \$2.45. We can find expected EPS given a declining interest rate environment as follows, using Equation 10:

$$\begin{aligned} E(\text{EPS} | \text{declining interest rate environment}) &= 0.25(\$2.60) + 0.75(\$2.45) \\ &= \$2.4875 \end{aligned}$$

If interest rates are stable,

$$\begin{aligned} E(\text{EPS} | \text{stable interest rate environment}) &= 0.60(\$2.20) + 0.40(\$2.00) \\ &= \$2.12 \end{aligned}$$

Once we have the new piece of information that interest rates are stable, for example, we revise our original expectation of EPS from \$2.34 downward to \$2.12. Now using the total probability rule for expected value,

$$E(\text{EPS}) = E(\text{EPS} \mid \text{declining interest rate environment})P(\text{declining interest rate environment}) + E(\text{EPS} \mid \text{stable interest rate environment})P(\text{stable interest rate environment})$$

So $E(\text{EPS}) = \$2.4875(0.60) + \$2.12(0.40) = \$2.3405$ or about \$2.34.

This amount is identical to the estimate of the expected value of EPS calculated directly from the probability distribution in Example 8. Just as our probabilities must be consistent, so must our expected values, unconditional and conditional; otherwise our investment actions may create profit opportunities for other investors at our expense.

To review, we first developed the factors or scenarios that influence the outcome of the event of interest. After assigning probabilities to these scenarios, we formed expectations conditioned on the different scenarios. Then we worked backward to formulate an expected value as of today. In the problem just worked, EPS was the event of interest, and the interest rate environment was the factor influencing EPS.

We can also calculate the variance of EPS given each scenario:

$$\begin{aligned} & \sigma^2(\text{EPS} \mid \text{declining interest rate environment}) \\ &= P(\$2.60 \mid \text{declining interest rate environment}) \\ & \quad \times [\$2.60 - E(\text{EPS} \mid \text{declining interest rate environment})]^2 \\ & \quad + P(\$2.45 \mid \text{declining interest rate environment}) \\ & \quad \times [\$2.45 - E(\text{EPS} \mid \text{declining interest rate environment})]^2 \\ &= 0.25(\$2.60 - \$2.4875)^2 + 0.75(\$2.45 - \$2.4875)^2 \\ &= 0.004219 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} & \sigma^2(\text{EPS} \mid \text{stable interest rate environment}) \\ &= P(\$2.20 \mid \text{stable interest rate environment}) \\ & \quad \times [\$2.20 - E(\text{EPS} \mid \text{stable interest rate environment})]^2 \\ & \quad + P(\$2.00 \mid \text{stable interest rate environment}) \\ & \quad \times [\$2.00 - E(\text{EPS} \mid \text{stable interest rate environment})]^2 \\ &= 0.60(\$2.20 - \$2.12)^2 + 0.40(\$2.00 - \$2.12)^2 = 0.0096 \end{aligned}$$

These are **conditional variances**, the variance of EPS given a *declining interest rate environment* and the variance of EPS given a *stable interest rate environment*. The relationship between unconditional variance and conditional variance is a relatively advanced topic.⁹ The main points are 1) that variance, like expected value, has a conditional counterpart to the unconditional concept and 2) that we can use conditional variance to assess risk given a particular scenario.

⁹ The unconditional variance of EPS is the sum of two terms: 1) the expected value (probability-weighted average) of the conditional variances (parallel to the total probability rules) and 2) the variance of conditional expected values of EPS. The second term arises because the variability in conditional expected value is a source of risk. Term 1 is $\sigma^2(\text{EPS}) = P(\text{declining interest rate environment}) \sigma^2(\text{EPS} \mid \text{declining interest rate environment}) + P(\text{stable interest rate environment}) \sigma^2(\text{EPS} \mid \text{stable interest rate environment}) = 0.60(0.004219) + 0.40(0.0096) = 0.006371$. Term 2 is $\sigma^2[E(\text{EPS} \mid \text{interest rate environment})] = 0.60(\$2.4875 - \$2.34)^2 + 0.40(\$2.12 - \$2.34)^2 = 0.032414$. Summing the two terms, unconditional variance equals $0.006371 + 0.032414 = 0.038785$.

EXAMPLE 10**BankCorp's Earnings per Share (5)**

Continuing with BankCorp, you focus now on BankCorp's cost structure. One model you are researching for BankCorp's operating costs is

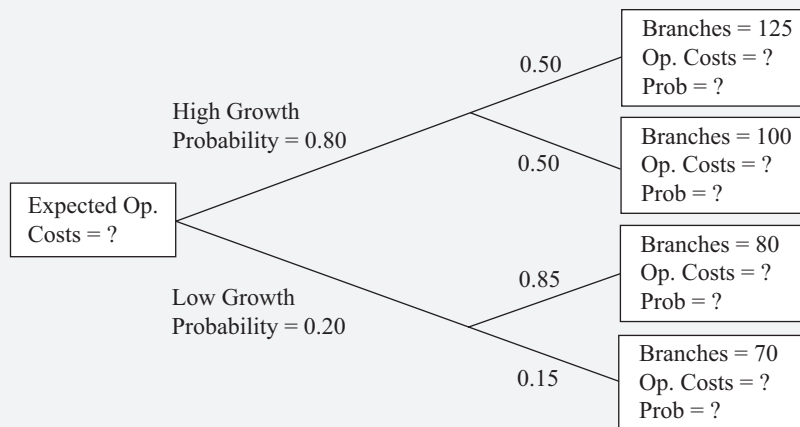
$$\hat{Y} = a + bX$$

where \hat{Y} is a forecast of operating costs in millions of dollars and X is the number of branch offices. \hat{Y} represents the expected value of Y given X , or $E(Y | X)$. (\hat{Y} is a notation used in regression analysis, which we discuss in a later reading.) You interpret the intercept a as fixed costs and b as variable costs. You estimate the equation as

$$\hat{Y} = 12.5 + 0.65X$$

BankCorp currently has 66 branch offices, and the equation estimates that $12.5 + 0.65(66) = \$55.4$ million. You have two scenarios for growth, pictured in the tree diagram in Figure 3.

Figure 3 BankCorp's Forecasted Operating Costs



- 1 Compute the forecasted operating costs given the different levels of operating costs, using $\hat{Y} = 12.5 + 0.65X$. State the probability of each level of the number of branch offices. These are the answers to the questions in the terminal boxes of the tree diagram.
- 2 Compute the expected value of operating costs under the high growth scenario. Also calculate the expected value of operating costs under the low growth scenario.
- 3 Answer the question in the initial box of the tree: What are BankCorp's expected operating costs?

Solution to 1:

Using $\hat{Y} = 12.5 + 0.65X$, from top to bottom, we have

Operating Costs	Probability
$\hat{Y} = 12.5 + 0.65(125) = \93.75 million	$0.80(0.50) = 0.40$
$\hat{Y} = 12.5 + 0.65(100) = \77.50 million	$0.80(0.50) = 0.40$
$\hat{Y} = 12.5 + 0.65(80) = \64.50 million	$0.20(0.85) = 0.17$
$\hat{Y} = 12.5 + 0.65(70) = \58.00 million	$0.20(0.15) = 0.03$
	Sum = 1.00

Solution to 2:

Dollar amounts are in millions.

$$\begin{aligned} E(\text{operating costs} \mid \text{high growth}) &= 0.50(\$93.75) + 0.50(\$77.50) \\ &= \$85.625 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} E(\text{operating costs} \mid \text{low growth}) &= 0.85(\$64.50) + 0.15(\$58.00) \\ &= \$63.525 \end{aligned}$$

Solution to 3:

Dollar amounts are in millions.

$$\begin{aligned} E(\text{operating costs}) &= E(\text{operating costs} \mid \text{high growth})P(\text{high growth}) \\ &\quad + E(\text{operating costs} \mid \text{low growth})P(\text{low growth}) \\ &= \$85.625(0.80) + \$63.525(0.20) = \$81.205 \end{aligned}$$

BankCorp's expected operating costs are \$81.205 million.

We will see conditional probabilities again when we discuss Bayes' formula. This section has introduced a few problems that can be addressed using probability concepts. The following problem draws on these concepts, as well as on analytical skills.

EXAMPLE 11**The Default Risk Premium for a One-Period Debt Instrument**

As the co-manager of a short-term bond portfolio, you are reviewing the pricing of a speculative-grade, one-year-maturity, zero-coupon bond. For this type of bond, the return is the difference between the amount paid and the principal value received at maturity. Your goal is to estimate an appropriate default risk premium for this bond. You define the default risk premium as the extra return above the risk-free return that will compensate investors for default risk. If R is the promised return (yield-to-maturity) on the debt instrument and R_F is the risk-free rate, the default risk premium is $R - R_F$. You assess the probability that the bond defaults as $P(\text{the bond defaults}) = 0.06$. Looking at current money market yields, you find that one-year US Treasury bills (T-bills) are offering a return of 2 percent, an estimate of R_F . As a first step, you make the simplifying assumption that bondholders will recover nothing in the event of a default. What is the minimum default risk premium you should require for this instrument?

The challenge in this type of problem is to find a starting point. In many problems, including this one, an effective first step is to divide up the possible outcomes into mutually exclusive and exhaustive events in an economically logical way. Here, from the viewpoint of a bondholder, the two events that affect returns are *the bond defaults* and *the bond does not default*. These two events cover all outcomes. How do these events affect a bondholder's returns? A second step is to compute the value of the bond for the two events. We have no specifics on bond **face value**, but we can compute value per \$1 or one unit of currency invested.

	<i>The Bond Defaults</i>	<i>The Bond Does Not Default</i>
Bond value	\$0	\$(1 + R)

The third step is to find the expected value of the bond (per \$1 invested).

$$E(\text{bond}) = \$0 \times P(\text{the bond defaults}) + \$(1 + R)[1 - P(\text{the bond defaults})]$$

So $E(\text{bond}) = \$(1 + R)[1 - P(\text{the bond defaults})]$. The expected value of the T-bill per \$1 invested is $(1 + R_F)$. In fact, this value is certain because the T-bill is risk free. The next step requires economic reasoning. You want the default premium to be large enough so that you expect to at least break even compared with investing in the T-bill. This outcome will occur if the expected value of the bond equals the expected value of the T-bill per \$1 invested.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Expected Value of Bond} &= \text{Expected Value of T-Bill} \\ \$(1 + R)[1 - P(\text{the bond defaults})] &= (1 + R_F) \end{aligned}$$

Solving for the promised return on the bond, you find $R = \{(1 + R_F)/[1 - P(\text{the bond defaults})]\} - 1$. Substituting in the values in the statement of the problem, $R = [1.02/(1 - 0.06)] - 1 = 1.08511 - 1 = 0.08511$ or about 8.51 percent, and default risk premium is $R - R_F = 8.51\% - 2\% = 6.51\%$.

You require a default risk premium of at least 651 basis points. You can state the matter as follows: If the bond is priced to yield 8.51 percent, you will earn a 651 basis-point spread and receive the bond principal with 94 percent probability. If the bond defaults, however, you will lose everything. With a premium of 651 basis points, you expect to just break even relative to an investment in T-bills. Because an investment in the zero-coupon bond has variability, if you are risk averse you will demand that the premium be larger than 651 basis points.

This analysis is a starting point. Bondholders usually recover part of their investment after a default. A next step would be to incorporate a recovery rate.

In this section, we have treated random variables such as EPS as stand-alone quantities. We have not explored how descriptors such as expected value and variance of EPS may be functions of other random variables. Portfolio return is one random variable that is clearly a function of other random variables, the random returns on the individual securities in the portfolio. To analyze a portfolio's expected return and variance of return, we must understand these quantities are a function of characteristics of the individual securities' returns. Looking at the dispersion or variance of portfolio return, we see that the way individual security returns move together or covary is important. To understand the significance of these movements, we need to explore some new concepts, covariance and correlation. The next section, which deals with portfolio expected return and variance of return, introduces these concepts.

3

PORTFOLIO EXPECTED RETURN AND VARIANCE OF RETURN

Modern portfolio theory makes frequent use of the idea that investment opportunities can be evaluated using expected return as a measure of reward and variance of return as a measure of risk. The calculation and interpretation of portfolio expected return and variance of return are fundamental skills. In this section, we will develop an understanding of portfolio expected return and variance of return.¹⁰ Portfolio return is determined by the returns on the individual holdings. As a result, the calculation of portfolio variance, as a function of the individual asset returns, is more complex than the variance calculations illustrated in the previous section.

We work with an example of a portfolio that is 50 percent invested in an S&P 500 Index fund, 25 percent invested in a US long-term corporate bond fund, and 25 percent invested in a fund indexed to the MSCI EAFE Index (representing equity markets in Europe, Australasia, and the Far East). Table 5 shows these weights.

Table 5 Portfolio Weights

Asset Class	Weights
S&P 500	0.50
US long-term corporate bonds	0.25
MSCI EAFE	0.25

We first address the calculation of the expected return on the portfolio. In the previous section, we defined the expected value of a random variable as the probability-weighted average of the possible outcomes. Portfolio return, we know, is a weighted average of the returns on the securities in the portfolio. Similarly, the expected return on a portfolio is a weighted average of the expected returns on the securities in the portfolio, using exactly the same weights. When we have estimated the expected returns on the individual securities, we immediately have portfolio expected return. This convenient fact follows from the properties of expected value.

■ **Properties of Expected Value.** Let w_i be any constant and R_i be a random variable.

- 1 The expected value of a constant times a random variable equals the constant times the expected value of the random variable.

$$E(w_i R_i) = w_i E(R_i)$$

- 2 The expected value of a weighted sum of random variables equals the weighted sum of the expected values, using the same weights.

$$E(w_1 R_1 + w_2 R_2 + \dots + w_n R_n) = w_1 E(R_1) + w_2 E(R_2) + \dots + w_n E(R_n) \quad (13)$$

¹⁰ Although we outline a number of basic concepts in this section, we do not present mean–variance analysis per se. For a presentation of mean–variance analysis, see the readings on portfolio concepts, as well as the extended treatments in standard investment textbooks such as Bodie, Kane, and Marcus (2017), Elton, Gruber, Brown, and Goetzmann (2013), and Reilly and Brown (2018).

Suppose we have a random variable with a given expected value. If we multiply each outcome by 2, for example, the random variable's expected value is multiplied by 2 as well. That is the meaning of Part 1. The second statement is the rule that directly leads to the expression for portfolio expected return. A portfolio with n securities is defined by its portfolio weights, w_1, w_2, \dots, w_n , which sum to 1. So portfolio return, R_p , is $R_p = w_1R_1 + w_2R_2 + \dots + w_nR_n$. We can state the following principle:

- **Calculation of Portfolio Expected Return.** Given a portfolio with n securities, the expected return on the portfolio is a weighted average of the expected returns on the component securities:

$$\begin{aligned} E(R_p) &= E(w_1R_1 + w_2R_2 + \dots + w_nR_n) \\ &= w_1E(R_1) + w_2E(R_2) + \dots + w_nE(R_n) \end{aligned}$$

Suppose we have estimated expected returns on the assets in the portfolio, as given in Table 6.

Table 6 Weights and Expected Returns

Asset Class	Weight	Expected Return (%)
S&P 500	0.50	13
US long-term corporate bonds	0.25	6
MSCI EAFE	0.25	15

We calculate the expected return on the portfolio as 11.75 percent:

$$\begin{aligned} E(R_p) &= w_1E(R_1) + w_2E(R_2) + w_3E(R_3) \\ &= 0.50(13\%) + 0.25(6\%) + 0.25(15\%) = 11.75\% \end{aligned}$$

In the previous section, we studied variance as a measure of dispersion of outcomes around the expected value. Here we are interested in portfolio variance of return as a measure of investment risk. Letting R_p stand for the return on the portfolio, portfolio variance is $\sigma^2(R_p) = E\{[R_p - E(R_p)]^2\}$ according to Equation 8. How do we implement this definition? In the reading on statistical concepts and market returns, we learned how to calculate a historical or sample variance based on a sample of returns. Now we are considering variance in a forward-looking sense. We will use information about the individual assets in the portfolio to obtain portfolio variance of return. To avoid clutter in notation, we write ER_p for $E(R_p)$. We need the concept of covariance.

- **Definition of Covariance.** Given two random variables R_i and R_j , the covariance between R_i and R_j is

$$\text{Cov}(R_i, R_j) = E[(R_i - ER_i)(R_j - ER_j)] \quad (14)$$

Alternative notations are $\sigma(R_i, R_j)$ and σ_{ij} .

Equation 14 states that the covariance between two random variables is the probability-weighted average of the cross-products of each random variable's deviation from its own expected value. We will return to discuss covariance after we establish the need for the concept. Working from the definition of variance, we find

$$\begin{aligned}
 \sigma^2(R_p) &= E\left[(R_p - ER_p)^2\right] \\
 &= E\left[\left(w_1R_1 + w_2R_2 + w_3R_3 - E(w_1R_1 + w_2R_2 + w_3R_3)\right)^2\right] \\
 &= E\left[\left(w_1R_1 + w_2R_2 + w_3R_3 - w_1ER_1 - w_2ER_2 - w_3ER_3\right)^2\right] \\
 &\quad \text{(using Equation 13)} \\
 &= E\left[\left(w_1(R_1 - ER_1) + w_2(R_2 - ER_2) + w_3(R_3 - ER_3)\right)^2\right] \\
 &\quad \text{(rearranging)} \\
 &= E\left[\left(w_1(R_1 - ER_1) + w_2(R_2 - ER_2) + w_3(R_3 - ER_3)\right)\right. \\
 &\quad \left.\times\left(w_1(R_1 - ER_1) + w_2(R_2 - ER_2) + w_3(R_3 - ER_3)\right)\right] \\
 &\quad \text{(what squaring means)} \\
 &= E\left[w_1w_1(R_1 - ER_1)(R_1 - ER_1) + w_1w_2(R_1 - ER_1)(R_2 - ER_2)\right. \\
 &\quad + w_1w_3(R_1 - ER_1)(R_3 - ER_3) + w_2w_1(R_2 - ER_2)(R_1 - ER_1) \\
 &\quad + w_2w_2(R_2 - ER_2)(R_2 - ER_2) + w_2w_3(R_2 - ER_2)(R_3 - ER_3) \\
 &\quad + w_3w_1(R_3 - ER_3)(R_1 - ER_1) + w_3w_2(R_3 - ER_3)(R_2 - ER_2) \\
 &\quad \left.+ w_3w_3(R_3 - ER_3)(R_3 - ER_3)\right] \quad \text{(doing the multiplication)} \\
 &= w_1^2E\left[(R_1 - ER_1)^2\right] + w_1w_2E\left[(R_1 - ER_1)(R_2 - ER_2)\right] \\
 &\quad + w_1w_3E\left[(R_1 - ER_1)(R_3 - ER_3)\right] + w_2w_1E\left[(R_2 - ER_2)(R_1 - ER_1)\right] \\
 &\quad + w_2^2E\left[(R_2 - ER_2)^2\right] + w_2w_3E\left[(R_2 - ER_2)(R_3 - ER_3)\right] \\
 &\quad + w_3w_1E\left[(R_3 - ER_3)(R_1 - ER_1)\right] + w_3w_2E\left[(R_3 - ER_3)(R_2 - ER_2)\right] \\
 &\quad + w_3^2E\left[(R_3 - ER_3)^2\right] \quad \text{(recalling that the } w_i \text{ terms are constants)} \\
 &= w_1^2\sigma^2(R_1) + w_1w_2\text{Cov}(R_1, R_2) + w_1w_3\text{Cov}(R_1, R_3) \\
 &\quad + w_1w_2\text{Cov}(R_1, R_2) + w_2^2\sigma^2(R_2) + w_2w_3\text{Cov}(R_2, R_3) \\
 &\quad + w_1w_3\text{Cov}(R_1, R_3) + w_2w_3\text{Cov}(R_2, R_3) + w_3^2\sigma^2(R_3) \quad \text{(15)}
 \end{aligned}$$

The last step follows from the definitions of variance and covariance.¹¹ For the italicized covariance terms in Equation 15, we used the fact that the order of variables in covariance does not matter: $\text{Cov}(R_2, R_1) = \text{Cov}(R_1, R_2)$, for example. As we will show, the diagonal variance terms $\sigma^2(R_1)$, $\sigma^2(R_2)$, and $\sigma^2(R_3)$ can be expressed as $\text{Cov}(R_1, R_1)$, $\text{Cov}(R_2, R_2)$, and $\text{Cov}(R_3, R_3)$, respectively. Using this fact, the most compact way to

¹¹ Useful facts about variance and covariance include: 1) The variance of a constant *times* a random variable equals the constant squared times the variance of the random variable, or $\sigma^2(wR) = w^2\sigma^2(R)$; 2) The variance of a constant *plus* a random variable equals the variance of the random variable, or $\sigma^2(w + R) = \sigma^2(R)$ because a constant has zero variance; 3) The covariance between a constant and a random variable is zero.

state Equation 15 is $\sigma^2(R_p) = \sum_{i=1}^3 \sum_{j=1}^3 w_i w_j \text{Cov}(R_i, R_j)$. The double summation signs

say: “Set $i = 1$ and let j run from 1 to 3; then set $i = 2$ and let j run from 1 to 3; next set $i = 3$ and let j run from 1 to 3; finally, add the nine terms.” This expression generalizes for a portfolio of any size n to

$$\sigma^2(R_p) = \sum_{i=1}^n \sum_{j=1}^n w_i w_j \text{Cov}(R_i, R_j) \quad (16)$$

We see from Equation 15 that individual variances of return constitute part, but not all, of portfolio variance. The three variances are actually outnumbered by the six covariance terms off the diagonal. For three assets, the ratio is 1 to 2, or 50 percent. If there are 20 assets, there are 20 variance terms and $20(20) - 20 = 380$ off-diagonal covariance terms. The ratio of variance terms to off-diagonal covariance terms is less than 6 to 100, or 6 percent. A first observation, then, is that as the number of holdings increases, covariance¹² becomes increasingly important, all else equal.

What exactly is the effect of covariance on portfolio variance? The covariance terms capture how the co-movements of returns affect portfolio variance. For example, consider two stocks: One tends to have high returns (relative to its expected return) when the other has low returns (relative to its expected return). The returns on one stock tend to offset the returns on the other stock, lowering the variability or variance of returns on the portfolio. Like variance, the units of covariance are hard to interpret, and we will introduce a more intuitive concept shortly. Meanwhile, from the definition of covariance, we can establish two essential observations about covariance.

- 1 We can interpret the sign of covariance as follows:

Covariance of returns is negative if, when the return on one asset is above its expected value, the return on the other asset tends to be below its expected value (an average inverse relationship between returns).

Covariance of returns is 0 if returns on the assets are unrelated.

Covariance of returns is positive when the returns on both assets tend to be on the same side (above or below) their expected values at the same time (an average positive relationship between returns).

- 2 The covariance of a random variable with itself (*own covariance*) is its own variance: $\text{Cov}(R, R) = E\{[R - E(R)][R - E(R)]\} = E\{[R - E(R)]^2\} = \sigma^2(R)$.

A complete list of the covariances constitutes all the statistical data needed to compute portfolio variance of return. Covariances are often presented in a square format called a **covariance matrix**. Table 7 summarizes the inputs for portfolio expected return and variance of return.

Table 7 Inputs to Portfolio Expected Return and Variance

A. Inputs to Portfolio Expected Return

Asset	A	B	C
	$E(R_A)$	$E(R_B)$	$E(R_C)$

(continued)

¹² When the meaning of covariance as “off-diagonal covariance” is obvious, as it is here, we omit the qualifying words. Covariance is usually used in this sense.

Table 7 (Continued)

B. Covariance Matrix: The Inputs to Portfolio Variance of Return			
Asset	A	B	C
A	Cov(R_A, R_A)	Cov(R_A, R_B)	Cov(R_A, R_C)
B	Cov(R_B, R_A)	Cov(R_B, R_B)	Cov(R_B, R_C)
C	Cov(R_C, R_A)	Cov(R_C, R_B)	Cov(R_C, R_C)

With three assets, the covariance matrix has $3^2 = 3 \times 3 = 9$ entries, but it is customary to treat the diagonal terms, the variances, separately from the off-diagonal terms. These diagonal terms are bolded in Table 7. This distinction is natural, as security variance is a single-variable concept. So there are $9 - 3 = 6$ covariances, excluding variances. But $\text{Cov}(R_B, R_A) = \text{Cov}(R_A, R_B)$, $\text{Cov}(R_C, R_A) = \text{Cov}(R_A, R_C)$, and $\text{Cov}(R_C, R_B) = \text{Cov}(R_B, R_C)$. The covariance matrix below the diagonal is the mirror image of the covariance matrix above the diagonal. As a result, there are only $6/2 = 3$ distinct covariance terms to estimate. In general, for n securities, there are $n(n - 1)/2$ distinct covariances to estimate and n variances to estimate.

Suppose we have the covariance matrix shown in Table 8. We will be working in returns stated as percents and the table entries are in units of percent squared ($\%^2$). The terms $38\%^2$ and $400\%^2$ are 0.0038 and 0.0400, respectively, stated as decimals; correctly working in percents and decimals leads to identical answers.

Table 8 Covariance Matrix

	S&P 500	US Long-Term Corporate Bonds	MSCI EAFE
S&P 500	400	45	189
US long-term corporate bonds	45	81	38
MSCI EAFE	189	38	441

Taking Equation 15 and grouping variance terms together produces the following:

$$\begin{aligned}
 \sigma^2(R_p) &= w_1^2 \sigma^2(R_1) + w_2^2 \sigma^2(R_2) + w_3^2 \sigma^2(R_3) + 2w_1 w_2 \text{Cov}(R_1, R_2) \\
 &\quad + 2w_1 w_3 \text{Cov}(R_1, R_3) + 2w_2 w_3 \text{Cov}(R_2, R_3) \\
 &= (0.50)^2 (400) + (0.25)^2 (81) + (0.25)^2 (441) \\
 &\quad + 2(0.50)(0.25)(45) + 2(0.50)(0.25)(189) \\
 &\quad + 2(0.25)(0.25)(38) \\
 &= 100 + 5.0625 + 27.5625 + 11.25 + 47.25 + 4.75 = 195.875
 \end{aligned}
 \tag{17}$$

The variance is 195.875. Standard deviation of return is $195.875^{1/2} = 14$ percent. To summarize, the portfolio has an expected annual return of 11.75 percent and a standard deviation of return of 14 percent.

Let us look at the first three terms in the calculation above. Their sum, $100 + 5.0625 + 27.5625 = 132.625$, is the contribution of the individual variances to portfolio variance. If the returns on the three assets were independent, covariances would be 0 and the standard deviation of portfolio return would be $132.625^{1/2} = 11.52$ percent as compared to 14 percent before. The portfolio would have less risk. Suppose the covariance terms were negative. Then a negative number would be added to 132.625,

so portfolio variance and risk would be even smaller. At the same time, we have not changed expected return. For the same expected portfolio return, the portfolio has less risk. This risk reduction is a diversification benefit, meaning a risk-reduction benefit from holding a portfolio of assets. The diversification benefit increases with decreasing covariance. This observation is a key insight of modern portfolio theory. It is even more intuitively stated when we can use the concept of **correlation**. Then we can say that as long as security returns are not perfectly positively correlated, diversification benefits are possible. Furthermore, the smaller the correlation between security returns, the greater the cost of not diversifying (in terms of risk-reduction benefits forgone), all else equal.

- **Definition of Correlation.** The correlation between two random variables, R_i and R_j , is defined as $\rho(R_i, R_j) = \text{Cov}(R_i, R_j) / \sigma(R_i)\sigma(R_j)$. Alternative notations are $\text{Corr}(R_i, R_j)$ and ρ_{ij} .

Frequently, covariance is substituted out using the relationship $\text{Cov}(R_i, R_j) = \rho(R_i, R_j)\sigma(R_i)\sigma(R_j)$. The division indicated in the definition makes correlation a pure number (one without a unit of measurement) and places bounds on its largest and smallest possible values. Using the above definition, we can state a correlation matrix from data in the covariance matrix alone. Table 9 shows the correlation matrix.

Table 9 Correlation Matrix of Returns

	S&P 500	US Long-Term Corporate Bonds	MSCI EAFE
S&P 500	1.00	0.25	0.45
US long-term corporate bonds	0.25	1.00	0.20
MSCI EAFE	0.45	0.20	1.00

For example, the covariance between long-term bonds and MSCI EAFE is 38, from Table 8. The standard deviation of long-term bond returns is $81^{1/2} = 9$ percent, that of MSCI EAFE returns is $441^{1/2} = 21$ percent, from diagonal terms in Table 8. The correlation $\rho(\text{Return on long-term bonds}, \text{Return on EAFE})$ is $38 / (9\%)(21\%) = 0.201$, rounded to 0.20. The correlation of the S&P 500 with itself equals 1: The calculation is its own covariance divided by its standard deviation squared.

- **Properties of Correlation.**

- 1 Correlation is a number between -1 and $+1$ for two random variables, X and Y :

$$-1 \leq \rho(X, Y) \leq +1$$

- 2 A correlation of 0 (uncorrelated variables) indicates an absence of any linear (straight-line) relationship between the variables.¹³ Increasingly positive correlation indicates an increasingly strong positive linear relationship (up to 1, which indicates a perfect linear relationship). Increasingly negative correlation indicates an increasingly strong negative (inverse) linear relationship (down to -1 , which indicates a perfect inverse linear relationship).¹⁴

¹³ If the correlation is 0, $R_1 = a + bR_2 + \text{error}$, with $b = 0$.

¹⁴ If the correlation is positive, $R_1 = a + bR_2 + \text{error}$, with $b > 0$. If the correlation is negative, $b < 0$.

EXAMPLE 12**Portfolio Expected Return and Variance of Return**

You have a portfolio of two mutual funds, A and B, 75 percent invested in A, as shown in Table 10.

Table 10 Mutual Fund Expected Returns, Return Variances, and Covariances

Fund	A	B
	$E(R_A) = 20\%$	$E(R_B) = 12\%$
Covariance Matrix		
Fund	A	B
A	625	120
B	120	196

- 1 Calculate the expected return of the portfolio.
- 2 Calculate the correlation matrix for this problem. Carry out the answer to two decimal places.
- 3 Compute portfolio standard deviation of return.

Solution to 1:

$E(R_p) = w_A E(R_A) + (1 - w_A) E(R_B) = 0.75(20\%) + 0.25(12\%) = 18\%$. Portfolio weights must sum to 1: $w_B = 1 - w_A$.

Solution to 2:

$\sigma(R_A) = 625^{1/2} = 25$ percent $\sigma(R_B) = 196^{1/2} = 14$ percent. There is one distinct covariance and thus one distinct correlation: $\rho(R_A, R_B) = \text{Cov}(R_A, R_B) / (\sigma(R_A)\sigma(R_B)) = 120 / [25(14)] = 0.342857$, or 0.34 Table 11 shows the correlation matrix.

Table 11 Correlation Matrix

	A	B
A	1.00	0.34
B	0.34	1.00

Diagonal terms are always equal to 1 in a correlation matrix.

Solution to 3:

$$\begin{aligned}\sigma^2(R_p) &= w_A^2 \sigma^2(R_A) + w_B^2 \sigma^2(R_B) + 2w_A w_B \text{Cov}(R_A, R_B) \\ &= (0.75)^2 (625) + (0.25)^2 (196) + 2(0.75)(0.25)(120) \\ &= 351.5625 + 12.25 + 45 = 408.8125 \\ \sigma(R_p) &= 408.8125^{1/2} = 20.22 \text{ percent}\end{aligned}$$

How do we estimate return covariance and correlation? Frequently, we make forecasts on the basis of historical covariance or use other methods based on historical return data, such as a market model regression.¹⁵ We can also calculate covariance using the **joint probability function** of the random variables, if that can be estimated. The joint probability function of two random variables X and Y , denoted $P(X,Y)$, gives the probability of joint occurrences of values of X and Y . For example, $P(3, 2)$, is the probability that X equals 3 and Y equals 2.

Suppose that the joint probability function of the returns on BankCorp stock (R_A) and the returns on NewBank stock (R_B) has the simple structure given in Table 12.

Table 12 Joint Probability Function of BankCorp and NewBank Returns (Entries Are Joint Probabilities)

	$R_B = 20\%$	$R_B = 16\%$	$R_B = 10\%$
$R_A = 25\%$	0.20	0	0
$R_A = 12\%$	0	0.50	0
$R_A = 10\%$	0	0	0.30

The expected return on BankCorp stock is $0.20(25\%) + 0.50(12\%) + 0.30(10\%) = 14\%$. The expected return on NewBank stock is $0.20(20\%) + 0.50(16\%) + 0.30(10\%) = 15\%$. The joint probability function above might reflect an analysis based on whether banking industry conditions are good, average, or poor. Table 13 presents the calculation of covariance.

Table 13 Covariance Calculations

Banking Industry Condition	Deviations BankCorp	Deviations NewBank	Product of Deviations	Probability of Condition	Probability-Weighted Product
Good	25-14	20-15	55	0.20	11
Average	12-14	16-15	-2	0.50	-1
Poor	10-14	10-15	20	0.30	6
					$Cov(R_A, R_B) = 16$

Note: Expected return for BankCorp is 14% and for NewBank, 15%.

The first and second columns of numbers show, respectively, the deviations of BankCorp and NewBank returns from their mean or expected value. The next column shows the product of the deviations. For example, for good industry conditions, $(25 - 14)(20 - 15) = 11(5) = 55$. Then 55 is multiplied or weighted by 0.20, the probability that banking industry conditions are good: $55(0.20) = 11$. The calculations for average and poor banking conditions follow the same pattern. Summing up these probability-weighted products, we find that $Cov(R_A, R_B) = 16$.

A formula for computing the covariance between random variables R_A and R_B is

$$Cov(R_A, R_B) = \sum_i \sum_j P(R_{A,i}, R_{B,j}) (R_{A,i} - ER_A) (R_{B,j} - ER_B) \tag{18}$$

15 See any of the textbooks mentioned in Footnote 10.

The formula tells us to sum all possible deviation cross-products weighted by the appropriate joint probability. In the example we just worked, as Table 12 shows, only three joint probabilities are nonzero. Therefore, in computing the covariance of returns in this case, we need to consider only three cross-products:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Cov}(R_A, R_B) &= P(25, 20)[(25 - 14)(20 - 15)] + P(12, 16)[(12 - 14) \\ &\quad (16 - 15)] + P(10, 10)[(10 - 14)(10 - 15)] \\ &= 0.20(11)(5) + 0.50(-2)(1) + 0.30(-4)(-5) \\ &= 11 - 1 + 6 = 16\end{aligned}$$

One theme of this reading has been independence. Two random variables are independent when every possible pair of events—one event corresponding to a value of X and another event corresponding to a value of Y —are independent events. When two random variables are independent, their joint probability function simplifies.

- **Definition of Independence for Random Variables.** Two random variables X and Y are independent if and only if $P(X, Y) = P(X)P(Y)$.

For example, given independence, $P(3, 2) = P(3)P(2)$. We multiply the individual probabilities to get the joint probabilities. *Independence* is a stronger property than *uncorrelatedness* because correlation addresses only linear relationships. The following condition holds for independent random variables and, therefore, also holds for uncorrelated random variables.

- **Multiplication Rule for Expected Value of the Product of Uncorrelated Random Variables.** The expected value of the product of uncorrelated random variables is the product of their expected values.

$$E(XY) = E(X)E(Y) \text{ if } X \text{ and } Y \text{ are uncorrelated.}$$

Many financial variables, such as revenue (price times quantity), are the product of random quantities. When applicable, the above rule simplifies calculating expected value of a product of random variables.¹⁶

4

TOPICS IN PROBABILITY

In the remainder of the reading we discuss two topics that can be important in solving investment problems. We start with Bayes' formula: what probability theory has to say about learning from experience. Then we move to a discussion of shortcuts and principles for counting.

4.1 Bayes' Formula

When we make decisions involving investments, we often start with viewpoints based on our experience and knowledge. These viewpoints may be changed or confirmed by new knowledge and observations. Bayes' formula is a rational method for adjusting our viewpoints as we confront new information.¹⁷ Bayes' formula and related concepts have been applied in many business and investment decision-making contexts, including the evaluation of mutual fund performance.¹⁸

¹⁶ Otherwise, the calculation depends on conditional expected value; the calculation can be expressed as $E(XY) = E(X)E(Y | X)$.

¹⁷ Named after the Reverend Thomas Bayes (1702–61).

¹⁸ See Huij and Verbeek (2007).

Bayes' formula makes use of Equation 6, the total probability rule. To review, that rule expressed the probability of an event as a weighted average of the probabilities of the event, given a set of scenarios. Bayes' formula works in reverse; more precisely, it reverses the "given that" information. Bayes' formula uses the occurrence of the event to infer the probability of the scenario generating it. For that reason, Bayes' formula is sometimes called an inverse probability. In many applications, including the one illustrating its use in this section, an individual is updating his beliefs concerning the causes that may have produced a new observation.

- **Bayes' Formula.** Given a set of prior probabilities for an event of interest, if you receive new information, the rule for updating your probability of the event is

$$\begin{aligned} & \text{Updated probability of event given the new information} \\ &= \frac{\text{Probability of the new information given event}}{\text{Unconditional probability of the new information}} \times \text{Prior probability of event} \end{aligned}$$

In probability notation, this formula can be written concisely as:

$$P(\text{Event} \mid \text{Information}) = \frac{P(\text{Information} \mid \text{Event})}{P(\text{Information})} P(\text{Event})$$

To illustrate Bayes' formula, we work through an investment example that can be adapted to any actual problem. Suppose you are an investor in the stock of DriveMed, Inc. Positive earnings surprises relative to consensus EPS estimates often result in positive stock returns, and negative surprises often have the opposite effect. DriveMed is preparing to release last quarter's EPS result, and you are interested in which of these three events happened: *last quarter's EPS exceeded the consensus EPS estimate*, or *last quarter's EPS exactly met the consensus EPS estimate*, or *last quarter's EPS fell short of the consensus EPS estimate*. This list of the alternatives is mutually exclusive and exhaustive.

On the basis of your own research, you write down the following **prior probabilities** (or priors, for short) concerning these three events:

- $P(\text{EPS exceeded consensus}) = 0.45$
- $P(\text{EPS met consensus}) = 0.30$
- $P(\text{EPS fell short of consensus}) = 0.25$

These probabilities are "prior" in the sense that they reflect only what you know now, before the arrival of any new information.

The next day, DriveMed announces that it is expanding factory capacity in Singapore and Ireland to meet increased sales demand. You assess this new information. The decision to expand capacity relates not only to current demand but probably also to the prior quarter's sales demand. You know that sales demand is positively related to EPS. So now it appears more likely that last quarter's EPS will exceed the consensus.

The question you have is, "In light of the new information, what is the updated probability that the prior quarter's EPS exceeded the consensus estimate?"

Bayes' formula provides a rational method for accomplishing this updating. We can abbreviate the new information as *DriveMed expands*. The first step in applying Bayes' formula is to calculate the probability of the new information (here: *DriveMed expands*), given a list of events or scenarios that may have generated it. The list of events should cover all possibilities, as it does here. Formulating these conditional probabilities is the key step in the updating process. Suppose your view is

$$P(\text{DriveMed expands} \mid \text{EPS exceeded consensus}) = 0.75$$

$$P(\text{DriveMed expands} \mid \text{EPS met consensus}) = 0.20$$

$$P(\text{DriveMed expands} \mid \text{EPS fell short of consensus}) = 0.05$$

Conditional probabilities of an observation (here: *DriveMed expands*) are sometimes referred to as **likelihoods**. Again, likelihoods are required for updating the probability.

Next, you combine these conditional probabilities or likelihoods with your prior probabilities to get the unconditional probability for DriveMed expanding, $P(\text{DriveMed expands})$, as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}
 &P(\text{DriveMed expands}) \\
 &= P(\text{DriveMed expands} \mid \text{EPS exceeded consensus}) \\
 &\quad \times P(\text{EPS exceeded consensus}) \\
 &+ P(\text{DriveMed expands} \mid \text{EPS met consensus}) \\
 &\quad \times P(\text{EPS met consensus}) \\
 &+ P(\text{DriveMed expands} \mid \text{EPS fell short of consensus}) \\
 &\quad \times P(\text{EPS fell short of consensus}) \\
 &= 0.75(0.45) + 0.20(0.30) + 0.05(0.25) = 0.41, \text{ or } 41\%
 \end{aligned}$$

This is Equation 6, the total probability rule, in action. Now you can answer your question by applying Bayes' formula:

$$\begin{aligned}
 &P(\text{EPS exceeded consensus} \mid \text{DriveMed expands}) \\
 &= \frac{P(\text{DriveMed expands} \mid \text{EPS exceeded consensus})P(\text{EPS exceeded consensus})}{P(\text{DriveMed expands})} \\
 &= (0.75/0.41)(0.45) = 1.829268(0.45) = 0.823171
 \end{aligned}$$

Prior to DriveMed's announcement, you thought the probability that DriveMed would beat consensus expectations was 45 percent. On the basis of your interpretation of the announcement, you update that probability to 82.3 percent. This updated probability is called your **posterior probability** because it reflects or comes after the new information.

The Bayes' calculation takes the prior probability, which was 45 percent, and multiplies it by a ratio—the first term on the right-hand side of the equal sign. The denominator of the ratio is the probability that DriveMed expands, as you view it without considering (conditioning on) anything else. Therefore, this probability is unconditional. The numerator is the probability that DriveMed expands, if last quarter's EPS actually exceeded the consensus estimate. This last probability is larger than unconditional probability in the denominator, so the ratio (1.83 roughly) is greater than 1. As a result, your updated or posterior probability is larger than your prior probability. Thus, the ratio reflects the impact of the new information on your prior beliefs.

EXAMPLE 13

Inferring whether DriveMed's EPS Met Consensus EPS

You are still an investor in DriveMed stock. To review the givens, your prior probabilities are $P(\text{EPS exceeded consensus}) = 0.45$, $P(\text{EPS met consensus}) = 0.30$, and $P(\text{EPS fell short of consensus}) = 0.25$. You also have the following conditional probabilities:

$$\begin{aligned}
 &P(\text{DriveMed expands} \mid \text{EPS exceeded consensus}) = 0.75 \\
 &P(\text{DriveMed expands} \mid \text{EPS met consensus}) = 0.20 \\
 &P(\text{DriveMed expands} \mid \text{EPS fell short of consensus}) = 0.05
 \end{aligned}$$

Recall that you updated your probability that last quarter's EPS exceeded the consensus estimate from 45 percent to 82.3 percent after DriveMed announced it would expand. Now you want to update your other priors.

- 1 Update your prior probability that DriveMed's EPS met consensus.
- 2 Update your prior probability that DriveMed's EPS fell short of consensus.
- 3 Show that the three updated probabilities sum to 1. (Carry each probability to four decimal places.)
- 4 Suppose, because of lack of prior beliefs about whether DriveMed would meet consensus, you updated on the basis of prior probabilities that all three possibilities were equally likely: $P(\text{EPS exceeded consensus}) = P(\text{EPS met consensus}) = P(\text{EPS fell short of consensus}) = 1/3$. What is your estimate of the probability $P(\text{EPS exceeded consensus} \mid \text{DriveMed expands})$?

Solution to 1:

The probability is $P(\text{EPS met consensus} \mid \text{DriveMed expands}) =$

$$\frac{P(\text{DriveMed expands} \mid \text{EPS met consensus})}{P(\text{DriveMed expands})} P(\text{EPS met consensus})$$

The probability $P(\text{DriveMed expands})$ is found by taking each of the three conditional probabilities in the statement of the problem, such as $P(\text{DriveMed expands} \mid \text{EPS exceeded consensus})$; multiplying each one by the prior probability of the conditioning event, such as $P(\text{EPS exceeded consensus})$; then adding the three products. The calculation is unchanged from the problem in the text above: $P(\text{DriveMed expands}) = 0.75(0.45) + 0.20(0.30) + 0.05(0.25) = 0.41$, or 41 percent. The other probabilities needed, $P(\text{DriveMed expands} \mid \text{EPS met consensus}) = 0.20$ and $P(\text{EPS met consensus}) = 0.30$, are givens. So

$$\begin{aligned} &P(\text{EPS met consensus} \mid \text{DriveMed expands}) \\ &= [P(\text{DriveMed expands} \mid \text{EPS met consensus}) / P(\text{DriveMed expands})] \\ &\quad P(\text{EPS met consensus}) \\ &= (0.20 / 0.41)(0.30) = 0.487805(0.30) = 0.146341 \end{aligned}$$

After taking account of the announcement on expansion, your updated probability that last quarter's EPS for DriveMed just met consensus is 14.6 percent compared with your prior probability of 30 percent.

Solution to 2:

$P(\text{DriveMed expands})$ was already calculated as 41 percent. Recall that $P(\text{DriveMed expands} \mid \text{EPS fell short of consensus}) = 0.05$ and $P(\text{EPS fell short of consensus}) = 0.25$ are givens.

$$\begin{aligned} &P(\text{EPS fell short of consensus} \mid \text{DriveMed expands}) \\ &= [P(\text{DriveMed expands} \mid \text{EPS fell short of consensus}) / \\ &\quad P(\text{DriveMed expands})] P(\text{EPS fell short of consensus}) \\ &= (0.05 / 0.41)(0.25) = 0.121951(0.25) = 0.030488 \end{aligned}$$

As a result of the announcement, you have revised your probability that DriveMed's EPS fell short of consensus from 25 percent (your prior probability) to 3 percent.

Solution to 3:

The sum of the three updated probabilities is

$$\begin{aligned} &P(\text{EPS exceeded consensus} \mid \text{DriveMed expands}) + P(\text{EPS met consensus} \mid \\ &\quad \text{DriveMed expands}) + P(\text{EPS fell short of consensus} \mid \text{DriveMed expands}) \\ &= 0.8232 + 0.1463 + 0.0305 = 1.0000 \end{aligned}$$

The three events (*EPS exceeded consensus*, *EPS met consensus*, *EPS fell short of consensus*) are mutually exclusive and exhaustive: One of these events or statements must be true, so the conditional probabilities must sum to 1. Whether we are talking about conditional or unconditional probabilities, whenever we have a complete set of the distinct possible events or outcomes, the probabilities must sum to 1. This calculation serves as a check on your work.

Solution to 4:

Using the probabilities given in the question,

$$\begin{aligned} &P(\text{DriveMed expands}) \\ &= P(\text{DriveMed expands} \mid \text{EPS exceeded consensus}) \\ &\quad P(\text{EPS exceeded consensus}) + P(\text{DriveMed expands} \mid \\ &\quad \text{EPS met consensus})P(\text{EPS met consensus}) + P(\text{DriveMed expands} \mid \\ &\quad \text{EPS fell short of consensus})P(\text{EPS fell short of consensus}) \\ &= 0.75(1/3) + 0.20(1/3) + 0.05(1/3) = 1/3 \end{aligned}$$

Not surprisingly, the probability of DriveMed expanding is 1/3 because the decision maker has no prior beliefs or views regarding how well EPS performed relative to the consensus estimate. Now we can use Bayes' formula to find $P(\text{EPS exceeded consensus} \mid \text{DriveMed expands}) = [P(\text{DriveMed expands} \mid \text{EPS exceeded consensus})/P(\text{DriveMed expands})] P(\text{EPS exceeded consensus}) = [(0.75/(1/3))(1/3)] = 0.75$ or 75 percent. This probability is identical to your estimate of $P(\text{DriveMed expands} \mid \text{EPS exceeded consensus})$.

When the prior probabilities are equal, the probability of information given an event equals the probability of the event given the information. When a decision-maker has equal prior probabilities (called **diffuse priors**), the probability of an event is determined by the information.

4.2 Principles of Counting

The first step in addressing a question often involves determining the different logical possibilities. We may also want to know the number of ways that each of these possibilities can happen. In the back of our mind is often a question about probability. How likely is it that I will observe this particular possibility? Records of success and failure are an example. When we evaluate a market timer's record, one well-known evaluation method uses counting methods presented in this section.¹⁹ An important investment model, the binomial option pricing model, incorporates the combination formula that we will cover shortly. We can also use the methods in this section to calculate what we called a priori probabilities in Section 2. When we can assume that the possible outcomes of a random variable are equally likely, the probability of an event equals the number of possible outcomes favorable for the event divided by the total number of outcomes.

¹⁹ Henriksson and Merton (1981).

In counting, enumeration (counting the outcomes one by one) is of course the most basic resource. What we discuss in this section are shortcuts and principles. Without these shortcuts and principles, counting the total number of outcomes can be very difficult and prone to error. The first and basic principle of counting is the multiplication rule.

- **Multiplication Rule of Counting.** If one task can be done in n_1 ways, and a second task, given the first, can be done in n_2 ways, and a third task, given the first two tasks, can be done in n_3 ways, and so on for k tasks, then the number of ways the k tasks can be done is $(n_1)(n_2)(n_3) \dots (n_k)$.

Suppose we have three steps in an investment decision process. The first step can be done in two ways, the second in four ways, and the third in three ways. Following the multiplication rule, there are $(2)(4)(3) = 24$ ways in which we can carry out the three steps.

Another illustration is the assignment of members of a group to an equal number of positions. For example, suppose you want to assign three security analysts to cover three different industries. In how many ways can the assignments be made? The first analyst may be assigned in three different ways. Then two industries remain. The second analyst can be assigned in two different ways. Then one industry remains. The third and last analyst can be assigned in only one way. The total number of different assignments equals $(3)(2)(1) = 6$. The compact notation for the multiplication we have just performed is $3!$ (read: 3 factorial). If we had n analysts, the number of ways we could assign them to n tasks would be

$$n! = n(n-1)(n-2)(n-3)\dots 1$$

or **n factorial**. (By convention, $0! = 1$.) To review, in this application we repeatedly carry out an operation (here, job assignment) until we use up all members of a group (here, three analysts). With n members in the group, the multiplication formula reduces to n factorial.²⁰

The next type of counting problem can be called labeling problems.²¹ We want to give each object in a group a label, to place it in a category. The following example illustrates this type of problem.

A mutual fund guide ranked 18 bond mutual funds by total returns for the year 2014. The guide also assigned each fund one of five risk labels: *high risk* (four funds), *above-average risk* (four funds), *average risk* (three funds), *below-average risk* (four funds), and *low risk* (three funds); as $4 + 4 + 3 + 4 + 3 = 18$, all the funds are accounted for. How many different ways can we take 18 mutual funds and label 4 of them high risk, 4 above-average risk, 3 average risk, 4 below-average risk, and 3 low risk, so that each fund is labeled?

The answer is close to 13 billion. We can label any of 18 funds *high risk* (the first slot), then any of 17 remaining funds, then any of 16 remaining funds, then any of 15 remaining funds (now we have 4 funds in the *high risk* group); then we can label any of 14 remaining funds *above-average risk*, then any of 13 remaining funds, and so forth. There are $18!$ possible sequences. However, order of assignment within a category does not matter. For example, whether a fund occupies the first or third slot of the four funds labeled *high risk*, the fund has the same label (*high risk*). Thus there are $4!$ ways to assign a given group of four funds to the four *high risk* slots. Making the same argument for the other categories, in total there are $(4!)(4!)(3!)(4!)(3!)$ equivalent

²⁰ The shortest explanation of n factorial is that it is the number of ways to order n objects in a row. In all the problems to which we apply this counting method, we must use up all the members of a group (sampling without replacement).

²¹ This discussion follows Kemeny, Schleifer, Snell, and Thompson (1972) in terminology and approach.

sequences. To eliminate such redundancies from the $18!$ total, we divide $18!$ by $(4!)(4!)(3!)(4!)(3!)$. We have $18!/(4!)(4!)(3!)(4!)(3!) = 18!/(24)(24)(6)(24)(6) = 12,864,852,000$. This procedure generalizes as follows.

- **Multinomial Formula (General Formula for Labeling Problems).** The number of ways that n objects can be labeled with k different labels, with n_1 of the first type, n_2 of the second type, and so on, with $n_1 + n_2 + \dots + n_k = n$, is given by

$$\frac{n!}{n_1!n_2!\dots n_k!}$$

The multinomial formula with two different labels ($k = 2$) is especially important. This special case is called the combination formula. A **combination** is a listing in which the order of the listed items does not matter. We state the combination formula in a traditional way, but no new concepts are involved. Using the notation in the formula below, the number of objects with the first label is $r = n_1$ and the number with the second label is $n - r = n_2$ (there are just two categories, so $n_1 + n_2 = n$). Here is the formula:

- **Combination Formula (Binomial Formula).** The number of ways that we can choose r objects from a total of n objects, when the order in which the r objects are listed does not matter, is

$${}_nC_r = \binom{n}{r} = \frac{n!}{(n-r)!r!}$$

Here ${}_nC_r$ and $\binom{n}{r}$ are shorthand notations for $n!/(n-r)!r!$ (read: n choose r , or n combination r).

If we label the r objects as *belongs to the group* and the remaining objects as *does not belong to the group*, whatever the group of interest, the combination formula tells us how many ways we can select a group of size r . We can illustrate this formula with the binomial option pricing model. This model describes the movement of the underlying asset as a series of moves, price up (U) or price down (D). For example, two sequences of five moves containing three up moves, such as UUUDD and UDUUD, result in the same final stock price. At least for an option with a payoff dependent on final stock price, the number but not the order of up moves in a sequence matters. How many sequences of five moves *belong to the group with three up moves*? The answer is 10, calculated using the combination formula (“5 choose 3”):

$$\begin{aligned} {}_5C_3 &= 5!/(5-3)!3! \\ &= (5)(4)(3)(2)(1)/(2)(1)(3)(2)(1) = 120/12 = 10 \text{ ways} \end{aligned}$$

A useful fact can be illustrated as follows: ${}_5C_3 = 5!/2!3!$ equals ${}_5C_2 = 5!/3!2!$, as $3 + 2 = 5$; ${}_5C_4 = 5!/1!4!$ equals ${}_5C_1 = 5!/4!1!$, as $4 + 1 = 5$. This symmetrical relationship can save work when we need to calculate many possible combinations.

Suppose jurors want to select three companies out of a group of five to receive the first-, second-, and third-place awards for the best annual report. In how many ways can the jurors make the three awards? Order does matter if we want to distinguish among the three awards (the rank within the group of three); clearly the question makes order important. On the other hand, if the question were “In how many ways can the jurors choose three winners, without regard to place of finish?” we would use the combination formula.

To address the first question above, we need to count ordered listings such as *first place, New Company; second place, Fir Company; third place, Well Company*. An ordered listing is known as a **permutation**, and the formula that counts the number of permutations is known as the permutation formula.²²

- **Permutation Formula.** The number of ways that we can choose r objects from a total of n objects, when the order in which the r objects are listed does matter, is

$${}_n P_r = \frac{n!}{(n-r)!}$$

So the jurors have ${}_5 P_3 = 5!/(5-3)! = (5)(4)(3)(2)(1)/(2)(1) = 120/2 = 60$ ways in which they can make their awards. To see why this formula works, note that $(5)(4)(3)(2)(1)/(2)(1)$ reduces to $(5)(4)(3)$, after cancellation of terms. This calculation counts the number of ways to fill three slots choosing from a group of five people, according to the multiplication rule of counting. This number is naturally larger than it would be if order did not matter (compare 60 to the value of 10 for “5 choose 3” that we calculated above). For example, *first place, Well Company; second place, Fir Company; third place, New Company* contains the same three companies as *first place, New Company; second place, Fir Company; third place, Well Company*. If we were concerned only with award winners (without regard to place of finish), the two listings would count as one combination. But when we are concerned with the order of finish, the listings count as two permutations.

Answering the following questions may help you apply the counting methods we have presented in this section.

- 1 Does the task that I want to measure have a finite number of possible outcomes? If the answer is yes, you may be able to use a tool in this section, and you can go to the second question. If the answer is no, the number of outcomes is infinite, and the tools in this section do not apply.
- 2 Do I want to assign every member of a group of size n to one of n slots (or tasks)? If the answer is yes, use n factorial. If the answer is no, go to the third question.
- 3 Do I want to count the number of ways to apply one of three or more labels to each member of a group? If the answer is yes, use the multinomial formula. If the answer is no, go to the fourth question.
- 4 Do I want to count the number of ways that I can choose r objects from a total of n , when the order in which I list the r objects does not matter (can I give the r objects a label)? If the answer to these questions is yes, the combination formula applies. If the answer is no, go to the fifth question.
- 5 Do I want to count the number of ways I can choose r objects from a total of n , when the order in which I list the r objects is important? If the answer is yes, the permutation formula applies. If the answer is no, go to question 6.
- 6 Can the multiplication rule of counting be used? If it cannot, you may have to count the possibilities one by one, or use more advanced techniques than those presented here.²³

²² A more formal definition states that a permutation is an ordered subset of n distinct objects.

²³ Feller (1957) contains a very full treatment of counting problems and solution methods.

SUMMARY

In this reading, we have discussed the essential concepts and tools of probability. We have applied probability, expected value, and variance to a range of investment problems.

- A random variable is a quantity whose outcome is uncertain.
- Probability is a number between 0 and 1 that describes the chance that a stated event will occur.
- An event is a specified set of outcomes of a random variable.
- Mutually exclusive events can occur only one at a time. Exhaustive events cover or contain all possible outcomes.
- The two defining properties of a probability are, first, that $0 \leq P(E) \leq 1$ (where $P(E)$ denotes the probability of an event E), and second, that the sum of the probabilities of any set of mutually exclusive and exhaustive events equals 1.
- A probability estimated from data as a relative frequency of occurrence is an empirical probability. A probability drawing on personal or subjective judgment is a subjective probability. A probability obtained based on logical analysis is an a priori probability.
- A probability of an event E , $P(E)$, can be stated as odds for $E = P(E)/[1 - P(E)]$ or odds against $E = [1 - P(E)]/P(E)$.
- Probabilities that are inconsistent create profit opportunities, according to the Dutch Book Theorem.
- A probability of an event *not* conditioned on another event is an unconditional probability. The unconditional probability of an event A is denoted $P(A)$. Unconditional probabilities are also called marginal probabilities.
- A probability of an event given (conditioned on) another event is a conditional probability. The probability of an event A given an event B is denoted $P(A | B)$.
- The probability of both A and B occurring is the joint probability of A and B , denoted $P(AB)$.
- $P(A | B) = P(AB)/P(B)$, $P(B) \neq 0$.
- The multiplication rule for probabilities is $P(AB) = P(A | B)P(B)$.
- The probability that A or B occurs, or both occur, is denoted by $P(A \text{ or } B)$.
- The addition rule for probabilities is $P(A \text{ or } B) = P(A) + P(B) - P(AB)$.
- When events are independent, the occurrence of one event does not affect the probability of occurrence of the other event. Otherwise, the events are dependent.
- The multiplication rule for independent events states that if A and B are independent events, $P(AB) = P(A)P(B)$. The rule generalizes in similar fashion to more than two events.
- According to the total probability rule, if S_1, S_2, \dots, S_n are mutually exclusive and exhaustive scenarios or events, then $P(A) = P(A | S_1)P(S_1) + P(A | S_2)P(S_2) + \dots + P(A | S_n)P(S_n)$.
- The expected value of a random variable is a probability-weighted average of the possible outcomes of the random variable. For a random variable X , the expected value of X is denoted $E(X)$.
- The total probability rule for expected value states that $E(X) = E(X | S_1)P(S_1) + E(X | S_2)P(S_2) + \dots + E(X | S_n)P(S_n)$, where S_1, S_2, \dots, S_n are mutually exclusive and exhaustive scenarios or events.

- The variance of a random variable is the expected value (the probability-weighted average) of squared deviations from the random variable's expected value $E(X)$: $\sigma^2(X) = E\{[X - E(X)]^2\}$, where $\sigma^2(X)$ stands for the variance of X .
- Variance is a measure of dispersion about the mean. Increasing variance indicates increasing dispersion. Variance is measured in squared units of the original variable.
- Standard deviation is the positive square root of variance. Standard deviation measures dispersion (as does variance), but it is measured in the same units as the variable.
- Covariance is a measure of the co-movement between random variables.
- The covariance between two random variables R_i and R_j is the expected value of the cross-product of the deviations of the two random variables from their respective means: $\text{Cov}(R_i, R_j) = E\{[R_i - E(R_i)][R_j - E(R_j)]\}$. The covariance of a random variable with itself is its own variance.
- Correlation is a number between -1 and $+1$ that measures the co-movement (linear association) between two random variables: $\rho(R_i, R_j) = \text{Cov}(R_i, R_j) / [\sigma(R_i)\sigma(R_j)]$.
- To calculate the variance of return on a portfolio of n assets, the inputs needed are the n expected returns on the individual assets, n variances of return on the individual assets, and $n(n - 1)/2$ distinct covariances.
- Portfolio variance of return is $\sigma^2(R_p) = \sum_{i=1}^n \sum_{j=1}^n w_i w_j \text{Cov}(R_i, R_j)$.
- The calculation of covariance in a forward-looking sense requires the specification of a joint probability function, which gives the probability of joint occurrences of values of the two random variables.
- When two random variables are independent, the joint probability function is the product of the individual probability functions of the random variables.
- Bayes' formula is a method for updating probabilities based on new information.
- Bayes' formula is expressed as follows: Updated probability of event given the new information = [(Probability of the new information given event) / (Unconditional probability of the new information)] \times Prior probability of event.
- The multiplication rule of counting says, for example, that if the first step in a process can be done in 10 ways, the second step, given the first, can be done in 5 ways, and the third step, given the first two, can be done in 7 ways, then the steps can be carried out in $(10)(5)(7) = 350$ ways.
- The number of ways to assign every member of a group of size n to n slots is $n! = n(n - 1)(n - 2)(n - 3) \dots 1$. (By convention, $0! = 1$.)
- The number of ways that n objects can be labeled with k different labels, with n_1 of the first type, n_2 of the second type, and so on, with $n_1 + n_2 + \dots + n_k = n$, is given by $n! / (n_1! n_2! \dots n_k!)$. This expression is the multinomial formula.
- A special case of the multinomial formula is the combination formula. The number of ways to choose r objects from a total of n objects, when the order in which the r objects are listed does not matter, is

$${}_n C_r = \binom{n}{r} = \frac{n!}{(n-r)!r!}$$

- The number of ways to choose r objects from a total of n objects, when the order in which the r objects are listed does matter, is

$${}_n P_r = \frac{n!}{(n-r)!}$$

This expression is the permutation formula.

REFERENCES

- Bodie, Zvi, Alex Kane, and Alan J. Marcus. 2017. *Essentials of Investments*, 11th edition. New York: McGraw-Hill Irwin.
- Elton, Edwin J., Martin J. Gruber, Stephen J. Brown, and William N. Goetzmann. 2013. *Modern Portfolio Theory and Investment Analysis*, 9th edition. Hoboken, NJ: Wiley.
- Feller, William. 1957. *An Introduction to Probability Theory and Its Applications, Vol. I*, 2nd edition. New York: Wiley.
- Henriksson, Roy D., and Robert C. Merton. 1981. "On Market Timing and Investment Performance, II. Statistical Procedures for Evaluating Forecasting Skills." *Journal of Business*, vol. 54, no. 4:513–533.
- Huij, Joop, and Marno Verbeek. 2007. "Cross-sectional learning and short-run persistence in mutual fund performance." *Journal of Banking & Finance*, vol. 31:973–997.
- Kemeny, John G., Arthur Schleifer, Jr, J. Laurie Snell, and Gerald L. Thompson. 1972. *Finite Mathematics with Business Applications*, 2nd edition. Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice-Hall.
- Lo, Andrew W. 1999. "The Three P's of Total Risk Management." *Financial Analysts Journal*, vol. 55, no. 1:13–26.
- Ramsey, Frank P. 1931. "Truth and Probability." In *The Foundations of Mathematics and Other Logical Essays*, edited by R.B. Braithwaite. London: Routledge and Keegan Paul.
- Reilly, Frank K., and Keith C. Brown. 2018. *Investment Analysis and Portfolio Management*, 11th edition. Mason, OH: Cengage South-Western.
- Thanatawee, Yordying. 2013. "Ownership Structure with Dividend Policy: Evidence from Thailand." *International Journal of Economics and Finance*, vol. 5, no. 1:121–132.
- Vidal-Garcia, Javier. 2013. "The Persistence of European Mutual Fund Performance." *Research in International Business and Finance*, vol. 28:45–67.

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

- Suppose that 5 percent of the stocks meeting your stock-selection criteria are in the telecommunications (telecom) industry. Also, dividend-paying telecom stocks are 1 percent of the total number of stocks meeting your selection criteria. What is the probability that a stock is dividend paying, given that it is a telecom stock that has met your stock selection criteria?
- You are using the following three criteria to screen potential acquisition targets from a list of 500 companies:

Criterion	Fraction of the 500 Companies Meeting the Criterion
Product lines compatible	0.20
Company will increase combined sales growth rate	0.45
Balance sheet impact manageable	0.78

If the criteria are independent, how many companies will pass the screen?

- You apply both valuation criteria and financial strength criteria in choosing stocks. The probability that a randomly selected stock (from your investment universe) meets your valuation criteria is 0.25. Given that a stock meets your valuation criteria, the probability that the stock meets your financial strength criteria is 0.40. What is the probability that a stock meets both your valuation and financial strength criteria?
- Suppose the prospects for recovering principal for a defaulted bond issue depend on which of two economic scenarios prevails. Scenario 1 has probability 0.75 and will result in recovery of \$0.90 per \$1 principal value with probability 0.45, or in recovery of \$0.80 per \$1 principal value with probability 0.55. Scenario 2 has probability 0.25 and will result in recovery of \$0.50 per \$1 principal value with probability 0.85, or in recovery of \$0.40 per \$1 principal value with probability 0.15.
 - Compute the probability of each of the four possible recovery amounts: \$0.90, \$0.80, \$0.50, and \$0.40.
 - Compute the expected recovery, given the first scenario.
 - Compute the expected recovery, given the second scenario.
 - Compute the expected recovery.
 - Graph the information in a tree diagram.
- You have developed a set of criteria for evaluating distressed credits. Companies that do not receive a passing score are classed as likely to go bankrupt within 12 months. You gathered the following information when validating the criteria:
 - Forty percent of the companies to which the test is administered will go bankrupt within 12 months: $P(\text{nonsurvivor}) = 0.40$.
 - Fifty-five percent of the companies to which the test is administered pass it: $P(\text{pass test}) = 0.55$.
 - The probability that a company will pass the test given that it will subsequently survive 12 months, is 0.85: $P(\text{pass test} | \text{survivor}) = 0.85$.
 - What is $P(\text{pass test} | \text{nonsurvivor})$?

- B** Using Bayes' formula, calculate the probability that a company is a survivor, given that it passes the test; that is, calculate $P(\text{survivor} \mid \text{pass test})$.
- C** What is the probability that a company is a *nonsurvivor*, given that it fails the test?
- D** Is the test effective?
- 6** In probability theory, exhaustive events are *best* described as events:
- A** with a probability of zero.
- B** that are mutually exclusive.
- C** that include all potential outcomes.
- 7** Which probability estimate *most likely* varies greatly between people?
- A** An *a priori* probability
- B** An empirical probability
- C** A subjective probability
- 8** If the probability that Zolaf Company sales exceed last year's sales is 0.167, the odds for exceeding sales are *closest* to:
- A** 1 to 5.
- B** 1 to 6.
- C** 5 to 1.
- 9** The probability of an event given that another event has occurred is a:
- A** joint probability.
- B** marginal probability.
- C** conditional probability.
- 10** After estimating the probability that an investment manager will exceed his benchmark return in each of the next two quarters, an analyst wants to forecast the probability that the investment manager will exceed his benchmark return over the two-quarter period in total. Assuming that each quarter's performance is independent of the other, which probability rule should the analyst select?
- A** Addition rule
- B** Multiplication rule
- C** Total probability rule
- 11** Which of the following is a property of two dependent events?
- A** The two events must occur simultaneously.
- B** The probability of one event influences the probability of the other event.
- C** The probability of the two events occurring is the product of each event's probability.
- 12** Which of the following *best* describes how an analyst would estimate the expected value of a firm under the scenarios of bankruptcy and survivorship? The analyst would use:
- A** the addition rule.
- B** conditional expected values.
- C** the total probability rule for expected value.
- 13** An analyst developed two scenarios with respect to the recovery of \$100,000 principal from defaulted loans:

Scenario	Probability of Scenario (%)	Amount Recovered (\$)	Probability of Amount (%)
1	40	50,000	60
		30,000	40
2	60	80,000	90
		60,000	10

The amount of the expected recovery is *closest* to:

- A \$36,400.
 - B \$63,600.
 - C \$81,600.
- 14 US and Spanish bonds have return standard deviations of 0.64 and 0.56, respectively. If the correlation between the two bonds is 0.24, the covariance of returns is *closest* to:
- A 0.086.
 - B 0.670.
 - C 0.781.
- 15 The covariance of returns is positive when the returns on two assets tend to:
- A have the same expected values.
 - B be above their expected value at different times.
 - C be on the same side of their expected value at the same time.
- 16 Which of the following correlation coefficients indicates the weakest linear relationship between two variables?
- A -0.67
 - B -0.24
 - C 0.33
- 17 An analyst develops the following covariance matrix of returns:

	Hedge Fund	Market Index
Hedge fund	256	110
Market index	110	81

The correlation of returns between the hedge fund and the market index is *closest* to:

- A 0.005.
 - B 0.073.
 - C 0.764.
- 18 All else being equal, as the correlation between two assets approaches +1.0, the diversification benefits:
- A decrease.
 - B stay the same.
 - C increase.
- 19 Given a portfolio of five stocks, how many unique covariance terms, excluding variances, are required to calculate the portfolio return variance?
- A 10
 - B 20

C 25

- 20 The probability distribution for a company's sales is:

Probability	Sales (\$ millions)
0.05	70
0.70	40
0.25	25

The standard deviation of sales is *closest* to:

- A \$9.81 million.
 B \$12.20 million.
 C \$32.40 million.
- 21 Which of the following statements is *most* accurate? If the covariance of returns between two assets is 0.0023, then:
- A the assets' risk is near zero.
 B the asset returns are unrelated.
 C the asset returns have a positive relationship.
- 22 An analyst produces the following joint probability function for a foreign index (FI) and a domestic index (DI).

	$R_{DI} = 30\%$	$R_{DI} = 25\%$	$R_{DI} = 15\%$
$R_{FI} = 25\%$	0.25		
$R_{FI} = 15\%$		0.50	
$R_{FI} = 10\%$			0.25

The covariance of returns on the foreign index and the returns on the domestic index is *closest* to:

- A 26.39.
 B 26.56.
 C 28.12.
- 23 A manager will select 20 bonds out of his universe of 100 bonds to construct a portfolio. Which formula provides the number of possible portfolios?
- A Permutation formula
 B Multinomial formula
 C Combination formula
- 24 A firm will select two of four vice presidents to be added to the investment committee. How many different groups of two are possible?
- A 6
 B 12
 C 24
- 25 From an approved list of 25 funds, a portfolio manager wants to rank 4 mutual funds from most recommended to least recommended. Which formula is *most* appropriate to calculate the number of possible ways the funds could be ranked?
- A Permutation formula
 B Multinomial formula
 C Combination formula

SOLUTIONS

- Use Equation 1 to find this conditional probability: $P(\text{stock is dividend paying} \mid \text{telecom stock that meets criteria}) = P(\text{stock is dividend paying and telecom stock that meets criteria})/P(\text{telecom stock that meets criteria}) = 0.01/0.05 = 0.20$.
- According to the multiplication rule for independent events, the probability of a company meeting all three criteria is the product of the three probabilities. Labeling the event that a company passes the first, second, and third criteria, A , B , and C , respectively $P(ABC) = P(A)P(B)P(C) = (0.20)(0.45)(0.78) = 0.0702$. As a consequence, $(0.0702)(500) = 35.10$, so 35 companies pass the screen.
- Use Equation 2, the multiplication rule for probabilities $P(AB) = P(A \mid B)P(B)$, defining A as the event that *a stock meets the financial strength criteria* and defining B as the event that *a stock meets the valuation criteria*. Then $P(AB) = P(A \mid B)P(B) = 0.40 \times 0.25 = 0.10$. The probability that a stock meets both the financial and valuation criteria is 0.10.
- A** *Outcomes associated with Scenario 1:* With a 0.45 probability of a \$0.90 recovery per \$1 principal value, given Scenario 1, and with the probability of Scenario 1 equal to 0.75, the probability of recovering \$0.90 is $0.45(0.75) = 0.3375$. By a similar calculation, the probability of recovering \$0.80 is $0.55(0.75) = 0.4125$.

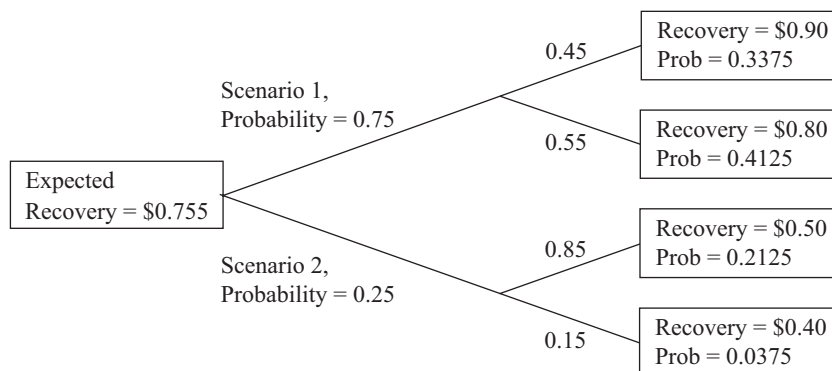
Outcomes associated with Scenario 2: With a 0.85 probability of a \$0.50 recovery per \$1 principal value, given Scenario 2, and with the probability of Scenario 2 equal to 0.25, the probability of recovering \$0.50 is $0.85(0.25) = 0.2125$. By a similar calculation, the probability of recovering \$0.40 is $0.15(0.25) = 0.0375$.

B $E(\text{recovery} \mid \text{Scenario 1}) = 0.45(\$0.90) + 0.55(\$0.80) = \0.845

C $E(\text{recovery} \mid \text{Scenario 2}) = 0.85(\$0.50) + 0.15(\$0.40) = \0.485

D $E(\text{recovery}) = 0.75(\$0.845) + 0.25(\$0.485) = \0.755

E



- A** We can set up the equation using the total probability rule:

$$P(\text{pass test}) = P(\text{pass test} \mid \text{survivor})P(\text{survivor}) + P(\text{pass test} \mid \text{nonsurvivor})P(\text{nonsurvivor})$$

We know that $P(\text{survivor}) = 1 - P(\text{nonsurvivor}) = 1 - 0.40 = 0.60$. Therefore, $P(\text{pass test}) = 0.55 = 0.85(0.60) + P(\text{pass test} \mid \text{nonsurvivor})(0.40)$. Thus $P(\text{pass test} \mid \text{nonsurvivor}) = [0.55 - 0.85(0.60)]/0.40 = 0.10$.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{B } P(\text{survivor} \mid \text{pass test}) &= [P(\text{pass test} \mid \text{survivor})/P(\text{pass test})]P(\text{survivor}) \\ &= (0.85/0.55)0.60 = 0.927273 \end{aligned}$$

The information that a company passes the test causes you to update your probability that it is a survivor from 0.60 to approximately 0.927.

$$\text{C } \text{According to Bayes' formula, } P(\text{nonsurvivor} \mid \text{fail test}) = [P(\text{fail test} \mid \text{nonsurvivor})/P(\text{fail test})]P(\text{nonsurvivor}) = [P(\text{fail test} \mid \text{nonsurvivor})/0.45]0.40.$$

We can set up the following equation to obtain $P(\text{fail test} \mid \text{nonsurvivor})$:

$$\begin{aligned} P(\text{fail test}) &= P(\text{fail test} \mid \text{nonsurvivor})P(\text{nonsurvivor}) \\ &\quad + P(\text{fail test} \mid \text{survivor})P(\text{survivor}) \\ 0.45 &= P(\text{fail test} \mid \text{nonsurvivor})0.40 + 0.15(0.60) \end{aligned}$$

where $P(\text{fail test} \mid \text{survivor}) = 1 - P(\text{pass test} \mid \text{survivor}) = 1 - 0.85 = 0.15$. So $P(\text{fail test} \mid \text{nonsurvivor}) = [0.45 - 0.15(0.60)]/0.40 = 0.90$. Using this result with the formula above, we find $P(\text{nonsurvivor} \mid \text{fail test}) = (0.90/0.45)0.40 = 0.80$. Seeing that a company fails the test causes us to update the probability that it is a nonsurvivor from 0.40 to 0.80.

- D** A company passing the test greatly increases our confidence that it is a survivor. A company failing the test doubles the probability that it is a nonsurvivor. Therefore, the test appears to be useful.
- 6** C is correct. The term “exhaustive” means that the events cover all possible outcomes.
- 7** C is correct. A subjective probability draws on personal or subjective judgment that may be without reference to any particular data.
- 8** A is correct. Given odds for E of a to b , the implied probability of $E = a/(a + b)$. Stated in terms of odds a to b with $a = 1$, $b = 5$, the probability of $E = 1/(1 + 5) = 1/6 = 0.167$. This result confirms that a probability of 0.167 for beating sales is odds of 1 to 5.
- 9** C is correct. A conditional probability is the probability of an event given that another event has occurred.
- 10** B is correct. Because the events are independent, the multiplication rule is most appropriate for forecasting their joint probability. The multiplication rule for independent events states that the joint probability of both A and B occurring is $P(AB) = P(A)P(B)$.
- 11** B is correct. The probability of the occurrence of one is related to the occurrence of the other. If we are trying to forecast one event, information about a dependent event may be useful.
- 12** C is correct. The total probability rule for expected value is used to estimate an expected value based on mutually exclusive and exhaustive scenarios.
- 13** B is correct. If Scenario 1 occurs, the expected recovery is $60\% (\$50,000) + 40\% (\$30,000) = \$42,000$, and if Scenario 2 occurs, the expected recovery is $90\% (\$80,000) + 10\% (\$60,000) = \$78,000$. Weighting by the probability of each scenario, the expected recovery is $40\% (\$42,000) + 60\% (\$78,000) = \$63,600$. Alternatively, first calculating the probability of each amount occurring, the expected recovery is $(40\%)(60\%)(\$50,000) + (40\%)(40\%)(\$30,000) + (60\%)(90\%)(\$80,000) + (60\%)(10\%)(\$60,000) = \$63,600$.
- 14** A is correct. The covariance is the product of the standard deviations and correlation using the formula $\text{Cov}(\text{US bond returns, Spanish bond returns}) = \sigma(\text{US bonds}) \times \sigma(\text{Spanish bonds}) \times \rho(\text{US bond returns, Spanish bond returns}) = 0.64 \times 0.56 \times 0.24 = 0.086$.

- 15** C is correct. The covariance of returns is positive when the returns on both assets tend to be on the same side (above or below) their expected values at the same time, indicating an average positive relationship between returns.
- 16** B is correct. Correlations near +1 exhibit strong positive linearity, whereas correlations near -1 exhibit strong negative linearity. A correlation of 0 indicates an absence of any linear relationship between the variables. The closer the correlation is to 0, the weaker the linear relationship.
- 17** C is correct. The correlation between two random variables R_i and R_j is defined as $\rho(R_i, R_j) = \text{Cov}(R_i, R_j) / \sigma(R_i)\sigma(R_j)$. Using the subscript i to represent hedge funds and the subscript j to represent the market index, the standard deviations are $\sigma(R_i) = 256^{1/2} = 16$ and $\sigma(R_j) = 81^{1/2} = 9$. Thus, $\rho(R_i, R_j) = \text{Cov}(R_i, R_j) / \sigma(R_i)\sigma(R_j) = 110 / (16 \times 9) = 0.764$.
- 18** A is correct. As the correlation between two assets approaches +1, diversification benefits decrease. In other words, an increasingly positive correlation indicates an increasingly strong positive linear relationship and fewer diversification benefits.
- 19** A is correct. A covariance matrix for five stocks has $5 \times 5 = 25$ entries. Subtracting the 5 diagonal variance terms results in 20 off-diagonal entries. Because a covariance matrix is symmetrical, only 10 entries are unique ($20/2 = 10$).
- 20** A is correct. The analyst must first calculate expected sales as $0.05 \times \$70 + 0.70 \times \$40 + 0.25 \times \$25 = \3.50 million + $\$28.00$ million + $\$6.25$ million = $\$37.75$ million.

After calculating expected sales, we can calculate the variance of sales:

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \sigma^2(\text{Sales}) \\
 &= P(\$70)[\$70 - E(\text{Sales})]^2 + P(\$40)[\$40 - E(\text{Sales})]^2 + P(\$25) \\
 &\quad [\$25 - E(\text{Sales})]^2 \\
 &= 0.05(\$70 - 37.75)^2 + 0.70(\$40 - 37.75)^2 + 0.25(\$25 - 37.75)^2 \\
 &= \$52.00 \text{ million} + \$3.54 \text{ million} + \$40.64 \text{ million} = \$96.18 \text{ million.}
 \end{aligned}$$

The standard deviation of sales is thus $\sigma = (\$96.18)^{1/2} = \9.81 million.

- 21** C is correct. The covariance of returns is positive when the returns on both assets tend to be on the same side (above or below) their expected values at the same time.
- 22** B is correct. The covariance is 26.56, calculated as follows. First, expected returns are

$$\begin{aligned}
 E(R_{FI}) &= (0.25 \times 25) + (0.50 \times 15) + (0.25 \times 10) \\
 &= 6.25 + 7.50 + 2.50 = 16.25 \text{ and} \\
 E(R_{DI}) &= (0.25 \times 30) + (0.50 \times 25) + (0.25 \times 15) \\
 &= 7.50 + 12.50 + 3.75 = 23.75.
 \end{aligned}$$

Covariance is

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{Cov}(R_{FI}, R_{DI}) &= \sum_i \sum_j P(R_{FI,i}, R_{DI,j}) (R_{FI,i} - ER_{FI}) (R_{DI,j} - ER_{DI}) \\
 &= 0.25[(25 - 16.25)(30 - 23.75)] + 0.50[(15 - 16.25) \\
 &\quad (25 - 23.75)] + 0.25[(10 - 16.25)(15 - 23.75)] \\
 &= 13.67 + (-0.78) + 13.67 = 26.56.
 \end{aligned}$$

- 23** C is correct. The combination formula provides the number of ways that r objects can be chosen from a total of n objects, when the order in which the r objects are listed does not matter. The order of the bonds within the portfolio does not matter.
- 24** A is correct. The answer is found using the combination formula

$${}_n C_r = \binom{n}{r} = \frac{n!}{(n-r)!r!}$$

Here, $n = 4$ and $r = 2$, so the answer is $4!/[(4-2)!2!] = 24/[(2) \times (2)] = 6$. This result can be verified by assuming there are four vice presidents, VP1–VP4. The six possible additions to the investment committee are VP1 and VP2, VP1 and VP3, VP1 and VP4, VP2 and VP3, VP2 and VP4, and VP3 and VP4.

- 25** A is correct. The permutation formula is used to choose r objects from a total of n objects when order matters. Because the portfolio manager is trying to rank the four funds from most recommended to least recommended, the order of the funds matters; therefore, the permutation formula is most appropriate.

QUANTITATIVE METHODS STUDY SESSION

3

Quantitative Methods (2)

This study session introduces the common probability distributions used to describe the behavior of random variables, such as asset prices and returns. How to estimate measures of a population (mean, standard deviation) based on a population sample is shown. A framework for hypothesis testing, used for validating dataset hypotheses, follows, along with techniques to test a hypothesis. The session ends with coverage of technical analysis, a set of tools that uses asset price, trading volume, and other similar data for making investment decisions.

READING ASSIGNMENTS

- | | |
|-------------------|--|
| Reading 10 | Common Probability Distributions
by Richard A. DeFusco, PhD, CFA, Dennis W. McLeavey, CFA, Jerald E. Pinto, PhD, CFA, and David E. Runkle, PhD, CFA |
| Reading 11 | Sampling and Estimation
by Richard A. DeFusco, PhD, CFA, Dennis W. McLeavey, CFA, Jerald E. Pinto, PhD, CFA, and David E. Runkle, PhD, CFA |
| Reading 12 | Hypothesis Testing
by Richard A. DeFusco, PhD, CFA, Dennis W. McLeavey, CFA, Jerald E. Pinto, PhD, CFA, and David E. Runkle, PhD, CFA |
| Reading 13 | Technical Analysis
by Barry M. Sine, CMT, CFA, and Robert A. Strong, PhD, CFA |

READING

10

Common Probability Distributions

by Richard A. DeFusco, PhD, CFA, Dennis W. McLeavey, CFA,
Jerald E. Pinto, PhD, CFA, and David E. Runkle, PhD, CFA

Richard A. DeFusco, PhD, CFA, is at the University of Nebraska-Lincoln (USA). Dennis W. McLeavey, CFA, is at the University of Rhode Island (USA). Jerald E. Pinto, PhD, CFA, is at CFA Institute (USA). David E. Runkle, PhD, CFA, is at Trilogy Global Advisors (USA).

LEARNING OUTCOMES

<i>Mastery</i>	<i>The candidate should be able to:</i>
<input type="checkbox"/>	a. define a probability distribution and distinguish between discrete and continuous random variables and their probability functions;
<input type="checkbox"/>	b. describe the set of possible outcomes of a specified discrete random variable;
<input type="checkbox"/>	c. interpret a cumulative distribution function;
<input type="checkbox"/>	d. calculate and interpret probabilities for a random variable, given its cumulative distribution function;
<input type="checkbox"/>	e. define a discrete uniform random variable, a Bernoulli random variable, and a binomial random variable;
<input type="checkbox"/>	f. calculate and interpret probabilities given the discrete uniform and the binomial distribution functions;
<input type="checkbox"/>	g. construct a binomial tree to describe stock price movement;
<input type="checkbox"/>	h. define the continuous uniform distribution and calculate and interpret probabilities, given a continuous uniform distribution;
<input type="checkbox"/>	i. explain the key properties of the normal distribution;
<input type="checkbox"/>	j. distinguish between a univariate and a multivariate distribution and explain the role of correlation in the multivariate normal distribution;
<input type="checkbox"/>	k. determine the probability that a normally distributed random variable lies inside a given interval;
<input type="checkbox"/>	l. define the standard normal distribution, explain how to standardize a random variable, and calculate and interpret probabilities using the standard normal distribution;
<input type="checkbox"/>	m. define shortfall risk, calculate the safety-first ratio, and select an optimal portfolio using Roy's safety-first criterion;

(continued)

LEARNING OUTCOMES

<i>Mastery</i>	<i>The candidate should be able to:</i>
<input type="checkbox"/>	n. explain the relationship between normal and lognormal distributions and why the lognormal distribution is used to model asset prices;
<input type="checkbox"/>	o. distinguish between discretely and continuously compounded rates of return and calculate and interpret a continuously compounded rate of return, given a specific holding period return;
<input type="checkbox"/>	p. explain Monte Carlo simulation and describe its applications and limitations;
<input type="checkbox"/>	q. compare Monte Carlo simulation and historical simulation.

1

INTRODUCTION TO COMMON PROBABILITY DISTRIBUTIONS

In nearly all investment decisions we work with random variables. The return on a stock and its earnings per share are familiar examples of random variables. To make probability statements about a random variable, we need to understand its probability distribution. A **probability distribution** specifies the probabilities of the possible outcomes of a random variable.

In this reading, we present important facts about four probability distributions and their investment uses. These four distributions—the uniform, binomial, normal, and lognormal—are used extensively in investment analysis. They are used in such basic valuation models as the Black–Scholes–Merton option pricing model, the binomial option pricing model, and the capital asset pricing model. With the working knowledge of probability distributions provided in this reading, you will also be better prepared to study and use other quantitative methods such as hypothesis testing, regression analysis, and time-series analysis.

After discussing probability distributions, we end the reading with an introduction to Monte Carlo simulation, a computer-based tool for obtaining information on complex problems. For example, an investment analyst may want to experiment with an investment idea without actually implementing it. Or she may need to price a complex option for which no simple pricing formula exists. In these cases and many others, Monte Carlo simulation is an important resource. To conduct a Monte Carlo simulation, the analyst must identify risk factors associated with the problem and specify probability distributions for them. Hence, Monte Carlo simulation is a tool that requires an understanding of probability distributions.

Before we discuss specific probability distributions, we define basic concepts and terms. We then illustrate the operation of these concepts through the simplest distribution, the uniform distribution. That done, we address probability distributions that have more applications in investment work but also greater complexity.

DISCRETE RANDOM VARIABLES

2

A **random variable** is a quantity whose future outcomes are uncertain. The two basic types of random variables are discrete random variables and continuous random variables. A **discrete random variable** can take on at most a countable number of possible values. For example, a discrete random variable X can take on a limited number of outcomes x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n (n possible outcomes), or a discrete random variable Y can take on an unlimited number of outcomes y_1, y_2, \dots (without end).¹ Because we can count all the possible outcomes of X and Y (even if we go on forever in the case of Y), both X and Y satisfy the definition of a discrete random variable. By contrast, we cannot count the outcomes of a **continuous random variable**. We cannot describe the possible outcomes of a continuous random variable Z with a list z_1, z_2, \dots because the outcome $(z_1 + z_2)/2$, not in the list, would always be possible. Rate of return is an example of a continuous random variable.

In working with a random variable, we need to understand its possible outcomes. For example, a majority of the stocks traded on the New Zealand Stock Exchange are quoted in ticks of NZ\$0.01. Quoted stock price is thus a discrete random variable with possible values NZ\$0, NZ\$0.01, NZ\$0.02, ... But we can also model stock price as a continuous random variable (as a lognormal random variable, to look ahead). In many applications, we have a choice between using a discrete or a continuous distribution. We are usually guided by which distribution is most efficient for the task we face. This opportunity for choice is not surprising, as many discrete distributions can be approximated with a continuous distribution, and vice versa. In most practical cases, a probability distribution is only a mathematical idealization, or approximate model, of the relative frequencies of a random variable's possible outcomes.

EXAMPLE 1

The Distribution of Bond Price

You are researching a probability model for bond price, and you begin by thinking about the characteristics of bonds that affect price. What are the lowest and the highest possible values for bond price? Why? What are some other characteristics of bonds that may affect the distribution of bond price?

The lowest possible value of bond price is 0, when the bond is worthless. Identifying the highest possible value for bond price is more challenging. The promised payments on a coupon bond are the coupons (interest payments) plus the face amount (principal). The price of a bond is the present discounted value of these promised payments. Because investors require a return on their investments, 0 percent is the lower limit on the discount rate that investors would use to discount a bond's promised payments. At a discount rate of 0 percent, the price of a bond is the sum of the face value and the remaining coupons without any discounting. The discount rate thus places the upper limit on bond price. Suppose, for example, that face value is \$1,000 and two \$40 coupons remain; the interval \$0 to \$1,080 captures all possible values of the bond's price. This upper limit decreases through time as the number of remaining payments decreases.

¹ We follow the convention that an uppercase letter represents a random variable and a lowercase letter represents an outcome or specific value of the random variable. Thus X refers to the random variable, and x refers to an outcome of X . We subscript outcomes, as in x_1 and x_2 , when we need to distinguish among different outcomes in a list of outcomes of a random variable.

Other characteristics of a bond also affect its price distribution. Pull to par value is one such characteristic: As the maturity date approaches, the standard deviation of bond price tends to grow smaller as bond price converges to par value. Embedded options also affect bond price. For example, with bonds that are currently callable, the issuer may retire the bonds at a prespecified premium above par; this option of the issuer cuts off part of the bond's upside. Modeling bond price distribution is a challenging problem.

Every random variable is associated with a probability distribution that describes the variable completely. We can view a probability distribution in two ways. The basic view is the **probability function**, which specifies the probability that the random variable takes on a specific value: $P(X = x)$ is the probability that a random variable X takes on the value x . (Note that capital X represents the random variable and lower-case x represents a specific value that the random variable may take.) For a discrete random variable, the shorthand notation for the probability function is $p(x) = P(X = x)$. For continuous random variables, the probability function is denoted $f(x)$ and called the **probability density function** (pdf), or just the density.²

A probability function has two key properties (which we state, without loss of generality, using the notation for a discrete random variable):

- $0 \leq p(x) \leq 1$, because probability is a number between 0 and 1.
- The sum of the probabilities $p(x)$ over all values of X equals 1. If we add up the probabilities of all the distinct possible outcomes of a random variable, that sum must equal 1.

We are often interested in finding the probability of a range of outcomes rather than a specific outcome. In these cases, we take the second view of a probability distribution, the cumulative distribution function (cdf). The **cumulative distribution function**, or distribution function for short, gives the probability that a random variable X is less than or equal to a particular value x , $P(X \leq x)$. For both discrete and continuous random variables, the shorthand notation is $F(x) = P(X \leq x)$. How does the cumulative distribution function relate to the probability function? The word “cumulative” tells the story. To find $F(x)$, we sum up, or cumulate, values of the probability function for all outcomes less than or equal to x . The function of the cdf is parallel to that of cumulative relative frequency, which we discussed in the reading on statistical concepts and market returns.

Next, we illustrate these concepts with examples and show how we use discrete and continuous distributions. We start with the simplest distribution, the discrete uniform.

2.1 The Discrete Uniform Distribution

The simplest of all probability distributions is the discrete uniform distribution. Suppose that the possible outcomes are the integers (whole numbers) 1 to 8, inclusive, and the probability that the random variable takes on any of these possible values is the same for all outcomes (that is, it is uniform). With eight outcomes, $p(x) = 1/8$, or 0.125, for all values of X ($X = 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8$); the statement just made is a complete description of this discrete uniform random variable. The distribution has a finite number of specified outcomes, and each outcome is equally likely. Table 1 summarizes the two views of this random variable, the probability function and the cumulative distribution function.

² The technical term for the probability function of a discrete random variable, probability mass function (pmf), is used less frequently.

Table 1 Probability Function and Cumulative Distribution Function for a Discrete Uniform Random Variable

$X = x$	Probability Function $p(x) = P(X = x)$	Cumulative Distribution Function $F(x) = P(X \leq x)$
1	0.125	0.125
2	0.125	0.250
3	0.125	0.375
4	0.125	0.500
5	0.125	0.625
6	0.125	0.750
7	0.125	0.875
8	0.125	1.000

We can use Table 1 to find three probabilities: $P(X \leq 7)$, $P(4 \leq X \leq 6)$, and $P(4 < X \leq 6)$. The following examples illustrate how to use the cdf to find the probability that a random variable will fall in any interval (for any random variable, not only the uniform).

- The probability that X is less than or equal to 7, $P(X \leq 7)$, is the next-to-last entry in the third column, 0.875 or 87.5 percent.
- To find $P(4 \leq X \leq 6)$, we need to find the sum of three probabilities: $p(4)$, $p(5)$, and $p(6)$. We can find this sum in two ways. We can add $p(4)$, $p(5)$, and $p(6)$ from the second column. Or we can calculate the probability as the difference between two values of the cumulative distribution function:

$$F(6) = P(X \leq 6) = p(6) + p(5) + p(4) + p(3) + p(2) + p(1)$$

$$F(3) = P(X \leq 3) = p(3) + p(2) + p(1)$$

so

$$P(4 \leq X \leq 6) = F(6) - F(3) = p(6) + p(5) + p(4) = 3/8$$

So we calculate the second probability as $F(6) - F(3) = 3/8$.

- The third probability, $P(4 < X \leq 6)$, the probability that X is less than or equal to 6 but greater than 4, is $p(5) + p(6)$. We compute it as follows, using the cdf:

$$P(4 < X \leq 6) = P(X \leq 6) - P(X \leq 4) = F(6) - F(4) = p(6) + p(5) = 2/8$$

So we calculate the third probability as $F(6) - F(4) = 2/8$.

Suppose we want to check that the discrete uniform probability function satisfies the general properties of a probability function given earlier. The first property is $0 \leq p(x) \leq 1$. We see that $p(x) = 1/8$ for all x in the first column of the table. (Note that $p(x)$ equals 0 for numbers x such as -14 or 12.215 that are not in that column.) The first property is satisfied. The second property is that the probabilities sum to 1. The entries in the second column of Table 1 do sum to 1.

The cdf has two other characteristic properties:

- The cdf lies between 0 and 1 for any x : $0 \leq F(x) \leq 1$.
- As we increase x , the cdf either increases or remains constant.

Check these statements by looking at the third column in Table 1.

We now have some experience working with probability functions and cdfs for discrete random variables. Later in this reading, we will discuss Monte Carlo simulation, a methodology driven by random numbers. As we will see, the uniform distribution has an important technical use: It is the basis for generating random numbers, which in turn produce random observations for all other probability distributions.³

2.2 The Binomial Distribution

In many investment contexts, we view a result as either a success or a failure, or as binary (twofold) in some other way. When we make probability statements about a record of successes and failures, or about anything with binary outcomes, we often use the binomial distribution. What is a good model for how a stock price moves through time? Different models are appropriate for different uses. Cox, Ross, and Rubinstein (1979) developed an option pricing model based on binary moves, price up or price down, for the asset underlying the option. Their binomial option pricing model was the first of a class of related option pricing models that have played an important role in the development of the derivatives industry. That fact alone would be sufficient reason for studying the binomial distribution, but the binomial distribution has uses in decision-making as well.

The building block of the binomial distribution is the **Bernoulli random variable**, named after the Swiss probabilist Jakob Bernoulli (1654–1704). Suppose we have a trial (an event that may repeat) that produces one of two outcomes. Such a trial is a **Bernoulli trial**. If we let Y equal 1 when the outcome is success and Y equal 0 when the outcome is failure, then the probability function of the Bernoulli random variable Y is

$$p(1) = P(Y = 1) = p$$

$$p(0) = P(Y = 0) = 1 - p$$

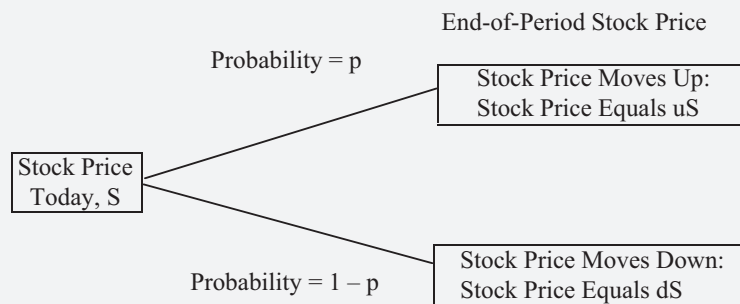
where p is the probability that the trial is a success. Our next example is the very first step on the road to understanding the binomial option pricing model.

EXAMPLE 2

One-Period Stock Price Movement as a Bernoulli Random Variable

Suppose we describe stock price movement in the following way. Stock price today is S . Next period stock price can move up or down. The probability of an up move is p , and the probability of a down move is $1 - p$. Thus, stock price is a Bernoulli random variable with probability of success (an up move) equal to p . When the stock moves up, ending price is uS , with u equal to 1 plus the rate of return if the stock moves up. For example, if the stock earns 0.01 or 1 percent on an up move, $u = 1.01$. When the stock moves down, ending price is dS , with d equal to 1 plus the rate of return if the stock moves down. For example, if the stock earns -0.01 or -1 percent on a down move, $d = 0.99$. Figure 1 shows a diagram of this model of stock price dynamics.

³ See Hillier (2014). Random numbers initially generated by computers are usually random positive integer numbers that are converted to approximate continuous uniform random numbers between 0 and 1. Then the continuous uniform random numbers are used to produce random observations on other distributions, such as the normal, using various techniques. We will discuss random observation generation further in the section on Monte Carlo simulation.

Figure 1 One-Period Stock Price as a Bernoulli Random Variable

We will continue with the above example later. In the model of stock price movement in Example 2, success and failure at a given trial relate to up moves and down moves, respectively. In the following example, success is a profitable trade and failure is an unprofitable one.

EXAMPLE 3**A Trading Desk Evaluates Block Brokers (1)**

You work in equities trading at an institutional money manager that regularly trades with a number of block brokers. Blocks are orders to sell or buy that are too large for the liquidity ordinarily available in dealer networks or stock exchanges. Your firm has known interests in certain kinds of stock. Block brokers call your trading desk when they want to sell blocks of stocks that they think your firm may be interested in buying. You know that these transactions have definite risks. For example, if the broker's client (the seller of the shares) has unfavorable information on the stock, or if the total amount he is selling through all channels is not truthfully communicated to you, you may see an immediate loss on the trade. From time to time, your firm audits the performance of block brokers. Your firm calculates the post-trade, market-risk-adjusted dollar returns on stocks purchased from block brokers. On that basis, you classify each trade as unprofitable or profitable. You have summarized the performance of the brokers in a spreadsheet, excerpted in Table 2 for November 2014. (The broker names are coded BB001 and BB002.)

Table 2 Block Trading Gains and Losses

	November 2014	
	Profitable Trades	Losing Trades
BB001	3	9
BB002	5	3

View each trade as a Bernoulli trial. Calculate the percentage of profitable trades with the two block brokers for November 2014. These are estimates of p , the underlying probability of a successful (profitable) trade with each broker.

Your firm has logged $3 + 9 = 12$ trades (the row total) with block broker BB001. Because 3 of the 12 trades were profitable, the percentage of profitable trades was $3/12$ or 25 percent. With broker BB002, the percentage of profitable trades was $5/8$ or 62.5 percent. A trade is a Bernoulli trial, and the above calculations provide estimates of the underlying probability of a profitable trade (success) with the two brokers. For broker BB001, your estimate is $\hat{p} = 0.25$; for broker BB002, your estimate is $\hat{p} = 0.625$.⁴

In n Bernoulli trials, we can have 0 to n successes. If the outcome of an individual trial is random, the total number of successes in n trials is also random. A **binomial random variable** X is defined as the number of successes in n Bernoulli trials. A binomial random variable is the sum of Bernoulli random variables Y_i , $i = 1, 2, \dots, n$:

$$X = Y_1 + Y_2 + \dots + Y_n$$

where Y_i is the outcome on the i th trial (1 if a success, 0 if a failure). We know that a Bernoulli random variable is defined by the parameter p . The number of trials, n , is the second parameter of a binomial random variable. The binomial distribution makes these assumptions:

- The probability, p , of success is constant for all trials.
- The trials are independent.

The second assumption has great simplifying force. If individual trials were correlated, calculating the probability of a given number of successes in n trials would be much more complicated.

Under the above two assumptions, a binomial random variable is completely described by two parameters, n and p . We write

$$X \sim B(n, p)$$

which we read as “ X has a binomial distribution with parameters n and p .” You can see that a Bernoulli random variable is a binomial random variable with $n = 1$: $Y \sim B(1, p)$.

Now we can find the general expression for the probability that a binomial random variable shows x successes in n trials. We can think in terms of a model of stock price dynamics that can be generalized to allow any possible stock price movements if the periods are made extremely small. Each period is a Bernoulli trial: With probability p , the stock price moves up; with probability $1 - p$, the price moves down. A success is an up move, and x is the number of up moves or successes in n periods (trials). With each period’s moves independent and p constant, the number of up moves in n periods is a binomial random variable. We now develop an expression for $P(X = x)$, the probability function for a binomial random variable.

Any sequence of n periods that shows exactly x up moves must show $n - x$ down moves. We have many different ways to order the up moves and down moves to get a total of x up moves, but given independent trials, any sequence with x up moves must occur with probability $p^x(1 - p)^{n-x}$. Now we need to multiply this probability by the number of different ways we can get a sequence with x up moves. Using a basic result in counting from the reading on probability concepts, there are

$$\frac{n!}{(n-x)!x!}$$

⁴ The “hat” over p indicates that it is an estimate of p , the underlying probability of a profitable trade with the broker.

different sequences in n trials that result in x up moves (or successes) and $n - x$ down moves (or failures). Recall from the reading on probability concepts that n factorial ($n!$) is defined as $n(n - 1)(n - 2) \dots 1$ (and $0! = 1$ by convention). For example, $5! = (5)(4)(3)(2)(1) = 120$. The combination formula $n!/[(n - x)!x!]$ is denoted by

$$\binom{n}{x}$$

(read “ n combination x ” or “ n choose x ”). For example, over three periods, exactly three different sequences have two up moves: UUD, UDU, and DUU. We confirm this by

$$\binom{3}{2} = \frac{3!}{(3 - 2)!2!} = \frac{(3)(2)(1)}{(1)(2)(1)} = 3$$

If, hypothetically, each sequence with two up moves had a probability of 0.15, then the total probability of two up moves in three periods would be $3 \times 0.15 = 0.45$. This example should persuade you that for X distributed $B(n, p)$, the probability of x successes in n trials is given by

$$p(x) = P(X = x) = \binom{n}{x} p^x (1 - p)^{n-x} = \frac{n!}{(n - x)!x!} p^x (1 - p)^{n-x} \tag{1}$$

Some distributions are always symmetric, such as the normal, and others are always asymmetric or skewed, such as the lognormal. The binomial distribution is symmetric when the probability of success on a trial is 0.50, but it is asymmetric or skewed otherwise.

We illustrate Equation 1 (the probability function) and the cdf through the symmetrical case. Consider a random variable distributed $B(n = 5, p = 0.50)$. Table 3 contains a complete description of this random variable. The fourth column of Table 3 is Column 2, n combination x , times Column 3, $p^x(1 - p)^{n-x}$; Column 4 gives the probability for each value of the number of up moves from the first column. The fifth column, cumulating the entries in the fourth column, is the cumulative distribution function.

Table 3 Binomial Probabilities, $p = 0.50$ and $n = 5$

Number of Up Moves, x (1)	Number of Possible Ways to Reach x Up Moves (2)	Probability for Each Way (3)	Probability for x , $p(x)$ (4) = (2) \times (3)	$F(x) = P(X \leq x)$ (5)
0	1	$0.50^0(1 - 0.50)^5 = 0.03125$	0.03125	0.03125
1	5	$0.50^1(1 - 0.50)^4 = 0.03125$	0.15625	0.18750
2	10	$0.50^2(1 - 0.50)^3 = 0.03125$	0.31250	0.50000
3	10	$0.50^3(1 - 0.50)^2 = 0.03125$	0.31250	0.81250
4	5	$0.50^4(1 - 0.50)^1 = 0.03125$	0.15625	0.96875
5	1	$0.50^5(1 - 0.50)^0 = 0.03125$	0.03125	1.00000

What would happen if we kept $n = 5$ but sharply lowered the probability of success on a trial to 10 percent? “Probability for Each Way” for $X = 0$ (no up moves) would then be about 59 percent: $0.10^0(1 - 0.10)^5 = 0.59049$. Because zero successes could still happen one way (Column 2), $p(0) = 59$ percent. You may want to check that given $p = 0.10$, $P(X \leq 2) = 99.14$ percent: The probability of two or fewer up moves would be more than 99 percent. The random variable’s probability would be massed on 0, 1, and 2 up moves, and the probability of larger outcomes would be minute. The

outcomes of 3 and larger would be the long right tail, and the distribution would be right skewed. On the other hand, if we set $p = 0.90$, we would have the mirror image of the distribution with $p = 0.10$. The distribution would be left skewed.

With an understanding of the binomial probability function in hand, we can continue with our example of block brokers.

EXAMPLE 4

A Trading Desk Evaluates Block Brokers (2)

You now want to evaluate the performance of the block brokers in Example 3. You begin with two questions:

- 1 If you are paying a fair price on average in your trades with a broker, what should be the probability of a profitable trade?
- 2 Did each broker meet or miss that expectation on probability?

You also realize that the brokers' performance has to be evaluated in light of the sample's size, and for that you need to use the binomial probability function (Equation 1). You thus address the following (referring to the data in Example 3):

- 3 Under the assumption that the prices of trades were fair,
 - A calculate the probability of three or fewer profitable trades with broker BB001.
 - B calculate the probability of five or more profitable trades with broker BB002.

Solution to 1 and 2:

If the price you trade at is fair, 50 percent of the trades you do with a broker should be profitable.⁵ The rate of profitable trades with broker BB001 was 25 percent. Therefore, broker BB001 missed your performance expectation. Broker BB002, at 62.5 percent profitable trades, exceeded your expectation.

Solution to 3:

- A For broker BB001, the number of trades (the trials) was $n = 12$, and 3 were profitable. You are asked to calculate the probability of three or fewer profitable trades, $F(3) = p(3) + p(2) + p(1) + p(0)$.

Suppose the underlying probability of a profitable trade with BB001 is $p = 0.50$. With $n = 12$ and $p = 0.50$, according to Equation 1 the probability of three profitable trades is

$$\begin{aligned} p(3) &= \binom{n}{x} p^x (1-p)^{n-x} = \binom{12}{3} (0.50^3) (0.50^9) \\ &= \frac{12!}{(12-3)!3!} 0.50^{12} = 220(0.000244) = 0.053711 \end{aligned}$$

⁵ Of course, you need to adjust for the direction of the overall market after the trade (any broker's record will be helped by a bull market) and perhaps make other risk adjustments. Assume that these adjustments have been made.

The probability of exactly 3 profitable trades out of 12 is 5.4 percent if broker BB001 were giving you fair prices. Now you need to calculate the other probabilities:

$$p(2) = [12!/(12-2)!](0.50^2)(0.50^{10}) = 66(0.000244) = 0.016113$$

$$p(1) = [12!/(12-1)!](0.50^1)(0.50^{11}) = 12(0.000244) = 0.00293$$

$$p(0) = [12!/(12-0)!](0.50^0)(0.50^{12}) = 1(0.000244) = 0.000244$$

Adding all the probabilities, $F(3) = 0.053711 + 0.016113 + 0.00293 + 0.000244 = 0.072998$ or 7.3 percent. The probability of doing 3 or fewer profitable trades out of 12 would be 7.3 percent if your trading desk were getting fair prices from broker BB001.

- B** For broker BB002, you are assessing the probability that the underlying probability of a profitable trade with this broker was 50 percent, despite the good results. The question was framed as the probability of doing five or more profitable trades if the underlying probability is 50 percent: $1 - F(4) = p(5) + p(6) + p(7) + p(8)$. You could calculate $F(4)$ and subtract it from 1, but you can also calculate $p(5) + p(6) + p(7) + p(8)$ directly.

You begin by calculating the probability that exactly 5 out of 8 trades would be profitable if BB002 were giving you fair prices:

$$\begin{aligned} p(5) &= \binom{8}{5} (0.50^5) (0.50^3) \\ &= 56(0.003906) = 0.21875 \end{aligned}$$

The probability is about 21.9 percent. The other probabilities are

$$p(6) = 28(0.003906) = 0.109375$$

$$p(7) = 8(0.003906) = 0.03125$$

$$p(8) = 1(0.003906) = 0.003906$$

So $p(5) + p(6) + p(7) + p(8) = 0.21875 + 0.109375 + 0.03125 + 0.003906 = 0.363281$ or 36.3 percent.⁶ A 36.3 percent probability is substantial; the underlying probability of executing a fair trade with BB002 might well have been 0.50 despite your success with BB002 in November 2014. If one of the trades with BB002 had been reclassified from profitable to unprofitable, exactly half the trades would have been profitable. In summary, your trading desk is getting at least fair prices from BB002; you will probably want to accumulate additional evidence before concluding that you are trading at better-than-fair prices.

The magnitude of the profits and losses in these trades is another important consideration. If all profitable trades had small profits but all unprofitable trades had large losses, for example, you might lose money on your trades even if the majority of them were profitable.

In the next example, the binomial distribution helps in evaluating the performance of an investment manager.

⁶ In this example all calculations were worked through by hand, but binomial probability and cdf functions are also available in computer spreadsheet programs.

EXAMPLE 5**Meeting a Tracking Objective**

You work for a pension fund sponsor. You have assigned a new money manager to manage a \$500 million portfolio indexed on the MSCI EAFE (Europe, Australasia, and Far East) Index, which is designed to measure developed-market equity performance excluding the United States and Canada. After research, you believe it is reasonable to expect that the manager will keep portfolio return within a band of 75 basis points (bps) of the benchmark's return, on a quarterly basis.⁷ To quantify this expectation further, you will be satisfied if portfolio return is within the 75 bps band 90 percent of the time. The manager meets the objective in six out of eight quarters. Of course, six out of eight quarters is a 75 percent success rate. But how does the manager's record precisely relate to your expectation of a 90 percent success rate and the sample size, 8 observations? To answer this question, you must find the probability that, given an assumed true or underlying success rate of 90 percent, performance could be as bad as or worse than that delivered. Calculate the probability (by hand or with a spreadsheet).

Specifically, you want to find the probability that portfolio return is within the 75 bps band in six or fewer quarters out of the eight in the sample. With $n = 8$ and $p = 0.90$, this probability is $F(6) = p(6) + p(5) + p(4) + p(3) + p(2) + p(1) + p(0)$. Start with

$$p(6) = (8!/6!2!)(0.90^6)(0.10^2) = 28(0.005314) = 0.148803$$

and work through the other probabilities:

$$p(5) = (8!/5!3!)(0.90^5)(0.10^3) = 56(0.00059) = 0.033067$$

$$p(4) = (8!/4!4!)(0.90^4)(0.10^4) = 70(0.000066) = 0.004593$$

$$p(3) = (8!/3!5!)(0.90^3)(0.10^5) = 56(0.000007) = 0.000408$$

$$p(2) = (8!/2!6!)(0.90^2)(0.10^6) = 28(0.000001) = 0.000023$$

$$p(1) = (8!/1!7!)(0.90^1)(0.10^7) = 8(0.00000009) = 0.00000072$$

$$p(0) = (8!/0!8!)(0.90^0)(0.10^8) = 1(0.00000001) = 0.00000001$$

Summing all these probabilities, you conclude that $F(6) = 0.148803 + 0.033067 + 0.004593 + 0.000408 + 0.000023 + 0.00000072 + 0.00000001 = 0.186895$ or 18.7 percent. There is a moderate 18.7 percent probability that the manager would show the record he did (or a worse record) if he had the skill to meet your expectations 90 percent of the time.

You can use other evaluation concepts such as tracking error or tracking risk, defined as the standard deviation of return differences between a portfolio and its benchmark, to assess the manager's performance. The calculation above would be only one input into any conclusions that you reach concerning the manager's performance. But to answer problems involving success rates, you need to be skilled in using the binomial distribution.

⁷ A basis point is one-hundredth of 1 percent (0.01 percent).

Two descriptors of a distribution that are often used in investments are the mean and the variance (or the standard deviation, the positive square root of variance).⁸ Table 4 gives the expressions for the mean and variance of binomial random variables.

Table 4 Mean and Variance of Binomial Random Variables

	Mean	Variance
Bernoulli, $B(1, p)$	p	$p(1 - p)$
Binomial, $B(n, p)$	np	$np(1 - p)$

Because a single Bernoulli random variable, $Y \sim B(1, p)$, takes on the value 1 with probability p and the value 0 with probability $1 - p$, its mean or weighted-average outcome is p . Its variance is $p(1 - p)$.⁹ A general binomial random variable, $B(n, p)$, is the sum of n Bernoulli random variables, and so the mean of a $B(n, p)$ random variable is np . Given that a $B(1, p)$ variable has variance $p(1 - p)$, the variance of a $B(n, p)$ random variable is n times that value, or $np(1 - p)$, assuming that all the trials (Bernoulli random variables) are independent. We can illustrate the calculation for two binomial random variables with differing probabilities as follows:

Random Variable	Mean	Variance
$B(n = 5, p = 0.50)$	$2.50 = 5(0.50)$	$1.25 = 5(0.50)(0.50)$
$B(n = 5, p = 0.10)$	$0.50 = 5(0.10)$	$0.45 = 5(0.10)(0.90)$

For a $B(n = 5, p = 0.50)$ random variable, the expected number of successes is 2.5 with a standard deviation of $1.118 = (1.25)^{1/2}$; for a $B(n = 5, p = 0.10)$ random variable, the expected number of successes is 0.50 with a standard deviation of $0.67 = (0.45)^{1/2}$.

EXAMPLE 6

The Expected Number of Defaults in a Bond Portfolio

Suppose as a bond analyst you are asked to estimate the number of bond issues expected to default over the next year in an unmanaged high-yield bond portfolio with 25 US issues from distinct issuers. The credit ratings of the bonds in the portfolio are tightly clustered around Moody's B2/Standard & Poor's B, meaning that the bonds are speculative with respect to the capacity to pay interest and repay principal. The estimated annual default rate for B2/B rated bonds is 10.7 percent.

- 1 Over the next year, what is the expected number of defaults in the portfolio, assuming a **binomial model** for defaults?
- 2 Estimate the standard deviation of the number of defaults over the coming year.
- 3 Critique the use of the binomial probability model in this context.

⁸ The mean (or arithmetic mean) is the sum of all values in a distribution or dataset, divided by the number of values summed. The variance is a measure of dispersion about the mean. See the reading on statistical concepts and market returns for further details on these concepts.

⁹ We can show that $p(1 - p)$ is the variance of a Bernoulli random variable as follows, noting that a Bernoulli random variable can take on only one of two values, 1 or 0: $\sigma^2(Y) = E[(Y - EY)^2] = E[(Y - p)^2] = (1 - p)^2 p + (0 - p)^2(1 - p) = (1 - p)[(1 - p)p + p^2] = p(1 - p)$.

Solution to 1:

For each bond, we can define a Bernoulli random variable equal to 1 if the bond defaults during the year and zero otherwise. With 25 bonds, the expected number of defaults over the year is $np = 25(0.107) = 2.675$ or approximately 3.

Solution to 2:

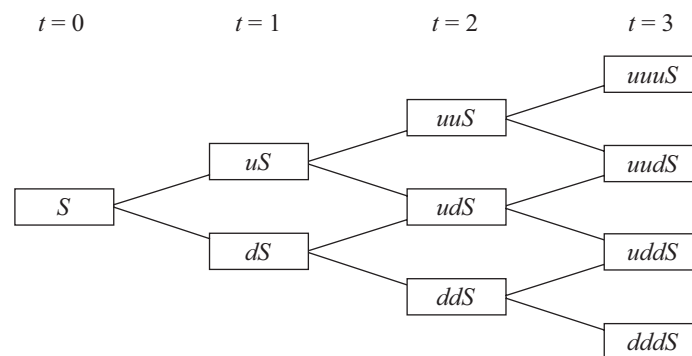
The variance is $np(1 - p) = 25(0.107)(0.893) = 2.388775$. The standard deviation is $(2.388775)^{1/2} = 1.55$. Thus a two standard deviation confidence interval about the expected number of defaults would run from approximately 0 to approximately 6, for example.

Solution to 3:

An assumption of the binomial model is that the trials are independent. In this context, a trial relates to whether an individual bond issue will default over the next year. Because the issuing companies probably share exposure to common economic factors, the trials may not be independent. Nevertheless, for a quick estimate of the expected number of defaults, the binomial model may be adequate.

Earlier, we looked at a simple one-period model for stock price movement. Now we extend the model to describe stock price movement on three consecutive days. Each day is an independent trial. The stock moves up with constant probability p (the **up transition probability**); if it moves up, u is 1 plus the rate of return for an up move. The stock moves down with constant probability $1 - p$ (the **down transition probability**); if it moves down, d is 1 plus the rate of return for a down move. We graph stock price movement in Figure 2, where we now associate each of the $n = 3$ stock price moves with time indexed by t . The shape of the graph suggests why it is called a **binomial tree**. Each boxed value from which successive moves or outcomes branch in the tree is called a **node**; in this example, a node is potential value for the stock price at a specified time.

Figure 2 A Binomial Model of Stock Price Movement



We see from the tree that the stock price at $t = 3$ has four possible values: $uuuS$, $uudS$, $uddS$, and $dddS$. The probability that the stock price equals *any* one of these four values is given by the binomial distribution. For example, three sequences of moves result in a final stock price of $uudS$: These are uud , udu , and duu . These sequences have two up moves out of three moves in total; the combination formula confirms that the number of ways to get two up moves (successes) in three periods (trials)

is $3!/(3-2)!2! = 3$. Next note that each of these sequences, uud , udu , and duu , has probability $p^2(1-p)$. So $P(S_3 = uudS) = 3p^2(1-p)$, where S_3 indicates the stock's price after three moves.

The binomial random variable in this application is the number of up moves. Final stock price distribution is a function of the initial stock price, the *number* of up moves, and the *size* of the up moves and down moves. We cannot say that stock price itself is a binomial random variable; rather, it is a function of a binomial random variable, as well as of u and d , and initial price. This richness is actually one key to why this way of modeling stock price is useful: It allows us to choose values of these parameters to approximate various distributions for stock price (using a large number of time periods).¹⁰ One distribution that can be approximated is the lognormal, an important continuous distribution model for stock price that we will discuss later. The flexibility extends further. In the tree shown above, the transition probabilities are the same at each node: p for an up move and $1-p$ for a down move. That standard formula describes a process in which stock return volatility is constant through time. Option experts, however, sometimes model changing volatility through time using a binomial tree in which the probabilities for up and down moves differ at different nodes.

The binomial tree also supplies the possibility of testing a condition or contingency at any node. This flexibility is useful in investment applications such as option pricing. Consider an American call option on a dividend-paying stock. (Recall that an American option can be exercised at any time before expiration, at any node on the tree.) Just before an ex-dividend date, it may be optimal to exercise an American call option on stock to buy the stock and receive the dividend.¹¹ If we model stock price with a binomial tree, we can test, at each node, whether exercising the option is optimal. Also, if we know the value of the call at the four terminal nodes at $t = 3$ and we have a model for discounting values by one period, we can step backward one period to $t = 2$ to find the call's value at the three nodes there. Continuing back recursively, we can find the call's value today. This type of recursive operation is easily programmed on a computer. As a result, binomial trees can value options even more complex than American calls on stock.¹²

CONTINUOUS RANDOM VARIABLES

3

In the previous section, we considered discrete random variables (i.e., random variables whose set of possible outcomes is countable). In contrast, the possible outcomes of continuous random variables are never countable. If 1.250 is one possible value of a continuous random variable, for example, we cannot name the next higher or lower possible value. Technically, the range of possible outcomes of a continuous random variable is the real line (all real numbers between $-\infty$ and $+\infty$) or some subset of the real line.

In this section, we focus on the two most important continuous distributions in investment work, the normal and lognormal. As we did with discrete distributions, we introduce the topic through the uniform distribution.

¹⁰ For example, we can split 20 days into 100 subperiods, taking care to use compatible values for u and d .

¹¹ Cash dividends represent a reduction of a company's assets. Early exercise may be optimal because the exercise price of options is typically not reduced by the amount of cash dividends, so cash dividends negatively affect the position of an American call option holder.

¹² See Chance and Brooks (2016) for more information on option pricing models.

3.1 Continuous Uniform Distribution

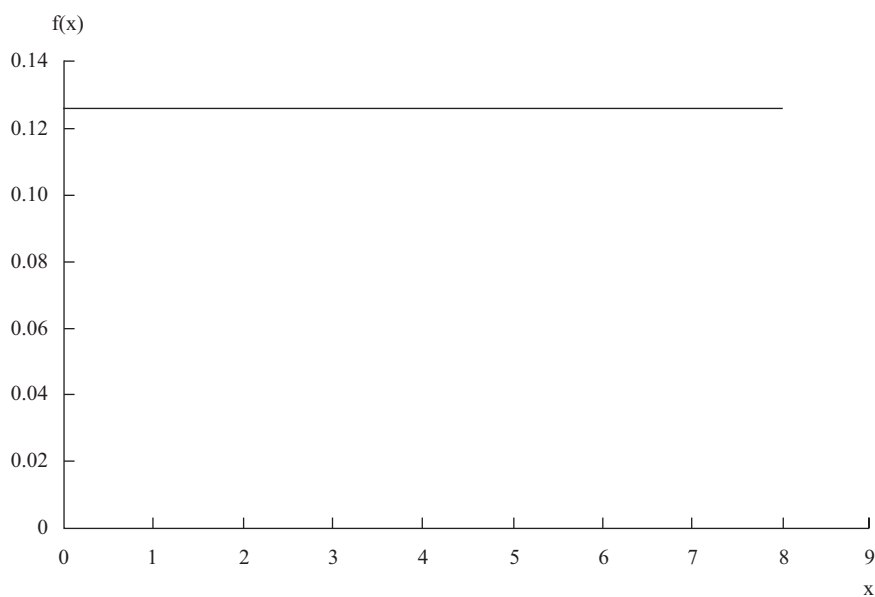
The continuous uniform distribution is the simplest continuous probability distribution. The uniform distribution has two main uses. As the basis of techniques for generating random numbers, the uniform distribution plays a role in Monte Carlo simulation. As the probability distribution that describes equally likely outcomes, the uniform distribution is an appropriate probability model to represent a particular kind of uncertainty in beliefs in which all outcomes appear equally likely.

The pdf for a uniform random variable is

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{b-a} & \text{for } a < x < b \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

For example, with $a = 0$ and $b = 8$, $f(x) = 1/8$ or 0.125. We graph this density in Figure 3.

Figure 3 Continuous Uniform Distribution



The graph of the density function plots as a horizontal line with a value of 0.125.

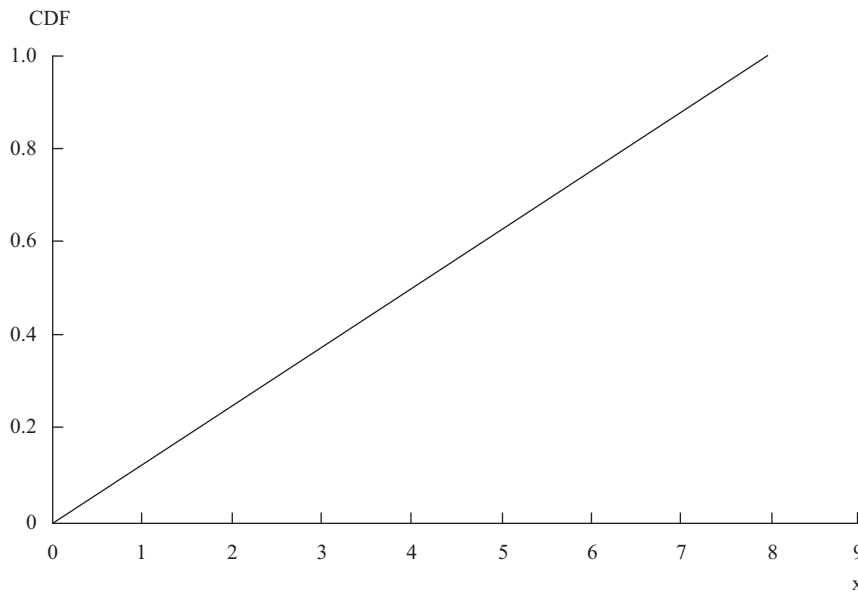
What is the probability that a uniform random variable with limits $a = 0$ and $b = 8$ is less than or equal to 3, or $F(3) = P(X \leq 3)$? When we were working with the discrete uniform random variable with possible outcomes 1, 2, ..., 8, we summed individual probabilities: $p(1) + p(2) + p(3) = 0.375$. In contrast, the probability that a continuous uniform random variable, or any continuous random variable, assumes any given fixed value is 0. To illustrate this point, consider the narrow interval 2.510 to 2.511. Because that interval holds an infinity of possible values, the sum of the probabilities of values in that interval alone would be infinite if each individual value in it had a positive probability. To find the probability $F(3)$, we find the area under the curve graphing the pdf, between 0 to 3 on the x axis. In calculus, this operation is called integrating the probability function $f(x)$ from 0 to 3. This area under the curve is a rectangle with base $3 - 0 = 3$ and height $1/8$. The area of this rectangle equals base times height: $3(1/8) = 3/8$ or 0.375. So $F(3) = 3/8$ or 0.375.

The interval from 0 to 3 is three-eighths of the total length between the limits of 0 and 8, and $F(3)$ is three-eighths of the total probability of 1. The middle line of the expression for the cdf captures this relationship.

$$F(x) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{for } x \leq a \\ \frac{x - a}{b - a} & \text{for } a < x < b \\ 1 & \text{for } x \geq b \end{cases}$$

For our problem, $F(x) = 0$ for $x \leq 0$, $F(x) = x/8$ for $0 < x < 8$, and $F(x) = 1$ for $x \geq 8$. We graph this cdf in Figure 4.

Figure 4 Continuous Uniform Cumulative Distribution



The mathematical operation that corresponds to finding the area under the curve of a pdf $f(x)$ from a to b is the integral of $f(x)$ from a to b :

$$P(a \leq X \leq b) = \int_a^b f(x) dx \tag{2}$$

where $\int dx$ is the symbol for summing \int over small changes dx , and the limits of integration (a and b) can be any real numbers or $-\infty$ and $+\infty$. All probabilities of continuous random variables can be computed using Equation 2. For the uniform distribution example considered above, $F(7)$ is Equation 2 with lower limit $a = 0$ and upper limit $b = 7$. The integral corresponding to the cdf of a uniform distribution reduces to the three-line expression given previously. To evaluate Equation 2 for nearly all other continuous distributions, including the normal and lognormal, we rely on spreadsheet functions, computer programs, or tables of values to calculate probabilities. Those tools use various numerical methods to evaluate the integral in Equation 2.

Recall that the probability of a continuous random variable equalling any fixed point is 0. This fact has an important consequence for working with the cumulative distribution function of a continuous random variable: For any continuous random variable X , $P(a \leq X \leq b) = P(a < X \leq b) = P(a \leq X < b) = P(a < X < b)$, because the probabilities at the endpoints a and b are 0. For discrete random variables, these relations of equality are not true, because probability accumulates at points.

EXAMPLE 7**Probability That a Lending Facility Covenant Is Breached**

You are evaluating the bonds of a below-investment-grade borrower at a low point in its business cycle. You have many factors to consider, including the terms of the company's bank lending facilities. The contract creating a bank lending facility such as an unsecured line of credit typically has clauses known as covenants. These covenants place restrictions on what the borrower can do. The company will be in breach of a covenant in the lending facility if the interest coverage ratio, EBITDA/interest, calculated on EBITDA over the four trailing quarters, falls below 2.0. EBITDA is earnings before interest, taxes, depreciation, and amortization.¹³ Compliance with the covenants will be checked at the end of the current quarter. If the covenant is breached, the bank can demand immediate repayment of all borrowings on the facility. That action would probably trigger a liquidity crisis for the company. With a high degree of confidence, you forecast interest charges of \$25 million. Your estimate of EBITDA runs from \$40 million on the low end to \$60 million on the high end.

Address two questions (treating projected interest charges as a constant):

- 1 If the outcomes for EBITDA are equally likely, what is the probability that EBITDA/interest will fall below 2.0, breaching the covenant?
- 2 Estimate the mean and standard deviation of EBITDA/interest. For a continuous uniform random variable, the mean is given by $\mu = (a + b)/2$ and the variance is given by $\sigma^2 = (b - a)^2/12$.

Solution to 1:

EBITDA/interest is a continuous uniform random variable because all outcomes are equally likely. The ratio can take on values between $1.6 = (\$40 \text{ million})/(\$25 \text{ million})$ on the low end and $2.4 = (\$60 \text{ million})/(\$25 \text{ million})$ on the high end. The range of possible values is $2.4 - 1.6 = 0.8$. What fraction of the possible values falls below 2.0, the level that triggers default? The distance between 2.0 and 1.6 is 0.40; the value 0.40 is one-half the total length of 0.8, or $0.4/0.8 = 0.50$. So the probability that the covenant will be breached is 50 percent.

Solution to 2:

In Solution 1, we found that the lower limit of EBITDA/interest is 1.6. This lower limit is a . We found that the upper limit is 2.4. This upper limit is b . Using the formula given above,

$$\mu = (a + b)/2 = (1.6 + 2.4)/2 = 2.0$$

The variance of the interest coverage ratio is

$$\sigma^2 = (b - a)^2/12 = (2.4 - 1.6)^2/12 = 0.053333$$

The standard deviation is the positive square root of the variance, $0.230940 = (0.053333)^{1/2}$. The standard deviation is not particularly useful as a risk measure for a uniform distribution, however. The probability that lies within various standard deviation bands around the mean is sensitive to different specifications of the upper and lower limits (although Chebyshev's inequality is always satisfied).¹⁴ Here, a one standard deviation interval around the mean of 2.0 runs from 1.769

¹³ For a detailed discussion on EBITDA, see the Level I CFA Program curriculum reading "Financial Reporting Quality."

¹⁴ Chebyshev's inequality is discussed in the reading on statistical concepts and market returns.

to 2.231 and captures $0.462/0.80 = 0.5775$ or 57.8 percent of the probability. A two standard deviation interval runs from 1.538 to 2.462, which extends past both the lower and upper limits of the random variable.

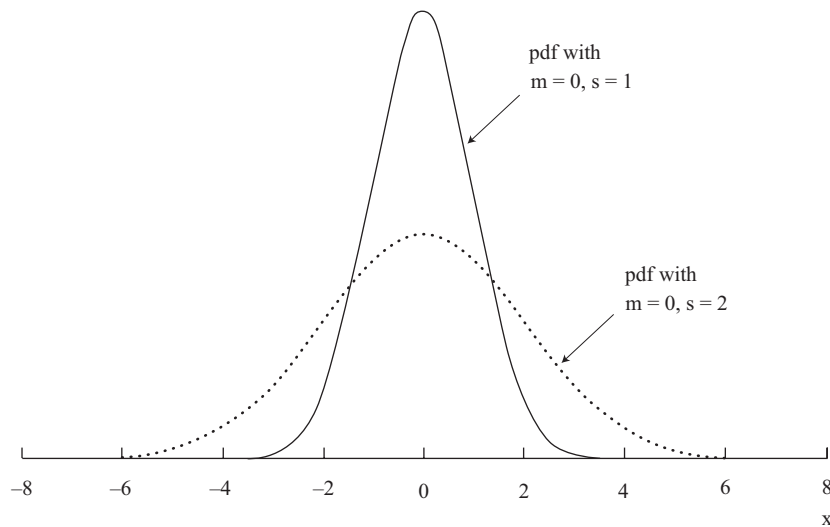
3.2 The Normal Distribution

The normal distribution may be the most extensively used probability distribution in quantitative work. It plays key roles in modern portfolio theory and in a number of risk management technologies. Because it has so many uses, the normal distribution must be thoroughly understood by investment professionals.

The role of the normal distribution in statistical inference and regression analysis is vastly extended by a crucial result known as the central limit theorem. The central limit theorem states that the sum (and mean) of a large number of independent random variables is approximately normally distributed.¹⁵

The French mathematician Abraham de Moivre (1667–1754) introduced the normal distribution in 1733 in developing a version of the central limit theorem. As Figure 5 shows, the normal distribution is symmetrical and bell-shaped. The range of possible outcomes of the normal distribution is the entire real line: all real numbers lying between $-\infty$ and $+\infty$. The tails of the bell curve extend without limit to the left and to the right.

Figure 5 Two Normal Distributions



The defining characteristics of a normal distribution are as follows:

- The normal distribution is completely described by two parameters—its mean, μ , and variance, σ^2 . We indicate this as $X \sim N(\mu, \sigma^2)$ (read “ X follows a normal distribution with mean μ and variance σ^2 ”). We can also define a normal distribution in terms of the mean and the standard deviation, σ (this is often convenient because σ is measured in the same units as X and μ). As a consequence, we can answer any probability question about a normal random variable if we know its mean and variance (or standard deviation).

¹⁵ The central limit theorem is discussed further in the reading on sampling.

- The normal distribution has a skewness of 0 (it is symmetric). The normal distribution has a kurtosis of 3; its excess kurtosis (kurtosis – 3.0) equals 0.¹⁶ As a consequence of symmetry, the mean, median, and the mode are all equal for a normal random variable.
- A linear combination of two or more normal random variables is also normally distributed.

These bullet points concern a single variable or univariate normal distribution: the distribution of one normal random variable. A **univariate distribution** describes a single random variable. A **multivariate distribution** specifies the probabilities for a group of related random variables. You will encounter the **multivariate normal distribution** in investment work and reading and should know the following about it.

When we have a group of assets, we can model the distribution of returns on each asset individually, or the distribution of returns on the assets as a group. “As a group” means that we take account of all the statistical interrelationships among the return series. One model that has often been used for security returns is the multivariate normal distribution. A multivariate normal distribution for the returns on n stocks is completely defined by three lists of parameters:

- the list of the mean returns on the individual securities (n means in total);
- the list of the securities’ variances of return (n variances in total); and
- the list of all the distinct pairwise return correlations: $n(n - 1)/2$ distinct correlations in total.¹⁷

The need to specify correlations is a distinguishing feature of the multivariate normal distribution in contrast to the univariate normal distribution.

The statement “assume returns are normally distributed” is sometimes used to mean a joint normal distribution. For a portfolio of 30 securities, for example, portfolio return is a weighted average of the returns on the 30 securities. A weighted average is a linear combination. Thus, portfolio return is normally distributed if the individual security returns are (joint) normally distributed. To review, in order to specify the normal distribution for portfolio return, we need the means, variances, and the distinct pairwise correlations of the component securities.

With these concepts in mind, we can return to the normal distribution for one random variable. The curves graphed in Figure 5 are the normal density function:

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{\sigma\sqrt{2\pi}} \exp\left(\frac{-(x - \mu)^2}{2\sigma^2}\right) \text{ for } -\infty < x < +\infty \quad (3)$$

The two densities graphed in Figure 5 correspond to a mean of $\mu = 0$ and standard deviations of $\sigma = 1$ and $\sigma = 2$. The normal density with $\mu = 0$ and $\sigma = 1$ is called the **standard normal distribution** (or **unit normal distribution**). Plotting two normal distributions with the same mean and different standard deviations helps us appreciate why standard deviation is a good measure of dispersion for the normal distribution: Observations are much more concentrated around the mean for the normal distribution with $\sigma = 1$ than for the normal distribution with $\sigma = 2$.

¹⁶ If we have a sample of size n from a normal distribution, we may want to know the possible variation in sample skewness and kurtosis. For a normal random variable, the standard deviation of sample skewness is $6/n$ and the standard deviation of sample kurtosis is $24/n$.

¹⁷ For example, a distribution with two stocks (a bivariate normal distribution) has two means, two variances, and one correlation: $2(2 - 1)/2$. A distribution with 30 stocks has 30 means, 30 variances, and 435 distinct correlations: $30(30 - 1)/2$. The return correlation of Dow Chemical with American Express stock is the same as the correlation of American Express with Dow Chemical stock, so these are counted as one distinct correlation.

Although not literally accurate, the normal distribution can be considered an approximate model for returns. Nearly all the probability of a normal random variable is contained within three standard deviations of the mean. For realistic values of mean return and return standard deviation for many assets, the normal probability of outcomes below -100 percent is very small. Whether the approximation is useful in a given application is an empirical question. For example, the normal distribution is a closer fit for quarterly and yearly holding period returns on a diversified equity portfolio than it is for daily or weekly returns.¹⁸ A persistent departure from normality in most equity return series is kurtosis greater than 3, the fat-tails problem. So when we approximate equity return distributions with the normal distribution, we should be aware that the normal distribution tends to underestimate the probability of extreme returns.¹⁹ Option returns are skewed. Because the normal is a symmetrical distribution, we should be cautious in using the normal distribution to model the returns on portfolios containing significant positions in options.

The normal distribution, however, is less suitable as a model for asset prices than as a model for returns. A normal random variable has no lower limit. This characteristic has several implications for investment applications. An asset price can drop only to 0, at which point the asset becomes worthless. As a result, practitioners generally do not use the normal distribution to model the distribution of asset prices. Also note that moving from any level of asset price to 0 translates into a return of -100 percent. Because the normal distribution extends below 0 without limit, it cannot be literally accurate as a model for asset returns.

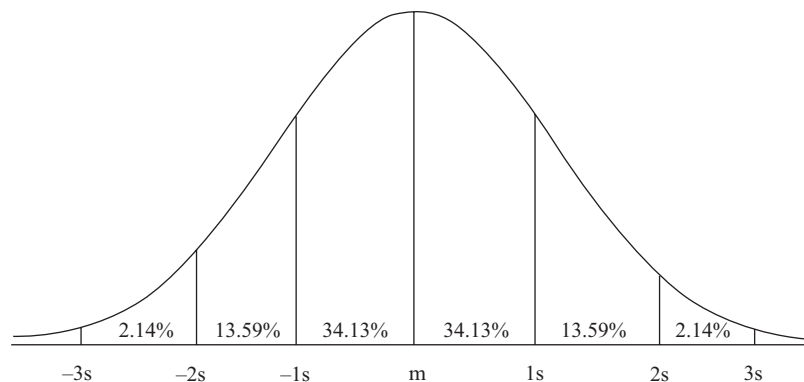
Having established that the normal distribution is the appropriate model for a variable of interest, we can use it to make the following probability statements:

- Approximately 50 percent of all observations fall in the interval $\mu \pm (2/3)\sigma$.
- Approximately 68 percent of all observations fall in the interval $\mu \pm \sigma$.
- Approximately 95 percent of all observations fall in the interval $\mu \pm 2\sigma$.
- Approximately 99 percent of all observations fall in the interval $\mu \pm 3\sigma$.

One, two, and three standard deviation intervals are illustrated in Figure 6. The intervals indicated are easy to remember but are only approximate for the stated probabilities. More-precise intervals are $\mu \pm 1.96\sigma$ for 95 percent of the observations and $\mu \pm 2.58\sigma$ for 99 percent of the observations.

¹⁸ See Fama (1976) and Campbell, Lo, and MacKinlay (1997).

¹⁹ Fat tails can be modeled by a mixture of normal random variables or by a Student's t -distribution with a relatively small number of degrees of freedom. See Kon (1984) and Campbell, Lo, and MacKinlay (1997). We discuss the Student's t -distribution in the reading on sampling and estimation.

Figure 6 Units of Standard Deviation

In general, we do not observe the population mean or the population standard deviation of a distribution, so we need to estimate them.²⁰ We estimate the population mean, μ , using the sample mean, \bar{X} (sometimes denoted as $\hat{\alpha}$) and estimate the population standard deviation, σ , using the sample standard deviation, s (sometimes denoted as $\hat{\sigma}$).

There are as many different normal distributions as there are choices for mean (μ) and variance (σ^2). We can answer all of the above questions in terms of any normal distribution. Spreadsheets, for example, have functions for the normal cdf for any specification of mean and variance. For the sake of efficiency, however, we would like to refer all probability statements to a single normal distribution. The standard normal distribution (the normal distribution with $\mu = 0$ and $\sigma = 1$) fills that role.

There are two steps in **standardizing** a random variable X : Subtract the mean of X from X , then divide that result by the standard deviation of X . If we have a list of observations on a normal random variable, X , we subtract the mean from each observation to get a list of deviations from the mean, then divide each deviation by the standard deviation. The result is the standard normal random variable, Z . (Z is the conventional symbol for a standard normal random variable.) If we have $X \sim N(\mu, \sigma^2)$ (read “ X follows the normal distribution with parameters μ and σ^2 ”), we standardize it using the formula

$$Z = (X - \mu)/\sigma \quad (4)$$

Suppose we have a normal random variable, X , with $\mu = 5$ and $\sigma = 1.5$. We standardize X with $Z = (X - 5)/1.5$. For example, a value $X = 9.5$ corresponds to a standardized value of 3, calculated as $Z = (9.5 - 5)/1.5 = 3$. The probability that we will observe a value as small as or smaller than 9.5 for $X \sim N(5, 1.5)$ is exactly the same as the probability that we will observe a value as small as or smaller than 3 for $Z \sim N(0, 1)$. We can answer all probability questions about X using standardized values and probability tables for Z . We generally do not know the population mean and standard deviation, so we often use the sample mean \bar{X} for μ and the sample standard deviation s for σ .

²⁰ A population is all members of a specified group, and the population mean is the arithmetic mean computed for the population. A sample is a subset of a population, and the sample mean is the arithmetic mean computed for the sample. For more information on these concepts, see the reading on statistical concepts and market returns.

Standard normal probabilities can also be computed with spreadsheets, statistical and econometric software, and programming languages. Tables of the cumulative distribution function for the standard normal random variable are in the back of this book. Table 5 shows an excerpt from those tables. $N(x)$ is a conventional notation for the cdf of a standard normal variable.²¹

x or z	0	0.01	0.02	0.03	0.04	0.05	0.06	0.07	0.08	0.09
0.00	0.5000	0.5040	0.5080	0.5120	0.5160	0.5199	0.5239	0.5279	0.5319	0.5359
0.10	0.5398	0.5438	0.5478	0.5517	0.5557	0.5596	0.5636	0.5675	0.5714	0.5753
0.20	0.5793	0.5832	0.5871	0.5910	0.5948	0.5987	0.6026	0.6064	0.6103	0.6141
0.30	0.6179	0.6217	0.6255	0.6293	0.6331	0.6368	0.6406	0.6443	0.6480	0.6517
0.40	0.6554	0.6591	0.6628	0.6664	0.6700	0.6736	0.6772	0.6808	0.6844	0.6879
0.50	0.6915	0.6950	0.6985	0.7019	0.7054	0.7088	0.7123	0.7157	0.7190	0.7224

To find the probability that a standard normal variable is less than or equal to 0.24, for example, locate the row that contains 0.20, look at the 0.04 column, and find the entry 0.5948. Thus, $P(Z \leq 0.24) = 0.5948$ or 59.48 percent.

The following are some of the most frequently referenced values in the standard normal table:

- The 90th percentile point is 1.282: $P(Z \leq 1.282) = N(1.282) = 0.90$ or 90 percent, and 10 percent of values remain in the right tail.
- The 95th percentile point is 1.65: $P(Z \leq 1.65) = N(1.65) = 0.95$ or 95 percent, and 5 percent of values remain in the right tail. Note the difference between the use of a percentile point when dealing with one tail rather than two tails. Earlier, we used 1.65 standard deviations for the 90 percent confidence interval, where 5 percent of values lie outside that interval on each of the two sides. Here we use 1.65 because we are concerned with the 5 percent of values that lie only on one side, the right tail.
- The 99th percentile point is 2.327: $P(Z \leq 2.327) = N(2.327) = 0.99$ or 99 percent, and 1 percent of values remain in the right tail.

The tables that we give for the normal cdf include probabilities for $x \leq 0$. Many sources, however, give tables only for $x \geq 0$. How would one use such tables to find a normal probability? Because of the symmetry of the normal distribution, we can find all probabilities using tables of the cdf of the standard normal random variable, $P(Z \leq x) = N(x)$, for $x \geq 0$. The relations below are helpful for using tables for $x \geq 0$, as well as in other uses:

- For a non-negative number x , use $N(x)$ from the table. Note that for the probability to the right of x , we have $P(Z \geq x) = 1.0 - N(x)$.
- For a negative number $-x$, $N(-x) = 1.0 - N(x)$: Find $N(x)$ and subtract it from 1. All the area under the normal curve to the left of x is $N(x)$. The balance, $1.0 - N(x)$, is the area and probability to the right of x . By the symmetry of the normal distribution around its mean, the area and the probability to the right of x are equal to the area and the probability to the left of $-x$, $N(-x)$.
- For the probability to the right of $-x$, $P(Z \geq -x) = N(x)$.

²¹ Another often-seen notation for the cdf of a standard normal variable is $\Phi(x)$.

EXAMPLE 8**Probabilities for a Common Stock Portfolio**

Assume the portfolio mean return is 12 percent and the standard deviation of return estimate is 22 percent per year.

You want to calculate the following probabilities, assuming that a normal distribution describes returns. (You can use the excerpt from the table of normal probabilities to answer these questions.)

- 1 What is the probability that portfolio return will exceed 20 percent?
- 2 What is the probability that portfolio return will be between 12 percent and 20 percent? In other words, what is $P(12\% \leq \text{Portfolio return} \leq 20\%)$?
- 3 You can buy a one-year T-bill that yields 5.5 percent. This yield is effectively a one-year risk-free interest rate. What is the probability that your portfolio's return will be equal to or less than the risk-free rate?

If X is portfolio return, standardized portfolio return is $Z = (X - \bar{X})/s = (X - 12\%)/22\%$. We use this expression throughout the solutions.

Solution to 1:

For $X = 20\%$, $Z = (20\% - 12\%)/22\% = 0.363636$. You want to find $P(Z > 0.363636)$. First note that $P(Z > x) = P(Z \geq x)$ because the normal is a continuous distribution. Recall that $P(Z \geq x) = 1.0 - P(Z \leq x)$ or $1 - N(x)$. Rounding 0.363636 to 0.36, according to the table, $N(0.36) = 0.6406$. Thus, $1 - 0.6406 = 0.3594$. The probability that portfolio return will exceed 20 percent is about 36 percent if your normality assumption is accurate.

Solution to 2:

$P(12\% \leq \text{Portfolio return} \leq 20\%) = N(Z \text{ corresponding to } 20\%) - N(Z \text{ corresponding to } 12\%)$. For the first term, $Z = (20\% - 12\%)/22\% = 0.36$ approximately, and $N(0.36) = 0.6406$ (as in Solution 1). To get the second term immediately, note that 12 percent is the mean, and for the normal distribution 50 percent of the probability lies on either side of the mean. Therefore, $N(Z \text{ corresponding to } 12\%)$ must equal 50 percent. So $P(12\% \leq \text{Portfolio return} \leq 20\%) = 0.6406 - 0.50 = 0.1406$ or approximately 14 percent.

Solution to 3:

If X is portfolio return, then we want to find $P(\text{Portfolio return} \leq 5.5\%)$. This question is more challenging than Parts 1 or 2, but when you have studied the solution below you will have a useful pattern for calculating other shortfall probabilities.

There are three steps, which involve standardizing the portfolio return: First, subtract the portfolio mean return from each side of the inequality: $P(\text{Portfolio return} - 12\% \leq 5.5\% - 12\%)$. Second, divide each side of the inequality by the standard deviation of portfolio return: $P[(\text{Portfolio return} - 12\%)/22\% \leq (5.5\% - 12\%)/22\%] = P(Z \leq -0.295455) = N(-0.295455)$. Third, recognize that on the left-hand side we have a standard normal variable, denoted by Z . As we pointed out above, $N(-x) = 1 - N(x)$. Rounding -0.29545 to -0.30 for use with the excerpted table, we have $N(-0.30) = 1 - N(0.30) = 1 - 0.6179 = 0.3821$, roughly 38 percent. The probability that your portfolio will underperform the one-year risk-free rate is about 38 percent.

We can get the answer above quickly by subtracting the mean portfolio return from 5.5 percent, dividing by the standard deviation of portfolio return, and evaluating the result (-0.295455) with the standard normal cdf.

3.3 Applications of the Normal Distribution

Modern portfolio theory (MPT) makes wide use of the idea that the value of investment opportunities can be meaningfully measured in terms of mean return and variance of return. In economic theory, **mean–variance analysis** holds exactly when investors are risk averse; when they choose investments so as to maximize expected utility, or satisfaction; and when either 1) returns are normally distributed, or 2) investors have quadratic utility functions.²² Mean–variance analysis can still be useful, however—that is, it can hold approximately—when either assumption 1 or 2 is violated. Because practitioners prefer to work with observables such as returns, the proposition that returns are at least approximately normally distributed has played a key role in much of MPT.

Mean–variance analysis generally considers risk symmetrically in the sense that standard deviation captures variability both above and below the mean.²³ An alternative approach evaluates only downside risk. We discuss one such approach, safety-first rules, as it provides an excellent illustration of the application of normal distribution theory to practical investment problems. **Safety-first rules** focus on **shortfall risk**, the risk that portfolio value will fall below some minimum acceptable level over some time horizon. The risk that the assets in a defined benefit plan will fall below plan liabilities is an example of a shortfall risk.

Suppose an investor views any return below a level of R_L as unacceptable. Roy's safety-first criterion states that the optimal portfolio minimizes the probability that portfolio return, R_p , falls below the threshold level, R_L .²⁴ In symbols, the investor's objective is to choose a portfolio that minimizes $P(R_p < R_L)$. When portfolio returns are normally distributed, we can calculate $P(R_p < R_L)$ using the number of standard deviations that R_L lies below the expected portfolio return, $E(R_p)$. The portfolio for which $E(R_p) - R_L$ is largest relative to standard deviation minimizes $P(R_p < R_L)$. Therefore, if returns are normally distributed, the safety-first optimal portfolio *maximizes* the safety-first ratio (SFRatio):

$$\text{SFRatio} = [E(R_p) - R_L] / \sigma_p$$

The quantity $E(R_p) - R_L$ is the distance from the mean return to the shortfall level. Dividing this distance by σ_p gives the distance in units of standard deviation. There are two steps in choosing among portfolios using Roy's criterion (assuming normality):²⁵

- 1 Calculate each portfolio's SFRatio.
- 2 Choose the portfolio with the highest SFRatio.

For a portfolio with a given safety-first ratio, the probability that its return will be less than R_L is $N(-\text{SFRatio})$, and the safety-first optimal portfolio has the lowest such probability. For example, suppose an investor's threshold return, R_L , is 2 percent. He is presented with two portfolios. Portfolio 1 has an expected return of 12 percent with a standard deviation of 15 percent. Portfolio 2 has an expected return of 14 percent with a standard deviation of 16 percent. The SFRatios are $0.667 = (12 - 2)/15$ and $0.75 = (14 - 2)/16$ for Portfolios 1 and 2, respectively. For the superior Portfolio 2, the probability that portfolio return will be less than 2 percent is $N(-0.75) = 1 - N(0.75) = 1 - 0.7734 = 0.227$ or about 23 percent, assuming that portfolio returns are normally distributed.

²² Utility functions are mathematical representations of attitudes toward risk and return.

²³ We shall discuss mean–variance analysis in detail in the readings on portfolio concepts.

²⁴ A.D. Roy (1952) introduced this criterion.

²⁵ If there is an asset offering a risk-free return over the time horizon being considered, and if R_L is less than or equal to that risk-free rate, then it is optimal to be fully invested in the risk-free asset. Holding the risk-free asset in this case eliminates the chance that the threshold return is not met.

You may have noticed the similarity of SFRatio to the Sharpe ratio. If we substitute the risk-free rate, R_F , for the critical level R_L , the SFRatio becomes the Sharpe ratio. The safety-first approach provides a new perspective on the Sharpe ratio: When we evaluate portfolios using the Sharpe ratio, the portfolio with the highest Sharpe ratio is the one that minimizes the probability that portfolio return will be less than the risk-free rate (given a normality assumption).

EXAMPLE 9

The Safety-First Optimal Portfolio for a Client

You are researching asset allocations for a client in Canada with a C\$800,000 portfolio. Although her investment objective is long-term growth, at the end of a year she may want to liquidate C\$30,000 of the portfolio to fund educational expenses. If that need arises, she would like to be able to take out the C\$30,000 without invading the initial capital of C\$800,000. Table 6 shows three alternative allocations.

Table 6 Mean and Standard Deviation for Three Allocations (in Percent)

	A	B	C
Expected annual return	25	11	14
Standard deviation of return	27	8	20

Address these questions (assume normality for Parts 2 and 3):

- 1 Given the client's desire not to invade the C\$800,000 principal, what is the shortfall level, R_L ? Use this shortfall level to answer Part 2.
- 2 According to the safety-first criterion, which of the three allocations is the best?
- 3 What is the probability that the return on the safety-first optimal portfolio will be less than the shortfall level?

Solution to 1:

Because C\$30,000/C\$800,000 is 3.75 percent, for any return less than 3.75 percent the client will need to invade principal if she takes out C\$30,000. So $R_L = 3.75$ percent.

Solution to 2:

To decide which of the three allocations is safety-first optimal, select the alternative with the highest ratio $[E(R_P) - R_L]/\sigma_P$:

$$\text{Allocation A: } 0.787037 = (25 - 3.75)/27$$

$$\text{Allocation B: } 0.90625 = (11 - 3.75)/8$$

$$\text{Allocation C: } 0.5125 = (14 - 3.75)/20$$

Allocation B, with the largest ratio (0.90625), is the best alternative according to the safety-first criterion.

Solution to 3:

To answer this question, note that $P(R_B < 3.75) = N(-0.90625)$. We can round 0.90625 to 0.91 for use with tables of the standard normal cdf. First, we calculate $N(-0.91) = 1 - N(0.91) = 1 - 0.8186 = 0.1814$ or about 18.1 percent. Using a spreadsheet function for the standard normal cdf on -0.90625 without rounding, we get 18.24 percent or about 18.2 percent. The safety-first optimal portfolio has a roughly 18 percent chance of not meeting a 3.75 percent return threshold.

Several points are worth noting. First, if the inputs were even slightly different, we could get a different ranking. For example, if the mean return on B were 10 rather than 11 percent, A would be superior to B. Second, if meeting the 3.75 percent return threshold were a necessity rather than a wish, C\$830,000 in one year could be modeled as a liability. Fixed income strategies such as cash flow matching could be used to offset or immunize the C\$830,000 quasi-liability.

Roy's safety-first rule was the earliest approach to addressing shortfall risk. The standard mean-variance portfolio selection process can also accommodate a shortfall risk constraint.²⁶

In many investment contexts besides Roy's safety-first criterion, we use the normal distribution to estimate a probability. For example, Kolb, Gay, and Hunter (1985) developed an expression based on the standard normal distribution for the probability that a futures trader will exhaust his liquidity because of losses in a futures contract. Another arena in which the normal distribution plays an important role is financial risk management. Financial institutions such as investment banks, security dealers, and commercial banks have formal systems to measure and control financial risk at various levels, from trading positions to the overall risk for the firm.²⁷ Two mainstays in managing financial risk are Value at Risk (VaR) and stress testing/scenario analysis. **Stress testing/scenario analysis**, a complement to VaR, refers to a set of techniques for estimating losses in extremely unfavorable combinations of events or scenarios. **Value at Risk (VaR)** is a money measure of the minimum value of losses expected over a specified time period (for example, a day, a quarter, or a year) at a given level of probability (often 0.05 or 0.01). Suppose we specify a one-day time horizon and a level of probability of 0.05, which would be called a 95 percent one-day VaR.²⁸ If this VaR equaled €5 million for a portfolio, there would be a 0.05 probability that the portfolio would lose €5 million or more in a single day (assuming our assumptions were correct). One of the basic approaches to estimating VaR, the variance-covariance or analytical method, assumes that returns follow a normal distribution. For more information on VaR, see Chance and Brooks (2016).

3.4 The Lognormal Distribution

Closely related to the normal distribution, the lognormal distribution is widely used for modeling the probability distribution of share and other asset prices. For example, the lognormal appears in the Black–Scholes–Merton option pricing model. The Black–Scholes–Merton model assumes that the price of the asset underlying the option is lognormally distributed.

²⁶ See Leibowitz and Henriksson (1989), for example.

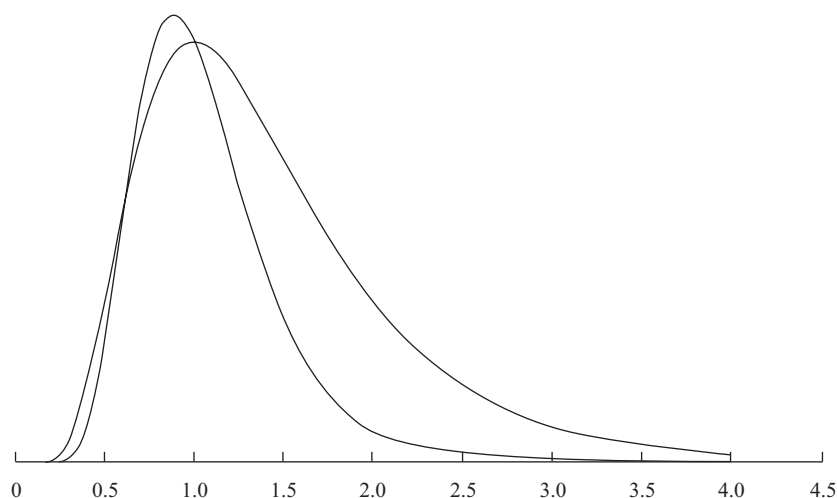
²⁷ **Financial risk** is risk relating to asset prices and other financial variables. The contrast is to other, non-financial risks (for example, relating to operations and technology), which require different tools to manage.

²⁸ In 95 percent one-day VaR, the 95 percent refers to the confidence in the value of VaR and is equal to $1 - 0.05$; this is a traditional way to state VaR.

A random variable Y follows a lognormal distribution if its natural logarithm, $\ln Y$, is normally distributed. The reverse is also true: If the natural logarithm of random variable Y , $\ln Y$, is normally distributed, then Y follows a lognormal distribution. If you think of the term lognormal as “the log is normal,” you will have no trouble remembering this relationship.

The two most noteworthy observations about the lognormal distribution are that it is bounded below by 0 and it is skewed to the right (it has a long right tail). Note these two properties in the graphs of the pdfs of two lognormal distributions in Figure 7. Asset prices are bounded from below by 0. In practice, the lognormal distribution has been found to be a usefully accurate description of the distribution of prices for many financial assets. On the other hand, the normal distribution is often a good approximation for returns. For this reason, both distributions are very important for finance professionals.

Figure 7 Two Lognormal Distributions



Like the normal distribution, the lognormal distribution is completely described by two parameters. Unlike the other distributions we have considered, a lognormal distribution is defined in terms of the parameters of a *different* distribution. The two parameters of a lognormal distribution are the mean and standard deviation (or variance) of its associated normal distribution: the mean and variance of $\ln Y$, given that Y is lognormal. Remember, we must keep track of two sets of means and standard deviations (or variances): the mean and standard deviation (or variance) of the associated normal distribution (these are the parameters), and the mean and standard deviation (or variance) of the lognormal variable itself.

The expressions for the mean and variance of the lognormal variable itself are challenging. Suppose a normal random variable X has expected value μ and variance σ^2 . Define $Y = \exp(X)$. Remember that the operation indicated by $\exp(X)$ or e^X is the opposite operation from taking logs.²⁹ Because $\ln Y = \ln [\exp(X)] = X$ is normal (we assume X is normal), Y is lognormal. What is the expected value of $Y = \exp(X)$? A guess might be that the expected value of Y is $\exp(\mu)$. The expected value is actually $\exp(\mu + 0.50\sigma^2)$, which is larger than $\exp(\mu)$ by a factor of $\exp(0.50\sigma^2) > 1$.³⁰ To get some

²⁹ The quantity $e \approx 2.7182818$.

³⁰ Note that $\exp(0.50\sigma^2) > 1$ because $\sigma^2 > 0$.

insight into this concept, think of what happens if we increase σ^2 . The distribution spreads out; it can spread upward, but it cannot spread downward past 0. As a result, the center of its distribution is pushed to the right—the distribution’s mean increases.³¹

The expressions for the mean and variance of a lognormal variable are summarized below, where μ and σ^2 are the mean and variance of the associated normal distribution (refer to these expressions as needed, rather than memorizing them):

- Mean (μ_L) of a lognormal random variable = $\exp(\mu + 0.50\sigma^2)$
- Variance (σ_L^2) of a lognormal random variable = $\exp(2\mu + \sigma^2) \times [\exp(\sigma^2) - 1]$

We now explore the relationship between the distribution of stock return and stock price. In the following we show that if a stock’s continuously compounded return is normally distributed, then future stock price is necessarily lognormally distributed.³² Furthermore, we show that stock price may be well described by the lognormal distribution even when continuously compounded returns do not follow a normal distribution. These results provide the theoretical foundation for using the lognormal distribution to model prices.

To outline the presentation that follows, we first show that the stock price at some future time T , S_T , equals the current stock price, S_0 , multiplied by e raised to power $r_{0,T}$, the continuously compounded return from 0 to T ; this relationship is expressed as $S_T = S_0 \exp(r_{0,T})$. We then show that we can write $r_{0,T}$ as the sum of shorter-term continuously compounded returns and that if these shorter-period returns are normally distributed, then $r_{0,T}$ is normally distributed (given certain assumptions) or approximately normally distributed (not making those assumptions). As S_T is proportional to the log of a normal random variable, S_T is lognormal.

To supply a framework for our discussion, suppose we have a series of equally spaced observations on stock price: $S_0, S_1, S_2, \dots, S_T$. Current stock price, S_0 , is a known quantity and so is nonrandom. The future prices (such as S_1), however, are random variables. The **price relative**, S_1/S_0 , is an ending price, S_1 , over a beginning price, S_0 ; it is equal to 1 plus the holding period return on the stock from $t = 0$ to $t = 1$:

$$S_1/S_0 = 1 + R_{0,1}$$

For example, if $S_0 = \$30$ and $S_1 = \$34.50$, then $S_1/S_0 = \$34.50/\$30 = 1.15$. Therefore, $R_{0,1} = 0.15$ or 15 percent. In general, price relatives have the form

$$S_{t+1}/S_t = 1 + R_{t,t+1}$$

where $R_{t,t+1}$ is the rate of return from t to $t + 1$.

An important concept is the continuously compounded return associated with a holding period return such as $R_{0,1}$. The **continuously compounded return** associated with a holding period is the natural logarithm of 1 plus that holding period return, or equivalently, the natural logarithm of the ending price over the beginning price (the price relative).³³ For example, if we observe a one-week holding period return of 0.04, the equivalent continuously compounded return, called the one-week continuously compounded return, is $\ln(1.04) = 0.039221$; €1.00 invested for one week at 0.039221 continuously compounded gives €1.04, equivalent to a 4 percent one-week holding period return. The continuously compounded return from t to $t + 1$ is

$$r_{t,t+1} = \ln(S_{t+1}/S_t) = \ln(1 + R_{t,t+1}) \tag{5}$$

³¹ Luenberger (1998) is the source of this explanation.

³² Continuous compounding treats time as essentially continuous or unbroken, in contrast to discrete compounding, which treats time as advancing in discrete finite intervals. Continuously compounded returns are the model for returns in so-called **continuous time** finance models such as the Black–Scholes–Merton option pricing model. See the reading on the time value of money for more information on compounding.

³³ In this reading we use lowercase r to refer specifically to continuously compounded returns.

For our example, $r_{0,1} = \ln(S_1/S_0) = \ln(1 + R_{0,1}) = \ln(\$34.50/\$30) = \ln(1.15) = 0.139762$. Thus, 13.98 percent is the continuously compounded return from $t = 0$ to $t = 1$. The continuously compounded return is smaller than the associated holding period return. If our investment horizon extends from $t = 0$ to $t = T$, then the continuously compounded return to T is

$$r_{0,T} = \ln(S_T/S_0)$$

Applying the function \exp to both sides of the equation, we have $\exp(r_{0,T}) = \exp[\ln(S_T/S_0)] = S_T/S_0$, so

$$S_T = S_0 \exp(r_{0,T})$$

We can also express S_T/S_0 as the product of price relatives:

$$S_T/S_0 = (S_T/S_{T-1})(S_{T-1}/S_{T-2}) \dots (S_1/S_0)$$

Taking logs of both sides of this equation, we find that continuously compounded return to time T is the sum of the one-period continuously compounded returns:

$$r_{0,T} = r_{T-1,T} + r_{T-2,T-1} + \dots + r_{0,1} \quad (6)$$

Using holding period returns to find the ending value of a \$1 investment involves the multiplication of quantities $(1 + \text{holding period return})$. Using continuously compounded returns involves addition.

A key assumption in many investment applications is that returns are **independently and identically distributed (IID)**. Independence captures the proposition that investors cannot predict future returns using past returns (i.e., weak-form market efficiency). Identical distribution captures the assumption of stationarity.³⁴

Assume that the one-period continuously compounded returns (such as $r_{0,1}$) are IID random variables with mean μ and variance σ^2 (but making no normality or other distributional assumption). Then

$$E(r_{0,T}) = E(r_{T-1,T}) + E(r_{T-2,T-1}) + \dots + E(r_{0,1}) = \mu T \quad (7)$$

(we add up μ for a total of T times) and

$$\sigma^2(r_{0,T}) = \sigma^2 T \quad (8)$$

(as a consequence of the independence assumption). The variance of the T holding period continuously compounded return is T multiplied by the variance of the one-period continuously compounded return; also, $\sigma(r_{0,T}) = \sigma\sqrt{T}$. If the one-period continuously compounded returns on the right-hand side of Equation 6 are normally distributed, then the T holding period continuously compounded return, $r_{0,T}$, is also normally distributed with mean μT and variance $\sigma^2 T$. This relationship is so because a linear combination of normal random variables is also normal. But even if the one-period continuously compounded returns are not normal, their sum, $r_{0,T}$, is approximately normal according to a result in statistics known as the central limit theorem.³⁵ Now compare $S_T = S_0 \exp(r_{0,T})$ to $Y = \exp(X)$, where X is normal and Y is lognormal (as we discussed above). Clearly, we can model future stock price S_T as a lognormal random variable because $r_{0,T}$ should be at least approximately normal. This assumption of normally distributed returns is the basis in theory for the lognormal distribution as a model for the distribution of prices of shares and other assets.

³⁴ Stationarity implies that the mean and variance of return do not change from period to period.

³⁵ We mentioned the central limit theorem earlier in our discussion of the normal distribution. To give a somewhat fuller statement of it, according to the central limit theorem the sum (as well as the mean) of a set of independent, identically distributed random variables with finite variances is normally distributed, whatever distribution the random variables follow. We discuss the central limit theorem in the reading on sampling.

Continuously compounded returns play a role in many option pricing models, as mentioned earlier. An estimate of volatility is crucial for using option pricing models such as the Black–Scholes–Merton model. **Volatility** measures the standard deviation of the continuously compounded returns on the underlying asset.³⁶ In practice, we very often estimate volatility using a historical series of continuously compounded daily returns. We gather a set of daily holding period returns and then use Equation 5 to convert them into continuously compounded daily returns. We then compute the standard deviation of the continuously compounded daily returns and annualize that number using Equation 8.³⁷ (By convention, volatility is stated as an annualized measure.)³⁸ Example 10 illustrates the estimation of volatility for the shares of Astra International.

EXAMPLE 10**Volatility as Used in Option Pricing Models**

Suppose you are researching Astra International (Indonesia Stock Exchange: ASII) and are interested in Astra's price action in a week in which international economic news had significantly affected the Indonesian stock market. You decide to use volatility as a measure of the variability of Astra shares during that week. Table 7 shows closing prices during that week.

Table 7 Astra International Daily Closing Prices

Date	Closing Price (IDR)
17 June 2013	6,950
18 June 2013	7,000
19 June 2013	6,850
20 June 2013	6,600
21 June 2013	6,350

Source: <http://finance.yahoo.com>.

Use the data in Table 7 to do the following:

- 1 Estimate the volatility of Astra shares. (Annualize volatility based on 250 days in a year.)
- 2 Identify the probability distribution for Astra share prices if continuously compounded daily returns follow the normal distribution.

³⁶ Volatility is also called the instantaneous standard deviation, and as such is denoted σ . The underlying asset, or simply the underlying, is the asset underlying the option. For more information on these concepts, see Chance and Brooks (2016).

³⁷ To compute the standard deviation of a set or sample of n returns, we sum the squared deviation of each return from the mean return and then divide that sum by $n - 1$. The result is the sample variance. Taking the square root of the sample variance gives the sample standard deviation. To review the calculation of standard deviation, see the reading on statistical concepts and market returns.

³⁸ Annualizing is often done on the basis of 250 days in a year, the approximate number of days markets are open for trading. The 250-day number may lead to a better estimate of volatility than the 365-day number. Thus if daily volatility were 0.01, we would state volatility (on an annual basis) as $0.01\sqrt{250} = 0.1581$.

Solution to 1:

First, use Equation 5 to calculate the continuously compounded daily returns; then find their standard deviation in the usual way. (In the calculation of sample variance to get sample standard deviation, use a divisor of 1 less than the sample size.)

$$\ln(7,000/6,950) = 0.007168$$

$$\ln(6,850/7,000) = -0.021661$$

$$\ln(6,600/6,850) = -0.037179$$

$$\ln(6,350/6,600) = -0.038615$$

$$\text{Sum} = -0.090287$$

$$\text{Mean} = -0.022572$$

$$\text{Variance} = 0.000452$$

$$\text{Standard Deviation} = 0.021261$$

The standard deviation of continuously compounded daily returns is 0.021261. Equation 8 states that $\hat{\sigma}(r_{0,T}) = \hat{\sigma}\sqrt{T}$. In this example, $\hat{\sigma}$ is the sample standard deviation of one-period continuously compounded returns. Thus, $\hat{\sigma}$ refers to 0.021261. We want to annualize, so the horizon T corresponds to one year. As $\hat{\sigma}$ is in days, we set T equal to the number of trading days in a year (250).

We find that annualized volatility for Astra stock that week was 33.6 percent, calculated as $0.021261\sqrt{250} = 0.336165$.

Note that the sample mean, -0.022572 , is a possible estimate of the mean, μ , of the continuously compounded one-period or daily returns. The sample mean can be translated into an estimate of the expected continuously compounded annual return using Equation 7: $\hat{\mu}T = -0.022572(250)$ (using 250 to be consistent with the calculation of volatility). But four observations are far too few to estimate expected returns. The variability in the daily returns overwhelms any information about expected return in a series this short.

Solution to 2:

Astra share prices should follow the lognormal distribution if the continuously compounded daily returns on Astra shares follow the normal distribution.

We have shown that the distribution of stock price is lognormal, given certain assumptions. What are the mean and variance of S_T if S_T follows the lognormal distribution? Earlier in this section, we gave bullet-point expressions for the mean and variance of a lognormal random variable. In the bullet-point expressions, the $\hat{\mu}$ and $\hat{\sigma}^2$ would refer, in the context of this discussion, to the mean and variance of the T horizon (not the one-period) continuously compounded returns (assumed to follow a normal distribution), compatible with the horizon of S_T .³⁹ Related to the use of mean and variance (or standard deviation), earlier in this reading we used those quantities to construct intervals in which we expect to find a certain percentage of the observations of a normally distributed random variable. Those intervals were symmetric about the mean. Can we state similar, symmetric intervals for a lognormal random variable?

³⁹ The expression for the mean is $E(S_T) = S_0 \exp[E(r_{0,T}) + 0.5\sigma^2(r_{0,T})]$, for example.

Unfortunately, we cannot. Because the lognormal distribution is not symmetric, such intervals are more complicated than for the normal distribution, and we will not discuss this specialist topic here.⁴⁰

Finally, we have presented the relation between the mean and variance of continuously compounded returns associated with different time horizons (see Equations 7 and 8), but how are the means and variances of holding period returns and continuously compounded returns related? As analysts, we typically think in terms of holding period returns rather than continuously compounded returns, and we may desire to convert means and standard deviations of holding period returns to means and standard deviations of continuously compounded returns for an option application, for example. To effect such conversions (and those in the other direction, from a continuous compounding to a holding period basis), we can use the expressions in Ferguson (1993).

MONTE CARLO SIMULATION

4

With an understanding of probability distributions, we are now prepared to learn about a computer-based technique in which probability distributions play an integral role. The technique is called Monte Carlo simulation. **Monte Carlo simulation** in finance involves the use of a computer to represent the operation of a complex financial system. A characteristic feature of Monte Carlo simulation is the generation of a large number of random samples from a specified probability distribution or distributions to represent the role of risk in the system.

Monte Carlo simulation has several quite distinct uses. One use is in planning. Stanford University researcher Sam Savage provided the following neat picture of that role: “What is the last thing you do before you climb on a ladder? You shake it, and that is Monte Carlo simulation.”⁴¹ Just as shaking a ladder helps us assess the risks in climbing it, Monte Carlo simulation allows us to experiment with a proposed policy before actually implementing it. For example, investment performance can be evaluated with reference to a benchmark or a liability. Defined benefit pension plans often invest assets with reference to plan liabilities. Pension liabilities are a complex random process. In a Monte Carlo asset-liability financial planning study, the functioning of pension assets and liabilities is simulated over time, given assumptions about how assets are invested, the work force, and other variables. A key specification in this and all Monte Carlo simulations is the probability distributions of the various sources of risk (including interest rates and security market returns, in this case). The implications of different investment policy decisions on the plan’s funded status can be assessed through simulated time. The experiment can be repeated for another set of assumptions. We can view Example 11 below as coming under this heading. In that example, market return series are not long enough to address researchers’ questions on stock market timing, so the researchers simulate market returns to find answers to their questions.

Monte Carlo simulation is also widely used to develop estimates of VaR. In this application, we simulate the portfolio’s profit and loss performance for a specified time horizon. Repeated trials within the simulation (each trial involving a draw of random observations from a probability distribution) produce a frequency distribution for changes in portfolio value. The point that defines the cutoff for the least favorable 5 percent of simulated changes is an estimate of 95 percent VaR, for example.

⁴⁰ See Hull (2017) for a discussion of lognormal confidence intervals.

⁴¹ *Business Week*, 22 January 2001.

In an extremely important use, Monte Carlo simulation is a tool for valuing complex securities, particularly some European-style options for which no analytic pricing formula is available.⁴² For other securities, such as mortgage-backed securities with complex embedded options, Monte Carlo simulation is also an important modeling resource.

Researchers use Monte Carlo simulation to test their models and tools. How critical is a particular assumption to the performance of a model? Because we control the assumptions when we do a simulation, we can run the model through a Monte Carlo simulation to examine a model's sensitivity to a change in our assumptions.

To understand the technique of Monte Carlo simulation, let us present the process as a series of steps.⁴³ To illustrate the steps, we take the case of using Monte Carlo simulation to value a type of option for which no analytic pricing formula is available, an Asian call option on a stock. An **Asian call option** is a European-style option with a value at maturity equal to the difference between the stock price at maturity and the average stock price during the life of the option, or \$0, whichever is greater. For instance, if the final stock price is \$34 with an average value of \$31 over the life of the option, the value of the option at maturity is \$3 (the greater of $\$34 - \$31 = \$3$ and \$0). Steps 1 through 3 of the process describe specifying the simulation; Steps 4 through 7 describe running the simulation.

- 1 Specify the quantities of interest (option value, for example, or the funded status of a pension plan) in terms of underlying variables. The underlying variable or variables could be stock price for an equity option, the market value of pension assets, or other variables relating to the pension benefit obligation for a pension plan. Specify the starting values of the underlying variables.

To illustrate the steps, we are using the case of valuing an Asian call option on stock. We use C_{iT} to represent the value of the option at maturity T . The subscript i in C_{iT} indicates that C_{iT} is a value resulting from the i th **simulation trial**, each simulation trial involving a drawing of random values (an iteration of Step 4).

- 2 Specify a time grid. Take the horizon in terms of calendar time and split it into a number of subperiods, say K in total. Calendar time divided by the number of subperiods, K , is the time increment, Δt .
- 3 Specify distributional assumptions for the risk factors that drive the underlying variables. For example, stock price is the underlying variable for the Asian call, so we need a model for stock price movement. Say we choose the following model for changes in stock price, where Z_k stands for the standard normal random variable:

$$\Delta(\text{Stock price}) = (\mu \times \text{Prior stock price} \times \Delta t) + (\sigma \times \text{Prior stock price} \times Z_k)$$

In the way that we are using the term, Z_k is a risk factor in the simulation. Through our choice of μ and σ , we control the distribution of stock price. Although this example has one risk factor, a given simulation may have multiple risk factors.

- 4 Using a computer program or spreadsheet function, draw K random values of each risk factor. In our example, the spreadsheet function would produce a draw of K values of the standard normal variable Z_k : $Z_1, Z_2, Z_3, \dots, Z_K$.

⁴² A **European-style** option or **European option** is an option exercisable only at maturity.

⁴³ The steps should be viewed as providing an overview of Monte Carlo simulation rather than as a detailed recipe for implementing a Monte Carlo simulation in its many varied applications.

- 5 Calculate the underlying variables using the random observations generated in Step 4. Using the above model of stock price dynamics, the result is K observations on changes in stock price. An additional calculation is needed to convert those changes into K stock prices (using initial stock price, which is given). Another calculation produces the average stock price during the life of the option (the sum of K stock prices divided by K).
- 6 Compute the quantities of interest. In our example, the first calculation is the value of an Asian call at maturity, C_{iT} . A second calculation discounts this terminal value back to the present to get the call value as of today, C_{i0} . We have completed one simulation trial. (The subscript i in C_{i0} stands for the i th simulation trial, as it does in C_{iT} .) In a Monte Carlo simulation, a running tabulation is kept of statistics relating to the distribution of the quantities of interest, including their mean value and standard deviation, over the simulation trials to that point.
- 7 Iteratively go back to Step 4 until a specified number of trials, I , is completed. Finally, produce statistics for the simulation. The key value for our example is the mean value of C_{i0} for the total number of simulation trials. This mean value is the Monte Carlo estimate of the value of the Asian call.

How many simulation trials should be specified? In general, we need to increase the number of trials by a factor of 100 to get each extra digit of accuracy. Depending on the problem, tens of thousands of trials may be needed to obtain accuracy to two decimal places (as required for option value, for example). Conducting a large number of trials is not necessarily a problem, given today's computing power. The number of trials needed can be reduced using variance reduction procedures, a topic outside the scope of this reading.⁴⁴

In Step 4 of our example, a computer function produced a set of random observations on a standard normal random variable. Recall that for a uniform distribution, all possible numbers are equally likely. The term **random number generator** refers to an algorithm that produces uniformly distributed random numbers between 0 and 1. In the context of computer simulations, the term **random number** refers to an observation drawn from a uniform distribution.⁴⁵ For other distributions, the term "random observation" is used in this context.

It is a remarkable fact that random observations from any distribution can be produced using the uniform random variable with endpoints 0 and 1. To see why this is so, consider the inverse transformation method of producing random observations. Suppose we are interested in obtaining random observations for a random variable, X , with cumulative distribution function $F(x)$. Recall that $F(x)$ evaluated at x is a number between 0 and 1. Suppose a random outcome of this random variable is 3.21 and that $F(3.21) = 0.25$ or 25 percent. Define an inverse of F , call it F^{-1} , that can do the following: Substitute the probability 0.25 into F^{-1} and it returns the random outcome 3.21. In other words, $F^{-1}(0.25) = 3.21$. To generate random observations on X , the steps are 1) generate a uniform random number, r , between 0 and 1 using the random number generator and 2) evaluate $F^{-1}(r)$ to obtain a random observation on X . Random observation generation is a field of study in itself, and we have briefly discussed the inverse transformation method here just to illustrate a point. As a generalist

⁴⁴ For details on this and other technical aspects of Monte Carlo simulation, see Hillier (2014).

⁴⁵ The numbers that random number generators produce depend on a seed or initial value. If the same seed is fed to the same generator, it will produce the same sequence. All sequences eventually repeat. Because of this predictability, the technically correct name for the numbers produced by random number generators is **pseudo-random numbers**. Pseudo-random numbers have sufficient qualities of randomness for most practical purposes.

you do not need to address the technical details of converting random numbers into random observations, but you do need to know that random observations from any distribution can be generated using a uniform random variable.

In Examples 11 and 12, we give an application of Monte Carlo simulation to a question of great interest to investment practice: the potential gains from market timing.

EXAMPLE 11

Potential Gains from Market Timing: A Monte Carlo Simulation (1)

All active investors want to achieve superior performance. One possible source of superior performance is market timing ability. How accurate does an investor need to be as a bull- and bear-market forecaster for market timing to be profitable? What size gains compared with a buy-and-hold strategy accrue to a given level of accuracy? Because of the variability in asset returns, a huge amount of return data is needed to find statistically reliable answers to these questions. Chua, Woodward, and To (1987) thus selected Monte Carlo simulation to address the potential gains from market timing. They were interested in the perspective of a Canadian investor.

To understand their study, suppose that at the beginning of a year, an investor predicts that the next year will see either a bull market or bear market. If the prediction is *bull market*, the investor puts all her money in stocks and earns the market return for that year. On the other hand, if the prediction is *bear market*, the investor holds T-bills and earns the T-bill return. After the fact, a market is categorized as *bull market* if the stock market return, R_{Mt} , minus T-bill return, R_{Ft} , is positive for the year; otherwise, the market is classed as *bear market*. The investment results of a market timer can be compared with those of a buy-and-hold investor. A buy-and-hold investor earns the market return every year. For Chua et al., one quantity of interest was the gain from market timing. They defined this quantity as the market timer's average return minus the average return to a buy-and-hold investor.

To simulate market returns, Chua et al. generated 10,000 random standard normal observations, Z_t . At the time of the study, Canadian stocks had a historical mean annual return of 12.95 percent with a standard deviation of 18.30 percent. To reflect these parameters, the simulated market returns are $R_{Mt} = 0.1830Z_t + 0.1295$, $t = 1, 2, \dots, 10,000$. Using a second set of 10,000 random standard normal observations, historical return parameters for Canadian T-bills, as well as the historical correlation of T-bill and stock returns, the authors generated 10,000 T-bill returns.

An investor can have different skills in forecasting bull and bear markets. Chua et al. characterized market timers by accuracy in forecasting bull markets and accuracy in forecasting bear markets. For example, bull market forecasting accuracy of 50 percent means that when the timer forecasts *bull market* for the next year, she is right just half the time, indicating no skill. Suppose an investor has 60 percent accuracy in forecasting *bull market* and 80 percent accuracy in forecasting *bear market* (a 60–80 timer). We can simulate how an investor would fare. After generating the first observation on $R_{Mt} - R_{Ft}$, we know whether that observation is a bull or bear market. If the observation is *bull market*, then 0.60 (forecast accuracy for bull markets) is compared with a random number (between 0 and 1). If the random number is less than 0.60, which occurs with a 60 percent probability, then the market timer is assumed to have correctly predicted *bull market* and her return for that first observation is the market return. If the random number is greater than 0.60, then the market timer is assumed to

have made an error and predicted *bear market*; her return for that observation is the risk-free rate. In a similar fashion, if that first observation is *bear market*, the timer has an 80 percent chance of being right in forecasting *bear market* based on a random number draw. In either case, her return is compared with the market return to record her gain versus a buy-and-hold strategy. That process is one simulation trial. The simulated mean return earned by the timer is the average return earned by the timer over all trials in the simulation.

To increase our understanding of the process, consider a hypothetical Monte Carlo simulation with four trials for the 60–80 timer (who, to reiterate, has 60 percent accuracy in forecasting bull markets and 80 percent accuracy in forecasting bear markets). Table 8 gives data for the simulation. Let us look at Trials 1 and 2. In Trial 1, the first random number drawn leads to a market return of 0.121. Because the market return, 0.121, exceeded the T-bill return, 0.050, we have a bull market. We generate a random number, 0.531, which we then compare with the timer’s bull market accuracy, 0.60. Because 0.531 is less than 0.60, the timer is assumed to have made a correct bull market forecast and thus to have invested in stocks. Thus the timer earns the stock market return, 0.121, for that trial. In the second trial we observe another bull market, but because the random number 0.725 is greater than 0.60, the timer is assumed to have made an error and predicted a bear market; therefore, the timer earned the T-bill return, 0.081, rather than higher stock market return.

Table 8 Hypothetical Simulation for a 60–80 Market Timer

Trial	After Draws for Z_t and for the T-bill Return			Simulation Results		
	R_{Mt}	R_{Ft}	Bull or Bear Market?	Value of X	Timer’s Prediction Correct?	Return Earned by Timer
1	0.121	0.050	Bull	0.531	Yes	0.121
2	0.092	0.081	Bull	0.725	No	0.081
3	-0.020	0.034	Bear	0.786	Yes	0.034
4	0.052	0.055	<i>A</i>	0.901	<i>B</i>	<i>C</i>
						$\bar{R} = D$

Note: \bar{R} is the mean return earned by the timer over the four simulation trials.

Using the data in Table 8, determine the values of *A*, *B*, *C*, and *D*.

Solution:

The value of *A* is *Bear* because the stock market return was less than the T-bill return in Trial 4. The value of *B* is *No*. Because we observe a bear market, we compare the random number 0.901 with 0.80, the timer’s bear-market forecasting accuracy. Because 0.901 is greater than 0.8, the timer is assumed to have made an error. The value of *C* is 0.052, the return on the stock market, because the timer made an error and invested in the stock market and earned 0.052 rather than the higher T-bill return of 0.055. The value of *D* is $\bar{R} = (0.121 + 0.081 + 0.034 + 0.052) = 0.288/4 = 0.072$. Note that we could calculate other statistics besides the mean, such as the standard deviation of the returns earned by the timer over the four trials in the simulation.

EXAMPLE 12

Potential Gains from Market Timing: A Monte Carlo Simulation (2)

Having discussed the plan of the Chua et al. study and illustrated the method for a hypothetical Monte Carlo simulation with four trials, we conclude our presentation of the study.

The hypothetical simulation in Example 11 had four trials, far too few to reach statistically precise conclusions. The simulation of Chua et al. incorporated 10,000 trials. Chua et al. specified bull- and bear-market prediction skill levels of 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, and 100 percent. Table 9 presents a very small excerpt from their simulation results for the no transaction costs case (transaction costs were also examined). Reading across the row, the timer with 60 percent bull market and 80 percent bear market forecasting accuracy had a mean annual gain from market timing of -1.12 percent per year. On average, the buy-and-hold investor out-earned this skillful timer by 1.12 percentage points. There was substantial variability in gains across the simulation trials, however: The standard deviation of the gain was 14.77 percent, so in many trials (but not on average) the gain was positive. Row 3 (win/loss) is the ratio of profitable switches between stocks and T-bills to unprofitable switches. This ratio was a favorable 1.2070 for the 60–80 timer. (When transaction costs were considered, however, fewer switches are profitable: The win–loss ratio was 0.5832 for the 60–80 timer.)

Table 9 Gains from Stock Market Timing (No Transaction Costs)

Bull Market Accuracy (%)		Bear Market Accuracy (%)					
		50	60	70	80	90	100
60	Mean (%)	-2.50	-1.99	-1.57	-1.12	-0.68	-0.22
	S.D. (%)	13.65	14.11	14.45	14.77	15.08	15.42
	Win/Loss	0.7418	0.9062	1.0503	1.2070	1.3496	1.4986

Source: Chua, Woodward, and To (1987), Table II (excerpt).

The authors concluded that the cost of not being invested in the market during bull market years is high. Because a buy-and-hold investor never misses a bull market year, she has 100 percent forecast accuracy for bull markets (at the cost of 0 percent accuracy for bear markets). Given their definitions and assumptions, the authors also concluded that successful market timing requires a minimum accuracy of 80 percent in forecasting both bull and bear markets. Market timing is a continuing area of interest and study, and other perspectives exist. However, this example illustrates how Monte Carlo simulation is used to address important investment issues.

The analyst chooses the probability distributions in Monte Carlo simulation. By contrast, **historical simulation** samples from a historical record of returns (or other underlying variables) to simulate a process. The concept underlying historical simulation (also called **back simulation**) is that the historical record provides the most direct evidence on distributions (and that the past applies to the future). For example, refer back to Step 2 in the outline of Monte Carlo simulation above and suppose the time increment is one day. Further, suppose we base the simulation on the record

of daily stock returns over the last five years. In one type of historical simulation, we randomly draw K returns from that record to generate one simulation trial. We put back the observations into the sample, and in the next trial we again randomly sample with replacement. The simulation results directly reflect frequencies in the data. A drawback of this approach is that any risk not represented in the time period selected (for example, a stock market crash) will not be reflected in the simulation. Compared with Monte Carlo simulation, historical simulation does not lend itself to “what if” analyses. Nevertheless, historic simulation is an established alternative simulation methodology.

Monte Carlo simulation is a complement to analytical methods. It provides only statistical estimates, not exact results. Analytical methods, where available, provide more insight into cause-and-effect relationships. For example, the Black–Scholes–Merton option pricing model for the value of a European call option is an analytical method, expressed as a formula. It is a much more efficient method for valuing such a call than is Monte Carlo simulation. As an analytical expression, the Black–Scholes–Merton model permits the analyst to quickly gauge the sensitivity of call value to changes in current stock price and the other variables that determine call value. In contrast, Monte Carlo simulations do not directly provide such precise insights. However, only some types of options can be priced with analytical expressions. As financial product innovations proceed, the field of applications for Monte Carlo simulation continues to grow.

SUMMARY

In this reading, we have presented the most frequently used probability distributions in investment analysis and the Monte Carlo simulation.

- A probability distribution specifies the probabilities of the possible outcomes of a random variable.
- The two basic types of random variables are discrete random variables and continuous random variables. Discrete random variables take on at most a countable number of possible outcomes that we can list as x_1, x_2, \dots . In contrast, we cannot describe the possible outcomes of a continuous random variable Z with a list z_1, z_2, \dots because the outcome $(z_1 + z_2)/2$, not in the list, would always be possible.
- The probability function specifies the probability that the random variable will take on a specific value. The probability function is denoted $p(x)$ for a discrete random variable and $f(x)$ for a continuous random variable. For any probability function $p(x)$, $0 \leq p(x) \leq 1$, and the sum of $p(x)$ over all values of X equals 1.
- The cumulative distribution function, denoted $F(x)$ for both continuous and discrete random variables, gives the probability that the random variable is less than or equal to x .
- The discrete uniform and the continuous uniform distributions are the distributions of equally likely outcomes.
- The binomial random variable is defined as the number of successes in n Bernoulli trials, where the probability of success, p , is constant for all trials and the trials are independent. A Bernoulli trial is an experiment with two outcomes, which can represent success or failure, an up move or a down move, or another binary (two-fold) outcome.

- A binomial random variable has an expected value or mean equal to np and variance equal to $np(1 - p)$.
- A binomial tree is the graphical representation of a model of asset price dynamics in which, at each period, the asset moves up with probability p or down with probability $(1 - p)$. The binomial tree is a flexible method for modeling asset price movement and is widely used in pricing options.
- The normal distribution is a continuous symmetric probability distribution that is completely described by two parameters: its mean, μ , and its variance, σ^2 .
- A univariate distribution specifies the probabilities for a single random variable. A multivariate distribution specifies the probabilities for a group of related random variables.
- To specify the normal distribution for a portfolio when its component securities are normally distributed, we need the means, standard deviations, and all the distinct pairwise correlations of the securities. When we have those statistics, we have also specified a multivariate normal distribution for the securities.
- For a normal random variable, approximately 68 percent of all possible outcomes are within a one standard deviation interval about the mean, approximately 95 percent are within a two standard deviation interval about the mean, and approximately 99 percent are within a three standard deviation interval about the mean.
- A normal random variable, X , is standardized using the expression $Z = (X - \mu)/\sigma$, where μ and σ are the mean and standard deviation of X . Generally, we use the sample mean \bar{X} as an estimate of μ and the sample standard deviation s as an estimate of σ in this expression.
- The standard normal random variable, denoted Z , has a mean equal to 0 and variance equal to 1. All questions about any normal random variable can be answered by referring to the cumulative distribution function of a standard normal random variable, denoted $N(x)$ or $N(z)$.
- Shortfall risk is the risk that portfolio value will fall below some minimum acceptable level over some time horizon.
- Roy's safety-first criterion, addressing shortfall risk, asserts that the optimal portfolio is the one that minimizes the probability that portfolio return falls below a threshold level. According to Roy's safety-first criterion, if returns are normally distributed, the safety-first optimal portfolio P is the one that maximizes the quantity $[E(R_P) - R_L]/\sigma_P$, where R_L is the minimum acceptable level of return.
- A random variable follows a lognormal distribution if the natural logarithm of the random variable is normally distributed. The lognormal distribution is defined in terms of the mean and variance of its associated normal distribution. The lognormal distribution is bounded below by 0 and skewed to the right (it has a long right tail).
- The lognormal distribution is frequently used to model the probability distribution of asset prices because it is bounded below by zero.
- Continuous compounding views time as essentially continuous or unbroken; discrete compounding views time as advancing in discrete finite intervals.
- The continuously compounded return associated with a holding period is the natural log of 1 plus the holding period return, or equivalently, the natural log of ending price over beginning price.

- If continuously compounded returns are normally distributed, asset prices are lognormally distributed. This relationship is used to move back and forth between the distributions for return and price. Because of the central limit theorem, continuously compounded returns need not be normally distributed for asset prices to be reasonably well described by a lognormal distribution.
- Monte Carlo simulation involves the use of a computer to represent the operation of a complex financial system. A characteristic feature of Monte Carlo simulation is the generation of a large number of random samples from specified probability distribution(s) to represent the operation of risk in the system. Monte Carlo simulation is used in planning, in financial risk management, and in valuing complex securities. Monte Carlo simulation is a complement to analytical methods but provides only statistical estimates, not exact results.
- Historical simulation is an established alternative to Monte Carlo simulation that in one implementation involves repeated sampling from a historical data series. Historical simulation is grounded in actual data but can reflect only risks represented in the sample historical data. Compared with Monte Carlo simulation, historical simulation does not lend itself to “what if” analyses.

REFERENCES

- Campbell, John, Andrew Lo, and A. Craig MacKinlay. 1997. *The Econometrics of Financial Markets*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press.
- Chance, Don M., and Robert Brooks. 2016. *An Introduction to Derivatives and Risk Management*, 10th ed. Mason, OH: South-Western.
- Chua, Jess H., Richard S. Woodward, and Eric C. To. 1987. “Potential Gains from Stock Market Timing in Canada.” *Financial Analysts Journal*, vol. 43, no. 5:50–56.
- Cox, Jonathan, Stephen Ross, and Mark Rubinstein. 1979. “Options Pricing: A Simplified Approach.” *Journal of Financial Economics*, vol. 7:229–263.
- Fama, Eugene. 1976. *Foundations of Finance*. New York: Basic Books.
- Ferguson, Robert. 1993. “Some Formulas for Evaluating Two Popular Option Strategies.” *Financial Analysts Journal*, vol. 49, no. 5:71–76.
- Hillier, Frederick S. 2014. *Introduction to Operations Research*, 10th edition. New York: McGraw-Hill.
- Hull, John. 2017. *Options, Futures, and Other Derivatives*, 10th edition. Upper Saddle River, NJ: Pearson.
- Kolb, Robert W., Gerald D. Gay, and William C. Hunter. 1985. “Liquidity Requirements for Financial Futures Investments.” *Financial Analysts Journal*, vol. 41, no. 3:60–68.
- Kon, Stanley J. 1984. “Models of Stock Returns—A Comparison.” *Journal of Finance*, vol. 39:147–165.
- Leibowitz, Martin, and Roy Henriksson. 1989. “Portfolio Optimization with Shortfall Constraints: A Confidence-Limit Approach to Managing Downside Risk.” *Financial Analysts Journal*, vol. 45, no. 2:34–41.
- Luenberger, David G. 1998. *Investment Science*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Roy, A.D. 1952. “Safety-First and the Holding of Assets.” *Econometrica*, vol. 20:431–439.

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

- 1 A European put option on stock conveys the right to sell the stock at a pre-specified price, called the exercise price, at the maturity date of the option. The value of this put at maturity is (exercise price – stock price) or \$0, whichever is greater. Suppose the exercise price is \$100 and the underlying stock trades in ticks of \$0.01. At any time before maturity, the terminal value of the put is a random variable.
 - A Describe the distinct possible outcomes for terminal put value. (Think of the put's maximum and minimum values and its minimum price increments.)
 - B Is terminal put value, at a time before maturity, a discrete or continuous random variable?
 - C Letting Y stand for terminal put value, express in standard notation the probability that terminal put value is less than or equal to \$24. No calculations or formulas are necessary.
- 2 Define the term “binomial random variable.” Describe the types of problems for which the binomial distribution is used.
- 3 The value of the cumulative distribution function $F(x)$, where x is a particular outcome, for a discrete uniform distribution:
 - A sums to 1.
 - B lies between 0 and 1.
 - C decreases as x increases.
- 4 For a binomial random variable with five trials, and a probability of success on each trial of 0.50, the distribution will be:
 - A skewed.
 - B uniform.
 - C symmetric.
- 5 In a discrete uniform distribution with 20 potential outcomes of integers 1 to 20, the probability that X is greater than or equal to 3 but less than 6, $P(3 \leq X < 6)$, is:
 - A 0.10.
 - B 0.15.
 - C 0.20.
- 6 Over the last 10 years, a company's annual earnings increased year over year seven times and decreased year over year three times. You decide to model the number of earnings increases for the next decade as a binomial random variable.
 - A What is your estimate of the probability of success, defined as an increase in annual earnings?For Parts B, C, and D of this problem, assume the estimated probability is the actual probability for the next decade.
 - B What is the probability that earnings will increase in exactly 5 of the next 10 years?
 - C Calculate the expected number of yearly earnings increases during the next 10 years.

- D** Calculate the variance and standard deviation of the number of yearly earnings increases during the next 10 years.
- E** The expression for the probability function of a binomial random variable depends on two major assumptions. In the context of this problem, what must you assume about annual earnings increases to apply the binomial distribution in Part B? What reservations might you have about the validity of these assumptions?
- 7** A portfolio manager annually outperforms her benchmark 60% of the time. Assuming independent annual trials, what is the probability that she will outperform her benchmark four or more times over the next five years?
- A** 0.26
- B** 0.34
- C** 0.48
- 8** You are examining the record of an investment newsletter writer who claims a 70 percent success rate in making investment recommendations that are profitable over a one-year time horizon. You have the one-year record of the newsletter's seven most recent recommendations. Four of those recommendations were profitable. If all the recommendations are independent and the newsletter writer's skill is as claimed, what is the probability of observing four or fewer profitable recommendations out of seven in total?
- 9** You are forecasting sales for a company in the fourth quarter of its fiscal year. Your low-end estimate of sales is €14 million, and your high-end estimate is €15 million. You decide to treat all outcomes for sales between these two values as equally likely, using a continuous uniform distribution.
- A** What is the expected value of sales for the fourth quarter?
- B** What is the probability that fourth-quarter sales will be less than or equal to €14,125,000?
- 10** State the approximate probability that a normal random variable will fall within the following intervals:
- A** Mean plus or minus one standard deviation.
- B** Mean plus or minus two standard deviations.
- C** Mean plus or minus three standard deviations.
- 11** Find the area under the normal curve up to $z = 0.36$; that is, find $P(Z \leq 0.36)$. Interpret this value.
- 12** If an analyst expects a portfolio to outperform its benchmark with a 75% success rate in any measurement period, and the portfolio meets that objective in three of four quarters, what is the probability that the realized portfolio performance over the year is at or below this expectation?
- A** 0.26
- B** 0.42
- C** 0.68
- 13** In futures markets, profits or losses on contracts are settled at the end of each trading day. This procedure is called marking to market or daily resettlement. By preventing a trader's losses from accumulating over many days, marking to market reduces the risk that traders will default on their obligations. A futures markets trader needs a liquidity pool to meet the daily mark to market. If liquidity is exhausted, the trader may be forced to unwind his position at an unfavorable time.

Suppose you are using financial futures contracts to hedge a risk in your portfolio. You have a liquidity pool (cash and cash equivalents) of λ dollars per contract and a time horizon of T trading days. For a given size liquidity pool, λ , Kolb, Gay, and Hunter (1985) developed an expression for the probability stating that you will exhaust your liquidity pool within a T -day horizon as a result of the daily mark to market. Kolb et al. assumed that the expected change in futures price is 0 and that futures price changes are normally distributed. With σ representing the standard deviation of daily futures price changes, the standard deviation of price changes over a time horizon to day T is $\sigma\sqrt{T}$, given continuous compounding. With that background, the Kolb et al. expression is

$$\text{Probability of exhausting liquidity pool} = 2[1 - N(x)]$$

where $x = \lambda / (\sigma\sqrt{T})$. Here x is a standardized value of λ . $N(x)$ is the standard normal cumulative distribution function. For some intuition about $1 - N(x)$ in the expression, note that the liquidity pool is exhausted if losses exceed the size of the liquidity pool at any time up to and including T ; the probability of that event happening can be shown to be proportional to an area in the right tail of a standard normal distribution, $1 - N(x)$.

Using the Kolb et al. expression, answer the following questions:

- A Your hedging horizon is five days, and your liquidity pool is \$2,000 per contract. You estimate that the standard deviation of daily price changes for the contract is \$450. What is the probability that you will exhaust your liquidity pool in the five-day period?
 - B Suppose your hedging horizon is 20 days, but all the other facts given in Part A remain the same. What is the probability that you will exhaust your liquidity pool in the 20-day period?
- 14 Which of the following is characteristic of the normal distribution?
- A Asymmetry
 - B Kurtosis of 3
 - C Definitive limits or boundaries
- 15 Which of the following assets *most likely* requires the use of a multivariate distribution for modeling returns?
- A A call option on a bond
 - B A portfolio of technology stocks
 - C A stock in a market index
- 16 The total number of parameters that fully characterizes a multivariate normal distribution for the returns on two stocks is:
- A 3.
 - B 4.
 - C 5.
- 17 A client has a portfolio of common stocks and fixed-income instruments with a current value of £1,350,000. She intends to liquidate £50,000 from the portfolio at the end of the year to purchase a partnership share in a business. Furthermore, the client would like to be able to withdraw the £50,000 without reducing the initial capital of £1,350,000. The following table shows four alternative asset allocations.

Mean and Standard Deviation for Four Allocations (in Percent)

	A	B	C	D
Expected annual return	16	12	10	9
Standard deviation of return	24	17	12	11

Address the following questions (assume normality for Parts B and C):

- A** Given the client's desire not to invade the £1,350,000 principal, what is the shortfall level, R_L ? Use this shortfall level to answer Part B.
- B** According to the safety-first criterion, which of the allocations is the best?
- C** What is the probability that the return on the safety-first optimal portfolio will be less than the shortfall level, R_L ?

Please refer to Exhibit 1 for Questions 18 and 19

Exhibit 1 Z-Table Values, $P(Z \leq z) = N(z)$ for $z \geq 0$

Z	0.00	0.01	0.02	0.03	0.04	0.05	0.06	0.07	0.08	0.09
0.00	0.5000	0.5040	0.5080	0.5120	0.5160	0.5199	0.5239	0.5279	0.5319	0.5359
0.1	0.5398	0.5438	0.5478	0.5517	0.5557	0.5596	0.5636	0.5675	0.5714	0.5753
0.2	0.5793	0.5832	0.5871	0.5910	0.5948	0.5987	0.6026	0.6064	0.6103	0.6141
0.3	0.6179	0.6217	0.6255	0.6293	0.6331	0.6368	0.6406	0.6443	0.6480	0.6517
0.4	0.6554	0.6591	0.6628	0.6664	0.6700	0.6736	0.6772	0.6808	0.6844	0.6879
0.5	0.6915	0.6950	0.6985	0.7019	0.7054	0.7088	0.7123	0.7157	0.7190	0.7224

- 18** A portfolio has an expected mean return of 8 percent and standard deviation of 14 percent. The probability that its return falls between 8 and 11 percent is *closest* to:
- A** 8.3%
- B** 14.8%.
- C** 58.3%.
- 19** A portfolio has an expected return of 7% with a standard deviation of 13%. For an investor with a minimum annual return target of 4%, the probability that the portfolio return will fail to meet the target is *closest* to:
- A** 33%.
- B** 41%.
- C** 59%.

- 20 A** Define Monte Carlo simulation and explain its use in finance.

- B** Compared with analytical methods, what are the strengths and weaknesses of Monte Carlo simulation for use in valuing securities?
- 21** A standard lookback call option on stock has a value at maturity equal to (Value of the stock at maturity – Minimum value of stock during the life of the option prior to maturity) or \$0, whichever is greater. If the minimum value reached prior to maturity was \$20.11 and the value of the stock at maturity is \$23, for example, the call is worth \$23 – \$20.11 = \$2.89. Briefly discuss how you might use Monte Carlo simulation in valuing a lookback call option.
- 22** Which of the following is a continuous random variable?
- A** The value of a futures contract quoted in increments of \$0.05
- B** The total number of heads recorded in 1 million tosses of a coin
- C** The rate of return on a diversified portfolio of stocks over a three-month period
- 23** X is a discrete random variable with possible outcomes $X = \{1, 2, 3, 4\}$. Three functions $f(x)$, $g(x)$, and $h(x)$ are proposed to describe the probabilities of the outcomes in X .

$X = x$	Probability Function		
	$f(x) = P(X = x)$	$g(x) = P(X = x)$	$h(x) = P(X = x)$
1	-0.25	0.20	0.20
2	0.25	0.25	0.25
3	0.50	0.50	0.30
4	0.25	0.05	0.35

The conditions for a probability function are satisfied by:

- A** $f(x)$.
- B** $g(x)$.
- C** $h(x)$.
- 24** The cumulative distribution function for a discrete random variable is shown in the following table.

$X = x$	Cumulative Distribution Function
	$F(x) = P(X \leq x)$
1	0.15
2	0.25
3	0.50
4	0.60
5	0.95
6	1.00

The probability that X will take on a value of either 2 or 4 is *closest* to:

- A** 0.20.
- B** 0.35.
- C** 0.85.
- 25** Which of the following events can be represented as a Bernoulli trial?
- A** The flip of a coin
- B** The closing price of a stock
- C** The picking of a random integer between 1 and 10

- 26 The weekly closing prices of Mordice Corporation shares are as follows:

Date	Closing Price (€)
1 August	112
8 August	160
15 August	120

- The continuously compounded return of Mordice Corporation shares for the period August 1 to August 15 is *closest to*:
- A 6.90%
- B 7.14%
- C 8.95%
- 27 A stock is priced at \$100.00 and follows a one-period binomial process with an up move that equals 1.05 and a down move that equals 0.97. If 1 million Bernoulli trials are conducted, and the average terminal stock price is \$102.00, the probability of an up move (p) is *closest to*:
- A 0.375.
- B 0.500.
- C 0.625.
- 28 A call option on a stock index is valued using a three-step binomial tree with an up move that equals 1.05 and a down move that equals 0.95. The current level of the index is \$190, and the option exercise price is \$200. If the option value is positive when the stock price exceeds the exercise price at expiration and \$0 otherwise, the number of terminal nodes with a positive payoff is:
- A one.
- B two.
- C three.
- 29 A random number between zero and one is generated according to a continuous uniform distribution. What is the probability that the first number generated will have a value of exactly 0.30?
- A 0%
- B 30%
- C 70%
- 30 A Monte Carlo simulation can be used to:
- A directly provide precise valuations of call options.
- B simulate a process from historical records of returns.
- C test the sensitivity of a model to changes in assumptions.
- 31 A limitation of Monte Carlo simulation is:
- A its failure to do “what if” analysis.
- B that it requires historical records of returns
- C its inability to independently specify cause-and-effect relationships.
- 32 Which parameter equals zero in a normal distribution?
- A Kurtosis
- B Skewness
- C Standard deviation
- 33 An analyst develops the following capital market projections.

	Stocks	Bonds
Mean Return	10%	2%
Standard Deviation	15%	5%

Assuming the returns of the asset classes are described by normal distributions, which of the following statements is correct?

- A Bonds have a higher probability of a negative return than stocks.
 - B On average, 99% of stock returns will fall within two standard deviations of the mean.
 - C The probability of a bond return less than or equal to 3% is determined using a Z-score of 0.25.
- 34 A client holding a £2,000,000 portfolio wants to withdraw £90,000 in one year without invading the principal. According to Roy's safety-first criterion, which of the following portfolio allocations is optimal?

	Allocation A	Allocation B	Allocation C
Expected annual return	6.5%	7.5%	8.5%
Standard deviation of returns	8.35%	10.21%	14.34%

- A Allocation A
 - B Allocation B
 - C Allocation C
- 35 In contrast to normal distributions, lognormal distributions:
- A are skewed to the left.
 - B have outcomes that cannot be negative.
 - C are more suitable for describing asset returns than asset prices.
- 36 The lognormal distribution is a more accurate model for the distribution of stock prices than the normal distribution because stock prices are:
- A symmetrical.
 - B unbounded.
 - C non-negative.
- 37 The price of a stock at $t = 0$ is \$208.25 and at $t = 1$ is \$186.75. The continuously compounded rate of return for the stock from $t = 0$ to $t = 1$ is *closest* to:
- A -10.90%.
 - B -10.32%.
 - C 11.51%.

SOLUTIONS

- 1 A** The put's minimum value is \$0. The put's value is \$0 when the stock price is at or above \$100 at the maturity date of the option. The put's maximum value is \$100 = \$100 (the exercise price) – \$0 (the lowest possible stock price). The put's value is \$100 when the stock is worthless at the option's maturity date. The put's minimum price increments are \$0.01. The possible outcomes of terminal put value are thus \$0.00, \$0.01, \$0.02, ..., \$100.
- B** The price of the underlying has minimum price fluctuations of \$0.01: These are the minimum price fluctuations for terminal put value. For example, if the stock finishes at \$98.20, the payoff on the put is \$100 – \$98.20 = \$1.80. We can specify that the nearest values to \$1.80 are \$1.79 and \$1.81. With a continuous random variable, we cannot specify the nearest values. So, we must characterize terminal put value as a discrete random variable.
- C** The probability that terminal put value is less than or equal to \$24 is $P(Y \leq 24)$ or $F(24)$, in standard notation, where F is the cumulative distribution function for terminal put value.
- 2** A binomial random variable is defined as the number of successes in n Bernoulli trials (a trial that produces one of two outcomes). The binomial distribution is used to make probability statements about a record of successes and failures or about anything with binary (twofold) outcomes.
- 3** B is correct. The value of the cumulative distribution function lies between 0 and 1 for any x : $0 \leq F(x) \leq 1$.
- 4** C is correct. The binomial distribution is symmetric when the probability of success on a trial is 0.50, but it is asymmetric or skewed otherwise. Here it is given that $p = 0.50$
- 5** B is correct. The probability of any outcome is 0.05, $P(1) = 1/20 = 0.05$. The probability that X is greater than or equal to 3 but less than 6, which is expressed as $P(3 \leq X < 6) = P(3) + P(4) + P(5) = 0.05 + 0.05 + 0.05 = 0.15$
- 6 A** The probability of an earnings increase (success) in a year is estimated as $7/10 = 0.70$ or 70 percent, based on the record of the past 10 years.
- B** The probability that earnings will increase in 5 out of the next 10 years is about 10.3 percent. Define a binomial random variable X , counting the number of earnings increases over the next 10 years. From Part A, the probability of an earnings increase in a given year is $p = 0.70$ and the number of trials (years) is $n = 10$. Equation 1 gives the probability that a binomial random variable has x successes in n trials, with the probability of success on a trial equal to p .

$$P(X = x) = \binom{n}{x} p^x (1 - p)^{n-x} = \frac{n!}{(n-x)!x!} p^x (1 - p)^{n-x}$$

For this example,

$$\begin{aligned} \binom{10}{5} 0.7^5 0.3^{10-5} &= \frac{10!}{(10-5)!5!} 0.7^5 0.3^{10-5} \\ &= 252 \times 0.16807 \times 0.00243 = 0.102919 \end{aligned}$$

We conclude that the probability that earnings will increase in exactly 5 of the next 10 years is 0.1029, or approximately 10.3 percent.

- C** The expected number of yearly increases is $E(X) = np = 10 \times 0.70 = 7$.

- D** The variance of the number of yearly increases over the next 10 years is $\sigma^2 = np(1-p) = 10 \times 0.70 \times 0.30 = 2.1$. The standard deviation is 1.449 (the positive square root of 2.1).
- E** You must assume that 1) the probability of an earnings increase (success) is constant from year to year and 2) earnings increases are independent trials. If current and past earnings help forecast next year's earnings, Assumption 2 is violated. If the company's business is subject to economic or industry cycles, neither assumption is likely to hold.
- 7 B** is correct. To calculate the probability of 4 years of outperformance, use the formula:

$$p(x) = P(X = x) = \binom{n}{x} p^x (1-p)^{n-x} = \frac{n!}{(n-x)!x!} p^x (1-p)^{n-x}$$

Using this formula to calculate the probability in 4 of 5 years, $n = 5$, $x = 4$ and $p = 0.60$.

Therefore,

$$p(4) = \frac{5!}{(5-4)!4!} 0.6^4 (1-0.6)^{5-4} = [120/24](0.1296)(0.40) = 0.2592$$

$$p(5) = \frac{5!}{(5-5)!5!} 0.6^5 (1-0.6)^{5-5} = [120/120](0.0778)(1) = 0.0778$$

The probability of outperforming 4 or more times is $p(4) + p(5) = 0.2592 + 0.0778 = 0.3370$

- 8** The observed success rate is $4/7 = 0.571$, or 57.1 percent. The probability of four or fewer successes is $F(4) = p(4) + p(3) + p(2) + p(1) + p(0)$, where $p(4)$, $p(3)$, $p(2)$, $p(1)$, and $p(0)$ are respectively the probabilities of 4, 3, 2, 1, and 0 successes, according to the binomial distribution with $n = 7$ and $p = 0.70$. We have

$$p(4) = (7!/4!3!)(0.70^4)(0.30^3) = 35(0.006483) = 0.226895$$

$$p(3) = (7!/3!4!)(0.70^3)(0.30^4) = 35(0.002778) = 0.097241$$

$$p(2) = (7!/2!5!)(0.70^2)(0.30^5) = 21(0.001191) = 0.025005$$

$$p(1) = (7!/1!6!)(0.70^1)(0.30^6) = 7(0.000510) = 0.003572$$

$$p(0) = (7!/0!7!)(0.70^0)(0.30^7) = 1(0.000219) = 0.000219$$

Summing all these probabilities, you conclude that $F(4) = 0.226895 + 0.097241 + 0.025005 + 0.003572 + 0.000219 = 0.352931$, or 35.3 percent.

- 9 A** The expected value of fourth-quarter sales is €14,500,000, calculated as $(€14,000,000 + €15,000,000)/2$. With a continuous uniform random variable, the mean or expected value is the midpoint between the smallest and largest values. (See Example 7.)
- B** The probability that fourth-quarter sales will be less than €14,125,000 is 0.125 or 12.5 percent, calculated as $(€14,125,000 - €14,000,000)/(€15,000,000 - €14,000,000)$.
- 10 A** Approximately 68 percent of all outcomes of a normal random variable fall within plus or minus one standard deviation of the mean.
- B** Approximately 95 percent of all outcomes of a normal random variable fall within plus or minus two standard deviations of the mean.
- C** Approximately 99 percent of all outcomes of a normal random variable fall within plus or minus three standard deviations of the mean.

- 11 The area under the normal curve for $z = 0.36$ is 0.6406 or 64.06 percent. The following table presents an excerpt from the tables of the standard normal cumulative distribution function in the back of this volume. To locate $z = 0.36$, find 0.30 in the fourth row of numbers, then look at the column for 0.06 (the second decimal place of 0.36). The entry is 0.6406.

$P(Z \leq x) = N(x)$ for $x \geq 0$ or $P(Z \leq z) = N(z)$ for $z \geq 0$

x or z	0	0.01	0.02	0.03	0.04	0.05	0.06	0.07	0.08	0.09
0.00	0.5000	0.5040	0.5080	0.5120	0.5160	0.5199	0.5239	0.5279	0.5319	0.5359
0.10	0.5398	0.5438	0.5478	0.5517	0.5557	0.5596	0.5636	0.5675	0.5714	0.5753
0.20	0.5793	0.5832	0.5871	0.5910	0.5948	0.5987	0.6026	0.6064	0.6103	0.6141
0.30	0.6179	0.6217	0.6255	0.6293	0.6331	0.6368	0.6406	0.6443	0.6480	0.6517
0.40	0.6554	0.6591	0.6628	0.6664	0.6700	0.6736	0.6772	0.6808	0.6844	0.6879
0.50	0.6915	0.6950	0.6985	0.7019	0.7054	0.7088	0.7123	0.7157	0.7190	0.7224

The interpretation of 64.06 percent for $z = 0.36$ is that 64.06 percent of observations on a standard normal random variable are smaller than or equal to the value 0.36. (So $100\% - 64.06\% = 35.94\%$ of the values are greater than 0.36.)

- 12 C is correct. The probability that the performance is at or below the expectation is calculated by finding $F(3) = p(3) + p(2) + p(1)$ using the formula:

$$p(x) = P(X = x) = \binom{n}{x} p^x (1-p)^{n-x} = \frac{n!}{(n-x)!x!} p^x (1-p)^{n-x}$$

Using this formula,

$$p(3) = \frac{4!}{(4-3)!3!} 0.75^3 (1-0.75)^{4-3} = [24/6](0.42)(0.25) = 0.42$$

$$p(2) = \frac{4!}{(4-2)!2!} 0.75^2 (1-0.75)^{4-2} = [24/4](0.56)(0.06) = 0.20$$

$$p(1) = \frac{4!}{(4-1)!1!} 0.75^1 (1-0.75)^{4-1} = [24/6](0.75)(0.02) = 0.06$$

Therefore,

$$F(3) = p(3) + p(2) + p(1) = 0.42 + 0.20 + 0.06 = 0.68 \text{ or } 68.0$$

- 13 A The probability of exhausting the liquidity pool is 4.7 percent. First calculate $x = \lambda / (\sigma\sqrt{T}) = \$2,000 / (\$450\sqrt{5}) = 1.987616$. We can round this value to 1.99 to use the standard normal tables in the back of this book. Using those tables, we find that $N(1.99) = 0.9767$. Thus, the probability of exhausting the liquidity pool is $2[1 - N(1.99)] = 2(1 - 0.9767) = 0.0466$ or about 4.7 percent.
- B The probability of exhausting the liquidity pool is now 32.2 percent. The calculation follows the same steps as those in Part A. We calculate $x = \lambda / (\sigma\sqrt{T}) = \$2,000 / (\$450\sqrt{20}) = 0.993808$. We can round this value to 0.99 to use the standard normal tables in the back of this book. Using

those tables, we find that $N(0.99) = 0.8389$. Thus, the probability of exhausting the liquidity pool is $2[1 - N(0.99)] = 2(1 - 0.8389) = 0.3222$ or about 32.2 percent. This is a substantial probability that you will run out of funds to meet mark to market.

In their paper, Kolb et al. call the probability of exhausting the liquidity pool the probability of ruin, a traditional name for this type of calculation.

- 14** B is correct. The normal distribution has a skewness of 0, a kurtosis of 3, and a mean, median and mode that are all equal.
- 15** B is correct. Multivariate distributions specify the probabilities for a group of related random variables. A portfolio of technology stocks represents a group of related assets. Accordingly, statistical interrelationships must be considered, resulting in the need to use a multivariate normal distribution.
- 16** C is correct. A bivariate normal distribution (two stocks) will have two means, two variances and one correlation. A multivariate normal distribution for the returns on n stocks will have n means, n variances and $n(n - 1)/2$ distinct correlations.
- 17** **A** Because £50,000/£1,350,000 is 3.7 percent, for any return less than 3.7 percent the client will need to invade principal if she takes out £50,000. So $R_L = 3.7$ percent.
- B** To decide which of the allocations is safety-first optimal, select the alternative with the highest ratio $[E(R_P) - R_L]/\sigma_P$:

$$\text{Allocation A: } 0.5125 = (16 - 3.7)/24$$

$$\text{Allocation B: } 0.488235 = (12 - 3.7)/17$$

$$\text{Allocation C: } 0.525 = (10 - 3.7)/12$$

$$\text{Allocation D: } 0.481818 = (9 - 3.7)/11$$

Allocation C, with the largest ratio (0.525), is the best alternative according to the safety-first criterion.

- C** To answer this question, note that $P(R_C < 3.7) = N(-0.525)$. We can round 0.525 to 0.53 for use with tables of the standard normal cdf. First, we calculate $N(-0.53) = 1 - N(0.53) = 1 - 0.7019 = 0.2981$ or about 30 percent. The safety-first optimal portfolio has a roughly 30 percent chance of not meeting a 3.7 percent return threshold.
- 18** A is correct. $P(8\% \leq \text{Portfolio return} \leq 11\%) = N(Z \text{ corresponding to } 11\%) - N(Z \text{ corresponding to } 8\%)$. For the first term, $Z = (11\% - 8\%)/14\% = 0.21$ approximately, and using the table of cumulative normal distribution given in the problem, $N(0.21) = 0.5832$. To get the second term immediately, note that 8 percent is the mean, and for the normal distribution 50 percent of the probability lies on either side of the mean. Therefore, $N(Z \text{ corresponding to } 8\%)$ must equal 50 percent. So $P(8\% \leq \text{Portfolio return} \leq 11\%) = 0.5832 - 0.50 = 0.0832$ or approximately 8.3 percent.
- 19** B is correct. There are three steps, which involve standardizing the portfolio return: First, subtract the portfolio mean return from each side of the inequality: $P(\text{Portfolio return} - 7\%) \leq 4\% - 7\%$. Second, divide each side of the inequality by the standard deviation of portfolio return: $P[(\text{Portfolio return} - 7\%)/13\% \leq (4\% - 7\%)/13\%] = P(Z \leq -0.2308) = N(-0.2308)$. Third, recognize that on the left-hand side we have a standard normal variable, denoted by Z and $N(-x) = 1 - N(x)$. Rounding -0.2308 to -0.23 for use with the cumulative

distribution function (cdf) table, we have $N(-0.23) = 1 - N(0.23) = 1 - 0.5910 = 0.409$, approximately 41 percent. The probability that the portfolio will underperform the target is about 41 percent.

- 20 A** Elements that should appear in a definition of Monte Carlo simulation are that it makes use of a computer; that it is used to represent the operation of a complex system, or in some applications, to find an approximate solution to a problem; and that it involves the generation of a large number of random samples from a specified probability distribution. The exact wording can vary, but one definition follows:

Monte Carlo simulation in finance involves the use of a computer to represent the operation of a complex financial system. In some important applications, Monte Carlo simulation is used to find an approximate solution to a complex financial problem. An integral part of Monte Carlo simulation is the generation of a large number of random samples from a probability distribution.

- B** *Strengths.* Monte Carlo simulation can be used to price complex securities for which no analytic expression is available, particularly European-style options.

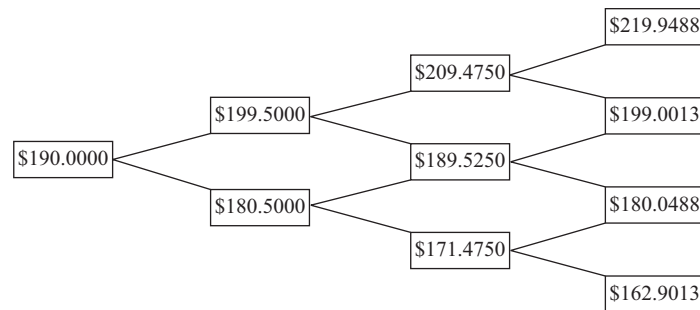
Weaknesses. Monte Carlo simulation provides only statistical estimates, not exact results. Analytic methods, when available, provide more insight into cause-and-effect relationships than does Monte Carlo simulation.

- 21** In the text, we described how we could use Monte Carlo simulation to value an Asian option, a complex European-style option. Just as we can calculate the average value of the stock over a simulation trial to value an Asian option, we can also calculate the minimum value of the stock over a simulation trial. Then, for a given simulation trial, we can calculate the terminal value of the call, given the minimum value of the stock for the simulation trial. We can then discount back this terminal value to the present to get the value of the call today ($t = 0$). The average of these $t = 0$ values over all simulation trials is the Monte Carlo simulated value of the lookback call option.
- 22** C is correct. The rate of return is a random variable because the future outcomes are uncertain, and it is continuous because it can take on an unlimited number of outcomes.
- 23** B is correct. The function $g(x)$ satisfies the conditions of a probability function. All of the values of $g(x)$ are between 0 and 1, and the values of $g(x)$ all sum to 1.
- 24** A is correct. The probability that X will take on a value of 4 or less is: $F(4) = P(X \leq 4) = p(1) + p(2) + p(3) + p(4) = 0.60$. The probability that X will take on a value of 3 or less is: $F(3) = P(X \leq 3) = p(1) + p(2) + p(3) = 0.50$. So, the probability that X will take on a value of 4 is: $F(4) - F(3) = p(4) = 0.10$. The probability of $X = 2$ can be found using the same logic: $F(2) - F(1) = p(2) = 0.25 - 0.15 = 0.10$. The probability of X taking on a value of 2 or 4 is: $p(2) + p(4) = 0.10 + 0.10 = 0.20$.
- 25** A is correct. A trial, such as a coin flip, will produce one of two outcomes. Such a trial is a Bernoulli trial.
- 26** A is correct. The continuously compounded return of an asset over a period is equal to the natural log of period's change. In this case:

$$\ln(120/112) = 6.90\%$$

- 27** C is correct. The probability of an up move (p) can be found by solving the equation: $(p)uS + (1 - p)dS = (p)105 + (1 - p)97 = 102$. Solving for p gives $8p = 5$, so that $p = 0.625$.

- 28 A is correct. Only the top node value of \$219.9488 exceeds \$200.



- 29 A is correct. The probability of generating a random number equal to any fixed point under a continuous uniform distribution is zero.
- 30 C is correct. A characteristic feature of Monte Carlo simulation is the generation of a large number of random samples from a specified probability distribution or distributions to represent the role of risk in the system.
- 31 C is correct. Monte Carlo simulation is a complement to analytical methods. Monte Carlo simulation provides statistical estimates and not exact results. Analytical methods, when available, provide more insight into cause-and-effect relationships.
- 32 B is correct. A normal distribution has a skewness of zero (it is symmetrical around the mean). A non-zero skewness implies asymmetry in a distribution.
- 33 A is correct. The chance of a negative return falls in the area to the left of 0% under a standard normal curve. By standardizing the returns and standard deviations of the two assets, the likelihood of either asset experiencing a negative return may be determined: $Z\text{-score (standardized value)} = (X - \mu)/\sigma$

$$Z\text{-score for a bond return of } 0\% = (0 - 2)/5 = -0.40.$$

$$Z\text{-score for a stock return of } 0\% = (0 - 10)/15 = -0.67.$$

For bonds, a 0% return falls 0.40 standard deviations below the mean return of 2%. In contrast, for stocks, a 0% return falls 0.67 standard deviations below the mean return of 10%. A standard deviation of 0.40 is less than a standard deviation of 0.67. Negative returns thus occupy more of the left tail of the bond distribution than the stock distribution. Thus, bonds are more likely than stocks to experience a negative return.

- 34 B is correct. Allocation B has the highest safety-first ratio. The threshold return level R_L for the portfolio is $\text{£}90,000/\text{£}2,000,000 = 4.5\%$, thus any return less than $R_L = 4.5\%$ will invade the portfolio principal. To compute the allocation that is safety-first optimal, select the alternative with the highest ratio:

$$\frac{[E(R_P - R_L)]}{\sigma_P}$$

$$\text{Allocation A} = \frac{6.5 - 4.5}{8.35} = 0.240$$

$$\text{Allocation B} = \frac{7.5 - 4.5}{10.21} = 0.294$$

$$\text{Allocation C} = \frac{8.5 - 4.5}{14.34} = 0.279$$

- 35 B is correct. By definition, lognormal random variables cannot have negative values.
- 36 C is correct. A lognormal distributed variable has a lower bound of zero. The lognormal distribution is also right skewed, which is a useful property in describing asset prices.
- 37 A is correct. The continuously compounded return from $t = 0$ to $t = 1$ is $r_{0,1} = \ln(S_1/S_0) = \ln(186.75/208.25) = -0.10897 = -10.90\%$.

Sampling and Estimation

by **Richard A. DeFusco, PhD, CFA**, **Dennis W. McLeavey, CFA**,
Jerald E. Pinto, PhD, CFA, and **David E. Runkle, PhD, CFA**

Richard A. DeFusco, PhD, CFA, is at the University of Nebraska-Lincoln (USA). Dennis W. McLeavey, CFA, is at the University of Rhode Island (USA). Jerald E. Pinto, PhD, CFA, is at CFA Institute (USA). David E. Runkle, PhD, CFA, is at Trilogy Global Advisors (USA).

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Mastery	The candidate should be able to:
<input type="checkbox"/>	a. define simple random sampling and a sampling distribution;
<input type="checkbox"/>	b. explain sampling error;
<input type="checkbox"/>	c. distinguish between simple random and stratified random sampling;
<input type="checkbox"/>	d. distinguish between time-series and cross-sectional data;
<input type="checkbox"/>	e. explain the central limit theorem and its importance;
<input type="checkbox"/>	f. calculate and interpret the standard error of the sample mean;
<input type="checkbox"/>	g. identify and describe desirable properties of an estimator;
<input type="checkbox"/>	h. distinguish between a point estimate and a confidence interval estimate of a population parameter;
<input type="checkbox"/>	i. describe properties of Student's t -distribution and calculate and interpret its degrees of freedom;
<input type="checkbox"/>	j. calculate and interpret a confidence interval for a population mean, given a normal distribution with 1) a known population variance, 2) an unknown population variance, or 3) an unknown population variance and a large sample size;
<input type="checkbox"/>	k. describe the issues regarding selection of the appropriate sample size, data-mining bias, sample selection bias, survivorship bias, look-ahead bias, and time-period bias.

1

INTRODUCTION

Each day, we observe the high, low, and close of stock market indexes from around the world. Indexes such as the S&P 500 Index and the Nikkei-Dow Jones Average are samples of stocks. Although the S&P 500 and the Nikkei do not represent the populations of US or Japanese stocks, we view them as valid indicators of the whole population's behavior. As analysts, we are accustomed to using this sample information to assess how various markets from around the world are performing. Any statistics that we compute with sample information, however, are only estimates of the underlying population parameters. A sample, then, is a subset of the population—a subset studied to infer conclusions about the population itself.

This reading explores how we sample and use sample information to estimate population parameters. In the next section, we discuss **sampling**—the process of obtaining a sample. In investments, we continually make use of the mean as a measure of central tendency of random variables, such as return and earnings per share. Even when the probability distribution of the random variable is unknown, we can make probability statements about the population mean using the central limit theorem. In Section 3, we discuss and illustrate this key result. Following that discussion, we turn to statistical estimation. Estimation seeks precise answers to the question “What is this parameter's value?”

The central limit theorem and estimation are the core of the body of methods presented in this reading. In investments, we apply these and other statistical techniques to financial data; we often interpret the results for the purpose of deciding what works and what does not work in investments. We end this reading with a discussion of the interpretation of statistical results based on financial data and the possible pitfalls in this process.

2

SAMPLING

In this section, we present the various methods for obtaining information on a population (all members of a specified group) through samples (part of the population). The information on a population that we try to obtain usually concerns the value of a **parameter**, a quantity computed from or used to describe a population of data. When we use a sample to estimate a parameter, we make use of sample statistics (statistics, for short). A **statistic** is a quantity computed from or used to describe a sample of data.

We take samples for one of two reasons. In some cases, we cannot possibly examine every member of the population. In other cases, examining every member of the population would not be economically efficient. Thus, savings of time and money are two primary factors that cause an analyst to use sampling to answer a question about a population. In this section, we discuss two methods of random sampling: simple random sampling and stratified random sampling. We then define and illustrate the two types of data an analyst uses: cross-sectional data and time-series data.

2.1 Simple Random Sampling

Suppose a telecommunications equipment analyst wants to know how much major customers will spend on average for equipment during the coming year. One strategy is to survey the population of telecom equipment customers and inquire what their purchasing plans are. In statistical terms, the characteristics of the population

of customers' planned expenditures would then usually be expressed by descriptive measures such as the mean and variance. Surveying all companies, however, would be very costly in terms of time and money.

Alternatively, the analyst can collect a representative sample of companies and survey them about upcoming telecom equipment expenditures. In this case, the analyst will compute the sample mean expenditure, \bar{X} , a statistic. This strategy has a substantial advantage over polling the whole population because it can be accomplished more quickly and at lower cost.

Sampling, however, introduces error. The error arises because not all the companies in the population are surveyed. The analyst who decides to sample is trading time and money for sampling error.

When an analyst chooses to sample, he must formulate a sampling plan. A **sampling plan** is the set of rules used to select a sample. The basic type of sample from which we can draw statistically sound conclusions about a population is the **simple random sample** (random sample, for short).

- **Definition of Simple Random Sample.** A simple random sample is a subset of a larger population created in such a way that each element of the population has an equal probability of being selected to the subset.

The procedure of drawing a sample to satisfy the definition of a simple random sample is called **simple random sampling**. How is simple random sampling carried out? We need a method that ensures randomness—the lack of any pattern—in the selection of the sample. For a finite (limited) population, the most common method for obtaining a random sample involves the use of random numbers (numbers with assured properties of randomness). First, we number the members of the population in sequence. For example, if the population contains 500 members, we number them in sequence with three digits, starting with 001 and ending with 500. Suppose we want a simple random sample of size 50. In that case, using a computer random-number generator or a table of random numbers, we generate a series of three-digit random numbers. We then match these random numbers with the number codes of the population members until we have selected a sample of size 50.

Sometimes we cannot code (or even identify) all the members of a population. We often use **systematic sampling** in such cases. With systematic sampling, we select every k th member until we have a sample of the desired size. The sample that results from this procedure should be approximately random. Real sampling situations may require that we take an approximately random sample.

Suppose the telecommunications equipment analyst polls a random sample of telecom equipment customers to determine the average equipment expenditure. The sample mean will provide the analyst with an estimate of the population mean expenditure. Any difference between the sample mean and the population mean is called **sampling error**.

- **Definition of Sampling Error.** Sampling error is the difference between the observed value of a statistic and the quantity it is intended to estimate.

A random sample reflects the properties of the population in an unbiased way, and sample statistics, such as the sample mean, computed on the basis of a random sample are valid estimates of the underlying population parameters.

A sample statistic is a random variable. In other words, not only do the original data from the population have a distribution but so does the sample statistic.

This distribution is the statistic's **sampling distribution**.

- **Definition of Sampling Distribution of a Statistic.** The sampling distribution of a statistic is the distribution of all the distinct possible values that the statistic can assume when computed from samples of the same size randomly drawn from the same population.

In the case of the sample mean, for example, we refer to the “sampling distribution of the sample mean” or the distribution of the sample mean. We will have more to say about sampling distributions later in this reading. Next, however, we look at another sampling method that is useful in investment analysis.

2.2 Stratified Random Sampling

The simple random sampling method just discussed may not be the best approach in all situations. One frequently used alternative is stratified random sampling.

- **Definition of Stratified Random Sampling.** In stratified random sampling, the population is divided into subpopulations (strata) based on one or more classification criteria. Simple random samples are then drawn from each stratum in sizes proportional to the relative size of each stratum in the population. These samples are then pooled to form a stratified random sample.

In contrast to simple random sampling, stratified random sampling guarantees that population subdivisions of interest are represented in the sample. Another advantage is that estimates of parameters produced from stratified sampling have greater precision—that is, smaller variance or dispersion—than estimates obtained from simple random sampling.

Bond indexing is one area in which stratified sampling is frequently applied. **Indexing** is an investment strategy in which an investor constructs a portfolio to mirror the performance of a specified index. In pure bond indexing, also called the full-replication approach, the investor attempts to fully replicate an index by owning all the bonds in the index in proportion to their market value weights. Many bond indexes consist of thousands of issues, however, so pure bond indexing is difficult to implement. In addition, transaction costs would be high because many bonds do not have liquid markets. Although a simple random sample could be a solution to the cost problem, the sample would probably not match the index's major risk factors—interest rate sensitivity, for example. Because the major risk factors of fixed-income portfolios are well known and quantifiable, stratified sampling offers a more effective approach. In this approach, we divide the population of index bonds into groups of similar duration (interest rate sensitivity), cash flow distribution, sector, credit quality, and call exposure. We refer to each group as a stratum or cell (a term frequently used in this context). Then, we choose a sample from each stratum proportional to the relative market weighting of the stratum in the index to be replicated.

EXAMPLE 1

Bond Indexes and Stratified Sampling

Suppose you are the manager of a mutual fund indexed to the Lehman Brothers Government Index. You are exploring several approaches to indexing, including a stratified sampling approach. You first distinguish agency bonds from US Treasury bonds. For each of these two groups, you define 10 maturity intervals—1 to 2 years, 2 to 3 years, 3 to 4 years, 4 to 6 years, 6 to 8 years, 8 to 10 years, 10 to 12

years, 12 to 15 years, 15 to 20 years, and 20 to 30 years—and also separate the bonds with coupons (annual interest rates) of 6 percent or less from the bonds with coupons of more than 6 percent.

- 1 How many cells or strata does this sampling plan entail?
- 2 If you use this sampling plan, what is the minimum number of issues the indexed portfolio can have?
- 3 Suppose that in selecting among the securities that qualify for selection within each cell, you apply a criterion concerning the liquidity of the security's market. Is the sample obtained random? Explain your answer.

Solution to 1:

We have 2 issuer classifications, 10 maturity classifications, and 2 coupon classifications. So, in total, this plan entails $2(10)(2) = 40$ different strata or cells. (This answer is an application of the multiplication rule of counting discussed in the reading on probability concepts.)

Solution to 2:

You cannot have fewer than one issue for each cell, so the portfolio must include at least 40 issues.

Solution to 3:

If you apply any additional criteria to the selection of securities for the cells, not every security that might be included has an equal probability of being selected. As a result, the sampling is not random. In practice, indexing using stratified sampling usually does not strictly involve random sampling because the selection of bond issues within cells is subject to various additional criteria. Because the purpose of sampling in this application is not to make an inference about a population parameter but rather to index a portfolio, lack of randomness is not in itself a problem in this application of stratified sampling.

In the next section, we discuss the kinds of data used by financial analysts in sampling and practical issues that arise in selecting samples.

2.3 Time-Series and Cross-Sectional Data

Investment analysts commonly work with both time-series and cross-sectional data. A time series is a sequence of returns collected at discrete and equally spaced intervals of time (such as a historical series of monthly stock returns). Cross-sectional data are data on some characteristic of individuals, groups, geographical regions, or companies at a single point in time. The 2014 year-end book value per share for all New York Stock Exchange-listed companies is an example of cross-sectional data.

Economic or financial theory offers no basis for determining whether a long or short time period should be selected to collect a sample. As analysts, we might have to look for subtle clues. For example, combining data from a period of fixed exchange rates with data from a period of floating exchange rates would be inappropriate. The variance of exchange rates when exchange rates were fixed would certainly be less than when rates were allowed to float. As a consequence, we would not be sampling from a population described by a single set of parameters.¹ Tight versus loose **monetary**

¹ When the mean or variance of a time series is not constant through time, the time series is not stationary.

policy also influences the distribution of returns to stocks; thus, combining data from tight-money and loose-money periods would be inappropriate. Example 2 illustrates the problems that can arise when sampling from more than one distribution.

EXAMPLE 2

Calculating Sharpe Ratios: One or Two Years of Quarterly Data

Analysts often use the Sharpe ratio to evaluate the performance of a managed portfolio. The **Sharpe ratio** is the average return in excess of the risk-free rate divided by the standard deviation of returns. This ratio measures the excess return earned per unit of standard deviation of return.

To compute the Sharpe ratio, suppose that an analyst collects eight quarterly excess returns (i.e., total return in excess of the risk-free rate). During the first year, the investment manager of the portfolio followed a low-risk strategy, and during the second year, the manager followed a high-risk strategy. For each of these years, the analyst also tracks the quarterly excess returns of some benchmark against which the manager will be evaluated. For each of the two years, the Sharpe ratio for the benchmark is 0.21. Table 1 gives the calculation of the Sharpe ratio of the portfolio.

Table 1 Calculation of Sharpe Ratios: Low-Risk and High-Risk Strategies

Quarter/Measure	Year 1 Excess Returns	Year 2 Excess Returns
Quarter 1	-3%	-12%
Quarter 2	5	20
Quarter 3	-3	-12
Quarter 4	5	20
Quarterly average	1%	4%
Quarterly standard deviation	4.62%	18.48%
Sharpe ratio = 0.22 = $1/4.62 = 4/18.48$		

For the first year, during which the manager followed a low-risk strategy, the average quarterly return in excess of the risk-free rate was 1 percent with a standard deviation of 4.62 percent. The Sharpe ratio is thus $1/4.62 = 0.22$. The second year's results mirror the first year except for the higher average return and volatility. The Sharpe ratio for the second year is $4/18.48 = 0.22$. The Sharpe ratio for the benchmark is 0.21 during the first and second years. Because larger Sharpe ratios are better than smaller ones (providing more return per unit of risk), the manager appears to have outperformed the benchmark.

Now, suppose the analyst believes a larger sample to be superior to a small one. She thus decides to pool the two years together and calculate a Sharpe ratio based on eight quarterly observations. The average quarterly excess return for the two years is the average of each year's average excess return. For the two-year period, the average excess return is $(1 + 4)/2 = 2.5$ percent per quarter. The standard deviation for all eight quarters measured from the sample mean of 2.5 percent is 12.57 percent. The portfolio's Sharpe ratio for the two-year period

is now $2.5/12.57 = 0.199$; the Sharpe ratio for the benchmark remains 0.21. Thus, when returns for the two-year period are pooled, the manager appears to have provided less return per unit of risk than the benchmark and less when compared with the separate yearly results.

The problem with using eight quarters of return data is that the analyst has violated the assumption that the sampled returns come from the same population. As a result of the change in the manager's investment strategy, returns in Year 2 followed a different distribution than returns in Year 1. Clearly, during Year 1, returns were generated by an underlying population with lower mean and variance than the population of the second year. Combining the results for the first and second years yielded a sample that was representative of no population. Because the larger sample did not satisfy model assumptions, any conclusions the analyst reached based on the larger sample are incorrect. For this example, she was better off using a smaller sample than a larger sample because the smaller sample represented a more homogeneous distribution of returns.

The second basic type of data is cross-sectional data.² With cross-sectional data, the observations in the sample represent a characteristic of individuals, groups, geographical regions, or companies at a single point in time. The telecommunications analyst discussed previously is essentially collecting a cross-section of planned capital expenditures for the coming year.

Whenever we sample cross-sectionally, certain assumptions must be met if we wish to summarize the data in a meaningful way. Again, a useful approach is to think of the observation of interest as a random variable that comes from some underlying population with a given mean and variance. As we collect our sample and begin to summarize the data, we must be sure that all the data do, in fact, come from the same underlying population. For example, an analyst might be interested in how efficiently companies use their inventory assets. Some companies, however, turn over their inventory more quickly than others because of differences in their operating environments (e.g., grocery stores turn over inventory more quickly than automobile manufacturers, in general). So the distribution of inventory turnover rates may not be characterized by a single distribution with a given mean and variance. Therefore, summarizing inventory turnover across all companies might be inappropriate. If random variables are generated by different underlying distributions, the sample statistics computed from combined samples are not related to one underlying population parameter. The size of the sampling error in such cases is unknown.

In instances such as these, analysts often summarize company-level data by industry. Attempting to summarize by industry partially addresses the problem of differing underlying distributions, but large corporations are likely to be in more than one industrial sector, so analysts should be sure they understand how companies are assigned to the industry groups.

Whether we deal with time-series data or cross-sectional data, we must be sure to have a random sample that is representative of the population we wish to study. With the objective of inferring information from representative samples, we now turn to the next part of this reading, which focuses on the central limit theorem as well as point and interval estimates of the population mean.

² The reader may also encounter two types of datasets that have both time-series and cross-sectional aspects. **Panel data** consist of observations through time on a single characteristic of multiple observational units. For example, the annual inflation rate of the Eurozone countries over a five-year period would represent panel data. **Longitudinal data** consist of observations on characteristic(s) of the same observational unit through time. Observations on a set of financial ratios for a single company over a 10-year period would be an example of longitudinal data. Both panel and longitudinal data may be represented by arrays (matrixes) in which successive rows represent the observations for successive time periods.

3

DISTRIBUTION OF THE SAMPLE MEAN

Earlier in this reading, we presented a telecommunications equipment analyst who decided to sample in order to estimate mean planned capital expenditures by his customers. Supposing that the sample is representative of the underlying population, how can the analyst assess the sampling error in estimating the population mean? Viewed as a formula that takes a function of the random outcomes of a random variable, the sample mean is itself a random variable with a probability distribution. That probability distribution is called the statistic's sampling distribution.³ To estimate how closely the sample mean can be expected to match the underlying population mean, the analyst needs to understand the sampling distribution of the mean. Fortunately, we have a result, the central limit theorem, that helps us understand the sampling distribution of the mean for many of the estimation problems we face.

3.1 The Central Limit Theorem

One of the most practically useful theorems in probability theory, the central limit theorem has important implications for how we construct confidence intervals and test hypotheses. Formally, it is stated as follows:

- **The Central Limit Theorem.** Given a population described by any probability distribution having mean μ and finite variance σ^2 , the sampling distribution of the sample mean \bar{X} computed from samples of size n from this population will be approximately normal with mean μ (the population mean) and variance σ^2/n (the population variance divided by n) when the sample size n is large.

The central limit theorem allows us to make quite precise probability statements about the population mean by using the sample mean, *whatever the distribution of the population* (so long as it has finite variance), because the sample mean follows an approximate normal distribution for large-size samples. The obvious question is, “When is a sample’s size large enough that we can assume the sample mean is normally distributed?” In general, when sample size n is greater than or equal to 30, we can assume that the sample mean is approximately normally distributed.⁴

The central limit theorem states that the variance of the distribution of the sample mean is σ^2/n . The positive square root of variance is standard deviation. The standard deviation of a sample statistic is known as the standard error of the statistic. The standard error of the sample mean is an important quantity in applying the central limit theorem in practice.

- **Definition of the Standard Error of the Sample Mean.** For sample mean \bar{X} calculated from a sample generated by a population with standard deviation σ , the standard error of the sample mean is given by one of two expressions:

$$\sigma_{\bar{X}} = \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{n}} \quad (1)$$

³ Sometimes confusion arises because “sample mean” is also used in another sense. When we calculate the sample mean for a particular sample, we obtain a definite number, say 8. If we state that “the sample mean is 8” we are using “sample mean” in the sense of a particular outcome of sample mean as a random variable. The number 8 is of course a constant and does not have a probability distribution. In this discussion, we are not referring to “sample mean” in the sense of a constant number related to a particular sample.

⁴ When the underlying population is very nonnormal, a sample size well in excess of 30 may be required for the normal distribution to be a good description of the sampling distribution of the mean.

when we know σ , the population standard deviation, or by

$$s_{\bar{X}} = \frac{s}{\sqrt{n}} \quad (2)$$

when we do not know the population standard deviation and need to use the sample standard deviation, s , to estimate it.⁵

In practice, we almost always need to use Equation 2. The estimate of s is given by the square root of the sample variance, s^2 , calculated as follows:

$$s^2 = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^n (X_i - \bar{X})^2}{n - 1} \quad (3)$$

We will soon see how we can use the sample mean and its standard error to make probability statements about the population mean by using the technique of confidence intervals. First, however, we provide an illustration of the central limit theorem's force.

EXAMPLE 3

The Central Limit Theorem

It is remarkable that the sample mean for large sample sizes will be distributed normally regardless of the distribution of the underlying population. To illustrate the central limit theorem in action, we specify in this example a distinctly nonnormal distribution and use it to generate a large number of random samples of size 100. We then calculate the sample mean for each sample. The frequency distribution of the calculated sample means is an approximation of the sampling distribution of the sample mean for that sample size. Does that sampling distribution look like a normal distribution?

We return to the telecommunications analyst studying the capital expenditure plans of telecom businesses. Suppose that capital expenditures for communications equipment form a continuous uniform random variable with a **lower bound** equal to \$0 and an upper bound equal to \$100—for short, call this a uniform (0, 100) random variable. The probability function of this continuous uniform random variable has a rather simple shape that is anything but normal. It is a horizontal line with a vertical intercept equal to 1/100. Unlike a normal random variable, for which outcomes close to the mean are most likely, all possible outcomes are equally likely for a uniform random variable.

To illustrate the power of the central limit theorem, we conduct a Monte Carlo simulation to study the capital expenditure plans of telecom businesses.⁶ In this simulation, we collect 200 random samples of the capital expenditures of 100 companies (200 random draws, each consisting of the capital expenditures of 100 companies with $n = 100$). In each simulation trial, 100 values for capital

⁵ We need to note a technical point: When we take a sample of size n from a finite population of size N , we apply a shrinkage factor to the estimate of the standard error of the sample mean that is called the finite population correction factor (fpc). The fpc is equal to $[(N - n)/(N - 1)]^{1/2}$. Thus, if $N = 100$ and $n = 20$, $[(100 - 20)/(100 - 1)]^{1/2} = 0.898933$. If we have estimated a standard error of, say, 20, according to Equation 1 or Equation 2, the new estimate is $20(0.898933) = 17.978663$. The fpc applies only when we sample from a finite population without replacement; most practitioners also do not apply the fpc if sample size n is very small relative to N (say, less than 5 percent of N). For more information on the finite population correction factor, see Daniel and Terrell (1995).

⁶ Monte Carlo simulation involves the use of a computer to represent the operation of a system subject to risk. An integral part of Monte Carlo simulation is the generation of a large number of random samples from a specified probability distribution or distributions.

expenditure are generated from the uniform (0, 100) distribution. For each random sample, we then compute the sample mean. We conduct 200 simulation trials in total. Because we have specified the distribution generating the samples, we know that the population mean capital expenditure is equal to $(\$0 + \$100 \text{ million})/2 = \50 million ; the population variance of capital expenditures is equal to $(100 - 0)^2/12 = 833.33$; thus, the standard deviation is \$28.87 million and the standard error is $28.87/\sqrt{100} = 2.887$ under the central limit theorem.⁷

The results of this Monte Carlo experiment are tabulated in Table 2 in the form of a frequency distribution. This distribution is the estimated sampling distribution of the sample mean.

Table 2 Frequency Distribution: 200 Random Samples of a Uniform (0,100) Random Variable

Range of Sample Means (\$ Million)	Absolute Frequency
$42.5 \leq \bar{X} < 44$	1
$44 \leq \bar{X} < 45.5$	6
$45.5 \leq \bar{X} < 47$	22
$47 \leq \bar{X} < 48.5$	39
$48.5 \leq \bar{X} < 50$	41
$50 \leq \bar{X} < 51.5$	39
$51.5 \leq \bar{X} < 53$	23
$53 \leq \bar{X} < 54.5$	12
$54.5 \leq \bar{X} < 56$	12
$56 \leq \bar{X} < 57.5$	5

Note: \bar{X} is the mean capital expenditure for each sample.

The frequency distribution can be described as bell-shaped and centered close to the population mean of 50. The most frequent, or modal, range, with 41 observations, is 48.5 to 50. The overall average of the sample means is \$49.92, with a standard error equal to \$2.80. The calculated standard error is close to the value of 2.887 given by the central limit theorem. The discrepancy between calculated and expected values of the mean and standard deviation under the central limit theorem is a result of random chance (sampling error).

In summary, although the distribution of the underlying population is very nonnormal, the simulation has shown that a normal distribution well describes the estimated sampling distribution of the sample mean, with mean and standard error consistent with the values predicted by the central limit theorem.

⁷ If a is the lower limit of a uniform random variable and b is the upper limit, then the random variable's mean is given by $(a + b)/2$ and its variance is given by $(b - a)^2/12$. The reading on common probability distributions fully describes continuous uniform random variables.

To summarize, according to the central limit theorem, when we sample from any distribution, the distribution of the sample mean will have the following properties as long as our sample size is large:

- The distribution of the sample mean \bar{X} will be approximately normal.
- The mean of the distribution of \bar{X} will be equal to the mean of the population from which the samples are drawn.
- The variance of the distribution of \bar{X} will be equal to the variance of the population divided by the sample size.

We next discuss the concepts and tools related to estimating the population parameters, with a special focus on the population mean. We focus on the population mean because analysts are more likely to meet interval estimates for the population mean than any other type of interval estimate.

POINT AND INTERVAL ESTIMATES OF THE POPULATION MEAN

4

Statistical inference traditionally consists of two branches, hypothesis testing and estimation. Hypothesis testing addresses the question “Is the value of this parameter (say, a population mean) equal to some specific value (0, for example)?” In this process, we have a hypothesis concerning the value of a parameter, and we seek to determine whether the evidence from a sample supports or does not support that hypothesis. We discuss hypothesis testing in detail in the reading on hypothesis testing.

The second branch of statistical inference, and the focus of this reading, is estimation. Estimation seeks an answer to the question “What is this parameter’s (for example, the population mean’s) value?” In estimating, unlike in hypothesis testing, we do not start with a hypothesis about a parameter’s value and seek to test it. Rather, we try to make the best use of the information in a sample to form one of several types of estimates of the parameter’s value. With estimation, we are interested in arriving at a rule for best calculating a single number to estimate the unknown population parameter (a point estimate). Together with calculating a point estimate, we may also be interested in calculating a range of values that brackets the unknown population parameter with some specified level of probability (a confidence interval). In Section 4.1 we discuss point estimates of parameters and then, in Section 4.2, the formulation of confidence intervals for the population mean.

4.1 Point Estimators

An important concept introduced in this reading is that sample statistics viewed as formulas involving random outcomes are random variables. The formulas that we use to compute the sample mean and all the other sample statistics are examples of estimation formulas or **estimators**. The particular value that we calculate from sample observations using an estimator is called an **estimate**. An estimator has a sampling distribution; an estimate is a fixed number pertaining to a given sample and thus has no sampling distribution. To take the example of the mean, the calculated value of the sample mean in a given sample, used as an estimate of the population mean, is called a **point estimate** of the population mean. As Example 3 illustrated, the formula for the sample mean can and will yield different results in repeated samples as different samples are drawn from the population.

In many applications, we have a choice among a number of possible estimators for estimating a given parameter. How do we make our choice? We often select estimators because they have one or more desirable statistical properties. Following is a brief description of three desirable properties of estimators: unbiasedness (lack of bias), efficiency, and consistency.⁸

- **Definition of Unbiasedness.** An unbiased estimator is one whose expected value (the mean of its sampling distribution) equals the parameter it is intended to estimate.

For example, the expected value of the sample mean, \bar{X} , equals μ , the population mean, so we say that the sample mean is an unbiased estimator (of the population mean). The sample variance, s^2 , which is calculated using a divisor of $n - 1$ (Equation 3), is an unbiased estimator of the population variance, σ^2 . If we were to calculate the sample variance using a divisor of n , the estimator would be biased: Its expected value would be smaller than the population variance. We would say that sample variance calculated with a divisor of n is a biased estimator of the population variance.

Whenever one unbiased estimator of a parameter can be found, we can usually find a large number of other unbiased estimators. How do we choose among alternative unbiased estimators? The criterion of efficiency provides a way to select from among unbiased estimators of a parameter.

- **Definition of Efficiency.** An unbiased estimator is efficient if no other unbiased estimator of the same parameter has a sampling distribution with smaller variance.

To explain the definition, in repeated samples we expect the estimates from an efficient estimator to be more tightly grouped around the mean than estimates from other unbiased estimators. Efficiency is an important property of an estimator.⁹ Sample mean \bar{X} is an efficient estimator of the population mean; sample variance s^2 is an efficient estimator of σ^2 .

Recall that a statistic's sampling distribution is defined for a given sample size. Different sample sizes define different sampling distributions. For example, the variance of sampling distribution of the sample mean is smaller for larger sample sizes. Unbiasedness and efficiency are properties of an estimator's sampling distribution that hold for any size sample. An unbiased estimator is unbiased equally in a sample of size 10 and in a sample of size 1,000. In some problems, however, we cannot find estimators that have such desirable properties as unbiasedness in small samples.¹⁰ In this case, statisticians may justify the choice of an estimator based on the properties of the estimator's sampling distribution in extremely large samples, the estimator's so-called asymptotic properties. Among such properties, the most important is consistency.

- **Definition of Consistency.** A consistent estimator is one for which the probability of estimates close to the value of the population parameter increases as sample size increases.

Somewhat more technically, we can define a consistent estimator as an estimator whose sampling distribution becomes concentrated on the value of the parameter it is intended to estimate as the sample size approaches infinity. The sample mean, in addition to being an efficient estimator, is also a consistent estimator of the population mean: As sample size n goes to infinity, its standard error, σ/\sqrt{n} , goes to 0 and its sampling distribution becomes concentrated right over the value of population mean,

⁸ See Daniel and Terrell (1995) or Greene (2018) for a thorough treatment of the properties of estimators.

⁹ An efficient estimator is sometimes referred to as the best unbiased estimator.

¹⁰ Such problems frequently arise in regression and time-series analyses.

μ . To summarize, we can think of a consistent estimator as one that tends to produce more and more accurate estimates of the population parameter as we increase the sample's size. If an estimator is consistent, we may attempt to increase the accuracy of estimates of a population parameter by calculating estimates using a larger sample. For an inconsistent estimator, however, increasing sample size does not help to increase the probability of accurate estimates.

4.2 Confidence Intervals for the Population Mean

When we need a single number as an estimate of a population parameter, we make use of a point estimate. However, because of sampling error, the point estimate is not likely to equal the population parameter in any given sample. Often, a more useful approach than finding a point estimate is to find a range of values that we expect to bracket the parameter with a specified level of probability—an interval estimate of the parameter. A confidence interval fulfills this role.

- **Definition of Confidence Interval.** A confidence interval is a range for which one can assert with a given probability $1 - \alpha$, called the **degree of confidence**, that it will contain the parameter it is intended to estimate. This interval is often referred to as the $100(1 - \alpha)\%$ confidence interval for the parameter.

The endpoints of a confidence interval are referred to as the lower and upper confidence limits. In this reading, we are concerned only with two-sided confidence intervals—confidence intervals for which we calculate both lower and upper limits.¹¹

Confidence intervals are frequently given either a probabilistic interpretation or a practical interpretation. In the probabilistic interpretation, we interpret a 95 percent confidence interval for the population mean as follows. In repeated sampling, 95 percent of such confidence intervals will, in the long run, include or bracket the population mean. For example, suppose we sample from the population 1,000 times, and based on each sample, we construct a 95 percent confidence interval using the calculated sample mean. Because of random chance, these confidence intervals will vary from each other, but we expect 95 percent, or 950, of these intervals to include the unknown value of the population mean. In practice, we generally do not carry out such repeated sampling. Therefore, in the practical interpretation, we assert that we are 95 percent confident that a single 95 percent confidence interval contains the population mean. We are justified in making this statement because we know that 95 percent of all possible confidence intervals constructed in the same manner will contain the population mean. The confidence intervals that we discuss in this reading have structures similar to the following basic structure:

- **Construction of Confidence Intervals.** A $100(1 - \alpha)\%$ confidence interval for a parameter has the following structure.

$$\text{Point estimate} \pm \text{Reliability factor} \times \text{Standard error}$$

¹¹ It is also possible to define two types of one-sided confidence intervals for a population parameter. A lower one-sided confidence interval establishes a lower limit only. Associated with such an interval is an assertion that with a specified degree of confidence the population parameter equals or exceeds the lower limit. An upper one-sided confidence interval establishes an upper limit only; the related assertion is that the population parameter is less than or equal to that upper limit, with a specified degree of confidence. Investment researchers rarely present one-sided confidence intervals, however.

where

Point estimate = a point estimate of the parameter (a value of a sample statistic)

Reliability factor = a number based on the assumed distribution of the point estimate and the degree of confidence ($1 - \alpha$) for the confidence interval

Standard error = the standard error of the sample statistic providing the point estimate¹²

The most basic confidence interval for the population mean arises when we are sampling from a normal distribution with known variance. The reliability factor in this case is based on the standard normal distribution, which has a mean of 0 and a variance of 1. A standard normal random variable is conventionally denoted by Z . The notation z_α denotes the point of the standard normal distribution such that α of the probability remains in the right tail. For example, 0.05 or 5 percent of the possible values of a standard normal random variable are larger than $z_{0.05} = 1.65$.

Suppose we want to construct a 95 percent confidence interval for the population mean and, for this purpose, we have taken a sample of size 100 from a normally distributed population with known variance of $\sigma^2 = 400$ (so, $\sigma = 20$). We calculate a sample mean of $\bar{X} = 25$. Our point estimate of the population mean is, therefore, 25. If we move 1.96 standard deviations above the mean of a normal distribution, 0.025 or 2.5 percent of the probability remains in the right tail; by symmetry of the normal distribution, if we move 1.96 standard deviations below the mean, 0.025 or 2.5 percent of the probability remains in the left tail. In total, 0.05 or 5 percent of the probability is in the two tails and 0.95 or 95 percent lies in between. So, $z_{0.025} = 1.96$ is the reliability factor for this 95 percent confidence interval. Note the relationship $100(1 - \alpha)\%$ for the confidence interval and the $z_{\alpha/2}$ for the reliability factor. The standard error of the sample mean, given by Equation 1, is $\sigma_{\bar{X}} = 20/\sqrt{100} = 2$. The confidence interval, therefore, has a lower limit of $\bar{X} - 1.96\sigma_{\bar{X}} = 25 - 1.96(2) = 25 - 3.92 = 21.08$. The upper limit of the confidence interval is $\bar{X} + 1.96\sigma_{\bar{X}} = 25 + 1.96(2) = 25 + 3.92 = 28.92$. The 95 percent confidence interval for the population mean spans 21.08 to 28.92.

- **Confidence Intervals for the Population Mean (Normally Distributed Population with Known Variance).** A $100(1 - \alpha)\%$ confidence interval for population mean μ when we are sampling from a normal distribution with known variance σ^2 is given by

$$\bar{X} \pm z_{\alpha/2} \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{n}} \quad (4)$$

The reliability factors for the most frequently used confidence intervals are as follows.

- **Reliability Factors for Confidence Intervals Based on the Standard Normal Distribution.** We use the following reliability factors when we construct confidence intervals based on the standard normal distribution:¹³
 - 90 percent confidence intervals: Use $z_{0.05} = 1.65$

¹² The quantity (reliability factor) \times (standard error) is sometimes called the precision of the estimator; larger values of the product imply lower precision in estimating the population parameter.

¹³ Most practitioners use values for $z_{0.05}$ and $z_{0.005}$ that are carried to two decimal places. For reference, more exact values for $z_{0.05}$ and $z_{0.005}$ are 1.645 and 2.575, respectively. For a quick calculation of a 95 percent confidence interval, $z_{0.025}$ is sometimes rounded from 1.96 to 2.

- 95 percent confidence intervals: Use $z_{0.025} = 1.96$
- 99 percent confidence intervals: Use $z_{0.005} = 2.58$

These reliability factors highlight an important fact about all confidence intervals. As we increase the degree of confidence, the confidence interval becomes wider and gives us less precise information about the quantity we want to estimate. “The surer we want to be, the less we have to be sure of.”¹⁴

In practice, the assumption that the sampling distribution of the sample mean is at least approximately normal is frequently reasonable, either because the underlying distribution is approximately normal or because we have a large sample and the central limit theorem applies. However, rarely do we know the population variance in practice. When the population variance is unknown but the sample mean is at least approximately normally distributed, we have two acceptable ways to calculate the confidence interval for the population mean. We will soon discuss the more conservative approach, which is based on Student’s t -distribution (the t -distribution, for short).¹⁵ In investment literature, it is the most frequently used approach in both estimation and hypothesis tests concerning the mean when the population variance is not known, whether sample size is small or large.

A second approach to confidence intervals for the population mean, based on the standard normal distribution, is the z -alternative. It can be used only when sample size is large. (In general, a sample size of 30 or larger may be considered large.) In contrast to the confidence interval given in Equation 4, this confidence interval uses the sample standard deviation, s , in computing the standard error of the sample mean (Equation 2).

- **Confidence Intervals for the Population Mean—The z -Alternative (Large Sample, Population Variance Unknown).** A $100(1 - \alpha)\%$ confidence interval for population mean μ when sampling from any distribution with unknown variance and when sample size is large is given by

$$\bar{X} \pm z_{\alpha/2} \frac{s}{\sqrt{n}} \quad (5)$$

Because this type of confidence interval appears quite often, we illustrate its calculation in Example 4.

EXAMPLE 4

Confidence Interval for the Population Mean of Sharpe Ratios— z -Statistic

Suppose an investment analyst takes a random sample of US equity mutual funds and calculates the average Sharpe ratio. The sample size is 100, and the average Sharpe ratio is 0.45. The sample has a standard deviation of 0.30. Calculate and interpret the 90 percent confidence interval for the population mean of all US equity mutual funds by using a reliability factor based on the standard normal distribution.

¹⁴ Freund and Williams (1977), p. 266.

¹⁵ The distribution of the statistic t is called Student’s t -distribution after the pen name “Student” used by W. S. Gosset, who published his work in 1908.

The reliability factor for a 90 percent confidence interval, as given earlier, is $z_{0.05} = 1.65$. The confidence interval will be

$$\bar{X} \pm z_{0.05} \frac{s}{\sqrt{n}} = 0.45 \pm 1.65 \frac{0.30}{\sqrt{100}} = 0.45 \pm 1.65(0.03) = 0.45 \pm 0.0495$$

The confidence interval spans 0.4005 to 0.4995, or 0.40 to 0.50, carrying two decimal places. The analyst can say with 90 percent confidence that the interval includes the population mean.

In this example, the analyst makes no specific assumption about the probability distribution describing the population. Rather, the analyst relies on the central limit theorem to produce an approximate normal distribution for the sample mean.

As Example 4 shows, even if we are unsure of the underlying population distribution, we can still construct confidence intervals for the population mean as long as the sample size is large because we can apply the central limit theorem.

We now turn to the conservative alternative, using the t -distribution, for constructing confidence intervals for the population mean when the population variance is not known. For confidence intervals based on samples from normally distributed populations with unknown variance, the theoretically correct reliability factor is based on the t -distribution. Using a reliability factor based on the t -distribution is essential for a small sample size. Using a t reliability factor is appropriate when the population variance is unknown, even when we have a large sample and could use the central limit theorem to justify using a z reliability factor. In this large sample case, the t -distribution provides more-conservative (wider) confidence intervals.

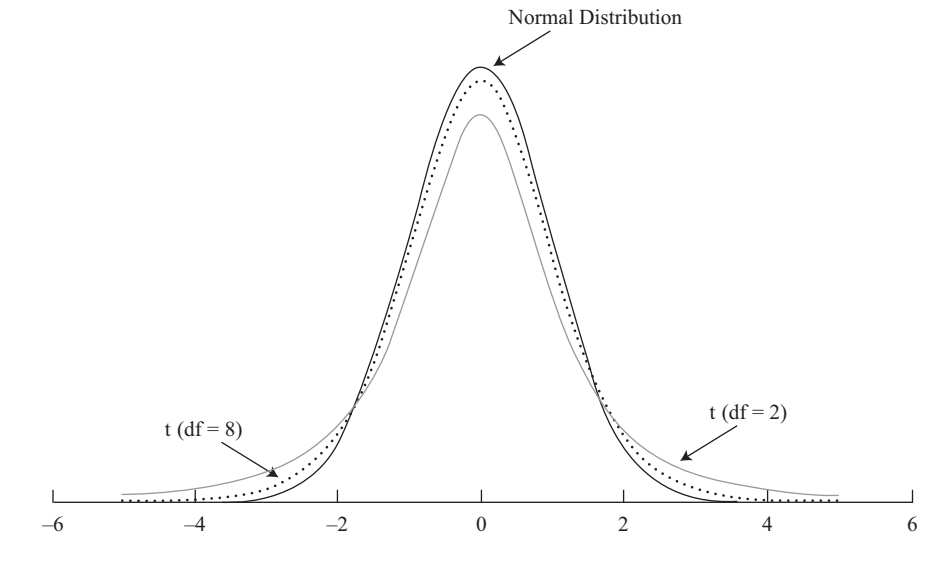
The t -distribution is a symmetrical probability distribution defined by a single parameter known as **degrees of freedom (df)**. Each value for the number of degrees of freedom defines one distribution in this family of distributions. We will shortly compare t -distributions with the standard normal distribution, but first we need to understand the concept of degrees of freedom. We can do so by examining the calculation of the sample variance.

Equation 3 gives the unbiased estimator of the sample variance that we use. The term in the denominator, $n - 1$, which is the sample size minus 1, is the number of degrees of freedom in estimating the population variance when using Equation 3. We also use $n - 1$ as the number of degrees of freedom for determining reliability factors based on the t -distribution. The term “degrees of freedom” is used because in a random sample, we assume that observations are selected independently of each other. The numerator of the sample variance, however, uses the sample mean. How does the use of the sample mean affect the number of observations collected independently for the sample variance formula? With a sample of size 10 and a mean of 10 percent, for example, we can freely select only 9 observations. Regardless of the 9 observations selected, we can always find the value for the 10th observation that gives a mean equal to 10 percent. From the standpoint of the sample variance formula, then, there are 9 degrees of freedom. Given that we must first compute the sample mean from the total of n independent observations, only $n - 1$ observations can be chosen independently for the calculation of the sample variance. The concept of degrees of freedom comes up frequently in statistics, and you will see it often in later readings.

Suppose we sample from a normal distribution. The ratio $z = (\bar{X} - \mu) / (\sigma / \sqrt{n})$ is distributed normally with a mean of 0 and standard deviation of 1; however, the ratio $t = (\bar{X} - \mu) / (s / \sqrt{n})$ follows the t -distribution with a mean of 0 and $n - 1$ degrees of freedom. The ratio represented by t is not normal because t is the ratio of two random variables, the sample mean and the sample standard deviation. The definition

of the standard normal random variable involves only one random variable, the sample mean. As degrees of freedom increase, however, the t -distribution approaches the standard normal distribution. Figure 1 shows the standard normal distribution and two t -distributions, one with $df = 2$ and one with $df = 8$.

Figure 1 Student's t -Distribution versus the Standard Normal Distribution



Of the three distributions shown in Figure 1, the standard normal distribution has tails that approach zero faster than the tails of the two t -distributions. The t -distribution is also symmetrically distributed around its mean value of zero, just like the normal distribution. As the degrees of freedom increase, the t -distribution approaches the standard normal. The t -distribution with $df = 8$ is closer to the standard normal than the t -distribution with $df = 2$.

Beyond plus and minus four standard deviations from the mean, the area under the standard normal distribution appears to approach 0; both t -distributions continue to show some area under each curve beyond four standard deviations, however. The t -distributions have fatter tails, but the tails of the t -distribution with $df = 8$ more closely resemble the normal distribution's tails. As the degrees of freedom increase, the tails of the t -distribution become less fat.

Frequently referred to values for the t -distribution are presented in tables at the end of the book. For each degree of freedom, five values are given: $t_{0.10}$, $t_{0.05}$, $t_{0.025}$, $t_{0.01}$, and $t_{0.005}$. The values for $t_{0.10}$, $t_{0.05}$, $t_{0.025}$, $t_{0.01}$, and $t_{0.005}$ are such that, respectively, 0.10, 0.05, 0.025, 0.01, and 0.005 of the probability remains in the right tail, for the specified number of degrees of freedom.¹⁶ For example, for $df = 30$, $t_{0.10} = 1.310$, $t_{0.05} = 1.697$, $t_{0.025} = 2.042$, $t_{0.01} = 2.457$, and $t_{0.005} = 2.750$.

We now give the form of confidence intervals for the population mean using the t -distribution.

- **Confidence Intervals for the Population Mean (Population Variance Unknown)— t -Distribution.** If we are sampling from a population with unknown variance and either of the conditions below holds:

¹⁶ The values $t_{0.10}$, $t_{0.05}$, $t_{0.025}$, $t_{0.01}$, and $t_{0.005}$ are also referred to as one-sided critical values of t at the 0.10, 0.05, 0.025, 0.01, and 0.005 significance levels, for the specified number of degrees of freedom.

- the sample is large, or
- the sample is small but the population is normally distributed, or approximately normally distributed,

then a $100(1 - \alpha)\%$ confidence interval for the population mean μ is given by

$$\bar{X} \pm t_{\alpha/2} \frac{s}{\sqrt{n}} \quad (6)$$

where the number of degrees of freedom for $t_{\alpha/2}$ is $n - 1$ and n is the sample size.

Example 5 reprises the data of Example 4 but uses the t -statistic rather than the z -statistic to calculate a confidence interval for the population mean of Sharpe ratios.

EXAMPLE 5

Confidence Interval for the Population Mean of Sharpe Ratios— t -Statistic

As in Example 4, an investment analyst seeks to calculate a 90 percent confidence interval for the population mean Sharpe ratio of US equity mutual funds based on a random sample of 100 US equity mutual funds. The sample mean Sharpe ratio is 0.45, and the sample standard deviation of the Sharpe ratios is 0.30. Now recognizing that the population variance of the distribution of Sharpe ratios is unknown, the analyst decides to calculate the confidence interval using the theoretically correct t -statistic.

Because the sample size is 100, $df = 99$. In the tables in the back of the book, the closest value is $df = 100$. Using $df = 100$ and reading down the 0.05 column, we find that $t_{0.05} = 1.66$. This reliability factor is slightly larger than the reliability factor $z_{0.05} = 1.65$ that was used in Example 4. The confidence interval will be

$$\bar{X} \pm t_{0.05} \frac{s}{\sqrt{n}} = 0.45 \pm 1.66 \frac{0.30}{\sqrt{100}} = 0.45 \pm 1.66(0.03) = 0.45 \pm 0.0498$$

The confidence interval spans 0.4002 to 0.4998, or 0.40 to 0.50, carrying two decimal places. To two decimal places, the confidence interval is unchanged from the one computed in Example 4.

Table 3 summarizes the various reliability factors that we have used.

Table 3 Basis of Computing Reliability Factors

Sampling from:	Statistic for Small Sample Size	Statistic for Large Sample Size
Normal distribution with known variance	z	z
Normal distribution with unknown variance	t	t^*

Table 3 (Continued)

Sampling from:	Statistic for Small Sample Size	Statistic for Large Sample Size
Nonnormal distribution with known variance	not available	z
Nonnormal distribution with unknown variance	not available	t^*

* Use of z also acceptable.

4.3 Selection of Sample Size

What choices affect the width of a confidence interval? To this point we have discussed two factors that affect width: the choice of statistic (t or z) and the choice of degree of confidence (affecting which specific value of t or z we use). These two choices determine the reliability factor. (Recall that a confidence interval has the structure Point estimate \pm Reliability factor \times Standard error.)

The choice of sample size also affects the width of a confidence interval. All else equal, a larger sample size decreases the width of a confidence interval. Recall the expression for the standard error of the sample mean:

$$\text{Standard error of the sample mean} = \frac{\text{Sample standard deviation}}{\sqrt{\text{Sample size}}}$$

We see that the standard error varies inversely with the square root of sample size. As we increase sample size, the standard error decreases and consequently the width of the confidence interval also decreases. The larger the sample size, the greater precision with which we can estimate the population parameter.¹⁷ All else equal, larger samples are good, in that sense. In practice, however, two considerations may operate against increasing sample size. First, as we saw in Example 2 concerning the Sharpe ratio, increasing the size of a sample may result in sampling from more than one population. Second, increasing sample size may involve additional expenses that outweigh the value of additional precision. Thus three issues that the analyst should weigh in selecting sample size are the need for precision, the risk of sampling from more than one population, and the expenses of different sample sizes.

EXAMPLE 6

A Money Manager Estimates Net Client Inflows

A money manager wants to obtain a 95 percent confidence interval for fund inflows and outflows over the next six months for his existing clients. He begins by calling a random sample of 10 clients and inquiring about their planned additions to and withdrawals from the fund. The manager then computes the change in cash flow for each client sampled as a percentage change in total funds placed with the manager. A positive percentage change indicates a net cash inflow to the

¹⁷ A formula exists for determining the sample size needed to obtain a desired width for a confidence interval. Define $E = \text{Reliability factor} \times \text{Standard error}$. The smaller E is, the smaller the width of the confidence interval, because $2E$ is the confidence interval's width. The sample size to obtain a desired value of E at a given degree of confidence $(1 - \alpha)$ is $n = [(t_{\alpha/2, s})/E]^2$.

client's account, and a negative percentage change indicates a net cash outflow from the client's account. The manager weights each response by the relative size of the account within the sample and then computes a weighted average.

As a result of this process, the money manager computes a weighted average of 5.5 percent. Thus, a point estimate is that the total amount of funds under management will increase by 5.5 percent in the next six months. The standard deviation of the observations in the sample is 10 percent. A histogram of past data looks fairly close to normal, so the manager assumes the population is normal.

- 1 Calculate a 95 percent confidence interval for the population mean and interpret your findings.

The manager decides to see what the confidence interval would look like if he had used a sample size of 20 or 30 and found the same mean (5.5 percent) and standard deviation (10 percent).

- 2 Using the sample mean of 5.5 percent and standard deviation of 10 percent, compute the confidence interval for sample sizes of 20 and 30. For the sample size of 30, use Equation 6.
- 3 Interpret your results from Parts 1 and 2.

Solution to 1:

Because the population variance is unknown and the sample size is small, the manager must use the t -statistic in Equation 6 to calculate the confidence interval. Based on the sample size of 10, $df = n - 1 = 10 - 1 = 9$. For a 95 percent confidence interval, he needs to use the value of $t_{0.025}$ for $df = 9$. According to the tables in Appendix B at the end of this volume, this value is 2.262. Therefore, a 95 percent confidence interval for the population mean is

$$\begin{aligned}\bar{X} \pm t_{0.025} \frac{s}{\sqrt{n}} &= 5.5\% \pm 2.262 \frac{10\%}{\sqrt{10}} \\ &= 5.5\% \pm 2.262(3.162) \\ &= 5.5\% \pm 7.15\%\end{aligned}$$

The confidence interval for the population mean spans -1.65 percent to $+12.65$ percent.¹⁸ The manager can be confident at the 95 percent level that this range includes the population mean.

Solution to 2:

Table 4 gives the calculations for the three sample sizes.

Table 4 The 95 Percent Confidence Interval for Three Sample Sizes

Distribution	95% Confidence Interval	Lower Bound	Upper Bound	Relative Size
$t(n = 10)$	$5.5\% \pm 2.262(3.162)$	-1.65%	12.65%	100.0%
$t(n = 20)$	$5.5\% \pm 2.093(2.236)$	0.82	10.18	65.5
$t(n = 30)$	$5.5\% \pm 2.045(1.826)$	1.77	9.23	52.2

¹⁸ We assumed in this example that sample size is sufficiently small compared with the size of the client base that we can disregard the finite population correction factor (mentioned in Footnote 6).

Solution to 3:

The width of the confidence interval decreases as we increase the sample size. This decrease is a function of the standard error becoming smaller as n increases. The reliability factor also becomes smaller as the number of degrees of freedom increases. The last column of Table 4 shows the relative size of the width of confidence intervals based on $n = 10$ to be 100 percent. Using a sample size of 20 reduces the confidence interval's width to 65.5 percent of the interval width for a sample size of 10. Using a sample size of 30 cuts the width of the interval almost in half. Comparing these choices, the money manager would obtain the most precise results using a sample of 30.

Having covered many of the fundamental concepts of sampling and estimation, we are in a good position to focus on sampling issues of special concern to analysts. The quality of inferences depends on the quality of the data as well as on the quality of the sampling plan used. Financial data pose special problems, and sampling plans frequently reflect one or more biases. The next section of this reading discusses these issues.

MORE ON SAMPLING**5**

We have already seen that the selection of sample period length may raise the issue of sampling from more than one population. There are, in fact, a range of challenges to valid sampling that arise in working with financial data. In this section we discuss four such sampling-related issues: data-mining bias, sample selection bias, look-ahead bias, and time-period bias. All of these issues are important for point and interval estimation and hypothesis testing. As we will see, if the sample is biased in any way, then point and interval estimates and any other conclusions that we draw from the sample will be in error.

5.1 Data-Mining Bias

Data mining relates to overuse of the same or related data in ways that we shall describe shortly. Data-mining bias refers to the errors that arise from such misuse of data. Investment strategies that reflect data-mining biases are often not successful in the future. Nevertheless, both investment practitioners and researchers have frequently engaged in data mining. Analysts thus need to understand and guard against this problem.

Data-mining is the practice of determining a model by extensive searching through a dataset for statistically significant patterns (that is, repeatedly “drilling” in the same data until finding something that appears to work).¹⁹ In exercises involving statistical significance we set a significance level, which is the probability of rejecting the hypothesis we are testing when the hypothesis is in fact correct.²⁰ Because rejecting a true hypothesis is undesirable, the investigator often sets the significance level at

¹⁹ Some researchers use the term “data snooping” instead of data mining.

²⁰ To convey an understanding of data mining, it is very helpful to introduce some basic concepts related to hypothesis testing. The reading on hypothesis testing contains further discussion of significance levels and tests of significance.

a relatively small number such as 0.05 or 5 percent.²¹ Suppose we test the hypothesis that a variable does not predict stock returns, and we test in turn 100 different variables. Let us also suppose that in truth none of the 100 variables has the ability to predict stock returns. Using a 5 percent significance level in our tests, we would still expect that 5 out of 100 variables would appear to be significant predictors of stock returns because of random chance alone. We have mined the data to find some apparently significant variables. In essence, we have explored the same data again and again until we found some after-the-fact pattern or patterns in the dataset. This is the sense in which data mining involves overuse of data. If we were to just report the significant variables, without also reporting the total number of variables that we tested that were unsuccessful as predictors, we would be presenting a very misleading picture of our findings. Our results would appear to be far more significant than they actually were, because a series of tests such as the one just described invalidates the conventional interpretation of a given significance level (such as 5 percent), according to the theory of inference.

How can we investigate the presence of data-mining bias? With most financial data, the most ready means is to conduct out-of-sample tests of the proposed variable or strategy. An **out-of-sample test** uses a sample that does not overlap the time period(s) of the sample(s) on which a variable, strategy, or model, was developed. If a variable or investment strategy is the result of data mining, it should generally not be significant in out-of-sample tests. A variable or investment strategy that is statistically and economically significant in out-of-sample tests, and that has a plausible economic basis, may be the basis for a valid investment strategy. Caution is still warranted, however. The most crucial out-of-sample test is future investment success. If the strategy becomes known to other investors, prices may adjust so that the strategy, however well tested, does not work in the future. To summarize, the analyst should be aware that many apparently profitable investment strategies may reflect data-mining bias and thus be cautious about the future applicability of published investment research results.

Untangling the extent of data mining can be complex. To assess the significance of an investment strategy, we need to know how many unsuccessful strategies were tried not only by the current investigator but also by *previous* investigators using the same or related datasets. Much research, in practice, closely builds on what other investigators have done, and so reflects intergenerational data mining, to use the terminology of McQueen and Thorley (1999). **Intergenerational data mining** involves using information developed by previous researchers using a dataset to guide current research using the same or a related dataset.²² Analysts have accumulated many observations about the peculiarities of many financial datasets, and other analysts may develop models or investment strategies that will tend to be supported within a dataset based on their familiarity with the prior experience of other analysts. As a consequence, the importance of those new results may be overstated. Research has suggested that the magnitude of this type of data-mining bias may be considerable.²³

With the background of the above definitions and explanations, we can understand McQueen and Thorley's (1999) cogent exploration of data mining in the context of the popular Motley Fool "Foolish Four" investment strategy. The Foolish Four strategy, first

²¹ In terms of our previous discussion of confidence intervals, significance at the 5 percent level corresponds to a hypothesized value for a population statistic falling outside a 95 percent confidence interval based on an appropriate sample statistic (e.g., the sample mean, when the hypothesis concerns the population mean).

²² The term "intergenerational" comes from viewing each round of researchers as a generation. Campbell, Lo, and MacKinlay (1997) have called intergenerational data mining "data snooping." The latter phrase, however, is commonly used as a synonym of data mining; thus McQueen and Thorley's terminology is less ambiguous. The term "intragenerational data mining" is available when we want to highlight that the reference is to an investigator's new or independent data mining.

²³ For example, Lo and MacKinlay (1990) concluded that the magnitude of this type of bias on tests of the capital asset pricing model was considerable.

presented in 1996, was a version of the Dow Dividend Strategy that was tuned by its developers to exhibit an even higher arithmetic mean return than the Dow Dividend Strategy over 1973 to 1993.²⁴ From 1973 to 1993, the Foolish Four portfolio had an average annual return of 25 percent, and the claim was made in print that the strategy should have similar returns in the future. As McQueen and Thorley discussed, however, the Foolish Four strategy was very much subject to data-mining bias, including bias from intergenerational data mining, as the strategy's developers exploited observations about the dataset made by earlier workers. McQueen and Thorley highlighted the data-mining issues by taking the Foolish Four portfolio one step further. They mined the data to create a "Fractured Four" portfolio that earned nearly 35 percent over 1973 to 1996, beating the Foolish Four strategy by almost 8 percentage points. Observing that all of the Foolish Four stocks did well in even years but not odd years and that the second-to-lowest-priced high-yielding stock was relatively the best-performing stock in odd years, the strategy of the Fractured Four portfolio was to hold the Foolish Four stocks with equal weights in even years and hold only the second-to-lowest-priced stock in odd years. How likely is it that a performance difference between even and odd years reflected underlying economic forces, rather than a chance pattern of the data over the particular time period? Probably, very unlikely. Unless an investment strategy reflected underlying economic forces, we would not expect it to have any value in a forward-looking sense. Because the Foolish Four strategy also partook of data mining, the same issues applied to it. McQueen and Thorley found that in an out-of-sample test over the 1949–72 period, the Foolish Four strategy had about the same mean return as buying and holding the DJIA, but with higher risk. If the higher taxes and transaction costs of the Foolish Four strategy were accounted for, the comparison would have been even more unfavorable.

McQueen and Thorley presented two signs that can warn analysts about the potential existence of data mining:

- *Too much digging/too little confidence.* The testing of many variables by the researcher is the "too much digging" warning sign of a data-mining problem. Unfortunately, many researchers do not disclose the number of variables examined in developing a model. Although the number of variables examined may not be reported, we should look closely for verbal hints that the researcher searched over many variables. The use of terms such as "we noticed (or noted) that" or "someone noticed (or noted) that," with respect to a pattern in a dataset, should raise suspicions that the researchers were trying out variables based on their own or others' observations of the data.
- *No story/no future.* The absence of an explicit economic rationale for a variable or trading strategy is the "no story" warning sign of a data-mining problem. Without a plausible economic rationale or story for why a variable should work, the variable is unlikely to have predictive power. In a demonstration exercise using an extensive search of variables in an international financial database, Leinweber (1997) found that butter production in a particular country remote from the United States explained 75 percent of the variation in US stock returns as represented by the S&P 500. Such a pattern, with no plausible economic rationale, is highly likely to be a random pattern particular to a specific time

²⁴ The Dow Dividend Strategy, also known as Dogs of the Dow Strategy, consists of holding an equally weighted portfolio of the 10 highest-yielding DJIA stocks as of the beginning of a year. At the time of McQueen and Thorley's research, the Foolish Four strategy was as follows: At the beginning of each year, the Foolish Four portfolio purchases a 4-stock portfolio from the 5 lowest-priced stocks of the 10 highest-yielding DJIA stocks. The lowest-priced stock of the five is excluded, and 40 percent is invested in the second-to-lowest-priced stock, with 20 percent weights in the remaining three.

period.²⁵ What if we do have a plausible economic explanation for a significant variable? McQueen and Thorley caution that a plausible economic rationale is a necessary but not a sufficient condition for a trading strategy to have value. As we mentioned earlier, if the strategy is publicized, market prices may adjust to reflect the new information as traders seek to exploit it; as a result, the strategy may no longer work.

5.2 Sample Selection Bias

When researchers look into questions of interest to analysts or portfolio managers, they may exclude certain stocks, bonds, portfolios, or time periods from the analysis for various reasons—perhaps because of data availability. When data availability leads to certain assets being excluded from the analysis, we call the resulting problem **sample selection bias**. For example, you might sample from a database that tracks only companies currently in existence. Many mutual fund databases, for instance, provide historical information about only those funds that currently exist. Databases that report historical balance sheet and income statement information suffer from the same sort of bias as the mutual fund databases: Funds or companies that are no longer in business do not appear there. So, a study that uses these types of databases suffers from a type of sample selection bias known as **survivorship bias**.

Dimson, Marsh, and Staunton (2002) raised the issue of survivorship bias in international indexes:

An issue that has achieved prominence is the impact of market survival on estimated long-run returns. Markets can experience not only disappointing performance but also total loss of value through confiscation, hyperinflation, nationalization, and market failure. By measuring the performance of markets that survive over long intervals, we draw inferences that are conditioned on survival. Yet, as pointed out by Brown, Goetzmann, and Ross (1995) and Goetzmann and Jorion (1999), one cannot determine in advance which markets will survive and which will perish. (p. 41)

Survivorship bias sometimes appears when we use both stock price and accounting data. For example, many studies in finance have used the ratio of a company's market price to book equity per share (i.e., the price-to-book ratio, P/B) and found that P/B is inversely related to a company's returns (see Fama and French 1992, 1993). P/B is also used to create many popular value and growth indexes. If the database that we use to collect accounting data excludes failing companies, however, a survivorship bias might result. Kothari, Shanken, and Sloan (1995) investigated just this question and argued that failing stocks would be expected to have low returns and low P/Bs. If we exclude failing stocks, then those stocks with low P/Bs that are included will have returns that are higher on average than if all stocks with low P/Bs were included. Kothari, Shanken, and Sloan suggested that this bias is responsible for the previous findings of an inverse relationship between average return and P/B.²⁶ The only advice we can offer at this point is to be aware of any biases potentially inherent in a sample. Clearly, sample selection biases can cloud the results of any study.

²⁵ In the finance literature, such a random but irrelevant-to-the-future pattern is sometimes called an artifact of the dataset.

²⁶ See Fama and French (1996, p. 80) for discussion of data snooping and survivorship bias in their tests.

A sample can also be biased because of the removal (or delisting) of a company's stock from an exchange.²⁷ For example, the Center for Research in Security Prices at the University of Chicago is a major provider of return data used in academic research. When a delisting occurs, CRSP attempts to collect returns for the delisted company, but many times, it cannot do so because of the difficulty involved; CRSP must simply list delisted company returns as missing. A study in the *Journal of Finance* by Shumway and Warther (1999) documented the bias caused by delisting for CRSP NASDAQ return data. The authors showed that delistings associated with poor company performance (e.g., bankruptcy) are missed more often than delistings associated with good or neutral company performance (e.g., merger or moving to another exchange). In addition, delistings occur more frequently for small companies.

Sample selection bias occurs even in markets where the quality and consistency of the data are quite high. Newer asset classes such as hedge funds may present even greater problems of sample selection bias. Hedge funds are a heterogeneous group of investment vehicles typically organized so as to be free from regulatory oversight. In general, hedge funds are not required to publicly disclose performance (in contrast to, say, mutual funds). Hedge funds themselves decide whether they want to be included in one of the various databases of hedge fund performance. Hedge funds with poor track records clearly may not wish to make their records public, creating a problem of self-selection bias in hedge fund databases. Further, as pointed out by Fung and Hsieh (2002), because only hedge funds with good records will volunteer to enter a database, in general, overall past hedge fund industry performance will tend to appear better than it really is. Furthermore, many hedge fund databases drop funds that go out of business, creating survivorship bias in the database. Even if the database does not drop defunct hedge funds, in the attempt to eliminate survivorship bias, the problem remains of hedge funds that stop reporting performance because of poor results.²⁸

5.3 Look-Ahead Bias

A test design is subject to **look-ahead bias** if it uses information that was not available on the test date. For example, tests of trading rules that use stock market returns and accounting balance sheet data must account for look-ahead bias. In such tests, a company's book value per share is commonly used to construct the P/B variable. Although the market price of a stock is available for all market participants at the same point in time, fiscal year-end book equity per share might not become publicly available until sometime in the following quarter.

5.4 Time-Period Bias

A test design is subject to **time-period bias** if it is based on a time period that may make the results time-period specific. A short time series is likely to give period specific results that may not reflect a longer period. A long time series may give a more accurate picture of true investment performance; its disadvantage lies in the potential for a structural change occurring during the time frame that would result in two different return distributions. In this situation, the distribution that would reflect conditions before the change differs from the distribution that would describe conditions after the change.

²⁷ Delistings occur for a variety of reasons: merger, bankruptcy, liquidation, or migration to another exchange.

²⁸ See Fung and Hsieh (2002) and ter Horst and Verbeek (2007) for more details on the problems of interpreting hedge fund performance. Note that an offsetting type of bias may occur if successful funds stop reporting performance because they no longer want new cash inflows.

EXAMPLE 7**Biases in Investment Research**

An analyst is reviewing the empirical evidence on historical US equity returns. She finds that value stocks (i.e., those with low P/Bs) outperformed growth stocks (i.e., those with high P/Bs) in some recent time periods. After reviewing the US market, the analyst wonders whether value stocks might be attractive in the United Kingdom. She investigates the performance of value and growth stocks in the UK market for the 14-year period extending from January 2000 to December 2013. To conduct this research, the analyst does the following:

- obtains the current composition of the Financial Times Stock Exchange (FTSE) All Share Index, which is a market-capitalization-weighted index;
- eliminates the few companies that do not have December fiscal year-ends;
- uses year-end book values and market prices to rank the remaining universe of companies by P/Bs at the end of the year;
- based on these rankings, divides the universe into 10 portfolios, each of which contains an equal number of stocks;
- calculates the equal-weighted return of each portfolio and the return for the FTSE All Share Index for the 12 months following the date each ranking was made; and
- subtracts the FTSE returns from each portfolio's returns to derive excess returns for each portfolio.

Describe and discuss each of the following biases introduced by the analyst's research design:

- survivorship bias;
- look-ahead bias; and
- time-period bias.

Survivorship Bias.

A test design is subject to survivorship bias if it fails to account for companies that have gone bankrupt, merged, or otherwise departed the database. In this example, the analyst used the current list of FTSE stocks rather than the actual list of stocks that existed at the start of each year. To the extent that the computation of returns excluded companies removed from the index, the performance of the portfolios with the lowest P/B is subject to survivorship bias and may be overstated. At some time during the testing period, those companies not currently in existence were eliminated from testing. They would probably have had low prices (and low P/Bs) and poor returns.

Look-Ahead Bias.

A test design is subject to look-ahead bias if it uses information unavailable on the test date. In this example, the analyst conducted the test under the assumption that the necessary accounting information was available at the end of the fiscal year. For example, the analyst assumed that book value per share for fiscal 2000 was available on 31 December 2000. Because this information is not released until several months after the close of a fiscal year, the test may have contained look-ahead bias. This bias would make a strategy based on the information appear successful, but it assumes perfect forecasting ability.

Time-Period Bias.

A test design is subject to time-period bias if it is based on a time period that may make the results time-period specific. Although the test covered a period extending more than 10 years, that period may be too short for testing an anomaly. Ideally, an analyst should test market anomalies over several business cycles to ensure that results are not period specific. This bias can favor a proposed strategy if the time period chosen was favorable to the strategy.

SUMMARY

In this reading, we have presented basic concepts and results in sampling and estimation. We have also emphasized the challenges faced by analysts in appropriately using and interpreting financial data. As analysts, we should always use a critical eye when evaluating the results from any study. The quality of the sample is of the utmost importance: If the sample is biased, the conclusions drawn from the sample will be in error.

- To draw valid inferences from a sample, the sample should be random.
- In simple random sampling, each observation has an equal chance of being selected. In stratified random sampling, the population is divided into subpopulations, called strata or cells, based on one or more classification criteria; simple random samples are then drawn from each stratum.
- Stratified random sampling ensures that population subdivisions of interest are represented in the sample. Stratified random sampling also produces more-precise parameter estimates than simple random sampling.
- Time-series data are a collection of observations at equally spaced intervals of time. Cross-sectional data are observations that represent individuals, groups, geographical regions, or companies at a single point in time.
- The central limit theorem states that for large sample sizes, for any underlying distribution for a random variable, the sampling distribution of the sample mean for that variable will be approximately normal, with mean equal to the population mean for that random variable and variance equal to the population variance of the variable divided by sample size.
- Based on the central limit theorem, when the sample size is large, we can compute confidence intervals for the population mean based on the normal distribution regardless of the distribution of the underlying population. In general, a sample size of 30 or larger can be considered large.
- An estimator is a formula for estimating a parameter. An estimate is a particular value that we calculate from a sample by using an estimator.
- Because an estimator or statistic is a random variable, it is described by some probability distribution. We refer to the distribution of an estimator as its sampling distribution. The standard deviation of the sampling distribution of the sample mean is called the standard error of the sample mean.
- The desirable properties of an estimator are unbiasedness (the expected value of the estimator equals the population parameter), efficiency (the estimator has the smallest variance), and consistency (the probability of accurate estimates increases as sample size increases).

- The two types of estimates of a parameter are point estimates and interval estimates. A point estimate is a single number that we use to estimate a parameter. An interval estimate is a range of values that brackets the population parameter with some probability.
- A confidence interval is an interval for which we can assert with a given probability $1 - \alpha$, called the degree of confidence, that it will contain the parameter it is intended to estimate. This measure is often referred to as the $100(1 - \alpha)\%$ confidence interval for the parameter.
- A $100(1 - \alpha)\%$ confidence interval for a parameter has the following structure: Point estimate \pm Reliability factor \times Standard error, where the reliability factor is a number based on the assumed distribution of the point estimate and the degree of confidence $(1 - \alpha)$ for the confidence interval and where standard error is the standard error of the sample statistic providing the point estimate.
- A $100(1 - \alpha)\%$ confidence interval for population mean μ when sampling from a normal distribution with known variance σ^2 is given by $\bar{X} \pm z_{\alpha/2} \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{n}}$, where $z_{\alpha/2}$ is the point of the standard normal distribution such that $\alpha/2$ remains in the right tail.
- Student's t -distribution is a family of symmetrical distributions defined by a single parameter, degrees of freedom.
- A random sample of size n is said to have $n - 1$ degrees of freedom for estimating the population variance, in the sense that there are only $n - 1$ independent deviations from the mean on which to base the estimate.
- The degrees of freedom number for use with the t -distribution is also $n - 1$.
- The t -distribution has fatter tails than the standard normal distribution but converges to the standard normal distribution as degrees of freedom go to infinity.
- A $100(1 - \alpha)\%$ confidence interval for the population mean μ when sampling from a normal distribution with unknown variance (a t -distribution confidence interval) is given by $\bar{X} \pm t_{\alpha/2} \left(\frac{s}{\sqrt{n}} \right)$, where $t_{\alpha/2}$ is the point of the t -distribution such that $\alpha/2$ remains in the right tail and s is the sample standard deviation. This confidence interval can also be used, because of the central limit theorem, when dealing with a large sample from a population with unknown variance that may not be normal.
- We may use the confidence interval $\bar{X} \pm z_{\alpha/2} \left(\frac{s}{\sqrt{n}} \right)$ as an alternative to the t -distribution confidence interval for the population mean when using a large sample from a population with unknown variance. The confidence interval based on the z -statistic is less conservative (narrower) than the corresponding confidence interval based on a t -distribution.
- Three issues in the selection of sample size are the need for precision, the risk of sampling from more than one population, and the expenses of different sample sizes.
- Sample data in investments can have a variety of problems. Survivorship bias occurs if companies are excluded from the analysis because they have gone out of business or because of reasons related to poor performance. Data-mining bias comes from finding models by repeatedly searching through databases for patterns. Look-ahead bias exists if the model uses data not available to market participants at the time the market participants act in the model. Finally, time-period bias is present if the time period used makes the results time-period specific or if the time period used includes a point of structural change.

REFERENCES

- Brown, Stephen, William Goetzmann, and Stephen Ross. 1995. "Survival." *Journal of Finance*, vol. 50:853–873.
- Campbell, John, Andrew Lo, and A. Craig MacKinlay. 1997. *The Econometrics of Financial Markets*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press.
- Daniel, Wayne W., and James C. Terrell. 1995. *Business Statistics for Management & Economics*, 7th edition. Boston: Houghton-Mifflin.
- Dimson, Elroy, Paul Marsh, and Mike Staunton. 2002. *Triumphs of the Optimists: 101 Years of Global Investment Returns*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press.
- Fama, Eugene F., and Kenneth R. French. 1996. "Multifactor Explanations of Asset Pricing Anomalies." *Journal of Finance*, vol. 51, no. 1:55–84.
- Freund, John E, and Frank J. Williams. 1977. *Elementary Business Statistics*, 3rd edition. Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice-Hall.
- Fung, William, and David Hsieh. 2002. "Hedge-Fund Benchmarks: Information Content and Biases." *Financial Analysts Journal*, vol. 58, no. 1:22–34.
- Goetzmann, William, and Philippe Jorion. 1999. "Re-Emerging Markets." *Journal of Financial and Quantitative Analysis*, vol. 34, no. 1:1–32.
- Greene, William H. 2018. *Econometric Analysis*, 8th edition. Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice-Hall.
- Kothari, S.P., Jay Shanken, and Richard G. Sloan. 1995. "Another Look at the Cross-Section of Expected Stock Returns." *Journal of Finance*, vol. 50, no. 1:185–224.
- Leinweber, David. 1997. *Stupid Data Mining Tricks: Over-Fitting the S&P 500*. Monograph. Pasadena, CA: First Quadrant.
- Lo, Andrew W., and A. Craig MacKinlay. 1990. "Data Snooping Biases in Tests of Financial Asset Pricing Models." *Review of Financial Studies*, vol. 3:175–208.
- McQueen, Grant, and Steven Thorley. 1999. "Mining Fools Gold." *Financial Analysts Journal*, vol. 55, no. 2:61–72.
- Shumway, Tyler, and Vincent A. Warther. 1999. "The Delisting Bias in CRSP's Nasdaq Data and Its Implications for the Size Effect." *Journal of Finance*, vol. 54, no. 6:2361–2379.
- ter Horst, Jenke, and Marno Verbeek. 2007. "Fund Liquidation, Self-selection, and Look-ahead Bias in the Hedge Fund Industry." *Review of Finance*, vol. 11:605–632.

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

- 1 Peter Biggs wants to know how growth managers performed last year. Biggs assumes that the population cross-sectional standard deviation of growth manager returns is 6 percent and that the returns are independent across managers.
 - A How large a random sample does Biggs need if he wants the standard deviation of the sample means to be 1 percent?
 - B How large a random sample does Biggs need if he wants the standard deviation of the sample means to be 0.25 percent?
- 2 Petra Munzi wants to know how value managers performed last year. Munzi estimates that the population cross-sectional standard deviation of value manager returns is 4 percent and assumes that the returns are independent across managers.
 - A Munzi wants to build a 95 percent confidence interval for the mean return. How large a random sample does Munzi need if she wants the 95 percent confidence interval to have a total width of 1 percent?
 - B Munzi expects a cost of about \$10 to collect each observation. If she has a \$1,000 budget, will she be able to construct the confidence interval she wants?
- 3 Assume that the equity risk premium is normally distributed with a population mean of 6 percent and a population standard deviation of 18 percent. Over the last four years, equity returns (relative to the risk-free rate) have averaged -2.0 percent. You have a large client who is very upset and claims that results this poor should *never* occur. Evaluate your client's concerns.
 - A Construct a 95 percent confidence interval around the population mean for a sample of four-year returns.
 - B What is the probability of a -2.0 percent or lower average return over a four-year period?
- 4 Compare the standard normal distribution and Student's t -distribution.
- 5 Find the reliability factors based on the t -distribution for the following confidence intervals for the population mean ($df =$ degrees of freedom, $n =$ sample size):
 - A A 99 percent confidence interval, $df = 20$.
 - B A 90 percent confidence interval, $df = 20$.
 - C A 95 percent confidence interval, $n = 25$.
 - D A 95 percent confidence interval, $n = 16$.
- 6 Assume that monthly returns are normally distributed with a mean of 1 percent and a sample standard deviation of 4 percent. The population standard deviation is unknown. Construct a 95 percent confidence interval for the sample mean of monthly returns if the sample size is 24.
- 7 Ten analysts have given the following fiscal year earnings forecasts for a stock:

Forecast (X_i)	Number of Analysts (n_i)
1.40	1
1.43	1
1.44	3

Forecast (X_i)	Number of Analysts (n_i)
1.45	2
1.47	1
1.48	1
1.50	1


Because the sample is a small fraction of the number of analysts who follow this stock, assume that we can ignore the finite population correction factor. Assume that the analyst forecasts are normally distributed.

- A** What are the mean forecast and standard deviation of forecasts?
- B** Provide a 95 percent confidence interval for the population mean of the forecasts.
- 8** Thirteen analysts have given the following fiscal-year earnings forecasts for a stock:

Forecast (X_i)	Number of Analysts (n_i)
0.70	2
0.72	4
0.74	1
0.75	3
0.76	1
0.77	1
0.82	1

Because the sample is a small fraction of the number of analysts who follow this stock, assume that we can ignore the finite population correction factor.

- A** What are the mean forecast and standard deviation of forecasts?
- B** What aspect of the data makes us uncomfortable about using t -tables to construct confidence intervals for the population mean forecast?
- 9** Explain the differences between constructing a confidence interval when sampling from a normal population with a known population variance and sampling from a normal population with an unknown variance.
- 10** An exchange rate has a given expected future value and standard deviation.
- A** Assuming that the exchange rate is normally distributed, what are the probabilities that the exchange rate will be at least 2 or 3 standard deviations away from its mean?
- B** Assume that you do not know the distribution of exchange rates. Use Chebyshev's inequality (that at least $1 - 1/k^2$ proportion of the observations will be within k standard deviations of the mean for any positive integer k greater than 1) to calculate the maximum probabilities that the exchange rate will be at least 2 or 3 standard deviations away from its mean.
- 11** Although he knows security returns are not independent, a colleague makes the claim that because of the central limit theorem, if we diversify across a large number of investments, the portfolio standard deviation will eventually approach zero as n becomes large. Is he correct?
- 12** Why is the central limit theorem important?
- 13** What is wrong with the following statement of the central limit theorem?



Central Limit Theorem. “If the random variables $X_1, X_2, X_3, \dots, X_n$ are a random sample of size n from any distribution with finite mean μ and variance σ^2 , then the distribution of \bar{X} will be approximately normal, with a standard deviation of σ/\sqrt{n} .”

- 14 Suppose we take a random sample of 30 companies in an industry with 200 companies. We calculate the sample mean of the ratio of cash flow to total debt for the prior year. We find that this ratio is 23 percent. Subsequently, we learn that the population cash flow to total debt ratio (taking account of all 200 companies) is 26 percent. What is the explanation for the discrepancy between the sample mean of 23 percent and the population mean of 26 percent?
- A Sampling error.
 - B Bias.
 - C A lack of consistency.
- 15 Alcorn Mutual Funds is placing large advertisements in several financial publications. The advertisements prominently display the returns of 5 of Alcorn’s 30 funds for the past 1-, 3-, 5-, and 10-year periods. The results are indeed impressive, with all of the funds beating the major market indexes and a few beating them by a large margin. Is the Alcorn family of funds superior to its competitors?
- 16 Julius Spence has tested several predictive models in order to identify undervalued stocks. Spence used about 30 company-specific variables and 10 market-related variables to predict returns for about 5,000 North American and European stocks. He found that a final model using eight variables applied to telecommunications and computer stocks yields spectacular results. Spence wants you to use the model to select investments. Should you? What steps would you take to evaluate the model?
- 17 The *best* approach for creating a stratified random sample of a population involves:
- A drawing an equal number of simple random samples from each subpopulation.
 - B selecting every k th member of the population until the desired sample size is reached.
 - C drawing simple random samples from each subpopulation in sizes proportional to the relative size of each subpopulation.
- 18 A population has a non-normal distribution with mean μ and variance σ^2 . The sampling distribution of the sample mean computed from samples of large size from that population will have:
- A the same distribution as the population distribution.
 - B its mean approximately equal to the population mean.
 - C its variance approximately equal to the population variance.
- 19 A sample mean is computed from a population with a variance of 2.45. The sample size is 40. The standard error of the sample mean is *closest* to:
- A 0.039.
 - B 0.247.
 - C 0.387.
- 20 An estimator with an expected value equal to the parameter that it is intended to estimate is described as:

- A efficient.
 - B unbiased.
 - C consistent.
- 21 If an estimator is consistent, an increase in sample size will increase the:
- A accuracy of estimates.
 - B efficiency of the estimator.
 - C unbiasedness of the estimator.
- 22 For a two-sided confidence interval, an increase in the degree of confidence will result in:
- A a wider confidence interval.
 - B a narrower confidence interval.
 - C no change in the width of the confidence interval.
- 23 As the t -distribution's degrees of freedom decrease, the t -distribution *most likely*:
- A exhibits tails that become fatter.
 - B approaches a standard normal distribution.
 - C becomes asymmetrically distributed around its mean value.
- 24 For a sample size of 17, with a mean of 116.23 and a variance of 245.55, the width of a 90% confidence interval using the appropriate t -distribution is *closest to*:
- A 13.23.
 - B 13.27.
 - C 13.68.
- 25 For a sample size of 65 with a mean of 31 taken from a normally distributed population with a variance of 529, a 99% confidence interval for the population mean will have a lower limit *closest to*:
- A 23.64.
 - B 25.41.
 - C 30.09.
- 26 An increase in sample size is *most likely* to result in a:
- A wider confidence interval.
 - B decrease in the standard error of the sample mean.
 - C lower likelihood of sampling from more than one population.
- 27 A report on long-term stock returns focused exclusively on all currently publicly traded firms in an industry is *most likely* susceptible to:
- A look-ahead bias.
 - B survivorship bias.
 - C intergenerational data mining.
- 28 Which sampling bias is *most likely* investigated with an out-of-sample test?
- A Look-ahead bias
 - B Data-mining bias
 - C Sample selection bias
- 29 Which of the following characteristics of an investment study *most likely* indicates time-period bias?
- A The study is based on a short time-series.

- B** Information not available on the test date is used.
- C** A structural change occurred prior to the start of the study's time series.

SOLUTIONS

- 1 A** The standard deviation or standard error of the sample mean is $\sigma_{\bar{X}} = \sigma/\sqrt{n}$. Substituting in the values for $\sigma_{\bar{X}}$ and σ , we have $1\% = 6\%/\sqrt{n}$, or $\sqrt{n} = 6$. Squaring this value, we get a random sample of $n = 36$.
- B** As in Part A, the standard deviation of sample mean is $\sigma_{\bar{X}} = \sigma/\sqrt{n}$. Substituting in the values for $\sigma_{\bar{X}}$ and σ , we have $0.25\% = 6\%/\sqrt{n}$, or $\sqrt{n} = 24$. Squaring this value, we get a random sample of $n = 576$, which is substantially larger than for Part A of this question.
- 2 A** Assume the sample size will be large and thus the 95 percent confidence interval for the mean of a sample of manager returns is $\bar{X} \pm 1.96s_{\bar{X}}$, where $s_{\bar{X}} = s/\sqrt{n}$. Munzi wants the distance between the upper limit and lower limit in the confidence interval to be 1 percent, which is

$$(\bar{X} + 1.96s_{\bar{X}}) - (\bar{X} - 1.96s_{\bar{X}}) = 1\%$$

Simplifying this equation, we get $2(1.96s_{\bar{X}}) = 1\%$. Finally, we have $3.92s_{\bar{X}} = 1\%$, which gives us the standard deviation of the sample mean, $s_{\bar{X}} = 0.255\%$. The distribution of sample means is $s_{\bar{X}} = s/\sqrt{n}$. Substituting in the values for $s_{\bar{X}}$ and s , we have $0.255\% = 4\%/\sqrt{n}$, or $\sqrt{n} = 15.69$. Squaring this value, we get a random sample of $n = 246$.

- B** With her budget, Munzi can pay for a sample of up to 100 observations, which is far short of the 246 observations needed. Munzi can either proceed with her current budget and settle for a wider confidence interval or she can raise her budget (to around \$2,460) to get the sample size for a 1 percent width in her confidence interval.
- 3 A** This is a small-sample problem in which the sample comes from a normal population with a known standard deviation; thus we use the z -distribution in the solution. For a 95 percent confidence interval (and 2.5 percent in each tail), the critical z -value is 1.96. For returns that are normally distributed, a 95 percent confidence interval is of the form

$$\mu + 1.96\frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{n}}$$

The lower limit is $X_l = \mu - 1.96\frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{n}} = 6\% - 1.96\frac{18\%}{\sqrt{4}} = 6\% - 1.96(9\%) = -11.64\%$.

The upper limit is $X_u = \mu + 1.96\frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{n}} = 6\% + 1.96\frac{18\%}{\sqrt{4}} = 6\% + 1.96(9\%) = 23.64\%$.

There is a 95 percent probability that four-year average returns will be between -11.64 percent and $+23.64$ percent.

- B** The critical z -value associated with the -2.0 percent return is

$$Z = \frac{\bar{X} - \mu}{\sigma/\sqrt{n}} = \frac{-2\% - 6\%}{18\%/\sqrt{4}} = \frac{-8\%}{9\%} = -0.89$$

Using a normal table, the probability of a z -value less than -0.89 is $P(Z < -0.89) = 0.1867$. Unfortunately, although your client is unhappy with the investment result, a four-year average return of -2.0 percent or lower should occur 18.67 percent of the time.

- 4 (Refer to Figure 1 to help visualize the answer to this question.) Basically, only one standard normal distribution exists, but many t -distributions exist—one for every different number of degrees of freedom. The normal distribution and the t -distribution for a large number of degrees of freedom are practically the same. The lower the degrees of freedom, the flatter the t -distribution becomes. The t -distribution has less mass (lower probabilities) in the center of the distribution and more mass (higher probabilities) out in both tails. Therefore, the confidence intervals based on t -values will be wider than those based on the normal distribution. Stated differently, the probability of being within a given number of standard deviations (such as within ± 1 standard deviation or ± 2 standard deviations) is lower for the t -distribution than for the normal distribution.
- 5 **A** For a 99 percent confidence interval, the reliability factor we use is $t_{0.005}$; for $df = 20$, this factor is 2.845.
- B** For a 90 percent confidence interval, the reliability factor we use is $t_{0.05}$; for $df = 20$, this factor is 1.725.
- C** Degrees of freedom equals $n - 1$, or in this case $25 - 1 = 24$. For a 95 percent confidence interval, the reliability factor we use is $t_{0.025}$; for $df = 24$, this factor is 2.064.
- D** Degrees of freedom equals $16 - 1 = 15$. For a 95 percent confidence interval, the reliability factor we use is $t_{0.025}$; for $df = 15$, this factor is 2.131.
- 6 Because this is a small sample from a normal population and we have only the sample standard deviation, we use the following model to solve for the confidence interval of the population mean:

$$\bar{X} \pm t_{\alpha/2} \frac{s}{\sqrt{n}}$$

where we find $t_{0.025}$ (for a 95 percent confidence interval) for $df = n - 1 = 24 - 1 = 23$; this value is 2.069. Our solution is $1\% \pm 2.069(4\%)/\sqrt{24} = 1\% \pm 2.069(0.8165) = 1\% \pm 1.69$. The 95 percent confidence interval spans the range from -0.69 percent to $+2.69$ percent.

- 7 The following table summarizes the calculations used in the answers.

Forecast (X_i)	Number of Analysts (n_i)	$X_i n_i$	$(X_i - \bar{X})$	$(X_i - \bar{X})^2$	$(X_i - \bar{X})^2 n_i$
1.40	1	1.40	-0.05	0.0025	0.0025
1.43	1	1.43	-0.02	0.0004	0.0004
1.44	3	4.32	-0.01	0.0001	0.0003
1.45	2	2.90	0.00	0.0000	0.0000
1.47	1	1.47	0.02	0.0004	0.0004
1.48	1	1.48	0.03	0.0009	0.0009
1.50	1	1.50	0.05	0.0025	0.0025
Sums	10	14.50			0.0070

- A** With $n = 10$, $\bar{X} = \sum_{i=1}^{10} X_i / 10 = 14.50 / 10 = 1.45$. The variance is $s^2 = \left[\sum_{i=1}^{10} (X_i - \bar{X})^2 \right] / (n - 1) = 0.0070 / 9 = 0.0007778$. The sample standard deviation is $s = \sqrt{0.0007778} = 0.02789$.
- B** The confidence interval for the mean can be estimated by using $\bar{X} \pm t_{\alpha/2} (s / \sqrt{n})$. For 9 degrees of freedom, the reliability factor, $t_{0.025}$, equals 2.262 and the confidence interval is

$$1.45 \pm 2.262 \times 0.02789 / \sqrt{10} = 1.45 \pm 2.262(0.00882) \\ = 1.45 \pm 0.02$$

The confidence interval for the population mean ranges from 1.43 to 1.47.

- 8** The following table summarizes the calculations used in the answers.

Forecast (X_i)	Number of Analysts (n_i)	$X_i n_i$	$(X_i - \bar{X})$	$(X_i - \bar{X})^2$	$(X_i - \bar{X})^2 n_i$
0.70	2	1.40	-0.04	0.0016	0.0032
0.72	4	2.88	-0.02	0.0004	0.0016
0.74	1	0.74	0.00	0.0000	0.0000
0.75	3	2.25	0.01	0.0001	0.0003
0.76	1	0.76	0.02	0.0004	0.0004
0.77	1	0.77	0.03	0.0009	0.0009
0.82	1	0.82	0.08	0.0064	0.0064
Sums	13	9.62			0.0128

- A** With $n = 13$, $\bar{X} = \sum_{i=1}^{13} X_i / n = 9.62 / 13 = 0.74$. The variance is $s^2 = \left[\sum_{i=1}^{13} (X_i - \bar{X})^2 \right] / (n - 1) = 0.0128 / 12 = 0.001067$. The sample standard deviation is $s = \sqrt{0.001067} = 0.03266$.
- B** The sample is small, and the distribution appears to be bimodal. We cannot compute a confidence interval for the population mean because we have probably sampled from a distribution that is not normal.
- 9** If the population variance is known, the confidence interval is

$$\bar{X} \pm z_{\alpha/2} \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{n}}$$

The confidence interval for the population mean is centered at the sample mean, \bar{X} . The population standard deviation is σ , and the sample size is n . The population standard deviation divided by the square root of n is the standard error of the estimate of the mean. The value of z depends on the desired degree of confidence. For a 95 percent confidence interval, $z_{0.025} = 1.96$ and the confidence interval estimate is

$$\bar{X} \pm 1.96 \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{n}}$$

If the population variance is not known, we make two changes to the technique used when the population variance is known. First, we must use the sample standard deviation instead of the population standard deviation. Second, we use the t -distribution instead of the normal distribution. The critical t -value will depend on degrees of freedom $n - 1$. If the sample size is large, we have the alternative of using the z -distribution with the sample standard deviation.

- 10 A** The probabilities can be taken from a normal table, in which the critical z -values are 2.00 or 3.00 and we are including the probabilities in both tails. The probabilities that the exchange rate will be at least 2 or 3 standard deviations away from the mean are

$$P(|X - \mu| \geq 2\sigma) = 0.0456$$

$$P(|X - \mu| \geq 3\sigma) = 0.0026$$

- B** With Chebyshev's inequality, the maximum probability of the exchange rate being at least k standard deviations from the mean is $P(|X - \mu| \geq k\sigma) \leq (1/k)^2$. The maximum probabilities of the rate being at least 2 or 3 standard deviations away from the mean are

$$P(|X - \mu| \geq 2\sigma) \leq (1/2)^2 = 0.2500$$

$$P(|X - \mu| \geq 3\sigma) \leq (1/3)^2 = 0.1111$$

The probability of the rate being outside 2 or 3 standard deviations of the mean is much smaller with a known normal distribution than when the distribution is unknown and we are relying on Chebyshev's inequality.

- 11** No. First the conclusion on the limit of zero is wrong; second, the support cited for drawing the conclusion (i.e., the central limit theorem) is not relevant in this context.
- 12** In many instances, the distribution that describes the underlying population is not normal or the distribution is not known. The central limit theorem states that if the sample size is large, regardless of the shape of the underlying population, the distribution of the sample mean is approximately normal. Therefore, even in these instances, we can still construct confidence intervals (and conduct tests of inference) as long as the sample size is large (generally $n \geq 30$).
- 13** The statement makes the following mistakes:
- Given the conditions in the statement, the distribution of \bar{X} will be approximately normal only for large sample sizes.
 - The statement omits the important element of the central limit theorem that the distribution of \bar{X} will have mean μ .
- 14** A is correct. The discrepancy arises from sampling error. Sampling error exists whenever one fails to observe every element of the population, because a sample statistic can vary from sample to sample. As stated in the reading, the sample mean is an unbiased estimator, a consistent estimator, and an efficient estimator of the population mean. Although the sample mean is an unbiased estimator of the population mean—the expected value of the sample mean equals the population mean—because of sampling error, we do not expect the sample mean to exactly equal the population mean in any one sample we may take.

- 15 No, we cannot say that Alcorn Mutual Funds as a group is superior to competitors. Alcorn Mutual Funds' advertisement may easily mislead readers because the advertisement does not show the performance of all its funds. In particular, Alcorn Mutual Funds is engaging in sample selection bias by presenting the investment results from its best-performing funds only.
- 16 Spence may be guilty of data mining. He has used so many possible combinations of variables on so many stocks, it is not surprising that he found some instances in which a model worked. In fact, it would have been more surprising if he had not found any. To decide whether to use his model, you should do two things: First, ask that the model be tested on out-of-sample data—that is, data that were not used in building the model. The model may not be successful with out-of-sample data. Second, examine his model to make sure that the relationships in the model make economic sense, have a story, and have a future.
- 17 C is correct. Stratified random sampling involves dividing a population into subpopulations based on one or more classification criteria. Then, simple random samples are drawn from each subpopulation in sizes proportional to the relative size of each subpopulation. These samples are then pooled to form a stratified random sample.
- 18 B is correct. Given a population described by any probability distribution (normal or non-normal) with finite variance, the central limit theorem states that the sampling distribution of the sample mean will be approximately normal, with the mean approximately equal to the population mean, when the sample size is large.
- 19 B is correct. Taking the square root of the known population variance to determine the population standard deviation (σ) results in:

$$\sigma = \sqrt{2.45} = 1.565$$

The formula for the standard error of the sample mean (σ_X), based on a known sample size (n), is:

$$\sigma_X = \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{n}}$$

Therefore,

$$\sigma_X = \frac{1.565}{\sqrt{40}} = 0.247$$

- 20 B is correct. An unbiased estimator is one for which the expected value equals the parameter it is intended to estimate.
- 21 A is correct. A consistent estimator is one for which the probability of estimates close to the value of the population parameter increases as sample size increases. More specifically, a consistent estimator's sampling distribution becomes concentrated on the value of the parameter it is intended to estimate as the sample size approaches infinity.
- 22 A is correct. As the degree of confidence increases (e.g., from 95% to 99%), a given confidence interval will become wider. A confidence interval is a range for which one can assert with a given probability $1 - \alpha$, called the degree of confidence, that it will contain the parameter it is intended to estimate.

- 23** A is correct. A standard normal distribution has tails that approach zero faster than the t -distribution. As degrees of freedom increase, the tails of the t -distribution become less fat and the t -distribution begins to look more like a standard normal distribution. But as degrees of freedom decrease, the tails of the t -distribution become fatter.
- 24** B is correct. The confidence interval is calculated using the following equation:

$$\bar{X} \pm t_{\alpha/2} \frac{s}{\sqrt{n}}$$

Sample standard deviation (s) = $\sqrt{245.55} = 15.670$.

For a sample size of 17, degrees of freedom equal 16, so $t_{0.05} = 1.746$.

The confidence interval is calculated as

$$116.23 \pm 1.746 \frac{15.67}{\sqrt{17}} = 116.23 \pm 6.6357$$

Therefore, the interval spans 109.5943 to 122.8656, meaning its width is equal to approximately 13.271. (This interval can be alternatively calculated as 6.6357×2).

- 25** A is correct. To solve, use the structure of Confidence interval = Point estimate \pm Reliability factor \times Standard error, which, for a normally distributed population with known variance, is represented by the following formula:

$$\bar{X} \pm z_{\alpha/2} \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{n}}$$

For a 99% confidence interval, use $z_{0.005} = 2.58$.

Also, $\sigma = \sqrt{529} = 23$.

Therefore, the lower limit = $31 - 2.58 \frac{23}{\sqrt{65}} = 23.6398$.

- 26** B is correct. All else being equal, as the sample size increases, the standard error of the sample mean decreases and the width of the confidence interval also decreases.
- 27** B is correct. A report that uses a current list of stocks does not account for firms that failed, merged, or otherwise disappeared from the public equity market in previous years. As a consequence, the report is biased. This type of bias is known as survivorship bias.
- 28** B is correct. An out-of-sample test is used to investigate the presence of data-mining bias. Such a test uses a sample that does not overlap the time period of the sample on which a variable, strategy, or model was developed.
- 29** A is correct. A short time series is likely to give period-specific results that may not reflect a longer time period.

Hypothesis Testing

by Richard A. DeFusco, PhD, CFA, Dennis W. McLeavey, CFA,
Jerald E. Pinto, PhD, CFA, and David E. Runkle, PhD, CFA

Richard A. DeFusco, PhD, CFA, is at the University of Nebraska-Lincoln (USA). Dennis W. McLeavey, CFA, is at the University of Rhode Island (USA). Jerald E. Pinto, PhD, CFA, is at CFA Institute (USA). David E. Runkle, PhD, CFA, is at Trilogy Global Advisors (USA).

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Mastery	The candidate should be able to:
<input type="checkbox"/>	a. define a hypothesis, describe the steps of hypothesis testing, and describe and interpret the choice of the null and alternative hypotheses;
<input type="checkbox"/>	b. distinguish between one-tailed and two-tailed tests of hypotheses;
<input type="checkbox"/>	c. explain a test statistic, Type I and Type II errors, a significance level, and how significance levels are used in hypothesis testing;
<input type="checkbox"/>	d. explain a decision rule, the power of a test, and the relation between confidence intervals and hypothesis tests;
<input type="checkbox"/>	e. distinguish between a statistical result and an economically meaningful result;
<input type="checkbox"/>	f. explain and interpret the p -value as it relates to hypothesis testing;
<input type="checkbox"/>	g. identify the appropriate test statistic and interpret the results for a hypothesis test concerning the population mean of both large and small samples when the population is normally or approximately normally distributed and the variance is 1) known or 2) unknown;
<input type="checkbox"/>	h. identify the appropriate test statistic and interpret the results for a hypothesis test concerning the equality of the population means of two at least approximately normally distributed populations, based on independent random samples with 1) equal or 2) unequal assumed variances;

(continued)

LEARNING OUTCOMES

<i>Mastery</i>	<i>The candidate should be able to:</i>
<input type="checkbox"/>	i. identify the appropriate test statistic and interpret the results for a hypothesis test concerning the mean difference of two normally distributed populations;
<input type="checkbox"/>	j. identify the appropriate test statistic and interpret the results for a hypothesis test concerning 1) the variance of a normally distributed population, and 2) the equality of the variances of two normally distributed populations based on two independent random samples;
<input type="checkbox"/>	k. distinguish between parametric and nonparametric tests and describe situations in which the use of nonparametric tests may be appropriate.

1

INTRODUCTION

Analysts often confront competing ideas about how financial markets work. Some of these ideas develop through personal research or experience with markets; others come from interactions with colleagues; and many others appear in the professional literature on finance and investments. In general, how can an analyst decide whether statements about the financial world are probably true or probably false?

When we can reduce an idea or assertion to a definite statement about the value of a quantity, such as an underlying or population mean, the idea becomes a statistically testable statement or hypothesis. The analyst may want to explore questions such as the following:

- Is the underlying mean return on this mutual fund different from the underlying mean return on its benchmark?
- Did the volatility of returns on this stock change after the stock was added to a stock market index?
- Are a security's bid-ask spreads related to the number of dealers making a market in the security?
- Do data from a national bond market support a prediction of an economic theory about the term structure of interest rates (the relationship between yield and maturity)?

To address these questions, we use the concepts and tools of hypothesis testing. Hypothesis testing is part of statistical inference, the process of making judgments about a larger group (a population) on the basis of a smaller group actually observed (a sample). The concepts and tools of hypothesis testing provide an objective means to gauge whether the available evidence supports the hypothesis. After a statistical test of a hypothesis we should have a clearer idea of the probability that a hypothesis is true or not, although our conclusion always stops short of certainty. Hypothesis testing has been a powerful tool in the advancement of investment knowledge and science. As Robert L. Kahn of the Institute for Social Research (Ann Arbor, Michigan) has written, "The mill of science grinds only when hypothesis and data are in continuous and abrasive contact."

The main emphases of this reading are the framework of hypothesis testing and tests concerning mean and variance, two quantities frequently used in investments. We give an overview of the procedure of hypothesis testing in the next section. We then address testing hypotheses about the mean and hypotheses about the differences between means. In the fourth section of this reading, we address testing hypotheses about a single variance and hypotheses about the differences between variances. We end the reading with an overview of some other important issues and techniques in statistical inference.

HYPOTHESIS TESTING

2

Hypothesis testing, as we have mentioned, is part of the branch of statistics known as statistical inference. Traditionally, the field of statistical inference has two subdivisions: **estimation** and **hypothesis testing**. Estimation addresses the question “What is this parameter’s (e.g., the population mean’s) value?” The answer is in the form of a confidence interval built around a point estimate. Take the case of the mean: We build a confidence interval for the population mean around the sample mean as a point estimate. For the sake of specificity, suppose the sample mean is 50 and a 95 percent confidence interval for the population mean is 50 ± 10 (the confidence interval runs from 40 to 60). If this confidence interval has been properly constructed, there is a 95 percent probability that the interval from 40 to 60 contains the population mean’s value.¹ The second branch of statistical inference, hypothesis testing, has a somewhat different focus. A hypothesis testing question is “Is the value of the parameter (say, the population mean) 45 (or some other specific value)?” The assertion “the population mean is 45” is a hypothesis. A **hypothesis** is defined as a statement about one or more populations.

This section focuses on the concepts of hypothesis testing. The process of hypothesis testing is part of a rigorous approach to acquiring knowledge known as the scientific method. The scientific method starts with observation and the formulation of a theory to organize and explain observations. We judge the correctness of the theory by its ability to make accurate predictions—for example, to predict the results of new observations.² If the predictions are correct, we continue to maintain the theory as a possibly correct explanation of our observations. When risk plays a role in the outcomes of observations, as in finance, we can only try to make unbiased, probability-based judgments about whether the new data support the predictions. Statistical hypothesis testing fills that key role of testing hypotheses when chance plays a role. In an analyst’s day-to-day work, he may address questions to which he might give answers of varying quality. When an analyst correctly formulates the question into a testable hypothesis and carries out and reports on a hypothesis test, he has provided an element of support to his answer consistent with the standards of the scientific method. Of course, the analyst’s logic, economic reasoning, information sources, and perhaps other factors also play a role in our assessment of the answer’s quality.³

We organize this introduction to hypothesis testing around the following list of seven steps.

- **Steps in Hypothesis Testing.** The steps in testing a hypothesis are as follows:⁴

¹ We discussed the construction and interpretation of confidence intervals in the reading on sampling and estimation.

² To be testable, a theory must be capable of making predictions that can be shown to be wrong.

³ See Freeley and Steinberg (2013) for a discussion of critical thinking applied to reasoned decision making.

⁴ This list is based on one in Daniel and Terrell (1995).

- 1 Stating the hypotheses.
- 2 Identifying the appropriate test statistic and its probability distribution.
- 3 Specifying the significance level.
- 4 Stating the decision rule.
- 5 Collecting the data and calculating the test statistic.
- 6 Making the statistical decision.
- 7 Making the economic or investment decision.

We will explain each of these steps using as illustration a hypothesis test concerning the sign of the risk premium on Canadian stocks. The steps above constitute a traditional approach to hypothesis testing. We will end the section with a frequently used alternative to those steps, the p -value approach.

The first step in hypothesis testing is stating the hypotheses. We always state two hypotheses: the null hypothesis (or null), designated H_0 , and the alternative hypothesis, designated H_a .

- **Definition of Null Hypothesis.** The null hypothesis is the hypothesis to be tested. For example, we could hypothesize that the population mean risk premium for Canadian equities is less than or equal to zero.

The null hypothesis is a proposition that is considered true unless the sample we use to conduct the hypothesis test gives convincing evidence that the null hypothesis is false. When such evidence is present, we are led to the alternative hypothesis.

- **Definition of Alternative Hypothesis.** The alternative hypothesis is the hypothesis accepted when the null hypothesis is rejected. Our alternative hypothesis is that the population mean risk premium for Canadian equities is greater than zero.

Suppose our question concerns the value of a population parameter, θ , in relation to one possible value of the parameter, θ_0 (these are read, respectively, “theta” and “theta sub zero”).⁵ Examples of a population parameter include the population mean, μ , and the population variance, σ^2 . We can formulate three different sets of hypotheses, which we label according to the assertion made by the alternative hypothesis.

- **Formulations of Hypotheses.** We can formulate the null and alternative hypotheses in three different ways:

- 1 $H_0: \theta = \theta_0$ versus $H_a: \theta \neq \theta_0$ (a “not equal to” alternative hypothesis)
- 2 $H_0: \theta \leq \theta_0$ versus $H_a: \theta > \theta_0$ (a “greater than” alternative hypothesis)
- 3 $H_0: \theta \geq \theta_0$ versus $H_a: \theta < \theta_0$ (a “less than” alternative hypothesis)

In our Canadian example, $\theta = \mu_{RP}$ and represents the population mean risk premium on Canadian equities. Also, $\theta_0 = 0$ and we are using the second of the above three formulations.

The first formulation is a **two-sided hypothesis test** (or **two-tailed hypothesis test**): We reject the null in favor of the alternative if the evidence indicates that the population parameter is either smaller or larger than θ_0 . In contrast, Formulations 2 and 3 are each a **one-sided hypothesis test** (or **one-tailed hypothesis test**). For Formulations 2 and 3, we reject the null only if the evidence indicates that the population parameter is respectively greater than or less than θ_0 . The alternative hypothesis has one side.

⁵ Greek letters, such as σ , are reserved for population parameters; Roman letters in italics, such as s , are used for sample statistics.

Notice that in each case above, we state the null and alternative hypotheses such that they account for all possible values of the parameter. With Formulation 1, for example, the parameter is either equal to the hypothesized value θ_0 (under the null hypothesis) or not equal to the hypothesized value θ_0 (under the alternative hypothesis). Those two statements logically exhaust all possible values of the parameter.

Despite the different ways to formulate hypotheses, we always conduct a test of the null hypothesis at the point of equality, $\theta = \theta_0$. Whether the null is $H_0: \theta = \theta_0$, $H_0: \theta \leq \theta_0$, or $H_0: \theta \geq \theta_0$, we actually test $\theta = \theta_0$. The reasoning is straightforward. Suppose the hypothesized value of the parameter is 5. Consider $H_0: \theta \leq 5$, with a “greater than” alternative hypothesis, $H_a: \theta > 5$. If we have enough evidence to reject $H_0: \theta = 5$ in favor of $H_a: \theta > 5$, we definitely also have enough evidence to reject the hypothesis that the parameter, θ , is some smaller value, such as 4.5 or 4. To review, the calculation to test the null hypothesis is the same for all three formulations. What is different for the three formulations, we will see shortly, is how the calculation is evaluated to decide whether or not to reject the null.

How do we choose the null and alternative hypotheses? Probably most common are “not equal to” alternative hypotheses. We reject the null because the evidence indicates that the parameter is either larger or smaller than θ_0 . Sometimes, however, we may have a “suspected” or “hoped for” condition for which we want to find supportive evidence.⁶ In that case, we can formulate the alternative hypothesis as the statement that this condition is true; the null hypothesis that we test is the statement that this condition is not true. If the evidence supports rejecting the null and accepting the alternative, we have statistically confirmed what we thought was true. For example, economic theory suggests that investors require a positive risk premium on stocks (the **risk premium** is defined as the expected return on stocks minus the risk-free rate). Following the principle of stating the alternative as the “hoped for” condition, we formulate the following hypotheses:

H_0 : The population mean risk premium on Canadian stocks is less than or equal to 0.

H_a : The population mean risk premium on Canadian stocks is positive.

Note that “greater than” and “less than” alternative hypotheses reflect the beliefs of the researcher more strongly than a “not equal to” alternative hypothesis. To emphasize an attitude of neutrality, the researcher may sometimes select a “not equal to” alternative hypothesis when a one-sided alternative hypothesis is also reasonable.

The second step in hypothesis testing is identifying the appropriate test statistic and its probability distribution.

- **Definition of Test Statistic.** A test statistic is a quantity, calculated based on a sample, whose value is the basis for deciding whether or not to reject the null hypothesis.

The focal point of our statistical decision is the value of the test statistic. Frequently (in all the cases that we examine in this reading), the test statistic has the form

$$\text{Test statistic} = \frac{\text{Sample statistic} - \text{Value of the population parameter under } H_0}{\text{Standard error of the sample statistic}} \quad (1)$$

⁶ Part of this discussion of the selection of hypotheses follows Bowerman, O’Connell, and Murphree (2016).

For our risk premium example, the population parameter of interest is the population mean risk premium, μ_{RP} . We label the hypothesized value of the population mean under H_0 as μ_0 . Restating the hypotheses using symbols, we test $H_0: \mu_{RP} \leq \mu_0$ versus $H_a: \mu_{RP} > \mu_0$. However, because under the null we are testing $\mu_0 = 0$, we write $H_0: \mu_{RP} \leq 0$ versus $H_a: \mu_{RP} > 0$.

The sample mean provides an estimate of the population mean. Therefore, we can use the sample mean risk premium calculated from historical data, \bar{X}_{RP} , as the sample statistic in Equation 1. The standard deviation of the sample statistic, known as the “standard error” of the statistic, is the denominator in Equation 1. For this example, the sample statistic is a sample mean. For a sample mean, \bar{X} , calculated from a sample generated by a population with standard deviation σ , the standard error is given by one of two expressions:

$$\sigma_{\bar{X}} = \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{n}} \quad (2)$$

when we know σ (the population standard deviation), or

$$s_{\bar{X}} = \frac{s}{\sqrt{n}} \quad (3)$$

when we do not know the population standard deviation and need to use the sample standard deviation s to estimate it. For this example, because we do not know the population standard deviation of the process generating the return, we use Equation 3. The test statistic is thus

$$\frac{\bar{X}_{RP} - \mu_0}{s_{\bar{X}}} = \frac{\bar{X}_{RP} - 0}{s/\sqrt{n}}$$

In making the substitution of 0 for μ_0 , we use the fact already highlighted that we test any null hypothesis at the point of equality, as well as the fact that $\mu_0 = 0$ here.

We have identified a test statistic to test the null hypothesis. What probability distribution does it follow? We will encounter four distributions for test statistics in this reading:

- the t -distribution (for a t -test);
- the standard normal or z -distribution (for a z -test);
- the chi-square (χ^2) distribution (for a chi-square test); and
- the F -distribution (for an F -test).

We will discuss the details later, but assume we can conduct a z -test based on the central limit theorem because our Canadian sample has many observations.⁷ To summarize, the test statistic for the hypothesis test concerning the mean risk premium is $\bar{X}_{RP}/s_{\bar{X}}$. We can conduct a z -test because we can plausibly assume that the test statistic follows a standard normal distribution.

The third step in hypothesis testing is specifying the significance level. When the test statistic has been calculated, two actions are possible: 1) We reject the null hypothesis or 2) we do not reject the null hypothesis. The action we take is based on comparing the calculated test statistic to a specified possible value or values. The comparison values we choose are based on the level of significance selected. The level of significance reflects how much sample evidence we require to reject the null. Analogous to

⁷ The central limit theorem says that the sampling distribution of the sample mean will be approximately normal with mean μ and variance σ^2/n when the sample size is large. The sample we will use for this example has 111 observations.

its counterpart in a court of law, the required standard of proof can change according to the nature of the hypotheses and the seriousness of the consequences of making a mistake. There are four possible outcomes when we test a null hypothesis:

- 1 We reject a false null hypothesis. This is a correct decision.
- 2 We reject a true null hypothesis. This is called a **Type I error**.
- 3 We do not reject a false null hypothesis. This is called a **Type II error**.
- 4 We do not reject a true null hypothesis. This is a correct decision.

We illustrate these outcomes in Table 1.

Table 1 Type I and Type II Errors in Hypothesis Testing

Decision	True Situation	
	H_0 True	H_0 False
Do not reject H_0	Correct Decision	Type II Error
Reject H_0 (accept H_a)	Type I Error	Correct Decision

When we make a decision in a hypothesis test, we run the risk of making either a Type I or a Type II error. These are mutually exclusive errors: If we mistakenly reject the null, we can only be making a Type I error; if we mistakenly fail to reject the null, we can only be making a Type II error.

The probability of a Type I error in testing a hypothesis is denoted by the Greek letter alpha, α . This probability is also known as the **level of significance** of the test. For example, a level of significance of 0.05 for a test means that there is a 5 percent probability of rejecting a true null hypothesis. The probability of a Type II error is denoted by the Greek letter beta, β .

Controlling the probabilities of the two types of errors involves a trade-off. All else equal, if we decrease the probability of a Type I error by specifying a smaller significance level (say 0.01 rather than 0.05), we increase the probability of making a Type II error because we will reject the null less frequently, including when it is false. The only way to reduce the probabilities of both types of errors simultaneously is to increase the sample size, n .

Quantifying the trade-off between the two types of error in practice is usually impossible because the probability of a Type II error is itself hard to quantify. Consider $H_0: \theta \leq 5$ versus $H_a: \theta > 5$. Because every true value of θ greater than 5 makes the null hypothesis false, each value of θ greater than 5 has a different β (Type II error probability). In contrast, it is sufficient to state a Type I error probability for $\theta = 5$, the point at which we conduct the test of the null hypothesis. Thus, in general, we specify only α , the probability of a Type I error, when we conduct a hypothesis test. Whereas the significance level of a test is the probability of incorrectly rejecting the null, the **power of a test** is the probability of *correctly* rejecting the null—that is, the probability of rejecting the null when it is false.⁸ When more than one test statistic is available to conduct a hypothesis test, we should prefer the most powerful, all else equal.⁹

⁸ The power of a test is, in fact, 1 minus the probability of a Type II error.

⁹ We do not always have information on the relative power of the test for competing test statistics, however.

To summarize, the standard approach to hypothesis testing involves specifying a level of significance (probability of Type I error) only. It is most appropriate to specify this significance level prior to calculating the test statistic. If we specify it after calculating the test statistic, we may be influenced by the result of the calculation, which detracts from the objectivity of the test.

We can use three conventional significance levels to conduct hypothesis tests: 0.10, 0.05, and 0.01. Qualitatively, if we can reject a null hypothesis at the 0.10 level of significance, we have *some evidence* that the null hypothesis is false. If we can reject a null hypothesis at the 0.05 level, we have *strong evidence* that the null hypothesis is false. And if we can reject a null hypothesis at the 0.01 level, we have *very strong evidence* that the null hypothesis is false. For the risk premium example, we will specify a 0.05 significance level.

The fourth step in hypothesis testing is stating the decision rule. The general principle is simply stated. When we test the null hypothesis, if we find that the calculated value of the test statistic is more extreme than a given value or values determined by the specified level of significance, α , we reject the null hypothesis. We say the result is **statistically significant**. Otherwise, we do not reject the null hypothesis and we say the result is not statistically significant. The value or values with which we compare the calculated test statistic to make our decision are the rejection points (critical values) for the test.¹⁰

- **Definition of a Rejection Point (Critical Value) for the Test Statistic.** A rejection point (critical value) for a test statistic is a value with which the computed test statistic is compared to decide whether to reject or not reject the null hypothesis.

For a one-tailed test, we indicate a rejection point using the symbol for the test statistic with a subscript indicating the specified probability of a Type I error, α ; for example, z_α . For a two-tailed test, we indicate $z_{\alpha/2}$. To illustrate the use of rejection points, suppose we are using a z -test and have chosen a 0.05 level of significance.

- For a test of $H_0: \theta = \theta_0$ versus $H_a: \theta \neq \theta_0$, two rejection points exist, one negative and one positive. For a two-sided test at the 0.05 level, the total probability of a Type I error must sum to 0.05. Thus, $0.05/2 = 0.025$ of the probability should be in each tail of the distribution of the test statistic under the null. Consequently, the two rejection points are $z_{0.025} = 1.96$ and $-z_{0.025} = -1.96$. Let z represent the calculated value of the test statistic. We reject the null if we find that $z < -1.96$ or $z > 1.96$. We do not reject if $-1.96 \leq z \leq 1.96$.
- For a test of $H_0: \theta \leq \theta_0$ versus $H_a: \theta > \theta_0$ at the 0.05 level of significance, the rejection point is $z_{0.05} = 1.645$. We reject the null hypothesis if $z > 1.645$. The value of the standard normal distribution such that 5 percent of the outcomes lie to the right is $z_{0.05} = 1.645$.
- For a test of $H_0: \theta \geq \theta_0$ versus $H_a: \theta < \theta_0$, the rejection point is $-z_{0.05} = -1.645$. We reject the null hypothesis if $z < -1.645$.

Figure 1 illustrates a test $H_0: \mu = \mu_0$ versus $H_a: \mu \neq \mu_0$ at the 0.05 significance level using a z -test. The “acceptance region” is the traditional name for the set of values of the test statistic for which we do not reject the null hypothesis. (The traditional name, however, is inaccurate. We should avoid using phrases such as “accept the null hypothesis” because such a statement implies a greater degree of conviction about the

¹⁰ “Rejection point” is a descriptive synonym for the more traditional term “critical value.”

null than is warranted when we fail to reject it.)¹¹ On either side of the acceptance region is a rejection region (or critical region). If the null hypothesis that $\mu = \mu_0$ is true, the test statistic has a 2.5 percent chance of falling in the left rejection region and a 2.5 percent chance of falling in the right rejection region. Any calculated value of the test statistic that falls in either of these two regions causes us to reject the null hypothesis at the 0.05 significance level. The rejection points of 1.96 and -1.96 are seen to be the dividing lines between the acceptance and rejection regions.

Figure 1 Rejection Points (Critical Values), 0.05 Significance Level, Two-Sided Test of the Population Mean Using a z-Test

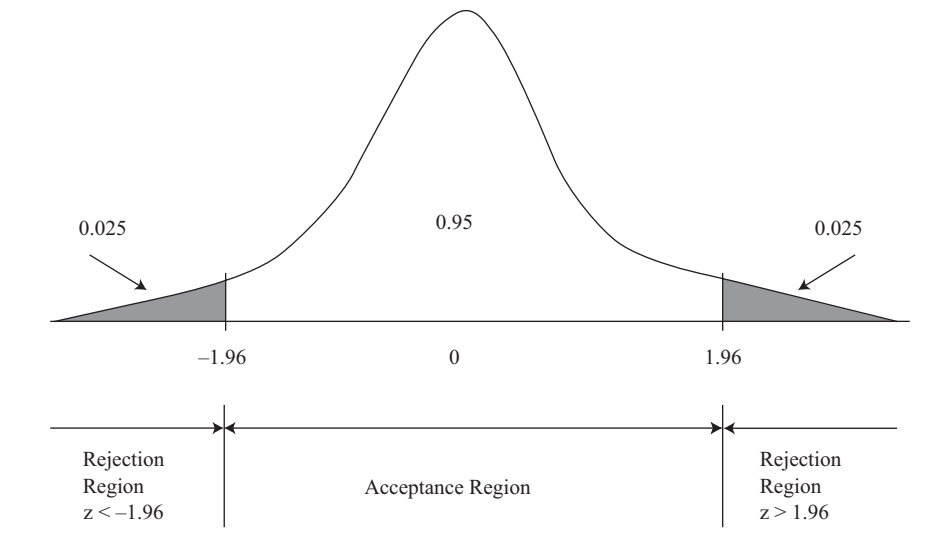


Figure 1 affords a good opportunity to highlight the relationship between confidence intervals and hypothesis tests. A 95 percent confidence interval for the population mean, μ , based on sample mean, \bar{X} , is given by $\bar{X} - 1.96s_{\bar{X}}$ to $\bar{X} + 1.96s_{\bar{X}}$, where $s_{\bar{X}}$ is the standard error of the sample mean (Equation 3).¹²

Now consider one of the conditions for rejecting the null hypothesis:

$$\frac{\bar{X} - \mu_0}{s_{\bar{X}}} > 1.96$$

Here, μ_0 is the hypothesized value of the population mean. The condition states that rejection is warranted if the test statistic exceeds 1.96. Multiplying both sides by $s_{\bar{X}}$, we have $\bar{X} - \mu_0 > 1.96s_{\bar{X}}$, or after rearranging, $\bar{X} - 1.96s_{\bar{X}} > \mu_0$, which we can also write as $\mu_0 < \bar{X} - 1.96s_{\bar{X}}$. This expression says that if the hypothesized population mean, μ_0 , is less than the lower limit of the 95 percent confidence interval based on the sample mean, we must reject the null hypothesis at the 5 percent significance level (the test statistic falls in the rejection region to the right).

¹¹ The analogy in some courts of law (for example, in the United States) is that if a jury does not return a verdict of guilty (the alternative hypothesis), it is most accurate to say that the jury has failed to reject the null hypothesis, namely, that the defendant is innocent.

¹² Just as with the hypothesis test, we can use this confidence interval, based on the standard normal distribution, when we have large samples. An alternative hypothesis test and confidence interval uses the t -distribution, which requires concepts that we introduce in the next section.

Now, we can take the other condition for rejecting the null hypothesis:

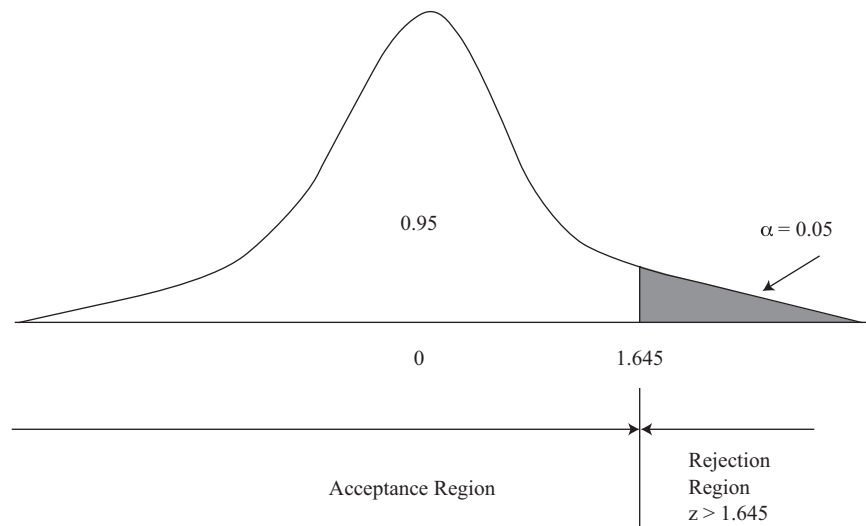
$$\frac{\bar{X} - \mu_0}{s_{\bar{X}}} < -1.96$$

and, using algebra as before, rewrite it as $\mu_0 > \bar{X} + 1.96s_{\bar{X}}$. If the hypothesized population mean is larger than the upper limit of the 95 percent confidence interval, we reject the null hypothesis at the 5 percent level (the test statistic falls in the rejection region to the left). Thus, an α significance level in a two-sided hypothesis test can be interpreted in exactly the same way as a $(1 - \alpha)$ confidence interval.

In summary, when the hypothesized value of the population parameter under the null is outside the corresponding confidence interval, the null hypothesis is rejected. We could use confidence intervals to test hypotheses; practitioners, however, usually do not. Computing a test statistic (one number, versus two numbers for the usual confidence interval) is more efficient. Also, analysts encounter actual cases of one-sided confidence intervals only rarely. Furthermore, only when we compute a test statistic can we obtain a p -value, a useful quantity relating to the significance of our results (we will discuss p -values shortly).

To return to our risk premium test, we stated hypotheses $H_0: \mu_{RP} \leq 0$ versus $H_a: \mu_{RP} > 0$. We identified the test statistic as $\bar{X}_{RP} / s_{\bar{X}}$ and stated that it follows a standard normal distribution. We are, therefore, conducting a one-sided z -test. We specified a 0.05 significance level. For this one-sided z -test, the rejection point at the 0.05 level of significance is 1.645. We will reject the null if the calculated z -statistic is larger than 1.645. Figure 2 illustrates this test.

Figure 2 Rejection Point (Critical Value), 0.05 Significance Level, One-Sided Test of the Population Mean Using a z -Test



The fifth step in hypothesis testing is collecting the data and calculating the test statistic. The quality of our conclusions depends not only on the appropriateness of the statistical model but also on the quality of the data we use in conducting the test. We first need to check for measurement errors in the recorded data. Some other issues to be aware of include sample selection bias and time-period bias. Sample selection bias refers to bias introduced by systematically excluding some members of the population according to a particular attribute. One type of sample selection bias is survivorship bias. For example, if we define our sample as US bond mutual funds

currently operating and we collect returns for just these funds, we will systematically exclude funds that have not survived to the present date. Nonsurviving funds are likely to have underperformed surviving funds, on average; as a result the performance reflected in the sample may be biased upward. Time-period bias refers to the possibility that when we use a time-series sample, our statistical conclusion may be sensitive to the starting and ending dates of the sample.¹³

To continue with the risk premium hypothesis, we focus on Canadian equities. According to Dimson, Marsh, and Staunton (2011) for the period 1900 to 2010 inclusive (111 annual observations), the arithmetic mean equity risk premium for Canadian stocks relative to bond returns, \bar{X}_{RP} , was 5.3 percent per year. The sample standard deviation of the annual risk premiums was 18.2 percent. Using Equation 3, the standard error of the sample mean is $s_{\bar{X}} = s/\sqrt{n} = 18.2\%/\sqrt{111} = 1.727\%$. The test statistic is $z = \bar{X}_{RP}/s_{\bar{X}} = 5.3\%/1.727\% = 3.07$.

The sixth step in hypothesis testing is making the statistical decision. For our example, because the test statistic $z = 3.07$ is larger than the rejection point of 1.645, we reject the null hypothesis in favor of the alternative hypothesis that the risk premium on Canadian stocks is positive. The first six steps are the statistical steps. The final decision concerns our use of the statistical decision.

The seventh and final step in hypothesis testing is making the economic or investment decision. The economic or investment decision takes into consideration not only the statistical decision but also all pertinent economic issues. In the sixth step, we found strong statistical evidence that the Canadian risk premium is positive. The magnitude of the estimated risk premium, 5.3 percent a year, is economically very meaningful as well. Based on these considerations, an investor might decide to commit funds to Canadian equities. A range of nonstatistical considerations, such as the investor's tolerance for risk and financial position, might also enter the decision-making process.

The preceding discussion raises an issue that often arises in this decision-making step. We frequently find that slight differences between a variable and its hypothesized value are statistically significant but not economically meaningful. For example, we may be testing an investment strategy and reject a null hypothesis that the mean return to the strategy is zero based on a large sample. Equation 1 shows that the smaller the standard error of the sample statistic (the divisor in the formula), the larger the value of the test statistic and the greater the chance the null will be rejected, all else equal. The standard error decreases as the sample size, n , increases, so that for very large samples, we can reject the null for small departures from it. We may find that although a strategy provides a statistically significant positive mean return, the results are not economically significant when we account for transaction costs, taxes, and risk. Even if we conclude that a strategy's results are economically meaningful, we should explore the logic of why the strategy might work in the future before actually implementing it. Such considerations cannot be incorporated into a hypothesis test.

Before leaving the subject of the process of hypothesis testing, we should discuss an important alternative approach called the p -value approach to hypothesis testing. Analysts and researchers often report the p -value (also called the marginal significance level) associated with hypothesis tests.

- **Definition of p -Value.** The p -value is the smallest level of significance at which the null hypothesis can be rejected.

For the value of the test statistic of 3.07 in the risk premium hypothesis test, using a spreadsheet function for the standard normal distribution, we calculate a p -value of 0.00107. We can reject the null hypothesis at that level of significance. The smaller

¹³ These issues are discussed further in the reading on sampling.

the p -value, the stronger the evidence against the null hypothesis and in favor of the alternative hypothesis. The p -value for a two-sided test that a parameter equals zero is frequently generated automatically by statistical and econometric software programs.¹⁴

We can use p -values in the hypothesis testing framework presented above as an alternative to using rejection points. If the p -value is less than our specified level of significance, we reject the null hypothesis. Otherwise, we do not reject the null hypothesis. Using the p -value in this fashion, we reach the same conclusion as we do using rejection points. For example, because 0.00107 is less than 0.05, we would reject the null hypothesis in the risk premium test. The p -value, however, provides more precise information on the strength of the evidence than does the rejection points approach. The p -value of 0.00107 indicates that the null is rejected at a far smaller level of significance than 0.05.

If one researcher examines a question using a 0.05 significance level and another researcher uses a 0.01 significance level, the reader may have trouble comparing the findings. This concern has given rise to an approach to presenting the results of hypothesis tests that features p -values and omits specification of the significance level (Step 3). The interpretation of the statistical results is left to the consumer of the research. This has sometimes been called the p -value approach to hypothesis testing.¹⁵

3

HYPOTHESIS TESTS CONCERNING THE MEAN

Hypothesis tests concerning the mean are among the most common in practice. In this section we discuss such tests for several distinct types of problems. In one type (discussed in Section 3.1), we test whether the population mean of a single population is equal to (or greater or less than) some hypothesized value. Then, in Sections 3.2 and 3.3, we address inference on means based on two samples. Is an observed difference between two sample means due to chance or different underlying (population) means? When we have two random samples that are independent of each other—no relationship exists between the measurements in one sample and the measurements in the other—the techniques of Section 3.2 apply. When the samples are dependent, the methods of Section 3.3 are appropriate.¹⁶

3.1 Tests Concerning a Single Mean

An analyst who wants to test a hypothesis concerning the value of an underlying or population mean will conduct a t -test in the great majority of cases. A **t -test** is a hypothesis test using a statistic (t -statistic) that follows a t -distribution. The t -distribution is a probability distribution defined by a single parameter known as degrees of freedom (df). Each value of degrees of freedom defines one distribution in this family of

¹⁴ We can use spreadsheets to calculate p -values as well. In Microsoft Excel, for example, we may use the worksheet functions TTEST, NORMSDIST, CHIDIST, and FDIST to calculate p -values for t -tests, z -tests, chi-square tests, and F -tests, respectively.

¹⁵ Davidson and MacKinnon (1993) argued the merits of this approach: “The P value approach does not necessarily force us to make a decision about the null hypothesis. If we obtain a P value of, say, 0.000001, we will almost certainly want to reject the null. But if we obtain a P value of, say, 0.04, or even 0.004, we are not *obliged* to reject it. We may simply file the result away as information that casts some doubt on the null hypothesis, but that is not, by itself, conclusive. We believe that this somewhat agnostic attitude toward test statistics, in which they are merely regarded as pieces of information that we may or may not want to act upon, is usually the most sensible one to take” (p. 80)

¹⁶ When we want to test whether the population means of more than two populations are equal, we use analysis of variance (ANOVA). We introduce ANOVA in its most common application, regression analysis, in the reading on correlation and regression analysis.

distributions. The t -distribution is closely related to the standard normal distribution. Like the standard normal distribution, a t -distribution is symmetrical with a mean of zero. However, the t -distribution is more spread out: It has a standard deviation greater than 1 (compared to 1 for the standard normal)¹⁷ and more probability for outcomes distant from the mean (it has fatter tails than the standard normal distribution). As the number of degrees of freedom increases with sample size, the spread decreases and the t -distribution approaches the standard normal distribution as a limit.

Why is the t -distribution the focus for the hypothesis tests of this section? In practice, investment analysts need to estimate the population standard deviation by calculating a sample standard deviation. That is, the population variance (or standard deviation) is unknown. For hypothesis tests concerning the population mean of a normally distributed population with unknown variance, the theoretically correct test statistic is the t -statistic. What if a normal distribution does not describe the population? The t -test is **robust** to moderate departures from normality, except for outliers and strong skewness.¹⁸ When we have large samples, departures of the underlying distribution from the normal are of increasingly less concern. The sample mean is approximately normally distributed in large samples according to the central limit theorem, whatever the distribution describing the population. In general, a sample size of 30 or more usually can be treated as a large sample and a sample size of 29 or less is treated as a small sample.¹⁹

■ **Test Statistic for Hypothesis Tests of the Population Mean (Practical Case—Population Variance Unknown).** If the population sampled has unknown variance and either of the conditions below holds:

- 1 the sample is large, or
- 2 the sample is small but the population sampled is normally distributed, or approximately normally distributed,

then the test statistic for hypothesis tests concerning a single population mean, μ , is

$$t_{n-1} = \frac{\bar{X} - \mu_0}{s/\sqrt{n}} \quad (4)$$

where

t_{n-1} = t -statistic with $n - 1$ degrees of freedom (n is the sample size)

\bar{X} = the sample mean

μ_0 = the hypothesized value of the population mean

s = the sample standard deviation

¹⁷ The formula for the variance of a t -distribution is $df/(df - 2)$.

¹⁸ See Moore, McCabe, and Craig (2016). A statistic is robust if the required probability calculations are insensitive to violations of the assumptions.

¹⁹ Although this generalization is useful, we caution that the sample size needed to obtain an approximately normal sampling distribution for the sample mean depends on how non-normal the original population is. For some populations, “large” may be a sample size well in excess of 30.

The denominator of the t -statistic is an estimate of the sample mean standard error, $s_{\bar{x}} = s/\sqrt{n}$.²⁰

In Example 1, because the sample size is small, the test is called a small sample test concerning the population mean.

EXAMPLE 1

Risk and Return Characteristics of an Equity Mutual Fund (1)

You are analyzing Sendar Equity Fund, a midcap growth fund that has been in existence for 24 months. During this period, it has achieved a mean monthly return of 1.50 percent with a sample standard deviation of monthly returns of 3.60 percent. Given its level of systematic (market) risk and according to a pricing model, this mutual fund was expected to have earned a 1.10 percent mean monthly return during that time period. Assuming returns are normally distributed, are the actual results consistent with an underlying or population mean monthly return of 1.10 percent?

- 1 Formulate null and alternative hypotheses consistent with the verbal description of the research goal.
- 2 Identify the test statistic for conducting a test of the hypotheses in Part 1.
- 3 Identify the rejection point or points for the hypothesis tested in Part 1 at the 0.10 level of significance.
- 4 Determine whether the null hypothesis is rejected or not rejected at the 0.10 level of significance. (Use the tables in the back of this book.)

Solution to 1:

We have a “not equal to” alternative hypothesis, where μ is the underlying mean return on Sendar Equity Fund— $H_0: \mu = 1.10$ versus $H_a: \mu \neq 1.10$.

Solution to 2:

Because the population variance is not known, we use a t -test with $24 - 1 = 23$ degrees of freedom.

Solution to 3:

Because this is a two-tailed test, we have the rejection point $t_{\alpha/2, n-1} = t_{0.05, 23}$. In the table for the t -distribution, we look across the row for 23 degrees of freedom to the 0.05 column, to find 1.714. The two rejection points for this two-sided test are 1.714 and -1.714 . We will reject the null if we find that $t > 1.714$ or $t < -1.714$.

Solution to 4:

$$t_{23} = \frac{1.50 - 1.10}{3.60/\sqrt{24}} = \frac{0.40}{0.734847} = 0.544331 \text{ or } 0.544$$

²⁰ A technical note, for reference, is required. When the sample comes from a finite population, estimates of the standard error of the mean, whether from Equation 2 or Equation 3, overestimate the true standard error. To address this, the computed standard error is multiplied by a shrinkage factor called the finite population correction factor (fpc), equal to $\sqrt{(N-n)/(N-1)}$, where N is the population size and n is the sample size. When the sample size is small relative to the population size (less than 5 percent of the population size), the fpc is usually ignored. The overestimation problem arises only in the usual situation of sampling without replacement (after an item is selected, it cannot be picked again) as opposed to sampling with replacement.

Because 0.544 does not satisfy either $t > 1.714$ or $t < -1.714$, we do not reject the null hypothesis.

The confidence interval approach provides another perspective on this hypothesis test. The theoretically correct $100(1 - \alpha)\%$ confidence interval for the population mean of a normal distribution with unknown variance, based on a sample of size n , is

$$\bar{X} - t_{\alpha/2} s_{\bar{X}} \text{ to } \bar{X} + t_{\alpha/2} s_{\bar{X}}$$

where $t_{\alpha/2}$ is the value of t such that $\alpha/2$ of the probability remains in the right tail and where $-t_{\alpha/2}$ is the value of t such that $\alpha/2$ of the probability remains in the left tail, for $n - 1$ degrees of freedom. Here, the 90 percent confidence interval runs from $1.5 - (1.714)(0.734847) = 0.240$ to $1.5 + (1.714)(0.734847) = 2.760$, compactly $[0.240, 2.760]$. The hypothesized value of mean return, 1.10, falls within this confidence interval, and we see from this perspective also that the null hypothesis is not rejected. At a 10 percent level of significance, we conclude that a population mean monthly return of 1.10 percent is consistent with the 24-month observed data series. Note that 10 percent is a relatively high probability of rejecting the hypothesis of a 1.10 percent population mean monthly return when it is true.

EXAMPLE 2

A Slowdown in Payments of Receivables

FashionDesigns, a supplier of casual clothing to retail chains, is concerned about a possible slowdown in payments from its customers. The controller's office measures the rate of payment by the average number of days in receivables.²¹ FashionDesigns has generally maintained an average of 45 days in receivables. Because it would be too costly to analyze all of the company's receivables frequently, the controller's office uses sampling to track customers' payment rates. A random sample of 50 accounts shows a mean number of days in receivables of 49 with a standard deviation of 8 days.

- 1 Formulate null and alternative hypotheses consistent with determining whether the evidence supports the suspected condition that customer payments have slowed.
- 2 Identify the test statistic for conducting a test of the hypotheses in Part 1.
- 3 Identify the rejection point or points for the hypothesis tested in Part 1 at the 0.05 and 0.01 levels of significance.
- 4 Determine whether the null hypothesis is rejected or not rejected at the 0.05 and 0.01 levels of significance.

Solution to 1:

The suspected condition is that the number of days in receivables has increased relative to the historical rate of 45 days, which suggests a "greater than" alternative hypothesis. With μ as the population mean number of days in receivables, the hypotheses are $H_0: \mu \leq 45$ versus $H_a: \mu > 45$.

²¹ This measure represents the average length of time that the business must wait after making a sale before receiving payment. The calculation is (Accounts receivable)/(Average sales per day).

Solution to 2:

Because the population variance is not known, we use a t -test with $50 - 1 = 49$ degrees of freedom.

Solution to 3:

The rejection point is found across the row for degrees of freedom of 49. To find the one-tailed rejection point for a 0.05 significance level, we use the 0.05 column: The value is 1.677. To find the one-tailed rejection point for a 0.01 level of significance, we use the 0.01 column: The value is 2.405. To summarize, at a 0.05 significance level, we reject the null if we find that $t > 1.677$; at a 0.01 significance level, we reject the null if we find that $t > 2.405$.

Solution to 4:

$$t_{49} = \frac{49 - 45}{8/\sqrt{50}} = \frac{4}{1.131371} = 3.536$$

Because $3.536 > 1.677$, the null hypothesis is rejected at the 0.05 level. Because $3.536 > 2.405$, the null hypothesis is also rejected at the 0.01 level. We can say with a high level of confidence that FashionDesigns has experienced a slowdown in customer payments. The level of significance, 0.01, is a relatively low probability of rejecting the hypothesized mean of 45 days or less. Rejection gives us confidence that the mean has increased above 45 days.

We stated above that when population variance is not known, we use a t -test for tests concerning a single population mean. Given at least approximate normality, the t -test is always called for when we deal with small samples and do not know the population variance. For large samples, the central limit theorem states that the sample mean is approximately normally distributed, whatever the distribution of the population. So the t -test is still appropriate, but an alternative test may be more useful when sample size is large.

For large samples, practitioners sometimes use a z -test in place of a t -test for tests concerning a mean.²² The justification for using the z -test in this context is twofold. First, in large samples, the sample mean should follow the normal distribution at least approximately, as we have already stated, fulfilling the normality assumption of the z -test. Second, the difference between the rejection points for the t -test and z -test becomes quite small when sample size is large. For a two-sided test at the 0.05 level of significance, the rejection points for a z -test are 1.96 and -1.96 . For a t -test, the rejection points are 2.045 and -2.045 for $df = 29$ (about a 4 percent difference between the z and t rejection points) and 2.009 and -2.009 for $df = 50$ (about a 2.5 percent difference between the z and t rejection points). Because the t -test is readily available as statistical program output and theoretically correct for unknown population variance, we present it as the test of choice.

In a very limited number of cases, we may know the population variance; in such cases, the z -test is theoretically correct.²³

■ **The z -Test Alternative.**

²² These practitioners choose between t -tests and z -tests based on sample size. For small samples ($n < 30$), they use a t -test, and for large samples, a z -test.

²³ For example, in Monte Carlo simulation, we prespecify the probability distributions for the risk factors. If we use a normal distribution, we know the true values of mean and variance. Monte Carlo simulation involves the use of a computer to represent the operation of a system subject to risk; we discuss Monte Carlo simulation in the reading on common probability distributions.

- 1 If the population sampled is normally distributed with known variance σ^2 , then the test statistic for a hypothesis test concerning a single population mean, μ , is

$$z = \frac{\bar{X} - \mu_0}{\sigma/\sqrt{n}} \quad (5)$$

- 2 If the population sampled has unknown variance and the sample is large, in place of a t -test, an alternative test statistic (relying on the central limit theorem) is

$$z = \frac{\bar{X} - \mu_0}{s/\sqrt{n}} \quad (6)$$

In the above equations,

σ = the known population standard deviation

s = the sample standard deviation

μ_0 = the hypothesized value of the population mean

When we use a z -test, we most frequently refer to a rejection point in the list below.

■ **Rejection Points for a z -Test.**

A Significance level of $\alpha = 0.10$.

- 1 $H_0: \theta = \theta_0$ versus $H_a: \theta \neq \theta_0$. The rejection points are $z_{0.05} = 1.645$ and $-z_{0.05} = -1.645$.

Reject the null hypothesis if $z > 1.645$ or if $z < -1.645$.

- 2 $H_0: \theta \leq \theta_0$ versus $H_a: \theta > \theta_0$. The rejection point is $z_{0.10} = 1.28$.

Reject the null hypothesis if $z > 1.28$.

- 3 $H_0: \theta \geq \theta_0$ versus $H_a: \theta < \theta_0$. The rejection point is $-z_{0.10} = -1.28$.

Reject the null hypothesis if $z < -1.28$.

B Significance level of $\alpha = 0.05$.

- 1 $H_0: \theta = \theta_0$ versus $H_a: \theta \neq \theta_0$. The rejection points are $z_{0.025} = 1.96$ and $-z_{0.025} = -1.96$.

Reject the null hypothesis if $z > 1.96$ or if $z < -1.96$.

- 2 $H_0: \theta \leq \theta_0$ versus $H_a: \theta > \theta_0$. The rejection point is $z_{0.05} = 1.645$.

Reject the null hypothesis if $z > 1.645$.

- 3 $H_0: \theta \geq \theta_0$ versus $H_a: \theta < \theta_0$. The rejection point is $-z_{0.05} = -1.645$.

Reject the null hypothesis if $z < -1.645$.

C Significance level of $\alpha = 0.01$.

- 1 $H_0: \theta = \theta_0$ versus $H_a: \theta \neq \theta_0$. The rejection points are $z_{0.005} = 2.575$ and $-z_{0.005} = -2.575$.

Reject the null hypothesis if $z > 2.575$ or if $z < -2.575$.

- 2 $H_0: \theta \leq \theta_0$ versus $H_a: \theta > \theta_0$. The rejection point is $z_{0.01} = 2.33$.

Reject the null hypothesis if $z > 2.33$.

- 3 $H_0: \theta \geq \theta_0$ versus $H_a: \theta < \theta_0$. The rejection point is $-z_{0.01} = -2.33$.

Reject the null hypothesis if $z < -2.33$.

EXAMPLE 3**The Effect of Control Deficiency Disclosures under the Sarbanes–Oxley Act on Share Prices**

The Sarbanes–Oxley Act came into effect in 2002 and introduced major changes to the regulation of corporate governance and financial practice in the United States. One of the requirements of this Act is for firms to periodically assess and report certain types of internal control deficiencies to the audit committee, external auditors, and to the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC). When a company makes an internal control weakness disclosure, does it convey information that affects the market value of the firm's stock?

Gupta and Nayar (2007) addressed this question by studying a number of voluntary disclosures made in the very early days of Sarbanes–Oxley implementation. Their final sample for this study consisted of 90 firms that had made control deficiency disclosures to the SEC from March 2003 to July 2004. This 90-firm sample was termed the “full sample”. These firms were further examined to see if there were any other contemporaneous announcements, such as earnings announcements, associated with the control deficiency disclosures. Of the 90 firms, 45 did not have any such confounding announcements, and the sample of these firms was termed the “clean sample”.

The announcement day of the internal control weakness was designated $t = 0$. If these announcements provide *new* information useful for equity valuation, the information should cause a change in stock prices and returns once it is available. Only one component of stock returns is of interest: the return in excess of that predicted given a stock's market risk or beta, called the abnormal return. Significant negative (positive) abnormal returns indicate that investors perceive unfavorable (favorable) corporate news in the internal control weakness announcement. Although Gupta and Nayar examined abnormal returns for various time horizons or event windows, we report a selection of their findings for the window $[0, +1]$, which includes a two-day period of the day of and the day after the announcement. The researchers chose to use z -tests for statistical significance.

Full sample (90 firms). The null hypothesis that the average abnormal stock return during $[0, +1]$ was 0 would be true if stock investors did not find either positive or negative information in the announcement.

Mean abnormal return = -3.07 percent.

z -statistic for abnormal return = -5.938 .

Clean sample (45 firms). The null hypothesis that the average abnormal stock return during $[0, +1]$ was 0 would be true if stock investors did not find either positive or negative information in the announcement.

Mean abnormal return = -1.87 percent.

z -statistic for abnormal return = -3.359 .

- 1 With respect to both of the cases, suppose that the null hypothesis reflects the belief that investors do not, on average, perceive either positive or negative information in control deficiency disclosures. State one set of hypotheses (a null hypothesis and an alternative hypothesis) that covers both cases.

- 2 Determine whether the null hypothesis formulated in Part 1 is rejected or not rejected at the 0.05 and 0.01 levels of significance for the *full sample* case. Interpret the results.
- 3 Determine whether the null hypothesis formulated in Part 1 is rejected or not rejected at the 0.05 and 0.01 levels of significance for the *clean sample* case. Interpret the results.

Solution to 1:

A set of hypotheses consistent with no information in control deficiency disclosures relevant to stock investors is

H_0 : The population mean abnormal return during $[0, +1]$ equals 0.

H_a : The population mean abnormal return during $[0, +1]$ does not equal 0.

Solution to 2:

From the information on rejection points for z -tests, we know that we reject the null hypothesis at the 0.05 significance level if $z > 1.96$ or if $z < -1.96$, and at the 0.01 significance level if $z > 2.575$ or if $z < -2.575$. The z -statistic reported by the researchers is -5.938 , which is significant at the 0.05 and 0.01 levels. The null is rejected. The control deficiency disclosures appear to contain valuation-relevant information.

Because it is possible that significant results could be due to outliers, the researchers also reported the number of cases of positive and negative abnormal returns. The ratio of cases of positive to negative abnormal returns was 32:58, which tends to support the conclusion from the z -test of statistically significant negative abnormal returns.

Solution to 3:

The z -statistic reported by the researchers for the clean sample is -3.359 , which is significant at the 0.05 and 0.01 levels. Although both the mean abnormal return and the z -statistic are smaller in magnitude for the clean sample than for the full sample, the results continue to be statistically significant.

The ratio of cases of positive to negative abnormal returns was 16:29, which tends to support the conclusion from the z -test of statistically significant negative abnormal returns.

Nearly all practical situations involve an unknown population variance. Table 2 summarizes our discussion for tests concerning the population mean when the population variance is unknown.

Table 2 Test Concerning the Population Mean (Population Variance Unknown)

	Large Sample ($n \geq 30$)	Small Sample ($n < 30$)
Population normal	t -Test (z -Test alternative)	t -Test
Population non-normal	t -Test (z -Test alternative)	Not Available

3.2 Tests Concerning Differences between Means

We often want to know whether a mean value—for example, a mean return—differs between two groups. Is an observed difference due to chance or to different underlying values for the mean? We have two samples, one for each group. When it is reasonable to believe that the samples are from populations at least approximately normally distributed and that the samples are also independent of each other, the techniques of this section apply. We discuss two t -tests for a test concerning differences between the means of two populations. In one case, the population variances, although unknown, can be assumed to be equal. Then, we efficiently combine the observations from both samples to obtain a pooled estimate of the common but unknown population variance. A pooled estimate is an estimate drawn from the combination of two different samples. In the second case, we do not assume that the unknown population variances are equal, and an approximate t -test is then available. Letting μ_1 and μ_2 stand, respectively, for the population means of the first and second populations, we most often want to test whether the population means, although unknown, are equal or whether one is larger than the other. Thus we usually formulate the following hypotheses:

- 1 $H_0: \mu_1 - \mu_2 = 0$ versus $H_a: \mu_1 - \mu_2 \neq 0$ (the alternative is that $\mu_1 \neq \mu_2$)
- 2 $H_0: \mu_1 - \mu_2 \leq 0$ versus $H_a: \mu_1 - \mu_2 > 0$ (the alternative is that $\mu_1 > \mu_2$)
- 3 $H_0: \mu_1 - \mu_2 \geq 0$ versus $H_a: \mu_1 - \mu_2 < 0$ (the alternative is that $\mu_1 < \mu_2$)

We can, however, formulate other hypotheses, such as $H_0: \mu_1 - \mu_2 = 2$ versus $H_a: \mu_1 - \mu_2 \neq 2$. The procedure is the same.

The definition of the t -test follows.

- **Test Statistic for a Test of the Difference between Two Population Means (Normally Distributed Populations, Population Variances Unknown but Assumed Equal).** When we can assume that the two populations are normally distributed and that the unknown population variances are equal, a t -test based on independent random samples is given by

$$t = \frac{(\bar{X}_1 - \bar{X}_2) - (\mu_1 - \mu_2)}{\left(\frac{s_p^2}{n_1} + \frac{s_p^2}{n_2}\right)^{1/2}} \quad (7)$$

where $s_p^2 = \frac{(n_1 - 1)s_1^2 + (n_2 - 1)s_2^2}{n_1 + n_2 - 2}$ is a pooled estimator of the common variance.

The number of degrees of freedom is $n_1 + n_2 - 2$.

EXAMPLE 4

Mean Returns on the S&P 500: A Test of Equality across Two Halves of a Decade

The realized mean monthly return on the S&P 500 Index in the first half of the 2000s appears to have been substantially different than the mean return in the second half of the 2000s. Was the difference statistically significant? The data, shown in Table 3, indicate that assuming equal population variances for returns in the two periods is not unreasonable.

Table 3 S&P 500 Monthly Return and Standard Deviation for Two Halves of a Decade

Time Period	Number of Months (n)	Mean Monthly Return (%)	Standard Deviation
2000 through 2004	60	-0.083	4.719
2005 through 2009	60	0.144	4.632

- 1 Formulate null and alternative hypotheses consistent with a two-sided hypothesis test.
- 2 Identify the test statistic for conducting a test of the hypotheses in Part 1.
- 3 Identify the rejection point or points for the hypothesis tested in Part 1 at the 0.10, 0.05, and 0.01 levels of significance.
- 4 Determine whether the null hypothesis is rejected or not rejected at the 0.10, 0.05, and 0.01 levels of significance.

Solution to 1:

Letting μ_1 stand for the population mean return for the 2000 through 2004 and μ_2 stand for the population mean return for the 2005 through 2009, we formulate the following hypotheses:

$$H_0: \mu_1 - \mu_2 = 0 \text{ versus } H_a: \mu_1 - \mu_2 \neq 0$$

Solution to 2:

Because the two samples are drawn from two different time periods, they are independent samples. The population variances are not known but can be assumed to be equal. Given all these considerations, the t -test given in Equation 7 has $60 + 60 - 2 = 118$ degrees of freedom.

Solution to 3:

In the tables (Appendix B), the closest number of degrees of freedom to 118 is 120. For a two-sided test, the rejection points are ± 1.658 , ± 1.980 , and ± 2.617 for, respectively, the 0.10, 0.05, and 0.01 levels for $df = 120$. To summarize, at the 0.10 level, we will reject the null if $t < -1.658$ or $t > 1.658$; at the 0.05 level, we will reject the null if $t < -1.980$ or $t > 1.980$; and at the 0.01 level, we will reject the null if $t < -2.617$ or $t > 2.617$.

Solution to 4:

In calculating the test statistic, the first step is to calculate the pooled estimate of variance:

$$\begin{aligned}
 s_p^2 &= \frac{(n_1 - 1)s_1^2 + (n_2 - 1)s_2^2}{n_1 + n_2 - 2} = \frac{(60 - 1)(4.719)^2 + (60 - 1)(4.632)^2}{60 + 60 - 2} \\
 &= \frac{2,579.7387}{118} = 21.8622 \\
 t &= \frac{(\bar{X}_1 - \bar{X}_2) - (\mu_1 - \mu_2)}{\left(\frac{s_p^2}{n_1} + \frac{s_p^2}{n_2}\right)^{1/2}} = \frac{(-0.083 - 0.144) - 0}{\left(\frac{21.8622}{60} + \frac{21.8622}{60}\right)^{1/2}} \\
 &= \frac{-0.227}{0.8537} = -0.27
 \end{aligned}$$

The t value of -0.27 is not significant at the 0.10 level, so it is also not significant at the 0.05 and 0.01 levels. Therefore, we do not reject the null hypothesis at any of the three levels.

In many cases of practical interest, we cannot assume that population variances are equal. The following test statistic is often used in the investment literature in such cases:

- **Test Statistic for a Test of the Difference between Two Population Means (Normally Distributed Populations, Unequal and Unknown Population Variances).** When we can assume that the two populations are normally distributed but do not know the population variances and cannot assume that they are equal, an approximate t -test based on independent random samples is given by

$$t = \frac{(\bar{X}_1 - \bar{X}_2) - (\mu_1 - \mu_2)}{\left(\frac{s_1^2}{n_1} + \frac{s_2^2}{n_2}\right)^{1/2}} \quad (8)$$

where we use tables of the t -distribution using “modified” degrees of freedom computed with the formula

$$df = \frac{\left(\frac{s_1^2}{n_1} + \frac{s_2^2}{n_2}\right)^2}{\frac{(s_1^2/n_1)^2}{n_1} + \frac{(s_2^2/n_2)^2}{n_2}} \quad (9)$$

A practical tip is to compute the t -statistic before computing the degrees of freedom. Whether or not the t -statistic is significant will sometimes be obvious.

EXAMPLE 5**Recovery Rates on Defaulted Bonds: A Hypothesis Test**

How are the required yields on risky corporate bonds determined? Two key factors are the expected probability of default and the expected amount that will be recovered in the event of default, or the recovery rate. Jankowitsch, Nagler,

and Subrahmanyam (2014) examine the recovery rates of defaulted bonds in the US corporate bond market based on an extensive set of traded prices and volumes around various types of default events. For their study period, 2002 to 2012, Jankowitsch et al. confirm that the type of default event (e.g., distressed exchanges and formal bankruptcy filings), the seniority of the bond, and the industry of the firm are important in explaining the recovery rate. In one of their analyses, they focus on non-financial firms, and find that electricity firms recover more in default than firms in the retail industry. We want to test if the difference in recovery rates between those two types of firms is statistically significant. With μ_1 denoting the population mean recovery rate for the bonds of electricity firms and μ_2 denoting the population mean recovery rate for the bonds of retail firms, the hypotheses are $H_0: \mu_1 - \mu_2 = 0$ versus $H_a: \mu_1 - \mu_2 \neq 0$.

Table 4 excerpts from their findings.

Table 4 Recovery Rates by Industry of Firm

Electricity			Retail		
Number of Observations	Average Price ^a	Standard Deviation	Number of Observations	Average Price ^a	Standard Deviation
39	\$48.03	\$22.67	33	\$33.40	\$34.19

^a This is the average traded price over the default day and the following 30 days after default; the average price provides an indication of the amount of money that can be recovered.

Source: Jankowitsch, Nagler, and Subrahmanyam (2013), Table 2.

We assume that the populations (recovery rates) are normally distributed and that the samples are independent. Based on the data in the table, address the following:

- 1 Discuss whether we should choose a test based on Equation 8 or Equation 7.
- 2 Calculate the test statistic to test the null hypothesis given above.
- 3 What is the value of the test's modified degrees of freedom?
- 4 Determine whether to reject the null hypothesis at the 0.10 level.

Solution to 1:

The sample standard deviation for the recovery rate on the bonds of electricity firms (\$22.67) appears much smaller than the sample standard deviation of the bonds for retail firms (\$34.19). Therefore, we should not assume equal variances, and accordingly, we should employ the approximate t -test given in Equation 8.

Solution to 2:

The test statistic is

$$t = \frac{(\bar{X}_1 - \bar{X}_2)}{\left(\frac{s_1^2}{n_1} + \frac{s_2^2}{n_2}\right)^{1/2}}$$

where

$$\bar{X}_1 = \text{sample mean recovery rate for electricity firms} = 48.03$$

$$\bar{X}_2 = \text{sample mean recovery rate for retail firms} = 33.40$$

$$s_1^2 = \text{sample variance for electricity firms} = 22.67^2 = 513.9289$$

$$s_2^2 = \text{sample variance for retail firms} = 34.19^2 = 1,168.9561$$

$$n_1 = \text{sample size of the electricity firms sample} = 39$$

$$n_2 = \text{sample size of the retail firms sample} = 33$$

Thus, $t = (48.03 - 33.40)/[(513.9289/39) + (1,168.9561/33)]^{1/2} = 14.63/(13.177664 + 35.422912)^{1/2} = 14.63/6.971411 = 2.099$. The calculated t -statistic is thus 2.099.

Solution to 3:

$$\begin{aligned} df &= \frac{\left(\frac{s_1^2}{n_1} + \frac{s_2^2}{n_2}\right)^2}{\frac{(s_1^2/n_1)^2}{n_1} + \frac{(s_2^2/n_2)^2}{n_2}} = \frac{\left(\frac{513.9289}{39} + \frac{1,168.9561}{33}\right)^2}{\frac{(513.9289/39)^2}{39} + \frac{(1,168.9561/33)^2}{33}} \\ &= \frac{2362.016009}{42.476304} = 55.61 \text{ or } 56 \text{ degrees of freedom} \end{aligned}$$

Solution to 4:

The closest entry to $df = 56$ in the tables for the t -distribution is $df = 60$. For $\alpha = 0.10$, we find $t_{\alpha/2} = 1.671$. Thus, we reject the null if $t < -1.671$ or $t > 1.671$. Based on the computed value of 2.099, we reject the null hypothesis at the 0.10 level. Some evidence exists that recovery rates differ between electricity and retail industries. Why? Studies on recovery rates suggest that the higher recovery rates of electricity firms may be explained by their higher levels of tangible assets.

3.3 Tests Concerning Mean Differences

In the previous section, we presented two t -tests for discerning differences between population means. The tests were based on two samples. An assumption for those tests' validity was that the samples were independent—i.e., unrelated to each other. When we want to conduct tests on two means based on samples that we believe are dependent, the methods of this section apply.

The t -test in this section is based on data arranged in **paired observations**, and the test itself is sometimes called a **paired comparisons test**. Paired observations are observations that are dependent because they have something in common. A paired comparisons test is a statistical test for differences in dependent items. For example, we may be concerned with the dividend policy of companies before and after a change in the tax law affecting the taxation of dividends. We then have pairs of “before” and “after” observations for the same companies. We may test a hypothesis about the mean of the differences (mean differences) that we observe across companies. In other cases, the paired observations are not on the same units. For example, we may be testing whether the mean returns earned by two investment strategies were equal over a study period. The observations here are dependent in the sense that there is one observation for each strategy in each month, and both observations depend on underlying market risk factors. Because the returns to both strategies are likely to

be related to some common risk factors, such as the market return, the samples are dependent. By calculating a standard error based on differences, the t -test presented below takes account of correlation between the observations.

Letting A represent “after” and B “before,” suppose we have observations for the random variables X_A and X_B and that the samples are dependent. We arrange the observations in pairs. Let d_i denote the difference between two paired observations. We can use the notation $d_i = x_{Ai} - x_{Bi}$, where x_{Ai} and x_{Bi} are the i th pair of observations, $i = 1, 2, \dots, n$ on the two variables. Let μ_d stand for the population mean difference. We can formulate the following hypotheses, where μ_{d0} is a hypothesized value for the population mean difference:

- 1 $H_0: \mu_d = \mu_{d0}$ versus $H_a: \mu_d \neq \mu_{d0}$
- 2 $H_0: \mu_d \leq \mu_{d0}$ versus $H_a: \mu_d > \mu_{d0}$
- 3 $H_0: \mu_d \geq \mu_{d0}$ versus $H_a: \mu_d < \mu_{d0}$

In practice, the most commonly used value for μ_{d0} is 0.

As usual, we are concerned with the case of normally distributed populations with unknown population variances, and we will formulate a t -test. To calculate the t -statistic, we first need to find the sample mean difference:

$$\bar{d} = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n d_i \quad (10)$$

where n is the number of pairs of observations. The sample variance, denoted by s_d^2 , is

$$s_d^2 = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^n (d_i - \bar{d})^2}{n - 1} \quad (11)$$

Taking the square root of this quantity, we have the sample standard deviation, s_d , which then allows us to calculate the standard error of the mean difference as follows:²⁴

$$s_{\bar{d}} = \frac{s_d}{\sqrt{n}} \quad (12)$$

- **Test Statistic for a Test of Mean Differences (Normally Distributed Populations, Unknown Population Variances).** When we have data consisting of paired observations from samples generated by normally distributed populations with unknown variances, a t -test is based on

$$t = \frac{\bar{d} - \mu_{d0}}{s_{\bar{d}}} \quad (13)$$

with $n - 1$ degrees of freedom, where n is the number of paired observations, \bar{d} is the sample mean difference (as given by Equation 10), and $s_{\bar{d}}$ is the standard error of \bar{d} (as given by Equation 12).

Table 5 reports the quarterly returns from 2008 to 2013 for two managed portfolios specializing in precious metals. The two portfolios were closely similar in risk (as measured by standard deviation of return and other measures) and had nearly identical expense ratios. A major investment services company rated Portfolio B more highly

²⁴ We can also use the following equivalent expression, which makes use of the correlation between the two variables: $s_{\bar{d}} = \sqrt{s_A^2 + s_B^2 - 2r(X_A, X_B)s_A s_B} / \sqrt{n}$ where s_A^2 is the sample variance of X_A , s_B^2 is the sample variance of X_B , and $r(X_A, X_B)$ is the sample correlation between X_A and X_B .

than Portfolio A in early 2014. In investigating the portfolios' relative performance, suppose we want to test the hypothesis that the mean quarterly return on Portfolio A equaled the mean quarterly return on Portfolio B from 2008 to 2013. Because the two portfolios shared essentially the same set of risk factors, their returns were not independent, so a paired comparisons test is appropriate. Let μ_d stand for the population mean value of difference between the returns on the two portfolios during this period. We test $H_0: \mu_d = 0$ versus $H_a: \mu_d \neq 0$ at a 0.05 significance level.

Table 5 Quarterly Returns on Two Managed Portfolios: 2008–2013

Quarter	Portfolio A (%)	Portfolio B (%)	Difference (Portfolio A – Portfolio B)
4Q:2013	11.40	14.64	-3.24
3Q:2013	-2.17	0.44	-2.61
2Q:2013	10.72	19.51	-8.79
1Q:2013	38.91	50.40	-11.49
4Q:2012	4.36	1.01	3.35
3Q:2012	5.13	10.18	-5.05
2Q:2012	26.36	17.77	8.59
1Q:2012	-5.53	4.76	-10.29
4Q:2011	5.27	-5.36	10.63
3Q:2011	-7.82	-1.54	-6.28
2Q:2011	2.34	0.19	2.15
1Q:2011	-14.38	-12.07	-2.31
4Q:2010	-9.80	-9.98	0.18
3Q:2010	19.03	26.18	-7.15
2Q:2010	4.11	-2.39	6.50
1Q:2010	-4.12	-2.51	-1.61
4Q:2009	-0.53	-11.32	10.79
3Q:2009	5.06	0.46	4.60
2Q:2009	-14.01	-11.56	-2.45
1Q:2009	12.50	3.52	8.98
4Q:2008	-29.05	-22.45	-6.60
3Q:2008	3.60	0.10	3.50
2Q:2008	-7.97	-8.96	0.99
1Q:2008	-8.62	-0.66	-7.96
Mean	1.87	2.52	-0.65

Sample standard deviation of differences = 6.71

The sample mean difference, \bar{d} , between Portfolio A and Portfolio B is -0.65 percent per quarter. The standard error of the sample mean difference is $s_{\bar{d}} = 6.71/\sqrt{24} = 1.369673$. The calculated test statistic is $t = (-0.65 - 0)/1.369673 = -0.475$ with $n - 1 = 24 - 1 = 23$ degrees of freedom. At the 0.05 significance level, we reject the null if $t > 2.069$ or if $t < -2.069$. Because -0.475 is not less than -2.069, we fail to reject the null. At the 0.10 significance level, we reject the null if $t > 1.714$ or if $t < -1.714$. Thus the difference in mean quarterly returns is not significant at any conventional significance level.

The following example illustrates the application of this test to evaluate two competing investment strategies.

EXAMPLE 6

A Comparison of Two Portfolios

You are investigating whether the performance of a portfolio of stocks from the entire world differs from the performance of a portfolio of only US stocks. For the worldwide portfolio, you choose to focus on Vanguard Total World Stock Index ETF. This ETF seeks to track the performance of the FTSE Global All Cap Index, which is a market-capitalization-weighted index designed to measure the market performance of stock of companies from both developed and emerging markets. For the US portfolio, you choose to focus on SPDR S&P 500, and ETF that seeks to track the performance of the S&P 500 Index. You analyze the monthly returns on both ETFs from August 2008 to July 2013 and prepare the following summary table.

Table 6 Monthly Return Summary for Vanguard Total World Stock Index ETF and SPDR S&P 500 ETF: August 2008 to July 2013 ($n = 60$)

Strategy	Mean Return	Standard Deviation
Worldwide	0.61%	5.43%
US	0.39	6.50
Difference	0.22	1.86 ^a

^a Sample standard deviation of differences.

Source of data returns: finance.yahoo.com accessed 20 August 2013.

From Table 6 we have $\bar{d} = 0.22\%$ and $s_d = 1.86\%$.

- 1 Formulate null and alternative hypotheses consistent with a two-sided test that the mean difference between the worldwide and only US strategies equals 0.
- 2 Identify the test statistic for conducting a test of the hypotheses in Part 1.
- 3 Identify the rejection point or points for the hypothesis tested in Part 1 at the 0.01 level of significance.
- 4 Determine whether the null hypothesis is rejected or not rejected at the 0.01 level of significance. (Use the tables in the back of this volume.)
- 5 Discuss the choice of a paired comparisons test.

Solution to 1:

With μ_d as the underlying mean difference between the worldwide and US strategies, we have $H_0: \mu_d = 0$ versus $H_a: \mu_d \neq 0$.

Solution to 2:

Because the population variance is unknown, the test statistic is a t -test with $60 - 1 = 59$ degrees of freedom.

Solution to 3:

In the table for the t -distribution, the closest entry to $df = 59$ is $df = 60$. We look across the row for 60 degrees of freedom to the 0.005 column, to find 2.66. We will reject the null if we find that $t > 2.66$ or $t < -2.66$.

Solution to 4:

$$t_{59} = \frac{0.22}{1.86/\sqrt{60}} = \frac{0.22}{0.240125} = 0.92$$

Because $0.92 < 2.66$, we cannot reject the null hypothesis. Accordingly, we conclude that the difference in mean returns for the two strategies is not statistically significant.

Solution to 5:

Several US stocks that are part of the S&P 500 index are also included in the Vanguard Total World Stock Index ETF. The profile of the World ETF indicates that nine of the top ten holdings in the ETF are US stocks. As a result, they are not independent samples; in general, the correlation of returns on the Vanguard Total World Stock Index ETF and SPDR S&P 500 ETF should be positive. Because the samples are dependent, a paired comparisons test was appropriate.

4

HYPOTHESIS TESTS CONCERNING VARIANCE

Because variance and standard deviation are widely used quantitative measures of risk in investments, analysts should be familiar with hypothesis tests concerning variance. The tests discussed in this section make regular appearances in investment literature. We examine two types: tests concerning the value of a single population variance and tests concerning the differences between two population variances.

4.1 Tests Concerning a Single Variance

In this section, we discuss testing hypotheses about the value of the variance, σ^2 , of a single population. We use σ_0^2 to denote the hypothesized value of σ^2 . We can formulate hypotheses as follows:

- 1 $H_0: \sigma^2 = \sigma_0^2$ versus $H_a: \sigma^2 \neq \sigma_0^2$ (a “not equal to” alternative hypothesis)
- 2 $H_0: \sigma^2 \leq \sigma_0^2$ versus $H_a: \sigma^2 > \sigma_0^2$ (a “greater than” alternative hypothesis)
- 3 $H_0: \sigma^2 \geq \sigma_0^2$ versus $H_a: \sigma^2 < \sigma_0^2$ (a “less than” alternative hypothesis)

In tests concerning the variance of a single normally distributed population, we make use of a chi-square test statistic, denoted χ^2 . The chi-square distribution, unlike the normal and t -distributions, is asymmetrical. Like the t -distribution, the chi-square

distribution is a family of distributions. A different distribution exists for each possible value of degrees of freedom, $n - 1$ (n is sample size). Unlike the t -distribution, the chi-square distribution is bounded below by 0; χ^2 does not take on negative values.

■ **Test Statistic for Tests Concerning the Value of a Population Variance**

(Normal Population). If we have n independent observations from a normally distributed population, the appropriate test statistic is

$$\chi^2 = \frac{(n-1)s^2}{\sigma_0^2} \quad (14)$$

with $n - 1$ degrees of freedom. In the numerator of the expression is the sample variance, calculated as

$$s^2 = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^n (X_i - \bar{X})^2}{n-1} \quad (15)$$

In contrast to the t -test, for example, the chi-square test is sensitive to violations of its assumptions. If the sample is not actually random or if it does not come from a normally distributed population, inferences based on a chi-square test are likely to be faulty.

If we choose a level of significance, α , the rejection points for the three kinds of hypotheses are as follows:

■ **Rejection Points for Hypothesis Tests on the Population Variance.**

- 1 “Not equal to” H_a : Reject the null hypothesis if the test statistic is greater than the upper $\alpha/2$ point (denoted $\chi_{\alpha/2}^2$) or less than the lower $\alpha/2$ point (denoted $\chi_{1-\alpha/2}^2$) of the chi-square distribution with $df = n - 1$.²⁵
- 2 “Greater than” H_a : Reject the null hypothesis if the test statistic is greater than the upper α point of the chi-square distribution with $df = n - 1$.
- 3 “Less than” H_a : Reject the null hypothesis if the test statistic is less than the lower α point of the chi-square distribution with $df = n - 1$.

EXAMPLE 7

Risk and Return Characteristics of an Equity Mutual Fund (2)

You continue with your analysis of Sendar Equity Fund, a midcap growth fund that has been in existence for only 24 months. Recall that during this period, Sendar Equity achieved a sample standard deviation of monthly returns of

²⁵ Just as with other hypothesis tests, the chi-square test can be given a confidence interval interpretation. Unlike confidence intervals based on z - or t -statistics, however, chi-square confidence intervals for variance are asymmetric. A two-sided confidence interval for population variance, based on a sample of size n , has a lower limit $L = (n-1)s^2 / \chi_{\alpha/2}^2$ and an upper limit $U = (n-1)s^2 / \chi_{1-\alpha/2}^2$. Under the null hypothesis, the hypothesized value of the population variance should fall within these two limits.

3.60 percent. You now want to test a claim that the particular investment disciplines followed by Sendar result in a standard deviation of monthly returns of less than 4 percent.

- 1 Formulate null and alternative hypotheses consistent with the verbal description of the research goal.
- 2 Identify the test statistic for conducting a test of the hypotheses in Part 1.
- 3 Identify the rejection point or points for the hypothesis tested in Part 1 at the 0.05 level of significance.
- 4 Determine whether the null hypothesis is rejected or not rejected at the 0.05 level of significance. (Use the tables in the back of this volume.)

Solution to 1:

We have a “less than” alternative hypothesis, where σ is the underlying standard deviation of return on Sendar Equity Fund. Being careful to square standard deviation to obtain a test in terms of variance, the hypotheses are $H_0: \sigma^2 \geq 16.0$ versus $H_a: \sigma^2 < 16.0$.

Solution to 2:

The test statistic is χ^2 with $24 - 1 = 23$ degrees of freedom.

Solution to 3:

The lower 0.05 rejection point is found on the line for $df = 23$, under the 0.95 column (95 percent probability in the right tail, to give 0.95 probability of getting a test statistic this large or larger). The rejection point is 13.091. We will reject the null if we find that χ^2 is less than 13.091.

Solution to 4:

$$\chi^2 = \frac{(n-1)s^2}{\sigma_0^2} = \frac{23 \times 3.60^2}{4^2} = \frac{298.08}{16} = 18.63$$

Because 18.63 (the calculated value of the test statistic) is not less than 13.091, we do not reject the null hypothesis. We cannot conclude that Sendar’s investment disciplines result in a standard deviation of monthly returns of less than 4 percent.

4.2 Tests Concerning the Equality (Inequality) of Two Variances

Suppose we have a hypothesis about the relative values of the variances of two normally distributed populations with means μ_1 and μ_2 and variances σ_1^2 and σ_2^2 . We can formulate all hypotheses as one of the choices below:

- 1 $H_0: \sigma_1^2 = \sigma_2^2$ versus $H_a: \sigma_1^2 \neq \sigma_2^2$
- 2 $H_0: \sigma_1^2 \leq \sigma_2^2$ versus $H_a: \sigma_1^2 > \sigma_2^2$
- 3 $H_0: \sigma_1^2 \geq \sigma_2^2$ versus $H_a: \sigma_1^2 < \sigma_2^2$

Note that at the point of equality, the null hypothesis $\sigma_1^2 = \sigma_2^2$ implies that the ratio of population variances equals 1: $\sigma_1^2 / \sigma_2^2 = 1$. Given independent random samples from these populations, tests related to these hypotheses are based on an F -test, which is the ratio of sample variances. Suppose we use n_1 observations in calculating the sample variance s_1^2 and n_2 observations in calculating the sample variance s_2^2 . Tests concerning the difference between the variances of two populations make use of the

F-distribution. Like the chi-square distribution, the *F*-distribution is a family of asymmetrical distributions bounded from below by 0. Each *F*-distribution is defined by two values of degrees of freedom, called the numerator and denominator degrees of freedom.²⁶ The *F*-test, like the chi-square test, is not robust to violations of its assumptions.

- **Test Statistic for Tests Concerning Differences between the Variances of Two Populations (Normally Distributed Populations).** Suppose we have two samples, the first with n_1 observations and sample variance s_1^2 , the second with n_2 observations and sample variance s_2^2 . The samples are random, independent of each other, and generated by normally distributed populations. A test concerning differences between the variances of the two populations is based on the ratio of sample variances

$$F = \frac{s_1^2}{s_2^2} \quad (16)$$

with $df_1 = n_1 - 1$ numerator degrees of freedom and $df_2 = n_2 - 1$ denominator degrees of freedom. Note that df_1 and df_2 are the divisors used in calculating s_1^2 and s_2^2 , respectively.

A convention, or usual practice, is to use the larger of the two ratios s_1^2/s_2^2 or s_2^2/s_1^2 as the actual test statistic. When we follow this convention, the value of the test statistic is always greater than or equal to 1; tables of critical values of *F* then need include only values greater than or equal to 1. Under this convention, the rejection point for any formulation of hypotheses is a single value in the right-hand side of the relevant *F*-distribution. Note that the labeling of populations as “1” or “2” is arbitrary in any case.

- **Rejection Points for Hypothesis Tests on the Relative Values of Two Population Variances.** Follow the convention of using the larger of the two ratios s_1^2/s_2^2 and s_2^2/s_1^2 and consider two cases:
 - 1 A “not equal to” alternative hypothesis: Reject the null hypothesis at the α significance level if the test statistic is greater than the upper $\alpha/2$ point of the *F*-distribution with the specified numerator and denominator degrees of freedom.
 - 2 A “greater than” or “less than” alternative hypothesis: Reject the null hypothesis at the α significance level if the test statistic is greater than the upper α point of the *F*-distribution with the specified number of numerator and denominator degrees of freedom.

Thus, if we conduct a two-sided test at the $\alpha = 0.01$ level of significance, we need to find the rejection point in *F*-tables at the $\alpha/2 = 0.01/2 = 0.005$ significance level for a one-sided test (Case 1). But a one-sided test at 0.01 uses rejection points in *F*-tables for $\alpha = 0.01$ (Case 2). As an example, suppose we are conducting a two-sided test at the 0.05 significance level. We calculate a value of *F* of 2.77 with 12 numerator and 19

²⁶ The relationship between the chi-square and *F*-distributions is as follows: If χ_1^2 is one chi-square random variable with m degrees of freedom and χ_2^2 is another chi-square random variable with n degrees of freedom, then $F = (\chi_1^2/m)/(\chi_2^2/n)$ follows an *F*-distribution with m numerator and n denominator degrees of freedom.

denominator degrees of freedom. Using the F -tables for $0.05/2 = 0.025$ in the back of the volume, we find that the rejection point is 2.72. Because the value 2.77 is greater than 2.72, we reject the null hypothesis at the 0.05 significance level.

If the convention stated above is not followed and we are given a calculated value of F less than 1, can we still use F -tables? The answer is yes; using a reciprocal property of F -statistics, we can calculate the needed value. The easiest way to present this property is to show a calculation. Suppose our chosen level of significance is 0.05 for a two-tailed test and we have a value of F of 0.11, with 7 numerator degrees of freedom and 9 denominator degrees of freedom. We take the reciprocal, $1/0.11 = 9.09$. Then we look up this value in the F -tables for 0.025 (because it is a two-tailed test) with degrees of freedom reversed: F for 9 numerator and 7 denominator degrees of freedom. In other words, $F_{9,7} = 1/F_{7,9}$ and 9.09 exceeds the critical value of 4.82, so $F_{7,9} = 0.11$ is significant at the 0.05 level.

EXAMPLE 8

Volatility and the Global Financial Crisis of the Late 2000s

You are investigating whether the population variance of returns on the KOSPI Index of the South Korean stock market changed subsequent to the global financial crisis that peaked in 2008. For this investigation, you are considering 2004 to 2006 as the pre-crisis period and 2010 to 2012 as the post-crisis period. You gather the data in Table 7 for 156 weeks of returns during 2004 to 2006 and 156 weeks of returns during 2010 to 2012. You have specified a 0.01 level of significance.

Table 7 KOSPI Index Returns and Variance before and after the Global Financial Crisis of the Late 2000s

	n	Mean Weekly Return (%)	Variance of Returns
Before crisis: 2004 to 2006	156	0.358	7.240
After crisis: 2010 to 2012	156	0.110	6.269

Source of data for returns: finance.yahoo.com accessed 27 August 2013.

- 1 Formulate null and alternative hypotheses consistent with the verbal description of the research goal.
- 2 Identify the test statistic for conducting a test of the hypotheses in Part 1.
- 3 Determine whether or not to reject the null hypothesis at the 0.01 level of significance. (Use the F -tables in the back of this volume.)

Solution to 1:

We have a “not equal to” alternative hypothesis:

$$H_0: \sigma_{\text{Before}}^2 = \sigma_{\text{After}}^2 \text{ versus } H_a: \sigma_{\text{Before}}^2 \neq \sigma_{\text{After}}^2$$

Solution to 2:

To test a null hypothesis of the equality of two variances, we use $F = s_1^2 / s_2^2$ with $156 - 1 = 155$ numerator and denominator degrees of freedom.

Solution to 3:

The “before” sample variance is larger, so following a convention for calculating F -statistics, the “before” sample variance goes in the numerator: $F = 7.240/6.269 = 1.155$. Because this is a two-tailed test, we use F -tables for the 0.005 level ($= 0.01/2$) to give a 0.01 significance level. In the tables in the back of the volume, the closest value to 155 degrees of freedom is 120 degrees of freedom. At the 0.01 level, the rejection point is 1.61. Because 1.155 is less than the critical value 1.61, we cannot reject the null hypothesis that the population variance of returns is the same in the pre- and post-global financial crisis periods.

EXAMPLE 9**The Volatility of Derivatives Expiration Days**

Since 2001, the financial markets in the United States have seen the quadruple occurrence of stock option, index option, index futures, and single stock futures expirations on the same day during four months of the year. Such days are known as “quadruple witching days.” You are interested in investigating whether quadruple witching days exhibit greater volatility than normal days. Table 8 presents the daily standard deviation of return for normal days and options/futures expiration days during the four-year period 20X3 to 20X6. The tabled data refer to options and futures on the 30 stocks that constitute the Dow Jones Industrial Average.

Table 8 Standard Deviation of Return: 20X3 to 20X6

Type of Day	n	Standard Deviation (%)
Normal trading	138	0.821
Options/futures expiration	16	1.217

- 1 Formulate null and alternative hypotheses consistent with the belief that quadruple witching days display above-normal volatility.
- 2 Identify the test statistic for conducting a test of the hypotheses in Part 1.
- 3 Determine whether or not to reject the null hypothesis at the 0.05 level of significance. (Use the F -tables in the back of this volume.)

Solution to 1:

We have a “greater than” alternative hypothesis:

$$H_0: \sigma_{\text{Expirations}}^2 \leq \sigma_{\text{Normal}}^2 \text{ versus } H_a: \sigma_{\text{Expirations}}^2 > \sigma_{\text{Normal}}^2$$

Solution to 2:

Let σ_1^2 represent the variance of quadruple witching days, and σ_2^2 represent the variance of normal days, following the convention for the selection of the numerator and the denominator stated earlier. To test the null hypothesis, we use $F = s_1^2/s_2^2$ with $16 - 1 = 15$ numerator and $138 - 1 = 137$ denominator degrees of freedom.

Solution to 3:

$F = (1.217)^2 / (0.821)^2 = 1.481 / 0.674 = 2.20$. Because this is a one-tailed test at the 0.05 significance level, we use F -tables for the 0.05 level directly. In the tables in the back of the volume, the closest value to 137 degrees of freedom is 120 degrees of freedom. At the 0.05 level, the rejection point is 1.75. Because 2.20 is greater than 1.75, we reject the null hypothesis. It appears that quadruple witching days have above-normal volatility.

5

OTHER ISSUES: NONPARAMETRIC INFERENCE

The hypothesis-testing procedures we have discussed to this point have two characteristics in common. First, they are concerned with parameters, and second, their validity depends on a definite set of assumptions. Mean and variance, for example, are two parameters, or defining quantities, of a normal distribution. The tests also make specific assumptions—in particular, assumptions about the distribution of the population producing the sample. Any test or procedure with either of the above two characteristics is a **parametric test** or procedure. In some cases, however, we are concerned about quantities other than parameters of distributions. In other cases, we may believe that the assumptions of parametric tests do not hold for the particular data we have. In such cases, a nonparametric test or procedure can be useful. A **nonparametric test** is a test that is not concerned with a parameter, or a test that makes minimal assumptions about the population from which the sample comes.²⁷

We primarily use nonparametric procedures in three situations: when the data we use do not meet distributional assumptions, when the data are given in ranks, or when the hypothesis we are addressing does not concern a parameter.

The first situation occurs when the data available for analysis suggest that the distributional assumptions of the parametric test are not satisfied. For example, we may want to test a hypothesis concerning the mean of a population but believe that neither a t -test nor a z -test is appropriate because the sample is small and may come from a markedly non-normally distributed population. In that case, we may use a nonparametric test. The nonparametric test will frequently involve the conversion of observations (or a function of observations) into ranks according to magnitude, and sometimes it will involve working with only “greater than” or “less than” relationships (using the signs + and – to denote those relationships). Characteristically, one must refer to specialized statistical tables to determine the rejection points of the test statistic, at least for small samples.²⁸ Such tests, then, typically interpret the null hypothesis as a thesis about ranks or signs. In Table 9, we give examples of nonparametric alternatives to the parametric tests we have discussed in this reading.²⁹ The reader should consult a comprehensive business statistics textbook for an introduction to such tests, and a specialist textbook for details.³⁰

²⁷ Some writers make a distinction between “nonparametric” and “distribution-free” tests. They refer to procedures that do not concern the parameters of a distribution as nonparametric and to procedures that make minimal assumptions about the underlying distribution as distribution free. We follow a commonly accepted, inclusive usage of the term nonparametric.

²⁸ For large samples, there is often a transformation of the test statistic that permits the use of tables for the standard normal or t -distribution.

²⁹ In some cases, there are several nonparametric alternatives to a parametric test.

³⁰ See, for example, Hettmansperger and McKean (2010) or Siegel and Castellan (1988).

Table 9 Nonparametric Alternatives to Parametric Tests

	Parametric	Nonparametric
Tests concerning a single mean	t -test z -test	Wilcoxon signed-rank test
Tests concerning differences between means	t -test Approximate t -test	Mann–Whitney U test
Tests concerning mean differences (paired comparisons tests)	t -test	Wilcoxon signed-rank test Sign test

We pointed out that when we use nonparametric tests, we often convert the original data into ranks. In some cases, the original data are already ranked. In those cases, we also use nonparametric tests because parametric tests generally require a stronger measurement scale than ranks. For example, if our data were the rankings of investment managers, hypotheses concerning those rankings would be tested using nonparametric procedures. Ranked data also appear in many other finance contexts. For example, Heaney, Koga, Oliver, and Tran (1999) studied the relationship between the size of Japanese companies (as measured by revenue) and their use of derivatives. The companies studied used derivatives to hedge one or more of five types of risk exposure: interest rate risk, foreign exchange risk, commodity price risk, marketable security price risk, and credit risk. The researchers gave a “perceived scope of risk exposure” score to each company that was equal to the number of types of risk exposure that the company reported hedging. Although revenue is measured on a strong scale (a ratio scale), scope of risk exposure is measured on only an ordinal scale.³¹ The researchers thus employed nonparametric statistics to explore the relationship between derivatives usage and size.

A third situation in which we use nonparametric procedures occurs when our question does not concern a parameter. For example, if the question concerns whether a sample is random or not, we use the appropriate nonparametric test (a so-called runs test). Another type of question nonparametrics can address is whether a sample came from a population following a particular probability distribution (using the Kolmogorov–Smirnov test, for example).

We end this reading by describing in some detail a nonparametric statistic that has often been used in investment research, the Spearman rank correlation.

5.1 Tests Concerning Correlation: The Spearman Rank Correlation Coefficient

In many contexts in investments, we want to assess the strength of the linear relationship between two variables—the correlation between them. In a majority of cases, we use the correlation coefficient described in the readings on probability concepts and correlation and regression. However, the t -test of the hypothesis that two variables are uncorrelated, based on the correlation coefficient, relies on fairly stringent assumptions.³² When we believe that the population under consideration meaningfully

³¹ We discussed scales of measurement in the reading on statistical concepts and market returns.

³² The t -test is described in the reading on correlation and regression. The assumption of the test is that each observation (x, y) on the two variables (X, Y) is a random observation from a bivariate normal distribution. Informally, in a bivariate or two-variable normal distribution, each individual variable is normally distributed and their joint relationship is completely described by the correlation, ρ , between them. For more details, see, for example, Daniel and Terrell (1995).

departs from those assumptions, we can employ a test based on the **Spearman rank correlation coefficient**, r_s . The Spearman rank correlation coefficient is essentially equivalent to the usual correlation coefficient calculated on the *ranks* of the two variables (say X and Y) within their respective samples. Thus it is a number between -1 and $+1$, where -1 ($+1$) denotes a perfect inverse (positive) straight-line relationship between the variables and 0 represents the absence of any straight-line relationship (no correlation). The calculation of r_s requires the following steps:

- 1 Rank the observations on X from largest to smallest. Assign the number 1 to the observation with the largest value, the number 2 to the observation with second-largest value, and so on. In case of ties, we assign to each tied observation the average of the ranks that they jointly occupy. For example, if the third- and fourth-largest values are tied, we assign both observations the rank of 3.5 (the average of 3 and 4). Perform the same procedure for the observations on Y .
- 2 Calculate the difference, d_i , between the ranks of each pair of observations on X and Y .
- 3 Then, with n the sample size, the Spearman rank correlation is given by³³

$$r_s = 1 - \frac{6 \sum_{i=1}^n d_i^2}{n(n^2 - 1)} \quad (17)$$

Suppose an investor wants to invest in a diversified emerging markets mutual fund. He has narrowed the field to 10 such funds, which are the largest in terms of total net assets. In examining the funds, a question arises as to whether the funds' most recent reported Sharpe ratios and expense ratios as of mid-2013 are related. Because the assumptions of the t -test on the correlation coefficient may not be met, it is appropriate to conduct a test on the rank correlation coefficient.³⁴ Table 10 presents the calculation of r_s . The first two rows contain the original data. The row of X ranks converts the Sharpe ratios to ranks; the row of Y ranks converts the expense ratios to ranks. We want to test $H_0: \rho = 0$ versus $H_a: \rho \neq 0$, where ρ is defined in this context as the population correlation of X and Y after ranking. For small samples, the rejection points for the test based on r_s must be looked up in Table 11. For large samples (say $n > 30$), we can conduct a t -test using

$$t = \frac{(n-2)^{1/2} r_s}{(1-r_s^2)^{1/2}} \quad (18)$$

based on $n - 2$ degrees of freedom.

³³ Calculating the usual correlation coefficient on the ranks would yield approximately the same result as Equation 17.

³⁴ The expense ratio (the ratio of a fund's operating expenses to average net assets) is bounded both from below (by zero) and from above. The Sharpe ratio is also observed within a limited range, in practice. Thus neither variable can be normally distributed, and hence jointly they cannot follow a bivariate normal distribution. In short, the assumptions of a t -test are not met.

Table 10 The Spearman Rank Correlation: An Example

	Mutual Fund									
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
Sharpe Ratio (X)	0.05	0.40	0.38	0.21	0.43	0.16	0.40	0.58	0.14	0.25
Expense Ratio (Y)	0.61	1.03	1.36	1.10	1.07	0.68	1.10	1.37	1.27	1.25
X Rank	10	3.5	5	7	2	8	3.5	1	9	6
Y Rank	10	8	2	5.5	7	9	5.5	1	3	4
d_i	0.0	-4.5	3	1.5	-5	-1	-2	0	6	2
d_i^2	0.0	20.25	9	2.25	25	1	4	0	36	4

$$r_s = 1 - \frac{6 \sum d_i^2}{n(n^2 - 1)} = 1 - \frac{6(101.5)}{10(100 - 1)} = 0.3848$$

Source of Sharpe and Expense Ratios: http://markets.on.nytimes.com/research/screener/mutual_funds/mutual_funds.asp accessed 20 August 2013.

In the example at hand, a two-tailed test with a 0.05 significance level, Table 11 gives the upper-tail rejection point for $n = 10$ as 0.6364 (we use the 0.025 column for a two-tailed test at a 0.05 significance level). Accordingly, we reject the null hypothesis if r_S is less than -0.6364 or greater than 0.6364. With r_S equal to 0.3848, we do not reject the null hypothesis.

**Table 11 Spearman Rank Correlation Distribution
Approximate Upper-Tail Rejection Points**

Sample Size: n	$\alpha = 0.05$	$\alpha = 0.025$	$\alpha = 0.01$
5	0.8000	0.9000	0.9000
6	0.7714	0.8286	0.8857
7	0.6786	0.7450	0.8571
8	0.6190	0.7143	0.8095
9	0.5833	0.6833	0.7667
10	0.5515	0.6364	0.7333
11	0.5273	0.6091	0.7000
12	0.4965	0.5804	0.6713
13	0.4780	0.5549	0.6429
14	0.4593	0.5341	0.6220
15	0.4429	0.5179	0.6000
16	0.4265	0.5000	0.5824
17	0.4118	0.4853	0.5637
18	0.3994	0.4716	0.5480
19	0.3895	0.4579	0.5333
20	0.3789	0.4451	0.5203
21	0.3688	0.4351	0.5078

(continued)

Table 11 (Continued)

Sample Size: n	$\alpha = 0.05$	$\alpha = 0.025$	$\alpha = 0.01$
22	0.3597	0.4241	0.4963
23	0.3518	0.4150	0.4852
24	0.3435	0.4061	0.4748
25	0.3362	0.3977	0.4654
26	0.3299	0.3894	0.4564
27	0.3236	0.3822	0.4481
28	0.3175	0.3749	0.4401
29	0.3113	0.3685	0.4320
30	0.3059	0.3620	0.4251

Note: The corresponding lower tail critical value is obtained by changing the sign of the upper-tail critical value.

In the mutual fund example, we converted observations on two variables into ranks. If one or both of the original variables were in the form of ranks, we would need to use r_s to investigate correlation.

5.2 Nonparametric Inference: Summary

Nonparametric statistical procedures extend the reach of inference because they make few assumptions, can be used on ranked data, and may address questions unrelated to parameters. Quite frequently, nonparametric tests are reported alongside parametric tests. The reader can then assess how sensitive the statistical conclusion is to the assumptions underlying the parametric test. However, if the assumptions of the parametric test are met, the parametric test (where available) is generally preferred to the nonparametric test because the parametric test usually permits us to draw sharper conclusions.³⁵ For complete coverage of all the nonparametric procedures that may be encountered in the finance and investment literature, it is best to consult a specialist textbook.³⁶

SUMMARY

In this reading, we have presented the concepts and methods of statistical inference and hypothesis testing.

- A hypothesis is a statement about one or more populations.
- The steps in testing a hypothesis are as follows:
 - 1 Stating the hypotheses.
 - 2 Identifying the appropriate test statistic and its probability distribution.
 - 3 Specifying the significance level.
 - 4 Stating the decision rule.

³⁵ To use a concept introduced in an earlier section, the parametric test is often more powerful.

³⁶ See, for example, Hettmansperger and McKean (2010) or Siegel and Castellan (1988).

- 5 Collecting the data and calculating the test statistic.
 - 6 Making the statistical decision.
 - 7 Making the economic or investment decision.
- We state two hypotheses: The null hypothesis is the hypothesis to be tested; the alternative hypothesis is the hypothesis accepted when the null hypothesis is rejected.
 - There are three ways to formulate hypotheses:
 - 1 $H_0: \theta = \theta_0$ versus $H_a: \theta \neq \theta_0$
 - 2 $H_0: \theta \leq \theta_0$ versus $H_a: \theta > \theta_0$
 - 3 $H_0: \theta \geq \theta_0$ versus $H_a: \theta < \theta_0$

where θ_0 is a hypothesized value of the population parameter and θ is the true value of the population parameter. In the above, Formulation 1 is a two-sided test and Formulations 2 and 3 are one-sided tests.
 - When we have a “suspected” or “hoped for” condition for which we want to find supportive evidence, we frequently set up that condition as the alternative hypothesis and use a one-sided test. To emphasize a neutral attitude, however, the researcher may select a “not equal to” alternative hypothesis and conduct a two-sided test.
 - A test statistic is a quantity, calculated on the basis of a sample, whose value is the basis for deciding whether to reject or not reject the null hypothesis. To decide whether to reject, or not to reject, the null hypothesis, we compare the computed value of the test statistic to a critical value (rejection point) for the same test statistic.
 - In reaching a statistical decision, we can make two possible errors: We may reject a true null hypothesis (a Type I error), or we may fail to reject a false null hypothesis (a Type II error).
 - The level of significance of a test is the probability of a Type I error that we accept in conducting a hypothesis test. The probability of a Type I error is denoted by the Greek letter alpha, α . The standard approach to hypothesis testing involves specifying a level of significance (probability of Type I error) only.
 - The power of a test is the probability of correctly rejecting the null (rejecting the null when it is false).
 - A decision rule consists of determining the rejection points (critical values) with which to compare the test statistic to decide whether to reject or not to reject the null hypothesis. When we reject the null hypothesis, the result is said to be statistically significant.
 - The $(1 - \alpha)$ confidence interval represents the range of values of the test statistic for which the null hypothesis will not be rejected at an α significance level.
 - The statistical decision consists of rejecting or not rejecting the null hypothesis. The economic decision takes into consideration all economic issues pertinent to the decision.
 - The p -value is the smallest level of significance at which the null hypothesis can be rejected. The smaller the p -value, the stronger the evidence against the null hypothesis and in favor of the alternative hypothesis. The p -value approach to hypothesis testing does not involve setting a significance level; rather it involves computing a p -value for the test statistic and allowing the consumer of the research to interpret its significance.

- For hypothesis tests concerning the population mean of a normally distributed population with unknown (known) variance, the theoretically correct test statistic is the t -statistic (z -statistic). In the unknown variance case, given large samples (generally, samples of 30 or more observations), the z -statistic may be used in place of the t -statistic because of the force of the central limit theorem.
- The t -distribution is a symmetrical distribution defined by a single parameter: degrees of freedom. Compared to the standard normal distribution, the t -distribution has fatter tails.
- When we want to test whether the observed difference between two means is statistically significant, we must first decide whether the samples are independent or dependent (related). If the samples are independent, we conduct tests concerning differences between means. If the samples are dependent, we conduct tests of mean differences (paired comparisons tests).
- When we conduct a test of the difference between two population means from normally distributed populations with unknown variances, if we can assume the variances are equal, we use a t -test based on pooling the observations of the two samples to estimate the common (but unknown) variance. This test is based on an assumption of independent samples.
- When we conduct a test of the difference between two population means from normally distributed populations with unknown variances, if we cannot assume that the variances are equal, we use an approximate t -test using modified degrees of freedom given by a formula. This test is based on an assumption of independent samples.
- In tests concerning two means based on two samples that are not independent, we often can arrange the data in paired observations and conduct a test of mean differences (a paired comparisons test). When the samples are from normally distributed populations with unknown variances, the appropriate test statistic is a t -statistic. The denominator of the t -statistic, the standard error of the mean differences, takes account of correlation between the samples.
- In tests concerning the variance of a single, normally distributed population, the test statistic is chi-square (χ^2) with $n - 1$ degrees of freedom, where n is sample size.
- For tests concerning differences between the variances of two normally distributed populations based on two random, independent samples, the appropriate test statistic is based on an F -test (the ratio of the sample variances).
- The F -statistic is defined by the numerator and denominator degrees of freedom. The numerator degrees of freedom (number of observations in the sample minus 1) is the divisor used in calculating the sample variance in the numerator. The denominator degrees of freedom (number of observations in the sample minus 1) is the divisor used in calculating the sample variance in the denominator. In forming an F -test, a convention is to use the larger of the two ratios, s_1^2/s_2^2 or s_2^2/s_1^2 , as the actual test statistic.
- A parametric test is a hypothesis test concerning a parameter or a hypothesis test based on specific distributional assumptions. In contrast, a nonparametric test either is not concerned with a parameter or makes minimal assumptions about the population from which the sample comes.
- A nonparametric test is primarily used in three situations: when data do not meet distributional assumptions, when data are given in ranks, or when the hypothesis we are addressing does not concern a parameter.
- The Spearman rank correlation coefficient is calculated on the ranks of two variables within their respective samples.

REFERENCES

- Bowerman, Bruce L., Richard T. O'Connell, and Emily S. Murphree. 2016. *Business Statistics in Practice*, 8th edition. New York: McGraw-Hill/Irwin.
- Daniel, Wayne W., and James C. Terrell. 1995. *Business Statistics for Management & Economics*, 7th edition. Boston: Houghton-Mifflin.
- Davidson, Russell, and James G. MacKinnon. 1993. *Estimation and Inference in Econometrics*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Dimson, Elroy, Paul Marsh, and Mike Staunton. 2011. "Equity Premiums around the World." In *Rethinking the Equity Risk Premium*. Charlottesville, VA: Research Foundation of CFA Institute.
- Freeley, Austin J., and David L. Steinberg. 2013. *Argumentation and Debate: Critical Thinking for Reasoned Decision Making*, 13th edition. Boston, MA: Wadsworth Cengage Learning.
- Gupta, Parveen P, and Nandkumar Nayar. 2007. "Information Content of Control Deficiency Disclosures under the Sarbanes-Oxley Act: An Empirical Investigation." *International Journal of Disclosure and Governance*, vol. 4:3–23.
- Heaney, Richard, Chitoshi Koga, Barry Oliver, and Alfred Tran. 1999. "The Size Effect and Derivative Usage in Japan." Working paper: The Australian National University.
- Hettmansperger, Thomas P., and Joseph W. McKean. 2010. *Robust Nonparametric Statistical Methods*, 2nd edition. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press.
- Jankowitsch, Rainer, Florian Nagler, and Marti G. Subrahmanyam. 2014. "The Determinants of Recovery Rates in the US Corporate Bond Market." *Journal of Financial Economics*, vol. 114, no. 1:155–177.
- Moore, David S., George P. McCabe, and Bruce Craig. 2016. *Introduction to the Practice of Statistics*, 9th edition. New York: W.H. Freeman.
- Siegel, Sidney, and N. John Castellan. 1988. *Nonparametric Statistics for the Behavioral Sciences*, 2nd edition. New York: McGraw-Hill.

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

- 1 Which of the following statements about hypothesis testing is correct?
 - A The null hypothesis is the condition a researcher hopes to support.
 - B The alternative hypothesis is the proposition considered true without conclusive evidence to the contrary.
 - C The alternative hypothesis exhausts all potential parameter values not accounted for by the null hypothesis.

- 2 Identify the appropriate test statistic or statistics for conducting the following hypothesis tests. (Clearly identify the test statistic and, if applicable, the number of degrees of freedom. For example, “We conduct the test using an x -statistic with y degrees of freedom.”)
 - A $H_0: \mu = 0$ versus $H_a: \mu \neq 0$, where μ is the mean of a normally distributed population with unknown variance. The test is based on a sample of 15 observations.
 - B $H_0: \mu = 0$ versus $H_a: \mu \neq 0$, where μ is the mean of a normally distributed population with unknown variance. The test is based on a sample of 40 observations.
 - C $H_0: \mu \leq 0$ versus $H_a: \mu > 0$, where μ is the mean of a normally distributed population with known variance σ^2 . The sample size is 45.
 - D $H_0: \sigma^2 = 200$ versus $H_a: \sigma^2 \neq 200$, where σ^2 is the variance of a normally distributed population. The sample size is 50.
 - E $H_0: \sigma_1^2 = \sigma_2^2$ versus $H_a: \sigma_1^2 \neq \sigma_2^2$, where σ_1^2 is the variance of one normally distributed population and σ_2^2 is the variance of a second normally distributed population. The test is based on two independent random samples.
 - F $H_0: (\text{Population mean 1}) - (\text{Population mean 2}) = 0$ versus $H_a: (\text{Population mean 1}) - (\text{Population mean 2}) \neq 0$, where the samples are drawn from normally distributed populations with unknown variances. The observations in the two samples are correlated.
 - G $H_0: (\text{Population mean 1}) - (\text{Population mean 2}) = 0$ versus $H_a: (\text{Population mean 1}) - (\text{Population mean 2}) \neq 0$, where the samples are drawn from normally distributed populations with unknown but assumed equal variances. The observations in the two samples (of size 25 and 30, respectively) are independent.

- 3 For each of the following hypothesis tests concerning the population mean, μ , state the rejection point condition or conditions for the test statistic (e.g., $t > 1.25$); n denotes sample size.
 - A $H_0: \mu = 10$ versus $H_a: \mu \neq 10$, using a t -test with $n = 26$ and $\alpha = 0.05$
 - B $H_0: \mu = 10$ versus $H_a: \mu \neq 10$, using a t -test with $n = 40$ and $\alpha = 0.01$
 - C $H_0: \mu \leq 10$ versus $H_a: \mu > 10$, using a t -test with $n = 40$ and $\alpha = 0.01$
 - D $H_0: \mu \leq 10$ versus $H_a: \mu > 10$, using a t -test with $n = 21$ and $\alpha = 0.05$
 - E $H_0: \mu \geq 10$ versus $H_a: \mu < 10$, using a t -test with $n = 19$ and $\alpha = 0.10$
 - F $H_0: \mu \geq 10$ versus $H_a: \mu < 10$, using a t -test with $n = 50$ and $\alpha = 0.05$

- 4 For each of the following hypothesis tests concerning the population mean, μ , state the rejection point condition or conditions for the test statistic (e.g., $z > 1.25$); n denotes sample size.
- A $H_0: \mu = 10$ versus $H_a: \mu \neq 10$, using a z -test with $n = 50$ and $\alpha = 0.01$
 - B $H_0: \mu = 10$ versus $H_a: \mu \neq 10$, using a z -test with $n = 50$ and $\alpha = 0.05$
 - C $H_0: \mu = 10$ versus $H_a: \mu \neq 10$, using a z -test with $n = 50$ and $\alpha = 0.10$
 - D $H_0: \mu \leq 10$ versus $H_a: \mu > 10$, using a z -test with $n = 50$ and $\alpha = 0.05$
- 5 Willco is a manufacturer in a mature cyclical industry. During the most recent industry cycle, its net income averaged \$30 million per year with a standard deviation of \$10 million ($n = 6$ observations). Management claims that Willco's performance during the most recent cycle results from new approaches and that we can dismiss profitability expectations based on its average or normalized earnings of \$24 million per year in prior cycles.
- A With μ as the population value of mean annual net income, formulate null and alternative hypotheses consistent with testing Willco management's claim.
 - B Assuming that Willco's net income is at least approximately normally distributed, identify the appropriate test statistic.
 - C Identify the rejection point or points at the 0.05 level of significance for the hypothesis tested in Part A.
 - D Determine whether or not to reject the null hypothesis at the 0.05 significance level.

The following information relates to Questions 6–7

Performance in Forecasting Quarterly Earnings per Share

	Number of Forecasts	Mean Forecast Error (Predicted – Actual)	Standard Deviations of Forecast Errors
Analyst A	101	0.05	0.10
Analyst B	121	0.02	0.09

- 6 Investment analysts often use earnings per share (EPS) forecasts. One test of forecasting quality is the zero-mean test, which states that optimal forecasts should have a mean forecasting error of 0. (Forecasting error = Predicted value of variable – Actual value of variable.)
- You have collected data (shown in the table above) for two analysts who cover two different industries: Analyst A covers the telecom industry; Analyst B covers automotive parts and suppliers.
- A With μ as the population mean forecasting error, formulate null and alternative hypotheses for a zero-mean test of forecasting quality.
 - B For Analyst A, using both a t -test and a z -test, determine whether to reject the null at the 0.05 and 0.01 levels of significance.
 - C For Analyst B, using both a t -test and a z -test, determine whether to reject the null at the 0.05 and 0.01 levels of significance.

- 7 Reviewing the EPS forecasting performance data for Analysts A and B, you want to investigate whether the larger average forecast errors of Analyst A are due to chance or to a higher underlying mean value for Analyst A. Assume that the forecast errors of both analysts are normally distributed and that the samples are independent.
- Formulate null and alternative hypotheses consistent with determining whether the population mean value of Analyst A's forecast errors (μ_1) are larger than Analyst B's (μ_2).
 - Identify the test statistic for conducting a test of the null hypothesis formulated in Part A.
 - Identify the rejection point or points for the hypothesis tested in Part A, at the 0.05 level of significance.
 - Determine whether or not to reject the null hypothesis at the 0.05 level of significance.

- 8 The table below gives data on the monthly returns on the S&P 500 and small-cap stocks for the period January 1960 through December 1999 and provides statistics relating to their mean differences.

Measure	S&P 500 Return (%)	Small-Cap Stock Return (%)	Differences (S&P 500– Small-Cap Stock)
<i>January 1960–December 1999, 480 months</i>			
Mean	1.0542	1.3117	–0.258
Standard deviation	4.2185	5.9570	3.752
<i>January 1960–December 1979, 240 months</i>			
Mean	0.6345	1.2741	–0.640
Standard deviation	4.0807	6.5829	4.096
<i>January 1980–December 1999, 240 months</i>			
Mean	1.4739	1.3492	0.125
Standard deviation	4.3197	5.2709	3.339

Let μ_d stand for the population mean value of difference between S&P 500 returns and small-cap stock returns. Use a significance level of 0.05 and suppose that mean differences are approximately normally distributed.

- Formulate null and alternative hypotheses consistent with testing whether any difference exists between the mean returns on the S&P 500 and small-cap stocks.
 - Determine whether or not to reject the null hypothesis at the 0.05 significance level for the January 1960 to December 1999 period.
 - Determine whether or not to reject the null hypothesis at the 0.05 significance level for the January 1960 to December 1979 subperiod.
 - Determine whether or not to reject the null hypothesis at the 0.05 significance level for the January 1980 to December 1999 subperiod.
- 9 During a 10-year period, the standard deviation of annual returns on a portfolio you are analyzing was 15 percent a year. You want to see whether this record is sufficient evidence to support the conclusion that the portfolio's underlying variance of return was less than 400, the return variance of the portfolio's benchmark.

- A Formulate null and alternative hypotheses consistent with the verbal description of your objective.
 - B Identify the test statistic for conducting a test of the hypotheses in Part A.
 - C Identify the rejection point or points at the 0.05 significance level for the hypothesis tested in Part A.
 - D Determine whether the null hypothesis is rejected or not rejected at the 0.05 level of significance.
- 10 You are investigating whether the population variance of returns on the S&P 500/BARRA Growth Index changed subsequent to the October 1987 market crash. You gather the following data for 120 months of returns before October 1987 and for 120 months of returns after October 1987. You have specified a 0.05 level of significance.

Time Period	n	Mean Monthly Return (%)	Variance of Returns
Before October 1987	120	1.416	22.367
After October 1987	120	1.436	15.795

- A Formulate null and alternative hypotheses consistent with the verbal description of the research goal.
 - B Identify the test statistic for conducting a test of the hypotheses in Part A.
 - C Determine whether or not to reject the null hypothesis at the 0.05 level of significance. (Use the F -tables in the back of this volume.)
- 11 In the step “stating a decision rule” in testing a hypothesis, which of the following elements must be specified?
- A Critical value
 - B Power of a test
 - C Value of a test statistic
- 12 Which of the following statements is correct with respect to the null hypothesis?
- A It is considered to be true unless the sample provides evidence showing it is false.
 - B It can be stated as “not equal to” provided the alternative hypothesis is stated as “equal to.”
 - C In a two-tailed test, it is rejected when evidence supports equality between the hypothesized value and population parameter.
- 13 An analyst is examining a large sample with an unknown population variance. To test the hypothesis that the historical average return on an index is less than or equal to 6%, which of the following is the *most* appropriate test?
- A One-tailed z -test
 - B Two-tailed z -test
 - C One-tailed F -test
- 14 A hypothesis test for a normally-distributed population at a 0.05 significance level implies a:
- A 95% probability of rejecting a true null hypothesis.
 - B 95% probability of a Type I error for a two-tailed test.
 - C 5% critical value rejection region in a tail of the distribution for a one-tailed test.

- 15 Which of the following statements regarding a one-tailed hypothesis test is correct?
- A The rejection region increases in size as the level of significance becomes smaller.
 - B A one-tailed test more strongly reflects the beliefs of the researcher than a two-tailed test.
 - C The absolute value of the rejection point is larger than that of a two-tailed test at the same level of significance.
- 16 The value of a test statistic is *best* described as the basis for deciding whether to:
- A reject the null hypothesis.
 - B accept the null hypothesis.
 - C reject the alternative hypothesis.
- 17 Which of the following is a Type I error?
- A Rejecting a true null hypothesis
 - B Rejecting a false null hypothesis
 - C Failing to reject a false null hypothesis
- 18 A Type II error is *best* described as:
- A rejecting a true null hypothesis.
 - B failing to reject a false null hypothesis.
 - C failing to reject a false alternative hypothesis.
- 19 The level of significance of a hypothesis test is *best* used to:
- A calculate the test statistic.
 - B define the test's rejection points.
 - C specify the probability of a Type II error.
- 20 You are interested in whether excess risk-adjusted return (alpha) is correlated with mutual fund expense ratios for US large-cap growth funds. The following table presents the sample.

Mutual Fund	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
Alpha (X)	-0.52	-0.13	-0.60	-1.01	-0.26	-0.89	-0.42	-0.23	-0.60
Expense Ratio (Y)	1.34	0.92	1.02	1.45	1.35	0.50	1.00	1.50	1.45

- A Formulate null and alternative hypotheses consistent with the verbal description of the research goal.
 - B Identify the test statistic for conducting a test of the hypotheses in Part A.
 - C Justify your selection in Part B.
 - D Determine whether or not to reject the null hypothesis at the 0.05 level of significance.
- 21 All else equal, is specifying a smaller significance level in a hypothesis test likely to increase the probability of a:
- | | Type I error? | Type II error? |
|---|---------------|----------------|
| A | No | No |
| B | No | Yes |
| C | Yes | No |
- 22 The probability of correctly rejecting the null hypothesis is the:
- A p -value.

- B power of a test.
C level of significance.
- 23 The power of a hypothesis test is:
A equivalent to the level of significance.
B the probability of not making a Type II error.
C unchanged by increasing a small sample size.
- 24 When making a decision in investments involving a statistically significant result, the:
A economic result should be presumed meaningful.
B statistical result should take priority over economic considerations.
C economic logic for the future relevance of the result should be further explored.
- 25 An analyst tests the profitability of a trading strategy with the null hypothesis being that the average abnormal return before trading costs equals zero. The calculated t -statistic is 2.802, with critical values of ± 2.756 at significance level $\alpha = 0.01$. After considering trading costs, the strategy's return is near zero. The results are *most likely*:
A statistically but not economically significant.
B economically but not statistically significant.
C neither statistically nor economically significant.
- 26 Which of the following statements is correct with respect to the p -value?
A It is a less precise measure of test evidence than rejection points.
B It is the largest level of significance at which the null hypothesis is rejected.
C It can be compared directly with the level of significance in reaching test conclusions.
- 27 Which of the following represents a correct statement about the p -value?
A The p -value offers less precise information than does the rejection points approach.
B A larger p -value provides stronger evidence in support of the alternative hypothesis.
C A p -value less than the specified level of significance leads to rejection of the null hypothesis.
- 28 Which of the following statements on p -value is correct?
A The p -value is the smallest level of significance at which H_0 can be rejected.
B The p -value indicates the probability of making a Type II error.
C The lower the p -value, the weaker the evidence for rejecting the H_0 .
- 29 The following table shows the significance level (α) and the p -value for three hypothesis tests.

	α	p -value
Test 1	0.05	0.10
Test 2	0.10	0.08
Test 3	0.10	0.05

The evidence for rejecting H_0 is strongest for:

- A Test 1.
B Test 2.

- C Test 3.
- 30 Which of the following tests of a hypothesis concerning the population mean is *most* appropriate?
- A A z -test if the population variance is unknown and the sample is small
 B A z -test if the population is normally distributed with a known variance
 C A t -test if the population is non-normally distributed with unknown variance and a small sample
- 31 For a small sample with unknown variance, which of the following tests of a hypothesis concerning the population mean is most appropriate?
- A A t -test if the population is normally distributed
 B A t -test if the population is non-normally distributed
 C A z -test regardless of the normality of the population distribution
- 32 For a small sample from a normally distributed population with unknown variance, the *most* appropriate test statistic for the mean is the:
- A z -statistic.
 B t -statistic.
 C χ^2 statistic.
- 33 An investment consultant conducts two independent random samples of 5-year performance data for US and European absolute return hedge funds. Noting a 50 basis point return advantage for US managers, the consultant decides to test whether the two means are statistically different from one another at a 0.05 level of significance. The two populations are assumed to be normally distributed with unknown but equal variances. Results of the hypothesis test are contained in the tables below.

	Sample Size	Mean Return %	Standard Deviation
US Managers	50	4.7	5.4
European Managers	50	4.2	4.8
Null and Alternative Hypotheses	$H_0: \mu_{US} - \mu_E = 0; H_a: \mu_{US} - \mu_E \neq 0$		
Test Statistic	0.4893		
Critical Value Rejection Points	± 1.984		

μ_{US} is the mean return for US funds and μ_E is the mean return for European funds.

- The results of the hypothesis test indicate that the:
- A null hypothesis is not rejected.
 B alternative hypothesis is statistically confirmed.
 C difference in mean returns is statistically different from zero.
- 34 A pooled estimator is used when testing a hypothesis concerning the:
- A equality of the variances of two normally distributed populations.
 B difference between the means of two at least approximately normally distributed populations with unknown but assumed equal variances.
 C difference between the means of two at least approximately normally distributed populations with unknown and assumed unequal variances.

- 35 When evaluating mean differences between two dependent samples, the *most* appropriate test is a:
- A chi-square test.
 - B paired comparisons test.
 - C z -test.
- 36 A fund manager reported a 2% mean quarterly return over the past ten years for its entire base of 250 client accounts that all follow the same investment strategy. A consultant employing the manager for 45 client accounts notes that their mean quarterly returns were 0.25% less over the same period. The consultant tests the hypothesis that the return disparity between the returns of his clients and the reported returns of the fund manager's 250 client accounts are significantly different from zero.
- Assuming normally distributed populations with unknown population variances, the *most* appropriate test statistic is:
- A a paired comparisons t -test.
 - B a t -test of the difference between the two population means.
 - C an approximate t -test of mean differences between the two populations.
- 37 A chi-square test is *most* appropriate for tests concerning:
- A a single variance.
 - B differences between two population means with variances assumed to be equal.
 - C differences between two population means with variances assumed to not be equal.
- 38 Which of the following should be used to test the difference between the variances of two normally distributed populations?
- A t -test
 - B F -test
 - C Paired comparisons test
- 39 In which of the following situations would a non-parametric test of a hypothesis *most likely* be used?
- A The sample data are ranked according to magnitude.
 - B The sample data come from a normally distributed population.
 - C The test validity depends on many assumptions about the nature of the population.
- 40 An analyst is examining the monthly returns for two funds over one year. Both funds' returns are non-normally distributed. To test whether the mean return of one fund is greater than the mean return of the other fund, the analyst can use:
- A a parametric test only.
 - B a nonparametric test only.
 - C both parametric and nonparametric tests.

SOLUTIONS

- 1 C is correct. Together, the null and alternative hypotheses account for all possible values of the parameter. Any possible values of the parameter not covered by the null must be covered by the alternative hypothesis (e.g., $H_0: \theta \leq 5$ versus $H_a: \theta > 5$).
- 2
 - A The appropriate test statistic is a t -statistic with $n - 1 = 15 - 1 = 14$ degrees of freedom. A t -statistic is theoretically correct when the sample comes from a normally distributed population with unknown variance. When the sample size is also small, there is no practical alternative.
 - B The appropriate test statistic is a t -statistic with $40 - 1 = 39$ degrees of freedom. A t -statistic is theoretically correct when the sample comes from a normally distributed population with unknown variance. When the sample size is large (generally, 30 or more is a “large” sample), it is also possible to use a z -statistic, whether the population is normally distributed or not. A test based on a t -statistic is more conservative than a z -statistic test.
 - C The appropriate test statistic is a z -statistic because the sample comes from a normally distributed population with known variance. (The known population standard deviation is used to compute the standard error of the mean using Equation 2 in the text.)
 - D The appropriate test statistic is chi-square (χ^2) with $50 - 1 = 49$ degrees of freedom.
 - E The appropriate test statistic is the F -statistic (the ratio of the sample variances).
 - F The appropriate test statistic is a t -statistic for a paired observations test (a paired comparisons test), because the samples are correlated.
 - G The appropriate test statistic is a t -statistic using a pooled estimate of the population variance. The t -statistic has $25 + 30 - 2 = 53$ degrees of freedom. This statistic is appropriate because the populations are normally distributed with unknown variances; because the variances are assumed equal, the observations can be pooled to estimate the common variance. The requirement of independent samples for using this statistic has been met.
- 3
 - A With degrees of freedom (df) $n - 1 = 26 - 1 = 25$, the rejection point conditions for this two-sided test are $t > 2.060$ and $t < -2.060$. Because the significance level is 0.05, $0.05/2 = 0.025$ of the probability is in each tail. The tables give one-sided (one-tailed) probabilities, so we used the 0.025 column. Read across df = 25 to the $\alpha = 0.025$ column to find 2.060, the rejection point for the right tail. By symmetry, -2.060 is the rejection point for the left tail.
 - B With df = 39, the rejection point conditions for this two-sided test are $t > 2.708$ and $t < -2.708$. This is a two-sided test, so we use the $0.01/2 = 0.005$ column. Read across df = 39 to the $\alpha = 0.005$ column to find 2.708, the rejection point for the right tail. By symmetry, -2.708 is the rejection point for the left tail.
 - C With df = 39, the rejection point condition for this one-sided test is $t > 2.426$. Read across df = 39 to the $\alpha = 0.01$ column to find 2.426, the rejection point for the right tail. Because we have a “greater than” alternative, we are concerned with only the right tail.

- D** With $df = 20$, the rejection point condition for this one-sided test is $t > 1.725$. Read across $df = 20$ to the $\alpha = 0.05$ column to find 1.725, the rejection point for the right tail. Because we have a “greater than” alternative, we are concerned with only the right tail.
- E** With $df = 18$, the rejection point condition for this one-sided test is $t < -1.330$. Read across $df = 18$ to the $\alpha = 0.10$ column to find 1.330, the rejection point for the right tail. By symmetry, the rejection point for the left tail is -1.330 .
- F** With $df = 49$, the rejection point condition for this one-sided test is $t < -1.677$. Read across $df = 49$ to the $\alpha = 0.05$ column to find 1.677, the rejection point for the right tail. By symmetry, the rejection point for the left tail is -1.677 .
- 4** Recall that with a z -test (in contrast to the t -test), we do not employ degrees of freedom. The standard normal distribution is a single distribution applicable to all z -tests. You should refer to “Rejection Points for a z -Test” in Section 3.1 to answer these questions.
- A** This is a two-sided test at a 0.01 significance level. In Part C of “Rejection Points for a z -Test,” we find that the rejection point conditions are $z > 2.575$ and $z < -2.575$.
- B** This is a two-sided test at a 0.05 significance level. In Part B of “Rejection Points for a z -Test,” we find that the rejection point conditions are $z > 1.96$ and $z < -1.96$.
- C** This is a two-sided test at a 0.10 significance level. In Part A of “Rejection Points for a z -Test,” we find that the rejection point conditions are $z > 1.645$ and $z < -1.645$.
- D** This is a one-sided test at a 0.05 significance level. In Part B of “Rejection Points for a z -Test,” we find that the rejection point condition for a test with a “greater than” alternative hypothesis is $z > 1.645$.
- 5 A** As stated in the text, we often set up the “hoped for” or “suspected” condition as the alternative hypothesis. Here, that condition is that the population value of Willco’s mean annual net income exceeds \$24 million. Thus we have $H_0: \mu \leq 24$ versus $H_a: \mu > 24$.
- B** Given that net income is normally distributed with unknown variance, the appropriate test statistic is t with $n - 1 = 6 - 1 = 5$ degrees of freedom.
- C** In the t -distribution table in the back of the book, in the row for $df = 5$ under $\alpha = 0.05$, we read the rejection point (critical value) of 2.015. We will reject the null if $t > 2.015$.
- D** The t -test is given by Equation 4:

$$t_5 = \frac{\bar{X} - \mu_0}{s/\sqrt{n}} = \frac{30 - 24}{10/\sqrt{6}} = \frac{6}{4.082483} = 1.469694$$

or 1.47. Because 1.47 does not exceed 2.015, we do not reject the null hypothesis. The difference between the sample mean of \$30 million and the hypothesized value of \$24 million under the null is not statistically significant.

- 6 A** $H_0: \mu = 0$ versus $H_a: \mu \neq 0$.
- B** The t -test is based on $t = \frac{\bar{X} - \mu_0}{s/\sqrt{n}}$ with $n - 1 = 101 - 1 = 100$ degrees of freedom. At the 0.05 significance level, we reject the null if $t > 1.984$ or if $t < -1.984$. At the 0.01 significance level, we reject the null if $t > 2.626$ or if $t < -2.626$.

-2.626. For Analyst A, we have $t = (0.05 - 0) / (0.10 / \sqrt{101}) = 0.05 / 0.00995 = 5.024938$ or 5.025. We clearly reject the null hypothesis at both the 0.05 and 0.01 levels.

The calculation of the z -statistic with unknown variance, as in this case, is the same as the calculation of the t -statistic. The rejection point conditions for a two-tailed test are as follows: $z > 1.96$ and $z < -1.96$ at the 0.05 level; and $z > 2.575$ and $z < -2.575$ at the 0.01 level. Note that the z -test is a less conservative test than the t -test, so when the z -test is used, the null is easier to reject. Because $z = 5.025$ is greater than 2.575, we reject the null at the 0.01 level; we also reject the null at the 0.05 level.

In summary, Analyst A's EPS forecasts appear to be biased upward—they tend to be too high.

- C** For Analyst B, the t -test is based on t with $121 - 1 = 120$ degrees of freedom. At the 0.05 significance level, we reject the null if $t > 1.980$ or if $t < -1.980$. At the 0.01 significance level, we reject the null if $t > 2.617$ or if $t < -2.617$. We calculate $t = (0.02 - 0) / (0.09 / \sqrt{121}) = 0.02 / 0.008182 = 2.444444$ or 2.44. Because $2.44 > 1.98$, we reject the null at the 0.05 level. However, 2.44 is not larger than 2.617, so we do not reject the null at the 0.01 level.

For a z -test, the rejection point conditions are the same as given in Part B, and we come to the same conclusions as with the t -test. Because $2.44 > 1.96$, we reject the null at the 0.05 significance level; however, because 2.44 is not greater than 2.575, we do not reject the null at the 0.01 level.

The mean forecast error of Analyst B is only \$0.02; but because the test is based on a large number of observations, it is sufficient evidence to reject the null of mean zero forecast errors at the 0.05 level.

- 7 A** Stating the suspected condition as the alternative hypothesis, we have

$$H_0: \mu_1 - \mu_2 \leq 0 \text{ versus } H_a: \mu_1 - \mu_2 > 0$$

where

μ_1 = the population mean value of Analyst A's forecast errors

μ_2 = the population mean value of Analyst B's forecast errors

- B** We have two normally distributed populations with unknown variances. Based on the samples, it is reasonable to assume that the population variances are equal. The samples are assumed to be independent; this assumption is reasonable because the analysts cover quite different industries. The appropriate test statistic is t using a pooled estimate of the common variance. The number of degrees of freedom is

$$n_1 + n_2 - 2 = 101 + 121 - 2 = 222 - 2 = 220.$$

- C** For $df = 200$ (the closest value to 220), the rejection point for a one-sided test at the 0.05 significance level is 1.653.

- D** We first calculate the pooled estimate of variance:

$$\begin{aligned} s_p^2 &= \frac{(n_1 - 1)s_1^2 + (n_2 - 1)s_2^2}{n_1 + n_2 - 2} = \frac{(101 - 1)(0.10)^2 + (121 - 1)(0.09)^2}{101 + 121 - 2} \\ &= \frac{1.972}{220} = 0.008964 \end{aligned}$$

Then

$$t = \frac{(\bar{X}_1 - \bar{X}_2) - (\mu_1 - \mu_2)}{\left(\frac{s_p^2}{n_1} + \frac{s_p^2}{n_2}\right)^{1/2}} = \frac{(0.05 - 0.02) - 0}{\left(\frac{0.008964}{101} + \frac{0.008964}{121}\right)^{1/2}}$$

$$= \frac{0.03}{0.01276} = 2.351018$$

or 2.35. Because $2.35 > 1.653$, we reject the null hypothesis in favor of the alternative hypothesis that the population mean forecast error of Analyst A is greater than that of Analyst B.

8 A We test $H_0: \mu_d = 0$ versus $H_a: \mu_d \neq 0$.

B This is a paired comparisons t -test with $n - 1 = 480 - 1 = 479$ degrees of freedom. At the 0.05 significance level, we reject the null hypothesis if either $t > 1.96$ or $t < -1.96$. We use $df = \infty$ in the t -distribution table under $\alpha = 0.025$ because we have a very large sample and a two-sided test.

$$t = \frac{\bar{d} - \mu_{d0}}{s_{\bar{d}}} = \frac{-0.258 - 0}{3.752/\sqrt{480}} = \frac{-0.258}{0.171255} = -1.506529 \text{ or } -1.51$$

At the 0.05 significance level, because neither rejection point condition is met, we do not reject the null hypothesis that the mean difference between the returns on the S&P 500 and small-cap stocks during the entire sample period was 0.

C This t -test now has $n - 1 = 240 - 1 = 239$ degrees of freedom. At the 0.05 significance level, we reject the null hypothesis if either $t > 1.972$ or $t < -1.972$, using $df = 200$ in the t -distribution tables.

$$t = \frac{\bar{d} - \mu_{d0}}{s_{\bar{d}}} = \frac{-0.640 - 0}{4.096/\sqrt{240}} = \frac{-0.640}{0.264396} = -2.420615 \text{ or } -2.42$$

Because $-2.42 < -1.972$, we reject the null hypothesis at the 0.05 significance level. During this subperiod, small-cap stocks significantly outperformed the S&P 500.

D This t -test has $n - 1 = 240 - 1 = 239$ degrees of freedom. At the 0.05 significance level, we reject the null hypothesis if either $t > 1.972$ or $t < -1.972$, using $df = 200$ in the t -distribution tables.

$$t = \frac{\bar{d} - \mu_{d0}}{s_{\bar{d}}} = \frac{0.125 - 0}{3.339/\sqrt{240}} = \frac{0.125}{0.215532} = 0.579962 \text{ or } 0.58$$

At the 0.05 significance level, because neither rejection point condition is met, we do not reject the null hypothesis that for the January 1980–December 1999 period, the mean difference between the returns on the S&P 500 and small-cap stocks was zero.

9 A We have a “less than” alternative hypothesis, where σ^2 is the variance of return on the portfolio. The hypotheses are $H_0: \sigma^2 \geq 400$ versus $H_a: \sigma^2 < 400$, where 400 is the hypothesized value of variance, σ_0^2 .

B The test statistic is chi-square with $10 - 1 = 9$ degrees of freedom.

C The rejection point is found across degrees of freedom of 9, under the 0.95 column (95 percent of probability above the value). It is 3.325. We will reject the null hypothesis if we find that $\chi^2 < 3.325$.

D The test statistic is calculated as

$$\chi^2 = \frac{(n-1)s^2}{\sigma_0^2} = \frac{9 \times 15^2}{400} = \frac{2,025}{400} = 5.0625 \text{ or } 5.06$$

Because 5.06 is not less than 3.325, we do not reject the null hypothesis.

10 A We have a “not equal to” alternative hypothesis:

$$H_0: \sigma_{\text{Before}}^2 = \sigma_{\text{After}}^2 \text{ versus } H_a: \sigma_{\text{Before}}^2 \neq \sigma_{\text{After}}^2$$

B To test a null hypothesis of the equality of two variances, we use an F -test:

$$F = \frac{s_1^2}{s_2^2}$$

C The “before” sample variance is larger, so following a convention for calculating F -statistics, the “before” sample variance goes in the numerator. $F = 22.367/15.795 = 1.416$, with $120 - 1 = 119$ numerator and denominator degrees of freedom. Because this is a two-tailed test, we use F -tables for the 0.025 level ($df = 0.05/2$). Using the tables in the back of the volume, the closest value to 119 is 120 degrees of freedom. At the 0.05 level, the rejection point is 1.43. (Using the Insert/Function/Statistical feature on a Microsoft Excel spreadsheet, we would find $\text{FINV}(0.025, 119, 119) = 1.434859$ as the critical F -value.) Because 1.416 is not greater than 1.43, we do not reject the null hypothesis that the “before” and “after” variances are equal.

11 A is correct. The critical value in a decision rule is the rejection point for the test. It is the point with which the test statistic is compared to determine whether to reject the null hypothesis, which is part of the fourth step in hypothesis testing.

12 A is correct. The null hypothesis is the hypothesis to be tested. The null hypothesis is considered to be true unless the evidence indicates that it is false, in which case the alternative hypothesis is accepted.

13 A is correct. If the population sampled has unknown variance and the sample is large, a z -test may be used. Hypotheses involving “greater than” or “less than” postulations are one-sided (one-tailed). In this situation, the null and alternative hypotheses are stated as $H_0: \mu \leq 6\%$ and $H_a: \mu > 6\%$, respectively. A one-tailed t -test is also acceptable in this case.

14 C is correct. For a one-tailed hypothesis test, there is a 5% critical value rejection region in one tail of the distribution.

15 B is correct. One-tailed tests in which the alternative is “greater than” or “less than” represent the beliefs of the researcher more firmly than a “not equal to” alternative hypothesis.

16 A is correct. Calculated using a sample, a test statistic is a quantity whose value is the basis for deciding whether to reject the null hypothesis.

17 A is correct. The definition of a Type I error is when a true null hypothesis is rejected.

18 B is correct. A Type II error occurs when a false null hypothesis is not rejected.

19 B is correct. The level of significance is used to establish the rejection points of the hypothesis test.

20 A We have a “not equal to” alternative hypothesis:

$$H_0: \rho = 0 \text{ versus } H_a: \rho \neq 0$$

- B** We would use the nonparametric Spearman rank correlation coefficient to conduct the test.
- C** Mutual fund expense ratios are bounded from above and below, and in practice there is at least a lower bound on alpha (as any return cannot be less than -100 percent). These variables are markedly non-normally distributed, and the assumptions of a parametric test are not likely to be fulfilled. Thus a nonparametric test appears to be appropriate.
- D** The calculation of the Spearman rank correlation coefficient is given in the following table.

Mutual Fund	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
Alpha (X)	-0.52	-0.13	-0.60	-1.01	-0.26	-0.89	-0.42	-0.23	-0.60
Expense Ratio (Y)	1.34	0.92	1.02	1.45	1.35	0.50	1.00	1.50	1.45
X Rank	5	1	6.5	9	3	8	4	2	6.5
Y Rank	5	8	6	2.5	4	9	7	1	2.5
d_i	0	-7	0.5	6.5	-1	-1	-3	1	4
d_i^2	0	49	0.25	42.25	1	1	9	1	16

$$r_s = 1 - \frac{6 \sum d_i^2}{n(n^2 - 1)} = 1 - \frac{6(119.50)}{9(81 - 1)} = 0.0042$$

We use Table 11 to tabulate the rejection points for a test on the Spearman rank correlation. Given a sample size of 9 in a two-tailed test at a 0.05 significance level, the upper-tail rejection point is 0.6833 (we use the 0.025 column). Thus we reject the null hypothesis if the Spearman rank correlation coefficient is less than -0.6833 or greater than 0.6833. Because r_s is equal to 0.0042, we do not reject the null hypothesis.

- 21** B is correct. Specifying a smaller significance level decreases the probability of a Type I error (rejecting a true null hypothesis), but increases the probability of a Type II error (not rejecting a false null hypothesis). As the level of significance decreases, the null hypothesis is less frequently rejected.
- 22** B is correct. The power of a test is the probability of rejecting the null hypothesis when it is false.
- 23** B is correct. The power of a hypothesis test is the probability of correctly rejecting the null when it is false. Failing to reject the null when it is false is a Type II error. Thus, the power of a hypothesis test is the probability of not committing a Type II error.
- 24** C is correct. When a statistically significant result is also economically meaningful, one should further explore the logic of why the result might work in the future.
- 25** A is correct. The hypothesis is a two-tailed formulation. The t -statistic of 2.802 falls outside the critical rejection points of less than -2.756 and greater than 2.756, therefore the null hypothesis is rejected; the result is statistically significant. However, despite the statistical results, trying to profit on the strategy is not likely to be economically meaningful because the return is near zero after transaction costs

- 26 C is correct. When directly comparing the p -value with the level of significance, it can be used as an alternative to using rejection points to reach conclusions on hypothesis tests. If the p -value is smaller than the specified level of significance, the null hypothesis is rejected. Otherwise, the null hypothesis is not rejected.
- 27 C is correct. The p -value is the smallest level of significance at which the null hypothesis can be rejected for a given value of the test statistic. The null hypothesis is rejected when the p -value is less than the specified significance level.
- 28 A is correct. The p -value is the smallest level of significance (α) at which the null hypothesis can be rejected.
- 29 C is correct. The p -value is the smallest level of significance (α) at which the null hypothesis can be rejected. If the p -value is less than α , the null can be rejected. The smaller the p -value, the stronger the evidence is against the null hypothesis and in favor of the alternative hypothesis. Thus, the evidence for rejecting the null is strongest for Test 3.
- 30 B is correct. The z -test is theoretically the correct test to use in those limited cases when testing the population mean of a normally distributed population with known variance.
- 31 A is correct. A t -test is used if the sample is small and drawn from a normally or approximately normally distributed population.
- 32 B is correct. A t -statistic is the most appropriate for hypothesis tests of the population mean when the variance is unknown and the sample is small but the population is normally distributed.
- 33 A is correct. The t -statistic value of 0.4893 does not fall into the critical value rejection regions (≤ -1.984 or > 1.984). Instead it falls well within the acceptance region. Thus, H_0 cannot be rejected; the result is not statistically significant at the 0.05 level.
- 34 B is correct. The assumption that the variances are equal allows for the combining of both samples to obtain a pooled estimate of the common variance.
- 35 B is correct. A paired comparisons test is appropriate to test the mean differences of two samples believed to be dependent.
- 36 A is correct. The sample sizes for both the fund manager and the consultant's accounts consists of forty quarterly periods of returns. However, the consultant's client accounts are a subset of the fund manager's entire account base. As such, they are not independent samples. When samples are dependent, a paired comparisons test is appropriate to conduct tests of the differences in dependent items.
- 37 A is correct. A chi-square test is used for tests concerning the variance of a single normally distributed population.
- 38 B is correct. An F -test is used to conduct tests concerning the difference between the variances of two normally distributed populations with random independent samples.
- 39 A is correct. A non-parametric test is used when the data are given in ranks.
- 40 B is correct. There are only 12 (monthly) observations over the one year of the sample and thus the samples are small. Additionally, the funds' returns are non-normally distributed. Therefore, the samples do not meet the distributional assumptions for a parametric test. The Mann-Whitney U test (a nonparametric test) could be used to test the differences between population means

Technical Analysis

by Barry M. Sine, CMT, CFA, and Robert A. Strong, PhD, CFA

Barry M. Sine, CMT, CFA, is at Drexel Hamilton, LLC (USA). Robert A. Strong, PhD, CFA, is at the University of Maine (USA).

LEARNING OUTCOMES

<i>Mastery</i>	<i>The candidate should be able to:</i>
<input type="checkbox"/>	a. explain principles of technical analysis, its applications, and its underlying assumptions;
<input type="checkbox"/>	b. describe the construction of different types of technical analysis charts and interpret them;
<input type="checkbox"/>	c. explain uses of trend, support, resistance lines, and change in polarity;
<input type="checkbox"/>	d. describe common chart patterns;
<input type="checkbox"/>	e. describe common technical analysis indicators (price-based, momentum oscillators, sentiment, and flow of funds);
<input type="checkbox"/>	f. explain how technical analysts use cycles;
<input type="checkbox"/>	g. describe the key tenets of Elliott Wave Theory and the importance of Fibonacci numbers;
<input type="checkbox"/>	h. describe intermarket analysis as it relates to technical analysis and asset allocation.

INTRODUCTION

Technical analysis has been used by traders and analysts for centuries, but it has only recently achieved broad acceptance among regulators and the academic community. This reading gives a brief overview of the field, compares technical analysis with other schools of analysis, and describes some of the main tools in technical analysis. Some applications of technical analysis are subjective. That is, although certain aspects, such as the calculation of indicators, have specific rules, the interpretation of findings is often subjective and based on the long-term context of the security being analyzed. This aspect is similar to fundamental analysis, which has specific rules for calculating ratios, for example, but introduces subjectivity in the evaluation phase.

2

TECHNICAL ANALYSIS: DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Technical analysis is a form of security analysis that uses price and volume data, which is often graphically displayed, in decision making. Technical analysis can be used for securities in any freely traded market around the globe. A freely traded market is one in which willing buyers trade with willing sellers without external intervention or impediment. Prices are the result of the interaction of supply and demand in real time. Technical analysis is used on a wide range of financial instruments, including equities, bonds, commodity futures, and currency futures.

The underlying logic of technical analysis is simple:

- Supply and demand determine prices.
- Changes in supply and demand cause changes in prices.
- Prices can be projected with charts and other technical tools.

Technical analysis of any financial instrument does not require detailed knowledge of that instrument. As long as the chart represents the action in a freely traded market, a technician does not even need to know the name or type of the security to conduct the analysis. Technical analysis can also be applied over any time frame—from short-term price movements to long-term movements of annual closing prices. Trends that are apparent in short-term charts may also appear over longer time frames. Because fundamental analysis is more time consuming than technical analysis, investors with short-term time horizons, such as traders, tend to prefer technical analysis—but not always. For example, fundamental analysts with long time frames often perform technical analysis to time the purchase and sale of the securities they have analyzed.

2.1 Principles and Assumptions

Technical analysis can be thought of as the study of collective investor psychology, or sentiment. Prices in any freely traded market are set by human beings or their automated proxies (such as computerized trading programs), and price is set at the equilibrium between supply and demand at any instant in time. Various fundamental theorists have proposed that markets are efficient and rational, but technicians believe that humans are often irrational and emotional and that they tend to behave similarly in similar circumstances.

Although fundamental data are key inputs into the determination of value, these data are analyzed by humans, who may be driven, at least partially, by factors other than rational factors.¹ Human behavior is often erratic and driven by emotion in many aspects of one's life, so technicians conclude that it is unreasonable to believe that investing is the one exception where humans always behave rationally. Technicians believe that market trends and patterns reflect this irrational human behavior. Thus, technical analysis is the study of market trends or patterns. And technicians believe the trends and patterns tend to repeat themselves and are, therefore, somewhat predictable. So, technicians rely on recognition of patterns that have occurred in the past in an attempt to project future patterns of security prices.

Another tenet of technical analysis is that the market reflects the collective knowledge and sentiment of many varied participants and the amount of buying and selling activity in a particular security. In a freely traded market, only those market participants who actually buy or sell a security have an impact on price. And the

¹ Fundamental analysts use a wide variety of inputs, including financial statements, legal documents, economic data, first-hand observations from visiting the facilities of subject companies, and interviews with corporate managers, customers, suppliers, and competitors.

greater the volume of a participant's trades, the more impact that market participant will have on price. Those with the best information and most conviction have more say in setting prices than others because the informed traders trade higher volumes. To make use of their information, however, they must trade. Technical analysis relies on knowledgeable market participants putting this knowledge to work by trading in the market, thereby influencing prices and volume. Without trading, the information is not captured in the charts. Arguably, although insider trading is illegal for a variety of reasons, it improves the efficiency of technical analysis.

Trades determine volume and price. The impact occurs instantaneously and frequently anticipates fundamental developments correctly. So, by studying market technical data—price and volume trends—the technician is seeking to understand investor sentiment. The technician is benefiting from the wide range of knowledge of market participants and the collective conclusion of market participants about a security. In contrast, the fundamental analyst must wait for the release of financial statements to conduct financial statement analysis, so a time lag occurs between the market's activities and the analyst's conclusions.

Charles Dow, creator in 1896 of what is now known as the Dow Jones Industrial Average, described the collective action of participants in the markets as follows:

The market reflects all the jobber knows about the condition of the textile trade; all the banker knows about the money market; all that the best-informed president knows of his own business, together with his knowledge of all other businesses; it sees the general condition of transportation in a way that the president of no single railroad can ever see; it is better informed on crops than the farmer or even the Department of Agriculture. In fact, the market reduces to a bloodless verdict all knowledge bearing on finance, both domestic and foreign.

A similar notion was expressed by George A. Akerlof and Robert J. Shiller:

To understand how economies work and how we can manage them and prosper, we must pay attention to the thought patterns that animate people's ideas and feelings, their animal spirits. We will never really understand important economic events unless we confront the fact that their causes are largely mental in nature.²

Market participants use many inputs and analytical tools before trading. Fundamental analysis is a key input in determining security prices, but it is not the only one. Technical analysts believe that emotions play a role. Investors with a favorable fundamental view may nonetheless sell a financial instrument for other reasons, including pessimistic investor sentiment, margin calls, and requirements for their capital—for example, to pay for a child's college tuition. Technicians do not care why market participants are buying or selling, just that they are doing so.

Some financial instruments have an associated income stream that contributes to the security's intrinsic value. Bonds have regular coupon payments, and equity shares may have underlying cash flows or dividend streams. A fundamental analyst can adjust these cash flows for risk and use standard time value of money techniques to determine a present value. Other assets, such as a bushel of wheat, gallon of crude oil, or ounce of silver, do not have underlying financial statements or an income stream, so valuation models cannot be used to derive their fundamental intrinsic values. For these assets, technical analysis is the only form of analysis possible. So, whereas fundamental analysis is widely used in the analysis of fixed-income and equity securities, technical analysis is widely used in the analysis of commodities, currencies, and futures.

² See Akerlof and Shiller (2009).

Market participants attempt to anticipate economic developments and enter into trades to profit from them. Technicians believe that security price movements occur before fundamental developments unfold—certainly before they are reported. This belief is reflected in the fact that stock prices are one of the 12 components of the National Bureau of Economic Research's Index of Leading Economic Indicators. A key tenet of technical analysis is that the equity market moves roughly six months ahead of inflection points in the broad economy.

2.2 Technical and Fundamental Analysis

Technical analysis and fundamental analysis are both useful and valid, but they approach the market in different ways. Technicians focus solely on analyzing markets and the trading of financial instruments. Fundamental analysis is a much wider field, encompassing financial and economic analysis as well as analysis of societal and political trends. Technicians analyze the result of this extensive fundamental analysis in terms of how it affects market prices. A technician's analysis is derived solely from price and volume data, whereas a fundamental equity analyst analyzes a company and incorporates data that are external to the market and then uses this analysis to predict security price movements. As the quotation from Dow in Section 2.1 illustrates, technical analysis assumes that all of the factors considered by a fundamental analyst are reflected in the price of a financial instrument through buying and selling activity.

A key distinction between technical analysis and fundamental analysis is that the technician has more concrete data, primarily price and volume data, to work with. The financial statements analyzed by fundamental analysts are not objective data but are the result of numerous estimates and assumptions that have been added together to arrive at the line items in the financial statements. Even the cash line on a balance sheet is subject to corporate management's opinion about which securities are liquid enough to be considered "cash." This opinion must be agreed to by auditors and, in many countries, regulators (who sometimes differ with the auditors). Financial statements are subject to restatements because of such issues as changes in accounting assumptions and even fraud. But the price and volume data used in technical analysis are objective. When the data become subject to analysis, however, both types of analysis become subjective because judgment is exercised when a technician analyzes a price chart and when a fundamental analyst analyzes an income statement.

Fundamental analysis can be considered to be the more theoretical approach because it seeks to determine the underlying long-term (or intrinsic) value of a security. Technical analysis can be considered to be the more practical because a technician studies the markets and financial instruments as they exist, even if trading activity appears, at times, to be irrational. Technicians seek to project the level at which a financial instrument *will* trade, whereas fundamental analysts seek to predict where it *should* trade.

Being a fundamental analyst can be lonely if the analyst is the first to arrive at a fundamental conclusion, even though it is correct, because deviations from intrinsic value can persist for long periods. The reason these deviations may persist is that it takes buying activity to raise (or lower) the price of a security in a freely traded market.

A drawback of technical analysis is that technicians are limited to studying market movements and do not use other predictive analytical methods, such as interviewing the customers of a subject company, to determine future demand for a company's products. Technicians study market trends and are mainly concerned with a security's price trend: Is the security trading up, down, or sideways? Trends are driven by collective investor psychology, however, and can change without warning. Additionally, it can take some time for a trend to become evident. Thus, technicians may make wrong calls and have to change their opinions. Technicians are better at identifying market moves after the moves are already under way.

Moreover, trends and patterns must be in place for some time before they are recognizable, so a key shortcoming of technical analysis is that it can be late in identifying changes in trends or patterns. This shortcoming mirrors a key shortcoming of fundamental analysis in that securities often overshoot fundamental fair values in an uptrend and undershoot fundamental fair values in a downtrend. Strictly relying on price targets obtained by fundamental analysis can lead to closing profitable investment positions too early because investors may irrationally bid securities prices well above or well below intrinsic value.

Fundamental analysis is a younger field than technical analysis because reliable fundamental data are a relatively new phenomenon. In contrast, the first recorded use of technical analysis was in Japan in the 1700s, where it was used to analyze trading in the rice market. The Japanese developed a detailed field of technical analysis with their own chart design and patterns. These tools were translated and widely understood outside Japan only in the 1980s.

Western use of technical analysis was pioneered by Dow, who was also the first editor of the *Wall Street Journal*, in the 1890s. At the time, publicly traded companies were under no requirement to release their financial information even to shareholders, and insider trading was common and legal. Dow created the Dow Jones Industrial Average and the Dow Jones Railroad Average (now the Transportation Average) as a proxy to gauge the health of the economy, because fundamental data were not available. By his logic, if industrial stocks were doing well, industrial companies themselves must be doing well and if railroad stocks were doing well, railroad companies must be doing well. And if both manufacturers and the companies that transported goods to market were prospering, the economy as a whole must be prospering.

Not until the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 were public companies in the United States required to regularly file financial statements that were available to the public. In that year, Benjamin Graham published his seminal work, *Security Analysis*, and three years later, he and several others founded one of the first societies devoted to fundamental analysis, the New York Society of Security Analysts.³ Fundamental analysis quickly overtook technical analysis in terms of acceptance by practitioners, regulators, and academics.

Acceptance of technical analysis by practitioners was revived in the 1970s with the creation of the Market Technicians Association in New York and the International Federation of Technical Analysts a few years later. Only in the last decade, however, has the field started to achieve widespread acceptance by regulators and academics. An important impediment to acceptance by academics is the difficulty of capturing the subjectivity involved in technical analysis. The human brain can recognize, analyze, and interpret technical information that is difficult for statistical computer models to recognize and test.

Although technical analysis can be applied to any freely traded security, it does have its limits. In markets that are subject to large outside manipulation, the application of technical analysis is limited. For example, the central banks of many countries intervene in their currency markets from time to time to maintain exchange rate stability. Interestingly, traders claim to have been able to successfully predict interventions in some countries, especially those where the central bank is itself using technical analysis. Technical analysis is also limited in illiquid markets, where even modestly sized trades can have an inordinate impact on prices. For example, in considering a thinly traded American Depositary Receipt (ADR), analyzing the more heavily traded

³ The New York Society of Security Analysts was a successor to the New York Society of Financial Statisticians, which was founded in 1916.

local security frequently yields a better analysis.⁴ Another example of when technical analysis may give an incorrect reading is in the case of a company that has declared bankruptcy and announced that its shares will have zero value in a restructuring. A positive technical trend may appear in such cases as investors who hold short positions buy shares to close out their positions.

A good example of when technical analysis is a superior tool to fundamental analysis is in the case of securities fraud, such as occurred at Enron Corporation and WorldCom. These companies were issuing fraudulent financial statements, but many fundamental analysts continued to hold favorable views of the companies' equity securities even as the share prices declined. Simultaneously, a small group of investors came to the opposite view and expressed this view through high-volume sales of the securities. The result was clearly negative chart patterns that could then be discerned by technical analysis.

3

TECHNICAL ANALYSIS TOOLS

The primary tools used in technical analysis are charts and indicators. Charts are the graphical display of price and volume data, and the display may be done in a number of ways. Charts are then subjected to various analyses, including the identification of trends, patterns, and cycles. Technical indicators include a variety of measures of relative price level—for example, price momentum, market sentiment, and funds flow. We will discuss charts first.

3.1 Charts

Charts are an essential component of the technical analyst's toolkit. Charts provide information about past price behavior and provide a basis for inferring likely future price behavior. A variety of charts can be useful in studying the markets. The selection of the chart to use in technical analysis is determined by the intended purpose of the analysis.

3.1.1 Line Chart

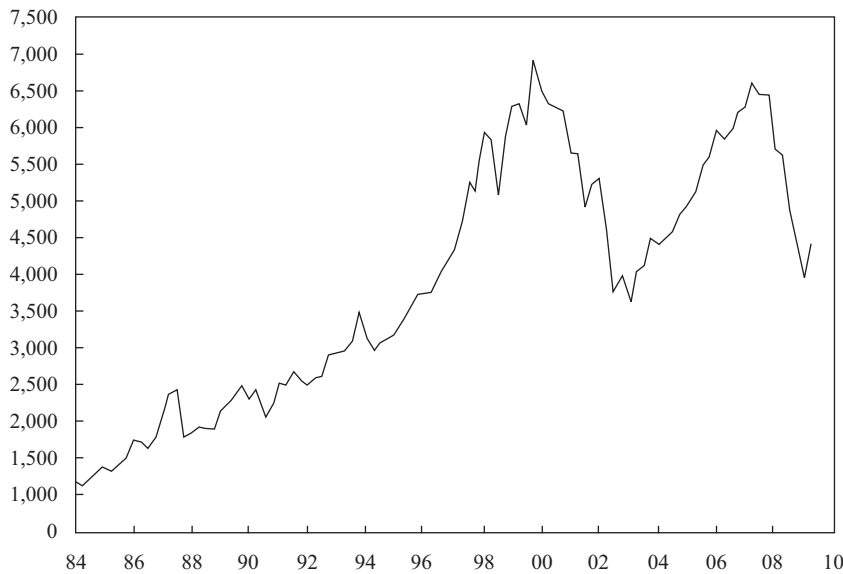
Line charts are familiar to all types of analysts and are a simple graphic display of price trends over time. Usually, the chart is a plot of data points, such as share price, with a line connecting these points. Line charts are typically drawn with closing prices as the data points. The vertical axis (*y*-axis) reflects price level, and the horizontal axis (*x*-axis) is time. Even though the line chart is the simplest chart, an analyst can quickly glean information from this chart.

The chart in Exhibit 1 is a quarterly chart of the FTSE 100 Index from 1984 through mid-2009. Up years and down years are clearly evident. The strong rally from 1984 through 1999 and the market decline from late 1999 to late 2002 are also clearly visible. The 2003–2007 rally did not exceed the high reached in 1999, which suggests that investors were not willing to pay as high a price for stocks on the London Stock Exchange during that rally as they were in the prior rally. This information provides a broad overview of investor sentiment and can lead to further analysis. Importantly,

⁴ An American Depositary Receipt is a negotiable certificate issued by a depositary bank that represents ownership in a non-US company's deposited equity (i.e., equity held in custody by the depositary bank in the company's home market).

the analyst can access and analyze this information quickly. Collecting and analyzing the full array of data normally incorporated in fundamental analysis would take much longer.

Exhibit 1 Line Chart: FTSE 100 Quarterly Price Data, 1984–2009 (Price Measured in British Pounds Sterling)



3.1.2 Bar Chart

A line chart has one data point per time interval. A **bar chart**, in contrast, has four bits of data in each entry—the high and low price encountered during the time interval plus the opening and closing prices. Such charts can be constructed for any time period, but they are customarily constructed from daily data.

As Exhibit 2 shows, a vertical line connects the high and low price of the day; a cross-hatch to the right indicates the closing price, and a cross-hatch to the left indicates the opening price. The appeal of this chart is that the analyst immediately gets a sense of the nature of that day’s trading. A short bar indicates little price movement during the day; that is, the high, low, and close were near the opening price. A long bar indicates a wide divergence between the high and the low for the day.

Exhibit 2 Bar Chart Notation

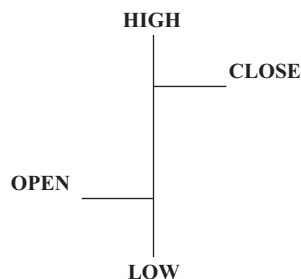
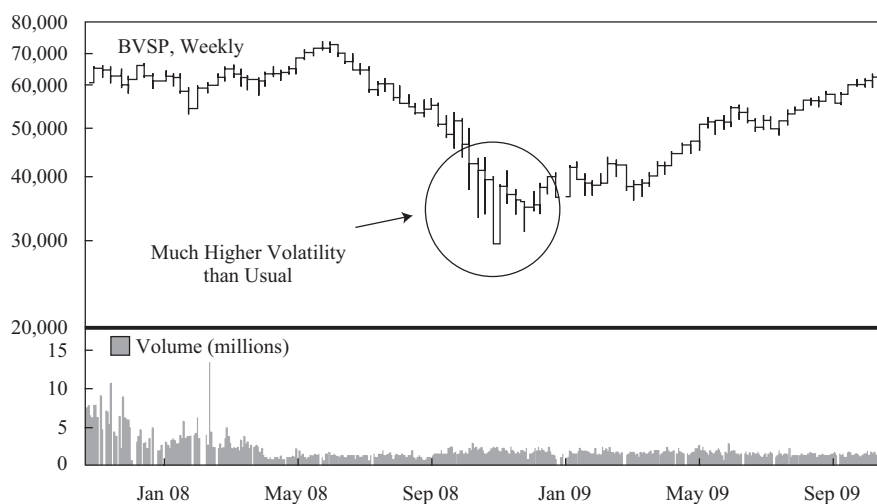


Exhibit 3 shows daily performance of the Brazilian Bovespa Index (BVSP) from late 2007 through late 2009. The top part provides the price open, close, high, and low; the bottom part shows volume, which will be discussed in section 3.1.6. The downturn in the second half of 2008 is obvious, but also notable are the extreme price movements in the fourth quarter of 2008. There were 40 trading days from 29 September to 24 November. On 20 of those days, the closing value of the index changed from the previous close by at least 4 percent, a huge move by historical standards. During the same period, the average daily price range (high to low) was 7 percent, compared with 3.7 percent in the previous two months. This potentially important information would not be captured in a line chart.

Exhibit 3 Bar Chart: Bovespa Index, November 2007–November 2009 (Price in Brazilian Reais)



3.1.3 Candlestick Chart

Candlestick charts trace their roots to Japan, where technical analysis has been in use for centuries. Like a bar chart, a **candlestick chart** also provides four prices per data point entry: the opening and closing prices and the high and low prices during the period. As shown in Exhibit 4, a vertical line represents the range through which the security price traveled during the time period. The line is known as the wick or shadow. The body of the candle is shaded if the opening price was higher than the closing price, and the body is clear if the opening price was lower than the closing price.

Exhibit 4 Construction of a Candlestick Chart

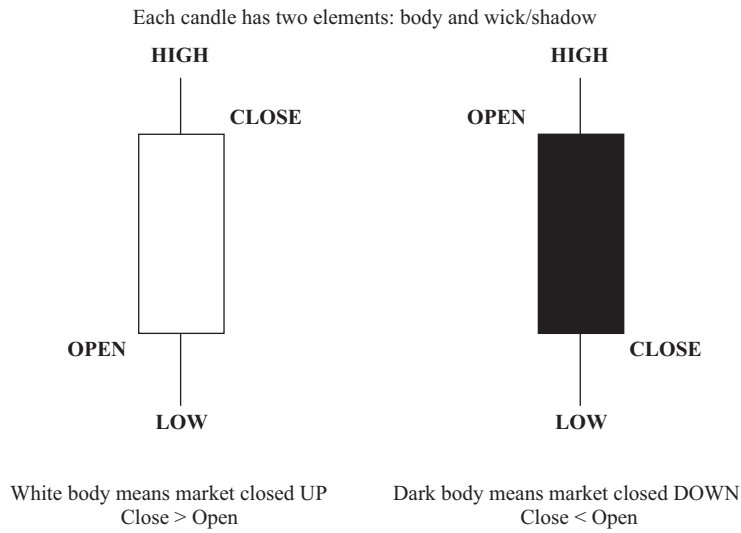
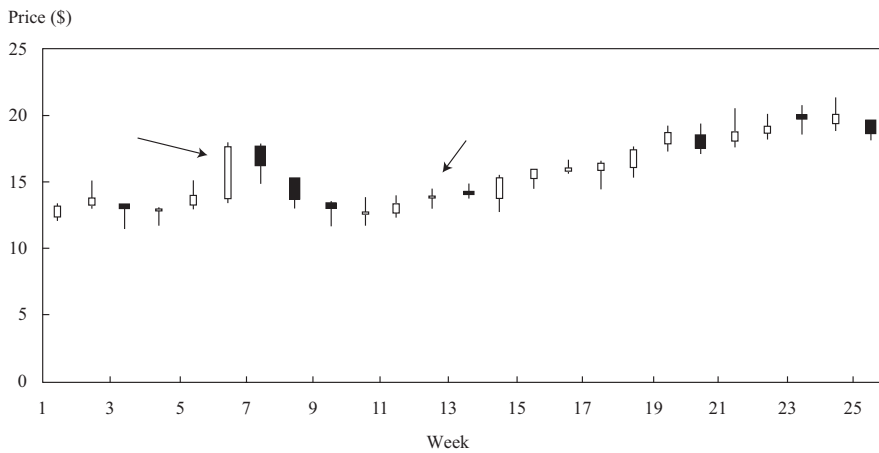


Exhibit 5 shows a weekly candlestick chart for Companhia Vale do Rio Doce for the period 1 January through 15 June 2009.

Exhibit 5 Candlestick Chart: Companhia Vale do Rio Doce, 1 January–15 June 2009 (Price in US Dollars)



The advantage of the candlestick chart over the bar chart is that price moves are much more visible in the candlestick chart, which allows faster analysis. The bar chart indicates market volatility only by the height of each bar, but in candlestick charts, the difference between opening and closing prices and their relationship to the highs and lows of the day are clearly apparent. Compare the sixth candle with the twelfth in Exhibit 5. In the sixth candle, the analyst can see significant volatility because the high of the day and low of the day are so far apart. The stock opened near the low of the day and closed near the high, suggesting a steady rally during the day. In contrast, the twelfth candle shows that the shares opened and closed at the same price, creating a cross-pattern. In Japanese terminology used in candlestick charting, this pattern is called a doji. The doji signifies that after a full day of trading, the positive price

influence of buyers and the negative price influence of sellers exactly counteracted each other, which tells the analyst that this market is in balance. If a doji occurs at the end of a long uptrend or downtrend, it signals that the trend will probably reverse.

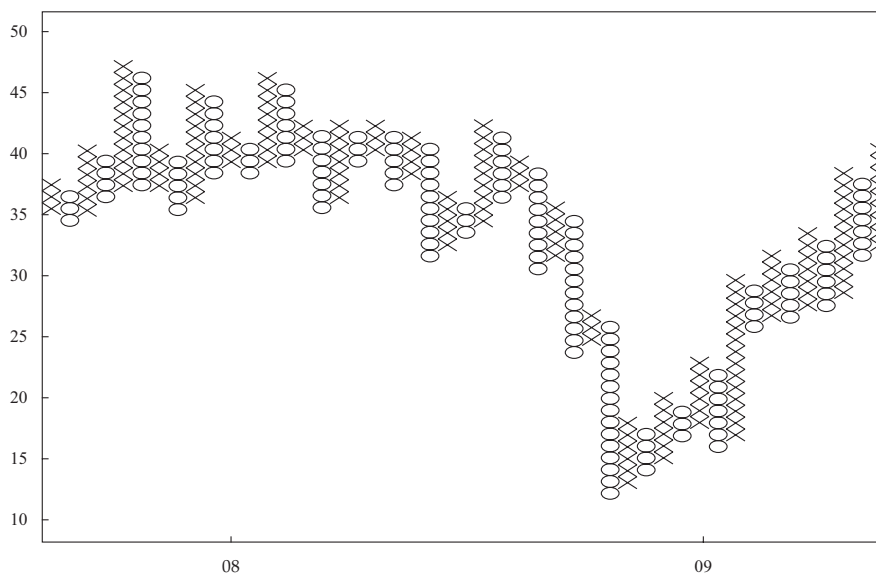
3.1.4 Point and Figure Chart

Point and figure charts were widely used in the United States in the early 1900s and were favored because they were easy to create and update manually in the era before computers. As with any technical analysis tool, these charts can be used with equities, fixed-income securities, commodities, or foreign exchange.

Who originated the **point and figure chart** is unclear; they are referred to in a number of books in the United States dating back to 1898. The methodology evolved until 1934 when the first book was published on the topic: *The Point and Figure Method of Anticipating Stock Price Movements* by Victor de Villiers and Owen Taylor. With the advent of powerful charting software and internet websites, complex chart types, such as the candlestick chart, have become more popular. But point and figure charts still offer tremendous value if one knows their limitations and their advantages. The key reason this knowledge is necessary, as explained below, is that point and figure charts are constructed differently from other charts; they have a clear focus on entry and exit levels but no focus on holding periods.

As illustrated in Exhibit 6, a point and figure chart is drawn on a grid and consists of columns of X's alternating with columns of O's. Neither time nor volume are represented on this type of chart, and *the horizontal axis represents the number of changes in price, not time*. Movement along the horizontal axis does reflect the passage of time, but not in any uniform fashion. The analyst makes entries on a point and figure chart only when the price changes by the "box size," which is explained below. This lack of a normal time dimension is perhaps the most unusual characteristic of a point and figure chart.

Exhibit 6 Point and Figure Chart: Wharf Holdings Daily Price Chart, 2007–2009 (in Hong Kong Dollars)



Note: The box size is HK\$1, and the reversal size is three.

To construct a point and figure chart, the analyst must determine both the box size and the reversal size. Box size refers to the change in price represented by the height of each box (boxes are generally square, but the width has no meaning). In Exhibit 6, the box size is HK\$1. The reversal size is used to determine when to create a new column. In Exhibit 6, the reversal size is three, meaning a reversal in price of three or more boxes.

Although a point and figure chart can be constructed in several ways, these charts are always drawn on graph paper to facilitate seeing the “columns and rows” nature of the data. The vertical axis measures *discrete increments of price*. For example, an analyst in Europe might draw a €1 chart, a €2 chart, or any other increment. In a €1 chart, boxes would be €1 apart (e.g. €40, €41, €42), whereas in a €2 chart they would be €2 apart (€40, €42, €44). The most commonly used box size is 1 unit of currency, which is used when prices range from 20 to 100 per share of the currency.

The next decision the technician needs to make is the reversal size. The most common size is three, meaning a reversal in price of three or more boxes (€3 in the case of a box size of €1). This use of a multibox reversal helps eliminate “noise” in the price data. (*Noise* refers to short-term trading volatility that does not alter the long-term trend of the security.)

In a point and figure chart, X represents an increase in price and O represents a decline in price. In constructing a chart, the technician draws an X in a column of boxes every time the security price closes up by the amount of the box size. (Ideally, all security prices are considered on an intraday basis, but this practice has given way to using closing prices only.) If the price increases by twice the box size, the technician draws two X's to fill in two boxes, one on top of the other. The technician fills in more boxes for larger price moves. The resulting column starts at the opening price level and extends to the closing price level. As long as the security keeps closing at higher prices, the technician keeps filling in boxes with X's, which makes the column higher and higher. If the price does not increase by at least the box size, no indication is made on the chart. Thus, in some cases, the chart is not updated for long periods, but no indication of this passage of time is made on the chart.

The reversal size determines when to create a new column. In the case of a €1 box size, and three-box reversal size, a decline of €3 or more would result in the technician shifting to the next column over and beginning a column of O's. The first box to be filled in is to the right and below the highest X in the prior column. The technician then fills in an O to bring the column down to the price level at the close. Again, each filled-in box (if the box size is €1) represents a €1 decline in the security price. As long as the downtrend continues, without a €3 increase in price, the technician continues adding O's to the column below the prior O's. A reversal in the downtrend by at least the amount of the reversal size prompts the technician to move to the next column and begin drawing a series of X's again. Computer technology makes the process easy, but many technicians prefer to keep point and figure charts on their wall and update them manually because doing so provides a vivid reminder of the market trend.

Point and figure charts are particularly useful for making trading decisions because they clearly illustrate price levels that may signal the end of a decline or advance. They also clearly show price levels at which a security may frequently trade. In using the point size and reversal size to make trading decisions, for uptrends, or columns of X's, the practitioner would maintain long positions. The reversal size could be considered the amount of loss that would prompt the closing of a long position and the establishment of a new short position. The larger the reversal size, the fewer columns in the chart and the longer uptrends and downtrends will run.

The box size can be varied in relation to the security price. For a security with a very low price—say, below €5—a €1 box size might mean few or no updates on the chart because the price would only rarely change by this amount. Thus, the technician could reduce the box size to cents. For highly priced securities, much larger box

sizes could be used. The reversal size is a multiple of the box size, so if the box size is changed, the reversal size changes. Practitioners who want fewer columns or trade signals can use a large reversal size.

Analysis of a point and figure chart is relatively straightforward as long as the technician understands its construction and limitations. The chart is relatively simple, and repeated high and low prices are evident. Congestion areas, where a security trades up and down in a narrow range, are evidenced by a series of short columns of X's and O's spanning roughly the same price range. Major, sustained price moves are represented by long columns of X's (when prices are moving up) or O's (when prices are moving down).

3.1.5 Scale

For any chart—line, bar, or candlestick—the vertical axis can be constructed with either a **linear scale** (also known as an arithmetic scale) or a **logarithmic scale**, depending on how you want to view the data. With a logarithmic scale, equal vertical distances on the chart correspond to an equal percentage change. A logarithmic scale is appropriate when the data move through a range of values representing several orders of magnitude (e.g., from 10 to 10,000); a linear scale is better suited for narrower ranges (e.g., prices from \$35 to \$50). The share price history of a particular company, for instance, is usually best suited to a linear scale because the data range is usually narrow.

The horizontal axis shows the passage of time. The appropriate time interval depends on the nature of the underlying data and the specific use of the chart. An active trader, for instance, may find 10-minute, 5-minute, or even tick-by-tick data useful, but other technical analysts may prefer daily or weekly data. In general, the greater the volatility of the data, the greater the likelihood that an analyst can find useful information in more-frequent data sampling.

Consider Exhibits 7 and 8, which both show the yearly history of the Dow Jones Industrial Average (DJIA) from 1928 to 2010. Plotting the index on a linear scale, as in Exhibit 7, makes it difficult to gather much information from the first 50 years of the data series. Analysts can see a slight uptrend but not much else. The eye is drawn to the bull market of the 1980s, the subsequent dot-com bubble, and the recent era of the subprime crisis. When plotted on a logarithmic scale, as in Exhibit 8, however, many people would find that the data tell a more comprehensive story. The Great Depression of the 1930s stands out, but over the following 75 years, the data follow a relatively stable upward trend.

Exhibit 7 Dow Jones Industrial Average on Linear Scale, 1928–2010 (in US Dollars)

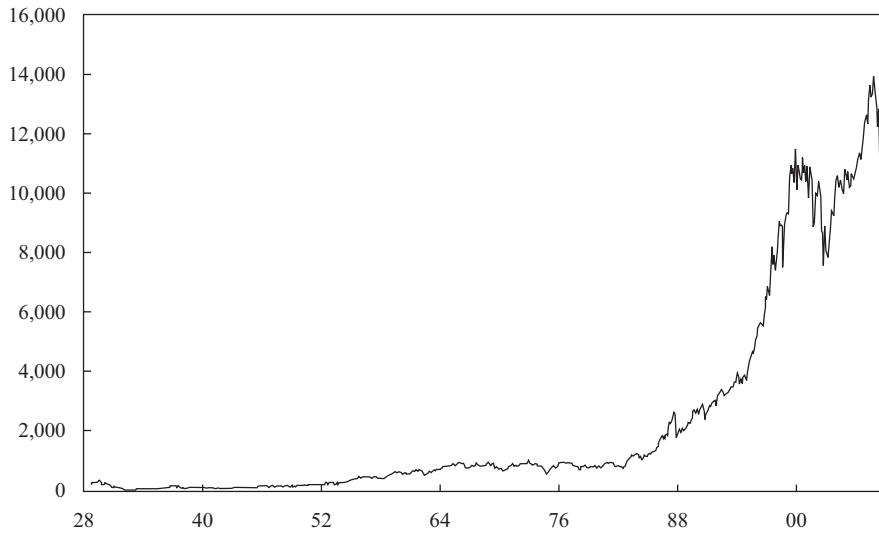
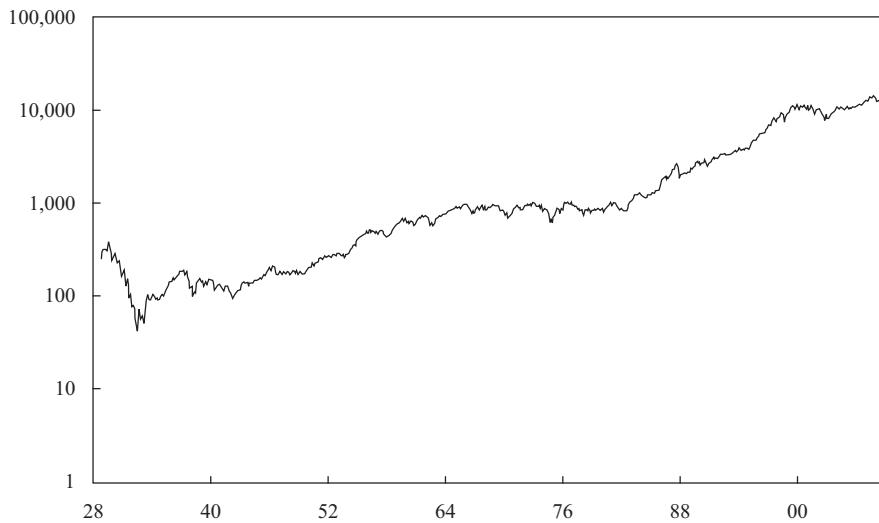


Exhibit 8 Dow Jones Industrial Average on Logarithmic Scale, 1928–2010 (in US Dollars)



3.1.6 Volume

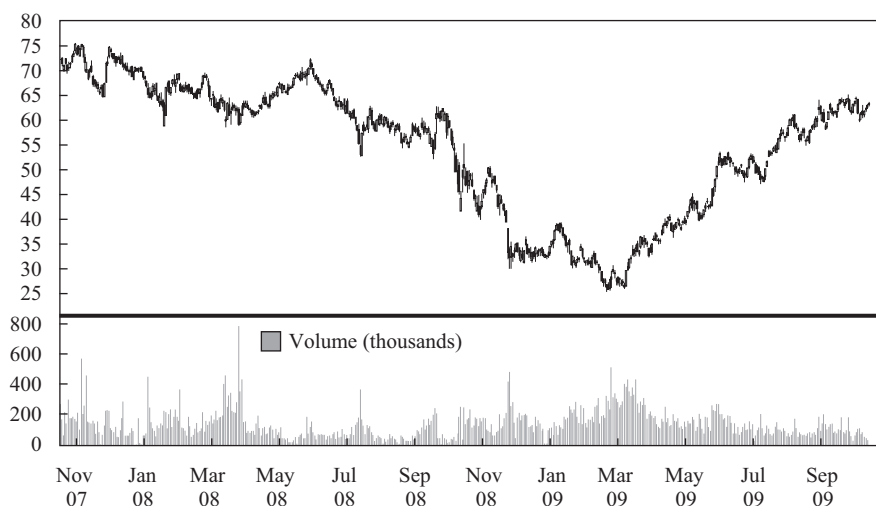
Volume is an important characteristic that is included at the bottom of many charts; see, for example Exhibit 3. Volume is used to assess the strength or conviction of buyers and sellers in determining a security’s price. For example, on a daily price chart, below the price section would be a column chart showing the volume traded for that day.

Some technicians consider volume information to be crucial. If volume increases during a time frame in which price is also increasing, that combination is considered positive and the two indicators are said to “confirm” each other. The signal would be

interpreted to mean that over time, more and more investors are buying the financial instrument and they are doing so at higher and higher prices. This pattern is considered a positive technical development.

Conversely, if volume and price diverge—for example, if a stock's price rises while its volume declines—the implication is that fewer and fewer market participants are willing to buy that stock at the new price. If this trend in volume continues, the price rally will soon end because demand for the security at higher prices will cease. Exhibit 9 shows a chart for Toronto-Dominion Bank (TD Bank) with volume displayed separately.

Exhibit 9 Daily Candlestick Price Chart and Volume Bar Chart: TD Bank, November 2007–November 2009 (Price in Canadian Dollars)



3.1.7 Time Intervals

Most of the chart examples in this reading are daily price charts in that they show the price and volume on a daily basis. Daily frequency is not required, however, because charts can be constructed by using any time interval. For short-term trading, the analyst can create charts with one-minute or shorter intervals. For long-term investing, the analyst can use weekly, monthly, or even annual intervals. The same analytical approach applies irrespective of the time interval. Using long intervals allows the analyst to chart longer time periods than does using short time intervals for the simple reason that long intervals contain fewer data points, so a longer time frame can be presented on the chart. Using short intervals allows the analyst to see more detail. A useful step for many analysts is to begin the analysis of a security with the chart for a long time frame, such as a weekly or monthly chart, and then construct charts with shorter and shorter time intervals, such as daily or hourly charts.

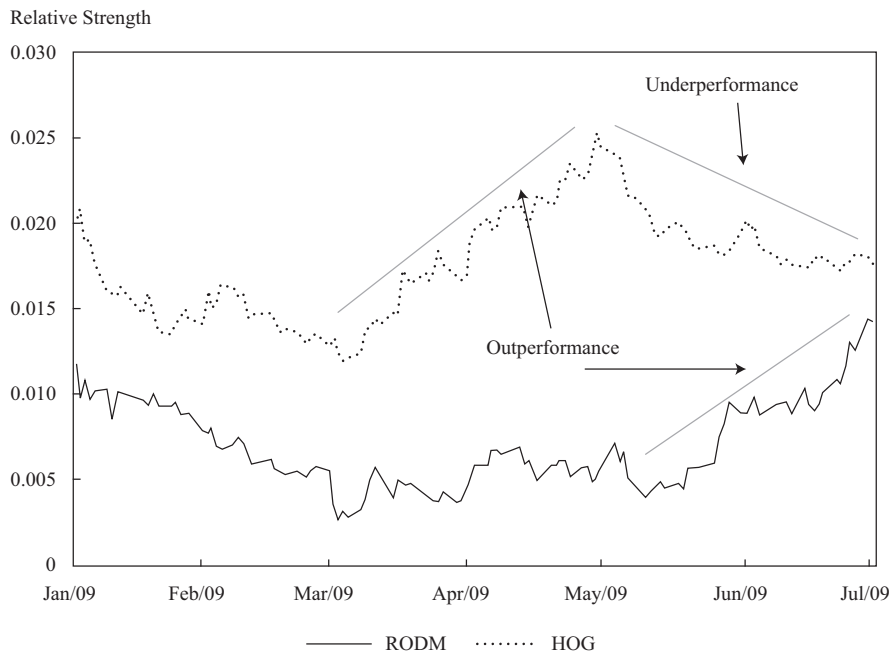
3.1.8 Relative Strength Analysis

Relative strength analysis is widely used to compare the performance of a particular asset, such as a common stock, with that of some benchmark—such as, in the case of common stocks, the FTSE 100, the Nikkei 225, or the S&P 500 Index—or the performance of another security. The intent is to show out- or underperformance of the individual issue relative to some other index or asset. Typically, the analyst prepares a line chart of the ratio of two prices, with the asset under analysis as the numerator

and with the benchmark or other security as the denominator. A rising line shows the asset is performing better than the index or other stock; a declining line shows the opposite. A flat line shows neutral performance.

Suppose a private investor is researching two investment ideas she read about. Harley-Davidson Motor Company (HOG) is a well-known motorcycle company; Rodman and Renshaw (RODM) is a small investment bank. The investor wants to determine which of these two has been the stronger performer (relative to the S&P 500) over the past few months. Exhibit 10 shows relative strength lines for the two stocks for the first six months of 2009. Each point on the relative strength plot is simply the ratio of a share price to the S&P 500. For example, on 9 March 2009, HOG closed at US\$8.42 and the S&P 500 closed at \$676.53. The relative strength data point is, therefore, $8.42/676.53$, or 0.0124 . On 27 April, HOG closed at US\$19.45, with the S&P 500 at \$857.51. The relative strength value is $19.45/857.51$, or 0.0227 , nearly double the 9 March value.

Exhibit 10 Relative Strength Analysis: HOG vs. the S&P 500 and RODM vs. the S&P 500, January–June 2009



The units on the vertical axis are not significant; the ratio is a function of the relative prices of the assets under consideration. The important information is how the ratio has changed. This type of chart allows an analyst to make a visual determination of that change. As Exhibit 10 illustrates, Harley-Davidson was a strong performer in March and April but lagged the index beginning in May. In contrast, the stock of Rodman and Renshaw began a significant rise in mid-May that outperformed the market average.

3.2 Trend

The concept of a **trend** is perhaps the most important aspect of technical analysis. Trend analysis is based on the observation that market participants tend to act in herds and that trends tend to stay in place for some time. A security can be considered to be in an upward trend, a downward trend, a sideways trend, or no apparent trend. Not all securities are in a trend, and little useful forecasting information can

be gleaned from technical analysis when a security is not in a trend. Not every chart will have obvious or clear implications, so the analyst must avoid the temptation to force a conclusion from every chart and thus reach a wrong interpretation.

An uptrend for a security is when the price goes to higher highs and higher lows. As the security moves up in price, each subsequent new high is higher than the prior high and each time there is a **retacement**, which is a reversal in the movement of the security's price, it must stop at a higher low than the prior lows in the trend period. To draw an uptrend line, a technician draws a line connecting the lows of the price chart. Major breakdowns in price, however, when the price drops through and below the trendline by a significant amount (many technicians use 5–10 percent below the trendline) indicate that the uptrend is over and may signal a further decline in the price. Minor breakthroughs below previous lows simply call for the line to be moderately adjusted over time. Time is also a consideration in trends: The longer the security price stays below the trendline, the more meaningful the breakdown is considered to be.

In an uptrend, the forces of demand are greater than the forces of supply. So, traders are willing to pay higher and higher prices for the same asset over time. Presumably, the strong demand indicates that investors believe the intrinsic value of the security is increasing.

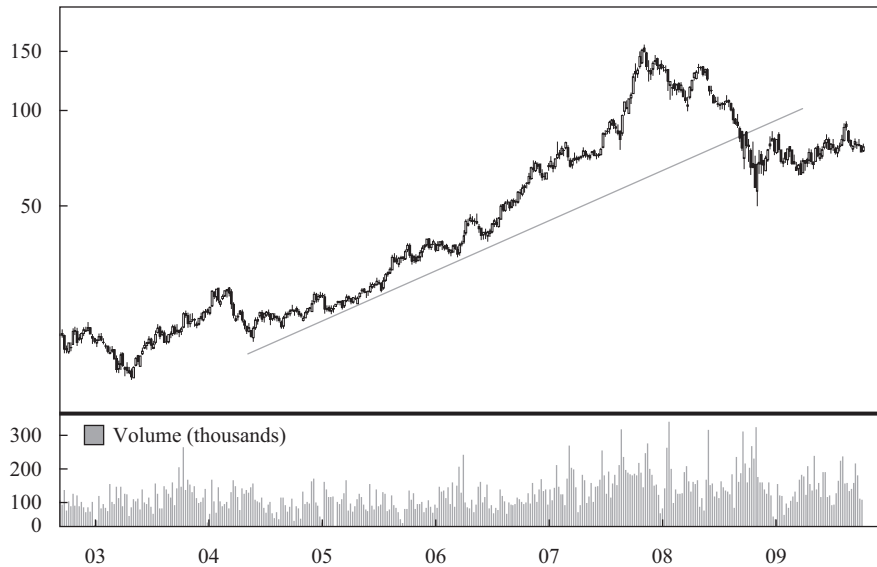
A downtrend is when a security makes lower lows and lower highs. As the security moves down in price, each subsequent new high must be lower than the prior high and each time there is a retracement, it must stop at a lower low than the prior lows in the trend period. To draw a downtrend line, a technician draws a line connecting the highs of the price chart. Major breakouts above the downtrend line (e.g., 5–10 percent) indicate that the downtrend is over and a rise in the security's price may occur. And as with an uptrend, the longer the security price stays above the trendline, the more meaningful the breakout is considered to be.

In a downtrend, supply is overwhelming demand. Over time, sellers are willing to accept lower and lower prices to exit long positions or enter new short positions. Both motives of the sellers generally indicate deteriorating investor sentiment about the asset. However, selling may be prompted by factors not related to the fundamental or intrinsic value of the stock. For example, investors may be forced to sell to meet margin calls in their portfolios. From a purely technical standpoint, the reason is irrelevant. The downtrend is assumed to continue until contrary technical evidence appears. Combining fundamental analysis with technical analysis in such a case, however, might reveal a security that has attractive fundamentals but a currently negative technical position. In uptrends, however, a security with an attractive technical position but unattractive fundamentals is rare because most buying activity is driven by traders who expect the security price to increase in the future. The rare exception is covering short positions after a sizable decline in the share price.

A security may trade in a fairly narrow range, moving sideways on the price chart without much upward or downward movement. This pattern indicates a relative balance between supply and demand. A technical analyst may not expect to profit from long or short trades in such securities but might devise profitable option strategies for short-term investors with the ability to accept the risks.

Exhibit 11 shows the application of trend analysis. Depicted is an uptrend line for the shares of China Mobile Limited. Note that through late 2007, every rally took the shares to a new high, whereas sell-offs stopped at increasingly higher levels. The first sign of trouble came in the spring of 2008 when the rally terminated at a lower price point than the prior rally, of late 2007. This movement was followed by the shares breaking through the trendline.

Exhibit 11 Trend Analysis: China Mobile Weekly Price Chart, 2002–2010 (Prices in Hong Kong Dollars)



The chart in Exhibit 11 covers roughly seven years and would most likely be used by investors with a long time horizon. Investors with a shorter horizon might use a chart with a shorter time frame and would thus obtain a different trendline as well as a different trendline breakdown.

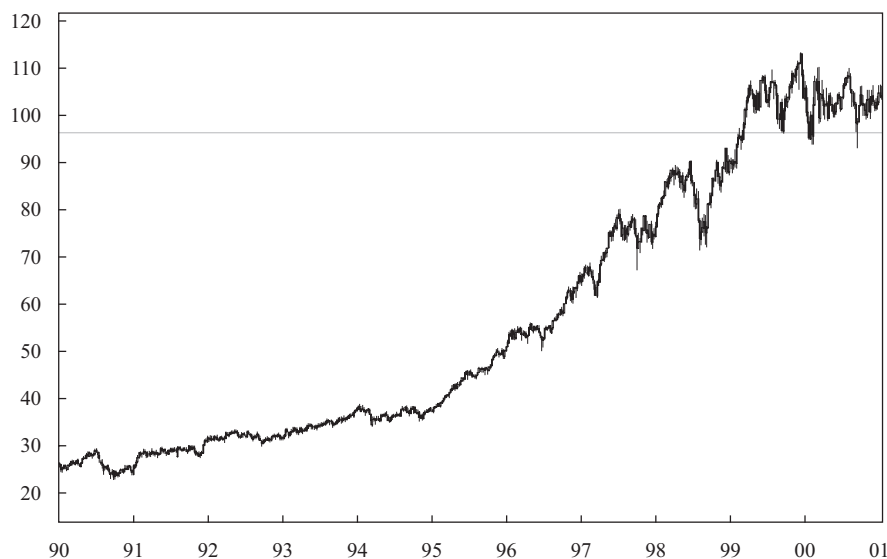
Two concepts related to trend are support and resistance. **Support** is defined as a low price range in which buying activity is sufficient to stop the decline in price. It is the opposite of **resistance**, which is a price range in which selling is sufficient to stop the rise in price. The psychology behind the concepts of support and resistance is that investors have come to a collective consensus about the price of a security. Support and resistance levels can be sloped lines, as in trendlines, or horizontal lines.

A key tenet of support and resistance as a part of technical analysis is the **change in polarity principle**, which states that once a support level is breached, it becomes a resistance level. The same holds true for resistance levels; once breached, they become support levels. For example, if the price of a security never rises above SFr10 over a long period of time and begins to decline each time it reaches this level but then finally breaks through this level by a significant amount, the point to which the price rises becomes a support level.

Support and resistance levels are commonly round numbers. Support indicates that at some price level, investors consider a security to be an attractive investment and are willing to buy, even in the wake of a sharp decline (and for resistance, at some level, investors are not willing to buy, even in an uptrend). The fact that these price points tend to be round numbers strongly suggests that human sentiment is at work.

One of the most widely publicized examples of support and resistance is when the DJIA broke through the 10,000 mark in 1999, shown in Exhibit 12. Previously, 10,000 had been viewed as a resistance line, but from 1999 through the end of the chart in 2001, 10,000 served as a support level.

Exhibit 12 Support Level: DJIA Weekly Price Chart, 1990–2001
(Price in US Dollars ÷ 100)



3.3 Chart Patterns

Chart patterns are formations that appear in price charts that create some type of recognizable shape. Common patterns appear repeatedly and often lead to similar subsequent price movements. Thus, the identification and analysis of chart patterns is a common aspect of technical analysis used to predict security prices. An important connection to understand is that patterns form as a result of the behavior of market participants and that these patterns represent graphical depictions of the collective psychology of the market at a given time.

The recurring patterns that appear in charts can be used as a basis for market forecasting. The reason chart patterns have predictive value is that they are graphic representations of human trading activity and human behavior is frequently repeated, especially trading activity that is driven by fear (in market sell-offs) or hope and greed (as evidenced in bubbles—that is, rallies that extend well beyond valuation levels that would be derived by fundamental values). An example of a rally driven by greed is the recent real estate bubble, which took home prices to unsustainably high levels. This bubble started a few years after the internet stock bubble of the 1990s, which also took prices to unsustainably high levels. In bubbles, investors, driven by hope and greed, drive the price of an asset to irrationally high levels, in the expectation that another buyer will be willing to pay an even higher price for the asset. The housing bubble was notable because it so closely followed the internet stock bubble, despite all that had been written about the “irrational exuberance” of the internet bubble of the 1990s.

Chart patterns can be divided into two categories: **reversal patterns** and **continuation patterns**. These terms refer to the trend for the security in question prior to the formation of the pattern. The most important concept to understand in using chart patterns is that without a clear trend in place prior to the pattern, the pattern has no predictive value. This aspect is frequently forgotten by investors who are so eager to identify and use patterns that they forget the proper application of charts.

3.3.1 Reversal Patterns

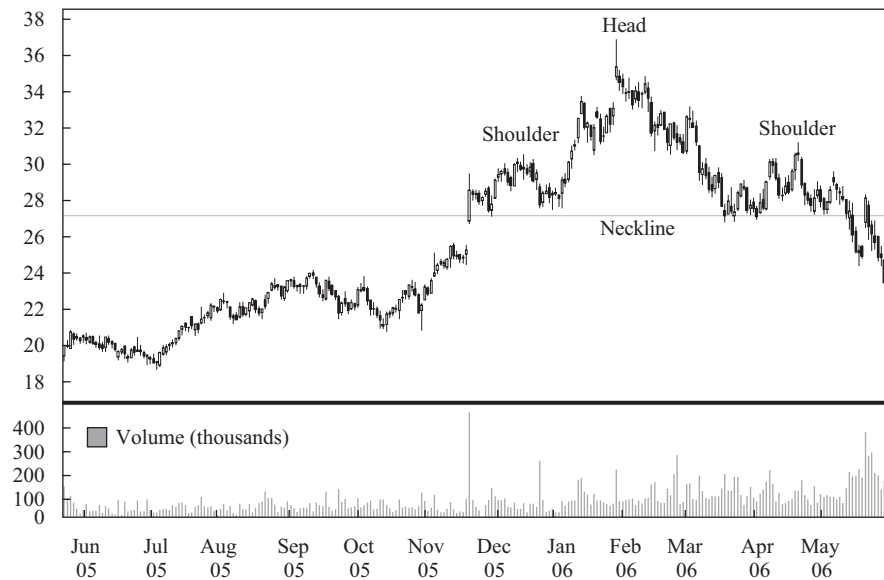
As the name implies, a reversal pattern signals the end of a trend, a change in direction of the financial instrument's price. Evidence that the trend is about to change direction is obviously important, so reversal patterns are noteworthy.

3.3.1.1 Head and Shoulders Perhaps the most widely recognized reversal pattern is the **head and shoulders pattern**. The pattern consists of three segments. Volume is an important characteristic in interpreting this pattern. Because head and shoulders indicates a trend reversal, a clear trend must exist prior to the formation of the pattern in order for the pattern to have predictive validity. For a head and shoulders pattern, the prior trend must be an uptrend. Later, we will discuss the *inverse* head and shoulders pattern (preceded by a downtrend).

Exhibit 13 depicts a head and shoulders pattern for Marvell Technology Group during 2006. The three parts of the pattern are as follows:

- **Left shoulder:** This part appears to show a strong rally, with the slope of the rally being greater than the prior uptrend, on strong volume. The rally then reverses back to the price level where it started, forming an inverted V pattern, but on lower volume.
- **Head:** The head is a more pronounced version of the left shoulder. A rally following the first shoulder takes the security to a higher high than the left shoulder by a significant enough margin to be clearly evident on the price chart. Volume is typically lower in this rally, however, than in the one that formed the first, upward side of the left shoulder. This second rally also fails, with price falling back to the same level at which the left shoulder began and ended. This price level is called the neckline. This price level also will be below the uptrend line formed by connecting the low prices in the uptrend preceding the beginning of the head and shoulders pattern. This head pattern is the first signal that the rally may be coming to an end and that a reversal may be starting.
- **Right shoulder:** The right shoulder is a mirror image (or close to a mirror image) of the left shoulder but on lower volume, signifying less buying enthusiasm. The price rallies up to roughly the same level as the first shoulder, but the rally reverses at a lower high price than the rally that formed the head.

Exhibit 13 Head and Shoulders Pattern: Marvell Technology Daily Price Chart, June 2005–June 2006 (Price in US Dollars ÷ 100)



Rarely will an analyst see a perfectly formed head and shoulders pattern; variations include two tops on the shoulders or on the head. The head, however, should rise to a higher price level than either shoulder, whereas the shoulders should be roughly symmetrical. In terms of the neckline price level, the first rally should begin at this level and the left shoulder and head should also decline to roughly this level. But necklines may not always form exactly horizontal lines. These imperfect variations make this (and other) technical patterns difficult for quantitative analysts or academicians to model, but the human brain can detect the pattern even if it is imperfectly formed.

Volume is important in analyzing head and shoulders patterns. A new high in price at the top of the head without a new high in volume signals fewer bullish market participants. When one indicator is making a new high (or low) but another is not, this situation is called **divergence**. In divergence, the right shoulder will have even lower volume, signaling that buying interest or demand is tapering off and will soon be overwhelmed by supply. The result will be a price decline.

Once the head and shoulders pattern has formed, the expectation is that the share price will decline down through the neckline price. Technicians tend to use filtering rules to make sure that a clear breakdown of the neckline has occurred. These rules may take the form of waiting to trade until the price falls to a meaningful level below the neckline (3 percent or 5 percent are commonly used) and/or a time limit for the price to remain below the neckline before trading; when a daily price chart is used, the rule may be several days to a week. Prices commonly rebound to the neckline levels, even after a decline has exceeded the filter levels. Prices generally stop, however, at or around the neckline. The neckline was a support level, and under the change in polarity principle, once a support level is breached, it becomes a resistance level.

3.3.1.2 Inverse Head and Shoulders The head and shoulders pattern can also form upside down and act as a reversal pattern for a preceding downtrend. The three parts of the inverse head and shoulders are as follows:

- **Left shoulder:** This shoulder appears to show a strong decline, with the slope of the decline greater than the prior downtrend, on strong volume. The rally then reverses back to the price level where it started, forming a V pattern, but on lower volume.
- **Head:** The head is a more pronounced version of the left shoulder. Another decline follows but on diminishing volume, which takes the price to a lower low than the prior shoulder by a significant enough margin that it is clearly evident on the price chart. This second decline also reverses, with price rising to the same level at which the left shoulder began and ended. This price level, the neckline, will also be above the downtrend line formed by connecting the high prices in the downtrend preceding the beginning of the inverse head and shoulders pattern. This pattern is the first signal that the decline may be coming to an end and that a reversal may be near.
- **Right shoulder:** The right shoulder is roughly a mirror image of the left shoulder but on lower volume, signifying less selling enthusiasm. The price declines down to roughly the same level as the first shoulder, but the rally reverses at a higher low price than the rally that formed the head.

3.3.1.3 Setting Price Targets with Head and Shoulders Pattern As with all technical patterns, the head and shoulders pattern must be analyzed from the perspective of the security's long-term price trend. The rally that happened before the formation of the pattern must be large enough for there to be something to reverse. The stronger and more pronounced the rally was, the stronger and more pronounced the reversal is likely to be. Similarly, once the neckline is breached, the security is expected to decline by the same amount as the change in price from the neckline to the top of the head. If the preceding rally started at a price higher than the neckline, however, the correction is unlikely to bring the price lower than the price level at the start of the rally. Because a head and shoulders formation is a bearish indicator (i.e., a technician would expect the previously established uptrend to end and a downtrend to commence), a technician would seek to profit by shorting the security under analysis. When attempting to profit from the head and shoulders pattern, a technician will often use the price differences between the head and the neckline to set a price target, which is the price at which the technician anticipates closing the investment position. The price target for the head and shoulders pattern is calculated as follows:

$$\text{Price target} = \text{Neckline} - (\text{Head} - \text{Neckline})$$

For example, in Exhibit 14, the high price reached at the top of the head is roughly \$37 and the neckline formed at roughly \$27 for a difference of \$10. So a technician would expect the price to decline to a level \$10 below the neckline, or to \$17; that is,

$$\text{Price target} = \$27 - (\$37 - \$27) = \$17$$

Exhibit 14 Calculating Price Target: Marvell Technology Daily Price Chart, June 2005–November 2006 (Price in US Dollars)



EXAMPLE 1

Determining a Price Target from a Head and Shoulders Pattern

Danielle Waterhouse is the technical analyst at Kanektok Securities. One of the companies her firm follows is LPA Petroleum. Waterhouse believes that a graph of LPA's share prices over the past six months reveals a classic head and shoulders pattern. The share price peaked at US\$108, and she estimates the neckline at US\$79. At today's close, the shares traded at US\$78. Based on the head and shoulders pattern, what price target should Waterhouse estimate?

Solution:

Waterhouse estimates the neckline at US\$79, which is US\$108 minus US\$29, or US\$29 lower than the head. Her price target is thus US\$79 minus US\$29, which is US\$50. Waterhouse would attempt to sell LPA short at today's price of US\$78 and anticipate closing the position at US\$50 for a profit of US\$28 per share (not accounting for transaction costs).

3.3.1.4 Setting Price Targets with Inverse Head and Shoulders Pattern Calculating price targets for inverse head and shoulders patterns is similar to the process for head and shoulders patterns, but in this case, because the pattern predicts the end of a downtrend, the technician calculates how high the price is expected to rise once it breaches the neckline. Exhibit 15 illustrates an inverse head and shoulders pattern.

Exhibit 15 Calculating Price Target for Inverse Head and Shoulders Pattern: DJIA Daily Price Chart, February 2002–January 2004 (Price in US Dollars ÷ 100)



For an inverse head and shoulders pattern, the formula is similar to a head and shoulders pattern:

$$\text{Price target} = \text{Neckline} + (\text{Neckline} - \text{Head})$$

For example, in the price chart in Exhibit 15, the low price reached at the bottom of the head is roughly US\$7,197 and the neckline formed at roughly US\$9,050. The target can thus be found as $9,050 + (9,050 - 7,197) = 10,903$. In this case, a technician might have taken a long position in the summer of 2003 with the hope of eventually exiting the position at about US\$10,903 for a profit.

3.3.1.5 Double Tops and Bottoms A **double top** is when an uptrend reverses twice at roughly the same high price level. Typically, volume is lower on the second high than on the first high, signaling a diminishing of demand. The longer the time is between the two tops and the deeper the sell-off is after the first top, the more significant the pattern is considered to be. Price targets can be calculated from this pattern in a manner similar to the calculation for the head and shoulders pattern. For a double top, price is expected to decline below the low of the valley between the two tops by at least the distance from the valley low to the high of the double tops.

EXAMPLE 2

Determining a Price Target from a Double-Top Pattern

Richard Dupuis is a technician who trades Eurodollar futures for his own account. He analyzes charts based on one-minute time intervals looking for short-term trading opportunities. Eurodollar futures contracts have been trending upward most of the morning, but Dupuis now observes what he believes is a double-top pattern: After peaking at US\$97.00, the futures contract price fell to US\$96.42, climbed again to US\$97.02, and then started a decline. Because of the double

top, Dupuis anticipates a reversal from the uptrend to a downtrend. Dupuis decides to open a short position to capitalize on the anticipated trend reversal. What price target should Dupuis estimate for closing the position?

Solution:

Dupuis estimates the price target as $\$96.42 - (\$97.02 - \$96.42) = \95.82 .

Double bottoms are formed when the price reaches a low, rebounds, and then sells off back to the first low level. Exhibit 16 depicts a double-bottom pattern for Time Warner. Technicians use the double bottom to predict a change from a downtrend to an uptrend in security prices. For double bottoms, the price is expected to appreciate above the peak between the two bottoms by at least the distance from the valley lows to the peak.

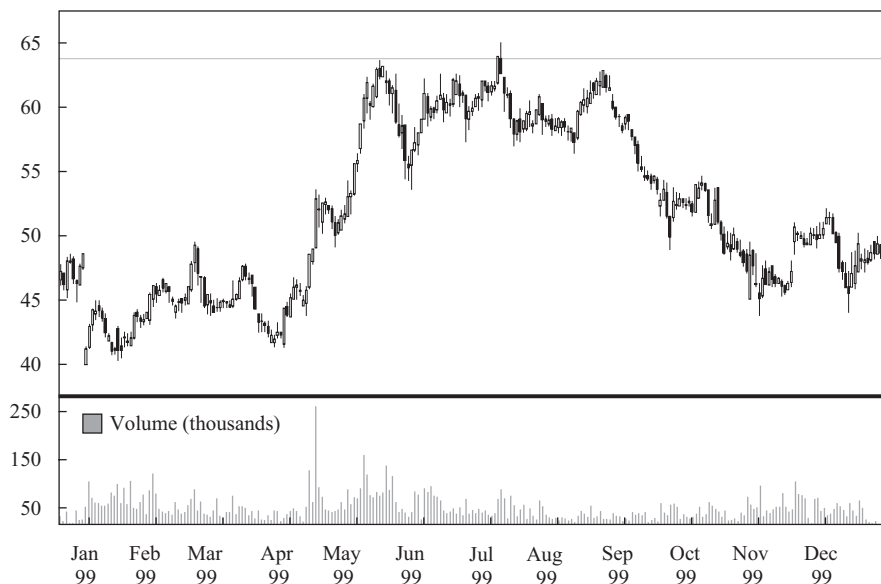
Exhibit 16 Double-Bottom Pattern: Time Warner Daily Price Chart, November 2007–October 2009 (Price in US Dollars)



The reason these patterns are significant is that they show that at some price point, investors step in to reverse trends that are under way. For an uptrend, a double top implies that at some price point, enough traders are willing to either sell positions (or enter new short positions) that their activities overwhelm and reverse the uptrend created by demand for the shares. A reasonable conclusion is that this price level has been fundamentally derived and that it represents the intrinsic value of the security that is the consensus of investors. With double bottoms, if a security ceases to decline at the same price point on two separate occasions, the analyst can conclude that the market consensus is that at that price point, the security is now cheap enough that it is an attractive investment.

3.3.1.6 Triple Tops and Bottoms **Triple tops** consist of three peaks at roughly the same price level, and **triple bottoms** consist of three troughs at roughly the same price level. A triple top for Rockwell Automation during 1999 is shown in Exhibit 17.

Exhibit 17 Triple-Top Pattern: Rockwell Automation Daily Price Chart, 1999 (Price in US Dollars)



One of the challenges in double-top and triple-top patterns, and one of the valid criticisms of technical analysis in general, is that an analyst cannot know which pattern will result until after the fact. For example, after the broad equity market sell-off in the first quarter of 2009, a number of investment professionals were quoted as calling for a “retest of the lows”—in technical terms, a double bottom.

There is no evidence that market corrections (or rallies) must end with a double bottom (or double top in the case of an uptrend), and there is no generally accepted technical theory that predicts whether a low will be repeated once or even twice before a reversal occurs. A double bottom is considered to be a more significant pattern than a single bottom because traders have stepped in on two occasions to halt declines. However, traders have no way to determine whether a double top or bottom will be followed by a third top or bottom. Triple tops and triple bottoms are rare, but when they occur, they are more significant reversal patterns than double tops or double bottoms. On three separate occasions, traders stepped in to sell or buy shares with enough volume to end a rally or decline under way at the time. Nevertheless, the greater the number of times the price reverses at the same level, and the greater the time interval over which this pattern occurs, the greater the significance of the pattern.

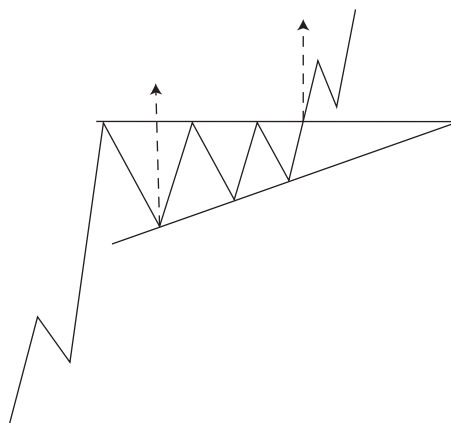
3.3.2 Continuation Patterns

A **continuation pattern** is used to predict the resumption of a market trend that was in place prior to the formation of a pattern. From a supply-and-demand standpoint, a continuation pattern indicates a change in ownership from one group of investors to another. For example, if a positive trend was in place prior to a pattern and then one group of investors begins selling, the negative impact on price is quickly offset by other investors buying, so the forces of supply and demand go back and forth in terms of their impact on price. But neither has an overwhelming advantage. This type of pattern is often called “a healthy correction” because the long-term market trend does not change and because while one set of investors is seeking to exit, they are replaced by another set of investors willing to take their positions at roughly the same share price.

3.3.2.1 Triangles **Triangle patterns** are a type of continuation pattern. They come in three forms, symmetrical triangles, ascending triangles, and descending triangles. A triangle pattern forms as the range between high and low prices narrows, visually forming a triangle. In old terminology, triangles were referred to as “coils” (which was also synonymous with “springs”) because a triangle was considered analogous to a spring being wound up tighter and tighter and storing energy that would at some point be released. In a triangle, a trendline connects the highs and a trendline connects the lows. As the distance between the highs and lows narrows, the trendlines meet, forming a triangle. In a daily price chart, a triangle pattern usually forms over a period of several weeks.

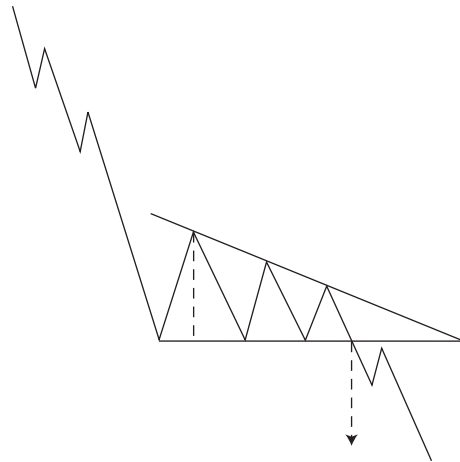
In an ascending triangle, as shown in Exhibit 18, the trendline connecting the high prices is horizontal and the trendline connecting the low prices forms an uptrend. What this pattern means is that market participants are selling the stock at the same price level over a period of time, putting a halt to rallies at the same price point, but that buyers are getting more and more bullish and stepping in at increasingly higher prices to halt sell-offs instead of waiting for further price declines. An ascending triangle typically forms in an uptrend. The horizontal line represents sellers taking profits at around the same price point, presumably because they believe that this price represents the fundamental, intrinsic value of the security. The fact that the rally continues beyond the triangle may be a bullish signal; it means that another set of investors is presumably willing to buy at an even higher price because their analysis suggests the intrinsic value of the security is higher. Alternatively, the fundamental facts themselves may have changed; that is, the security’s fundamental value may be increasing over time. The technician does not care which explanation is true; the technician is relying solely on the information conveyed by the security price itself, not the underlying reason.

Exhibit 18 Ascending Triangle Pattern



In the descending triangle, shown in Exhibit 19, the low prices form a horizontal trendline and the high prices form a series of lower and lower highs. Typically, a descending triangle will form in a downtrend. At some point in the sell-offs, buyers appear with enough demand to halt sell-offs each time they occur, at around the same price. Again, this phenomenon may be the result of fundamental analysts believing that the security has reached a price where it represents a significant discount to its intrinsic value and these analysts step in and buy. As the triangle forms, each rally ceases at a lower and lower high price point, suggesting the selling demand is exerting greater price influence than buying demand.

Exhibit 19 Descending Triangle



In a symmetrical triangle, the trendline formed by the highs angles down and the trendline formed by the lows angles up, both at roughly the same angle, forming a symmetrical pattern. Exhibit 20 contains a symmetrical triangle formed by the price for Transocean in early 2000. What this triangle indicates is that buyers are becoming more bullish while, simultaneously, sellers are becoming more bearish, so they are moving toward a point of consensus. Because the sellers are often dominated by long investors exiting positions (as opposed to short sellers creating new short positions), the pressure to sell diminishes once the sellers have sold the security. Thus, the pattern ends in the same direction as the trend that preceded it, either uptrend or downtrend.

Exhibit 20 Symmetrical Triangle Pattern: Transocean Weekly Price Chart, June 1999–June 2000 (Price in US Dollars)



The term “measuring implication” refers to the height of a triangle, as illustrated with a dark vertical bar in Exhibit 20. The measuring implication is derived by calculating the difference in price from the two trendlines at the start of the triangle.

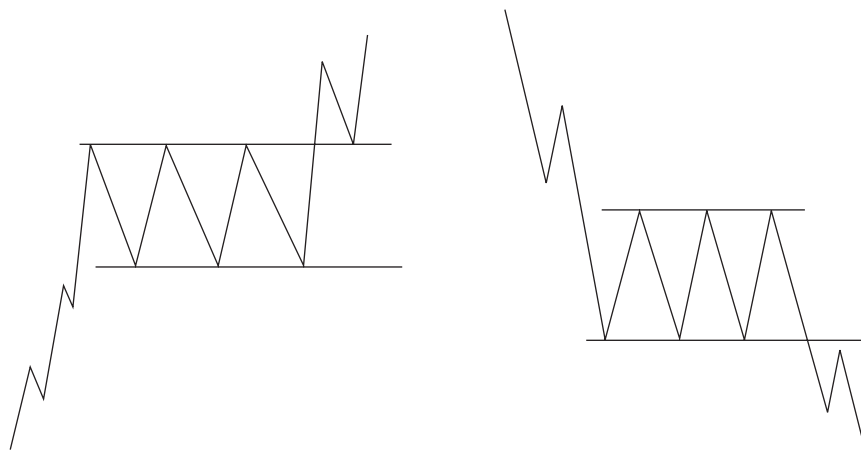
Once the pattern is broken and the price breaks through one of the trendlines that form the triangle, the analyst expects the price to move by at least the amount of the breakthrough above or below the trendline. Typically, price breaks out of a triangle pattern between halfway and three-quarters of the way through the pattern. The longer the triangle pattern persists, the more volatile and sustained the subsequent price movement is likely to be.

3.3.2.2 Rectangle Pattern A rectangle pattern is a continuation pattern formed by two parallel trendlines, one formed by connecting the high prices during the pattern, and the other formed by the lows. Exhibit 21 shows two rectangle patterns. As is the case with other patterns, the rectangle pattern is a graphical representation of what has been occurring in terms of collective market sentiment. The horizontal resistance line that forms the top of the rectangle shows that investors are repeatedly selling shares at a specific price level, bringing rallies to an end. The horizontal support line forming the bottom of the rectangle indicates that traders are repeatedly making large enough purchases at the same price level to reverse declines. The support level in a bullish rectangle is natural because the long-term trend in the market is bullish. The resistance line may simply represent investors taking profits. Conversely, in a bearish rectangle, the support level may represent investors buying the security. Again, the technician is not concerned with why a pattern has formed, only with the likely next price movement once the price breaks out of the pattern.

Exhibit 21 Rectangle Patterns

Bullish Rectangle

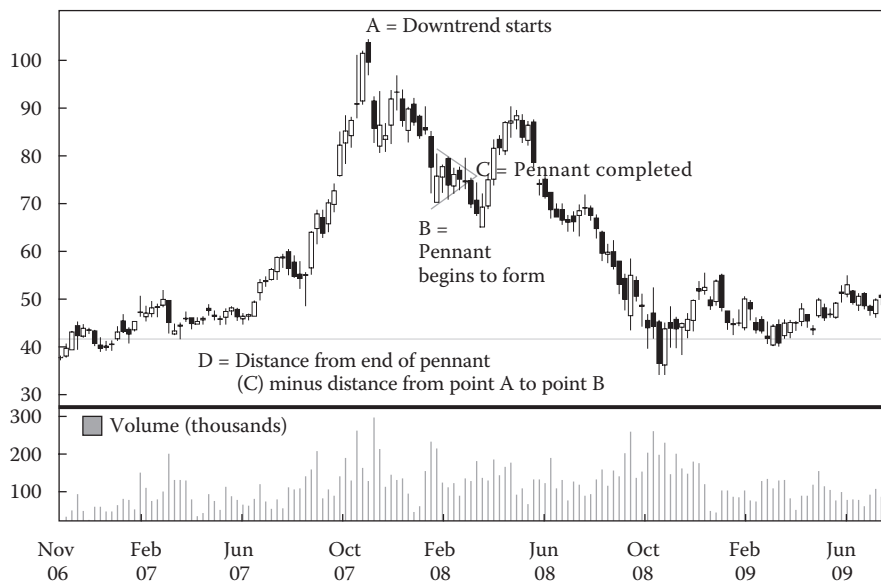
Bearish Rectangle



3.3.2.3 Flags and Pennants **Flags** and **pennants** are considered minor continuation patterns because they form over short periods of time—on a daily price chart, typically over a week. They are similar to each other and have the same uses. A flag is formed by parallel trendlines, in the same way that most countries' flags are rectangular and create a parallelogram. Typically, the trendlines slope in a direction opposite to the trend up to that time; for example, in an uptrend, they slope down. A pennant formation is similar except that the trendlines converge to form a triangle, similar to the pennants of many sports teams or pennants flown on ships. The key difference between a triangle and pennant is that a pennant is a short-term formation whereas a triangle is a long-term formation.

The expectation for both flags and pennants is that the trend will continue after the pattern in the same direction it was going prior to the pattern. The price is expected to change by at least the same amount as the price change from the start of the trend to the formation of the flag or pennant. In Exhibit 22, a downtrend begins at point A, which is \$104. At point B, which is \$70, a pennant begins to form. The distance from point A to point B is \$34. The pennant ends at point C, which is \$76. The price target is \$76 minus \$34, which is \$42, the line labeled D.

Exhibit 22 Pennant Formation: China Mobile ADR, November 2006–July 2009 (Price in US Dollars)



3.4 Technical Indicators

The technical analyst uses a variety of technical indicators to supplement the information gleaned from charts. A technical indicator is any measure based on price, market sentiment, or funds flow that can be used to predict changes in price. These indicators often have a supply-and-demand underpinning; that is, they measure how potential changes in supply and demand might affect a security’s price.

3.4.1 Price-Based Indicators

Price-based indicators somehow incorporate information contained in the current and past history of market prices. Indicators of this type range from simple (e.g., a moving average) to complex (e.g., a stochastic oscillator).

3.4.1.1 Moving Average A **moving average** is the average of the closing price of a security over a specified number of periods. Moving averages smooth out short-term price fluctuations, giving the technician a clearer image of market trend. Technicians commonly use a simple moving average, which weights each price equally in the calculation of the average price. Some technicians prefer to use an exponential moving average (also called an exponentially smoothed moving average), which gives the greatest weight to recent prices while giving exponentially less weight to older prices.

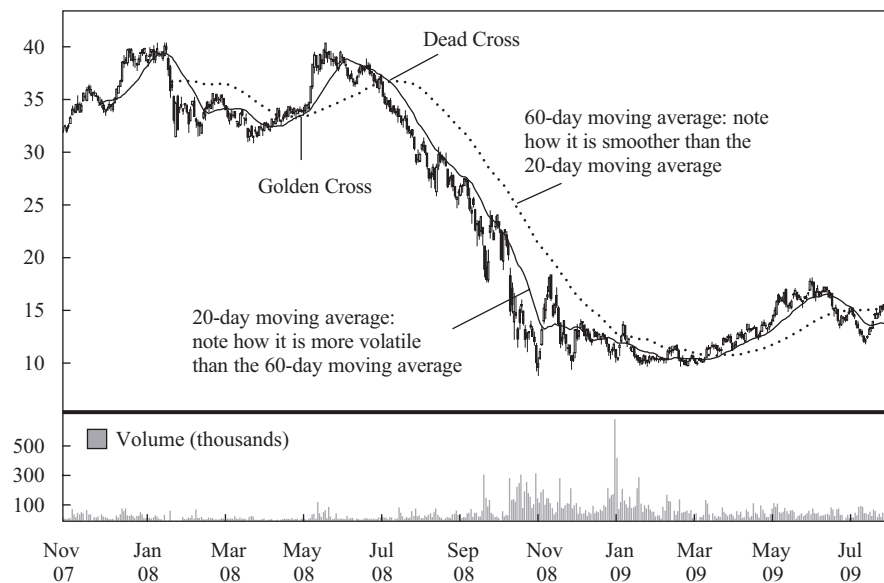
The number of data points included in the moving average depends on the intended use of the moving average. A 20-day moving average is commonly used because a month contains roughly 20 trading days. Also, 60 days is commonly used because it represents a quarter year (three months) of trading activity.

Moving averages can be used in conjunction with a price trend or in conjunction with one another. Moving averages are also used to determine support and resistance.

Because a moving average is less volatile than price, this tool can be used in several ways. First, whether price is above or below its moving average is important. A security that has been trending down in price will trade below its moving average, and a security that has been trending up will trade above its moving average. Second, the distance between the moving-average line and price is also significant. Once price begins to move back up toward its moving-average line, this line can serve as a resistance level. The 65-day moving-average line is commonly cited in the press, and when the price approaches the moving-average line, many investors become concerned that a rally will stall, so they sell the security.

Two or more moving averages can be used in conjunction. Exhibit 23 shows the price chart of Gazprom SP European Depositary Receipts (EDRs) on the Frankfurt Stock Exchange overlaid with 20-day and 60-day EDR moving averages for late 2007 to mid-2009.⁵ Note that the longer the time frame used in the creation of a moving average, the smoother and less volatile the line. Investors often use moving-average crossovers as a buy or sell signal. When a short-term moving average crosses from underneath a longer-term average, this movement is considered bullish and is termed a **golden cross**. Conversely, when a short-term moving average crosses from above a longer-term moving average, this movement is considered bearish and is called a **dead cross**. In the case shown in Exhibit 23, a trading strategy of buying on golden crosses and selling on dead crosses would have been profitable.

Exhibit 23 Daily Price Chart with 20-Day and 60-Day Moving Averages: Gazprom EDR, November 2007–August 2009 (Price in Euros)

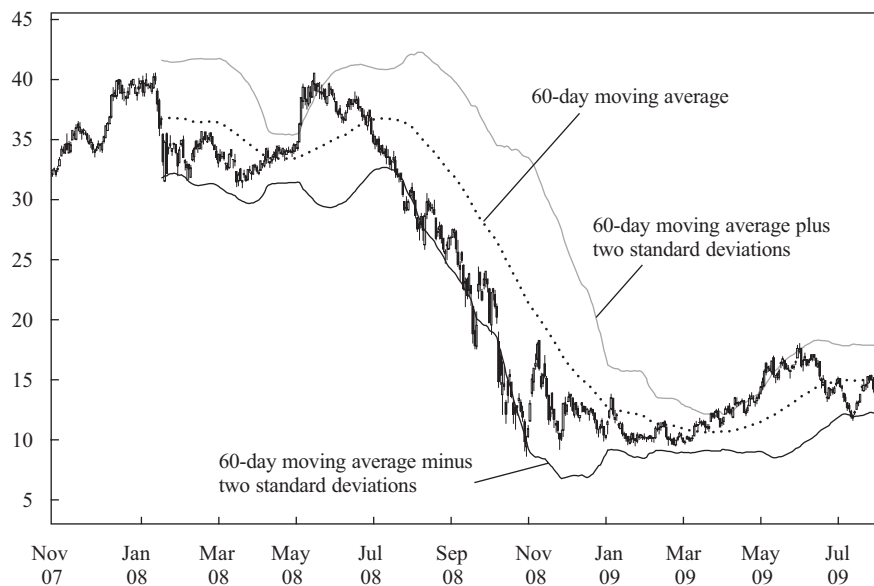


⁵ A European Depositary Receipt is a negotiable certificate issued by a depositary bank in one country against equity that is traded on the stock exchange of another country.

Moving averages are easy to construct, and simple trading rules can be derived for using them. Computers can optimize what time lengths to set when using two moving averages. This optimization may take the form of changing the number of days included in each moving average or adding filter rules, such as waiting several days after a trade signal is given to make a trade. Reasons for optimization include the desire to manage capital drawdowns, to maximize gains, or to minimize losses. Once the moving average is optimized, even if a profitable trading system is devised for that security, the strategy is unlikely to work for other securities, especially if they are dissimilar. Also, as market conditions change, a previously optimized trading system may no longer work.

3.4.1.2 Bollinger Bands Market veteran John Bollinger combined his knowledge of technical analysis with his knowledge of statistics to create an indicator called **Bollinger Bands**. Bollinger Bands consist of a moving average plus a higher line representing the moving average plus a set number of standard deviations from average price (for the same number of periods as used to calculate the moving average) and a lower line that is a moving average minus the same number of standard deviations. Exhibit 24 depicts Bollinger Bands for the Gazprom EDR.

Exhibit 24 Bollinger Band Using 60-Day Moving Average and Two Standard Deviations: Gazprom EDR Daily Price Chart, November 2007–August 2009 (Price in Euros)



The more volatile the security being analyzed becomes, the wider the range becomes between the two outer lines or bands. Similar to moving averages, Bollinger Bands can be used to create trading strategies that can be easily computerized and tested. A common use is as a contrarian strategy, in which the investor sells when a security price reaches the upper band and buys when it reaches the lower band. This strategy assumes that the security price will stay within the bands.

This type of strategy is likely to lead to a large number of trades, but it also limits risk because the trader can quickly exit unprofitable trades. In the event of a sharp price move and a change in trend, however, a contrarian strategy based on Bollinger Bands would be unprofitable. So, long-term investors might actually buy on a significant breakout above the upper boundary band because a major breakout would imply a

change in trend likely to persist for some time. The long-term investor would sell on a significant breakout below the lower band. In this strategy, significance would be defined as breaking above or below the band by a certain percentage (say, 5 percent or 10 percent) and/or for a certain period of time (say, a week for a daily price chart). Again, such rules can easily be computerized and tested.

3.4.2 Momentum Oscillators

One of the key challenges in using indicators overlaid on a price chart is the difficulty of discerning changes in market sentiment that are out of the ordinary. **Momentum oscillators** are intended to alleviate this problem. They are constructed from price data, but they are calculated so that they either oscillate between a high and low (typically 0 and 100) or oscillate around a number (such as 0 or 100). Because of this construction, extreme highs or lows are easily discernible. These extremes can be viewed as graphic representations of market sentiment when selling or buying activity is more aggressive than historically typical. Because they are price based, momentum oscillators also can be analyzed by using the same tools technicians use to analyze price, such as the concepts of trend, support, and resistance.

Technicians also look for **convergence** or **divergence** between oscillators and price. Convergence is when the oscillator moves in the same manner as the security being analyzed, and divergence is when the oscillator moves differently from the security. For example, when price reaches a new high, this sign is considered bullish, but if the momentum oscillator being used does not also reach a new high at the same time, this pattern is divergence. It is considered to be an early warning of weakness, an indication that the uptrend may soon end.

Momentum oscillators should be used in conjunction with an understanding of the existing market (price) trend. Oscillators alert a trader to **overbought** or **oversold** conditions. In an overbought condition, market sentiment is unsustainably bullish. In an oversold condition, market sentiment is unsustainably bearish. In other words, the oscillator *range* must be considered separately for every security. Some securities may experience wide variations, and others may experience only minor variations.

Oscillators have three main uses. First, oscillators can be used to determine the strength of a trend. Extreme overbought levels are warning signals for uptrends, and extreme oversold levels are warning signals for downtrends. Second, when oscillators reach historically high or low levels, they may be signaling a pending trend reversal. For oscillators that move above and below 0, crossing the 0 level signals a change in the direction of the trend. For oscillators that move above and below 100, crossing the 100 level signals a change in the direction of the trend. Third, in a non-trending market, oscillators can be used for short-term trading decisions—that is, to sell at overbought levels and to buy at oversold levels.

3.4.2.1 Momentum or Rate of Change Oscillator The terms *momentum oscillator* and *rate of change oscillator* are synonymous. “Rate of change” is often abbreviated ROC. The ROC oscillator is calculated by taking the most recent closing price, subtracting the closing price from a prior date that is a set number of days in the past, and multiplying the result by 100:

$$M = (V - V_x) \times 100$$

where

M = momentum oscillator value

V = last closing price

V_x = closing price x days ago, typically 10 days

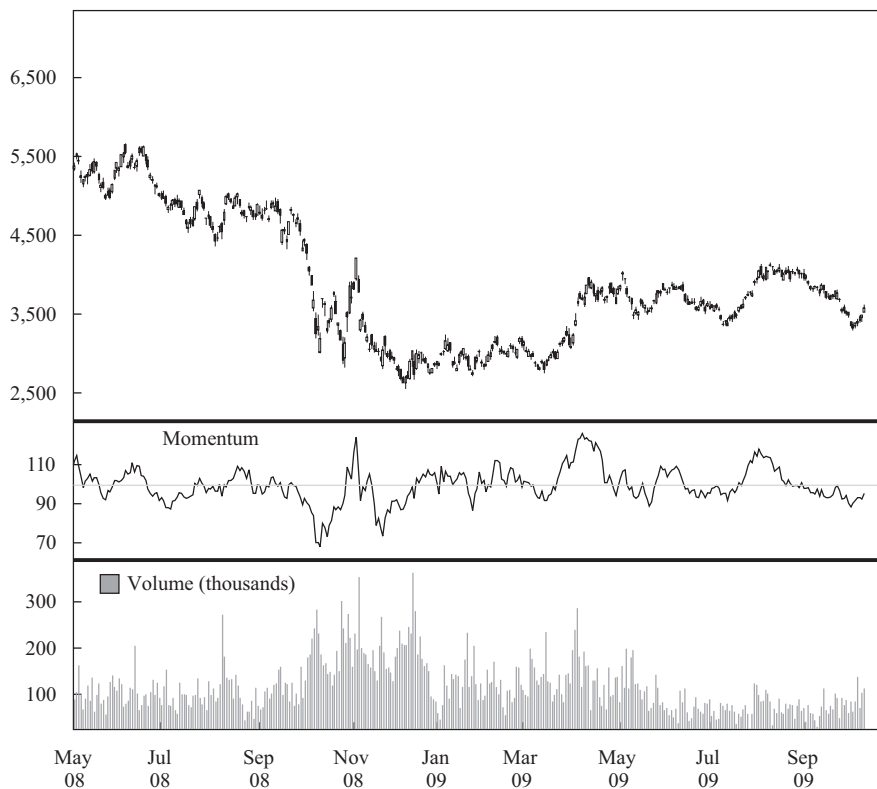
When the ROC oscillator crosses zero in the same direction as the direction of the trend, this movement is considered a buy or sell signal. For example, if the ROC oscillator crosses into positive territory during an uptrend, it is a buy signal. If it enters into negative territory during a downtrend, it is considered a sell signal. The technician will ignore crossovers in opposition to the trend because the technician must *always* first take into account the general trend when using oscillators.

An alternative method of constructing this oscillator is to set it so that it oscillates above and below 100, instead of 0, as follows:

$$M = \frac{V}{V_x} \times 100$$

This approach is shown in Exhibit 25 for Toyota Motor Corporation.

Exhibit 25 Momentum Oscillator with 100 as Midpoint: Toyota Motor, May 2008–October 2009 (Price in Japanese Yen)



In Exhibit 25, the calculation method for the ROC oscillator for Toyota stock, traded on the Tokyo Stock Exchange, is for the oscillator to move around 100 and x is 12 days. Note that for this stock, the ROC oscillator tends to maintain a range between ¥85 and ¥115. So episodes when the oscillator moves outside this range are of particular interest to the technician. An extreme high means that the stock has posted its highest gain in any 12-day period at this point, and an extreme low reading means it has posted its greatest loss over any 12-day period. When investors bid up the price of a security too rapidly, the indication is that sentiment may be unduly bullish and the market may be overbought. Exhibit 25 shows that overbought levels of the ROC oscillator coincide with temporary highs in the stock price. So, those levels would have been signals to sell the stock. The other notable aspect of Exhibit 25 is the divergence when the share price hit a new low in December 2008 but the ROC

oscillator did not. This divergence would have been a bullish signal and would have been interpreted to mean that, although the share price hit a new low, investor sentiment was actually higher than it had been previously. In itself, this information would not have been enough to warrant buying the shares because a downtrend in price was still in place, but it alerted the technician to the fact that the trend might end soon. The technician could then look for further indication of the trend's end and, with confirmation, might buy the stock.

3.4.2.2 Relative Strength Index A **relative strength index** (RSI) is computed over a rolling time period.⁶ It graphically compares a security's gains with its losses over the set period. The creator of the RSI, Welles Wilder, suggested a 14-day time period, and this period is generally the period used in most technical analysis software. The technician should understand that this variable can be changed and that the optimal time range should be determined by how the technician intends to use the RSI information. Factors that influence selection of the time period are similar to those that influence the selection of a time period for moving averages. Short time periods (such as 14 days) provide information about short-term price behavior. If 200 days is used, this short-term information will be smoothed out and, perhaps, will not be apparent at all.

RSI is a momentum oscillator and is not to be confused with the charting method called "relative strength analysis," in which the ratio of two security prices is plotted over time. The RSI provides information on whether or not an asset is overbought. The formula for the RSI is not intuitive and is best understood with an example. The formula is:

$$RSI = 100 - \frac{100}{1 + RS}$$

$$\text{where } RS = \frac{\sum(\text{Up changes for the period under consideration})}{\sum(|\text{Down changes for the period under consideration}|)}$$

Exhibit 26 shows closing prices for Ford Motor Company during the month of June 2009.

Exhibit 26 Computation of RSI: Ford, June 2009

Date	Close	Up Changes	Down Changes
6/1/2009	6.13		
6/2/2009	6.41	0.28	
6/3/2009	6.18		-0.23
6/4/2009	6.36	0.18	
6/5/2009	6.36		
6/8/2009	6.38	0.02	
6/9/2009	6.26		-0.12
6/10/2009	6.19		-0.07
6/11/2009	5.98		-0.21
6/12/2009	6.11	0.13	
6/15/2009	5.93		-0.18
6/16/2009	5.67		-0.26

⁶ This indicator is sometimes called the Wilder RSI.

Exhibit 26 (Continued)

Date	Close	Up Changes	Down Changes
6/17/2009	5.71	0.04	
6/18/2009	5.68		-0.03
6/19/2009	5.72	0.04	
6/22/2009	5.38		-0.34
6/23/2009	5.53	0.15	
6/24/2009	5.63	0.10	
6/25/2009	5.68	0.05	
6/26/2009	5.61		-0.07
6/29/2009	5.78	0.17	
6/30/2009	6.07	0.29	
		1.45	-1.51

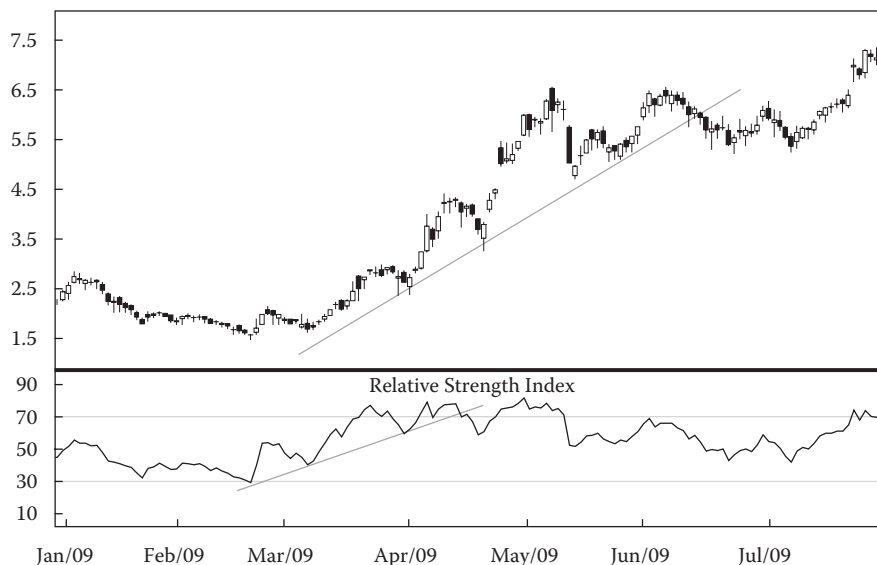
During this time, markets were still rebounding from the subprime crisis; automobile company stocks were unusually volatile and, to some speculators, presented interesting short-term trading opportunities. Suppose a trader decided to compute an RSI for the month of June. It would be a 22-day RSI with 21 price changes—11 up, 9 down, and 1 unchanged. To calculate the RSI, the trader would sum the 11 up changes, which sum to US\$1.45. The down changes total - US\$1.51; the absolute value drops the minus sign. The ratio of these two numbers is 0.96, so the RSI is

$$RSI = 100 - \frac{100}{1 + 0.96} = 100 - 51.02 = 48.98$$

The index construction forces the RSI to lie within 0 and 100. A value above 70 represents an overbought situation. Values below 30 suggest the asset is oversold. Again, as is the case with most technical tools, an analyst cannot simply learn the default settings and use them in every case. The 30–70 range is a good rule of thumb, but because the oscillator is a measure of volatility, less volatile stocks (such as utilities) may normally trade in a much narrower range. More volatile stocks (such as small-capitalization technology stocks) may trade in a wider range. The range also does not have to be symmetrical around 50. For example, in an uptrend, one might see a range of 40–80 but in downtrends, a range of 20–60.

The RSI measure often appears at the bottom or top of a price chart. Exhibit 27 shows a candlestick chart of Ford stock in 2009 with the corresponding RSI.

**Exhibit 27 Candlestick Chart with RSI: Ford, January–August 2009
(Price in US Dollars)**



The candlestick chart of Ford stock prices in Exhibit 27 illustrates several aspects of the use of an RSI. For example, because the RSI oscillator was higher than 70 on 23 March so the stock was overbought at that time, a simple reading of the chart might have led to the conclusion that the trader should sell the stock. Doing so, however, would have caused the trader to miss a significant advance in the shares. A more careful technical analysis that took into account the trend would have indicated that the stock was in an uptrend, so RSI readings above 70 could be expected.

Because RSI is a price-based oscillator, the trader can also apply trend lines to analyze it. Note in Exhibit 27 that both the share price and the RSI oscillator were in uptrends from February until April but that the RSI uptrend was broken on 15 April, a potential warning that the uptrend in price might also break downward. In June, the share price broke its uptrend support line.

3.4.2.3 Stochastic Oscillator The stochastic oscillator is based on the observation that in uptrends, prices tend to close at or near the high end of their recent range and in downtrends, they tend to close near the low end. The logic behind these patterns is that if the shares of a stock are constantly being bid up during the day but then lose value by the close, continuation of the rally is doubtful. If sellers have enough supply to overwhelm buyers, the rally is suspect. If a stock rallies during the day and is able to hold on to some or most of those gains by the close, that sign is bullish.

The stochastic oscillator oscillates between 0 and 100 and has a default setting of a 14-day period, which, again, might be adjusted for the situation as we discussed for the RSI. The oscillator is composed of two lines, called %K and %D, that are calculated as follows:

$$\%K = 100 \left(\frac{C - L14}{H14 - L14} \right)$$

where

- C = latest closing price
- $L14$ = lowest price in past 14 days
- $H14$ = highest price in past 14 days
- $\%D$ = average of the last three %K values calculated daily

Analysts should think about the %D in the same way they would a long-term moving-average line in conjunction with a short-term line. That is, %D, because it is the average of three %K values, is the slower moving, smoother line and is called the signal line. And %K is the faster moving line. The %K value means that the latest closing price (*C*) was in the %K percentile of the high–low range (*L14* to *H14*).

The default oversold–overbought range for the stochastic oscillator is based on reading the signal line relative to readings of 20 and 80, but warnings about always using the default range for the RSI oscillator also apply in the case of the stochastic oscillator. In fact, noted technician Constance Brown has coined a term called the “stochastics default club” to refer to neophyte technicians who trade based solely on these defaults.⁷ She has reported being able to develop successful trading strategies by using a time frame shorter than the 14-day default to calculate the stochastic oscillator. Apparently, enough traders are basing trades on the defaults to move the market for certain stocks. So, using shorter time frames than the default, she could trade ahead of the traders in the default stochastic club and generate a profit. Of course, other traders might be tempted to use an even shorter time frame, but there is a drawback to using a short time frame; namely, the shorter the time frame is, the more volatile the oscillator becomes and the more false signals it generates.

The stochastic oscillator should be used with other technical tools, such as trend analysis or pattern analysis. If both methods suggest the same conclusion, the trader has convergence (or confirmation), but if they give conflicting signals, the trader has divergence, which is a warning signal suggesting that further analysis is necessary.

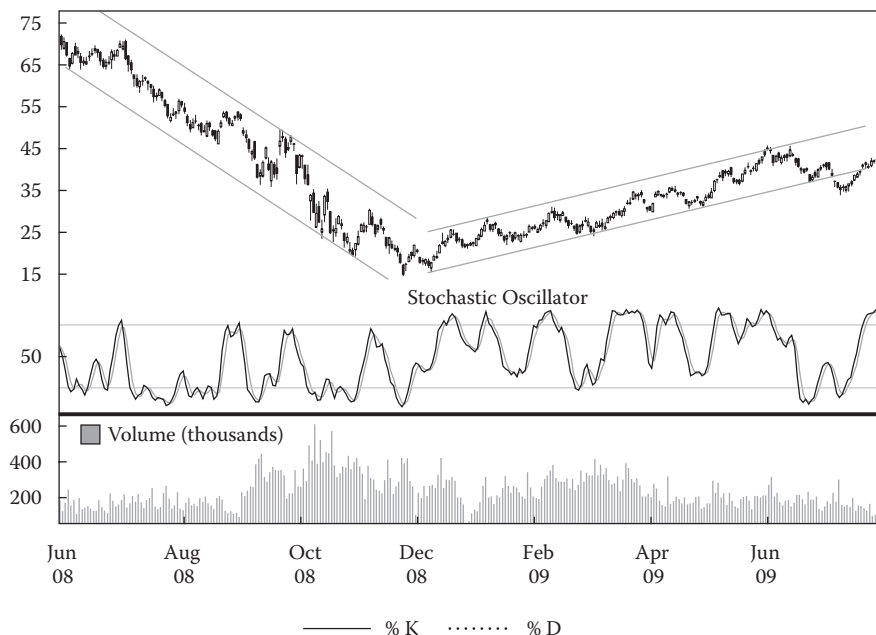
The absolute level of the two lines should be considered in light of their normal range. Movements above this range indicate to a technician an overbought security and are considered bearish; movements below this range indicate an oversold security and are considered bullish. Crossovers of the two lines can also give trading signals the same way crossovers of two moving averages give signals. When the %K moves from below the %D line to above it, this move is considered a bullish short-term trading signal; conversely, when %K moves from above the %D line to below it, this pattern is considered bearish. In practice, a trader can use technical analysis software to adjust trading rules and optimize the calculation of the stochastic oscillator for a particular security and investment purpose (e.g., short-term trading or long-term investing).

The reason technicians use historical data to test their trading rules and find the optimal parameters for each security is that each security is different. The group of market participants actively trading differs from security to security. Just as each person has a different personality, so do groups of people. In effect, the groups of active market participants trading each security are imparting their personality on the trading activity for that security. As this group changes over time, the ideal parameters for a particular security may change.

Exhibit 28 provides a good example of how the stochastic oscillator can be used together with trend analysis. The exhibit provides the weekly price chart and stochastic oscillator for *Petroleo Brasileiro ADRs*, which are traded on the New York Stock Exchange, for June 2008 through June 2009. Note that during the downtrend on the left side of the chart the stochastic oscillator often moved below 20. Each time it reached 80, however, it provided a valid sell signal. When the downtrend ended in November 2008 and an uptrend began, the stochastic oscillator was regularly moving above 80, but each time the %K line moved above %D, a valid buy signal was given.

7 See Brown (2012).

Exhibit 28 Weekly Price Chart and Stochastic Oscillator: Petroleo Brasileiro ADR, June 2008–July 2009 (Price in US Dollars)



3.4.2.4 Moving-Average Convergence/Divergence Oscillator The **moving-average convergence/divergence oscillator** is commonly referred to as MACD, which is pronounced Mack Dee. The MACD is the difference between a short-term and a long-term moving average of the security's price. The MACD is constructed by calculating two lines, the MACD line and the signal line:

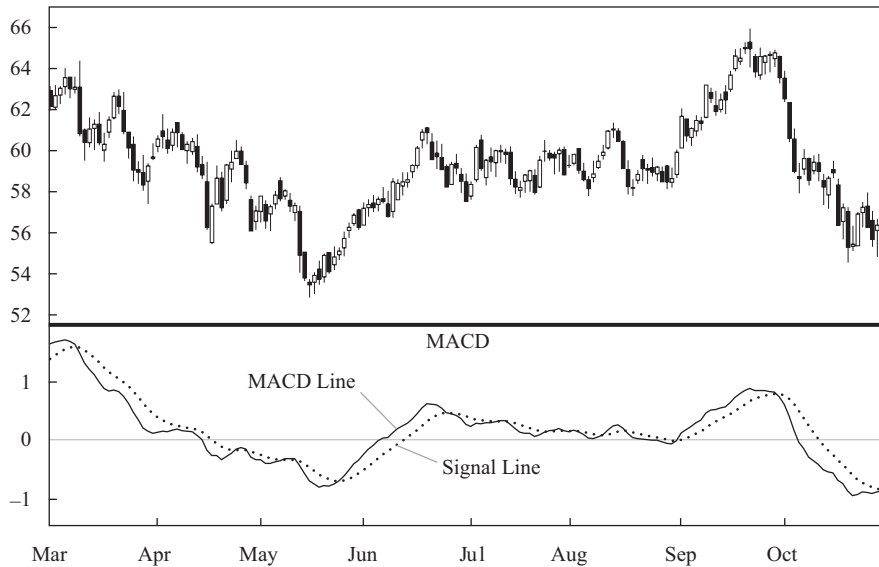
- MACD line: difference between two exponentially smoothed moving averages, generally 12 and 26 days.
- Signal line: exponentially smoothed average of MACD line, generally 9 days.

The indicator oscillates around zero and has no upper or lower limit. Rather than using a set overbought–oversold range for MACD, the analyst compares the current level with the historical performance of the oscillator for a particular security to determine when a security is out of its normal sentiment range.

MACD is used in technical analysis in three ways. The first is to note crossovers of the MACD line and the signal line, as discussed for moving averages and the stochastic oscillator. Crossovers of the two lines may indicate a change in trend. The second is to look for times when the MACD is outside its normal range for a given security. The third is to use trend lines on the MACD itself. When the MACD is trending in the same direction as price, this pattern is convergence, and when the two are trending in opposite directions, the pattern is divergence.

Exhibit 29 shows a daily price chart of Exxon Mobil (at the top) with the MACD oscillator for March through October of 2005. Note the convergence in the bottoming of both the oscillator and price in May, which provided confirmation of a change in trend. This change was further confirmed by the MACD line crossing above the signal line. A bearish signal was given in September with the change in trend of both price and the oscillator and the crossover of the signal line by the MACD line. The fact that the MACD oscillator was moving up to a level that was unusually high for this stock would have been an early warning signal in September.

Exhibit 29 MACD and Daily Price Chart: Exxon Mobil, March–November 2005 (Price in US Dollars)



3.4.3 Sentiment Indicators

Sentiment indicators attempt to gauge investor activity for signs of increasing bullishness or bearishness. Sentiment indicators come in two forms—investor polls and calculated statistical indexes.

3.4.3.1 Opinion Polls A wide range of services conduct periodic polls of either individual investors or investment professionals to gauge their sentiment about the equity market. The most common of the polls are the Investors Intelligence Advisors Sentiment reports, Market Vane Bullish Consensus, Consensus Bullish Sentiment Index, and Daily Sentiment Index, all of which poll investment professionals, and reports of the American Association of Individual Investors (AAII), which polls individual investors. All but the AAII survey are subscription-based services. *Barron's* magazine publishes data from four of these surveys on a weekly basis.

By regularly polling, compiling these data over time, and presenting it graphically, these services provide technicians with an analyzable snapshot of investor sentiment over time. Technicians look at prior market activity and compare it with highs or lows in sentiment, as well as inflection points in sentiment, as a gauge when they are forecasting the future direction of the market.

The most widely used investor polls are all US-based. One reason is that interpretation of the surveys is determined by comparing the survey results with market performance over time. To gauge a survey's usefulness in predicting major market turns, the survey must have been published over several cycles, and each of the surveys mentioned here, based on US data, has been available for several decades.

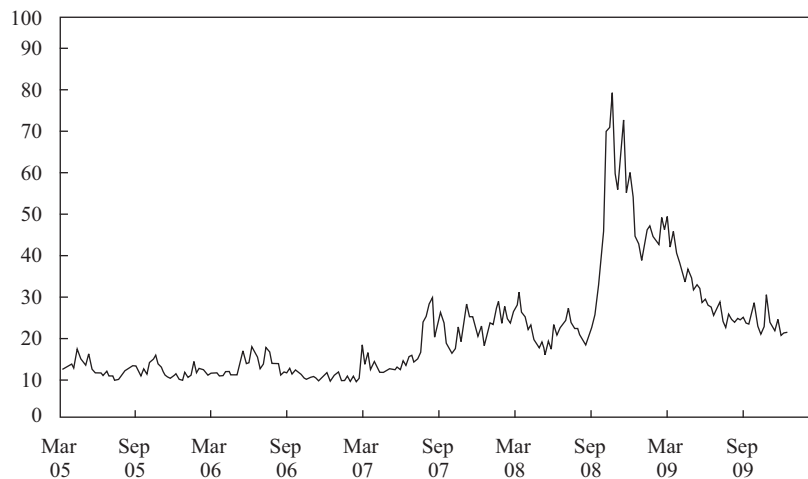
3.4.3.2 Calculated Statistical Indexes The other category of sentiment indicators are indicators that are calculated from market data, such as security prices. The two most commonly used are derived from the options market; they are the put/call ratio and the volatility index. Additionally, many analysts look at margin debt and short interest.

The **put/call ratio** is the volume of put options traded divided by the volume of call options traded for a particular financial instrument. Investors who buy put options on a security are presumably bearish, and investors who buy call options are

presumably bullish. The volume in call options is greater than the volume traded in put options over time, so the put/call ratio is normally below 1.0. The ratio is considered to be a contrarian indicator, meaning that higher values are considered bearish and lower values are considered bullish. But, its usefulness as a contrarian indicator is limited except at extreme low or high levels in relation to the historical trading level of the put/call ratio for a particular financial instrument. The actual value of the put/call ratio, and its normal range, differs for each security or market, so no standard definitions of overbought or oversold levels exist. At extreme lows where call option volume is significantly greater than put option volume, market sentiment is said to be so overly positive that a correction is likely. At extreme highs in the put/call ratio, market sentiment is said to be so extremely negative that an increase in price is likely.

The **CBOE Volatility Index (VIX)** is a measure of near-term market volatility calculated by the Chicago Board Options Exchange. Since 2003, it has been calculated from option prices on the stocks in the S&P 500. The VIX rises when market participants become fearful of an impending market decline. These participants then bid up the price of puts, and the result is an increase in the VIX level. Technicians use the VIX in conjunction with trend, pattern, or oscillator tools, and it is interpreted from a contrarian perspective. When other indicators suggest that the market is oversold and the VIX is at an extreme high, this combination is considered bullish. Exhibit 30 shows the VIX from March 2005 to December 2009.

Exhibit 30 VIX, March 2005–December 2009

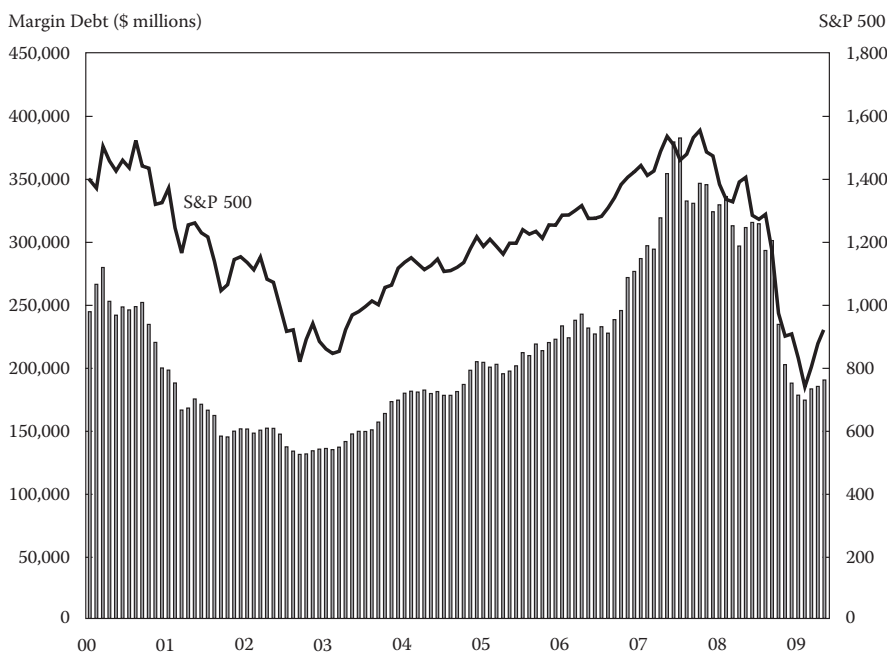


Margin debt is also often used as an indication of sentiment. As a group, investors have a history of buying near market tops and selling at the bottom. When the market is rising and indexes reach new highs, investors are motivated to buy more equities in the hope of participating in the market rally. A margin account permits an investor to borrow part of the investment cost from the brokerage firm. This debt magnifies the gains or losses resulting from the investment.

Investor psychology plays an important role in the intuition behind margin debt as an indicator. When stock margin debt is increasing, investors are aggressively buying and stock prices will move higher because of increased demand. Eventually, the margin traders use all of their available credit, so their buying power (and, therefore, demand) decreases, which fuels a price decline. Falling prices may trigger margin calls and forced selling, thereby driving prices even lower.

Brokerage firms must report activity in their customers' margin accounts, so keeping track of borrowing behavior is relatively easy. Exhibit 31 provides a 10-year comparison of margin debt with the S&P 500. The correlation is striking: Rising margin debt is generally associated with a rising index level, and falling margin debt is associated with a falling index level. In fact, for the 113 months shown in Exhibit 31, the correlation coefficient between the levels of margin debt and the S&P 500 is 80.2 percent. When margin debt peaked in the summer of 2007, the market also topped out. Margin debt dropped sharply during the latter part of 2008 as the subprime crisis took the market down. Investors began to use borrowed funds again in the first half of 2009 when heavily discounted shares became increasingly attractive. Margin debt was still well below the average of the last decade, but the upturn would be viewed as a bullish sign by advocates of this indicator.

Exhibit 31 Margin Debt in US Markets vs. S&P 500, 2000–2009



Source: New York Stock Exchange Fact Book.

Short interest is another commonly used sentiment indicator. Investors sell shares short when they believe the share prices will decline. Brokerage firms must report short-sale activity, and these statistics are aggregated and reported by the exchanges and the financial press on a monthly basis. The number of shares of a particular security that are currently sold short is called “short interest.” The short interest ratio represents the number of days of trading activity represented by short interest. To facilitate comparisons of large and small companies, common practice is to “normalize” this value by dividing short interest by average daily trading volume to get the short interest ratio:

$$\text{Short interest ratio} = \text{Short interest} / \text{Average daily trading volume}$$

EXAMPLE 3**Short Interest Ratio**

At the end of September 2009, *Barron's* reported short interest of 10,936,467 shares in Goldman Sachs, with average daily trading volume of 9,086,174. At the same time, the short interest in TD Bank was 20,420,166 on average trading volume of 1,183,558 shares. Calculate the short interest ratio for both firms.

Solution:

The short interest ratio for Goldman Sachs was 10,936,467 divided by 9,086,174, or 1.2 days. For TD Bank, the short interest ratio was 20,420,166 divided by 1,183,558, or 17.25 days.

There are differences of opinion about how to interpret short interest as an indicator. It is considered to show market sentiment and to be a contrarian indicator. Some people believe that if a large number of shares are sold short and the short interest ratio is high, the market should expect a falling price for the shares because of so much negative sentiment about them. A counter-argument is that, although the short sellers are bearish on the security, the effect of their short sales has already been felt in the security price. The short sellers' next action will be to buy shares back to cover their short positions. When the short sellers cover their positions, those actions will provide a boost to the share price. Therefore, the short interest ratio constitutes future (and known) demand for the shares.

Regardless of the analyst's perspective, in Example 3, the TD Bank short interest ratio of approximately 17 is more noteworthy than the much lower figure for Goldman Sachs.

3.4.4 Flow-of-Funds Indicators

Technicians look at fund flows as a way to gauge the potential supply and demand for equities. Demand can come in the form of margin borrowing against current holdings or cash holdings by mutual funds and other groups that are normally large holders of equities, such as insurance companies and pension funds. The more cash these groups hold, the more bullish is the indication for equities. One caveat in looking at potential sources of demand is that, although these data indicate the potential buying power of various large investor groups, the data say nothing about the likelihood that the groups will buy.

On the supply side, technicians look at new or secondary issuance of stock because these activities put more securities into the market and increase supply.

3.4.4.1 Arms Index A common flow of funds indicator is the **Arms Index**, also called the **TRIN** (for "short-term trading index").⁸ This indicator is applied to a broad market (such as the S&P 500) to measure the relative extent to which money is moving into or out of rising and declining stocks. The index is a ratio of two ratios:

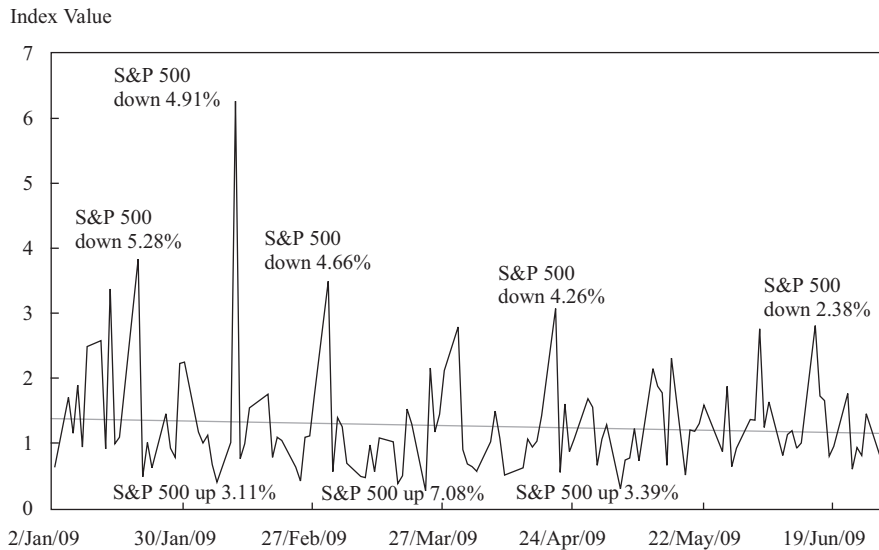
$$\text{Arms Index} = \frac{\text{Number of advancing issues} \div \text{Number of declining issues}}{\text{Volume of advancing issues} \div \text{Volume of declining issues}}$$

When this index is near 1.0, the market is in balance; that is, as much money is moving into rising stocks as into declining stocks. A value above 1.0 means that there is more volume in declining stocks; a value below 1.0 means that most trading activity is in rising stocks. Exhibit 32 shows the Arms Index for the S&P 500 on a

⁸ This tool was first proposed by Richard W. Arms, Jr., a well-known technical analyst.

daily basis for the first six months of 2009. The majority of the points lie above the 1.0 level, suggesting that the market continued to be in a selling mood. Note that the up spikes are associated with large price decreases in the index level and the down spikes reflect the opposite. The trendline shows a slightly negative slope, providing some slight encouragement for the bulls.

Exhibit 32 Arms Index for the S&P 500, January–July 2009



EXAMPLE 4

TRIN Indicator

Sarah Johansson, CFA, recently installed some investment software and is verifying the calculation of some of the statistics it produces. Her screen indicates a TRIN value of 1.02 for the NYSE and 1.80 for the NASDAQ market. These values seem to be unusually far apart to her, and she wonders whether they are both real-time statistics like the other market price data. To check whether they are real-time statistics, a few minutes later, she simultaneously captures the TRIN from her software display (slightly changed to 1.01 for the NYSE and 1.81 for NASDAQ) and on a separate monitor, she does a screen capture of NYSE and NASDAQ data, as follows:

		NYSE	NASDAQ
Number of issues	Advancing	850	937
	Declining	1,982	1,472
Volume	Advancing	76,921,200	156,178,475
	Declining	185,461,042	441,970,884

How does Johansson recalculate and interpret the TRIN value for the NYSE and NASDAQ?

Solution:

Johansson calculates the TRIN values for the NYSE and NASDAQ as follows:

$$\text{TRIN (NYSE)} = \frac{(850 \div 1,982)}{(76,921,200 \div 185,461,042)} = 1.03$$

$$\text{TRIN (NASDAQ)} = \frac{(937 \div 1,472)}{(156,178,475 \div 441,970,884)} = 1.80$$

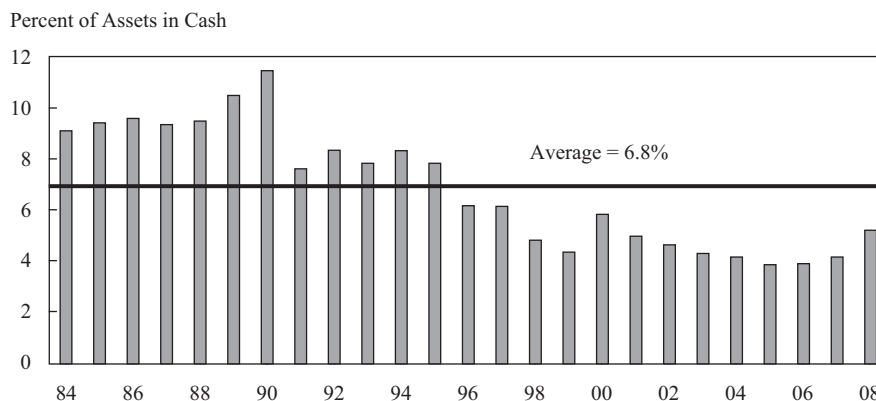
Johansson concludes that her software is giving her current values and that the NASDAQ is having a much worse day than the NYSE.

3.4.4.2 Margin Debt The previous section discussed the use of margin debt as an indicator of market sentiment. Margin debt is also widely used as a flow-of-funds indicator because margin loans may increase the purchases of stocks and declining margin balances may force the selling of stocks.

3.4.4.3 Mutual Fund Cash Position Mutual funds hold a substantial proportion of all investable assets. Some analysts use the *percentage of mutual fund assets held in cash* as a predictor of market direction. It is called the “mutual fund cash position indicator.” Mutual funds must hold some of their assets in cash in order to pay bills and send redemption checks to account holders. Cash arrives on a daily basis from customer deposits, interest earned, and dividends received. Cash also increases after a fund manager sells a position and holds the funds before reinvesting them. During a bull market, the manager wants to buy shares as quickly as possible to avoid having a cash “drag” hurt the fund’s performance. If prices are trending lower, however, the manager may hold funds in cash to improve the fund’s performance.

Exhibit 33 shows year-end mutual fund cash in the United States as a percentage of assets from 1984 through 2008. Over this period, the average cash percentage was 6.8 percent. An analyst’s initial intuition might be that when cash is relatively low, fund managers are bullish and anticipate rising prices, but when fund managers are bearish, they conserve cash to wait for lower prices. Advocates of this technical indicator argue exactly the opposite: When the mutual fund cash position is low, fund managers have already bought, and the effects of their purchases are already reflected in security prices. When the cash position is high, however, that money represents buying power that will move prices higher when the money is used to add positions to the portfolio. The mutual fund cash position is another example of a contrarian indicator.

Exhibit 33 Mutual Fund Cash Position, 1984–2008



Some analysts modify the value of the cash percentage to account for differences in the level of interest rates. Cash is not sitting in a desk drawer; it is on deposit somewhere earning interest. When interest rates are low, holding cash can be a substantial drag on the fund's performance if the broad market advances. When interest rates are high, holding cash is less costly.

EXAMPLE 5

Market Indicators

At the request of a wealthy client, Erik Nielson is preparing a proprietary research report on the shares of a US company. He has completed the part of the report dealing with fundamental analysis and wants to include a section on technical analysis. Nielson has gathered the following information:

Company Information:

- The 20-day moving average of the share price just rose through the 200-day moving average.
- RSI = 40.6.

Market Information:

- TRIN = 1.9.
- Mutual fund cash position = 7.0%

- 1 How should Nielson interpret each item of information?
- 2 Do these indicators, in the aggregate, lead Nielson to a buy, hold, or sell recommendation for the company's shares?

Solution to 1:

- Moving average: When a short-term moving average moves above a longer-term moving average, the movement is a golden cross and is a bullish signal.
- RSI: An RSI of 40.6 would be considered neutral. The RSI ranges between 0 and 100. Values greater than 70 are bearish; values below 30 are bullish.
- TRIN: A TRIN value above 1.0 means that there is more volume in declining stocks than in advancing stocks; therefore, a value of 1.9 is bearish.
- Mutual fund cash position: The 7.0 percent figure is near the long-term average, so it is a neutral signal.

Solution to 2:

Of the four indicators, one is bullish, one is bearish, and two are neutral. Most analysts would view this result as "net neutral" and would recommend continuing to hold the stock. An alternative point of view might be that seeing a bullish indicator for the stock while the indicator for the overall market is bearish could be an argument for overweighting the stock.

3.4.4.4 New Equity Issuance When a company's owners decide to take a company public and offer shares for sale, the owners want to put those shares on the market at a time when investors are eager to buy. That is, the owners want to offer the shares when

they can sell them at a premium price. Premium prices occur near market tops. The new equity issuance indicator suggests that as the number of initial public offerings (IPOs) increases, the upward price trend may be about to turn down.

A supply-and-demand effect is also at work. Putting more shares on the market increases the aggregate supply of shares available for investors to purchase. The investment community has a finite quantity of cash to spend, so an increase in IPOs may be viewed as a bearish factor.

3.4.4.5 Secondary Offerings Technicians also monitor secondary offerings to gauge potential changes in the supply of equities. Although secondary offerings do not increase the supply of shares, because existing shares are sold by insiders to the general public, they do increase the supply available for trading or the float. So, from a market perspective, secondary offerings of shares have the potential to change the supply-and-demand equation as much as IPOs do.

3.5 Cycles

Over the centuries, technicians have noted recurring cycles of various frequencies in the capital markets. The study of cycles in the markets is part of broader cycle studies that exist in numerous fields of study. Many observed cycles, such as one in US equities tied to the cycle of US presidential elections, have an obvious and rational justification. Other cycles do not. However, why cycles in fields seemingly unrelated to finance, such as astronomy or weather patterns, may influence the economy (and thus the capital markets) may have a logical explanation. For example, sun spots affect weather patterns on earth, which in turn affect agriculture and, therefore, capital markets because they are related to agriculture.

3.5.1 Kondratieff Wave

The longest of the widely recognized cycles was identified by Nikolai Kondratieff in the 1920s. Kondratieff was an economist in the Soviet Union who suggested that Western economies had a 54-year cycle. He traced cycles from the 1780s to the time he published this theory in the 1920s, and the economic depression of the 1930s was consistent with the cycle he identified. His theory was mainly tied to economic cycles and commodity prices, but cycles can also be seen in the prices of equities during the time of his work.

Kondratieff was executed in a Soviet purge in 1938, but his ideas have come into widespread acceptance, particularly since his works were translated into English in the 1980s. Two economists at the London School of Economics, E. H. Phelps Brown and Sheila Hopkins, identified a 50–52 year economic cycle in the United Kingdom. Together with Kondratieff, credit should be given to two Dutch economists, Jacob van Gelderen and Samuel de Wolff, who wrote about a 50–60 year economic cycle but published their work earlier, in 1913. Their work came to light only recently, however, so the long 54-year economic cycle is known as the **Kondratieff Wave** or K Wave.

3.5.2 18-Year Cycle

The 18-year cycle is interesting because three 18-year cycles make up the longer 54-year Kondratieff Wave. The 18-year cycle is most often mentioned in connection with real estate prices, but it can also be found in equities and other markets.

3.5.3 Decennial Pattern

The decennial pattern is the pattern of average stock market returns (based on the DJIA) broken down on the basis of the last digit in the year. Years ending with a 0 have had the worst performance, and years ending with a 5 have been by far the best. The DJIA was up every year ending in a 5 from 1885 until 1995, but it declined 0.6 percent in 2005.

3.5.4 Presidential Cycle

This cycle in the United States connects the performance of the DJIA with presidential elections. In this theory, years are grouped into categories on the basis of whether they were election years or the first, second, or third year following an election. The third year is the year prior to the next election. The third year shows the best performance; in fact, the DJIA experienced a positive return in every pre-election year from 1943 through 2007. One explanation for this outcome is that with so many politicians up for re-election, they inject stimulus into the economy in an attempt to improve their chances to be re-elected.⁹ Election years are also usually positive years for the stock market, but with less consistency. Post-election years and the so-called midterm year have the worst performance.

These long cycles are important to keep in mind when using other technical analysis tools. However, the long cycles described here and other theories about long cycles present a number of problems. The primary problem is the small sample size. Only 56 presidential elections have been held in the United States, and only 4 completed Kondratieff cycles have occurred in US history. Another problem is that even with the small number of cycles, the data do not always fit the cycle theory, and when they do, that fit may not be obvious.

ELLIOTT WAVE THEORY

4

In a theory proposed by R. N. Elliott in 1938, the market moves in regular, repeated waves or cycles. He identified and categorized these waves and wrote in detail about aspects of market cycles. Elliott was an accountant by training, but in 1929, after he contracted a progressive intestinal illness at age 58 while working in Latin America, he was forced to retire. Then, he turned his attention to a detailed study of equity prices in the United States.

A decade later, in 1938, he published his findings in a book titled *The Wave Principle*. In developing the concept that the market moves in waves, Elliott relied heavily on Charles Dow's early work. Elliott described how the market moved in a pattern of five waves moving up in a bull market in the following pattern: 1 = up, 2 = down, 3 = up, 4 = down and 5 = up. He called this wave the "impulse wave." The impulse wave was followed by a corrective wave with three components: a = down, b = up and c = down.

When the market is a bear market, as defined in Dow Theory—that is, with both of Dow's major indices in bear markets—the downward movements are impulse waves and are broken into five waves with upward corrections broken into three subwaves.

Elliott also noted that each wave could be broken down into smaller and smaller subwaves.

⁹ In US presidential election years, the vice presidency, all 435 House of Representatives seats, and 33 of the 100 Senate seats are also up for election.

The longest of the waves is called the “grand supercycle” and takes place over centuries. Elliott traced grand supercycles back to the founding of the United States, and his successors have continued his work. Each grand supercycle can be broken down into subcycles until ending with the “subminuette,” which unfolds over several minutes. The major cycles are:

- Grand supercycle
- Supercycle
- Cycle
- Primary
- Intermediate
- Minor
- Minute
- Minuette
- Subminuette

An important aspect of Elliott’s work is that he discovered that market waves follow patterns that are ratios of the numbers in the **Fibonacci sequence**. Leonardo Fibonacci was an 11th century Italian mathematician who explained this sequence in his book *Liber Abaci*, but the sequence was known to mathematicians as far back as 200 BCE in India. The Fibonacci sequence starts with the numbers 0, 1, 1, and then each subsequent number in the sequence is the sum of the two preceding numbers:

0, 1, 1, 2, 3, 5, 8, 13, 21, 34 ...

Elliott was more interested in the ratios of the numbers in the sequence because he found that the ratio of the size of subsequent waves was generally a Fibonacci ratio. The ratios of one Fibonacci number to the next that Elliott considered most important are the following:

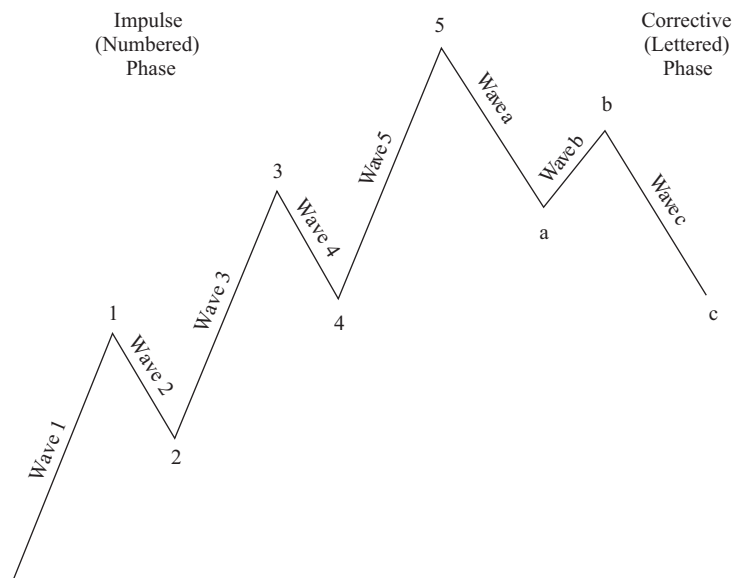
$1/2 = 0.50$, $2/3 = 0.6667$, $3/5 = 0.6$, $5/8 = 0.625$, $8/13 = 0.6154$

He also noticed that the ratio of a Fibonacci sequence number to its preceding number is important:

$2/1 = 2$, $3/2 = 1.5$, $5/3 = 1.6667$, $8/5 = 1.600$, $13/8 = 1.6250$

These ratios converge around 1.618. In mathematics, 1.618 is called the “golden ratio,” and it can be found throughout nature—in astronomy, biology, botany, and many other fields. It is also widely used in art and architecture. The ancient Egyptians built the pyramids on the basis of this ratio, and the ancient Greeks used it widely.

As noted, Elliott numbered the impulse waves 1–5 and the corrective waves, a, b and c. Exhibit 34 depicts the impulse and corrective waves in a bull market.

Exhibit 34 Impulse Waves and Corrective Waves


Elliott described the characteristics of each wave. Note the following, as shown in Exhibit 34:

- Wave 1 starts as a basing pattern and displays an increase in price, volume, and breadth.¹⁰ Wave 1 consists of five smaller waves.
- Wave 2 moves down, retracing much of the gain in Wave 1 but not all of it. Common percentage retracements are Fibonacci ratios, such as 50 percent or 62 percent. Wave 2 never erases all of the gains from Wave 1. Wave 2 consists of three smaller waves.
- Wave 3 moves above the high of the first wave and has strong breadth, volume, and price movement. Most of the price movement in an uptrend typically occurs in Wave 3. Wave 3 consists of five smaller waves. Wave 3 often moves prices 1.618 times higher than the length of Wave 1, which is a Fibonacci ratio.
- Wave 4 is, again, a correction, and the ratio of the change in price during this wave to the price change during the third wave is also generally a Fibonacci ratio. Wave 4 commonly reverses 38 percent of the gain in Wave 3. Wave 5 is also an up wave. Generally, the price movement in Wave 5 is not as great as that in Wave 3. The exception to the rule is that Wave 5 may become extended, as when euphoria overtakes the market. Wave 5 consists of five smaller waves.

After Wave 5 is completed, the market traces out a series of three corrective waves, labeled a, b and c in Exhibit 34.

- Wave a is a down wave in a bull market; Wave a itself breaks down into three waves.
- Wave b is an upward movement and breaks down into five waves. Wave b is a false rally and is often called a “bull trap.”
- Wave c is the final corrective wave. In a bull market, it does not move below the start of the prior Wave 1 pattern. Wave c breaks down into three subwaves.

¹⁰ Breadth is defined as the ratio of the number of advancing securities in an index or traded on a given stock market to the number of declining issues.

This description of the waves applies to bull markets; in bear markets, the impulse waves are labeled A through E and the corrective waves are labeled 1, 2, and 3. Waves in the direction of the trend consist of five subwaves, and counter-waves consist of three subwaves.

In practice, a good deal of time is required to become proficient with **Elliott Wave Theory**. Wave counts may not become evident at first, and Elliotticians often have to renumber their wave counts on the basis of changes in market trends. This theory is widely used, however, and the patterns Elliott described can still be observed today.

As a technician begins to make initial judgments on wave counts, the next step is to draw lines representing Fibonacci ratios on the charts. These lines alert the technician to the levels at which trends may change in the future and can be used in conjunction with other technical tools for forecasting. Positive price movements generally take prices up by some Fibonacci ratio of prior highs (e.g., 1.5 or 1.62), and price declines generally reverse prices by a Fibonacci ratio (e.g., 0.50 or 0.667). Elliott Wave Theory is used in practice with Dow Theory, trend analysis, pattern analysis, and oscillator analysis to provide a sense of the general trend in the market. As Elliott's nine cycles imply, Elliott Wave Theory can be applied in both very short-term trading as well as in very long-term economic analysis, as is the case with most tools used in technical analysis.

5

INTERMARKET ANALYSIS

Intermarket analysis is a field within technical analysis that combines analysis of major categories of securities—namely, equities, bonds, currencies, and commodities—to identify market trends and possible inflections in a trend. Intermarket analysis also looks at industry subsectors, such as the nine sectors the S&P 500 is divided into, and the relationships among the major stock markets of countries with the largest economies, such as the New York, London, and Tokyo stock exchanges.

Intermarket analysis relies heavily on the field of economic analysis for its theoretical underpinning. The field was pioneered by John Murphy with his 1991 book *Intermarket Technical Analysis*. Murphy noted that all markets are inter-related and that these relationships are strengthening with the globalization of the world economy.¹¹

Stock prices are affected by bond prices. High bond prices are a positive for stock prices since this means low interest rates. Lower interest rates benefit companies with lower borrowing costs and lead to higher equity valuations in the calculation of intrinsic value using discounted cash flow analysis in fundamental analysis. Thus rising bond prices are a positive for stock prices, and declining bond prices are a bearish indicator.

Bond prices impact commodity prices. Bond prices move inversely to interest rates. Interest rates move in proportion to expectations to future prices of commodities or inflation. So declining bond prices are a signal of possible rising commodity prices.

Currencies impact commodity prices. Most commodity trading is denominated in US dollars and so prices are commonly quoted in US dollars. As a result, a strong dollar results in lower commodity prices and vice versa.

¹¹ See Murphy (1991).

In intermarket analysis, technicians often look for inflection points in one market as a warning sign to start looking for a change in trend in a related market. To identify these intermarket relationships, a commonly used tool is relative strength analysis, which charts the price of one security divided by the price of another.

Exhibit 35 shows the relative price of 10-year US Treasury bonds compared with the S&P 500. The rise in T-bond price relative to the S&P 500 can be clearly seen. The inflection point in this chart occurs in March 2009. This point would signal that the time had come to move investments from bonds to stocks.

Exhibit 35 Relative Strength of 10-Year T-Bonds vs. S&P 500, September 2008–July 2009

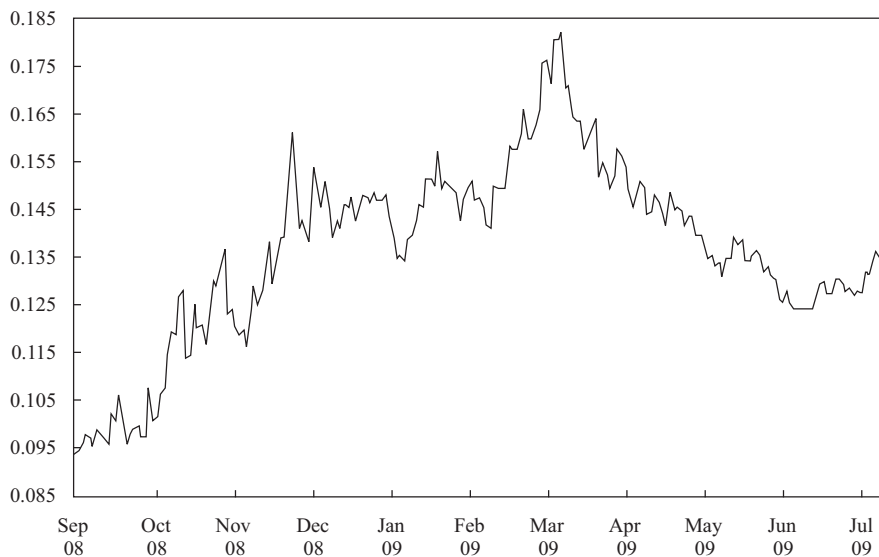
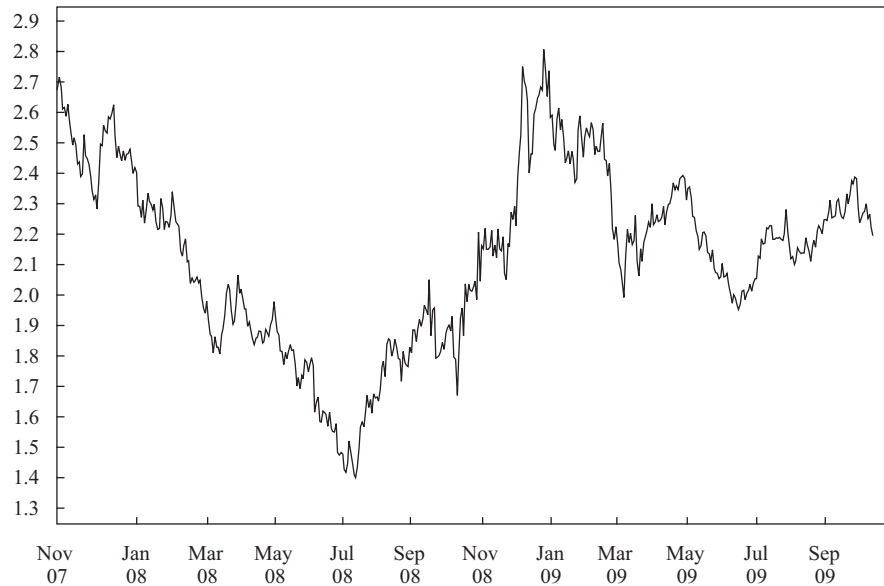


Exhibit 36 is a relative strength chart depicting the ratio between the S&P 500 and commodity prices. It shows a clear top and reversal of trend in December 2008. This inflection point shows US stocks weakening relative to commodities and would indicate that allocating funds away from the US stocks and into commodities might be appropriate.

Exhibit 36 S&P 500 Index vs. Commodity Prices, November 2007–November 2009



In addition to the preceding comparisons, once an asset category has been identified, relative strength analysis can be used to identify the strongest performing securities in a sector. For example, if commodities look promising, an investor can analyze each of the major commodities relative to a broad commodity index in order to find the strongest commodity.

Intermarket analysis can also be used to identify sectors of the equity market to invest in—often in connection with technical observations of the business cycle at any time. The equities of certain industry sectors tend to perform best at the beginning of an economic cycle. These sectors include utilities, financials, consumer nondurables, and transportation stocks. As an economic recovery gets under way, retailers, manufacturers, health care, and consumer durables tend to outperform. Lagging sectors include those tied to commodity prices, such as energy and basic industrial commodities, and also technology stocks.

Observations based on intermarket analysis can also help in allocating funds across national markets. Certain countries' economies are closely tied to commodities—for example, Australia, Canada, and South Africa. As economies evolve, these relationships change. So, the relationships must be monitored closely.

SUMMARY

- Technical analysis is a form of security analysis that uses price and volume market data, often graphically displayed.
- Technical analysis can be used for any freely traded security in the global market and is used on a wide range of financial instruments, such as equities, bonds, commodity futures, and currency futures.

- Technical analysis is the study of market trends or patterns and relies on recognition of patterns that have worked in the past in an attempt to predict future security prices. Technicians believe that market trends and patterns repeat themselves and are somewhat predictable because human behavior tends to repeat itself and is somewhat predictable.
- Another tenet of technical analysis is that the market brings together the collective wisdom of multiple participants, weights it according to the size of the trades they make, and allows analysts to understand this collective sentiment. Technical analysis relies on knowledgeable market participants putting this knowledge to work in the market and thereby influencing prices and volume.
- Technical analysis and fundamental analysis are equally useful and valid, but they approach the market in different ways. Technical analysis focuses solely on analyzing markets and the trading of financial instruments, whereas fundamental analysis is a much wider ranging field encompassing financial and economic analysis as well as analysis of societal and political trends.
- Technical analysis relies primarily on information gathered from market participants that is expressed through the interaction of price and volume. Fundamental analysis relies on information that is external to the market (e.g., economic data, company financial information) in an attempt to evaluate a security's value relative to its current price.
- The usefulness of technical analysis is diminished by any constraints on the security being freely traded, by large outside manipulation of the market, and in illiquid markets.
- Charts provide information about past price behavior and provide a basis for inferences about likely future price behavior. Various types of charts can be useful in studying the markets: line charts, bar charts, candlestick charts, and point and figure charts.
- Relative strength analysis is based on the ratio of the prices of a security to a benchmark and is used to compare the performance of one asset with the performance of another asset.
- Many technicians consider volume information to be very important and watch for the confirmation in volume of a price trend or the divergence of volume from a price trend.
- The concept of trend is perhaps the most important aspect of technical analysis. An uptrend is defined as a security making higher highs and higher lows. To draw an uptrend line, a technician draws a line connecting the lows of the price chart. A downtrend is defined as a security making lower highs and lower lows. To draw a downtrend line, a technician draws a line connecting the highs of the price chart.
- Support is defined as a low price range in which the price stops declining because of buying activity. It is the opposite of resistance, which is a price range in which price stops rising because of selling activity.
- Chart patterns are formations appearing in price charts that create some type of recognizable shape.
- Reversal patterns signal the end of a trend. Common reversal patterns are the head and shoulders, the inverse head and shoulders, double tops and bottoms, and triple tops and bottoms.
- Continuation patterns indicate that a market trend in place prior to the pattern formation will continue once the pattern is completed. Common continuation patterns are triangles, rectangles, flags, and pennants.

- Price-based indicators incorporate information contained in market prices. Common price-based indicators are the moving average and Bollinger Bands.
- Momentum oscillator indicators are constructed from price data, but they are calculated so that they fluctuate either between a high and low, typically 0 and 100, or around 0 or 100. Some examples are momentum (or rate of change) oscillators, the RSI, stochastic measures, and MACD.
- Sentiment indicators attempt to gauge investor activity for signs of increasing bullishness or bearishness. Sentiment indicators come in two forms—investor polls and calculated statistical indexes. Opinion polls to gauge investors' sentiment toward the equity market are conducted by a variety of services. Commonly used calculated statistical indexes are the put/call ratio, the VIX, margin debt, and the short interest ratio.
- Flow-of-funds indicators help technicians gauge potential changes in supply and demand for securities. Some commonly used indicators are the ARMS Index (also called the TRIN), margin debt (also a sentiment indicator), mutual fund cash positions, new equity issuance, and secondary equity offerings.
- Many technicians use various observed cycles to predict future movements in security prices; these cycles include Kondratieff waves, decennial patterns, and the US presidential cycle.
- Elliott Wave Theory is an approach to market forecasting that assumes that markets form repetitive wave patterns, which are themselves composed of smaller and smaller subwaves. The relationships among wave heights are frequently Fibonacci ratios.
- Intermarket analysis is based on the principle that all markets are interrelated and influence each other. This approach involves the use of relative strength analysis for different groups of securities (e.g., stocks versus bonds, sectors in an economy, and securities from different countries) to make allocation decisions.

REFERENCES

- Akerlof, George A., and Robert J. Shiller. 2009. *Animal Spirits: How Human Psychology Drives the Economy, and Why It Matters for Global Capitalism*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press.
- Brown, Constance M. 2012. *Technical Analysis for the Trading Professional*, 2nd edition. McGraw-Hill.
- Murphy, John J. 1991. *Intermarket Technical Analysis: Trading Strategies for the Global Stock, Bond, Commodity, and Currency Markets*. John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

- 1 Technical analysis relies most importantly on:
 - A price and volume data.
 - B accurate financial statements.
 - C fundamental analysis to confirm conclusions.
- 2 Which of the following is *not* an assumption of technical analysis?
 - A Security markets are efficient.
 - B The security under analysis is freely traded.
 - C Market trends and patterns tend to repeat themselves.
- 3 Drawbacks of technical analysis include which of the following?
 - A It identifies changes in trends only after the fact.
 - B Deviations from intrinsic value can persist for long periods.
 - C It usually requires detailed knowledge of the financial instrument under analysis.
- 4 Why is technical analysis especially useful in the analysis of commodities and currencies?
 - A Valuation models cannot be used to determine fundamental intrinsic value for these securities.
 - B Government regulators are more likely to intervene in these markets.
 - C These types of securities display clearer trends than equities and bonds do.
- 5 A daily bar chart provides:
 - A a logarithmically scaled horizontal axis.
 - B a horizontal axis that represents changes in price.
 - C high and low prices during the day and the day's opening and closing prices.
- 6 A candlestick chart is similar to a bar chart *except* that the candlestick chart:
 - A represents upward movements in price with X's.
 - B also graphically shows the range of the period's highs and lows.
 - C has a body that is light or dark depending on whether the security closed higher or lower than its open.
- 7 In analyzing a price chart, high or increasing volume *most likely* indicates which of the following?
 - A Predicts a reversal in the price trend.
 - B Predicts that a trendless period will follow.
 - C Confirms a rising or declining trend in prices.
- 8 In constructing a chart, using a logarithmic scale on the vertical axis is likely to be *most useful* for which of the following applications?
 - A The price of gold for the past 100 years.
 - B The share price of a company over the past month.
 - C Yields on 10-year US Treasuries for the past 5 years.
- 9 A downtrend line is constructed by drawing a line connecting:
 - A the lows of the price chart.

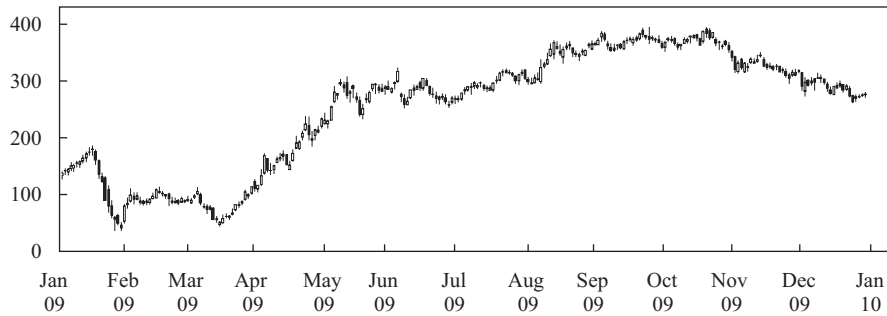
- B the highs of the price chart.
 - C the highest high to the lowest low of the price chart.
- 10 Exhibit 1 depicts GreatWall Information Industry Co., Ltd., ordinary shares, traded on the Shenzhen Stock Exchange, for late 2008 through late 2009 in renminbi (RMB).

Exhibit 1 Candlestick Chart: GreatWall Information Industry Co., Ltd. Price Data, November 2008–September 2009 (Price Measured in RMB × 10)



- Based on Exhibit 1, the uptrend was *most likely* broken at a price level nearest to:
- A 7 RMB.
 - B 8.5 RMB.
 - C 10 RMB.
- 11 The “change in polarity” principle states which of the following?
- A Once an uptrend is broken, it becomes a downtrend.
 - B Once a resistance level is breached, it becomes a support level.
 - C The short-term moving average has crossed over the longer-term moving average.
- 12 Exhibit 2 depicts Barclays ordinary shares, traded on the London Stock Exchange, for 2009 in British pence.

Exhibit 2 Candlestick Chart: Barclays plc Price Data, January 2009–January 2010 (Price Measured in British Pence)



Based on Exhibit 2, Barclays appears to show resistance at a level nearest to:

- A 50p.
 - B 275p.
 - C 390p.
- 13 Exhibit 3 depicts Archer Daniels Midland Company common shares, traded on the New York Stock Exchange, for 1996 to 2001 in US dollars.

Exhibit 3 Candlestick Chart: Archer Daniels Midland Company, February 1996–February 2001

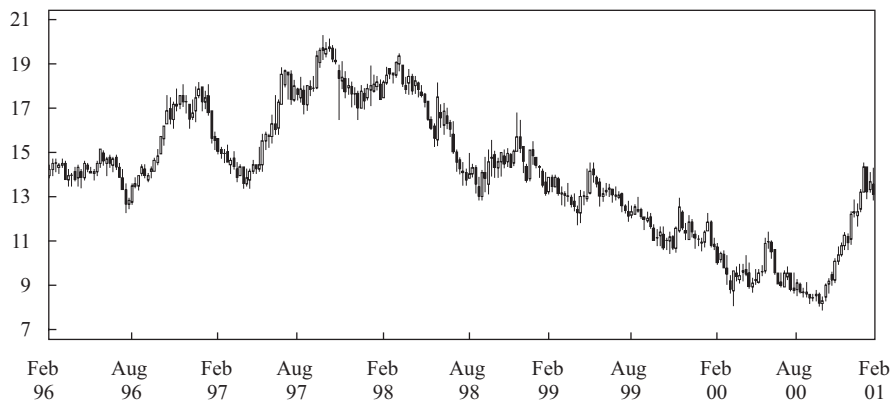


Exhibit 3 illustrates *most* clearly which type of pattern?

- A Triangle.
 - B Triple top.
 - C Head and shoulders.
- 14 In an inverted head and shoulders pattern, if the neckline is at €100, the shoulders at €90, and the head at €75, the price target is *closest* to which of the following?
- A €50.
 - B €110.
 - C €125.
- 15 Which flow-of-funds indicator is considered bearish for equities?

- A A large increase in the number of IPOs.
 - B Higher-than-average cash balances in mutual funds.
 - C An upturn in margin debt but one that is still below the long-term average.
- 16 A TRIN with a value of less than 1.0 indicates:
- A the market is in balance.
 - B there is more volume in rising shares.
 - C there is more volume in declining shares.
- 17 Bollinger Bands are constructed by plotting:
- A a MACD line and a signal line.
 - B a moving-average line with an uptrend line above and downtrend line below.
 - C a moving-average line with upper and lower lines that are at a set number of standard deviations apart.
- 18 Which of the following is *not* a momentum oscillator?
- A MACD.
 - B Stochastic oscillator.
 - C Bollinger Bands.
- 19 Which of the following is a continuation pattern?
- A Triangle.
 - B Triple top.
 - C Head and shoulders.
- 20 Which of the following is a reversal pattern?
- A Pennant.
 - B Rectangle.
 - C Double bottom.
- 21 Which of the following is generally true of the head and shoulders pattern?
- A Volume is important in interpreting the data.
 - B The neckline, once breached, becomes a support level.
 - C Head and shoulders patterns are generally followed by an uptrend in the security's price.
- 22 Nikolai Kondratieff concluded in the 1920s that since the 1780s, Western economies have generally followed a cycle of how many years?
- A 18.
 - B 54.
 - C 76.
- 23 Based on the decennial pattern of cycles, how would the return of the Dow Jones Industrial Average (DJIA) in the year 2015 compare with the return in 2020?
- A The return would be better.
 - B The return would be worse.
 - C The answer cannot be determined because the theory does not apply to both of those years.
- 24 According to the US presidential cycle theory, the DJIA has the best performance during which year?
- A The presidential election year itself.
 - B The first year following a presidential election.

- C The third year following a presidential election.
- 25 What is a major problem with long-term cycle theories?
- A The sample size is small.
 - B The data are usually hard to observe.
 - C They occur over such a long period that they are difficult to discern.
- 26 In 1938, R. N. Elliott proposed a theory that equity markets move:
- A in stochastic waves.
 - B in cycles following Fibonacci ratios.
 - C in waves dependent on other securities.
- 27 All of the following are names of Elliott cycles *except*:
- A presidential.
 - B supercycle.
 - C grand supercycle.
- 28 To identify intermarket relationships, technicians commonly use:
- A stochastic oscillators.
 - B Fibonacci ratios.
 - C relative strength analysis.

SOLUTIONS

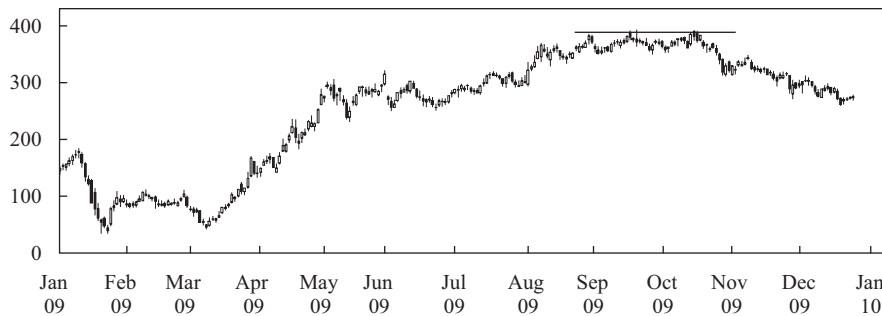
- 1 A is correct. Almost all technical analysis relies on these data inputs.
- 2 A is correct. Technical analysis works because markets are *not* efficient and rational and because human beings tend to behave similarly in similar circumstances. The result is market trends and patterns that repeat themselves and are somewhat predictable.
- 3 A is correct. Trends generally must be in place for some time before they are recognizable. Thus, some time may be needed for a change in trend to be identified.
- 4 A is correct. Commodities and currencies do not have underlying financial statements or an income stream; thus, fundamental analysis is useless in determining theoretical values for them or whether they are over- or undervalued.
- 5 C is correct. The top and bottom of the bars indicate the highs and lows for the day; the line on the left indicates the opening price and the line on the right indicates the closing price.
- 6 C is correct. Dark and light shading is a unique feature of candlestick charts.
- 7 C is correct. Rising volume shows conviction by many market participants, which is likely to lead to a continuation of the trend.
- 8 A is correct. The price of gold in nominal dollars was several orders of magnitude cheaper 100 years ago than it is today (roughly US\$20 then versus US\$1,100 today). Such a wide range of prices lends itself well to being graphically displayed on a logarithmic scale.
- 9 B is correct. A downtrend line is constructed by drawing a line connecting the highs of the price chart.
- 10 B is correct. It is demonstrated in the following chart:

Exhibit 1 Candlestick Chart: GreatWall Information Industry Co., Ltd. Price Data, November 2008–September 2009 (Price Measured in RMB × 10)



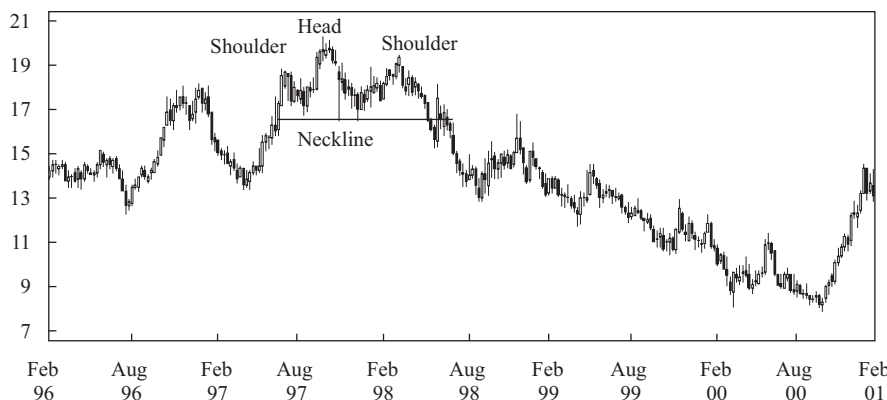
- 11 B is correct.
- 12 C is correct. As shown in the following chart, Barclays shares traded up to 390p on three occasions, each several weeks apart, and declined thereafter each time.

Exhibit 2 Candlestick Chart: Barclays plc Price Data, January 2009–January 2010 (Price Measured in British Pence)



- 13 C is correct. The left shoulder formed at around US\$18.50, the head formed at around US\$20.50, and the second shoulder formed at around US\$19.

Exhibit 3 Candlestick Chart: Archer Daniels Midland Company, February 1996–February 2001



- 14 C is correct. Target = Neckline + (Neckline – Head): €100 + (€100 – €75) = €125
- 15 A is correct. A large increase in the number of IPOs increases the supply of equity and if overall demand remains the same, puts downward pressure on equities. Also, companies tend to issue shares of equity when the managers believe they will receive a premium price, which is also an indicator of a market top.
- 16 B is correct. A value below 1.0 is a bullish sign; it means more volume is in rising shares than in declining ones. The TRIN is calculated as: (Advancing issues/Declining issues)/(Volume of advancing issues/Volume of declining issues).

- 17 C is correct. Bollinger Bands consist of a moving average and a higher line representing the moving average plus a set number of standard deviations from average price (for the same number of periods as used to calculate the moving average) and a lower line that is a moving average minus the same number of standard deviations.
- 18 C is correct. Bollinger Bands are price-based indicators, *not* momentum oscillators, which are constructed so that they oscillate between a high and a low or around 0 or 100.
- 19 A is correct. Triangles are one of several continuation patterns.
- 20 C is correct. It is one of several reversal patterns.
- 21 A is correct. Volume is necessary to confirm the various market rallies and reversals during the formation of the head and shoulders pattern.
- 22 B is correct.
- 23 A is correct. The decennial pattern theory states that years ending with a 5 will have the best performance of any of the 10 years in a decade and that those ending with a zero will have the worst.
- 24 C is correct. A possible reason for the superior performance in the third year is that the US presidential election occurs, together with a number of other elections, in a four-year cycle, so the politicians desiring to be reelected inject money into the economy in the third year to improve their chances of winning the following year.
- 25 A is correct. Long-term cycles require many years to complete; thus, not many cycles are available to observe.
- 26 B is correct.
- 27 A is correct. This is the term for a separate cycle theory.
- 28 C is correct. Relative strength analysis is often used to compare two asset classes or two securities.

APPENDICES

Appendix A	Cumulative Probabilities for a Standard Normal Distribution
Appendix B	Table of the Student's <i>t</i> -Distribution (One-Tailed Probabilities)
Appendix C	Values of χ^2 (Degrees of Freedom, Level of Significance)
Appendix D	Table of the <i>F</i> -Distribution
Appendix E	Critical Values for the Durbin-Watson Statistic ($\alpha = .05$)

Appendix A
Cumulative Probabilities for a Standard Normal Distribution
 $P(Z \leq x) = N(x)$ for $x \geq 0$ or $P(Z \leq z) = N(z)$ for $z \geq 0$

x or z	0	0.01	0.02	0.03	0.04	0.05	0.06	0.07	0.08	0.09
0.00	0.5000	0.5040	0.5080	0.5120	0.5160	0.5199	0.5239	0.5279	0.5319	0.5359
0.10	0.5398	0.5438	0.5478	0.5517	0.5557	0.5596	0.5636	0.5675	0.5714	0.5753
0.20	0.5793	0.5832	0.5871	0.5910	0.5948	0.5987	0.6026	0.6064	0.6103	0.6141
0.30	0.6179	0.6217	0.6255	0.6293	0.6331	0.6368	0.6406	0.6443	0.6480	0.6517
0.40	0.6554	0.6591	0.6628	0.6664	0.6700	0.6736	0.6772	0.6808	0.6844	0.6879
0.50	0.6915	0.6950	0.6985	0.7019	0.7054	0.7088	0.7123	0.7157	0.7190	0.7224
0.60	0.7257	0.7291	0.7324	0.7357	0.7389	0.7422	0.7454	0.7486	0.7517	0.7549
0.70	0.7580	0.7611	0.7642	0.7673	0.7704	0.7734	0.7764	0.7794	0.7823	0.7852
0.80	0.7881	0.7910	0.7939	0.7967	0.7995	0.8023	0.8051	0.8078	0.8106	0.8133
0.90	0.8159	0.8186	0.8212	0.8238	0.8264	0.8289	0.8315	0.8340	0.8365	0.8389
1.00	0.8413	0.8438	0.8461	0.8485	0.8508	0.8531	0.8554	0.8577	0.8599	0.8621
1.10	0.8643	0.8665	0.8686	0.8708	0.8729	0.8749	0.8770	0.8790	0.8810	0.8830
1.20	0.8849	0.8869	0.8888	0.8907	0.8925	0.8944	0.8962	0.8980	0.8997	0.9015
1.30	0.9032	0.9049	0.9066	0.9082	0.9099	0.9115	0.9131	0.9147	0.9162	0.9177
1.40	0.9192	0.9207	0.9222	0.9236	0.9251	0.9265	0.9279	0.9292	0.9306	0.9319
1.50	0.9332	0.9345	0.9357	0.9370	0.9382	0.9394	0.9406	0.9418	0.9429	0.9441
1.60	0.9452	0.9463	0.9474	0.9484	0.9495	0.9505	0.9515	0.9525	0.9535	0.9545
1.70	0.9554	0.9564	0.9573	0.9582	0.9591	0.9599	0.9608	0.9616	0.9625	0.9633
1.80	0.9641	0.9649	0.9656	0.9664	0.9671	0.9678	0.9686	0.9693	0.9699	0.9706
1.90	0.9713	0.9719	0.9726	0.9732	0.9738	0.9744	0.9750	0.9756	0.9761	0.9767
2.00	0.9772	0.9778	0.9783	0.9788	0.9793	0.9798	0.9803	0.9808	0.9812	0.9817
2.10	0.9821	0.9826	0.9830	0.9834	0.9838	0.9842	0.9846	0.9850	0.9854	0.9857
2.20	0.9861	0.9864	0.9868	0.9871	0.9875	0.9878	0.9881	0.9884	0.9887	0.9890
2.30	0.9893	0.9896	0.9898	0.9901	0.9904	0.9906	0.9909	0.9911	0.9913	0.9916
2.40	0.9918	0.9920	0.9922	0.9925	0.9927	0.9929	0.9931	0.9932	0.9934	0.9936
2.50	0.9938	0.9940	0.9941	0.9943	0.9945	0.9946	0.9948	0.9949	0.9951	0.9952
2.60	0.9953	0.9955	0.9956	0.9957	0.9959	0.9960	0.9961	0.9962	0.9963	0.9964
2.70	0.9965	0.9966	0.9967	0.9968	0.9969	0.9970	0.9971	0.9972	0.9973	0.9974
2.80	0.9974	0.9975	0.9976	0.9977	0.9977	0.9978	0.9979	0.9979	0.9980	0.9981
2.90	0.9981	0.9982	0.9982	0.9983	0.9984	0.9984	0.9985	0.9985	0.9986	0.9986
3.00	0.9987	0.9987	0.9987	0.9988	0.9988	0.9989	0.9989	0.9989	0.9990	0.9990
3.10	0.9990	0.9991	0.9991	0.9991	0.9992	0.9992	0.9992	0.9992	0.9993	0.9993
3.20	0.9993	0.9993	0.9994	0.9994	0.9994	0.9994	0.9994	0.9995	0.9995	0.9995
3.30	0.9995	0.9995	0.9995	0.9996	0.9996	0.9996	0.9996	0.9996	0.9996	0.9997
3.40	0.9997	0.9997	0.9997	0.9997	0.9997	0.9997	0.9997	0.9997	0.9997	0.9998
3.50	0.9998	0.9998	0.9998	0.9998	0.9998	0.9998	0.9998	0.9998	0.9998	0.9998
3.60	0.9998	0.9998	0.9999	0.9999	0.9999	0.9999	0.9999	0.9999	0.9999	0.9999
3.70	0.9999	0.9999	0.9999	0.9999	0.9999	0.9999	0.9999	0.9999	0.9999	0.9999
3.80	0.9999	0.9999	0.9999	0.9999	0.9999	0.9999	0.9999	0.9999	0.9999	0.9999
3.90	1.0000	1.0000	1.0000	1.0000	1.0000	1.0000	1.0000	1.0000	1.0000	1.0000
4.00	1.0000	1.0000	1.0000	1.0000	1.0000	1.0000	1.0000	1.0000	1.0000	1.0000

For example, to find the z -value leaving 2.5 percent of the area/probability in the upper tail, find the element 0.9750 in the body of the table. Read 1.90 at the left end of the element's row and 0.06 at the top of the element's column, to give $1.90 + 0.06 = 1.96$. *Table generated with Excel.*

Quantitative Methods for Investment Analysis, Second Edition, by Richard A. DeFusco, CFA, Dennis W. McLeavey, CFA, Jerald E. Pinto, CFA, and David E. Runkle, CFA. Copyright © 2004 by CFA Institute.

Appendix A (continued)
Cumulative Probabilities for a Standard Normal Distribution
 $P(Z \leq x) = N(x)$ for $x \leq 0$ or $P(Z \leq z) = N(z)$ for $z \leq 0$

<i>x</i> or <i>z</i>	0	0.01	0.02	0.03	0.04	0.05	0.06	0.07	0.08	0.09
0.0	0.5000	0.4960	0.4920	0.4880	0.4840	0.4801	0.4761	0.4721	0.4681	0.4641
-0.10	0.4602	0.4562	0.4522	0.4483	0.4443	0.4404	0.4364	0.4325	0.4286	0.4247
-0.20	0.4207	0.4168	0.4129	0.4090	0.4052	0.4013	0.3974	0.3936	0.3897	0.3859
-0.30	0.3821	0.3783	0.3745	0.3707	0.3669	0.3632	0.3594	0.3557	0.3520	0.3483
-0.40	0.3446	0.3409	0.3372	0.3336	0.3300	0.3264	0.3228	0.3192	0.3156	0.3121
-0.50	0.3085	0.3050	0.3015	0.2981	0.2946	0.2912	0.2877	0.2843	0.2810	0.2776
-0.60	0.2743	0.2709	0.2676	0.2643	0.2611	0.2578	0.2546	0.2514	0.2483	0.2451
-0.70	0.2420	0.2389	0.2358	0.2327	0.2296	0.2266	0.2236	0.2206	0.2177	0.2148
-0.80	0.2119	0.2090	0.2061	0.2033	0.2005	0.1977	0.1949	0.1922	0.1894	0.1867
-0.90	0.1841	0.1814	0.1788	0.1762	0.1736	0.1711	0.1685	0.1660	0.1635	0.1611
-1.00	0.1587	0.1562	0.1539	0.1515	0.1492	0.1469	0.1446	0.1423	0.1401	0.1379
-1.10	0.1357	0.1335	0.1314	0.1292	0.1271	0.1251	0.1230	0.1210	0.1190	0.1170
-1.20	0.1151	0.1131	0.1112	0.1093	0.1075	0.1056	0.1038	0.1020	0.1003	0.0985
-1.30	0.0968	0.0951	0.0934	0.0918	0.0901	0.0885	0.0869	0.0853	0.0838	0.0823
-1.40	0.0808	0.0793	0.0778	0.0764	0.0749	0.0735	0.0721	0.0708	0.0694	0.0681
-1.50	0.0668	0.0655	0.0643	0.0630	0.0618	0.0606	0.0594	0.0582	0.0571	0.0559
-1.60	0.0548	0.0537	0.0526	0.0516	0.0505	0.0495	0.0485	0.0475	0.0465	0.0455
-1.70	0.0446	0.0436	0.0427	0.0418	0.0409	0.0401	0.0392	0.0384	0.0375	0.0367
-1.80	0.0359	0.0351	0.0344	0.0336	0.0329	0.0322	0.0314	0.0307	0.0301	0.0294
-1.90	0.0287	0.0281	0.0274	0.0268	0.0262	0.0256	0.0250	0.0244	0.0239	0.0233
-2.00	0.0228	0.0222	0.0217	0.0212	0.0207	0.0202	0.0197	0.0192	0.0188	0.0183
-2.10	0.0179	0.0174	0.0170	0.0166	0.0162	0.0158	0.0154	0.0150	0.0146	0.0143
-2.20	0.0139	0.0136	0.0132	0.0129	0.0125	0.0122	0.0119	0.0116	0.0113	0.0110
-2.30	0.0107	0.0104	0.0102	0.0099	0.0096	0.0094	0.0091	0.0089	0.0087	0.0084
-2.40	0.0082	0.0080	0.0078	0.0075	0.0073	0.0071	0.0069	0.0068	0.0066	0.0064
-2.50	0.0062	0.0060	0.0059	0.0057	0.0055	0.0054	0.0052	0.0051	0.0049	0.0048
-2.60	0.0047	0.0045	0.0044	0.0043	0.0041	0.0040	0.0039	0.0038	0.0037	0.0036
-2.70	0.0035	0.0034	0.0033	0.0032	0.0031	0.0030	0.0029	0.0028	0.0027	0.0026
-2.80	0.0026	0.0025	0.0024	0.0023	0.0023	0.0022	0.0021	0.0021	0.0020	0.0019
-2.90	0.0019	0.0018	0.0018	0.0017	0.0016	0.0016	0.0015	0.0015	0.0014	0.0014
-3.00	0.0013	0.0013	0.0013	0.0012	0.0012	0.0011	0.0011	0.0011	0.0010	0.0010
-3.10	0.0010	0.0009	0.0009	0.0009	0.0008	0.0008	0.0008	0.0008	0.0007	0.0007
-3.20	0.0007	0.0007	0.0006	0.0006	0.0006	0.0006	0.0006	0.0005	0.0005	0.0005
-3.30	0.0005	0.0005	0.0005	0.0004	0.0004	0.0004	0.0004	0.0004	0.0004	0.0003
-3.40	0.0003	0.0003	0.0003	0.0003	0.0003	0.0003	0.0003	0.0003	0.0003	0.0002
-3.50	0.0002	0.0002	0.0002	0.0002	0.0002	0.0002	0.0002	0.0002	0.0002	0.0002
-3.60	0.0002	0.0002	0.0001	0.0001	0.0001	0.0001	0.0001	0.0001	0.0001	0.0001
-3.70	0.0001	0.0001	0.0001	0.0001	0.0001	0.0001	0.0001	0.0001	0.0001	0.0001
-3.80	0.0001	0.0001	0.0001	0.0001	0.0001	0.0001	0.0001	0.0001	0.0001	0.0001
-3.90	0.0000	0.0000	0.0000	0.0000	0.0000	0.0000	0.0000	0.0000	0.0000	0.0000
-4.00	0.0000	0.0000	0.0000	0.0000	0.0000	0.0000	0.0000	0.0000	0.0000	0.0000

For example, to find the *z*-value leaving 2.5 percent of the area/probability in the lower tail, find the element 0.0250 in the body of the table. Read -1.90 at the left end of the element's row and 0.06 at the top of the element's column, to give -1.90 - 0.06 = -1.96. *Table generated with Excel.*

Appendix B Table of the Student's *t*-Distribution (One-Tailed Probabilities)

df	$p = 0.10$	$p = 0.05$	$p = 0.025$	$p = 0.01$	$p = 0.005$	df	$p = 0.10$	$p = 0.05$	$p = 0.025$	$p = 0.01$	$p = 0.005$
1	3.078	6.314	12.706	31.821	63.657	31	1.309	1.696	2.040	2.453	2.744
2	1.886	2.920	4.303	6.965	9.925	32	1.309	1.694	2.037	2.449	2.738
3	1.638	2.353	3.182	4.541	5.841	33	1.308	1.692	2.035	2.445	2.733
4	1.533	2.132	2.776	3.747	4.604	34	1.307	1.691	2.032	2.441	2.728
5	1.476	2.015	2.571	3.365	4.032	35	1.306	1.690	2.030	2.438	2.724
6	1.440	1.943	2.447	3.143	3.707	36	1.306	1.688	2.028	2.434	2.719
7	1.415	1.895	2.365	2.998	3.499	37	1.305	1.687	2.026	2.431	2.715
8	1.397	1.860	2.306	2.896	3.355	38	1.304	1.686	2.024	2.429	2.712
9	1.383	1.833	2.262	2.821	3.250	39	1.304	1.685	2.023	2.426	2.708
10	1.372	1.812	2.228	2.764	3.169	40	1.303	1.684	2.021	2.423	2.704
11	1.363	1.796	2.201	2.718	3.106	41	1.303	1.683	2.020	2.421	2.701
12	1.356	1.782	2.179	2.681	3.055	42	1.302	1.682	2.018	2.418	2.698
13	1.350	1.771	2.160	2.650	3.012	43	1.302	1.681	2.017	2.416	2.695
14	1.345	1.761	2.145	2.624	2.977	44	1.301	1.680	2.015	2.414	2.692
15	1.341	1.753	2.131	2.602	2.947	45	1.301	1.679	2.014	2.412	2.690
16	1.337	1.746	2.120	2.583	2.921	46	1.300	1.679	2.013	2.410	2.687
17	1.333	1.740	2.110	2.567	2.898	47	1.300	1.678	2.012	2.408	2.685
18	1.330	1.734	2.101	2.552	2.878	48	1.299	1.677	2.011	2.407	2.682
19	1.328	1.729	2.093	2.539	2.861	49	1.299	1.677	2.010	2.405	2.680
20	1.325	1.725	2.086	2.528	2.845	50	1.299	1.676	2.009	2.403	2.678
21	1.323	1.721	2.080	2.518	2.831	60	1.296	1.671	2.000	2.390	2.660
22	1.321	1.717	2.074	2.508	2.819	70	1.294	1.667	1.994	2.381	2.648
23	1.319	1.714	2.069	2.500	2.807	80	1.292	1.664	1.990	2.374	2.639
24	1.318	1.711	2.064	2.492	2.797	90	1.291	1.662	1.987	2.368	2.632
25	1.316	1.708	2.060	2.485	2.787	100	1.290	1.660	1.984	2.364	2.626
26	1.315	1.706	2.056	2.479	2.779	110	1.289	1.659	1.982	2.361	2.621
27	1.314	1.703	2.052	2.473	2.771	120	1.289	1.658	1.980	2.358	2.617
28	1.313	1.701	2.048	2.467	2.763	200	1.286	1.653	1.972	2.345	2.601
29	1.311	1.699	2.045	2.462	2.756	∞	1.282	1.645	1.960	2.326	2.576
30	1.310	1.697	2.042	2.457	2.750						

To find a critical *t*-value, enter the table with df and a specified value for α , the significance level. For example, with 5 df, $\alpha = 0.05$ and a one-tailed test, the desired probability in the tail would be $p = 0.05$ and the critical *t*-value would be $t(5, 0.05) = 2.015$. With $\alpha = 0.05$ and a two-tailed test, the desired probability in each tail would be $p = 0.025 = \alpha/2$, giving $t(0.025) = 2.571$. Table generated using Excel.

Quantitative Methods for Investment Analysis, Second Edition, by Richard A. DeFusco, CFA, Dennis W. McLeavey, CFA, Jerald E. Pinto, CFA, and David E. Runkle, CFA. Copyright © 2004 by CFA Institute.

Appendix C
Values of χ^2 (Degrees of Freedom, Level of Significance)

Degrees of Freedom	Probability in Right Tail								
	0.99	0.975	0.95	0.9	0.1	0.05	0.025	0.01	0.005
1	0.000157	0.000982	0.003932	0.0158	2.706	3.841	5.024	6.635	7.879
2	0.020100	0.050636	0.102586	0.2107	4.605	5.991	7.378	9.210	10.597
3	0.1148	0.2158	0.3518	0.5844	6.251	7.815	9.348	11.345	12.838
4	0.297	0.484	0.711	1.064	7.779	9.488	11.143	13.277	14.860
5	0.554	0.831	1.145	1.610	9.236	11.070	12.832	15.086	16.750
6	0.872	1.237	1.635	2.204	10.645	12.592	14.449	16.812	18.548
7	1.239	1.690	2.167	2.833	12.017	14.067	16.013	18.475	20.278
8	1.647	2.180	2.733	3.490	13.362	15.507	17.535	20.090	21.955
9	2.088	2.700	3.325	4.168	14.684	16.919	19.023	21.666	23.589
10	2.558	3.247	3.940	4.865	15.987	18.307	20.483	23.209	25.188
11	3.053	3.816	4.575	5.578	17.275	19.675	21.920	24.725	26.757
12	3.571	4.404	5.226	6.304	18.549	21.026	23.337	26.217	28.300
13	4.107	5.009	5.892	7.041	19.812	22.362	24.736	27.688	29.819
14	4.660	5.629	6.571	7.790	21.064	23.685	26.119	29.141	31.319
15	5.229	6.262	7.261	8.547	22.307	24.996	27.488	30.578	32.801
16	5.812	6.908	7.962	9.312	23.542	26.296	28.845	32.000	34.267
17	6.408	7.564	8.672	10.085	24.769	27.587	30.191	33.409	35.718
18	7.015	8.231	9.390	10.865	25.989	28.869	31.526	34.805	37.156
19	7.633	8.907	10.117	11.651	27.204	30.144	32.852	36.191	38.582
20	8.260	9.591	10.851	12.443	28.412	31.410	34.170	37.566	39.997
21	8.897	10.283	11.591	13.240	29.615	32.671	35.479	38.932	41.401
22	9.542	10.982	12.338	14.041	30.813	33.924	36.781	40.289	42.796
23	10.196	11.689	13.091	14.848	32.007	35.172	38.076	41.638	44.181
24	10.856	12.401	13.848	15.659	33.196	36.415	39.364	42.980	45.558
25	11.524	13.120	14.611	16.473	34.382	37.652	40.646	44.314	46.928
26	12.198	13.844	15.379	17.292	35.563	38.885	41.923	45.642	48.290
27	12.878	14.573	16.151	18.114	36.741	40.113	43.195	46.963	49.645
28	13.565	15.308	16.928	18.939	37.916	41.337	44.461	48.278	50.994
29	14.256	16.047	17.708	19.768	39.087	42.557	45.722	49.588	52.335
30	14.953	16.791	18.493	20.599	40.256	43.773	46.979	50.892	53.672
50	29.707	32.357	34.764	37.689	63.167	67.505	71.420	76.154	79.490
60	37.485	40.482	43.188	46.459	74.397	79.082	83.298	88.379	91.952
80	53.540	57.153	60.391	64.278	96.578	101.879	106.629	112.329	116.321
100	70.065	74.222	77.929	82.358	118.498	124.342	129.561	135.807	140.170

To have a probability of 0.05 in the right tail when $df = 5$, the tabled value is $\chi^2(5, 0.05) = 11.070$.

Quantitative Methods for Investment Analysis, Second Edition, by Richard A. DeFusco, CFA, Dennis W. McLeavey, CFA, Jerald E. Pinto, CFA, and David E. Runkle, CFA. Copyright © 2004 by CFA Institute.

Appendix D
Table of the F-Distribution

Panel A. Critical values for right-hand tail area equal to 0.05

df1:1	Numerator: df ₁ and Denominator: df ₂																						
	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	15	20	21	22	23	24	25	30	40	60	120	∞
161	200	216	225	230	234	237	239	241	242	243	244	246	248	248	249	249	249	249	250	251	252	252	254
2	18.5	19.0	19.2	19.3	19.3	19.4	19.4	19.4	19.4	19.4	19.4	19.4	19.4	19.4	19.5	19.5	19.5	19.5	19.5	19.5	19.5	19.5	19.5
3	10.1	9.55	9.28	9.12	9.01	8.94	8.89	8.85	8.81	8.79	8.76	8.74	8.70	8.66	8.65	8.64	8.64	8.63	8.62	8.59	8.57	8.55	8.53
4	7.71	6.94	6.59	6.39	6.26	6.16	6.09	6.04	6.00	5.96	5.94	5.91	5.86	5.80	5.79	5.78	5.77	5.77	5.75	5.72	5.69	5.66	5.63
5	6.61	5.79	5.41	5.19	5.05	4.95	4.88	4.82	4.77	4.74	4.70	4.68	4.62	4.56	4.55	4.53	4.53	4.52	4.50	4.46	4.43	4.40	4.37
6	5.99	5.14	4.76	4.53	4.39	4.28	4.21	4.15	4.10	4.06	4.03	4.00	3.94	3.87	3.86	3.85	3.84	3.83	3.81	3.77	3.74	3.70	3.67
7	5.59	4.74	4.35	4.12	3.97	3.87	3.79	3.73	3.68	3.64	3.60	3.57	3.51	3.44	3.43	3.42	3.41	3.40	3.38	3.34	3.30	3.27	3.23
8	5.32	4.46	4.07	3.84	3.69	3.58	3.50	3.44	3.39	3.35	3.31	3.28	3.22	3.15	3.14	3.12	3.12	3.11	3.08	3.04	3.01	2.97	2.93
9	5.12	4.26	3.86	3.63	3.48	3.37	3.29	3.23	3.18	3.14	3.10	3.07	3.01	2.94	2.93	2.92	2.91	2.90	2.86	2.82	2.79	2.75	2.71
10	4.96	4.10	3.71	3.48	3.33	3.22	3.14	3.07	3.02	2.98	2.94	2.91	2.85	2.77	2.76	2.75	2.74	2.73	2.70	2.66	2.62	2.58	2.54
11	4.84	3.98	3.59	3.36	3.20	3.09	3.01	2.95	2.90	2.85	2.82	2.79	2.72	2.65	2.64	2.63	2.62	2.61	2.60	2.57	2.53	2.49	2.45
12	4.75	3.89	3.49	3.26	3.11	3.00	2.91	2.85	2.80	2.75	2.72	2.69	2.62	2.54	2.53	2.52	2.51	2.50	2.47	2.43	2.38	2.34	2.30
13	4.67	3.81	3.41	3.18	3.03	2.92	2.83	2.77	2.71	2.67	2.63	2.60	2.53	2.46	2.45	2.44	2.43	2.42	2.41	2.38	2.34	2.30	2.25
14	4.60	3.74	3.34	3.11	2.96	2.85	2.76	2.70	2.65	2.60	2.57	2.53	2.46	2.39	2.38	2.37	2.36	2.35	2.34	2.31	2.27	2.22	2.18
15	4.54	3.68	3.29	3.06	2.90	2.79	2.71	2.64	2.59	2.54	2.51	2.48	2.40	2.33	2.32	2.31	2.30	2.29	2.28	2.25	2.20	2.16	2.11
16	4.49	3.63	3.24	3.01	2.85	2.74	2.66	2.59	2.54	2.49	2.46	2.42	2.35	2.28	2.26	2.25	2.24	2.23	2.19	2.15	2.11	2.06	2.01
17	4.45	3.59	3.20	2.96	2.81	2.70	2.61	2.55	2.49	2.45	2.41	2.38	2.31	2.23	2.22	2.21	2.20	2.19	2.18	2.15	2.10	2.06	2.01
18	4.41	3.55	3.16	2.93	2.77	2.66	2.58	2.51	2.46	2.41	2.37	2.34	2.27	2.19	2.18	2.17	2.16	2.15	2.14	2.11	2.06	2.02	1.97
19	4.38	3.52	3.13	2.90	2.74	2.63	2.54	2.48	2.42	2.38	2.34	2.31	2.23	2.16	2.14	2.13	2.12	2.11	2.11	2.07	2.03	1.98	1.93
20	4.35	3.49	3.10	2.87	2.71	2.60	2.51	2.45	2.39	2.35	2.31	2.28	2.20	2.12	2.11	2.10	2.09	2.08	2.07	2.04	1.99	1.95	1.90
21	4.32	3.47	3.07	2.84	2.68	2.57	2.49	2.42	2.37	2.32	2.28	2.25	2.18	2.10	2.08	2.07	2.06	2.05	2.05	2.01	1.96	1.92	1.87
22	4.30	3.44	3.05	2.82	2.66	2.55	2.46	2.40	2.34	2.30	2.26	2.23	2.15	2.07	2.06	2.05	2.04	2.03	2.02	1.98	1.94	1.89	1.84
23	4.28	3.42	3.03	2.80	2.64	2.53	2.44	2.37	2.32	2.27	2.24	2.20	2.13	2.05	2.04	2.02	2.01	2.01	2.00	1.96	1.91	1.86	1.81
24	4.26	3.40	3.01	2.78	2.62	2.51	2.42	2.36	2.30	2.25	2.22	2.18	2.11	2.03	2.01	2.00	1.99	1.98	1.97	1.94	1.89	1.84	1.79
25	4.24	3.39	2.99	2.76	2.60	2.49	2.40	2.34	2.28	2.24	2.20	2.16	2.09	2.01	2.00	1.98	1.97	1.96	1.96	1.92	1.87	1.82	1.77
30	4.17	3.32	2.92	2.69	2.53	2.42	2.33	2.27	2.21	2.16	2.13	2.09	2.01	1.93	1.92	1.91	1.90	1.89	1.88	1.84	1.79	1.74	1.68
40	4.08	3.23	2.84	2.61	2.45	2.34	2.25	2.18	2.12	2.08	2.04	2.00	1.92	1.84	1.83	1.81	1.80	1.79	1.78	1.74	1.69	1.64	1.58
60	4.00	3.15	2.76	2.53	2.37	2.25	2.17	2.10	2.04	1.99	1.95	1.92	1.84	1.75	1.73	1.72	1.71	1.70	1.69	1.65	1.59	1.53	1.47
120	3.92	3.07	2.68	2.45	2.29	2.18	2.09	2.02	1.96	1.91	1.87	1.83	1.75	1.66	1.64	1.63	1.62	1.61	1.60	1.55	1.50	1.43	1.35
Infinity	3.84	3.00	2.60	2.37	2.21	2.10	2.01	1.94	1.88	1.83	1.79	1.75	1.67	1.57	1.56	1.54	1.53	1.52	1.51	1.46	1.39	1.32	1.22

Appendix D (continued)
Table of the F-Distribution

Panel B. Critical values for right-hand tail area equal to 0.025

df2: 1	Numerator: df, and Denominator: df ₂																								
	df1: 1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	15	20	21	22	23	24	25	30	40	60	120	∞	
2	38.51	39.00	39.17	39.25	39.30	39.33	39.36	39.37	39.39	39.40	39.41	39.41	39.43	39.45	39.45	39.45	39.46	39.46	39.46	39.46	39.46	39.47	39.48	39.49	39.50
3	17.44	16.04	15.44	15.10	14.88	14.73	14.62	14.54	14.47	14.42	14.37	14.34	14.25	14.17	14.16	14.14	14.13	14.12	14.12	14.12	14.08	14.04	13.99	13.95	13.90
4	12.22	10.65	9.98	9.60	9.36	9.20	9.07	8.98	8.90	8.84	8.79	8.75	8.66	8.56	8.55	8.53	8.52	8.51	8.50	8.46	8.41	8.36	8.31	8.26	8.26
5	10.01	8.43	7.76	7.39	7.15	6.98	6.85	6.76	6.68	6.62	6.57	6.52	6.43	6.33	6.31	6.30	6.29	6.28	6.27	6.23	6.18	6.12	6.07	6.02	6.02
6	8.81	7.26	6.60	6.23	5.99	5.82	5.70	5.60	5.52	5.46	5.41	5.37	5.27	5.17	5.15	5.14	5.13	5.12	5.11	5.07	5.01	4.96	4.90	4.85	4.85
7	8.07	6.54	5.89	5.52	5.29	5.12	4.99	4.90	4.82	4.76	4.71	4.67	4.57	4.47	4.45	4.44	4.43	4.41	4.40	4.36	4.31	4.25	4.20	4.14	4.14
8	7.57	6.06	5.42	5.05	4.82	4.65	4.53	4.43	4.36	4.30	4.24	4.20	4.10	4.00	3.98	3.97	3.96	3.95	3.94	3.89	3.84	3.78	3.73	3.67	3.67
9	7.21	5.71	5.08	4.72	4.48	4.32	4.20	4.10	4.03	3.96	3.91	3.87	3.77	3.67	3.65	3.64	3.63	3.61	3.60	3.56	3.51	3.45	3.39	3.33	3.33
10	6.94	5.46	4.83	4.47	4.24	4.07	3.95	3.85	3.78	3.72	3.66	3.62	3.52	3.42	3.40	3.39	3.38	3.37	3.35	3.31	3.26	3.20	3.14	3.08	3.08
11	6.72	5.26	4.63	4.28	4.04	3.88	3.76	3.66	3.59	3.53	3.47	3.43	3.33	3.23	3.21	3.20	3.18	3.17	3.16	3.12	3.06	3.00	2.94	2.88	2.88
12	6.55	5.10	4.47	4.12	3.89	3.73	3.61	3.51	3.44	3.37	3.32	3.28	3.18	3.07	3.06	3.04	3.03	3.02	3.01	2.96	2.91	2.85	2.79	2.72	2.72
13	6.41	4.97	4.35	4.00	3.77	3.60	3.48	3.39	3.31	3.25	3.20	3.15	3.05	2.95	2.93	2.92	2.91	2.89	2.88	2.84	2.78	2.72	2.66	2.60	2.60
14	6.30	4.86	4.24	3.89	3.66	3.50	3.38	3.29	3.21	3.15	3.09	3.05	2.95	2.84	2.83	2.81	2.80	2.79	2.78	2.73	2.67	2.61	2.55	2.49	2.49
15	6.20	4.77	4.15	3.80	3.58	3.41	3.29	3.20	3.12	3.06	3.01	2.96	2.86	2.76	2.74	2.73	2.71	2.70	2.69	2.64	2.59	2.52	2.46	2.40	2.40
16	6.12	4.69	4.08	3.73	3.50	3.34	3.22	3.12	3.05	2.99	2.93	2.89	2.79	2.68	2.67	2.65	2.64	2.63	2.61	2.57	2.51	2.45	2.38	2.32	2.32
17	6.04	4.62	4.01	3.66	3.44	3.28	3.16	3.06	2.98	2.92	2.87	2.82	2.72	2.62	2.60	2.59	2.57	2.56	2.55	2.50	2.44	2.38	2.32	2.25	2.25
18	5.98	4.56	3.95	3.61	3.38	3.22	3.10	3.01	2.93	2.87	2.81	2.77	2.67	2.56	2.54	2.53	2.52	2.50	2.49	2.44	2.38	2.32	2.26	2.19	2.19
19	5.92	4.51	3.90	3.56	3.33	3.17	3.05	2.96	2.88	2.82	2.76	2.72	2.62	2.51	2.49	2.48	2.46	2.45	2.44	2.39	2.33	2.27	2.20	2.13	2.13
20	5.87	4.46	3.86	3.51	3.29	3.13	3.01	2.91	2.84	2.77	2.72	2.68	2.57	2.46	2.45	2.43	2.42	2.41	2.40	2.35	2.29	2.22	2.16	2.09	2.09
21	5.83	4.42	3.82	3.48	3.25	3.09	2.97	2.87	2.80	2.73	2.68	2.64	2.53	2.42	2.41	2.39	2.38	2.37	2.36	2.31	2.25	2.18	2.11	2.04	2.04
22	5.79	4.38	3.78	3.44	3.22	3.05	2.93	2.84	2.76	2.70	2.65	2.60	2.50	2.39	2.37	2.36	2.34	2.33	2.32	2.27	2.21	2.14	2.08	2.00	2.00
23	5.75	4.35	3.75	3.41	3.18	3.02	2.90	2.81	2.73	2.67	2.62	2.57	2.47	2.36	2.34	2.33	2.31	2.30	2.29	2.24	2.18	2.11	2.04	1.97	1.97
24	5.72	4.32	3.72	3.38	3.15	2.99	2.87	2.78	2.70	2.64	2.59	2.54	2.44	2.33	2.31	2.30	2.28	2.27	2.26	2.21	2.15	2.08	2.01	1.94	1.94
25	5.69	4.29	3.69	3.35	3.13	2.97	2.85	2.75	2.68	2.61	2.56	2.51	2.41	2.30	2.28	2.27	2.26	2.24	2.23	2.18	2.12	2.05	1.98	1.91	1.91
30	5.57	4.18	3.59	3.25	3.03	2.87	2.75	2.65	2.57	2.51	2.46	2.41	2.31	2.20	2.18	2.16	2.15	2.14	2.12	2.07	2.01	1.94	1.87	1.79	1.79
40	5.42	4.05	3.46	3.13	2.90	2.74	2.62	2.53	2.45	2.39	2.33	2.29	2.18	2.07	2.05	2.03	2.02	2.01	1.99	1.94	1.88	1.80	1.72	1.64	1.64
60	5.29	3.93	3.34	3.01	2.79	2.63	2.51	2.41	2.33	2.27	2.22	2.17	2.06	1.94	1.93	1.91	1.90	1.88	1.87	1.82	1.74	1.67	1.58	1.48	1.48
120	5.15	3.80	3.23	2.89	2.67	2.52	2.39	2.30	2.22	2.16	2.10	2.05	1.94	1.82	1.81	1.79	1.77	1.76	1.75	1.69	1.61	1.53	1.43	1.31	1.31
Infinity	5.02	3.69	3.12	2.79	2.57	2.41	2.29	2.19	2.11	2.05	1.99	1.94	1.83	1.71	1.69	1.67	1.66	1.64	1.63	1.57	1.48	1.39	1.27	1.00	1.00

Appendix D (continued)
Table of the F-Distribution

Panel C. Critical values for right-hand tail area equal to 0.01

df ₁ : 1	Numerator: df ₁ and Denominator: df ₂																								
	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	15	20	21	22	23	24	25	30	40	60	120	∞		
df ₂ : 1	4052	5000	5403	5625	5764	5859	5928	5982	6023	6056	6083	6106	6157	6209	6216	6223	6229	6235	6240	6261	6287	6313	6339	6366	
2	98.5	99.0	99.2	99.3	99.3	99.4	99.4	99.4	99.4	99.4	99.4	99.4	99.4	99.4	99.5	99.5	99.5	99.5	99.5	99.5	99.5	99.5	99.5	99.5	
3	34.1	30.8	29.5	28.7	28.2	27.9	27.7	27.5	27.3	27.2	27.1	27.1	26.9	26.7	26.7	26.6	26.6	26.6	26.6	26.6	26.5	26.4	26.3	26.2	26.1
4	21.2	18.0	16.7	16.0	15.5	15.2	15.0	14.8	14.7	14.5	14.5	14.4	14.2	14.0	14.0	13.9	13.9	13.9	13.9	13.8	13.7	13.7	13.6	13.5	
5	16.3	13.3	12.1	11.4	11.0	10.7	10.5	10.3	10.2	10.1	10.0	9.9	9.7	9.5	9.5	9.4	9.4	9.4	9.4	9.3	9.2	9.2	9.1	9.0	
6	13.7	10.9	9.7	9.1	8.7	8.4	8.2	8.1	7.9	7.8	7.7	7.7	7.5	7.4	7.3	7.3	7.3	7.3	7.3	7.2	7.1	7.0	6.9	6.8	
7	12.2	9.5	8.4	7.8	7.4	7.1	6.9	6.8	6.7	6.6	6.5	6.4	6.3	6.1	6.1	6.0	6.0	6.0	6.0	5.9	5.9	5.8	5.7	5.6	
8	11.3	8.6	7.5	7.0	6.6	6.3	6.1	6.0	5.9	5.8	5.7	5.6	5.5	5.3	5.3	5.3	5.2	5.2	5.2	5.2	5.1	5.0	4.9	4.8	
9	10.6	8.0	6.9	6.4	6.0	5.8	5.6	5.4	5.3	5.2	5.1	5.1	4.9	4.8	4.7	4.7	4.7	4.7	4.7	4.6	4.5	4.4	4.4	4.3	
10	10.0	7.5	6.5	5.9	5.6	5.3	5.2	5.0	4.9	4.8	4.7	4.7	4.5	4.4	4.3	4.3	4.3	4.3	4.3	4.2	4.1	4.0	4.0	3.9	
11	9.6	7.2	6.2	5.6	5.3	5.0	4.8	4.7	4.6	4.5	4.4	4.4	4.2	4.1	4.0	4.0	4.0	4.0	4.0	3.9	3.8	3.7	3.6	3.6	
12	9.3	6.9	5.9	5.4	5.0	4.8	4.6	4.5	4.3	4.3	4.2	4.1	4.0	3.8	3.8	3.8	3.8	3.8	3.7	3.6	3.5	3.4	3.3	3.3	
13	9.0	6.7	5.7	5.2	4.8	4.6	4.4	4.3	4.1	4.1	4.0	3.9	3.8	3.6	3.6	3.6	3.6	3.5	3.5	3.4	3.3	3.2	3.1	3.1	
14	8.8	6.5	5.5	5.0	4.7	4.4	4.2	4.1	4.0	3.9	3.8	3.8	3.6	3.5	3.4	3.4	3.4	3.4	3.4	3.3	3.2	3.1	3.0	3.0	
15	8.6	6.3	5.4	4.8	4.5	4.3	4.1	4.0	3.8	3.8	3.7	3.6	3.5	3.3	3.3	3.3	3.2	3.2	3.2	3.1	3.0	2.9	2.8	2.8	
16	8.5	6.2	5.2	4.7	4.4	4.2	4.0	3.8	3.7	3.6	3.6	3.5	3.4	3.2	3.2	3.2	3.2	3.1	3.1	3.0	2.9	2.8	2.7	2.7	
17	8.4	6.1	5.1	4.6	4.3	4.1	3.9	3.7	3.6	3.5	3.5	3.4	3.3	3.1	3.1	3.1	3.0	3.0	3.0	2.9	2.8	2.7	2.6	2.6	
18	8.2	6.0	5.0	4.5	4.2	4.0	3.8	3.7	3.6	3.5	3.4	3.3	3.2	3.0	3.0	3.0	3.0	2.9	2.9	2.8	2.7	2.6	2.5	2.5	
19	8.1	5.9	5.0	4.5	4.1	3.9	3.7	3.6	3.5	3.4	3.3	3.3	3.1	3.0	2.9	2.9	2.9	2.9	2.8	2.7	2.6	2.5	2.4	2.4	
20	8.1	5.8	4.9	4.4	4.1	3.8	3.7	3.6	3.4	3.3	3.2	3.2	3.0	2.9	2.9	2.8	2.8	2.8	2.8	2.7	2.6	2.5	2.4	2.4	
21	8.0	5.7	4.8	4.3	4.0	3.8	3.6	3.5	3.4	3.3	3.2	3.1	3.0	2.8	2.8	2.8	2.8	2.8	2.7	2.6	2.5	2.4	2.3	2.3	
22	7.9	5.7	4.8	4.3	3.9	3.7	3.5	3.4	3.3	3.2	3.1	3.1	2.9	2.8	2.8	2.7	2.7	2.7	2.7	2.6	2.5	2.4	2.3	2.3	
23	7.8	5.6	4.7	4.2	3.9	3.7	3.5	3.4	3.3	3.2	3.1	3.0	2.9	2.7	2.7	2.7	2.7	2.7	2.6	2.5	2.4	2.3	2.2	2.2	
24	7.8	5.6	4.7	4.2	3.9	3.6	3.5	3.3	3.2	3.1	3.0	3.0	2.8	2.7	2.7	2.6	2.6	2.6	2.6	2.5	2.4	2.3	2.2	2.2	
25	7.7	5.5	4.6	4.1	3.8	3.6	3.4	3.3	3.2	3.1	3.0	2.9	2.8	2.7	2.6	2.6	2.6	2.6	2.5	2.4	2.3	2.2	2.1	2.1	
30	7.5	5.3	4.5	4.0	3.7	3.4	3.3	3.1	3.0	2.9	2.9	2.8	2.7	2.5	2.5	2.4	2.4	2.4	2.3	2.3	2.2	2.1	2.0	2.0	
40	7.3	5.1	4.3	3.8	3.5	3.2	3.1	2.9	2.8	2.8	2.7	2.6	2.5	2.3	2.3	2.3	2.3	2.2	2.2	2.1	2.0	1.9	1.8	1.8	
60	7.0	4.9	4.1	3.6	3.3	3.1	2.9	2.8	2.7	2.6	2.5	2.5	2.3	2.2	2.1	2.1	2.1	2.1	2.0	1.9	1.8	1.7	1.6	1.6	
120	6.8	4.7	3.9	3.4	3.1	2.9	2.7	2.6	2.5	2.4	2.4	2.3	2.1	2.0	1.9	1.9	1.9	1.9	1.8	1.7	1.6	1.5	1.3	1.3	
Infinity	6.6	4.6	3.7	3.2	3.0	2.8	2.6	2.5	2.4	2.3	2.2	2.2	2.0	1.8	1.8	1.8	1.7	1.7	1.7	1.6	1.5	1.4	1.2	1.0	

Appendix D (continued)
Table of the F-Distribution

df1:1	Numerator: df, and Denominator: df ₂																						
	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	15	20	21	22	23	24	25	30	40	60	120	∞
df2: 1	16211	20000	21615	22500	23056	23437	23715	23925	24091	24222	24334	24426	24630	24836	24863	24915	24940	24959	25044	25146	25253	25359	25464
2	198.5	199.0	199.2	199.3	199.3	199.4	199.4	199.4	199.4	199.4	199.4	199.4	199.4	199.4	199.4	199.4	199.4	199.4	199.5	199.5	199.5	199.5	200
3	55.55	49.80	47.47	46.20	45.39	44.84	44.43	44.13	43.88	43.68	43.52	43.39	43.08	42.78	42.69	42.66	42.62	42.59	42.47	42.31	42.15	41.99	41.83
4	31.33	26.28	24.26	23.15	22.46	21.98	21.62	21.35	21.14	20.97	20.82	20.70	20.44	20.17	20.13	20.09	20.06	20.03	19.89	19.75	19.61	19.47	19.32
5	22.78	18.31	16.53	15.56	14.94	14.51	14.20	13.96	13.77	13.62	13.49	13.38	13.15	12.90	12.87	12.84	12.78	12.76	12.66	12.53	12.40	12.27	12.14
6	18.63	14.54	12.92	12.03	11.46	11.07	10.79	10.57	10.39	10.25	10.13	10.03	9.81	9.59	9.56	9.53	9.50	9.47	9.45	9.36	9.24	9.12	9.00
7	16.24	12.40	10.88	10.05	9.52	9.16	8.89	8.68	8.51	8.38	8.27	8.18	7.97	7.75	7.72	7.69	7.64	7.62	7.53	7.42	7.31	7.19	7.08
8	14.69	11.04	9.60	8.81	8.30	7.95	7.69	7.50	7.34	7.21	7.10	7.01	6.81	6.61	6.58	6.55	6.53	6.48	6.40	6.29	6.18	6.06	5.95
9	13.61	10.11	8.72	7.96	7.47	7.13	6.88	6.69	6.54	6.42	6.31	6.23	6.03	5.83	5.80	5.78	5.75	5.73	5.71	5.62	5.52	5.41	5.30
10	12.83	9.43	8.08	7.34	6.87	6.54	6.30	6.12	5.97	5.85	5.75	5.66	5.47	5.27	5.25	5.22	5.20	5.17	5.15	5.07	4.97	4.86	4.75
11	12.23	8.91	7.60	6.88	6.42	6.10	5.86	5.68	5.54	5.42	5.32	5.24	5.05	4.86	4.83	4.80	4.78	4.76	4.74	4.65	4.55	4.45	4.34
12	11.75	8.51	7.23	6.52	6.07	5.76	5.52	5.35	5.20	5.09	4.99	4.91	4.72	4.53	4.50	4.48	4.45	4.43	4.41	4.33	4.23	4.12	4.01
13	11.37	8.19	6.93	6.23	5.79	5.48	5.25	5.08	4.94	4.82	4.72	4.64	4.46	4.27	4.24	4.22	4.19	4.17	4.15	4.07	3.97	3.87	3.76
14	11.06	7.92	6.68	6.00	5.56	5.26	5.03	4.86	4.72	4.60	4.51	4.43	4.25	4.06	4.03	4.01	3.98	3.96	3.94	3.86	3.76	3.66	3.55
15	10.80	7.70	6.48	5.80	5.37	5.07	4.85	4.67	4.54	4.42	4.33	4.25	4.07	3.88	3.86	3.83	3.81	3.79	3.77	3.69	3.59	3.48	3.37
16	10.58	7.51	6.30	5.64	5.21	4.91	4.69	4.52	4.38	4.27	4.18	4.10	3.92	3.73	3.71	3.68	3.66	3.64	3.62	3.54	3.44	3.33	3.22
17	10.38	7.35	6.16	5.50	5.07	4.78	4.56	4.39	4.25	4.14	4.05	3.97	3.79	3.61	3.58	3.56	3.53	3.51	3.49	3.41	3.31	3.21	3.10
18	10.22	7.21	6.03	5.37	4.96	4.66	4.44	4.28	4.14	4.03	3.94	3.86	3.68	3.50	3.47	3.45	3.42	3.40	3.38	3.30	3.20	3.10	2.99
19	10.07	7.09	5.92	5.27	4.85	4.56	4.34	4.18	4.04	3.93	3.84	3.76	3.59	3.40	3.37	3.35	3.33	3.31	3.29	3.21	3.11	3.00	2.89
20	9.94	6.99	5.82	5.17	4.76	4.47	4.26	4.09	3.96	3.85	3.76	3.68	3.50	3.32	3.29	3.27	3.24	3.22	3.20	3.12	3.02	2.92	2.81
21	9.83	6.89	5.73	5.09	4.68	4.39	4.18	4.01	3.88	3.77	3.68	3.60	3.43	3.24	3.22	3.19	3.17	3.15	3.13	3.05	2.95	2.84	2.73
22	9.73	6.81	5.65	5.02	4.61	4.32	4.11	3.94	3.81	3.70	3.61	3.54	3.36	3.18	3.15	3.12	3.10	3.08	3.06	2.98	2.88	2.77	2.66
23	9.63	6.73	5.58	4.95	4.54	4.26	4.05	3.88	3.75	3.64	3.55	3.47	3.30	3.12	3.09	3.06	3.04	3.02	3.00	2.92	2.82	2.71	2.60
24	9.55	6.66	5.52	4.89	4.49	4.20	3.99	3.83	3.69	3.59	3.50	3.42	3.25	3.06	3.04	3.01	2.99	2.97	2.95	2.87	2.77	2.66	2.55
25	9.48	6.60	5.46	4.84	4.43	4.15	3.94	3.78	3.64	3.54	3.45	3.37	3.20	3.01	2.99	2.96	2.94	2.92	2.90	2.82	2.72	2.61	2.50
30	9.18	6.35	5.24	4.62	4.23	3.95	3.74	3.58	3.45	3.34	3.25	3.18	3.01	2.82	2.80	2.77	2.75	2.73	2.71	2.63	2.52	2.42	2.30
40	8.83	6.07	4.98	4.37	3.99	3.71	3.51	3.35	3.22	3.12	3.03	2.95	2.78	2.60	2.57	2.55	2.52	2.50	2.48	2.40	2.30	2.18	2.06
60	8.49	5.79	4.73	4.14	3.76	3.49	3.29	3.13	3.01	2.90	2.82	2.74	2.57	2.39	2.36	2.33	2.31	2.29	2.27	2.19	2.08	1.96	1.83
120	8.18	5.54	4.50	3.92	3.55	3.28	3.09	2.93	2.81	2.71	2.62	2.54	2.37	2.19	2.16	2.13	2.11	2.09	2.07	1.98	1.87	1.75	1.61
Infinity	7.88	5.30	4.28	3.72	3.35	3.09	2.90	2.74	2.62	2.52	2.43	2.36	2.19	2.00	1.97	1.95	1.92	1.90	1.88	1.79	1.67	1.53	1.36

With 1 degree of freedom (df) in the numerator and 3 df in the denominator, the critical F-value is 10.1 for a right-hand tail area equal to 0.05.

Quantitative Methods for Investment Analysis, Second Edition, by Richard A. DeFusco, CFA, Dennis W. McLeavey, CFA, Jerald E. Pinto, CFA, and David E. Runkle, CFA. Copyright © 2004 by CFA Institute.

Appendix E Critical Values for the Durbin-Watson Statistic ($\alpha = .05$)

<i>n</i>	<i>K</i> = 1		<i>K</i> = 2		<i>K</i> = 3		<i>K</i> = 4		<i>K</i> = 5	
	<i>d</i> _l	<i>d</i> _u	<i>d</i> _l	<i>d</i> _u	<i>d</i> _l	<i>d</i> _u	<i>d</i> _l	<i>d</i> _u	<i>d</i> _l	<i>d</i> _u
15	1.08	1.36	0.95	1.54	0.82	1.75	0.69	1.97	0.56	2.21
16	1.10	1.37	0.98	1.54	0.86	1.73	0.74	1.93	0.62	2.15
17	1.13	1.38	1.02	1.54	0.90	1.71	0.78	1.90	0.67	2.10
18	1.16	1.39	1.05	1.53	0.93	1.69	0.82	1.87	0.71	2.06
19	1.18	1.40	1.08	1.53	0.97	1.68	0.86	1.85	0.75	2.02
20	1.20	1.41	1.10	1.54	1.00	1.68	0.90	1.83	0.79	1.99
21	1.22	1.42	1.13	1.54	1.03	1.67	0.93	1.81	0.83	1.96
22	1.24	1.43	1.15	1.54	1.05	1.66	0.96	1.80	0.86	1.94
23	1.26	1.44	1.17	1.54	1.08	1.66	0.99	1.79	0.90	1.92
24	1.27	1.45	1.19	1.55	1.10	1.66	1.01	1.78	0.93	1.90
25	1.29	1.45	1.21	1.55	1.12	1.66	1.04	1.77	0.95	1.89
26	1.30	1.46	1.22	1.55	1.14	1.65	1.06	1.76	0.98	1.88
27	1.32	1.47	1.24	1.56	1.16	1.65	1.08	1.76	1.01	1.86
28	1.33	1.48	1.26	1.56	1.18	1.65	1.10	1.75	1.03	1.85
29	1.34	1.48	1.27	1.56	1.20	1.65	1.12	1.74	1.05	1.84
30	1.35	1.49	1.28	1.57	1.21	1.65	1.14	1.74	1.07	1.83
31	1.36	1.50	1.30	1.57	1.23	1.65	1.16	1.74	1.09	1.83
32	1.37	1.50	1.31	1.57	1.24	1.65	1.18	1.73	1.11	1.82
33	1.38	1.51	1.32	1.58	1.26	1.65	1.19	1.73	1.13	1.81
34	1.39	1.51	1.33	1.58	1.27	1.65	1.21	1.73	1.15	1.81
35	1.40	1.52	1.34	1.58	1.28	1.65	1.22	1.73	1.16	1.80
36	1.41	1.52	1.35	1.59	1.29	1.65	1.24	1.73	1.18	1.80
37	1.42	1.53	1.36	1.59	1.31	1.66	1.25	1.72	1.19	1.80
38	1.43	1.54	1.37	1.59	1.32	1.66	1.26	1.72	1.21	1.79
39	1.43	1.54	1.38	1.60	1.33	1.66	1.27	1.72	1.22	1.79
40	1.44	1.54	1.39	1.60	1.34	1.66	1.29	1.72	1.23	1.79
45	1.48	1.57	1.43	1.62	1.38	1.67	1.34	1.72	1.29	1.78
50	1.50	1.59	1.46	1.63	1.42	1.67	1.38	1.72	1.34	1.77
55	1.53	1.60	1.49	1.64	1.45	1.68	1.41	1.72	1.38	1.77
60	1.55	1.62	1.51	1.65	1.48	1.69	1.44	1.73	1.41	1.77
65	1.57	1.63	1.54	1.66	1.50	1.70	1.47	1.73	1.44	1.77
70	1.58	1.64	1.55	1.67	1.52	1.70	1.49	1.74	1.46	1.77
75	1.60	1.65	1.57	1.68	1.54	1.71	1.51	1.74	1.49	1.77
80	1.61	1.66	1.59	1.69	1.56	1.72	1.53	1.74	1.51	1.77
85	1.62	1.67	1.60	1.70	1.57	1.72	1.55	1.75	1.52	1.77
90	1.63	1.68	1.61	1.70	1.59	1.73	1.57	1.75	1.54	1.78
95	1.64	1.69	1.62	1.71	1.60	1.73	1.58	1.75	1.56	1.78
100	1.65	1.69	1.63	1.72	1.61	1.74	1.59	1.76	1.57	1.78

Note: *K* = the number of slope parameters in the model.

Source: From J. Durbin and G. S. Watson, "Testing for Serial Correlation in Least Squares Regression, II," *Biometrika* 38 (1951): 159–178.

Glossary

- A priori probability** A probability based on logical analysis rather than on observation or personal judgment.
- Abnormal return** The amount by which a security's actual return differs from its expected return, given the security's risk and the market's return.
- Absolute advantage** A country's ability to produce a good or service at a lower absolute cost than its trading partner.
- Absolute dispersion** The amount of variability present without comparison to any reference point or benchmark.
- Absolute frequency** The number of observations in a given interval (for grouped data).
- Accelerated book build** An offering of securities by an investment bank acting as principal that is accomplished in only one or two days.
- Accelerated methods** Depreciation methods that allocate a relatively large proportion of the cost of an asset to the early years of the asset's useful life.
- Accounting costs** Monetary value of economic resources used in performing an activity. These can be explicit, out-of-pocket, current payments, or an allocation of historical payments (depreciation) for resources. They do not include implicit opportunity costs.
- Accounting profit** Income as reported on the income statement, in accordance with prevailing accounting standards, before the provisions for income tax expense. Also called *income before taxes* or *pretax income*.
- Accounts payable** Amounts that a business owes to its vendors for goods and services that were purchased from them but which have not yet been paid.
- Accounts receivable turnover** Ratio of sales on credit to the average balance in accounts receivable.
- Accrued expenses** Liabilities related to expenses that have been incurred but not yet paid as of the end of an accounting period—an example of an accrued expense is rent that has been incurred but not yet paid, resulting in a liability "rent payable." Also called *accrued liabilities*.
- Accrued interest** Interest earned but not yet paid.
- Acid-test ratio** A stringent measure of liquidity that indicates a company's ability to satisfy current liabilities with its most liquid assets, calculated as (cash + short-term marketable investments + receivables) divided by current liabilities.
- Acquisition method** A method of accounting for a business combination where the acquirer is required to measure each identifiable asset and liability at fair value. This method was the result of a joint project of the IASB and FASB aiming at convergence in standards for the accounting of business combinations.
- Action lag** Delay from policy decisions to implementation.
- Active investment** An approach to investing in which the investor seeks to outperform a given benchmark.
- Active return** The return on a portfolio minus the return on the portfolio's benchmark.
- Active strategy** In reference to short-term cash management, an investment strategy characterized by monitoring and attempting to capitalize on market conditions to optimize the risk and return relationship of short-term investments.
- Activity ratios** Ratios that measure how efficiently a company performs day-to-day tasks, such as the collection of receivables and management of inventory. Also called *asset utilization ratios* or *operating efficiency ratios*.
- Add-on rates** Bank certificates of deposit, repos, and indexes such as Libor and Euribor are quoted on an add-on rate basis (bond equivalent yield basis).
- Addition rule for probabilities** A principle stating that the probability that *A* or *B* occurs (both occur) equals the probability that *A* occurs, plus the probability that *B* occurs, minus the probability that both *A* and *B* occur.
- Agency bonds** See *quasi-government bond*.
- Agency RMBS** In the United States, securities backed by residential mortgage loans and guaranteed by a federal agency or guaranteed by either of the two GSEs (Fannie Mae and Freddie Mac).
- Aggregate demand** The quantity of goods and services that households, businesses, government, and foreign customers want to buy at any given level of prices.
- Aggregate demand curve** Inverse relationship between the price level and real output.
- Aggregate income** The value of all the payments earned by the suppliers of factors used in the production of goods and services.
- Aggregate output** The value of all the goods and services produced in a specified period of time.
- Aggregate supply** The quantity of goods and services producers are willing to supply at any given level of price.
- Aggregate supply curve** The level of domestic output that companies will produce at each price level.
- Aging schedule** A breakdown of accounts into categories of days outstanding.
- All-or-nothing (AON) orders** An order that includes the instruction to trade only if the trade fills the entire quantity (size) specified.
- Allocationally efficient** Said of a market, a financial system, or an economy that promotes the allocation of resources to their highest value uses.
- Alternative data** Non-traditional data types generated by the use of electronic devices, social media, satellite and sensor networks, and company exhaust.
- Alternative investment markets** Market for investments other than traditional securities investments (i.e., traditional common and preferred shares and traditional fixed income instruments). The term usually encompasses direct and indirect investment in real estate (including timberland and farmland) and commodities (including precious metals); hedge funds, private equity, and other investments requiring specialized due diligence.
- Alternative trading systems** Trading venues that function like exchanges but that do not exercise regulatory authority over their subscribers except with respect to the conduct of the subscribers' trading in their trading systems. Also called *electronic communications networks* or *multilateral trading facilities*.
- American depository receipt** A US dollar-denominated security that trades like a common share on US exchanges.

- American depository share** The underlying shares on which American depository receipts are based. They trade in the issuing company's domestic market.
- American-style** Said of an option contract that can be exercised at any time up to the option's expiration date.
- Amortisation** The process of allocating the cost of intangible long-term assets having a finite useful life to accounting periods; the allocation of the amount of a bond premium or discount to the periods remaining until bond maturity.
- Amortised cost** The historical cost (initially recognised cost) of an asset, adjusted for amortisation and impairment.
- Amortizing bond** Bond with a payment schedule that calls for periodic payments of interest and repayments of principal.
- Amortizing loan** Loan with a payment schedule that calls for periodic payments of interest and repayments of principal.
- Annual percentage rate** The cost of borrowing expressed as a yearly rate.
- Annuity** A finite set of level sequential cash flows.
- Annuity due** An annuity having a first cash flow that is paid immediately.
- Anticipation stock** Excess inventory that is held in anticipation of increased demand, often because of seasonal patterns of demand.
- Antidilutive** With reference to a transaction or a security, one that would increase earnings per share (EPS) or result in EPS higher than the company's basic EPS—antidilutive securities are not included in the calculation of diluted EPS.
- Arbitrage** 1) The simultaneous purchase of an undervalued asset or portfolio and sale of an overvalued but equivalent asset or portfolio, in order to obtain a riskless profit on the price differential. Taking advantage of a market inefficiency in a risk-free manner. 2) The condition in a financial market in which equivalent assets or combinations of assets sell for two different prices, creating an opportunity to profit at no risk with no commitment of money. In a well-functioning financial market, few arbitrage opportunities are possible. 3) A risk-free operation that earns an expected positive net profit but requires no net investment of money.
- Arbitrage-free pricing** The overall process of pricing derivatives by arbitrage and risk neutrality. Also called the *principle of no arbitrage*.
- Arbitrageurs** Traders who engage in arbitrage. See *arbitrage*.
- Arithmetic mean** The sum of the observations divided by the number of observations.
- Arms index** A flow of funds indicator applied to a broad stock market index to measure the relative extent to which money is moving into or out of rising and declining stocks.
- Artificial intelligence** Computer systems that exhibit cognitive and decision-making ability comparable (or superior) to that of humans.
- Asian call option** A European-style option with a value at maturity equal to the difference between the stock price at maturity and the average stock price during the life of the option, or \$0, whichever is greater.
- Ask** The price at which a dealer or trader is willing to sell an asset, typically qualified by a maximum quantity (ask size). See *offer*.
- Ask size** The maximum quantity of an asset that pertains to a specific ask price from a trader. For example, if the ask for a share issue is \$30 for a size of 1,000 shares, the trader is offering to sell at \$30 up to 1,000 shares.
- Asset allocation** The process of determining how investment funds should be distributed among asset classes.
- Asset-backed securities** A type of bond issued by a legal entity called a *special purpose entity* (SPE) on a collection of assets that the SPE owns. Also, securities backed by receivables and loans other than mortgages.
- Asset-based loan** A loan that is secured with company assets.
- Asset-based valuation models** Valuation based on estimates of the market value of a company's assets.
- Asset beta** The unlevered beta; reflects the business risk of the assets; the asset's systematic risk.
- Asset class** A group of assets that have similar characteristics, attributes, and risk/return relationships.
- Asset swap** Converts the periodic fixed coupon of a specific bond to a Libor plus or minus a spread.
- Asset utilization ratios** Ratios that measure how efficiently a company performs day-to-day tasks, such as the collection of receivables and management of inventory.
- Assets** Resources controlled by an enterprise as a result of past events and from which future economic benefits to the enterprise are expected to flow.
- Assignment of accounts receivable** The use of accounts receivable as collateral for a loan.
- At the money** An option in which the underlying's price equals the exercise price.
- Auction** A type of bond issuing mechanism often used for sovereign bonds that involves bidding.
- Autarkic price** The price of a good or service in an autarkic economy.
- Autarky** A state in which a country does not trade with other countries.
- Automated Clearing House (ACH)** An electronic payment network available to businesses, individuals, and financial institutions in the United States, US Territories, and Canada.
- Automatic stabilizer** A countercyclical factor that automatically comes into play as an economy slows and unemployment rises.
- Available-for-sale** Debt and equity securities not classified as either held-to-maturity or held-for-trading securities. The investor is willing to sell but not actively planning to sell. In general, available-for-sale securities are reported at fair value on the balance sheet.
- Average fixed cost** Total fixed cost divided by quantity produced.
- Average life** See *weighted average life*.
- Average product** Measures the productivity of inputs on average and is calculated by dividing total product by the total number of units for a given input that is used to generate that output.
- Average revenue** Total revenue divided by quantity sold.
- Average total cost** Total cost divided by quantity produced.
- Average variable cost** Total variable cost divided by quantity produced.
- Back simulation** Another term for the historical method of estimating VaR. This term is somewhat misleading in that the method involves not a *simulation* of the past but rather what *actually happened* in the past, sometimes adjusted to reflect the fact that a different portfolio may have existed in the past than is planned for the future.
- Back-testing** With reference to portfolio strategies, the application of a strategy's portfolio selection rules to historical data to assess what would have been the strategy's historical performance.

- Backup lines of credit** A type of credit enhancement provided by a bank to an issuer of commercial paper to ensure that the issuer will have access to sufficient liquidity to repay maturing commercial paper if issuing new paper is not a viable option.
- Balance of payments** A double-entry bookkeeping system that summarizes a country's economic transactions with the rest of the world for a particular period of time, typically a calendar quarter or year.
- Balance of trade deficit** When the domestic economy is spending more on foreign goods and services than foreign economies are spending on domestic goods and services.
- Balance sheet** The financial statement that presents an entity's current financial position by disclosing resources the entity controls (its assets) and the claims on those resources (its liabilities and equity claims), as of a particular point in time (the date of the balance sheet). Also called *statement of financial position* or *statement of financial condition*.
- Balance sheet ratios** Financial ratios involving balance sheet items only.
- Balanced** With respect to a government budget, one in which spending and revenues (taxes) are equal.
- Balloon payment** Large payment required at maturity to retire a bond's outstanding principal amount.
- Bank discount basis** A quoting convention that annualizes, on a 360-day year, the discount as a percentage of face value.
- Bar chart** A price chart with four bits of data for each time interval—the high, low, opening, and closing prices. A vertical line connects the high and low. A cross-hatch left indicates the opening price and a cross-hatch right indicates the close.
- Barter economy** An economy where economic agents as households, corporations, and governments “pay” for goods and services with another good or service.
- Base rates** The reference rate on which a bank bases lending rates to all other customers.
- Basic EPS** Net earnings available to common shareholders (i.e., net income minus preferred dividends) divided by the weighted average number of common shares outstanding.
- Basis point** Used in stating yield spreads, one basis point equals one-hundredth of a percentage point, or 0.01%.
- Basket of listed depository receipts** An exchange-traded fund (ETF) that represents a portfolio of depository receipts.
- Bearer bonds** Bonds for which ownership is not recorded; only the clearing system knows who the bond owner is.
- Behavioral finance** A field of finance that examines the psychological variables that affect and often distort the investment decision making of investors, analysts, and portfolio managers.
- Behind the market** Said of prices specified in orders that are worse than the best current price; e.g., for a limit buy order, a limit price below the best bid.
- Benchmark** A comparison portfolio; a point of reference or comparison.
- Benchmark issue** The latest sovereign bond issue for a given maturity. It serves as a benchmark against which to compare bonds that have the same features but that are issued by another type of issuer.
- Benchmark rate** Typically the yield-to-maturity on a government bond having the same, or close to the same, time-to-maturity.
- Benchmark spread** The yield spread over a specific benchmark, usually measured in basis points.
- Bermuda-style** Said of an option contract that can be exercised on specified dates up to the option's expiration date.
- Bernoulli random variable** A random variable having the outcomes 0 and 1.
- Bernoulli trial** An experiment that can produce one of two outcomes.
- Best bid** The highest bid in the market.
- Best effort offering** An offering of a security using an investment bank in which the investment bank, as agent for the issuer, promises to use its best efforts to sell the offering but does not guarantee that a specific amount will be sold.
- Best-in-class** An ESG implementation approach that seeks to identify the most favorable companies in an industry based on ESG considerations.
- Best offer** The lowest offer (ask price) in the market.
- Beta** A measure of the sensitivity of a given investment or portfolio to movements in the overall market.
- Bid** The price at which a dealer or trader is willing to buy an asset, typically qualified by a maximum quantity.
- Bid-ask spread** The difference between the prices at which dealers will buy from a customer (bid) and sell to a customer (offer or ask). It is often used as an indicator of liquidity.
- Bid-offer spread** The difference between the prices at which dealers will buy from a customer (bid) and sell to a customer (offer or ask). It is often used as an indicator of liquidity.
- Bid size** The maximum quantity of an asset that pertains to a specific bid price from a trader.
- Big Data** The vast amount of data being generated by industry, governments, individuals, and electronic devices that arises from both traditional and non-traditional data sources.
- Bilateral loan** A loan from a single lender to a single borrower.
- Binomial model** A model for pricing options in which the underlying price can move to only one of two possible new prices.
- Binomial random variable** The number of successes in n Bernoulli trials for which the probability of success is constant for all trials and the trials are independent.
- Binomial tree** The graphical representation of a model of asset price dynamics in which, at each period, the asset moves up with probability p or down with probability $(1 - p)$.
- Bitcoin** A cryptocurrency using blockchain technology that was created in 2009.
- Block brokers** A broker (agent) that provides brokerage services for large-size trades.
- Blockchain** A type of digital ledger in which information is recorded sequentially and then linked together and secured using cryptographic methods.
- Blue chip** Widely held large market capitalization companies that are considered financially sound and are leaders in their respective industry or local stock market.
- Bollinger Bands** A price-based technical analysis indicator consisting of a moving average plus a higher line representing the moving average plus a set number of standard deviations from average price (for the same number of periods as used to calculate the moving average) and a lower line that is a moving average minus the same number of standard deviations.
- Bond** Contractual agreement between the issuer and the bondholders.

- Bond equivalent yield** A calculation of yield that is annualized using the ratio of 365 to the number of days to maturity. Bond equivalent yield allows for the restatement and comparison of securities with different compounding periods.
- Bond indenture** The governing legal credit agreement, typically incorporated by reference in the prospectus. Also called *trust deed*.
- Bond market vigilantes** Bond market participants who might reduce their demand for long-term bonds, thus pushing up their yields.
- Bond yield plus risk premium approach** An estimate of the cost of common equity that is produced by summing the before-tax cost of debt and a risk premium that captures the additional yield on a company's stock relative to its bonds. The additional yield is often estimated using historical spreads between bond yields and stock yields.
- Bonus issue of shares** A type of dividend in which a company distributes additional shares of its common stock to shareholders instead of cash.
- Book building** Investment bankers' process of compiling a "book" or list of indications of interest to buy part of an offering.
- Book value** The net amount shown for an asset or liability on the balance sheet; book value may also refer to the company's excess of total assets over total liabilities. Also called *carrying value*.
- Boom** An expansionary phase characterized by economic growth "testing the limits" of the economy.
- Bottom-up analysis** With reference to investment selection processes, an approach that involves selection from all securities within a specified investment universe, i.e., without prior narrowing of the universe on the basis of macroeconomic or overall market considerations.
- Break point** In the context of the weighted average cost of capital (WACC), a break point is the amount of capital at which the cost of one or more of the sources of capital changes, leading to a change in the WACC.
- Breakeven point** The number of units produced and sold at which the company's net income is zero (Revenues = Total cost); in the case of perfect competition, the quantity at which price, average revenue, and marginal revenue equal average total cost.
- Bridge financing** Interim financing that provides funds until permanent financing can be arranged.
- Broad money** Encompasses narrow money plus the entire range of liquid assets that can be used to make purchases.
- Broker** 1) An agent who executes orders to buy or sell securities on behalf of a client in exchange for a commission. 2) See *futures commission merchants*.
- Broker-dealer** A financial intermediary (often a company) that may function as a principal (dealer) or as an agent (broker) depending on the type of trade.
- Brokered market** A market in which brokers arrange trades among their clients.
- Budget surplus/deficit** The difference between government revenue and expenditure for a stated fixed period of time.
- Business risk** The risk associated with operating earnings. Operating earnings are uncertain because total revenues and many of the expenditures contributed to produce those revenues are uncertain.
- Buy-side firm** An investment management company or other investor that uses the services of brokers or dealers (i.e., the client of the sell side firms).
- Buyback** A transaction in which a company buys back its own shares. Unlike stock dividends and stock splits, share repurchases use corporate cash.
- Buyout fund** A fund that buys all the shares of a public company so that, in effect, the company becomes private.
- Call** An option that gives the holder the right to buy an underlying asset from another party at a fixed price over a specific period of time.
- Call market** A market in which trades occur only at a particular time and place (i.e., when the market is called).
- Call money rate** The interest rate that buyers pay for their margin loan.
- Call option** An option that gives the holder the right to buy an underlying asset from another party at a fixed price over a specific period of time.
- Call protection** The time during which the issuer of the bond is not allowed to exercise the call option.
- Callable bond** A bond containing an embedded call option that gives the issuer the right to buy the bond back from the investor at specified prices on pre-determined dates.
- Callable common shares** Shares that give the issuing company the option (or right), but not the obligation, to buy back the shares from investors at a call price that is specified when the shares are originally issued.
- Candlestick chart** A price chart with four bits of data for each time interval. A candle indicates the opening and closing price for the interval. The body of the candle is shaded if the opening price was higher than the closing price, and the body is clear if the opening price was lower than the closing price. Vertical lines known as wicks or shadows extend from the top and bottom of the candle to indicate the high and the low prices for the interval.
- Cannibalization** Cannibalization occurs when an investment takes customers and sales away from another part of the company.
- Capacity** The ability of the borrower to make its debt payments on time.
- Capital account** A component of the balance of payments account that measures transfers of capital.
- Capital allocation line** (CAL) A graph line that describes the combinations of expected return and standard deviation of return available to an investor from combining the optimal portfolio of risky assets with the risk-free asset.
- Capital asset pricing model** (CAPM) An equation describing the expected return on any asset (or portfolio) as a linear function of its beta relative to the market portfolio.
- Capital budgeting** The allocation of funds to relatively long-range projects or investments.
- Capital consumption allowance** A measure of the wear and tear (depreciation) of the capital stock that occurs in the production of goods and services.
- Capital deepening investment** Increases the stock of capital relative to labor.
- Capital expenditure** Expenditure on physical capital (fixed assets).
- Capital-indexed bonds** Type of index-linked bond. The coupon rate is fixed but is applied to a principal amount that increases in line with increases in the index during the bond's life.
- Capital lease** See *finance lease*.
- Capital market expectations** An investor's expectations concerning the risk and return prospects of asset classes.

- Capital market line (CML)** The line with an intercept point equal to the risk-free rate that is tangent to the efficient frontier of risky assets; represents the efficient frontier when a risk-free asset is available for investment.
- Capital market securities** Securities with maturities at issuance longer than one year.
- Capital markets** Financial markets that trade securities of longer duration, such as bonds and equities.
- Capital rationing** A capital rationing environment assumes that the company has a fixed amount of funds to invest.
- Capital restrictions** Controls placed on foreigners' ability to own domestic assets and/or domestic residents' ability to own foreign assets.
- Capital stock** The accumulated amount of buildings, machinery, and equipment used to produce goods and services.
- Capital structure** The mix of debt and equity that a company uses to finance its business; a company's specific mixture of long-term financing.
- Captive finance subsidiary** A wholly-owned subsidiary of a company that is established to provide financing of the sales of the parent company.
- Carry** The net of the costs and benefits of holding, storing, or "carrying" an asset.
- Carrying amount** The amount at which an asset or liability is valued according to accounting principles.
- Carrying value** The net amount shown for an asset or liability on the balance sheet; book value may also refer to the company's excess of total assets over total liabilities. For a bond, the purchase price plus (or minus) the amortized amount of the discount (or premium).
- Cartel** Participants in collusive agreements that are made openly and formally.
- Cash collateral account** Form of external credit enhancement whereby the issuer immediately borrows the credit-enhancement amount and then invests that amount, usually in highly rated short-term commercial paper.
- Cash conversion cycle** A financial metric that measures the length of time required for a company to convert cash invested in its operations to cash received as a result of its operations; equal to days of inventory on hand + days of sales outstanding – number of days of payables. Also called *net operating cycle*.
- Cash flow additivity principle** The principle that dollar amounts indexed at the same point in time are additive.
- Cash flow from operating activities** The net amount of cash provided from operating activities.
- Cash flow from operations** The net amount of cash provided from operating activities.
- Cash flow yield** The internal rate of return on a series of cash flows.
- Cash market securities** Money market securities settled on a "same day" or "cash settlement" basis.
- Cash markets** See *spot markets*.
- Cash prices** See *spot prices*.
- Cash-settled forwards** See *non-deliverable forwards*.
- CBOE Volatility Index** A measure of near-term market volatility as conveyed by S&P 500 stock index option prices.
- CD equivalent yield** A yield on a basis comparable to the quoted yield on an interest-bearing money market instrument that pays interest on a 360-day basis; the annualized holding period yield, assuming a 360-day year.
- Central bank funds market** The market in which deposit-taking banks that have an excess reserve with their national central bank can loan money to banks that need funds for maturities ranging from overnight to one year. Called the Federal or Fed funds market in the United States.
- Central bank funds rates** Interest rates at which central bank funds are bought (borrowed) and sold (lent) for maturities ranging from overnight to one year. Called Federal or Fed funds rates in the United States.
- Central banks** The dominant bank in a country, usually with official or semi-official governmental status.
- Certificate of deposit** An instrument that represents a specified amount of funds on deposit with a bank for a specified maturity and interest rate. It is issued in small or large denominations, and can be negotiable or non-negotiable.
- Change in polarity principle** A tenet of technical analysis that once a support level is breached, it becomes a resistance level. The same holds true for resistance levels; once breached, they become support levels.
- Change of control put** A covenant giving bondholders the right to require the issuer to buy back their debt, often at par or at some small premium to par value, in the event that the borrower is acquired.
- Character** The quality of a debt issuer's management.
- Classified balance sheet** A balance sheet organized so as to group together the various assets and liabilities into subcategories (e.g., current and noncurrent).
- Clawback** A requirement that the general partner return any funds distributed as incentive fees until the limited partners have received back their initial investment and a percentage of the total profit.
- Clearing** The process by which the exchange verifies the execution of a transaction and records the participants' identities.
- Clearing instructions** Instructions that indicate how to arrange the final settlement ("clearing") of a trade.
- Clearinghouse** An entity associated with a futures market that acts as middleman between the contracting parties and guarantees to each party the performance of the other.
- Closed economy** An economy that does not trade with other countries; an *autarkic economy*.
- Closed-end fund** A mutual fund in which no new investment money is accepted. New investors invest by buying existing shares, and investors in the fund liquidate by selling their shares to other investors.
- Code of ethics** An established guide that communicates an organization's values and overall expectations regarding member behavior. A code of ethics serves as a general guide for how community members should act.
- Coefficient of variation (CV)** The ratio of a set of observations' standard deviation to the observations' mean value.
- Coincident economic indicators** Turning points that are usually close to those of the overall economy; they are believed to have value for identifying the economy's present state.
- Collateral manager** Buys and sells debt obligations for and from the CDO's portfolio of assets (i.e., the collateral) to generate sufficient cash flows to meet the obligations to the CDO bondholders.
- Collateral trust bonds** Bonds secured by securities such as common shares, other bonds, or other financial assets.
- Collateralized bond obligations** A structured asset-backed security that is collateralized by a pool of bonds.

- Collateralized debt obligation** Generic term used to describe a security backed by a diversified pool of one or more debt obligations.
- Collateralized loan obligations** A structured asset-backed security that is collateralized by a pool of loans.
- Collateralized mortgage obligation** A security created through the securitization of a pool of mortgage-related products (mortgage pass-through securities or pools of loans).
- Collaterals** Assets or financial guarantees underlying a debt obligation that are above and beyond the issuer's promise to pay.
- Combination** A listing in which the order of the listed items does not matter.
- Commercial paper** A short-term, negotiable, unsecured promissory note that represents a debt obligation of the issuer.
- Committed capital** The amount that the limited partners have agreed to provide to the private equity fund.
- Committed lines of credit** A bank commitment to extend credit up to a pre-specified amount; the commitment is considered a short-term liability and is usually in effect for 364 days (one day short of a full year).
- Commodity swap** A swap in which the underlying is a commodity such as oil, gold, or an agricultural product.
- Common market** Level of economic integration that incorporates all aspects of the customs union and extends it by allowing free movement of factors of production among members.
- Common shares** A type of security that represent an ownership interest in a company.
- Common-size analysis** The restatement of financial statement items using a common denominator or reference item that allows one to identify trends and major differences; an example is an income statement in which all items are expressed as a percent of revenue.
- Common stock** See *common shares*.
- Company analysis** Analysis of an individual company.
- Comparable company** A company that has similar business risk; usually in the same industry and preferably with a single line of business.
- Comparative advantage** A country's ability to produce a good or service at a lower relative cost, or opportunity cost, than its trading partner.
- Competitive strategy** A company's plans for responding to the threats and opportunities presented by the external environment.
- Complements** Goods that tend to be used together; technically, two goods whose cross-price elasticity of demand is negative.
- Complete markets** Informally, markets in which the variety of distinct securities traded is so broad that any desired payoff in a future state-of-the-world is achievable.
- Completed contract** A method of revenue recognition in which the company does not recognize any revenue until the contract is completed; used particularly in long-term construction contracts.
- Component cost of capital** The rate of return required by suppliers of capital for an individual source of a company's funding, such as debt or equity.
- Compounding** The process of accumulating interest on interest.
- Comprehensive income** The change in equity of a business enterprise during a period from nonowner sources; includes all changes in equity during a period except those resulting from investments by owners and distributions to owners; comprehensive income equals net income plus other comprehensive income.
- Conditional expected value** The expected value of a stated event given that another event has occurred.
- Conditional probability** The probability of an event given (conditioned on) another event.
- Conditional variances** The variance of one variable, given the outcome of another.
- Consistent** With reference to estimators, describes an estimator for which the probability of estimates close to the value of the population parameter increases as sample size increases.
- Constant-yield price trajectory** A graph that illustrates the change in the price of a fixed-income bond over time assuming no change in yield-to-maturity. The trajectory shows the "pull to par" effect on the price of a bond trading at a premium or a discount to par value.
- Constituent securities** With respect to an index, the individual securities within an index.
- Consumer surplus** The difference between the value that a consumer places on units purchased and the amount of money that was required to pay for them.
- Contingency provision** Clause in a legal document that allows for some action if a specific event or circumstance occurs.
- Contingent claims** Derivatives in which the payoffs occur if a specific event occurs; generally referred to as options.
- Contingent convertible bonds** Bonds that automatically convert into equity if a specific event or circumstance occurs, such as the issuer's equity capital falling below the minimum requirement set by the regulators. Also called *CoCos*.
- Continuation patterns** A type of pattern used in technical analysis to predict the resumption of a market trend that was in place prior to the formation of a pattern.
- Continuous random variable** A random variable for which the range of possible outcomes is the real line (all real numbers between $-\infty$ and $+\infty$ or some subset of the real line).
- Continuous time** Time thought of as advancing in extremely small increments.
- Continuous trading market** A market in which trades can be arranged and executed any time the market is open.
- Continuously compounded return** The natural logarithm of 1 plus the holding period return, or equivalently, the natural logarithm of the ending price over the beginning price.
- Contra account** An account that offsets another account.
- Contract rate** See *mortgage rate*.
- Contraction** The period of a business cycle after the peak and before the trough; often called a *recession* or, if exceptionally severe, called a *depression*.
- Contraction risk** The risk that when interest rates decline, the security will have a shorter maturity than was anticipated at the time of purchase because borrowers refinance at the new, lower interest rates.
- Contractionary** Tending to cause the real economy to contract.
- Contractionary fiscal policy** A fiscal policy that has the objective to make the real economy contract.
- Contracts for differences** See *non-deliverable forwards*.
- Contribution margin** The amount available for fixed costs and profit after paying variable costs; revenue minus variable costs.
- Controlling shareholders** A particular shareholder or block of shareholders holding a percentage of shares that gives them significant voting power.

- Convenience yield** A non-monetary advantage of holding an asset.
- Conventional bond** See *plain vanilla bond*.
- Conventional cash flow** A conventional cash flow pattern is one with an initial outflow followed by a series of inflows.
- Convergence** The tendency for differences in output per capita across countries to diminish over time; in technical analysis, a term that describes the case when an indicator moves in the same manner as the security being analyzed.
- Conversion price** For a convertible bond, the price per share at which the bond can be converted into shares.
- Conversion ratio** For a convertible bond, the number of common shares that each bond can be converted into.
- Conversion value** For a convertible bond, the current share price multiplied by the conversion ratio.
- Convertible bond** Bond that gives the bondholder the right to exchange the bond for a specified number of common shares in the issuing company.
- Convertible preference shares** A type of equity security that entitles shareholders to convert their shares into a specified number of common shares.
- Convexity adjustment** For a bond, one half of the annual or approximate convexity statistic multiplied by the change in the yield-to-maturity squared.
- Core inflation** The inflation rate calculated based on a price index of goods and services except food and energy.
- Corporate governance** The system of internal controls and procedures by which individual companies are managed.
- Correlation** A number between -1 and $+1$ that measures the comovement (linear association) between two random variables.
- Correlation coefficient** A number between -1 and $+1$ that measures the consistency or tendency for two investments to act in a similar way. It is used to determine the effect on portfolio risk when two assets are combined.
- Cost averaging** The periodic investment of a fixed amount of money.
- Cost of capital** The rate of return that suppliers of capital require as compensation for their contribution of capital.
- Cost of carry** See *carry*.
- Cost of debt** The cost of debt financing to a company, such as when it issues a bond or takes out a bank loan.
- Cost of preferred stock** The cost to a company of issuing preferred stock; the dividend yield that a company must commit to pay preferred stockholders.
- Cost-push** Type of inflation in which rising costs, usually wages, compel businesses to raise prices generally.
- Cost recovery method** A method of revenue recognition in which the seller does not report any profit until the cash amounts paid by the buyer—including principal and interest on any financing from the seller—are greater than all the seller's costs for the merchandise sold.
- Cost structure** The mix of a company's variable costs and fixed costs.
- Counterparty risk** The risk that the other party to a contract will fail to honor the terms of the contract.
- Coupon rate** The interest rate promised in a contract; this is the rate used to calculate the periodic interest payments.
- Cournot assumption** Assumption in which each firm determines its profit-maximizing production level assuming that the other firms' output will not change.
- Covariance** A measure of the co-movement (linear association) between two random variables.
- Covariance matrix** A matrix or square array whose entries are covariances; also known as a variance–covariance matrix.
- Covenants** The terms and conditions of lending agreements that the issuer must comply with; they specify the actions that an issuer is obligated to perform (affirmative covenant) or prohibited from performing (negative covenant).
- Covered bond** Debt obligation secured by a segregated pool of assets called the cover pool. The issuer must maintain the value of the cover pool. In the event of default, bondholders have recourse against both the issuer and the cover pool.
- Credit analysis** The evaluation of credit risk; the evaluation of the creditworthiness of a borrower or counterparty.
- Credit curve** A curve showing the relationship between time to maturity and yield spread for an issuer with comparable bonds of various maturities outstanding, usually upward sloping.
- Credit default swap (CDS)** A type of credit derivative in which one party, the credit protection buyer who is seeking credit protection against a third party, makes a series of regularly scheduled payments to the other party, the credit protection seller. The seller makes no payments until a credit event occurs.
- Credit derivatives** A contract in which one party has the right to claim a payment from another party in the event that a specific credit event occurs over the life of the contract.
- Credit enhancements** Provisions that may be used to reduce the credit risk of a bond issue.
- Credit-linked coupon bond** Bond for which the coupon changes when the bond's credit rating changes.
- Credit-linked note (CLN)** Fixed-income security in which the holder of the security has the right to withhold payment of the full amount due at maturity if a credit event occurs.
- Credit migration risk** The risk that a bond issuer's creditworthiness deteriorates, or migrates lower, leading investors to believe the risk of default is higher. Also called *downgrade risk*.
- Credit risk** The risk of loss caused by a counterparty's or debtor's failure to make a promised payment. Also called *default risk*.
- Credit scoring model** A statistical model used to classify borrowers according to creditworthiness.
- Credit spread option** An option on the yield spread on a bond.
- Credit tranching** A structure used to redistribute the credit risk associated with the collateral; a set of bond classes created to allow investors a choice in the amount of credit risk that they prefer to bear.
- Credit-worthiness** The perceived ability of the borrower to pay what is owed on the borrowing in a timely manner; it represents the ability of a company to withstand adverse impacts on its cash flows.
- Cross-default provisions** Provisions whereby events of default such as non-payment of interest on one bond trigger default on all outstanding debt; implies the same default probability for all issues.
- Cross-price elasticity of demand** The percentage change in quantity demanded for a given percentage change in the price of another good; the responsiveness of the demand for Product A that is associated with the change in price of Product B.
- Cross-sectional analysis** Analysis that involves comparisons across individuals in a group over a given time period or at a given point in time.
- Cross-sectional data** Observations over individual units at a point in time, as opposed to time-series data.

- Crossing networks** Trading systems that match buyers and sellers who are willing to trade at prices obtained from other markets.
- Crowding out** The thesis that government borrowing may divert private sector investment from taking place.
- Cryptocurrency** An electronic medium of exchange that lacks physical form.
- Cryptography** An algorithmic process to encrypt data, making the data unusable if received by unauthorized parties.
- Cumulative distribution function** A function giving the probability that a random variable is less than or equal to a specified value.
- Cumulative preference shares** Preference shares for which any dividends that are not paid accrue and must be paid in full before dividends on common shares can be paid.
- Cumulative relative frequency** For data grouped into intervals, the fraction of total observations that are less than the value of the upper limit of a stated interval.
- Cumulative voting** A voting process whereby each shareholder can accumulate and vote all his or her shares for a single candidate in an election, as opposed to having to allocate their voting rights evenly among all candidates.
- Currencies** Monies issued by national monetary authorities.
- Currency option bonds** Bonds that give the bondholder the right to choose the currency in which he or she wants to receive interest payments and principal repayments.
- Currency swap** A swap in which each party makes interest payments to the other in different currencies.
- Current account** A component of the balance of payments account that measures the flow of goods and services.
- Current assets** Assets that are expected to be consumed or converted into cash in the near future, typically one year or less. *Also called liquid assets.*
- Current cost** With reference to assets, the amount of cash or cash equivalents that would have to be paid to buy the same or an equivalent asset today; with reference to liabilities, the undiscounted amount of cash or cash equivalents that would be required to settle the obligation today.
- Current government spending** With respect to government expenditures, spending on goods and services that are provided on a regular, recurring basis including health, education, and defense.
- Current liabilities** Short-term obligations, such as accounts payable, wages payable, or accrued liabilities, that are expected to be settled in the near future, typically one year or less.
- Current ratio** A liquidity ratio calculated as current assets divided by current liabilities.
- Current yield** The sum of the coupon payments received over the year divided by the flat price; also called the *income or interest yield or running yield.*
- Curve duration** The sensitivity of the bond price (or the market value of a financial asset or liability) with respect to a benchmark yield curve.
- Customs union** Extends the free trade area (FTA) by not only allowing free movement of goods and services among members, but also creating a common trade policy against nonmembers.
- CVaR** Conditional VaR, a tail loss measure. The weighted average of all loss outcomes in the statistical distribution that exceed the VaR loss.
- Cyclical** See *cyclical companies.*
- Cyclical companies** Companies with sales and profits that regularly expand and contract with the business cycle or state of economy.
- Daily settlement** See *mark to market* and *marking to market.*
- Dark pools** Alternative trading systems that do not display the orders that their clients send to them.
- Data mining** The practice of determining a model by extensive searching through a dataset for statistically significant patterns. Also called *data snooping.*
- Data science** An interdisciplinary field that brings computer science, statistics, and other disciplines together to analyze and produce insights from Big Data.
- Data snooping** See *data mining.*
- Day order** An order that is good for the day on which it is submitted. If it has not been filled by the close of business, the order expires unfilled.
- Day's sales outstanding** Estimate of the average number of days it takes to collect on credit accounts.
- Days in receivables** Estimate of the average number of days it takes to collect on credit accounts.
- Days of inventory on hand** An activity ratio equal to the number of days in the period divided by inventory turnover over the period.
- Dead cross** A technical analysis term that describes a situation where a short-term moving average crosses from above a longer-term moving average to below it; this movement is considered bearish.
- Dealers** A financial intermediary that acts as a principal in trades.
- Dealing securities** Securities held by banks or other financial intermediaries for trading purposes.
- Debentures** Type of bond that can be secured or unsecured.
- Debt incurrence test** A financial covenant made in conjunction with existing debt that restricts a company's ability to incur additional debt at the same seniority based on one or more financial tests or conditions.
- Debt-rating approach** A method for estimating a company's before-tax cost of debt based upon the yield on comparably rated bonds for maturities that closely match that of the company's existing debt.
- Debt-to-assets ratio** A solvency ratio calculated as total debt divided by total assets.
- Debt-to-capital ratio** A solvency ratio calculated as total debt divided by total debt plus total shareholders' equity.
- Debt-to-equity ratio** A solvency ratio calculated as total debt divided by total shareholders' equity.
- Declaration date** The day that the corporation issues a statement declaring a specific dividend.
- Decreasing returns to scale** When a production process leads to increases in output that are proportionately smaller than the increase in inputs.
- Deductible temporary differences** Temporary differences that result in a reduction of or deduction from taxable income in a future period when the balance sheet item is recovered or settled.
- Deep learning** Machine learning using neural networks with many hidden layers.
- Deep learning nets** Machine learning using neural networks with many hidden layers.
- Default probability** The probability that a borrower defaults or fails to meet its obligation to make full and timely payments of principal and interest, according to the terms of the debt security. Also called *default risk.*

- Default risk** The probability that a borrower defaults or fails to meet its obligation to make full and timely payments of principal and interest, according to the terms of the debt security. Also called *default probability*.
- Default risk premium** An extra return that compensates investors for the possibility that the borrower will fail to make a promised payment at the contracted time and in the contracted amount.
- Defensive companies** Companies with sales and profits that have little sensitivity to the business cycle or state of the economy.
- Defensive interval ratio** A liquidity ratio that estimates the number of days that an entity could meet cash needs from liquid assets; calculated as (cash + short-term marketable investments + receivables) divided by daily cash expenditures.
- Deferred coupon bond** Bond that pays no coupons for its first few years but then pays a higher coupon than it otherwise normally would for the remainder of its life. Also called *split coupon bond*.
- Deferred income** A liability account for money that has been collected for goods or services that have not yet been delivered; payment received in advance of providing a good or service.
- Deferred revenue** A liability account for money that has been collected for goods or services that have not yet been delivered; payment received in advance of providing a good or service.
- Deferred tax assets** A balance sheet asset that arises when an excess amount is paid for income taxes relative to accounting profit. The taxable income is higher than accounting profit and income tax payable exceeds tax expense. The company expects to recover the difference during the course of future operations when tax expense exceeds income tax payable.
- Deferred tax liabilities** A balance sheet liability that arises when a deficit amount is paid for income taxes relative to accounting profit. The taxable income is less than the accounting profit and income tax payable is less than tax expense. The company expects to eliminate the liability over the course of future operations when income tax payable exceeds tax expense.
- Defined benefit pension plans** Plans in which the company promises to pay a certain annual amount (defined benefit) to the employee after retirement. The company bears the investment risk of the plan assets.
- Defined contribution pension plans** Individual accounts to which an employee and typically the employer makes contributions, generally on a tax-advantaged basis. The amounts of contributions are defined at the outset, but the future value of the benefit is unknown. The employee bears the investment risk of the plan assets.
- Deflation** Negative inflation.
- Degree of confidence** The probability that a confidence interval includes the unknown population parameter.
- Degree of financial leverage** (DFL) The ratio of the percentage change in net income to the percentage change in operating income; the sensitivity of the cash flows available to owners when operating income changes.
- Degree of operating leverage** (DOL) The ratio of the percentage change in operating income to the percentage change in units sold; the sensitivity of operating income to changes in units sold.
- Degree of total leverage** The ratio of the percentage change in net income to the percentage change in units sold; the sensitivity of the cash flows to owners to changes in the number of units produced and sold.
- Degrees of freedom (df)** The number of independent observations used.
- Delta** The sensitivity of the derivative price to a small change in the value of the underlying asset.
- Demand curve** Graph of the inverse demand function. A graph showing the demand relation, either the highest quantity willingly purchased at each price or the highest price willingly paid for each quantity.
- Demand function** A relationship that expresses the quantity demanded of a good or service as a function of own-price and possibly other variables.
- Demand-pull** Type of inflation in which increasing demand raises prices generally, which then are reflected in a business's costs as workers demand wage hikes to catch up with the rising cost of living.
- Demand shock** A typically unexpected disturbance to demand, such as an unexpected interruption in trade or transportation.
- Dependent** With reference to events, the property that the probability of one event occurring depends on (is related to) the occurrence of another event.
- Depository bank** A bank that raises funds from depositors and other investors and lends it to borrowers.
- Depository institutions** Commercial banks, savings and loan banks, credit unions, and similar institutions that raise funds from depositors and other investors and lend it to borrowers.
- Depository receipt** A security that trades like an ordinary share on a local exchange and represents an economic interest in a foreign company.
- Depreciation** The process of systematically allocating the cost of long-lived (tangible) assets to the periods during which the assets are expected to provide economic benefits.
- Depression** See *contraction*.
- Derivative pricing rule** A pricing rule used by crossing networks in which a price is taken (derived) from the price that is current in the asset's primary market.
- Derivatives** A financial instrument whose value depends on the value of some underlying asset or factor (e.g., a stock price, an interest rate, or exchange rate).
- Descriptive statistics** The study of how data can be summarized effectively.
- Development capital** Minority equity investments in more-mature companies that are seeking capital to expand or restructure operations, enter new markets, or finance major acquisitions.
- Diffuse prior** The assumption of equal prior probabilities.
- Diffusion index** Reflects the proportion of the index's components that are moving in a pattern consistent with the overall index.
- Diluted EPS** The EPS that would result if all dilutive securities were converted into common shares.
- Diluted shares** The number of shares that would be outstanding if all potentially dilutive claims on common shares (e.g., convertible debt, convertible preferred stock, and employee stock options) were exercised.
- Diminishing balance method** An accelerated depreciation method, i.e., one that allocates a relatively large proportion of the cost of an asset to the early years of the asset's useful life.

- Diminishing marginal productivity** Describes a state in which each additional unit of input produces less output than previously.
- Direct debit program** An arrangement whereby a customer authorizes a debit to a demand account; typically used by companies to collect routine payments for services.
- Direct financing leases** A type of finance lease, from a lessor perspective, where the present value of the lease payments (lease receivable) equals the carrying value of the leased asset. The revenues earned by the lessor are financing in nature.
- Direct format** With reference to the cash flow statement, a format for the presentation of the statement in which cash flow from operating activities is shown as operating cash receipts less operating cash disbursements. Also called *direct method*.
- Direct method** See *direct format*.
- Direct taxes** Taxes levied directly on income, wealth, and corporate profits.
- Direct write-off method** An approach to recognizing credit losses on customer receivables in which the company waits until such time as a customer has defaulted and only then recognizes the loss.
- Disbursement float** The amount of time between check issuance and a check's clearing back against the company's account.
- Discount** To reduce the value of a future payment in allowance for how far away it is in time; to calculate the present value of some future amount. Also, the amount by which an instrument is priced below its face (par) value.
- Discount interest** A procedure for determining the interest on a loan or bond in which the interest is deducted from the face value in advance.
- Discount margin** See *required margin*.
- Discount rates** In general, the interest rate used to calculate a present value. In the money market, however, discount rate is a specific type of quoted rate.
- Discounted cash flow models** Valuation models that estimate the intrinsic value of a security as the present value of the future benefits expected to be received from the security.
- Discouraged worker** A person who has stopped looking for a job or has given up seeking employment.
- Discrete random variable** A random variable that can take on at most a countable number of possible values.
- Discriminatory pricing rule** A pricing rule used in continuous markets in which the limit price of the order or quote that first arrived determines the trade price.
- Diseconomies of scale** Increase in cost per unit resulting from increased production.
- Dispersion** The variability around the central tendency.
- Display size** The size of an order displayed to public view.
- Distressed investing** Investing in securities of companies in financial difficulties. Private equity funds that specialize in distressed investing typically buy the debt of mature companies in financial difficulties.
- Distributed ledger** A type of database that may be shared among entities in a network.
- Distributed ledger technology** Technology based on a distributed ledger.
- Divergence** In technical analysis, a term that describes the case when an indicator moves differently from the security being analyzed.
- Diversification ratio** The ratio of the standard deviation of an equally weighted portfolio to the standard deviation of a randomly selected security.
- Dividend** A distribution paid to shareholders based on the number of shares owned.
- Dividend discount model** (DDM) A present value model that estimates the intrinsic value of an equity share based on the present value of its expected future dividends.
- Dividend discount model based approach** An approach for estimating a country's equity risk premium. The market rate of return is estimated as the sum of the dividend yield and the growth rate in dividends for a market index. Subtracting the risk-free rate of return from the estimated market return produces an estimate for the equity risk premium.
- Dividend payout ratio** The ratio of cash dividends paid to earnings for a period.
- Divisor** A number (denominator) used to determine the value of a price return index. It is initially chosen at the inception of an index and subsequently adjusted by the index provider, as necessary, to avoid changes in the index value that are unrelated to changes in the prices of its constituent securities.
- Domestic content provisions** Stipulate that some percentage of the value added or components used in production should be of domestic origin.
- Double bottoms** In technical analysis, a reversal pattern that is formed when the price reaches a low, rebounds, and then sells off back to the first low level; used to predict a change from a downtrend to an uptrend.
- Double coincidence of wants** A prerequisite to barter trades, in particular that both economic agents in the transaction want what the other is selling.
- Double declining balance depreciation** An accelerated depreciation method that involves depreciating the asset at double the straight-line rate. This rate is multiplied by the book value of the asset at the beginning of the period (a declining balance) to calculate depreciation expense.
- Double top** In technical analysis, a reversal pattern that is formed when an uptrend reverses twice at roughly the same high price level; used to predict a change from an uptrend to a downtrend.
- Down transition probability** The probability that an asset's value moves down in a model of asset price dynamics.
- Downgrade risk** The risk that a bond issuer's creditworthiness deteriorates, or migrates lower, leading investors to believe the risk of default is higher. Also called *credit migration risk*.
- Drag on liquidity** When receipts lag, creating pressure from the decreased available funds.
- Drawdown** A percentage peak-to-trough reduction in net asset value.
- Dual-currency bonds** Bonds that make coupon payments in one currency and pay the par value at maturity in another currency.
- DuPont analysis** An approach to decomposing return on investment, e.g., return on equity, as the product of other financial ratios.
- Duration** A measure of the approximate sensitivity of a security to a change in interest rates (i.e., a measure of interest rate risk).
- Duration gap** A bond's Macaulay duration minus the investment horizon.
- Dutch Book theorem** A result in probability theory stating that inconsistent probabilities create profit opportunities.
- Early repayment option** See *prepayment option*.

- Earnings per share** The amount of income earned during a period per share of common stock.
- Earnings surprise** The portion of a company's earnings that is unanticipated by investors and, according to the efficient market hypothesis, merits a price adjustment.
- Economic costs** All the remuneration needed to keep a productive resource in its current employment or to acquire the resource for productive use; the sum of total accounting costs and implicit opportunity costs.
- Economic indicator** A variable that provides information on the state of the overall economy.
- Economic loss** The amount by which accounting profit is less than normal profit.
- Economic order quantity–reorder point (EOQ–ROP)** An approach to managing inventory based on expected demand and the predictability of demand; the ordering point for new inventory is determined based on the costs of ordering and carrying inventory, such that the total cost associated with inventory is minimized.
- Economic profit** Equal to accounting profit less the implicit opportunity costs not included in total accounting costs; the difference between total revenue (TR) and total cost (TC). Also called *abnormal profit* or *supernormal profit*.
- Economic stabilization** Reduction of the magnitude of economic fluctuations.
- Economic union** Incorporates all aspects of a common market and in addition requires common economic institutions and coordination of economic policies among members.
- Economies of scale** Reduction in cost per unit resulting from increased production.
- Effective annual rate** The amount by which a unit of currency will grow in a year with interest on interest included.
- Effective annual yield (EAY)** An annualized return that accounts for the effect of interest on interest; EAY is computed by compounding 1 plus the holding period yield forward to one year, then subtracting 1.
- Effective convexity** A *curve convexity* statistic that measures the secondary effect of a change in a benchmark yield curve on a bond's price.
- Effective duration** The sensitivity of a bond's price to a change in a benchmark yield curve.
- Effective interest rate** The borrowing rate or market rate that a company incurs at the time of issuance of a bond.
- Efficient market** A market in which asset prices reflect new information quickly and rationally.
- Elastic** Said of a good or service when the magnitude of elasticity is greater than one.
- Elasticity** The percentage change in one variable for a percentage change in another variable; a general measure of how sensitive one variable is to a change in the value of another variable.
- Elasticity of demand** A measure of the sensitivity of quantity demanded to a change in a product's own price: $\% \Delta Q^D / \% \Delta P$.
- Elasticity of supply** A measure of the sensitivity of quantity supplied to a change in price: $\% \Delta Q^S / \% \Delta P$.
- Electronic communications networks** See *alternative trading systems*.
- Electronic funds transfer (EFT)** The use of computer networks to conduct financial transactions electronically.
- Elliott wave theory** A technical analysis theory that claims that the market follows regular, repeated waves or cycles.
- Embedded option** Contingency provisions that provide the issuer or the bondholders the right, but not the obligation, to take action. These options are not part of the security and cannot be traded separately.
- Empirical probability** The probability of an event estimated as a relative frequency of occurrence.
- Employed** The number of people with a job.
- Enterprise risk management** An overall assessment of a company's risk position. A centralized approach to risk management sometimes called firmwide risk management.
- Enterprise value** A measure of a company's total market value from which the value of cash and short-term investments have been subtracted.
- Equal weighting** An index weighting method in which an equal weight is assigned to each constituent security at inception.
- Equipment trust certificates** Bonds secured by specific types of equipment or physical assets.
- Equity** Assets less liabilities; the residual interest in the assets after subtracting the liabilities.
- Equity risk premium** The expected return on equities minus the risk-free rate; the premium that investors demand for investing in equities.
- Equity swap** A swap transaction in which at least one cash flow is tied to the return to an equity portfolio position, often an equity index.
- ESG** An acronym that encompasses environmental, social and governance.
- ESG incorporation** The integration of qualitative and quantitative environmental, social, and governance factors into traditional security and industry analysis; also known as *ESG integration*.
- ESG integration** The integration of qualitative and quantitative environmental, social, and governance factors into traditional security and industry analysis; also known as *ESG incorporation*.
- ESG investing** The consideration of environmental, social, and governance factors in the investment process.
- Estimate** The particular value calculated from sample observations using an estimator.
- Estimation** With reference to statistical inference, the subdivision dealing with estimating the value of a population parameter.
- Estimator** An estimation formula; the formula used to compute the sample mean and other sample statistics are examples of estimators.
- Ethical principles** Beliefs regarding what is good, acceptable, or obligatory behavior and what is bad, unacceptable, or forbidden behavior.
- Ethics** The study of moral principles or of making good choices. Ethics encompasses a set of moral principles and rules of conduct that provide guidance for our behavior.
- Eurobonds** Type of bond issued internationally, outside the jurisdiction of the country in whose currency the bond is denominated.
- European option** An option that can only be exercised on its expiration date.
- European-style** Said of an option contract that can only be exercised on the option's expiration date.
- Event** Any outcome or specified set of outcomes of a random variable.
- Ex-dividend date** The first date that a share trades without (i.e., "ex") the dividend.

- Excess kurtosis** Degree of kurtosis (fatness of tails) in excess of the kurtosis of the normal distribution.
- Exchanges** Places where traders can meet to arrange their trades.
- Exclusionary screening** An ESG implementation approach that excludes certain sectors or companies that deviate from an investor's accepted standards. Also called *negative screening* or *norms-based screening*.
- Execution instructions** Instructions that indicate how to fill an order.
- Exercise** The process of using an option to buy or sell the underlying.
- Exercise price** The fixed price at which an option holder can buy or sell the underlying. Also called *strike price*, *striking price*, or *strike*.
- Exercise value** The value obtained if an option is exercised based on current conditions. Also known as *intrinsic value*.
- Exhaustive** Covering or containing all possible outcomes.
- Expansion** The period of a business cycle after its lowest point and before its highest point.
- Expansionary** Tending to cause the real economy to grow.
- Expansionary fiscal policy** Fiscal policy aimed at achieving real economic growth.
- Expected inflation** The level of inflation that economic agents expect in the future.
- Expected loss** Default probability times Loss severity given default.
- Expected value** The probability-weighted average of the possible outcomes of a random variable.
- Expenses** Outflows of economic resources or increases in liabilities that result in decreases in equity (other than decreases because of distributions to owners); reductions in net assets associated with the creation of revenues.
- Experience curve** A curve that shows the direct cost per unit of good or service produced or delivered as a typically declining function of cumulative output.
- Export subsidy** Paid by the government to the firm when it exports a unit of a good that is being subsidized.
- Exports** Goods and services that an economy sells to other countries.
- Extension risk** The risk that when interest rates rise, fewer prepayments will occur because homeowners are reluctant to give up the benefits of a contractual interest rate that now looks low. As a result, the security becomes longer in maturity than anticipated at the time of purchase.
- Externality** An effect of a market transaction that is borne by parties other than those who transacted.
- Extra dividend** A dividend paid by a company that does not pay dividends on a regular schedule, or a dividend that supplements regular cash dividends with an extra payment.
- Extreme value theory** A branch of statistics that focuses primarily on extreme outcomes.
- Face value** The amount of cash payable by a company to the bondholders when the bonds mature; the promised payment at maturity separate from any coupon payment.
- Factor** A common or underlying element with which several variables are correlated.
- Fair value** The amount at which an asset could be exchanged, or a liability settled, between knowledgeable, willing parties in an arm's-length transaction; the price that would be received to sell an asset or paid to transfer a liability in an orderly transaction between market participants.
- Fed funds rate** The US interbank lending rate on overnight borrowings of reserves.
- Federal funds rate** The US interbank lending rate on overnight borrowings of reserves.
- Fiat money** Money that is not convertible into any other commodity.
- Fibonacci sequence** A sequence of numbers starting with 0 and 1, and then each subsequent number in the sequence is the sum of the two preceding numbers. In Elliott Wave Theory, it is believed that market waves follow patterns that are the ratios of the numbers in the Fibonacci sequence.
- Fiduciary call** A combination of a European call and a risk-free bond that matures on the option expiration day and has a face value equal to the exercise price of the call.
- FIFO method** The first in, first out, method of accounting for inventory, which matches sales against the costs of items of inventory in the order in which they were placed in inventory.
- Fill or kill** See *immediate or cancel order*.
- Finance lease** Essentially, the purchase of some asset by the buyer (lessee) that is directly financed by the seller (lessor). Also called *capital lease*.
- Financial account** A component of the balance of payments account that records investment flows.
- Financial flexibility** The ability to react and adapt to financial adversities and opportunities.
- Financial leverage** The extent to which a company can effect, through the use of debt, a proportional change in the return on common equity that is greater than a given proportional change in operating income; also, short for the financial leverage ratio.
- Financial leverage ratio** A measure of financial leverage calculated as average total assets divided by average total equity.
- Financial risk** The risk that environmental, social, or governance risk factors will result in significant costs or other losses to a company and its shareholders; the risk arising from a company's obligation to meet required payments under its financing agreements.
- Financing activities** Activities related to obtaining or repaying capital to be used in the business (e.g., equity and long-term debt).
- Fintech** Technological innovation in the design and delivery of financial services and products in the financial industry.
- Firm commitment offering** See *underwritten offering*.
- First-degree price discrimination** Where a monopolist is able to charge each customer the highest price the customer is willing to pay.
- First lien debt** Debt secured by a pledge of certain assets that could include buildings, but may also include property and equipment, licenses, patents, brands, etc.
- First mortgage debt** Debt secured by a pledge of a specific property.
- Fiscal multiplier** The ratio of a change in national income to a change in government spending.
- Fiscal policy** The use of taxes and government spending to affect the level of aggregate expenditures.
- Fisher effect** The thesis that the real rate of interest in an economy is stable over time so that changes in nominal interest rates are the result of changes in expected inflation.
- Fisher index** The geometric mean of the Laspeyres index.
- Fixed charge coverage** A solvency ratio measuring the number of times interest and lease payments are covered by operating income, calculated as (EBIT + lease payments) divided by (interest payments + lease payments).
- Fixed costs** Costs that remain at the same level regardless of a company's level of production and sales.

- Fixed-for-floating interest rate swap** An interest rate swap in which one party pays a fixed rate and the other pays a floating rate, with both sets of payments in the same currency. Also called *plain vanilla swap* or *vanilla swap*.
- Fixed rate perpetual preferred stock** Nonconvertible, non-callable preferred stock that has a fixed dividend rate and no maturity date.
- Flags** A technical analysis continuation pattern formed by parallel trendlines, typically over a short period.
- Flat price** The full price of a bond minus the accrued interest; also called the *quoted* or *clean* price.
- Float** In the context of customer receipts, the amount of money that is in transit between payments made by customers and the funds that are usable by the company.
- Float-adjusted market-capitalization weighting** An index weighting method in which the weight assigned to each constituent security is determined by adjusting its market capitalization for its market float.
- Float factor** An estimate of the average number of days it takes deposited checks to clear; average daily float divided by average daily deposit.
- Floater** See *floating-rate notes*.
- Floating-rate notes** A note on which interest payments are not fixed, but instead vary from period to period depending on the current level of a reference interest rate.
- Flotation cost** Fees charged to companies by investment bankers and other costs associated with raising new capital.
- Foreclosure** Allows the lender to take possession of a mortgaged property if the borrower defaults and then sell it to recover funds.
- Foreign currency reserves** Holding by the central bank of non-domestic currency deposits and non-domestic bonds.
- Foreign direct investment** Direct investment by a firm in one country (the source country) in productive assets in a foreign country (the host country).
- Foreign exchange gains (or losses)** Gains (or losses) that occur when the exchange rate changes between the investor's currency and the currency that foreign securities are denominated in.
- Foreign portfolio investment** Shorter-term investment by individuals, firms, and institutional investors (e.g., pension funds) in foreign financial instruments such as foreign stocks and foreign government bonds.
- Forward commitments** Class of derivatives that provides the ability to lock in a price to transact in the future at a previously agreed-upon price.
- Forward contract** An agreement between two parties in which one party, the buyer, agrees to buy from the other party, the seller, an underlying asset at a later date for a price established at the start of the contract.
- Forward curve** A series of forward rates, each having the same timeframe.
- Forward market** For future delivery, beyond the usual settlement time period in the cash market.
- Forward price** The fixed price or rate at which the transaction scheduled to occur at the expiration of a forward contract will take place. This price is agreed on at the initiation date of the contract.
- Forward rate** The interest rate on a bond or money market instrument traded in a forward market. A forward rate can be interpreted as an incremental, or marginal, return for extending the time-to-maturity for an additional time period.
- Forward rate agreements** A forward contract calling for one party to make a fixed interest payment and the other to make an interest payment at a rate to be determined at the contract expiration.
- Fractile** A value at or below which a stated fraction of the data lies.
- Fractional reserve banking** Banking in which reserves constitute a fraction of deposits.
- Free cash flow** The actual cash that would be available to the company's investors after making all investments necessary to maintain the company as an ongoing enterprise (also referred to as free cash flow to the firm); the internally generated funds that can be distributed to the company's investors (e.g., shareholders and bondholders) without impairing the value of the company.
- Free cash flow to equity (FCFE)** The cash flow available to a company's common shareholders after all operating expenses, interest, and principal payments have been made, and necessary investments in working and fixed capital have been made.
- Free-cash-flow-to-equity models** Valuation models based on discounting expected future free cash flow to equity.
- Free cash flow to the firm (FCFF)** The cash flow available to the company's suppliers of capital after all operating expenses have been paid and necessary investments in working capital and fixed capital have been made.
- Free float** The number of shares that are readily and freely tradable in the secondary market.
- Free trade** When there are no government restrictions on a country's ability to trade.
- Free trade areas** One of the most prevalent forms of regional integration, in which all barriers to the flow of goods and services among members have been eliminated.
- Frequency distribution** A tabular display of data summarized into a relatively small number of intervals.
- Frequency polygon** A graph of a frequency distribution obtained by drawing straight lines joining successive points representing the class frequencies.
- Full price** The price of a security with accrued interest; also called the *invoice* or *dirty* price.
- Fundamental analysis** The examination of publicly available information and the formulation of forecasts to estimate the intrinsic value of assets.
- Fundamental value** The underlying or true value of an asset based on an analysis of its qualitative and quantitative characteristics. Also called *intrinsic value*.
- Fundamental weighting** An index weighting method in which the weight assigned to each constituent security is based on its underlying company's size. It attempts to address the disadvantages of market-capitalization weighting by using measures that are independent of the constituent security's price.
- Funds of funds** Funds that hold a portfolio of hedge funds.
- Funds of hedge funds** Funds that hold a portfolio of hedge funds.
- Future value (FV)** The amount to which a payment or series of payments will grow by a stated future date.
- Futures contract** A variation of a forward contract that has essentially the same basic definition but with some additional features, such as a clearinghouse guarantee against credit losses, a daily settlement of gains and losses, and an organized electronic or floor trading facility.
- Futures price** The agreed-upon price of a futures contract.

- FX swap** The combination of a spot and a forward FX transaction.
- G-spread** The yield spread in basis points over an actual or interpolated government bond.
- Gains** Asset inflows not directly related to the ordinary activities of the business.
- Game theory** The set of tools decision makers use to incorporate responses by rival decision makers into their strategies.
- Gamma** A numerical measure of how sensitive an option's delta (the sensitivity of the derivative's price) is to a change in the value of the underlying.
- GDP deflator** A gauge of prices and inflation that measures the aggregate changes in prices across the overall economy.
- General partner** (GP) The partner that runs the business and theoretically bears unlimited liability.
- Geometric mean** A measure of central tendency computed by taking the n th root of the product of n non-negative values.
- Giffen goods** Goods that are consumed more as the price of the good rises because it is a very inferior good whose income effect overwhelms its substitution effect when price changes.
- Gilts** Bonds issued by the UK government.
- Giro system** An electronic payment system used widely in Europe and Japan.
- Global depository receipt** A depository receipt that is issued outside of the company's home country and outside of the United States.
- Global minimum-variance portfolio** The portfolio on the minimum-variance frontier with the smallest variance of return.
- Global registered share** A common share that is traded on different stock exchanges around the world in different currencies.
- Gold standard** With respect to a currency, if a currency is on the gold standard a given amount can be converted into a prespecified amount of gold.
- Golden cross** A technical analysis term that describes a situation where a short-term moving average crosses from below a longer-term moving average to above it; this movement is considered bullish.
- Good-on-close** An execution instruction specifying that an order can only be filled at the close of trading. Also called *market on close*.
- Good-on-open** An execution instruction specifying that an order can only be filled at the opening of trading.
- Good-till-cancelled order** An order specifying that it is valid until the entity placing the order has cancelled it (or, commonly, until some specified amount of time such as 60 days has elapsed, whichever comes sooner).
- Goodwill** An intangible asset that represents the excess of the purchase price of an acquired company over the value of the net assets acquired.
- Government equivalent yield** A yield that restates a yield-to-maturity based on 30/360 day-count to one based on actual/actual.
- Green bonds** A bond used in green finance whereby the proceeds are earmarked towards environmental-related products.
- Green finance** A type of finance that addresses environmental concerns while achieving economic growth.
- Grey market** The forward market for bonds about to be issued. Also called "when issued" market.
- Gross domestic product** The market value of all final goods and services produced within the economy in a given period of time (output definition) or, equivalently, the aggregate income earned by all households, all companies, and the government within the economy in a given period of time (income definition).
- Gross margin** Sales minus the cost of sales (i.e., the cost of goods sold for a manufacturing company).
- Gross profit** Sales minus the cost of sales (i.e., the cost of goods sold for a manufacturing company).
- Gross profit margin** The ratio of gross profit to revenues.
- Grouping by function** With reference to the presentation of expenses in an income statement, the grouping together of expenses serving the same function, e.g. all items that are costs of goods sold.
- Grouping by nature** With reference to the presentation of expenses in an income statement, the grouping together of expenses by similar nature, e.g., all depreciation expenses.
- Growth cyclical** A term sometimes used to describe companies that are growing rapidly on a long-term basis but that still experience above-average fluctuation in their revenues and profits over the course of a business cycle.
- Growth investors** With reference to equity investors, investors who seek to invest in high-earnings-growth companies.
- Guarantee certificate** A type of structured financial instrument that provides investors capital protection. It combines a zero-coupon bond and a call option on some underlying asset.
- Haircut** See *repo margin*.
- Harmonic mean** A type of weighted mean computed by averaging the reciprocals of the observations, then taking the reciprocal of that average.
- Head and shoulders pattern** In technical analysis, a reversal pattern that is formed in three parts: a left shoulder, head, and right shoulder; used to predict a change from an uptrend to a downtrend.
- Headline inflation** The inflation rate calculated based on the price index that includes all goods and services in an economy.
- Hedge funds** Private investment vehicles that typically use leverage, derivatives, and long and short investment strategies.
- Hedge portfolio** A hypothetical combination of the derivative and its underlying that eliminates risk.
- Held for trading** Debt or equity financial assets bought with the intention to sell them in the near term, usually less than three months; securities that a company intends to trade. Also called *trading securities*.
- Held-to-maturity** Debt (fixed-income) securities that a company intends to hold to maturity; these are presented at their original cost, updated for any amortization of discounts or premiums.
- Herding** Clustered trading that may or may not be based on information.
- Hidden order** An order that is exposed not to the public but only to the brokers or exchanges that receive it.
- High-frequency trading** A form of algorithmic trading that makes use of vast quantities of data to execute trades on ultra-high-speed networks in fractions of a second.
- High-water marks** The highest value, net of fees, that a fund has reached in history. It reflects the highest cumulative return used to calculate an incentive fee.
- Histogram** A bar chart of data that have been grouped into a frequency distribution.

- Historical cost** In reference to assets, the amount paid to purchase an asset, including any costs of acquisition and/or preparation; with reference to liabilities, the amount of proceeds received in exchange in issuing the liability.
- Historical equity risk premium approach** An estimate of a country's equity risk premium that is based upon the historical averages of the risk-free rate and the rate of return on the market portfolio.
- Historical simulation** Another term for the historical method of estimating VaR. This term is somewhat misleading in that the method involves not a *simulation* of the past but rather what *actually happened* in the past, sometimes adjusted to reflect the fact that a different portfolio may have existed in the past than is planned for the future.
- Holder-of-record date** The date that a shareholder listed on the corporation's books will be deemed to have ownership of the shares for purposes of receiving an upcoming dividend.
- Holding period return** The return that an investor earns during a specified holding period; a synonym for total return.
- Holding period yield (HPY)** The return that an investor earns during a specified holding period; holding period return with reference to a fixed-income instrument.
- Homogeneity of expectations** The assumption that all investors have the same economic expectations and thus have the same expectations of prices, cash flows, and other investment characteristics.
- Horizon yield** The internal rate of return between the total return (the sum of reinvested coupon payments and the sale price or redemption amount) and the purchase price of the bond.
- Horizontal analysis** Common-size analysis that involves comparing a specific financial statement with that statement in prior or future time periods; also, cross-sectional analysis of one company with another.
- Horizontal demand schedule** Implies that at a given price, the response in the quantity demanded is infinite.
- Hostile takeover** An attempt by one entity to acquire a company without the consent of the company's management.
- Household** A person or a group of people living in the same residence, taken as a basic unit in economic analysis.
- Human capital** The accumulated knowledge and skill that workers acquire from education, training, or life experience and the corresponding present value of future earnings to be generated by said skilled individual.
- Hurdle rate** The rate of return that must be met for a project to be accepted.
- Hypothesis** With reference to statistical inference, a statement about one or more populations.
- Hypothesis testing** With reference to statistical inference, the subdivision dealing with the testing of hypotheses about one or more populations.
- I-spread** The yield spread of a specific bond over the standard swap rate in that currency of the same tenor.
- Iceberg order** An order in which the display size is less than the order's full size.
- If-converted method** A method for accounting for the effect of convertible securities on earnings per share (EPS) that specifies what EPS would have been if the convertible securities had been converted at the beginning of the period, taking account of the effects of conversion on net income and the weighted average number of shares outstanding.
- Immediate or cancel order** An order that is valid only upon receipt by the broker or exchange. If such an order cannot be filled in part or in whole upon receipt, it cancels immediately. Also called *fill or kill*.
- Impact investing** Investing that seeks to achieve targeted social or environmental objectives along with measurable financial returns through engagement with a company or by direct investment in projects or companies.
- Impact lag** The lag associated with the result of actions affecting the economy with delay.
- Implicit price deflator for GDP** A gauge of prices and inflation that measures the aggregate changes in prices across the overall economy.
- Implied forward rates** Calculated from spot rates, an implied forward rate is a break-even reinvestment rate that links the return on an investment in a shorter-term zero-coupon bond to the return on an investment in a longer-term zero-coupon bond.
- Implied volatility** The volatility that option traders use to price an option, implied by the price of the option and a particular option-pricing model.
- Import license** Specifies the quantity of a good that can be imported into a country.
- Imports** Goods and services that a domestic economy (i.e., households, firms, and government) purchases from other countries.
- In the money** Options that, if exercised, would result in the value received being worth more than the payment required to exercise.
- Incentive fee** Fees paid to the general partner from the limited partner(s) based on realized profits.
- Income** Increases in economic benefits in the form of inflows or enhancements of assets, or decreases of liabilities that result in an increase in equity (other than increases resulting from contributions by owners).
- Income elasticity of demand** A measure of the responsiveness of demand to changes in income, defined as the percentage change in quantity demanded divided by the percentage change in income.
- Income tax paid** The actual amount paid for income taxes in the period; not a provision, but the actual cash outflow.
- Income tax payable** The income tax owed by the company on the basis of taxable income.
- Income trust** A type of equity ownership vehicle established as a trust issuing ownership shares known as units.
- Increasing marginal returns** When the marginal product of a resource increases as additional units of that input are employed.
- Increasing returns to scale** When a production process leads to increases in output that are proportionately larger than the increase in inputs.
- Incremental cash flow** The cash flow that is realized because of a decision; the changes or increments to cash flows resulting from a decision or action.
- Indenture** Legal contract that describes the form of a bond, the obligations of the issuer, and the rights of the bondholders. Also called the *trust deed*.
- Independent** With reference to events, the property that the occurrence of one event does not affect the probability of another event occurring.
- Independent projects** Independent projects are projects whose cash flows are independent of each other.

- Independently and identically distributed (IID)** With respect to random variables, the property of random variables that are independent of each other but follow the identical probability distribution.
- Index-linked bond** Bond for which coupon payments and/or principal repayment are linked to a specified index.
- Index of Leading Economic Indicators** A composite of economic variables used by analysts to predict future economic conditions.
- Indexing** An investment strategy in which an investor constructs a portfolio to mirror the performance of a specified index.
- Indifference curve** A curve representing all the combinations of two goods or attributes such that the consumer is entirely indifferent among them.
- Indirect format** With reference to cash flow statements, a format for the presentation of the statement which, in the operating cash flow section, begins with net income then shows additions and subtractions to arrive at operating cash flow. Also called *indirect method*.
- Indirect method** See *indirect format*.
- Indirect taxes** Taxes such as taxes on spending, as opposed to direct taxes.
- Industry** A group of companies offering similar products and/or services.
- Industry analysis** The analysis of a specific branch of manufacturing, service, or trade.
- Inelastic** Said of a good or service when the magnitude of elasticity is less than one. Insensitive to price changes.
- Inferior goods** A good whose consumption decreases as income increases.
- Inflation** The percentage increase in the general price level from one period to the next; a sustained rise in the overall level of prices in an economy.
- Inflation-linked bond** Type of index-linked bond that offers investors protection against inflation by linking the bond's coupon payments and/or the principal repayment to an index of consumer prices. Also called *linkers*.
- Inflation premium** An extra return that compensates investors for expected inflation.
- Inflation rate** The percentage change in a price index—that is, the speed of overall price level movements.
- Inflation Reports** A type of economic publication put out by many central banks.
- Inflation uncertainty** The degree to which economic agents view future rates of inflation as difficult to forecast.
- Information cascade** The transmission of information from those participants who act first and whose decisions influence the decisions of others.
- Information-motivated traders** Traders that trade to profit from information that they believe allows them to predict future prices.
- Informationally efficient market** A market in which asset prices reflect new information quickly and rationally.
- Initial coin offering** An unregulated process whereby companies raise capital by selling crypto tokens to investors in exchange for fiat money or another agreed-upon cryptocurrency.
- Initial margin** The amount that must be deposited in a clearinghouse account when entering into a futures contract.
- Initial margin requirement** The margin requirement on the first day of a transaction as well as on any day in which additional margin funds must be deposited.
- Initial public offering (IPO)** The first issuance of common shares to the public by a formerly private corporation.
- Input productivity** The amount of output produced by workers in a given period of time—for example, output per hour worked; measures the efficiency of labor.
- Installment method** With respect to revenue recognition, a method that specifies that the portion of the total profit of the sale that is recognized in each period is determined by the percentage of the total sales price for which the seller has received cash.
- Installment sales** With respect to revenue recognition, a method that specifies that the portion of the total profit of the sale that is recognized in each period is determined by the percentage of the total sales price for which the seller has received cash.
- Intangible assets** Assets lacking physical substance, such as patents and trademarks.
- Interbank market** The market of loans and deposits between banks for maturities ranging from overnight to one year.
- Interbank money market** The market of loans and deposits between banks for maturities ranging from overnight to one year.
- Interest** Payment for lending funds.
- Interest coverage** A solvency ratio calculated as EBIT divided by interest payments.
- Interest-only mortgage** A loan in which no scheduled principal repayment is specified for a certain number of years.
- Interest rate** A rate of return that reflects the relationship between differently dated cash flows; a discount rate.
- Interest rate swap** A swap in which the underlying is an interest rate. Can be viewed as a currency swap in which both currencies are the same and can be created as a combination of currency swaps.
- Intergenerational data mining** A form of data mining that applies information developed by previous researchers using a dataset to guide current research using the same or a related dataset.
- Intermarket analysis** A field within technical analysis that combines analysis of major categories of securities—namely, equities, bonds, currencies, and commodities—to identify market trends and possible inflections in a trend.
- Internal rate of return (IRR)** The discount rate that makes net present value equal 0; the discount rate that makes the present value of an investment's costs (outflows) equal to the present value of the investment's benefits (inflows).
- Internet of Things** A network arrangement of structures and devices whereby the objects on the network are able to interact and share information.
- Interpolated spread** The yield spread of a specific bond over the standard swap rate in that currency of the same tenor.
- Interquartile range** The difference between the third and first quartiles of a dataset.
- Interval** With reference to grouped data, a set of values within which an observation falls.
- Interval scale** A measurement scale that not only ranks data but also gives assurance that the differences between scale values are equal.
- Intrinsic value** See *exercise value*.
- Inventory blanket lien** The use of inventory as collateral for a loan. Though the lender has claim to some or all of the company's inventory, the company may still sell or use the inventory in the ordinary course of business.
- Inventory investment** Net change in business inventory.

- Inventory turnover** An activity ratio calculated as cost of goods sold divided by average inventory.
- Inverse demand function** A restatement of the demand function in which price is stated as a function of quantity.
- Inverse floater** A type of leveraged structured financial instrument. The cash flows are adjusted periodically and move in the opposite direction of changes in the reference rate.
- Investing activities** Activities which are associated with the acquisition and disposal of property, plant, and equipment; intangible assets; other long-term assets; and both long-term and short-term investments in the equity and debt (bonds and loans) issued by other companies.
- Investment banks** Financial intermediaries that provide advice to their mostly corporate clients and help them arrange transactions such as initial and seasoned securities offerings.
- Investment opportunity schedule** A graphical depiction of a company's investment opportunities ordered from highest to lowest expected return. A company's optimal capital budget is found where the investment opportunity schedule intersects with the company's marginal cost of capital.
- Investment policy statement** (IPS) A written planning document that describes a client's investment objectives and risk tolerance over a relevant time horizon, along with constraints that apply to the client's portfolio.
- Investment property** Property used to earn rental income or capital appreciation (or both).
- IRR rule** An investment decision rule that accepts projects or investments for which the IRR is greater than the opportunity cost of capital.
- January effect** Calendar anomaly that stock market returns in January are significantly higher compared to the rest of the months of the year, with most of the abnormal returns reported during the first five trading days in January. Also called *turn-of-the-year effect*.
- Joint probability** The probability of the joint occurrence of stated events.
- Joint probability function** A function giving the probability of joint occurrences of values of stated random variables.
- Just-in-time (JIT) method** Method of managing inventory that minimizes in-process inventory stocks.
- Key rate duration** A method of measuring the interest rate sensitivities of a fixed-income instrument or portfolio to shifts in key points along the yield curve.
- Keynesians** Economists who believe that fiscal policy can have powerful effects on aggregate demand, output, and employment when there is substantial spare capacity in an economy.
- Kondratieff wave** A 54-year long economic cycle postulated by Nikolai Kondratieff.
- Kurtosis** The statistical measure that indicates the combined weight of the tails of a distribution relative to the rest of the distribution.
- Labor force** The portion of the working age population (over the age of 16) that is employed or is available for work but not working (unemployed).
- Labor productivity** The quantity of goods and services (real GDP) that a worker can produce in one hour of work.
- Laddering strategy** A form of active strategy which entails scheduling maturities on a systematic basis within the investment portfolio such that investments are spread out equally over the term of the ladder.
- Lagging economic indicators** Turning points that take place later than those of the overall economy; they are believed to have value in identifying the economy's past condition.
- Laspeyres index** A price index created by holding the composition of the consumption basket constant.
- Law of demand** The principle that as the price of a good rises, buyers will choose to buy less of it, and as its price falls, they will buy more.
- Law of diminishing marginal returns** The observation that a variable factor's marginal product must eventually fall as more of it is added to a fixed amount of the other factors.
- Law of diminishing returns** The smallest output that a firm can produce such that its long run average costs are minimized.
- Law of one price** The condition in a financial market in which two equivalent financial instruments or combinations of financial instruments can sell for only one price. Equivalent to the principle that no arbitrage opportunities are possible.
- Lead underwriter** The lead investment bank in a syndicate of investment banks and broker-dealers involved in a securities underwriting.
- Leading economic indicators** Turning points that usually precede those of the overall economy; they are believed to have value for predicting the economy's future state, usually near-term.
- Legal tender** Something that must be accepted when offered in exchange for goods and services.
- Lender of last resort** An entity willing to lend money when no other entity is ready to do so.
- Leptokurtic** Describes a distribution that has fatter tails than a normal distribution.
- Lessee** The party obtaining the use of an asset through a lease.
- Lessor** The owner of an asset that grants the right to use the asset to another party.
- Letter of credit** Form of external credit enhancement whereby a financial institution provides the issuer with a credit line to reimburse any cash flow shortfalls from the assets backing the issue.
- Level of significance** The probability of a Type I error in testing a hypothesis.
- Leverage** In the context of corporate finance, leverage refers to the use of fixed costs within a company's cost structure. Fixed costs that are operating costs (such as depreciation or rent) create operating leverage. Fixed costs that are financial costs (such as interest expense) create financial leverage.
- Leveraged buyout** (LBO) A transaction whereby the target company management team converts the target to a privately held company by using heavy borrowing to finance the purchase of the target company's outstanding shares.
- Liabilities** Present obligations of an enterprise arising from past events, the settlement of which is expected to result in an outflow of resources embodying economic benefits; creditors' claims on the resources of a company.
- Life-cycle stage** The stage of the life cycle: embryonic, growth, shakeout, mature, declining.
- LIFO layer liquidation** With respect to the application of the LIFO inventory method, the liquidation of old, relatively low-priced inventory; happens when the volume of sales rises above the volume of recent purchases so that some sales are made from relatively old, low-priced inventory. Also called *LIFO liquidation*.

- LIFO method** The last in, first out, method of accounting for inventory, which matches sales against the costs of items of inventory in the reverse order the items were placed in inventory (i.e., inventory produced or acquired last are assumed to be sold first).
- LIFO reserve** The difference between the reported LIFO inventory carrying amount and the inventory amount that would have been reported if the FIFO method had been used (in other words, the FIFO inventory value less the LIFO inventory value).
- Likelihood** The probability of an observation, given a particular set of conditions.
- Limit down** A limit move in the futures market in which the price at which a transaction would be made is at or below the lower limit.
- Limit order** Instructions to a broker or exchange to obtain the best price immediately available when filling an order, but in no event accept a price higher than a specified (limit) price when buying or accept a price lower than a specified (limit) price when selling.
- Limit order book** The book or list of limit orders to buy and sell that pertains to a security.
- Limit up** A limit move in the futures market in which the price at which a transaction would be made is at or above the upper limit.
- Limitations on liens** Meant to put limits on how much secured debt an issuer can have.
- Limited partners** Partners with limited liability. Limited partnerships in hedge and private equity funds are typically restricted to investors who are expected to understand and to be able to assume the risks associated with the investments.
- Line chart** In technical analysis, a plot of price data, typically closing prices, with a line connecting the points.
- Linear interpolation** The estimation of an unknown value on the basis of two known values that bracket it, using a straight line between the two known values.
- Linear scale** A scale in which equal distances correspond to equal absolute amounts. Also called *arithmetic scale*.
- Linker** See *inflation-linked bond*.
- Liquid market** Said of a market in which traders can buy or sell with low total transaction costs when they want to trade.
- Liquidation** To sell the assets of a company, division, or subsidiary piecemeal, typically because of bankruptcy; the form of bankruptcy that allows for the orderly satisfaction of creditors' claims after which the company ceases to exist.
- Liquidity** The ability to purchase or sell an asset quickly and easily at a price close to fair market value. The ability to meet short-term obligations using assets that are the most readily converted into cash.
- Liquidity premium** An extra return that compensates investors for the risk of loss relative to an investment's fair value if the investment needs to be converted to cash quickly.
- Liquidity ratios** Financial ratios measuring the company's ability to meet its short-term obligations.
- Liquidity risk** The risk that a financial instrument cannot be purchased or sold without a significant concession in price due to the size of the market.
- Liquidity trap** A condition in which the demand for money becomes infinitely elastic (horizontal demand curve) so that injections of money into the economy will not lower interest rates or affect real activity.
- Load fund** A mutual fund in which, in addition to the annual fee, a percentage fee is charged to invest in the fund and/or for redemptions from the fund.
- Loan-to-value ratio** The ratio of a property's purchase price to the amount of its mortgage.
- Lockbox system** A payment system in which customer payments are mailed to a post office box and the banking institution retrieves and deposits these payments several times a day, enabling the company to have use of the fund sooner than in a centralized system in which customer payments are sent to the company.
- Locked limit** A condition in the futures markets in which a transaction cannot take place because the price would be beyond the limits.
- Lockup period** The minimum period before investors are allowed to make withdrawals or redeem shares from a fund.
- Logarithmic scale** A scale in which equal distances represent equal proportional changes in the underlying quantity.
- London interbank offered rate (Libor)** Collective name for multiple rates at which a select set of banks believe they could borrow unsecured funds from other banks in the London interbank market for different currencies and different borrowing periods ranging from overnight to one year.
- Long** The buyer of a derivative contract. Also refers to the position of owning a derivative.
- Long-lived assets** Assets that are expected to provide economic benefits over a future period of time, typically greater than one year. Also called *long-term assets*.
- Long position** A position in an asset or contract in which one owns the asset or has an exercisable right under the contract.
- Long-run average total cost** The curve describing average total cost when no costs are considered fixed.
- Long-term contract** A contract that spans a number of accounting periods.
- Longitudinal data** Observations on characteristic(s) of the same observational unit through time.
- Look-ahead bias** A bias caused by using information that was unavailable on the test date.
- Loss aversion** The tendency of people to dislike losses more than they like comparable gains.
- Loss severity** Portion of a bond's value (including unpaid interest) an investor loses in the event of default.
- Losses** Asset outflows not directly related to the ordinary activities of the business.
- Lower bound** The lowest possible value of an option.
- M^2** A measure of what a portfolio would have returned if it had taken on the same total risk as the market index.
- Macaulay duration** The approximate amount of time a bond would have to be held for the market discount rate at purchase to be realized if there is a single change in interest rate. It indicates the point in time when the coupon reinvestment and price effects of a change in yield-to-maturity offset each other.
- Machine learning** Diverse approaches by which computers are programmed to improve performance in specified tasks with experience.
- Macroeconomics** The branch of economics that deals with aggregate economic quantities, such as national output and national income.
- Maintenance covenants** Covenants in bank loan agreements that require the borrower to satisfy certain financial ratio tests while the loan is outstanding.

- Maintenance margin** The minimum amount that is required by a futures clearinghouse to maintain a margin account and to protect against default. Participants whose margin balances drop below the required maintenance margin must replenish their accounts.
- Maintenance margin requirement** The margin requirement on any day other than the first day of a transaction.
- Management buy-ins** Leveraged buyout in which the current management team is being replaced and the acquiring team will be involved in managing the company.
- Management buyout** (MBO) A leveraged buyout event in which a group of investors consisting primarily of the company's existing management purchase at least controlling interest of its outstanding shares. They may purchase all shares and take the company private.
- Management fee** A fee based on assets under management or committed capital, as applicable, also called a *base fee*.
- Manufacturing resource planning (MRP)** The incorporation of production planning into inventory management. A MRP analysis provides both a materials acquisition schedule and a production schedule.
- Margin** The amount of money that a trader deposits in a margin account. The term is derived from the stock market practice in which an investor borrows a portion of the money required to purchase a certain amount of stock. In futures markets, there is no borrowing so the margin is more of a down payment or performance bond.
- Margin bond** A cash deposit required by the clearinghouse from the participants to a contract to provide a credit guarantee. Also called a *performance bond*.
- Margin call** A request for the short to deposit additional funds to bring their balance up to the initial margin.
- Margin loan** Money borrowed from a broker to purchase securities.
- Marginal cost** The cost of producing an additional unit of a good.
- Marginal probability** The probability of an event *not* conditioned on another event.
- Marginal product** Measures the productivity of each unit of input and is calculated by taking the difference in total product from adding another unit of input (assuming other resource quantities are held constant).
- Marginal propensity to consume** The proportion of an additional unit of disposable income that is consumed or spent; the change in consumption for a small change in income.
- Marginal propensity to save** The proportion of an additional unit of disposable income that is saved (not spent).
- Marginal revenue** The change in total revenue divided by the change in quantity sold; simply, the additional revenue from selling one more unit.
- Marginal value curve** A curve describing the highest price consumers are willing to pay for each additional unit of a good.
- Mark to market** The revaluation of a financial asset or liability to its current market value or fair value.
- Market** A means of bringing buyers and sellers together to exchange goods and services.
- Market anomaly** Change in the price or return of a security that cannot directly be linked to current relevant information known in the market or to the release of new information into the market.
- Market bid-ask spread** The difference between the best bid and the best offer.
- Market-capitalization weighting** An index weighting method in which the weight assigned to each constituent security is determined by dividing its market capitalization by the total market capitalization (sum of the market capitalization) of all securities in the index. Also called *value weighting*.
- Market discount rate** The rate of return required by investors given the risk of the investment in a bond; also called the *required yield* or the *required rate of return*.
- Market float** The number of shares that are available to the investing public.
- Market liquidity risk** The risk that the price at which investors can actually transact—buying or selling—may differ from the price indicated in the market.
- Market model** A regression equation that specifies a linear relationship between the return on a security (or portfolio) and the return on a broad market index.
- Market multiple models** Valuation models based on share price multiples or enterprise value multiples.
- Market-on-close** An execution instruction specifying that an order can only be filled at the close of trading.
- Market order** Instructions to a broker or exchange to obtain the best price immediately available when filling an order.
- Market-oriented investors** With reference to equity investors, investors whose investment disciplines cannot be clearly categorized as value or growth.
- Market rate of interest** The rate demanded by purchases of bonds, given the risks associated with future cash payment obligations of the particular bond issue.
- Market risk** The risk that arises from movements in interest rates, stock prices, exchange rates, and commodity prices.
- Market value** The price at which an asset or security can currently be bought or sold in an open market.
- Marketable limit order** A buy limit order in which the limit price is placed above the best offer, or a sell limit order in which the limit price is placed below the best bid. Such orders generally will partially or completely fill right away.
- Markowitz efficient frontier** The graph of the set of portfolios offering the maximum expected return for their level of risk (standard deviation of return).
- Matching principle** The accounting principle that expenses should be recognized when the associated revenue is recognized.
- Matching strategy** An active investment strategy that includes intentional matching of the timing of cash outflows with investment maturities.
- Matrix pricing** Process of estimating the market discount rate and price of a bond based on the quoted or flat prices of more frequently traded comparable bonds.
- Maturity premium** An extra return that compensates investors for the increased sensitivity of the market value of debt to a change in market interest rates as maturity is extended.
- Maturity structure** A factor explaining the differences in yields on similar bonds; also called *term structure*.
- Mean absolute deviation** With reference to a sample, the mean of the absolute values of deviations from the sample mean.
- Mean excess return** The average rate of return in excess of the risk-free rate.
- Mean-variance analysis** An approach to portfolio analysis using expected means, variances, and covariances of asset returns.
- Measure of central tendency** A quantitative measure that specifies where data are centered.

- Measure of value** A standard for measuring value; a function of money.
- Measurement scales** A scheme of measuring differences. The four types of measurement scales are nominal, ordinal, interval, and ratio.
- Measures of location** A quantitative measure that describes the location or distribution of data; includes not only measures of central tendency but also other measures such as percentiles.
- Median** The value of the middle item of a set of items that has been sorted into ascending or descending order; the 50th percentile.
- Medium of exchange** Any asset that can be used to purchase goods and services or to repay debts; a function of money.
- Medium-term note** A corporate bond offered continuously to investors by an agent of the issuer, designed to fill the funding gap between commercial paper and long-term bonds.
- Menu costs** A cost of inflation in which businesses constantly have to incur the costs of changing the advertised prices of their goods and services.
- Mesokurtic** Describes a distribution with kurtosis identical to that of the normal distribution.
- Mezzanine financing** Debt or preferred shares with a relationship to common equity resulting from a feature such as attached warrants or conversion options. Mezzanine financing is subordinate to both senior and high-yield debt. It is referred to as mezzanine because of its location on the balance sheet.
- Microeconomics** The branch of economics that deals with markets and decision making of individual economic units, including consumers and businesses.
- Minimum efficient scale** The smallest output that a firm can produce such that its long-run average total cost is minimized.
- Minimum-variance portfolio** The portfolio with the minimum variance for each given level of expected return.
- Minority shareholders** A particular shareholder or block of shareholders holding a small proportion of a company's outstanding shares, resulting in a limited ability to exercise control in voting activities.
- Minsky moment** Named for Hyman Minsky: A point in a business cycle when, after individuals become overextended in borrowing to finance speculative investments, people start realizing that something is likely to go wrong and a panic ensues leading to asset sell-offs.
- Mismatching strategy** An active investment strategy whereby the timing of cash outflows is not matched with investment maturities.
- Modal interval** With reference to grouped data, the most frequently occurring interval.
- Mode** The most frequently occurring value in a set of observations.
- Modern portfolio theory** (MPT) The analysis of rational portfolio choices based on the efficient use of risk.
- Modified duration** A measure of the percentage price change of a bond given a change in its yield-to-maturity.
- Momentum oscillators** A graphical representation of market sentiment that is constructed from price data and calculated so that it oscillates either between a high and a low or around some number.
- Monetarists** Economists who believe that the rate of growth of the money supply is the primary determinant of the rate of inflation.
- Monetary policy** Actions taken by a nation's central bank to affect aggregate output and prices through changes in bank reserves, reserve requirements, or its target interest rate.
- Monetary transmission mechanism** The process whereby a central bank's interest rate gets transmitted through the economy and ultimately affects the rate of increase of prices.
- Monetary union** An economic union in which the members adopt a common currency.
- Money** A generally accepted medium of exchange and unit of account.
- Money convexity** For a bond, the annual or approximate convexity multiplied by the full price.
- Money creation** The process by which changes in bank reserves translate into changes in the money supply.
- Money duration** A measure of the price change in units of the currency in which the bond is denominated given a change in its yield-to-maturity.
- Money market** The market for short-term debt instruments (one-year maturity or less).
- Money market securities** Fixed-income securities with maturities at issuance of one year or less.
- Money market yield** A yield on a basis comparable to the quoted yield on an interest-bearing money market instrument that pays interest on a 360-day basis; the annualized holding period yield, assuming a 360-day year.
- Money multiplier** Describes how a change in reserves is expected to affect the money supply; in its simplest form, 1 divided by the reserve requirement.
- Money neutrality** The thesis that an increase in the money supply leads in the long-run to an increase in the price level, while leaving real variables like output and employment unaffected.
- Money-weighted return** The internal rate of return on a portfolio, taking account of all cash flows.
- Monyness** The relationship between the price of the underlying and an option's exercise price.
- Monopolistic competition** Highly competitive form of imperfect competition; the competitive characteristic is a notably large number of firms, while the monopoly aspect is the result of product differentiation.
- Monopoly** In pure monopoly markets, there are no substitutes for the given product or service. There is a single seller, which exercises considerable power over pricing and output decisions.
- Monte Carlo simulation** An approach to estimating a probability distribution of outcomes to examine what might happen if particular risks are faced. This method is widely used in the sciences as well as in business to study a variety of problems.
- Moral principles** Beliefs regarding what is good, acceptable, or obligatory behavior and what is bad, unacceptable, or forbidden behavior.
- Mortgage-backed securities** Debt obligations that represent claims to the cash flows from pools of mortgage loans, most commonly on residential property.
- Mortgage loan** A loan secured by the collateral of some specified real estate property that obliges the borrower to make a predetermined series of payments to the lender.
- Mortgage pass-through security** A security created when one or more holders of mortgages form a pool of mortgages and sell shares or participation certificates in the pool.
- Mortgage rate** The interest rate on a mortgage loan; also called *contract rate* or *note rate*.

- Moving average** The average of the closing price of a security over a specified number of periods. With each new period, the average is recalculated.
- Moving-average convergence/divergence oscillator** (MACD) A momentum oscillator that is constructed based on the difference between short-term and long-term moving averages of a security's price.
- Multi-factor model** A model that explains a variable in terms of the values of a set of factors.
- Multi-market indexes** Comprised of indexes from different countries, designed to represent multiple security markets.
- Multi-step format** With respect to the format of the income statement, a format that presents a subtotal for gross profit (revenue minus cost of goods sold).
- Multilateral trading facilities** See *alternative trading systems*.
- Multinational corporation** A company operating in more than one country or having subsidiary firms in more than one country.
- Multiplication rule for probabilities** The rule that the joint probability of events *A* and *B* equals the probability of *A* given *B* times the probability of *B*.
- Multiplier models** Valuation models based on share price multiples or enterprise value multiples.
- Multivariate distribution** A probability distribution that specifies the probabilities for a group of related random variables.
- Multivariate normal distribution** A probability distribution for a group of random variables that is completely defined by the means and variances of the variables plus all the correlations between pairs of the variables.
- Muni** A type of non-sovereign bond issued by a state or local government in the United States. It very often (but not always) offers income tax exemptions.
- Municipal bonds** A type of non-sovereign bond issued by a state or local government in the United States. It very often (but not always) offers income tax exemptions.
- Mutual fund** A professionally managed investment pool in which investors in the fund typically each have a pro-rata claim on the income and value of the fund.
- Mutually exclusive projects** Mutually exclusive projects compete directly with each other. For example, if Projects A and B are mutually exclusive, you can choose A or B, but you cannot choose both.
- n* Factorial** For a positive integer *n*, the product of the first *n* positive integers; 0 factorial equals 1 by definition. *n* factorial is written as *n!*.
- Narrow money** The notes and coins in circulation in an economy, plus other very highly liquid deposits.
- Nash equilibrium** When two or more participants in a non-cooperative game have no incentive to deviate from their respective equilibrium strategies given their opponent's strategies.
- National income** The income received by all factors of production used in the generation of final output. National income equals gross domestic product (or, in some countries, gross national product) minus the capital consumption allowance and a statistical discrepancy.
- Natural language processing** Computer programs developed to analyze and interpret human language.
- Natural rate of unemployment** Effective unemployment rate, below which pressure emerges in labor markets.
- Negative screening** An ESG implementation approach that excludes certain sectors or companies that deviate from an investor's accepted standards. Also called *exclusionary screening* or *norms-based screening*.
- Neo-Keynesians** A group of dynamic general equilibrium models that assume slow-to-adjust prices and wages.
- Net book value** The remaining (undepreciated) balance of an asset's purchase cost. For liabilities, the face value of a bond minus any unamortized discount, or plus any unamortized premium.
- Net exports** The difference between the value of a country's exports and the value of its imports (i.e., value of exports minus imports).
- Net income** The difference between revenue and expenses; what remains after subtracting all expenses (including depreciation, interest, and taxes) from revenue.
- Net operating cycle** An estimate of the average time that elapses between paying suppliers for materials and collecting cash from the subsequent sale of goods produced.
- Net present value** (NPV) The present value of an investment's cash inflows (benefits) minus the present value of its cash outflows (costs).
- Net profit margin** An indicator of profitability, calculated as net income divided by revenue; indicates how much of each dollar of revenues is left after all costs and expenses. Also called *profit margin* or *return on sales*.
- Net realisable value** Estimated selling price in the ordinary course of business less the estimated costs necessary to make the sale.
- Net revenue** Revenue after adjustments (e.g., for estimated returns or for amounts unlikely to be collected).
- Net tax rate** The tax rate net of transfer payments.
- Neural networks** Computer programs based on how our own brains learn and process information.
- Neutral rate of interest** The rate of interest that neither spurs on nor slows down the underlying economy.
- New classical macroeconomics** An approach to macroeconomics that seeks the macroeconomic conclusions of individuals maximizing utility on the basis of rational expectations and companies maximizing profits.
- New Keynesians** A group of dynamic general equilibrium models that assume slow-to-adjust prices and wages.
- No-load fund** A mutual fund in which there is no fee for investing in the fund or for redeeming fund shares, although there is an annual fee based on a percentage of the fund's net asset value.
- Node** Each value on a binomial tree from which successive moves or outcomes branch.
- Nominal GDP** The value of goods and services measured at current prices.
- Nominal rate** A rate of interest based on the security's face value.
- Nominal risk-free interest rate** The sum of the real risk-free interest rate and the inflation premium.
- Nominal scale** A measurement scale that categorizes data but does not rank them.
- Non-accelerating inflation rate of unemployment** Effective unemployment rate, below which pressure emerges in labor markets.
- Non-agency RMBS** In the United States, securities issued by private entities that are not guaranteed by a federal agency or a GSE.

- Non-cumulative preference shares** Preference shares for which dividends that are not paid in the current or subsequent periods are forfeited permanently (instead of being accrued and paid at a later date).
- Non-current assets** Assets that are expected to benefit the company over an extended period of time (usually more than one year).
- Non-current liabilities** Obligations that broadly represent a probable sacrifice of economic benefits in periods generally greater than one year in the future.
- Non-cyclical** A company whose performance is largely independent of the business cycle.
- Non-deliverable forwards** Cash-settled forward contracts, used predominately with respect to foreign exchange forwards. Also called *contracts for differences*.
- Non-financial risks** Risks that arise from sources other than changes in the external financial markets, such as changes in accounting rules, legal environment, or tax rates.
- Non-participating preference shares** Preference shares that do not entitle shareholders to share in the profits of the company. Instead, shareholders are only entitled to receive a fixed dividend payment and the par value of the shares in the event of liquidation.
- Non-recourse loan** Loan in which the lender does not have a shortfall claim against the borrower, so the lender can look only to the property to recover the outstanding mortgage balance.
- Non-renewable resources** Finite resources that are depleted once they are consumed, such as oil and coal.
- Non-sovereign bonds** A bond issued by a government below the national level, such as a province, region, state, or city.
- Non-sovereign government bonds** A bond issued by a government below the national level, such as a province, region, state, or city.
- Nonconventional cash flow** In a nonconventional cash flow pattern, the initial outflow is not followed by inflows only, but the cash flows can flip from positive (inflows) to negative (outflows) again (or even change signs several times).
- Nonparametric test** A test that is not concerned with a parameter, or that makes minimal assumptions about the population from which a sample comes.
- Nonsystematic risk** Unique risk that is local or limited to a particular asset or industry that need not affect assets outside of that asset class.
- Normal distribution** A continuous, symmetric probability distribution that is completely described by its mean and its variance.
- Normal goods** Goods that are consumed in greater quantities as income increases.
- Normal profit** The level of accounting profit needed to just cover the implicit opportunity costs ignored in accounting costs.
- Norms-based screening** An ESG implementation approach that excludes certain sectors or companies that deviate from an investor's accepted standards. Also called *negative screening* or *exclusionary screening*.
- Notching** Ratings adjustment methodology where specific issues from the same borrower may be assigned different credit ratings.
- Note rate** See *mortgage rate*.
- Notes payable** Amounts owed by a business to creditors as a result of borrowings that are evidenced by (short-term) loan agreements.
- Notice period** The length of time (typically 30 to 90 days) in advance that investors may be required to notify a fund of their intent to redeem.
- Notional principal** An imputed principal amount.
- NPV rule** An investment decision rule that states that an investment should be undertaken if its NPV is positive but not undertaken if its NPV is negative.
- Number of days of inventory** An activity ratio equal to the number of days in a period divided by the inventory ratio for the period; an indication of the number of days a company ties up funds in inventory.
- Number of days of payables** An activity ratio equal to the number of days in a period divided by the payables turnover ratio for the period; an estimate of the average number of days it takes a company to pay its suppliers.
- Number of days of receivables** Estimate of the average number of days it takes to collect on credit accounts.
- Objective probabilities** Probabilities that generally do not vary from person to person; includes a priori and objective probabilities.
- Off-the-run** Seasoned government bonds are off-the-run securities; they are not the most recently issued or the most actively traded.
- Offer** The price at which a dealer or trader is willing to sell an asset, typically qualified by a maximum quantity (ask size).
- Official interest rate** An interest rate that a central bank sets and announces publicly; normally the rate at which it is willing to lend money to the commercial banks. Also called *official policy rate* or *policy rate*.
- Official policy rate** An interest rate that a central bank sets and announces publicly; normally the rate at which it is willing to lend money to the commercial banks.
- Oligopoly** Market structure with a relatively small number of firms supplying the market.
- On-the-run** The most recently issued and most actively traded sovereign securities.
- One-sided hypothesis test** A test in which the null hypothesis is rejected only if the evidence indicates that the population parameter is greater than (smaller than) θ_0 . The alternative hypothesis also has one side.
- One-tailed hypothesis test** A test in which the null hypothesis is rejected only if the evidence indicates that the population parameter is greater than (smaller than) θ_0 . The alternative hypothesis also has one side.
- Open economy** An economy that trades with other countries.
- Open-end fund** A mutual fund that accepts new investment money and issues additional shares at a value equal to the net asset value of the fund at the time of investment.
- Open interest** The number of outstanding contracts in a clearinghouse at any given time. The open interest figure changes daily as some parties open up new positions, while other parties offset their old positions.
- Open market operations** The purchase or sale of bonds by the national central bank to implement monetary policy. The bonds traded are usually sovereign bonds issued by the national government.
- Operating activities** Activities that are part of the day-to-day business functioning of an entity, such as selling inventory and providing services.
- Operating breakeven** The number of units produced and sold at which the company's operating profit is zero (revenues = operating costs).
- Operating cash flow** The net amount of cash provided from operating activities.

- Operating cycle** A measure of the time needed to convert raw materials into cash from a sale; it consists of the number of days of inventory and the number of days of receivables.
- Operating efficiency ratios** Ratios that measure how efficiently a company performs day-to-day tasks, such as the collection of receivables and management of inventory.
- Operating lease** An agreement allowing the lessee to use some asset for a period of time; essentially a rental.
- Operating leverage** The use of fixed costs in operations.
- Operating profit** A company's profits on its usual business activities before deducting taxes. Also called *operating income*.
- Operating profit margin** A profitability ratio calculated as operating income (i.e., income before interest and taxes) divided by revenue. Also called *operating margin*.
- Operating risk** The risk attributed to the operating cost structure, in particular the use of fixed costs in operations; the risk arising from the mix of fixed and variable costs; the risk that a company's operations may be severely affected by environmental, social, and governance risk factors.
- Operational independence** A bank's ability to execute monetary policy and set interest rates in the way it thought would best meet the inflation target.
- Operational risk** The risk of loss from failures in a company's systems and procedures.
- Operationally efficient** Said of a market, a financial system, or an economy that has relatively low transaction costs.
- Opportunity cost** The value that investors forgo by choosing a particular course of action; the value of something in its best alternative use.
- Option** A financial instrument that gives one party the right, but not the obligation, to buy or sell an underlying asset from or to another party at a fixed price over a specific period of time. Also referred to as *contingent claim* or *option contract*.
- Option-adjusted price** The value of the embedded option plus the flat price of the bond.
- Option-adjusted spread** $OAS = Z\text{-spread} - \text{Option value}$ (in basis points per year).
- Option-adjusted yield** The required market discount rate whereby the price is adjusted for the value of the embedded option.
- Option contract** See *option*.
- Option premium** The amount of money a buyer pays and seller receives to engage in an option transaction.
- Order** A specification of what instrument to trade, how much to trade, and whether to buy or sell.
- Order-driven markets** A market (generally an auction market) that uses rules to arrange trades based on the orders that traders submit; in their pure form, such markets do not make use of dealers.
- Order precedence hierarchy** With respect to the execution of orders to trade, a set of rules that determines which orders execute before other orders.
- Ordinal scale** A measurement scale that sorts data into categories that are ordered (ranked) with respect to some characteristic.
- Ordinary annuity** An annuity with a first cash flow that is paid one period from the present.
- Ordinary shares** Equity shares that are subordinate to all other types of equity (e.g., preferred equity). Also called *common stock* or *common shares*.
- Organized exchange** A securities marketplace where buyers and seller can meet to arrange their trades.
- Other comprehensive income** Items of comprehensive income that are not reported on the income statement; comprehensive income minus net income.
- Out-of-sample test** A test of a strategy or model using a sample outside the time period on which the strategy or model was developed.
- Out of the money** Options that, if exercised, would require the payment of more money than the value received and therefore would not be currently exercised.
- Outcome** A possible value of a random variable.
- Over-the-counter (OTC) markets** A decentralized market where buy and sell orders initiated from various locations are matched through a communications network.
- Overbought** A market condition in which market sentiment is thought to be unsustainably bullish.
- Overcollateralization** Form of internal credit enhancement that refers to the process of posting more collateral than needed to obtain or secure financing.
- Overfitting** An undesirable result from fitting a model so closely to a dataset that it does not perform well on new data.
- Oversold** A market condition in which market sentiment is thought to be unsustainably bearish.
- Own price** The price of a good or service itself (as opposed to the price of something else).
- Own-price elasticity of demand** The percentage change in quantity demanded for a percentage change in good's own price, holding all other things constant.
- Owners' equity** The excess of assets over liabilities; the residual interest of shareholders in the assets of an entity after deducting the entity's liabilities. Also called *shareholders' equity*.
- Paasche index** An index formula using the current composition of a basket of products.
- Paired comparisons test** A statistical test for differences based on paired observations drawn from samples that are dependent on each other.
- Paired observations** Observations that are dependent on each other.
- Pairs arbitrage trade** A trade in two closely related stocks involving the short sale of one and the purchase of the other.
- Panel data** Observations through time on a single characteristic of multiple observational units.
- Par curve** A sequence of yields-to-maturity such that each bond is priced at par value. The bonds are assumed to have the same currency, credit risk, liquidity, tax status, and annual yields stated for the same periodicity.
- Par value** The amount of principal on a bond.
- Parallel shift** A parallel yield curve shift implies that all rates change by the same amount in the same direction.
- Parameter** A descriptive measure computed from or used to describe a population of data, conventionally represented by Greek letters.
- Parametric test** Any test (or procedure) concerned with parameters or whose validity depends on assumptions concerning the population generating the sample.
- Pari passu** On an equal footing.
- Partial duration** See *key rate duration*.
- Participating preference shares** Preference shares that entitle shareholders to receive the standard preferred dividend plus the opportunity to receive an additional dividend if the company's profits exceed a pre-specified level.

- Pass-through rate** The coupon rate of a mortgage pass-through security.
- Passive investment** A buy and hold approach in which an investor does not make portfolio changes based on short-term expectations of changing market or security performance.
- Passive strategy** In reference to short-term cash management, it is an investment strategy characterized by simple decision rules for making daily investments.
- Payable date** The day that the company actually mails out (or electronically transfers) a dividend payment.
- Payment date** The day that the company actually mails out (or electronically transfers) a dividend payment.
- Payments system** The system for the transfer of money.
- Peak** The highest point of a business cycle.
- Peer group** A group of companies engaged in similar business activities whose economics and valuation are influenced by closely related factors.
- Pennants** A technical analysis continuation pattern formed by trendlines that converge to form a triangle, typically over a short period.
- Per capita real GDP** Real GDP divided by the size of the population, often used as a measure of the average standard of living in a country.
- Per unit contribution margin** The amount that each unit sold contributes to covering fixed costs—that is, the difference between the price per unit and the variable cost per unit.
- Percentage-of-completion** A method of revenue recognition in which, in each accounting period, the company estimates what percentage of the contract is complete and then reports that percentage of the total contract revenue in its income statement.
- Percentiles** Quantiles that divide a distribution into 100 equal parts.
- Perfect competition** A market structure in which the individual firm has virtually no impact on market price, because it is assumed to be a very small seller among a very large number of firms selling essentially identical products.
- Perfectly elastic** When the quantity demanded or supplied of a given good is infinitely sensitive to a change in the value of a specified variable (e.g., price).
- Perfectly inelastic** When the quantity demanded or supplied of a given good is completely insensitive to a change in the value of a specified variable (e.g., price).
- Performance appraisal** The evaluation of risk-adjusted performance; the evaluation of investment skill.
- Performance bond** See *margin bond*.
- Performance evaluation** The measurement and assessment of the outcomes of investment management decisions.
- Performance fee** Fees paid to the general partner from the limited partner(s) based on realized profits.
- Performance measurement** The calculation of returns in a logical and consistent manner.
- Period costs** Costs (e.g., executives' salaries) that cannot be directly matched with the timing of revenues and which are thus expensed immediately.
- Periodicity** The assumed number of periods in the year, typically matches the frequency of coupon payments.
- Permanent differences** Differences between tax and financial reporting of revenue (expenses) that will not be reversed at some future date. These result in a difference between the company's effective tax rate and statutory tax rate and do not result in a deferred tax item.
- Permissioned networks** Networks that are fully open only to select participants on a DLT network.
- Permissionless networks** Networks that are fully open to any user on a DLT network.
- Permutation** An ordered listing.
- Perpetual bonds** Bonds with no stated maturity date.
- Perpetuity** A perpetual annuity, or a set of never-ending level sequential cash flows, with the first cash flow occurring one period from now. A bond that does not mature.
- Personal consumption expenditures** All domestic personal consumption; the basis for a price index for such consumption called the PCE price index.
- Personal disposable income** Equal to personal income less personal taxes.
- Personal income** A broad measure of household income that includes all income received by households, whether earned or unearned; measures the ability of consumers to make purchases.
- Plain vanilla bond** Bond that makes periodic, fixed coupon payments during the bond's life and a lump-sum payment of principal at maturity. Also called *conventional bond*.
- Platykurtic** Describes a distribution that has relatively less weight in the tails than the normal distribution.
- Point and figure chart** A technical analysis chart that is constructed with columns of X's alternating with columns of O's such that the horizontal axis represents only the number of changes in price without reference to time or volume.
- Point estimate** A single numerical estimate of an unknown quantity, such as a population parameter.
- Point of sale (POS)** Systems that capture transaction data at the physical location in which the sale is made.
- Policy rate** An interest rate that a central bank sets and announces publicly; normally the rate at which it is willing to lend money to the commercial banks.
- Population** All members of a specified group.
- Population mean** The arithmetic mean value of a population; the arithmetic mean of all the observations or values in the population.
- Population standard deviation** A measure of dispersion relating to a population in the same unit of measurement as the observations, calculated as the positive square root of the population variance.
- Population variance** A measure of dispersion relating to a population, calculated as the mean of the squared deviations around the population mean.
- Portfolio company** In private equity, the company in which the private equity fund is investing.
- Portfolio demand for money** The demand to hold speculative money balances based on the potential opportunities or risks that are inherent in other financial instruments.
- Portfolio planning** The process of creating a plan for building a portfolio that is expected to satisfy a client's investment objectives.
- Position** The quantity of an asset that an entity owns or owes.
- Positive screening** An ESG implementation approach that seeks to identify companies that embrace desired ESG-related principles.
- Posterior probability** An updated probability that reflects or comes after new information.
- Potential GDP** The level of real GDP that can be produced at full employment; measures the productive capacity of the economy.
- Power of a test** The probability of correctly rejecting the null—that is, rejecting the null hypothesis when it is false.

- Precautionary money balances** Money held to provide a buffer against unforeseen events that might require money.
- Precautionary stocks** A level of inventory beyond anticipated needs that provides a cushion in the event that it takes longer to replenish inventory than expected or in the case of greater than expected demand.
- Preference shares** A type of equity interest which ranks above common shares with respect to the payment of dividends and the distribution of the company's net assets upon liquidation. They have characteristics of both debt and equity securities. Also called *preferred stock*.
- Preferred stock** See *preference shares*.
- Premium** In the case of bonds, premium refers to the amount by which a bond is priced above its face (par) value. In the case of an option, the amount paid for the option contract.
- Prepaid expense** A normal operating expense that has been paid in advance of when it is due.
- Prepayment option** Contractual provision that entitles the borrower to prepay all or part of the outstanding mortgage principal prior to the scheduled due date when the principal must be repaid. Also called *early repayment option*.
- Prepayment penalty mortgages** Mortgages that stipulate a monetary penalty if a borrower prepays within a certain time period after the mortgage is originated.
- Prepayment risk** The uncertainty that the timing of the actual cash flows will be different from the scheduled cash flows as set forth in the loan agreement due to the borrowers' ability to alter payments, usually to take advantage of interest rate movements.
- Present value (PV)** The present discounted value of future cash flows: For assets, the present discounted value of the future net cash inflows that the asset is expected to generate; for liabilities, the present discounted value of the future net cash outflows that are expected to be required to settle the liabilities.
- Present value models** Valuation models that estimate the intrinsic value of a security as the present value of the future benefits expected to be received from the security. Also called *discounted cash flow models*.
- Pretax margin** A profitability ratio calculated as earnings before taxes divided by revenue.
- Price elasticity of demand** Measures the percentage change in the quantity demanded, given a percentage change in the price of a given product.
- Price index** Represents the average prices of a basket of goods and services.
- Price limits** Limits imposed by a futures exchange on the price change that can occur from one day to the next.
- Price multiple** A ratio that compares the share price with some sort of monetary flow or value to allow evaluation of the relative worth of a company's stock.
- Price priority** The principle that the highest priced buy orders and the lowest priced sell orders execute first.
- Price relative** A ratio of an ending price over a beginning price; it is equal to 1 plus the holding period return on the asset.
- Price return** Measures *only* the price appreciation or percentage change in price of the securities in an index or portfolio.
- Price return index** An index that reflects *only* the price appreciation or percentage change in price of the constituent securities. Also called *price index*.
- Price stability** In economics, refers to an inflation rate that is low on average and not subject to wide fluctuation.
- Price takers** Producers that must accept whatever price the market dictates.
- Price to book value** A valuation ratio calculated as price per share divided by book value per share.
- Price to cash flow** A valuation ratio calculated as price per share divided by cash flow per share.
- Price to earnings ratio** (P/E ratio or P/E) The ratio of share price to earnings per share.
- Price to sales** A valuation ratio calculated as price per share divided by sales per share.
- Price value of a basis point** A version of money duration, it is an estimate of the change in the full price of a bond given a 1 basis point change in the yield-to-maturity.
- Price weighting** An index weighting method in which the weight assigned to each constituent security is determined by dividing its price by the sum of all the prices of the constituent securities.
- Priced risk** Risk for which investors demand compensation for bearing (e.g. equity risk, company-specific factors, macroeconomic factors).
- Primary bond markets** Markets in which issuers first sell bonds to investors to raise capital.
- Primary capital markets (primary markets)** The market where securities are first sold and the issuers receive the proceeds.
- Primary dealers** Financial institutions that are authorized to deal in new issues of sovereign bonds and that serve primarily as trading counterparties of the office responsible for issuing sovereign bonds.
- Primary market** The market where securities are first sold and the issuers receive the proceeds.
- Prime brokers** Brokers that provide services including custody, administration, lending, short borrowing, and trading.
- Principal** The amount of funds originally invested in the project or instrument; the face value to be paid at maturity.
- Principal-agent relationship** A relationship in which a principal hires an agent to perform a particular task or service; also known as an *agency relationship*.
- Principal amount** Amount that an issuer agrees to repay the debt holders on the maturity date.
- Principal business activity** The business activity from which a company derives a majority of its revenues and/or earnings.
- Principal value** Amount that an issuer agrees to repay the debt holders on the maturity date.
- Principle of no arbitrage** See *arbitrage-free pricing*.
- Prior probabilities** Probabilities reflecting beliefs prior to the arrival of new information.
- Priority of claims** Priority of payment, with the most senior or highest ranking debt having the first claim on the cash flows and assets of the issuer.
- Private equity securities** Securities that are not listed on public exchanges and have no active secondary market. They are issued primarily to institutional investors via non-public offerings, such as private placements.
- Private investment in public equity** An investment in the equity of a publicly traded firm that is made at a discount to the market value of the firm's shares.
- Private placement** Typically a non-underwritten, unregistered offering of securities that are sold only to an investor or a small group of investors. It can be accomplished directly between the issuer and the investor(s) or through an investment bank.
- Probability** A number between 0 and 1 describing the chance that a stated event will occur.

- Probability density function** A function with non-negative values such that probability can be described by areas under the curve graphing the function.
- Probability distribution** A distribution that specifies the probabilities of a random variable's possible outcomes.
- Probability function** A function that specifies the probability that the random variable takes on a specific value.
- Producer price index** Reflects the price changes experienced by domestic producers in a country.
- Production function** Provides the quantitative link between the level of output that the economy can produce and the inputs used in the production process.
- Productivity** The amount of output produced by workers in a given period of time—for example, output per hour worked; measures the efficiency of labor.
- Profit** The return that owners of a company receive for the use of their capital and the assumption of financial risk when making their investments.
- Profit and loss (P&L) statement** A financial statement that provides information about a company's profitability over a stated period of time.
- Profit margin** An indicator of profitability, calculated as net income divided by revenue; indicates how much of each dollar of revenues is left after all costs and expenses.
- Profitability ratios** Ratios that measure a company's ability to generate profitable sales from its resources (assets).
- Project sequencing** To defer the decision to invest in a future project until the outcome of some or all of a current project is known. Projects are sequenced through time, so that investing in a project creates the option to invest in future projects.
- Promissory note** A written promise to pay a certain amount of money on demand.
- Property, plant, and equipment** Tangible assets that are expected to be used for more than one period in either the production or supply of goods or services, or for administrative purposes.
- Prospectus** The document that describes the terms of a new bond issue and helps investors perform their analysis on the issue.
- Protective put** An option strategy in which a long position in an asset is combined with a long position in a put.
- Proxy contest** Corporate takeover mechanism in which shareholders are persuaded to vote for a group seeking a controlling position on a company's board of directors.
- Proxy voting** A process that enables shareholders who are unable to attend a meeting to authorize another individual to vote on their behalf.
- Pseudo-random numbers** Numbers produced by random number generators.
- Public offer** See *public offering*.
- Public offering** An offering of securities in which any member of the public may buy the securities. Also called *public offer*.
- Pull on liquidity** When disbursements are paid too quickly or trade credit availability is limited, requiring companies to expend funds before they receive funds from sales that could cover the liability.
- Pure discount bonds** See *zero-coupon bonds*.
- Pure discount instruments** Instruments that pay interest as the difference between the amount borrowed and the amount paid back.
- Pure-play method** A method for estimating the beta for a company or project; it requires using a comparable company's beta and adjusting it for financial leverage differences.
- Put** An option that gives the holder the right to sell an underlying asset to another party at a fixed price over a specific period of time.
- Put–call–forward parity** The relationship among puts, calls, and forward contracts.
- Put–call parity** An equation expressing the equivalence (parity) of a portfolio of a call and a bond with a portfolio of a put and the underlying, which leads to the relationship between put and call prices.
- Put/call ratio** A technical analysis indicator that evaluates market sentiment based upon the volume of put options traded divided by the volume of call options traded for a particular financial instrument.
- Put option** An option that gives the holder the right to sell an underlying asset to another party at a fixed price over a specific period of time.
- Puttable bonds** Bonds that give the bondholder the right to sell the bond back to the issuer at a predetermined price on specified dates.
- Puttable common shares** Common shares that give investors the option (or right) to sell their shares (i.e., “put” them) back to the issuing company at a price that is specified when the shares are originally issued.
- Quantile** A value at or below which a stated fraction of the data lies. Also called *fractile*.
- Quantitative easing** An expansionary monetary policy based on aggressive open market purchase operations.
- Quantity equation of exchange** An expression that over a given period, the amount of money used to purchase all goods and services in an economy, $M \times V$, is equal to monetary value of this output, $P \times Y$.
- Quantity theory of money** Asserts that total spending (in money terms) is proportional to the quantity of money.
- Quartiles** Quartiles that divide a distribution into four equal parts.
- Quasi-fixed cost** A cost that stays the same over a range of production but can change to another constant level when production moves outside of that range.
- Quasi-government bonds** A bond issued by an entity that is either owned or sponsored by a national government. Also called *agency bond*.
- Quick assets** Assets that can be most readily converted to cash (e.g., cash, short-term marketable investments, receivables).
- Quick ratio** A stringent measure of liquidity that indicates a company's ability to satisfy current liabilities with its most liquid assets, calculated as (cash + short-term marketable investments + receivables) divided by current liabilities.
- Quintiles** Quartiles that divide a distribution into five equal parts.
- Quota rents** Profits that foreign producers can earn by raising the price of their goods higher than they would without a quota.
- Quotas** Government policies that restrict the quantity of a good that can be imported into a country, generally for a specified period of time.
- Quote-driven market** A market in which dealers acting as principals facilitate trading.
- Quoted interest rate** A quoted interest rate that does not account for compounding within the year. Also called *stated annual interest rate*.
- Quoted margin** The specified yield spread over the reference rate, used to compensate an investor for the difference in the credit risk of the issuer and that implied by the reference rate.

- Random number** An observation drawn from a uniform distribution.
- Random number generator** An algorithm that produces uniformly distributed random numbers between 0 and 1.
- Random variable** A quantity whose future outcomes are uncertain.
- Range** The difference between the maximum and minimum values in a dataset.
- Ratio scales** A measurement scale that has all the characteristics of interval measurement scales as well as a true zero point as the origin.
- Real GDP** The value of goods and services produced, measured at base year prices.
- Real income** Income adjusted for the effect of inflation on the purchasing power of money. Also known as the *purchasing power of income*. If income remains constant and a good's price falls, real income is said to rise, even though the number of monetary units (e.g., dollars) remains unchanged.
- Real interest rate** Nominal interest rate minus the expected rate of inflation.
- Real risk-free interest rate** The single-period interest rate for a completely risk-free security if no inflation were expected.
- Realizable (settlement) value** With reference to assets, the amount of cash or cash equivalents that could currently be obtained by selling the asset in an orderly disposal; with reference to liabilities, the undiscounted amount of cash or cash equivalents expected to be paid to satisfy the liabilities in the normal course of business.
- Rebalancing** Adjusting the weights of the constituent securities in an index.
- Rebalancing policy** The set of rules that guide the process of restoring a portfolio's asset class weights to those specified in the strategic asset allocation.
- Recession** A period during which real GDP decreases (i.e., negative growth) for at least two successive quarters, or a period of significant decline in total output, income, employment, and sales usually lasting from six months to a year.
- Recognition lag** The lag in government response to an economic problem resulting from the delay in confirming a change in the state of the economy.
- Recourse loan** Loan in which the lender has a claim against the borrower for any shortfall between the outstanding mortgage balance and the proceeds received from the sale of the property.
- Redemption yield** See *yield to maturity*.
- Redemptions** Withdrawals of funds by investors.
- Refinancing rate** A type of central bank policy rate.
- Registered bonds** Bonds for which ownership is recorded by either name or serial number.
- Relative dispersion** The amount of dispersion relative to a reference value or benchmark.
- Relative frequency** With reference to an interval of grouped data, the number of observations in the interval divided by the total number of observations in the sample.
- Relative price** The price of a specific good or service in comparison with those of other goods and services.
- Relative strength analysis** A comparison of the performance of one asset with the performance of another asset or a benchmark based on changes in the ratio of the securities' respective prices over time.
- Relative strength index** A technical analysis momentum oscillator that compares a security's gains with its losses over a set period.
- Renewable resources** Resources that can be replenished, such as a forest.
- Rent** Payment for the use of property.
- Reorganization** Agreements made by a company in bankruptcy under which a company's capital structure is altered and/or alternative arrangements are made for debt repayment; US Chapter 11 bankruptcy. The company emerges from bankruptcy as a going concern.
- Replication** The creation of an asset or portfolio from another asset, portfolio, and/or derivative.
- Repo** A form of collateralized loan involving the sale of a security with a simultaneous agreement by the seller to buy the same security back from the purchaser at an agreed-on price and future date. The party who sells the security at the inception of the repurchase agreement and buys it back at maturity is borrowing money from the other party, and the security sold and subsequently repurchased represents the collateral.
- Repo margin** The difference between the market value of the security used as collateral and the value of the loan. Also called *haircut*.
- Repo rate** The interest rate on a repurchase agreement.
- Repurchase agreement** A form of collateralized loan involving the sale of a security with a simultaneous agreement by the seller to buy the same security back from the purchaser at an agreed-on price and future date. The party who sells the security at the inception of the repurchase agreement and buys it back at maturity is borrowing money from the other party, and the security sold and subsequently repurchased represents the collateral.
- Repurchase date** The date when the party who sold the security at the inception of a repurchase agreement buys the security back from the cash lending counterparty.
- Repurchase price** The price at which the party who sold the security at the inception of the repurchase agreement buys the security back from the cash lending counterparty.
- Required margin** The yield spread over, or under, the reference rate such that an FRN is priced at par value on a rate reset date.
- Required rate of return** See *market discount rate*.
- Required yield** See *market discount rate*.
- Required yield spread** The difference between the yield-to-maturity on a new bond and the benchmark rate; additional compensation required by investors for the difference in risk and tax status of a bond relative to a government bond. Sometimes called the *spread over the benchmark*.
- Reserve accounts** Form of internal credit enhancement that relies on creating accounts and depositing in these accounts cash that can be used to absorb losses. Also called *reserve funds*.
- Reserve funds** See *reserve accounts*.
- Reserve requirement** The requirement for banks to hold reserves in proportion to the size of deposits.
- Resistance** In technical analysis, a price range in which selling activity is sufficient to stop the rise in the price of a security.
- Responsible investing** The practice of identifying companies that can efficiently manage their financial, environmental, and human capital resources to generate attractive long-term profitability; often synonymous with *sustainable investing*.
- Restricted payments** A bond covenant meant to protect creditors by limiting how much cash can be paid out to shareholders over time.

- Retail method** An inventory accounting method in which the sales value of an item is reduced by the gross margin to calculate the item's cost.
- Retracement** In technical analysis, a reversal in the movement of a security's price such that it is counter to the prevailing longer-term price trend.
- Return-generating model** A model that can provide an estimate of the expected return of a security given certain parameters and estimates of the values of the independent variables in the model.
- Return on assets (ROA)** A profitability ratio calculated as net income divided by average total assets; indicates a company's net profit generated per dollar invested in total assets.
- Return on equity (ROE)** A profitability ratio calculated as net income divided by average shareholders' equity.
- Return on sales** An indicator of profitability, calculated as net income divided by revenue; indicates how much of each dollar of revenues is left after all costs and expenses.
- Return on total capital** A profitability ratio calculated as EBIT divided by the sum of short- and long-term debt and equity.
- Revaluation model** The process of valuing long-lived assets at fair value, rather than at cost less accumulated depreciation. Any resulting profit or loss is either reported on the income statement and/or through equity under revaluation surplus.
- Revenue** The amount charged for the delivery of goods or services in the ordinary activities of a business over a stated period; the inflows of economic resources to a company over a stated period.
- Reversal patterns** A type of pattern used in technical analysis to predict the end of a trend and a change in direction of the security's price.
- Reverse repo** A repurchase agreement viewed from the perspective of the cash lending counterparty.
- Reverse repurchase agreement** A repurchase agreement viewed from the perspective of the cash lending counterparty.
- Reverse stock split** A reduction in the number of shares outstanding with a corresponding increase in share price, but no change to the company's underlying fundamentals.
- Revolving credit agreements** The strongest form of short-term bank borrowing facilities; they are in effect for multiple years (e.g., 3–5 years) and may have optional medium-term loan features.
- Rho** The sensitivity of the option price to the risk-free rate.
- Ricardian equivalence** An economic theory that implies that it makes no difference whether a government finances a deficit by increasing taxes or issuing debt.
- Risk** Exposure to uncertainty. The chance of a loss or adverse outcome as a result of an action, inaction, or external event.
- Risk averse** The assumption that an investor will choose the least risky alternative.
- Risk aversion** The degree of an investor's inability and unwillingness to take risk.
- Risk budgeting** The establishment of objectives for individuals, groups, or divisions of an organization that takes into account the allocation of an acceptable level of risk.
- Risk exposure** The state of being exposed or vulnerable to a risk. The extent to which an entity is sensitive to underlying risks.
- Risk governance** The top-down process and guidance that directs risk management activities to align with and support the overall enterprise.
- Risk management** The process of identifying the level of risk an entity wants, measuring the level of risk the entity currently has, taking actions that bring the actual level of risk to the desired level of risk, and monitoring the new actual level of risk so that it continues to be aligned with the desired level of risk.
- Risk management framework** The infrastructure, process, and analytics needed to support effective risk management in an organization.
- Risk-neutral pricing** Sometimes said of derivatives pricing, uses the fact that arbitrage opportunities guarantee that a risk-free portfolio consisting of the underlying and the derivative must earn the risk-free rate.
- Risk-neutral probabilities** Weights that are used to compute a binomial option price. They are the probabilities that would apply if a risk-neutral investor valued an option.
- Risk premium** An extra return expected by investors for bearing some specified risk.
- Risk shifting** Actions to change the distribution of risk outcomes.
- Risk tolerance** The amount of risk an investor is willing and able to bear to achieve an investment goal.
- Risk transfer** Actions to pass on a risk to another party, often, but not always, in the form of an insurance policy.
- Robo-adviser** A machine-based analytical tool or service that provides technology-driven investment solutions through online platforms.
- Robust** The quality of being relatively unaffected by a violation of assumptions.
- Rule of 72** The principle that the approximate number of years necessary for an investment to double is 72 divided by the stated interest rate.
- Running yield** See *current yield*.
- Safety-first rules** Rules for portfolio selection that focus on the risk that portfolio value will fall below some minimum acceptable level over some time horizon.
- Safety stock** A level of inventory beyond anticipated needs that provides a cushion in the event that it takes longer to replenish inventory than expected or in the case of greater than expected demand.
- Sales** Generally, a synonym for revenue; "sales" is generally understood to refer to the sale of goods, whereas "revenue" is understood to include the sale of goods or services.
- Sales risk** Uncertainty with respect to the quantity of goods and services that a company is able to sell and the price it is able to achieve; the risk related to the uncertainty of revenues.
- Sales-type leases** A type of finance lease, from a lessor perspective, where the present value of the lease payments (lease receivable) exceeds the carrying value of the leased asset. The revenues earned by the lessor are operating (the profit on the sale) and financing (interest) in nature.
- Sample** A subset of a population.
- Sample excess kurtosis** A sample measure of the degree of a distribution's kurtosis in excess of the normal distribution's kurtosis.
- Sample kurtosis** A sample measure of the degree of a distribution's peakedness.
- Sample mean** The sum of the sample observations, divided by the sample size.

- Sample selection bias** Bias introduced by systematically excluding some members of the population according to a particular attribute—for example, the bias introduced when data availability leads to certain observations being excluded from the analysis.
- Sample skewness** A sample measure of degree of asymmetry of a distribution.
- Sample standard deviation** The positive square root of the sample variance.
- Sample statistic** A quantity computed from or used to describe a sample.
- Sample variance** A sample measure of the degree of dispersion of a distribution, calculated by dividing the sum of the squared deviations from the sample mean by the sample size minus 1.
- Sampling** The process of obtaining a sample.
- Sampling distribution** The distribution of all distinct possible values that a statistic can assume when computed from samples of the same size randomly drawn from the same population.
- Sampling error** The difference between the observed value of a statistic and the quantity it is intended to estimate.
- Sampling plan** The set of rules used to select a sample.
- Say on pay** A process whereby shareholders may vote on executive remuneration (compensation) matters.
- Say's law** Named for French economist J.B. Say: All that is produced will be sold because supply creates its own demand.
- Scenario analysis** Analysis that shows the changes in key financial quantities that result from given (economic) events, such as the loss of customers, the loss of a supply source, or a catastrophic event; a risk management technique involving examination of the performance of a portfolio under specified situations. Closely related to stress testing.
- Screening** The application of a set of criteria to reduce a set of potential investments to a smaller set having certain desired characteristics.
- Seasoned offering** An offering in which an issuer sells additional units of a previously issued security.
- Second-degree price discrimination** When the monopolist charges different per-unit prices using the quantity purchased as an indicator of how highly the customer values the product.
- Second lien** A secured interest in the pledged assets that ranks below first lien debt in both collateral protection and priority of payment.
- Secondary bond markets** Markets in which existing bonds are traded among investors.
- Secondary market** The market where securities are traded among investors.
- Secondary precedence rules** Rules that determine how to rank orders placed at the same time.
- Sector** A group of related industries.
- Sector indexes** Indexes that represent and track different economic sectors—such as consumer goods, energy, finance, health care, and technology—on either a national, regional, or global basis.
- Secured bonds** Bonds secured by assets or financial guarantees pledged to ensure debt repayment in case of default.
- Secured debt** Debt in which the debtholder has a direct claim—a pledge from the issuer—on certain assets and their associated cash flows.
- Securitization** A process that involves moving assets into a special legal entity, which then uses the assets as guarantees to secure a bond issue.
- Securitized assets** Assets that are typically used to create asset-backed bonds; for example, when a bank securitizes a pool of loans, the loans are said to be securitized.
- Security characteristic line** A plot of the excess return of a security on the excess return of the market.
- Security market index** A portfolio of securities representing a given security market, market segment, or asset class.
- Security market line** (SML) The graph of the capital asset pricing model.
- Security selection** The process of selecting individual securities; typically, security selection has the objective of generating superior risk-adjusted returns relative to a portfolio's benchmark.
- Self-investment limits** With respect to investment limitations applying to pension plans, restrictions on the percentage of assets that can be invested in securities issued by the pension plan sponsor.
- Sell-side firm** A broker or dealer that sells securities to and provides independent investment research and recommendations to investment management companies.
- Semi-strong-form efficient market** A market in which security prices reflect all publicly known and available information.
- Semiannual bond basis yield** An annual rate having a periodicity of two; also known as a *semiannual bond equivalent yield*.
- Semiannual bond equivalent yield** See *semiannual bond basis yield*.
- Semideviation** The positive square root of semivariance (sometimes called *semistandard deviation*).
- Semilogarithmic** Describes a scale constructed so that equal intervals on the vertical scale represent equal rates of change, and equal intervals on the horizontal scale represent equal amounts of change.
- Semivariance** The average squared deviation below the mean.
- Seniority ranking** Priority of payment of various debt obligations.
- Sensitivity analysis** Analysis that shows the range of possible outcomes as specific assumptions are changed.
- Separately managed account** (SMA) An investment portfolio managed exclusively for the benefit of an individual or institution.
- Serial maturity structure** Structure for a bond issue in which the maturity dates are spread out during the bond's life; a stated number of bonds mature and are paid off each year before final maturity.
- Settlement** The process that occurs after a trade is completed, the securities are passed to the buyer, and payment is received by the seller.
- Settlement date** Date when the buyer makes cash payment and the seller delivers the security.
- Settlement price** The official price, designated by the clearinghouse, from which daily gains and losses will be determined and marked to market.
- Share repurchase** A transaction in which a company buys back its own shares. Unlike stock dividends and stock splits, share repurchases use corporate cash.
- Shareholder activism** Strategies used by shareholders to attempt to compel a company to act in a desired manner.
- Shareholder engagement** The process whereby companies engage with their shareholders.

- Shareholders' equity** Assets less liabilities; the residual interest in the assets after subtracting the liabilities.
- Sharpe ratio** The average return in excess of the risk-free rate divided by the standard deviation of return; a measure of the average excess return earned per unit of standard deviation of return.
- Shelf registration** Type of public offering that allows the issuer to file a single, all-encompassing offering circular that covers a series of bond issues.
- Short** The seller of an asset or derivative contract. Also refers to the position of being short an asset or derivative contract.
- Short position** A position in an asset or contract in which one has sold an asset one does not own, or in which a right under a contract can be exercised against oneself.
- Short-run average total cost** The curve describing average total cost when some costs are considered fixed.
- Short selling** A transaction in which borrowed securities are sold with the intention to repurchase them at a lower price at a later date and return them to the lender.
- Shortfall risk** The risk that portfolio value will fall below some minimum acceptable level over some time horizon.
- Shutdown point** The point at which average revenue is equal to the firm's average variable cost.
- Simple interest** The interest earned each period on the original investment; interest calculated on the principal only.
- Simple random sample** A subset of a larger population created in such a way that each element of the population has an equal probability of being selected to the subset.
- Simple random sampling** The procedure of drawing a sample to satisfy the definition of a simple random sample.
- Simple yield** The sum of the coupon payments plus the straight-line amortized share of the gain or loss, divided by the flat price.
- Simulation** Computer-generated sensitivity or scenario analysis that is based on probability models for the factors that drive outcomes.
- Simulation trial** A complete pass through the steps of a simulation.
- Single-step format** With respect to the format of the income statement, a format that does not subtotal for gross profit (revenue minus cost of goods sold).
- Sinking fund arrangement** Provision that reduces the credit risk of a bond issue by requiring the issuer to retire a portion of the bond's principal outstanding each year.
- Situational influences** External factors, such as environmental or cultural elements, that shape our behavior.
- Skewed** Not symmetrical.
- Skewness** A quantitative measure of skew (lack of symmetry); a synonym of skew.
- Small country** A country that is a price taker in the world market for a product and cannot influence the world market price.
- Smart contract** A computer program that is designed to self-execute on the basis of pre-specified terms and conditions agreed to by parties to a contract.
- Socially responsible investing** An investment approach that excludes investments in companies or industries that deviate from an organization's beliefs and sometimes includes investments with favorable environmental or social profiles.
- Solvency** With respect to financial statement analysis, the ability of a company to fulfill its long-term obligations.
- Solvency ratios** Ratios that measure a company's ability to meet its long-term obligations.
- Solvency risk** The risk that an entity does not survive or succeed because it runs out of cash, even though it might otherwise be solvent.
- Sovereign bonds** A bond issued by a national government.
- Sovereign yield spread** An estimate of the country spread (country equity premium) for a developing nation that is based on a comparison of bonds yields in country being analyzed and a developed country. The sovereign yield spread is the difference between a government bond yield in the country being analyzed, denominated in the currency of the developed country, and the Treasury bond yield on a similar maturity bond in the developed country.
- Sovereigns** A bond issued by a national government.
- Spearman rank correlation coefficient** A measure of correlation applied to ranked data.
- Special dividend** A dividend paid by a company that does not pay dividends on a regular schedule, or a dividend that supplements regular cash dividends with an extra payment.
- Special purpose entity** A non-operating entity created to carry out a specified purpose, such as leasing assets or securitizing receivables; can be a corporation, partnership, trust, limited liability, or partnership formed to facilitate a specific type of business activity. Also called *special purpose vehicle* or *variable interest entity*.
- Special purpose vehicle** See *special purpose entity*.
- Specific identification method** An inventory accounting method that identifies which specific inventory items were sold and which remained in inventory to be carried over to later periods.
- Speculative demand for money** The demand to hold speculative money balances based on the potential opportunities or risks that are inherent in other financial instruments. Also called *portfolio demand for money*.
- Speculative money balances** Monies held in anticipation that other assets will decline in value.
- Split coupon bond** See *deferred coupon bond*.
- Sponsored** A type of depository receipt in which the foreign company whose shares are held by the depository has a direct involvement in the issuance of the receipts.
- Spot curve** A sequence of yields-to-maturity on zero-coupon bonds. Sometimes called *zero* or *strip curve* because coupon payments are "stripped" off of the bonds.
- Spot markets** Markets in which assets are traded for immediate delivery.
- Spot prices** The price of an asset for immediately delivery.
- Spot rates** A sequence of market discount rates that correspond to the cash flow dates; yields-to-maturity on zero-coupon bonds maturing at the date of each cash flow.
- Spread** In general, the difference in yield between different fixed income securities. Often used to refer to the difference between the yield-to-maturity and the benchmark.
- Spread over the benchmark** See *required yield spread*.
- Spread risk** Bond price risk arising from changes in the yield spread on credit-risky bonds; reflects changes in the market's assessment and/or pricing of credit migration (or downgrade) risk and market liquidity risk.
- Stackelberg model** A prominent model of strategic decisionmaking in which firms are assumed to make their decisions sequentially.
- Stagflation** When a high inflation rate is combined with a high level of unemployment and a slowdown of the economy.
- Staggered boards** Election process whereby directors are typically divided into multiple classes that are elected separately in consecutive years—that is, one class every year.

- Stakeholder management** The identification, prioritization, and understanding of the interests of stakeholder groups, and managing the company's relationships with these groups.
- Stakeholders** Individuals or groups of individuals who may be affected either directly or indirectly by a decision and thus have an interest, or stake, in the decision.
- Standard cost** With respect to inventory accounting, the planned or target unit cost of inventory items or services.
- Standard deviation** The positive square root of the variance; a measure of dispersion in the same units as the original data.
- Standard normal distribution** The normal density with mean (μ) equal to 0 and standard deviation (σ) equal to 1.
- Standardizing** A transformation that involves subtracting the mean and dividing the result by the standard deviation.
- Standards of conduct** Behaviors required by a group; established benchmarks that clarify or enhance a group's code of ethics.
- Standing limit orders** A limit order at a price below market and which therefore is waiting to trade.
- Stated annual interest rate** A quoted interest rate that does not account for compounding within the year. Also called *quoted interest rate*.
- Statement of changes in equity** (statement of owners' equity) A financial statement that reconciles the beginning-of-period and end-of-period balance sheet values of shareholders' equity; provides information about all factors affecting shareholders' equity. Also called *statement of owners' equity*.
- Statement of financial condition** The financial statement that presents an entity's current financial position by disclosing resources the entity controls (its assets) and the claims on those resources (its liabilities and equity claims), as of a particular point in time (the date of the balance sheet).
- Statement of financial position** The financial statement that presents an entity's current financial position by disclosing resources the entity controls (its assets) and the claims on those resources (its liabilities and equity claims), as of a particular point in time (the date of the balance sheet).
- Statement of operations** A financial statement that provides information about a company's profitability over a stated period of time.
- Statistic** A quantity computed from or used to describe a sample of data.
- Statistical inference** Making forecasts, estimates, or judgments about a larger group from a smaller group actually observed; using a sample statistic to infer the value of an unknown population parameter.
- Statistically significant** A result indicating that the null hypothesis can be rejected; with reference to an estimated regression coefficient, frequently understood to mean a result indicating that the corresponding population regression coefficient is different from 0.
- Statutory voting** A common method of voting where each share represents one vote.
- Step-up coupon bond** Bond for which the coupon, which may be fixed or floating, increases by specified margins at specified dates.
- Stock dividend** A type of dividend in which a company distributes additional shares of its common stock to shareholders instead of cash.
- Stock-out losses** Profits lost from not having sufficient inventory on hand to satisfy demand.
- Stock split** An increase in the number of shares outstanding with a consequent decrease in share price, but no change to the company's underlying fundamentals.
- Stop-loss order** See *stop order*.
- Stop order** An order in which a trader has specified a stop price condition. Also called *stop-loss order*.
- Store of value** The quality of tending to preserve value.
- Store of wealth** Goods that depend on the fact that they do not perish physically over time, and on the belief that others would always value the good.
- Straight-line method** A depreciation method that allocates evenly the cost of a long-lived asset less its estimated residual value over the estimated useful life of the asset.
- Straight voting** A shareholder voting process in which shareholders receive one vote for each share owned.
- Strategic analysis** Analysis of the competitive environment with an emphasis on the implications of the environment for corporate strategy.
- Strategic asset allocation** The set of exposures to IPS-permissible asset classes that is expected to achieve the client's long-term objectives given the client's investment constraints.
- Strategic groups** Groups sharing distinct business models or catering to specific market segments in an industry.
- Street convention** Yield measure that neglects weekends and holidays; the internal rate of return on cash flows assuming payments are made on the scheduled dates, even when the scheduled date falls on a weekend or holiday.
- Stress testing** A specific type of scenario analysis that estimates losses in rare and extremely unfavorable combinations of events or scenarios.
- Strong-form efficient market** A market in which security prices reflect all public and private information.
- Structural (or cyclically adjusted) budget deficit** The deficit that would exist if the economy was at full employment (or full potential output).
- Structural subordination** Arises in a holding company structure when the debt of operating subsidiaries is serviced by the cash flow and assets of the subsidiaries before funds can be passed to the holding company to service debt at the parent level.
- Structured financial instruments** Financial instruments that share the common attribute of repackaging risks. Structured financial instruments include asset-backed securities, collateralized debt obligations, and other structured financial instruments such as capital protected, yield enhancement, participation and leveraged instruments.
- Subjective probability** A probability drawing on personal or subjective judgment.
- Subordinated debt** A class of unsecured debt that ranks below a firm's senior unsecured obligations.
- Subordination** Form of internal credit enhancement that relies on creating more than one bond tranche and ordering the claim priorities for ownership or interest in an asset between the tranches. The ordering of the claim priorities is called a senior/subordinated structure, where the tranches of highest seniority are called senior followed by subordinated or junior tranches. Also called *credit tranching*.
- Substitutes** Said of two goods or services such that if the price of one increases the demand for the other tends to increase, holding all other things equal (e.g., butter and margarine).
- Sunk cost** A cost that has already been incurred.
- Supervised learning** A machine learning approach that makes use of labeled training data.

- Supply shock** A typically unexpected disturbance to supply.
- Support** In technical analysis, a price range in which buying activity is sufficient to stop the decline in the price of a security.
- Support tranche** A class or tranche in a CMO that protects the PAC tranche from prepayment risk.
- Supranational bonds** A bond issued by a supranational agency such as the World Bank.
- Surety bond** Form of external credit enhancement whereby a rated and regulated insurance company guarantees to reimburse bondholders for any losses incurred up to a maximum amount if the issuer defaults.
- Survey approach** An estimate of the equity risk premium that is based upon estimates provided by a panel of finance experts.
- Survivorship bias** The bias resulting from a test design that fails to account for companies that have gone bankrupt, merged, or are otherwise no longer reported in a database.
- Sustainable growth rate** The rate of dividend (and earnings) growth that can be sustained over time for a given level of return on equity, keeping the capital structure constant and without issuing additional common stock.
- Sustainable investing** The practice of identifying companies that can efficiently manage their financial, environmental, and human capital resources to generate attractive long-term profitability; often synonymous with *responsible investing*.
- Sustainable rate of economic growth** The rate of increase in the economy's productive capacity or potential GDP.
- Swap contract** An agreement between two parties to exchange a series of future cash flows.
- Syndicated loans** Loans from a group of lenders to a single borrower.
- Syndicated offering** A bond issue that is underwritten by a group of investment banks.
- Synthetic lease** A lease that is structured to provide a company with the tax benefits of ownership while not requiring the asset to be reflected on the company's financial statements.
- Systematic risk** Risk that affects the entire market or economy; it cannot be avoided and is inherent in the overall market. Systematic risk is also known as non-diversifiable or market risk.
- Systematic sampling** A procedure of selecting every k th member until reaching a sample of the desired size. The sample that results from this procedure should be approximately random.
- t-Test** A hypothesis test using a statistic (t -statistic) that follows a t -distribution.
- Tactical asset allocation** The decision to deliberately deviate from the strategic asset allocation in an attempt to add value based on forecasts of the near-term relative performance of asset classes.
- Target balance** A minimum level of cash to be held available—estimated in advance and adjusted for known funds transfers, seasonality, or other factors.
- Target capital structure** A company's chosen proportions of debt and equity.
- Target independent** A bank's ability to determine the definition of inflation that they target, the rate of inflation that they target, and the horizon over which the target is to be achieved.
- Target semideviation** The positive square root of target semivariance.
- Target semivariance** The average squared deviation below a target value.
- Tariffs** Taxes that a government levies on imported goods.
- Tax base** The amount at which an asset or liability is valued for tax purposes.
- Tax expense** An aggregate of an entity's income tax payable (or recoverable in the case of a tax benefit) and any changes in deferred tax assets and liabilities. It is essentially the income tax payable or recoverable if these had been determined based on accounting profit rather than taxable income.
- Tax loss carry forward** A taxable loss in the current period that may be used to reduce future taxable income.
- Taxable income** The portion of an entity's income that is subject to income taxes under the tax laws of its jurisdiction.
- Taxable temporary differences** Temporary differences that result in a taxable amount in a future period when determining the taxable profit as the balance sheet item is recovered or settled.
- Technical analysis** A form of security analysis that uses price and volume data, which is often displayed graphically, in decision making.
- Technology** The process a company uses to transform inputs into outputs.
- Tender offer** Corporate takeover mechanism which involves shareholders selling their interests directly to the group seeking to gain control.
- Tenor** The time-to-maturity for a bond or derivative contract. Also called *term to maturity*.
- Term maturity structure** Structure for a bond issue in which the bond's notional principal is paid off in a lump sum at maturity.
- Term structure** See *maturity structure*.
- Term structure of credit spreads** The relationship between the spreads over the "risk-free" (or benchmark) rates and times-to-maturity.
- Term structure of yield volatility** The relationship between the volatility of bond yields-to-maturity and times-to-maturity.
- Terminal stock value** The expected value of a share at the end of the investment horizon—in effect, the expected selling price. Also called *terminal value*.
- Terminal value** The expected value of a share at the end of the investment horizon—in effect, the expected selling price.
- Terms of trade** The ratio of the price of exports to the price of imports, representing those prices by export and import price indexes, respectively.
- Text analytics** The use of computer programs to analyze and derive meaning from typically large, unstructured text- or voice-based datasets.
- Thematic investing** An ESG implementation approach that focuses on investing in companies within a specific sector or industry theme.
- Third-degree price discrimination** When the monopolist segregates customers into groups based on demographic or other characteristics and offers different pricing to each group.
- Time-period bias** The possibility that when we use a time-series sample, our statistical conclusion may be sensitive to the starting and ending dates of the sample.
- Time-series data** Observations of a variable over time.
- Time tranching** The creation of classes or tranches in an ABS/MBS that possess different (expected) maturities.
- Time value** The difference between the market price of the option and its intrinsic value.

- Time value decay** Said of an option when, at expiration, no time value remains and the option is worth only its exercise value.
- Time value of money** The principles governing equivalence relationships between cash flows with different dates.
- Time-weighted rate of return** The compound rate of growth of one unit of currency invested in a portfolio during a stated measurement period; a measure of investment performance that is not sensitive to the timing and amount of withdrawals or additions to the portfolio.
- Tokenization** The process of representing ownership rights to physical assets on a blockchain or distributed ledger.
- Top-down analysis** With reference to investment selection processes, an approach that starts with macro selection (i.e., identifying attractive geographic segments and/or industry segments) and then addresses selection of the most attractive investments within those segments.
- Total comprehensive income** The change in equity during a period resulting from transaction and other events, other than those changes resulting from transactions with owners in their capacity as owners.
- Total cost** The summation of all costs, for which costs are classified as fixed or variable.
- Total factor productivity** A scale factor that reflects the portion of growth that is not accounted for by explicit factor inputs (e.g. capital and labor).
- Total fixed cost** The summation of all expenses that do not change as the level of production varies.
- Total invested capital** The sum of market value of common equity, book value of preferred equity, and face value of debt.
- Total probability rule** A rule explaining the unconditional probability of an event in terms of probabilities of the event conditional on mutually exclusive and exhaustive scenarios.
- Total probability rule for expected value** A rule explaining the expected value of a random variable in terms of expected values of the random variable conditional on mutually exclusive and exhaustive scenarios.
- Total return** Measures the price appreciation, or percentage change in price of the securities in an index or portfolio, plus any income received over the period.
- Total return index** An index that reflects the price appreciation or percentage change in price of the constituent securities plus any income received since inception.
- Total return swap** A swap in which one party agrees to pay the total return on a security. Often used as a credit derivative, in which the underlying is a bond.
- Total variable cost** The summation of all variable expenses.
- Tracking error** The standard deviation of the differences between a portfolio's returns and its benchmark's returns; a synonym of active risk.
- Tracking risk** The standard deviation of the differences between a portfolio's returns and its benchmark's returns; a synonym of active risk. Also called *tracking error*.
- Trade creation** When regional integration results in the replacement of higher cost domestic production by lower cost imports from other members.
- Trade credit** A spontaneous form of credit in which a purchaser of the goods or service is financing its purchase by delaying the date on which payment is made.
- Trade diversion** When regional integration results in lower-cost imports from non-member countries being replaced with higher-cost imports from members.
- Trade payables** Amounts that a business owes to its vendors for goods and services that were purchased from them but which have not yet been paid.
- Trade protection** Government policies that impose restrictions on trade, such as tariffs and quotas.
- Trade surplus (deficit)** When the value of exports is greater (less) than the value of imports.
- Trading securities** Securities held by a company with the intent to trade them. Also called *held-for-trading securities*.
- Traditional investment markets** Markets for traditional investments, which include all publicly traded debts and equities and shares in pooled investment vehicles that hold publicly traded debts and/or equities.
- Transactions money balances** Money balances that are held to finance transactions.
- Transactions motive** In the context of inventory management, the need for inventory as part of the routine production–sales cycle.
- Transfer payments** Welfare payments made through the social security system that exist to provide a basic minimum level of income for low-income households.
- Transparency** Said of something (e.g., a market) in which information is fully disclosed to the public and/or regulators.
- Treasury Inflation-Protected Securities** A bond issued by the United States Treasury Department that is designed to protect the investor from inflation by adjusting the principal of the bond for changes in inflation.
- Treasury stock method** A method for accounting for the effect of options (and warrants) on earnings per share (EPS) that specifies what EPS would have been if the options and warrants had been exercised and the company had used the proceeds to repurchase common stock.
- Tree diagram** A diagram with branches emanating from nodes representing either mutually exclusive chance events or mutually exclusive decisions.
- Trend** A long-term pattern of movement in a particular direction.
- Treynor ratio** A measure of risk-adjusted performance that relates a portfolio's excess returns to the portfolio's beta.
- Triangle patterns** In technical analysis, a continuation chart pattern that forms as the range between high and low prices narrows, visually forming a triangle.
- Trimmed mean** A mean computed after excluding a stated small percentage of the lowest and highest observations.
- TRIN** A flow of funds indicator applied to a broad stock market index to measure the relative extent to which money is moving into or out of rising and declining stocks.
- Triple bottoms** In technical analysis, a reversal pattern that is formed when the price forms three troughs at roughly the same price level; used to predict a change from a downtrend to an uptrend.
- Triple tops** In technical analysis, a reversal pattern that is formed when the price forms three peaks at roughly the same price level; used to predict a change from an uptrend to a downtrend.
- Trough** The lowest point of a business cycle.
- True yield** The internal rate of return on cash flows using the actual calendar including weekends and bank holidays.
- Trust deed** The governing legal credit agreement, typically incorporated by reference in the prospectus. Also called *bond indenture*.

- Trust receipt arrangement** The use of inventory as collateral for a loan. The inventory is segregated and held in trust, and the proceeds of any sale must be remitted to the lender immediately.
- Turn-of-the-year effect** Calendar anomaly that stock market returns in January are significantly higher compared to the rest of the months of the year, with most of the abnormal returns reported during the first five trading days in January.
- Two-fund separation theorem** The theory that all investors regardless of taste, risk preferences, and initial wealth will hold a combination of two portfolios or funds: a risk-free asset and an optimal portfolio of risky assets.
- Two-sided hypothesis test** A test in which the null hypothesis is rejected in favor of the alternative hypothesis if the evidence indicates that the population parameter is either smaller or larger than a hypothesized value.
- Two-tailed hypothesis test** A test in which the null hypothesis is rejected in favor of the alternative hypothesis if the evidence indicates that the population parameter is either smaller or larger than a hypothesized value.
- Two-week repo rate** The interest rate on a two-week repurchase agreement; may be used as a policy rate by a central bank.
- Type I error** The error of rejecting a true null hypothesis.
- Type II error** The error of not rejecting a false null hypothesis.
- Unanticipated (unexpected) inflation** The component of inflation that is a surprise.
- Unconditional probability** The probability of an event *not* conditioned on another event.
- Underemployed** A person who has a job but has the qualifications to work a significantly higher-paying job.
- Underlying** An asset that trades in a market in which buyers and sellers meet, decide on a price, and the seller then delivers the asset to the buyer and receives payment. The underlying is the asset or other derivative on which a particular derivative is based. The market for the underlying is also referred to as the *spot market*.
- Underwriter** A firm, usually an investment bank, that takes the risk of buying the newly issued securities from the issuer, and then reselling them to investors or to dealers, thus guaranteeing the sale of the securities at the offering price negotiated with the issuer.
- Underwritten offering** A type of securities issue mechanism in which the investment bank guarantees the sale of the securities at an offering price that is negotiated with the issuer. Also known as *firm commitment offering*.
- Unearned revenue** A liability account for money that has been collected for goods or services that have not yet been delivered; payment received in advance of providing a good or service. Also called *deferred revenue* or *deferred income*.
- Unemployed** People who are actively seeking employment but are currently without a job.
- Unemployment rate** The ratio of unemployed to the labor force.
- Unexpected inflation** The component of inflation that is a surprise.
- Unit elastic** An elasticity with a magnitude of negative one. Also called *unitary elastic*.
- Unit labor cost** The average labor cost to produce one unit of output.
- Unit normal distribution** The normal density with mean (μ) equal to 0 and standard deviation (σ) equal to 1.
- Units-of-production method** A depreciation method that allocates the cost of a long-lived asset based on actual usage during the period.
- Univariate distribution** A distribution that specifies the probabilities for a single random variable.
- Universal owners** Long-term investors, such as pension funds, that have significant assets invested in globally diversified portfolios.
- Unlimited funds** An unlimited funds environment assumes that the company can raise the funds it wants for all profitable projects simply by paying the required rate of return.
- Unsecured debt** Debt which gives the debtholder only a general claim on an issuer's assets and cash flow.
- Un-sponsored** A type of depository receipt in which the foreign company whose shares are held by the depository has no involvement in the issuance of the receipts.
- Unsupervised learning** A machine learning approach that does not make use of labeled training data.
- Up transition probability** The probability that an asset's value moves up.
- Validity instructions** Instructions which indicate when the order may be filled.
- Valuation allowance** A reserve created against deferred tax assets, based on the likelihood of realizing the deferred tax assets in future accounting periods.
- Valuation ratios** Ratios that measure the quantity of an asset or flow (e.g., earnings) in relation to the price associated with a specified claim (e.g., a share or ownership of the enterprise).
- Value at risk (VaR)** A money measure of the minimum value of losses expected during a specified time period at a given level of probability.
- Value investors** With reference to equity investors, investors who are focused on paying a relatively low share price in relation to earnings or assets per share.
- VaR** See *value at risk*.
- Variable costs** Costs that fluctuate with the level of production and sales.
- Variable-rate note** Similar to a floating-rate note, except that the spread is variable rather than constant.
- Variance** The expected value (the probability-weighted average) of squared deviations from a random variable's expected value.
- Variation margin** Additional margin that must be deposited in an amount sufficient to bring the balance up to the initial margin requirement.
- Veblen goods** Goods that increase in desirability with increasing price.
- Vega** A measure of the sensitivity of an option's price to changes in the underlying's volatility.
- Venture capital** Investments that provide "seed" or start-up capital, early-stage financing, or later-stage financing (including mezzanine-stage financing) to companies that are in early development stages and require additional capital for expansion or preparation for an initial public offering.
- Venture capital fund** A fund for private equity investors that provides financing for development-stage companies.
- Vertical analysis** Common-size analysis using only one reporting period or one base financial statement; for example, an income statement in which all items are stated as percentages of sales.
- Vertical demand schedule** Implies that some fixed quantity is demanded, regardless of price.

- Volatility** As used in option pricing, the standard deviation of the continuously compounded returns on the underlying asset.
- Voluntarily unemployed** A person voluntarily outside the labor force, such as a jobless worker refusing an available vacancy.
- Voluntary export restraint** A trade barrier under which the exporting country agrees to limit its exports of the good to its trading partners to a specific number of units.
- Vote by proxy** A mechanism that allows a designated party—such as another shareholder, a shareholder representative, or management—to vote on the shareholder’s behalf.
- Warehouse receipt arrangement** The use of inventory as collateral for a loan; similar to a trust receipt arrangement except there is a third party (i.e., a warehouse company) that supervises the inventory.
- Warrant** Attached option that gives its holder the right to buy the underlying stock of the issuing company at a fixed exercise price until the expiration date.
- Weak-form efficient market hypothesis** The belief that security prices fully reflect all past market data, which refers to all historical price and volume trading information.
- Wealth effect** An increase (decrease) in household wealth increases (decreases) consumer spending out of a given level of current income.
- Weighted average cost method** An inventory accounting method that averages the total cost of available inventory items over the total units available for sale.
- Weighted average cost of capital** A weighted average of the aftertax required rates of return on a company’s common stock, preferred stock, and long-term debt, where the weights are the fraction of each source of financing in the company’s target capital structure.
- Weighted average coupon rate** Weighting the mortgage rate of each mortgage loan in the pool by the percentage of the mortgage outstanding relative to the outstanding amount of all the mortgages in the pool.
- Weighted average life** A measure that gives investors an indication of how long they can expect to hold the MBS before it is paid off; the convention-based average time to receipt of all principal repayments. Also called *average life*.
- Weighted average maturity** Weighting the remaining number of months to maturity for each mortgage loan in the pool by the amount of the outstanding mortgage balance.
- Weighted mean** An average in which each observation is weighted by an index of its relative importance.
- Wholesale price index** Reflects the price changes experienced by domestic producers in a country.
- Winsorized mean** A mean computed after assigning a stated percent of the lowest values equal to one specified low value, and a stated percent of the highest values equal to one specified high value.
- Working capital** The difference between current assets and current liabilities.
- Working capital management** The management of a company’s short-term assets (such as inventory) and short-term liabilities (such as money owed to suppliers).
- World price** The price prevailing in the world market.
- Yield** The actual return on a debt security if it is held to maturity.
- Yield duration** The sensitivity of the bond price with respect to the bond’s own yield-to-maturity.
- Yield to maturity** Annual return that an investor earns on a bond if the investor purchases the bond today and holds it until maturity. It is the discount rate that equates the present value of the bond’s expected cash flows until maturity with the bond’s price. Also called *yield-to-redemption* or *redemption yield*.
- Yield to redemption** See *yield to maturity*.
- Yield-to-worst** The lowest of the sequence of yields-to-call and the yield-to-maturity.
- Zero-coupon bonds** Bonds that do not pay interest during the bond’s life. It is issued at a discount to par value and redeemed at par. Also called *pure discount bonds*.
- Zero volatility spread (Z-spread)** Calculates a constant yield spread over a government (or interest rate swap) spot curve.

Index

A

AII. *see* American Association of Individual Investors

absolute dispersion, 428

absolute frequency, 393

academic designations, order of, 202

acceptance region, test statistic, 628–629

account information, regular statements of, 105

account reviews

firm policies on, 105

systematic, 114

accounts

with beneficial ownership, 186, 187

family, 108, 186, 188–189

in performance calculations, 128

representative, 221

temporary new, 237, 270

accrual accounting

defined, 262

Input Data (GIPS Section I.1), 235

accrued interest, 376–377

actions

investment (*see also* Investment

Analysis, Recommendations, and Actions [Standard of Professional Conduct V])

fair dealing in, 111–112

firm policies on, 105–106

impact of, 40–41

unethical, 57

personal, 83

unethical, 57

Additional Compensation Arrangements

[Standard IV(B)], 144–145

application of the standard, 144–145

compliance procedures, 144

guidance, 144

text of, 46, 144

additional information, 262

additional services, for select clients, 116

addition rule for probabilities, 481–482

adequate compliance procedures, 147–149

administrative fee, 262

ADR. *see* American Depositary Receipt

advertisements. *see also* GIPS

Advertising Guidelines (GIPS Section III)

defined, 256

information included in, 256

advisers, selecting, 157

Aegis Value Fund, 433

agent options, 182

AIMR. *see* Association for Investment

Management and Research

AIMR Performance Presentation

Standards (AIMR-PPS®), 226

Air Liquide, 424

Akerlof, George A., 679

Allianz, 424

all-in fees, 263

allocation(s)

asset, 549–551

minimum lot, 116–117

with safety-first rules, 549–551

trade allocation procedures, 113, 114

transaction, 115–116

alternative hypothesis, 624–625,

651–652

AMC. *see* Asset Manager Code of Professional Conduct

American Association of Individual Investors (AAII), 715

American call options, 539

American Depositary Receipt (ADR), 681–682

American Express, 544n.17

analysis of variance (ANOVA), 632n.16

analysts, nonpublic information from, 93–94

Anheuser-Busch InBev, 424

annualized returns, advertisements with, 289–290

annual percentage rate (APR), 313n.6

annual percentage yield (APY), 313n.6

annual returns, advertisements with, 290–291

annual share turnover, 426

annuities. *see also* ordinary annuities

defined, 314

future value of, 314–316

lump sums to fund, 333–336

size of annuity payments, 332–336

annuity due, 314, 321–323

ANOVA. *see* analysis of variance

applicable law

and Code/Standards, 50–53

on confidentiality, 130

in firm policy, 105

global, 52–53

and investment products, 51–53

providing information on, 55

staying informed about, 54

approval, for outside compensation, 145

APR. *see* annual percentage rate

a priori probability, 476

APY. *see* annual percentage yield

arbitrage, 91

Arcelor-Mittal, 423

Archer Daniels Midland Company, 733, 737

arithmetic mean, 404–408

and coefficient of variation, 441–442

as cross-sectional mean, 405–407

defined, 398n.9, 404

and geometric, 418–420

and median, 410–411

as population mean, 404–405

properties, 407–408

sample mean, 405–407

using, 456–457

and weighted mean, 414n.19

Arms index, 718–720

Arthur Andersen, 6

Articles of Incorporation, 51

ascending triangle pattern, 702

Asian call options, 558–559

Asian Market Neutral Composite, 294

Asia Pacific Association for Fiduciary Studies, 231

ASML, 423

Asociación Española de Presentación de Resultados de Gestión, 231

asset allocation, safety-first rules for, 549–551

asset management company, sample presentation of, 273–274

Asset Manager Code of Professional Conduct (AMC), 38, 55, 157

asset price(s)

artificial volatility in, 98–100

and head and shoulders patterns, 696–699

normal distribution as model for, 545

and oscillators, 708

trends in, 679–681

and volume, 689–690

asset weighing, 127

Assicurazioni Generali, 423

Assirevi, 231

Associação Portuguesa de Analista Financeiros, 231

Association for Investment Management and Research (AIMR), 226

Association for Savings and Investment, South Africa, 231

Association Française de la Gestion Financière, 230

Association of British Insurers, 231

Association of Hungarian Investment Fund and Asset Management Companies, 231

L'Associazione Bancaria Italiana, 231

L'Associazione Italiana degli Analisti Finanziari, 231

Assogestioni, 231

assumptions, in technical analysis, 678–680

Astra International, 555–556

asymptotic properties, estimators', 592

Australia

commodities and economy of, 728

GIPS sponsor, 230

mean and standard deviation of stock returns, 442

in MSCI EAFE, 406

real equity returns, 398

Austria

GIPS sponsor, 230

total returns, 406, 410, 422

AXA, 424

B

back simulation, 562–563

Balanced Growth Composite, 293

- bank discount basis, 375
 - bank discount yield, 375–376, 378
 - bankruptcy, technical analysis and, 682
 - bar charts, 683–684
 - Barclays plc, 732–733, 737
 - Barron's*, 715
 - BASF, 424
 - Bayer, 424
 - Bayes' formula, 476, 504–508
 - BBVA, 424
 - BCO Santander, 424
 - bearish rectangles, 704
 - bear markets
 - Elliott waves in, 723
 - forecasting, 560–562
 - behavioral biases, 11–12
 - Belgian Asset Managers Association, 230
 - Belgium
 - GIPS sponsor, 230
 - real equity returns, 398
 - total returns, 406, 410
 - benchmark description
 - defined, 263
 - Disclosure (GIPS Section I.4), 238
 - GIPS Advertising Guidelines (GIPS Section III), 257
 - benchmarks
 - defined, 263
 - Disclosure (GIPS Section I.4), 239, 240
 - GIPS Advertising Guidelines (GIPS Section III), 257
 - and investment policy statements, 121
 - Presentation and Reporting (GIPS Section I.5), 241, 242
 - Private Equity (GIPS Section I.7), 248, 249
 - Real Estate (GIPS Section I.6), 246
 - Verification (GIPS Section IV), 260, 261
 - beneficial ownership, 186, 187
 - Bernoulli, Jakob, 530
 - Bernoulli random variable(s), 530–531
 - Bernoulli trials, 530
 - best execution (term), 104, 106
 - Best Practice Guidelines Governing Analyst/Corporate Issuer Relations* (CFA Institute), 61
 - biases, sampling. *see* sampling biases
 - binomial distribution of discrete random variables, 530–539
 - evaluating block brokers with, 531–532, 534–535
 - and expected defaults in bond portfolio, 537–538
 - mean and variance of, 537
 - and one-period stock price as Bernoulli random variable, 530–531
 - symmetry and skewness of, 533–534
 - and tracking objectives, 536
 - binomial formula, 510
 - binomial model
 - for bond defaults, 537–538
 - for stock price, 538–539
 - binomial random variables, 532–534
 - binomial tree (tree diagrams), 491–492, 538
 - BJ's Wholesale Club, 404, 432
 - Black, Fischer, 428
 - blackout periods, 187
 - Black–Scholes–Merton model
 - as continuous time finance model, 553n.32
 - for European call options, 563
 - lognormal distribution in, 551
 - volatility of, 555
 - block brokers, evaluating, 531–532, 534–535
 - blogs, confidential firm information on, 143
 - BMW, 423
 - BNP Paribas, 424
 - Bollinger, John, 707
 - Bollinger bands, 707–708
 - bond-equivalent yield, 379
 - bond indexes, stratified sampling and, 584–585
 - bonds
 - consol, 325–326
 - default
 - binomial model for, 537–538
 - recovery rates on, 642–644
 - face value of, 495
 - US Treasury, 727
 - zero-coupon, 494–495
 - Bon-Ton Stores Inc., 412
 - bonus compensation, 144–145
 - bonuses, 25–27
 - box size, point and figure charts', 687–688
 - Brazilian Bovespa Index (BVSP), 684
 - brokerage arrangements, 104, 107
 - broker recruiting, 135
 - broker-sponsored limited partnerships, 179
 - Brown, Constance, 713
 - Brown, E. H. Phelps, 722
 - Bruce Fund, 433
 - budgeting, capital, 360
 - bullish rectangle, 704
 - bull markets
 - Elliott waves in, 724–726
 - forecasting, 560–562
 - Bundesverband Investment und Asset Management, 231
 - bundled fees
 - Calculation Methodology (GIPS Section I.2), 236
 - defined, 263
 - Disclosure (GIPS Section I.4), 239
 - Presentation and Reporting (GIPS Section I.5), 241
 - Wrap Fee/SMA Portfolios (GIPS Section I.8), 250–251
 - business entities, distinct, 234, 265
 - business relationships, conflicts of interest and, 180, 184
 - buy-and-hold investors, market timers vs., 560–562
 - buy-side clients, 59
 - BVSP. *see* Brazilian Bovespa Index
 - Bylaws and Rules of Procedure for Professional Conduct (Rules of Procedure), 37, 51
- C**
- CAC-40 index, 416
 - calculated statistical indexes, 715–718
 - Calculation Methodology (GIPS Section I.2), 235–236
 - about, 232
 - recommendations
 - general, 236
 - for private equity, 250
 - for real estate closed-end fund composites, 246
 - requirements
 - general, 235–236
 - for private equity, 247
 - for real estate, 243–244
 - for real estate closed-end fund composites, 245
 - call options
 - American, 539
 - Asian, 558–559
 - European, 563
 - Canada
 - commodities in economy, 728
 - GIPS sponsor, 230
 - real equity returns, 398
 - Treasury bills, 305n.3, 377n.16
 - Canadian Broadcasting Corporation, 415
 - Canadian Investment Performance Committee, 230
 - candidacy in CFA program, referring to, 199–200
 - Candidate Pledge, 51, 195
 - Candidate Responsibility Statement, 51
 - candidates, CFA. *see* Responsibilities as a CFA Institute Member or CFA Candidate [Standard of Professional Conduct VII]
 - candlestick charts, 684–686
 - capital
 - committed, 245, 246, 249, 264
 - composite since inception paid-in capital, 245, 246, 249
 - paid-in, 249, 267
 - capital budgeting, 360
 - capital employed (term), 263
 - capital markets. *see also* Integrity of Capital Markets [Standard of Professional Conduct II]
 - and benefit of ethics to society, 40
 - sustainability of, 40–41
 - capital returns, 244, 263
 - capital structure, 360
 - care. *see* Loyalty, Prudence, and Care [Standard III(A)]
 - Carrefour, 423
 - carried interest, 247, 263
 - carve-out
 - Composite Construction (GIPS Section I.3), 237
 - defined, 263
 - Disclosure (GIPS Section I.4), 239
 - Presentation and Reporting (GIPS Section I.5), 241
 - cash
 - interim, 307–308
 - mutual fund cash position indicator, 720–721
 - cash flow additivity principle, 333, 338
 - cash flows
 - discounted (*see* discounted cash flows)
 - equal
 - future value of series with, 315–316
 - future value of series without, 316

- infinite series of, 325–326
 - present value of series with, 320–325
 - present value of series without, 328
- external, 235, 236, 265
- future value of (*see* future value [FV])
- geometric and arithmetic mean of
 - future cash flows, 457
- incremental, 360n.1
- large, 235, 266
- present value of (*see* present value [PV])
- series of
 - future value for series of cash flows, 314–316
 - present value for series of cash flows, 320–328
- significant, 237, 240, 269
- single
 - future value of single cash flow, 306–314
 - present value of single cash flow, 317–320
- unequal, 316, 328
- Caterpillar, Inc., 410
- CBOE Volatility index (VIX), 716
- CD equivalent yield, 377. *see also* money market yields
- CDOs. *see* collateralized debt obligations
- cell (term), 584
- Center for Research in Security Prices (CRSP), 605
- central banks, technical analysis by, 681
- central limit theorem, 588–591, 596, 626n.7
- central tendency. *see* measures of central tendency
- Certificate in Investment Performance Measurement (CIPM) certificants, 37
- Certificate in Investment Performance Measurement (CIPM) Program, 193, 194
- CFA Association of Pakistan, 231
- CFA charterholders, 199
- CFA Denmark, 230
- CFA designation, 199. *see also* Reference to CFA Institute, Designation and Program [Standard VII(B)]
 - guidance on using, 199
 - order of professional and academic designations with, 202
 - right to use, 201
 - stating facts about, 202
- CFA examinations, 33
 - bringing written material into exam room, 195
 - confidential information in, 193–194
 - expressing opinions about, 194
 - grading guidelines and results for, 197
 - passing, in consecutive years, 201
 - sharing content of, 196–197
 - sharing questions from, 195
 - writing after exam period, 196
- CFA Institute, 231. *see also specific committees and programs*
 - clarifications of GIPS by, 228, 233, 234, 259
 - code of ethics, 8–9
 - compromising integrity of, 197
 - ethical commitment of, 42–43
 - GIPS standards, 225, 226
 - mission of, 35
 - referring to, 199–200 (*see also* Reference to CFA Institute, Designation and Program [Standard VII(B)])
 - values of, 43
 - website, 43, 51, 157, 194
- CFA Institute Investment Foundations™
 - certificate program, 36, 193, 194
- CFA members and candidates
 - knowledge of the law [Standard I(A)], 54
 - responsibilities of (*see* Responsibilities as a CFA Institute Member or CFA Candidate [Standard of Professional Conduct VII])
- CFA Program. *see also* Reference to CFA Institute, Designation and Program [Standard VII(B)]
 - conduct restrictions for candidates and members, 193
 - confidential information about, 193–194
 - stating facts about, 202
 - testing policies for, 195
- CFA Society of Hungary, 231
- CFA Society of New Zealand, 231
- CFA Sri Lanka, 231
- CGM Focus Fund, 433
- change in polarity principle, 693
- changes
 - fund mandate, 170
 - to investment process, 170–172
- Chartered Financial Analyst. *see entries beginning with CFA*
- chart patterns, 694–705
 - continuation patterns, 701–705
 - flags and pennants, 704–705
 - rectangles, 704
 - reversal vs., 694
 - triangles, 702–704
- reversal patterns, 694–701
 - continuation vs., 694
 - double tops and bottoms, 699–701
 - head and shoulders, 695–699
 - triple tops and bottoms, 700–701
- charts, 682–691
 - bar, 683–684
 - candlestick, 684–686
 - line, 682–683
 - point and figure, 686–688
 - relative strength analysis of, 690–691
 - scale of, 688–689
 - time intervals of, 690
 - volume on, 689–690
- Chebyshev, Pafnuty, 439
- Chebyshev's inequality, 439–441
- Chicago Board Options Exchange, 716
- China Mobile Limited, 692–693, 705
- chi-square test
 - for value of population variance tests, 648–649
 - values of chi square, 743
- CIPM certificants. *see* Certificate in Investment Performance Measurement certificants
- CIPM Program. *see* Certificate in Investment Performance Measurement Program
- client commission practices, 106–108
- client–plan participants, identifying, 106
- clients. *see also* prospective clients
 - additional services for, 116
 - approval from, 105
 - buy-side, 59
 - communication with (*see* Communication with Clients and Prospective Clients [Standard V(B)])
 - disclosure to, 178–179
 - duties to (*see* Duties to Clients [Standard of Professional Conduct III])
 - fair dealing between, 118
 - gifts and entertainment from, 67
 - identifying, 103, 108–109, 121
 - informing, of investment process, 166–167
 - interests of, 106
 - loyalty to, 109
 - maintaining lists of, 113
 - priority of personal trading vs. trading for, 185
 - risk profile of, 119
 - select, additional services for, 116
 - soliciting former, 137–142
 - status of, 130
- client updates, 159–160
- closed-end funds
 - defined, 263
 - Private Equity (GIPS Section I.7), 247
 - Real Estate (GIPS Section I.6), 245–246
 - real estate presentations with, 277–279
- Code of Ethics (CFA Institute), 33–44
 - adoption of, 38
 - and applicable law, 50–53
 - evolution of, 34
 - and importance of ethics, 39–43
 - notification of, 142
 - and principle-based standards, 10
 - and Professional Conduct Program, 37–38
 - and Standards of Practice Council, 38–39
 - in *Standards of Practice Handbook*, 3, 8, 33–35, 42
 - text of, 44
 - and values of CFA Institute, 43
- codes of ethics (in general)
 - adopting, 148
 - commitment to, 42
 - defined, 8
 - developing, 54–55, 82
- coefficient of variation (CV), 441–443
- coils, 702
- collateralized debt obligations (CDOs), 142
- combination (term), 510
- combination formula, 510–511
- commissions
 - and duties to clients, 106–108
 - ethical issues with, 25–27
- committed capital
 - defined, 264
 - Private Equity (GIPS Section I.7), 249
 - Real Estate (GIPS Section I.6), 245, 246
- common stock portfolio, probabilities for, 548

- communication(s)
 - different forms of, 167
 - to employees of material nonpublic information, 91
 - interdepartmental, 89
- Communication with Clients and Prospective Clients [Standard V(B)], 165–174
 - application of the standard, 169–174
 - compliance procedures, 168–169
 - eleventh edition revision, 36
 - guidance, 166–168
 - different forms of communication, 167
 - facts vs. opinions in reports, 168
 - identifying risks and limitations, 167–168
 - informing clients of investment process, 166–167
 - report presentation, 168
 - text of, 46, 165–166
- Companhia Vale do Rio Doce, 685
- company promotion, 97
- compensation. *see also* Additional Compensation Arrangements [Standard IV(B)]
 - bonus, 144–145
 - and conflict of interest, 181–182
 - disclosure of, 105
 - externally compensated assignments, 141
 - notification of, 144–145
 - outside, 145
 - and research independence, 68
- competence, 82
- competition policy, 137
- complement, of event, 486
- compliance
 - Fundamentals of Compliance (GIPS Section I.0), 233–234
 - about, 232
 - recommendations, 234
 - requirements, 233–234
 - with GIPS
 - benefits of, 222–223
 - claiming, 222, 229
 - GIPS-compliant historical performance, 228–229
- compliance officers, 64
- compliance procedures
 - adequate, 147–149
 - adoption of, 148
 - education and training implementation, 149
 - inadequate, 147, 152
 - and incentive structure, 150
 - as responsibility of supervisors, 148–149
- compliant presentations
 - Composite Construction (GIPS Section I.3), 237
 - defined, 264
 - Disclosure (GIPS Section I.4), 237–239
 - Fundamentals of Compliance (GIPS Section I.0), 234
 - GIPS Advertising Guidelines (GIPS Section III), 256, 257
 - GIPS Valuation Principles (GIPS Section II), 253
- Input Data (GIPS Section I.1), 235
- Presentation and Reporting (GIPS Section I.5), 240–242
- Private Equity (GIPS Section I.7), 247, 248
- Real Estate (GIPS Section I.6), 242, 244, 245
- Verification (GIPS Section IV), 258, 262
- Wrap Fee/SMA Portfolios (GIPS Section I.8), 250–252
- Composite Construction (GIPS Section I.3), 236–237
 - about, 232
 - recommendations
 - general, 237
 - for private equity, 250
 - requirements
 - general, 236–237
 - for private equity, 248
 - for real estate closed-end fund composites, 245
 - for wrap fee/SMA portfolios, 251
- composite construction, misrepresenting, 80
- composite creation date, 238, 264
- composite definition
 - Composite Construction (GIPS Section I.3), 237
 - defined, 264
 - Private Equity (GIPS Section I.7), 248
 - Real Estate (GIPS Section I.6), 245
 - Verification (GIPS Section IV), 261
- composite description
 - defined, 264
 - Disclosure (GIPS Section I.4), 238
 - Fundamentals of Compliance (GIPS Section I.0), 234
 - GIPS Advertising Guidelines (GIPS Section III), 256, 257
 - Verification (GIPS Section IV), 260
- composite inception date
 - defined, 264
 - GIPS Advertising Guidelines (GIPS Section III), 257
 - Presentation and Reporting (GIPS Section I.5), 240–241
 - Private Equity (GIPS Section I.7), 248
 - Real Estate (GIPS Section I.6), 245, 246
- composites
 - Calculation Methodology (GIPS Section I.2), 235, 236
 - Composite Construction (GIPS Section I.3), 236, 237
 - defined, 264
 - Disclosure (GIPS Section I.4), 238–240
 - Fundamentals of Compliance (GIPS Section I.0), 234
 - GIPS, 223
 - GIPS Advertising Guidelines (GIPS Section III), 257
 - GIPS Valuation Principles (GIPS Section II), 252–254
 - Input Data (GIPS Section I.1), 235
 - investment firm balanced growth composite (sample), 272–273
 - List of Composite Descriptions (GIPS Section V.0.1), 292–295
 - Presentation and Reporting (GIPS Section I.5), 240–242
 - Private Equity (GIPS Section I.7), 248–250
 - Real Estate (GIPS Section I.6), 245, 246
 - Verification (GIPS Section IV), 258–262
 - Wrap Fee/SMA Portfolios (GIPS Section I.8), 251, 252
- composite since inception distributions, 245, 246, 249
- composite since inception paid-in capital, 245, 246, 249
- composite termination date
 - defined, 264
 - Fundamentals of Compliance (GIPS Section I.0), 234
 - Presentation and Reporting (GIPS Section I.5), 241
- compounding
 - continuous, 312–313, 553–554
 - defined, 306–307
 - frequency of, 310–312, 319–320
 - future value of lump sum with, 311–312
 - solving TMV problems for number of compounding periods, 331–332
- conditional expected values, 490
- conditional probability, 478–481, 485–486
- conditional variances, 492–495
- Conduct as Participants in CFA Institute Programs [Standard VII(A)], 193–197
 - application of the standard, 195–197
 - eleventh edition revision, 36–37
 - guidance, 193–195
 - additional CFA restrictions, 194, 195
 - confidential program information, 193–194
 - expressing opinions, 194
 - text of, 47, 193
- confidence, investor, 227
- confidence intervals, 593–599
 - construction of, 593–594
 - definition, 593
 - for hypothesis testing, 623
 - and hypothesis tests, 629–630
 - for population mean, 593–598
 - with normally distributed population with known variance, 594
 - t*-distribution, 597–598
 - z*-alternative, 595–597
 - reliability factors for, 594–595, 598–599
 - and sample size, 599–601
- confidence limits, 593
- confidential information
 - about CFA program, 193–194
 - accidental disclosure of, 132–133
 - of firm, 143
 - intentional disclosure of, 131–132
 - possessing, 131
- confidentiality, 106. *see also* Preservation of Confidentiality [Standard III(E)]
- confirmations of transactions, duplicate, 188
- conflicts of interest
 - and business relationships, 180, 184
 - and business stock ownership, 180
 - and compensation arrangement, 181–182

- and directorship, 182–183
- disclosure of, 105 (*see also* Disclosure of Conflicts [Standard VI(A)])
- and personal stock ownership, 181
- and personal trading, 183
- and priority of transactions, 185
- and requested favors, 183
- Conflicts of Interest [Standard of Professional Conduct VI], 177–192
- Disclosure of Conflicts [Standard VI(A)], 177–184
 - application of the standard, 180–184
 - compliance procedures, 180
 - guidance, 177–180
 - text of, 46, 177
- Priority of Transactions [Standard VI(B)], 185–190
 - application of the standard, 188–190
 - compliance procedures, 186–188
 - guidance, 185–186
 - text of, 46–47, 185
- Referral Fees [Standard VI(C)], 190–192
 - application of the standard, 190–192
 - compliance procedures, 190
 - guidance, 190
 - text of, 47, 190
- Consensus Bullish Sentiment Index, 715
- consistency, estimator, 592–593
- consistent probabilities, 478
- consol bonds, 325–326
- constraints, investor, 121
- continuation patterns, 694, 701–705
 - flags and pennants, 704–705
 - rectangles, 704
 - reversal vs., 694
 - triangles, 702–704
- continuous compounding, 312–313, 553–554
- continuous random variables, 539–557
 - continuous uniform distribution, 540–543
 - defined, 527
 - lognormal distribution, 551–557
 - normal distribution, 543–551
 - applications of, 549–551
 - and probabilities for common stock portfolio, 548
 - safety-first optimal portfolio, 549–551
- continuous time finance models, 553n.32
- continuous uniform distribution, 540–543
- contrarian trading strategies, 707–708
- control deficiency disclosures, 637–639
- convergence, oscillator and price, 708
- copies, maintaining, 75
- correction, of unintentional errors, 76
- corrective waves, 724–726
- correlation
 - defined, 501
 - estimating, 503–504
 - hypothesis tests with, 655–658
 - properties of, 501
- correlation matrix, 501
- cost arrangements, restricting, 64
- cost averaging, 421
- Costco Wholesale Corporation, 404, 432
- counting, 508–511
 - combination formula, 510–511
 - multinomial formula, 510
 - multiplication rule of, 509–510
 - permutation formula, 511
- covariance, 497–503
- covariance matrix, 499–500, 502
- covenant, probability of breaching, 542–543
- coverage, prior, 66
- credit rating agencies, opinions of, 61–62
- CRH, 423
- critical region, test statistic, 629
- critical value, 628–630
- cross-departmental conflicts, 179
- cross-sectional data, 405, 585, 587
- cross-sectional mean, 405–407
- CRSP. *see* Center for Research in Security Prices
- cumulative distribution function, 528, 529, 541
- cumulative frequency, 394–398
- cumulative frequency distributions, 402–403
- cumulative probabilities, 740–741
- cumulative relative frequency, 394–395
- Currency Overlay Composite, 293–294
- custodial relationships, 60
- custody fees, 264
- custody of client assets, 102
- CV. *see* coefficient of variation
- D**
- %D (stochastic oscillator), 712–713
- Daily Sentiment Index, 715
- Daimler, 424
- Danish Society of Financial Analysts, 230
- Danone, 424
- data mining, 601–604
- data-mining bias, 601–604
- data snooping, 601n.19, 602n.22
- Davidson, Russell, 632n.15
- DB pension plans. *see* defined-benefit pension plans
- dead cross pattern, 706
- debt
 - collateralized debt obligations, 142
 - margin, 716–717, 720
 - Treasury, 305
- deceit, 83
- decennial pattern, 723
- deciles, 421
- decision making
 - ethical framework for, 20–27, 41–42
 - group, 157
 - in hypothesis testing, 631
 - time frame for dissemination and, 112–113
- decision rule, 628–630
- default bonds
 - binomial model for, 537–538
 - recovery rates on, 642–644
- default risk premium, 305, 494–495
- defined-benefit (DB) pension plans, 557
- degree of confidence, 593
- degrees of freedom (df), 596, 597, 642
- Delafield Fund, 433
- delisted companies, 605
- de Moivre, Abraham, 543
- Denmark
 - GIPS sponsor, 230
 - real equity returns, 398
 - total returns, 406, 410, 422
- departments, physical separation of, 89
- dependent events, 483
- dependent samples, hypothesis tests for, 644–648
- derivative expiration days, 653–654
- descending triangle pattern, 702–703
- descriptions of securities, 169–170
- descriptive statistics, 389
- detection, as part of supervision, 147–148
- Deutsche Bank, 424
- Deutsche Telekom, 423
- Deutsche Vereinigung für Finanzanalyse und Asset Management, 231
- deviation. *see also* standard deviation
 - from intrinsic value, 680
 - mean absolute deviation, 429–431
 - semideviation, 437, 438
- de Villiers, Victor, 686
- de Wolff, Samuel, 722
- df. *see* degrees of freedom
- diffuse priors, 508
- diligence, 155, 163
- Diligence and Reasonable Basis [Standard V(A)], 154–165
 - application of the standard, 158–165
 - compliance procedures, 158
 - guidance, 154–157
 - diligence and reasonable basis defined, 155
 - group research and decision making, 157
 - quantitatively oriented research, 156–157
 - quantitatively oriented techniques, 157
 - secondary or third-party research, 155–156
 - selecting external advisers and subadvisers, 157
 - text of, 46, 154
- Dillard's, Inc., 412
- directed brokerage, 104
- direct investments, 250, 264
- directors, conflicts of interest for, 179–180, 182–183
- Disciplinary Review Committee (DRC), 37–38
- disclosure
 - confidential information, 132–133
 - conflicts of interest, 105
 - control deficiency, 637–639
 - interdepartmental referral arrangements, 191
 - investment system, 169, 171
 - issuer-paid research, 76
 - level of service, 114
 - material information, 88–89, 92
 - performance calculation methodology, 128–129
 - personal investing policies, 188
 - personal trading, 188, 189
 - possible illegal activity, 132
 - referral arrangements, 190–192
 - selective, 92, 114, 116
 - on social media, 117
 - trade allocation procedures, 114

- Disclosure (GIPS Section I.4), 237–240
 about, 232
 recommendations
 general, 240
 for private equity, 250
 for real estate, 246
 requirements
 general, 237–240
 for private equity, 248
 for real estate, 244
 for real estate closed-end fund composites, 245
 for wrap fee/SMA portfolios, 251
- Disclosure of Conflicts [Standard VI(A)], 177–184
 application of the standard, 180–184
 compliance procedures, 180
 guidance, 177–180
 conflicts as a director, 179–180
 cross-departmental conflicts, 179
 disclosure to clients, 178–179
 disclosure to employers, 178
 stock ownership conflicts, 179
 text of, 46, 177
- discount, 304, 375
 discounted cash flows, 359–386
 internal rate of return, 362–367
 evaluating R&D programs with IRR rule, 363–364
 NPV and IRR rules, 364–365
 problems with IRR rule, 365–367
 money market yields, 374–379
 bank discount yield, 375–376
 discount rate, 378–379
 net present value, 360–362
 portfolio return measurement, 367–374
 money-weighted rate of return, 368–369, 372–374
 time-weighted rate of return, 369–374
 practice problems, 381–383
 solutions to problems, 384–386
 and time value of money, 359
- discount rate, for money market yields, 378–379
- discount securities, return for, 377
 discount yield, bank, 375–376, 378
- discrete random variables, 527–539
 binomial distribution, 530–539
 evaluating block brokers with, 531–532, 534–535
 and expected defaults in bond portfolio, 537–538
 and one-period stock price as Bernoulli random variable, 530–531
 and tracking objectives, 536
 discrete uniform distribution, 528–530
- discretionary portfolios, 260
- dispersion, 428–446
 absolute, 428
 Chebyshev's inequality, 439–441
 coefficient of variation, 441–443
 internal
 defined, 266
 Disclosure (GIPS Section I.4), 238
 Presentation and Reporting (GIPS Section I.5), 241
 Real Estate (GIPS Section I.6), 245
 Verification (GIPS Section IV), 261
- mean absolute deviation, 429–431
 population variance and standard deviation, 431–434
 range, 429–431
 relative, 441
 sample variance and standard deviation, 434–437
 semivariance and semideviation, 437–438
 Sharpe ratio, 443–446
- dissemination of information, 88, 112–113, 189–190
- dissociation, 54–56
- distinct business entities, 234, 265
- distribution area laws, 54
- distribution-free tests, 654n.27
- distributions, 247, 265
F-distribution, 744–747
 frequency, 391–399
 construction of, 392–394, 398–399
 cumulative, 402–403
 defined, 391
 and holding period formula, 392
 and relative frequency, 394–398
 normal
 confidence intervals for population mean with, 594
 cumulative probabilities for, 740–741
 hypothesis tests of normally-distributed populations, 633–636, 640–648, 651
 reliability factors for confidence intervals based on, 594–595, 598–599
 skewed vs., 446–449
 standard, 740–741
 Student's *t*-distribution vs., 596–597
 probability (*see* probability distributions)
 sampling, 584, 592
t-distribution
 and confidence interval for population mean, 597–598
 defined, 632–633
 and estimation of normal sampling distribution, 595
 normal distribution vs., 596–597
 table, 742
- divergence, 696, 708
- diversification
 and Loyalty, Prudence, and Care [Standard III(A)], 105
 and Suitability [Standard III(C)], 120
- DJIA. *see* Dow Jones Industrial Average
- documentation, of trade allocation procedures, 113
- documents, former employers', 138
- Dogs of the Dow Strategy, 603n.24
- doji, 685–686
- dollar-weighted return, 368n.9
- dollar-yen exchange rate, 463
- double bottoms, 700, 701
- double tops, 699–701
- Dow, Charles, 679–681, 723
- Dow Chemical, 544n.17
- Dow Dividend Strategy, 603n.24
- Dow Jones Industrial Average (DJIA), 679, 681
 decennial pattern, 723
- with inverse head and shoulders patterns, 699
 on linear vs. logarithmic scale, 688–689
 presidential cycle, 723
 quadruple witching days, 653–654
 support and resistance, 693–694
- Dow Jones Railroad Average, 681
- down transition probability, 538
- downtrends, 692
- Dow Theory, 723, 726
- DPI. *see* realization multiple
- DRC. *see* Disciplinary Review Committee
- due diligence
 and failed investments, 163
 in financial research and analysis, 61
 in submanager selection, 160–161
 sufficient, 158, 161–162
- Durbin-Watson statistic, 748
- Dutch Book Theorem, 478
- Duties to Clients [Standard of Professional Conduct III], 101–133
 Fair Dealing [Standard III(B)], 110–118
 application of the standard, 114–118
 compliance procedures, 112–114
 guidance, 110–112
 text of, 45, 110
 Loyalty, Prudence, and Care [Standard III(A)], 101–109
 application of the standard, 106–109
 compliance procedures, 105–106
 guidance, 101–105
 text of, 45, 101
 Performance Presentation [Standard III(D)], 125–129
 application of the standard, 126–129
 compliance procedures, 126
 guidance, 125–126
 text of, 45, 125
 Preservation of Confidentiality [Standard III(E)], 129–133
 application of the standard, 131–133
 compliance procedures, 131
 guidance, 129–130
 text of, 45, 129
 Suitability [Standard III(C)], 118–125
 application of the standard, 122–125
 compliance procedures, 121–122
 guidance, 118–121
 text of, 45, 118
- Duties to Employers [Standard of Professional Conduct IV], 133–154
 Additional Compensation Arrangements [Standard IV(B)], 144–145
 application of the standard, 144–145
 compliance procedures, 144
 guidance, 144
 text of, 46, 144
 Loyalty [Standard IV(A)], 133–143
 application of the standard, 137–143
 compliance procedures, 137
 guidance, 133–137
 text of, 45–46, 133

- Responsibilities of Supervisors
 - [Standard IV(C)], 146–154
 - application of the standard, 150–154
 - compliance procedures, 148–150
 - eleventh edition revision, 36
 - guidance, 146–148
 - text of, 46, 146
- E**
- EADS, 423
- EAR. *see* effective annual rate
- earnings before interest, taxes, depreciation, and amortization (EBITDA), 542
- earnings per share (EPS), 389
 - forecasting, 483–484, 486–494
 - mean and median, 410–411
- EAY. *see* effective annual yield
- EBITDA. *see* earnings before interest, taxes, depreciation, and amortization
- EDRs. *see* European Depositary Receipts
- education, compliance, 149
- effective annual rate (EAR), 313
- effective annual yield (EAY), 377–379
- effective date, GIPS, 229
- efficiency, estimator, 592
- 18-year cycle, 722
- electronic information, confidentiality of, 130
- Elliott, R. N., 723–725
- Elliott Wave Theory, 723–726
- Emerging Market High Yield Fixed Income Composite, 292
- empirical probability, 476
- employees
 - checking references of, 82
 - classifications of, 137
 - independent contractors vs., 136
 - material nonpublic information for, 91
- employer(s)
 - competing with current, 140
 - disclosure of conflicts to, 178, 184
 - duties to (*see* Duties to Employers [Standard of Professional Conduct IV])
 - former, 127, 138
 - leaving, 134–135, 143
 - misrepresentation of work for, 74
 - responsibilities of, 134
- employment, nature of, 136–137
- Enel, 423
- ENI, 424
- Enron Corporation
 - ethical lapses, 6
 - situational influences on ethics, 13–14
 - and technical analysis, 682
- entertainment
 - with clients, 67
 - with related parties, 66–67
- E.ON, 423
- EPS. *see* earnings per share
- equal cash flows
 - future value of series with, 315–316
 - future value of series without, 316
 - infinite series of, 325–326
 - present value of series with, 320–325
 - present value of series without, 328
- equality
 - point of, 625
 - of two variances, 650–654
- equity IPOs, 186–187
- equity returns, frequency distribution of, 398–399
- equivalence, 336–337
- errors
 - known, 76
 - notification of, 172
 - sampling, 583–584
 - standard, 588–589, 594, 599, 626
 - tracking, 536
 - Type I and II, 627
 - unintentional, 76
- Essilor International, 423
- estimates
 - defined, 591
 - point, 594
 - pooled, 640
 - of population mean, 591–601
 - confidence intervals, 593–598
 - point estimators, 591–593
 - sample size, 599–601
- estimation, 591, 623
- estimators, 591–593, 594n.12
- ethical conduct (term), 7
- ethical decision-making framework, 20–27
 - applying, 22–27, 41–42
 - phases of process, 21–22
- ethical principles (term), 7
- ethical standards, legal standards vs., 17–20
- ethics, 5–28. *see also* Code of Ethics; Standards of Professional Conduct
 - about, 5–6
 - challenges to ethical conduct, 11–14
 - defined, 7
 - ethical decision-making framework, 20–27
 - applying, 22–27
 - phases of process, 21–22
 - ethical vs. legal standards, 17–20
 - firms commitment to, 42
 - impact on stakeholders, 6–9
 - importance of, 15–17
 - and investment industry, 39–43
 - practice problems, 29
 - professionalism, 9–11
 - and regulations, 41
 - societal benefit of, 40
 - solutions to problems, 30–31
- Eurodollar futures, 699–700
- European Depositary Receipts (EDRs), 706n.5
- European-style options
 - call options, 563
 - Monte Carlo simulation for valuing, 558
 - put options, 566
- EURO STOXX 50 Index, 423–425
- Eurozone countries, 587n.2
- events
 - complement of, 486
 - defined, 475
 - dependent, 483
 - independent, 483–486
 - mutually exclusive, 475
- Everbright Securities, 6
- evergreen funds, 247, 265
- ex-ante* (term), 237, 265
- ex ante* Sharpe ratio, 443n.37
- excessive trading, 108, 117
- excess kurtosis, 453–456
- execution-only responsibilities, 109
- exhaustive (term), 475
- expectations, in probability, 474
- expected defaults, in bond portfolio, 537–538
- expected return
 - calculation of, 497
 - and variance of return, 502
- expected value, 488–492
 - of bonds and T-bills, 494–495
 - conditional, 490
 - defined, 487–489
 - of product of uncorrelated random variables, 504
 - properties of, 496–497
 - standard deviation, 489–490
 - total probability rule for, 490–492
 - tree diagrams, 491–492
 - and weighted mean, 416
- expert networks, 95
- experts, 87–88
- expiration days, derivative, 653–654
- ex-post* (term), 241, 265
- ex post* Sharpe ratio, 443n.37
- ex-post* standard deviation, 240–242
- external advisers, selecting, 157
- external cash flows
 - Calculation Methodology (GIPS Section I.2), 235, 236
 - defined, 265
 - Input Data (GIPS Section I.1), 235
- externally compensated assignments, 141
- external manager, travel expenses from, 67–68
- external valuation
 - defined, 265
 - GIPS Valuation Principles (GIPS Section II), 253–254
 - Real Estate (GIPS Section I.6), 243–245
- Exxon Mobil, 714–715
- F**
- face value, 375, 495
- factorials, 509
- facts, opinions and, 168, 169
- factual presentations, misrepresentation and, 74–75
- failed investments, due diligence and, 163
- fair dealing, 114–116, 118
- Fair Dealing [Standard III(B)], 110–118
 - application of the standard, 114–118
 - compliance procedures, 112–114
 - developing firm policies, 112–114
 - disclosure of level of service, 114
 - disclosure of trade allocation procedures, 114
 - systematic account reviews, 114
- guidance, 110–112
 - investment action, 111–112
 - investment recommendations, 110–111
- text of, 45, 110

- fair value
 - defined, 265
 - Fundamentals of Compliance (GIPS Section I.0), 234
 - GIPS Valuation Principles (GIPS Section II), 252–253
 - Input Data (GIPS Section I.1), 235
 - Private Equity (GIPS Section I.7), 247
 - Real Estate (GIPS Section I.6), 243
 - family accounts, 108, 186, 188–189
 - FASB. *see* Financial Accounting Standards Board
 - Fastow, Andrew S., 13–14
 - favors, requested, 183
 - FCMs. *see* futures commission merchants
 - F*-distribution, 744–747
 - fees. *see also* Referral Fees [Standard VI(C)]
 - all-in, 263
 - bundled fees
 - Calculation Methodology (GIPS Section I.2), 236
 - defined, 263
 - Disclosure (GIPS Section I.4), 239
 - Presentation and Reporting (GIPS Section I.5), 241
 - Wrap Fee/SMA Portfolios (GIPS Section I.8), 250
 - and conflicts of interest, 179
 - custody, 264
 - gross-of-fees, 266
 - investment management fees
 - defined, 266
 - Disclosure (GIPS Section I.4), 238
 - Input Data (GIPS Section I.1), 235
 - Private Equity (GIPS Section I.7), 247–250
 - Real Estate (GIPS Section I.6), 244
 - performance-based, 238, 267
 - service, 68
 - fee schedule, 238, 265
 - Fibonacci, Leonardo, 724
 - Fibonacci sequence, 724
 - fictitious name, 202
 - files
 - current, maintaining, 54
 - of former employers, 138
 - final liquidation date
 - defined, 265
 - Private Equity (GIPS Section I.7), 248, 249
 - Real Estate (GIPS Section I.6), 245
 - Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB), 252
 - financial risk, 551n.27
 - financial risk management, normal distribution in, 551
 - Financial Times Stock Exchange. *see* entries beginning with FTSE
 - Finland
 - real equity returns, 398
 - total returns, 406, 409
 - firewalls, 60, 89
 - firm policies
 - for fair dealing, 112–114
 - on loyalty, prudence, and care, 105–106
 - firms
 - benefits of GIPS compliance for, 222–223
 - commitment to ethics by, 42
 - compliance with Code of Standards, 38
 - defined, 265
 - informing, of referral arrangements, 191
 - knowledge of the law, 54–55
 - overemphasis of results from, 81
 - records as property of, 175, 176
 - starting new, 140
 - fixed-rate mortgage, payments on, 332–333
 - flag patterns, 704–705
 - flash reports, 113
 - flow-of-funds indicators, 718–722
 - Arms index, 718–720
 - margin debt, 720
 - and market indicators, 721
 - mutual fund cash position, 720–721
 - new equity issuance, 721–722
 - secondary offerings, 722
 - FOFs. *see* funds of funds
 - Foolish Four investment strategy, 602–603
 - Forbes*, 432–434
 - Ford Motor Company, 410, 411, 710–712
 - former clients, soliciting, 137–142
 - former employers
 - documents and files of, 138
 - in performance presentation, 127
 - fractile, 421
 - France
 - GIPS sponsor, 230
 - real equity returns, 398
 - total returns, 406, 410, 422
 - Treasury bills, 305n.3, 377n.16
 - France Telecom, 423
 - Frankfurt Stock Exchange, 706
 - fraud, 83, 682
 - free float adjusted, 406n.13
 - frequency
 - absolute, 393
 - of compounding, 310–312, 319–320
 - cumulative, 394–398
 - relative, 394–398
 - frequency distributions, 391–399
 - construction of, 392–394, 398–399
 - cumulative, 402–403
 - defined, 391
 - and holding period formula, 392
 - and relative frequency, 394–398
 - frequency polygons, 401–402
 - front-running, 187
 - F*-test
 - for differences between variances, 651
 - F*-distribution, 744–747
 - FTSE 100 Index
 - line chart, 682–683
 - relative strength analysis, 690
 - FTSE All Share Index, 606–607
 - FTSE Eurotop 100, 405–406
 - FTSE Global All Cap Index, 647
 - full price, 377n.14
 - full-replication approach, 584
 - fundamental analysis, 678n.1, 680–682
 - Fundamentals of Compliance (GIPS Section I.0), 233–234
 - about, 232
 - recommendations, 234
 - requirements, 233–234
 - funding, travel, 63
 - fund manager relationships, 60, 70
 - fund mandate, change in, 170
 - funds, fair dealing between, 114–115
 - funds of funds (FOFs)
 - composites for, 249, 250
 - defined, 266
 - Private Equity (GIPS Section I.7), 247–249
 - sample presentations of, 279–282
 - future cash flows, geometric and arithmetic mean of, 457
 - futures commission merchants (FCMs), 151
 - future value (FV)
 - defined, 306
 - future value of series of cash flows, 314–316
 - with equal cash flows, 315–316
 - with unequal cash flows, 316
 - future value of single cash flow, 306–314
 - with continuous compounding, 312–313
 - frequency of compounding, 310–312
 - with interim cash reinvested at same rate, 307–308
 - for lump sum, 309–310
 - stated and effective rates for, 313–314
 - without interim cash, 308
 - present and, 307, 336–337
 - FV. *see* future value
- G**
- gains, from market timing, 560–562
 - Gazprom SP European Depositary Receipts (EDRs), 706, 707
 - GDF Suez, 423
 - General Dynamics, 410
 - general partner, 266
 - geometric mean, 416–420
 - and arithmetic, 418–420
 - formula, 416–417
 - using, 456–457
 - geometric mean return
 - arithmetic and, 418–420
 - formula for, 417–418
 - German Asset Management Standards Committee, 231
 - German CFA Society, 231
 - Germany
 - GIPS sponsor, 231
 - real equity returns, 398
 - total returns, 406, 410
 - Treasury paper, 305n.3, 377n.16
 - GICs. *see* Guaranteed Investment Contracts
 - gifts
 - from clients, 67
 - limiting, 64
 - from related parties, 66–67

- GIPS. *see* Global Investment Performance Standards
- GIPS Advertising Guidelines (GIPS Section III), 256–257
- purpose, 256
 - advertisement defined, 256
 - and GIPS regulatory requirements, 256
 - information included in advertisement, 256
 - requirements, 256–257
 - sample advertisements, 289–291
 - with annualized returns, 289–290
 - with five years of annual returns, 290–291
 - with period-to-date and annualized returns, 290
- GIPS Council, 226, 230
- GIPS Executive Committee, 226
- clarifications by, 228, 233, 234, 259
 - implementation recommendations of, 229–230
 - objectives of, 227
- GIPS Handbook*, 228, 233, 234, 259
- GIPS Valuation Principles (GIPS Section II), 252–255
- fair value, 252–253
 - and input data, 232, 235
 - Private Equity (GIPS Section I.7), 247, 248
 - for private equity, 254, 255
 - for real estate, 253–255
 - recommendations, 254–255
 - requirements, 253–254
- Global Commodity Composite, 293
- Global Equity Composite, 223
- global financial crisis of late 2000s
- ethical dimensions of, 15
 - volatility and, 652–653
- Global Investment Performance Standards (GIPS), 126, 157, 221–297
- compliance
 - benefits of, 222–223
 - claiming, 222, 229
 - GIPS-compliant historical performance, 228–229
 - composites, 223
 - effective date, 229
 - GIPS Advertising Guidelines (GIPS Section III), 256–257
 - purpose, 256
 - requirements, 256–257
 - GIPS Valuation Principles (GIPS Section II), 252–255
 - fair value, 252–253
 - recommendations, 254–255
 - requirements, 253–254
 - glossary of terms, 262–271
 - historical background, 226
 - implementation of, 229–230
 - List of Composite Descriptions (Section V.0.1), 292–295
 - need for, 221–222, 227
 - objectives, 227
 - overview, 228
 - practice problems, 296
 - provisions, 231–252
 - Calculation Methodology (Section I.2), 235–236
 - Composite Construction (Section I.3), 236–237
 - Disclosure (Section I.4), 237–240
 - Fundamentals of Compliance (Section I.0), 233–234
 - Input Data (Section I.1), 235
 - overview, 231–233
 - Presentation and Reporting (Section I.5), 240–242
 - Private Equity (Section I.7), 247–250
 - Real Estate (Section I.6), 242–246
 - Wrap Fee/SMA Portfolios (Section I.8), 250–252
- purpose, 225
- sample advertisements, 289–291
- with five years of annual returns, 290–291
 - with one-, three-, and five-year annualized returns, 289
 - with period-to-date and one-, three-, and five-year annualized returns, 290
- sample presentations, 272–288
- asset management company, 273–274
 - investment firm balanced growth composite, 272–273
 - large-cap SMA composite, 286–288
 - private equity with fund of funds by strategy, 279–282
 - private equity with fund of funds by vintage year, 282–284
 - private equity with primary fund vehicle, 284–286
 - real estate with closed-end funds, 277–279
 - real estate with open-end funds, 275–277
- solutions to problems, 297
- sponsors, 230–231
- structure, 224
- Verification (GIPS Section IV), 223–224, 258–262
- and performance examinations, 262
 - required procedures, 259–262
 - scope and purpose, 258–259
 - website, 228, 233, 234, 259
- Global Investment Performance Standards Committee, 226
- golden cross pattern, 706
- Goldman Sachs, 718
- Gosset, W. S., 595n.15
- government(s), 7–8
- Graham, Benjamin, 681
- grand supercycle, Elliott wave, 724
- graphic presentations of data, 399–403
- frequency polygons and cumulative frequency distributions, 401–403
 - histograms, 400–401
- “greater than” alternative hypothesis, 624, 625, 651–652
- GreatWall Information Industry Co., Ltd., 732, 736
- Greece, 231, 406, 409
- Green Mountain Coffee Roasters, 410
- gross-of-fees, 266
- gross-of-fees returns
- Calculation Methodology (GIPS Section I.2), 236
 - defined, 266
 - Disclosure (GIPS Section I.4), 238
 - GIPS Advertising Guidelines (GIPS Section III), 257
 - Presentation and Reporting (GIPS Section I.5), 241, 242
 - Private Equity (GIPS Section I.7), 248
 - Real Estate (GIPS Section I.6), 244, 246
 - gross-of-fees SI-IRR, 245, 249
 - group decision making, 157
 - group research, 157, 160
 - growth rates, solving TMV problems for, 329–331
- Guaranteed Investment Contracts (GICs), 317–320
- Guggenheim Mid Cap Value Fund Class A, 433
- Guidance Statements, GIPS, 228, 233, 234, 259
- Gupta, Parveen, P., 638
- ## H
- Hang Seng Index, 442
- Harley-Davidson Motor Company, 691
- harmonic mean, 420–421
- harmonic series, 420n.25
- head and shoulders patterns, 695–699
- about, 695–696
 - determining price targets from, 698
 - inverse, 697–699
 - setting price targets with, 696–699
- healthy corrections, 701
- hedge funds, sample selection bias for, 605
- Hellenic CFA Society, 231
- highest requirement, following, 56
- histograms, 400–401
- historical performance, GIPS-compliant, 228–229
- historical simulation, 562–563
- holding period return (HPR)
- defined, 367, 392
 - finding ending value of investment with, 554
 - formula, 392
 - and time-weighted rate of return, 370
- holding period yield (HPY), 376, 378
- Homestead Small Company Stock Fund, 433
- Hong Kong SAR, 231, 406
- Hong Kong Society of Financial Analysts, 231
- Hopkins, Sheila, 722
- Hotchkis and Wiley Mid Cap Value A Fund, 433
- Hotchkis and Wiley Small Cap Value A Fund, 433
- hot issue securities, 112
- HPR. *see* holding period return
- HPY. *see* holding period yield
- Hungary, 231
- hurdle rate, 363
- hypothesis(-es)
- alternative, 624–625, 651–652
 - defined, 623
 - formulations of, 624–625
 - null, 624–625

- hypothesis testing, 591, 621–676
 with correlation, 655–658
 in data mining, 601–602
 nonparametric inference, 654–658
 and parametric tests, 654–655, 658
 and tests with correlation, 655–658
 use of, 654–655
 practice problems, 662–669
p-value approach, 631–632
 solutions to problems, 670–676
 steps in, 623–631
 tests with means, 632–648
 mean differences, 639–648
 single mean, 632–639
 tests with variance, 648–654
 equality of two variances, 650–654
 single variance, 648–650
 uses of, 622
 Hyundai Steel, 329
- I**
- IASB. *see* International Accounting Standards Board
- Ibbotson, Roger G., 426–428
- Iberdrola, 423
- IID returns. *see* independently and identically distributed returns
- illegal activity, disclosure of, 132
- impulse wave, 723–725
- inadequate compliance procedures, 147, 152
- inadequate supervision, 152–153
- incentive structures, 150
- incident-reporting procedures, 137
- income returns
 defined, 266
 Real Estate (GIPS Section I.6), 244
- incremental cash flows, 360n.1
- independence
 in probability, 474
 for random variables, 504
- Independence and Objectivity [Standard I(B)], 58–70
 application of the standard, 64–70
 compliance procedures, 63–64
 guidance, 58–63
 buy-side clients, 59
 credit rating agency opinions, 61–62
 fund manager and custodial relationships, 60
 influence in manager selection/procurement process, 62
 investment banking relationships, 60–61
 issuer-paid research, 62–63
 performance measurement and attribution, 61
 public companies, 61
 travel funding, 63
 text of, 44, 58
- independence policies, 64
- independent analysis, 97
- independent contractors, 136–137
- independent events, 483–486
- independently and identically distributed (IID) returns, 554
- independent practice, 134
- independent samples, hypothesis tests for, 639–644
- indexes. *see also specific indexes*
 bond, 584–585
 managing to, 121
 relative strength, 710–712
 short-term trading, 718–720
- indexing, 584
- Index of Leading Economic Indicators, 680
- Inditex, 423
- industry experts, 87–88
- inflation premium, 305
- inflows, 362, 599–601
- information
 account, 105
 additional, 262
 in advertisements, 256
 on applicable laws, 55
 confidential, 131–133, 143, 193–194
 considering, before taking action, 105
 dissemination of, 88, 112–113, 189–190
 electronic, 130
 manipulation of, 100–101
 material, 85, 92–94
 material nonpublic (*see* material nonpublic information)
 misrepresentation of (*see* misrepresentation)
 nonpublic
 acting on, 91, 94
 analyst recommendations as, 93–94
 controlling, 92
 defined, 86
 standards for priority of transactions with, 186
 out-of-date, 80–81
 outside, 75
 potential misrepresentation of, 77
 retention of, on new media, 175
 supplemental, 270
 verification of outside, 75
- information-based manipulation, 96
- ING, 424
- initial public offerings (IPOs)
 and conflicts of interest, 186–187
 duties to clients, 115
 ethical decision-making framework for, 22–25
 and technical analysis, 722
- Input Data (GIPS Section I.1), 235
 about, 232
 recommendations
 general, 235
 for private equity, 250
 for real estate, 246
 requirements
 general, 235
 for private equity, 247
 for real estate, 243
- inputs, model, 100
- insider trading, 679
- intangible assets, 16
- integrity, 20, 83, 197
- Integrity of Capital Markets [Standard of Professional Conduct II], 44–45, 84–101
- Market Manipulation [Standard II(B)], 96–101
 application of the standard, 97–101
 guidance, 96–97
 text of, 45, 96
- Material Nonpublic Information [Standard II(A)], 84–95
 application of the standard, 91–95
 compliance procedures, 88–91
 guidance, 84–88
 text of, 44–45, 84
- interdepartmental communications, 89
- interdepartmental referral arrangements, disclosure of, 191
- interest
 accrued, 376–377
 carried, 247, 263
 short, 717–718
 simple, 306
- interest rates
 and mutual fund cash position indicator, 721
 nominal risk-free, 305
 quoted, 310
 real risk-free, 305
 solving TMV problems for, 329–331
 stated annual, 310
 and time value of money, 304–305
- interest rate sensitivity, 584
- interests, client, 106
- intergenerational data mining, 602
- interim cash, 307–308
- intermarket analysis, 726–728
- Intermarket Technical Analysis* (Murphy), 726
- internal dispersion
 defined, 266
 Disclosure (GIPS Section I.4), 238
 Presentation and Reporting (GIPS Section I.5), 241
 Real Estate (GIPS Section I.6), 245
 Verification (GIPS Section IV), 261
- internal rate of return (IRR)
 discounted cash flows, 362–367
 evaluating R&D programs with IRR rule, 363–364
 NPV and IRR rules, 364–365
 problems with IRR rule, 365–367
- SI-IRR
 defined, 269
 gross-of-fees, 245, 249
 net-of-fees, 245, 249
 Private Equity (GIPS Section I.7), 247, 250
 Real Estate (GIPS Section I.6), 245
- internal valuation
 defined, 266
 Real Estate (GIPS Section I.6), 244, 254
- International Accounting Standards Board (IASB), 252
- International Federation of Technical Analysts, 681
- interquartile range (IQR), 429n.27
- intervals, 393–394. *see also* confidence intervals
 modal, 412
 time, 690
- interval scales, 390
- Intesa Sanpaolo, 423
- intrafirm pressure, 65, 70
- intrinsic value, deviations from, 680

- inverse head and shoulders patterns, 695, 697–699
- investment actions. *see also* Investment Analysis, Recommendations, and Actions [Standard of Professional Conduct V]
 fair dealing in, 111–112
 firm policies on, 105–106
 impact of, 40–41
 unethical, 57
- investment analysis
 due diligence in, 61
 independent, 97
 limitations of, 167–168
- Investment Analysis, Recommendations, and Actions [Standard of Professional Conduct V], 154–176
- Communication with Clients and Prospective Clients [Standard V(B)], 165–174
 application of the standard, 169–174
 compliance procedures, 168–169
 eleventh edition revision, 36
 guidance, 166–168
 text of, 46, 165–166
- Diligence and Reasonable Basis [Standard V(A)], 154–165
 application of the standard, 158–165
 compliance procedures, 158
 guidance, 154–157
 text of, 46, 154
- Record Retention [Standard V(C)], 174–176
 application of the standard, 176
 compliance procedures, 175
 guidance, 174–175
 text of, 46, 174
- Investment and Financial Services Association Limited–Performance Analyst Group, 230
- investment banking, 60–61
- investment decision, in hypothesis testing, 631
- investment firm balanced growth composite, 272–273
- Investment Foundations. *see* CFA Institute Investment Foundations™ certificate program
- investment industry, ethics in, 5–28, 39–43
- Investment Management Association, 231
- Investment Management Association of Singapore, 231
- investment management fees
 Calculation Methodology (GIPS Section I.2), 236
 defined, 266
 Disclosure (GIPS Section I.4), 238
 Input Data (GIPS Section I.1), 235
 Private Equity (GIPS Section I.7), 247–250
 Real Estate (GIPS Section I.6), 244
- investment multiple (TVPI)
 defined, 266, 271
 Private Equity (GIPS Section I.7), 249
 Real Estate (GIPS Section I.6), 245
- investment objectives
 establishing, 105
 in IPSs, 121, 176
- investment performance, standardized, 227
- Investment Performance Council (IPC), 226
- investment personnel. *see* personnel
- investment policy statement (IPS)
 in compliance procedures, 121
 developing, 119
 record retention of objectives/
 recommendations in, 176
 requirements and limitations of, 123–124
 reviews of, 124
 trades not aligned with, 120–121
 updating, 120, 123
- investment practice, impact of misrepresentation on, 72
- investment process
 changes to, 170–172
 informing clients of, 166–167
- investment products, applicable laws for, 51–53
- investments
 failed, 163
 restricting, 64
- investment system, disclosure of, 169, 171
- investor confidence, 227
- investor psychology, 678, 716
- investors
 buy-and-hold, 560–562
 constraints of, 121
- Investors Intelligence Advisors Sentiment reports, 715
- IPC. *see* Investment Performance Council
- IPOs. *see* initial public offerings
- IPS. *see* investment policy statement
- IQR. *see* interquartile range
- Ireland
 GIPS sponsor, 231
 real equity returns, 398
 total returns, 406, 409
- Irish Association of Investment Managers, 231
- IRR. *see* internal rate of return
- IRR rule, 362–367
 evaluating R&D programs with, 363–364
 NPV rule and, 364–365
 problems with, 365–367
- iShares Russell 2000 Index, 444
- Israel, 406
- issuer-paid research, 62–63, 76
- issuer relationship pressure, 65–66
- Italian CFA Society, 231
- Italian Investment Performance Committee, 231
- Italy
 GIPS sponsor, 231
 real equity returns, 399
 total returns, 406, 409
- J**
- Jankowitsch, Rainer, 642–643
- Japan
 companies and derivatives in, 655
 fundamental analysis, 681
 GIPS sponsor, 231
- in MSCI EAFE, 406
 real equity returns, 399
 Treasury bills, 305n.3
- Jarque-Bera (JB) statistical test of normality, 456n.49
- JC Penney Company, Inc., 412
- Jensen's inequality, 419n.21
- JetBlue Airways, 476
- joint normal distribution, 544
- joint probability, 479
- joint probability function, 502–504
- K**
- %K (stochastic oscillator), 712, 713
- Kahn, Robert L., 622
- Kazakhstan, 231
- Kazakhstan Association of Financial and Investment Analysts, 231
- knowingly (term), 71
- knowledge of the law, failure to maintain knowledge, 57
- Knowledge of the Law [Standard I(A)], 49–57
 application of the standard, 55–57
 compliance procedures, 54–55
 CFA members and candidates, 54
 dissociation, 54
 distribution area laws, 54
 firms, 54–55
 legal counsel, 54
 guidance, 49–53
 Code/Standards and applicable law, 50–53
 investment products and applicable law, 51–53
 violations by others, participation or association with, 51
 text of, 44, 49
- known errors, noncorrection of, 76
- Kohl's Corporation, 412
- Kondratieff, Nikolai, 722
- Kondratieff Wave, 722
- Korea GIPS Committee, 231
- KOSPI Composite Index, 442, 652
- kurtosis, 452–456
 calculating, 454–456
 defined, 452
 sample, 453–456
- L**
- labeling problems, 510
- Large Cap Equity Growth Composite, 293
- large-cap SMA composite, 286–288
- large cash flows, 235, 266
- law(s). *see also* applicable law
 distribution area, 54
 ethical influences on, 7–8, 17–18
 knowledge of (*see* Knowledge of the Law [Standard I(A)])
 more strict law, 50
 religious tenets as basis for, 56–57
- Lay, Kenneth M., 13n.10
- leaving an employer, 134–135, 143
- legal counsel, 54
- legal standards, ethical standards vs., 17–20
- Lehman Brothers Government Index, 584–585

- lending facility, covenant breach for, 542–543
- leptokurtic, 452, 453
- less strict (LS) countries, 52–53
- “less than” alternative hypothesis, 624, 625, 651–652
- level of service, disclosure of, 114
- level of significance, 626–628
- Leveraged Bond Composite, 293
- Liber Abaci* (Fibonacci), 724
- Liechtenstein, 231
- Liechtenstein Bankers’ Association, 231
- likelihood, 506
- limited partners, 267
- limited partnerships, 179, 267
- limit orders, probability of executing, 482–483
- limits, on private placements, 187
- linear interpolation, 422–423
- linear scale, 688, 689
- line charts, 682–683
- linked performance
 - Disclosure (GIPS Section I.4), 240
 - Presentation and Reporting (GIPS Section I.5), 241, 242
 - Real Estate (GIPS Section I.6), 244
 - Wrap Fee/SMA Portfolios (GIPS Section I.8), 252
- linked time-weighted rates of return, 244
- links, 267
- liquidity, returns and, 426–428
- liquidity premium, 305
- List of Composite Descriptions (GIPS Section V.0.1), 292–295
- local requirements, for record retention, 175
- location, measures of, 404
- logarithmic scale, 688, 689
- lognormal distribution, of continuous random variables, 551–557
- London Stock Exchange, 726
- longitudinal data, 587n.2
- look-ahead bias, 605, 606
- L’Oreal, 424
- lot allocations, minimum, 116–117
- lower bound, 589
- Loyalty, Prudence, and Care [Standard III(A)], 101–109
 - application of the standard, 106–109
 - compliance procedures, 105–106
 - client approval, 105
 - firm policies, 105–106
 - regular account information, 105
 - guidance, 101–105
 - client’s portfolio, developing, 103–104
 - identifying actual investment client, 103
 - proxy voting policies, 104–105
 - soft commission policies, 104
 - understanding application of standard, 102–103
 - text of, 45, 101
- Loyalty [Standard IV(A)], 133–143
 - application of the standard, 137–143
 - compliance procedures, 137
 - competition policy, 137
 - employee classification, 137
 - incident-reporting procedures, 137
 - termination policy, 137
 - guidance, 133–137
 - employer responsibilities, 134
 - independent practice, 134
 - leaving employers, 134–135
 - nature of employment, 136–137
 - social media, 136
 - whistleblowing, 136
 - text of, 45–46, 133
 - loyalty to clients, 109
- LS countries. *see* less strict countries
- lump sum
 - funding annuity with, 333–336
 - future, 317–319
 - future value of, 309–310
 - present value of, 317–320
- LVMH Moët Hennessy, 424
- M**
- MACD line, 714–715
- McDonald’s Corporation, 410
- MACD oscillator. *see* moving-average convergence/divergence oscillator
- MacKinnon, James G., 632n.15
- Macy’s Inc., 412
- MAD. *see* mean absolute deviation
- maintenance of records, 90, 262
- manager selection, 62, 69–70, 164
- mandates
 - following, 123
 - managing to, 121
 - notification of change in, 170
- Mann-Whitney U test, 655
- marginal probabilities, 478
- margin debt, 716–717, 720
- market(s), ethics and, 15–17
- market cycles, 722–723
 - decennial pattern, 723
 - 18-year cycle, 722
 - Kondratieff Wave, 722
 - presidential cycle, 723
- market indicators, 721
- market making, 91
- Market Manipulation [Standard II(B)], 96–101
 - application of the standard, 97–101
 - guidance, 96–97
 - information-based manipulation, 96
 - transaction-based manipulation, 97
 - text of, 45, 96
- market participants, technical analysis and, 678–680
- market sentiment
 - indicators of, 715–718
 - and technical analysis, 678–679
- Market Technicians Association, 681
- market timing, 560–562
- market value
 - defined, 267
 - GIPS Valuation Principles (GIPS Section II), 252
 - Input Data (GIPS Section I.1), 235n.2
 - Real Estate (GIPS Section I.6), 243n.6
- Market Vane Bullish Consensus, 715
- Markowitz, Harry, 428
- Marvell Technology Group, 695, 696, 698
- material information, 85, 92–94
- materiality, determining, 92, 95
- material nonpublic information
 - adopting compliance procedures for, 88
 - analyst recommendations as, 93–94
 - legal vs. ethical restrictions on, 18
- Material Nonpublic Information [Standard II(A)], 84–95
 - application of the standard, 91–95
 - compliance procedures, 88–91
 - achieving public dissemination, 88
 - adopting, 88
 - adopting disclosure procedures, 88–89
 - appropriate interdepartmental communications, 89
 - communication to employees, 91
 - firewall elements, 89
 - issuing press releases, 89
 - personal trading limitations, 90
 - physical separation of departments, 89
 - preventing personnel overlap, 90
 - proprietary trading procedures, 91
 - record maintenance, 90
 - reporting systems, 90
 - guidance, 84–88
 - industry experts, 87–88
 - investment research reports, 88
 - material information defined, 85
 - mosaic theory, 86–87
 - nonpublic information defined, 86
 - social media, 87
 - text of, 44–45, 84
- maturity premium, 305
- mean(s)
 - arithmetic, 404–408
 - and coefficient of variation, 441–442
 - cross-sectional mean, 405–407
 - defined, 398n.9, 404
 - and median, 410–411
 - population mean, 404–405
 - properties, 407–408
 - sample mean, 405–407
 - using, 456–457
 - and weighted mean, 414n.19
 - of binomial random variables, 537
 - cross-sectional, 405–407
 - geometric, 416–420
 - and arithmetic mean, 418–420
 - formula, 416–417
 - using, 456–457
 - harmonic, 420–421
 - hypothesis testing with, 632–648
 - tests with mean differences, 639–648
 - tests with single mean, 632–639
 - of lognormal distribution, 553, 556–557
 - of normal distribution, 543, 546
 - population, 404–405
 - estimates of, 591–601
 - test static for single, 633–636
 - sample, 405–407, 588n.3
 - distribution of, 588–591
 - as point estimator, 591, 593
 - standard error of, 588–589
 - of standard normal distribution, 544
 - trimmed, 408n.14
 - weighted, 413–416
 - Winsorized, 408n.14

- mean absolute deviation (MAD), 429–431
- mean differences, 639–648
 in tests with dependent samples, 644–648
 in tests with independent samples, 639–644
 mean returns on S&P 50, 640–642
 recovery rates on defaulted bonds, 642–644
- mean excess return, 443–444
- mean–variance analysis, 496n.10, 549
- measurement scales, 390–391
- measures of central tendency, 404–422
 arithmetic mean, 404–408
 and coefficient of variation, 441–442
 cross-sectional mean, 405–407
 defined, 404
 and median, 410–411
 population mean, 404–405
 properties, 407–408
 sample mean, 405–407
 using, 456–457
 and weighted mean, 414n.19
- geometric mean, 416–420
 and arithmetic mean, 418–420
 formula, 416–417
 using, 456–457
- harmonic mean, 420–421
- median, 409–411
 and arithmetic mean, 410–411
 defined, 409
 mode, 411–413
 weighted mean, 413–416
- measures of location, 404
- measuring implication, triangle pattern's, 703–704
- median, 409–411
- members, CFA. *see* Responsibilities as a CFA Institute Member or CFA Candidate [Standard of Professional Conduct VII]
- Membership Agreement, 51
- membership status, CFA Institute, 198–199, 201
- mesokurtic, 452
- Micronesia, 231
- Microsoft Excel, 631n.14
- minimum lot allocations, 116–117
- Misconduct [Standard I(D)], 81–84
 application of the standard, 82–84
 compliance procedures, 82
 guidance, 81–82
 text of, 44, 81
- misrepresentation
 avoiding, 80
 of information, 79
 potential, 77
- Misrepresentation [Standard I(C)], 71–81
 application of the standard, 76–81
 compliance procedures, 74–75
 factual presentations, 74–75
 maintaining webpages, 75
 plagiarism policy, 75
 qualification summary, 75
 verifying outside information, 75
 guidance, 71–74
 impact on investment practice, 72
- omissions, 73
- performance reporting, 72–73
- plagiarism, 73–74
- social media, 73
 work completed for employer, 74
- text of, 44, 71
- modal interval, 412
- mode, 411–413
- Model Request for Proposal, 157
- models
 manipulating inputs for, 100
 in quantitatively oriented research, 156–157
 understanding technical aspects of, 164–165
- modern portfolio theory (MPT), 549
- momentum oscillators, 708–715
 about, 708–710
 MACD oscillator, 714–715
 relative strength index, 710–712
 stochastic oscillator, 712–714
- monetary policy, 585–586
- money, time value of. *see* time value of money (TMV)
- money managers, estimation of client inflows by, 599–601
- money market, 375
- money market yields, 374–379
 bank discount yield, 375–376
 discount rate for, 378–379
 other yields vs., 378–379
- money-weighted rate of return
 for portfolios, 368–369, 372–374
 time- vs., 372–374
- Monte Carlo simulation, 557–563
 of capital expenditures, 589–590
 historical simulation vs., 562–563
 number of trials for, 559
 potential gains from market timing, 560–562
 process, 558–559
 random observations in, 559–560
- Moody's Investors Service, 412–413
- moral principles, 7
- more strict (MS) countries, 52–53
- more strict law, 50
- Morningstar, 390, 426
- mortgage, fixed-rate, 332–333
- mosaic theory
 applying, 93, 94
 and material nonpublic information, 86–87
- Motley Fool, 602
- moving-average convergence/divergence (MACD) oscillator, 714–715
- moving averages, 705–707
- MPT. *see* modern portfolio theory
- MSCI Europe, Australasia, and Far East (EAFE) Index
 cross-sectional mean of, 406–407
 portfolio expected return and variance of return, 496, 497, 500, 501
 tracking objective, 536
- MSCI World Index, 464–465
- MS countries. *see* more strict countries
- multinomial formula, 510
- Multiple Strategy Portfolios (MSP), 251
- multiplication rule for expected value of product of uncorrelated random variables, 504
- multiplication rule for independent events, 483–486
- multiplication rule for probabilities, 479, 481
- multiplication rule of counting, 509–510
- multivariate distribution, 544
- multivariate normal distribution, 544
- Munich RE, 423
- Murphy, John, 726
- must (term), 267
- must not (term), 267
- mutual fund cash position indicator, 720–721
- mutual funds
 performance of, 485–486
 predictability of performance for, 480–481
 risk/returns of, 634–635, 649–650
 skewness of, 450–452
- mutually exclusive events, 475
- mutually exclusive projects, 361
- N**
- Nagler, Florian, 642–643
- names, fictitious, 202
- NASDAQ
 Arms index, 719–720
 delisted companies, 605
- National Association of Pension Funds, 231
- National Bureau of Economic Research, 680
- National League of Management Companies, 231
- nature of employment, 136–137
- Nayar, Nandkumar, 638
- Neiman Marcus Group, Inc., 412
- net client inflows, estimating, 599–601
- Netherlands
 GIPS sponsor, 231
 real equity returns, 399
 total returns, 406, 410
- Netherlands Beroepsvereniging van Beleggingsprofessionals, 231
- net-of-fees returns
 Calculation Methodology (GIPS Section I.2), 236
 defined, 267
 Disclosure (GIPS Section I.4), 238
 GIPS Advertising Guidelines (GIPS Section III), 257
 Presentation and Reporting (GIPS Section I.5), 241
 Private Equity (GIPS Section I.7), 247, 248
 Real Estate (GIPS Section I.6), 244, 246
- net-of-fees SI-IRR, 245, 249
- net present value (NPV), 360–362
- new accounts, temporary, 237, 270
- new equity issuance indicator, 721–722
- new firms, starting, 140
- new media, retention of information on, 175
- New York Society of Security Analysts, 681

- New York Stock Exchange (NYSE)
 Arms index, 719–720
 cross-sectional data from, 585
 intermarket analysis, 726
 New Zealand, 231, 399, 406
 New Zealand Stock Exchange, 527
 Nikkei 225 Index, 405, 690
 Nikkei-Dow Jones Average, 582
 nodes, 491, 538
 noise, on point and figure charts, 687
 nominal risk-free interest rate, 305
 nominal scales, 390
 noncompete agreements, 135
 noncorrection of known errors, 76
 nonparametric inference, 654–658
 and parametric tests, 654–655, 658
 and tests with correlation, 655–658
 use of, 654–655
 nonparametric test, 654–655
 nonpublic information
 acting on, 91, 94
 analyst recommendations as, 93–94
 controlling, 92
 defined, 86
 material (*see* Material Nonpublic Information [Standard II(A)])
 standards for priority of transactions with, 186
 Nordstrom, Inc., 412
 normal distribution
 confidence intervals for population mean with, 594
 cumulative probabilities for, 740–741
 estimating probability with, 551
 hypothesis tests of normally-distributed populations
 difference between population means, 640–644
 differences between variances, 651
 mean differences, 645–648
 single population mean, 633–636
 value of population variance, 649
 normal distribution of continuous random variables, 543–551
 applications of, 549–551
 and probabilities for common stock portfolio, 548
 safety-first optimal portfolio, 549–551
 reliability factors for confidence intervals based on, 594–595, 598–599
 skewed vs., 446–449
 standard, 544, 740–741
 Student's *t*-distribution vs., 596–597
 Norway
 GIPS sponsor, 231
 real equity returns, 399
 total returns, 406, 409
 Norwegian Society of Financial Analysts, 231
 no securities laws (NS) countries, 52–53
 “not equal to” alternative hypothesis, 624, 625, 651–652
 notification
 changes to investment process, 170–172
 client bonus compensation, 144–145
 Code and Standards, 142
 of errors, 172
 fund mandate change, 170
 known violations, 55
 outside compensation, 145
 of risks/limitations, 173–174
 NPV. *see* net present value
 NPV rule
 defined, 361
 evaluating R&D programs with, 362
 and IRR rule, 364–365
 NS countries. *see* no securities laws countries
 null hypothesis, 624–625
 NYSE. *see* New York Stock Exchange
- O**
 objective probabilities, 476
 objectives
 investment, 105, 121, 176
 tracking, 536
 objectivity. *see* Independence and Objectivity [Standard I(B)]
 odds, probabilities stated as, 476–479
 omissions, 73
 one-sided (one-tailed) hypothesis test, 624
 open-end funds, 247, 267, 275–277
 opinion polls, 715
 opinions
 about CFA Program or Institute, 194
 of credit rating agency, 61–62
 facts in reports vs., 168
 group research, 160
 integrity of, 63
 providing, as facts, 169
 opportunity cost, 304
 option pricing models, volatility in, 555–556. *see also specific models, e.g.*: Black–Scholes–Merton model
 options
 agent, 182
 call, 539, 558–559, 563, 568
 European-style, 558, 563, 566
 put, 566
 ordinal scales, 390
 ordinary annuities, 314
 and annuity due, 322–323
 with equal cash flows, 315–316
 present value of, 321, 327
 projected present value of, 323–325
 oscillators. *see* momentum oscillators
 Österreichische Vereinigung für Finanzanalyse und Asset Management, 230
 outcomes, of random variables, 474–475
 outflows, 362
 out-of-date information, 80–81
 out-of-sample tests, 602
 outside compensation, 145
 outside information, verifying, 75
 outside organizations, referral arrangements with, 192
 outside parties, referral arrangements and, 190–192
 overbought conditions, 708
 overconfidence bias, 11–12
 oversold conditions, 708
- ownership
 beneficial, 186, 187
 of completed prior work, 139
 of firm's records, 175, 176
 stock, 179–181
- P**
 paid-in capital, 249, 267
 paired comparisons test, 644
 paired observations, 644
 pairs arbitrage trade, 478
 Pakistan, 231
 panel data, 587n.2
 parameters, 389, 582. *see also specific parameters*
 parametric tests, 654–655, 658
 partial fills, 113
 partnerships, broker-sponsored limited, 179
 passing exams in consecutive years, 201
 payments
 fixed-rate mortgage, 332–333
 receivable, 635–636
 pay-to-play scandals, 62
 P/B. *see* price-to-book ratio
 PCP. *see* Professional Conduct Program
 P/E. *see* price-earnings ratio
 Pearson coefficient of skewness, 449n.42
 pennant patterns, 704–705
 pension plans, defined benefit, 557
 %D (stochastic oscillator), 712–713
 percentiles, 421–425
 %K (stochastic oscillator), 712, 713
 performance appraisal, 367, 425–426
 performance attribution, 128
 performance-based fees, 238, 267
 performance calculation, 126–127
 disclosing methodology for, 128–129
 with selected accounts, 128
 performance evaluation, 367n.8
 benchmarks for, 121
 objectivity of, 61
 performance examination report, 262, 268
 performance examinations
 defined, 268
 Disclosure (GIPS Section I.4), 238
 Verification (GIPS Section IV), 262
 performance measurement, 367
 performance presentation, 127–128
 Performance Presentation [Standard III(D)], 125–129
 application of the standard, 126–129
 compliance procedures, 126
 guidance, 125–126
 text of, 45, 125
 performance reporting, 72–73, 456–457
 periodicity, 241, 268
 periods, number of, 331–332
 permutation, 511
 permutation formula, 511
 perpetuities
 defined, 314
 present value of, 325–326
 and present value of ordinary annuity, 327
 present value of projected, 326–327
 personal actions, 83

- personal trading
 and conflict of interest, 183
 disclosure of, 188, 189
 limitations on, 90
 and market manipulation, 97–98
 priority of transactions for, 185
- personnel
 preventing overlap of, 90
 privity to recommendation, 112
 reporting requirements for, 187–188
- Petroleo Brasileiro ADRs, 713–714
- Philips, 423
- PIC multiple
 defined, 268
 Private Equity (GIPS Section I.7), 249
 Real Estate (GIPS Section I.6), 246
- plagiarism, 77–79
 and misrepresentation, 73–74
 policies on, 75
- platykurtic, 452
- PME. *see* public market equivalent
- point and figure charts, 686–688
- The Point and Figure Method of Anticipating Stock Price Movements* (de Villiers and Taylor), 686
- point estimates, 594
- point estimators, 591–593, 594n.12
- pooled estimates, 640
- population, 389, 582
- population mean, 404–405
 estimates of, 591–601
 confidence intervals, 593–598
 point estimators, 591–593
 sample size, 599–601
 test static for single, 633–636
- population standard deviation, 432–434
- population variance, 431–432
- portfolio(s)
 Calculation Methodology (GIPS Section I.2), 236
 Composite Construction (GIPS Section I.3), 236, 237
 defined, 268
 developing, 103–104
 Disclosure (GIPS Section I.4), 238–240
 discretionary, 260
 expected defaults in, 537–538
 expected returns
 calculation of, 497
 and variance of return, 502
 Fundamentals of Compliance (GIPS Section I.0), 234
 GIPS Valuation Principles (GIPS Section II), 253
 Input Data (GIPS Section I.1), 235
 measurement of returns, 367–374
 money-weighted rate of return, 368–369, 372–374
 time-weighted rate of return, 369–374
 weighted mean, 415–416
 MSPs, 251
 Presentation and Reporting (GIPS Section I.5), 241
 probabilities for common stock, 548
 Real Estate (GIPS Section I.6), 243, 245, 246
 suitability of investment for, 122–123
- Verification (GIPS Section IV), 259–261
 wrap fee/SMA (*see* Wrap Fee/SMA Portfolios [GIPS Section I.8])
- portfolio managers, independence of, 59
- portfolio turnover, 432–434
- Portugal, 231, 406, 409
- posterior probability, 506
- power of a test, 627
- practice, defined, 134
- precision, point estimator, 594n.12
- preclearance procedures, 188
- pre-dissemination behavior, guidelines for, 113
- premiums, risk, 305, 494–495, 625
- Presentation and Reporting (GIPS Section I.5), 240–242
 about, 232
 recommendations
 general, 242
 for private equity, 250
 for real estate, 246
 requirements
 general, 240–242
 for private equity, 248–249
 for real estate, 244–245
 for real estate closed-end fund composites, 245–246
 for wrap fee/SMA portfolios, 252
 sample presentations, 272–288
 asset management company, 273–274
 investment firm balanced growth composite, 272–273
 large-cap SMA composite, 286–288
 presentations, 127–128. *see also* compliant presentations
- present value (PV)
 defined, 306
 future and, 307, 336–337
 present value of series of cash flows, 320–328
 with equal cash flows, 320–325
 for infinite series of equal cash flows, 325–326
 at other times than $t = 0$, 326–327
 with unequal cash flows, 328
 present value of single cash flow, 317–320
 finding, 317–319
 frequency of compounding, 319–320
 for future lump sum, 317–319
 for lump sum, 317–319
- Preservation of Confidentiality [Standard III(E)], 129–133
 application of the standard, 131–133
 compliance procedures, 131
 guidance, 129–130
 compliance with laws, 130
 electronic information and security, 130
 professional conduct investigations by CFA Institute, 130
 status of clients, 130
 text of, 45, 129
- presidential cycle, 723
- press releases, issuing, 89
- pre-verification procedures, GIPS, 259–260
- PRFDX funds. *see* T. Rowe Price Equity Income fund
- price
 asset
 artificial volatility in, 98–100
 and head and shoulders patterns, 696–699
 normal distribution as model for, 545
 and oscillators, 708
 trends in, 679–681
 and volume, 689–690
 convergence of oscillator and, 708
 full, 377n.14
 and personal trading practices, 97–98
 stock
 as Bernoulli random variable, 530–531
 binomial model, 538–539
 and control deficiency disclosures, 637–639
 lognormal distribution for, 553–554
 price-based indicators, 705–708
 Bollinger bands, 707–708
 moving averages, 705–707
 price-earnings ratio (P/E), 410–411
 price relative, 553
 price targets, 696–700
 price-to-book ratio (P/B), 604
 primary funds, 247–249, 268
 primary fund vehicle, 284–286
 principal, 306
 prior coverage, 66
 prior employer
 documents and files of, 138
 in performance presentation, 127
 prior fund, in performance presentation, 127
 Priority of Transactions [Standard VI(B)], 185–190
 application of the standard, 188–190
 compliance procedures, 186–188
 guidance, 185–186
 accounts with beneficial ownership, 186
 avoiding potential conflicts, 185
 nonpublic information, 186
 personal trading and trading for clients, 185
 text of, 46–47, 185
 prior probabilities, 505
 prior work, ownership of, 139
 private equity
 defined, 268
 and GIPS compliance, 229
 GIPS Valuation Principles (GIPS Section II) for, 254, 255
 sample presentations, 279–286
 Private Equity (GIPS Section I.7), 247–250
 about, 233
 Calculation Methodology provisions, 247, 250
 Composite Construction provisions, 248, 250
 Disclosure provisions, 248, 250
 Input Data provisions, 247, 250
 Presentation and Reporting provisions, 248–250
 recommendations, 250
 requirements, 247–249

- private placements, limits on, 187
- probability(-ies), 473–522
- a priori, 476
 - about, 474
 - Bayes' formula, 504–508
 - for common stock portfolio, 548
 - conditional, 478–481, 485–486
 - consistent, 478
 - correlation, 501, 503–504
 - counting, 508–511
 - combination formula, 510–511
 - multinomial formula, 510
 - multiplication rule of, 509–510
 - permutation formula, 511
 - cumulative, 740–741
 - defined, 475–476
 - down transition, 538
 - empirical, 476
 - events
 - defined, 475
 - independent events, 483–486
 - expected value, 488–492
 - defined, 488–489
 - of product of uncorrelated random variables, 504
 - properties of, 496–497
 - standard deviation, 489–490
 - total probability rule for expected value, 490–492
 - tree diagrams, 491–492
 - variance, 489–490
 - joint, 479
 - joint probability function, 502–504
 - marginal, 478
 - objective, 476
 - portfolio expected return
 - calculation of, 497
 - and variance of return, 502
 - posterior, 506
 - practice problems, 515–518
 - prior, 505
 - of random variables, 504
 - rules
 - addition rule for probability, 481–482
 - multiplication rule for expected value of product of uncorrelated random variables, 504
 - multiplication rule for probability, 479, 481
 - multiplication rule of counting, 509–510
 - total probability rule, 486–488
 - solutions to problems, 519–522
 - subjective, 476
 - in terms of odds, 476–479
 - transition, 538
 - unconditional, 478
 - up transition, 538
 - variance
 - conditional variances, 492–495
 - covariance, 497–502
 - and portfolio expected return, 502
- probability density function, 528
- probability distributions, 525–579
- continuous random variables, 539–557
 - continuous uniform distribution, 540–543
 - lognormal distribution, 551–557
 - normal distribution, 543–551
 - cumulative probabilities for standard normal distribution, 740–741
 - defined, 526
 - discrete random variables, 527–539
 - binomial distribution, 530–539
 - discrete uniform distribution, 528–530
 - distribution of bond price, 527–528
 - Monte Carlo simulation, 557–563
 - historical simulation vs., 562–563
 - number of trials for, 559
 - potential gains from market timing, 560–562
 - process, 558–559
 - random observations in, 559–560
 - practice problems, 566–572
 - of sample mean, 588–591
 - solutions to problems, 573–579
- procurement process, 62
- product, of uncorrelated random variables, 504
- profession (term), 9–10
- professional conduct. *see* Standards of Professional Conduct
- professional conduct investigations, 130
- Professional Conduct Program (PCP), 37–38, 51, 82, 130
- Professional Conduct Statement, 8–9
- professional designations, order of, 202
- professionalism, 9–11, 82
- Professionalism [Standard of Professional Conduct I], 49–84
- Independence and Objectivity [Standard I(B)], 58–70
 - application of the standard, 64–70
 - compliance procedures, 63–64
 - guidance, 58–63
 - text of, 44, 58
 - Knowledge of the Law [Standard I(A)], 49–57
 - application of the standard, 55–57
 - compliance procedures, 54–55
 - guidance, 49–53
 - text of, 44, 49
 - Misconduct [Standard I(D)], 81–84
 - application of the standard, 82–84
 - compliance procedures, 82
 - guidance, 81–82
 - text of, 44, 81
 - Misrepresentation [Standard I(C)], 71–81
 - application of the standard, 76–81
 - compliance procedures, 74–75
 - guidance, 71–74
 - text of, 44, 71
- text of, 44
- professionally designated, certified, or licensed commercial property valuers/appraisers
- defined, 268
 - GIPS Valuation Principles (GIPS Section II), 254
 - Real Estate (GIPS Section I.6), 243, 244, 246
- professional misconduct, 83–84
- promotion, company, 97
- proprietary assets, 240, 268
- proprietary trading procedures, 91
- prospective clients. *see also* Communication with Clients and Prospective Clients [Standard V(B)]
- benefits of GIPS compliance for, 223
 - Composite Construction (GIPS Section I.3), 237
 - defined, 268
 - Disclosure (GIPS Section I.4), 239
 - Fundamentals of Compliance (GIPS Section I.0), 234
 - GIPS Advertising Guidelines (GIPS Section III), 256
 - Verification (GIPS Section IV), 258
 - Wrap Fee/SMA Portfolios (GIPS Section I.8), 250–252
- “Protocol for Broker Recruiting,” 135
- proxy voting policies, 104, 106
- prudence. *see* Loyalty, Prudence, and Care [Standard III(A)]
- pseudo-random numbers, 559n.45
- public companies, independence and objectivity of, 61
- public dissemination, achieving, 88
- public market equivalent (PME), 248, 268
- pump and dump strategy, 100
- pump-priming strategy, 99
- pure discount instruments, 375
- put/call ratio, 715–716
- put options, European, 566
- PV. *see* present value
- p*-value approach to hypothesis testing, 624, 631–632
- ## Q
- Q&As. *see* Questions & Answers, GIPS
- Qlik Technologies, 411
- quadruple witching days, 653–654
- qualification summary, 75
- quantiles, 421–428
 - calculating, 423–425
 - defined, 421
 - in investment practice, 425–428
 - types of, 421–425
- quantitatively oriented models, 157, 162–163
- quantitatively oriented research, 156–157
- quantitatively oriented techniques, 157
- quartiles, 421
- Questcor Pharmaceuticals, 411
- Questions & Answers (Q&As), GIPS, 228, 233, 234, 259
- quintiles, 421
- quotations, attributing, 75
- quoted interest rate, 310
- ## R
- randomness, 583
- random number generator, 559
- random numbers, 559–560
- random observations, in Monte Carlo simulations, 559–560
- random sampling
 - simple, 582–584
 - stratified, 584–585

- random variables, 474–475
 - Bernoulli, 530–531
 - binomial, 532–534
 - continuous (*see* continuous random variables)
 - defined, 527
 - discrete (*see* discrete random variables)
 - independence for, 504
 - multiplication rule for expected value of product of, 504
 - outcomes of, 474–475
 - standardization of, 546–547
 - uncorrelated, 504
- range
 - definition, 429
 - interquartile, 429n.27
 - and mean absolute deviation, 430–431
- ranked data, nonparametric tests of, 654–655
- rate of change (ROC) oscillator, 708–710
- rate of return. *see also* internal rate of return (IRR)
 - money-weighted rate of return for portfolios, 368–369, 372–374
 - time- vs., 372–374
 - time-weighted rate of return
 - Calculation Methodology (GIPS Section I.2), 235
 - defined, 270
 - linked, 244
 - money- vs., 372–374
 - for portfolios, 369–374
 - Real Estate (GIPS Section I.6), 244, 245
- ratio scales, 390
- RBC Canadian Index Fund, 413–414, 417
- R&D programs. *see* research and development programs
- real estate
 - defined, 269
 - and GIPS compliance, 229
 - GIPS Valuation Principles (GIPS Section II) for, 253–255
 - sample presentations
 - with closed-end funds, 277–279
 - with open-end funds, 275–277
- Real Estate (GIPS Section I.6), 242–246
 - about, 233
 - Calculation Methodology provisions, 243–246
 - for closed-end fund composites, 245–246
 - Composite Construction provisions, 245
 - Disclosure provisions, 244–246
 - Input Data provisions, 243, 246
 - Presentation and Reporting provisions, 244–246
 - recommendations, 246
 - requirements, 243–246
- realization multiple (DPI)
 - defined, 265, 269
 - Private Equity (GIPS Section I.7), 249
 - Real Estate (GIPS Section I.6), 246
- real risk-free interest rate, 305
- reasonable basis. *see also* Diligence and Reasonable Basis [Standard V(A)]
 - defined, 155
 - developing, 159
- receivables, payments of, 635–636
- recommendation objectivity, 68–69
- recommendations. *see also* Investment Analysis, Recommendations, and Actions [Standard of Professional Conduct V]
 - defined, 269
 - fair dealing in, 110–111
 - in investment policy statements, 176
 - as material nonpublic information, 93–94
 - number of people privy to, 112
 - reasonable basis for, 155
- record keeping, supervision of, 151
- Record Retention [Standard V(C)], 174–176
 - application of the standard, 176
 - compliance procedures, 175
 - guidance, 174–175
 - local requirements, 175
 - new media records, 175
 - records as firm property, 175
 - text of, 46, 174
- records
 - maintenance of, 90, 262
 - as property of firm, 175, 176
 - retention of, 176
- recovery rates, on defaulted bonds, 642–644
- rectangle patterns, 704
- references, employee, 82
- Reference to CFA Institute, Designation and Program [Standard VII(B)], 198–202
 - application of the standard, 201–202
 - compliance procedures, 200
 - guidance, 198–200
 - CFA designation, 199
 - CFA Institute membership, 198–199
 - referring to candidacy in CFA program, 199–200
 - text of, 47, 198
- referral arrangements
 - disclosure of, 190–192
 - informing firms of, 191
 - interdepartmental, 191
- Referral fees [Standard VI(C)], 190–192
 - application of the standard, 190–192
 - compliance procedures, 190
 - guidance, 190
 - text of, 47, 190
- Regional Investment Performance Subcommittees, 230
- regulations, ethics and, 17–19, 41
- rejection point
 - for tests on population variance, 649–650
 - for tests on relative values of population variances, 651–654
 - for test statistic, 628–630
 - for z-test alternative, 637
- rejection region, test statistic, 629
- related parties, gifts and entertainment from, 66–67
- relationships
 - and conflicts of interest, 180, 184
 - custodial, 60
 - fund manager, 60, 70
 - independent contractor, 136–137
 - investment banking, 60–61
 - and issuer relationship pressure, 65–66
- relative dispersion, 441
- relative frequency
 - cumulative, 394–398
 - and frequency distributions, 394–398
- relative strength analysis
 - of charts, 690–691
 - in intermarket analysis, 727–728
- relative strength index (RSI), 710–712
- reliability factors
 - basis of computing, 598–599
 - for confidence intervals, 594–595, 598–599
- religious tenets, laws and regulations based on, 56–57
- reporting
 - incident-reporting procedures, 137
 - of material nonpublic information, 90
 - performance, 72–73, 456–457
 - of potential unethical actions, 57
 - requirements for investment personnel, 187–188
 - of violations, 55
- reports
 - facts vs. opinions in, 168
 - flash, 113
 - material nonpublic information in, 88
 - performance examination, 262, 268
 - presentation of, 168
 - research, 88
 - verification, 258, 259, 262, 271
- representation letter, 262
- representative accounts, 221
- Repsol, 423
- requested favors, 183
- request for proposal (RFP), 140
- requirements (term), 269
- research
 - diligence, 158
 - group, 157, 160
 - independence of, 65–66, 68
 - issuer-paid, 62–63, 76
 - and plagiarism, 73–74
 - quantiles in, 425–428
 - quantitatively oriented, 156–157
 - reasonable basis for, 159
 - and record retention, 176
 - sampling biases in, 606–607
 - secondary, 155–156
 - supervision of, 150–151, 153–154
 - third-party, 155–156, 160
- research and development (R&D) programs
 - IRR rule in evaluation of, 363–364
 - NPV rule in evaluation of, 362
- research reports, material nonpublic information in, 88
- residual value
 - defined, 269
 - Private Equity (GIPS Section I.7), 249
 - Real Estate (GIPS Section I.6), 246
- resistance, 693

- Responsibilities as a CFA Institute Member or CFA Candidate [Standard of Professional Conduct VII], 193–202
 - Conduct as Participants in CFA Institute Programs [Standard VII(A)], 193–197
 - application of the standard, 195–197
 - eleventh addition revision, 36–37
 - guidance, 193–195
 - text of, 47, 193
 - Reference to CFA Institute, Designation and Program [Standard VII(B)], 198–202
 - application of the standard, 201–202
 - compliance procedures, 200
 - guidance, 198–200
 - text of, 47, 198
 - Responsibilities of Supervisors [Standard IV(C)], 146–154
 - application of the standard, 150–154
 - compliance procedures, 148–150
 - adequate, 148–149
 - and code of ethics, 148
 - establishing appropriate incentive structures, 150
 - implementation of compliance education and training, 149
 - eleventh edition revision, 36
 - guidance, 146–148
 - detection as part of supervision, 147–148
 - system for supervision, 147
 - text of, 46, 146
 - responsibility(-ies)
 - accepting, 152
 - of employers, 134
 - execution-only, 109
 - restricted lists, creating, 64
 - restricted periods, 187
 - results
 - overemphasis of, 81
 - simulated, 127–128
 - retired CFA Institute membership status, 201
 - retracements, 692
 - return(s)
 - in advertisements, 289–291
 - annual, advertisements with, 290–291
 - annualized, advertisements with, 289–290
 - and bank discount yield, 376
 - capital, 244, 263
 - continuously compounded, 553–554
 - for discount securities, 377
 - dollar-weighted, 368n.9
 - equity, 398–399
 - expected, 497, 502
 - geometric mean, 418–420
 - gross-of-fees
 - Calculation Methodology (GIPS Section I.2), 236
 - defined, 266
 - Disclosure (GIPS Section I.4), 238
 - GIPS Advertising Guidelines (GIPS Section III), 257
 - Presentation and Reporting (GIPS Section I.5), 241, 242
 - Private Equity (GIPS Section I.7), 248
 - Real Estate (GIPS Section I.6), 244, 246
 - holding period
 - defined, 367, 392
 - finding ending value of investment with, 554
 - formula, 392
 - and time-weighted rate of return, 370
 - income, 244, 266
 - independently and identically distributed, 554
 - and liquidity, 426–428
 - mean excess, 443–444
 - of mutual funds, 634–635, 649–650
 - net-of-fees
 - Calculation Methodology (GIPS Section I.2), 236
 - defined, 267
 - Disclosure (GIPS Section I.4), 238
 - GIPS Advertising Guidelines (GIPS Section III), 257
 - Presentation and Reporting (GIPS Section I.5), 241
 - Private Equity (GIPS Section I.7), 247, 248
 - Real Estate (GIPS Section I.6), 244, 246
 - normal distribution as model for, 545
 - portfolio
 - expected portfolio returns, 502
 - measurement of returns, 367–374, 415–416
 - total
 - Calculation Methodology (GIPS Section I.2), 235
 - defined, 270
 - GIPS Advertising Guidelines (GIPS Section III), 257
 - Presentation and Reporting (GIPS Section I.5), 241
 - Real Estate (GIPS Section I.6), 244
 - reversal patterns, 694–701
 - continuation vs., 694
 - double tops and bottoms, 699–701
 - head and shoulders, 695–699
 - about, 695–696
 - determining price targets from, 698
 - inverse, 697–699
 - setting price targets with, 696–699
 - triple tops and bottoms, 700–701
 - reversal size, on point and figure charts, 687
 - reviews
 - account, 105, 114
 - of compliance procedures, 54
 - for independence/objectivity, 64
 - RFP. *see* request for proposal
 - risk
 - financial, 551n.27
 - of investment analysis, 167–168
 - of mutual funds, 634–635, 649–650
 - notification of, 173–174
 - shortfall, 549–551
 - tracking, 536
 - Value at Risk, 551, 557
 - risk-arbitrage trading, 91
 - risk management, 551
 - risk premiums, 305, 494–495, 625
 - risk profile
 - investment suitability for, 122, 124
 - understanding, 119
 - Robeco Boston Partners Small Cap Value Fund II, 433
 - robust (term), 633
 - Rockwell Automation, 700–701
 - ROC oscillator. *see* rate of change oscillator
 - Rodman and Renshaw, 691
 - Roy, A. D., 549n.24
 - Roy's safety-first rule, 549–551
 - RSI. *see* relative strength index
 - Rule of 72, 332n.9
 - Rules of Procedure. *see* Bylaws and Rules of Procedure for Professional Conduct
 - rumors, addressing, 138–139
 - runs test, 655
 - Russell 2000 Index, 444
 - Russia, 231
 - RVPI. *see* unrealized multiple
 - RWE, 423
- S**
- SAC Capital, 6
 - safety-first rules, 549–551
 - Saint-Gobain, 423
 - Saks Incorporated, 412
 - sales pressure, 66
 - sample excess kurtosis, 453–456
 - sample mean, 405–407, 588n.3
 - distribution of, 588–591
 - as point estimator, 591, 592
 - standard error of, 588–589
 - samples
 - defined, 389, 582
 - dependent, 644–648
 - independent, 639–644
 - reasons for taking, 582
 - in statistics, 389
 - sample selection bias, 604–605, 630–631
 - sample size
 - and estimates of population mean, 599–601
 - and sampling distribution, 592–593
 - sample skewness, 449–450
 - sample standard deviation, 435–437
 - sample statistic, 389, 582–584
 - sample variance, 434–435
 - calculating, 435–437
 - as point estimator, 592
 - sampling, 581–620
 - about, 582
 - biases, 601–607
 - data-mining bias, 601–604
 - in investment research, 606–607
 - look-ahead bias, 605, 606
 - sample selection bias, 604–605, 630–631
 - survivorship, 604, 606
 - survivorship bias, 630–631
 - time-period bias, 605, 607, 630, 631
 - and central limit theorem, 588–591
 - distribution of sample mean, 588–591
 - estimates of population mean, 591–601
 - confidence intervals, 593–598
 - point estimators, 591–593
 - sample size, 599–601

- practice problems, 610–614
- simple random, 582–584
- solutions to problems, 615–620
- stratified random, 584–585
- of time-series and cross-sectional data, 585–587
- sampling biases, 601–607
 - data-mining bias, 601–604
 - in investment research, 606–607
 - look-ahead bias, 605, 606
 - sample selection bias, 604–605, 630–631
 - survivorship, 604, 606
 - survivorship bias, 630–631
 - time-period bias, 605, 607, 630, 631
- sampling distribution, 584, 592
- sampling error, 583–584
- sampling plans, 583
- Sam's Club, 404
- sanctions, 38, 43
- Sanofi, 424
- SAP, 424
- Sarbanes–Oxley Act, 637–639
- Satyam Computer Services, 6
- Savage, Sam, 557
- scale, chart, 688–689
- scenario testing, 159, 551
- Schneider Electric, 424
- Sears, Roebuck and Co., 412
- SEC. *see* US Securities and Exchange Commission
- secondary funds, 247, 269
- secondary offerings, 722
- secondary research, 155–156
- securities, description of, 169–170
- Securities Exchange Act (1934), 681
- security (of electronic information), 130
- Security Analysts Association of Japan, 231
- Selected American Shares (SLASX) fund
 - geometric and arithmetic mean returns, 418–420
 - range and mean absolute deviation, 430–431
 - sample variance and sample standard deviation, 435–437
 - Sharpe ratio, 445, 446
- selective disclosure, 92, 114, 116
- self-dealing, 135
- self-regulation of GIPS standards, 230
- selling short, 478n.2
- semideviation, 437, 438
- semilogarithmic scale, 456–457
- semivariance, 437–438
- sentiment indicators, 715–718
 - calculated statistical indexes, 715–718
 - opinion polls, 715
- sequential comparisons, 484n.6
- series of cash flows
 - future value, 314–316
 - with equal cash flows, 315–316
 - with unequal cash flows, 316
 - present value, 320–328
 - with equal cash flows, 320–325
 - infinite series of equal cash flows, 325–326
 - at other times than $t = 0$, 326–327
 - with unequal cash flows, 328
- service(s)
 - additional, for select clients, 116
 - level of, 114
- service fees, 68
- service providers, selecting, 163–164
- SET. *see* Stock Exchange of Thailand
- settlement date accounting, 269
- Sharpe, William, 428–429, 443
- Sharpe ratios, 443–446
 - calculating, 586–587
 - confidence interval for population mean, 595–596, 598
 - formula for, 443–445
- Shiller, Robert J., 679
- shortfall risk, 549–551
- shorting, 478n.2
- short interest, 717–718
- short-term trading index (TRIN), 718–720
- should (term), 269
- Siemens, 424
- signal line, MACD oscillator, 714
- significant cash flows
 - Composite Construction (GIPS Section I.3), 237
 - defined, 269
 - Disclosure (GIPS Section I.4), 240
- SI-IRR. *see* since inception internal rates of return
- simple interest, 306
- simple random sample, 583
- simple random sampling, 582–584
- simulated results, 127–128
- simulation trials, 558
- simultaneous dissemination, 113
- since inception (term), 269
- since inception distributions, 249
- since inception internal rates of return (SI-IRR)
 - defined, 269
 - gross-of-fees, 245, 249
 - net-of-fees, 245, 249
 - Private Equity (GIPS Section I.7), 247, 249
 - Real Estate (GIPS Section I.6), 245
- since inception paid-in capital, 249
- Singapore, 231, 406, 442, 443
- single cash flow
 - future value, 306–314
 - with continuous compounding, 312–313
 - frequency of compounding, 310–312
 - with interim cash reinvested at same rate, 307–308
 - for lump sum, 309–310
 - stated and effective rates for, 313–314
 - without interim cash, 308
 - present value, 317–320
 - finding, 317–319
 - frequency of compounding, 319–320
 - for future lump sum, 317–319
 - for lump sum, 317–319
- single mean hypothesis tests, 632–639
 - and effect of disclosures on share prices, 637–639
 - and payments of receivables, 635–636
 - and risk/returns of mutual funds, 634–635
- single variance hypothesis tests, 648–650
- situational influences, 12–13, 21–22
- skewness, 446–452
 - of binomial distribution of discrete random variables, 533
 - defined, 449
 - of mutual funds, 450–452
 - of normal distribution, 544
 - sample, 449–450
 - skewed distributions, 446–449
 - of S&P 500, 450
- Skilling, Jeffery K., 13
- SLASX fund. *see* Selected American Shares fund
- SMA portfolios. *see* Wrap Fee/SMA Portfolios (GIPS Section I.8)
- Socially Responsible Investment (SRI) Composite, 292–293
- social media
 - disclosure of confidential information on, 132–133
 - and duties to employer, 136
 - limited disclosures on, 117
 - and material nonpublic information, 87
 - misrepresentation on, 73
 - retention of information on, 175
- Société Française des Analystes Financiers, 230
- Société Générale, 423
- society, benefit of ethics to, 40
- soft commissions, 104
- soft dollars, 104
- software, GIPS-compliant, 222
- solicitation, of former clients, 137–142
- South Africa
 - commodities and economy of, 728
 - GIPS sponsor, 231
 - real equity returns, 399
- South Korea, 231, 442
- S&P. *see* entries beginning with Standard & Poor's
- S&P 500 Index
 - Arms Index, 718–719
 - CBOE Volatility Index, 716
 - Chebyshev's inequality for, 440–441
 - consensus current P/E, 410, 411
 - cumulative relative frequency and relative frequency of, 402–403
 - and data mining, 603
 - distribution of annual returns, 462
 - equity market returns, 437
 - expected value from, 416
 - frequency distribution for holding period returns, 392–398
 - frequency polygon, 401–402
 - histogram, 400–401, 404
 - as indicator, 582
 - intermarket analysis, 726–728
 - margin debt vs., 717
 - mean returns on, 640–642
 - modal interval, 412
 - portfolio expected return and variance of return, 496, 497, 500, 501
 - range, 429
 - relative strength analysis, 690, 691
 - skewness and kurtosis, 450
 - and SPDR S&P 500, 444, 646–647
 - weighted averages on, 416

- Spain
 GIPS sponsor, 231
 real equity returns, 399
 total returns, 406, 409
 S&P/ASX 200 Index, 442
 SPC. *see* Standards of Practice Council
 SPDR S&P 500
 Sharpe ratio, 444
 Vanguard Total World Stock Index
 ETF vs., 647–648
 Spearman rank correlation coefficient,
 655–658
 sponsors, GIPS, 230–231
 springs, 702
 S&P/TSX Composite Total Return
 Index, 413–414
 SRI Composite. *see* Socially Responsible
 Investment Composite
 Sri Lanka, 231
 stakeholders
 defined, 6
 impact of ethical practices on, 6–9
 standard deviation. *see also* variance
 and coefficient of variation, 441–442
 defined, 270, 431
 expected value of, 489–490
 of normal distribution, 543, 545–546
 population, 432–434
 sample, 435–437
 of standard normal distribution, 544
 standard error
 in confidence interval construction,
 594
 of the sample mean, 588–589, 599
 of test statistic, 626
 standardization, of random variables,
 546–547
 standard normal distribution, 544,
 740–741
 standard normal variables, probability
 of, 547
 Standard & Poor's (S&P), ratings, 390,
 391n.3
 standards of conduct (term), 8
 Standards of Practice Council (SPC),
 38–39, 43
Standards of Practice Handbook, 3,
 33–37, 39, 42
 eleventh edition, 35–37, 39
 revisions to, 34
 Standards of Professional Conduct,
 8, 33–47, 49–220. *see also* Asset
 Manager Code of Professional
 Conduct (AMC)
 adoption of, 38
 and applicable law, 50–53
 conflicts of interest [Standard VI],
 177–192
 disclosure of conflicts [Standard
 VI(A)], 46, 177–184
 priority of transactions [Standard
 VI(B)], 46–47, 185–190
 referral fees [Standard VI(C)], 47,
 190–192
 text of, 46–47
 duties to clients [Standard III],
 101–133
 fair dealing [Standard III(B)], 45,
 110–118
 loyalty, prudence, and care [Standard
 III(A)], 45, 101–109
 performance presentation [Standard
 III(D)], 45, 125–129
 preservation of confidentiality
 [Standard III(E)], 45, 129–133
 suitability [Standard III(C)], 45,
 118–125
 text of, 45
 duties to employers [Standard IV],
 133–154
 additional compensation
 arrangements [Standard IV(B)], 46,
 144–145
 loyalty [Standard IV(A)], 45–46,
 133–143
 responsibilities of supervisors
 [Standard IV(C)], 36, 46, 146–154
 text of, 45–46
 evolution of, 34
 integrity of capital markets
 [Standard II], 84–101
 market manipulation [Standard
 II(B)], 45, 96–101
 material nonpublic information
 [Standard II(A)], 44–45, 84–95
 text of, 44–45
 investment analysis, recommendations,
 and actions [Standard V], 154–176
 communication with clients and
 prospective clients [Standard V(B)],
 36, 46, 165–174
 diligence and reasonable basis
 [Standard V(A)], 46, 154–165
 record retention [Standard V(C)], 46,
 174–176
 text of, 46
 notification of, 142
 practice problems, 203–212
 and principle-based standards, 10
 and Professional Conduct Program,
 37–38
 professionalism [Standard I], 49–84
 independence and objectivity
 [Standard I(B)], 44, 58–70
 knowledge of the law [Standard I(A)],
 44, 49–57
 misconduct [Standard I(D)], 44,
 81–84
 misrepresentation [Standard I(C)],
 44, 71–81
 text of, 44
 responsibilities as a CFA Institute
 member or CFA candidate
 [Standard VII], 193–202
 conduct as participants in CFA
 Institute programs [Standard
 VII(A)], 36–37, 47, 193–197
 reference to CFA Institute,
 designation and Program [Standard
 VII(B)], 47, 198–202
 text of, 47
 solutions to problems, 213–220
 and Standards of Practice Council,
 38–39
 in *Standards of Practice Handbook*, 3,
 33–37
 text of, 44–47
 and values of CFA Institute, 43
- Stanford Financial Group, 6
 stated annual interest rate, 310
 stated rates, for single cash flow,
 313–314
 statements of account information, 105
 statistical inference, 389, 591, 622
 statistical significance, 628
 statistics, 387–471. *see also* test statistic
 about, 388
 defined, 389, 582
 dispersion, 428–446
 absolute, 428
 Chebyshev's inequality, 439–441
 coefficient of variation, 441–443
 mean absolute deviation, 429–431
 population variance and standard
 deviation, 431–434
 range, 429–431
 sample variance and standard
 deviation, 434–437
 semivariance and semideviation,
 437–438
 Sharpe ratio, 443–446
 frequency distributions, 391–399
 construction of, 392–394, 398–399
 cumulative, 401–403
 defined, 391
 and holding period formula, 392
 and relative frequency, 394–398
 graphic presentations of data, 399–403
 frequency polygons and cumulative
 frequency distributions, 401–403
 histograms, 400–401
 kurtosis, 452–456
 measurement scales, 390–391
 identifying, 391
 types of scales, 390
 measures of central tendency, 404–422
 arithmetic mean, 404–408
 geometric mean, 416–420
 harmonic mean, 420–421
 median, 409–411
 mode, 411–413
 weighted mean, 413–416
 nature of, 389
 populations and samples, 389–390
 practice problems, 461–467
 quantiles, 421–428
 calculating, 423–425
 in investment practice, 425–428
 types of, 421–425
 sample, 389, 582–584
 sampling distribution of, 584
 solutions to problems, 468–471
 symmetry, 446–452
 using geometric and arithmetic means,
 456–457
 status, client, 130
 stochastic oscillator, 712–714
 stock, ownership of, 179–181
 Stock Exchange of Thailand (SET), 476
 stock price
 as Bernoulli random variable, 530–531
 binomial model, 538–539
 and control deficiency disclosures,
 637–639
 lognormal distribution for, 553–554
 stock screens, 484–485
 Straits Times Index, 442

- stratified random sampling, 584–585
 Stratton Small-Cap Value Fund, 433
 stratum, 584
 stress testing, 551
 Student's *t*-distribution. *see*
 t-distribution
 sub-advisors
 defined, 270
 Disclosure (GIPS Section I.4), 239, 240
 Fundamentals of Compliance (GIPS
 Section I.0), 234
 selecting, 157, 164
 subjective probability, 476
 submanagers, 124, 160–161
 subminuette, Elliott wave, 724
 Subrahmanyam, Marti G., 642–643
 suitability, 124–125
 for entire portfolio, 122–123
 for investor risk profile, 122, 124
 Suitability [Standard III(C)], 118–125
 application of the standard, 122–125
 compliance procedures, 121–122
 investment policy statements, 121
 regular updates, 122
 suitability test policies, 122
 guidance, 118–121
 addressing unsolicited trading
 requests, 120–121
 developing investment policies, 119
 managing to indexes or mandates,
 121
 need for diversification, 120
 understanding client's risk profile,
 119
 updating investment policies, 120
 text of, 45, 118
 suitability test policies, 122
 summaries, attributing, 75
 supervision
 detection as part of, 147–148
 inadequate, 152–153
 of research activities, 150–151,
 153–154
 system for, 147
 of trading activities, 151
 supervisors. *see* Responsibilities of
 Supervisors [Standard IV(C)]
 supplemental information, 270
 support, 693
 survivorship bias, 604, 606
 and GIPS standards, 222
 and hypothesis testing, 630–631
 sustainability, of capital markets, 40–41
 Sviluppo Mercato Fondi Pensione, 231
 Sweden
 GIPS sponsor, 231
 real equity returns, 399
 total returns, 406, 410
 Swedish Society of Financial Analysts,
 231
 Swiss Bankers Association, 231
 Switzerland
 GIPS sponsor, 231
 real equity returns, 399
 total returns, 407, 410
 symmetrical triangle pattern, 703
 symmetry, 446–452, 533
 systematic account reviews, 114
 systematic sampling, 583
- T**
 T. Rowe Price Equity Income fund
 kurtosis, 454–456
 skewness of, 450–452
 T. Rowe Price Equity Income (PRFDX)
 fund
 geometric and arithmetic mean
 returns, 418–420
 range and mean absolute deviation,
 430–431
 sample variance and sample standard
 deviation, 435–437
 Sharpe ratio, 445, 446
 T. Rowe Price Small Cap Value Fund,
 433
 target semideviation, 438
 target semivariance, 438
 Taylor, Owen, 686
 T-bills. *see* US Treasury bills
 TD Bank. *see* Toronto-Dominion Bank
t-distribution
 and confidence interval for population
 mean, 597–598
 defined, 632–633
 and estimation of normal sampling
 distribution, 595
 normal distribution vs., 596–597
 table, 742
 technical analysis, 677–738
 defined, 678
 Elliott Wave Theory, 723–726
 fundamental vs., 680–682
 intermarket, 726–728
 practice problems, 731–735
 principles and assumptions, 678–680
 solutions to problems, 736–738
 tools for, 682–723
 chart patterns, 694–705
 charts, 682–691
 market cycles, 722–723
 technical indicators, 705–722
 trends, 691–694
 technical indicators, 705–722
 flow-of-funds, 718–722
 Arms index, 718–720
 margin debt, 720
 and market indicators, 721
 mutual fund cash position, 720–721
 new equity issuance, 721–722
 secondary offerings, 722
 momentum oscillators, 708–715
 about, 708–710
 MACD oscillator, 714–715
 relative strength index, 710–712
 ROC oscillator, 708–710
 stochastic oscillator, 712–714
 price-based, 705–708
 Bollinger bands, 707–708
 moving average, 705–707
 sentiment, 715–718
 calculated statistical indexes,
 715–718
 opinion polls, 715
 technical model requirements,
 understanding, 164–165
 Telefonica, 424
 temporary new accounts, 237, 270
 Terminated Composites. *see* US Core
 Equity Composite
- termination policies, 137
 test statistic
 acceptance region for, 628–629
 calculating, 630–631
 defined, 625–626
 rejection point for, 628–630
 rejection (critical) region for, 629
 in tests concerning difference between
 variances, 651
 in tests concerning value of population
 variance, 649
 in tests of difference between
 population means, 640–644
 in tests of mean differences, 645–648
 in tests of single population mean,
 633–636
 third-party custodians, 60
 third-party research, 155–156, 160
 time
 on point and figure charts, 686
 present value of cash flows at times
 other than $t = 0$, 326–327
 time frame
 of decision and dissemination,
 112–113
 and performance calculation, 126–127
 time intervals, chart, 690
 time period, GIPS standards and, 222
 time-period bias, 605, 607, 630, 631
 time-series data, 405–406, 585–587
 time value of money (TMV), 303–357
 cash flow additivity principle, 338
 defined, 304
 and discounted cash flows, 359
 future value
 equivalence of present and, 336–337
 of series of cash flows, 315–316
 of single cash flow, 306–314
 and interest rates, 304–305
 practice problems, 340–344
 present value
 equivalence of future and, 336–337
 of series of cash flows, 320–328
 of single cash flow, 317–320
 solutions to problems, 345–357
 solving problems for variables,
 328–338
 interest rates and growth rates,
 329–331
 number of periods, 331–332
 size of annuity payments, 332–336
 Time Warner, 700
 time-weighted rate of return
 Calculation Methodology (GIPS
 Section I.2), 235
 defined, 270
 linked, 244
 money- vs., 372–374
 for portfolios, 369–374
 Real Estate (GIPS Section I.6),
 244, 245
 TMV. *see* time value of money
 Tokyo Stock Exchange, 405
 intermarket analysis, 726
 ROC oscillator, 709
 TOPIX, 416
 Toronto-Dominion Bank (TD Bank),
 690, 718
 Total (company), 424

- total firm assets
 - defined, 270
 - Disclosure (GIPS Section I.4), 238
 - Fundamentals of Compliance (GIPS Section I.0), 234
 - Presentation and Reporting (GIPS Section I.5), 241
 - Verification (GIPS Section IV), 259, 260
- total probability rule, 486–488, 505
- total returns. *see also* holding period return (HPR)
 - Calculation Methodology (GIPS Section I.2), 235
 - defined, 270
 - GIPS Advertising Guidelines (GIPS Section III), 257
 - Presentation and Reporting (GIPS Section I.5), 241
 - Real Estate (GIPS Section I.6), 244
- total value
 - defined, 270
 - Private Equity (GIPS Section I.7), 249
 - Real Estate (GIPS Section I.6), 245
- Toyota Motor Corporation, 330–331, 709–710
- tracking error, 536
- tracking objective, 536
- tracking risk, 536
- trade allocation procedures, 113, 114
- trade date accounting, 235, 270
- trading
 - excessive, 108, 117
 - personal
 - and conflict of interest, 183
 - disclosure of, 189
 - limitations on, 90
 - and market manipulation, 97–98
 - priority of transactions for, 185
 - proprietary trading procedures, 91
 - risk-arbitrage, 91
 - supervising trading activities, 151
 - unsolicited requests for, 120–121
- trading expenses
 - Calculation Methodology (GIPS Section I.2), 236
 - defined, 270
 - Disclosure (GIPS Section I.4), 238
- trading volume, 98
 - on charts, 689–690
 - and head and shoulders pattern, 696
 - trends in, 679
- training, compliance, 149
- transaction allocation, 115–116
- transaction-based manipulation, 97
- transaction expenses
 - defined, 271
 - Private Equity (GIPS Section I.7), 247, 248
 - Real Estate (GIPS Section I.6), 243, 244
- transition probability, 538
- Transocean, 703
- travel expenses, 64–65, 67–68
- travel funding, 63
- Treasury bills, 305n.3, 377n.16. *see also* US Treasury bills
- Treasury debt, 305
- tree diagrams (binomial trees), 491–492, 538
- trends
 - recognizing, 691–694
 - in technical analysis, 680–681
- trials, number of (for Monte Carlo simulation), 559
- triangle patterns, 702–704
- trimmed mean, 408n.14
- TRIN. *see* short-term trading index
- triple bottoms, 700–701
- triple tops, 700–701
- t*-test, 632–636
 - nonparametric test vs., 654, 655
 - risk/return characteristics of mutual fund, 634–635
 - and slowdown in payments of receivables, 635–636
 - and Spearman rank correlation, 656–658
 - and test static for difference between population means, 640–644
 - and test static for single population mean, 633–636
 - for test statistic for tests of mean difference, 645–648
 - z*-test vs., 636, 639, 654, 655
- turnover
 - annual share, 426
 - portfolio, 432–434
- TVPI. *see* investment multiple
- two-sided (two-tailed) hypothesis test, 624
- 2001 Venture Capital Composite, 294
- 2006 Buyout Strategy Fund of Funds Composite, 294–295
- Type I error, 627
- Type II error, 627
- U**
- Ukraine, 231
- Ukrainian Association of Investment Business, 231
- unbiased estimators, 592
- uncertainty, about future cash flows, 457
- unconditional probability, 478
- unconditional variance, 492n.9
- Unconstrained Activist UK Equity Composite, 292
- uncorrelated random variables, 504
- unequal cash flows
 - future value of series with, 316
 - present value of series with, 328
- unethical actions, reporting, 57
- Unibail-Rodamco, 423
- UniCredit, 423
- uniform distribution
 - continuous, 540–543
 - discrete, 528–530
- Unilever, 424
- unintentional errors, correction of, 76
- United Kingdom
 - consol bonds, 325
 - EAR, 313n.6
 - GIPS sponsor, 231
 - real equity returns, 399
 - total returns, 407, 409
 - Treasury bills, 305n.3
- UK Investment Performance Committee, 231
- UK Liquidity Plus Composite, 292
- United States
 - APY, 313n.6
 - GIPS sponsor, 231
 - money-weighted return, 368n.9
 - presidential cycle, 723
 - real equity returns, 399
- US Core Equity Composite (Terminated Composites), 295
- US Investment Performance Committee, 231
- US Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC), 638
- US Treasury bills (T-bills)
 - bank discount yield, 375–376
 - expected value, 494–495
 - money market yield, 377
 - nominal risk-free interest and liquidity premium, 305
 - pure discount instrument, 375
 - quoting for, 375
 - returns on, 377
 - Sharpe ratio, 444–446
- US Treasury bonds, 727
- unit normal distribution, 544
- univariate distribution, 544
- unrealized multiple (RVPI)
 - defined, 269, 271
 - Private Equity (GIPS Section I.7), 249
 - Real Estate (GIPS Section I.6), 246
- unsolicited trading requests, 120–121
- updates, 122, 159–160
- up transition probability, 538
- uptrends, 692
- V**
- valuation. *see* GIPS Valuation Principles (GIPS Section II)
- Value-Added Strategy Closed-End Real Estate Composite, 295
- Value-Added Strategy Non-Closed-End Real Estate Composite, 295
- Value at Risk (VaR), 551, 557
- values, CFA Institute, 43
- van Gelderen, Jacob, 722
- Vanguard Total World Stock Index ETF, 647–648
- VaR. *see* Value at Risk
- variance
 - of binomial random variables, 537
 - conditional, 492–495
 - covariance, 497–502
 - defined, 431, 489
 - hypothesis testing with, 648–654
 - tests about equality of two variances, 650–654
 - tests with known variance, 594, 636–639
 - tests with single variance, 648–650
 - tests with unknown variance, 633–636, 639–648
 - of lognormal distribution, 553, 556–557
 - of normal distribution, 543
 - population, 431–432
 - and portfolio expected return, 502
 - in probability, 474
 - reliability factors with known vs. unknown, 598–599
 - of returns, 497–502

- sample, 434–435
 - semivariance, 437–438
 - variation, coefficient of, 441–443
 - Vereinigung Österreichischer
Investmentgesellschaften, 230
 - verification, 271
 - Verification (GIPS Section IV), 223–224,
258–262
 - and compliance, 229
 - and performance examinations, 262
 - required procedures, 259–262
 - pre-verification procedures, 259–260
 - verification procedures, 260–262
 - scope and purpose, 258–259
 - verification report
 - defined, 271
 - Verification (GIPS Section IV), 258,
259, 262
 - Vidal-Garcia, Javier, 480–481
 - VINCI, 423
 - vintage year
 - defined, 271
 - Private Equity (GIPS Section I.7),
248–250
 - Real Estate (GIPS Section I.6), 245, 246
 - violations of ethical standards
 - detection of, 147–148
 - dissociating from, 55–56
 - lists of, 82
 - notification of known, 55
 - by others, participation or association
with, 51
 - reporting, 55
 - sanctions, 43
 - supervisor's response to, 149
 - Vivendi, 423
 - VIX. *see* CBOE Volatility index
 - volatility
 - artificial asset price, 98–100
 - CBOE Volatility Index (VIX), 716
 - of derivative expiration days, 653–654
 - and global financial crisis of late 2000s,
652–653
 - in option pricing models, 555–556
 - Volkswagen, 423
 - volume. *see* trading volume
 - volunteers, compromising of CFA
Institute integrity, 197
 - von Hippel, Paul T., 447n.41
 - voting, 104, 106
- W**
- WACC. *see* weighted-average cost of
capital
 - Wal-Mart Stores, 404, 432
 - The Wave Principle* (Elliott), 723
 - webpages, maintaining, 75
 - weighted-average cost of capital
(WACC), 361n.2
 - weighted averages, total probability rule
and, 487
 - weighted mean, 413–416
 - formula, 414–415
 - portfolio return as, 415–416
 - Wells Fargo Advantage Small Cap Value
Fund, 433
 - Wharf Holdings Ltd., 686
 - whistleblowing, 18, 136, 141
 - Wilcoxon signed-rank test, 655
 - Wilder, Welles, 710
- Winsorized mean, 408n.14
- work, misrepresentation of, 74
 - working capital management, 360
 - WorldCom, 682
 - wrap fee, 271
 - Wrap Fee/SMA Portfolios (GIPS
Section I.8), 250–252
 - about, 233
 - compliance with, 229
 - Composite Construction provisions, 251
 - Disclosure provisions, 251
 - Presentation and Reporting provisions,
252
 - requirements, 251–252
 - writing, after exam period, 196
 - written material, brought into exam
room, 195
- Y**
- yield measures, money market. *see*
money market yields
 - yields to maturity (YTM), 379
- Z**
- zero-coupon bonds, default risk
premium for, 494–495
 - z-test alternative
 - confidence intervals for population
mean, 595–597
 - for disclosures and share prices,
637–639
 - hypothesis testing with, 636–639
 - nonparametric test vs., 654, 655
 - rejection points for, 630, 637
 - t-test vs., 636, 639, 654, 655

ECONOMICS

CFA[®] Program Curriculum
2019 • LEVEL I • VOLUME 2

WILEY

CONTENTS

How to Use the CFA Program Curriculum		v
Curriculum Development Process		v
Organization of the Curriculum		vi
Features of the Curriculum		vi
Designing Your Personal Study Program		vii
Feedback		ix
Economics		
Study Session 4	Economics (1)	3
Reading 14	Topics in Demand and Supply Analysis	5
	Introduction	5
	Demand Analysis: The Consumer	6
	Demand Concepts	6
	Own-Price Elasticity of Demand	9
	Income Elasticity of Demand	14
	Cross-Price Elasticity of Demand	15
	Substitution and Income Effects	18
	Normal and Inferior Goods	19
	Supply Analysis: The Firm	23
	Marginal Returns and Productivity	23
	Breakeven and Shutdown Analysis	28
	Understanding Economies and Diseconomies of Scale	43
	<i>Summary</i>	48
	<i>Practice Problems</i>	51
	<i>Solutions</i>	58
Reading 15	The Firm and Market Structures	63
	Introduction	63
	Analysis of Market Structures	64
	Economists' Four Types of Structure	64
	Factors That Determine Market Structure	66
	Perfect Competition	68
	Demand Analysis in Perfectly Competitive Markets	69
	Supply Analysis in Perfectly Competitive Markets	76
	Optimal Price and Output in Perfectly Competitive Markets	77
	Factors Affecting Long-Run Equilibrium in Perfectly Competitive Markets	81
	Monopolistic Competition	83
	Demand Analysis in Monopolistically Competitive Markets	84
	Supply Analysis in Monopolistically Competitive Markets	85
	Optimal Price and Output in Monopolistically Competitive Markets	85
	Factors Affecting Long-Run Equilibrium in Monopolistically Competitive Markets	86

	Oligopoly	87
	Demand Analysis and Pricing Strategies in Oligopoly Markets	88
	Supply Analysis in Oligopoly Markets	94
	Optimal Price and Output in Oligopoly Markets	95
	Factors Affecting Long-Run Equilibrium in Oligopoly Markets	96
	Monopoly	97
	Demand Analysis in Monopoly Markets	98
	Supply Analysis in Monopoly Markets	99
	Optimal Price and Output in Monopoly Markets	101
	Price Discrimination and Consumer Surplus	102
	Factors Affecting Long-Run Equilibrium in Monopoly Markets	104
	Identification of Market Structure	105
	Econometric Approaches	106
	Simpler Measures	106
	<i>Summary</i>	108
	<i>Practice Problems</i>	110
	<i>Solutions</i>	114
Reading 16	Aggregate Output, Prices, and Economic Growth	117
	Introduction	118
	Aggregate Output and Income	119
	Gross Domestic Product	120
	The Components of GDP	127
	GDP, National Income, Personal Income, and Personal Disposable Income	131
	Aggregate Demand, Aggregate Supply, and Equilibrium	136
	Aggregate Demand	137
	Aggregate Supply	148
	Shifts in Aggregate Demand and Supply	150
	Equilibrium GDP and Prices	162
	Economic Growth and Sustainability	173
	The Production Function and Potential GDP	173
	Sources of Economic Growth	176
	Measures of Sustainable Growth	179
	<i>Summary</i>	184
	<i>Practice Problems</i>	189
	<i>Solutions</i>	194
Reading 17	Understanding Business Cycles	197
	Introduction	197
	Overview of the Business Cycle	198
	Phases of the Business Cycle	198
	Resource Use through the Business Cycle	202
	Housing Sector Behavior	208
	External Trade Sector Behavior	209
	Theories of the Business Cycle	211
	Neoclassical and Austrian Schools	211
	Keynesian and Monetarist Schools	212
	The New Classical School	215

	Unemployment and Inflation	219
	Unemployment	219
	Inflation	223
	Economic Indicators	237
	Popular Economic Indicators	237
	Other Variables Used as Economic Indicators	242
	<i>Summary</i>	245
	<i>Practice Problems</i>	247
	<i>Solutions</i>	253
Study Session 5	Economics (2)	257
Reading 18	Monetary and Fiscal Policy	259
	Introduction	260
	Monetary Policy	262
	Money	262
	The Roles of Central Banks	275
	The Objectives of Monetary Policy	278
	Contractionary and Expansionary Monetary Policies and the Neutral Rate	294
	Limitations of Monetary Policy	295
	Fiscal Policy	300
	Roles and Objectives of Fiscal Policy	300
	Fiscal Policy Tools and the Macroeconomy	308
	Fiscal Policy Implementation: Active and Discretionary Fiscal Policy	314
	The Relationship between Monetary and Fiscal Policy	318
	Factors Influencing the Mix of Fiscal and Monetary Policy	319
	Quantitative Easing and Policy Interaction	320
	The Importance of Credibility and Commitment	321
	<i>Summary</i>	322
	<i>Practice Problems</i>	325
	<i>Solutions</i>	330
Reading 19	International Trade and Capital Flows	333
	Introduction	333
	International Trade	334
	Basic Terminology	334
	Patterns and Trends in International Trade and Capital Flows	337
	Benefits and Costs of International Trade	341
	Comparative Advantage and the Gains from Trade	345
	Trade and Capital Flows: Restrictions and Agreements	354
	Tariffs	354
	Quotas	357
	Export Subsidies	357
	Trading Blocs, Common Markets, and Economic Unions	360
	Capital Restrictions	364
	The Balance of Payments	367
	Balance of Payments Accounts	367
	Balance of Payment Components	369

	Paired Transactions in the BOP Bookkeeping System	372
	National Economic Accounts and the Balance of Payments	375
	Trade Organizations	379
	International Monetary Fund	380
	World Bank Group	382
	World Trade Organization	383
	<i>Summary</i>	386
	<i>Practice Problems</i>	389
	<i>Solutions</i>	393
Reading 20	Currency Exchange Rates	397
	Introduction	397
	The Foreign Exchange Market	399
	Market Functions	404
	Market Participants	410
	Market Size and Composition	413
	Currency Exchange Rate Calculations	416
	Exchange Rate Quotations	416
	Cross-Rate Calculations	419
	Forward Calculations	423
	Exchange Rate Regimes	430
	The Ideal Currency Regime	431
	Historical Perspective on Currency Regimes	432
	A Taxonomy of Currency Regimes	434
	Exchange Rates, International Trade, and Capital Flows	441
	Exchange Rates and the Trade Balance: The Elasticities Approach	443
	Exchange Rates and the Trade Balance: The Absorption Approach	447
	<i>Summary</i>	451
	<i>Practice Problems</i>	455
	<i>Solutions</i>	458
	Glossary	G-1
	Index	I-1

Economics

STUDY SESSIONS

Study Session 4	Economics (1)
Study Session 5	Economics (2)

TOPIC LEVEL LEARNING OUTCOME

The candidate should be able to demonstrate knowledge of microeconomic and macroeconomic principles.

The next study sessions introduce fundamental microeconomic and macroeconomic concepts relevant to financial analysis and investment management. Microeconomic factors such as a firm's competitive (or non-competitive) environment and its pricing strategy may be critical inputs for cash flow forecasting and bottom up security selection approaches. Economic output, global trade flows, monetary and fiscal policies, and the business cycle are key considerations for conducting top own investment analysis and economic forecasting.

Candidates should be familiar with the material covered in the following prerequisite economics readings available in Candidate Resources on the CFA Institute website:

- Demand and Supply Analysis: Introduction
- Demand and Supply Analysis: Consumer Demand
- Demand and Supply Analysis: The Firm

ECONOMICS STUDY SESSION

4

Economics (1)

This study session begins by introducing fundamental concepts of demand and supply analysis for individual consumers and firms. Also covered are the various market structures (perfect competition, oligopoly, monopoly) in which firms operate. Key macroeconomic concepts and principles then follow, including aggregate output and income measurement, aggregate demand and supply analysis, and analysis of economic growth factors. The study session concludes with coverage of the business cycle and its effect on economic activity.

READING ASSIGNMENTS

- | | |
|-------------------|---|
| Reading 14 | Topics in Demand and Supply Analysis
by Richard V. Eastin, PhD, and Gary L. Arbogast, PhD, CFA |
| Reading 15 | The Firm and Market Structures
by Richard Fritz, PhD, and Michele Gambera, PhD, CFA |
| Reading 16 | Aggregate Output, Prices, and Economic Growth
by Paul R. Kutasovic, PhD, CFA, and Richard Fritz, PhD |
| Reading 17 | Understanding Business Cycles
by Michele Gambera, PhD, CFA, Milton Ezrati, and Bolong Cao, PhD, CFA |

READING

14

Topics in Demand and Supply Analysis

by Richard V. Eastin, PhD, and Gary L. Arbogast, PhD, CFA

Richard V. Eastin, PhD, is at the University of Southern California (USA). Gary L. Arbogast, PhD, CFA (USA).

LEARNING OUTCOMES

<i>Mastery</i>	<i>The candidate should be able to</i>
<input type="checkbox"/>	a. calculate and interpret price, income, and cross-price elasticities of demand and describe factors that affect each measure;
<input type="checkbox"/>	b. compare substitution and income effects;
<input type="checkbox"/>	c. distinguish between normal goods and inferior goods;
<input type="checkbox"/>	d. describe the phenomenon of diminishing marginal returns;
<input type="checkbox"/>	e. determine and interpret breakeven and shutdown points of production;
<input type="checkbox"/>	f. describe how economies of scale and diseconomies of scale affect costs.

INTRODUCTION

1

In a general sense, *economics* is the study of production, distribution, and consumption and can be divided into two broad areas of study: macroeconomics and microeconomics. **Macroeconomics** deals with aggregate economic quantities, such as national output and national income, and is rooted in **microeconomics**, which deals with markets and decision making of individual economic units, including consumers and businesses. Microeconomics is a logical starting point for the study of economics.

Microeconomics classifies private economic units into two groups: consumers (or households) and firms. These two groups give rise, respectively, to the theory of the consumer and the theory of the firm as two branches of study. The *theory of the consumer* deals with consumption (the demand for goods and services) by utility-maximizing individuals (i.e., individuals who make decisions that maximize the satisfaction received from present and future consumption). The *theory of the firm* deals with the supply of goods and services by profit-maximizing firms.

It is expected that candidates will be familiar with the basic concepts of demand and supply. This material is covered in detail in the recommended prerequisite readings. In this reading, we will explore how buyers and sellers interact to determine transaction prices and quantities. The reading is organized as follows: Section 2 discusses the consumer or demand side of the market model, and Section 3 discusses the supply side of the consumer goods market, paying particular attention to the firm's costs. Section 4 provides a summary of key points in the reading.

2

DEMAND ANALYSIS: THE CONSUMER

The fundamental model of the private-enterprise economy is the demand and supply model of the market. In this section, we examine three important topics concerning the demand side of the model: (1) elasticities, (2) substitution and income effects, and (3) normal and inferior goods. The candidate is assumed to have a basic understanding of the demand and supply model and to understand how a market discovers the equilibrium price at which the quantity willingly demanded by consumers at that price is just equal to the quantity willingly supplied by firms. Here, we explore more deeply some of the concepts underlying the demand side of the model.

2.1 Demand Concepts

The quantity of a good that consumers are willing to buy depends on a number of different variables. Perhaps the most important of those variables is the item's own price. In general, economists believe that as the price of a good rises, buyers will choose to buy less of it, and as its price falls, they buy more. This opinion is so nearly universal that it has come to be called the **law of demand**.

Although a good's own price is important in determining consumers' willingness to purchase it, other variables also influence that decision. Consumers' incomes, their tastes and preferences, and the prices of other goods that serve as substitutes or complements are just a few of the other variables that influence consumers' demand for a product or service. Economists attempt to capture all these influences in a relationship called the **demand function**. (A function is a relationship that assigns a unique value to a dependent variable for any given set of values of a group of independent variables.)

Equation 1 is an example of a demand function. In Equation 1, we are saying, "The quantity demanded of good X depends on (is a function of) the price of good X , consumers' income, and the price of good Y ":

$$Q_x^d = f(P_x, I, P_y) \quad (1)$$

where

Q_x^d = the quantity demanded of some good X (such as per household demand for gasoline in liters per month)

P_x = the price per unit of good X (such as € per liter)

I = consumers' income (as in €1,000s per household annually)

P_y = the price of another good, Y . (There can be many other goods, not just one, and they can be complements or substitutes.)

Often, economists use simple linear equations to approximate real-world demand and supply functions in relevant ranges. Equation 2 illustrates a hypothetical example of our function for gasoline demand:

$$Q_x^d = 84.5 - 6.39P_x + 0.25I - 2P_y \quad (2)$$

where the quantity of gasoline demanded (Q_x^d) is a function of the price of a liter of gasoline (P_x), consumers' income in €1,000s (I), and the average price of an automobile in €1,000s (P_y).

The signs of the coefficients on gasoline price (negative) and consumers' income (positive) reflect the relationship between those variables and the quantity of gasoline consumed. The negative sign on average automobile price indicates that if automobiles go up in price, fewer will likely be purchased and driven; hence, less gasoline will be consumed. (As discussed later, such a relationship would indicate that gasoline and automobiles have a negative cross-price elasticity of demand and are thus complements.)

To continue our example, suppose that the price of gasoline (P_x) is €1.48 per liter, per household income (I) is €50,000, and the price of the average automobile (P_y) is €20,000. In this case, this function would predict that the per-household monthly demand for gasoline would be 47.54 liters, calculated as follows:

$$Q_x^d = 84.5 - 6.39(1.48) + 0.25(50) - 2(20) = 47.54$$

recalling that income and automobile prices are measured in thousands. Note that the sign on the "own-price" variable (P_x) is negative; thus, as the price of gasoline rises, per household consumption would decrease by 6.39 liters per month for every €1 increase in gas price. **Own price** is used by economists to underscore that the reference is to the price of a good itself and not the price of some other good.

In our example, there are three independent variables in the demand function and one dependent variable. If any one of the independent variables changes, so does the quantity demanded. It is often desirable to concentrate on the relationship between the dependent variable and just one of the independent variables at a time. To accomplish this goal, we can hold the other independent variables constant and rewrite the equation.

For example, to concentrate on the relationship between the quantity demanded of the good and its own price, P_x , we hold constant the values of income and the price of good Y . In our example, those values are 50 and 20, respectively. The equation would then be rewritten as

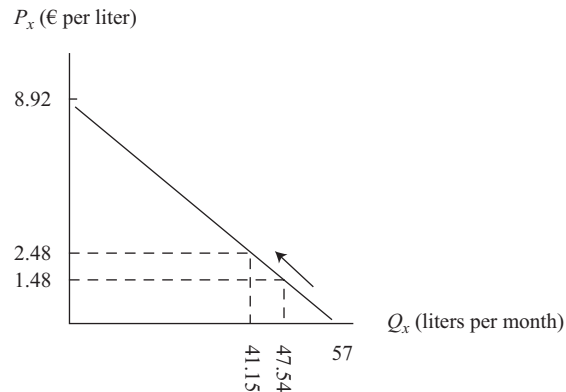
$$Q_x^d = 84.5 - 6.39P_x + 0.25(50) - 2(20) = 57 - 6.39P_x \quad (3)$$

The quantity of gasoline demanded is a function of the price of gasoline (6.39 per liter), per household income (€50,000), and the average price of an automobile (€20,000). Notice that income and the price of automobiles are not ignored; they are simply held constant, and they are "collected" in the new constant term, 57 [84.5 + (0.25)(50) - (2)(20)]. Notice also that we can solve for P_x in terms of Q_x^d by rearranging Equation 3, which gives us Equation 4:

$$P_x = 8.92 - 0.156Q_x^d \quad (4)$$

Equation 4 gives the price of gasoline as a function of the quantity of gasoline consumed per month and is referred to as the **inverse demand function**. Q_x in Equation 4 must be restricted to be less than or equal to 57 so that price is not negative. The graph of the inverse demand function is called the **demand curve** and is shown in Exhibit 1.¹

Exhibit 1 Household Demand Curve for Gasoline



The demand curve represents the highest quantity willingly purchased at each price as well as the highest price willingly paid for each quantity. In this example, this household would be willing to purchase 47.54 liters of gasoline per month at a price of €1.48 per liter. If price were to rise to €2.48 per liter, the household would be willing to purchase only 41.15 liters per month.

This demand curve is drawn with price on the vertical axis and quantity on the horizontal axis. It can be correctly interpreted as specifying *either* the highest quantity a household would buy at a given price *or* the highest price it would be willing to pay for a given quantity. In our example, at a price of €1.48 per liter, households would each be willing to buy 47.54 liters per month. Alternatively, the highest price they would be willing to pay for 47.54 liters per month is €1.48 per liter. If the price were to rise by €1, households would reduce the quantity they each bought by 6.39 units, to 41.15 liters. The slope of the demand curve is measured as the change in price, P , divided by the change in quantity, Q ($\Delta P/\Delta Q$, where Δ stands for “the change in”). In this case, the slope of the demand curve is $1/-6.39$, or -0.156 .

The general model of demand and supply can be highly useful in understanding directional changes in prices and quantities that result from shifts in one curve or the other. Often, though, we need to measure how sensitive quantity demanded or supplied is to changes in the independent variables that affect them. This is the concept of **elasticity of demand** and **elasticity of supply**. Fundamentally, all elasticities are calculated in the same way: They are ratios of percentage changes. Let us begin with the sensitivity of quantity demanded to changes in the own price.

¹ Following usual practice, we show linear demand curves intersecting the quantity axis at a price of zero. Real-world demand functions may be non-linear in some or all parts of their domain. Thus, linear demand functions in practical cases are approximations of the true demand function that are useful for a relevant range of values.

2.2 Own-Price Elasticity of Demand

In Equation 1, we expressed the quantity demanded of some good as a function of several variables, one of which was the price of the good itself (the good's "own-price").

In Equation 3, we introduced a hypothetical household demand function for gasoline, assuming that the household's income and the price of another good (automobiles) were held constant. That function was given by the simple linear expression $Q_x^d = 57 - 6.39P_x$. Using this expression, if we were asked how sensitive the quantity of gasoline demanded is to changes in price, we might say that whenever price changes by one unit, quantity changes by 6.39 units in the opposite direction; for example, if price were to rise by €1, quantity demanded would fall by 6.39 liters per month. The coefficient on the price variable (-6.39) could be the measure of sensitivity we are seeking.

There is a drawback associated with that measure, however. It is dependent on the units in which we measured Q and P . When we want to describe the sensitivity of demand, we need to recall the specific units in which Q and P were measured—liters per month and euros per liter—in our example. This relationship cannot readily be extrapolated to other units of measure—for example, gallons and dollars. Economists, therefore, prefer to use a gauge of sensitivity that does not depend on units of measure. That metric is called **elasticity**. Elasticity is a general measure of how sensitive one variable is to any other variable, and it is expressed as the ratio of percentage changes in each variable: $\% \Delta y / \% \Delta x$. In the case of **own-price elasticity of demand**, that measure is illustrated in Equation 5:

$$E_{P_x}^d = \frac{\% \Delta Q_x^d}{\% \Delta P_x} \quad (5)$$

This equation expresses the sensitivity of the quantity demanded to a change in price. $E_{P_x}^d$ is the good's own-price elasticity and is equal to the percentage change in quantity demanded divided by the percentage change in price. This measure is independent of the units in which quantity and price are measured. If quantity demanded falls by 8% when price rises by 10%, then the elasticity of demand is simply -0.8 . It does not matter whether we are measuring quantity in gallons per week or liters per day, and it does not matter whether we measure price in dollars per gallon or euros per liter; 10% is 10%, and 8% is 8%. So the ratio of the first to the second is still -0.8 .

We can expand Equation 5 algebraically by noting that the percentage change in any variable x is simply the change in x (Δx) divided by the level of x . So, we can rewrite Equation 5, using a few simple steps, as

$$E_{P_x}^d = \frac{\% \Delta Q_x^d}{\% \Delta P_x} = \frac{\frac{\Delta Q_x^d}{Q_x^d}}{\frac{\Delta P_x}{P_x}} = \left(\frac{\Delta Q_x^d}{\Delta P_x} \right) \left(\frac{P_x}{Q_x^d} \right) \quad (6)$$

To get a better idea of price elasticity, it might be helpful to illustrate using our hypothetical demand function: $Q_x^d = 57 - 6.39P_x$. When the relationship between two variables is linear, $\Delta Q_x^d / \Delta P_x$ is equal to the slope coefficient on P_x in the demand function. Thus, in our example, the elasticity of demand is -6.39 multiplied by the ratio of price to quantity. We need to choose a price at which to calculate the elasticity coefficient. Using our hypothetical original price of €1.48, we can find the quantity associated with that particular price by inserting 1.48 into the demand function as given in Equation 3:

$$Q = 57 - (6.39)(1.48) = 47.54$$

and we find that $Q = 47.54$ liters per month.

The result of our calculation is that at a price of 1.48, the elasticity of our market demand function is $-6.39(1.48/47.54) = -0.2$. How do we interpret that value? It means, simply, that when price equals 1.48, a 1% rise in price would result in a fall in quantity demanded of 0.2%.

In our example, when the price is €1.48 per liter, demand is not very sensitive to changes in price because a 1% rise in price would reduce quantity demanded by only 0.2%. In this case, we would say that demand is **inelastic**. To be precise, when the magnitude (ignoring algebraic sign) of the own-price elasticity coefficient has a value of less than one, demand is said to be inelastic. When that magnitude is greater than one, demand is said to be **elastic**. And when the elasticity coefficient is equal to negative one, demand is said to be **unit elastic**, or unitary elastic. Note that if the law of demand holds, own-price elasticity of demand will always be negative because a rise in price will be associated with a fall in quantity demanded, but it can be either elastic (very sensitive to a change in price) or inelastic (insensitive to a change in price). In our hypothetical example, suppose the price of gasoline was very high, say, €5 per liter. In this case, the elasticity coefficient would be -1.28 :

$$Q = 57 - (6.39)(5) = 25.05$$

and

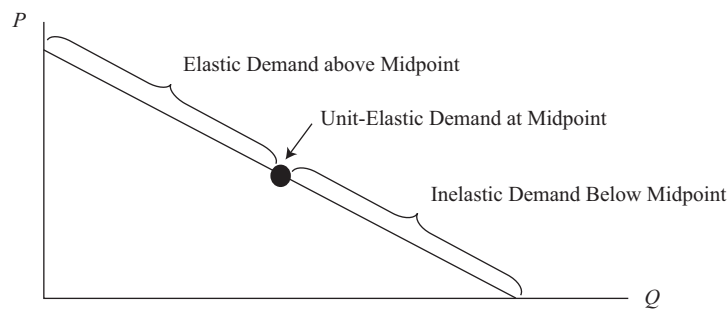
$$-6.39 (5/25.05) = -1.28$$

Because the magnitude of the elasticity coefficient is greater than one, we know that demand is elastic at that price.² In other words, at lower prices (€1.48 per liter), a slight change in the price of gasoline does not have much effect on the quantity demanded, but when gasoline is expensive (€5 per liter), consumer demand for gas is highly affected by changes in price.

By examining Equation 6 more closely, we can see that for a linear demand curve the elasticity depends on where on the curve we calculate it. The first term, $\Delta Q/\Delta P$, which is the inverse of the slope of the demand curve, remains constant along the entire demand curve. But the second term, P/Q , changes depending on where we are on the demand curve. At very low prices, P/Q is very small, so demand is inelastic. But at very high prices, Q is low and P is high, so the ratio P/Q is very high and demand is elastic. Exhibit 2 illustrates a characteristic of all negatively sloped linear demand curves. Above the midpoint of the curve, demand is elastic; below the midpoint, demand is inelastic; and at the midpoint, demand is unit elastic.

² If interested, evidence on price elasticities of demand for gasoline can be found in Molly Espey, "Explaining the Variation in Elasticity Estimates of Gasoline Demand in the United States: A Meta-analysis," *Energy Journal*, vol. 17, no. 3 (1996): 49–60. The robust estimates were about -0.26 for short-run elasticity—less than one year—and -0.58 for more than a year.

Exhibit 2 The Elasticity of a Linear Demand Curve



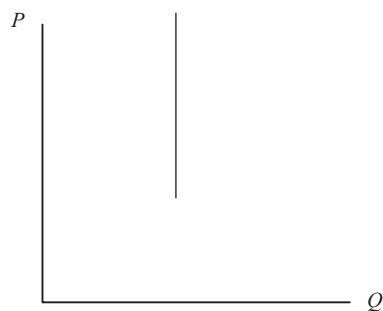
Note: For all negatively sloped, linear demand curves, elasticity varies depending on where it is calculated.

2.2.1 Extremes of Price Elasticity

There are two special cases in which linear demand curves have the same elasticity at all points: vertical demand curves and horizontal demand curves. Consider a vertical demand curve, as in Panel A of Exhibit 3, and a horizontal demand curve, as in Panel B. In the first case, the quantity demanded is the same, regardless of price. There is no demand curve that is perfectly vertical at all possible prices, but it is reasonable to assume that, over some range of prices, the same quantity would be purchased at a slightly higher price or a slightly lower price. Thus, in that price range, quantity demanded is not at all sensitive to price, and we would say that demand is **perfectly inelastic** in that range.

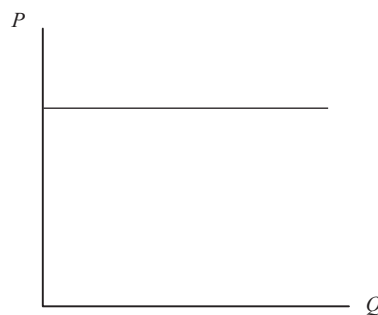
Exhibit 3 The Extremes of Price Elasticity

Panel A



Note: A vertical demand has zero elasticity and is called perfectly inelastic.

Panel B



Note: A horizontal demand has infinite elasticity and is called perfectly elastic.

In the second case, the demand curve is horizontal at some given price. It implies that even a minute price increase will reduce demand to zero, but at that given price, the consumer would buy some large, unknown amount. This situation is a reasonable description of the demand curve facing an individual seller in a perfectly competitive market, such as the wheat market. At the current market price of wheat, an individual farmer could sell all she has. If, however, she held out for a price above market price, it is reasonable to believe that she would not be able to sell any at all; other farmers'

wheat is a perfect substitute for hers, so no one would be willing to buy any of hers at a higher price. In this case, we would say that the demand curve facing a seller under conditions of perfect competition is **perfectly elastic**.

2.2.2 Predicting Demand Elasticity

Own-price elasticity of demand is a measure of how sensitive the quantity demanded is to changes in the price of a good or service, but what characteristics of a good or its market might be informative in determining whether demand is highly elastic? Perhaps the most important characteristic is whether there are close substitutes for the good in question. If there are close substitutes for the good, then if its price rises even slightly, a consumer would tend to purchase much less of this good and switch to the less costly substitute. If there are no substitutes, however, then it is likely that the demand is much less elastic. Consider a consumer's demand for some broadly defined product, such as bread. There really are no close substitutes for the entire category of bread, which includes all types from French bread to pita bread to tortillas and so on. So, if the price of all bread were to rise, perhaps a consumer would purchase a little less of it each week, but probably not a significantly smaller amount. Now, consider that the consumer's demand is for a particular baker's specialty bread instead of the category "bread" as a whole. Surely, there are close substitutes for Baker Bob's Whole Wheat Bread with Sesame Seeds than for bread in general. We would expect, then, that the demand for Baker Bob's special loaf is much more elastic than for the entire category of bread.

In addition to the degree of substitutability, other characteristics tend to be generally predictive of a good's elasticity of demand. These include the portion of the typical budget that is spent on the good, the amount of time that is allowed to respond to the change in price, the extent to which the good is seen as necessary or optional, and so on. In general, if consumers tend to spend a very small portion of their budget on a good, their demand tends to be less elastic than if they spend a very large part of their income. Most people spend only a little on toothpaste each month, for example, so it really does not matter whether the price rises 10%. They would probably still buy about the same amount. If the price of housing were to rise significantly, however, most households would try to find a way to reduce the quantity they buy, at least in the long run.

This example leads to another characteristic regarding price elasticity. For most goods and services, the long-run demand is much more elastic than the short-run demand. For example, if the price of gasoline rises, we probably would not be able to respond quickly to reduce the quantity we consume. In the short run, we tend to be locked into modes of transportation, housing and employment location, and so on. With a longer adjustment period, however, we can adjust the quantity consumed in response to the change in price by adopting a new mode of transportation or reducing the distance of our commute. Hence, for most goods, long-run elasticity of demand is greater than short-run elasticity. Durable goods, however, tend to behave in the opposite way. If the price of washing machines were to fall, people might react quickly because they have an old machine that they know will need to be replaced fairly soon anyway. So when price falls, they might decide to go ahead and make a purchase. If the price of washing machines were to stay low forever, however, it is unlikely that a typical consumer would buy more machines over a lifetime.

Knowing whether the good or service is seen to be discretionary or non-discretionary helps to understand its sensitivity to a price change. Faced with the same percentage increase in prices, consumers are much more likely to give up their Friday night restaurant meal (discretionary) than they are to cut back significantly on staples in their pantry (non-discretionary). The more a good is seen as being necessary, the less elastic its demand is likely to be.

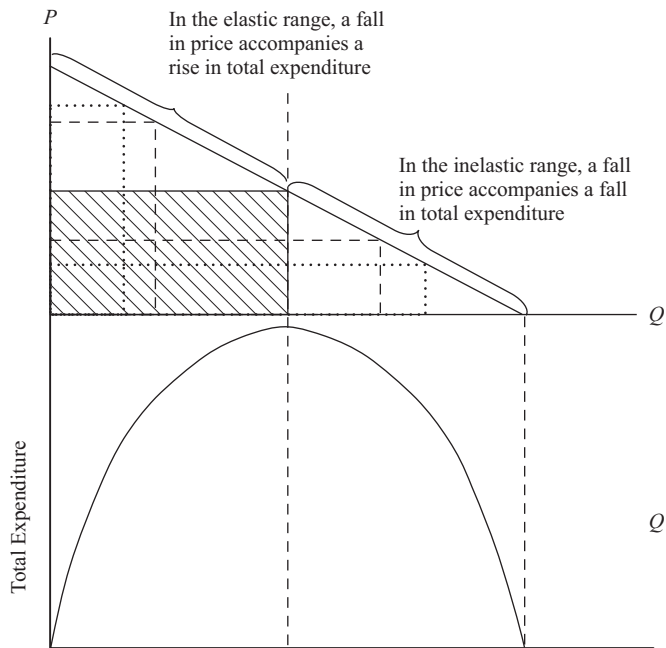
In summary, own-price elasticity of demand is likely to be greater (i.e., more sensitive) for items that have many close substitutes, occupy a large portion of the total budget, are seen to be optional instead of necessary, or have longer adjustment times. Obviously, not all these characteristics operate in the same direction for all goods, so elasticity is likely to be a complex result of these and other characteristics. In the end, the actual elasticity of demand for a particular good turns out to be an empirical fact that can be learned only from careful observation and, often, sophisticated statistical analysis.

2.2.3 Elasticity and Total Expenditure

Because of the law of demand, an increase in price is associated with a decrease in the number of units demanded of some good or service. But what can we say about the total expenditure on that good? That is, what happens to price times quantity when price falls? Recall that elasticity is defined as the ratio of the percentage change in quantity demanded to the percentage change in price. So if demand is elastic, a decrease in price is associated with a larger percentage rise in quantity demanded. Although each unit of the good has a lower price, a sufficiently greater number of units are purchased so that total expenditure (price times quantity) would rise as price falls when demand is elastic.

If demand is inelastic, however, a given percentage decrease in price is associated with a smaller percentage rise in quantity demanded. Consequently, when demand is inelastic, a fall in price brings about a fall in total expenditure.

In summary, when demand is elastic, price and total expenditure move in *opposite* directions. When demand is inelastic, price and total expenditure move in the *same* direction. This relationship is easy to identify in the case of a linear demand curve. Recall that above the midpoint, demand is elastic, and below the midpoint, demand is inelastic. In the upper section of Exhibit 4, total expenditure ($P \times Q$) is measured as the area of a rectangle whose base is Q and height is P . Notice that as price falls, the areas of the inscribed rectangles (each outlined with their own dotted or dashed line) at first grow in size, become largest at the midpoint of the demand curve, and thereafter become smaller as price continues to fall and total expenditure declines toward zero. In the lower section of Exhibit 4, total expenditure is shown for each quantity purchased.

Exhibit 4 Elasticity and Total Expenditure

Note: Figure depicts the relationship among changes in price, changes in quantity, and changes in total expenditure. Maximum total expenditure occurs at the unit-elastic point on a linear demand curve (the cross-hatched rectangle).

The relationships just described hold for any demand curve, so it does not matter whether we are dealing with the demand curve of an individual consumer, the demand curve of the market, or the demand curve facing any given seller. For a market, the total expenditure by buyers becomes the total revenue to sellers in that market. It follows, then, that if market demand is elastic, a fall in price will result in an increase in total revenue to sellers as a whole, and if demand is inelastic, a fall in price will result in a decrease in total revenue to sellers. If the demand faced by any given seller were inelastic at the current price, that seller could increase revenue by increasing its price. But because demand is negatively sloped, the increase in price would decrease total units sold, which would almost certainly decrease total production cost. If raising price both increases revenue and decreases cost, such a move would always be profit enhancing. Faced with inelastic demand, a one-product seller would always be inclined to raise the price until the point at which demand becomes elastic.

2.3 Income Elasticity of Demand

Elasticity is a measure of how sensitive one variable is to change in the value of another variable. Up to this point, we have focused on price elasticity, but the quantity demanded of a good is also a function of consumer income.

Income elasticity of demand is defined as the percentage change in quantity demanded ($\% \Delta Q_x^d$) divided by the percentage change in income ($\% \Delta I$), holding all other things constant, as shown in Equation 7:

$$E_I^d = \frac{\% \Delta Q_x^d}{\% \Delta I} \quad (7)$$

The structure of this expression is identical to the structure of own-price elasticity given in Equation 5. (All elasticity measures that we will examine have the same general structure; the only thing that changes is the independent variable of interest.) For example, if the income elasticity of demand for some good has a value of 0.8, we would interpret that to mean that whenever income rises by 1%, the quantity demanded at each price would rise by 0.8%.

Although own-price elasticity of demand will almost always be negative, *income* elasticity of demand can be negative, positive, or zero. Positive income elasticity means that as income rises, quantity demanded also rises. Negative income elasticity of demand means that when people experience a rise in income, they buy less of these goods, and when their income falls, they buy more of the same good.

Goods with positive income elasticity are called “normal” goods. Goods with negative income elasticity are called “inferior” goods. Typical examples of inferior goods are rice, potatoes, or less expensive cuts of meat. We will discuss the concepts of normal and inferior goods in a later section.

In our discussion of the demand curve, we held all other things constant, including consumer income, to plot the relationship between price and quantity demanded. If income were to change, the entire demand curve would shift one way or the other. For normal goods, a rise in income would shift the entire demand curve upward and to the right. For inferior goods, however, a rise in income would result in a downward and leftward shift in the entire demand curve.

2.4 Cross-Price Elasticity of Demand

We previously discussed a good’s own-price elasticity. However, the price of another good might also have an impact on the demand for that good or service, and we should be able to define an elasticity with respect to the other price (P_y) as well. That elasticity is called the **cross-price elasticity of demand** and takes on the same structure as own-price elasticity and income elasticity of demand, as represented in Equation 8:

$$E_{P_y}^d = \frac{\% \Delta Q_x^d}{\% \Delta P_y} \quad (8)$$

Note how similar this equation is to the equation for own-price elasticity. The only difference is that the subscript on P is now y , where y indicates some other good. This cross-price elasticity of demand measures how sensitive the demand for good X is to changes in the price of some other good, Y , holding all other things constant. For some pairs of goods, X and Y , when the price of Y rises, more of good X is demanded; the cross-price elasticity of demand is positive. Those goods are referred to as **substitutes**. In economics, if the cross-price elasticity of two goods is positive, they are substitutes, irrespective of whether someone would consider them “similar.”

This concept is intuitive if you think about two goods that are seen to be close substitutes, perhaps like two brands of beer. When the price of one of your favorite brands of beer rises, you would probably buy less of that brand and more of a cheaper brand, so the cross-price elasticity of demand would be positive. For substitute goods, an increase in the price of one good would shift the demand curve for the other good upward and to the right.

Alternatively, two goods whose cross-price elasticity of demand is negative are said to be **complements**. Typically, these goods tend to be consumed together as a pair, such as gasoline and automobiles or houses and furniture. When automobile prices fall, we might expect the quantity of autos demanded to rise, and thus we might expect to see a rise in the demand for gasoline.

Whether two goods are substitutes or complements might not be immediately intuitive. For example, grocery stores often put things like coffee on sale in the hope that customers will come in for coffee and end up doing their weekly shopping there as well. In that case, coffee and, say, cabbage could very well empirically turn out to be complements even though we would not think that the price of coffee has any relation to sales of cabbage. Regardless of whether someone would see two goods as related in some fashion, if the cross-price elasticity of two goods is negative, they are complements.

Although a conceptual understanding of demand elasticities is helpful in sorting out the qualitative and directional effects among variables, using an empirically estimated demand function can yield insights into the behavior of a market. For illustration, let us return to our hypothetical individual demand function for gasoline in Equation 2, duplicated here for convenience:

$$Q_x^d = 84.5 - 6.39P_x + 0.25I - 2P_y$$

The quantity demanded of a given good (Q_x^d) is a function of its own price (P_x), consumer income (I), and the price of another good (P_y).

To derive the market demand function, the individual consumers' demand functions are simply added together. If there were 1,000 individuals who represented a market and they all had identical demand functions, the market demand function would be the individual consumer's demand function multiplied by the number of consumers. Using the individual demand function given by Equation 2, the market demand function would be as shown in Equation 9:

$$Q_x^d = 84,500 - 6,390P_x + 250I - 2,000P_y \quad (9)$$

Earlier, when we calculated own-price elasticity of demand, we needed to choose a price at which to calculate the elasticity coefficient. Similarly, we need to choose actual values for the independent variables— P_x , I , and P_y —and insert these values into the “estimated” market demand function to find the quantity demanded. Choosing €1.48 for P_x , €50 (in thousands) for I , and €20 (in thousands) for P_y , we find that the quantity of gasoline demanded is 47,543 liters per month. We now have everything we need to calculate own-price, income, and cross-price elasticities of demand for our market. Those elasticities are expressed in Equations 10, 11, and 12. Each of those expressions has a term denoting the change in quantity divided by the change in each respective variable: own price, $\Delta Q_x^d / \Delta P_x$; income, $\Delta Q_x^d / \Delta I$, and cross price, $\Delta Q_x^d / \Delta P_y$.

As we stated in the discussion of own-price elasticity, when the relationship between two variables is linear, the change in quantity (ΔQ_x^d) divided by the change in own price (ΔP_x), income (ΔI), or cross price (ΔP_y) is equal to the slope coefficient on that other variable. The elasticities are calculated by inserting the slope coefficients from Equation 9 into the elasticity formulas.

Own-price elasticity:

$$E_{P_x}^d = \left(\frac{\Delta Q_x^d}{\Delta P_x} \right) \left(\frac{P_x}{Q_x^d} \right) = (-6,390) \left(\frac{1.48}{47,542.8} \right) = -0.20 \quad (10)$$

Income elasticity:

$$E_I^d = \left(\frac{\Delta Q_x^d}{\Delta I} \right) \left(\frac{I}{Q_x^d} \right) = (250) \left(\frac{50}{47,542.8} \right) = 0.26 \quad (11)$$

Cross-price elasticity:

$$E_{P_y}^d = \left(\frac{\Delta Q_x^d}{\Delta P_y} \right) \left(\frac{P_y}{Q_x^d} \right) = (-2000) \left(\frac{20}{47,542.8} \right) = -0.84 \quad (12)$$

In our example, at a price of €1.48, the own-price elasticity of demand is -0.20 ; a 1% increase in the price of gasoline leads to a decrease in quantity demanded of about 0.20% (Equation 10). Because the absolute value of the own-price elasticity is less than one, we characterize demand as being *inelastic* at that price; for example, an increase in price would result in an increase in total expenditure on gasoline by consumers in that market. The income elasticity of demand is 0.26 (Equation 11): A 1% increase in income would result in an increase of 0.26% in the quantity demanded of gasoline. Because that elasticity is positive (but small), we would characterize gasoline as a normal good. The cross-price elasticity of demand between gasoline and automobiles is -0.84 (Equation 12): If the price of automobiles rose by 1%, the demand for gasoline would fall by 0.84%. We would, therefore, characterize gasoline and automobiles as complements because the cross-price elasticity is negative. The magnitude is quite small, however, so we would conclude that the complementary relationship is weak.

EXAMPLE 1

Calculating Elasticities from a Given Demand Function

An individual consumer's monthly demand for downloadable e-books is given by the equation $Q_{eb}^d = 2 - 0.4P_{eb} + 0.0005I + 0.15P_{hb}$, where Q_{eb}^d equals the number of e-books demanded each month, I equals the household monthly income, P_{eb} equals the price of e-books, and P_{hb} equals the price of hardbound books. Assume that the price of e-books is €10.68, household income is €2,300, and the price of hardbound books is €21.40.

- 1 Determine the value of own-price elasticity of demand for e-books.
- 2 Determine the income elasticity of demand for e-books.
- 3 Determine the cross-price elasticity of demand for e-books with respect to the price of hardbound books.

Solution to 1:

The own-price elasticity of demand is given by $(\Delta Q_{eb}^d / \Delta P_{eb})(P_{eb} / Q_{eb}^d)$. Notice from the demand function that $\Delta Q_{eb}^d / \Delta P_{eb} = -0.4$. Inserting the given variable values into the demand function yields $Q_{eb}^d = 2 - (0.4)(10.68) + (0.0005)(2300) + (0.15)(21.4) = 2.088$. So at a price of €10.68, the own-price elasticity of demand equals $(-0.4)(10.68/2.088) = -2.046$, which is elastic because in absolute value the elasticity coefficient is greater than 1.

Solution to 2:

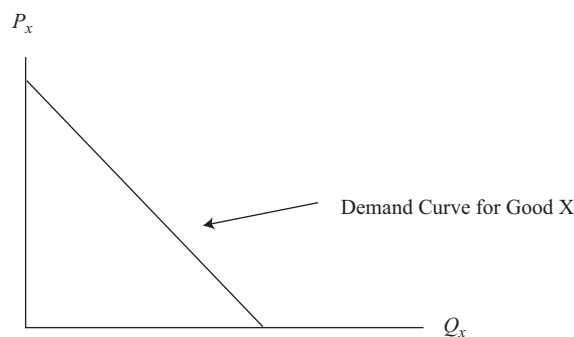
Recall that income elasticity of demand is given by $(\Delta Q_{eb}^d / \Delta I)(I / Q_{eb}^d)$. Notice from the demand function that $\Delta Q_{eb}^d / \Delta I = 0.0005$. Inserting the values for I and Q_{eb}^d yields income elasticity of $(0.0005)(2,300/2.088) = 0.551$, which is positive, so e-books are a normal good.

Solution to 3:

Recall that cross-price elasticity of demand is given by $(\Delta Q_{eb}/\Delta P_{hb})(P_{hb}/Q_{eb})$, and notice from the demand function that $\Delta Q_{eb}/\Delta P_{hb} = 0.15$. Inserting the values for P_{hb} and Q_{eb} yields a cross-price elasticity of demand for e-books of $(0.15)(21.40/2.088) = 1.537$, which is positive, implying that e-books and hardbound books are substitutes.

2.5 Substitution and Income Effects

The law of demand states that if nothing changes other than the price of a particular good or service itself, a decrease in that good's price will tend to result in a greater quantity of that good being purchased. Simply stated, it is the assumption that a demand curve has negative slope; that is, where price per unit is measured on the vertical axis and quantity demanded per time period is measured on the horizontal axis, the demand curve is falling from left to right, as shown in Exhibit 5.

Exhibit 5 A Negatively Sloped Demand Curve—The Law of Demand

There are two reasons why a consumer would be expected to purchase more of a good when its price falls and less of a good when its price rises. These two reasons are known as the substitution effect and the income effect of a change in price. We address these two effects separately and then examine the combination of the two.

When the price of something—say, gasoline—falls, that good becomes relatively less costly compared with other goods or services a consumer might purchase. For example, gasoline is used in driving to work, so when its price falls, it is relatively cheaper to drive to work than to take public transportation. Hence, the consumer is likely to substitute a little more driving to work for a little less public transportation. When the price of beef falls, it becomes relatively cheaper than chicken. The typical consumer is, therefore, likely to purchase a little more beef and a little less chicken.

On its own, the substitution effect suggests that when the price of something falls, consumers tend to purchase more of that good. But another influence is often at work as well—the income effect. Consider a consumer spending all of her “money income” on a given combination of goods and services. (Her money income is simply the quantity of dollars or euros, or other relevant currency, that is available to her to spend in any given time period.) Now suppose the price of something she was regularly purchasing falls while her money income and the prices of all other goods remain unchanged. Economists refer to this as an increase in purchasing power or **real income**. For most goods and services, consumers tend to buy more of them when their income rises. So when the price of a good—say, beef—falls, most consumers would tend to buy more beef because of the increase in their real income. Although

the consumer's money income (the number on her paycheck) is assumed not to have changed, her real income has risen because she can now buy more beef—and other goods, too—as a result of the fall in the price of that one good. So, quite apart from the substitution effect of a fall in a good's price, the income effect tends to cause consumers to purchase more of that good as well.

Substitution and income effects work the other way, too. If the price of beef were to rise, the substitution effect would cause the consumer to buy less of it and substitute more chicken for the now relatively more expensive beef. Additionally, the rise in the price of beef results in a decrease in the consumer's real income because now she can buy less goods with the same amount of money income. If beef is a good that consumers tend to buy more of when their income rises and less of when their income falls, then the rise in beef price would have an income effect that causes the consumer to buy less of it.

2.6 Normal and Inferior Goods

Economists classify goods on various dimensions, one of which relates to how consumers' purchases of a good respond to changes in consumer income. Earlier, when discussing income elasticity of demand, we introduced the concept of normal goods and inferior goods. For most goods and services, an increase in income would cause consumers to buy more; these are called **normal goods**. But that does not hold true for all goods: There are goods that consumers buy less of when their income rises and goods that they buy more of when their incomes fall. These are called **inferior goods**. This section will distinguish between normal goods and inferior goods.

We previously discussed income and substitution effects of a change in price. If a good is normal, a decrease in price will result in the consumer buying more of that good. Both the substitution effect and the income effect are at play here:

- A decrease in price tends to cause consumers to buy more of this good in place of other goods—the substitution effect.
- The increase in real income resulting from the decline in this good's price causes people to buy even more of this good when its price falls—the income effect.

So, we can say that for normal goods (restaurant meals, for example, as most people tend to eat out more often when their incomes rise), the substitution and the income effects reinforce one another to cause the demand curve to be negatively sloped.

For inferior goods (cheaper cuts of meat or generic beverages, for example, which most people buy less of as their incomes rise), an increase in income causes consumers to buy less, not more, and if their incomes fall, they buy more, not less. "Inferior" does not imply anything at all about the quality of the good; it is simply used to refer to a good for which an increase in income causes some people to buy less of it.

The same good could be normal for some consumers while it is inferior for others. Consider a very low-income segment of the population. For those consumers, an increase in their income might very well result in their buying more fast-food meals. They might take some of that added income and enjoy eating out at a fast-food restaurant a little more often. Now consider a high-income group. If their income rises, they might be much less inclined to eat at fast-food restaurants and instead do their dining out at a fashionable French bistro, for example. So, fast-food meals might be a normal good for some people and an inferior good for others.

Let us now consider the substitution and income effects of a change in the price of normal and inferior goods. The substitution effect says that if the price of a good falls, the consumer will substitute more of this good in the consumption bundle and buy less of some other good. The substitution effect is true for both normal and inferior goods. Next, we provide an example.

We begin with a hypothetical consumer with a certain money income (R\$200,000). Given the prices for all goods, he makes a decision to buy a given amount of Good X, coffee. If the price of coffee falls, the consumer is better off than when the price was higher. We can assume that this consumer would have been willing to pay some amount of money each month to be able to buy coffee at the lower price. We now have two states of the world: In State 1, he spends his income on all the various goods, including his desired quantity of coffee at the original price. In State 2, he is able to buy coffee at the new lower price, but because he has paid a portion of his income to buy coffee at the lower price, he now has less money income to spend on all goods combined. If we adjusted the amount of money he would have to pay to lock in the lower price of coffee until he is just indifferent between the two states of the world, we would have exactly offset the “good” thing of the lower price with the “bad” thing of less income. This removes the income effect of the price decrease and allows us to isolate the pure substitution effect. We find that in State 2, he would buy more coffee than in State 1. The pure substitution effect is always in the direction of buying more at the lower relative price.

Continuing our example, assume that we give back to the consumer the amount of money he is willing to pay for the privilege of buying coffee at the lower price. Clearly, he is better off because now he can buy coffee at the lower price without having to pay for the privilege. We want to know whether, with this higher money income, he will now buy more or less coffee at the lower price. The answer depends on whether coffee is a normal or an inferior good for this consumer. Recall that for normal goods, an increase in income causes consumers to buy more, but for inferior goods, an increase in income causes consumers to buy less.

In conclusion, the substitution effect of a change in the price of a good will always be in the direction of buying more at a lower price or less at a higher price. The income effect of that same price change, however, depends on whether the good is normal or inferior. If the good is normal, the income effect reinforces the substitution effect, both leading to a negatively sloped demand curve. But if the good is inferior, the income effect and the substitution effect work in opposite directions; the income effect tends to mitigate the substitution effect.

Exhibit 6 summarizes the substitution and income effects for normal and inferior goods.

Exhibit 6 The Substitution and Income Effects of a Price Decrease on Normal and Inferior Goods

	Substitution Effect	Income Effect
Normal good	Buy more because the good is relatively cheaper than its substitutes.	Buy more because the increase in purchasing power raises the total consumption level.
Inferior good	Buy more because the good is relatively cheaper than its substitutes.	Buy less because the increase in real income prompts the consumer to buy less of the inferior good in favor of its preferred substitutes.



Exceptions to the Law of Demand

In virtually every case in the real world, the law of demand holds: A decrease in price results in an increase in quantity demanded, resulting in a negatively sloped demand curve. In a few unusual cases, however, we may find a positively sloped demand curve—a decrease (increase) in price may result in a decrease (increase) in the quantity demanded. These unusual cases are called Giffen goods and Veblen goods.

In theory, it is possible for the income effect to be so strong and so negative as to overpower the substitution effect. In such a case, more of a good would be consumed as the price rises and less would be consumed as the price falls. These goods are called **Giffen goods**, named for Robert Giffen based on his observations of the purchasing habits of the Victorian era poor. For many decades, no one really believed that a Giffen good actually existed anywhere other than in textbooks. But in recent years, studies have documented a few rare cases. One study was conducted in a poor rural community where individuals spend a very large portion of their incomes on rice. For these individuals, rice was an inferior good. Under the law of demand, the quantity of rice purchased would rise with the decline in price, but the rise in quantity would be partially offset by the income effect (a decrease in the amount of rice purchased as a result of rising incomes). What the experimenters discovered, however, was that for a certain subset of consumers, the quantity of rice purchased declined in absolute terms—the income effect actually overwhelmed the substitution effect. For consumers living at subsistence levels—incomes just barely sufficient to enable them to meet their caloric intake needs—a decline in the price of the staple enabled them to shift more of their consumption from rice to the alternate sources of calories in their diet (e.g., meat).

With some goods, the item's price tag itself might drive the consumer's preferences for it. Thorstein Veblen posited just such a circumstance in his concept of conspicuous consumption. According to this way of thinking, a consumer might derive utility out of being known by others to consume a so-called high-status good, such as a luxury automobile or a very expensive piece of jewelry. Importantly, it is the high price itself that partly imparts value to such a good. These are called **Veblen goods**, and they derive their value from the consumption of them as symbols of the purchaser's high status in society; they are certainly not inferior goods. It is argued that by increasing the price of a Veblen good, the consumer would be more inclined to purchase it, not less.

EXAMPLE 2

Income and Substitution Effects of a Decrease in Price

Monica has a monthly entertainment budget that she spends on (a) movies and (b) an assortment of other entertainment items. When the price of each movie is \$8, she spends a quarter of her budget on six movies a month and the rest of her budget on other entertainment. Monica was offered an opportunity to join a movie club at her local theater that allows her to purchase movies at half the regular price, and she can choose each month whether to join the movie club or not. There is a membership fee she must pay for each month she belongs to the club. Monica is exactly indifferent between (a) not buying the membership and, therefore, paying \$8 for movies and (b) buying the membership and paying \$4 per movie. So, she flips a coin each month to determine whether to join the

club that month. In months that she does join the club, she sees eight movies. For her birthday, a friend gave her a one-month club membership as a gift, and that month she saw 12 movies.

- 1 If there were no club and the price of movies were to simply fall from \$8 to \$4, how many more movies would Monica buy each month?
- 2 Determine how much Monica is willing to pay each month for the privilege of buying movies at half price. (What is the value of X that makes her indifferent between joining the club and not joining it?)
- 3 Of the increased number of movies Monica would purchase if the price were to fall from \$8 to \$4, determine how much of the increase would be attributable to the substitution effect and how much to the income effect of that price decrease.
- 4 For Monica, are movies a normal, inferior, or Giffen good?

Solution to 1:

Six movies. When her friend gave her a club membership, she bought 12 movies instead of her usual 6. With the gift of the club membership, Monica could buy movies at a price of \$4 without paying for that privilege. This is the same as if the price of each movie fell from \$8 to \$4.

Solution to 2:

Note that Monica is indifferent between two states of the world: State A, in which she has all of her entertainment budget to spend on movies and other entertainment but must pay full price of \$8 per movie, and State B, in which she has to pay some dollar amount X for the privilege of buying movies at half price. So, X is the maximum she would pay for a membership fee. She buys eight movies in months when she joins the club. Without a club membership, those movies would cost her \$64 (8 movies \times \$8). With a club membership, the movies would cost her \$32 (8 movies \times \$4). So the most she is willing to pay for a club membership is \$32. (Note that one might be tempted to say she would be willing to pay only \$24 for the membership because she was buying six movies at \$8, spending \$48, whereas if she were able to buy six movies at only \$4 per movie, she would have to spend only \$24. But because of the substitution effect, she would now be willing to buy more movies than before, so her benefit from the half-price privilege is worth more than \$24.)

Solution to 3:

When Monica pays the club membership herself, she buys eight movies, two more than usual. Because Monica is equally well off whether she joins the club for a monthly fee and thereby pays half price or whether she does not join the club and pays full price, we can say that the income effect of the price decrease has been removed by charging her the monthly fee. So the increase from six movies to eight is the result of the substitution effect. When Monica's friend gave her the gift of a club membership, allowing her to pay half price without paying for the privilege, Monica bought 12 movies, 6 more than usual and 4 more than she would have had she paid the membership fee. The increase from 8 movies to 12 is the result of the income effect.

Solution to 4:

When the price fell from \$8 to \$4, Monica bought more movies, so clearly movies are not a Giffen good for her. Additionally, because the substitution effect and the income effect are in the same direction of buying more movies, they are a normal good for Monica. The substitution effect caused her to buy two more movies, and the income effect caused her to buy an additional four movies.

SUPPLY ANALYSIS: THE FIRM**3**

To fully comprehend the supply side of a consumer goods market, an analyst must understand the firm's costs. (As a reminder, this reading builds on the basics of the market model as covered in the recommended prerequisite reading material.)

The firm's marginal cost is the foundation of the firm's ability and willingness to offer a given quantity for sale, and its costs depend on both the productivity of its inputs and their prices. In this section, we will describe the firm's cost curves—total, average, and marginal costs in both the short run and in the long run—paying special attention to what economists call the **law of diminishing marginal returns**. We will then use this information to explore the conditions under which a firm would find it beneficial to continue operation, even if its economic profits are negative, and at what levels of production its shutdown and breakeven points occur. Long-run costs will be examined in the context of economies and diseconomies of scale.

3.1 Marginal Returns and Productivity

There is an economic phenomenon known as **increasing marginal returns**, in which **marginal product**—the productivity of each additional unit of a resource—increases as additional units of that input are employed.

Initially, a firm can experience increasing returns from adding labor to the production process because of the concepts of specialization and division of labor. At first, by having too few workers relative to total physical capital, the understaffing situation requires employees to multi-task and share duties. As more workers are added, employees can specialize, become more adept at their individual functions, and realize an increase in marginal productivity. But after a certain output level, the law of diminishing marginal returns becomes evident.

When more and more workers are added to a fixed capital base, the marginal return of the labor factor eventually decreases because the fixed input restricts the output potential of additional workers. As an illustration, consider automobile production. When an auto manufacturing plant is operating at full capacity, adding additional labor will not increase production because the physical plant is already 100% employed. More labor hours will merely add to costs without adding to output. Assuming all workers are of equal quality and motivation, the decline in marginal product occurs in the short run, where all other resources (typically, plant size, physical capital, and technology) are fixed.

Marginal returns are directly related to **input productivity**, a measure of the output per unit of input.

3.1.1 Productivity: The Relationship between Production and Cost

The cost of producing anything depends on the amount of *inputs*, or *factors of production* (these terms are synonymous), and the input prices. Examples of factors of production are employee hours, machine hours, raw materials, and so on. For simplicity,

economists typically concentrate on only two inputs, labor and capital, although obviously there can be many inputs to a particular production process. The labor input is simply employee time, and it is measured as labor hours per time period, such as per week or per month. We denote labor hours as L . If a firm is using two laborers per week and each laborer works 35 hours per week, then L equals 70 labor hours per week. We denote hours of capital as K . If the firm is using three machines and each one is used for 12 hours per week, then K equals 36 machine hours per week. That is, the capital input is measured as machine hours used per time period. In this way, capital and labor are stated in similar terms. They represent flows of services—labor hours and machine hours—that are used to produce a flow of output per time period.

Accordingly, the respective input prices would be the wage rate per labor hour (we use w to denote wage rate) and the rental rate per machine hour (we use r to denote the rental rate per machine hour). It is helpful to think of a firm as renting the services of labor and of machines. Although the firm might own its own machines, it could in theory rent its machines out to another user, so it is forgoing the rate it could earn elsewhere when it is using its machines internally instead of renting them out. So, a firm is not using its own machines “for free.” It is incurring the **opportunity cost** of not being able to rent those machines to another user.

The **total cost** of production (TC) is the number of hours of labor multiplied by the wage rate plus the number of machine hours multiplied by the rental rate of machines:

$$TC = (w)(L) + (r)(K)$$

This formula illustrates that the total cost is just the cost of all the firm’s inputs. It is not a cost function, however, which is a relationship between the cost of production and the flow of output. The cost function $C = f(Q)$, where (Q) denotes the flow of output in units of production per time period, relates the production cost per time period to the number of units of output produced per time period.

Two things could cause the cost of producing any given level of output to fall: Either the price of one or both inputs could fall or the inputs themselves could become more productive and less of them would be needed (e.g., a worker is more productive when fewer hours of labor are needed to produce the same output). The reverse is true also: A rise in cost could result from either a rise in input prices or a fall in input productivity, or both.

Why is productivity important? Cost-minimization and profit-maximization behavior dictate that the firm strives to maximize productivity—for example, produce the most output per unit of input or produce any given level of output with the least amount of inputs. A firm that lags behind the industry in productivity is at a competitive disadvantage and is likely to face decreases in future earnings and shareholders’ wealth. An increase in productivity lowers production costs, which leads to greater profitability and investment value. These productivity benefits can be fully or partially distributed to other stakeholders of the business, such as to consumers in the form of lower prices and to employees in the form of enhanced compensation. Transferring some or all of the productivity rewards to non-equity holders creates synergies that benefit shareholders over time.

The benefits from increased productivity are as follows:

- lower business costs, which translate into increased profitability;
- an increase in the market value of equity and shareholders’ wealth resulting from an increase in profit; and
- an increase in worker rewards, which motivates further productivity increases from labor.

Undoubtedly, increases in productivity reinforce and strengthen the competitive position of the firm over the long run. A fundamental analysis of a company should examine the firm’s commitment to productivity enhancements and the degree to which

productivity is integrated into the competitive nature of the industry or market. In some cases, productivity is not only an important promoter of growth in firm value over the long term but is also the key factor for economic survival. A business that lags the market in terms of productivity often finds itself less competitive, while at the same time confronting profit erosion and deterioration in shareholders' wealth. Typical productivity measures for a firm are based on the concepts of total product, average product, and marginal product of labor.

3.1.2 Total, Average, and Marginal Product of Labor

When measuring a firm's operating efficiency, it is easier and more practical to use a single resource factor as the input variable rather than a bundle of the different resources that the firm uses in producing units of output. As discussed in the previous section, labor is typically the input that is the most identifiable and calculable for measuring productivity. However, any input that is not difficult to quantify can be used. As an example, a business that manually assembles widgets has 50 workers, one production facility, and an assortment of equipment and hand tools. The firm would like to assess its productivity when using these three input factors to produce widgets. In this example, it is most appropriate to use labor as the input factor for determining productivity because the firm uses only one (fixed) plant building and a variety of other physical capital.

We will use labor as the input variable to illustrate the concepts of total product, average product, and marginal product. Exhibit 7 provides a summary of these three concepts.

Exhibit 7 Definitions and Calculations for Total, Marginal, and Average Product of Labor

Term	Calculation
Total product	Sum of the output from all inputs during a time period; usually illustrated as the total output (Q) using labor quantity (L)
Average product	Total product divided by the quantity of a given input; measured as total product divided by the number of worker hours used at that output level (Q/L)
Marginal product	The amount of additional output resulting from using one more unit of input assuming other inputs are fixed; measured by taking the difference in total product and dividing by the change in the quantity of labor ($\Delta Q/\Delta L$)

Total product (Q) is defined as the aggregate sum of production for a firm during a time period. As a measure of productivity, total product provides superficial information about how effective and efficient a firm is in terms of producing output. For instance, three firms—Company A, Company B, and Company C—that make up an entire industry have total output levels of 100,000 units, 180,000 units, and 200,000 units, respectively. Obviously, Company C dominates the market with a 41.7% share, followed by Company B's 37.5% share and Company A's 20.8% portion of the market. However, this information says little about how efficient each firm is in generating its total output level. Total product only provides insight into a firm's production volume relative to the industry; it does not show how efficient a firm is in producing its output.

Average product of labor (AP_L) measures the productivity of an input (in this case, labor) on average and is calculated by dividing total product by the total number of units for the given input that is used to generate that output. Average product is usually measured on the basis of the labor input. It is a representative or overall measure of labor's productivity: Some workers are more productive than average, and others are less productive than average.

Exhibit 8 compares the productivity of the three firms introduced earlier. Company A employs 100 worker hours and produces 100,000 widgets per hour. Company B employs 200 worker hours and produces 180,000 widgets per hour. Company C employs 250 worker hours and produces 200,000 widgets per hour.

Exhibit 8 Comparing Productivity

	Output (Q)	Number of Worker Hours (L)	Average Product of Labor (AP_L)
Company A	100,000	100	1,000
Company B	180,000	200	900
Company C	200,000	250	800

Using this metric, it is apparent that Company A, with AP_L equal to 1,000, is the most efficient firm, despite having the lowest market share. Company C has the largest market share, but it is the least efficient of the three, with AP_L equal to 800. Assuming that Company A can maintain its productivity advantage over the long run, it will be positioned to generate the greatest return on investment through lower costs and higher profit outcomes relative to the other firms in the market.

Marginal product of labor (MP_L), also known as *marginal return*, measures the productivity of each additional unit of input and is calculated by observing the difference in total product when adding another unit of input (assuming other resource quantities are held constant). It is a gauge of the productivity of the individual additional worker hour rather than an average across all workers.

Exhibit 9 provides a numerical illustration for total, average, and marginal products of labor.

Exhibit 9 Total, Average, and Marginal Product of Labor

Labor (L)	Total Product (Q_L)	Average Product (AP_L)	Marginal Product (MP_L)
0	0	—	—
1	100	100	100
2	210	105	110
3	300	100	90
4	360	90	60
5	400	80	40
6	420	70	20
7	350	50	-70

Total product increases as the firm adds each additional hour of labor—until the seventh labor hour, at which point total production declines by 70 units. Obviously, the firm would want to avoid negative worker productivity.

At an employment level of five labor hours, AP_L is 80 units ($400/5$) and MP_L is 40 units [$(400 - 360)/(5 - 4)$]. The average productivity for all five labor hours is 80 units, but the productivity of the fifth labor hour is only 40 units.

EXAMPLE 3**Calculation and Interpretation of Total, Average, and Marginal Product**

Exhibit 10 illustrates the production relationship between the number of machine hours and total product.

- 1 Interpret the results for total, average, and marginal product.
- 2 Indicate at what point increasing marginal returns change to diminishing marginal returns.

Exhibit 10

Machine Hours (K)	Total Product (Q_K)	Average Product (AP_K)	Marginal Product (MP_K)
0	0	—	—
1	1,000	1,000	1,000
2	2,500	1,250	1,500
3	4,500	1,500	2,000
4	6,400	1,600	1,900
5	7,400	1,480	1,000
6	7,500	1,250	100
7	7,000	1,000	-500

Solution to 1:

Total product increases up to six machine hours, where it tops out at 7,500. Because total product declines from Hour 6 to Hour 7, the marginal product for Machine Hour 7 is negative 500 units. Average product peaks at 1,600 units with four machine hours. Average product increases at a steady pace with the addition of Machine Hours 2 and 3. The addition of Machine Hour 4 continues to increase average product but at a decreasing rate. Beyond four machine hours, average product decreases—at an increasing rate. Marginal product peaks with Machine Hour 3 and decreases thereafter.

Solution to 2:

The marginal product, MP_K , of Machine Hour 3 is 2,000. The marginal product of each additional machine hour beyond Machine Hour 3 declines. Diminishing marginal returns are evident beyond Machine Hour 3.

A firm has a choice of using total product, average product, marginal product, or some combination of the three to measure productivity. Because total product is simply an indication of a firm's output volume and potential market share, average product and marginal product are better gauges of a firm's productivity. Both can reveal competitive advantage through production efficiency. However, individual worker productivity is not easily measurable when workers perform tasks collectively. In this case, average product is the preferred measure of productivity performance.

Referring to the total product column in Exhibit 9, output is more than twice as great (210 widgets) when two hours of labor are used as opposed to only one hour (100 widgets.) In this range of production, there is an increase in return when employee hours are added to the production process. This is the phenomenon of increasing marginal returns.

3.2 Breakeven and Shutdown Analysis

Two important considerations of any firm are its level of profitability and whether to continue to operate in the current environment. Economists define profit differently than do accountants. **Economic profit** is defined as the difference between total revenue (TR) and total **economic costs**. **Accounting profit** is the difference between TR and total **accounting cost**. TR is the same from both an accounting standpoint and an economic standpoint; it is derived by multiplying the selling price per unit of output by the number of units: $TR = (P)(Q)$. The difference between the two measures of profit, therefore, lies in an understanding of economic cost (also called “opportunity cost,” which is defined in detail in the next section).

3.2.1 Economic Cost vs. Accounting Cost

The opportunity cost of any particular decision, such as to produce a given level of output, can be determined by measuring the benefit forgone by not implementing the next best alternative. Suppose that a firm is currently operating with hired labor and its own plant and equipment to produce output at some level. The firm must continuously decide either to keep the level of output the same or to change it. The decision to maintain the same output requires that the firm hire the same amount of labor input and use the same level of its capital inputs as before. The labor expense is both an economic cost and an accounting cost because the money spent on labor hours could have been used for something else (opportunity cost), and it is also a current expense for the firm (accounting cost.)

Accountants typically attempt to recognize the cost of plant and equipment in the form of accounting depreciation, which is a means of distributing the historical cost of the fixed capital among the units of production for financial reporting purposes. The money spent in the past on the firm’s plant and equipment is what economists call a “sunk cost.” Because sunk costs cannot be altered, they cannot affect an optimal decision, which is forward looking. Sunk costs are therefore ignored, and the key management question is, Going forward, what are the opportunity costs and benefits of maintaining a given level of output?

Here is where economic depreciation comes into play. To understand the opportunity costs of using our plant and equipment—already bought and paid for—for one more period of time to produce output, we have to ask the question, What else could be done with that fixed capital if it were not used to produce our output? The answer might be that because there is no external market for our machines and buildings, we are forgoing nothing by using it to produce output. Or it might be that there is a market where we could rent out or sell our capital equipment elsewhere instead of using it to produce output. That rental rate is the economic depreciation associated with using our own equipment to produce output instead of renting or selling it elsewhere.

Economic depreciation is forward looking. It asks, What am I giving up if I use my resources to produce output in the coming period? Accounting depreciation is backward looking. It asks, How should I distribute the historical cost—that I have already paid—across units of output that I intend to produce this period? Both concepts are useful—one for making managerial decisions about output and the other as a way spreading historical costs for reporting or tax purposes—but there is not necessarily a direct relationship between the two.

3.2.2 Marginal Revenue, Marginal Cost, and Profit Maximization

It is assumed that any for-profit firm's management is tasked with achieving the goal of shareholder wealth maximization. Put most simply, that translates into the goal of economic profit maximization. Hereafter, when the word *profit* is used, it will be economic profit that we have in mind. Because profit is defined as TR minus TC, anything that increases revenue more than cost or decreases cost more than revenue will increase profit. Before we address profit maximization, we must introduce two important concepts: marginal revenue and marginal cost.

Marginal revenue (MR) is the additional revenue the firm realizes from the decision to increase output by one unit per time period. That is, $MR = \Delta TR / \Delta Q$. If the firm is operating in what economists call a perfectly competitive market, it is one of many sellers of identical products in an environment characterized by low or non-existent barriers to entry. Under perfect competition, the firm has no pricing power because there are many perfect substitutes for the product it sells. If it were to attempt to raise the price even by a very small amount, it would lose all of its sales to competitors. On the other hand, it can sell essentially any amount of product it wants without lowering the price below the market price.

Take the wheat market as an example of a perfectly competitive market. A seller of wheat would have no control over the market price of wheat; thus, because $TR = (P)(Q)$, MR for this firm is simply price per unit of output. This firm is said to face a perfectly horizontal (zero-sloped), or infinitely elastic, demand curve for its product. For example, if the firm is selling 1,000 bushels of wheat per week at a price of £3 per bushel, TR is £3,000. If the firm were to increase its output by one unit, then TR would rise by exactly £3 because the firm would not have to lower its price to sell that added unit. So, for sellers in a market with perfect competition, $MR = P$.

In contrast, if a firm sells a product that is differentiated from other firms' products and that has a large market share, the firm is said to be operating in an environment of imperfect competition. In the extreme case of imperfect competition, there might be only one firm selling a product with no close substitutes. That firm holds a monopoly, and it is subject to the market demand curve for its product. Whether a monopoly or simply operating under imperfect competition, the firm faces a negatively sloped demand curve and must lower its price to sell another unit. Thus, MR will be lower than price.

To illustrate this concept, we will decompose MR. Recall from earlier in the reading that

$$TR = (P)(Q)$$

and

$$MR = \Delta TR / \Delta Q$$

Change in total revenue (ΔTR), the numerator of the ratio, can be written as $(P)(\Delta Q) + (Q)(\Delta P)$.

There are two competing forces affecting revenue: (1) Additional units are sold at the new price, and (2) all units must now be sold at the lower price. The firm is selling more units, but it is selling all units at a lower price than before.

To find MR, we divide the change in TR by the change in quantity:

$$MR = \frac{(P)(\Delta Q)}{\Delta Q} + \frac{(Q)(\Delta P)}{\Delta Q} = P + Q \frac{(\Delta P)}{\Delta Q}$$

In other words, MR is equal to price but with an "adjustment" equal to $(Q)(\Delta P / \Delta Q)$.

Taking this one step further, recall that earlier we said $(\Delta P / \Delta Q)$ is the slope of the demand curve. From our expression just given, $MR = P + Q(\Delta P / \Delta Q)$; so, MR is equal to price with an adjustment equal to quantity times the slope of the demand curve.

A perfectly competitive firm faces a demand curve with a slope of zero. Substituting 0 for $\Delta P/\Delta Q$ into the expression given, it becomes clear that MR is equal to price for the perfectly competitive firm—it need not lower its price to sell an additional unit. For a firm in an imperfectly competitive market, however, the demand curve is negatively sloped ($\Delta P/\Delta Q < 0$). Substituting this negative number into the expression for MR, $P + Q(\Delta P/\Delta Q)$, it becomes clear that MR for an imperfectly competitive firm is less than price.

Marginal cost (MC) is the increase to total cost resulting from the firm's decision to increase output by one additional unit per time period: $MC = \Delta TC/\Delta Q$. Economists distinguish between short-run marginal cost (SMC) and long-run marginal cost (LMC). Labor is variable over the short run, but the quantity of capital cannot be changed in the short run because there is a lead time required to build or buy new plant equipment and put it in place. In the long run, all inputs are variable.

SMC is essentially the additional cost of the variable input, labor, that must be incurred to increase the level of output by one unit. LMC is the additional cost of all inputs necessary to increase the level of output, allowing the firm the flexibility of changing both labor and capital inputs in a way that maximizes efficiency.

Understanding MC is aided by recalling that cost is *directly* related to input prices and *inversely* related to productivity. For example, if the wage rate were to rise, cost would also rise. If labor were to become more productive, cost would fall. This relationship can be captured in an expression that relates SMC to wage rate (w) and MP_L : $SMC = w/MP_L$.

This relationship between cost and productivity also holds with average variable cost. **Variable costs** are all costs that fluctuate with the level of production and sales. **Average variable cost (AVC)** is the ratio of total variable cost to total output: $AVC = TVC/Q$. Again, if labor's wage rises, AVC also rises; but if labor were to become more productive, AVC falls. This relationship is captured by the expression $AVC = w/AP_L$.

Earlier, we noted that over some range of low output, the firm might benefit from increasing marginal productivity of its labor input as workers begin to specialize. As the MP_L increases, SMCs decline. Eventually, as more and more labor is added to a fixed amount of capital, the MP_L must fall, causing SMCs to rise.

We began this section by stating that the goal of management is to maximize profit. We now address the conditions necessary for reaching that goal. Consider a firm currently producing 1,000 widgets each week and whose management is contemplating increasing that output incrementally. Would that additional unit increase profit? Clearly, profit would be increased (or losses reduced) if the additional revenue from that next unit were greater than the additional cost. So, a profit-seeking firm should increase Q if $MR > MC$. Conversely, if the additional unit added more to cost than to revenue, the firm should reduce output because it would save more in cost than it would lose in revenue. Only if the additional cost were exactly equal to the additional revenue would the firm be maximizing its profit.

There is another condition (called a second-order condition) necessary for profit maximization: At the level of output at which $MR = MC$, MC cannot be falling. This condition is fairly intuitive. If MC is falling with additional output, MP_L would be rising. (Recall that $SMC = w/MP_L$) If one additional hour of labor input causes MC to fall, the firm would want to add that hour and continue adding labor until SMC becomes positively sloped. We can sum up the profit-maximization decision for an operating firm as follows: Produce the level of output such that (1) $MR = MC$ and (2) MC is not falling.

3.2.3 Understanding the Interaction between Total, Variable, Fixed, and Marginal Cost and Output

Exhibit 11 shows the graphical relationships between total cost, total fixed cost, and total variable cost. TC is the summation of all costs, where costs are classified on the basis of whether they are fixed or variable. **Total fixed cost** (TFC) is the summation of all expenses that do not change as the level of production varies. **Total variable cost** (TVC) is the summation of all variable expenses; TVC rises with increased production and falls with decreased production. At zero production, TC is equal to TFC because TVC at this output level is zero. The curve for TC always lies parallel to and above the TVC curve by the amount of TFC.

Exhibit 11 Total Cost, Total Variable Cost, and Total Fixed Cost

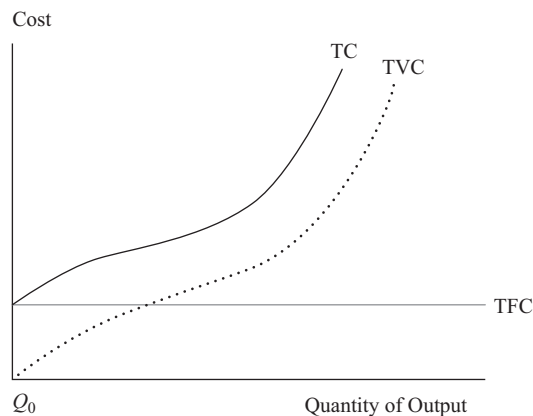
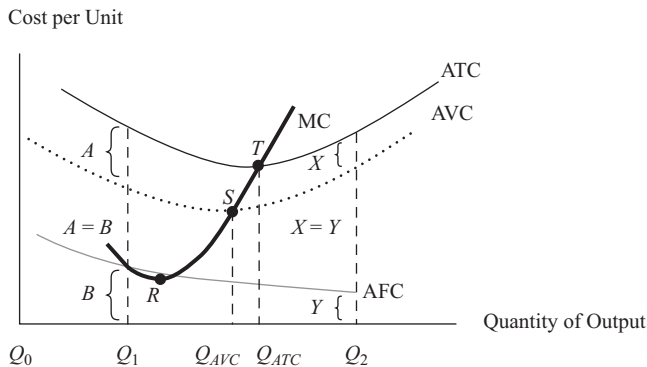


Exhibit 12 shows the relationships between the **average total cost** (ATC), average variable cost (AVC), **average fixed cost** (AFC), and marginal cost (MC) curves in the short run. As output quantity increases, AFC declines because TFCs are spread over a larger number of units. Both ATC and AVC take on a bowl-shaped pattern in which each curve initially declines, reaches a minimum average cost output level, and then increases after that point. The MC curve intersects both the ATC and the AVC at their minimum points—points *S* and *T*. When MC is less than AVC, AVC will be decreasing. When MC is greater than AVC, AVC will be increasing.

Exhibit 12 Average Total Cost, Average Variable Cost, Average Fixed Cost, and Marginal Cost



S, the lowest point on the AVC curve, is where MC equals AVC. Beyond quantity Q_{AVC} , MC is greater than AVC; thus, the AVC curve begins to rise. Note that it occurs at a quantity lower than the minimum point on the ATC curve.

T, the lowest point on the ATC curve, is where MC equals ATC. Beyond quantity Q_{ATC} , MC is greater than ATC; thus, the ATC curve is rising.

A, the difference between ATC and AVC at output quantity Q_1 , is the amount of AFC.

R indicates the lowest point on the MC curve. Beyond this point of production, fixed input constraints reduce the productivity of labor.

X indicates the difference between ATC and AVC at quantity Q_2 . It is less than A because AFC (Y) falls with output.

Exhibit 13 shows an example of how total, average, and marginal costs are derived. TC is calculated by summing TFC and TVC. MC is derived by observing the change in TC as the quantity variable changes. There is a relationship that always holds for average and marginal costs: If MC is less than average cost, average cost must fall, and if MC is greater than average cost, average cost must rise. For example, in Exhibit 13, AVC begins to increase as output rises from 2 to 3 units because MC (50) is greater than AVC (41.7). Also from Exhibit 13, ATC declines up to 3 units because MC is less than ATC. After 3 units, ATC increases because the MC of Unit 4 (85) exceeds the ATC of all prior units (75). Initially, the MC curve declines because of increasing marginal returns to labor, but at some point, it begins to increase because of the law of diminishing marginal returns.

Exhibit 13 Total, Average, Marginal, Fixed, and Variable Costs

Quantity (Q)	TFC ^a	AFC	TVC	AVC	TC	ATC	MC
0	100	—	0	—	100	—	—
1	100	100.0	50	50.0	150	150.0	50
2	100	50.0	75	37.5	175	87.5	25
3	100	33.3	125	41.7	225	75.0	50
4	100	25.0	210	52.5	310	77.5	85
5	100	20.0	300	60.0	400	80.0	90
6	100	16.7	450	75.0	550	91.7	150
7	100	14.3	650	92.9	750	107.1	200
8	100	12.5	900	112.5	1,000	125.0	250

Exhibit 13 (Continued)

Quantity (Q)	TFC ^a	AFC	TVC	AVC	TC	ATC	MC
9	100	11.1	1,200	133.3	1,300	144.4	300
10	100	10.0	1,550	155.0	1,650	165.0	350

^a Includes all opportunity costs.

As stated earlier, TC increases as the firm expands output and decreases when production is cut. TC increases at a decreasing rate up to a certain output level. Thereafter, the rate of increase accelerates as the firm gets closer to full utilization of capacity. The rate of change in TC mirrors the rate of change in TVC. In Exhibit 13, TC at 5 units is 400—of which 300 is variable cost and 100 is fixed cost. At 10 units, TC is 1,650—of which 1,550 is variable cost and 100 is fixed cost.

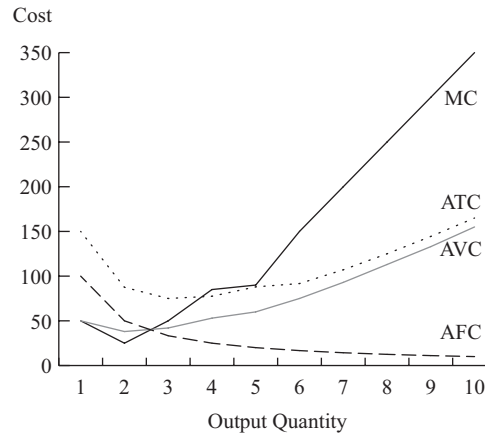
Fixed costs typically are incurred whether the firm produces anything or not. Fixed costs may stay the same over a given range of production but can change to another constant level when production moves outside of that range. The latter is referred to as a **quasi-fixed cost**, although it remains categorized as part of TFC. Examples of fixed costs are debt service, real estate lease agreements, and rental contracts. **Normal profit** is also considered to be a fixed cost because it is a return required by investors on their equity capital regardless of output level. Quasi-fixed cost examples would be certain utilities and administrative salaries that could be lower or avoided altogether when output is zero but would rise to higher constant levels over different production ranges.

Other fixed costs evolve primarily from investments in such fixed assets as real estate, production facilities, and equipment. These fixed costs cannot be arbitrarily cut when production declines. When a firm downsizes, the last expense to be cut is usually fixed cost.

TVC has a direct relationship with quantity. When quantity increases, TVC increases; when quantity decreases, TVC declines. At zero production, TVC is always zero. Variable cost examples are payments for labor, raw materials, and supplies. The change in TVC declines up to a certain output point and then increases as production approaches capacity limits. In Exhibit 13, TVC increases with an increase in quantity. However, the change from 1 to 2 units is 25 ($75 - 50$), and the change from 9 to 10 units is 350.

Exhibit 14 illustrates the relationships between MC, ATC, AVC, and AFC for the data presented in Exhibit 13.

Exhibit 14 Average Total Cost, Average Variable Cost, Average Fixed Cost, and Marginal Cost for Exhibit 13 Data



Dividing TFC by quantity yields AFC. AFC decreases throughout the production span, reflecting the spreading of a constant cost over more and more production units. At high production volumes, AFC may be so low that it is a small proportion of ATC. In Exhibit 13, AFC declines from 100 at 1 unit to 20 at 5 units, and then to 10 at an output level of 10 units.

In Exhibit 13, AVC at 5 units is 60 ($300/5$). Over an initial range of production, AVC declines and then reaches a minimum point. Thereafter, AVC increases as the firm uses more of its production capacity. This higher cost results primarily from production constraints imposed by the fixed assets at higher volume levels. The lowest AVC quantity does not correspond to the least-cost quantity for ATC because AFC is still declining. In Exhibit 13, AVC is minimized at 2 units, whereas ATC is minimized at 3 units.

ATC is calculated by dividing TC by quantity (or by summing AFC and AVC). In Exhibit 13, at 3 units, ATC is 75 (TC of 225/3 units of production or AFC of 33.3 + AVC of 41.7). This is the least average cost point of production and the minimum point on the ATC curve. Although cost-minimizing behavior on the part of the firm would dictate operating at the minimum point on its ATC curve, the profit-maximizing quantity may not correspond to this minimum ATC point. Profit per unit, but not necessarily total profit, is maximized at this point.

EXAMPLE 4

Calculation and Interpretation of Total, Average, Marginal, Fixed, and Variable Costs

The first three columns of Exhibit 15 display data on quantity, TFC, and TVC, which are used to calculate TC, AFC, AVC, ATC, and MC. Examine the results for total, average, marginal, fixed, and variable costs. Identify the quantity levels at which the ATC, AVC, and MC values reach their minimum points. Explain the relationship between TFC and TC at a quantity of zero output.

Exhibit 15

Q	TFC ^a	TVC	AFC	AVC	TC	ATC	MC
0	5,000	0	—	—	5,000	—	—
1	5,000	2,000	5,000.0	2,000	7,000	7,000.0	2,000
2	5,000	3,800	2,500.0	1,900	8,800	4,400.0	1,800
3	5,000	5,400	1,666.7	1,800	10,400	3,466.7	1,600
4	5,000	8,000	1,250.0	2,000	13,000	3,250.0	2,600
5	5,000	11,000	1,000.0	2,200	16,000	3,200.0	3,000
6	5,000	15,000	833.3	2,500	20,000	3,333.3	4,000
7	5,000	21,000	714.3	3,000	26,000	3,714.3	6,000
8	5,000	28,800	625.0	3,600	33,800	4,225.0	7,800
9	5,000	38,700	555.6	4,300	43,700	4,855.6	9,900
10	5,000	51,000	500.0	5,100	56,000	5,600.0	12,300

^a Includes all opportunity costs

Solution:

TFC remains unchanged at 5,000 throughout the entire production range, whereas AFC continuously declines from 5,000 at 1 unit to 500 at 10 units. Both AVC and MC initially decline and then reach their lowest level at 3 units, with costs of 1,800 and 1,600, respectively. Beyond 3 units, both AVC and MC increase, indicating that the cost of production rises with greater output. The least-cost point for ATC is 3,200 at 5 units. At zero output, TC is 5,000, which equals the amount of TFC (at zero output, the firm will need no variable inputs, but it is committed to its fixed plant and equipment in the short run).

3.2.4 Revenue under Conditions of Perfect and Imperfect Competition

Recall from our earlier discussion of profit-maximizing conditions that a firm can generally be classified as operating in either a perfectly competitive or an imperfectly competitive environment. The difference between the two manifests itself in the slope of the demand curve facing the firm. If the environment of the firm is perfectly competitive, it must take the market price of its output as given, so it faces a perfectly elastic, horizontal demand curve. In this case, as we saw previously, the firm's MR and the price of its product are identical. Additionally, the firm's **average revenue** (AR), or revenue per unit, is also equal to price per unit. However, a firm that faces a negatively sloped demand curve must lower its price to sell an additional unit, so its MR is less than price (P).

These characteristics of MR are also applicable to the TR functions. Under conditions of perfect competition, TR (as always) is equal to price times quantity: $TR = (P)(Q)$. But under conditions of perfect competition, price is dictated by the market; the firm has no control over price. As the firm sells one more unit, its TR rises by the exact amount of price per unit.

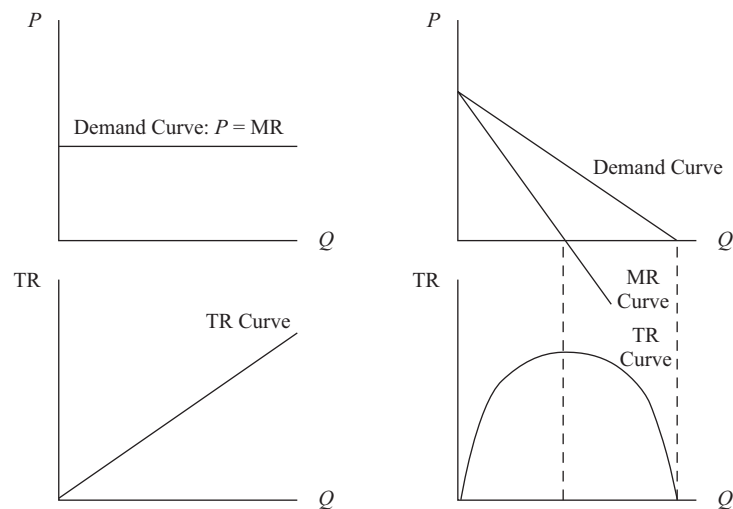
Under conditions of imperfect competition, price is a variable under the firm's control, and therefore price is a function of quantity: $P = f(Q)$, and $TR = f(Q) \times Q$. For simplicity, suppose the firm is monopolistic and faces the market demand curve, which we will assume is linear and negatively sloped. Because the monopolist is the only seller, its TR is identical to the total expenditure of all buyers in the market. Earlier, we noted what happens as price is reduced and quantity sold increases in this

environment: At first, a decrease in price increases total expenditure by buyers and TR to the firm because the decrease in price is outweighed by the increase in units sold. But as price continues to fall, the decrease in price overshadows the increase in quantity, and total expenditure (revenue) falls. We can now depict the demand and TR functions for firms under conditions of perfect and imperfect competition, as shown in Exhibit 16.

Exhibit 16 Demand and Total Revenue Functions for Firms under Conditions of Perfect and Imperfect Competition

A. Perfectly Competitive Firm

B. Imperfectly Competitive Firm

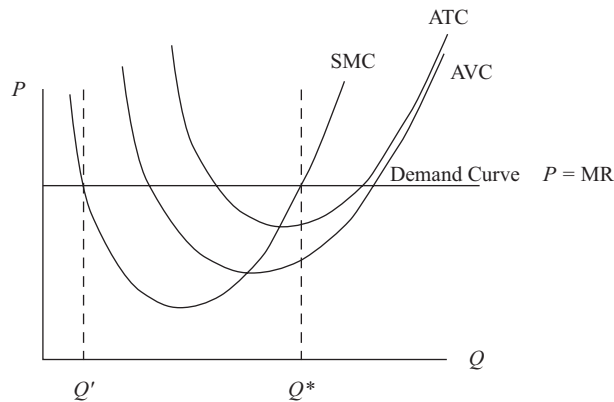


Panel A of Exhibit 16 depicts the demand curve (upper graph) and total revenue curve (lower graph) for the firm under conditions of perfect competition. Notice that the vertical axis in the upper graph is price per unit (e.g., £/bushel), whereas TR is measured on the vertical axis in the lower graph (e.g., £/week.) The same is true for the respective axes in Panel B, which depicts the demand and total revenue curves for the monopolist. The TR curve for the firm under conditions of perfect competition is linear, with a slope equal to price per unit. The TR curve for the monopolist first rises (in the range where MR is positive and demand is elastic) and then falls (in the range where MR is negative and demand is inelastic) with output.

3.2.5 Profit-Maximization, Breakeven, and Shutdown Points of Production

We can now combine the firm's short-run TC curves with its TR curves to represent profit maximization in the cases of perfect competition and imperfect competition. Exhibit 17 shows both the AR and average cost curves in one graph for the firm under conditions of perfect competition.

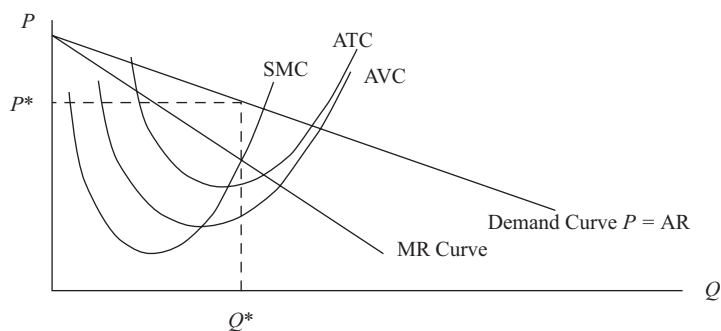
Exhibit 17 Demand and Average and Marginal Cost Curves for the Firm under Conditions of Perfect Competition



The firm is maximizing profit by producing Q^* , where price is equal to SMC and SMC is rising. (Note that there is another output level, Q' , where $P = SMC$, but at that point, SMC is still falling, so this cannot be a profit-maximizing solution.) If market price were to rise, the firm's demand and MR curve would simply shift upward, and the firm would reach a new profit-maximizing output level to the right of Q^* . If, on the other hand, market price were to fall, the firm's demand and MR curve would shift downward, resulting in a new and lower level of profit-maximizing output. As depicted, this firm is currently earning a positive economic profit because market price exceeds ATC at output level Q^* . This profit is possible in the short run, but in the long run, competitors would enter the market to capture some of those profits and would drive the market price down to a level equal to each firm's ATC .

Exhibit 18 depicts the cost and revenue curves for the monopolist that is facing a negatively sloped market demand curve. The MR and demand curves are not identical for this firm. But the profit-maximizing rule is still the same: Find the level of Q that equates SMC to MR —in this case, Q^* . Once that level of output is determined, the optimal price to charge is given by the firm's demand curve at P^* . This monopolist is earning positive economic profit because its price exceeds its ATC . The barriers to entry that give this firm its monopolistic power mean that outside competitors would be unable to compete away this firm's profits.

Exhibit 18 Demand and Average and Marginal Cost Curves for the Monopolistic Firm



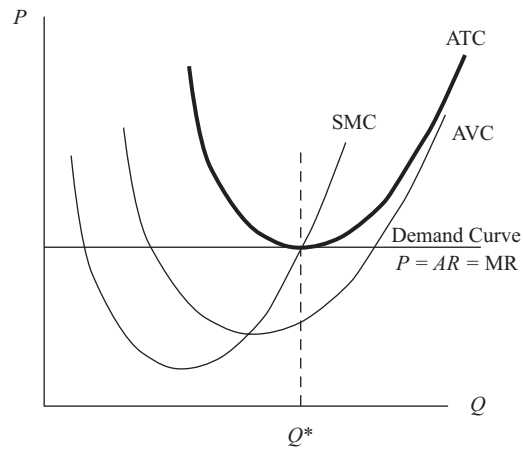
3.2.6 Breakeven Analysis

A firm is said to break even if its TR is equal to its TC. It can also be said that a firm breaks even if its price (AR) is exactly equal to its ATC, which is true under conditions of perfect and imperfect competition. Of course, the goal of management is not just to break even but to maximize profit. However, perhaps the best the firm can do is cover all of its economic costs. Economic costs are the sum of total accounting costs and implicit opportunity costs. A firm whose revenue is equal to its economic costs is covering the opportunity cost of all of its factors of production, including capital. Economists would say that such a firm is earning normal profit, but not positive economic profit. It is earning a rate of return on capital just equal to the rate of return that an investor could expect to earn in an equivalently risky alternative investment (opportunity cost). Firms that are operating in a very competitive environment with no barriers to entry from other competitors can expect, in the long run, to be unable to earn a positive economic profit; the excess rate of return would attract entrants who would produce more output and ultimately drive the market price down to the level at which each firm is at best just earning a normal profit. This situation, of course, does not imply that the firm is earning zero accounting profit.

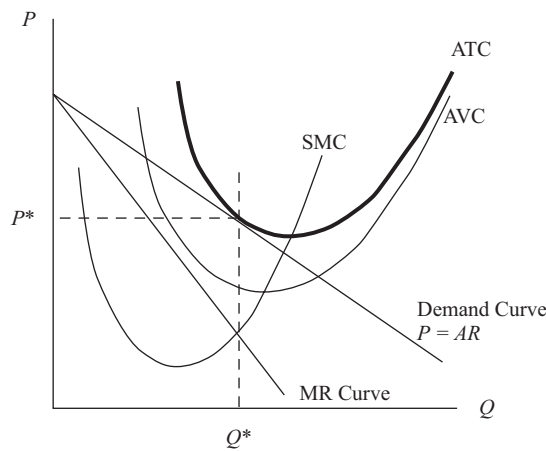
Exhibit 19 depicts the condition for both a firm under conditions of perfect competition (Panel A) and a monopolist (Panel B) in which the best each firm can do is to break even. Note that at the level of output at which SMC is equal to MR, price is just equal to ATC. Hence, economic profit is zero, and the firms are breaking even.

Exhibit 19 Examples of Firms under Perfect Competition and Monopolistic Firms That Can, at Best, Break Even

A. Perfect Competition



B. Monopolist



3.2.7 The Shutdown Decision

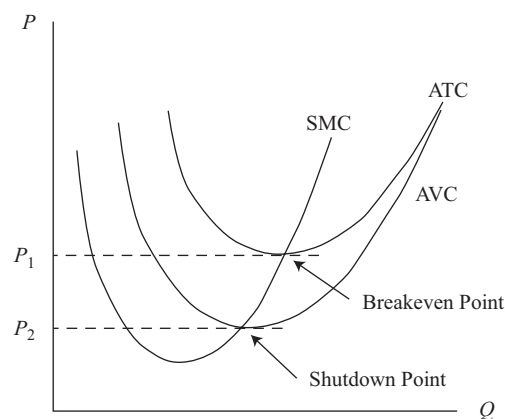
In the long run, if a firm cannot earn at least a zero economic profit, it will not operate because it is not covering the opportunity cost of all of its factors of production, labor, and capital. In the short run, however, a firm might find it advantageous to continue to operate even if it is not earning at least a zero economic profit. The discussion that follows addresses the decision to continue to operate and earn negative profit or shut down operations.

Recall that typically some or all of a firm's fixed costs are incurred regardless of whether the firm operates. The firm might have a lease on its building that it cannot avoid paying until the lease expires. In that case, the lease payment is a sunk cost: It cannot be avoided, no matter what the firm does. Sunk costs must be ignored in the decision to continue to operate in the short run. As long as the firm's revenues cover at least its variable cost, the firm is better off continuing to operate. If price is greater than AVC, the firm is not only covering all of its variable cost but also a portion of fixed cost.

For example, suppose a firm is producing 100 widgets and selling them at a price of €4 each. Obviously, its TR is €400 per time period. Suppose, also, that at that level of output, its ATC is €7, made up of AVC of €3.75 plus AFC of €3.25 per period. This firm is said to be earning negative economic profit (also referred to as **economic loss**, a condition in which revenues fall short of total opportunity cost) of €300 because its TC is €700 and its TR is only €400. Should this firm shut down immediately? If the fixed cost is unavoidable, then the firm is obligated to pay it whether it operates or not. The TFC is €325 (€3.25 per unit on 100 units). If it shuts down and earns zero revenue, then its variable cost would be zero but its losses would still equal the €325 of unavoidable fixed cost. If, however, it continued to operate, it could earn revenue of €400 that would cover its variable cost of €375 and contribute €25 toward the fixed costs. In other words, this firm would lose less by continuing to operate (€300) than by shutting down (€325).

In the long run, unless market price increases, this firm would exit the industry. But in the short run, it will continue to operate at a loss. Exhibit 20 depicts a firm under conditions of perfect competition facing three alternative market price ranges for its output. At any price above P_1 , the firm can earn a positive profit and clearly should continue to operate. At a price below P_2 , the minimum AVC, the firm could not even cover its variable cost and should shut down. At prices between P_2 and P_1 , the firm should continue to operate in the short run because it is able to cover all of its variable cost and contribute something toward unavoidable fixed costs. Economists refer to the minimum AVC point as the **shutdown point** and the minimum ATC point as the **breakeven point**.

Exhibit 20 A Firm under Conditions of Perfect Competition Will Choose to Shut Down If Market Price Is Less Than Minimum AVC



EXAMPLE 5

Breakeven Analysis and Profit Maximization When the Firm Faces a Negatively Sloped Demand Curve under Imperfect Competition

Revenue and cost information for a future period is presented in Exhibit 21 for WR International, a newly formed corporation that engages in the manufacturing of low-cost, pre-fabricated dwelling units for urban housing markets

in emerging economies. (Note that quantity increments are in blocks of 10 for a 250 change in price.) The firm has few competitors in a market setting of imperfect competition.

- 1 How many units must WR International sell to initially break even?
- 2 Where is the region of profitability?
- 3 At what point will the firm maximize profit? At what points are there economic losses?

Exhibit 21

Quantity (Q)	Price (P)	Total Revenue (TR)	Total Cost (TC) ^a	Profit
0	10,000	0	100,000	-100,000
10	9,750	97,500	170,000	-72,500
20	9,500	190,000	240,000	-50,000
30	9,250	277,500	300,000	-22,500
40	9,000	360,000	360,000	0
50	8,750	437,500	420,000	17,500
60	8,500	510,000	480,000	30,000
70	8,250	577,500	550,000	27,500
80	8,000	640,000	640,000	0
90	7,750	697,500	710,000	-12,500
100	7,500	750,000	800,000	-50,000

^a Includes all opportunity costs

Solution to 1:

WR International will initially break even at 40 units of production, where TR and TC equal 360,000.

Solution to 2:

The region of profitability will range from greater than 40 units to less than 80 units. Any production quantity of less than 40 units and any quantity greater than 80 units will result in an economic loss.

Solution to 3:

Maximum profit of 30,000 will occur at 60 units. Lower profit will occur at any output level that is higher or lower than 60 units. From 0 units to less than 40 units and for quantities greater than 80 units, economic losses occur.

Given the relationships between TR, TVC, and TFC, Exhibit 22 summarizes the decisions to operate, shut down production, or exit the market in both the short run and the long run. The firm must cover its variable cost to remain in business in the short run; if TR cannot cover TVC, the firm shuts down production to minimize loss. The loss would be equal to the amount of fixed cost. If TVC exceeds TR in the long run, the firm will exit the market to avoid the loss associated with fixed cost at zero production. By exiting the market, the firm's investors do not suffer the erosion

of their equity capital from economic losses. When TR is enough to cover TVC but not all of TFC, the firm can continue to produce in the short run but will be unable to maintain financial solvency in the long run.

Exhibit 22 Short Run and Long Run Decisions to Operate or Not

Revenue–Cost Relationship	Short-Run Decision	Long-Term Decision
TR = TC	Stay in market	Stay in market
TR = TVC but < TC	Stay in market	Exit market
TR < TVC	Shut down production	Exit market

EXAMPLE 6

Shutdown Analysis

For the most recent financial reporting period, a business domiciled in Ecuador (which recognizes the US dollar as an official currency) has revenue of \$2 million and TC of \$2.5 million, which are or can be broken down into TFC of \$1 million and TVC of \$1.5 million. The net loss on the firm's income statement is reported as \$500,000 (ignoring tax implications). In prior periods, the firm had reported profits on its operations.

- 1 What decision should the firm make regarding operations over the short term?
- 2 What decision should the firm make regarding operations over the long term?
- 3 Assume the same business scenario except that revenue is now \$1.3 million, which creates a net loss of \$1.2 million. What decision should the firm make regarding operations in this case?

Solution to 1:

In the short run, the firm is able to cover all of its TVC but only half of its \$1 million in TFC. If the business ceases to operate, its loss would be \$1 million, the amount of TFC, whereas the net loss by operating would be minimized at \$500,000. The firm should attempt to operate by negotiating special arrangements with creditors to buy time to return operations back to profitability.

Solution to 2:

If the revenue shortfall is expected to persist over time, the firm should cease operations, liquidate assets, and pay debts to the extent possible. Any residual for shareholders would decrease the longer the firm is allowed to operate unprofitably.

Solution to 3:

The firm would minimize loss at \$1 million of TFC by shutting down. If the firm decided to continue to do business, the loss would increase to \$1.2 million. Shareholders would save \$200,000 in equity value by pursuing this option. Unquestionably, the business would have a rather short life expectancy if this loss situation were to continue.

When evaluating profitability, particularly of start-up firms and businesses using turnaround strategies, analysts should consider highlighting breakeven and shutdown points in their financial research. Identifying the unit sales levels at which the firm enters or leaves the production range for profitability and at which the firm can no longer function as a viable business entity provides invaluable insight for investment decisions.

3.3 Understanding Economies and Diseconomies of Scale

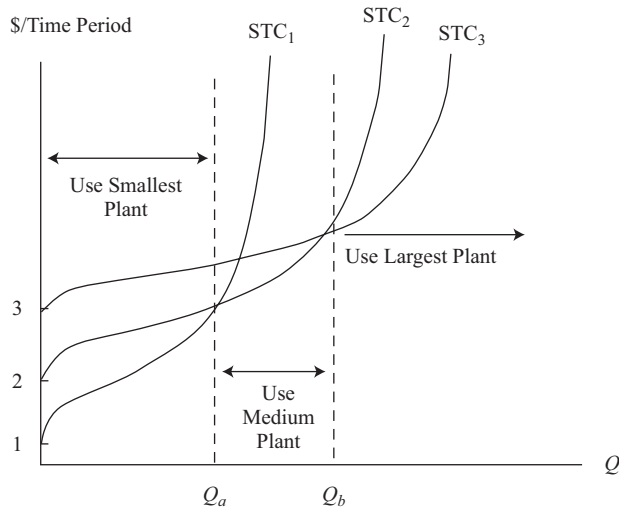
Rational behavior dictates that the firm select an operating size or scale that maximizes profit over any time frame. The time frame that defines the short run and long run for any firm is based on the ability of the firm to adjust the quantities of the fixed resources it uses. The short run is the time period during which at least one of the factors of production, such as technology, physical capital, and plant size, is fixed. The long run is defined as the time period during which all factors of production are variable. Additionally, in the long run, firms can enter or exit the market based on decisions regarding profitability. The long run is often referred to as the “planning horizon” in which the firm can choose the short-run position or optimal operating size that maximizes profit over time. The firm is always operating in the short run but planning in the long run.

The time required for long-run adjustments varies by industry. For example, the long run for a small business using very little technology and physical capital may be less than a year, whereas for a capital-intensive firm, the long run may be more than a decade. Given enough time, however, all production factors are variable, which allows the firm to choose an operating size or plant capacity based on different technologies and physical capital. In this regard, costs and profits will differ between the short run and the long run.

3.3.1 Short- and Long-Run Cost Curves

Recall that when we addressed the short-run cost curves of the firm, we assumed that the capital input was held constant. That meant that the only way to vary output in the short run is to change the level of the variable input—in our case, labor. If the capital input—namely, plant and equipment—were to change, however, we would have an entirely new set of short-run cost curves, one for each level of capital input.

The short-run total cost includes all the inputs—labor and capital—the firm is using to produce output. For reasons discussed earlier, the typical short-run total cost (STC) curve might rise with output, first at a decreasing rate because of specialization economies and then at an increasing rate, reflecting the law of diminishing marginal returns to labor. Total fixed cost (the quantity of capital input multiplied by the rental rate on capital) determines the vertical intercept of the STC curve. At higher levels of fixed input, TFC is greater but the production capacity of the firm is also greater. Exhibit 23 shows three different STC curves for the same technology but using three distinct levels of capital input—Points 1, 2, and 3 on the vertical axis.

Exhibit 23 Short-Run Total Cost Curves for Various Plant Sizes

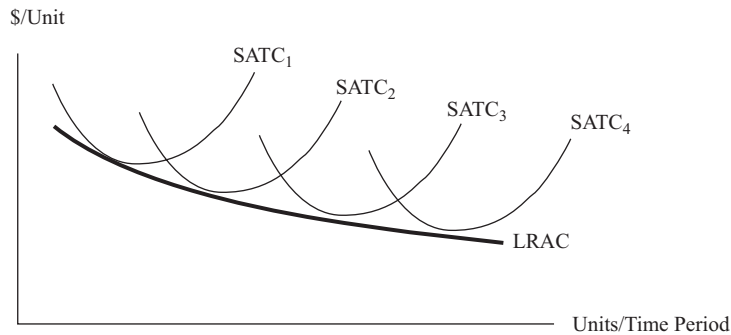
Plant Size 1 is the smallest and, of course, has the lowest fixed cost; hence, its STC_1 curve has the lowest vertical intercept. But note that STC_1 begins to rise more steeply with output, reflecting the lower plant capacity. Plant Size 3 is the largest of the three and reflects that size with both a higher fixed cost and a lower slope at any level of output. If a firm decided to produce an output between zero and Q_a , it would plan on building Plant Size 1 because for any output level in that range, its cost is less than it would be for Plant Size 2 or 3. Accordingly, if the firm were planning to produce output greater than Q_b , it would choose Plant Size 3 because its cost for any of those levels of output would be lower than for Plant Size 1 or 2. And of course, Plant Size 2 would be chosen for output levels between Q_a and Q_b . The long-run total cost curve is derived from the lowest level of STC for each level of output because in the long run, the firm is free to choose which plant size it will operate. This curve is called an “envelope curve.” In essence, this curve envelopes—encompasses—all possible combinations of technology, plant size, and physical capital.

For each STC curve, there is also a corresponding **short-run average total cost (SATC)** curve and a corresponding **long-run average total cost (LRAC)** curve, the envelope curve of all possible short-run average total cost curves. The shape of the LRAC curve reflects an important concept called **economies of scale** and **diseconomies of scale**.

3.3.2 Defining Economies of Scale and Diseconomies of Scale

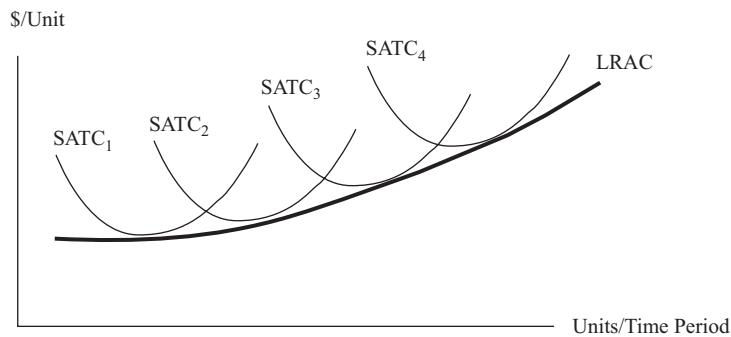
When a firm increases all of its inputs in order to increase its level of output (obviously, a long-run concept), it is said to *scale up* its production. *Scaling down* is the reverse—decreasing all of its inputs in order to produce less in the long run. Economies of scale occur if, as the firm increases its output, cost per unit of production falls. Graphically, this definition translates into a LRAC curve with a negative slope. Exhibit 24 depicts several SATC curves, one for each plant size, and the LRAC curve representing economies of scale.

Exhibit 24 Short-run Average Total Cost Curves for Various Plant Sizes and Their Envelope Curve, LRAC: Economies of Scale



Diseconomies of scale occur if cost per unit rises as output increases. Graphically, diseconomies of scale translate into an LRAC curve with a positive slope. Exhibit 25 depicts several SATC curves, one for each plant size, and their envelope curve, the LRAC curve, representing diseconomies of scale.

Exhibit 25 Short-run Average Total Cost Curves for Various Plant Sizes and Their Envelope Curve, LRAC: Diseconomies of Scale



As the firm grows in size, economies of scale and a lower ATC can result from the following factors:

- **Increasing returns to scale**, which is when a production process allows for increases in output that are proportionately larger than the increase in inputs.
- Having a division of labor and management in a large firm with numerous workers, which allows each worker to specialize in one task rather than perform many duties, as in the case of a small business (as such, workers in a large firm become more proficient at their jobs).
- Being able to afford more expensive, yet more efficient equipment and to adapt the latest in technology that increases productivity.
- Effectively reducing waste and lowering costs through marketable byproducts, less energy consumption, and enhanced quality control.
- Making better use of market information and knowledge for more effective managerial decision making.
- Obtaining discounted prices on resources when buying in larger quantities.

A classic example of a business that realizes economies of scale through greater physical capital investment is an electric utility. By expanding output capacity to accommodate a larger customer base, the utility company's per-unit cost will decline. Economies of scale help explain why electric utilities have naturally evolved from localized entities to regional and multi-region enterprises. Wal-Mart is an example of a business that uses bulk purchasing power to obtain deep discounts from suppliers to keep costs and prices low. Wal-Mart also uses the latest technology to monitor point-of-sale transactions to gather timely market information to respond to changes in customer buying behavior, which leads to economies of scale through lower distribution and inventory costs.

The factors that can lead to diseconomies of scale, inefficiencies, and rising costs when a firm increases in size include the following:

- **Decreasing returns to scale**, which is when a production process leads to increases in output that are proportionately smaller than the increase in inputs.
- Being so large that it cannot be properly managed.
- Overlapping and duplication of business functions and product lines.
- Higher resource prices because of supply constraints when buying inputs in large quantities.

Before its restructuring, General Motors (GM) was an example of a business that had realized diseconomies of scale by becoming too large. Scale diseconomies occurred through product overlap and duplication (i.e., similar or identical automobile models), and the fixed cost for these models was not spread over a large volume of output. (Recently, the company has decided to discontinue various low-volume product models that overlapped with other models.) GM had numerous manufacturing plants throughout the world and sold vehicles in more than a hundred countries. Given this geographical dispersion in production and sales, the company had communication and management coordination problems, which resulted in higher costs. Also, GM had significantly higher labor costs than its competitors. As the largest producer in the market, it had been a target of labor unions for higher compensation and benefits packages relative to other firms.

Economies and diseconomies of scale can occur at the same time; the impact on long-run average total cost (LRAC) depends on which dominates. If economies of scale dominate, LRAC decreases with increases in output. The reverse holds true when diseconomies of scale prevail. There may be a range of output over which LRAC falls (economies of scale) and then a range over which LRAC might be constant, followed by a range over which diseconomies of scale prevail, as depicted in Exhibit 26.

The minimum point on the LRAC curve is referred to as the **minimum efficient scale**. The minimum efficient scale is the optimal firm size under perfect competition over the long run. Theoretically, perfect competition forces the firm to operate at the minimum point on the LRAC curve because the market price will be established at this level over the long run. If the firm is not operating at this least-cost point, its long-term viability will be threatened.

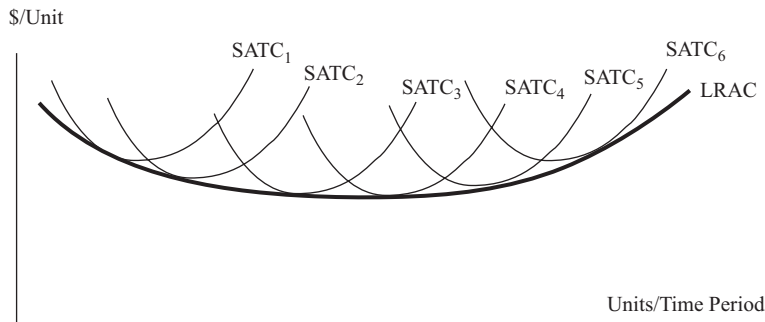
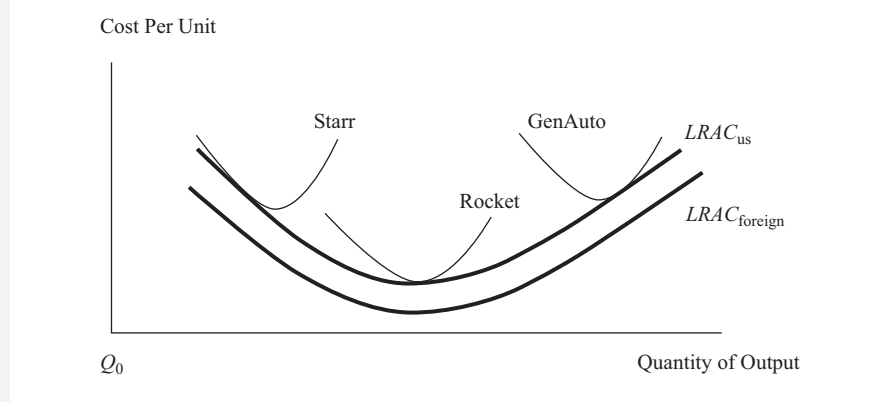
Exhibit 26 LRAC Can Exhibit Economies and Diseconomies of Scale**EXAMPLE 7****Long-Run Average Total Cost Curve**

Exhibit 27 displays the long-run average total cost curve ($LRAC_{US}$) and the short-run average total cost curves for three hypothetical US-based automobile manufacturers—Starr Vehicles (Starr), Rocket Sports Cars (Rocket), and General Auto (GenAuto). The LRAC curve for foreign-owned automobile companies that compete in the US auto market ($LRAC_{foreign}$) is also indicated in the graph. (The market structure implicit in the exhibit is imperfect competition.)

To what extent are the cost relationships depicted in Exhibit 27 useful for an economic and financial analysis of the three US-based auto firms?

Exhibit 27**Solution:**

First, it is observable that the foreign auto companies have a lower LRAC compared with that of the US automobile manufacturers. This competitive position places the US firms at a cost—and possibly, pricing—disadvantage in the market, with the potential to lose market share to the lower-cost foreign competitors. Second, only Rocket operates at the minimum point of the $LRAC_{US}$, whereas GenAuto is situated in the region of diseconomies of scale and Starr is positioned in the economies of scale portion of the curve. To become more efficient and competitive, GenAuto needs to downsize and restructure, which means moving

down the $LRAC_{US}$ curve to a smaller, yet lower-cost production volume. In Contrast, Starr has to grow in size to become more efficient and competitive by lowering per-unit costs.

From a long-term investment prospective and given its cost advantage, Rocket has the potential to create more investment value relative to GenAuto and Starr. Over the long run, if GenAuto and Starr can lower their ATC, they will become more attractive to investors. But if any of the three US auto companies cannot match the cost competitiveness of the foreign firms, they may be driven from the market. In the long run, the lower-cost foreign automakers pose a severe competitive challenge to the survival of the US manufacturers and their ability to maintain and grow shareholders' wealth.

SUMMARY

This reading addressed several important concepts that extend the basic market model of demand and supply to assist the analyst in assessing a firm's breakeven and shutdown points of production. Demand concepts covered include own-price elasticity of demand, cross-price elasticity of demand, and income elasticity of demand. Supply concepts covered include total, average, and marginal product of labor; total, variable, and marginal cost of labor; and total and marginal revenue. These concepts are used to calculate the breakeven and shutdown points of production.

- Elasticity of demand is a measure of how sensitive quantity demanded is to changes in various variables.
- Own-price elasticity of demand is the ratio of percentage change in quantity demanded to percentage change in a good or service's own price.
- If own-price elasticity of demand is greater than one in absolute terms, demand is elastic and a decline in price will result in higher total expenditure on that good.
- If own-price elasticity of demand is less than one in absolute terms, demand is inelastic and a decline in price will result in a lower total expenditure on that good.
- If own-price elasticity of demand is equal to negative one, demand is unit, or unitary, elastic and total expenditure on that good is independent of price.
- Own-price elasticity of demand will almost always be negative.
- Income elasticity of demand is the ratio of the percentage change in quantity demanded to the percentage change in consumer income.
- Demand is negatively sloped because of either the substitution effect or the income effect.
- The substitution effect is the phenomenon in which, as a good's price falls, more of this good is substituted for other, more expensive goods.
- The income effect is the phenomenon in which, as a good's price falls, real income rises and, if this good is normal, more of it will be purchased.
- If the good is inferior, the income effect will partially or fully offset the substitution effect.
- There are two exceptions to the law of demand: Giffen goods and Veblen goods.

- Giffen goods are highly inferior and make up a large portion of the consumer budget. As price falls, the substitution effect tends to cause more of the good to be consumed, but the highly negative income effect overwhelms the substitution effect. Demand curves for Giffen goods are positively sloped.
- Veblen goods are highly valued high-priced “status” goods; consumers may tend to buy more of a good if its price rises.
- If income elasticity of demand is positive, the good is a normal good. If income elasticity of demand is negative, the good is an inferior good.
- Cross-price elasticity of demand is the ratio of the percentage change in quantity demanded of one good to the percentage change in the price of a related good.
- If cross-price elasticity between two goods is positive, they are substitutes, and if cross-price elasticity between two goods is negative, they are complements.
- The law of demand states that a decrease in price will cause an increase in quantity demanded.
- Total product of labor is a short-run concept that is the total quantity that is able to be produced for each level of labor input, holding all other inputs constant.
- Average product of labor (APL) is the total product of labor divided by number of labor hours.
- Marginal product of labor (MP_L) is the change in total product divided by the change in labor hours. MP_L might rise as more labor is added to a fixed amount of capital.
- The law of diminishing returns dictates that additional output must fall as more and more labor is added to a fixed amount of capital.
- Production costs increase as input prices rise and fall as inputs become more productive.
- Short-run total cost (STC) is the total expenditure on fixed capital plus the total expenditure on labor.
- Short-run marginal cost (SMC) equals the ratio of wage to marginal product of labor (MP_L).
- Average variable cost (AVC) is the ratio of wage to average product of labor (APL).
- Average total cost (ATC) is total cost (TC) divided by the number of units produced.
- Revenue is price times quantity sold.
- Marginal revenue (MR) is the ratio of change in revenue to change in output.
- Firms under conditions of perfect competition have no pricing power and, therefore, face a perfectly horizontal demand curve at the market price. For firms under conditions of perfect competition, price is identical to marginal revenue (MR).
- Firms under conditions of imperfect competition face a negatively sloped demand curve and have pricing power. For firms under conditions of imperfect competition, marginal revenue (MR) is less than price.
- Economic profit equals total revenue (TR) minus total economic cost, whereas accounting profit equals TR minus total accounting cost.
- Economic cost takes into account the total opportunity cost of all factors of production.
- Opportunity cost is the next best alternative forgone in making a decision.

- Maximum economic profit requires that (1) marginal revenue (MR) equals marginal cost (MC) and (2) MC not be falling with output.
- The breakeven point occurs when total revenue (TR) equals total cost (TC), otherwise stated as the output quantity at which average total cost (ATC) equals price.
- Shutdown occurs when a firm is better off not operating than continuing to operate.
- If all fixed costs are sunk costs, then shutdown occurs when the market price falls below minimum average variable cost. After shutdown, the firm incurs only fixed costs and loses less money than it would operating at a price that does not cover variable costs.
- In the short run, it may be rational for a firm to continue to operate while earning negative economic profit if some unavoidable fixed costs are covered.
- Economies of scale is defined as decreasing long-run cost per unit as output increases. Diseconomies of scale is defined as increasing long-run cost per unit as output increases.
- Long-run average total cost is the cost of production per unit of output under conditions in which all inputs are variable.
- Specialization efficiencies and bargaining power in input price can lead to economies of scale.
- Bureaucratic and communication breakdowns and bottlenecks that raise input prices can lead to diseconomies of scale.
- The minimum point on the long-run average total cost curve defines the minimum efficient scale for the firm.

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

- 1 If the price elasticity coefficient of the demand curve for paper clips is equal to -1 , demand is:
 - A elastic.
 - B inelastic.
 - C unit elastic.
- 2 The demand for membership at a local health club is determined by the following equation:

$$Q_{hm}^d = 400 - 5P_{hm}$$

where Q_{hm}^d is the number of health club members and P_{hm} is the price of membership. If the price of health club membership is \$35, the price elasticity of demand is *closest* to:

- A -0.778 .
 - B -0.500 .
 - C -0.438 .
- 3 Price elasticity of demand for a good will *most likely* be greater if:
 - A there are no substitutes for the good.
 - B consumers consider the good as discretionary.
 - C consumers spend a small portion of their budget on the good.
 - 4 If the income elasticity of demand for a product is -0.6 , a:
 - A 1% increase in income will result in a 0.6% increase in demand.
 - B 1% increase in income will result in a 0.6% decrease in demand.
 - C 0.6% increase in income will result in a 1% decrease in demand.
 - 5 An individual's demand for onions is given by the following equation:

$$Q_o^d = 3 - 0.05P_o + 0.009I - 0.16P_t$$

where Q_o^d is the number of onions demanded, P_o is the price per pound of onions, I is the household income, and P_t is the price per pound of tomatoes. If the price of onions is \$1.25, household income is \$2,500, and the price of tomatoes is \$3.75, the cross-price elasticity of demand for onions with respect to the price of tomatoes is *closest* to:

- A -1.0597 .
 - B -0.0242 .
 - C -0.0081 .
- 6 Movement along the demand curve for good X occurs due to a change in:
 - A income.
 - B the price of good X .
 - C the price of a substitute for good X .

- 7 A wireless phone manufacturer introduced a next-generation phone that received a high level of positive publicity. Despite running several high-speed production assembly lines, the manufacturer is still falling short in meeting demand for the phone nine months after introduction. Which of the following statements is the *most* plausible explanation for the demand/supply imbalance?
- A The phone price is low relative to the equilibrium price.
 - B Competitors introduced next-generation phones at a similar price.
 - C Consumer incomes grew faster than the manufacturer anticipated.

The following information relates to Questions 8–11

The market demand function for four-year private universities is given by the equation

$$Q_{pr}^d = 84 - 3.1P_{pr} + 0.8I + 0.9P_{pu}$$

where Q_{pr}^d is the number of applicants to private universities per year in thousands, P_{pr} is the average price of private universities (in thousands of USD), I is the household monthly income (in thousands of USD), and P_{pu} is the average price of public (government-supported) universities (in thousands of USD). Assume that P_{pr} is equal to 38, I is equal to 100, and P_{pu} is equal to 18.

- 8 The price elasticity of demand for private universities is *closest* to:
- A -3.1.
 - B -1.9.
 - C 0.6.
- 9 The income elasticity of demand for private universities is *closest* to:
- A 0.5.
 - B 0.8.
 - C 1.3.
- 10 The cross-price elasticity of demand for private universities with respect to the price of public universities is *closest* to:
- A 0.3.
 - B 3.1.
 - C 3.9.
- 11 If the cross-price elasticity between two goods is negative, the two goods are classified as:
- A normal.
 - B substitutes.
 - C complements.
-
- 12 In the case of a normal good with a decrease in own price, which of the following statements is *most likely* true?
- A Both the substitution and income effects lead to an increase in the quantity purchased.

- B** The substitution effect leads to an increase in the quantity purchased, while the income effect has no impact.
- C** The substitution effect leads to an increase in the quantity purchased, while the income effect leads to a decrease.
- 13** For a Giffen good, the:
- A** demand curve is positively sloped.
- B** substitution effect overwhelms the income effect.
- C** income and substitution effects are in the same direction.
- 14** Normal profit is best described as:
- A** zero economic profit.
- B** total revenue minus all explicit costs.
- C** the sum of accounting profit plus economic profit.
- 15** A company plans to hire additional factory employees. In the short run, marginal returns are most likely to decrease if:
- A** the factory is operating at full capacity.
- B** the factory is experiencing a labor shortage.
- C** workers are required to multitask and share duties.
- 16** The production relationship between the number of machine hours and total product for a company is presented below.

Machine Hours	Total Product	Average Product
1	3	3.00
2	8	4.00
3	14	4.67
4	19	4.75
5	21	4.20

- Diminishing marginal returns first occur beyond machine hour:
- A** 3.
- B** 4.
- C** 5.
- 17** The marketing director for a Swiss specialty equipment manufacturer estimates the firm can sell 200 units and earn total revenue of CHF500,000. However, if 250 units are sold, revenue will total CHF600,000. The marginal revenue per unit associated with marketing 250 units instead of 200 units is *closest* to:
- A** CHF 2,000.
- B** CHF 2,400.
- C** CHF 2,500.
- 18** An agricultural firm operating in a perfectly competitive market supplies wheat to manufacturers of consumer food products and animal feeds. If the firm were able to expand its production and unit sales by 10% the *most likely* result would be:
- A** a 10% increase in total revenue.
- B** a 10% increase in average revenue.
- C** an increase in total revenue of less than 10%.

- 19 An operator of a ski resort is considering offering price reductions on weekday ski passes. At the normal price of €50 per day, 300 customers are expected to buy passes each weekday. At a discounted price of €40 per day 450 customers are expected to buy passes each weekday. The marginal revenue per customer earned from offering the discounted price is *closest* to:
- A €20.
 - B €40.
 - C €50.
- 20 The marginal revenue per unit sold for a firm doing business under conditions of perfect competition will *most likely* be:
- A equal to average revenue.
 - B less than average revenue.
 - C greater than average revenue.

The following information relates to Questions 21–23

A firm's director of operations gathers the following information about the firm's cost structure at different levels of output:

Exhibit 1

Quantity (Q)	Total Fixed Cost (TFC)	Total Variable Cost (TVC)
0	200	0
1	200	100
2	200	150
3	200	200
4	200	240
5	200	320

- 21 Refer to the data in Exhibit 1. When quantity produced is equal to 4 units, the average fixed cost (AFC) is *closest* to:
- A 50.
 - B 60.
 - C 110.
- 22 Refer to the data in Exhibit 1. When the firm increases production from 4 to 5 units, the marginal cost (MC) is *closest* to:
- A 40.
 - B 64.
 - C 80.
- 23 Refer to the data in Exhibit 1. The level of unit production resulting in the lowest average total cost (ATC) is *closest* to:
- A 3.

- B** 4.
C 5.
-
- 24** The short-term breakeven point of production for a firm operating under perfect competition will *most likely* occur when:
- A** price is equal to average total cost.
 - B** marginal revenue is equal to marginal cost.
 - C** marginal revenue is equal to average variable costs.
- 25** The short-term shutdown point of production for a firm operating under perfect competition will *most likely* occur when:
- A** price is equal to average total cost.
 - B** marginal revenue is equal to marginal cost.
 - C** marginal revenue is equal to average variable costs.
- 26** Under conditions of perfect competition, a company will break even when market price is equal to the minimum point of the:
- A** average total cost curve.
 - B** average variable cost curve.
 - C** short-run marginal cost curve.
- 27** A company will shut down production in the short run if total revenue is less than total:
- A** fixed costs.
 - B** variable costs.
 - C** opportunity costs.
- 28** A company has total variable costs of \$4 million and fixed costs of \$3 million. Based on this information, the company will stay in the market in the long term if total revenue is at least:
- A** \$3.0 million.
 - B** \$4.5 million.
 - C** \$7.0 million.
- 29** When total revenue is greater than total variable costs but less than total costs, in the short term a firm will *most likely*:
- A** exit the market.
 - B** stay in the market.
 - C** shut down production.
- 30** A profit maximum is *least likely* to occur when:
- A** average total cost is minimized.
 - B** marginal revenue equals marginal cost.
 - C** the difference between total revenue and total cost is maximized.
- 31** A firm that increases its quantity produced without any change in per-unit cost is experiencing:
- A** economies of scale.
 - B** diseconomies of scale.
 - C** constant returns to scale.
- 32** A company is experiencing economies of scale when:

- A cost per unit increases as output increases.
 - B it is operating at a point on the LRAC curve where the slope is negative.
 - C It is operating beyond the minimum point on the long-run average total cost curve.
- 33 Diseconomies of scale *most likely* result from:
- A specialization in the labor force.
 - B overlap of business functions and product lines.
 - C discounted prices on resources when buying in larger quantities.
- 34 A firm is operating beyond minimum efficient scale in a perfectly competitive industry. To maintain long-term viability the *most likely* course of action for the firm is to:
- A operate at the current level of production.
 - B increase its level of production to gain economies of scale.
 - C decrease its level of production to the minimum point on the long-run average total cost curve.
- 35 Under conditions of perfect competition, in the long run firms will *most likely* earn:
- A normal profits.
 - B positive economic profits.
 - C negative economic profits.

The following information relates to Questions 36 and 37

The manager of a small manufacturing firm gathers the following information about the firm's labor utilization and production:

Exhibit 2

Labor (L)	Total Product (TP)
0	0
1	150
2	320
3	510
4	660
5	800

- 36 Refer to the data in Exhibit 2. The number of workers resulting in the highest level of average product of labor is *closest* to:
- A 3.
 - B 4.
 - C 5.

- 37 Refer to the data in Exhibit 2. The marginal product of labor demonstrates increasing returns for the firm if the number of workers is *closest* to but not more than:
- A 2.
 - B 3.
 - C 4.

SOLUTIONS

- 1 C is correct. When the price elasticity of demand coefficient is -1 , demand is said to be unit elastic, or unitary elastic.
- 2 A is correct. Inserting the price of \$35 into the demand function, quantity demanded is calculated as

$$Q_{hm}^d = 400 - 5(35) = 225$$

At a price of \$35 per health club membership, the elasticity of demand is

$$\text{Price elasticity of demand} = \left(\Delta Q_{hm}^d / \Delta P_{hm} \right) \times \left(P_{hm} / Q_{hm}^d \right)$$

$$\text{Price elasticity of demand} = -5 \times (35/225) = -0.778$$

- 3 B is correct. Price elasticity of demand is likely to be greater for items that are seen as optional or discretionary.
- 4 B is correct. Income elasticity is a measure of how sensitive quantity demanded is to a change in income. If the income elasticity of demand for the product is -0.6 , whenever income increases by 1%, the quantity demanded of the product at each price decreases by 0.6%. Consequently, as income rises, consumers will purchase less of the product.
- 5 B is correct. The cross-price elasticity of demand measures the responsiveness of the demand for onions in response to a change in the price of tomatoes. From the demand function equation:

$$Q_o^d = 3 - 0.05P_o + 0.009I - 0.16P_t$$

$$Q_o^d = 3 - 0.05(1.25) + 0.009(2,500) - 0.16(3.75) = 24.8375$$

At a price of onions of \$1.25 and a price of tomatoes of \$3.75, the cross-price elasticity of demand is calculated as follows:

$$\text{Cross-price elasticity of demand} = \left(\Delta Q_o^d / \Delta P_t \right) \times \left(P_t / Q_o^d \right)$$

$$\text{Cross-price elasticity of demand} = -0.16 \times (3.75/24.8375) = -0.0242$$

- 6 B is correct. The demand curve shows quantity demanded as a function of own price only.
- 7 A is correct. The situation described is one of excess demand because, in order for markets to clear at the given level of quantity supplied, the company would need to raise prices.
- 8 B is correct. From the demand function:

Solve for Q_{pr}^d :

$$\Delta Q_{pr}^d / \Delta P_{pr} = -3.1 \text{ (the coefficient in front of own price)}$$

$$\begin{aligned} Q_{pr}^d &= 84 - 3.1P_{pr} + 0.8I + 0.9P_{pu} \\ &= 84 - 3.1(38) + 0.8(100) + 0.9(18) \\ &= 62.4 \end{aligned}$$

At $P_{pr} = 38$,

$$\begin{aligned}\text{price elasticity of demand} &= \left(\Delta Q_{pr}^d / \Delta P_{pr}\right) \left(P_{pr} / Q_{pr}^d\right) \\ &= (-3.1)(38/62.4) \\ &= -1.9\end{aligned}$$

- 9 C is correct. From the demand function:

Solve for Q_{pr}^d :

$$\Delta Q_{pr}^d / \Delta I = 0.8 \text{ (coefficient in front of the income variable)}$$

$$\begin{aligned}Q_{pr}^d &= 84 - 3.1P_{pr} + 0.8I + 0.9P_{pu} \\ &= 84 - 3.1(38) + 0.8(100) + 0.9(18) \\ &= 62.4\end{aligned}$$

At $I = 100$,

$$\begin{aligned}\text{the income elasticity of demand} &= \left(\Delta Q_{pr}^d / \Delta I\right) \left(I / Q_{pr}^d\right) \\ &= (0.8)(100/62.4) \\ &= 1.3\end{aligned}$$

- 10 A is correct. From the demand function:

Solve for Q_{pr}^d :

$$\Delta Q_{pr}^d / \Delta P_{pu} = 0.9 \text{ (the coefficient in front of } P_{pu}\text{)}$$

$$\begin{aligned}Q_{pr}^d &= 84 - 3.1P_{pr} + 0.8I + 0.9P_{pu} \\ &= 84 - 3.1(38) + 0.8(100) + 0.9(18) \\ &= 62.4\end{aligned}$$

At $P = 38$, and $P_{pu} = 18$,

$$\begin{aligned}\text{the cross-price elasticity of demand} &= \left(\Delta Q_{pr}^d / \Delta P_{pu}\right) \left(P_{pu} / Q_{pr}^d\right) \\ &= (0.9)(18/62.4) \\ &= 0.3\end{aligned}$$

- 11 C is correct. With complements, consumption goes up or down together. With a negative cross-price elasticity, as the price of one good goes up, the demand for both falls.
- 12 A is correct. In the case of normal goods, the income and substitution effects are reinforcing, leading to an increase in the amount purchased after a drop in price.
- 13 A is correct. The income effect overwhelms the substitution effect such that an increase in the price of the good results in greater demand for the good, resulting in a positively sloped demand curve.
- 14 A is correct. Normal profit is the level of accounting profit such that implicit opportunity costs are just covered; thus, it is equal to a level of accounting profit such that economic profit is zero.
- 15 A is correct. The law of diminishing returns occurs in the short run when additional output falls as more and more labor is added to a fixed amount of capital. When a factory is operating at full capacity, adding additional employees will

not increase production because the physical plant is already 100% employed. More labor hours will add to costs without adding to output, thus resulting in diminishing marginal returns.

- 16** A is correct. Diminishing marginal returns occur when the marginal product of a resource decreases as additional units of that input are employed. Marginal product, which is the additional output resulting from using one more unit of input, is presented below.

Machine Hours	Total Product	Average Product	Marginal Product
1	3	3.00	3
2	8	4.00	5
3	14	4.67	6
4	19	4.75	5
5	21	4.20	2

The marginal product of the third machine hour is 6 and declines thereafter. Consequently, diminishing marginal returns are first evident beyond three machine hours.

- 17** A is correct. Marginal revenue per unit is defined as the change in total revenue divided by the change in quantity sold. $MR = \Delta TR \div \Delta Q$. In this case, change in total revenue equals CHF100,000, and change in total units sold equals 50. $CHF100,000 \div 50 = CHF2,000$.
- 18** A is correct. In a perfectly competitive market, an increase in supply by a single firm will not affect price. Therefore, an increase in units sold by the firm will be matched proportionately by an increase in revenue.
- 19** A is correct. Marginal revenue per unit is defined as the change in total revenues divided by the change in quantity sold. $MR = \Delta TR \div \Delta Q$. In this case, change in total revenue per day equals €3,000 $[(450 \times €40) - (300 \times €50)]$, and change in units sold equals 150 $(450 - 300)$. $€3,000 \div 150 = €20$.
- 20** A is correct. Under perfect competition, a firm is a price taker at any quantity supplied to the market, and $AR = MR = \text{Price}$.
- 21** A is correct. Average fixed cost is equal to total fixed cost divided by quantity produced: $AFC = TFC/Q = 200/4 = 50$.
- 22** C is correct. Marginal cost is equal to the change in total cost divided by the change in quantity produced. $MC = \Delta TC/\Delta Q = 80/1 = 80$.
- 23** C is correct. Average total cost is equal to total cost divided by quantity produced. At 5 units produced the average total cost is 104. $ATC = TC/Q = 520/5 = 104$.
- 24** A is correct. Under perfect competition, price equals marginal revenue. A firm breaks even when marginal revenue equals average total cost.
- 25** C is correct. The firm should shut down production when marginal revenue is less than average variable cost.
- 26** A is correct. A company is said to break even if its total revenue is equal to its total cost. Under conditions of perfect competition, a company will break even when market price is equal to the minimum point of the average total cost curve.
- 27** B is correct. A company will shut down production in the short run when total revenue is below total variable costs.

- 28 C is correct. A company will stay in the market in the long term if total revenue is equal to or greater than total cost. Because total costs are \$7 million (\$4 million variable costs and \$3 million fixed costs), the company will stay in the market in the long term if total revenue equals at least \$7 million.
- 29 B is correct. When total revenue is enough to cover variable costs but not total fixed costs in full, the firm can survive in the short run but would be unable to maintain financial solvency in the long run.
- 30 A is correct. The quantity at which average total cost is minimized does not necessarily correspond to a profit maximum.
- 31 C is correct. Output increases in the same proportion as input increases occur at constant returns to scale.
- 32 B is correct. Economies of scale occur if, as the firm increases output, cost per unit of production falls. Graphically, this definition translates into a long-run average cost curve (LRAC) with a negative slope.
- 33 B is correct. As the firm increases output, diseconomies of scale and higher average total costs can result when there is overlap and duplication of business functions and product lines.
- 34 C is correct. The firm operating at greater than long-run efficient scale is subject to diseconomies of scale. It should plan to decrease its level of production.
- 35 A is correct. Competition should drive prices down to long-run marginal cost, resulting in only normal profits being earned.
- 36 A is correct. Three workers produce the highest average product equal to 170.
 $AP = 510/3 = 170$.
- 37 B is correct. Marginal product is equal to the change in total product divided by the change in labor. The increase in MP from 2 to 3 workers is 190: $MP = \Delta TP/\Delta L = (510 - 320)/(3 - 2) = 190/1 = 190$.

READING

15

The Firm and Market Structures

by Richard Fritz, PhD, and Michele Gambera, PhD, CFA

Richard Fritz, PhD, is at the School of Economics at Georgia Institute of Technology (USA).

Michele Gambera, PhD, CFA, is at UBS Asset Management (Americas), Inc. (USA).

LEARNING OUTCOMES

<i>Mastery</i>	<i>The candidate should be able to:</i>
<input type="checkbox"/>	a. describe characteristics of perfect competition, monopolistic competition, oligopoly, and pure monopoly;
<input type="checkbox"/>	b. explain relationships between price, marginal revenue, marginal cost, economic profit, and the elasticity of demand under each market structure;
<input type="checkbox"/>	c. describe a firm's supply function under each market structure;
<input type="checkbox"/>	d. describe and determine the optimal price and output for firms under each market structure;
<input type="checkbox"/>	e. explain factors affecting long-run equilibrium under each market structure;
<input type="checkbox"/>	f. describe pricing strategy under each market structure;
<input type="checkbox"/>	g. describe the use and limitations of concentration measures in identifying market structure;
<input type="checkbox"/>	h. identify the type of market structure within which a firm operates.

INTRODUCTION

1

The purpose of this reading is to build an understanding of the importance of market structure. As different market structures result in different sets of choices facing a firm's decision makers, an understanding of market structure is a powerful tool in analyzing issues such as a firm's pricing of its products and, more broadly, its potential to increase profitability. In the long run, a firm's profitability will be determined by the forces associated with the market structure within which it operates. In a highly competitive market, long-run profits will be driven down by the forces of competition. In less competitive markets, large profits are possible even in the long run; in

the short run, any outcome is possible. Therefore, understanding the forces behind the market structure will aid the financial analyst in determining firms' short- and long-term prospects.

Section 2 introduces the analysis of market structures. The section addresses questions such as: What determines the degree of competition associated with each market structure? Given the degree of competition associated with each market structure, what decisions are left to the management team developing corporate strategy? How does a chosen pricing and output strategy evolve into specific decisions that affect the profitability of the firm? The answers to these questions are related to the forces of the market structure within which the firm operates.

Sections 3, 4, 5, and 6 analyze demand, supply, optimal price and output, and factors affecting long-run equilibrium for perfect competition, monopolistic competition, oligopoly, and pure monopoly, respectively.

Section 7 reviews techniques for identifying the various forms of market structure. For example, there are accepted measures of market concentration that are used by regulators of financial institutions to judge whether or not a planned merger or acquisition will harm the competitive nature of regional banking markets. Financial analysts should be able to identify the type of market structure a firm is operating within. Each different structure implies a different long-run sustainability of profits. A summary and practice problems conclude the reading.

2

ANALYSIS OF MARKET STRUCTURES

Traditionally, economists classify a market into one of four structures: perfect competition, monopolistic competition, oligopoly, and monopoly. Section 2.1 explains that four-way classification in more detail. Section 2.2 completes the introduction by providing and explaining the major points to evaluate in determining the structure to which a market belongs.

2.1 Economists' Four Types of Structure

Economists define a market as a group of buyers and sellers that are aware of each other and are able to agree on a price for the exchange of goods and services. While the internet has extended a number of markets worldwide, certain markets are limited by geographic boundaries. For example, the internet search engine Google operates in a worldwide market. In contrast, the market for premixed cement is limited to the area within which a truck can deliver the mushy mix from the plant to a construction site before the compound becomes useless. Thomas L. Friedman's international best seller *The World Is Flat*¹ challenges the concept of the geographic limitations of the market. If the service being provided by the seller can be digitized, its market expands worldwide. For example, a technician can scan your injury in a clinic in Switzerland. That radiographic image can be digitized and sent to a radiologist in India to be read. As a customer (i.e., patient), you may never know that part of the medical service provided to you was the result of a worldwide market.

Some markets are highly concentrated, with the majority of total sales coming from a small number of firms. For example, in the market for small consumer batteries, three firms controlled 87 percent of the US market (Duracell 43 percent, Energizer 33 percent, and Rayovac 11 percent) as of 2005. Other markets are very fragmented, such as automobile repairs, where small independent shops often dominate and large

¹ Friedman (2006).

chains may or may not exist. New products can lead to market concentration: It is estimated that the Apple iPod had a world market share of over 70 percent among MP3 players in 2009.

THE IMPORTANCE OF MARKET STRUCTURE

Consider the evolution of television broadcasting. As the market environment for television broadcasting evolved, the market structure changed, resulting in a new set of challenges and choices. In the early days, there was only one choice: the “free” analog channels that were broadcast over the airwaves. In most countries, there was only one channel, owned and run by the government. In the United States, some of the more populated markets were able to receive more channels because local channels were set up to cover a market with more potential viewers. By the 1970s, new technologies made it possible to broadcast by way of cable connectivity and the choices offered to consumers began to expand rapidly. Cable television challenged the “free” broadcast channels by offering more choice and a better-quality picture. The innovation was expensive for consumers and profitable for the cable companies. By the 1990s, a new alternative began to challenge the existing broadcast and cable systems: satellite television. Satellite providers offered a further expanded set of choices, albeit at a higher price than the free broadcast and cable alternatives. In the early 2000s, satellite television providers lowered their pricing to compete directly with the cable providers. Today, cable program providers, satellite television providers, and terrestrial digital broadcasters that offer premium and pay-per-view channels compete for customers who are increasingly finding content on the internet.

This is a simple illustration of the importance of market structure. As the market for television broadcasting became increasingly competitive, managers had to make decisions regarding product packaging, pricing, advertising, and marketing in order to survive in the changing environment.

Market structure can be broken down into four distinct categories: perfect competition, monopolistic competition, oligopoly, and monopoly.

We start with the most competitive environment, **perfect competition**. Unlike some economic concepts, perfect competition is not merely an ideal based on assumptions. Perfect competition is a reality—for example, in several commodities markets, where sellers and buyers have a strictly homogeneous product and no single producer is large enough to influence market prices. Perfect competition’s characteristics are well recognized and its long-run outcome unavoidable. Profits under the conditions of perfect competition are driven to the required rate of return paid by the entrepreneur to borrow capital from investors (so-called normal profit or rental cost of capital). This does not mean that all perfectly competitive industries are doomed to extinction by a lack of profits. On the contrary, millions of businesses that do very well are living under the pressures of perfect competition.

Monopolistic competition is also highly competitive; however, it is considered a form of imperfect competition. Two economists, Edward H. Chamberlin (US) and Joan Robinson (UK), identified this hybrid market and came up with the term because there are strong elements of competition in this market structure and also some monopoly-like conditions. The competitive characteristic is a notably large number of firms, while the monopoly aspect is the result of product differentiation. That is, if the seller can convince consumers that its product is uniquely different from other, similar products, then the seller can exercise some degree of pricing power over the market. A good example is the brand loyalty associated with soft drinks such as Coca-Cola. Many of Coca-Cola’s customers believe that their beverages are truly different from and better than all other soft drinks. The same is true for fashion creations and cosmetics.

The **oligopoly** market structure is based on a relatively small number of firms supplying the market. The small number of firms in the market means that each firm must consider what retaliatory strategies the other firms will pursue when prices and production levels change. Consider the pricing behavior of commercial airline companies. Pricing strategies and route scheduling are based on the expected reaction of the other carriers in similar markets. For any given route—say, from Paris, France, to Chennai, India—only a few carriers are in competition. If one of the carriers changes its pricing package, others will likely retaliate. Understanding the market structure of oligopoly markets can help in identifying a logical pattern of strategic price changes for the competing firms.

Finally, the least competitive market structure is **monopoly**. In pure monopoly markets, there are no other good substitutes for the given product or service. There is a single seller, which, if allowed to operate without constraint, exercises considerable power over pricing and output decisions. In most market-based economies around the globe, pure monopolies are regulated by a governmental authority. The most common example of a regulated monopoly is the local electrical power provider. In most cases, the monopoly power provider is allowed to earn a normal return on its investment and prices are set by the regulatory authority to allow that return.

2.2 Factors That Determine Market Structure

Five factors determine market structure:

- 1 The number and relative size of firms supplying the product;
- 2 The degree of product differentiation;
- 3 The power of the seller over pricing decisions;
- 4 The relative strength of the barriers to market entry and exit; and
- 5 The degree of non-price competition.

The number and relative size of firms in a market influence market structure. If there are many firms, the degree of competition increases. With fewer firms supplying a good or service, consumers are limited in their market choices. One extreme case is the monopoly market structure, with only one firm supplying a unique good or service. Another extreme is perfect competition, with many firms supplying a similar product. Finally, an example of relative size is the automobile industry, in which a small number of large international producers (e.g., Ford and Toyota) are the leaders in the global market, and a number of small companies either have market power because they are niche players (e.g., Ferrari) or have little market power because of their narrow range of models or limited geographical presence (e.g., Škoda).

In the case of monopolistic competition, there are many firms providing products to the market, as with perfect competition. However, one firm's product is differentiated in some way that makes it appear better than similar products from other firms. If a firm is successful in differentiating its product, the differentiation will provide pricing leverage. The more dissimilar the product appears, the more the market will resemble the monopoly market structure. A firm can differentiate its product through aggressive advertising campaigns; frequent styling changes; the linking of its product with other, complementary products; or a host of other methods.

When the market dictates the price based on aggregate supply and demand conditions, the individual firm has no control over pricing. The typical hog farmer in Nebraska and the milk producer in Bavaria are **price takers**. That is, they must accept whatever price the market dictates. This is the case under the market structure of perfect competition. In the case of monopolistic competition, the success of product differentiation determines the degree with which the firm can influence price. In the case of oligopoly, there are so few firms in the market that price control becomes

possible. However, the small number of firms in an oligopoly market invites complex pricing strategies. Collusion, price leadership by dominant firms, and other pricing strategies can result.

The degree to which one market structure can evolve into another and the difference between potential short-run outcomes and long-run equilibrium conditions depend on the strength of the barriers to entry and the possibility that firms fail to recoup their original costs or lose money for an extended period of time and are therefore forced to exit the market. Barriers to entry can result from very large capital investment requirements, as in the case of petroleum refining. Barriers may also result from patents, as in the case of some electronic products and drug formulas. Another entry consideration is the possibility of high exit costs. For example, plants that are specific to a special line of products, such as aluminum smelting plants, are non-redeployable, and exit costs would be high without a liquid market for the firm's assets. High exit costs deter entry and are therefore also considered barriers to entry. In the case of farming, the barriers to entry are low. Production of corn, soybeans, wheat, tomatoes, and other produce is an easy process to replicate; therefore, those are highly competitive markets.

Non-price competition dominates those market structures where product differentiation is critical. Therefore, monopolistic competition relies on competitive strategies that may not include pricing changes. An example of non-price competition is product differentiation through marketing. In other circumstances, non-price competition may occur because the few firms in the market feel dependent on each other. Each firm fears retaliatory price changes that would reduce total revenue for all of the firms in the market. Because oligopoly industries have so few firms, each firm feels dependent on the pricing strategies of the others. Therefore, non-price competition becomes a dominant strategy.

Exhibit 1 Characteristics of Market Structure

Market Structure	Number of Sellers	Degree of Product Differentiation	Barriers to Entry	Pricing Power of Firm	Non-price Competition
Perfect competition	Many	Homogeneous/ Standardized	Very Low	None	None
Monopolistic competition	Many	Differentiated	Low	Some	Advertising and Product Differentiation
Oligopoly	Few	Homogeneous/ Standardized	High	Some or Considerable	Advertising and Product Differentiation
Monopoly	One	Unique Product	Very High	Considerable	Advertising

From the perspective of the owners of the firm, the most desirable market structure is that with the most control over price, because this control can lead to large profits. Monopoly and oligopoly markets offer the greatest potential control over price; monopolistic competition offers less control. Firms operating under perfectly competitive market conditions have no control over price. From the consumers' perspective, the most desirable market structure is that with the greatest degree of competition, because prices are generally lower. Thus, consumers would prefer as many goods and services as possible to be offered in competitive markets.

As often happens in economics, there is a trade-off. While perfect competition gives the largest quantity of a good at the lowest price, other market forms may spur more innovation. Specifically, there may be high costs in researching a new product, and firms will incur such costs only if they expect to earn an attractive return on their research investment. This is the case often made for medical innovations, for example—the cost of clinical trials and experiments to create new medicines would bankrupt perfectly competitive firms but may be acceptable in an oligopoly market structure. Therefore, consumers can benefit from less-than-perfectly-competitive markets.

PORTER'S FIVE FORCES AND MARKET STRUCTURE

A financial analyst aiming to establish market conditions and consequent profitability of incumbent firms should start with the questions framed by Exhibit 1: How many sellers are there? Is the product differentiated? and so on. Moreover, in the case of monopolies and quasi monopolies, the analyst should evaluate the legislative and regulatory framework: Can the company set prices freely, or are there governmental controls? Finally, the analyst should consider the threat of competition from potential entrants.

This analysis is often summarized by students of corporate strategy as “Porter’s five forces,” named after Harvard Business School professor Michael E. Porter. His book, *Competitive Strategy*, presented a systematic analysis of the practice of market strategy. Porter (2008) identified the five forces as:

- Threat of entry;
- Power of suppliers;
- Power of buyers (customers);
- Threat of substitutes; and
- Rivalry among existing competitors.

It is easy to note the parallels between four of these five forces and the columns in Exhibit 1. The only “orphan” is the power of suppliers, which is not at the core of the theoretical economic analysis of competition, but which has substantial weight in the practical analysis of competition and profitability.

Some stock analysts (e.g., Dorsey 2004) use the term “economic moat” to suggest that there are factors protecting the profitability of a firm that are similar to the moats (ditches full of water) that used to protect some medieval castles. A deep moat means that there is little or no threat of entry by invaders, i.e. competitors. It also means that customers are locked in because of high switching costs.

3

PERFECT COMPETITION

Perfect competition is characterized by the five conditions presented in Exhibit 1, above:

- 1 There are a large number of potential buyers and sellers.
- 2 The products offered by the sellers are virtually identical.
- 3 There are few or easily surmountable barriers to entry and exit.
- 4 Sellers have no market-pricing power.
- 5 Non-price competition is absent.

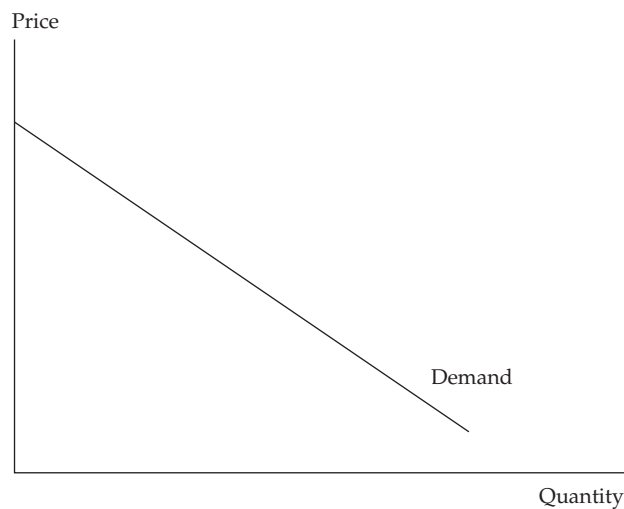
While few markets achieve the distinction of being perfectly competitive, it is useful to establish the outcome associated with this market structure as a benchmark against which other market structures can be compared. The most typical example of perfect competition is found in certain aspects of the agriculture industry, such as the large

number of farmers growing corn for animal feed. Corn is a primary source of food for pork, beef, and poultry production. A bushel of corn from Farmer Brown is virtually identical to a bushel of corn from Farmer Lopez. If a hog farmer needs corn to feed his hogs, it does not matter whether the corn comes from Farmer Brown or Farmer Lopez. Furthermore, the aggregate corn market is well defined, with active futures and spot markets. Information about the corn market is easy and inexpensive to access, and there is no way to differentiate the product, such as by advertising. Agribusiness is capital intensive, but where arable land is relatively abundant and water is available, the barriers to entry (e.g., capital and expertise) for corn production are relatively low.

3.1 Demand Analysis in Perfectly Competitive Markets

The price of a homogeneous product sold in a competitive market is determined by the demand and supply in that market. Economists usually represent demand and supply in a market through demand and supply curves in a two-axis plane, where quantity and price are shown on the x -axis and y -axis, respectively. Economists believe that demand functions have negative slopes, as shown in Exhibit 2. That is, at high prices, less is demanded. For normal goods and services, as the price declines, the quantity demanded increases. This concept is based on two effects: the income effect and the substitution effect. The income effect results from the increased purchasing power the consumer has when prices fall. With lower prices, the consumer can afford to purchase more of the product. The substitution effect comes from the increasing attractiveness of the lower-priced product. If soybean prices are unchanged and corn prices decrease, hog farmers will substitute corn for soybeans as feed for their animals.

Exhibit 2 Market Demand in Perfect Competition



Assume the demand for this product can be specified as

$$Q_D = 50 - 2P$$

where Q_D is the quantity of demand and P is the product's price. This demand function can be rearranged in terms of price:

$$P = 25 - 0.5Q_D$$

In this form, total revenue (TR) is equal to price times quantity, or $P \times Q_D$. Thus,

$$TR = PQ_D = 25Q_D - 0.5Q_D^2$$

Average revenue (AR) can be found by dividing TR by Q_D . Therefore,

$$AR = TR/Q_D = (25Q_D - 0.5Q_D^2)/Q_D = 25 - 0.5Q_D$$

Note that the AR function is identical to the market demand function. The assumption here is that the relationship between price and quantity demanded is linear. Clearly, that may not be the case in the real market. Another simplifying assumption made is that the price of the product is the only determinant of demand. Again, that is not likely in the real market. For example, economic theory suggests that consumer income is another important factor in determining demand. The prices of related goods and services, such as substitutes and complements, are also considered factors affecting demand for a particular product.

Marginal revenue (MR) is the change in total revenue per extra increment sold when the quantity sold changes by a small increment, ΔQ_D . Substituting $(Q_D + \Delta Q_D)$ into the total revenue (TR) equation, marginal revenue can be expressed as:

$$\begin{aligned} MR &= \frac{\Delta TR}{\Delta Q_D} = \frac{[25(Q_D + \Delta Q_D) - 0.5(Q_D^2 + 2Q_D\Delta Q_D + \Delta Q_D^2)] - [25Q_D - 0.5Q_D^2]}{\Delta Q_D} \\ &= \frac{25\Delta Q_D - Q_D\Delta Q_D - 0.5\Delta Q_D^2}{\Delta Q_D} = 25 - Q_D - 0.5\Delta Q_D \end{aligned}$$

For example, suppose $Q_D = 5$ and $\Delta Q_D = 1$, then total revenue increases from 112.50 [= $25(5) - 0.5(5^2)$] to 132 [= $25(6) - 0.5(6^2)$], and marginal revenue is $19.5 = (132 - 112.5)/1$. Note that marginal revenue is equal to $(25 - Q_D - 0.5\Delta Q_D)$. Now suppose that ΔQ_D is much smaller, for example $\Delta Q_D = 0.1$. In this case, total revenue increases to 114.495 [= $25(5.1) - 0.5(5.1^2)$], and marginal revenue is $1.995/0.1 = 19.95$. It is straightforward to confirm that as ΔQ_D gets smaller marginal revenue gets closer to $20 = 25 - Q_D$. So, for very small changes in the quantity sold we can write marginal revenue as²

$$MR = 25 - Q_D$$

Although we have introduced the concept of marginal revenue in the context of the demand curve for the market as a whole, its usefulness derives from its role in the output and pricing decisions of individual firms. As we will see, marginal revenue and an analogous concept, marginal cost, are critical in determining firms' profit-maximizing strategies.

3.1.1 Elasticity of Demand

Consumers respond differently to changes in the price of different kinds of products and services. The quantity demanded for some products is very price sensitive, while for other products, price changes result in little change in the quantity demanded. Economists refer to the relationship between changes in price and changes in the quantity demanded as the price elasticity of demand. Therefore, the demand for the former group of products—those that are very price sensitive—is said to have high price elasticity, whereas the demand for the latter group is said to have low price elasticity. Understanding the sensitivity of demand changes to changes in price is critical to understanding market structures.

Price elasticity of demand measures the percentage change in the quantity demanded given a percentage change in the price of a given product. Because the relationship of demand to price is negative, the price elasticity of demand would be negative. *Many economists, however, present the price elasticity as an absolute value,*

² Readers who are familiar with calculus will recognize this as the derivative of total revenue with respect to the quantity sold.

so that price elasticity has a positive sign. We will follow that convention. Higher price elasticity indicates that consumers are very responsive to changes in price. Lower values for price elasticity imply that consumers are not very responsive to price changes. Price elasticity can be measured with the following relationship:

$$\varepsilon_P = -(\% \text{ change in } Q_D) \div (\% \text{ change in } P)$$

where ε_P is price elasticity of demand, Q_D is the quantity demanded, and P is the product's price.

Price elasticity of demand falls into three categories. When demand is very responsive to price change, it is identified as *elastic*. When demand is not responsive to price change, it is identified as *inelastic*. When the percentage change in quantity demanded is exactly the same as the percentage change in price, the demand is called *unitary elastic*.

$\varepsilon_P > 1$ Demand is elastic

$\varepsilon_P = 1$ Demand is unitary elastic

$\varepsilon_P < 1$ Demand is inelastic

Price elasticity of demand depends on several factors. *Price elasticity will be higher if there are many close substitutes for the product.* If a product has many good alternatives, consumers will be more sensitive to price changes. For example, carbonated beverages ("soft drinks") have many close substitutes. It takes strong brand loyalty to keep customer demand high in the soft drink market when one brand's price is strategically lowered; the price elasticity of demand for Coca-Cola has been estimated to be 3.8. For products with numerous close substitutes, demand is highly elastic. For products with few close substitutes, demand is lower in price elasticity and would be considered price inelastic. The demand for first-class airline tickets is often seen as inelastic because only very wealthy people are expected to buy them; the demand for economy-class tickets is elastic because the typical consumer for this product is more budget-conscious. Consumers do not consider economy-class airline tickets a close substitute for first-class accommodations, particularly on long flights.

The airline ticket example introduces another determinant of price elasticity of demand. *The greater the share of the consumer's budget spent on the item, the higher the price elasticity of demand.* Expensive items, such as durable goods (e.g., refrigerators and televisions), tend to have higher elasticity measures, while less expensive items, such as potatoes and salt, have lower elasticity values. Consumers will not change their normal salt consumption if the price of salt decreases by 10 percent. Instead, they will buy their next package of salt when they run out, with very little regard to the price change.

The airline ticket also makes a good example for the final factor determining price elasticity. *Price elasticity of demand also depends on the length of time within which the demand schedule is being considered.* Holiday airline travel is highly price elastic. Consumers shop vigorously for vacation flights because they have time to plan their holiday. Business airline travelers typically have less flexibility in determining their schedules. If your business requires a face-to-face meeting with a client, then the price of the ticket is somewhat irrelevant. If gasoline prices increase, there is very little you can do in the short run but pay the higher price. However, evidence of commuter choices indicates that many use alternative transportation methods after the gasoline price spikes. In the long run, higher gasoline prices will lead consumers to change their modes of transportation, trading in less efficient vehicles for automobiles with higher gas mileage or public transit options where available.

There are two extreme cases of price elasticity of demand. One extreme is the **horizontal demand schedule**. This term implies that at a given price, the response in the quantity demanded is infinite. *This is the demand schedule faced by a perfectly competitive firm, because it is a price taker*, as in the case of a corn farmer. If the corn

farmer tried to charge a higher price than the market price, nobody would buy her product. On the other hand, the farmer has no incentive to sell at a lower price because she can sell all she can produce at the market price. In a perfectly competitive market the quantity supplied by an individual firm has a negligible effect on the market price. In the case of *perfect price elasticity*, the measure is $\epsilon_P = \infty$.

The other extreme is the **vertical demand schedule**. The vertical demand schedule implies that some fixed quantity is demanded, regardless of price. An example of such demand is the diabetic consumer with the need for a certain amount of insulin. If the price of insulin goes up, the patient will not consume less of it. The amount desired is set by the patient's medical condition. The measure for *perfect price inelasticity* is $\epsilon_P = 0$.

The nature of the elasticity calculation and consumer behavior in the marketplace imply that for virtually any product (excluding cases of perfect elasticity and perfect inelasticity), demand is more elastic at higher prices and less elastic (more inelastic) at lower prices. For example, at current low prices, the demand for table salt is very inelastic. However, if table salt increased in price to hundreds of dollars per ounce, consumers would become more responsive to its price changes. Exhibit 3 reports several empirical estimates of price elasticity of demand.

Exhibit 3 Empirical Price Elasticities³

Commodity (Good/Service)	Price Elasticity of Market Demand
Alcoholic beverages consumed at home	
Beer	0.84
Wine	0.55
Liquor	0.50
Coffee	
Regular	0.16
Instant	0.36
Credit charges on bank cards	2.44
Furniture	3.04
Glassware/china	1.20
International air transportation United States/Europe	1.20
Shoes	0.73
Soybean meal	1.65
Tomatoes	2.22

3.1.2 Other Factors Affecting Demand

There are two other important forces that influence shifts in consumer demand. One influential factor is consumer income and the other is the price of a related product. For normal goods, as consumer income increases, the demand increases. The degree to which consumers respond to higher incomes by increasing their demand for goods and services is referred to as income elasticity of demand. **Income elasticity of demand**

³ Various sources, as noted in McGuigan, Moyer, and Harris (2008), p. 95. These are the elasticities with respect to the product's own price; by convention, they are shown here as positive numbers.

measures the responsiveness of demand to changes in income. The calculation is similar to that of price elasticity, with the percentage change in income replacing the percentage change in price. Note the new calculation below:

$$\varepsilon_Y = (\% \text{ change in } Q_D) \div (\% \text{ change in } Y)$$

where ε_Y is income elasticity of demand, Q_D is the quantity demanded, and Y is consumer income. For normal goods, the measure ε_Y will be a positive value. That is, as consumers' income rises, more of the product is demanded. For products that are considered luxury items, the measure of income elasticity will be greater than one. There are other goods and services that are considered inferior products. For inferior products, as consumer income rises, less of the product is demanded. Inferior products will have negative values for income elasticity. For example, a person on a small income may watch television shows, but if this person had more income, she would prefer going to live concerts and theater performances; in this example, television shows would be the inferior good.

As a technical issue, the difference between price elasticity of demand and income elasticity of demand is that the demand adjustment for price elasticity represents a movement *along the demand schedule* because the demand schedule represents combinations of price and quantity. The demand adjustment for income elasticity represents a *shift in the demand curve* because with a higher income one can afford to purchase more of the good at any price. For a normal good, an increase in income would shift the demand schedule out to the right, away from the origin of the graph, and a decrease in income would shift the demand curve to the left, toward the origin.

The final factor influencing demand for a product is the change in price of a related product, such as a strong substitute or a complementary product. If a close competitor in the beverage market lowers its price, consumers will substitute that product for your product. Thus, your product's demand curve will shift to the left, toward the origin of the graph. **Cross-price elasticity of demand** is the responsiveness of the demand for product A that is associated with the change in price of product B :

$$\varepsilon_X = (\% \text{ change in } Q_{DA}) \div (\% \text{ change in } P_B)$$

where ε_X is cross-price elasticity of demand, Q_{DA} is the quantity demanded of product A , and P_B is the price of product B .

When the cross-price elasticity of demand between two products is *positive*, the two products are considered to be **substitutes**. For example, you may expect to have positive cross-price elasticity between honey and sugar. If the measure of cross-price elasticity is *negative*, the two products are referred to as **complements** of each other. For example, if the price of DVDs goes up, you would expect consumers to buy fewer DVD players. In this case, the cross-price elasticity of demand would have a negative value.

Reviewing cross-price elasticity values provides a simple test for the degree of competition in the market. The more numerous and the closer the substitutes for a product, the lower the pricing power of firms selling in that market; the fewer the substitutes for a product, the greater the pricing power. One interesting application was a US Supreme Court case involving the production and sale of cellophane by DuPont.⁴ The court noted that the relevant product market for DuPont's cellophane was the broader flexible packaging materials market. The Supreme Court found the cross-price elasticity of demand between cellophane and other flexible packaging materials to be sufficiently high and exonerated DuPont from a charge of monopolizing the market.

Because price elasticity of demand relates changes in price to changes in the quantity demanded, there must be a logical relationship between marginal revenue and price elasticity. Recall that marginal revenue equals the change in total revenue

⁴ *US v. DuPont*, 351 US 377 (1956), as noted in McGuigan, Moyer, and Harris (2008).

given a change in output or sales. An increase in total revenue results from a decrease in price that results in an increase in sales. In order for the increase in the quantity demanded to be sufficient to offset the decline in price, the percentage change in quantity demanded must be greater than the percentage decrease in price. The relationship between TR and price elasticity is as follows:

$\varepsilon_p > 1$ Demand is elastic	$\uparrow P \rightarrow TR \downarrow$ and $\downarrow P \rightarrow TR \uparrow$
$\varepsilon_p = 1$ Demand is unitary elastic	$\updownarrow P \rightarrow$ no change in TR
$0 < \varepsilon_p < 1$ Demand is inelastic	$\uparrow P \rightarrow TR \uparrow$ and $\downarrow P \rightarrow TR \downarrow$

Total revenue is maximized when marginal revenue is zero. The logic is that as long as marginal revenue is positive (i.e., each additional unit sold contributes to additional total revenue), total revenue will continue to increase. Only when marginal revenue becomes negative will total revenue begin to decline. Therefore, the percentage decrease in price is greater than the percentage increase in quantity demanded. The relationship between MR and price elasticity can be expressed as

$$MR = P[1 - (1/\varepsilon_p)]$$

An understanding of price elasticity of demand is an important strategic tool. It would be very useful to know in advance what would happen to your firm's total revenue if you increased the product's price. If you are operating in the inelastic portion of the demand curve, increasing the price of the product will increase total revenue. On the other hand, if you are operating in the elastic portion of the product's demand curve, increasing the price will decrease total revenue.

Decision makers can also use the relationship between marginal revenue and price elasticity of demand in other ways. For example, suppose you are a farmer considering planting soybeans or some other feed crop, such as corn. From Exhibit 3, we know that soybean meal's price elasticity of demand has been estimated to be 1.65. We also know that the current (August 2010) soybean meal price is \$330.14 per metric ton. Therefore, by solving the equation above, we find that the expected marginal revenue per metric ton of soybean meal is \$130.05. Soybeans may prove to be a profitable crop for the farmer. However, just a few years earlier, in August of 2006, the price of a metric ton of soybean meal was \$175.91. Given the crop's price elasticity of demand, the estimated marginal revenue per metric ton was then \$69.30. The lower price translates into lower marginal revenue and might induce the farmer to plant a more profitable feed crop instead.

How do business decision makers decide what level of output to bring to the market? To answer that question, the firm must understand its cost of resources, its production relations, and its supply function. Once the supply function is well defined and understood, it is combined with the demand analysis to determine the profit-maximizing levels of output.

3.1.3 Consumer Surplus: Value Minus Expenditure

To this point, we have discussed the fundamentals of supply and demand curves and explained a simple model of how a market can be expected to arrive at an equilibrium combination of price and quantity. While it is certainly necessary for the analyst to understand the basic workings of the market model, it is also crucial to have a sense of why we might care about the nature of the equilibrium. In this section we review the concept of **consumer surplus**, which is helpful in understanding and evaluating business pricing strategies. Consumer surplus is defined as the difference between the value that a consumer places on the units purchased and the amount of money that was required to pay for them. It is a measure of the value gained by the buyer from the transaction.

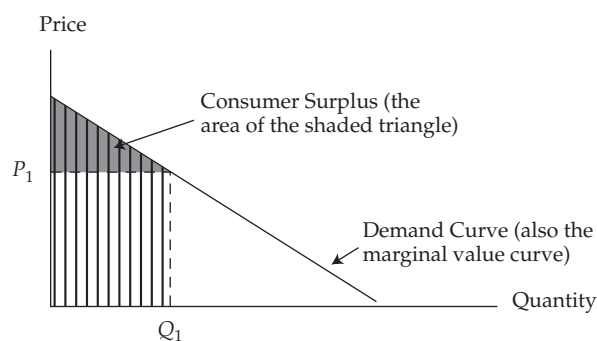
To get an intuitive feel for the concept of consumer surplus, consider the last thing you purchased. Whatever it was, think of how much you actually paid for it. Now contrast that price with the maximum amount you *would have been willing to pay* rather than go without the item altogether. If those two numbers are different, we say you received some consumer surplus from your purchase. You got a “bargain” because you would have been willing to pay more than you had to pay.

Earlier, we referred to the law of demand, which says that as price falls, consumers are willing to buy more of the good. This observation translates into a negatively sloped demand curve. Alternatively, we could say that the highest price that consumers are willing to pay for an additional unit declines as they consume more and more of a good. In this way, we can interpret their *willingness to pay* as a measure of how much they *value* each additional unit of the good. This is a very important point: In order to purchase a unit of some good, consumers must give up something else they value. So the price they are willing to pay for an additional unit of a good is a measure of how much they value that unit, in terms of the other goods they must sacrifice to consume it.

If demand curves are negatively sloped, it must be because the value of each additional unit of the good falls as more of the good is consumed. We shall explore this concept further below, but for now, it is enough to recognize that the demand curve can therefore be considered a **marginal value curve**, because it shows the highest price consumers would be willing to pay for each additional unit. In effect, the demand curve is the willingness of consumers to pay for each additional unit.

This interpretation of the demand curve allows us to measure the total value of consuming any given quantity of a good: It is the sum of all the marginal values of each unit consumed, up to and including the last unit. Graphically, this measure translates into the area under the consumer’s demand curve, up to and including the last unit consumed, as shown in Exhibit 4, where the consumer is choosing to buy Q_1 units of the good at a price of P_1 . The marginal value of the Q_1^{th} unit is clearly P_1 , because that is the highest price the consumer is willing to pay for that unit. Importantly, however, the marginal value of each unit *up to* the Q_1^{th} is greater than P_1 .

Exhibit 4 Consumer Surplus



Note: Consumer surplus is the area beneath the demand curve and above the price paid.

Because the consumer would have been willing to pay more for each of those units than she actually paid (P_1), we can say she received more value than the cost to her of buying them. This extra value is the buyer’s consumer surplus. The *total value* of quantity Q_1 to the buyer is the area of the vertically crosshatched trapezoid in Exhibit 4. The *total expenditure* is only the area of the rectangle with height P_1 and base Q_1 (bottom section). The total consumer surplus received from buying Q_1 units

at a level price of P_1 per unit is the difference between the area under the demand curve and the area of the rectangle $P_1 \times Q_1$. The resulting area is shown as the lightly shaded triangle (upper section).

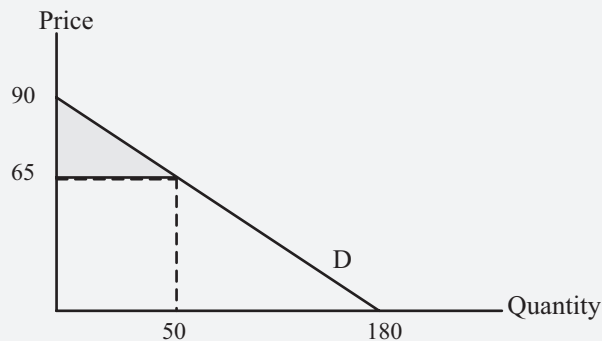
EXAMPLE 1

Consumer Surplus

A market demand function is given by the equation $Q_D = 180 - 2P$. Find the value of consumer surplus if price is equal to 65.

Solution:

First, input 65 into the demand function to find the quantity demanded at that price: $Q_D = 180 - 2(65) = 50$. Then, to make drawing the demand curve easier, invert the demand function by solving for P in terms of Q_D : $P = 90 - 0.5Q_D$. Note that the price intercept is 90 and the quantity intercept is 180. Draw the demand curve:

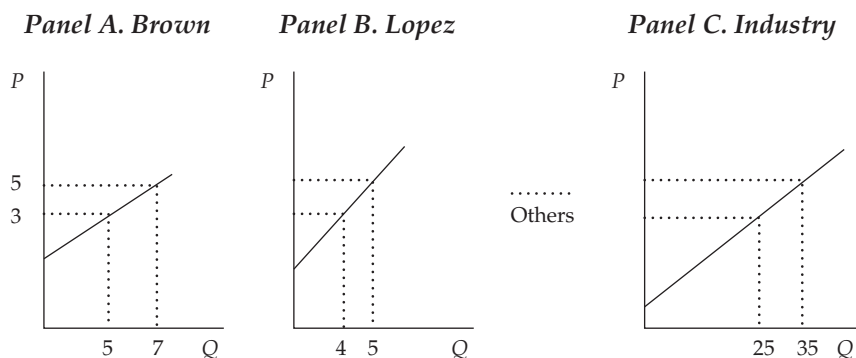


Find the area of the triangle above the price of 65 and below the demand curve, up to quantity 50: $\text{Area} = \frac{1}{2} (\text{Base})(\text{Height}) = \frac{1}{2} (50)(25) = 625$.

3.2 Supply Analysis in Perfectly Competitive Markets

Consider two corn farmers, Mr. Brown and Ms. Lopez. They both have land available to them to grow corn and can sell at one price, say 3 currency units per kilogram. They will try to produce as much corn as is profitable at that price. If the price is driven up to 5 currency units per kilogram by new consumers entering the market—say, ethanol producers—Mr. Brown and Ms. Lopez will try to produce more corn. To increase their output levels, they may have to use less productive land, increase irrigation, use more fertilizer, or all three. Their production costs will likely increase. They will both still try to produce as much corn as possible in order to profit at the new, higher price of 5 currency units per kilogram. Exhibit 5 illustrates this example. Note that the supply functions for the individual firms have positive slopes. Thus, as prices increase, the firms supply greater quantities of the product.

Exhibit 5 Firm and Market Supply in Perfect Competition



Notice that the market supply curve is the sum of the supply curves of the individual firms—Brown, Lopez, and others—that make up the market. Assume that the supply function for the market can be expressed as a linear relationship, as follows:

$$Q_S = 10 + 5P, \text{ or } P = -2 + 0.2Q_S,$$

where Q_S is the quantity supplied and P is the price of the product.

Before we analyze the optimal supply level for the firm, we need to point out that economic costs and profits differ from accounting costs and profits in a significant way. **Economic costs** include all the remuneration needed to keep the productive resource in its current employment or to acquire the resource for productive use.

In order to evaluate the remuneration needed to keep the resource in its current use and attract new resources for productive use, economists refer to the resource's **opportunity cost**. Opportunity cost is measured by determining the resource's next best opportunity. If a corn farmer could be employed in an alternative position in the labor market with an income of 50,000, then the opportunity cost of the farmer's labor is 50,000. Similarly, the farmer's land and capital could be leased to another farmer or sold and reinvested in another type of business. The return foregone by not doing so is an opportunity cost. In economic terms, total cost includes the full normal market return on all the resources utilized in the business. **Economic profit** is the difference between TR and total cost (TC). Economic profit differs from accounting profit because accounting profit does not include opportunity cost. Accounting profit includes only explicit payments to outside providers of resources (e.g. workers, vendors, lenders) and depreciation based on the historic cost of physical capital.

3.3 Optimal Price and Output in Perfectly Competitive Markets

Carrying forward our examples from Sections 3.1 and 3.2, we can now combine the market supply and demand functions to solve for the equilibrium price and quantity, where Q^* represents the equilibrium level of both supply and demand.

$$P = 25 - 0.5Q_D = -2 + 0.2Q_S = P$$

$$25 - 0.5Q_D = -2 + 0.2Q_S$$

$$27 = 0.7Q^*$$

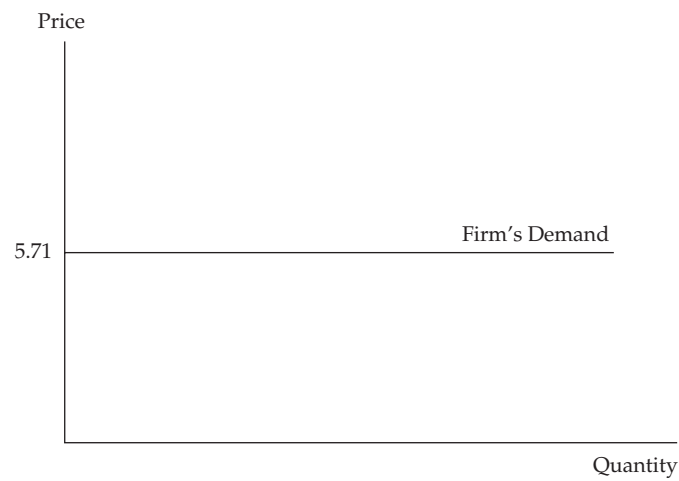
$$Q^* = 38.57$$

According to the market demand curve, the equilibrium price is

$$P = 25 - 0.5Q^* = 25 - 0.5(38.57) = 25 - 19.29 = 5.71.$$

With many firms in the market and total output in the market of almost 39 units of the product, the effective market price would be 5.71. This result becomes the demand function for each perfectly competitive firm. Even if a few individual producers could expand production, there would not be a noticeable change in the market equilibrium price. In fact, if any one firm could change the equilibrium market price, the market would not be in perfect competition. Therefore, the demand curve that each perfectly competitive firm faces is a horizontal line at the equilibrium price, as shown in Exhibit 6, even though the demand curve for the whole market is downward sloping.

Exhibit 6 Individual Firm's Demand in Perfect Competition



EXAMPLE 2

Demand Curves in Perfect Competition

Is it possible that the demand schedule faced by Firm A is horizontal while the demand schedule faced by the market as a whole is downward sloping?

- A** No, because Firm A can change its output based on demand changes.
- B** No, because a horizontal demand curve means that elasticity is infinite.
- C** Yes, because consumers can go to another firm if Firm A charges a higher price, and Firm A can sell all it produces at the market price.

Solution:

C is correct. Firm A cannot charge a higher price and has no incentive to sell at a price below the market price.

To analyze the firm's revenue position, recall that average revenue is equivalent to the firm's demand function. Therefore, the horizontal line that represents the firm's demand curve is the firm's AR schedule.

Marginal revenue is the incremental increase in total revenue associated with each additional unit sold. For every extra unit the firm sells, it receives 5.71. Thus, the firm's MR schedule is also the horizontal line at 5.71. TR is calculated by multiplying AR by

the quantity of products sold. Total revenue is the area under the AR line at the point where the firm produces the output. In the case of perfect competition, the following conditions hold for the individual firm:

$$\text{Price} = \text{Average revenue} = \text{Marginal revenue}$$

The next step is to develop the firm's cost functions. The firm knows that it can sell the entire product it produces at the market's equilibrium price. How much should it produce? That decision is determined by analysis of the firm's costs and revenues. A corn farmer uses three primary resources: land, labor, and capital. In economics, capital is any man-made aid to production. For the corn farmer, his or her capital includes the irrigation system, tractors, harvesters, trucks, grain bins, fertilizer, and so forth. The labor includes the farmer, perhaps members of the farmer's family, and hired labor. In the initial stages of production, only the farmer and the farmer's family are cultivating the land, with a significant investment in capital. They have a tractor, fertilizer, irrigation equipment, grain bins, seed, and a harvester. The investment in land and capital is relatively high compared with the labor input. In this production phase, the average cost of producing a bushel of corn is high. As they begin to expand by adding labor to the collection of expensive land and capital, the average cost of producing corn begins to decline—for example, because one tractor can be used more intensively to plow a larger amount of land. When the combination of land, labor, and capital approaches an efficient range, the average cost of producing a bushel of corn declines.

Given a certain level of technology, there is a limit to the increase in productivity. Eventually something begins to cause declining marginal productivity. That is, each additional unit of input produces a progressively smaller increase in output. This force is called the **law of diminishing returns**. This “law” helps define the shape of the firm's cost functions. Average cost and marginal cost will be U-shaped. Over the initial stages of output, average and marginal costs will decline. At some level of output, the law of diminishing returns will overtake the efficiencies in production and average and marginal costs will increase.

Average cost (AC) is Total cost (TC) divided by Output (Q). Therefore,

$$AC = TC/Q$$

Note that we have defined average cost (AC) in terms of total costs. Many authors refer to this as “average total cost” to distinguish it from a related concept, “average variable cost,” which omits fixed costs. In the remainder of this reading, *average cost should be understood to mean average total cost*.

Marginal cost (MC) is the change in TC associated with an incremental change in output:

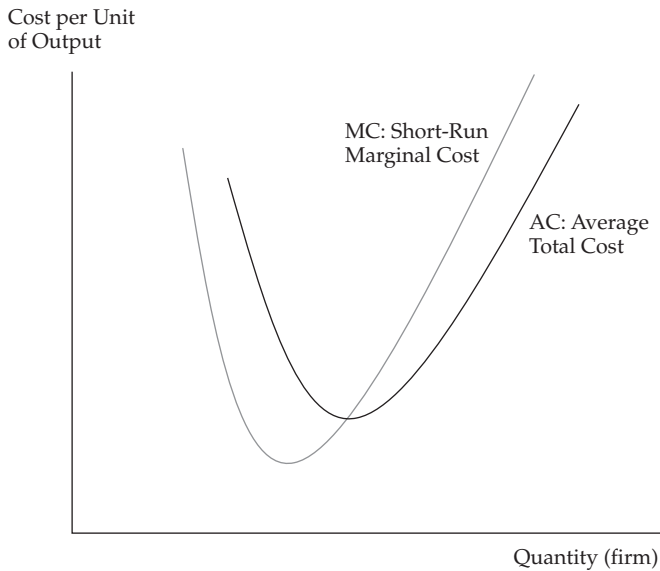
$$MC = \Delta TC/\Delta Q$$

By definition, fixed costs do not vary with output, so marginal cost reflects only changes in variable costs.⁵ MC declines initially because processes can be made more efficient and specialization makes workers more proficient at their tasks. However, at some higher level of output, MC begins to increase (e.g., must pay workers a higher wage to have them work overtime and, in agriculture, less fertile land must be brought into production). MC and AC will be equal at the level of output where AC is minimized. This is a mathematical necessity and intuitive. If you employ the least expensive labor in the initial phase of production, average and marginal cost will decline. Eventually, additional labor will be more costly. For example, if the labor market is at or near full employment, in order to attract additional workers, you must pay higher wages than

⁵ Readers who are familiar with calculus will recognize that MC is simply the derivative of total cost with respect to quantity produced.

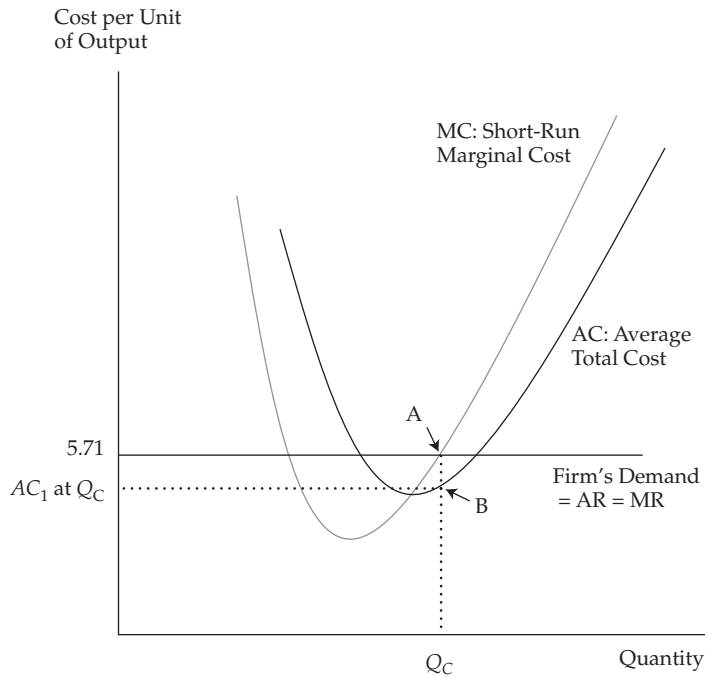
they are currently earning elsewhere. Thus, the additional (marginal) labor is more costly, and the higher cost increases the overall average as soon as MC exceeds AC. Exhibit 7 illustrates the relationship between AC and MC.

Exhibit 7 Individual Firm's Short-Run Cost Schedules



Now combine the revenue and cost functions from Exhibits 6 and 7. In short-run equilibrium, the perfectly competitive firm can earn an economic profit (or an economic loss). In this example, the equilibrium price, 5.71, is higher than the minimum AC. The firm will always maximize profit at an output level where $MR = MC$. Recall that in perfect competition, the horizontal demand curve is the marginal revenue and average revenue schedules. By setting output at point A in Exhibit 8, where $MR = MC$, the firm will maximize profits. Total revenue is equal to $P \times Q$ —in this case, 5.71 times Q_C . Total cost is equal to Q_C times the average cost of producing Q_C , at point B in Exhibit 8. The difference between the two areas is economic profit.

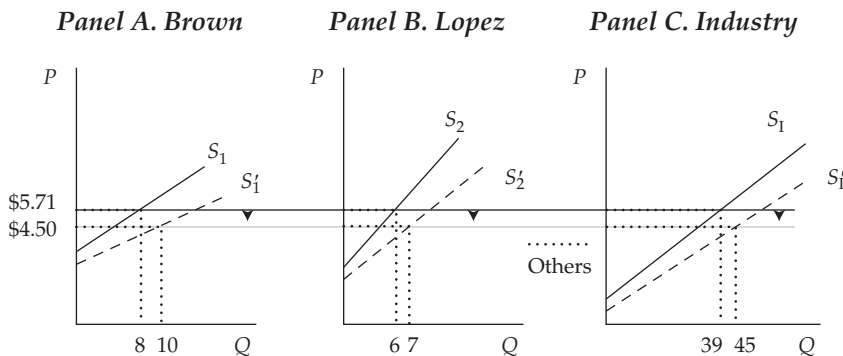
Exhibit 8 Perfectly Competitive Firm's Short-Run Equilibrium



3.4 Factors Affecting Long-Run Equilibrium in Perfectly Competitive Markets

In the long run, economic profit will attract other entrepreneurs to the market, resulting in the production of more output. The aggregate supply will increase, shifting the industry supply (S_1) curve to the right, away from the origin of the graph. For a given demand curve, this increase in supply at each price level will lower the equilibrium price, as shown in Exhibit 9.

Exhibit 9 Perfectly Competitive Market with Increased Supply

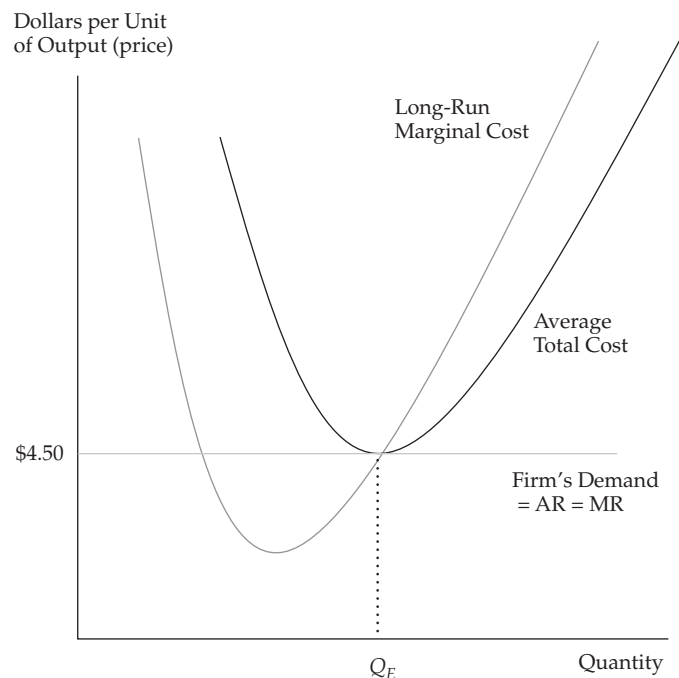


In the long run, the perfectly competitive firm will operate at the point where marginal cost equals the minimum of average cost, because at that point, entry is no longer profitable: In equilibrium, price equals not only marginal cost (firm equilibrium) but also minimum average cost, so that total revenues equal total costs. This

result implies that the perfectly competitive firm operates with zero economic profit. That is, the firm receives its normal profit (rental cost of capital), which is included in its economic costs. Recall that economic profits occur when total revenue exceeds total cost (and therefore differ from accounting profits). With low entry cost and homogeneous products to sell, the perfectly competitive firm earns zero economic profit in the long run.

Exhibit 10 illustrates the long-run equilibrium position of the perfectly competitive firm. Note that total revenue equals price (\$4.50) times quantity (Q_E) and total cost equals average cost (\$4.50) times quantity (Q_E).

Exhibit 10 Perfectly Competitive Firm's Long-Run Equilibrium



The long-run marginal cost schedule is the perfectly competitive firm's supply curve. The firm's demand curve is dictated by the aggregate market's equilibrium price. The basic rule of profit maximization is that $MR = MC$, as is the case in long-run equilibrium. The firm's demand schedule is the same as the firm's marginal revenue and average revenue. Given its cost of operation, the only decision the perfectly competitive firm faces is how much to produce. The answer is the level of output that maximizes its return, and that level is where $MR = MC$. The demand curve is perfectly elastic. Of course, the firm constantly tries to find ways to lower its cost in the long run.

SCHUMPETER ON INNOVATION AND PERFECT COMPETITION

The Austrian-American economist Joseph A. Schumpeter⁶ pointed out that technical change in economics can happen in two main ways:

- 1 Innovation of process: a new, more efficient way to produce an existing good or service.
- 2 Innovation of product: a new product altogether or an innovation upon an existing product.

Innovation of process is related to production methods. For example, instead of mixing cement by hand, since the invention of the electric engine it has been possible to use electric mixers. A more recent innovation has been to use the internet to provide technical support to personal computer users: A technician can remotely log on to the customer's PC and fix problems instead of providing instructions over the phone. The result is likely the same, but the process is more efficient.

Innovation of product is related to the product itself. MP3 players, smart phones, robot surgery, and GPS vehicle monitoring have existed only for a few years. They are new products and services. While portable music players existed before the MP3 player, no similar service existed before GPS monitoring of personal vehicles and freight trucks was invented.

How does the reality of continuous innovation of product and process, which is a characteristic of modern economies, fit into the ideal model of perfect competition, where the product is made by a huge number of tiny, anonymous suppliers? This seems a contradiction because the tiny suppliers cannot all be able to invent new products—and indeed, the markets for portable music players and smart phones do not look like perfect competition.

Schumpeter suggested that perfect competition is more of a long-run type of market. In the short run, a company develops a new process or product and is the only one to take advantage of the innovation. This company likely will have high profits and will outpace any competitors. A second stage is what Schumpeter called the swarming (as when a group of bees leaves a hive to follow a queen): In this case, some entrepreneurs notice the innovation and follow the innovator through imitation. Some of them will fail, while others will succeed and possibly be more successful than the initial innovator. The third stage occurs when the new technology is no longer new because everyone has imitated it. At this point, no economic profits are realized, because the new process or product is no longer a competitive advantage, in the sense that everyone has it—which is when perfect competition prevails and we have long-run equilibrium until a new innovation of process or product is introduced.

MONOPOLISTIC COMPETITION

4

Early in the 20th century, economists began to realize that most markets did not operate under the conditions of perfect competition.⁷ Many market structures exhibited characteristics of strong competitive forces; however, other distinct non-competitive factors played important roles in the market. As the name implies, monopolistic competition is a hybrid market. *The most distinctive factor in monopolistic competition is product differentiation.* Recall the characteristics from Exhibit 1:

- 1 There are a large number of potential buyers and sellers.

⁶ See part 2 of Schumpeter (1942) for the famous “creative destruction” process.

⁷ Chamberlin (1933).

- 2 The products offered by each seller are close substitutes for the products offered by other firms, and each firm tries to make its product look different.
- 3 Entry into and exit from the market are possible with fairly low costs.
- 4 Firms have some pricing power.
- 5 Suppliers differentiate their products through advertising and other non-price strategies.

While the market is made up of many firms that compose the product group, each producer attempts to distinguish its product from that of the others. Product differentiation is accomplished in a variety of ways. For example, consider the wide variety of communication devices available today. Decades ago, when each communication market was controlled by a regulated single seller (the telephone company), all telephones were alike. In the deregulated market of today, the variety of physical styles and colors is extensive. All versions accomplish many of the same tasks.

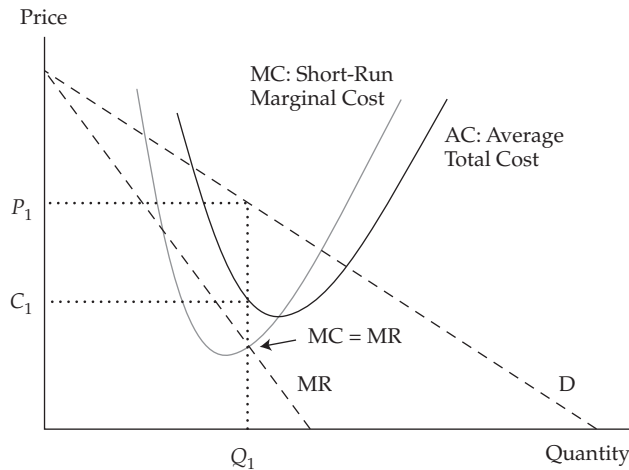
The communication device manufacturers and providers differentiate their products with different colors, styles, networks, bundled applications, conditional contracts, functionality, and more. Advertising is usually the avenue pursued to convince consumers there is a difference between the goods in the product group. Successful advertising and trademark branding result in customer loyalty. A good example is the brand loyalty associated with Harley-Davidson motorcycles. Harley-Davidson's customers believe that their motorcycles are truly different from and better than all other motorcycles. The same kind of brand loyalty exists for many fashion creations and cosmetics.

The extent to which the producer is successful in product differentiation determines pricing power in the market. Very successful differentiation results in a market structure that resembles the single-seller market (monopoly). However, because there are relatively low entry and exit costs, competition will, in the long run, drive prices and revenues down toward an equilibrium similar to perfect competition. Thus, the hybrid market displays characteristics found in both perfectly competitive and monopoly markets.

4.1 Demand Analysis in Monopolistically Competitive Markets

Because each good sold in the product group is somewhat different from the others, the demand curve for each firm in the monopolistic competition market structure is downward sloping to the right. Price and the quantity demanded are negatively related. Lowering the price will increase the quantity demanded, and raising the price will decrease the quantity demanded. There will be ranges of prices within which demand is elastic and (lower) prices at which demand is inelastic. Exhibit 11 illustrates the demand, marginal revenue, and cost structures facing a monopolistically competitive firm in the short run.

Exhibit 11 Short-Run Equilibrium in Monopolistic Competition



In the short run, the profit-maximizing choice is the level of output where $MR = MC$. Because the product is somewhat different from that of the competitors, the firm can charge the price determined by the demand curve. Therefore, in Exhibit 11, Q_1 is the ideal level of output and P_1 is the price consumers are willing to pay to acquire that quantity. Total revenue is the area of the rectangle $P_1 \times Q_1$.

4.2 Supply Analysis in Monopolistically Competitive Markets

In perfect competition, the firm’s supply schedule is represented by the marginal cost schedule. In monopolistic competition, there is no well-defined supply function. The information used to determine the appropriate level of output is based on the intersection of MC and MR. However, the price that will be charged is based on the market demand schedule. The firm’s supply curve should measure the quantity the firm is willing to supply at various prices. That information is not represented by either marginal cost or average cost.

4.3 Optimal Price and Output in Monopolistically Competitive Markets

As seen in Section 4.1, in the short run, the profit-maximizing choice is the level of output where $MR = MC$ and total revenue is the area of the rectangle $P_1 \times Q_1$ in Exhibit 11.

The average cost of producing Q_1 units of the product is C_1 , and the total cost is the area of the rectangle $C_1 \times Q_1$. The difference between TR and TC is economic profit. The profit relationship is described as

$$\pi = TR - TC$$

where π is total profit, TR is total revenue, and TC is total cost.

THE BENEFITS OF IMPERFECT COMPETITION

Is monopolistic competition indeed imperfect—that is, is it a bad thing? At first, one would say that it is an inefficient market structure because prices are higher and the quantity supplied is less than in perfect competition. At the same time, in the real world, we see

more markets characterized by monopolistic competition than markets meeting the strict conditions of perfect competition. If monopolistic competition were that inefficient, one wonders, why would it be so common?

A part of the explanation goes back to Schumpeter. Firms try to differentiate their products to meet the needs of customers. Differentiation provides a profit incentive to innovate, experiment with new products and services, and potentially improve the standard of living.

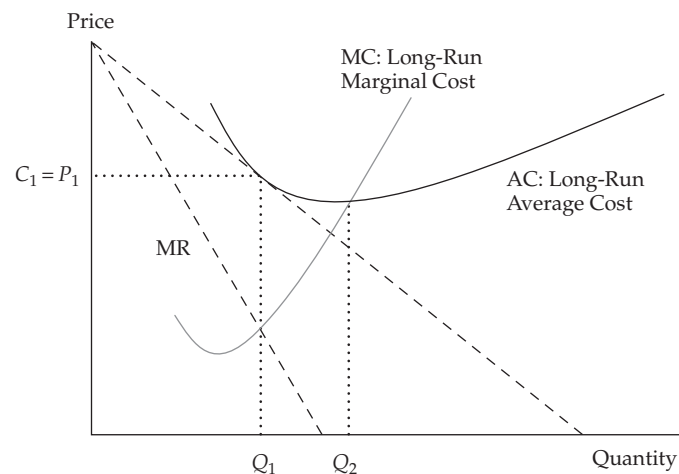
Moreover, because each customer has tastes and preferences that are a bit different, slight variations of each good or service are likely to capture the niche of the market that prefers them. An example is the market for candy, where one can find chocolate, liquorice, mint, fruit, and many other flavors.

A further reason why monopolistic competition may be good is that people like variety. Traditional economic theories of international trade suggested that countries should buy products from other countries that they cannot produce domestically. Therefore, Norway should buy bananas from a tropical country and sell crude oil in exchange. But this is not the only kind of exchange that happens in reality: For example, Germany imports Honda, Subaru, and Toyota cars from Japan and sells Volkswagen, Porsche, Mercedes, and BMW cars to Japan. In theory, this should not occur because each of the countries produces good cars domestically and does not need to import them. The truth, however (see, for example, Krugman 1989), is that consumers in both countries enjoy variety. Some Japanese drivers prefer to be at the steering wheel of a BMW; others like Hondas, and the same happens in Germany. Variety and product differentiation, therefore, are not necessarily bad things.

4.4 Factors Affecting Long-Run Equilibrium in Monopolistically Competitive Markets

Because TC includes all costs associated with production, including opportunity cost, economic profit is a signal to the market, and that signal will attract more competition. Just as with the perfectly competitive market structure, with relatively low entry costs, more firms will enter the market and lure some customers away from the firm making an economic profit. The loss of customers to new entrant firms will drive down the demand for all firms producing similar products. In the long run for the monopolistically competitive firm, economic profit will fall to zero. Exhibit 12 illustrates the condition of long-run equilibrium for monopolistic competition.

Exhibit 12 Long-Run Equilibrium in Monopolistic Competition



In long-run equilibrium, output is still optimal at the level where $MR = MC$, which is Q_1 in Exhibit 12. Again, the price consumers are willing to pay for any amount of the product is determined from the demand curve. That price is P_1 for the quantity Q_1 in Exhibit 12, and total revenue is the area of the rectangle $P_1 \times Q_1$. Notice that unlike long-run equilibrium in perfect competition, in the market of monopolistic competition, the equilibrium position is at a higher level of average cost than the level of output that minimizes average cost. Average cost does not reach its minimum until output level Q_2 is achieved. Total cost in this long-run equilibrium position is the area of the rectangle $C_1 \times Q_1$. Economic profit is total revenue minus total cost. In Exhibit 12, economic profit is zero because total revenue equals total cost: $P_1 \times Q_1 = C_1 \times Q_1$.

In the hybrid market of monopolistic competition, zero economic profit in long-run equilibrium resembles perfect competition. However, the long-run level of output, Q_1 , is less than Q_2 , which corresponds to the minimum average cost of production and would be the long run level of output in a perfectly competitive market. In addition, the economic cost in monopolistic competition includes some cost associated with product differentiation, such as advertising. In perfect competition, there are no costs associated with advertising or marketing because all products are homogeneous. Prices are lower, but consumers may have little variety.

OLIGOPOLY

5

An oligopoly market structure is characterized by only a few firms doing business in a relevant market. The products must all be similar and, to a great extent, be substitutes for one another. In some oligopoly markets, the goods or services may be differentiated by marketing and strong brand recognition, as in the markets for breakfast cereals and for bottled or canned beverages. Other examples of oligopoly markets are made up of homogeneous products with little or no attempt at product differentiation, such as petroleum and cement. *The most distinctive characteristic of oligopoly markets is the small number of firms that dominate the market. There are so few firms in the relevant market that their pricing decisions are interdependent.* That is, each firm's pricing decision is based on the expected retaliation by the other firms. Recall from Exhibit 1 the characteristics of oligopoly markets:

- 1 There are a small number of potential sellers.
- 2 The products offered by each seller are close substitutes for the products offered by other firms and may be differentiated by brand or homogeneous and unbranded.
- 3 Entry into the market is difficult, with fairly high costs and significant barriers to competition.
- 4 Firms typically have substantial pricing power.
- 5 Products are often highly differentiated through marketing, features, and other non-price strategies.

Because there are so few firms, each firm can have some degree of pricing power, which can result in substantial profits. Another by-product of the oligopoly market structure is the attractiveness of price collusion. Even without price collusion, a dominant firm may easily become the price maker in the market. Oligopoly markets without collusion typically have the most sophisticated pricing strategies. Examples of non-colluding oligopolies include the US tobacco market and the Thai beer market.

In 2004, four firms controlled 99 percent of the US tobacco industry.⁸ Brands owned by Singha Co. and by ThaiBev controlled over 90 percent of the Thai beer market in 2009. (This situation is expected to change soon, as the Association of Southeast Asian Nations trade agreement will open the doors to competition from other ASEAN producers.) Perhaps the most well-known oligopoly market with collusion is the OPEC cartel, which seeks to control prices in the petroleum market by fostering agreements among oil-producing countries.

5.1 Demand Analysis and Pricing Strategies in Oligopoly Markets

Oligopoly markets' demand curves depend on the degree of pricing interdependence. In a market where collusion is present, the aggregate market demand curve is divided up by the individual production participants. Under non-colluding market conditions, each firm faces an individual demand curve. Furthermore, non-colluding oligopoly market demand characteristics depend on the pricing strategies adopted by the participating firms. There are three basic pricing strategies: pricing interdependence, the Cournot assumption, and the Nash equilibrium.

The first pricing strategy is to assume pricing interdependence among the firms in the oligopoly. A good example of this situation is any market where there are "price wars," such as the commercial airline industry. For example, flying out of the Atlanta, Georgia, hub, Delta Air Lines and AirTran Airways jointly serve several cities. AirTran is a low-cost carrier and typically offers lower fares to destinations out of Atlanta. Delta tends to match the lower fares for those cities also served by AirTran when the departure and arrival times are similar to its own. However, when Delta offers service to the same cities at different time slots, Delta's ticket prices are higher.

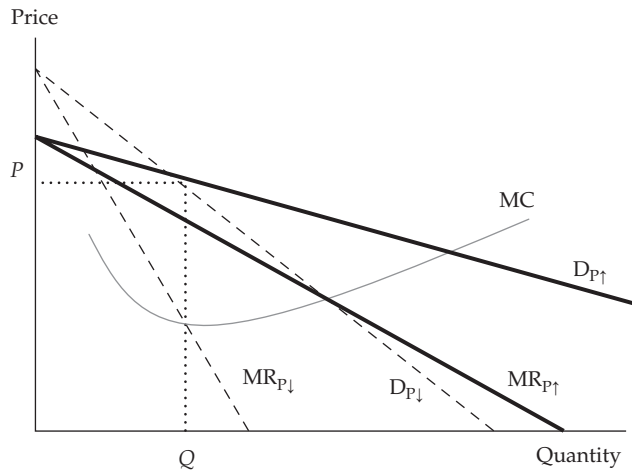
The most common pricing strategy assumption in these price war markets is that competitors will match a price reduction and ignore a price increase. The logic is that by lowering its price to match a competitor's price reduction, the firm will not experience a reduction in customer demand. Conversely, by not matching the price increase, the firm stands to attract customers away from the firm that raised its prices. The oligopolist's demand relationship must represent the potential increase in market share when rivals' price increases are not matched and no significant change in market share when rivals' price decreases are matched.

Given a prevailing price, the price elasticity of demand will be much greater if the price is increased and less if the price is decreased. The firm's customers are more responsive to price increases because its rivals have lower prices. Alternatively, the firm's customers are less responsive to price decreases because its rivals will match its price change.

This implies that the oligopolistic firm faces two different demand structures, one associated with price increases and another relating to price reductions. Each demand function will have its own marginal revenue structure as well. Consider the demand and marginal revenue functions in Exhibit 13(A). The functions $D_{p\uparrow}$ and $MR_{p\uparrow}$ represent the demand and marginal revenue schedules associated with higher prices, while the functions $D_{p\downarrow}$ and $MR_{p\downarrow}$ represent the lower prices' demand and marginal revenue schedules. The two demand schedules intersect at the prevailing price (i.e., the price where price increase and price decrease are both equal to zero).

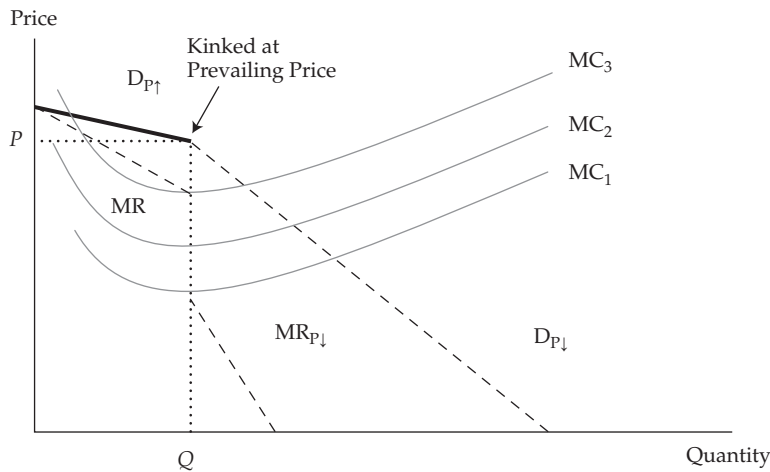
⁸ These examples are based on "Industry Surveys," Net Advantage Database, Standard & Poor's; and Market Share Reports, Gale Research, annual issues, as noted in McGuigan, Moyer, and Harris (2016).

Exhibit 13(A) Kinked Demand Curve in Oligopoly Market



This oligopolistic pricing strategy results in a kinked demand curve, with the two segments representing the different competitor reactions to price changes. The kink in the demand curve also yields a discontinuous marginal revenue structure, with one part associated with the price increase segment of demand and the other relating to the price decrease segment. Therefore, the firm's overall demand equals the relevant portion of $D_{P↑}$ and the relevant portion of $D_{P↓}$. Exhibit 13(B) represents the firm's new demand and marginal revenue schedules. The firm's demand schedule in Exhibit 13(B) is segment $D_{P↑}$ and $D_{P↓}$, where overall demand $D = D_{P↑} + D_{P↓}$.

Exhibit 13(B) Kinked Demand Curve in Oligopoly Market



Notice in Exhibit 13(B) that a wide variety of cost structures are consistent with the prevailing price. If the firm has relatively low marginal costs, MC_1 , the profit-maximizing pricing rule established earlier, $MR = MC$, still holds for the oligopoly firm. Marginal cost can rise to MC_2 and MC_3 before the firm's profitability is challenged. If the marginal cost curve MC_2 passes through the gap in marginal revenue, the most profitable price and output combination remains unchanged at the prevailing price and original level of output.

Criticism of the kinked demand curve analysis focuses on its inability to determine what the prevailing price is from the outset. The kinked demand curve analysis does help explain why stable prices have been observed in oligopoly markets and is therefore a useful tool for analyzing such markets. However, because it cannot determine the original prevailing price, it is considered an incomplete pricing analysis.

The second pricing strategy was first developed by French economist Augustin Cournot in 1838. In the **Cournot assumption**, each firm determines its profit-maximizing production level by assuming that the other firms' output will not change. This assumption simplifies pricing strategy because there is no need to guess what the other firm will do to retaliate. It also provides a useful approach to analyzing real-world behavior in oligopoly markets. Take the most basic oligopoly market situation, a two-firm duopoly market.⁹ In equilibrium, neither firm has an incentive to change output, given the other firm's production level. Each firm attempts to maximize its own profits under the assumption that the other firm will continue producing the same level of output in the future. The Cournot strategy assumes that this pattern continues until each firm reaches its long-run equilibrium position. In long-run equilibrium, output and price are stable: There is no change in price or output that will increase profits for either firm.

Consider this example of a duopoly market. Assume that the aggregate market demand has been estimated to be

$$Q_D = 450 - P$$

The supply function is represented by constant marginal cost $MC = 30$.

The Cournot strategy's solution can be found by setting $Q_D = q_1 + q_2$, where q_1 and q_2 represent the output levels of the two firms. Each firm seeks to maximize profit, and each firm believes the other firm will not change output as it changes its own output (Cournot's assumption). The firm will maximize profit where $MR = MC$. Rearranging the aggregate demand function in terms of price, we get:

$$P = 450 - Q_D = 450 - q_1 - q_2, \text{ and } MC = 30$$

Total revenue for each of the two firms is found by multiplying price and quantity:

$$TR_1 = Pq_1 = (450 - q_1 - q_2)q_1 = 450q_1 - q_1^2 - q_1q_2, \text{ and}$$

$$TR_2 = Pq_2 = (450 - q_1 - q_2)q_2 = 450q_2 - q_2q_1 - q_2^2$$

Marginal revenue is defined as the change in total revenue, given a change in sales (q_1 or q_2).¹⁰ For the profit-maximizing output, set $MR = MC$, or

$$450 - 2q_1 - q_2 = 30$$

and

$$450 - q_1 - 2q_2 = 30$$

Find the simultaneous equilibrium for the two firms by solving the two equations with two unknowns:

$$450 - 2q_1 - q_2 = 450 - q_1 - 2q_2$$

⁹ The smallest possible oligopoly market is a duopoly, which is made up of only two sellers.

¹⁰ The marginal revenue formulas can be obtained using the technique introduced in Section 3.1. For the market demand function, total revenue is $P \times Q = 450Q - Q^2$ and our technique yields $MR = \Delta TR / \Delta Q = 450 - 2Q$. For the individual firms in the Cournot duopoly, $MR_1 = \Delta TR_1 / \Delta q_1 = 450 - 2q_1 - q_2$, and $MR_2 = \Delta TR_2 / \Delta q_2 = 450 - q_1 - 2q_2$. Each of these marginal revenue formulas is, of course, the derivative of the relevant total revenue formula with respect to the relevant quantity.

Because $q_2 = q_1$ under Cournot's assumption, insert this solution into the demand function and solve as

$$450 - 2q_1 - q_1 = 450 - 3q_1 = 30$$

Therefore, $q_1 = 140$, $q_2 = 140$, and $Q = 280$.

The price is $P = 450 - 280 = 170$.

In the Cournot strategic pricing solution, the market equilibrium price will be 170 and the aggregate output will be 280 units. This result, known as the Cournot equilibrium, differs from the perfectly competitive market equilibrium because the perfectly competitive price will be lower and the perfectly competitive output will be higher. In general, non-competitive markets have higher prices and lower levels of output in equilibrium when compared with perfect competition. In competition, the equilibrium is reached where price equals marginal cost.

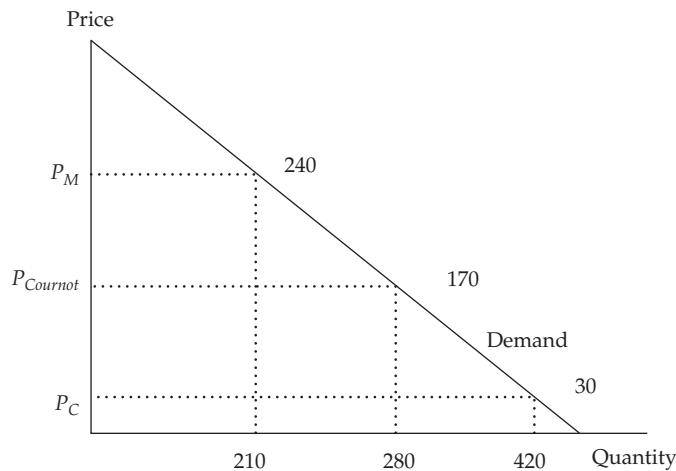
$$P_C = MR_C = MC, \text{ so } 450 - Q = 30$$

where P_C is the competitive firm's equilibrium price.

$$Q = 420, \text{ and } P_C = 30.$$

Exhibit 14 describes the oligopoly, competitive, and monopoly market equilibrium positions, where P_M is the monopoly optimum price, P_C is the competitive price, and $P_{Cournot}$ is the oligopoly price under the Cournot assumption.

Exhibit 14 Cournot Equilibrium in Duopoly Market



In the later discussion regarding monopoly market structure, equilibrium will be established where $MR = MC$. That solution is also shown in Exhibit 14. The monopoly firm's demand schedule is the aggregate market demand schedule. Therefore, the solution is

$$MR = MC$$

From Footnote 10, $MR = 450 - 2Q$; therefore,

$$450 - 2Q = 30 \quad \text{and} \quad Q = 210$$

From the aggregate demand function, solve for price:

$$P_M = 450 - 210 = 240$$

Note that the Cournot solution falls between the competitive equilibrium and the monopoly solution.

It can be shown that as the number of firms increases from two to three, from three to four, and so on, the output and price equilibrium positions move toward the competitive equilibrium solution. This result has historically been the theoretical basis for the antitrust policies established in the United States.

The third pricing strategy is attributed to one of the 1994 Nobel Prize winners, John Nash, who first developed the general concepts. In the previous analysis, the concept of market equilibrium occurs when firms are achieving their optimum remuneration under the circumstances they face. In this optimum environment, the firm has no motive to change price or output level. Existing firms are earning a normal return (zero economic profit), leaving no motive for entry to or exit from the market. All firms in the market are producing at the output level where price equals the average cost of production.

In **game theory** (the set of tools that decision makers use to consider responses by rival decision makers), the **Nash equilibrium** is present when two or more participants in a non-cooperative game have no incentive to deviate from their respective equilibrium strategies after they have considered and anticipated their opponent's rational choices or strategies. In the context of oligopoly markets, the Nash equilibrium is an equilibrium defined by the characteristic that none of the oligopolists can increase its profits by unilaterally changing its pricing strategy. The assumption is made that each participating firm does the best it can, given the reactions of its rivals. Each firm anticipates that the other firms will react to any change made by competitors by doing the best they can under the altered circumstances. The firms in the oligopoly market have interdependent actions. The actions are non-cooperative, with each firm making decisions that maximize its own profits. The firms do not collude in an effort to maximize joint profits. The equilibrium is reached when all firms are doing the best they can, given the actions of their rivals.

Exhibit 15 illustrates the duopoly result from the Nash equilibrium. Assume there are two firms in the market, ArcCo and BatCo. ArcCo and BatCo can charge high prices or low prices for the product. The market outcomes are shown in Exhibit 15.

Exhibit 15 Nash Equilibrium in Duopoly Market

<p>ArcCo – Low Price</p> <p>50 70</p> <p>BatCo – Low Price</p>	<p>ArcCo – Low Price</p> <p>80 0</p> <p>BatCo – High Price</p>
<p>ArcCo – High Price</p> <p>300 350</p> <p>BatCo – Low Price</p>	<p>ArcCo – High Price</p> <p>500 300</p> <p>BatCo – High Price</p>

For example, the top left solution indicates that when both ArcCo and BatCo offer the product at low prices, ArcCo earns a profit of 50 and BatCo earns 70. The top right solution shows that if ArcCo offers the product at a low price, BatCo earns zero profits. The solution with the maximum joint profits is the lower right equilibrium, where both firms charge high prices for the product. Joint profits are 800 in this solution.

However, the Nash equilibrium requires that each firm behaves in its own best interest. BatCo can improve its position by offering the product at low prices when ArcCo is charging high prices. In the lower left solution, BatCo maximizes its profits at 350. While ArcCo can earn 500 in its best solution, it can do so only if BatCo also agrees to charge high prices. This option is clearly not in BatCo's best interest because it can increase its return from 300 to 350 by charging lower prices.

This scenario brings up the possibility of collusion. If ArcCo agrees to share at least 51 of its 500 when both companies are charging high prices, BatCo should also be willing to charge high prices. While, in general, such collusion is unlawful in most countries, it remains a tempting alternative. Clearly, conditions in oligopolistic industries encourage collusion, with a small number of competitors and interdependent pricing behavior. Collusion is motivated by several factors: increased profits, reduced cash flow uncertainty, and improved opportunities to construct barriers to entry.

When collusive agreements are made openly and formally, the firms involved are called a **cartel**. In some cases, collusion is successful; other times, the forces of competition overpower collusive behavior. There are six major factors that affect the chances of successful collusion.¹¹

- 1 *The number and size distribution of sellers.* Successful collusion is more likely if the number of firms is small or if one firm is dominant. Collusion becomes more difficult as the number of firms increases or if the few firms have similar market shares. When the firms have similar market shares, the competitive forces tend to overshadow the benefits of collusion.
- 2 *The similarity of the products.* When the products are homogeneous, collusion is more successful. The more differentiated the products, the less likely it is that collusion will succeed.
- 3 *Cost structure.* The more similar the firms' cost structures, the more likely it is that collusion will succeed.
- 4 *Order size and frequency.* Successful collusion is more likely when orders are frequent, received on a regular basis, and relatively small. Frequent small orders, received regularly, diminish the opportunities and rewards for cheating on the collusive agreement.
- 5 *The strength and severity of retaliation.* Oligopolists will be less likely to break the collusive agreement if the threat of retaliation by the other firms in the market is severe.
- 6 *The degree of external competition.* The main reason to enter into the formal collusion is to increase overall profitability of the market, and rising profits attract competition. For example, the average extraction cost of a barrel of crude oil from the Persian Gulf is \$3, while the average cost from the Alaskan fields is \$30. It is more likely that crude oil producers in the Persian Gulf will successfully collude because of the similarity in their cost structures. If OPEC had held crude oil prices down below \$30 per barrel, there would not have been a viable economic argument to explore oil fields in Alaska. Extracting petroleum from Canadian oil sands becomes economically attractive only at prices above \$50 per barrel. OPEC's successful cartel raised crude oil prices to the point where outside sources became economically possible and in doing so increased the competition the cartel faces.

There are other possible oligopoly strategies that are associated with decision making based on game theory. The Cournot equilibrium and the Nash equilibrium are examples of specific strategic games. A strategic game is any interdependent behavioral

¹¹ McGuigan, Moyer, and Harris (2016).

choice employed by individuals or groups that share a common goal (e.g., military units, sports teams, or business decision makers). Another prominent decision-making strategy in oligopolistic markets is the first-mover advantage in the **Stackelberg model**, named after the economist who first conceptualized the strategy.¹² The important difference between the Cournot model and the Stackelberg model is that Cournot assumes that in a duopoly market, decision making is simultaneous, while Stackelberg assumes that decisions are made sequentially. In the Stackelberg model, the leader firm chooses its output first and then the follower firm chooses after observing the leader's output. It can be shown that the leader firm has a distinct advantage, being a first mover.¹³ In the Stackelberg game, the leader can aggressively overproduce to force the follower to scale back its production or even punish or eliminate the weaker opponent. This approach is sometimes referred to as a "top dog" strategy.¹⁴ The leader earns more than in Cournot's simultaneous game, while the follower earns less. Many other strategic games are possible in oligopoly markets. The important conclusion is that the optimal strategy of the firm depends on what its adversary does. The price and marginal revenue the firm receives for its product depend on both its decisions and its adversary's decisions.

5.2 Supply Analysis in Oligopoly Markets

As in monopolistic competition, the oligopolist does not have a well-defined supply function. That is, there is no way to determine the oligopolist's optimal levels of output and price independent of demand conditions and competitor's strategies. However, the oligopolist still has a cost function that determines the optimal level of supply. Therefore, the profit-maximizing rule established earlier is still valid: The level of output that maximizes profit is where $MR = MC$. The price to charge is determined by what price consumers are willing to pay for that quantity of the product. Therefore, the equilibrium price comes from the demand curve, while the output level comes from the relationship between marginal revenue and marginal cost.

Consider an oligopoly market in which one of the firms is dominant and thus able to be the price leader. Dominant firms generally have 40 percent or greater market share. When one firm dominates an oligopoly market, it does so because it has greater capacity, has a lower cost structure, was first to market, or has greater customer loyalty than other firms in the market.

Assuming there is no collusion, the dominant firm becomes the price maker, and therefore its actions are similar to monopoly behavior in its segment of the market. The other firms in the market follow the pricing patterns of the dominant firm. Why wouldn't the price followers attempt to gain market share by undercutting the dominant firm's price? The most common explanation is that the dominant firm's supremacy often stems from a lower cost of production. Usually, the price followers would rather charge a price that is even higher than the dominant firm's price choice. If they attempt to undercut the dominant firm, the followers risk a price war with a lower-cost producer that can threaten their survival. Some believe that one explanation for the price leadership position of the dominant firm is simply convenience. Only one firm has to make the pricing decisions, and the others can simply follow its lead.

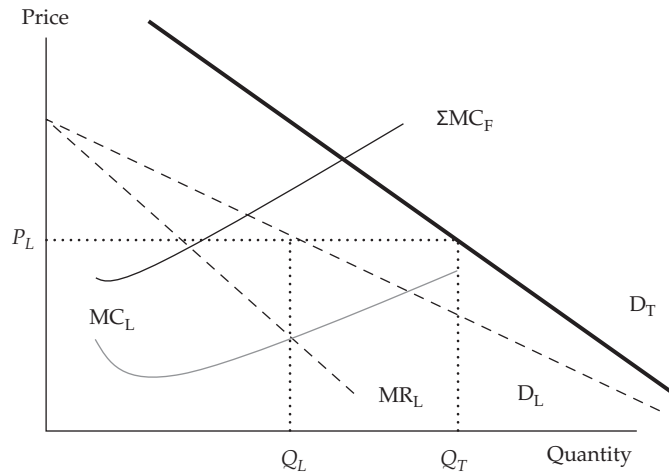
¹² Von Stackelberg (1952). See also Kelly (2011) for a comparison between the Cournot and Stackelberg equilibriums.

¹³ Nicholson and Snyder (2016).

¹⁴ Fudenberg and Tirole (1984).

Exhibit 16 establishes the dominant firm's pricing decision. The dominant firm's demand schedule, D_L , is a substantial share of the total market demand, D_T . The low-cost position of the dominant firm is represented by its marginal cost, MC_L . The sum of the marginal costs of the price followers is established as ΣMC_F and represents a higher cost of production than that of the price leader.

Exhibit 16 Dominant Oligopolist's Price Leadership



There is an important reason why the total demand curve and the leader demand curve are not parallel in Exhibit 16: Remember that the leader is the low-cost producer. Therefore, as price decreases, fewer of the smaller suppliers will be able to profitably remain in the market, and several will exit because they do not want to sell below cost. Therefore, the leader will have a larger market share as P decreases, which implies that Q_L increases at a low price, exactly as shown by a steeper D_T in the diagram.

The price leader identifies its profit-maximizing output where $MR_L = MC_L$, at output Q_L . This is the quantity it wants to supply; however, the price it will charge is determined by its segment of the total demand function, D_L . At price P_L , the dominant firm will supply quantity Q_L of total demand, D_T . The price followers will supply the difference to the market, $(Q_T - Q_L) = Q_F$. Therefore, neither the dominant firm nor the follower firms have a single functional relationship that determines the quantity supplied at various prices.

5.3 Optimal Price and Output in Oligopoly Markets

From the discussion above, it is clear that there is no single optimum price and output analysis that fits all oligopoly market situations. The interdependence among the few firms that make up the oligopoly market provides a complex set of pricing alternatives, depending on the circumstances in each market. In the case of the kinked demand curve, the optimum price is the prevailing price at the kink in the demand function. However, as previously noted, the kinked demand curve analysis does not provide insight into what established the prevailing price in the first place.

Perhaps the case of the dominant firm, with the other firms following the price leader, is the most obvious. In that case, the optimal price is determined at the output level where $MR = MC$. The profit-maximizing price is then determined by the output position of the segment of the demand function faced by the dominant firm. The price

followers have little incentive to change the leader's price. In the case of the Cournot assumption, each firm assumes that the other firms will not alter their output following the dominant firm's selection of its price and output level.

Therefore, again, the optimum price is determined by the output level where $MR = MC$. In the case of the Nash equilibrium, each firm will react to the circumstances it faces, maximizing its own profit. These adjustments continue until there are stable prices and levels of output. Because of the interdependence, there is no certainty as to the individual firm's price and output level.

5.4 Factors Affecting Long-Run Equilibrium in Oligopoly Markets

Long-run economic profits are possible for firms operating in oligopoly markets. However, history has shown that, over time, the market share of the dominant firm declines. Profits attract entry by other firms into the oligopoly market. Over time, the marginal costs of the entrant firms decrease because they adopt more efficient production techniques, the dominant firm's demand and marginal revenue shrink, and the profitability of the dominant firm declines. In the early 1900s, J.P. Morgan, Elbert Gary, Andrew Carnegie, and Charles M. Schwab created the United States Steel Corporation (US Steel). When it was first formed in 1901, US Steel controlled 66 percent of the market. By 1920, US Steel's market share had declined to 46 percent, and by 1925 its market share was 42 percent.

In the long run, optimal pricing strategy must include the reactions of rival firms. History has proven that pricing wars should be avoided because any gains in market share are temporary. Decreasing prices to drive competitors away lowers total revenue to all participants in the oligopoly market. Innovation may be a way—though sometimes an uneconomical one—to maintain market leadership.

OLIGOPOLIES: APPEARANCE VERSUS BEHAVIOR

When is an oligopoly not an oligopoly? There are two extreme cases of this situation. A normal oligopoly has a few firms producing a differentiated good, and this differentiation gives them pricing power.

At one end of the spectrum, we have the oligopoly with a credible threat of entry. In practice, if the oligopolists are producing a good or service that can be easily replicated, has limited economies of scale, and is not protected by brand recognition or patents, they will not be able to charge high prices. The easier it is for a new supplier to enter the market, the lower the margins. In practice, this oligopoly will behave very much like a perfectly competitive market.

At the opposite end of the spectrum, we have the case of the cartel. Here, the oligopolists collude and act as if they were a single firm. In practice, a very effective cartel enacts a cooperative strategy. As shown in Section 5.1, instead of going to a Nash equilibrium, the cartel participants go to the more lucrative (for them) cooperative equilibrium.

A cartel may be explicit (that is, based on a contract) or implicit (based on signals). An example of signals in a duopoly would be that one of the firms reduces its prices and the other does not. Because the firm not cutting prices refuses to start a price war, the firm that cut prices may interpret this signal as a "suggestion" to raise prices to a higher level than before, so that profits may increase for both.

MONOPOLY

6

Monopoly market structure is at the opposite end of the spectrum from perfect competition. For various reasons, there are significant barriers to entry such that a single firm produces a highly specialized product and faces no threat of competition. There are no good substitutes for the product in the relevant market, and the market demand function is the same as the individual firm's demand schedule. *The distinguishing characteristics of monopoly are that a single firm represents the market and significant barriers to entry exist.* Exhibit 1 identified the characteristics of monopoly markets:

- 1 There is a single seller of a highly differentiated product.
- 2 The product offered by the seller has no close substitute.
- 3 Entry into the market is very difficult, with high costs and significant barriers to competition.
- 4 The firm has considerable pricing power.
- 5 The product is differentiated through non-price strategies such as advertising.

Monopoly markets are unusual. With a single seller dominating the market, power over price decisions is significant. For a single seller to achieve this power, there must be factors that allow the monopoly to exist. One obvious source of monopoly power would be a patent or copyright that prevents other firms from entering the market. Patent and copyright laws exist to reward intellectual capital and investment in research and development. In so doing, they provide significant barriers to entry.

Another possible source of market power is control over critical resources used for production. One example is De Beers Consolidated Mines Limited. De Beers owned or controlled all diamond mining operations in South Africa and established pricing agreements with other important diamond producers. In doing so, De Beers was able to control the prices for cut diamonds for decades. Technically, De Beers was a near-monopoly dominant firm rather than a pure monopoly, although its pricing procedure for cut diamonds resembled monopoly behavior.

Perhaps the most common form of monopolistic market power occurs as the result of government-controlled authorization. In most urban areas, a single source of water and sewer services is offered. In some cases, these services are offered by a government-controlled entity. In other cases, private companies provide the services under government regulation. Such "natural" monopolies require a large initial investment that benefits from economies of scale; therefore, government may authorize a single seller to provide a certain service because having multiple sellers would be too costly. For example, electricity in most markets is provided by a single seller. Economies of scale result when significant capital investment benefits from declining long-run average costs. In the case of electricity, a large gas-fueled power plant producing electricity for a large area is substantially more efficient than having a small diesel generator for every building. That is, the average cost of generating and delivering a kilowatt of electricity will be substantially lower with the single power station, but the initial fixed cost of building the power station and the lines delivering electricity to each home, factory, and office will be very high.

In the case of natural monopolies, limiting the market to a single seller is considered beneficial to society. One water and sewer system is deemed better for the community than dozens of competitors because building multiple infrastructures for running water and sewer service would be particularly expensive and complicated. One electrical power grid supplying electricity for a community can make large capital investments in generating plants and lower the long-run average cost, while multiple power grids would lead to a potentially dangerous maze of wires. Clearly, not all monopolies are in a position to make significant economic profits. Regulators, such as public utility

commissions in the United States, attempt to determine what a normal return for the monopoly owners' investment should be, and they set prices accordingly. Nevertheless, monopolists attempt to maximize profits.

Not all monopolies originate from “natural” barriers. For some monopolists, barriers to entry do not derive from increasing returns to scale. We mentioned that marketing and brand loyalty are sources of product differentiation in monopolistic competition. In some highly successful cases, strong brand loyalty can become a formidable barrier to entry. For example, if the Swiss watchmaker Rolex is unusually successful in establishing brand loyalty, so that its customers think there is no close substitute for its product, then the company will have monopoly-like pricing power over its market.

The final potential source of market power is the increasing returns associated with network effects. Network effects result from synergies related to increasing market penetration. By achieving a critical level of adoption, Microsoft was able to extend its market power through the network effect—for example, because most computer users know how to use Microsoft Word. Therefore, for firms, Word is cheaper to adopt than other programs because almost every new hire will be proficient in using the software and will need no further training. At some level of market share, a network-based product or service (think of Facebook or eBay) reaches a point where each additional share point increases the probability that another user will adopt.¹⁵ These network effects increase the value to other potential adopters. In Microsoft's case, the network effects crowded out other potential competitors, including Netscape's internet browser, that might have led to applications bypassing Windows. Eventually, Microsoft's operating system's market share reached 92 percent of the global market. Similar situations occur in financial markets: If a publicly listed share or a derivative contract is more frequently traded on a certain exchange, market participants wishing to sell or buy the security will go to the more liquid exchange because they expect to find a better price and faster execution there.

6.1 Demand Analysis in Monopoly Markets

The monopolist's demand schedule is the aggregate demand for the product in the relevant market. Because of the income effect and the substitution effect, demand is negatively related to price, as usual. The slope of the demand curve is negative and therefore downward sloping. The general form of the demand relationship is

$$Q_D = a - bP \quad \text{or, rewritten,} \quad P = a/b - (1/b)Q_D$$

$$\text{Therefore, total revenue} = TR = P \times Q = (a/b)Q_D - (1/b)Q_D^2$$

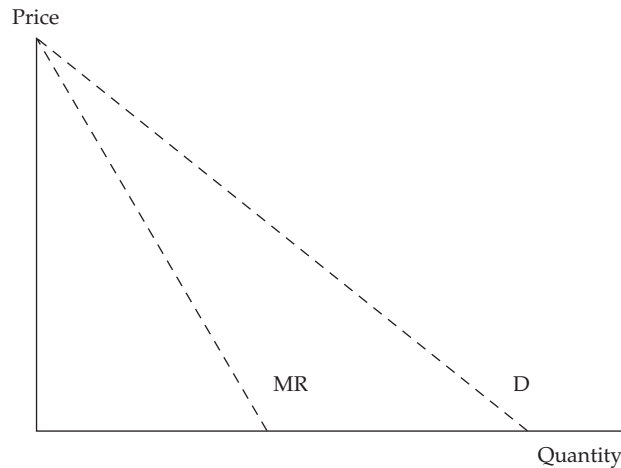
Marginal revenue is the change in revenue given a change in the quantity demanded. Because an increase in quantity requires a lower price, the marginal revenue schedule is steeper than the demand schedule. If the demand schedule is linear, then the marginal revenue curve is twice as steep as the demand schedule.¹⁶

$$MR = \Delta TR/\Delta Q = (a/b) - (2/b)Q_D$$

The demand and marginal revenue relationship is expressed in Exhibit 17.

¹⁵ When a network-based device reaches a 30 percent share, the next 50 percentage points are cheaper to promote, according to McGuigan, Moyer, and Harris (2016).

¹⁶ Marginal revenue can be found using the technique shown in Section 3.1 or, for readers who are familiar with calculus, by taking the derivative of the total revenue function: $MR = \Delta TR/\Delta Q = (a/b) - (2/b)Q_D$.

Exhibit 17 Monopolist's Demand and Marginal Revenue

Suppose a company operating on a remote island is the single seller of natural gas. Demand for its product can be expressed as

$$Q_D = 400 - 0.5P, \text{ which can be rearranged as}$$

$$P = 800 - 2Q_D$$

Total revenue is $P \times Q = TR = 800Q_D - 2Q_D^2$, and marginal revenue is $MR = 800 - 4Q_D$.¹⁷

In Exhibit 17, the demand curve's intercept is 800 and the slope is -2 . The marginal revenue curve in Exhibit 17 has an intercept of 800 and a slope of -4 .

Average revenue is TR/Q_D ; therefore, $AR = 800 - 2Q_D$, which is the same as the demand function. In the monopoly market model, average revenue is the same as the market demand schedule.

6.2 Supply Analysis in Monopoly Markets

A monopolist's supply analysis is based on the firm's cost structure. As in the market structures of monopolistic competition and oligopoly, the monopolist does not have a well-defined supply function that determines the optimal output level and the price to charge. The optimal output is the profit-maximizing output level. The profit-maximizing level of output occurs where marginal revenue equals marginal cost, $MR = MC$.

Assume the natural gas company has determined that its total cost can be expressed as

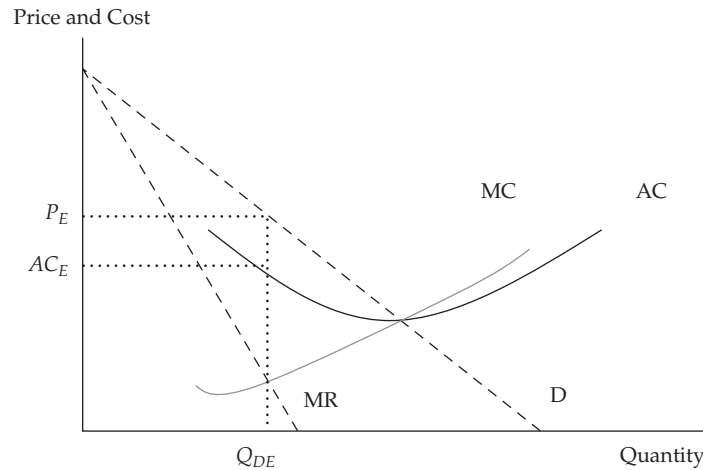
$$TC = 20,000 + 50Q + 3Q^2$$

Marginal cost is $\Delta TC/\Delta Q = MC = 50 + 6Q$.¹⁸

Supply and demand can be combined to determine the profit-maximizing level of output. Exhibit 18 combines the monopolist's demand and cost functions.

¹⁷ $MR = \Delta TR/\Delta Q = 800 - 4Q$; see footnote 16.

¹⁸ The marginal cost equation can be found in this case by applying the technique used to find the marginal revenue equation in Section 3.1, or by taking the derivative of the total cost function.

Exhibit 18 Monopolist's Demand, Marginal Revenue, and Cost Structures

In Exhibit 18, the demand and marginal revenue functions are clearly defined by the aggregate market. However, the monopolist does not have a supply curve. The quantity that maximizes profit is determined by the intersection of MC and MR, Q_{DE} .

The price consumers are willing to pay for this level of output is P_E , as determined by the demand curve, P_E .

The profit-maximizing level of output is $MR = MC$: $800 - 4Q_D = 50 + 6Q_D$; therefore, $Q_D = 75$ when profit is maximized.

Total profit equals total revenue minus total cost:

$$\pi = 800Q - 2Q_D^2 - (20,000 + 50Q_D + 3Q_D^2) = -20,000 + 750Q_D - 5Q_D^2$$

Profit is represented by the difference between the area of the rectangle $Q_{DE} \times P_E$, representing total revenue, and the area of the rectangle $Q_{DE} \times AC_E$, representing total cost.

MONOPOLISTS AND THEIR INCENTIVES

In theoretical models, which usually take product quality and technology as given, monopolists can choose to vary either price or quantity. In real life, they also have the ability to vary their product.

A monopolist can choose to limit quality if producing a higher-quality product is costly and higher quality does not increase profits accordingly. For example, the quality of domestically produced cars in most developed countries improved dramatically once foreign imports became more available. Before the opening of borders to foreign imports, the single incumbent that dominated the market (for example, Fiat in Italy) or the small group of incumbents acting as a collusive oligopoly (such as the Detroit "Big Three" in the United States) were the effective monopolists of their domestic automobile markets. Rust corrosion, limited reliability, and poor gas mileage were common.¹⁹

Similarly, regulated utilities may have limited incentives to innovate. Several studies, including Gómez-Ibáñez (2003), have found that state-owned and other monopoly telephone utilities tended to provide very poor service before competition was introduced. Poor service may not be limited to poor connection quality but may also include extensive delays in adding new users and limited introduction of new services, such as caller ID or automatic answering services.

¹⁹ For more on this topic, see Banker, Khosla, and Sinha (1998).

Intuitively, a monopolist will not spend resources on quality control, research and development, or even customer relations unless there is a threat of entry of a new competitor or unless there is a clear link between such expenses and a profit increase. In contrast, in competitive markets, including oligopoly, innovation and quality are often ways to differentiate the product and increase profits.

6.3 Optimal Price and Output in Monopoly Markets

Continuing the natural gas example from above, the total profit function can be solved using the quadratic formula.²⁰ Another method to solve the profit function is to evaluate $\Delta\pi/\Delta Q_D$ and set it equal to zero. This identifies the point at which profit is unaffected by changes in output.²¹ Of course, this will give the same result as we found by equating marginal revenue with marginal cost. The monopoly will maximize profits when $Q^* = 75$ units of output and the price is set from the demand curve at 650.

$$P^* = 800 - 2(75) = 650 \text{ per unit}$$

To find total maximum profits, substitute these values into the profit function above:

$$\pi = -20,000 + 750Q_D - 5Q_D^2 = -20,000 + 750(75) - 5(75^2) = 8,125$$

Note that the price and output combination that maximizes profit occurs in the elastic portion of the demand curve in Exhibit 18. This must be so because marginal revenue and marginal cost will always intersect where marginal revenue is positive. This fact implies that quantity demanded responds more than proportionately to price changes, i.e. demand is elastic, at the point at which $MC = MR$. As noted earlier, the relationship between marginal revenue and price elasticity, E_P , is:

$$MR = P[1 - 1/E_P]$$

In monopoly, $MR = MC$; therefore,

$$P[1 - 1/E_P] = MC$$

The firm can use this relationship to determine the profit-maximizing price if the firm knows its cost structure and the price elasticity of demand, E_P . For example, assume the firm knows that its marginal cost is constant at 75 and recent market analysis indicates that price elasticity is estimated to be 1.5. The optimal price is solved as

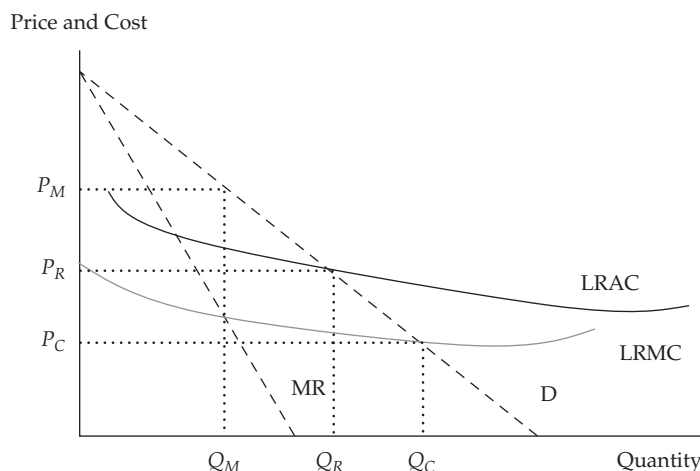
$$P[1 - 1/1.5] = 75 \text{ and}$$

$$P = 225$$

Exhibit 18 indicated that the monopolist wants to produce at Q_E and charge the price of P_E . Suppose this is a natural monopoly that is operating as a government franchise under regulation. Natural monopolies are usually found where production is based on significant economies of scale and declining cost structure in the market. Examples include electric power generation, natural gas distribution, and the water and sewer industries. These are often called public utilities. Exhibit 19 illustrates such a market in long-run equilibrium.

²⁰ The quadratic formula, where $aQ^2 + bQ + c = 0$, is $Q = \frac{-b \pm \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a}$.

²¹ Maximum profit occurs where $\Delta\pi/\Delta Q_D = 0 = 750 - 10Q_D$. Therefore, profits are maximized at $Q_D = 75$.

Exhibit 19 Natural Monopoly in a Regulated Pricing Environment


In Exhibit 19, three possible pricing and output solutions are presented. The first is what the monopolist would do without regulation: The monopolist would seek to maximize profits by producing Q_M units of the product, where long-run marginal cost equals marginal revenue, $LRMC = MR$. To maximize profits, the monopolist would raise the price to the level the demand curve will accept, P_M .

In perfect competition, the price and output equilibrium occurs where price is equal to the marginal cost of producing the incremental unit of the product. In a competitive market, the quantity produced would be higher, Q_C , and the price lower, P_C . For this regulated monopoly, the competitive solution would be unfair because at output Q_C , the price P_C would not cover the average cost of production. One possibility is to subsidize the difference between the long-run average cost, LRAC, and the competitive price, P_C , for each unit sold.

Another solution is for the regulator to set the price at the point where long-run average cost equals average revenue. Recall that the demand curve represents the average revenue the firm receives at each output level. The government regulator will attempt to determine the monopolistic firm's long-run average cost and set the output and price so that the firm receives a fair return on the owners' invested capital. The regulatory solution is output level Q_R , with the price set at P_R . Therefore, the regulatory solution is found between the unregulated monopoly equilibrium and the competitive equilibrium.

6.4 Price Discrimination and Consumer Surplus

Monopolists can be more or less effective in taking advantage of their market structure. At one extreme, we have a monopolist that charges prices and supplies quantities that are the same as they would be in perfect competition; this scenario may be a result of regulation or threat of entry (if the monopolist charged more, another company could come in and price the former monopolist out of the market). At the opposite extreme, hated by all consumers and economists, is the monopolist that extracts the entire consumer surplus. This scenario is called **first-degree price discrimination**, where a monopolist is able to charge each customer the highest price the customer is willing to pay. This is called price discrimination because the monopolist charges a different price to each client. How can this be? For example, if the monopolist knows the exact demand schedule of the customer, then the monopolist is able to capture the entire consumer surplus. In practice, the monopolist is able to measure how often the product is used and charges the customer the highest price the consumer is

willing to pay for that unit of good. Another possibility is that public price disclosure is non-existent, so that no customer knows what the other customers are paying. Interestingly, not every consumer is worse off in this case, because some consumers may be charged a price that is below that of perfect competition, as long as the marginal revenue exceeds the marginal cost.

In **second-degree price discrimination** the monopolist offers a menu of quantity-based pricing options designed to induce customers to self-select based on how highly they value the product. Such mechanisms include volume discounts, volume surcharges, coupons, product bundling, and restrictions on use. In practice, producers can use not just the quantity but also the quality (e.g., “professional grade”) to charge more to customers that value the product highly.

Third-degree price discrimination happens when customers are segregated by demographic or other traits. For example, some econometric software is licensed this way: A student version can handle only small datasets and is sold for a low price; a professional version can handle very large datasets and is sold at a much higher price because corporations need to compute the estimates for their business and are therefore willing to pay more for a license. Another example is that airlines know that passengers who want to fly somewhere and come back the same day are most likely business people; therefore, one-day roundtrip tickets are generally more expensive than tickets with a return flight at a later date or over a weekend.

Price discrimination has many practical applications when the seller has pricing power. The best way to understand how this concept works is to think of consumer surplus: As seen in this reading, a consumer may be willing to pay more for the first unit of a good, but to buy a second unit she will want to pay a lower price, thus getting a better deal on the first unit. In practice, sellers can sometimes use income and substitution effects to their advantage. Think of something you often buy, perhaps lunch at your favorite café. How much would you be willing to pay for a “lunch club membership card” that would allow you to purchase lunches at, say, half price? If the café could extract from you the maximum amount each month that you would be willing to pay for the half-price option, then it would successfully have removed the income effect from you in the form of a monthly fixed fee. Notice that a downward-sloping demand curve implies that you would end up buying more lunches each month than before you purchased the discount card, even though you would be no better or worse off than before. This is a way that sellers are sometimes able to extract consumer surplus by means of creative pricing schemes. It’s a common practice among big-box retailers, sports clubs, and other users of what is called “two-part tariff pricing,” as in the example below.

EXAMPLE 3

Price Discrimination

Nicole’s monthly demand for visits to her health club is given by the following equation: $Q_D = 20 - 4P$, where Q_D is visits per month and P is euros per visit. The health club’s marginal cost is fixed at €2 per visit.

- 1 Draw Nicole’s demand curve for health club visits per month.
- 2 If the club charged a price per visit equal to its marginal cost, how many visits would Nicole make per month?
- 3 How much consumer surplus would Nicole enjoy at that price?
- 4 How much could the club charge Nicole each month for a membership fee?

Solution to 1:

$Q_D = 20 - 4P$, so when $P = 0$, $Q_D = 20$. Inverting, $P = 5 - 0.25Q_D$, so when $Q = 0$, $P = 5$.

Solution to 2:

$Q_D = 20 - 4(2) = 12$. Nicole would make 12 visits per month at a price of €2 per visit.

Solution to 3:

Nicole's consumer surplus can be measured as the area under her demand curve and above the price she pays for a total of 12 visits, or $(0.5)(12)(3) = 18$. Nicole would enjoy a consumer surplus of €18 per month.

Solution to 4:

The club could extract all of Nicole's consumer surplus by charging her a monthly membership fee of €18 plus a per-visit price of €2. This pricing method is called a two-part tariff because it assesses one price per unit of the item purchased plus a per-month fee (sometimes called an "entry fee") equal to the buyer's consumer surplus evaluated at the per-unit price.

6.5 Factors Affecting Long-Run Equilibrium in Monopoly Markets

The unregulated monopoly market structure can produce economic profits in the long run. In the long run, all factors of production are variable, while in the short run, some factors of production are fixed. Generally, the short-run factor that is fixed is the capital investment, such as the factory, machinery, production technology, available arable land, and so forth. The long-run solution allows for all inputs, including technology, to change. In order to maintain a monopoly market position in the long run, the firm must be protected by substantial and ongoing barriers to entry. If the monopoly position is the result of a patent, then new patents must be continuously added to prevent the entry of other firms into the market.

For regulated monopolies, such as natural monopolies, there are a variety of long-run solutions. One solution is to set the price equal to marginal cost, $P = MC$. However, that price will not likely be high enough to cover the average cost of production, as Exhibit 19 illustrated. The answer is to provide a subsidy sufficient to compensate the firm. The national rail system in the United States, Amtrak, is an example of a regulated monopoly operating with a government subsidy.

National ownership of the monopoly is another solution. Nationalization of the natural monopoly has been a popular solution in Europe and other parts of the world. The United States has generally avoided this potential solution. One problem with this arrangement is that once a price is established, consumers are unwilling to accept price increases, even as factor costs increase. Politically, raising prices on products from government-owned enterprises is highly unpopular.

Establishing a governmental entity that regulates an authorized monopoly is another popular solution. Exhibit 19 illustrated the appropriate decision rule. The regulator sets price equal to long-run average cost, $P_R = LRAC$. This solution assures that investors will receive a normal return for the risk they are taking in the market. Given that no other competitors are allowed, the risk is lower than in a highly competitive market environment. The challenge facing the regulator is determining the authentic risk-related return and the monopolist's realistic long-run average cost.

The final solution is to franchise the monopolistic firm through a bidding war. Again, the public goal is to select the winning firm based on price equaling long-run average cost. Retail outlets at rail stations and airports and concession outlets at stadiums are examples of government franchises. The long-run success of the monopoly franchise depends on its ability to meet the goal of pricing its products at the level of its long-run average cost.

EXAMPLE 4**Monopolies and Efficiency**

Are monopolies *always* inefficient?

- A** No, because if they charge more than average cost they are nationalized.
- B** Yes, because they charge all consumers more than perfectly competitive markets would.
- C** No, because economies of scale and regulation (or threat of entry) may give a better outcome for buyers than perfect competition.

Solution:

C is correct. Economies of scale and regulation may make monopolies more efficient than perfect competition.

IDENTIFICATION OF MARKET STRUCTURE**7**

Monopoly markets and other situations where companies have pricing power can be inefficient because producers constrain output to cause an increase in prices. Therefore, there will be less of the good being consumed and it will be sold at a higher price, which is generally inefficient for the market as a whole. This is why competition law regulates the degree of market competition in several industries of different countries.

Market power in the real world is not always as clear as it is in textbook examples. Governments and regulators often have the difficult task of measuring market power and establishing whether a firm has a dominant position that may resemble a monopoly. For example, in the 1990s, US regulators prosecuted agricultural corporation Archer Daniels Midland for conspiring with Japanese competitors to fix the price of lysine, an amino acid used as an animal feed additive. The antitrust action resulted in a settlement that involved over US\$100 million in fines paid by the cartel members. Another example occurred in the 1970s, when US antitrust authorities broke up the local telephone monopoly, leaving AT&T the long-distance business (and opening that business to competitors), and required AT&T to divest itself of the local telephone companies it owned. This antitrust decision brought competition, innovation, and lower prices to the US telephone market.

European regulators (specifically, the European Commission) have affected the mergers and monopoly positions of European corporations (as in the case of the companies Roche, Rhone-Poulenc, and BASF, which were at the center of a vitamin price-fixing case) as well as non-European companies (such as Intel) that do business in Europe. Moreover, the merger between the US company General Electric and the European company Honeywell was denied by the European Commission on grounds of excessive market concentration.

Quantifying excessive market concentration is difficult. Sometimes, regulators need to measure whether something that has not yet occurred might generate excessive market power. For example, a merger between two companies might allow the combined company to be a monopolist or quasi monopolist in a certain market.

A financial analyst hearing news about a possible merger should always consider the impact of competition law (sometimes called antitrust law)—that is, whether a proposed merger may be blocked by regulators in the interest of preserving a competitive market.

7.1 Econometric Approaches

How should one measure market power? The theoretical answer is to estimate the elasticity of demand and supply in a market. If demand is very elastic, the market must be very close to perfect competition. If demand is rigid (inelastic), companies *may* have market power. This is the approach taken in the cellophane case mentioned in Section 3.1.2.

From the econometric point of view, this estimation requires some attention. The problem is that observed price and quantity are the equilibrium values of price and quantity and do not represent the value of either supply or demand. Technically, this is called the problem of endogeneity, in the sense that the equilibrium price and quantity are jointly determined by the interaction of demand and supply. Therefore, to have an appropriate estimation of demand and supply, we will need to use a model with two equations, namely, an equation of demanded quantity (as a function of price, income of the buyers, and other variables) and an equation of supplied quantity (as a function of price, production costs, and other variables). The estimated parameters will then allow us to compute elasticity.

Regression analysis is useful in computing elasticity but requires a large number of observations. Therefore, one may use a time-series approach and, for example, look at 20 years of quarterly sales data for a market. However, the market structure may have changed radically over those 20 years, and the estimated elasticity may not apply to the current situation. Moreover, the supply curve may change as a result of a merger among large competitors, and the estimation based on past data may not be informative regarding the future state of the market post merger.

An alternative approach is a cross-sectional regression analysis. Instead of looking at total sales and average prices in a market over time (the time-series approach mentioned above), we can look at sales from different companies in the market during the same year, or even at single transactions from many buyers and companies. Clearly, this approach requires substantial data-gathering effort, and therefore, this estimation method can be complicated. Moreover, different specifications of the explanatory variables (for example, using total GDP rather than median household income or per-capita GDP to represent income) may sometimes lead to dramatically different estimates.

7.2 Simpler Measures

Trying to avoid the above drawbacks, analysts often use simpler measures to estimate elasticity. The simplest measure is the concentration ratio, which is the sum of the market shares of the largest N firms. To compute this ratio, one would, for example, add the sales values of the largest 10 firms and divide this figure by total market sales. This number is always between zero (perfect competition) and 100 percent (monopoly).

The main advantage of the concentration ratio is that it is simple to compute, as shown above. The disadvantage is that it does not directly quantify market power. In other words, is a high concentration ratio a clear signal of monopoly power? The analysis of entry in Section 2 explains clearly that this is not the case: A company may

be the only incumbent in a market, but if the barriers to entry are low, the simple presence of a *potential* entrant may be sufficient to convince the incumbent to behave like a firm in perfect competition. For example, a sugar wholesaler may be the only one in a country, but the knowledge that other large wholesalers in the food industry might easily add imported sugar to their range of products should convince the sugar wholesaler to price its product as if it were in perfect competition.

Another disadvantage of the concentration ratio is that it tends to be unaffected by mergers among the top market incumbents. For example, if the largest and second-largest incumbents merge, the pricing power of the combined entity is likely to be larger than that of the two pre-existing companies. But the concentration ratio may not change much.

CALCULATING THE CONCENTRATION RATIO

Suppose there are eight producers of a certain good in a market. The largest producer has 35 percent of the market, the second largest has 25 percent, the third has 20 percent, the fourth has 10 percent, and the remaining four have 2.5 percent each. If we computed the concentration ratio of the top three producers, it would be $35 + 25 + 20 = 80$ percent, while the concentration ratio of the top four producers would be $35 + 25 + 20 + 10 = 90$ percent.

If the two largest companies merged, the new concentration ratio for the top three producers would be 60 (the sum of the market shares of the merged companies) $+ 20 + 10 = 90$ percent, and the concentration ratio for the four top producers would be 92.5 percent. Therefore, this merger affects the concentration ratio very mildly, even though it creates a substantial entity that controls 60 percent of the market.

For example, the effect of consolidation in the US retail gasoline market has resulted in increasing degrees of concentration. In 1992, the top four companies in the US retail gasoline market shared 33 percent of the market. By 2001, the top four companies controlled 78 percent of the market (Exxon Mobil 24 percent, Shell 20 percent, BP/Amoco/Arco 18 percent, and Chevron/Texaco 16 percent).

To avoid the known issues with concentration ratios, economists O.C. Herfindahl and A.O. Hirschman suggested an index where the market shares of the top N companies are first squared and then added. If one firm controls the whole market (a monopoly), the Herfindahl–Hirschman index (HHI) equals 1. If there are M firms in the industry with equal market shares, then the HHI equals $(1/M)$. This provides a useful gauge for interpreting an HHI. For example, an HHI of 0.20 would be analogous to having the market shared equally by 5 firms.

The HHI for the top three companies in the example in the box above would be $0.35^2 + 0.25^2 + 0.20^2 = 0.225$ before the merger, while after the merger, it would be $0.60^2 + 0.20^2 + 0.10^2 = 0.410$, which is substantially higher than the initial 0.225. This is why the HHI is widely used by competition regulators. However, just like the concentration ratio, the HHI does not take the possibility of entry into account, nor does it consider the elasticity of demand. As a consequence, the HHI has limited use for a financial analyst trying to estimate the potential profitability of a company or group of companies.

EXAMPLE 5**The Herfindahl–Hirschman Index**

Suppose a market has 10 suppliers, each of them with 10 percent of the market. What are the concentration ratio and the HHI of the top four firms?

- A Concentration ratio 4 percent and HHI 40
- B Concentration ratio 40 percent and HHI 0.4
- C Concentration ratio 40 percent and HHI 0.04

Solution:

C is correct. The concentration ratio for the top four firms is $10 + 10 + 10 + 10 = 40$ percent, and the HHI is $0.10^2 \times 4 = 0.01 \times 4 = 0.04$.

SUMMARY

In this reading, we have surveyed how economists classify market structures. We have analyzed the distinctions between the different structures that are important for understanding demand and supply relations, optimal price and output, and the factors affecting long-run profitability. We also provided guidelines for identifying market structure in practice. Among our conclusions are the following:

- Economic market structures can be grouped into four categories: perfect competition, monopolistic competition, oligopoly, and monopoly.
- The categories differ because of the following characteristics: The number of producers is many in perfect and monopolistic competition, few in oligopoly, and one in monopoly. The degree of product differentiation, the pricing power of the producer, the barriers to entry of new producers, and the level of non-price competition (e.g., advertising) are all low in perfect competition, moderate in monopolistic competition, high in oligopoly, and generally highest in monopoly.
- A financial analyst must understand the characteristics of market structures in order to better forecast a firm's future profit stream.
- The optimal marginal revenue equals marginal cost. However, only in perfect competition does the marginal revenue equal price. In the remaining structures, price generally exceeds marginal revenue because a firm can sell more units only by reducing the per unit price.
- The quantity sold is highest in perfect competition. The price in perfect competition is usually lowest, but this depends on factors such as demand elasticity and increasing returns to scale (which may reduce the producer's marginal cost). Monopolists, oligopolists, and producers in monopolistic competition attempt to differentiate their products so that they can charge higher prices.
- Typically, monopolists sell a smaller quantity at a higher price. Investors may benefit from being shareholders of monopolistic firms that have large margins and substantial positive cash flows.
- Competitive firms do not earn economic profit. There will be a market compensation for the rental of capital and of management services, but the lack of pricing power implies that there will be no extra margins.

- While in the short run firms in any market structure can have economic profits, the more competitive a market is and the lower the barriers to entry, the faster the extra profits will fade. In the long run, new entrants shrink margins and push the least efficient firms out of the market.
- Oligopoly is characterized by the importance of strategic behavior. Firms can change the price, quantity, quality, and advertisement of the product to gain an advantage over their competitors. Several types of equilibrium (e.g., Nash, Cournot, kinked demand curve) may occur that affect the likelihood of each of the incumbents (and potential entrants in the long run) having economic profits. Price wars may be started to force weaker competitors to abandon the market.
- Measuring market power is complicated. Ideally, econometric estimates of the elasticity of demand and supply should be computed. However, because of the lack of reliable data and the fact that elasticity changes over time (so that past data may not apply to the current situation), regulators and economists often use simpler measures. The concentration ratio is simple, but the HHI, with little more computation required, often produces a better figure for decision making.

REFERENCES

- Banker, R.D., I. Khosla, and K.K. Sinha. 1998. "Quality and Competition." *Management Science*, vol. 44, no. 9:1179–1192.
- Chamberlin, Edward H. 1933. *The Theory of Monopolistic Competition*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press.
- Dorsey, Pat. 2004. *The Five Rules for Successful Stock Investing: Morningstar's Guide to Building Wealth and Winning in the Market*. Hoboken, NJ: John Wiley & Sons.
- Friedman, Thomas L. 2006. *The World Is Flat: A Brief History of the Twenty-first Century*. New York: Farrar, Straus and Giroux.
- Fudenberg, Drew, and Jean Tirole. 1984. "The Fat Cat Effect, the Puppy Dog Ploy and the Lean and Hungry Look." *American Economic Review*, vol. 74, no. 2:361–366.
- Gómez-Ibáñez, José A. 2006. *Regulating Infrastructure: Monopoly, Contracts, and Discretion*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press.
- Kelly, Anthony. 2011. *Decision Making Using Game Theory: An Introduction for Managers*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press.
- Krugman, Paul R. 1989. "Industrial Organization and International Trade." In *Handbook of Industrial Organization*, vol. 2. Edited by Richard Schmalensee and Robert Willig. Amsterdam: Elsevier B.V.
- McCloskey, Donald. 1985. *The Applied Theory of Price*. 2nd ed. New York: Macmillan.
- McGuigan, James R., R. Charles Moyer, and Frederick H. Harris. 2016. *Managerial Economics: Applications, Strategy and Tactics*. 14th ed. Mason, OH: Thomson South-Western.
- Porter, Michael E. 2008. "The Five Competitive Forces that Shape Strategy." *Harvard Business Review*, vol. 86, no. 1:78–93.
- Nicholson, Walter, and Christopher M. Snyder. 2016. *Microeconomic Theory: Basic Principles and Extensions*. 12th ed. Mason, OH: Thomson South-Western.
- Schumpeter, Joseph A. 1942. *Capitalism, Socialism and Democracy*. New York: HarperCollins.
- von Stackelberg, Heinrich. 1952. *The Theory of the Market Economy*. New York: Oxford University Press.

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

- 1 A market structure characterized by many sellers with each having some pricing power and product differentiation is *best* described as:
 - A oligopoly.
 - B perfect competition.
 - C monopolistic competition.
- 2 A market structure with relatively few sellers of a homogeneous or standardized product is *best* described as:
 - A oligopoly.
 - B monopoly.
 - C perfect competition.
- 3 Market competitors are *least likely* to use advertising as a tool of differentiation in an industry structure identified as:
 - A monopoly.
 - B perfect competition.
 - C monopolistic competition.
- 4 Upsilon Natural Gas, Inc. is a monopoly enjoying very high barriers to entry. Its marginal cost is \$40 and its average cost is \$70. A recent market study has determined the price elasticity of demand is 1.5. The company will *most likely* set its price at:
 - A \$40.
 - B \$70.
 - C \$120.
- 5 The demand schedule in a perfectly competitive market is given by $P = 93 - 1.5Q$ (for $Q \leq 62$) and the long-run cost structure of each company is:

Total cost:	$256 + 2Q + 4Q^2$
Average cost:	$256/Q + 2 + 4Q$
Marginal cost:	$2 + 8Q$

New companies will enter the market at any price greater than:

 - A 8.
 - B 66.
 - C 81.
- 6 Companies *most likely* have a well-defined supply function when the market structure is:
 - A oligopoly.
 - B perfect competition.
 - C monopolistic competition.
- 7 Aquarius, Inc. is the dominant company and the price leader in its market. One of the other companies in the market attempts to gain market share by undercutting the price set by Aquarius. The market share of Aquarius will *most likely*:
 - A increase.
 - B decrease.

- C stay the same.
- 8 SigmaSoft and ThetaTech are the dominant makers of computer system software. The market has two components: a large mass-market component in which demand is price sensitive, and a smaller performance-oriented component in which demand is much less price sensitive. SigmaSoft's product is considered to be technically superior. Each company can choose one of two strategies:
- *Open architecture (Open)*: Mass market focus allowing other software vendors to develop products for its platform.
 - *Proprietary (Prop)*: Allow only its own software applications to run on its platform.

Depending upon the strategy each company selects, their profits would be:

<p>SigmaSoft – Open</p> <p>400 600</p> <p> ThetaTech – Open</p>	<p>SigmaSoft – Prop</p> <p>650 700</p> <p> ThetaTech – Open</p>
<p>SigmaSoft – Open</p> <p>800 300</p> <p> ThetaTech – Prop</p>	<p>SigmaSoft – Prop</p> <p>600 400</p> <p> ThetaTech – Prop</p>

The Nash equilibrium for these companies is:

- A proprietary for SigmaSoft and proprietary for ThetaTech.
 - B open architecture for SigmaSoft and proprietary for ThetaTech.
 - C proprietary for SigmaSoft and open architecture for ThetaTech.
- 9 A company doing business in a monopolistically competitive market will *most likely* maximize profits when its output quantity is set such that:
- A average cost is minimized.
 - B marginal revenue equals average cost.
 - C marginal revenue equals marginal cost.
- 10 Oligopolistic pricing strategy *most likely* results in a demand curve that is:
- A kinked.
 - B vertical.
 - C horizontal.
- 11 Collusion is *less likely* in a market when:
- A the product is homogeneous.
 - B companies have similar market shares.
 - C the cost structures of companies are similar.
- 12 If companies earn economic profits in a perfectly competitive market, over the long run the supply curve will *most likely*:
- A shift to the left.
 - B shift to the right.
 - C remain unchanged.

- 13 Over time, the market share of the dominant company in an oligopolistic market will *most likely*:
- A increase.
 - B decrease.
 - C remain the same.
- 14 A government entity that regulates an authorized monopoly will *most likely* base regulated prices on:
- A marginal cost.
 - B long run average cost.
 - C first degree price discrimination.
- 15 An analyst gathers the following market share data for an industry:

Company	Sales (in millions of €)
ABC	300
Brown	250
Coral	200
Delta	150
Erie	100
All others	50

The industry's four-company concentration ratio is *closest* to:

- A 71%.
 - B 86%.
 - C 95%.
- 16 An analyst gathered the following market share data for an industry comprised of five companies:

Company	Market Share (%)
Zeta	35
Yusef	25
Xenon	20
Waters	10
Vlastos	10

The industry's three-firm Herfindahl–Hirschmann Index is *closest* to:

- A 0.185.
 - B 0.225.
 - C 0.235.
- 17 One disadvantage of the Herfindahl–Hirschmann Index is that the index:
- A is difficult to compute.
 - B fails to reflect low barriers to entry.
 - C fails to reflect the effect of mergers in the industry.
- 18 In an industry comprised of three companies, which are small-scale manufacturers of an easily replicable product unprotected by brand recognition or patents, the *most* representative model of company behavior is:
- A oligopoly.

- B perfect competition.
 - C monopolistic competition.
- 19 Deep River Manufacturing is one of many companies in an industry that make a food product. Deep River units are identical up to the point they are labeled. Deep River produces its labeled brand, which sells for \$2.20 per unit, and “house brands” for seven different grocery chains which sell for \$2.00 per unit. Each grocery chain sells both the Deep River brand and its house brand. The *best* characterization of Deep River’s market is:
- A oligopoly.
 - B perfect competition.
 - C monopolistic competition.

SOLUTIONS

- 1 C is correct. Monopolistic competition is characterized by many sellers, differentiated products, and some pricing power.
- 2 A is correct. Few sellers of a homogeneous or standardized product characterizes an oligopoly.
- 3 B is correct. The product produced in a perfectly competitive market cannot be differentiated by advertising or any other means.
- 4 C is correct. Profits are maximized when $MR = MC$. For a monopoly, $MR = P[1 - 1/E_p]$. Setting this equal to MC and solving for P :

$$\$40 = P[1 - (1/1.5)] = P \times 0.333$$

$$P = \$120$$
- 5 B is correct. The long-run competitive equilibrium occurs where $MC = AC = P$ for each company. Equating MC and AC implies $2 + 8Q = 256/Q + 2 + 4Q$. Solving for Q gives $Q = 8$. Equating MC with price gives $P = 2 + 8Q = 66$. Any price above 66 yields an economic profit because $P = MC > AC$, so new companies will enter the market.
- 6 B is correct. A company in a perfectly competitive market must accept whatever price the market dictates. The marginal cost schedule of a company in a perfectly competitive market determines its supply function.
- 7 A is correct. As prices decrease, smaller companies will leave the market rather than sell below cost. The market share of Aquarius, the price leader, will increase.
- 8 C is correct. In the Nash model, each company considers the other's reaction in selecting its strategy. In equilibrium, neither company has an incentive to change its strategy. ThetaTech is better off with open architecture regardless of what SigmaSoft decides. Given this choice, SigmaSoft is better off with a proprietary platform. Neither company will change its decision unilaterally.
- 9 C is correct. The profit maximizing choice is the level of output where marginal revenue equals marginal cost.
- 10 A is correct. The oligopolist faces two different demand structures, one for price increases and another for price decreases. Competitors will lower prices to match a price reduction, but will not match a price increase. The result is a kinked demand curve.
- 11 B is correct. When companies have similar market shares, competitive forces tend to outweigh the benefits of collusion.
- 12 B is correct. The economic profit will attract new entrants to the market and encourage existing companies to expand capacity.
- 13 B is correct. The dominant company's market share tends to decrease as profits attract entry by other companies.
- 14 B is correct. This allows the investors to receive a normal return for the risk they are taking in the market.
- 15 B is correct. The top four companies in the industry comprise 86 percent of industry sales: $(300 + 250 + 200 + 150)/(300 + 250 + 200 + 150 + 100 + 50) = 900/1050 = 86\%$.
- 16 B is correct. The three-firm Herfindahl–Hirschmann Index is $0.35^2 + 0.25^2 + 0.20^2 = 0.225$.

- 17 B is correct. The Herfindahl–Hirschmann Index does not reflect low barriers to entry that may restrict the market power of companies currently in the market.
- 18 B is correct. The credible threat of entry holds down prices and multiple incumbents are offering undifferentiated products.
- 19 C is correct. There are many competitors in the market, but some product differentiation exists, as the price differential between Deep River’s brand and the house brands indicates.

READING

16

Aggregate Output, Prices, and Economic Growth

by Paul R. Kutasovic, PhD, CFA, and Richard Fritz, PhD

Paul R. Kutasovic, PhD, CFA, is at New York Institute of Technology (USA). Richard Fritz, PhD, is at the School of Economics at Georgia Institute of Technology (USA).

LEARNING OUTCOMES

<i>Mastery</i>	<i>The candidate should be able to:</i>
<input type="checkbox"/>	a. calculate and explain gross domestic product (GDP) using expenditure and income approaches;
<input type="checkbox"/>	b. compare the sum-of-value-added and value-of-final-output methods of calculating GDP;
<input type="checkbox"/>	c. compare nominal and real GDP and calculate and interpret the GDP deflator;
<input type="checkbox"/>	d. compare GDP, national income, personal income, and personal disposable income;
<input type="checkbox"/>	e. explain the fundamental relationship among saving, investment, the fiscal balance, and the trade balance;
<input type="checkbox"/>	f. explain the IS and LM curves and how they combine to generate the aggregate demand curve;
<input type="checkbox"/>	g. explain the aggregate supply curve in the short run and long run;
<input type="checkbox"/>	h. explain causes of movements along and shifts in aggregate demand and supply curves;
<input type="checkbox"/>	i. describe how fluctuations in aggregate demand and aggregate supply cause short-run changes in the economy and the business cycle;
<input type="checkbox"/>	j. distinguish between the following types of macroeconomic equilibria: long-run full employment, short-run recessionary gap, short-run inflationary gap, and short-run stagflation;
<input type="checkbox"/>	k. explain how a short-run macroeconomic equilibrium may occur at a level above or below full employment;
<input type="checkbox"/>	l. analyze the effect of combined changes in aggregate supply and demand on the economy;

(continued)

LEARNING OUTCOMES

<i>Mastery</i>	<i>The candidate should be able to:</i>
<input type="checkbox"/>	m. describe sources, measurement, and sustainability of economic growth;
<input type="checkbox"/>	n. describe the production function approach to analyzing the sources of economic growth;
<input type="checkbox"/>	o. distinguish between input growth and growth of total factor productivity as components of economic growth.

1

INTRODUCTION

In the field of economics, *microeconomics* is the study of the economic activity and behavior of individual economic units, such as a household, a company, or a market for a particular good or service, and *macroeconomics* is the study of the aggregate activities of households, companies, and markets. Macroeconomics focuses on national aggregates, such as total *investment*, the amount spent by all businesses on plant and equipment; total *consumption*, the amount spent by all households on goods and services; the rate of change in the general level of prices; and the overall level of interest rates.

Macroeconomic analysis examines a nation's aggregate output and income, its competitive and comparative advantages, the productivity of its labor force, its price level and inflation rate, and the actions of its national government and central bank. The objective of macroeconomic analysis is to address such fundamental questions as:

- What is an economy's aggregate output, and how is aggregate income measured?
- What factors determine the level of aggregate output/income for an economy?
- What are the levels of aggregate demand and aggregate supply of goods and services within the country?
- Is the level of output increasing or decreasing, and at what rate?
- Is the general price level stable, rising, or falling?
- Is unemployment rising or falling?
- Are households spending or saving more?
- Are workers able to produce more output for a given level of inputs?
- Are businesses investing in and expanding their productive capacity?
- Are exports (imports) rising or falling?

From an investment perspective, investors must be able to evaluate a country's current economic environment and to forecast its future economic environment in order to identify asset classes and securities that will benefit from economic trends occurring within that country. Macroeconomic variables—such as the level of inflation, unemployment, consumption, government spending, and investment—affect the overall level of activity within a country. They also have different impacts on the growth and profitability of industries within a country, the companies within those industries, and the returns of the securities issued by those companies.

This reading is organized as follows: Section 2 describes gross domestic product and related measures of domestic output and income. Section 3 discusses short-run and long-run aggregate demand and supply curves, the causes of shifts and movements

along those curves, and factors that affect equilibrium levels of output, prices, and interest rates. Section 4 discusses sources, sustainability, and measures of economic growth. A summary and practice problems complete the reading.

AGGREGATE OUTPUT AND INCOME

2

The **aggregate output** of an economy is the value of all the goods and services produced in a specified period of time. The **aggregate income** of an economy is the value of all the payments earned by the suppliers of factors used in the production of goods and services. Because the value of the output produced must accrue to the factors of production, aggregate output and aggregate income within an economy must be equal.

There are four broad forms of payments (i.e., income): compensation of employees, rent, interest, and profits. Compensation of employees includes wages and benefits (primarily employer contributions to private pension plans and health insurance) that individuals receive in exchange for providing labor. **Rent** is payment for the use of property. **Interest** is payment for lending funds. **Profit** is the return that owners of a company receive for the use of their capital and the assumption of financial risk when making their investments. Although businesses are the direct owners of much of the property and physical capital in the economy, by virtue of owning the businesses, households are the ultimate owners of these assets and hence the ultimate recipients of the profits. In reality, of course, a portion of profits are usually retained within businesses to help finance maintenance and expansion of capacity. Similarly, because the government is viewed as operating on a non-profit basis, any revenue it receives from ownership of companies and/or property may be viewed as being passed back to households in the form of lower taxes. Therefore, for simplicity, it is standard in macroeconomics to attribute all income to the household sector unless the analysis depends on a more precise accounting.

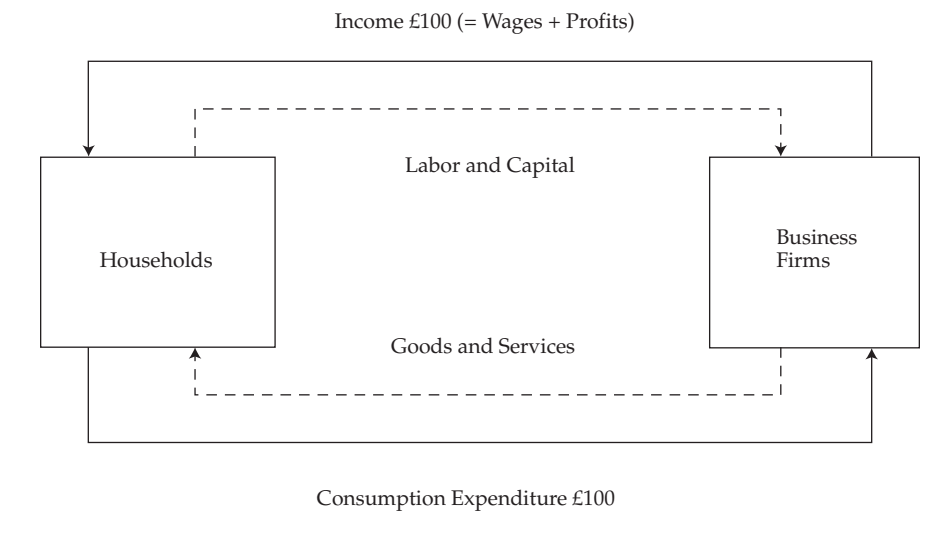
Aggregate *expenditure*, the total amount spent on the goods and services produced in the (domestic) economy during the period, must also be equal to aggregate output and aggregate income. However, some of this expenditure may come from foreigners in the form of net exports.¹ Thus, aggregate output, aggregate income, and aggregate expenditure all refer to different ways of decomposing the same quantity.

Exhibit 1 illustrates the flow of inputs, output, income, and expenditures in a very simple economy. Households supply the factors of production (labor and capital) to businesses in exchange for wages and profit (aggregate income) totaling £100. These flows are shown by the top two arrows. Companies use the inputs to produce goods and services (aggregate output) which they sell to households (aggregate expenditure) for £100. The output and expenditure flows are shown by the bottom two arrows. Aggregate output, income, and expenditure are all equal to £100.

In this simplified example, households spend all of their income on domestically produced goods and services. They do not buy foreign goods, save for the future, or pay taxes. Similarly, businesses do not sell to foreigners or the government and do not invest to increase their productive capacity. These important components of the economy will be added in Section 2.2. But first we need to discuss how output and income are measured.

¹ Note that “aggregate expenditure” as defined here does *not* equal the amount spent by *domestic* residents on goods and services because it includes exports (purchases of domestic products by foreigners) and excludes imports (purchases of foreign products by domestic residents). Thus, spending by domestic residents does not necessarily equal domestic income/output. Indeed, within any given period, it usually does not. This will be explained in more detail in Section 2.2.3.

Exhibit 1 Output, Income, and Expenditure in a Simple Economy: The Circular Flow



2.1 Gross Domestic Product

Gross domestic product (GDP) measures

- the market value of all final goods and services produced within the economy in a given period of time (output definition) or, equivalently,
- the aggregate income earned by all households, all companies, and the government within the economy in a given period of time (income definition).

Intuitively, GDP measures the flow of output and income in the economy.² GDP represents the broadest measure of the value of economic activity occurring within a country during a given period of time.

Therefore, GDP can be determined in two different manners. In the income approach, GDP is calculated as the total amount earned by households and companies in the economy. In the expenditure approach, GDP is calculated as the total amount spent on the goods and services produced within the economy during a given period. For the economy as a whole, total income must equal total expenditures, so the two approaches yield the same result.

Many developed countries use a standardized methodology for measuring GDP. This methodology is described in the official handbook of the Organisation for Economic Co-Operation and Development (Paris: OECD Publishing). The OECD reports the national accounts for many developed nations. In the United States, the National Income and Product Accounts (also called NIPA, or national accounts, for short) is the official US government accounting of all the income and expenditure flows in the US economy. The national accounts are the responsibility of the US Department of

² Some textbooks and countries measure flows of income and output by using gross national product (GNP) rather than GDP. The difference is subtle but can be important in some contexts. GDP includes production within national borders regardless of whether the factors of production (labor, capital, and property) are owned domestically or by foreigners. In contrast, GNP measures output produced by domestically owned factors of production regardless of whether the production occurs domestically or overseas.

Commerce and are published in its *Survey of Current Business*. In Canada, similar data are available from Statistics Canada, whereas in China, the National Bureau of Statistics of China provides GDP data.

To ensure that GDP is measured consistently over time and across countries, the following three broad criteria are used:

- All goods and services included in the calculation of GDP *must be produced during the measurement period*. Therefore, items produced in previous periods—such as houses, cars, machinery, or equipment—are excluded. In addition, transfer payments from the government sector to individuals, such as unemployment compensation or welfare benefits, are excluded. Capital gains that accrue to individuals when their assets appreciate in value are also excluded.
- The only goods and services included in the calculation of GDP are those whose value *can be determined by being sold in the market*. This enables the price of goods or services to be objectively determined. For example, a liter of extra virgin olive oil is more valuable than a liter of spring water because the market price of extra virgin olive oil is higher than the market price of spring water. The value of labor used in activities that are not sold on the market, such as commuting, gardening, etc., is also excluded from GDP. By-products of production processes are also excluded if they have no explicit market value, such as air pollution, water pollution, and acid rain.
- Only the market value of final goods and services is included in GDP. Final goods and services are those that are not resold. *Intermediate goods* are goods that are resold or used to produce another good.³ The value of intermediate goods is excluded from GDP because additional value is added during the production process, and all the value added during the entire production process is reflected in the final sale price of the finished good. An alternative approach to measuring GDP is summing all the value added during the production and distribution processes. The most direct approach, however, is to sum the market value of all the final goods and services produced within the economy in a given time period.

Two distinct, but closely related, measurement methods can be used to calculate GDP based on expenditures: value of final output and sum of value added. These two methods are illustrated in Exhibit 2. In this example, a farmer sells wheat to a miller. The miller grinds the wheat into flour and sells it to a baker who makes bread and sells it to a retailer. Finally, the bread is sold to retail customers. The wheat and flour are both intermediate goods in this example because they are used as inputs to produce another good. Thus, they are not counted (directly) in GDP. For the purposes of GDP, the value of the final product is €1.00, which includes the value added by the bread retailer as a distributor of the bread. If, in contrast, the baker sold directly to the public, the value counted in GDP would be the price at which the baker sold the bread, €0.78. The left column of the exhibit shows the total revenue received at each stage of the process, whereas the right column shows the value added at each stage. Note that the market value of the final product (€1.00) is equal to the sum of the value added at each of the stages. Thus, the contribution to GDP can be measured as either the final sale price or the sum of the value added at each stage.

³ “Final goods” should not be confused with so-called final sales, and “intermediate goods” should not be confused with inventories. GDP includes both final sales to customers and increases in companies’ inventories. If sales exceed current production, then GDP is less than final sales by the amount of goods sold out of inventory.

Exhibit 2 Value of Final Product Equals Income Created

	Receipts at Each Stage (€)	Value Added (= Income Created) at Each Stage (€)	
Receipts of farmer from miller	0.15	0.15	Value added by farmer
Receipts of miller from baker	0.46	0.31	Value added by miller
Receipts of baker from retailer	0.78	0.32	Value added by baker
Receipts of retailer from final customer	1.00	0.22	Value added by retailer
	1.00	1.00	
	Value of final output	Total value added = Total income created	

EXAMPLE 1**Contribution of Automobile Production to GDP**

Exhibit 3 provides simplified information on the cost of producing an automobile in the United States at various stages of the production process. The example assumes the automobile is produced and sold domestically and assumes no imported material is used. Calculate the contribution of automobile production to GDP using the value-added method, and show that it is equivalent to the expenditure method. What impact would the use of imported steel or plastics have on GDP?

Exhibit 3 Cost of Producing Automobiles

Stage of Production	Sales Value (\$)
1 Production of basic materials	
Steel	1,000
Plastics	3,000
Semiconductors	1,000
2 Assembly of automobile (manufacturer price)	15,000
3 Wholesale price for automobile dealer	16,000
4 Retail price	18,000

Solution:

GDP includes only the value of final goods and ignores intermediate goods in order to avoid double counting. Thus, the final sale price of \$18,000 and not the total sales value of \$54,000 (summing sales at all the levels of production) would be included in GDP. Alternatively, we can avoid double counting by calculating and summing the value added at each stage. At each stage of production, the difference between what a company pays for its inputs and what it receives for the product is its contribution to GDP. The value added for each stage of production is computed as follows:

Stage of Production	Sales Value (\$)	Value Added (\$)	
1 Production of basic materials			
Steel	1,000	1,000	
Plastics	3,000	3,000	
Semiconductors	1,000	1,000	
Total Inputs		5,000	(sum of 3 inputs)
2 Assembly of car (manufacturer price)	15,000	10,000	= (15,000 – 5,000)
3 Wholesale price for car dealer	16,000	1,000	= (16,000 – 15,000)
4 Retail price	18,000	2,000	= (18,000 – 16,000)
Total expenditures	18,000		
Total value added		18,000	

Thus, the sum of the value added by each stage of production is equal to \$18,000, which is equal to the final selling price of the automobile. If some of the inputs (steel, plastics, or semiconductors) are imported, the value added would be reduced by the amount paid for the imports.

2.1.1 Goods and Services Included at Imputed Values

As a general rule, only the value of goods and services whose *value can be determined by being sold in the market* are included in the measurement of GDP. Owner-occupied housing and government services, however, are two examples of services that are not sold in the marketplace but are still included in the measurement of GDP.

When a household (individual) rents a place to live, he or she is buying housing services. The household pays the owner of the property rent in exchange for shelter. The income that a property owner receives is included in the calculation of GDP. However, when a household purchases a home, it is implicitly paying itself in exchange for the shelter. As a result, the government must estimate (impute) a value for this owner-occupied rent, which is then added to GDP.

The value of government services provided by police officers, firemen, judges, and other government officials is a key factor that affects the level of economic activity. However, valuing these services is difficult because they are not sold in a market like other services; individual customers cannot decide how much to consume or how much they are willing to pay. Therefore, these services are simply included in GDP at their cost (e.g., wages paid) with no value added attributed to the production process.

For simplicity and global comparability, the number of goods and services with imputed values that are included in the measurement of GDP are limited. In general, non-market activity is excluded from GDP. Thus, activities performed for one's own benefit, such as cooking, cleaning, and home repair, are excluded. Activities in the so-called underground economy are also excluded. The underground economy reflects economic activity that people hide from the government either because it is illegal or because they are attempting to evade taxation. Undocumented laborers who are paid "off the books" are one example. The illegal drug trade is another.⁴ Similarly, barter transactions, such as neighbors exchanging services with each other (for example, helping your neighbor repair her fence in exchange for her plowing your garden), are excluded from GDP.

⁴ Member states of the European Union are expected to measure and include illegal activities for statistical and comparative purposes. Guidelines for what activities to include and how to measure them have been established; member states were required to comply with the guidelines effective September 2014.

Exhibit 4 shows the estimated size of the underground economy in various countries as a percentage of nominal GDP. The estimates range from 8 percent in the United States to 60 percent in Peru. Based on these estimates, the US national income accounts fail to account for roughly 7.4 percent ($= 8/108$) of economic activity, whereas in Peru, the national accounts miss roughly 37.5 percent ($= 60/160$) of the economy. For most of the countries shown, the national accounts miss 12–20 percent of the economy.

Exhibit 4 Underground Economy as a Percentage of Nominal GDP (2006)

Country	Underground Economy as a Percentage of Nominal GDP (%)
Peru	60.0
Mexico	32.1
South Korea	27.5
Costa Rica	26.8
Greece	26.0
India	24.4
Italy	23.1
Spain	20.2
Sweden	16.3
Germany	15.4
Canada	14.1
China	14.0
France	13.2
Japan	8.9
United States	8.0

Source: Friedrich Schneider and Andreas Buehm, Linz University, 2009.

It should be clear from these estimates of the underground economy that the reliability of official GDP data varies considerably across countries. Failure to capture a significant portion of activity is one problem. Poor data collection practices and unreliable statistical methods within the official accounts are also potential problems.

2.1.2 Nominal and Real GDP

In order to evaluate an economy's health, it is often useful to remove the effect of changes in the general price level on GDP because higher (lower) income driven solely by changes in the price level is not indicative of a higher (lower) level of economic activity. To accomplish this, economists use **real GDP**, which indicates what would have been the total expenditures on the output of goods and services if prices were unchanged. **Per capita real GDP** (real GDP divided by the size of the population) has often been used as a measure of the average standard of living in a country.

Suppose we are interested in measuring the GDP of an economy. For the sake of simplicity, suppose that the economy consists of a single automobile maker and that in 2009, 300,000 vehicles are produced with an average market price of €18,750. GDP in 2009 would be €5,625,000,000. Economists define the value of goods and services measured at current prices as **nominal GDP**. Suppose that in 2010, 300,000 vehicles are again produced but that the average market price for a vehicle increases by 7 percent to €20,062.50. GDP in 2010 would be €6,018,750,000. Even though no

more cars were produced in 2010 than in 2009, it appears that the economy grew by $(€6,018,750,000/€5,625,000,000) - 1 = 7\%$ between 2009 and 2010, although it actually did not grow at all.

Nominal and real GDP can be expressed as

$$\text{Nominal GDP}_t = P_t \times Q_t$$

where

P_t = Prices in year t

Q_t = Quantity produced in year t

$$\text{Real GDP}_t = P_B \times Q_t$$

where

P_B = Prices in the base year

Taking the base year to be 2009 and putting in the 2009 and 2010 numbers gives:

$$\text{Nominal GDP}_{2009} = (€18,750 \times 300,000) = €5,625,000,000$$

$$\text{Real GDP}_{2009} = (€18,750 \times 300,000) = €5,625,000,000$$

$$\text{Nominal GDP}_{2010} = (€20,062.50 \times 300,000) = €6,018,750,000$$

$$\text{Real GDP}_{2010} = (€18,750 \times 300,000) = €5,625,000,000$$

In this example, real GDP did not change between 2009 and 2010 because the total output remained the same: 300,000 vehicles. The difference between nominal GDP in 2010 and real GDP in 2010 was the 7 percent inflation rate.

Now suppose that the auto manufacturer produced 3 percent more vehicles in 2010 than in 2009 (i.e., production in 2010 was 309,000 vehicles). Real GDP would increase by 3 percent from 2009 to 2010. With a 7 percent increase in prices, nominal GDP for 2010 would now be

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Nominal GDP}_{2010} &= (1.03 \times 300,000) \times (1.07 \times €18,750) \\ &= (309,000 \times €20,062.50) \\ &= €6,199,312,500 \end{aligned}$$

The **implicit price deflator for GDP**, or simply the **GDP deflator**, is defined as

$$\text{GDP deflator} = \frac{\text{Value of current year output at current year prices}}{\text{Value of current year output at base year prices}} \times 100$$

Thus, in the example the GDP deflator for 2010 is $[(309,000 \times €20,062.50) / (309,000 \times €18,750)](100) = (1.07)(100) = 107$. The GDP deflator broadly measures the aggregate changes in prices across the overall economy, and hence changes in the deflator provide a useful gauge of inflation within the economy.

Real GDP is equal to nominal GDP divided by the GDP deflator scaled by 100:

$$\text{Real GDP} = [\text{Nominal GDP} / (\text{GDP deflator} / 100)]$$

This relation gives the GDP deflator its name. That is, the measure of GDP in terms of current prices, nominal GDP, is adjusted for inflation by dividing it by the deflator. The expression also shows that the GDP deflator is the ratio of nominal GDP to real GDP scaled by 100:

$$\text{GDP deflator} = (\text{Nominal GDP} / \text{Real GDP}) \times 100$$

Thus, real GDP for 2010 would be

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Real GDP}_{2010} &= [\text{Nominal GDP} / (\text{GDP deflator} / 100)] \\ &= [€6,199,312,500 / (107 / 100)] \\ &= €5,793,750,000 \end{aligned}$$

Note that €5,793,750,000 represents 3 percent real growth over 2009 GDP and 3 percent higher real GDP for 2010 than under the assumption of no growth in unit car sales in 2010.

What would be the increase in *nominal* GDP for 2010 compared with 2009 with the 3 percent greater automobile production and 7 percent inflation?

$$\begin{aligned} & (\text{Nominal GDP}_{2010} / \text{Nominal GDP}_{2009}) - 1 \\ &= (\text{€6,199,312,500} / \text{€5,625,000,000}) - 1 \\ &= 0.102 \end{aligned}$$

So, nominal GDP would increase by 10.2 percent, which equals $[(1.07 \times 1.03) - 1]$ or approximately $7\% + 3\% = 10\%$. Which number is more informative about growth in economic activity, 3 percent real growth or 10.2 percent nominal growth? The real growth rate is more informative because it exactly captures increases in output. Nominal growth, by blending price changes with output changes, is less directly informative about output changes. In summary, real economic growth is measured by the percentage change in real GDP. When measuring real economic activity or when comparing one nation's economy to another, real GDP and real GDP growth should be used because they more closely reflect the quantity of output available for consumption and investment.

EXAMPLE 2

Calculating the GDP Deflator

John Lambert is an equity analyst with Equitytrust, a Canadian investment management firm that primarily invests in Canadian stocks and bonds. The investment policy committee for the firm is concerned about the possibility of inflation. The implicit GDP deflator is an important measure of the overall price level in the economy, and changes in the deflator provide an important gauge of inflation within the economy. GDP data have been released by Statistics Canada and are shown in Exhibit 5. Lambert is asked by the committee to use the GDP data to calculate the implicit GDP price deflator from 2005 to 2009 and the inflation rate for 2009.

Exhibit 5 Real and Nominal GDP for Canada

	Seasonally adjusted at annual rates (SAAR)				
	2005	2006	2007	2008	2009
GDP at market prices (million C\$)	1,373,845	1,450,405	1,529,589	1,599,608	1,527,258
Real GDP (million 2002 C\$)	1,247,807	1,283,033	1,311,260	1,318,054	1,285,604

Solution:

The implicit GDP price deflator measures inflation across all sectors of the economy, including the consumer, business, government, exports, and imports. It is calculated as the ratio of nominal to real GDP and reported as an index number with the base year deflator equal to 100. The implicit GDP price deflator for the Canadian economy for 2009 is calculated as $(1,527,258 / 1,285,604) \times 100 = 118.8$. The results for the other years are shown in the following table:

	2005	2006	2007	2008	2009
GDP at market prices (million C\$)	1,373,845	1,450,405	1,529,589	1,599,608	1,527,258
Real GDP (million 2002 C\$)	1,247,807	1,283,033	1,311,260	1,318,054	1,285,604
Implicit GDP price deflator	110.1	113.0	116.6	121.4	118.8

The inflation rate is calculated as a percentage change in the index. For 2009, the annual inflation rate is equal to $[(118.8/121.4) - 1]$ or -2.1 percent. This shows that Canada actually experienced deflation in 2009 even though prices are still above their level in 2007.

2.2 The Components of GDP

Having defined GDP and discussed how it is measured, we can now consider the major components of GDP, the flows among the four major sectors of the economy—the household sector, the business sector, the government sector, and the foreign or external sector (comprising transactions with the “rest of the world”)—and the markets through which they interact. An expression for GDP, based on the expenditure approach, is

$$GDP = C + I + G + (X - M) \quad (1)$$

where

C = Consumer spending on final goods and services

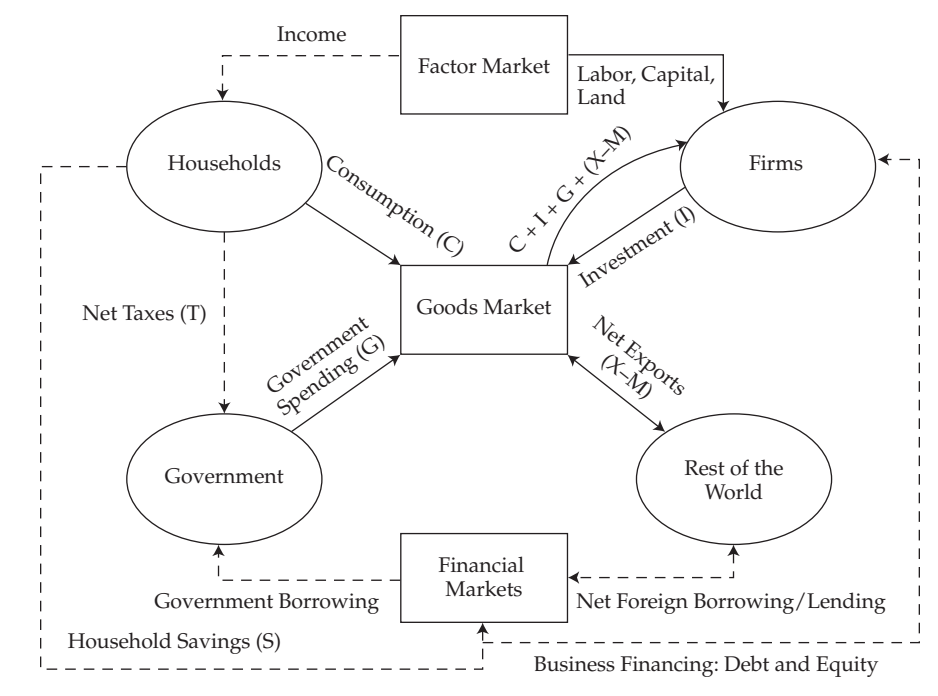
I = Gross private domestic investment, which includes business investment in capital goods (e.g., plant and equipment) and changes in inventory (**inventory investment**)

G = Government spending on final goods and services

X = Exports

M = Imports

Exhibit 6 shows the flow of expenditures, income, and financing among the four sectors of the economy and the three principal markets. In the exhibit, solid arrows point in the direction of expenditure on final goods and services. For simplicity, corresponding flows of output are not shown separately. The flow of factors of production is also shown with a solid arrow. Financial flows, including income and net taxes, are shown with dashed arrows pointing to the recipient of funds.

Exhibit 6 Output, Income, and Expenditure Flows

2.2.1 The Household and Business Sectors

The very top portion of Exhibit 6 shows the services of labor, land, and capital flowing through the *factor market* to business firms and the flow of income back from firms to households. Households spend part of their income on consumption (C) and save (S) part of their income for future consumption. Current consumption expenditure flows through the *goods market* to the business sector. Household saving flows into the *financial markets* where it provides funding for businesses that need to borrow or raise equity capital. Firms borrow or raise equity primarily to finance investment (I) in inventory, property, plant, and equipment. Investment (I) is shown flowing from firms through the goods market and back to firms because the business sector both demands and produces the goods needed to build productive capacity (*capital goods*).

In most developed economies, like Italy and the United States, expenditures on capital goods represent a significant portion of GDP. Investments (expenditures) on capital goods accounted for approximately 21.1 percent of Italy's GDP in 2007, while in the United States investments accounted for approximately 18.4 percent of GDP. In some developing countries, notably China (40.0 percent) and India (33.8 percent), investment spending accounts for a substantially larger share of the economy.⁵ As we will examine in greater detail later, investment spending is an important determinant of an economy's long-term growth rate. At the same time, investment spending is the most volatile component of the economy, and changes in capital spending, especially spending on inventories, are one of the main factors causing short-run economic fluctuations.

⁵ See Exhibit 27 later in this reading for investment details for other countries. OECD.Stat Extracts: Country Statistical Profiles 2009 (stats.oecd.org) and *Economic Report of the President* (Washington, DC: US Government Printing Office, 2010): Table B-12, page 345.

2.2.2 The Government Sector

The government sector collects taxes from households and businesses. For simplicity, only the taxes collected from the household sector are shown in Exhibit 6. In turn, the government sector purchases goods and services (G) from the business sector. For example, the government sector hires construction companies to build roads, schools, and other infrastructure goods. Government expenditure (G) also reflects spending on the military, police and fire protection, the postal service, and other government services. Provision of these services makes the government a major source of employment in most countries. To keep Exhibit 6 simple, however, government employment and the corresponding income are not explicitly shown.

Governments also make transfer payments to households. In general, these are designed to address social objectives such as maintaining minimum living standards, providing health care, and assisting the unemployed with retraining and temporary support. In Exhibit 6, transfer payments are subtracted from taxes and reflected in net taxes (T).

Transfer payments are not included in government expenditures on goods and services (G) because they represent a monetary transfer by the government of tax revenue back to individuals with no corresponding receipt of goods or services. The household spending facilitated by the transfer payments is, of course, included in consumption (C) and, hence, GDP. It is worth noting that transfers do not always take the form of direct payments to beneficiaries. Instead, the government may pay for or even directly provide goods or services to individuals. For example, universal health care programs often work in this way.

If, as is usually the case, government expenditure (G) exceeds net taxes (T), then the government has a *fiscal deficit* and must borrow in the financial markets. Thus, the government may compete with businesses in the financial markets for the funds generated by household saving. The only other potential source of funds in an economy is capital flows from the rest of the world. These will be discussed in the next section.

In 2007, the ratio of general government spending (which includes central government as well as state, provincial, and local government) to GDP in Italy was 44.8 percent while in the United States it was 31.2 percent. In countries where the government provides more services, such as universal health care in Italy, the government's contribution to GDP is greater. France's government sector represents 46.3 percent of GDP. In other countries, the public sector makes up a smaller share. For example, in Costa Rica, which has no standing army or navy, government spending is 16.1 percent of GDP. Exhibit 7 shows data on tax revenues, general government spending, and transfer payments as a share of nominal GDP.

Exhibit 7 General Government Spending and Taxes as a Percentage of GDP (2007)

Country	General Government Tax Revenues as a Percentage of GDP	General Government Spending as a Percentage of GDP		
		Total	Goods and Services and Debt Service	Transfer Payments
Canada	33.3%	31.9%	17.1%	14.8%
Mexico	20.5	22.6	Not available	Not available
United States	28.3	31.2	19.5	11.7
Japan	28.1	30.5	14.9	15.6
South Korea	28.7	24.0	15.7	8.3
France	43.6	46.3	20.2	26.1
Germany	36.2	36.0	13.7	22.3

(continued)

Exhibit 7 (Continued)

Country	General Government Tax Revenues as a Percentage of GDP	General Government Spending as a Percentage of GDP		
		Total	Goods and Services and Debt Service	Transfer Payments
Greece	31.3	36.7	19.8	16.9
Italy	43.3	44.8	21.5	23.3
Spain	37.2	35.3	16.6	18.7
Sweden	48.2	44.5	17.7	26.8
Costa Rica	14.0	16.1	Not available	Not available

Sources: OECD Stat Extracts: Country Statistical Profiles 2009 (stats.oecd.org) and *Revenue Statistics 1965–2008: 2009 Edition* (OECD).

2.2.3 The External Sector

Trade and capital flows involving the rest of the world are shown in the bottom right quadrant of Exhibit 6. Net exports ($X - M$) reflects the difference between the value of goods and services sold to foreigners—exports (X)—and the portion of domestic consumption (C), investment (I), and government expenditure (G) that represents purchases of goods and services from the rest of the world—imports (M).

A **balance of trade deficit** means that the domestic economy is spending more on foreign goods and services than foreign economies are spending on domestic goods and services. It also means that the country is spending more than it produces because domestic saving is not sufficient to finance domestic investment plus the government's fiscal balance. A trade deficit must be funded by borrowing from the rest of the world through the financial markets. The rest of the world is able to provide this financing because, by definition, it must be running a corresponding trade surplus and spending less than it produces.

It bears emphasizing that trade and capital flows between an economy and the rest of the world must balance. One area's deficit is another's surplus, and vice versa. This is an accounting identity that must hold. In effect, having allowed a country to run a trade deficit, foreigners must, in aggregate, finance it. However, the financing terms may or may not be attractive.

Exhibit 8 reports trade balances for the United States with selected countries. Note that Canada was the largest trading partner, both in terms of exports and imports, in 2008. China was a close second in selling goods to US markets, but China was not an important consumer of US goods. Hence, the US trade deficit with China was the largest by far. Overall, in 2008 the US balance of trade deficit was \$231,115 million.

**Exhibit 8 US International Trade in Goods—Selected Countries, 2008
(millions of US dollars)**

	Exports	Imports	Balance
Total, all countries	1,276,994	2,117,245	−840,251
Europe	321,151	440,802	−119,651
Euro area	198,538	277,728	−79,190
France	28,603	44,036	−15,433
Germany	54,209	97,597	−43,388
Italy	15,330	36,140	−20,810

Exhibit 8 (Continued)

	Exports	Imports	Balance
Canada	261,872	342,920	-81,048
Mexico	151,147	219,808	-68,661
China	69,552	337,963	-268,411
India	17,623	25,739	-8,116
Japan	64,457	139,587	-75,130

Source: *Economic Report of the President* (Washington, DC: US Government Printing Office, 2010): Table B-105, page 451.

2.3 GDP, National Income, Personal Income, and Personal Disposable Income

This section examines the calculation of GDP and other income measures in detail by means of an analysis of data from Statistics Canada.

Exhibit 9 provides data on the level of Canadian GDP and its components measured at market prices (nominal GDP), leaving certain quantities to be determined.

Exhibit 9 GDP Release for the Canadian Economy (millions of C\$ at market prices, seasonally adjusted at annual rates)

	2005	2006	2007	2008	2009
Expenditure based:					
Consumer spending	758,966	801,742	851,603	890,351	898,728
Government spending	259,857	277,608	293,608	314,329	333,942
Government gross fixed investment	37,067	41,151	45,321	50,955	59,078
Business gross fixed investment	255,596	283,382	301,885	313,574	269,394
Exports	519,435	524,075	534,718	563,948	438,553
Deduct: Imports	468,270	487,674	505,055	539,012	464,722
Change in inventories*	10,614	9,362	8,266	5,472	-8,180
Statistical discrepancy	580	759	-757	-9	465
GDP at Market Prices	1,373,845	1,450,405	1,529,589	1,599,608	TBD
Income based:					
Wages, salaries, and supplementary labor income	695,093	743,392	784,885	818,613	819,066
Corporate profits before tax**	185,855	194,024	203,392	210,756	149,438
Government business enterprise profits before taxes	15,293	14,805	15,493	16,355	12,975
Interest income	61,421	66,404	71,589	83,998	63,947
Unincorporated business net income, including rent	85,234	86,750	90,411	94,559	99,879
Taxes less subsidies on factors of production	61,982	64,536	67,900	71,094	70,604
Taxes less subsidies on products	93,302	96,052	98,816	94,840	93,030

(continued)

Exhibit 9 (Continued)

	2005	2006	2007	2008	2009
National Income	1,198,180	1,265,963	1,332,486	1,390,215	TBD
Statistical discrepancy	-581	-759	757	10	-466
Capital consumption allowance	176,246	185,201	196,346	209,383	218,785
GDP at Market Prices	1,373,845	1,450,405	1,529,589	1,599,608	TBD
Undistributed corporate profits	91,926	96,793	90,829	110,431	56,969
Corporate income taxes	51,631	47,504	54,867	53,176	34,319
Transfer payments: government to consumer	136,247	145,754	154,609	163,979	174,390
Personal Income	1,035,586	1,106,832	1,174,683	1,224,653	TBD
Personal Disposable Income	794,269	853,190	901,634	949,484	965,628
Interest paid to business	14,029	16,978	19,063	19,558	18,115
Consumer transfers to foreigners	4,395	4,483	5,533	5,117	4,737
Personal saving	16,878	29,987	25,435	34,458	TBD

* Includes change in government inventory.

** Includes inventory valuation adjustment.

Source: Statistics Canada.

The exhibit shows the two approaches to measuring GDP: 1) expenditures on final output measured as the sum of sales to the final users and 2) the sum of the factor incomes generated in the production of final output. In theory, the two approaches should provide the same estimate of GDP. As shown in the exhibit, however, in practice they differ because of the use of different data sources. The difference is accounted for by a *statistical discrepancy*. Market analysts more closely follow the expenditure approach because the expenditure data are more timely and reliable than data for the income components.⁶

Using the expenditure approach, Statistics Canada measures Canadian GDP as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{GDP} = & \text{Consumer spending on goods and services} \\
 & + \text{Business gross fixed investment} \\
 & + \text{Change in inventories} \\
 & + \text{Government spending on goods and services} \\
 & + \text{Government gross fixed investment} \\
 & + \text{Exports} - \text{Imports} \\
 & + \text{Statistical discrepancy}
 \end{aligned}$$

⁶ As shown in Exhibit 9, Statistics Canada divides the total statistical discrepancy roughly equally (with opposite signs) between the income- and expenditure-based measures of GDP. In the US national accounts, the statistical discrepancy appears only in the income-based breakdown of GDP because the expenditures data are believed to be more accurate than the income data.

Note that the Canadian national income accounts classify a portion of government expenditures as gross fixed investment. Not all countries make this distinction. The United States, for example, does not. Also note that the change in business inventories must be included in expenditures. Otherwise, goods produced but not yet sold would be left out of GDP.

The income-based approach calculates GDP as the sum of factor incomes and essentially measures the cost of producing final output. However, two of the costs entering into the gross value of output are not really earned by a factor of production. These items, depreciation and indirect taxes, are discussed below. GDP is estimated in the income approach as follows:⁷

$$\text{GDP} = \text{National income} + \text{Capital consumption allowance} + \text{Statistical discrepancy}$$

where **national income** is the income received by all factors of production used in the generation of final output:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{National income} = & \text{Compensation of employees} \\ & + \text{Corporate and government enterprise profits before taxes} \\ & + \text{Interest income} \\ & + \text{Unincorporated business net income (proprietor's income)} \\ & + \text{Rent} \\ & + \text{Indirect business taxes less subsidies} \end{aligned}$$

Compensation of employees includes wages and supplements to wages, which are primarily payments for pensions and health insurance. Corporate profits before taxes include three items: 1) dividends paid to households, 2) undistributed corporate profits (retained earnings) that remain in the business sector, and 3) corporate taxes paid to government. Interest income is the interest paid by businesses to households, government, and foreigners to compensate them for the loan of a financial asset. Unincorporated net income, including rent, is the earnings that flow to unincorporated proprietors and farm operators for running their own business. “Indirect business taxes less subsidies” reflects taxes and subsidies included in the final price of the good or service. It is the (net) portion of national income that is directly paid to the government. In the Canadian accounts, these are measured in two ways: 1) “taxes less subsidies on products,” which includes sales taxes, fuel taxes, and import duties, and 2) “taxes less subsidies on factors of production,” which is mainly property taxes and payroll taxes.

The **capital consumption allowance** (CCA) is a measure of the wear and tear (depreciation) of the capital stock that occurs in the production of goods and services. This measure acknowledges the fact that some income/output must be allocated to replacement of the existing capital stock as it wears out. Loosely speaking, one may think of Profit + CCA as the total amount earned by capital, with the CCA being the amount that must be earned and reinvested just to maintain the existing productivity of the capital.

Along with the GDP report, Statistics Canada and other government statistical agencies provide information on personal income and saving. **Personal income** is a broad measure of household income and measures the ability of consumers to make purchases. As such, it is one of the key determinants of consumption spending. Personal

⁷ Construction of the national income accounts varies across countries. In the United States, for example, national income is defined to include income received by US-owned factors of production even if the income is generated outside the United States. To compute US GDP, the national income data must be adjusted for net foreign factor income. No adjustment is required in the Canadian data since the data are measured on a geographic basis equivalent to GDP.

income includes all income received by households, whether earned or unearned. It differs from national income in that some of the income earned by the factors of production (indirect business taxes, corporate income taxes, retained earnings) is not received by households and instead goes to the government or business sectors. Similarly, households receive some income from governments (transfer payments, such as social insurance payments, unemployment compensation, and disability payments) that is not earned. Thus, the following adjustments are made to national income in order to derive personal income:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Personal income} &= \text{National income} \\ &\quad - \text{Indirect business taxes} \\ &\quad - \text{Corporate income taxes} \\ &\quad - \text{Undistributed corporate profits} \\ &\quad + \text{Transfer payments} \end{aligned}$$

Personal disposable income (PDI) is equal to personal income less personal taxes. It measures the amount of after-tax income that households have to spend on goods and services or to save. Thus, it is the most relevant, and most closely watched, measure of income for household spending and saving decisions.

Finally, household saving is equal to PDI less three items: consumption expenditures, interest paid by consumers to business, and personal transfer payments to foreigners. The corresponding measure of saving for the business sector equals undistributed corporate profits plus the capital consumption allowance.

EXAMPLE 3

Canadian GDP Release and Other Measures of Production and Income

The investment policy committee at Equitytrust asks John Lambert to review the Canadian GDP data shown in Exhibit 9 and data from the Department of Finance Canada that show that the combined federal–provincial government deficit for 2009 was 84,249 (million C\$), with the federal deficit at 55,590 (million C\$).

- 1 Calculate 2009 GDP using the expenditure approach, and indicate how the expenditures are represented in Exhibit 6.
- 2 Calculate 2009 GDP using the income approach.
- 3 Calculate personal income for 2009.
- 4 Using the Canadian data for 2009, calculate the level of household saving (S), the saving rate, and net taxes (T) paid by the household sector. Given that the combined government budget deficit was 84,249 (million C\$) in 2009, calculate tax revenues for the Canadian economy.
- 5 Calculate the impact of foreign trade on the Canadian economy in 2009 and Canada's net foreign borrowing/lending in 2009.
- 6 Calculate the net amount of borrowing/lending by the business sector in 2009.

Solutions:

(All numbers in millions)

Solution to 1:

In the expenditure approach, nominal GDP is calculated as the sum of spending by the major sectors in the economy:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{GDP} = & \text{Consumer spending on goods and services} + \text{Business gross fixed} \\ & \text{investment} + \text{Government spending on goods and services} + \\ & \text{Government gross fixed investment} + \text{Exports} - \text{Imports} + \text{Change in} \\ & \text{inventories} + \text{Statistical discrepancy} \end{aligned}$$

Substituting the numbers from Exhibit 9,

$$\begin{aligned} \text{GDP} &= 898,728 + 269,394 + 333,942 + 59,078 + 438,553 - 464,722 - \\ & 8,180 + 465 \\ &= \text{C\$1,527,258} \end{aligned}$$

In Exhibit 6, these expenditures are represented by the arrows pointing to the goods market and by the arrow pointing back to firms labeled as $C + I + G + (X - M)$.

Solution to 2:

On the income side, nominal GDP is equal to national income plus the capital consumption allowance plus a statistical discrepancy. National income is defined as the sum of income received by the factors of production and is given by

$$\begin{aligned} \text{National income} = & \text{Compensation of employees} + \text{Corporate and govern-} \\ & \text{ment enterprise profits before taxes} + \text{Interest income} + \\ & \text{Unincorporated business net income (proprietor's income)} \\ & + \text{Rent} + \text{Inventory valuation adjustment} + \text{Indirect busi-} \\ & \text{ness taxes} - \text{Subsidies} \end{aligned}$$

Substituting in the numbers from Exhibit 9, we get C\$1,308,939, where indirect business taxes are equal to $70,604 + 93,030 = \text{C\$163,634}$. Using this result,

$$\text{GDP} = 1,308,939 + 218,785 - 466 = \text{C\$1,527,258}$$

Solution to 3:

Personal income is calculated as

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Personal income} = & \text{National income} - \text{Indirect business taxes} - \text{Corporate} \\ & \text{income taxes} - \text{Undistributed corporate profits} + \text{Transfer} \\ & \text{payments} \end{aligned}$$

Substituting in the numbers from Exhibit 9,

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Personal income} &= 1,308,939 - (70,604 + 93,030) - 34,319 - 56,969 + \\ & 174,390 \\ &= \text{C\$1,228,407} \end{aligned}$$

Solution to 4:

Household saving is equal to personal disposable income less three items: consumption expenditures, interest paid by consumers to business, and personal transfer payments to foreigners. Consumption (C) is given in Exhibit 9 as C\$898,728. Substituting the numbers, saving (S) = $965,628 - 898,728 - 18,115 - 4,737 = \text{C\$44,048}$.

$$\text{The Canadian saving rate for 2009} = (44,048/965,628) = 4.6\%$$

Net taxes paid by the household sector consists of two components: 1) taxes paid by households to the government minus 2) government transfer payments to households. From Exhibit 9, government transfer payments to households

for 2009 were C\$174,390. The tax outlay for households in 2009 is the difference between personal income and personal disposable income. Therefore, tax payments by households to government equal

$$1,228,407 - 965,628 = \text{C}\$262,779$$

Thus, net taxes going to government (T) from the household sector is C\$88,389. However, personal taxes do not cover all sources of receipts for government. Government receipts also come from such sources as corporate income taxes, indirect taxes on businesses and consumers, and contributions for social insurance. The total tax receipts for all levels of government can be estimated from the deficit information. From Exhibit 9, government spending for 2009 totaled $(333,942 + 59,078) = \text{C}\$393,020$. Therefore, total tax revenue from all sources is equal to 393,020 minus 84,249 or C\$308,771.

Solution to 5:

The international sector had a large impact on the Canadian economy in 2009. Exports declined sharply—by 22.2 percent—going from C\$563,948 in 2008 to C\$438,553 in 2009. Imports declined from C\$539,012 in 2008 to C\$464,722 in 2009, a 13.8 percent decrease. As a result, the Canadian economy moved from a trade surplus of C\$24,936 in 2008 to a deficit of C\$26,169 in 2009. This huge swing in the trade balance had a very significant negative impact on the Canadian economy and subtracted from GDP growth.

Canada funded the large trade deficit in 2009 by borrowing C\$26,169 from the rest of the world through the financial markets. As discussed in Section 2.2.3, trade and capital flows between an economy and the rest of the world must balance. A trade deficit must be funded by a capital inflow.

Solution to 6:

Borrowing by the business sector depends on the level of saving in the sector (i.e., internally generated funds) and the level of business investment in both fixed assets and inventories (i.e., the amount that must be financed). For 2009, gross saving in the business sector is equal to undistributed corporate profits (56,969) plus the capital consumption allowance (218,785). Thus, business saving is C\$275,754. Because this number exceeds business fixed and inventory investment of C\$261,214 $(269,394 - 8,180)$, the business sector was a net lender of funds totaling C\$14,540.

3

AGGREGATE DEMAND, AGGREGATE SUPPLY, AND EQUILIBRIUM

In this section, we will build a model of aggregate demand and aggregate supply and use it to discuss how aggregate output and the level of prices are determined in the economy. **Aggregate demand** (AD) represents the quantity of goods and services that households, businesses, government, and foreign customers want to buy at any given level of prices. **Aggregate supply** (AS) represents the quantity of goods and services producers are willing to supply at any given level of prices. It also reflects the amount of labor and capital that households are willing to offer into the marketplace at given real wage rates and cost of capital.

3.1 Aggregate Demand

As we will see, the aggregate demand curve looks like the ordinary demand curves that we encounter in microeconomics: quantity demanded increases as the price level declines. But our intuitive understanding of that relationship—lower price allows us to buy more of a good *with a given level of income*—does not apply here because income is not fixed. Instead, aggregate income/expenditure is to be determined within the model along with the price level. Thus, we will need to explain the relationship between price and quantity demanded somewhat differently.

The aggregate demand curve represents the combinations of aggregate income and the price level at which two conditions are satisfied. First, aggregate expenditure equals aggregate income. As indicated in our discussion of GDP accounting, this must always be true after the fact. The new aspect here is the requirement that *planned* expenditure equal *actual* (or realized) income. To understand the distinction, consider business inventories. If businesses end up with more inventory than they planned, then the difference represents unplanned (or unintended) business investment and actual output in the economy exceeded *planned* expenditure by that amount. Second, the available real money supply is willingly held by households and businesses.

The first condition—equality of planned expenditures and actual income/output—gives rise to what is called the *IS curve*. The second condition—equilibrium in the money market—is embodied in what is called the *LM curve*. When we put them together, we get the aggregate demand curve.

3.1.1 Balancing Aggregate Income and Expenditure: The IS Curve

Total expenditure on domestically produced output comes from four sources: household consumption (C), investments (I), government spending (G), and net exports ($X - M$). This can be expressed as

$$\text{Expenditure} = C + I + G + (X - M)$$

Personal disposable income is equal to GDP (Y) plus transfer payments (F) minus retained earnings and depreciation (= business saving, S_B) minus direct and indirect taxes (R). Households allocate disposable income between consumption of goods and services (C) and household saving (S_H). Therefore,

$$Y + F - S_B - R = C + S_H$$

Rearranging this equation, we get

$$Y = C + S + T$$

where $T = (R - F)$ denotes net taxes and $S = (S_B + S_H)$ denotes total private sector saving.

Because total expenditures must be identical to aggregate income (Y), we have the following relationship:

$$C + S + T = C + I + G + (X - M)$$

By rearranging this equation, we get the following fundamental relationship among domestic saving, investment, the fiscal balance, and the trade balance:

$$S = I + (G - T) + (X - M) \quad (2)$$

This equation shows that domestic private saving is used or absorbed in one of three ways: investment spending (I), financing government deficits ($G - T$), and building up financial claims against overseas economies [positive trade balance, $(X - M) > 0$]. If there is a trade deficit [$(X - M) < 0$], then domestic private saving is being supplemented by inflows of foreign saving and overseas economies are building up financial claims against the domestic economy.

By rearranging the identity, we can examine the implications of government deficits and surpluses:

$$G - T = (S - I) - (X - M)$$

A fiscal deficit $[(G - T) > 0]$ implies that the private sector must save more than it invests $[(S - I) > 0]$ or the country must run a trade deficit $[(X - M) < 0]$ with corresponding inflow of foreign saving, or both.

EXAMPLE 4

Foreign Capital Inflows Help Finance Government Deficits

The budgetary situation changed dramatically in Canada during 2009. As noted in Example 3, the Department of Finance Canada reported that in 2009 the combined federal–provincial government had a deficit of 84,249 (million C\$). Thus, the government sector operated at a deficit that needed to be financed. How was this deficit financed?

Solution:

Using the formula $G - T = (S - I) - (X - M)$ shows that a budget deficit is financed through either higher domestic saving (S), lower business investment (I), or borrowing from foreigners ($X - M$). Private saving is given by

$$\text{Private saving} = \text{Household saving} + \text{Undistributed corporate profits} + \text{Capital consumption allowance}$$

Household saving for 2009 is given in the solution to part 4 of Example 3. Using that figure and the 2009 values for undistributed corporate profits and capital consumption allowance from Exhibit 9, we get

$$\text{Private saving} = 44,048 + 56,969 + 218,785 = \text{C\$}319,802$$

Comparing this number to the level of private investment in 2009 shows that private sector saving exceeded investment spending by C\$58,588 $[319,802 - (269,394 - 8,180)]$. Thus, domestic private saving financed over 69.5 percent of the deficit $(58,588/84,249)$.

To finance the rest of the government deficit, foreign imports (M) would have to exceed exports (X) by C\$25,661. From Exhibit 9, the actual trade deficit (amount of foreign borrowing) was C\$26,169, slightly greater than the amount required. This difference is largely due to the statistical discrepancy caused by different data sources being used for expenditure-based and income-based estimates of GDP.

Equation 2 is the key relationship that must hold in order for aggregate income and aggregate expenditure to be equal. Up to this point, we have treated it as simply an accounting identity. We now need to think of it as the outcome of explicit decisions on the part of households, businesses, government, and foreigners. When we do so, we are faced with the question of what underlies these decisions and how the requisite balance is established.

Economists have found that the dominant determinant of consumption spending is disposable income $(Y - S_B - T)$. This can be expressed formally by indicating that consumption is a function $C(\cdot)$ of disposable income,

$$C = C(Y - S_B - T)$$

or, dropping the technically correct but practically insignificant adjustment for retained earnings and depreciation (S_B), a function of GDP minus net taxes,

$$C = C(Y - T)$$

When households receive an additional unit of income, some proportion of this additional income is spent and the remainder is saved. The **marginal propensity to consume** (MPC) represents the proportion of an additional unit of disposable income that is consumed or spent. Because the amount that is not spent is saved, the **marginal propensity to save** (MPS) is $MPS = 1 - MPC$.

According to the consumption function, either an increase in real income or a decrease in taxes will increase aggregate consumption. Somewhat more sophisticated models of consumption recognize that consumption depends not only on current disposable income but also on wealth. Except for the very rich, individuals tend to spend a higher fraction of their current income as their wealth increases because with higher current wealth, there is less need to save to provide for future consumption.

Exhibit 10 shows household consumption expenditures as a percentage of GDP for selected countries.

Exhibit 10 Household Final Consumption Expenditures as a Percentage of GDP, 2007⁸

United States	70.1
Mexico	65.4
Italy	58.7
France	56.7
Germany	56.6
Canada	56.5
Japan	56.3

These figures reflect the *average propensity to consume* (APC)—that is, the ratio C/Y —rather than a measure of how the next unit of income would be divided between spending and saving, the MPC. However, they are reasonable proxies for the MPC in each country. Comparing Germany's 56.6 percent APC with Mexico's 65.4 percent, the implication is that the Mexican economy is more sensitive to changes in disposable household income than the German economy. All other things being equal, macroeconomic policies that increase disposable household income, such as lowering government taxes, would have a larger impact on the economies of Mexico (65.4 percent) and the United States (70.1 percent) than similar policies would have in Germany (56.6 percent) or France (56.7 percent).

Companies are the primary source of investment spending (I). They make investment decisions in order to expand their stock of physical capital, such as building new factories or adding new equipment to existing facilities. A definition of physical capital is *any manmade aid to production*. Companies also buy investment goods, such as manufacturing plants and equipment to replace existing facilities and equipment that wear out. Total investment, including replacement of worn-out capital, is called *gross investment*, as opposed to *net investment*, which reflects only the addition of new

⁸ OECD.Stat Extracts: Country Statistical Profiles 2009 (stats.oecd.org).

capacity. GDP includes gross investment; hence the name *gross* domestic product. Total investment spending in such developed countries as Italy, Germany, the United Kingdom, and the United States ranged between 18 and 22 percent of GDP in 2007.⁹

Investment decisions depend primarily on two factors: the level of interest rates and aggregate output/income. The level of interest rates reflects the cost of financing investment. The level of aggregate output serves as a proxy for the expected profitability of new investments. When an economy is underutilizing its resources, interest rates are typically very low and yet investment spending often remains dormant because the expected return on new investments is also low. Conversely, when output is high and companies have little spare capacity, the expected return on new investments is high. Thus, investment decisions may be modeled as a decreasing function $I(\cdot, \cdot)$ of the **real interest rate** (nominal interest rate minus the expected rate of inflation) and an increasing function of the level of aggregate output. Formally,

$$I = I(r, Y)$$

where I is investment spending, r is the real interest rate, and Y is, as usual, aggregate income. This investment function leaves out some important drivers of investment decisions, such as the availability of new and better technology. Nonetheless, it reflects the two most important considerations: the cost of funding (represented by the real interest rate) and the expected profitability of the new capital (proxied by the level of aggregate output).

Many government spending decisions are insensitive to the current level of economic activity, the level of interest rates, the currency exchange rate, and other economic factors. Thus, economists often treat the level of government spending on goods and services (G) as an *exogenous* policy variable determined outside the macroeconomic model. In essence, this means that the adjustments required to maintain the balance among aggregate spending, income, and output must occur primarily within the private sector.

Tax policy may also be viewed as an exogenous policy tool. However, the actual amount of net taxes (T) collected is closely tied to the level of economic activity. Most countries impose income taxes or value-added taxes (VAT) or both that increase with the level of income or expenditure. Similarly, at least some transfer payments to the household sector are usually based on economic need and are hence inversely related to aggregate income. Each of these factors makes net taxes (T) rise and fall with aggregate income, Y . The government's fiscal balance can be represented as

$$G - T = \bar{G} - t(Y)$$

where \bar{G} is the exogenous level of government expenditure and $t(Y)$ indicates that net taxes are an (increasing) function of aggregate income, Y . The fiscal balance decreases (smaller deficit or larger surplus) as aggregate income (Y) increases and increases as income declines. This effect is called an *automatic stabilizer* because it tends to mitigate changes in aggregate output.

Net exports ($X - M$) are primarily a function of income in the domestic country and in the rest of the world and the relative prices of domestic and foreign goods and services. As domestic income rises, some of the additional demand that is induced will be for imported goods. Thus, net exports will decline. An increase in income in the rest of the world will lead to an increase in demand for the domestic country's products and hence an increase net exports. A decrease in the relative price of domestically produced goods and services, perhaps because of a depreciation of the currency, will shift demand toward these products and hence increase net exports.

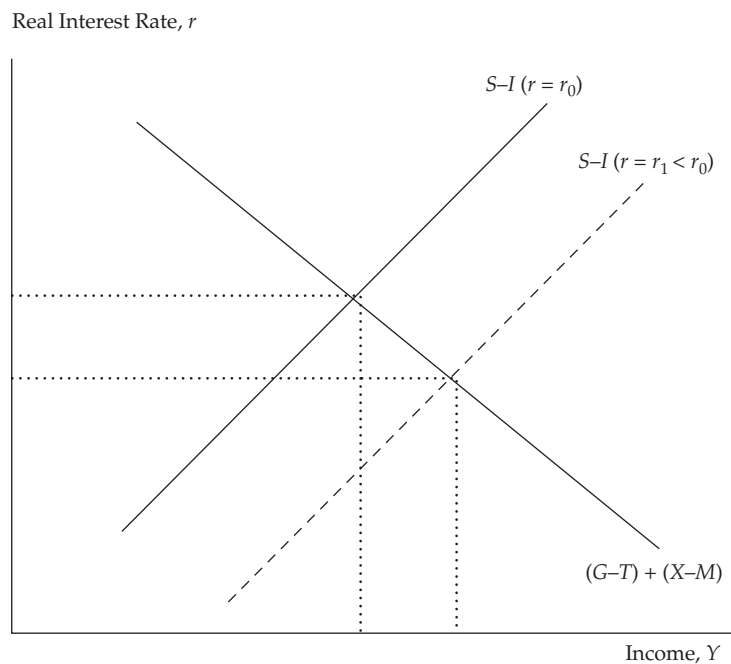
⁹ OECD.Stat Extracts: Country Statistical Profiles 2009 (stats.oecd.org) and *Economic Report of the President*, (Washington, DC: US Government Printing Office, 2010): Table B-2, page 330. See Exhibit 27 in this reading for investment details on other countries.

We are now in a position to describe how aggregate expenditure and income are brought into balance. Slightly rearranging Equation 2, equality of expenditure and income implies

$$S - I = (G - T) + (X - M)$$

Based on the discussion above, we know that both the government's fiscal balance and the trade balance decrease as income rises because of net taxes and imports, respectively. Hence, the right-hand side of this equation declines with income. This is shown by the downward-sloping line in Exhibit 11. Assuming the direct effect of higher income on saving is larger than the impact on investment, the left-hand side of the equation increases as income rises. This is shown by the solid upward-sloping line in Exhibit 11. Note that this line is drawn for a given level of the real interest rate, r_0 . The intersection of these curves shows the level of income at which expenditure and income balance. At higher levels of income, the saving–investment differential ($S - I$) exceeds the combined fiscal and trade balances, implying “excess saving” or insufficient expenditure. At lower levels of income, the saving–investment differential is smaller than the combined fiscal and trade balances, implying planned expenditure exceeds output (= income).

Exhibit 11 Balancing Aggregate Income and Expenditure



The dashed, upward-sloping line in the exhibit reflects a lower real interest rate, $r_1 < r_0$. This line lies to the right of the solid line because for any value of the saving–investment differential ($S - I$), the higher level of investment induced by a lower real interest rate requires a higher level of income to induce higher saving. With a lower real interest rate, the curves intersect at a higher level of income. Thus, we see that *equilibrating income and expenditure entails an inverse relationship between income and the real interest rate*. Economists refer to this relationship as the *IS curve* because investment (I) and saving (S) are the primary components that adjust to maintain the balance between aggregate expenditure and income. The IS curve is illustrated in Exhibit 12 in the next section.

EXAMPLE 5**The IS Curve**

The following equations are given for a hypothetical economy:

$$\begin{array}{ll}
 C = 2,000 + 0.7(Y - T) & \text{Consumption function} \\
 I = 400 + 0.2Y - 30r & \text{Investment function} \\
 G = 1,500 & \text{Government spending} \\
 (X - M) = 1,000 - 0.1Y & \text{Net export function} \\
 T = -200 + 0.3Y & \text{Tax function}
 \end{array}$$

- 1 Based on these equations, determine the combinations of aggregate income (Y) and the real interest rate (r) that are consistent with equating income and expenditure. That is, find the equation that describes the IS curve.
- 2 Given a real interest rate of 4 percent, find the level of GDP, consumption spending, investment spending, net exports, and tax receipts.
- 3 Suppose the government increased expenditure from 1,500 to 2,000. Find the new IS curve. Does the increase in government spending result in an equal increase in equilibrium income for any given level of the real interest rate? Why or why not?
- 4 Given a real interest rate of 4 percent, determine how the increased government spending is funded.
- 5 Suppose that the output/income level calculated in Question 2 is the most that can be produced with the economy's resources. If the economy is operating at that level when the government increases expenditure from 1,500 to 2,000, what must happen to maintain the balance between expenditure and income?

Solution to 1:

Starting with the basic GDP identity $Y = C + I + G + (X - M)$ and substituting for each expenditure component using the equations above gives

$$Y = 2,000 + 0.7(Y - T) + 400 + 0.2Y - 30r + 1,500 + 1,000 - 0.1Y$$

Substituting in the tax equation and solving for Y , we get

$$\begin{aligned}
 Y &= 2,000 + 0.7(Y + 200 - 0.3Y) + 400 + 0.2Y - 30r + 1,500 + 1,000 - 0.1Y \\
 &= 5,040 + 0.59Y - 30r \\
 Y &= 12,292.7 - 73.2r
 \end{aligned}$$

The final equation is the IS curve. It summarizes combinations of income and the real interest rate at which income and expenditure are equal. Equivalently, it reflects equilibrium in the goods market.

Solution to 2:

If the real interest rate is 4 percent, then GDP and the components of GDP are

$$\begin{aligned}
 Y &= 12,292.7 - 73.2(4) = 11,999.9 \\
 T &= -200 + 0.3(11,999.9) = 3,399.9 \\
 C &= 2,000 + 0.7(11,999.9 - 3,399.9) = 8,020 \\
 I &= 400 + 0.2(11,999.9) - 30(4) = 2,680.0 \\
 (X - M) &= 1,000 - 0.10(11,999.9) = -200.0
 \end{aligned}$$

Solution to 3:

Following the steps above but with $G = 2,000$, the IS curve is

$$Y = 13,512.2 - 73.2r$$

At any given level of the interest rate, aggregate income increases by 1,219.5 = (13,512.2 - 12,292.7). This is 2.44 (= 1,219.5/500) times the increase in government spending. The increase in government spending has a “multiplier” effect on equilibrium income because as income rises, both consumption and investment spending also rise, leading to an even greater increase in income, which leads to even more spending, etc. However, some of the increased private spending goes for imports, and higher income also induces higher taxes and saving. The condition for equality of income and expenditure can be written as

$$G = (S - I) + T + (M - X)$$

So the increase in government spending must be balanced by some combination of 1) an increase in saving relative to investment, 2) an increase in taxes, and 3) a rise in imports relative to exports. Given the interest rate, each of these will be induced by an increase in aggregate income. Because saving (S) equals $Y - C - T$,

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta S &= \Delta Y - \Delta C - \Delta T = \Delta Y - [0.7(\Delta Y - \Delta T)] - \Delta T \\ &= \Delta Y(1 - 0.7) + \Delta T(0.7 - 1) \\ &= 0.3\Delta Y - 0.3\Delta T = 0.3\Delta Y - 0.3(0.3)\Delta Y \\ &= 0.3(1 - 0.3)\Delta Y = 0.21\Delta Y\end{aligned}$$

Using this result along with the investment, tax, and trade balance functions gives

$$\Delta G = (0.21 - 0.2)\Delta Y + 0.3\Delta Y + 0.1\Delta Y = 0.41\Delta Y$$

$$\text{So, } \Delta Y = (1 / 0.41)\Delta G = 2.44\Delta G.$$

Note that an extra unit of income increases saving by 0.21 but also increases investment spending by 0.20. So, in this hypothetical economy, the saving–investment differential ($S - I$) is very insensitive to the level of aggregate income. All else the same, this implies that relatively large changes in income are required to restore the expenditure/income balance whenever there is a change in spending behavior.

Solution to 4:

Using the results above,

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Change in fiscal balance} &= \Delta G - \Delta T = \Delta G[1 - 0.3(2.44)] \\ &= 0.268(500) = 134\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Change in trade balance} &= \Delta(X - M) = 2.44\Delta G(-0.1) \\ &= -0.244(500) = -122\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Change in } (S - I) &= \Delta(S - I) = 2.44\Delta G(0.21 - 0.20) \\ &= 0.0244(5) = 12\end{aligned}$$

So, the increase in government spending (500) is ultimately financed by a large increase in taxes (500 - 134 = 366), a very small increase in private sector excess saving (12), and an increase in capital flows from abroad (122).

Solution to 5:

If the economy is operating at maximum output, then an increase in government expenditure must “crowd out” an equal amount of private expenditure in order to keep total expenditure equal to output/income. In this simple model, this implies that the real interest rate must rise enough that investment spending

falls by the amount of the increase in government spending. Using the new IS curve equation from Question 3 and the original level of income from Question 2, we need the interest rate such that

$$Y = 13,512.2 - 73.2r = 11,999.9 \Rightarrow r = 20.66\%$$

So the real interest rate would soar from 4 percent to 20.66 percent to choke off investment spending.

3.1.2 Equilibrium in the Money Market: The LM Curve

The IS curve tells us what level of income is consistent with a given level of the real interest rate but does not address the appropriate level of interest rates, nor does it depend on the price level. In order to determine the interest rate and introduce a connection between output and the price level, we must consider supply and demand in the financial markets. To keep the model as simple as possible, we will deal explicitly with demand and supply for only one financial asset: money. All other assets (e.g., stocks and bonds) are implicitly treated as a composite alternative to holding money. In some of the subsequent discussion, however, we will note differential impacts on equity and fixed-income securities.

The *quantity theory of money* equation provides a straightforward connection among the nominal money supply (M), the price level (P), and real income/expenditure (Y):

$$MV = PY$$

In this equation, V is the *velocity of money*, the average rate at which money circulates through the economy to facilitate expenditure. This equation essentially defines V . The equation begins to have economic content only when we make assumptions about how velocity is related to such economic variables as the interest rate. In the simplest case, if velocity is assumed to be constant, then the quantity theory of money equation implies that the money supply determines the nominal value of output (PY). Therefore, an increase in the money supply will increase the nominal value of output. However, this equation alone cannot tell us how that increase would be split between price and quantity.

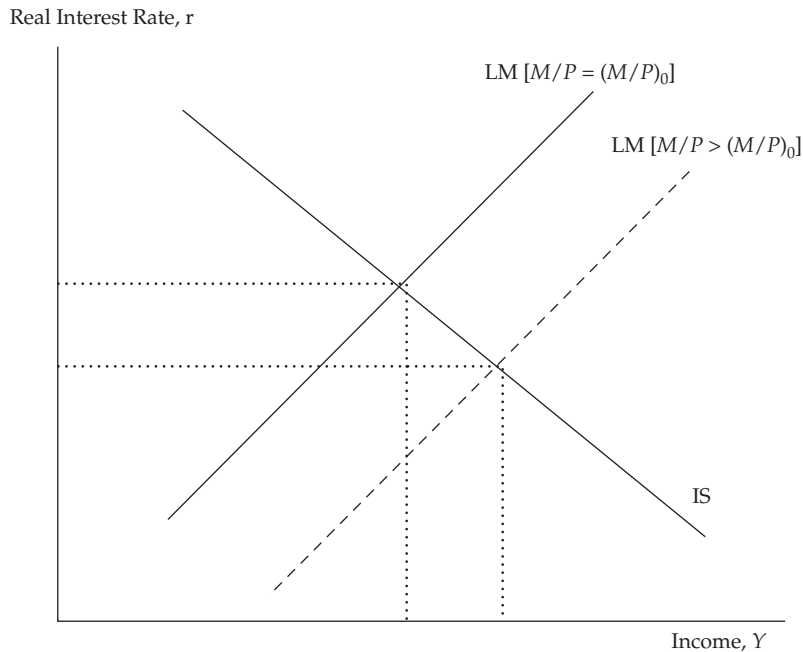
The quantity theory equation can be rewritten in terms of the supply and demand for real money balances:

$$M/P = (M/P)_D = kY$$

where $k = 1/V$ reflects how much money people want to hold for every currency unit of real income. The demand for real money balances is typically assumed to depend inversely on the interest rate because a higher interest rate encourages investors to shift their assets out of money (bank deposits) into higher-yielding securities. Although the quantity theory of money suggests that the demand for real money balances is proportional to real income, this need not be the case. The important point is that money demand increases with income. Thus, demand for real money balances is an increasing function $M(\cdot, \cdot)$ of real income and a decreasing function of the interest rate. Equilibrium in the money market requires

$$M/P = M(r, Y)$$

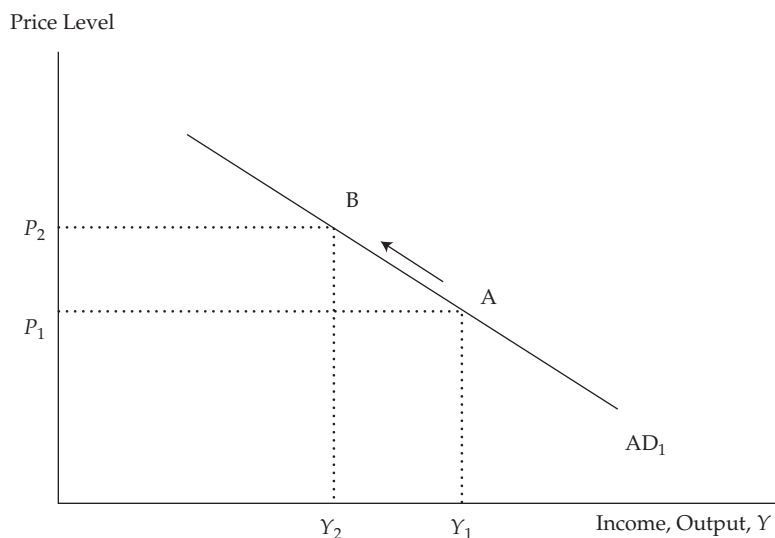
Holding the real money supply (M/P) constant, this equation implies a positive relationship between real income (Y) and the real interest rate (r). Given the real money supply, an increase in real income must be accompanied by an increase in the interest rate in order to keep the demand for real money balances equal to the supply. This relationship, which economists refer to as the *LM curve*, is shown by the upward-sloping curve in Exhibit 12.

Exhibit 12 The IS and LM Curves

The intersection of the IS and LM curves determines the combination of real income and the real interest rate that is consistent with both the equality of income and (planned) expenditure (the IS curve) and equilibrium in the money market (the LM curve). In Exhibit 12, the dashed LM curve reflects a higher real money supply than the solid LM curve. With a higher real money supply, the intersection of the IS and LM curves occurs at a higher level of real income and a lower level of the real interest rate.

3.1.3 The Aggregate Demand Curve

If the nominal money supply (M) is held constant, then a higher or lower real money supply (M/P) arises because of changes in the price level. If the price level declines, the real money supply increases and, as shown in Exhibit 12, real income increases while the real interest rate declines. Conversely, an increase in the price level leads to a decline in real income and an increase in the real interest rate. This inverse relationship between the price level and real income is illustrated in Exhibit 13. This is the **aggregate demand curve** (AD curve).

Exhibit 13 The Aggregate Demand Curve

As shown in Exhibit 13, an increase in the price level from P_1 to P_2 reduces income from Y_1 to Y_2 . Our development of the AD curve emphasized only one channel through which prices affect the quantity of output demanded (i.e., planned real expenditure)—the interest rate. There are, however, other mechanisms. Higher prices erode the purchasing power of retirees and others whose income is fixed in nominal terms. Similarly, higher prices reduce the real value of nominal assets (e.g., stocks and bonds) and may reduce consumption relative to current income as people seek to rebuild the real purchasing power of their wealth. Higher domestic prices also make domestically produced goods more expensive relative to imports (assuming a constant currency exchange rate). In each case, lower prices have the opposite effect, increasing aggregate expenditure and income.

It should be clear that many interesting and important aspects of the economy are subsumed into the AD curve: saving, investment, trade and capital flows, interest rates, asset prices, fiscal and monetary policy, and more. All of these disappear behind a deceptively simple relationship between price and output/income.

Before moving on to consider aggregate supply, let's look more closely at the interaction of interest rates and income implicit in movements along the AD curve. For simplicity, we assume there are no changes in the fiscal or trade balances so that maintaining the balance between aggregate expenditure and aggregate income requires that changes in investment spending equal changes in private saving. As the price level increases, the real money supply (M/P) declines. To induce a corresponding decline in money demand, the interest rate must rise so that other assets are more attractive and income must fall to reduce the transactional need for money balances. The higher interest rate induces companies to reduce investment spending. The decline in income reduces household saving. *The slope of the AD curve depends on the relative sensitivities of investment, saving, and money demand to income and the interest rate.* The AD curve will be flatter if

- investment expenditure is highly sensitive to the interest rate;
- saving is insensitive to income;
- money demand is insensitive to interest rates; and
- money demand is insensitive to income.

The first two conditions directly imply that income will have to move more to induce a large enough change in saving to match the change in investment spending. All else equal, each of the last two conditions implies that a larger change in the interest rate is required to bring money demand in line with money supply. This, in turn, implies a larger change in investment spending and a correspondingly larger change in saving and income.

EXAMPLE 6**Aggregate Demand**

The money demand and supply equations for our hypothetical economy are

$$M_d/P = -300 + 0.5Y - 30r \quad (\text{real money demand})$$

$$M/P = 5,200/P \quad (\text{real money supply})$$

- 1 Find the equation for the LM curve.
- 2 Using the IS curve from Question 1 of Example 5, find the equation of the AD curve.
- 3 Find the levels of GDP and the interest rate if $P = 1$.
- 4 What will happen to GDP and the interest rate if the price level rises to 1.1 or falls to 0.9?
- 5 Suppose investment spending were more sensitive to the interest rate so that the IS becomes ($Y = 12,292.7 - 150r$). What happens to the slope of the AD curve? What does this imply about the effectiveness of monetary policy?

Solution to 1:

Setting the real money supply equal to real money demand and rearranging, we get the LM equation:

$$Y = 600 + 2(M/P) + 60r$$

Or with $M = 5,200$,

$$Y = 600 + 10,400/P + 60r \quad (\text{LM equation})$$

Solution to 2:

From Question 1 of Example 5, the IS equation is $Y = 12,292.7 - 73.2r$. We now have two equations and two unknowns. The easiest way to solve this problem is to multiply the LM curve by 1.22 ($= 73.2/60.0$) and then add the equations:

$$1.22Y = 732 + 2.44(M/P) + 73.2r \quad (\text{LM equation})$$

$$Y = 12,292.7 - 73.2r \quad (\text{IS equation})$$

Adding the two equations and solving for Y ,

$$Y = 5,867.0 + 1.099(M/P) \quad (\text{AD curve})$$

$$= 5,867.0 + 5,715.3/P \quad (\text{with } M = 5,200)$$

Solution to 3:

If $P = 1$, the AD curve gives GDP as $Y = 5,867.0 + 5,715.3 = 11,582.3$. From the money demand and supply equation, the equilibrium interest rate is

$$5,200/1 = -300 + 0.5(11,582.3) - 30r \Rightarrow r = 9.7\%$$

Solution to 4:

If the price level increases to 1.1, GDP declines to $Y = 5,867.0 + 5,715.3/1.1 = 11,062.7$. If the price level falls to 0.9, GDP increases to $Y = 5,867.0 + 5,715.3/0.9 = 12,217.3$. To find the interest rate in each case, we plug these values for Y into the IS curve.

$$\text{If } P = 1.1: Y = 11,062.7 = 12,292.7 - 73.2r \Rightarrow r = 16.8\%$$

$$\text{If } P = 0.9: Y = 12,217.3 = 12,292.7 - 73.2r \Rightarrow r = 1.0\%$$

Thus, we have the following relationship among the price level, GDP, and the interest rate:

Price Level	GDP	Interest Rate
0.9	12,217.3	1.0
1.0	11,582.3	9.7
1.1	11,062.7	16.8

The inverse relationship between GDP and the price level is the AD curve. The inverse relationship between GDP and the interest rate reflects the IS curve.

Solution to 5:

If the interest rate parameter in the IS curve is 150 instead of 73.2, we can multiply the LM equation by 2.5 (= 150/60) instead of 1.22 (= 73.2/60) to get the system of equations:

$$2.5Y = 1,500 + 5(M/P) + 150r \quad (\text{LM equation})$$

$$Y = 12,292.7 - 150r \quad (\text{IS equation})$$

Adding these equations and solving for Y gives

$$Y = 3,940.77 + 1.429(M/P) \quad (\text{new AD curve})$$

$$= 3,940.77 + 7,428.6/P \quad (\text{with } M = 5,200)$$

Comparing the new AD curve to the original AD curve indicates that output (Y) is now more sensitive to the price level. That is, the AD curve is flatter. Monetary policy is now more effective because, at any given price level, an increase in M has a greater impact on Y . This can be understood as follows: As the real money supply increases, the interest rate must fall and/or expenditure must increase in order to induce households to hold the increased money supply. With investment spending now more sensitive to the interest rate, income will have to rise by more in order to increase saving by a corresponding amount.

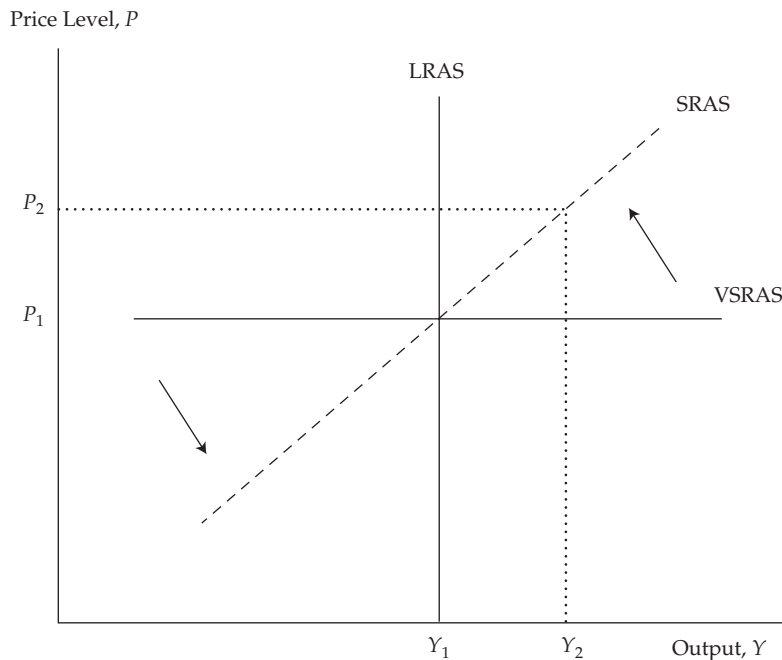
3.2 Aggregate Supply

Aggregate demand only tells us the relationship between the price level and the amount of output demanded at those prices. To understand what price and output level will prevail in the economy, we need to add aggregate supply, the amount of output producers are willing to provide at various prices. The **aggregate supply curve** (AS curve) represents the level of domestic output that companies will produce at each price level. Unlike the demand side, we must distinguish between the short- and long-run AS curves, which differ with respect to how wages and other input prices respond to changes in final output prices. “Long run” and “short run” are relative terms and are necessarily imprecise with respect to calendar time. The “long run” is long enough that wages, prices, and expectations can adjust but not long enough that physical capital is a variable input. Capital and the available technology to use that capital remain fixed. This condition implies a period of at least a few years and perhaps a decade. The truly

long run in which even the capital stock is variable may be thought of as covering multiple decades. Consideration of the very long run is postponed to our discussion of economic growth in Section 4.

In the very short run, perhaps a few months or quarters, companies will increase or decrease output to some degree without changing price. This is shown in Exhibit 14 by the horizontal line labeled VSRAS. If demand is somewhat stronger than expected, companies earn higher profit by increasing output as long as they can cover their variable costs. So they will run their plant and equipment more intensively, demand more effort from their salaried employees, and increase the hours of employees who are paid on the basis of hours worked. If demand is somewhat weaker than projected, companies can run their plants less intensively, cut labor hours, and utilize staff to perform maintenance and carry out efficiency-enhancing projects that are often postponed during busier periods.

Exhibit 14 Aggregate Supply Curve



Over somewhat longer periods, the AS curve is upward sloping because more costs become variable. This is represented by the short-run aggregate supply (SRAS) curve in Exhibit 14. In most businesses, wages are adjusted once a year, but for companies with union contracts, several years may pass before the contracts expire. The prices for raw materials and other inputs may also be established under long-term contracts. Hence, wages and other input costs are relatively inflexible in the short run and do not fully adjust to changes in output prices. As the price level rises, most companies enjoy higher profit margins and hence expand production. In Exhibit 14, when prices move from P_1 to P_2 , the quantity of aggregate output supplied increases from Y_1 to Y_2 . Conversely, a reduction in the price level squeezes profit margins and causes companies to reduce production.

Over time, however, wages and other input prices tend to “catch up” with the prices of final goods and services. In other words, wages and prices that are inflexible or slow to adjust in the short run adjust to changes in the price level over the long run. Thus, over the long run, when the aggregate price level changes, wages and other input prices change proportionately so that the higher aggregate price level has no impact on

aggregate supply. This is illustrated by the vertical long-run aggregate supply (LRAS) curve in Exhibit 14. As prices move from P_1 to P_2 , the quantity of output supplied remains at Q_1 in the long run. The only change that occurs is that prices shift to a higher level (from P_1 to P_2).

The position of the LRAS curve is determined by the potential output of the economy. The amount of output produced depends on the fixed amount of capital and labor and the available technology. This classical model of aggregate supply can be expressed as

$$Y = F(\bar{K}, \bar{L}) = \bar{Y}$$

where \bar{K} is the fixed amount of capital and \bar{L} is the available labor supply. The stock of capital is assumed to incorporate the existing technological base.¹⁰ The available labor supply is also held constant, and workers are assumed to have a given set of skills. The long-run equilibrium level of output, Y_1 in Exhibit 14, is referred to as the *full employment*, or *natural*, level of output. At this level of output, the economy's resources are deemed to be fully employed and (labor) *unemployment is at its natural rate*. This concept of a natural rate of unemployment assumes the macroeconomy is currently operating at an efficient and unconstrained level of production. Companies have enough spare capacity to avoid bottlenecks, and there is a modest, stable pool of unemployed workers (job seekers equal job vacancies) looking for and transitioning into new jobs.

3.3 Shifts in Aggregate Demand and Supply

In the next two sections, the aggregate demand (AD) and aggregate supply (AS) models are used to address three critical macroeconomic questions:

- 1 What causes an economy to expand or contract?
- 2 What causes inflation and changes in the level of unemployment?
- 3 What determines an economy's rate of sustainable growth, and how can it be measured?

Before addressing these questions, we need to distinguish between 1) the long-run growth rate of real GDP and 2) short-run fluctuations in real GDP around this long-run trend.

The business cycle is a direct result of short-term fluctuations of real GDP. It consists of periods of economic expansion and contraction. In an expansion, real GDP is increasing, the unemployment rate is declining, and capacity utilization is rising. In a contraction, real GDP is decreasing, the unemployment rate is rising, and capacity utilization is declining. Shifts in the AD and AS curves determine the short-run changes in the economy associated with the business cycle. In addition, the AD–AS model provides a framework for estimating the sustainable growth rate of an economy, which is addressed in Section 4.

From an asset allocation perspective, it is important to determine the current phase of the business cycle as well as how fast the economy is growing relative to its sustainable growth rate. The expected rate of return on equities and fixed-income securities, for example, depends on estimates of the growth rate of GDP and inflation. For equities, GDP growth is the primary determinant of aggregate corporate profits. For fixed-income securities, the expected rate of inflation determines the spread

¹⁰ Note that investment, I , reflects replacement of worn-out capital plus the change in capital, ΔK . Over short periods of time, net investment is assumed to have a negligible effect on aggregate supply. The cumulative effect of investment on economic growth is discussed in Section 4.

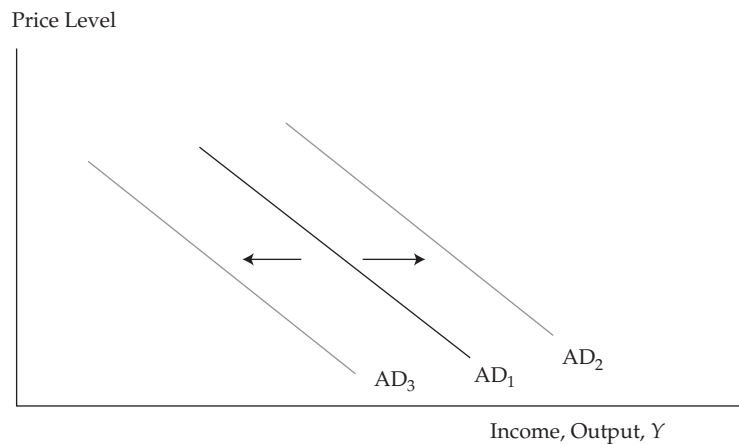
between real and nominal rates of return. In order to use the AD and AS model to analyze the economy and to make investment decisions, we need to first understand what factors cause the curves to shift.

3.3.1 Shifts in Aggregate Demand

In addition to price, factors that influence the level of spending by households, companies, governments, and foreigners (i.e., the aggregate level of expenditures) will cause the AD curve to shift. A shift to the right represents an increase in aggregate demand at any price level. Exhibit 15 shows this as a shift from AD_1 to AD_2 . A shift to the left represents a decrease in aggregate demand at any price level. This is indicated by a move from AD_1 to AD_3 . Key factors that directly or indirectly influence the level of aggregate expenditures and cause the aggregate demand curve to shift include changes in

- household wealth;
- consumer and business expectations;
- capacity utilization;
- monetary policy;
- the exchange rate;
- growth in global economy; and
- fiscal policy (government spending and taxes).

Exhibit 15 Shifts in the Aggregate Demand Curve



Household Wealth Household wealth includes the value of both financial assets (e.g., cash, savings accounts, investment securities, and pensions) and real assets (e.g., real estate). The primary reason households save a portion of their current income is to accumulate wealth for consumption in the future. The proportion of disposable income that households save depends partly on the value of the financial and real assets that they have already accumulated. If these assets increase in value, households will tend to save less and spend a greater proportion of their income because they will still be able to meet their wealth accumulation goals. As a result, an increase in household wealth increases consumer spending and shifts the aggregate demand curve to the right. In contrast, a decline in wealth will reduce consumer spending and shift the AD curve to the left. This is often referred to as the **wealth effect** and is one explanation for how changes in equity prices affect economic activity. Higher equity prices increase

household wealth, which increases consumer spending and reduces the amount saved out of current income. Economic studies estimate that an increase or decrease in wealth in developed countries increases or decreases annual consumer spending by 3–7 percent of the change in wealth.¹¹ A smaller but still statistically significant wealth effect has been found in a number of emerging markets (developing countries).¹²

Exhibit 16 Housing Prices and the Saving Rate in the United Kingdom

Year	Housing Prices (first quarter of each year) (Index 2000 Q1 = 100)	Saving Rate (%)
2000	100	4.7
2002	122.7	5.8
2004	180.5	3.7
2006	206.3	2.9
2007	225.9	2.1
2008	220.5	1.2
2009	192.7	7.0

Source: Office of National Statistics, United Kingdom.

EXAMPLE 7

The Wealth Effect on Saving and Consumption

The importance of the wealth effect on consumption, and its relationship to housing prices, was evident in the recession that began in late 2007. During this period, global GDP declined by the steepest amount in the post–World War II period. A major factor associated with the economic downturn was the sharp fall in housing prices, especially in countries that experienced a housing boom earlier in the decade, such as the United States, the United Kingdom, Spain, and Ireland. In each of these countries, consumers reduced spending sharply and raised the level of saving in response to the decline in wealth. Do the data in Exhibit 16 provide support for the wealth effect?

Solution:

Housing prices in the United Kingdom rose by nearly 126 percent $[(225.9 - 100)/100]$ between 2000 and 2007. As predicted, the saving rate declined (with a lag), going from an average of 5.3 percent of income in 2000 and 2002 to 1.2 percent in 2008. Then, as housing prices fell by 14.7 percent between 2007 and 2009, the saving rate rose dramatically from 1.2 percent in 2008 to 7 percent in 2009. Of course, the decline in housing prices was not the only factor contributing to the increase in the saving rate. Stock prices also declined in this period, further reducing wealth in the United Kingdom, and the recession raised uncertainty over future jobs and income.

¹¹ See, for example, Case, Quigley, and Shiller (2005).

¹² See Funke (2004).

Consumer and Business Expectations Psychology has an important impact on consumer and business spending. When consumers are confident about their future income and the stability/safety of their jobs, they tend to spend a higher portion of their disposable income. This shifts the AD curve to the right. Consumer spending declines and the AD curve shifts to the left when consumers become less confident. Similarly, when businesses are optimistic about their future growth and profitability, they spend (invest) more on capital projects, which also shifts the AD curve to the right.

Capacity Utilization Capacity utilization is a measure of how fully an economy's production capacity is being used. Companies with excess capacity have little incentive to invest in new property, plant, and equipment. In contrast, when companies are operating at or near full capacity, they will need to increase investment spending in order to expand production. Data from the OECD and the US Federal Reserve indicate that when aggregate capacity utilization reaches 82 to 85 percent, production blockages arise, prompting companies to increase their level of investment spending. This shifts the AD curve to the right.

Fiscal Policy **Fiscal policy** is the use of taxes and government spending to affect the level of aggregate expenditures.¹³ An increase in government spending, one of the direct components of AD, shifts the AD curve to the right, whereas a decrease in government spending shifts the AD curve to the left. Taxes affect GDP indirectly through their effect on consumer spending and business investment. Lower taxes will increase the proportion of personal income and corporate pre-tax profits that consumers and businesses have available to spend and will shift the AD curve to the right. In contrast, higher taxes will shift the AD curve to the left.

Monetary Policy *Money* is generally defined as currency in circulation plus deposits at commercial banks. **Monetary policy** refers to action taken by a nation's central bank to affect aggregate output and prices through changes in bank reserves, reserve requirements, or its target interest rate.

Most countries have fractional reserve banking systems in which each bank must hold reserves (vault cash plus deposits at the central bank) at least equal to the required reserve ratio times its customer deposits. Banks with excess reserves can lend them to banks that need reserves to meet their reserve requirements. The central bank can increase the money supply by 1) buying securities from banks, 2) lowering the required reserve ratio, and/or 3) reducing its target for the interest rate at which banks borrow and lend reserves among themselves. In each case, the opposite action would decrease the money supply.

When the central bank buys securities from banks in an open-market operation, it pays for them with a corresponding increase in bank reserves. This increases the amount of deposits banks can accept from their customers—that is, the money supply. Similarly, cutting the required reserve ratio increases the level of deposits (i.e., money) consistent with a given level of reserves in the system. If the central bank chooses to target an interbank lending rate, as the Federal Reserve targets the federal funds rate in the United States, then it must add or drain reserves via open-market operations to maintain the target interest rate. If it raises (lowers) its target interest rate, it will have to drain (add) reserves in order to make reserves more (less) expensive in the interbank market. Thus, open-market operations and interest rate targeting are very closely related. The main distinction is whether the central bank chooses to target a

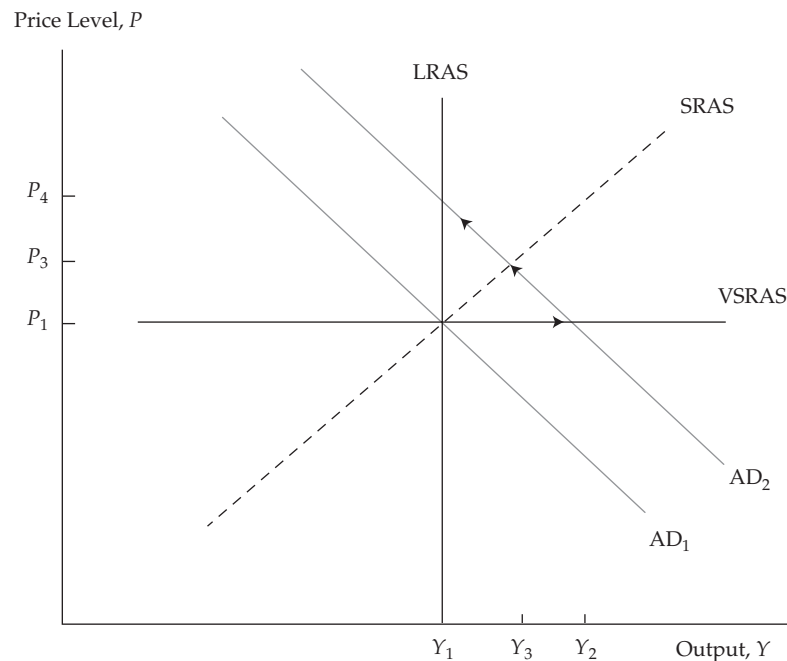
¹³ Government spending and taxes may be adjusted for other purposes too. In macroeconomics, however, the term “fiscal policy” is usually reserved for actions intended to affect the overall level of expenditure.

level of reserves and let the market determine the interest rate or chooses to target the interest rate and let the market (banks) determine the level of reserves they desire to hold at that rate.

An increase in the money supply shifts the AD curve to the right so that each price level corresponds to a higher level of income and expenditure.¹⁴ There are various channels through which the additional expenditures may be induced. For example, the interest rate reduction required to induce investors to hold the additional money balances will encourage companies to invest more and households to borrow to purchase durable goods, such as cars. In addition, banks may facilitate greater expenditure by raising credit limits and loosening credit standards. Conversely, a reduction in the money supply shifts the AD curve to the left.

Exhibit 17 illustrates the short-run and long-run effect of expansionary monetary policy. Suppose the central bank expands the money supply in an attempt to stimulate demand when the economy is already in long-run equilibrium. The expansionary policy will shift the AD curve to the right, from AD_1 to AD_2 . In the very short run, output will expand from Y_1 to Y_2 without an increase in the price level. After operating at higher-than-normal production rates for a few months or quarters, companies will begin to push for price increases and input prices will begin to rise as well. The aggregate supply curve will steepen, and prices will increase to P_3 while output declines to Y_3 . As input prices become more flexible, the AS curve will steepen until, in the long run, it is vertical and output has returned to the long-run natural level, Y_1 , with prices rising to P_4 . Thus, expanding the money supply increases output in the short run, but in the long run it affects only the price level.

Exhibit 17 Short-Run and Long-Run Effect of Monetary Expansion



¹⁴ An unusual but important special case known as a *liquidity trap* occurs if a) banks are willing to hold virtually unlimited excess reserves rather than expand their balance sheets by taking deposits and making loans and/or b) demand for money balances by households and companies is insensitive to the level of income. In a liquidity trap, monetary policy will be ineffective and the AD curve will not shift despite the central bank's efforts. Some have argued that this was a reasonable description of the US situation in 2010.

Exchange Rate An exchange rate is the price of one currency relative to another. Changes in the exchange rate affect the price of exports and imports and thus aggregate demand. For example, a lower euro relative to other currencies makes European exports cheaper in world markets and foreign products sold in Europe (European imports) more expensive. Therefore, a lower euro should cause European exports to increase and imports to decline, causing the AD curve to shift to the right. Conversely, a stronger euro reduces exports and raises imports, and the AD curve shifts to the left.

Growth in the Global Economy International trade is what links countries together and creates a global economy. Faster economic growth in foreign markets encourages foreigners to buy more products from domestic producers and increases exports. For example, rapid GDP growth in ASEAN member countries has increased their demand for foreign products. Japan has benefited from this rapid growth because it has exported more products to them. In terms of the AD and AS model, the AD curve for Japan has shifted to the right because of increased demand for Japanese products in ASEAN countries, resulting in higher exports. A decline in the growth rates of ASEAN members' economies would have a negative effect on the Japanese economy because exports would be lower. This would cause the Japanese AD curve to shift to the left.

What happens to interest rates when the AD curve shifts? In the case of an increase in the money supply, the interest rate declines at each price level because the increase in income (Y) increases saving and rates must decline to induce a corresponding increase in investment spending (I). In each of the other cases considered above, a rightward shift in the AD curve will increase the interest rate at each price level. With the real money supply held constant, the interest rate must rise as income increases. The increase in the interest rate reduces the demand for money at each level of expenditure/income and, therefore, allows expenditure/income to increase without an increase in the money supply. In terms of the quantity theory of money equation, this corresponds to a higher velocity of money, V .

The main factors that shift the AD curve are summarized in Exhibit 18. In each case, the impact of the factor is considered in isolation. In practice, however, various factors may be at work simultaneously and there may be interaction among them. This is especially true with regard to expectational factors—consumer and business confidence—which are likely to be influenced by other developments.

Exhibit 18 Impact of Factors Shifting Aggregate Demand

An Increase in the Following Factors:	Shifts the AD Curve:	Reason:
Stock prices	Rightward: Increase in AD	Higher consumption
Housing prices	Rightward: Increase in AD	Higher consumption
Consumer confidence	Rightward: Increase in AD	Higher consumption
Business confidence	Rightward: Increase in AD	Higher investment
Capacity utilization	Rightward: Increase in AD	Higher investment
Government spending	Rightward: Increase in AD	Government spending a component of AD
Taxes	Leftward: Decrease in AD	Lower consumption and investment
Bank reserves	Rightward: Increase in AD	Lower interest rate, higher investment and possibly higher consumption
Exchange rate (foreign currency per unit domestic currency)	Leftward: Decrease in AD	Lower exports and higher imports
Global growth	Rightward: Increase in AD	Higher exports

EXAMPLE 8**Shifts in Aggregate Demand**

Francois Ubert is a portfolio manager with EuroWorld, a French investment management firm. Ubert is considering increasing his clients' portfolio exposure to Brazilian equities. Before doing so, he asks you to prepare a report on the following recent economic events in Brazil and to summarize the impact of each event on the Brazilian economy and on Brazilian equity and fixed-income securities.

- 1 The Brazilian central bank reduced bank reserves, resulting in a lower money supply.
- 2 The capacity utilization rate in Brazil is currently estimated to be 86.4 percent, a 2.7 percent increase from the previous year.
- 3 Corporate profits reported by Brazilian companies increased by 30 percent over last year's levels, and corporations have revised their forecasts of future profitability upward.
- 4 The government recently announced that it plans to start construction on a number of hydroelectric projects to reduce Brazil's reliance on imported oil.
- 5 Forecasts by private sector economists project that the European economy will enter a recession in the next year.

Solution to 1:

This monetary policy action is designed to reduce consumption and business investment spending. The reduction in real money balances will increase interest rates and discourage lending within the banking system. Higher interest rates and tighter credit will reduce both investment and consumption expenditures and shift the AD curve to the left. The prices of fixed-income securities will fall because of the rise in interest rates. The reduction in aggregate output should lower corporate profits, and it is likely that equity prices will also fall.

Solution to 2:

Capacity utilization is a key factor determining the level of investment spending. A current utilization rate of over 86 percent and an increase from the previous year indicate a growing lack of spare capacity in the Brazilian economy. As a result, businesses will probably increase their level of capital spending. This will increase AD and shift the AD curve to the right. Higher economic activity (income/output) will cause upward pressure on interest rates and may have a negative impact on fixed-income securities. Higher income/output should increase corporate profits and is likely to have a positive impact on equity securities.

Solution to 3:

Expected corporate profits are an important determinant of the level of investment spending. The large increase in expected profits will raise the level of investment spending and increase aggregate demand. This will shift the AD curve to the right. The increase in corporate profits and the resulting increase in economic output should have a positive impact on equities. The increase in output will put upward pressure on interest rates and downward pressure on the prices of fixed-income securities.

Solution to 4:

Fiscal policy uses government spending to influence the level and growth rate of economic activity. The announcement indicates an increase in government spending, which is a direct component of AD. Therefore, higher spending on the projects will increase AD and shift the AD curve to the right. The increase in output and expenditure should be positive for equities. But it will be negative for existing fixed-income investments because higher interest rates will be required to induce investors to buy and hold the government debt issued to fund the new projects.

Solution to 5:

A recession in Europe will decrease the demand for Brazilian exports by European households and businesses and shift the AD curve to the left. The resulting decline in income and downward pressure on prices will be positive for fixed-income securities but negative for equities.

3.3.2 Shifts in Short-Run Aggregate Supply

Factors that change the cost of production or expected profit margins will cause the SRAS curve to shift. These factors include changes in

- nominal wages;
- input prices, including the price of natural resources;
- expectations about future output prices and the overall price level;
- business taxes and subsidies; and
- the exchange rate.

In addition, factors that shift the long-run AS curve (see Section 3.3.3) will also shift the SRAS curve by a corresponding amount because the SRAS and LRAS reflect the same underlying resources and technology. As the economy's resources and technology change, the full employment (or natural) level of output changes, and both the LRAS and SRAS shift accordingly.

Change in Nominal Wages Changes in nominal wages shift the short-run AS curve because wages are often the largest component of a company's costs. An increase in nominal wages raises production costs, resulting in a decrease in AS and a leftward shift in the SRAS curve. Lower wages shift the AS curve to the right. It is important to note that changes in nominal wages have no impact on the LRAS curve.

A better way to measure the impact of labor costs on the AS curve is to measure the change in unit labor cost. We define the change in unit labor cost as

$$\begin{aligned} \% \text{ Change in unit labor cost} &= \% \text{ Change in nominal wages} \\ &\quad - \% \text{ Change in productivity} \end{aligned}$$

EXAMPLE 9**Unit Labor Cost and Short-Run Aggregate Supply**

Suppose Finnish workers are paid €20 an hour and are able to produce 100 cell phones in an hour. The labor cost per cell phone is €0.20 (€20 divided by 100 units). If the wages per hour for Finnish workers rise by 10 percent from €20 to €22 and they are able to raise their productivity by 10 percent, what is the impact on unit labor cost and the short-run aggregate supply curve?

Solution:

The workers can now produce 110 cell phones per hour, and unit labor cost will not change ($22/110 = 0.20$). In this case, the SRAS curve will remain in its original position. If wages had increased by 20 percent instead of 10 percent, then unit labor cost would have increased and the SRAS would shift to the left. Conversely, if the wage increase were only 5 percent, then unit labor cost would have decreased and the SRAS would shift to the right.

Change in Input Prices The price of raw materials is an important component of cost for many businesses. Lower input prices reduce the cost of production, which, in turn, makes companies willing to produce more at any output price. This is reflected in a rightward shift of the SRAS curve. Conversely, higher input prices increase production costs, which, in turn, causes companies to reduce production at any output price. This shifts the SRAS curve to the left. During the 1970s, high oil prices caused the SRAS curve in most countries to shift to the left. In contrast, in the mid-1980s, declining oil prices lowered the cost of production and shifted the SRAS curve in most countries to the right. Oil prices currently have a smaller impact on the global economy than in the 1970s and 1980s because most countries have reduced their reliance on oil and improved their energy efficiency so that they now use less energy per unit of GDP.

Change in Expectations about Future Prices The impact of expected future prices on current output decisions is not as straightforward as it might seem. First, each company is primarily concerned about the price of its own output rather than the general price level. The latter may be more reflective of its costs. If it expects its own output price to rise (fall) relative to the general price level, then it may increase (decrease) production in response to the perceived change in its profit margin. As more and more companies become optimistic (pessimistic) about their ability to raise the relative price of their product, the SRAS will shift to the right (left). In the aggregate, of course, companies can neither raise nor lower their prices relative to the general price level. Hence, shifts in the SRAS driven by such price expectations are likely to be modest and temporary. Second, considering future prices introduces a temporal aspect into decision making. If the future price level is expected to be higher, companies may decide to produce more today in order to expand inventory available for future sale. But they will only do so if the cost of carrying inventory (financing, storage, and spoilage) is less than they expect to save on production costs by producing more today and less in the future. Conversely, they may cut current production and sell out of existing inventory if they expect future prices (and costs) to be lower.

The upshot is that expectations of higher (lower) future prices are likely to shift the SRAS curve to the right (left), but the impact may be modest and/or temporary.

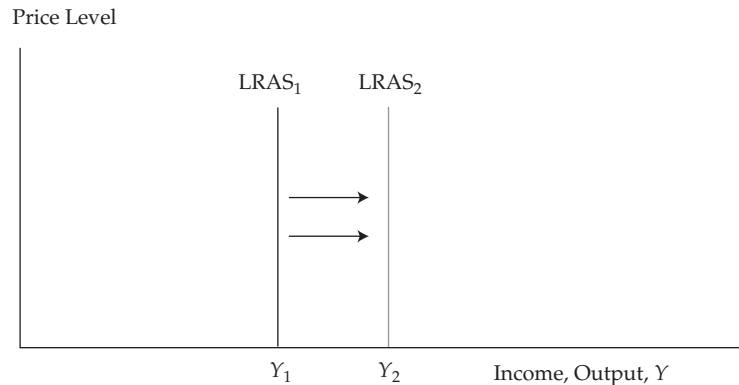
Change in Business Taxes and Subsidies Higher business taxes increase production costs per unit and shift the short-run AS curve to the left. Business subsidies are a payment from the government to the producer. Subsidies for businesses lower their production costs and shift the SRAS curve to the right.

Change in the Exchange Rate Many countries import raw materials, including energy and intermediate goods. As a result, changes in the exchange rate can affect the cost of production and, therefore, aggregate supply. A higher Yen relative to the Euro will lower the cost of raw materials and intermediate goods imported to Japan from Europe. This, in turn, will lower the production costs of Japanese producers and shift the AS curve in Japan to the right. A lower Yen will have the opposite effect.

3.3.3 Shifts in Long-Run Aggregate Supply

As discussed above, the position of the LRAS curve is determined by the potential output of the economy. **Potential GDP** measures the productive capacity of the economy and is the level of real GDP that can be produced at full employment. Potential GDP is not a static concept but can increase each year at a steady rate as the economy's resource capacity grows. Therefore, any factor increasing the resource base of an economy causes the LRAS curve to shift as shown in Exhibit 19.

Exhibit 19 Shift in Long-Run Aggregate Supply (LRAS) Curve



These factors include changes in

- supply of labor and quality of labor forces (human capital);
- supply of natural resources;
- supply of physical capital; and
- productivity and technology.

Supply of Labor The larger the supply of labor, the more output the economy can produce. The labor supply depends on growth in the population, the labor force participation rate (the percentage of the population working or looking for work), and net immigration. The determinants of the labor supply are discussed in more detail in Section 4. Increases in the labor supply shift the LRAS curve to the right. Decreases shift the curve to the left.

Supply of Natural Resources Natural resources are essential inputs to the production process and include everything from available land to oil to water. Increased availability of natural resources shifts the LRAS curve to the right.

Supply of Physical Capital Investment in new property, plant, equipment, and software is an essential ingredient for growth. An increase in the stock of physical capital will increase the capacity of the economy to produce goods and services. Simply put, if workers are provided with more and better equipment to use, they should be able to produce more output than they could with the older equipment. Thus, strong growth in business investment, which increases the supply of physical capital, shifts the LRAS curve to the right.

Supply of Human Capital Another way to raise the productive capacity of a country is to increase human capital—the quality of the labor force—through training, skills development, and education. Improvement in the quality of the labor force shifts the LRAS curve to the right.

Labor Productivity and Technology Another important factor affecting the productive capacity of an economy is how efficient labor is in transforming inputs into final goods and services. **Productivity** measures the efficiency of labor and is the amount of output produced by workers in a given period of time—for example, output per hour worked. An increase in productivity decreases labor cost, improves profitability, and results in higher output. Two of the main drivers of labor productivity—physical capital per worker and the quality of the workforce—have been discussed above. The third key determinant of productivity is technology. Advances in technology shift the LRAS curve to the right.

EXAMPLE 10**Unit Labor Cost and Long-Run Aggregate Supply**

Finnish workers are paid €20 per hour and are able to produce 100 cell phones in an hour. If workers develop a new technique for assembly and are able to produce 200 cell phones per hour, what is the impact on the long-run aggregate supply curve?

Solution:

Labor cost per unit will decline to €0.10 ($20/200 = €0.10$ per cell phone). As a result, profit per unit will rise and companies will have an incentive to increase production. Thus, the LRAS curve shifts to the right.

The factors shifting the AS curve are summarized in Exhibit 20. Rightward shifts in the SRAS or LRAS curves are defined as an increase in supply. Leftward shifts in the SRAS or LRAS curves represent a decrease in supply.

Exhibit 20 Impact of Factors Shifting Aggregate Supply

An Increase in	Shifts SRAS	Shifts LRAS	Reason
Supply of labor	Rightward	Rightward	Increases resource base
Supply of natural resources	Rightward	Rightward	Increases resource base
Supply of human capital	Rightward	Rightward	Increases resource base
Supply of physical capital	Rightward	Rightward	Increases resource base
Productivity and technology	Rightward	Rightward	Improves efficiency of inputs
Nominal wages	Leftward	No impact	Increases labor cost
Input prices (e.g., energy)	Leftward	No impact	Increases cost of production
Expectation of future prices	Rightward	No impact	Anticipation of higher costs and/or perception of improved pricing power
Business taxes	Leftward	No impact	Increases cost of production
Subsidy	Rightward	No impact	Lowers cost of production
Exchange rate	Rightward	No impact	Lowers cost of production

As with our summary of factors that shift the AD curve, Exhibit 20 considers each of the factors affecting aggregate supply in isolation. In practice, various factors will be at work simultaneously, and there may be interaction among them. This is especially important with respect to interaction between factors listed as affecting only SRAS and those that also impact LRAS.

For example, consider an increase in the cost of natural resource inputs (e.g., energy). This shifts the SRAS curve to the left, but according to Exhibit 20, it has no effect on LRAS. This presumes that there has not been a permanent change in the relative prices of the factors of production. If there has been a permanent change, companies will be forced to conserve on the now more expensive input and will not be able to produce as efficiently. The LRAS curve would, therefore, shift to the left, just as it would if the available supply of natural resources had declined relative to the supply of other inputs. Indeed, that is the most likely cause of a permanent change in relative input prices.

EXAMPLE 11

Shifts in Aggregate Supply

John Donovan is a portfolio manager for a global mutual fund. Currently, his fund has 10 percent of its assets invested in Chinese equities. He is considering increasing the fund's allocation to the Chinese equity market. His decision will be based on an analysis of the following economic developments and their impact on the Chinese economy and equity market. What is the impact on SRAS and LRAS from the following factors?

- 1 Global oil prices, currently near their longer-run trend at \$75 a barrel, have increased from \$35 a barrel over the last three years because of strong demand from China and India.
- 2 The number of students studying engineering has dramatically increased at Chinese universities over the last decade.
- 3 Wages for China's workers are rising, leading some multinational companies to consider shifting their investments to Vietnam or India.
- 4 Recent data show that business investment as a share of GDP is over 40 percent in China.
- 5 The People's Bank of China is likely to permit the yuan to appreciate by 10 percent over the next year.

Solution to 1:

Higher energy prices cause a decrease in short-run AS and shift the SRAS curve to the left. Because oil prices are back to their longer-run trend, the leftward shift in SRAS essentially reverses a previous shift that occurred when oil prices fell to \$35, and it is likely that there will be no impact on the LRAS curve. Lower output and profit are likely to have a negative effect on Chinese equity prices.

Solution to 2:

More students studying engineering indicates an improvement in the quality of the labor force—an increase in human capital. As a result, AS increases and the AS curve shifts to the right. Both short-run and long-run curves are affected. Higher output and profits may be expected to have a positive effect on Chinese equity prices.

Solution to 3:

The increase in wages increases labor costs for businesses, causes short-run aggregate supply to decline, and shifts the SRAS curve to the left. Lower output and profit should have a negative effect on Chinese equity prices.

Solution to 4:

The high level of business investment indicates that the capital stock in China is growing at a fast rate. This means that workers have more capital to use, which increases their productivity. Thus, AS increases and the AS curve shifts to the right. Both short-run AS and long-run AS are affected. Higher output should have a positive effect on Chinese equity prices.

Solution to 5:

The probable appreciation of the yuan means that the cost of imported raw materials, such as iron ore, coal, and oil, will be lower for Chinese companies. As a result, short-run AS increases and the SRAS curve shifts to the right. The LRAS curve may also shift to the right if the appreciation of the yuan is permanent and global commodity prices do not fully adjust. Higher output and profit should have a positive effect on Chinese equity prices.¹⁵

The implications of the above factors for equity investment in China are ambiguous. If the long-run effects dominate, however, then the net impact should be positive. The positive factors—the high level of investment and the growing pool of engineering students—have a lasting impact on output and profit. The negative factors—higher wages and oil prices—should be temporary because wages will realign with the price level and the increase in oil prices appears to offset a previous temporary decline. The reduction in raw material prices due to the stronger currency is positive for output, profit, and equities in the short run and perhaps in the long run as well.

3.4 Equilibrium GDP and Prices

Now that we have discussed the components of the AD and AS model, we can combine them to determine the real level of GDP and the price level. Equilibrium occurs where the AD and AS curves intersect. At this point, the quantity of aggregate output demanded (or the level of aggregate expenditures) is equal to the quantity of aggregate output supplied. In Exhibit 21, equilibrium price and GDP occur at P_1 and Y_1 . If the price level is above P_1 , then the quantity of output supplied exceeds the amount demanded. This situation would result in unsold inventories and would require a reduction in production and in prices. If the price level is below P_1 , then the quantity of aggregate output demanded exceeds the quantity of aggregate output supplied. This situation would result in a shortage of goods that would put upward pressure on prices.

It is important to understand that short-run macroeconomic equilibrium may occur at a level above or below full employment. We consider four possible types of macroeconomic equilibrium:

- 1 Long-run full employment
- 2 Short-run recessionary gap
- 3 Short-run inflationary gap
- 4 Short-run stagflation

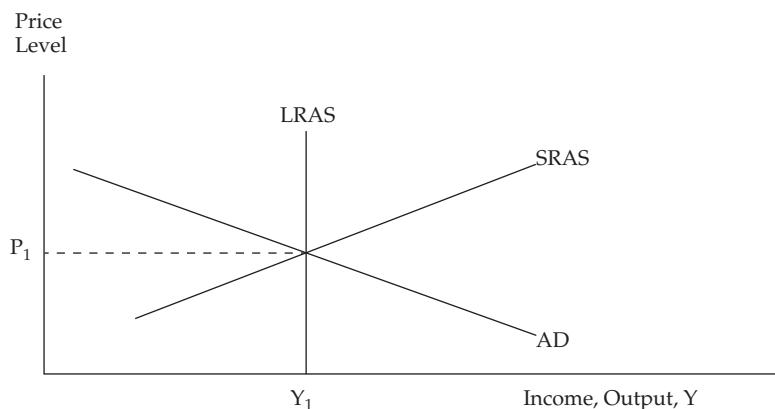
¹⁵ The alert reader may have noted that the stronger yuan will also reduce export demand and shift the AD curve to the left. The combined impact of the AD and AS shifts on output, profit, and equity prices is ambiguous.

From an investment perspective, the performance of asset classes and financial markets will differ in each of the above cases as the economy makes the adjustment toward the macroeconomic equilibrium. We look at these differences later in the reading.

3.4.1 Long-Run Equilibrium

Exhibit 21 shows the long-run full employment equilibrium for an economy. In this case, equilibrium occurs where the AD curve intersects the SRAS curve at a point on the LRAS curve. Because equilibrium occurs at a point on the LRAS curve, the economy is at potential real GDP. Both labor and capital are fully employed, and everyone who wants a job has one. *In the long run, equilibrium GDP is equal to potential GDP.*

Exhibit 21 Long-Run Macroeconomic Equilibrium



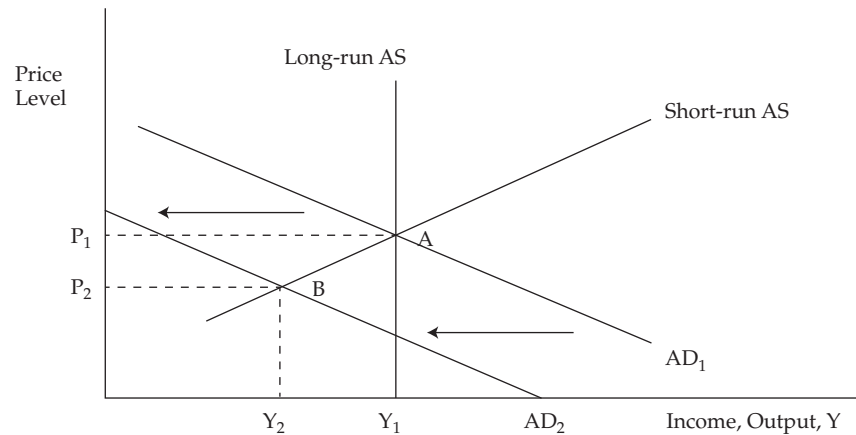
In practice, the level of potential GDP is difficult to measure with precision. Because of fluctuations arising from shifts in the AD and SRAS curves, the economy rarely operates at potential GDP. Thus, potential GDP is not observable from the data on actual GDP. In addition, potential GDP is determined by factors that are themselves difficult to measure (see Section 4.2). Thus, “bottom-up” estimates of the *level* of potential output are also quite imprecise. However, as will be discussed in Section 4, economists have confidence that the long-run *growth rate* of potential GDP can be estimated well enough to provide meaningful guidance for analysts and policymakers. Hence, in the short run, economists generally focus on factors that cause actual GDP to grow faster or slower than their estimate of the long-run growth rate of potential output. In addition, they focus on measures that indicate, albeit imprecisely, the extent to which the economy is operating above or below its productive capacity, such as unemployment and capacity utilization.

3.4.2 Recessional Gap

Cyclical fluctuations in real GDP and prices are caused by shifts in both the AD and SRAS curves. A decline in AD or a leftward shift in the AD curve results in lower GDP and lower prices. Such declines in AD lead to economic contractions, and if such declines drive demand below the economy’s potential GDP, the economy goes into a recession. In Exhibit 22, when aggregate demand falls, the equilibrium shifts from Point A to Point B. Real GDP contracts from Y_1 to Y_2 , and the aggregate price level falls from P_1 to P_2 . Because of the decline in demand, companies reduce their

workforce and the unemployment rate rises. The economy is in recession,¹⁶ and the recessionary gap is measured as the difference between Y_2 and Y_1 or the amount by which equilibrium output is below potential GDP. Thus, a recessionary gap occurs when the AD curve intersects the short-run AS curve at a short-run equilibrium level of GDP below potential GDP. *Most importantly, in contrast to full employment, equilibrium GDP is below potential GDP.*

Exhibit 22 Recessionary Gap



Any of the factors discussed in Section 3.3.1 could cause the shift in the AD curve. Tightening of monetary policy, higher taxes, more pessimistic consumers and businesses, and lower equity and housing prices all reduce AD and are all possible causes of a recession.

The question is, How does the economy return to full employment? There is considerable debate among economists about the answer to this question. Some economists argue that an automatic, self-correcting mechanism will push the economy back to its potential, without the need for government action. The idea is that because of the decline in prices and higher unemployment, workers will be willing to accept lower nominal wages. Workers will do this because each currency unit of wages now buys more goods and services because of their lower price. As a result, lower wages and input prices will cause the SRAS curve to shift to the right (see Exhibit 20) and push the economy back to full employment and potential GDP.

The problem is that this price mechanism can take several years to work. As an alternative, government can use the tools of fiscal and monetary policy to shift the AD curve to the right (from Point B to Point A in Exhibit 22) and move the economy back to full employment. On the fiscal side, policymakers can reduce taxes or increase government spending. On the monetary side, the central bank can lower interest rates or increase the money supply. The problem, however, is that variable lags in the effectiveness of these policy measures imply that policy adjustments may end up reinforcing rather than counteracting underlying shifts in the economy.

Investment Implications of a Decrease in AD Aggregate demand and aggregate supply are theoretical measures that are very hard to measure directly. Most governments, however, publish statistics that provide an indication of the direction that aggregate

¹⁶ A **recession** is defined as a period during which real GDP decreases (i.e., “negative growth”) for at least two successive quarters or a period of significant decline in total output, income, employment, and sales usually lasting from six months to a year.

demand and supply are moving over time. For example, statistics on consumer sentiment, factory orders for durable and nondurable goods, the value of unfilled orders, the number of new housing starts, the number of hours worked, and changes in inventories provide an indication of the direction of aggregate demand. If these statistics suggest that a recession is caused by a decline in AD, the following conditions are likely to occur:

- Corporate profits will decline.
- Commodity prices will decline.
- Interest rates will decline.
- Demand for credit will decline.

This suggests the following investment strategy:

- Reduce investments in **cyclical companies**¹⁷ because their earnings are likely to decline the most in an economic slowdown.
- Reduce investments in commodities and/or commodity-oriented companies because the decline in commodity prices will slow revenue growth and reduce profit margins.
- Increase investments in **defensive companies**¹⁸ because they are likely to experience only modest earnings declines in an economic slowdown.
- Increase investments in investment-grade or government-issued fixed-income securities. The prices of these securities should increase as interest rates decline.
- Increase investments in long-maturity fixed-income securities because their prices will be more responsive to the decline in interest rates than the prices of shorter-maturity securities.
- Reduce investments in speculative equity securities and in fixed-income securities with low credit quality ratings.

As with most investment strategies, this strategy will be most successful if it is implemented before other market participants recognize the opportunities and asset prices adjust.

EXAMPLE 12

Using AD and AS: The Recession of 2007–2009

Many Asian economies were more adversely affected than the United States by the global recession that began in late 2007. In the first quarter of 2009, real GDP fell at an annualized rate of 16 percent in Japan and 11 percent in Singapore, compared with a 6 percent annualized decline in the United States. Using the data on exports as a share of GDP shown in Exhibit 23, explain how the following economic factors contributed to the recession in the Asian economies:

- 1 Collapse of house prices and home construction in the United States.
- 2 Oil prices rising from around \$30 a barrel in 2004 to nearly \$150 a barrel in 2008. (*Note:* Most Asian economies rely on imports for almost all of their oil and energy needs. In contrast, the United States has a large domestic energy industry and imports about one-half of its oil.)

¹⁷ Cyclical companies are companies with sales and profits that regularly expand and contract with the business cycle or state of economy (for example, automobile and chemical companies).

¹⁸ Defensive companies are companies with sales and profits that have little sensitivity to the business cycle or state of the economy (for example, food and pharmaceutical companies).

- 3 The dramatic reduction in credit availability following the collapse or near collapse of major financial institutions in 2008.

Exhibit 23 Exports as a Share of GDP, 2007

Economy	Exports as a Percentage of GDP	Percentage of Exports Going to United States
Singapore	186	11.2
Hong Kong	166	11.5
Taiwan	62	11.6
South Korea	53	10.9
Germany	47	7.1
China	37	26.4
Mexico	28	80.2
Kenya	27	8.2
Japan	17	20.1
India	14	17.0
United States	12	—
Ethiopia	11	6.7

Sources: World Bank: World Development Indicators and OECD Stat Extracts.

Solution to 1:

The collapse in housing prices caused housing construction spending, a component of business investment, to decline in the United States. The decline in housing prices also caused a sharp fall in household wealth. As a result, consumption spending in the United States declined because of the wealth effect. The decline in both consumption and housing construction shifted the AD curve for the United States to the left, resulting in a US recession. The link to the Asian economies was through global trade because exports represented such a large share of the Asian economies' GDP (Exhibit 23). In turn, these economies exported a significant amount of goods and services to the United States. Thus, the recession in the United States and especially the decline in US consumption spending caused a sharp fall in exports among Asian economies. This lowered their AD and caused the AD curve to shift to the left, resulting in a recessionary gap in these economies.

Solution to 2:

The rise in oil prices increased input cost and shifted the short-run AS curve to the left. Because the eastern Asian economies are heavily dependent on imported oil, their economies were more adversely affected than the economy of the United States.

Solution to 3:

The decline in housing prices caused financial institutions in the United States to suffer large losses on housing-related loans and securities. Several large lenders collapsed, and the US Treasury and the Federal Reserve had to intervene to prevent a wave of bankruptcies among large financial institutions. As a result of the crisis, it became difficult for households and businesses to obtain credit to finance their spending. This caused AD to fall and increased the severity of the

recession in the United States, resulting in a significant decline in US imports and thus exports from the Asian economies. In addition, the financial crisis made it more difficult to get trade finance, further reducing exports from Asia.

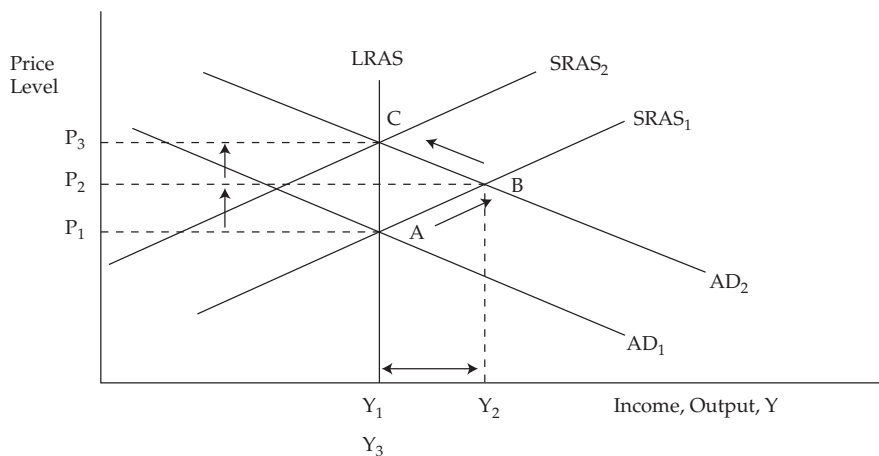
In summary, global investors need to be aware of the growing linkages among economies and the extent that one economy's growth depends on demand from within as well as from outside of that economy. Data on exports as a percentage of an economy's GDP provide an indication of this dependence. Although Japan is often viewed as an export-driven economy, Exhibit 23 shows that exports are only 17 percent of its GDP. Similarly, the economy of India depends largely on domestic spending for growth because exports account for only 14 percent of GDP.

3.4.3 Inflationary Gap

Increases in AD lead to economic expansions as real GDP and employment increase. If the expansion drives the economy beyond its production capacity, however, **inflation**¹⁹ will occur. As summarized in Exhibit 18, higher government spending, lower taxes, a more optimistic outlook among consumers and businesses, a weaker domestic currency, rising equity and housing prices, and an increase in the money supply would each stimulate aggregate demand and shift the AD curve to the right. If aggregate supply does not increase to match the increase in AD, a rise in the overall level of prices will result.

In Exhibit 24, an increase in AD will shift the equilibrium level of GDP from Point A to Point B. Real output increases from Y_1 to Y_2 , and the aggregate price level rises from P_1 to P_2 . As a result of the increase in aggregate demand, companies increase their production and hire more workers. The unemployment rate declines. Once an economy reaches its potential GDP, however, companies must pay higher wages and other input prices to further increase production. The economy now faces an inflationary gap, measured by the difference between Y_2 and Y_1 in Exhibit 24. *An inflationary gap occurs when the economy's short-run level of equilibrium GDP is above potential GDP, resulting in upward pressure on prices.*

Exhibit 24 Inflationary Gap



¹⁹ The inflation rate is defined as the increase in the general price level from one period to the next.

GDP cannot remain at Y_2 for long because the economy is over-utilizing its resources—i.e., extra shifts of workers are hired and plant and equipment are operating at their maximum capacity. Eventually, workers become tired and plant and equipment wear out. The increase in the general price level and input prices will set in motion the process of returning the economy back to potential GDP. Higher wages and input prices shift the SRAS curve to the left (from $SRAS_1$ to $SRAS_2$), moving the economy to Point C in Exhibit 24. Again, this self-correcting mechanism may work slowly.

A nation's government and/or its central bank can attempt to use the tools of fiscal and monetary policy to control inflation by shifting the AD curve to the left (AD_2 to AD_1 in Exhibit 24) so that the return to full employment occurs without the price increase. From a fiscal perspective, policymakers can raise taxes or cut government spending. From a monetary perspective, the central bank can reduce bank reserves, resulting in a decrease in the growth of the money supply and higher interest rates.

Investment Implications of an Increase in AD Resulting in an Inflationary Gap If economic statistics (consumer sentiment, factory orders for durable and nondurable goods, etc.) suggest that there is an expansion caused by an increase in AD, the following conditions are likely to occur:

- Corporate profits will rise.
- Commodity prices will increase.
- Interest rates will rise.
- Inflationary pressures will build.

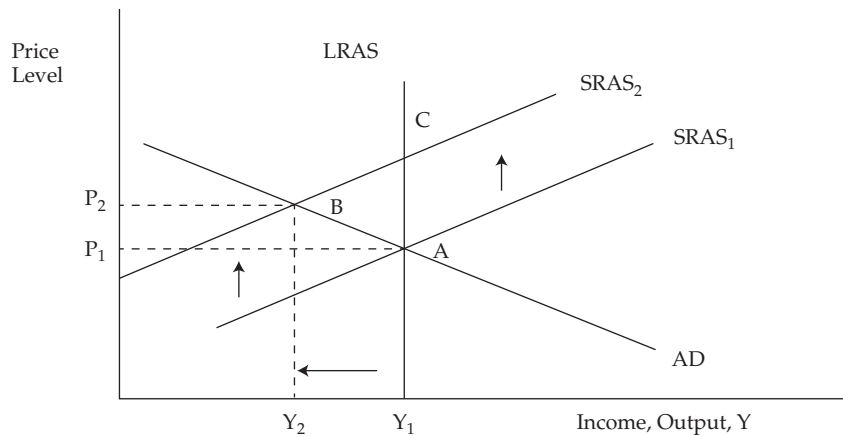
This suggests the following investment strategy:

- Increase investment in cyclical companies because they are expected to have the largest increase in earnings.
- Reduce investments in defensive companies because they are expected to have only a modest increase in earnings.
- Increase investments in commodities and commodity-oriented equities because they will benefit from higher production and output.
- Reduce investments in fixed-income securities, especially longer-maturity securities, because they will decline in price as interest rates rise. Raise exposure to speculative fixed-income securities (junk bonds) because default risks decrease in an economic expansion.

3.4.4 Stagflation: Both High Inflation and High Unemployment

Structural fluctuations in real GDP are caused by fluctuations in SRAS. Declines in aggregate supply bring about **stagflation**—high unemployment and increased inflation. Increases in aggregate supply conversely give rise to high economic growth and low inflation.

Exhibit 25 shows the case of a decline in aggregate supply, perhaps caused by an unexpected increase in basic material and oil prices. The equilibrium level of GDP shifts from Point A to B. The economy experiences a recession as GDP falls from Y_1 to Y_2 , but the price level, instead of falling, rises from P_1 to P_2 . Over time, the reduction in output and employment should put downward pressure on wages and input prices and shift the SRAS curve back to the right, re-establishing full employment equilibrium at Point A. However, this mechanism may be painfully slow. Policymakers may use fiscal and monetary policy to shift the AD curve to the right, as previously discussed, but at the cost of a permanently higher price level at Point C.

Exhibit 25 Stagflation

The global economy experienced stagflation in the mid-1970s and early 1980s. Both unemployment and inflation soared. The problem was caused by a sharp decline in aggregate supply fueled by higher input prices, especially the price of oil. In 1973, the price of oil quadrupled. A steep global recession began in late 1973 and lasted through early 1975. The recession was unusual because prices rose rather than declined as would be expected in a typical demand-caused downturn. In 1979–1980, the price of oil doubled. Higher energy prices shifted the SRAS curve to the left, as shown in Exhibit 25, leading to a global recession in 1980–1982. In the United States, the contraction in output was reinforced by the Federal Reserve’s decision to tighten monetary policy to fight the supply-induced inflation.

Investment Implications of Shift in AS Labor and raw material costs, including energy prices, determine the direction of shifts in short-run aggregate supply: Higher costs for labor, raw materials, and energy lead to a decrease in aggregate supply, resulting in lower economic growth and higher prices. Conversely, lower labor costs, raw material prices, and energy prices lead to an increase in aggregate supply, resulting in higher economic growth and a lower aggregate price level. Productivity is also an important factor. Higher rates of productivity growth shift the AS to the right, resulting in higher output and lower unit input prices. Lower rates of productivity growth do the opposite and shift the AS curve to the left.

From an investment perspective, a decline in AS (leftward shift of the SRAS curve) suggests

- reducing investment in fixed income because rising output prices (i.e., inflation) put upward pressure on nominal interest rates;
- reducing investment in most equity securities because profit margins are squeezed and output declines; and
- increasing investment in commodities or commodity-based companies because prices and profits are likely to rise.

On the other hand, an increase in AS (rightward shift of the SRAS curve) due to higher productivity growth or lower labor, raw material, and energy costs is favorable for most asset classes other than commodities.

3.4.5 Conclusions on AD and AS

The business cycle and the resulting fluctuations in real GDP are caused by shifts in the AD and AS curves. The impact of these shifts can be summarized as follows:

- An increase in AD raises real GDP, lowers the unemployment rate, and increases the aggregate level of prices.
- A decrease in AD lowers real GDP, increases the unemployment rate, and decreases the aggregate level of prices.
- An increase in AS raises real GDP, lowers the unemployment rate, and lowers the aggregate level of prices.
- A decrease in AS lowers real GDP, raises the unemployment rate, and raises the aggregate level of prices.

If both curves shift, the effect is a combination of the above individual effects. We can look at four possible cases:

- 1 *Both AD and AS increase.* If both AD and AS increase, real GDP will increase but the impact on inflation is not clear unless we know the magnitude of the changes because an increase in AD will increase the price level, whereas an increase in AS will decrease the price level. If AD increases more than AS, the price level will increase. If AS increases more than AD, however, the price level will decline.
- 2 *Both AD and AS decrease.* If both AD and AS decrease, real GDP and employment will decline, but the impact on the price level is not clear unless we know the magnitude of the changes because a decrease in AD decreases the price level, whereas a decrease in AS increases the price level. If AD decreases more than AS, the price level will fall. If AS decreases more than AD, the price level will rise.
- 3 *AD increases and AS decreases.* If AD increases and AS declines, the price level will rise, but the effect on real GDP is not clear unless we know the magnitude of the changes because an increase in AD increases real GDP, whereas a decrease in AS decreases real GDP. If AD increases more than AS declines, GDP will rise. If AS decreases more than AD increases, real GDP will fall.
- 4 *AD decreases and AS increases.* If AD decreases and AS increases, the price level will decline but the impact on real GDP is not clear unless we know the magnitudes of the changes because a decrease in AD decreases real GDP, whereas an increase in AS increases real GDP. If AD decreases more than AS increases, real GDP will fall. If AS increases more than AD declines, real GDP will rise.

Exhibit 26 summarizes these four cases.

Exhibit 26 Effect of Combined Changes in AS and AD

Change in AS	Change in AD	Effect on Real GDP	Effect on Aggregate Price Level
Increase	Increase	Increase	Indeterminate
Decrease	Decrease	Decrease	Indeterminate
Increase	Decrease	Indeterminate	Decrease
Decrease	Increase	Indeterminate	Increase

Whether the growth of the economy is demand- or supply-driven has an impact on asset prices. Demand-driven expansions are normally associated with rising interest rates and inflation, whereas contractions are associated with lower inflation and interest rates. Supply-driven expansions are associated with lower inflation and interest rates, whereas supply-driven contractions are associated with rising inflation and interest rates.

EXAMPLE 13**Investment Strategy Based on AD and AS Curves**

An analyst is evaluating the possibility of investing in China, Italy, Mexico, or Brazil. What are the equity and fixed-income investment opportunities in these countries based on the following events?

- 1 The Chinese government announced a spending plan of \$1.2 trillion or 13 percent of GDP. In addition, the central bank of China eased monetary policy, resulting in a surge of lending.
- 2 The Italian government announced a decline in labor productivity, and it expects this trend to continue into the future.
- 3 In response to rising inflationary pressure, the Mexican central bank tightened monetary policy, and the government announced tax increases and spending cuts to balance the budget.
- 4 A major discovery of oil off the coast of Brazil lowered oil prices, while the Brazilian government announced a major increase in spending on public infrastructure to stimulate the economy.

Solution to 1:

Stimulative fiscal and monetary policies should result in a demand-driven expansion. Investors should reduce investments in fixed-income securities and defensive companies and invest in cyclical companies and commodities. As a result, the prospects for growth-oriented equity investments look favorable in China.

Solution to 2:

A decline in labor productivity will result in a decline in AS; i.e., the AS curve will shift to the left. This is typically a poor investment environment. Investors should reduce investments in both fixed-income and equity securities and invest in commodities. Entry into Italian stocks and bonds does not look attractive.

Solution to 3:

The policy measures put in place by the Mexican government and central bank will cause a drop in AD and likely result in a recession. Investors should increase their investments in fixed-income securities because interest rates will most likely decline as the recession deepens. This is a poor environment for equity securities.

Solution to 4:

This is a situation where both the AD and AS curves will shift. The increase in spending on public infrastructure will shift the AD curve to the right, resulting in higher aggregate expenditures and prices. Lower oil prices will shift the AS curve to the right, resulting in higher GDP but lower prices. Thus, GDP will clearly increase, but the impact on prices and inflation is indeterminate. As a result, investors should increase their investment in equity securities; however, the impact on fixed-income securities is unclear.

EXAMPLE 14**Using AD and AS to Explain Japan's Economic Problem**

Japan has experienced sluggish growth in real GDP for nearly two decades following the bursting of an asset and investment bubble in the late 1980s. At the same time, Japan has experienced deflation (declining prices) over this period. The reasons for this protracted period of stagnation continue to be debated among economists. Failure to recognize a change in the Japanese growth rate has hurt many investors, especially those taking a long-term perspective. From their peak in 1989, Japanese equity prices, as measured by the Nikkei index, fell by over 60 percent before bottoming out in mid-1992. Since that time, the market has been essentially flat despite considerable volatility.

The performance of the Japanese economy can be explained using the AD and AS model. The protracted slowdown of growth in Japan beginning in the early 1990s can be linked to the effect of the collapse of the equity and commercial real estate markets in the late 1980s and to excessive investment in capital goods (new factories and equipment) in the 1980s. These problems were compounded by persistent weakness in the banking sector, a profound lack of confidence among businesses and consumers, and negative demographics with slow growth in the working age population.

The sum of these developments caused a decline in both the AD and AS curves. Aggregate demand declined, causing the AD curve to shift to the left for the following reasons:

- The wealth effect due to the decline in equity and real estate prices sharply reduced consumption spending. Asset prices have yet to recover from the fall.
- Excessive investment in capital goods caused a sharp decline in business investment.
- Lack of confidence among businesses and consumers.
- Problems in the banking sector made monetary policy ineffective because banks were unable to lend, which negatively affected both consumer and business spending.

AS declined for the following reasons:

- Marked slowing in private investment spending reduced the capital stock. This also reduced potential GDP.
- Slow population growth limited the growth in the labor supply. This also reduced potential GDP.
- Higher energy prices slowed growth because of Japan's heavy dependence on imported energy.

As would be expected, the declines in both AD and AS resulted in slow GDP growth. The fact that prices fell indicates that the AD curve shifted more than the AS curve.

ECONOMIC GROWTH AND SUSTAINABILITY

4

We now shift focus from the short-run cyclical movement of the economy to its long-term growth rate. Economic growth is calculated as the annual percentage change in real GDP or the annual change in real per capita GDP:

- Growth in real GDP measures how rapidly the total economy is expanding.
- Per capita GDP, defined as real GDP divided by population, determines the standard of living in each country and the ability of the average person to buy goods and services.

Economic growth is important because rapid growth in per capita real GDP can transform a poor nation into a wealthy one. Even small differences in the growth rate of per capita GDP, if sustained over time, have a large impact on an economy's standard of living. One should think of the growth rate of GDP as the equivalent of a rate of return on a portfolio. Small differences in return compounded over many years make a big difference. Nevertheless, there is a limit to how fast an economy can grow. Faster growth is not always better for an economy because there are costs associated with excess growth, such as higher inflation, potential environmental damage, and the lower consumption and higher savings needed to finance the growth.

This raises the issue of sustainable growth, which requires an understanding of the concept of potential GDP. Recall that potential GDP measures the productive capacity of the economy and is the level of real GDP that an economy could produce if capital and labor are fully employed. In order to grow over time, an economy must add to its productive capacity. Thus, the **sustainable rate of economic growth** is measured by the rate of increase in the economy's productive capacity or potential GDP. It is important to note that economists cannot directly measure potential output. Instead, they estimate it using a variety of techniques discussed later in this reading.

For global investors, estimating the sustainable rate of economic growth for an economy is important for both asset allocation and security selection decisions. Investors need to understand how the rate of economic growth differs among countries and whether these growth rates are sustainable. When examining the GDP data, global investors need to address a number of questions, including the following:

- 1 What are the underlying determinants or sources of growth for the country?
- 2 Are these sources of growth likely to remain stable or change over time?
- 3 How can we measure and forecast sustainable growth for different countries?

4.1 The Production Function and Potential GDP

The neoclassical or Solow growth model is the framework used to determine the underlying sources of growth for an economy. The model shows that the economy's productive capacity and potential GDP increase for two reasons:

- 1 accumulation of such inputs as capital, labor, and raw materials used in production, and
- 2 discovery and application of new technologies that make the inputs in the production process more productive—that is, able to produce more goods and services for the same amount of input.

The model is based on a **production function** that provides the quantitative link between the level of output that the economy can produce and the inputs used in the production process, given the state of technology. A two-factor production function with labor and capital as the inputs is expressed mathematically as

$$Y = AF(L,K)$$

where Y denotes the level of aggregate output in the economy, L is the quantity of labor or number of workers in the economy, K is the capital stock or the equipment and structures used to produce goods and services, and A represents technological knowledge or **total factor productivity** (TFP). TFP is a scale factor that reflects the portion of growth that is not accounted for by the capital and labor inputs. The main factor influencing TFP is technological change. Like potential GDP, TFP is not directly observed in the economy and must be estimated.

The production function shows that output in the economy depends on inputs and the level of technology. The economy's capacity to produce goods grows when these inputs increase and/or technology advances. The more technologically advanced an economy is, the more output it is able to produce from a given amount of inputs.

Two assumptions about the production function provide a link to microeconomics. First, we assume that the production function has constant returns to scale. This means that if all the inputs in the production process are increased by the same percentage, then output will rise by that percentage. Thus, doubling all inputs would double output. Second, we assume that the production function exhibits **diminishing marginal productivity** with respect to any individual input. This property plays an important role in assessing the contribution of labor and capital to economic growth. Marginal productivity looks at the extra output that is produced from a one-unit increase in an input if the other inputs are unchanged. It applies to any input as long as the other inputs are held constant. For example, if we have a factory of a fixed size and we add more workers to the factory, the marginal productivity of labor measures how much additional output each additional worker will produce.

Diminishing marginal productivity means that at some point the extra output obtained from each additional unit of the input will decline. In the above example, if we hire more workers at the existing factory (fixed capital input in this case), output will rise by a smaller and smaller amount with each additional worker. Traditionally, economists focused on the labor input and how the productivity of labor would decline given a fixed amount of land. The traditional growth theory, where labor is the only (variable) input, was developed by Thomas Malthus in his 1798 publication, *Essay on the Principle of Population*. Malthus argued that as the population and labor force grew, the additional output produced by an additional worker would decline essentially to zero and there would be no long-term economic growth. This gloomy forecast caused others to label economics the "dismal science."

The dire prediction implied by declining marginal productivity of labor never materialized, and economists changed the focus of the analysis away from labor to capital. In this case, if we add more and more capital to a fixed number of workers, the amount of additional output contributed by each additional amount of capital

will fall. Thus, if capital grows faster than labor, capital will become less productive, resulting in slower and slower growth. Diminishing marginal productivity of capital has two major implications for potential GDP:

- 1 Long-term sustainable growth cannot rely solely on **capital deepening investment** that increases the stock of capital relative to labor. More generally, increasing the supply of some input(s) relative to other inputs will lead to diminishing returns and cannot be the basis for sustainable growth.
- 2 Given the relative scarcity and hence high productivity of capital in developing countries, the growth rates of developing countries should exceed those of developed countries. As a result, there should be a **convergence** of incomes between developed and developing countries over time.

Because of diminishing returns to capital, the only way to sustain growth in potential GDP per capita is through technological change or growth in total factor productivity. This results in an upward shift in the production function: The economy produces more goods and services using the same level of labor and capital inputs. In terms of the formal production function shown above, this is reflected by an increase in the technology parameter, A .

Using the production function, Robert Solow developed a model that explained the contribution of labor, capital, and technology (total factor productivity) to economic growth. The growth accounting equation shows that the rate of growth of potential output equals growth in technology plus the weighted average growth rate of labor and capital.

$$\text{Growth in potential GDP} = \text{Growth in technology} + W_L (\text{Growth in labor}) + W_C (\text{Growth in capital})$$

where W_L and W_C are the relative shares of capital and labor in national income. The capital share is the sum of corporate profits, net interest income, net rental income, and depreciation divided by GDP. The labor share is employee compensation divided by GDP. For the United States, W_L and W_C are roughly 0.7 and 0.3, respectively.

The growth accounting equation highlights a key point: The contribution of labor and capital to long-term growth depends on their respective shares of national income. For the United States, because labor's share is higher, an increase in the growth rate of labor will have a significantly larger impact (roughly double) on potential GDP growth than will an equivalent increase in the growth rate of capital.

The growth accounting equation can be further modified to explain growth in per capita GDP. Because it measures the standard of living and purchasing power of the average person in an economy, per capita GDP is more relevant than the absolute level of GDP in comparing economic performance among countries. Transforming the growth accounting equation into per capita terms results in the following equation:

$$\text{Growth in per capita potential GDP} = \text{Growth in technology} + W_C (\text{Growth in capital-to-labor ratio})$$

The capital-to-labor ratio measures the amount of capital available per worker and is weighted by the share of capital in national income. Because capital's share in national income in the US economy is 0.3, a 1 percent increase in the amount of capital available for each worker increases per capita output by only 0.3 percent. The equation shows that improvements in technology are more important than capital in raising an economy's standard of living.

4.2 Sources of Economic Growth

The growth accounting equation focuses on the main determinants of growth—capital, labor and technology—and omits a number of other sources of growth to simplify the analysis. For many countries, however, natural resource and human capital inputs play an important role in explaining economic growth. Therefore, there are five important sources of growth for an economy:

- Labor supply;
- Human capital;
- Physical capital;
- Technology; and
- Natural resources.

These sources of growth determine the capacity of the economy to supply goods and services.

Labor Supply Growth in the number of people available for work (quantity of workforce) is an important source of economic growth and partially accounts for the superior growth performance, among the advanced economies, of the US economy versus the European and Japanese economies. Most developing countries, such as China, India, and Mexico, have a large potential labor supply. We can measure the potential size of the labor input as the total number of hours available for work, which is given by

$$\text{Total hours worked} = \text{Labor force} \times \text{Average hours worked per worker}$$

The **labor force** is defined as the portion of the working age population (over the age of 16) that is employed or available for work but not working (unemployed). The contribution of labor to overall output is also affected by changes in the average hours worked per worker. Average hours worked is highly sensitive to the business cycle. However, the long-term trend has been toward a shorter workweek in the advanced countries. This development is the result of legislation, collective bargaining agreements, and the growth of part-time and temporary work.

Human Capital In addition to the quantity of labor, the quality of the labor force is important. Human capital is the accumulated knowledge and skill that workers acquire from education, training, and life experience. It measures the quality of the workforce. In general, better-educated and skilled workers will be more productive and more adaptable to changes in technology.

An economy's human capital is increased through investment in education and on-the-job training. Like physical capital, investment in education is costly. Studies show that there is a significant return on education. That is, people with more education earn higher wages. Moreover, education may also have a spillover or externality impact: Increasing the educational level of one person not only raises the output of that person but also the output of those around him or her. The spillover effect operates through the link between education and advances in technology. Education not only improves the quality of the labor force but also encourages growth through innovation. Investment in health is also a major contributor to human capital, especially in developing countries.

Physical Capital Stock The physical **capital stock** (accumulated amount of buildings, machinery, and equipment used to produce goods and services) increases from year to year as long as net investment (gross investment less depreciation of capital) is positive. Thus, countries with a higher rate of investment should have a growing physical capital stock and a higher rate of GDP growth. Exhibit 27 shows the level of

business investment as a share of GDP. The exhibit shows significant variation across countries, with the investment share in the United States being low in comparison to other developed countries.

As is evident in Exhibit 27, the correlation between economic growth and investment is high. Economies that devote a large share of GDP to investment, such as China, India, and South Korea, have high growth rates. The fastest-growing economies in Europe over the last decade, Ireland and Spain, have the highest investment-to-GDP ratios. Economies that devote a smaller share of GDP to investment, such as Brazil and Mexico, have slower growth rates. The data show why the Chinese economy has expanded at such a rapid rate, achieving an annual GDP growth rate of over 10 percent over the last two decades. Investment spending in China on new factories, equipment, and infrastructure as a percentage of GDP is the highest in the world.

Exhibit 27 Business Investment as a Percentage of GDP

Developed economies	1994	2000	2005	2007	Average Annual Real GDP Growth, 1991–2009 (%)
United States	17.2	19.9	19.2	18.4	2.2
Japan	28.5	25.2	23.3	23.2	1.1
Germany	22.6	21.5	17.4	18.7	1.4
France	18.4	19.5	20.0	21.5	1.5
Italy	18.5	20.3	20.7	21.1	1.0
United Kingdom	16.1	17.1	16.9	17.8	2.2
Canada	18.8	19.2	21.3	22.6	2.1
Ireland	16.1	23.1	26.6	26.3	5.1
Spain	20.7	25.8	29.4	31.0	2.6
Australia	23.9	22.0	27.0	27.7	3.2
South Korea	36.4	31.1	29.3	28.8	4.9
New Zealand	20.9	20.4	24.1	22.9	2.7

Developing economies	1994	2000	2005	2007	Average Annual Real GDP Growth, 1991–2009 (%)
Brazil	18.5	16.8	15.9	17.5	2.8
China	34.5	34.3	41.0	40.0	10.2
India	NA	22.9	30.4	33.8	6.4
Indonesia	24.8	19.9	23.6	24.9	4.6
Mexico	19.4	21.4	20.1	20.8	2.4
Turkey	22.9	20.4	21.0	21.5	3.4

Source: OECD StatLink.

Technology The most important factor affecting economic growth is technology, especially in developed countries such as the United States. **Technology** refers to the process a company uses to transform inputs into outputs. Technological advances are discoveries that make it possible to produce more or higher-quality goods and services

with the same resources or inputs. At the same time, technological progress results in the creation of new goods and services. Finally, technological progress improves how efficiently businesses are organized and managed.

Technological advances are very important because they allow an economy to overcome the limits imposed by diminishing marginal returns. Thus, an economy will face limits to growth if it relies exclusively on expanding the inputs or factors of production.

Because most technological change is embodied in new machinery, equipment, and software, physical capital must be replaced, and perhaps expanded, in order to take advantage of changes in technology. One of the key drivers of growth in developed countries over the last decade has been the information technology (IT) sector. Growth in the IT sector has been driven by technological innovation that has caused the price of key technologies, such as semiconductors, to fall dramatically. The steep declines in prices have encouraged investment in IT at the expense of other assets. The sector has grown very fast and has made a significant contribution to economic growth, employment, and exports.

Countries can innovate through expenditures, both public and private, on research and development (R&D). Thus, expenditures on R&D and the number of patents issued, although not directly measuring innovation, provide some useful insight into innovative performance. Countries can also acquire new technology through imitation or copying the technology developed elsewhere. The embodiment of technology in capital goods can also enable relatively poor countries to jump ahead of the technology leaders.

Total factor productivity (TFP) is the component of productivity that proxies technological progress and organizational innovation. TFP is the amount by which output would rise because of improvements in the production process. It is calculated as a residual, the difference between the growth rate of potential output and the weighted average growth rate of capital and labor. Specifically,

$$\text{TFP growth} = \text{Growth in potential GDP} - [W_L (\text{Growth in labor}) + W_C (\text{Growth in capital})]$$

Natural Resources Raw materials are an essential input to growth and include everything from available land to oil to water. Historically, consumption of raw materials has increased as economies have grown. There are two categories of natural resources:

- 1 **Renewable resources** are those that can be replenished, such as a forest. For example, if a tree is cut, a seedling can be planted and a new forest harvested in the future.
- 2 **Non-renewable resources** are finite resources that are depleted once they are consumed. Oil and coal are examples.

Natural resources account for some of the differences in growth among countries. Today, such countries as Brazil and Australia, as well as those in the Middle East, have relatively high per capita incomes because of their resource base. Countries in the Middle East have large pools of oil. Brazil has an abundance of land suitable for large-scale agricultural production, making it a major exporter of coffee, soybeans, and beef.

Even though natural resources are important, they are not necessary for a country to achieve a high level of income provided it can acquire the requisite inputs through trade. Countries in eastern Asia, such as Japan and South Korea, have experienced rapid economic growth but own few natural resources.

4.3 Measures of Sustainable Growth

Measuring how fast an economy can grow is an important exercise. Economists project potential GDP into the future to forecast the sustainable growth path for the economy. An economy's potential GDP is an unobserved concept that is approximated using a number of alternative methods. It is important to note that estimates of the economy's potential growth can change as new data become available. Being able to understand such a change is critical for financial analysts because equity returns are highly dependent on the sustainable rate of economic growth.

We discussed in the previous section that the growth rate of potential GDP depends on the rate of technological progress as well as the growth rate of

- the labor force;
- physical and human capital; and
- natural resources.

How can we summarize all of these forces driving economic growth and develop a method to measure/estimate the growth rate of potential GDP? One way is to use the growth accounting equation discussed in Section 4.1.

$$\text{Growth in potential GDP} = \text{Growth in technology} + W_L (\text{Growth in labor}) + W_C (\text{Growth in capital})$$

The problem with this approach is that there are no observed data on potential GDP or on total factor productivity and both must be estimated. In addition, data on the capital stock and the labor and capital shares of national income are not available for many countries, especially the developing countries.

As an alternative, we can focus on the productivity of the labor force, where we generally have more reliable data. **Labor productivity** is defined as the quantity of goods and services (real GDP) that a worker can produce in one hour of work. Our standard of living improves if we produce more goods and services for each hour of work. Labor productivity is calculated as real GDP for a given year divided by the total number of hours worked in that year, counting all workers. We use total hours, rather than the number of workers, to adjust for the fact that not everyone works the same number of hours.

$$\text{Labor productivity} = \text{Real GDP} / \text{Aggregate hours}$$

Therefore, we need to understand the forces that make labor more productive. Productivity is determined by the factors that we examined in the preceding section: education and skill of workers (human capital), investments in physical capital, and improvements in technology. An increase in any of these factors will increase the productivity of the labor force. The factors determining labor productivity can be derived from the production functions under the assumption of constant returns to scale, where a doubling of inputs causes output to double as well. Dividing the production function by $1/L$, we get the following:

$$Y/L = AF(1, K/L)$$

where Y/L is output per worker, which is a measure of labor productivity. The equation states that labor productivity depends on physical capital per worker (K/L) and technology (A). Recall that " A " can also be interpreted as total factor productivity. As this equation indicates, labor productivity and total factor productivity are related but distinct concepts. TFP is a scale factor that does not depend on the mix of inputs. Changes in TFP are measured as a residual, capturing growth that cannot be attributed to specific inputs. On the other hand, as shown in this equation, labor productivity—output per worker—depends on both the general level of productivity (reflected

in TFP) and the mix of inputs. Increases in either TFP or the capital-to-labor ratio boost labor productivity. Because both output and labor input can be observed, labor productivity can be measured directly.

Labor productivity is a key concept for measuring the health and prosperity of an economy and its sustainable rate of growth. An analyst examining the growth prospects for an economy needs to focus on the labor productivity data for that country. Labor productivity largely explains the differences in the living standards and the long-term sustainable growth rates among countries. The distinction between the level and growth rate of productivity is important to understand. Exhibit 28 provides such a comparison for selected countries.

Exhibit 28 Labor Productivity: Level vs. Growth Rate in Select Countries

	Level of Labor Productivity (2008 GDP per hour worked)	Labor Productivity Average Annual Growth Rate, 2001–2008
United States	\$55.3	2.0%
Ireland	54.7	2.4
France	53.2	1.3
Germany	50.5	1.5
Sweden	45.9	2.0
United Kingdom	44.9	2.1
Canada	43.2	0.9
Spain	42.5	0.9
Italy	41.1	0.0
Japan	38.3	1.9
Greece	32.1	2.2
South Korea	25.3	4.7
Turkey	23.8	NA
Mexico	18.6	0.5

Source: OECD Stat Extracts.

Level of Labor Productivity The higher the level of labor productivity, the more goods and services the economy can produce with the same number of workers. The level of labor productivity depends on the accumulated stock of human and physical capital and is much higher in the developed countries. For example, China has a population of over 1.4 billion people, compared with over 325 million people in the United States. Because of its much larger population, China has significantly more workers than the United States. The US economy as measured by real GDP is much larger, however. As shown in Exhibit 28, the United States has the highest level of productivity in the world, producing over \$55 of GDP per hour worked. Similarly, workers in France, Germany, and Ireland have high levels of productivity. In comparison, Mexican workers produce only \$18.6 worth of GDP per hour worked. Thus, US workers are nearly three times more productive than Mexican workers.

Growth Rate of Labor Productivity The growth rate of labor productivity is the percentage increase in productivity over a year. It is among the economic statistics that economists and financial analysts watch most closely. In contrast to the level of productivity, the growth rate of productivity is typically higher in the developing countries where human and physical capital is scarce but growing rapidly.

If productivity growth is rapid, it means the same number of workers can produce more and more goods and services. In this case, companies can afford to pay higher wages and still make a profit. Thus, high rates of productivity growth will translate into rising profits and higher stock prices.

In contrast, persistently low productivity growth suggests the economy is in bad shape. Without productivity gains, businesses have to either cut wages or boost prices in order to increase profit margins. Low rates of productivity growth should be associated with slow growth in profits and flat or declining stock prices.

EXAMPLE 15

Prospects for Equity Returns in Mexico

John Todd, CFA, manages a global mutual fund with nearly 30 percent of its assets invested in Europe. Because of the low population growth rate, he is concerned about the long-term outlook for the European economies. With potentially slower economic growth in Europe, the environment for equities may be less attractive. Therefore, he is considering reallocating some of the assets from Europe to Mexico. Based on the data in Exhibits 27 and 28, do you think that investment opportunities are favorable in Mexico? According to the OECD, the Mexican population increased by 0.8 percent in 2008, compared with a 0.3 percent increase in the European Union (27 countries).

Solution:

Other than the higher population growth rate, the potential sources of growth for Mexico are not favorable. The level of business investment (Exhibit 27) in Mexico is quite low, especially in comparison to China, and even below that of many of the advanced economies in Europe, such as Spain and Italy. The level of labor productivity in Mexico is well below that in most European countries. This is not surprising given that the amount of capital per worker in Mexico is much lower than that in Europe. What is surprising and of concern is the rate of labor productivity growth in Mexico. Labor productivity in Mexico is growing at a 0.5 percent annual rate, well below that of Germany, France, and the United Kingdom. This means that the rightward shift in the AS curve is greater for the European countries than for Mexico, despite the more favorable demographic trend in Mexico. In addition, it implies that there is more potential for expanding profit margins in Europe than in Mexico. Thus, the analysis of potential growth does not suggest a favorable outlook for equity returns in Mexico. In the absence of more favorable considerations—e.g., compelling equity valuations—John Todd should decide not to reallocate assets from Europe to Mexico.

Measuring Sustainable Growth Labor productivity data can be used to estimate the rate of sustainable growth of the economy. A useful way to describe potential GDP is as a combination of aggregate hours worked and the productivity of those workers:

$$\text{Potential GDP} = \text{Aggregate hours worked} \times \text{Labor productivity}$$

Transforming the above equation into growth rates, we get the following:

$$\text{Potential growth rate} = \text{Long-term growth rate of labor force} + \\ \text{Long-term labor productivity growth rate}$$

Thus, potential growth is a combination of the long-term growth rate of the labor force and the long-term growth rate of labor productivity. Therefore, if the labor force is growing at 1 percent per year and productivity per worker is rising at 2 percent per year, then potential GDP (adjusted for inflation) is rising at 3 percent per year.

EXAMPLE 16**Estimating the Rate of Growth in Potential GDP**

Exhibit 29 provides data on sources of growth for Canada, Germany, Japan, and the United States. Estimate the growth rates of the labor force, labor productivity, and potential GDP for each country by averaging the growth rates for these variables for the last two decades.

Exhibit 29 Sources of Growth: Average Annual Growth Rate

	1971–1980	1981–1990	1991–2000	2001–2008
Canada				
Labor force	2.1%	1.8%	1.1%	1.5%
Productivity	1.8	1.0	1.8	0.9
GDP	4.0	2.8	2.9	2.4
Germany				
Labor force	–0.9%	0.0%	–0.4%	–0.4%
Productivity	3.7	2.3	2.5	1.5
GDP	2.9	2.3	2.1	1.0
Japan				
Labor force	0.3%	0.5%	–0.9%	–0.7%
Productivity	4.2	3.4	2.2	2.1
GDP	4.5	3.9	1.2	1.4
United States				
Labor force	1.6%	1.8%	1.5%	0.3%
Productivity	1.6	1.4	1.8	2.0
GDP	3.2	3.2	3.3	2.2

Solution:

Potential GDP is calculated as the sum of the trend growth rate in the labor force and the trend growth rate in labor productivity. The growth in the labor force can differ from the population growth rate because of changes in the labor force participation rate and changes in hours worked per person. Estimating based on the average for the last two decades gives

	Projected Growth in Labor Force	Projected Growth in Labor Productivity	Projected Growth in Potential GDP
Canada	1.3%	1.3%	2.6%
Germany	-0.4	2.0	1.6
Japan	-0.8	2.1	1.3
United States	0.9	1.9	2.8

The most striking result is the difference in labor force growth in Germany and Japan in contrast to that in the United States and Canada. Most of the difference between the growth rates in potential GDP among these countries can be explained by the demographic factor. The results suggest that Japan's sluggish growth over the last two decades is likely to continue. The weak productivity growth in Canada is of concern and is indicative of a low rate of innovation among Canadian companies.

EXAMPLE 17

Prospects for Fixed-Income Investments

As a fixed-income analyst for a large Canadian bank, you have just received the latest GDP forecast from the OECD for Canada, Germany, Japan, and the United States. The forecast is given below:

Exhibit 30 OECD GDP Forecast

	Projected Average Annual GDP Growth (2010–2012)
Canada	4.0%
Germany	1.5
Japan	0.5
United States	3.8

To evaluate the future prospects for fixed-income investments, analysts must estimate the future rate of inflation and assess the possibility of changes in monetary policy by the central bank. An important indicator for both of these factors is the degree of slack in the economy. One way to measure the degree of slack in the economy is to compare the growth rates of actual GDP and potential GDP.

Based on the estimates of potential GDP from the previous example and the information in Exhibit 30, evaluate the prospects for fixed-income investments in each of the countries.

Solution:

In comparing the OECD forecast for GDP growth with the estimated growth rate in potential GDP, there are two cases to consider:

- 1 If actual GDP is growing at a faster rate than potential GDP, it signals growing inflationary pressures and an increased likelihood that the central bank will raise interest rates.
- 2 If actual GDP is growing at a slower rate than potential GDP, it signals growing resource slack, less inflationary pressures, and an increased likelihood that the central bank will reduce rates or leave them unchanged.

Exhibit 31 provides a comparison of actual and potential GDP for the above countries.

Exhibit 31 Actual vs. Potential GDP

	Projected Average Annual GDP Growth (2010–2012)	Potential GDP Growth
Canada	4.0%	2.6%
Germany	1.5	1.6
Japan	0.5	1.3
United States	3.8	2.8

The data suggest that inflationary pressure will grow in the United States and Canada and that both the Federal Reserve and the Bank of Canada will eventually raise interest rates. Thus, the environment for bond investing is not favorable in the United States and Canada, because bond prices are likely to decline.

With Germany growing at its potential rate of GDP growth, the rate of inflation should neither rise nor fall. Monetary policy is set by the European Central Bank (ECB), but data on the German economy play a big role in the ECB's decision. Based on the above data, no change in ECB policy is likely. For bond investors, little change in bond prices is likely in Germany, so investors need to focus on the interest (coupon) income received from the bond.

Finally, growing resource slack in Japan will put downward pressure on inflation and may force the Bank of Japan to keep rates low. Bond prices should rise in this environment.

SUMMARY

This reading introduces important macroeconomic concepts and principles for macroeconomic forecasting and related investment decision making. Macroeconomics examines the economy as a whole by focusing on a country's aggregate output of final goods and services, total income, aggregate expenditures, and the general price level. The first step in macroeconomic analysis is to measure the size of an economy. Gross domestic product enables us to assign a monetary value to an economy's level of output or aggregate expenditures. The interaction of aggregate demand and aggregate supply determines the level of GDP as well as the general price level. The business cycle

reflects shifts in aggregate demand and short-run aggregate supply. The long-term sustainable growth rate of the economy depends on growth in the supply and quality of inputs (labor, capital, and natural resources) and advances in technology. From an investment perspective, macroeconomic analysis and forecasting are important because business profits, asset valuations, interest rates, and inflation rates depend on the business cycle in the short to intermediate term and on the drivers of sustainable economic growth in the long term. In addition, it is important to understand fiscal and monetary policies' economic impact on and implications for inflation, household consumption and saving, capital investment, and exports.

- GDP is the market value of all final goods and services produced within a country in a given time period.
- GDP can be valued by looking at either the total amount spent on goods and services produced in the economy or the income generated in producing those goods and services.
- GDP counts only final purchases of newly produced goods and services during the current time period. Transfer payments and capital gains are excluded from GDP.
- With the exception of owner-occupied housing and government services, which are estimated at imputed values, GDP includes only goods and services that are valued by being sold in the market.
- Intermediate goods are excluded from GDP in order to avoid double counting.
- GDP can be measured either from the value of final output or by summing the value added at each stage of the production and distribution process. The sum of the value added by each stage is equal to the final selling price of the good.
- Nominal GDP is the value of production using the prices of the current year. Real GDP measures production using the constant prices of a base year. The GDP deflator equals the ratio of nominal GDP to real GDP.
- Households earn income in exchange for providing—directly or indirectly through ownership of businesses—the factors of production (labor, capital, natural resources including land). From this income, they consume, save, and pay net taxes.
- Businesses produce most of the economy's output/income and invest to maintain and expand productive capacity. Companies retain some earnings but pay out most of their revenue as income to the household sector and as taxes to the government.
- The government sector collects taxes from households and businesses and purchases goods and services from the private business sector.
- Foreign trade consists of exports and imports. The difference between the two is net exports. If net exports are positive (negative), then the country spends less (more) than it earns. Net exports are balanced by accumulation of either claims on the rest of the world (net exports > 0) or obligations to the rest of the world (net exports < 0).
- Capital markets provide a link between saving and investment in the economy.
- From the expenditure side, GDP includes personal consumption (C), gross private domestic investment (I), government spending (G), and net exports ($X - M$).
- The major categories of expenditure are often broken down into subcategories. Gross private domestic investment includes both investment in fixed assets (plant and equipment) and the change in inventories. In some countries, government investment spending is separated from other government spending.

- National income is the income received by all factors of production used in the generation of final output. It equals GDP minus the capital consumption allowance (depreciation) and a statistical discrepancy.
- Personal income reflects pre-tax income received by households. It equals national income plus transfers minus undistributed corporate profits, corporate income taxes, and indirect business taxes.
- Personal disposable income equals personal income minus personal taxes.
- Private saving must equal investment plus the fiscal and trade deficits. That is, $S = I + (G - T) + (X - M)$.
- Consumption spending is a function of disposable income. The marginal propensity to consume represents the fraction of an additional unit of disposable income that is spent.
- Investment spending depends on the average interest rate and the level of aggregate income. Government purchases and tax policy are often considered to be exogenous variables determined outside the macroeconomic model. Actual taxes collected depend on income and are, therefore, endogenous—that is, determined within the model.
- The IS curve reflects combinations of GDP and the real interest rate such that aggregate income/output equals planned expenditures. The LM curve reflects combinations of GDP and the interest rate such that demand and supply of real money balances are equal.
- Combining the IS and LM relationships yields the aggregate demand curve.
- Aggregate demand and aggregate supply determine the level of real GDP and the price level.
- The aggregate demand curve is the relationship between real output (GDP) demanded and the price level, holding underlying factors constant. Movements along the aggregate demand curve reflect the impact of price on demand.
- The aggregate demand curve is downward sloping because a rise in the price level reduces wealth, raises real interest rates, and raises the price of domestically produced goods versus foreign goods. The aggregate demand curve is drawn assuming a constant money supply.
- The aggregate demand curve will shift if there is a change in a factor, other than price, that affects aggregate demand. These factors include household wealth, consumer and business expectations, capacity utilization, monetary policy, fiscal policy, exchange rates, and foreign GDP.
- The aggregate supply curve is the relationship between the quantity of real GDP supplied and the price level, keeping all other factors constant. Movements along the supply curve reflect the impact of price on supply.
- The short-run aggregate supply curve is upward sloping because higher prices result in higher profits and induce businesses to produce more and laborers to work more. In the short run, some prices are sticky, implying that some prices do not adjust to changes in demand.
- In the long run, all prices are assumed to be flexible. The long-run aggregate supply curve is vertical because input costs adjust to changes in output prices, leaving the optimal level of output unchanged. The position of the curve is determined by the economy's level of potential GDP.

- The level of potential output, also called the full employment or natural level of output, is unobservable and difficult to measure precisely. This concept represents an efficient and unconstrained level of production at which companies have enough spare capacity to avoid bottlenecks and there is a balance between the pool of unemployed workers and the pool of job openings.
- The long-run aggregate supply curve will shift because of changes in labor supply, supply of physical and human capital, and productivity/technology.
- The short-run supply curve will shift because of changes in potential GDP, nominal wages, input prices, expectations about future prices, business taxes and subsidies, and the exchange rate.
- The business cycle and short-term fluctuations in GDP are caused by shifts in aggregate demand and aggregate supply.
- When the level of GDP in the economy is below potential GDP, such a recessionary situation exerts downward pressure on the aggregate price level.
- When the level of GDP is above potential GDP, such an overheated situation puts upward pressure on the aggregate price level.
- Stagflation, a combination of high inflation and weak economic growth, is caused by a decline in short-run aggregate supply.
- The sustainable rate of economic growth is measured by the rate of increase in the economy's productive capacity or potential GDP.
- Growth in real GDP measures how rapidly the total economy is expanding. Per capita GDP, defined as real GDP divided by population, reflects the standard of living in a country. Real GDP growth rates and levels of per capita GDP vary widely among countries.
- The sources of economic growth include the supply of labor, the supply of physical and human capital, raw materials, and technological knowledge.
- Output can be described in terms of a production function. For example, $Y = AF(L,K)$ where L is the quantity of labor, K is the capital stock, and A represents technological knowledge or total factor productivity. The function $F(\cdot)$ is assumed to exhibit constant returns to scale but diminishing marginal productivity for each input individually.
- Total factor productivity is a scale factor that reflects the portion of output growth that is not accounted for by changes in the capital and labor inputs. TFP is mainly a reflection of technological change.
- Based on a two-factor production function, Potential GDP growth = Growth in TFP + W_L (Growth in labor) + W_C (Growth in capital), where W_L and $W_C (= 1 - W_L)$ are the shares of labor and capital in GDP.
- Diminishing marginal productivity implies that
 - Increasing the supply of some input(s) relative to other inputs will lead to diminishing returns and cannot be the basis for sustainable growth. In particular, long-term sustainable growth cannot rely solely on capital deepening, that is, increasing the stock of capital relative to labor.
 - Given the relative scarcity and hence high productivity of capital in developing countries, the growth rate of developing countries should exceed that of developed countries.
- The labor supply is determined by population growth, the labor force participation rate, and net immigration. The capital stock in a country increases with investment. Correlation between long-run economic growth and the rate of investment is high.

- In addition to labor, capital, and technology, human capital—essentially, the quality of the labor force—and natural resources are important determinants of output and growth.
- Technological advances are discoveries that make it possible to produce more and/or higher-quality goods and services with the same resources or inputs. Technology is the main factor affecting economic growth in developed countries.
- The sustainable rate of growth in an economy is determined by the growth rate of the labor supply plus the growth rate of labor productivity.

REFERENCES

- Case, K., J. Quigley, and R. Shiller. 2005. “Comparing Wealth Effects: The Stock Market versus the Housing Market.” *Advances in Macroeconomics*, vol. 5, no. 1.
- Funke, N. 2004. “Is There a Stock Market Wealth Effect in Emerging Markets?” *International Monetary Fund* (March).

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

- 1 Which of the following statements is the *most* appropriate description of gross domestic product (GDP)?
 - A The total income earned by all households, firms, and the government whose value can be verified.
 - B The total amount spent on all final goods and services produced within the economy over a given time period.
 - C The total market value of resalable and final goods and services produced within the economy over a given time period.
- 2 The component *least likely* to be included in a measurement of gross domestic product (GDP) is:
 - A the value of owner occupied rent.
 - B the annual salary of a local police officer.
 - C environmental damage caused by production.
- 3 Which of the following conditions is *least likely* to increase a country's GDP?
 - A An increase in net exports.
 - B Increased investment in capital goods.
 - C Increased government transfer payments.
- 4 Which of the following would be included in Canadian GDP for a given year? The market value of:
 - A wine grown in Canada by US citizens.
 - B electronics made in Japan and sold in Canada.
 - C movies produced outside Canada by Canadian film makers.
- 5 Suppose a painting is produced and sold in 2010 for £5,000. The expenses involved in producing the painting amounted to £2,000. According to the sum-of-value-added method of calculating GDP, the value added by the final step of creating the painting was:
 - A £2,000.
 - B £3,000.
 - C £5,000.
- 6 A GDP deflator less than 1 indicates that an economy has experienced:
 - A inflation.
 - B deflation.
 - C stagflation.
- 7 The *most* accurate description of nominal GDP is:
 - A a measure of total expenditures at current prices.
 - B the value of goods and services at constant prices.
 - C a measure to compare one nation's economy to another.
- 8 From the beginning to the ending years of a decade, the annual value of final goods and services for country X increased from €100 billion to €300 billion. Over that time period, the GDP deflator increased from 111 to 200. Over the decade, real GDP for country X increased by approximately:
 - A 50%.

- B 67%.
C 200%.
- 9 If the GDP deflator values for 2008 and 2010 were 190 and 212.8, respectively, which of the following *best* describes the annual growth rate of the overall price level?
A 5.8%.
B 6%.
C 12%.
- 10 The numerator of the GDP price deflator reflects:
A the value of base year output at current prices.
B the value of current year output at current prices.
C the value of current year output at base year prices.
- 11 Consider the following data for 2010 for a hypothetical country:

Account name	Amount (\$ trillions)
Consumption	15.0
Capital consumption allowance	1.5
Government spending	3.8
Imports	1.7
Gross private domestic investment	4.0
Exports	1.5

- Based only on the data given, the gross domestic product and national income are respectively *closest* to:
A 21.1 and 20.6.
B 22.6 and 21.1.
C 22.8 and 20.8.
- 12 In calculating personal income for a given year, which of the following would *not* be subtracted from national income?
A Indirect business taxes.
B Undistributed corporate profits.
C Unincorporated business net income.
- 13 Equality between aggregate expenditure and aggregate output implies that the government's fiscal deficit must equal:
A Private saving – Investment – Net exports.
B Private saving – Investment + Net exports.
C Investment – Private saving + Net exports.
- 14 Because of a sharp decline in real estate values, the household sector has increased the fraction of disposable income that it saves. If output and investment spending remain unchanged, which of the following is *most likely*?
A A decrease in the government deficit.
B A decrease in net exports and increased capital inflow.
C An increase in net exports and increased capital outflow.
- 15 Which curve represents combinations of income and the real interest rate at which planned expenditure equals income?
A The IS curve.

- B The LM curve.
 - C The aggregate demand curve.
- 16 An increase in government spending would shift the:
- A IS curve and the LM curve.
 - B IS curve and the aggregate demand curve.
 - C LM curve and the aggregate demand curve.
- 17 An increase in the nominal money supply would shift the:
- A IS curve and the LM curve.
 - B IS curve and the aggregate demand curve.
 - C LM curve and the aggregate demand curve.
- 18 An increase in the price level would shift the:
- A IS curve.
 - B LM curve.
 - C aggregate demand curve.
- 19 As the price level declines along the aggregate demand curve, the interest rate is *most likely* to:
- A decline.
 - B increase.
 - C remain unchanged.
- 20 The full employment, or natural, level of output is *best* described as:
- A the maximum level obtainable with existing resources.
 - B the level at which all available workers have jobs consistent with their skills.
 - C a level with a modest, stable pool of unemployed workers transitioning to new jobs.
- 21 Which of the following *best* describes the aggregate supply curve in the short-run (e.g., 1 to 2 years)? The short run aggregate supply curve is:
- A flat because output is more flexible than prices in the short run.
 - B vertical because wages and other input prices fully adjust to the price level.
 - C upward sloping because input prices do not fully adjust to the price level in the short run.
- 22 If wages were automatically adjusted for changes in the price level, the short-run aggregate supply curve would *most likely* be:
- A flatter.
 - B steeper.
 - C unchanged.
- 23 The *least likely* cause of a decrease in aggregate demand is:
- A higher taxes.
 - B a weak domestic currency.
 - C a fall in capacity utilization.
- 24 Which of the following is *most likely* to cause the long-run aggregate supply curve to shift to the left?
- A Higher nominal wages.
 - B A decline in productivity.
 - C A increase in corporate taxes.
- 25 Increased household wealth will *most likely* cause an increase in:

- A household saving.
 - B investment expenditures.
 - C consumption expenditures.
- 26 The *most likely* outcome when both aggregate supply and aggregate demand increase is:
- A a rise in inflation.
 - B higher employment.
 - C an increase in nominal GDP.
- 27 Which of the following is *least likely* to be caused by a shift in aggregate demand?
- A Stagflation.
 - B A recessionary gap.
 - C An inflationary gap.
- 28 Following a sharp increase in the price of energy, the overall price level is *most likely* to rise in the short run:
- A and remain elevated indefinitely unless the central bank tightens.
 - B but be unchanged in the long run unless the money supply is increased.
 - C and continue to rise until all prices have increased by the same proportion.
- 29 Among developed economies, which of the following sources of economic growth is *most likely* to explain superior growth performance?
- A Technology.
 - B Capital stock.
 - C Labor supply.
- 30 Which of the following can be measured directly?
- A Potential GDP.
 - B Labor productivity.
 - C Total factor productivity.
- 31 The sustainable growth rate is *best* estimated as:
- A the weighted average of capital and labor growth rates.
 - B growth in the labor force plus growth of labor productivity.
 - C growth in total factor productivity plus growth in the capital-to-labor ratio.
- 32 In the neoclassical or Solow growth model, an increase in total factor productivity reflects an increase in:
- A returns to scale.
 - B output for given inputs.
 - C the sustainable growth rate.

The following information relates to Questions 33–34

An economic forecasting firm has estimated the following equation from historical data based on the neoclassical growth model:

$$\text{Potential output growth} = 1.5 + 0.72 \times \text{Growth of labor} + 0.28 \times \text{Growth of capital}$$

- 33 The intercept (1.5) in this equation is *best* interpreted as:
- A the long-run sustainable growth rate.
 - B the growth rate of total factor productivity.
 - C above trend historical growth that is unlikely to be sustained.
- 34 The coefficient on the growth rate of labor (0.72) in this equation is *best* interpreted as:
- A the labor force participation rate.
 - B the marginal productivity of labor.
 - C the share of income earned by labor.
-
- 35 Convergence of incomes over time between emerging market countries and developed countries is *most likely* due to:
- A total factor productivity.
 - B diminishing marginal productivity of capital.
 - C the exhaustion of non-renewable resources.

SOLUTIONS

- 1 B is correct. GDP is the total amount spent on all final goods and services produced within the economy over a specific period of time.
- 2 C is correct. By-products of production processes that have no explicit market value are not included in GDP.
- 3 C is correct. Government transfer payments, such as unemployment compensation or welfare benefits, are excluded from GDP.
- 4 A is correct. Canadian GDP is the total market value of all final goods and services produced in a given time period within Canada. The wine was produced in Canada and counts towards Canadian GDP.
- 5 B is correct. This is the value added by the artist: $£5,000 - £2,000 = £3,000$.
- 6 B is correct. The GDP Deflator = Nominal GDP/Real GDP. To get a ratio less than 1, real GDP exceeds nominal GDP, which indicates that prices have decreased and, accordingly, deflation has occurred.
- 7 A is correct. Nominal GDP is defined as the value of goods and services measured at current prices. Expenditure is used synonymously with the value of goods and services since aggregate expenditures must equal aggregate output of an economy.
- 8 B is correct. Real GDP in the first year was $€100 \text{ billion}/1.11 = €90$ and in the last year it was $€300 \text{ billion}/2.00 = €150$. Thus, $(€150 - €90)/€90 = 0.67$ or 67%.
- 9 A is correct: $(212.8/190)^{1/2} - 1 = 0.0583$ or 5.8%.
- 10 B is correct.

$$\text{GDP deflator} = \frac{\text{Value of current year output at current year prices}}{\text{Value of current year output at base year prices}} \times 100$$

- 11 B is correct. $\text{GDP} = \text{Consumption} + \text{Gross private domestic investment} + \text{Government Spending} + \text{Exports} - \text{Imports} = 15 + 4 + 3.8 + 1.5 - 1.7 = 22.6$.
 $\text{National income} = \text{GDP} - \text{CCA} = 22.6 - 1.5 = 21.1$
- 12 C is correct. Unincorporated business net income is also known as proprietor's income and is included in personal income.
- 13 A is correct. The fundamental relationship among saving, investment, the fiscal balance, and the trade balance is $S = I + (G - T) + (X - M)$. This form of the relationship shows that private saving must fund investment expenditures, the government fiscal balance, and net exports (= net capital outflows). Rearranging gives $G - T = (S - I) - (X - M)$. The government's fiscal deficit ($G - T$) must be equal to the private sector's saving/investment balance ($S - I$) minus net exports.
- 14 C is correct. The fundamental relationship among saving, investment, the fiscal balance, and the trade balance is $S = I + (G - T) + (X - M)$. Given the levels of output and investment spending, an increase in saving (reduction in consumption) must be offset by either an increase in the fiscal deficit or an increase in net exports. Increasing the fiscal deficit is not one of the choices, so an increase in net exports and corresponding increase in net capital outflows (increased lending to foreigners and/or increased purchases of assets from foreigners) is the correct response.
- 15 A is correct. The IS curve represents combinations of income and the real interest rate at which planned expenditure equals income.

- 16** B is correct. The IS curve represents combinations of income and the real interest rate at which planned expenditure equals income. Equivalently, it represents combinations such that

$$S(Y) = I(r) + (G - T) + (X - M)$$

where $S(Y)$ indicates that planned saving is a (increasing) function of income and $I(r)$ indicates that planned investment is a (decreasing) function of the real interest rate. To maintain this relationship, an increase in government spending (G) requires an increase in saving at any given level of the interest rate (r). This implies an increase in income (Y) at each interest rate level—a rightward shift of the IS curve. Unless the LM curve is vertical, the IS and LM curves will intersect at a higher level of aggregate expenditure/income. Since the LM curve embodies a constant price level, this implies an increase in aggregate expenditure at each price level—a rightward shift of the Aggregate Demand curve.

- 17** C is correct. The LM curve represents combinations of income and the interest rate at which the demand for real money balances equals the supply. For a given price level, an increase in the nominal money supply is also an increase in the real money supply. To increase the demand for real money balances, either the interest must decline or income must increase. Therefore, at each level of the interest rate, income (= expenditure) must increase—a rightward shift of the LM curve. Since the IS curve is downward sloping (higher income requires a lower interest rate), a rightward shift in the LM curve means that the IS and LM curves will intersect at a higher level of aggregate expenditure/income. This implies a higher level of aggregate expenditure at each price level—a rightward shift of the Aggregate Demand curve.
- 18** B is correct. The LM curve represents combinations of income and the interest rate at which the demand for real money balances equals the supply. For a given nominal money supply, an increase in the price level implies a decrease in the real money supply. To decrease the demand for real money balances, either the interest must increase or income must decrease. Therefore, at each level of the interest rate, income (= expenditure) must decrease—a leftward shift of the LM curve.
- 19** A is correct. A decrease in the price level increases the real money supply and shifts the LM curve to the right. Since the IS curve is downward sloping, the IS and LM curves will intersect at a higher level of income and a lower interest rate.
- 20** C is correct. At the full employment, or natural, level of output the economy is operating at an efficient and unconstrained level of production. Companies have enough spare capacity to avoid bottlenecks, and there is a modest, stable pool of unemployed workers (job seekers equal job vacancies) looking for and transitioning into new jobs.
- 21** C is correct. Due to long-term contracts and other rigidities, wages and other input costs do not fully adjust to changes in the price level in the short-run. Given input prices, firms respond to output price changes by expanding or contracting output to maximize profit. Hence, the SRAS is upward sloping.
- 22** B is correct. The slope of the short-run aggregate supply curve reflects the extent to which wages and other input costs adjust to the overall price level. Automatic adjustment of wages would mitigate the impact of price changes on profitability. Hence, firms would not adjust output as much in response to changing output prices—the SRAS curve would be steeper.

- 23** B is correct. A weak domestic currency will result in an increase in aggregate demand at each price level—a rightward shift in the AD curve. A weaker currency will cause a country's exports to be cheaper in global markets. Conversely, imports will be more expensive for domestic buyers. Hence, the net exports component of aggregate demand will increase.
- 24** B is correct. Productivity measures the efficiency of labor and is the amount of output produced by workers in a given period of time. A decline in productivity implies decreased efficiency. A decline in productivity increases labor costs, decreases profitability and results in lower output at each output price level—a leftward shift in both the short-run and long-run aggregate supply curves.
- 25** C is correct. The wealth effect explains the impact of increases or decreases in household wealth on economic activity. Household wealth includes financial and real assets. As asset values increase, consumers save less and spend more out of current income since they will still be able to meet their wealth accumulation goals. Therefore, an increase in household wealth results in a rightward shift in the aggregate demand curve.
- 26** B is correct. Higher aggregate demand (AD) and higher aggregate supply (AS) raise real GDP and lower unemployment, meaning employment levels increase.
- 27** A is correct. Stagflation occurs when output is declining and prices are rising. This is most likely due to a decline in aggregate supply—a leftward shift of the SRAS curve. Depending on the source of the shift, the LRAS may shift too.
- 28** B is correct. An increase in energy prices will shift the short-run aggregate supply curve (SRAS) to the left, reducing output and increasing prices. If there is no change in the aggregate demand curve, in particular if the central bank does not expand the money supply, slack in the economy will put downward pressure on input prices, shifting the SRAS back to its original position. In the long run, the price level will be unchanged.
- 29** A is correct. Technology is the most important factor affecting economic growth for developed countries. Technological advances are very important because they allow an economy to overcome the limits imposed by diminishing marginal returns.
- 30** B is correct. Labor productivity can be directly measured as output/hour.
- 31** B is correct. Output growth is equal to the growth rate of the labor force plus the growth rate of labor productivity, i.e. output per worker. Unlike total factor productivity, output per worker is observable, so this is the most practical way to approach estimation of sustainable growth.
- 32** B is correct. Total factor productivity (TFP) is a scale factor primarily reflecting technology. An increase in TFP means that output increases for any level of factor inputs.
- 33** B is correct. The estimated equation is the standard Solow growth accounting equation. The intercept is the growth rate of total factor productivity.
- 34** C is correct. In the standard Solow growth accounting equation, the coefficient on each factor's growth rate is its share of income.
- 35** B is correct. Diminishing marginal productivity of capital means that as a country accumulates more capital per worker the incremental boost to output declines. Thus, all else the same, economies grow more slowly as they become more capital intensive. Given the relative scarcity and hence high marginal productivity of capital in developing countries, they tend to grow more rapidly than developed countries. This leads to convergence in income levels over time.

READING

17

Understanding Business Cycles

by Michele Gambera, PhD, CFA, Milton Ezrati, and Bolong Cao, PhD, CFA

Michele Gambera, PhD, CFA, is at UBS Asset Management (Americas), Inc. (USA). Milton Ezrati (USA). Bolong Cao, PhD, CFA, is at Ohio University (USA).

LEARNING OUTCOMES

<i>Mastery</i>	<i>The candidate should be able to:</i>
<input type="checkbox"/>	a. describe the business cycle and its phases;
<input type="checkbox"/>	b. describe how resource use, housing sector activity, and external trade sector activity vary as an economy moves through the business cycle;
<input type="checkbox"/>	c. describe theories of the business cycle;
<input type="checkbox"/>	d. describe types of unemployment and compare measures of unemployment;
<input type="checkbox"/>	e. explain inflation, hyperinflation, disinflation, and deflation;
<input type="checkbox"/>	f. explain the construction of indexes used to measure inflation;
<input type="checkbox"/>	g. compare inflation measures, including their uses and limitations;
<input type="checkbox"/>	h. distinguish between cost-push and demand-pull inflation;
<input type="checkbox"/>	i. interpret a set of economic indicators and describe their uses and limitations.

INTRODUCTION

1

Agricultural societies experience good harvest times and bad ones. Weather is a main factor that influences crop production, but other factors, such as plant and animal diseases, also influence the harvest. Modern diversified economies are less influenced by weather and diseases but, as with crops, there are fluctuations in economic output, with good times and bad times.

This reading addresses changes in economic activity and factors that affect it. Some of the factors that influence short-term economic movements—such as changes in population, technology, and capital—are the same as those that affect long-term sustainable economic growth. Other factors, such as money supply and inflation, are more specific to short-term economic fluctuations.

This reading is organized as follows. Section 2 describes the business cycle and its phases. The typical behaviors of businesses and households in different phases and transitions between phases are described. Section 3 provides an introduction to business cycle theory, in particular how different economic schools of thought interpret the business cycle and their recommendations with respect to it. Section 4 introduces basic concepts concerning unemployment and inflation, two measures of short-term economic activity that are important to economic policymakers. Section 5 discusses variables that demonstrate predictable relationships with the economy, focusing on variables whose movements have value in predicting the future course of the economy. A summary and practice problems conclude the reading.

2

OVERVIEW OF THE BUSINESS CYCLE

Burns and Mitchell (1946) define the business cycle as follows:

Business cycles are a type of fluctuation found in the aggregate economic activity of nations that organize their work mainly in business enterprises: a cycle consists of expansions occurring at about the same time in many economic activities, followed by similarly general recessions, contractions, and revivals which merge into the expansion phase of the next cycle; this sequence of events is recurrent but not periodic; in duration, business cycles vary from more than one year to 10 or 12 years.

This long definition is rich with important insights. First, business cycles are typical of economies that rely mainly on business enterprises—therefore, not agrarian societies or centrally planned economies. Second, a cycle has an expected sequence of phases, alternating between expansion and contraction. Third, such phases occur at about the same time throughout the economy—that is, not just in agriculture or not just in tourism but in almost all sectors. Fourth, cycles are recurrent (i.e., they happen again and again over time) but not periodic (i.e., they do not all have the exact same intensity and/or duration). Finally, cycles typically last between 1 and 12 years.

Although Burns and Mitchell's definition may appear obvious in part, it indeed remains helpful even more than 60 years after it was written. Although “rules of thumb” are often referred to when talking about market activity (e.g., shares always rally in January and big crashes occur in October), reality is much more complex. As Burns and Mitchell remind us, history never repeats itself in quite the same way, but it certainly offers patterns that can be used when analyzing the present and forecasting the future.

2.1 Phases of the Business Cycle

A typical business cycle consists of four phases: trough, expansion, peak, contraction. The period of **expansion** occurs after the **trough** (lowest point) of a business cycle and before its **peak** (highest point). The peak and trough represent turning points in the cycle. **Contraction** is the period after the peak and before the trough.¹ During the expansion phase, aggregate economic activity is increasing (*aggregate* is used because

¹ For more information, see www.nber.org/cycles/recessions.html.

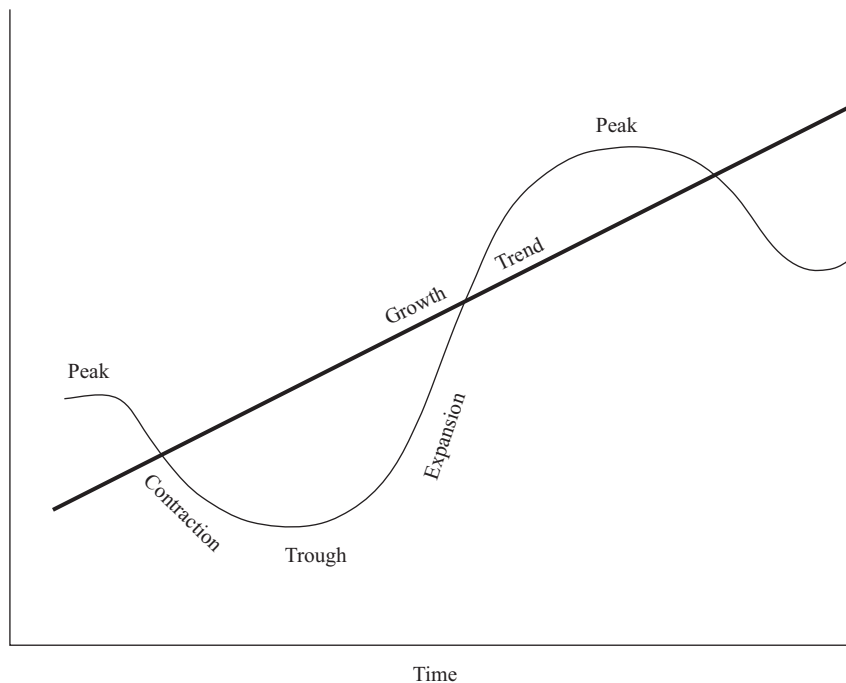
some individual economic sectors may not be growing). The contraction—often called a **recession**, but may be called a **depression** when exceptionally severe—is a period in which aggregate economic activity is declining (although some individual sectors may be growing). Business cycles can be thought of as fluctuations around the trend growth of an economy.

Exhibit 1 Panel A shows a stylized representation of the business cycle. Panel B provides a description of some important characteristics of each phase. The description distinguishes between early and late stages of the expansion phase. The early stage is closer to the trough and the late stage is closer to the peak. Exhibit 1 Panel B also describes how several important economic variables evolve through the course of a business cycle.

Exhibit 1

Panel A: Representation of a Business Cycle

Level of National Economic Activity



(continued)

Exhibit 1 (Continued)**Panel B: Characteristics**

	Early Expansion (Recovery)	Late Expansion	Peak	Contraction (Recession)
Economic Activity	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Gross domestic product (GDP), industrial production, and other measures of economic activity stabilize and then begin to increase. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Activity measures show an accelerating rate of growth. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Activity measures show decelerating rate of growth. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Activity measures show outright declines.
Employment	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Layoffs slow but new hiring does not yet occur and the unemployment rate remains high. Business turns to overtime and temporary employees to meet rising product demands. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Business begins full time rehiring as overtime hours rise. The unemployment rate falls. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Business slows its rate of hiring. The unemployment rate continues to fall but at a decreasing rate. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Business first cuts hours and freezes hiring, followed by outright layoffs. The unemployment rate rises.
Consumer and Business Spending	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Upturn in spending often most pronounced in housing, durable consumer items, and orders for light producer equipment. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Upturn in spending becomes more broad-based. Business begins to order heavy equipment and engage in construction. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Capital spending expands rapidly, but the growth rate of spending starts to slow down. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Decreased spending most evident in industrial production, housing, consumer durable items, and orders for new business equipment.
Inflation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Inflation remains moderate and may continue to fall. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Inflation picks up modestly. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Inflation further accelerates. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Inflation decelerates but with a lag.

The behavior of businesses and households frequently incorporates leads and lags, relative to what are established as turning points in a business cycle. For example, at the beginning of the expansion phase, companies may want to fully use their existing workforce and wait to hire new employees until they are sure that the economy is indeed growing. However, gradually all economic variables are going to revert toward their normal range of values (e.g., GDP growth will be a positive number). As the economy returns to normal, any countercyclical economic policies adopted by a central bank (the monetary authority in most modern economies) are gradually phased out. For example, if the central bank reduced interest rates to stimulate the economy during a recession, it may start increasing rates toward their historical norms.

During a recession, investors place relatively high values on such safer assets as government securities and shares of companies with steady (or growing) positive cash flows, such as utilities and producers of staple goods. Such preferences reflect the fact that the marginal utility of a safe income stream increases in periods when employment is insecure or declining. When asset markets expect the end of a recession and the beginning of an expansion phase, risky assets will be repriced upward. When an expansion is expected, the markets will start incorporating higher profit expectations into the prices of corporate bonds and stocks, particularly those of such cyclical companies as producers of discretionary goods, for example automobiles. Typically,

equity markets will hit a trough about three to six months before the economy bottoms and well before the economic indicators turn up. Indeed, the equity stock market is classified as a leading indicator of the economy.

When an economy's expansion is well established, a later part of an expansion called a **boom** often follows. The boom is an expansionary phase, which is characterized by economic growth "testing the limits" of the economy. For example, companies may expand so much that they have difficulty finding qualified workers, and will compete with other prospective employers by raising wages. The resulting rise in labor costs may lead to a reduction of profits. Another example is that companies may begin to believe that the economy will continue expanding for the foreseeable future and decide to borrow money to expand their production capacity. The government and/or central bank may step in if it is concerned about the economy overheating. Consider the following situation. The central bank is concerned that excessive salary growth may lead to inflation. For example, companies will try to pass on higher production costs to their customers or excessive borrowing may cause investors to have cash flow problems. At the height of the boom phase, the economy is said to be overheating (just like the engine of a car that has been pushed to an excessive level).

During the boom, the riskiest assets will often have substantial price increases. Safe assets, such as government bonds that were more highly prized during the recession, may have lower prices and thus higher yields. In addition, investors may fear higher inflation, which also contributes to higher nominal yields.

The end of the expansion, or boom, is characterized by the peak of the business cycle, which is also the beginning of the contraction (also known as downturn). Here, either because of restrictive economic policies established to tame an overheated economy or because of some other shock, such as energy prices or a credit crisis, the economy stumbles and starts slowing down. Unemployment increases and GDP growth decreases during this part of the business cycle.

EXAMPLE 1

When Do Recessions Begin and End?

A simple and commonly referred to rule is: A recession has started when a country or region experiences two consecutive quarters of negative real GDP growth. Real GDP growth is a measure of the "real" or "inflation-adjusted" growth of the overall economy. This rule can be misleading because it does not indicate a recession if real GDP growth is negative in one quarter, slightly positive the next quarter, and again negative in the next quarter. Many analysts question this result. This issue is why, in some countries, there are statistical and economic committees that apply the principles stated by Burns and Mitchell to several macroeconomic variables (and not just real GDP growth) as a basis to identify business cycle peaks and troughs. The National Bureau of Economic Research (NBER) is the well-known organization that dates business cycles in the United States. Interestingly, the economists and statisticians on NBER's Business Cycle Dating Committee analyze numerous time series of data focusing on employment, industrial production, and sales. Because the data are available with a delay (preliminary data releases can be revised even one year after the period they refer to), it also means that the Committee's determinations may take place well after the business cycle turning points have occurred. As we will see later in the reading, there are practical indicators that may help economists understand in advance if a cyclical turning point is about to happen.

- 1 Which of the following rules is *most likely* to be used to determine whether the economy is in a recession?

- A The central bank has run out of foreign reserves.
 - B Real GDP has two consecutive quarters of negative growth.
 - C Economic activity experiences a significant decline in two business sectors.
- 2 Suppose you are interested in forecasting earnings growth for a company active in a country where no official business cycle dating committee (such as the NBER) exists. The variables you are *most likely* to consider to identify peaks and troughs of a country's business cycle are:
- A inflation, interest rates, and unemployment.
 - B stock market values and money supply.
 - C unemployment, GDP growth, industrial production, and inflation.

Solution to 1:

B is correct. GDP is a measure of economic activity for the whole economy. Changes in foreign reserves or a limited number of sectors may not have a material impact on the whole economy.

Solution to 2:

C is correct. Unemployment, GDP growth, industrial production, and inflation are measures of economic activity. The discount rate, the monetary base, and stock market indexes are not direct measures of economic activities. The first two are determined by monetary policy, which react to economic activities, whereas the stock market indexes tend to be forward looking or leading indicators of the economy.

Investors, who are often optimists in the expansion phase, tend to be overly pessimistic at the bottom of the business cycle. It is worth noting that in many business cycles, the duration of economic contractions have been shorter than the duration of expansions.

Many economic variables and sectors of the economy have distinctive cyclical patterns. Knowledge of these patterns can offer insight into likely cyclical directions overall or can be particularly applicable to an investment strategy that requires more specific rather than general cyclical insights for investment success. The following sections provide overviews of how the use of resources (the factors of production) typically evolves through the business cycle and how the sectors of real estate and external trade characteristically behave.

2.2 Resource Use through the Business Cycle

This section provides a broad overview of how the use of resources needed to produce goods and services typically evolves during a business cycle.

There are significant links between fluctuations in inventory, employment, and investment in physical capital with economic fluctuations. When a downturn starts, aggregate demand decreases, and as a result, inventories may start to accumulate. Companies may slow production and have equipment that is being used at less than full capacity. Subsequently, companies are likely to stop ordering new inventories and new production equipment.

Companies do not necessarily reduce their workforces immediately; instead, they reduce costs by other means, such as eliminating overtime. If it is just a temporary economic slowdown, retaining workers that are not being fully utilized may be a better alternative than firing workers and replacing them later. Finding and training

new workers is costly and it may be more cost efficient to keep workers on the payroll, even if they are not fully utilized, while waiting out a short period of slow business. Second, some economists suggest that there is an implicit bond of loyalty between a company and its workers, and thus workers will be more productive if they know that the company is not disposing of them at the first sign of economic trouble.

If the downturn becomes more severe, companies will start reducing costs more aggressively, cutting all non-essential costs. This step often means terminating consultants, workers beyond the strict minimum, standing supply orders, advertising campaigns, and so on. Capacity utilization will be low, and few companies will invest in new equipment and structures. Companies will try to liquidate their inventories of unsold products. In addition, banks will be reluctant to lend because bankruptcy risks are perceived to be higher. As a result, the economy enters what seems to be a downward spiral.

The gap between the recession output (GDP_R) and the potential output (GDP_P), the level of real GDP that could be achieved if all resources were fully utilized, is an indicator of slack resources (unemployment for labor and idleness for physical capital). Decreases in aggregate demand are likely to depress wages or wage growth as well as prices of inputs and capital goods. After a while, all of these input prices will be relatively very low. In addition, the monetary authority may cut interest rates to try to revive the economy.

As the prices and interest rates decrease, consumers and companies may begin to purchase more and aggregate demand may begin to rise. Companies may increase production as a result of increased demand and low levels of inventory of finished products. Also, because interest rates have fallen, some companies and households may decide to start investing in structures, housing, and durable goods (equipment for companies, appliances for households). This stage is the turning point of the business cycle; aggregate demand starts to increase and economic activity increases.

When economic activity increases, companies are unlikely to immediately start the costly process of selecting and hiring new workers. They may wait for the expansion to give clear signs of life. However, if enough new investment triggers an increase in aggregate demand, companies will start replenishing their inventories of finished products. This replenishment will increase the demand for intermediate products, which will further increase aggregate demand. This stage is often called inventory rebuilding or restocking in the financial press and may be followed by additional increases in capital expenditures. Demand for all factors of production—land, labor, materials, and physical capital—increases.

As aggregate demand continues to grow, a boom phase of the cycle begins. In a boom phase, the economy may experience shortages and the demand for factors of production may exceed supply. It is possible that the excess demand is triggered by overly optimistic expectations of demand for products, which means that the supply of physical capital and production capacity may exceed the demand for products in the future. Past examples of excessive supply attributable to overinvestment include fiber optic infrastructure during the 1990s technology boom and residential overbuilding in many countries during the 2000s housing bubble. This overinvestment, which results in unused productive capacity, are possible triggers for the next recession.

2.2.1 *Fluctuation in Capital Spending*

This section describes how capital spending—spending on tangible goods, such as property, plant, and equipment—typically fluctuates with the business cycle. Because business profits and cash flows are sensitive to changes in economic activity, capital spending is also sensitive to changes in economic activity. Shifts in capital spending tend to affect the overall economic cycle in three stages or phases.

In the early stage of a contraction, the downturn in spending on equipment usually occurs abruptly as demand for companies' products starts to decrease. Businesses, seeing a decline in sales and expecting a drop in profits and free cash flow, will halt new ordering and may even cancel existing orders because there is no perceived need to expand production capacity. The initial cuts typically occur in orders for technology and light equipment because there are shorter lead times from order to delivery and managers may simply not place any additional orders. It often takes longer to cancel or halt construction activity or the installation of larger, more complex pieces of equipment, and cutbacks in these areas unfold with a longer lag. Typically, the initial cutbacks at this stage exaggerate the economy's contraction. Then later, as the general cyclical downturn matures, cutbacks in spending on structures and heavy equipment further intensify the contraction.

In the early stages of an expansion, when the economy begins its recovery, sales are still at such low levels that a business is likely to have excess productive capacity and has little need to expand it. But although capacity utilization remains low, capital spending may begin to increase. There are two primary reasons underlying the increase in capital spending. One, growth in earnings and free cash flow attributable to the economic improvement gives businesses the financial ability to increase spending. Two, the upturn in sales may convince managers to reinstate some orders that had been canceled. Typically, the orders initially reinstated are for equipment with a high rate of obsolescence, such as software, systems, and technological hardware. This type of equipment is likely to enhance efficiency more than expand capacity; enhancing efficiency may be the initial focus of new orders. An increase in new orders for equipment to enhance efficiency often provides the first signal of recovery. Because orders precede actual shipments and possibly payments, an emphasized and widely watched indicator of the future direction of capital spending is orders for capital equipment.

In the later stage of expansion, productive capacity may begin to limit ability to respond to demand. Orders and sales at this stage focus on capacity expansion and increasingly are for heavy and complex equipment, warehouses, and factories. Spending on new capacity may begin before capacity seems to need additions. This seeming disconnect occurs because there can be a long lag between order and delivery or completion of heavy and complex equipment, warehouses, factories, and so on. Also, because economies are always changing their needs, physical capital that counts as capacity in the statistics may be less relevant to current production needs even though the underlying assets remain fully serviceable. The composition of the economy's capacity may not be optimal for the current economic structure, necessitating spending for new capital. A company, for instance, that needs more transportation equipment cannot substitute with a surplus of forklifts, although they are counted in overall capacity. Similarly, a company that needs warehouse space in the suburbs of Mumbai benefits little from its surplus warehouse space in Goa. The increase in capital spending to increase capacity may occur surprisingly soon after capacity utilization picks up. New orders intended to increase capacity may be an early indicator of the late stage of the expansion phase.

EXAMPLE 2

Capital Spending

- 1 The most likely reason that US analysts often follow new orders for capital goods excluding defense and aircraft is because:
 - A the military is part of the public sector.
 - B aircraft and defense equipment orders are often the same so there is double counting.

- C armed forces and airlines tend to place infrequent and large orders, which create a false signal for the index.
- 2 Orders for equipment decline before construction orders in a recession because:
- A businesses are uncertain about cyclical directions.
- B they are easier to cancel than large construction contracts.
- C business values light equipment less than structures and heavy machinery.

Solution to 1:

C is correct. Business cycle indicators need to represent the activities in the whole economy and thus should not be influenced by some particular sectors that may have uncorrelated fluctuations.

Solution to 2:

B is correct. Because it usually takes much longer time to plan and complete large construction projects than for equipment orders, construction projects may be less influenced by business cycles.

Note: New orders statistics include orders that will be delivered over several years. For example, it is common for airlines to order 40 airplanes to be delivered over five years. Therefore, analysts use “core” orders that exclude defense and aircrafts for a better understanding of the economy’s trend.

2.2.2 Fluctuation in Inventory Levels

Inventory accumulation and cutbacks by businesses can occur with such speed and frequency that they have a much greater effect on economic growth than justified by their relatively small aggregate size relative to the economy as a whole. A key indicator in this area is the inventory–sales ratio that measures the inventories available for sale to the level of sales. The interaction of this gauge with the cycle develops in three distinct stages.

Toward the peak of the economic cycle, as sales fall or slow, businesses may lag in cutting back on new production and inventories increase. The lower sales combined with higher inventories result in an increase in inventory–sales ratios. This apparent increase in inventories may hide signs of a weakening economy. Practitioners (investment analysts and others) look for measures that focus on what are commonly called “final sales,” which exclude the effects of inventory changes. To adjust and sell off these unwanted inventories, a business may cut production below even the reduced sales levels. This cut in production causes subsequent indicators in the overall economy to look weaker than they otherwise might have been. Although final sales offer a reality check, the production cutbacks involved in reducing inventory levels may lead to order cancellations and layoffs by producers that may subsequently cut final sales further and deepen cyclical corrections.

With businesses producing at rates below the sales volumes necessary to dispose of unwanted inventories, inventory–sales ratios begin to fall back toward normal. When these indicators return to acceptable levels and businesses no longer have any need to further reduce inventories, they will raise production levels. The increase in production results in a seemingly improved economic situation, even if sales remain depressed. Again, final sales may provide a more realistic picture of the underlying economic situation. At this phase in the cycle, the seemingly minor increase in production levels can actually mark the beginning of the cyclical turn because layoffs may slow or stop and demand for other inputs may also increase.

As sales begin their cyclical upturn, a business may initially fail to keep production on pace with sales, which causes it to lose inventory to the initial sales increase. The subsequent fall in inventory–sales ratios, when it occurs in the face of rising sales, quickly prompts a surge in production not only to catch up with sales but also to replenish depleted inventories. However, sometimes during short or severe recessions, when businesses have not had time to adjust or reduce inventories to acceptable levels, companies may initially consider increased production unnecessary. As a result, the lag between increased sales and production may be longer than in other cycles. But whether the production upturn occurs with a short or a long lag, it typically marks a turn in hiring patterns and for a time can markedly exaggerate the cyclical strength.

EXAMPLE 3

Inventory Fluctuation

- 1 Although a small part of the overall economy, changes in inventories can influence economic growth measures significantly because they:
 - A reflect general business sentiment.
 - B tend to move forcefully up or down.
 - C determine the availability of goods for sale.
- 2 Inventories tend to rise when:
 - A inventory–sales ratios are low.
 - B inventory–sales ratios are high.
 - C economic activity begins to rebound.
- 3 Inventories will often fall early in a recovery because:
 - A businesses need profit.
 - B sales outstrip production.
 - C businesses ramp up production because of increased economic activity.

Solution to 1:

B is correct. As stated in the reading, inventory level fluctuates dramatically over the business cycle.

Solution to 2:

A is correct. When the economy starts to recover, sales of inventories can outpace production, which results in low inventory–sales ratios. Companies then need to accumulate more inventories to restore the ratio to normal level. C is incorrect because, in the early stages of a recovery, inventories are likely to fall as sales increase faster than production.

Solution to 3:

B is correct. The companies are slow to increase production in early recovery phase because they first want to confirm the recession is over. Increasing output also takes time after the downsizing during the recession.

2.2.3 Consumer Behavior

Households represent the largest single sector of almost every developed economy (for example, it is 70% of the US economy). As a result, patterns of household consumption determine overall economic direction more than any other sector. Patterns

of household consumption are important to practitioners for a variety of reasons. For example, equity analysts covering consumer product companies would have a high interest in the sector.

Two primary measures of household consumption are retail sales and a broad-based indicator of consumer spending that also includes purchases outside purely retail establishments, such as utilities, household services, and so on. Often these measures are presented in nominal terms and deflated to indicate directions of real or unit purchases and growth. Some additional measures make finer distinctions, such as tracking spending, both real and nominal, of a specific group(s) of consumer products. The three major divisions are (1) durable goods, such as autos, appliances, and furniture; (2) non-durable goods, such as food, medicine, cosmetics, and clothing; and (3) services, such as medical treatment, entertainment, communications, and personal services. Because durable purchases usually replace items with longer useful lives, during economic downturns households can postpone such purchases more readily than spending on either services or non-durable goods. Comparing trends in durable purchases with those in the other categories can give practitioners a notion of the economy's progress through the cycle; a weakness in durables spending may be an early indication of general economic weakness, and an increase in such spending may signal a more general cyclical recovery.

Beyond direct observations of consumer spending and its mix, practitioners can also gauge future directions by analyzing measures of consumer confidence or sentiment to ascertain how aggressive consumers may be in their spending. Usually, such information is in the form of surveys intended to provide practitioners with a general guide to trends. But in practice, they frequently do not reflect actual consumer behavior because survey respondents may answer what they imagine are the preferences of the typical consumer, indicating behavior contrary to their own.

Growth in income is typically a better indicator of consumption prospects, and household income figures are widely available in most countries. Especially relevant is after-tax income or what is frequently called disposable income. Some analysts chart consumer spending based on a concept termed permanent income. Permanent income excludes temporary income and unsustainable losses and gains and tries to capture the income flow on which households believe they can rely. The basic level of consumption reflects this notion of permanent income. However, spending on durables tends to rise and fall with disposable income, regardless of the source, not just permanent income.

But consumer spending patterns frequently diverge from trends in income, no matter how income is measured. An analysis of the saving rates can assist practitioners in this regard. Cross-border comparisons of saving rates are difficult because saving rates are calculated in different ways in different countries and sometimes in different ways within the same country. But because all measures of saving rates aim in one way or another to measure the percentage of income households set aside from spending, changes in saving rates can capture consumers' intent to reduce spending out of current income. The saving rate may also reflect future income uncertainties perceived by consumers (precautionary savings). Therefore, a higher saving rate may indicate consumers' ability to spend despite possible lower income in the future. A rise in the saving rate, usually measured as a percentage of income, may indicate caution among households and signal economic weakening. At the same time, the greater the stock of savings in the household sector and the wider the gap between ongoing income and spending, the greater the capacity for households to increase their spending. So, although unusually high savings may at first say something negative about the cyclical outlook, they point longer-term to the potential for recovery.

EXAMPLE 4**Consumer Behavior**

- 1 Durable goods have the most pronounced cyclical behavior because:
 - A they have a longer useful life.
 - B their purchase cannot be delayed.
 - C they are needed more than non-durable goods or services.
- 2 Permanent income provides a better guide to:
 - A saving rates.
 - B spending on services.
 - C spending on durable goods.

Solution to 1:

A is correct. Durable goods are usually big ticket items, the life span of which can be extended with repairs and without incurring the high replacement costs. So, consumers tend to delay replacement when economic outlook is not favorable.

Solution to 2:

B is correct. Households adjust consumption of discretionary goods and services based on the perceived permanent income level rather than temporary earning fluctuations. Saving rates and durable goods consumption are more related to the short-term uncertainties caused by recessions.

2.3 Housing Sector Behavior

Although generally a much smaller part of the overall economy than consumer spending, housing activity experiences dramatic swings that it often counts more in overall economic movements than the sector's relatively small size might suggest. Almost every major economy offers statistics on new and existing home sales, residential construction activity, and sometimes, importantly, the inventory of unsold homes on the market. Statistics are also potentially available for the average or median price of homes, sometimes recorded by type of housing unit and sometimes as the price per square foot or square meter. Whatever the specific statistics, the relationships in this area typically follow fairly regular cyclical patterns.

Because many home buyers finance their purchase with a mortgage, the sector is especially sensitive to interest rates. Home buying and consequently construction activity expand in response to lower mortgage rates and contract in response to higher mortgage rates.

Beyond such interest rate effects, housing also follows its own internal cycle. When housing prices are low relative to average incomes, and especially when mortgage rates are also low, the cost of owning a house falls and demand for housing increases. Often indicators of the cost of owning a house are available to compare household incomes with the cost of supporting an average house, both its price and the expense of a typical mortgage. Commonly, housing prices and mortgage rates rise disproportionately as expansionary cycles mature, bringing on an increase in relative housing costs, even as household incomes rise. The resulting slowdown of house sales can lead to a cyclical downturn first in buying and then, as the inventory of unsold houses builds, in actual construction activity.

These links, clear as they are, are far from mechanical. If housing prices have risen rapidly in the recent past, for instance, many people will buy to gain exposure to the expected price gains, even as the purchase in other respects becomes harder

to rationalize. Such behavior can extend the cycle upward and may result in a more severe correction. This result occurs because “late buying” activity invites overbuilding. The large inventory of unsold homes eventually puts downward pressure on real estate prices, catching late buyers, who have stretched their resources. This pattern occurred in many countries during the 2008–2009 global financial crisis.

Behind such cyclical considerations, housing, more than most economic sectors, responds to demographics, in particular the pace of family or household formation in an economy. Not every economy has data on family formation, but almost all offer information on the growth of particular age groups or cohorts in their respective populations. A focus on those cohorts, typically 25- to 40-year-olds, when household formation commonly occurs, usually can substitute for direct measures of net family formation. Adjusted for older people who are vacating existing homes, such calculations serve as an indicator of underlying, longer-term, secular housing demand. Although such measures have little to do with business cycles, they do offer a gauge, along with affordability, of how quickly the housing market can correct excess and return to growth. In China, for instance, where the government estimated a need for about 400 million more urban housing units over the following 25 years, housing demand may quickly reverse cyclical weakness more so than in such economies as Italy or Japan where net new family formation is relatively slight.

EXAMPLE 5

Housing Sector Behavior

- 1 Housing is more sensitive than other sectors of the economy to:
 - A interest rates.
 - B permanent income.
 - C government spending.
- 2 Apart from questions of affordability, house buying is *most likely* affected by:
 - A the rate of family formation.
 - B expectation of housing price increases.
 - C both the rate of family formation and expectation of housing price increases.

Solution to 1:

A is correct. Because real estate purchases are usually financed with mortgage loans, interest rate changes directly influence the monthly payment amounts.

Solution to 2:

C is correct. Family formation constitutes the actual need for housing, whereas buying on the expectation of housing price increases reflects the fact that real estate has investment value.

2.4 External Trade Sector Behavior

The external trade sector varies tremendously in size and importance from one economy to another. In such places as Singapore, where almost all inputs are imported and the bulk of the economy’s output finds its way to the export market, trade (the sum of both exports and imports) easily exceeds its GDP. In other places, such as the United States, external trade assumes a much smaller part of GDP. Since the 1970s,

the relative size of external trade has grown in almost every country in the world. With the rise in external trade, the business cycles of the large economies in the world can be more easily transmitted to other economies.

Typically, imports rise, all else equal, with the pace of domestic GDP growth, as needs and wants or generally rising demand also increase purchases of goods and services from abroad. Thus, imports respond to the domestic cycle. Exports are more dependent on cycles in the rest of the world. If these external cycles are strong, all else equal, exports will grow even if the domestic economy should experience a decline in growth. To understand the impact of exports, financial analysts need to understand the strength of the major trading partners of the economy under consideration. Most practitioners look at the net difference between exports and imports (they use the balance of payments, which calculates trade's contribution to the economy as exports less imports). The net effect of trade may offset cyclical weakness and, depending on the importance of exports to the economy, could erase it altogether. For these reasons, such differences can mean the pattern of external trade balances is entirely different from the rest of the domestic economic cycle.

Currency also has an independent effect that can move trade in directions strikingly different from the domestic economic cycle. When a nation's currency appreciates (the currency gains in strength relative to other currencies), foreign goods seem cheaper than domestic goods to the domestic population, prompting, all else equal, a relative rise in imports. At the same time, such currency appreciation makes that nation's exports more expensive in global markets and may reduce exports. Of course, currency depreciation has the opposite effect. Although currency moves may be volatile and on occasion extreme, they only have a significant effect on trade and the balance of payments when they cumulate in a single direction for some time. Moves from one month or quarter to the next, however great, have a minimal effect until they persist. Thus cumulative currency movements that take place over a period of years will have an impact on trade flows that will persist even if the currency subsequently moves in the opposite direction for a temporary period.

Financial analysts need to consider a wide range of variables, both in the domestic economy and abroad, to assess relative GDP growth rates and then factor in currency considerations to ascertain whether they reinforce other cyclical forces or counteract them. Generally, GDP growth differentials in global economic growth rates between countries have the most immediate and straightforward effects; domestic changes in economic activity raise or reduce imports and foreign economic activity changes raise or reduce exports. Currency moves have a more complex and, despite the interim short-term currency moves, a more gradual effect.

EXAMPLE 6

External Trade

- 1 Imports generally respond to:
 - A the level of exports.
 - B domestic industrial policy.
 - C domestic GDP growth rate.
- 2 Exports generally respond to the:
 - A level of unionization.
 - B global GDP growth rates.
 - C domestic GDP growth rates.

Solution to 1:

C is correct. As a part of aggregate demand, imports reflect the domestic needs for foreign goods, which vary together with domestic economic growth.

Solution to 2:

B is correct. Exports reflect the foreign demands on domestic output, which depend on the conditions of global economy.

THEORIES OF THE BUSINESS CYCLE

3

Business cycles have been recognized since the early days of economic theory, and considerable effort has gone into identifying different cycles and explaining them. Until the 1930s, however, the general view was that they were a natural feature of the economy and the pain of recessions is temporary. But the depth and severity of the 1930s downturn (known as the Great Depression) created a crisis in economic theory.

After the Great Depression (which began in 1929), the debate between various economic schools of thought (Neoclassical, Austrian, and Keynesian) spurred changes in the way the business cycle was described and explained. Similarly, after the recessions triggered by the oil shocks of 1973 and 1979, the old paradigm was taken apart and new developments in economics and quantitative methods led to an improved understanding of short-term economic dynamics. In this section, we will review and summarize some of the main theories.

3.1 Neoclassical and Austrian Schools

Neoclassical analysis relies on the concept of general equilibrium—that is, all markets will reach equilibrium because of the “invisible hand, or free market,” and the price will be found for every good at which supply equals demand. All resources are used efficiently based on the principle of marginal cost equaling marginal revenue, and no involuntary unemployment of labor or capital takes place. In theory, if a shock of any origin shifts either the aggregate demand or aggregate supply curve, the economy will quickly readjust and reach its equilibrium via lower interest rates and lower wages. In practice, because the neoclassical school provides that the invisible hand will reallocate capital and labor so that they will be used to produce whatever consumers want, it does not allow for “fluctuations found in the aggregate economic activity.”

Neoclassical economists rely on **Say’s law**: All that is produced will be sold because supply creates its own demand. French economist J.B. Say pointed out that if something is produced, the capital and labor used for that production will have to be compensated. This compensation of the factors (interest for capital and wages for labor) creates purchasing power in the sense that the workers receive a paycheck and thus can buy goods and services they need. Widespread declines in demand would be strictly temporary.

The Neoclassical school does not have a theory of the business cycle, and the closest it gets to it is Schumpeter’s creative destruction theory, which shows cycles within industries as a result of technological progress but no economy-wide fluctuations.² Schumpeter formulated a theory of innovations, which explained cycles limited

² Joseph Alois Schumpeter was born in Austria and studied with members of the Austrian school, such as Menger and Hayek, but he was more Neoclassical than Austrian in the economic sense. He taught in the United States for many years.

to individual industries: When an inventor comes up with a new product (e.g., the digital music player in recent decades) or a new, better way to produce an existing good or service (e.g., radio frequency identification tracking of inventories), then the entrepreneur that introduces the new discovery will likely have bigger profits and may drive the existing producers out of business. Therefore, innovations can generate crises that affect only the industry affected by the new invention. Neoclassical economics recognizes that business cycles exist but treats them as temporary disequilibria.

In the neoclassical school, a massive crisis, such as the Great Depression of the 1930s with widespread unemployment of more than 20% throughout the industrialized world, is impossible. Yet, it happened. The crisis started in the United States and successively affected many other countries. The 1929 crisis touched many sectors at the same time and in a dramatic fashion. Because the neoclassical theory denied the possibility of a prolonged depression, it could not be used to explain how to fight such a depression. The main adjustment mechanism proposed by the neoclassical school—cuts in wages—was difficult to achieve and, as we shall see, was questioned by the Keynesian school.

The Austrian school, including F. von Hayek and L. von Mises, shared some views of the neoclassical school, but focused more on two topics that were largely unimportant in the neoclassical framework: the roles of money and government. Money was not necessary in the neoclassical model, because the exchange of goods and services could occur in the form of barter and still reach general equilibrium. Money was seen just as a way to simplify exchange. Similarly, the role of government in the neoclassical model was quite limited because the economy could take care of itself and little else was needed of the government besides upholding the law and securing the borders.

The Austrian school has a theory of what causes the business cycle: It is misguided government intervention. Von Hayek argued that fluctuations are caused by governments that try to increase GDP and employment (thus perhaps increasing voters' consensus) by adopting expansionary monetary policies. Governments lower the market interest rate below its natural value (aggregate demand shifts right) and thus lead companies to overinvest (an inflationary gap). Once companies realize that they have accumulated too much equipment and too many structures, they will suddenly stop investing, which depresses aggregate demand (aggregate demand shifts left dramatically) and causes a crisis throughout the economy. To reach the new equilibrium, all prices including wages must decrease.

As a result of manipulating interest rates the economy exhibits fluctuations that would not have happened otherwise. Therefore, Austrian economists advocate limited government intervention in the economy, lest the government causes a boom-and-bust cycle. The best thing to do in the recession phase is to allow the necessary market adjustment to take place as quickly as possible.

3.2 Keynesian and Monetarist Schools

The Keynesian and Monetarist schools of economic thought have been among the most influential. Their prescriptions concerning the business cycle are discussed in the following sections.

3.2.1 Keynesian School

As previously mentioned, if a recession occurs, the Neoclassical and Austrian schools argue in general that no government intervention is needed. Unemployment and excess supply of goods will be solved by allowing market prices to decrease (including wages) until all markets clear: Supply equals demand and factors of production are fully employed.

British economist John Maynard Keynes³ disagreed with both Neoclassical and Austrian views. He observed that a generalized price and wage reduction (solely brought about through market forces), necessary to bring markets back to equilibrium during a recession, would be hard to attain. For example, workers may not want to see their nominal compensation decrease because nobody likes a pay cut.

But Keynes thought that even if workers agreed to accept lower salaries, this situation might exacerbate the crisis by reducing aggregate demand rather than solving it because lower wage expectations would shift aggregate demand left. For example, if wages fell, workers would need to cut back on their spending. This response would cause a further contraction in the demand for all sorts of goods and services, starting from the more expensive items, such as durable goods, and move in a “domino effect” through the economy (the downward spiral of the aggregate demand curve continuously shifting left, as mentioned earlier).

Furthermore, Keynes believed there could be circumstances in which lower interest rates would not reignite growth because business confidence or “animal spirit” was too low. As a consequence, Keynes advocated government intervention in the form of fiscal policy. While he accepted the possibility that markets would reach the equilibrium envisioned by Neoclassical and Austrian economists over the long run, he famously quipped that “in the long run, we are all dead;” that is, the human suffering is excessive while waiting for all shocks to be absorbed and for the economy to return to equilibrium.

When crises occur, the government should intervene to keep capital and labor employed by deliberately running a larger fiscal deficit. This intervention would limit the damages of major recessions. Although this concept continues to be a highly politically charged debate, many economists agree that government expenditure can limit the negative effect of major economic crises in the short term. The practical criticisms that are often expressed about Keynesian fiscal policy are:

- 1 Fiscal deficits mean higher government debt that needs to be serviced and repaid eventually. There is a danger that government finances could move out of control.
- 2 Keynesian cyclical policies are focused on the short term. In the long run, the economy may come back and the presence of the expansionary policy may cause it to “overheat”—that is, to have unsustainably fast economic growth, which causes inflation and other problems. This result is because of the typical lags involved in expansionary policy taking effect on the economy.
- 3 Fiscal policy takes time to implement. Quite often, by the time stimulatory fiscal policy kicks in, the economy is already recovering. (Monetary policy determines the available quantities of money and loans in an economy.)

Keynes’ writings did not advocate a continuous presence of the government in the economy, nor did he suggest using economic policy to “fine tune” the business cycle. He only advocated decisive action in case of a serious economic crisis, such as the Great Depression.

³ John Maynard Keynes’ name is often mentioned in full, with first and middle name, to avoid confusion with his father, John Neville Keynes, who was also an economist.

The Perspective of Hyman Minsky

A different view of business cycles came from Hyman Minsky. His view had something in common with the Austrian school and something in common with Keynes. Minsky believed that excesses in financial markets exacerbate economic fluctuations. For example, a rapid growth of credit, often given to risky ventures in the late expansion phase of the cycle, will be followed by a “credit crunch” during the down-swing phase. Minsky traced excesses to a type of complacency in which people underestimate the risk of events that have not occurred in a while. Therefore, if the economy has been in a long expansion, people may think that the market works very well and that the expansion will last forever—that is, extrapolating past experiences. In this sense, Minsky could be seen as a precursor of behavioral finance, which is the branch of finance that studies how cognition biases, such as overconfidence and short memory, induce investors to be overconfident and make suboptimal choices.

The term **Minsky moment** has been coined for a point in business cycle when, after individuals become overextended in borrowing to finance speculative investments, people start realizing that something is likely to go wrong and a panic ensues leading to asset sell-offs. The subprime crisis that affected many industrialized countries starting in 2008 has been represented as a “Minsky moment”⁴ because it came after years in which risk premiums (e.g., the differentials, or spreads, between very risky bonds and very safe bonds) were at historically low levels. Typically, low risk premiums suggest that no adverse events are expected—in other words, investors believe that because the economy and the markets have been enjoying a protracted expansion, there is no reason to worry about the future. As a consequence, many market observers suggest that business cycles are being tamed. This kind of view of the world leads people to underestimate risk, for example, by not doing the appropriate diligent research before granting a loan or before purchasing a security—in a word, complacency.

The “Minsky moment” has been compared with a cartoon in which a cartoon character walks over a cliff without realizing that it is doing so. When he looks down and sees that he is walking on thin air, he panics and falls to the bottom of the canyon—just like the world economy in 2008.

A warning in 2005 by Alan Greenspan, then chairman of the US Federal Reserve,⁵ was not taken seriously by market participants. Greenspan said that historically, extended periods of low risk premiums always ended badly. This warning was to a large extent in line with Minsky’s view: People tend to extrapolate the recent past, and if little volatility has occurred recently, they may think that low volatility will persist indefinitely.

Some market analysts, after the crisis, pointed out that not even Greenspan knew how accurate his remark would turn out to be. As explained by Reinhart and Rogoff (2009) and Siegel (2009), when rates were very low, investors tried to get extra yield by investing in complex and potentially more risky assets, such as securitized subprime mortgages and collateralized debt obligations whose credit-worthiness was much lower than expected.

As soon as the economy started having difficulties, the value of many risky securities dropped dramatically, placing investors globally into a state of panic and causing a dramatic fall in aggregate demand. The crisis is another example of why thinking that a new era has started and the things learned from analyzing the past no longer apply is generally a very costly mistake.

⁴ Paul McCulley (for example, see McCulley 2009) originated this expression.

⁵ Alan Greenspan, Chairman of the US Federal Reserve at the time, remarked in 2005: “Thus, this vast increase in the market value of asset claims is in part the indirect result of investors accepting lower compensation for risk. Such an increase in market value is too often viewed by market participants as structural and permanent. To some extent, those higher values may be reflecting the increased flexibility and resilience of our economy. But what they perceive as newly abundant liquidity can readily disappear. Any onset of increased investor caution elevates risk premiums and, as a consequence, lowers asset values and promotes the liquidation of the debt that supported higher asset prices. This is the reason that history has not dealt kindly with the aftermath of protracted periods of low risk premiums” (Greenspan 2005).

3.2.2 Monetarist School

The Monetarist school, generally identified with Milton Friedman, objected to Keynesian intervention for four main reasons:

- 1 The Keynesian model does not recognize the supreme importance of the money supply. If the money supply grows too fast, there will be an unsustainable boom, and if it grows too slowly, there will be a recession. Friedman focused mainly on broad measures of money, such as M2.
- 2 The Keynesian model lacks a complete representation of utility-maximizing agents and is thus not logically sound.
- 3 Keynes' short-term view failed to consider the long-term costs of government intervention (e.g., growing government debt and high cost of interest on this debt).
- 4 The timing of governments' economic policy responses was uncertain, and the stimulative effects of a fiscal expansion may take effect after the crisis was over, and thus cause more harm than good.⁶

Therefore, Monetarists advocate a focus on maintaining steady growth of the money supply, and otherwise a very limited role for government in the economy. Fiscal and monetary policy should be clear and consistent over time, so all economic agents can forecast government actions. In this way, the uncertainty of economic fluctuations would not be increased by any uncertainty about the timing and magnitude of economic policies and their lagged effects.

According to the Monetarist school, business cycles may occur both because of exogenous shocks and because of government intervention. It is better to let aggregate demand and supply find their own equilibrium than to risk causing further economic fluctuations. However, a key part of monetarist thought is that the money supply needs to continue to grow at a moderate rate. If it falls, as occurred in the 1930s, the economic downturn could be severe, whereas if money grows too fast, inflation will follow.

3.3 The New Classical School

Starting in the 1970s, economists such as Robert Lucas started questioning the foundations of the models used to explain business cycles. Among other things, Lucas agreed with Friedman (1968) and pointed out that the macroeconomic models should try to represent the actions of economic agents with a utility function and a budget constraint, just like the models used in microeconomics. This approach has come to be known as **new classical macroeconomics**—an approach to macroeconomics that seeks the macroeconomic conclusions of individuals maximizing utility on the basis of rational expectations and companies maximizing profits. The assumption is made that all agents are roughly alike, and thus solving the problem of one agent is the same as solving that of millions of similar agents (or the per capita income and consumption of the average agent).

The New Classical models are dynamic in the sense of describing fluctuations over many periods and present general equilibrium in the sense of determining all prices rather than one price. The models by Edward C. Prescott and Finn E. Kydland, who are among the pioneers of this approach, have an economic agent that has to

⁶ Markets may react differently to changes in interest rates and other tools of monetary policy. There is a long chain of events from the time when interest rates are cut, to when banks change the rates they charge clients, to when a company sees that rates are lower and thus decides to invest in new equipment, to when the equipment is finally purchased. Therefore, by the time these events all happen, the economy may be in expansion and the new investment may lead the economy to overheating.

face external shocks (e.g., as a result of changes in technology, tastes, or world prices) and thus optimizes its choices to reach the highest utility. If all agents act in similar fashion, the markets will gradually adjust toward equilibrium.

3.3.1 *Models without Money: Real Business Cycle Theory*

New Classical economists comment that some policy recommendations made in the past were rather illogical: for example, if everybody knows that in a recession the government will give out low rate loans to corporations that want to invest in new equipment and structures, why would any reasonable company invest outside recessions unless absolutely required to? Obviously, if most companies thought that, they would stop investing, thus causing a recession that otherwise would not have occurred. Essentially, the government's anti-cyclical policy could cause a recession.

Because, just like the neoclassical models, the initial New Classical models did not include money, they were called real business cycle models (often abbreviated as RBC). Cycles have real causes, such as the aforementioned changes in technology, whereas monetary variables, such as inflation, are assumed to have no effect on GDP and unemployment.⁷

RBC models of the business cycle conclude that expansions and contractions represent efficient operation of the economy in response to external real shocks. Because the level of economic activity at any time is consistent with maximizing expected utility, the policy recommendation of RBC theory is for government *not* to intervene in the economy with discretionary fiscal and monetary policy.

Critics of RBC models often focus on the labor market. Because RBC models rely on efficient markets, it follows that unemployment can only be short term: apart from frictional unemployment,⁸ if markets are efficient, a person who does not have a job can only be a person who does not want to work. If a person is unemployed, in the context of efficient markets, he just needs to lower his wage rate until he finds an employer who hires him. This assumption is logical because if markets are perfectly flexible, all markets must find equilibrium and full employment.

Therefore, as suggested particularly by the earliest RBC models, a person is unemployed because he or she is asking for wages that are too high, or in other words, this person's utility function is maximized by having more leisure (e.g., free time to visit museums, watch games on TV, and enjoy time with friends) and less consumption (which could be increased by giving up some leisure and finding a job). However, the observation that during a recession many people are eagerly searching for jobs and are unable to find employment despite dropping their asking wages substantially suggests that this theory is unrealistic.

Although many find this explanation unconvincing, RBC theorists argue that, undeniably, markets would clear if people were rational and avoided unrealistic expectations of earnings or simply enjoyed their leisure accompanied by optimally meager consumption.

An interesting feature of RBC models is that they give aggregate supply a more prominent role than many other theories. For example, supply has a limited importance in the Keynesian theory, probably because Keynes was more concerned with

⁷ See Plosser (1989) and Romer (2011) for an introduction to RBC models. Basically, RBC models assume that economic agents are fully rational and that markets function with no imperfection or friction. As a consequence, any changes in monetary aggregates or other monetary policies will promptly cause changes in price levels and other variables without affecting real GDP or employment.

⁸ Frictional unemployment arises not because of the lack of general job opportunities but from the fact that both employers and potential employees need some time to find a good match between the job vacancy and the candidate's interests, skills and location preference, and so on. The frictionally unemployed can be those people who quit their previous jobs voluntarily but have yet to find or start a new job and new entrants to the labor force, such as recent college graduates, or re-entrants, such as formerly discouraged workers who have started looking for but have yet to find a job.

the Great Depression, which was largely a crisis of aggregate demand. RBC models show that supply shocks, such as advances in technology or changes in the relative prices of inputs, cause the aggregate supply (AS) to shift left. A new technology can change potential GDP, for example, thus moving long-run AS to the right. Adjustment will be needed because not all companies can adopt the new technology at once, and therefore short-run AS will not jump to the new equilibrium immediately. Similarly, an increase of energy prices shifts short-run AS to the left (higher prices and lower GDP). In the long run companies and households can learn to use less of the expensive energy inputs (substitution effect), and therefore long-run AS will shift right (higher GDP) if the economy learns to produce more goods with less energy.

3.3.2 Models with Money

Inflation is often seen as a cause of business cycles, because when monetary policy ends up being too expansionary, the economy grows at an unsustainable pace—creating an inflationary gap. The result is that, for example, suppliers cannot keep up with demand. In this environment, prices will tend to grow faster than normal—that is, inflation.

As a consequence, the central bank will often intervene to limit inflation by “tightening” monetary policy, which generally means increasing interest rates, so that the cost of borrowing will be higher and demand for goods and services will slow down (a leftward shift in aggregate demand caused by the higher cost of money). This response will decrease equilibrium GDP and can result in a recession.

Given that inflation appears to trigger policy responses from central banks, it is an important part of modern business cycles. Therefore, it can be helpful to use models that include money to explain economic growth. As mentioned earlier, RBC models assume that transactions could occur with barter, and thus do not explicitly include money. More recent dynamic general equilibrium models (for example, Christiano, Eichenbaum, and Evans 2005) include money and inflation.

Monetary policy can be incorporated into dynamic general equilibrium models with money. In one type of model, the economy receives shocks from changes in technology and consumer preferences (like in the RBC case), but can also receive shocks from monetary policy, which sometimes can tame the business cycle and at other times may exacerbate it.

Another group of dynamic general equilibrium models are the **Neo-Keynesians** or **New Keynesians**.⁹ Like the New Classical school, the Neo-Keynesian school attempts to place macroeconomics on sound microeconomic foundations. In contrast to the New Classical school the Neo-Keynesian school assumes slow-to-adjust (“sticky”) prices and wages. The Neo-Keynesian models show that markets do not reach equilibrium immediately and seamlessly, but even small imperfections may cause markets to be in disequilibrium for a long time. As a consequence, government intervention as advocated in the 1930s by Keynes may be useful to eliminate unemployment and bring markets toward equilibrium.

The typical example of these imperfections, which also appeared in Keynes’ work, is that workers do not want their wages to decrease to help the market reach a new equilibrium (i.e., wages are often downwardly sticky).¹⁰ Another possibility that some economists suggested in the 1980s is called the “menu costs” explanation: It is costly for companies to continuously adjust prices to make markets clear, just like it would

⁹ For an introduction to Neo-Keynesian models, see Romer (2011) and Mankiw (1989).

¹⁰ As mentioned earlier, Keynes thought that even if workers agreed to accept lower wages, this might exacerbate the crisis rather than solving it because lower wage expectations would shift AD left.

be costly for a restaurant to print new menus daily with updated prices.¹¹ Another explanation is that every time an economic shock hits a company, the company will need some time to reorganize its production.

EXAMPLE 7

Real Business Cycle Models

- 1 The main difference between New Classical (RBC) and Neo-Keynesian models is that the New Classical models:
 - A are monetarist.
 - B use utility-maximizing agents, whereas Neo-Keynesian does not.
 - C assume that prices adjust quickly to changes in supply and demand, whereas Neo-Keynesians assume that prices adjust slowly.
- 2 Basic RBC models focus on the choices of a typical individual, who can choose between consuming more (thus giving up leisure) and enjoying leisure more (thus giving up consumption). What causes persistent unemployment in this model?
 - A Contractionary monetary policy causes a shock to real variables.
 - B The economy returns to equilibrium promptly, thus persistent unemployment does not exist.
 - C The utility function: If the individual prefers leisure much more than consumption, she will forego consumption and instead choose unemployment to enjoy more leisure when the market salary is low.

Solution to 1:

C is correct. A key feature of Neo-Keynesian macroeconomics is the stickiness of prices. In contrast, New Classical views assume flexible price adjustments that ensure market clearing.

Solution to 2:

C is correct. Shocks in the standard New Classical model can only have a temporary effect, thus A is not the right answer. Unemployment can still exist when the labor market is cleared, so a rational explanation is provided in C.

In recent years, a consensus concerning business cycles has gradually started building in macroeconomics. It is too early to say that economists agree on all causes of and remedies for business fluctuations, but at least an analytical framework has emerged, which encompasses both New Classical and Neo-Keynesian approaches. Woodford (2009), among others, shows that new research seems to be leading to a unified approach.

The debate about business cycles often receives a politically partisan treatment in the press because some people are generally against government intervention in the economy (for example, because it may lead to large deficits) and others are in favor

¹¹ Clearly, both this example and the “menu costs” name were initially envisioned before personal computers and laser printers became affordable and widely used. Still, one can imagine the cost for a store owner to replace the price tags on every item in the store on a daily basis, and also how this would confuse shoppers.

(for example, because it may alleviate the effects of a large economic shock). It is important to base investment decisions on analysis and not on politics; the financial analyst must try as much as possible to set personal biases aside.

However, there is little doubt that central banks try to manage the business cycle by raising interest rates when the economy is growing rapidly and inflation accelerates and cutting rates when the economy is weak. In the 2008–2009 downturn, when official interest rates approached zero, central bankers extended their actions to include “quantitative easing” to try to lower interest rates further out on the yield curve to stimulate the economy.

EXAMPLE 8

Analyzing Government Expenditure

Simple criteria for the financial analyst wondering whether a government’s expenditure is excessive (i.e., unsustainably high and/or of an inappropriate composition) include the following:¹²

- 1 Does the government always have a deficit no matter the cyclical phase, or does it have surpluses during economic booms?
- 2 Does the government have a deficit because of a defined series of necessary investments that will improve the productivity of the country, or is it spending much of its money on questionable uses?
- 3 Is the growth rate of debt (government budget deficit as a percentage of GDP) higher than GDP growth? If so, the debt level will not likely be sustainable.

When government expenditures are excessive, inflation often follows. After that, a recession may occur because the central bank takes necessary measures to slow down an overheated economy. That is, if government purchases increase aggregate demand too much, thus causing inflation (expansionary fiscal policy), the central bank will intervene to stop prices from increasing too quickly (tightening or contractionary monetary policy).

UNEMPLOYMENT AND INFLATION

4

Many governments and central banks have economic policy objectives related to limiting the rate at which citizens are unemployed and containing price inflation (i.e., preserving the purchasing power of a domestic currency). The relationships of these variables to the business cycle are discussed in the following sections. In general, unemployment is at its highest just as the recovery starts and is at its lowest at the peak of the economy.

4.1 Unemployment

A typical cause of business cycle downturns is a tight labor market—that is, one with low unemployment. An overheated economy leads to inflation when unemployment is very low. Workers ask for higher wages because they expect prices of goods and services to keep going up, and at the same time they have market power against

¹² For a more formal and data-rich approach, see Reinhart and Rogoff (2009).

employers because there are few available workers to be hired. This upward pressure on wages coupled with the impact of wage escalator clauses (automatic increases in wages as the consumer price index grows) triggers a price–wage inflationary spiral. This issue was a particular problem in industrialized countries in the 1960s and 1970s and remains an issue today.

A key aspect in this process is inflation expectations. Because inflation expectations are high, the request for higher wages is stronger, which induces employers to increase prices in advance to keep their profit margins stable. This avalanche process grows with time. Central banks act, sometimes drastically, to slow down the economy and reset inflationary expectations throughout the economy at a low level, so that if everyone expects low inflation, the inflationary spiral itself will stop. These actions may trigger a deep recession. Therefore, whenever a financial analyst sees signs of a price–wage spiral in the making, a reasonable response would be to consider the effect of both high inflation and sharp tightening of monetary policy.

This example shows that measures of labor market conditions are important in assessing whether an economy is at risk of cyclical downturn.

The following are the definitions of a few terms that are used to summarize the state of the labor market:

- **Employed:** The number of people with a job. This figure normally does not include people working in the informal sector (e.g., unlicensed cab drivers, illegal workers, etc.).
- **Labor force:** The number of people who either have a job or are actively looking for a job. This number excludes retirees, children, stay-at-home parents, full-time students, and other categories of people who are neither employed nor actively seeking employment.
- **Unemployed:** People who are actively seeking employment but are currently without a job. Some special subcategories include:
 - **Long-term unemployed:** People who have been out of work for a long time (more than three to four months in many countries) but are still looking for a job.
 - **Frictionally unemployed:** People who are not working at the time of filling out the statistical survey because they are taking time to search for a job that matches their skills, interests, and other preferences better than what is currently available, or people who have left one job and are about to start another job. The frictionally unemployed includes people who have voluntarily left their previous positions in order to change their jobs, in other words, they are “between jobs,” and those new entrants or re-entrants into the labor force who have not yet found work. Frictional unemployment is short-term and transitory in nature
- **Unemployment rate:** The ratio of unemployed to labor force.
- **Activity ratio** (or participation ratio): The ratio of labor force to total population of working age (i.e., those between 16 and 64 years of age).
- **Underemployed:** A person who has a job but has the qualifications to work at a significantly higher-paying job. For example, a lawyer who is out of work and takes a job in a bookstore could call herself underemployed. This lawyer would count as employed for the computation of the unemployment rate (she does have a job, even if it may not be her highest paying job). Although the unemployment rate statistic is criticized for not taking the issue of underemployment into account, it may be difficult to classify whether a person is truly underemployed—for example, the lawyer may find legal work too stressful and prefers working at the bookstore. However, data for part-time working is sometimes a good proxy.

- **Discouraged worker:** A person who has stopped looking for a job. Perhaps because of a weak economy, the discouraged worker has given up seeking employment. Discouraged workers are statistically outside the labor force (similar to children and retirees), which means they are not counted in the official unemployment rate. During prolonged recessions, the unemployment rate may actually decrease because many discouraged workers stop seeking work. It is important to observe the participation rate together with the unemployment rate to understand if unemployment is decreasing because of an improved economy or because of an increase in discouraged workers. Discouraged workers and underemployed people may be considered examples of “hidden unemployment.”
- **Voluntarily unemployed:** person voluntarily outside the labor force, such as a jobless worker refusing an available vacancy for which the wage is lower than their threshold or those who retired early.

4.1.1 *The Unemployment Rate*

The unemployment rate is certainly the most quoted measure of unemployment; it attempts to measure those people who have no work but would work if they could find it, generally stated as a percentage of the overall labor force. In the United States, the indicator emerges from a monthly survey of households by the US Bureau of Labor Statistics, which asks how many household members have jobs and how many of working age do not have jobs but are seeking work. Other statistical bureaus rely on other sources for the calculation, using claims for unemployment assistance, for instance, or their equivalent. Some statistical bureaus measure the labor force simply as those of working age, regardless of whether they are ready or willing to work. These differences can make precise international comparisons problematic. One solution is to use the International Labour Organization (ILO) statistics that try to estimate on a consistent basis. As indicated earlier, some statistical agencies add perspective with other measures; for example, what proportion of those who have ceased work are discouraged, underemployed, or have opted out of the labor force for other reasons or are working part-time.

Although these various unemployment measures provide insight to the state of the economy, they are inaccurate in pointing to cyclical directions for two primary reasons, both of which make unemployment a lagging economic indicator of the business cycle.

One reason is that the unemployment rate tends to point to a past economic condition—that is, it lags the cycle—because the labor force expands and declines in response to the economic environment. Compounding the inaccuracy, when times get hard, discouraged workers cease searching for work, reducing the number typically counted as unemployed and making the jobs market look stronger than it really is. Conversely, when the jobs market picks up, these people return to the search, and because they seldom find work immediately, they at least initially raise the calculation of those unemployed, giving the false impression of the lack of recovery in the jobs market, when, in fact, it is the improvement that brought these people back into the labor force in the first place. Sometimes this cyclical flow of new jobs seekers is so great that the unemployment rate actually rises even as the economic recovery gains momentum. Those agencies that measure the labor force in terms of the working-age population avoid this bias, because this measure (working-age population) is unaffected by economic conditions in the labor market. But this approach introduces biases of its own, such as counting as unemployed those people who have severe disabilities and could never seek work.

The second reason the unemployment indicator tends to lag the cycle comes from the typical reluctance of businesses to lay off people. The reluctance may stem from a desire to retain good workers for the long run, or just reflect constraints written

into labor contracts that make layoffs expensive. The reluctance makes the various measures of unemployment rise more slowly as the economy slides into recession than they otherwise might. Then as the recovery develops, a business waits to hire until it has fully employed the workers it has kept on the payroll during the recession; this delay causes decreases in the unemployment rate to lag in the cyclical recovery, sometimes for a long time.

4.1.2 Overall Payroll Employment and Productivity Indicators

To get a better picture of the employment cycle, practitioners often rely on more straightforward measures of payroll growth. By measuring the size of payrolls, practitioners sidestep such issues as the ebb and flow of discouraged workers. These statistics, however, do have biases of their own. It is hard, for instance, to count employment in smaller businesses, which may be significant drivers of employment growth. Still, there is a clear indication of economic trouble when payrolls shrink and a clear indication of recovery when they rise.

The examination of other measures can also assist in understanding the employment situation and its use in determining cyclical directions. Two additional measures are hours worked, especially overtime, and the use of temporary workers. A business does not want to make mistakes with full-time staff, either hiring or firing. Thus, at the first signs of economic weakness, managers cut back hours, especially overtime. Such movements can simply reflect minor month-to-month production shifts, but if followed by cutbacks in part-time and temporary staff, the picture gives a strong signal of economic weakness, especially if confirmed by other independent indicators. Similarly, on the cyclical upswing, a business turns first to increases in overtime and hours. If a business then increases temporary staffing, it gives a good signal of economic recovery long before any movement in rehiring fulltime staff again, especially if confirmed by independent cyclical indicators.

Productivity measures also offer insight into this cyclical process. Because productivity is usually measured by dividing output by hours worked, a business's tendency to keep workers on the payroll even as output falls usually prompts a reduction in measured productivity. If measures are available promptly enough, this sign of cyclical weakness might precede even the change in hours. This drop in productivity precedes any change in full-time payrolls. Productivity also responds promptly when business conditions improve and the business first begins to utilize its underemployed workers, which occurs earlier than any upturn in full-time payrolls.

On a more fundamental level, productivity can also pick up in response to technological breakthroughs or improved training techniques. As already mentioned, such changes affect potential GDP. If strong enough, they can negatively affect employment trends, keeping them slower than they would be otherwise by relieving the need for additional staff to increase production. But these influences usually unfold over decades and mean little to cyclical considerations, which, at most, unfold over years. What is more, there are few statistical indicators to gauge the onset of technological change, confining analysts to the use of anecdotal evidence or occasional longitudinal studies.

EXAMPLE 9

Analyzing Unemployment

- 1 At the peak of the business cycle, if the unemployment rate is low, the majority of the unemployed are *most likely*:
 - A discouraged workers.
 - B long-term unemployed.

- C frictionally unemployed.
- 2 As an economy starts to recover from a trough in the business cycle, the unemployment rate is *most likely* to:
- A continue to rise with a decline in the number of discouraged workers.
 - B start to decline with an increase in the number of discouraged workers.
 - C continue to rise with an increase in the number of discouraged workers.
- 3 An analyst observes that the unemployment rate is high and rising, whereas productivity and hours worked have declined. The analyst is *most likely* to conclude that the labor market is signaling the:
- A end of a recession.
 - B deepening of a recession.
 - C peak of the business cycle.

Solution to 1:

C is correct. At the peak of a business cycle, the labor market is usually tight and people become unemployed largely because they are either “between jobs” or they have entered or reentered the labor force but have not yet found work.

Solution to 2:

A is correct. As the economy starts to recover, discouraged workers return to the labor force and start looking for jobs, which increases both the number of unemployed and the size of the labor force. The unemployment rate rises because the rise in the unemployed population is proportionately larger than the increase in the size of the labor force. B and C are incorrect because an increase in the number of discouraged workers typically occurs when the economy is contracting.

Solution to 3:

B is correct. High and rising unemployment, declining hours worked, and falling productivity are all signs of a weak economy getting weaker. When the economy first slows down, businesses cut back employees’ hours. As the recession deepens, they then lay off employees, leading to a higher unemployment rate. Yet, because workforce turnover is costly for businesses, the scale of the layoff can be less than the decline in output, resulting in a decline in productivity. A is incorrect because toward the end of a recession, businesses are hesitant to increase hiring and instead use more overtime, increasing both productivity and the hours worked. C is incorrect because at the peak of a business cycle, the unemployment rate is usually low and the level of hours worked is high.

4.2 Inflation

The overall price level changes at varying rates during different phases of a business cycle. Thus, when studying business cycles, it is important to understand this phenomenon. In general, the inflation rate is pro-cyclical (that is it goes up and down *with* the cycle), but with a lag of a year or more.

Inflation refers to a sustained rise in the overall level of prices in an economy. Economists use various price indexes to measure the overall price level, also called the aggregate price level. The **inflation rate** is the percentage change in a price index—that is, the speed of overall price level movements. Investors follow the inflation rate closely, not only because it can help to infer the state of the economy but also because an unexpected change may result in a change in monetary policy, which can in turn

have a large and immediate impact on asset prices. In developing countries, very high inflation rates can lead to social unrest or even shifts of political power, which constitutes political risk for investments in those economies.

Central banks, the monetary authority in most economies, monitor the domestic inflation rates closely when conducting monetary policy. Monetary policy determines interest rates and the available quantities of money and loans in an economy. A high inflation rate combined with fast economic growth and low unemployment usually indicates the economy is overheating, which may trigger some policy movements to cool it down. However, if a high inflation rate is combined with a high level of unemployment and a slowdown of the economy—an economic state known as **stagflation** (for stagnation plus inflation)—the economy will typically be left to correct itself because no short-term economic policy is thought to be effective.

4.2.1 Deflation, Hyperinflation, and Disinflation

There are various terms related to the levels and changes of the inflation rate.

- **Deflation:** A sustained decrease in aggregate price level, which corresponds to a negative inflation rate—that is, an inflation rate of less than 0%.
- **Hyperinflation:** An extremely fast increase in aggregate price level, which corresponds to an extremely high inflation rate—for example, 500% to 1000% per year.
- **Disinflation:** A decline in the inflation rate, such as from around 15% to 20% to 5% or 6%. Disinflation is very different from deflation because even after a period of disinflation, the inflation rate remains positive and the aggregate price level keeps rising (although at a slower speed).

Inflation means that the same amount of money can purchase less real goods or services in the future. So, the value of money or the purchasing power of money decreases in an inflationary environment. When deflation occurs, the value of money actually increases. Because most debt contracts are written in fixed monetary amounts, the liability of a borrower also rises in real terms during deflation. As the price level falls, the revenue of a typical company also falls during a recession. Facing increasing real debt, a company that is short of cash usually cuts its spending, investment, and workforce sharply. Less spending and high unemployment then further exacerbate the economic contraction. To avoid getting too close to deflation, the consensus on the preferred inflation rate is around 2% per year for developed economies. Deflation occurred in the United States during the Great Depression and briefly during the recession following the global financial crisis of 2008–2009. Since the late 1990s, Japan has experienced several episodes of deflation.

Hyperinflation usually occurs when large scale government spending is not backed by real tax revenue and the monetary authority accommodates government spending by increasing the money supply. Hyperinflation may also be caused by the shortage of supply created during or after a war, economic regime transition, or prolonged economic distress of an economy caused by political instability. During hyperinflation, people are eager to change their cash into real goods because prices are rising very fast. As a result, money changes hands at extremely high frequency. The government also has to print more money to support its increased spending. As more cash chases a limited supply of goods and services, the rate of price increases accelerates. After World War I, a famous case of hyperinflation occurred in Germany from 1923 to 1924. During the peak of this episode, prices doubled every 3.7 days. After World War II, Hungary experienced a severe hyperinflation during which prices doubled every 15.6 hours at its peak in 1946. In 1993, the inflation rate in Ukraine peaked at 10,155% per year. In January 1994, the *monthly* inflation rate peaked at 313 million percent in Yugoslavia. The most recent hyperinflation in Zimbabwe reached a peak of *monthly*

inflation at 79.6 billion percent in the middle of November 2008. Because the basic cause for hyperinflation is too much money in circulation, regaining control of the money supply is the key to ending hyperinflation.

Exhibit 2 shows recent episodes of disinflation in selected countries around the world. The first episode happened during the early 1980s. Because of the two oil crises in the 1970s, many countries around the world were experiencing high levels of inflation. In Exhibit 2, the annual inflation rates in most countries around 1980 ranged between 10% and 20%. Even though this level is still far from hyperinflation, it generated social pressure against inflationary monetary policy. At the cost of a severe recession early in the 1980s, these countries brought inflation rates down to around 5% on average by 1985. In the first years of the 1990s, inflationary experience varied widely in world markets as some countries entered recessions, such as the United States and the United Kingdom, and others boomed. However, from the beginning to the end of the decade, there was a broad-based decline in inflation rates; in some countries annual inflation rates were below 2% by the end of the decade. In many countries, the decline in inflation was attributed to high productivity growth rates.

Exhibit 2 Two Episodes of Disinflation around the World Annual Inflation Rates

Year	First Episode					Second Episode			
	1979	1980	1983	1984	1985	1990	1991	1998	1999
Country									
Australia	9.1	10.2	10.1	3.9	6.7	7.3	3.2	0.9	1.5
Canada	9.1	10.1	5.9	4.3	4.0	4.8	5.6	1.0	1.7
Finland	7.5	11.6	8.4	7.1	5.2	6.1	4.3	1.4	1.2
France	10.6	13.6	9.5	7.7	5.8	3.2	3.2	0.6	0.5
Germany	4.0	5.4	3.3	2.4	2.1	2.7	4.0	1.0	0.6
Italy	14.8	21.1	14.6	10.8	9.2	6.5	6.3	2.0	1.7
Japan	3.7	7.8	1.9	2.3	2.0	3.1	3.3	0.7	-0.3
South Korea	18.3	28.7	3.4	2.3	2.5	8.6	9.3	7.5	0.8
Spain	15.7	15.6	12.2	11.3	8.8	6.7	5.9	1.8	2.3
Sweden	7.2	13.7	8.9	8.0	7.4	10.4	9.4	-0.3	0.5
United Kingdom	13.4	18.0	4.6	5.0	6.1	7.0	7.5	1.6	1.3
United States	11.3	13.5	3.2	4.3	3.5	5.4	4.2	1.6	2.2
Average	10.4	14.1	7.2	5.8	5.3	6.0	5.5	1.6	1.2
G-7 Countries	9.6	12.5	4.6	4.6	3.9	4.8	4.4	1.3	1.4

Source: The Organisation for Economic Co-Operation and Development (OECD).

4.2.2 Measuring Inflation: The Construction of Price Indexes

Because the inflation rate is measured as the percentage change of a price index, it is important to understand how a price index is constructed so that the inflation rate derived from that index can be accurately interpreted. A **price index** represents the average prices of a basket of goods and services, and various methods can be used to average the different prices. Exhibit 3 shows a simple example of the change of a consumption basket over time.

Exhibit 3 Consumption Basket and Prices over Two Months

Time	January 2010		February 2010	
	Quantity	Price	Quantity	Price
Rice	50 kg	¥3/kg	70 kg	¥4/kg
Gasoline	70 liters	¥4.4/liter	60 liters	¥4.5/liter

For January 2010, the total value of the consumption basket is:

$$\text{Value of rice} + \text{Value of gasoline} = (50 \times 3) + (70 \times 4.4) = ¥458$$

A price index uses the relative weight of a good in a basket to weight the price in the index. Therefore, the same consumption basket in February 2010 is worth:

$$\text{Value of rice} + \text{Value of gasoline} = (50 \times 4) + (70 \times 4.5) = ¥515$$

The price index in the base period is usually set to 100. So, if the price index in January 2010 is 100, then the price index in February 2010 is

$$\text{Price index in February 2010} = \frac{515}{458} \times 100 = 112.45 \text{ and}$$

$$\text{Inflation rate} = \frac{112.45}{100} - 1 = 0.1245 = 12.45\%$$

A price index created by holding the composition of the consumption basket constant is called a **Laspeyres index**. Most price indexes around the world are Laspeyres indexes because the survey data on the consumption basket is only available with a lag. In many countries, the basket is updated every five years. Because most price indexes are created to measure the cost of living, simply using a fixed basket of goods and services has three serious biases:

- **Substitution bias:** As the price of one good or service rises, people may substitute it with other goods or services that have a lower price. This substitution will result in an upward bias in the measured inflation rate based on a Laspeyres index.
- **Quality bias:** As the quality of the same product improves over time, it satisfies people's needs and wants better. One such example is the quality of cars. Over the years, the prices of cars have been rising but the safety and reliability of cars have also been enhanced. If not adjusted for quality, the measured inflation rate will experience another upward bias.
- **New product bias:** New products are frequently introduced and a fixed basket of goods and services will not include them. In general, this situation again creates an upward bias in the inflation rate.

It is relatively easy to resolve the quality bias and new product bias. Many countries adjust for the quality of the products in a basket, a practice called hedonic pricing. New products can be introduced into the basket over time. The substitution bias can be somewhat resolved by using chained price index formula. One such example is the **Fisher index**, which is the geometric mean of the Laspeyres index and the

Paasche index. The latter is an index formula using the current composition of the basket. Using the consumption basket for February 2010 in Exhibit 3, the value of the Paasche index is

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Paasche Index}_{02/2010} = I_P &= \frac{(70 \times 4) + (60 \times 4.5)}{(70 \times 3) + (60 \times 4.4)} \times 100 \\ &= \frac{550}{474} \times 100 = 116.03 \end{aligned}$$

The value of the Fisher index is

$$\text{Fisher Index}_{02/2010} = \sqrt{I_P \times I_L} = \sqrt{116.03 \times 112.45} = 114.23$$

where I_L is the Laspeyres index.

4.2.3 Price Indexes and Their Usage

Most countries use a consumer price index (CPI) specific to the domestic economy to track inflation. Exhibit 4 shows the different weights for various categories of goods and services in the consumer price indexes of different countries.

Exhibit 4 The Consumption Basket of Different Consumer Price Indexes

Country	Japan	China	India	Germany	United States	United States
Name of Index	CPI	CPI	CPI(UNME)	HICP	PCE	CPI-U
Year ^a	2005	2005	1984/85	2008	2009	2007/08
Category (%):						
Food and Beverage	25.9	34	47.1	16.7	7.8	14.8
Housing and Utility	27.2	13	21.9	23.1	18.8	37.4
Furniture	3.4	6	2.0	6.1	2.5	4.6
Apparel	4.6	9	7.0	5.3	3.2	3.7
Medical Care	4.5	10	2.5	4.4	16.2	6.5
Transportation and Communication	13.9	10	5.2	17.6	9.1	20.1
Education and Recreation	14.6	14	6.8	13.3	7.0 ^b	9.5
Others	5.9	4	7.5	13.5	35.4	3.5

^a The base year of the weights where it is appropriate.

^b Recreation only.

Source: Government websites and authors' calculation.

As shown in Exhibit 4, in different countries the consumer price indexes have different names and different weights on various categories of goods and services. For example, food weights are higher in the CPI for China and India, but less for the developed countries; a greater proportion of income of the average consumer goes to food in the developing countries of China and India than in the developed countries shown in Exhibit 4. The scope of the index is also different among countries. For China, Japan, and Germany, the surveys used to collect data for CPI cover both urban and rural areas. The CPI for the United States covers only urban areas using a household survey, which is why it is called the CPI-U. On the other hand, the **personal consumption expenditures** (PCE) price index covers all personal consumption in the United States using business surveys.

The **producer price index** (PPI) is another important inflation measure. The PPI reflects the price changes experienced by domestic producers in a country. Because price increases may eventually pass through to consumers, the PPI can influence the future CPI. The items in the PPI include fuels, farm products (such as grains and meat), machinery and equipment, chemical products (such as drugs and paints), transportation equipment, metals, pulp and paper, and so on. These products are usually further grouped by stage-of-processing categories: crude materials, intermediate materials, and finished goods. Similar to the CPI, scope and weights vary among countries. The differences in the weights can be much more dramatic for the PPI than for the CPI because different countries may specialize in different industries. In some countries, the PPI is called the **wholesale price index** (WPI).

As an important inflation indicator, many economic activities are indexed to a certain price index. For example, the United States' **Treasury Inflation-Protected Securities** (TIPS) adjusts the bond's principal according to the US CPI-U index. The terms of labor contracts and commercial real estate leases may adjust periodically according to the CPI. Recurring payments in business contracts can be linked to the PPI or its sub-indexes for a particular category of products.

Central banks usually use a consumer price index to monitor inflation. For example, the European Central Bank (the ECB), the central bank for the European Union (EU) focuses on the Harmonised Index of Consumer Prices (HICP). Each member country in the EU first reports their own individual HICP and then Eurostat, the statistical office for the EU, aggregates the country level HICPs with country weights. But there are exceptions. The Reserve Bank of India follows the inflation in India using a WPI. Because food items only represent about 27% in the India WPI (much lower than the 70% in the India rural CPI), the rural CPIs can rise faster than the WPI when there is high food price inflation. Besides the weight differences, the wholesale prices in the WPI also understate market prices because they do not take into account retail margins (markups). The choice of inflation indicator may also change over time. The central bank of the United States, known as the Federal Reserve Board (the Fed) once focused on the CPI-U produced by the Bureau of Labor Statistics under the US Department of Labor. Because the CPI-U is a Laspeyres index and it has the previously discussed upward biases, the Fed switched in 2000 to the PCE index, a Fisher index produced by the Bureau of Economic Analysis under the US Department of Commerce. The PCE index also has the advantage that it covers the complete range of consumer spending rather than just a basket.

Headline and Core Inflation

Headline inflation refers to the inflation rate calculated based on the price index that includes all goods and services in an economy. **Core inflation** usually refers to the inflation rate calculated based on a price index of goods and services except food and energy. Policymakers often choose to focus on the core inflation rate when reading the trend in the economy and making economic policies. The reason is that policymakers are trying to avoid overreaction to short-term fluctuations in food and energy prices that may not have a significant impact on future headline inflation.

The ultimate goal for policymakers is to control headline inflation, which reflects the actual cost of living. The fluctuations in the prices of food and energy are often the result of short-term changes in supply and demand. These changes in the prices of energy, particularly oil, are internationally determined and not necessarily reflective of the domestic business cycle. These imbalances may not persist, or even if some changes are permanent, the economy may be able to absorb them over time. These possibilities

make headline inflation a noisy predictor. The core inflation rate may be a better signal of the trend in domestically driven inflation. To the extent that some trends in the headline inflation rate are permanent, policymakers need to pay attention to these as well.

Besides tracking inflation, financial analysts also use the price index to deflate GDP (i.e., to eliminate the price effect in nominal GDP data so as to identify trends in real economic growth). Many countries publish a particular price index, called the GDP deflator, for that purpose. Sub-indexes are also commonly available and may prove more valuable to an analyst with an interest in a particular industry or company.

Sub-Indexes and Relative Prices

As mentioned previously, a sub-index refers to the price index for a particular category of goods or services. **Relative price** is the price of a specific good or service in comparison with those of other goods and services. Good examples for relative prices include the prices for food and energy. The movements in a sub-index or a relative price may be difficult to detect in the headline inflation rate. Because macroeconomic policy decision-makers rely heavily on the headline inflation rate, they may not be aware of price movements at the sub-index level. These price movements, however, can be very useful for analyzing the prospects of an industry or a company. For example, if the producer price index for the machinery used by an industry rises quickly, the allowable capital depreciation permitted by the existing tax code may not generate sufficient tax benefits for the companies in that industry to meet future replacement expenses. The future profitability of the industry may decline for this reason. The decline in prices for flat screen televisions provides an example of relative price movements. The price drop for these TVs may help to lower inflation pressure but can hurt manufacturers' profits.

EXAMPLE 10

Inflation

- 1 Which one of the following statements regarding the movements of overall price levels is *most* accurate?
 - A Disinflation means that the overall price level declines.
 - B Deflation occurs when the inflation rate turns negative.
 - C When the price of chicken rises, the inflation rate will increase.
- 2 Deflation can exacerbate a recession because firms may reduce their investments and hiring when:
 - A the slower pace of inflation lowers aggregate demand.
 - B their revenues decline but their debt burden rises in real terms.
 - C prices of their products continue to fall because of intense competition.
- 3 Which one of the following economic phenomena related to inflation cannot be determined by using observations of the inflation rate alone?
 - A Deflation
 - B Stagflation
 - C Hyperinflation

- 4 If a price index is calculated based on a fixed basket of goods, in an inflationary environment the inflation rate calculated based on this index over time will:
- A overstate the actual cost of living.
 - B understate the actual cost of living.
 - C track the actual cost of living quite closely.
- 5 To adjust nominal economic growth for general price level changes in a country, an analyst would prefer to use:
- A the CPI.
 - B the GDP deflator.
 - C the Personal Consumption Expenditures (PCE) index.
- 6 To estimate the trends in sales and production costs of a given industry, an analyst would prefer to collect data on:
- A the sub-index of the wholesale price index (WPI) for that industry.
 - B the sub-indexes of both the CPI and WPI that are relevant to the industry.
 - C the sub-indexes of the CPI relevant to the output and inputs of that industry.
- 7 Compared with core inflation, headline inflation:
- A has an upward bias.
 - B is more subject to short-term market conditions.
 - C can more accurately predict future inflation.

Solution to 1:

B is correct. When the inflation rate falls below zero—that is, the overall price level declines—the economy is experiencing deflation. A is incorrect because disinflation indicates that the overall price level is rising but at a slower pace. C is incorrect because inflation measures are designed to reflect changes in the overall price level. Consumption baskets in modern economies usually contain a large number of goods and services, thus the price of a particular product usually cannot significantly influence the overall price level.

Solution to 2:

B is correct. As the prices of the output of firms fall, the firms receive lower revenues. Because the nominal amount of debt that firms carry is usually fixed, lower general price levels leads to higher debt balances in real terms. These two forces push firms closer to default, so they may scale back spending on investments and labor, which, in turn, further lowers the aggregate demand and pushes the general price level even lower. In macroeconomic analysis, it is usually the changes in aggregate demand that influence inflation instead of the reverse causality. Furthermore, neither inflation fluctuations nor aggregate demand shifts explain the potential damaging effect of deflation. Price decline attributable to the competitive environment is a microeconomic phenomenon that is not sufficient to explain the macroeconomic impact of deflation.

Solution to 3:

B is correct. A high inflation rate alone does not indicate stagflation, which happens if high unemployment occurs together with high inflation.

Solution to 4:

A is correct. Upward biases, such as the substitution bias or quality bias, will overstate the actual cost of living.

Solution to 5:

B is correct. The GDP deflator reflects the prices of the goods and services produced domestically. Both the CPI and PCE indexes are constructed using consumption baskets, and the components of a consumption basket can be very different from the components of output of that same country.

Solution to 6:

B is correct. A sub-index of the CPI reflects the market price changes of the products of an industry, whereas a sub-index of the WPI reflects the price changes of the inputs of an industry. The different composition of outputs and inputs of an industry need to be appropriately accounted for when selecting a price series. Furthermore, the WPI may not take the markups set by the industry into account.

Solution to 7:

B is correct. Headline inflation is heavily influenced by food and energy price fluctuations, which are affected by short-term supply and demand changes in these markets. These market conditions may not persist. It is also possible for an economy to absorb the price changes so that they will not have long-lasting impact on the headline inflation rate. This means headline inflation contains a great deal of noise and is not a reliable predictor of future inflation trends. The biases in various inflation measures are inherent in the index construction methodology and are not related to the price movements of the goods and services.

4.2.4 Explaining Inflation

Economists describe two types of inflation: **cost-push**, in which rising costs, usually wages, compel businesses to raise prices generally; and **demand-pull**, in which increasing demand raise prices generally, which then are reflected in a business's costs as workers demand wage hikes to catch up with the rising cost of living. Whatever the sequence by which prices and costs rise in an economy, the fundamental cause is the same: excessive demands—either for raw materials, finished goods, or labor—that outstrip the economy's ability to respond. The initial signs appear in the areas with the greatest constraints: the labor market, the commodity market, or in some area of final output. Even before examining particular cost and price measures, practitioners, when considering inflation, look to indicators that might reveal when the economy faces such constraints.

4.2.4.1 Cost-Push Inflation In the area of cost-push inflation, analysts may look at commodity prices because commodities are an input to production. But because wages are the single biggest cost to businesses, practitioners focus most particularly on wage-push inflation, which is tied to the labor market. Because the object is to gauge demand for labor relative to capacity, the unemployment rate is key, as well as measures of the number of workers available to meet the economy's expanding needs. Obviously, the higher the unemployment rate, the lower the likelihood that shortages will develop in labor markets, whereas the lower the unemployment rate, the greater likelihood that shortages will drive up wages. Because the unemployment rate generally only counts people who are looking for work, some practitioners argue that it fails to account for the economy's full labor potential, and they state that a tight labor market will bring people out in search of work and ease any potential wage strains. To account for this

issue and to modify the unemployment rate indicator, these practitioners also look at the participation rate of people in the labor force, arguing that it gives a fuller and more accurate picture of potential than the unemployment rate.

Analysis in this area recognizes that not all labor is alike. Structural factors related to training deficiencies, cultural patterns in all or some of the population, inefficiencies in the labor market, and the like can mean that the economy will effectively face labor shortages long before the unemployment rate reaches very low figures. This effective unemployment rate, below which pressure emerges in labor markets, is frequently referred to as the **non-accelerating inflation rate of unemployment** (NAIRU) or, drawing on the work of the Nobel Prize winner Milton Friedman, the **natural rate of unemployment** (NARU). Of course, these rates vary from one economy to another and over time in a single economy. It is this rate rather than full employment that determines when an economy will experience bottlenecks in the labor market and wage-push inflationary pressures.

Take, for example, the technology sector. It has grown so rapidly in some economies that training in the labor force cannot keep up with demand. This sector can, as a consequence, face shortages of trained workers and attendant wage pressures even though the economy as a whole seems to have considerable slack in the overall labor market. Until training (supply) catches up with demand, that economy may experience wage and inflation pressure at rates of unemployment that in other places and circumstances might suggest ample slack in the labor market and much less wage-push pressure.

Assessments of wage-push inflation also consider direct observations of wage trends that, when they accelerate, might force businesses to raise prices (initiating the wage-price spiral mentioned earlier in this reading). Statistical agencies provide a wide array of wage-cost indicators, such as hourly wage gauges, weekly earnings, and overall labor costs, including the outlays for benefits. Some of these indicators include the effects of special overtime pay or bonuses, others do not. And although these measures give an idea of the cost to businesses and hence the kind of wage-push inflationary pressure, a complete picture only emerges when practitioners examine such trends alongside productivity measures.

Productivity, or output per hour, is an essential part of wage-push inflation analysis because the output available from each worker determines the number of units over which businesses can spread the cost of worker compensation. The greater each worker's output is per hour, the lower price businesses need to charge for each unit of output to cover hourly labor costs. And by extension, the faster output per hour grows, the faster labor compensation can expand without putting undue pressure on businesses' costs per unit of output. The equation for this **unit labor cost** (ULC) indicator, as it is called, is as follows:

$$ULC = W/O,$$

where

ULC = unit labor costs

O = output per hour per worker

W = total labor compensation per hour per worker

Many factors can affect labor productivity across time and between economies. The cyclical swings have already been described, as have the effects of technology and training. The pace of development also tends to increase worker productivity because the more sophisticated equipment, systems, and technologies workers have at their disposal, the higher their output per hour. Whatever causes the productivity growth, if it fails to keep up with worker compensation, unit costs to a business rise and, as a business tries to protect its profit margins, prices generally come under increasing upward pressure. Generally this situation occurs because heavy demand

for labor relative to available labor resources has pushed up compensation faster than productivity. Practitioners use a variety of indicators to identify cost- or wage-push inflationary pressure.

EXAMPLE 11

Unemployment Too High

Which of the following is **not** a problem with the NARU and NAIRU?

- A They only work in monetarist models.
- B They may change over time given changes in technology and economic structure.
- C They do not account for bottlenecks in segments of the labor market (e.g., college graduates).

Solution:

A is correct. The NARU and NAIRU are the unemployment rates at which the inflation rate will not rise because of a shortage of labor. This concept does not tie to a particular school of macroeconomic models.

4.2.4.2 Demand-Pull Inflation The search for indicators from the demand-pull side of the inflation question brings practitioners back to the relationship between actual and potential real GDP and industrial capacity utilization. The higher the rate of capacity utilization or the closer actual GDP is to potential, the more likely an economy will suffer shortages, bottlenecks, a general inability to satisfy demand, and hence, price increases. The more an economy operates below its potential or the lower the rate of capacity utilization, the less such supply pressure will exist and the greater likelihood of a slowdown in inflation, or outright deflation. In addition to these macro indicators, practitioners will also look for signs of inflationary pressure in commodity prices, in part because they are a cost to business, but more as a general sign of excess demand. For an individual economy, observations of commodity prices could be misleading because commodities trade in a global market and accordingly reflect global economic conditions more than those in an individual economy.

Taking a different perspective, Monetarists contend that inflation is fundamentally a monetary phenomenon. A surplus of money, they argue, will inflate the money price of everything in the economy. Stated in terms of straightforward supply and demand relationships, a surplus of money would bring down its value just as a surplus in any market would bring down the price of the product in excess. Because the price of money is stated in terms of the products it can buy, its declining value would have an expression in higher prices generally, that is, in inflation. This Monetarist argument, as it is called, finds a more simple expression in the old saying that inflation results when too much money chases too few goods. Although it seems distant from other explanations of inflation, in practice, it is not that distinct. The excess of money creates the inflation by increasing liquidity, which ultimately causes a rapid rise in demand. In this sense, the Monetarist argument is a special case under the more general heading of demand-pull concepts of inflation. The practical distinction between the monetarist and other approaches is in identifying the initial cause of the demand excess.

Practitioners can track this effect by examining various money supply indicators, usually provided by the central bank. To detect an inflationary potential or the opposite, they note accelerations or decelerations in money growth from past trends. Obviously, accelerations, in the absence of a special explanation, signal the potential for inflationary pressure. In applying this approach, practitioners also compare money

growth with the growth of the nominal economy, represented by nominal GDP. If money growth outpaces the growth of the nominal economy, there is an inflationary potential, especially if money growth has also accelerated from its trend. There is a disinflationary or deflationary potential if money growth trails the economy's rate of expansion, especially if it has also decelerated from its trend.



Inflation (I)

Some practitioners view the likelihood of inflationary pressure from the vantage point of the ratio of nominal GDP to money supply, commonly called the “velocity of money.” If this ratio remains stable around a constant or a historical trend, they see reason to look for relative price stability. If velocity falls, it could suggest a surplus of money that might have inflationary potential, but much depends on why it has declined. If velocity has fallen because a cyclical correction has brought down the GDP numerator relative to the money denominator, then practitioners view prospects as more likely to lead to a cyclical upswing to reestablish the former relationship than inflationary pressure. If velocity has fallen, however, because of an increase in the money denominator, then inflationary pressure becomes more likely. If velocity rises, financial analysts might be concerned about a shortage of money in the economy and disinflation or deflation.

The 2008–2009 global recession and financial crisis offers an extreme example of these velocity ambiguities. As the global economy slipped into recession, which held back the GDP numerator in velocity measures, central banks, most notably the Federal Reserve in the United States, tried to help financial institutions cope by injecting huge amounts of money into their respective financial systems, raising the velocity denominator. Velocity measures plummeted accordingly. The expectation is that subsequent GDP growth as economies and financial markets heal will bring velocity back to a more normal level and trend. That said, the fear is that the monetary surge will, over the very long run, lead to inflation. For policy makers, this situation has created a very difficult policy choice. On the one side, they need to sustain the supply of money to help their respective economies cope with the after effects of the financial crisis. On the other side, they need ultimately to withdraw any monetary excess to preclude potential inflationary pressures.

4.2.5 Inflation Expectations

Beyond demand-pull, monetary, and cost-push inflation considerations, practitioners also need to account for the effect of inflation expectations. Once inflation becomes embedded in an economy, businesses, workers, consumers, and economic actors of every kind begin to expect it and build those expectations into their actions. This reaction, in turn, creates an inflationary momentum of its own. Such expectations give inflation something of a self-sustaining character and cause it to persist in an economy even after its initial cause has disappeared. High inflation rates persisted in the 1970s and early 1980s in Europe and the United States on the basis of expectations even after these economies had sunk into recession. The resulting slow or negative economic growth combined with high unemployment and rising inflation was termed “stagflation.”

Measuring inflation expectations is not easy. Some practitioners gauge expectations by relying on past inflation trends and on the assumption that market participants largely extrapolate their past experiences. In some markets, surveys of inflation expectations are available, although these are often biased by the way the questions are asked. Another indicator of inflation expectations becomes available when governments issue bonds, such as Treasury Inflation-Protected Securities (TIPS), that adjust in various ways to compensate holders for inflation. By comparing the interest available

on these bonds with other government bonds that do not offer such inflation-linked adjustments, practitioners can gauge the general level of inflation expectations among market participants and factor it into their own inflation forecasts and strategies.

For example, if today's yield on the 10-year nominal bond of a certain country is 3.5% and the yield on the 10-year inflation-protected bond of the same country is 1.5%, we infer that the market is pricing in a $3.5\% - 1.5\% = 2\%$ average annual inflation over the next 10 years. However, this calculation needs to be treated with caution because the market for inflation-linked bonds is relatively small and thus yields can be influenced by other factors, such as the very strong demand from US pension funds seeking to match their liabilities.

EXAMPLE 12

Inflation (II)

- 1 To examine whether there is inflationary pressure caused by rising costs, an analyst will *most likely* gather data on:
 - A the growth rates of money supply and nominal GDP.
 - B the unemployment rate, the NAIRU, and productivity growth.
 - C commodity prices, past inflation trends, and expected inflation surveys.
- 2 The most recent macroeconomic data for an economy is given in the following table:

Variable	Value
Hourly wage growth rate	3.4%
Unit labor cost growth rate	-0.25%
Nominal GDP growth rate	3.4%
Money supply growth rate	6.7%
Implied inflation rate from government issued inflation-linked securities	2.2%

Based on the information in the table, an analyst will conclude that current inflation pressure in this economy is *most likely* caused by:

- A rising wages.
 - B rising inflation expectations.
 - C bottlenecks in increasing supply to satisfy demand.
- 3 Cost-push inflation *most likely* occurs when:
 - A unemployment rates are low.
 - B unemployment rates are high.
 - C unemployment is either high or low.
- 4 Unit labor costs measure:
 - A hourly wage rates.
 - B total labor compensation per hour.
 - C a combination of hourly wages and output.
- 5 Demand-pull inflation:
 - A is a discredited concept.
 - B depends on the movements in commodity prices.

- C reflects the state of economic activity relative to potential.
- 6 Monetarists believe inflation:
- A reflects the growth of money.
 - B is driven by the level of interest rates.
 - C is largely a cost-push phenomenon.
- 7 The inflationary potential of a particular inflation rate depends on the economy's NAIRU or NARU, which, in turn, depends in part on:
- A the intensity of past cyclical swings.
 - B the bargaining power of trade unions.
 - C the skill set of the labor force relative to the economy's industrial mix.
- 8 Which of the following is *not* a problem with the NARU and NAIRU?
- A They are not observable directly.
 - B They work only in monetarist models.
 - C They change over time given changes in technology and economic structure.

Solution to 1:

B is correct. Comparing the current unemployment rate with the NAIRU and productivity growth with the wage growth can help an analyst determine whether inflation may be rising because of higher costs (cost-push inflation). Comparing the monetary growth with nominal GDP growth is helpful to determine whether high demand is creating inflationary pressure (demand-pull inflation). Commodity price increases could be an indicator of either cost-push or demand-pull inflation but may contain limited information in some situations. Past inflation trends and surveys on inflation expectations can help to gauge expected inflation rates; inflation expectations can be a driver of inflation even in the absence of the original underlying cause.

Solution to 2:

C is correct. The table shows that growth in the money supply has outpaced nominal GDP growth, which can result in too much money chasing too few goods. In other words, inflation pressure results from demand beyond the economy's current capacity to produce. Although the wage rate is rising, the negative unit labor cost growth rate indicates an increase in productivity. Thus, it is unlikely the economy will experience cost-push inflation. The implied inflation rate is very modest, which is unlikely to lead to a rising inflation rate.

Solution to 3:

A is correct. When unemployment is below the NAIRU, there is a shortage of labor that pushes up labor cost.

Solution to 4:

C is correct. Unit labor costs reflect the labor cost in each unit of output.

Solution to 5:

C is correct. When the economy is operating above its potential capacity allowed by the resources available, inflation will start to rise.

Solution to 6:

A is correct. Monetarists emphasize the role of money growth in determining the inflation rate, especially in the long run. As Milton Friedman famously put it: "Inflation is always and everywhere a monetary phenomenon."

Solution to 7:

C is correct. If the skill set of a large part of the labor force cannot satisfy the hiring need from the employers, the NAIRU of such an economy can be quite high.

Solution to 8:

B is correct. The NAIRU or NARU reflects the potential of an economy and thus cannot be directly observed from the economic data. They also change over time depending on technological progress and social factors.

ECONOMIC INDICATORS

5

As used in business cycle contexts, an **economic indicator** is a variable that provides information on the state of the overall economy. Economic indicators are often classified according to whether they lag, lead, or coincide with changes in an economy's growth. **Leading economic indicators** have turning points that usually precede those of the overall economy. They are believed to have value for predicting the economy's future state, usually near-term. **Coincident economic indicators** have turning points that are usually close to those of the overall economy. They are believed to have value for identifying the economy's present state. **Lagging economic indicators** have turning points that take place later than those of the overall economy. They are believed to have value in identifying the economy's past condition.

To get as clear of a picture as possible, practitioners frequently consider several related indicators simultaneously. What follows is a review of these indicators and how practitioners use them.

5.1 Popular Economic Indicators

A very useful approach for practitioners is to take an aggregate perspective on leading, lagging, and coincident indicators. These aggregate measures typically are a composite of economic indicators known respectively to lead the cycle, run coincident with it, or lag it at cyclical turns. For obvious reasons, the leading indicators in particular help with anticipating cyclical turns up or down and allow strategists and others to position themselves and their companies in a secure and timely way to benefit from movements in the economic cycle.

The exact indicators combined into these composites vary from one economy to the other. Even within an economy, they can have a remarkably diverse and eclectic character. In the United States, for instance, the composite leading indicator known as the **Index of Leading Economic Indicators (LEI)** has 10 component parts that run the gamut from orders for capital goods, to changes in consumer expectations, to swings in stock prices. Such composite indicators in other countries include equally eclectic combinations.

Similar statistics are available for numerous economies. The Conference Board, a US industry research organization, computes leading, lagging, and coincident indicators for the United States and nine other countries plus the Euro area (Eurozone). For about 30 countries and several aggregates, such as the EU and G-7, the Organisation for Economic Co-Operation and Development (OECD) calculates CLI (Composite Leading Indicators) indexes, which gauge the state of the business cycle in the economy. One of the interesting features of CLI indexes is that they are consistent across countries, and therefore, can be compared more easily to see how each region is faring. The Economic Cycle Research Institute (ECRI), a private company, also computes leading indicator indexes for about 20 countries on a weekly basis.

Although specifics for leading, coincident, and lagging indicators vary from one economy to another, they have much in common. In each case, they bring together various economic and financial measures that have displayed a consistently leading, coincident, or lagging relationship to that economy's general cycle. However, as reported by the Conference Board, the timing record of the various composite indexes for the United States has varied over the last 50 years. The coincident index closely matches the NBER peak and trough dates, with 8 of the last 13 turning points corresponding to the beginning or end of a recession. The leading indicator index displays more variability, leading cyclical contractions by 8 to 20 months and expansions by 1 to 10 months.¹³

Exhibit 5 presents the 10 leading, 4 coincident, and 7 lagging indicators tracked for the United States by the Conference Board. In addition to naming the indicators, it also offers a general description of why each measure fits in each of the three groups.

Exhibit 5 Leading, Coincident, and Lagging Indicators—United States

Indicator and Description	Reason
Leading	
1 Average weekly hours, manufacturing	Because businesses will cut overtime before laying off workers in a downturn and increase it before rehiring in a cyclical upturn, these measures move up and down before the general economy.
2 Average weekly initial claims for unemployment insurance	This measure offers a very sensitive test of initial layoffs and rehiring.
3 Manufacturers' new orders for consumer goods and materials	Because businesses cannot wait too long to meet demands for consumer goods or materials without ordering, these gauges tend to lead at upturns and downturns. Indirectly, they capture changes in business sentiment as well, which also often leads the cycle.
4 ISM new order index ^a	This index is a diffusion index that reflects the month-to-month change in new orders for final sales. The weakening of demand, which can lead to a recession, is usually first reflected in the decline of new orders.
5 Manufacturers' new orders for non-defense capital goods excluding aircraft	In addition to offering a first signal of movement, up or down, in an important economic sector, movement in this area also indirectly captures business expectations.
6 Building permits for new private housing units	Because most localities require permits before new building can begin, this gauge foretells new construction activity.
7 S&P 500 Index	Because stock prices anticipate economic turning points, both up and down, their movements offer a useful early signal on economic cycles.
8 Leading Credit Index	This index aggregates the information from six leading financial indicators, which reflect the strength of the financial system to endure stress. A vulnerable financial system can amplify and propagate the effects of negative shocks, resulting in a widespread recession for the whole economy.

¹³ See pages 14 and 15 in *Business Cycle Indicators Handbook* (The Conference Board 2001).

Exhibit 5 (Continued)

Indicator and Description	Reason
Leading	
9 Interest rate spread between 10-year treasury yields and overnight borrowing rates (federal funds rate)	Because long-term yields express market expectations about the direction of short-term interest rates, and rates ultimately follow the economic cycle up and down, a wider spread, by anticipating short rate increases, also anticipates an economic upswing. Conversely, a narrower spread, by anticipating short rate decreases, also anticipates an economic downturn.
10 Average Consumer Expectations for Business and Economic Conditions	If consumers are optimistic about future business and economic conditions, they tend to increase spending. Because consumption is about two-thirds of the US economy, its future movements offers early insight into the direction ahead for the whole economy.
Coincident	
1 Employees on non-agricultural payrolls	Once recession or recovery is clear, businesses adjust their fulltime payrolls.
2 Aggregate real personal income (less transfer payments)	By measuring the income flow from non-corporate profits and wages, this measure captures the current state of the economy.
3 Industrial Production Index	Measures industrial output, thus capturing the behavior of the most volatile part of the economy. The service sector tends to be more stable.
4 Manufacturing and trade sales	In the same way as aggregate personal income and the industrial production index, this aggregate offers a measure of the current state of business activity.
Lagging	
1 Average Duration of Unemployment	Because businesses wait until downturns look genuine to lay off, and wait until recoveries look secure to rehire, this measure is important because it lags the cycle on both the way down and the way up.
2 Inventory–sales ratio	Because inventories accumulate as sales initially decline and then, once a business adjusts its ordering, become depleted as sales pick up, this ratio tends to lag the cycle.
3 Change in unit labor costs	Because businesses are slow to fire workers, these costs tend to rise into the early stages of recession as the existing labor force is used less intensely. Late in the recovery when the labor market gets tight, upward pressure on wages can also raise such costs. In both cases, there is a clear lag at cyclical turns.
4 Average bank prime lending rate	Because this is a bank administered rate, it tends to lag other rates that move either before cyclical turns or with them.
5 Commercial and industrial loans outstanding	Because these loans frequently support inventory building, they lag the cycle for much the same reason that the inventory–sales ratio does.

(continued)

Exhibit 5 (Continued)**Lagging**

6 Ratio of consumer installment debt to income	Because consumers only borrow heavily when confident, this measure lags the cyclical upturn, but debt also overstays cyclical downturns because households have trouble adjusting to income losses, causing it to lag in the downturn.
7 Change in consumer price index for services	Inflation generally adjusts to the cycle late, especially the more stable services area.

^a A diffusion index usually measures the percentage of components in a series that are rising in the same period. It indicates how widespread a particular movement in the trend is among the individual components.

Let us consider a few examples that show the use of these statistics in identifying a business cycle phase. An increase in the reported ratio of consumer installment debt to income lags (occurs after) cyclical upturns; so the increase, by itself, would be evidence that an upturn has been underway. That could confirm the implication of positive changes in coincident indicators that an expansion is in place. As a leading economic indicator, a positive change in the S&P 500 Index is supposed to lead (come before) an increase in aggregate economic activity. An increase in the S&P 500 would be positive for future economic growth, all else equal. However, if the S&P 500 showed an increase but the aggregate index did not, we would likely not draw a positive conclusion. For a final example, if we observed that the LEI moved up a small amount on two consecutive observations, we might conclude that a modest economic expansion is expected.

The component indicators for other countries, though different in specifics, are similar in most respects. The Eurozone, for instance, composes its leading index from eight components:

- 1 Economic sentiment index
- 2 Residential building permits
- 3 Capital goods orders
- 4 The Euro Stoxx Equity Index
- 5 M2 money supply
- 6 An interest rate spread
- 7 Eurozone Manufacturing Purchasing Managers Index
- 8 Eurozone Service Sector Future Business Activity Expectations Index

The parallels between many of these components and those used in the United States are clear, but Europe has a services component in its business activity measures that the United States lacks, whereas Europe forgoes many of the overtime and employment gauges that the United States includes.

Japan's leading index contains 10 components:

- 1 New orders for machinery and construction equipment
- 2 Real operating profits
- 3 Overtime worked
- 4 Dwelling units started
- 5 Six-month growth rate in labor productivity
- 6 Business failures
- 7 Business confidence (Tankan Survey)

- 8 Stock prices
- 9 Real M2 money supply
- 10 Interest rate spread

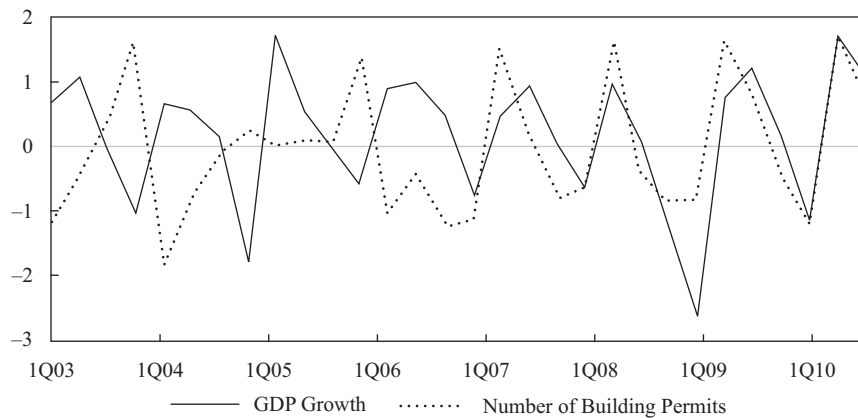
Again many are similar, but Japan includes labor market indicators more like the United States than Europe and adds a measure of business failures not included in the other two.

Similarities and differences along these lines appear in indicators for the United Kingdom, Australia, South Africa, specific European economies, and other countries. The general tone is, however, similar to the detail provided here for the United States.

Building Permits as a Leading Economic Indicator

Exhibit 6 shows an example of a leading economic indicator in Germany, the granted building permits along with its relationship to the growth of Germany's GDP. In Exhibit 6, the growth rate of building permits usually peaks one quarter ahead of the GDP growth rate, with the exception for the first half of 2008 and 2010. Before 2006, the growth rate of building permits usually bottomed out earlier than the GDP growth rate by four quarters. But after 2006, the troughs of the two series almost coincide. The uncertainty of the relationships between an indicator and business cycles is very common. Some indicators may be good predictors for economic expansions but poor predictors for recessions. This uncertainty is why economists and statisticians often combine different indicators and try to find common factors among them when building indicator indexes.

Exhibit 6 The Growth Rates of Germany GDP and Number of Building Permits



Note: The quarter-to-quarter growth rates are normalized by using the standard deviations of the two series, respectively.

Source: Federal Statistical Office of Germany.



Diffusion Index of Economic Indicators

In the United States, the Conference Board also compiles a monthly diffusion index of the leading, lagging, and coincident indicators. The **diffusion index** reflects the proportion of the index's components that are moving in a pattern consistent with the overall index. Analysts often rely on these diffusion indexes to provide a measure of the breadth of the change in a composite index.

For example, the Conference Board tracks the growth of each of the 10 constituents of its leading indicator measure, assigning a value of 1.0 to each indicator that rises by more than 0.05% during the monthly measurement period, a value of 0.5 for each component indicator that changes by less than 0.05%, and a value of 0 for each component indicator that falls by more than 0.05%. These assigned values, which of course differ in other indexes in other countries, are then summed and divided by 10 (the number of components). Then to make the overall measure resemble the more familiar indexes, the Board multiplies the result by 100.

A simple numerical example will help explain. Say, for ease of exposition, the indicator has only four component parts: stock prices, money growth, orders, and consumer confidence. In one month, stock prices rise 2.0%, money growth rises 1.0%, orders are flat, and consumer confidence falls by 0.6%. Using the Conference Board's assigned values, these would contribute respectively: $1.0 + 1.0 + 0.5 + 0$ to create a numerator of 2.5. When divided by four (the number of components) and multiplied by 100, it generates an indicator of 62.5 for that month.

Assume that the following month stock prices fall 0.8%, money grows by 0.5%, orders pick up 0.5%, and consumer confidence grows 3.5%. Applying the appropriate values, the components would add to $0 + 1.0 + 1.0 + 1.0 = 3.0$. Divided by the number of components and multiplied by 100, this yields an index value of 75. The 20.0% increase in the index value means more components of the composite index are rising. Given this result, an analyst can be more confident that the higher composite index value actually represents broader movements in the economy. In general, a diffusion index does not reflect outliers in any component (like a straight arithmetic mean would do) but instead tries to capture the overall change common to all components.

5.2 Other Variables Used as Economic Indicators

In addition to this array of measures, public agencies and trade associations provide aggregate cyclical measures. These may include surveys of industrialists, bankers, labor associations, and households on the state of their finances, level of activity, and their confidence in the future. In the United States, for instance, the Federal Reserve polls its 12 branches for a qualitative report on business activity and expectations in their respective regions. It summarizes those findings in what it calls the "Beige Book" released every 6 weeks. Also in the United States, the Institute of Supply Management (ISM) polls its members to build indexes of manufacturing orders, output, employment, pricing, and comparable gauges for services. Over the last decade, so-called "purchasing managers" indexes along the lines of the ISM have been introduced in a wide range of countries, including Europe and China. Japan's industrial organization polls its members in a similar way and releases the findings in what is called the "Tankan Report." These diverse sources multiply within and across economies. Practitioners can use these sources to assess whether they confirm or contradict other more broad-based cyclical indicators, giving pause to, or greater confidence in, those earlier conclusions.

Using a statistical technique called "principal components analysis," the Federal Reserve Bank of Chicago computes the Chicago Fed National Activity Index (CFNAI). The CFNAI is computed using 85 monthly macroeconomic series. These series cover industrial production, personal income, capital utilization, employment by sectors, housing starts, retail sales, and so on. Principal components analysis "extracts" the

underlying trend that is common to most of these variables, thus distilling the essence of the US business cycle. Similarly, the Bank of Italy in conjunction with the Centre for Economic Policy Research (CEPR) produces the Euro–Coin statistic, which is also based on principal component analysis. There are more than one hundred macroeconomic series included in Euro–Coin. The Euro–Coin also includes data derived from surveys, interest rates, and other financial variables. Both CFNAI and Euro–Coin are freely available online.

EXAMPLE 13**Economic Indicators**

- 1 Leading, lagging, and coincident indicators are:
 - A the same worldwide.
 - B based on historical cyclical observations.
 - C based on Keynesian and/or Monetarist theory.
- 2 A diffusion index:
 - A measures growth.
 - B reflects the consensus change in economic indicators.
 - C is roughly analogous to the indexes used to measure industrial production.
- 3 In the morning business news, a financial analyst, Kevin Durbin, learned that average hourly earnings had increased last month. The most appropriate action for Durbin is to:
 - A call his clients to inform them of a good trading opportunity today.
 - B examine other leading indicators to see any confirmation of a possible turning point for the economy.
 - C use the news in his research report as a confirmation for his belief that the economy has recovered from a recession.
- 4 The following table shows the trends in various economic indicators in the two most recent quarters:

Economic Indicator	Trend
Interest rate spread between long-term government bonds and overnight borrowing rate	Narrowing
New orders for capital goods	Declining
Residential building permits	Declining
Employees on non-agricultural payrolls	Turned from rising to falling
Manufacturing and trade sales	Stable
Average duration of unemployment	Small decline
Change in unit labor costs	Rising

Given the information, this economy is *most likely* experiencing a:

- A continuing recession.
 - B peak in the business cycle.
 - C strong recovery out of a trough.
- 5 The indicator indexes created by various organizations or research agencies:

- A include only leading indicators to compute their value.
 - B are highly reliable signals on the phase of business cycles.
 - C evolve over time in terms of composition and computation formula.
- 6 Which one of the following trends in various economic indicators is *most* consistent with a recovery from a recession?
- A A declining inventory-to-sales ratio and stable industrial production index.
 - B A rising broad stock market index and unit labor costs turning from increasing to decreasing.
 - C A decrease in average weekly initial claims for unemployment insurance and an increase in aggregate real personal income.

Solution to 1:

B is correct. The recognition of economic indicators is based on empirical observations for an economy.

Solution to 2:

B is correct. The diffusion indexes are constructed to reflect the common trends embedded in the movements of all the indicators included in such an index.

Solution to 3:

B is correct. Financial analysts need to synthesize the information from various indicators in order to gather a reliable reading of the economic trends.

Solution to 4:

B is correct. The first three indicators are leading indicators and all of them are indicating an impending recession, which means the economy has reached the peak in this cycle. Non-agricultural payrolls and manufacturing and trade sales are coincident indicators. The trends in these two variables further indicate that the economy may begin to decline. The trends in the last two indicators—both lagging indicators—indicate that the economy may either continue to grow or it may be close to a peak. Aggregating the signals given by all three groups of economic indicators, it appears the economy may be near the peak of a business cycle.

Solution to 5:

C is correct. The indicator indexes are constantly updated for their composition and methodology based on the accumulation of empirical knowledge, and they can certainly include more than just leading indicators.

Solution to 6:

C is correct. The improving leading indicator, average weekly initial claims for unemployment insurance, and the improving coincident indicator, aggregate real personal income, are most consistent with an economic recovery. Even though a declining inventory-to-sales ratio, a lagging indicator, is consistent with an early recovery, the coincident indicator, the stable industrial production index, does not support that conclusion. Although a rising stock market index can signal economic expansion, the lagging indicator, the unit labor costs, has peaked, which is more consistent with a recession.

SUMMARY

This reading has summarized business cycle analysis. Among the points made are the following:

- Business cycles are a fundamental feature of market economies but their amplitude and length varies considerably.
- Business cycles have four phases: trough, expansion, peak, and contraction.
- Keynesian theories focus on fluctuations of aggregate demand (AD). If AD shifts left, Keynesians advocate government intervention to restore full employment and avoid a deflationary spiral. Monetarists argue that the timing of government policies is uncertain and it is generally better to let the economy find its new equilibrium unassisted, but ensure that the money supply is kept growing at an even pace.
- New Classical and Real Business Cycle (RBC) theories also consider fluctuations of aggregate supply (AS). If AS shifts left because of an input price increase or right because of a price decrease or technical progress, the economy will gradually converge to its new equilibrium. Government intervention is generally not necessary because it may exacerbate the fluctuation or delay the convergence to equilibrium. New Keynesians argue that frictions in the economy may prevent convergence and government policies may be needed.
- The demand for factors of production may change in the short run as a result of changes in all components of GDP: consumption (e.g., households worry about the future, save more, and thus shift AD left), investment (e.g., companies expect customers to increase demand and buy new equipment, thus shifting AD right; another example is that companies introduce new technologies, thus shifting long-term AS right), government (e.g., fiscal and monetary policies shift AD), and net exports (e.g., faster growth in other countries generates higher demand for the home country's products, thus shifting AD, or higher prices of imported inputs shift AS left). Any shifts in AD and AS will affect the demand for the factors of production (capital and labor) that are used to produce the new level of GDP.
- Unemployment has different subcategories. Frictional (people that are not working because they are in between jobs); structural (people that are unemployed because they do not have the skills required by the openings or reside far away from the jobs); discouraged workers are unemployed people who have given up looking for jobs because they do not believe they can find one (they are considered outside the labor force in unemployment statistics); and voluntarily unemployed are people who do not wish to work, for example because they are in school, retired early, or very rich (they are also considered outside the labor force in unemployment statistics).
- There are different types of inflation. Hyperinflation indicates a high (e.g., 100% annual) and increasing rate of inflation; deflation indicates a negative inflation rate (prices decrease); imported inflation is associated with increasing cost of inputs that come from abroad; demand inflation is caused by constraints in production that prevent companies from making as many goods as the market demands (it is sometimes called wartime inflation because in times of war, goods tend to be rationed).

- Economic indicators are statistics on macroeconomic variables that help in understanding which stage of the business cycle an economy is at. Of particular importance are the leading indicators, which suggest where the economy is likely to be in the near future. No economic indicator is perfect, and many of these statistics are subject to periodic revisions.
- Price levels are affected by real factors and monetary factors. Real factors include aggregate supply (an increase in supply leads to lower prices) and aggregate demand (an increase in demand leads to higher prices). Monetary factors include the supply of money (more money circulating, if the economy is in equilibrium, will lead to higher prices) and the velocity of money (higher velocity, if the economy is in equilibrium, will lead to higher prices).
- Inflation is measured by many indexes. Consumer price indexes reflect the prices of a basket of goods and services that is typically purchased by a normal household. Producer price indexes measure the cost of a basket of raw materials, intermediate inputs, and finished products. GDP deflators measure the price of the basket of goods and services produced within an economy in a given year. Core indexes exclude volatile items, such as agricultural products and energy, whose prices tend to vary more than other goods.

REFERENCES

- Burns, Wesley Clair, and Arthur F. Mitchell. 1946. *Measuring Business Cycles*. National Bureau of Economic Research.
- Christiano, Lawrence J., Martin Eichenbaum, and Charles L. Evans. 2005. "Nominal Rigidities and the Dynamic Effects of a Shock to Monetary Policy." *Journal of Political Economy*, vol. 113, no. 1 (February): 1–45.
- Friedman, Milton. 1968. "The Role of Monetary Policy." *American Economic Review*, vol. 58, no. 1 (March): 1–17.
- Greenspan, Alan. 2005. "Remarks on Central Banking." Speech given at the annual Kansas City Fed symposium in Jackson Hole, WY. Available online at <http://www.federalreserve.gov/boarddocs/speeches/2005/20050826/default.htm>.
- Mankiw, N. Gregory. 1989. "Real Business Cycles: A New Keynesian Perspective." *Journal of Economic Perspectives*, vol. 3, no. 3: 79–90.
- McCulley, Paul. 2009. "The Shadow Banking System and Hyman Minsky's Economic Journey." In *Insights into the Global Financial Crisis*. Edited by Laurence B. Siegel. Charlottesville, VA: Research Foundation of CFA Institute.
- Plosser, Charles I. 1989. "Understanding Real Business Cycles." *Journal of Economic Perspectives*, vol. 3, no. 3: 51–77.
- Reinhart, Carmen, and Kenneth Rogoff. 2009. *This Time Is Different: Eight Centuries of Financial Folly*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press.
- Romer, David. 2011. *Advanced Macroeconomics*, 4th edition. Columbus, OH: McGraw-Hill Education.
- Siegel, Lawrence Bed. . 2009. *Insights into the Global Financial Crisis*. Charlottesville, VA: Research Foundation of CFA Institute.
- The Conference Board. 2001. *Business Cycle Indicators Handbook*. New York: The Conference Board (June).
- Woodford, Michael. 2009. "Convergence in Macroeconomics: Elements of the New Synthesis." *American Economic Journal: Macroeconomics*, vol. 1, no. 1 (January): 267–279.

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

- 1 The characteristic business cycle patterns of trough, expansion, peak, and contraction are:
 - A periodic.
 - B recurrent.
 - C of similar duration.
- 2 During the contraction phase of a business cycle, it is *most likely* that:
 - A inflation indicators are stable.
 - B aggregate economic activity is decreasing.
 - C investor preference for government securities declines.
- 3 An economic peak is *most* closely associated with:
 - A accelerating inflation.
 - B stable unemployment.
 - C declining capital spending.
- 4 Based on typical labor utilization patterns across the business cycle, productivity (output per hours worked) is *most likely* to be highest:
 - A at the peak of a boom.
 - B into a maturing expansion
 - C at the bottom of a recession.
- 5 As the expansion phase of the business cycle advances from early stage to late stage, businesses *most likely* experience a decrease in:
 - A labor costs.
 - B capital investment.
 - C availability of qualified workers.
- 6 An analyst writes in an economic report that the current phase of the business cycle is characterized by accelerating inflationary pressures and borrowing by companies. The analyst is *most likely* referring to the:
 - A peak of the business cycle.
 - B contraction phase of the business cycle.
 - C early expansion phase of the business cycle.
- 7 In a recession, companies are *most likely* to adjust their stock of physical capital by:
 - A selling it at fire sale prices.
 - B not maintaining equipment.
 - C quickly canceling orders for new construction equipment.
- 8 The inventory/sales ratio is *most likely* to be rising:
 - A as a contraction unfolds.
 - B partially into a recovery.
 - C near the top of an economic cycle.
- 9 The Austrian economic school attributes the primary cause of the business cycle to:
 - A misguided government intervention.

- B the creative destruction of technological progress.
 - C sticky price and wage expectations that exaggerate trends.
- 10 A decrease in a country's total imports is *most likely* caused by:
- A an increase in the pace of domestic GDP growth.
 - B a cyclical downturn in the economies of primary trading partners.
 - C persistent currency depreciation relative to primary trading partners.
- 11 Monetarists favor a limited role for the government because they argue:
- A government policy responses may lag.
 - B firms take time to adjust to systemic shocks to the economy.
 - C resource use is efficient with marginal revenue and cost equal.
- 12 The discouraged worker category is defined to include people who:
- A are overqualified for their job.
 - B could look for a job but choose not to.
 - C currently look for work without finding it.
- 13 According to the Austrian school, the *most appropriate* government response to an economic recession is to:
- A allow the market to adjust naturally.
 - B maintain steady growth in the money supply.
 - C decrease the market rate of interest below its natural value.
- 14 A national government responds to a severe recession by funding numerous infrastructure projects using deficit spending. Which school of economic thought is *most* consistent with such action.
- A Keynesian
 - B Monetarist
 - C Neoclassical
- 15 According to Real Business Cycle models, an economic contraction is *most likely* caused by:
- A sticky wages.
 - B rising energy prices.
 - C a contraction in the money supply.
- 16 The unemployment rate is considered a lagging indicator because:
- A new job types must be defined to count their workers.
 - B multi-worker households change jobs at a slower pace.
 - C businesses are slow to hire and fire due to related costs.
- 17 The category of persons who would be *most likely* to be harmed by an increase in the rate of inflation is:
- A homeowners with fixed 30-year mortgages.
 - B retirees relying on a fixed annuity payment.
 - C workers employed under contracts with escalator clauses.
- 18 A decrease in both the labor force participation ratio and the unemployment rate is *most likely* caused by:
- A an increase in discouraged workers.
 - B an increase in underemployed workers.
 - C a decrease in voluntarily unemployed persons.

- 19 The term that describes when inflation declines but nonetheless remains at a positive level is:
- A deflation.
 - B stagflation.
 - C disinflation.
- 20 During an economic recovery, a lagging unemployment rate is *most likely* attributable to:
- A businesses quickly rehiring workers.
 - B new job seekers entering the labor force.
 - C underemployed workers transitioning to higher-paying jobs.
- 21 The treasury manager of a large company has recently left his position to accept a promotion with a competitor six months from now. A statistical employment survey conducted now should categorize the status of the former treasury manager as:
- A underemployed.
 - B voluntarily unemployed.
 - C frictionally unemployed.
- 22 Deflation is *most likely* to be associated with:
- A a shortage of government revenue.
 - B substantial macroeconomic contraction.
 - C explicit monetary policy to combat inflation.
- 23 The *least likely* consequence of a period of hyperinflation is the:
- A reduced velocity of money.
 - B increased supply of money.
 - C possibility of social unrest.

The following information relates to Questions 24–25

Exhibit 1 Consumption Baskets and Prices Over Two Months

Date	November 2010		December 2010	
	Quantity	Price	Quantity	Price
Sugar	70 kg	€ 0.90 / kg	120 kg	€ 1.00 / kg
Cotton	60 kg	€ 0.60 / kg	50 kg	€ 0.80 / kg

- 24 Assuming the base period for 2010 consumption is November and the initial price index is set at 100, then the inflation rate after calculating the December price index as a Laspeyres index is *closest* to:
- A 19.2%.
 - B 36.4%.
 - C 61.6%.

- 25 For the December consumption basket in Exhibit 1, the value of the Paasche index is *closest* to:
- A 116.
 - B 148.
 - C 160.
-
- 26 A central bank will *most likely* allow the economy to self-correct in periods of:
- A high inflation, fast economic growth, and low unemployment.
 - B low inflation, slow economic growth, and high unemployment.
 - C high inflation, slow economic growth, and high unemployment.
- 27 Disinflation is *best* described as a:
- A decline in price levels.
 - B negative inflation rate.
 - C decline in the inflation rate.
- 28 The characteristic of national consumer price indexes which is *most* typically shared across major economies worldwide is:
- A the geographic areas covered in their surveys.
 - B the weights they place on covered goods and services.
 - C their use in the determination of macroeconomic policy.
- 29 Of the following statements regarding the Producer Price Index (PPI), which is the *least likely*? The PPI:
- A can influence the future CPI.
 - B category weights can vary more widely than analogous CPI terms.
 - C is used more frequently than CPI as a benchmark for adjusting labor contract payments.

- 30 The following presents selected commodity price data for July–August 2015:

Goods	July 2015		August 2015	
	Quantity	Price	Quantity	Price
Milk	18	€1.00/L	17	€1.00/L
Orange juice	6	€2.00/L	4	€2.50/L

Given the consumption basket and prices presented, which type of price index will result in the highest calculated inflation rate over a two-month time period?

- A One that uses a current consumption basket
 - B One that uses a constant consumption basket
 - C One reflecting substitutions made by consumers over time
- 31 The inflation rate *most likely* relied on to determine public economic policy is:
- A core inflation.
 - B headline inflation.
 - C index of food and energy prices.
- 32 What is the *most* important effect of labor productivity in a cost-push inflation scenario?
- A Rising productivity indicates a strong economy and a bias towards inflation.

- B** The productivity level determines the economy's status relative to its "natural rate of unemployment."
- C** As productivity growth proportionately exceeds wage increases, product price increases are less likely.
- 33** Which of the following statements is the *best* description of the characteristics of economic indicators?
- A** Leading indicators are important because they track the entire economy.
- B** Lagging indicators in measuring past conditions do not require revisions.
- C** A combination of leading and coincident indicators can offer effective forecasts.
- 34** A product is part of a price index based on a fixed consumption basket. If, over time, the product's quality improves while its price stays constant, the measured inflation rate is *most likely*:
- A** unaffected.
- B** biased upward.
- C** biased downward.
- 35** A price index of goods and services that excludes food and energy is *most likely* used to calculate:
- A** core inflation.
- B** the GDP deflator.
- C** headline inflation.
- 36** When the spread between 10-year US Treasury yields and the federal funds rate narrows and at the same time the prime rate stays unchanged, this mix of indicators *most likely* forecasts future economic:
- A** growth.
- B** decline.
- C** stability.
- 37** Which of the following economic developments is *most likely* to cause cost-push inflation?
- A** Industrial capacity utilization rises to a very high level.
- B** Labor productivity increases faster than hourly labor costs.
- C** A shortage of trained workers emerges throughout the economy.
- 38** An economist expects the following:
- The decline in the unemployment rate will result in higher revenues for home retailers.
 - A tighter labor market will put upward pressure on wages, compelling home retailers to raise prices.
- Which type of inflation *best* corresponds to the economist's expectations?
- A** Stagflation
- B** Cost-push inflation
- C** Demand-pull inflation
- 39** If relative to prior values of their respective indicators, the inventory–sales ratio has risen, unit labor cost is stable, and real personal income has decreased, it is *most likely* that a peak in the business cycle:
- A** has occurred.
- B** is just about to occur.

- C will occur sometime into the future.
- 40 Current economic statistics indicating little change in services inflation, rising residential building permits, and increasing average duration of unemployment are *best* interpreted as:
- A conflicting evidence about the direction of economy.
 - B evidence that a cyclical upturn is expected to occur in the future.
 - C evidence that a cyclical downturn is expected to occur in the future.
- 41 When aggregate real personal income, industrial output, and the S&P 500 Index all increase in a given period, it is *most accurate* to conclude that a cyclical upturn is:
- A occurring.
 - B about to end.
 - C about to begin.
- 42 Which of the following is *most likely* to increase after an increase in aggregate real personal income?
- A Equity prices
 - B Building permits for new private housing units
 - C The ratio of consumer installment debt to income
- 43 Which of the following indicators is *most* appropriate in predicting a turning point in the economy?
- A The Industrial Production Index
 - B The average bank prime lending rate
 - C Average weekly hours, manufacturing

SOLUTIONS

- 1 B is correct. The stages of the business cycle occur repeatedly over time.
- 2 B is correct. The net trend during contraction is negative.
- 3 A is correct. Inflation is rising at peaks.
- 4 C is correct. At the end of a recession, firms will run “lean production” to generate maximum output with the fewest number of workers.
- 5 C is correct. When an economy’s expansion is well established, businesses often have difficulty finding qualified workers.
- 6 A is correct. Accelerating inflation and rapidly expanding capital expenditures typically characterize the peak of the business cycle. During such times, many businesses finance their capital expenditures with debt to expand their production capacity.
- 7 B is correct. Physical capital adjustments to downturns come through aging of equipment plus lack of maintenance.
- 8 C is correct. Near the top of a cycle, sales begin to slow before production is cut, leading to an increase in inventories relative to sales.
- 9 A is correct. Austrian economists see monetary policy mistakes as leading to booms and busts.
- 10 C is correct. When a nation’s currency depreciates, domestic goods seem cheaper than foreign goods, placing downward pressure on demand for imports. When the depreciation persists for some time, the country’s total imports are likely to decrease.
- 11 A is correct. Monetarists caution policy effects can occur long after the need for which they were implemented is no longer an issue.
- 12 B is correct. Discouraged workers are defined as persons who have stopped looking for work and are outside the labor force.
- 13 A is correct. Austrian economists advocate limited government intervention in the economy. They advise that the best thing to do in a recession is to allow the necessary market adjustment to take place.
- 14 A is correct. Keynesian economics is based on government intervention in the form of fiscal policy. The national government responds to the recession by using deficit spending to fund infrastructure projects.
- 15 B is correct. Real Business Cycle models conclude that expansions and contractions of the economy are responses to external shocks, such as supply shocks arising from advances in technology or changes in the relative prices of inputs (e.g., energy prices). An increase in energy prices shifts short-run aggregate supply to the left, resulting in higher prices and lower GDP.
- 16 C is correct. This effect makes unemployment rise more slowly as recessions start and fall more slowly as recoveries begin.
- 17 B is correct. With inflation, a fixed amount of money buys fewer goods and services, thus reducing purchasing power.
- 18 A is correct. Discouraged workers have given up seeking employment and are statistically outside the labor force. Therefore, an increase in discouraged workers will decrease the labor force and thus the labor participation ratio, which is the ratio of labor force to total working age population. Additionally, an increase in discouraged workers will decrease the unemployment rate because discouraged workers are not counted in the official unemployment rate.

- 19 C is correct. Disinflation is known as a reduction of inflation from a higher to lower, but still above zero, level.
- 20 B is correct. In an economic recovery, new job seekers return to the labor force, and because they seldom find work immediately, their return may initially raise the unemployment rate.
- 21 C is correct. Frictionally unemployed people are not working at the time of the employment survey but have recently left one job and are about to start another job. The frictionally unemployed have a job waiting for them and are not 100% unemployed, it is just that they have not started the new job yet. Although the treasury manager has left his current employment, he has accepted a new position at another firm starting in six months.
- 22 B is correct. Deflation is connected to a vicious cycle of reduced spending and higher unemployment.
- 23 A is correct. In hyperinflation, consumers accelerate their spending to beat prices increases and money circulates more rapidly.
- 24 A is correct. The Laspeyres index is calculated with these inputs:
- November consumption bundle: $70 \times 0.9 + 60 \times 0.6 = 99$
 - December consumption bundle: $70 \times 1 + 60 \times 0.8 = 118$
 - December price index: $(118/99) \times 100 = 119.19$
 - Inflation rate: $(119.19/100) - 1 = 0.1919 = 19.19\%$
- 25 A is correct. The Paasche index uses the current product mix of consumption combined with the variation of prices. So for December, its value is

$$(120 \times 1 + 50 \times 0.8)/(120 \times 0.9 + 50 \times 0.6) = (160/138) \times 100 = 115.9$$

- 26 C is correct. This scenario is often referred to as stagflation. Here, the economy is likely to be left to self-correct because no short-term economic policy is thought to be effective.
- 27 C is correct. Disinflation is a decline in the inflation rate—for example, from 7% to 4%.
- 28 C is correct. Central banks typically use consumer price indexes to monitor inflation and evaluate their monetary policies.
- 29 C is correct. The CPI is typically used for this purpose, while the PPI is more closely connected to business contracts.
- 30 B is correct. The inflation rate calculated by using a constant consumption basket (the Laspeyres index) is 10%, derived as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{July 2015 consumption basket} &= (18 \times \text{€}1) + (6 \times \text{€}2) = \text{€}30 \\ \text{August 2015 consumption basket} &= (18 \times \text{€}1) + (6 \times \text{€}2.5) = \text{€}33 \\ \text{Value of the Laspeyres index } (I_L) &= (\text{€}33/\text{€}30) \times 100 = \text{€}110 \\ \text{Inflation rate} &= (110/100) - 1 = 0.10 = 10\% \end{aligned}$$

The inflation rate calculated using a current consumption basket (the Paasche index) is 8%, derived as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{July 2015 consumption basket} &= (17 \times \text{€}1) + (4 \times \text{€}2) = \text{€}25 \\ \text{August 2015 consumption basket} &= (17 \times \text{€}1) + (4 \times \text{€}2.5) = \text{€}27 \\ \text{Value of the Paasche index } (I_P) &= (\text{€}27/\text{€}25) \times 100 = \text{€}108 \\ \text{Inflation rate} &= (108/100) - 1 = 0.08 = 8\% \end{aligned}$$

The inflation rate calculated by “chaining” the monthly prices of consumption baskets as they change over time (the Fisher index) is derived as follows:

$$\text{Value of the Fisher index} = \sqrt{I_P - I_L}$$

$$\text{Value of the Fisher Index} = \sqrt{\text{€}110 \times \text{€}108} = \text{€}108.99$$

$$\text{Inflation rate} = (108.99/100) - 1 = 0.0899 = 8.99\%$$

- 31** A is correct. Core inflation is less volatile since it excludes food and energy prices and therefore will not be as likely to lead to policy overreactions when serving as a target.
- 32** C is correct. For productivity, or output per hour, the faster that it can grow, the further that wages can rise without putting pressure on business costs per unit of output.
- 33** C is correct. While no single indicator is definitive, a mix of them—which can be affected by various economic determinants—can offer the strongest signal of performance.
- 34** B is correct. As the quality of a product improves, it satisfies people’s needs and wants better. The measured inflation rate is skewed higher than otherwise unless an adjustment is made for the increase in the quality of the good. Even if the good’s price had increased over time, the improvements in quality would still bias the measured inflation rate upward.
- 35** A is correct. A price index of goods and services that excludes food and energy is used to calculate core inflation. Policymakers often use core inflation when reading the trend in the economy and making economic policies. The reason is because policymakers are trying to avoid overreaction to short-term fluctuations in prices as a result of short-term changes in supply and demand.
- 36** B is correct. The narrowing spread of this leading indicator foretells a drop in short-term rates and a fall in economic activity. The prime rate is a lagging indicator and typically moves after the economy turns.
- 37** C is correct. Cost-push inflation occurs when rising costs compel businesses to raise prices generally. A shortage of trained workers leads to wage pressures, and even if such shortages impact only certain sectors of the economy, the economy overall may experience inflationary pressure.
- 38** B is correct. Cost-push inflation refers to the situation in which rising costs, usually wages, compel businesses to raise prices.
- 39** A is correct. Both inventory–sales and unit labor costs are lagging indicators that decline somewhat after a peak. Real personal income is a coincident indicator that by its decline shows a slowdown in business activity.
- 40** B is correct. Rising building permits—a leading indicator—indicates that an upturn is expected to occur or continue. Increasing average duration of unemployment—a lagging indicator—indicates that a downturn has occurred, whereas the lack of any change in services inflation—also a lagging indicator—is neither negative nor positive for the direction of the economy. Taken together, these statistics indicate that a cyclical upturn may be expected to occur.
- 41** A is correct. Aggregate real personal income and industrial output are coincident indicators, whereas the S&P 500 is a leading indicator. An increase in aggregate personal income and industrial output signals that an expansion is occurring, whereas an increase in the S&P 500 signals that an expansion will occur or is expected to continue. Taken together, these statistics indicate that a cyclical upturn is occurring.

- 42 C is correct. Aggregate real personal income is a coincident indicator of the business cycle and the ratio of consumer installment debt to income is a lagging indicator. Increases in the ratio of consumer installment debt follows increases in average aggregate income during the typical business cycle.
- 43 C is correct. Leading economic indicators have turning points that usually precede those of the overall economy. Average weekly hours, manufacturing is a leading economic indicator. The Industrial Production Index is a coincident economic indicator, and the average bank prime lending rate is a lagging economic indicator.

ECONOMICS STUDY SESSION

5

Economics (2)

This study session begins with monetary and fiscal policy, including their use by central banks and governments. Economics in a global context is then introduced. Next follows a discussion on the flows of goods and services and physical and financial capital that occur across national borders. Highlighted in the discussion are the relationships between different types of flows and the benefits of trade to trade partners. Finally, given that operations and investments in global markets involve foreign exchange (currency) risk, the session concludes with an overview of currency market fundamentals.

READING ASSIGNMENTS

- | | |
|-------------------|---|
| Reading 18 | Monetary and Fiscal Policy
by Andrew Clare, PhD, and Stephen Thomas, PhD |
| Reading 19 | International Trade and Capital Flows
by Usha Nair-Reichert, PhD, and Daniel Robert Witschi,
PhD, CFA |
| Reading 20 | Currency Exchange Rates
by William A. Barker, PhD, CFA, Paul D. McNelis, and
Jerry Nickelsburg |

READING

18

Monetary and Fiscal Policy

by Andrew Clare, PhD, and Stephen Thomas, PhD

Andrew Clare, PhD, and Stephen Thomas, PhD, are at Cass Business School (United Kingdom).

LEARNING OUTCOMES

<i>Mastery</i>	<i>The candidate should be able to:</i>
<input type="checkbox"/>	a. compare monetary and fiscal policy;
<input type="checkbox"/>	b. describe functions and definitions of money;
<input type="checkbox"/>	c. explain the money creation process;
<input type="checkbox"/>	d. describe theories of the demand for and supply of money;
<input type="checkbox"/>	e. describe the Fisher effect;
<input type="checkbox"/>	f. describe roles and objectives of central banks;
<input type="checkbox"/>	g. contrast the costs of expected and unexpected inflation;
<input type="checkbox"/>	h. describe tools used to implement monetary policy;
<input type="checkbox"/>	i. describe the monetary transmission mechanism;
<input type="checkbox"/>	j. describe qualities of effective central banks;
<input type="checkbox"/>	k. explain the relationships between monetary policy and economic growth, inflation, interest, and exchange rates;
<input type="checkbox"/>	l. contrast the use of inflation, interest rate, and exchange rate targeting by central banks;
<input type="checkbox"/>	m. determine whether a monetary policy is expansionary or contractionary;
<input type="checkbox"/>	n. describe limitations of monetary policy;
<input type="checkbox"/>	o. describe roles and objectives of fiscal policy;
<input type="checkbox"/>	p. describe tools of fiscal policy, including their advantages and disadvantages;
<input type="checkbox"/>	q. describe the arguments about whether the size of a national debt relative to GDP matters;

(continued)

LEARNING OUTCOMES

<i>Mastery</i>	<i>The candidate should be able to:</i>
<input type="checkbox"/>	r. explain the implementation of fiscal policy and difficulties of implementation;
<input type="checkbox"/>	s. determine whether a fiscal policy is expansionary or contractionary;
<input type="checkbox"/>	t. explain the interaction of monetary and fiscal policy.

1**INTRODUCTION**

The economic decisions of households can have a significant impact on an economy. For example, a decision on the part of households to consume more and to save less can lead to an increase in employment, investment, and ultimately profits. Equally, the investment decisions made by corporations can have an important impact on the real economy and on corporate profits. But individual corporations can rarely affect large economies on their own; the decisions of a single household concerning consumption will have a negligible impact on the wider economy.

By contrast, the decisions made by governments can have an enormous impact on even the largest and most developed of economies for two main reasons. First, the public sectors of most developed economies normally employ a significant proportion of the population, and they are usually responsible for a significant proportion of spending in an economy. Second, governments are also the largest borrowers in world debt markets. Exhibit 1 gives some idea of the scale of government borrowing and spending.

Exhibit 1**Panel A. Central Government Debt to GDP, 2009**

Total Central Government Debt as % of GDP

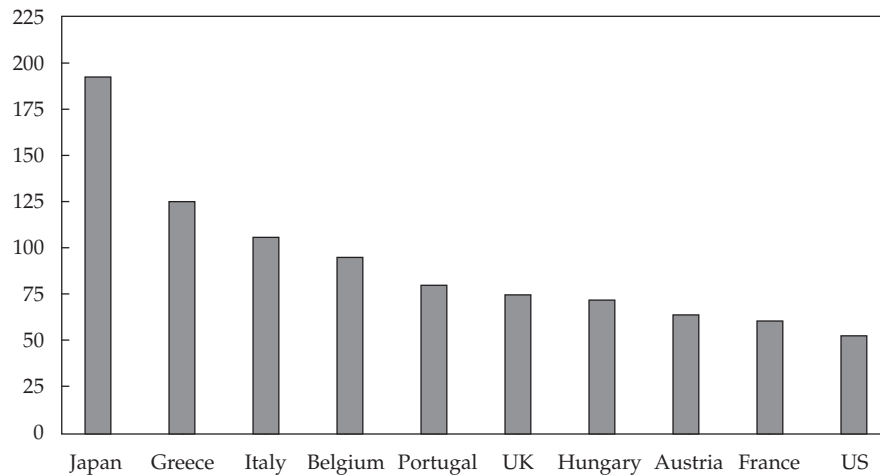


Exhibit 1 (Continued)

Panel B. Public Sector Spending to GDP, 2009

Government Consumption as % of GDP



Note: All data are for 2009.

Source: Thomson Financial.

Government policy is ultimately expressed through its borrowing and spending activities. In this reading, we identify and discuss two types of government policy that can affect the macroeconomy and financial markets: monetary policy and fiscal policy.

Monetary policy refers to central bank activities that are directed toward influencing the quantity of money and credit in an economy.¹ By contrast, **fiscal policy** refers to the government's decisions about taxation and spending. Both monetary and fiscal policies are used to regulate economic activity over time. They can be used to accelerate growth when an economy starts to slow or to moderate growth and activity when an economy starts to overheat. In addition, fiscal policy can be used to redistribute income and wealth.

The overarching goal of both monetary and fiscal policy is normally the creation of an economic environment where growth is stable and positive and inflation is stable and low. Crucially, the aim is therefore to steer the underlying economy so that it does not experience economic booms that may be followed by extended periods of low or negative growth and high levels of unemployment. In such a stable economic environment, householders can feel secure in their consumption and saving decisions, while corporations can concentrate on their investment decisions, on making their regular coupon payments to their bond holders and on making profits for their shareholders.

The challenges to achieving this overarching goal are many. Not only are economies frequently buffeted by shocks (such as oil price jumps), but some economists believe that natural cycles in the economy also exist. Moreover, there are plenty of examples from history where government policies—either monetary, fiscal, or both—have exacerbated an economic expansion that eventually led to damaging consequences for the real economy, for financial markets, and for investors.

¹ Central banks can implement monetary policy almost completely independent of government interference and influence at one end of the scale, or simply as the agent of the government at the other end of the scale.

The balance of the reading is organized as follows. Section 2 provides an introduction to monetary policy and related topics. Section 3 presents fiscal policy. The interactions between monetary policy and fiscal policy are the subject of Section 4. A summary and practice problems conclude the reading.

2

MONETARY POLICY

As stated above, monetary policy refers to government or central bank activities that are directed toward influencing the quantity of money and credit in an economy. Before we can begin to understand how monetary policy is implemented, we must examine the functions and role of **money**. We can then explore the special role that **central banks** play in today's economies.

EXAMPLE 1

Monetary and Fiscal Policy

- 1 Which of the following statements *best* describes monetary policy?
Monetary policy:
 - A involves the setting of medium-term targets for broad money aggregates.
 - B involves the manipulation by a central bank of the government's budget deficit.
 - C seeks to influence the macro economy by influencing the quantity of money and credit in the economy.
- 2 Which of the following statements *best* describes fiscal policy? Fiscal policy:
 - A is used by governments to redistribute wealth and incomes.
 - B is the attempt by governments to balance their budgets from one year to the next.
 - C involves the use of government spending and taxation to influence economy activity.

Solution to 1:

C is correct. Choice A is incorrect because, although the setting of targets for monetary aggregates is a possible *tool* of monetary policy, monetary policy itself is concerned with influencing the overall, or macro, economy.

Solution to 2:

C is correct. Note that governments may wish to use fiscal policy to redistribute incomes and balance their budgets, but the overriding goal of fiscal policy is usually to influence a broader range of economic activity.

2.1 Money

To understand the nature, role, and development of money in modern economies, it is useful to think about a world without money—where to purchase any good or service, an individual would have to “pay” with another good or service. An economy where such economic agents as households, corporations, and even governments pay

for goods and services in this way is known as a **barter economy**. There are many drawbacks to such an economy. First, the exchange of goods for other goods (or services) would require both economic agents in the transaction to want what the other is selling. This means that there has to be a **double coincidence of wants**. It might also be impossible to undertake transactions where the goods are indivisible—that is, where one agent wishes to buy a certain amount of another’s goods, but that agent only has one indivisible unit of another good that is worth more than the good that the agent is trying to buy. Another problem occurs if economic agents do not wish to exchange all of their goods on other goods and services. This may not be a problem, however, when the goods they have to sell can be stored safely so that they retain their value for the future. But if these goods are perishable, they will not be able to store value for their owner. Finally, in a barter economy, there are many measures of value: the price of oranges in terms of pears; of pears in terms of bread; of bread in terms of milk; or of milk in terms of oranges. A barter economy has no common measure of value that would make multiple transactions simple.

2.1.1 *The Functions of Money*

The most generic definition of money is that it is any generally accepted medium of exchange. A **medium of exchange** is any asset that can be used to purchase goods and services or to repay debts. Money can thus eliminate the debilitating double coincidence of the “wants” problem that exists in a barter economy. When this medium of exchange exists, a farmer wishing to sell wheat for wine does not need to identify a wine producer in search of wheat. Instead, he can sell wheat to those who want wheat in exchange for money. The farmer can then exchange this money for wine with a wine producer, who in turn can exchange that money for the goods or services that she wants.

However, for money to act as this liberating medium of exchange, it must possess certain qualities. It must:

- i. be readily acceptable,
- ii. have a known value,
- iii. be easily divisible,
- iv. have a high value relative to its weight, and
- v. be difficult to counterfeit.

Qualities (i) and (ii) are closely related; the medium of exchange will only be acceptable if it has a known value. If the medium of exchange has quality (iii), then it can be used to purchase items of relatively little value and of relatively large value with equal ease. Having a high value relative to its weight is a practical convenience, meaning that people can carry around sufficient wealth for their transaction needs. Finally, if the medium of exchange can be counterfeited easily, then it would soon cease to have a value and would not be readily acceptable as a means of effecting transactions; in other words, it would not satisfy qualities (i) and (ii).

Given the qualities that money needs to have, it is clear why precious metals (particularly gold and silver) often fulfilled the role of medium of exchange in early societies, and as recently as the early part of the twentieth century. Precious metals were acceptable as a medium of exchange because they had a known value, were easily divisible, had a high value relative to their weight, and could not be easily counterfeited.

Thus, precious metals were capable of acting as a medium of exchange. But they also fulfilled two other useful functions that are essential for the characteristics of money. In a barter economy, it is difficult to store wealth from one year to the next when one’s produce is perishable, or indeed, if it requires large warehouses in which to store it. Because precious metals like gold had a high value relative to their bulk and were not perishable, they could act as a **store of wealth**. However, their ability to act

as a store of wealth not only depended on the fact that they did not perish physically over time, but also on the belief that others would always value precious metals. The value from year to year of precious metals depended on people's continued demand for them in ornaments, jewellery, and so on. For example, people were willing to use gold as a store of wealth because they believed that it would remain highly valued. However, if gold became less valuable to people relative to other goods and services year after year it would not be able to fulfill its role as a **store of value**, and as such might also lose its status as a medium of exchange.

Another important characteristic of money is that it can be used as a universal unit of account. As such, it can create a single unitary **measure of value** for all goods and services. In an economy where gold and silver are the accepted medium of exchange, all prices, debts, and wealth can be recorded in terms of their gold or silver coin exchange value. Money, in its role as a unit of account, drastically reduces the number of prices in an economy compared to barter, which requires that prices be established for a good in terms of all other goods for which it might be exchanged.

In summary, money fulfills three important functions, it:

- acts as a medium of exchange;
- provides individuals with a way of storing wealth; and
- provides society with a convenient measure of value and unit of account.

2.1.2 *Paper Money and the Money Creation Process*

Although precious metals like gold and silver fulfilled the required functions of money relatively well for many years, and although carrying gold coins around was easier than carrying around one's physical produce, it was not necessarily a safe way to conduct business.

A crucial development in the history of money was the **promissory note**. The process began when individuals began leaving their excess gold with goldsmiths, who would look after it for them. In turn the goldsmiths would give the depositors a receipt, stating how much gold they had deposited. Eventually these receipts were traded directly for goods and services, rather than there being a physical transfer of gold from the goods buyer to the goods seller. Of course, both the buyer and seller had to trust the goldsmith because the goldsmith had all the gold and the goldsmith's customers had only pieces of paper. These depository receipts represented a promise to pay a certain amount of gold on demand. This paper money therefore became a proxy for the precious metals on which they were based, that is, they were directly related to a physical commodity. Many of these early goldsmiths evolved into banks, taking in excess wealth and in turn issuing promissory notes that could be used in commerce.

In taking in other people's gold and issuing depository receipts and later promissory notes, it became clear to the goldsmiths and early banks that not all the gold that they held in their vaults would be withdrawn at any one time. Individuals were willing to buy and sell goods and services with the promissory notes, but the majority of the gold that backed the notes just sat in the vaults—although its ownership would change with the flow of commerce over time. A certain proportion of the gold that was not being withdrawn and used directly for commerce could therefore be lent to others at a rate of interest. By doing this, the early banks created money.

The process of **money creation** is a crucial concept for understanding the role that money plays in an economy. Its potency depends on the amount of money that banks keep in reserve to meet the withdrawals of its customers. This practice of lending customers' money to others on the assumption that not all customers will want all of their money back at any one time is known as **fractional reserve banking**.

We can illustrate how it works through a simple example. Suppose that the bankers in an economy come to the view that they need to retain only 10 percent of any money deposited with them. This is known as the **reserve requirement**.² Now consider what happens when a customer deposits €100 in the First Bank of Nations. This deposit changes the balance sheet of First Bank of Nations, as shown in Exhibit 2, and it represents a liability to the bank because it is effectively loaned to the bank by the customer. By lending 90 percent of this deposit to another customer the bank has two types of assets: (1) the bank's reserves of €10, and (2) the loan equivalent to €90. Notice that the balance sheet still balances; €100 worth of assets and €100 worth of liabilities are on the balance sheet.

Now suppose that the recipient of the loan of €90 uses this money to purchase some goods of this value and the seller of the goods deposits this €90 in another bank, the Second Bank of Nations. The Second Bank of Nations goes through the same process; it retains €9 in reserve and loans 90 percent of the deposit (€81) to another customer. This customer in turn spends €81 on some goods or services. The recipient of this money deposits it at the Third Bank of Nations, and so on. This example shows how money is created when a bank makes a loan.

Exhibit 2 Money Creation via Fractional Reserve Banking

First Bank of Nations

Assets		Liabilities	
Reserves	€10	Deposits	€100
Loans	€90		

Second Bank of Nations

Assets		Liabilities	
Reserves	€9	Deposits	€90
Loans	€81		

Third Bank of Nations

Assets		Liabilities	
Reserves	€8.1	Deposits	€81
Loans	€72.9		

This process continues until there is no more money left to be deposited and loaned out. The total amount of money 'created' from this one deposit of €100 can be calculated as:

$$\text{New deposit/Reserve requirement} = €100/0.10 = €1,000 \quad (1)$$

It is the sum of all the deposits now in the banking system. You should also note that the original deposit of €100, via the practice of reserve banking, was the catalyst for €1,000 worth of economic transactions. That is not to say that economic growth would be zero without this process, but instead that it can be an important component in economic activity.

² This is an example of a *voluntary* reserve requirement because it is self-imposed.

The amount of money that the banking system creates through the practice of fractional reserve banking is a function of 1 divided by the reserve requirement, a quantity known as the **money multiplier**.³ In the case just examined, the money multiplier is $1/0.10 = 10$. Equation 1 implies that the smaller the reserve requirement, the greater the money multiplier effect.

In our simplistic example, we assumed that the banks themselves set their own reserve requirements. However, in some economies, the central bank sets the reserve requirement, which is a potential means of affecting money growth. In any case, a prudent bank would be wise to have sufficient reserves such that the withdrawal demands of their depositors can be met in stressful economic and credit market conditions.

Later, when we discuss central banks and central bank policy, we will see how central banks can use the mechanism just described to affect the money supply. Specifically, the central bank could, by purchasing €100 in government securities credited to the bank account of the seller, seek to initiate an increase in the money supply. The central bank may also lend reserves directly to banks, creating excess reserves (relative to any imposed or self-imposed reserve requirement) that can support new loans and money expansion.

EXAMPLE 2

Money and Money Creation

- 1 To fulfill its role as a medium of exchange, money should:
 - A be a conservative investment.
 - B have a low value relative to its weight.
 - C be easily divisible and a good store of value.
- 2 If the reserve requirement for banks in an economy is 5 percent, how much money could be created with the deposit of an additional £100 into a deposit account?
 - A £500
 - B £1,900
 - C £2,000
- 3 Which of the following functions does money normally fulfill for a society? It:
 - A acts as a medium of exchange only.
 - B provides economic agents with a means of storing wealth only.
 - C provides society with a unit of account, acts as a medium of exchange, and acts as a store of wealth.

Solution to 1:

C is correct. Money needs to have a known value and be easily divisible. It should also be readily acceptable, difficult to counterfeit, and have a high value relative to its weight.

³ This quantity, known as the simple money multiplier, represents a maximum expansion. To the extent that banks hold excess reserves or that money loaned out is not re-deposited, the money expansion would be less. More complex multipliers incorporating such factors are developed in more advanced texts.

Solution to 2:

C is correct. To calculate the increase in money from an additional deposit in the banking system, use the following expression: new deposit/reserve requirement.

Solution to 3:

C is correct. Money needs to be able to fulfill the functions of acting as a unit of account, a medium of exchange, and a means of storing wealth.

2.1.3 Definitions of Money

The process of money creation raises a fundamental issue: What is money? In an economy with money but without promissory notes and fractional reserve banking, money is relatively easy to define: Money is the total amount of gold and silver coins in circulation, or their equivalent. The money creation process above, however, indicates that a broader definition of money might encompass all the notes and coins in circulation *plus* all bank deposits.

More generally, we might define money as any medium that can be used to purchase goods and services. Notes and coins can be used to fulfill this purpose, and yet such currency is not the only means of purchasing goods and services. Personal cheques can be written based on a bank chequing account, while debit cards can be used for the same purpose. But what about time deposits or savings accounts? Nowadays transfers can be made relatively easily from a savings account to a current account; therefore, these savings accounts might also be considered as part of the stock of money. Credit cards are also used to pay for goods and services; however, there is an important difference between credit card payments and those made by cheques and debit cards. Unlike a cheque or debit card payment, a credit card payment involves a deferred payment. Basically, the greater the complexity of any financial system, the harder it is to define money.

The monetary authorities in most modern economies produce a range of measures of money (see Exhibit 3). But generally speaking, the money stock consists of notes and coins in circulation, plus the deposits in banks and other financial institutions that can be readily used to make purchases of goods and services in the economy. In this regard, economists often speak of the rate of growth of **narrow money** and/or **broad money**. By narrow money, they generally mean the notes and coins in circulation in an economy, plus other very highly liquid deposits. Broad money encompasses narrow money but also includes the entire range of liquid assets that can be used to make purchases.

Because financial systems, practice, and institutions vary from economy to economy, so do definitions of money; thus, it is difficult to make international comparisons. Still, most central banks produce both a narrow and broad measure of money, plus some intermediate ones too. Exhibit 3 shows the money definitions in four economies.

Exhibit 3 Definitions of Money**Money Measures in the United States**

The US Federal Reserve produces two measures of money. The first is M1, which comprises notes and coins in circulation, travelers' cheques of non-bank issuers, demand deposits at commercial banks, plus other deposits on which cheques can be written. M2 is the broadest measure of money currently produced by the Federal Reserve and includes M1, plus savings and money market deposits, time deposit accounts of less than \$100,000, plus other balances in retail money market and mutual funds.

(continued)

Exhibit 3 (Continued)**Money Measures in the Eurozone**

The European Central Bank (ECB) produces three measures of euro area money supply. The narrowest is M1. M1 comprises notes and coins in circulation, plus all overnight deposits. M2 is a broader definition of euro area money that includes M1, plus deposits redeemable with notice up to three months and deposits with maturity up to two years. Finally, the euro area's broadest definition of money is M3, which includes M2, plus repurchase agreements, money market fund units, and debt securities with up to two years maturity.

Money Measures in Japan

The Bank of Japan calculates three measures of money. M1 is the narrowest measure and consists of cash currency in circulation. M2 incorporates M1 but also includes certificates of deposit (CDs). The broadest measure, M3, incorporates M2, plus deposits held at post offices, plus other savings and deposits with financial institutions. There is also a "broad measure of liquidity" that encompasses M3 as well as a range of other liquid assets, such as government bonds and commercial paper.

Money Measures in the United Kingdom

The United Kingdom produces a set of four measures of the money stock. M0 is the narrowest measure and comprises notes and coins held outside the Bank of England, plus Bankers' deposits at the Bank of England. M2 includes M0, plus (effectively) all retail bank deposits. M4 includes M2, plus wholesale bank and building society deposits and also certificates of deposit. Finally, the Bank of England produces another measure called M3H, which is a measure created to be comparable with money definitions in the EU (see above). M3H includes M4, plus UK residents' and corporations' foreign currency deposits in banks and building societies.

2.1.4 The Quantity Theory of Money

The previous section of this reading shows that there are many definitions of money. In this section, we explore the important relationship between money and the price level. This relationship is best expressed in the **quantity theory of money**, which asserts that total spending (in money terms) is proportional to the quantity of money. The theory can be explained in terms of Equation 2, known as the **quantity equation of exchange**:

$$M \times V = P \times Y \quad (2)$$

where M is the quantity of money, V is the velocity of circulation of money (the average number of times in a given period that a unit of currency changes hands), P is the average price level, and Y is real output. The expression is really just an accounting identity. Effectively, it says that over a given period, the amount of money used to purchase all goods and services in an economy, $M \times V$, is equal to monetary value of this output, $P \times Y$. If the velocity of money is approximately constant—which is an assumption of quantity theory—then spending $P \times Y$ is approximately proportional to M . The quantity equation can also be used to explain a consequence of **money neutrality**. If money neutrality holds, then an increase in the money supply, M , will

not affect Y , real output, or the speed with which money changed hands, V , because if real output is unaffected, there would be no need for money to change hands more rapidly.⁴ However, it will cause the aggregate price level, P , to rise.

The simple quantity theory gave rise to the equally simple idea that the price level, or at least the rate of inflation, could be controlled by manipulating the rate of growth of the money supply. Economists who believe this are referred to as **monetarists**. They argue that there is a causal relationship running from money growth to inflation. In the past, some governments have tried to apply this logic in their efforts to control inflation, most notably and unsuccessfully the United Kingdom's government in 1979 (see Example 5). However, it is possible that causality runs the other way—that is, from real activity to the money supply. This means that the quantity of money in circulation is determined by the level of economic activity, rather than vice versa.

2.1.5 The Demand for Money

The amount of wealth that the citizens of an economy choose to hold in the form of money—as opposed to bonds or equities—is known as the demand for money. There are three basic motives for holding money:

- transactions-related;
- precautionary; and
- speculative.

Money balances that are held to finance transactions are referred to as **transactions money balances**. The size of the transactions balances will tend to increase with the average value of transactions in an economy. Generally speaking, as gross domestic product (GDP) grows over time, transactions balances will also tend to grow; however, the ratio of transactions balances to GDP remains fairly stable over time.

As the name suggests, **precautionary money balances** are held to provide a buffer against unforeseen events that might require money. These balances will tend to be larger for individuals or organizations that enter into a high level of transactions over time. In other words, a precautionary buffer of \$100 for a company that regularly enters into transactions worth millions of dollars might be considered rather small. When we extend this logic to the overall economy, we can see that these precautionary balances will also tend to rise with the volume and value of transactions in the economy, and therefore, GDP as well.

Finally, the **speculative demand for money** (sometimes called the **portfolio demand for money**) relates to the demand to hold speculative money balances based on the potential opportunities or risks that are inherent in other financial instruments (e.g., bonds). **Speculative money balances** consist of monies held in anticipation that other assets will decline in value. But in choosing to hold speculative money balances rather than bonds, investors give up the return that could be earned from the bond or other financial assets. Therefore, the speculative demand for money will tend to fall as the returns available on other financial assets rises. However, it will tend to rise as the perceived risk in other financial instruments rises. In equilibrium, individuals will tend to increase their holdings of money relative to riskier assets until the marginal benefit of having a lower risk portfolio of wealth is equal to the marginal cost of giving up a unit of expected return on these riskier assets. In aggregate then, speculative balances will tend to be inversely related to the expected return on other financial assets and directly related to the perceived risk of other financial assets.

⁴ Note that the full version of the quantity theory of money uses the symbol T rather than Y to indicate transactions because money is used not just for buying goods and services but also for financial transactions. We will return to this point in the discussion of quantitative easing.

EXAMPLE 3**Money**

- 1 The transactions demand for money refers to the demand to hold money:
 - A as a buffer against unforeseen events.
 - B to use in the purchase of goods and services.
 - C based on the opportunity or risks available on other financial instruments.
- 2 The speculative demand for money will tend to:
 - A fall as the perceived risk on other assets rises.
 - B rise as the expected returns on other assets fall.
 - C be inversely related to the transactions demand for money.
- 3 What is the difference between narrow and broad money? Broad money:
 - A is limited to those liquid assets most commonly used to make purchases.
 - B can be used to purchase a wider range of goods and services than narrow money.
 - C encompasses narrow money and refers to the stock of the entire range of liquid assets that can be used to make purchases.

Solution to 1:

B is correct. The transactions demand for money refers to the amount of money that economic agents wish to hold to pay for goods and services.

Solution to 2:

B is correct. If the expected return on other assets falls, then the opportunity cost of holding money also falls and can, in turn, lead to an increase in the speculative demand for money.

Solution to 3:

C is correct. This is the definition of broad money. Broad money encompasses narrow money.

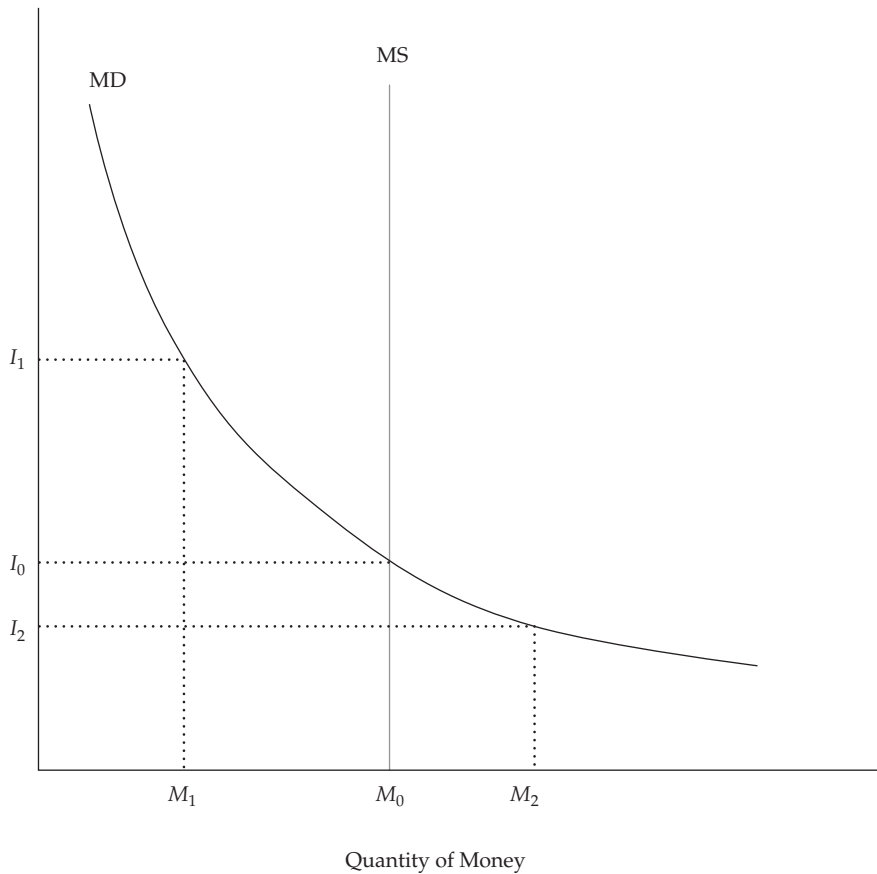
2.1.6 The Supply and Demand for Money

We have now discussed definitions of money, its relationship with the aggregate price level, and the demand for it. We now discuss the interaction between the supply of and demand for money.

As with most other markets, the supply of money and the demand to hold it will interact to produce an equilibrium price for money. In this market, the price of money is the nominal interest rate that could be earned by lending it to others. Exhibit 4 shows the supply and demand curves for money. The vertical scale represents the rate of interest; the horizontal scale plots the quantity of nominal money in the economy. The supply curve (MS) is vertical because we assume that there is a fixed nominal amount of money circulating at any one time. The demand curve (MD) is downward sloping because as interest rates rise, the speculative demand for money falls. The supply and demand for money are both satisfied at an equilibrium interest rate of I_0 . I_0 is the rate of interest at which no excess money balances exist.

Exhibit 4 The Supply and Demand for Money

Nominal Rate of Interest



To see why I_0 is the equilibrium rate of interest where there are no excess money balances, consider the following. If the interest rate on bonds were I_1 instead of I_0 , there would be excess supply of money ($M_0 - M_1$). Economic agents would seek to buy bonds with their excess money balances, which would force the price of bonds up and the interest rate back down to I_0 . Similarly, if bonds offered a rate of interest, I_2 , there would be an excess demand for money ($M_2 - M_0$). Corporations and individuals would seek to sell bonds so that individuals could increase their money holdings, but in doing so, the price of bonds would fall and the interest rate offered on them would rise until it reached I_0 . Interest rates effectively adjust to bring the market into equilibrium (“clear the market”). In this simple example, we have also assumed that the supply of money and bonds is fixed as economic agents readjust their holdings. In practice, this may not be true, but the dynamics of the adjustment process described here essentially still hold.

Exhibit 4 also reemphasises the relationship between the supply of money and the aggregate price level, which we first encountered when discussing the quantity theory of money. Suppose that the central bank increases the supply of money from M_0 to M_2 , so that the vertical supply curve shifts to the right. Because the increase in the supply of money makes it more plentiful and hence less valuable, its price (the interest rate) falls as the price level rises.

This all sounds very simple, but in practice the effects of an increase in the money supply are more complex. The initial increase in the money supply will create excess supply of cash. People and companies could get rid of the excess by loaning the money

to others by buying bonds, as implied above, but they might also deposit it in a bank or simply use it to buy goods and services. But an economy's capacity to produce goods and services depends on the availability of real things: notably, natural resources, capital, and labour—that is, factors of production supplied either directly or indirectly by households. Increasing the money supply does not change the availability of these real things. Thus, some economists believe that the long-run impact of an exogenous increase in the supply of money is an increase in the aggregate price level.

This phenomenon—whereby an increase in the money supply is thought in the long run simply to lead to an increase in the price level while leaving real variables like output and employment unaffected—is known as **money neutrality**. To see why in the long run money should have a neutral effect on real things, consider the following simple example.

Suppose the government declared today that 1kg would henceforth be referred to as 2kg and that 1.5kg would be referred to as 3kg. In other words, suppose that they halved the “value” of a kilogram. Would anything real have changed? A 1kg bag of sugar would not have changed physically, although it would be relabelled as a 2kg bag of sugar. However, there might be some short-run effects; confused people might buy too little sugar, and some people might go on crash diets! But ultimately people would adjust. In the long run, the change wouldn't matter. There is a clear parallel here with the theory of money neutrality. Doubling the prices of everything—halving the value of a currency—does not change anything real. This is because, like kilograms, money is a unit of account. However, halving the value of a currency could affect real things in the short run.

There are two points worth making with regard to money neutrality. First, although the simple kilogram analogy above does suggest that money should not affect real things in the long run, as the British economist Keynes said: “*In the long run we are all dead!*” In practice, it is very difficult for economists to be sure that money neutrality holds in the long run. And second, we must assume that monetary authorities do believe that the money supply can affect real things in the short run. If they did not, then there would be almost no point to monetary policy.

2.1.7 The Fisher Effect

The **Fisher effect** is directly related to the concept of money neutrality. Named after the economist Irving Fisher, the Fisher effect states that the real rate of interest in an economy is stable over time so that changes in nominal interest rates are the result of changes in expected inflation. Thus, the nominal interest rate (R_{nom}) in an economy is the sum of the required real rate of interest (R_{real}) and the expected rate of inflation (π^e) over any given time horizon:

$$R_{\text{nom}} = R_{\text{real}} + \pi^e \quad (3)$$

According to money neutrality, over the long term the money supply and/or the growth rate in money should not affect R_{real} but will affect inflation and inflation expectations.

The Fisher effect also demonstrates that embedded in every nominal interest rate is an expectation of future inflation. Suppose that 12-month US government T-bills offered a yield equal to 4 percent over the year. Suppose also that T-bill investors wished to earn a real rate of interest of 2 percent and expected inflation to be 2 percent over the next year. In this case, the return of 4 percent would be sufficient to deliver the investors' desired real return of 2 percent (so long as inflation did not exceed 2 percent). Now suppose that investors changed their view about future inflation and instead expected it to equal 3 percent over the next 12 months. To compensate them for the higher expected inflation, the T-bill rate would have to rise to 5 percent, thereby preserving the required 2 percent real return.

There is one caveat to this example. Investors can never be sure about future values of such economic variables as inflation and real growth. To compensate them for this uncertainty, they require a **risk premium**. The greater the uncertainty, the greater the required risk premium. So all nominal interest rates are actually comprised of three components:

- a required real return;
- a component compensating investors for expected inflation; and
- a risk premium to compensate them for uncertainty.

EXAMPLE 4

Interest Rates and the Supply of Money

- 1 According to the quantity equation of exchange, an increase in the money supply can lead to an:
 - A increase in the aggregate price level, regardless of changes in the velocity of circulation of money.
 - B increase in the aggregate price level as long as the velocity of circulation of money rises sufficiently to offset the increase in the money supply.
 - C increase in the aggregate price level as long as the velocity of circulation of money does not fall sufficiently to offset the increase in the money supply and real output is unchanged.
- 2 The nominal interest rate comprises a real rate of interest:
 - A plus a risk premium only.
 - B plus a premium for expected inflation only.
 - C compensation for both expected inflation and risk.
- 3 An expansion in the money supply would *most likely*:
 - A lead to a decline in nominal interest rates.
 - B lead to an increase in nominal interest rates.
 - C reduce the equilibrium amount of money that economic agents would wish to hold.

Solution to 1:

C is correct. If the velocity of circulation of money does not change with an increase in the money supply and real output is fixed, then the aggregate price level should increase. If the velocity of circulation of money falls sufficiently, or if real output rises sufficiently, then the increase in money may have no impact on prices.

Solution to 2:

C is correct. Investors demand a real rate of interest and compensation for expected inflation and a risk premium to compensate them for uncertainty.

Solution to 3:

A is correct. Increasing the supply of money, all other things being equal, will reduce its “price,” that is, the interest rate on money balances.

EXAMPLE 5**Mrs. Thatcher's Monetary Experiment****The Background**

Over the 1970s, the United Kingdom had one of the worst inflation records of any developed economy. Retail price inflation averaged 12.6 percent over that decade and peaked at 26.9 percent in August 1975. Over this period, then-Prime Minister Margaret Thatcher and her advisers had become convinced that inflation could not be controlled by the income and price policies used in the United Kingdom in the past. Instead, they believed that inflation could be tamed by controlling the rate of growth of the money supply. Mrs. Thatcher's first administration took power in May 1979 with the intention of pursuing a monetarist agenda—that is, a macroeconomic policy that would be underpinned by targets for money supply growth.

The Medium-Term Financial Strategy

Targets for monetary growth were set for a definition of the money supply known as Sterling M3 (£M3), which was to be kept in the range of 7–11 percent for the period 1980–1981 and then gradually reduced to within 4–8 percent by 1983–1984. This set of targets was known as the Medium Term Financial Strategy (MTFS). The idea was simple: Control the rate of growth of the money supply, and the rate of growth of prices (i.e., inflation) would remain under control too. The instrument of control was the Bank of England's policy interest rate that would be set to achieve the desired rate of growth of the money supply. This was a macroeconomic policy built, however imperfectly, on an interpretation of the quantity theory of money.

The theory was simple, but the practice proved to be less so. Over the first two and a half years of the MTFS, £M3 overshot its target by 100 percent. The inability of the monetary authorities to control the rate of growth of the broad money supply was largely caused by Thatcher's abolition of exchange controls in 1979. By abolishing these controls, there was a significant increase in foreign exchange business that came into the British banking system, which changed the velocity of money and therefore meant that the relationship between broad money and nominal incomes had changed fundamentally.⁵

Despite the inability to control the money supply, in 1983 the Thatcher administration reasserted its confidence in the policy and published a further set of monetary targets for several years ahead. However, the persistent failure to meet these targets, too, eventually led to the abandonment of any type of monetary targeting by the summer of 1985.

The experience of the UK monetary authorities over this period emphasizes how unstable the relationship between money and the policy interest rate could be along with the relationship between money and aggregate demand—particularly in an economy that is experiencing rapid financial innovation, as the UK economy was following the abolition of exchange controls and the introduction of greater competition within the banking industry.

Today the Bank of England is responsible for the operation and implementation of monetary policy in the United Kingdom. The trends in money supply are watched very carefully, but they are not the subject of targets, per se.

⁵ See Goodhart (1989) for a discussion.

2.2 The Roles of Central Banks

Central banks play a number of key roles in modern economies. Generally, a central bank is the monopoly supplier of the currency, the banker to the government and the bankers' bank, the lender of last resort, the regulator and supervisor of the payments system, the conductor of monetary policy, and the supervisor of the banking system. Let us examine these roles in turn.

In its earliest form, money could be exchanged for a pre-specified precious commodity, usually gold, and promissory notes were issued by many private banks. Today, however, state-owned institutions—usually central banks—are designated in law as being the monopoly suppliers of a currency. Initially, these monopolists supplied money that could be converted into a pre-specified amount of gold; they adhered to a **gold standard**. For example, up until 1931, bank notes issued by Britain's central bank, the Bank of England, could be redeemed at the bank for a pre-specified amount of gold. But Britain, like most other major economies, abandoned this convertibility principle in the first half of the twentieth century. Money in all major economies today is not convertible by law into anything else, but it is, in law, **legal tender**. This means that it must be accepted when offered in exchange for goods and services. Money that is not convertible into any other commodity is known as **fiat money**. Fiat money derives its value via government decree and because people accept it for payment of goods and services and for debt repayment.

As long as fiat money is acceptable to everyone as a medium of exchange, and it holds its value over time, then it will also be able to serve as a unit of account. However, once an economy has moved to a system of fiat money, the role of the supplier of that money becomes even more crucial because they could, for example, expand the supply of this money indefinitely should they wish to do so. Central banks therefore play a crucial role in modern economies as the suppliers and guardians of the value of their fiat currencies and as institutions charged with the role of maintaining confidence in their currencies. As the monopoly suppliers of an economy's currency, central banks are at the centre of economic life. As such, they assume other roles in addition to being the suppliers and guardians of the value of their currencies.

Most central banks act as the banker to the government and to other banks. They also act as a **lender of last resort** to banks. Because the central bank effectively has the capacity to print money, it is in the position to be able to supply the funds to banks that are facing a damaging shortage. The facts that economic agents know that the central bank stands ready to provide the liquidity required by any of the banks under its jurisdiction and that they trust government bank deposit insurance help to prevent bank runs in the first place. However, the recent financial crisis has shown that this knowledge is not always sufficient to deter a bank run.

EXAMPLE 6

The Northern Rock Bank Run

In the latter part of the summer of 2007, the fall in US house prices and the related implosion of the US sub-prime mortgage market became the catalyst for a global liquidity crisis. Banks began to hoard cash and refused to lend to other banks at anything other than extremely punitive interest rates through the interbank market. This caused severe difficulties for a UK mortgage bank, Northern Rock. Northern Rock's mortgage book had expanded rapidly in the preceding years as it borrowed aggressively from the money markets. It is now clear that this expansion was at the expense of loan quality. The then UK regulatory authority,

the Financial Services Authority (FSA),⁶ later reported in 2008 that Northern Rock's lending practices did not pay due regard to either the credit quality of the mortgagees or the values of the properties on which the mortgages were secured. Being at the worst end of banking practice, and relying heavily on international capital markets for its funding, Northern Rock was therefore very susceptible to a global reduction in liquidity. As the liquidity crisis took hold, Northern Rock found that it could not replace its maturing money market borrowings. On 12 September 2007, in desperate need of liquidity, Northern Rock's board approached the UK central bank to ask for the necessary funds.

However, the news of Northern Rock's perilous liquidity position became known by the public and, more pertinently, by Northern Rock's retail depositors. On 14 September, having heard the news, queues began to form outside Northern Rock branches as depositors tried to withdraw their savings. On that day, it was estimated that Northern Rock depositors withdrew around £1bn, representing 5 percent of Northern Rock's deposits. Further panic ensued as investors in "internet only" Northern Rock accounts could not withdraw their money because of the collapse of Northern Rock's website. A further £1bn was withdrawn over the next two days.

Northern Rock's share price dropped rapidly, as did the share prices of other similar UK banks. The crisis therefore threatened to engulf more than one bank. To prevent contagion, the Chancellor of the Exchequer announced on 17 September that the UK government would guarantee all Northern Rock deposits. This announcement was enough to stabilize the situation, and given that lending to Northern Rock was now just like lending to the government, deposits actually started to rise again.

Eventually Northern Rock was nationalized by the UK government, with the hope that at some time in the future it could be privatized once its balance sheet had been repaired.

Central banks are also often charged by the government to supervise the banking system, or at least to supervise those banks that they license to accept deposits. However, in some countries, this role is undertaken by a separate authority. In other countries, the central bank can be jointly responsible with another body for the supervision of its banks.

Exhibit 5 lists the banking supervisors in the G-10 countries; central banks are underlined. As the exhibit shows, most but not all bank systems have a single supervisor, which is not necessarily a central bank. A few countries, such as Germany and the United States, have more than one supervisor.

Exhibit 5 Banking Supervision in the G10

Country	Institution(s)
Belgium	Banking and Finance Commission
Canada	Office of the Superintendent of Financial Institutions
France	Commission Bancaire
Germany	Federal Banking Supervisory Office; <u>Deutsche Bundesbank</u>
Italy	<u>Bank of Italy</u>

⁶ In 2013, the Financial Services Authority was replaced by two new regulatory authorities, the Financial Conduct Authority (FCA) and the Prudential Regulation Authority (PRA).

Exhibit 5 (Continued)

Country	Institution(s)
Japan	<u>Financial Services Agency</u>
Netherlands	<u>Bank of Netherlands</u>
Sweden	Swedish Financial Supervisory Authority
Switzerland	Federal Commission
United Kingdom	<u>Bank of England</u>
United States	Office of the Comptroller of the Currency; <u>Federal Reserve</u> ; Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation

The United Kingdom is an interesting case study in this regard. Until May 1997, the Bank of England had statutory responsibility for banking supervision in the United Kingdom. In May 1997, banking supervision was removed from the Bank of England and assigned to a new agency, the Financial Services Authority (FSA). However, the removal of responsibility for banking supervision from the central bank was seen by some as being a contributory factor in the run on the mortgage bank Northern Rock, and generally as a contributory factor in the recent banking crisis. Because of this perceived weakness in the separation of the central bank from banking supervision, the Bank of England regained responsibility for banking supervision and regulation in 2013.

Perhaps the least appreciated role of a central bank is its role in the **payments system**. Central banks are usually asked to oversee, regulate, and set standards for a country's payments system. Every day millions of financial transactions take place in a modern economy. For the system to work properly, procedures must be robust and standardized. The central bank will usually oversee the payments system and will also be responsible for the successful introduction of any new processes. Given the international nature of finance, the central bank will also be responsible for coordinating payments systems internationally with other central banks.

Most central banks will also be responsible for managing their country's **foreign currency reserves** and also its gold reserves. With regard to the latter, even though countries abandoned the gold standard in the early part of the twentieth century, the world's central bankers still hold large quantities of gold. As such, if central banks were to decide to sell significant proportions of their gold reserves, it could potentially depress gold prices.

Finally, central banks are usually responsible for the operation of a country's **monetary policy**. This is arguably the highest profile role that these important organizations assume. Recall that monetary policy refers to central bank activities that are directed toward influencing the quantity of money and credit in an economy. As the monopoly supplier of a country's currency, central banks are in the ideal position to implement and/or determine monetary policy.

To summarise, central banks assume a range of roles and responsibilities. They do not all assume responsibility for the supervision of the banks, but all of the other roles listed below are normally assumed by the central bank:

- Monopoly supplier of the currency;
- Banker to the government and the bankers' bank;
- Lender of last resort;
- Regulator and supervisor of the payments system;

- Conductor of monetary policy; and
- Supervisor of the banking system.

2.3 The Objectives of Monetary Policy

Central banks fulfill a variety of important roles, but for what overarching purpose? A brief perusal of the websites of the world's central banks will reveal a wide range of explanations of their objectives. Their objectives are clearly related to their roles, and so there is frequent mention of objectives related to the stability of the financial system and to the payments systems. Some central banks are charged with doing all they can to maintain full employment and output. But some also have related but less tangible roles, like “maintaining confidence in the financial system,” or even to “promote understanding of the financial sector.” But there is one overarching objective that most seem to acknowledge explicitly, and that is the objective of maintaining **price stability**.

So although central banks usually have to perform many roles, most specify an overarching objective. Exhibit 6 lists what we might call the primary objective(s) of a number of central banks, from both developed and developing economies.

Exhibit 6 The Objectives of Central Banks

The Central Bank of Brazil

Its “institutional mission” is to “ensure the stability of the currency’s purchasing power and a solid and efficient financial system.”

The European Central Bank

“[T]o maintain price stability is the primary objective of the Euro system and of the single monetary policy for which it is responsible. This is laid down in the Treaty on the Functioning of the European Union, Article 127 (1).”

“Without prejudice to the objective of price stability,” the euro system will also “support the general economic policies in the Community with a view to contributing to the achievement of the objectives of the Community.” These include a “high level of employment” and “sustainable and non-inflationary growth.”

The US Federal Reserve

“The Federal Reserve sets the nation’s monetary policy to promote the objectives of maximum employment, stable prices, and moderate long-term interest rates.”

The Reserve Bank of Australia

“It is the duty of the Reserve Bank Board, within the limits of its powers, to ensure that the monetary and banking policy of the Bank is directed to the greatest advantage of the people of Australia and that the powers of the Bank ... are exercised in such a manner as, in the opinion of the Reserve Bank Board, will best contribute to:

- a the stability of the currency of Australia;
- b the maintenance of full employment in Australia; and
- c the economic prosperity and welfare of the people of Australia.”

Exhibit 6 (Continued)**The Bank of Korea**

“The primary purpose of the Bank, as prescribed by the Bank of Korea Act of 1962, is the pursuit of price stability.”

Source: Central bank websites found at <http://www.bis.org/cbanks.htm>.

EXAMPLE 7**Central Banks**

- 1 A central bank is normally *not* the:
 - A lender of last resort.
 - B banker to the government and banks.
 - C body that sets tax rates on interest on savings.
- 2 Which of the following *best* describes the overarching, long-run objective of most central banks?
 - A Price stability
 - B Fast economic growth
 - C Current account surplus

Solution to 1:

C is correct. A central bank is normally the lender of last resort and the banker to the banks and government, but the determination of all tax rates is normally the preserve of the government and is a fiscal policy issue.

Solution to 2:

A is correct. Central banks normally have a variety of objectives, but the overriding one is nearly always price stability.

As we have already discussed, one of the essential features of a monetary system is that the medium of exchange should have a relatively stable value from one period to the next. Arguably then, the overarching goal of most central banks in maintaining price stability is the associated goal of controlling inflation. But before we explore the tools central banks use to control inflation, we should first consider the potential costs of inflation. In other words, we should ask why it is that central bankers believe that it is so important to control a nominal variable.

2.3.1 The Costs of Inflation

Huge efforts have been put into controlling inflation since the major economies experienced such high levels of inflation in the 1970s. From the early 1970s then, inflation has been seen as a very bad thing. But why? What are the costs of inflation? The debate around the “costs” of inflation really centers on the distinction between **expected inflation** and **unexpected inflation**. Expected inflation is clearly the level of inflation that economic agents expect in the future. Unexpected inflation can be defined as the level of inflation that we experience that is either below or above that which we expected; it is the component of inflation that is a surprise.

At a micro level, high inflation means that businesses constantly have to change the advertised prices of their goods and services. These are known as **menu costs**. There also exists what economists refer to as “shoe leather” costs of inflation. In times of high inflation, people would naturally tend to hold less cash and would therefore wear out their shoe leather (or more likely the engines of their cars) in making frequent trips to the bank to withdraw cash. But these are relatively old arguments, used to demonstrate that inflation is bad. In a modern economy, with the internet and with transactions becoming increasingly cashless, these costs associated with inflation will be lower today than they may have been in the past.

To demonstrate the potentially more significant costs of inflation, consider the following. Imagine a world where inflation is high but where all prices (including asset prices) in an economy are perfectly indexed to inflation, and that technology has eliminated the issues surrounding the menu and shoe leather costs of inflation. In such a world, would economic agents care about inflation? Probably not. If the average price of goods and services rose by 10 percent, people’s salaries (and all other prices) would rise by the same amount, which would therefore make economic agents indifferent to the rise in prices.

In practice, however, all prices, wages, salaries, rents, and so forth are not indexed, in which case economic agents would certainly need to think about inflation more carefully. But what if inflation in this world where prices are no longer perfectly indexed is high, but perfectly predictable? In this alternative, imaginary world, economic agents would have to think about inflation, but not too hard as long as they were capable of calculating the impact of the known inflation rate on all future prices. So, if everyone knew that inflation was going to be 10 percent over the next year, then everyone could bargain for a 10 percent increase in their salaries to accommodate this, and companies could plan to put up the prices of their goods and services by 10 percent. Actually, in this world, an expectation of 10 percent inflation would become a self-fulfilling prophecy.

However, economic agents would worry about inflation in a world where all prices were not indexed and, crucially, where inflation was high and unpredictable. In fact this is a crude description the inflationary backdrop in many developed economies over the 1970s and 1980s, including the United States, France, the United Kingdom, Italy, and Canada.

Arguably it is **unexpected inflation** that is most costly. Inflation that is fully anticipated can be factored into wage negotiations and priced into business and financial contracts. But when inflation turns out to be higher than is anticipated, then borrowers benefit at the expense of lenders because the real value of their borrowing declines. Conversely, when inflation is lower than is anticipated, lenders benefit at the expense of borrowers because the real value of the payment on debts rises. Furthermore, if inflation is very uncertain or very volatile, then lenders will ask for a premium to compensate them for this uncertainty. As a result, the costs of borrowing will be higher than would otherwise have been the case. Higher borrowing costs could in turn reduce economic activity, for example, by discouraging investment.

It is also possible that **inflation uncertainty** can exacerbate the economic cycle. Inflation uncertainty is the degree to which economic agents view future rates of inflation as hard to forecast. Take for example the case of an imaginary television manufacturer. Suppose one day that the manufacturer looks out at the market for televisions and sees that the market price of televisions has risen by 10 percent. Armed with this information, the manufacturer assumes that there has been an increase in demand for televisions or maybe a reduction in supply. So to take advantage of the new, higher prices, the manufacturer extends the factory, employs more workers, and begins to produce more televisions.

Having now increased the output of the factory, the manufacturer then attempts to sell the extra televisions that the factory has produced. But to its horror, the manufacturer finds out that there is no extra demand for televisions. Instead, the 10 percent rise in television prices was caused by a generalized 10 percent increase in all consumer prices across the economy. The manufacturer realizes that it has surplus stock, surplus factory capacity, and too many workers. So, it cuts back on production, lays off some of the workforce, and realizes that it won't need to invest in new plant or machinery for a long time.

This example emphasizes the potentially destabilizing impact of unexpected inflation. It demonstrates how unanticipated inflation can reduce the information content of market prices for economic agents. If we scale this example up, it should not be too difficult to imagine how unanticipated increases or decreases in the general price level could help to exacerbate—and in some extreme cases cause—economic booms and busts.

Over the last two to three decades the consensus among economists has been that unanticipated and high levels of inflation can have an impact on real things like employment, investment and profits, and therefore that controlling inflation should be one of the main goals of macroeconomic policy. In summary:

Expected inflation can give rise to:

- menu costs and
- shoe leather costs.

Unanticipated (unexpected) inflation can in addition:

- lead to inequitable transfers of wealth between borrowers and lenders (including losses to savings);
- give rise to risk premia in borrowing rates and the prices of other assets; and
- reduce the information content of market prices.

2.3.2 *Monetary Policy Tools*⁷

Central banks have three primary tools available to them: open market operations, the refinancing rate, and reserve requirements.

2.3.2.1 Open Market Operations One of the most direct ways for a central bank to increase or reduce the amount of money in circulation is via **open market operations**. Open market operations involve the purchase and sale of government bonds from and to commercial banks and/or designated market makers. For example, when the central bank buys government bonds from commercial banks, this increases the reserves of private sector banks on the asset side of their balance sheets. If banks then use these surplus reserves by increasing lending to corporations and households, then via the money multiplier process explained in Section 2.1.2, broad money growth expands. Similarly, the central bank can sell government bonds to commercial banks. By doing this, the reserves of commercial banks decline, reducing their capacity to make loans (i.e., create credit) to households and corporations and thus causing broad money growth to decline through the money multiplier mechanism. In using open market operations, the central bank may target a desired level of commercial bank reserves or a desired interest rate for these reserves.

⁷ Monetary policy tools and operations often vary considerably from economy to economy. We have tried to describe the generics of the process here. For a more-detailed review of monetary operations across the world, see Gray and Talbot (2006).

2.3.2.2 The Central Bank's Policy Rate The most obvious expression of a central bank's intentions and views comes via the interest rate it sets. The name of the **official interest rate** (or **official policy rate** or just **policy rate**) varies from central bank to central bank, but its purpose is to influence short- and long-term interest rates and ultimately real economic activity.

The interest rate that a central bank sets and that it announces publicly is normally the rate at which it is willing to lend money to the commercial banks (although practices do vary from country to country). This policy rate can be achieved by using short-term collateralized lending rates, known as repo rates. For example, if the central bank wishes to increase the supply of money, it might buy bonds (usually government bonds) from the banks, with an agreement to sell them back at some time in the future. This transaction is known as a **repurchase agreement**. Normally, the maturity of repo agreements ranges from overnight to two weeks. In effect, this represents a secured loan to the banks, and the lender (in this case the central bank) earns the repo rate.

Suppose that a central bank announces an increase in its official interest rate. Commercial banks would normally increase their **base rates** at the same time. A commercial bank's base rate is the reference rate on which it bases lending rates to all other customers. For example, large corporate clients might pay the base rate plus 1 percent on their borrowing from a bank, while the same bank might lend money to a small corporate client at the base rate plus 3 percent. But why would commercial banks immediately increase their base or reference rates just because the central bank's refinancing rate had increased?

The answer is that commercial banks would not want to have lent at a rate of interest that would be lower than they might be charged by the central bank. Effectively, the central bank can force commercial banks to borrow from it at this rate because it can conduct open market operations that create a shortage of money, forcing the banks to sell bonds to it with a pre-agreed repurchase price (i.e., do a repurchase agreement). The repo rate would be such that the central bank earned the official refinancing rate on the transactions.

The name of each central bank's official refinancing rate varies. The Bank of England's refinancing rate is the **two-week repo rate**. In other words, the Bank of England fixes the rate at which it is willing to lend two-week money to the banking sector. The ECB's official policy rate is known as the **refinancing rate** and defines the rate at which it is willing to lend short-term money to the euro area banking sector.

The corresponding rate in the United States is the discount rate, which is the rate for member banks borrowing directly from the Federal Reserve System. But the most important interest rate used in US monetary policy is the **federal funds rate**. The federal funds rate (or **fed funds rate**) is the interbank lending rate on overnight borrowings of reserves. The Federal Open Market Committee (FOMC) seeks to move this rate to a target level by reducing or adding reserves to the banking system by means of open market operations. The level of the rate is reviewed by the FOMC at its meetings held every six weeks (although the target can be changed between meetings, if necessary).

Through the setting of a policy rate, a central bank can manipulate the amount of money in the money markets. Generally speaking, the higher the policy rate, the higher the potential penalty that banks will have to pay to the central bank if they run short of liquidity, the greater will be their willingness to reduce lending, and the more likely that broad money growth will shrink.

2.3.2.3 Reserve Requirements The third primary way in which central banks can limit or increase the supply of money in an economy is via their **reserve requirements**. We have already seen that the money creation process is more powerful the lower the percentage reserve requirement of banks. So, a central bank could restrict money creation by raising the reserve requirements of banks. However, this policy tool is not

used much nowadays in developed economies. Indeed, some central banks, such as the Bank of England, do not even set minimum reserve requirements for the banks under their jurisdiction anymore. Changing reserve requirements frequently is disruptive for banks. For example, if a central bank increased the reserve requirements, a bank that was short on reserves might have to cease its lending activities until it had built up the necessary reserves, because deposits would be unlikely to rise quickly enough for the bank to build its reserves in this way. However, reserve requirements are still actively used in many developing countries to control lending—for example in China and in India—and they remain a potential policy tool for those central banks that do not currently use it.

To summarize, central banks can manipulate the money supply in one of three ways:

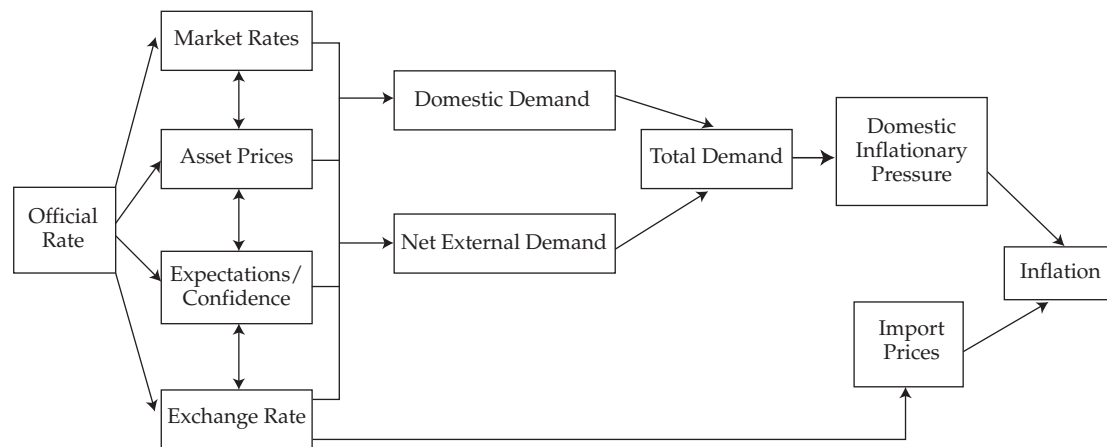
- open market operations;
- its official policy rate and associated actions in the repo market; and
- manipulation of official reserve requirements.

2.3.3 The Transmission Mechanism

The overarching goal of a central bank is to maintain price stability. We demonstrated above how a central bank can manipulate the money supply and growth of the money supply. We also indicated how policy rates set and targeted by the central banks are usually very short term in nature; often they target overnight interest rates. However, most businesses and individuals in the real economy borrow and lend over much longer time frames than this. It may not be obvious, then, how changing short-term interest rates can influence the real economy, particularly if money neutrality holds in the long run. The fact that central bankers believe that they can affect real economic variables, in particular economic growth, by influencing broad money growth suggests that they believe that money is not neutral—at least not in the short run.

Exhibit 7 presents a stylized representation of the **monetary transmission mechanism**. This is the process whereby a central bank’s interest rate gets transmitted through the economy and ultimately affects the rate of increase of prices—that is, inflation.

Exhibit 7 A Stylized Representation of the Monetary Transmission Mechanism



Source: Bank of England.

Suppose that a central bank announces an increase in its official interest rate. The implementation of the policy may begin to work through the economy via four interrelated channels. Those channels include bank lending rates, asset prices, agents’

expectations, and exchange rates. First, as described above, the base rates of commercial banks and interbank rates should rise in response to the increase in the official rate. Banks would, in turn, increase the cost of borrowing for individuals and companies over both short- and long-term horizons. Businesses and consumers would then tend to borrow less as interest rates rise. An increase in short-term interest rates could also cause the price of such assets as bonds or the value of capital projects to fall as the discount rate for future cash flows rises.

Market participants would then come to the view that higher interest rates will lead to slower economic growth, reduced profits, and reduced borrowing to finance asset purchases. Exporters' profits might decline if the rise in interest rates causes the country's exchange rate to appreciate, because this would make domestic exports more expensive to overseas buyers and dampen demand to purchase them. The fall in asset prices as well as an increase in prices would reduce household financial wealth and therefore lead to a reduction in consumption growth. Expectations regarding interest rates can play a significant role in the economy. Often companies and individuals will make investment and purchasing decisions based on their interest rate expectations, extrapolated from recent events. If the central bank's interest rate move is widely expected to be followed by other interest rate increases, investors and companies will act accordingly. Consumption, borrowing, and asset prices may all decline as a result of the revision in expectations.

There is a whole range of interconnected ways in which a rise in the central bank's policy rate can reduce real domestic demand and net external demand (that is, the difference between export and import consumption). Weaker total demand would tend to put downward pressure on the rate of domestic inflation—as would a stronger currency, which would reduce the prices of imports. Taken together, these might begin to put downward pressure on the overall measure of inflation.

To summarize, the central bank's policy rate works through the economy via any one, and often all, of the following interconnected channels:

- Short-term interest rates;
- Changes in the values of key asset prices;
- The exchange rate; and
- The expectations of economic agents.

EXAMPLE 8

Central Bank Tools

- 1 Which of the following variables are *most likely* to be affected by a change in a central bank's policy rate?
 - A Asset prices only
 - B Expectations about future interest rates only
 - C Both asset prices and expectations about future interest rates
- 2 Which of the following does a central bank seek to influence directly via the setting of its official interest rate?
 - A Inflation expectations
 - B Import prices
 - C Domestic inflation

Solution to 1:

C is correct. The price of equities, for example, might be affected by the expectation of future policy interest rate changes. In other words, a rate change may be taken as a signal of the future stance of monetary policy—contractionary or expansionary.

Solution to 2:

A is correct. By setting its official interest rate, a central bank could expect to have a direct influence on inflation expectations—as well as on other market interest rates, asset prices, and the exchange rate (where this is freely floating). If it can influence these factors, it might ultimately hope to influence import prices (via changes in the exchange rate) and also domestically generated inflation (via its impact on domestic and/or external demand). The problem is that the workings of the transmission mechanism—from the official interest rate to inflation—are complex and can change over time.

2.3.4 Inflation Targeting

Over the 1990s, a consensus began to build among both central bankers and politicians that the best way to control inflation and thereby maintain price stability was to target a certain level of inflation and to ensure that this target was met by monitoring a wide range of monetary, financial, and real economic variables. Nowadays, inflation-targeting frameworks are the cornerstone of monetary policy and macroeconomic policy in many economies. Exhibit 8 shows the growth in the number of inflation-targeting monetary policy regimes over time.

The inflation-targeting framework that is now commonly practiced was pioneered in New Zealand. In 1988, the New Zealand Minister of Finance, Roger Douglas, announced that economic policy would focus on bringing inflation down from the prevailing level of around 6.0 percent to a target range of 0 to 2 percent. This goal was given legal status by the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Act 1989. As part of the Act, the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (RBNZ) was given the role of pursuing this target. The bank was given **operational independence**; it was free to set interest rates in the way that it thought would best meet the inflation target. Although the RBNZ had independent control of monetary policy, it was still accountable to the government and was charged with communicating its decisions in a clear and transparent way. As Exhibit 8 shows, the New Zealand model was widely copied.

Exhibit 8 The Progressive Adoption of Inflation Targeting by Central Banks

1989	New Zealand				
1990	Chile	Canada			
1991	Israel	United Kingdom			
1992	Sweden	Finland	Australia		
1995	Spain				
1998	Czech Republic	South Korea	Poland		
1999	Mexico	Brazil	Colombia	ECB	
2000	South Africa	Thailand			
2001	Iceland	Norway	Hungary	Peru	Philippines
2005	Guatemala	Indonesia	Romania		
2006	Turkey	Serbia			
2007	Ghana				

Note: Spain and Finland later joined the EMU.

(continued)

Exhibit 8 (Continued)

Sources: For 2001 and earlier, Truman (2003). For 2002 to 2007, Roger (2010).

Although these inflation-targeting regimes vary a little from economy to economy, their success is thought to depend on three key concepts: central bank independence, credibility, and transparency.

Central Bank Independence⁸ In most cases, the central bank that is charged with targeting inflation has a degree of independence from its government. This independence is thought to be important. It is conceivable that politicians could announce an inflation target and direct the central bank to set interest rates accordingly. Indeed, this was the process adopted in the United Kingdom between 1994 and 1997. But politicians have a constant eye on re-election and might be tempted, for example, to keep rates “too low” in the lead up to an election in the hope that this might help their re-election prospects. As a consequence, this might lead to higher inflation. Thus, it is now widely believed that monetary policy decisions should rest in the hands of an organization that is remote from the electoral process. The central bank is the natural candidate to be the monopoly supplier of a currency.

However, there are degrees of independence. For example, the head of the central bank is nearly always chosen by government officials. The Chairman of the US Federal Reserve’s Board of Governors is appointed by the President of the United States of America; the Head of the ECB is chosen by the committee of Euro area finance ministers; while the Governor of the Bank of England is chosen by the Chancellor of the Exchequer. So, in practice, separating control from political influence completely is probably an impossible (although a desirable) goal.

There are further degrees of independence. Some central banks are both operationally and **target independent**. This means that they not only decide the level of interest rates, but they also determine the definition of inflation that they target, the rate of inflation that they target, and the horizon over which the target is to be achieved. The ECB has independence of this kind. By contrast, other central banks—including those in New Zealand, Sweden, and the United Kingdom—are tasked to hit a definition and level of inflation determined by the government. These central banks are therefore only operationally independent.

Credibility The independence of the central bank and public confidence in it are key in the design of an inflation-targeting regime.

To illustrate the role of credibility, suppose that instead of the central bank, the government assumes the role of targeting inflation but the government is heavily indebted. Given that higher inflation reduces the real value of debt, the government would have an incentive to avoid reaching the inflation target or to set a high inflation target such that price stability and confidence in the currency could be endangered. As a result, few would believe the government was really intent on controlling inflation; thus, the government would lack credibility. Many governments have very large levels of debt, especially since the 2008–2009 global financial crisis. In such a situation, economic agents might expect a high level of inflation, regardless of the actual, stated target. The target might have little credibility if the organization’s likelihood of sticking to it is in doubt.

⁸ For information about the degree of independence of any central bank, the roles that it assumes in an economy, and the framework in which it operates, analysts should go to a central bank’s website. A list of central bank websites can be found at <http://www.bis.org/cbanks.htm>.

If a respected central bank assumes the inflation-targeting role and if economic agents believe that the central bank will hit its target, the belief itself could become self-fulfilling. If everyone believes that the central bank will hit an inflation target of 2 percent next year, this expectation might be built into wage claims and other nominal contracts that would make it hit the 2 percent target. It is for this reason that central bankers pay a great deal of attention to inflation expectations. If these expectations were to rise rapidly, perhaps following a rapid increase in oil prices, unchecked expectations could get embedded into wage claims and eventually cause inflation to rise.

Transparency One way of establishing credibility is for a central bank to be transparent in its decision making. Many, if not all, independent inflation-targeting central banks produce a quarterly assessment of their economies. These **Inflation Reports**, as they are usually known, give central banks' views on the range of indicators that they watch when they come to their (usually) monthly interest rate decision. They will consider and outline their views on the following subjects, usually in this order:

- Broad money aggregates and credit conditions;
- Conditions in financial markets;
- Developments in the real economy (e.g., the labour market); and
- Evolution of prices.

Consideration of all of these important components of an economy is then usually followed by a forecast of growth and inflation over a medium-term horizon, usually two years.

By explaining their views on the economy and by being transparent in decision making, the independent, inflation-targeting central banks seek to gain reputation and credibility, making it easier to influence inflation expectations and hence ultimately easier to meet the inflation target.

The Target Whether the target is set by the central bank or by the government for the central bank to hit, the level of the target and the horizon over which the target is to be hit is a crucial consideration in all inflation-targeting frameworks.

Exhibit 9 A Range of Inflation Targets

Country/Region

Australia	Australian Federal Reserve's target is inflation between 2.0% and 3.0%.
Canada	Bank of Canada's target is CPI inflation within 1.0% and 3.0%.
Euro-area	ECB's target is CPI inflation below a ceiling of 2%.
South Korea	Bank of Korea's target for 2010–2012 is CPI inflation within ± 1.0 percentage of 3.0%.
New Zealand	Reserve Bank of New Zealand's target is inflation between 1.0% and 3.0%.
Sweden	Riksbank's target is CPI inflation within ± 1.0 percentage point of 2.0%.
United Kingdom	Bank of England's target is CPI inflation within ± 1.0 percentage point of 2.0%.

Source: Central bank websites (<http://www.bis.org/cbanks.htm>).

Exhibit 9 shows that many central banks in developed economies target an inflation rate of 2 percent based on a consumer price index. Given that the operation of monetary policy is both art and science, the banks are normally allowed a range around the central target of +1 percent or –1 percent. For example, with a 2 percent target, they would be tasked to keep inflation between 1 percent and 3 percent. But why target 2 percent and not 0 percent?

The answer is that aiming to hit 0 percent could result in negative inflation, known as **deflation**. One of the limitations of monetary policy that we discuss below is its ability or inability to deal with periods of deflation. If deflation is something to be avoided, why not target 10 percent? The answer to this question is that levels of inflation that high would not be consistent with price stability; such a high inflation rate would further tend to be associated with high inflation volatility and uncertainty. Central bankers seem to agree that 2 percent is far enough away from the risks of deflation and low enough not to lead to destabilizing inflation shocks.

Finally, we should keep in mind that the headline inflation rate that is announced in most economies every month, and which is the central bank's target, is a measure of how much a basket of goods and services has risen over the previous twelve months. It is history. Furthermore, interest rate changes made today will take some time to have their full effect on the real economy as they make their way through the monetary transmission mechanism. It is for these two reasons that inflation targeters do not target current inflation but instead usually focus on inflation two years ahead.

Although inflation-targeting mandates may vary from country to country, they have common elements: the specification of an explicit inflation target, with permissible bounds, and a requirement that the central bank should be transparent in its objectives and policy actions. This is all usually laid out in legislation that imposes statutory obligations on the central bank. As mentioned earlier, New Zealand pioneered the inflation-targeting approach to monetary policy that has since been copied widely. Below is New Zealand's Policy Targets Agreement, which specifies the inflation-targeting mandate of its central bank, the Reserve Bank of New Zealand.

Exhibit 10 New Zealand's Policy Targets Agreement

“This agreement between the Minister of Finance and the Governor of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand (the Bank) is made under section 9 of the Reserve Bank of New Zealand Act 1989 (the Act). The Minister and the Governor agree as follows:

1 Price stability

- a Under Section 8 of the Act the Reserve Bank is required to conduct monetary policy with the goal of maintaining a stable general level of prices.
- b The Government's economic objective is to promote a growing, open and competitive economy as the best means of delivering permanently higher incomes and living standards for New Zealanders. Price stability plays an important part in supporting this objective.

2 Policy target

- a In pursuing the objective of a stable general level of prices, the Bank shall monitor prices as measured by a range of price indexes. The price stability target will be defined in terms of the All Groups Consumers Price Index (CPI), as published by Statistics New Zealand.
- b For the purpose of this agreement, the policy target shall be to keep future CPI inflation outcomes between 1 per cent and 3 per cent on average over the medium term.

3 Inflation variations around target

Exhibit 10 (Continued)

- a For a variety of reasons, the actual annual rate of CPI inflation will vary around the medium-term trend of inflation, which is the focus of the policy target. Amongst these reasons, there is a range of events whose impact would normally be temporary. Such events include, for example, shifts in the aggregate price level as a result of exceptional movements in the prices of commodities traded in world markets, changes in indirect taxes,⁹ significant government policy changes that directly affect prices, or a natural disaster affecting a major part of the economy.
 - b When disturbances of the kind described in clause 3(a) arise, the Bank will respond consistent with meeting its medium-term target.
- 4 Communication, implementation and accountability**
- a On occasions when the annual rate of inflation is outside the medium-term target range, or when such occasions are projected, the Bank shall explain in Policy Statements made under section 15 of the Act why such outcomes have occurred, or are projected to occur, and what measures it has taken, or proposes to take, to ensure that inflation outcomes remain consistent with the medium-term target.
 - b In pursuing its price stability objective, the Bank shall implement monetary policy in a sustainable, consistent and transparent manner and shall seek to avoid unnecessary instability in output, interest rates and the exchange rate.
 - c The Bank shall be fully accountable for its judgments and actions in implementing monetary policy.”

Source: <http://www.rbnz.govt.nz/>.

To summarize, an inflation-targeting framework normally has the following set of features:

- An independent and credible central bank;
- A commitment to transparency;
- A decision-making framework that considers a wide range of economic and financial market indicators; and
- A clear, symmetric and forward-looking medium-term inflation target, sufficiently above 0 percent to avoid the risk of deflation but low enough to ensure a significant degree of price stability.

Indeed, independence, credibility, and transparency are arguably the crucial ingredients for an effective central bank, whether they target inflation or not.

The Main Exceptions to the Inflation-Targeting Rule Although the practice of inflation targeting is widespread, there are two prominent central banks that have not adopted a formal inflation target along the lines of the New Zealand model: the Bank of Japan and the US Federal Reserve System.

⁹ “Indirect taxes” refer to such taxes as sales taxes and value-added taxes that are levied on goods and services rather than directly on individuals and companies.

The Bank of Japan

Japan's central bank, the Bank of Japan (BoJ), does not target an explicit measure of inflation. Japan's government and its monetary authorities have been trying to combat deflation for much of the last two decades. However, despite their efforts—including the outright printing of money—inflation has remained very weak. Inflation targeting is seen very much as a way of combating and controlling inflation; as such, it would seem to have no place in an economy that suffers from persistent deflation.

Some economists have argued, however, that an inflation target is exactly what the Japanese economy needs. By announcing that positive inflation of say 3 percent is desired by the central bank, this might become a self-fulfilling prophecy if Japanese consumers and companies factor this target into nominal wage and price contracts. But for economic agents to believe that the target will be achieved, they have to believe that the central bank is capable of achieving it. Given that the BoJ has failed to engineer persistent, positive inflation, it is debatable how much credibility Japanese households and corporations would afford such an inflation-targeting policy.

The US Federal Reserve System

It is perhaps rather ironic that the world's most influential central bank, the US Federal Reserve, which controls the supply of the world's de facto reserve currency, the US dollar, does not have an explicit inflation target. However, it is felt that the single-minded pursuit of inflation might not be compatible with the Fed's statutory goal as laid out in the Federal Reserve Act, which charges the Fed's board to:

“promote effectively the goals of maximum employment, stable prices, and moderate long-term interest rates.”

In other words, it has been argued that inflation targeting might compromise the goal of “maximum employment.” In practice, however, the Fed has indicated that it sees core inflation measured by the personal consumption expenditure (PCE) deflator of about, or just below, 2 percent as being compatible with “stable prices.” Financial markets therefore watch this US inflation gauge very carefully in order to try and anticipate the rate actions of the Fed.

Monetary Policy in Developing Countries Developing economies often face significant impediments to the successful operation of any monetary policy—that is, the achievement of price stability. These include:

- the absence of a sufficiently liquid government bond market and developed interbank market through which monetary policy can be conducted;
- a rapidly changing economy, making it difficult to understand what the neutral rate might be and what the equilibrium relationship between monetary aggregates and the real economy might be;
- rapid financial innovation that frequently changes the definition of the money supply;
- a poor track record in controlling inflation in the past, making monetary policy intentions less credible; and
- an unwillingness of governments to grant genuine independence to the central bank.

Taken together, any or all of these impediments might call into question the effectiveness of any developing economy's monetary policy framework, making any related monetary policy goals difficult to achieve.

EXAMPLE 9

Central Bank Effectiveness

- 1 The reason some inflation-targeting banks may target low inflation and not 0 percent inflation is *best* described by which of the following statements?
 - A Some inflation is viewed as being good for an economy.
 - B Targeting zero percent inflation runs a higher risk of a deflationary outcome.
 - C It is very difficult to eliminate all inflation from a modern economy.
- 2 The degree of credibility that a central bank is afforded by economic agents is important because:
 - A they are the lender of last resort.
 - B their targets can become self-fulfilling prophecies.
 - C they are the monopolistic suppliers of the currency.

Solution to 1:

B is correct. Inflation targeting is art, not science. Sometimes inflation will be above target and sometimes below. Were central banks to target zero percent, then inflation would almost certainly be negative on some occasions. If a deflationary mindset then sets in among economic agents, it might be difficult for the central bank to respond to this because they cannot cut interest rates much below zero.

Solution to 2:

B is correct. If a central bank operates within an inflation-targeting regime and if economic agents believe that it will achieve its target, this expectation will become embedded into wage negotiations, for example, and become a self-fulfilling prophecy. Also, banks need to be confident that the central bank will lend them money when all other sources are closed to them; otherwise, they might curtail their lending drastically, leading to a commensurate reduction in money and economic activity.

2.3.5 Exchange Rate Targeting

Many developing economies choose to operate monetary policy by targeting their currency's exchange rate, rather than an explicit level of domestic inflation. Such targeting involves setting a fixed level or band of values for the exchange rate against a major currency, with the central bank supporting the target by buying and selling the national currency in foreign exchange markets. There are recent examples of developed economies using such an approach. In the 1980s, following the failure of its policy of trying to control UK inflation by setting medium-term goals for money supply growth (see Example 5), the UK government decided to operate monetary policy such that the sterling's exchange rate equalled a pre-determined value in terms of German deutschemarks. The basic idea is that by tying a domestic economy's currency to that of an economy with a good track record on inflation, the domestic economy would effectively "import" the inflation experience of the low inflation economy.

Suppose that a developing country wished to maintain the value of its currency against the US dollar. The government and/or central bank would announce the currency exchange rate that they wished to target. To simplify matters, let us assume that the domestic inflation rates are very similar in both countries and that the monetary authorities of the developing economy have set an exchange rate target that is consistent with relative price levels in the two economies. Under these (admittedly unlikely) circumstances, in the absence of shocks, there would be no reason for the exchange rate to deviate significantly from this target level. So as long as domestic inflation closely mirrors US inflation, the exchange rate should remain close to its target (or within a target band). It is in this sense that a successful exchange rate policy imports the inflation of the foreign economy.

Now suppose that economic activity in the developing economy starts to rise rapidly and that domestic inflation in the developing economy rises above the level in the United States. With a freely floating exchange rate regime, the currency of the developing economy would start to fall against the dollar. To arrest this fall, and to protect the exchange rate target, the developing economy's monetary authority sells foreign currency reserves and buys its own currency. This has the effect of reducing the domestic money supply and increasing short-term interest rates. The developing economy experiences a monetary policy tightening which, if expected to bring down inflation, will cause its exchange rate to rise against the dollar.

By contrast, in a scenario in which inflation in the developing country fell relative to the United States, the central bank would need to sell the domestic currency to support the target, tending to increase the domestic money supply and reduce the rate of interest.

In practice, the interventions of the developing economy central bank will simply stabilize the value of its currency, with many frequent adjustments. But this simplistic example should demonstrate one very important fact: *When the central bank or monetary authority chooses to target an exchange rate, interest rates and conditions in the domestic economy must adapt to accommodate this target and domestic interest rates and money supply can become more volatile.*

The monetary authority's commitment to and ability to support the exchange rate target must be credible for exchange rate targeting to be successful. If that is not the case, then speculators may trade against the monetary authority. Speculative attacks forced sterling out of the European Exchange Rate Mechanism in 1992. The fixed exchange rate regime was abandoned and the United Kingdom allowed its currency to float freely. Eventually, the UK government adopted a formal inflation target in 1997. Similarly, in the Asian financial crisis of 1997–1998, Thailand's central bank tried to defend the Thai baht against speculative attacks for much of the first half of 1997 but then revealed at the beginning of July that it had no reserves left. The subsequent devaluation triggered a debt crisis for banks and companies that had borrowed in foreign currency, and contagion spread throughout Asia.

Despite these risks, many currencies are pegged to other currencies, most notably the US dollar. Exhibit 11 shows a list of some of the currencies that were pegged to (fixed against) the US dollar at the end of 2009. Other currencies operate under a "managed exchange rate policy," where they are allowed to fluctuate within a range that is maintained by a monetary authority via market intervention.

Exhibit 11 Select Currencies Pegged to the US Dollar, as of December 2009

- The Netherlands Antilles
- Jordan
- Barbados
- Maldives
- Hong Kong SAR
- Lebanon
- Saudi Arabia
- Oman

Exhibit 11 (Continued)

- Belize
- The Bahamas
- Qatar

EXAMPLE 10**Exchange Rate Targeting**

- 1 When the central bank chooses to target a specific value for its exchange rate:
 - A it must also target domestic inflation.
 - B it must also set targets for broad money growth.
 - C conditions in the domestic economy must adapt to accommodate this target.
- 2 With regard to monetary policy, what is the hoped for benefit of adopting an exchange rate target?
 - A Freedom to pursue redistributive fiscal policy
 - B Freedom to set interest rates according to domestic conditions
 - C To “import” the inflation experience of the economy whose currency is being targeted
- 3 Which of the following is *least* likely to be an impediment to the successful implementation of monetary policy in developing economies?
 - A Fiscal deficits
 - B Rapid financial innovation
 - C Absence of a liquid government bond market

Solution to 1:

C is correct. The adoption of an exchange rate target requires that the central bank set interest rates to achieve this target. If the target comes under pressure, domestic interest rates may have to rise, regardless of domestic conditions. It may have a “target” level of inflation in mind as well as “targets” for broad money growth, but as long as it targets the exchange rate, domestic inflation and broad money trends must simply be allowed to evolve.

Solution to 2:

C is correct. Note that interest rates have to be set to achieve this target and are therefore subordinate to the exchange rate target and partially dependent on economic conditions in the foreign economy.

Solution to 3:

A is correct. Note that the absence of a liquid government bond market through which a central bank can enact open market operations and/or repo transactions will inhibit the implementation of monetary policy—as would rapid financial innovation because such innovation can change the relationship between money

and economic activity. Fiscal deficits, on the other hand, are not normally an impediment to the implementation of monetary policy, although they could be if they were perceived to be unsustainable.

2.4 Contractionary and Expansionary Monetary Policies and the Neutral Rate

Most central banks will adjust liquidity conditions by adjusting their official policy rate.¹⁰ When they believe that economic activity is likely to lead to an increase in inflation, they might increase interest rates, thereby reducing liquidity. In these cases, market analysts describe such actions as **contractionary** because the policy is designed to cause the rate of growth of the money supply and the real economy to contract (see Exhibit 7 for the possible transmission mechanism here). Conversely, when the economy is slowing and inflation and monetary trends are weakening, central banks may increase liquidity by cutting their target rate. In these circumstances, monetary policy is said to be **expansionary**.

Thus, when policy rates are high, monetary policy may be described as contractionary; when low, they may be described as expansionary. But what are they “high” and “low” in comparison to?

The **neutral rate of interest** is often taken as the point of comparison. One way of characterizing the neutral rate is to say that it is that rate of interest that neither spurs on nor slows down the underlying economy. As such, when policy rates are above the neutral rate, monetary policy is contractionary; when they are below the neutral rate, monetary policy is expansionary. The neutral rate should correspond to the average policy rate over a business cycle.

However, economists’ views of the neutral rate for any given economy might differ, and therefore, their view of whether monetary policy is contractionary, neutral, or expansionary might differ too. What economists do agree on is that the neutral policy rate for any economy comprises two components:

- Real trend rate of growth of the underlying economy, and
- Long-run expected inflation.

The real trend rate of growth of an economy is also difficult to discern, but it corresponds to that rate of economic growth that is achievable in the long run that gives rise to stable inflation. If we are thinking about an economy with a credible inflation-targeting regime, where the inflation target is say 2 percent per year and where an analyst believes that the economy can grow sustainably over the long term at a rate of 2.5 percent per year, then they might also estimate the neutral rate to be:

$$\text{Neutral rate} = \text{Trend growth} + \text{Inflation target} = 2.5\% + 2\% = 4.5\% \quad (4)$$

The analyst would therefore describe the central bank’s monetary policy as being contractionary when its policy rate is above 4.5 percent and expansionary when it is below this level.

In practice, central banks often indicate what they believe to be the neutral rate of interest for their economy too. But determining this “neutral rate” is more art than science. For example, many analysts have recently revised down their estimates of trend growth for many western countries following the collapse of the credit bubble, because in many cases, the governments and private individuals of these economies are now being forced to reduce consumption levels and pay down their debts.

¹⁰ Although, if they have reduced their policy rate to 0 percent, to increase liquidity further they have to resort to less-conventional monetary policy measures.

What's the Source of the Shock to the Inflation Rate?

An important aspect of monetary policy for those charged with its conduct is the determination of the source of any shock to the inflation rate. Suppose that the monetary authority sees that inflation is rising beyond its target, or simply in a way that threatens price stability. If this rise was caused by an increase in the confidence of consumers and business leaders, which in turn has led to increases in consumption and investment growth rates, then we could think of it as being a **demand shock**. In this instance, it might be appropriate to tighten monetary policy in order to bring the inflationary pressures generated by these domestic demand pressures under control.

However, suppose instead that the rise in inflation was caused by a rise in the price of oil (for the sake of argument). In this case, the economy is facing a **supply shock**, and raising interest rates might make a bad situation worse. Consumers are already facing an increase in the cost of fuel prices that might cause profits and consumption to fall and eventually unemployment to rise. Putting up interest rates in this instance might simply exacerbate the oil price-induced downturn, which might ultimately cause inflation to fall sharply.

It is important, then, for the monetary authority to try to identify the source of the shock before engineering a contractionary or expansionary monetary policy phase.

2.5 Limitations of Monetary Policy

The limitations of monetary policy include problems in the transmission mechanism and the relative ineffectiveness of interest rate adjustment as a policy tool in deflationary environments.

2.5.1 *Problems in the Monetary Transmission Mechanism*

In Exhibit 7, we presented a stylized representation of the monetary policy transmission mechanism, including the channels of bank lending rates, asset prices, expectations, and exchange rates. The implication of the diagram is that there are channels through which the actions of the central bank or monetary authority are transmitted to both the nominal and real economy. However, there may be some occasions when the will of the monetary authority is not transmitted seamlessly through the economy.

Suppose that a central bank raises interest rates because it is concerned about the strength of underlying inflationary pressures. Long-term interest rates are influenced by the path of expected short-term interest rates, so the outcome of the rate hike will depend on market expectations. Suppose that bond market participants think that short-term rates are already too high, that the monetary authorities are risking a recession, and that the central bank will likely undershoot its inflation target. This fall in inflation expectations could cause long-term interest rates to fall. That would make long-term borrowing cheaper for companies and households, which could in turn stimulate economic activity rather than cause it to contract.

Arguably, the more credible the monetary authority, the more stable the long end of the yield curve; moreover, the monetary authority will be more confident that its “policy message” will be transmitted throughout the economy. A term recently used in the marketplace is **bond market vigilantes**. These “vigilantes” are bond market participants who might reduce their demand for long-term bonds, thus pushing up their yields, if they believe that the monetary authority is losing its grip on inflation. That yield increase could act as a brake on any loose monetary policy stance. Conversely, the vigilantes may push long-term rates down by increasing their demand for long-dated government bonds if they expect that tight monetary policy is likely to cause a sharp slowdown in the economy, thereby loosening monetary conditions for long-term borrowers in the economy.

A credible monetary policy framework and authority will tend not to require the vigilantes to do the work for it.

In very extreme instances, there may be occasions where the demand for money becomes infinitely elastic—that is, where the demand curve is horizontal and individuals are willing to hold additional money balances without any change in the interest rate—so that further injections of money into the economy will not serve to further lower interest rates or affect real activity. This is known as a **liquidity trap**. In this extreme circumstance, monetary policy can become completely ineffective. The economic conditions for a liquidity trap are associated with the phenomenon of **deflation**.

2.5.2 Interest Rate Adjustment in a Deflationary Environment and Quantitative Easing as a Response

Deflation is a pervasive and persistent fall in a general price index and is more difficult for conventional monetary policy to deal with than inflation. This is because cutting nominal interest rates much below zero to stimulate the economy is difficult.¹¹ It is at this point that the economic conditions for a liquidity trap arise.

Deflation raises the real value of debt, while the persistent fall in prices can encourage consumers to put off consumption today, leading to a fall in demand that leads to further deflationary pressure. Thus a deflationary “trap” can develop, which is characterized by weak consumption growth, falling prices, and increases in real debt levels. Japan eventually found itself in such a position following the collapse of its property bubble in the early 1990s.

If conventional monetary policy—the adjustment of short-term interest rates—is no longer capable of stimulating the economy once the zero or even negative nominal interest rate bound has been reached, is monetary policy useless?

In the aftermath of the collapse of the high-tech bubble in November 2002, Federal Reserve Governor (now Chairman) Ben Bernanke gave a speech entitled “Deflation: Making Sure ‘It’ Doesn’t Happen Here.” In this speech, Bernanke stated that inflation was always and everywhere a monetary phenomenon, and he expressed great confidence that by expanding the money supply by various means (including dropping it out of a helicopter on the population below), the Federal Reserve as the monopoly supplier of money could always engineer positive inflation in the US economy. He said:

I am confident that the Fed would take whatever means necessary to prevent significant deflation in the United States and, moreover, that the US central bank, in cooperation with other parts of the government as needed, has sufficient policy instruments to ensure that any deflation that might occur would be both mild and brief.

Following the collapse of the credit bubble in 2008, a number of governments along with their central banks cut rates to (near) zero, including those in the United States and the United Kingdom. However, there was concern that the underlying economies might not respond to this drastic monetary medicine, mainly because the related banking crisis had caused banks to reduce their lending drastically. In order to kick start the process, both the Federal Reserve and the Bank of England effectively printed money and pumped it in to their respective economies. This “unconventional” approach to monetary policy, known as **quantitative easing** (QE), is operationally similar to open market purchase operations but conducted on a much larger scale.

The additional reserves created by central banks in a policy of quantitative easing can be used to buy any assets. The Bank of England chose to buy **gilts** (bonds issued by the UK government), where the focus was on gilts with three to five years

¹¹ Interest rates were cut to below zero in several European countries in 2014 and subsequently in Japan in 2016.

maturity. The idea was that this additional reserve would kick-start lending, causing broad money growth to expand, which would eventually lead to an increase in real economic activity. But there is no guarantee that banks will respond in this way. In a difficult economic climate, it may be better to hold excess reserves rather than to lend to households and businesses that may default.

In the United States, the formal plan for QE mainly involved the purchase of mortgage bonds issued or guaranteed by Freddie Mac and Fannie Mae. Part of the intention was to push down mortgage rates to support the US housing market, as well as to increase the growth rate of broad money. Before implementing this formal program, the Federal Reserve intervened in several other markets that were failing for lack of liquidity, including interbank markets and the commercial paper market. These interventions had a similar effect on the Federal Reserve's balance sheet and the money supply as the later QE program.

This first round of QE by the Federal Reserve was then followed by a further round of QE, known as QE2. In November 2010, the Federal Reserve judged that the US economy had not responded sufficiently to the first round of QE (QE1). The Fed announced that it would create \$600 billion and use this money to purchase long-dated US Treasuries in equal tranches over the following eight months. The purpose of QE2 was to ensure that long bond yields remained low in order to encourage businesses and households to borrow for investment and consumption purposes, respectively.

As long as they have the appropriate authority from the government, central banks can purchase any assets in a quantitative easing program. But the risks involved in purchasing assets with credit risk should be clear. In the end, the central bank is just a special bank. If it accumulates bad assets that then turn out to create losses, it could face a fatal loss of confidence in its main product: fiat money.

2.5.3 Limitations of Monetary Policy: Summary

The ultimate problem for monetary authorities as they try to manipulate the supply of money in order to influence the real economy is that they cannot control the amount of money that households and corporations put in banks on deposit, nor can they easily control the willingness of banks to create money by expanding credit. Taken together, this also means that they cannot always control the money supply. Therefore, there are definite limits to the power of monetary policy.

EXAMPLE 11

The Limits of Monetary Policy: The Case of Japan

The Background

Between the 1950s and 1980s, Japan's economy achieved faster real growth than any other G7 economy. But the terrific success of the economy sowed the seeds of the problems that were to follow. The very high real growth rates achieved by Japan over four decades became built in to asset prices, particularly equity and commercial property prices. Toward the end of the 1980s, asset prices rose to even higher levels when the Bank of Japan followed a very easy monetary policy as it tried to prevent the Japanese yen from appreciating too much against the US dollar. However, when interest rates went up in 1989–1990 and the economy slowed, investors eventually came to believe that the growth assumptions that were built in to asset prices and other aspects of the Japanese economy were unrealistic. This realization caused Japanese asset prices to collapse. For example, the Nikkei 225 stock market index reached 38,915 in 1989; by the end of March 2003, it had fallen by 80 percent to 7,972. The collapse in asset prices caused wealth to decline dramatically. Consumer confidence understandably

fell sharply too, and consumption growth slowed. Corporate spending also fell, while bank lending contracted sharply in the weak economic climate. Although many of these phenomena are apparent in all recessions, the situation was made worse when deflation set in. In an environment when prices are falling, consumers may put off discretionary spending today until tomorrow; by doing this, however, they exacerbate the deflationary environment. Deflation also raises the real value of debts; as deflation takes hold, borrowers find the real value of their debts rising and may try to increase their savings accordingly. Once again, such actions exacerbate the recessionary conditions.

The Monetary Policy Response

Faced with such a downturn, the conventional monetary policy response is to cut interest rates to try to stimulate real economic activity. The Japanese central bank, the Bank of Japan, cut rates from 8 percent in 1990 to 1 percent by 1996. By February 2001, the Japanese policy rate was cut to zero where it stayed.

Once rates are at or near zero, there are two broad approaches suggested by theory, though the two are usually complementary. First, the central bank can try to convince markets that interest rates will remain low for a long time, even after the economy and inflation pick up. This will tend to lower interest rates along the yield curve. Second, the central bank can try to increase the money supply by purchasing assets from the private sector, so-called quantitative easing. The Bank of Japan (BoJ) did both in 2001. It embarked on a program of quantitative easing supplemented by an explicit promise not to raise short-term interest rates until deflation had given way to inflation.

Quantitative easing simply involves the printing of money by the central bank. In practice, this involved the BoJ using open market operations to add reserves to the banking system through the direct purchase of government securities in the open market.

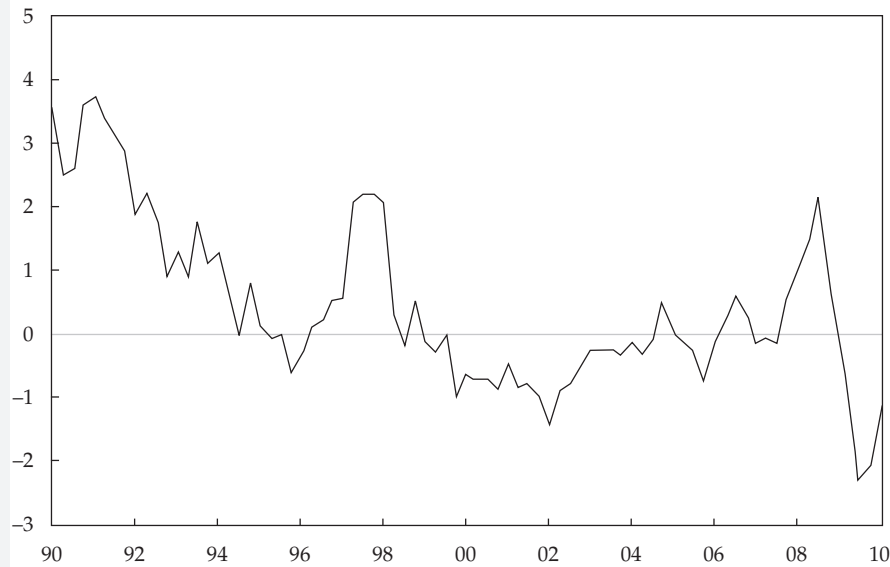
The reserve levels became the new target. The BoJ's monetary policy committee determined the level of reserves and the quantity of bond purchases that should be undertaken, rather than voting on the policy rate.

The success of this policy is difficult to judge. As the chart below shows, although deflation turned to inflation for a while, it returned to deflation in 2008–2009 when the Japanese economy suffered a sharp recession along with much of the rest of the world. At that time, having reversed its QE policy during 2004–2008 by reducing its bond holdings, the Bank of Japan began to buy again.

Economists debate the point, but arguably, the Bank of Japan needed to implement a much larger program of QE to eliminate deflation. Japan's program amounted to a cumulative 7–8 percent of GDP spread over three years, whereas the United States and United Kingdom implemented programs totaling 12 percent and 14 percent, respectively, in about one year between 2009 and 2010. The Japanese experience suggests that there may be limits to the power of monetary policy.

Exhibit 12 Inflation and Deflation in Japan

Inflation (% year over year)



Source: Thomson Financial.

EXAMPLE 12**Evaluating Monetary Policy**

- 1 If an economy's trend GDP growth rate is 3 percent and its central bank has a 2 percent inflation target, which policy rate is *most consistent* with an expansionary monetary policy?
 - A 4 percent
 - B 5 percent
 - C 6 percent
- 2 An increase in a central bank's policy rate might be expected to reduce inflationary pressures by:
 - A reducing consumer demand.
 - B reducing the foreign exchange value of the currency.
 - C driving up asset prices leading to an increase in personal sector wealth.
- 3 Which of the following statements *best* describes a fundamental limitation of monetary policy? Monetary policy is limited because central bankers:
 - A cannot control the inflation rate perfectly.
 - B are appointed by politicians and are therefore never truly independent.
 - C cannot control the amount of money that economic agents put in banks, nor the willingness of banks to make loans.

Solution to 1:

A is correct. The neutral rate of interest, which in this example is 5 percent, is considered to be that rate of interest that neither spurs on nor slows down the underlying economy. As such, when policy rates are above the neutral rate, monetary policy is contractionary; when they are below the neutral rate, monetary policy is expansionary. It comprises two components: the real trend rate of growth of the underlying economy (in this example, 3 percent) and long-run expected inflation (in this example, 2 percent).

Solution to 2:

A is correct. If an increase in the central bank's policy rate is successfully transmitted via the money markets to other parts of the financial sector, consumer demand might decline as the rate of interest on mortgages and other credit rises. This decline in consumer demand should, all other things being equal and amongst other affects, lead to a reduction in upward pressure on consumer prices.

Solution to 3:

C is correct. Central bankers do not control the decisions of individuals and banks that can influence the money creation process.

3**FISCAL POLICY**

The second set of tools used for influencing economic activity consists of the tools associated with fiscal policy. These involve the use of government spending and changing tax revenue to affect a number of aspects of the economy:

- Overall level of aggregate demand in an economy and hence the level of economic activity.
- Distribution of income and wealth among different segments of the population.
- Allocation of resources between different sectors and economic agents.

Often, a discussion of fiscal policy focuses on the impact of changes in the difference between government spending and revenue on the aggregate economy, rather than on the actual levels of spending and revenue themselves.

3.1 Roles and Objectives of Fiscal Policy

A primary aim for fiscal policy is to help manage the economy through its influence on aggregate national output, that is, real GDP.

3.1.1 Fiscal Policy and Aggregate Demand

Aggregate demand is the amount companies and households plan to spend. We can consider a number of ways that fiscal policy can influence aggregate demand. For example, an **expansionary** policy could take one or more of the following forms:

- Cuts in personal income tax raise disposable income with the objective of boosting aggregate demand.
- Cuts in sales (indirect) taxes to lower prices which raises real incomes with the objective of raising consumer demand.
- Cuts in corporation (company) taxes to boost business profits, which may raise capital spending.

- Cuts in tax rates on personal savings to raise disposable income for those with savings, with the objective of raising consumer demand.
- New public spending on social goods and infrastructure, such as hospitals and schools, boosting personal incomes with the objective of raising aggregate demand.

We must stress, however, that the reliability and magnitude of these relationships will vary over time and from country to country. For example, in a recession with rising unemployment, it is not always the case that cuts in income taxes will raise consumer spending because consumers may wish to raise their precautionary (rainy day) saving in anticipation of further deterioration in the economy. Indeed, in very general terms economists are often divided into two camps regarding the workings of fiscal policy: **Keynesians** believe that fiscal policy can have powerful effects on aggregate demand, output, and employment when there is substantial spare capacity in an economy. **Monetarists** believe that fiscal changes only have a temporary effect on aggregate demand and that monetary policy is a more effective tool for restraining or boosting inflationary pressures. Monetarists tend not to advocate using monetary policy for countercyclical adjustment of aggregate demand. This intellectual division will naturally be reflected in economists' divergent views on the efficacy of the large fiscal expansions observed in many countries following the credit crisis of 2008, along with differing views on the possible impact of quantitative easing.

3.1.2 Government Receipts and Expenditure in Major Economies

In Exhibit 13, we present the total government revenues as a percentage of GDP for some major economies. This is the share of a country's output that is gathered by the government through taxes and such related items as fees, charges, fines, and capital transfers. It is often considered as a summary measure of the extent to which a government is involved both directly and indirectly in the economic activity of a country.

Taxes are formally defined as compulsory, unrequited payments to the general government (they are unrequited in the sense that benefits provided by a government to taxpayers are usually not related to payments). Exhibit 13 contains taxes on incomes and profits, social security contributions, indirect taxes on goods and services, employment taxes, and taxes on the ownership and transfer of property.

Exhibit 13 General Government Revenues as Percent of GDP

	1995	2000	2005	2006	2007	2008
Australia	34.5	36.1	36.5	36.4	36.0	35.3
Germany	45.1	46.4	43.6	43.7	43.8	43.8
Japan	31.2	31.4	31.7	34.5	33.5	34.4
United Kingdom	38.2	40.3	40.8	41.4	41.4	42.2
United States	33.8	35.4	33.0	33.8	34.0	32.3
OECD	37.9	39.0	37.7	38.6	38.6	37.9

Source: Organisation for Economic Co-Operation and Development (OECD).

Taxes on income and profits have been fairly constant for the Organisation for Economic Co-Operation and Development (OECD) countries overall at around 12.5–13 percent of GDP since the mid-1990s, while taxes on goods and services have been steady at about 11 percent of GDP for that period. Variations between countries can be substantial; taxes on goods and services are around 5 percent of GDP for the United States and Japan but over 16 percent for Denmark.

Exhibit 14 shows the percentage of GDP represented by government expenditure in a variety of major economies over time. Generally, these have been fairly constant since 1995, though Germany had a particularly high number at the start of the period because of reunification costs.

Exhibit 14 General Government Expenditures as Percent of GDP

	1995	2000	2005	2006	2007	2008
Australia	38.2	35.2	34.8	34.5	34.2	34.3
Germany	54.8	45.1	46.9	45.3	43.6	43.8
Japan	36.0	39.0	38.4	36.2	36.0	37.1
United Kingdom	44.1	36.6	44.0	44.1	44.2	47.5
United States	37.1	33.9	36.2	36.0	36.8	38.8
OECD	42.7	38.7	40.5	39.9	39.9	41.4

Source: OECD.

Clearly, the possibility that fiscal policy can influence output means that it may be an important tool for **economic stabilization**. In a recession, governments can raise spending (**expansionary fiscal policy**) in an attempt to raise employment and output. In boom times—when an economy has full employment and wages and prices are rising too fast—then government spending may be reduced and taxes raised (**contractionary fiscal policy**).

Hence, a key concept is the **budget surplus/deficit**, which is the difference between government revenue and expenditure for a fixed period of time, such as a fiscal or calendar year. Government revenue includes tax revenues net of transfer payments; government spending includes interest payments on the government debt. Analysts often focus on changes in the budget surplus or deficit from year to year as indicators of whether the fiscal policy is getting tighter or looser. An increase in a budget surplus would be associated with contractionary fiscal policy, while a rise in a deficit is an expansionary fiscal policy. Of course, over the course of a business cycle the budget surplus will vary automatically in a countercyclical way. For example, as an economy slows and unemployment rises, government spending on social insurance and unemployment benefits will also rise and add to aggregate demand. This is known as an **automatic stabilizer**. Similarly, if boom conditions ensue and employment and incomes are high, then progressive income and profit taxes are rising and also act as automatic stabilizers increasing budget surplus or reducing budget deficit. The great advantage of automatic stabilizers is that they are indeed automatic, not requiring the identification of shocks to which policymakers must consider a response. By reducing the responsiveness of the economy to shocks, these automatic stabilizers reduce output fluctuations. Automatic stabilizers should be distinguished from discretionary fiscal policies, such as changes in government spending or tax rates, which are actively used to stabilize aggregate demand. If government spending and revenues are equal, then the budget is **balanced**.

Exhibit 15 General Government Net Borrowing or Lending as Percent of GDP

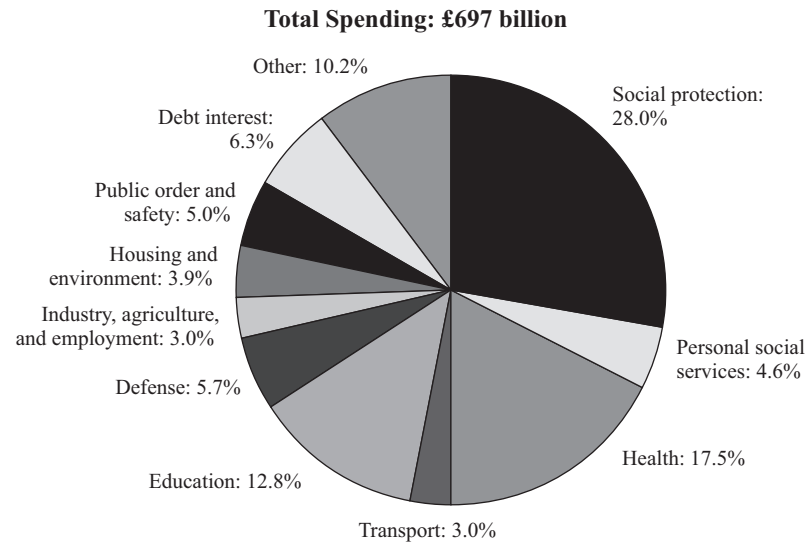
	1995	2000	2005	2006	2007	2008
Australia	-3.7	0.9	1.7	1.9	1.8	1.0
Germany	-9.7	1.3	-3.3	-1.6	0.2	0.0
Japan	-4.7	-7.6	-6.7	-1.6	-2.5	-2.7
United Kingdom	-5.8	3.7	-3.3	-2.7	-2.7	-5.3
United States	-3.3	1.5	-3.3	-2.2	-2.8	-6.5
OECD	-4.8	0.2	-2.7	-1.3	-1.3	-1.3

Source: OECD.

EXAMPLE 13
Sources and Uses of Government Cash Flows: The Case of the United Kingdom

The precise components of revenue and expenditure will of course vary over time and between countries. But, as an example of the breakdown of expenditure and revenue, in Exhibits 16 and 17 we have presented the budget projections of the United Kingdom for 2010/2011. The budget projected that total spending would come to £697bn, while total revenue would only be £548bn. The government was therefore forecasting a budget shortfall of £149bn for the fiscal year, meaning that it had an associated need to borrow £149bn from the private sector in the United Kingdom or the private and public sectors of other economies.

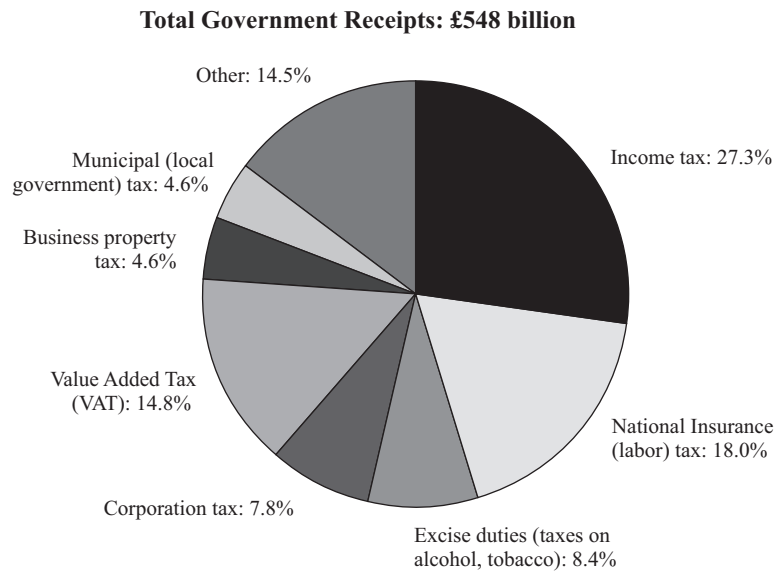
Exhibit 16 Where Does the Money Go? The United Kingdom, 2010–2011



Note: "Other" includes recreation, culture, religion, public sector pensions, and general public services.

Source: HM Treasury, United Kingdom.

Exhibit 17 Where Does the Money Come From? The United Kingdom, 2010–2011

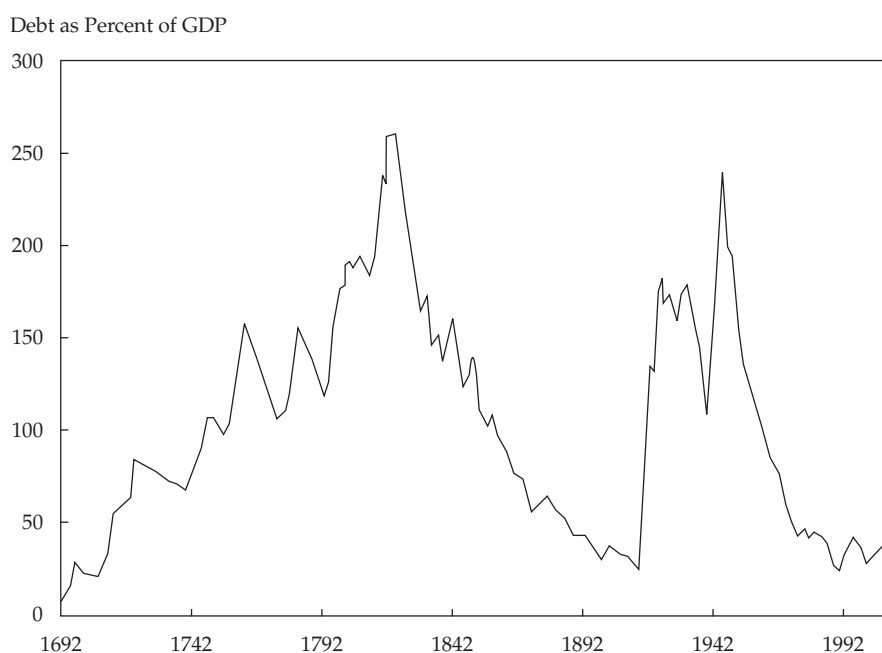


Note: "Other Receipts" includes capital taxes, stamp duties on share and property transactions, and vehicle excise duties ("road tax").

3.1.3 Deficits and the National Debt

Government deficits are the difference between government revenues and expenditures over a period of calendar time, usually a year. Government (or national) debt is the accumulation over time of these deficits. Government deficits are financed by borrowing from the private sector, often via private pension and insurance fund portfolio investments. We saw above that governments are more likely to have deficits than surpluses over long periods of time. As a result, there may exist a large stock of outstanding government debt owned by the private sector. This will vary as the business cycle ebbs and flows. Exhibit 18 shows the time path of the ratio of public debt to GDP for the United Kingdom over several hundred years. It can be clearly seen that the major cause of fluctuations in that ratio through history has been the financing of wars, in particular the Napoleonic Wars of 1799–1815 and the First and Second World Wars of 1914–1918 and 1939–1945.

Exhibit 18 UK National Debt as Percent of GDP (1692–2010)



Source: <http://ukpublicspending.co.uk>.

With the onset of the credit crisis of 2008, governments actively sought to stimulate their economies through increased expenditures without raising taxes and revenues. This led to increased borrowing, shown in Exhibits 15 and 19, which has become a concern in the financial markets in 2010 for such countries as Greece. Indeed, between 2008 and 2009, central government debt rose from \$1.2 trillion to \$1.6 trillion in the United Kingdom and from \$5.8 trillion to \$7.5 trillion for the United States.¹²

Exhibit 19 General Government Gross Financial Liabilities as Percent of GDP

	1995	2000	2005	2006	2007	2008
Australia	42.5	25.4	16.9	16.2	15.3	14.3
Germany	55.7	60.4	71.1	69.2	65.3	68.8
Japan	86.2	135.4	175.3	172.1	167.1	172.1
United Kingdom	51.6	45.1	46.1	45.9	46.9	56.8
United States	70.6	54.4	61.3	60.8	61.8	70.0
OECD	69.9	68.3	75.9	74.6	73.1	78.4

Source: www.oecd.org.

Ultimately, if the ratio of debt to GDP rises beyond a certain unknown point, then the solvency of the country comes into question. An additional indicator for potential insolvency is the ratio of interest rate payments to GDP, which is shown for some major economies in Exhibit 20. These represent payments required of governments to service their debts as a percentage of national output and as such reflect both the size of debts and the interest charged on them. Such ratios could rise rapidly with the growing debt ratios of 2009 and 2010, particularly if the interest rates on the debt were to rise from the historically low levels.

Exhibit 20 General Government Net Debt Interest Payments as Percent of GDP

	1995	2000	2005	2006	2007	2008
Australia	3.5	1.7	1.0	0.8	0.6	0.5
Germany	2.9	2.7	2.4	2.4	2.4	2.3
Japan	1.3	1.5	0.8	0.6	0.6	0.9
United Kingdom	3.1	2.4	1.8	1.8	1.8	1.9
United States	3.5	2.5	1.8	1.8	1.9	1.8
OECD	3.6	2.5	1.8	1.7	1.7	1.6

Source: OECD.

Governments' spending was far in excess of revenues following the credit crisis of 2007–2010 as governments tried to stimulate their economies; this level of spending raised concerns in some quarters about the scale of governmental debt accumulation. Exhibit 19 shows that gross government financial liabilities relative to GDP for the OECD countries overall rose from 73.1 percent in 2007 to 78.4 percent in 2008. In Japan, where fiscal spending has been used to stimulate the economy from the early 1990s, the ratio has risen from 86.2 percent in 1995 to 172.1 percent in 2008. If an economy grows in real terms, so do the real tax revenues and hence the ability to service a growing real debt at constant tax rate levels. However, if the real growth in the economy is lower than the real interest rate on the debt, then the debt ratio will worsen even though the economy is growing because the debt burden (i.e., the real interest rate times the debt) grows faster than the economy. Hence, an important issue for governments and their creditors is whether their additional spending leads to sufficiently higher tax revenues to pay the interest on the debt used to finance the extra spending.

However, within a national economy, the real value of the outstanding debt will fall if the overall price level rises (i.e., inflation, and hence a rise in nominal GDP even if real GDP is static) and thus the ratio of debt to GDP may not be rising. But if the general price level falls (i.e., deflation), then the ratio may stay elevated for longer. If net interest payments rise rapidly and investors lose confidence in a government's ability to honour its debts, then financing costs may escalate even more quickly and make the situation unstable.

Should we be concerned about the size of a national debt (relative to GDP)? There are strong arguments both for and against:

The arguments against being concerned about national debt (relative to GDP) are as follows:

- The scale of the problem may be overstated because the debt is owed internally to fellow citizens. This is certainly the case in Japan, where 93 percent is owned by Japanese residents. In the United States and United Kingdom, the figures are 63 percent and 69 percent, respectively. South Korea and Canada have only 7 percent and 5 percent non-resident ownership of government debt, respectively. But Italy has 49 percent.¹³
- A proportion of the money borrowed may have been used for capital investment projects or enhancing human capital (e.g., training, education); these should lead to raised future output and tax revenues.
- Large fiscal deficits require tax changes which may actually reduce distortions caused by existing tax structures.
- Deficits may have no net impact because the private sector may act to offset fiscal deficits by increasing saving in anticipation of future increased taxes. This argument is known as “Ricardian equivalence” and is discussed in more detail later.
- If there is unemployment in an economy, then the debt is not diverting activity away from productive uses (and indeed the debt could be associated with an increase in employment).

The arguments in favour of being concerned are:

- High levels of debt to GDP may lead to higher tax rates in the search for higher tax revenues. This may lead to disincentives to economic activity as the higher marginal tax rates reduce labour effort and entrepreneurial activity, leading to lower growth in the long run.
- If markets lose confidence in a government, then the central bank may have to print money to finance a government deficit. This may lead ultimately to high inflation, as evidenced by the economic history of Germany in the 1920s and more recently in Zimbabwe.
- Government borrowing may divert private sector investment from taking place (an effect known as **crowding out**); if there is a limited amount of savings to be spent on investment, then larger government demands will lead to higher interest rates and lower private sector investing.

An important distinction to make is between long- and short-run effects. Over short periods of time (say, a few years), crowding out may have little effect. If it lasts for a longer time, however, then capital accumulation in an economy may be damaged. Similarly, tax distortions may not be too serious over the short-term but will have a more substantial impact over many years.

¹³ These data come from the Bank for International Settlements (BIS), IMF, and central bank websites. All figures are as of 2008.

EXAMPLE 14**Types of Fiscal Policies**

- 1 Which of the following is *not* associated with an expansionary fiscal policy?
 - A A rise in capital gains taxes
 - B Cuts in personal income taxes
 - C New capital spending by the government on road building
- 2 Fiscal expansions will *most likely* have the most impact on aggregate output when the economy is in which of the following states?
 - A Full employment
 - B Near full employment
 - C Considerable unemployment
- 3 Which one of the following is *most likely* a reason to *not* use fiscal deficits as an expansionary tool?
 - A They may crowd out private investment.
 - B They may facilitate tax changes to reduce distortions in an economy.
 - C They may stimulate employment when there is substantial unemployment in an economy.

Solution to 1:

A is correct. A rise in capital gains taxes reduces income available for spending and hence reduces aggregate demand, other things being equal. Cutting income tax raises disposable income, while new road building raises employment and incomes; in both cases, aggregate demand rises and hence policy is expansionary.

Solution to 2:

C is correct. When an economy is close to full employment a fiscal expansion raising aggregate demand can have little impact on output because there are few spare unused resources (e.g., labour or idle factories); instead, there will be upward pressure on prices (i.e., inflation).

Solution to 3:

A is correct. A frequent argument against raises in fiscal deficits is that the additional borrowing to fund the deficit in financial markets will displace private sector borrowing for investment (i.e., “crowd it out”).

3.2 Fiscal Policy Tools and the Macroeconomy

We now look at the nature of the fiscal tools available to a government. Government spending can take a variety of forms:

- **Transfer payments** are welfare payments made through the social security system and, depending on the country, comprise payments for state pensions, housing benefits, tax credits and income support for poorer families, child benefits, unemployment benefits, and job search allowances. Transfer payments exist to provide a basic minimum level of income for low-income households, and they also provide a means by which a government can change the overall income distribution in a society. Note that these payments are not included

in the definition of GDP because they do not reflect a reward to a factor of production for economic activity. Also, they are not considered to be part of general government spending on goods and services.

- **Current government spending** involves spending on goods and services that are provided on a regular, recurring basis—including health, education, and defense. Clearly, such spending will have a big impact on a country's skill level and overall labour productivity.
- **Capital expenditure** includes infrastructure spending on roads, hospitals, prisons, and schools. This investment spending will add to a nation's capital stock and affect productive potential for an economy.

Government spending can be justified on both economic and social grounds:

- To provide such services as defense that benefit all citizens equally.
- For infrastructure capital spending (e.g., roads) to help a country's economic growth.
- To guarantee a minimum level of income for poorer people and hence redistribute income and wealth (e.g., welfare and related benefits).
- To influence a government's economic objectives of low inflation and high employment and growth (e.g., management of aggregate demand).
- To subsidize the development of innovative and high-risk new products or markets (e.g., alternative energy sources).

Government revenues can take several forms:

- **Direct taxes** are levied on income, wealth, and corporate profits and include capital gains taxes, national insurance (or labour) taxes, and corporate taxes. They may also include a local income or property tax for both individuals and businesses. Inheritance tax on a deceased's estate will have both revenue-raising and wealth-redistribution aspects.
- **Indirect taxes** are taxes on spending on a variety of goods and services in an economy—such as the excise duties on fuel, alcohol, and tobacco as well as sales (or value-added tax)—and often exclude health and education products on social grounds. In addition, taxes on gambling may also be considered to have a social aspect in deterring such activity, while fuel duties will have an environmental purpose in making fuel consumption and hence travel more expensive.

Taxes can be justified both in terms of raising revenues to finance expenditures and in terms of income and wealth redistribution policies. Economists typically consider four desirable attributes of a tax policy:

- **Simplicity:** This refers to ease of compliance by the taxpayer and enforcement by the revenue authorities. The final liability should be certain and not easily manipulated.
- **Efficiency:** Taxation should interfere as little as possible in the choices individuals make in the market place. Taxes affect behaviour and should, in general, discourage work and investment as little as possible. A major philosophical issue among economists is whether tax policy should deliberately deviate from efficiency to promote "good" economic activities, such as savings, and discourage harmful ones, such as tobacco consumption. Although most would accept a limited role in guiding consumer choices, some will question how well equipped policymakers are to decide on such objectives and whether there will be unwanted ancillary effects, such as giving tax breaks for saving among people who already save and whose behaviour does not change.

- **Fairness:** This refers to the fact that people in similar situations should pay the same taxes (“horizontal equity”) and that richer people should pay more taxes (“vertical equity”). Of course, the concept of fairness is really subjective. Still, most would agree that income tax rates should be progressive—that is, that households and corporations should pay proportionately more as their incomes rise. However, some people advocate “flat” tax rates, whereby all should pay the same proportion of taxable income.
- **Revenue sufficiency:** Although revenue sufficiency may seem obvious as a criterion for tax policy, there may be a conflict with fairness and efficiency. For example, one may believe that increasing income tax rates to reduce fiscal deficits reduces labour effort and that tax rate increases are thus an inefficient policy tool.

EXAMPLE 15

Some Issues with Tax Policy

- 1 *Incentives.* Some economists believe that income taxes reduce the incentive to work, save, and invest and that the overall tax burden has become excessive. These ideas are often associated with supply-side economics and the US economist Arthur Laffer. A variety of income tax cuts and simplifications have taken place in the United States since 1981, and although there is substantial controversy, some claim that work effort did rise (although tax cuts had little impact on savings). Similarly, some found that business investment did rise, while others claimed it was independent of such cuts.
- 2 *Fairness.* How do we judge the fairness of the tax system? One way is to calibrate the tax burden falling on different groups of people ranked by their income and to assess how changes in taxes affect these groups. Of course, this imposes huge data demands on investigators and must be considered incomplete. In the United States, it has been found that the federal system is indeed highly progressive. Many countries use such methods to analyze the impact of tax changes on different income groups when they announce their annual fiscal policy plans.
- 3 *Tax reform.* There is continuous debate on reforming tax policy. Should there be a flat-rate tax on labour income? Should all investment be immediately deducted for corporate taxes? Should more revenue be sourced from consumption taxes? Should taxes be indexed to inflation? Should dividends be taxed when profits have already been subject to tax? Should estates be taxed at all? Many of these issues are raised in the context of their impact on economic growth.

EXAMPLE 16

Fiscal Tools

- 1 Which of the following is *not* a tool of fiscal policy?
 - A A rise in social transfer payments
 - B The purchase of new equipment for the armed forces

- C** An increase in deposit requirements for the buying of houses
- 2** Which of the following is not an indirect tax?
- A** Excise duty
- B** Value-added Tax
- C** Employment taxes
- 3** Which of the following statements is *most* accurate?
- A** Direct taxes are useful for discouraging alcohol consumption.
- B** Because indirect taxes cannot be changed quickly, they are of no use in fiscal policy.
- C** Government capital spending decisions are slow to plan, implement, and execute and hence are of little use for short-term economic stabilization.

Solution to 1:

C is correct. Rises in deposit requirements for house purchases are intended to reduce the demand for credit for house purchases and hence would be considered a tool of monetary policy. This is a policy used actively in several countries, and is under consideration by regulators in other countries to constrain house price inflation.

Solution to 2:

C is correct. Both excise duty and VAT are applied to prices, whereas taxes on employment apply to labour income and hence are not indirect taxes.

Solution to 3:

C is correct. Capital spending is much slower to implement than changes in indirect taxes; and indirect taxes affect alcohol consumption more directly than direct taxes.

3.2.1 *The Advantages and Disadvantages of Using the Different Tools of Fiscal Policy*

The different tools used to expedite fiscal policy as a means to try to put or keep an economy on a path of positive, stable growth with low inflation have both advantages and disadvantages:

Advantages:

- Indirect taxes can be adjusted almost immediately after they are announced and can influence spending behaviour instantly and generate revenue for the government at little or no cost to the government.
- Social policies, such as discouraging alcohol or tobacco use, can be adjusted almost instantly by raising such taxes.

Disadvantages:

- Direct taxes are more difficult to change without considerable notice, often many months, because payroll computer systems will have to be adjusted (although the announcement itself may well have a powerful effect on spending behaviour more immediately). The same may be said for welfare and other social transfers.
- Capital spending plans take longer to formulate and implement, typically over a period of years. For example, building a road or hospital requires detailed planning, legal permissions, and implementation. This is often a valid criticism of an active fiscal policy and was widely heard during the US fiscal stimulus in 2009–2010. On the other hand, such policies add to the productive potential of an economy, unlike a change in personal or indirect taxes. Of course, the slower the impact of a fiscal change, the more likely other exogenous changes will already be influencing the economy before the fiscal change kicks in.

The above-mentioned tools may also have expectational effects at least as powerful as the direct effects. The announcement of future income tax rises a year ahead could potentially lead to reduced consumption immediately. Such delayed tax rises were a feature of UK fiscal policy of 2009–2010; however, the evidence is anecdotal because spending behaviour changed little until the delayed tax changes actually came into force.

We may also consider the relative potency of the different fiscal tools. Direct government spending has a far bigger impact on aggregate spending and output than income tax cuts or transfer increases; however, if the latter are directed at the poorest in society (basically, those who spend all their income), then this will give a relatively strong boost. Further discussion and examples of these comparisons are given in section 4 below on the interaction between monetary and fiscal policy.

3.2.2 Modeling the Impact of Taxes and Government Spending: The Fiscal Multiplier

The conventional macroeconomic model has government spending, G , adding directly to aggregate demand, AD , and reducing it via taxes, T ; these comprise both indirect taxes on expenditures and direct taxes on factor incomes. Further government spending is increased via the payment of transfer benefits, B , such as social security payments. Hence, the net impact of the government sector on aggregate demand is:

$$G - T + B = \text{Budget surplus OR deficit} \quad (5)$$

Net taxes (NT ; taxes less transfers) reduce disposable income (YD) available to individuals relative to national income or output (Y) as follows:

$$YD = Y - NT = (1 - t) Y \quad (6)$$

where t is the **net tax rate**. Net taxes are often assumed to be proportional to national income, Y , and hence total tax revenue from net taxes is tY . If $t = 20\%$ or 0.2 , then for every \$1 rise in national income, net tax revenue will rise by 20 cents and household disposable income will rise by 80 cents.

The **fiscal multiplier** is important in macroeconomics because it tells us how much output changes as exogenous changes occur in government spending or taxation. The recipients of the increase in government spending will typically save a proportion $1 - c$ of each additional dollar of disposable income, where c is the **marginal propensity to consume** (MPC) this additional income. Ignoring income taxes, we can see that \$ c will, in turn, be spent by these recipients on more goods and services. The recipients of this \$ c will themselves spend a proportion c of this additional income (i.e., \$ $c \times c$, or c -squared). This process continues with income and spending growing at a constant rate of c as it passes from hand to hand through the economy. This is the familiar geometric progression with constant factor c , where $0 < c < 1$. The sum of this geometric series is $1/(1 - c)$.

We define s as the **marginal propensity to save** (MPS), the amount saved out of an additional dollar of disposable income. Because $c + s = 1$, hence $s = 1 - c$.

Exhibit 21 Disposable Income, Saving, and the MPC

Income	Income tax	Disposable income	Consumption	Saving
\$100	\$20	\$80	\$72	\$8

In Exhibit 21, the MPC out of disposable income is 90% or 0.9 (72/80). The MPS is therefore $1 - 0.9$ or 0.1

For every dollar of new (additional) spending, total incomes and spending rises by $\$1/(1 - c)$. And because $0 < c < 1$, this must be > 1 ; this is the multiplier. If $c = 0.9$ (or individuals spend 90 percent of additions to income), then the multiplier = $1/(1 - 0.9) = 10$.

A formal definition of the multiplier would be the ratio of the change in equilibrium output to the change in autonomous spending that caused the change. This is a monetary measure, but because prices are assumed to be constant in this analysis, real and monetary amounts are identical. Given that fiscal policy is about changes in government spending, G , net taxes, NT , and tax rates, t , we can see that the multiplier is an important tool for calibrating the possible impact of policy changes on output. How can we introduce tax changes into the multiplier concept? We do this by introducing the idea of disposable income, YD , defined as income less income taxes net of transfers, $Y - NT$.

Households spend a proportion c of disposable income, YD , that is, cYD or $c(Y - NT)$ or $c(1 - t)Y$. The **marginal propensity to consume** in the presence of taxes is then $c(1 - t)$. If the government increases spending, say on road building, by an amount, G , then disposable income rises by $(1 - t)G$ and consumer spending by $c(1 - t)G$. Provided there are unused sources of capital and labour in the economy, this leads to a rise in aggregate demand and output; the recipients of this extra consumption spending will have $(1 - t)c(1 - t)G$ extra disposable income available and will spend c of it. This cumulative extra spending and income will continue to spread through the economy at a decreasing rate as $0 < c(1 - t) < 1$. The overall final impact on aggregate demand and output will effectively be the sum of this decreasing geometric series with common ratio $c(1 - t)$, and this sums to $1/[1 - c(1 - t)]$. This is known as the **fiscal multiplier** and is very relevant to studies of fiscal policy as changes in G or tax rates will affect output in an economy through the value of the multiplier.

For example, if the tax rate is 20 percent, or 0.2, and the marginal propensity to spend is 90 percent, or 0.9, then the fiscal multiplier will be: $1/[1 - 0.9(1 - 0.2)]$ or $1/0.28 = 3.57$. In other words, if the government raises G by \$1 billion, total incomes and spending rise by \$3.57 billion.

Discretionary fiscal policy (see below) will involve changes in these variables with a view to influencing Y .

3.2.3 The Balanced Budget Multiplier

If a government increases G by the same amount as it raises taxes, the aggregate output actually rises. Why is this?

It is because the marginal propensity to spend out of disposable income is less than 1, and hence for every dollar less in YD , spending only falls $\$c$. Hence, aggregate spending falls less than the tax rise by a factor of c . A balanced budget leads to a rise in output, which in turn leads to further rises in output and incomes via the multiplier effect.

Suppose an economy has an equilibrium output or income level of \$1,000 consisting of \$900 of consumption and \$100 of investment spending, which is fixed and not related to income. If government spending is set at \$200, financed by a tax rate of 20 percent (giving tax revenue of \$200), what will happen to output? First, additional government spending of \$200 will raise output by that amount; but will taxes of \$200 reduce output by a similar amount? Not if the MPC is less than 1; suppose it is 0.9, and hence spending will only fall by 90 percent of \$200, or \$180. The initial impact of the balanced fiscal package on aggregate demand will be to raise it by $\$200 - \$180 = \$20$. This additional output will, in turn, lead to further increases in income and output through the multiplier effect.

Even though the above policy involved a combination of government spending and tax increases that initially left the government's budget deficit/surplus unchanged, the induced rise in output will lead to further tax revenue increases and a further change in the budget position. Could the government adjust the initial change in spending to offset exactly the eventual total change in tax revenues? The answer is "yes," and we can ask what will be the effect on output of this genuinely balanced budget change? This balanced budget multiplier always takes the value unity.

EXAMPLE 17

Government Debt, Deficits, and Ricardo

The total stock of government debt is the outstanding stock of IOUs issued by a government and not yet repaid. They are issued when the government has insufficient tax revenues to meet expenditures and has to borrow from the public. The size of the outstanding debt equals the cumulative quantity of net borrowing it has done, and the fiscal or budget deficit is added in the current period to the outstanding stock of debt. If the outstanding stock of debt falls, we have a negative deficit or a surplus.

If a government reduces taxation by \$10 billion one year and replaces that revenue with borrowing of \$10 billion from the public, will it have any real impact on the economy? The important issue here is how people perceive that action: Do they recognize what will happen over time as interest and bond principal have to be repaid out of future taxes? If so, they may think of the bond finance as equivalent to delayed taxation finance; thus, the reduction in current taxation will have no impact on spending because individuals save more in anticipation of higher future taxes to repay the bond. This is called **Ricardian equivalence** after the economist David Ricardo. If people do not correctly anticipate all the future taxes required to repay the additional government debt, then they feel wealthier when the debt is issued and may increase their spending, adding to aggregate demand.

Whether Ricardian equivalence holds in practice is ultimately an empirical issue and is difficult to calibrate conclusively given the number of things that are changing at any time in a modern economy.

3.3 Fiscal Policy Implementation: Active and Discretionary Fiscal Policy

In the following, we discuss major issues in fiscal policy implementation.

3.3.1 Deficits and the Fiscal Stance

An important question is the extent to which the budget is a useful measure of the government's fiscal stance. Does the size of the deficit actually indicate whether fiscal policy is **expansionary** or **contractionary**? Clearly, such a question is important for economic policymakers insofar as the deficit can change for reasons unrelated to actual fiscal policy changes. For example, the **automatic stabilizers** mentioned earlier will lead to changes in the budget deficit unrelated to fiscal policy changes; a recession will cause tax revenues to fall and the budget deficit to rise. An observer may conclude that fiscal policy has been loosened and is expansionary and that no further government action is required.

To this end, economists often look at the **structural (or cyclically adjusted) budget deficit** as an indicator of the fiscal stance. This is defined as the deficit that would exist *if the economy was at full employment (or full potential output)*. Hence, if we consider a period of relatively high unemployment, such as 2009–2010 with around 9–10 percent of the workforce out of work in the United States and Europe, then the budget deficits in those countries would be expected to be reduced substantially if the economies returned to full employment. At this level, tax revenues would be higher and social transfers lower. Recent data for major countries are given in Exhibit 22, where negative numbers refer to deficits and positive numbers are surpluses.

Exhibit 22 General Government Net Cyclically Adjusted Borrowing or Lending as Percent of GDP

	1995	2000	2005	2006	2007	2008
Australia	-3.1	0.1	1.1	1.4	1.3	0.1
Germany	-9.5	-1.8	-2.3	-1.5	-0.4	-0.5
Japan	-4.6	-7.1	-6.5	-1.8	-3.0	-2.3
United Kingdom	-5.6	0.9	-3.7	-3.3	-3.5	-5.1
United States	-2.9	0.7	-3.6	-2.6	-3.2	-6.1
OECD	-4.6	-1.1	-3.1	-1.9	-2.1	-3.7

Source: OECD.

A further reason why actual government deficits may *not* be a good measure of fiscal stance is the distinction between real and nominal interest rates and the role of inflation adjustment when applied to budget deficits. Although national economic statistics treat the cash interest payments on debt as government expenditure it makes more sense to consider only the inflation-adjusted (or real) interest payments because the real value of the outstanding debt is being eroded by inflation. Automatic stabilizers—such as income tax, VAT, and social benefits—are important because as output and employment fall and reduce tax revenues, so *net* tax revenues also fall as unemployment benefits rise. This acts as a fiscal stimulus and serves to reduce the size of the multiplier, dampening the output response of whatever caused the fall in output in the first place. By their very nature, automatic stabilizers do not require policy changes; no policymaker has to decide that an economic shock has occurred and how to respond. Hence, the responsiveness of the economy to shocks is automatically reduced, as are movements in employment and output.

In addition to these automatic adjustments, governments also use discretionary fiscal adjustments to influence aggregate demand. These will involve tax changes and/or spending cuts or increases usually with the aim of stabilizing the economy. A natural question is why fiscal policy cannot stabilize aggregate demand completely, hence ensuring full employment at all times.

3.3.2 Difficulties in Executing Fiscal Policy

Fiscal policy cannot stabilize aggregate demand completely because the difficulties in executing fiscal policy cannot be completely overcome.

First, the policymaker does not have complete information on how the economy functions. It may take several months for policymakers to realize that an economy is slowing, because data appear with a considerable time lag and even then are subject to substantial revision. This is often called the **recognition lag** and has been likened to the problem of driving with the rear view mirror. Then, when policy changes are finally decided on, they may take many months to implement. This is the **action lag**. If a government decides to raise spending on capital projects to increase employment and incomes, for example, these may take many months to plan and put into action. Finally, the result of these actions on the economy will take additional time to become evident; this is the **impact lag**. These types of policy lags also occur in the case of discretionary monetary policy.

A second aspect of time in this process is the uncertainty of where the economy is heading independently of these policy changes. For example, a stimulus may occur simultaneously with a surprise rise in investment spending or in the demand for a country's exports just as discretionary government spending starts to rise. Macroeconomic forecasting models do not generally have a good track record for accuracy and hence cannot be relied on to aid the policy-making process in this context. In addition, when discretionary fiscal adjustments are announced (or are already underway), private sector behaviour may well change leading to rises in consumption or investment, both of which will reinforce the effects of a rise in government expenditure. Again, this will make it difficult to calibrate the required fiscal adjustment to secure full employment.

There are wider macroeconomic issues also involved here.

- If the government is concerned with both unemployment *and* inflation in an economy, then raising aggregate demand toward the full employment level may also lead to a tightening labour market and rising wages and prices. The policymaker may be reluctant to further fine tune fiscal policy in an uncertain world because it might induce inflation.
- If the budget deficit is already large relative to GDP and further fiscal stimulus is required, then the necessary increase in the deficit may be considered unacceptable by the financial markets when government funding is raised, leading to higher interest rates on government debt and political pressure to tackle the deficit.
- Of course, all this presupposes that we know the level of full employment, which is difficult to measure accurately. Fiscal expansion raises demand, but what if we are already at full employment, which will be changing as productive capacity changes and workers' willingness to work at various wage levels changes?
- If unused resources reflect a low supply of labour or other factors rather than a shortage of demand, then discretionary fiscal policy will not add to demand and will be ineffective, raising the risk of inflationary pressures in the economy.
- The issue of crowding out may occur: If the government borrows from a limited pool of savings, the competition for funds with the private sector may crowd out private firms with subsequent less investing and economic growth. In

addition, the cost of borrowing may rise, leading to the cancellation of potentially profitable opportunities. This concept is the subject of continuing empirical debate and investigation.

EXAMPLE 18**Evaluating Fiscal Policy**

- 1 Which of the following statements is *least* accurate?
 - A The economic data available to policymakers have a considerable time lag.
 - B Economic models always offer an unambiguous guide to the future path of the economy.
 - C Surprise changes in exogenous economic variables make it difficult to use fiscal policy as a stabilization tool.
- 2 Which of the following statements is *least* accurate?
 - A Discretionary fiscal changes are aimed at stabilizing an economy.
 - B In the context of implementing fiscal policy, the recognition lag is often referred to as “driving in the rear view mirror.”
 - C Automatic fiscal stabilizers include new plans for additional road building by the government.
- 3 Which of the following statements regarding a fiscal stimulus is *most* accurate?
 - A Accommodative monetary policy reduces the impact of a fiscal stimulus.
 - B Different statistical models will predict different impacts for a fiscal stimulus.
 - C It is always possible to predict precisely the impact of a fiscal stimulus on employment.
- 4 Which of the following statements is *most* accurate?
 - A An increase in the budget deficit is always expansionary.
 - B An increase in government spending is always expansionary.
 - C The structural deficit is always larger than the deficit below full employment.
- 5 Crowding out refers to a:
 - A fall in interest rates that reduces private investment.
 - B rise in private investment that reduces private consumption.
 - C rise in government borrowing that reduces the ability of the private sector to access investment funds.
- 6 A contractionary fiscal policy will always involve which of the following?
 - A A balanced budget
 - B A reduction in government spending
 - C A fall in the budget deficit or rise in the surplus
- 7 Which one of the following statements is *most* accurate?
 - A Ricardian equivalence refers to individuals having no idea of future tax liabilities.

- B** If there is high unemployment in an economy, then easy monetary and fiscal policies should lead to an expansion in aggregate demand.
- C** Governments do not allow political pressures to influence fiscal policies but do allow voters to affect monetary policies.

Solution to 1:

B is correct. Economic forecasts from models will always have an element of uncertainty attached to them and thus are not unambiguous or precise in their prescriptions. Once a fiscal policy decision has been made and implemented, unforeseen changes in other variables may affect the economy in ways that would lead to changes in the fiscal policy if we had perfect foresight. Note that it is true that official economic data may be available with substantial time lags, making fiscal judgements more difficult.

Solution to 2:

C is correct. New plans for road building are discretionary and not automatic.

Solution to 3:

B is correct. Different models embrace differing views on how the economy works, including differing views on the impact of fiscal stimuli.

Solution to 4:

A is correct. Note that increases in government spending may be accompanied by even bigger rises in tax receipts and hence may not be expansionary.

Solution to 5:

C is correct. A fall in interest rates is likely to lead to a rise in investment. Crowding out refers to government borrowing that reduces the ability of the private sector to invest.

Solution to 6:

C is correct. Note that a reduction in government spending could be accompanied by an even bigger fall in taxation, making it be expansionary.

Solution to 7:

B is correct. Note that governments often allow pressure groups to affect fiscal policy and that Ricardian equivalence involves individuals correctly anticipating future taxes, so A and C are not correct choices.

4

THE RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN MONETARY AND FISCAL POLICY

Both monetary and fiscal policies can be used to try and influence the macroeconomy. But the impact of monetary policy on aggregate demand may differ depending on the fiscal policy stance. Conversely, the impact of fiscal policy might vary under various alternative monetary policy conditions. Clearly, policymakers need to understand this interaction. For example, they need to consider the impact of changes to the budget when monetary policy is accommodative as opposed to when it is restrictive: Can we expect the same impact on aggregate demand in both situations?

Although both fiscal and monetary policy can alter aggregate demand, they do so through differing channels with differing impact on the composition of aggregate demand. The two policies are not interchangeable. Consider the following cases in which the assumption is made that *wages and prices are rigid*:

- *Easy fiscal policy/tight monetary policy*: If taxes are cut or government spending rises, the expansionary fiscal policy will lead to a rise in aggregate output. If this is accompanied by a reduction in money supply to offset the fiscal expansion, then interest rates will rise and have a negative effect on private sector demand. We have higher output and higher interest rates, and government spending will be a larger proportion of overall national income.
- *Tight fiscal policy/easy monetary policy*: If a fiscal contraction is accompanied by expansionary monetary policy and low interest rates, then the private sector will be stimulated and will rise as a share of GDP, while the public sector will shrink.
- *Easy monetary policy/easy fiscal policy*: If both fiscal and monetary policy are easy, then the joint impact will be highly expansionary—leading to a rise in aggregate demand, lower interest rates (at least if the monetary impact is larger), and growing private and public sectors.
- *Tight monetary policy/tight fiscal policy*: Interest rates rise (at least if the monetary impact on interest rates is larger) and reduce private demand. At the same time, higher taxes and falling government spending lead to a drop in aggregate demand from both public and private sectors.

4.1 Factors Influencing the Mix of Fiscal and Monetary Policy

Although governments are concerned about stabilizing the level of aggregate demand at close to the full employment level, they are also concerned with the growth of potential output. To this end, encouraging private investment will be important. It may best be achieved by accommodative monetary policy with low interest rates and a tight fiscal policy to ensure free resources for a growing private sector.

At other times, the lack of a good quality, trained workforce—or perhaps a modern capital infrastructure—will be seen as an impediment to growth; thus, an expansion in government spending in these areas may be seen as a high priority. If taxes are not raised to pay for this, then the fiscal stance will be expansionary. If a loose monetary policy is chosen to accompany this expansionary spending, then it is *possible* that inflation may be induced. Of course, it is an open question as to whether policymakers can judge the appropriate levels of interest rates or fiscal spending levels.

Clearly, the mix of policies will be heavily influenced by the political context. A weak government may raise spending to accommodate the demands of competing vested interests (e.g., subsidies to particular sectors, such as agriculture in the EC), and thus a restrictive monetary policy may be needed to hold back the possibly inflationary growth in aggregate demand through raised interest rates and less credit availability.

Both fiscal and monetary policies suffer from lack of precise knowledge of where the economy is today, because data appear initially subject to revision and with a time lag. However, fiscal policy suffers from two further issues with regard to its use in the short run.

As we saw earlier, it is difficult to implement quickly because spending on capital projects takes time to plan, procure, and put into practice. In addition, it is politically easier to loosen fiscal policy than to tighten it; in many cases, automatic stabilizers are the source of fiscal tightening, because tax rates are not changing and political

opposition is muted. Similarly, the independence of many central banks means that decisions on raising interest rates are outside the hands of politicians and thus can be taken more easily.

The interaction between monetary and fiscal policies was also implicitly evident in our discussion of Ricardian equivalence because if tax cuts have no impact on private spending as individuals anticipate future higher taxes, then clearly this may lead policymakers to favour monetary tools.

Ultimately, the interaction of monetary and fiscal policies in practice is an empirical question, which we touched on earlier. In their detailed research paper using the IMF'S Global Integrated Monetary and Fiscal Model (IMF 2009), IMF researchers examined four forms of coordinated global fiscal loosening over a two-year period, which will be reversed gradually after the two years are completed. These are:

- an increase in social transfers to all households,
- a decrease in tax on labour income,
- a rise in government investment expenditure, and
- a rise in transfers to the poorest in society.

The two types of monetary policy responses considered are:

- no monetary accommodation, so rising aggregate demand leads to higher interest rates immediately; or
- interest rates are kept unchanged (accommodative policy) for the two years.

The following important policy conclusions from this study emphasize the role of policy interactions:

- *No monetary accommodation:* Government spending increases have a much bigger effect (six times bigger) on GDP than similar size social transfers because the latter are not considered permanent, although real interest rates rise as monetary authorities react to rises in aggregate demand and inflation. Targeted social transfers to the poorest citizens have double the effect of the non-targeted transfers, while labour tax reductions have a slightly bigger impact than the latter.
- *Monetary accommodation:* Except for the case of the cut in labour taxes, fiscal multipliers are now much larger than when there is no monetary accommodation. The cumulative multiplier (i.e., the cumulative effect on real GDP over the two years divided by the percentage of GDP, which is a fiscal stimulus) is now 3.9 for government expenditure compared to 1.6 with no monetary accommodation. The corresponding numbers for targeted social transfer payments are 0.5 without monetary accommodation and 1.7 with it. The larger multiplier effects with monetary accommodation result from rises in aggregate demand and inflation, leading to falls in real interest rates and additional private sector spending (e.g., on investment goods). Labour tax cuts are less positive.

4.2 Quantitative Easing and Policy Interaction

What about the scenario of zero interest rates and deflation? Fiscal stimulus should still raise demand and inflation, lowering real interest rates and stimulating private sector demand. We saw earlier that quantitative easing has been a feature of major economies during 2009–2010. This involves the purchase of government or private securities by the central bank from individuals, institutions, or banks and substituting central bank balances for those securities. The ultimate aim is that recipients will subsequently increase expenditures, lending or borrowing in the face of raised cash balances and lower interest rates.

If the central bank purchases government securities on a large scale, it is effectively funding the budget deficit and the independence of monetary policy is an illusion. This so-called “printing of money” is feared by many economists as the monetization of the government deficit. Note that it is unrelated to the conventional inflation target of central banks, such as the Bank of England. Some economists question whether an independent central bank should engage in such activity.

4.3 The Importance of Credibility and Commitment

The IMF model implies that if governments run persistently high budget deficits, real interest rates rise and crowd out private investment, reducing each country’s productive potential. As individuals realize that deficits will persist, inflation expectations and longer-term interest rates rise: This reduces the effect of the stimulus by half.

Further, if there is a real lack of commitment to fiscal discipline over the longer term, (e.g., because of aging populations) and the ratio of government debt to GDP rose by 10 percentage points permanently in the United States alone, then world real interest rates would rise by 0.14 percent—leading to a 0.6 percent permanent fall in world GDP.

EXAMPLE 19

Interactions of Monetary and Fiscal Policy

- 1 In a world where Ricardian equivalence holds, governments would *most likely* prefer to use monetary rather than fiscal policy because under Ricardian equivalence:
 - A real interest rates have a more powerful effect on the real economy.
 - B the transmission mechanism of monetary policy is better understood.
 - C the future impact of fiscal policy changes are fully discounted by economic agents.
- 2 If fiscal policy is easy and monetary policy tight, then:
 - A interest rates would tend to fall, reinforcing the fiscal policy stance.
 - B the government sector would tend to shrink as a proportion of total GDP.
 - C the government sector would tend to expand as a proportion of total GDP.
- 3 Which of the following has the greatest impact on aggregate demand according to an IMF study? A 1 percent of GDP stimulus in:
 - A government spending.
 - B rise in transfer benefits.
 - C cut in labour income tax across all income levels.

Solution to 1:

C is correct. If Ricardian equivalence holds, then economic agents anticipate that the consequence of any current tax cut will be future tax rises, which leads them to increase their saving in anticipation of this so that the tax cut has little effect on consumption and investment decisions. Governments would be forced to use monetary policy to affect the real economy on the assumption that money neutrality did not hold in the short term.

Solution to 2:

C is correct. With a tight monetary policy, real interest rates should rise and reduce private sector activity, which could be at least partially offset by an expansion in government activity via the loosening of fiscal policy. The net effect, however, would be an expansion in the size of the public sector relative to the private sector.

Solution to 3:

A is correct. The study clearly showed that direct spending by the government leads to a larger impact on GDP than changes in taxes or benefits.

SUMMARY

In this reading, we have sought to explain the practices of both monetary and fiscal policy. Both can have a significant impact on economic activity, and it is for this reason that financial analysts need to be aware of the tools of both monetary and fiscal policy, the goals of the monetary and fiscal authorities, and most important the monetary and fiscal policy transmission mechanisms.

- Governments can influence the performance of their economies by using combinations of monetary and fiscal policy. Monetary policy refers to central bank activities that are directed toward influencing the quantity of money and credit in an economy. By contrast, fiscal policy refers to the government's decisions about taxation and spending. The two sets of policies affect the economy via different mechanisms.
- Money fulfills three important functions: It acts as a medium of exchange, provides individuals with a way of storing wealth, and provides society with a convenient unit of account. Via the process of fractional reserve banking, the banking system can create money.
- The amount of wealth that the citizens of an economy choose to hold in the form of money—as opposed to, for example, bonds or equities—is known as the demand for money. There are three basic motives for holding money: transactions-related, precautionary, and speculative.
- The addition of 1 unit of additional reserves to a fractional reserve banking system can support an expansion of the money supply by an amount equal to the money multiplier, defined as $1/\text{reserve requirement}$ (stated as a decimal).
- The nominal rate of interest is comprised of three components: a real required rate of return, a component to compensate lenders for future inflation, and a risk premium to compensate lenders for uncertainty (e.g., about the future rate of inflation).
- Central banks take on multiple roles in modern economies. They are usually the monopoly supplier of their currency, the lender of last resort to the banking sector, the government's bank and bank of the banks, and they often supervise banks. Although they may express their objectives in different ways, the overarching objective of most central banks is price stability.
- For a central bank to be able to implement monetary policy objectively, it should have a degree of independence from government, be credible, and be transparent in its goals and objectives.

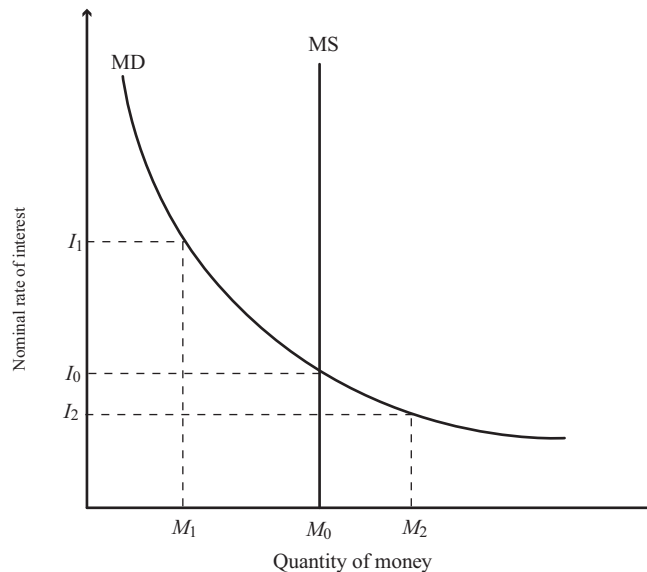
- The ultimate challenge for central banks as they try to manipulate the supply of money to influence the economy is that they cannot control the amount of money that households and corporations put in banks on deposit, nor can they easily control the willingness of banks to create money by expanding credit. Taken together, this also means that they cannot always control the money supply. Therefore, there are definite limits to the power of monetary policy.
- The concept of money neutrality is usually interpreted as meaning that money cannot influence the real economy in the long run. However, by the setting of its policy rate, a central bank hopes to influence the real economy via the policy rate's impact on other market interest rates, asset prices, the exchange rate, and the expectations of economic agents.
- Inflation targeting is the most common monetary policy—although exchange rate targeting is also used, particularly in developing economies. Quantitative easing attempts to spur aggregate demand by drastically increasing the money supply.
- Fiscal policy involves the use of government spending and revenue raising (taxation) to impact a number of aspects of the economy: the overall level of aggregate demand in an economy and hence the level of economic activity; the distribution of income and wealth among different segments of the population; and hence ultimately the allocation of resources between different sectors and economic agents.
- The tools that governments use in implementing fiscal policy are related to the way in which they raise revenue and the different forms of expenditure. Governments usually raise money via a combination of direct and indirect taxes. Government expenditure can be current on goods and services or can take the form of capital expenditure, for example, on infrastructure projects.
- As economic growth weakens, or when it is in recession, a government can enact an expansionary fiscal policy—for example, by raising expenditure without an offsetting increase in taxation. Conversely, by reducing expenditure and maintaining tax revenues, a contractionary policy might reduce economic activity. Fiscal policy can therefore play an important role in stabilizing an economy.
- Although both fiscal and monetary policy can alter aggregate demand, they work through different channels, the policies are therefore not interchangeable, and they conceivably can work against one another unless the government and central bank coordinate their objectives.

REFERENCES

- Goodhart, Charles A.E. 1989. "The Conduct of Monetary Policy." *Economic Journal*, vol. 99, no. 396:293–346.
- Gray, Simon, and Nick Talbot. 2006. *Monetary Operations*. London: Bank of England (<http://www.bankofengland.co.uk/education/ccbs/handbooks/ccbshb24.htm>).
- IMF (International Monetary Fund). 2009. "The Case for Global Fiscal Stimulus" (March): <http://www.imf.org/external/pubs/ft/spn/2009/spn0903.pdf>.
- Roger, Scott. 2010. "Inflation Targeting Turns 20." *Finance and Development*, vol. 47, no. 1:46–49 (March).
- Truman, Edwin. 2003. *Inflation Targeting in the World Economy*. Washington, DC: Institute for International Economics.

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

- 1 As the reserve requirement increases, the money multiplier:
 - A increases.
 - B decreases.
 - C remains the same.
- 2 Which is the *most* accurate statement regarding the demand for money?
 - A Precautionary money demand is directly related to GDP.
 - B Transactions money demand is inversely related to returns on bonds.
 - C Speculative demand is inversely related to the perceived risk of other assets.
- 3 The following exhibit shows the supply and demand for money:



There is an excess supply of money when the nominal rate of interest is:

- A I_0 .
 - B I_1 .
 - C I_2 .
- 4 According to the theory of money neutrality, money supply growth does *not* affect variables such as real output and employment in:
 - A the long run.
 - B the short run.
 - C the long and short run.
 - 5 Which of the following *best* describes a fundamental assumption when monetary policy is used to influence the economy?
 - A Financial markets are efficient.
 - B Money is not neutral in the short run.
 - C Official rates do not affect exchange rates.
 - 6 Monetarists are *most likely* to believe:
 - A there is a causal relationship running from inflation to money.
 - B inflation can be affected by changing the money supply growth rate.

- C rapid financial innovation in the market increases the effectiveness of monetary policy.
- 7 The proposition that the real interest rate is relatively stable is *most* closely associated with:
- A the Fisher effect.
 - B money neutrality.
 - C the quantity theory of money.
- 8 Which of the following equations is a consequence of the Fisher effect?
- A Nominal interest rate = Real interest rate + Expected rate of inflation.
 - B Real interest rate = Nominal interest rate + Expected rate of inflation.
 - C Nominal interest rate = Real interest rate + Market risk premium.
- 9 Central banks would typically be *most* concerned with costs of:
- A low levels of inflation that are anticipated.
 - B moderate levels of inflation that are anticipated.
 - C moderate levels of inflation that are not anticipated.
- 10 Monetary policy is *least likely* to include:
- A setting an inflation rate target.
 - B changing an official interest rate.
 - C enacting a transfer payment program.
- 11 Which role is a central bank *least likely* to assume?
- A Lender of last resort.
 - B Sole supervisor of banks.
 - C Supplier of the currency.
- 12 Which is the *most* accurate statement regarding central banks and monetary policy?
- A Central bank activities are typically intended to maintain price stability.
 - B Monetary policies work through the economy via four independent channels.
 - C Commercial and interbank interest rates move inversely to official interest rates.
- 13 When a central bank announces a decrease in its official policy rate, the desired impact is an increase in:
- A investment.
 - B interbank borrowing rates.
 - C the national currency's value in exchange for other currencies.
- 14 Which action is a central bank *least likely* to take if it wants to encourage businesses and households to borrow for investment and consumption purposes?
- A Sell long-dated government securities.
 - B Purchase long-dated government treasuries.
 - C Purchase mortgage bonds or other securities.
- 15 A central bank that decides the desired levels of interest rates and inflation and the horizon over which the inflation objective is to be achieved is *most* accurately described as being:
- A target independent and operationally independent.
 - B target independent but not operationally independent.

- C operationally independent but not target independent.
- 16 A country that maintains a target exchange rate is *most likely* to have which outcome when its inflation rate rises above the level of the inflation rate in the target country?
- A An increase in short-term interest rates.
 - B An increase in the domestic money supply.
 - C An increase in its foreign currency reserves.
- 17 A central bank's repeated open market purchases of government bonds:
- A decreases the money supply.
 - B is prohibited in most countries.
 - C is consistent with an expansionary monetary policy.
- 18 In theory, setting the policy rate equal to the neutral interest rate should promote:
- A stable inflation.
 - B balanced budgets.
 - C greater employment.
- 19 A prolonged period of an official interest rate very close to zero without an increase in economic growth *most likely* suggests:
- A quantitative easing must be limited to be successful.
 - B there may be limits to the effectiveness of monetary policy.
 - C targeting reserve levels is more important than targeting interest rates.
- 20 Raising the reserve requirement is *most likely* an example of which type of monetary policy?
- A Neutral.
 - B Expansionary.
 - C Contractionary.
- 21 Which of the following is a limitation on the ability of central banks to stimulate growth in periods of deflation?
- A Ricardian equivalence.
 - B The interaction of monetary and fiscal policy.
 - C The fact that interest rates cannot fall significantly below zero.
- 22 The *least likely* limitation to the effectiveness of monetary policy is that central banks cannot:
- A accurately determine the neutral rate of interest.
 - B regulate the willingness of financial institutions to lend.
 - C control amounts that economic agents deposit into banks.
- 23 Which of the following is the *most likely* example of a tool of fiscal policy?
- A Public financing of a power plant.
 - B Regulation of the payment system.
 - C Central bank's purchase of government bonds.
- 24 The *least likely* goal of a government's fiscal policy is to:
- A redistribute income and wealth.
 - B influence aggregate national output.
 - C ensure the stability of the purchasing power of its currency.

- 25 Given an independent central bank, monetary policy actions are *more likely* than fiscal policy actions to be:
- A implementable quickly.
 - B effective when a specific group is targeted.
 - C effective when combating a deflationary economy.
- 26 Which statement regarding fiscal policy is *most* accurate?
- A To raise business capital spending, personal income taxes should be reduced.
 - B Cyclically adjusted budget deficits are appropriate indicators of fiscal policy.
 - C An increase in the budget surplus is associated with expansionary fiscal policy.
- 27 The *least likely* explanation for why fiscal policy cannot stabilize aggregate demand completely is that:
- A private sector behavior changes over time.
 - B policy changes are implemented very quickly.
 - C fiscal policy focuses more on inflation than on unemployment.
- 28 Which of the following *best* represents a contractionary fiscal policy?
- A Public spending on a high-speed railway.
 - B A temporary suspension of payroll taxes.
 - C A freeze in discretionary government spending.
- 29 A “pay-as-you-go” rule, which requires that any tax cut or increase in entitlement spending be offset by an increase in other taxes or reduction in other entitlement spending, is an example of which fiscal policy stance?
- A Neutral.
 - B Expansionary.
 - C Contractionary.
- 30 Quantitative easing, the purchase of government or private securities by the central banks from individuals and/or institutions, is an example of which monetary policy stance?
- A Neutral.
 - B Expansionary.
 - C Contractionary.
- 31 The *most likely* argument against high national debt levels is that:
- A the debt is owed internally to fellow citizens.
 - B they create disincentives for economic activity.
 - C they may finance investment in physical and human capital.
- 32 Which statement regarding fiscal deficits is *most* accurate?
- A Higher government spending may lead to higher interest rates and lower private sector investing.
 - B Central bank actions that grow the money supply to address deflationary conditions decrease fiscal deficits.
 - C According to the Ricardian equivalence, deficits have a multiplicative effect on consumer spending.
- 33 Which policy alternative is *most likely* to be effective for growing both the public and private sectors?
- A Easy fiscal/easy monetary policy.

- B** Easy fiscal/tight monetary policy.
- C** Tight fiscal/tight monetary policy.

SOLUTIONS

- 1 B is correct. There is an inverse relationship between the money multiplier and the reserve requirement. The money multiplier is equal to 1 divided by the reserve requirement.
- 2 A is correct. Precautionary money demand is directly related to GDP. Precautionary money balances are held to provide a buffer against unforeseen events that might require money. Precautionary balances tend to rise with the volume and value of transactions in the economy, and therefore rise with GDP.
- 3 B is correct. When the interest rate on bonds is I_1 there is an excess supply of money (equal to $M_0 - M_1 > 0$). Economic agents would seek to buy bonds with their excess money balances, which would force the price of bonds up and the interest rate down to I_0 .
- 4 A is correct. According to the theory of money neutrality, an increase in the money supply ultimately leads to an increase in the price level and leaves real variables unaffected in the long run.
- 5 B is correct. If money were neutral in the short run, monetary policy would not be effective in influencing the economy.
- 6 B is correct. By definition, monetarists believe prices may be controlled by manipulating the money supply.
- 7 A is correct. The Fisher effect is based on the idea that the real interest rate is relatively stable. Changes in the nominal interest rate result from changes in expected inflation.
- 8 A is correct. The Fisher effect implies that changes in the nominal interest rate reflect changes in expected inflation, which is consistent with Nominal interest rate = Real interest rate + Expected rate of inflation.
- 9 C is correct. Low levels of inflation has higher economic costs than moderate levels, all else equal; unanticipated inflation has greater costs than anticipated inflation.
- 10 C is correct. Transfer payment programs represent fiscal, not monetary policy.
- 11 B is correct. The supervision of banks is not a role that all central banks assume. When it is a central bank's role, responsibility may be shared with one or more entities.
- 12 A is correct. Central bank activities are typically intended to maintain price stability. Concerning choice B, note that the transmission channels of monetary policy are not independent.
- 13 A is correct. Investment is expected to move inversely with the official policy rate.
- 14 A is correct. Such action would tend to constrict the money supply and increase interest rates, all else equal.
- 15 A is correct. The central bank described is target independent because it set its own targets (e.g., the target inflation rate) and operationally independent because it decides how to achieve its targets (e.g., the time horizon).
- 16 A is correct. Interest rates are expected to rise to protect the exchange rate target.
- 17 C is correct. The purchase of government bonds via open market operations increases banking reserves and the money supply; it is consistent with an expansionary monetary policy.

- 18 A is correct. The neutral rate of interest is that rate of interest that neither stimulates nor slows down the underlying economy. The neutral rate should be consistent with stable long-run inflation.
- 19 B is correct. A central bank would decrease an official interest rate to stimulate the economy. The setting in which an official interest rate is lowered to zero (or even slightly below zero) without stimulating economic growth suggests that there are limits to monetary policy.
- 20 C is correct. Raising reserve requirements should slow money supply growth.
- 21 C is correct. Deflation poses a challenge to conventional monetary policy because once the central bank has cut nominal interest rates to zero (or slightly less than zero) to stimulate the economy, they cannot cut them further.
- 22 A is correct. The inability to determine exactly the neutral rate of interest does not necessarily limit the power of monetary policy.
- 23 A is correct. Public financing of a power plant could be described as a fiscal policy tool to stimulate investment.
- 24 C is correct. Ensuring stable purchasing power is a goal of monetary rather than fiscal policy. Fiscal policy involves the use of government spending and tax revenue to affect the overall level of aggregate demand in an economy and hence the level of economic activity.
- 25 A is correct. Monetary actions may face fewer delays to taking action than fiscal policy, especially when the central bank is independent.
- 26 B is correct. Cyclically adjusted budget deficits are appropriate indicators of fiscal policy. These are defined as the deficit that would exist if the economy was at full employment (or full potential output).
- 27 B is correct. Fiscal policy is subject to recognition, action, and impact lags.
- 28 C is correct. A freeze in discretionary government spending is an example of a contractionary fiscal policy.
- 29 A is correct. A “pay-as-you-go” rule is a neutral policy because any increases in spending or reductions in revenues would be offset. Accordingly, there would be no net impact on the budget deficit/surplus.
- 30 B is correct. Quantitative easing is an example of an expansionary monetary policy stance. It attempts to spur aggregate demand by drastically increasing the money supply.
- 31 B is correct. The belief is that high levels of debt to GDP may lead to higher future tax rates which may lead to disincentives to economic activity.
- 32 A is correct. Government borrowing may compete with private sector borrowing for investment purposes.
- 33 A is correct. If both fiscal and monetary policies are “easy,” then the joint impact will be highly expansionary, leading to a rise in aggregate demand, low interest rates, and growing private and public sectors.

International Trade and Capital Flows

by Usha Nair-Reichert, PhD, and Daniel Robert Witschi, PhD, CFA

Usha Nair-Reichert, PhD, is at Georgia Institute of Technology (USA). Daniel Robert Witschi, PhD, CFA (Switzerland).

LEARNING OUTCOMES

<i>Mastery</i>	<i>The candidate should be able to:</i>
<input type="checkbox"/>	a. compare gross domestic product and gross national product;
<input type="checkbox"/>	b. describe benefits and costs of international trade;
<input type="checkbox"/>	c. distinguish between comparative advantage and absolute advantage;
<input type="checkbox"/>	d. compare the Ricardian and Heckscher–Ohlin models of trade and the source(s) of comparative advantage in each model;
<input type="checkbox"/>	e. compare types of trade and capital restrictions and their economic implications;
<input type="checkbox"/>	f. explain motivations for and advantages of trading blocs, common markets, and economic unions;
<input type="checkbox"/>	g. describe common objectives of capital restrictions imposed by governments;
<input type="checkbox"/>	h. describe the balance of payments accounts including their components;
<input type="checkbox"/>	i. explain how decisions by consumers, firms, and governments affect the balance of payments;
<input type="checkbox"/>	j. describe functions and objectives of the international organizations that facilitate trade, including the World Bank, the International Monetary Fund, and the World Trade Organization.

INTRODUCTION

Global investors must address two fundamentally interrelated questions: where to invest and in what asset classes? Some countries may be attractive from an equity perspective because of their strong economic growth and the profitability of particular domestic sectors or industries. Other countries may be attractive from a fixed income

perspective because of their interest rate environment and price stability. To identify markets that are expected to provide attractive investment opportunities, investors must analyze cross-country differences in such factors as expected GDP growth rates, monetary and fiscal policies, trade policies, and competitiveness. From a longer term perspective investors also need to consider such factors as a country's stage of economic and financial market development, demographics, quality and quantity of physical and human capital (accumulated education and training of workers), and its area(s) of comparative advantage.¹

This reading provides a framework for analyzing a country's trade and capital flows and their economic implications. International trade can facilitate economic growth by increasing the efficiency of resource allocation, providing access to larger capital and product markets, and facilitating specialization based on comparative advantage. The flow of financial capital (funds available for investment) between countries with excess savings and those where financial capital is scarce can increase liquidity, raise output, and lower the cost of capital. From an investment perspective, it is important to understand the complex and dynamic nature of international trade and capital flows because investment opportunities are increasingly exposed to the forces of global competition for markets, capital, and ideas.

This reading is organized as follows. Section 2 defines basic terminology used in the reading and describes patterns and trends in international trade and capital flows. It also discusses the benefits of international trade, distinguishes between absolute and comparative advantage, and explains two traditional models of comparative advantage. Section 3 describes trade restrictions and their implications and discusses the motivation for, and advantages of, trade agreements. Section 4 describes the balance of payments and Section 5 discusses the function and objectives of international organizations that facilitate trade. A summary of key points and practice problems conclude the reading.

2

INTERNATIONAL TRADE

The following sections describe the role, importance, and possible benefits and costs of international trade. Before beginning those discussions, we define some basic terminology used in this area.

2.1 Basic Terminology

The aggregate output of a nation over a specified time period is usually measured as its gross domestic product or its gross national product. Gross domestic product (GDP) measures the market value of all final goods and services produced by factors of production (such as labor and capital) located within a country/economy during a given period of time, generally a year or a quarter. Gross national product (GNP), however, measures the market value of all final goods and services produced by factors of production (such as labor and capital) supplied by residents of a country, regardless of whether such production takes place within the country or outside of the country. The difference between a country's GDP and its GNP is that GDP includes, and GNP excludes, the production of goods and services by foreigners within that country, whereas GNP includes, and GDP excludes, the production of goods and

¹ Comparative advantage refers to a country's ability to produce a good at a relatively lower cost than other goods it produces, as compared with another country. It will be more precisely defined and illustrated in Section 2.4.

services by its citizens outside of the country. Countries that have large differences between GDP and GNP generally have a large number of citizens who work abroad (for example, Pakistan and Portugal), and/or pay more for the use of foreign-owned capital in domestic production than they earn on the capital they own abroad (for example, Brazil and Canada). Therefore, GDP is more widely used as a measure of economic activity occurring *within* the country, which, in turn, affects employment, growth, and the investment environment.

Imports are goods and services that a domestic economy (i.e., households, firms, and government) purchases from other countries. For example, the US economy imports (purchases) cloth from India and wine from France. **Exports** are goods and services that a domestic economy sells to other countries. For example, South Africa exports (sells) diamonds to the Netherlands, and China exports clothing to the European Union. So how are services imported or exported? If a Greek shipping company transports the wine that the United States imports from France, the United States would classify the cost of shipping as an import of services from Greece and the wine would be classified as an import of goods from France. Similarly, when a British company provides insurance coverage to a South African diamond exporter, Britain would classify the cost of the insurance as an export of services to South Africa. Other examples of services exported/imported include engineering, consulting, and medical services.

The **terms of trade** are defined as the ratio of the price of exports to the price of imports, representing those prices by export and import price indexes, respectively. The terms of trade capture the relative cost of imports in terms of exports. If the prices of exports increase relative to the prices of imports, the terms of trade have improved because the country will be able to purchase more imports with the same amount of exports.² For example, when oil prices increased during 2007–2008, major oil exporting countries experienced an improvement in their terms of trade because they had to export less oil in order to purchase the same amount of imported goods. In contrast, if the price of exports decreases relative to the price of imports, the terms of trade have deteriorated because the country will be able to purchase fewer imports with the same amount of exports. Because each country exports and imports a large number of goods and services, the terms of trade of a country are usually measured as an index number (normalized to 100 in some base year) that represents a ratio of the average price of exported goods and services to the average price of imported goods and services. Exhibit 1 shows the terms of trade reported in Salvatore (2010). A value over (under) 100 indicates that the country, or group of countries, experienced better (worse) terms of trade relative to the base year of 2000.

Exhibit 1 Data on the Terms of Trade for Industrial and Developing Countries (Unit Export Value/Unit Import Value)

	1990	1995	2000	2005	2006
Industrial countries	99.8	104.8	100	101.3	99
Developing countries	103	101.9	100	99.4	100.5
Africa	100.4	102.8	100	107.9	105.2
Asia	106.8	106.8	100	91.5	89.2

(continued)

² Although the prices of imports and exports are each stated in currency units, the currency units cancel out when we take the ratio, so the terms of trade reflect the relative price of imports and exports in real (i.e., quantity) terms: units of imports per unit of exports. To see this, note that if one unit of imports costs P_M currency units and one unit of exports is priced at P_X currency units, then the country can buy P_X/P_M (= Terms of trade) units of imports for each unit of exports.

Exhibit 1 (Continued)

	1990	1995	2000	2005	2006
Europe	68.7	105.5	100	102.1	99.8
Middle East	109	68.4	100	140.4	155.9
Western hemisphere	129.6	107.1	100	104.3	108.7

Source: Salvatore (2010), case study 3–3. Base year 2000 = 100.

As an example, Exhibit 1 indicates that from 1990 to 2006 both of the broader groups, developing and industrial countries, experienced a slight decline in their terms of trade. Looking at the disaggregated data indicates that developing countries in Asia and the Western hemisphere experienced a considerable decline in terms of trade while those in Europe and the Middle East (which benefited from rising prices of their petroleum exports) experienced a substantial increase. Africa also experienced a small improvement in its terms of trade during this period.

Net exports is the difference between the value of a country's exports and the value of its imports (i.e., value of exports minus imports). If the value of exports equals the value of imports, then trade is balanced. If the value of exports is greater (less) than the value of imports, then there is a **trade surplus (deficit)**. When a country has a trade surplus, it lends to foreigners or buys assets from foreigners reflecting the financing needed by foreigners running trade deficits with that country. Similarly, when a country has a trade deficit, it has to borrow from foreigners or sell some of its assets to foreigners. Section 4 on the balance of payments explains these relationships more fully.

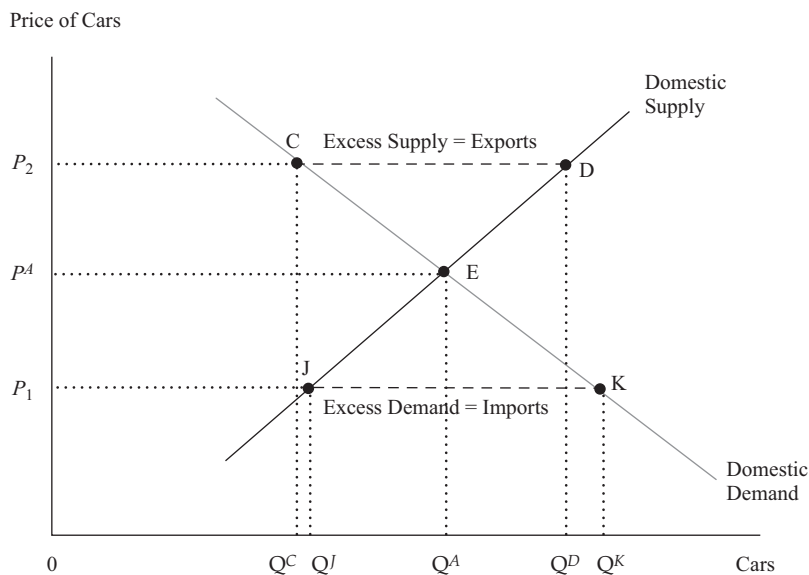
Autarky is a state in which a country does not trade with other countries. This means that all goods and services are produced and consumed domestically. The price of a good or service in such an economy is called its **autarkic price**. An autarkic economy is also known as a **closed economy** because it does not trade with other countries. An **open economy**, in contrast, is an economy that trades with other countries. If there are no restrictions on trade, then members of an open economy can buy and sell goods and services at the price prevailing in the world market, the **world price**. An open economy can provide domestic households with a larger variety of goods and services, give domestic companies access to global markets and customers, and offer goods and services that are more competitively priced. In addition, it can offer domestic investors access to foreign capital markets, foreign assets, and greater investment opportunities. For capital intensive industries, such as automobiles and aircraft, manufacturers can take advantage of economies of scale because they have access to a much larger market. **Free trade** occurs when there are no government restrictions on a country's ability to trade. Under free trade, global aggregate demand and supply determine the equilibrium quantity and price of imports and exports. Government policies that impose restrictions on trade, such as tariffs and quotas (discussed later in the reading), are known as **trade protection** and prevent market forces (demand and supply) from determining the equilibrium price and quantity for imports and exports. According to Deardorff, *globalization* refers to the "increasing worldwide integration of markets for goods, services, and capital that began to attract special attention in the late 1990s."³ It also references "a variety of other changes that were perceived to occur at about the same time, such as an increased role for large corporations (multinational

³ Deardorff, Alan. "Deardorff's Glossary of International Economics" (www-personal.umich.edu/~alandear/glossary).

corporations) in the world economy and increased intervention into domestic policies and affairs by international institutions,” such as the International Monetary Fund, the World Trade Organization, and the World Bank.

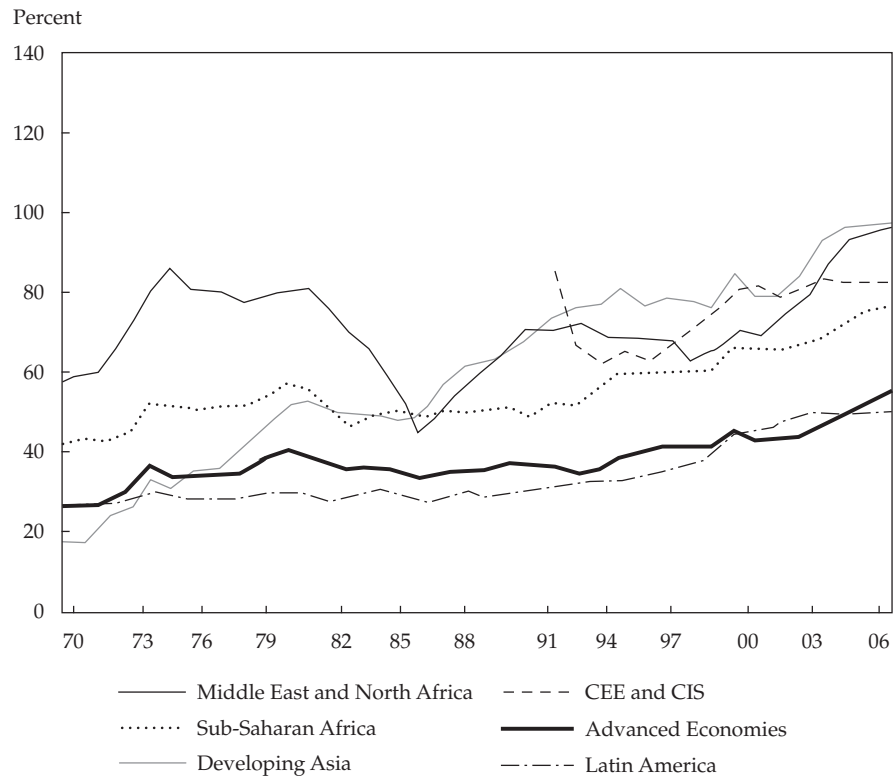
The levels of aggregate demand and supply and the quantities of imports and exports in an economy are related to the concepts of *excess demand* and *excess supply*. Exhibit 2 shows supply and demand curves for cars in the United Kingdom. E is the autarkic equilibrium at price P^A and quantity Q^A , with the quantity of cars demanded equaling the quantity supplied. Now, consider a situation in which the country opens up to trade and the world price is P_1 . At this price, the quantity demanded domestically is Q^K while the quantity supplied is Q^J . Hence excess demand is $Q^J Q^K$. This quantity is satisfied by imports. For example, at a world price of \$15,000, the quantity of cars demanded in the United Kingdom might be 2 million and UK production of cars only 1.5 million. As a result, the excess demand of 500,000 would be satisfied by imports. Returning to Exhibit 2, now consider a situation in which the world price is P_2 . The quantity demanded is Q^C while the quantity supplied is Q^D . Hence, the domestic excess supply at world price P_2 is $Q^C Q^D$, which results in exports of $Q^C Q^D$.

Exhibit 2 Excess Demand, Excess Supply, Imports and Exports



2.2 Patterns and Trends in International Trade and Capital Flows

The importance of trade in absolute and relative terms (trade-to-GDP ratio) is illustrated in Exhibits 3 through 5. Exhibit 3 shows that trade as a percentage of regional GDP increased in all regions of the world during 1970–2006. Developing countries in Asia had the fastest growth in trade, increasing from less than 20 percent of GDP in 1970 to more than 90 percent of GDP in 2006.

Exhibit 3 Trade in Goods and Services (Percent of Regional GDP)

Note: CEE = Central and Eastern Europe; CIS = Commonwealth of Independent States
 Source: IMF Issues Brief "Globalization: A Brief Overview," 2008.

Exhibit 4 indicates that trade as a percentage of GDP and the GDP growth rate have increased in most regions of the world during 1990–2006. However, data for 2008 (not shown) indicates a decline that, although consistent with the worldwide economic downturn, varied across country groups. High-income countries that are members of the Organisation for Economic Co-Operation and Development (OECD) experienced a growth rate of 2.4 percent during 2000–2006, but had a growth rate of only 0.3 percent in 2008. The corresponding numbers for growth in non-OECD high-income countries are 5.0 percent and 3.2 percent, respectively; for lower-middle-income countries, they are 7.7 percent and 7.5 percent, respectively. The 2009 World Development Report affirmed the link between trade and growth and noted evidence that all rich and emerging economies are oriented to being open to trade. More specifically, the report indicated:

...When exports are concentrated in labor-intensive manufacturing, trade increases the wages for unskilled workers, benefiting poor people. It also encourages macroeconomic stability, again benefiting the poor, who are more likely to be hurt by inflation. And through innovation and factor accumulation, it enhances productivity and thus growth. There may be some empirical uncertainty about the strength of trade's relationship with growth. But essentially all rich and emerging economies have a strong trade orientation. (World Bank 2009)

Of course, trade is not the only factor that influences economic growth. Research has also identified such factors as the quality of institutions, infrastructure, and education; economic systems; the degree of development; and global market conditions (World Trade Organization 2008).

Exhibit 4 Trade Openness and GDP Growth

Country Group	Trade as Percent of GDP (averaged over the period)			Average GDP growth (%)		
	1980–1989	1990–1999	2000–2006	1980–1989	1990–1999	2000–2006
World	37.2	41.0	50.7	3.1	2.7	3.2
High income:						
All	38.1	40.3	49.5	3.1	2.6	2.5
OECD	35.3	37.2	44.7	3.1	2.5	2.4
Non-OECD	120.0	128.1	172.5	3.9	4.5	5.0
Low and middle income:						
All	32.4	44.4	56.9	3.4	3.5	5.8
Middle	32.4	44.5	57.1	3.4	3.5	5.8
Upper middle	33.4	44.3	53.5	2.1	1.7	4.1
Lower middle	31.4	44.8	61.4	6.0	6.1	7.7
Low	32.5	39.9	51.7	2.6	2.7	4.8

Note: Averages indicate the average of the annual data for the period covered.

Source: World Bank.

Exhibit 5 presents trade and foreign direct investment as a percentage of GDP for select countries for 1980–2007. **Foreign direct investment** (FDI) refers to direct investment by a firm in one country (the *source country*) in productive assets in a foreign country (the *host country*). When a firm engages in FDI, it becomes a **multinational corporation** (MNC) operating in more than one country or having subsidiary firms in more than one country. It is important to distinguish FDI from **foreign portfolio investment** (FPI), which refers to shorter-term investment by individuals, firms, and institutional investors (e.g., pension funds) in such foreign financial instruments as foreign stocks and foreign government bonds. Exhibit 5 shows that trade as a percentage of GDP for the world as a whole increased from 38 percent in 1980 to 57 percent in 2007. In Argentina, trade as a percentage of GDP increased from 12 percent in 1980 to 45 percent in 2007, while in India during this same period it increased from 15.5 percent to 45 percent. Among the more advanced economies, trade expanded sharply in Germany (from 45 percent to 87 percent), but in the United States trade expanded more modestly (from 21 percent to 29 percent).

Exhibit 5 Increasing Global Interdependence FDI and Trade as a percentage of GDP

Country	Type of Flow	1980	1990	2000	2007
World	Trade	38.4	38.0	48.8	57.3
	FDI: Net Inflows	0.6	1.0	5.1	4.3
	FDI: Net Outflows	0.6	1.1	3.6	4.5

(continued)

Exhibit 5 (Continued)

Country	Type of Flow	1980	1990	2000	2007
Argentina	Trade	11.5	15.0	22.4	45.0
	FDI: Net Inflows	-0.1	0.0	0.3	0.6
	FDI: Net Outflows	0.9	1.3	3.7	2.5
Germany	Trade	45.3	49.7	66.4	86.7
	FDI: Net Inflows	0.5	1.4	3.1	4.9
	FDI: Net Outflows	0.0	0.2	11.1	2.3
India	Trade	15.6	15.7	27.4	45.2
	FDI: Net Inflows	0.0	0.0	0.1	1.4
	FDI: Net Outflows	0.0	0.1	0.8	2.0
United States	Trade	20.8	20.5	25.9	28.7
	FDI: Net Inflows	0.7	0.6	1.6	2.9
	FDI: Net Outflows	0.6	0.8	3.2	1.9

Source: World Development Indicators, World Bank.

The increasing importance of multinational corporations is also apparent in Exhibit 5. Net FDI inflows and outflows increased as a percentage of GDP between 1980 and 2000 for each of the countries shown. Trade between multinational firms and their subsidiaries (i.e., intra-firm trade) has become an important part of world trade. For example, 46 percent of US imports occur between related parties (Bernard, Jensen, Redding, and Schott 2010). Globalization of production has increased the productive efficiency of manufacturing firms because they are able to decompose their value chain into individual components or parts, and then outsource their production to different locations where these components can be produced most efficiently.⁴ For example, Nintendo's Wii remote is manufactured with components sourced from several locations around the world: the accelerometer is manufactured in the United States; the base memory chip in Italy; the data converter in the United States, Thailand, and India; the plastic casing is assembled in China and designed in Japan; the Bluetooth chip is manufactured in Taiwan and designed in California (US); and the rumble pack is manufactured in various locations in Asia.⁵ Foreign direct investment and outsourcing have increased business investment in these economies and provided smaller and less developed economies the opportunity to participate in international trade. For example, the World Investment Report (2002) indicates that in January 2002 Intel had 13 fabrication plants and 11 assembly and testing sites in 7 countries/regions. It was the leading national exporter from Ireland, Philippines, and Costa Rica, and 17th among foreign exporters from China. These trends indicate the increasing global interdependence of economies, although the degree of interdependence varies. Greater interdependence also means that economies are now more exposed to global competition. As a result they must be more flexible in their production structure in order to respond effectively to changes in global demand and supply.

⁴ Hill and Hult (2019) explains the idea of the firm as a value chain: "The operations of the firms can be thought of as a value chain composed of a series of distinct value creation activities including production, marketing and sales, materials management, R&D, human resources, information systems, and firm infrastructure." Production itself can be broken down into distinct components and each component outsourced separately.

⁵ <http://money.cnn.com/magazines/fortune/storiesupplement/wiiremote/index.htm>.

The complexity of trading relationships has also increased with the development of sophisticated global supply chains that include not only final goods but also intermediate goods and services. Increased global interdependence has changed the risk and return profiles of many economies. Economies that have greater international links are more exposed to, and affected by, economic downturns and crises occurring in other parts of the world. The contagion effect of the Asian financial crisis, which began in Thailand in July 1997, spread to many other markets, such as Indonesia, Malaysia, South Korea, Philippines, Hong Kong, Singapore, and Taiwan. It even affected Brazil and Russia to some degree, although there is less clarity about the mechanisms by which the crisis spread beyond Asia. Among the outward symptoms of the crisis were exchange rate problems, such as currency speculation and large depreciation of currencies, capital flight, and financial and industrial sector bankruptcies. However, recovery was surprisingly swift and all these economies exhibited positive growth by the second quarter of 1999 (Gerber 2017).

2.3 Benefits and Costs of International Trade

The preceding sections have described the growth of world trade and the increasing interdependence of national economies. Has trade been beneficial? The benefits and costs of international trade have been widely debated. The most compelling arguments supporting international trade are: countries gain from exchange and specialization, industries experience greater economies of scale, households and firms have greater product variety, competition is increased, and resources are allocated more efficiently.

Gains from exchange occur when trade enables each country to receive a higher price for its exports (and greater profit) and/or pay a lower price for imported goods instead of producing these goods domestically at a higher cost (i.e., less efficiently). This exchange, in turn, leads to a more efficient allocation of resources by increasing production of the export good and reducing production of the import good in each country (trading partner). This efficiency allows consumption of a larger bundle of goods, thus increasing overall welfare. The fact that trade increases overall welfare does not, of course, mean that every individual consumer and producer is better off. What it does mean is that the winners could, in theory, compensate the losers and still be better off.

Trade also leads to greater efficiency by fostering specialization based on comparative advantage. Traditional trade models, such as the Ricardian model and the Heckscher–Ohlin model, focus on specialization and trade according to comparative advantage arising from differences in technology and factor endowments, respectively. These models will be discussed in the next section.

Newer models of trade focus on the gains from trade that result from economies of scale, greater product variety, and increased competition. In an open economy, increased competition from foreign firms reduces the monopoly power of domestic firms and forces them to become more efficient, as compared to a closed economy. Industries that exhibit increasing returns to scale (for example, the automobile and steel industries) benefit from increased market size as a country starts trading because the average cost of production declines as output increases in these industries. Monopolistically competitive models of trade have been used to explain why there is significant two-way trade (known as *intra-industry trade*) between countries within the same industry. Intra-industry trade occurs when a country exports and imports goods in the same product category or classification.

In a monopolistically competitive industry, there are many firms; each firm produces a unique or differentiated product, there are no exit or entry barriers, and long-run economic profits are zero. In such a model, even though countries may be similar, they gain from trade because each country focuses on the production and export of one or more varieties of the good and imports other varieties of the good. For example, the

European Union exports and imports different types of cars. Consumers gain from having access to a greater variety of final goods. Firms benefit from greater economies of scale because firms both within and outside the EU are able to sell their goods in both markets. Hence, scale economies allow firms to benefit from the larger market size and experience lower average cost of production as a result of trade.

Research suggests that trade liberalization can lead to increased real (that is, inflation-adjusted) GDP although the strength of this relationship is still debated. The positive influence of trade on GDP can arise from more efficient allocation of resources, learning by doing, higher productivity, knowledge spillovers, and trade-induced changes in policies and institutions that affect the incentives for innovation.⁶ In industries where there is “learning by doing,” such as the semiconductor industry, the cost of production per unit declines as output increases because of expertise and experience acquired in the process of production. Trade can lead to increased exchange of ideas, freer flow of technical expertise, and greater awareness of changing consumer tastes and preferences in global markets. It can also contribute to the development of higher quality and more effective institutions and policies that encourage domestic innovation. For example, Coe and Helpman (1995) show that foreign research and development (R&D) has beneficial effects on domestic productivity. These effects become stronger the more open an economy is to foreign trade. They estimate that about a quarter of the benefits of R&D investment in a G–7 country accrues to their trading partners.⁷ Hill (2007) discusses the case of Logitech, a Swiss company that manufactures computer mice. In order to win original equipment manufacturer (OEM) contracts from IBM and Apple, Logitech needed to develop innovative designs and provide high-volume production at a low cost. So in the late 1980s they moved to Taiwan, which had a highly qualified labor force, competent parts suppliers, a rapidly expanding local computer industry, and offered Logitech space in a science park at a very competitive rate. Soon thereafter, Logitech was able to secure the Apple contract.

Opponents of free trade point to the potential for greater income inequality and the loss of jobs in developed countries as a result of import competition. As a country moves toward free trade, there will be adjustments in domestic industries that are exporters as well as those that face import competition. Resources (investments) may need to be reallocated into or out of an industry depending on whether that industry is expanding (exporters) or contracting (i.e., facing import competition). As a result of this adjustment process, less-efficient firms may be forced to exit the industry, which may, in turn, lead to higher unemployment and the need for displaced workers to be retrained for jobs in expanding industries. The counter argument is that although there may be short-term and even some medium-term costs, these resources are likely to be more effectively (re-)employed in other industries in the long run. Nonetheless, the adjustment process is virtually certain to impose costs on some groups of stakeholders. For example, the US textile industry has undergone significant changes over the past 30 years as a result of competition from lower-priced imports produced in developing countries, including increased outsourcing of production by US firms. Example 1 discusses recent developments and projections for future employment in the industry.

⁶ “Knowledge spillovers” occur when investments in knowledge creation generate benefits that extend beyond the investing entity and facilitate learning and innovation by other firms or entities.

⁷ G–7 countries include Canada, France, Germany, Italy, Japan, the United Kingdom, and the United States.

EXAMPLE 1**The US Textile Industry**

According to the US Bureau of Labor Statistics (BLS) the textile, textile product, and apparel manufacturing industry is very labor intensive and faces strong import competition. Changing trade regulations have a big impact on employment in this industry. In 2005, members of the World Trade Organization terminated the Multi Fiber Agreement that imposed quotas for apparel and textile products. This agreement included most US trading partners and, in particular, China. The expiration of quotas in 2005 has allowed more apparel and textile products to be imported into the United States. Although some bilateral quotas have been re-imposed between the United States and China, imports have increased substantially. The low-skilled, labor intensive parts of the industry, such as fabric for apparel, have lost many jobs as firms shift their operations to countries with very cheap labor costs. The more skill-intensive jobs, such as design jobs and custom or high-end items that are produced domestically, have not been as adversely affected by trade. Firms in the highly automated and innovative sectors of the industry, such as industrial fabrics, carpets, and specialty yarns, are competitive on a global scale, and it is expected that they will increase their exports as a result of the liberalization of trade in textiles.

The BLS estimates in Exhibit 6 indicate that in 2008 there were 497,100 wage and salary workers in the textile, textile product, and apparel manufacturing industries. California, Georgia, and North Carolina together accounted for about 44 percent of these workers. The BLS also estimates that there will be a 47.9 percent decline in employment in this sector between 2008 and 2018. Increased labor productivity and foreign competition will both continue to contribute to this trend.

Exhibit 6 Employment in Textile, Textile Product, and Apparel Manufacturing by Industry Segment

2008 and Projected Change 2008–2018 (Employment in Thousands)		
Industry Segment	2008 Employment	2008–2018 Percent Change
Textile, textile product, and apparel manufacturing	497.1	–47.9
Textile mills	151.1	–47.6
Textile product mills	147.6	–38.1
Apparel manufacturing	198.4	–55.4

Source: BLS National Employment Matrix, 2008–2018.

The segment of the industry that remains in the United States has responded to competitive pressures by adopting new and more advanced technologies and becoming very labor efficient. Advanced technology includes computers and computer-controlled equipment that aid in many functions, such as design, pattern making and cutting, wider looms, and the use of robotics to move material within the plant. All these initiatives are boosting productivity, providing workers with increased training and new skills, and changing the nature of work in the industry. Among the domestic industry's advantages are its proximity to

the domestic market and its ability to respond to fashion trends more rapidly than foreign competitors. The domestic industry is also better positioned to participate in retailers' move to just-in-time inventory management systems and electronic data exchange systems.

- 1 What are the key changes in trade policy that affected the US textile, textile product, and apparel manufacturing industry?
- 2 How did increased import competition affect the US industry?

Solution to 1:

The Multi Fiber Agreement that imposed quotas for apparel and textile products came to an end in 2005. This affected trade with most US trading partners and, in particular, China. The expiration of quotas in 2005 has allowed more apparel and textile products to be imported into the United States. Although some bilateral quotas have been re-imposed between the United States and China, imports have increased substantially.

Solution to 2:

One of the main impacts was that many low-skilled workers lost their jobs as firms moved production out of the United States to lower-wage countries. The effect on more skill-intensive jobs, such as those involved with design and domestically produced custom and high-end items, has been less severe. The highly automated and innovative sectors of the industry, such as industrial fabrics, carpets, and specialty yarns, are competitive on a global scale. The industry has responded to competitive pressures by adopting new and advanced technologies and becoming very labor efficient.

EXAMPLE 2

Benefits of Trade

Consider two countries that each produce two goods. Suppose the cost of producing cotton relative to lumber is lower in Cottonland than in Lumberland.

- 1 How would trade between the two countries affect the lumber industry in Lumberland?
- 2 How would trade between the two countries affect the lumber industry in Cottonland?
- 3 What would happen to the lumber industry workers in Cottonland in the long run?
- 4 What is the meaning of the expression “gains from trade”?
- 5 What are some of the benefits from trade?

Solution to 1:

The lumber industry in Lumberland would benefit from trade. Because the cost of producing lumber relative to producing cotton is lower in Lumberland than in Cottonland (i.e., lumber is relatively cheap in Lumberland), Lumberland will export lumber and the industry will expand.

Solution to 2:

The lumber industry in Cottonland would not benefit from trade, at least in the short run. Because lumber is relatively expensive to produce in Cottonland, the domestic lumber industry will shrink as lumber is imported from Lumberland.

Solution to 3:

The overall welfare effect in both countries is positive. However, in the short run, many lumber producers in Cottonland (and cotton producers in Lumberland) are likely to find themselves without jobs as the lumber industry in Cottonland and the cotton industry in Lumberland contract. Those with skills that are also needed in the other industry may find jobs fairly quickly. Others are likely to do so after some re-training. In the long run, displaced workers should be able to find jobs in the expanding export industry. However, those who remain in the import-competing industry may be permanently worse off because their industry-specific skills are now less valuable. Thus, even in the long run, trade does not necessarily make every stakeholder better off. But the winners could compensate the losers and still be better off, so the overall welfare effect of opening trade is positive.

Solution to 4:

Gains from trade imply that the overall benefits of trade outweigh the losses from trade. It does not mean that all stakeholders (producers, consumers, government) benefit (or benefit equally) from trade.

Solution to 5:

Some of the benefits from trade include: gains from exchange and specialization based on relative cost advantage; gains from economies of scale as the companies add new markets for their products; greater variety of products available to households and firms; greater efficiency from increased competition; and more efficient allocation of resources.

2.4 Comparative Advantage and the Gains from Trade

Up to this point, we have not been precise about what it means for a country to have a comparative advantage in the production of specific goods and services. In this section, we define comparative advantage, distinguish it from the notion of absolute advantage, and demonstrate the gains from trading in accordance with comparative advantage. We then explain two traditional models of trade—the Ricardian and Heckscher–Ohlin models—and the source of comparative advantage in each model.

2.4.1 Gains from Trade: Absolute and Comparative Advantage

A country has an **absolute advantage** in producing a good (or service) if it is able to produce that good at a lower cost or use fewer resources in its production than its trading partner. For example, suppose a worker in Brazil can produce either 20 pens or 40 pencils in a day. A worker in China can produce either 10 pens or 60 pencils. A Chinese worker produces 60 pencils a day while a Brazilian worker produces only 40 pencils a day. Hence, China produces pencils at a lower cost than Brazil, and has an absolute advantage in the production of pencils. Similarly, Brazil produces pens at a lower cost than China, and hence has an absolute advantage in the production of pens. A country has a **comparative advantage** in producing a good if its opportunity cost of producing that good is less than that of its trading partner. In our example, the opportunity cost of producing an extra pen in China is 6 pencils. It is the opportunity foregone; namely, the number of pencils China would have to give up to produce an

extra pen. If Brazil does not trade and has to produce both pens and pencils, it will have to give up 2 pencils in order to produce a pen. Similarly, in China each pen will cost 6 pencils. Hence, the opportunity cost of a pen in Brazil is 2 pencils, whereas in China it is 6 pencils. Brazil has the lower opportunity cost and thus a comparative advantage in the production of pens. China has a lower opportunity cost (1 pencil costs $\frac{1}{6}$ th of a pen) than Brazil (1 pencil costs $\frac{1}{2}$ a pen) in the production of pencils and thus has a comparative advantage in the production of pencils. Example 3 further illustrates these concepts.

EXAMPLE 3

Absolute and Comparative Advantages

Suppose there are only two countries, India and the United Kingdom. India exports cloth to the United Kingdom and imports machinery. The output per worker per day in each country is shown in Exhibit 7:

Exhibit 7 Output per Worker per Day		
	Machinery	Cloth (yards)
United Kingdom	4	8
India	2	16

Based only on the information given, address the following:

- Which country has an absolute advantage in the production of:
 - machinery?
 - cloth?
- Do the countries identified in Question 1 as having an absolute advantage in the production of A) machinery and B) cloth, also have a comparative advantage in those areas?

Solution to 1A:

The United Kingdom has an absolute advantage in the production of machinery because it produces more machinery per worker per day than India.

Solution to 1B:

India has an absolute advantage in the production of cloth because it produces more cloth per worker per day than the United Kingdom.

Solution to 2A and 2B:

In both cases, the answer is “yes.” In the case of machinery, the opportunity cost of a machine in the United Kingdom is 2 yards of cloth ($8 \div 4$ or 1 machine = 2 yards cloth). This amount is the autarkic price of machines in terms of cloth in the United Kingdom. In India, the opportunity cost of a machine is 8 yards of cloth ($16 \div 2$ or 1 machine = 8 yards cloth). Thus, the United Kingdom has a comparative advantage in producing machines. In contrast, the opportunity cost of a yard of cloth in the United Kingdom and in India is $\frac{1}{2}$ and $\frac{1}{8}$ of a machine, respectively. India has a lower opportunity cost ($\frac{1}{8}$ of a machine) and, therefore, a comparative advantage in the production of cloth.

It is important to note that even if a country does not have an absolute advantage in producing any of the goods, it can still gain from trade by exporting the goods in which it has a comparative advantage. In Example 3, if India could produce only 6 yards of cloth per day instead of 16 yards of cloth, the United Kingdom would have an *absolute* advantage in both machines and cloth. However, India would still have a *comparative* advantage in the production of cloth because the opportunity cost of a yard of cloth in India, $\frac{1}{3}$ of a machine in this case, would still be less than the opportunity cost of a yard of cloth in the United Kingdom ($\frac{1}{2}$ of a machine as before).

Let us now illustrate the gains from trading according to comparative advantage. In Example 3, if the United Kingdom could sell a machine for more than 2 yards of cloth and if India could purchase a machine for less than 8 yards of cloth, both countries would gain from trade. Although it is not possible to determine the exact world price without additional details regarding demand and supply conditions, both countries would gain from trade as long as the world price for machinery in terms of cloth is between the autarkic prices of the trading partners. In our example, this price corresponds to a price of between 2 and 8 yards of cloth for a machine. *The further away the world price of a good or service is from its autarkic price in a given country, the more that country gains from trade.* For example, if the United Kingdom was able to sell a machine to India for 7 yards of cloth (i.e., closer to India's autarkic price), it would gain 5 yards of cloth per machine sold to India compared with its own autarkic price (with no trade) of 1 machine for 2 yards of cloth. However, if the United Kingdom was able to sell a machine to India for only 3 yards of cloth (closer to the UK autarkic price), it would gain only 1 yard of cloth per machine sold to India compared with its own autarkic price.

Exhibits 8 and 9 provide the production and consumption schedules of both countries at autarky and after trade has commenced. In autarky (Exhibit 8), the United Kingdom produces and consumes 200 machines and 400 yards of cloth (without trade, consumption of each product must equal domestic production). Similarly, India produces 100 machines and 800 yards of cloth in autarky. In a world economy consisting of only these two countries, total output for each commodity is the sum of production in both countries. Therefore, total world output is 300 machines and 1,200 yards of cloth.

Exhibit 8 Production and Consumption in Autarky

	Autarkic Production	Autarkic Consumption
United Kingdom		
Machinery (m)	200	200
Cloth (yards) (c)	400	400
India		
Machinery	100	100
Cloth (yards)	800	800
Total World:		
Machinery	300	300
Cloth (yards)	1200	1200

Now, assume that the United Kingdom and India start trading and that the world price of 1 machine is 4 yards of cloth ($1m = 4c$). This price is within the range of acceptable world trading prices discussed earlier because this price lies between the autarkic prices of the United Kingdom ($1m = 2c$) and India ($1m = 8c$). Exhibit 9

shows that in an open economy, the United Kingdom would specialize in machines and India would specialize in cloth. As a result, the United Kingdom produces 400 machines and no cloth, while India produces 1,600 yards of cloth and no machines. The United Kingdom exports 160 machines to India in exchange for 640 yards of cloth. After trade begins with India, the United Kingdom consumes 240 machines and 640 yards of cloth. Consumption in the United Kingdom increases by 40 machines and 240 yards of cloth. Similarly, India consumes 160 machines and 960 yards of cloth, an increase of 60 machines and 160 yards of cloth. World production and consumption is now 400 machines and 1,600 yards of cloth. Post-trade production and consumption exceeds the autarkic situation by 100 machines and 400 yards of cloth.

Exhibit 9 Gains from Trade

	Post-trade Production	Post-trade Consumption	Change in Consumption (compared with autarky)
UK			
Machinery	400	240	+40
Cloth (yards)	0	640	+240
India			
Machinery	0	160	+60
Cloth (yards)	1600	960	+160
Total World:			
Machinery	400	400	+100
Cloth (yards)	1600	1600	+400

Exhibit 10 shows a more general case of gains from trade under increasing costs. In Panel A, the curve connecting the X and Y axes is the UK production possibilities frontier (PPF).⁸ That is, it represents the combinations of cloth and machinery that the United Kingdom can produce given its technology and resources (capital and labor). The slope of the PPF at any point is the opportunity cost of one good in terms of the other. The shape of the PPF indicates increasing opportunity cost in terms of machines as more cloth is produced and vice versa. To maximize the value of output, production occurs where the slope of the PPF equals the relative price of the goods. P_A represents the autarkic price line, which is tangent to the PPF at A , the autarkic equilibrium. The slope of the autarkic price line represents the opportunity cost before trade. In autarky, the United Kingdom produces and consumes 60 machines and 60 thousand yards cloth, and is on indifference curve I .⁹ When the United Kingdom starts trading with India, it faces the world price line P^* . This new price line is tangent to the PPF at B . The change in relative prices of the goods encourages the United Kingdom to increase the production of the good in which it has comparative advantage (machines) and produce at B instead of A . We note that at B the United Kingdom has increased the production of machines to 120 units and reduced the production of cloth to 30 thousand yards. We also note that trade has expanded the UK consumption possibilities. The United Kingdom consumes at point E after trade, exports 80 machines to India and imports 80 thousand yards of cloth from India. Note that E is outside the PPF, but on the world price line that is tangent to the PPF at B .

⁸ Modified from Salvatore (2011).

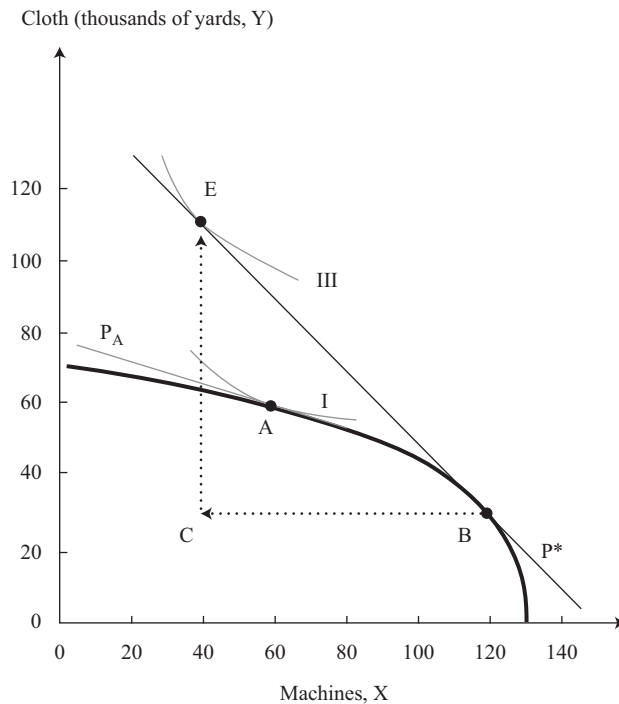
⁹ An indifference curve represents the various combinations of goods (machines and cloth) that provide the same level of utility or welfare. Higher indifference curves represent higher levels of utility or welfare.

This line is also the trading possibilities line because trade occurs along this line. The slope of this line is the opportunity cost of a machine in terms of cloth in the world market. The United Kingdom has clearly increased its welfare through trade because it is able to consume at point *E*, which is on a higher indifference curve (III) and thus represents a higher level of welfare compared with the autarkic consumption point *A* on indifference curve *I*.

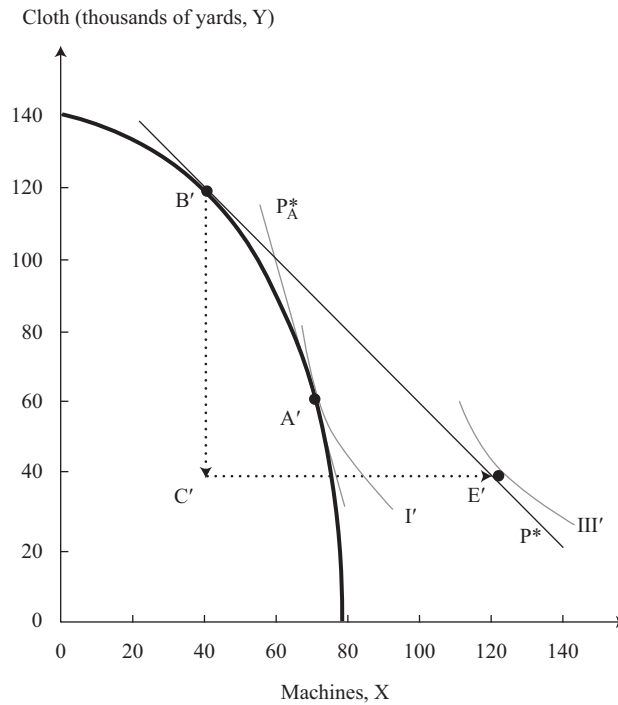
Panel B shows the corresponding situation for India. When trade opens with the United Kingdom, India shifts production from *A'* to *B'*, producing more cloth, the good in which it has a comparative advantage, and fewer machines. It now exports 80 thousand yards of cloth to the United Kingdom and imports 80 machines from the United Kingdom. India now consumes at *E'* which is on the world price line and also on a higher indifference curve, III', than the autarkic consumption point (*A'*) on indifference curve *I'*. Thus, by specializing (incompletely, as is typically the case with increasing production costs) in the good in which it has a comparative advantage, each country increases its welfare. We should also note that *P** is the price at which trade is balanced. At this relative world price, the export of cloth from India equals the import of cloth into the United Kingdom (80 thousand yards) and the export of machines from the United Kingdom equals the imports of machines into India (80 machines).

Exhibit 10 Graphical Depiction of Gains from Trade with Increasing Costs

Panel A. United Kingdom



(continued)

Exhibit 10 (Continued)**Panel B. India**

A country's comparative advantage can change over time as a result of structural shifts in its domestic economy, shifts in the global economy, the accumulation of physical or human capital, new technology, the discovery of such natural resources as oil, and so on. For example, an increase in skilled labor in China has led several multinational companies to establish R&D facilities in China to benefit from its highly educated workforce.

EXAMPLE 4**Changes in Comparative Advantage**

Exhibit 11 shows how Taiwan's comparative advantage changed over time as a result of an export-oriented development strategy it adopted during the 1960s.¹⁰ The challenges of foreign competition created a "virtuous circle" that was self-reinforcing. Taiwan's changing comparative advantage was the result of government policy, an increasingly skilled and productive workforce, and proactive firms that learned and adapted new technology.

¹⁰ Prior to the 1960s, Taiwan had an import-substitution policy—that is, a development policy aimed at replacing imports with domestic production that was supported by US aid. However, US aid ended in the 1960s, forcing Taiwan toward export promotion policies.

Exhibit 11 Changes in Structure of Taiwan's Merchandise Exports, 1963–2003 (Percentage Shares)

Products	1963	1973	1983	1993	2003
Agricultural products	59.3	15.4	8.0	5.1	2.5
Mining products	2.7	0.9	2.4	1.7	3.5
Manufactures	38	83.6	89.1	93	93.7
Iron and steel	3.0	1.3	2.5	1.6	3.9
Chemicals	5.1	1.5	2.4	5.1	8.1
Other semi-manufactures	11.7	12.1	11.6	9.6	6.8
Machinery and transport equipment	1.5	23.5	26.2	44.4	55.7
Office and telecom equipment	0.3	16.3	13.9	23.8	35.8
Electrical machinery and apparatus	0.3	2.7	3.6	6.5	8.1
Textiles	11.7	12.8	7.2	9.6	6.2
Clothing	3.0	16.1	11.9	4.4	1.4
Other consumer goods	1.8	16.3	27.4	18.4	11.6

Source: World Trade Report (2008).

- 1 How has Taiwan's structure of exports changed over time?
- 2 How did increased foreign competition impact the economy?
- 3 What were the factors that helped to change Taiwan's comparative advantage?

Solution to 1:

The economy moved from exporting agricultural products and textiles during the 1960s to exporting clothes and other consumer goods during the 1970s and 1980s to exporting office and telecommunications equipment in the 1990s. In 1960, agriculture and manufacturing accounted for 59.3 percent and 38 percent of Taiwan's exports, respectively. By 2003, the corresponding figures were 2.5 percent and 93.7 percent. The share of machinery and transport equipment (a subcategory of manufacturing) had increased from 1.5 percent in 1960 to 55.7 percent in 2003.

Solution to 2:

The challenges of foreign competition created a "virtuous circle" that was self-reinforcing. Success in export markets increased the confidence of Taiwanese firms and led to greater success in exports through increased productivity, higher-quality products, acquisition of new skills, and adoption of technologies.

Solution to 3:

The factors that helped change Taiwan's comparative advantage included government policy, an increasingly skilled and productive workforce, and proactive firms that learned and adapted new technology.

From an investment perspective, it is critical for analysts to be able to examine a country's comparative and absolute advantages and to analyze changes in them. It is also important to understand changes in government policy and regulations, demographics, human capital, demand conditions, and other factors that may influence

comparative advantage and production and trade patterns. This information can then be used to identify sectors, industries within those sectors, and companies within those industries that will benefit.

2.4.2 Ricardian and Heckscher–Ohlin Models of Comparative Advantage

A discussion of absolute and comparative advantage and the gains from specialization would be incomplete without a discussion of two important theories of trade, the Ricardian Model and the Heckscher–Ohlin Model. These models are based on cross-country differences in technology and in factor endowments, respectively. These theoretical models are based on several assumptions, some of which may not be fully satisfied in the real world; nonetheless they provide extremely useful insights into the determinants and patterns of trade.

Adam Smith argued that a country could gain from trade if it had an absolute advantage in the production of a good. David Ricardo extended Smith's idea of the gains from trade by arguing that even if a country did not have an absolute advantage in the production of any good, it could still gain from trade if it had a comparative advantage in the production of a good. In the Ricardian model, labor is the only (variable) factor of production. Differences in labor productivity, reflecting underlying differences in technology, are the source of comparative advantage and hence the key driver of trade in this model. A country with a lower opportunity cost in the production of a good has a comparative advantage in that good and will specialize in its production. In our two-country model, if countries vary in size, the smaller country may specialize completely, but may not be able to meet the total demand for the product. Hence, the larger country may be incompletely specialized, producing and exporting the good in which it has a comparative advantage but still producing (and consuming) some of the good in which it has a comparative disadvantage. It is important to recognize that although differences in technology may be a major source of comparative advantage at a given point in time, other countries can close the technology gap or even gain a technological advantage. The shift of information technology services from developed countries to India is an example of comparative advantage shifting over time.¹¹ This shift was facilitated by India's growing pool of highly skilled and relatively low-wage labor, the development and growth of its telecommunication infrastructure, and government policies that liberalized trade in the 1990s.

In the Heckscher–Ohlin Model (also known as the factor-proportions theory), both capital and labor are variable factors of production. That is, each good can be produced with varying combinations of labor and capital. According to this model, differences in the relative endowment of these factors are the source of a country's comparative advantage. This model assumes that technology in each industry is the same among countries, but it varies between industries. According to the theory, a country has a comparative advantage in goods whose production is intensive in the factor with which it is relatively abundantly endowed, and would tend to specialize in and export that good. Capital is relatively more (less) abundant in a country if the ratio of its endowment of capital to labor is greater (less) than that of its trading partner.¹² This scenario means a country in which labor is relatively abundant would export relatively labor-intensive goods and import relatively capital-intensive goods. For example, because the manufacture of textiles and clothing is relatively labor intensive, they are exported by such countries as China and India where labor is relatively abundant.

¹¹ According to NASSCOM (India's prominent IT-BPO trade association), Indian firms offer a wide range of information technology services that include consulting, systems integration, IT outsourcing/managed services/hosting services, training, and support/maintenance. See www.nasscom.in.

¹² Alternatively, factor abundance can be defined in terms of the relative factor prices that prevail in autarky. Under this definition, labor is more (less) abundant in a country if the cost of labor relative to the cost of capital is lower (higher) in that country.

Relative factor intensities in production can be illustrated with the following example. In 2002, capital per worker in the Canadian paper industry was C\$118,777, whereas in the clothing manufacturing sector it was C\$8,954.¹³ These amounts indicate that manufacturing paper is more capital intensive than clothing production. Canada trades with Thailand and, being relatively capital abundant compared with Thailand, it exports relatively capital intensive paper to Thailand and imports relatively labor intensive clothing from Thailand.

Because the Heckscher–Ohlin model has two factors of production, labor and capital, (unlike the Ricardian model that has only labor), it allows for the possibility of income redistribution through trade. The demand for an input is referred to as a *derived demand* because it is derived from the demand for the product it is used to produce. As a country opens up to trade, it has a favorable impact on the abundant factor, and a negative impact on the scarce factor. This result is because trade causes output prices to change; more specifically, the price of the export good increases and the price of the import good declines. These price changes affect the demand for factors used to produce the import and export goods, and hence affect the incomes received by each factor of production.

To illustrate this point, consider again the opening of trade between the United Kingdom and India in Exhibit 10. When trade opened, the United Kingdom expanded production of machines—which are assumed to be the capital-intensive industry—and reduced production of clothing. India did the opposite. Machines became more expensive relative to clothing in the United Kingdom (line P^* is steeper than line P^A). The relative price change, along with the shift in output it induces, leads to a redistribution of income from labor to capital in the United Kingdom. The opposite occurs in India—machines become cheaper relative to clothing (line P^* is flatter than P^A), production shifts toward clothing, and income is redistributed from capital to labor.

Note that in each country, the relatively cheap good and the relatively cheap factor of production both get more expensive when trade is opened. That raises an interesting question: If free trade equalizes the prices of goods among countries, does it also equalize the prices of the factors of production? In the simple Heckscher–Ohlin world of homogeneous products, homogeneous inputs, and identical technologies among countries, the answer is yes: The absolute and relative factor prices are equalized in both countries if there is free trade. In the real world, we see that factor prices do not converge completely even if there is free trade because several assumptions of the models are not fully satisfied in the real world. Nonetheless, it is important to note that *with international trade factor prices display a tendency to move closer together in the long run.*

Changes in factor endowments can cause changes in the patterns of trade and can create profitable investment opportunities. For example, in 1967 Japan had a comparative advantage in unskilled-labor-intensive goods, such as textiles, apparel, and leather. Meier (1998) notes that by 1980, Japan had greatly increased its skilled labor and consequently had a comparative advantage in skill-intensive products, especially non-electrical machinery.

It is important to note that technological differences, as emphasized in the Ricardian trade model, and differences in factor abundance, as emphasized in the Heckscher–Ohlin model, are both important drivers of trade. They are complementary, not mutually exclusive. Tastes and preferences can also vary among countries and can change over time, leading to changes in trade patterns and trade flows.

13 Appleyard, Field, and Cobb (2010).

3

TRADE AND CAPITAL FLOWS: RESTRICTIONS AND AGREEMENTS

Trade restrictions (or trade protection) are government policies that limit the ability of domestic households and firms to trade freely with other countries. Examples of trade restrictions include tariffs, import quotas, voluntary export restraints (VER), subsidies, embargoes, and domestic content requirements. **Tariffs** are taxes that a government levies on imported goods. **Quotas** restrict the quantity of a good that can be imported into a country, generally for a specified period of time. A voluntary export restraint is similar to a quota but is imposed by the exporting country. An **export subsidy** is paid by the government to the firm when it exports a unit of a good that is being subsidized. The goal here is to promote exports, but it reduces welfare by encouraging production and trade that is inconsistent with comparative advantage. **Domestic content provisions** stipulate that some percentage of the value added or components used in production should be of domestic origin. Trade restrictions are imposed by countries for several reasons including protecting established domestic industries from foreign competition, protecting new industries from foreign competition until they mature (infant industry argument), protecting and increasing domestic employment, protecting strategic industries for national security reasons, generating revenues from tariffs (especially for developing countries), and retaliation against trade restrictions imposed by other countries.

Capital restrictions are defined as controls placed on foreigners' ability to own domestic assets and/or domestic residents' ability to own foreign assets. Thus, in contrast with trade restrictions, which limit the openness of goods markets, capital restrictions limit the openness of financial markets. Sections 3.1 through 3.4 discuss trade restrictions. Section 3.5 briefly addresses capital restrictions.

3.1 Tariffs

Tariffs are taxes that a government levies on imported goods.¹⁴ The primary objective of tariffs is to protect domestic industries that produce the same or similar goods. They may also aim to reduce a trade deficit. Tariffs reduce the demand for imported goods by increasing their price above the free trade price. The economic impact of a tariff on imports in a small country is illustrated in Exhibit 12. In this context, a small country is not necessarily small in size, population, or GDP. Instead, a **small country** is one that is a price taker in the world market for a product and cannot influence the world market price. For example, by many measures Brazil is a large country, but it is a price taker in the world market for cars. A large country, however, is a large importer of the product and can exercise some influence on price in the world market. When a large country imposes a tariff, the exporter reduces the price of the good to retain some of the market share it could lose if it did not lower its price. This reduction in price alters the terms of trade and represents a redistribution of income from the exporting country to the importing country. So, in theory it is possible for a large country to increase its welfare by imposing a tariff if 1) its trading partner does not retaliate and 2) the deadweight loss as a result of the tariff (see below) is smaller than the benefit of improving its terms of trade. However, there would still be a net reduction in global welfare—the large country cannot gain by imposing a tariff unless it imposes an even larger loss on its trading partner.

¹⁴ Governments may also impose taxes on exports, although they are less common.

In Exhibit 12, the world price (free trade price) is P^* . Under free trade, domestic supply is Q^1 , domestic consumption is Q^4 , and imports are Q^1Q^4 . After the imposition of a per-unit tariff t , the domestic price increases to P_t , which is the sum of the world price and the per-unit tariff t . At the new domestic price, domestic production increases to Q^2 and domestic consumption declines to Q^3 , resulting in a reduction in imports to Q^2Q^3 .

The welfare effects can be summarized as follows:

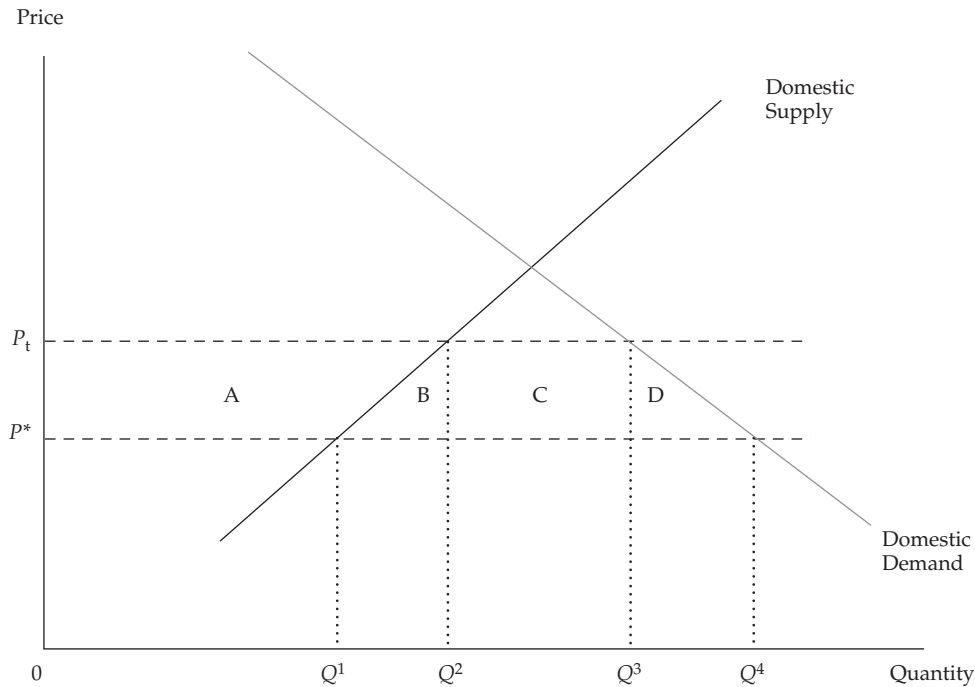
- Consumers suffer a loss of consumer surplus because of the increase in price.¹⁵ This effect is represented by areas A + B + C + D in Exhibit 12.
- Local producers gain producer surplus from a higher price for their output. This effect is represented by area A.
- The government gains tariff revenue on imports Q^2Q^3 . This effect is represented by area C.

The net welfare effect is the sum of these three effects. The loss in consumer surplus is greater than the sum of the gain in producer surplus and government revenue and results in a deadweight loss to the country's welfare of B + D.

Welfare Effects of an Import Tariff or Quota	
	Importing Country
Consumer surplus	– (A + B + C + D)
Producer surplus	+A
Tariff revenue or Quota rents	+C
National welfare	– B – D

Tariffs create deadweight loss because they give rise to inefficiencies on both the consumption and production side. B represents inefficiencies in production. Instead of being able to import goods at the world price P^* , tariffs encourage inefficient producers whose cost of production is greater than P^* to enter (or remain in) the market, leading to an inefficient allocation of resources. On the consumption side, tariffs prevent mutually beneficial exchanges from occurring because consumers who were willing to pay more than P^* but less than P_t are now unable to consume the good.

¹⁵ Consumer surplus, producer surplus, and deadweight loss are defined and discussed in the prerequisite reading “Demand and Supply Analysis: Introduction” available online in your Candidate Resources.

Exhibit 12 Welfare Effects of Tariff and Import Quota**EXAMPLE 5****Analysis of a Tariff**

South Africa manufactures 110,000 tons of paper. However, domestic demand for paper is 200,000 tons. The world price for paper is \$5 per ton. South Africa will import 90,000 tons of paper from the world market at free trade prices. If the South African government (a small country) decides to impose a tariff of 20 percent on paper imports, the price of imported paper will increase to \$6. Domestic production after the imposition of the tariff increases to 130,000 tons, while the quantity demanded declines to 170,000 tons.

- 1 Calculate the loss in consumer surplus arising from the imposition of the tariff.
- 2 Calculate the gain in producer surplus arising from the imposition of the tariff.
- 3 Calculate the gain in government revenue arising from the imposition of the tariff.
- 4 Calculate the deadweight loss arising from the imposition of the tariff.

Solution to 1:

The loss in consumer surplus = $\$1 \times 170,000 + \frac{1}{2} \times \$1 \times 30,000 = \$185,000$. This calculation is represented by areas A + B + C + D in Exhibit 12.

Solution to 2:

Gain in producer surplus = $\$1 \times 110,000 + \frac{1}{2} \times (\$1 \times 20,000) = \$120,000$; Area A in Exhibit 12.

Solution to 3:

Change in government revenue = $\$1 \times 40,000 = \$40,000$; Area C in Exhibit 12.

Solution to 4:

Deadweight loss because of the tariff = $1/2 \times \$1 \times 20,000 + 1/2 \times \$1 \times 30,000 = \$25,000$; Areas B + D in Exhibit 12.

3.2 Quotas

A **quota** restricts the quantity of a good that can be imported into a country, generally for a specified period of time. An **import license** specifies the quantity that can be imported. For example, the European Union operates a system of annual import quotas for steel producers who are not members of the World Trade Organization. The 2010 quota was 0.2 million tons a year for Kazakhstan. In the case of Russia, the 2010 quota of 3.2 million tons per year was a part of an EU–Russia agreement.¹⁶ A key difference between tariffs and quotas is that the government is able to collect the revenue generated from a tariff. This effect is uncertain under a quota. With quotas, foreign producers can often raise the price of their goods and earn greater profits than they would without the quota. These profits are called **quota rents**. In Exhibit 12, if the quota is Q^2Q^3 , the equivalent tariff that will restrict imports to Q^2Q^3 is t and the domestic price after the quota is P_t . This is the same as the domestic price after the tariff t was imposed. Area C, however, is now the quota rent or profits that are likely to be captured by the foreign producer rather than tariff revenue that is captured by the domestic government. If the foreign producer or foreign government captures the quota rent, C, then the welfare loss to the importing country, represented by areas B + D + C in Exhibit 12, under a quota is greater than under the equivalent tariff. If the government of the country that imposes the quota can capture the quota rents by auctioning the import licenses for a fee, then the welfare loss under the quota is similar to that of a tariff, represented by areas B + D.

A **voluntary export restraint** (VER) is a trade barrier under which the exporting country agrees to limit its exports of the good to its trading partners to a specific number of units. The main difference between an import quota and a VER is that the former is imposed by the importer, whereas the latter is imposed by the exporter. The VER allows the quota rent resulting from the decrease in trade to be captured by the exporter (or exporting country), whereas in the case of an import quota there is ambiguity regarding who captures the quota rents. Hence, a VER results in welfare loss in the importing country. For example, in 1981 the Japanese government imposed VERs on automobile exports to the United States.

3.3 Export Subsidies

An export subsidy is a payment by the government to a firm for each unit of a good that is exported. Its goal is to stimulate exports. But it interferes with the functioning of the free market and may distort trade away from comparative advantage. Hence, it reduces welfare. *Countervailing duties* are duties that are levied by the importing country against subsidized exports entering the country. As an example, agricultural subsidies in developed countries, notably the EU, have been a contentious issue in trade negotiations with less-developed countries and developed countries that are agricultural exporters, such as New Zealand and Australia.

¹⁶ For more information, see <http://ec.europa.eu/trade/creating-opportunities/economic-sectors/industrial-goods/steel/>.

In the case of an export subsidy, the exporter has the incentive to shift sales from the domestic to the export market because it receives the international price plus the per-unit subsidy for each unit of the good exported. This scenario raises the price in the domestic market by the amount of the subsidy in the small country case (price before subsidy plus subsidy). In the large country case, the world price declines as the large country increases exports. The net welfare effect is negative in both the large and small country cases, with a larger decline in the large country case. This result is because in the large country case, the decline in world prices implies that a part of the subsidy is transferred to the foreign country, unlike in the small country case.

Exhibit 13 summarizes some of these effects.

Exhibit 13

Panel A. Effects of Alternative Trade Policies

	Tariff	Import Quota	Export Subsidy	VER
Impact on	Importing country	Importing country	Exporting country	Importing country
Producer surplus	Increases	Increases	Increases	Increases
Consumer surplus	Decreases	Decreases	Decreases	Decreases
Government revenue	Increases	Mixed (depends on whether the quota rents are captured by the importing country through sale of licenses or by the exporters)	Falls (government spending rises)	No change (rent to foreigners)
National welfare	Decreases in small country Could increase in large country	Decreases in small country Could increase in large country	Decreases	Decreases

Panel B. Effects of Alternative Trade Policies on Price, Production, Consumption, and Trade

	Tariff	Import Quota	Export Subsidy	VER
Impact on	Importing country	Importing country	Exporting country	Importing country
Price	Increases	Increases	Increases	Increases
Domestic consumption	Decreases	Decreases	Decreases	Decreases
Domestic production	Increases	Increases	Increases	Increases
Trade	Imports decrease	Imports decrease	Exports increase	Imports decrease

EXAMPLE 6

Tariffs, Quotas, and VERs

Thailand, a small country, has to decide whether to impose a tariff or a quota on the import of computers. You are considering investing in a local firm that is a major importer of computers.

- 1 What will be the impact of a tariff on prices, quantity produced, and quantity imported in Thailand (the importing country)?
- 2 If Thailand imposes a tariff, what will the impact be on prices in the exporting country?

- 3 How would a tariff affect consumer surplus, producer surplus, and government revenue in Thailand?
- 4 Explain whether the net welfare effect of a tariff is the same as that of a quota.
- 5 Which policy, a tariff or a quota, would be most beneficial to the local importer in which you may invest and why?
- 6 If Thailand were to negotiate a VER with the countries from which it imports computers, would this be better or worse than an import quota for the local importing firm in which you may invest? Why?

Solution to 1:

A tariff imposed by a small country, such as Thailand, raises the price of computers in the importing country, reduces the quantity imported, and increases domestic production.

Solution to 2:

A tariff imposed by a small country would not change the price of computers in the exporting country.

Solution to 3:

When a small country imposes a tariff, it reduces consumer surplus, increases producer surplus, and increases government revenue in that country.

Solution to 4:

The quota can lead to a greater welfare loss than a tariff if the quota rents are captured by the foreign government or foreign firms.

Solution to 5:

A tariff will hurt importers because it will reduce their share of the computer market in Thailand. The impact of a quota depends on whether the importers can capture a share of the quota rents. Assuming importers can capture at least part of the rents, they will be better off with a quota.

Solution to 6:

The VER would not be better for the local importer than the import quota and would most likely be worse. Under the VER, all of the quota rents will be captured by the exporting countries whereas with an import quota at least part of the quota rents may be captured by local importers.

It is important to understand existing trade policies and the potential for policy changes that may impact return on investment. Changes in the government's trade policy can affect the pattern and value of trade and may result in changes in industry structure. These changes may have important implications for firm profitability and growth because they can affect the goods a firm can import/export, change demand for its products, impact its pricing policies, and create delays through increased paperwork, procurement of licenses, approvals, and so on. For example, changes in import policies that affect the ability of a firm to import vital inputs for production may increase the cost of production and reduce firm profitability.

3.4 Trading Blocs, Common Markets, and Economic Unions

There has been a proliferation of trading blocs or regional trading agreements (RTA) in recent years. Important examples of regional integration include the North American Free Trade Agreement (NAFTA) and the European Union (EU). A regional trading bloc is a group of countries that have signed an agreement to reduce and progressively eliminate barriers to trade and movement of factors of production among the members of the bloc. It may or may not have common trade barriers against countries that are not members of the bloc.

There are many different types of regional trading blocs, depending on the level of integration that takes place. **Free trade areas** (FTA) are one of the most prevalent forms of regional integration in which all barriers to the flow of goods and services among members have been eliminated. However, each country maintains its own policies against non-members. The North American Free Trade Agreement (NAFTA) among the United States, Canada, and Mexico is an example of a FTA. A **customs union** extends the FTA by not only allowing free movement of goods and services among members but also creating a common trade policy against non-members. In 1947, Belgium, the Netherlands, and Luxemburg (“Benelux”) formed a customs union that became a part of the European Community in 1958. The **common market** is the next level of economic integration that incorporates all aspects of the customs union and extends it by allowing free movement of factors of production among members. The Southern Cone Common Market (MERCOSUR) of Argentina, Brazil, Paraguay, and Uruguay is an example of a common market.¹⁷ An **economic union** requires an even greater degree of integration. It incorporates all aspects of a common market and in addition requires common economic institutions and coordination of economic policies among members. The European Community became the European Union in 1993. If the members of the economic union decide to adopt a common currency, then it is also a **monetary union**. For example, with the adoption of the euro, 19 EU member countries also formed a monetary union.¹⁸

EXAMPLE 7

Trading Blocs

- 1 Chile and Australia have a free trade with each other but have separate trade barriers on imports from other countries. Chile and Australia are a part of a(n)
 - A FTA.
 - B Economic union.
 - C Customs union.
 - D Common market.

¹⁷ For more information, visit the OECD website, <http://stats.oecd.org/glossary/>.

¹⁸ On 1 January 1999, Austria, Belgium, Finland, France, Germany, Ireland, Italy, Luxembourg, the Netherlands, Portugal, and Spain adopted the euro. This adoption meant that these countries had to surrender control over their domestic monetary policy to the European Central Bank. Greece joined in 2001. Euro coins and notes went into circulation on 1 January 2002, and these countries gave up the last vestiges of their national currencies. Other members now include Slovenia (2007), Cyprus (2008), Malta (2008), Slovakia (2009), Estonia (2011), Latvia (2014), and Lithuania (2015). The eurozone (i.e., the monetary union) is only a subset of the EU membership because some EU members, notably the United Kingdom, have not adopted the euro.

- 2 An RTA that removes all tariffs on imports from member countries, has common external tariffs against all non-members, but does not advance further in deepening economic integration is called a(n)
- A FTA.
 - B Economic union.
 - C Customs union.
 - D Common market.

Solution to 1:

A is correct. Chile and Australia do not have a customs union because they do not have a common trade policy with respect to other trade partners (C is incorrect). A common market or an economic union entail even more integration (B and D are incorrect).

Solution to 2:

C is correct. A basic FTA does not entail common external tariffs (A is incorrect), whereas a common market and an economic union entail integration beyond common external tariffs (B and D are incorrect).

Regional integration is popular because eliminating trade and investment barriers among a small group of countries is easier, politically less contentious, and quicker than multilateral trade negotiations under the World Trade Organization (WTO). The WTO is a negotiating forum that deals with the rules of global trade between nations and where member countries can go to sort out trade disputes. The latest rounds of trade negotiations launched by the WTO in 2001 at Doha, Qatar, included several contentious issues of specific concern to developing countries, such as the cost of implementing trade policy reform in developing countries, market access in developed countries for developing countries' agricultural products, and access to affordable pharmaceuticals in developing countries. After nearly a decade of negotiations, very limited progress has been made on the major issues. Hence, it is not surprising to see a renewed interest in bilateral and multilateral trade liberalization on a smaller scale. Policy coordination and harmonization are also easier among a smaller group of countries. Regional integration can be viewed as a movement toward freer trade.

Regional integration results in preferential treatment for members compared with non-members and can lead to changes in the patterns of trade. Member countries move toward freer trade by eliminating or reducing trade barriers against each other, leading to a more efficient allocation of resources. But regional integration may also result in trade and production being shifted from a lower-cost non-member who still faces trade barriers to a higher-cost member who faces no trade barriers. This shift leads to a less-efficient allocation of resources and could reduce welfare. Hence, there are two static effects that are direct results of the formation of the customs union: trade creation and trade diversion.

Trade creation occurs when regional integration results in the replacement of higher-cost domestic production by lower-cost imports from other members. For example, consider two hypothetical countries, Qualor and Vulcan. Qualor produces 10 million shirts annually and imports 2 million shirts from Vulcan, which has a lower cost of production. Qualor has 10 percent tariffs on imports from Vulcan. Qualor and Vulcan then agree to form a customs union. Qualor reduces its production of shirts to 7 million and now imports 11 million shirts from Vulcan. The decline in Qualor's domestic production (from 10 million to 7 million shirts) is replaced by importing 3 million additional shirts from the low-cost producer, Vulcan. This scenario represents

trade creation. The rest of the additional imports (6 million shirts) represent increased consumption by Qualor's consumers because the price of shirts declines after formation of the custom union.

Trade diversion occurs when lower-cost imports from nonmember countries are replaced with higher-cost imports from members. In the example in the preceding paragraph, suppose Qualor initially imposes a 10 percent tariff on imports from both Vulcan and Aurelia. Aurelia is the lowest-cost producer of shirts, so Qualor initially imports 2 million shirts from Aurelia instead of from Vulcan. Qualor and Vulcan then form a customs union, which eliminates tariffs on imports from Vulcan but maintains a 10 percent tariff on imports from Aurelia. Now trade diversion could occur if the free trade price on imports from Vulcan is lower than the price on imports from Aurelia. Even though Aurelia is the lowest-cost producer, it may be a higher-priced source of imports because of the tariff. If this is the case, then Qualor will stop importing from Aurelia, a non-member, and divert its imports to Vulcan, a member of the RTA. Both trade creation and trade diversion are possible in an RTA. If trade creation is larger than trade diversion, then the net welfare effect is positive. However, there are concerns that this may not always be the case.

The benefits ascribed to free trade—greater specialization according to comparative advantage, reduction in monopoly power because of foreign competition, economies of scale from larger market size, learning by doing, technology transfer, knowledge spillovers, greater foreign investment, and better quality intermediate inputs at world prices—also apply to regional trading blocs. In addition, fostering greater interdependence among members of the regional trading bloc reduces the potential for conflict. Members of the bloc also have greater bargaining power and political clout in the global economy by acting together instead of as individual countries.

The 2009 World Development Report points to spillover of growth across borders as one of the main benefits of regional integration (Collier and O'Connell 2007). There is evidence of considerable spillovers among OECD countries, which are highly integrated both as a group and within their own geographic regions. The long-run growth of integrated countries is interconnected because members have greater access to each other's markets. Strong growth in any RTA country could have a positive impact on growth in other RTA member countries. RTAs also enhance the benefits of good policy and lead to convergence in living standards. For example, growth spillovers are likely to be much smaller among Sub-Saharan African countries because of a lack of integration arising from deficiencies in RTAs and inadequate levels of transportation and telecommunications infrastructure. Roberts and Deichmann (2008) estimated what the cumulative loss in real GDP between 1970 and 2000 would have been if Switzerland, which is landlocked and fully integrated with both its immediate neighbors and the world economy, had been subject to the same level of spillovers as the Central African Republic. Under such a scenario, Switzerland's GDP per capita in 2000 would have been 9.3 percent lower. The cumulative GDP loss would have been \$334 billion (constant US dollars, 2000), which was the equivalent of 162 percent of Switzerland's real GDP in 2000.

Although regional integration has many advantages, it may impose costs on some groups. For example, there was significant concern in the United States that NAFTA and especially low-skilled-labor intensive imports from Mexico could hurt low-skilled workers. Adjustment costs arose as import competition caused inefficient firms to exit the market, and the workers in those firms were at least temporarily unemployed as they sought new jobs. However, the surviving firms experienced an increase in productivity, and US consumers benefited from the increase in product varieties imported from Mexico. Feenstra and Taylor (2008) estimated that the product varieties exported from Mexico to the United States had grown by an average of 2.2 percent a year across all industries. They estimated that NAFTA imposed private costs of nearly \$5.4 billion a year in the United States during 1994–2002, but that these costs

were offset by an average welfare gain of \$5.5 billion a year accruing from increased varieties imported from Mexico. Consumer gains from more varieties of products continued over time as long as the imports continued, while adjustment costs arising from job losses declined over time. In 2003, the gain from increased product varieties from Mexico was \$11 billion, far exceeding the adjustment costs of \$5.4 billion.¹⁹ Their analysis concluded:

...Thus the consumer gains from increased product variety, when summed over the years, considerably exceed the private loss from displacement. This outcome is guaranteed to occur because the gains from expanded import varieties occur every year that the imports are available, whereas labor displacement is a temporary phenomenon. (Feenstra and Taylor 2008, p. 208)

It is important to recognize, however, that workers displaced by regional integration may have to bear long-term losses if they are unable to find jobs with wages comparable with the jobs they lost or they remain unemployed for a long period. For example, although import competition was certainly not the only factor that led to a dramatic contraction of the US automobile industry, the impact on employment in that industry is likely to be permanent and many former autoworkers, especially older workers, may never find comparable jobs.

Concerns regarding national sovereignty, especially where big and small nations may be part of the same bloc, have also been an impediment to the formation of FTAs. The proposal for a South Asian regional bloc has faced challenges regarding India's role because it is one of the biggest economies in the region.

Regional integration is important from an investment perspective because it offers new opportunities for trade and investment. The cost of doing business in a large, single, regional market is lower and firms can benefit from economies of scale. However, it is important to note that differences in tastes, culture, and competitive conditions still exist among members of a trading bloc. These differences may limit the potential benefits from investments within the bloc. In addition, depending on the level of integration and the safeguards in place, problems faced by individual member countries in an RTA may quickly spread to other countries in the bloc.

There are at least two challenges in the formation of an RTA and in its potential progression from a free trade area to deeper integration in the form of a customs union, common market, or economic union. First, cultural differences and historical considerations—for example, wars and conflicts—may complicate the social/political process of integration. Second, maintaining a high degree of economic integration limits the extent to which member countries can pursue independent economic and social policies. Free trade and mobility of labor and capital tend to thwart policies aimed at controlling relative prices and/or quantities within a country, while balance of payments and fiscal credibility considerations limit the viability of divergent macroeconomic policies. This situation is especially true in the case of a monetary union because monetary policy is not under the control of individual countries and currency devaluation/revaluation is not available as a tool to correct persistent imbalances.²⁰ When persistent imbalances do arise, they may lead to a crisis that spills over to other countries facing similar problems. A recent example is the fear of contagion caused by the Greek fiscal crisis in 2010. In May 2010, Standard & Poor's reduced the credit ratings on Greece's government from investment grade to junk status. It also downgraded the government debt of Spain and Portugal. These countries were suffering

¹⁹ Feenstra and Taylor (2008) discuss in their book the data limitations and various assumptions they made in their analysis.

²⁰ These limitations are inherent in any system with fixed exchange rates and a high degree of capital mobility. They are not unique to a monetary union (i.e., a common currency). For a discussion of currency regimes, see the Level I curriculum reading on Currency Exchange Rates.

from a combination of high government deficits and slow GDP growth. The credit downgrades increased fears that Greece, in particular, would default on its debt and cause economic turmoil not only among the healthier countries in the EU but also in the United States and Asia. The EU and the International Monetary Fund (IMF) agreed on a USD145 billion (EUR110 billion) bailout for Greece in May 2010, and provided Ireland with a financing package of about USD113 billion (EUR85 billion) in November 2010. As of late 2010, there were continuing concerns about the financial health of Greece, Ireland, Portugal, and Spain. The EU, which created the European Financial Stability Facility (EFSF) in 2010 to help EU countries in need, has been debating the need for an expansion in the scope and financing capacity of the EFSF.

EXAMPLE 8

Trade Agreements

Bagopia, Cropland, and Technopia decide to enter into an RTA. In the first stage, they decide to sign a free trade agreement (FTA). After several successful years, they decide that it is time to form a common market.

- 1 Does an FTA make exporting firms in member countries more attractive as investment options?
- 2 How does the common market affect firms doing business in these countries compared with an FTA?

Solution to 1:

The first stage, where there is free movement of goods and services among RTA members, is called a free trade area. It makes exporting firms a more attractive investment proposition because they are able to serve markets in member countries without the additional costs imposed by trade barriers.

Solution to 2:

Unlike an FTA, a common market allows for free movement of factors of production, such as labor and capital, among the member economies. Like an FTA, it provides access to a much larger market and free movement of goods and services. But the common market can create more profitable opportunities for firms than an FTA by allowing them to locate production in and purchase components from anywhere in the common market according to comparative advantage.

3.5 Capital Restrictions

There are many reasons for governments to restrict inward and outward flow of capital. For example, the government may want to meet some objective regarding employment or regional development, or it may have a strategic or defense-related objective. Many countries require approval for foreigners to invest in their country and for citizens to invest abroad. Control over inward investment by foreigners results in restrictions on how much can be invested, and on the type of industries in which capital can be invested. For example, such strategic industries as defense and telecommunications are often subject to ownership restrictions. Outflow restrictions can include restrictions on repatriation of capital, interest, profits, royalty payments, and license fees. Citizens are often limited in their ability to invest abroad, especially in foreign exchange–scarce economies, and there can be deadlines for repatriation of income earned from any investments abroad.

Economists consider free movement of financial capital to be beneficial because it allows capital to be invested where it will earn the highest return. Inflows of capital also allow countries to invest in productive capacity at a rate that is higher than could be achieved with domestic savings alone, and it can enable countries to achieve a higher rate of growth. Longer-term investments by foreign firms that establish a presence in the local economy can bring in not only much needed capital but also new technology, skills, and advanced production and management practices as well as create spillover benefits for local firms. Investment by foreign firms can also create a network of local suppliers if they source some of their components locally. Such suppliers may receive advanced training and spillover benefits from a close working relationship with the foreign firms. On the one hand, increased competition from foreign firms in the market may force domestic firms to become more efficient. On the other hand, it is possible that the domestic industry may be hurt because domestic firms that are unable to compete are forced to exit the market.

In times of macroeconomic crisis, capital mobility can result in capital flight out of the country, especially if most of the inflow reflects short-term portfolio flows into stocks, bonds, and other liquid assets rather than foreign direct investment (FDI) in productive assets. In such circumstances, capital restrictions are often used in conjunction with other policy instruments, such as fixed exchange rate targets. Capital restrictions and fixed exchange rate targets are complementary instruments because in a regime of perfect capital mobility, governments cannot achieve domestic and external policy objectives simultaneously using only standard monetary and fiscal policy tools.²¹ By limiting the free flow of capital, capital controls provide a way to exercise control over a country's external balance whereas more traditional macro-policy tools are used to address other objectives.

Modern capital controls were developed by the belligerents in World War I as a method to finance the war effort. At the start of the war, all major powers restricted capital outflows (i.e., the purchase of foreign assets or loans abroad). These restrictions raised revenues by keeping capital in the domestic economy, facilitating the taxation of wealth, and producing interest income. Moreover, capital controls helped to maintain a low level of interest rates, reducing the government's borrowing costs on its liabilities. Since WWI, controls on capital outflows have been used similarly in other countries, mostly developing nations, to generate revenue for governments or to permit them to allocate credit in the domestic economy without risking capital flight. In broad terms, a capital restriction is any policy designed to limit or redirect capital flows. Such restrictions may take the form of taxes, price or quantity controls, or outright prohibitions on international trade in assets. Price controls may take the form of special taxes on returns to international investment, taxes on certain types of transactions, or mandatory reserve requirements—that is, a requirement forcing foreign parties wishing to deposit money in a domestic bank account to deposit some percentage of the inflow with the central bank for a minimum period at zero interest. Quantity restrictions on capital flows may include rules imposing ceilings or requiring special authorization for new or existing borrowing from foreign creditors. Or there may be administrative controls on cross-border capital movements in which a government agency must approve transactions for certain types of assets.

Effective implementation of capital restrictions may entail non-trivial administration costs, particularly if the measures have to be broadened to close potential loopholes. There is also the risk that protecting the domestic financial markets by capital restrictions may postpone necessary policy adjustments or impede private-sector

²¹ Section 4.1 of the Level I curriculum reading on Currency Exchange Rates provides a concise discussion of the policy implications of capital mobility with fixed versus floating exchange rates.

adaptation to changing international circumstances. Most importantly, controls may give rise to negative market perceptions, which may, in turn, make it more costly and difficult for the country to access foreign funds.

In a study on the effectiveness of capital controls, the International Monetary Fund considered restrictions on capital outflows and inflows separately.²² The authors concluded that for restrictions on capital inflows to be effective (i.e., not circumvented), the coverage needs to be comprehensive and the controls need to be implemented forcefully. Considerable administrative costs are incurred in continuously extending, amending, and monitoring compliance with the regulations. Although controls on inflows appeared to be effective in some countries, it was difficult to distinguish the impact of the controls from the impact of other policies, such as strengthening of prudential regulations, increased exchange rate flexibility, and adjustment of monetary policy. In the case of capital outflows, the imposition of controls during episodes of financial crisis seems to have produced mixed results, providing only temporary relief of varying duration to some countries, while successfully shielding others (e.g., Malaysia) and providing them with sufficient time to restructure their economies.

EXAMPLE 9

Capital Restrictions: Malaysia's Capital Controls in 1998–2001

After the devaluation of the Thai baht in July 1997, Southeast Asia suffered from significant capital outflows that led to falling local equity and real estate prices and declining exchange rates. To counter the outflows of capital, the IMF urged many of the countries in the region to increase interest rates, thus making their assets more attractive to foreign investors. Higher interest rates, however, weighed heavily on the domestic economies. In response to this dilemma, Malaysia imposed capital controls on 1 September 1998. These controls prohibited transfers between domestic and foreign accounts, eliminated credit facilities to offshore parties, prevented repatriation of investment until 1 September 1999, and fixed the exchange rate of the Malaysian ringgit at 3.8 per US dollar. In February 1999, a system of taxes on capital flows replaced the prohibition on repatriation of capital. Although the details were complex, the net effect was to discourage short-term capital flows while permitting long-term transactions. By imposing capital controls, Malaysia hoped to regain monetary independence, and to be able to cut interest rates without provoking a fall in the value of its currency as investors avoided Malaysian assets. The imposition of outflow controls indeed curtailed speculative capital outflows and allowed interest rates to be reduced substantially. At the same time, under the umbrella of the capital controls, the authorities pursued bank and corporate restructuring and achieved a strong economic recovery in 1999 and 2000. With the restoration of economic and financial stability, administrative controls on portfolio outflows were replaced by a two-tier, price-based exit system in February 1999, which was finally eliminated in May 2001. Although Malaysia's capital controls did contribute to a stabilization of its economy, they came with long-term costs associated with the country's removal from the MSCI developed equity market index, an important benchmark in the institutional asset management industry, and its relegation to the emerging market universe. The Malaysian market was no longer seen as on par with developed equity markets whose institutional

22 Ariyoshi, et al. (2000).

and regulatory frameworks provide a higher standard of safety for investors. As a consequence, it became more difficult for Malaysia to attract net long-term capital inflows (Kawai and Takagi 2003).

- 1 Under what economic circumstances were Malaysia's capital restrictions imposed?
- 2 What was the ultimate objective of Malaysia's capital restrictions?
- 3 How successful were the country's capital restrictions?

Solution to 1:

As a result of the Southeast Asian crisis, Malaysia suffered substantial net capital outflows pushing up the domestic interest rate level.

Solution to 2:

The restrictions were designed to limit and redirect capital flows to allow the government to reduce interest rates and pursue bank and corporate restructurings.

Solution to 3:

Although the capital controls helped stabilize Malaysia's economy, they contributed to a change in investors' perception of Malaysian financial markets and removal of the Malaysian equity market from the MSCI benchmark universe of developed equity markets. This situation undermined international demand for Malaysian equities and made it more difficult to attract net long-term capital inflows.

THE BALANCE OF PAYMENTS

4

The **balance of payments** (BOP) is a double-entry bookkeeping system that summarizes a country's economic transactions with the rest of the world for a particular period of time, typically a calendar quarter or year. In this context, a transaction is defined as "an economic flow that reflects the creation, transformation, exchange, or extinction of economic value and involves changes in ownership of goods and/or financial assets, the provision of services, or the provision of labour and capital."²³ In other words, the BOP reflects payments for exports and imports as well as financial transactions and financial transfers. Analyzing the BOP is an important element in assessing a country's macroeconomic environment, its monetary and fiscal policies, and its long-term growth potential. Investors use data on trade and capital flows to evaluate a country's overall level of capital investment, profitability, and risk. The following section describes the balance of payments, the factors that influence it, and its impact on exchange rates, interest rates, and capital market transactions.

4.1 Balance of Payments Accounts

The BOP is a double-entry system in which every transaction involves both a debit and credit. In principle, the sum of all debit entries should equal the sum of all credit entries, and the net balance of all entries on the BOP statement should equal zero. In practice, however, this is rarely the case because the data used to record balance of payments transactions are often derived from different sources.

²³ IMF Balance of Payments Handbook, chapter II, page 6.

Debit entries reflect purchases of imported goods and services, purchases of foreign financial assets, payments received for exports, and payments (interest and principal) received from debtors. Credit entries reflect payments for imported goods and services, payments for purchased foreign financial assets, and payments to creditors (see Exhibit 14, Panel A). Put differently, a debit represents an increase in a country's assets (the purchase of foreign assets or the receipt of cash from foreigners) or a decrease in its liabilities (the amount owed to foreigners); a credit represents a decrease in assets (the sale of goods and services to foreigners or the payment of cash to foreigners) or an increase in liabilities (an amount owed to foreigners).

For example, as shown in Panel B of Exhibit 14, on 1 September Country A purchases \$1 million of goods from Country B and agrees to pay for these goods on 1 December. On 1 September, Country A would record in its BOP a \$1 million debit to reflect the value of the goods purchased (i.e., increase in assets) and \$1 million credit to reflect the amount owed to Country B. On 1 December, Country A would record in its BOP a \$1 million debit to reflect a decrease in the amount owed (liability) to Country B and \$1 million a credit to reflect the actual payment to Country B (decrease in assets).

From Country B's perspective, on 1 September it would record in its BOP a \$1 million debit to reflect the amount owed by Country A and a \$1 million credit to reflect the sale of goods (exports). On 1 December, Country B would record a \$1 million debit to reflect the cash received from Country A, and \$1 million credit to reflect the fact that it is no longer owed \$1 million by Country A.

Exhibit 14 Basic Entries in a BOP Context

Panel A		
DEBITS		CREDITS
Increase in Assets, Decrease in Liabilities		Decrease in Assets, Increase in Liabilities
■ Value of imported goods and services		■ Payments for imports of goods and services
■ Purchases of foreign financial assets		■ Payments for foreign financial assets
■ Receipt of payments from foreigners		■ Value of exported goods and services
■ Increase in debt owed by foreigners		■ Payment of debt by foreigners
■ Payment of debt owed to foreigners		■ Increase in debt owed to foreigners

Panel B		
Country A	Debits	Credits
1 September	\$1 million Goods purchased from Country B <i>(increase in real assets)</i>	\$1 million Short-term liability for goods purchased from Country B <i>(increase in financial liabilities)</i>
1 December	\$1 million Elimination of short-term liability for goods purchased from Country B <i>(decrease in financial liabilities)</i>	\$1 million Payment for goods purchased from Country B <i>(decrease in financial assets)</i>

Exhibit 14 (Continued)

Country B	Debits	Credits
1 September	\$1 million Short-term claim for goods delivered to Country A <i>(increase in financial assets)</i>	\$1 million Goods delivered to Country A <i>(decrease in real assets)</i>
1 December	\$1 million Receipt of payment for goods delivered to Country A <i>(increase in financial assets)</i>	\$1 million Elimination of claim for goods delivered to Country A <i>(decrease in financial assets)</i>

4.2 Balance of Payment Components

The BOP is composed of the **current account** that measures the flow of goods and services, the **capital account** that measures transfers of capital, and the **financial account** that records investment flows. These accounts are further disaggregated into sub-accounts:

Current Account

The current account can be decomposed into four sub-accounts:

- 1 **Merchandise trade** consists of all commodities and manufactured goods bought, sold, or given away.
- 2 **Services** include tourism, transportation, engineering, and business services, such as legal services, management consulting, and accounting. Fees from patents and copyrights on new technology, software, books, and movies are also recorded in the services category.
- 3 **Income receipts** include income derived from ownership of assets, such as dividends and interest payments; income on foreign investments is included in the current account because that income is compensation for services provided by foreign investments. When a German company builds a plant in China, for instance, the services the plant generates are viewed as a service export from Germany to China equal in value to the profits the plant yields for its German owner.
- 4 **Unilateral transfers** represent one-way transfers of assets, such as worker remittances from abroad to their home country and foreign direct aid or gifts.

Capital Account

The capital account consists of two sub-accounts:

- 1 **Capital transfers** include debt forgiveness and migrants' transfers (goods and financial assets belonging to migrants as they leave or enter the country).²⁴ Capital transfers also include the transfer of title to fixed assets and the transfer of funds linked to the sale or acquisition of fixed assets, gift and inheritance taxes, death duties, uninsured damage to fixed assets, and legacies.
- 2 **Sales and purchases of non-produced, non-financial assets**, such as the rights to natural resources, and the sale and purchase of intangible assets, such as patents, copyrights, trademarks, franchises, and leases.

Financial Account

The financial account can be broken down in two sub-accounts: financial assets abroad and foreign-owned financial assets within the reporting country.

- 1 A country's assets abroad are further divided into official reserve assets, government assets, and private assets. These assets include gold, foreign currencies, foreign securities, the government's reserve position in the International Monetary Fund,²⁵ direct foreign investment, and claims reported by resident banks.
- 2 Foreign-owned assets in the reporting country are further divided into official assets and other foreign assets. These assets include securities issued by the reporting country's government and private sectors (e.g., bonds, equities, mortgage-backed securities), direct investment, and foreign liabilities reported by the reporting country's banking sector.

EXAMPLE 10

US Current Account Balance

Exhibit 15 shows a simplified version of the US balance of payments for 1970–2009.

Exhibit 15 US International Transactions Accounts Data

	(USD millions)					
(Credits+, Debits–)	1970	1980	1985	1990	2000	2009
Current Account						
Exports of goods and services and income receipts	68,387	344,440	387,612	706,975	1,421,515	2,159,000
Exports of goods and services	56,640	271,834	289,070	535,233	1,070,597	1,570,797
Income receipts	11,748	72,606	98,542	171,742	350,918	588,203
Imports of goods and services and income payments	–59,901	–333,774	–483,769	–759,290	–1,779,241	–2,412,489

²⁴ Immigrants bring with them goods and financial assets already in their possession. Hence, these goods are imported on grounds other than commercial transactions.

²⁵ These are in effect official currency reserves held with the International Monetary Fund.

Exhibit 15 (Continued)

	(USD millions)					
(Credits+, Debits-)	1970	1980	1985	1990	2000	2009
Imports of goods and services	-54,386	-291,241	-410,950	-616,097	-1,449,377	-1,945,705
Income payments	-5,515	-42,532	-72,819	-143,192	-329,864	-466,783
Unilateral current transfers, net	-6,156	-8,349	-21,998	-26,654	-58,645	-124,943
Capital Account						
Capital account transactions, net	-7,220	-1	-140
Financial Account						
US-owned assets abroad, ex derivatives (increase/financial outflow (-))	-9,337	-86,967	-44,752	-81,234	-560,523	-140,465
Foreign-owned assets in the United States, ex derivatives (increase/financial inflow (+))	7,226	62,037	144,231	139,357	1,038,224	305,736
Financial derivatives, net	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	50,804
Statistical discrepancy (sum of above items with sign reversed)	-219	22,613	18,677	28,066	-61,329	162,497

Based only on the information given, address the following:

- 1 Calculate the current account balance for each year.
- 2 Calculate the financial account balance for each year.
- 3 Describe the long-term change in the current account balance.
- 4 Describe the long-term change in the financial account balance.

Solutions to 1 and 2:

(Credits+, Debits-)	1970	1980	1985	1990	2000	2009
Current Account	2,330	2,317	-118,155	-78,969	-416,371	-378,432
Financial Account	-2,111	-24,930	99,479	58,123	477,701	216,075

Solution to 3:

The United States had a current account surplus until 1980. After 1985, the US current account had an increasing deficit as a result of strong import growth.

Solution to 4:

Mirroring the growing US current account deficit, the US financial account, after 1985, registered increasing net capital inflows in similar proportions to the deficit in the current account.

4.3 Paired Transactions in the BOP Bookkeeping System

The following examples illustrate how some typical cross-border transactions are recorded in the BOP framework outlined previously. They include commercial exports and imports, the receipt of income from foreign investments, loans made to borrowers abroad, and purchases of home-country currency by foreign central banks. Exhibit 16 illustrates the various individual bookkeeping entries from the perspective of an individual country, in this case Germany.

Commercial Exports: Transactions (ia) and (ib)

A company in Germany sells technology equipment to a South Korean auto manufacturer for a total price of EUR50 million, including freight charges of EUR1 million to be paid within 90 days. The merchandise will be shipped via a German cargo ship. In this case, Germany is exporting two assets: equipment and transportation services. The cargo shipped is viewed as being created in Germany and used by South Korean customers. In return for relinquishing these two assets, Germany acquires a financial asset—the promise by the South Korean manufacturer to pay for the equipment in 90 days.

Germany would record a EUR50 million debit to an account called “private short-term claims” to show an increase in this asset. It would also record a credit of EUR49 million to “goods” and another credit of EUR1 million to “services.” Both credit entries are listed in the export category and show the decrease in assets available to German residents. These figures are entered as credits on lines 2 and 3 and as a debit on 19 in Exhibit 16 and are marked with (ia) to identify a typical commercial export transaction. To pay for the technology equipment purchased from Germany, the South Korean auto manufacturer may purchase euros from its local bank (i.e., a EUR demand deposit held by the Korean bank in a German bank) and then transfer them to the German exporter. As a result, German liabilities to South Korean residents (i.e., South Korean private short-term claims) would be debited. The respective entries, marked with (ib) are on lines 19 and 23 in Exhibit 16.

Commercial Imports: Transaction (ii)

A German utility company imports gas from Russia valued at EUR 45 million (ii), and agrees to pay the Russian company within three months. The imported gas generates a debit on line 6. The obligation pay is recorded as a credit to foreign private short-term claims on line 23.

Loans to Borrowers Abroad: Transaction (iii)

A German commercial bank purchases EUR 100 million in intermediate-term bonds issued by a Ukrainian steel company. The bonds are denominated in euros, so payment is made in euros (i.e., by transferring EUR demand deposits). A debit entry on line 18 records the increase in German holdings of Ukrainian bonds, and a credit entry on line 23 records the increase in demand deposits held by Ukrainians in German banks.

Exhibit 16 Hypothetical Transactions between German Residents and Foreigners

Item no	Account	Debit	Credit	Balance
		-	+	+/-
1	Exports of goods and services, income received			55
2	Goods		49 (ia)	49
3	Services		1 (ia)	1

Exhibit 16 (Continued)

Item no	Account	Debit	Credit	Balance
		-	+	+/-
4	Income on residents' investments abroad		5 (v)	5
5	Imports of goods and services, income paid			-45
6	Goods	45 (ii)		-45
7	Services			
8	Income on foreign investments in home country			
9	Unilateral transfers			
10	Changes in residents' claims on foreigners			-105
11	Official reserve assets			
12	Gold			
13	Foreign currency balances			
14	Other			
15	Government claims			
16	Private claims			
17	Direct investments			
18	Other private long-term claims	100 (iii)		-100
19	Private short-term claims	50 (ia), 5 (v)	50 (ib)	-5
20	Changes in foreign claims on residents			195
21	Foreign official claims		20 (iv)	20
22	Foreign private long-term claims			
23	Foreign private short-term claims	20 (iv), 50 (ib)	45 (ii), 100 (iii), 100 (vi)	175
24	Other	100 (vi)		-100
	Total	270 370	270 370	0
	Current Account: (1) + (5) + (9)			10
	Capital Account: (24)			-100
	Financial Account: (10) + (20)			90

Purchases of Home-Country Currency by Foreign Central Banks: Transaction (iv)

Private foreigners may not wish to retain euro balances acquired in earlier transactions. Those who are holding foreign currency, in our example euro claims, typically do so for purposes of financing purchases from Germany (or other euro area member countries). Assume for instance, that Swiss residents attempt to sell EUR20 million in exchange for their native currency, the Swiss franc (CHF), but there is a lack of demand for EUR funds in Switzerland. In such circumstances, the CHF would appreciate against the EUR. To prevent an undesired CHF appreciation, the Swiss National Bank (SNB) might sell CHF in exchange for EUR balances.

Suppose that the Swiss National Bank purchased EUR20 million, typically in the form of a EUR demand deposit held with a German bank, from local commercial banks in Switzerland. The German BOP would register an increase of EUR20 million in German liabilities held by foreign monetary authorities, the Swiss National Bank (line 21), and an equivalent decline in short-term liabilities held by private foreigners (i.e.,

Swiss private investors, line 23). It may be noteworthy that when the SNB purchases EUR funds from Swiss commercial banks, it also credits them the CHF equivalent of EUR20 million. The SNB's liabilities to Swiss commercial banks arising from this transaction are in fact reserve deposits that Swiss banks can use when they expand their lending business and create new deposits. Currency interventions by central banks, therefore, can contribute to an increase in a country's overall money supply, all else remaining unchanged.

Receipts of Income from Foreign Investments: Transaction (v)

Each year, residents of Germany receive billions of EUR in interest and dividends from capital invested in foreign securities and other financial claims. German residents receive these payments in return for allowing foreigners to use German capital that otherwise could be put to work in Germany. Foreign residents, in turn, receive similar returns for their investments in Germany. Assume that a German firm has a long-term capital investment in a profitable subsidiary abroad, and that the subsidiary transfers to its German parent EUR5 million in dividends in the form of funds held in a foreign bank. The German firm then has a new (or increased) demand deposit in a foreign bank as compensation for allowing its capital to be used by its subsidiary. A debit entry on line 19 shows German private short-term claims on foreigners have increased by EUR5 million, and a credit entry on line 4 reflects the fact that German residents have given up an asset (the services of capital covered over the period) valued at EUR5 million.

Purchase of Non-financial Assets: Transaction (vi)

In a move to safeguard its long-term supply of uranium, a German utility company purchases the rights to exploit a uranium mine from the government of Kazakhstan. It agrees to pay within three months. The respective entries are on lines 23 and 24. Because a non-financial, non-produced asset is involved in this transaction, it is recorded in Germany's capital account.

Note that the sum of all BOP entries in Exhibit 16 is 0. Transactions (i)–(iv) produce a current account surplus of EUR10 million, a capital account deficit of EUR100 million, and a financial account surplus of EUR90 million.

Although it is important to understand the detailed structure of official balance of payments accounts as described in the preceding paragraphs, this example is not necessarily how investment professionals think about the balance of payments day-to-day. Practitioners often think of the current account as roughly synonymous with the trade balance (merchandise trade + services) and lump all the financing flows (financial account + capital account) into one category that is usually referred to simply as the “capital account.” They then think of the capital account as consisting of two types of flows—portfolio investment flows and foreign direct investment (FDI). The former are shorter-term investments in foreign assets (stocks, bonds, etc.), whereas the latter are long-term investments in production capacity abroad. Although not completely accurate, this way of thinking about the balance of payments focuses attention on the components—trade, portfolio flows, and FDI—that are most sensitive to, and most likely to affect, market conditions, prices of goods and services, asset prices, and exchange rates. In addition, this perspective fits well with the role that the balance of payments plays in the macroeconomy.

4.4 National Economic Accounts and the Balance of Payments

In a closed economy, all output Y is consumed or invested by the private sector—domestic households and businesses—or purchased by the government. Letting Y denote GDP, C private consumption, I investment, and G government purchases of goods and services, the national income identity for a closed economy is given by:

$$Y = C + I + G \quad (1)$$

Once foreign trade is introduced, however, some output is purchased by foreigners (exports) whereas some domestic spending is used for purchases of foreign goods and services (imports). The national income identity for an open economy is thus

$$Y = C + I + G + X - M \quad (2)$$

where X denotes exports and M denotes imports.

For most countries, exports rarely equal imports. Net exports or the difference between exports and imports ($X - M$) is the equivalent of the current account balance from a BOP perspective.²⁶ When a country's imports exceed its exports, the current account is in deficit. When a country's exports exceed its imports, the current account is in surplus. As the right side of Equation 2 shows, a current account surplus or deficit can affect GDP (and also employment). The balance of the current account is also important because it measures the size and direction of international borrowing.

In order for the balance of payments to balance, a deficit or surplus in the current account must be offset by an opposite balance in the sum of the capital and financial accounts. This requirement means that a country with a current account deficit has to increase its net foreign debts by the amount of the current account deficit. For example, the United States has run current account deficits for many years while accumulating net foreign liabilities: The current account deficit was financed by net capital imports (i.e., direct investments by foreigners), loans by foreign banks, and the sale of US equities and fixed-income securities to foreign investors. By the same token, an economy with a current account surplus is earning more for its exports than it spends for its imports. Japan, Germany, and China are traditional current account surplus countries accumulating substantial net foreign claims, especially against the United States. An economy with a current account surplus finances the current account deficit of its trading partners by lending to them—that is, granting bank loans and investing in financial and real assets. As a result, the foreign wealth of a surplus country rises because foreigners pay for imports by issuing liabilities that they will eventually have to redeem.

By rearranging Equation 2, we can define the current account balance from the perspective of the national income accounts as:

$$CA = X - M = Y - (C + I + G) \quad (3)$$

Only by borrowing money from foreigners can a country have a current account deficit and consume more output than it produces. If it consumes less output than it produces, it has a current account surplus and can (indeed must) lend the surplus to foreigners. International capital flows essentially reflect an *inter-temporal trade*. An economy with a current account deficit is effectively importing present consumption and exporting future consumption.

²⁶ Strictly speaking, net exports as defined here is the trade balance rather than the current account balance because it excludes income receipts and unilateral transfers. This distinction arises because we have defined income Y as GDP rather than GNP (see section 2.1). Because the trade balance is usually the dominant component of the current account, the terms “trade balance” and “current account” are often used interchangeably. We will do so here unless the distinction is important to the discussion.

Let us now turn to the relationship between output Y and disposable income Y^d . We have to recognize that part of income is spent on taxes T , and that the private sector receives net transfers R in addition to (national) income. Disposable income Y^d is thus equal to income plus transfers minus taxes:

$$Y^d = Y + R - T \quad (4)$$

Disposable income, in turn, is allocated to consumption and saving so that we can write

$$Y^d = C + S_p \quad (5)$$

where S_p denotes private sector saving. Combining Equations 4 and 5 allows us to write consumption as income plus transfers minus taxes and saving.

$$C = Y^d - S_p = Y + R - T - S_p \quad (6)$$

We can now use the right side of Equation 6 to substitute for C in Equation 3. With some rearrangement we obtain

$$CA = S_p - I + (T - G - R) \quad (7)$$

Because $(T - G - R)$ is taxes minus government spending and transfers, it is the government surplus, or put differently, government savings S_g . Equation 7 can therefore be restated as

$$S_p + S_g = I + CA \quad (8)$$

Equation 8 highlights an essential difference between open and closed economies: An open economy can use its saving for domestic investment or for foreign investment (i.e., by exporting its savings and acquiring foreign assets), while in a closed economy savings can only be used for domestic investment. Put another way, an open economy with promising investment opportunities is not constrained by its domestic savings rate in order to exploit these opportunities. As Equation 8 shows, it can raise investment by increasing foreign borrowing (a reduction in CA) without increasing domestic savings. For example, if India decides to build a network of high-speed trains, it can import all the required materials it needs from France and then borrow the funds, perhaps also from France, to pay for the materials. This transaction increases India's domestic investment because the imported materials contribute to the expansion in the country's capital stock. All else being equal, this transaction will also produce a current account deficit for India by an amount equal to the increase in investment. India's savings does not have to increase, even though investment increases. This example can be interpreted as an inter-temporal trade, in which India imports present consumption (when it borrows to fund current expenditure) and exports future consumption (when it repays the loan).

Rearranging Equation 8, we can write

$$S_p = I + CA - S_g \quad (9)$$

Equation 9 states that an economy's private savings can be used in three ways: (1) investment in domestic capital (I), (2) purchases of assets from foreigners (CA), and (3) net purchases (or redemptions) of government debt ($-S_g$).

Finally, we can rearrange Equation 8 again to illustrate the macroeconomic sources of a current account imbalance:

$$CA = S_p + S_g - I \quad (10)$$

A current account deficit tends to result from low private savings, high private investment, a government deficit ($S_g < 0$), or a combination of the three. Alternatively, a current account surplus reflects high private savings, low private investment, or a government surplus.

As outlined above, trade deficits can result from a lack of private or government savings or booming investments. If trade deficits primarily reflect high private or government consumption (i.e., scarce savings = $S_p + S_g$), the deficit country's capacity to repay its liabilities from future production remains unchanged. If a trade deficit primarily reflects strong investments (I), however, the deficit country can increase its productive resources and its ability to repay its liabilities.

We can also see from Equation 3 that a current account deficit tends to reflect a strong domestic economy (elevated consumer, government, and investment spending), which is usually accompanied by elevated domestic credit demand and high interest rates. In such an environment, widening interest rate differentials vis-à-vis other countries can lead to growing net capital imports and produce an appreciating currency. In the long run, however, a persistent current account deficit leads to a permanent increase in the claims held by other countries against the deficit country. As a result, foreign investors may require rising risk premiums for such claims, a process that appears to lead to a depreciating currency.

EXAMPLE 11

The United Kingdom Budget

A financial newspaper had the following item:

The UK's budget deficit is the highest in the G-20; in Europe, only Ireland borrows more. These are the stark facts facing Chancellor of the Exchequer George Osborne as he plans his first Budget tomorrow. He intends to tackle the problem even if that involves severe spending cuts and large tax increases.

Source: Financial Times, 21 June 2010.

- 1 What are the likely consequences for the UK current account balance from the planned fiscal policy moves mentioned in the above article?
- 2 Describe the impact spending cuts and tax increases are likely to have on UK imports.

Solution to 1:

The combination of spending cuts and tax increases will, all else the same, lead to an improvement in the UK current account position.

Solution to 2:

UK imports are likely to be reduced by tax increases and spending cuts because government demand for foreign goods will fall and growth in private household income, which finances private imports, will be restricted as more household income goes to taxes.

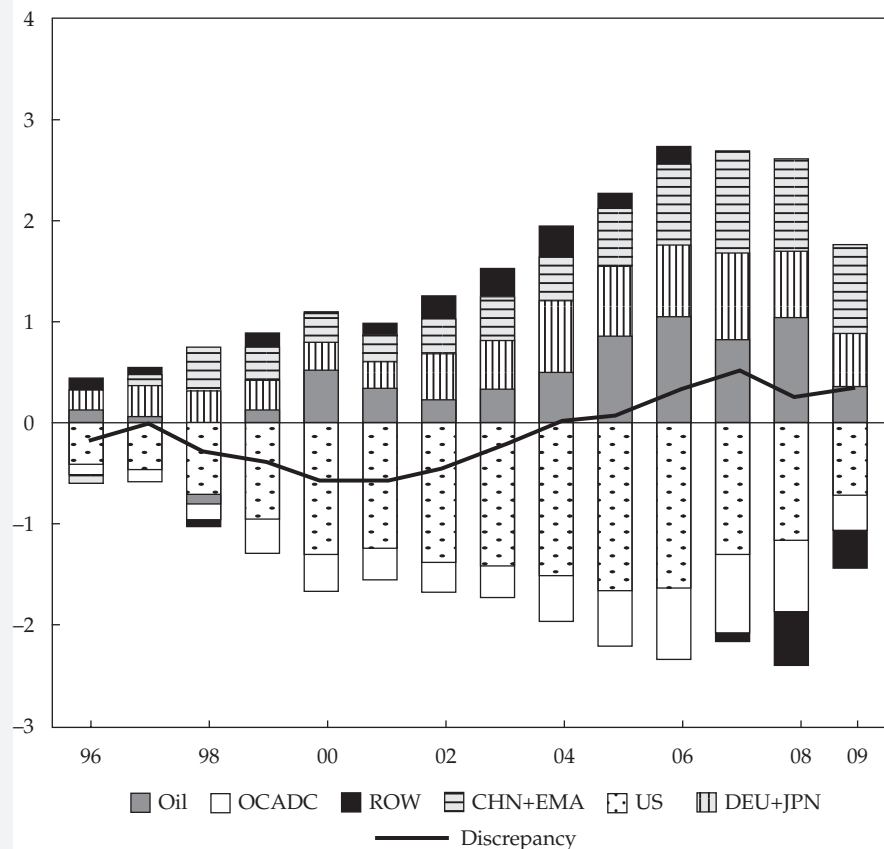
EXAMPLE 12

Global Current Account Imbalances since 1996

As a result of growing financial integration and trade liberalization, the world economy has entered a period of rapid growth in cross-border trade since the late 1980s. In synch with surging international trade, current account imbalances

widened substantially in the 1990s and the first decade of the new millennium. Exhibit 17 shows current account balances for 1996–2009 for four specific groups—the United States, oil exporters, Germany and Japan (DEU + JPN), China and emerging Asia (CHN + EMA)—and two broad categories: the rest of the world (ROW) and other current account deficit countries (OCADC), which includes Central and Eastern European countries, Australia, New Zealand, and a wide range of smaller developed and emerging countries. The United States ran a current account deficit in every year, and in every year its deficit represented most of the aggregate value of such deficits worldwide. Only in the wake of the 2007–2009 recession has the US deficit declined both in absolute terms and relative to the global aggregate of current account deficits. In the first half of the 1990s, Germany and Japan were the traditional current account surplus countries, providing net exports of goods and services to and accumulating net claims against the United States. Since the late 1990s, among the largest current account surpluses are those of China and emerging Asia and the oil exporters.

Exhibit 17 Global Imbalances (Current Account Balance in Percent of World GDP)



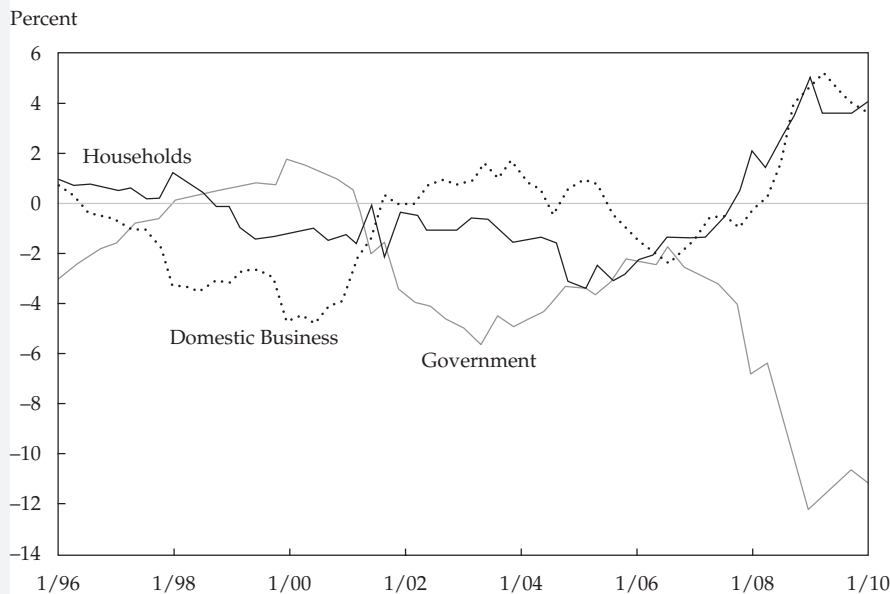
Note: CHN+EMA includes the following economies: China, Hong Kong SAR, Indonesia, Korea, Malaysia, Philippines, Singapore, Taiwan Region, Thailand.

Source: IMF *World Economic Outlook* April 2010, Chapter 4.

As illustrated in Equation 10, current account deficits or surpluses reflect imbalances between national savings (including government savings) and investments. Current account deficits are often related to expansionary fiscal policy and government deficits. In the 1980s, for instance, the growing deficit in the

US current account was widely seen as the consequence of tax cuts and rising defence spending adopted by the Reagan administration. Since the mid-1990s, however, the current account imbalances depicted in Exhibit 17 appear to reflect other, more complex factors. Exhibit 18 illustrates US net savings ($S-I$) for private domestic businesses, households, and the government (i.e., federal, state, and local) from 1996 to the second quarter of 2010. The exhibit indicates that business sector net savings and government net savings as a percentage of GDP have been near mirror-images since 1996. During the technology bubble businesses invested heavily and ran progressively larger savings deficits while the government moved to a surplus. After the bubble burst the pattern reversed with businesses moving to net positive savings and the government fiscal balance deteriorating sharply. Meanwhile, the household sector gradually reduced its savings rate. By 2006, each of the three sectors was dis-saving roughly 2 percent of US GDP. From that point, the public and private sectors diverged sharply. In the wake of the global financial crisis, households and businesses cut spending and increased savings sharply while the government deficit exploded to more than 12 percent of GDP.

Exhibit 18 United States: Sectorial Saving–Investment Balance since 1996 (Net Savings in Percent of GDP)



Source: Federal Reserve Board, flow-of-funds data.

TRADE ORGANIZATIONS

5

During the Great Depression in the 1930s, countries attempted to support their failing economies by sharply raising barriers to foreign trade, devaluing their currencies to compete against each other for export markets, and restricting their citizens' freedom to hold foreign exchange. These attempts proved to be self-defeating. World trade declined dramatically and employment and living standards fell sharply in many countries. By

the 1940s, it had become a wide-spread conviction that the world economy was in need of organizations that would help promote international economic cooperation. In July 1944, during the United Nations Monetary and Financial Conference in Bretton Woods, New Hampshire, representatives of 45 governments agreed on a framework for international economic cooperation. Two crucial, multinational organizations emanated from this conference—the World Bank, which was founded during the conference, and the International Monetary Fund (IMF), which came into formal existence in December 1945. Although the IMF was founded with the goal to stabilize exchange rates and assist the reconstruction of the world's international payment system, the World Bank was created to facilitate post-war reconstruction and development.

A third institution, the International Trade Organization (ITO), was to be created to handle the trade side of international economic cooperation, joining the other two “Bretton Woods” institutions. The draft ITO charter was ambitious, extending beyond world trade regulations to include rules on employment, commodity agreements, restrictive business practices, international investment, and services. The objective was to create the ITO at a United Nations Conference on Trade and Employment in Havana, Cuba in 1947. Meanwhile, 15 countries had begun negotiations in December 1945 to reduce and regulate customs tariffs. With World War II only barely ended, they wanted to give an early boost to trade liberalization and begin to correct the legacy of protectionist measures that had remained in place since the early 1930s. The group had expanded to 23 nations by the time the deal was signed on 30 October 1947 and the General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade (GATT) was born. The Havana conference began on 21 November 1947, less than a month after GATT was signed. The ITO charter was finally approved in Havana in March 1948, but ratification in some national legislatures proved impossible. The most serious opposition was in the US Congress, even though the US government had been one of the driving forces. In 1950, the United States government announced that it would not seek congressional ratification of the Havana Charter, and the ITO was effectively dead. As a consequence, the GATT became the only multilateral instrument governing international trade from 1948 until the World Trade Organization (WTO) was officially established in 1995.

5.1 International Monetary Fund

As we saw earlier, current account deficits reflect a shortage of net savings in an economy and can be addressed by policies designed to rein in domestic demand. This approach could, however, have adverse consequences for domestic employment. The IMF stands ready to lend foreign currencies to member countries to assist them during periods of significant external deficits. A pool of gold and currencies contributed by members provides the IMF with the resources required for these lending operations. The funds are only lent under strict conditions and borrowing countries' macro-economic policies are continually monitored. The IMF's main mandate is to ensure the stability of the international monetary system, the system of exchange rates and international payments that enables countries to buy goods and services from each other. More specifically, the IMF:

- provides a forum for cooperation on international monetary problems;
- facilitates the growth of international trade and promotes employment, economic growth, and poverty reduction;
- supports exchange rate stability and an open system of international payments; and
- lends foreign exchange to members when needed, on a temporary basis and under adequate safeguards, to help them address balance of payments problems.

The global financial crisis of 2007–2009 demonstrated that domestic and international financial stability cannot be taken for granted, even in the world's most developed countries. In light of these events, the IMF has redefined and deepened its operations by:²⁷

- *enhancing its lending facilities*: The IMF has upgraded its lending facilities to better serve its members. As part of a wide-ranging reform of its lending practices, it has also redefined the way it engages with countries on issues related to structural reform of their economies. In this context, it has doubled member countries' access to fund resources and streamlined its lending approach to reduce the stigma of borrowing for countries in need of financial help.
- *improving the monitoring of global, regional, and country economies*: The IMF has taken several steps to improve economic and financial surveillance, which is its framework for providing advice to member countries on macroeconomic policies and warning member countries of risks and vulnerabilities in their economies.
- *helping resolve global economic imbalances*: The IMF's analysis of global economic developments provides finance ministers and central bank governors with a common framework for discussing the global economy.
- *analyzing capital market developments*: The IMF is devoting more resources to the analysis of global financial markets and their links with macroeconomic policy. It also offers training to country officials on how to manage their financial systems, monetary and exchange regimes, and capital markets.
- *assessing financial sector vulnerabilities*: Resilient, well-regulated financial systems are essential for macroeconomic stability in a world of ever-growing capital flows. The IMF and the World Bank jointly run an assessment program aimed at alerting countries to vulnerabilities and risks in their financial sectors.

From an investment perspective, the IMF helps to keep country-specific market risk and global systemic risk under control. The Greek sovereign debt crisis, which threatened to destabilize the entire European banking system, is a recent example. In early 2010, the Greek sovereign debt rating was downgraded to non-investment grade by leading rating agencies as a result of serious concerns about the sustainability of Greece's public sector debt load. Yields on Greek government bonds rose substantially following the downgrading and the country's ability to refinance its national debt was seriously questioned in international capital markets. Bonds issued by some other European governments fell and equity markets worldwide declined in response to spreading concerns of a Greek debt default. The downgrading of Greek sovereign debt was the ultimate consequence of persistent and growing budget deficits the Greek government had run before and after the country had joined the European Monetary Union (EMU) in 2001. Most of the budget shortfalls reflected elevated outlays for public-sector jobs, pensions, and other social benefits as well as persistent tax evasion. Reports that the Greek government had consistently and deliberately misreported the country's official economic and budget statistics contributed to further erosion of confidence in Greek government bonds in international financial markets. Facing default, the Greek government requested that a joint European Union/IMF bailout package be activated, and a loan agreement was reached between Greece, the other EMU member countries, and the IMF. The deal consisted of an immediate EUR45 billion in loans to be provided in 2010, with more funds available later. A total of EUR110 billion was agreed depending on strict economic policy conditions that included cuts in wages and benefits, an increase in the retirement age for public-sector employees, limits on

²⁷ Visit www.imf.org/ for more information.

public pensions, increases in direct and indirect taxes, and a substantial reduction in state-owned companies. By providing conditional emergency lending facilities to the Greek government and designing a joint program with the European Union on how to achieve fiscal consolidation, the IMF prevented a contagious wave of sovereign debt crises in global capital markets.

Another example of IMF activities is the East Asian Financial Crisis in the late 1990s. It began in July 1997, when Thailand was forced to abandon its currency's peg with the US dollar. Currency devaluation subsequently hit other East Asian countries that had similar balance of payment problems, such as South Korea, Malaysia, the Philippines, and Indonesia. They had run persistent and increasing current account deficits, financed mainly with short-term capital imports, in particular, domestic banks borrowing in international financial markets. External financing was popular because of the combination of lower foreign, especially US, interest rates and fixed exchange rates. Easy money obtained from abroad led to imprudent investment, which contributed to overcapacities in several industries and inflated prices on real estate and stock markets. The IMF came to the rescue of the affected countries with considerable loans, accompanied by policies designed to control domestic demand, which included fiscal austerity and tightened monetary reins.

5.2 World Bank Group

The World Bank's main objective is to help developing countries fight poverty and enhance environmentally sound economic growth. For developing countries to grow and attract business, they have to

- strengthen their governments and educate their government officials;
- implement legal and judicial systems that encourage business;
- protect individual and property rights and honour contracts;
- develop financial systems robust enough to support endeavours ranging from micro credit to financing larger corporate ventures; and
- combat corruption.

Given these targets, the World Bank provides funds for a wide range of projects in developing countries worldwide and financial and technical expertise aimed at helping those countries reduce poverty.

The World Bank's two closely affiliated entities—the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development (IBRD) and the International Development Association (IDA)—provide low or no-interest loans and grants to countries that have unfavourable or no access to international credit markets. Unlike private financial institutions, neither the IBRD nor the IDA operates for profit. The IBRD is market-based, and uses its high credit rating to pass the low interest it pays for funds on to its borrowers—developing countries. It pays for its own operating costs because it does not look to outside sources to furnish funds for overhead.

IBRD lending to developing countries is primarily financed by selling AAA-rated bonds in the world's financial markets. Although the IBRD earns a small margin on this lending, the greater proportion of its income comes from lending out its own capital. This capital consists of reserves built up over the years and money paid in from the Bank's 185 member country shareholders. IBRD's income also pays for World Bank operating expenses and has contributed to IDA and debt relief. IDA is the world's largest source of interest-free loans and grant assistance to the poorest countries. IDA's funds are replenished every three years by 40 donor countries. Additional funds are regenerated through repayments of loan principal on 35-to-40-year, no-interest

loans, which are then available for re-lending. At the end of September 2010, the IBRD had net loans outstanding of USD125.5 billion, while its borrowings amounted to USD132 billion.

Besides acting as a financier, the World Bank also provides analysis, advice, and information to its member countries to enable them to achieve the lasting economic and social improvements their people need. Another of the Bank's core functions is to increase the capabilities of its partners, people in developing countries, and its own staff. Links to a wide range of knowledge-sharing networks have been set up by the Bank to address the vast need for information and dialogue about development.

From an investment perspective, the World Bank helps to create the basic economic infrastructure that is essential for the creation of domestic financial markets and a well-functioning financial industry in developing countries. Moreover, the IBRD is one of the most important supranational borrowers in the international capital markets. Because of its strong capital position and its very conservative financial, liquidity, and lending policies, it enjoys the top investment-grade rating from the leading agencies and investors have confidence in its ability to withstand adverse events. As a result, IBRD bonds denominated in various major currencies are widely held by institutional and private investors.

5.3 World Trade Organization

The WTO provides the legal and institutional foundation of the multinational trading system. It is the only international organization that regulates cross-border trade relationships among nations on a global scale. It was founded on 1 January 1995, replacing the General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade (GATT) that had come into existence in 1947. The GATT was the only multilateral body governing international trade from 1947 to 1995. It operated for almost half a century as a quasi-institutionalized, provisional system of multilateral treaties. Several rounds of negotiations took place under the GATT, of which the Tokyo round and the Uruguay round may have been the most far reaching. The Tokyo round was the first major effort to address a wide range of non-tariff trade barriers, whereas the Uruguay round focused on the extension of the world trading system into several new areas, particularly trade in services and intellectual property, but also to reform trade in agricultural products and textiles. The GATT still exists in an updated 1994 version and is the WTO's principal treaty for trade in goods. The GATT and the General Agreement on Trade in Services (GATS) are the major agreements within the WTO's body of treaties that encompasses a total of about 60 agreements, annexes, decisions, and understandings.

In November 2001, the most recent and still ongoing round of negotiations was launched by the WTO in Doha, Qatar. The Doha round was an ambitious effort to enhance globalization by slashing barriers and subsidies in agriculture and addressing a wide range of cross-border services. So far, under GATS, which came into force in January 1995, banks, insurance companies, telecommunication firms, tour operators, hotel chains, and transport companies that want to do business abroad can enjoy the same principles of free and fair trade that had previously applied only to international trade in goods. No agreement has been reached in Doha so far, however, despite intense negotiations at several ministerial conferences and at other sessions. The Doha round nevertheless marks one of the most crucial events in global trade over the past several decades: China's accession to the WTO in December 2001.

The WTO's most important functions are the implementation, administration, and operation of individual agreements; acting as a platform for negotiations; and settling disputes. Moreover, the WTO has the mandate to review and propagate its members' trade policies and ensure the coherence and transparency of trade policies through surveillance in a global policy setting. The WTO also provides technical cooperation and training to developing, least-developed, and low-income countries to assist with

their adjustment to WTO rules. In addition, the WTO is a major source of economic research and analysis, producing ongoing assessments of global trade in its publications and research reports on special topics. Finally, the WTO is in close cooperation with the other two Bretton Woods institutions, the IMF and the World Bank.

From an investment perspective, the WTO's framework of global trade rules provides the major institutional and regulatory base without which today's global multinational corporations would be hard to conceive. Modern financial markets would look different without the large, multinational companies whose stocks and bonds have become key elements in investment portfolios. In the equity universe, for instance, investment considerations focusing on global sectors rather than national markets would make little sense without a critical mass of multinational firms competing with each other in a globally defined business environment.

EXAMPLE 13

Function and Objective of International Organizations

On 10 May 2010, the Greek government officially applied for emergency lending facilities extended by the International Monetary Fund. It sent the following letter to Dominique Strauss-Kahn, the IMF's Managing Director:

Request for Stand-By Arrangement

This paper was prepared based on the information available at the time it was completed on Monday, May 10, 2010. The views expressed in this document are those of the staff team and do not necessarily reflect the views of the government of Greece or the Executive Board of the IMF. The policy of publication of staff reports and other documents by the IMF allows for the deletion of market-sensitive information.

Mr. Dominique Strauss-Kahn Athens, May 3, 2010
 Managing Director
 International Monetary Fund
 Washington DC

Dear Mr. Strauss-Kahn:

The attached Memorandum of Economic and Financial Policies (MEFP)²⁸ outlines the economic and financial policies that the Greek government and the Bank of Greece, respectively, will implement during the remainder of 2010 and in the period 2011–2013 to strengthen market confidence and Greece's fiscal and financial position during a difficult transition period toward a more open and competitive economy. The government is fully committed to the policies stipulated in this document and its attachments, to frame tight budgets in the coming years with the aim to reduce the fiscal deficit to below 3 percent in 2014 and achieve a downward trajectory in the public debt-GDP ratio beginning in 2013, to safeguard the stability of the Greek financial system, and to implement structural reforms to boost competitiveness and the economy's capacity to produce, save, and export. (...) The government is strongly determined to lower the fiscal deficit, (...) by achieving higher and more equitable tax collections, and constraining spending in the government wage bill and entitlement outlays, among

²⁸ The detailed memorandum is available from www.imf.org/external/pubs/ft/scr/2010/cr10111.pdf.

other items. In view of these efforts and to signal the commitment to effective macroeconomic policies, the Greek government requests that the Fund supports this multi-year program under a Stand-By Arrangement (SBA) for a period of 36 months in an amount equivalent to SDR26.4 billion.²⁹ (...) A parallel request for financial assistance to euro area countries for a total amount of €80 billion has been sent. The implementation of the program will be monitored through quantitative performance criteria and structural benchmarks as described in the attached MEFP and Technical Memorandum of Understanding (TMU). There will be twelve quarterly reviews of the program supported under the SBA by the Fund, (...) to begin with the first review that is expected to be completed in the course of the third calendar quarter of 2010, and then every quarter thereafter until the last quarterly review envisaged to be completed during the second calendar quarter of 2013, to assess progress in implementing the program and reach understandings on any additional measures that may be needed to achieve its objectives. (...) The Greek authorities believe that the policies set forth in the attached memorandum are adequate to achieve the objectives of the economic program, and stand ready to take any further measures that may become appropriate for this purpose. The authorities will consult with the Fund in accordance with its policies on such consultations, (...) and in advance of revisions to the policies contained in the MEFP. All information requested by the Fund (...) to assess implementation of the program will be provided.

(...)

Sincerely,

George Papaconstantinou
Minister of Finance

George Provopoulos
Governor of the Bank of Greece

- 1 What is the objective of the IMF's emergency lending facilities?
- 2 What are the macroeconomic policy conditions under which the IMF provides emergency lending to Greece?
- 3 What is the amount Greece requests from the IMF as emergency funds?

Solution to 1:

The program seeks to safeguard the stability of the Greek financial system and to implement structural reforms to boost competitiveness and the economy's capacity to produce, save and export.

Solution to 2:

The Greek government has to reduce the country's fiscal deficit by achieving higher and more equitable tax collections as well as constrain spending in the government wage bill and entitlement outlays.

Solution to 3:

Greece applied for a standby arrangement in an amount equivalent to SDR26.4 billion (approximately USD39.5 billion, based on the 10 May 2010 exchange rate).

²⁹ A SDR (special drawing right) is a basket of four leading currencies: Japanese yen (JPY), US dollar (USD), British pound (GBP), and euro (EUR). It consists of 18.4 yen, 0.6320 USD, 0.0903 GBP, and 0.41 EUR. One SDR was worth 1.4975 USD or 1.1547 EUR on 10 May 2010.

SUMMARY

This reading provides a framework for analyzing a country's trade and capital flows and their economic implications. It examines basic models that explain trade based on comparative advantage and provides a basis for understanding how international trade can affect the rate and composition of economic growth as well as the attractiveness of investment in various sectors.

- The benefits of trade include
 - gains from exchange and specialization;
 - gains from economies of scale as companies add new markets for their products;
 - greater variety of products available to households and firms; and
 - increased competition and more efficient allocation of resources.
- A country has an absolute advantage in producing a good (or service) if it is able to produce that good at a lower absolute cost or use fewer resources in its production than its trading partner. A country has a comparative advantage in producing a good if its *opportunity cost* of producing that good is less than that of its trading partner.
- Even if a country does not have an absolute advantage in the production of any good, it can gain from trade by producing and exporting the good(s) in which it has a comparative advantage and importing good(s) in which it has a comparative disadvantage.
- In the Ricardian model of trade, comparative advantage and the pattern of trade are determined by differences in technology between countries. In the Heckscher–Ohlin model of trade, comparative advantage and the pattern of trade are determined by differences in factor endowments between countries. In reality, technology and factor endowments are complementary, not mutually exclusive, determinants of trade patterns.
- Trade barriers prevent the free flow of goods and services among countries. Governments impose trade barriers for various reasons including: to promote specific developmental objectives, to counteract certain imperfections in the functioning of markets, or to respond to problems facing their economies.
- For purposes of international trade policy and analysis, a small country is defined as one that cannot affect the world price of traded goods. A large country's production and/or consumption decisions do alter the relative prices of trade goods.
- In a small country, trade barriers generate a net welfare loss arising from distortion of production and consumption decisions and the associated inefficient allocation of resources.
- Trade barriers can generate a net welfare gain in a large country if the gain from improving its terms of trade (higher export prices and lower import prices) more than offsets the loss from the distortion of resource allocations. However, the large country can only gain if it imposes an even larger welfare loss on its trading partner(s).
- An import tariff and an import quota have the same effect on price, production, and trade. With a quota, however, some or all of the revenue that would be raised by the equivalent tariff is instead captured by foreign producers (or the foreign government) as quota rents. Thus, the welfare loss suffered by the importing country is generally greater with a quota.

- A voluntary export restraint is imposed by the exporting country. It has the same impact on the importing country as an import quota from which foreigners capture all of the quota rents.
- An export subsidy encourages firms to export their product rather than sell it in the domestic market. The distortion of production, consumption, and trade decisions generates a welfare loss. The welfare loss is greater for a large country because increased production and export of the subsidized product reduces its global price—that is, worsens the country's terms of trade.
- Capital restrictions are defined as controls placed on foreigners' ability to own domestic assets and/or domestic residents' ability to own foreign assets. In contrast to trade restrictions, which limit the openness of goods markets, capital restrictions limit the openness of financial markets.
- A regional trading bloc is a group of countries who have signed an agreement to reduce and progressively eliminate barriers to trade and movement of factors of production among the members of the bloc.
 - They may or may not have common trade barriers against those countries that are not members of the bloc. In a free trade area all barriers to the flow of goods and services among members are eliminated, but each country maintains its own policies against non-members.
 - A customs union extends the FTA by not only allowing free movement of goods and services among members but also creating a common trade policy against non-members.
 - A common market incorporates all aspects of a customs union and extends it by allowing free movement of factors of production among members.
 - An economic union incorporates all aspects of a common market and requires common economic institutions and coordination of economic policies among members.
 - Members of a monetary union adopt a common currency.
- From an investment perspective, it is important to understand the complex and dynamic nature of trading relationships because they can help identify potential profitable investment opportunities as well as provide some advance warning signals regarding when to disinvest in a market or industry.
- The major components of the balance of payments are the
 - current account balance, which largely reflects trade in goods and services.
 - capital account balance, which mainly consists of capital transfers and net sales of non-produced, non-financial assets.
 - financial account, which measures net capital flows based on sales and purchases of domestic and foreign financial assets.
- Decisions by consumers, firms, and governments influence the balance of payments.
 - Low private savings and/or high investment tend to produce a current account deficit that must be financed by net capital imports; high private savings and/or low investment, however, produce a current account surplus, balanced by net capital exports.
 - All else the same, a government deficit produces a current account deficit and a government surplus leads to a current account surplus.
 - All else the same, a sustained current account deficit contributes to a rise in the risk premium for financial assets of the deficit country. Current account surplus countries tend to enjoy lower risk premiums than current account deficit countries.

- Created after WWII, the International Monetary Fund, the World Bank, and the World Trade Organization are the three major international organizations that provide necessary stability to the international monetary system and facilitate international trade and development.
 - The IMF's mission is to ensure the stability of the international monetary system, the system of exchange rates and international payments that enables countries to buy goods and services from each other. The IMF helps to keep country-specific market risk and global systemic risk under control.
 - The World Bank helps to create the basic economic infrastructure essential for creation and maintenance of domestic financial markets and a well-functioning financial industry in developing countries.
 - The World Trade Organization's mission is to foster free trade by providing a major institutional and regulatory framework of global trade rules without which today's global multinational corporations would be hard to conceive.

REFERENCES

- Appleyard, Dennis, Alfred Field, and Steven Cobb. 2010. *International Economics*. 7th edition. Boston: McGraw-Hill/Irwin.
- Ariyoshi, Akira, Karl Habermeier, Bernard Laurens, Inci Otker-Robe, Jorge Iván Canales-Kriljenko, and Andrei Kirilenko. 2000. "Capital Controls: Country Experiences with Their Use and Liberalization." IMF Occasional Paper 190, Washington, DC (May 17).
- Bernard, Andrew B., J. Bradford Jensen, Stephen J. Redding, and Peter K. Schott. 2010. "Intrafirm Trade and Product Contractibility." *American Economic Review*, vol. 100, no. 2 (May):444–448.
- Bureau of Labor Statistics. "Textile, Textile Product, and Apparel Manufacturing." In *Career Guide to Industries*: 2010–11 Edition.
- Coe, David T., and Elhanan Helpman. 1995. "International R&D Spillovers." *European Economic Review*, vol. 39, no. 5 (May):859–887.
- Collier, Paul, and Stephen A. O'Connell. 2007. "Opportunities and Choices." In *The Political Economy of Economic Growth in Africa, 1960–2000*, vol. 1. Edited by Benno J. Ndulu, Stephen A. O'Connell, Robert H. Bates, Paul Collier, and Charles C. Soludo. Cambridge, U.K.: Cambridge University Press.
- Feenstra, Robert C., and Alan M. Taylor. 2008. *International Economics*. New York: Worth Publishers.
- Gerber, James. 2017. *International Economics*. 7th edition. New York: Prentice Hall.
- Hill, Charles W.L., and G. Tomas M. Hult. 2019. *International Business: Competing in the Global Marketplace*. 12th edition. Boston: Irwin/McGraw-Hill.
- IMF. 2008. *Globalization: A Brief Overview*. Issues Brief, International Monetary Fund (May).
- IMF. 2010a. *Balance of Payments and International Investment Position Manual*. 6th ed. Washington, DC: International Monetary Fund.
- IMF. 2010b. *World Economic Outlook*: April 2010. Washington, DC: International Monetary Fund.
- IMF. 2011. "The IMF at a Glance." International Monetary Fund (February): www.imf.org/external/np/exr/facts/glance.htm.
- Kawai, Masahiro, and Shinji Takagi. 2003. "Rethinking Capital Controls: The Malaysian Experience." PRI Discussion Paper Series No. 03A-05, Policy Research Institute, Ministry of Finance Japan, Tokyo (May).
- Meier, Gerald M. 1998. *The International Environment of Business: Competition and Governance in the Global Economy*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Roberts, Mark, and Uwe Deichmann. 2008. "Regional Spillover Estimation." Background paper for the *World Development Report 2009: Reshaping Economic Geography*, World Bank.
- Salvatore, Dominick. 2011. *Introduction to International Economics*. 3rd edition. Hoboken, NJ: John Wiley & Sons.
- United Nations. 2002. *World Investment Report 2002: Transnational Corporations and Export Competitiveness*. New York: United Nations Conference on Trade and Development (UNCTAD).
- World Bank. 2009. *World Development Report 2009: Reshaping Economic Geography*. Washington, DC: World Bank.
- World Trade Organization. 2008. *World Trade Report 2008: Trade in a Globalizing World*. Geneva: World Trade Organization.

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

- Which of the following statements *best* describes the benefits of international trade?
 - Countries gain from exchange and specialization.
 - Countries receive lower prices for their exports and pay higher prices for imports.
 - Absolute advantage is required for a country to benefit from trade in the long term.
- Which of the following statements *best* describes the costs of international trade?
 - Countries without an absolute advantage in producing a good cannot benefit significantly from international trade.
 - Resources may need to be allocated into or out of an industry and less-efficient companies may be forced to exit an industry, which in turn may lead to higher unemployment.
 - Loss of manufacturing jobs in developed countries as a result of import competition means that developed countries benefit far less than developing countries from trade.
- Suppose the cost of producing tea relative to copper is lower in Tealand than in Copperland. With trade, the copper industry in Copperland would *most likely*:
 - expand.
 - contract.
 - remain stable.
- A country has a comparative advantage in producing a good if:
 - it is able to produce the good at a lower cost than its trading partner.
 - its opportunity cost of producing the good is less than that of its trading partner.
 - its opportunity cost of producing the good is more than that of its trading partner.
- Suppose Mexico exports vegetables to Brazil and imports flashlights used for mining from Brazil. The output per worker per day in each country is as follows:

	Flashlights	Vegetables
Mexico	20	60
Brazil	40	80

- Which country has a comparative advantage in the production of vegetables and what is the *most* relevant opportunity cost?
- Brazil: 2 vegetables per flashlight.
 - Mexico: 1.5 vegetables per flashlight.
 - Mexico: $\frac{1}{3}$ flashlight per vegetable.
- Suppose three countries produce rulers and pencils with output per worker per day in each country as follows:

	Rulers	Pencils
Mexico	20	40
Brazil	30	90
China	40	160

Which country has the greatest comparative advantage in the production of rulers?

- A China.
 - B Brazil.
 - C Mexico.
- 7 In the Ricardian trade model, a country captures more of the gains from trade if:
- A it produces all products while its trade partner specializes in one good.
 - B the terms of trade are closer to its autarkic prices than to its partner's autarkic prices.
 - C the terms of trade are closer to its partner's autarkic prices than to its autarkic prices.
- 8 Germany has much more capital per worker than Portugal. In autarky each country produces and consumes both machine tools and wine. Production of machine tools is relatively capital intensive whereas winemaking is labor intensive. According to the Heckscher–Ohlin model, when trade opens:
- A Germany should export machine tools and Portugal should export wine.
 - B Germany should export wine and Portugal should export machine tools.
 - C Germany should produce only machine tools and Portugal should produce only wine.
- 9 According to the Heckscher–Ohlin model, when trade opens:
- A the scarce factor gains relative to the abundant factor in each country.
 - B the abundant factor gains relative to the scarce factor in each country.
 - C income is redistributed between countries but not within each country.
- 10 Which type of trade restriction would *most likely* increase domestic government revenue?
- A Tariff.
 - B Import quota.
 - C Export subsidy.
- 11 Which of the following trade restrictions is likely to result in the greatest welfare loss for the importing country?
- A A tariff.
 - B An import quota.
 - C A voluntary export restraint.
- 12 A large country can:
- A benefit by imposing a tariff.
 - B benefit with an export subsidy.
 - C not benefit from any trade restriction.
- 13 If Brazil and South Africa have free trade with each other, a common trade policy against all other countries, but no free movement of factors of production between them, then Brazil and South Africa are part of a:

- A customs union.
B common market.
C free trade area (FTA).
- 14 Which of the following factors *best* explains why regional trading agreements are more popular than larger multilateral trade agreements?
A Minimal displacement costs.
B Trade diversions benefit members.
C Quicker and easier policy coordination.
- 15 The sale of mineral rights would be captured in which of the following balance of payments components?
A Capital account.
B Current account.
C Financial account.
- 16 Patent fees and legal services are recorded in which of the following balance of payments components?
A Capital account.
B Current account.
C Financial account.
- 17 During the most recent quarter, a steel company in South Korea had the following transactions
- Bought iron ore from Australia for AUD50 million.
 - Sold finished steel to the United States for USD65 million.
 - Borrowed AUD50 million from a bank in Sydney.
 - Received a USD10 million dividend from US subsidiary.
 - Paid KRW550 million to a Korean shipping company.
- Which of the following would be reflected in South Korea's current account balance for the quarter?
A The loan.
B The shipping.
C The dividend.
- 18 Which of the following *most likely* contributes to a current account deficit?
A High taxes.
B Low private savings.
C Low private investment.
- 19 Which of the following chronic deficit conditions is *least* alarming to the deficit country's creditors?
A High consumption.
B High private investment.
C High government spending.
- 20 Which of the following international trade organizations regulates cross-border exchange among nations on a global scale?
A World Bank Group (World Bank).
B World Trade Organization (WTO).
C International Monetary Fund (IMF).

- 21 Which of the following international trade organizations has a mission to help developing countries fight poverty and enhance environmentally sound economic growth?
- A World Bank Group (World Bank).
 - B World Trade Organization (WTO).
 - C International Monetary Fund (IMF).
- 22 Which of the following organizations helps to keep global systemic risk under control by preventing contagion in scenarios such as the 2010 Greek sovereign debt crisis?
- A World Bank Group (World Bank).
 - B World Trade Organization (WTO).
 - C International Monetary Fund (IMF).
- 23 Which of the following international trade bodies was the only multilateral body governing international trade from 1948 to 1995?
- A World Trade Organization (WTO).
 - B International Trade Organization (ITO).
 - C General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade (GATT).

SOLUTIONS

- 1 A is correct. Countries gain from exchange when trade enables each country to receive a higher price for exported goods and/or pay a lower price for imported goods. This leads to more efficient resource allocation and allows consumption of a larger variety of goods.
- 2 B is correct. Resources may need to be reallocated into or out of an industry, depending on whether that industry is an exporting sector or an import-competing sector of that economy. As a result of this adjustment process, less-efficient companies may be forced to exit the industry, which in turn may lead to higher unemployment and the need for retraining in order for displaced workers to find jobs in expanding industries.
- 3 A is correct. The copper industry in Copperland would benefit from trade. Because the cost of producing copper relative to producing tea is lower in Copperland than in Tealand, Copperland will export copper and the industry will expand.
- 4 B is correct. Comparative advantage is present when the opportunity cost of producing a good is less than that of a trading partner.
- 5 C is correct. While Brazil has an absolute advantage in the production of both flashlights and vegetables, Mexico has a comparative advantage in the production of vegetables. The opportunity cost of vegetables in Mexico is $\frac{1}{3}$ per flashlight, while the opportunity cost of vegetables in Brazil is $\frac{1}{2}$ per flashlight.
- 6 C is correct. Mexico has the lowest opportunity cost to produce an extra ruler. The opportunity cost is 2 pencils per ruler in Mexico, 3 pencils per ruler in Brazil, and 4 pencils per ruler in China.
- 7 C is correct. A country gains if trade increases the price of its exports relative to its imports as compared to its autarkic prices, i.e. the final terms of trade are more favorable than its autarkic prices. If the relative price of exports and imports remains the same after trade opens, then the country will consume the same basket of goods before and after trade opens, and it gains nothing from the ability to trade. In that case, its trade partner will capture all of the gains. Of course, the opposite is true if the roles are reversed. More generally, a country captures more of the gains from trade the more the final terms of trade differ from its autarkic prices.
- 8 A is correct. In the Heckscher–Ohlin model a country has a comparative advantage in goods whose production is intensive in the factor with which it is relatively abundantly endowed. In this case, capital is relatively abundant in Germany so Germany has a comparative advantage in producing the capital-intensive product: machine tools. Portugal is relatively labor abundant, hence should produce and export the labor-intensive product: wine.
- 9 B is correct. As a country opens up to trade, it has a favorable impact on the abundant factor, and a negative impact on the scarce factor. This is because trade causes the output mix to change and therefore changes the relative demand for the factors of production. Increased output of the export product increases demand for the factor that is used intensively in its production, while reduced output of the import product decreases demand for the factor used intensively in its production. Because the export (import) product uses the abundant (scarce) factor intensively, the abundant factor gains relative to the scarce factor in each country.

- 10 A is correct. The imposition of a tariff will most likely increase domestic government revenue. A tariff is a tax on imports collected by the importing country's government.
- 11 C is correct. With a voluntary export restraint, the price increase induced by restricting the quantity of imports (= quota rent for equivalent quota = tariff revenue for equivalent tariff) accrues to foreign exporters and/or the foreign government.
- 12 A is correct. By definition, a large country is big enough to affect the world price of its imports and exports. A large country can benefit by imposing a tariff if its terms of trade improve by enough to outweigh the welfare loss arising from inefficient allocation of resources.
- 13 A is correct. A customs union extends a free trade area (FTA) by not only allowing free movement of goods and services among members, but also creating common trade policy against non-members. Unlike a more integrated common market, a customs union does not allow free movement of factors of production among members.
- 14 C is correct. Regional trading agreements are politically less contentious and quicker to establish than multilateral trade negotiations (for example, under the World Trade Organization). Policy coordination and harmonization is easier among a smaller group of countries.
- 15 A is correct. The capital account measures capital transfers and sale and purchase of non-produced, non-financial assets such as mineral rights and intangible assets.
- 16 B is correct. The current account measures the flows of goods and services (including income from foreign investments). Patent fees and legal services are both captured in the services sub-account of the current account.
- 17 C is correct. The current account includes income received on foreign investments. The Korean company effectively "exported" the use of its capital during the quarter to its US subsidiary, and the dividend represents payment for those services.
- 18 B is correct. A current account deficit tends to result from low private saving, high private investment, a government deficit, or a combination of the three. Of the choices, only low private savings contributes toward a current account deficit.
- 19 B is correct. A current account deficit tends to result from low private saving, high private investment, low government savings, or a combination of the three. Of these choices, only high investments can increase productive resources and improve future ability to repay creditors.
- 20 B is correct. The WTO provides the legal and institutional foundation of the multinational trading system and is the only international organization that regulates cross-border trade relations among nations on a global scale. The WTO's mission is to foster free trade by providing a major institutional and regulatory framework of global trade rules. Without such global trading rules, today's global transnational corporations would be hard to conceive.
- 21 A is correct. The World Bank's mission is to help developing countries fight poverty and enhance environmentally sound economic growth. The World Bank helps to create the basic economic infrastructure essential for creation and maintenance of domestic financial markets and a well-functioning financial industry in developing countries.

- 22** C is correct. From an investment perspective, the IMF helps to keep country-specific market risk and global systemic risk under control. The Greek sovereign debt crisis on 2010, which threatened to destabilize the entire European banking system, is a recent example. The IMF's mission is to ensure the stability of the international monetary system, the system of exchange rates and international payments which enables countries to buy goods and services from each other.
- 23** C is correct. The GATT was the only multilateral body governing international trade from 1948 to 1995. It operated for almost half a century as a quasi-institutionalized, provisional system of multilateral treaties and included several rounds of negotiations.

Currency Exchange Rates

by William A. Barker, PhD, CFA, Paul D. McNelis, and Jerry Nickelsburg

William A. Barker, PhD, CFA (Canada). Paul D. McNelis is at Gabelli School of Business, Fordham University (USA). Jerry Nickelsburg (USA).

LEARNING OUTCOMES

<i>Mastery</i>	<i>The candidate should be able to:</i>
<input type="checkbox"/>	a. define an exchange rate and distinguish between nominal and real exchange rates and spot and forward exchange rates;
<input type="checkbox"/>	b. describe functions of and participants in the foreign exchange market;
<input type="checkbox"/>	c. calculate and interpret the percentage change in a currency relative to another currency;
<input type="checkbox"/>	d. calculate and interpret currency cross-rates;
<input type="checkbox"/>	e. convert forward quotations expressed on a points basis or in percentage terms into an outright forward quotation;
<input type="checkbox"/>	f. explain the arbitrage relationship between spot rates, forward rates, and interest rates;
<input type="checkbox"/>	g. calculate and interpret a forward discount or premium;
<input type="checkbox"/>	h. calculate and interpret the forward rate consistent with the spot rate and the interest rate in each currency;
<input type="checkbox"/>	i. describe exchange rate regimes;
<input type="checkbox"/>	j. explain the effects of exchange rates on countries' international trade and capital flows.

INTRODUCTION

Measured by daily turnover, the foreign exchange (FX) market—the market in which currencies are traded against each other—is by far the world's largest market. Current estimates put daily turnover at approximately USD4 trillion for 2010. This is about 10 to 15 times larger than daily turnover in global fixed-income markets and about

50 times larger than global turnover in equities. Moreover, volumes in FX turnover continue to grow: Some predict that daily FX turnover will reach USD10 trillion by 2020 as market participation spreads and deepens.

The FX market is also a truly global market that operates 24 hours a day, each business day. It involves market participants from every time zone connected through electronic communications networks that link players as large as multibillion-dollar investment funds and as small as individuals trading for their own account—all brought together in real time. International trade would be impossible without the trade in currencies that facilitates it, and so too would cross-border capital flows that connect all financial markets globally through the FX market.

These factors make foreign exchange a key market for investors and market participants to understand. The world economy is increasingly transnational in nature, with both production processes and trade flows often determined more by global factors than by domestic considerations. Likewise, investment portfolio performance increasingly reflects global determinants because pricing in financial markets responds to the array of investment opportunities available worldwide, not just locally. All of these factors funnel through, and are reflected in, the foreign exchange market. As investors shed their “home bias” and invest in foreign markets, the exchange rate—the price at which foreign-currency-denominated investments are valued in terms of the domestic currency—becomes an increasingly important determinant of portfolio performance.

Even investors adhering to a purely “domestic” portfolio mandate are increasingly affected by what happens in the foreign exchange market. Given the globalization of the world economy, most large companies depend heavily on their foreign operations (for example, by some estimates about 40 percent of S&P 500 Index earnings are from outside the United States). Almost all companies are exposed to some degree of foreign competition, and the pricing for domestic assets—equities, bonds, real estate, and others—will also depend on demand from foreign investors. All of these various influences on investment performance reflect developments in the foreign exchange market.

This reading introduces the foreign exchange market, providing the basic concepts and terminology necessary to understand exchange rates as well as some of the basics of exchange rate economics.

The reading is divided up as follows. Section 2 describes the organization of the foreign exchange market and discusses the major players—who they are, how they conduct their business, and how they respond to exchange rate changes. Section 3 takes up the mechanics of exchange rates: definitions, quotes, and calculations. This section shows that the reader has to pay close attention to conventions used in various foreign exchange markets around the world because they can vary widely. Sometimes exchange rates are quoted in the number of domestic currency units per unit of foreign currency, and sometimes they are quoted in the opposite way. The exact notation used to represent exchange rates can vary widely as well, and occasionally the same exchange rate notation will be used by different sources to mean completely different things. The notation used here may not be the same as that encountered elsewhere. Therefore, the focus should be on understanding the underlying concepts rather than relying on rote memorization of formulas. We also show how to calculate cross-exchange rates and how to compute the forward exchange rate given either the forward points or the percentage forward premium or discount. In Section 4, we discuss alternative exchange rate regimes operating throughout the world. Finally, in Section 5, we discuss how exchange rates affect a country’s international trade (exports and imports) and capital flows. A summary and practice problems conclude the reading.

THE FOREIGN EXCHANGE MARKET

2

To understand the FX market, it is necessary to become familiar with some of its basic conventions. Individual currencies are often referred to by standardized three-letter codes that the market has agreed upon through the International Organization for Standardization (ISO). Exhibit 1 lists some of the major global currencies and their identification codes.

Exhibit 1 Standard Currency Codes

Three-Letter Currency Code	Currency
USD	US dollar
EUR	Euro
JPY	Japanese yen
GBP	British pound
CHF	Swiss franc
CAD	Canadian dollar
AUD	Australian dollar
NZD	New Zealand dollar
ZAR	South African rand
SEK	Swedish krona
NOK	Norwegian krone
BRL	Brazilian real
SGD	Singapore dollar
MXN	Mexican peso
CNY	Chinese yuan
HKD	Hong Kong dollar
INR	Indian rupee
KRW	South Korean won
RUB	Russian ruble

It is important to understand that there is a difference between referring to an *individual currency* and an *exchange rate*. One can hold an individual currency (for example, in a EUR100 million deposit), but an exchange rate refers to the price of one currency in terms of another (for example, the exchange rate between the EUR and USD). An individual currency can be singular, but there are always two currencies involved in an exchange rate: the price of one currency relative to another. The exchange rate is the number of units of one currency (called the *price currency*) that one unit of another currency (called the *base currency*) will buy. An equivalent way of describing the exchange rate is as the cost of one unit of the base currency in terms of the price currency.

This distinction between individual currencies and exchange rates is important because, as we will see in a later section, these three-letter currency codes can be used both ways. (For example, when used as an exchange rate in the professional FX market, EUR is understood to be the exchange rate between the euro and US dollar). But be aware of the context (either as a currency or as an exchange rate) in which these three-letter currency codes are being used. To avoid confusion, this reading will identify exchange rates using the convention of “A/B,” referring to the number of

units of currency A that one unit of currency B will buy. For example, a USD/EUR exchange rate of 1.2875 means that 1 euro will buy 1.2875 US dollars (i.e., 1 euro costs 1.2875 US dollars).¹ In this case, the euro is the base currency and the US dollar is the price currency. A decrease in this exchange rate would mean that the euro costs less or that fewer US dollars are needed to buy one euro. In other words, a decline in this exchange rate indicates that the USD is *appreciating* against the EUR or, equivalently, the EUR is *depreciating* against the USD.

The exchange rates described above are referred to as *nominal* exchange rates. This is to distinguish them from *real* exchange rates, which are indexes often constructed by economists and other market analysts to assess changes in the relative purchasing power of one currency compared with another. Creating these indexes requires adjusting the nominal exchange rate by using the price levels in each country of the currency pair (hence the name “real exchange rates”) in order to compare the relative purchasing power between countries.

In a world of homogenous goods and services and with no market frictions or trade barriers, the relative purchasing power across countries would tend to equalize: Why would you pay more, in real terms, domestically for a “widget” if you could import an identical “widget” from overseas at a cheaper price? This basic concept is the intuition behind a theory known as “purchasing power parity” (PPP), which describes the long-term equilibrium of nominal exchange rates. PPP asserts that nominal exchange rates adjust so that identical goods (or baskets of goods) will have the same price in different markets. Or, put differently, the purchasing power of different currencies is equalized for a standardized basket of goods.

In practice, the conditions required to enforce PPP are not satisfied: Goods and services are not identical across countries; countries typically have different baskets of goods and services produced and consumed; many goods and services are not traded internationally; there are trade barriers and transaction costs (e.g., shipping costs and import taxes); and capital flows are at least as important as trade flows in determining nominal exchange rates. As a result, nominal exchange rates exhibit persistent deviations from PPP. Moreover, relative purchasing power among countries displays a weak, if any, tendency toward long-term equalization. A simple example of a cross-country comparison of the purchasing power of a standardized good is the “Big Mac” index produced by the *Economist*, which shows the relative price of this standardized hamburger in different countries. The Big Mac index shows that fast-food hamburger prices can vary widely internationally and that this difference in purchasing power is typical of most goods and services. Hence, movements in real exchange rates provide meaningful information about changes in relative purchasing power among countries.

Consider the case of an individual who wants to purchase goods from a foreign country. The individual would be able to buy fewer of these goods if the nominal spot exchange rate for the foreign currency appreciated or if the foreign price level increased. Conversely, the individual could buy more foreign goods if the individual’s domestic income increased. (For this example, we will assume that changes in the individual’s income are proportional to changes in the domestic price level.) Hence, in *real* purchasing power terms, the real exchange rate that an individual faces is an increasing function of the nominal exchange rate (quoted in terms of the number of units of domestic currency per one unit of foreign currency) and the foreign price level and a decreasing function of the domestic price level. The *higher* the real exchange

¹ This convention is consistent with the meaning of “/” in mathematics and the straightforward interpretation of “A/B” as “A per B” is helpful in understanding exchange rates as the price of one currency in terms of another. Nevertheless, other notation conventions exist. “B/A” and “B:A” are sometimes used to denote what this reading denotes as “A/B.” Careful attention to the context will usually make the convention clear.

rate that this individual faces, the *fewer* foreign goods, in real terms, the individual can purchase and the *lower* that individual's relative purchasing power compared with the other country.

An equivalent way of viewing the real exchange rate is that it represents the relative price levels in the domestic and foreign countries. Mathematically, we can represent the foreign price level in terms of the domestic currency as:

$$\text{Foreign price level in domestic currency} = S_{d/f} \times P_f$$

where $S_{d/f}$ is the spot exchange rate (quoted in terms of the number of units of domestic currency per one unit of foreign currency) and P_f is foreign price level quoted in terms of the foreign currency. We can define the domestic price level, in terms of the domestic currency, as P_d . Hence, the ratio between the foreign and domestic price levels is:

$$\text{Real exchange rate}_{(d/f)} = (S_{d/f} \times P_f) / P_d = S_{d/f} \times (P_f / P_d)$$

For example, for a British consumer wanting to buy goods made in the Eurozone, the real exchange rate (defined in GBP/EUR terms; note that the domestic currency for the United Kingdom is the price currency, not the base currency) will be an increasing function of the nominal spot exchange rate (GBP/EUR) and the Eurozone price level and a decreasing function of the UK price level. This is written as:

$$\text{Real exchange rate}_{\frac{GBP}{EUR}} = S_{\frac{GBP}{EUR}} \times \left(\frac{CPI_{eur}}{CPI_{UK}} \right)$$

Let's examine the effect of movements in the domestic and foreign price levels, and the nominal spot exchange rate, on the real purchasing power of an individual in the United Kingdom wanting to purchase Eurozone goods. Assume that the nominal spot exchange rate (GBP/EUR) increases by 10 percent, the Eurozone price level by 5 percent, and the UK price level by 2 percent. The change in the real exchange rate is then:

$$\left(1 + \frac{\Delta S_{d/f}}{S_{d/f}} \right) \times \left(\frac{1 + \frac{\Delta P_f}{P_f}}{1 + \frac{\Delta P_d}{P_d}} \right) - 1 = (1 + 10\%) \times \frac{1 + 5\%}{1 + 2\%} - 1 \approx 10\% + 5\% - 2\% \approx 13\%$$

In this case, the real exchange rate for the UK-based individual has *increased* about 13 percent, meaning that it now costs *more*, in real terms, to buy Eurozone goods. Or put differently, the UK individual's real purchasing power relative to Eurozone goods has *declined* by about 13 percent. An easy way to remember this relationship is to consider the real exchange rate (stated with the domestic currency as the price currency) as representing the real price you face in order to purchase foreign goods and services: The *higher* the price (real exchange rate), the *lower* your relative purchasing power.

The real exchange rate for a currency can be constructed for the domestic currency relative to a single foreign currency or relative to a basket of foreign currencies. In either case, these real exchange rate indexes depend on the assumptions made by the analyst creating them. Several investment banks and central banks create proprietary measures of real exchange rates. It is important to note that real exchange rates are *not* quoted or traded in global FX markets: They are only indexes created by analysts to understand the international competitiveness of an economy and the real purchasing power of a currency.

In this context, real exchange rates can be useful for understanding trends in international trade and capital flows and hence can be seen as one of the influences on nominal spot exchange rates. As an example, consider the exchange rate between the Chinese yuan and the US dollar. During 2010, the nominal yuan exchange rate against the US dollar (CNY/USD) declined by approximately 3 percent—meaning that

the US dollar depreciated against the yuan. However, the annual inflation rates in the United States and China were different during 2010—approximately 1.5 percent for the United States and 4.5 percent for China. This means that the real exchange rate (in CNY/USD terms) was depreciating more rapidly than the nominal CNY/USD exchange rate:

$$\left(1 + \% \Delta S_{\frac{CNY}{USD}}\right) \times \frac{(1 + \% \Delta P_{US})}{(1 + \% \Delta P_{China})} - 1 \approx -3\% + 1.5\% - 4.5\% \approx -6\%$$

This combination of a stronger yuan and a higher Chinese inflation rate meant that the real exchange rate faced by China was declining, thus increasing Chinese purchasing power in USD terms.

Movements in real exchange rates can have a similar effect as movements in nominal exchange rates in terms of affecting relative prices and hence trade flows. Even if the nominal spot exchange rate does not move, differences in inflation rates between countries affect their relative competitiveness.

Although real exchange rates can exert some influence on nominal exchange rate movements, they are only one of many factors; it can be difficult to disentangle all of these inter-relationships in a complex and dynamic FX market. As discussed earlier, PPP is a poor guide to predicting future movements in nominal exchange rates because these rates can deviate from PPP equilibrium—and even continue to trend away from their PPP level—for years at a time. Hence, it should not be surprising that real exchange rates, which reflect changes in relative purchasing power, have a poor track record as a predictor of future nominal exchange rate movements.

EXAMPLE 1

Nominal and Real Exchange Rates

An investment adviser located in Sydney, Australia, is meeting with a local client who is looking to diversify her domestic bond portfolio by adding investments in fixed-rate, long-term bonds denominated in HKD. The client frequently visits Hong Kong, and many of her annual expenses are denominated in HKD. The client, however, is concerned about the foreign currency risks of offshore investments and whether the investment return on her HKD-denominated investments will maintain her purchasing power—both domestically (i.e., for her AUD-denominated expenses) and in terms of her foreign trips (i.e., denominated in HKD, for her visits to Hong Kong). The investment adviser explains the effect of changes in nominal and real exchange rates to the client and illustrates this explanation by making the following statements:

- Statement 1 All else equal, an increase in the nominal AUD/HKD exchange rate will lead to an increase in the AUD-denominated value of your foreign investment.
- Statement 2 All else equal, an increase in the nominal AUD/HKD exchange rate means that your relative purchasing power for your Hong Kong trips will increase (based on paying for your trip with the income from your HKD-denominated bonds).
- Statement 3 All else equal, an increase in the Australian inflation rate will lead to an increase in the real exchange rate (AUD/HKD). A higher real exchange rate means that the relative purchasing power of your AUD-denominated income is higher.

Statement 4 All else equal, a decrease in the nominal exchange rate (AUD/HKD) will decrease the real exchange rate (AUD/HKD) and increase the relative purchasing power of your AUD-denominated income.

To demonstrate the effects of the changes in inflation and nominal exchange rates on relative purchasing power, the adviser uses the following scenario: "Suppose that the AUD/HKD exchange rate increases by 5 percent, the price of goods and services in Hong Kong goes up by 5 percent, and the price of Australian goods and services goes up by 2 percent."

- 1 Statement 1 is:
 - A correct.
 - B incorrect, because based on the quote convention the investment's value would be decreasing in AUD terms.
 - C incorrect, because the nominal AUD value of the foreign investments will depend on movements in the Australian inflation rate.
- 2 Statement 2 is:
 - A correct.
 - B incorrect, because purchasing power is not affected in this case.
 - C incorrect, because based on the quote convention, the client's relative purchasing power would be decreasing.
- 3 Statement 3 is:
 - A correct.
 - B incorrect with respect to the real exchange rate only.
 - C incorrect with respect to both the real exchange rate and the purchasing power of AUD-denominated income.
- 4 Statement 4 is:
 - A correct.
 - B incorrect with respect to the real exchange rate.
 - C incorrect with respect to the purchasing power of AUD-denominated income.
- 5 Based on the adviser's scenario and assuming that the HKD value of the HKD bonds remained unchanged, the nominal AUD value of the client's HKD investments would:
 - A decrease by about 5 percent.
 - B increase by about 5 percent.
 - C remain approximately the same.
- 6 Based on the adviser's scenario, the change in the relative purchasing power of the client's AUD-denominated income is *closest* to:
 - A -8 percent.
 - B +8 percent.
 - C +12 percent.

Solution to 1:

A is correct. Given the quoting convention, an increase in the AUD/HKD rate means that the base currency (HKD) is appreciating (one HKD will buy more AUD). This is increasing the nominal value of the HKD-denominated investments when measured in AUD terms.

Solution to 2:

B is correct. When paying for HKD-denominated expenses with HKD-denominated income, the value of the AUD/HKD spot exchange rate (or any other spot exchange rate) would not be relevant. In fact, this is a basic principle of currency risk management: reducing FX risk exposures by denominating assets and liabilities (or income and expenses) in the same currency.

Solution to 3:

C is correct. An increase in the Australian (i.e., domestic) inflation rate means that the real exchange rate (measured in domestic/foreign, or AUD/HKD, terms) would be decreasing, not increasing. Moreover, an increase in the real exchange rate ($R_{AUD/HKD}$) would be equivalent to a reduction of the purchasing power of the Australian client: Goods and services denominated in HKD would cost more.

Solution to 4:

A is correct. As the spot AUD/HKD exchange rate decreases, the HKD is depreciating against the AUD; or equivalently, the AUD is appreciating against the HKD. This is reducing the real exchange rate ($R_{AUD/HKD}$) and increasing the Australian client's purchasing power.

Solution to 5:

B is correct. As the AUD/HKD spot exchange rate increases by 5 percent, the HKD is appreciating against the AUD by 5 percent and, all else equal, the value of the HKD-denominated investment is increasing by 5 percent in AUD terms.

Solution to 6:

A is correct. The real exchange rate ($R_{AUD/HKD}$) is expressed as:

$$R_{\frac{AUD}{HKD}} = S_{\frac{AUD}{HKD}} \times \frac{P_{HKD}}{P_{AUD}}$$

The information in the adviser's scenario can be expressed as:

$$\% \Delta R_{\frac{AUD}{HKD}} \approx \% \Delta S_{\frac{AUD}{HKD}} + \% \Delta P_{HKD} - \% \Delta P_{AUD} \approx +5\% + 5\% - 2\% \approx +8\%$$

Because the real exchange rate (expressed in AUD/HKD terms) has gone up by about 8 percent, the real purchasing power of the investor based in Australia has declined by about 8 percent. This can be seen from the fact that HKD has appreciated against the AUD in nominal terms, and the Hong Kong price level has also increased. This increase in the cost of Hong Kong goods and services (measured in AUD) is only partially offset by the small (2 percent) increase in the investor's income (assumed equal to the change in the Australian price level).

2.1 Market Functions

FX markets facilitate international trade in goods and services, where companies and individuals need to make transactions in foreign currencies. This would cover everything from companies and governments buying and selling products in other countries, to tourists engaged in cross-border travel (for example, a German tourist selling euros and buying sterling for a visit to London). Although this is an important dimension of FX markets, and despite the growth of global trade in recent years, an even larger proportion of the daily turnover in FX markets is accounted for by capital market transactions, where investors convert between currencies for the purpose of moving funds into (or out of) foreign assets. These types of transactions cover the range from direct investments (for example, companies buying such fixed assets as

factories) in other countries to portfolio investments (the purchase of stocks, bonds, and other financial assets denominated in foreign currencies). Because capital is extremely mobile in modern financial markets, this ebb and flow of money across international borders and currencies generates a huge and growing volume of FX transactions.

Regardless of the underlying motivation for the FX transaction, it will eventually require that one currency be exchanged for another in the FX market. In advance of that required transaction, market participants are exposed to the risk that the exchange rate will move against them. Often they will try to reduce (hedge) this risk through a variety of FX instruments (described in more detail later). Conversely, market participants may form opinions about future FX movements and undertake speculative FX risk exposures through a variety of FX instruments in order to profit from their views.

The distinction between hedging and speculative positions is not always clear cut. For example, consider the case of a corporation selling its products overseas. This creates an FX risk exposure because the revenue from foreign sales will ultimately need to be converted into the corporation's home currency. This risk exposure is typically hedged, and corporate hedging often accounts for large FX flows passing through the market. The amount and timing of foreign revenue, however, are generally hard to predict with precision: They will depend on the pace of foreign sales, the sales prices realized, the pace at which foreign clients pay for their purchases, and so forth. In the face of this uncertainty, the corporate treasury will estimate the timing and amount of foreign revenue and will then hedge a portion of this estimated amount. Many corporate treasuries have hedging targets based on this estimate, but they also have the flexibility to under-hedge or over-hedge based on their opinions about future FX rate movements. In order to judge the effectiveness of these discretionary trades, the performance of the corporate treasury is compared with a benchmark, usually stated in terms of a fixed amount hedged relative to total sales. (For example, the benchmark may be a 100 percent fully hedged position. The profitability of the hedge actually implemented—which, based on the treasury's discretion, can vary above or below 100 percent—is then compared with what would have been achieved with a passive, 100 percent fully hedged position.) Treasury managers' performance is judged based on gains or losses relative to the benchmark, just as an investment fund manager's performance is benchmarked against performance targets.

At the other end of the spectrum between hedging and speculation, consider the archetypical speculative account: a hedge fund. Although it is true that hedge funds will seek out, accept, and manage risk for profit, a hedge fund is, after all, a hedge fund: Strict risk control procedures are critical to the fund's success, especially when leverage is involved. This mixture of speculative and hedging motives is common throughout the FX space as market participants shape their FX exposures to suit their market forecasts, operational mandates, and appetites for risk.

The FX market provides a variety of products that provide the flexibility to meet this varied and complex set of financial goals. *Spot* transactions involve the exchange of currencies for immediate delivery. For most currencies, this corresponds to "T + 2" delivery, meaning that the exchange of currencies is settled two business days after the trade is agreed to by the two sides of the deal. (One exception is the Canadian dollar, for which spot settlement against the US dollar is on a T + 1 basis.) The exchange rate used for these spot transactions is referred to as the spot exchange rate, and it is the exchange rate that most people refer to in their daily lives (for example, this is the exchange rate usually quoted by the financial press, on the evening news, and so forth).

It is important to realize, however, that spot transactions make up only a minority of total daily turnover in the global FX market: The rest is accounted for by trade in outright forward contracts, FX swaps, and FX options. Although these products will be covered in more depth in a subsequent section, and at Level II of the CFA curriculum, we will provide a brief introduction to these products here.

Outright *forward contracts* (often referred to simply as forwards) are agreements to deliver foreign exchange at a future date at an exchange rate agreed upon today. For example, suppose that a UK-based company expects to receive a payment of 100 million euros in 85 days. Although it could convert these euros to British pounds with a spot transaction (the spot rate would be the GBP/EUR rate in 83 days, because of T + 2 settlement), this future spot rate is currently unknown and represents a foreign exchange risk to the company. The company can avoid this risk by entering into a transaction with a foreign exchange dealer to sell 100 million euros against the British pound for settlement 85 days from today at a rate—the forward exchange rate—agreed upon today.

As such, forward contracts are any exchange rate transactions that occur with currency settlement longer than the usual T + 2 settlement for spot delivery. Each of these contracts requires two specifications: the date at which the currencies are to be exchanged and the exchange rate to be applied on the settlement date. Accordingly, exchange rates for these transactions are called *forward exchange rates* to distinguish them from spot rates.

Dealers will typically quote forward rates for a variety of standard forward settlement dates (for example, one week, one month, or 90 days) on their dealing screens. In an over-the-counter (OTC) market, however, traders can arrange forward settlement at *any* future date they agree upon, with the forward exchange rate scaled appropriately for the specific term to settlement. Standard forward settlement dates (such as three months) are defined in terms of the spot settlement date, which is generally T + 2. For example, if today is 18 October and spot settlement is for 20 October, then a three-month forward settlement would be defined as 20 January of the following year. Note as well that these standard forward settlement dates may not always be good business days: 20 January could be a weekend or a holiday. In that case, the forward settlement date is set to the closest good business day. Traders always confirm the exact forward settlement date when making these types of trades, and the forward rate is scaled by the exact number of days to settlement.

In an OTC market, the size of the forward contracts can also be any size that the two counterparties agree upon. In general, however, liquidity in forward markets declines the longer the term to maturity and the larger the trade size. The concept of the forward exchange rate and exchange hedging is developed further in Section 3.

Although the OTC market accounts for the majority of foreign exchange trades with future (i.e., greater than T + 2) settlement dates, there is also a deep, liquid market in exchange-traded *futures* contracts for currencies. Although there are technical differences between futures and forward contracts, the basic concept is the same: The price is set today for settlement on a specified future date. Futures contracts on currencies trade on several exchanges globally, but the majority of volume in exchange-traded currency futures contracts is found on the International Monetary Market (IMM) division of the Chicago Mercantile Exchange (CME). Futures contracts differ from OTC forward contracts in several important ways: They trade on exchanges (such as the CME) rather than OTC; they are only available for fixed contract amounts and fixed settlement dates; the exchanges demand that a fixed amount of collateral be posted against the futures contract trade; and this collateral is marked-to-market daily, with counterparties asked to post further collateral if their positions generate losses. On balance, futures contracts are somewhat less flexible than forward contracts. Nonetheless, they provide deep, liquid markets for deferred delivery with a minimum of counterparty (i.e., default) risk—a proposition that many FX traders find attractive. Accordingly, daily turnover in FX futures contracts is huge. As of 2010, the average daily trading volume of FX futures on the CME alone was estimated to be about USD140 billion, which is almost comparable in size to the interbank volume of spot transactions.

Because forward contracts eventually expire, existing speculative positions or FX hedges that need to be extended must be rolled prior to their settlement dates. This typically involves a spot transaction to offset (settle) the expiring forward contract and a new forward contract to be set at a new, more distant settlement date. The combination of an offsetting spot transaction and a new forward contract is referred to as an **FX swap**.²

An FX swap is best illustrated by an example. Suppose that a trader sells 100 million euros with settlement 95 days from today at a forward exchange rate (USD/EUR) of 1.2500. In 93 days, the forward contract is two days from settlement, specifically the T + 2 days to spot settlement. To roll the forward contract, the trader will engage in the following FX swap. First, the trader will need to buy 100 million euros spot, for which T + 2 settlement will fall on day 95, the same day as the settlement of the expiring forward contract. The purchase of the 100 million euros spot will be used to satisfy the delivery of the 100 million euros sold in the expiring forward contract. Because 100 million euros are being both bought and sold on day 95, there is no exchange of euros between counterparties on that day: The amounts net to zero. However, there will be an exchange of US dollars, reflecting the movement in exchange rates between the date the forward contract was agreed to (day 0) and day 93. Suppose that on day 93 the spot exchange rate for USD/EUR is 1.2400. This means that the trader will see a cash flow on day 95 of USD1,000,000. This is calculated as follows:

$$\text{EUR}100,000,000 \times (1.2500 - 1.2400) = \text{USD}1,000,000$$

The trader receives USD1,000,000 from the counterparty because the euro was *sold* forward to day 95 at a price of 1.2500; it was *bought* (on day 93) for spot settlement on day 95 at a price of 1.2400. This *price* movement in the euro indicates a profit to the trader, but because the euro *quantities* exchanged on day 95 net to zero (100,000,000 euros both bought and sold), this cash flow is realized in US dollars. The second leg of the FX swap is then to initiate a new forward sale of 100 million euros at the USD/EUR forward exchange rate being quoted on day 93. This renews the forward position (a forward sale of the euro) to a new date.

FX swaps will be dealt with in more detail at Level II in the curriculum. For the purposes of this reading, it is only necessary to understand that (1) an FX swap consists of a simultaneous spot and forward transaction; (2) these swap transactions can extend (roll) an existing forward position to a new future date; and (3) rolling the position forward leads to a cash flow on settlement day. This cash flow can be thought of as a mark-to-market on the forward position. FX swaps are a large component of daily FX market turnover because market participants have to roll over existing speculative or hedging positions as the underlying forward contracts mature in order to extend the hedge or speculative position (otherwise, the position is closed out on the forward settlement date).

One other area where FX swaps are used in FX markets also bears mentioning: They are often used by market participants as a funding source (called swap funding). Consider the case of a UK-based firm that needs to borrow GBP100 million for 90 days, starting 2 days from today. One way to do this is simply to borrow 90-day money in GBP-denominated funds starting at T + 2. An alternative is to borrow in US dollars and exchange these for British pounds in the spot FX market (both with T + 2 settlement) and then sell British pounds 90 days forward against the US dollar. (Recall that the maturity of a forward rate contract is defined in terms of the spot settlement date, so the 90-day forward rate would be for settlement in 92 days from today.) The company has the use of GBP100 million for 90 days, starting on T + 2, and at the end of this

² Note that an “FX swap” is not the same as a “currency swap.” An FX swap is simply the combination of a spot and a forward FX transaction (i.e., only two settlement dates—spot and forward—are involved). A currency swap is generally used for multiple periods and payments.

period can pay off the US dollar loan at a known, pre-determined exchange rate (the 90-day forward rate). By engaging in simultaneous spot and forward transactions (i.e., an FX swap), the company has eliminated any FX risk from the foreign borrowing. The all-in financing rate using an FX swap will typically be close to that of domestic borrowing, usually within a few basis points. This near equivalence is enforced by an arbitrage relationship that will be described in Section 3.3. On large borrowing amounts, however, even a small differential can add up to substantial cost savings.

Another way to hedge FX exposures, or implement speculative FX positions, is to use options on currencies. FX options are contracts that, for an upfront premium or fee, give the purchaser the right, but not the obligation, to make an FX transaction at some future date at an exchange rate agreed upon today (when the contract is agreed to). The holder of an FX option will exercise the option only if it is advantageous to do so—that is, if the agreed upon exchange rate for the FX option contract is better than the FX rate available in the market at option expiry. As such, options are extremely flexible tools for managing FX exposures and account for a large percentage of daily turnover in the FX market.

Another concept to bear in mind is that spot, forward, swap, and option products are typically not used in isolation. Most major market participants manage their FX transactions and FX risk exposures through concurrent spot, forward, swap, and option positions. Taken together, these instruments (the building blocks of the FX market) provide an extremely flexible way for market participants to shape their FX risk exposures to match their operational mandate, risk tolerance, and market opinion. Moreover, FX transactions are often made in conjunction with transactions in other financial markets—such as equities, fixed income, and commodities. These markets have a variety of instruments as well, and market participants jointly tailor their *overall* position simultaneously using the building blocks of the FX market and these other markets.

EXAMPLE 2

Spot and Forward Exchange Rates

The investment adviser based in Sydney, Australia, continues her meeting with the local client who has diversified her domestic bond portfolio by adding investments in fixed-rate, long-term bonds denominated in HKD. Given that the client spends most of the year in Australia, she remains concerned about the foreign exchange risk of her foreign investments and asks the adviser how these might be managed. The investment adviser explains the difference between spot and forward exchange rates and their role in determining foreign exchange risk exposures. The investment adviser suggests the following investment strategy to the client: “You can exchange AUD for HKD in the spot exchange market, invest in a risk-free, one-year HKD-denominated zero coupon bond, and use a one-year forward contract for converting the proceeds back into AUD.”

Spot exchange rate (AUD/HKD)	0.1429
One-year HKD interest rate	7.00%
One-year forward exchange rate (AUD/HKD)	0.1402

- 1 Which of the following statements is *most* correct? Over a one-year horizon, the exchange rate risk of the client’s investment in HKD-denominated bonds is determined by uncertainty over:
- A today’s AUD/HKD forward rate.
 - B the AUD/HKD spot rate one year from now.

- C the AUD/HKD forward rate one year from now.
- 2 To reduce the exchange rate risk of the Hong Kong investment, the client should:
- A sell AUD spot.
 - B sell AUD forward.
 - C sell HKD forward.
- 3 Over a one-year horizon, the investment proposed by the investment adviser is *most* likely:
- A risk free.
 - B exposed to interest rate risk.
 - C exposed to exchange rate risk.
- 4 To set up the investment proposed by the adviser, the client would need to:
- A sell AUD spot; sell a one-year, HKD-denominated bond; and buy AUD forward.
 - B buy AUD spot; buy a one-year, HKD-denominated bond; and sell AUD forward.
 - C sell AUD spot; buy a one-year, HKD-denominated bond; and buy AUD forward.
- 5 The return (in AUD) on the investment proposed by the investment adviser is *closest* to:
- A 5.00 percent.
 - B 6.00 percent.
 - C 7.00 percent.

Solution to 1:

B is correct. The exchange rate risk (for an unhedged investment) is defined by the uncertainty over future spot rates. In this case, the relevant spot rate is that which would prevail one year from now. Forward rates that would be in effect one year from now would be irrelevant, and the current forward rate is known with certainty.

Solution to 2:

C is correct. The Australian-based investor owns HKD-denominated bonds, meaning that she is long HKD exposure. To hedge this exposure, she could enter into a forward contract to sell the HKD against the AUD for future delivery (that is, match a long HKD exposure in the cash market with a short HKD exposure in the derivatives market). The forward rate is established at the time the forward contract is entered into, eliminating any uncertainty about what exchange rate would be used to convert HKD-denominated cash flows back into AUD.

Solution to 3:

A is correct. The investment is risk free because the investment is based on a risk-free, one-year, zero coupon, HKD-denominated bond—meaning there is no default or reinvestment risk. The investment will mature in one-year at par; there is no interest rate risk. The use of a forward contract to convert the HKD-denominated proceeds back to AUD eliminates any exchange rate risk.

Solution to 4:

C is correct. To create the investment, the client needs to convert AUD to HKD in the spot exchange market, invest in (buy) the one-year HKD bond, and sell the HKD forward/buy the AUD forward. Note that this process is directly comparable to the swap financing approach described in this section of the reading.

Solution to 5:

A is correct. Converting one AUD to HKD in the spot market gives the client $(1/0.1429) = \text{HKD}7.00$. Investing this for one year leads to $7.00 \times (1.07) = \text{HKD}7.49$. Selling this amount of HKD at the forward rate gives $7.49 \times 0.1402 = \text{AUD}1.05$ (rounding to two decimal places). This implies an AUD-denominated return of 5 percent.

2.2 Market Participants

We now turn to the counterparties that participate in FX markets. As mentioned previously, there is an extremely diverse range of market participants, ranging in size from multi-billion-dollar investment funds down to individuals trading for their own account (including foreign tourists exchanging currencies at airport kiosks).

To understand the various market participants, it is useful to separate them into broad categories. One broad distinction is between what the market refers to as the *buy side* and the *sell side*. The sell side generally consists of large FX trading banks (such as Citigroup, UBS, and Deutsche Bank); the buy side consists of clients who use these banks to undertake FX transactions (i.e., buy FX products) from the sell-side banks.

The buy side can be further broken down into several categories:

- *Corporate accounts:* Corporations of all sizes undertake FX transactions during cross-border purchases and sales of goods and services. Many of their FX flows can also be related to cross-border investment flows—such as international mergers and acquisitions (M&A) transactions, investment of corporate funds in foreign assets, and foreign currency borrowing.
- *Real money accounts:* These are investment funds managed by insurance companies, mutual funds, pension funds, endowments, exchange-traded funds (ETFs), and other institutional investors. These accounts are referred to as real money because they are usually restricted in their use of leverage or financial derivatives. This distinguishes them from leveraged accounts (discussed next); although, many institutional investors often engage in some form of leverage, either directly through some use of borrowed funds or indirectly using financial derivatives.
- *Leveraged accounts:* This category, often referred to as the professional trading community, consists of hedge funds, proprietary trading shops, commodity trading advisers (CTAs), high-frequency algorithmic traders, and the proprietary trading desks at banks—and indeed, almost any active trading account that accepts and manages FX risk for profit. The professional trading community accounts for a large and growing proportion of daily FX market turnover. These active trading accounts also have a wide diversity of trading styles. Some are macro-hedge funds that take longer term FX positions based on their views of the underlying economic fundamentals of a currency. Others are high-frequency algorithmic traders that use technical trading strategies (such as those based on moving averages or Fibonacci levels) and whose trading cycles and investment horizons are sometimes measured in milliseconds.

- *Retail accounts:* The simplest example of a retail account is the archetypical foreign tourist exchanging currency at an airport kiosk. However, it is important to realize that as electronic trading technology has reduced the barriers to entry into FX markets and the costs of FX trading, there has been a huge surge in speculative trading activity by retail accounts—consisting of individuals trading for their own accounts as well as smaller hedge funds and other active traders. This also includes households using electronic trading technology to move their savings into foreign currencies (this is relatively widespread among households in Japan, for example). It is estimated that retail trading accounts for as much as 10 percent of all spot transactions in some currency pairs and that this proportion is growing.
- *Governments:* Public entities of all types often have FX needs, ranging from relatively small (e.g., maintaining consulates in foreign countries) to large (e.g., military equipment purchases or maintaining overseas military bases). Sometimes these flows are purely transactional—the business simply needs to be done—and sometimes government FX flows reflect, at least in part, the public policy goals of the government. Some government FX business resembles that of investment funds, although sometimes with a public policy mandate as well. In some countries, public sector pension plans and public insurance schemes are run by a branch of the government. One example is the Caisse de dépôt et placement du Québec, which was created by the Québec provincial government in Canada to manage that province’s public sector pension plans. The Caisse, as it is called, is a relatively large player in financial markets, with about CAD200 billion of assets under management as of 2010. Although it has a mandate to invest these assets for optimal return, it is also called upon to help promote the economic development of Québec. It should be noted that many governments—both at the federal and provincial/state levels—issue debt in foreign currencies; this, too, creates FX flows. Such supranational agencies as the World Bank and the African Development Bank issue debt in a variety of currencies as well.
- *Central banks:* These entities sometimes intervene in FX markets in order to influence either the level or trend in the domestic exchange rate. This often occurs when the central banks judge their domestic currency to be too weak and when the exchange rate has overshot any concept of equilibrium level (e.g., because of a speculative attack) to the degree that the exchange rate no longer reflects underlying economic fundamentals. Alternatively, central banks also intervene when the FX market has become so erratic and dysfunctional that end-users such as corporations can no longer transact necessary FX business. Conversely, sometimes central banks intervene when they believe that their domestic currency has become too strong, to the point that it undercuts that country’s export competitiveness. The Bank of Japan intervened against yen strength versus the US dollar in 2004 and again in September 2010. Similarly, in 2010 the Swiss National Bank intervened against strength in the Swiss franc versus the euro by selling the Swiss franc on the euro–Swiss (CHF/EUR) cross-rate. Central bank reserve managers are also frequent participants in FX markets in order to manage their country’s FX reserves. In this context, they act much like real money investment funds—although generally with a cautious, conservative mandate to safeguard the value of their country’s foreign exchange reserves. The foreign exchange reserves of some countries are enormous, and central bank participation in FX markets can sometimes have a material impact

on exchange rates even when these reserve managers are not intervening for public policy purposes. Exhibit 2 provides information on central bank reserve holdings as of the second quarter of 2010.³

Exhibit 2 Currency Composition of Official Foreign Exchange Reserves, as of 2nd Quarter 2010 (USD billion)

Total foreign exchange holdings globally	8,422
Held by advanced economies	2,927
Held by emerging and developing economies	5,495
Percent of global holdings held in the US dollar ^a	62%

^a This percentage is calculated using that amount of global currency reserves for which the currency composition can be identified.

Note that the amount of foreign exchange reserves now held by emerging economies comfortably exceeds those held by developed economies. This largely reflects the rapid growth in foreign reserves held by Asian central banks, because these countries typically run large current account surpluses with the United States and other developed economies. Reserve accumulation by energy exporting countries in the Middle East and elsewhere is also a factor. Most of the global currency reserves are held in US dollars; the percentage held in USD is more than twice the portion held in the euro, the second most widely held currency in central bank foreign exchange reserves.

- *Sovereign wealth funds (SWFs)*: Many countries with large current account surpluses have diverted some of the resultant international capital flows into SWFs rather than into foreign exchange reserves managed by central banks. Although SWFs are government entities, their mandate is usually more oriented to purely investment purposes rather than public policy purposes. As such, SWFs can be thought of as akin to real money accounts, although some SWFs can employ derivatives or engage in aggressive trading strategies. It is generally understood that SWFs use their resources to help fulfill the public policy mandate of their government owners. The SWFs of many current account surplus countries (such as exporting countries in East Asia or oil-exporting countries) are enormous, and their FX flows can be an important determinant of exchange rate movements in almost all of the major currency pairs.

As mentioned, the sell side generally consists of the FX dealing banks that sell FX products to the buy side. Even here, however, distinctions can be made.

- A large and growing proportion of the daily FX turnover is accounted for by the very largest dealing banks, such as Deutsche Bank, Citigroup, UBS, HSBC, and a few other multinational banking behemoths. Maintaining a competitive advantage in FX requires huge fixed-cost investments in the electronic technology that connects the FX market, and it also requires a broad, global client base. As a result, only the largest banks are able to compete successfully in providing competitive price quotes to clients across the broad range of FX products. In fact, among the largest FX dealing banks, a large proportion of their business

³ See International Monetary Fund (2010).

is crossed internally, meaning that these banks are able to connect buyers and sellers within their own extremely diverse client base and have no need to show these FX flows outside of the bank.

- All other banks fall into the second and third tier of the FX market sell side. Many of these financial institutions are regional or local banks with well-developed business relationships, but they lack the economies of scale, broad global client base, or information technology (IT) expertise required to offer competitive pricing across a wide range of currencies and FX products. In many cases, these are banks in emerging markets that don't have the business connections or credit lines required to access the FX market on a cost-effective basis on their own. As a result, these banks often outsource FX services by forming business relationships with the larger tier-one banks; otherwise, they depend on the deep, competitive liquidity provided by the largest FX market participants.

The categories presented are based on functions that are closely associated with the named groups. However, in some cases, functions typifying a group may also be assumed by or shared with another group. For example, sell-side banks provide FX price quotes. However, hedge funds and other large players may access the professional FX market on equal terms with the dealing banks and effectively act as market makers.

One of the most important ideas to draw from this categorization of market participants is that there is an extremely wide variety of FX market participants, reflecting a complex mix of trading motives and strategies that can vary with time. Most market participants reflect a combination of hedging and speculative motives in tailoring their FX risk exposures. Among public sector market participants, public policy motives may also be a factor. The dynamic, complex interaction of FX market participants and their trading objectives makes it difficult to analyze or predict movements in FX rates with any precision, or to describe the FX market adequately with simple characterizations.

2.3 Market Size and Composition

In this section, we present a descriptive overview of the global FX market drawn from the 2010 Triennial Survey undertaken by the Bank for International Settlements (2010). The BIS is an umbrella organization for the world's central banks. Every three years, participating central banks undertake a survey of the FX market in their jurisdictions, the results of which are aggregated and compiled at the BIS. The most recent survey, taken in April 2010, gives a broad indication of the current size and distribution of global FX market flows.

As of April 2010, the BIS estimates that average daily turnover in the traditional FX market (comprised of spot, outright forward, and FX swap transactions) totaled approximately USD3.9 trillion. Exhibit 3 shows the approximate percentage allocation among FX product types, including both traditional FX products and exchange-traded FX derivatives. Note that this table of percentage allocations adds exchange-traded derivatives to the BIS estimate of average daily turnover of USD3.9 trillion; the "Spot" and "OTC forwards" categories include only transactions that are not executed as part of a swap transaction.

Exhibit 3 FX Turnover by Instrument

Spot	36%
OTC forwards	12
Exchange-traded derivatives	4
Swaps ^a	44

(continued)

Exhibit 3 (Continued)

OTC options ^b	4
Total	100%

^a Includes both FX and currency swaps.

^b Includes what the BIS categorizes as “other FX products.”

The survey also provides a percentage breakdown of the average daily flows between sell-side banks (called the interbank market), between banks and financial customers (all non-bank financial entities, such as real money and leveraged accounts, SWFs, and central banks), and between banks and non-financial customers (such as corporations, retail accounts, and governments). The breakdown is provided in Exhibit 4. It bears noting that the proportion of average daily FX flow accounted for by financial clients is much larger than that for non-financial clients. The BIS also reports that the proportion of financial client flows has been growing rapidly, and as of 2010, it exceeded interbank trading volume for the first time. This underscores the fact that only a minority of the daily FX flow is accounted for by corporations and individuals buying and selling foreign goods and services. Huge investment pools and professional traders are accounting for a large and growing proportion of the FX business.

Exhibit 4 FX Flows by Counterparty

Interbank	39%
Financial clients	48
Non-financial clients	13

The 2010 BIS survey also identifies the top five currency pairs in terms of their percentage share of average daily global FX turnover. These are shown in Exhibit 5. Note that each of these most active pairs includes the US dollar (USD).

Exhibit 5 FX Turnover by Currency Pair

USD/EUR	28%
JPY/USD	14
USD/GBP	9
USD/AUD	6
CAD/USD	5

The largest proportion of global FX trading occurs in London, followed by New York. This means that FX markets are most active between approximately 8:00 A.M. and 11:30 A.M. New York time, when banks in both cities are open. (The official London close is at 11:00 A.M. New York time, but London markets remain relatively active for a period after that.) Tokyo is the third-largest FX trading hub.

EXAMPLE 3**Market Participants and Composition of Trades**

The investment adviser based in Sydney, Australia, makes the following statements to her client when describing some of the basic characteristics of the foreign exchange market:

- Statement 1 “Foreign exchange transactions for spot settlement see the most trade volume in terms of average daily turnover because the FX market is primarily focused on settling international trade flows.”
- Statement 2 “The most important foreign exchange market participants on the buy side are corporations engaged in international trade; on the sell side they are the local banks that service their FX needs.”

- 1 Statement 1 is:
- A correct.
 - B incorrect with respect to the importance of spot settlements.
 - C incorrect both with respect to the importance of spot settlements and international trade flows.
- 2 Statement 2 is:
- A correct.
 - B incorrect with respect to corporations engaged in international trade.
 - C incorrect with respect to both corporations and the local banks that service their trade needs.

Solution to 1:

C is correct. Although the media generally focus on the spot market when discussing foreign exchange, the majority of average daily trade volume involves the FX swap market as market participants either roll over or modify their existing hedging and speculative positions (or engage in FX swap financing). Although it is true that all international trade transactions eventually result in some form of spot settlement, this typically generates a great deal of hedging (and speculative) activity in advance of spot settlement. Moreover, an important group of FX market participants engages in purely speculative positioning with no intention of ever delivering/receiving the principal amount of the trades. Most FX trading volume is not related to international trade: Portfolio flows (cross-border capital movements) and speculative activities dominate.

Solution to 2:

C is correct. As of 2010, the most important foreign exchange market participants in terms of average daily turnover are found not among corporations engaged in international trade but among huge investment managers, both private (e.g., pension funds) and public (e.g., central bank reserve managers or sovereign wealth funds). A large and growing amount of daily turnover is also being generated by high-frequency traders who use computer algorithms to automatically execute extremely high numbers of speculative trades (although their individual ticket sizes are generally small, they add up to large aggregate flows). On the sell side, the largest money center banks (e.g., Deutsche Bank, Citigroup, HSBC, UBS) are

increasingly dominating the amount of trading activity routed through dealers. Regional and local banks are increasingly being marginalized in terms of their share of average daily turnover in FX markets.

3

CURRENCY EXCHANGE RATE CALCULATIONS

3.1 Exchange Rate Quotations

Exchange rates represent the relative price of one currency in terms of another. This price can be represented in two ways: 1) currency A buys how many units of currency B; or 2) currency B buys how many units of currency A. Of course, these two prices are simply the inverse of each other.

To distinguish between these two prices, market participants sometimes distinguish between *direct* and *indirect* exchange rates. In the quoting convention A/B (where there is a certain number of units of currency A per one unit of currency B), we refer to currency A as the *price currency* (or quote currency); currency B is referred to as the *base currency*. (The reason for this choice of names will become clearer below.) The base currency is always set at a quantity of one. A *direct* currency quote takes the domestic country as the price currency and the foreign country as the base currency. For example, for a Paris-based trader, the domestic currency would be the euro (EUR) and a foreign currency would be the UK pound (GBP). For this Paris-based trader, a *direct* quote would be EUR/GBP. An exchange rate quote of EUR/GBP = 1.2225 means that 1 GBP costs 1.2225 EUR. For this Paris-based trader, an *indirect* quote has the domestic currency—the euro—as the base currency. An indirect quote of GBP/EUR = 0.8180 means that 1 EUR costs 0.8180 GBP. *Direct and indirect quotes are just the inverse (reciprocal) of each other.*

It can be confusing to describe exchange rates as either being direct or indirect because determining the domestic currency and the foreign currency depends on where one is located. For a London-based market participant, the UK pound (GBP) is the domestic currency and the euro (EUR) is a foreign currency. For a Paris-based market participant, it would be the other way around.

To avoid confusion, the professional FX market has developed a set of market conventions that all market participants typically adhere to when making and asking for FX quotes. Exhibit 6 displays some of these for the major currencies: the currency code used for obtaining exchange rate quotes, how the market lingo refers to this currency pair, and the actual ratio—price currency per unit of base currency—represented by the quote.

Exhibit 6 Exchange Rate Quote Conventions

FX Rate Quote Convention	Name Convention	Actual Ratio (Price currency/Base currency)
EUR	Euro	USD/EUR
JPY	Dollar-yen	JPY/USD
GBP	Sterling	USD/GBP
CAD	Dollar-Canada	CAD/USD
AUD	Aussie	USD/AUD
NZD	Kiwi	USD/NZD
CHF	Swiss franc	CHF/USD

Exhibit 6 (Continued)

FX Rate Quote Convention	Name Convention	Actual Ratio (Price currency/Base currency)
EURJPY	Euro–yen	JPY/EUR
EURGBP	Euro–sterling	GBP/EUR
EURCHF	Euro–Swiss	CHF/EUR
GBPJPY	Sterling–yen	JPY/GBP
EURCAD	Euro–Canada	CAD/EUR
CADJPY	Canada–yen	JPY/CAD

Several things should be noted in this exhibit. First, the three-letter currency codes in the first column (for FX rate quotes) refer to what are considered the major exchange rates. Remember that an exchange rate is the price of one currency in terms of another: There are always two currencies involved in the price. This is different from referring to a single currency in its own right. For example, one can refer to the euro (EUR) as a *currency*; but if we refer to a euro *exchange rate* (EUR), it is always the price of the euro in terms of another currency, in this case the US dollar. This is because in the professional FX market, the three-letter code EUR is always taken to refer to the euro–US dollar exchange rate, which is quoted in terms of the number of US dollars per euro (USD/EUR). Second, where there are six-letter currency codes in the first column, these refer to some of the major *cross-rates*. This topic will be covered in the next section, but generally these are secondary exchange rates and they are not as common as the main exchange rates. (It can be noted that three-letter codes are always in terms of an exchange rate involving the US dollar, while the six-letter codes are not.) Third, when both currencies are mentioned in the code or the name convention, *the base currency is always mentioned first, the opposite order of the actual ratio (price currency/base currency)*. Thus, the code for “Sterling–yen” is “GBPJPY,” but the actual number quoted is the number of yen per sterling (JPY/GBP). It should also be noted that *the codes may appear in a variety of formats that all mean the same thing*. For example, GBPJPY might instead appear as GBP:JPY or GBP–JPY. Fourth, regardless of where a market participant is located, there is always a mix of direct and indirect quotes in common market usage. For example, a trader based in Toronto will typically refer to the euro–Canada and Canada–yen exchange rates—a mixture of direct (CAD/EUR) and indirect (JPY/CAD) quotes for a Canadian-based trader. There is no overall consistency in this mixture of direct and indirect quoting conventions in the professional FX market; a market participant just has to get familiar with how the conventions are used.⁴

Another concept involving exchange rate quotes in professional FX markets is that of a *two-sided price*. When a client asks a bank for an exchange rate quote, the bank will provide a “*bid*” (the price at which the bank is willing to buy the currency) and an “*offer*” (the price at which the bank is willing to sell the currency). But there are *two* currencies involved in an exchange rate quote, which is always the price of one currency relative to the other. So, which one is being bought and sold in this two-sided price quote? This is where the lingo involving the price currency (or quote currency)

⁴ In general, however, there is a hierarchy for quoting conventions. For quotes involving the EUR, it serves as the base currency (e.g., GBP/EUR). Next in the priority sequence, for quotes involving the GBP (but not the EUR) it serves as the base currency (e.g., USD/GBP). Finally, for quotes involving the USD (but not the GBP or EUR) it serves as the base currency (e.g., CAD/USD). Exceptions among the major currencies are the AUD and NZD: they serve as the base currency when quoted against the USD (i.e., USD/AUD, USD/NZD).

and the base currency, explained above, becomes useful. *The two-sided price quoted by the dealer is in terms of buying/selling the base currency.* It shows the number of units of the price currency that the client will receive from the dealer for one unit of the base currency (the bid) and the number of units of the price currency that the client must sell to the dealer to obtain one unit of the base currency (the offer). Consider the case of a client that is interested in a transaction involving the Swiss franc (CHF) and the euro (EUR). As we have seen above, the market convention is to quote this as euro–Swiss (CHF/EUR). The EUR is the base currency, and the two-sided quote (price) shows the number of units of the price currency (CHF) that must be paid or will be received for 1 euro. For example, a two-sided price in euro–Swiss (CHF/EUR) might look like: 1.3405–1.3407. The client will receive CHF1.3405 for selling EUR1 to the dealer and must pay CHF1.3407 to the dealer to buy EUR1. Note that *the price is shown in terms of the price currency* and that *the bid is always less than the offer*: The bank buys the base currency (EUR, in this case) at the low price and sells the base currency at the high price. Buying low and selling high is profitable for banks, and spreading clients—trying to widen the bid/offer spread—is how dealers try to increase their profit margins. However, it should be noted that the electronic dealing systems currently used in professional FX markets are extremely efficient in connecting buyers and sellers globally. Moreover, this worldwide competition for business has compressed most bid/offer spreads to very tight levels. For simplicity, in the remainder of this reading we will focus on exchange rates as a single number (with no bid/offer spread).

One last thing that can be pointed out in exchange rate quoting conventions is that most major spot exchange rates are typically quoted to four decimal places. One exception among the major currencies involves the yen, for which spot exchange rates are usually quoted to two decimal places. (For example, using spot exchange rates from the middle of 2010, a USD/EUR quote would be expressed as 1.2875, while a JPY/EUR quote would be expressed as 110.25.) This difference involving the yen comes from the fact that the units of yen per unit of other currencies is typically relatively large already, and hence extending the exchange rate quote to four decimal places is viewed as unnecessary.

Regardless of what quoting convention is used, changes in an exchange rate can be expressed as a percentage appreciation of one currency against the other: One simply has to be careful in identifying which currency is the price currency and which is the base currency. For example, let's suppose the exchange rate for the euro (USD/EUR) increases from 1.2500 to 1.3000. This represents an (un-annualized) percentage change of:

$$\frac{1.3000}{1.2500} - 1 = 4.00\%$$

This represents a 4 percent appreciation in the euro against the US dollar (and not an appreciation of the US dollar against the euro) because the USD/EUR exchange rate is expressed with the dollar as the price currency.

Note that this appreciation of the euro against the US dollar can also be expressed as a depreciation of the US dollar against the euro; but in this case, the depreciation is not equal to 4.0 percent. Inverting the exchange rate quote from USD/EUR to EUR/USD, so that the euro is now the price currency, leads to:

$$\left(\frac{1}{1.3000} \right) - 1 = \frac{1.2500}{1.3000} - 1 = -3.85\%$$

Note that the US dollar depreciation is not the same, in percentage terms, as the euro appreciation. This will always be true; it is simply a matter of arithmetic.

EXAMPLE 4**Exchange Rate Conventions**

A dealer based in New York City provides a spot exchange rate quote of 12.4035 MXN/USD to a client in Mexico City. The inverse of 12.4035 is 0.0806.

- 1 From the perspective of the Mexican client, the *most* accurate statement is that the:
 - A direct exchange rate quotation is equal to 0.0806.
 - B direct exchange rate quotation is equal to 12.4035.
 - C indirect exchange rate quotation is equal to 12.4035.
- 2 If the bid/offer quote from the dealer was 12.4020 ~ 12.4060 MXN/USD, then the bid/offer quote in USD/MXN terms would be *closest* to:
 - A 0.08061 ~ 0.08063.
 - B 0.08063 ~ 0.08061.
 - C 0.08062 ~ 0.08062.

Solution to 1:

B is correct. A direct exchange rate uses the domestic currency as the price currency and the foreign currency as the base currency. For an MXN/USD quote, the MXN is the price currency; therefore, the direct quote for the Mexican client is 12.4035 (it costs 12.4035 pesos to purchase 1 US dollar). Another way of understanding a *direct* exchange rate quote is that it is the price of one unit of foreign currency in terms of your own currency. This purchase of a unit of foreign currency can be thought of as a purchase much like any other you might make; think of the unit of foreign currency as just another item that you might be purchasing with your domestic currency. For example, for someone based in Canada, a liter of milk currently costs about CAD1.25 and USD1 costs about CAD1.03. This *direct* currency quote uses the *domestic* currency (the Canadian dollar, in this case) as the *price* currency and simply gives the price of a unit of foreign currency that is being purchased.

Solution to 2:

A is correct. An MXN/USD quote means the amount of MXN the dealer is bidding (offering) to buy (sell) USD1. The dealer's bid to buy USD1 at MXN12.4020 is equivalent to the dealer paying MXN12.4020 to buy USD1. Dividing both terms by 12.4020 means the dealer is paying (i.e., selling) MXN1 to buy USD0.08063. This is the offer in USD/MXN terms: The dealer offers to sell MXN1 at a price of USD0.08063. In USD/MXN terms, the dealer's bid for MXN1 is 0.08061, calculated by inverting the offer of 12.4060 in MXN/USD terms ($1/12.4060 = 0.08061$). Note that in any bid/offer quote, no matter what the base or price currencies, the bid is always lower than the offer.

3.2 Cross-Rate Calculations

Given two exchange rates involving three currencies, it is possible to back out what the cross-rate must be. For example, as we have seen, the FX market convention is to quote the exchange rate between the US dollar and the euro as euro-dollar (USD/EUR). The FX market also quotes the exchange rate between the Canadian dollar

and US dollar as dollar–Canada (CAD/USD). Given these two exchange rates, it is possible to back out the cross-rate between the euro and the Canadian dollar, which according to market convention is quoted as euro–Canada (CAD/EUR). This calculation is shown as:

$$\frac{\text{CAD}}{\text{USD}} \times \frac{\text{USD}}{\text{EUR}} = \frac{\text{CAD}}{\cancel{\text{USD}}} \times \frac{\cancel{\text{USD}}}{\text{EUR}} = \frac{\text{CAD}}{\text{EUR}}$$

Hence, to get a euro–Canada (CAD/EUR) quote, we must multiply the dollar–Canada (CAD/USD) quote by the euro–dollar (USD/EUR) quote. For example, assume the exchange rate for dollar–Canada is 1.0460 and the exchange rate for euro–dollar is 1.2880. Using these sample spot exchange rates, calculating the euro–Canada cross-rate equals:

$$1.0460 \times 1.2880 = 1.3472 \text{ CAD per EUR}$$

It is best to avoid talking in terms of direct or indirect quotes because, as noted above, these conventions depend on where one is located and hence what the domestic and foreign currencies are. Instead, focus on how the math works: Sometimes it is necessary to invert one of the quotes in order to get the intermediary currency to cancel out in the equation to get the cross-rate. For example, to get a Canada–yen (JPY/CAD) quote, one is typically using the dollar–Canada (CAD/USD) rate and dollar–yen (JPY/USD) rate, which are the market conventions. This Canada–yen calculation requires that the dollar–Canada rate (CAD/USD) be inverted to a USD/CAD quote for the calculations to work, as shown below:

$$\left(\frac{\text{CAD}}{\text{USD}}\right)^{-1} \times \frac{\text{JPY}}{\text{USD}} = \frac{\text{USD}}{\text{CAD}} \times \frac{\text{JPY}}{\text{USD}} = \frac{\cancel{\text{USD}}}{\text{CAD}} \times \frac{\text{JPY}}{\cancel{\text{USD}}} = \frac{\text{JPY}}{\text{CAD}}$$

Hence, to get a Canada–yen (JPY/CAD) quote, we must first invert the dollar–Canada (CAD/USD) quote before multiplying by the dollar–yen (JPY/USD) quote. As an example, let's assume that we have spot exchange rates of 1.0460 for dollar–Canada (CAD/USD) and 85.50 for dollar–yen (JPY/USD). The dollar–Canada rate of 1.0460 inverts to 0.9560; multiplying this value by the dollar–yen quote of 85.50 gives a Canada–yen quote of:

$$0.9560 \times 85.50 = 81.74 \text{ JPY per CAD}$$

Market participants asking for a quote in a cross-rate currency pair typically will not have to do this calculation themselves: Either the dealer or the electronic trading platform will provide a quote in the specified currency pair. (For example, a client asking for a quote in Canada–yen will receive that quote from the dealer; he will not be given separate dollar–Canada and dollar–yen quotes in order to do the math.) But be aware that dealers providing the quotes often have to do this calculation themselves if only because the dollar–Canada and dollar–yen currency pairs often trade on different trading desks and involve different traders. Electronic dealing machines used in both the interbank market and bank-to-client markets often provide this mathematical operation to calculate cross-rates automatically.

Because market participants can receive both a cross-rate quote (for example, Canada–yen) as well as the component underlying exchange rate quotes (for example, dollar–Canada and dollar–yen), these cross-rate quotes must be consistent with the above equation; otherwise, the market will arbitrage the mispricing. Extending our example above, we calculate a Canada–yen (JPY/CAD) rate of 81.74 based on underlying dollar–Canada (CAD/USD) and dollar–yen (JPY/USD) rates of 1.0460 and 85.50, respectively. Now suppose that at the same time a misguided dealer quotes a Canada–yen rate of 82.00. This is a different price in JPY/CAD for an identical service: converting yen into Canadian dollars. Hence, any trader could buy CAD1 at the lower price of JPY81.74 and then turn around and sell CAD1 at JPY82.00 (recall our earlier

discussion of how price and base currencies are defined). The riskless arbitrage profit is JPY0.26 per CAD1. The arbitrage—called *triangular arbitrage*, “tri-,” because it involves three currencies—would continue until the price discrepancy was removed.

In reality, however, these discrepancies in cross-rates almost never occur because both human traders and automatic trading algorithms are constantly on alert for any pricing inefficiencies. In practice, and for the purposes of this reading, we can consider cross-rates as being consistent with their underlying exchange rate quotes and that given any two exchange rates involving three currencies, we can back out the third cross-rate.

EXAMPLE 5

Cross Exchange Rates and Percentage Changes

A research report produced by a dealer includes the following exhibit:

	Spot Rate	Expected Spot Rate in One Year
USD/EUR	1.3960	1.3863
CHF/USD	0.9585	0.9551
USD/GBP	1.5850	1.5794

- The spot CHF/EUR cross-rate is *closest* to:
 - 0.6866.
 - 0.7473.
 - 1.3381.
- The spot GBP/EUR cross-rate is *closest* to:
 - 0.8808.
 - 1.1354.
 - 2.2127.
- Based on the exhibit, the euro is expected to appreciate by how much against the US dollar over the next year?
 - −0.7 percent
 - +0.7 percent
 - +1.0 percent
- Based on the exhibit, the US dollar is expected to appreciate by how much against the British pound over the next year?
 - +0.6 percent
 - −0.4 percent
 - +0.4 percent
- Over the next year, the Swiss franc is expected to:
 - depreciate against the GBP.
 - depreciate against the EUR.
 - appreciate against the GBP, EUR, and USD.
- Based on the exhibit, which of the following lists the three currencies from strongest to weakest over the next year?
 - USD, GBP, EUR
 - USD, EUR, GBP

C EUR, USD, GBP

7 Based on the exhibit, which of the following lists the three currencies in order of appreciating the most to appreciating the least (in percentage terms) against the USD over the next year?

A GBP, CHF, EUR

B CHF, GBP, EUR

C EUR, CHF, GBP

Solution to 1:

C is correct:

$$\frac{\text{CHF}}{\text{EUR}} = \frac{\text{USD}}{\text{EUR}} \times \frac{\text{CHF}}{\text{USD}} = 1.3960 \times 0.9585 = 1.3381$$

Solution to 2:

A is correct:

$$\frac{\text{GBP}}{\text{EUR}} = \frac{\text{USD}}{\text{EUR}} \times \left(\frac{\text{USD}}{\text{GBP}}\right)^{-1} = \frac{\text{USD}}{\text{EUR}} \times \frac{\text{GBP}}{\text{USD}} = \frac{1.3960}{1.5850} = 0.8808$$

Solution to 3:

A is correct. The euro is the base currency in the USD/EUR quote, and the expected decrease in the USD/EUR rate indicates that the EUR is depreciating (in one year it will cost less USD to buy one EUR). Mathematically:

$$\frac{1.3863}{1.3960} - 1 = -0.7\%$$

Solution to 4:

C is correct. The GBP is the base currency in the USD/GBP quote, and the expected decrease in the USD/GBP rate means that the GBP is expected to depreciate against the USD. Or equivalently, the USD is expected to appreciate against the GBP. Mathematically:

$$\left(\frac{1.5794}{1.5850}\right)^{-1} - 1 = \frac{1.5850}{1.5794} - 1 = +0.4\%$$

Solution to 5:

C is correct: Because the question does not require calculating the magnitude of the appreciation or depreciation, we can work with CHF as either the price currency or the base currency. In this case, it is easiest to use it as the price currency. According to the table, CHF/USD is expected to decline from 0.9585 to 0.9551, so CHF is expected to be stronger (i.e., it should appreciate against the USD). CHF/EUR is currently 1.3381 (see the solution to problem 1) and is expected to be 1.3241 (= 0.9551 × 1.3863), so CHF is expected to appreciate against the EUR. CHF/GBP is currently 1.5192 (= 0.9585 × 1.5850) and is expected to be 1.5085 (= 0.9551 × 1.5794), so CHF is also expected to appreciate against the GBP.

Alternatively, we can derive this answer intuitively. The table shows that the CHF/USD rate is expected to decline: That is, the USD is expected to depreciate against the CHF, or alternatively, the CHF is expected to appreciate against the USD. The table also shows that the USD/EUR and USD/GBP rates are also decreasing, meaning that the EUR and GBP are expected to depreciate against the USD, or alternatively, the USD is expected to appreciate against the EUR

and GBP. If the CHF is expected to appreciate against the USD and the USD is expected to appreciate against both the EUR and GBP, it follows that the CHF is expected to appreciate against both the EUR and GBP.

Solution to 6:

A is correct. According to the table, USD/EUR is expected to decline from 1.3960 to 1.3863, while USD/GBP is expected to decline from 1.5850 to 1.5794. So, the USD is expected to be stronger than both the EUR and GBP. GBP/EUR is currently 0.8808 [= $(1.5850)^{-1} \times 1.3960$] and is expected to be 0.8777 [= $(1.5794)^{-1} \times 1.3863$], so the GBP is expected to be stronger than the EUR.

Solution to 7:

B is correct. The USD/EUR rate depreciates by -0.7 percent (= $[1.3863/1.3960] - 1$), which is the depreciation of the base currency EUR against the USD. The USD/GBP rate declines -0.4 percent (= $[1.5794/1.5850] - 1$), which is the depreciation of the GBP against the USD. Inverting the CHF/USD rate to a USD/CHF convention shows that the base currency CHF appreciates by $+0.4$ percent against the USD (= $[1.0470/1.0433] - 1$).

3.3 Forward Calculations

In professional FX markets, forward exchange rates are typically quoted in terms of points (also sometimes referred to as “pips”). The points on a forward rate quote are simply the difference between the forward exchange rate quote and the spot exchange rate quote, with the points scaled so that they can be related to the last decimal in the spot quote. When the forward rate is higher than the spot rate, the points are positive and the base currency is said to be trading at a *forward premium*. Conversely, if the forward rate is less than the spot rate, the points (forward rate minus spot rate) are negative and the base currency is said to be trading at a *forward discount*. Of course, if the base currency is trading at a forward premium, then the price currency is trading at a forward discount, and vice versa.

This can best be explained by means of an example. At one point during 2010, the spot euro–dollar exchange rate (USD/EUR) was 1.2875 and the one-year forward rate was 1.28485. Hence, the forward rate was trading at a discount to the spot rate (the forward rate was smaller than the spot rate) and the one-year forward points were quoted as -26.5 . This -26.5 comes from:

$$1.28485 - 1.2875 = -0.00265$$

Recall that most non-yen exchange rates are quoted to four decimal places, so in this case we would scale up by four decimal places (multiply by 10,000) so that this -0.00265 would be represented as -26.5 points. Notice that the points are scaled to the size of the last digit in the spot exchange rate quote—usually the fourth decimal place. Notice as well that points are typically quoted to one (or more) decimal places, meaning that the forward rate will typically be quoted to five or more decimal places. The exception among the major currencies is the yen, which is typically quoted to two decimal places for spot rates. Here, forward points are scaled up by two decimal places—the last digit in the spot rate quote—by multiplying the difference between forward and spot rates by 100.

Typically, quotes for forward rates are shown as the number of forward points at each maturity.⁵ These forward points are also called *swap points* because an FX swap consists of simultaneous spot and forward transactions. In the middle of 2010, a trader would have faced a spot rate and forward points in the euro–dollar (USD/EUR) currency pair similar to those in Exhibit 7:

Exhibit 7 Sample Spot and Forward Quotes

Maturity	Spot Rate or Forward Points
Spot	1.2875
One week	−0.3
One month	−1.1
Three months	−5.5
Six months	−13.3
Twelve months	−26.5

Notice that the absolute number of points generally increases with maturity. This is because the number of points is proportional to the yield differential between the two countries (the Eurozone and the United States, in this case) scaled by the term to maturity. Given the interest rate differential, the longer the term to maturity, the greater the absolute number of forward points. Similarly, given the term to maturity, a wider interest rate differential implies a greater absolute number of forward points. (This will be explained and demonstrated in more detail later in this section.)

To convert any of these quoted forward points into a forward rate, one would divide the number of points by 10,000 (to scale down to the fourth decimal place, the last decimal place in the spot quote) and then add the result to the spot exchange rate quote.⁶ For example, using the data in Exhibit 7, the three-month forward rate in this case would be:

$$1.2875 + \left(\frac{-5.5}{10,000} \right) = 1.2875 - 0.00055 = 1.28695$$

Occasionally, one will see the forward rate or forward points represented as a percentage of the spot rate rather than as an absolute number of points. Continuing our example from above, the three-month forward rate for USD/EUR can be represented as:

$$\frac{1.28750 - 0.00055}{1.28750} - 1 = \left(\frac{1.28695}{1.28750} \right) - 1 = -0.043\%$$

This shows that either the forward rate or the forward points can be used to calculate the percentage discount (or premium) in the forward market—in this case, −0.043 percent rounding to three decimal places. To convert a spot quote into a forward quote when the points are shown as a percentage, one simply multiplies the spot rate by one plus the percentage premium or discount:

$$1.28750 \times (1 - 0.043\%) = 1.28750 \times (1.0000 - 0.00043) \approx 1.28695$$

⁵ As mentioned earlier, “maturity” is defined in terms of the time between spot settlement (usually T + 2) and the settlement of the forward contract.

⁶ Because the JPY/USD exchange rate is only quoted to two decimal places, forward points for the dollar–yen currency pair are divided by 100.

Note that, rounded to the fifth decimal place, this is equal to our previous calculation. However, it is typically the case in professional FX markets that forward rates will be quoted in terms of pips rather than percentages.

We now turn to the relationship between spot rates, forward rates, and interest rates and how their relationship is derived. Forward exchange rates are based on an arbitrage relationship that equates the investment return on two alternative but equivalent investments. Consider the case of an investor with funds to invest. For simplicity, we will assume that there is one unit of the investor's domestic currency to be invested for one period. One alternative is to invest for one period at the domestic risk-free rate (i_d); at the end of the period, the amount of funds held is equal to $(1 + i_d)$. An alternative investment is to convert this one unit of domestic currency to foreign currency using the spot rate of $S_{f/d}$ (number of units of foreign currency per one unit of domestic currency). This can be invested for one period at the foreign risk-free rate; at the end of the period, the investor would have $S_{f/d}(1 + i_f)$ units of foreign currency. These funds must then be converted back to the investor's domestic currency. If the exchange rate to be used for this end-of-period conversion was pre-contracted at the start of the period (i.e., a forward rate was used), it would eliminate any foreign exchange risk from converting at a future, unknown spot rate. Given the assumed exchange rate convention here (foreign/domestic), the investor would obtain $(1/F_{f/d})$ units of the domestic currency for each unit of foreign currency sold forward. Note that this process of converting domestic funds in the spot FX market, investing at the foreign risk-free rate, and then converting back to the domestic currency with a forward rate is identical to the concept of swap financing described in an earlier section of this reading.

Hence, we have two alternative investments—both risk-free because both are invested at risk-free interest rates and because any foreign exchange risk was eliminated (hedged) by using a forward rate. Because these two investments are equal in risk characteristics, they must have the same return. Bearing in mind that the currency quoting convention is the number of foreign currency units per single domestic unit (f/d), this relationship can be stated as:

$$(1 + i_d) = S_{f/d}(1 + i_f)\left(\frac{1}{F_{f/d}}\right)$$

This is an arbitrage relationship because it describes two alternative investments (one on either side of the equal sign) that should have equal returns. If they do not, a riskless arbitrage opportunity exists because an investor can sell short the investment with the lower return and invest the funds in the investment with the higher return; the difference between the two returns is pure profit.⁷

This formula is perhaps the easiest and most intuitive way to remember the formula for the forward rate because it is based directly on the underlying intuition (the arbitrage relationship of two alternative but equivalent investments, one on either side of the equal sign). Also, the right-hand side of the equation, for the hedged foreign investment alternative, is arranged in proper time sequence: a) convert domestic to foreign currency; then b) invest the foreign currency at the foreign interest rate; and finally c) convert the foreign currency back to the domestic currency.⁸

⁷ It is because of this arbitrage relationship that the all-in financing rate using swap financing is close to the domestic interest rate.

⁸ Recall that this equation is based on an f/d exchange rate quoting convention. If the exchange rate data were presented in d/f form, one could either invert these quotes back to f/d form and use the above equation or use the following equivalent equation: $(1 + i_d) = (1/S_{d/f})(1 + i_f)F_{d/f}$. If this latter equation were used, remember that forward and spot exchange rates are now being quoted on a d/f convention.

This arbitrage equation can be re-arranged as needs require. For example, to get the formula for the forward rate, the above equation can be restated as:

$$F_{f/d} = S_{f/d} \left(\frac{1 + i_f}{1 + i_d} \right)$$

Another way of looking at this is, given the spot exchange rate and the domestic and foreign risk-free interest rates, the forward rate is whatever value completes this equation and eliminates any arbitrage opportunity. For example, let's assume that the spot exchange rate ($S_{f/d}$) is 1.6535, the domestic 12-month risk-free rate is 3.50 percent, and the foreign 12-month risk-free rate is 5.00 percent. The 12-month forward rate ($F_{f/d}$) must then be equal to:

$$1.6535 \left(\frac{1.0500}{1.0350} \right) = 1.6775$$

Suppose instead that, with the spot exchange rate and interest rates unchanged, you were given a quote on the 12-month forward rate ($F_{f/d}$) of 1.6900. Because this misquoted forward rate does not agree with the arbitrage equation, it would present a riskless arbitrage opportunity. This can be seen by using the arbitrage equation to compute the return on the two alternative investment strategies. The return on the domestic-only investment approach is the domestic risk-free rate (3.50 percent). In contrast, the return on the hedged foreign investment when this misquoted forward rate is put into the arbitrage equation equals:

$$S_{f/d} (1 + i_f) \left(\frac{1}{F_{f/d}} \right) = 1.6535 (1.05) \left(\frac{1}{1.6900} \right) = 1.0273$$

This defines a return of 2.73 percent. Hence, the investor could make riskless arbitrage profits by borrowing at the higher foreign risk-free rate, selling the foreign currency at the spot exchange rate, hedging the currency exposure (buying the foreign currency back) at the misquoted forward rate, investing the funds at the lower domestic risk-free rate, and thereby getting a profit of 77 basis points (3.50% – 2.73%) for each unit of domestic currency involved—all with no upfront commitment of the investor's own capital. Any such opportunity in real-world financial markets would be quickly “arbed” away. It is interesting to note that in this example, the investor actually borrows at the higher of the two interest rates but makes a profit because the foreign currency is underpriced in the forward market.

The underlying arbitrage equation can also be re-arranged to show the forward rate as a percentage of the spot rate:

$$\frac{F_{f/d}}{S_{f/d}} = \left(\frac{1 + i_f}{1 + i_d} \right)$$

This shows that, given an f/d quoting convention, the forward rate will be higher than (be at a premium to) the spot rate if foreign interest rates are higher than domestic interest rates. More generally, and regardless of the quoting convention, *the currency with the higher (lower) interest rate will always trade at a discount (premium) in the forward market.*

One context in which forward rates are quoted as a percentage of spot rates occurs when forward rates are interpreted as expected future spot rates, or:

$$F_t = \hat{S}_{t+1}$$

Substituting this expression into the previous equation and doing some re-arranging leads to:

$$\frac{\hat{S}_{t+1}}{S_t} - 1 = \% \Delta \hat{S}_{t+1} = \left(\frac{i_f - i_d}{1 + i_d} \right)$$

This shows that if forward rates are interpreted as expected future spot rates, the expected percentage change in the spot rate is proportional to the interest rate differential ($i_f - i_d$).

It is intuitively appealing to see forward rates as expected future spot rates. However, this interpretation of forward rates should be used cautiously. First, the direction of the expected change in spot rates is somewhat counter-intuitive. All else being equal, an increase in domestic interest rates (for example, the central bank tightens monetary policy) would typically be expected to lead to an increase in the value of the domestic currency. In contrast, the equation above indicates that, all else equal, a higher domestic interest rate implies slower expected appreciation (or greater expected depreciation) of the domestic currency (recall that this equation is based on an f/d quoting convention).

More important, historical data show that forward rates are poor predictors of future spot rates. Although various econometric studies suggest that forward rates may be unbiased predictors of future spot rates (i.e., they do not systematically over- or under-estimate future spot rates), this is not particularly useful information because the margin of error for these forecasts is so large. As we have seen in our introductory section, the FX market is far too complex and dynamic to be captured by a single variable, such as the level of the yield differential between countries. Moreover, as can be seen in the formula above for the forward rate, forward rates are based on domestic and foreign interest rates. This means that anything that affects the level and shape of the yield curve in either the domestic or foreign market will also affect the relationship between spot and forward exchange rates. In other words, FX markets do not operate in isolation but will reflect almost all factors affecting other markets globally; anything that affects expectations or risk premia in these other markets will reverberate in forward exchange rates as well. Although the level of the yield differential is one factor that the market may look at in forming spot exchange rate expectations, it is only one of many factors. (Many traders look to the trend in the yield differential rather than the level of the differential.) Moreover, there is a lot of noise in FX markets that makes almost any model—no matter how complex—a relatively poor predictor of spot rates at any given point in the future. In practice, FX traders and market strategists do *not* base either their currency expectations or trading strategies solely on forward rates.

For the purposes of this reading, *it is best to understand forward exchange rates simply as a product of the arbitrage equation outlined earlier and forward points as being related to the (time-scaled) interest rate differential between the two countries.* Reading any more than that into forward rates or interpreting them as the “market forecast” can be potentially misleading.

To understand the relationship between maturity and forward points, we need to generalize our arbitrage formula slightly. Suppose the investment horizon is a fraction, τ , of the period for which the interest rates are quoted. Then the interest earned in the domestic and foreign markets would be ($i_d \tau$) and ($i_f \tau$), respectively. Substituting this into our arbitrage relationship and solving for the difference between the forward and spot exchange rates gives:

$$F_{f/d} - S_{f/d} = S_{f/d} \left(\frac{i_f - i_d}{1 + i_d \tau} \right) \tau$$

This equation shows that forward points (appropriately scaled) are proportional to the spot exchange rate and to the interest rate differential and approximately (but not exactly) proportional to the horizon of the forward contract.

Let's demonstrate this using an example. Suppose that we wanted to determine the 30-day forward exchange rate given a 30-day domestic risk-free interest rate of 2.00 percent per year, a 30-day foreign risk-free interest rate of 3.00 percent per year, and a spot exchange rate ($S_{f/d}$) of 1.6555. The risk-free assets used in this arbitrage relationship are typically bank deposits quoted using the London Interbank Offered Rate (Libor) for the currencies involved. The day count convention for Libor deposits is Actual/360.⁹ Incorporating the fractional period (τ) as above and inserting the data into the forward rate equation leads to a 30-day forward rate of:

$$F_{f/d} = S_{f/d} \left(\frac{1 + i_f \tau}{1 + i_d \tau} \right) = 1.6555 \left(\frac{1 + 0.0300 \left[\frac{30}{360} \right]}{1 + 0.0200 \left[\frac{30}{360} \right]} \right) = 1.6569$$

This means that, for a 30-day term, forward rates are trading at a premium of 14 pips ($1.6569 - 1.6555$). This can also be calculated using the above formula for swap points:

$$F_{f/d} - S_{f/d} = S_{f/d} \left(\frac{i_f - i_d}{1 + i_d \tau} \right) \tau = 1.6555 \left(\frac{0.0300 - 0.0200}{1 + 0.0200 \left[\frac{30}{360} \right]} \right) \left[\frac{30}{360} \right] = 0.0014$$

As should be clear from this expression, the absolute number of swap points will be closely related to the term of the forward contract (i.e., approximately proportional to $\tau = \text{Actual}/360$). For example, leaving the spot exchange rate and interest rates unchanged, let's set the term of the forward contract to 180 days:

$$F_{f/d} - S_{f/d} = 1.6555 \left(\frac{0.0300 - 0.0200}{1 + 0.0200 \left[\frac{180}{360} \right]} \right) \left[\frac{180}{360} \right] = 0.0082$$

This leads to the forward rate trading at a premium of 82 pips. The increase in the number of forward points is approximately proportional to the increase in the term of the contract (from 30 days to 180 days). Note that although the term of the 180-day forward contract is six times longer than that of a 30-day contract, the number of forward points is not exactly six times larger: $6 \times 14 = 84$.

Similarly, the number of forward points is proportional to the spread between foreign and domestic interest rates ($i_f - i_d$). For example, with reference to the original 30-day forward contract, let's set the foreign interest rate to 4.00 percent leaving the domestic interest rate and spot exchange rate unchanged. This doubles the interest rate differential ($i_f - i_d$) from 1.00 percent to 2.00 percent; it also doubles the forward points (rounding to four decimal places):

$$F_{f/d} - S_{f/d} = 1.6555 \left(\frac{0.0400 - 0.0200}{1 + 0.0200 \left[\frac{30}{360} \right]} \right) \left[\frac{30}{360} \right] = 0.0028$$

⁹ This means that for interest calculation purposes, it is assumed that there are 360 days in the year. However, the actual number of days the funds are on deposit is used to calculate the interest payable.

EXAMPLE 6**Forward Rates**

A French company has recently finalized a sale of goods to a UK-based client and expects to receive a payment of GBP50 million in 32 days. The corporate treasurer at the French company wants to hedge the foreign exchange risk of this transaction and receives the following exchange rate information from a dealer:

GBP/EUR spot rate	0.8752
One-month forward points	-1.4

- Given the above data, the treasurer could hedge the foreign exchange risk by:
 - buying EUR (selling GBP) at a forward rate of 0.87380.
 - buying EUR (selling GBP) at a forward rate of 0.87506.
 - selling EUR (buying GBP) at a forward rate of 0.87506.
- The *best* interpretation of the forward discount shown is that:
 - the euro is expected to depreciate over the next 30 days.
 - one-month UK interest rates are higher than those in the Eurozone.
 - one-month Eurozone interest rates are higher than those in the United Kingdom.
- If the 12-month forward rate is 0.87295 GBP/EUR, then based on the data the 12-month forward points are *closest* to:
 - 22.5.
 - 2.25.
 - 0.00225.
- If a second dealer quotes GBP/EUR at a 12-month forward discount of 0.30 percent on the same spot rate, the French company could:
 - trade with either dealer because the 12-month forward quotes are equivalent.
 - lock in a profit in 12 months by buying EUR from the second dealer and selling it to the original dealer.
 - lock in a profit in 12 months by buying EUR from the original dealer and selling it to the second dealer.
- If the 270-day Libor rates (annualized) for the EUR and GBP are 1.370% and 1.325%, respectively, and the spot GBP/EUR exchange rate is 0.8489, then the number of forward points for a 270-day forward rate ($F_{GBP/EUR}$) is *closest* to:
 - 22.8.
 - 3.8.
 - 2.8.

Solution to 1:

B is correct. The French company would want to convert the GBP to its domestic currency, the EUR (it wants to sell GBP, buy EUR). The forward rate would be equal to: $0.8752 + (-1.4/10,000) = 0.87506$.

Solution to 2:

C is correct. A forward discount indicates that interest rates in the base currency country (France in this case, which uses the euro) are higher than those in the price currency country (the United Kingdom).

Solution to 3:

A is correct. The number of forward points is equal to the scaled difference between the forward rate and the spot rate. In this case: $0.87295 - 0.87520 = -0.00225$. This is then multiplied by 10,000 to convert to the number of forward points.

Solution to 4:

B is correct. A 0.30 percent discount means that the second dealer will sell euros 12 months forward at $0.8752 \times (1 - 0.0030) = 0.87257$, a lower price per euro than the original dealer's quote of 0.87295. Buying euros at the cheaper 12-month forward rate (0.87257) and selling the same amount of euros 12 months forward at the higher 12-month forward rate (0.87295) means a profit of $(0.87295 - 0.87257 = \text{GBP } 0.00038)$ per euro transacted, receivable when both forward contracts settle in 12 months.

Solution to 5:

C is correct, because the forward rate is calculated as:

$$\frac{F_{GBP}}{EUR} = \frac{S_{GBP}}{EUR} \left(\frac{1 + i_{GBP} \left[\frac{\text{Actual}}{360} \right]}{1 + i_{EUR} \left[\frac{\text{Actual}}{360} \right]} \right) = 0.8489 \left(\frac{1 + 0.01325 \left[\frac{270}{360} \right]}{1 + 0.01370 \left[\frac{270}{360} \right]} \right) = 0.84862$$

This shows that the forward points are at a discount of: $0.84862 - 0.84890 = -0.00028$, or -2.8 points. This can also be seen using the swap points formula:

$$\frac{F_{GBP}}{EUR} - \frac{S_{GBP}}{EUR} = 0.8489 \left(\frac{0.01325 - 0.01370}{1 + 0.01370 \left[\frac{270}{360} \right]} \right) \left[\frac{270}{360} \right] = -0.00028$$

The calculation of -3.8 points omits the day count ($270/360$), and -22.8 points gets the scaling wrong.

4**EXCHANGE RATE REGIMES**

Highly volatile exchange rates create uncertainty that undermines the efficiency of real economic activity and the financial transactions required to facilitate that activity. Exchange rate volatility also has a direct impact on investment decisions because it is a key component of the risk inherent in foreign (i.e., foreign-currency-denominated) assets. Exchange rate volatility is also a critical factor in selecting hedging strategies for foreign currency exposures.

The amount of foreign exchange rate volatility will depend, at least in part, on the institutional and policy arrangements associated with trade in any given currency. Virtually every exchange rate is managed to some degree by central banks. The policy framework that each central bank adopts is called an *exchange rate regime*. Although

there are many potential variations, these regimes fall into a few general categories. Before describing each of these types, we consider the possibility of an ideal regime and provide some historical perspective on the evolution of currency arrangements.

4.1 The Ideal Currency Regime

The ideal currency regime would have three properties. First, the exchange rate between any two currencies would be credibly fixed. This would eliminate currency-related uncertainty with respect to the prices of goods and services as well as real and financial assets. Second, all currencies would be fully convertible (i.e., currencies could be freely exchanged for any purpose and in any amount). This condition ensures unrestricted flow of capital. Third, each country would be able to undertake fully independent monetary policy in pursuit of domestic objectives, such as growth and inflation targets.

Unfortunately, these three conditions are not consistent. If the first two conditions were satisfied—credibly fixed exchange rates and full convertibility—then there would really be only one currency in the world. Converting from one national currency to another would have no more significance (indeed less) than deciding whether to carry coins or paper currency in your wallet. Any attempt to influence interest rates, asset prices, or inflation by adjusting the supply of one currency versus another would be futile. Thus, it should be clear that independent monetary policy is not possible if exchange rates are credibly fixed and currencies are fully convertible. *There can be no ideal currency regime.*

The impact of the currency regime on a country's ability to exercise independent monetary policy is a recurring theme in open-economy macroeconomics. It will be covered in more detail in other readings; however, it is worthwhile to emphasize the basic point by considering what would happen in an idealized world of perfect capital mobility. If the exchange rate were credibly fixed, then any attempt to decrease default-free interest rates in one country below those in another—that is, to undertake independent, expansionary monetary policy—would result in a potentially unlimited outflow of capital because funds would seek the higher return. The central bank would be forced to sell foreign currency and buy domestic currency to maintain the fixed exchange rate. The loss of reserves and reduction in the domestic money supply would put upward pressure on domestic interest rates until rates were forced back to equality, negating the initial expansionary policy. Similarly, contractionary monetary policy (higher interest rates) would be thwarted by an inflow of capital.

The situation is quite different, however, with a floating exchange rate. A decrease in the domestic interest rate would make the domestic currency less attractive. The resulting depreciation of the domestic currency would shift demand toward domestically produced goods (i.e., exports rise and imports fall), reinforcing the expansionary impact of the initial decline in the interest rate. Similarly, a contractionary increase in the interest rate would be reinforced by appreciation of the domestic currency.

In practice, of course, capital is not perfectly mobile and the impact on monetary policy is not so stark. The fact remains, however, that fixed exchange rates limit the scope for independent monetary policy and that national monetary policy regains potency and independence, at least to some degree, if the exchange rate is allowed to fluctuate and/or restrictions are placed on convertibility. In general, the more freely the exchange rate is allowed to float and the more tightly convertibility is controlled, the more effective the central bank can be in addressing domestic macroeconomic objectives. The downside, of course, is the potential distortion of economic activity caused by exchange rate risk and inefficient allocation of financial capital.

4.2 Historical Perspective on Currency Regimes

How currencies exchange for one another has evolved over the centuries. At any point in time, different exchange rate systems may coexist; still, there tends to be one dominant system in the world economy. Throughout most of the 19th century and the early 20th century until the start of World War I, the US dollar and the UK pound sterling operated on the “classical gold standard.” The price of each currency was fixed in terms of gold. Gold was the *numeraire*¹⁰ for each currency; therefore, it was indirectly the numeraire for all other prices in the economy. Many countries (e.g., the colonies of the United Kingdom) fixed their currencies relative to sterling and were therefore implicitly also operating on the classical gold standard.

The classical gold standard operated by what is called the *price-specie-flow mechanism*. This mechanism operated through the impact of trade imbalances on capital flows, namely gold. As countries experienced a trade surplus, they accumulated gold as payment, their domestic money supply expanded by the amount dictated by the fixed parity, prices rose, and exports fell. Similarly, when a country ran a trade deficit, there was an automatic outflow of gold, a contraction of the domestic money supply, and a fall in prices leading to increased exports.

In this system, national currencies were backed by gold. A country could only print as much money as its gold reserve warranted. The system was limited by the amount of gold, but it was self-adjusting and inspired confidence. With a fixed stock of gold, the price-specie-flow mechanism would work well. Still, new gold discoveries as well as more efficient methods of refining gold would enable a country to increase its gold reserves and increase its money supply apart from the effect of trade flows. In general, however, trade flows drove changes in national money supplies.¹¹

There is much disagreement among economic historians about the effect of the classical gold standard on overall macroeconomic stability. Was it destabilizing? On the one hand, monetary policy was tied to trade flows, so a country could not engage in expansionary policies when there was a downturn in the non-traded sector. On the other hand, it has been argued that tying monetary policy to trade flows kept inflation in check.

During the 1930s, the use of gold as a clearing device for settlement of trade imbalances, combined with increasing protectionism on the part of economies struggling with depression as well as episodes of deflation and hyperinflation, created a chaotic environment for world trade. As a consequence of these factors, world trade dropped by over 50 percent and the gold standard was abandoned.

In the later stages of World War II, a new system of fixed exchange rates with periodic realignments was devised by John Maynard Keynes and Harry Dexter White, representing the UK and US Treasuries, respectively. The Bretton Woods system, named after the town where it was negotiated, was adopted by 44 countries in 1944. From the end of the war until the collapse of the system in the early 1970s, the United States, Japan, and most of the industrialized countries of Europe maintained a system of fixed parities for exchange rates between currencies. When the parities were significantly and persistently out of line with the balancing of supply and demand, there would be a realignment of currencies with some appreciating in value and others depreciating in value. These periodic realignments were viewed as a part of standard monetary policy.

¹⁰ Economists refer to the unit of account in terms of which other goods, services, and assets are priced as the *numeraire*. Under the classical gold standard, the official value of each currency was expressed in ounces of gold.

¹¹ The European inflation of the 17th century was an important exception. Discoveries of gold in South America led to an increase in the world gold stock and in prices throughout Europe. The impact was especially pronounced in Imperial Spain, the primary importing country. Historians have attributed the decline of the Spanish Empire, in part, to the loss of control of domestic prices.

By 1973, with chronic inflation taking hold throughout the world, most nations abandoned the Bretton Woods system in favor of a flexible exchange rate system under what are known as the Smithsonian Agreements. Milton Friedman had called for such a system as far back as the 1950s.¹² His argument was that the fixed parity system with periodic realignments would become unsustainable. When the inevitable realignments were imminent, large speculative profit opportunities would appear. Speculators would force the hand of monetary policy authorities, and their actions would distort the data needed to ascertain appropriate trade-related parities. It is better, he argued, to let the market, rather than central bank governors and treasury ministers, determine the exchange rate.

After 1973, most of the industrialized world changed to a system of flexible exchange rates. The original thinking was that the forces that caused exchange rate chaos in the 1930s—poor domestic monetary policy and trade barriers—would not be present in a flexible exchange rate regime, and therefore exchange rates would move in response to the exchange of goods and services among countries. As it turned out, however, exchange rates moved around much more than anyone expected. Academic economists and financial analysts alike soon realized that the high degree of exchange rate volatility was the manifestation of a highly liquid, forward-looking asset market.¹³ Investment-driven FX transactions—for both long-term investment and short-term speculation—mattered much more in setting the spot exchange rate than anyone had previously imagined.

There are costs, of course, to a high degree of exchange rate volatility. These include difficulty planning without hedging exchange rate risks—a form of insurance cost, domestic price fluctuations, uncertain costs of raw materials, and short-term interruptions in financing transactions. For these reasons, in 1979 the European Economic Community opted for a system of limited flexibility, the European Exchange Rate Mechanism (ERM).

Initially, the system called for European currency values to fluctuate within a narrow band called “the snake.” This did not last long. The end of the Cold War and the re-unification of Germany created conditions ripe for speculative attack. In the early 1990s, the United Kingdom was in a recession and the government’s monetary policy leaned toward low interest rates to stimulate economic recovery. Germany was issuing large amounts of debt to pay for re-unification, and the German central bank (the Deutsche Bundesbank) opted for high interest rates to ensure price stability. Capital began to flow from sterling to Deutsche marks to obtain the higher interest rate. The Bank of England tried to lean against these flows and maintain the exchange rate within the Exchange Rate Mechanism, but eventually it began to run out of marks to sell. Because it was almost certain that devaluation would be required, holders of sterling rushed to purchase marks at the old rate and the speculative attack forced the United Kingdom out of the ERM in September 1992, only two years after it finally joined the system.

Despite these difficulties, 1999 saw the creation of a common currency for most Western European countries, without Switzerland or the United Kingdom, called the euro.¹⁴ The hope was that the common currency would increase transparency of prices across borders in Europe, enhance market competition, and facilitate more

¹² Friedman (1953).

¹³ Whether or not FX markets satisfy recognized definitions of market efficiency—correctly reflecting all available information—is debatable (e.g., some point to evidence of trending as a clear violation of efficiency). However, there is no doubt that FX market participants attempt to incorporate new information, which is often lumpy and difficult to decipher, into their expectations about the future. Changing expectations—accurate or otherwise—affect the value that investors place on holding different currencies and, in a highly liquid market, lead to rapid and sometimes violent exchange rate movements.

¹⁴ The number of European countries adopting the euro has continued to expand since its inception; the most recent country to join the euro was Lithuania, on 1 January 2015.

efficient allocation of resources. The drawback, of course, is that each member country lost the ability to manage its exchange rate and therefore to engage in independent monetary policy.

4.3 A Taxonomy of Currency Regimes

Although the pros and cons of fixed and flexible exchange rate regimes continue to be debated, regimes have been adopted that lie somewhere between these polar cases. In some cases, the driving force is the lack of credibility with respect to sound monetary policy. An economy with a history of hyperinflation may be forced to adopt a form of fixed-rate regime because its promise to maintain a sound currency with a floating rate regime would not be credible. This has been a persistent issue in Latin America. In other cases, the driving force is as much political as economic. The decision to create the euro was strongly influenced by the desire to enhance political union within the European Community, whose members had been at war with each other twice in the 20th century.

As of April 2008, the International Monetary Fund (IMF) classified exchange rate regimes into the eight categories shown in Exhibit 8.

Exhibit 8 Exchange Rate Regimes for Selected Economies¹⁵ As of 30 April 2008

Type of Regime	Currency Anchor		
	USD	EUR	Basket/None
No separate legal tender			
Dollarized	Ecuador, El Salvador, Panama	Montenegro, San Marino	
Monetary union		EMU: Austria, Belgium, Cyprus, Finland, France, Germany, Greece, Ireland, Italy, Luxembourg, Malta, Netherlands, Portugal, Slovenia, Spain	
Currency board	Antigua, Hong Kong	Bosnia and Herzegovina, Bulgaria	
Fixed parity	Argentina, Belarus, Lebanon, Saudi Arabia, Venezuela, Vietnam	Croatia, Denmark	Kuwait, Libya, Russia
Target zone		Slovak Republic	Syria
Crawling peg	Bolivia, China, Iraq		Iran
Crawling band	Costa Rica		Azerbaijan

¹⁵ The classifications are described in International Monetary Fund (2006). In some cases, the labels used by the IMF do not clearly distinguish among the regimes. Hence, the names applied here to the regimes differ somewhat from the IMF's original taxonomy.

Exhibit 8 (Continued)

Type of Regime	Currency Anchor		
	USD	EUR	Basket/None
Managed float	Cambodia, Liberia, Ukraine		Algeria, Colombia, Egypt, India, Indonesia, Malaysia, Peru, Singapore, Thailand
Independent float			Australia, Canada, Chile, Hungary, Iceland, Israel, South Korea, Mexico, New Zealand, Norway, Philippines, Poland, South Africa, Sweden, Turkey, United Kingdom, Japan, Switzerland, United States

It should be noted that global financial markets are too complex and diverse to be fully captured by this (or any other) classification system. A government's control over the domestic currency's exchange rate will depend on many factors; for example, the degree of capital controls used to prevent the free flow of funds in and out of the economy. Also, even under an "independent float" regime monetary authorities will occasionally intervene in foreign exchange markets in order to influence the value of their domestic currency. Additionally, the specifics of exchange rate policy implementation are subject to change.

This means that the classifications in Exhibit 8 are somewhat arbitrary and subject to interpretation, as well as change, over time. The important point to be drawn from this discussion is that the prices and flows in foreign exchange markets will, to varying degrees, reflect the legal and regulatory framework imposed by governments, not just "pure" market forces. Governments have a variety of motives and tools for attempting to manage exchange rates. The taxonomy in Exhibit 8 can be used to help understand the main distinctions among currency regimes and the rationales for adopting them, but the specific definitions should not be interpreted too rigidly. Instead, the focus should be on the diversity of foreign exchange markets globally as well as the implications of these various currency regimes for market pricing.

4.3.1 Arrangements with No Separate Legal Tender

The IMF identifies two types of arrangements in which a country does not have its own legal tender. In the first, known as *dollarization*, the country uses the currency of another nation as its medium of exchange and unit of account. In the second, the country participates in a monetary union whose members share the same legal tender. In either case, the country gives up the ability to conduct its own monetary policy.

In principle, a country could adopt any currency as its medium of exchange and unit of account, but the main reserve currency, the US dollar, is an obvious choice—hence the name dollarization. Many countries are dollarized: East Timor, El Salvador, Ecuador, and Panama, for example. By adopting another country's currency as legal tender, a dollarized country inherits that country's currency credibility, but not its credit-worthiness. For example, although local banks may borrow, lend, and accept deposits in US dollars, they are not members of the US Federal Reserve System nor are they backed by deposit insurance from the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation. Thus, interest rates on US dollars in a dollarized economy need not be, and generally are not, the same as on dollar deposits in the United States.

Dollarization imposes fiscal discipline by eliminating the possibility that the central bank will be induced to monetize government debt (i.e., to persistently purchase government debt with newly created local currency). For countries with a history of fiscal excess or lack of monetary discipline, dollarizing the economy can facilitate growth of international trade and capital flows if it creates an expectation of economic and financial stability. In the process, however, it removes another potential source of stabilization—domestic monetary policy.

The European Economic and Monetary Union (EMU) is the most prominent example of the second type of arrangement lacking separate legal tender. Each EMU member uses the euro as its currency. Although member countries cannot have their own monetary policies, they jointly determine monetary policy through their representation at the European Central Bank (ECB). As with dollarization, a monetary union confers currency credibility on members with a history of fiscal excess and/or a lack of monetary discipline. However, as shown by the 2010 EMU sovereign debt crisis, monetary union alone cannot confer credit-worthiness.

4.3.2 Currency Board System

The IMF defines a *currency board system* (CBS) as:

A monetary regime based on an explicit legislative commitment to exchange domestic currency for a specified foreign currency at a fixed exchange rate, combined with restrictions on the issuing authority to ensure fulfillment of its legal obligation. This implies that domestic currency will be issued only against foreign exchange and it remains fully backed by foreign assets....¹⁶

Hong Kong is the leading example of a long-standing (since 1983) currency board. US dollar reserves are held to cover, at the fixed parity, the entire *monetary base*—essentially bank reserves plus all HKD notes and coins in circulation.¹⁷ Note that HKD-denominated bank deposits are not fully collateralized by US dollar reserves; to do so would mean that banks could not lend against their deposits. The Hong Kong Monetary Authority (HKMA) does not function as a traditional central bank under this system because the obligation to maintain 100 percent foreign currency reserves against the monetary base prevents it from acting as a lender-of-last-resort for troubled financial institutions. However, it can provide short-term liquidity by lending against foreign currency collateral.

A CBS works much like the classical gold standard in that expansion and contraction of the monetary base are directly linked to trade and capital flows. As with the gold standard, a CBS works best if domestic prices and wages are very flexible, non-traded sectors of the domestic economy are relatively small, and the global supply of the reserve asset grows at a slow, steady rate consistent with long-run real growth with stable prices. The first two of these conditions are satisfied in Hong Kong. Until and unless Hong Kong selects a new reserve asset, however, the third condition depends on US monetary policy.

In practice, the HKD exhibits modest fluctuations around the official parity of HKD/USD = 7.80 because the HKMA buys (sells) USD at a pre-announced level slightly below (above) the parity. Persistent flows on one side of this convertibility zone or the other result in interest rate adjustments rather than exchange rate adjustments. Inside the zone, however, the exchange rate is determined by the market and the HKMA is free to conduct limited monetary operations aimed at dampening transitory interest rate movements.

¹⁶ International Monetary Fund (2006).

¹⁷ For a description of Hong Kong's currency board system, see Hong Kong Monetary Authority (2005).

One of the advantages of a CBS as opposed to dollarization is that the monetary authority can earn a profit by paying little or no interest on its liability—the monetary base—and can earn a market rate on its asset—the foreign currency reserves. This profit is called *seigniorage*.¹⁸ Under dollarization, the seigniorage goes to the monetary authority whose currency is used.

4.3.3 Fixed Parity

A simple fixed-rate system differs from a CBS in two important respects. First, there is no legislative commitment to maintaining the specified parity. Thus, market participants know that the country may choose to adjust or abandon the parity rather than endure other, potentially more painful, adjustments. Second, the target level of foreign exchange reserves is discretionary; it bears no particular relationship to domestic monetary aggregates. Thus, although monetary independence is ultimately limited as long as the exchange peg is maintained, the central bank can carry out traditional functions, such as serving as lender of last resort.

In the conventional fixed-rate system, the exchange rate may be pegged to a single currency—for example, the US dollar—or to a basket index of the currencies of major trading partners. There is a band of up to ± 1 percent around the parity level within which private flows are allowed to determine the exchange rate. The monetary authority stands ready to spend its foreign currency reserves, or buy foreign currency, in order to maintain the rate within these bands.

The credibility of the fixed parity depends on the country's willingness and ability to offset imbalances in private sector demand for its currency. Both excess and deficient private demand for the currency can exert pressure to adjust or abandon the parity. Excess private demand for the domestic currency implies a rapidly growing stock of foreign exchange reserves, expansion of the domestic money supply, and potentially accelerating inflation. Deficient demand for the currency depletes foreign exchange reserves and exerts deflationary pressure on the economy. If market participants believe the foreign exchange reserves are insufficient to sustain the parity, then that belief may be self-fulfilling because the resulting speculative attack will drain reserves and may force an immediate devaluation. Thus, the level of reserves required to maintain credibility is a key issue for a simple fixed exchange rate regime.

4.3.4 Target Zone

A target zone regime has a fixed parity with fixed horizontal intervention bands that are somewhat wider—up to ± 2 percent around the parity—than in the simple fixed parity regime. The wider bands provide the monetary authority with greater scope for discretionary policy.

4.3.5 Active and Passive Crawling Pegs

Crawling pegs for the exchange rate—usually against a single currency, such as the US dollar—were common in the 1980s in Latin America, particularly Brazil, during the high inflation periods. To prevent a run on the US dollar reserves, the exchange rate was adjusted frequently (weekly or daily) to keep pace with the inflation rate. Such a system was called a passive crawl. An adaptation used in Argentina, Chile, and Uruguay was the active crawl: The exchange rate was pre-announced for the coming weeks with changes taking place in small steps. The aim of the active crawl was to

¹⁸ More generally, seigniorage is the profit earned when the value of money issued exceeds the cost of producing it. For physical currency, seigniorage arises when a coin is minted for a fraction of its face value and then issued (sold) at its face value.

manipulate expectations of inflation. Because the domestic prices of many goods were directly tied to import prices, announced changes in the exchange rate would effectively signal future changes in the inflation rate of these goods.

4.3.6 *Fixed Parity with Crawling Bands*

A country can also have a fixed central parity with crawling bands. Initially, a country may fix its rates to a foreign currency to anchor expectations about future inflation but then gradually permit more and more flexibility in the form of a pre-announced widening band around the central parity. Such a system has the desirable property of allowing a gradual exit strategy from the fixed parity. A country might want to introduce greater flexibility and greater scope for monetary policy, but it may not yet have the credibility or financial infrastructure for full flexibility. So it maintains a fixed parity with slowly widening bands.

4.3.7 *Managed Float*

A country may simply follow an exchange rate policy based on either internal or external policy targets—intervening or not to achieve trade balance, price stability, or employment objectives. Such a policy, often called *dirty floating*, invites trading partners to respond likewise with their exchange rate policy and potentially decreases stability in foreign exchange markets as a whole. The exchange rate target, in terms of either a level or a rate of change, is typically not explicit.

4.3.8 *Independently Floating Rates*

In this case, the exchange rate is left to market determination and the monetary authority is able to exercise independent monetary policy aimed at achieving such objectives as price stability and full employment. The central bank also has latitude to act as a lender of last resort to troubled financial institutions, if necessary.

It should be clear from recent experience that the concepts of float, managed float, crawl, and target zone are not hard and fast rules. Central banks do occasionally engage, implicitly or explicitly, in regime switches—even in countries nominally following an independently floating exchange rate regime. For example, when the US dollar appreciated in the mid-1980s with record US trade deficits, then-US Treasury Secretary James Baker engineered the Plaza Accord, in which Japan and Germany engineered an appreciation of their currencies against the US dollar. (The “Plaza Accord” is so named because it was negotiated at the Plaza Hotel in New York City.) This 1985 policy agreement involved a combination of fiscal and monetary policy measures by the countries involved as well as direct intervention in foreign exchange markets. The Plaza Accord was a clear departure from a pure independently floating exchange rate system.

There are more recent examples of government intervention in foreign exchange markets. In September 2000, the European Central Bank, the Federal Reserve Board, the Bank of Japan, the Bank of England, and the Bank of Canada engaged in “concerted” intervention in order to support the value of the euro, a “freely floating” currency which was then under pressure within foreign exchange markets. (This intervention was described as “concerted” because it was pre-arranged and coordinated among the central banks involved.) During 2010, many countries engaged in unilateral intervention to prevent the rapid appreciation of their currencies against the US dollar. Several of these countries also employed various fiscal and regulatory measures (for example, taxes on capital inflows) in order to further affect exchange rate movements.

The important point to draw from this discussion is that exchange rates do not only reflect private sector market forces but will also, to varying degrees, be influenced by the legal and regulatory framework (currency regimes) within which foreign exchange

markets operate. Moreover, they will occasionally be influenced by government policies (fiscal, monetary, and intervention) intended to manage exchange rates. All of these can vary widely among countries and are subject to change with time.

Nonetheless, the most widely traded currencies in foreign exchange markets (the US dollar, yen, euro, UK pound, Swiss franc, and the Canadian and Australian dollars) are typically considered to be free floating, although subject to relatively infrequent intervention.

EXAMPLE 7

Currency Regimes

An investment adviser in Los Angeles, USA, is meeting with a client who wishes to diversify her portfolio by including more international investments. In order to evaluate the suitability of international diversification for the client, the adviser attempts to explain some of the characteristics of foreign exchange markets. The adviser points out that exchange rate regimes affect the performance of domestic economies as well as the amount of foreign exchange risk posed by international investments.

The client and her adviser discuss potential investments in Hong Kong, Panama, and Canada. The adviser notes that the currency regimes of Hong Kong, Panama, and Canada are a currency board, dollarization, and a free float, respectively. The adviser tells his client that these regimes imply different degrees of foreign exchange risk for her portfolio.

The discussion between the investment adviser and his client then turns to potential investments in other markets with different currency regimes. The adviser notes that some markets are subject to fixed parity regimes against the US dollar. The client asks whether a fixed parity regime would imply less foreign currency risk for her portfolio than would a currency board. The adviser replies: "Yes, a fixed parity regime means a constant exchange rate and is more credible than a currency board."

The adviser goes on to explain that in some markets exchange rates are allowed to vary, although with different degrees of foreign exchange market intervention to limit exchange rate volatility. Citing examples, he notes that China has a crawling peg regime with reference to the US dollar, but the average daily percentage changes in the China/US exchange rate are very small compared with the average daily volatility for a freely floating currency. The adviser also indicates that Denmark has a target zone regime with reference to the euro, and South Korea usually follows a freely floating currency regime but sometimes switches to a managed float regime. The currencies of China, Denmark, and South Korea are the yuan renminbi (CNY), krone (DKK), and won (KRW), respectively.

- 1 Based solely on the exchange rate risk the client would face, what is the correct ranking (from most to least risky) of the following investment locations?
 - A Panama, Canada, Hong Kong.
 - B Canada, Hong Kong, Panama.
 - C Hong Kong, Panama, Canada.
- 2 Based solely on their foreign exchange regimes, which investment location is least likely to import inflation or deflation from the United States?
 - A Canada.
 - B Panama.

- C Hong Kong.
- 3 The adviser's statement about fixed parity regimes is incorrect with regard to:
- A credibility.
 - B a constant exchange rate.
 - C both a constant exchange rate and credibility.
- 4 Based on the adviser's categorization of China's currency regime, if the USD is depreciating against the KRW, then it is *most* likely correct that the CNY is:
- A fixed against the KRW.
 - B appreciating against the KRW.
 - C depreciating against the KRW.
- 5 Based on the adviser's categorization of Denmark's currency regime, it would be *most* correct to infer that the:
- A krone is allowed to float against the euro within fixed bands.
 - B Danish central bank will intervene if the exchange rate strays from its target level.
 - C target zone will be adjusted periodically in order to manage inflation expectations.
- 6 Based on the adviser's categorization of South Korea's currency policy, it would be *most* correct to infer that the:
- A Korean central bank is engineering a gradual exit from a fixed-rate regime.
 - B government is attempting to peg the exchange rate within a predefined zone.
 - C won is allowed to float, but with occasional intervention by the Korean central bank.

Solution to 1:

B is correct. The CAD/USD exchange rate is a floating exchange rate, and Canadian investments would therefore carry exchange rate risk for a US-based investor. Although Hong Kong follows a currency board system, the HKD/USD exchange rate nonetheless does display some variation, albeit much less than in a floating exchange rate regime. In contrast, Panama has a dollarized economy (i.e., it uses the US dollar as the domestic currency); therefore, there is no foreign exchange risk for a US investor.

Solution to 2:

A is correct. The Canadian dollar floats independently against the US dollar leaving the Bank of Canada able to adjust monetary policy to maintain price stability. Neither Hong Kong (currency board) nor Panama (dollarized) can exercise independent monetary policy to buffer its economy from the inflationary/deflationary consequences of US monetary policy.

Solution to 3:

C is correct. A fixed exchange rate regime does not mean that the exchange rate is rigidly fixed at a constant level. In practice, both a fixed-rate regime and a currency board allow the exchange rate to vary within a band around the stated parity level. Thus, both regimes involve at least a modest amount of exchange rate risk. The fixed parity regime exposes the investor to the additional

risk that the parity may not be maintained. In a fixed parity regime, the level of foreign currency reserves is discretionary and typically only a small fraction of the domestic money supply. With no legal obligation to maintain the parity, the monetary authority may adjust the parity (devalue or revalue its currency) or allow its currency to float if doing so is deemed to be less painful than other adjustment mechanisms (e.g., fiscal restraint). In contrast, a currency board entails a legal commitment to maintain the parity and to fully back the domestic currency with reserve currency assets. Hence, there is little risk that the parity will be abandoned.

Solution to 4:

C is correct. If the CNY is subject to a crawling peg with very small daily adjustments versus the USD and the USD is depreciating against the KRW, then the CNY would *most* likely be depreciating against the KRW as well. In fact, this was an important issue in foreign exchange markets through the latter part of 2010: As the USD depreciated against most Asian currencies (and less so against the CNY), many Asian countries felt that they were losing their competitive export advantage because the CNY was so closely tied to the USD. This led many Asian countries to intervene in FX markets against the strength of their domestic currencies in order not to lose an export pricing advantage against China.

Solution to 5:

A is correct. A target zone means that the exchange rate between the euro and Danish krone (DKK) will be allowed to vary within a fixed band (as of 2010, the target zone for the DKK/EUR is a ± 2.5 percent band). This does not mean that the DKK/EUR rate is fixed at a certain level (B is incorrect) or that the target zone will vary in order to manage inflation expectations (this is a description of a crawling peg, which makes C incorrect).

Solution to 6:

C is correct. Similar to the monetary authorities responsible for many of the world's major currencies, the South Korean policy typically involves letting market forces determine the exchange rate (an independent floating rate regime). But this approach does not mean that market forces are the sole determinant of the won exchange rate. As with most governments, the South Korean policy is to intervene in foreign exchange markets when movements in the exchange rate are viewed as undesirable (a managed float). For example, during the later part of 2010, South Korea and many other countries intervened in foreign exchange markets to moderate the appreciation of their currencies against the US dollar. Answer A describes a fixed parity with a crawling bands regime, and B describes a target zone regime: Both answers are incorrect.

EXCHANGE RATES, INTERNATIONAL TRADE, AND CAPITAL FLOWS

5

Just as a family that spends more than it earns must borrow or sell assets to finance the excess, a country that imports more goods and services than it exports must borrow from foreigners or sell assets to foreigners to finance the trade deficit. Conversely, a country that exports more goods and services than it imports must invest the excess either by lending to foreigners or by buying assets from foreigners. Thus, a trade deficit

(surplus) must be exactly matched by an offsetting *capital account* surplus (deficit).¹⁹ This implies that any factor that affects the trade balance must have an equal and opposite impact on the capital account, and vice versa. To put this somewhat differently, the *impact of exchange rates and other factors on the trade balance must be mirrored by their impact on capital flows*: They cannot affect one without affecting the other.

Using a fundamental identity from macroeconomics, the relationship between the trade balance and expenditure/saving decisions can be expressed as:²⁰

$$X - M = (S - I) + (T - G)$$

where X represents exports, M is imports, S is private savings, I is investment in plant and equipment, T is taxes net of transfers, and G is government expenditure. From this relationship, we can see that a trade surplus ($X > M$) must be reflected in a fiscal surplus ($T > G$), an excess of private saving over investment ($S > I$), or both. Because a fiscal surplus can be viewed as government saving, we can summarize this relationship more simply by saying that a trade surplus means the country saves more than enough to fund its investment (I) in plant and equipment. The excess saving is used to accumulate financial claims on the rest of the world. Conversely, a trade deficit means the country does not save enough to fund its investment spending (I) and must reduce its net financial claims on the rest of the world.

Although this identity provides a key link between real expenditure/saving decisions and the aggregate flow of financial assets into or out of a country, it does not tell us what type of financial assets will be exchanged or in what currency they will be denominated. All that can be said is that asset prices and exchange rates at home and abroad must adjust so that all financial assets are willingly held by investors.

If investors anticipate a significant change in an exchange rate, they will try to sell the currency that is expected to depreciate and buy the currency that is expected to appreciate. This implies an incipient (i.e., potential) flow of capital from one country to the other, which must either be accompanied by a simultaneous shift in the trade balance or be discouraged by changes in asset prices and exchange rates. Because expenditure/saving decisions and prices of goods change much more slowly than financial investment decisions and asset prices, most of the adjustment usually occurs within the financial markets. That is, *asset prices and exchange rates adjust so that the potential flow of financial capital is mitigated and actual capital flows remain consistent with trade flows*. In a fixed exchange rate regime, the central bank offsets the private capital flows in the process of maintaining the exchange rate peg and the adjustment occurs in other asset prices, typically interest rates, until and unless the central bank is forced to allow the exchange rate to adjust.²¹ In a floating exchange rate regime, the main adjustment is often a rapid change in the exchange rate that dampens an investor's conviction that further movement will be forthcoming. Thus, *capital flows—potential and actual—are the primary determinant of exchange rate movements in the short-to-intermediate term*. Trade flows become increasingly important in the longer term as expenditure/saving decisions and the prices of goods and services adjust.

¹⁹ In official balance of payments accounts, investment/financing flows are separated into two categories: the capital account and the financial account. Because the technical distinction is immaterial for present purposes, we will simply refer to the balance of investment/financing flows as the capital account. Similarly, we ignore the technical distinction between the trade balance and the *current account* balance. The details of balance of payments accounting are presented in the Level I curriculum reading on International Trade and Capital Flows.

²⁰ This relationship is developed in the Level I curriculum reading on Aggregate Output, Prices, and Economic Growth.

²¹ A classic example of this occurred in September 1992, when the United Kingdom was forced to withdraw from the European Exchange Rate Mechanism, the forerunner of the current European Economic and Monetary Union (EMU).

With the correspondence between the trade balance and capital flows firmly established, we can now examine the impact of exchange rate changes on the trade balance from two perspectives. The first approach focuses on the effect of changing the relative price of domestic and foreign goods. This approach, which is called the *elasticities approach*, highlights changes in the composition of spending. The second approach, called the *absorption approach*, focuses on the impact of exchange rates on aggregate expenditure/saving decisions.

5.1 Exchange Rates and the Trade Balance: The Elasticities Approach

The effectiveness of devaluation (in a fixed system) or depreciation (in a flexible system) of the currency for reducing a trade deficit depends on well-behaved demand and supply curves for goods and services. The condition that guarantees that devaluations improve the trade balance is called the Marshall–Lerner condition. The usual statement of this condition assumes that trade is initially balanced. We will present a generalization of the condition that allows for an initial trade imbalance and hence is more useful in addressing whether exchange rate movements will correct such imbalances.

Recall from microeconomics that the price elasticity of demand is given by:²²

$$\varepsilon = -\frac{\% \text{ change in quantity}}{\% \text{ change in price}} = -\frac{\% \Delta Q}{\% \Delta P}$$

For example, a demand elasticity of 0.6 means that quantity demanded increases by 6 percent if price declines by 10 percent. Note that the elasticity of demand is defined so that it is a positive number. Because expenditure (R) equals price multiplied by quantity ($P \times Q$), by re-arranging the above expression to solve and substitute for $\% \Delta Q$, we can see that:

$$\% \text{ change in expenditure} = \% \Delta R = \% \Delta P + \% \Delta Q = (1 - \varepsilon)\% \Delta P$$

From this we can see that an increase in price decreases expenditure if $\varepsilon > 1$, but it increases expenditure if $\varepsilon < 1$. By convention, if $\varepsilon > 1$ demand is described as being “elastic,” while if $\varepsilon < 1$ demand is described as “inelastic.”

The basic idea behind the Marshall–Lerner condition is that demand for imports and exports must be sufficiently price-sensitive so that increasing the relative price of imports increases the difference between export receipts and import expenditures. The generalized Marshall–Lerner condition is:

$$\omega_X \varepsilon_X + \omega_M (\varepsilon_M - 1) > 0$$

where ω_X and ω_M are the shares of exports and imports, respectively, in total trade (i.e., imports + exports) and ε_X and ε_M are the price elasticities of foreign demand for domestic country exports and domestic country demand for imports, respectively. Note that $(\omega_X + \omega_M) = 1$ and that an initial trade deficit implies $\omega_M > \omega_X$. If this condition is satisfied, a devaluation/depreciation of the domestic currency will move the trade balance toward surplus.

The first term in the generalized Marshall–Lerner condition reflects the change in export receipts assuming the domestic currency price of exports is unchanged (i.e., foreigners are billed in the domestic currency). It will be positive as long as export demand is not totally insensitive to price. Depreciation of the domestic currency makes exports cheaper in foreign currency and induces an increase in the quantity demanded by foreigners. This is reflected by the elasticity ε_X . There is no direct price impact on domestic currency export revenue because the domestic currency price is assumed

²² See the Level I curriculum reading Topics in Demand and Supply Analysis.

to be unchanged. Hence, the percentage change in export revenue corresponding to a 1 percent depreciation of the currency is simply ε_X . The second term in the generalized Marshall–Lerner condition reflects the impact on import expenditures. Assuming that imports are billed in a foreign currency, the domestic currency price of imports rises as the domestic currency depreciates. The direct price effect increases import expenditures, while the induced reduction in the quantity of imports decreases import expenditures. The net effect depends on the elasticity of import demand, ε_M . Import expenditure declines only if import demand is elastic (i.e., $\varepsilon_M > 1$).

Examination of the generalized Marshall–Lerner condition indicates that more elastic demand—for either imports or exports—makes it more likely that the trade balance will improve. Indeed, if the demand for imports is elastic, $\varepsilon_M > 1$, then the trade balance will definitely improve. It should also be clear that the elasticity of import demand becomes increasingly important, and the export elasticity less important, as the initial trade deficit gets larger—that is, as ω_M increases. In the special case of initially balanced trade, $\omega_X = \omega_M$, the condition reduces to $(\varepsilon_X + \varepsilon_M > 1)$, which is the classic Marshall–Lerner condition.

Exhibit 9 illustrates the impact of depreciation on the trade balance. For ease of reference, we assume the domestic currency is the euro. A 10 percent depreciation of the euro makes imports 10 percent more expensive in euro terms. With an import elasticity of 0.65, this induces a 6.5 percent reduction in the quantity of imports. But import expenditures increase by 3.5 percent [$10\% \times (1 - 0.65)$] or €21,000,000 because the drop in quantity is not sufficient to offset the increase in price. On the export side, the euro price of exports does not change but the foreign currency price of exports declines by 10 percent. This induces a 7.5 percent increase in the quantity of exports given an elasticity of 0.75. The euro value of exports therefore increases by 7.5 percent or €30,000,000. The net effect is a €9,000,000 improvement in the trade balance and a €51,000,000 increase in total trade.

Exhibit 9 Marshall–Lerner Condition with a 10 Percent Depreciation of Domestic Currency (€)

Assumptions	Exports	Imports
Demand elasticity	0.75	0.65
Percent price change		
In domestic currency (€)	0	10%
In foreign currency	–10%	0
Results	Initial value(€)	Change(€)
Exports	400,000,000	30,000,000
Imports	600,000,000	21,000,000
Trade balance	–200,000,000	9,000,000
Total trade	1,000,000,000	51,000,000

The balance of trade improves after the depreciation of the euro because the Marshall–Lerner condition is satisfied: The increase in the euro-value of exports exceeds the increase in the value of imports. Based on the data in Exhibit 9, $\omega_M = 0.6$ (i.e., $600,000,000/1,000,000,000$) and $\omega_X = 0.4$ (i.e., $1 - 0.6$). Thus, the Marshall–Lerner equation is greater than zero:

$$\omega_X \varepsilon_X + \omega_M (\varepsilon_M - 1) = 0.4 \times 0.75 + 0.6(0.65 - 1) = 0.09$$

The elasticity of demand for any good or service depends on at least four factors: 1) the existence or absence of close substitutes, 2) the structure of the market for that product (e.g., a monopoly or perfect competition), 3) its share in people's budgets, and 4) the nature of the product and its role in the economy. Demand for a product with close substitutes is highly price-sensitive, whereas demand for a unique product tends to be much less elastic. The demand curve faced by any producer also depends on the nature and level of competition among producers of that product. If there are many sellers of identical products, then each producer faces highly elastic demand for its output even if global demand for that product is insensitive to price. Producers who are able to differentiate their product, perhaps through branding, face somewhat less elastic demand. In markets with only a few sellers, each producer faces demand that is highly dependent upon strategic maneuvers by its competitors. If competitors match price decreases but not increases, then the producer loses market share by raising his price but fails to gain market share by reducing his price.

Price changes have two effects on demand. The *substitution effect* refers to changes in the composition of spending across different products. As a product gets more expensive (cheaper) relative to other products, customers demand less (more) of it. This is what people usually think of first when they consider the effect of a price change. The *income effect* refers to the fact that price changes affect real purchasing power. When the price of a good rises (falls), people's purchasing power is reduced (increased). The strength of this effect depends on the product's share in people's budgets—the more important the product, the stronger the income effect. The income effect also depends on the nature of the product. The demand for luxuries is highly sensitive to income, whereas the demand for necessities is fairly insensitive to income.

To illustrate the differential impact of the two drivers of the income effect—share of expenditure and nature of the product—consider the demand for food. Clearly, food is a necessity. Based on this fact, we would expect demand to be inelastic. However, the share of expenditures that go to food varies across countries. In poor countries, food represents a much larger share of expenditure than in rich countries. Hence, all else being equal, we would expect the demand for food to be more price elastic in poorer countries. Of course, even in rich countries, the composition of spending on food may change considerably even if overall demand for food does not.

A significant portion of international trade occurs in intermediate products—products that are used as inputs into the production of other goods. Demand for these products derives from supply and demand decisions for the final products. However, the same basic considerations apply for intermediate products as for final products. Are there close substitutes for it in the production process? If not, its demand will tend to be less elastic than would be the case if there were readily available substitutes. How important is it to the overall economy? All else equal, the larger its share in overall production costs for the economy, the bigger its impact on production decisions and therefore the more price-elastic its derived demand. Oil is a classic example of a widely used input with few readily adoptable substitutes, at least in the short run. Lack of substitutes tends to make oil demand price-inelastic. However, it is so important in modern industrial economies that changes in its price can induce expansion or contraction of aggregate output. This makes short-run oil demand somewhat more elastic—at least for significant price changes. In the longer run, the feasibility of substitution among energy sources enhances the price sensitivity of oil demand.

Exhibit 10 shows estimates of demand elasticity for various products. The estimates range from essentially zero for pediatric doctor visits—a necessity for which there is virtually no substitute—to 3.8 for Coca-Cola, a specific brand for which there are many substitutes. Note that the elasticity of demand for soft drinks in general is much lower than for Coca-Cola, roughly 0.9. The elasticity of demand for rice in Japan versus in Bangladesh clearly illustrates the impact of expenditure share on price sensitivity. Similarly, although air travel for pleasure (a luxury) is quite price elastic, demand for

first-class air travel is fairly insensitive to price. This is most likely because many first-class passengers are either traveling on business (presumably deemed to have high value added) or wealthy enough that the cost of first-class airfare is inconsequential.

Exhibit 10 Estimates of Demand Elasticities

Product Description	Elasticity	Rationale/Comment
Travel and transport		
Airline travel (US)		
For pleasure	1.5	Luxury
1st class	0.3	Business and wealthy travelers
Car fuel (US, long term)	0.6	
Bus travel (US)	0.2	
Ford compact car	2.8	Large purchase; specific brand
Food and beverages		
Rice		Necessity; staple food
Bangladesh	0.8	Poor country
Japan	0.3	Wealthy country
Soft drinks		
All	0.8–1.0	
Coca-Cola	3.8	Specific brand; competitive market
Medical care (US)		
Health insurance	0.3	
Pediatric doctor visit	0.0–0.1	No good substitute
Materials and energy		
		Necessary inputs
Steel	0.2–0.3	
Oil	0.4	

Sources: Various studies cited in Wikipedia, "Price Elasticity of Demand," as of December 2010 (http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Price_elasticity_of_demand).

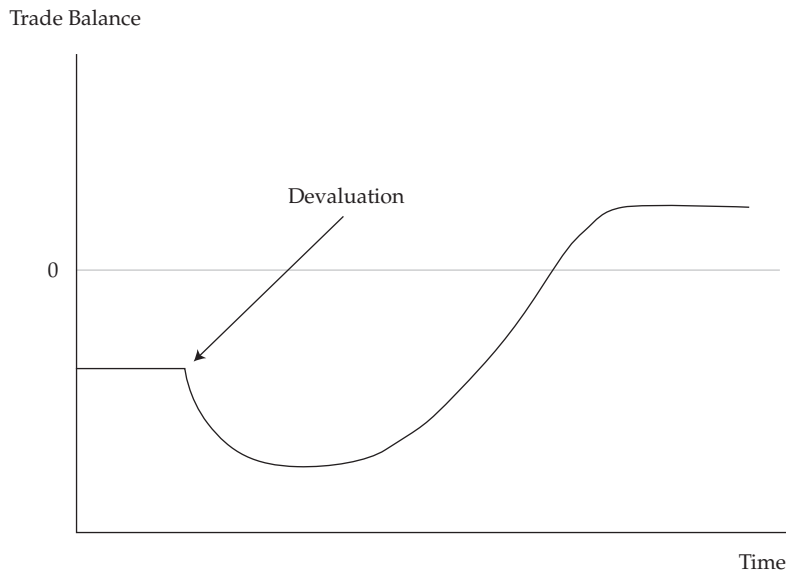
In practice, most countries import and export a variety of products. Hence, the overall price elasticities of their imports and exports reflect a composite of the products they trade. In conjunction with the Marshall–Lerner condition, our review of the factors that determine price elasticities suggests that exchange rate changes will be a more-effective mechanism for trade balance adjustment if a country imports and exports the following:

- Goods for which there are good substitutes
- Goods that trade in competitive markets
- Luxury goods, rather than necessities
- Goods that represent a large portion of consumer expenditures or a large portion of input costs for final producers

Note that each of these conditions is associated with higher demand elasticities (ϵ_X and ϵ_M).

Even when the Marshall–Lerner condition is satisfied, it is still possible that devaluation (in a fixed parity regime) or depreciation (in a floating regime) of the currency will initially make the trade balance worse before making it better. This effect, called the *J-curve effect*, is illustrated in Exhibit 11.

Exhibit 11 Trade Balance Dynamics: The *J-Curve*



In the very short run, the *J-curve* reflects the order delivery lags that take place in import and export transactions. Imagine a clothing importer in Washington. Orders are placed in January for French spring fashions. Market forces cause the dollar to depreciate in February, but contracts were already signed for payment in euros. When the fashions arrive in March, more dollars have to go out to pay for the order signed in euros. Thus, the trade balance gets worse. However, after the depreciation, the clothing importer has to put in new orders for summer fashions. As a result of the currency depreciation, the French summer fashions are now more expensive, so the clothing store cuts the demand for imported clothes from France. The depreciation eventually improves the trade balance, even though it initially made it worse.

A *J-curve* pattern may also arise if short-term price elasticities do not satisfy the Marshall–Lerner condition but long-term elasticities do satisfy it. As noted above in the case of oil, significant changes in spending patterns often take time. Thus, the trade balance may worsen initially and then gradually improve following a depreciation of the currency as firms and consumers adapt.

5.2 Exchange Rates and the Trade Balance: The Absorption Approach

The elasticities approach focuses on the expenditure-switching effect of changing the relative prices of imports and exports. It is essentially a microeconomic view of the relationship between exchange rates and the trade balance. The absorption approach adopts an explicitly macroeconomic view of this relationship.

Recall from above that the trade balance is equal to the country's saving, including the government fiscal balance, minus its investment in new plants and equipment. Equivalently, it is equal to the difference between income (GDP) and domestic expenditure, or absorption. Thus, in order to move the trade balance toward surplus,

a devaluation/depreciation of the domestic currency must increase income relative to expenditure or, equivalently, increase national saving relative to investment in physical capital.

If there is excess capacity in the economy, then by switching demand toward domestically produced goods and services, depreciation of the currency can increase output/income. Because some of the additional income will be saved, income rises relative to expenditure and the trade balance improves. If the economy is at full employment, however, the trade balance cannot improve unless domestic expenditure declines. If expenditure does not decline, then the depreciation will put upward pressure on domestic prices until the stimulative effect of the exchange rate change is negated by the higher price level and the trade balance reverts to its original level.

How might depreciation of the currency reduce domestic expenditure relative to income? The main mechanism is a wealth effect. A weaker currency reduces the purchasing power of domestic-currency-denominated assets (including the present value of current and future earned income). Households respond by reducing expenditure and increasing saving in order to rebuild their wealth. Of course, as real wealth is rebuilt, the effect on saving is likely to be reversed—resulting in only a temporary improvement in the trade balance. Thus, in the absence of excess capacity in the economy, currency depreciation is likely to provide only a temporary solution for a chronic trade imbalance. Lasting correction of the imbalance requires more fundamental changes in expenditure/saving behavior (e.g., a policy shift that improves the fiscal balance or an increase in saving relative to capital investment induced by an increase in real interest rates).

The absorption approach also reminds us that currency depreciation cannot improve the trade balance unless it also induces a corresponding change in the capital account. Not only must domestic saving increase, but that saving must also be willingly channeled into buying financial assets from foreigners. All else equal, this implies that foreign and domestic asset prices must change such that foreign assets become relatively more attractive and domestic assets relatively less attractive to both foreign and domestic investors.

EXAMPLE 8

Exchange Rates and the Trade Balance

An analyst at a foreign exchange dealing bank is examining the exchange rate for the Australian dollar (AUD), which is a freely floating currency. Currently, Australia is running a trade surplus with the rest of the world, primarily reflecting strong demand for Australian resource exports generated by rapid growth in emerging market economies in the Western Pacific region. In turn, Australia imports food and energy from a variety of foreign countries that compete with each other as well as with Australian producers of these products. The analyst uses data in the following table to estimate the effect of changes in the AUD exchange rate on Australia's balance of trade.

	Volume (AUD billions)	Demand Elasticity
Exports	200	0.3
Imports	180	0.6

The analyst's research report on this topic notes that the mix of products that Australia imports and exports seems to be changing and that this will affect the relation between the exchange rates and the trade surplus. The proportion of Australian exports accounted for by fine wines is increasing. These are

considered a luxury good and must compete with increased wine exports from comparable-producing regions (such as Chile and New Zealand). At the same time, rising income levels in Australia are allowing the country to increase the proportion of its imports accounted for by luxury goods, and these represent a rising proportion of consumer expenditures. The analyst's report states: "Given the changing export mix, an appreciation of the currency will be more likely to reduce Australia's trade surplus. In contrast, the changing import mix will have the opposite effect."

- 1 Given the data in the table, an appreciation in the AUD will:
 - A cause the trade balance to increase.
 - B cause the trade balance to decrease.
 - C have no effect on the trade balance.
- 2 All else equal, an appreciation in the AUD will be *more* likely to reduce the trade surplus if the demand:
 - A elasticities for imports and exports increase.
 - B elasticity for exports and the export share in total trade decrease.
 - C elasticity for imports decreases and the import share in total trade increases.
- 3 All else equal, an appreciation in the AUD will be *more* likely to reduce the trade surplus if it leads to an increase in Australian:
 - A tax receipts.
 - B private sector investment.
 - C government budget surpluses.
- 4 The report's statement about the effect of changing import and export mixes is *most* likely:
 - A correct.
 - B incorrect with respect to the import effect.
 - C incorrect with respect to the export effect.
- 5 Suppose the Australian government imposed capital controls that prohibited the flow of financial capital into or out of the country. What impact would this have on the Australian trade balance?
 - A The trade surplus would increase.
 - B The trade balance would go to zero.
 - C The trade balance would not necessarily be affected.
- 6 Suppose the Australian government imposed capital controls that prohibited the flow of financial capital into or out of the country. The impact on the trade balance, if any, would most likely take the form of:
 - A a decrease in private saving.
 - B a decrease in private investment.
 - C an increase in the government fiscal balance.

Solution to 1:

A is correct. As the AUD appreciates, the price of exports to *offshore buyers* goes up and they demand fewer of them; hence, the AUD-denominated revenue from exports decreases. (Although export demand is inelastic, or $\epsilon_X < 1$, recall that the *Australian* price of these exports is assumed not to have changed, so the amount of export revenue received by Australia, in AUD-terms, unambiguously declines as the quantity of exports declines.) Australian expenditure for imports

also declines. Although the price of imports declines as the AUD appreciates, the Australians do not increase their import purchases enough to lead to higher expenditures. This is because import demand is also inelastic ($\epsilon_M < 1$). This effect on import expenditure can be seen from: $\% \Delta R_M = (1 - \epsilon_M) \% \Delta P_M$, where $\% \Delta P_M$ is negative (import prices are declining) and import demand is inelastic (so $(1 - \epsilon_M) > 0$). With both import expenditures and export revenues declining, the net effect on the trade balance comes down to the relative size of the import and export weights (ω_M and ω_X , respectively). In this case, $\omega_X = 0.53$ (i.e., 200/380) and $\omega_M = 0.47$ (i.e., 180/380). Putting this into the Marshall–Lerner equation leads to:

$$\omega_X \epsilon_X + \omega_M (\epsilon_M - 1) = 0.53 \times 0.3 + 0.47(0.6 - 1) = -0.03$$

Because the Marshall–Lerner condition is not satisfied, exchange rate movements do not move the trade balance in the expected direction [i.e., appreciation (depreciation) of the currency does not decrease (increase) the trade balance]. However, note that with different import/export weights and the same elasticities, the Marshall–Lerner condition would be met. In particular, the condition would be met for any value of ω_X greater than $4/7$ (≈ 0.571).

Solution to 2:

A is correct. The basic intuition of the Marshall–Lerner condition is that in order for an exchange rate movement to rebalance trade, the demands for imports and exports must be sufficiently price-sensitive (i.e., they must have sufficiently high elasticities). However, the relative share of imports and exports in total trade must also be considered. The generalized Marshall–Lerner condition requires:

$$\omega_X \epsilon_X + \omega_M (\epsilon_M - 1) > 0$$

An increase in both ϵ_X and ϵ_M will clearly make this expression increase (A is correct). In contrast, a decrease in both ω_X and ϵ_X tends to make the expression smaller (B is incorrect).²³ If ϵ_M decreases and ω_M increases, import demand will respond less to an exchange rate movement and will have a larger role in determining the trade balance (C is incorrect).

Solution to 3:

B is correct. An Australian trade surplus means that Australia is spending less than it earns and is accumulating claims on foreigners. Equivalently, Australian saving, inclusive of both private saving and the government fiscal balance, is more than sufficient to fund Australian private sector investment. The relationship between the trade balance and expenditure/saving decisions is given by:

$$X - M = (S - I) + (T - G) > 0$$

For Australia's trade balance to decline, it must save less (S down), invest more (I up), decrease its fiscal balance ($T - G$ down), or some combination of these. Increasing tax receipts (T up) increases rather than decreases the fiscal balance, so answer A is incorrect. Similarly, answer C, increasing the government budget surplus, is incorrect. Increasing private investment (I up) does decrease the trade balance, so answer B is correct.

Solution to 4:

B is correct. As Australian exports become more dominated by luxury goods that face highly competitive market conditions, the elasticity of export demand (ϵ_X) is likely to be increasing. Increasing export elasticity makes the trade

²³ Because $\omega_M = 1 - \omega_X$ and $\epsilon_M < 1$ in this example, a decrease in ω_X also decreases the second terms, $\omega_M (\epsilon_M - 1)$, in the Marshall–Lerner condition.

surplus more responsive to an AUD appreciation (the increase in ε_X will tend to increase the computed value for the Marshall–Lerner equation). Similarly, as Australian imports become more dominated by luxury goods that are an increasing proportion of household expenditure, import elasticity (ε_M) will most likely increase. This will also tend to increase the computed value for the Marshall–Lerner equation.

Solution to 5:

B is correct. A trade deficit (surplus) must be exactly matched by an offsetting capital account surplus (deficit). Anything that impacts the trade balance must impact the capital account, and vice versa. If capital flows are prohibited, then both the capital account and the trade balance must be zero.

Solution to 6:

A is correct. The trade balance must go to zero. An increase in the fiscal balance implies an increase in the existing trade surplus, so answer C is incorrect. A decrease in private investment will also cause an increase in the trade surplus, so answer B is incorrect. A decrease in private saving will decrease the trade surplus as required, so answer A is correct: A decrease in saving will most likely reflect a decline in national income, especially the profit component, as export demand is choked off by the inability to extend credit to foreigners.

SUMMARY

Foreign exchange markets are crucial for understanding both the functioning of the global economy as well as the performance of investment portfolios. In this reading, we have described the diverse array of FX market participants and have introduced some of the basic concepts necessary to understand the structure and functions of these markets. The reader should be able to understand how exchange rates—both spot and forward—are quoted and be able to calculate cross exchange rates and forward rates. We also have described the array of exchange rate regimes that characterize foreign exchange markets globally and how these regimes determine the flexibility of exchange rates, and hence, the degree of foreign exchange rate risk that international investments are exposed to. Finally, we have discussed how movements in exchange rates affect international trade flows (imports and exports) and capital flows.

The following points, among others, are made in this reading:

- Measured by average daily turnover, the foreign exchange market is by far the largest financial market in the world. It has important effects, either directly or indirectly, on the pricing and flows in all other financial markets.
- There is a wide diversity of global FX market participants that have a wide variety of motives for entering into foreign exchange transactions.
- Individual currencies are usually referred to by standardized three-character codes. These currency codes can also be used to define exchange rates (the price of one currency in terms of another). There are a variety of exchange rate quoting conventions commonly used.
- A direct currency quote takes the domestic currency as the price currency and the foreign currency as the base currency (i.e., $S_{d/f}$). An indirect quote uses the domestic currency as the base currency (i.e., $S_{f/d}$). To convert between direct

and indirect quotes, the inverse (reciprocal) is used. Professional FX markets use standardized conventions for how the exchange rate for specific currency pairs will be quoted.

- Currencies trade in foreign exchange markets based on nominal exchange rates. An increase (decrease) in the exchange rate, quoted in indirect terms, means that the domestic currency is appreciating (depreciating) versus the foreign currency.
- The real exchange rate, defined as the nominal exchange rate multiplied by the ratio of price levels, measures the relative purchasing power of the currencies. An increase in the real exchange rate (R_{df}) implies a reduction in the relative purchasing power of the domestic currency.
- Given exchange rates for two currency pairs—A/B and A/C—we can compute the cross-rate (B/C) between currencies B and C. Depending on how the rates are quoted, this may require inversion of one of the quoted rates.
- Spot exchange rates are for immediate settlement (typically, $T + 2$), while forward exchange rates are for settlement at agreed-upon future dates. Forward rates can be used to manage foreign exchange risk exposures or can be combined with spot transactions to create FX swaps.
- The spot exchange rate, the forward exchange rate, and the domestic and foreign interest rates must jointly satisfy an arbitrage relationship that equates the investment return on two alternative but equivalent investments. Given the spot exchange rate and the foreign and domestic interest rates, the forward exchange rate must take the value that prevents riskless arbitrage.
- Forward rates are typically quoted in terms of forward (or swap) points. The swap points are added to the spot exchange rate in order to calculate the forward rate. Occasionally, forward rates are presented in terms of percentages relative to the spot rate.
- The base currency is said to be trading at a forward premium if the forward rate is above the spot rate (forward points are positive). Conversely, the base currency is said to be trading at a forward discount if the forward rate is below the spot rate (forward points are negative).
- The currency with the higher (lower) interest rate will trade at a forward discount (premium).
- Swap points are proportional to the spot exchange rate and to the interest rate differential and approximately proportional to the term of the forward contract.
- Empirical studies suggest that forward exchange rates may be unbiased predictors of future spot rates, but the margin of error on such forecasts is too large for them to be used in practice as a guide to managing exchange rate exposures. FX markets are too complex and too intertwined with other global financial markets to be adequately characterized by a single variable, such as the interest rate differential.
- Virtually every exchange rate is managed to some degree by central banks. The policy framework that each central bank adopts is called an exchange rate regime. These regimes range from using another country's currency (dollarization), to letting the market determine the exchange rate (independent float). In practice, most regimes fall in between these extremes. The type of exchange rate regime used varies widely among countries and over time.
- An ideal currency regime would have three properties: (1) the exchange rate between any two currencies would be credibly fixed; (2) all currencies would be fully convertible; and (3) each country would be able to undertake fully independent monetary policy in pursuit of domestic objectives, such as growth and

inflation targets. However, these conditions are inconsistent. In particular, a fixed exchange rate and unfettered capital flows severely limit a country's ability to undertake independent monetary policy. Hence, there cannot be an ideal currency regime.

- The IMF identifies the following types of regimes: arrangements with no separate legal tender (dollarization, monetary union), currency board, fixed parity, target zone, crawling peg, crawling band, managed float, and independent float. Most major currencies traded in FX markets are freely floating, albeit subject to occasional central bank intervention.
- A trade surplus (deficit) must be matched by a corresponding deficit (surplus) in the capital account. Any factor that affects the trade balance must have an equal and opposite impact on the capital account, and vice versa.
- A trade surplus reflects an excess of domestic saving (including the government fiscal balance) over investment spending. A trade deficit indicates that the country invests more than it saves and must finance the excess by borrowing from foreigners or selling assets to foreigners.
- The impact of the exchange rate on trade and capital flows can be analyzed from two perspectives. The elasticities approach focuses on the effect of changing the relative price of domestic and foreign goods. This approach highlights changes in the composition of spending. The absorption approach focuses on the impact of exchange rates on aggregate expenditure/saving decisions.
- The elasticities approach leads to the Marshall–Lerner condition, which describes combinations of export and import demand elasticities such that depreciation (appreciation) of the domestic currency will move the trade balance toward surplus (deficit).
- The idea underlying the Marshall–Lerner condition is that demand for imports and exports must be sufficiently price-sensitive so that an increase in the relative price of imports increases the difference between export receipts and import expenditures.
- In order to move the trade balance toward surplus (deficit), a change in the exchange rate must decrease (increase) domestic expenditure (also called absorption) relative to income. Equivalently, it must increase (decrease) domestic saving relative to domestic investment.
- If there is excess capacity in the economy, then currency depreciation can increase output/income by switching demand toward domestically produced goods and services. Because some of the additional income will be saved, income rises relative to expenditure and the trade balance improves.
- If the economy is at full employment, then currency depreciation must reduce domestic expenditure in order to improve the trade balance. The main mechanism is a wealth effect: A weaker currency reduces the purchasing power of domestic-currency-denominated assets (including the present value of current and future earned income), and households respond by reducing expenditure and increasing saving.

REFERENCES

- Bank for International Settlements (BIS). 2010. “Triennial Central Bank Survey of Foreign Exchange and Derivatives Market Activity in 2010” (www.bis.org).
- Friedman, Milton. 1953. “The Monetarist Theory of Flexible Exchange Rate Systems.” In *Essays in Positive Economics*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press.
- Hong Kong Monetary Authority (HKMA). 2005. *HKMA Background Brief No. 1: Hong Kong's Linked Exchange Rate System*. 2nd ed. (November): www.info.gov.hk.
- International Monetary Fund (IMF). 2006. “De Facto Classification of Exchange Rate Regimes and Monetary Policy Framework” (www.imf.org).
- International Monetary Fund (IMF). 2010. “Currency Composition of Official Foreign Exchange Reserves (COFER)” report (www.imf.org).

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

- 1 An exchange rate:
 - A is most commonly quoted in real terms.
 - B is the price of one currency in terms of another.
 - C between two currencies ensures they are fully convertible.
- 2 A decrease in the real exchange rate (quoted in terms of domestic currency per unit of foreign currency) is *most likely* to be associated with an increase in which of the following?
 - A Foreign price level.
 - B Domestic price level.
 - C Nominal exchange rate.
- 3 In order to minimize the foreign exchange exposure on a euro-denominated receivable due from a German company in 100 days, a British company would *most likely* initiate a:
 - A spot transaction.
 - B forward contract.
 - C real exchange rate contract.
- 4 Which of the following counterparties is *most likely* to be considered a sell-side foreign-exchange market participant?
 - A A large corporation that borrows in foreign currencies.
 - B A sovereign wealth fund that influences cross-border capital flows.
 - C A multinational bank that trades foreign exchange with its diverse client base.
- 5 What will be the effect on a direct exchange rate quote if the domestic currency appreciates?
 - A Increase
 - B Decrease
 - C No change
- 6 An executive from Switzerland checked into a hotel room in Spain and was told by the hotel manager that 1 EUR will buy 1.2983 CHF. From the executive's perspective, an indirect exchange rate quote would be:
 - A 0.7702 EUR per CHF.
 - B 0.7702 CHF per EUR.
 - C 1.2983 EUR per CHF.
- 7 Over the past month, the Swiss Franc (CHF) has depreciated 12 percent against pound sterling (GBP). How much has the pound sterling appreciated against the Swiss Franc?
 - A 12%
 - B Less than 12%
 - C More than 12%
- 8 An exchange rate between two currencies has increased to 1.4500. If the base currency has appreciated by 8% against the price currency, the initial exchange rate between the two currencies was *closest* to:

- A 1.3340.
- B 1.3426.
- C 1.5660.

The following information relates to Questions 9–10

A dealer provides the following quotes:

Ratio	Spot rate
CNY/HKD	0.8422
CNY/ZAR	0.9149
CNY/SEK	1.0218

- 9 The spot ZAR/HKD cross-rate is *closest* to:
- A 0.9205.
 - B 1.0864.
 - C 1.2978.
- 10 Another dealer is quoting the ZAR/SEK cross-rate at 1.1210. The arbitrage profit that can be earned is *closest* to:
- A ZAR 3671 per million SEK traded.
 - B SEK 4200 per million ZAR traded.
 - C ZAR 4200 per million SEK traded.
-
- 11 A BRL/MXN spot rate is listed by a dealer at 0.1378. The 6-month forward rate is 0.14193. The 6-month forward points are *closest* to:
- A -41.3.
 - B +41.3.
 - C +299.7.
- 12 A three-month forward exchange rate in CAD/USD is listed by a dealer at 1.0123. The dealer also quotes 3-month forward points as a percentage at 6.8%. The CAD/USD spot rate is *closest* to:
- A 0.9478.
 - B 1.0550.
 - C 1.0862.
- 13 If the base currency in a forward exchange rate quote is trading at a forward discount, which of the following statements is *most* accurate?
- A The forward points will be positive.
 - B The forward percentage will be negative.
 - C The base currency is expected to appreciate versus the price currency.
- 14 A forward premium indicates:
- A an expected increase in demand for the base currency.
 - B the interest rate is higher in the base currency than in the price currency.
 - C the interest rate is higher in the price currency than in the base currency.

- 15 The JPY/AUD spot exchange rate is 82.42, the JPY interest rate is 0.15%, and the AUD interest rate is 4.95%. If the interest rates are quoted on the basis of a 360-day year, the 90-day forward points in JPY/AUD would be *closest* to:
- A -377.0.
 - B -97.7.
 - C 98.9.
- 16 Which of the following is *not* a condition of an ideal currency regime?
- A Fully convertible currencies.
 - B Fully independent monetary policy.
 - C Independently floating exchange rates.
- 17 In practice, both a fixed parity regime and a target zone regime allow the exchange rate to float within a band around the parity level. The *most likely* rationale for the band is that the band allows the monetary authority to:
- A be less active in the currency market.
 - B earn a spread on its currency transactions.
 - C exercise more discretion in monetary policy.
- 18 A fixed exchange rate regime in which the monetary authority is legally required to hold foreign exchange reserves backing 100% of its domestic currency issuance is best described as:
- A dollarization.
 - B a currency board.
 - C a monetary union.
- 19 A country with a trade deficit will *most likely*:
- A have an offsetting capital account surplus.
 - B save enough to fund its investment spending.
 - C buy assets from foreigners to fund the imbalance.
- 20 A large industrialized country has recently devalued its currency in an attempt to correct a persistent trade deficit. Which of the following domestic industries is *most likely* to benefit from the devaluation?
- A Luxury cars.
 - B Branded prescription drugs.
 - C Restaurants and live entertainment venues.
- 21 A country with a persistent trade surplus is being pressured to let its currency appreciate. Which of the following *best* describes the adjustment that must occur if currency appreciation is to be effective in reducing the trade surplus?
- A Domestic investment must decline relative to saving.
 - B Foreigners must increase investment relative to saving.
 - C Global capital flows must shift toward the domestic market.

SOLUTIONS

- 1 B is correct. The exchange rate is the number of units of the price currency that 1 unit of the base currency will buy. Equivalently, it is the number of units of the price currency required to buy 1 unit of the base currency.
- 2 B is correct. The real exchange rate (quoted in terms of domestic currency per unit of foreign currency) is given by:

$$\text{Real exchange rate}_{(d/f)} = S_{d/f} \times (P_f^d / P_d)$$

An increase in the domestic price level (P_d) *decreases* the real exchange rate because it implies an *increase* in the relative purchasing power of the domestic currency.

- 3 B is correct. The receivable is due in 100 days. To reduce the risk of currency exposure, the British company would initiate a forward contract to sell euros/ buy pounds at an exchange rate agreed to today. The agreed-upon rate is called the forward exchange rate.
- 4 C is correct. The sell side generally consists of large banks that sell foreign exchange and related instruments to buy-side clients. These banks act as market makers, quoting exchange rates at which they will buy (the bid price) or sell (the offer price) the base currency.
- 5 B is correct. In the case of a direct exchange rate, the domestic currency is the price currency (the numerator) and the foreign currency is the base currency (the denominator). If the domestic currency appreciates, then fewer units of the domestic currency are required to buy 1 unit of the foreign currency and the exchange rate (domestic per foreign) declines. For example, if sterling (GBP) appreciates against the euro (EUR), then euro–sterling (GBP/EUR) might decline from 0.8650 to 0.8590.
- 6 A is correct. An indirect quote takes the foreign country as the price currency and the domestic country as the base currency. To get CHF—which is the executive's domestic currency—as the base currency, the quote must be stated as EUR/CHF. Using the hotel manager's information, the indirect exchange rate is $(1/1.2983) = 0.7702$.
- 7 C is correct. The appreciation of sterling against the Swiss franc is simply the inverse of the 12% depreciation of the Swiss franc against Sterling: $[1/(1 - 0.12)] - 1 = (1/0.88) - 1 = 0.1364$, or 13.64%.
- 8 B is correct. The percentage appreciation of the base currency can be calculated by dividing the appreciated exchange rate by the initial exchange rate. In this case, the unknown is the initial exchange rate. The initial exchange is the value of X that satisfies the formula:

$$1.4500/X = 1.08$$

Solving for X leads to $1.45/1.08 = 1.3426$.

- 9 A is correct. To get to the ZAR/HKD cross-rate, it is necessary to take the inverse of the CNY/ZAR spot rate and then multiply by the CNY/HKD exchange rate:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{ZAR/HKD} &= (\text{CNY/ZAR})^{-1} \times (\text{CNY/HKD}) \\ &= (1 / 0.9149) \times 0.8422 = 0.9205 \end{aligned}$$

- 10** C is correct. The ZAR/SEK cross-rate from the original dealer is $(1.0218/0.9149) = 1.1168$, which is lower than the quote from the second dealer. To earn an arbitrage profit, a currency trader would buy SEK (sell ZAR) from the original dealer and sell SEK (buy ZAR) to the second dealer. On 1 million SEK the profit would be

$$\text{SEK } 1,000,000 \times (1.1210 - 1.1168) = \text{ZAR } 4200$$

- 11** B is correct. The number of forward points equals the forward rate minus the spot rate, or $0.14193 - 0.1378 = 0.00413$, multiplied by 10,000: $10,000 \times 0.00413 = 41.3$ points. By convention, forward points are scaled so that ± 1 forward point corresponds to a change of ± 1 in the last decimal place of the spot exchange rate.
- 12** A is correct. Given the forward rate and forward points as a percentage, the unknown in the calculation is the spot rate. The calculation is as follows:

$$\text{Spot rate} \times (1 + \text{Forward points as a percentage}) = \text{Forward rate}$$

$$\text{Spot rate} \times (1 + 0.068) = 1.0123$$

$$\text{Spot} = 1.0123/1.068 = 0.9478$$

- 13** B is correct. The base currency trading at a forward discount means that 1 unit of the base currency costs less for forward delivery than for spot delivery; i.e., the forward exchange rate is less than the spot exchange rate. The forward points, expressed either as an absolute number of points or as a percentage, are negative.
- 14** C is correct. To eliminate arbitrage opportunities, the spot exchange rate (S), the forward exchange rate (F), the interest rate in the base currency (i_b), and the interest rate in the price currency (i_p) must satisfy:

$$\frac{F}{S} = \left(\frac{1 + i_p}{1 + i_b} \right)$$

According to this formula, the base currency will trade at forward premium ($F > S$) if, and only if, the interest rate in the price currency is higher than the interest rate in the base currency ($i_p > i_b$).

- 15** B is correct. The forward exchange rate is given by

$$F_{JPY/AUD} = S_{JPY/AUD} \left(\frac{1 + i_{JPY}\tau}{1 + i_{AUD}\tau} \right) = 82.42 \left(\frac{1 + .0015 \left(\frac{90}{360} \right)}{1 + .0495 \left(\frac{90}{360} \right)} \right)$$

$$= 82.42 \times .98815 = 81.443$$

The forward points are $100 \times (F - S) = 100 \times (81.443 - 82.42) = 100 \times (-0.977) = -97.7$. Note that because the spot exchange rate is quoted with two decimal places, the forward points are scaled by 100.

- 16** C is correct. An ideal currency regime would have credibly fixed exchange rates among all currencies. This would eliminate currency-related uncertainty with respect to the prices of goods and services as well as real and financial assets.
- 17** C is correct. Fixed exchange rates impose severe limitations on the exercise of independent monetary policy. With a rigidly fixed exchange rate, domestic interest rates, monetary aggregates (e.g., money supply), and credit conditions are dictated by the requirement to buy/sell the currency at the rigid parity. Even

a narrow band around the parity level allows the monetary authority to exercise some discretionary control over these conditions. In general, the wider the band, the more independent control the monetary authority can exercise.

- 18** B is correct. With a currency board, the monetary authority is legally required to exchange domestic currency for a specified foreign currency at a fixed exchange rate. It cannot issue domestic currency without receiving foreign currency in exchange, and it must hold that foreign currency as a 100% reserve against the domestic currency issued. Thus, the country's monetary base (bank reserves plus notes and coins in circulation) is fully backed by foreign exchange reserves.
- 19** A is correct. A trade deficit must be exactly matched by an offsetting capital account surplus to fund the deficit. A capital account surplus reflects borrowing from foreigners (an increase in domestic liabilities) and/or selling assets to foreigners (a decrease in domestic assets). A capital account surplus is often referred to as a "capital inflow" because the net effect is foreign investment in the domestic economy.
- 20** A is correct. A devaluation of the domestic currency means domestic producers are cutting the price faced by their foreign customers. The impact on their unit sales and their revenue depends on the elasticity of demand. Expensive luxury goods exhibit high price elasticity. Hence, luxury car producers are likely to experience a sharp increase in sales and revenue due to the devaluation.
- 21** C is correct. The trade surplus cannot decline unless the capital account deficit also declines. Regardless of the mix of assets bought and sold, foreigners must buy more assets from (or sell fewer assets to) domestic issuers/investors.

Glossary

- A priori probability** A probability based on logical analysis rather than on observation or personal judgment.
- Abnormal return** The amount by which a security's actual return differs from its expected return, given the security's risk and the market's return.
- Absolute advantage** A country's ability to produce a good or service at a lower absolute cost than its trading partner.
- Absolute dispersion** The amount of variability present without comparison to any reference point or benchmark.
- Absolute frequency** The number of observations in a given interval (for grouped data).
- Accelerated book build** An offering of securities by an investment bank acting as principal that is accomplished in only one or two days.
- Accelerated methods** Depreciation methods that allocate a relatively large proportion of the cost of an asset to the early years of the asset's useful life.
- Accounting costs** Monetary value of economic resources used in performing an activity. These can be explicit, out-of-pocket, current payments, or an allocation of historical payments (depreciation) for resources. They do not include implicit opportunity costs.
- Accounting profit** Income as reported on the income statement, in accordance with prevailing accounting standards, before the provisions for income tax expense. Also called *income before taxes* or *pretax income*.
- Accounts payable** Amounts that a business owes to its vendors for goods and services that were purchased from them but which have not yet been paid.
- Accounts receivable turnover** Ratio of sales on credit to the average balance in accounts receivable.
- Accrued expenses** Liabilities related to expenses that have been incurred but not yet paid as of the end of an accounting period—an example of an accrued expense is rent that has been incurred but not yet paid, resulting in a liability "rent payable." Also called *accrued liabilities*.
- Accrued interest** Interest earned but not yet paid.
- Acid-test ratio** A stringent measure of liquidity that indicates a company's ability to satisfy current liabilities with its most liquid assets, calculated as (cash + short-term marketable investments + receivables) divided by current liabilities.
- Acquisition method** A method of accounting for a business combination where the acquirer is required to measure each identifiable asset and liability at fair value. This method was the result of a joint project of the IASB and FASB aiming at convergence in standards for the accounting of business combinations.
- Action lag** Delay from policy decisions to implementation.
- Active investment** An approach to investing in which the investor seeks to outperform a given benchmark.
- Active return** The return on a portfolio minus the return on the portfolio's benchmark.
- Active strategy** In reference to short-term cash management, an investment strategy characterized by monitoring and attempting to capitalize on market conditions to optimize the risk and return relationship of short-term investments.
- Activity ratios** Ratios that measure how efficiently a company performs day-to-day tasks, such as the collection of receivables and management of inventory. Also called *asset utilization ratios* or *operating efficiency ratios*.
- Add-on rates** Bank certificates of deposit, repos, and indexes such as Libor and Euribor are quoted on an add-on rate basis (bond equivalent yield basis).
- Addition rule for probabilities** A principle stating that the probability that *A* or *B* occurs (both occur) equals the probability that *A* occurs, plus the probability that *B* occurs, minus the probability that both *A* and *B* occur.
- Agency bonds** See *quasi-government bond*.
- Agency RMBS** In the United States, securities backed by residential mortgage loans and guaranteed by a federal agency or guaranteed by either of the two GSEs (Fannie Mae and Freddie Mac).
- Aggregate demand** The quantity of goods and services that households, businesses, government, and foreign customers want to buy at any given level of prices.
- Aggregate demand curve** Inverse relationship between the price level and real output.
- Aggregate income** The value of all the payments earned by the suppliers of factors used in the production of goods and services.
- Aggregate output** The value of all the goods and services produced in a specified period of time.
- Aggregate supply** The quantity of goods and services producers are willing to supply at any given level of price.
- Aggregate supply curve** The level of domestic output that companies will produce at each price level.
- Aging schedule** A breakdown of accounts into categories of days outstanding.
- All-or-nothing (AON) orders** An order that includes the instruction to trade only if the trade fills the entire quantity (size) specified.
- Allocationally efficient** Said of a market, a financial system, or an economy that promotes the allocation of resources to their highest value uses.
- Alternative data** Non-traditional data types generated by the use of electronic devices, social media, satellite and sensor networks, and company exhaust.
- Alternative investment markets** Market for investments other than traditional securities investments (i.e., traditional common and preferred shares and traditional fixed income instruments). The term usually encompasses direct and indirect investment in real estate (including timberland and farmland) and commodities (including precious metals); hedge funds, private equity, and other investments requiring specialized due diligence.
- Alternative trading systems** Trading venues that function like exchanges but that do not exercise regulatory authority over their subscribers except with respect to the conduct of the subscribers' trading in their trading systems. Also called *electronic communications networks* or *multilateral trading facilities*.
- American depository receipt** A US dollar-denominated security that trades like a common share on US exchanges.

- American depository share** The underlying shares on which American depository receipts are based. They trade in the issuing company's domestic market.
- American-style** Said of an option contract that can be exercised at any time up to the option's expiration date.
- Amortisation** The process of allocating the cost of intangible long-term assets having a finite useful life to accounting periods; the allocation of the amount of a bond premium or discount to the periods remaining until bond maturity.
- Amortised cost** The historical cost (initially recognised cost) of an asset, adjusted for amortisation and impairment.
- Amortizing bond** Bond with a payment schedule that calls for periodic payments of interest and repayments of principal.
- Amortizing loan** Loan with a payment schedule that calls for periodic payments of interest and repayments of principal.
- Annual percentage rate** The cost of borrowing expressed as a yearly rate.
- Annuity** A finite set of level sequential cash flows.
- Annuity due** An annuity having a first cash flow that is paid immediately.
- Anticipation stock** Excess inventory that is held in anticipation of increased demand, often because of seasonal patterns of demand.
- Antidilutive** With reference to a transaction or a security, one that would increase earnings per share (EPS) or result in EPS higher than the company's basic EPS—antidilutive securities are not included in the calculation of diluted EPS.
- Arbitrage** 1) The simultaneous purchase of an undervalued asset or portfolio and sale of an overvalued but equivalent asset or portfolio, in order to obtain a riskless profit on the price differential. Taking advantage of a market inefficiency in a risk-free manner. 2) The condition in a financial market in which equivalent assets or combinations of assets sell for two different prices, creating an opportunity to profit at no risk with no commitment of money. In a well-functioning financial market, few arbitrage opportunities are possible. 3) A risk-free operation that earns an expected positive net profit but requires no net investment of money.
- Arbitrage-free pricing** The overall process of pricing derivatives by arbitrage and risk neutrality. Also called the *principle of no arbitrage*.
- Arbitrageurs** Traders who engage in arbitrage. See *arbitrage*.
- Arithmetic mean** The sum of the observations divided by the number of observations.
- Arms index** A flow of funds indicator applied to a broad stock market index to measure the relative extent to which money is moving into or out of rising and declining stocks.
- Artificial intelligence** Computer systems that exhibit cognitive and decision-making ability comparable (or superior) to that of humans.
- Asian call option** A European-style option with a value at maturity equal to the difference between the stock price at maturity and the average stock price during the life of the option, or \$0, whichever is greater.
- Ask** The price at which a dealer or trader is willing to sell an asset, typically qualified by a maximum quantity (ask size). See *offer*.
- Ask size** The maximum quantity of an asset that pertains to a specific ask price from a trader. For example, if the ask for a share issue is \$30 for a size of 1,000 shares, the trader is offering to sell at \$30 up to 1,000 shares.
- Asset allocation** The process of determining how investment funds should be distributed among asset classes.
- Asset-backed securities** A type of bond issued by a legal entity called a *special purpose entity* (SPE) on a collection of assets that the SPE owns. Also, securities backed by receivables and loans other than mortgages.
- Asset-based loan** A loan that is secured with company assets.
- Asset-based valuation models** Valuation based on estimates of the market value of a company's assets.
- Asset beta** The unlevered beta; reflects the business risk of the assets; the asset's systematic risk.
- Asset class** A group of assets that have similar characteristics, attributes, and risk/return relationships.
- Asset swap** Converts the periodic fixed coupon of a specific bond to a Libor plus or minus a spread.
- Asset utilization ratios** Ratios that measure how efficiently a company performs day-to-day tasks, such as the collection of receivables and management of inventory.
- Assets** Resources controlled by an enterprise as a result of past events and from which future economic benefits to the enterprise are expected to flow.
- Assignment of accounts receivable** The use of accounts receivable as collateral for a loan.
- At the money** An option in which the underlying's price equals the exercise price.
- Auction** A type of bond issuing mechanism often used for sovereign bonds that involves bidding.
- Autarkic price** The price of a good or service in an autarkic economy.
- Autarky** A state in which a country does not trade with other countries.
- Automated Clearing House (ACH)** An electronic payment network available to businesses, individuals, and financial institutions in the United States, US Territories, and Canada.
- Automatic stabilizer** A countercyclical factor that automatically comes into play as an economy slows and unemployment rises.
- Available-for-sale** Debt and equity securities not classified as either held-to-maturity or held-for-trading securities. The investor is willing to sell but not actively planning to sell. In general, available-for-sale securities are reported at fair value on the balance sheet.
- Average fixed cost** Total fixed cost divided by quantity produced.
- Average life** See *weighted average life*.
- Average product** Measures the productivity of inputs on average and is calculated by dividing total product by the total number of units for a given input that is used to generate that output.
- Average revenue** Total revenue divided by quantity sold.
- Average total cost** Total cost divided by quantity produced.
- Average variable cost** Total variable cost divided by quantity produced.
- Back simulation** Another term for the historical method of estimating VaR. This term is somewhat misleading in that the method involves not a *simulation* of the past but rather what *actually happened* in the past, sometimes adjusted to reflect the fact that a different portfolio may have existed in the past than is planned for the future.
- Back-testing** With reference to portfolio strategies, the application of a strategy's portfolio selection rules to historical data to assess what would have been the strategy's historical performance.

- Backup lines of credit** A type of credit enhancement provided by a bank to an issuer of commercial paper to ensure that the issuer will have access to sufficient liquidity to repay maturing commercial paper if issuing new paper is not a viable option.
- Balance of payments** A double-entry bookkeeping system that summarizes a country's economic transactions with the rest of the world for a particular period of time, typically a calendar quarter or year.
- Balance of trade deficit** When the domestic economy is spending more on foreign goods and services than foreign economies are spending on domestic goods and services.
- Balance sheet** The financial statement that presents an entity's current financial position by disclosing resources the entity controls (its assets) and the claims on those resources (its liabilities and equity claims), as of a particular point in time (the date of the balance sheet). Also called *statement of financial position* or *statement of financial condition*.
- Balance sheet ratios** Financial ratios involving balance sheet items only.
- Balanced** With respect to a government budget, one in which spending and revenues (taxes) are equal.
- Balloon payment** Large payment required at maturity to retire a bond's outstanding principal amount.
- Bank discount basis** A quoting convention that annualizes, on a 360-day year, the discount as a percentage of face value.
- Bar chart** A price chart with four bits of data for each time interval—the high, low, opening, and closing prices. A vertical line connects the high and low. A cross-hatch left indicates the opening price and a cross-hatch right indicates the close.
- Barter economy** An economy where economic agents as households, corporations, and governments “pay” for goods and services with another good or service.
- Base rates** The reference rate on which a bank bases lending rates to all other customers.
- Basic EPS** Net earnings available to common shareholders (i.e., net income minus preferred dividends) divided by the weighted average number of common shares outstanding.
- Basis point** Used in stating yield spreads, one basis point equals one-hundredth of a percentage point, or 0.01%.
- Basket of listed depository receipts** An exchange-traded fund (ETF) that represents a portfolio of depository receipts.
- Bearer bonds** Bonds for which ownership is not recorded; only the clearing system knows who the bond owner is.
- Behavioral finance** A field of finance that examines the psychological variables that affect and often distort the investment decision making of investors, analysts, and portfolio managers.
- Behind the market** Said of prices specified in orders that are worse than the best current price; e.g., for a limit buy order, a limit price below the best bid.
- Benchmark** A comparison portfolio; a point of reference or comparison.
- Benchmark issue** The latest sovereign bond issue for a given maturity. It serves as a benchmark against which to compare bonds that have the same features but that are issued by another type of issuer.
- Benchmark rate** Typically the yield-to-maturity on a government bond having the same, or close to the same, time-to-maturity.
- Benchmark spread** The yield spread over a specific benchmark, usually measured in basis points.
- Bermuda-style** Said of an option contract that can be exercised on specified dates up to the option's expiration date.
- Bernoulli random variable** A random variable having the outcomes 0 and 1.
- Bernoulli trial** An experiment that can produce one of two outcomes.
- Best bid** The highest bid in the market.
- Best effort offering** An offering of a security using an investment bank in which the investment bank, as agent for the issuer, promises to use its best efforts to sell the offering but does not guarantee that a specific amount will be sold.
- Best-in-class** An ESG implementation approach that seeks to identify the most favorable companies in an industry based on ESG considerations.
- Best offer** The lowest offer (ask price) in the market.
- Beta** A measure of the sensitivity of a given investment or portfolio to movements in the overall market.
- Bid** The price at which a dealer or trader is willing to buy an asset, typically qualified by a maximum quantity.
- Bid-ask spread** The difference between the prices at which dealers will buy from a customer (bid) and sell to a customer (offer or ask). It is often used as an indicator of liquidity.
- Bid-offer spread** The difference between the prices at which dealers will buy from a customer (bid) and sell to a customer (offer or ask). It is often used as an indicator of liquidity.
- Bid size** The maximum quantity of an asset that pertains to a specific bid price from a trader.
- Big Data** The vast amount of data being generated by industry, governments, individuals, and electronic devices that arises from both traditional and non-traditional data sources.
- Bilateral loan** A loan from a single lender to a single borrower.
- Binomial model** A model for pricing options in which the underlying price can move to only one of two possible new prices.
- Binomial random variable** The number of successes in n Bernoulli trials for which the probability of success is constant for all trials and the trials are independent.
- Binomial tree** The graphical representation of a model of asset price dynamics in which, at each period, the asset moves up with probability p or down with probability $(1 - p)$.
- Bitcoin** A cryptocurrency using blockchain technology that was created in 2009.
- Block brokers** A broker (agent) that provides brokerage services for large-size trades.
- Blockchain** A type of digital ledger in which information is recorded sequentially and then linked together and secured using cryptographic methods.
- Blue chip** Widely held large market capitalization companies that are considered financially sound and are leaders in their respective industry or local stock market.
- Bollinger Bands** A price-based technical analysis indicator consisting of a moving average plus a higher line representing the moving average plus a set number of standard deviations from average price (for the same number of periods as used to calculate the moving average) and a lower line that is a moving average minus the same number of standard deviations.
- Bond** Contractual agreement between the issuer and the bondholders.

- Bond equivalent yield** A calculation of yield that is annualized using the ratio of 365 to the number of days to maturity. Bond equivalent yield allows for the restatement and comparison of securities with different compounding periods.
- Bond indenture** The governing legal credit agreement, typically incorporated by reference in the prospectus. Also called *trust deed*.
- Bond market vigilantes** Bond market participants who might reduce their demand for long-term bonds, thus pushing up their yields.
- Bond yield plus risk premium approach** An estimate of the cost of common equity that is produced by summing the before-tax cost of debt and a risk premium that captures the additional yield on a company's stock relative to its bonds. The additional yield is often estimated using historical spreads between bond yields and stock yields.
- Bonus issue of shares** A type of dividend in which a company distributes additional shares of its common stock to shareholders instead of cash.
- Book building** Investment bankers' process of compiling a "book" or list of indications of interest to buy part of an offering.
- Book value** The net amount shown for an asset or liability on the balance sheet; book value may also refer to the company's excess of total assets over total liabilities. Also called *carrying value*.
- Boom** An expansionary phase characterized by economic growth "testing the limits" of the economy.
- Bottom-up analysis** With reference to investment selection processes, an approach that involves selection from all securities within a specified investment universe, i.e., without prior narrowing of the universe on the basis of macroeconomic or overall market considerations.
- Break point** In the context of the weighted average cost of capital (WACC), a break point is the amount of capital at which the cost of one or more of the sources of capital changes, leading to a change in the WACC.
- Breakeven point** The number of units produced and sold at which the company's net income is zero (Revenues = Total cost); in the case of perfect competition, the quantity at which price, average revenue, and marginal revenue equal average total cost.
- Bridge financing** Interim financing that provides funds until permanent financing can be arranged.
- Broad money** Encompasses narrow money plus the entire range of liquid assets that can be used to make purchases.
- Broker** 1) An agent who executes orders to buy or sell securities on behalf of a client in exchange for a commission. 2) See *futures commission merchants*.
- Broker-dealer** A financial intermediary (often a company) that may function as a principal (dealer) or as an agent (broker) depending on the type of trade.
- Brokered market** A market in which brokers arrange trades among their clients.
- Budget surplus/deficit** The difference between government revenue and expenditure for a stated fixed period of time.
- Business risk** The risk associated with operating earnings. Operating earnings are uncertain because total revenues and many of the expenditures contributed to produce those revenues are uncertain.
- Buy-side firm** An investment management company or other investor that uses the services of brokers or dealers (i.e., the client of the sell side firms).
- Buyback** A transaction in which a company buys back its own shares. Unlike stock dividends and stock splits, share repurchases use corporate cash.
- Buyout fund** A fund that buys all the shares of a public company so that, in effect, the company becomes private.
- Call** An option that gives the holder the right to buy an underlying asset from another party at a fixed price over a specific period of time.
- Call market** A market in which trades occur only at a particular time and place (i.e., when the market is called).
- Call money rate** The interest rate that buyers pay for their margin loan.
- Call option** An option that gives the holder the right to buy an underlying asset from another party at a fixed price over a specific period of time.
- Call protection** The time during which the issuer of the bond is not allowed to exercise the call option.
- Callable bond** A bond containing an embedded call option that gives the issuer the right to buy the bond back from the investor at specified prices on pre-determined dates.
- Callable common shares** Shares that give the issuing company the option (or right), but not the obligation, to buy back the shares from investors at a call price that is specified when the shares are originally issued.
- Candlestick chart** A price chart with four bits of data for each time interval. A candle indicates the opening and closing price for the interval. The body of the candle is shaded if the opening price was higher than the closing price, and the body is clear if the opening price was lower than the closing price. Vertical lines known as wicks or shadows extend from the top and bottom of the candle to indicate the high and the low prices for the interval.
- Cannibalization** Cannibalization occurs when an investment takes customers and sales away from another part of the company.
- Capacity** The ability of the borrower to make its debt payments on time.
- Capital account** A component of the balance of payments account that measures transfers of capital.
- Capital allocation line** (CAL) A graph line that describes the combinations of expected return and standard deviation of return available to an investor from combining the optimal portfolio of risky assets with the risk-free asset.
- Capital asset pricing model** (CAPM) An equation describing the expected return on any asset (or portfolio) as a linear function of its beta relative to the market portfolio.
- Capital budgeting** The allocation of funds to relatively long-range projects or investments.
- Capital consumption allowance** A measure of the wear and tear (depreciation) of the capital stock that occurs in the production of goods and services.
- Capital deepening investment** Increases the stock of capital relative to labor.
- Capital expenditure** Expenditure on physical capital (fixed assets).
- Capital-indexed bonds** Type of index-linked bond. The coupon rate is fixed but is applied to a principal amount that increases in line with increases in the index during the bond's life.
- Capital lease** See *finance lease*.
- Capital market expectations** An investor's expectations concerning the risk and return prospects of asset classes.

- Capital market line (CML)** The line with an intercept point equal to the risk-free rate that is tangent to the efficient frontier of risky assets; represents the efficient frontier when a risk-free asset is available for investment.
- Capital market securities** Securities with maturities at issuance longer than one year.
- Capital markets** Financial markets that trade securities of longer duration, such as bonds and equities.
- Capital rationing** A capital rationing environment assumes that the company has a fixed amount of funds to invest.
- Capital restrictions** Controls placed on foreigners' ability to own domestic assets and/or domestic residents' ability to own foreign assets.
- Capital stock** The accumulated amount of buildings, machinery, and equipment used to produce goods and services.
- Capital structure** The mix of debt and equity that a company uses to finance its business; a company's specific mixture of long-term financing.
- Captive finance subsidiary** A wholly-owned subsidiary of a company that is established to provide financing of the sales of the parent company.
- Carry** The net of the costs and benefits of holding, storing, or "carrying" an asset.
- Carrying amount** The amount at which an asset or liability is valued according to accounting principles.
- Carrying value** The net amount shown for an asset or liability on the balance sheet; book value may also refer to the company's excess of total assets over total liabilities. For a bond, the purchase price plus (or minus) the amortized amount of the discount (or premium).
- Cartel** Participants in collusive agreements that are made openly and formally.
- Cash collateral account** Form of external credit enhancement whereby the issuer immediately borrows the credit-enhancement amount and then invests that amount, usually in highly rated short-term commercial paper.
- Cash conversion cycle** A financial metric that measures the length of time required for a company to convert cash invested in its operations to cash received as a result of its operations; equal to days of inventory on hand + days of sales outstanding – number of days of payables. Also called *net operating cycle*.
- Cash flow additivity principle** The principle that dollar amounts indexed at the same point in time are additive.
- Cash flow from operating activities** The net amount of cash provided from operating activities.
- Cash flow from operations** The net amount of cash provided from operating activities.
- Cash flow yield** The internal rate of return on a series of cash flows.
- Cash market securities** Money market securities settled on a "same day" or "cash settlement" basis.
- Cash markets** See *spot markets*.
- Cash prices** See *spot prices*.
- Cash-settled forwards** See *non-deliverable forwards*.
- CBOE Volatility Index** A measure of near-term market volatility as conveyed by S&P 500 stock index option prices.
- CD equivalent yield** A yield on a basis comparable to the quoted yield on an interest-bearing money market instrument that pays interest on a 360-day basis; the annualized holding period yield, assuming a 360-day year.
- Central bank funds market** The market in which deposit-taking banks that have an excess reserve with their national central bank can loan money to banks that need funds for maturities ranging from overnight to one year. Called the Federal or Fed funds market in the United States.
- Central bank funds rates** Interest rates at which central bank funds are bought (borrowed) and sold (lent) for maturities ranging from overnight to one year. Called Federal or Fed funds rates in the United States.
- Central banks** The dominant bank in a country, usually with official or semi-official governmental status.
- Certificate of deposit** An instrument that represents a specified amount of funds on deposit with a bank for a specified maturity and interest rate. It is issued in small or large denominations, and can be negotiable or non-negotiable.
- Change in polarity principle** A tenet of technical analysis that once a support level is breached, it becomes a resistance level. The same holds true for resistance levels; once breached, they become support levels.
- Change of control put** A covenant giving bondholders the right to require the issuer to buy back their debt, often at par or at some small premium to par value, in the event that the borrower is acquired.
- Character** The quality of a debt issuer's management.
- Classified balance sheet** A balance sheet organized so as to group together the various assets and liabilities into subcategories (e.g., current and noncurrent).
- Clawback** A requirement that the general partner return any funds distributed as incentive fees until the limited partners have received back their initial investment and a percentage of the total profit.
- Clearing** The process by which the exchange verifies the execution of a transaction and records the participants' identities.
- Clearing instructions** Instructions that indicate how to arrange the final settlement ("clearing") of a trade.
- Clearinghouse** An entity associated with a futures market that acts as middleman between the contracting parties and guarantees to each party the performance of the other.
- Closed economy** An economy that does not trade with other countries; an *autarkic economy*.
- Closed-end fund** A mutual fund in which no new investment money is accepted. New investors invest by buying existing shares, and investors in the fund liquidate by selling their shares to other investors.
- Code of ethics** An established guide that communicates an organization's values and overall expectations regarding member behavior. A code of ethics serves as a general guide for how community members should act.
- Coefficient of variation (CV)** The ratio of a set of observations' standard deviation to the observations' mean value.
- Coincident economic indicators** Turning points that are usually close to those of the overall economy; they are believed to have value for identifying the economy's present state.
- Collateral manager** Buys and sells debt obligations for and from the CDO's portfolio of assets (i.e., the collateral) to generate sufficient cash flows to meet the obligations to the CDO bondholders.
- Collateral trust bonds** Bonds secured by securities such as common shares, other bonds, or other financial assets.
- Collateralized bond obligations** A structured asset-backed security that is collateralized by a pool of bonds.

- Collateralized debt obligation** Generic term used to describe a security backed by a diversified pool of one or more debt obligations.
- Collateralized loan obligations** A structured asset-backed security that is collateralized by a pool of loans.
- Collateralized mortgage obligation** A security created through the securitization of a pool of mortgage-related products (mortgage pass-through securities or pools of loans).
- Collaterals** Assets or financial guarantees underlying a debt obligation that are above and beyond the issuer's promise to pay.
- Combination** A listing in which the order of the listed items does not matter.
- Commercial paper** A short-term, negotiable, unsecured promissory note that represents a debt obligation of the issuer.
- Committed capital** The amount that the limited partners have agreed to provide to the private equity fund.
- Committed lines of credit** A bank commitment to extend credit up to a pre-specified amount; the commitment is considered a short-term liability and is usually in effect for 364 days (one day short of a full year).
- Commodity swap** A swap in which the underlying is a commodity such as oil, gold, or an agricultural product.
- Common market** Level of economic integration that incorporates all aspects of the customs union and extends it by allowing free movement of factors of production among members.
- Common shares** A type of security that represent an ownership interest in a company.
- Common-size analysis** The restatement of financial statement items using a common denominator or reference item that allows one to identify trends and major differences; an example is an income statement in which all items are expressed as a percent of revenue.
- Common stock** See *common shares*.
- Company analysis** Analysis of an individual company.
- Comparable company** A company that has similar business risk; usually in the same industry and preferably with a single line of business.
- Comparative advantage** A country's ability to produce a good or service at a lower relative cost, or opportunity cost, than its trading partner.
- Competitive strategy** A company's plans for responding to the threats and opportunities presented by the external environment.
- Complements** Goods that tend to be used together; technically, two goods whose cross-price elasticity of demand is negative.
- Complete markets** Informally, markets in which the variety of distinct securities traded is so broad that any desired payoff in a future state-of-the-world is achievable.
- Completed contract** A method of revenue recognition in which the company does not recognize any revenue until the contract is completed; used particularly in long-term construction contracts.
- Component cost of capital** The rate of return required by suppliers of capital for an individual source of a company's funding, such as debt or equity.
- Compounding** The process of accumulating interest on interest.
- Comprehensive income** The change in equity of a business enterprise during a period from nonowner sources; includes all changes in equity during a period except those resulting from investments by owners and distributions to owners; comprehensive income equals net income plus other comprehensive income.
- Conditional expected value** The expected value of a stated event given that another event has occurred.
- Conditional probability** The probability of an event given (conditioned on) another event.
- Conditional variances** The variance of one variable, given the outcome of another.
- Consistent** With reference to estimators, describes an estimator for which the probability of estimates close to the value of the population parameter increases as sample size increases.
- Constant-yield price trajectory** A graph that illustrates the change in the price of a fixed-income bond over time assuming no change in yield-to-maturity. The trajectory shows the "pull to par" effect on the price of a bond trading at a premium or a discount to par value.
- Constituent securities** With respect to an index, the individual securities within an index.
- Consumer surplus** The difference between the value that a consumer places on units purchased and the amount of money that was required to pay for them.
- Contingency provision** Clause in a legal document that allows for some action if a specific event or circumstance occurs.
- Contingent claims** Derivatives in which the payoffs occur if a specific event occurs; generally referred to as options.
- Contingent convertible bonds** Bonds that automatically convert into equity if a specific event or circumstance occurs, such as the issuer's equity capital falling below the minimum requirement set by the regulators. Also called *CoCos*.
- Continuation patterns** A type of pattern used in technical analysis to predict the resumption of a market trend that was in place prior to the formation of a pattern.
- Continuous random variable** A random variable for which the range of possible outcomes is the real line (all real numbers between $-\infty$ and $+\infty$ or some subset of the real line).
- Continuous time** Time thought of as advancing in extremely small increments.
- Continuous trading market** A market in which trades can be arranged and executed any time the market is open.
- Continuously compounded return** The natural logarithm of 1 plus the holding period return, or equivalently, the natural logarithm of the ending price over the beginning price.
- Contra account** An account that offsets another account.
- Contract rate** See *mortgage rate*.
- Contraction** The period of a business cycle after the peak and before the trough; often called a *recession* or, if exceptionally severe, called a *depression*.
- Contraction risk** The risk that when interest rates decline, the security will have a shorter maturity than was anticipated at the time of purchase because borrowers refinance at the new, lower interest rates.
- Contractionary** Tending to cause the real economy to contract.
- Contractionary fiscal policy** A fiscal policy that has the objective to make the real economy contract.
- Contracts for differences** See *non-deliverable forwards*.
- Contribution margin** The amount available for fixed costs and profit after paying variable costs; revenue minus variable costs.
- Controlling shareholders** A particular shareholder or block of shareholders holding a percentage of shares that gives them significant voting power.

- Convenience yield** A non-monetary advantage of holding an asset.
- Conventional bond** See *plain vanilla bond*.
- Conventional cash flow** A conventional cash flow pattern is one with an initial outflow followed by a series of inflows.
- Convergence** The tendency for differences in output per capita across countries to diminish over time; in technical analysis, a term that describes the case when an indicator moves in the same manner as the security being analyzed.
- Conversion price** For a convertible bond, the price per share at which the bond can be converted into shares.
- Conversion ratio** For a convertible bond, the number of common shares that each bond can be converted into.
- Conversion value** For a convertible bond, the current share price multiplied by the conversion ratio.
- Convertible bond** Bond that gives the bondholder the right to exchange the bond for a specified number of common shares in the issuing company.
- Convertible preference shares** A type of equity security that entitles shareholders to convert their shares into a specified number of common shares.
- Convexity adjustment** For a bond, one half of the annual or approximate convexity statistic multiplied by the change in the yield-to-maturity squared.
- Core inflation** The inflation rate calculated based on a price index of goods and services except food and energy.
- Corporate governance** The system of internal controls and procedures by which individual companies are managed.
- Correlation** A number between -1 and $+1$ that measures the comovement (linear association) between two random variables.
- Correlation coefficient** A number between -1 and $+1$ that measures the consistency or tendency for two investments to act in a similar way. It is used to determine the effect on portfolio risk when two assets are combined.
- Cost averaging** The periodic investment of a fixed amount of money.
- Cost of capital** The rate of return that suppliers of capital require as compensation for their contribution of capital.
- Cost of carry** See *carry*.
- Cost of debt** The cost of debt financing to a company, such as when it issues a bond or takes out a bank loan.
- Cost of preferred stock** The cost to a company of issuing preferred stock; the dividend yield that a company must commit to pay preferred stockholders.
- Cost-push** Type of inflation in which rising costs, usually wages, compel businesses to raise prices generally.
- Cost recovery method** A method of revenue recognition in which the seller does not report any profit until the cash amounts paid by the buyer—including principal and interest on any financing from the seller—are greater than all the seller's costs for the merchandise sold.
- Cost structure** The mix of a company's variable costs and fixed costs.
- Counterparty risk** The risk that the other party to a contract will fail to honor the terms of the contract.
- Coupon rate** The interest rate promised in a contract; this is the rate used to calculate the periodic interest payments.
- Cournot assumption** Assumption in which each firm determines its profit-maximizing production level assuming that the other firms' output will not change.
- Covariance** A measure of the co-movement (linear association) between two random variables.
- Covariance matrix** A matrix or square array whose entries are covariances; also known as a variance–covariance matrix.
- Covenants** The terms and conditions of lending agreements that the issuer must comply with; they specify the actions that an issuer is obligated to perform (affirmative covenant) or prohibited from performing (negative covenant).
- Covered bond** Debt obligation secured by a segregated pool of assets called the cover pool. The issuer must maintain the value of the cover pool. In the event of default, bondholders have recourse against both the issuer and the cover pool.
- Credit analysis** The evaluation of credit risk; the evaluation of the creditworthiness of a borrower or counterparty.
- Credit curve** A curve showing the relationship between time to maturity and yield spread for an issuer with comparable bonds of various maturities outstanding, usually upward sloping.
- Credit default swap (CDS)** A type of credit derivative in which one party, the credit protection buyer who is seeking credit protection against a third party, makes a series of regularly scheduled payments to the other party, the credit protection seller. The seller makes no payments until a credit event occurs.
- Credit derivatives** A contract in which one party has the right to claim a payment from another party in the event that a specific credit event occurs over the life of the contract.
- Credit enhancements** Provisions that may be used to reduce the credit risk of a bond issue.
- Credit-linked coupon bond** Bond for which the coupon changes when the bond's credit rating changes.
- Credit-linked note (CLN)** Fixed-income security in which the holder of the security has the right to withhold payment of the full amount due at maturity if a credit event occurs.
- Credit migration risk** The risk that a bond issuer's creditworthiness deteriorates, or migrates lower, leading investors to believe the risk of default is higher. Also called *downgrade risk*.
- Credit risk** The risk of loss caused by a counterparty's or debtor's failure to make a promised payment. Also called *default risk*.
- Credit scoring model** A statistical model used to classify borrowers according to creditworthiness.
- Credit spread option** An option on the yield spread on a bond.
- Credit tranching** A structure used to redistribute the credit risk associated with the collateral; a set of bond classes created to allow investors a choice in the amount of credit risk that they prefer to bear.
- Credit-worthiness** The perceived ability of the borrower to pay what is owed on the borrowing in a timely manner; it represents the ability of a company to withstand adverse impacts on its cash flows.
- Cross-default provisions** Provisions whereby events of default such as non-payment of interest on one bond trigger default on all outstanding debt; implies the same default probability for all issues.
- Cross-price elasticity of demand** The percentage change in quantity demanded for a given percentage change in the price of another good; the responsiveness of the demand for Product A that is associated with the change in price of Product B.
- Cross-sectional analysis** Analysis that involves comparisons across individuals in a group over a given time period or at a given point in time.
- Cross-sectional data** Observations over individual units at a point in time, as opposed to time-series data.

- Crossing networks** Trading systems that match buyers and sellers who are willing to trade at prices obtained from other markets.
- Crowding out** The thesis that government borrowing may divert private sector investment from taking place.
- Cryptocurrency** An electronic medium of exchange that lacks physical form.
- Cryptography** An algorithmic process to encrypt data, making the data unusable if received by unauthorized parties.
- Cumulative distribution function** A function giving the probability that a random variable is less than or equal to a specified value.
- Cumulative preference shares** Preference shares for which any dividends that are not paid accrue and must be paid in full before dividends on common shares can be paid.
- Cumulative relative frequency** For data grouped into intervals, the fraction of total observations that are less than the value of the upper limit of a stated interval.
- Cumulative voting** A voting process whereby each shareholder can accumulate and vote all his or her shares for a single candidate in an election, as opposed to having to allocate their voting rights evenly among all candidates.
- Currencies** Monies issued by national monetary authorities.
- Currency option bonds** Bonds that give the bondholder the right to choose the currency in which he or she wants to receive interest payments and principal repayments.
- Currency swap** A swap in which each party makes interest payments to the other in different currencies.
- Current account** A component of the balance of payments account that measures the flow of goods and services.
- Current assets** Assets that are expected to be consumed or converted into cash in the near future, typically one year or less. *Also called liquid assets.*
- Current cost** With reference to assets, the amount of cash or cash equivalents that would have to be paid to buy the same or an equivalent asset today; with reference to liabilities, the undiscounted amount of cash or cash equivalents that would be required to settle the obligation today.
- Current government spending** With respect to government expenditures, spending on goods and services that are provided on a regular, recurring basis including health, education, and defense.
- Current liabilities** Short-term obligations, such as accounts payable, wages payable, or accrued liabilities, that are expected to be settled in the near future, typically one year or less.
- Current ratio** A liquidity ratio calculated as current assets divided by current liabilities.
- Current yield** The sum of the coupon payments received over the year divided by the flat price; also called the *income or interest yield or running yield.*
- Curve duration** The sensitivity of the bond price (or the market value of a financial asset or liability) with respect to a benchmark yield curve.
- Customs union** Extends the free trade area (FTA) by not only allowing free movement of goods and services among members, but also creating a common trade policy against nonmembers.
- CVaR** Conditional VaR, a tail loss measure. The weighted average of all loss outcomes in the statistical distribution that exceed the VaR loss.
- Cyclical** See *cyclical companies.*
- Cyclical companies** Companies with sales and profits that regularly expand and contract with the business cycle or state of economy.
- Daily settlement** See *mark to market* and *marking to market.*
- Dark pools** Alternative trading systems that do not display the orders that their clients send to them.
- Data mining** The practice of determining a model by extensive searching through a dataset for statistically significant patterns. Also called *data snooping.*
- Data science** An interdisciplinary field that brings computer science, statistics, and other disciplines together to analyze and produce insights from Big Data.
- Data snooping** See *data mining.*
- Day order** An order that is good for the day on which it is submitted. If it has not been filled by the close of business, the order expires unfilled.
- Day's sales outstanding** Estimate of the average number of days it takes to collect on credit accounts.
- Days in receivables** Estimate of the average number of days it takes to collect on credit accounts.
- Days of inventory on hand** An activity ratio equal to the number of days in the period divided by inventory turnover over the period.
- Dead cross** A technical analysis term that describes a situation where a short-term moving average crosses from above a longer-term moving average to below it; this movement is considered bearish.
- Dealers** A financial intermediary that acts as a principal in trades.
- Dealing securities** Securities held by banks or other financial intermediaries for trading purposes.
- Debentures** Type of bond that can be secured or unsecured.
- Debt incurrence test** A financial covenant made in conjunction with existing debt that restricts a company's ability to incur additional debt at the same seniority based on one or more financial tests or conditions.
- Debt-rating approach** A method for estimating a company's before-tax cost of debt based upon the yield on comparably rated bonds for maturities that closely match that of the company's existing debt.
- Debt-to-assets ratio** A solvency ratio calculated as total debt divided by total assets.
- Debt-to-capital ratio** A solvency ratio calculated as total debt divided by total debt plus total shareholders' equity.
- Debt-to-equity ratio** A solvency ratio calculated as total debt divided by total shareholders' equity.
- Declaration date** The day that the corporation issues a statement declaring a specific dividend.
- Decreasing returns to scale** When a production process leads to increases in output that are proportionately smaller than the increase in inputs.
- Deductible temporary differences** Temporary differences that result in a reduction of or deduction from taxable income in a future period when the balance sheet item is recovered or settled.
- Deep learning** Machine learning using neural networks with many hidden layers.
- Deep learning nets** Machine learning using neural networks with many hidden layers.
- Default probability** The probability that a borrower defaults or fails to meet its obligation to make full and timely payments of principal and interest, according to the terms of the debt security. Also called *default risk.*

- Default risk** The probability that a borrower defaults or fails to meet its obligation to make full and timely payments of principal and interest, according to the terms of the debt security. Also called *default probability*.
- Default risk premium** An extra return that compensates investors for the possibility that the borrower will fail to make a promised payment at the contracted time and in the contracted amount.
- Defensive companies** Companies with sales and profits that have little sensitivity to the business cycle or state of the economy.
- Defensive interval ratio** A liquidity ratio that estimates the number of days that an entity could meet cash needs from liquid assets; calculated as (cash + short-term marketable investments + receivables) divided by daily cash expenditures.
- Deferred coupon bond** Bond that pays no coupons for its first few years but then pays a higher coupon than it otherwise normally would for the remainder of its life. Also called *split coupon bond*.
- Deferred income** A liability account for money that has been collected for goods or services that have not yet been delivered; payment received in advance of providing a good or service.
- Deferred revenue** A liability account for money that has been collected for goods or services that have not yet been delivered; payment received in advance of providing a good or service.
- Deferred tax assets** A balance sheet asset that arises when an excess amount is paid for income taxes relative to accounting profit. The taxable income is higher than accounting profit and income tax payable exceeds tax expense. The company expects to recover the difference during the course of future operations when tax expense exceeds income tax payable.
- Deferred tax liabilities** A balance sheet liability that arises when a deficit amount is paid for income taxes relative to accounting profit. The taxable income is less than the accounting profit and income tax payable is less than tax expense. The company expects to eliminate the liability over the course of future operations when income tax payable exceeds tax expense.
- Defined benefit pension plans** Plans in which the company promises to pay a certain annual amount (defined benefit) to the employee after retirement. The company bears the investment risk of the plan assets.
- Defined contribution pension plans** Individual accounts to which an employee and typically the employer makes contributions, generally on a tax-advantaged basis. The amounts of contributions are defined at the outset, but the future value of the benefit is unknown. The employee bears the investment risk of the plan assets.
- Deflation** Negative inflation.
- Degree of confidence** The probability that a confidence interval includes the unknown population parameter.
- Degree of financial leverage** (DFL) The ratio of the percentage change in net income to the percentage change in operating income; the sensitivity of the cash flows available to owners when operating income changes.
- Degree of operating leverage** (DOL) The ratio of the percentage change in operating income to the percentage change in units sold; the sensitivity of operating income to changes in units sold.
- Degree of total leverage** The ratio of the percentage change in net income to the percentage change in units sold; the sensitivity of the cash flows to owners to changes in the number of units produced and sold.
- Degrees of freedom (df)** The number of independent observations used.
- Delta** The sensitivity of the derivative price to a small change in the value of the underlying asset.
- Demand curve** Graph of the inverse demand function. A graph showing the demand relation, either the highest quantity willingly purchased at each price or the highest price willingly paid for each quantity.
- Demand function** A relationship that expresses the quantity demanded of a good or service as a function of own-price and possibly other variables.
- Demand-pull** Type of inflation in which increasing demand raises prices generally, which then are reflected in a business's costs as workers demand wage hikes to catch up with the rising cost of living.
- Demand shock** A typically unexpected disturbance to demand, such as an unexpected interruption in trade or transportation.
- Dependent** With reference to events, the property that the probability of one event occurring depends on (is related to) the occurrence of another event.
- Depository bank** A bank that raises funds from depositors and other investors and lends it to borrowers.
- Depository institutions** Commercial banks, savings and loan banks, credit unions, and similar institutions that raise funds from depositors and other investors and lend it to borrowers.
- Depository receipt** A security that trades like an ordinary share on a local exchange and represents an economic interest in a foreign company.
- Depreciation** The process of systematically allocating the cost of long-lived (tangible) assets to the periods during which the assets are expected to provide economic benefits.
- Depression** See *contraction*.
- Derivative pricing rule** A pricing rule used by crossing networks in which a price is taken (derived) from the price that is current in the asset's primary market.
- Derivatives** A financial instrument whose value depends on the value of some underlying asset or factor (e.g., a stock price, an interest rate, or exchange rate).
- Descriptive statistics** The study of how data can be summarized effectively.
- Development capital** Minority equity investments in more-mature companies that are seeking capital to expand or restructure operations, enter new markets, or finance major acquisitions.
- Diffuse prior** The assumption of equal prior probabilities.
- Diffusion index** Reflects the proportion of the index's components that are moving in a pattern consistent with the overall index.
- Diluted EPS** The EPS that would result if all dilutive securities were converted into common shares.
- Diluted shares** The number of shares that would be outstanding if all potentially dilutive claims on common shares (e.g., convertible debt, convertible preferred stock, and employee stock options) were exercised.
- Diminishing balance method** An accelerated depreciation method, i.e., one that allocates a relatively large proportion of the cost of an asset to the early years of the asset's useful life.

- Diminishing marginal productivity** Describes a state in which each additional unit of input produces less output than previously.
- Direct debit program** An arrangement whereby a customer authorizes a debit to a demand account; typically used by companies to collect routine payments for services.
- Direct financing leases** A type of finance lease, from a lessor perspective, where the present value of the lease payments (lease receivable) equals the carrying value of the leased asset. The revenues earned by the lessor are financing in nature.
- Direct format** With reference to the cash flow statement, a format for the presentation of the statement in which cash flow from operating activities is shown as operating cash receipts less operating cash disbursements. Also called *direct method*.
- Direct method** See *direct format*.
- Direct taxes** Taxes levied directly on income, wealth, and corporate profits.
- Direct write-off method** An approach to recognizing credit losses on customer receivables in which the company waits until such time as a customer has defaulted and only then recognizes the loss.
- Disbursement float** The amount of time between check issuance and a check's clearing back against the company's account.
- Discount** To reduce the value of a future payment in allowance for how far away it is in time; to calculate the present value of some future amount. Also, the amount by which an instrument is priced below its face (par) value.
- Discount interest** A procedure for determining the interest on a loan or bond in which the interest is deducted from the face value in advance.
- Discount margin** See *required margin*.
- Discount rates** In general, the interest rate used to calculate a present value. In the money market, however, discount rate is a specific type of quoted rate.
- Discounted cash flow models** Valuation models that estimate the intrinsic value of a security as the present value of the future benefits expected to be received from the security.
- Discouraged worker** A person who has stopped looking for a job or has given up seeking employment.
- Discrete random variable** A random variable that can take on at most a countable number of possible values.
- Discriminatory pricing rule** A pricing rule used in continuous markets in which the limit price of the order or quote that first arrived determines the trade price.
- Diseconomies of scale** Increase in cost per unit resulting from increased production.
- Dispersion** The variability around the central tendency.
- Display size** The size of an order displayed to public view.
- Distressed investing** Investing in securities of companies in financial difficulties. Private equity funds that specialize in distressed investing typically buy the debt of mature companies in financial difficulties.
- Distributed ledger** A type of database that may be shared among entities in a network.
- Distributed ledger technology** Technology based on a distributed ledger.
- Divergence** In technical analysis, a term that describes the case when an indicator moves differently from the security being analyzed.
- Diversification ratio** The ratio of the standard deviation of an equally weighted portfolio to the standard deviation of a randomly selected security.
- Dividend** A distribution paid to shareholders based on the number of shares owned.
- Dividend discount model** (DDM) A present value model that estimates the intrinsic value of an equity share based on the present value of its expected future dividends.
- Dividend discount model based approach** An approach for estimating a country's equity risk premium. The market rate of return is estimated as the sum of the dividend yield and the growth rate in dividends for a market index. Subtracting the risk-free rate of return from the estimated market return produces an estimate for the equity risk premium.
- Dividend payout ratio** The ratio of cash dividends paid to earnings for a period.
- Divisor** A number (denominator) used to determine the value of a price return index. It is initially chosen at the inception of an index and subsequently adjusted by the index provider, as necessary, to avoid changes in the index value that are unrelated to changes in the prices of its constituent securities.
- Domestic content provisions** Stipulate that some percentage of the value added or components used in production should be of domestic origin.
- Double bottoms** In technical analysis, a reversal pattern that is formed when the price reaches a low, rebounds, and then sells off back to the first low level; used to predict a change from a downtrend to an uptrend.
- Double coincidence of wants** A prerequisite to barter trades, in particular that both economic agents in the transaction want what the other is selling.
- Double declining balance depreciation** An accelerated depreciation method that involves depreciating the asset at double the straight-line rate. This rate is multiplied by the book value of the asset at the beginning of the period (a declining balance) to calculate depreciation expense.
- Double top** In technical analysis, a reversal pattern that is formed when an uptrend reverses twice at roughly the same high price level; used to predict a change from an uptrend to a downtrend.
- Down transition probability** The probability that an asset's value moves down in a model of asset price dynamics.
- Downgrade risk** The risk that a bond issuer's creditworthiness deteriorates, or migrates lower, leading investors to believe the risk of default is higher. Also called *credit migration risk*.
- Drag on liquidity** When receipts lag, creating pressure from the decreased available funds.
- Drawdown** A percentage peak-to-trough reduction in net asset value.
- Dual-currency bonds** Bonds that make coupon payments in one currency and pay the par value at maturity in another currency.
- DuPont analysis** An approach to decomposing return on investment, e.g., return on equity, as the product of other financial ratios.
- Duration** A measure of the approximate sensitivity of a security to a change in interest rates (i.e., a measure of interest rate risk).
- Duration gap** A bond's Macaulay duration minus the investment horizon.
- Dutch Book theorem** A result in probability theory stating that inconsistent probabilities create profit opportunities.
- Early repayment option** See *prepayment option*.

- Earnings per share** The amount of income earned during a period per share of common stock.
- Earnings surprise** The portion of a company's earnings that is unanticipated by investors and, according to the efficient market hypothesis, merits a price adjustment.
- Economic costs** All the remuneration needed to keep a productive resource in its current employment or to acquire the resource for productive use; the sum of total accounting costs and implicit opportunity costs.
- Economic indicator** A variable that provides information on the state of the overall economy.
- Economic loss** The amount by which accounting profit is less than normal profit.
- Economic order quantity–reorder point (EOQ–ROP)** An approach to managing inventory based on expected demand and the predictability of demand; the ordering point for new inventory is determined based on the costs of ordering and carrying inventory, such that the total cost associated with inventory is minimized.
- Economic profit** Equal to accounting profit less the implicit opportunity costs not included in total accounting costs; the difference between total revenue (TR) and total cost (TC). Also called *abnormal profit* or *supernormal profit*.
- Economic stabilization** Reduction of the magnitude of economic fluctuations.
- Economic union** Incorporates all aspects of a common market and in addition requires common economic institutions and coordination of economic policies among members.
- Economies of scale** Reduction in cost per unit resulting from increased production.
- Effective annual rate** The amount by which a unit of currency will grow in a year with interest on interest included.
- Effective annual yield (EAY)** An annualized return that accounts for the effect of interest on interest; EAY is computed by compounding 1 plus the holding period yield forward to one year, then subtracting 1.
- Effective convexity** A *curve convexity* statistic that measures the secondary effect of a change in a benchmark yield curve on a bond's price.
- Effective duration** The sensitivity of a bond's price to a change in a benchmark yield curve.
- Effective interest rate** The borrowing rate or market rate that a company incurs at the time of issuance of a bond.
- Efficient market** A market in which asset prices reflect new information quickly and rationally.
- Elastic** Said of a good or service when the magnitude of elasticity is greater than one.
- Elasticity** The percentage change in one variable for a percentage change in another variable; a general measure of how sensitive one variable is to a change in the value of another variable.
- Elasticity of demand** A measure of the sensitivity of quantity demanded to a change in a product's own price: $\% \Delta Q^D / \% \Delta P$.
- Elasticity of supply** A measure of the sensitivity of quantity supplied to a change in price: $\% \Delta Q^S / \% \Delta P$.
- Electronic communications networks** See *alternative trading systems*.
- Electronic funds transfer (EFT)** The use of computer networks to conduct financial transactions electronically.
- Elliott wave theory** A technical analysis theory that claims that the market follows regular, repeated waves or cycles.
- Embedded option** Contingency provisions that provide the issuer or the bondholders the right, but not the obligation, to take action. These options are not part of the security and cannot be traded separately.
- Empirical probability** The probability of an event estimated as a relative frequency of occurrence.
- Employed** The number of people with a job.
- Enterprise risk management** An overall assessment of a company's risk position. A centralized approach to risk management sometimes called firmwide risk management.
- Enterprise value** A measure of a company's total market value from which the value of cash and short-term investments have been subtracted.
- Equal weighting** An index weighting method in which an equal weight is assigned to each constituent security at inception.
- Equipment trust certificates** Bonds secured by specific types of equipment or physical assets.
- Equity** Assets less liabilities; the residual interest in the assets after subtracting the liabilities.
- Equity risk premium** The expected return on equities minus the risk-free rate; the premium that investors demand for investing in equities.
- Equity swap** A swap transaction in which at least one cash flow is tied to the return to an equity portfolio position, often an equity index.
- ESG** An acronym that encompasses environmental, social and governance.
- ESG incorporation** The integration of qualitative and quantitative environmental, social, and governance factors into traditional security and industry analysis; also known as *ESG integration*.
- ESG integration** The integration of qualitative and quantitative environmental, social, and governance factors into traditional security and industry analysis; also known as *ESG incorporation*.
- ESG investing** The consideration of environmental, social, and governance factors in the investment process.
- Estimate** The particular value calculated from sample observations using an estimator.
- Estimation** With reference to statistical inference, the subdivision dealing with estimating the value of a population parameter.
- Estimator** An estimation formula; the formula used to compute the sample mean and other sample statistics are examples of estimators.
- Ethical principles** Beliefs regarding what is good, acceptable, or obligatory behavior and what is bad, unacceptable, or forbidden behavior.
- Ethics** The study of moral principles or of making good choices. Ethics encompasses a set of moral principles and rules of conduct that provide guidance for our behavior.
- Eurobonds** Type of bond issued internationally, outside the jurisdiction of the country in whose currency the bond is denominated.
- European option** An option that can only be exercised on its expiration date.
- European-style** Said of an option contract that can only be exercised on the option's expiration date.
- Event** Any outcome or specified set of outcomes of a random variable.
- Ex-dividend date** The first date that a share trades without (i.e., "ex") the dividend.

- Excess kurtosis** Degree of kurtosis (fatness of tails) in excess of the kurtosis of the normal distribution.
- Exchanges** Places where traders can meet to arrange their trades.
- Exclusionary screening** An ESG implementation approach that excludes certain sectors or companies that deviate from an investor's accepted standards. Also called *negative screening* or *norms-based screening*.
- Execution instructions** Instructions that indicate how to fill an order.
- Exercise** The process of using an option to buy or sell the underlying.
- Exercise price** The fixed price at which an option holder can buy or sell the underlying. Also called *strike price*, *striking price*, or *strike*.
- Exercise value** The value obtained if an option is exercised based on current conditions. Also known as *intrinsic value*.
- Exhaustive** Covering or containing all possible outcomes.
- Expansion** The period of a business cycle after its lowest point and before its highest point.
- Expansionary** Tending to cause the real economy to grow.
- Expansionary fiscal policy** Fiscal policy aimed at achieving real economic growth.
- Expected inflation** The level of inflation that economic agents expect in the future.
- Expected loss** Default probability times Loss severity given default.
- Expected value** The probability-weighted average of the possible outcomes of a random variable.
- Expenses** Outflows of economic resources or increases in liabilities that result in decreases in equity (other than decreases because of distributions to owners); reductions in net assets associated with the creation of revenues.
- Experience curve** A curve that shows the direct cost per unit of good or service produced or delivered as a typically declining function of cumulative output.
- Export subsidy** Paid by the government to the firm when it exports a unit of a good that is being subsidized.
- Exports** Goods and services that an economy sells to other countries.
- Extension risk** The risk that when interest rates rise, fewer prepayments will occur because homeowners are reluctant to give up the benefits of a contractual interest rate that now looks low. As a result, the security becomes longer in maturity than anticipated at the time of purchase.
- Externality** An effect of a market transaction that is borne by parties other than those who transacted.
- Extra dividend** A dividend paid by a company that does not pay dividends on a regular schedule, or a dividend that supplements regular cash dividends with an extra payment.
- Extreme value theory** A branch of statistics that focuses primarily on extreme outcomes.
- Face value** The amount of cash payable by a company to the bondholders when the bonds mature; the promised payment at maturity separate from any coupon payment.
- Factor** A common or underlying element with which several variables are correlated.
- Fair value** The amount at which an asset could be exchanged, or a liability settled, between knowledgeable, willing parties in an arm's-length transaction; the price that would be received to sell an asset or paid to transfer a liability in an orderly transaction between market participants.
- Fed funds rate** The US interbank lending rate on overnight borrowings of reserves.
- Federal funds rate** The US interbank lending rate on overnight borrowings of reserves.
- Fiat money** Money that is not convertible into any other commodity.
- Fibonacci sequence** A sequence of numbers starting with 0 and 1, and then each subsequent number in the sequence is the sum of the two preceding numbers. In Elliott Wave Theory, it is believed that market waves follow patterns that are the ratios of the numbers in the Fibonacci sequence.
- Fiduciary call** A combination of a European call and a risk-free bond that matures on the option expiration day and has a face value equal to the exercise price of the call.
- FIFO method** The first in, first out, method of accounting for inventory, which matches sales against the costs of items of inventory in the order in which they were placed in inventory.
- Fill or kill** See *immediate or cancel order*.
- Finance lease** Essentially, the purchase of some asset by the buyer (lessee) that is directly financed by the seller (lessor). Also called *capital lease*.
- Financial account** A component of the balance of payments account that records investment flows.
- Financial flexibility** The ability to react and adapt to financial adversities and opportunities.
- Financial leverage** The extent to which a company can effect, through the use of debt, a proportional change in the return on common equity that is greater than a given proportional change in operating income; also, short for the financial leverage ratio.
- Financial leverage ratio** A measure of financial leverage calculated as average total assets divided by average total equity.
- Financial risk** The risk that environmental, social, or governance risk factors will result in significant costs or other losses to a company and its shareholders; the risk arising from a company's obligation to meet required payments under its financing agreements.
- Financing activities** Activities related to obtaining or repaying capital to be used in the business (e.g., equity and long-term debt).
- Fintech** Technological innovation in the design and delivery of financial services and products in the financial industry.
- Firm commitment offering** See *underwritten offering*.
- First-degree price discrimination** Where a monopolist is able to charge each customer the highest price the customer is willing to pay.
- First lien debt** Debt secured by a pledge of certain assets that could include buildings, but may also include property and equipment, licenses, patents, brands, etc.
- First mortgage debt** Debt secured by a pledge of a specific property.
- Fiscal multiplier** The ratio of a change in national income to a change in government spending.
- Fiscal policy** The use of taxes and government spending to affect the level of aggregate expenditures.
- Fisher effect** The thesis that the real rate of interest in an economy is stable over time so that changes in nominal interest rates are the result of changes in expected inflation.
- Fisher index** The geometric mean of the Laspeyres index.
- Fixed charge coverage** A solvency ratio measuring the number of times interest and lease payments are covered by operating income, calculated as (EBIT + lease payments) divided by (interest payments + lease payments).
- Fixed costs** Costs that remain at the same level regardless of a company's level of production and sales.

- Fixed-for-floating interest rate swap** An interest rate swap in which one party pays a fixed rate and the other pays a floating rate, with both sets of payments in the same currency. Also called *plain vanilla swap* or *vanilla swap*.
- Fixed rate perpetual preferred stock** Nonconvertible, non-callable preferred stock that has a fixed dividend rate and no maturity date.
- Flags** A technical analysis continuation pattern formed by parallel trendlines, typically over a short period.
- Flat price** The full price of a bond minus the accrued interest; also called the *quoted* or *clean* price.
- Float** In the context of customer receipts, the amount of money that is in transit between payments made by customers and the funds that are usable by the company.
- Float-adjusted market-capitalization weighting** An index weighting method in which the weight assigned to each constituent security is determined by adjusting its market capitalization for its market float.
- Float factor** An estimate of the average number of days it takes deposited checks to clear; average daily float divided by average daily deposit.
- Floater** See *floating-rate notes*.
- Floating-rate notes** A note on which interest payments are not fixed, but instead vary from period to period depending on the current level of a reference interest rate.
- Flotation cost** Fees charged to companies by investment bankers and other costs associated with raising new capital.
- Foreclosure** Allows the lender to take possession of a mortgaged property if the borrower defaults and then sell it to recover funds.
- Foreign currency reserves** Holding by the central bank of non-domestic currency deposits and non-domestic bonds.
- Foreign direct investment** Direct investment by a firm in one country (the source country) in productive assets in a foreign country (the host country).
- Foreign exchange gains (or losses)** Gains (or losses) that occur when the exchange rate changes between the investor's currency and the currency that foreign securities are denominated in.
- Foreign portfolio investment** Shorter-term investment by individuals, firms, and institutional investors (e.g., pension funds) in foreign financial instruments such as foreign stocks and foreign government bonds.
- Forward commitments** Class of derivatives that provides the ability to lock in a price to transact in the future at a previously agreed-upon price.
- Forward contract** An agreement between two parties in which one party, the buyer, agrees to buy from the other party, the seller, an underlying asset at a later date for a price established at the start of the contract.
- Forward curve** A series of forward rates, each having the same timeframe.
- Forward market** For future delivery, beyond the usual settlement time period in the cash market.
- Forward price** The fixed price or rate at which the transaction scheduled to occur at the expiration of a forward contract will take place. This price is agreed on at the initiation date of the contract.
- Forward rate** The interest rate on a bond or money market instrument traded in a forward market. A forward rate can be interpreted as an incremental, or marginal, return for extending the time-to-maturity for an additional time period.
- Forward rate agreements** A forward contract calling for one party to make a fixed interest payment and the other to make an interest payment at a rate to be determined at the contract expiration.
- Fractile** A value at or below which a stated fraction of the data lies.
- Fractional reserve banking** Banking in which reserves constitute a fraction of deposits.
- Free cash flow** The actual cash that would be available to the company's investors after making all investments necessary to maintain the company as an ongoing enterprise (also referred to as free cash flow to the firm); the internally generated funds that can be distributed to the company's investors (e.g., shareholders and bondholders) without impairing the value of the company.
- Free cash flow to equity (FCFE)** The cash flow available to a company's common shareholders after all operating expenses, interest, and principal payments have been made, and necessary investments in working and fixed capital have been made.
- Free-cash-flow-to-equity models** Valuation models based on discounting expected future free cash flow to equity.
- Free cash flow to the firm (FCFF)** The cash flow available to the company's suppliers of capital after all operating expenses have been paid and necessary investments in working capital and fixed capital have been made.
- Free float** The number of shares that are readily and freely tradable in the secondary market.
- Free trade** When there are no government restrictions on a country's ability to trade.
- Free trade areas** One of the most prevalent forms of regional integration, in which all barriers to the flow of goods and services among members have been eliminated.
- Frequency distribution** A tabular display of data summarized into a relatively small number of intervals.
- Frequency polygon** A graph of a frequency distribution obtained by drawing straight lines joining successive points representing the class frequencies.
- Full price** The price of a security with accrued interest; also called the *invoice* or *dirty* price.
- Fundamental analysis** The examination of publicly available information and the formulation of forecasts to estimate the intrinsic value of assets.
- Fundamental value** The underlying or true value of an asset based on an analysis of its qualitative and quantitative characteristics. Also called *intrinsic value*.
- Fundamental weighting** An index weighting method in which the weight assigned to each constituent security is based on its underlying company's size. It attempts to address the disadvantages of market-capitalization weighting by using measures that are independent of the constituent security's price.
- Funds of funds** Funds that hold a portfolio of hedge funds.
- Funds of hedge funds** Funds that hold a portfolio of hedge funds.
- Future value (FV)** The amount to which a payment or series of payments will grow by a stated future date.
- Futures contract** A variation of a forward contract that has essentially the same basic definition but with some additional features, such as a clearinghouse guarantee against credit losses, a daily settlement of gains and losses, and an organized electronic or floor trading facility.
- Futures price** The agreed-upon price of a futures contract.

- FX swap** The combination of a spot and a forward FX transaction.
- G-spread** The yield spread in basis points over an actual or interpolated government bond.
- Gains** Asset inflows not directly related to the ordinary activities of the business.
- Game theory** The set of tools decision makers use to incorporate responses by rival decision makers into their strategies.
- Gamma** A numerical measure of how sensitive an option's delta (the sensitivity of the derivative's price) is to a change in the value of the underlying.
- GDP deflator** A gauge of prices and inflation that measures the aggregate changes in prices across the overall economy.
- General partner** (GP) The partner that runs the business and theoretically bears unlimited liability.
- Geometric mean** A measure of central tendency computed by taking the n th root of the product of n non-negative values.
- Giffen goods** Goods that are consumed more as the price of the good rises because it is a very inferior good whose income effect overwhelms its substitution effect when price changes.
- Gilts** Bonds issued by the UK government.
- Giro system** An electronic payment system used widely in Europe and Japan.
- Global depository receipt** A depository receipt that is issued outside of the company's home country and outside of the United States.
- Global minimum-variance portfolio** The portfolio on the minimum-variance frontier with the smallest variance of return.
- Global registered share** A common share that is traded on different stock exchanges around the world in different currencies.
- Gold standard** With respect to a currency, if a currency is on the gold standard a given amount can be converted into a prespecified amount of gold.
- Golden cross** A technical analysis term that describes a situation where a short-term moving average crosses from below a longer-term moving average to above it; this movement is considered bullish.
- Good-on-close** An execution instruction specifying that an order can only be filled at the close of trading. Also called *market on close*.
- Good-on-open** An execution instruction specifying that an order can only be filled at the opening of trading.
- Good-till-cancelled order** An order specifying that it is valid until the entity placing the order has cancelled it (or, commonly, until some specified amount of time such as 60 days has elapsed, whichever comes sooner).
- Goodwill** An intangible asset that represents the excess of the purchase price of an acquired company over the value of the net assets acquired.
- Government equivalent yield** A yield that restates a yield-to-maturity based on 30/360 day-count to one based on actual/actual.
- Green bonds** A bond used in green finance whereby the proceeds are earmarked towards environmental-related products.
- Green finance** A type of finance that addresses environmental concerns while achieving economic growth.
- Grey market** The forward market for bonds about to be issued. Also called "when issued" market.
- Gross domestic product** The market value of all final goods and services produced within the economy in a given period of time (output definition) or, equivalently, the aggregate income earned by all households, all companies, and the government within the economy in a given period of time (income definition).
- Gross margin** Sales minus the cost of sales (i.e., the cost of goods sold for a manufacturing company).
- Gross profit** Sales minus the cost of sales (i.e., the cost of goods sold for a manufacturing company).
- Gross profit margin** The ratio of gross profit to revenues.
- Grouping by function** With reference to the presentation of expenses in an income statement, the grouping together of expenses serving the same function, e.g. all items that are costs of goods sold.
- Grouping by nature** With reference to the presentation of expenses in an income statement, the grouping together of expenses by similar nature, e.g., all depreciation expenses.
- Growth cyclical** A term sometimes used to describe companies that are growing rapidly on a long-term basis but that still experience above-average fluctuation in their revenues and profits over the course of a business cycle.
- Growth investors** With reference to equity investors, investors who seek to invest in high-earnings-growth companies.
- Guarantee certificate** A type of structured financial instrument that provides investors capital protection. It combines a zero-coupon bond and a call option on some underlying asset.
- Haircut** See *repo margin*.
- Harmonic mean** A type of weighted mean computed by averaging the reciprocals of the observations, then taking the reciprocal of that average.
- Head and shoulders pattern** In technical analysis, a reversal pattern that is formed in three parts: a left shoulder, head, and right shoulder; used to predict a change from an uptrend to a downtrend.
- Headline inflation** The inflation rate calculated based on the price index that includes all goods and services in an economy.
- Hedge funds** Private investment vehicles that typically use leverage, derivatives, and long and short investment strategies.
- Hedge portfolio** A hypothetical combination of the derivative and its underlying that eliminates risk.
- Held for trading** Debt or equity financial assets bought with the intention to sell them in the near term, usually less than three months; securities that a company intends to trade. Also called *trading securities*.
- Held-to-maturity** Debt (fixed-income) securities that a company intends to hold to maturity; these are presented at their original cost, updated for any amortization of discounts or premiums.
- Herding** Clustered trading that may or may not be based on information.
- Hidden order** An order that is exposed not to the public but only to the brokers or exchanges that receive it.
- High-frequency trading** A form of algorithmic trading that makes use of vast quantities of data to execute trades on ultra-high-speed networks in fractions of a second.
- High-water marks** The highest value, net of fees, that a fund has reached in history. It reflects the highest cumulative return used to calculate an incentive fee.
- Histogram** A bar chart of data that have been grouped into a frequency distribution.

- Historical cost** In reference to assets, the amount paid to purchase an asset, including any costs of acquisition and/or preparation; with reference to liabilities, the amount of proceeds received in exchange in issuing the liability.
- Historical equity risk premium approach** An estimate of a country's equity risk premium that is based upon the historical averages of the risk-free rate and the rate of return on the market portfolio.
- Historical simulation** Another term for the historical method of estimating VaR. This term is somewhat misleading in that the method involves not a *simulation* of the past but rather what *actually happened* in the past, sometimes adjusted to reflect the fact that a different portfolio may have existed in the past than is planned for the future.
- Holder-of-record date** The date that a shareholder listed on the corporation's books will be deemed to have ownership of the shares for purposes of receiving an upcoming dividend.
- Holding period return** The return that an investor earns during a specified holding period; a synonym for total return.
- Holding period yield (HPY)** The return that an investor earns during a specified holding period; holding period return with reference to a fixed-income instrument.
- Homogeneity of expectations** The assumption that all investors have the same economic expectations and thus have the same expectations of prices, cash flows, and other investment characteristics.
- Horizon yield** The internal rate of return between the total return (the sum of reinvested coupon payments and the sale price or redemption amount) and the purchase price of the bond.
- Horizontal analysis** Common-size analysis that involves comparing a specific financial statement with that statement in prior or future time periods; also, cross-sectional analysis of one company with another.
- Horizontal demand schedule** Implies that at a given price, the response in the quantity demanded is infinite.
- Hostile takeover** An attempt by one entity to acquire a company without the consent of the company's management.
- Household** A person or a group of people living in the same residence, taken as a basic unit in economic analysis.
- Human capital** The accumulated knowledge and skill that workers acquire from education, training, or life experience and the corresponding present value of future earnings to be generated by said skilled individual.
- Hurdle rate** The rate of return that must be met for a project to be accepted.
- Hypothesis** With reference to statistical inference, a statement about one or more populations.
- Hypothesis testing** With reference to statistical inference, the subdivision dealing with the testing of hypotheses about one or more populations.
- I-spread** The yield spread of a specific bond over the standard swap rate in that currency of the same tenor.
- Iceberg order** An order in which the display size is less than the order's full size.
- If-converted method** A method for accounting for the effect of convertible securities on earnings per share (EPS) that specifies what EPS would have been if the convertible securities had been converted at the beginning of the period, taking account of the effects of conversion on net income and the weighted average number of shares outstanding.
- Immediate or cancel order** An order that is valid only upon receipt by the broker or exchange. If such an order cannot be filled in part or in whole upon receipt, it cancels immediately. Also called *fill or kill*.
- Impact investing** Investing that seeks to achieve targeted social or environmental objectives along with measurable financial returns through engagement with a company or by direct investment in projects or companies.
- Impact lag** The lag associated with the result of actions affecting the economy with delay.
- Implicit price deflator for GDP** A gauge of prices and inflation that measures the aggregate changes in prices across the overall economy.
- Implied forward rates** Calculated from spot rates, an implied forward rate is a break-even reinvestment rate that links the return on an investment in a shorter-term zero-coupon bond to the return on an investment in a longer-term zero-coupon bond.
- Implied volatility** The volatility that option traders use to price an option, implied by the price of the option and a particular option-pricing model.
- Import license** Specifies the quantity of a good that can be imported into a country.
- Imports** Goods and services that a domestic economy (i.e., households, firms, and government) purchases from other countries.
- In the money** Options that, if exercised, would result in the value received being worth more than the payment required to exercise.
- Incentive fee** Fees paid to the general partner from the limited partner(s) based on realized profits.
- Income** Increases in economic benefits in the form of inflows or enhancements of assets, or decreases of liabilities that result in an increase in equity (other than increases resulting from contributions by owners).
- Income elasticity of demand** A measure of the responsiveness of demand to changes in income, defined as the percentage change in quantity demanded divided by the percentage change in income.
- Income tax paid** The actual amount paid for income taxes in the period; not a provision, but the actual cash outflow.
- Income tax payable** The income tax owed by the company on the basis of taxable income.
- Income trust** A type of equity ownership vehicle established as a trust issuing ownership shares known as units.
- Increasing marginal returns** When the marginal product of a resource increases as additional units of that input are employed.
- Increasing returns to scale** When a production process leads to increases in output that are proportionately larger than the increase in inputs.
- Incremental cash flow** The cash flow that is realized because of a decision; the changes or increments to cash flows resulting from a decision or action.
- Indenture** Legal contract that describes the form of a bond, the obligations of the issuer, and the rights of the bondholders. Also called the *trust deed*.
- Independent** With reference to events, the property that the occurrence of one event does not affect the probability of another event occurring.
- Independent projects** Independent projects are projects whose cash flows are independent of each other.

- Independently and identically distributed (IID)** With respect to random variables, the property of random variables that are independent of each other but follow the identical probability distribution.
- Index-linked bond** Bond for which coupon payments and/or principal repayment are linked to a specified index.
- Index of Leading Economic Indicators** A composite of economic variables used by analysts to predict future economic conditions.
- Indexing** An investment strategy in which an investor constructs a portfolio to mirror the performance of a specified index.
- Indifference curve** A curve representing all the combinations of two goods or attributes such that the consumer is entirely indifferent among them.
- Indirect format** With reference to cash flow statements, a format for the presentation of the statement which, in the operating cash flow section, begins with net income then shows additions and subtractions to arrive at operating cash flow. Also called *indirect method*.
- Indirect method** See *indirect format*.
- Indirect taxes** Taxes such as taxes on spending, as opposed to direct taxes.
- Industry** A group of companies offering similar products and/or services.
- Industry analysis** The analysis of a specific branch of manufacturing, service, or trade.
- Inelastic** Said of a good or service when the magnitude of elasticity is less than one. Insensitive to price changes.
- Inferior goods** A good whose consumption decreases as income increases.
- Inflation** The percentage increase in the general price level from one period to the next; a sustained rise in the overall level of prices in an economy.
- Inflation-linked bond** Type of index-linked bond that offers investors protection against inflation by linking the bond's coupon payments and/or the principal repayment to an index of consumer prices. Also called *linkers*.
- Inflation premium** An extra return that compensates investors for expected inflation.
- Inflation rate** The percentage change in a price index—that is, the speed of overall price level movements.
- Inflation Reports** A type of economic publication put out by many central banks.
- Inflation uncertainty** The degree to which economic agents view future rates of inflation as difficult to forecast.
- Information cascade** The transmission of information from those participants who act first and whose decisions influence the decisions of others.
- Information-motivated traders** Traders that trade to profit from information that they believe allows them to predict future prices.
- Informationally efficient market** A market in which asset prices reflect new information quickly and rationally.
- Initial coin offering** An unregulated process whereby companies raise capital by selling crypto tokens to investors in exchange for fiat money or another agreed-upon cryptocurrency.
- Initial margin** The amount that must be deposited in a clearinghouse account when entering into a futures contract.
- Initial margin requirement** The margin requirement on the first day of a transaction as well as on any day in which additional margin funds must be deposited.
- Initial public offering (IPO)** The first issuance of common shares to the public by a formerly private corporation.
- Input productivity** The amount of output produced by workers in a given period of time—for example, output per hour worked; measures the efficiency of labor.
- Installment method** With respect to revenue recognition, a method that specifies that the portion of the total profit of the sale that is recognized in each period is determined by the percentage of the total sales price for which the seller has received cash.
- Installment sales** With respect to revenue recognition, a method that specifies that the portion of the total profit of the sale that is recognized in each period is determined by the percentage of the total sales price for which the seller has received cash.
- Intangible assets** Assets lacking physical substance, such as patents and trademarks.
- Interbank market** The market of loans and deposits between banks for maturities ranging from overnight to one year.
- Interbank money market** The market of loans and deposits between banks for maturities ranging from overnight to one year.
- Interest** Payment for lending funds.
- Interest coverage** A solvency ratio calculated as EBIT divided by interest payments.
- Interest-only mortgage** A loan in which no scheduled principal repayment is specified for a certain number of years.
- Interest rate** A rate of return that reflects the relationship between differently dated cash flows; a discount rate.
- Interest rate swap** A swap in which the underlying is an interest rate. Can be viewed as a currency swap in which both currencies are the same and can be created as a combination of currency swaps.
- Intergenerational data mining** A form of data mining that applies information developed by previous researchers using a dataset to guide current research using the same or a related dataset.
- Intermarket analysis** A field within technical analysis that combines analysis of major categories of securities—namely, equities, bonds, currencies, and commodities—to identify market trends and possible inflections in a trend.
- Internal rate of return (IRR)** The discount rate that makes net present value equal 0; the discount rate that makes the present value of an investment's costs (outflows) equal to the present value of the investment's benefits (inflows).
- Internet of Things** A network arrangement of structures and devices whereby the objects on the network are able to interact and share information.
- Interpolated spread** The yield spread of a specific bond over the standard swap rate in that currency of the same tenor.
- Interquartile range** The difference between the third and first quartiles of a dataset.
- Interval** With reference to grouped data, a set of values within which an observation falls.
- Interval scale** A measurement scale that not only ranks data but also gives assurance that the differences between scale values are equal.
- Intrinsic value** See *exercise value*.
- Inventory blanket lien** The use of inventory as collateral for a loan. Though the lender has claim to some or all of the company's inventory, the company may still sell or use the inventory in the ordinary course of business.
- Inventory investment** Net change in business inventory.

- Inventory turnover** An activity ratio calculated as cost of goods sold divided by average inventory.
- Inverse demand function** A restatement of the demand function in which price is stated as a function of quantity.
- Inverse floater** A type of leveraged structured financial instrument. The cash flows are adjusted periodically and move in the opposite direction of changes in the reference rate.
- Investing activities** Activities which are associated with the acquisition and disposal of property, plant, and equipment; intangible assets; other long-term assets; and both long-term and short-term investments in the equity and debt (bonds and loans) issued by other companies.
- Investment banks** Financial intermediaries that provide advice to their mostly corporate clients and help them arrange transactions such as initial and seasoned securities offerings.
- Investment opportunity schedule** A graphical depiction of a company's investment opportunities ordered from highest to lowest expected return. A company's optimal capital budget is found where the investment opportunity schedule intersects with the company's marginal cost of capital.
- Investment policy statement** (IPS) A written planning document that describes a client's investment objectives and risk tolerance over a relevant time horizon, along with constraints that apply to the client's portfolio.
- Investment property** Property used to earn rental income or capital appreciation (or both).
- IRR rule** An investment decision rule that accepts projects or investments for which the IRR is greater than the opportunity cost of capital.
- January effect** Calendar anomaly that stock market returns in January are significantly higher compared to the rest of the months of the year, with most of the abnormal returns reported during the first five trading days in January. Also called *turn-of-the-year effect*.
- Joint probability** The probability of the joint occurrence of stated events.
- Joint probability function** A function giving the probability of joint occurrences of values of stated random variables.
- Just-in-time (JIT) method** Method of managing inventory that minimizes in-process inventory stocks.
- Key rate duration** A method of measuring the interest rate sensitivities of a fixed-income instrument or portfolio to shifts in key points along the yield curve.
- Keynesians** Economists who believe that fiscal policy can have powerful effects on aggregate demand, output, and employment when there is substantial spare capacity in an economy.
- Kondratieff wave** A 54-year long economic cycle postulated by Nikolai Kondratieff.
- Kurtosis** The statistical measure that indicates the combined weight of the tails of a distribution relative to the rest of the distribution.
- Labor force** The portion of the working age population (over the age of 16) that is employed or is available for work but not working (unemployed).
- Labor productivity** The quantity of goods and services (real GDP) that a worker can produce in one hour of work.
- Laddering strategy** A form of active strategy which entails scheduling maturities on a systematic basis within the investment portfolio such that investments are spread out equally over the term of the ladder.
- Lagging economic indicators** Turning points that take place later than those of the overall economy; they are believed to have value in identifying the economy's past condition.
- Laspeyres index** A price index created by holding the composition of the consumption basket constant.
- Law of demand** The principle that as the price of a good rises, buyers will choose to buy less of it, and as its price falls, they will buy more.
- Law of diminishing marginal returns** The observation that a variable factor's marginal product must eventually fall as more of it is added to a fixed amount of the other factors.
- Law of diminishing returns** The smallest output that a firm can produce such that its long run average costs are minimized.
- Law of one price** The condition in a financial market in which two equivalent financial instruments or combinations of financial instruments can sell for only one price. Equivalent to the principle that no arbitrage opportunities are possible.
- Lead underwriter** The lead investment bank in a syndicate of investment banks and broker-dealers involved in a securities underwriting.
- Leading economic indicators** Turning points that usually precede those of the overall economy; they are believed to have value for predicting the economy's future state, usually near-term.
- Legal tender** Something that must be accepted when offered in exchange for goods and services.
- Lender of last resort** An entity willing to lend money when no other entity is ready to do so.
- Leptokurtic** Describes a distribution that has fatter tails than a normal distribution.
- Lessee** The party obtaining the use of an asset through a lease.
- Lessor** The owner of an asset that grants the right to use the asset to another party.
- Letter of credit** Form of external credit enhancement whereby a financial institution provides the issuer with a credit line to reimburse any cash flow shortfalls from the assets backing the issue.
- Level of significance** The probability of a Type I error in testing a hypothesis.
- Leverage** In the context of corporate finance, leverage refers to the use of fixed costs within a company's cost structure. Fixed costs that are operating costs (such as depreciation or rent) create operating leverage. Fixed costs that are financial costs (such as interest expense) create financial leverage.
- Leveraged buyout** (LBO) A transaction whereby the target company management team converts the target to a privately held company by using heavy borrowing to finance the purchase of the target company's outstanding shares.
- Liabilities** Present obligations of an enterprise arising from past events, the settlement of which is expected to result in an outflow of resources embodying economic benefits; creditors' claims on the resources of a company.
- Life-cycle stage** The stage of the life cycle: embryonic, growth, shakeout, mature, declining.
- LIFO layer liquidation** With respect to the application of the LIFO inventory method, the liquidation of old, relatively low-priced inventory; happens when the volume of sales rises above the volume of recent purchases so that some sales are made from relatively old, low-priced inventory. Also called *LIFO liquidation*.

- LIFO method** The last in, first out, method of accounting for inventory, which matches sales against the costs of items of inventory in the reverse order the items were placed in inventory (i.e., inventory produced or acquired last are assumed to be sold first).
- LIFO reserve** The difference between the reported LIFO inventory carrying amount and the inventory amount that would have been reported if the FIFO method had been used (in other words, the FIFO inventory value less the LIFO inventory value).
- Likelihood** The probability of an observation, given a particular set of conditions.
- Limit down** A limit move in the futures market in which the price at which a transaction would be made is at or below the lower limit.
- Limit order** Instructions to a broker or exchange to obtain the best price immediately available when filling an order, but in no event accept a price higher than a specified (limit) price when buying or accept a price lower than a specified (limit) price when selling.
- Limit order book** The book or list of limit orders to buy and sell that pertains to a security.
- Limit up** A limit move in the futures market in which the price at which a transaction would be made is at or above the upper limit.
- Limitations on liens** Meant to put limits on how much secured debt an issuer can have.
- Limited partners** Partners with limited liability. Limited partnerships in hedge and private equity funds are typically restricted to investors who are expected to understand and to be able to assume the risks associated with the investments.
- Line chart** In technical analysis, a plot of price data, typically closing prices, with a line connecting the points.
- Linear interpolation** The estimation of an unknown value on the basis of two known values that bracket it, using a straight line between the two known values.
- Linear scale** A scale in which equal distances correspond to equal absolute amounts. Also called *arithmetic scale*.
- Linker** See *inflation-linked bond*.
- Liquid market** Said of a market in which traders can buy or sell with low total transaction costs when they want to trade.
- Liquidation** To sell the assets of a company, division, or subsidiary piecemeal, typically because of bankruptcy; the form of bankruptcy that allows for the orderly satisfaction of creditors' claims after which the company ceases to exist.
- Liquidity** The ability to purchase or sell an asset quickly and easily at a price close to fair market value. The ability to meet short-term obligations using assets that are the most readily converted into cash.
- Liquidity premium** An extra return that compensates investors for the risk of loss relative to an investment's fair value if the investment needs to be converted to cash quickly.
- Liquidity ratios** Financial ratios measuring the company's ability to meet its short-term obligations.
- Liquidity risk** The risk that a financial instrument cannot be purchased or sold without a significant concession in price due to the size of the market.
- Liquidity trap** A condition in which the demand for money becomes infinitely elastic (horizontal demand curve) so that injections of money into the economy will not lower interest rates or affect real activity.
- Load fund** A mutual fund in which, in addition to the annual fee, a percentage fee is charged to invest in the fund and/or for redemptions from the fund.
- Loan-to-value ratio** The ratio of a property's purchase price to the amount of its mortgage.
- Lockbox system** A payment system in which customer payments are mailed to a post office box and the banking institution retrieves and deposits these payments several times a day, enabling the company to have use of the fund sooner than in a centralized system in which customer payments are sent to the company.
- Locked limit** A condition in the futures markets in which a transaction cannot take place because the price would be beyond the limits.
- Lockup period** The minimum period before investors are allowed to make withdrawals or redeem shares from a fund.
- Logarithmic scale** A scale in which equal distances represent equal proportional changes in the underlying quantity.
- London interbank offered rate (Libor)** Collective name for multiple rates at which a select set of banks believe they could borrow unsecured funds from other banks in the London interbank market for different currencies and different borrowing periods ranging from overnight to one year.
- Long** The buyer of a derivative contract. Also refers to the position of owning a derivative.
- Long-lived assets** Assets that are expected to provide economic benefits over a future period of time, typically greater than one year. Also called *long-term assets*.
- Long position** A position in an asset or contract in which one owns the asset or has an exercisable right under the contract.
- Long-run average total cost** The curve describing average total cost when no costs are considered fixed.
- Long-term contract** A contract that spans a number of accounting periods.
- Longitudinal data** Observations on characteristic(s) of the same observational unit through time.
- Look-ahead bias** A bias caused by using information that was unavailable on the test date.
- Loss aversion** The tendency of people to dislike losses more than they like comparable gains.
- Loss severity** Portion of a bond's value (including unpaid interest) an investor loses in the event of default.
- Losses** Asset outflows not directly related to the ordinary activities of the business.
- Lower bound** The lowest possible value of an option.
- M^2** A measure of what a portfolio would have returned if it had taken on the same total risk as the market index.
- Macaulay duration** The approximate amount of time a bond would have to be held for the market discount rate at purchase to be realized if there is a single change in interest rate. It indicates the point in time when the coupon reinvestment and price effects of a change in yield-to-maturity offset each other.
- Machine learning** Diverse approaches by which computers are programmed to improve performance in specified tasks with experience.
- Macroeconomics** The branch of economics that deals with aggregate economic quantities, such as national output and national income.
- Maintenance covenants** Covenants in bank loan agreements that require the borrower to satisfy certain financial ratio tests while the loan is outstanding.

- Maintenance margin** The minimum amount that is required by a futures clearinghouse to maintain a margin account and to protect against default. Participants whose margin balances drop below the required maintenance margin must replenish their accounts.
- Maintenance margin requirement** The margin requirement on any day other than the first day of a transaction.
- Management buy-ins** Leveraged buyout in which the current management team is being replaced and the acquiring team will be involved in managing the company.
- Management buyout** (MBO) A leveraged buyout event in which a group of investors consisting primarily of the company's existing management purchase at least controlling interest of its outstanding shares. They may purchase all shares and take the company private.
- Management fee** A fee based on assets under management or committed capital, as applicable, also called a *base fee*.
- Manufacturing resource planning (MRP)** The incorporation of production planning into inventory management. A MRP analysis provides both a materials acquisition schedule and a production schedule.
- Margin** The amount of money that a trader deposits in a margin account. The term is derived from the stock market practice in which an investor borrows a portion of the money required to purchase a certain amount of stock. In futures markets, there is no borrowing so the margin is more of a down payment or performance bond.
- Margin bond** A cash deposit required by the clearinghouse from the participants to a contract to provide a credit guarantee. Also called a *performance bond*.
- Margin call** A request for the short to deposit additional funds to bring their balance up to the initial margin.
- Margin loan** Money borrowed from a broker to purchase securities.
- Marginal cost** The cost of producing an additional unit of a good.
- Marginal probability** The probability of an event *not* conditioned on another event.
- Marginal product** Measures the productivity of each unit of input and is calculated by taking the difference in total product from adding another unit of input (assuming other resource quantities are held constant).
- Marginal propensity to consume** The proportion of an additional unit of disposable income that is consumed or spent; the change in consumption for a small change in income.
- Marginal propensity to save** The proportion of an additional unit of disposable income that is saved (not spent).
- Marginal revenue** The change in total revenue divided by the change in quantity sold; simply, the additional revenue from selling one more unit.
- Marginal value curve** A curve describing the highest price consumers are willing to pay for each additional unit of a good.
- Mark to market** The revaluation of a financial asset or liability to its current market value or fair value.
- Market** A means of bringing buyers and sellers together to exchange goods and services.
- Market anomaly** Change in the price or return of a security that cannot directly be linked to current relevant information known in the market or to the release of new information into the market.
- Market bid-ask spread** The difference between the best bid and the best offer.
- Market-capitalization weighting** An index weighting method in which the weight assigned to each constituent security is determined by dividing its market capitalization by the total market capitalization (sum of the market capitalization) of all securities in the index. Also called *value weighting*.
- Market discount rate** The rate of return required by investors given the risk of the investment in a bond; also called the *required yield* or the *required rate of return*.
- Market float** The number of shares that are available to the investing public.
- Market liquidity risk** The risk that the price at which investors can actually transact—buying or selling—may differ from the price indicated in the market.
- Market model** A regression equation that specifies a linear relationship between the return on a security (or portfolio) and the return on a broad market index.
- Market multiple models** Valuation models based on share price multiples or enterprise value multiples.
- Market-on-close** An execution instruction specifying that an order can only be filled at the close of trading.
- Market order** Instructions to a broker or exchange to obtain the best price immediately available when filling an order.
- Market-oriented investors** With reference to equity investors, investors whose investment disciplines cannot be clearly categorized as value or growth.
- Market rate of interest** The rate demanded by purchases of bonds, given the risks associated with future cash payment obligations of the particular bond issue.
- Market risk** The risk that arises from movements in interest rates, stock prices, exchange rates, and commodity prices.
- Market value** The price at which an asset or security can currently be bought or sold in an open market.
- Marketable limit order** A buy limit order in which the limit price is placed above the best offer, or a sell limit order in which the limit price is placed below the best bid. Such orders generally will partially or completely fill right away.
- Markowitz efficient frontier** The graph of the set of portfolios offering the maximum expected return for their level of risk (standard deviation of return).
- Matching principle** The accounting principle that expenses should be recognized when the associated revenue is recognized.
- Matching strategy** An active investment strategy that includes intentional matching of the timing of cash outflows with investment maturities.
- Matrix pricing** Process of estimating the market discount rate and price of a bond based on the quoted or flat prices of more frequently traded comparable bonds.
- Maturity premium** An extra return that compensates investors for the increased sensitivity of the market value of debt to a change in market interest rates as maturity is extended.
- Maturity structure** A factor explaining the differences in yields on similar bonds; also called *term structure*.
- Mean absolute deviation** With reference to a sample, the mean of the absolute values of deviations from the sample mean.
- Mean excess return** The average rate of return in excess of the risk-free rate.
- Mean-variance analysis** An approach to portfolio analysis using expected means, variances, and covariances of asset returns.
- Measure of central tendency** A quantitative measure that specifies where data are centered.

- Measure of value** A standard for measuring value; a function of money.
- Measurement scales** A scheme of measuring differences. The four types of measurement scales are nominal, ordinal, interval, and ratio.
- Measures of location** A quantitative measure that describes the location or distribution of data; includes not only measures of central tendency but also other measures such as percentiles.
- Median** The value of the middle item of a set of items that has been sorted into ascending or descending order; the 50th percentile.
- Medium of exchange** Any asset that can be used to purchase goods and services or to repay debts; a function of money.
- Medium-term note** A corporate bond offered continuously to investors by an agent of the issuer, designed to fill the funding gap between commercial paper and long-term bonds.
- Menu costs** A cost of inflation in which businesses constantly have to incur the costs of changing the advertised prices of their goods and services.
- Mesokurtic** Describes a distribution with kurtosis identical to that of the normal distribution.
- Mezzanine financing** Debt or preferred shares with a relationship to common equity resulting from a feature such as attached warrants or conversion options. Mezzanine financing is subordinate to both senior and high-yield debt. It is referred to as mezzanine because of its location on the balance sheet.
- Microeconomics** The branch of economics that deals with markets and decision making of individual economic units, including consumers and businesses.
- Minimum efficient scale** The smallest output that a firm can produce such that its long-run average total cost is minimized.
- Minimum-variance portfolio** The portfolio with the minimum variance for each given level of expected return.
- Minority shareholders** A particular shareholder or block of shareholders holding a small proportion of a company's outstanding shares, resulting in a limited ability to exercise control in voting activities.
- Minsky moment** Named for Hyman Minsky: A point in a business cycle when, after individuals become overextended in borrowing to finance speculative investments, people start realizing that something is likely to go wrong and a panic ensues leading to asset sell-offs.
- Mismatching strategy** An active investment strategy whereby the timing of cash outflows is not matched with investment maturities.
- Modal interval** With reference to grouped data, the most frequently occurring interval.
- Mode** The most frequently occurring value in a set of observations.
- Modern portfolio theory** (MPT) The analysis of rational portfolio choices based on the efficient use of risk.
- Modified duration** A measure of the percentage price change of a bond given a change in its yield-to-maturity.
- Momentum oscillators** A graphical representation of market sentiment that is constructed from price data and calculated so that it oscillates either between a high and a low or around some number.
- Monetarists** Economists who believe that the rate of growth of the money supply is the primary determinant of the rate of inflation.
- Monetary policy** Actions taken by a nation's central bank to affect aggregate output and prices through changes in bank reserves, reserve requirements, or its target interest rate.
- Monetary transmission mechanism** The process whereby a central bank's interest rate gets transmitted through the economy and ultimately affects the rate of increase of prices.
- Monetary union** An economic union in which the members adopt a common currency.
- Money** A generally accepted medium of exchange and unit of account.
- Money convexity** For a bond, the annual or approximate convexity multiplied by the full price.
- Money creation** The process by which changes in bank reserves translate into changes in the money supply.
- Money duration** A measure of the price change in units of the currency in which the bond is denominated given a change in its yield-to-maturity.
- Money market** The market for short-term debt instruments (one-year maturity or less).
- Money market securities** Fixed-income securities with maturities at issuance of one year or less.
- Money market yield** A yield on a basis comparable to the quoted yield on an interest-bearing money market instrument that pays interest on a 360-day basis; the annualized holding period yield, assuming a 360-day year.
- Money multiplier** Describes how a change in reserves is expected to affect the money supply; in its simplest form, 1 divided by the reserve requirement.
- Money neutrality** The thesis that an increase in the money supply leads in the long-run to an increase in the price level, while leaving real variables like output and employment unaffected.
- Money-weighted return** The internal rate of return on a portfolio, taking account of all cash flows.
- Monyness** The relationship between the price of the underlying and an option's exercise price.
- Monopolistic competition** Highly competitive form of imperfect competition; the competitive characteristic is a notably large number of firms, while the monopoly aspect is the result of product differentiation.
- Monopoly** In pure monopoly markets, there are no substitutes for the given product or service. There is a single seller, which exercises considerable power over pricing and output decisions.
- Monte Carlo simulation** An approach to estimating a probability distribution of outcomes to examine what might happen if particular risks are faced. This method is widely used in the sciences as well as in business to study a variety of problems.
- Moral principles** Beliefs regarding what is good, acceptable, or obligatory behavior and what is bad, unacceptable, or forbidden behavior.
- Mortgage-backed securities** Debt obligations that represent claims to the cash flows from pools of mortgage loans, most commonly on residential property.
- Mortgage loan** A loan secured by the collateral of some specified real estate property that obliges the borrower to make a predetermined series of payments to the lender.
- Mortgage pass-through security** A security created when one or more holders of mortgages form a pool of mortgages and sell shares or participation certificates in the pool.
- Mortgage rate** The interest rate on a mortgage loan; also called *contract rate* or *note rate*.

- Moving average** The average of the closing price of a security over a specified number of periods. With each new period, the average is recalculated.
- Moving-average convergence/divergence oscillator** (MACD) A momentum oscillator that is constructed based on the difference between short-term and long-term moving averages of a security's price.
- Multi-factor model** A model that explains a variable in terms of the values of a set of factors.
- Multi-market indexes** Comprised of indexes from different countries, designed to represent multiple security markets.
- Multi-step format** With respect to the format of the income statement, a format that presents a subtotal for gross profit (revenue minus cost of goods sold).
- Multilateral trading facilities** See *alternative trading systems*.
- Multinational corporation** A company operating in more than one country or having subsidiary firms in more than one country.
- Multiplication rule for probabilities** The rule that the joint probability of events *A* and *B* equals the probability of *A* given *B* times the probability of *B*.
- Multiplier models** Valuation models based on share price multiples or enterprise value multiples.
- Multivariate distribution** A probability distribution that specifies the probabilities for a group of related random variables.
- Multivariate normal distribution** A probability distribution for a group of random variables that is completely defined by the means and variances of the variables plus all the correlations between pairs of the variables.
- Muni** A type of non-sovereign bond issued by a state or local government in the United States. It very often (but not always) offers income tax exemptions.
- Municipal bonds** A type of non-sovereign bond issued by a state or local government in the United States. It very often (but not always) offers income tax exemptions.
- Mutual fund** A professionally managed investment pool in which investors in the fund typically each have a pro-rata claim on the income and value of the fund.
- Mutually exclusive projects** Mutually exclusive projects compete directly with each other. For example, if Projects A and B are mutually exclusive, you can choose A or B, but you cannot choose both.
- n* Factorial** For a positive integer *n*, the product of the first *n* positive integers; 0 factorial equals 1 by definition. *n* factorial is written as *n!*.
- Narrow money** The notes and coins in circulation in an economy, plus other very highly liquid deposits.
- Nash equilibrium** When two or more participants in a non-cooperative game have no incentive to deviate from their respective equilibrium strategies given their opponent's strategies.
- National income** The income received by all factors of production used in the generation of final output. National income equals gross domestic product (or, in some countries, gross national product) minus the capital consumption allowance and a statistical discrepancy.
- Natural language processing** Computer programs developed to analyze and interpret human language.
- Natural rate of unemployment** Effective unemployment rate, below which pressure emerges in labor markets.
- Negative screening** An ESG implementation approach that excludes certain sectors or companies that deviate from an investor's accepted standards. Also called *exclusionary screening* or *norms-based screening*.
- Neo-Keynesians** A group of dynamic general equilibrium models that assume slow-to-adjust prices and wages.
- Net book value** The remaining (undepreciated) balance of an asset's purchase cost. For liabilities, the face value of a bond minus any unamortized discount, or plus any unamortized premium.
- Net exports** The difference between the value of a country's exports and the value of its imports (i.e., value of exports minus imports).
- Net income** The difference between revenue and expenses; what remains after subtracting all expenses (including depreciation, interest, and taxes) from revenue.
- Net operating cycle** An estimate of the average time that elapses between paying suppliers for materials and collecting cash from the subsequent sale of goods produced.
- Net present value** (NPV) The present value of an investment's cash inflows (benefits) minus the present value of its cash outflows (costs).
- Net profit margin** An indicator of profitability, calculated as net income divided by revenue; indicates how much of each dollar of revenues is left after all costs and expenses. Also called *profit margin* or *return on sales*.
- Net realisable value** Estimated selling price in the ordinary course of business less the estimated costs necessary to make the sale.
- Net revenue** Revenue after adjustments (e.g., for estimated returns or for amounts unlikely to be collected).
- Net tax rate** The tax rate net of transfer payments.
- Neural networks** Computer programs based on how our own brains learn and process information.
- Neutral rate of interest** The rate of interest that neither spurs on nor slows down the underlying economy.
- New classical macroeconomics** An approach to macroeconomics that seeks the macroeconomic conclusions of individuals maximizing utility on the basis of rational expectations and companies maximizing profits.
- New Keynesians** A group of dynamic general equilibrium models that assume slow-to-adjust prices and wages.
- No-load fund** A mutual fund in which there is no fee for investing in the fund or for redeeming fund shares, although there is an annual fee based on a percentage of the fund's net asset value.
- Node** Each value on a binomial tree from which successive moves or outcomes branch.
- Nominal GDP** The value of goods and services measured at current prices.
- Nominal rate** A rate of interest based on the security's face value.
- Nominal risk-free interest rate** The sum of the real risk-free interest rate and the inflation premium.
- Nominal scale** A measurement scale that categorizes data but does not rank them.
- Non-accelerating inflation rate of unemployment** Effective unemployment rate, below which pressure emerges in labor markets.
- Non-agency RMBS** In the United States, securities issued by private entities that are not guaranteed by a federal agency or a GSE.

- Non-cumulative preference shares** Preference shares for which dividends that are not paid in the current or subsequent periods are forfeited permanently (instead of being accrued and paid at a later date).
- Non-current assets** Assets that are expected to benefit the company over an extended period of time (usually more than one year).
- Non-current liabilities** Obligations that broadly represent a probable sacrifice of economic benefits in periods generally greater than one year in the future.
- Non-cyclical** A company whose performance is largely independent of the business cycle.
- Non-deliverable forwards** Cash-settled forward contracts, used predominately with respect to foreign exchange forwards. Also called *contracts for differences*.
- Non-financial risks** Risks that arise from sources other than changes in the external financial markets, such as changes in accounting rules, legal environment, or tax rates.
- Non-participating preference shares** Preference shares that do not entitle shareholders to share in the profits of the company. Instead, shareholders are only entitled to receive a fixed dividend payment and the par value of the shares in the event of liquidation.
- Non-recourse loan** Loan in which the lender does not have a shortfall claim against the borrower, so the lender can look only to the property to recover the outstanding mortgage balance.
- Non-renewable resources** Finite resources that are depleted once they are consumed, such as oil and coal.
- Non-sovereign bonds** A bond issued by a government below the national level, such as a province, region, state, or city.
- Non-sovereign government bonds** A bond issued by a government below the national level, such as a province, region, state, or city.
- Nonconventional cash flow** In a nonconventional cash flow pattern, the initial outflow is not followed by inflows only, but the cash flows can flip from positive (inflows) to negative (outflows) again (or even change signs several times).
- Nonparametric test** A test that is not concerned with a parameter, or that makes minimal assumptions about the population from which a sample comes.
- Nonsystematic risk** Unique risk that is local or limited to a particular asset or industry that need not affect assets outside of that asset class.
- Normal distribution** A continuous, symmetric probability distribution that is completely described by its mean and its variance.
- Normal goods** Goods that are consumed in greater quantities as income increases.
- Normal profit** The level of accounting profit needed to just cover the implicit opportunity costs ignored in accounting costs.
- Norms-based screening** An ESG implementation approach that excludes certain sectors or companies that deviate from an investor's accepted standards. Also called *negative screening* or *exclusionary screening*.
- Notching** Ratings adjustment methodology where specific issues from the same borrower may be assigned different credit ratings.
- Note rate** See *mortgage rate*.
- Notes payable** Amounts owed by a business to creditors as a result of borrowings that are evidenced by (short-term) loan agreements.
- Notice period** The length of time (typically 30 to 90 days) in advance that investors may be required to notify a fund of their intent to redeem.
- Notional principal** An imputed principal amount.
- NPV rule** An investment decision rule that states that an investment should be undertaken if its NPV is positive but not undertaken if its NPV is negative.
- Number of days of inventory** An activity ratio equal to the number of days in a period divided by the inventory ratio for the period; an indication of the number of days a company ties up funds in inventory.
- Number of days of payables** An activity ratio equal to the number of days in a period divided by the payables turnover ratio for the period; an estimate of the average number of days it takes a company to pay its suppliers.
- Number of days of receivables** Estimate of the average number of days it takes to collect on credit accounts.
- Objective probabilities** Probabilities that generally do not vary from person to person; includes a priori and objective probabilities.
- Off-the-run** Seasoned government bonds are off-the-run securities; they are not the most recently issued or the most actively traded.
- Offer** The price at which a dealer or trader is willing to sell an asset, typically qualified by a maximum quantity (ask size).
- Official interest rate** An interest rate that a central bank sets and announces publicly; normally the rate at which it is willing to lend money to the commercial banks. Also called *official policy rate* or *policy rate*.
- Official policy rate** An interest rate that a central bank sets and announces publicly; normally the rate at which it is willing to lend money to the commercial banks.
- Oligopoly** Market structure with a relatively small number of firms supplying the market.
- On-the-run** The most recently issued and most actively traded sovereign securities.
- One-sided hypothesis test** A test in which the null hypothesis is rejected only if the evidence indicates that the population parameter is greater than (smaller than) θ_0 . The alternative hypothesis also has one side.
- One-tailed hypothesis test** A test in which the null hypothesis is rejected only if the evidence indicates that the population parameter is greater than (smaller than) θ_0 . The alternative hypothesis also has one side.
- Open economy** An economy that trades with other countries.
- Open-end fund** A mutual fund that accepts new investment money and issues additional shares at a value equal to the net asset value of the fund at the time of investment.
- Open interest** The number of outstanding contracts in a clearinghouse at any given time. The open interest figure changes daily as some parties open up new positions, while other parties offset their old positions.
- Open market operations** The purchase or sale of bonds by the national central bank to implement monetary policy. The bonds traded are usually sovereign bonds issued by the national government.
- Operating activities** Activities that are part of the day-to-day business functioning of an entity, such as selling inventory and providing services.
- Operating breakeven** The number of units produced and sold at which the company's operating profit is zero (revenues = operating costs).
- Operating cash flow** The net amount of cash provided from operating activities.

- Operating cycle** A measure of the time needed to convert raw materials into cash from a sale; it consists of the number of days of inventory and the number of days of receivables.
- Operating efficiency ratios** Ratios that measure how efficiently a company performs day-to-day tasks, such as the collection of receivables and management of inventory.
- Operating lease** An agreement allowing the lessee to use some asset for a period of time; essentially a rental.
- Operating leverage** The use of fixed costs in operations.
- Operating profit** A company's profits on its usual business activities before deducting taxes. Also called *operating income*.
- Operating profit margin** A profitability ratio calculated as operating income (i.e., income before interest and taxes) divided by revenue. Also called *operating margin*.
- Operating risk** The risk attributed to the operating cost structure, in particular the use of fixed costs in operations; the risk arising from the mix of fixed and variable costs; the risk that a company's operations may be severely affected by environmental, social, and governance risk factors.
- Operational independence** A bank's ability to execute monetary policy and set interest rates in the way it thought would best meet the inflation target.
- Operational risk** The risk of loss from failures in a company's systems and procedures.
- Operationally efficient** Said of a market, a financial system, or an economy that has relatively low transaction costs.
- Opportunity cost** The value that investors forgo by choosing a particular course of action; the value of something in its best alternative use.
- Option** A financial instrument that gives one party the right, but not the obligation, to buy or sell an underlying asset from or to another party at a fixed price over a specific period of time. Also referred to as *contingent claim* or *option contract*.
- Option-adjusted price** The value of the embedded option plus the flat price of the bond.
- Option-adjusted spread** $OAS = Z\text{-spread} - \text{Option value}$ (in basis points per year).
- Option-adjusted yield** The required market discount rate whereby the price is adjusted for the value of the embedded option.
- Option contract** See *option*.
- Option premium** The amount of money a buyer pays and seller receives to engage in an option transaction.
- Order** A specification of what instrument to trade, how much to trade, and whether to buy or sell.
- Order-driven markets** A market (generally an auction market) that uses rules to arrange trades based on the orders that traders submit; in their pure form, such markets do not make use of dealers.
- Order precedence hierarchy** With respect to the execution of orders to trade, a set of rules that determines which orders execute before other orders.
- Ordinal scale** A measurement scale that sorts data into categories that are ordered (ranked) with respect to some characteristic.
- Ordinary annuity** An annuity with a first cash flow that is paid one period from the present.
- Ordinary shares** Equity shares that are subordinate to all other types of equity (e.g., preferred equity). Also called *common stock* or *common shares*.
- Organized exchange** A securities marketplace where buyers and seller can meet to arrange their trades.
- Other comprehensive income** Items of comprehensive income that are not reported on the income statement; comprehensive income minus net income.
- Out-of-sample test** A test of a strategy or model using a sample outside the time period on which the strategy or model was developed.
- Out of the money** Options that, if exercised, would require the payment of more money than the value received and therefore would not be currently exercised.
- Outcome** A possible value of a random variable.
- Over-the-counter (OTC) markets** A decentralized market where buy and sell orders initiated from various locations are matched through a communications network.
- Overbought** A market condition in which market sentiment is thought to be unsustainably bullish.
- Overcollateralization** Form of internal credit enhancement that refers to the process of posting more collateral than needed to obtain or secure financing.
- Overfitting** An undesirable result from fitting a model so closely to a dataset that it does not perform well on new data.
- Oversold** A market condition in which market sentiment is thought to be unsustainably bearish.
- Own price** The price of a good or service itself (as opposed to the price of something else).
- Own-price elasticity of demand** The percentage change in quantity demanded for a percentage change in good's own price, holding all other things constant.
- Owners' equity** The excess of assets over liabilities; the residual interest of shareholders in the assets of an entity after deducting the entity's liabilities. Also called *shareholders' equity*.
- Paasche index** An index formula using the current composition of a basket of products.
- Paired comparisons test** A statistical test for differences based on paired observations drawn from samples that are dependent on each other.
- Paired observations** Observations that are dependent on each other.
- Pairs arbitrage trade** A trade in two closely related stocks involving the short sale of one and the purchase of the other.
- Panel data** Observations through time on a single characteristic of multiple observational units.
- Par curve** A sequence of yields-to-maturity such that each bond is priced at par value. The bonds are assumed to have the same currency, credit risk, liquidity, tax status, and annual yields stated for the same periodicity.
- Par value** The amount of principal on a bond.
- Parallel shift** A parallel yield curve shift implies that all rates change by the same amount in the same direction.
- Parameter** A descriptive measure computed from or used to describe a population of data, conventionally represented by Greek letters.
- Parametric test** Any test (or procedure) concerned with parameters or whose validity depends on assumptions concerning the population generating the sample.
- Pari passu** On an equal footing.
- Partial duration** See *key rate duration*.
- Participating preference shares** Preference shares that entitle shareholders to receive the standard preferred dividend plus the opportunity to receive an additional dividend if the company's profits exceed a pre-specified level.

- Pass-through rate** The coupon rate of a mortgage pass-through security.
- Passive investment** A buy and hold approach in which an investor does not make portfolio changes based on short-term expectations of changing market or security performance.
- Passive strategy** In reference to short-term cash management, it is an investment strategy characterized by simple decision rules for making daily investments.
- Payable date** The day that the company actually mails out (or electronically transfers) a dividend payment.
- Payment date** The day that the company actually mails out (or electronically transfers) a dividend payment.
- Payments system** The system for the transfer of money.
- Peak** The highest point of a business cycle.
- Peer group** A group of companies engaged in similar business activities whose economics and valuation are influenced by closely related factors.
- Pennants** A technical analysis continuation pattern formed by trendlines that converge to form a triangle, typically over a short period.
- Per capita real GDP** Real GDP divided by the size of the population, often used as a measure of the average standard of living in a country.
- Per unit contribution margin** The amount that each unit sold contributes to covering fixed costs—that is, the difference between the price per unit and the variable cost per unit.
- Percentage-of-completion** A method of revenue recognition in which, in each accounting period, the company estimates what percentage of the contract is complete and then reports that percentage of the total contract revenue in its income statement.
- Percentiles** Quantiles that divide a distribution into 100 equal parts.
- Perfect competition** A market structure in which the individual firm has virtually no impact on market price, because it is assumed to be a very small seller among a very large number of firms selling essentially identical products.
- Perfectly elastic** When the quantity demanded or supplied of a given good is infinitely sensitive to a change in the value of a specified variable (e.g., price).
- Perfectly inelastic** When the quantity demanded or supplied of a given good is completely insensitive to a change in the value of a specified variable (e.g., price).
- Performance appraisal** The evaluation of risk-adjusted performance; the evaluation of investment skill.
- Performance bond** See *margin bond*.
- Performance evaluation** The measurement and assessment of the outcomes of investment management decisions.
- Performance fee** Fees paid to the general partner from the limited partner(s) based on realized profits.
- Performance measurement** The calculation of returns in a logical and consistent manner.
- Period costs** Costs (e.g., executives' salaries) that cannot be directly matched with the timing of revenues and which are thus expensed immediately.
- Periodicity** The assumed number of periods in the year, typically matches the frequency of coupon payments.
- Permanent differences** Differences between tax and financial reporting of revenue (expenses) that will not be reversed at some future date. These result in a difference between the company's effective tax rate and statutory tax rate and do not result in a deferred tax item.
- Permissioned networks** Networks that are fully open only to select participants on a DLT network.
- Permissionless networks** Networks that are fully open to any user on a DLT network.
- Permutation** An ordered listing.
- Perpetual bonds** Bonds with no stated maturity date.
- Perpetuity** A perpetual annuity, or a set of never-ending level sequential cash flows, with the first cash flow occurring one period from now. A bond that does not mature.
- Personal consumption expenditures** All domestic personal consumption; the basis for a price index for such consumption called the PCE price index.
- Personal disposable income** Equal to personal income less personal taxes.
- Personal income** A broad measure of household income that includes all income received by households, whether earned or unearned; measures the ability of consumers to make purchases.
- Plain vanilla bond** Bond that makes periodic, fixed coupon payments during the bond's life and a lump-sum payment of principal at maturity. Also called *conventional bond*.
- Platykurtic** Describes a distribution that has relatively less weight in the tails than the normal distribution.
- Point and figure chart** A technical analysis chart that is constructed with columns of X's alternating with columns of O's such that the horizontal axis represents only the number of changes in price without reference to time or volume.
- Point estimate** A single numerical estimate of an unknown quantity, such as a population parameter.
- Point of sale (POS)** Systems that capture transaction data at the physical location in which the sale is made.
- Policy rate** An interest rate that a central bank sets and announces publicly; normally the rate at which it is willing to lend money to the commercial banks.
- Population** All members of a specified group.
- Population mean** The arithmetic mean value of a population; the arithmetic mean of all the observations or values in the population.
- Population standard deviation** A measure of dispersion relating to a population in the same unit of measurement as the observations, calculated as the positive square root of the population variance.
- Population variance** A measure of dispersion relating to a population, calculated as the mean of the squared deviations around the population mean.
- Portfolio company** In private equity, the company in which the private equity fund is investing.
- Portfolio demand for money** The demand to hold speculative money balances based on the potential opportunities or risks that are inherent in other financial instruments.
- Portfolio planning** The process of creating a plan for building a portfolio that is expected to satisfy a client's investment objectives.
- Position** The quantity of an asset that an entity owns or owes.
- Positive screening** An ESG implementation approach that seeks to identify companies that embrace desired ESG-related principles.
- Posterior probability** An updated probability that reflects or comes after new information.
- Potential GDP** The level of real GDP that can be produced at full employment; measures the productive capacity of the economy.
- Power of a test** The probability of correctly rejecting the null—that is, rejecting the null hypothesis when it is false.

- Precautionary money balances** Money held to provide a buffer against unforeseen events that might require money.
- Precautionary stocks** A level of inventory beyond anticipated needs that provides a cushion in the event that it takes longer to replenish inventory than expected or in the case of greater than expected demand.
- Preference shares** A type of equity interest which ranks above common shares with respect to the payment of dividends and the distribution of the company's net assets upon liquidation. They have characteristics of both debt and equity securities. Also called *preferred stock*.
- Preferred stock** See *preference shares*.
- Premium** In the case of bonds, premium refers to the amount by which a bond is priced above its face (par) value. In the case of an option, the amount paid for the option contract.
- Prepaid expense** A normal operating expense that has been paid in advance of when it is due.
- Prepayment option** Contractual provision that entitles the borrower to prepay all or part of the outstanding mortgage principal prior to the scheduled due date when the principal must be repaid. Also called *early repayment option*.
- Prepayment penalty mortgages** Mortgages that stipulate a monetary penalty if a borrower prepays within a certain time period after the mortgage is originated.
- Prepayment risk** The uncertainty that the timing of the actual cash flows will be different from the scheduled cash flows as set forth in the loan agreement due to the borrowers' ability to alter payments, usually to take advantage of interest rate movements.
- Present value (PV)** The present discounted value of future cash flows: For assets, the present discounted value of the future net cash inflows that the asset is expected to generate; for liabilities, the present discounted value of the future net cash outflows that are expected to be required to settle the liabilities.
- Present value models** Valuation models that estimate the intrinsic value of a security as the present value of the future benefits expected to be received from the security. Also called *discounted cash flow models*.
- Pretax margin** A profitability ratio calculated as earnings before taxes divided by revenue.
- Price elasticity of demand** Measures the percentage change in the quantity demanded, given a percentage change in the price of a given product.
- Price index** Represents the average prices of a basket of goods and services.
- Price limits** Limits imposed by a futures exchange on the price change that can occur from one day to the next.
- Price multiple** A ratio that compares the share price with some sort of monetary flow or value to allow evaluation of the relative worth of a company's stock.
- Price priority** The principle that the highest priced buy orders and the lowest priced sell orders execute first.
- Price relative** A ratio of an ending price over a beginning price; it is equal to 1 plus the holding period return on the asset.
- Price return** Measures *only* the price appreciation or percentage change in price of the securities in an index or portfolio.
- Price return index** An index that reflects *only* the price appreciation or percentage change in price of the constituent securities. Also called *price index*.
- Price stability** In economics, refers to an inflation rate that is low on average and not subject to wide fluctuation.
- Price takers** Producers that must accept whatever price the market dictates.
- Price to book value** A valuation ratio calculated as price per share divided by book value per share.
- Price to cash flow** A valuation ratio calculated as price per share divided by cash flow per share.
- Price to earnings ratio** (P/E ratio or P/E) The ratio of share price to earnings per share.
- Price to sales** A valuation ratio calculated as price per share divided by sales per share.
- Price value of a basis point** A version of money duration, it is an estimate of the change in the full price of a bond given a 1 basis point change in the yield-to-maturity.
- Price weighting** An index weighting method in which the weight assigned to each constituent security is determined by dividing its price by the sum of all the prices of the constituent securities.
- Priced risk** Risk for which investors demand compensation for bearing (e.g. equity risk, company-specific factors, macroeconomic factors).
- Primary bond markets** Markets in which issuers first sell bonds to investors to raise capital.
- Primary capital markets (primary markets)** The market where securities are first sold and the issuers receive the proceeds.
- Primary dealers** Financial institutions that are authorized to deal in new issues of sovereign bonds and that serve primarily as trading counterparties of the office responsible for issuing sovereign bonds.
- Primary market** The market where securities are first sold and the issuers receive the proceeds.
- Prime brokers** Brokers that provide services including custody, administration, lending, short borrowing, and trading.
- Principal** The amount of funds originally invested in a project or instrument; the face value to be paid at maturity.
- Principal-agent relationship** A relationship in which a principal hires an agent to perform a particular task or service; also known as an *agency relationship*.
- Principal amount** Amount that an issuer agrees to repay the debt holders on the maturity date.
- Principal business activity** The business activity from which a company derives a majority of its revenues and/or earnings.
- Principal value** Amount that an issuer agrees to repay the debt holders on the maturity date.
- Principle of no arbitrage** See *arbitrage-free pricing*.
- Prior probabilities** Probabilities reflecting beliefs prior to the arrival of new information.
- Priority of claims** Priority of payment, with the most senior or highest ranking debt having the first claim on the cash flows and assets of the issuer.
- Private equity securities** Securities that are not listed on public exchanges and have no active secondary market. They are issued primarily to institutional investors via non-public offerings, such as private placements.
- Private investment in public equity** An investment in the equity of a publicly traded firm that is made at a discount to the market value of the firm's shares.
- Private placement** Typically a non-underwritten, unregistered offering of securities that are sold only to an investor or a small group of investors. It can be accomplished directly between the issuer and the investor(s) or through an investment bank.
- Probability** A number between 0 and 1 describing the chance that a stated event will occur.

- Probability density function** A function with non-negative values such that probability can be described by areas under the curve graphing the function.
- Probability distribution** A distribution that specifies the probabilities of a random variable's possible outcomes.
- Probability function** A function that specifies the probability that the random variable takes on a specific value.
- Producer price index** Reflects the price changes experienced by domestic producers in a country.
- Production function** Provides the quantitative link between the level of output that the economy can produce and the inputs used in the production process.
- Productivity** The amount of output produced by workers in a given period of time—for example, output per hour worked; measures the efficiency of labor.
- Profit** The return that owners of a company receive for the use of their capital and the assumption of financial risk when making their investments.
- Profit and loss (P&L) statement** A financial statement that provides information about a company's profitability over a stated period of time.
- Profit margin** An indicator of profitability, calculated as net income divided by revenue; indicates how much of each dollar of revenues is left after all costs and expenses.
- Profitability ratios** Ratios that measure a company's ability to generate profitable sales from its resources (assets).
- Project sequencing** To defer the decision to invest in a future project until the outcome of some or all of a current project is known. Projects are sequenced through time, so that investing in a project creates the option to invest in future projects.
- Promissory note** A written promise to pay a certain amount of money on demand.
- Property, plant, and equipment** Tangible assets that are expected to be used for more than one period in either the production or supply of goods or services, or for administrative purposes.
- Prospectus** The document that describes the terms of a new bond issue and helps investors perform their analysis on the issue.
- Protective put** An option strategy in which a long position in an asset is combined with a long position in a put.
- Proxy contest** Corporate takeover mechanism in which shareholders are persuaded to vote for a group seeking a controlling position on a company's board of directors.
- Proxy voting** A process that enables shareholders who are unable to attend a meeting to authorize another individual to vote on their behalf.
- Pseudo-random numbers** Numbers produced by random number generators.
- Public offer** See *public offering*.
- Public offering** An offering of securities in which any member of the public may buy the securities. Also called *public offer*.
- Pull on liquidity** When disbursements are paid too quickly or trade credit availability is limited, requiring companies to expend funds before they receive funds from sales that could cover the liability.
- Pure discount bonds** See *zero-coupon bonds*.
- Pure discount instruments** Instruments that pay interest as the difference between the amount borrowed and the amount paid back.
- Pure-play method** A method for estimating the beta for a company or project; it requires using a comparable company's beta and adjusting it for financial leverage differences.
- Put** An option that gives the holder the right to sell an underlying asset to another party at a fixed price over a specific period of time.
- Put–call–forward parity** The relationship among puts, calls, and forward contracts.
- Put–call parity** An equation expressing the equivalence (parity) of a portfolio of a call and a bond with a portfolio of a put and the underlying, which leads to the relationship between put and call prices.
- Put/call ratio** A technical analysis indicator that evaluates market sentiment based upon the volume of put options traded divided by the volume of call options traded for a particular financial instrument.
- Put option** An option that gives the holder the right to sell an underlying asset to another party at a fixed price over a specific period of time.
- Puttable bonds** Bonds that give the bondholder the right to sell the bond back to the issuer at a predetermined price on specified dates.
- Puttable common shares** Common shares that give investors the option (or right) to sell their shares (i.e., “put” them) back to the issuing company at a price that is specified when the shares are originally issued.
- Quantile** A value at or below which a stated fraction of the data lies. Also called *fractile*.
- Quantitative easing** An expansionary monetary policy based on aggressive open market purchase operations.
- Quantity equation of exchange** An expression that over a given period, the amount of money used to purchase all goods and services in an economy, $M \times V$, is equal to monetary value of this output, $P \times Y$.
- Quantity theory of money** Asserts that total spending (in money terms) is proportional to the quantity of money.
- Quartiles** Quartiles that divide a distribution into four equal parts.
- Quasi-fixed cost** A cost that stays the same over a range of production but can change to another constant level when production moves outside of that range.
- Quasi-government bonds** A bond issued by an entity that is either owned or sponsored by a national government. Also called *agency bond*.
- Quick assets** Assets that can be most readily converted to cash (e.g., cash, short-term marketable investments, receivables).
- Quick ratio** A stringent measure of liquidity that indicates a company's ability to satisfy current liabilities with its most liquid assets, calculated as (cash + short-term marketable investments + receivables) divided by current liabilities.
- Quintiles** Quartiles that divide a distribution into five equal parts.
- Quota rents** Profits that foreign producers can earn by raising the price of their goods higher than they would without a quota.
- Quotas** Government policies that restrict the quantity of a good that can be imported into a country, generally for a specified period of time.
- Quote-driven market** A market in which dealers acting as principals facilitate trading.
- Quoted interest rate** A quoted interest rate that does not account for compounding within the year. Also called *stated annual interest rate*.
- Quoted margin** The specified yield spread over the reference rate, used to compensate an investor for the difference in the credit risk of the issuer and that implied by the reference rate.

- Random number** An observation drawn from a uniform distribution.
- Random number generator** An algorithm that produces uniformly distributed random numbers between 0 and 1.
- Random variable** A quantity whose future outcomes are uncertain.
- Range** The difference between the maximum and minimum values in a dataset.
- Ratio scales** A measurement scale that has all the characteristics of interval measurement scales as well as a true zero point as the origin.
- Real GDP** The value of goods and services produced, measured at base year prices.
- Real income** Income adjusted for the effect of inflation on the purchasing power of money. Also known as the *purchasing power of income*. If income remains constant and a good's price falls, real income is said to rise, even though the number of monetary units (e.g., dollars) remains unchanged.
- Real interest rate** Nominal interest rate minus the expected rate of inflation.
- Real risk-free interest rate** The single-period interest rate for a completely risk-free security if no inflation were expected.
- Realizable (settlement) value** With reference to assets, the amount of cash or cash equivalents that could currently be obtained by selling the asset in an orderly disposal; with reference to liabilities, the undiscounted amount of cash or cash equivalents expected to be paid to satisfy the liabilities in the normal course of business.
- Rebalancing** Adjusting the weights of the constituent securities in an index.
- Rebalancing policy** The set of rules that guide the process of restoring a portfolio's asset class weights to those specified in the strategic asset allocation.
- Recession** A period during which real GDP decreases (i.e., negative growth) for at least two successive quarters, or a period of significant decline in total output, income, employment, and sales usually lasting from six months to a year.
- Recognition lag** The lag in government response to an economic problem resulting from the delay in confirming a change in the state of the economy.
- Recourse loan** Loan in which the lender has a claim against the borrower for any shortfall between the outstanding mortgage balance and the proceeds received from the sale of the property.
- Redemption yield** See *yield to maturity*.
- Redemptions** Withdrawals of funds by investors.
- Refinancing rate** A type of central bank policy rate.
- Registered bonds** Bonds for which ownership is recorded by either name or serial number.
- Relative dispersion** The amount of dispersion relative to a reference value or benchmark.
- Relative frequency** With reference to an interval of grouped data, the number of observations in the interval divided by the total number of observations in the sample.
- Relative price** The price of a specific good or service in comparison with those of other goods and services.
- Relative strength analysis** A comparison of the performance of one asset with the performance of another asset or a benchmark based on changes in the ratio of the securities' respective prices over time.
- Relative strength index** A technical analysis momentum oscillator that compares a security's gains with its losses over a set period.
- Renewable resources** Resources that can be replenished, such as a forest.
- Rent** Payment for the use of property.
- Reorganization** Agreements made by a company in bankruptcy under which a company's capital structure is altered and/or alternative arrangements are made for debt repayment; US Chapter 11 bankruptcy. The company emerges from bankruptcy as a going concern.
- Replication** The creation of an asset or portfolio from another asset, portfolio, and/or derivative.
- Repo** A form of collateralized loan involving the sale of a security with a simultaneous agreement by the seller to buy the same security back from the purchaser at an agreed-on price and future date. The party who sells the security at the inception of the repurchase agreement and buys it back at maturity is borrowing money from the other party, and the security sold and subsequently repurchased represents the collateral.
- Repo margin** The difference between the market value of the security used as collateral and the value of the loan. Also called *haircut*.
- Repo rate** The interest rate on a repurchase agreement.
- Repurchase agreement** A form of collateralized loan involving the sale of a security with a simultaneous agreement by the seller to buy the same security back from the purchaser at an agreed-on price and future date. The party who sells the security at the inception of the repurchase agreement and buys it back at maturity is borrowing money from the other party, and the security sold and subsequently repurchased represents the collateral.
- Repurchase date** The date when the party who sold the security at the inception of a repurchase agreement buys the security back from the cash lending counterparty.
- Repurchase price** The price at which the party who sold the security at the inception of the repurchase agreement buys the security back from the cash lending counterparty.
- Required margin** The yield spread over, or under, the reference rate such that an FRN is priced at par value on a rate reset date.
- Required rate of return** See *market discount rate*.
- Required yield** See *market discount rate*.
- Required yield spread** The difference between the yield-to-maturity on a new bond and the benchmark rate; additional compensation required by investors for the difference in risk and tax status of a bond relative to a government bond. Sometimes called the *spread over the benchmark*.
- Reserve accounts** Form of internal credit enhancement that relies on creating accounts and depositing in these accounts cash that can be used to absorb losses. Also called *reserve funds*.
- Reserve funds** See *reserve accounts*.
- Reserve requirement** The requirement for banks to hold reserves in proportion to the size of deposits.
- Resistance** In technical analysis, a price range in which selling activity is sufficient to stop the rise in the price of a security.
- Responsible investing** The practice of identifying companies that can efficiently manage their financial, environmental, and human capital resources to generate attractive long-term profitability; often synonymous with *sustainable investing*.
- Restricted payments** A bond covenant meant to protect creditors by limiting how much cash can be paid out to shareholders over time.

- Retail method** An inventory accounting method in which the sales value of an item is reduced by the gross margin to calculate the item's cost.
- Retracement** In technical analysis, a reversal in the movement of a security's price such that it is counter to the prevailing longer-term price trend.
- Return-generating model** A model that can provide an estimate of the expected return of a security given certain parameters and estimates of the values of the independent variables in the model.
- Return on assets (ROA)** A profitability ratio calculated as net income divided by average total assets; indicates a company's net profit generated per dollar invested in total assets.
- Return on equity (ROE)** A profitability ratio calculated as net income divided by average shareholders' equity.
- Return on sales** An indicator of profitability, calculated as net income divided by revenue; indicates how much of each dollar of revenues is left after all costs and expenses.
- Return on total capital** A profitability ratio calculated as EBIT divided by the sum of short- and long-term debt and equity.
- Revaluation model** The process of valuing long-lived assets at fair value, rather than at cost less accumulated depreciation. Any resulting profit or loss is either reported on the income statement and/or through equity under revaluation surplus.
- Revenue** The amount charged for the delivery of goods or services in the ordinary activities of a business over a stated period; the inflows of economic resources to a company over a stated period.
- Reversal patterns** A type of pattern used in technical analysis to predict the end of a trend and a change in direction of the security's price.
- Reverse repo** A repurchase agreement viewed from the perspective of the cash lending counterparty.
- Reverse repurchase agreement** A repurchase agreement viewed from the perspective of the cash lending counterparty.
- Reverse stock split** A reduction in the number of shares outstanding with a corresponding increase in share price, but no change to the company's underlying fundamentals.
- Revolving credit agreements** The strongest form of short-term bank borrowing facilities; they are in effect for multiple years (e.g., 3–5 years) and may have optional medium-term loan features.
- Rho** The sensitivity of the option price to the risk-free rate.
- Ricardian equivalence** An economic theory that implies that it makes no difference whether a government finances a deficit by increasing taxes or issuing debt.
- Risk** Exposure to uncertainty. The chance of a loss or adverse outcome as a result of an action, inaction, or external event.
- Risk averse** The assumption that an investor will choose the least risky alternative.
- Risk aversion** The degree of an investor's inability and unwillingness to take risk.
- Risk budgeting** The establishment of objectives for individuals, groups, or divisions of an organization that takes into account the allocation of an acceptable level of risk.
- Risk exposure** The state of being exposed or vulnerable to a risk. The extent to which an entity is sensitive to underlying risks.
- Risk governance** The top-down process and guidance that directs risk management activities to align with and support the overall enterprise.
- Risk management** The process of identifying the level of risk an entity wants, measuring the level of risk the entity currently has, taking actions that bring the actual level of risk to the desired level of risk, and monitoring the new actual level of risk so that it continues to be aligned with the desired level of risk.
- Risk management framework** The infrastructure, process, and analytics needed to support effective risk management in an organization.
- Risk-neutral pricing** Sometimes said of derivatives pricing, uses the fact that arbitrage opportunities guarantee that a risk-free portfolio consisting of the underlying and the derivative must earn the risk-free rate.
- Risk-neutral probabilities** Weights that are used to compute a binomial option price. They are the probabilities that would apply if a risk-neutral investor valued an option.
- Risk premium** An extra return expected by investors for bearing some specified risk.
- Risk shifting** Actions to change the distribution of risk outcomes.
- Risk tolerance** The amount of risk an investor is willing and able to bear to achieve an investment goal.
- Risk transfer** Actions to pass on a risk to another party, often, but not always, in the form of an insurance policy.
- Robo-adviser** A machine-based analytical tool or service that provides technology-driven investment solutions through online platforms.
- Robust** The quality of being relatively unaffected by a violation of assumptions.
- Rule of 72** The principle that the approximate number of years necessary for an investment to double is 72 divided by the stated interest rate.
- Running yield** See *current yield*.
- Safety-first rules** Rules for portfolio selection that focus on the risk that portfolio value will fall below some minimum acceptable level over some time horizon.
- Safety stock** A level of inventory beyond anticipated needs that provides a cushion in the event that it takes longer to replenish inventory than expected or in the case of greater than expected demand.
- Sales** Generally, a synonym for revenue; "sales" is generally understood to refer to the sale of goods, whereas "revenue" is understood to include the sale of goods or services.
- Sales risk** Uncertainty with respect to the quantity of goods and services that a company is able to sell and the price it is able to achieve; the risk related to the uncertainty of revenues.
- Sales-type leases** A type of finance lease, from a lessor perspective, where the present value of the lease payments (lease receivable) exceeds the carrying value of the leased asset. The revenues earned by the lessor are operating (the profit on the sale) and financing (interest) in nature.
- Sample** A subset of a population.
- Sample excess kurtosis** A sample measure of the degree of a distribution's kurtosis in excess of the normal distribution's kurtosis.
- Sample kurtosis** A sample measure of the degree of a distribution's peakedness.
- Sample mean** The sum of the sample observations, divided by the sample size.

- Sample selection bias** Bias introduced by systematically excluding some members of the population according to a particular attribute—for example, the bias introduced when data availability leads to certain observations being excluded from the analysis.
- Sample skewness** A sample measure of degree of asymmetry of a distribution.
- Sample standard deviation** The positive square root of the sample variance.
- Sample statistic** A quantity computed from or used to describe a sample.
- Sample variance** A sample measure of the degree of dispersion of a distribution, calculated by dividing the sum of the squared deviations from the sample mean by the sample size minus 1.
- Sampling** The process of obtaining a sample.
- Sampling distribution** The distribution of all distinct possible values that a statistic can assume when computed from samples of the same size randomly drawn from the same population.
- Sampling error** The difference between the observed value of a statistic and the quantity it is intended to estimate.
- Sampling plan** The set of rules used to select a sample.
- Say on pay** A process whereby shareholders may vote on executive remuneration (compensation) matters.
- Say's law** Named for French economist J.B. Say: All that is produced will be sold because supply creates its own demand.
- Scenario analysis** Analysis that shows the changes in key financial quantities that result from given (economic) events, such as the loss of customers, the loss of a supply source, or a catastrophic event; a risk management technique involving examination of the performance of a portfolio under specified situations. Closely related to stress testing.
- Screening** The application of a set of criteria to reduce a set of potential investments to a smaller set having certain desired characteristics.
- Seasoned offering** An offering in which an issuer sells additional units of a previously issued security.
- Second-degree price discrimination** When the monopolist charges different per-unit prices using the quantity purchased as an indicator of how highly the customer values the product.
- Second lien** A secured interest in the pledged assets that ranks below first lien debt in both collateral protection and priority of payment.
- Secondary bond markets** Markets in which existing bonds are traded among investors.
- Secondary market** The market where securities are traded among investors.
- Secondary precedence rules** Rules that determine how to rank orders placed at the same time.
- Sector** A group of related industries.
- Sector indexes** Indexes that represent and track different economic sectors—such as consumer goods, energy, finance, health care, and technology—on either a national, regional, or global basis.
- Secured bonds** Bonds secured by assets or financial guarantees pledged to ensure debt repayment in case of default.
- Secured debt** Debt in which the debtholder has a direct claim—a pledge from the issuer—on certain assets and their associated cash flows.
- Securitization** A process that involves moving assets into a special legal entity, which then uses the assets as guarantees to secure a bond issue.
- Securitized assets** Assets that are typically used to create asset-backed bonds; for example, when a bank securitizes a pool of loans, the loans are said to be securitized.
- Security characteristic line** A plot of the excess return of a security on the excess return of the market.
- Security market index** A portfolio of securities representing a given security market, market segment, or asset class.
- Security market line** (SML) The graph of the capital asset pricing model.
- Security selection** The process of selecting individual securities; typically, security selection has the objective of generating superior risk-adjusted returns relative to a portfolio's benchmark.
- Self-investment limits** With respect to investment limitations applying to pension plans, restrictions on the percentage of assets that can be invested in securities issued by the pension plan sponsor.
- Sell-side firm** A broker or dealer that sells securities to and provides independent investment research and recommendations to investment management companies.
- Semi-strong-form efficient market** A market in which security prices reflect all publicly known and available information.
- Semiannual bond basis yield** An annual rate having a periodicity of two; also known as a *semiannual bond equivalent yield*.
- Semiannual bond equivalent yield** See *semiannual bond basis yield*.
- Semideviation** The positive square root of semivariance (sometimes called *semistandard deviation*).
- Semilogarithmic** Describes a scale constructed so that equal intervals on the vertical scale represent equal rates of change, and equal intervals on the horizontal scale represent equal amounts of change.
- Semivariance** The average squared deviation below the mean.
- Seniority ranking** Priority of payment of various debt obligations.
- Sensitivity analysis** Analysis that shows the range of possible outcomes as specific assumptions are changed.
- Separately managed account** (SMA) An investment portfolio managed exclusively for the benefit of an individual or institution.
- Serial maturity structure** Structure for a bond issue in which the maturity dates are spread out during the bond's life; a stated number of bonds mature and are paid off each year before final maturity.
- Settlement** The process that occurs after a trade is completed, the securities are passed to the buyer, and payment is received by the seller.
- Settlement date** Date when the buyer makes cash payment and the seller delivers the security.
- Settlement price** The official price, designated by the clearinghouse, from which daily gains and losses will be determined and marked to market.
- Share repurchase** A transaction in which a company buys back its own shares. Unlike stock dividends and stock splits, share repurchases use corporate cash.
- Shareholder activism** Strategies used by shareholders to attempt to compel a company to act in a desired manner.
- Shareholder engagement** The process whereby companies engage with their shareholders.

- Shareholders' equity** Assets less liabilities; the residual interest in the assets after subtracting the liabilities.
- Sharpe ratio** The average return in excess of the risk-free rate divided by the standard deviation of return; a measure of the average excess return earned per unit of standard deviation of return.
- Shelf registration** Type of public offering that allows the issuer to file a single, all-encompassing offering circular that covers a series of bond issues.
- Short** The seller of an asset or derivative contract. Also refers to the position of being short an asset or derivative contract.
- Short position** A position in an asset or contract in which one has sold an asset one does not own, or in which a right under a contract can be exercised against oneself.
- Short-run average total cost** The curve describing average total cost when some costs are considered fixed.
- Short selling** A transaction in which borrowed securities are sold with the intention to repurchase them at a lower price at a later date and return them to the lender.
- Shortfall risk** The risk that portfolio value will fall below some minimum acceptable level over some time horizon.
- Shutdown point** The point at which average revenue is equal to the firm's average variable cost.
- Simple interest** The interest earned each period on the original investment; interest calculated on the principal only.
- Simple random sample** A subset of a larger population created in such a way that each element of the population has an equal probability of being selected to the subset.
- Simple random sampling** The procedure of drawing a sample to satisfy the definition of a simple random sample.
- Simple yield** The sum of the coupon payments plus the straight-line amortized share of the gain or loss, divided by the flat price.
- Simulation** Computer-generated sensitivity or scenario analysis that is based on probability models for the factors that drive outcomes.
- Simulation trial** A complete pass through the steps of a simulation.
- Single-step format** With respect to the format of the income statement, a format that does not subtotal for gross profit (revenue minus cost of goods sold).
- Sinking fund arrangement** Provision that reduces the credit risk of a bond issue by requiring the issuer to retire a portion of the bond's principal outstanding each year.
- Situational influences** External factors, such as environmental or cultural elements, that shape our behavior.
- Skewed** Not symmetrical.
- Skewness** A quantitative measure of skew (lack of symmetry); a synonym of skew.
- Small country** A country that is a price taker in the world market for a product and cannot influence the world market price.
- Smart contract** A computer program that is designed to self-execute on the basis of pre-specified terms and conditions agreed to by parties to a contract.
- Socially responsible investing** An investment approach that excludes investments in companies or industries that deviate from an organization's beliefs and sometimes includes investments with favorable environmental or social profiles.
- Solvency** With respect to financial statement analysis, the ability of a company to fulfill its long-term obligations.
- Solvency ratios** Ratios that measure a company's ability to meet its long-term obligations.
- Solvency risk** The risk that an entity does not survive or succeed because it runs out of cash, even though it might otherwise be solvent.
- Sovereign bonds** A bond issued by a national government.
- Sovereign yield spread** An estimate of the country spread (country equity premium) for a developing nation that is based on a comparison of bonds yields in country being analyzed and a developed country. The sovereign yield spread is the difference between a government bond yield in the country being analyzed, denominated in the currency of the developed country, and the Treasury bond yield on a similar maturity bond in the developed country.
- Sovereigns** A bond issued by a national government.
- Spearman rank correlation coefficient** A measure of correlation applied to ranked data.
- Special dividend** A dividend paid by a company that does not pay dividends on a regular schedule, or a dividend that supplements regular cash dividends with an extra payment.
- Special purpose entity** A non-operating entity created to carry out a specified purpose, such as leasing assets or securitizing receivables; can be a corporation, partnership, trust, limited liability, or partnership formed to facilitate a specific type of business activity. Also called *special purpose vehicle* or *variable interest entity*.
- Special purpose vehicle** See *special purpose entity*.
- Specific identification method** An inventory accounting method that identifies which specific inventory items were sold and which remained in inventory to be carried over to later periods.
- Speculative demand for money** The demand to hold speculative money balances based on the potential opportunities or risks that are inherent in other financial instruments. Also called *portfolio demand for money*.
- Speculative money balances** Monies held in anticipation that other assets will decline in value.
- Split coupon bond** See *deferred coupon bond*.
- Sponsored** A type of depository receipt in which the foreign company whose shares are held by the depository has a direct involvement in the issuance of the receipts.
- Spot curve** A sequence of yields-to-maturity on zero-coupon bonds. Sometimes called *zero* or *strip curve* because coupon payments are "stripped" off of the bonds.
- Spot markets** Markets in which assets are traded for immediate delivery.
- Spot prices** The price of an asset for immediately delivery.
- Spot rates** A sequence of market discount rates that correspond to the cash flow dates; yields-to-maturity on zero-coupon bonds maturing at the date of each cash flow.
- Spread** In general, the difference in yield between different fixed income securities. Often used to refer to the difference between the yield-to-maturity and the benchmark.
- Spread over the benchmark** See *required yield spread*.
- Spread risk** Bond price risk arising from changes in the yield spread on credit-risky bonds; reflects changes in the market's assessment and/or pricing of credit migration (or downgrade) risk and market liquidity risk.
- Stackelberg model** A prominent model of strategic decisionmaking in which firms are assumed to make their decisions sequentially.
- Stagflation** When a high inflation rate is combined with a high level of unemployment and a slowdown of the economy.
- Staggered boards** Election process whereby directors are typically divided into multiple classes that are elected separately in consecutive years—that is, one class every year.

- Stakeholder management** The identification, prioritization, and understanding of the interests of stakeholder groups, and managing the company's relationships with these groups.
- Stakeholders** Individuals or groups of individuals who may be affected either directly or indirectly by a decision and thus have an interest, or stake, in the decision.
- Standard cost** With respect to inventory accounting, the planned or target unit cost of inventory items or services.
- Standard deviation** The positive square root of the variance; a measure of dispersion in the same units as the original data.
- Standard normal distribution** The normal density with mean (μ) equal to 0 and standard deviation (σ) equal to 1.
- Standardizing** A transformation that involves subtracting the mean and dividing the result by the standard deviation.
- Standards of conduct** Behaviors required by a group; established benchmarks that clarify or enhance a group's code of ethics.
- Standing limit orders** A limit order at a price below market and which therefore is waiting to trade.
- Stated annual interest rate** A quoted interest rate that does not account for compounding within the year. Also called *quoted interest rate*.
- Statement of changes in equity** (statement of owners' equity) A financial statement that reconciles the beginning-of-period and end-of-period balance sheet values of shareholders' equity; provides information about all factors affecting shareholders' equity. Also called *statement of owners' equity*.
- Statement of financial condition** The financial statement that presents an entity's current financial position by disclosing resources the entity controls (its assets) and the claims on those resources (its liabilities and equity claims), as of a particular point in time (the date of the balance sheet).
- Statement of financial position** The financial statement that presents an entity's current financial position by disclosing resources the entity controls (its assets) and the claims on those resources (its liabilities and equity claims), as of a particular point in time (the date of the balance sheet).
- Statement of operations** A financial statement that provides information about a company's profitability over a stated period of time.
- Statistic** A quantity computed from or used to describe a sample of data.
- Statistical inference** Making forecasts, estimates, or judgments about a larger group from a smaller group actually observed; using a sample statistic to infer the value of an unknown population parameter.
- Statistically significant** A result indicating that the null hypothesis can be rejected; with reference to an estimated regression coefficient, frequently understood to mean a result indicating that the corresponding population regression coefficient is different from 0.
- Statutory voting** A common method of voting where each share represents one vote.
- Step-up coupon bond** Bond for which the coupon, which may be fixed or floating, increases by specified margins at specified dates.
- Stock dividend** A type of dividend in which a company distributes additional shares of its common stock to shareholders instead of cash.
- Stock-out losses** Profits lost from not having sufficient inventory on hand to satisfy demand.
- Stock split** An increase in the number of shares outstanding with a consequent decrease in share price, but no change to the company's underlying fundamentals.
- Stop-loss order** See *stop order*.
- Stop order** An order in which a trader has specified a stop price condition. Also called *stop-loss order*.
- Store of value** The quality of tending to preserve value.
- Store of wealth** Goods that depend on the fact that they do not perish physically over time, and on the belief that others would always value the good.
- Straight-line method** A depreciation method that allocates evenly the cost of a long-lived asset less its estimated residual value over the estimated useful life of the asset.
- Straight voting** A shareholder voting process in which shareholders receive one vote for each share owned.
- Strategic analysis** Analysis of the competitive environment with an emphasis on the implications of the environment for corporate strategy.
- Strategic asset allocation** The set of exposures to IPS-permissible asset classes that is expected to achieve the client's long-term objectives given the client's investment constraints.
- Strategic groups** Groups sharing distinct business models or catering to specific market segments in an industry.
- Street convention** Yield measure that neglects weekends and holidays; the internal rate of return on cash flows assuming payments are made on the scheduled dates, even when the scheduled date falls on a weekend or holiday.
- Stress testing** A specific type of scenario analysis that estimates losses in rare and extremely unfavorable combinations of events or scenarios.
- Strong-form efficient market** A market in which security prices reflect all public and private information.
- Structural (or cyclically adjusted) budget deficit** The deficit that would exist if the economy was at full employment (or full potential output).
- Structural subordination** Arises in a holding company structure when the debt of operating subsidiaries is serviced by the cash flow and assets of the subsidiaries before funds can be passed to the holding company to service debt at the parent level.
- Structured financial instruments** Financial instruments that share the common attribute of repackaging risks. Structured financial instruments include asset-backed securities, collateralized debt obligations, and other structured financial instruments such as capital protected, yield enhancement, participation and leveraged instruments.
- Subjective probability** A probability drawing on personal or subjective judgment.
- Subordinated debt** A class of unsecured debt that ranks below a firm's senior unsecured obligations.
- Subordination** Form of internal credit enhancement that relies on creating more than one bond tranche and ordering the claim priorities for ownership or interest in an asset between the tranches. The ordering of the claim priorities is called a senior/subordinated structure, where the tranches of highest seniority are called senior followed by subordinated or junior tranches. Also called *credit tranching*.
- Substitutes** Said of two goods or services such that if the price of one increases the demand for the other tends to increase, holding all other things equal (e.g., butter and margarine).
- Sunk cost** A cost that has already been incurred.
- Supervised learning** A machine learning approach that makes use of labeled training data.

- Supply shock** A typically unexpected disturbance to supply.
- Support** In technical analysis, a price range in which buying activity is sufficient to stop the decline in the price of a security.
- Support tranche** A class or tranche in a CMO that protects the PAC tranche from prepayment risk.
- Supranational bonds** A bond issued by a supranational agency such as the World Bank.
- Surety bond** Form of external credit enhancement whereby a rated and regulated insurance company guarantees to reimburse bondholders for any losses incurred up to a maximum amount if the issuer defaults.
- Survey approach** An estimate of the equity risk premium that is based upon estimates provided by a panel of finance experts.
- Survivorship bias** The bias resulting from a test design that fails to account for companies that have gone bankrupt, merged, or are otherwise no longer reported in a database.
- Sustainable growth rate** The rate of dividend (and earnings) growth that can be sustained over time for a given level of return on equity, keeping the capital structure constant and without issuing additional common stock.
- Sustainable investing** The practice of identifying companies that can efficiently manage their financial, environmental, and human capital resources to generate attractive long-term profitability; often synonymous with *responsible investing*.
- Sustainable rate of economic growth** The rate of increase in the economy's productive capacity or potential GDP.
- Swap contract** An agreement between two parties to exchange a series of future cash flows.
- Syndicated loans** Loans from a group of lenders to a single borrower.
- Syndicated offering** A bond issue that is underwritten by a group of investment banks.
- Synthetic lease** A lease that is structured to provide a company with the tax benefits of ownership while not requiring the asset to be reflected on the company's financial statements.
- Systematic risk** Risk that affects the entire market or economy; it cannot be avoided and is inherent in the overall market. Systematic risk is also known as non-diversifiable or market risk.
- Systematic sampling** A procedure of selecting every k th member until reaching a sample of the desired size. The sample that results from this procedure should be approximately random.
- t-Test** A hypothesis test using a statistic (t -statistic) that follows a t -distribution.
- Tactical asset allocation** The decision to deliberately deviate from the strategic asset allocation in an attempt to add value based on forecasts of the near-term relative performance of asset classes.
- Target balance** A minimum level of cash to be held available—estimated in advance and adjusted for known funds transfers, seasonality, or other factors.
- Target capital structure** A company's chosen proportions of debt and equity.
- Target independent** A bank's ability to determine the definition of inflation that they target, the rate of inflation that they target, and the horizon over which the target is to be achieved.
- Target semideviation** The positive square root of target semivariance.
- Target semivariance** The average squared deviation below a target value.
- Tariffs** Taxes that a government levies on imported goods.
- Tax base** The amount at which an asset or liability is valued for tax purposes.
- Tax expense** An aggregate of an entity's income tax payable (or recoverable in the case of a tax benefit) and any changes in deferred tax assets and liabilities. It is essentially the income tax payable or recoverable if these had been determined based on accounting profit rather than taxable income.
- Tax loss carry forward** A taxable loss in the current period that may be used to reduce future taxable income.
- Taxable income** The portion of an entity's income that is subject to income taxes under the tax laws of its jurisdiction.
- Taxable temporary differences** Temporary differences that result in a taxable amount in a future period when determining the taxable profit as the balance sheet item is recovered or settled.
- Technical analysis** A form of security analysis that uses price and volume data, which is often displayed graphically, in decision making.
- Technology** The process a company uses to transform inputs into outputs.
- Tender offer** Corporate takeover mechanism which involves shareholders selling their interests directly to the group seeking to gain control.
- Tenor** The time-to-maturity for a bond or derivative contract. Also called *term to maturity*.
- Term maturity structure** Structure for a bond issue in which the bond's notional principal is paid off in a lump sum at maturity.
- Term structure** See *maturity structure*.
- Term structure of credit spreads** The relationship between the spreads over the "risk-free" (or benchmark) rates and times-to-maturity.
- Term structure of yield volatility** The relationship between the volatility of bond yields-to-maturity and times-to-maturity.
- Terminal stock value** The expected value of a share at the end of the investment horizon—in effect, the expected selling price. Also called *terminal value*.
- Terminal value** The expected value of a share at the end of the investment horizon—in effect, the expected selling price.
- Terms of trade** The ratio of the price of exports to the price of imports, representing those prices by export and import price indexes, respectively.
- Text analytics** The use of computer programs to analyze and derive meaning from typically large, unstructured text- or voice-based datasets.
- Thematic investing** An ESG implementation approach that focuses on investing in companies within a specific sector or industry theme.
- Third-degree price discrimination** When the monopolist segregates customers into groups based on demographic or other characteristics and offers different pricing to each group.
- Time-period bias** The possibility that when we use a time-series sample, our statistical conclusion may be sensitive to the starting and ending dates of the sample.
- Time-series data** Observations of a variable over time.
- Time tranching** The creation of classes or tranches in an ABS/MBS that possess different (expected) maturities.
- Time value** The difference between the market price of the option and its intrinsic value.

- Time value decay** Said of an option when, at expiration, no time value remains and the option is worth only its exercise value.
- Time value of money** The principles governing equivalence relationships between cash flows with different dates.
- Time-weighted rate of return** The compound rate of growth of one unit of currency invested in a portfolio during a stated measurement period; a measure of investment performance that is not sensitive to the timing and amount of withdrawals or additions to the portfolio.
- Tokenization** The process of representing ownership rights to physical assets on a blockchain or distributed ledger.
- Top-down analysis** With reference to investment selection processes, an approach that starts with macro selection (i.e., identifying attractive geographic segments and/or industry segments) and then addresses selection of the most attractive investments within those segments.
- Total comprehensive income** The change in equity during a period resulting from transaction and other events, other than those changes resulting from transactions with owners in their capacity as owners.
- Total cost** The summation of all costs, for which costs are classified as fixed or variable.
- Total factor productivity** A scale factor that reflects the portion of growth that is not accounted for by explicit factor inputs (e.g. capital and labor).
- Total fixed cost** The summation of all expenses that do not change as the level of production varies.
- Total invested capital** The sum of market value of common equity, book value of preferred equity, and face value of debt.
- Total probability rule** A rule explaining the unconditional probability of an event in terms of probabilities of the event conditional on mutually exclusive and exhaustive scenarios.
- Total probability rule for expected value** A rule explaining the expected value of a random variable in terms of expected values of the random variable conditional on mutually exclusive and exhaustive scenarios.
- Total return** Measures the price appreciation, or percentage change in price of the securities in an index or portfolio, plus any income received over the period.
- Total return index** An index that reflects the price appreciation or percentage change in price of the constituent securities plus any income received since inception.
- Total return swap** A swap in which one party agrees to pay the total return on a security. Often used as a credit derivative, in which the underlying is a bond.
- Total variable cost** The summation of all variable expenses.
- Tracking error** The standard deviation of the differences between a portfolio's returns and its benchmark's returns; a synonym of active risk.
- Tracking risk** The standard deviation of the differences between a portfolio's returns and its benchmark's returns; a synonym of active risk. Also called *tracking error*.
- Trade creation** When regional integration results in the replacement of higher cost domestic production by lower cost imports from other members.
- Trade credit** A spontaneous form of credit in which a purchaser of the goods or service is financing its purchase by delaying the date on which payment is made.
- Trade diversion** When regional integration results in lower-cost imports from non-member countries being replaced with higher-cost imports from members.
- Trade payables** Amounts that a business owes to its vendors for goods and services that were purchased from them but which have not yet been paid.
- Trade protection** Government policies that impose restrictions on trade, such as tariffs and quotas.
- Trade surplus (deficit)** When the value of exports is greater (less) than the value of imports.
- Trading securities** Securities held by a company with the intent to trade them. Also called *held-for-trading securities*.
- Traditional investment markets** Markets for traditional investments, which include all publicly traded debts and equities and shares in pooled investment vehicles that hold publicly traded debts and/or equities.
- Transactions money balances** Money balances that are held to finance transactions.
- Transactions motive** In the context of inventory management, the need for inventory as part of the routine production-sales cycle.
- Transfer payments** Welfare payments made through the social security system that exist to provide a basic minimum level of income for low-income households.
- Transparency** Said of something (e.g., a market) in which information is fully disclosed to the public and/or regulators.
- Treasury Inflation-Protected Securities** A bond issued by the United States Treasury Department that is designed to protect the investor from inflation by adjusting the principal of the bond for changes in inflation.
- Treasury stock method** A method for accounting for the effect of options (and warrants) on earnings per share (EPS) that specifies what EPS would have been if the options and warrants had been exercised and the company had used the proceeds to repurchase common stock.
- Tree diagram** A diagram with branches emanating from nodes representing either mutually exclusive chance events or mutually exclusive decisions.
- Trend** A long-term pattern of movement in a particular direction.
- Treynor ratio** A measure of risk-adjusted performance that relates a portfolio's excess returns to the portfolio's beta.
- Triangle patterns** In technical analysis, a continuation chart pattern that forms as the range between high and low prices narrows, visually forming a triangle.
- Trimmed mean** A mean computed after excluding a stated small percentage of the lowest and highest observations.
- TRIN** A flow of funds indicator applied to a broad stock market index to measure the relative extent to which money is moving into or out of rising and declining stocks.
- Triple bottoms** In technical analysis, a reversal pattern that is formed when the price forms three troughs at roughly the same price level; used to predict a change from a downtrend to an uptrend.
- Triple tops** In technical analysis, a reversal pattern that is formed when the price forms three peaks at roughly the same price level; used to predict a change from an uptrend to a downtrend.
- Trough** The lowest point of a business cycle.
- True yield** The internal rate of return on cash flows using the actual calendar including weekends and bank holidays.
- Trust deed** The governing legal credit agreement, typically incorporated by reference in the prospectus. Also called *bond indenture*.

- Trust receipt arrangement** The use of inventory as collateral for a loan. The inventory is segregated and held in trust, and the proceeds of any sale must be remitted to the lender immediately.
- Turn-of-the-year effect** Calendar anomaly that stock market returns in January are significantly higher compared to the rest of the months of the year, with most of the abnormal returns reported during the first five trading days in January.
- Two-fund separation theorem** The theory that all investors regardless of taste, risk preferences, and initial wealth will hold a combination of two portfolios or funds: a risk-free asset and an optimal portfolio of risky assets.
- Two-sided hypothesis test** A test in which the null hypothesis is rejected in favor of the alternative hypothesis if the evidence indicates that the population parameter is either smaller or larger than a hypothesized value.
- Two-tailed hypothesis test** A test in which the null hypothesis is rejected in favor of the alternative hypothesis if the evidence indicates that the population parameter is either smaller or larger than a hypothesized value.
- Two-week repo rate** The interest rate on a two-week repurchase agreement; may be used as a policy rate by a central bank.
- Type I error** The error of rejecting a true null hypothesis.
- Type II error** The error of not rejecting a false null hypothesis.
- Unanticipated (unexpected) inflation** The component of inflation that is a surprise.
- Unconditional probability** The probability of an event *not* conditioned on another event.
- Underemployed** A person who has a job but has the qualifications to work a significantly higher-paying job.
- Underlying** An asset that trades in a market in which buyers and sellers meet, decide on a price, and the seller then delivers the asset to the buyer and receives payment. The underlying is the asset or other derivative on which a particular derivative is based. The market for the underlying is also referred to as the *spot market*.
- Underwriter** A firm, usually an investment bank, that takes the risk of buying the newly issued securities from the issuer, and then reselling them to investors or to dealers, thus guaranteeing the sale of the securities at the offering price negotiated with the issuer.
- Underwritten offering** A type of securities issue mechanism in which the investment bank guarantees the sale of the securities at an offering price that is negotiated with the issuer. Also known as *firm commitment offering*.
- Unearned revenue** A liability account for money that has been collected for goods or services that have not yet been delivered; payment received in advance of providing a good or service. Also called *deferred revenue* or *deferred income*.
- Unemployed** People who are actively seeking employment but are currently without a job.
- Unemployment rate** The ratio of unemployed to the labor force.
- Unexpected inflation** The component of inflation that is a surprise.
- Unit elastic** An elasticity with a magnitude of negative one. Also called *unitary elastic*.
- Unit labor cost** The average labor cost to produce one unit of output.
- Unit normal distribution** The normal density with mean (μ) equal to 0 and standard deviation (σ) equal to 1.
- Units-of-production method** A depreciation method that allocates the cost of a long-lived asset based on actual usage during the period.
- Univariate distribution** A distribution that specifies the probabilities for a single random variable.
- Universal owners** Long-term investors, such as pension funds, that have significant assets invested in globally diversified portfolios.
- Unlimited funds** An unlimited funds environment assumes that the company can raise the funds it wants for all profitable projects simply by paying the required rate of return.
- Unsecured debt** Debt which gives the debtholder only a general claim on an issuer's assets and cash flow.
- Un-sponsored** A type of depository receipt in which the foreign company whose shares are held by the depository has no involvement in the issuance of the receipts.
- Unsupervised learning** A machine learning approach that does not make use of labeled training data.
- Up transition probability** The probability that an asset's value moves up.
- Validity instructions** Instructions which indicate when the order may be filled.
- Valuation allowance** A reserve created against deferred tax assets, based on the likelihood of realizing the deferred tax assets in future accounting periods.
- Valuation ratios** Ratios that measure the quantity of an asset or flow (e.g., earnings) in relation to the price associated with a specified claim (e.g., a share or ownership of the enterprise).
- Value at risk (VaR)** A money measure of the minimum value of losses expected during a specified time period at a given level of probability.
- Value investors** With reference to equity investors, investors who are focused on paying a relatively low share price in relation to earnings or assets per share.
- VaR** See *value at risk*.
- Variable costs** Costs that fluctuate with the level of production and sales.
- Variable-rate note** Similar to a floating-rate note, except that the spread is variable rather than constant.
- Variance** The expected value (the probability-weighted average) of squared deviations from a random variable's expected value.
- Variation margin** Additional margin that must be deposited in an amount sufficient to bring the balance up to the initial margin requirement.
- Veblen goods** Goods that increase in desirability with increasing price.
- Vega** A measure of the sensitivity of an option's price to changes in the underlying's volatility.
- Venture capital** Investments that provide "seed" or start-up capital, early-stage financing, or later-stage financing (including mezzanine-stage financing) to companies that are in early development stages and require additional capital for expansion or preparation for an initial public offering.
- Venture capital fund** A fund for private equity investors that provides financing for development-stage companies.
- Vertical analysis** Common-size analysis using only one reporting period or one base financial statement; for example, an income statement in which all items are stated as percentages of sales.
- Vertical demand schedule** Implies that some fixed quantity is demanded, regardless of price.

- Volatility** As used in option pricing, the standard deviation of the continuously compounded returns on the underlying asset.
- Voluntarily unemployed** A person voluntarily outside the labor force, such as a jobless worker refusing an available vacancy.
- Voluntary export restraint** A trade barrier under which the exporting country agrees to limit its exports of the good to its trading partners to a specific number of units.
- Vote by proxy** A mechanism that allows a designated party—such as another shareholder, a shareholder representative, or management—to vote on the shareholder's behalf.
- Warehouse receipt arrangement** The use of inventory as collateral for a loan; similar to a trust receipt arrangement except there is a third party (i.e., a warehouse company) that supervises the inventory.
- Warrant** Attached option that gives its holder the right to buy the underlying stock of the issuing company at a fixed exercise price until the expiration date.
- Weak-form efficient market hypothesis** The belief that security prices fully reflect all past market data, which refers to all historical price and volume trading information.
- Wealth effect** An increase (decrease) in household wealth increases (decreases) consumer spending out of a given level of current income.
- Weighted average cost method** An inventory accounting method that averages the total cost of available inventory items over the total units available for sale.
- Weighted average cost of capital** A weighted average of the aftertax required rates of return on a company's common stock, preferred stock, and long-term debt, where the weights are the fraction of each source of financing in the company's target capital structure.
- Weighted average coupon rate** Weighting the mortgage rate of each mortgage loan in the pool by the percentage of the mortgage outstanding relative to the outstanding amount of all the mortgages in the pool.
- Weighted average life** A measure that gives investors an indication of how long they can expect to hold the MBS before it is paid off; the convention-based average time to receipt of all principal repayments. Also called *average life*.
- Weighted average maturity** Weighting the remaining number of months to maturity for each mortgage loan in the pool by the amount of the outstanding mortgage balance.
- Weighted mean** An average in which each observation is weighted by an index of its relative importance.
- Wholesale price index** Reflects the price changes experienced by domestic producers in a country.
- Winsorized mean** A mean computed after assigning a stated percent of the lowest values equal to one specified low value, and a stated percent of the highest values equal to one specified high value.
- Working capital** The difference between current assets and current liabilities.
- Working capital management** The management of a company's short-term assets (such as inventory) and short-term liabilities (such as money owed to suppliers).
- World price** The price prevailing in the world market.
- Yield** The actual return on a debt security if it is held to maturity.
- Yield duration** The sensitivity of the bond price with respect to the bond's own yield-to-maturity.
- Yield to maturity** Annual return that an investor earns on a bond if the investor purchases the bond today and holds it until maturity. It is the discount rate that equates the present value of the bond's expected cash flows until maturity with the bond's price. Also called *yield-to-redemption* or *redemption yield*.
- Yield to redemption** See *yield to maturity*.
- Yield-to-worst** The lowest of the sequence of yields-to-call and the yield-to-maturity.
- Zero-coupon bonds** Bonds that do not pay interest during the bond's life. It is issued at a discount to par value and redeemed at par. Also called *pure discount bonds*.
- Zero volatility spread (Z-spread)** Calculates a constant yield spread over a government (or interest rate swap) spot curve.

Index

- A**
- absolute advantage, 347–354
 - absorption approach to trade balance, 449–450
 - accounting costs, 28
 - accounting profit, 28
 - accounts
 - balance of payments, 370–371, 377–379
 - in FX market, 412–413
 - action lag, 318
 - active crawling peg currency regime, 439–440
 - activity ratio, 222
 - AD. *see* aggregate demand
 - AD curve. *see* aggregate demand curve
 - administrative costs, 368
 - advanced economies, trade-to-GDP ratio for, 340
 - AFC. *see* average fixed cost
 - Africa, terms of trade for, 337, 338. *see also specific countries and regions*
 - African Development Bank, 413
 - aggregate demand (AD), 137–148
 - and AD curve, 145–148
 - and business cycle, 204–205
 - defined, 136
 - and fiscal policy, 302–303
 - and global recession (2007–2009), 165–167
 - and imports/exports, 338–339
 - and inflationary gap, 167–168
 - investment strategies for decrease in, 164–165
 - investment strategies for increase in, 168
 - IS curve, 137–144
 - LM curve, 144–145
 - and recessionary gap, 163–167
 - shifts in, 150–157
 - capacity utilization, 153
 - consumer and business expectations, 153
 - economic growth, 155
 - exchange rate, 155
 - fiscal policy, 153
 - household wealth, 151–152
 - monetary policy, 153–154
 - shifts in supply and, 170–173
- aggregate demand curve (AD curve)
 - example, 147–148
 - features of, 145
 - interest rates and income effects, 146–147
 - investment strategies based on, 171–172
- aggregate expenditures, 119
- aggregate income, 119–136
 - in economy, 119–120
 - and expenditures, 137–144
 - in gross domestic product, 120–136
 - components of, 127–131
 - external sector, 130–131
 - government sector, 129–130
 - household and business sectors, 128
 - measuring, 120–123
 - nominal and real, 124–127
 - and other income measures, 131–136
 - values of goods and services, 123–124
 - real personal, 241
- aggregate output, 119–136
 - in economy, 119–120
 - in gross domestic product, 120–136
 - components of, 127–131
 - external sector, 130–131
 - government sector, 129–130
 - household and business sectors, 128
 - measuring, 120–123
 - nominal and real, 124–127
 - and other income measures, 131–136
 - values of goods and services, 123–124
- aggregate price, supply of money and, 273–274
- aggregate real personal income, 241
- aggregate supply (AS)
 - and AS curve, 148–150
 - defined, 136
 - and global recession, 165–167
 - and imports/exports, 338–339
 - investment strategies for shifts in, 169–170
 - long-run, 148–150, 159–161
 - in perfectly competitive market, 81
 - in real business cycle models, 218–219
 - shifts in, 150–151, 157–162
 - shifts in demand and, 170–173
 - short-run, 148–149, 157–158
 - and stagflation, 169–170
- aggregate supply curve (AS curve)
 - about, 148–150
 - investment strategies based on, 171–172
 - long-run, 148–150
 - short-run, 148–149, 157–158
- agriculture industry, 68–69
- AirTran Airways, 88
- air transportation industry, 66
- Algeria, 437
- Amtrak, 104
- Antigua, 436
- antitrust policies, 92, 105–106
- APC. *see* average propensity to consume
- APL. *see* average product of labor
- Apple, 344
- appreciation, currency, 420
- AR. *see* average revenue
- arbitrage, triangular, 423
- Archer Daniels Midland, 105
- Argentina
 - exchange rate regime, 436, 439–440
 - foreign direct investment, 341, 342
 - MERCOSUR, 362
- AS. *see* aggregate supply
- AS curve. *see* aggregate supply curve
- ASEAN. *see* Association of Southeast Asian Nations
- Asia. *see also specific countries and regions*
 - current account imbalance, 380
 - effects of global recession, 165
 - financial crisis (1997–1998), 294, 343
 - natural resources, 178
 - terms of trade, 337
 - trade-to-GDP ratio, 340
- asset prices, capital flows and, 444
- Association of Southeast Asian Nations (ASEAN), 88
- assumptions, Cournot, 90–91
- ATC. *see* average total cost
- AT&T, 105
- Aussie exchange rate, 418
- Australia
 - business investment, 177
 - current account imbalance, 380
 - cyclically adjusted budget deficit, 317
 - disinflation, 227
 - exchange rate regime, 437
 - export subsidies, 359
 - government liabilities/debt, 308
 - government revenues/expenditures, 303, 304
 - inflation targeting, 287, 289
 - natural resources, 178
 - net borrowing/lending, 305
- Australian dollar, 401
 - AUD/HKD exchange rate, 404–406, 410–412
 - exchange rate quotes with, 418, 419n.4
 - trade balance and exchange rate for, 450–453
 - USD/AUD currency pair, 416
- Australian Federal Reserve, 289
- Austria
 - EU membership, 362n.18
 - exchange rate regime, 436
 - government debt, 262
 - public sector spending, 263
- Austrian school of economic thought, 214
- autarkic price, 338, 349
- autarky, 338, 349
- automatic stabilizers, 140, 304, 317–318
- automobile industry, 86, 100, 122–123
- AVC. *see* average variable cost
- average bank prime lending rate, 241
- Average Consumer Expectations for Business and Economic Conditions, 241
- average costs
 - average fixed cost, 31–35
 - average total cost
 - with economies of scale, 45–46
 - and other costs/output, 31–35
 - in perfect competition vs. monopoly, 36–37
 - average variable cost
 - defined, 30
 - in perfect competition vs. monopoly, 36–37
 - and shutdown decision, 39–40
- in perfectly competitive markets, 36–37, 79–80

- Average Duration of Unemployment, 241
 average fixed cost (AFC), 31–35
 average product of labor (APL), 25–28
 average propensity to consume (APC), 139
 average revenue (AR), 35
 average total cost (ATC)
 with economies of scale, 45–46
 and other costs/output, 31–35
 in perfect competition vs. monopoly, 36–37
 average variable cost (AVC)
 defined, 30
 in perfect competition vs. monopoly, 36–37
 and shutdown decision, 39–40
 average weekly claims for unemployment insurance, 240
 average weekly hours, manufacturing, 240
 Azerbaijan, 436
- B**
 Bahamas, 295
 Baker, James, 440
 balanced budget multipliers, 315–316
 balanced budgets, 304
 balance of payments (BOP) system, 369–381
 accounts in, 370–371, 377–379
 components of, 371–373
 imbalances since 1996, 379–381
 paired transactions in, 374–376
 for United States, 372–373
 balance of trade deficit, 130, 338
 Bank for International Settlements, 415–416
 Banking and Finance Commission, 278
 Bank of Canada, 185, 289, 440
 Bank of England
 in FX market, 440
 independence of, 288
 monetary policy, 276, 279, 289
 quantitative easing, 298–299, 323
 two-week repo rate, 284
 Bank of Italy, 245, 278
 Bank of Japan
 in FX market, 413, 440
 monetary policy, 292, 299–301
 and money measures in Japan, 270
 Bank of Korea, 281, 289
 Bank of Netherlands, 279
 banks
 aggregate demand and reserves of, 153–155
 in FX market, 414–415
 Barbados, 294
 barriers to entry, market structure and, 67, 97
 barter economy, 123, 265
 base currency, 401, 418
 base rates, 284
 BASE, 105
 beer industry, 87, 88
 behavior
 consumer, 208–210
 external trade sector, 211–213
 housing sector, 210–211
 “Beige Book,” 244
 Belarus, 436
 Belgium
 banking supervision, 278
 customs union, 362
 in EU, 362n.18
 exchange rate regime, 436
 government debt, 262
 public sector spending, 263
 Belize, 295
 Bernanke, Ben, 298
 biases, price index, 228
 Big Mac index, 402
 BLS. *see* US Bureau of Labor Statistics
 BMW, 86
 Bolivia, 436
 bond market vigilantes, 297–298
 boom phase (business cycle), 203, 205
 BOP system. *see* balance of payments system
 Bosnia and Herzegovina, 436
 BP/Amoco/Arco, 107
 brand loyalty, 84, 98
 Brazil
 absolute and comparative advantage, 347–348
 business investment, 177
 effects of Asian financial crisis, 343
 exchange rate regimes, 439
 GDP vs. GNP, 337
 inflation targeting, 287
 MERCOSUR, 362
 natural resources, 178
 as small country, 356
 Brazilian real, 401
 breakeven analysis
 and breakeven point of production, 36–37
 in shutdown analysis, 38–41
 breakeven point, 36–40
 Bretton Woods system, 434
 British pound, 401
 EUR/GBP exchange rate, 418, 419n.4
 exchange rate quotes with, 418–420
 GBP/EUR exchange rate, 403, 408
 gold standard for, 434
 USD/GBP currency pair, 416
 broad measure of liquidity, 270
 broad money, 269
 budget constraints, price elasticity of demand and, 71
 budget deficit (fiscal deficit), 304
 and business cycles, 129
 and fiscal policy, 317–318
 and foreign capital, 138
 and national debt, 307–309
 and Ricardian equivalence, 316
 budget surplus, 304
 building permits, 240, 243
 Bulgaria, 436
 Burns, Wesley Clair, 200
 business confidence, 153, 155
 Business Cycle and Dating Committee, 203
 business cycles, 199–258
 defined, 200
 economic indicators, 239–246
 building permits as, 243
 cyclical measures as, 244–245
 diffusion index of, 244
 leading, lagging, and coincident, 239–243
 and external trade sector behavior, 211–213
 and GDP, 150
 and housing sector behavior, 210–211
 inflation, 225–239
 cost-push, 233–235
 deflation, hyperinflation, disinflation, 226–227
 demand-pull, 235–236
 expectations, 236–237
 price indexes, 227–233
 types of, 233–236
 phases of, 200–204
 practice problems, 249–254
 resource use, 204–210
 capital spending, 205–207
 consumer behavior, 208–210
 inventory levels, 207–208
 as short-term movements in economy, 199–200
 solutions to problems, 255–258
 unemployment, 221–225
 analyzing, 224–225
 indicators, 224
 rate of, 223–224
 business cycle theories, 213–221
 Austrian school, 214
 Keynesian school, 214–215
 Monetarist school, 217
 Neoclassical school, 213–214
 New Classical school, 217–221
 business expectations, aggregate demand and, 153
 business sector, in GDP, 128
 business spending, 153, 202
 business taxes, SRAS and, 158, 160
 buyers. *see* consumer(s)
 buy-side participants, FX market, 412–414
- C**
 Caisse de dépôt et placement du Québec, 413
 Cambodia, 437
 Canada
 banking supervision, 278
 business investment, 177
 consumption expenditures, 139
 disinflation, 227
 exchange rate regime, 437
 expected inflation, 282
 in FX market, 413
 government spending, 129
 gross domestic product, 121, 131–136
 forecasts of, 184–185
 GNP vs., 337
 potential, 183, 184
 inflation targeting, 287, 289
 labor productivity, 181
 NAFTA, 362
 national debt, 309
 trade balance with US, 130, 131
 underground economy, 124
 Canada–yen exchange rate, 419, 422–423
 Canadian dollar, 401
 CAD/USD currency pair, 416
 in cross-rate calculations, 421–422
 exchange rate quotes with, 419

- capacity utilization, aggregate demand and, 153, 155
- capital
 as factor of production, 24
 financial
 in Heckscher–Ohlin model, 354–355
 and international trade, 336
 in long-term economic growth, 175
 human, 159, 176
 physical
 aggregate supply, 160
 defined, 139
 and economic growth, 176–177
 and labor productivity, 180
 and long-term aggregate supply, 159
 capital account, BOP, 372, 444
 capital consumption allowance (CCA), 133
 capital deepening investments, 175
 capital expenditures, fiscal policy and, 311
 capital flows
 and international trade, 356–369
 and trade balance, 443–445
 capital goods, 128
 capital markets, 383, 406–407
 capital restrictions, 356, 366–369
 capital spending
 cyclical use of resources, 205–207
 and fiscal policy, 314
 capital stock, 176–177
 capital-to-labor ratio, 175
 capital transfers sub-account, BOP, 372
 Carnegie, Andrew, 96
 cartels, 93, 96
 cash flows, government, 303–306
 CBS. *see* currency board system
 CCA. *see* capital consumption allowance
 Central African Republic, 364
 Central Bank of Brazil, 280
 central banks, 281
 countercyclical policies of, 202
 credibility of, 288–289
 currency purchases by foreign, 375–376
 exchange rate regime switching by, 440
 in FX market, 413–414
 independence of, 288, 322
 and inflation, 168, 226, 287–293
 monetary policy by, 263n.1, 279
 monetary transmission mechanism of, 285–287, 297–298
 objectives of, 280–281
 policy rate of, 284
 price index use by, 230
 reserve requirements of, 268, 284–285
 roles and responsibilities of, 277–280
 transparency of, 289
 Central Europe. *see also specific countries*
 current account imbalance, 380
 trade-to-GDP ratio, 340
 Centre for Economic Policy Research (CEPR), 245
 CFNAI. *see* Chicago Fed National Activity Index
 Chamberlin, Edward H., 65
 Chevron/Texaco, 107
 Chicago Fed National Activity Index (CFNAI), 244
 Chicago Mercantile Exchange (CME), 408
 Chile, 287, 437, 439–440
 China
 business investment, 177
 capital goods expenditures, 128
 central bank reserves, 413
 comparative advantage, 347–348, 352
 CPI, 229
 current account, 377, 380
 economic growth, 179
 economic indicators, 244
 effects of global recession, 166
 exchange rate regime, 436, 437, 441
 exports from, 337, 342, 354
 GDP, 121, 155
 globalization of production, 342
 housing sector, 211
 labor supply, 176
 Multi Fiber Agreement, 345
 reserve requirements, 285
 trade balance with US, 130, 131
 Chinese yuan, 401
 CNY/USD exchange rate, 403–404
 exchange rate regime, 437
 Citigroup, 412, 414
 classical gold standard, 434
 CLI. *see* Composite Leading Indicators
 closed economy, 338, 377–378
 CME. *see* Chicago Mercantile Exchange
 Coca-Cola, 65, 71, 447, 448
 coincident economic indicators, 239, 241
 Colombia, 287, 437
 commercial loans, 241
 Commission Bancaire, 278
 common markets, 362–366
 Commonwealth of Independent States, 340
 comparative advantage, 347–355
 absolute advantage vs., 347–354
 defined, 336n.1
 Ricardian and Heckscher–Ohlin models, 354–355
 compensation
 as form of payment, 119
 in GDP, 133
 competition
 imperfect
 breakeven analysis, 40–41
 marginal revenue, 29–30
 revenue in perfect competition vs., 35–36
 monopolistic, 83–87
 benefits of, 343–344
 characteristics of, 67
 defined, 65
 demand analysis, 84–85
 long-run equilibrium, 86–87
 optimal price and output, 85
 supply analysis, 85
 non-price, 67
 perfect, 68–83
 breakeven point for firm, 38–39
 characteristics of, 67
 defined, 65
 demand, average, and marginal costs, 36–37
 demand analysis, 69–76
 and innovation, 83
 long-run equilibrium, 81–82
 marginal revenue, 29–30
 and oligopoly, 96
 optimal price, 77–81
 output optimization, 77–81
 revenue in imperfect competition vs., 35–36
 shutdown decision, 39–40
 supply analysis, 76–77
 and price collusion, 93
Competitive Strategy (Porter), 68
 complements
 defined, 15
 elasticity of demand and, 73
 identifying, 16
 Composite Leading Indicators (CLI), 239
 concentration ratio, 106–108
 Conference Board, 239, 240, 244
 confidence, business and consumer, 153, 155
 consumer(s)
 behavior of, 208–210
 demand and supply analysis, 6–23
 demand concepts, 6–8
 elasticity of demand, 9–18
 substitution and income effects, 18–23
 expectations of, 153
 in microeconomics, 5
 theory of the consumer, 5
 consumer confidence, 153, 155
 consumer installment debt, income and, 242
 consumer price index (CPI), 229, 230, 242
 consumer spending
 and business cycles, 208–210
 and expectations, 153
 in phases of business cycle, 202
 consumer surplus
 and alternative trade policies, 357, 360
 in monopoly, 102–104
 in perfect competition, 74–76
 and tariffs, 357
 consumption
 and aggregate demand, 138–139
 and alternative trade policies, 360
 in autarky, 349
 average propensity to consume, 139
 marginal propensity to consume, 139, 314–316
 wealth effect on, 152
 consumption bundle (consumption basket), 227–229
 consumption spending, 138–139
 contractionary fiscal policy, 304, 317
 contractionary monetary policy, 296–297
 contraction phase (business cycle), 200–204. *see also* recession
 control, market structure and, 66–67
 convergence, income, 175
 copyright laws, 97
 core inflation, 230–231
 corporate accounts, in FX market, 412

- Costa Rica
 exchange rate regime, 436
 exports from, 342
 government spending, 130
 underground economy, 124
- cost function, 24
- cost-push inflation, 233–235
- costs
 accounting, 28
 administrative, 368
 average, 36–37
 average fixed, 31–35
 average total, 31–37, 45–46
 average variable, 30, 36–37, 39–40
 economic, 28, 38, 77
 fixed, 31–35, 41–42
 of inflation, 281–283
 of international trade, 343–347
 labor, 158–160
 long-run average, 102
 long-run marginal, 102
 marginal
 defined, 23
 and marginal revenue/profit maximization, 29–30
 in monopolies, 36–37, 102
 and other costs/output, 31–35
 in perfect competition, 36–37
 menu, 219–220, 282
 opportunity, 24, 77
 and output, 31–35
 and production, 23–25
 quasi-fixed, 33
 shoe leather, 282
 sunk, 28
 total, 24, 31–35
 total fixed, 31–35, 41–42
 total variable, 31–35, 41–42
 unit labor, 234, 241
 variable, 30–35
- cost structures
 in monopolies, 99–100
 and price collusion, 93
- countervailing duties, 359
- Cournot, Augustin, 90
- Cournot assumption, 90–91
- Cournot equilibrium, 91, 93, 94
- CPI. *see* consumer price index
- CPI-U, 229, 230
- crawling band currency regimes, 436, 440
- crawling peg currency regimes, 436, 439–440
- creative destruction theory, 213–214
- credibility
 of central banks, 288–289
 of monetary and fiscal policy mix, 323
- credit crisis (2008), 303, 307, 308
- credits, BOP system, 370–371
- Croatia, 436
- cross-price elasticity of demand
 for consumers, 15–18
 in perfect competition, 73
- cross-rates, currency, 419, 421–425
- cross-sectional regression analysis, 106
- crowding out, 309
- currency
 in business cycles, 212
 foreign central bank purchases of, 375–376
 FX conventions for, 401–402
 currency board system (CBS), 436, 438–439
 currency codes, FX market, 401
 currency exchange rates, 399–462
 calculations, 418–432
 cross-rate, 421–425
 and exchange rate quotations, 418–421
 forward, 425–432
 currency regimes, 432–443
 active and passive crawling pegs, 439–440
 arrangements with no separate legal tender, 437–438
 CBS, 438–439
 fixed parity, 439
 fixed parity with crawling bands, 440
 free-floating, 440–441
 historical perspective on, 434–436
 ideal, 433
 managed float, 440
 target zone, 439
 taxonomy of, 436–443
- foreign exchange market, 399–418
 about, 399–400
 currency conventions, 401–402
 functions, 406–412
 nominal vs. real exchange rates, 402–406
 participants in, 412–415
 size and composition of, 415–418
 and international trade, 443–453
 absorption approach to trade balance, 449–450
 elasticities approach to trade balance, 445–449
 practice problems, 457–459
 quotations, 418–421
 solutions to problems, 460–462
- currency quotes, 418–421
- currency regimes, 432–443
 arrangements with no separate legal tender, 437–438
 CBS, 438–439
 with crawling bands/pegs, 439–440
 fixed parity, 439
 free-floating, 440–441
 historical perspective on, 434–436
 ideal, 433
 managed float, 440
 target zone, 439
- currency reserves
 foreign, 279, 294
 requirements, 267, 268, 284–285, 367
- current account, BOP, 371, 377–381
- current government spending, 311
- customers, segregation of, 103
- customs union, 362
- cyclical companies, 165
- cyclical economic indicators, 244–245
- cyclically adjusted budget deficit, 317
- Cyprus, 362n.18, 436
- Czech Republic, 287
- D**
- deadweight loss, 356, 357
- De Beers Consolidated Mines Limited, 97
- debits, BOP system, 370–371
- debt
 government, 262, 316
 national, 307–309
 ratio of consumer installment debt to income, 242
- debt burden, 308
- decreasing returns to scale, 46
- defensive companies, 165
- deficit
 budget (fiscal), 304
 and business cycles, 129
 and fiscal policy, 317–318
 and foreign capital, 138
 and national debt, 307–309
 and Ricardian equivalence, 316
 in current account, 377–381
 trade, 130, 338
- deflation
 defined, 226
 and inflation targeting, 290
 and liquidity traps, 298
 and quantitative easing, 298–299
- Delta Air Lines, 88
- demand
 aggregate (*see* aggregate demand [AD])
 concepts, 6–8
 derived, 355
 elastic, 10, 12–14, 71
 elasticity of demand, 8–18
 calculating, from demand function, 16–18
 cross-price elasticity of demand, 15–18
 defined, 8
 income elasticity of demand, 14–16
 own-price elasticity of demand, 9–14
 excess, 339
 inelastic, 10, 11, 13–14, 71
 law of demand, 6, 18–19, 21, 75
 long-run vs. short-run, 12
 for money, 271–274
 in monopolistic competition, 84–85
 in monopoly, 36–37, 98–99
 in oligopoly, 88–94
 in perfect competition, 36–37, 69–76
 perfectly elastic, 12
 perfectly inelastic, 11
 under perfect vs. imperfect competition, 36
 unit elastic, 10
- demand and supply analysis, 5–61
- consumers, 6–23
 demand concepts, 6–8
 elasticity of demand, 9–18
 substitution and income effects, 18–23
- firms, 23–48
 marginal returns, 23–28
 scale and profit maximization, 43–48
 shutdown analysis, 28–43
 in microeconomics, 5–6
 for money, 272–274
 practice problems, 51–57
 solutions to problems, 58–61
- demand curves
 aggregate, 145–148
 defined, 8

- effect of income elasticity on, 15
 elasticity of linear, 11
 kinked, 89–90, 95
 and law of demand, 18
 of leaders in oligopoly, 95
 as marginal value curve, 75
 in monopolies, 98–99
 in monopolistic competition, 84–85
 negatively sloped, under imperfect competition, 40–41
 in oligopolies, 88–90, 95
 in perfect competition, 77–78
- demand functions
 defined, 6–7
 elasticities from, 16–18
 inverse, 8
- demand-pull inflation, 233, 235–236
- demand schedules, 71–73
- demand shock to inflation rate, 297
- demographics, housing sector and, 211
- Denmark, 436, 441
- depreciation
 in absorption approach, 450
 currency, 420
 and economic vs. accounting costs, 28
 in elasticities approach, 445–449
- depressions, 201
- derived demand, 355
- Detroit “Big Three” automakers, 100
- Deutsche Bank, 412, 414
- Deutsche Bundesbank, 278, 435
- developed countries
 business investment by, 177
 foreign exchange reserves, 414
 international trade and unemployment, 344
- developing countries
 business investment by, 177
 exchange rate targeting, 293–296
 foreign exchange reserves, 414
 labor supply, 176
 monetary policy of, 292–293
 reserve requirements, 285
 terms of trade for, 337–338
 trade-to-GDP ratio, 340
- diffusion index, 242n.a, 244
- diminishing marginal productivity, 174–175
- diminishing returns, law of, 79
- direct currency quote, 418
- direct exchange rate, 418
- direct taxes, 311, 314
- dirty floating, 440
- discount rate, 284
- discounts, forward, 425
- discouraged worker, 223
- discretionary goods, 12
- diseconomies of scale, 44–47
- disinflation, 226, 227
- disposable income
 and balance of payments, 378
 defined, 209
 and MPC, 315
 personal, 134
- dollar (Australia). *see* Australian dollar
 dollar (Canada). *see* Canadian dollar
 dollar (Hong Kong). *see* Hong Kong dollar
 dollar (New Zealand), 401, 418, 419n.4
 dollar (Singapore), 401
- dollar (United States). *see* US dollar
 dollar–Canada exchange rate, 418, 421–422
 dollarization, 437–438
 dollar–yen exchange rate, 418, 422–423
- domestic content provisions, 356
- double coincidence of wants, 265
- Douglas, Roger, 287
- downturn, 203–204
 capital spending in, 206
 housing sector in, 210
 inventory–sales ratio in, 207
 resource use in, 204–206
- duopoly markets, 90–93
- DuPont, 73
- durable goods, 209
- Duracell, 64
- E**
- early expansion phase (business cycle), 201–203
- East Asian Financial Crisis (1990s), 384
- Eastern Europe. *see also specific countries*
 current account imbalance, 380
 trade-to-GDP ratio, 340
- East Timor, 437
- easy fiscal policy, 321
- easy monetary policy, 321
- eBay, 98
- ECB. *see* European Central Bank
- economeric approach, in market structure identification, 106
- economic activity, in business cycle, 200–202
- economic costs, 28, 38, 77
- Economic Cycle Research Institute (ECRI), 239
- economic depreciation. *see* depreciation
- economic growth, 173–185
 and aggregate demand, 155
 in China, 179
 in Mexico, 182
 production function and potential GDP, 174–175
 and real GDP, 173
 RTAs and spillovers of, 364
 sources of, 176–179
 sustainable, 173, 179–185
 and trade, 340–341
- economic indicators, 239–246
 cyclical measures as, 244–245
 defined, 239
 diffusion index of, 244
 leading, lagging, and coincident, 239–243
- economic loss, 40
- economic moat, 68
- economic profit, 28, 29, 77, 85, 86
- economics, 5
- economic sectors
 external trade, 130–131, 211–213
 financial, 383
 in GDP, 127–131
 government, 129–130
 household, 119–120, 128
 housing, 210–211
 information technology, 178
 public sector spending, 263
- Economic sentiment index, 242
- economic stabilization, fiscal policy and, 304
- economic unions, 362–366
- economies of scale
 from international trade, 343, 344
 and monopolies, 97
 for profit maximization, 44–47
- economy
 aggregate output and income in, 119–120
 barter, 123, 265
 business cycles as short-term movements, 199–200
 closed, 338, 377–378
 and government debt, 262
 IMF monitoring of, 382
 influence of fiscal and monetary policy on, 262–264
 open, 338, 343, 377, 378
 underground, 123–124
- ECRI. *see* Economic Cycle Research Institute
- Ecuador, 436, 437
- education, human capital and, 176
- efficiency, of tax policy, 311
- EFSE. *see* European Financial Stability Facility
- Egypt, 437
- elastic demand, 10, 12–14, 71
- elasticities approach to trade balance, 445–449
- elasticity(-ies)
 defined, 9
 of demand, 8–18
 and budget constraints, 71
 calculating, from demand function, 16–18
 cross-price, 15–18, 73
 defined, 8
 income, 14–16, 72–73
 in oligopolies, 88
 own-price, 9–14
 in perfect competition, 70–74
 and trade balance, 445–449
 of linear demand curve, 11
 of supply, 8
- electric utilities, 66, 97
- El Salvador, 436, 437
- employed (term), 222
- employees on non-agricultural payrolls, 241
- employment, business cycle and, 202, 204–205
- EMU. *see* European Economic and Monetary Union
- endogeneity, problem of, 106
- Energizer, 64
- entry fee, 104
- equilibrium
 Cournot, 91, 93, 94
 long-run
 macroeconomic, 163
 in monopolistic competition, 86–87
 in monopoly, 104–105
 in oligopoly, 96
 in perfect competition, 81–82
 in money market, 144–145
 Nash, 92–93, 96

- equilibrium GDP, 163–173
inflationary gap, 167–168
long-run equilibrium, 163
recessionary gap, 163–167
stagflation, 169–170
- equilibrium prices
for money, 272–273
in perfectly competitive markets,
77–78
- ERM. *see* European Exchange Rate
Mechanism
- Essay on the Principle of Population*
(Malthus), 174
- Estonia, 362n.18
- Ethiopia, 166
- EU. *see* European Union
- euro, 401, 435–436
cross-rate calculations with, 421–422
as currency anchor, 436
EUR/GBP exchange rates, 418, 419n.4
exchange rate quotes with, 418–420
forward calculations with, 425–426
GBP/EUR exchange rate, 403, 408
intervention in FX market to support,
440
USD/EUR currency pair, 416
USD/EUR exchange rate, 409
- euro–Canada exchange rate, 419,
421–422
- Euro–Coin statistic, 245
- euro–dollar exchange rate, 421–422,
425–426
- euro exchange rate, 418
- Europe. *see also specific countries and
regions*
economic indicators, 245
interest rates, 298n.11
labor supply, 176
stagflation, 236
terms of trade, 338
trade balance with US, 130–131
- European Central Bank (ECB)
CPI used by, 230
and currency regime of EMU, 438
and European Union, 362n.18
independence of, 288
inflation targeting, 287, 289
intervention in FX market, 440
monetary policy of, 185
money measures of, 270
objectives of, 280
- European Commission, 105
- European Community
currency regimes, 436
customs union, 362
- European Economic and Monetary
Union (EMU), 383–384, 436, 438.
see also Eurozone
- European Economic Community, 435
- European Exchange Rate Mechanism
(ERM), 294, 435
- European Financial Stability Facility
(EFSF), 366
- European Union (EU)
economic indicators for, 239
EFSF of, 366
ERM of, 294
export subsidies, 359
imports in, 337
- inflation targeting, 289
price index, 230
quotas from, 359
RTAs for, 362
underground economy, 124n.4
- Eurostat, 230
- euro–Sterling exchange rate, 419
- Euro Stoxx Equity, 242
- euro–Swiss exchange rate, 419, 420
- euro–yen exchange rate, 419
- Eurozone
economic indicators, 239, 242
and EU, 362n.18
money measures, 270
- Eurozone Manufacturing Purchasing
Managers Index, 242
- Eurozone Service Sector Future Business
Activity Expectations Index, 242
- evaluation
of fiscal policy, 319–320
of monetary policy, 301–302
- excess demand, 339
- excess supply, 339
- exchange, money as medium of, 265
- exchange rate quotations, 418–421
- exchange rate regimes, 432–443. *see also*
currency regimes
- exchange rates, 401. *see also* currency
exchange rates
and aggregate demand, 155
and short-run aggregate supply, 158,
160
- exchange rate targeting, 293–296
- exogenous policy tools, aggregate
demand and, 140
- expansionary fiscal policy, 302–304, 317
- expansionary monetary policy, 154,
296–297
- expansion phase (business cycle),
200–203. *see also* recovery
housing sector in, 210
inventory–sales ratio in, 208
investor preferences, 203
resource use in, 205
- expectations
about future prices, 158, 160
about inflation, 236–237
and aggregate demand, 153
in economic indicators, 241
- expected inflation, 281, 283
- expenditure(s)
aggregate, 119
capital, 311
and consumer surplus, 74–76
government, 221, 303–306
personal consumption, 229
and price elasticity of demand,
445–448
- R&D, 178
- total
and aggregate income, 137–144
and consumer surplus, 75–76
and own-price elasticity of demand,
13–14
and trade balance, 444–445
- expenditure approach to GDP, 120–122,
127, 128, 131–133
- exports
in balance of trade, 374
- in business cycles, 212
defined, 337
exchange rate and prices of, 155
net, 140, 338
terms of trade for, 337–338
voluntary export restraints, 356, 359
- export subsidies, 356, 359–361
- external competition, price collusion
and, 93
- external trade sector
cyclical behavior of, 211–212
in GDP, 130–131
- Exxon Mobil, 107
- F**
- Facebook, 98
- factor markets, 128
- factor-proportions theory, 354–355
- factors of production (inputs), 23–24
- fairness, of tax policy, 312
- Fannie Mae, 299
- FCA. *see* Financial Conduct Authority
- FDI. *see* foreign direct investment
- Federal Banking Supervisory Office, 278
- Federal Commission, 279
- Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation,
279, 437–438
- federal funds rate (fed funds rate), 241,
284
- Federal Open Market Committee
(FOMC), 284
- Federal Reserve Act, 292
- Federal Reserve Bank of Chicago, 244
- Fiat, 100
- fiat money, 277
- final goods, 121
- final sales, 207
- financial account, BOP, 372
- financial assets abroad sub-account,
BOP, 372
- financial capital
in Heckscher–Ohlin model, 354–355
and international trade, 336
in long-term economic growth, 175
- Financial Conduct Authority (FCA),
278n.6
- financial markets, in economy, 128
- financial sector, IMF analysis of, 383
- Financial Services Agency, 279
- Financial Services Authority (FSA),
277–279
- Finland
disinflation, 227
EU membership, 362n.18
exchange rate regime, 436
inflation targeting, 287
- firms
demand and supply analysis, 23–48
marginal returns, 23–28
scale and profit maximization, 43–48
shutdown analysis, 28–43
and market structure, 66–67
in microeconomics, 5
monopolist, 100–101
theory of the firm, 5
- first-degree price discrimination,
102–103
- fiscal deficit. *see* budget deficit
- fiscal multiplier, 314–315

- fiscal policy, 302–320
 and aggregate demand, 153, 302–303
 balanced budget multipliers, 315–316
 and deficits/national debt, 307–309
 defined, 263
 evaluating, 319–320
 fiscal multiplier, 314–315
 and government receipts/expenditures, 303–306
 implementation of, 316–319
 and inflation, 168
 influence on economy, 262–264
 of Keynesian school, 215
 and monetary policy, 320–324
 and Ricardian equivalence, 316
 roles and objectives, 302–310
 and tax policy, 312
 tools, 310–316
 types of, 310
- Fisher, Irving, 274
 Fisher effect, 274–275
 Fisher index, 228–229
- fixed costs
 average, 31–35
 quasi-, 33
 total, 31–35, 41–42
- fixed-income investments, 184–185
- fixed parity currency regimes, 436, 439
- flexible exchange rates, 435
- floating exchange rates, 433
- FOMC. *see* Federal Open Market Committee
- foreign currency reserves, at central banks, 279, 294
- foreign direct investment (FDI), 341–342
- foreign exchange market (FX market), 399–418
 about, 399–400
 currency conventions, 401–402
 functions, 406–412
 nominal vs. real exchange rates, 402–406
 participants in, 412–415
 size and composition of, 415–418
- foreign investments
 direct, 341–342
 income from, 376
 portfolio, 341
- foreign-owned financial assets sub-account, BOP, 372
- foreign portfolio investment (FPI), 341
- forward discounts, 425
- forward exchange rates, 408, 425–432
 and spot rates, 410–412, 428–430
 and swap/interest rates, 426–430
- forward points, 425, 429–430
- forward premiums, 425
- forwards (forward contracts), in FX market, 408
- FPI. *see* foreign portfolio investment
- fractional reserve banking, 266–268
- franc (Switzerland), 401, 418, 420
- France
 banking supervision, 278
 business investment, 177
 consumption expenditures, 139
 disinflation, 227
 EU membership, 362n.18
 exchange rate regime, 436
- expected inflation, 282
- exports of goods, 337
- government debt, 262
- government spending, 129
- labor productivity, 181
- public sector spending, 263
- trade balance with US, 130
- underground economy, 124
- Freddie Mac, 299
- free-floating currency regimes, 440–441
- free trade, 338, 343–344
- free trade areas (FTAs), 362
- frictionally unemployed (term), 222
- Friedman, Milton, 217, 234, 435
- Friedman, Thomas, 64
- FSA. *see* Financial Services Authority
- FTAs. *see* free trade areas
- full employment, 164
- full employment equilibrium GDP, 163–164
- full employment level of output, 150
- functions, defined, 6
- future prices, short-run aggregate supply and, 158, 160
- futures (futures contracts), in FX market, 408
- FX market. *see* foreign exchange market
- FX swaps, 409–410
- G**
- G–7, 239, 344
- G–10, 278–279
- gains
 from trade, 349–352
 from voluntary exchange, 343
- game theory, 92–94
- Gary, Elbert, 96
- gasoline market, concentration in, 107
- GATS. *see* General Agreement on Trade in Services
- GATT. *see* General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade
- GDP. *see* gross domestic product
- GDP deflator, 125–127
- GE. *see* General Electric
- General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade (GATT), 382, 385
- General Agreement on Trade in Services (GATS), 385
- General Electric (GE), 105
- General Motors (GM), 46
- Germany
 automobile industry, 86
 banking supervision, 278
 BOP paired transactions, 374–376
 business investment, 177
 consumption expenditures, 139
 CPI, 229
 currency regime, 435
 current account imbalance, 377, 380
 cyclically adjusted budget deficit, 317
 disinflation, 227
 effects of global recession, 166
 EU membership, 362n.18
 exchange rate regime, 436, 440
 foreign direct investment, 341, 342
 government liabilities/debt, 308
- government revenues/expenditures, 303, 304
- government spending, 129
- gross domestic product
 forecasts, 184–185
 potential, 183
- hyperinflation, 226
- investment spending, 140
- labor productivity, 181
- leading economic indicator, 243
- net borrowing/lending, 305
- trade balance with US, 130
- underground economy, 124
- Ghana, 287
- Giffen, Robert, 21
- Giffen goods, 21
- gilts, 298–299
- global economic developments, IMF
 analysis of, 383
- global financial crisis (2007–2009), 211, 226, 236, 383
- Global Integrated Monetary and Fiscal Model, 322
- globalization, 338–339, 342–343
- global supply chains, 343
- GM. *see* General Motors
- GNP. *see* gross national product
- gold standard, 277, 434
- goods
 capital, 128
 discretionary, 12
 durable, 209
 elasticity of demand for, 12
 final, 121
 Giffen, 21
 inferior, 15, 19–23
 intermediate, 121
 manufacturers' new orders for, 240
 non-discretionary, 12
 nondurable, 209
 normal, 15, 19–23
 substitution and income effects on, 19–23
 value of, 123–124
 Veblen, 21
- goods markets, 128
- Google, 64
- government(s)
 in FX market, 413
 regulation of monopolies, 105–106
 revenue from alternative trade policies, 360
- government-controlled authorization, 97, 104
- government debt, 262, 316. *see also* national debt
- government expenditures
 and business cycle theories, 221
 and fiscal policy, 303–306
- government receipts, fiscal policy and, 303–306
- government sector, in GDP, 129–130
- government services, in GDP, 123
- government spending, 129–130
 and aggregate demand, 137–138, 155
 current, 311
 and fiscal policy, 153
 and taxes, 314–315
- Great Depression, 213, 226, 381–382

- Greece
 EU membership, 362n.18
 exchange rate regime, 436
 exports of service, 337
 fiscal crisis (2010), 365–366, 383–384, 386–388
 government debt, 262
 government spending, 130
 labor productivity, 181
 national debt, 307
 public sector spending, 263
 underground economy, 124
- Greenspan, Alan, 216
- gross domestic product (GDP), 120–136
 in business cycles, 212
 components of, 127–131
 and cyclically adjusted budget deficit, 317
 equilibrium, 163–173
 inflationary gap, 167–168
 long-run equilibrium, 163
 recessionary gap, 163–167
 stagflation, 169–170
 external sector, 130–131
 and foreign direct investment, 341–342
 GNP vs., 336–337
 and government liabilities/debt, 308–309
 and government revenues/ expenditures, 303–304
 government sector, 129–130
 household and business sectors, 128
 long-run growth rate vs. fluctuations in, 150–151
 measuring, 120–123
 and net borrowing/lending, 305
 nominal, 124–127
 and other income measures, 131–136
 potential, 159
 and demand-pull inflation, 235
 and long-run equilibrium GDP, 163
 measuring growth of, 179–181, 183–184
 production function of, 174–175
 and price indexes, 231
 and production function, 174–175
 real, 124–127
 and economic growth, 173
 identifying recession with, 203–204
 and international trade, 344
 in Japan, 172–173
 and shifts in aggregate supply/ demand, 170–173
 sustainable growth in, 183–184
 trade-to-GDP ratio, 339–342
 values of goods and services, 123–124
 gross investment, aggregate demand and, 139
 gross national product (GNP), 120n.2, 336–337
 growth, economic. *see* economic growth
 growth theory, 174–175
 Guatemala, 287
- H**
 Harley-Davidson, 84
 harmonised index of consumer prices (HICP), 230
 headline inflation, 230–231
- Heckscher–Ohlin model, 343, 354–355
 hedging, in FX markets, 407
 Herfindahl, O. C., 107
 Herfindahl–Hirschman Index (HHI), 107–108
 HICP. *see* harmonised index of consumer prices
 Hirschman, A. O., 107
 HKMA. *see* Hong Kong Monetary Authority
 Honda, 86
 Honeywell, 105
 Hong Kong SAR
 Asian financial crisis, 343
 effects of global recession, 166
 exchange rate regime, 436, 438–439
 exchange rate targeting, 294
 Hong Kong dollar, 401
 AUD/HKD exchange rate, 404–406, 410–412
 exchange rate regime for, 438–439
 Hong Kong Monetary Authority (HKMA), 438–439
 horizontal demand schedule, 71–72
 horizontal equity, 312
 host country, for FDI, 341
 hours worked, 224
 household saving rate, 134, 152, 209
 household sector, 119–120, 128
 household wealth, aggregate demand and, 151–152
 housing prices, 152, 155
 housing sector, cyclical behavior of, 210–211
 HSBC, 414
 human capital, 159, 160, 176
 Hungary
 exchange rate regime, 437
 government debt, 262
 hyperinflation, 226
 inflation targeting, 287
 public sector spending, 263
 hyperinflation, 226–227
- I**
 IBM, 344
 IBRD. *see* International Bank for Reconstruction and Development
 Iceland, 287, 437
 IDA. *see* International Development Association
 ideal currency regime, 433
 ILO. *see* International Labour Organization
 IMF. *see* International Monetary Fund
 IMM. *see* International Monetary Market
 impact lag, 318
 imperfect competition. *see also* monopolistic competition
 breakeven analysis in, 40–41
 marginal revenue in, 29–30
 revenue in perfect vs., 35–36
 implementation, fiscal policy, 316–319
 implicit price deflator for GDP, 125–127
 import license, 359
 imports
 in balance of trade, 374
 in business cycles, 211, 212
 defined, 337
 exchange rate and prices of, 155
 terms of trade for, 337–338
 import-substitution policy, 352n.10
 incentives
 for monopolist firms, 100–101
 in tax policy, 312
 income
 aggregate (*see* aggregate income)
 and consumer installment debt, 242
 and consumer spending, 209
 convergence of, 175
 disposable, 134, 209, 315, 378
 from foreign investments, 376
 and GDP, 131–136
 national, 133, 377
 personal, 133–134
 real, 18–19
 income approach to GDP, 120, 131–133
 income effects
 on elasticity of demand, 12
 on Giffen and Veblen goods, 21
 and law of demand, 18–19
 on normal and inferior goods, 19–23
 in perfectly competitive markets, 69
 with price decrease, 20–23
 income elasticity of demand
 calculating, 16
 for consumers, 14–15
 in perfect competition, 72–73
 income inequality, 344
 income sub-account, BOP, 371
 increasing marginal returns, 23
 increasing returns to scale, 45
 independence, of central banks, 288, 323
 independent float currency regimes, 437
 Index of Leading Economic Indicators (LEI), 239, 242
- India
 business investment, 177
 capital goods expenditures, 128
 comparative advantage, 348–352, 354, 355
 CPI, 229
 effects of global recession, 166
 exchange rate regime, 437
 exports from, 337, 354
 foreign direct investment, 341, 342
 globalization of production, 342
 labor supply, 176
 reserve requirements, 285
 trade balance with US, 131
 underground economy, 124
 Indian rupee, 401
 indicators, economic. *see* economic indicators
 indirect currency quote, 418
 indirect exchange rate, 418
 indirect taxes, 311, 313
- Indonesia
 Asian financial crisis, 343
 business investment, 177
 exchange rate regime, 437
 inflation targeting, 287
 industrial countries, terms of trade for, 337
 industrial loans, 241

- Industrial Production Index, 241
- inelastic demand, 71
 defined, 10
 perfectly inelastic demand, 11
 price changes and total expenditure with, 13–14
- infant industry argument, 356
- inferior goods
 defined, 15, 19
 substitution and income effects on, 19–23
- inflation
 and business cycles, 205, 225–239
 core, 230–231
 cost-push (wage-push), 233–235
 costs of, 281–283
 defined, 167, 225
 deflation, hyperinflation, disinflation, 226–227
 demand-pull, 235–236
 expectations about, 236–237
 expected, 281, 283
 and GDP deflator, 125–127
 headline, 230–231
 monetary policy and inflation rate, 297
 and New Classical school, 219
 and nominal interest rates, 274–276
 in phases of business cycle, 202
 price indexes
 constructing, 227–229
 usage of, 229–231
 in stagflation, 169–170
 targets for, 289–290
 types of, 233–236
 and unemployment, 221–222
 unexpected, 281–283
- inflationary gap, 167–168
- inflation rate, 167n.19, 225–226, 297
- Inflation Reports, 289
- inflation targeting, 287–293
 credibility of, 288–289
 exceptions to, 291–292
 and independence of central banks, 288
 and monetary policy in developing countries, 292–293
 transparency of, 289–291
 by US Federal Reserve system, 292
- inflation uncertainty, 282–283
- information technology (IT) sector, 178
- innovation
 and international trade, 344
 and perfect competition, 83
- input prices, short-run aggregate supply and, 158, 160
- input productivity, 23
- inputs (factors of production), 23–24
- Institute of Supply Management (ISM), 244
- Intel, 342
- interbank FX market, 415–416
- interest, 119, 296
- interest rates
 and AD curve, 146–147
 and equilibrium price for money, 272–273
 and housing sector behavior, 210
 in monetary policy, 153–154
 and monetary transmission mechanism, 285–287
 and money, 275
 neutral, 296
 nominal, 274–276
 official, 284
 real, 140
 and swap rates/foreign exchange rates, 426–430
- intermediate goods, 121
- International Bank for Reconstruction and Development (IBRD), 384–385
- International Development Association (IDA), 384–385
- International Labour Organization (ILO), 223
- International Monetary Fund (IMF)
 bailouts by, 383–384
 capital restrictions study, 368
 exchange rate regime classification, 436
 founding of, 382
 and globalization, 339
 Greek bailout, 366, 386–388
 mandates of, 383
 monetary and fiscal policy model, 322
- International Monetary Market (IMM), 408
- International Organization for Standardization (ISO), 401
- international trade, 335–398
 and aggregate demand, 155
 balance of payments, 369–381
 BOP accounts, 370–371, 377–379
 components of, 371–373
 imbalances since 1996, 379–381
 paired transactions, 374–376
 for United States, 372–373
 benefits and costs, 343–347
 and capital flows, 356–369
 comparative advantage, 347–355
 absolute vs., 347–354
 Ricardian and Heckscher–Ohlin models, 354–355
 and currency exchange rates, 443–453
 absorption approach to trade balance, 449–450
 elasticities approach to trade balance, 445–449
 global investors' concerns, 335–336
 patterns and trends, 339–343
 practice problems, 392–395
 solutions to problems, 396–398
 terminology, 336–339
 trade organizations, 381–388
 function and objectives, 386–388
 International Monetary Fund, 382–384
 World Bank Group, 384–385
 World Trade Organization, 385–386
 trade restrictions/agreements, 356–369
 capital restrictions, 366–369
 export subsidies, 359–361
 quotas, 359
- tariffs, 356–361
 trading blocs, common markets, and economic unions, 362–366
- International Trade Organization (ITO), 382
- inter-temporal trade, 377, 378
- intra-industry trade, 343
- inventory
 and business cycle, 204, 205
 cyclical levels of, 207–208
 and GDP, 127
- inventory–sales ratio, 207–208, 241
- inverse demand function, 8
- investment
 and economic growth, 176–177
 net, 139–140
 saving–investment differential, 141–143
- investment spending, aggregate demand and, 139–140, 146–147
- investment strategies
 AD and AS curves as basis for, 171–172
 during decreases in aggregate demand, 164–165
 for inflationary gaps, 168
 for shifts in aggregate supply, 169–170
- iPod, 65
- Iran, 436
- Iraq, 436
- Ireland
 budget deficit, 379
 business investment, 177
 effects of Greek fiscal crisis, 366
 EU membership, 362n.18
 exchange rate regime, 436
 exports from, 342
 labor productivity, 181
 wealth effect, 152
- IS curve, 137–144
- ISM. *see* Institute of Supply Management
- ISM new order index, 240
- ISO. *see* International Organization for Standardization
- Israel, 287, 437
- Italy
 banking supervision, 278
 business investment, 177
 capital goods expenditures, 128
 consumption expenditures, 139
 disinflation, 227
 EU membership, 362n.18
 exchange rate regime, 436
 expected inflation, 282
 globalization of production, 342
 government debt, 262
 government spending, 129, 130
 housing sector, 211
 investment spending, 140
 labor productivity, 181
 national debt, 309
 public sector spending, 263
 trade balance with US, 130
 underground economy, 124
- ITO. *see* International Trade Organization
- IT sector. *see* information technology sector

- J**
- Japan
- aggregate demand and supply in, 172–173
 - banking supervision, 279
 - budget deficit, 317
 - business investment, 177
 - comparative advantage, 355
 - consumption expenditures, 139
 - CPI, 229
 - current account imbalance, 377, 380
 - deflation, 226, 298
 - disinflation, 227
 - economic indicators, 242–244
 - effects of global recession, 165, 166
 - exchange rate regime, 437, 440
 - globalization of production, 342
 - government debt, 262, 308
 - government liabilities, 308
 - government revenues/expenditures, 303, 304
 - government spending, 129
 - gross domestic product, 155
 - forecasts of, 184–185
 - potential, 183–184
 - housing sector, 211
 - and inflation targeting, 292
 - interest rates, 298n.11
 - labor productivity, 181
 - labor supply, 176
 - monetary policy, 299–301
 - money measures, 270
 - national debt, 309
 - natural resources, 178
 - net borrowing/lending, 305
 - public sector spending, 263
 - trade balance with US, 131
 - underground economy, 124
 - VERs on exports, 359
- Japanese yen, 401
 - cross-rate calculations with, 422–423
 - exchange rate quotes with, 418–419
 - JPY/USD currency pair, 416
- J*-curve effect, 449
- Jordan, 294
- K**
- Kazakhstan, 359
- Kenya, 166
- Keynes, John Maynard, 215, 216, 274, 434
- Keynesian school, 214–215, 303
- kinked demand curve analysis, 89–90, 95
- Kiwi exchange rate, 418
- krona (Sweden), 401
- krone (Norway), 401
- Kuwait, 436
- Kydland, Finn E., 217
- L**
- labor
- average product of, 25–28
 - as factor of production, 24
 - in Heckscher–Ohlin model, 354
 - in long-term economic growth, 175
 - marginal product of (*see* marginal returns)
 - productivity of, 160, 180–184
 - in Ricardian model, 354
 - supply of, 159, 160, 176
 - total product of, 25–28
- labor costs
 - and aggregate supply, 158–160
 - unit, 234, 241
- labor force, 176, 222
- labor markets, 218
- Laffer, Arthur, 312
- lagging economic indicators, 239, 241–242
- large country (term), 356
- Laspeyres index, 228
- late buying, in housing sector, 211
- late expansion phase (business cycle), 201–203
- Latin America. *see also specific countries*
- currency regimes, 436
 - exchange rate regimes, 439–440
 - trade-to-GDP ratio, 340
- Latvia, 362n.18
- law of demand
 - defined, 6
 - exceptions for, 21
 - in perfect competition, 75
 - and substitution/income effects, 18–19
- law of diminishing marginal returns, 23
- law of diminishing returns, 79
- layoffs, 223–224
- Leading Credit Index, 240
- leading economic indicators, 239–243
- Lebanon, 294, 436
- legal tender, 277, 436, 437
- LEI. *see* Index of Leading Economic Indicators
- lenders of last resort, 277
- lending facilities, IMF, 383
- leveraged accounts, in FX market, 412
- Liberia, 437
- Libor. *see* London Interbank Offered Rate
- Libya, 436
- liquidity, broad measure of, 270
- liquidity traps, 298
- Lithuania, 362n.18, 435n.14
- LMC. *see* long-run marginal cost
- LM curve, 144–145
- loans
 - to borrowers abroad, 374
 - commercial and industrial, 241
- Logitech, 344
- London Interbank Offered Rate (Libor), 430
- long-run aggregate supply, 159–161
 - defined, 148–149
 - and human capital, 159, 160
 - and labor, 159
 - and natural resources, 159–161
 - and physical capital, 159, 160
 - and productivity/technology, 160
- long-run aggregate supply (LRAS) curve, 148–150
- long-run average cost (LRAC), 102
- long-run average total cost (LRAC) curve, 44–48
- long-run cost curves
 - average, 44–48
 - scale and profit maximization on, 43–44, 47–48
 - time frame for, 43
- long-run demand, elasticity of, 12
- long-run equilibrium
 - macroeconomic, 163
 - in monopolies, 104–105
 - in monopolistic competition, 86–87
 - in oligopolies, 96
 - in perfect competition, 81–82
- long-run marginal cost (LMC), 30, 102
- long-term unemployed (term), 222
- loss
 - deadweight, 356, 357
 - economic, 40
- LRAC. *see* long-run average cost
- LRAC curve. *see* long-run average total cost curve
- LRAS curve. *see* long-run aggregate supply curve
- LRATC. *see* long-run average total cost curve
- Luxembourg
 - customs union, 362
 - EU membership, 362n.18
 - exchange rate regime, 436
- M**
- M0 money measure, 270
- M1 money measure, 269, 270
- M2 money measure, 269, 270
- M2 money supply, 242, 243
- M3H money measure, 270
- M3 money measure, 270
- M4 money measure, 270
- macroeconomics, 117–197
 - aggregate demand, 137–148
 - AD curve, 145–148
 - defined, 136
 - IS curve, 137–144
 - LM curve, 144–145
 - shifts in, 150–157
 - aggregate output and income, 119–136
 - in economy, 119–120
 - in gross domestic product, 120–136
 - aggregate supply
 - about, 148–150
 - defined, 136
 - shifts in, 150–151, 157–162
 - defined, 5
 - economic growth, 173–185
 - production function and potential GDP, 174–175
 - sources, 176–179
 - sustainable growth, 179–185
 - equilibrium GDP and prices, 163–173
 - business cycle and AD/AS curves, 170–173
 - inflationary gap, 167–168
 - long-run equilibrium, 163
 - recessionary gap, 163–167
 - stagflation, 169–170
 - microeconomics vs., 118
 - new classical, 217
 - practice problems, 190–194
 - solutions to problems, 195–197
- Malaysia
 - Asian financial crisis, 343
 - capital restrictions, 368–369
 - exchange rate regime, 437
- Maldives, 295
- Malta, 362n.18, 436

- Malthus, Thomas, 174
 managed float currency regimes, 437, 440
 manufacturers, new orders of, 240
 manufacturing sales, 241
 marginal costs (MC)
 defined, 23
 interactions of other costs and output with, 31–35
 long-run, 30, 102
 and marginal revenue/profit maximization, 30
 in monopolies, 36–37, 102
 in perfectly competitive markets, 36–37, 79–80
 marginal product, 23
 marginal product of labor (MPL), 25–28.
 see also marginal returns
 marginal propensity to consume (MPC), 139, 314–316
 marginal propensity to save (MPS), 139, 315
 marginal returns, 23–28
 and definition of productivity, 23–25
 increasing, 23
 law of diminishing, 23
 and total/average product of labor, 25–28
 marginal revenue (MR)
 and marginal cost/profit maximization, 29–30
 in monopolies, 98–102
 in monopolistic competition, 85–87
 in oligopolies, 90, 91, 94, 96
 in perfect competition, 70, 78–79
 and price elasticity, 73–74
 marginal value curve, 75
 market concentration, 105–106
 market demand function, 16
 market functions, in FX markets, 406–412
 market power, 97, 105
 markets
 capital, 383, 406–407
 common, 362–366
 factor, 128
 financial, 128
 foreign exchange, 399–418
 about, 399–400
 currency conventions, 401–402
 functions, 406–412
 nominal vs. real exchange rates, 402–406
 participants in, 412–415
 size and composition of, 415–418
 geographic limitations of, 64
 goods, 128
 labor, 218
 over-the-counter, 408
 market structures, 63–115
 analysis of, 64–68
 determining factors for, 66–68
 identification of, 105–108
 importance of, 63–64
 monopolistic competition, 83–87
 demand analysis, 84–85
 long-run equilibrium, 86–87
 optimal price and output, 85
 supply analysis, 85
 monopoly, 97–105
 about, 97–98
 demand analysis, 98–99
 long-run equilibrium, 104–105
 optimal price and output, 101–102
 price discrimination and consumer surplus, 102–104
 supply analysis, 99–100
 oligopoly, 87–96
 demand analysis and pricing strategies, 88–94
 long-run equilibrium, 96
 optimal price and output, 95–96
 supply analysis, 94–95
 perfect competition, 68–83
 demand analysis, 69–76
 long-run equilibrium, 81–82
 optimal price and output, 77–81
 supply analysis, 76–77
 practice problems, 110–113
 solutions to problems, 114–115
 types of, 64–66
 Marshall-Lerner condition, 445–449
 maturity
 of forward contracts, 426n.5
 and forward points, 429–430
 MC. *see* marginal costs
 Medium Term Financial Strategy (MTFS), 276
 menu costs, 219–220, 282
 Mercedes, 86
 merchandise trade sub-account, BOP, 371
 MERCOSUR. *see* Southern Cone Common Market
 mergers, market concentration and, 105–106
 Mexican peso, 401, 421
 Mexico
 business investment, 177
 consumption expenditures, 139
 economic growth in, 182
 effect of global recession, 166
 exchange rate regime, 437
 government spending, 129
 inflation targeting, 287
 labor productivity, 181
 labor supply, 176
 NAFTA, 362, 364–365
 trade balance with US, 131
 underground economy, 124
 microeconomics
 defined, 5
 demand and supply analysis in, 5–6
 macroeconomics vs., 118
 Microsoft, 98
 Microsoft Word, network effects for, 98
 Middle East. *see also specific countries*
 foreign exchange reserves, 414
 natural resources, 178
 terms of trade, 338
 trade-to-GDP ratio, 340
 minimum efficient returns to scale, 46
 Minsky, Hyman, 216
 Minsky moment, 216
 Mitchell, Arthur F., 200
 MNCs. *see* multinational corporations
 Monetarist school, 217, 271, 276, 303
 monetary accommodation, 322
 monetary base, 438
 monetary policy, 262–302
 and aggregate demand, 153–154
 central banks
 roles and responsibilities, 277–280
 tools of, 283–285
 and concept of money, 264–276
 contractionary and expansionary policies, 296–297
 and currency regime, 433
 defined, 263
 of developing countries, 292–293
 evaluating, 301–302
 exchange rate targeting, 293–296
 and fiscal policy, 320–324
 and inflation, 168
 inflation targeting, 287–293
 central bank independence, 288
 credibility, 288–289
 exceptions to inflation-targeting rule, 291–292
 and monetary policy in developing countries, 292–293
 transparency, 289–291
 influence on economy, 262–264
 limitations, 297–301
 and New Classical school, 219
 objectives, 280–283
 of United Kingdom, 276
 monetary transmission mechanism, 285–287, 297–298
 monetary unions, 362, 365–366, 436
 money, 264–276
 creation process, 266–269
 defined, 153, 269–270
 demand for, 271–274
 Fisher effect, 274–275
 functions of, 265–266
 and interest rates, 275
 New Classical school models with, 219–221
 New Classical school models without, 218–219
 quantity theory of, 144, 270–271
 supply and demand relationship, 272–274
 surplus of, 235–236
 velocity of, 144, 236
 money creation, 266–269
 money market, equilibrium in, 144–145
 money multiplier, 268
 money neutrality, 270–271, 274
 money supply
 and aggregate demand/supply, 154
 changes in, 272–274
 and interest rates, 275
 M2, 242, 243
 real, 144–146
 monopolist firms, 100–101
 monopolistic competition, 83–87. *see also* imperfect competition
 benefits of trade for, 343–344
 characteristics of, 67
 defined, 65
 demand analysis, 84–85
 long-run equilibrium, 86–87
 optimal price and output, 85
 supply analysis, 85

- monopoly, 97–105
 about, 97–98
 breakeven point in, 38–39
 characteristics of, 67
 defined, 66
 demand, average, and marginal costs under, 37
 demand analysis, 98–99
 long-run equilibrium, 104–105
 marginal revenue in, 29
 optimal price and output, 101–102
 price discrimination and consumer surplus, 102–104
 supply analysis, 99–100
- Montenegro, 436
- Morgan, J. P., 96
- mortgage crisis (2007–2008), 277–278
- MPC. *see* marginal propensity to consume
- MPL. *see* marginal product of labor
- MPS. *see* marginal propensity to save
- MR. *see* marginal revenue
- MSCI developed equity market index, 368–369
- MTFS. *see* Medium Term Financial Strategy
- Multi Fiber Agreement, 345
- multinational corporations (MNCs), 341–342
- N**
- NAFTA. *see* North American Free Trade Agreement
- NAIRU. *see* non-accelerating inflation rate of unemployment
- Napoleonic Wars, 307
- narrow money, 269
- NARU. *see* natural rate of unemployment
- Nash, John, 92
- Nash equilibrium, 92–93, 96
- NASSCOM, 354n.11
- National Bureau of Economic Research (NBER), 203, 240
- National Bureau of Statistics of China, 121
- national debt, 307–309. *see also* government debt
- national income, 133, 377
- National Income and Product Accounts (NIPA), 120
- nationalization, of monopolies, 104
- national welfare
 and export subsidies, 360
 and tariffs, 357
- natural level of output, 150
- natural monopolies, 97–98, 104
- natural rate of unemployment (NARU), 150, 234
- natural resources. *see also* raw materials
 and aggregate supply, 160, 161
 and economic growth, 178
- NBER. *see* National Bureau of Economic Research
- Neoclassical school of economic thought, 213–214
- Neo-Keynesians, 219
- net exports, 140, 338
- Netherlands
 banking supervision, 279
 customs union, 362
 EU membership, 362n.18
 exchange rate regime, 436
 imports in, 337
- Netherlands Antilles, 294
- net investment, 139–140
- Netscape, 98
- net tax rate, 314
- network effects, in monopolies, 98
- neutral rate of interest, 296
- new classical macroeconomics, 217
- New Classical school of economic thought, 217–221
- New Keynesians, 219
- new product bias, of price index, 228
- New Zealand
 business investment, 177
 current account imbalance, 380
 exchange rate regime, 437
 export subsidies, 359
 inflation targeting, 287, 289–291
 Policy Targets Agreement, 290–291
- New Zealand dollar, 401, 418, 419n.4
- Nintendo, 342
- NIPA. *see* National Income and Product Accounts
- nominal exchange rates, 402–406
- nominal GDP, 124–127
- nominal interest rates, 274–276
- nominal wages, 157, 160
- non-accelerating inflation rate of unemployment (NAIRU), 234
- non-discretionary goods, 12
- nondurable goods, 209
- nonfinancial assets, purchase of, 376
- non-price competition, 67
- non-renewable resources, 178
- normal goods
 defined, 15, 19
 substitution and income effects on, 19–23
- normal profit, 33
- North Africa, trade-to-GDP ratio, 340
- North American Free Trade Agreement (NAFTA), 362, 364–365
- Northern Rock Bank, 277–278
- Norway, 287, 437
- Norwegian krone, 401
- numeraire, 434n.10
- O**
- objectives
 of central banks, 280–281
 of monetary policy, 280–283
 of trade organizations, 386–388
- OECD. *see* Organisation for Economic Co-Operation and Development
- Office of the Comptroller of the Currency, 279
- Office of the Superintendent of Financial Institutions, 278
- official interest rate (official policy rate), 284
- oil, supply and price of, 158
- oligopoly, 87–96
 characteristics of, 67
 defined, 66
- demand analysis and pricing strategies, 88–94
- long-run equilibrium, 96
- optimal price and output, 95–96
- supply analysis, 94–95
- Oman, 295
- OPEC. *see* Organization of Petroleum Exporting Countries
- open economies, 338
 benefits of trade, 343
 investment in, 378
 national income identity, 377
- open market operations, 283
- operational independence, 287, 288
- opportunity costs, 24, 77
- optimal output
 in monopolies, 101–102
 in monopolistic competition, 85
 in oligopolies, 95–96
 in perfect competition, 77–81
- optimal price
 in monopolies, 101–102
 in monopolistic competition, 85
 in oligopolies, 95–96
 in perfect competition, 77–81
- options, in FX market, 410
- orders, size/frequency of, 93
- Organisation for Economic Co-Operation and Development (OECD)
 capacity utilization, 153
 cyclically adjusted budget deficit, 317
 economic indicators, 239
 GDP reported by, 120
 government liabilities/debt for, 308
 government revenues/expenditures by, 303, 304
 net borrowing/lending by, 305
 spillover effects for, 364
 trade-to-GDP ratio, 340, 341
- Organization of Petroleum Exporting Countries (OPEC), 88, 93
- Osborne, George, 379
- OTC markets. *see* over-the-counter markets
- output
 aggregate, 119–136
 in economy, 119–120
 in gross domestic product, 120–136
 and costs, 31–35
 full employment/natural level, 150
 optimal
 in monopolies, 101–102
 in monopolistic competition, 85
 in oligopolies, 95–96
 in perfect competition, 77–81
 recessionary gap in, 205
 value of final output method for GDP, 121–122, 132
- outsourcing, 342
- overall payroll employment, 224
- over-the-counter (OTC) markets, 408
- own price (term), 7
- own-price elasticity of demand, 9–14
 calculating, 9–11
 defined, 9
 extremes of, 11–12
 predicting, 12–13
 and total expenditure, 13–14

P

- Paasche index, 229
- paired transactions, in BOP system, 374–376
- Pakistan, 337
- Panama, 436, 437
- Papaconstantinou, George, 387
- Paraguay, 362
- participation ratio, 222
- passive crawling peg currency regime, 439
- patents, 97
- payments. *see also* balance of payments (BOP) system
- central banks in payments system, 279
 - forms of, 119
 - transfer, 129, 310–311
- PCE. *see* personal consumption expenditures
- PCE index, 229
- PDI. *see* personal disposable income
- peak phase (business cycle), 200–203, 207
- per capita real GDP, 124
- perfect competition, 68–83
- breakeven point in, 38–39
 - characteristics of, 67
 - defined, 65
 - demand, average, and marginal costs under, 36–37
 - demand analysis, 69–76
 - and consumer surplus, 74–76
 - cross-price elasticity of demand, 73
 - elasticity of demand, 70–72
 - income elasticity of demand, 72–73
 - and innovation, 83
 - long-run equilibrium, 81–82
 - marginal revenue in, 29–30
 - and oligopoly, 96
 - optimal price in, 77–81
 - output optimization in, 77–81
 - revenue in imperfect vs., 35–36
 - shutdown decision in, 39–40
 - supply analysis, 76–77
- perfectly elastic demand, 12
- perfectly inelastic demand, 11
- perfect price elasticity, 72
- perfect price inelasticity, 72
- personal consumption expenditures (PCE), 229
- personal disposable income (PDI), 134
- personal income, 133–134
- Peru, 124, 287, 437
- peso (Mexico), 401
- Philippines
- Asian financial crisis, 343
 - exchange rate regime, 437
 - exports from, 342
 - inflation targeting, 287
- physical capital
- aggregate supply, 160
 - defined, 139
 - and economic growth, 176–177
 - and labor productivity, 180
 - and long-term aggregate supply, 159, 160
- pips, 425
- Plaza Accord, 440
- Poland, 287, 437
- policy rate, 284
- Policy Targets Agreement, 290–291
- Porsche, 86
- Porter, Michael E., 68
- Porter's five forces, 68
- portfolio demand for money, 271
- Portugal
- EU membership, 362n.18
 - exchange rate regime, 436
 - GDP vs. GNP, 337
 - government debt, 262
 - Greek fiscal crisis 2010, 365–366
 - public sector spending, 263
- potential GDP, 159
- and demand-pull inflation, 235
 - and long-run equilibrium GDP, 163
 - measuring growth of, 179–181, 183–184
 - production function of, 174–175
- pound (United Kingdom). *see* British pound
- PPF. *see* production possibilities frontier
- PPI. *see* producer price index
- PPP. *see* purchasing power parity
- PRA. *see* Prudential Regulation Authority
- precautionary money balances, 271
- premiums, forward, 425
- Prescott, Edward C., 217
- price(s)
- aggregate, 273–274
 - and alternative trade policies, 360
 - asset, 444
 - autarkic, 338, 349
 - equilibrium, 77–78, 272–273
 - and equilibrium GDP, 163–173
 - aggregate supply and demand, 170–173
 - inflationary gap, 167–168
 - long-run equilibrium, 163
 - recessionary gap, 163–167
 - stagflation, 169–170
 - harmonised index of, 230
 - housing, 152, 155
 - input, 158, 160
 - optimal
 - in monopolies, 101–102
 - in monopolistic competition, 85
 - in oligopolies, 95–96
 - in perfect competition, 77–81
 - relative, 231
 - stability of, 280
 - of stock, 155
 - substitution and income effects with, 20–23
 - two-sided, 419–420
 - world, 338, 339, 349
- price collusion, 87–88, 93
- price controls, 367
- price currency, 401, 418
- price discrimination, in monopolies, 102–104
- price elasticity of demand. *see also* elasticity(-ies)
- in oligopolies, 88
 - in perfect competition, 70–72
 - and trade balance, 445–449
- price indexes, 227–233
- constructing, 227–229
 - sub-indexes, 231
 - usage of, 229–231
- price-specie-flow mechanism, 434
- price takers, 66, 71–72
- price wars, 88, 96
- pricing
- by dominant firms in oligopolies, 94–95
 - and market structure, 66–67
 - in oligopolies, 88–94
 - two-part tariff, 103–104
- prime lending rate, average, 241
- producer price index (PPI), 230
- producer surplus, 357, 360
- product differentiation
- and market structure, 67
 - in monopolistic competition, 83–84
 - and price collusion, 93
- production
- and alternative trade policies, 360
 - in autarky, 349
 - breakeven point of, 36–39
 - and costs, 23–25
 - globalization of, 342–343
 - scaling up vs. scaling down, 44
- production function, 174–175
- production possibilities frontier (PPF), 350–351
- productivity
- and aggregate supply, 160
 - in cost-push inflation, 234–235
 - defined, 23–25
 - diminishing marginal, 174–175
 - and economic growth, 175
 - indicators of, 224
 - of labor, 160, 180–184
 - and long-term aggregate supply, 160
 - and marginal returns, 23
 - total factor, 174, 178
- profit
- accounting, 28
 - economic, 28, 29, 77, 85, 86
 - as form of payment, 119
 - in monopoly, 99–100, 102
 - normal, 33
- profit maximization
- under imperfect competition, 40–41
 - and marginal revenue/costs, 29–30
 - points of production for, 36–37
 - and scale, 43–48
- promissory note, 266
- Provopoulos, George, 387
- Prudential Regulation Authority (PRA), 278n.6
- public sector spending, 263
- purchasing managers indexes, 244
- purchasing power parity (PPP), 402, 404
- Q**
- Qatar, 295
- quality bias, 228
- quantitative easing (QE), 322–323
- and business cycle theories, 221
 - and deflation, 298–299
 - in Japan, 300
- quantity equation of exchange, 270
- quantity theory of money, 144, 270–271
- quasi-fixed costs, 33

- quota rents, 359
quotas, 359
 defined, 356
 and tariffs, 360–361
 in textile industry, 345
- R**
- rand (South Africa), 401
raw materials, 158, 160. *see also* natural resources
Rayovac, 64
R&D. *see* research and development
real (Brazil), 401
real business cycle models (RBCs), 218–220
real exchange rates, 402–406
real GDP, 124–127
 and economic growth, 173
 identifying recession with, 203–204
 and international trade, 344
 in Japan, 172–173
 and shifts in aggregate supply/demand, 170–173
real income, 18–19
real interest rate, 140
real money accounts, in FX market, 412
real money supply, 144–146
receipts, government, 303–306
recession, 164n.16
 defined, 201
 identifying, 203–204
 investor preferences, 202–203
recessionary gap, 163–167, 205
recognition lag, 318
recovery
 capital spending in, 206
 unemployment rate in, 223
refinancing rate, 284
regional trading agreements (RTAs), 362–366
regression analysis, 106
regulation, of monopolies, 105–106
relative price, 231
renewable resources, 178
rent
 as form of payment, 119
 in GDP, 123
repo rates, 284
repurchase agreements, 284
research and development (R&D), 178, 344
reserve banking systems, 153–154, 266–268
Reserve Bank of Australia, 280
Reserve Bank of India, 230
Reserve Bank of New Zealand, 287, 289, 290
Reserve Bank of New Zealand Act, 287, 290
reserve requirements, 367
 of central banks, 268, 284–285
 and monetary policy, 284–285
 and money creation, 267
resources
 capital spending, 205–207
 consumer behavior and use of, 208–210
 cyclical use of, 204–210
 inventory levels, 207–208
 natural, 159–161, 178
 non-renewable, 178
 renewable, 178
restrictions, trade. *see* trade restrictions
retail accounts, in FX market, 413
retail sales, consumer spending and, 209
retaliation, price collusion and, 93
returns
 law of diminishing, 79
 marginal, 23–28
 and definition of productivity, 23–25
 law of diminishing marginal returns, 23
 and total/average product of labor, 25–28
 to scale, 45, 46
revenue
 average, 35
 marginal
 and marginal cost/profit maximization, 29–30
 in monopolies, 98–102
 in monopolistic competition, 85–87
 in oligopolies, 90, 91, 94, 96
 in perfect competition, 70, 78–79
 and price elasticity, 73–74
 total
 in oligopoly, 90
 under perfect and imperfect competition, 35–36
 and price elasticity, 73–74
 in shutdown analysis, 41–42
revenue sufficiency, of tax policy, 312
Rhone-Poulenc, 105
Ricardian equivalence, 316
Ricardian model, 343, 354–355
Ricardo, David, 316, 354
Riksbank, 289
risk premium, for inflation, 275
Robinson, Joan, 65
Roche, 105
Rolex, 98
Romania, 287
RTAs. *see* regional trading agreements
ruble (Russia), 401
rupee (Indian), 401
Russia, 343, 359, 436
Russian ruble, 401
- S**
- sales
 and consumer spending, 209
 final, 207
 inventory–sales ratio, 207, 241
 manufacturing, 241
 trade, 241
sales and purchases of non-produced, non-financial assets sub-account, BOP, 372
San Marino, 436
SATC curve. *see* short-run average total cost curve
Saudi Arabia, 294, 436
saving
 household, 134, 137
 marginal propensity to save, 139
 and trade balance, 444–445
 wealth effect on, 152
saving–investment differential, 141–143
saving rate, household, 134, 152, 209
Say, J. B., 213
Say’s law, 213
scale
 diseconomies of, 44–47
 economies of, 44–47
 and profit maximization for firms, 43–48
scaling down, 44
scaling up, 44
Schumpeter, Joseph A., 83, 213–214
Schwab, Charles M., 96
SDR. *see* special drawing right
second-degree price discrimination, 103
second-order conditions, for profit maximization, 30
sectors, economic. *see* economic sectors
seigniorage, 439
sellers, number/size of, 93
sell-side participants, FX market, 412, 414–415
Serbia, 287
services
 change in CPI for, 242
 consumer spending on, 209
 GDP and value of, 123–124
services sub-account, BOP, 371
Shell, 107
shoe leather costs, 282
short-run aggregate supply, 157–158
 business taxes and subsidies, 158
 defined, 148–149
 exchange rate, 158
 expectations about future prices, 158
 input prices, 158
 nominal wages, 157
short-run aggregate supply (SRAS) curve, 148–149, 157–158
short-run average total cost (SATC) curve, 44, 45
short-run cost curves
 average total cost curve, 44, 45
 profit maximization for firms on, 43–44
 time frame for, 43
 total cost curve, 43–44
short-run cost schedule, in perfect competition, 80
short-run demand, elasticity of, 12
short-run equilibrium, in perfect competition, 81
short-run marginal cost (SMC), 30, 36–37
short-run total cost (STC) curve, 43–44
shutdown analysis, 28–43
 breakeven analysis, 38–41
 economic vs. accounting cost, 28
 interaction of costs and output, 31–35
 marginal revenue, marginal cost, and profit maximization, 29–30
 profit maximization, breakeven, and shutdown points, 36–37
 revenue under perfect vs. imperfect competition, 35–36
 shutdown decision, 39–40
shutdown point, 36–37, 40

- Singapore
 Asian financial crisis, 343
 effects of global recession, 165, 166
 exchange rate regime, 437
 external trade sector, 211
- Singapore dollar, 401
- Singha Co., 88
- Slovak Republic, 362n.18, 436
- Slovenia, 362n.18, 436
- small country (term), 356
- SMC. *see* short-run marginal cost
- Smith, Adam, 354
- Smithsonian Agreements, 435
- social policies, taxes and, 313
- Solow, Robert, 175
- source country, FDI, 341
- South Africa, 287, 337, 437
- South African rand, 401
- Southeast Asia, 368–369. *see also specific countries*
- Southern Cone Common Market (MERCOSUR), 362
- South Korea
 Asian financial crisis, 343
 business investment, 177
 disinflation, 227
 effects of global recession, 166
 exchange rate regime, 437, 441
 government spending, 129
 inflation targeting, 287, 289
 labor productivity, 181
 national debt, 309
 natural resources, 178
 underground economy, 124
- South Korean won, 401
- sovereignty, regional trade agreements and, 365
- sovereign wealth funds (SWFs), 414
- S&P 500 Index
 earnings, 400
 as leading indicator, 240, 242
- Spain
 business investment, 177
 disinflation, 227
 EU membership, 362n.18
 exchange rate regime, 436
 gold standard for, 434n.11
 government spending, 130
 Greek fiscal crisis 2010, 365–366
 inflation targeting, 287
 labor productivity, 181
 underground economy, 124
 wealth effect, 152
- special drawing right (SDR), 387n.29
- specialization, international trade and, 343
- speculation, in FX markets, 407
- speculative demand for money, 271
- speculative money balances, 271
- spending
 business, 153, 202
 capital, 205–207, 314
 consumer, 153, 202, 208–210
 consumption, 138–139
 government, 129–130
 and aggregate demand, 137–138, 155
 current, 311
 and fiscal policy, 153
 and taxes, 314–315
- investment, 139–140, 146–147
 public sector, 263
- spillover effect, of education, 176
- spot exchange rates, 410–412, 428–430
- spot transactions, in FX market, 407
- SRAS curve. *see* short-run aggregate supply curve
- SRATC. *see* short-run average total cost curve
- Stackelberg model, 94
- stagflation
 and aggregate supply, 169–170
 defined, 226
 and inflation expectations, 236
- Standard & Poor's, ratings of, 365
- statistical discrepancies, in GDP, 132
- Statistics Canada, 121, 132, 133
- STC curve. *see* short-run total cost curve
- Sterling exchange rate, 418
- Sterling–yen exchange rate, 419
- stock prices, aggregate demand and, 155
- Strauss-Kahn, Dominique, 386
- structural budget deficit, 317
- Subaru, 86
- sub-indexes, price, 231
- Sub-Saharan Africa
 growth spillovers, 364
 trade-to-GDP ratio, 340
- subsidies
 export, 356, 359–361
 in monopolies, 104
 and short-run aggregate supply, 158, 160
- substitutes, 15, 16, 71, 73
- substitution, import, 352n.10
- substitution bias, 228
- substitution effects
 on elasticity of demand, 12
 on Giffen and Veblen goods, 21
 and law of demand, 18–19
 on normal and inferior goods, 19–23
 in perfectly competitive markets, 69
 with price decrease, 20–23
- sum of value added method, for GDP, 121–122, 132
- sunk costs, 28
- supply. *see also* demand and supply analysis
 aggregate
 and AS curve, 148–150
 defined, 136
 and global recession, 165–167
 and imports/exports, 338–339
 investment strategies for shifts in, 169–170
 long-run, 148–150, 159–161
 in perfectly competitive market, 81
 in real business models, 218–219
 shifts in, 150–151, 157–162
 shifts in demand and, 170–173
 short-run, 148–149, 157–158
 and stagflation, 169–170
- elasticity of, 8
- excess, 339
- money, 154
 changes in, 272–274
 and interest rates, 275
 M2, 242, 243
 real, 144–146
 in monopolies, 99–100
- in monopolistic competition, 85
- in oligopolies, 94–95
- in perfect competition, 76–77
- supply chains, global, 343
- supply curves
 aggregate, 148–150, 157–162, 171–172
 in monopolistic competition, 85
- supply shock to inflation rate, 297
- surpluses
 budget, 304
 consumer
 and alternative trade policies, 357, 360
 in monopoly, 102–104
 in perfect competition, 74–76
 and tariffs, 357
- in current account, 377, 379–381
- of money, 235–236
- producer, 357, 360
- trade, 338
- Survey of Current Businesses* (US Department of Commerce), 121
- sustainable growth, 173, 179–185
 and fixed-income investments, 184–185
 and labor productivity, 181–182
 measures of, 182
 rate of growth in potential GDP, 183–184
- swap funding, 409–410
- swap points, 426
- swap rates, 426–430
- swaps, FX, 409–410
- swarming, 83
- Sweden
 banking supervision, 279
 disinflation, 227
 exchange rate regime, 437
 government spending, 130
 inflation targeting, 287, 289
 labor productivity, 181
 underground economy, 124
- Swedish Financial Supervisory Authority, 279
- Swedish krona, 401
- SWFs. *see* sovereign wealth funds
- Swiss franc, 401, 418, 420
- Swiss franc exchange rate, 418
- Swiss National Bank, 413
- Switzerland
 banking supervision, 279
 exchange rate regime, 437
 growth spillover, 364
- Syria, 436
- T**
- Taiwan
 Asian financial crisis, 343
 comparative advantage, 352–353
 effects of global recession, 166
 globalization of production, 342
- Tankan Survey, 242, 244
- target independence, 288
- target zone currency regimes, 436, 439
- tariffs, 356–361
 analysis of, 358–359
 defined, 356
 GATT, 382, 385
 and quotas/VERs, 360–361
 two-part tariff pricing, 103–104

- taxes
 and aggregate demand, 140, 153, 155
 attributes of tax policy, 311–312
 direct, 311, 314
 and fiscal policy, 303–304, 312
 and government spending, 314–315
 indirect, 311, 313
 net tax rate, 314
 and short-run aggregate supply, 158, 160
 and social policies, 313
- tax reform, 312
- TCs. *see* total costs
- technology
 and aggregate supply, 160
 and comparative advantage, 354
 and economic growth, 175–178
 and labor productivity, 180
 and long-term aggregate supply, 160
- telephone utilities, 100, 105
- television broadcasting, 65
- temporary workers, use of, 224
- terms of trade, 337–338
- textile industry, 345–346
- TFC. *see* total fixed cost
- TFP. *see* total factor productivity
- ThaiBev, 88
- Thailand
 Asian financial crisis, 343
 beer industry, 87, 88
 currency regime, 437
 exchange rate targeting, 294
 globalization of production, 342
 inflation targeting, 287
- Thatcher, Margaret, 276
- theory of the consumer, 5
- theory of the firm, 5
- third-degree price discrimination, 103
- tight fiscal policy, 321
- tight monetary policy, 321
- TIPS. *see* Treasury Inflation-Protected Securities
- tobacco industry, 87–88
- total costs (TCs)
 average
 with economies of scale, 45–46
 interactions of other costs and output with, 31–35
 in perfect competition vs. monopoly, 36–37
 fixed, 31–35, 41–42
 and other costs/output, 31–35
 of production, 24
 variable, 31–35, 41–42
- total expenditure(s)
 and aggregate income, 137–144
 and consumer surplus, 75–76
 and own-price elasticity of demand, 13–14
- total factor productivity (TFP), 174, 178
- total fixed cost (TFC)
 interactions of other costs and output with, 31–35
 in shutdown analysis, 41–42
- total product of labor, 25–28
- total revenue (TR)
 in oligopoly, 90
- under perfect and imperfect competition, 35–36
 and price elasticity, 73–74
 in shutdown analysis, 41–42
- total value, consumer surplus and, 75
- total variable cost (TVC)
 interactions of other costs and output with, 31–35
 in shutdown analysis, 41–42
- Toyota, 86
- TR. *see* total revenue
- trade. *see also* international trade
 and alternative trade policies, 360
 free, 338, 343–344
 gains from, 349–352
 inter-temporal, 377, 378
 intra-industry, 343
 terms of, 337–338
- trade agreements
 common markets, 362
 economic unions, 362
 export subsidies, 359–361
 trading blocs, 362–366
- trade balance
 absorption approach, 449–450
 balance of trade deficit, 130, 338
 in business cycles, 211–212
 and capital account, 444
 elasticities approach, 445–449
 and GDP, 130–131
 and saving/expenditures, 444–445
- trade creation, 363–364
- trade diversion, 364
- trade organizations, 381–388
 function and objectives, 386–388
 International Monetary Fund, 382–384
 World Bank Group, 384–385
 World Trade Organization, 385–386
- trade protection, 338
- trade restrictions, 356–369
 capital restrictions, 366–369
 quotas, 359–361
 tariffs, 356–361
- trade sales, 241
- trade sector, 130–131, 211–212
- trade surplus, 338
- trade-to-GDP ratio, 339–342
- trading blocs, 362–366
- transactions, BOP, 369
- transactions money balances, 271
- transfer payments, 129, 310–311
- transparency, of inflation targeting, 289–291
- Treasury Inflation-Protected Securities (TIPS), 230
- triangular arbitrage, 423
- trough phase (business cycle), 200, 201
- Turkey
 business investment, 177
 exchange rate regime, 437
 inflation targeting, 287
 labor productivity, 181
 turnover, in FX market, 415–416
- TVC. *see* total variable cost
- two-part tariff pricing, 103–104
- two-sided prices, 419–420
- two-week repo rate, 284
- U
- UBS, 412, 414
- Ukraine, 226, 437
- ULC. *see* unit labor cost
- uncertainty, inflation, 282–283
- underemployed, 222
- underground economy, 123–124
- unemployed, 222
- unemployment
 analyzing, 224–225
 and business cycles, 221–225
 and international trade, 344
 natural rate of, 150, 234
 non-accelerating inflation rate of, 234
 and overall payroll employment, 224
 and real business cycle models, 218
 and regional trade agreements, 364–365
 in stagflation, 169–170
- unemployment insurance, 240
- unemployment rate, 223–224
- unexpected inflation, 281–283
- unilateral transfers sub-account, BOP, 371
- United Kingdom
 banking supervision, 279
 budget deficit, 379
 business investment, 177
 comparative advantage, 348–351, 355
 currency regime, 434, 435, 437
 cyclically adjusted budget deficit, 317
 disinflation, 227
 excess demand/supply of cars, 339
 exchange rate targeting, 293, 294
 expected inflation, 282
 fiscal policy, 314
 government cash flows, 305–306
 government liabilities/debt, 262, 308
 government revenues/expenditures, 303, 304
 housing prices and saving rate, 152
 inflation targeting, 287–289
 investment spending, 140
 labor productivity, 181
 monetary policy, 276, 293
 money measures, 270
 national debt, 307, 309
 net borrowing/lending, 305
 public sector spending, 263
 wealth effect, 152
- United Nations Conference on Trade and Employment, 382
- United Nations Monetary and Financial Conference, 382
- United States
 antitrust violations, 105
 balance of payments, 372–373
 banking supervision, 279
 business investment, 177
 capital goods expenditures, 128
 capital-to-labor ratio, 175
 consumption expenditures, 139
 CPI, 229, 230
 currency regime, 434, 437
 current account deficit, 377, 380, 381
 cyclically adjusted budget deficit, 317
 deflation/disinflation, 226, 227
 economic indicators, 240–242, 244–245

- expected inflation, 282
 external trade sector, 211–212
 fiscal policy in 2009–2010, 314
 foreign direct investment, 341, 342
 globalization of production, 342
 global recession, 165–167
 government liabilities/debt, 262, 308
 government revenues/expenditures, 303, 304
 government spending, 129
 gross domestic product, 120–121
 forecasts, 184–185
 potential, 183
 imports in, 337
 and inflation targeting, 292
 investment spending, 140
 and ITO charter, 382
 labor productivity, 181
 labor supply, 176
 money measures, 269
 NAFTA, 362, 364–365
 national debt, 309
 national income, 133n.7
 natural monopolies, 104
 net borrowing/lending, 305
 public sector spending, 263
 quantitative easing, 298, 299
 stagflation, 169, 236
 television broadcasting, 65
 textile industry, 345–346
 tobacco industry, 87–88
 underground economy, 124
 unemployment rate, 223
 VERs in, 359
 wealth effect, 152
 US Bureau of Labor Statistics (BLS), 223, 345
 US Department of Commerce, 120–121
 US dollar, 401
 CAD/USD currency pair, 416
 CNY/USD exchange rate, 403–404
 cross-rate calculations with, 421–422
 as currency anchor, 436–437, 439, 440
 exchange rate quotes with, 418–421
 as exchange rate target, 294
 foreign exchange reserves, 413–414
 forward calculations with, 425–426
 gold standard for, 434
 JPY/USD currency pair, 416
 USD/AUD currency pair, 416
 USD/EUR currency pair, 416
 USD/EUR exchange rate, 409
 USD/GBP currency pair, 416
- US Federal Reserve
 banking supervision by, 279
 “Beige Book,” 244
 CPI-U use by, 230
 and dollarized currency regimes, 437–438
 independence of, 288
 inflation targeting by, 292
 intervention in FX market, 440
 measures of money, 269
 monetary policy, 153–154, 169, 185
 objectives of, 280
 quantitative easing by, 298, 299
 in recession (2007–2009), 167
 United States Steel Corporation (US Steel), 96
 US Treasury, 167
US v. DuPont, 73n.4
 unit elastic (unitary elastic), 71
 unit elastic demand (unitary elastic demand), 10
 unit labor cost (ULC), 234, 241
 Uruguay, 362, 439–440
- V**
 value
 and consumer surplus, 74–76
 of goods and services in GDP, 123–124
 marginal value curve, 75
 measure of, 266
 store of, 265–266
 total, 75
 value of final output method, 121–122, 132
 variable costs
 average
 defined, 30
 in perfect competition vs. monopoly, 36–37
 and shutdown decision, 39–40
 defined, 30
 total, 31–35, 41–42
 variety, monopolistic competition and, 86, 87
 Veblen, Thorstein, 21
 Veblen goods, 21
 velocity of money, 144, 236
 Venezuela, 436
 VERs. *see* voluntary export restraints
 vertical demand schedule, 72
 vertical equity, 312
 Vietnam, 436
 virtuous circle, 352
- volatility, of exchange rates, 432, 435
 Volkswagen, 86
 voluntarily unemployed (term), 223
 voluntary exchange, 343
 voluntary export restraints (VERs), 356, 359–361
 von Hayek, F., 214
 von Mises, L., 214
- W**
 wage-push inflation (cost-push inflation), 233–235
 wages, nominal, 157, 161
 Wal-Mart, 46
 wealth
 household, 151–152
 store of, 265–266
 wealth effect, 151–152
 White, Harry Dexter, 434
 wholesale price index (WPI), 230
 won (South Korea), 401
 World Bank Group
 foreign currency of, 413
 founding of, 382
 and globalization, 339
 and IMF, 382
 mandates of, 384
 World Development Report, 340
 World Development Report, 340, 364
 World Investment Indicators, 342
The World Is Flat (Friedman), 64
 world price, 338, 339, 349
 World Trade Organization (WTO)
 agreements under, 363
 founding of, 382
 functions of, 385–386
 and globalization, 339
 quotas on non-members, 359
 termination of Multi Fiber Agreement, 345
 World War I, 226, 307, 367
 World War II, 226, 307
 WPI. *see* wholesale price index
 WTO. *see* World Trade Organization
- Y**
 yen (Japan). *see* Japanese yen
 yuan (China). *see* Chinese yuan
 Yugoslavia, 226
- Z**
 Zimbabwe, 226–227



CFA Institute[®]
CFA Program

FINANCIAL REPORTING AND ANALYSIS

CFA[®] Program Curriculum
2019 • LEVEL I • VOLUME 3

WILEY

CONTENTS

How to Use the CFA Program Curriculum		ix
Curriculum Development Process		ix
Organization of the Curriculum		x
Features of the Curriculum		x
Designing Your Personal Study Program		xi
Feedback		xiii
Financial Reporting and Analysis		
Study Session 6	Financial Reporting and Analysis (1)	3
Reading 21	Financial Statement Analysis: An Introduction	5
	Introduction	6
	Scope of Financial Statement Analysis	6
	Major Financial Statements and Other Information Sources	11
	Financial Statements and Supplementary Information	12
	Other Sources of Information	29
	Financial Statement Analysis Framework	30
	Articulate the Purpose and Context of Analysis	31
	Collect Data	32
	Process Data	33
	Analyze/Interpret the Processed Data	33
	Develop and Communicate Conclusions/Recommendations	33
	Follow-Up	34
	<i>Summary</i>	34
	<i>Practice Problems</i>	37
	<i>Solutions</i>	40
Reading 22	Financial Reporting Standards	43
	Introduction	44
	The Objective of Financial Reporting	44
	Standard-Setting Bodies and Regulatory Authorities	47
	Accounting Standards Boards	48
	Regulatory Authorities	50
	Convergence of Global Financial Reporting Standards	56
	The International Financial Reporting Standards Framework	60
	Objective of Financial Reports	61
	Qualitative Characteristics of Financial Reports	62
	Constraints on Financial Reports	63
	The Elements of Financial Statements	64
	General Requirements for Financial Statements	66
	Convergence of Conceptual Framework	70
	Effective Financial Reporting	72
	Characteristics of an Effective Financial Reporting Framework	72
	Barriers to a Single Coherent Framework	73

	Comparison of IFRS with Alternative Reporting Systems	74
	Monitoring Developments in Financial Reporting Standards	77
	New Products or Types of Transactions	77
	Evolving Standards and the Role of CFA Institute	78
	Company Disclosures	79
	<i>Summary</i>	82
	<i>Practice Problems</i>	85
	<i>Solutions</i>	88
Study Session 7	Financial Reporting and Analysis (2)	91
Reading 23	Understanding Income Statements	93
	Introduction	94
	Components and Format of the Income Statement	95
	Revenue Recognition	99
	General Principles	100
	Revenue Recognition in Special Cases	103
	Implications for Financial Analysis	111
	Revenue Recognition Accounting Standards Issued May 2014	112
	Expense Recognition	116
	General Principles	117
	Issues in Expense Recognition	120
	Implications for Financial Analysis	125
	Non-Recurring Items and Non-Operating Items	125
	Discontinued Operations	126
	Extraordinary Items	126
	Unusual or Infrequent Items	127
	Changes in Accounting Policies	128
	Non-Operating Items	130
	Earnings per Share	131
	Simple versus Complex Capital Structure	132
	Basic EPS	132
	Diluted EPS	134
	Changes in EPS	140
	Analysis of the Income Statement	141
	Common-Size Analysis of the Income Statement	141
	Income Statement Ratios	143
	Comprehensive Income	145
	<i>Summary</i>	148
	<i>Practice Problems</i>	151
	<i>Solutions</i>	156
Reading 24	Understanding Balance Sheets	161
	Introduction	162
	Components and Format of the Balance Sheet	162
	Balance Sheet Components	163
	Current and Non-Current Classification	165
	Liquidity-Based Presentation	166

Current Assets and Current Liabilities	167
Current Assets	167
Current Liabilities	174
Non-Current Assets	178
Property, Plant, and Equipment	179
Investment Property	180
Intangible Assets	181
Goodwill	183
Financial Assets	186
Non-Current Liabilities	190
Long-term Financial Liabilities	191
Deferred Tax Liabilities	191
Equity	192
Components of Equity	192
Statement of Changes in Equity	195
Analysis of the Balance Sheet	196
Common-Size Analysis of the Balance Sheet	197
Balance Sheet Ratios	204
<i>Summary</i>	206
<i>Practice Problems</i>	209
<i>Solutions</i>	214
Reading 25	
Understanding Cash Flow Statements	217
Introduction	218
Components and Format of the Cash Flow Statement	219
Classification of Cash Flows and Non-Cash Activities	219
A Summary of Differences between IFRS and US GAAP	221
Direct and Indirect Methods for Reporting Cash Flow from Operating Activities	222
The Cash Flow Statement: Linkages and Preparation	232
Linkages of the Cash Flow Statement with the Income Statement and Balance Sheet	232
Steps in Preparing the Cash Flow Statement	233
Conversion of Cash Flows from the Indirect to the Direct Method	245
Cash Flow Statement Analysis	246
Evaluation of the Sources and Uses of Cash	246
Common-Size Analysis of the Statement of Cash Flows	249
Free Cash Flow to the Firm and Free Cash Flow to Equity	254
Cash Flow Ratios	255
<i>Summary</i>	257
<i>Practice Problems</i>	259
<i>Solutions</i>	265
Reading 26	
Financial Analysis Techniques	269
Introduction	270
The Financial Analysis Process	271
The Objectives of the Financial Analysis Process	271
Distinguishing between Computations and Analysis	272

Analytical Tools and Techniques	274
Ratios	278
Common-Size Analysis	282
The Use of Graphs as an Analytical Tool	288
Regression Analysis	290
Common Ratios Used in Financial Analysis	290
Interpretation and Context	291
Activity Ratios	292
Liquidity Ratios	298
Solvency Ratios	303
Profitability Ratios	307
Integrated Financial Ratio Analysis	311
Equity Analysis	318
Valuation Ratios	319
Industry-Specific Ratios	321
Research on Ratios in Equity Analysis	323
Credit Analysis	324
The Credit Rating Process	324
Research on Ratios in Credit Analysis	326
Business and Geographic Segments	327
Segment Reporting Requirements	327
Segment Ratios	328
Model Building and Forecasting	330
<i>Summary</i>	330
<i>Practice Problems</i>	333
<i>Solutions</i>	339
Study Session 8	
Financial Reporting and Analysis (3)	343
Reading 27	
Inventories	345
Introduction	346
Cost of Inventories	347
Inventory Valuation Methods	348
Specific Identification	349
First-In, First-Out (FIFO)	349
Weighted Average Cost	349
Last-In, First-Out (LIFO)	350
Calculation of Cost of Sales, Gross Profit, and Ending Inventory	350
Periodic versus Perpetual Inventory Systems	352
Comparison of Inventory Valuation Methods	354
The LIFO Method	357
LIFO Reserve	357
LIFO Liquidations	363
Inventory Method Changes	367
Inventory Adjustments	368
Evaluation of Inventory Management	375
Presentation and Disclosure	376
Inventory Ratios	376
Financial Analysis Illustrations	377

	<i>Summary</i>	388
	<i>Practice Problems</i>	391
	<i>Solutions</i>	407
Reading 28	Long-Lived Assets	415
	Introduction	416
	Acquisition of Long-Lived Assets	417
	Property, Plant, and Equipment	417
	Intangible Assets	420
	Capitalising versus Expensing: Impact on Financial Statements and Ratios	423
	Capitalisation of Interest Costs	428
	Capitalisation of Internal Development Costs	431
	Depreciation and Amortisation of Long-Lived Assets	435
	Depreciation Methods and Calculation of Depreciation Expense	435
	Amortisation Methods and Calculation of Amortisation Expense	443
	The Revaluation Model	444
	Impairment of Assets	448
	Impairment of Property, Plant, and Equipment	448
	Impairment of Intangible Assets with a Finite Life	450
	Impairment of Intangibles with Indefinite Lives	451
	Impairment of Long-Lived Assets Held for Sale	451
	Reversals of Impairments of Long-Lived Assets	451
	Derecognition	451
	Sale of Long-Lived Assets	451
	Long-Lived Assets Disposed of Other Than by a Sale	452
	Presentation and Disclosures	453
	Investment Property	464
	Leasing	467
	The Lease versus Buy Decision	467
	Finance versus Operating Leases	467
	<i>Summary</i>	486
	<i>Practice Problems</i>	489
	<i>Solutions</i>	501
Reading 29	Income Taxes	507
	Introduction	508
	Differences between Accounting Profit and Taxable Income	508
	Current Tax Assets and Liabilities	509
	Deferred Tax Assets and Liabilities	510
	Determining the Tax Base of Assets and Liabilities	513
	Determining the Tax Base of an Asset	513
	Determining the Tax Base of a Liability	515
	Changes in Income Tax Rates	517
	Temporary and Permanent Differences Between Taxable and Accounting Profit	518
	Taxable Temporary Differences	519
	Deductible Temporary Differences	519
	Examples of Taxable and Deductible Temporary Differences	520

	Temporary Differences at Initial Recognition of Assets and Liabilities	522
	Business Combinations and Deferred Taxes	523
	Investments in Subsidiaries, Branches, Associates and Interests in Joint Ventures	523
	Unused Tax Losses and Tax Credits	523
	Recognition and Measurement of Current and Deferred Tax	524
	Recognition of a Valuation Allowance	525
	Recognition of Current and Deferred Tax Charged Directly to Equity	525
	Presentation and Disclosure	528
	Comparison of IFRS and US GAAP	533
	<i>Summary</i>	536
	<i>Practice Problems</i>	538
	<i>Solutions</i>	543
Reading 30	Non-Current (Long-Term) Liabilities	545
	Introduction	546
	Bonds Payable	546
	Accounting for Bond Issuance	546
	Accounting for Bond Amortisation, Interest Expense, and Interest Payments	550
	Current Market Rates and Fair Value Reporting Option	554
	Derecognition of Debt	557
	Debt Covenants	559
	Presentation and Disclosure of Long-Term Debt	561
	Leases	564
	Advantages of Leasing	564
	Finance (or Capital) Leases versus Operating Leases	565
	Introduction to Pensions and Other Post-Employment Benefits	583
	Evaluating Solvency: Leverage and Coverage Ratios	586
	<i>Summary</i>	590
	<i>Practice Problems</i>	592
	<i>Solutions</i>	598
Study Session 9	Financial Reporting and Analysis (4)	605
Reading 31	Financial Reporting Quality	607
	Introduction	608
	Conceptual Overview	609
	GAAP, Decision-Useful, Sustainable, and Adequate Returns	610
	GAAP, Decision-Useful, but Sustainable?	611
	Biased Accounting Choices	612
	Departures from GAAP	619
	Differentiate between Conservative and Aggressive Accounting	620
	Context for Assessing Financial Reporting Quality	625
	Motivations	625
	Conditions Conducive to Issuing Low-Quality Financial Reports	626
	Mechanisms That Discipline Financial Reporting Quality	626
	Detection of Financial Reporting Quality Issues	632
	Presentation Choices	633

	Accounting Choices and Estimates	638
	Warning Signs	655
	Conclusion	660
	<i>Practice Problems</i>	663
	<i>Solutions</i>	667
Reading 32	Financial Statement Analysis: Applications	671
	Introduction	672
	Application: Evaluating Past Financial Performance	673
	Application: Projecting Future Financial Performance	681
	Projecting Performance: An Input to Market-Based Valuation	681
	Projecting Multiple-Period Performance	686
	Application: Assessing Credit Risk	690
	Application: Screening for Potential Equity Investments	694
	Analyst Adjustments to Reported Financials	697
	A Framework for Analyst Adjustments	697
	Analyst Adjustments Related to Investments	698
	Analyst Adjustments Related to Inventory	698
	Analyst Adjustments Related to Property, Plant, and Equipment	702
	Analyst Adjustments Related to Goodwill	703
	Analyst Adjustments Related to Off-Balance-Sheet Financing	706
	<i>Summary</i>	713
	<i>Practice Problems</i>	715
	<i>Solutions</i>	717
	Glossary	G-1
	Index	I-1

Financial Reporting and Analysis

STUDY SESSIONS

Study Session 6	Financial Reporting and Analysis (1)
Study Session 7	Financial Reporting and Analysis (2)
Study Session 8	Financial Reporting and Analysis (3)
Study Session 9	Financial Reporting and Analysis (4)

TOPIC LEVEL LEARNING OUTCOME

The candidate should be able to demonstrate a thorough knowledge of financial reporting procedures and the standards that govern financial reporting disclosure. Emphasis is on basic financial statements and how alternative accounting methods affect those statements and the analysis of them.

Financial statement analysis is critical in assessing a company's overall financial position and associated risks over time. Security and business valuation, credit risk assessment, and acquisition due diligence all require an understanding of the major financial statements including general principles and reporting approaches. Because no set of accounting standards has universal acceptance, companies around the world may differ in reporting treatment based on their jurisdiction.

Financial statement analysis requires the ability to analyze a company's reported results with its economic reality, normalize differences in accounting treatment to make valid cross company comparisons, identify quality issues that may exist in reported financial statements, and discern evidence of financial statement manipulation by management.

Note: Changes in accounting standards as well as new rulings and/or pronouncements issued after the publication of the readings on financial reporting and analysis may cause some of the information in these readings to become dated. Candidates are *not* responsible for anything that occurs after the readings were published. In addition, candidates are expected to be familiar with the analytical frameworks contained in the readings, as well as the implications of alternative accounting methods for financial analysis and valuation discussed in the readings. Candidates are also responsible for the content of accounting standards, but not for the actual reference numbers. Finally, candidates should be aware that certain ratios may be defined and calculated differently. When alternative ratio definitions exist and no specific definition is given, candidates should use the ratio definitions emphasized in the readings.

Candidates should be familiar with the material covered in the following prerequisite economics reading available in Candidate Resources on the CFA Institute website:

- Financial Reporting Mechanics

FINANCIAL REPORTING AND ANALYSIS STUDY SESSION

6

Financial Reporting and Analysis (1)

This study session introduces the principal information sources used to evaluate a company's financial performance. Primary financial statements (income statement, balance sheet, cash flow statement, and statement of changes in equity) in addition to notes to these statements and management reporting are examined. A general framework for conducting financial statement analysis is provided. The session also includes a description of the roles played by financial reporting standard-setting bodies and regulatory authorities.

READING ASSIGNMENTS

- | | |
|-------------------|--|
| Reading 21 | Financial Statement Analysis: An Introduction
by Elaine Henry, PhD, CFA, and Thomas R. Robinson,
PhD, CFA |
| Reading 22 | Financial Reporting Standards
by Elaine Henry, PhD, CFA, Jan Hendrik van Greuning,
DCom, CFA, and Thomas R. Robinson, PhD, CFA |

Note: Changes in accounting standards as well as new rulings and/or pronouncements issued after the publication of the readings on financial reporting and analysis may cause some of the information in these readings to become dated. Candidates are *not* responsible for anything that occurs after the readings were published. In addition, candidates are expected to be familiar with the analytical frameworks contained in the readings, as well as the implications of alternative accounting methods for financial analysis and valuation discussed in the readings. Candidates are also responsible for the content of accounting standards, but not for the actual reference numbers. Finally, candidates should be aware that certain ratios may be defined and calculated differently. When alternative ratio definitions exist and no specific definition is given, candidates should use the ratio definitions emphasized in the readings.

Financial Statement Analysis: An Introduction

by Elaine Henry, PhD, CFA, and Thomas R. Robinson, PhD, CFA

Elaine Henry, PhD, CFA, is at Stevens Institute of Technology (USA). Thomas R. Robinson, PhD, CFA, is at AACSB International (USA).

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Mastery	The candidate should be able to:
<input type="checkbox"/>	a. describe the roles of financial reporting and financial statement analysis;
<input type="checkbox"/>	b. describe the roles of the statement of financial position, statement of comprehensive income, statement of changes in equity, and statement of cash flows in evaluating a company's performance and financial position;
<input type="checkbox"/>	c. describe the importance of financial statement notes and supplementary information—including disclosures of accounting policies, methods, and estimates—and management's commentary;
<input type="checkbox"/>	d. describe the objective of audits of financial statements, the types of audit reports, and the importance of effective internal controls;
<input type="checkbox"/>	e. identify and describe information sources that analysts use in financial statement analysis besides annual financial statements and supplementary information;
<input type="checkbox"/>	f. describe the steps in the financial statement analysis framework.

Note: Changes in accounting standards as well as new rulings and/or pronouncements issued after the publication of the readings on financial reporting and analysis may cause some of the information in these readings to become dated. Candidates are *not* responsible for anything that occurs after the readings were published. In addition, candidates are expected to be familiar with the analytical frameworks contained in the readings, as well as the implications of alternative accounting methods for financial analysis and valuation discussed in the readings. Candidates are also responsible for the content of accounting standards, but not for the actual reference numbers. Finally, candidates should be aware that certain ratios may be defined and calculated differently. When alternative ratio definitions exist and no specific definition is given, candidates should use the ratio definitions emphasized in the readings.

1

INTRODUCTION

Financial analysis is the process of examining a company's performance in the context of its industry and economic environment in order to arrive at a decision or recommendation. Often, the decisions and recommendations addressed by financial analysts pertain to providing capital to companies—specifically, whether to invest in the company's debt or equity securities and at what price. An investor in debt securities is concerned about the company's ability to pay interest and to repay the principal lent. An investor in equity securities is an owner with a residual interest in the company and is concerned about the company's ability to pay dividends and the likelihood that its share price will increase. Overall, a central focus of financial analysis is evaluating the company's ability to earn a return on its capital that is at least equal to the cost of that capital, to profitably grow its operations, and to generate enough cash to meet obligations and pursue opportunities. Fundamental financial analysis starts with the information found in a company's financial reports. These financial reports include audited financial statements, additional disclosures required by regulatory authorities, and any accompanying (unaudited) commentary by management. Basic financial statement analysis—as presented in this reading—provides a foundation that enables the analyst to better understand information gathered from research beyond the financial reports.

This reading is organized as follows: Section 2 discusses the scope of financial statement analysis. Section 3 describes the sources of information used in financial statement analysis, including the primary financial statements (statement of financial position or balance sheet, statement of comprehensive income, statement of changes in equity, and cash flow statement). Section 4 provides a framework for guiding the financial statement analysis process. A summary of the key points and practice problems in the CFA Institute multiple-choice format conclude the reading.

2

SCOPE OF FINANCIAL STATEMENT ANALYSIS

The role of financial reporting by companies is to provide information about a company's performance, financial position, and changes in financial position that is useful to a wide range of users in making economic decisions.¹ The role of financial statement analysis is to use financial reports prepared by companies, combined with other information, to evaluate the past, current, and potential performance and financial position of a company for the purpose of making investment, credit, and other economic decisions. (Managers within a company perform financial analysis to make operating, investing, and financing decisions but do not necessarily rely on analysis of related financial statements. They have access to additional financial information that can be reported in whatever format is most useful to their decision.)

¹ This role of financial reporting is specified in International Accounting Standard (IAS) 1 *Presentation of Financial Statements*, paragraph 9, and paragraph 12 of the *Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements*. In September 2010, the IASB adopted the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*, which revised the role to focus on users providing resources to the entity. An updated framework was a joint project between the International Accounting Standards Board (IASB), which issues International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRS), and the Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB). The FASB issues US generally accepted accounting principles (US GAAP) contained in the FASB Accounting Standards Codification™ (FASB ASC). The set of accounting standards that a company uses to prepare its financial reports depends on its jurisdiction. The IASB and FASB will be discussed further in a later reading.

In evaluating financial reports, analysts typically have a specific economic decision in mind. Examples of these decisions include the following:

- Evaluating an equity investment for inclusion in a portfolio.
- Evaluating a merger or acquisition candidate.
- Evaluating a subsidiary or operating division of a parent company.
- Deciding whether to make a venture capital or other private equity investment.
- Determining the creditworthiness of a company in order to decide whether to extend a loan to the company and if so, what terms to offer.
- Extending credit to a customer.
- Examining compliance with debt covenants or other contractual arrangements.
- Assigning a debt rating to a company or bond issue.
- Valuing a security for making an investment recommendation to others.
- Forecasting future net income and cash flow.

These decisions demonstrate certain themes in financial analysis. In general, analysts seek to examine the past and current performance and financial position of a company in order to form expectations about its future performance and financial position. Analysts are also concerned about factors that affect risks to a company's future performance and financial position. An examination of performance can include an assessment of a company's profitability (the ability to earn a profit from delivering goods and services) and its ability to generate positive cash flows (cash receipts in excess of cash disbursements). Profit and cash flow are not equivalent. Profit (or loss) represents the difference between the prices at which goods or services are provided to customers and the expenses incurred to provide those goods and services. In addition, profit (or loss) includes other income (such as investing income or income from the sale of items other than goods and services) minus the expenses incurred to earn that income. Overall, profit (or loss) equals income minus expenses, and its recognition is mostly independent from when cash is received or paid. Example 1 illustrates the distinction between profit and cash flow.

EXAMPLE 1

Profit versus Cash Flow

Sennett Designs (SD) sells furniture on a retail basis. SD began operations during December 2009 and sold furniture for €250,000 in cash. The furniture sold by SD was purchased on credit for €150,000 and delivered by the supplier during December. The credit terms granted by the supplier required SD to pay the €150,000 in January for the furniture it received during December. In addition to the purchase and sale of furniture, in December, SD paid €20,000 in cash for rent and salaries.

- 1 How much is SD's profit for December 2009 if no other transactions occurred?
- 2 How much is SD's cash flow for December 2009?
- 3 If SD purchases and sells exactly the same amount in January 2010 as it did in December and under the same terms (receiving cash for the sales and making purchases on credit that will be due in February), how much will the company's profit and cash flow be for the month of January?

Solution to 1:

SD's profit for December 2009 is the excess of the sales price (€250,000) over the cost of the goods that were sold (€150,000) and rent and salaries (€20,000), or €80,000.

Solution to 2:

The December 2009 cash flow is €230,000, the amount of cash received from the customer (€250,000) less the cash paid for rent and salaries (€20,000).

Solution to 3:

SD's profit for January 2010 will be identical to its profit in December: €80,000, calculated as the sales price (€250,000) minus the cost of the goods that were sold (€150,000) and minus rent and salaries (€20,000). SD's cash flow in January 2010 will also equal €80,000, calculated as the amount of cash received from the customer (€250,000) minus the cash paid for rent and salaries (€20,000) *and* minus the €150,000 that SD owes for the goods it had purchased on credit in the prior month.

Although profitability is important, so is a company's ability to generate positive cash flow. Cash flow is important because, ultimately, the company needs cash to pay employees, suppliers, and others in order to continue as a going concern. A company that generates positive cash flow from operations has more flexibility in funding needed for investments and taking advantage of attractive business opportunities than an otherwise comparable company without positive operating cash flow. Additionally, a company needs cash to pay returns (interest and dividends) to providers of debt and equity capital. Therefore, the expected magnitude of future cash flows is important in valuing corporate securities and in determining the company's ability to meet its obligations. The ability to meet short-term obligations is generally referred to as **liquidity**, and the ability to meet long-term obligations is generally referred to as **solvency**. Cash flow in any given period is not, however, a complete measure of performance for that period because, as shown in Example 1, a company may be obligated to make future cash payments as a result of a transaction that generates positive cash flow in the current period.

Profits may provide useful information about cash flows, past and future. If the transaction of Example 1 were repeated month after month, the long-term average monthly cash flow of SD would equal €80,000, its monthly profit. Analysts typically not only evaluate past profitability but also forecast future profitability.

Exhibit 1 shows how news coverage of corporate earnings announcements places corporate results in the context of analysts' expectations. Panel A shows the earnings announcement, and Panel B shows a sample of the news coverage of the announcement. Earnings are also frequently used by analysts in valuation. For example, an analyst may value shares of a company by comparing its price-to-earnings ratio (P/E) to the P/Es of peer companies and/or may use forecasted future earnings as direct or indirect inputs into discounted cash flow models of valuation.

Exhibit 1 An Earnings Release and News Media Comparison with Analysts' Expectations

Panel A: Excerpt from Apple Earnings Release

Apple Reports Second Quarter Results

Record March Quarter Revenue and Profit
iPhone Sales More Than Double

Exhibit 1 (Continued)

CUPERTINO, California—April 20, 2010—Apple® today announced financial results for its fiscal 2010 second quarter ended March 27, 2010. The Company posted revenue of \$13.50 billion and net quarterly profit of \$3.07 billion, or \$3.33 per diluted share. These results compare to revenue of \$9.08 billion and net quarterly profit of \$1.62 billion, or \$1.79 per diluted share, in the year-ago quarter. Gross margin was 41.7 percent, up from 39.9 percent in the year-ago quarter. International sales accounted for 58 percent of the quarter's revenue.

Apple sold 2.94 million Macintosh® computers during the quarter, representing a 33 percent unit increase over the year-ago quarter. The Company sold 8.75 million iPhones in the quarter, representing 131 percent unit growth over the year-ago quarter. Apple sold 10.89 million iPods during the quarter, representing a one percent unit decline from the year-ago quarter.

“We're thrilled to report our best non-holiday quarter ever, with revenues up 49 percent and profits up 90 percent,” said Steve Jobs, Apple's CEO. “We've launched our revolutionary new iPad and users are loving it, and we have several more extraordinary products in the pipeline for this year.”

“Looking ahead to the third fiscal quarter of 2010, we expect revenue in the range of about \$13.0 billion to \$13.4 billion and we expect diluted earnings per share in the range of about \$2.28 to \$2.39,” said Peter Oppenheimer, Apple's CFO.

Source: www.apple.com/pr/library/2010/04/20results.html

Panel B: Excerpt Downloaded from FOXBusiness.com Report: Tuesday, 20 April 2010

“Apple Earnings Surge By 90% in Second Quarter” by Kathryn Glass

In what's beginning to become its trademark, Apple Inc. (238.7911, -9.5489, -3.85%) delivered much better-than-expected second-quarter earnings, but gave third-quarter guidance below expectations.

The personal-technology behemoth said it expects third-quarter earnings in the range of \$2.28 to \$2.39 per share on revenue between \$13 billion and \$13.4 billion. Analysts were expecting third-quarter earnings of \$2.70 a share on revenue of \$12.97 billion, according to a poll by Thomson Reuters.

Apple reported second quarter profit of \$3.07 billion, or \$3.33 per share, compared with year-ago profit of \$1.62 billion, or \$1.79 per share. Revenue rose to \$13.5 billion, compared with revenue of \$9.08 billion, one year ago. The tech giant said 58% of revenue came from international sales.

The results soared above expectations; analysts' second-quarter profit estimates were for \$2.45 per share on revenue of \$12.04 billion.

Analysts are also interested in the current financial position of a company. The financial position can be measured by comparing the resources controlled by the company (**assets**) in relation to the claims against those resources (**liabilities** and **equity**). An example of a resource is cash. In Example 1, if no other transactions

occur, the company should have €230,000 more in cash at 31 December 2009 than at the start of the period. The cash can be used by the company to pay its obligation to the supplier (a claim against the company) and may also be used to make distributions to the owner (who has a residual claim against the company's assets, net of liabilities). Financial position is particularly important in credit analysis, as depicted in Exhibit 2. Panel A of the exhibit is an excerpt from an April 2010 announcement by a credit rating agency of an upgrade in the credit ratings of Teck Resources Ltd., a Canadian mining company. The rating agency explained that it upgraded the credit rating of the company (its "corporate credit rating") and the credit rating of the company's debt securities (the "issue-level rating") because the company had repaid its debt quickly ("accelerated debt repayment"). Panel B of the exhibit is an excerpt from the company's second quarter 2010 earnings announcement in which the company's CEO describes the company's repayment of debt. Panel C of the exhibit is an excerpt from the company's financial report illustrating the change in the company's financial position in June 2010 compared with December 2009. As shown, the amount of the company's debt liabilities relative to the amount of its equity declined substantially over the period.

Exhibit 2

Panel A: Excerpt from Announcement by Standard & Poor's Ratings Services: 16 April 2010

Teck Resources Ltd. Upgraded To 'BBB' From 'BB+' On Improved Financial Risk Profile; Removed From CreditWatch

We are raising our long-term corporate credit rating on Vancouver-based mining company Teck Resources Ltd. to 'BBB' from 'BB+'.... We are also raising the issue-level rating on the company's notes outstanding to 'BBB' from 'BB+'.... We base the upgrade on Teck's materially improved financial risk profile following the accelerated debt repayment in the past year. The stable outlook reflects our opinion that Teck will maintain relatively stable credit metrics in the medium term, despite inherent volatility in the commodities market.

Source: Market News Publishing.

Panel B: Excerpt from Earnings Announcement by Teck Resources Limited: 28 July 2010

Teck Reports Second Quarter Results for 2010

Vancouver, BC—Teck Resources Limited announced quarterly earnings of \$260 million, or \$0.44 per share, for the second quarter of 2010. Our operating profit before depreciation was approximately \$1.0 billion and EBITDA was \$844 million in the second quarter.

Don Lindsay, President and CEO said, "During the quarter we eliminated the outstanding balance of our term bank loan and have now repaid the US\$9.8 billion bank debt related to the Fording acquisition in less than 18 months, just over two years ahead of schedule. In addition, all of our operations performed well, and we met or exceeded the guidance given in our previous quarterly report. Our second quarter benefitted from a substantial increase in coal sales to 6.4 million tonnes and the higher benchmark prices negotiated for

Exhibit 2 (Continued)

the second quarter. In addition, in the quarter we re-established our investment grade credit ratings from all of the major rating agencies and declared a semi-annual dividend of \$0.20 per share.”

Source: Teck Resources Form 6-K, filed 11 August 2010.

Panel C: Financial Position of Teck Resources Limited: 28 July 2010 and 31 December 2009

(in millions of Canadian \$)	28 July 2010	31 December 2009
ASSETS	\$28,570	\$29,873
LIABILITIES		
Debt	5,678	8,004
All other liabilities	7,273	7,288
Total liabilities	12,951	15,292
EQUITY	15,619	14,581
Debt divided by equity	0.36	0.55

In conducting a financial analysis of a company, the analyst will regularly refer to the company’s financial statements, financial notes, and supplementary schedules and a variety of other information sources. The next section introduces the major financial statements and some commonly used information sources.

MAJOR FINANCIAL STATEMENTS AND OTHER INFORMATION SOURCES

3

In order to perform an equity or credit analysis of a company, an analyst collects a great deal of information. The nature of the information collected will vary on the basis of the individual decision to be made (or the specific purpose of the analysis) but will typically include information about the economy, industry, and company as well as information about comparable peer companies. Much of the information will likely come from outside the company, such as economic statistics, industry reports, trade publications, and databases containing information on competitors. The company itself provides some of the core information for analysis in its financial reports, press releases, investor conference calls, and webcasts.

Companies prepare financial reports at regular intervals (annually, semiannually, and/or quarterly depending on the applicable regulatory requirements). Financial reports include financial statements along with supplemental disclosures necessary to assess the company’s financial position and periodic performance. Financial statements are the result of an accounting recordkeeping process that records economic activities of a company, following the applicable accounting standards and principles. These statements summarize the accounting information, mainly for users outside the company (such as investors, creditors, analysts, and others) because users of financial information inside a company have direct access to the underlying financial data that

are summarized in the financial statements and to other information that is collected but not included in the financial reporting process. Financial statements are almost always audited by independent accountants who provide an opinion on whether the financial statements present fairly the company's performance and financial position in accordance with a specified, applicable set of accounting standards and principles.

3.1 Financial Statements and Supplementary Information

A complete set of financial statements include a statement of financial position (i.e., a balance sheet), a statement of comprehensive income (i.e., a single statement of comprehensive income or an income statement and a statement of comprehensive income), a statement of changes in equity, and a statement of cash flows.² The balance sheet portrays the company's financial position at a given point in time. The statement of comprehensive income and statement of cash flows present different aspects of a company's performance over a period of time. The statement of changes in equity provides additional information regarding the changes in a company's financial position. In addition, the accompanying notes or footnotes to the financial statements are required and considered an integral part of a complete set of financial statements.

Along with the required financial statements, a company typically provides additional information in its financial reports. In many jurisdictions, some or all of this additional information is mandated by regulators or accounting standards boards. The additional information provided may include a letter from the chairman of the company, a report from management discussing the results (typically called management discussion and analysis [MD&A] or management commentary), an external auditor's report providing assurances, a governance report describing the structure of the company's board of directors, and a corporate responsibility report. As part of his or her analysis, the financial analyst should read and assess this additional information along with the financial statements. The following sections describe and illustrate each financial statement and some of the additional information.

3.1.1 Balance Sheet

The **balance sheet** (also called the **statement of financial position** or **statement of financial condition**) presents a company's current financial position by disclosing the resources the company controls (assets) and its obligations to lenders and other creditors (liabilities) at a specific point in time. **Owners' equity** represents the excess of assets over liabilities. This amount is attributable to the company's owners or shareholders. Owners' equity is the owners' residual interest in (i.e., residual claim on) the company's assets after deducting its liabilities.

The relationship among the three parts of the balance sheet (assets, liabilities, and owners' equity) can be expressed in the following equation form: $\text{Assets} = \text{Liabilities} + \text{Owners' equity}$. This equation (sometimes called the accounting equation or the balance sheet equation) shows that the total amount of assets must equal or *balance* to the combined total amounts of liabilities and owners' equity. Alternatively, the equation may be rearranged as follows: $\text{Assets} - \text{Liabilities} = \text{Owners' equity}$. This formulation emphasizes the residual claim aspect of owners' equity. Depending on the form of the organization, owners' equity may be referred to as "partners' capital" or "shareholders' equity."

Exhibit 3 presents the balance sheet of the Volkswagen Group from its Annual Report 2009.

² The names of the financial statements are those in IAS 1. Commonly used terms for these financial statements are indicated in parentheses. Later readings will elaborate on each of these financial statements.

Exhibit 3 Balance Sheet of the Volkswagen Group

€ million	Note	31 Dec. 2009	31 Dec. 2008
Assets			
Noncurrent assets			
Intangible assets	12	12,907	12,291
Property, plant and equipment	13	24,444	23,121
Leasing and rental assets	14	10,288	9,889
Investment property	14	216	150
Equity-accounted investments	15	10,385	6,373
Other equity investments	15	543	583
Financial services receivables	16	33,174	31,855
Other receivables and financial assets	17	3,747	3,387
Noncurrent tax receivables	18	685	763
Deferred tax assets	18	3,013	3,344
		99,402	91,756
Current assets			
Inventories	19	14,124	17,816
Trade receivables	20	5,692	5,969
Financial services receivables	16	27,403	27,035
Other receivables and financial assets	17	5,927	10,068
Current tax receivables	18	762	1,024
Marketable securities	21	3,330	3,770
Cash and cash equivalents	22	20,539	9,474
Assets held for sale	23	—	1,007
		77,776	76,163
Total assets		177,178	167,919
Equity and liabilities			
Equity			
	24		
Subscribed capital		1,025	1,024
Capital reserves		5,356	5,351
Retained earnings		28,901	28,636
Equity attributable to shareholders of Volkswagen AG		35,281	35,011
Minority interests		2,149	2,377
		37,430	37,388
Noncurrent liabilities			
Noncurrent financial liabilities	25	36,993	33,257
Other noncurrent liabilities	26	3,028	3,235
Deferred tax liabilities	27	2,224	3,654
Provisions for pensions	28	13,936	12,955
Provisions for taxes	27	3,946	3,555
Other noncurrent provisions	29	10,088	9,073
		70,215	65,729

(continued)

Exhibit 3 (Continued)

€ million	Note	31 Dec. 2009	31 Dec. 2008
Current liabilities			
Current financial liabilities	25	40,606	36,123
Trade payables	30	10,225	9,676
Current tax payables	27	73	59
Other current liabilities	26	8,237	8,545
Provisions for taxes	27	973	1,160
Other current provisions	29	9,420	8,473
Liabilities associated with assets held for sale	23	—	766
		69,534	64,802
Total equity and liabilities		177,178	167,919

Note: Numbers are as shown in the annual report and may not add because of rounding.

In Exhibit 3, the balance sheet is presented with the most recent year in the first column and the earlier year in the second column. Although this is a common presentation, analysts should be careful when reading financial statements. In some cases, the ordering may be reversed, with years listed from most distant to most recent.

At 31 December 2009, Volkswagen's total resources or assets were €177 billion. This number is the sum of non-current assets of €99 billion and current assets of €78 billion.³ Total equity was €37 billion. Although Volkswagen does not give a total amount for all the balance sheet liabilities, it can be determined by adding the non-current and current liabilities, €70,215 million + €69,534 million = €139,749 million, or €140 billion.⁴

Referring back to the basic accounting equation, Assets = Liabilities + Equity, we have €177 billion = €140 billion + €37 billion. In other words, Volkswagen has assets of €177 billion, owes €140 billion, and thus has equity of €37 billion. Using the balance sheet and applying financial statement analysis, the analyst can answer such questions as

- Has the company's liquidity (ability to meet short-term obligations) improved?
- Is the company solvent (does it have sufficient resources to cover its obligations)?
- What is the company's financial position relative to the industry?

Volkswagen, a German-based automobile manufacturer, prepares its financial statements in accordance with International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRS). IFRS require companies to present classified balance sheets that show current and non-current assets and current and non-current liabilities as separate classifications. However, IFRS do not prescribe a particular ordering or format, and the order in which companies present their balance sheet items is largely a function of tradition. As shown, Volkswagen presents non-current assets before current assets, owners'

³ Current assets are defined, in general, as those assets that are cash or cash equivalents; are held for trading; or are expected to be converted to cash (realized), sold, or consumed within 12 months or the company's normal operating cycle. All other assets are classified as non-current.

⁴ Current liabilities are defined, in general, as those that are expected to be settled within 12 months or the company's normal operating cycle. All other liabilities are classified as non-current.

equity before liabilities, and non-current liabilities before current liabilities. This method generally reflects a presentation from least liquid to most liquid. In other countries, the typical order of presentation may differ. For example, in the United States, Australia, and Canada, companies usually present their assets and liabilities from most liquid to least liquid. Cash is typically the first asset shown, and equity is presented after liabilities.

As a basis for comparison, Exhibit 4 presents the balance sheet of Wal-Mart Stores, Inc., or Walmart from its 2010 Annual Report.

Exhibit 4 Walmart Consolidated Balance Sheet

(Amounts in millions except per share data)	31 January	
	2010	2009
ASSETS		
<i>Current assets:</i>		
Cash and cash equivalents	\$7,907	\$7,275
Receivables, net	4,144	3,905
Inventories	33,160	34,511
Prepaid expenses and other	2,980	3,063
Current assets of discontinued operations	140	195
Total current assets	48,331	48,949
<i>Property and equipment:</i>		
Land	22,591	19,852
Buildings and improvements	77,452	73,810
Fixtures and equipment	35,450	29,851
Transportation equipment	2,355	2,307
Property and equipment	137,848	125,820
Less accumulated depreciation	(38,304)	(32,964)
Property and equipment, net	99,544	92,856
<i>Property under capital leases:</i>		
Property under capital leases	5,669	5,341
Less accumulated amortization	(2,906)	(2,544)
Property under capital leases, net	2,763	2,797
Goodwill	16,126	15,260
Other assets and deferred charges	3,942	3,567
Total assets	\$170,706	\$163,429
LIABILITIES AND EQUITY		
<i>Current liabilities:</i>		
Short-term borrowings	\$523	\$1,506
Accounts payable	30,451	28,849
Accrued liabilities	18,734	18,112
Accrued income taxes	1,365	677
Long-term debt due within one year	4,050	5,848
Obligations under capital leases due within one year	346	315
Current liabilities of discontinued operations	92	83

(continued)

Exhibit 4 (Continued)

(Amounts in millions except per share data)	31 January	
	2010	2009
Total current liabilities	55,561	55,390
Long-term debt	33,231	31,349
Long-term obligations under capital leases	3,170	3,200
Deferred income taxes and other	5,508	6,014
Redeemable non-controlling interest	307	397
Commitments and contingencies		
<i>Equity:</i>		
Preferred stock (\$0.10 par value; 100 shares authorized, none issued)	—	—
Common stock (\$0.10 par value; 11,000 shares authorized, 3,786 and 3,925 issued and outstanding at 31 January 2010 and 31 January 2009, respectively)	378	393
Capital in excess of par value	3,803	3,920
Retained earnings	66,638	63,660
Accumulated other comprehensive loss	(70)	(2,688)
Total Walmart shareholders' equity	70,749	65,285
Non-controlling interest	2,180	1,794
Total equity	72,929	67,079
Total liabilities and equity	\$170,706	\$163,429

Walmart has total assets of \$170.7 billion. Liabilities and other non-equity claims total \$97.8 billion, and equity is \$72.9 billion. A later reading will cover the analysis of the balance sheet in more depth. The next section describes and illustrates the statement of comprehensive income.

3.1.2 Statement of Comprehensive Income

The statement of comprehensive income, under IFRS, can be presented as a single statement of comprehensive income or as two statements, an income statement and a statement of comprehensive income that begins with profit or loss from the income statement. The Volkswagen Group chose the latter form of presentation rather than a single statement.

3.1.2.1 Income Statement The income statement presents information on the financial results of a company's business activities over a period of time. The income statement communicates how much **revenue** and other income the company generated during a period and the expenses it incurred to generate that revenue and other income. Revenue typically refers to amounts charged for the delivery of goods or services in the ordinary activities of a business. Other income includes gains, which may or may not arise in the ordinary activities of the business. **Expenses** reflect outflows, depletions of assets, and incurrences of liabilities that decrease equity. Expenses typically include such items as cost of sales (cost of goods sold), administrative expenses, and income tax expenses and may be defined to include losses. Net income (revenue plus other income minus expenses) on the income statement is often referred to as the "bottom line" because of its proximity to the bottom of the income statement. Net income may also be referred to as "net earnings," "net profit," and "profit or loss." In the event that expenses exceed revenues and other income, the result is referred to as "net loss."

Income statements are reported on a consolidated basis, meaning that they include the income and expenses of subsidiary companies under the control of the parent (reporting) company. The income statement is sometimes referred to as a **statement of operations** or **profit and loss (P&L) statement**. The basic equation underlying the income statement is Revenue + Other income – Expenses = Income – Expenses = Net income.

In general terms, when one company (the parent) controls another company (the subsidiary), the parent presents its own financial statement information consolidated with that of the subsidiary. (When a parent company owns more than 50 percent of the voting shares of a subsidiary company, it is presumed to control the subsidiary and thus presents consolidated financial statements.) Each line item of the consolidated income statement includes the entire amount from the relevant line item on the subsidiary's income statement (after removing any intercompany transactions); however, if the parent does not own 100 percent of the subsidiary, it is necessary for the parent to present an allocation of net income to the minority interests. Minority interests, also called non-controlling interests, refer to owners of the remaining shares of the subsidiary that are not owned by the parent. The share of consolidated net income attributable to minority interests is shown at the bottom of the income statement along with the net income attributable to shareholders of the parent company. Exhibit 5 presents the income statement of the Volkswagen Group from its Annual Report 2009.

Exhibit 5 Income Statement of the Volkswagen Group for the Period 1 January to 31 December*

€ million	Note	2009	2008
Sales revenue	1	105,187	113,808
Cost of sales	2	-91,608	-96,612
Gross profit		13,579	17,196
Distribution expenses	3	-10,537	-10,552
Administrative expenses	4	-2,739	-2,742
Other operating income	5	7,904	8,770
Other operating expenses	6	-6,352	-6,339
Operating profit		1,855	6,333
Share of profits and losses of equity-accounted investments	7	701	910
Finance costs	8	-2,268	-1,815
Other financial result	9	972	1,180
Financial result		-595	275
Profit before tax		1,261	6,608
Income tax income/expense	10	-349	-1,920
Current		-1,145	-2,338
Deferred		796	418
Profit after tax		911	4,688
Minority interests		-49	-65
Profit attributable to shareholders of Volkswagen AG		960	4,753
Basic earnings per ordinary share in €	11	2.38	11.92
Basic earnings per preferred share in €	11	2.44	11.98

(continued)

Exhibit 5 (Continued)

€ million	Note	2009	2008
Diluted earnings per ordinary share in €	11	2.38	11.88
Diluted earnings per preferred share in €	11	2.44	11.94

*The numbers are as shown in the annual report and may not add because of rounding.

Exhibit 5 shows that Volkswagen's sales revenue for the fiscal year ended 31 December 2009 was €105,187 million. Subtracting cost of sales from revenue gives gross profit of €13,579 million. After subtracting operating costs and expenses and adding other operating income, the company's operating profit totals €1,855 million. Operating profit represents the results of the company's usual business activities before deducting interest expense or taxes. Operating profit (also called operating income) is thus often referred to as earnings before interest and taxes (EBIT). Next, operating profit is increased by Volkswagen's share of the profits generated by certain of its investments (€701 million) and by profits from its other financial activities (€972 million) and decreased by finance costs (i.e., interest expense) of €2,268 million, resulting in profit before tax of €1,261 million. Total income tax expense for 2009 was €349 million, resulting in profit after tax (net income) of €911 million.

After allocating the losses attributable to minority interest ownership in Volkswagen subsidiary companies, the profit attributable to shareholders of Volkswagen for 2009 was €960 million. Allocating the losses attributable to minority interest ownership resulted in the allocation to shareholders of the parent company, Volkswagen AG, exceeding net income (profit after tax). Volkswagen's disclosures indicate that its minority interests relate primarily to Scania AB, a subsidiary in which Volkswagen owns about 72 percent of the voting rights (with the minority interests owning the remaining 28 percent).

Companies present both basic and diluted earnings per share on the face of the income statement. Earnings per share numbers represent net income attributable to the class of shareholders divided by the relevant number of shares of stock outstanding during the period. Basic earnings per share is calculated using the weighted-average number of common (ordinary) shares that were actually outstanding during the period and the profit or loss attributable to the common shareowners. Diluted earnings per share uses **diluted shares**—the number of shares that would hypothetically be outstanding if potentially dilutive claims on common shares (e.g., stock options or convertible bonds) were exercised or converted by their holders—and an appropriately adjusted profit or loss attributable to the common shareowners.

Volkswagen has two types of shareholders, ordinary and preferred, and presents earnings per share information for both, although there is no requirement to present earnings per share information for preferred shareowners. Volkswagen's basic earnings per ordinary share was €2.38. A note to the company's financial statements explains that this number was calculated as follows: €960 million profit attributable to shareholders of Volkswagen, of which €703 million is attributable to ordinary shareholders and €257 million is attributable to preferred shareholders. The €703 million attributable to ordinary shareholders divided by the weighted-average number of ordinary shares of 295 million shares equals basic earnings per share for 2009 of €2.38. Similar detail is provided in the notes for each of the earnings per share numbers.

An analyst examining the income statement might note that Volkswagen was profitable in both years. The company's profitability declined substantially in 2009, primarily because of lower sales and reduced gross profit. This was not unexpected given the global financial and economic crisis in that year. A better understanding of

Volkswagen's profitability could likely be gained by examining income statements over a longer time period. The analyst might formulate questions related to profitability, such as the following:

- Is the change in revenue related to an increase in units sold, an increase in prices, or some combination?
- If the company has multiple business segments (for example, Volkswagen's segments include passenger cars, light commercial vehicles, and financial services, among others), how are the segments' revenue and profits changing?
- How does the company compare with other companies in the industry?

Answering such questions requires the analyst to gather, analyze, and interpret information from a number of sources, including, but not limited to, the income statement.

3.1.2.2 Other Comprehensive Income Comprehensive income includes all items that impact owners' equity but are not the result of transactions with shareowners. Some of these items are included in the calculation of net income, and some are included in other comprehensive income (OCI). When comprehensive income is presented in two statements, the statement of comprehensive income begins with the profit or loss from the income statement and then presents the components of other comprehensive income.

Exhibit 6 presents the statement of comprehensive income of the Volkswagen Group from its Annual Report 2009.

Exhibit 6 Statement of Comprehensive Income of the Volkswagen Group for the Period 1 January to 31 December

€ million	2009	2008
Profit after tax	911	4,688
Exchange differences on translating foreign operations:		
Fair value changes recognized in other comprehensive income	917	-1,445
Transferred to profit or loss	57	
Actuarial gains/losses	-860	190
Cash flow hedges:		
Fair value changes recognized in other comprehensive income	683	1,054
Transferred to profit or loss	-908	-1,427
Available-for-sale financial assets (marketable securities):		
Fair value changes recognized in other comprehensive income	200	-330
Transferred to profit or loss	71	100
Deferred taxes	216	145
Share of profits and losses of equity-accounted investments recognized directly in equity, after tax	30	-188
Other comprehensive income	406	-1,901
Total comprehensive income	1,317	2,787
Of which attributable to		
Shareholders of Volkswagen AG	1,138	3,310
Minority interests	179	-523

Exhibit 6 shows that other comprehensive income, although smaller in absolute terms than profit after tax (net income), had a significant effect on total comprehensive income. In 2009, other comprehensive income represented approximately 31 percent of total comprehensive income and was approximately 45 percent of the size of profit after tax (net income). In 2008, other comprehensive income was negative (a loss) and was approximately 41 percent of the size of profit after tax (net income) in absolute terms. The statement of comprehensive income will be discussed in greater detail in a later reading. The next section briefly describes the statement of changes in equity.

3.1.3 *Statement of Changes in Equity*

The statement of changes in equity, variously called the “statement of changes in owners’ equity” or “statement of changes in shareholders’ equity,” primarily serves to report changes in the owners’ investment in the business over time. The basic components of owners’ equity are paid-in capital and retained earnings. Retained earnings include the cumulative amount of the company’s profits that have been retained in the company. In addition, non-controlling or minority interests and reserves that represent accumulated other comprehensive income items are included in equity. The latter items may be shown separately or included in retained earnings. Volkswagen includes reserves as components of retained earnings.

The statement of changes in equity is organized to present, for each component of equity, the beginning balance, any increases during the period, any decreases during the period, and the ending balance. For paid-in capital, an example of an increase is a new issuance of equity and an example of a decrease is a repurchase of previously issued stock. For retained earnings, income (both net income as reported on the income statement and other comprehensive income) is the most common increase and a dividend payment is the most common decrease.

Volkswagen’s balance sheet in Exhibit 3 shows that equity at the end of 2009 totaled €37,430 million, compared with €37,388 million at the end of 2008. The company’s statement of changes in equity presents additional detail on the change in each line item. Exhibit 7 presents an excerpt of the statement of changes in equity of the Volkswagen Group from its Annual Report 2009.

In Exhibit 7, the sum of the line items total comprehensive income (€1,102 million) and deferred taxes (€216 million) equals the amount of total comprehensive income reported in the statement of comprehensive income, except for a rounding difference. Using the balance at 31 December 2009, the sum of the columns accumulated profit through equity-accounted investment equals the amount of retained earnings on the balance sheet (€28,901 million in Exhibit 3), except for a rounding difference. Dividends (€779 million) are reported in this statement and reduce retained earnings. Explanatory notes on equity are included in the notes to the consolidated financial statements. The next section describes the cash flow statement.

3.1.4 *Cash Flow Statement*

Although the income statement and balance sheet provide measures of a company’s success in terms of performance and financial position, cash flow is also vital to a company’s long-term success. Disclosing the sources and uses of cash helps creditors, investors, and other statement users evaluate the company’s liquidity, solvency, and financial flexibility. **Financial flexibility** is the ability of the company to react and adapt to financial adversities and opportunities. The cash flow statement classifies all cash flows of the company into three categories: operating, investing, and financing. Cash flows from **operating activities** are those cash flows not classified as investing or financing and generally involve the cash effects of transactions that enter into the determination of net income and, hence, comprise the day-to-day operations of the company. Cash flows from **investing activities** are those cash flows from activities associated with the acquisition and disposal of long-term assets, such as property and

Exhibit 7 Excerpt from Statement of Changes in Equity of the Volkswagen Group for the Period 1 January to 31 December 2009*

€ millions	RETAINED EARNINGS										Equity attributable to shareholders of VW AG	Minority interests	Total equity
	Subscribed capital	Capital reserves	Accumulated profit	Currency translation reserve	Reserve for actuarial gains/losses	Cash flow hedge reserve	Fair value reserve for securities	Equity-accounted investments	Equity attributable to shareholders of VW AG	Minority interests			
Balance at 1 Jan. 2009	1,024	5,351	31,522	-2,721	-672	1,138	-192	-439	35,011	2,377	37,388		
Capital increase	0	4							4		4		
Dividend payment			-779						-779	-95	-874		
Capital transactions involving change in ownership			-76						-76	-316	-392		
Total comprehensive income			960	839	-851	-361	271	30	888	214	1,102		
Deferred taxes					247	83	-80		250	-34	216		
Other changes			-21		2				-18	4	-15		
Balance at 31 Dec. 2009	1,025	5,356	31,607	-1,881	-1,274	860	-1	-409	35,281	2,149	37,430		
						28,902							

*Numbers are as shown in the annual report and may not add and cross-add because of rounding.

equipment. Cash flows from **financing activities** are those cash flows from activities related to obtaining or repaying capital to be used in the business. IFRS permit more flexibility than US GAAP in classifying dividend and interest receipts and payments within these categories.

Exhibit 8 presents Volkswagen's statement of cash flows for the fiscal years ended 31 December 2009 and 2008.

Exhibit 8 Cash Flow Statement of the Volkswagen Group: 1 January to 31 December

€ million	2009	2008
Cash and cash equivalents at beginning of period (excluding time deposit investments)	9,443	9,914
Profit before tax	1,261	6,608
Income taxes paid	-529	-2,075
Depreciation and amortization of property, plant and equipment, intangible assets and investment property	5,028	5,198
Amortization of capitalized development costs	1,586	1,392
Impairment losses on equity investments	16	32
Depreciation of leasing and rental assets	2,247	1,816
Gain/loss on disposal of noncurrent assets	-547	37
Share of profit or loss of equity-accounted investments	-298	-219
Other noncash expense/income	727	765
Change in inventories	4,155	-3,056
Change in receivables (excluding financial services)	465	-1,333
Change in liabilities (excluding financial liabilities)	260	815
Change in provisions	1,660	509
Change in leasing and rental assets	-2,571	-2,734
Change in financial services receivables	-719	-5,053
Cash flows from operating activities	12,741	2,702
Investments in property, plant and equipment, intangible assets and investment property	-5,963	-6,896
Additions to capitalized development costs	-1,948	-2,216
Acquisition of equity investments	-3,989	-2,597
Disposal of equity investments	1,320	1
Proceeds from disposal of property, plant and equipment, intangible assets and investment property	153	95
Change in investments in securities	989	2,041
Change in loans and time deposit investments	-236	-1,611
Cash flows from investing activities	-9,675	-11,183
Capital contributions	4	218
Dividends paid	-874	-722
Capital transactions with minority interests	-392	-362
Other changes	23	-3
Proceeds from issue of bonds	15,593	7,671
Repayment of bonds	-10,202	-8,470
Change in other financial liabilities	1,405	9,806
Finance lease payments	-23	-15

Exhibit 8 (Continued)

€ million	2009	2008
Cash flows from financing activities	5,536	8,123
Effect of exchange rate changes on cash and cash equivalents	190	-113
Net change in cash and cash equivalents	8,792	-471
Cash and cash equivalents at end of period (excluding time deposit investments)	18,235	9,443
Cash and cash equivalents at end of period (excluding time deposit investments)	18,235	9,443
Securities and loans (including time deposit investments)	7,312	7,875
Gross liquidity	25,547	17,318
Total third-party borrowings	-77,599	-69,555
Net liquidity	-52,052	-52,237

The operating activities section of Volkswagen's cash flow statement begins with profit before tax,⁵ €1,261 million, subtracts actual income tax payments, and then adjusts this amount for the effects of non-cash transactions, accruals and deferrals, and transactions of an investing and financing nature to arrive at the amount of cash generated from operating activities of €12,741 million. This approach to reporting cash flow from operating activities is termed the indirect method. The direct method of reporting cash flows from operating activities discloses major classes of gross cash receipts and gross cash payments. Examples of such classes are cash received from customers and cash paid to suppliers and employees.

The indirect method emphasizes the different perspectives of the income statement and cash flow statement. On the income statement, income is reported when earned, not necessarily when cash is received, and expenses are reported when incurred, not necessarily when paid. The cash flow statement presents another aspect of performance: the ability of a company to generate cash flow from running its business. Ideally, for an established company, the analyst would like to see that the primary source of cash flow is from operating activities as opposed to investing or financing activities.

The sum of the net cash flows from operating, investing, and financing activities and the effect of exchange rates on cash equals the net change in cash during the fiscal year. For Volkswagen, the sum of these four items was €8,792 million in 2009, which thus increased the company's cash, excluding amounts held in time deposit investments, from €9,443 million at the beginning of the period to €18,235 million at the end of the period. As disclosed in a note to the financial statements, the time deposit investments are €42 million and €2,304 million for the years 2008 and 2009, respectively. The note also disclosed that €11 million of cash and cash equivalents held for sale [sic] are included in the cash and cash equivalents as reported in cash flow statement but are not included in the cash and cash equivalents as reported in the balance sheet in 2008. When these amounts are included with the amounts shown on the cash flow statement, the total cash and cash equivalents for the years 2008 and 2009 are €9,474 (= 9443 + 42 - 11) million and €20,539 million. These are the same amounts reported as cash and cash equivalents on the balance sheets in Exhibit 3. The cash flow statement will be covered in more depth in a later reading.

⁵ Other companies may choose to begin with net income.

3.1.5 Financial Notes and Supplementary Schedules

The notes (also sometimes referred to as footnotes) that accompany the four financial statements are required and are an integral part of the complete set of financial statements. The notes provide information that is essential to understanding the information provided in the primary statements. Volkswagen's 2009 financial statements, for example, include 91 pages of notes.

The notes disclose the basis of preparation for the financial statements. For example, Volkswagen discloses in its first note that its fiscal year corresponds to the calendar year, that its financial statements are prepared in accordance with IFRS as adopted by the European Union, that the statements are prepared in compliance with German law, that the statements are denominated in millions of euros unless otherwise specified, and that the figures have been rounded, which might give rise to minor discrepancies when figures are added. Volkswagen also discloses that its financial statements are on a consolidated basis—that is, including Volkswagen AG and all of the subsidiary companies it controls.

The notes also disclose information about the accounting policies, methods, and estimates used to prepare the financial statements. As will be discussed in later readings, both IFRS and US GAAP allow some flexibility in choosing among alternative policies and methods when accounting for certain items. This flexibility aims to meet the divergent needs of many businesses for reporting a variety of economic transactions. In addition to differences in accounting policies and methods, differences arise as a result of estimates needed to record and measure transactions, events, and financial statement line items.

Overall, flexibility in accounting choices is necessary because, ideally, a company will select those policies, methods, and estimates that are allowable and most relevant and that fairly reflect the unique economic environment of the company's business and industry. Flexibility can, however, create challenges for the analyst because the use of different policies, methods, and estimates reduces comparability across different companies' financial statements. Comparability occurs when different companies' information is measured and reported in a similar manner over time. Comparability helps the analyst identify and analyze the real economic differences across companies, rather than differences that arise solely from different accounting choices. Because comparability of financial statements is a critical requirement for objective financial analysis, an analyst should be aware of the potential for differences in accounting choices even when comparing two companies that use the same set of accounting standards.

For example, if a company acquires a piece of equipment to use in its operations, accounting standards require that the cost of the equipment be reported as an expense by allocating its cost less any residual value in a systematic manner over the equipment's useful life. This allocation of the cost is known as **depreciation**. Accounting standards permit flexibility, however, in determining the manner in which each year's expense is determined. Two companies may acquire similar equipment but use different methods and assumptions to record the expense over time. An analyst's ability to compare the companies' performance is hindered by the difference. Analysts must understand reporting choices in order to make appropriate adjustments when comparing companies' financial positions and performance.

A company's significant accounting choices (policies, methods, and estimates) must be discussed in the notes to the financial statements. For example, a note containing a summary of significant accounting policies includes how the company recognizes its revenues and depreciates its non-current tangible assets. Analysts must understand the accounting choices a company makes and determine whether they are similar to those of other companies identified and used as benchmarks or comparables. If the policies of the companies being compared are different, the analyst who understands accounting and financial reporting can often make necessary adjustments so that the financial statement data used are more comparable.

For many companies, the financial notes and supplemental schedules provide explanatory information about every line item (or almost every line item) on the balance sheet and income statement, as illustrated by the note references in Volkswagen's balance sheet and income statement in Exhibits 3 and 5. In addition, note disclosures include information about the following (this is not an exhaustive list):

- financial instruments and risks arising from financial instruments,
- commitments and contingencies,
- legal proceedings,
- related-party transactions,
- subsequent events (i.e., events that occur after the balance sheet date),
- business acquisitions and disposals, and
- operating segments' performance.

Exhibit 9 Excerpt from Notes to the Consolidated Financial Statements of the Volkswagen Group for Fiscal Year Ended 31 December 2009: Selected Data on Operating Segments (€ millions)

2008	Passenger Cars and Light Commercial Vehicles	Scania	Volkswagen Financial Services	Total Segments
Sales revenue from external customers	98,710	3,865	10,193	112,768
Segment profit or loss	6,431	417	893	7,741
Segment assets	91,458	10,074	74,690	176,222
2009	Passenger Cars and Light Commercial Vehicles	Scania	Volkswagen Financial Services	Total Segments
Sales revenue from external customers	86,297	6,385	11,095	103,777
Segment profit or loss	2,020	236	606	2,862
Segment assets	87,786	9,512	76,431	173,729

An analyst uses a significant amount of judgment in deciding how to incorporate information from note disclosures into the analysis. For example, such information as financial instrument risk, contingencies, and legal proceedings can alert an analyst to risks that can affect a company's financial position and performance in the future and that require monitoring over time. As another example, information about a company's operating segments can be useful as a means of quickly understanding what a company does and how and where it earns money. The operating segment data shown in Exhibit 9 appear in the notes to the financial statements for Volkswagen. (The totals of the segment data do not equal the amounts reported in the company's financial statements because the financial statement data are adjusted for intersegment activities and unallocated items. The note provides a complete reconciliation of the segment data to the reported data.) From the data in Exhibit 9, an analyst can quickly see that most of the company's revenues and operating profits come from the sale of passenger cars and light commercial vehicles. Over 80 percent of the company's revenues was generated by this segment in both years. In 2008, this segment accounted for over 80 percent of the company's total segment operating profits, although the percentage declined to 70 percent in 2009 because of higher sales growth in the other two segments. Experience using the disclosures of a company and its competitors typically enhances an analyst's judgment about the relative importance of different disclosures and the ways in which they can be helpful.

3.1.6 Management Commentary or Management's Discussion and Analysis

Publicly held companies typically include a section in their annual reports where management discusses a variety of issues of concern, including the nature of the business, past results, and future outlook. This section is referred to by a variety of names, including management report(ing), management commentary, operating and financial review, and management's discussion and analysis. Inclusion of a management report is recommended by the International Organization of Securities Commissions and frequently required by regulatory authorities, such as the US Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) or the UK Financial Reporting Council (FRC). In Germany, management reporting has been required since 1931 and is audited. The discussion by management is arguably one of the most useful parts of a company's annual report besides the financial statements themselves; however, other than excerpts from the financial statements, information included in the management commentary is typically unaudited. When using information from the management report, an analyst should be aware of whether the information is audited or unaudited.

To help improve the quality of the discussion by management, the International Accounting Standards Board (IASB) issued an IFRS Practice Statement, "Management Commentary," in December 2010 that includes a framework for the preparation and presentation of management commentary. The framework provides guidance rather than sets forth requirements in a standard. The framework identifies five content elements of a "decision-useful management commentary." Those content elements include 1) the nature of the business; 2) management's objectives and strategies; 3) the company's significant resources, risks, and relationships; 4) results of operations; and 5) critical performance measures.

In the United States, the SEC requires listed companies to provide an MD&A and specifies the content.⁶ Management must highlight any favorable or unfavorable trends and identify significant events and uncertainties that affect the company's liquidity, capital resources, and results of operations. The MD&A must also provide information about the effects of inflation, changing prices, or other material events and uncertainties that may cause the future operating results and financial condition to materially depart from the current reported financial information. In addition, the MD&A must provide information about off-balance-sheet obligations and about contractual commitments such as purchase obligations. Companies should also provide disclosure in the MD&A that discusses the critical accounting policies that require management to make subjective judgments and that have a significant impact on reported financial results.

The management commentary or MD&A is a good starting place for understanding information in the financial statements. In particular, the forward-looking disclosures in an MD&A, such as those about planned capital expenditures, new store openings, or divestitures, can be useful in projecting a company's future performance. However, the commentary is only one input for the analyst seeking an objective and independent perspective on a company's performance and prospects.

The management report in the Annual Report 2009 of Volkswagen Group includes much information of potential interest to an analyst. The 78-page management report contains sections titled Business Development; Shares and Bonds; Net Assets; Financial Position; Results of Operations; Volkswagen AG (condensed, according to German Commercial Code); Value-Enhancing Factors; Risk Report; and Report on Expected Developments.

⁶ Relevant sections of SEC requirements are included for reference in the FASB ASC. The FASB ASC does not include sections of SEC requirements that deal with matters outside the basic financial statements, such as the MD&A.

3.1.7 Auditor's Reports

Financial statements presented in companies' annual reports are generally required to be audited (examined) by an independent accounting firm in accordance with specified auditing standards. The independent auditor then provides a written opinion on the financial statements. This opinion is referred to as the audit report. Audit reports take slightly different forms in different jurisdictions, but the basic components, including a specific statement of the auditor's opinion, are similar. Audits of financial statements may be required by contractual arrangement, law, or regulation.

International standards for auditing have been developed by the International Auditing and Assurance Standards Board of the International Federation of Accountants. These standards have been adopted by many countries and are referenced in audit reports issued in those countries. Other countries, such as the United States, specify their own auditing standards. With the enactment of the Sarbanes–Oxley Act of 2002 in the United States, auditing standards for public companies are promulgated by the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board.

Under international standards for auditing (ISAs), the objectives of an auditor in conducting an audit of financial statements are

- A** To obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements as a whole are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error, thereby enabling the auditor to express an opinion on whether the financial statements are prepared, in all material respects, in accordance with an applicable financial reporting framework; and
- B** To report on the financial statements, and communicate as required by the ISAs, in accordance with the auditor's findings.⁷

Publicly traded companies may also have requirements set by regulators or stock exchanges, such as appointing an independent audit committee within its board of directors to oversee the audit process. The audit process provides a basis for the independent auditor to express an audit opinion on whether the information presented in the audited financial statements present fairly the financial position, performance, and cash flows of the company in accordance with a specified set of accounting standards. Because audits are designed and conducted using audit sampling techniques and financial statement line items may be based on estimates and assumptions, independent auditors cannot express an opinion that provides absolute assurance about the accuracy or precision of the financial statements. Instead, the independent audit report provides *reasonable assurance* that the financial statements are *fairly presented*, meaning that there is a high probability that the audited financial statements are free from *material* error, fraud, or illegal acts that have a direct effect on the financial statements.

The standard independent audit report for a publicly traded company normally has several paragraphs under both the international and US auditing standards. The first or “introductory” paragraph describes the financial statements that were audited and the responsibilities of both management and the independent auditor. The second or “scope” paragraph describes the nature of the audit process and provides the basis for the auditor's expression about reasonable assurance on the fairness of the financial statements. The third or “opinion” paragraph expresses the auditor's opinion on the fairness of the audited financial statements.

An *unqualified* audit opinion states that the financial statements give a “true and fair view” (international) or are “fairly presented” (international and US) in accordance with applicable accounting standards. This is often referred to as a “clean” opinion and is the

⁷ See the International Auditing and Assurance Standards Board (IAASB) *Handbook of International Quality Control, Auditing, Review, Other Assurance, and Related Services Pronouncements*.

one that analysts would like to see in a financial report. There are several other types of opinions. A *qualified* audit opinion is one in which there is some scope limitation or exception to accounting standards. Exceptions are described in the audit report with additional explanatory paragraphs so that the analyst can determine the importance of the exception. An *adverse* audit opinion is issued when an auditor determines that the financial statements materially depart from accounting standards and are not fairly presented. An adverse opinion makes analysis of the financial statements easy: Do not bother analyzing these statements, because the company's financial statements cannot be relied on. Finally, a *disclaimer of opinion* occurs when, for some reason, such as a scope limitation, the auditors are unable to issue an opinion. Exhibit 10 presents the independent auditor's report for Volkswagen. Note that Volkswagen received an unqualified or clean audit opinion from PricewaterhouseCoopers for the company's fiscal year ended 31 December 2009.

Exhibit 10 Volkswagen's Independent Audit Report

Auditors' Report

On completion of our audit, we issued the following unqualified auditors' report dated February 17, 2010. This report was originally prepared in German. In case of ambiguities the German version takes precedence:

Auditors' Report

We have audited the consolidated financial statements prepared by VOLKSWAGEN AKTIENGESELLSCHAFT, Wolfsburg, comprising the income statement and statement of comprehensive income, the balance sheet, the statement of changes in equity, the cash flow statement and the notes to the consolidated financial statements, together with the group management report, which is combined with the management report of the Company for the business year from January 1 to December 31, 2009. The preparation of the consolidated financial statements and the combined management report in accordance with the IFRSs, as adopted by the EU, and the additional requirements of German commercial law pursuant to § (article) 315a Abs. (paragraph) 1 HGB ("Handelsgesetzbuch": German Commercial Code) are the responsibility of the Company's Board of Management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the consolidated financial statements and on the combined management report based on our audit.

We conducted our audit of the consolidated financial statements in accordance with § 317 HGB and German generally accepted standards for the audit of financial statements promulgated by the Institut der Wirtschaftsprüfer (Institute of Public Auditors in Germany) (IDW). Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit such that misstatements materially affecting the presentation of the net assets, financial position and results of operations in the consolidated financial statements in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework and in the combined management report are detected with reasonable assurance. Knowledge of the business activities and the economic and legal environment of the Group and expectations as to possible misstatements are taken into account in the determination of audit procedures. The effectiveness of the accounting-related internal control system and the evidence supporting the disclosures in the consolidated financial statements and the combined management report are examined primarily on a test basis within the framework of the audit. The audit includes assessing the annual financial statements of those entities included in consolidation, the determination of the entities to be included in consolidation, the accounting and consolidation principles used and significant estimates made by the Company's Board of Management, as well

Exhibit 10 (Continued)

as evaluating the overall presentation of the consolidated financial statements and the combined management report. We believe that our audit provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

Our audit has not led to any reservations.

In our opinion, based on the findings of our audit, the consolidated financial statements comply with the IFRSs as adopted by the EU and the additional requirements of German commercial law pursuant to Article 315a paragraph 1 HGB and give a true and fair view of the net assets, financial position and results of operations of the Group in accordance with these requirements. The combined management report is consistent with the consolidated financial statements and as a whole provides a suitable view of the Group's position and suitably presents the opportunities and risks of future development.

Hanover, February 17, 2010

PricewaterhouseCoopers
Aktiengesellschaft
Wirtschaftsprüfungsgesellschaft

Harald Kayser
Wirtschaftsprüfer

ppa. Martin Schröder
Wirtschaftsprüfer

Source: Volkswagen's Annual Report 2009.

In the United States, under the Sarbanes–Oxley Act, the auditors must also express an opinion on the company's internal control systems. This information may be provided in a separate opinion or incorporated as a paragraph in the opinion related to the financial statements. The internal control system is the company's internal system that is designed, among other things, to ensure that the company's process for generating financial reports is sound. Although management has always been responsible for maintaining effective internal control, the Sarbanes–Oxley Act greatly increases management's responsibility for demonstrating that the company's internal controls are effective. Management of publicly traded companies in the United States are now required by securities regulators to explicitly accept responsibility for the effectiveness of internal control, evaluate the effectiveness of internal control using suitable control criteria, support the evaluation with sufficient competent evidence, and provide a report on internal control.

Although these reports and attestations provide some assurances to analysts, they are not infallible. The analyst must always use a degree of healthy skepticism when analyzing financial statements.

3.2 Other Sources of Information

The information described in Section 3.1 is generally provided to shareholders at least annually. In addition, companies also provide information on management and director compensation, company stock performance, and any potential conflicts of interest that may exist between management, the board, and shareholders. This information may

appear in the company's annual report or other publicly available documents. Public companies often provide this information in proxy statements, which are statements distributed to shareholders about matters that are to be put to a vote at the company's annual (or special) meeting of shareholders.

Interim reports are also provided by the company either semiannually or quarterly, depending on the applicable regulatory requirements. Interim reports generally present the four basic financial statements and condensed notes but are not audited. These interim reports provide updated information on a company's performance and financial position since the last annual period.

Companies also provide relevant current information on their websites, in press releases, and in conference calls with analysts and investors. One type of press release, which analysts often consider to be particularly important, is the periodic earnings announcement. The earnings announcement often happens well before the company files its formal financial statements. Such earnings announcements are often followed by a conference call in which the company's senior executives describe the company's performance and answer questions posed by conference call participants. Following the earnings conference call, the investor relations portion of the company's website may post a recording of the call accompanied by slides and supplemental information discussed during the call.

When performing financial statement analysis, analysts should review all these company sources of information as well as information from external sources regarding the economy, the industry, the company, and peer (comparable) companies. Information on the economy, industry, and peer companies is useful in putting the company's financial performance and position in perspective and in assessing the company's future. In most cases, information from sources apart from the company is crucial to an analyst's effectiveness. For example, an analyst studying a consumer-oriented company will typically seek direct experience with the products (taste the food or drink, use the shampoo or soap, visit the stores or hotels). An analyst following a highly regulated industry will study the existing and expected relevant regulations. An analyst following a highly technical industry will gain relevant expertise personally or seek input from a technical specialist. In sum, thorough research goes beyond financial reports.

The next section presents a framework for using all this information in financial statement analysis.

4

FINANCIAL STATEMENT ANALYSIS FRAMEWORK

Analysts work in a variety of positions within the investment management industry. Some are equity analysts whose main objective is to evaluate potential investments in a company's equity securities (i.e., the shares or stock it issues) as a basis for deciding whether a prospective investment is attractive and what an appropriate purchase price might be. Others are credit analysts who evaluate the credit-worthiness of a company to decide whether (and with what terms) a loan should be made or what credit rating should be assigned. Analysts may also be involved in a variety of other tasks, such as evaluating the performance of a subsidiary company, evaluating a private equity investment, or finding stocks that are overvalued for purposes of taking a short position. This section presents a generic framework for financial statement analysis that can be used in these various tasks. The framework is summarized in Exhibit 11.⁸

⁸ Components of this framework have been adapted from van Greuning and Bratanovic (2003, p. 300) and from Benninga and Sarig (1997, pp. 134–156).

Exhibit 11 Financial Statement Analysis Framework

Phase	Sources of Information	Output
1 Articulate the purpose and context of the analysis.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ The nature of the analyst's function, such as evaluating an equity or debt investment or issuing a credit rating. ■ Communication with client or supervisor on needs and concerns. ■ Institutional guidelines related to developing specific work product. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Statement of the purpose or objective of analysis. ■ A list (written or unwritten) of specific questions to be answered by the analysis. ■ Nature and content of report to be provided. ■ Timetable and budgeted resources for completion.
2 Collect input data.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Financial statements, other financial data, questionnaires, and industry/economic data. ■ Discussions with management, suppliers, customers, and competitors. ■ Company site visits (e.g., to production facilities or retail stores). 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Organized financial statements. ■ Financial data tables. ■ Completed questionnaires, if applicable.
3 Process data.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Data from the previous phase. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Adjusted financial statements. ■ Common-size statements. ■ Ratios and graphs. ■ Forecasts.
4 Analyze/interpret the processed data.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Input data as well as processed data. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Analytical results.
5 Develop and communicate conclusions and recommendations (e.g., with an analysis report).	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Analytical results and previous reports. ■ Institutional guidelines for published reports. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Analytical report answering questions posed in Phase 1. ■ Recommendation regarding the purpose of the analysis, such as whether to make an investment or grant credit.
6 Follow-up.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Information gathered by periodically repeating above steps as necessary to determine whether changes to holdings or recommendations are necessary. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Updated reports and recommendations.

The following sections discuss the individual phases of financial statement analysis.

4.1 Articulate the Purpose and Context of Analysis

Prior to undertaking any analysis, it is essential to understand the purpose of the analysis. An understanding of the purpose is particularly important in financial statement analysis because of the numerous available techniques and the substantial amount of data.

Some analytical tasks are well defined, in which case articulating the purpose of the analysis requires little decision making by the analyst. For example, a periodic credit review of an investment-grade debt portfolio or an equity analyst's report on

a particular company may be guided by institutional norms such that the purpose of the analysis is given. Furthermore, the format, procedures, and/or sources of information may also be given.

For other analytical tasks, articulating the purpose of the analysis requires the analyst to make decisions. The purpose of an analysis guides further decisions about the approach, the tools, the data sources, the format in which to report the results of the analysis, and the relative importance of different aspects of the analysis.

When facing a substantial amount of data, a less experienced analyst may be tempted to just start making calculations and generating financial ratios without considering what is relevant for the decision at hand. It is generally advisable to resist this temptation and thus avoid unnecessary or pointless efforts. Consider the questions: If you could have all the calculations and ratios completed instantly, what conclusion would you be able to draw? What question would you be able to answer? What decision would your answer support?

The analyst should also define the context at this stage. Who is the intended audience? What is the end product—for example, a final report explaining conclusions and recommendations? What is the time frame (i.e., when is the report due)? What resources and resource constraints are relevant to completion of the analysis? Again, the context may be predefined (i.e., standard and guided by institutional norms).

Having clarified the purpose and context of the financial statement analysis, the analyst should next compile the specific questions to be answered by the analysis. For example, if the purpose of the financial statement analysis (or, more likely, the particular stage of a larger analysis) is to compare the historical performance of three companies operating in a particular industry, specific questions would include the following: What has been the relative growth rate of the companies, and what has been the relative profitability of the companies?

4.2 Collect Data

Next, the analyst obtains the data required to answer the specific questions. A key part of this step is obtaining an understanding of the company's business, financial performance, and financial position (including trends over time and in comparison with peer companies). For historical analyses, financial statement data alone are adequate in some cases. For example, to screen a large number of alternative companies to find those with a minimum level of profitability, financial statement data alone would be adequate. But to address more in-depth questions, such as why and how one company performed better or worse than its competitors, additional information would be required. As another example, to compare the historical performance of two companies in a particular industry, the historical financial statements would be sufficient to determine which had faster-growing sales or earnings and which was more profitable; however, a broader comparison with overall industry growth and profitability would obviously require industry data.

Furthermore, information on the economy and industry is necessary to understand the environment in which the company operates. Analysts often take a top-down approach whereby they 1) gain an understanding of the macroeconomic environment, such as prospects for growth in the economy and inflation, 2) analyze the prospects of the industry in which the subject company operates based on the expected macroeconomic environment, and 3) determine the prospects for the company in the expected industry and macroeconomic environments. For example, an analyst may need to forecast future growth in earnings for a company. To project future growth, past company data provide one basis for statistical forecasting; however, an understanding of economic and industry conditions can improve the analyst's ability to forecast a company's earnings on the basis of forecasts of overall economic and industry activity.

4.3 Process Data

After obtaining the requisite financial statement and other information, the analyst processes these data using appropriate analytical tools. For example, processing the data may involve computing ratios or growth rates; preparing common-size financial statements; creating charts; performing statistical analyses, such as regressions or Monte Carlo simulations; performing equity valuation; performing sensitivity analyses; or using any other analytical tools or combination of tools that are available and appropriate for the task. A comprehensive financial analysis at this stage would include the following:

- Reading and evaluating financial statements for each company being analyzed. This includes reading the notes and understanding what accounting standards have been used (for example, IFRS or US GAAP), what accounting choices have been made (for example, when to report revenue on the income statement), and what operating decisions have been made that affect reported financial statements (for example, leasing versus purchasing equipment).
- Making any needed adjustments to the financial statements to facilitate comparison when the unadjusted statements of the subject companies reflect differences in accounting standards, accounting choices, or operating decisions. Note that commonly used databases do not make such analyst adjustments.
- Preparing or collecting common-size financial statement data (which scale data to directly reflect percentages [e.g., of sales] or changes [e.g., from the prior year]) and financial ratios (which are measures of various aspects of corporate performance based on financial statement elements). On the basis of common-size financial statements and financial ratios, analysts can evaluate a company's relative profitability, liquidity, leverage, efficiency, and valuation in relation to past results and/or peers' results.

4.4 Analyze/Interpret the Processed Data

Once the data have been processed, the next step—critical to any analysis—is to interpret the output. The answer to a specific financial analysis question is seldom the numerical answer alone. Rather, the answer to the analytical question relies on the analyst's interpretation of the output and the use of this interpreted output to support a conclusion or recommendation. The answers to the specific analytical questions may themselves achieve the underlying purpose of the analysis, but usually, a conclusion or recommendation is required. For example, an equity analysis may require a buy, hold, or sell decision or a conclusion about the value of a share of stock. In support of the decision, the analysis would cite such information as target value, relative performance, expected future performance given a company's strategic position, quality of management, and whatever other information was important in reaching the decision.

4.5 Develop and Communicate Conclusions/Recommendations

Communicating the conclusion or recommendation in an appropriate format is the next step. The appropriate format will vary by analytical task, by institution, and/or by audience. For example, an equity analyst's report would typically include the following components:

- summary and investment conclusion;
- earnings projections;

- valuation;
- business summary;
- risk, industry, and competitive analysis;
- historical performance; and
- forecasts.

The contents of reports may also be specified by regulatory agencies or professional standards. For example, the CFA Institute *Standards of Practice Handbook (Handbook)* dictates standards that must be followed in communicating recommendations. According to the *Handbook*:

Standard V(B) states that members and candidates should communicate in a recommendation the factors that were instrumental in making the investment recommendation. A critical part of this requirement is to distinguish clearly between opinions and facts. In preparing a research report, the member or candidate must present the basic characteristics of the security(ies) being analyzed, which will allow the reader to evaluate the report and incorporate information the reader deems relevant to his or her investment decision making process.⁹

The *Handbook* requires that limitations to the analysis and any risks inherent to the investment be disclosed. Furthermore, the *Handbook* requires that any report include elements important to the analysis and conclusions so that readers can evaluate the conclusions themselves.

4.6 Follow-Up

The process does not end with the report. If an equity investment is made or a credit rating is assigned, periodic review is required to determine if the original conclusions and recommendations are still valid. In the case of a rejected investment, follow-up may not be necessary but may be useful in determining whether the analysis process is adequate or should be refined (for example, if a rejected investment turns out to be successful in the market, perhaps the rejection was due to inadequate analysis). Follow-up may involve repeating all the previous steps in the process on a periodic basis.

SUMMARY

The information presented in financial and other reports, including the financial statements, notes, and management's commentary, help the financial analyst to assess a company's performance and financial position. An analyst may be called on to perform a financial analysis for a variety of reasons, including the valuation of equity securities, the assessment of credit risk, the performance of due diligence in an acquisition, and the evaluation of a subsidiary's performance relative to other business units. Major considerations in both equity analysis and credit analysis are evaluating a company's financial position, its ability to generate profits and cash flow, and its ability to generate future growth in profits and cash flow.

⁹ *Standards of Practice Handbook* (2014, p. 169).

This reading has presented an overview of financial statement analysis. Among the major points covered are the following:

- The primary purpose of financial reports is to provide information and data about a company's financial position and performance, including profitability and cash flows. The information presented in financial reports—including the financial statements and notes—and other reports—including management's commentary or management's discussion and analysis—allows the financial analyst to assess a company's financial position and performance and trends in that performance.
- The basic financial statements are the statement of financial position (i.e., the balance sheet), the statement of comprehensive income (i.e., a single statement of comprehensive income or two statements consisting of an income statement and a statement of comprehensive income), the statement of changes in equity, and the statement of cash flows.
- The balance sheet discloses what resources a company controls (assets) and what it owes (liabilities) at a specific point in time. Owners' equity represents the net assets of the company; it is the owners' residual interest in or residual claim on the company's assets after deducting its liabilities. The relationship among the three parts of the balance sheet (assets, liabilities, and owners' equity) may be shown in equation form as follows: $\text{Assets} = \text{Liabilities} + \text{Owners' equity}$.
- The income statement presents information on the financial results of a company's business activities over a period of time. The income statement communicates how much revenue and other income the company generated during a period and what expenses, including losses, it incurred in connection with generating that revenue and other income. The basic equation underlying the income statement is $\text{Revenue} + \text{Other income} - \text{Expenses} = \text{Net income}$.
- The statement of comprehensive income includes all items that change owners' equity except transactions with owners. Some of these items are included as part of net income, and some are reported as other comprehensive income (OCI).
- The statement of changes in equity provides information about increases or decreases in the various components of owners' equity.
- Although the income statement and balance sheet provide measures of a company's success, cash and cash flow are also vital to a company's long-term success. Disclosing the sources and uses of cash helps creditors, investors, and other statement users evaluate the company's liquidity, solvency, and financial flexibility.
- The notes (also referred to as footnotes) that accompany the financial statements are an integral part of those statements and provide information that is essential to understanding the statements. Analysts should evaluate note disclosures regarding the use of alternative accounting methods, estimates, and assumptions.
- In addition to the financial statements, a company provides other sources of information that are useful to the financial analyst. As part of his or her analysis, the financial analyst should read and assess this additional information, particularly that presented in the management commentary (also called management report[ing], operating and financial review, and management's discussion and analysis [MD&A]).

- A publicly traded company must have an independent audit performed on its annual financial statements. The auditor's report expresses an opinion on the financial statements and provides some assurance about whether the financial statements fairly present a company's financial position, performance, and cash flows. In addition, for US publicly traded companies, auditors must also express an opinion on the company's internal control systems.
- Information on the economy, industry, and peer companies is useful in putting the company's financial performance and position in perspective and in assessing the company's future. In most cases, information from sources apart from the company are crucial to an analyst's effectiveness.
- The financial statement analysis framework provides steps that can be followed in any financial statement analysis project. These steps are:
 - articulate the purpose and context of the analysis;
 - collect input data;
 - process data;
 - analyze/interpret the processed data;
 - develop and communicate conclusions and recommendations; and
 - follow up.

REFERENCES

- Benninga, Simon Z., and Oded H. Sarig. 1997. *Corporate Finance: A Valuation Approach*. New York: McGraw-Hill Publishing.
- International Auditing and Assurance Standards Board (IAASB). *Handbook of International Quality Control, Auditing, Review, Other Assurance, and Related Services Pronouncements*, Standard 200, available at www.ifac.org/IAASB.
- van Greuning, Hennie, and Sonja Brajovic Bratanovic. 2003. *Analyzing and Managing Banking Risk: A Framework for Assessing Corporate Governance and Financial Risk*. Washington, DC: World Bank.

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

- 1 Providing information about the performance and financial position of companies so that users can make economic decisions *best* describes the role of:
 - A auditing.
 - B financial reporting.
 - C financial statement analysis.
- 2 Which of the following *best* describes the role of financial statement analysis?
 - A To provide information about a company's performance
 - B To provide information about a company's changes in financial position
 - C To form expectations about a company's future performance and financial position
- 3 The role of financial statement analysis is *best* described as:
 - A providing information useful for making investment decisions.
 - B evaluating a company for the purpose of making economic decisions.
 - C using financial reports prepared by analysts to make economic decisions.
- 4 A company's current financial position would *best* be evaluated using the:
 - A balance sheet.
 - B income statement.
 - C statement of cash flows.
- 5 A company's profitability for a period would *best* be evaluated using the:
 - A balance sheet.
 - B income statement.
 - C statement of cash flows.
- 6 The financial statement that presents a shareholder's residual claim on assets is the:
 - A balance sheet.
 - B income statement.
 - C cash flow statement.
- 7 A company's profitability over a period of time is *best* evaluated using the:
 - A balance sheet.
 - B income statement.
 - C cash flow statement.
- 8 The income statement is *best* used to evaluate a company's:
 - A current financial position.
 - B sources of cash flow.
 - C financial results from business activities.
- 9 Accounting policies, methods, and estimates used in preparing financial statements are *most likely* found in the:
 - A auditor's report.
 - B management commentary.
 - C notes to the financial statements.

- 10 Information about management and director compensation would *least likely* be found in the:
- A auditor's report.
 - B proxy statement.
 - C notes to the financial statements.
- 11 Information about a company's objectives, strategies, and significant risks would *most likely* be found in the:
- A auditor's report.
 - B management commentary.
 - C notes to the financial statements.
- 12 Which of the following *best* describes why the notes that accompany the financial statements are required? The notes:
- A permit flexibility in statement preparation.
 - B standardize financial reporting across companies.
 - C provide information necessary to understand the financial statements.
- 13 What type of audit opinion is preferred when analyzing financial statements?
- A Qualified.
 - B Adverse.
 - C Unqualified.
- 14 An auditor determines that a company's financial statements are prepared in accordance with applicable accounting standards except with respect to inventory reporting. This exception *most likely* results in an audit opinion that is:
- A adverse.
 - B qualified.
 - C unqualified.
- 15 An independent audit report is *most likely* to provide:
- A absolute assurance about the accuracy of the financial statements.
 - B reasonable assurance that the financial statements are fairly presented.
 - C a qualified opinion with respect to the transparency of the financial statements.
- 16 Interim financial reports released by a company are *most likely* to be:
- A monthly.
 - B unaudited.
 - C unqualified.
- 17 Which of the following sources of information used by analysts is found outside a company's annual report?
- A Auditor's report
 - B Peer company analysis
 - C Management's discussion and analysis
- 18 Ratios are an input into which step in the financial statement analysis framework?
- A Process data.
 - B Collect input data.
 - C Analyze/interpret the processed data.

- 19 Which phase in the financial statement analysis framework *most likely* involves producing updated reports and recommendations?
- A Follow-up
 - B Analyze/interpret the processed data
 - C Develop and communicate conclusions and recommendations

SOLUTIONS

- 1 B is correct. This is the role of financial reporting. The role of financial statement analysis is to evaluate the financial reports.
- 2 C is correct. In general, analysts seek to examine the past and current performance and financial position of a company in order to form expectations about its future performance and financial position.
- 3 B is correct. The primary role of financial statement analysis is to use financial reports prepared by companies to evaluate the past, current, and potential performance and financial position of a company for the purpose of making investment, credit, and other economic decisions.
- 4 A is correct. The balance sheet portrays the current financial position. The income statement and statement of cash flows present different aspects of performance.
- 5 B is correct. Profitability is the performance aspect measured by the income statement. The balance sheet portrays the current financial position. The statement of cash flows presents a different aspect of performance.
- 6 A is correct. Owners' equity is the owners' residual interest in (i.e., residual claim on) the company's assets after deducting its liabilities, which is information presented on the balance sheet.
- 7 B is correct. A company's profitability is best evaluated using the income statement. The income statement presents information on the financial results of a company's business activities over a period of time by communicating how much revenue was generated and the expenses incurred to generate that revenue.
- 8 C is correct. A company's revenues and expenses are presented on the income statement, which is used to evaluate a company's financial results (or profitability) from business activities over a period of time. A company's current financial position is best evaluated by using the balance sheet. A company's sources of cash flow are best evaluated using the cash flow statement.
- 9 C is correct. The notes disclose choices in accounting policies, methods, and estimates.
- 10 A is correct. Information about management and director compensation is not found in the auditor's report. Disclosure of management compensation is required in the proxy statement, and some aspects of management compensation are disclosed in the notes to the financial statements.
- 11 B is correct. These are components of management commentary.
- 12 C is correct. The notes provide information that is essential to understanding the information provided in the primary statements.
- 13 C is correct. An unqualified opinion is a "clean" opinion and indicates that the financial statements present the company's performance and financial position fairly in accordance with a specified set of accounting standards.
- 14 B is correct. A qualified audit opinion is one in which there is some scope limitation or exception to accounting standards. Exceptions are described in the audit report with additional explanatory paragraphs so that the analyst can determine the importance of the exception.

- 15 B is correct. The independent audit report provides reasonable assurance that the financial statements are fairly presented, meaning that there is a high probability that the audited financial statements are free from material error, fraud, or illegal acts that have a direct effect on the financial statements.
- 16 B is correct. Interim reports are typically provided semiannually or quarterly and present the four basic financial statements and condensed notes. They are not audited. Unqualified is a type of audit opinion
- 17 B is correct. When performing financial statement analysis, analysts should review all company sources of information as well as information from external sources regarding the economy, the industry, the company, and peer (comparable) companies.
- 18 C is correct. Ratios are an output of the process data step but are an input into the analyze/interpret data step.
- 19 A is correct. The follow-up phase involves gathering information and repeating the analysis to determine whether it is necessary to update reports and recommendations and then updating if necessary.

Financial Reporting Standards

by Elaine Henry, PhD, CFA, Jan Hendrik van Greuning, DCom, CFA, and Thomas R. Robinson, PhD, CFA

Elaine Henry, PhD, CFA, is at Stevens Institute of Technology (USA). Jan Hendrik van Greuning, DCom, CFA, is at BIBD (Brunei). Thomas R. Robinson, PhD, CFA, is at AACSB International (USA).

LEARNING OUTCOMES

<i>Mastery</i>	<i>The candidate should be able to:</i>
<input type="checkbox"/>	a. describe the objective of financial statements and the importance of financial reporting standards in security analysis and valuation;
<input type="checkbox"/>	b. describe roles and desirable attributes of financial reporting standard-setting bodies and regulatory authorities in establishing and enforcing reporting standards, and describe the role of the International Organization of Securities Commissions;
<input type="checkbox"/>	c. describe the status of global convergence of accounting standards and ongoing barriers to developing one universally accepted set of financial reporting standards;
<input type="checkbox"/>	d. describe the International Accounting Standards Board's conceptual framework, including the objective and qualitative characteristics of financial statements, required reporting elements, and constraints and assumptions in preparing financial statements;
<input type="checkbox"/>	e. describe general requirements for financial statements under International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRS);
<input type="checkbox"/>	f. compare key concepts of financial reporting standards under IFRS and US generally accepted accounting principles (US GAAP) reporting systems;
<input type="checkbox"/>	g. identify characteristics of a coherent financial reporting framework and the barriers to creating such a framework;
<input type="checkbox"/>	h. describe implications for financial analysis of differing financial reporting systems and the importance of monitoring developments in financial reporting standards;
<input type="checkbox"/>	i. analyze company disclosures of significant accounting policies.

Note: Changes in accounting standards as well as new rulings and/or pronouncements issued after the publication of the readings on financial reporting and analysis may cause some of the information in these readings to become dated. Candidates are *not* responsible for anything that occurs after the readings were published. In addition, candidates are expected to be familiar with the analytical frameworks contained in the readings, as well as the implications of alternative accounting methods for financial analysis and valuation discussed in the readings. Candidates are also responsible for the content of accounting standards, but not for the actual reference numbers. Finally, candidates should be aware that certain ratios may be defined and calculated differently. When alternative ratio definitions exist and no specific definition is given, candidates should use the ratio definitions emphasized in the readings.

1

INTRODUCTION

Financial reporting standards provide principles for preparing financial reports and determine the types and amounts of information that must be provided to users of financial statements, including investors and creditors, so that they may make informed decisions. This reading focuses on the framework within which these standards are created. An understanding of the underlying framework of financial reporting standards, which is broader than knowledge of specific accounting rules, will allow an analyst to assess the valuation implications of financial statement elements and transactions—including transactions, such as those that represent new developments, which are not specifically addressed by the standards.

Section 2 of this reading discusses the objective of financial statements and the importance of financial reporting standards in security analysis and valuation. Section 3 describes the roles of financial reporting standard-setting bodies and regulatory authorities and several of the financial reporting standard-setting bodies and regulatory authorities. Section 4 describes the trend toward and barriers to convergence of global financial reporting standards. Section 5 describes the International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRS) framework¹ and general requirements for financial statements. Section 6 discusses the characteristics of an effective financial reporting framework along with some of the barriers to a single coherent framework. Section 7 illustrates some of the specific differences between IFRS and US generally accepted accounting practices (US GAAP), and Section 8 discusses the importance of monitoring developments in financial reporting standards. A summary of the key points and practice problems in the CFA Institute multiple choice format conclude the reading.

2

THE OBJECTIVE OF FINANCIAL REPORTING

The financial reports of a company include financial statements and other supplemental disclosures necessary to assess a company's financial position and periodic financial performance. Financial reporting is based on a simple premise. The International Accounting Standards Board (IASB), which sets financial reporting standards that have been adopted in many countries, expressed it as follows in its *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting 2010 (Conceptual Framework 2010)*:²

The objective of general purpose financial reporting is to provide financial information about the reporting entity that is useful to existing and potential investors, lenders, and other creditors in making decisions about providing resources to the entity. Those decisions involve buying, selling or holding equity and debt instruments, and providing or settling loans and other forms of credit.³

¹ The body of standards issued by the International Accounting Standards Board (IASB) is referred to as International Financial Reporting Standards.

² In September 2010, the IASB adopted the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting* in place of the *Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements (1989)*. The *Conceptual Framework* represents the partial completion of a joint convergence project between the IASB and FASB on an updated framework. The *Conceptual Framework (2010)* contains two updated chapters: *The objective of financial reporting* and *Qualitative characteristics of useful financial information*. The remainder of the material in the *Conceptual Framework* is from the *Framework (1989)* and will be updated as the project is completed. Also in September 2010, the FASB issued Concepts Statement 8, *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*, to replace Concepts Statements 1 and 2.

³ *Conceptual Framework (2010)* Chapter 1, OB2. Under US GAAP, the identical statement appears in Concept Statement 8, Chapter 1, OB2.

The objective in the *Conceptual Framework (2010)* differs from the objective of the *Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements (1989)*⁴ in a number of key ways. The scope of the objective now extends to financial reporting, which is broader than the previously stated scope that covered financial statements only. Another difference is that the objective now specifies the primary users for whom the reports are intended (existing and potential investors, etc.) while the previously stated objective referred solely to a ‘wide range of users.’ Also, while the *Conceptual Framework (2010)* identifies information that should be reported—including that about financial position (economic resources and claims), changes in economic resources and claims, and financial performance reflected by accrual accounting and past cash flows—it does not list that information within the objective itself, unlike the previously stated objective.

Standards are developed in accordance with a framework so it is useful to have an agreed upon framework to guide the development of standards. The joint conceptual framework project of the IASB and the US Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) aimed to develop a common foundation for standards. Standards based on this foundation were to be principles-based, internally consistent, and converged. Until recently, financial reporting standards were primarily developed independently by each country’s standard-setting body. This independent standard setting created a wide range of standards, some of which were quite comprehensive and complex (often considered to be rules-based standards), and others more general (often considered to be principles-based standards). Accounting scandals and the economic crisis of 2008–2009 increased awareness of the need for high quality, more uniform global financial reporting standards and provided the impetus for stronger coordination among the major standard-setting bodies. Such coordination is also a natural outgrowth of the increased globalization of capital markets.

Developing financial reporting standards is complicated because the underlying economic reality is complicated. The financial transactions and financial position that companies aim to represent in their financial reports are also complex. Furthermore, uncertainty about various aspects of transactions often results in the need for accruals and estimates, both of which necessitate judgment. Judgment varies from one preparer to the next. Accordingly, standards are needed to achieve some amount of consistency in these judgments. Even with such standards, there usually will be no single correct answer to the question of how to reflect economic reality in financial reports. Nevertheless, financial reporting standards try to limit the range of acceptable answers in order to increase consistency in financial reports.

EXAMPLE 1

Estimates in Financial Reporting

To facilitate comparisons across companies (cross sectional analysis) and over time for a single company (time series analysis), it is important that accounting methods are comparable and consistently applied. However, accounting standards must be flexible enough to recognize that differences exist in the underlying economics between businesses.

Suppose two companies buy the same model of machinery to be used in their respective businesses. The machine is expected to last for several years. Financial reporting standards typically require that both companies account for this

⁴ The *Framework (1989)* stated that, “The objective of financial statements is to provide information about the financial position, performance, and changes in financial position of an entity; this information should be useful to a wide range of users for the purpose of making economic decisions.”

equipment by initially recording the cost of the machinery as an asset. Without such a standard, the companies could report the purchase of the equipment differently. For example, one company might record the purchase as an asset and the other might record the purchase as an expense. An accounting standard ensures that both companies should record the transaction in a similar manner.

Accounting standards typically require the cost of the machine to be apportioned over the estimated useful life of an asset as an expense called depreciation. Because the two companies may be operating the machinery differently, financial reporting standards must retain some flexibility. One company might operate the machinery only a few days per week, whereas the other company operates the equipment continuously throughout the week. Given the difference in usage, it would not be appropriate to require the two companies to report an identical amount of depreciation expense each period. Financial reporting standards must allow for some discretion such that management can match their financial reporting choices to the underlying economics of their business while ensuring that similar transactions are recorded in a similar manner between companies.

Financial statements of two companies with identical transactions in the fiscal year, prepared in accordance with the same set of financial reporting standards, are *most likely* to be:

- A identical.
- B consistent.
- C comparable.

Solution:

C is correct. The companies' financial statements should be comparable (possible to compare) because they should reflect the underlying economics of the transactions for each company. The underlying economics may vary between companies, so the financial statements are not likely to be identical. Choices made by each company with respect to accounting methods should be consistent but the choice across companies is not necessarily consistent. Information about accounting choices will enhance a user's ability to compare the companies' financial statements.

The IASB and the FASB have developed similar financial reporting frameworks which specify the overall objective and qualities of information to be provided. Financial reports are intended to provide information to many users, including investors, creditors, employees, customers, and others. As a result of this multipurpose nature, financial reports are *not* designed solely with asset valuation in mind. However, financial reports provide important inputs into the process of valuing a company or the securities a company issues. Understanding the financial reporting framework—including how and when judgments and estimates can affect the numbers reported—enables an analyst to evaluate the information reported and to use the information appropriately when assessing a company's financial performance. Clearly, such an understanding is also important in assessing the financial impact of business decisions by, and in making comparisons across, entities.

STANDARD-SETTING BODIES AND REGULATORY AUTHORITIES

3

A distinction must be made between standard-setting bodies and regulatory authorities. Standard-setting bodies, such as the IASB and FASB, are typically private sector, self-regulated organizations with board members who are experienced accountants, auditors, users of financial statements, and academics. The requirement to prepare financial reports in accordance with specified accounting standards is the responsibility of regulatory authorities. Regulatory authorities, such as the Accounting and Corporate Regulatory Authority in Singapore, the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) in the United States, and the Securities and Exchange Commission in Brazil have the legal authority to enforce financial reporting requirements and exert other controls over entities that participate in the capital markets within their jurisdiction.

In other words, *generally*, standard-setting bodies set the standards and regulatory authorities recognise and enforce the standards. Without the recognition of the standards by the regulatory authorities, the private sector standard-setting bodies would have no authority. Note, however, that regulators often retain the legal authority to establish financial reporting standards in their jurisdiction and can overrule the private sector standard-setting bodies.

EXAMPLE 2

Industry-Specific Regulation

In certain cases, multiple regulatory bodies affect a company's financial reporting requirements. For example, in almost all jurisdictions around the world, banking-specific regulatory bodies establish requirements related to risk-based capital measurement, minimum capital adequacy, provisions for doubtful loans, and minimum monetary reserves. An awareness of such regulations provides an analyst with the context to understand a bank's business, including the objectives and scope of allowed activities. Insurance is another industry where specific regulations typically are in place. An analyst should be aware of such regulations to understand constraints on an insurance company.

The following are examples of country-specific bank regulators. In Canada, the Office of the Superintendent of Financial Institutions regulates and supervises all banks in Canada as well as some other federally incorporated or registered financial institutions or intermediaries. In Germany, the German Federal Financial Supervisory Authority exercises supervision over financial institutions in accordance with the Banking Act. In Japan, the Financial Services Agency has regulatory authority over financial institutions. In the United States, the Office of the Comptroller of the Currency charters and regulates all national banks. In some countries, a single entity serves both as the central bank and as the regulatory body for the country's financial institutions.

In addition, the Basel Accords establish and promote internationally consistent capital requirements and risk management practices for larger international banks. The Basel Committee on Banking Supervision, among other functions, has evolved into a standard setter for bank supervision. The various regulations that affect banks present a challenge for bank analysts.

Which of the following statements is *most* accurate?

- A** As a general rule, it is sufficient for an analyst covering an industry to be familiar with financial reporting standards and regulations in his/her country of residence.

- B** An analyst should familiarize him/herself with the regulations and reporting standards that affect the company and/or industry that he/she is analyzing.
- C** An analyst should be aware that financial reporting standards vary among countries and may be industry specific, but standards are so similar that the analyst does not have to be concerned about it.

Solution:

B is correct. An analyst should familiarize him/herself with the regulations and reporting standards that affect the company and/or industry being analyzed. This can be quite challenging but, given the potential effects, necessary.

This section provides a brief overview of the International Accounting Standards Board and the US Financial Accounting Standards Board. The overview is followed by descriptions of the International Organization of Securities Commissions, the US Securities and Exchange Commission, and capital markets regulation in the European Union. The topics covered in these overviews were chosen to serve as examples of standard-setting boards, securities commissions, and capital market regulation. After reading these descriptions, the reader should be able to describe the functioning and roles of standard-setting bodies and regulatory authorities in more detail than is given in the introduction to this section.

3.1 Accounting Standards Boards

Accounting standards boards exist in virtually every national market. These boards are typically independent, private, not-for-profit organizations. Most users of financial statements know of the International Accounting Standards Board that issues international financial reporting standards and the US Financial Accounting Standards Board that is the source of US generally accepted accounting principles. Most countries have an accounting standard-setting body. There are certain attributes that are typically common to these standard setters. After discussing the IASB and the FASB, some of the common and desirable attributes of accounting standards boards will be identified.

3.1.1 *International Accounting Standards Board*

The IASB is the independent standard-setting body of the IFRS Foundation,⁵ an independent, not-for-profit private sector organization. The Trustees of the IFRS Foundation reflect a diversity of geographical and professional backgrounds. The Trustees appoint the members of the IASB and related entities, ensure the financing of the Foundation, establish the budget, and monitor the IASB's strategy and effectiveness. The Trustees of the Foundation are accountable to a monitoring board composed of public authorities that include representatives from the European Commission, IOSCO, the Japan Financial Services Agency, and the US SEC. The chairman of the Basel Committee on Banking Supervision serves as an observer on the Monitoring Board.

The Trustees of the IFRS Foundation make a commitment to act in the public interest. The principle objectives of the IFRS Foundation are to develop and promote the use and adoption of a single set of high quality financial standards; to ensure the standards result in transparent, comparable, and decision-useful information while taking into account the needs of a range of sizes and types of entities in diverse economic settings; and to promote the convergence of national accounting standards

⁵ The IFRS Foundation was previously named the International Accounting Standards Committee Foundation (IASC Foundation).

and IFRS. The Trustees are responsible for ensuring that the IASB is and is perceived as independent. Each member of the IASB is expected to exercise independence of judgment in setting standards.

The members of the IASB are appointed by the Trustees on the basis of professional competence and practical experience. As is true for the Trustees, the members reflect a diversity of geographical and professional backgrounds. The members deliberate, develop, and issue international financial reporting standards.⁶ Two related entities, with members appointed by the Trustees, are the IFRS Interpretations Committee and the IFRS Advisory Council.⁷ The Interpretations Committee's members are responsible for reviewing accounting issues that arise in the application of IFRS and are not specifically addressed by IFRS, and for issuing appropriate, authoritative, IASB-approved interpretations. Note that the authoritative interpretations must be approved by the IASB. The IFRS Advisory Council's members represent a wide range of organizations and individuals that are affected by and interested in international financial reporting. The Council provides advice to the IASB on, among other items, agenda decisions and priorities.

The IASB has a basic process that it goes through when deliberating, developing, and issuing international financial reporting standards. A simplified version of the typical process is as follows. An issue is identified as a priority for consideration and placed on the IASB's agenda in consultation with the Advisory Council. After considering an issue, which may include soliciting advice from others including national standard-setters, the IASB may publish an exposure draft for public comment. In addition to soliciting public comment, the IASB may hold public hearings to discuss proposed standards. After reviewing the input of others, the IASB may issue a new or revised financial reporting standard. These standards are authoritative to the extent that they are recognised and adopted by regulatory authorities.

3.1.2 *Financial Accounting Standards Board*

The FASB and its predecessor organizations have been issuing financial reporting standards in the United States since the 1930s. The FASB operates within a structure similar to that of the IASB. The Financial Accounting Foundation oversees, administers, and finances the organization. The Foundation ensures the independence of the standard-setting process and appoints members to the FASB and related entities including the Financial Accounting Standards Advisory Council.

The FASB issues new and revised standards to improve standards of financial reporting so that decision-useful information is provided to users of financial reports. This is done through a thorough and independent process that seeks input from stakeholders and is overseen by the Financial Accounting Foundation. The steps in the process are similar to those described for the IASB. The outputs of the standard-setting process are contained in the FASB *Accounting Standards Codification*[™] (Codification).⁸ Effective for periods ending after 15 September 2009, the Codification is the source of authoritative US generally accepted accounting principles to be applied to non-governmental entities. The Codification is organized by topic. Among the specific

⁶ Although the name of the IASB incorporates "Accounting Standards" and early standards were titled International Accounting Standards (IAS), the term "International Financial Reporting Standards" (IFRS) is being used for new standards. The use of the words "financial reporting" recognizes the importance of disclosures outside of the core financial statements, such as management discussion of the business, risks, and future plans.

⁷ The IFRS Interpretations Committee and the IFRS Advisory Council were previously named the International Financial Reporting Interpretations Committee and the Standards Advisory Council.

⁸ The Codification combines literature issued by various standard setters, including the FASB, the Emerging Issues Task Force (EITF), the Derivative Implementation Group (DIG), and the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants (AICPA).

motivations for the Codification, the FASB mentions that it will facilitate researching accounting issues, improve the usability of the literature, provide accurate updated information on an ongoing basis, and help with convergence efforts.

US GAAP, as established by the FASB, is officially recognized as authoritative by the SEC (Financial Reporting Release No. 1, Section 101, and reaffirmed in the April 2003 Policy Statement). However, the SEC retains the authority to establish standards. Although it has rarely overruled the FASB, the SEC does issue authoritative financial reporting guidance including Staff Accounting Bulletins. These bulletins reflect the SEC's views regarding accounting-related disclosure practices and can be found on the SEC website. Certain portions—but not all portions—of the SEC regulations, releases, interpretations, and guidance are included for reference in the FASB Codification.

3.1.3 *Desirable Attributes of Accounting Standards Boards*

The responsibilities of all parties involved in the standards-setting process—including trustees of a foundation or others that oversee, administer, and finance the organization and members of the standard setting board—should be clearly defined. All parties involved in the standards-setting process should observe high professional standards, including standards of ethics and confidentiality. The organization should have adequate authority, resources, and competencies to fulfill its responsibilities. The processes that guide the organization and the formation of standards should be clear and consistent. The accounting standards board should be guided by a well-articulated framework with a clearly stated objective. The accounting standards board should operate independently, seeking and considering input from stakeholders but making decisions that are consistent with the stated objective of the framework. The decision-setting process should not be compromised by pressure from external forces and should not be influenced by self- or special interests. The decisions and resulting standards should be in the public interest, and culminate in a set of high quality standards that will be recognised and adopted by regulatory authorities.

3.2 Regulatory Authorities

The requirement to prepare financial reports in accordance with specified accounting standards is the responsibility of regulatory authorities. Regulatory authorities are governmental entities that have the legal authority to enforce financial reporting requirements and exert other controls over entities that participate in the capital markets within their jurisdiction. Regulatory authorities may require that financial reports be prepared in accordance with one specific set of accounting standards or may specify acceptable accounting standards. For example in Switzerland, Swiss-based companies listed on the main board of the Swiss Exchange have to prepare their financial statements in accordance with either IFRS or US GAAP if they are multinational.⁹ Other registrants in Switzerland could use IFRS, US GAAP, or Swiss GAAP.

The International Organization of Securities Commissions (IOSCO) is not a regulatory authority but its members regulate a significant portion of the world's financial capital markets. This organization has established objectives and principles to guide securities and capital market regulation. The US SEC is discussed as an example of a regulatory authority. Aspects of capital market regulation in Europe are discussed to illustrate a co-operative approach to regulation.

⁹ <https://www.iasplus.com/en/jurisdictions/europe/switzerland>.

3.2.1 *International Organization of Securities Commissions*

IOSCO was formed in 1983 as the successor organization to an inter-American regional association (created in 1974). As of 23 September 2010, IOSCO had 114 ordinary members, 11 associate members, and 74 affiliate members. Ordinary members are the securities commission or similar governmental regulatory authority with primary responsibility for securities regulation in the country.¹⁰ The members regulate more than 90 percent of the world's financial capital markets.

The IOSCO's comprehensive set of *Objectives and Principles of Securities Regulation* is updated as required and is recognized as an international benchmark for all markets. The principles of securities regulation are based upon three core objectives:¹¹

- protecting investors;
- ensuring that markets are fair, efficient, and transparent; and
- reducing systemic risk.

IOSCO's principles are grouped into nine categories, including principles for regulators, for enforcement, for auditing, and for issuers, among others. Within the category "Principles for Issuers," two principles relate directly to financial reporting:

- There should be full, accurate, and timely disclosure of financial results, risk, and other information which is material to investors' decisions.
- Accounting standards used by issuers to prepare financial statements should be of a high and internationally acceptable quality.

Historically, regulation and related financial reporting standards were developed within individual countries and were often based on the cultural, economic, and political norms of each country. As financial markets have become more global, it has become desirable to establish comparable financial reporting standards internationally. Ultimately, laws and regulations are established by individual jurisdictions, so this also requires cooperation among regulators. Another IOSCO principle deals with the use of self-regulatory organizations (accounting standards bodies are examples of self-regulating organizations in this context). Principle 9 states:

Where the regulatory system makes use of Self-Regulatory Organizations (SROs) that exercise some direct oversight responsibility for their respective areas of competence, such SROs should be subject to the oversight of the Regulator and should observe standards of fairness and confidentiality when exercising powers and delegated responsibilities.¹²

To ensure consistent application of international financial standards (such as the Basel Committee on Banking Supervision's standards and IFRS), it is important to have uniform regulation and enforcement across national boundaries. IOSCO assists in attaining this goal of uniform regulation as well as cross-border co-operation in combating violations of securities and derivatives laws.

3.2.2 *The Securities and Exchange Commission (US)*

The US SEC has primary responsibility for securities and capital markets regulation in the United States and is an ordinary member of IOSCO. Any company issuing securities within the United States, or otherwise involved in US capital markets, is

¹⁰ The names of the primary securities regulator vary from country to country. For example: China Securities Regulatory Commission, Egyptian Financial Supervisory Authority, Securities and Exchange Board of India, Kingdom of Saudi Arabia Capital Market Authority, and Banco Central del Uruguay.

¹¹ *Objectives and Principles of Securities Regulation*, IOSCO, June 2010.

¹² *Objectives and Principles of Securities Regulation*, IOSCO, June 2010.

subject to the rules and regulations of the SEC. The SEC, one of the oldest and most developed regulatory authorities, originated as a result of reform efforts made after the great stock market crash of 1929, sometimes referred to as simply the “Great Crash.”

A number of laws affect reporting companies, broker/dealers, and other market participants. From a financial reporting and analysis perspective, the most significant pieces of legislation are the Securities Acts of 1933 and 1934 and the Sarbanes–Oxley Act of 2002.

- **Securities Act of 1933** (The 1933 Act): This act specifies the financial and other significant information that investors must receive when securities are sold, prohibits misrepresentations, and requires initial registration of all public issuances of securities.
- **Securities Exchange Act of 1934** (The 1934 Act): This act created the SEC, gave the SEC authority over all aspects of the securities industry, and empowered the SEC to require periodic reporting by companies with publicly traded securities.
- **Sarbanes–Oxley Act of 2002**: The Sarbanes–Oxley Act of 2002 created the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (PCAOB) to oversee auditors. The SEC is responsible for carrying out the requirements of the act and overseeing the PCAOB. The act addresses auditor independence; for example, it prohibits auditors from providing certain non-audit services to the companies they audit. The act strengthens corporate responsibility for financial reports; for example, it requires the chief executive officer and the chief financial officer to certify that the company’s financial reports fairly present the company’s condition. Furthermore, Section 404 of the Sarbanes–Oxley Act requires management to report on the effectiveness of the company’s internal control over financial reporting and to obtain a report from its external auditor attesting to management’s assertion about the effectiveness of the company’s internal control.

Companies comply with these acts principally through the completion and submission (i.e., filing) of standardized forms issued by the SEC. There are more than 50 different types of SEC forms that are used to satisfy reporting requirements; the discussion herein will be limited to those forms most relevant for financial analysts.

In 1993, the SEC began to mandate electronic filings of the required forms through its Electronic Data Gathering, Analysis, and Retrieval (EDGAR) system. As of 2005, most SEC filings are required to be made electronically. EDGAR has made corporate and financial information more readily available to investors and the financial community. Most of the SEC filings that an analyst would be interested in can be retrieved from the internet from one of many websites, including the SEC’s own website. Some filings are required on the initial offering of securities, whereas others are required on a periodic basis thereafter. The following are some of the more common information sources used by analysts.

- **Securities Offerings Registration Statement**: The 1933 Act requires companies offering securities to file a registration statement. New issuers as well as previously registered companies that are issuing new securities are required to file these statements. Required information and the precise form vary depending upon the size and nature of the offering. Typically, required information includes: 1) disclosures about the securities being offered for sale, 2) the relationship of these new securities to the issuer’s other capital securities, 3) the information typically provided in the annual filings, 4) recent audited financial statements, and 5) risk factors involved in the business.

- **Forms 10-K, 20-F, and 40-F:** These are forms that companies are required to file *annually*. Form 10-K is for US registrants, Form 40-F is for certain Canadian registrants, and Form 20-F is for all other non-US registrants. These forms require a comprehensive overview, including information concerning a company's business, financial disclosures, legal proceedings, and information related to management. The financial disclosures include a historical summary of financial data (usually 10 years), management's discussion and analysis (MD&A) of the company's financial condition and results of operations, and audited financial statements.¹³
- **Annual Report:** In addition to the SEC's annual filings (e.g., Form 10-K), most companies prepare an annual report to shareholders. This is not a requirement of the SEC. The annual report is usually viewed as one of the most significant opportunities for a company to present itself to shareholders and other external parties; accordingly, it is often a highly polished marketing document with photographs, an opening letter from the chief executive officer, financial data, market segment information, research and development activities, and future corporate goals. In contrast, the Form 10-K is a more legal type of document with minimal marketing emphasis. Although the perspectives vary, there is considerable overlap between a company's annual report and its Form 10-K. Some companies elect to prepare just the Form 10-K or a document that integrates both the 10-K and annual report.
- **Proxy Statement/Form DEF-14A:** The SEC requires that shareholders of a company receive a proxy statement prior to a shareholder meeting. A proxy is an authorization from the shareholder giving another party the right to cast its vote. Shareholder meetings are held at least once a year, but any special meetings also require a proxy statement. Proxies, especially annual meeting proxies, contain information that is often useful to financial analysts. Such information typically includes proposals that require a shareholder vote, details of security ownership by management and principal owners, biographical information on directors, and disclosure of executive compensation. Proxy statement information is filed with the SEC as Form DEF-14A.
- **Forms 10-Q and 6-K:** These are forms that companies are required to submit for interim periods (quarterly for US companies on Form 10-Q, semiannually for many non-US companies on Form 6-K). The filing requires certain financial information, including unaudited financial statements and a MD&A for the interim period covered by the report. Additionally, if certain types of non-recurring events—such as the adoption of a significant accounting policy, commencement of significant litigation, or a material limitation on the rights of any holders of any class of registered securities—take place during the period covered by the report, these events must be included in the Form 10-Q report. Companies may provide the 10-Q report to shareholders or may prepare a separate, abbreviated, quarterly report to shareholders.

¹³ Effective as of 2008, the SEC permits foreign private issuers to file financial statements prepared in accordance with IFRS (as issued by the IASB) with no reconciliation to US GAAP. Foreign private issuers using accounting standards other than US GAAP or IFRS must still provide a reconciliation to US GAAP.

EXAMPLE 3**Initial Registration Statement**

In 2004, Google filed a Form S-1 registration statement with the US SEC to register its initial public offering of securities (Class A Common Stock). In addition to a large amount of financial and business information, the registration statement provided a 20-page discussion of risks related to Google's business and industry. This type of qualitative information is helpful, if not essential, in making an assessment of a company's credit or investment risk.

Which of the following is *least likely* to have been included in Google's registration statement?

- A Audited financial statements.
- B Assessment of risk factors involved in the business.
- C Projected cash flows and earnings for the business.

Solution:

C is correct. Companies provide information useful in developing these projections but do not typically include these in the registration statement. Information provided includes audited financial statements, an assessment of risk factors involved in the business, names of the underwriters, estimated proceeds from the offering, and use of proceeds.

A company or its officers make other SEC filings—either periodically, or, if significant events or transactions have occurred, in between the periodic reports noted above. By their nature, these forms sometimes contain the most interesting and timely information and may have significant valuation implications.

- **Form 8-K:** In addition to filing annual and interim reports, SEC registrants must report material corporate events on a more current basis. Form 8-K (6-K for non-US registrants) is the “current report” companies must file with the SEC to announce such major events as acquisitions or disposals of corporate assets, changes in securities and trading markets, matters related to accountants and financial statements, corporate governance and management changes, and Regulation FD disclosures.¹⁴
- **Form 144:** This form must be filed with the SEC as notice of the proposed sale of restricted securities or securities held by an affiliate of the issuer in reliance on Rule 144. Rule 144 permits limited sales of restricted securities without registration.
- **Forms 3, 4, and 5:** These forms are required to report beneficial ownership of securities. These filings are required for any director or officer of a registered company as well as beneficial owners of greater than 10 percent of a class of registered equity securities. Form 3 is the initial statement, Form 4 reports

¹⁴ Regulation FD provides that when an issuer discloses material non-public information to certain individuals or entities—generally, securities market professionals such as stock analysts or holders of the issuer's securities who may trade on the basis of the information—the issuer must make public disclosure of that information. In this way, the rule aims to promote full and fair disclosure.

changes, and Form 5 is the annual report. These forms, along with Form 144, can be used to examine purchases and sales of securities by officers, directors, and other affiliates of the company.

- **Form 11-K:** This is the annual report of employee stock purchase, savings, and similar plans. It might be of interest to analysts for companies with significant employee benefit plans because it contains more information than that disclosed in the company's financial statements.

In jurisdictions other than the United States, similar legislation exists for the purpose of regulating securities and capital markets. Regulatory authorities are responsible for enforcing regulation, and securities regulation is intended to be consistent with the IOSCO objectives described in the previous section. Within each jurisdiction, regulators will either establish or, more typically, recognize and adopt a specified set or sets of accounting standards. The regulators will also establish reporting and filing requirements. IOSCO members have agreed to cooperate in the development, implementation, and enforcement of internationally recognised and consistent standards of regulation.

3.2.3 Capital Markets Regulation in Europe

Each individual member state of the European Union (EU) regulates capital markets in its jurisdiction. There are, however, certain regulations that have been adopted at the EU level. Importantly, in 2002 the EU agreed that from 1 January 2005, consolidated accounts of EU listed companies would use International Financial Reporting Standards. The endorsement process by which newly issued IFRS are adopted by the EU reflects the balance between the individual member state's autonomy and the need for cooperation and convergence. When the IASB issues a new standard, the European Financial Reporting Advisory Group advises the European Commission on the standard, and the Standards Advice Review Group provides the Commission an opinion about that advice. Based on the input from these two entities, the Commission prepares a draft endorsement regulation. The Accounting Regulatory Committee votes on the proposal; and if the vote is favorable, the proposal proceeds to the European Parliament and the Council of the European Union for approval.¹⁵

Two committees related to securities regulation, established in 2001 by the European Commission, are the European Securities Committee (ESC) and the Committee of European Securities Regulators (CESR). The ESC consists of high-level representatives of member states and advises the European Commission on securities policy issues. The CESR, an independent advisory body composed of representatives of regulatory authorities of the member states, assists the commission, particularly with technical issues. As noted earlier, regulation still rests with the individual member states and, therefore, requirements for registering shares and filing periodic financial reports vary from country to country.

On 1 January 2011, CESR was replaced by the European Securities and Market Authority (ESMA) as part of a reform of the EU financial supervisory framework. The EU Parliament created ESMA as an EU cross-border supervisor because the CESR's powers were deemed insufficient to co-ordinate supervision of the EU market. ESMA is one of three European supervisory authorities; the two others supervise the banking and insurance industries.

¹⁵ Source: European Commission. http://ec.europa.eu/internal_market/accounting/legal_framework/ias_regulation_en.htm.

4

CONVERGENCE OF GLOBAL FINANCIAL REPORTING STANDARDS

Activities in the early part of the 21st century have moved the goal of one set of universally accepted financial reporting standards out of the theoretical sphere and closer to reality. IFRS have been or are in the process of being adopted in many countries. Other countries maintain their own set of standards but are working with the IASB to converge their standards and IFRS.

In some ways, the movement toward one global set of financial reporting standards has made the challenges related to full convergence or adoption of a single set of global standards more apparent. Standard-setting bodies and regulators can have differing views or use a different framework for developing standards. This can be the result of differences in institutional, regulatory, business, and cultural environments. In addition, there may be resistance to change or advocacy for change from certain constituents; accounting boards may be influenced by strong industry lobbying groups and others that will be subject to these reporting standards. For example, the FASB faced strong opposition when it first attempted to adopt standards requiring companies to expense employee stock compensation plans.¹⁶ The IASB has experienced similar political pressures. The issue of political pressure is compounded when international standards are involved, simply because there are many more interested parties and many more divergent views and objectives. In the financial crisis of 2008 and 2009, both the FASB and the IASB faced political pressure to amend the standards related to financial instrument accounting. Political pressure and its influence create tension as the independence of accounting standards boards are questioned and jeopardized.

The integrity of the financial reporting framework depends on the standard setter's ability to invite and balance various points of view and yet to remain independent of external pressures. For analysts, it is important to be aware of the pace of change in accounting standards and factors potentially influencing those changes.

An additional issue related to convergence involves the application and enforcement of accounting standards. Unless the standards are applied consistently and enforcement is uniform, a single set of standards may only appear to exist but desirable attributes such as comparability may be lacking.

In 2002, the IASB and FASB each acknowledged their commitment to the development of high quality, compatible accounting standards that could be used for both domestic and cross-border financial reporting (in an agreement referred to as "the Norwalk Agreement"). Both the IASB and FASB pledged to use their best efforts to 1) make their existing financial reporting standards fully compatible as soon as practicable, and 2) to coordinate their future work programs to ensure that, once achieved, compatibility is maintained. The Norwalk Agreement was certainly an important milestone, and both bodies began working toward convergence. In 2004, the IASB and FASB agreed that, in principle, any significant accounting standard would be developed cooperatively. In 2006, the IASB and the FASB issued another memorandum of understanding (titled "A Roadmap for Convergence between IFRSs and US GAAP") in which the two Boards identified major projects. They agreed to align their conceptual frameworks; in the short term, to remove selected differences; and in the medium term, to issue joint standards where significant improvements were identified as being required. The joint projects include (but are not limited to): the Conceptual Framework, Fair Value Measurement, Consolidations, Financial Instruments, Financial Statement Presentation, Insurance Contracts, Leases, Post

¹⁶ The second attempt was successful and US GAAP requires the expensing of stock options. FASB ASC Topic 718 [Compensation—Stock Compensation].

Employment Benefits, and Revenue Recognition. In 2009, the IASB and FASB again reaffirmed their commitment to achieving convergence and affirmed June 2011 as the target completion date for the major projects that had been identified. In mid-2010, however, the Boards acknowledged that all the new standard-setting activity required to achieve that targeted completion would not give stakeholders enough time to provide high quality input in the process. Therefore, the Boards pushed back the target date for some projects to later in 2011.

In April 2012, the IASB and the FASB published a joint report in which they described the progress made on financial instruments. This was followed in February 2013, when the IASB and FASB published a high-level update on the status and timetable of the remaining convergence projects. The convergence project was completed when the IASB and FASB issued their standards on lease accounting in 2016. As of year-end 2017, no new projects are expected for the IASB/FASB convergence initiative.

When convergence between IFRS and US GAAP was occurring, the SEC began certain steps regarding the possible adoption of IFRS in the United States. Effective in 2008, the SEC adopted rules to eliminate the reconciliation requirement for foreign private issuers' financial statements prepared in accordance with IFRS as issued by the IASB. Previously, any non-US issuer using accounting standards other than US GAAP was required to provide a reconciliation to US GAAP. In November 2008, the SEC issued a proposed rule concerning a "Roadmap" for the use of financial statements prepared in accordance with IFRS by US issuers; however the rule did not become final. In February 2010, the SEC issued a "Statement in Support of Convergence and Global Accounting Standards" in which it reiterated its commitment to global accounting standards and directed its staff to execute a work plan to enable the "Commission in 2011 to make a determination regarding incorporating IFRS into the financial reporting system for US issuers."¹⁷ By the end of 2014, convergence efforts by the IASB and the FASB largely ceased.

Convergence between IFRS and other local GAAP also continued through 2014. For example, convergence between IFRS and Japanese GAAP is underway. In 2008, the IASB and the Accounting Standards Board of Japan published a memorandum of understanding (the "Tokyo Agreement") outlining work to achieve convergence by June 2011. In 2009, the Japanese Business Accounting Council, a key advisory body to the Commissioner of the Japanese Financial Services Agency, approved a roadmap for the adoption of IFRS in Japan.¹⁸ Since 2010, eligible listed companies in Japan have been permitted to use IFRS in place of Japanese GAAP in their consolidated financial statements as designated by the FSA.

Exhibit 1 provides a summary of the adoption status of IFRS in selected worldwide locations. As can be seen, adoption ranges from total adoption of IFRS to requiring local GAAP. Between these two extremes, countries demonstrate different levels of commitment to IFRS including adoption of a local version of IFRS, requirement for certain entities to use IFRS, permission to use IFRS, and use of local GAAP that is converging with IFRS.

¹⁷ Source: www.sec.gov/rules/other/2010/33-9109.pdf.

¹⁸ Source: www.iasb.org/Use+around+the+world/Global+convergence/IFRS+global+convergence.htm.

Exhibit 1 International Adoption Status of IFRS in Selected Locations as of June 2010

Europe	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ The EU requires companies listed in EU countries to adopt IFRS beginning with their 2005 financial statements. ■ As mentioned earlier, Switzerland requires that Swiss multinational companies listed on the main board of the Swiss Exchange must choose either IFRS or US GAAP. Non-multinational listed companies are allowed to use either IFRS, US GAAP, or Swiss GAAP. ■ Some countries (for example, Georgia, Macedonia, Moldova, Serbia) use IFRS as adopted locally. Georgia, for example, uses the IFRS 2007 edition. ■ Some countries (for example, Czech Republic, Finland, Germany, Ireland, Lithuania, Netherlands, Norway, Poland) permit some foreign companies listing on local exchanges to use other specified and/or well-recognised standards.
North America	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ The US SEC accepts IFRS for non-US registrants and no longer requires a reconciliation to US GAAP for filers using IFRS. ■ As mentioned earlier, the US FASB had been engaged in numerous projects with the IASB to achieve convergence of US GAAP and IFRS. No new projects are currently on the agenda, however. ■ The US SEC announced its intention to decide by 2011 whether to incorporate IFRS into financial reporting by US issuers. However, as of 2017, the SEC has not made a determination about whether to do so. ■ In Canada, listed companies are required to use IFRS beginning 1 January 2011. The year ending 31 December 2010 is the last year of reporting under current Canadian GAAP. ■ In Mexico, IFRS adoption is mandatory for listed companies in 2012, with early adoption permitted as early as 2008. ■ Most of the island nations off the southeast coast of North America require or permit the use of IFRS by listed companies.
Central and South America	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Central America, Costa Rica, Honduras, Guatemala, Nicaragua, and Panama require the use of IFRS. El Salvador permits the use of IFRS. ■ Brazil requires that listed companies and financial institutions use IFRS, starting with periods ending in 2010. Brazilian GAAP continues to converge to IFRS. Ecuador requires listed companies, other than financial institutions, to use IFRS beginning in 2010, with all companies required to use IFRS beginning in 2012. ■ Chile requires major listed companies to use IFRS for 2009 financial statements. Other companies are permitted to use IFRS. ■ Venezuela permits listed companies to use IFRS. The expectation is that listed companies will be required to use IFRS by 2011. ■ Uruguay required all companies to use IFRS in existence at 31 July 2007. In 2011, non-financial services companies were required to adopt IFRS as translated into Spanish from 2012, with financial services companies adopting IFRS starting in 2014. ■ Peru requires all publicly listed entities in the local stock exchange to prepare financial statements using IFRS from 2012. ■ In Argentina, all companies that publicly offer debt or equity securities must prepare their financial statements using IFRS from year end 31 December 2012. Companies are allowed to voluntarily use IFRS from January 2011. Financial services companies are not allowed to use IFRS. However, in February 2014, the Argentinian authorities announced a plan to converge Argentinian GAAP and IFRS for financial institutions. ■ Bolivia is moving towards convergence with IFRS, with listed companies allowed to voluntarily use IFRS. ■ In Colombia and Paraguay, the adoption of IFRS is in early stages of consideration, with IFRS voluntarily permitted for listed entities in Paraguay.

Exhibit 1 (Continued)

Asia and Middle East	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Listed companies in a number of countries—including India and Indonesia—report under local GAAP, and plans exist to either converge with or transition to IFRS. Thailand fully adopted IFRS for the SET 100 in 2013, and for all listed companies in 2015. ■ Companies in China report under Chinese accounting standards (CAS). CAS are largely converged with IFRS. ■ In Japan, some companies that meet certain criteria may use IFRS, otherwise companies report using Japanese GAAP. Japan has launched a joint project with the IASB to reduce differences between Japanese GAAP and IFRS. ■ In Malaysia, domestic listed companies report using local GAAP and foreign companies listed on Malaysian exchanges are permitted to use IFRS. In 2011, the Malaysian GAAP was updated, making it fully IFRS-compliant and equivalent to IFRS. Malaysian entities may thus be able to assert that their financial statements are in full compliance with IFRS. ■ Korea requires the use of IFRS beginning 2011. Early adoption was permitted from 2009. ■ Listed companies are required to report under IFRS in a number of other countries, including Kyrgyz Republic, Lebanon, and Turkey. ■ A number of countries, including Pakistan, Philippines, and Singapore, require use of IFRS as adopted locally. In Singapore, IFRS is permitted for use by companies that list on other exchanges that require IFRS or if permission is given by the Accounting and Corporate Regulatory Authority. ■ In a number of countries, IFRS is required for some types of entities and permitted for others. For example, Armenia requires IFRS for financial organizations and permits its use for others, Azerbaijan requires IFRS for banks and state owned public interest entities, Israel requires IFRS for domestic listed companies except for banking institutions, Kazakhstan requires IFRS for domestic listed companies, large business entities and public interest entities, Saudi Arabia requires IFRS for all banks regulated by the Saudi Arabian Monetary Agency (central bank), and Uzbekistan requires IFRS for all commercial banks and permits IFRS for others. Vietnam requires IFRS for state owned banks and permits IFRS for commercial banks; all other listed companies report under Vietnamese accounting standards. Some countries, including Afghanistan and Qatar, require the use of IFRS.
Oceania	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Australia requires Australian reporting entities to use IFRS as adopted locally. Foreign companies listing on local exchanges are permitted to use IFRS or their primary GAAP. The Australian regulator may require additional information. ■ New Zealand requires use of IFRS as adopted locally (NZ-IFRS).
Africa	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Many African countries, including Botswana, Ghana, Kenya, Malawi, Mauritius, Namibia, South Africa, Swaziland, Tanzania, Uganda, Zambia, and Zimbabwe, require IFRS for listed companies. ■ Morocco requires the use of IFRS for consolidated financial statements of bank and financial institutions and permits its use for others. ■ Mozambique requires the use of IFRS for financial and lending institutions and for certain large entities. Use of IFRS is permitted by other entities beginning in 2010. ■ Egypt requires the use of local GAAP which is partially converged with IFRS. ■ The Nigerian Federal Executive Council approved 1 January 2012 as the effective date for convergence of accounting standards in Nigeria with IFRS. ■ In some countries, financial statements are required to be prepared in accordance with the Organization for the Harmonization of Business Law in Africa accounting framework. These countries include Cameroon, Cote D'Ivoire, and Equatorial Guinea.

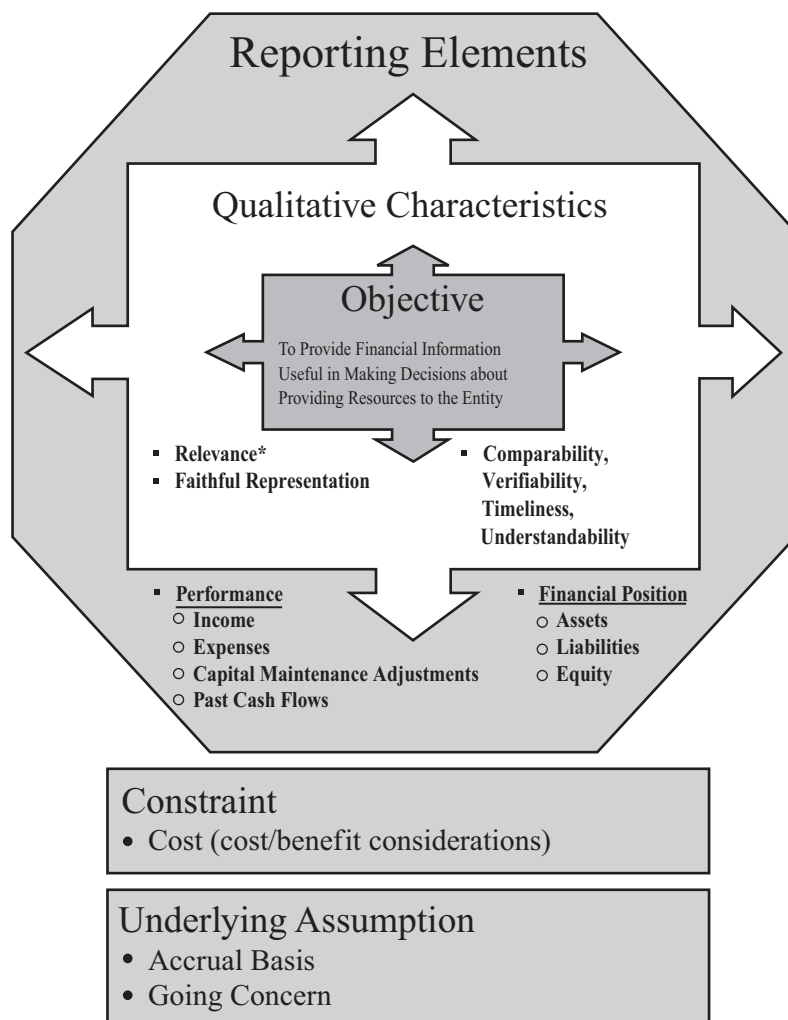
Sources: Based on data from www.iasb.org, www.sec.gov, www.iasplus.com, and www.pwc.com.

5

THE INTERNATIONAL FINANCIAL REPORTING STANDARDS FRAMEWORK

The *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting 2010* sets forth “the concepts that underlie the preparation and presentation of financial statements for external users.” The *Conceptual Framework (2010)* is designed to assist standard setters in developing and reviewing standards, to assist preparers of financial statements in applying standards and in dealing with issues not specifically covered by standards, to assist auditors in forming an opinion on financial statements, and to assist users in interpreting financial statement information. It is important to note that an understanding of the *Conceptual Framework (2010)* is expected to assist users of financial statements—including financial analysts—in interpreting the information contained therein.

The *Conceptual Framework (2010)* is diagrammed in Exhibit 2. The top part of the diagram shows the objective of general purpose financial reporting at the center, because other aspects of the framework are based upon this core. The qualitative characteristics of useful financial information surround the objective (fundamental characteristics are listed on the left and enhancing characteristics are listed on the right). The reporting elements are shown next with elements of financial statements shown at the bottom. Beneath the diagram of the framework are the basic constraint (cost) and assumption (going concern) that guide the development of standards and the preparation of financial reports.

Exhibit 2 IFRS Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Reports


*Material is an aspect of relevance.

In the following, we discuss the *Conceptual Framework (2010)* starting at the core: The objective of financial statements.

5.1 Objective of Financial Reports

At the core of the *Conceptual Framework (2010)* is the objective: The provision of financial information that is useful to current and potential providers of resources in making decisions. All other aspects of the framework flow from that central objective.

The providers of resources are considered to be the primary users of financial reports and include investors, lenders, and other creditors. The purpose of providing the financial information is to be useful in making decisions about providing resources. Other users may find the financial information useful for making economic decisions. The types of economic decisions differ by users, so the specific information needed differs as well. However, although these users may have unique information needs, some information needs are common across all users. Information is needed about the company's financial position: its resources and its financial obligations. Information

is needed about a company's financial performance; this information explains how and why the company's financial position changed in the past and can be useful in evaluating potential changes in the future. The third common information need reflected in the *Conceptual Framework (2010)* diagram is the need for information about a company's cash. How did the company obtain cash (by selling its products and services, borrowing, other)? How did the company use cash (by paying expenses, investing in new equipment, paying dividends, other)?

The *Conceptual Framework (2010)* indicates that to make decisions about providing resources to the company, users need information that is helpful in assessing future net cash inflows to the entity. Such information includes information about the economic resources of (assets) and claims against (liabilities and equity) the entity, and about how well the management and governing board have utilized the resources of the entity. It is specifically noted in the *Conceptual Framework (2010)* that users need to consider information from other sources as well in making their decisions. Further, it is noted that the financial reports do not show the value of an entity but are useful in estimating the value of an entity.

5.2 Qualitative Characteristics of Financial Reports

Flowing from the central objective of providing information that is *useful* to providers of resources, the *Conceptual Framework (2010)* elaborates on what constitutes usefulness. It identifies two fundamental qualitative characteristics that make financial information useful: relevance and faithful representation.¹⁹ The concept of materiality is discussed within the context of relevance.

- 1 **Relevance:** Information is relevant if it would potentially affect or make a difference in users' decisions. The information can have predictive value (useful in making forecasts), confirmatory value (useful to evaluate past decisions or forecasts), or both. In other words, relevant information helps users of financial information to evaluate past, present, and future events, or to confirm or correct their past evaluations in a decision-making context. **Materiality:** Information is considered to be material if omission or misstatement of the information could influence users' decisions. Materiality is a function of the nature and/or magnitude of the information.
- 2 **Faithful representation:** Information that faithfully represents an economic phenomenon that it purports to represent is ideally complete, neutral, and free from error. Complete means that all information necessary to understand the phenomenon is depicted. Neutral means that information is selected and presented without bias. In other words, the information is not presented in such a manner as to bias the users' decisions. Free from error means that there are no errors of commission or omission in the description of the economic phenomenon, and that an appropriate process to arrive at the reported information was selected and was adhered to without error. Faithful representation maximizes the qualities of complete, neutral, and free from error to the extent possible.

Relevance and faithful representation are the fundamental, most critical characteristics of useful financial information. In addition to these two fundamental characteristics, the *Conceptual Framework (2010)* identifies four characteristics that

¹⁹ *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting (2010)*, paragraphs QC 5–18.

enhance the usefulness of relevant and faithfully represented financial information. These enhancing qualitative characteristics are comparability, verifiability, timeliness, and understandability.²⁰

- 1 *Comparability*: Comparability allows users “to identify and understand similarities and differences of items.” Information presented in a consistent manner over time and across entities enables users to make comparisons more easily than information with variations in how similar economic phenomena are represented.
- 2 *Verifiability*: Verifiability means that different knowledgeable and independent observers would agree that the information presented faithfully represents the economic phenomena it purports to represent.
- 3 *Timeliness*: Timely information is available to decision makers prior to their making a decision.
- 4 *Understandability*: Clear and concise presentation of information enhances understandability. The *Conceptual Framework (2010)* specifies that the information is prepared for and should be understandable by users who have a reasonable knowledge of business and economic activities, and who are willing to study the information with diligence. However, some complex economic phenomena cannot be presented in an easily understandable form. Information that is useful should not be excluded simply because it is difficult to understand. It may be necessary for users to seek assistance to understand information about complex economic phenomena.

Financial information exhibiting these qualitative characteristics—fundamental and enhancing—should be useful for making economic decisions.

5.3 Constraints on Financial Reports

Although it would be ideal for financial statements to exhibit all of these qualitative characteristics and thus achieve maximum usefulness, it may be necessary to make tradeoffs across the enhancing characteristics. The application of the enhancing characteristics follows no set order of priority. Depending on the circumstances, each enhancing characteristic may take priority over the others.²¹ The aim is an appropriate balance among the enhancing characteristics.

A pervasive constraint on useful financial reporting is the cost of providing and using this information.²² Optimally, benefits derived from information should exceed the costs of providing and using it. Again, the aim is a balance between costs and benefits.

A limitation of financial reporting not specifically mentioned in the *Conceptual Framework (2010)* involves information not included. Financial statements, by necessity, omit information that is non-quantifiable. For example, the creativity, innovation, and competence of a company’s work force are not directly captured in the financial statements. Similarly, customer loyalty, a positive corporate culture, environmental responsibility, and many other aspects about a company may not be directly reflected in the financial statements. Of course, to the extent that these items result in superior financial performance, a company’s financial reports will reflect the results.

²⁰ Ibid., paragraphs QC19–34.

²¹ Ibid., paragraph QC34.

²² Ibid., paragraphs QC35–39.

EXAMPLE 4**Balancing Qualitative Characteristics of Useful Information**

A tradeoff between enhancing qualitative characteristics often occurs. For example, when a company records sales revenue, it is required to simultaneously estimate and record an expense for potential bad debts (uncollectible accounts). Including this estimated expense is considered to represent the economic event faithfully and to provide relevant information about the net profits for the accounting period. The information is timely and understandable; but because bad debts may not be known with certainty until a later period, inclusion of this estimated expense involves a sacrifice of verifiability. The bad debt expense is simply an estimate. It is apparent that it is not always possible to simultaneously fulfill all qualitative characteristics.

Companies are *most likely* to make tradeoffs between which of the following when preparing financial reports?

- A Relevance and materiality.
- B Timeliness and verifiability.
- C Relevance and faithful representation.

Solution:

B is correct. Providing timely information implies a shorter time frame between the economic event and the information preparation; however, fully verifying information may require a longer time frame. Relevance and faithful representation are fundamental qualitative characteristics that make financial information useful. Both characteristics are required; there is no tradeoff between these. Materiality is an aspect of relevance.

5.4 The Elements of Financial Statements

Financial statements portray the financial effects of transactions and other events by grouping them into broad classes (elements) according to their economic characteristics.²³ Three elements of financial statements are directly related to the measurement of financial position: assets, liabilities, and equity.²⁴

- **Assets:** Resources controlled by the enterprise as a result of past events and from which future economic benefits are expected to flow to the enterprise. Assets are what a company owns (e.g., inventory and equipment).
- **Liabilities:** Present obligations of an enterprise arising from past events, the settlement of which is expected to result in an outflow of resources embodying economic benefits. Liabilities are what a company owes (e.g., bank borrowings).
- **Equity** (for public companies, also known as “shareholders’ equity” or “stockholders’ equity”): Assets less liabilities. Equity is the residual interest in the assets after subtracting the liabilities.

²³ Chapter 4, the section of *The Conceptual Framework (2010)* which deals with the elements of the financial statements and their recognition and measurement, has not been amended from *The Framework (1989)*. This chapter and the proposed Chapter 2, “The Reporting Entity,” will be considered further sometime after 2010. The references given will be as they appear in *The Conceptual Framework (2010)*.

²⁴ *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting (2010)*, paragraphs 4.4–4.23.

The elements of financial statements directly related to the measurement of performance (profit and related measures) are income and expenses.²⁵

- **Income:** Increases in economic benefits in the form of inflows or enhancements of assets, or decreases of liabilities that result in an increase in equity (other than increases resulting from contributions by owners). Income includes both revenues and gains. Revenues represent income from the ordinary activities of the enterprise (e.g., the sale of products). Gains may result from ordinary activities or other activities (the sale of surplus equipment).
- **Expenses:** Decreases in economic benefits in the form of outflows or depletions of assets, or increases in liabilities that result in decreases in equity (other than decreases because of distributions to owners). Expenses include losses, as well as those items normally thought of as expenses, such as the cost of goods sold or wages.

5.4.1 *Underlying Assumptions in Financial Statements*

Two important assumptions underlie financial statements: accrual accounting and going concern. These assumptions determine how financial statement elements are recognized and measured.²⁶

The use of “accrual accounting” assumes that financial statements should reflect transactions in the period when they actually occur, not necessarily when cash movements occur. For example, accrual accounting specifies that a company reports revenues *when they are earned (when the performance obligations have been satisfied)*, regardless of whether the company received cash before delivering the product, after delivering the product, or at the time of delivery.

“Going concern” refers to the assumption that the company will continue in business for the foreseeable future. To illustrate, consider the value of a company’s inventory if it is assumed that the inventory can be sold over a normal period of time versus the value of that same inventory if it is assumed that the inventory must all be sold in a day (or a week). Companies with the intent to liquidate or materially curtail operations would require different information for a fair presentation.

In reporting the financial position of a company that is assumed to be a going concern, it may be appropriate to list assets at some measure of a current value based upon normal market conditions. However, if a company is expected to cease operations and be liquidated, it may be more appropriate to list such assets at an appropriate liquidation value, namely, a value that would be obtained in a forced sale.

5.4.2 *Recognition of Financial Statement Elements*

Recognition means that an item is included in the balance sheet or income statement. Recognition occurs if the item meets the definition of an element and satisfies the criteria for recognition. A financial statement element (assets, liabilities, equity, income, and expenses) should be recognized in the financial statements if:²⁷

- it is *probable* that any future economic benefit associated with the item will flow to or from the enterprise; and
- the item has a cost or value that can be *measured with reliability*.

²⁵ Ibid., paragraphs 4.24–4.36.

²⁶ Ibid., paragraphs OB17 and 4.1.

²⁷ Ibid., paragraphs 4.37–4.38.

5.4.3 Measurement of Financial Statement Elements

Measurement is the process of determining the monetary amounts at which the elements of the financial statements are to be recognized and carried in the balance sheet and income statement. The following alternative bases of measurement are used to different degrees and in varying combinations to measure assets and liabilities:²⁸

- **Historical cost:** Historical cost is simply the amount of cash or cash equivalents paid to purchase an asset, including any costs of acquisition and/or preparation. If the asset was not bought for cash, historical cost is the fair value of whatever was given in order to buy the asset. When referring to liabilities, the historical cost basis of measurement means the amount of proceeds received in exchange for the obligation.
- **Amortised cost:** Historical cost adjusted for amortisation, depreciation, or depletion and/or impairment.
- **Current cost:** In reference to assets, current cost is the amount of cash or cash equivalents that would have to be paid to buy the same or an equivalent asset today. In reference to liabilities, the current cost basis of measurement means the undiscounted amount of cash or cash equivalents that would be required to settle the obligation today.
- **Realizable (settlement) value:** In reference to assets, realizable value is the amount of cash or cash equivalents that could currently be obtained by selling the asset in an orderly disposal. For liabilities, the equivalent to realizable value is called “settlement value”—that is, settlement value is the undiscounted amount of cash or cash equivalents expected to be paid to satisfy the liabilities in the normal course of business.
- **Present value (PV):** For assets, present value is the present discounted value of the future net cash inflows that the asset is expected to generate in the normal course of business. For liabilities, present value is the present discounted value of the future net cash outflows that are expected to be required to settle the liabilities in the normal course of business.
- **Fair value:** is a measure of value mentioned but not specifically defined in the *Conceptual Framework (2010)*. Fair value is defined in IFRS and US GAAP as an exit price, the price that would be received to sell an asset or paid to transfer a liability in an orderly transaction between market participants at the measurement date. This may involve either market measures or present value measures depending on the availability of information.²⁹

5.5 General Requirements for Financial Statements

The *Conceptual Framework (2010)* provides a basis for establishing standards and the elements of financial statements, but it does not address the contents of the financial statements. Having discussed the *Conceptual Framework (2010)*, we now address the general requirements for financial statements.

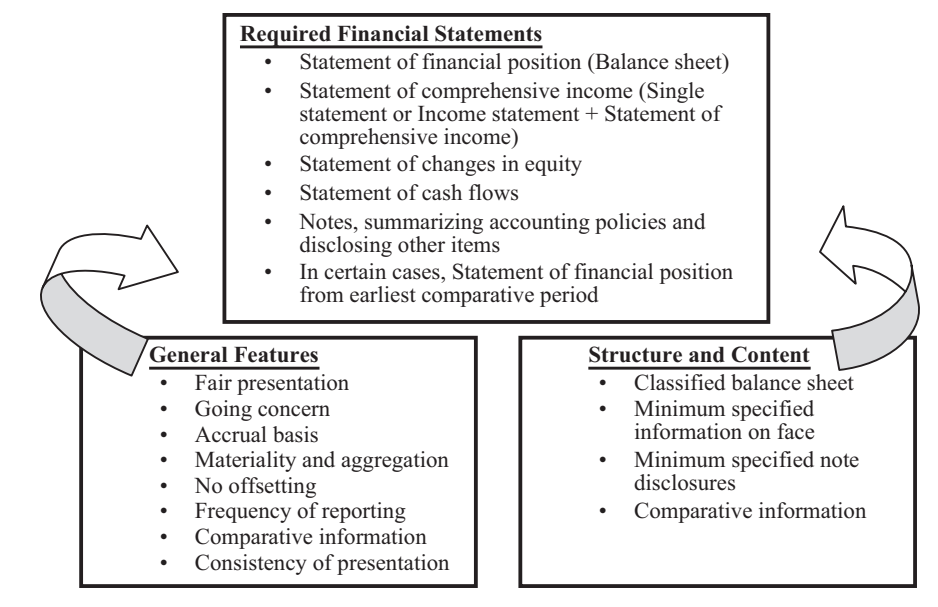
International Accounting Standard (IAS) No. 1, *Presentation of Financial Statements*, specifies the required financial statements, general features of financial statements, and structure and content of financial statements.³⁰ These general requirements are illustrated in Exhibit 3 and described in the subsections below.

²⁸ Ibid., paragraphs 4.54–4.55.

²⁹ IFRS *Glossary of Terms*. FASB ASC Topic 820 [Fair Value Measurements and Disclosures].

³⁰ For US GAAP, financial statement presentation is covered in Sections 205 through 280 of the Accounting Standards Codification.

Exhibit 3 IASB General Requirements for Financial Statements



In the following sections, we discuss the required financial statements, the general features underlying the preparation of financial statements, and the specified structure and content in greater detail.

5.5.1 Required Financial Statements

Under IAS No. 1, a complete set of financial statements includes:³¹

- a statement of financial position (balance sheet);
- a statement of comprehensive income (a single statement of comprehensive income or two statements, an income statement and a statement of comprehensive income that begins with profit or loss from the income statement);
- a statement of changes in equity, separately showing changes in equity resulting from profit or loss, each item of other comprehensive income, and transactions with owners in their capacity as owners;³²
- a statement of cash flows; and
- notes comprising a summary of significant accounting policies and other explanatory notes that disclose information required by IFRS and not presented elsewhere and that provide information relevant to an understanding of the financial statements.

Entities are encouraged to furnish other related financial and non-financial information in addition to that required. Financial statements need to present fairly the financial position, financial performance, and cash flows of an entity.

5.5.2 General Features of Financial Statements

A company that applies IFRS is required to state explicitly in the notes to its financial statements that it is in compliance with the standards. Such a statement is only made when a company is in compliance with *all* requirements of IFRS. In extremely rare

³¹ IAS No. 1, *Presentation of Financial Statements*, paragraph 10.

³² Examples of transactions with owners acting in their capacity as owners include sale of equity securities to investors, distributions of earnings to investors, and repurchases of equity securities from investors.

circumstances, a company may deviate from a requirement of IFRS if management concludes that complying with IFRS would result in misleading financial statements. In this case, management must disclose details of the departure from IFRS.

IAS No. 1 specifies a number of general features underlying the preparation of financial statements. These features clearly reflect the *Conceptual Framework (2010)*.

- *Fair Presentation*: The application of IFRS is presumed to result in financial statements that achieve a fair presentation. The IAS describes fair presentation as follows:

Fair presentation requires the faithful representation of the effects of transactions, other events and conditions in accordance with the definitions and recognition criteria for assets, liabilities, income and expenses set out in the *Framework*.³³

- *Going Concern*: Financial statements are prepared on a going concern basis unless management either intends to liquidate the entity or to cease trading, or has no realistic alternative but to do so. If not presented on a going concern basis, the fact and rationale should be disclosed.
- *Accrual Basis*: Financial statements (except for cash flow information) are to be prepared using the accrual basis of accounting.
- *Materiality and Aggregation*: Omissions or misstatements of items are material if they could, individually or collectively, influence the economic decisions that users make on the basis of the financial statements. Each material class of similar items is presented separately. Dissimilar items are presented separately unless they are immaterial.
- *No Offsetting*: Assets and liabilities, and income and expenses, are not offset unless required or permitted by an IFRS.
- *Frequency of Reporting*: Financial statements must be prepared at least annually.
- *Comparative Information*: Financial statements must include comparative information from the previous period. The comparative information of prior periods is disclosed for all amounts reported in the financial statements, unless an IFRS requires or permits otherwise.
- *Consistency*: The presentation and classification of items in the financial statements are usually retained from one period to the next.

5.5.3 Structure and Content Requirements

IAS No. 1 also specifies structure and content of financial statements. These requirements include the following:

- *Classified Statement of Financial Position (Balance Sheet)*: IAS No. 1 requires the balance sheet to distinguish between current and non-current assets, and between current and non-current liabilities unless a presentation based on liquidity provides more relevant and reliable information (e.g., in the case of a bank or similar financial institution).
- *Minimum Information on the Face of the Financial Statements*: IAS No. 1 specifies the minimum line item disclosures on the face of, or in the notes to, the financial statements. For example, companies are specifically required to disclose the amount of their plant, property, and equipment as a line item on the face of the balance sheet. The specific requirements are listed in Exhibit 4.

³³ IAS No. 1, *Presentation of Financial Statements*, paragraph 15.

- *Minimum Information in the Notes* (or on the face of financial statements): IAS No. 1 specifies disclosures about information to be presented in the financial statements. This information must be provided in a systematic manner and cross-referenced from the face of the financial statements to the notes. The required information is summarized in Exhibit 5.
- *Comparative Information*: For all amounts reported in a financial statement, comparative information should be provided for the previous period unless another standard requires or permits otherwise. Such comparative information allows users to better understand reported amounts.

Exhibit 4 IAS No. 1: Minimum Required Line Items in Financial Statements

On the face of the Statement of Financial Position	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Plant, property, and equipment ■ Investment property ■ Intangible assets ■ Financial assets (those not included in other specified line items) ■ Investments accounted for using the equity method ■ Biological assets ■ Inventories ■ Trade and other receivables ■ Cash and cash equivalents ■ Total assets in groups held for sale ■ Trade and other payables ■ Provisions ■ Financial liabilities (not listed in other line items) ■ Liabilities and assets for current tax ■ Deferred tax liabilities and deferred tax assets ■ Total liabilities in groups held for sale ■ Non-controlling interest (i.e., minority interest, presented within equity) ■ Issued capital and reserves attributable to owners of the parent
On the face of the Statement of Comprehensive Income, presented either in a single statement or in two statements (Income statement + Statement of comprehensive income)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Revenue ■ Specified gains and losses for financial assets ■ Finance costs ■ Share of the profit or loss of associates and joint ventures accounted for using the equity method ■ Pretax gain or loss recognized on the disposal of assets or settlement of liabilities attributable to discontinued operations ■ Tax expense ■ Profit or loss ■ Each component of other comprehensive income ■ Amount of profit or loss and amount of comprehensive income attributable to non-controlling interest (minority interest) ■ Amount of profit or loss and amount of comprehensive income attributable to the parent

(continued)

Exhibit 4 (Continued)

On the face of the Statement of Changes in Equity	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Total comprehensive income for the period, showing separately the total amounts attributable to owners of the parent and to non-controlling interest (minority interest) ■ For each component of equity, a reconciliation between beginning balances and ending balances, showing separately amounts arising from a) profit or loss, b) each item of other comprehensive income, and c) transactions with owners in their capacity as owners. ■ For each component of equity, the effects of changes in accounting policies and corrections of errors recognized in accordance with IAS No. 8
---	---

Exhibit 5 Summary of IFRS Required Disclosures in the Notes to the Financial Statements

Disclosure of Accounting Policies	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Measurement bases used in preparing financial statements ■ Significant accounting policies used ■ Judgments made in applying accounting policies that have the most significant effect on the amounts recognized in the financial statements
Sources of Estimation Uncertainty	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Key assumptions about the future and other key sources of estimation uncertainty that have a significant risk of causing material adjustment to the carrying amount of assets and liabilities within the next year
Other Disclosures	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Information about capital and about certain financial instruments classified as equity ■ Dividends not recognized as a distribution during the period, including dividends declared before the financial statements were issued and any cumulative preference dividends ■ Description of the entity, including its domicile, legal form, country of incorporation, and registered office or business address ■ Nature of operations and principal activities ■ Name of parent and ultimate parent

5.6 Convergence of Conceptual Framework

One of the joint IASB/FASB projects, begun in 2004, aimed to develop an improved, common conceptual framework. The project was conducted in phases. The Boards' initial, technical work plan included: Objective of and qualitative characteristics of financial reporting; Reporting entity; Elements; and Measurement and recognition of elements. As of 2010, the objective and qualitative characteristics phase was complete and is incorporated in the reading. In late 2010, convergence was put on hold. In December 2012, the IASB reactivated the conceptual framework as an IASB project.

As more countries adopt IFRS, the need to consider other financial reporting systems will be reduced. Additionally, the IASB and FASB are considering frameworks from other jurisdictions in developing their joint framework. Nevertheless, analysts are likely to encounter financial statements that are prepared on a basis other than IFRS. Although the number and relevance of different local GAAP reporting systems are likely to decline, industry-specific financial reports—such as those required for banking or insurance companies—will continue to exist. Differences remain between IFRS and US GAAP that affect the framework and general financial reporting requirements.

The readings on individual financial statements and specific topics will review in more detail differences in IFRS and US GAAP as they apply to specific financial statements and topics.

As mentioned earlier, a joint IASB–FASB project was begun in October 2004 to develop a common conceptual framework. The initial focus was to achieve the convergence of the frameworks and improve particular aspects of the framework dealing with objectives, qualitative characteristics, elements and their recognition, and measurement. A December 2004 discussion paper presented the broad differences between the two frameworks. The differences between IFRS and US GAAP that affect the framework and general financial reporting requirements have been reduced by the agreement by the IASB and FASB on the purpose and scope of the *Conceptual Framework (2010)*, the objective of general purpose financial reporting, and qualitative characteristics of useful financial information. Exhibit 6 summarizes the remaining differences as presented in the December 2004 discussion paper. Some of the differences identified in December 2004 may no longer apply. The readings on individual financial statements and specific topics will discuss relevant and more current differences in greater detail.

Exhibit 6 Summary of Differences between IFRS and US GAAP Frameworks as of December 2004

US GAAP (FASB) Framework

Financial Statement Elements (definition, recognition, and measurement)

- *Performance Elements:* The FASB framework includes three elements relating to financial performance in addition to revenue and expenses: gains, losses, and comprehensive income. Comprehensive income is a more encompassing concept than net income, as it includes all changes in equity during a period except those resulting from investments by and distributions to owners.
- *Financial Position Elements:* The FASB framework defines an asset as “a future economic benefit” rather than the “resource” from which future economic benefits are expected to flow to the entity as in the IASB framework. It also includes the term “probable” to define the assets and liabilities elements. As discussed below, the term “probable” is part of the IASB framework recognition criteria. Additionally, the frameworks have different meanings of probable.

(continued)

Exhibit 6 (Continued)**US GAAP (FASB) Framework**

- *Recognition of Elements:* The FASB framework does not discuss the term “probable” in its recognition criteria, whereas the IASB framework requires that it is probable that any future economic benefit flow to/from the entity. The FASB framework also has a separate recognition criterion of relevance.
- *Measurement of Elements:* Measurement attributes (historical cost, current cost, settlement value, current market value, and present value) are broadly consistent, and both frameworks lack fully developed measurement concepts. Furthermore, the FASB framework prohibits revaluations except for certain categories of financial instruments, which have to be carried at fair value.

For analysis of financial statements created under different frameworks, reconciliation schedules and disclosures regarding the significant differences between the reporting bases were formerly available to a greater extent. For example, the SEC used to require reconciliation for foreign private issuers that did not prepare financial statements in accordance with US GAAP. The SEC no longer requires reconciliation for foreign private issuers that prepare their financial reports in compliance with IFRS. Such reconciliations can reveal additional information related to the more judgmental components of the financial statements. In the absence of a reconciliation, users of financial statements must be prepared to consider how the use of different reporting standards potentially impact financial reports. This can have important implications for comparing the performance of companies and security valuation.

6**EFFECTIVE FINANCIAL REPORTING**

A discussion of the characteristics of an effective framework and the barriers to the creation of such a framework offer additional perspective on financial reporting.

6.1 Characteristics of an Effective Financial Reporting Framework

Any effective financial reporting system needs to be a coherent one (i.e., a framework in which all the pieces fit together according to an underlying logic). Such frameworks have several characteristics:

- *Transparency:* A framework should enhance the transparency of a company’s financial statements. Transparency means that users should be able to see the underlying economics of the business reflected clearly in the company’s financial statements. Full disclosure and fair presentation create transparency.
- *Comprehensiveness:* To be comprehensive, a framework should encompass the full spectrum of transactions that have financial consequences. This spectrum includes not only transactions currently occurring, but also new types of

transactions as they are developed. So an effective financial reporting framework is based on principles that are universal enough to provide guidance for recording both existing and newly developed transactions.

- *Consistency*: An effective framework should ensure reasonable consistency across companies and time periods. In other words, similar transactions should be measured and presented in a similar manner regardless of industry, company size, geography, or other characteristics. Balanced against this need for consistency, however, is the need for sufficient flexibility to allow companies sufficient discretion to report results in accordance with underlying economic activity.

6.2 Barriers to a Single Coherent Framework

Although effective frameworks all share the characteristics of transparency, comprehensiveness, and consistency, there are some conflicts that create inherent limitations in any financial reporting standards framework. Specifically, it is difficult to completely satisfy all these characteristics concurrently, so any framework represents an attempt to balance the relative importance of these characteristics. Three areas of conflict include valuation, standard-setting approach, and measurement.

- *Valuation*: As discussed, various bases for measuring the value of assets and liabilities exist, such as historical cost, current cost, fair value, realizable value, and present value. Historical cost valuation, under which an asset's value is its initial cost, requires minimal judgment. In contrast, other valuation approaches, such as fair value, require considerable judgment but can provide more relevant information.
- *Standard-Setting Approach*: Financial reporting standards can be established based on 1) principles, 2) rules, or 3) a combination of principles and rules (sometimes referred to as "objectives oriented"). A principles-based approach provides a broad financial reporting framework with little specific guidance on how to report a particular element or transaction. Such principles-based approaches require the preparers of financial reports and auditors to exercise considerable judgment in financial reporting. In contrast, a rules-based approach establishes specific rules for each element or transaction. Rules-based approaches are characterized by a list of yes-or-no rules, specific numerical tests for classifying certain transactions (known as "bright line tests"), exceptions, and alternative treatments. Some suggest that rules are created in response to preparers' needs for specific guidance in implementing principles, so even standards that begin purely as principles evolve into a combination of principles and rules. The third alternative, an objectives-oriented approach, combines the other two approaches by including both a framework of principles and appropriate levels of implementation guidance. The common conceptual framework is likely to be more objectives oriented.
- *Measurement*: The balance sheet presents elements at a point in time, whereas the income statement reflects changes during a period of time. Because these statements are related, standards regarding one of the statements have an effect on the other statement. Financial reporting standards can be established taking an "asset/liability" approach, which gives preference to proper valuation of the balance sheet, or a "revenue/expense" approach that focuses more on the income statement. This conflict can result in one statement being reported in a theoretically sound manner, but the other statement reflecting less relevant information. Standard setters are now predominantly using an asset/liability approach.

EXAMPLE 5**Conflicts between Measurement Approaches**

Prime Retailers (PR), a US-based distributor of men's shirts, has a policy of marking its merchandise up by \$5 per unit. At the beginning of 2009, PR had 10,000 units of inventory on hand, which cost \$15 per unit. During 2009, PR purchased 100,000 units of inventory at a cost of \$22 per unit. Also during 2009, PR sold 100,000 units of inventory at \$27 per unit. How shall PR reflect the cost of the inventory sold: \$15 or \$22 or some combination?

In order to match current costs with current revenues, PR (which does not operate in an IFRS jurisdiction; last-in, first-out is not allowed under IFRS) may decide that it is appropriate to use a method of inventory costing that assumes that the most recently purchased inventory is sold first. So, the assumption is that the 100,000 units of sales had a cost of \$22. A partial income statement for PR would be:

Sales	\$2,700,000
Cost of sales	\$2,200,000
Gross profit	\$500,000

The gross profit calculated in this manner reflects the current cost of goods matched with the current level of revenues.

But PR still has 10,000 units of inventory on hand. The assumption must be that the 10,000 remaining units had a cost of \$15 per unit. Therefore, the value of the inventory reflected on the balance sheet would be \$150,000.

Although the income statement reflects current costs, the remaining inventory on the balance sheet does not reflect current information. The inventory is reflected at the older cost of \$15 per unit. An analyst would likely find this older cost less relevant than the current cost of that inventory.

7**COMPARISON OF IFRS WITH ALTERNATIVE REPORTING SYSTEMS**

The adoption of IFRS as the required financial reporting standard by the EU and other countries has advanced the goal of global convergence. Nevertheless, there are still significant differences in financial reporting in the global capital markets. Arguably, the most critical are the differences that exist between IFRS and US GAAP. After the EU adoption of IFRS in 2005, a significant number of the world's listed companies use one of these two reporting standards.

For analyzing financial statements created under different standards, reconciliation schedules and disclosures regarding the significant differences between the reporting bases—historically available in some jurisdictions—were particularly helpful. For example, the SEC historically required reconciliation for foreign private issuers that did not prepare financial statements in accordance with US GAAP. In 2007, however, the SEC eliminated the reconciliation requirement for companies that prepared their financial statements according to IFRS.³⁴

³⁴ The SEC issued Rule 33-8879 (available at www.sec.gov/rules/final/2007/33-8879.pdf) on 21 December 2007. The Rule eliminated the reconciliation requirement for companies reporting under IFRS as issued by the IASB and applied to financial years ending after 15 November 2007.

Although the disclosures related to any such differences were sometimes dauntingly long, the numerical reconciliations of net income and shareholders' equity appeared in charts that were relatively easy to use. As an example, consider the reconciliation disclosures made by Syngenta AG, a Swiss agribusiness company in 2006, the last year in which reconciliations were required. Syngenta's 2006 US SEC Form 20-F filing discussed these differences in Note 34, "Significant Differences between IFRS and United States Generally Accepted Accounting Principles." This note was roughly 20 pages long! The chart presenting the numerical reconciliation of net income (see Exhibit 7) was, however, relatively easy to use and could be reviewed to identify the significant items; large amounts could be examined in more detail. The Syngenta disclosure indicates that the company's 2006 net income based on US GAAP was \$504 million, compared with the \$634 million of net income reported under IFRS. The reconciliation indicates that most significant differences relate to accounting for acquisitions (purchase accounting adjustments include a \$30 million increase and an \$86 million decrease), accounting for pension provisions (\$48 million), accounting for put options (\$60 million) and accounting for various tax-related items. In some instances, further analysis would be undertaken to determine the implications of each significant difference based on additional disclosures in the notes.

Exhibit 7 Reconciliation of GAAP Income: Syngenta (US\$ in Millions)

	2006	2005	2004
Net income/(loss) reported under IFRS attributable to Syngenta AG shareholders	634	622	460
US GAAP adjustments:			
Purchase accounting: Zeneca agrochemicals business	30	(7)	62
Purchase accounting: other acquisitions	(86)	(80)	(62)
Restructuring charges	(9)	(9)	47
Pension provisions (including post-retirement benefits)	(48)	(15)	43
Deferred taxes on share based compensation	—	3	(3)
Deferred taxes on unrealized profit in inventory	26	(33)	(61)
Impairment losses	2	(7)	(1)
Inventory provisions	(13)	—	—
Revenue recognition	(1)	—	—
Environmental remediation costs	(27)	—	—
Other items	9	28	(17)
Grant of put option to Syngenta AG shareholders	(60)	—	—
Valuation allowance against deferred tax assets	—	26	(34)
Income tax on undistributed earnings of subsidiaries	1	1	(27)
Deferred tax effect of US GAAP adjustments	46	27	(55)
Net income/(loss) reported under US GAAP	504	556	352

Source: 2005 US SEC Form 20-F.

Now that reconciliation disclosures are no longer generally available, an analyst comparing two companies that use different reporting standards must be aware of areas where accounting standards have not converged. For example, data from 2006 SEC reconciliations (the last year available) indicated that pensions and goodwill were the dominant IFRS-to-US GAAP reconciliation items for European companies

that listed their stock on an exchange in the United States.³⁵ In most cases, a user of financial statements prepared under different accounting standards will no longer have enough information to make specific adjustments required to achieve comparability. Instead, an analyst must maintain general caution in interpreting comparative financial measures produced under different accounting standards and monitor significant developments in financial reporting standards.

Exhibit 8³⁶ below discussed the current status of the IASB-FASB convergence project as at 2017. As mentioned earlier, no new projects are expected to be added to the project.

Exhibit 8 Current Status of IASB and US GAAP Convergence Project

Short-Term Convergence Projects

Borrowing costs	IASB reissued IAS 23: Borrowing Costs in 2008.
Discontinued operations (IASB only)	The IASB issued IFRS 5 Non-current Assets Held for Sale and Discontinued Operations in March 2004.
Fair value option for financial instruments (FASB only)	Completed.
Government grants	Joint work on this project has been discontinued.
Impairment	Joint work on this project has been discontinued.
Income taxes	Joint work on this project has been discontinued.
Investment properties	The FASB is working on this project.
Joint arrangements	IASB issued IFRS 11: Joint Arrangements in 2011.
Research and development (FASB only)	Completed.
Segment reporting	IASB issued IFRS 8 Operating Segments in 2008.

Exhibit 9³⁷ below discusses the current status of the major joint IASB-FASB convergence projects as at 2017.

Exhibit 9 Current Status of Major Joint IASB and US GAAP Convergence Projects

Major Joint Projects

Business Combinations	Converged standards issued in 2008.
Conceptual Framework	The project has been partially completed. Work on further phases was discontinued and the IASB undertook an IASB-only comprehensive project.
Consolidation	Converged standards issued in 2011.
Derecognition	The IASB and FASB could not reach a converged solution and instead additional disclosures were implemented.
Fair value measurement	Converged standards issued in 2011.
Financial instruments	Comprises a number of projects, some completed and some which are still under way. In some areas, divergent outcomes have been developed, and timing of the issuance of pronouncements is no longer aligned. The IASB has completed work on IFRS 9: Financial Instruments.

³⁵ Henry, Lin, and Yang (2009) "The European-US 'GAAP Gap': IFRS to US GAAP Form 20-F Reconciliations" *Accounting Horizons* 23(2): 121–150.

³⁶ www.iasplus.com

³⁷ www.iasplus.com

Exhibit 9 (Continued)

	Major Joint Projects
Financial statement presentation	Joint work on this project has been discontinued. Some amendments to existing requirements have been made in relation to the presentation of the statement of comprehensive income.
Insurance contracts	Joint work on this project has been discontinued, although the IASB and FASB continue to liaise on some issues.
Intangible assets	The IASB and FASB decided in 2007 to not add this project to the joint agenda.
Leases	Divergence has occurred regarding some aspects.
Liabilities and equity	Joint work on this project has been discontinued.
Post-employment benefits.	Joint work on this project has been discontinued.
Revenue recognition	IFRS 15: Revenue from Contracts with Customers was issued in May 2014. The standard is fully converged with ASU 2014-09 Revenue from Contracts with Customers.

MONITORING DEVELOPMENTS IN FINANCIAL REPORTING STANDARDS

8

In studying financial reporting and financial statement analysis in general, the analyst must be aware that reporting standards are evolving rapidly. Analysts need to monitor ongoing developments in financial reporting and assess their implications for security analysis and valuation. The need to monitor developments in financial reporting standards does not mean that analysts should be accountants. An accountant monitors these developments from a preparer's perspective; an analyst needs to monitor from a user's perspective. More specifically, analysts need to know how these developments will affect financial reports.

Analysts can remain aware of developments in financial reporting standards by monitoring three areas: new products or transactions, actions of standard setters and other groups representing users of financial statements (such as CFA Institute), and company disclosures regarding critical accounting policies and estimates.

8.1 New Products or Types of Transactions

New products and new types of transactions can have unusual or unique elements to them such that no explicit guidance in the financial reporting standards exists. New products or transactions typically arise from economic events, such as new businesses (e.g., the internet), or from a newly developed financial instrument or financial structure. Financial instruments, whether exchange traded or not, are typically designed to enhance a company's business or to mitigate inherent risks. However, at times, financial instruments or structured transactions have been developed primarily for purposes of financial report "window dressing."

Although companies might discuss new products and transactions in their financial reports, the analyst can also monitor business journals and the capital markets to identify such items. Additionally, when one company in an industry develops a new product or transaction, other companies in the industry often do the same. Once new products, financial instruments, or structured transactions are identified, it is helpful to gain an understanding of the business purpose. If necessary, an analyst can obtain

further information from a company's management, which should be able to describe the economic purpose, the financial statement reporting, significant estimates, judgments applied in determining the reporting, and future cash flow implications for these items. The financial reporting framework described here is useful in evaluating the potential effect on financial statements even though a standard may not have been issued as to how to report a particular transaction.

8.2 Evolving Standards and the Role of CFA Institute

The actions of standard setters and regulators are unlikely to be helpful in identifying new products and transactions, given the lag between new product development and regulatory action. Monitoring the actions of these authorities is nonetheless important for another reason: Changes in regulations can affect companies' financial reports and, thus, valuations. This is particularly true if the financial reporting standards change to require more explicit identification of matters affecting asset/liability valuation or financial performance. For example, one regulatory change required companies to report the value of employee stock options as an expense in the income statement. Prior to the required expensing, an analyst could assess the impact of stock options on a company's performance and the dilutive effect to shareholders by reviewing information disclosed in the notes to the financial statements. As another example, the new standards on leases, IFRS 16, which applies for annual reporting periods beginning on 1 January 2019, will result in explicitly recognizing on the balance sheet the assets and liabilities associated with "operating leases"; currently, operating leases are not recognized on the balance sheet and information concerning the lease is available only in the notes. To the extent that some market participants do not examine financial statement details and thus ignore some items when valuing a company's securities, more explicit identification could affect the value of the company's securities. Additionally, it is plausible to believe that management is more attentive to and rigorous in any calculations/estimates of items that appear in the financial statements, compared to items that are only disclosed in the notes.

The IASB and FASB have numerous major projects underway that will most likely result in new standards. It is important to keep up to date on these evolving standards. The IASB (www.iasb.org) and FASB (www.fasb.org) provide a great deal of information on their websites regarding new standards and proposals for future changes in standards. In addition, the IASB and FASB seek input from the financial analyst community—those who regularly use financial statements in making investment and credit decisions. When a new standard is proposed, an exposure draft is made available and users of financial statements can draft comment letters and position papers for submission to the IASB and FASB in order to evaluate the proposal.

CFA Institute is active in advocating improvements to financial reporting, through its Standards and Financial Market Integrity Division. Volunteer members of CFA Institute serve on several liaison committees that meet regularly to make recommendations to the IASB and FASB on proposed standards and to draft comment letters and position papers. The comment letters and position papers of these groups on financial reporting issues are available at www.cfainstitute.org/ethics/topics/pages/index.aspx.

CFA Institute issued a position paper titled *A Comprehensive Business Reporting Model: Financial Reporting for Investors*, which provides a suggested model for significantly improving financial reporting. The position paper, issued in 2007, states:

Corporate financial statements and their related disclosures are fundamental to sound investment decision making. The well-being of the world's financial markets, and of the millions of investors who entrust their financial present and future to those markets, depends directly on the information financial statements and disclosures provide. Consequently, the quality

of the information drives global financial markets. The quality, in turn, depends directly on the principles and standards managers apply when recognizing and measuring the economic activities and events affecting their companies' operations....

Investors require timeliness, transparency, comparability, and consistency in financial reporting. Investors have a preference for decision relevance over reliability. As CFA Institute stated in 1993 and as reiterated in this paper, "analysts need to know economic reality—what is really going on—to the greatest extent it can be depicted by accounting numbers." Corporate financial statements that fail to reflect this economic reality undermine the investment decision-making process.³⁸

Among other principles, the proposed model stresses the importance of information regarding the current fair value of assets and liabilities, of neutrality in financial reporting, and of providing detailed information on cash flows to investors through the choice of the so-called direct format for the cash flow statement.³⁹

In summary, analysts can improve their investment decision making by keeping current on financial reporting standards, and various web-based sources provide the means to do so. In addition, analysts can contribute to improving financial reporting by sharing their perspective as users with standard-setting bodies, which typically invite comments concerning proposed changes.

8.3 Company Disclosures

A good source for obtaining information regarding the effect of financial reporting standards on a company's financial statements is typically the company itself. This information is provided in the notes to the financial statements and accompanying discussion.

8.3.1 *Disclosures Relating to Critical and Significant Accounting Policies*

As noted earlier, financial reporting standards need to restrict alternatives but retain flexibility in allowing enterprises to match their accounting methods with underlying economics. As a result, companies choose among alternative accounting policies (e.g., depreciation methods) and use estimates (e.g., depreciable lives of assets). Under both IFRS and US GAAP, companies are required to disclose their accounting policies and estimates in the notes to the financial statements. Companies also discuss in the management commentary (or the management's discussion and analysis, MD&A) those policies that management deems most important. Although many of the policies are discussed in both the management commentary and the notes to the financial statement, there is typically a distinction between the two discussions. The management commentary generally relates to aspects of the accounting policies deemed important by management to understand the financial statements, particularly changes. The MD&A disclosure relates to those policies that require significant judgments and estimates, whereas the note discusses all accounting policies, irrespective of whether judgment was required. Each disclosure has value.

In analyzing financial reporting disclosures, the following questions should be addressed:

- What policies have been discussed?

³⁸ *A Comprehensive Business Reporting Model: Financial Reporting for Investors*, CFA Institute Centre for Financial Market Integrity, July 2007, p. 1, 2.

³⁹ See the reading on cash flow statements for further information on the direct format.

- Do these policies appear to cover all of the significant balances on the financial statements?
- Which policies are identified as requiring significant estimates?
- Have there been any changes in these disclosures from one year to the next?

Exhibit 10 summarizes the accounting policies discussed in the management report section of Volkswagen's annual report.

Exhibit 10 Accounting Policy Discussion in Volkswagen's Management Report

Volkswagen's management report includes the following discussion of accounting policies:

The application of IFRS 8 led to a reclassification of the segments disclosed in the notes. The following segments are now reported: Passenger Cars and Light Commercial Vehicles, Scania, and Volkswagen Financial Services. The classification of the Group's activities into the Automotive and Financial Services divisions remains unchanged in the management report.

In accordance with the amended IAS 7, as of fiscal year 2009 we are reporting liquidity movements resulting from changes in leasing and rental assets in cash flows from operating activities (previously reported in cash flows from investing activities). Accordingly, changes in financial services receivables are also allocated to cash flows from operating activities. The prior-year presentation has been adjusted accordingly.

The adoption of new or amended accounting standards did not otherwise materially affect the 2009 consolidated financial statements.

Source: Volkswagen's 2009 Annual Report, page 144.

Exhibit 11 lists the items discussed in the note titled "Accounting Policies" in Volkswagen's notes to the financial statements. Note that far more items are described in the notes to the financial statements as compared to the management's commentary, illustrating the broader disclosure of the notes.

Exhibit 11 Accounting Policies Described in Volkswagen's Financial Statement Notes

- Intangible assets
- Property, plant, and equipment
- Leasing and rental assets
- Investment property
- Capitalization of borrowing costs
- Equity-accounted investments
- Financial instruments
- Loans and receivables and financial liabilities
- Available-for-sale financial assets
- Derivatives and hedge accounting

Exhibit 11 (Continued)

- Receivables from finance leases
- Other receivables and financial assets
- Impairment losses on financial instruments
- Deferred taxes
- Inventories
- Non-current assets held for sale and discontinued operations
- Pension provisions
- Provisions for taxes
- Other provisions
- Liabilities
- Revenue and expense recognition

8.3.2 Disclosures Regarding Changes in Accounting Policies

Companies must disclose information about changes in accounting policies. Such changes can occur as a result of initially applying a new accounting standard or as a result of the company voluntarily changing which policy it uses (among those allowable). In addition, IFRS require discussion about pending implementations of new standards and the known or estimable information relevant to assessing the impact of the new standards.⁴⁰ These disclosures can alert an analyst to significant changes in reported financial statement amounts that could affect security valuation. Although each discussion will be different, the conclusions that a company can reach about a new standard not yet implemented include:

- 1 the standard does not apply;
- 2 the standard will have no material impact;
- 3 management is still evaluating the impact; or
- 4 the impact of adoption is discussed.

Clearly, disclosures indicating the expected impact provide the most meaningful information. In addition, disclosures indicating that the standard does not apply or will not have a material effect are also helpful. However, disclosures indicating that management is still evaluating the impact of a new standard create some uncertainty about whether the change might materially affect the company.

In addition to the disclosures referred to in Exhibits 10 and 11, Volkswagen also provided extensive disclosures about recently issued accounting standards in its 2009 Annual Report. The company confirmed it had adopted all accounting pronouncements required to be applied starting in fiscal year 2009, stated the impact of four new or revised standards, and listed nine other standards that had no material effect on the company's financial reports. In addition, Volkswagen provided a table summarizing standards that had been adopted by the IASB but were not required to be applied for fiscal year 2009. The table listed 17 specific standards changes, of which the company expected 14 to have no impact and the other three to result in non-quantified changes in disclosures or presentations.

⁴⁰ IAS No. 8, Accounting Policies, Changes in Accounting Estimates and Errors.

In some cases, companies are able to quantify the expected impact of accounting standards that have been changed but are not yet effective at the time of the company's report. As an example of quantified disclosures about accounting changes that would have a future effect on a company's financial statements, consider the disclosures in Exhibit 12.

Exhibit 12 Impact of New and Amended Accounting Standards: General Electric

In its 2009 annual report filed with the SEC in February 2010, General Electric (which reports under US GAAP) included disclosures in its MD&A about an accounting change that would require consolidation of certain entities that previously had not been consolidated. The acronym ASU stands for "Accounting Standards Update" and is the means by which the FASB communicates changes to US GAAP following the Financial Standards Codification in 2009. The acronym ASC stands for "Accounting Standards Codification" and refers to a particular section of the Codification.

In 2009, the FASB issued ASU 2009–16 and ASU 2009–17, which amended ASC 860, *Transfers and Servicing*, and ASC 810, *Consolidation*, respectively, and are effective for us on January 1, 2010...

Upon adoption of the amendments on January 1, 2010, we will consolidate the assets and liabilities of these entities at the amount they would have been reported in our financial statements had we always consolidated them. We will also deconsolidate certain entities where we do not meet the definition of the primary beneficiary under the revised guidance, the effect of which will be insignificant. The incremental effect of consolidation on total assets and liabilities, net of our investment in these entities, will be an increase of approximately \$32 billion and \$34 billion, respectively. There also will be a net reduction of equity of approximately \$2 billion, principally related to the reversal of previously recognized securitization gains as a cumulative effect adjustment to retained earnings, which will be earned back over the life of the assets.

Source: General Electric 2009 Annual Report.

An analyst could use these disclosures to adjust expectations about the company's assets, liabilities, and equity, and confirm the impact (which in this case appear to be minimal) on the company's leverage ratios. Importantly, because these disclosures relate to expected changes, the analyst could incorporate these disclosures into forecasts of financial statements.

SUMMARY

An awareness of the reporting framework underlying financial reports can assist in security valuation and other financial analysis. The framework describes the objectives of financial reporting, desirable characteristics for financial reports, the elements of financial reports, and the underlying assumptions and constraints of financial

reporting. An understanding of the framework, which is broader than knowledge of a particular set of rules, offers an analyst a basis from which to infer the proper financial reporting, and thus security valuation implications, of *any* financial statement element or transaction. The reading discusses the conceptual objectives of financial reporting standards, the parties involved in standard-setting processes, and how financial reporting standards are converging into one global set of standards.

Some key points of the reading are summarized below:

- *The Objective of Financial Reporting:*
 - The objective of general purpose financial reporting is to provide financial information about the reporting entity that is useful to existing and potential investors, lenders, and other creditors in making decisions about providing resources to the entity. Those decisions involve buying, selling, or holding equity and debt instruments, and providing or settling loans and other forms of credit.⁴¹
 - Financial reporting requires policy choices and estimates. These choices and estimates require judgment, which can vary from one preparer to the next. Accordingly, standards are needed to ensure increased consistency in these judgments.
- *Financial Reporting Standard-Setting Bodies and Regulatory Authorities:* Private sector standard setting bodies and regulatory authorities play significant but different roles in the standard setting process. In general, standard setting bodies make the rules, and regulatory authorities enforce the rules. However, regulators typically retain legal authority to establish financial reporting standards in their jurisdiction.
- *Convergence of Global Financial Reporting Standards:* The IASB and FASB, along with other standard setters, worked to achieve convergence of financial reporting standards. Many countries have adopted or permit the use of IFRS, have indicated that they will adopt IFRS in the future, or have indicated that they are working on convergence with IFRS. Listed companies in many countries are adopting IFRS. Barriers and challenges to full convergence still exist.
- *The IFRS Framework:* The *IFRS Framework* sets forth the concepts that underlie the preparation and presentation of financial statements for external users, provides further guidance on the elements from which financial statements are constructed, and discusses concepts of capital and capital maintenance.
 - The objective of fair presentation of useful information is the center of the *Conceptual Framework (2010)*. The qualitative characteristics of useful information include fundamental and enhancing characteristics. Information must exhibit the fundamental characteristics of relevance and faithful representation to be useful. The enhancing characteristics identified are comparability, verifiability, timeliness, and understandability.
 - The *IFRS Framework* identifies the following elements of financial statements: assets, liabilities, equity, income, expenses, and capital maintenance adjustments.
 - The *Conceptual Framework (2010)* is constructed based on the underlying assumptions of accrual basis and going concern and acknowledges the inherent constraint of benefit versus cost.

⁴¹ *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting (2010)*, International Accounting Standards Board, 2010, Chapter 1, OB2.

- *IFRS Financial Statements*: IAS No. 1 prescribes that a complete set of financial statements includes a statement of financial position (balance sheet), a statement of comprehensive income (either two statements—one for net income and one for comprehensive income—or a single statement combining both net income and comprehensive income), a statement of changes in equity, a cash flow statement, and notes. The notes include a summary of significant accounting policies and other explanatory information.
 - Financial statements need to reflect certain basic features: fair presentation, going concern, accrual basis, materiality and aggregation, no offsetting, and consistency.
 - Financial statements must be prepared at least annually and must include comparative information from the previous period.
 - Financial statements must follow certain presentation requirements including a classified balance sheet, minimum information on the face of the financial statements and in the notes.
- *Characteristics of a Coherent Financial Reporting Framework*: Effective frameworks share three characteristics: transparency, comprehensiveness, and consistency. Effective standards can, however, differ on appropriate valuation bases, the basis for standard setting (principle or rules based), and resolution of conflicts between balance sheet and income statement focus.
- *Comparison of IFRS with Alternative Reporting Systems*: A significant number of the world's listed companies report under either IFRS or US GAAP.
 - In most cases, a user of financial statements will lack the information necessary to make specific adjustments required to achieve comparability between companies that use IFRS and companies that use US GAAP. Instead, an analyst must maintain general caution in interpreting comparative financial measures produced under different accounting standards and monitor significant developments in financial reporting standards.
- *Monitoring Developments*: Analysts can remain aware of ongoing developments in financial reporting by monitoring three areas: new products or types of transactions; actions of standard setters, regulators, and other groups; and company disclosures regarding critical accounting policies and estimates.

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

- 1 Which of the following is *most likely* not an objective of financial statements?
 - A To provide information about the performance of an entity.
 - B To provide information about the financial position of an entity.
 - C To provide information about the users of an entity's financial statements.
- 2 International financial reporting standards are currently developed by which entity?
 - A The IFRS Foundation.
 - B The International Accounting Standards Board.
 - C The International Organization of Securities Commissions.
- 3 US generally accepted accounting principles are currently developed by which entity?
 - A The Securities and Exchange Commission.
 - B The Financial Accounting Standards Board.
 - C The Public Company Accounting Oversight Board.
- 4 Which of the following statements about desirable attributes of accounting standards boards is *most* accurate? Accounting standards boards should:
 - A concede to political pressures.
 - B be guided by a well articulated framework.
 - C be adequately funded by companies to which the standards apply.
- 5 A core objective of the International Organization of Securities Commissions is to:
 - A eliminate systemic risk.
 - B protect users of financial statements.
 - C ensure that markets are fair, efficient, and transparent.
- 6 According to the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting (2010)*, which of the following is *not* an enhancing qualitative characteristic of information in financial statements?
 - A Accuracy.
 - B Timeliness.
 - C Comparability.
- 7 Which of the following is *not* a constraint on the financial statements according to the *Conceptual Framework (2010)*?
 - A Understandability.
 - B Benefit versus cost.
 - C Balancing of qualitative characteristics.
- 8 The assumption that an entity will continue to operate for the foreseeable future is called:
 - A accrual basis.
 - B comparability.
 - C going concern.

- 9 The assumption that the effects of transactions and other events are recognized when they occur, not when the cash flows occur, is called:
- A relevance.
 - B accrual basis.
 - C going concern.
- 10 Neutrality of information in the financial statements most closely contributes to which qualitative characteristic?
- A Relevance.
 - B Understandability.
 - C Faithful representation.
- 11 Valuing assets at the amount of cash or equivalents paid or the fair value of the consideration given to acquire them at the time of acquisition most closely describes which measurement of financial statement elements?
- A Current cost.
 - B Historical cost.
 - C Realizable value.
- 12 The valuation technique under which assets are recorded at the amount that would be received in an orderly disposal is:
- A current cost.
 - B present value.
 - C realizable value.
- 13 Which of the following is *not* a required financial statement according to IAS No. 1?
- A Statement of financial position.
 - B Statement of changes in income.
 - C Statement of comprehensive income.
- 14 Which of the following elements of financial statements is *most* closely related to measurement of performance?
- A Assets.
 - B Expenses.
 - C Liabilities.
- 15 Which of the following elements of financial statements is *most* closely related to measurement of financial position?
- A Equity.
 - B Income.
 - C Expenses.
- 16 Which of the following is *not* a characteristic of a coherent financial reporting framework?
- A Timeliness.
 - B Consistency.
 - C Transparency.
- 17 Which of the following is *not* a recognized approach to standard-setting?
- A A rules-based approach.
 - B An asset/liability approach.
 - C A principles-based approach.

- 18 Which of the following disclosures regarding new accounting standards provides the *most* meaningful information to an analyst?
- A The impact of adoption is discussed.
 - B The standard will have no material impact.
 - C Management is still evaluating the impact.

SOLUTIONS

- 1 C is correct. Financial statements provide information, including information about the entity's financial position, performance, and changes in financial position, to users. They do not typically provide information about users.
- 2 B is correct. The IASB is currently charged with developing International Financial Reporting Standards.
- 3 B is correct. The FASB is responsible for the Accounting Standards Codification™, the single source of nongovernmental authoritative US generally accepted accounting principles.
- 4 B is correct. Accounting standards boards should be guided by a well articulated framework. They should be independent; and while they consider input from stakeholders, the process should not be compromised by pressure from external forces, including political pressure. Accounting standards boards should have adequate resources.
- 5 C is correct. A core objective of IOSCO is to ensure that markets are fair, efficient, and transparent. The other core objectives are to reduce, not eliminate, systemic risk and to protect investors, not all users of financial statements.
- 6 A is correct. Accuracy is not an enhancing qualitative characteristic. Faithful representation, not accuracy, is a fundamental qualitative characteristic.
- 7 A is correct. Understandability is an enhancing qualitative characteristic of financial information—not a constraint.
- 8 C is correct. The *Conceptual Framework (2010)* identifies two important underlying assumptions of financial statements: accrual basis and going concern. Going concern is the assumption that the entity will continue to operate for the foreseeable future. Enterprises with the intent to liquidate or materially curtail operations would require different information for a fair presentation.
- 9 B is correct. Accrual basis reflects the effects of transactions and other events being recognized when they occur, not when the cash flows. These effects are recorded and reported in the financial statements of the periods to which they relate.
- 10 C is correct. The fundamental qualitative characteristic of faithful representation is contributed to by completeness, neutrality, and freedom from error.
- 11 B is correct. Historical cost is the consideration paid to acquire an asset.
- 12 C is correct. The amount that would be received in an orderly disposal is realizable value.
- 13 B is correct. There is no statement of changes in income. Under IAS No. 1, a complete set of financial statements includes a statement of financial position, a statement of comprehensive income, a statement of changes in equity, a statement of cash flows, and notes comprising a summary of significant accounting policies and other explanatory information.
- 14 B is correct. The elements of financial statements related to the measure of performance are income and expenses.
- 15 A is correct. The elements of financial statements related to the measurement of financial position are assets, liabilities, and equity.
- 16 A is correct. Timeliness is not a characteristic of a coherent financial reporting framework. Consistency, transparency, and comprehensiveness are characteristics of a coherent financial reporting framework.

- 17** B is correct. Rules-based, principles-based, and objectives-oriented approaches are recognized approaches to standard-setting.
- 18** A is correct. A discussion of the impact would be the most meaningful, although B would also be useful.

FINANCIAL REPORTING AND ANALYSIS STUDY SESSION

7

Financial Reporting and Analysis (2)

This study session addresses the three major financial statements—the income statement, the balance sheet, and the cash flow statement—by examining each in turn. The purpose, elements of, construction, pertinent ratios, and common-size analysis are presented for each major financial statement. The session concludes with a discussion of financial analysis techniques including the use of ratios to evaluate corporate financial health.

READING ASSIGNMENTS

Reading 23	Understanding Income Statements by Elaine Henry, PhD, CFA, and Thomas R. Robinson, PhD, CFA
Reading 24	Understanding Balance Sheets by Elaine Henry, PhD, CFA, and Thomas R. Robinson, PhD, CFA
Reading 25	Understanding Cash Flow Statements by Elaine Henry, PhD, CFA, Thomas R. Robinson, PhD, CFA, Jan Hendrik van Greuning, DCom, CFA, and Michael A. Broihahn, CPA, CIA, CFA
Reading 26	Financial Analysis Techniques by Elaine Henry, PhD, CFA, Thomas R. Robinson, PhD, CFA, and Jan Hendrik van Greuning, DCom, CFA

Note: Changes in accounting standards as well as new rulings and/or pronouncements issued after the publication of the readings on financial reporting and analysis may cause some of the information in these readings to become dated. Candidates are *not* responsible for anything that occurs after the readings were published. In addition, candidates are expected to be familiar with the analytical frameworks contained in the readings, as well as the implications of alternative accounting methods for financial analysis and valuation discussed in the readings. Candidates are also responsible for the content of accounting standards, but not for the actual reference numbers. Finally, candidates should be aware that certain ratios may be defined and calculated differently. When alternative ratio definitions exist and no specific definition is given, candidates should use the ratio definitions emphasized in the readings.

Understanding Income Statements

by Elaine Henry, PhD, CFA, and Thomas R. Robinson, PhD, CFA

Elaine Henry, PhD, CFA, is at Stevens Institute of Technology (USA). Thomas R. Robinson, PhD, CFA, is at AACSB International (USA).

LEARNING OUTCOMES

<i>Mastery</i>	<i>The candidate should be able to:</i>
<input type="checkbox"/>	a. describe the components of the income statement and alternative presentation formats of that statement;
<input type="checkbox"/>	b. describe general principles of revenue recognition and accrual accounting, specific revenue recognition applications (including accounting for long-term contracts, installment sales, barter transactions, gross and net reporting of revenue), and implications of revenue recognition principles for financial analysis;
<input type="checkbox"/>	c. calculate revenue given information that might influence the choice of revenue recognition method;
<input type="checkbox"/>	d. describe key aspects of the converged accounting standards for revenue recognition issued by the International Accounting Standards Board and Financial Accounting Standards Board in May 2014;
<input type="checkbox"/>	e. describe general principles of expense recognition, specific expense recognition applications, and implications of expense recognition choices for financial analysis;
<input type="checkbox"/>	f. describe the financial reporting treatment and analysis of non-recurring items (including discontinued operations, unusual or infrequent items) and changes in accounting policies;
<input type="checkbox"/>	g. distinguish between the operating and non-operating components of the income statement;
<input type="checkbox"/>	h. describe how earnings per share is calculated and calculate and interpret a company's earnings per share (both basic and diluted earnings per share) for both simple and complex capital structures;
<input type="checkbox"/>	i. distinguish between dilutive and antidilutive securities and describe the implications of each for the earnings per share calculation;

Note: Changes in accounting standards as well as new rulings and/or pronouncements issued after the publication of the readings on financial reporting and analysis may cause some of the information in these readings to become dated. Candidates are *not* responsible for anything that occurs after the readings were published. In addition, candidates are expected to be familiar with the analytical frameworks contained in the readings, as well as the implications of alternative accounting methods for financial analysis and valuation discussed in the readings. Candidates are also responsible for the content of accounting standards, but not for the actual reference numbers. Finally, candidates should be aware that certain ratios may be defined and calculated differently. When alternative ratio definitions exist and no specific definition is given, candidates should use the ratio definitions emphasized in the readings.

(continued)

LEARNING OUTCOMES

<i>Mastery</i>	<i>The candidate should be able to:</i>
<input type="checkbox"/>	j. convert income statements to common-size income statements;
<input type="checkbox"/>	k. evaluate a company's financial performance using common-size income statements and financial ratios based on the income statement;
<input type="checkbox"/>	l. describe, calculate, and interpret comprehensive income;
<input type="checkbox"/>	m. describe other comprehensive income and identify major types of items included in it.

1

INTRODUCTION

The income statement presents information on the financial results of a company's business activities over a period of time. The income statement communicates how much revenue the company generated during a period and what costs it incurred in connection with generating that revenue. The basic equation underlying the income statement, ignoring gains and losses, is Revenue minus Expenses equals Net income. The income statement is also sometimes referred to as the "statement of operations," "statement of earnings," or "profit and loss (P&L) statement." Under International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRS), the income statement may be presented as a separate statement followed by a statement of comprehensive income that begins with the profit or loss from the income statement or as a section of a single statement of comprehensive income.¹ US generally accepted accounting principles (US GAAP) permit the same alternative presentation formats.² This reading focuses on the income statement, but also discusses comprehensive income (profit or loss from the income statement plus other comprehensive income).

Investment analysts intensely scrutinize companies' income statements.³ Equity analysts are interested in them because equity markets often reward relatively high- or low-earnings growth companies with above-average or below-average valuations, respectively, and because inputs into valuation models often include estimates of earnings. Fixed-income analysts examine the components of income statements, past and projected, for information on companies' abilities to make promised payments on their debt over the course of the business cycle. Corporate financial announcements frequently emphasize information reported in income statements, particularly earnings, more than information reported in the other financial statements.

This reading is organized as follows: Section 2 describes the components of the income statement and its format. Section 3 describes basic principles and selected applications related to the recognition of revenue, and Section 4 describes basic

¹ The International Accounting Standards Board (IASB) issues International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRS), which have been adopted as the accounting standards in many countries in the world. International Accounting Standard (IAS) 1, *Presentation of Financial Statements*, establishes the presentation and minimum content requirements of financial statements and guidelines for the structure of financial statements.

² The single authoritative source of US GAAP is the Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) Accounting Standards Codification™ (FASB ASC). FASB ASC Section 220-10-45 [Comprehensive Income—Overall—Other Presentation Matters] discusses acceptable formats in which to present income, other comprehensive income, and comprehensive income.

³ In this reading, the term *income statement* will be used to describe either the separate statement that reports profit or loss used for earnings per share calculations or that section of a statement of comprehensive income that reports the same profit or loss.

principles and selected applications related to the recognition of expenses. Section 5 covers non-recurring items and non-operating items. Section 6 explains the calculation of earnings per share. Section 7 introduces income statement analysis, and Section 8 explains comprehensive income and its reporting. A summary of the key points and practice problems in the CFA Institute multiple choice format complete the reading.

COMPONENTS AND FORMAT OF THE INCOME STATEMENT

2

On the top line of the income statement, companies typically report revenue. **Revenue** generally refers to amounts charged (and expected to be received) for the delivery of goods or services in the *ordinary activities* of a business. The term **net revenue** means that the revenue number is reported after adjustments (e.g., for cash or volume discounts, or for estimated returns). Revenue may be called sales or turnover.⁴ Exhibits 1 and 2 show the income statements for Groupe Danone, a French food manufacturer, and Kraft Foods, a US food manufacturer.⁵ For the year ended 31 December 2009, Danone reports €14.98 billion of net revenue, whereas Kraft reports \$40.39 billion of net revenue.

Exhibit 1 Groupe Danone Consolidated Income Statement (in Millions of Euros)

	Year Ended 31 December	
	2008	2009
Net revenue	15,220	14,982
Cost of goods sold	(7,172)	(6,749)
Selling expenses	(4,197)	(4,212)
General and administrative expenses	(1,297)	(1,356)
Research and development expenses	(198)	(206)
Other revenue (expense)	(86)	(165)
Trading operating income	2,270	2,294
Other operating income (expense)	(83)	217
Operating income	2,187	2,511
Interest revenue	58	76
Interest expense	(497)	(340)
Cost of net debt	(439)	(264)
Other financial revenue (expense)	(145)	(225)
Income before tax	1,603	2,022
Income tax	(443)	(424)
Income from fully consolidated companies	1,160	1,598

(continued)

⁴ **Sales** is sometimes understood to refer to the sale of goods, whereas *revenue* can include the sale of goods or services; however, the terms are often used interchangeably. In some countries, such as South Africa, turnover may be used in place of revenue. For an example of this, the reader can look at the Sasol Annual Financial Statements 2009.

⁵ Following net income, the income statement will also present **earnings per share**, the amount of earnings per common share of the company. Earnings per share will be discussed in detail later in this reading, and the per-share display has been omitted from these exhibits to focus on the core income statement.

Exhibit 1 (Continued)

	Year Ended 31 December	
	2008	2009
Share of profits of associates	62	(77)
Net income from continuing operations	1,222	1,521
Net income from discontinued operations	269	—
NET INCOME	1,491	1,521
Attributable to the Group	1,313	1,361
Attributable to minority interests	178	160

Exhibit 2 Kraft Foods and Subsidiaries Consolidated Statements of Earnings (in Millions of Dollars, except Per-Share Data)

	Year Ended 31 December		
	2009	2008	2007
Net revenues	\$40,386	\$41,932	\$35,858
Cost of sales	25,786	28,088	23,656
Gross profit	14,600	13,844	12,202
Marketing, administration, and research costs	9,108	8,862	7,587
Asset impairment and exit costs	(64)	1,024	440
(Gains)/Losses on divestitures, net	6	92	(14)
Amortisation of intangibles	26	23	13
Operating income	5,524	3,843	4,176
Interest and other expense, net	1,237	1,240	604
Earnings from continuing operations before income taxes	4,287	2,603	3,572
Provision for income taxes	1,259	755	1,080
Earnings from continuing operations	3,028	1,848	2,492
Earnings and gain from discontinued operations, net of income taxes (Note 2)	—	1,045	232
Net earnings	3,028	2,893	2,724
Non-controlling interest	7	9	3
Net earnings attributable to Kraft Foods	\$3,021	\$2,884	\$2,721

Note that Danone lists the years in increasing order from left to right with the most recent year in the right-most column, whereas Kraft lists the years in decreasing order with the most recent year listed in the left-most column. Different orderings of chronological information are common. Differences in presentations of items, such as expenses, are also common. **Expenses** reflect outflows, depletions of assets, and incurrences of liabilities in the course of the activities of a business. Expenses may be grouped and reported in different formats, subject to some specific requirements.

For example, Danone reports research and development expenses as a separate line item whereas Kraft combines research costs with marketing and administration costs and reports the total in a single line item.

Another difference is how the companies indicate that an amount on the income statement results in a reduction in net income. Danone shows expenses, such as cost of goods sold and selling expenses, in parentheses to explicitly indicate that these are subtracted from revenue and reduce net income. Kraft, on the other hand, does not place cost of sales in parentheses. Rather, Kraft assumes that the user implicitly understands that this is an expense and is subtracted in arriving at gross profit, subtotals such as operating earnings, and, ultimately, in net income. In general, companies may or may not enclose an amount in parentheses (or use a negative sign) to indicate that it is a reduction in net income. Furthermore, within a list of items that normally reduce net income, an item that increases net income may be shown as a negative. In this case, the item is actually added rather than subtracted in calculating net income. In summary, because there is flexibility in how companies may present the income statement, the analyst should always verify the order of years, how expenses are grouped and reported, and how to treat items presented as negatives.

At the bottom of the income statement, companies report net income (companies may use other terms such as “net earnings” or “profit or loss”). For 2009, Danone reports €1,521 million of net income and Kraft reports \$3,028 million of net earnings. Net income is often referred to as the “bottom line.” The basis for this expression is that net income is the final—or bottom—line item in an income statement. Because net income is often viewed as the single most relevant number to describe a company’s performance over a period of time, the term “bottom line” sometimes is used in business to refer to any final or most relevant result.

Despite this customary terminology, note that the companies both present another item below net income: information about how much of that net income is attributable to the company itself and how much of that income is attributable to minority interests, or non-controlling interests. Danone and Kraft both consolidate subsidiaries over which they have control. Consolidation means that they include all of the revenues and expenses of the subsidiaries even if they own less than 100 percent. Minority interest represents the portion of income that “belongs” to minority shareholders of the consolidated subsidiaries, as opposed to the parent company itself. For Danone, €1,361 million of the net income amount is attributable to shareholders of Groupe Danone and €160 million is attributable to minority interests. For Kraft, \$3,021 million of the net earnings amount is attributable to the shareholders of Kraft Foods and \$7 million is attributable to the non-controlling interest.

Net income also includes **gains** and **losses**, which are increases and decreases in economic benefits, respectively, which may or may not arise in the ordinary activities of the business. For example, when a manufacturing company sells its products, these transactions are reported as revenue, and the costs incurred to generate these revenues are expenses and are presented separately. However, if a manufacturing company sells surplus land that is not needed, the transaction is reported as a gain or a loss. The amount of the gain or loss is the difference between the carrying value of the land and the price at which the land is sold. For example, in Exhibit 2, Kraft reports a loss (proceeds, net of carrying value) of \$6 million on divestitures in fiscal 2009. Kraft discloses in the notes to consolidated financial statements that the assets sold included a nutritional energy bar operation in the United States, a juice operation in Brazil, and a plant in Spain.

The definition of income encompasses both revenue and gains and the definition of expenses encompasses both expenses that arise in the ordinary activities of the business and losses.⁶ Thus, **net income** (profit or loss) can be defined as: a) income minus expenses, or equivalently b) revenue plus other income plus gains minus expenses, or equivalently c) revenue plus other income plus gains minus expenses in the ordinary activities of the business minus other expenses, and minus losses. The last definition can be rearranged as follows: net income equals (i) revenue minus expenses in the ordinary activities of the business, plus (ii) other income minus other expenses, plus (iii) gains minus losses.

In addition to presenting the net income, income statements also present items, including subtotals, which are significant to users of financial statements. Some of the items are specified by IFRS but other items are not specified.⁷ Certain items, such as revenue, finance costs, and tax expense, are required to be presented separately on the face of the income statement. IFRS additionally require that line items, headings, and subtotals relevant to understanding the entity's financial performance should be presented even if not specified. Expenses may be grouped together either by their nature or function. Grouping together expenses such as depreciation on manufacturing equipment and depreciation on administrative facilities into a single line item called "depreciation" is an example of a **grouping by nature** of the expense. An example of **grouping by function** would be grouping together expenses into a category such as cost of goods sold, which may include labour and material costs, depreciation, some salaries (e.g., salespeople's), and other direct sales related expenses.⁸ Both Danone and Kraft present their expenses by function, which is sometimes referred to "cost of sales" method.

One subtotal often shown in an income statement is **gross profit** or **gross margin** (that is revenue less cost of sales). When an income statement shows a gross profit subtotal, it is said to use a **multi-step format** rather than a **single-step format**. The Kraft Foods income statement is an example of the multi-step format, whereas the Groupe Danone income statement is in a single-step format. For manufacturing and merchandising companies, gross profit is a relevant item and is calculated as revenue minus the cost of the goods that were sold. For service companies, gross profit is calculated as revenue minus the cost of services that were provided. In summary, gross profit is the amount of revenue available after subtracting the costs of delivering goods or services. Other expenses related to running the business are subtracted after gross profit.

Another important subtotal which may be shown on the income statement is **operating profit** (or, synonymously, operating income). Operating profit results from deducting operating expenses such as selling, general, administrative, and research and development expenses from gross profit. Operating profit reflects a company's profits on its usual business activities before deducting taxes, and for non-financial companies, before deducting interest expense. For financial companies, interest expense would be included in operating expenses and subtracted in arriving at operating profit because it relates to the operating activities for such companies. For some companies composed of a number of separate business segments, operating profit can be useful in evaluating the performance of the individual business segments, because interest and tax expenses may be more relevant at the level of the overall company rather than an individual segment level. The specific calculations of gross profit and operating profit may vary by company, and a reader of financial statements can consult the notes to the statements to identify significant variations across companies.

⁶ IASB *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting (2010)*, paragraphs 4.29 to 4.32.

⁷ Requirements are presented in IAS 1, *Presentation of Financial Statements*.

⁸ Later readings will provide additional information about alternative methods to calculate cost of goods sold.

Operating profit is sometimes referred to as EBIT (earnings before interest and taxes). However, operating profit and EBIT are not necessarily the same. Note that in both Exhibits 1 and 2, interest and taxes do not represent the only differences between earnings (net income, net earnings) and operating income. For example, both companies separately report some income from discontinued operations.

Exhibit 3 shows an excerpt from the income statement of CRA International, a company providing management consulting services. Accordingly, CRA deducts cost of services (rather than cost of goods) from revenues to derive gross profit. CRA's fiscal year ends on the last Saturday in November, and periodically (for example in 2008) its fiscal year will contain 53 weeks rather than 52 weeks. Although the extra week is likely immaterial in computing year-to-year growth rates, it may have a material impact on a quarter containing the extra week. In general, an analyst should be alert to the effect of an extra week when making historical comparisons and forecasting future performance.

Exhibit 3 CRA International Inc. Consolidated Statements of Income (Excerpt) (in Thousands of Dollars, except Per-Share Data)

	Year Ended		
	28 Nov 2009 (52 weeks)	29 Nov 2008 (53 weeks)	24 Nov 2007 (52 weeks)
Revenues	\$301,639	\$376,751	\$394,645
Costs of services	199,861	251,263	248,514
Gross profit	101,778	125,488	146,131
Selling, general, and administrative expenses	76,124	92,797	90,079
Depreciation and amortisation	8,521	12,699	9,782
Income from operations	\$17,133	\$19,992	\$46,270

Note: Remaining items omitted

Exhibits 1, 2, and 3 illustrate basic points about the income statement, including variations across the statements—some of which depend on the industry and/or country, and some of which reflect differences in accounting policies and practices of a particular company. In addition, some differences within an industry are primarily differences in terminology, whereas others are more fundamental accounting differences. Notes to the financial statements are helpful in identifying such differences.

Having introduced the components and format of an income statement, the next objective is to understand the actual reported numbers in it. To accurately interpret reported numbers, the analyst needs to be familiar with the principles of revenue and expense recognition—that is, how revenue and expenses are measured and attributed to a given accounting reporting period.

REVENUE RECOGNITION

3

Revenue is the top line in an income statement, so we begin the discussion of line items in the income statement with revenue recognition. We will first discuss revenue recognition under IFRS and US GAAP prior to the application of converged standards issued May 2014. In May 2014, the IASB and FASB issued IFRS 15 and ASC Topic 606, respectively, for revenue recognition. The nearly identical standards resulted from an

effort to achieve convergence, consistency, and transparency in revenue recognition globally. Key aspects and some implications of the standards are discussed at the end of this section.

A first task is to explain some relevant accounting terminology. The terms revenue, sales, gains, losses, and net income (profit, net earnings) have been briefly defined. The IASB *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting* (2010),⁹ referred to hereafter as the *Conceptual Framework*, further defines and discusses these income statement items. The *Framework* explains that profit is a frequently used measure of performance and is composed of income and expenses.¹⁰ It defines **income** as follows:

Income is increases in economic benefits during the accounting period in the form of inflows or enhancements of assets or decreases of liabilities that result in increases in equity, other than those relating to contributions from equity participants.¹¹

In IFRS, the term “income” includes revenue and gains. Gains are similar to revenue, but they typically arise from secondary or peripheral activities rather than from a company’s primary business activities. For example, for a restaurant, the sale of surplus restaurant equipment for more than its carrying value is referred to as a gain rather than as revenue. Similarly, a loss typically arises from secondary activities. Gains and losses may be considered part of operating activities (e.g., a loss due to a decline in the value of inventory) or may be considered part of non-operating activities (e.g., the sale of non-trading investments).

In the following simple hypothetical scenario, revenue recognition is straightforward: a company sells goods to a buyer for cash and does not allow returns, so the company recognizes revenue when the exchange of goods for cash takes place and measures revenue at the amount of cash received. In practice, however, determining when revenue should be recognized and at what amount is considerably more complex for reasons discussed in the following sections.

3.1 General Principles

An important aspect concerning revenue recognition is that it can occur independently of cash movements. For example, assume a company sells goods to a buyer on credit, so does not actually receive cash until some later time. A fundamental principle of accrual accounting is that revenue is recognized (reported on the income statement) when it is earned, so the company’s financial records reflect revenue from the sale when the risk and reward of ownership is transferred; this is often when the company delivers the goods or services. If the delivery was on credit, a related asset, such as trade or accounts receivable, is created. Later, when cash changes hands, the company’s financial records simply reflect that cash has been received to settle an account receivable. Similarly, there are situations when a company receives cash in advance and actually delivers the product or service later, perhaps over a period of time. In this case, the company would record a liability for **unearned revenue** when the cash is initially received, and revenue would be recognized as being earned over time as products and services are delivered. An example would be a subscription payment received for a publication that is to be delivered periodically over time.

⁹ The IASB is currently in the process of updating its *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting*.

¹⁰ *Conceptual Framework*, paragraph 4.24. The text on the elements of financial statements and their recognition and measurement is the same in the IASB *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting* (2010) and the IASB *Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements* (1989).

¹¹ *Ibid.*, paragraph 4.25(a).

When to recognize revenue (report it on the income statement) is a critical issue in accounting. Up until 1 January 2018, the original international accounting standard (IAS 18), which has been replaced by IFRS 15, specified that revenue from the sale of goods should be recognized when the following conditions are satisfied:¹²

- the entity has transferred to the buyer the significant risks and rewards of ownership of the goods;
- the entity retains neither continuing managerial involvement to the degree usually associated with ownership nor effective control over the goods sold;
- the amount of revenue can be measured reliably;
- it is probable that the economic benefits associated with the transaction will flow to the entity; and
- the costs incurred or to be incurred in respect of the transaction can be measured reliably.

In simple words, this basically says revenue is recognized when the seller no longer bears risks with respect to the goods (for example, if the goods were destroyed by fire, it would be a loss to the purchaser), the seller cannot tell the purchaser what to do with the goods, the seller knows what it expects to collect and is reasonably certain of collection, and the seller knows how much the goods cost.

The transfer of the risks and rewards of ownership normally occurs when goods are delivered to the buyer or when legal title to goods transfers. However, as noted by the above remaining conditions, physical transfer of goods will not always result in the recognition of revenue. For example, if goods are delivered to a retail store to be sold on consignment and title is not transferred, the revenue would not yet be recognized.¹³

IAS 18 specified similar criteria for recognizing revenue for the rendering of services.¹⁴ When the outcome could be estimated reliably, revenue associated with the transaction was recognized by reference to the stage of completion of the transaction at the balance sheet date. The conditions for determining whether a transaction could be estimated reliably were as follows:

- the amount of revenue can be measured reliably;
- it is probable that the economic benefits associated with the transaction will flow to the entity;
- the stage of completion of the transaction at the balance sheet date can be measured reliably; and
- the costs incurred for the transaction and the costs to complete the transaction can be measured reliably.

Similar criteria have been applied to recognizing interest, royalties, and dividends: it is probable that the economic benefits associated with the transaction will flow to the entity and the amount of the revenue can be reliably measured.

US GAAP¹⁵ specify that revenue should be recognized when it is “realized or realizable and earned.” The US Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC),¹⁶ motivated in part because of the frequency with which overstating revenue occurs in connection

¹² IAS No. 18, *Revenue*, paragraph 14.

¹³ IAS 18 IE describes a “consignment sale” as one in which the recipient undertakes to sell the goods on behalf of the shipper (seller). Revenue is recognized by the shipper when the recipient sells the goods to a third party. IAS 18 IE, *Illustrative Examples*, paragraph 2.

¹⁴ IAS No. 18, *Revenue*, paragraph 20.

¹⁵ FASB ASC Section 605-10-25 [Revenue Recognition–Overall–Recognition].

¹⁶ The content of SEC Staff Accounting Bulletin 101 is contained in FASB ASC Section 605-10-S99 [Revenue Recognition–Overall–SEC Materials].

with fraud and/or misstatements, provides guidance on how to apply the accounting principles. This guidance lists four criteria to determine when revenue is realized or realizable and earned:

- 1 There is evidence of an arrangement between buyer and seller. For instance, this would disallow the practice of recognizing revenue in a period by delivering the product just before the end of an accounting period and then completing a sales contract *after* the period end.
- 2 The product has been delivered, or the service has been rendered. For instance, this would preclude revenue recognition when the product has been shipped but the *risks and rewards of ownership have not actually passed* to the buyer.
- 3 The price is determined, or determinable. For instance, this would preclude a company from recognizing revenue that is based on some *contingency*.
- 4 The seller is reasonably sure of collecting money. For instance, this would preclude a company from recognizing revenue when the customer is *unlikely to pay*.

Companies must disclose their revenue recognition policies in the notes to their financial statements (sometimes referred to as footnotes). Analysts should review these policies carefully to understand how and when a company recognizes revenue, which may differ depending on the types of product sold and services rendered. Exhibit 4 presents a portion of the summary of significant accounting policies note that discusses revenue recognition for DaimlerChrysler from its 2009 annual report, prepared under IFRS.

Exhibit 4 Excerpt from DaimlerChrysler Notes

Revenue from sales of vehicles, service parts and other related products is recognized when the risks and rewards of ownership of the goods are transferred to the customer, the amount of revenue can be estimated reliably and collectability is reasonably assured. Revenue is recognized net of discounts, cash sales incentives, customer bonuses and rebates granted.

Daimler uses price discounts in response to a number of market and product factors, including pricing actions and incentives offered by competitors, the amount of excess industry production capacity, the intensity of market competition and consumer demand for the product. The Group may offer a variety of sales incentive programs at any point in time, including cash offers to dealers and consumers, lease subsidies which reduce the consumers' monthly lease payment, or reduced financing rate programs offered to consumers.

An analyst comparing Daimler with another company would likely want to ensure that revenue recognition policies are similar. For example, Daimler notes that it recognizes its revenue net of certain items. Does the comparison company deduct the same items from revenue? Exhibit 5 presents excerpts from the 2009 annual report's notes to the financial statements of Ford Motor Company prepared under US GAAP. In Ford's Note 2, Summary of Accounting Policies, the section titled *revenue recognition* mentions the criteria and timing of revenue recognition, but not the recognition of revenue net of certain items. In a subsequent section of Note 2, Ford states that

its marketing incentives are recognized as revenue reductions. A comparison of the disclosed revenue recognition policies suggests that the companies do have similar revenue recognition policies despite minor differences in presentation.

Exhibit 5 Excerpt from Ford Motor Company Notes

Revenue Recognition — Automotive Sector

Automotive sales consist primarily of revenue generated from the sale of vehicles. Sales are recorded when the risks and rewards of ownership are transferred to our customers (generally dealers and distributors). For the majority of our sales, this occurs when products are shipped from our manufacturing facilities or delivered to our customers. When vehicles are shipped to customers or vehicle modifiers on consignment, revenue is recognized when the vehicle is sold to the ultimate customer.

[portions omitted]

Marketing Incentives and Interest Supplements

Marketing incentives generally are recognized by the Automotive sector as revenue reductions in Automotive sales. These include customer and dealer cash payments and costs for special financing and leasing programs paid to the Financial Services sector. The revenue reductions are accrued at the later of the date the related vehicle sales to the dealers are recorded or the date the incentive program is both approved and communicated. We generally estimate these accruals using marketing programs that are approved as of the balance sheet date and are expected to be effective at the beginning of the subsequent period. The Financial Services sector identifies payments for special financing and leasing programs as interest supplements or other support costs and recognizes them consistent with the earnings process of the underlying receivable or operating lease.

The topic of revenue recognition remains important and new challenges have evolved, particularly in areas of e-commerce and services such as software development. Standard setters continue to evaluate current revenue recognition standards and issue new guidance periodically to deal with new types of transactions. Additionally, there are occasional special cases for revenue recognition, as discussed in the next section.

3.2 Revenue Recognition in Special Cases

The general principles discussed above are helpful for dealing with most revenue recognition issues. There are some instances where revenue recognition is more difficult to determine. For example, in limited circumstances, revenue may be recognized before or after goods are delivered or services are rendered, as summarized in Exhibit 6.

Exhibit 6 Revenue Recognition in Special Cases

Before Goods Are Fully Delivered or Services Completely Rendered	At the Time Goods Are Delivered or Services Rendered	After Goods Are Delivered or Services Rendered
For example, with long-term contracts where the outcome can be reliably measured, the percentage-of-completion method is used.	Recognize revenues using normal revenue recognition criteria.	For example, with real estate sales where there is doubt about the buyer's ability to complete payments, the installment method and cost recovery method are appropriate.

The following sections discuss revenue recognition in the case of long-term contracts, installment sales, and barter.

3.2.1 Long-Term Contracts

A **long-term contract** is one that spans a number of accounting periods. Such contracts raise issues in determining when the transaction has been completed and revenue recognition should occur. How should a company apportion the revenue earned under a long-term contract to each accounting period? If, for example, the contract is a service contract or a licensing arrangement, the company may recognize the revenue on a prorated basis over the period of the contract rather than at the end of the contract term. Under the original IAS standards (IAS 18 and IAS 11), this was done using the percentage-of-completion method.¹⁷ Under this method, revenue is recognized based on the stage of completion of a transaction or contract and is, thus, recognized when the services are rendered. Construction contracts are notable examples of such contracts.¹⁸ When the outcome of a construction contract could be measured reliably, revenue and expenses were recognized in reference to the stage of completion. US GAAP have similar requirements for long-term contracts including construction contracts.

Under the **percentage-of-completion** method, in each accounting period, the company estimates what percentage of the contract is complete and then reports that percentage of the total contract revenue in its income statement. Contract costs for the period are expensed against the revenue. Therefore, net income or profit is reported each year as work is performed.

Under IFRS, if the outcome of the contract cannot be measured reliably, then revenue may be recognized to the extent of contract costs incurred (but only if it is probable the costs will be recovered). Costs are expensed in the period incurred. Under this method, no profit is recognized until all the costs had been recovered. Under US GAAP, but not under IFRS, a revenue recognition method used when the outcome cannot be measured reliably is the completed contract method. Under the **completed contract** method, the company does not report any income until the contract is substantially finished (the remaining costs and potential risks are insignificant in amount), although provision should be made for expected losses. Billings and costs are accumulated on the balance sheet rather than flowing through the income statement. Under US GAAP, the completed contract method is also acceptable when the entity

¹⁷ IAS No. 18, *Revenue*, paragraph 21.

¹⁸ IAS No. 11, *Construction Contracts*.

has primarily short-term contracts. Note that if a contract is started and completed in the same period, there is no difference between the percentage-of-completion and completed contract methods.

Examples 1, 2, and 3 provide illustrations of these revenue recognition methods. As shown, the percentage-of-completion method results in revenue recognition sooner than the completed contract method and thus may be considered a less conservative approach. In addition, the percentage-of-completion method relies on management estimates and is thus not as objective as the completed contract method. However, an advantage of the percentage-of-completion method is that it results in better matching of revenue recognition with the accounting period in which it was earned. Because of better matching with the periods in which work is performed, the percentage-of-completion method is the preferred method of revenue recognition for long-term contracts and is required when the outcome can be measured reliably under both IFRS and US GAAP. Under both IFRS and US GAAP, if a loss is expected on the contract, the loss is reported immediately, not upon completion of the contract, regardless of the method used (e.g., percentage-of-completion or completed contract).

EXAMPLE 1

Revenue Recognition for Long-Term Contracts: Recognizing Revenue on a Prorated Basis

New Era Network Associates has a five-year license to provide networking support services to a customer. The total amount of the license fee to be received by New Era is \$1 million. New Era recognizes license revenue on a prorated basis regardless of the time at which cash is received. How much revenue will New Era recognize for this license in each year?

Solution:

For this license, New Era Network Associates will recognize \$200,000 each year for five years (calculated as \$1 million divided by 5).

EXAMPLE 2

Revenue Recognition for Long-Term Contracts: Percentage-of-Completion Method

Stelle Technology has a contract to build a network for a customer for a total sales price of €10 million. The network will take an estimated three years to build, and total building costs are estimated to be €6 million. Stelle recognizes long-term contract revenue using the percentage-of-completion method and estimates percentage complete based on expenditure incurred as a percentage of total estimated expenditures.

- 1 At the end of Year 1, the company had spent €3 million. Total costs to complete are estimated to be another €3 million. How much revenue will Stelle recognize in Year 1?

- 2 At the end of Year 2, the company had spent an additional €2.4 million for an accumulated total of €5.4 million. Total costs to complete are estimated to be another €0.6 million. How much revenue will Stelle recognize in Year 2?
- 3 At the end of Year 3, the contract is complete. The company spent an accumulated total of €6 million. How much revenue will Stelle recognize in Year 3?

Solution to 1:

Stelle has spent 50 percent of the total project costs (€3 million divided by €6 million), so in Year 1, the company will recognize 50 percent of the total contract revenue (i.e., €5 million).

Solution to 2:

Because Stelle has spent 90 percent of the total project costs (€5.4 million divided by €6 million), by the end of Year 2, it will need to have recognized 90 percent of the total contract revenue (i.e., €9 million). Stelle has already recognized €5 million of revenue in Year 1, so in Year 2, the company will recognize €4 million revenue (€9 million minus €5 million).

Solution to 3:

Because Stelle has spent 100 percent of the total project costs, by the end of Year 3, it will need to have recognized 100 percent of the total contract revenue (i.e., €10 million). Stelle had already recognized €9 million of revenue by the end of Year 2, so in Year 3, the company will recognize €1 million revenue (€10 million minus €9 million).

	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Total
Revenue	€5 million	€4 million	€1 million	€10 million

EXAMPLE 3

Revenue Recognition for Long-Term Contracts: Outcome Cannot Be Reliably Measured

Kolenda Technology Group has a contract to build a network for a customer for a total sales price of \$10 million. This network will take an estimated three years to build, but considerable uncertainty surrounds total building costs because new technologies are involved. In other words, the outcome cannot be reliably measured, but it is probable that the costs up to the agreed upon price will be recovered.

Assuming the following expenditures, how much revenue, expense (cost of construction), and income would the company recognize each year under IFRS and using the completed contract method under US GAAP? The amounts periodically billed to the customer and received from the customer are not necessarily equivalent to the amount of revenue being recognized in the period. For simplicity, assume Kolenda pays cash for all expenditures.

- 1 At the end of Year 1, Kolenda has spent \$3 million.

- 2 At the end of Year 2, Kolenda has spent a total of \$5.4 million.
- 3 At the end of Year 3, the contract is complete. Kolenda spent a total of \$6 million.

Solution:

Under IFRS, revenue may be recognized to the extent of contract costs incurred if the outcome of the contract cannot be measured reliably and it is probable that costs will be recovered. In this example, the outcome is uncertain but it is probable that Kolenda will recover the costs up to \$10 million. Under US GAAP, the company would use the completed contract method. No revenue will be recognized until the contract is complete.

Year 1. Under IFRS, Kolenda would recognize \$3 million cost of construction, \$3 million revenue, and thus \$0 income. Under US GAAP, Kolenda would recognize \$0 cost of construction, \$0 revenue, and thus \$0 income. The \$3 million expenditure would be reported as an increase in the inventory account “construction in progress” and a decrease in cash.

Year 2. Under IFRS, Kolenda would recognize \$2.4 million cost of construction, \$2.4 million revenue, and thus \$0 income. Under US GAAP, Kolenda would recognize \$0 cost of construction, \$0 revenue, and thus \$0 income. The \$2.4 million expenditures would be reported as an increase in the inventory account “construction in progress” and a decrease in cash.

Year 3. Under IFRS, Kolenda would recognize the \$0.6 million cost of construction incurred in the period. Because the contract has been completed and the outcome is now measurable, the company would recognize the remaining \$4.6 million revenue on the contract, and thus \$4 million income. Under US GAAP, because the contract has been completed, Kolenda would recognize the total contract revenue (i.e., \$10 million). Kolenda would recognize \$6 million cost of construction and thus \$4 million income. The inventory account “construction in progress” would be eliminated.

Summary

Revenue recognition to the extent of contract costs incurred: IFRS

	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Total
Revenue	\$3 million	\$2.4 million	\$4.6 million	\$10 million
Cost of construction	\$3 million	\$2.4 million	\$0.6 million	\$6 million
Profit	\$0 million	\$0 million	\$4 million	\$4 million

Completed Contract Method: US GAAP

	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Total
Revenue	\$0 million	\$0 million	\$10 million	\$10 million
Cost of construction	\$0 million	\$0 million	\$6 million	\$6 million
Profit	\$0 million	\$0 million	\$4 million	\$4 million

3.2.2 *Installment Sales*

As noted above, revenue is normally reported when goods are delivered or services are rendered, independent of the period in which cash payments for those goods or services are received. This principle applies even to **installment sales**—sales in which proceeds are to be paid in installments over an extended period. For installment sales, IFRS separate the installments into the sale price, which is the discounted present value of the installment payments, and an interest component. Revenue attributable to the sale price is recognized at the date of sale, and revenue attributable to the interest component is recognized over time.¹⁹ International standards note, however, that the guidance for revenue recognition must be considered in light of local laws regarding the sale of goods in a particular country. Under limited circumstances, recognition of revenue or profit may be required to be deferred for some installment sales. An example of such deferral arises for certain sales of real estate on an installment basis. Revenue recognition for sales of real estate varies depending on specific aspects of the sale transaction.²⁰

Under US GAAP, when the seller has completed the significant activities in the earnings process and is either assured of collecting the selling price or able to estimate amounts that will not be collected, a sale of real estate is reported at the time of sale using the normal revenue recognition conditions.²¹ When those two conditions are not fully met, under US GAAP some of the profit is deferred. Two of the methods may be appropriate in these limited circumstances and relate to the amount of profit to be recognized each year from the transaction: the **installment method** and the **cost recovery method**. Under the installment method, the portion of the total profit of the sale that is recognized in each period is determined by the percentage of the total sales price for which the seller has received cash. Under the cost recovery method, the seller does not report any profit until the cash amounts paid by the buyer—including principal and interest on any financing from the seller—are greater than all the seller's costs of the property. Note that the cost recovery method is similar to the revenue recognition method under international standards, described above, when the outcome of a contract cannot be measured reliably (although the term cost recovery method is not used in the international standard).

Example 4 illustrates the differences between the installment method and the cost recovery method. Installment sales and cost recovery treatment of revenue recognition are rare for financial reporting purposes, especially for assets other than real estate.

EXAMPLE 4

The Installment and Cost Recovery Methods of Revenue Recognition

Assume the total sales price and cost of a property are \$2,000,000 and \$1,100,000, respectively, so that the total profit to be recognized is \$900,000. The amount of cash received by the seller as a down payment is \$300,000, with the remainder of the sales price to be received over a 10-year period. It has been determined

¹⁹ IAS No. 18 IE, *Illustrative Examples*, paragraph 8.

²⁰ IFRIC Interpretation 15, *Agreements for the Construction of Real Estate*, distinguishes three types of agreements for real estate construction (construction contract, rendering services, sale of goods) to determine whether the revenue recognition methods described under long-term contracts apply.

²¹ FASB ASC Section 360-20-55 [Property, Plant, and Equipment—Real Estate Sales—Implementation Guidance and Illustrations].

that there is significant doubt about the ability and commitment of the buyer to complete all payments. How much profit will be recognized attributable to the down payment if:

- 1 The installment method is used?
- 2 The cost recovery method is used?

Solution to 1:

The installment method apportions the cash receipt between cost recovered and profit using the ratio of profit to sales value; here, this ratio equals $\$900,000/\$2,000,000 = 0.45$ or 45 percent. Therefore, the seller will recognize the following profit attributable to the down payment: 45 percent of $\$300,000 = \$135,000$.

Solution to 2:

Under the cost recovery method of revenue recognition, the company would not recognize any profit attributable to the down payment because the cash amounts paid by the buyer still do not exceed the cost of $\$1,100,000$.

3.2.3 Barter

Revenue recognition issues related to barter transactions (non-monetary exchanges) became particularly important as e-commerce developed. As an example, if Company A exchanges advertising space for computer equipment from Company B but no cash changes hands, can Company A and B both report revenue? Such an exchange is referred to as a “barter transaction.”

An even more challenging revenue recognition issue evolved from a specific type of barter transaction, a round-trip transaction. As an example, if Company A sells advertising services (or energy contracts, or commodities) to Company B and almost simultaneously buys an almost identical product from Company B, can Company A report revenue at the fair value of the product sold? Because the company’s revenue would be approximately equal to its expense, the net effect of the transaction would have no impact on net income or cash flow. However, the amount of revenue reported would be higher, and the amount of revenue can be important to a company’s valuation. In the earlier stages of e-commerce, for example, some equity valuations were based on sales (because many early internet companies reported no net income).

Under IFRS, revenue from barter transactions must be measured based on the fair value of revenue from similar non-barter transactions with unrelated parties (parties other than the barter partner).²² US GAAP state that revenue can be recognized at fair value only if a company has historically received cash payments for such services and can thus use this historical experience as a basis for determining fair value; otherwise, the revenue from the barter transaction is recorded at the carrying amount of the asset surrendered.²³

3.2.4 Gross versus Net Reporting

Another revenue recognition issue that became particularly important with the emergence of e-commerce is the issue of gross versus net reporting. Merchandising companies typically sell products that they purchased from a supplier. In accounting for their sales, the company records the amount of the sale proceeds as sales revenue and their cost of the products as the cost of goods sold. As internet-based merchandising

²² IASB, SIC Interpretation 31, *Revenue—Barter Transactions Involving Advertising Services*, paragraph 5.

²³ FASB ASC paragraph 605-20-25-14 [Revenue Recognition—Services—Recognition—Advertising Barter Services].

companies developed, many sold products that they had never held in inventory; they simply arranged for the supplier to ship the products directly to the end customer. In effect, many such companies were agents of the supplier company, and the net difference between their sales proceeds and their costs was equivalent to a sales commission. What amount should these companies record as their revenues—the gross amount of sales proceeds received from their customers, or the net difference between sales proceeds and their cost?

US GAAP indicate that the approach should be based on the specific situation and provides guidance for determining when revenue should be reported gross versus net.²⁴ To report gross revenues, the following criteria are relevant: the company is the primary obligor under the contract, bears inventory risk and credit risk, can choose its supplier, and has reasonable latitude to establish price. If these criteria are not met, the company should report revenues net. Example 5 provides an illustration.

EXAMPLE 5

Gross versus Net Reporting of Revenues

Flyalot has agreements with several major airlines to obtain airline tickets at reduced rates. The company pays only for tickets it sells to customers. In the most recent period, Flyalot sold airline tickets to customers over the internet for a total of \$1.1 million. The cost of these tickets to Flyalot was \$1 million. The company's direct selling costs were \$2,000. Once the customers receive their ticket, the airline is responsible for providing all services associated with the customers' flights.

- 1 Demonstrate the reporting of revenues under:
 - A gross reporting.
 - B net reporting.
- 2 Determine and justify the appropriate method for reporting revenues.

Solution to 1:

The table below shows how reporting would appear on a gross and a net basis:

	A. Gross Reporting	B. Net Reporting
Revenues	\$1,100,000	\$100,000
Cost of sales	1,002,000	2,000
Gross margin	\$ 98,000	\$ 98,000

Solution to 2:

Flyalot should report revenue on a net basis. Flyalot pays only for tickets it sells to customers and thus does not bear inventory risk. In addition, the airline—not Flyalot—is the primary obligor under the contract. Revenues should be reported as \$100,000.

²⁴ FASB ASC Section 605-45-45 [Revenue Recognition—Principal Agent Considerations—Other Presentation Matters].

3.3 Implications for Financial Analysis

As we have seen, companies use a variety of revenue recognition methods. Furthermore, a single company may use different revenue recognition policies for different businesses. Companies disclose their revenue recognition policies in the notes to their financial statement, often in the first note.

The following aspects of a company's revenue recognition policy are particularly relevant to financial analysis: whether a policy results in recognition of revenue sooner rather than later (sooner is less conservative), and to what extent a policy requires the company to make estimates. In order to analyze a company's financial statements, and particularly to compare one company's financial statements with those of another company, it is helpful to understand any differences in their revenue recognition policies. Although it may not be possible to calculate the monetary effect of differences between particular companies' revenue recognition policies and estimates, it is generally possible to characterize the relative conservatism of a company's policies and to qualitatively assess how differences in policies might affect financial ratios.

EXAMPLE 6

Revenue Recognition Policy for Apple

As disclosed in the excerpt from notes to the consolidated financial statements shown below (emphasis added), Apple Inc. uses different revenue recognition policies depending on the type of revenue producing activity, including product sales, service and support contracts, and products obtained from other companies. Note that these are only the first three paragraphs of Apple's disclosure on revenue recognition; the entire revenue recognition portion has nine paragraphs.

Revenue Recognition

Net sales consist primarily of revenue from the sale of hardware, software, digital content and applications, peripherals, and service and support contracts. The Company recognizes revenue when persuasive evidence of an arrangement exists, delivery has occurred, the sales price is fixed or determinable, and collection is probable. Product is considered delivered to the customer once it has been shipped and title and risk of loss have been transferred. For most of the Company's **product sales**, these criteria are met at the time the product is shipped. For online sales to individuals, for some sales to education customers in the United States, and for certain other sales, the Company defers revenue until the customer receives the product because the Company legally retains a portion of the risk of loss on these sales during transit [*portions omitted*].

Revenue from **service and support contracts** is deferred and recognized ratably over the service coverage periods. These contracts typically include extended phone support, repair services, web-based support resources, diagnostic tools, and extend the service coverage offered under the Company's standard limited warranty.

The Company sells software and peripheral **products obtained from other companies**. The Company generally establishes its own pricing and retains related inventory risk, is the primary obligor in sales transactions with its customers, and assumes the credit risk for amounts billed to its customers. Accordingly, the Company generally recognizes revenue for the sale of products obtained from other companies based on the gross amount billed.

Source: Apple Inc. 10-K/A for the year ended 26 September 2009, as filed with the SEC on 25 January 2010. Emphasis added.

- 1 What criteria does Apple apply to determine when to recognize revenue from product sales?
- 2 What principle underpins the company's deferral of revenue from service and support contracts?

Solution to 1:

Apple recognizes revenue when persuasive evidence of an arrangement exists, delivery has occurred, the sales price is fixed or determinable, and collection is probable. Note that these are just the four US GAAP revenue recognition criteria described in Section 3.1. Note also that Apple recognizes revenue on some product sales at the time of shipment and others at the time of delivery, depending on when its risk of loss ends.

Solution to 2:

The basic principle underpinning the company's deferral of revenue for service and sales contracts is that revenue should be recognized in the period it is earned. Because service under these contracts will be performed in future periods, the company defers the revenue and then recognizes it over the time it is earned.

3.4 Revenue Recognition Accounting Standards Issued May 2014

It is clear from the preceding sections that revenue recognition varies globally, which makes comparisons of revenue challenging. The converged accounting standards issued by the IASB and FASB in May 2014 introduce some changes to the basic principles of revenue recognition and should enhance comparability.²⁵ The standards became effective for reporting periods beginning after 1 January 2018 under IFRS (IFRS 15) and 15 December 2017 under US GAAP. The following section describes key aspects of the standards: the core principle, the five steps in recognizing revenue, treatment of some related costs, and disclosure requirements.

The content of the two standards is nearly identical, and this discussion pertains to both, unless specified otherwise. Issuance of this converged standard is significant because of the differences between IFRS and US GAAP on revenue recognition prior to the converged standard. The converged standard aims to provide a principles-based approach to revenue recognition that can be applied to many types of revenue-generating activities.

The core principle of the converged standard is that revenue should be recognized to “depict the transfer of promised goods or services to customers in an amount that reflects the consideration to which the entity expects to be entitled in an exchange for those goods or services.” To achieve the core principle, the standard describes the application of five steps in recognizing revenue:

- 1 Identify the contract(s) with a customer
- 2 Identify the separate or distinct performance obligations in the contract
- 3 Determine the transaction price

²⁵ IFRS 15 Revenue from Contracts with Customers and FASB ASC Topic 606 (Revenue from Contracts with Customers).

- 4 Allocate the transaction price to the performance obligations in the contract
- 5 Recognize revenue when (or as) the entity satisfies a performance obligation

According to the standard, a contract is an agreement and commitment, with commercial substance, between the contacting parties. It establishes each party's *obligations* and *rights*, including payment terms. In addition, a contract exists only if collectability is probable. Each standard uses the same wording, but the threshold for probable collectability differs. Under IFRS, probable means more likely than not, and under US GAAP it means likely to occur. As a result, economically similar contracts may be treated differently under IFRs and US GAAP.

The performance obligations within a contract represent promises to transfer distinct good(s) or service(s). A good or service is distinct if the customer can benefit from it on its own or in combination with readily available resources and if the promise to transfer it can be separated from other promises in the contract. Each identified performance obligation is accounted for separately.

The transaction price is what the seller estimates will be received in exchange for transferring the good(s) or service(s) identified in the contract. The transaction price is then allocated to each identified performance obligation. Revenue is recognized when a performance obligation is fulfilled. Steps three and four address amount, and step five addresses timing of recognition. The amount recognized reflects expectations about collectability and (if applicable) an allocation to multiple obligations within the same contract. Revenue is recognized when the obligation-satisfying transfer is made.

Revenue should only be recognized when it is highly probable that it will not be subsequently reversed. This may result in the recording of a minimal amount of revenue upon sale when an estimate of total revenue is not reliable. The balance sheet will be required to reflect the entire refund obligation as a liability and will include an asset for the "right to returned goods" based on the carrying amount of inventory less costs of recovery.

When revenue is recognized, a contract asset is presented on the balance sheet. It is only at the point when all performance obligations have been met except for payment that a receivable appears on the seller's balance sheet. If consideration is received in advance of transferring good(s) or service(s), the seller presents a contract liability.

The entity will recognize revenue when it is able to satisfy the performance obligation by transferring control to the customer. Factors to consider when assessing whether the customer has obtained control of an asset at a point in time:

- Entity has a present right to payment,
- Customer has legal title,
- Customer has physical possession,
- Customer has the significant risks and rewards of ownership, and
- Customer has accepted the asset.

For a simple contract with only one deliverable at a single point in time, completing the five steps is straight-forward. For more complex contracts—such as when the performance obligations are satisfied over time, when the terms of the multi-period contracts change, when the performance obligation includes various components of goods and services, or when the compensation is "variable"—accounting choices can be less obvious. The steps in the standards are intended to provide guidance that can be generalized to most situations.

In addition, the standard provides many specific examples. These examples are intended to provide guidance as to how to approach more complex contracts. Some of these examples are summarized in Exhibit 7. Note that the end result for many

examples may not differ substantially from that under revenue recognition standards that were in effect prior to the adoption of the converged standard; instead it is the conceptual approach and, in some cases, the terminology that will differ.

Exhibit 7 Applying the Converged Revenue Recognition Standard

The references in this exhibit are to Examples in IFRS 15 *Revenue from Contracts with Customers* (and ASU 2014-09 (FASB ASC Topic 606)), on which these summaries are based.

Part 1 (ref. Example 10).

Builder Co. enters into a contract with Customer Co. to construct a commercial building. Builder Co. identifies various goods and services to be provided, such as pre-construction engineering, construction of the building's individual components, plumbing, electrical wiring, and interior finishes. With respect to "Identifying the Performance Obligation," should Builder Co. treat each specific item as a separate performance obligation to which revenue should be allocated?

The standard provides two criteria, which must be met, to determine if a good or service is distinct for purposes of identifying performance obligations. First, the customer can benefit from the good or service either on its own or together with other readily available resources. Second, the seller's "promise to transfer the good or service to the customer is separately identifiable from other promises in the contract." In this example, the second criterion is not met because it is the building for which the customer has contracted, not the separate goods and services. The seller will integrate all the goods and services into a combined output and each specific item should not be treated as a distinct good or service but accounted for together as a single performance obligation.

Part 2 (ref. Example 8).

Builder Co.'s contract with Customer Co. to construct the commercial building specifies consideration of \$1 million. Builder Co.'s expected total costs are \$700,000. The Builder incurs \$420,000 in costs in the first year. Assuming that costs incurred provide an appropriate measure of progress toward completing the contract, how much revenue should Builder Co. recognize for the first year?

The standard states that for performance obligations satisfied over time, revenue is recognized over time by measuring progress toward satisfying the obligation. In this case, the Builder has incurred 60% of the total expected costs (\$420,000/\$700,000) and will thus recognize \$600,000 ($60\% \times \1 million) in revenue for the first year.

This is the same amount of revenue that would be recognized using "percentage-of-completion," but that term is not used in the converged standard. Instead, the requirement is to measure progress toward complete satisfaction of the performance obligation.

Part 3 (ref. Example 8).

Assume that Builder Co.'s contract with Customer Co. to construct the commercial building specifies consideration of \$1 million *plus* a bonus of \$200,000 if the building is completed within 2 years. Builder Co. has only limited experience with similar types of contracts and knows that many factors outside its control (e.g., weather, regulatory requirements) could cause delay. Builder Co.'s expected total costs are \$700,000. The Builder incurs \$420,000 in costs in the first year. Assuming that costs incurred provide an appropriate measure of progress toward completing the contract, how much revenue should Builder Co. recognize for the first year?

Exhibit 7 (Continued)

The standard addresses so-called “variable consideration” as part of determining the transaction price. A company is only allowed to recognize variable consideration if it can conclude that it will not have to reverse the cumulative revenue in the future. In this case, Builder Co. does not recognize any of the bonus in year one because it cannot reach the non-reversible conclusion given its limited experience with similar contracts and potential delays from factors outside its control.

Part 4 (ref. Example 8).

Assume all facts from Part 3. In the beginning of year two, Builder Co. and Customer Co. agree to change the building floor plan and modify the contract. As a result the consideration will increase by \$150,000, and the allowable time for achieving the bonus is extended by 6 months. Builder expects its costs will increase by \$120,000. Also, given the additional 6 months to earn the completion bonus, Builder concludes that it now meets the criteria for including the \$200,000 bonus in revenue. How should Builder account for this change in the contract?

Note that previous standards did not provide a general framework for contract modifications. The converged standard provides guidance on whether a change in a contract is a new contract or a modification of an existing contract. To be considered a new contract, the change would need to involve goods and services that are distinct from the goods and services already transferred.

In this case, the change does not meet the criteria of a new contract and is therefore considered a modification of the existing contract, which requires the company to reflect the impact on a cumulative catch-up basis. Therefore, the company must update its transaction price and measure of progress. Builder’s total revenue on the transaction (transaction price) is now \$1.35 million (\$1 million original plus the \$150,000 new consideration plus \$200,000 for the completion bonus). Builder Co.’s progress toward completion is now 51.2% (\$420,000 costs incurred divided by total expected costs of \$820,000). Based on the changes in the contract, the amount of additional revenue to be recognized is \$91,200, calculated as $(51.2\% \times \$1.35 \text{ million})$ minus the \$600,000 already recognized. The additional \$91,200 of revenue would be recognized as a “cumulative catch-up adjustment” on the date of the contract modification.

Some related costs require specific accounting treatment under the new standards. In particular, incremental costs of obtaining a contract and certain costs incurred to fulfill a contract must be capitalized under the new standards (i.e., reported as an asset on the balance sheet rather than as an expense on the income statement). If a company had previously expensed these incremental costs in the years prior to adopting the converged standard, all else equal, its profitability will initially appear higher under the converged standards.

The disclosure requirements are quite extensive. Companies are required at year end²⁶ to disclose information about contracts with customers disaggregated into different categories of contracts. The categories might be based on the type of product, the geographic region, the type of customer or sales channel, the type of contract pricing terms, the contract duration, or the timing of transfers. Companies are also required to disclose balances of any contract-related assets and liabilities and significant changes in those balances, remaining performance obligations and transaction price allocated

²⁶ Interim period disclosures are required under IFRS and US GAAP but differ between them.

to those obligations, and any significant judgments and changes in judgments related to revenue recognition. Significant judgments are those used in determining timing and amounts of revenue to be recognized.

The converged standard is expected to affect some industries more than others. For example, industries where bundled sales are common, such as the telecommunications and software industries, are expected to be significantly affected by the converged standard. For the periods prior to mandated adoption, analysts will give careful attention to early adopters under both IFRS and US GAAP and to all companies' disclosures about the impact of the converged standard.

4

EXPENSE RECOGNITION

Expenses are deducted against revenue to arrive at a company's net profit or loss. Under the IASB *Conceptual Framework*, **expenses** are "decreases in economic benefits during the accounting period in the form of outflows or depletions of assets or incurrences of liabilities that result in decreases in equity, other than those relating to distributions to equity participants."²⁷

The IASB *Conceptual Framework* also states:

The definition of expenses encompasses losses as well as those expenses that arise in the course of the ordinary activities of the enterprise. Expenses that arise in the course of the ordinary activities of the enterprise include, for example, cost of sales, wages and depreciation. They usually take the form of an outflow or depletion of assets such as cash and cash equivalents, inventory, property, plant and equipment.

Losses represent other items that meet the definition of expenses and may, or may not, arise in the course of the ordinary activities of the enterprise. Losses represent decreases in economic benefits and as such they are no different in nature from other expenses. Hence, they are not regarded as a separate element in this *Conceptual Framework*.

Losses include, for example, those resulting from disasters such as fire and flood, as well as those arising on the disposal of non-current assets.²⁸

Similar to the issues with revenue recognition, in a simple hypothetical scenario, expense recognition would not be an issue. For instance, assume a company purchased inventory for cash and sold the entire inventory in the same period. When the company paid for the inventory, absent indications to the contrary, it is clear that the inventory cost has been incurred and when that inventory is sold, it should be recognized as an expense (cost of goods sold) in the financial records. Assume also that the company paid all operating and administrative expenses in cash within each accounting period. In such a simple hypothetical scenario, no issues of expense recognition would arise. In practice, however, as with revenue recognition, determining when expenses should be recognized can be somewhat more complex.

²⁷ IASB *Conceptual Framework*, paragraph 4.25(b).

²⁸ *Ibid.*, paragraphs 4.33–4.35.

4.1 General Principles

In general, a company recognizes expenses in the period that it consumes (i.e., uses up) the economic benefits associated with the expenditure, or loses some previously recognized economic benefit.²⁹

A general principle of expense recognition is the **matching principle**. Strictly speaking, IFRS do not refer to a “matching principle” but rather to a “matching concept” or to a process resulting in “matching of costs with revenues.”³⁰ The distinction is relevant in certain standard setting deliberations. Under matching, a company recognizes some expenses (e.g., cost of goods sold) when associated revenues are recognized and thus, expenses and revenues are matched. Associated revenues and expenses are those that result directly and jointly from the same transactions or events. Unlike the simple scenario in which a company purchases inventory and sells all of the inventory within the same accounting period, in practice, it is more likely that some of the current period’s sales are made from inventory purchased in a previous period or previous periods. It is also likely that some of the inventory purchased in the current period will remain unsold at the end of the current period and so will be sold in a following period. Matching requires that a company recognizes cost of goods sold in the same period as revenues from the sale of the goods.

Period costs, expenditures that less directly match revenues, are reflected in the period when a company makes the expenditure or incurs the liability to pay. Administrative expenses are an example of period costs. Other expenditures that also less directly match revenues relate more directly to future expected benefits; in this case, the expenditures are allocated systematically with the passage of time. An example is depreciation expense.

Examples 7 and 8 demonstrate matching applied to inventory and cost of goods sold.

EXAMPLE 7

The Matching of Inventory Costs with Revenues

Kahn Distribution Limited (KDL) purchases inventory items for resale. At the beginning of 2009, Kahn had no inventory on hand. During 2009, Kahn had the following transactions:

Inventory Purchases

First quarter	2,000	units at \$40 per unit
Second quarter	1,500	units at \$41 per unit
Third quarter	2,200	units at \$43 per unit
Fourth quarter	1,900	units at \$45 per unit
Total	7,600	units at a total cost of \$321,600

KDL sold 5,600 units of inventory during the year at \$50 per unit, and received cash. KDL determines that there were 2,000 remaining units of inventory and specifically identifies that 1,900 were those purchased in the fourth quarter and 100 were purchased in the third quarter. What are the revenue and expense associated with these transactions during 2009 based on specific identification of inventory items as sold or remaining in inventory?

²⁹ Ibid., paragraph 4.49.

³⁰ Ibid., paragraph 4.50.

Solution:

The revenue for 2009 would be \$280,000 (5,600 units × \$50 per unit). Initially, the total cost of the goods purchased would be recorded as inventory (an asset) in the amount of \$321,600. During 2009, the cost of the 5,600 units sold would be expensed (matched against the revenue) while the cost of the 2,000 remaining unsold units would remain in inventory as follows:

Cost of Goods Sold

From the first quarter	2,000 units at \$40 per unit =	\$ 80,000
From the second quarter	1,500 units at \$41 per unit =	\$ 61,500
From the third quarter	2,100 units at \$43 per unit =	\$ 90,300
Total cost of goods sold		<u>\$231,800</u>

Cost of Goods Remaining in Inventory

From the third quarter	100 units at \$43 per unit =	\$ 4,300
From the fourth quarter	1,900 units at \$45 per unit =	\$85,500
Total remaining (or ending) inventory cost		<u>\$89,800</u>

To confirm that total costs are accounted for: \$231,800 + \$89,800 = \$321,600. The cost of the goods sold would be expensed against the revenue of \$280,000 as follows:

Revenue	\$280,000
Cost of goods sold	<u>231,800</u>
Gross profit	<u>\$ 48,200</u>

An alternative way to think about this is that the company created an asset (inventory) of \$321,600 as it made its purchases. At the end of the period, the value of the company's inventory on hand is \$89,800. Therefore, the amount of the Cost of goods sold expense recognized for the period should be the difference: \$231,800.

The remaining inventory amount of \$89,800 will be matched against revenue in a future year when the inventory items are sold.

EXAMPLE 8**Alternative Inventory Costing Methods**

In Example 7, KDL was able to specifically identify which inventory items were sold and which remained in inventory to be carried over to later periods. This is called the **specific identification method** and inventory and cost of goods sold are based on their physical flow. It is generally not feasible to specifically identify which items were sold and which remain on hand, so accounting standards permit the assignment of inventory costs to costs of goods sold and to ending inventory using cost formulas (IFRS terminology) or cost flow assumptions (US GAAP). The cost formula or cost flow assumption determines which goods are assumed to be sold and which goods are assumed to remain in inventory. Both IFRS and US GAAP permit the use of the first in, first out (FIFO) method, and the weighted average cost method to assign costs.

Under the **FIFO method**, the oldest goods purchased (or manufactured) are assumed to be sold first and the newest goods purchased (or manufactured) are assumed to remain in inventory. Cost of goods in beginning inventory and costs

of the first items purchased (or manufactured) flow into cost of goods sold first, as if the earliest items purchased sold first. Ending inventory would, therefore, include the most recent purchases. It turns out that those items specifically identified as sold in Example 7 were also the first items purchased, so in this example, under FIFO, the cost of goods sold would also be \$231,800, calculated as above.

The **weighted average cost method** assigns the average cost of goods available for sale to the units sold and remaining in inventory. The assignment is based on the average cost per unit (total cost of goods available for sale/total units available for sale) and the number of units sold and the number remaining in inventory.

For KDL, the weighted average cost per unit would be

$$\$321,600/7,600 \text{ units} = \$42.3158 \text{ per unit}$$

Cost of goods sold using the weighted average cost method would be

$$5,600 \text{ units at } \$42.3158 = \$236,968$$

Ending inventory using the weighted average cost method would be

$$2,000 \text{ units at } \$42.3158 = \$84,632$$

Another method is permitted under US GAAP but is not permitted under IFRS. This is the last in, first out (LIFO) method. Under the **LIFO method**, the newest goods purchased (or manufactured) are assumed to be sold first and the oldest goods purchased (or manufactured) are assumed to remain in inventory. Costs of the latest items purchased flow into cost of goods sold first, as if the most recent items purchased were sold first. Although this may seem contrary to common sense, it is logical in certain circumstances. For example, lumber in a lumberyard may be stacked up with the oldest lumber on the bottom. As lumber is sold, it is sold from the top of the stack, so the last lumber purchased and put in inventory is the first lumber out. Theoretically, a company should choose a method linked to the physical inventory flows.³¹ Under the LIFO method, in the KDL example, it would be assumed that the 2,000 units remaining in ending inventory would have come from the first quarter's purchases:³²

$$\text{Ending inventory } 2,000 \text{ units at } \$40 \text{ per unit} = \$80,000$$

The remaining costs would be allocated to cost of goods sold under LIFO:

$$\text{Total costs of } \$321,600 \text{ less } \$80,000 \text{ remaining in ending inventory} = \\ \$241,600$$

Alternatively, the cost of the last 5,600 units purchased is allocated to cost of goods sold under LIFO:

$$1,900 \text{ units at } \$45 \text{ per unit} + 2,200 \text{ units at } \$43 \text{ per unit} + 1,500 \text{ units at } \$41 \\ \text{per unit} = \$241,600$$

³¹ Practically, the reason some companies choose to use LIFO in the United States is to reduce taxes. When prices and inventory quantities are rising, LIFO will normally result in higher cost of goods sold and lower income and hence lower taxes. US tax regulations require that if LIFO is used on a company's tax return, it must also be used on the company's GAAP financial statements.

³² If data on the precise timing of quarterly sales were available, the answer would differ because the cost of goods sold would be determined during the quarter rather than at the end of the quarter.

An alternative way to think about expense recognition is that the company created an asset (inventory) of \$321,600 as it made its purchases. At the end of the period, the value of the company's inventory is \$80,000. Therefore, the amount of the Cost of goods sold expense recognized for the period should be the difference: \$241,600.

Exhibit 8 summarizes and compares inventory costing methods.

Exhibit 8 Summary Table on Inventory Costing Methods

Method	Description	Cost of Goods Sold When Prices Are Rising, Relative to Other Two Methods	Ending Inventory When Prices Are Rising, Relative to Other Two Methods
FIFO (first in, first out)	Costs of the earliest items purchased flow to cost of goods sold first	Lowest	Highest
LIFO (last in, first out)	Costs of the most recent items purchased flow to cost of goods sold first	Highest*	Lowest*
Weighted average cost	Averages total costs over total units available	Middle	Middle

*Assumes no LIFO layer liquidation. **LIFO layer liquidation** occurs when the volume of sales exceeds the volume of purchases in the period so that some sales are assumed to be made from existing, relatively low-priced inventory rather than from more recent purchases.

4.2 Issues in Expense Recognition

The following sections cover applications of the principles of expense recognition to certain common situations.

4.2.1 Doubtful Accounts

When a company sells its products or services on credit, it is likely that some customers will ultimately default on their obligations (i.e., fail to pay). At the time of the sale, it is not known which customer will default. (If it were known that a particular customer would ultimately default, presumably a company would not sell on credit to that customer.) One possible approach to recognizing credit losses on customer receivables would be for the company to wait until such time as a customer defaulted and only then recognize the loss (**direct write-off method**). Such an approach would usually not be consistent with generally accepted accounting principles.

Under the matching principle, at the time revenue is recognized on a sale, a company is required to record an estimate of how much of the revenue will ultimately be uncollectible. Companies make such estimates based on previous experience with uncollectible accounts. Such estimates may be expressed as a proportion of the overall amount of sales, the overall amount of receivables, or the amount of receivables overdue by a specific amount of time. The company records its estimate of uncollectible amounts as an expense on the income statement, not as a direct reduction of revenues.

4.2.2 Warranties

At times, companies offer warranties on the products they sell. If the product proves deficient in some respect that is covered under the terms of the warranty, the company will incur an expense to repair or replace the product. At the time of sale, the company does not know the amount of future expenses it will incur in connection with its

warranties. One possible approach would be for a company to wait until actual expenses are incurred under the warranty and to reflect the expense at that time. However, this would not result in a matching of the expense with the associated revenue.

Under the matching principle, a company is required to estimate the amount of future expenses resulting from its warranties, to recognize an estimated warranty expense in the period of the sale, and to update the expense as indicated by experience over the life of the warranty.

4.2.3 Depreciation and Amortisation

Companies commonly incur costs to obtain long-lived assets. **Long-lived assets** are assets expected to provide economic benefits over a future period of time greater than one year. Examples are land (property), plant, equipment, and **intangible assets** (assets lacking physical substance) such as trademarks. The costs of most long-lived assets are allocated over the period of time during which they provide economic benefits. The two main types of long-lived assets whose costs are *not* allocated over time are land and those intangible assets with indefinite useful lives.

Depreciation is the process of systematically allocating costs of long-lived assets over the period during which the assets are expected to provide economic benefits. “Depreciation” is the term commonly applied to this process for physical long-lived assets such as plant and equipment (land is not depreciated), and **amortisation** is the term commonly applied to this process for intangible long-lived assets with a finite useful life.³³ Examples of intangible long-lived assets with a finite useful life include an acquired mailing list, an acquired patent with a set expiration date, and an acquired copyright with a set legal life. The term “amortisation” is also commonly applied to the systematic allocation of a premium or discount relative to the face value of a fixed-income security over the life of the security.

IFRS allow two alternative models for valuing property, plant, and equipment: the cost model and the revaluation model.³⁴ Under the cost model, the depreciable amount of that asset (cost less residual value) is allocated on a systematic basis over the remaining useful life of the asset. Under the cost model, the asset is reported at its cost less any accumulated depreciation. Under the revaluation model, the asset is reported at its fair value. The revaluation model is not permitted under US GAAP. Here, we will focus only on the cost model. There are two other differences between IFRS and US GAAP to note: IFRS require each component of an asset to be depreciated separately and US GAAP do not require component depreciation; and IFRS require an annual review of residual value and useful life, and US GAAP do not explicitly require such a review.

The method used to compute depreciation should reflect the pattern over which the economic benefits of the asset are expected to be consumed. IFRS do not prescribe a particular method for computing depreciation but note that several methods are commonly used, such as the straight-line method, diminishing balance method (accelerated depreciation), and the units of production method (depreciation varies depending upon production or usage).

The **straight-line method** allocates evenly the cost of long-lived assets less estimated residual value over the estimated useful life of an asset. (The term “straight line” derives from the fact that the annual depreciation expense, if represented as a line graph over time, would be a straight line. In addition, a plot of the cost of the asset

³³ Intangible assets with indefinite life are not amortised. Instead, they are reviewed each period as to the reasonableness of continuing to assume an indefinite useful life and are tested at least annually for impairment (i.e., if the recoverable or fair value of an intangible asset is materially lower than its value in the company’s books, the value of the asset is considered to be impaired and its value must be decreased). IAS 38, *Intangible Assets* and FASB ASC Topic 350 [Intangibles–Goodwill and Other].

³⁴ IAS No. 16, *Property, Plant, and Equipment*.

minus the cumulative amount of annual depreciation expense, if represented as a line graph over time, would be a straight line with a negative downward slope.) Calculating depreciation and amortisation requires two significant estimates: the estimated useful life of an asset and the estimated residual value (also known as “salvage value”) of an asset. Under IFRS, the residual value is the amount that the company expects to receive upon sale of the asset at the end of its useful life. Example 9 assumes that an item of equipment is depreciated using the straight-line method and illustrates how the annual depreciation expense varies under different estimates of the useful life and estimated residual value of an asset. As shown, annual depreciation expense is sensitive to both the estimated useful life and to the estimated residual value.

EXAMPLE 9

Sensitivity of Annual Depreciation Expense to Varying Estimates of Useful Life and Residual Value

Using the straight-line method of depreciation, annual depreciation expense is calculated as:

$$\frac{\text{Cost} - \text{Residual value}}{\text{Estimated useful life}}$$

Assume the cost of an asset is \$10,000. If, for example, the residual value of the asset is estimated to be \$0 and its useful life is estimated to be 5 years, the annual depreciation expense under the straight-line method would be $(\$10,000 - \$0)/5 \text{ years} = \$2,000$. In contrast, holding the estimated useful life of the asset constant at 5 years but increasing the estimated residual value of the asset to \$4,000 would result in annual depreciation expense of only \$1,200 [calculated as $(\$10,000 - \$4,000)/5 \text{ years}$]. Alternatively, holding the estimated residual value at \$0 but increasing the estimated useful life of the asset to 10 years would result in annual depreciation expense of only \$1,000 [calculated as $(\$10,000 - \$0)/10 \text{ years}$]. Exhibit 9 shows annual depreciation expense for various combinations of estimated useful life and residual value.

Exhibit 9 Annual Depreciation Expense (in Dollars)

Estimated Useful Life (Years)	Estimated Residual Value					
	0	1,000	2,000	3,000	4,000	5,000
2	5,000	4,500	4,000	3,500	3,000	2,500
4	2,500	2,250	2,000	1,750	1,500	1,250
5	2,000	1,800	1,600	1,400	1,200	1,000
8	1,250	1,125	1,000	875	750	625
10	1,000	900	800	700	600	500

Generally, alternatives to the straight-line method of depreciation are called **accelerated methods** of depreciation because they accelerate (i.e., speed up) the timing of depreciation. Accelerated depreciation methods allocate a greater proportion of the cost to the early years of an asset’s useful life. These methods are appropriate if the

plant or equipment is expected to be used up faster in the early years (e.g., an automobile). A commonly used accelerated method is the **diminishing balance method**, (also known as the declining balance method). The diminishing balance method is demonstrated in Example 10.

EXAMPLE 10

An Illustration of Diminishing Balance Depreciation

Assume the cost of computer equipment was \$11,000, the estimated residual value is \$1,000, and the estimated useful life is five years. Under the diminishing or declining balance method, the first step is to determine the straight-line rate, the rate at which the asset would be depreciated under the straight-line method. This rate is measured as 100 percent divided by the useful life or 20 percent for a five-year useful life. Under the straight-line method, 1/5 or 20 percent of the depreciable cost of the asset (here, \$11,000 – \$1,000 = \$10,000) would be expensed each year for five years: The depreciation expense would be \$2,000 per year.

The next step is to determine an acceleration factor that approximates the pattern of the asset's wear. Common acceleration factors are 150 percent and 200 percent. The latter is known as **double declining balance depreciation** because it depreciates the asset at double the straight-line rate. Using the 200 percent acceleration factor, the diminishing balance rate would be 40 percent (20 percent \times 2.0). This rate is then applied to the remaining undepreciated balance of the asset each period (known as the **net book value**).

At the beginning of the first year, the net book value is \$11,000. Depreciation expense for the first full year of use of the asset would be 40 percent of \$11,000, or \$4,400. Under this method, the residual value, if any, is generally not used in the computation of the depreciation each period (the 40 percent is applied to \$11,000 rather than to \$11,000 minus residual value). However, the company will stop taking depreciation when the salvage value is reached.

At the beginning of Year 2, the net book value is measured as

Asset cost	\$11,000
Less: Accumulated depreciation	(4,400)
Net book value	\$6,600

For the second full year, depreciation expense would be \$6,600 \times 40 percent, or \$2,640. At the end of the second year (i.e., beginning of the third year), a total of \$7,040 (\$4,400 + \$2,640) of depreciation would have been recorded. So, the remaining net book value at the beginning of the third year would be

Asset cost	\$11,000
Less: Accumulated depreciation	(7,040)
Net book value	\$3,960

For the third full year, depreciation would be \$3,960 \times 40 percent, or \$1,584. At the end of the third year, a total of \$8,624 (\$4,400 + \$2,640 + \$1,584) of depreciation would have been recorded. So, the remaining net book value at the beginning of the fourth year would be

Asset cost	\$11,000
Less: Accumulated depreciation	(8,624)
Net book value	\$2,376

For the fourth full year, depreciation would be $\$2,376 \times 40$ percent, or \$950. At the end of the fourth year, a total of \$9,574 ($\$4,400 + \$2,640 + \$1,584 + \950) of depreciation would have been recorded. So, the remaining net book value at the beginning of the fifth year would be

Asset cost	\$11,000
Less: Accumulated depreciation	<u>(9,574)</u>
Net book value	<u>\$1,426</u>

For the fifth year, if depreciation were determined as in previous years, it would amount to \$570 ($\$1,426 \times 40$ percent). However, this would result in a remaining net book value of the asset below its estimated residual value of \$1,000. So, instead, only \$426 would be depreciated, leaving a \$1,000 net book value at the end of the fifth year.

Asset cost	\$11,000
Less: Accumulated depreciation	<u>(10,000)</u>
Net book value	<u>\$1,000</u>

Companies often use a zero or small residual value, which creates problems for diminishing balance depreciation because the asset never fully depreciates. In order to fully depreciate the asset over the initially estimated useful life when a zero or small residual value is assumed, companies often adopt a depreciation policy that combines the diminishing balance and straight-line methods. An example would be a depreciation policy of using double-declining balance depreciation and switching to the straight-line method halfway through the useful life.

Under accelerated depreciation methods, there is a higher depreciation expense in early years relative to the straight-line method. This results in higher expenses and lower net income in the early depreciation years. In later years, there is a reversal with accelerated depreciation expense lower than straight-line depreciation. Accelerated depreciation is sometimes referred to as a conservative accounting choice because it results in lower net income in the early years of asset use.

For those intangible assets that must be amortised (those with an identifiable useful life), the process is the same as for depreciation; only the name of the expense is different. IFRS state that if a pattern cannot be determined over the useful life, then the straight-line method should be used.³⁵ In most cases under IFRS and US GAAP, amortisable intangible assets are amortised using the straight-line method with no residual value. **Goodwill**³⁶ and intangible assets with indefinite life are not amortised. Instead, they are tested at least annually for impairment (i.e., if the current value of an intangible asset or goodwill is materially lower than its value in the company's books, the value of the asset is considered to be impaired and its value in the company's books must be decreased).

In summary, to calculate depreciation and amortisation, a company must choose a method, estimate the asset's useful life, and estimate residual value. Clearly, different choices have a differing effect on depreciation or amortisation expense and, therefore, on reported net income.

³⁵ IAS 38, *Intangible Assets*.

³⁶ Goodwill is recorded in acquisitions and is the amount by which the price to purchase an entity exceeds the amount of net identifiable assets acquired (the total amount of identifiable assets acquired less liabilities assumed).

4.3 Implications for Financial Analysis

A company's estimates for doubtful accounts and/or for warranty expenses can affect its reported net income. Similarly, a company's choice of depreciation or amortisation method, estimates of assets' useful lives, and estimates of assets' residual values can affect reported net income. These are only a few of the choices and estimates that affect a company's reported net income.

As with revenue recognition policies, a company's choice of expense recognition can be characterized by its relative conservatism. A policy that results in recognition of expenses later rather than sooner is considered less conservative. In addition, many items of expense require the company to make estimates that can significantly affect net income. Analysis of a company's financial statements, and particularly comparison of one company's financial statements with those of another, requires an understanding of differences in these estimates and their potential impact.

If, for example, a company shows a significant year-to-year change in its estimates of uncollectible accounts as a percentage of sales, warranty expenses as a percentage of sales, or estimated useful lives of assets, the analyst should seek to understand the underlying reasons. Do the changes reflect a change in business operations (e.g., lower estimated warranty expenses reflecting recent experience of fewer warranty claims because of improved product quality)? Or are the changes seemingly unrelated to changes in business operations and thus possibly a signal that a company is manipulating estimates in order to achieve a particular effect on its reported net income?

As another example, if two companies in the same industry have dramatically different estimates for uncollectible accounts as a percentage of their sales, warranty expenses as a percentage of sales, or estimated useful lives as a percentage of assets, it is important to understand the underlying reasons. Are the differences consistent with differences in the two companies' business operations (e.g., lower uncollectible accounts for one company reflecting a different, more creditworthy customer base or possibly stricter credit policies)? Another difference consistent with differences in business operations would be a difference in estimated useful lives of assets if one of the companies employs newer equipment. Or, alternatively, are the differences seemingly inconsistent with differences in the two companies' business operations, possibly signaling that a company is manipulating estimates?

Information about a company's accounting policies and significant estimates are described in the notes to the financial statements and in the management discussion and analysis section of a company's annual report.

When possible, the monetary effect of differences in expense recognition policies and estimates can facilitate more meaningful comparisons with a single company's historical performance or across a number of companies. An analyst can use the monetary effect to adjust the reported expenses so that they are on a comparable basis.

Even when the monetary effects of differences in policies and estimates cannot be calculated, it is generally possible to characterize the relative conservatism of the policies and estimates and, therefore, to qualitatively assess how such differences might affect reported expenses and thus financial ratios.

NON-RECURRING ITEMS AND NON-OPERATING ITEMS

5

From a company's income statements, we can see its earnings from last year and in the previous year. Looking forward, the question is: What will the company earn next year and in the years after?

To assess a company's future earnings, it is helpful to separate those prior years' items of income and expense that are likely to continue in the future from those items that are less likely to continue.³⁷ Some items from prior years are clearly not expected to continue in the future periods and are separately disclosed on a company's income statement. This is consistent with "An entity shall present additional line items, headings, and subtotals ... when such presentation is relevant to an understanding of the entity's financial performance."³⁸ IFRS describe considerations that enter into the decision to present information other than that explicitly specified by a standard. US GAAP specify some of the items that should be reported separately. Two such items are 1) discontinued operations, and 2) extraordinary items (the latter category is not permitted under IFRS). These two items, if applicable, must be reported separately from continuing operations under US GAAP.³⁹ US GAAP for fiscal periods beginning after December 15, 2015, will no longer include the concept of extraordinary items. Other items that may be reported separately on a company's income statement, such as unusual items, items that occur infrequently, effects due to accounting changes, and non-operating income, require the analyst to make some judgments.

5.1 Discontinued Operations

When a company disposes of or establishes a plan to dispose of one of its component operations and will have no further involvement in the operation, the income statement reports separately the effect of this disposal as a "discontinued" operation under both IFRS and US GAAP. Financial standards provide various criteria for reporting the effect separately, which are generally that the discontinued component must be separable both physically and operationally.⁴⁰

Because the discontinued operation will no longer provide earnings (or cash flow) to the company, an analyst can eliminate discontinued operations in formulating expectations about a company's future financial performance.

In Exhibit 2, Kraft reported earnings and gains from discontinued operations of \$1,045 million in 2008 and \$232 million in 2007. In Note 2 of its financial statements, Kraft explains that it split off its Post Cereals business. The earnings and gains from discontinued operations of \$1,045 million in 2008 and \$232 million in 2007 refer to the amount of earnings of the cereal business in each of those years, up to the date it was split off.

5.2 Extraordinary Items

IFRS prohibit classification of any income or expense items as being "extraordinary."⁴¹ For reporting periods beginning after December 15, 2015, US GAAP will no longer include the concept of extraordinary items. Under US GAAP, extraordinary items, which were both unusual in nature and occur infrequently, were presented separately on the income statement and allow a reader of the statements to see that these items are not part of a company's operating activities and are not expected to occur on an ongoing basis. Extraordinary items were shown net of tax and appear on the income statement below discontinued operations. An example of an extraordinary item is provided in Exhibit 10.

³⁷ In business writing, items expected to continue in the future are often described as "persistent" or "permanent," whereas those not expected to continue are described as "transitory."

³⁸ IAS No. 1, *Presentation of Financial Statements*, paragraph 85.

³⁹ These requirements apply to material amounts.

⁴⁰ IFRS No. 5, *Non-Current Assets Held for Sale and Discontinued Operations*, paragraphs 31–33.

⁴¹ IAS No. 1, *Presentation of Financial Statements*, paragraph 87.

Exhibit 10 Extraordinary Gain on Debt Forgiveness

In its annual report, ForgeHouse, Inc. made the following disclosure describing an extraordinary gain on debt forgiveness:

On September 30, 2009, the Company entered into a Debt Forgiveness Agreement with Insurance Medical Group Limited (f/k/a After All Limited), Bryan Irving, and Ian Morl, pursuant to which \$785,000 (plus accrued and unpaid interest and any penalties of \$80,141) of the Company's outstanding obligations in favor of Arngrove Group Holdings were forgiven and all \$200,000 (plus accrued and unpaid interest and any penalties of \$23,418) of the Company's outstanding obligations in favor of After All Group, Limited, was forgiven. Gain on these two debt restructurings was a gross of \$1,088,559 for the year ended December 31, 2009.

In December 2009, the Company entered into agreements with two of its vendors to reduce the amounts owed to the vendors in exchange for upfront payments. Gain on the restructure of amounts owed to the two vendors was \$244,041.

These amounts are presented in the statement of operations net of income taxes of \$453,084 for a net extraordinary gain on debt restructuring of \$879,516.

Source: ForgeHouse, Inc. 10-K for fiscal year ended 31 December 2009, filed 14 May 2010: Note 6.

Companies had to apply judgment, which was time consuming, to determine whether an item was extraordinary based on guidance from accounting standards.⁴²

Given the requirements for classification of an item as extraordinary—unusual and infrequent—the classification was rarely used. Under the new guidance, items will simply be classified as unusual, infrequent, or unusual and infrequent.

5.3 Unusual or Infrequent Items

IFRS require that items of income or expense that are material and/or relevant to the understanding of the entity's financial performance should be disclosed separately. Unusual or infrequent items are likely to meet these criteria. Under US GAAP, material items that are unusual or infrequent, and that are both as of reporting periods beginning after December 15, 2015, are shown as part of a company's continuing operations but are presented separately. For example, restructuring charges, such as costs to close plants and employee termination costs, are considered part of a company's ordinary activities. As another example, gains and losses arising when a company sells an asset or part of a business, for more or less than its carrying value, are also disclosed separately on the income statement. These sales are considered ordinary business activities.

Highlighting the unusual or infrequent nature of these items assists an analyst in judging the likelihood that such items will reoccur. This meets the IFRS criteria of disclosing items that are relevant to the understanding of an entity's financial performance. Exhibit 11 shows such disclosure.

⁴² FASB ASC Section 225–20–45 [Income Statement-Extraordinary and Unusual Items–Other Presentation Matters].

Exhibit 11 Highlighting Infrequent Nature of Items Excerpt from Roche Group Consolidated Income Statement (in millions of CHF, Year ended 31 December 2009)

[portions omitted]

Operating profit before exceptional items	15,012
Major legal cases	(320)
Changes in Group organisation	(2,415)
Operating profit	12,277
<i>[portions omitted]</i>	

In Exhibit 11, Roche Group, a Swiss healthcare company, shows operating profit before and after exceptional items. The exceptional items relate to major legal cases and changes in the organization. The company's notes explain both items further. The costs for changes in the organization relate to Roche's acquisition of Genentech and major changes to certain manufacturing and commercial centers. Generally, in forecasting future operations, an analyst would assess whether the items reported are likely to reoccur and also possible implications for future earnings. It is generally not advisable simply to ignore all unusual items.

5.4 Changes in Accounting Policies

At times, standard setters issue new standards that require companies to change accounting policies. Companies may be permitted to adopt the standards prospectively (in the future) or retrospectively (restate financial statements as though the standard existed in the past). In other cases, changes in accounting policies (e.g., from one acceptable inventory costing method to another) are made for other reasons, such as providing a better reflection of the company's performance. Changes in accounting policies are reported through retrospective application⁴³ unless it is impractical to do so.

Retrospective application means that the financial statements for all fiscal years shown in a company's financial report are presented as if the newly adopted accounting principle had been used throughout the entire period. Notes to the financial statements describe the change and explain the justification for the change. Because changes in accounting principles are retrospectively applied, the financial statements that appear within a financial report are comparable. So, if a company's annual report for 2009 includes its financial statements for fiscal years 2007, 2008, and 2009, all of these statements will be comparable.

Example 11 presents an excerpt from the 25 January 2010 10-K/A of Apple Inc. Apple amended its previously filed 10-K to reflect the company's retrospective adoption of an FASB accounting standard related to revenue recognition for multi-deliverables.

⁴³ IAS No. 8, *Accounting Policies, Changes in Accounting Estimates and Errors*, and FASB ASC Topic 250 [Accounting Changes and Error Corrections].

EXAMPLE 11**Revenue Recognition: A Change in Accounting Principle**

Apple's amended 10-K for the year ended 26 September 2009 explains how a change in accounting standards (the company refers to these as accounting principles) affects its financial statements. The following excerpt (emphasis added) is from the explanatory note included in the amendment.

Under the historical accounting principles, the Company was required to account for sales of both iPhone and Apple TV using subscription accounting because the Company indicated it might from time-to-time provide future unspecified software upgrades and features for those products free of charge. Under **subscription accounting**, revenue and associated product cost of sales for iPhone and Apple TV were deferred at the time of sale and recognized on a straight-line basis over each product's estimated economic life. This resulted in the deferral of significant amounts of revenue and cost of sales related to iPhone and Apple TV. Costs incurred by the Company for engineering, sales, marketing and warranty were expensed as incurred. As of September 26, 2009, based on the historical accounting principles, total accumulated deferred revenue and deferred costs associated with past iPhone and Apple TV sales were \$12.1 billion and \$5.2 billion, respectively.

The **new accounting principles generally require the Company to account for the sale of both iPhone and Apple TV as two deliverables**. The first deliverable is the hardware and software delivered at the time of sale, and the second deliverable is the right included with the purchase of iPhone and Apple TV to receive on a when-and-if-available basis future unspecified software upgrades and features relating to the product's software. **The new accounting principles result in the recognition of substantially all of the revenue and product costs from sales of iPhone and Apple TV at the time of sale**. Additionally, the Company is required to estimate a standalone selling price for the unspecified software upgrade right included with the sale of iPhone and Apple TV and recognizes that amount ratably over the 24-month estimated life of the related hardware device. For all periods presented, the Company's estimated selling price for the software upgrade right included with each iPhone and Apple TV sold is \$25 and \$10, respectively. The adoption of the new accounting principles increased the Company's net sales by \$6.4 billion, \$5.0 billion and \$572 million for 2009, 2008 and 2007, respectively. As of September 26, 2009, the revised total accumulated deferred revenue associated with iPhone and Apple TV sales to date was \$483 million; revised accumulated deferred costs for such sales were zero.

Source: Apple Inc. 10-K/A for the year ended 26 September 2009, as filed with the SEC on 25 January 2010. Emphasis added.

- 1 Under the historical accounting principle, how would the revenue from a sale of an iPhone be reflected in Apple's financial statements?
- 2 How and why did adoption of the new accounting principles affect Apple's revenues in 2009?

Solution to 1:

Under the historical accounting principle (standard), a sale of an iPhone was treated as a subscription sale and revenue was not recognized at the time of sale. Rather, the sale would result in a liability entitled “deferred revenue.” In subsequent periods, the company would recognize as revenue a portion of the revenue from that sale and reduce the amount of deferred revenue by the same amount. Disclosures about deferred revenue can be helpful to an analyst in developing expectations about future revenues.

Solution to 2:

Adoption of the new accounting principles (standards) increased the company’s 2009 net sales (revenue) by \$6.4 billion. The reason for the increase is that the new standard allowed the company to separate the revenue from the iPhone into two separate components and to report revenue from them separately.

In years prior to 2005, under both IFRS and US GAAP, the cumulative effect of changes in accounting policies was typically shown at the bottom of the income statement in the year of change instead of using retrospective application. It is possible that future accounting standards may occasionally require a company to report the change differently than retrospective application. Note disclosures are required to explain how the transition from the old standard to the new one is handled. During the period when companies make the transition from the old standard to the new, an analyst can examine disclosures to ensure comparability across companies.

In contrast to changes in accounting policies (such as whether to expense the cost of employee stock options), companies sometimes make *changes in accounting estimates* (such as the useful life of a depreciable asset). Changes in accounting estimates are handled prospectively, with the change affecting the financial statements for the period of change and future periods. No adjustments are made to prior statements, and the adjustment is not shown on the face of the income statement. Significant changes should be disclosed in the notes.

Another possible adjustment is a *correction of an error for a prior period* (e.g., in financial statements issued for an earlier year). This cannot be handled by simply adjusting the current period income statement. Correction of an error for a prior period is handled by restating the financial statements (including the balance sheet, statement of owners’ equity, and cash flow statement) for the prior periods presented in the current financial statements.⁴⁴ Note disclosures are required regarding the error. These disclosures should be examined carefully because they may reveal weaknesses in the company’s accounting systems and financial controls.

5.5 Non-Operating Items

Non-operating items are typically reported separately from operating income because they are material and/or relevant to the understanding of the entity’s financial performance. Under IFRS, there is no definition of operating activities, and companies that choose to report operating income or the results of operating activities should ensure that these represent activities that are normally regarded as operating. Under US GAAP, operating activities generally involve producing and delivering goods and providing services and include all transactions and other events that are not defined as investing or financing activities.⁴⁵ For example, if a non-financial service company

⁴⁴ Ibid.

⁴⁵ FASB ASC *Master Glossary*.

invests in equity or debt securities issued by another company, any interest, dividends, or profits from sales of these securities will be shown as non-operating income. In general, for non-financial services companies,⁴⁶ non-operating income that is disclosed separately on the income statement (or in the notes) includes amounts earned through investing activities.

Among non-operating items on the income statement (or accompanying notes), non-financial service companies also disclose the interest expense on their debt securities, including amortisation of any discount or premium. The amount of interest expense is related to the amount of a company's borrowings and is generally described in the notes to the financial statements. For financial service companies, interest income and expense are likely components of operating activities. (Note that the characterization of interest and dividends as non-operating items on the income statement is not necessarily consistent with the classification on the statement of cash flows. Specifically, under IFRS, interest and dividends received can be shown either as operating or as investing on the statement of cash flows, while under US GAAP interest and dividends received are shown as operating cash flows. Under IFRS, interest and dividends paid can be shown either as operating or as financing on the statement of cash flows, while under US GAAP, interest paid is shown as operating and dividends paid are shown as financing.)

In practice, investing and financing activities may be disclosed on a net basis, with the components disclosed separately in the notes. In its income statement for 2009 (Exhibit 1), Groupe Danone, for example, disclosed net interest expense (cost of net debt) of €264 million. The net amount is the €340 million of interest expense minus €76 million interest revenue. The financial statement notes (not shown) provide further disclosure about the expense.

For purposes of assessing a company's future performance, the amount of financing expense will depend on the company's financing policy (target capital structure) and borrowing costs. The amount of investing income will depend on the purpose and success of investing activities. For a non-financial company, a significant amount of financial income would typically warrant further exploration. What are the reasons underlying the company's investments in the securities of other companies? Is the company simply investing excess cash in short-term securities to generate income higher than cash deposits, or is the company purchasing securities issued by other companies for strategic reasons, such as access to raw material supply or research?

EARNINGS PER SHARE

6

One metric of particular importance to an equity investor is earnings per share (EPS). EPS is an input into ratios such as the price/earnings ratio. Additionally, each shareholder in a company owns a different number of shares. IFRS require the presentation of EPS on the face of the income statement for net profit or loss (net income) and profit or loss (income) from continuing operations.⁴⁷ Similar presentation is required under US GAAP.⁴⁸ This section outlines the calculations for EPS and explains how the calculation differs for a simple versus complex capital structure.

⁴⁶ Examples of financial services companies are insurance companies, banks, brokers, dealers, and investment companies.

⁴⁷ IAS No. 33, *Earnings Per Share*.

⁴⁸ FASB ASC Topic 260 [Earnings Per Share].

6.1 Simple versus Complex Capital Structure

A company's capital is composed of its equity and debt. Some types of equity have preference over others, and some debt (and other instruments) may be converted into equity. Under IFRS, the type of equity for which EPS is presented is referred to as ordinary. **Ordinary shares** are those equity shares that are subordinate to all other types of equity. The ordinary shareholders are basically the owners of the company—the equity holders who are paid last in a liquidation of the company and who benefit the most when the company does well. Under US GAAP, this ordinary equity is referred to as **common stock** or **common shares**, reflecting US language usage. The terms “ordinary shares,” “common stock,” and “common shares” are used interchangeably in the following discussion.

When a company has issued any financial instruments that are potentially convertible into common stock, it is said to have a complex capital structure. Examples of financial instruments that are potentially convertible into common stock include convertible bonds, convertible preferred stock, employee stock options, and warrants.⁴⁹ If a company's capital structure does not include such potentially convertible financial instruments, it is said to have a simple capital structure.

The distinction between simple versus complex capital structure is relevant to the calculation of EPS because financial instruments that are potentially convertible into common stock could, as a result of conversion or exercise, potentially dilute (i.e., decrease) EPS. Information about such a potential dilution is valuable to a company's current and potential shareholders; therefore, accounting standards require companies to disclose what their EPS would be if all dilutive financial instruments were converted into common stock. The EPS that would result if all dilutive financial instruments were converted is called **diluted EPS**. In contrast, **basic EPS** is calculated using the reported earnings available to common shareholders of the parent company and the weighted average number of shares outstanding.

Companies are required to report both basic and diluted EPS. For example, Danone reported basic EPS (“before dilution”) and diluted EPS (“after dilution”) of €2.57 for 2009, somewhat lower than 2008. Kraft reported basic EPS of \$2.04 and diluted EPS of \$2.03 for 2009, much higher than basic and diluted EPS (from continuing operations) of \$1.22 and \$1.21 for 2008. (The EPS information appears at the bottom of Danone's and Kraft's income statements.) An analyst would try to determine the causes underlying the changes in EPS, a topic we will address following an explanation of the calculations of both basic and diluted EPS.

6.2 Basic EPS

Basic EPS is the amount of income available to common shareholders divided by the weighted average number of common shares outstanding over a period. The amount of income available to common shareholders is the amount of net income remaining after preferred dividends (if any) have been paid. Thus, the formula to calculate basic EPS is:

$$\text{Basic EPS} = \frac{\text{Net income} - \text{Preferred dividends}}{\text{Weighted average number of shares outstanding}} \quad (1)$$

⁴⁹ A warrant is a call option typically attached to securities issued by a company, such as bonds. A warrant gives the holder the right to acquire the company's stock from the company at a specified price within a specified time period. IFRS and US GAAP standards regarding earnings per share apply equally to call options, warrants, and equivalent instruments.

The weighted average number of shares outstanding is a time weighting of common shares outstanding. For example, assume a company began the year with 2,000,000 common shares outstanding and repurchased 100,000 common shares on 1 July. The weighted average number of common shares outstanding would be the sum of 2,000,000 shares \times 1/2 year + 1,900,000 shares \times 1/2 year, or 1,950,000 shares. So the company would use 1,950,000 shares as the weighted average number of shares in calculating its basic EPS.

If the number of shares of common stock increases as a result of a stock dividend or a stock split, the EPS calculation reflects the change retroactively to the beginning of the period.

Examples 12, 13, and 14 illustrate the computation of basic EPS.

EXAMPLE 12

A Basic EPS Calculation (1)

For the year ended 31 December 2009, Shopalot Company had net income of \$1,950,000. The company had 1,500,000 shares of common stock outstanding, no preferred stock, and no convertible financial instruments. What is Shopalot's basic EPS?

Solution:

Shopalot's basic EPS is \$1.30 (\$1,950,000 divided by 1,500,000 shares).

EXAMPLE 13

A Basic EPS Calculation (2)

For the year ended 31 December 2009, Angler Products had net income of \$2,500,000. The company declared and paid \$200,000 of dividends on preferred stock. The company also had the following common stock share information:

Shares outstanding on 1 January 2009	1,000,000
Shares issued on 1 April 2009	200,000
Shares repurchased (treasury shares) on 1 October 2009	(100,000)
Shares outstanding on 31 December 2009	1,100,000

- 1 What is the company's weighted average number of shares outstanding?
- 2 What is the company's basic EPS?

Solution to 1:

The weighted average number of shares outstanding is determined by the length of time each quantity of shares was outstanding:

1,000,000 \times (3 months/12 months) =	250,000
1,200,000 \times (6 months/12 months) =	600,000
1,100,000 \times (3 months/12 months) =	275,000
Weighted average number of shares outstanding	1,125,000

Solution to 2:

Basic EPS = (Net income – Preferred dividends)/Weighted average number of shares = $(\$2,500,000 - \$200,000)/1,125,000 = \$2.04$

EXAMPLE 14**A Basic EPS Calculation (3)**

Assume the same facts as in Example 13 except that on 1 December 2009, a previously declared 2 for 1 stock split took effect. Each shareholder of record receives two shares in exchange for each current share that he or she owns. What is the company's basic EPS?

Solution:

For EPS calculation purposes, a stock split is treated as if it occurred at the beginning of the period. The weighted average number of shares would, therefore, be 2,250,000, and the basic EPS would be \$1.02 [= $(\$2,500,000 - \$200,000)/2,250,000$].

6.3 Diluted EPS

If a company has a simple capital structure (in other words, one that includes no potentially dilutive financial instruments), then its basic EPS is equal to its diluted EPS. However, if a company has potentially dilutive financial instruments, its diluted EPS may differ from its basic EPS. Diluted EPS, by definition, is always equal to or less than basic EPS. The sections below describe the effects of three types of potentially dilutive financial instruments on diluted EPS: convertible preferred, convertible debt, and employee stock options. The final section explains why not all potentially dilutive financial instruments actually result in a difference between basic and diluted EPS.

6.3.1 Diluted EPS When a Company Has Convertible Preferred Stock Outstanding

When a company has convertible preferred stock outstanding, diluted EPS is calculated using the **if-converted method**. The if-converted method is based on what EPS would have been if the convertible preferred securities had been converted at the beginning of the period. In other words, the method calculates what the effect would have been if the convertible preferred shares converted at the beginning of the period. If the convertible shares had been converted, there would be two effects. First, the convertible preferred securities would no longer be outstanding; instead, additional common stock would be outstanding. Thus, under the if-converted method, the weighted average number of shares outstanding would be higher than in the basic EPS calculation. Second, if such a conversion had taken place, the company would not have paid preferred dividends. Thus, under the if-converted method, the net income available to common shareholders would be higher than in the basic EPS calculation.

Diluted EPS using the if-converted method for convertible preferred stock is equal to net income divided by the weighted average number of shares outstanding from the basic EPS calculation plus the additional shares of common stock that would be issued upon conversion of the preferred. Thus, the formula to calculate diluted EPS using the if-converted method for preferred stock is:

$$\text{Diluted EPS} = \frac{(\text{Net income})}{(\text{Weighted average number of shares outstanding} + \text{New common shares that would have been issued at conversion})} \quad (2)$$

A diluted EPS calculation using the if-converted method for preferred stock is provided in Example 15.

EXAMPLE 15

A Diluted EPS Calculation Using the If-Converted Method for Preferred Stock

For the year ended 31 December 2009, Bright-Warm Utility Company had net income of \$1,750,000. The company had an average of 500,000 shares of common stock outstanding, 20,000 shares of convertible preferred, and no other potentially dilutive securities. Each share of preferred pays a dividend of \$10 per share, and each is convertible into five shares of the company's common stock. Calculate the company's basic and diluted EPS.

Solution:

If the 20,000 shares of convertible preferred had each converted into 5 shares of the company's common stock, the company would have had an additional 100,000 shares of common stock (5 shares of common for each of the 20,000 shares of preferred). If the conversion had taken place, the company would not have paid preferred dividends of \$200,000 (\$10 per share for each of the 20,000 shares of preferred). As shown in Exhibit 12, the company's basic EPS was \$3.10 and its diluted EPS was \$2.92.

Exhibit 12 Calculation of Diluted EPS for Bright-Warm Utility Company Using the If-Converted Method: Case of Preferred Stock

	Basic EPS	Diluted EPS Using If-Converted Method
Net income	\$1,750,000	\$1,750,000
Preferred dividend	-200,000	0
Numerator	\$1,550,000	\$1,750,000
Weighted average number of shares outstanding	500,000	500,000
Additional shares issued if preferred converted	0	100,000
Denominator	500,000	600,000

(continued)

Exhibit 12 (Continued)

	Basic EPS	Diluted EPS Using If-Converted Method
EPS	\$3.10	\$2.92

6.3.2 Diluted EPS When a Company Has Convertible Debt Outstanding

When a company has convertible debt outstanding, the diluted EPS calculation also uses the if-converted method. Diluted EPS is calculated as if the convertible debt had been converted at the beginning of the period. If the convertible debt had been converted, the debt securities would no longer be outstanding; instead, additional shares of common stock would be outstanding. Also, if such a conversion had taken place, the company would not have paid interest on the convertible debt, so the net income available to common shareholders would increase by the after-tax amount of interest expense on the debt converted.

Thus, the formula to calculate diluted EPS using the if-converted method for convertible debt is:

$$\text{Diluted EPS} = \frac{(\text{Net income} + \text{After-tax interest on convertible debt} - \text{Preferred dividends})}{(\text{Weighted average number of shares outstanding} + \text{Additional common shares that would have been issued at conversion})} \quad (3)$$

A diluted EPS calculation using the if-converted method for convertible debt is provided in Example 16.

EXAMPLE 16**A Diluted EPS Calculation Using the If-Converted Method for Convertible Debt**

Oppnox Company reported net income of \$750,000 for the year ended 31 December 2009. The company had a weighted average of 690,000 shares of common stock outstanding. In addition, the company has only one potentially dilutive security: \$50,000 of 6 percent convertible bonds, convertible into a total of 10,000 shares. Assuming a tax rate of 30 percent, calculate Oppnox's basic and diluted EPS.

Solution:

If the debt securities had been converted, the debt securities would no longer be outstanding and instead, an additional 10,000 shares of common stock would be outstanding. Also, if the debt securities had been converted, the company would not have paid interest of \$3,000 on the convertible debt, so net income available to common shareholders would have increased by \$2,100 [= \$3,000(1 - 0.30)] on an after-tax basis. Exhibit 13 illustrates the calculation of diluted EPS using the if-converted method for convertible debt.

Exhibit 13 Calculation of Diluted EPS for Oppnox Company Using the If-Converted Method: Case of a Convertible Bond

	Basic EPS	Diluted EPS Using If-Converted Method
Net income	\$750,000	\$750,000
After-tax cost of interest		2,100
Numerator	\$750,000	\$752,100
Weighted average number of shares outstanding	690,000	690,000
If converted	0	10,000
Denominator	690,000	700,000
EPS	\$1.09	\$1.07

6.3.3 Diluted EPS When a Company Has Stock Options, Warrants, or Their Equivalents Outstanding

When a company has stock options, warrants, or their equivalents⁵⁰ outstanding, diluted EPS is calculated as if the financial instruments had been exercised and the company had used the proceeds from exercise to repurchase as many shares of common stock as possible at the average market price of common stock during the period. The weighted average number of shares outstanding for diluted EPS is thus increased by the number of shares that would be issued upon exercise minus the number of shares that would have been purchased with the proceeds. This method is called the **treasury stock method** under US GAAP because companies typically hold repurchased shares as treasury stock. The same method is used under IFRS but is not named.

For the calculation of diluted EPS using this method, the assumed exercise of these financial instruments would have the following effects:

- The company is assumed to receive cash upon exercise and, in exchange, to issue shares.
- The company is assumed to use the cash proceeds to repurchase shares at the weighted average market price during the period.

As a result of these two effects, the number of shares outstanding would increase by the incremental number of shares issued (the difference between the number of shares issued to the holders and the number of shares assumed to be repurchased by the company). For calculating diluted EPS, the incremental number of shares is weighted based upon the length of time the financial instrument was outstanding in the year. If the financial instrument was issued prior to the beginning of the year, the weighted average number of shares outstanding increases by the incremental number of shares. If the financial instruments were issued during the year, then the incremental shares are weighted by the amount of time the financial instruments were outstanding during the year.

⁵⁰ Hereafter, options, warrants, and their equivalents will be referred to simply as “options” because the accounting treatment for EPS calculations is interchangeable for these instruments under IFRS and US GAAP.

The assumed exercise of these financial instruments would not affect net income. For calculating EPS, therefore, no change is made to the numerator. The formula to calculate diluted EPS using the treasury stock method (same method as used under IFRS but not named) for options is:

$$\text{Diluted EPS} = \frac{(\text{Net income} - \text{Preferred dividends})}{\left[\text{Weighted average number of shares outstanding} + (\text{New shares that would have been issued at option exercise} - \text{Shares that could have been purchased with cash received upon exercise}) \times (\text{Proportion of year during which the financial instruments were outstanding}) \right]} \quad (4)$$

A diluted EPS calculation using the treasury stock method for options is provided in Example 17.

EXAMPLE 17

A Diluted EPS Calculation Using the Treasury Stock Method for Options

Hihotech Company reported net income of \$2.3 million for the year ended 30 June 2009 and had a weighted average of 800,000 common shares outstanding. At the beginning of the fiscal year, the company has outstanding 30,000 options with an exercise price of \$35. No other potentially dilutive financial instruments are outstanding. Over the fiscal year, the company's market price has averaged \$55 per share. Calculate the company's basic and diluted EPS.

Solution:

Using the treasury stock method, we first calculate that the company would have received \$1,050,000 (\$35 for each of the 30,000 options exercised) if all the options had been exercised. The options would no longer be outstanding; instead, 30,000 shares of common stock would be outstanding. Under the treasury stock method, we assume that shares would be repurchased with the cash received upon exercise of the options. At an average market price of \$55 per share, the \$1,050,000 proceeds from option exercise, the company could have repurchased 19,091 shares. Therefore, the incremental number of shares issued is 10,909 (calculated as 30,000 minus 19,091). For the diluted EPS calculation, no change is made to the numerator. As shown in Exhibit 14, the company's basic EPS was \$2.88 and the diluted EPS was \$2.84.

Exhibit 14 Calculation of Diluted EPS for Hihotech Company Using the Treasury Stock Method: Case of Stock Options

	Basic EPS	Diluted EPS Using Treasury Stock Method
Net income	\$2,300,000	\$2,300,000
Numerator	\$2,300,000	\$2,300,000

Exhibit 14 (Continued)

	Basic EPS	Diluted EPS Using Treasury Stock Method
Weighted average number of shares outstanding	800,000	800,000
If converted	0	10,909
Denominator	800,000	810,909
EPS	\$2.88	\$2.84

As noted, IFRS require a similar computation but does not refer to it as the “treasury stock method.” The company is required to consider that any assumed proceeds are received from the issuance of new shares at the average market price for the period. These new “inferred” shares would be disregarded in the computation of diluted EPS, but the excess of the new shares that would be issued under options contracts minus the new inferred shares would be added to the weighted average number of shares outstanding. The results are the same as the treasury stock method, as shown in Example 18.

EXAMPLE 18**Diluted EPS for Options under IFRS**

Assuming the same facts as in Example 17, calculate the weighted average number of shares outstanding for diluted EPS under IFRS.

Solution:

If the options had been exercised, the company would have received \$1,050,000. If this amount had been received from the issuance of new shares at the average market price of \$55 per share, the company would have issued 19,091 shares. IFRS refer to the 19,091 shares the company would have issued at market prices as the inferred shares. The number of shares issued under options (30,000) minus the number of inferred shares (19,091) equals 10,909. This amount is added to the weighted average number of shares outstanding of 800,000 to get diluted shares of 810,909. Note that this is the same result as that obtained under US GAAP; it is just derived in a different manner.

6.3.4 Other Issues with Diluted EPS

It is possible that some potentially convertible securities could be **antidilutive** (i.e., their inclusion in the computation would result in an EPS higher than the company’s basic EPS). Under IFRS and US GAAP, antidilutive securities are not included in the calculation of diluted EPS. Diluted EPS should reflect the maximum potential dilution from conversion or exercise of potentially dilutive financial instruments. Diluted EPS will always be less than or equal to basic EPS. Example 19 provides an illustration of an antidilutive security.

EXAMPLE 19**An Antidilutive Security**

For the year ended 31 December 2009, Dim-Cool Utility Company had net income of \$1,750,000. The company had an average of 500,000 shares of common stock outstanding, 20,000 shares of convertible preferred, and no other potentially dilutive securities. Each share of preferred pays a dividend of \$10 per share, and each is convertible into three shares of the company's common stock. What was the company's basic and diluted EPS?

Solution:

If the 20,000 shares of convertible preferred had each converted into 3 shares of the company's common stock, the company would have had an additional 60,000 shares of common stock (3 shares of common for each of the 20,000 shares of preferred). If the conversion had taken place, the company would not have paid preferred dividends of \$200,000 (\$10 per share for each of the 20,000 shares of preferred). The effect of using the if-converted method would be EPS of \$3.13, as shown in Exhibit 15. Because this is greater than the company's basic EPS of \$3.10, the securities are said to be antidilutive and the effect of their conversion would not be included in diluted EPS. Diluted EPS would be the same as basic EPS (i.e., \$3.10).

Exhibit 15 Calculation for an Antidilutive Security

	Basic EPS	Diluted EPS Using If-Converted Method	
Net income	\$1,750,000	\$1,750,000	
Preferred dividend	-200,000	0	
Numerator	\$1,550,000	\$1,750,000	
Weighted average number of shares outstanding	500,000	500,000	
If converted	0	60,000	
Denominator	500,000	560,000	
EPS	\$3.10	\$3.13	← Exceeds basic EPS; security is antidilutive and, therefore, not included. Reported diluted EPS = \$3.10.

6.4 Changes in EPS

Having explained the calculations of both basic and diluted EPS, we return to an examination of changes in EPS. As noted above, Kraft's fully diluted EPS from continuing operations increased from \$1.21 in 2008 to \$2.03 in 2009. One cause of the increase in EPS is found in the notes to the financial statements (not shown). The note describing the calculation of EPS indicates that the number of weighted-average shares decreased, and another note indicates that one reason for the decrease was the company's repurchase of some of its own shares during the year. A more important

cause of the increase in EPS—shown on the income statement itself—was the significant increase in earnings from continuing operations, from \$1,848 million to \$3,028 million. Changes in the numerator and denominator explain the changes in EPS arithmetically. To understand the business drivers of those changes requires further research. The next section presents analytical tools that an analyst can use to highlight areas for further examination.

ANALYSIS OF THE INCOME STATEMENT

7

In this section, we apply two analytical tools to analyze the income statement: common-size analysis and income statement ratios. The objective of this analysis is to assess a company's performance over a period of time—compared with its own past performance or the performance of another company.

7.1 Common-Size Analysis of the Income Statement

Common-size analysis of the income statement can be performed by stating each line item on the income statement as a percentage of revenue.⁵¹ Common-size statements facilitate comparison across time periods (time series analysis) and across companies (cross-sectional analysis) because the standardization of each line item removes the effect of size.

To illustrate, Panel A of Exhibit 16 presents an income statement for three hypothetical companies in the same industry. Company A and Company B, each with \$10 million in sales, are larger (as measured by sales) than Company C, which has only \$2 million in sales. In addition, Companies A and B both have higher operating profit: \$2 million and \$1.5 million, respectively, compared with Company C's operating profit of only \$400,000.

How can an analyst meaningfully compare the performance of these companies? By preparing a common-size income statement, as illustrated in Panel B, an analyst can readily see that the percentages of Company C's expenses and profit relative to its sales are exactly the same as for Company A. Furthermore, although Company C's operating profit is lower than Company B's in absolute dollars, it is higher in percentage terms (20 percent for Company C compared with only 15 percent for Company B). For each \$100 of sales, Company C generates \$5 more operating profit than Company B. In other words, Company C is relatively more profitable than Company B based on this measure.

The common-size income statement also highlights differences in companies' strategies. Comparing the two larger companies, Company A reports significantly higher gross profit as a percentage of sales than does Company B (70 percent compared with 25 percent). Given that both companies operate in the same industry, why can Company A generate so much higher gross profit? One possible explanation is found by comparing the operating expenses of the two companies. Company A spends significantly more on research and development and on advertising than Company B. Expenditures on research and development likely result in products with superior technology. Expenditures on advertising likely result in greater brand awareness. So, based on these differences, it is likely that Company A is selling technologically superior

⁵¹ This format can be distinguished as "vertical common-size analysis." As the reading on financial statement analysis discusses, there is another type of common-size analysis, known as "horizontal common-size analysis," that states items in relation to a selected base year value. Unless otherwise indicated, text references to "common-size analysis" refer to vertical analysis.

products with a better brand image. Company B may be selling its products more cheaply (with a lower gross profit as a percentage of sales) but saving money by not investing in research and development or advertising. In practice, differences across companies are more subtle, but the concept is similar. An analyst, noting significant differences, would do more research and seek to understand the underlying reasons for the differences and their implications for the future performance of the companies.

Exhibit 16**Panel A: Income Statements for Companies A, B, and C (\$)**

	A	B	C
Sales	\$10,000,000	\$10,000,000	\$2,000,000
Cost of sales	3,000,000	7,500,000	600,000
Gross profit	7,000,000	2,500,000	1,400,000
Selling, general, and administrative expenses	1,000,000	1,000,000	200,000
Research and development	2,000,000	—	400,000
Advertising	2,000,000	—	400,000
Operating profit	2,000,000	1,500,000	400,000

Panel B: Common-Size Income Statements for Companies A, B, and C (%)

	A	B	C
Sales	100%	100%	100%
Cost of sales	30	75	30
Gross profit	70	25	70
Selling, general, and administrative expenses	10	10	10
Research and development	20	0	20
Advertising	20	0	20
Operating profit	20	15	20

Note: Each line item is expressed as a percentage of the company's sales.

For most expenses, comparison to the amount of sales is appropriate. However, in the case of taxes, it is more meaningful to compare the amount of taxes with the amount of pretax income. Using note disclosure, an analyst can then examine the causes for differences in effective tax rates. To project the companies' future net income, an analyst would project the companies' pretax income and apply an estimated effective tax rate determined in part by the historical tax rates.

Vertical common-size analysis of the income statement is particularly useful in cross-sectional analysis—comparing companies with each other for a particular time period or comparing a company with industry or sector data. The analyst could select individual peer companies for comparison, use industry data from published sources, or compile data from databases based on a selection of peer companies or broader industry data. For example, Exhibit 17 presents median common-size income statement data compiled for the components of the S&P 500 classified into the 10 S&P/MSCI Global Industrial Classification System (GICS) sectors using 2008 data. Note that when compiling aggregate data such as this, some level of aggregation is necessary and less detail may be available than from peer company financial statements. The performance of an individual company can be compared with industry or peer company data to evaluate its relative performance.

Exhibit 17 Median Common-Size Income Statement Statistics for the S&P 500 Classified by S&P/MSCI GICS Sector Data for 2008

	Energy	Materials	Industrials	Consumer Discretionary	Consumer Staples
No. observations	40	29	59	86	40
Operating margin	20.81	10.59	12.47	8.65	13.19
Pretax margin	17.73	7.11	10.92	5.37	9.49
Profit margin	10.76	5.01	7.22	3.35	6.03
Cost of goods sold/sales	63.03	73.93	69.56	62.82	59.18
Selling, general, and administrative expenses/sales	5.21	8.91	14.70	23.78	21.79
Taxes/Pretax income	33.30	30.72	32.30	32.56	33.51

	Health Care	Financials	Information Technology	Telecom. Services	Utilities
No. observations	55	87	77	9	33
Operating margin	19.77	16.69	16.91	27.76	17.22
Pretax margin	14.13	4.43	13.19	16.35	12.80
Profit margin	9.42	4.62	9.63	10.37	8.09
Cost of goods sold/sales	40.19	71.53	42.74	36.71	72.72
Selling, general, and administrative expenses/sales	33.13	26.36	35.76	24.04	4.42
Taxes/Pretax income	24.27	25.63	25.81	36.43	32.71

Source: Based on data from Compustat.

7.2 Income Statement Ratios

One aspect of financial performance is profitability. One indicator of profitability is **net profit margin**, also known as **profit margin** and **return on sales**, which is calculated as net income divided by revenue (or sales).⁵²

$$\text{Net profit margin} = \frac{\text{Net income}}{\text{Revenue}}$$

Net profit margin measures the amount of income that a company was able to generate for each dollar of revenue. A higher level of net profit margin indicates higher profitability and is thus more desirable. Net profit margin can also be found directly on the common-size income statements.

For Kraft Foods, net profit margin for 2009 was 7.5 percent (calculated as earnings from continuing operations, net of non-controlling interests, of \$3,021 million, divided by net revenues of \$40,386 million). To judge this ratio, some comparison is needed. Kraft's profitability can be compared with that of another company or with its own previous performance. Compared with previous years, Kraft's profitability is higher than in 2008 and roughly equivalent to 2007. In 2008, net profit margin was 6.9 percent, and in 2007, it was 7.6 percent.

⁵² In the definition of margin ratios of this type, "sales" is often used interchangeably with "revenue." "Return on sales" has also been used to refer to a class of profitability ratios having revenue in the denominator.

Another measure of profitability is the gross profit margin. Gross profit (gross margin) is calculated as revenue minus cost of goods sold, and the **gross profit margin** is calculated as the gross profit divided by revenue.

$$\text{Gross profit margin} = \frac{\text{Gross profit}}{\text{Revenue}}$$

The gross profit margin measures the amount of gross profit that a company generated for each dollar of revenue. A higher level of gross profit margin indicates higher profitability and thus is generally more desirable, although differences in gross profit margins across companies reflect differences in companies' strategies. For example, consider a company pursuing a strategy of selling a differentiated product (e.g., a product differentiated based on brand name, quality, superior technology, or patent protection). The company would likely be able to sell the differentiated product at a higher price than a similar, but undifferentiated, product and, therefore, would likely show a higher gross profit margin than a company selling an undifferentiated product. Although a company selling a differentiated product would likely show a higher gross profit margin, this may take time. In the initial stage of the strategy, the company would likely incur costs to create a differentiated product, such as advertising or research and development, which would not be reflected in the gross margin calculation.

Kraft's gross profit (shown in Exhibit 2) was \$14,600 million in 2009, \$13,844 million in 2008, and \$12,202 million in 2007. Expressing gross profit as a percentage of net revenues, we see that the gross profit margin was 36.2 percent in 2009, 33.0 percent in 2008, and 34.0 percent in 2007. In absolute terms, Kraft's gross profit was higher in 2008 than in 2007. However Kraft's gross profit *margin* was lower in 2008.

Exhibit 18 presents a common-size income statement for Kraft, and highlights certain profitability ratios. The net profit margin and gross profit margin described above are just two of the many subtotals that can be generated from common-size income statements. Other "margins" used by analysts include the **operating profit margin** (operating income divided by revenue) and the **pretax margin** (earnings before taxes divided by revenue).

Exhibit 18 Kraft's Margins Abbreviated Common-Size Income Statement

	Year Ended 31 December					
	2009		2008		2007	
	\$ millions	Percent	\$ millions	Percent	\$ millions	Percent
Net revenues	40,386	100.0	41,932	100.0	35,858	100.0
Cost of sales	25,786	63.8	28,088	67.0	23,656	66.0
Gross profit	14,600	36.2^a	13,844	33.0^a	12,202	34.0^a
Marketing, administration and research costs	9,108	22.6	8,862	21.1	7,587	21.2
Asset impairment and exit costs	-64	-0.2	1,024	2.4	440	1.2
(Gains) / losses on divestitures, net	6	0.0	92	0.2	-14	0.0
Amortisation of intangibles	26	0.1	23	0.1	13	0.0
Operating income	5,524	13.7^b	3,843	9.2^b	4,176	11.6^b
Interest and other expense, net	1,237	3.1	1,240	3.0	604	1.7
Earnings from continuing operations before income taxes	4,287	10.6^c	2,603	6.2^c	3,572	10.0^c

Exhibit 18 (Continued)

	Year Ended 31 December					
	2009		2008		2007	
	\$ millions	Percent	\$ millions	Percent	\$ millions	Percent
<i>[Portions omitted]</i>						
Net earnings attributable to Kraft Foods	3,021	7.5 ^d	2,884	6.9 ^d	2,721	7.6 ^d

Notes:

^a Gross profit margin^b Operating profit margin^c Pretax margin^d Net profit margin

The profitability ratios and the common-size income statement yield quick insights about changes in a company's performance. For example, Kraft's increase in profitability in 2009 was not driven by an increase in revenues. (In fact, net revenues were lower than in 2008.) Instead the company's improved profitability in 2009 was driven primarily by its higher gross profit margins. Given the economic climate in 2008, the company likely had to lower prices and/or incur higher promotional costs in order to stimulate demand for its products (downward pressure on net revenues). Another driver of the company's improved profitability in 2009 was a lower amount of asset impairment and exit costs. The profitability ratios and the common-size income statement thus serve to highlight areas about which an analyst might wish to gain further understanding.

COMPREHENSIVE INCOME

8

The general expression for net income is revenue minus expenses. There are, however, certain items of revenue and expense that, by accounting convention, are excluded from the net income calculation. To understand how reported shareholders' equity of one period links with reported shareholders' equity of the next period, we must understand these excluded items, known as **other comprehensive income**.

Under IFRS, **total comprehensive income** is "the change in equity during a period resulting from transaction and other events, other than those changes resulting from transactions with owners in their capacity as owners."⁵³ Under US GAAP, **comprehensive income** is defined as "the change in equity [net assets] of a business enterprise during a period from transactions and other events and circumstances from non-owner sources. It includes all changes in equity during a period except those resulting from investments by owners and distributions to owners."⁵⁴ While the wording differs, comprehensive income includes the same items under IFRS and US GAAP. So, comprehensive income includes *both* net income and other revenue and expense items that are excluded from the net income calculation (other comprehensive income). Assume, for example, a company's beginning shareholders' equity is €110 million, its net income for the year is €10 million, its cash dividends for the year are €2 million, and there was no issuance or repurchase of common stock. If the

⁵³ IAS 1, *Presentation of Financial Statements*, paragraph 7.

⁵⁴ FASB ASC Section 220-10-05 [Comprehensive Income—Overall—Overview and Background].

company's actual ending shareholders' equity is €123 million, then €5 million [$€123 - (€110 + €10 - €2)$] has bypassed the net income calculation by being classified as other comprehensive income. If the company had no other comprehensive income, its ending shareholders' equity would have been €118 million [$€110 + €10 - €2$].

Four types of items are treated as other comprehensive income under both IFRS and US GAAP.⁵⁵ (The specific treatment of some of these items differs between the two sets of standards, but these types of items are common to both.)

- Foreign currency translation adjustments. In consolidating the financial statements of foreign subsidiaries, the effects of translating the subsidiaries' balance sheet assets and liabilities at current exchange rates are included as other comprehensive income.
- Unrealized gains or losses on derivatives contracts accounted for as hedges. Changes in the fair value of derivatives are recorded each period, but these changes in value for certain derivatives (those considered hedges) are treated as other comprehensive income and thus bypass the income statement.
- Unrealized holding gains and losses on a certain category of investment securities, namely, available-for-sale securities.
- Certain costs of a company's defined benefit post-retirement plans that are not recognized in the current period.

In addition, under IFRS, other comprehensive income includes certain changes in the value of long-lived assets that are measured using the revaluation model rather than the cost model.

The third type of item is perhaps the simplest to illustrate. Holding gains on securities arise when a company owns securities over an accounting period, during which time the securities' value increases. Similarly, holding losses on securities arise when a company owns securities over a period during which time the securities' value decreases. If the company has not sold the securities (i.e., realized the gain or loss), its holding gain or loss is said to be unrealized. The question is: Should the company reflect these unrealized holding gains and losses in its income statement?

According to accounting standards, the answer depends on how the company has categorized the securities. Categorization depends on what the company intends to do with the securities. If the company intends to actively trade the securities, the answer is yes; the company should categorize the securities as **trading securities** and reflect unrealized holding gains and losses in its income statement. However, if the company does not intend to actively trade the securities, the securities may be categorized as **available-for-sale** securities. For available-for-sale securities, the company does not reflect unrealized holding gains and losses in its profit and loss statement. Instead, unrealized holding gains and losses on available-for-sale securities bypass the income statement and go directly to shareholders' equity through other comprehensive income.

Even though unrealized holding gains and losses on available-for-sale securities are excluded from a company's net income, they are *included* in a company's comprehensive income.

The "available-for-sale" classification no longer appears in IFRS with the issuance of IFRS 9 (*Financial Instruments*) as of 1 January 2018. Although the available-for-sale category will not exist, IFRS still permit certain equity investments to be measured at fair value with any unrealized holding gains or losses recognized in other comprehensive income. Specifically, at the time a company buys an equity investment that is not

⁵⁵ IAS 1, *Presentation of Financial Statements*, paragraph 7, and FASB ASC Section 220-10-55-02 [Comprehensive Income—Overall—Implementation Guidance and Illustrations].

held for trading, the company is permitted to make an irrevocable election to measure the asset in this manner. These assets are referred to as financial assets measured at fair value through other comprehensive income.

EXAMPLE 20**Other Comprehensive Income**

Assume a company's beginning shareholders' equity is €200 million, its net income for the year is €20 million, its cash dividends for the year are €3 million, and there was no issuance or repurchase of common stock. The company's actual ending shareholders' equity is €227 million.

- 1 What amount has bypassed the net income calculation by being classified as other comprehensive income?
 - A €0.
 - B €7 million.
 - C €10 million.
- 2 Which of the following statements *best* describes other comprehensive income?
 - A Income earned from diverse geographic and segment activities.
 - B Income that increases stockholders' equity but is not reflected as part of net income.
 - C Income earned from activities that are not part of the company's ordinary business activities.

Solution to 1:

C is correct. If the company's actual ending shareholders' equity is €227 million, then €10 million [$€227 - (€200 + €20 - €3)$] has bypassed the net income calculation by being classified as other comprehensive income.

Solution to 2:

B is correct. Answers A and C are not correct because they do not specify whether such income is reported as part of net income and shown in the income statement.

EXAMPLE 21**Other Comprehensive Income in Analysis**

An analyst is looking at two comparable companies. Company A has a lower price/earnings (P/E) ratio than Company B, and the conclusion that has been suggested is that Company A is undervalued. As part of examining this conclusion, the analyst decides to explore the question: What would the company's P/E look like if total comprehensive income per share—rather than net income per share—were used as the relevant metric?

	Company A	Company B
Price	\$35	\$30
EPS	\$1.60	\$0.90
P/E ratio	21.9×	33.3×

(continued)

	Company A	Company B
Other comprehensive income (loss) \$ million	(\$16.272)	\$(1.757)
Shares (millions)	22.6	25.1

Solution:

As shown in the following table, part of the explanation for Company A's lower P/E ratio may be that its significant losses—accounted for as other comprehensive income (OCI)—are not included in the P/E ratio.

	Company A	Company B
Price	\$35	\$30
EPS	\$1.60	\$0.90
OCI (loss) \$ million	(\$16.272)	\$(1.757)
Shares (millions)	22.6	25.1
OCI (loss) per share	\$(0.72)	\$(0.07)
Comprehensive EPS = EPS + OCI per share	\$ 0.88	\$0.83
Price/Comprehensive EPS ratio	39.8×	36.1×

Both IFRS and US GAAP currently provide companies with some flexibility in reporting comprehensive income. IFRS currently allow companies two alternative presentations: either two statements—a separate income statement and a second statement additionally including other comprehensive income—or a single statement of other comprehensive income.⁵⁶ US GAAP give companies both of those alternatives plus another. Under US GAAP, a company can report comprehensive income at the bottom of the income statement, on a separate statement of comprehensive income, or as a column in the statement of shareholders' equity.⁵⁷ Particularly in comparing financial statements of two companies, it is relevant to examine significant differences in comprehensive income.

SUMMARY

This reading has presented the elements of income statement analysis. The income statement presents information on the financial results of a company's business activities over a period of time; it communicates how much revenue the company generated during a period and what costs it incurred in connection with generating that revenue. A company's net income and its components (e.g., gross margin, operating earnings, and pretax earnings) are critical inputs into both the equity and credit analysis processes. Equity analysts are interested in earnings because equity markets often reward relatively high- or low-earnings growth companies with above-average or below-average valuations, respectively. Fixed-income analysts examine the components of income statements, past and projected, for information on companies'

⁵⁶ IAS 1, *Presentation of Financial Statements*, paragraph 81.

⁵⁷ FASB ASC 220-10-45 [Comprehensive Income—Overall—Other Presentation Matters] and FASB ASC 220-10-55 [Comprehensive Income—Overall—Implementation Guidance and Illustrations].

abilities to make promised payments on their debt over the course of the business cycle. Corporate financial announcements frequently emphasize income statements more than the other financial statements.

Key points to this reading include the following:

- The income statement presents revenue, expenses, and net income.
- The components of the income statement include: revenue; cost of sales; sales, general, and administrative expenses; other operating expenses; non-operating income and expenses; gains and losses; non-recurring items; net income; and EPS.
- An income statement that presents a subtotal for gross profit (revenue minus cost of goods sold) is said to be presented in a multi-step format. One that does not present this subtotal is said to be presented in a single-step format.
- Revenue is recognized in the period it is earned, which may or may not be in the same period as the related cash collection. Recognition of revenue when earned is a fundamental principle of accrual accounting.
- In limited circumstances, specific revenue recognition methods may be applicable, including percentage of completion, completed contract, installment sales, and cost recovery.
- An analyst should identify differences in companies' revenue recognition methods and adjust reported revenue where possible to facilitate comparability. Where the available information does not permit adjustment, an analyst can characterize the revenue recognition as more or less conservative and thus qualitatively assess how differences in policies might affect financial ratios and judgments about profitability.
- In May 2014, the IASB and FASB each issued a converged standard for revenue recognition. The standards became effective for reporting periods beginning after 1 January 2018 under IFRS and 15 December 2017 under US GAAP. The core principle of the converged standards is that revenue should be recognized to "depict the transfer of promised goods or services to customers in an amount that reflects the consideration to which the entity expects to be entitled in an exchange for those goods or services."
- To achieve the core principle, the standard describes the application of five steps in recognizing revenue. The standard also specifies the treatment of some related contract costs and disclosure requirements.
- The general principles of expense recognition include a process to match expenses either to revenue (such as, cost of goods sold) or to the time period in which the expenditure occurs (period costs such as, administrative salaries) or to the time period of expected benefits of the expenditures (such as, depreciation).
- In expense recognition, choice of method (i.e., depreciation method and inventory cost method), as well as estimates (i.e., uncollectible accounts, warranty expenses, assets' useful life, and salvage value) affect a company's reported income. An analyst should identify differences in companies' expense recognition methods and adjust reported financial statements where possible to facilitate comparability. Where the available information does not permit adjustment, an analyst can characterize the policies and estimates as more or less conservative and thus qualitatively assess how differences in policies might affect financial ratios and judgments about companies' performance.
- To assess a company's future earnings, it is helpful to separate those prior years' items of income and expense that are likely to continue in the future from those items that are less likely to continue.

- Under IFRS, a company should present additional line items, headings, and subtotals beyond those specified when such presentation is relevant to an understanding of the entity's financial performance. Some items from prior years clearly are not expected to continue in future periods and are separately disclosed on a company's income statement. Under US GAAP, unusual and/or infrequently occurring items, which are material, are presented separately within income from continuing operations.
- Non-operating items are reported separately from operating items on the income statement. Under both IFRS and US GAAP, the income statement reports separately the effect of the disposal of a component operation as a "discontinued" operation.
- Basic EPS is the amount of income available to common shareholders divided by the weighted average number of common shares outstanding over a period. The amount of income available to common shareholders is the amount of net income remaining after preferred dividends (if any) have been paid.
- If a company has a simple capital structure (i.e., one with no potentially dilutive securities), then its basic EPS is equal to its diluted EPS. If, however, a company has dilutive securities, its diluted EPS is lower than its basic EPS.
- Diluted EPS is calculated using the if-converted method for convertible securities and the treasury stock method for options.
- Common-size analysis of the income statement involves stating each line item on the income statement as a percentage of sales. Common-size statements facilitate comparison across time periods and across companies of different sizes.
- Two income-statement-based indicators of profitability are net profit margin and gross profit margin.
- Comprehensive income includes *both* net income and other revenue and expense items that are excluded from the net income calculation.

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

- Expenses on the income statement may be grouped by:
 - nature, but not by function.
 - function, but not by nature.
 - either function or nature.
- An example of an expense classification by function is:
 - tax expense.
 - interest expense.
 - cost of goods sold.
- Denali Limited, a manufacturing company, had the following income statement information:

Revenue	\$4,000,000
Cost of goods sold	\$3,000,000
Other operating expenses	\$500,000
Interest expense	\$100,000
Tax expense	\$120,000

Denali's gross profit is equal to:

- \$280,000.
 - \$500,000.
 - \$1,000,000.
- Under IFRS, income includes increases in economic benefits from:
 - increases in liabilities not related to owners' contributions.
 - enhancements of assets not related to owners' contributions.
 - increases in owners' equity related to owners' contributions.
 - Fairplay had the following information related to the sale of its products during 2009, which was its first year of business:

Revenue	\$1,000,000
Returns of goods sold	\$100,000
Cash collected	\$800,000
Cost of goods sold	\$700,000

Under the accrual basis of accounting, how much net revenue would be reported on Fairplay's 2009 income statement?

- \$200,000.
 - \$900,000.
 - \$1,000,000.
- If the outcome of a long-term contract can be measured reliably, the preferred accounting method under both IFRS and US GAAP is:
 - the cost recovery method.
 - the completed contract method.
 - the percentage-of-completion method.

- 7 At the beginning of 2009, Florida Road Construction entered into a contract to build a road for the government. Construction will take four years. The following information as of 31 December 2009 is available for the contract:

Total revenue according to contract	\$10,000,000
Total expected cost	\$8,000,000
Cost incurred during 2009	\$1,200,000

Assume that the company estimates percentage complete based on costs incurred as a percentage of total estimated costs. Under the completed contract method, how much revenue will be reported in 2009?

- A None.
 B \$300,000.
 C \$1,500,000.
- 8 During 2009, Argo Company sold 10 acres of prime commercial zoned land to a builder for \$5,000,000. The builder gave Argo a \$1,000,000 down payment and will pay the remaining balance of \$4,000,000 to Argo in 2010. Argo purchased the land in 2002 for \$2,000,000. Using the installment method, how much profit will Argo report for 2009?
- A \$600,000.
 B \$1,000,000.
 C \$3,000,000.
- 9 Using the same information as in Question 8, how much profit will Argo report for 2009 using the cost recovery method?
- A None.
 B \$600,000.
 C \$1,000,000.
- 10 Under IFRS, revenue from barter transactions should be measured based on the fair value of revenue from:
- A similar barter transactions with unrelated parties.
 B similar non-barter transactions with related parties.
 C similar non-barter transactions with unrelated parties.
- 11 Apex Consignment sells items over the internet for individuals on a consignment basis. Apex receives the items from the owner, lists them for sale on the internet, and receives a 25 percent commission for any items sold. Apex collects the full amount from the buyer and pays the net amount after commission to the owner. Unsold items are returned to the owner after 90 days. During 2009, Apex had the following information:
- Total sales price of items sold during 2009 on consignment was €2,000,000.
 - Total commissions retained by Apex during 2009 for these items was €500,000.
- How much revenue should Apex report on its 2009 income statement?
- A €500,000.
 B €2,000,000.
 C €1,500,000.
- 12 A company previously expensed the incremental costs of obtaining a contract. All else being equal, adopting the May 2014 IASB and FASB converged accounting standards on revenue recognition makes the company's profitability initially appear:

- A lower.
 - B unchanged.
 - C higher.
- 13 During 2009, Accent Toys Plc., which began business in October of that year, purchased 10,000 units of a toy at a cost of £10 per unit in October. The toy sold well in October. In anticipation of heavy December sales, Accent purchased 5,000 additional units in November at a cost of £11 per unit. During 2009, Accent sold 12,000 units at a price of £15 per unit. Under the first in, first out (FIFO) method, what is Accent's cost of goods sold for 2009?
- A £120,000.
 - B £122,000.
 - C £124,000.
- 14 Using the same information as in Question 13, what would Accent's cost of goods sold be under the weighted average cost method?
- A £120,000.
 - B £122,000.
 - C £124,000.
- 15 Which inventory method is least likely to be used under IFRS?
- A First in, first out (FIFO).
 - B Last in, first out (LIFO).
 - C Weighted average.
- 16 At the beginning of 2009, Glass Manufacturing purchased a new machine for its assembly line at a cost of \$600,000. The machine has an estimated useful life of 10 years and estimated residual value of \$50,000. Under the straight-line method, how much depreciation would Glass take in 2010 for financial reporting purposes?
- A \$55,000.
 - B \$60,000.
 - C \$65,000.
- 17 Using the same information as in Question 16, how much depreciation would Glass take in 2009 for financial reporting purposes under the double-declining balance method?
- A \$60,000.
 - B \$110,000.
 - C \$120,000.
- 18 Which combination of depreciation methods and useful lives is most conservative in the year a depreciable asset is acquired?
- A Straight-line depreciation with a short useful life.
 - B Declining balance depreciation with a long useful life.
 - C Declining balance depreciation with a short useful life.
- 19 Under IFRS, a loss from the destruction of property in a fire would most likely be classified as:
- A continuing operations.
 - B discontinued operations.
 - C other comprehensive income.

- 20 A company chooses to change an accounting policy. This change requires that, if practical, the company restate its financial statements for:
- A all prior periods.
 - B current and future periods.
 - C prior periods shown in a report.
- 21 For 2009, Flamingo Products had net income of \$1,000,000. At 1 January 2009, there were 1,000,000 shares outstanding. On 1 July 2009, the company issued 100,000 new shares for \$20 per share. The company paid \$200,000 in dividends to common shareholders. What is Flamingo's basic earnings per share for 2009?
- A \$0.80.
 - B \$0.91.
 - C \$0.95.
- 22 For its fiscal year-end, Calvin Water Corporation (CWC) reported net income of \$12 million and a weighted average of 2,000,000 common shares outstanding. The company paid \$800,000 in preferred dividends and had 100,000 options outstanding with an average exercise price of \$20. CWC's market price over the year averaged \$25 per share. CWC's diluted EPS is *closest* to:
- A \$5.33.
 - B \$5.54.
 - C \$5.94.
- 23 A company with no debt or convertible securities issued publicly traded common stock three times during the current fiscal year. Under both IFRS and US GAAP, the company's:
- A basic EPS equals its diluted EPS.
 - B capital structure is considered complex at year-end.
 - C basic EPS is calculated by using a simple average number of shares outstanding.
- 24 Laurelli Builders (LB) reported the following financial data for year-end 31 December:

Common shares outstanding, 1 January	2,020,000
Common shares issued as stock dividend, 1 June	380,000
Warrants outstanding, 1 January	500,000
Net income	\$3,350,000
Preferred stock dividends paid	\$430,000
Common stock dividends paid	\$240,000

Which statement about the calculation of LB's EPS is *most* accurate?

- A LB's basic EPS is \$1.12.
 - B LB's diluted EPS is equal to or less than its basic EPS.
 - C The weighted average number of shares outstanding is 2,210,000.
- 25 Cell Services Inc. (CSI) had 1,000,000 average shares outstanding during all of 2009. During 2009, CSI also had 10,000 options outstanding with exercise prices of \$10 each. The average stock price of CSI during 2009 was \$15. For purposes of computing diluted earnings per share, how many shares would be used in the denominator?
- A 1,003,333.
 - B 1,006,667.

- C 1,010,000.
- 26 For its fiscal year-end, Sublyme Corporation reported net income of \$200 million and a weighted average of 50,000,000 common shares outstanding. There are 2,000,000 convertible preferred shares outstanding that paid an annual dividend of \$5. Each preferred share is convertible into two shares of the common stock. The diluted EPS is *closest to*:
- A \$3.52.
B \$3.65.
C \$3.70.
- 27 When calculating diluted EPS, which of the following securities in the capital structure increases the weighted average number of common shares outstanding without affecting net income available to common shareholders?
- A Stock options
B Convertible debt that is dilutive
C Convertible preferred stock that is dilutive
- 28 Which statement is *most* accurate? A common size income statement:
- A restates each line item of the income statement as a percentage of net income.
B allows an analyst to conduct cross-sectional analysis by removing the effect of company size.
C standardizes each line item of the income statement but fails to help an analyst identify differences in companies' strategies.
- 29 Selected year-end financial statement data for Workhard are shown below.

	\$ millions
Beginning shareholders' equity	475
Ending shareholders' equity	493
Unrealized gain on available-for-sale securities	5
Unrealized loss on derivatives accounted for as hedges	-3
Foreign currency translation gain on consolidation	2
Dividends paid	1
Net income	15

- Workhard's comprehensive income for the year:
- A is \$18 million.
B is increased by the derivatives accounted for as hedges.
C includes \$4 million in other comprehensive income.
- 30 When preparing an income statement, which of the following items would *most likely* be classified as other comprehensive income?
- A A foreign currency translation adjustment
B An unrealized gain on a security held for trading purposes
C A realized gain on a derivative contract not accounted for as a hedge

SOLUTIONS

- 1 C is correct. IAS No. 1 states that expenses may be categorized by either nature or function.
- 2 C is correct. Cost of goods sold is a classification by function. The other two expenses represent classifications by nature.
- 3 C is correct. Gross margin is revenue minus cost of goods sold. Answer A represents net income and B represents operating income.
- 4 B is correct. Under IFRS, income includes increases in economic benefits from increases in assets, enhancement of assets, and decreases in liabilities.
- 5 B is correct. Net revenue is revenue for goods sold during the period less any returns and allowances, or \$1,000,000 minus \$100,000 = \$900,000.
- 6 C is correct. The preferred method is the percentage-of-completion method. The completed contract method should be used under US GAAP only when the outcome cannot be measured reliably. A method similar to, but not referred to as, the cost recovery method is used under IFRS when the outcome cannot be measured reliably.
- 7 A is correct. Under the completed contract method, no revenue would be reported until the project is completed.
- 8 A is correct. The installment method apportions the cash receipt between cost recovered and profit using the ratio of profit to sales value (i.e., $\$3,000,000 \div \$5,000,000 = 60$ percent). Argo will, therefore, recognize \$600,000 in profit for 2009 ($\$1,000,000$ cash received \times 60 percent).
- 9 A is correct. Under the cost recovery method, the company would not recognize any profit until the cash amounts paid by the buyer exceeded Argo's cost of \$2,000,000.
- 10 C is correct. Revenue for barter transactions should be measured based on the fair value of revenue from similar non-barter transactions with unrelated parties.
- 11 A is correct. Apex is not the owner of the goods and should only report its net commission as revenue.
- 12 C is correct. Under the converged accounting standards, the incremental costs of obtaining a contract and certain costs incurred to fulfill a contract must be capitalized. If a company expensed these incremental costs in the years prior to adopting the converged standards, all else being equal, its profitability will appear higher under the converged standards.
- 13 B is correct. Under the first in, first out (FIFO) method, the first 10,000 units sold came from the October purchases at £10, and the next 2,000 units sold came from the November purchases at £11.

- 14 C is correct. Under the weighted average cost method:

October purchases	10,000 units	\$100,000
November purchases	5,000 units	\$55,000
Total	15,000 units	\$155,000

$$\$155,000 / 15,000 \text{ units} = \$10.3333 \times 12,000 \text{ units} = \$124,000.$$

- 15 B is correct. The last in, first out (LIFO) method is not permitted under IFRS. The other two methods are permitted.

- 16** A is correct. Straight-line depreciation would be $(\$600,000 - \$50,000)/10$, or \$55,000.
- 17** C is correct. Double-declining balance depreciation would be $\$600,000 \times 20$ percent (twice the straight-line rate). The residual value is not subtracted from the initial book value to calculate depreciation. However, the book value (carrying amount) of the asset will not be reduced below the estimated residual value.
- 18** C is correct. This would result in the highest amount of depreciation in the first year and hence the lowest amount of net income relative to the other choices.
- 19** A is correct. A fire may be infrequent, but it would still be part of continuing operations and reported in the profit and loss statement. Discontinued operations relate to a decision to dispose of an operating division.
- 20** C is correct. If a company changes an accounting policy, the financial statements for all fiscal years shown in a company's financial report are presented, if practical, as if the newly adopted accounting policy had been used throughout the entire period; this retrospective application of the change makes the financial results of any prior years included in the report comparable. Notes to the financial statements describe the change and explain the justification for the change.
- 21** C is correct. The weighted average number of shares outstanding for 2009 is 1,050,000. Basic earnings per share would be \$1,000,000 divided by 1,050,000, or \$0.95.
- 22** B is correct. The formula to calculate diluted EPS is as follows:

$$\text{Diluted EPS} = (\text{Net income} - \text{Preferred dividends}) / [\text{Weighted average number of shares outstanding} + (\text{New shares that would have been issued at option exercise} - \text{Shares that could have been purchased with cash received upon exercise}) \times (\text{Proportion of year during which the financial instruments were outstanding})].$$

The underlying assumption is that outstanding options are exercised, and then the proceeds from the issuance of new shares are used to repurchase shares already outstanding:

$$\text{Proceeds from option exercise} = 100,000 \times \$20 = \$2,000,000$$

$$\text{Shares repurchased} = \$2,000,000 / \$25 = 80,000$$

The net increase in shares outstanding is thus $100,000 - 80,000 = 20,000$. Therefore, the diluted EPS for CWC = $(\$12,000,000 - \$800,000) / 2,020,000 = \$5.54$.

- 23** A is correct. Basic and diluted EPS are equal for a company with a simple capital structure. A company that issues only common stock, with no financial instruments that are potentially convertible into common stock has a simple capital structure. Basic EPS is calculated using the weighted average number of shares outstanding.
- 24** B is correct. LB has warrants in its capital structure; if the exercise price is less than the weighted average market price during the year, the effect of their conversion is to increase the weighted average number of common shares outstanding, causing diluted EPS to be lower than basic EPS. If the exercise price is equal to the weighted average market price, the number of shares issued equals the number of shares repurchased. Therefore, the weighted average number of common shares outstanding is not affected and diluted EPS equals basic EPS. If the exercise price is greater than the weighted average market price, the effect

of their conversion is anti-dilutive. As such, they are not included in the calculation of basic EPS. LB's basic EPS is \$1.22 [= $(\$3,350,000 - \$430,000)/2,400,000$]. Stock dividends are treated as having been issued retroactively to the beginning of the period.

- 25** A is correct. With stock options, the treasury stock method must be used. Under that method, the company would receive \$100,000 ($10,000 \times \10) and would repurchase 6,667 shares ($\$100,000/\15). The shares for the denominator would be:

Shares outstanding	1,000,000
Options exercises	10,000
Treasury shares purchased	<u>(6,667)</u>
Denominator	1,003,333

- 26** C is correct.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Diluted EPS} &= (\text{Net income}) / (\text{Weighted average number of shares out-} \\ &\quad \text{standing} + \text{New common shares that would have been issued} \\ &\quad \text{at conversion}) \\ &= \$200,000,000 / [50,000,000 + (2,000,000 \times 2)] \\ &= \$3.70 \end{aligned}$$

The diluted EPS assumes that the preferred dividend is not paid and that the shares are converted at the beginning of the period.

- 27** A is correct. When a company has stock options outstanding, diluted EPS is calculated as if the financial instruments had been exercised and the company had used the proceeds from the exercise to repurchase as many shares possible at the weighted average market price of common stock during the period. As a result, the conversion of stock options increases the number of common shares outstanding but has no effect on net income available to common shareholders. The conversion of convertible debt increases the net income available to common shareholders by the after-tax amount of interest expense saved. The conversion of convertible preferred shares increases the net income available to common shareholders by the amount of preferred dividends paid; the numerator becomes the net income.
- 28** B is correct. Common size income statements facilitate comparison across time periods (time-series analysis) and across companies (cross-sectional analysis) by stating each line item of the income statement as a percentage of revenue. The relative performance of different companies can be more easily assessed because scaling the numbers removes the effect of size. A common size income statement states each line item on the income statement as a percentage of revenue. The standardization of each line item makes a common size income statement useful for identifying differences in companies' strategies.
- 29** C is correct. Comprehensive income includes both net income and other comprehensive income.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Other comprehensive income} &= \text{Unrealized gain on available-for-sale} \\ &\quad \text{securities} - \text{Unrealized loss on derivatives} \\ &\quad \text{accounted for as hedges} + \text{Foreign currency} \\ &\quad \text{translation gain on consolidation} \\ &= \$5 \text{ million} - \$3 \text{ million} + \$2 \text{ million} \\ &= \$4 \text{ million} \end{aligned}$$

Alternatively,

Comprehensive income – Net income = Other comprehensive income

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Comprehensive income} &= (\text{Ending shareholders equity} - \text{Beginning shareholders equity}) + \text{Dividends} \\ &= (\$493 \text{ million} - \$475 \text{ million}) + \$1 \text{ million} \\ &= \$18 \text{ million} + \$1 \text{ million} = \$19 \text{ million}\end{aligned}$$

Net income is \$15 million so other comprehensive income is \$4 million.

- 30** A is correct. Other comprehensive income includes items that affect shareholders' equity but are not reflected in the company's income statement. In consolidating the financial statements of foreign subsidiaries, the effects of translating the subsidiaries' balance sheet assets and liabilities at current exchange rates are included as other comprehensive income.

Understanding Balance Sheets

by Elaine Henry, PhD, CFA, and Thomas R. Robinson, PhD, CFA

Elaine Henry, PhD, CFA, is at Stevens Institute of Technology (USA). Thomas R. Robinson, PhD, CFA, is at AACSB International (USA).

LEARNING OUTCOMES

<i>Mastery</i>	<i>The candidate should be able to:</i>
<input type="checkbox"/>	a. describe the elements of the balance sheet: assets, liabilities, and equity;
<input type="checkbox"/>	b. describe uses and limitations of the balance sheet in financial analysis;
<input type="checkbox"/>	c. describe alternative formats of balance sheet presentation;
<input type="checkbox"/>	d. distinguish between current and non-current assets and current and non-current liabilities;
<input type="checkbox"/>	e. describe different types of assets and liabilities and the measurement bases of each;
<input type="checkbox"/>	f. describe the components of shareholders' equity;
<input type="checkbox"/>	g. convert balance sheets to common-size balance sheets and interpret common-size balance sheets;
<input type="checkbox"/>	h. calculate and interpret liquidity and solvency ratios.

Note: Changes in accounting standards as well as new rulings and/or pronouncements issued after the publication of the readings on financial reporting and analysis may cause some of the information in these readings to become dated. Candidates are *not* responsible for anything that occurs after the readings were published. In addition, candidates are expected to be familiar with the analytical frameworks contained in the readings, as well as the implications of alternative accounting methods for financial analysis and valuation discussed in the readings. Candidates are also responsible for the content of accounting standards, but not for the actual reference numbers. Finally, candidates should be aware that certain ratios may be defined and calculated differently. When alternative ratio definitions exist and no specific definition is given, candidates should use the ratio definitions emphasized in the readings.

1

INTRODUCTION

The balance sheet provides information on a company's resources (assets) and its sources of capital (equity and liabilities/debt). This information helps an analyst assess a company's ability to pay for its near-term operating needs, meet future debt obligations, and make distributions to owners. The basic equation underlying the balance sheet is $\text{Assets} = \text{Liabilities} + \text{Equity}$.

Analysts should be aware that different items of assets and liabilities may be measured differently. For example, some items are measured at historical cost or a variation thereof and others at fair value.¹ An understanding of the measurement issues will facilitate analysis. The balance sheet measurement issues are, of course, closely linked to the revenue and expense recognition issues affecting the income statement. Throughout this reading, we describe and illustrate some of the linkages between the measurement issues affecting the balance sheet and the revenue and expense recognition issues affecting the income statement.

This reading is organized as follows: In Section 2, we describe and give examples of the elements and formats of balance sheets. Section 3 discusses current assets and current liabilities. Section 4 focuses on assets, and Section 5 focuses on liabilities. Section 6 describes the components of equity and illustrates the statement of changes in shareholders' equity. Section 7 introduces balance sheet analysis. A summary of the key points and practice problems in the CFA Institute multiple-choice format conclude the reading.

2

COMPONENTS AND FORMAT OF THE BALANCE SHEET

The **balance sheet** (also called the **statement of financial position** or **statement of financial condition**) discloses what an entity owns (or controls), what it owes, and what the owners' claims are at a specific point in time.²

The financial position of a company is described in terms of its basic elements (assets, liabilities, and equity):

- **Assets** (A) are what the company owns (or controls). More formally, assets are resources controlled by the company as a result of past events and from which future economic benefits are expected to flow *to* the entity.
- **Liabilities** (L) are what the company owes. More formally, liabilities represent obligations of a company arising from past events, the settlement of which is expected to result in an outflow of economic benefits *from* the entity.
- **Equity** (E) represents the owners' residual interest in the company's assets after deducting its liabilities. Commonly known as **shareholders' equity** or **owners' equity**, equity is determined by subtracting the liabilities from the assets of a company, giving rise to the accounting equation: $A - L = E$ or $A = L + E$.

¹ IFRS and US GAAP define "fair value" as an exit price, i.e., the price that would be received to sell an asset or paid to transfer a liability in an orderly transaction between market participants at the measurement date (IFRS 13, FASB ASC Topic 820).

² IFRS uses the term "statement of financial position" (IAS 1 *Presentation of Financial Statements*), although US GAAP uses the two terms interchangeably (ASC 210-10-05 [Balance Sheet—Overall—Overview and Background]).

The equation $A = L + E$ is sometimes summarized as follows: The left side of the equation reflects the resources controlled by the company and the right side reflects how those resources were financed. For all financial statement items, an item should only be recognized in the financial statements if it is probable that any future economic benefit associated with the item will flow to or from the entity and if the item has a cost or value that can be measured with reliability.³

The balance sheet provides important information about a company's financial condition, but the balance sheet amounts of equity (assets, net of liabilities) should not be viewed as a measure of either the market or intrinsic value of a company's equity for several reasons. First, the balance sheet under current accounting standards is a mixed model with respect to measurement. Some assets and liabilities are measured based on historical cost, sometimes with adjustments, whereas other assets and liabilities are measured based on a current value. The measurement bases may have a significant effect on the amount reported. Second, even the items measured at current value reflect the value that was current at the end of the reporting period. The values of those items obviously can change after the balance sheet is prepared. Third, the value of a company is a function of many factors, including future cash flows expected to be generated by the company and current market conditions. Important aspects of a company's ability to generate future cash flows—for example, its reputation and management skills—are not included in its balance sheet.

2.1 Balance Sheet Components

To illustrate the components and formats of balance sheets, we show the major sub-totals from two companies' balance sheets. Exhibit 1 and Exhibit 2 are based on the balance sheets of SAP Group and Apple Inc. SAP Group is a leading business software company based in Germany and prepares its financial statements in accordance with IFRS. Apple is a technology manufacturer based in the United States and prepares its financial statements in accordance with US GAAP. For purposes of discussion, Exhibits 1 and 2 show only the main subtotals and totals of these companies' balance sheets. Additional exhibits throughout this reading will expand on these subtotals.

**Exhibit 1 SAP Group Consolidated Statements of Financial Position
(Excerpt) (in millions of €)**

	31 December	
Assets	2009	2008
Total current assets	5,255	5,571
Total non-current assets	8,119	8,329
Total assets	13,374	13,900
Equity and liabilities		
Total current liabilities	3,416	5,824
Total non-current liabilities	1,467	905
Total liabilities	4,883	6,729

(continued)

³ *Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements*, International Accounting Standards Committee, 1989, adopted by IASB 2001, paragraph 83. *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting (2010)*, paragraph 4.38.

Exhibit 1 (Continued)

Assets	31 December	
	2009	2008
Total equity	8,491	7,171
Equity and liabilities	13,374	13,900

Source: SAP Group 2009 annual report.

Exhibit 2 Apple Inc. Consolidated Balance Sheet (Excerpt)* (in millions of \$)

Assets	26 September 2009	27 September 2008
Total current assets	31,555	30,006
<i>[All other assets]</i>	15,946	6,165
Total assets	47,501	36,171
Liabilities and shareholders' equity		
Total current liabilities	11,506	11,361
<i>[Total non-current liabilities]</i>	4,355	2,513
Total liabilities	15,861	13,874
Total shareholders' equity	31,640	22,297
Total liabilities and shareholders' equity	47,501	36,171

*Note: The italicized subtotals presented in this excerpt are not explicitly shown on the face of the financial statement as prepared by the company.

Source: Apple Inc. 2009 annual report (Form 10K/A).

SAP Group uses the title Statement of Financial Position, consistent with IFRS, and Apple uses the title Balance Sheet. Despite their different titles, both statements report the three basic elements: assets, liabilities, and equity. Both companies are reporting on a consolidated basis, i.e., including all their controlled subsidiaries. The numbers in SAP Group's balance sheet are in millions of euro, and the numbers in Apple's balance sheet are in millions of dollars.

Balance sheet information is as of a specific point in time. These exhibits are from the companies' annual financial statements, so the balance sheet information is as of the last day of their respective fiscal years. SAP Group's fiscal year is the same as the calendar year and the balance sheet information is as of 31 December. Apple's fiscal year ends on the last Saturday of September so the actual date changes from year to year. About every six years, Apple's fiscal year will include 53 weeks rather than 52 weeks. This feature of Apple's fiscal year should be noted, but in general, the extra week is more relevant to evaluating statements spanning a period of time (the income and cash flow statements) rather than the balance sheet which captures information as of a specific point in time.

A company's ability to pay for its short term operating needs relates to the concept of **liquidity**. With respect to a company overall, liquidity refers to the availability of cash to meet those short-term needs. With respect to a particular asset or liability, liquidity refers to its "nearness to cash." A liquid asset is one that can be easily converted

into cash in a short period of time at a price close to fair market value. For example, a small holding of an actively traded stock is much more liquid than an asset such as a commercial real estate property in a weak property market.

The separate presentation of current and non-current assets and liabilities enables an analyst to examine a company's liquidity position (at least as of the end of the fiscal period). Both IFRS and US GAAP require that the balance sheet distinguish between current and non-current assets and between current and non-current liabilities and present these as separate classifications. An exception to this requirement, under IFRS, is that the current and non-current classifications are not required if a liquidity-based presentation provides reliable and more relevant information. Presentations distinguishing between current and non-current elements are shown in Exhibits 1 and 2. Exhibit 3 in Section 2.3 shows a liquidity-based presentation.

2.2 Current and Non-Current Classification

Assets held primarily for the purpose of trading or expected to be sold, used up, or otherwise realized in cash within one year or one operating cycle of the business, whichever is greater, after the reporting period are classified as **current assets**. A company's operating cycle is the average amount of time that elapses between acquiring inventory and collecting the cash from sales to customers. For a manufacturer, this is the average amount of time between acquiring raw materials and converting these into cash from a sale. Examples of companies that might be expected to have operating cycles longer than one year include those operating in the tobacco, distillery, and lumber industries. Even though these types of companies often hold inventories longer than one year, the inventory is classified as a current asset because it is expected to be sold within an operating cycle. Assets not expected to be sold or used up within one year or one operating cycle of the business, whichever is greater, are classified as **non-current assets** (long-term, long-lived assets).

Current assets are generally maintained for operating purposes, and these assets include—in addition to cash—items expected to be converted into cash (e.g., trade receivables), used up (e.g., office supplies, prepaid expenses), or sold (e.g., inventories) in the current period. Current assets provide information about the operating activities and the operating capability of the entity. For example, the item “trade receivables” or “accounts receivable” would indicate that a company provides credit to its customers. Non-current assets represent the infrastructure from which the entity operates and are not consumed or sold in the current period. Investments in such assets are made from a strategic and longer term perspective.

Similarly, liabilities expected to be settled within one year or within one operating cycle of the business, whichever is greater, after the reporting period are classified as **current liabilities**. The specific criteria for classification of a liability as current include the following:

- It is expected to be settled in the entity's normal operating cycle;
- It is held primarily for the purpose of being traded;⁴
- It is due to be settled within one year after the balance sheet date; or
- The entity does not have an unconditional right to defer settlement of the liability for at least one year after the balance sheet date.⁵

⁴ Examples of these are financial liabilities classified as held for trading in accordance with IAS 39, which is replaced by IFRS 9 effective 2018.

⁵ IAS 1, *Presentation of Financial Statements*, paragraph 69.

IFRS specify that some current liabilities, such as trade payables and some accruals for employee and other operating costs, are part of the working capital used in the entity's normal operating cycle. Such operating items are classified as current liabilities even if they will be settled more than one year after the balance sheet date. When the entity's normal operating cycle is not clearly identifiable, its duration is assumed to be one year. All other liabilities are classified as **non-current liabilities**. Non-current liabilities include financial liabilities that provide financing on a long-term basis.

The excess of current assets over current liabilities is called **working capital**. The level of working capital tells analysts something about the ability of an entity to meet liabilities as they fall due. Although adequate working capital is essential, working capital should not be too large because funds may be tied up that could be used more productively elsewhere.

A balance sheet with separately classified current and non-current assets and liabilities is referred to as a **classified balance sheet**. Classification also refers generally to the grouping of accounts into subcategories. Both companies' balance sheets that are summarized in Exhibits 1 and 2 are classified balance sheets. Although both companies' balance sheets present current assets before non-current assets and current liabilities before non-current liabilities, this is not required. IFRS does not specify the order or format in which a company presents items on a current/non-current classified balance sheet.

2.3 Liquidity-Based Presentation

A liquidity-based presentation, rather than a current/non-current presentation, is used when such a presentation provides information that is reliable and more relevant. With a liquidity-based presentation, all assets and liabilities are presented broadly in order of liquidity.

Entities such as banks are candidates to use a liquidity-based presentation. Exhibit 3 presents the assets portion of the balance sheet of China Construction Bank, a commercial bank based in Beijing that reports using IFRS. [The Bank's H-shares are listed on the Hong Kong Stock Exchange (Stock Code: 939), and the Bank's A-shares are listed on the Shanghai Stock Exchange (Stock Code: 601939).] Its balance sheet is ordered using a liquidity-based presentation. As shown, the asset section begins with Cash and deposits with central banks. Less liquid items such as fixed assets and land use rights appear near the bottom of the asset listing.

Exhibit 3 China Construction Bank Corporation Consolidated Statement of Financial Position (Excerpt: Assets Only) as of 31 December (in millions of RMB)

Assets	2009	2008
Cash and deposits with central banks	1,458,648	1,247,450
Deposits with banks and non-bank financial institutions	101,163	33,096
Precious metals	9,229	5,160
Placements with banks and non-bank financial institutions	22,217	16,836
Financial assets at fair value through profit or loss	18,871	50,309
Positive fair value of derivatives	9,456	21,299
Financial assets held under resale agreements	589,606	208,548
Interest receivable	40,345	38,317

Exhibit 3 (Continued)

Assets	2009	2008
Loans and advances to customers	4,692,947	3,683,575
Available-for-sale financial assets	651,480	550,838
Held-to-maturity investments	1,408,873	1,041,783
Debt securities classified as receivables	499,575	551,818
Interests in associates and jointly controlled entities	1,791	1,728
Fixed assets	74,693	63,957
Land use rights	17,122	17,295
Intangible assets	1,270	1,253
Goodwill	1,590	1,527
Deferred tax assets	10,790	7,855
Other assets	13,689	12,808
Total assets	9,623,355	7,555,452

Source: China Construction Bank 2009 Annual Report.

CURRENT ASSETS AND CURRENT LIABILITIES**3**

This section examines current assets and current liabilities in greater detail.

3.1 Current Assets

Accounting standards require that certain specific line items, if they are material, must be shown on a balance sheet. Among the current assets' required line items are cash and cash equivalents, trade and other receivables, inventories, and financial assets (with short maturities). Companies present other line items as needed, consistent with the requirements to separately present each material class of similar items. As examples, Exhibit 4 and Exhibit 5 present balance sheet excerpts for SAP Group and Apple Inc. showing the line items for the companies' current assets.

Exhibit 4 SAP Group Consolidated Statements of Financial Position (Excerpt: Current Assets Detail) (in millions of €)

Assets	as of 31 December	
	2009	2008
Cash and cash equivalents	1,884	1,280
Other financial assets	486	588
Trade and other receivables	2,546	3,178
Other non-financial assets	147	126
Tax assets	192	399
Total current assets	5,255	5,571
Total non-current assets	8,119	8,329
Total assets	13,374	13,900
Equity and liabilities		

(continued)

Exhibit 4 (Continued)

Assets	as of 31 December	
	2009	2008
Total current liabilities	3,416	5,824
Total non-current liabilities	1,467	905
Total liabilities	4,883	6,729
Total equity	8,491	7,171
Equity and liabilities	13,374	13,900

Source: SAP Group 2009 annual report.

Exhibit 5 Apple Inc. Consolidated Balance Sheet (Excerpt: Current Assets Detail) * (in millions of \$)

Assets	26 September 2009	27 September 2008
Cash and cash equivalents	5,263	11,875
Short-term marketable securities	18,201	10,236
Accounts receivable, less allowances of \$52 and \$47, respectively	3,361	2,422
Inventories	455	509
Deferred tax assets	1,135	1,044
Other current assets	3,140	3,920
Total current assets	31,555	30,006
<i>[All other assets]</i>	<i>15,946</i>	<i>6,165</i>
Total assets	47,501	36,171
Liabilities and shareholders' equity		
Total current liabilities	11,506	11,361
<i>[Total non-current liabilities]</i>	<i>4,355</i>	<i>2,513</i>
Total liabilities	15,861	13,874
Total shareholders' equity	31,640	22,297
Total liabilities and shareholders' equity	47,501	36,171

*Note: The italicized subtotals presented in this excerpt are not explicitly shown on the face of the financial statement as prepared by the company.

Source: Apple Inc. 2009 annual report (Form 10K/A).

3.1.1 Cash and Cash Equivalents

Cash equivalents are highly liquid, short-term investments that are so close to maturity,⁶ the risk is minimal that their value will change significantly with changes in interest rates. Cash and cash equivalents are financial assets. Financial assets, in general, are measured and reported at either **amortised cost** or **fair value**. Amortised cost is the historical cost (initially recognised cost) of the asset adjusted for amortisation and

⁶ Generally, three months or less.

impairment. Under IFRS and US GAAP, fair value is based on an exit price, the price received to sell an asset or paid to transfer a liability in an orderly transaction between two market participants at the measurement date.

For cash and cash equivalents, amortised cost and fair value are likely to be immaterially different. Examples of cash equivalents are demand deposits with banks and highly liquid investments (such as US Treasury bills, commercial paper, and money market funds) with original maturities of three months or less. Cash and cash equivalents excludes amounts that are restricted in use for at least 12 months. For all companies, the Statement of Cash Flows presents information about the changes in cash over a period. For the fiscal year 2009, SAP Group's cash and cash equivalents increased from €1,280 million to €1,844 million, and Apple's cash and cash equivalents decreased from \$11,875 million to \$5,263 million.

3.1.2 Marketable Securities

Marketable securities are also financial assets and include investments in debt or equity securities that are traded in a public market, and whose value can be determined from price information in a public market. Examples of marketable securities include treasury bills, notes, bonds, and equity securities, such as common stocks and mutual fund shares. Companies disclose further detail in the notes to their financial statements about their holdings. For example, SAP Group discloses that its other financial assets consist mainly of time deposits, investment in insurance policies, and loans to employees. Apple's short-term marketable securities, totaling \$18.2 billion and \$10.2 billion at the end of fiscal 2009 and 2008, respectively, consist of fixed-income securities with a maturity of less than one year. Financial assets such as investments in debt and equity securities involve a variety of measurement issues and will be addressed in Section 4.5.

3.1.3 Trade Receivables

Trade receivables, also referred to as accounts receivable, are another type of financial asset. These are amounts owed to a company by its customers for products and services already delivered. They are typically reported at net realisable value, an approximation of fair value, based on estimates of collectability. Several aspects of accounts receivable are usually relevant to an analyst. First, the overall level of accounts receivable relative to sales (a topic to be addressed further in ratio analysis) is important because a significant increase in accounts receivable relative to sales could signal that the company is having problems collecting cash from its customers.

A second relevant aspect of accounts receivable is the allowance for doubtful accounts. The allowance for doubtful accounts reflects the company's estimate of amounts that will ultimately be uncollectible. Additions to the allowance in a particular period are reflected as bad debt expenses, and the balance of the allowance for doubtful accounts reduces the gross receivables amount to a net amount that is an estimate of fair value. When specific receivables are deemed to be uncollectible, they are written off by reducing accounts receivable and the allowance for doubtful accounts. The allowance for doubtful accounts is called a **contra account** because it is netted against (i.e., reduces) the balance of accounts receivable, which is an asset account. SAP Group's balance sheet, for example, reports current net trade and other receivables of €2,546 million as of 31 December 2009. The amount of the allowance for doubtful accounts (€48 million) is disclosed in the notes to the financial statements. Apple discloses the allowance for doubtful accounts on the balance sheet; as of 26 September 2009, the allowance was \$52 million. The \$3,361 million of accounts receivable on that date is net of the allowance. Apple's disclosures state that the allowance is based on "historical experience, the age of the accounts receivable balances, credit quality of the Company's customers, current economic conditions, and other factors

that may affect customers' ability to pay." The age of an accounts receivable balance refers to the length of time the receivable has been outstanding, including how many days past the due date.

Another relevant aspect of accounts receivable is the concentration of credit risk. For example, SAP Group's note on trade and other receivables discloses that concentration of credit risk is limited because they have a large customer base diversified across various industries and countries, and because no single customer accounted for 10 percent or more of either revenue or receivables.

EXAMPLE 1

Analysis of Accounts Receivable

- 1 Based on the balance sheet excerpt for Apple Inc. in Exhibit 5, what percentage of its total accounts receivable in 2009 and 2008 does Apple estimate will be uncollectible?
- 2 In general, how does the amount of allowance for doubtful accounts relate to bad debt expense?
- 3 In general, what are some factors that could cause a company's allowance for doubtful accounts to decrease?

Solution to 1:

(\$ millions) The percentage of 2009 accounts receivable estimated to be uncollectible is 1.5 percent, calculated as $\$52/(\$3,361 + \$52)$. Note that the \$3,361 is net of the \$52 allowance, so the gross amount of accounts receivable is determined by adding the allowance to the net amount. The percentage of 2008 accounts receivable estimated to be uncollectible is 1.9 percent [$\$47/(\$2,422 + \$47)$].

Solution to 2:

Bad debt expense is an expense of the period, based on a company's estimate of the percentage of credit sales in the period, for which cash will ultimately not be collected. The allowance for bad debts is a contra asset account, which is netted against the asset accounts receivable.

To record the estimated bad debts, a company recognizes a bad debt expense (which affects net income) and increases the balance in the allowance for doubtful accounts by the same amount. To record the write off of a particular account receivable, a company reduces the balance in the allowance for doubtful accounts and reduces the balance in accounts receivable by the same amount.

Solution to 3:

In general, a decrease in a company's allowance for doubtful accounts in absolute terms could be caused by a decrease in the amount of credit sales.

Some factors that could cause a company's allowance for doubtful accounts to decrease as a percentage of accounts receivable include the following:

- Improvements in the credit quality of the company's existing customers (whether driven by a customer-specific improvement or by an improvement in the overall economy);

- Stricter credit policies (for example, refusing to allow less creditworthy customers to make credit purchases and instead requiring them to pay cash, to provide collateral, or to provide some additional form of financial backing); and/or
- Stricter risk management policies (for example, buying more insurance against potential defaults).

In addition to the business factors noted above, because the allowance is based on management's estimates of collectability, management can potentially bias these estimates to manipulate reported earnings. For example, a management team aiming to increase reported income could intentionally over-estimate collectability and under-estimate the bad debt expense for a period. Conversely, in a period of good earnings, management could under-estimate collectability and over-estimate the bad debt expense with the intent of reversing the bias in a period of poorer earnings.

3.1.4 Inventories

Inventories are physical products that will eventually be sold to the company's customers, either in their current form (finished goods) or as inputs into a process to manufacture a final product (raw materials and work-in-process). Like any manufacturer, Apple holds inventories. The 2009 balance sheet of Apple Inc. shows \$455 million of inventories. SAP Group's balance sheet does not include a line item for inventory, but its note disclosures indicate that inventory is included as a part of other non-financial assets on its balance sheet. SAP Group is primarily a software and services provider and the amount of its inventory is not material enough to require disclosure as a separate line item on the balance sheet.

Inventories are measured at the lower of cost and net realisable value under IFRS and, depending upon inventory method, under US GAAP. The cost of inventories comprises all costs of purchase, costs of conversion, and other costs incurred in bringing the inventories to their present location and condition. The following amounts are excluded from the determination of inventory costs:

- abnormal amounts of wasted materials, labor, and overheads;
- storage costs, unless they are necessary prior to a further production process;
- administrative overheads; and
- selling costs.

The following techniques can be used to measure the cost of inventories if the resulting valuation amount approximates cost:

- **Standard cost**, which should take into account the normal levels of materials, labor, and actual capacity. The standard cost should be reviewed regularly to ensure that it approximates actual costs.
- The **retail method** in which the sales value is reduced by the gross margin to calculate cost. An average gross margin percentage should be used for each homogeneous group of items. In addition, the impact of marked-down prices should be taken into consideration.

Net realisable value (NRV), the measure used by IFRS, is the estimated selling price less the estimated costs of completion and costs necessary to make the sale. Under US GAAP, inventories were measured at the lower of cost or market value. Market value is current replacement cost but with upper and lower limits: It cannot exceed

NRV and cannot be lower than NRV less a normal profit margin. Under US GAAP, inventories measured using other than last-in, first-out and retail inventory methods are measured at the lower of cost and NRV.

If the net realisable value (under IFRS) or market value (under US GAAP) of a company's inventory falls below its carrying amount, the company must write down the value of the inventory. The loss in value is reflected in the income statement. For example, within its Management's Discussion and Analysis and notes, Apple indicates that the company reviews its inventory each quarter and records write-downs of inventory that has become obsolete, exceeds anticipated demand, or is carried at a value higher than its market value. Under IFRS, if inventory that was written down in a previous period subsequently increases in value, the amount of the original write-down is reversed. Subsequent reversal of an inventory write-down is not permitted under US GAAP.

When inventory is sold, the cost of that inventory is reported as an expense, "cost of goods sold." Accounting standards allow different valuation methods for determining the amounts that are included in cost of goods sold on the income statement and thus the amounts that are reported in inventory on the balance sheet. (Inventory valuation methods are referred to as cost formulas and cost flow assumptions under IFRS and US GAAP, respectively.) IFRS allows only the first-in, first-out (FIFO), weighted average cost, and specific identification methods. Some accounting standards (such as US GAAP) also allow last-in, first-out (LIFO) as an additional inventory valuation method. The LIFO method is not allowed under IFRS.

EXAMPLE 2

Analysis of Inventory

Cisco Systems is a global provider of networking equipment. In its third quarter 2001 Form 10-Q filed with the US Securities and Exchange Commission (US SEC) on 1 June 2001, the company made the following disclosure:

We recorded a provision for inventory, including purchase commitments, totaling \$2.36 billion in the third quarter of fiscal 2001, of which \$2.25 billion related to an additional excess inventory charge. Inventory purchases and commitments are based upon future sales forecasts. To mitigate the component supply constraints that have existed in the past, we built inventory levels for certain components with long lead times and entered into certain longer-term commitments for certain components. Due to the sudden and significant decrease in demand for our products, inventory levels exceeded our requirements based on current 12-month sales forecasts. This additional excess inventory charge was calculated based on the inventory levels in excess of 12-month demand for each specific product. We do not currently anticipate that the excess inventory subject to this provision will be used at a later date based on our current 12-month demand forecast.

After the inventory charge, Cisco reported approximately \$2 billion of inventory on the balance sheet, suggesting that the write-off amounted to approximately half of its inventory. In addition to the obvious concerns raised as to management's poor performance in anticipating how much inventory was required, many analysts were concerned about how the write-off would affect Cisco's future reported earnings. If this inventory is sold in a future period, a "gain"

could be reported based on a lower cost basis for the inventory. In this case, management indicated that the intent was to scrap the inventory. When the company subsequently released its annual earnings, the press release stated:⁷

Net sales for fiscal 2001 were \$22.29 billion, compared with \$18.93 billion for fiscal 2000, an increase of 18%. Pro forma net income, which excludes the effects of acquisition charges, payroll tax on stock option exercises, restructuring costs and other special charges, excess inventory charge (benefit), and net gains realized on minority investments, was \$3.09 billion or \$0.41 per share for fiscal 2001, compared with pro forma net income of \$3.91 billion or \$0.53 per share for fiscal 2000, decreases of 21% and 23%, respectively.

Actual net loss for fiscal 2001 was \$1.01 billion or \$0.14 per share, compared with actual net income of \$2.67 billion or \$0.36 per share for fiscal 2000.

- 1 What concerns would an analyst likely have about the company's \$2.3 billion write-off of inventory? What is the significance of the company indicating its intent to scrap the written off inventory?
- 2 What concerns might an analyst have about the company's earnings press release when the company subsequently released its annual earnings?

Solution to 1:

First, an analyst would likely have concerns about management's abilities to anticipate how much and what type of inventory was required. While errors in forecasting demand are understandable, the amount of inventory written off represented about half of the company's inventory. A second concern would relate to how the write-off would affect the company's future reported earnings. If the inventory that had been written off were sold in a future period, a "gain" could be reported based on a lower cost basis for the inventory. The company's intent to scrap the written off inventory would alleviate but not eliminate concerns about distortions to future reported earnings.

Solution to 2:

An analyst might be concerned that the company's press release focused mainly on "pro forma earnings," which excluded the impact of many items, including the inventory write-off. The company only gave a brief mention of actual (US GAAP) results.

Note: A 2003 SEC regulation now requires companies to give at least equal emphasis to GAAP measures (for example, reported net income) when using a non-GAAP measure (for example, pro forma net income) and to provide a reconciliation of the two measures.⁸

3.1.5 Other Current Assets

The amounts shown in "other current assets" reflect items that are individually not material enough to require a separate line item on the balance sheet and so are aggregated into a single amount. Companies usually disclose the components in a note to the financial statements. A typical item included in other current assets is prepaid expenses. **Prepaid expenses** are normal operating expenses that have been paid in

⁷ Cisco press release dated 7 August 2001 from www.cisco.com.

⁸ US Securities and Exchange Commission. (January 2003). *Final rule: Conditions for use of non-GAAP financial measures* (Releases 33-8176 and 34-47226, File S7-43-02).

advance. Because expenses are recognized in the period in which they are incurred—and not necessarily the period in which the payment is made—the advance payment of a future expense creates an asset. The asset (prepaid expenses) will be recognized as an expense in future periods as it is used up. For example, consider prepaid insurance. Assume a company pays its insurance premium for coverage over the next calendar year on 31 December of the current year. At the time of the payment, the company recognizes an asset (prepaid insurance expense). The expense is not incurred at that date; the expense is incurred as time passes (in this example, one-twelfth, 1/12, in each following month). Therefore, the expense is recognized and the value of the asset is reduced in the financial statements over the course of the year.

Portions of the amounts shown as tax assets on SAP's balance sheet and **deferred tax assets** on Apple's balance sheet represent income taxes incurred prior to the time that the income tax expense will be recognized on the income statement. Deferred tax assets may result when the actual **income tax payable** based on income for tax purposes in a period exceeds the amount of income tax expense based on the reported financial statement income due to temporary timing differences. For example, a company may be required to report certain income for tax purposes in the current period but to defer recognition of that income for financial statement purposes to subsequent periods. In this case, the company will pay income tax as required by tax laws, and the difference between the taxes payable and the tax expense related to the income for which recognition was deferred on the financial statements will be reported as a deferred tax asset. When the income is subsequently recognized on the income statement, the related tax expense is also recognized which will reduce the deferred tax asset.

Also, a company may claim certain expenses for financial statement purposes that it is only allowed to claim in subsequent periods for tax purposes. In this case, as in the previous example, the financial statement income before taxes is less than taxable income. Thus, income taxes payable based on taxable income exceeds income tax expense based on accounting net income before taxes. The difference is expected to reverse in the future when the income reported on the financial statements exceeds the taxable income as a deduction for the expense becomes allowed for tax purposes. Deferred tax assets may also result from carrying forward unused tax losses and credits (these are not temporary timing differences). Deferred tax assets are only to be recognized if there is an expectation that there will be taxable income in the future, against which the temporary difference or carried forward tax losses or credits can be applied to reduce taxes payable.

3.2 Current Liabilities

Current liabilities are those liabilities that are expected to be settled in the entity's normal operating cycle, held primarily for trading, or due to be settled within 12 months after the balance sheet date. Exhibit 6 and Exhibit 7 present balance sheet excerpts for SAP Group and Apple Inc. showing the line items for the companies' current liabilities. Some of the common types of current liabilities, including trade payables, financial liabilities, accrued expenses, and deferred income, are discussed below.

**Exhibit 6 SAP Group Consolidated Statements of Financial Position
(Excerpt: Current Liabilities Detail) (in millions of €)**

Assets	As of 31 December	
	2009	2008
Total current assets	5,255	5,571
Total non-current assets	8,119	8,329
Total assets	13,374	13,900
Equity and liabilities		
Trade and other payables	638	599
Tax liabilities	125	363
Bank loans and other financial liabilities	146	2,563
Other non-financial liabilities	1,577	1,428
Provisions	332	248
Deferred income	598	623
Total current liabilities	3,416	5,824
Total non-current liabilities	1,467	905
Total liabilities	4,883	6,729
Total equity	8,491	7,171
Equity and liabilities	13,374	13,900

Source: SAP Group 2009 annual report.

**Exhibit 7 Apple Inc. Consolidated Balance Sheet (Excerpt: Current
Liabilities Detail)* (in millions of \$)**

Assets	26 September 2009	27 September 2008
Total current assets	31,555	30,006
<i>[All other assets]</i>	15,946	6,165
Total assets	47,501	36,171
Liabilities and shareholders' equity		
Accounts payable	5,601	5,520
Accrued expenses	3,852	4,224
Deferred revenue	2,053	1,617
Total current liabilities	11,506	11,361
<i>[Total non-current liabilities]</i>	4,355	2,513
Total liabilities	15,861	13,874
Total shareholders' equity	31,640	22,297
Total liabilities and shareholders' equity	47,501	36,171

*Note: The italicized subtotals presented in this excerpt are not explicitly shown on the face of the financial statement as prepared by the company.

Source: Apple Inc. 2009 annual report (Form 10K/A).

Trade payables, also called **accounts payable**, are amounts that a company owes its vendors for purchases of goods and services. In other words, these represent the unpaid amount as of the balance sheet date of the company's purchases on credit. An issue relevant to analysts is the trend in overall levels of trade payables relative to purchases (a topic to be addressed further in ratio analysis). Significant changes in accounts payable relative to purchases could signal potential changes in the company's credit relationships with its suppliers. The general term "trade credit" refers to credit provided to a company by its vendors. Trade credit is a source of financing that allows the company to make purchases and then pay for those purchases at a later date.

Notes payable are financial liabilities owed by a company to creditors, including trade creditors and banks, through a formal loan agreement. Any notes payable, loans payable, or other financial liabilities that are due within one year (or the operating cycle, whichever is longer) appear in the current liability section of the balance sheet. In addition, any portions of long-term liabilities that are due within one year (i.e., the current portion of long-term liabilities) are also shown in the current liability section of the balance sheet. On SAP Group's balance sheet, current liabilities include bank loans and other financial liabilities. Apple Inc. does not have any current notes payable or loans payable.

Income taxes payable reflect taxes, based on taxable income, that have not yet been paid. SAP Group's balance sheet shows €125 million of tax liabilities in its current liabilities. Apple Inc.'s balance sheet does not show a separate line item for current taxes payable; instead a note discloses that income taxes payable of \$430 million are included within the \$3,852 million of "Accrued expenses." **Accrued expenses** (also called accrued expenses payable, accrued liabilities, and other non-financial liabilities) are expenses that have been recognized on a company's income statement but which have not yet been paid as of the balance sheet date. In addition to income taxes payable, other common examples of accrued expenses are accrued interest payable, accrued warranty costs, and accrued employee compensation (i.e., wages payable). SAP Group's notes disclose that the €1,577 million line item of other non-financial liabilities, for example, includes €1,343 million of employee-related liabilities.

Deferred income (also called **deferred revenue** and **unearned revenue**) arises when a company receives payment in advance of delivery of the goods and services associated with the payment. The company has an obligation either to provide the goods or services or to return the cash received. Examples include lease payments received at the beginning of a lease, fees for servicing office equipment received at the beginning of the service period, and payments for magazine subscriptions received at the beginning of the subscription period. SAP Group's balance sheet shows deferred income of €598 million at the end of 2009, down slightly from €623 million at the end of 2008. Apple Inc.'s balance sheet shows deferred revenue of \$2,053 million at the end of fiscal 2009, up 27 percent from \$1,617 million at the end of fiscal 2008. Example 3 presents each company's disclosures about deferred revenue and discusses some of the implications.

EXAMPLE 3

Analysis of Deferred Revenue

In the notes to its 2009 financial statements, SAP Group describes its deferred income as follows:

Deferred income consists mainly of prepayments made by our customers for support services and professional services, fees for multiple element arrangements allocated to undelivered elements, and amounts ... for obligations to perform under acquired support contracts in connection with acquisitions.

Apple's deferred revenue arises from sales involving components, some delivered at the time of sale and others to be delivered in the future. In its 2009 financial statements, Apple Inc. explains that accounting for sale of some of its products is treated as two deliverables:

...The first deliverable is the hardware and software delivered at the time of sale, and the second deliverable is the right included with the purchase of iPhone and Apple TV to receive on a when-and-if-available basis future unspecified software upgrades and features relating to the product's software... the Company is required to estimate a standalone selling price for the unspecified software upgrade right included with the sale of iPhone and Apple TV and recognizes that amount ratably over the 24-month estimated life of the related hardware device...

- 1 In general, in the period a transaction occurs, how would a company's balance sheet reflect \$100 of deferred revenue resulting from a sale? (Assume, for simplicity, that the company receives cash for all sales, the company's income tax payable is 30 percent based on cash receipts, and the company pays cash for all relevant income tax obligations as they arise. Ignore any associated deferred costs.)
- 2 In general, how does deferred revenue impact a company's financial statements in the periods following its initial recognition?
- 3 Interpret the amounts shown by SAP Group as deferred income and by Apple Inc. as deferred revenue.
- 4 Both accounts payable and deferred revenue are classified as current liabilities. Discuss the following statements:
 - A When assessing a company's liquidity, the implication of amounts in accounts payable differs from the implication of amounts in deferred revenue.
 - B Some investors monitor amounts in deferred revenue as an indicator of future revenue growth.

Solution to 1:

In the period that deferred revenue arises, the company would record a \$100 increase in the asset Cash and a \$100 increase in the liability Deferred Revenues. In addition, because the company's income tax payable is based on cash receipts and is paid in the current period, the company would record a \$30 decrease in the asset Cash and a \$30 increase in the asset Deferred Tax Assets. Deferred tax assets increase because the company has paid taxes on revenue it has not yet recognised for accounting purposes. In effect, the company has prepaid taxes from an accounting perspective.

Solution to 2:

In subsequent periods, the company will recognize the deferred revenue as it is earned. When the revenue is recognized, the liability Deferred Revenue will decrease. In addition, the tax expense is recognized on the income statement as the revenue is recognised and thus the associated amounts of Deferred Tax Assets will decrease.

Solution to 3:

The deferred income on SAP Group's balance sheet and deferred revenue on Apple Inc.'s balance sheet at the end of their respective 2009 fiscal years will be recognized as revenue, sales, or a similar item in income statements subsequent to the 2009 fiscal year, as the goods or services are provided or the obligation is reduced. The costs of delivering the goods or services will also be recognised.

Solution to 4A:

The amount of accounts payable represents a future obligation to pay cash to suppliers. In contrast, the amount of deferred revenue represents payments that the company has already received from its customers, and the future obligation is to deliver the related services. With respect to liquidity, settling accounts payable will require cash outflows whereas settling deferred revenue obligations will not.

Solution to 4B:

Some investors monitor amounts in deferred revenue as an indicator of future growth because the amounts in deferred revenue will be recognized as revenue in the future. Thus, growth in the amount of deferred revenue implies future growth of that component of a company's revenue.

4**NON-CURRENT ASSETS**

This section provides an overview of assets other than current assets, sometimes collectively referred to as non-current, long-term, or long-lived assets. The categories discussed are property, plant, and equipment; investment property; intangible assets; goodwill; and financial assets. Exhibit 8 and Exhibit 9 present balance sheet excerpts for SAP Group and Apple Inc. showing the line items for the companies' non-current assets.

**Exhibit 8 SAP Group Consolidated Statements of Financial Position
(Excerpt: Non-Current Assets Detail) (in millions of €)**

Assets	As of 31 December	
	2009	2008
Total current assets	5,255	5,571
Goodwill	4,994	4,975
Intangible assets	894	1,140
Property, plant, and equipment	1,371	1,405
Other financial assets	284	262
Trade and other receivables	52	41
Other non-financial assets	35	32
Tax assets	91	33

Exhibit 8 (Continued)

Assets	As of 31 December	
	2009	2008
Deferred tax assets	398	441
Total non-current assets	8,119	8,329
Total assets	13,374	13,900
Equity and liabilities		
Total current liabilities	3,416	5,824
Total non-current liabilities	1,467	905
Total liabilities	4,883	6,729
Total equity	8,491	7,171
Equity and liabilities	13,374	13,900

Source: SAP Group 2009 annual report.

Exhibit 9 Apple Inc. Consolidated Balance Sheet (Excerpt: Non-Current Assets Detail)* (in millions of \$)

Assets	26 September 2009	27 September 2008
Total current assets	31,555	30,006
Long-term marketable securities	10,528	2,379
Property, plant and equipment, net	2,954	2,455
Goodwill	206	207
Acquired intangible assets, net	247	285
Other assets	2,011	839
Total assets	47,501	36,171
Liabilities and shareholders' equity		
Total current liabilities	11,506	11,361
<i>[Total non-current liabilities]</i>	<i>4,355</i>	<i>2,513</i>
Total liabilities	15,861	13,874
Total shareholders' equity	31,640	22,297
Total liabilities and shareholders' equity	47,501	36,171

*Note: The italicized subtotals presented in this excerpt are not explicitly shown on the face of the financial statement as prepared by the company.

Source: Apple Inc. 2009 annual report (Form 10K/A).

4.1 Property, Plant, and Equipment

Property, plant, and equipment (PPE) are tangible assets that are used in company operations and expected to be used (provide economic benefits) over more than one fiscal period. Examples of tangible assets treated as property, plant, and equipment, include land, buildings, equipment, machinery, furniture, and natural resources such

as mineral and petroleum resources. IFRS permits companies to report PPE using either a cost model or a revaluation model.⁹ While IFRS permits companies to use the cost model for some classes of assets and the revaluation model for others, the company must apply the same model to all assets within a particular class of assets. US GAAP permits only the cost model for reporting PPE.

Under the cost model, PPE is carried at amortised cost (historical cost less any accumulated depreciation or accumulated depletion, and less any impairment losses). Historical cost generally consists of an asset's purchase price, its delivery cost, and any other additional costs incurred to make the asset operable (such as costs to install a machine). Depreciation and depletion is the process of allocating (recognizing as an expense) the cost of a long-lived asset over its useful life. Land is not depreciated. Because PPE is presented on the balance sheet net of depreciation and depreciation expense is recognised in the income statement, the choice of depreciation method and the related estimates of useful life and salvage value impact both a company's balance sheet and income statement.

Whereas depreciation is the systematic allocation of cost over an asset's useful life, impairment losses reflect an unanticipated decline in value. Impairment occurs when the asset's recoverable amount is less than its carrying amount, with terms defined as follows under IFRS:¹⁰

- Recoverable amount: The higher of an asset's fair value less cost to sell, and its value in use.
- Fair value less cost to sell: The amount obtainable in a sale of the asset in an arms-length transaction between knowledgeable willing parties, less the costs of the sale.
- Value in use: The present value of the future cash flows expected to be derived from the asset.

When an asset is considered impaired, the company recognizes the impairment loss in the income statement. Reversals of impairment losses are permitted under IFRS but not under US GAAP.

Under the revaluation model, the reported and carrying value for PPE is the fair value at the date of revaluation less any subsequent accumulated depreciation. Changes in the value of PPE under the revaluation model affect equity directly or profit and loss depending upon the circumstances.

In Exhibits 8 and 9, SAP Group reports €1,371 million of PPE and Apple Inc. reports \$2,954 million of PPE at the end of fiscal year 2009. For SAP Group, PPE represents approximately 10 percent of total assets and for Apple, PPE represents approximately 6 percent of total assets. SAP Group discloses in its notes that land is not depreciated, that they use a cost model for PPE, and that PPE are generally depreciated over their expected useful lives using the straight line method. Apple Inc. discloses similar policies but does not specifically disclose that land is not depreciated.

4.2 Investment Property

Some property is not used in the production of goods or services or for administrative purposes. Instead, it is used to earn rental income or capital appreciation (or both). Under IFRS, such property is considered to be **investment property**.¹¹ US GAAP does not include a specific definition for investment property. IFRS provides companies with the choice to report investment property using either a cost model or a fair

⁹ IAS 16, *Property, Plant and Equipment*, paragraphs 29-31.

¹⁰ IAS 36, *Impairment of Assets*, paragraph 6. US GAAP uses a different approach to impairment.

¹¹ IAS 40, *Investment Property*.

value model. In general, a company must apply its chosen model (cost or fair value) to all of its investment property. The cost model for investment property is identical to the cost model for PPE: In other words, investment property is carried at cost less any accumulated depreciation and any accumulated impairment losses. Under the fair value model, investment property is carried at its fair value. When a company uses the fair value model to measure the value of its investment property, any gain or loss arising from a change in the fair value of the investment property is recognized in profit and loss, i.e., on the income statement, in the period in which it arises.¹²

Neither SAP Group nor Apple disclose ownership of investment property. The types of companies that typically hold investment property are real estate investment companies or property management companies. Entities such as life insurance companies and endowment funds may also hold investment properties as part of their investment portfolio.

4.3 Intangible Assets

Intangible assets are identifiable non-monetary assets without physical substance.¹³ An identifiable asset can be acquired singly (can be separated from the entity) or is the result of specific contractual or legal rights or privileges. Examples include patents, licenses, and trademarks. The most common asset that is not a separately identifiable asset is accounting goodwill, which arises in business combinations and is discussed further in Section 4.4.

IFRS allows companies to report intangible assets using either a cost model or a revaluation model. The revaluation model can only be selected when there is an active market for an intangible asset. These measurement models are essentially the same as described for PPE. US GAAP permits only the cost model.

For each intangible asset, a company assesses whether the useful life of the asset is finite or indefinite. Amortisation and impairment principles apply as follows:

- An intangible asset with a finite useful life is amortised on a systematic basis over the best estimate of its useful life, with the amortisation method and useful life estimate reviewed at least annually.
- Impairment principles for an intangible asset with a finite useful life are the same as for PPE.
- An intangible asset with an indefinite useful life is not amortised. Instead, at least annually, the reasonableness of assuming an indefinite useful life for the asset is reviewed and the asset is tested for impairment.

Financial analysts have traditionally viewed the values assigned to intangible assets, particularly goodwill, with caution. Consequently, in assessing financial statements, analysts often exclude the book value assigned to intangibles, reducing net equity by an equal amount and increasing pretax income by any amortisation expense or impairment associated with the intangibles. An arbitrary assignment of zero value to intangibles is not advisable; instead, an analyst should examine each listed intangible and assess whether an adjustment should be made. Note disclosures about intangible assets may provide useful information to the analyst. These disclosures include information about useful lives, amortisation rates and methods, and impairment losses recognised or reversed.

Further, a company may have developed intangible assets internally that can only be recognised in certain circumstances. Companies may also have assets that are never recorded on a balance sheet because they have no physical substance and are

¹² IAS 40, *Investment Property*, paragraph 35.

¹³ IAS 38, *Intangible Assets*, paragraph 8.

non-identifiable. These assets might include management skill, name recognition, a good reputation, and so forth. Such assets are valuable and are, in theory, reflected in the price at which the company's equity securities trade in the market (and the price at which the entirety of the company's equity would be sold in an acquisition transaction). Such assets may be recognised as goodwill if a company is acquired, but are not recognised until an acquisition occurs.

4.3.1 Identifiable Intangibles

Under IFRS, identifiable intangible assets are recognised on the balance sheet if it is probable that future economic benefits will flow to the company and the cost of the asset can be measured reliably. Examples of identifiable intangible assets include patents, trademarks, copyrights, franchises, licenses, and other rights. Identifiable intangible assets may have been created internally or purchased by a company. Determining the cost of internally created intangible assets can be difficult and subjective. For these reasons, under IFRS and US GAAP, the general requirement is that internally created identifiable intangibles are expensed rather than reported on the balance sheet.

IFRS provides that for internally created intangible assets, the company must separately identify the research phase and the development phase.¹⁴ The research phase includes activities that seek new knowledge or products. The development phase occurs after the research phase and includes design or testing of prototypes and models. IFRS require that costs to internally generate intangible assets during the research phase must be expensed on the income statement. Costs incurred in the development stage can be capitalized as intangible assets if certain criteria are met, including technological feasibility, the ability to use or sell the resulting asset, and the ability to complete the project.

US GAAP prohibits the capitalization as an asset of most costs of internally developed intangibles and research and development. All such costs usually must be expensed. Costs related to the following categories are typically expensed under IFRS and US GAAP. They include:

- internally generated brands, mastheads, publishing titles, customer lists, etc.;
- start-up costs;
- training costs;
- administrative and other general overhead costs;
- advertising and promotion;
- relocation and reorganization expenses; and
- redundancy and other termination costs.

Generally, acquired intangible assets are reported as separately identifiable intangibles (as opposed to goodwill) if they arise from contractual rights (such as a licensing agreement), other legal rights (such as patents), or have the ability to be separated and sold (such as a customer list).

EXAMPLE 4

Measuring Intangible Assets

Alpha Inc., a motor vehicle manufacturer, has a research division that worked on the following projects during the year:

¹⁴ IAS 38, *Intangible Assets*, paragraphs 51–67.

Project 1 Research aimed at finding a steering mechanism that does not operate like a conventional steering wheel but reacts to the impulses from a driver's fingers.

Project 2 The design of a prototype welding apparatus that is controlled electronically rather than mechanically. The apparatus has been determined to be technologically feasible, salable, and feasible to produce.

The following is a summary of the expenses of the research division (in thousands of €):

	General	Project 1	Project 2
Material and services	128	935	620
Labor			
• Direct labor	—	630	320
• Administrative personnel	720	—	—
Overhead			
• Direct	—	340	410
• Indirect	270	110	60

Five percent of administrative personnel costs can be attributed to each of Projects 1 and 2. Explain the accounting treatment of Alpha's costs for Projects 1 and 2 under IFRS and US GAAP.

Solution:

Under IFRS, the capitalization of development costs for Projects 1 and 2 would be as follows:

	Amount Capitalized as an Asset (€'000)
Project 1: Classified as in the research stage, so all costs are recognized as expenses	NIL
Project 2: Classified as in the development stage, so costs may be capitalized. Note that administrative costs are not capitalized.	(620 + 320 + 410 + 60) = 1,410

Under US GAAP, the costs of Projects 1 and 2 are expensed.

As presented in Exhibits 8 and 9, SAP Group's 2009 balance sheet shows €894 million of intangible assets, and Apple's 2009 balance sheet shows acquired intangible assets, net of \$247 million.

4.4 Goodwill

When one company acquires another, the purchase price is allocated to all the identifiable assets (tangible and intangible) and liabilities acquired, based on fair value. If the purchase price is greater than the acquirer's interest in the fair value of the identifiable assets and liabilities acquired, the excess is described as **goodwill** and is recognized as an asset. To understand why an acquirer would pay more to purchase a

company than the fair value of the target company's identifiable assets and liabilities, consider the following three observations. First, as noted, certain items not recognized in a company's own financial statements (e.g., its reputation, established distribution system, trained employees) have value. Second, a target company's expenditures in research and development may not have resulted in a separately identifiable asset that meets the criteria for recognition but nonetheless may have created some value. Third, part of the value of an acquisition may arise from strategic positioning versus a competitor or from perceived synergies. The purchase price might not pertain solely to the separately identifiable assets and liabilities acquired and thus may exceed the value of those net assets due to the acquisition's role in protecting the value of all of the acquirer's existing assets or to cost savings and benefits from combining the companies.

The subject of recognizing goodwill in financial statements has found both proponents and opponents among professionals. The proponents of goodwill recognition assert that goodwill is the present value of excess returns that a company is able to earn. This group claims that determining the present value of these excess returns is analogous to determining the present value of future cash flows associated with other assets and projects. Opponents of goodwill recognition claim that the prices paid for acquisitions often turn out to be based on unrealistic expectations, thereby leading to future write-offs of goodwill.

Analysts should distinguish between accounting goodwill and economic goodwill. Economic goodwill is based on the economic performance of the entity, whereas accounting goodwill is based on accounting standards and is reported only in the case of acquisitions. Economic goodwill is important to analysts and investors, and it is not necessarily reflected on the balance sheet. Instead, economic goodwill is reflected in the stock price (at least in theory). Some financial statement users believe that goodwill should not be listed on the balance sheet, because it cannot be sold separately from the entity. These financial statement users believe that only assets that can be separately identified and sold should be reflected on the balance sheet. Other financial statement users analyze goodwill and any subsequent impairment charges to assess management's performance on prior acquisitions.

Under both IFRS and US GAAP, accounting goodwill arising from acquisitions is capitalized. Goodwill is not amortised but is tested for impairment annually. If goodwill is deemed to be impaired, an impairment loss is charged against income in the current period. An impairment loss reduces current earnings. An impairment loss also reduces total assets, so some performance measures, such as return on assets (net income divided by average total assets), may actually increase in future periods. An impairment loss is a non-cash item.

Accounting standards' requirements for recognizing goodwill can be summarized by the following steps:

- A** The total cost to purchase the target company (the acquiree) is determined.
- B** The acquiree's identifiable assets are measured at fair value. The acquiree's liabilities and contingent liabilities are measured at fair value. The difference between the fair value of identifiable assets and the fair value of the liabilities and contingent liabilities equals the net identifiable assets acquired.
- C** Goodwill arising from the purchase is the excess of a) the cost to purchase the target company and b) the net identifiable assets acquired. Occasionally, a transaction will involve the purchase of net identifiable assets with a value greater than the cost to purchase. Such a transaction is called a "bargain purchase." Any gain from a bargain purchase is recognized in profit and loss in the period in which it arises.¹⁵

15 IFRS 3 *Business Combinations* and FASB ASC 805 [Business Combinations].

Companies are also required to disclose information that enables users to evaluate the nature and financial effect of business combinations. The required disclosures include, for example, the acquisition date fair value of the total cost to purchase the target company, the acquisition date amount recognized for each major class of assets and liabilities, and a qualitative description of the factors that make up the goodwill recognized.

Despite the guidance incorporated in accounting standards, analysts should be aware that the estimations of fair value involve considerable management judgment. Values for intangible assets, such as computer software, might not be easily validated when analyzing acquisitions. Management judgment about valuation in turn impacts current and future financial statements because identifiable intangible assets with definite lives are amortised over time. In contrast, neither goodwill nor identifiable intangible assets with indefinite lives are amortised; instead both are tested annually for impairment.

The recognition and impairment of goodwill can significantly affect the comparability of financial statements between companies. Therefore, analysts often adjust the companies' financial statements by removing the impact of goodwill. Such adjustments include:

- excluding goodwill from balance sheet data used to compute financial ratios, and
- excluding goodwill impairment losses from income data used to examine operating trends.

In addition, analysts can develop expectations about a company's performance following an acquisition by taking into account the purchase price paid relative to the net assets and earnings prospects of the acquired company.

EXAMPLE 5

Goodwill Impairment

Safeway, Inc., is a North American food and drug retailer. On 25 February 2010, Safeway issued a press release that included the following information:

Safeway Inc. today reported a net loss of \$1,609.1 million (\$4.06 per diluted share) for the 16-week fourth quarter of 2009. Excluding a non-cash goodwill impairment charge of \$1,818.2 million, net of tax (\$4.59 per diluted share), net income would have been \$209.1 million (\$0.53 per diluted share). Net income was \$338.0 million (\$0.79 per diluted share) for the 17-week fourth quarter of 2008.

In the fourth quarter of 2009, Safeway recorded a non-cash goodwill impairment charge of \$1,974.2 million (\$1,818.2 million, net of tax). The impairment was due primarily to Safeway's reduced market capitalization and a weak economy....The goodwill originated from previous acquisitions.

Safeway's balance sheet as of 2 January 2010 showed goodwill of \$426.6 million and total assets of \$14,963.6 million. The company's balance sheet as of 3 January 2009 showed goodwill of \$2,390.2 million and total assets of \$17,484.7 million.

- 1 How significant is this goodwill impairment charge?
- 2 With reference to acquisition prices, what might this goodwill impairment indicate?

Solution to 1:

The goodwill impairment was more than 80 percent of the total value of goodwill and 11 percent of total assets, so it was clearly significant. (The charge of \$1,974.2 million equals 82.6 percent of the \$2,390.2 million of goodwill at the beginning of the year and 11.3 percent of the \$17,484.7 million total assets at the beginning of the year.)

Solution to 2:

The goodwill had originated from previous acquisitions. The impairment charge implies that the acquired operations are now worth less than the price that was paid for their acquisition.

As presented in Exhibits 8 and 9, SAP Group's 2009 balance sheet shows €4,994 million of goodwill, and Apple's 2009 balance sheet shows goodwill of \$206 million. Goodwill represents 37.3 percent of SAP Group's total assets and only 0.4 percent of Apple's total assets. An analyst may be concerned that goodwill represents such a high proportion of SAP Group's total assets.

4.5 Financial Assets

IFRS define a financial instrument as a contract that gives rise to a financial asset of one entity, and a financial liability or equity instrument of another entity.¹⁶ This section will focus on financial assets such as a company's investments in stocks issued by another company or its investments in the notes, bonds, or other fixed-income instruments issued by another company (or issued by a governmental entity). Financial liabilities such as notes payable and bonds payable issued by the company itself will be discussed in the liability portion of this reading. Some financial instruments may be classified as either an asset or a liability depending on the contractual terms and current market conditions. One example of such a financial instrument is a derivative.

Derivatives are financial instruments for which the value is derived based on some underlying factor (interest rate, exchange rate, commodity price, security price, or credit rating) and for which little or no initial investment is required.

All financial instruments are recognized when the entity becomes a party to the contractual provisions of the instrument. In general, there are two basic alternative ways that financial instruments are measured: fair value or amortised cost. Recall that fair value is the arm's length transaction price at which an asset could be exchanged or a liability settled between knowledgeable and willing parties under IFRS, and the price that would be received to sell an asset or paid to transfer a liability under US GAAP. The amortised cost of a financial asset (or liability) is the amount at which it was initially recognized, minus any principal repayments, plus or minus any amortisation of discount or premium, and minus any reduction for impairment.

Financial assets are measured at amortised cost if the asset's cash flows occur on specified dates and consist solely of principal and interest, and if the business model is to hold the asset to maturity. This category of asset is referred to as **held-to-maturity**. An example is an investment in a long-term bond issued by another company; the value of the bond will fluctuate, for example with interest rate movements, but if the bond is classified as held-to-maturity, it will be measured at amortised cost. Other types of financial assets measured at historical cost are loans (to other companies).

¹⁶ IAS 32, *Financial Instruments: Presentation*, paragraph 11.

Financial assets not measured at amortised cost are measured at fair value. For financial instruments measured at fair value, there are two basic alternatives in how net changes in fair value are recognized: as profit or loss on the income statement, or as other comprehensive income (loss) which bypasses the income statement. Note that these alternatives refer to unrealized changes in fair value, i.e., changes in the value of a financial asset that has not been sold and is still owned at the end of the period. Unrealized gains and losses are also referred to as holding period gains and losses. If a financial asset is sold within the period, a gain is realized if the selling price is greater than the carrying value and a loss is realized if the selling price is less than the carrying value. When a financial asset is sold, any realized gain or loss is reported on the income statement. The category **held for trading** (or “trading securities” under US GAAP) refers to a category of financial assets that is acquired primarily for the purpose of selling in the near term. These assets are likely to be held only for a short period of time. These trading assets are measured at fair value, and any unrealized holding gains or losses are recognized as profit or loss on the income statement. **Mark to market** refers to the process whereby the value of a financial instrument is adjusted to reflect current fair value based on market prices.

Some financial assets are not classified as held for trading, even though they are available to be sold. Such **available-for-sale** assets are measured at fair value, with any unrealized holding gains or losses recognized in other comprehensive income. The “available-for-sale” classification is no longer in effect under IFRS with the release of IFRS 9 (*Financial Instruments*). IFRS 9 is based on the concept that financial assets should be classified and measured at either amortised cost or at fair value, and subsequently recognised in either the income statement or other comprehensive income when they arise. Although the available-for-sale category no longer exists, IFRS still permit certain equity investments to be measured at fair value with any unrealized holding gains or losses recognized in other comprehensive income. Specifically, at the time a company buys an equity investment that is not held for trading, the company is permitted to make an irrevocable election to measure the asset in this manner. These assets are referred to as “financial assets measured at fair value through other comprehensive income.”¹⁷

IFRS 9 adopts a new approach for the impairment of financial assets that are measured at amortised cost (e.g., loans and receivables, including trade receivables). IFRS requires an “expected loss” impairment method, in which the recognition of losses is based on the risk that a loan will default rather than on whether a loss has been incurred (as was the case under IFRS 39).

Exhibit 10 summarizes how various financial assets are classified and measured.

¹⁷ IFRS 7 *Financial Instruments: Disclosures*, paragraph 8(h) and IFRS 9 *Financial Instruments*, paragraph 5.7.5.

Exhibit 10 Measurement of Financial Assets

Measured at Fair Value	Measured at Cost or Amortised Cost
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Financial assets held for trading (e.g., stocks and bonds issued by another company) ■ Available-for-sale financial assets (e.g., stocks and bonds issued by another company)* ■ Derivatives whether stand-alone or embedded in non-derivative instruments ■ Non-derivative instruments (including financial assets) with fair value exposures hedged by derivatives 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Unquoted equity instruments (in limited circumstances where the fair value is not reliably measurable, cost may serve as a proxy (estimate) for fair value) ■ Held-to-maturity investments (investments in bonds issued by another company, intended to be held to maturity) ■ Loans to and receivables from another company

*As described above, the available-for-sale category is no longer be a choice under IFRS upon the 1 January 2018 effective date of IFRS 9.

To illustrate the different accounting treatments of the gains and losses on financial assets, consider an entity that invests €100,000,000 on 1 January 200X in a fixed-income security investment, with a 5 percent coupon paid semi-annually. After six months, the company receives the first coupon payment of €2,500,000. Additionally, market interest rates have declined such that the value of the fixed-income investment has increased by €2,000,000 as of 30 June 200X. Exhibit 11 illustrates how this situation will be portrayed in the balance sheet assets and equity, as well as the income statement (ignoring taxes) of the entity concerned, under each of the following three accounting policies for financial assets: assets held for trading purposes, assets available for sale, and held-to-maturity assets.

Exhibit 11 Accounting for Gains and Losses on Marketable Securities

Balance Sheet As of 30 June 200X	Trading Portfolio	Available-for-Sale Portfolio	Held to Maturity
<i>Assets</i>			
Cash and cash equivalents	2,500,000	2,500,000	2,500,000
Cost of securities	100,000,000	100,000,000	100,000,000
Unrealized gains on securities	2,000,000	2,000,000	—
	104,500,000	104,500,000	102,500,000
<i>Liabilities</i>			
<i>Equity</i>			
Paid-in capital	100,000,000	100,000,000	100,000,000
Retained earnings	4,500,000	2,500,000	2,500,000
Accumulated other comprehensive income	—	2,000,000	—
	104,500,000	104,500,000	102,500,000

Exhibit 11 (Continued)**Income Statement For period 1 January–30
June 200X**

Interest income	2,500,000	2,500,000	2,500,000
Unrealized gains	2,000,000	—	—
Impact on profit and loss	4,500,000	2,500,000	2,500,000

In the case of marketable securities classified as either trading or available-for-sale, the investments are listed under assets and measured at fair market value. To highlight the impact of the change in value, Exhibit 11 shows the unrealized gain on a separate line. Practically, the investments would be listed at their fair value of €102,000,000 on one line within assets. In the case of trading securities, the unrealized gain is included on the income statement and thus reflected in retained earnings within owners' equity. In the case of available-for-sale securities, the unrealized gain is not included on the income statement as profit and loss; rather, it is treated as part of other comprehensive income and thus reflected in accumulated other comprehensive income within owners' equity. Other comprehensive income includes gains and losses that have not been reported on the income statement due to particular accounting standards. As noted previously, under IFRS 9 the "available for sale" method no longer applies and the unrealised gain is recognised in the income statement. In the case of held-to-maturity securities, the securities are measured at cost rather than fair value; therefore, no unrealized gain is reflected on either the balance sheet or income statement or through comprehensive income.

In Exhibits 4 and 8, SAP Group's 2009 balance sheet shows other financial assets of €486 million (current) and €284 million (non-current). The company's notes disclose that most of these financial assets are loans and receivables, €422 million (current) and €168 million (non-current). Also, €87 million of the non-current other financial assets are classified as available-for-sale equity investments, of which €62 million are venture capital investments without quoted market prices. The notes disclose that fair values could not be estimated by reference to quoted market prices or by discounting estimated future cash flows and that "such investments are accounted for at cost approximating fair value with impairment being assessed ..."

In Exhibits 5 and 9, Apple's 2009 balance sheet shows \$18,201 million of short-term marketable securities and \$10,528 million of long-term marketable securities. In total, marketable securities represent around 60 percent of Apple's \$47.5 billion in total assets. Marketable securities plus cash and cash equivalents represent around 72 percent of the company's total assets. Apple's notes disclose that most of the company's marketable securities are fixed-income securities issued by the US government (\$3,327 million) or its agencies (\$10,835 million), and by other companies including commercial paper (\$12,602 million). In accordance with its investment policy, Apple invests in highly rated securities (which the company defines as investment grade, primarily rated single A or better). The company classifies its marketable securities as available for sale and reports them on the balance sheet at fair value. Unrealized gains and losses are reported in other comprehensive income.

5

NON-CURRENT LIABILITIES

All liabilities that are not classified as current are considered to be non-current or long-term. Exhibits 12 and 13 present balance sheet excerpts for SAP Group and Apple Inc. showing the line items for the companies' non-current liabilities.

Both companies' balance sheets show non-current unearned revenue (deferred income for SAP Group and deferred revenue for Apple). These amounts represent the amounts of unearned revenue relating to goods and services expected to be delivered in periods beyond twelve months following the reporting period. The sections that follow focus on two common types of non-current (long-term) liabilities: long-term financial liabilities and deferred tax liabilities.

Exhibit 12 SAP Group Consolidated Statements of Financial Position (Excerpt: Non-Current Liabilities Detail) (in millions of €)

Assets	as of 31 December	
	2009	2008
Total current assets	5,255	5,571
Total non-current assets	8,119	8,329
Total assets	13,374	13,900
Equity and liabilities		
Total current liabilities	3,416	5,824
Trade and other payables	35	42
Tax liabilities	239	278
Bank loans	699	2
Other financial liabilities	30	38
Financial liabilities	729	40
Other non-financial liabilities	12	13
Provisions	198	232
Deferred tax liabilities	190	239
Deferred income	64	61
Total non-current liabilities	1,467	905
Total liabilities	4,883	6,729
Total equity	8,491	7,171
Equity and liabilities	13,374	13,900

Source: SAP Group 2009 annual report.

Exhibit 13 Apple Inc. Consolidated Balance Sheet (Excerpt: Non-Current Liabilities Detail)* (in millions of \$)

Assets	26 September 2009	27 September 2008
Total current assets	31,555	30,006
[All other assets]	15,946	6,165
Total assets	47,501	36,171

Exhibit 13 (Continued)

Assets	26 September 2009	27 September 2008
Liabilities and shareholders' equity		
Total current liabilities	11,506	11,361
Deferred revenue non-current	853	768
Other non-current liabilities	3,502	1,745
Total liabilities	15,861	13,874
Total shareholders' equity	31,640	22,297
Total liabilities and shareholders' equity	47,501	36,171

*Note: The italicized subtotals presented in this excerpt are not explicitly shown on the face of the financial statement as prepared by the company.

Source: Apple Inc. 2009 annual report (Form 10K/A).

5.1 Long-term Financial Liabilities

Typical long-term financial liabilities include loans (i.e., borrowings from banks) and notes or bonds payable (i.e., fixed-income securities issued to investors). Liabilities such as loans payable and bonds payable are usually reported at amortised cost on the balance sheet. At maturity, the amortised cost of the bond (carrying amount) will be equal to the face value of the bond. For example, if a company issues \$10,000,000 of bonds at par, the bonds are reported as a long-term liability of \$10 million. The carrying amount (amortised cost) from issue to maturity remains at \$10 million. As another example, if a company issues \$10,000,000 of bonds at a price of 97.50 (a discount to par), the bonds are reported as a liability of \$9,750,000. Over the bond's life, the discount of \$250,000 is amortised so that the bond will be listed as a liability of \$10,000,000 at maturity. Similarly, any bond premium would be amortised for bonds issued at a price in excess of face or par value.

In certain cases, liabilities such as bonds issued by a company are reported at fair value. Those cases include financial liabilities held for trading, derivatives that are a liability to the company, and some non-derivative instruments such as those which are hedged by derivatives.

SAP Group's balance sheet in Exhibit 12 shows €699 million of bank loans and €30 million of other financial liabilities. Apple's balance sheet does not show any non-current financial liabilities.

5.2 Deferred Tax Liabilities

Deferred tax liabilities result from temporary timing differences between a company's income as reported for tax purposes (taxable income) and income as reported for financial statement purposes (reported income). Deferred tax liabilities result when taxable income and the actual income tax payable in a period based on it is less than the reported financial statement income before taxes and the income tax expense based on it. Deferred tax liabilities are defined as the amounts of income taxes payable in future periods in respect of taxable temporary differences.¹⁸ In the previous discussion of unearned revenue, inclusion of revenue in taxable income in an earlier period created a deferred tax asset (essentially prepaid tax).

¹⁸ IAS 12, *Income Taxes*, paragraph 5.

Deferred tax liabilities typically arise when items of expense are included in taxable income in earlier periods than for financial statement net income. This results in taxable income being less than income before taxes in the earlier periods. As a result, taxes payable based on taxable income are less than income tax expense based on accounting income before taxes. The difference between taxes payable and income tax expense results in a deferred tax liability—for example, when companies use accelerated depreciation methods for tax purposes and straight-line depreciation methods for financial statement purposes. Deferred tax liabilities also arise when items of income are included in taxable income in later periods—for example, when a company's subsidiary has profits that have not yet been distributed and thus have not yet been taxed.

SAP Group's balance sheet in Exhibit 12 shows €190 million of deferred tax liabilities. Apple's balance sheet in Exhibit 13 does not show a separate line item for deferred tax liabilities, however, note disclosures indicate that the \$3,502 million of non-current liabilities reported on Apple's balance sheet includes deferred tax liabilities of \$2,216 million.

6

EQUITY

Equity is the owners' residual claim on a company's assets after subtracting its liabilities.¹⁹ It represents the claim of the owner against the company. Equity includes funds directly invested in the company by the owners, as well as earnings that have been reinvested over time. Equity can also include items of gain or loss that are not yet recognized on the company's income statement.

6.1 Components of Equity

Six potential components comprise total owners' equity. The first five components listed below comprise equity attributable to owners of parent. The sixth component is the equity attributable to non-controlling interests.

- 1 *Capital contributed by owners* (or common stock, or issued capital). The amount contributed to the company by owners. Ownership of a corporation is evidenced through the issuance of common shares. Common shares may have a par value (or stated value) or may be issued as no par shares (depending on regulations governing the incorporation). Where par or stated value requirements exist, it must be disclosed in the equity section of the balance sheet. In addition, the number of shares authorized, issued, and outstanding must be disclosed for each class of share issued by the company. The number of authorized shares is the number of shares that may be sold by the company under its articles of incorporation. The number of issued shares refers to those shares that have been sold to investors. The number of outstanding shares consists of the issued shares less treasury shares.
- 2 *Preferred shares*. Classified as equity or financial liabilities based upon their characteristics rather than legal form. For example, perpetual, non-redeemable preferred shares are classified as equity. In contrast, preferred shares with mandatory redemption at a fixed amount at a future date are classified as financial

¹⁹ IASB *Conceptual Framework* (2010), paragraph 4.4 (c) and FASB ASC 505-10-05-3 [Equity—Overview and Background].

liabilities. Preferred shares have rights that take precedence over the rights of common shareholders—rights that generally pertain to receipt of dividends and receipt of assets if the company is liquidated.

- 3 *Treasury shares* (or treasury stock or own shares repurchased). Shares in the company that have been repurchased by the company and are held as treasury shares, rather than being cancelled. The company is able to sell (reissue) these shares. A company may repurchase its shares when management considers the shares undervalued, needs shares to fulfill employees' stock options, or wants to limit the effects of dilution from various employee stock compensation plans. A purchase of treasury shares reduces shareholders' equity by the amount of the acquisition cost and reduces the number of total shares outstanding. If treasury shares are subsequently reissued, a company does not recognize any gain or loss from the reissuance on the income statement. Treasury shares are non-voting and do not receive any dividends declared by the company.
- 4 *Retained earnings*. The cumulative amount of earnings recognized in the company's income statements which have not been paid to the owners of the company as dividends.
- 5 *Accumulated other comprehensive income* (or other reserves). The cumulative amount of *other* comprehensive income or loss. Comprehensive income includes both a) net income, which is recognized on the income statement and is reflected in retained earnings, and b) other comprehensive income which is not recognized as part of net income and is reflected in accumulated other comprehensive income.²⁰
- 6 *Noncontrolling interest* (or minority interest). The equity interests of minority shareholders in the subsidiary companies that have been consolidated by the parent (controlling) company but that are not wholly owned by the parent company.

Exhibits 14 and 15 present excerpts of the balance sheets of SAP Group and Apple Inc., respectively, with detailed line items for each company's equity section. SAP's balance sheet indicates that the company has 1,226 million shares of no-par common stock outstanding with a corresponding amount shown in issued capital of €1,226 million. Presentation of the amount of treasury shares, –€1,320 million, is explained in the company's notes:

Treasury shares are recorded at acquisition cost and are presented as a deduction from total equity. Gains and losses on the subsequent reissuance of treasury shares are credited or charged to share premium on an after-tax basis.

Source: SAP Group 2009 annual report

Thus, the line item share premium of €317 million includes amounts from treasury share transactions (and certain other transactions). The amount of retained earnings, €8,571 million, represents the cumulative amount of earnings that the company has recognized in its income statements, net of dividends. SAP Group's –€317 million of

²⁰ Comprehensive income is defined as “the change in equity [net assets] of a business enterprise during a period from transactions and other events and circumstances from non-owner sources. It includes all changes in equity during a period except those resulting from investments by owners and distributions to owners.” FASB ASC Section 220-10-05 [Comprehensive Income—Overall—Overview and Background]. There is no explicit definition of comprehensive income in IFRS; the implicit definition is similar to that above. IFRS defines income in the glossary as “increases in economic benefits during the accounting period in the form of inflows or enhancements of assets or decreases of liabilities that result in increases in equity, other than those relating to contributions from equity participants.”

“Other components of equity” includes the company’s accumulated other comprehensive income. The consolidated statement of changes in equity shows that this is composed of €319 million of losses on exchange differences in translation, €13 million gains on remeasuring available-for-sale financial assets, and €11 million losses on cash flow hedges. The balance sheet presents a subtotal for the amount of equity attributable to the parent company €8,477 million followed by the amount of equity attributable to non-controlling interests. Total equity includes both equity attributable to the parent company and equity attributable to non-controlling interests.

The equity section of Apple’s balance sheet consists of only three line items: common stock, retained earnings, and accumulated other comprehensive income/(loss). The company holds no treasury stock and has no minority interests.

**Exhibit 14 SAP Group Consolidated Statements of Financial Position
(Excerpt: Equity Detail) (in millions of €)**

Assets	as of 31 December	
	2009	2008
Total assets	13,374	13,900
Equity and liabilities		
Total liabilities	4,883	6,729
Issued capital ¹⁾	1,226	1,226
Treasury shares	-1,320	-1,362
Share premium	317	320
Retained earnings	8,571	7,422
Other components of equity	-317	-437
Equity attributable to owners of parent	8,477	7,169
Non-controlling interests	14	2
Total equity	8,491	7,171
Equity and liabilities	13,374	13,900

¹⁾Authorized–not issued or outstanding: 480 million no-par shares at 31 December 2009 and 2008. Authorized–issued and outstanding: 1,226 million no-par shares at 31 December 2009 and 2008.
Source: SAP Group 2009 annual report.

**Exhibit 15 Apple Inc. Consolidated Balance Sheet (Excerpt: Equity Detail)
(in millions of \$)**

Assets	26 September 2009	27 September 2008
Total assets	47,501	36,171
Liabilities and shareholders’ equity		
Total liabilities	15,861	13,874
Common stock, no par value; 1,800,000,000 shares authorized; 899,805,500 and 888,325,973 shares issued and outstanding, respectively	8,210	7,177
Retained earnings	23,353	15,129

Exhibit 15 (Continued)

Assets	26 September 2009	27 September 2008
Accumulated other comprehensive income/(loss)	77	(9)
Total shareholders' equity	31,640	22,297
Total liabilities and shareholders' equity	47,501	36,171

Source: Apple Inc. 2009 annual report (10K/A).

6.2 Statement of Changes in Equity

The **statement of changes in equity** (or statement of shareholders' equity) presents information about the increases or decreases in a company's equity over a period. IFRS requires the following information in the statement of changes in equity:

- total comprehensive income for the period;
- the effects of any accounting changes that have been retrospectively applied to previous periods;
- capital transactions with owners and distributions to owners; and
- reconciliation of the carrying amounts of each component of equity at the beginning and end of the year.²¹

Under US GAAP, the requirement as specified by the SEC is for companies to provide an analysis of changes in each component of stockholders' equity that is shown in the balance sheet.²²

Exhibit 16 presents an excerpt from Apple's Consolidated Statements of Changes in Shareholders' Equity. The excerpt shows only one of the years presented on the actual statement. It begins with the balance as of 27 September 2008 (i.e., the beginning of fiscal 2009) and presents the analysis of changes to 26 September 2009 in each component of equity that is shown on Apple's balance sheet. As shown, the company issued 11.48 million new shares in connection with its employee stock plans, increasing the number of shares outstanding from 888.326 million to 899.806 million. The dollar balance in common stock also increased in connection with stock-based compensation. Retained earnings increased by \$8,235 million net income, net of an \$11 million adjustment in connection with stock plans. For companies that pay dividends, the amount of dividends are shown separately as a deduction from retained earnings. Apple did not pay dividends. The statement also provides details on the \$86 million change in Apple's Accumulated other comprehensive income. Note that the statement provides a subtotal for total comprehensive income that includes net income and each of the components of other comprehensive income.

²¹ IAS 1, *Presentation of Financial Statements*, paragraph 106.

²² FASB ASC 505-10-S99 [Equity—Overall—SEC materials] indicates that a company can present the analysis of changes in stockholders' equity either in the notes or in a separate statement.

Exhibit 16 Excerpt from Apple Inc.'s Consolidated Statements of Changes in Shareholders' Equity (in millions, except share amounts which are reflected in thousands)

	Common Stock		Retained Earnings	Accumulated Other Comprehensive Income	Total Shareholders' Equity
	Shares	Amount			
Balances as of 27 September 2008	888,326	\$ 7,177	\$ 15,129	\$ (9)	\$ 22,297
Components of comprehensive income:					
Net income	—	—	8,235	—	8,235
Change in foreign currency translation	—	—	—	(14)	(14)
Change in unrealized loss on available-for-sale securities, net of tax	—	—	—	118	118
Change in unrealized gain on derivative instruments, net of tax	—	—	—	(18)	(18)
Total comprehensive income					8,321
Stock-based compensation	—	707	—	—	707
Common stock issued under stock plans, net of shares withheld for employee taxes	11,480	404	(11)	—	393
Tax benefit from employee stock plan awards, including transfer pricing adjustments	—	(78)	—	—	(78)
Balances as of 26 September 2009	899,806	\$ 8,210	\$ 23,353	\$ 77	\$ 31,640

7

ANALYSIS OF THE BALANCE SHEET

This section describes two tools for analyzing the balance sheet: common-size analysis and balance sheet ratios. Analysis of a company's balance sheet can provide insight into the company's liquidity and solvency—as of the balance sheet date—as well as the economic resources the company controls. **Liquidity** refers to a company's ability to meet its short-term financial commitments. Assessments of liquidity focus a company's ability to convert assets to cash and to pay for operating needs. **Solvency** refers to a company's ability to meet its financial obligations over the longer term. Assessments of solvency focus on the company's financial structure and its ability to pay long-term financing obligations.

7.1 Common-Size Analysis of the Balance Sheet

The first technique, vertical common-size analysis, involves stating each balance sheet item as a percentage of total assets.²³ Common-size statements are useful in comparing a company's balance sheet composition over time (time-series analysis) and across companies in the same industry. To illustrate, Panel A of Exhibit 17 presents a balance sheet for three hypothetical companies. Company C, with assets of \$9.75 million is much larger than Company A and Company B, each with only \$3.25 million in assets. The common-size balance sheet presented in Panel B facilitates a comparison of these different sized companies.

Exhibit 17

Panel A: Balance Sheets for Companies A, B, and C

(\$ Thousands)	A	B	C
ASSETS			
Current assets			
Cash and cash equivalents	1,000	200	3,000
Short-term marketable securities	900	—	300
Accounts receivable	500	1,050	1,500
Inventory	100	950	300
Total current assets	2,500	2,200	5,100
Property, plant, and equipment, net	750	750	4,650
Intangible assets	—	200	—
Goodwill	—	100	—
Total assets	3,250	3,250	9,750
LIABILITIES AND SHAREHOLDERS' EQUITY			
Current liabilities			
Accounts payable	—	2,500	600
Total current liabilities	—	2,500	600
Long term bonds payable	10	10	9,000
Total liabilities	10	2,510	9,600
Total shareholders' equity	3,240	740	150
Total liabilities and shareholders' equity	3,250	3,250	9,750

Panel B: Common-Size Balance Sheets for Companies A, B, and C

(Percent)	A	B	C
ASSETS			
Current assets			
Cash and cash equivalents	30.8	6.2	30.8
Short-term marketable securities	27.7	0.0	3.1

(continued)

²³ As discussed in the curriculum reading on financial statement analysis, another type of common-size analysis, known as "horizontal common-size analysis," states quantities in terms of a selected base-year value. Unless otherwise indicated, text references to "common-size analysis" refer to vertical analysis.

Exhibit 17 (Continued)

Panel B: Common-Size Balance Sheets for Companies A, B, and C			
(Percent)	A	B	C
Accounts receivable	15.4	32.3	15.4
Inventory	3.1	29.2	3.1
Total current assets	76.9	67.7	52.3
Property, plant and equipment, net	23.1	23.1	47.7
Intangible assets	0.0	6.2	0.0
Goodwill	0.0	3.1	0.0
Total assets	100.0	100.0	100.0
LIABILITIES AND SHAREHOLDERS' EQUITY			
Current liabilities			
Accounts payable	0.0	76.9	6.2
Total current liabilities	0.0	76.9	6.2
Long term bonds payable	0.3	0.3	92.3
Total liabilities	0.3	77.2	98.5
Total shareholders' equity	99.7	22.8	1.5
Total liabilities and shareholders' equity	100.0	100.0	100.0

Most of the assets of Company A and B are current assets; however, Company A has nearly 60 percent of its total assets in cash and short-term marketable securities while Company B has only 6 percent of its assets in cash. Company A is more liquid than Company B. Company A shows no current liabilities (its current liabilities round to less than \$10 thousand), and it has cash on hand of \$1.0 million to meet any near-term financial obligations it might have. In contrast, Company B has \$2.5 million of current liabilities which exceed its available cash of only \$200 thousand. To pay those near-term obligations, Company B will need to collect some of its accounts receivables, sell more inventory, borrow from a bank, and/or raise more long-term capital (e.g., by issuing more bonds or more equity). Company C also appears more liquid than Company B. It holds over 30 percent of its total assets in cash and short-term marketable securities, and its current liabilities are only 6.2 percent of the amount of total assets.

Company C's \$3.3 million in cash and short-term marketable securities is substantially more than its current liabilities of \$600 thousand. Turning to the question of solvency, however, note that 98.5 percent of Company C's assets are financed with liabilities. If Company C experiences significant fluctuations in cash flows, it may be unable to pay the interest and principal on its long-term bonds. Company A is far more solvent than Company C, with less than one percent of its assets financed with liabilities.

Note that these examples are hypothetical only. Other than general comparisons, little more can be said without further detail. In practice, a wide range of factors affect a company's liquidity management and capital structure. The study of optimal **capital structure** is a fundamental issue addressed in corporate finance. Capital refers to a company's long-term debt and equity financing; capital structure refers to the proportion of debt versus equity financing.

Common-size balance sheets can also highlight differences in companies' strategies. Comparing the asset composition of the companies, Company C has made a greater proportional investment in property, plant, and equipment—possibly because it manufactures more of its products in-house. The presence of goodwill on Company B's balance sheet signifies that it has made one or more acquisitions in the past. In contrast, the lack of goodwill on the balance sheets of Company A and Company C suggests that these two companies may have pursued a strategy of internal growth rather than growth by acquisition. Company A may be in either a start-up or liquidation stage of operations as evidenced by the composition of its balance sheet. It has relatively little inventory and no accounts payable. It either has not yet established trade credit or it is in the process of paying off its obligations in the process of liquidating.

EXAMPLE 6

Common-Size Analysis

Applying common-size analysis to the excerpts of SAP Group's balance sheets presented in Exhibits 4, 6, 8, and 12, answer the following: In 2009 relative to 2008, which two of the following line items increased as a percentage of assets?

- A Cash and cash equivalents.
- B Other financial assets.
- C Trade and other receivables.
- D Tax assets.
- E Bank loans classified as current (i.e., due within one year).
- F Bank loans classified as non-current (i.e., due after one year).

Solution:

(€ amounts shown are in millions.) A and F are correct. Both cash and longer-term bank loans increased as a percentage of total assets. Cash and cash equivalents increased from 9.2 percent of total assets in 2008 ($€1,280 \div €13,900$) to 14.1 percent in 2009 ($€1,884 \div €13,374$). Bank loans due after one year increased from 0.01 percent in 2008 ($€2 \div €13,900$) to 5.2 percent in 2009 ($€699 \div €13,374$). The company may have borrowed funds for a strategic purpose that it has not yet acted upon.

The other items (other financial assets, trade and other receivables, tax assets, and bank loans classified as current) all decreased both in absolute Euro amounts and as a percentage of total assets when compared with the previous year. Note that some amounts of the company's other financial assets, trade and other receivables, and tax assets are classified as current assets (shown in Exhibit 4) and some amounts are classified as non-current assets (shown in Exhibit 8). The total amounts—current and non-current—of other financial assets, trade and other receivables, and tax assets, therefore, are obtained by summing the amounts in Exhibits 4 and 8.

Overall, the company strengthened its liquidity position in 2009. Total current assets were approximately the same percentage of total assets, whereas cash was a much higher percentage of total assets; total current liabilities were a much smaller percentage of the amount of total assets.

Common-size analysis of the balance sheet is particularly useful in cross-sectional analysis—comparing companies to each other for a particular time period or comparing a company with industry or sector data. The analyst could select individual peer

companies for comparison, use industry data from published sources, or compile data from databases. When analyzing a company, many analysts prefer to select the peer companies for comparison or to compile their own industry statistics.

Exhibit 18 presents common-size balance sheet data compiled for the 10 sectors of the S&P 500 using 2008 data. The sector classification follows the S&P/MSCI Global Industrial Classification System (GICS). The exhibit presents mean and median common-size balance sheet data for those companies in the S&P 500 for which 2008 data was available in the Compustat database.²⁴

Some interesting general observations can be made from these data:

- Energy and utility companies have the largest amounts of property, plant, and equipment (PPE). Telecommunication services, followed by utilities, have the highest level of long-term debt. Utilities also use some preferred stock.
- Financial companies have the greatest percentage of total liabilities. Financial companies typically have relatively high financial leverage.
- Telecommunications services and utility companies have the lowest level of receivables.
- Inventory levels are highest for consumer discretionary. Materials and consumer staples have the next highest inventories.
- Information technology companies use the least amount of leverage as evidenced by the lowest percentages for long-term debt and total liabilities and highest percentages for common and total equity.

Example 7 discusses an analyst using cross-sectional common-size balance sheet data.

EXAMPLE 7

Cross-Sectional Common-Size Analysis

Jason Lu is examining three companies in the computer industry to evaluate their relative financial position as reflected on their balance sheets. He has compiled the following vertical common-size data for Apple, Dell, and Hewlett-Packard.

Cross-Sectional Analysis Consolidated Balance Sheets (in Percent of Total Assets)			
	APPLE	DELL	HPQ
	30 Sept 2009	29 Jan 2010	31 Oct 2009
ASSETS:			
Current assets:			
Cash and cash equivalents	11.1	31.6	11.6
Short-term marketable securities	38.3	1.1	0.0
Accounts receivable and financing receivables	7.1	25.4	16.7
Inventories	1.0	3.1	5.3
Deferred tax assets	2.4	0.0	0.0
Other current assets	6.6	10.8	12.1
Total current assets	66.4	72.0	45.8
Long-term marketable securities	22.2	2.3	0.0

²⁴ An entry of zero for an item (e.g., current assets) was excluded from the data, except in the case of preferred stock. Note that most financial institutions did not provide current asset or current liability data, so these are reported as not available in the database.

Exhibit 18 Common-Size Balance Sheet Statistics for the S&P 500 Grouped by S&P/MSCI GICS Sector
(in percent except No. of Observations; data for 2008)

		Panel A. Median Data									
		10	15	20	25	30	35	40	45	50	55
	Energy	Materials	Industrials	Consumer Discretionary	Consumer Staples	Health Care	Financials	Information Technology	Telecommunication Services	Utilities	
Number of observations	40	29	59	86	40	55	87	77	9	33	
Cash	4.31	4.50	5.90	5.92	4.09	11.62	7.36	26.12	2.85	1.66	
Receivables	8.34	12.22	16.41	9.43	8.82	11.45	18.25	9.44	5.77	5.29	
Inventories	3.33	12.06	8.71	15.20	12.81	6.07	0.00	3.17	0.32	2.27	
Other current	2.59	2.29	2.79	3.78	2.70	4.30	0.00	4.88	1.26	3.10	
Total current assets	19.88	35.07	35.65	41.24	30.05	39.43	31.07	49.53	8.85	13.77	
PPE	69.25	32.46	15.85	21.84	22.69	11.04	1.09	9.79	42.77	61.67	
Intangibles	3.39	13.53	27.99	18.45	30.58	33.22	2.34	18.46	40.43	3.95	
Accounts payable	6.05	6.28	6.43	7.84	7.88	3.61	9.37	3.17	2.06	3.46	
Current liabilities	15.81	17.63	24.55	26.38	26.27	17.94	24.00	22.59	10.70	13.52	
LT debt	17.86	22.94	19.15	22.50	26.75	18.66	11.86	9.64	52.75	30.86	
Total liabilities	50.74	66.89	63.44	64.08	68.46	53.34	88.16	49.00	66.34	74.53	
Preferred stock	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.18	
Common equity	47.68	30.88	36.55	35.56	31.48	46.43	9.45	49.88	20.61	25.43	
Total equity	47.68	31.03	36.55	35.56	31.48	46.43	11.81	49.88	20.61	25.47	

Exhibit 18 (Continued)

Panel B. Mean Data

	10	15	20	25	30	35	40	45	50	55
	Energy	Materials	Industrials	Consumer Discretionary	Consumer Staples	Health Care	Financials	Information Technology	Telecommunication Services	Utilities
Number of observations	40	29	59	86	40	55	87	77	9	33
Cash	5.66	6.72	7.82	10.06	6.81	15.00	10.18	27.63	3.08	2.43
Receivables	9.43	11.80	18.76	11.40	9.62	13.24	29.68	12.16	4.63	5.92
Inventories	5.98	13.64	10.49	17.93	13.44	8.04	2.39	4.70	0.43	2.82
Other current	3.17	2.87	3.44	4.09	3.62	4.75	3.18	7.56	1.77	4.64
Total current assets	23.94	34.98	38.35	39.88	33.31	41.07	34.25	51.97	9.91	15.73
PPE	62.93	37.88	24.15	26.83	27.09	13.52	2.75	13.41	48.81	61.62
Intangibles	7.43	16.52	28.04	21.40	32.75	33.80	9.30	23.08	35.95	5.16
Accounts payable	7.02	6.64	7.69	10.51	8.65	8.50	26.87	5.03	2.46	3.90
Current liabilities	16.33	20.33	25.82	27.48	27.65	22.73	32.76	25.89	10.27	16.02
LT debt	20.08	22.83	20.48	24.94	28.01	19.76	21.04	14.84	49.17	30.99
Total liabilities	52.29	64.02	64.23	66.31	69.32	53.36	79.79	51.21	80.00	73.73
Preferred stock	0.12	0.58	0.00	0.15	0.00	0.16	1.47	0.00	0.00	0.44
Common equity	46.77	35.55	35.41	33.00	30.04	46.08	18.02	48.69	17.95	25.44
Total equity	46.89	36.14	35.41	33.15	30.04	46.25	19.49	48.69	17.95	25.88

PPE = Property, plant, and equipment, LT = Long term.

Source: Based on data from Compustat.

Cross-Sectional Analysis Consolidated Balance Sheets (in Percent of Total Assets)			
	APPLE	DELL	HPQ
	30 Sept 2009	29 Jan 2010	31 Oct 2009
Long-term financing receivables	0.0	0.0	9.8
Property, plant and equipment, net	6.2	6.5	9.8
Goodwill	0.4	12.1	28.8
Acquired intangible assets, net	0.5	5.0	5.7
Other assets	4.2	2.0	0.0
Total assets	100.0	100.0	100.0
LIABILITIES AND SHAREHOLDERS' EQUITY:			
Current liabilities:			
Accounts payable	11.8	33.8	12.9
Short-term debt	0.0	2.0	1.6
Accrued expenses	8.1	11.5	17.6
Deferred revenue	4.3	9.0	5.4
Total current liabilities	24.2	56.3	37.5
Long-term debt	0.0	10.2	12.2
Deferred revenue non-current	1.8	9.0	0.0
Other non-current liabilities	7.4	7.7	15.1
Total liabilities	33.4	83.2	64.7
Commitments and contingencies			
Total shareholders' equity	66.6	16.8	35.3
Total liabilities and shareholders' equity	100.0	100.0	100.0

APPLE = Apple Inc.; DELL = Dell Inc.; HPQ = Hewlett-Packard Co.

Source: Based on data from companies' annual reports.

From this data, Lu learns the following:

- Apple and Dell have a high level of cash and short-term marketable securities, consistent with the information technology sector as reported in Exhibit 18. Hewlett-Packard's percentage of cash and marketable securities is lower, perhaps reflecting its broader range of information technology products and services. Apple has a higher balance in cash and investments combined than Dell, Hewlett-Packard, or the industry sector as reported in Exhibit 18. This may reflect the success of the company's business model, which has generated large operating cash flows in recent years.
- Apple has the lowest level of accounts receivable. Further research is necessary to learn the extent to which this is related to Apple's cash sales through its own retail stores. An alternative explanation would be that the company has been selling/factoring receivables to a greater degree than the other companies; however, that explanation is unlikely given Apple's cash position.
- Apple and Dell both have low levels of inventory compared to the industry sector as reported in Exhibit 18. Both utilize a just-in-time inventory system and rely on suppliers to hold inventory until needed. Additional scrutiny of the notes accompanying their annual reports reveals Apple

regularly makes purchase commitments that are not currently recorded as inventory and uses contract manufacturers to assemble and test some finished products. All of the companies have some purchase commitments and make some use of contract manufacturers, which implies that inventory may be “understated.”

- Apple and Dell have a level of property, plant, and equipment below that of the sector, whereas Hewlett-Packard is very close to the sector median as reported in Exhibit 18.
- Hewlett-Packard has a large amount of goodwill from its steady stream of acquisitions over the last decade.
- Dell has a large amount of accounts payable. Because of Dell’s high level of cash and investments, this is likely not a problem for Dell.
- Consistent with the industry, Dell and Hewlett-Packard have very low levels of long-term debt. Apple has no long term debt.

7.2 Balance Sheet Ratios

Ratios facilitate time-series and cross-sectional analysis of a company’s financial position. **Balance sheet ratios** are those involving balance sheet items only. Each of the line items on a vertical common-size balance sheet is a ratio in that it expresses a balance sheet amount in relation to total assets. Other balance sheet ratios compare one balance sheet item to another. For example, the current ratio expresses current assets in relation to current liabilities as an indicator of a company’s liquidity. Balance sheet ratios include **liquidity ratios** (measuring the company’s ability to meet its short-term obligations) and **solvency ratios** (measuring the company’s ability to meet long-term and other obligations). These ratios and others are discussed in a later reading. Exhibit 19 summarizes the calculation and interpretation of selected balance sheet ratios.

Exhibit 19 Balance Sheet Ratios

Liquidity Ratios	Calculation	Indicates
Current	Current assets ÷ Current liabilities	Ability to meet current liabilities
Quick (acid test)	(Cash + Marketable securities + Receivables) ÷ Current liabilities	Ability to meet current liabilities
Cash	(Cash + Marketable securities) ÷ Current liabilities	Ability to meet current liabilities
Solvency Ratios		
Long-term debt-to-equity	Total long-term debt ÷ Total equity	Financial risk and financial leverage
Debt-to-equity	Total debt ÷ Total equity	Financial risk and financial leverage
Total debt	Total debt ÷ Total assets	Financial risk and financial leverage
Financial leverage	Total assets ÷ Total equity	Financial risk and financial leverage

EXAMPLE 8**Ratio Analysis**

For the following ratio questions, refer to the balance sheet information for the SAP Group presented in Exhibits 1, 4, 6, 8, and 12.

- 1 The current ratio for SAP Group at 31 December 2009 is *closest* to:
 - A 1.54.
 - B 1.86.
 - C 2.33.
- 2 Which two of the following ratios decreased in 2009 relative to 2008?
 - A Cash.
 - B Quick.
 - C Current.
 - D Debt-to-equity.
 - E Financial leverage.
 - F Long-term debt-to-equity.
- 3 For the ratios listed in Question 2, how are the changes interpreted?

Solution to 1:

A is correct. SAP Group's current ratio (Current assets ÷ Current liabilities) at 31 December 2009 is 1.54 (€5,255 million ÷ €3,416 million).

Solution to 2:

D and E are correct. The ratios are shown in the table below. The debt-to-equity and financial leverage ratios are lower in 2009 than in 2008. Bank loans (short-term debt) were reduced and equity increased. All other ratios are higher.

Liquidity Ratios	Calculation	2009 € in millions	2008 € in millions
Current	Current assets ÷ Current liabilities	€5,255 ÷ €3,416 = 1.54	€5,571 ÷ €5,824 = 0.96
Quick (acid test)	(Cash + Marketable securities + Receivables) ÷ Current liabilities	(€1,884 + €486 + €2,546) ÷ €3,416 = 1.44	(€1,280 + €588 + €3,178) ÷ €5,824 = 0.87
Cash	(Cash + Marketable securities) ÷ Current liabilities	(€1,884 + €486) ÷ €3,416 = 0.69	(€1,280 + €588) ÷ €5,824 = 0.32
Solvency Ratios			
Long-term debt-to-equity	Total long-term debt ÷ Total equity	€729 ÷ €8,491 = 8.6%	€40 ÷ €7,171 = 0.6%
Debt-to-equity	Total debt ÷ Total equity	(€146 + €729) ÷ €8,491 = 10.3%	(€2,563 + €40) ÷ €7,171 = 36.3%
Financial Leverage	Total assets ÷ Total equity	€13,374 ÷ €8,491 = 1.58	€13,900 ÷ €7,171 = 1.94

Solution to 3:

- The increase in each of the liquidity ratios (current, quick, and cash) in 2009 indicates that the company's liquidity position strengthened. Compared with the end of 2008, the company reported a greater amount of current assets relative to current liabilities.

- The long-term debt-to-equity ratio indicates the amount of long-term debt capital relative to the amount of equity capital. In general, an increase in the long-term debt-to-equity ratio implies that a company's solvency has weakened. In this case, however, several points should be noted. First, despite the increase, this company's ratio remains very low, indicating its solvency position is strong. Second, securing long-term financing in 2009—when credit market disruptions had caused difficulty for some companies seeking to borrow—could be considered a very prudent action. Third, the company's overall financial leverage decreased, i.e., improved.
- The debt-to-equity ratio indicates the amount of total debt capital relative to the amount of equity capital. Financial leverage indicates the amount of total asset relative to equity. A decrease in the debt-to-equity and financial leverage ratios implies that a company's total leverage decreased and thus its solvency has improved. In this case, the company's total leverage decreased largely because the company repaid most of its short-term bank loans and increased its equity in 2009.

Cross-sectional financial ratio analysis can be limited by differences in accounting methods. In addition, lack of homogeneity of a company's operating activities can limit comparability. For diversified companies operating in different industries, using industry-specific ratios for different lines of business can provide better comparisons. Companies disclose information on operating segments. The financial position and performance of the operating segments can be compared to the relevant industry.

Ratio analysis requires a significant amount of judgment. One key area requiring judgment is understanding the limitations of any ratio. The current ratio, for example, is only a rough measure of liquidity at a specific point in time. The ratio captures only the amount of current assets, but the components of current assets differ significantly in their nearness to cash (e.g., marketable securities versus inventory). Another limitation of the current ratio is its sensitivity to end-of-period financing and operating decisions that can potentially impact current asset and current liability amounts. Another overall area requiring judgment is determining whether a ratio for a company is within a reasonable range for an industry. Yet another area requiring judgment is evaluating whether a ratio signifies a persistent condition or reflects only a temporary condition. Overall, evaluating specific ratios requires an examination of the entire operations of a company, its competitors, and the external economic and industry setting in which it is operating.

SUMMARY

The balance sheet (also referred to as the statement of financial position) discloses what an entity owns (assets) and what it owes (liabilities) at a specific point in time. Equity is the owners' residual interest in the assets of a company, net of its liabilities. The amount of equity is increased by income earned during the year, or by the issuance of new equity. The amount of equity is decreased by losses, by dividend payments, or by share repurchases.

An understanding of the balance sheet enables an analyst to evaluate the liquidity, solvency, and overall financial position of a company.

- The balance sheet distinguishes between current and non-current assets and between current and non-current liabilities unless a presentation based on liquidity provides more relevant and reliable information.
- The concept of liquidity relates to a company's ability to pay for its near-term operating needs. With respect to a company overall, liquidity refers to the availability of cash to pay those near-term needs. With respect to a particular asset or liability, liquidity refers to its "nearness to cash."
- Some assets and liabilities are measured on the basis of fair value and some are measured at historical cost. Notes to financial statements provide information that is helpful in assessing the comparability of measurement bases across companies.
- Assets expected to be liquidated or used up within one year or one operating cycle of the business, whichever is greater, are classified as current assets. Assets not expected to be liquidated or used up within one year or one operating cycle of the business, whichever is greater, are classified as non-current assets.
- Liabilities expected to be settled or paid within one year or one operating cycle of the business, whichever is greater, are classified as current liabilities. Liabilities not expected to be settled or paid within one year or one operating cycle of the business, whichever is greater, are classified as non-current liabilities.
- Trade receivables, also referred to as accounts receivable, are amounts owed to a company by its customers for products and services already delivered. Receivables are reported net of the allowance for doubtful accounts.
- Inventories are physical products that will eventually be sold to the company's customers, either in their current form (finished goods) or as inputs into a process to manufacture a final product (raw materials and work-in-process). Inventories are reported at the lower of cost or net realizable value. If the net realizable value of a company's inventory falls below its carrying amount, the company must write down the value of the inventory and record an expense.
- Inventory cost is based on specific identification or estimated using the first-in, first-out or weighted average cost methods. Some accounting standards (including US GAAP but not IFRS) also allow last-in, first-out as an additional inventory valuation method.
- Accounts payable, also called trade payables, are amounts that a business owes its vendors for purchases of goods and services.
- Deferred revenue (also known as unearned revenue) arises when a company receives payment in advance of delivery of the goods and services associated with the payment received.
- Property, plant, and equipment (PPE) are tangible assets that are used in company operations and expected to be used over more than one fiscal period. Examples of tangible assets include land, buildings, equipment, machinery, furniture, and natural resources such as mineral and petroleum resources.
- IFRS provide companies with the choice to report PPE using either a historical cost model or a revaluation model. US GAAP permit only the historical cost model for reporting PPE.
- Depreciation is the process of recognizing the cost of a long-lived asset over its useful life. (Land is not depreciated.)

- Under IFRS, property used to earn rental income or capital appreciation is considered to be investment property. IFRS provide companies with the choice to report investment property using either a historical cost model or a fair value model.
- Intangible assets refer to identifiable non-monetary assets without physical substance. Examples include patents, licenses, and trademarks. For each intangible asset, a company assesses whether the useful life is finite or indefinite.
- An intangible asset with a finite useful life is amortised on a systematic basis over the best estimate of its useful life, with the amortisation method and useful-life estimate reviewed at least annually. Impairment principles for an intangible asset with a finite useful life are the same as for PPE.
- An intangible asset with an indefinite useful life is not amortised. Instead, it is tested for impairment at least annually.
- For internally generated intangible assets, IFRS require that costs incurred during the research phase must be expensed. Costs incurred in the development stage can be capitalized as intangible assets if certain criteria are met, including technological feasibility, the ability to use or sell the resulting asset, and the ability to complete the project.
- The most common asset that is not a separately identifiable asset is goodwill, which arises in business combinations. Goodwill is not amortised; instead it is tested for impairment at least annually.
- Financial instruments are contracts that give rise to both a financial asset of one entity and a financial liability or equity instrument of another entity. In general, there are two basic alternative ways that financial instruments are measured: fair value or amortised cost. For financial instruments measured at fair value, there are two basic alternatives in how net changes in fair value are recognized: as profit or loss on the income statement, or as other comprehensive income (loss) which bypasses the income statement.
- Typical long-term financial liabilities include loans (i.e., borrowings from banks) and notes or bonds payable (i.e., fixed-income securities issued to investors). Liabilities such as bonds issued by a company are usually reported at amortised cost on the balance sheet.
- Deferred tax liabilities arise from temporary timing differences between a company's income as reported for tax purposes and income as reported for financial statement purposes.
- Six potential components that comprise the owners' equity section of the balance sheet include: contributed capital, preferred shares, treasury shares, retained earnings, accumulated other comprehensive income, and non-controlling interest.
- The statement of changes in equity reflects information about the increases or decreases in each component of a company's equity over a period.
- Vertical common-size analysis of the balance sheet involves stating each balance sheet item as a percentage of total assets.
- Balance sheet ratios include liquidity ratios (measuring the company's ability to meet its short-term obligations) and solvency ratios (measuring the company's ability to meet long-term and other obligations).

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

- 1 Resources controlled by a company as a result of past events are:
 - A equity.
 - B assets.
 - C liabilities.
- 2 Equity equals:
 - A Assets – Liabilities.
 - B Liabilities – Assets.
 - C Assets + Liabilities.
- 3 Distinguishing between current and non-current items on the balance sheet and presenting a subtotal for current assets and liabilities is referred to as:
 - A a classified balance sheet.
 - B an unclassified balance sheet.
 - C a liquidity-based balance sheet.
- 4 Shareholders' equity reported on the balance sheet is *most likely* to differ from the market value of shareholders' equity because:
 - A historical cost basis is used for all assets and liabilities.
 - B some factors that affect the generation of future cash flows are excluded.
 - C shareholders' equity reported on the balance sheet is updated continuously.
- 5 The information provided by a balance sheet item is limited because of uncertainty regarding:
 - A measurement of its cost or value with reliability.
 - B the change in current value following the end of the reporting period.
 - C the probability that any future economic benefit will flow to or from the entity.
- 6 Which of the following is *most likely* classified as a current liability?
 - A Payment received for a product due to be delivered at least one year after the balance sheet date
 - B Payments for merchandise due at least one year after the balance sheet date but still within a normal operating cycle
 - C Payment on debt due in six months for which the company has the unconditional right to defer settlement for at least one year after the balance sheet date
- 7 The *most likely* company to use a liquidity-based balance sheet presentation is a:
 - A bank.
 - B computer manufacturer holding inventories.
 - C software company with trade receivables and payables.
- 8 All of the following are current assets *except*:
 - A cash.
 - B goodwill.
 - C inventories.

- 9 The *most* likely costs included in both the cost of inventory and property, plant, and equipment are:
- A selling costs.
 - B storage costs.
 - C delivery costs.
- 10 Debt due within one year is considered:
- A current.
 - B preferred.
 - C convertible.
- 11 Money received from customers for products to be delivered in the future is recorded as:
- A revenue and an asset.
 - B an asset and a liability.
 - C revenue and a liability.
- 12 An example of a contra asset account is:
- A depreciation expense.
 - B sales returns and allowances.
 - C allowance for doubtful accounts.
- 13 The carrying value of inventories reflects:
- A their historical cost.
 - B their current value.
 - C the lower of historical cost or net realizable value.
- 14 When a company pays its rent in advance, its balance sheet will reflect a reduction in:
- A assets and liabilities.
 - B assets and shareholders' equity.
 - C one category of assets and an increase in another.
- 15 Accrued expenses (accrued liabilities) are:
- A expenses that have been paid.
 - B created when another liability is reduced.
 - C expenses that have been reported on the income statement but not yet paid.
- 16 The initial measurement of goodwill is *most likely* affected by:
- A an acquisition's purchase price.
 - B the acquired company's book value.
 - C the fair value of the acquirer's assets and liabilities.
- 17 Defining total asset turnover as revenue divided by average total assets, all else equal, impairment write-downs of long-lived assets owned by a company will *most likely* result in an increase for that company in:
- A the debt-to-equity ratio but not the total asset turnover.
 - B the total asset turnover but not the debt-to-equity ratio.
 - C both the debt-to-equity ratio and the total asset turnover.
- 18 A company has total liabilities of £35 million and total stockholders' equity of £55 million. Total liabilities are represented on a vertical common-size balance sheet by a percentage *closest* to:
- A 35%.

- B 39%.
C 64%.
- 19 For financial assets classified as trading securities, how are unrealized gains and losses reflected in shareholders' equity?
A They are not recognized.
B They flow through income into retained earnings.
C They are a component of accumulated other comprehensive income.
- 20 For financial assets classified as available for sale, how are unrealized gains and losses reflected in shareholders' equity?
A They are not recognized.
B They flow through retained earnings.
C They are a component of accumulated other comprehensive income.
- 21 For financial assets classified as held to maturity, how are unrealized gains and losses reflected in shareholders' equity?
A They are not recognized.
B They flow through retained earnings.
C They are a component of accumulated other comprehensive income.
- 22 The non-controlling (minority) interest in consolidated subsidiaries is presented on the balance sheet:
A as a long-term liability.
B separately, but as a part of shareholders' equity.
C as a mezzanine item between liabilities and shareholders' equity.
- 23 The item "retained earnings" is a component of:
A assets.
B liabilities.
C shareholders' equity.
- 24 When a company buys shares of its own stock to be held in treasury, it records a reduction in:
A both assets and liabilities.
B both assets and shareholders' equity.
C assets and an increase in shareholders' equity.
- 25 Which of the following would an analyst *most likely* be able to determine from a common-size analysis of a company's balance sheet over several periods?
A An increase or decrease in sales.
B An increase or decrease in financial leverage.
C A more efficient or less efficient use of assets.
- 26 An investor concerned whether a company can meet its near-term obligations is *most likely* to calculate the:
A current ratio.
B return on total capital.
C financial leverage ratio.
- 27 The most stringent test of a company's liquidity is its:
A cash ratio.
B quick ratio.
C current ratio.

- 28 An investor worried about a company's long-term solvency would *most likely* examine its:
- A current ratio.
 - B return on equity.
 - C debt-to-equity ratio.
- 29 Using the information presented in Exhibit 4, the quick ratio for SAP Group at 31 December 2009 is *closest* to:
- A 1.01.
 - B 1.44.
 - C 1.54.
- 30 Using the information presented in Exhibit 12, the financial leverage ratio for SAP Group at 31 December 2009 is *closest* to:
- A 0.08.
 - B 0.58.
 - C 1.58.

Questions 31 through 34 refer to Exhibit 1.

Exhibit 1 Common-Size Balance Sheets for Company A, Company B, and Sector Average

	Company A	Company B	Sector Average
ASSETS			
Current assets			
Cash and cash equivalents	5	5	7
Marketable securities	5	0	2
Accounts receivable, net	5	15	12
Inventories	15	20	16
Prepaid expenses	5	15	11
Total current assets	35	55	48
Property, plant, and equipment, net	40	35	37
Goodwill	25	0	8
Other assets	0	10	7
Total assets	100	100	100
LIABILITIES AND SHAREHOLDERS' EQUITY			
Current liabilities			
Accounts payable	10	10	10
Short-term debt	25	10	15
Accrued expenses	0	5	3
Total current liabilities	35	25	28

Exhibit 1 (Continued)**LIABILITIES AND SHAREHOLDERS' EQUITY**

Long-term debt	45	20	28
Other non-current liabilities	0	10	7
Total liabilities	80	55	63
Total shareholders' equity	20	45	37
Total liabilities and shareholders' equity	100	100	100

- 31 Based on Exhibit 1, which statement is *most likely* correct?
- A Company A has below-average liquidity risk.
 - B Company B has above-average solvency risk.
 - C Company A has made one or more acquisitions.
- 32 The quick ratio for Company A is *closest* to:
- A 0.43.
 - B 0.57.
 - C 1.00.
- 33 Based on Exhibit 1, the financial leverage ratio for Company B is *closest* to:
- A 0.55.
 - B 1.22.
 - C 2.22.
- 34 Based on Exhibit 1, which ratio indicates lower liquidity risk for Company A compared with Company B?
- A Cash ratio
 - B Quick ratio
 - C Current ratio

SOLUTIONS

- 1 B is correct. Assets are resources controlled by a company as a result of past events.
- 2 A is correct. $\text{Assets} = \text{Liabilities} + \text{Equity}$ and, therefore, $\text{Assets} - \text{Liabilities} = \text{Equity}$.
- 3 A is correct. A classified balance sheet is one that classifies assets and liabilities as current or non-current and provides a subtotal for current assets and current liabilities. A liquidity-based balance sheet broadly presents assets and liabilities in order of liquidity.
- 4 B is correct. The balance sheet omits important aspects of a company's ability to generate future cash flows, such as its reputation and management skills. The balance sheet measures some assets and liabilities based on historical cost and measures others based on current value. Market value of shareholders' equity is updated continuously. Shareholders' equity reported on the balance sheet is updated for reporting purposes and represents the value that was current at the end of the reporting period.
- 5 B is correct. Balance sheet information is as of a specific point in time, and items measured at current value reflect the value that was current at the end of the reporting period. For all financial statement items, an item should be recognized in the financial statements only if it is probable that any future economic benefit associated with the item will flow to or from the entity and if the item has a cost or value that can be measured with reliability.
- 6 B is correct. Payments due within one operating cycle of the business, even if they will be settled more than one year after the balance sheet date, are classified as current liabilities. Payment received in advance of the delivery of a good or service creates an obligation or liability. If the obligation is to be fulfilled at least one year after the balance sheet date, it is recorded as a non-current liability, such as deferred revenue or deferred income. Payments that the company has the unconditional right to defer for at least one year after the balance sheet may be classified as non-current liabilities.
- 7 A is correct. A liquidity-based presentation, rather than a current/non-current presentation, may be used by such entities as banks if broadly presenting assets and liabilities in order of liquidity is reliable and more relevant.
- 8 B is correct. Goodwill is a long-term asset, and the others are all current assets.
- 9 C is correct. Both the cost of inventory and property, plant, and equipment include delivery costs, or costs incurred in bringing them to the location for use or resale.
- 10 A is correct. Current liabilities are those liabilities, including debt, due within one year. Preferred refers to a class of stock. Convertible refers to a feature of bonds (or preferred stock) allowing the holder to convert the instrument into common stock.
- 11 B is correct. The cash received from customers represents an asset. The obligation to provide a product in the future is a liability called "unearned income" or "unearned revenue." As the product is delivered, revenue will be recognized and the liability will be reduced.

- 12 C is correct. A contra asset account is netted against (i.e., reduces) the balance of an asset account. The allowance for doubtful accounts reduces the balance of accounts receivable. Accumulated depreciation, not depreciation expense, is a contra asset account. Sales returns and allowances create a contra account that reduce sales, not an asset.
- 13 C is correct. Under IFRS, inventories are carried at historical cost, unless net realizable value of the inventory is less. Under US GAAP, inventories are carried at the lower of cost or market.
- 14 C is correct. Paying rent in advance will reduce cash and increase prepaid expenses, both of which are assets.
- 15 C is correct. Accrued liabilities are expenses that have been reported on a company's income statement but have not yet been paid.
- 16 A is correct. Initially, goodwill is measured as the difference between the purchase price paid for an acquisition and the fair value of the acquired, not acquiring, company's net assets (identifiable assets less liabilities).
- 17 C is correct. Impairment write-downs reduce equity in the denominator of the debt-to-equity ratio but do not affect debt, so the debt-to-equity ratio is expected to increase. Impairment write-downs reduce total assets but do not affect revenue. Thus, total asset turnover is expected to increase.
- 18 B is correct. Vertical common-size analysis involves stating each balance sheet item as a percentage of total assets. Total assets are the sum of total liabilities (£35 million) and total stockholders' equity (£55 million), or £90 million. Total liabilities are shown on a vertical common-size balance sheet as $(£35 \text{ million}/£90 \text{ million}) \approx 39\%$.
- 19 B is correct. For financial assets classified as trading securities, unrealized gains and losses are reported on the income statement and flow to shareholders' equity as part of retained earnings.
- 20 C is correct. For financial assets classified as available for sale, unrealized gains and losses are not recorded on the income statement and instead are part of *other* comprehensive income. Accumulated other comprehensive income is a component of Shareholders' equity.
- 21 A is correct. Financial assets classified as held to maturity are measured at amortised cost. Gains and losses are recognized only when realized.
- 22 B is correct. The non-controlling interest in consolidated subsidiaries is shown separately as part of shareholders' equity.
- 23 C is correct. The item "retained earnings" is a component of shareholders' equity.
- 24 B is correct. Share repurchases reduce the company's cash (an asset). Shareholders' equity is reduced because there are fewer shares outstanding and treasury stock is an offset to owners' equity.
- 25 B is correct. Common-size analysis (as presented in the reading) provides information about composition of the balance sheet and changes over time. As a result, it can provide information about an increase or decrease in a company's financial leverage.
- 26 A is correct. The current ratio provides a comparison of assets that can be turned into cash relatively quickly and liabilities that must be paid within one year. The other ratios are more suited to longer-term concerns.
- 27 A is correct. The cash ratio determines how much of a company's near-term obligations can be settled with existing amounts of cash and marketable securities.

- 28** C is correct. The debt-to-equity ratio, a solvency ratio, is an indicator of financial risk.
- 29** B is correct. The quick ratio ($[\text{Cash} + \text{Marketable securities} + \text{Receivables}] \div \text{Current liabilities}$) is 1.44 ($[= 1,884 + 486 + 2,546] \div 3,416$). Given the placement of other financial assets between cash and receivables, it is reasonable to assume these are highly liquid and are probably marketable securities.
- 30** C is correct. The financial leverage ratio ($\text{Total assets} \div \text{Total equity}$) is 1.58 ($= 13,374 \div 8,491$).
- 31** C is correct. The presence of goodwill on Company A's balance sheet signifies that it has made one or more acquisitions in the past. The current, cash, and quick ratios are lower for Company A than for the sector average. These lower liquidity ratios imply above-average liquidity risk. The total debt, long-term debt-to-equity, debt-to-equity, and financial leverage ratios are lower for Company B than for the sector average. These lower solvency ratios imply below-average solvency risk.
- Current ratio is $(35/35) = 1.00$ for Company A, versus $(48/28) = 1.71$ for the sector average.
- Cash ratio is $(5 + 5)/35 = 0.29$ for Company A, versus $(7 + 2)/28 = 0.32$ for the sector average.
- Quick ratio is $(5 + 5 + 5)/35 = 0.43$ for Company A, versus $(7 + 2 + 12)/28 = 0.75$ for the sector average.
- Total debt ratio is $(55/100) = 0.55$ for Company B, versus $(63/100) = 0.63$ for the sector average.
- Long-term debt-to-equity ratio is $(20/45) = 0.44$ for Company B, versus $(28/37) = 0.76$ for the sector average.
- Debt-to-equity ratio is $(55/45) = 1.22$ for Company B, versus $(63/37) = 1.70$ for the sector average.
- Financial leverage ratio is $(100/45) = 2.22$ for Company B, versus $(100/37) = 2.70$ for the sector average.
- 32** A is correct. The quick ratio is defined as $(\text{Cash and cash equivalents} + \text{Marketable securities} + \text{receivables}) \div \text{Current liabilities}$. For Company A, this calculation is $(5 + 5 + 5)/35 = 0.43$.
- 33** C is correct. The financial leverage ratio is defined as $\text{Total assets} \div \text{Total equity}$. For Company B, total assets are 100 and total equity is 45; hence, the financial leverage ratio is $100/45 = 2.22$.
- 34** A is correct. The cash ratio is defined as $(\text{Cash} + \text{Marketable securities})/\text{Current liabilities}$. Company A's cash ratio, $(5 + 5)/35 = 0.29$, is higher than $(5 + 0)/25 = 0.20$ for Company B.

Understanding Cash Flow Statements

by Elaine Henry, PhD, CFA, Thomas R. Robinson, PhD, CFA,
Jan Hendrik van Greuning, DCom, CFA, and
Michael A. Broihahn, CPA, CIA, CFA

Elaine Henry, PhD, CFA, is at Stevens Institute of Technology (USA). Thomas R. Robinson, PhD, CFA, is at AACSB International (USA). Jan Hendrik van Greuning, DCom, CFA, is at BIBD (Brunei). Michael A. Broihahn, CPA, CIA, CFA, is at Barry University (USA).

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Mastery	The candidate should be able to:
<input type="checkbox"/>	a. compare cash flows from operating, investing, and financing activities and classify cash flow items as relating to one of those three categories given a description of the items;
<input type="checkbox"/>	b. describe how non-cash investing and financing activities are reported;
<input type="checkbox"/>	c. contrast cash flow statements prepared under International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRS) and US generally accepted accounting principles (US GAAP);
<input type="checkbox"/>	d. distinguish between the direct and indirect methods of presenting cash from operating activities and describe arguments in favor of each method;
<input type="checkbox"/>	e. describe how the cash flow statement is linked to the income statement and the balance sheet;
<input type="checkbox"/>	f. describe the steps in the preparation of direct and indirect cash flow statements, including how cash flows can be computed using income statement and balance sheet data;
<input type="checkbox"/>	g. convert cash flows from the indirect to direct method;
<input type="checkbox"/>	h. analyze and interpret both reported and common-size cash flow statements;
<input type="checkbox"/>	i. calculate and interpret free cash flow to the firm, free cash flow to equity, and performance and coverage cash flow ratios.

Note: Changes in accounting standards as well as new rulings and/or pronouncements issued after the publication of the readings on financial reporting and analysis may cause some of the information in these readings to become dated. Candidates are *not* responsible for anything that occurs after the readings were published. In addition, candidates are expected to be familiar with the analytical frameworks contained in the readings, as well as the implications of alternative accounting methods for financial analysis and valuation discussed in the readings. Candidates are also responsible for the content of accounting standards, but not for the actual reference numbers. Finally, candidates should be aware that certain ratios may be defined and calculated differently. When alternative ratio definitions exist and no specific definition is given, candidates should use the ratio definitions emphasized in the readings.

1

INTRODUCTION

The cash flow statement provides information about a company's *cash receipts* and *cash payments* during an accounting period. The cash-based information provided by the cash flow statement contrasts with the accrual-based information from the income statement. For example, the income statement reflects revenues when earned rather than when cash is collected; in contrast, the cash flow statement reflects cash receipts when collected as opposed to when the revenue was earned. A reconciliation between reported income and cash flows from operating activities provides useful information about when, whether, and how a company is able to generate cash from its operating activities. Although income is an important measure of the results of a company's activities, cash flow is also essential. As an extreme illustration, a hypothetical company that makes all sales on account, without regard to whether it will ever collect its accounts receivable, would report healthy sales on its income statement and might well report significant income; however, with zero cash inflow, the company would not survive. The cash flow statement also provides a reconciliation of the beginning and ending cash on the balance sheet.

In addition to information about cash generated (or, alternatively, cash used) in operating activities, the cash flow statement provides information about cash provided (or used) in a company's investing and financing activities. This information allows the analyst to answer such questions as:

- Does the company generate enough cash from its operations to pay for its new investments, or is the company relying on new debt issuance to finance them?
- Does the company pay its dividends to common stockholders using cash generated from operations, from selling assets, or from issuing debt?

Answers to these questions are important because, in theory, generating cash from operations can continue indefinitely, but generating cash from selling assets, for example, is possible only as long as there are assets to sell. Similarly, generating cash from debt financing is possible only as long as lenders are willing to lend, and the lending decision depends on expectations that the company will ultimately have adequate cash to repay its obligations. In summary, information about the sources and uses of cash helps creditors, investors, and other statement users evaluate the company's liquidity, solvency, and financial flexibility.

This reading explains how cash flow activities are reflected in a company's cash flow statement. The reading is organized as follows. Section 2 describes the components and format of the cash flow statement, including the classification of cash flows under International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRS) and US generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) and the direct and indirect formats for presenting the cash flow statement. Section 3 discusses the linkages of the cash flow statement with the income statement and balance sheet and the steps in the preparation of the cash flow statement. Section 4 demonstrates the analysis of cash flow statements, including the conversion of an indirect cash flow statement to the direct method and how to use common-size cash flow analysis, free cash flow measures, and cash flow ratios used in security analysis. A summary of the key points and practice problems in the CFA Institute multiple-choice format conclude the reading.

COMPONENTS AND FORMAT OF THE CASH FLOW STATEMENT

2

The analyst needs to be able to extract and interpret information on cash flows from financial statements. The basic components and allowable formats of the cash flow statement are well established.

- The cash flow statement has subsections relating specific items to the operating, investing, and financing activities of the company.
- Two presentation formats for the operating section are allowable: direct and indirect.

The following discussion presents these topics in greater detail.

2.1 Classification of Cash Flows and Non-Cash Activities

All companies engage in operating, investing, and financing activities. These activities are the classifications used in the cash flow statement under both IFRS and US GAAP and are described as follows:¹

- **Operating activities** include the company's day-to-day activities that create revenues, such as selling inventory and providing services, and other activities not classified as investing or financing. Cash inflows result from cash sales and from collection of accounts receivable. Examples include cash receipts from the provision of services and royalties, commissions, and other revenue. To generate revenue, companies undertake such activities as manufacturing inventory, purchasing inventory from suppliers, and paying employees. Cash outflows result from cash payments for inventory, salaries, taxes, and other operating-related expenses and from paying accounts payable. Additionally, operating activities include cash receipts and payments related to **dealing securities** or **trading securities** (as opposed to buying or selling securities as investments, as discussed below).
- **Investing activities** include purchasing and selling long-term assets and other investments. These long-term assets and other investments include property, plant, and equipment; intangible assets; other long-term assets; and both long-term and short-term investments in the equity and debt (bonds and loans) issued by other companies. For this purpose, investments in equity and debt securities exclude a) any securities considered cash equivalents (very short-term, highly liquid securities) and b) securities held for dealing or trading purposes, the purchase and sale of which are considered operating activities even for companies where this is not a primary business activity. Cash inflows in the investing category include cash receipts from the sale of non-trading securities; property, plant, and equipment; intangibles; and other long-term assets. Cash outflows include cash payments for the purchase of these assets.
- **Financing activities** include obtaining or repaying capital, such as equity and long-term debt. The two primary sources of capital are shareholders and creditors. Cash inflows in this category include cash receipts from issuing stock (common or preferred) or bonds and cash receipts from borrowing. Cash outflows include cash payments to repurchase stock (e.g., treasury stock) and to repay bonds and other borrowings. Note that indirect borrowing using accounts payable is not considered a financing activity—such borrowing is classified as

¹ IAS 7 *Statement of Cash Flows*.

an operating activity. The new IFRS standard relating to lease accounting (IFRS 16) affects how operating leases are represented in the cash flow statement.² Under IFRS 16, operating leases are treated similarly to finance leases—that is, the interest component of lease payments will be reflected in either the operating or financing section, and the principal component of lease payments is included in the financing section.

EXAMPLE 1

Net Cash Flow from Investing Activities

A company recorded the following in Year 1:

Proceeds from issuance of long-term debt	€300,000
Purchase of equipment	€200,000
Loss on sale of equipment	€70,000
Proceeds from sale of equipment	€120,000
Equity in earnings of affiliate	€10,000

On the Year 1 statement of cash flows, the company would report net cash flow from investing activities *closest* to:

- A (€150,000).
- B (€80,000).
- C €200,000.

Solution

B is correct. The only two items that would affect the investing section are the purchase of equipment and the proceeds from sale of equipment: (€200,000) + €120,000 = (€80,000). The loss on sale of equipment and the equity in earnings of affiliate affect net income but are not cash flows. The issuance of debt is a financing cash flow.

IFRS provide companies with choices in reporting some items of cash flow, particularly interest and dividends. IFRS explain that although for a financial institution interest paid and received would normally be classified as operating activities, for other entities, alternative classifications may be appropriate. For this reason, under IFRS, interest received may be classified either as an operating activity or as an investing activity. Under IFRS, interest paid may be classified as either an operating activity or a financing activity. Furthermore, under IFRS, dividends received may be classified as either an operating activity or an investing activity and dividends paid may be classified as either an operating activity or a financing activity. Companies must use a consistent classification from year to year and disclose separately the amounts of interest and dividends received and paid and where the amounts are reported.

Under US GAAP, discretion is not permitted in classifying interest and dividends. Interest received and interest paid are reported as operating activities for all companies.³ Under US GAAP, dividends received are always reported as operating activities and dividends paid are always reported as financing activities.

² IFRS 16 is effective for fiscal years beginning 1 January 2019, with earlier voluntary adoption allowed.

³ FASB ASC Topic 230 [Statement of Cash Flows].

EXAMPLE 2**Operating versus Financing Cash Flows**

On 31 December 2009, a company issued a £30,000 180-day note at 8 percent and used the cash received to pay for inventory and issued £110,000 long-term debt at 11 percent annually and used the cash received to pay for new equipment. Which of the following *most* accurately reflects the combined effect of both transactions on the company's cash flows for the year ended 31 December 2009 under IFRS? Cash flows from:

- A operations are unchanged.
- B financing increase £110,000.
- C operations decrease £30,000.

Solution:

C is correct. The payment for inventory would decrease cash flows from operations. The issuance of debt (both short-term and long-term debt) is part of financing activities and would increase cash flows from financing activities by £140,000. The purchase of equipment is an investing activity. Note that the treatment under US GAAP would be the same for these transactions.

Companies may also engage in non-cash investing and financing transactions. A non-cash transaction is any transaction that does not involve an inflow or outflow of cash. For example, if a company exchanges one non-monetary asset for another non-monetary asset, no cash is involved. Similarly, no cash is involved when a company issues common stock either for dividends or in connection with conversion of a convertible bond or convertible preferred stock. Because no cash is involved in non-cash transactions (by definition), these transactions are not incorporated in the cash flow statement. However, because such transactions may affect a company's capital or asset structures, any significant non-cash transaction is required to be disclosed, either in a separate note or a supplementary schedule to the cash flow statement.

2.2 A Summary of Differences between IFRS and US GAAP

As highlighted in the previous section, there are some differences in cash flow statements prepared under IFRS and US GAAP that the analyst should be aware of when comparing the cash flow statements of companies prepared in accordance with different sets of standards. The key differences are summarized in Exhibit 1. Most significantly, IFRS allow more flexibility in the reporting of such items as interest paid or received and dividends paid or received and in how income tax expense is classified.

US GAAP classify interest and dividends received from investments as operating activities, whereas IFRS allow companies to classify those items as either operating or investing cash flows. Likewise, US GAAP classify interest expense as an operating activity, even though the principal amount of the debt issued is classified as a financing activity. IFRS allow companies to classify interest expense as either an operating activity or a financing activity. US GAAP classify dividends paid to stockholders as a financing activity, whereas IFRS allow companies to classify dividends paid as either an operating activity or a financing activity.

US GAAP classify all income tax expenses as an operating activity. IFRS also classify income tax expense as an operating activity, unless the tax expense can be specifically identified with an investing or financing activity (e.g., the tax effect of the sale of a discontinued operation could be classified under investing activities).

Exhibit 1 Cash Flow Statements: Differences between IFRS and US GAAP

Topic	IFRS	US GAAP
Classification of cash flows:		
■ Interest received	Operating or investing	Operating
■ Interest paid	Operating or financing	Operating
■ Dividends received	Operating or investing	Operating
■ Dividends paid	Operating or financing	Financing
■ Bank overdrafts	Considered part of cash equivalents	Not considered part of cash and cash equivalents and classified as financing
■ Taxes paid	Generally operating, but a portion can be allocated to investing or financing if it can be specifically identified with these categories	Operating
Format of statement	Direct or indirect; direct is encouraged	Direct or indirect; direct is encouraged. A reconciliation of net income to cash flow from operating activities must be provided regardless of method used

Sources: IAS 7; FASB ASC Topic 230; and “IFRS and US GAAP: Similarities and Differences,” PricewaterhouseCoopers (September 2009), available at www.pwc.com.

Under either set of standards, companies currently have a choice of formats for presenting cash flow statements, as discussed in the next section.

2.3 Direct and Indirect Methods for Reporting Cash Flow from Operating Activities

There are two acceptable formats for reporting **cash flow from operating activities** (also known as **cash flow from operations** or **operating cash flow**), defined as the net amount of cash provided from operating activities: the direct and the indirect methods. The *amount* of operating cash flow is identical under both methods; only the *presentation format* of the operating cash flow section differs. The presentation format of the cash flows from investing and financing is exactly the same, regardless of which method is used to present operating cash flows.

The **direct method** shows the specific cash inflows and outflows that result in reported cash flow from operating activities. It shows each cash inflow and outflow related to a company’s cash receipts and disbursements. In other words, the direct method eliminates any impact of accruals and shows only cash receipts and cash payments. The primary argument in favor of the direct method is that it provides information on the specific sources of operating cash receipts and payments. This is in contrast to the indirect method, which shows only the net result of these receipts and payments. Just as information on the specific sources of revenues and expenses is more useful than knowing only the net result—net income—the analyst gets additional information from a direct-format cash flow statement. The additional information is useful in understanding historical performance and in predicting future operating cash flows.

The **indirect method** shows how cash flow from operations can be obtained from reported net income as the result of a series of adjustments. The **indirect format** begins with net income. To reconcile net income with operating cash flow, adjustments are

made for non-cash items, for non-operating items, and for the net changes in operating accruals. The main argument for the indirect approach is that it shows the reasons for differences between net income and operating cash flows. (However, the differences between net income and operating cash flows are equally visible on an indirect-format cash flow statement and in the supplementary reconciliation required under US GAAP if the company uses the direct method.) Another argument for the indirect method is that it mirrors a forecasting approach that begins by forecasting future income and then derives cash flows by adjusting for changes in balance sheet accounts that occur because of the timing differences between accrual and cash accounting.

IFRS and US GAAP both encourage the use of the direct method but permit either method. US GAAP encourage the use of the direct method but also require companies to present a reconciliation between net income and cash flow (which is equivalent to the indirect method).⁴ If the indirect method is chosen, no direct-format disclosures are required. The majority of companies, reporting under IFRS or US GAAP, present using the indirect method for operating cash flows.

Many users of financial statements prefer the **direct format**, particularly analysts and commercial lenders, because of the importance of information about operating receipts and payments in assessing a company's financing needs and capacity to repay existing obligations. Preparers argue that adjusting net income to operating cash flow, as in the indirect format, is easier and less costly than reporting gross operating cash receipts and payments, as in the direct format. With advances in accounting systems and technology, it is not clear that gathering the information required to use the direct method is difficult or costly. CFA Institute has advocated that standard setters require the use of the direct format for the main presentation of the cash flow statement, with indirect cash flows as supplementary disclosure.⁵

2.3.1 An Indirect-Format Cash Flow Statement Prepared under IFRS

Exhibit 2 presents the consolidated cash flow statement prepared under IFRS from Unilever Group's 2009 annual report.⁶ The statement, covering the fiscal years ended 31 December 2009, 2008, and 2007, shows the use of the indirect method. Unilever is an Anglo-Dutch consumer products company with headquarters in the United Kingdom and the Netherlands.⁷

Exhibit 2 Unilever Group Consolidated Cash Flow Statement (€ millions)

	For the year ended 31 December		
	2009	2008	2007
Cash flow from operating activities			
Net profit	3,659	5,285	4,136
Taxation	1,257	1,844	1,137
Share of net profit of joint ventures/associates and other income from non-current investments	(489)	(219)	(191)
Net finance costs:	593	257	252
			<i>(continued)</i>

⁴ FASB ASC Section 230-10-45 [Statement of Cash Flows—Overall—Other Presentation Matters].

⁵ *A Comprehensive Business Reporting Model: Financial Reporting for Investors*, CFA Institute Centre for Financial Market Integrity (July 2007), p. 13.

⁶ The cash flow statement presented here includes a reconciliation of net income to cash generated from operations, which Unilever Group reports in Note 28 to the financial statement rather than on the statement itself.

⁷ Unilever NV and Unilever PLC have independent legal structures, but a series of agreements enable the companies to operate as a single economic entity.

Exhibit 2 (Continued)

	For the year ended 31 December		
	2009	2008	2007
Finance income	(75)	(106)	(147)
Finance cost	504	506	550
Preference shares provision	—	—	7
Pensions and similar obligations	164	(143)	(158)
Operating profit (continuing and discontinued operations)	5,020	7,167	5,334
Depreciation, amortisation and impairment	1,032	1,003	943
Changes in working capital:	1,701	(161)	27
Inventories	473	(345)	(333)
Trade and other current receivables	640	(248)	(43)
Trade payables and other current liabilities	588	432	403
Pensions and similar provisions less payments	(1,028)	(502)	(910)
Provisions less payments	(258)	(62)	145
Elimination of (profits)/losses on disposals	13	(2,259)	(459)
Non-cash charge for share-based compensation	195	125	118
Other adjustments	58	15	(10)
Cash flow from operating activities	6,733	5,326	5,188
Income tax paid	(959)	(1,455)	(1,312)
Net cash flow from operating activities	5,774	3,871	3,876
Interest received	73	105	146
Purchase of intangible assets	(121)	(147)	(136)
Purchase of property, plant and equipment	(1,248)	(1,142)	(1,046)
Disposal of property, plant and equipment	111	190	163
Sale and leaseback transactions resulting in operating leases	—	—	36
Acquisition of group companies, joint ventures and associates	(409)	(211)	(214)
Disposal of group companies, joint ventures and associates	270	2,476	164
Acquisition of other non-current investments	(95)	(126)	(50)
Disposal of other non-current investments	224	47	33
Dividends from joint ventures, associates and other non-current investments	201	132	188
(Purchase)/sale of financial assets	(269)	91	93
Net cash flow (used in)/from investing activities	(1,263)	1,415	(623)
Dividends paid on ordinary share capital	(2,106)	(2,086)	(2,182)
Interest and preference dividends paid	(517)	(487)	(552)
Additional financial liabilities	2,913	4,544	4,283
Repayment of financial liabilities	(4,456)	(3,427)	(2,896)
Sale and leaseback transactions resulting in finance leases	—	(1)	25
Capital element of finance lease rental payments	(24)	(66)	(74)
Share buy-back programme	—	(1,503)	(1,500)
Other movements on treasury stock	103	103	442
Other financing activities	(214)	(207)	(555)
Net cash flow (used in)/from financing activities	(4,301)	(3,130)	(3,009)
Net increase/(decrease) in cash and cash equivalents	210	2,156	244

Exhibit 2 (Continued)

	For the year ended 31 December		
	2009	2008	2007
Cash and cash equivalents at the beginning of the year	2,360	901	710
Effect of foreign exchange rate changes	(173)	(697)	(53)
Cash and cash equivalents at the end of the year	<u>2,397</u>	<u>2,360</u>	<u>901</u>

Beginning first at the bottom of the statement, we note that cash increased from €710 million at the beginning of 2007 to €2,397 million at the end of 2009, with the largest increase occurring in 2008. To understand the changes, we next examine the sections of the statement. In each year, the primary cash inflow derived from operating activities, as would be expected for a mature company in a relatively stable industry. In each year, the operating cash flow was more than the reported net profit, again, as would be expected from a mature company, with the largest differences primarily arising from the add-back of depreciation. Also, in each year, the operating cash flow was more than enough to cover the company's capital expenditures. For example, in 2009, the company generated €5,774 million in net cash from operating activities and—as shown in the investing section—spent €1,137 million on property, plant, and equipment (€1,248 million, net of €111 million proceeds from disposals). Also, as shown in the investing section, the main reason for the large increase in cash in 2008 was the €2,476 million inflow from the disposal of group companies, joint ventures, and associates.

The financing section of the statement shows that each year the company returned about €2.1 billion to its common shareholders and around €500 million to its debt holders and preferred shareholders via interest and dividends. The company also repurchased about €1.5 billion in common stock in both 2007 and 2008. In 2009, the company repaid debt (repayments of €4,456 million exceeded additional financing liabilities of €2,913 million).

Having examined each section of the statement, we return to the operating activities section of Unilever's cash flow statement, which presents a reconciliation of net profit to net cash flow from operating activities (i.e., uses the indirect method). The following discussion of certain adjustments to reconcile net profit to operating cash flows explains some of the main reconciliation adjustments and refers to the amounts in 2009. The first adjustment adds back the €1,257 million income tax expense (labeled "Taxation") that had been recognized as an expense in the computation of net profit. A €959 million deduction for the (cash) income taxes paid is then shown separately, as the last item in the operating activities section, consistent with the IFRS requirement that cash flows arising from income taxes be separately disclosed. The classification of taxes on income paid should be indicated. The classification is in operating activities unless the taxes can be specifically identified with financing or investing activities.

The next adjustment "removes" from the operating cash flow section the €489 million representing Unilever's share of joint ventures' income that had been included in the computation of net profit. A €201 million inflow of (cash) dividends received from those joint ventures is then shown in the investing activities section. Similarly, a €593 million adjustment removes the net finance costs from the operating activities section. Unilever then reports its €73 million (cash) interest received in the investing activities section and its €517 million (cash) interest paid (and preference dividends paid) in the financing activities section. The next adjustment in the operating section of this indirect-method statement adds back €1,032 million depreciation, amortization, and impairment, all of which are expenses that had been deducted in the

computation of net income but which did not involve any outflow of cash in the period. The €1,701 million adjustment for changes in working capital is necessary because these changes result from applying accrual accounting and thus do not necessarily correspond to the actual cash movement. These adjustments are described in greater detail in a later section.

In summary, some observations from an analysis of Unilever's cash flow statement include:

- Total cash increased from €710 million at the beginning of 2007 to €2,397 million at the end of 2009, with the largest increase occurring in 2008.
- In each year, the operating cash flow was more than the reported net profit, as would generally be expected from a mature company.
- In each year, the operating cash flow was more than enough to cover the company's capital expenditures.
- The company returned cash to its equity investors through dividends in each year and through share buybacks in 2007 and 2008.

2.3.2 A Direct-Format Cash Flow Statement Prepared under IFRS

In the direct format of the cash flow statement, the cash received from customers, as well as other operating items, is clearly shown.

Exhibit 3 presents a direct-method format cash flow statement prepared under IFRS for Telefónica Group, a diversified telecommunications company based in Madrid.⁸

Exhibit 3 Telefónica Group Consolidated Statement of Cash Flows (€ millions)

for the years ended 31 December	2009	2008	2007
Cash flows from operating activities			
Cash received from customers	67,358	69,060	67,129
Cash paid to suppliers and employees	(46,198)	(48,500)	(47,024)
Dividends received	100	113	124
Net interest and other financial expenses paid	(2,170)	(2,894)	(3,221)
Taxes paid	(2,942)	(1,413)	(1,457)
Net cash from operating activities	16,148	16,366	15,551
Cash flows from investing activities			
Proceeds on disposals of property, plant and equipment and intangible assets	242	276	198
Payments on investments in property, plant and equipment and intangible assets	(7,593)	(7,889)	(7,274)
Proceeds on disposals of companies, net of cash and cash equivalents disposed	34	686	5,346
Payments on investments in companies, net of cash and cash equivalents acquired	(48)	(2,178)	(2,798)
Proceeds on financial investments not included under cash equivalents	6	31	14
Payments made on financial investments not included under cash equivalents	(1,411)	(114)	(179)

⁸ This statement excludes the supplemental cash flow reconciliation provided at the bottom of the original cash flow statement by the company.

Exhibit 3 (Continued)

Interest (paid) received on cash surpluses not included under cash equivalents	(548)	76	74
Government grants received	18	11	27
Net cash used in investing activities	(9,300)	(9,101)	(4,592)
Cash flows from financing activities			
Dividends paid	(4,838)	(4,440)	(3,345)
Transactions with equity holders	(947)	(2,241)	(2,152)
Proceeds on issue of debentures and bonds	8,617	1,317	4,209
Proceeds on loans, borrowings and promissory notes	2,330	3,693	6,658
Cancellation of debentures and bonds	(1,949)	(1,167)	(1,756)
Repayments of loans, borrowings and promissory notes	(5,494)	(4,927)	(13,039)
Net cash flow used in financing activities	(2,281)	(7,765)	(9,425)
Effect of foreign exchange rate changes on collections and payments	269	(302)	(261)
Effect of changes in consolidation methods and other non-monetary effects	—	14	—
Net increase (decrease) in cash and cash equivalents during the period	4,836	(788)	1,273
Cash and cash equivalents at 1 January	4,277	5,065	3,792
Cash and cash equivalents at 31 December	9,113	4,277	5,065

As shown at the bottom of the statement, cash and cash equivalents increased from €3,792 million at the beginning of 2007 to €9,113 million at the end of 2009. The largest increase in cash occurred in 2009, with 2008 showing a decrease. Cash from operations was the primary source of cash, consistent with the profile of a mature company in a relatively stable industry. Each year, the company generated significantly more cash from operations than it required for its capital expenditures. For example, in 2009, the company generated €16.1 billion cash from operations and spent—as shown in the investing section—only €7.4 billion on property, plant, and equipment (€7,593 million, net of €242 million from disposals). Another notable item from the investing section is the company's limited acquisition activity in 2009 compared with 2008 and 2007. In both 2007 and 2008, the company made over €2 billion of acquisitions, and in 2007, the company also received €5.5 billion from disposals. Instead of using cash for acquisition activity in 2009 when net acquisitions used only €14 million (€48 million acquisitions, net of €34 million from disposals), the company invested €1,411 million in financial investments excluded from cash and cash equivalents (i.e., long-term financial investments).

As shown in the financing section, in 2009, the net cash inflow from debt issuance was €3,504 million (€8,617 million proceeds from debentures and bonds plus €2,330 million proceeds from loans, borrowings, and promissory notes, net of repayments and cancellations totaling €7,443 million).

In summary, some observations from an analysis of Telefónica's cash flow statement include

- Total cash and cash equivalents increased over the three-year period, with 2009 showing the biggest increase.
- Cash from operating activities was large enough in each year to cover the company's capital expenditures.

- The amount paid for property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets was the largest investing expenditure each year and did not significantly vary from year to year.
- The company had a significant amount of acquisition and divestiture activity in 2007 and 2008 but not in 2009.
- The company paid an increasing amount of dividends over the three-year period.

An analyst can also make some comparisons between the income statement (not shown here) and the statement of cash flows. For example, contrast the change in revenues from the income statement to the change in cash received from customers. An increase in revenues coupled with a decrease in cash received from customers, for example, could signal collection problems. As shown in Exhibit 3, cash received from customers in 2009 decreased 2.46 percent compared with 2008, from €69,060 million to €67,358 million. The company reported revenues on the income statement of €56,731 million and €57,946 million for 2009 and 2008, respectively. Thus, the decrease in cash received from customers was slightly greater than the 2.10 percent decrease in total revenue and would not in itself indicate any collection issue.

2.3.3 Illustrations of Cash Flow Statements Prepared under US GAAP

Previously, we presented cash flow statements prepared under IFRS. In this section, we illustrate cash flow statements prepared under US GAAP. This section presents the cash flow statements of two companies, Tech Data Corporation and Walmart. Tech Data reports its operating activities using the direct method, whereas Walmart reports its operating activities using the more common indirect method.

Tech Data Corporation is a leading distributor of information technology products. Exhibit 4 presents comparative cash flow statements from the company's annual report for the fiscal years ended 31 January 2008 through 2010.

Exhibit 4 Tech Data Corporation and Subsidiaries Consolidated Cash Flow Statements (in Thousands)

Years Ended 31 January	2010	2009	2008
Cash flows from operating activities:			
Cash received from customers	\$21,927,372	\$23,989,567	\$23,473,295
Cash paid to vendors and employees	(21,320,637)	(23,636,388)	(23,053,048)
Interest paid, net	(14,015)	(20,382)	(14,273)
Income taxes paid	(48,790)	(52,987)	(48,552)
Net cash provided by operating activities	543,930	279,810	357,422
Cash flows from investing activities:			
Acquisition of business, net of cash acquired	(8,153)	(78,266)	(21,503)
Proceeds from sale of business	0	0	7,161
Proceeds from sale of property and equipment	5,491	0	0
Expenditures for property and equipment	(14,486)	(17,272)	(21,474)
Software and software development costs	(14,379)	(15,275)	(16,885)
Net cash used in investing activities	(31,527)	(110,813)	(52,701)
Cash flows from financing activities:			
Proceeds from the issuance of common stock and reissuance of treasury stock	37,959	1,530	12,542

Exhibit 4 (Continued)

Years Ended 31 January	2010	2009	2008
Cash paid for purchase of treasury stock	0	(100,000)	(100,019)
Capital contributions and net borrowings from joint venture partner	23,208	10,810	9,000
Net (repayments) borrowings on revolving credit loans	(19,116)	42,834	(56,297)
Principal payments on long-term debt	(5,654)	(1,786)	(2,371)
Excess tax benefit from stock-based compensation	963	0	212
Net cash provided by (used in) financing activities	37,360	(46,612)	(136,933)
Effect of exchange rate changes on cash and cash equivalents	38,793	(41,702)	14,546
Net increase in cash and cash equivalents	588,556	80,683	182,334
Cash and cash equivalents at beginning of year	528,023	447,340	265,006
Cash and cash equivalents at end of year	\$1,116,579	\$528,023	\$447,340
Reconciliation of net income to net cash provided by operating activities:			
Net income attributable to shareholders of Tech Data Corporation	\$180,155	\$117,278	\$102,129
Net income (loss) attributable to non-controlling interest	1,045	(1,822)	(3,559)
Consolidated net income	181,200	115,456	98,570
Adjustments to reconcile net income to net cash provided by (used in) operating activities:			
Loss on disposal of subsidiaries	0	0	14,471
Depreciation and amortization	45,954	51,234	53,881
Provision for losses on accounts receivable	10,953	15,000	11,200
Stock-based compensation expense	11,225	11,990	10,287
Accretion of debt discount on convertible senior debentures	10,278	10,278	10,278
Deferred income taxes	(2,541)	18,221	2,629
Excess tax benefit from stock-based compensation	(963)	0	(212)
Changes in operating assets and liabilities:			
Accounts receivable	(168,152)	(86,423)	57,419
Inventories	116,543	(261,974)	57,904
Prepaid expenses and other assets	21,290	(18,761)	(40,951)
Accounts payable	336,587	374,696	83,845
Accrued expenses and other liabilities	(18,444)	50,093	(1,899)
Total adjustments	362,730	164,354	258,852
Net cash provided by operating activities	\$543,930	\$279,810	\$357,422

Tech Data Corporation prepares its cash flow statements under the direct method. The company's cash increased from \$265 million at the beginning of 2008 to \$1.1 billion at the end of January 2010, with the biggest increase occurring in the most recent year. The 2010 increase was driven by changes across all three sections of the statement. In the cash flows from operating activities section of Tech Data's cash flow statements, the company identifies the amount of cash it received from customers, \$21.9 billion for 2010, and the amount of cash that it paid to suppliers and employees, \$21.3 billion for 2010. Cash receipts decreased from \$24.0 billion in the prior year, but cash paid decreased by even more such that cash provided by operating activities increased in 2010 compared with 2009. Net cash provided by operating activities of \$543.9 million was adequate to cover the company's investing activities, primarily purchases of property and equipment (\$14.5 million) and software development (\$14.4 million). Overall, investing activities in 2010 used far less cash than in 2009, primarily because of reduced amounts of cash used for acquisition of businesses. In 2010, the company issued \$38 million of common stock and received \$23.2 million in contributions and borrowings from its joint venture partner, providing net cash from financing activities of \$37.4 million after its debt repayments.

Whenever the direct method is used, US GAAP require a disclosure note and a schedule that reconciles net income with the net cash flow from operating activities. Tech Data shows this reconciliation at the bottom of its consolidated statements of cash flows. The disclosure note and reconciliation schedule are exactly the information that would have been presented in the body of the cash flow statement if the company had elected to use the indirect method rather than the direct method. For 2009, the reconciliation highlights an increase in the company's accounts receivable, a decrease in inventory, and a significant increase in payables.

In summary, some observations from an analysis of Tech Data's cash flow statement include:

- The company's cash increased by \$852 (= 1,117 – 265 or = 589 + 81 + 182) million over the three years ending in January 2010, with the biggest increase occurring in the most recent year.
- The company's operating cash was adequate to cover the company's investments in all three years.
- In 2009, the company issued stock and received financing from its joint venture partner, which provided the company with a stronger cash cushion.

Walmart is a global retailer that conducts business under the names of Walmart and Sam's Club. Exhibit 5 presents the comparative cash flow statements from the company's annual report for the fiscal years ended 31 January 2010, 2009, and 2008.

Exhibit 5 Walmart Cash Flow Statements Fiscal Years Ended 31 January (\$ millions)

Fiscal Year Ended 31 January	2010	2009	2008
Cash flows from operating activities:			
Consolidated net income	14,848	13,899	13,137
Loss (income) from discontinued operations, net of tax	79	(146)	132
Income from continuing operations	14,927	13,753	13,269
Adjustments to reconcile income from continuing operations to net cash provided by operating activities:			
Depreciation and amortization	7,157	6,739	6,317
Deferred income taxes	(504)	581	(8)
Other operating activities	301	769	504

Exhibit 5 (Continued)

Fiscal Year Ended 31 January	2010	2009	2008
Changes in certain assets and liabilities, net of effects of acquisitions:			
Increase in accounts receivable	(297)	(101)	(564)
Decrease (increase) in inventories	2,265	(220)	(775)
Increase (decrease) in accounts payable	1,052	(410)	865
Increase in accrued liabilities	1,348	2,036	1,034
Net cash provided by operating activities	26,249	23,147	20,642
Cash flows from investing activities:			
Payments for property and equipment	(12,184)	(11,499)	(14,937)
Proceeds from disposal of property and equipment	1,002	714	957
Proceeds from (payments for) disposal of certain international operations, net	—	838	(257)
Investment in international operations, net of cash acquired	—	(1,576)	(1,338)
Other investing activities	(438)	781	(95)
Net cash used in investing activities	(11,620)	(10,742)	(15,670)
Cash flows from financing activities:			
Increase (decrease) in short-term borrowings, net	(1,033)	(3,745)	2,376
Proceeds from issuance of long-term debt	5,546	6,566	11,167
Payment of long-term debt	(6,033)	(5,387)	(8,723)
Dividends paid	(4,217)	(3,746)	(3,586)
Purchase of Company stock	(7,276)	(3,521)	(7,691)
Purchase of redeemable non-controlling interest	(436)	—	—
Payment of capital lease obligations	(346)	(352)	(343)
Other financing activities	(396)	267	(622)
Net cash used in financing activities	(14,191)	(9,918)	(7,422)
Effect of exchange rates on cash and cash equivalents	194	(781)	252
Net increase (decrease) in cash and cash equivalents	632	1,706	(2,198)
Cash and cash equivalents at beginning of year ¹	7,275	5,569	7,767
Cash and cash equivalents at end of year ²	7,907	7,275	5,569
Supplemental disclosure of cash flow information			
Income tax paid	7,389	6,596	6,299
Interest paid	2,141	1,787	1,622
Capital lease obligations incurred	61	284	447

¹ Includes cash and cash equivalents of discontinued operations of \$51 million at 1 February 2007.

² Includes cash and cash equivalents of discontinued operations of \$77 million at 31 January 2008.

Walmart's cash flow statement indicates the following:

- Cash and cash equivalents changed only slightly over the three years, from \$7.8 billion at the beginning of fiscal 2008 to \$7.9 billion at the end of fiscal 2010, but year-to-year cash flows varied significantly.

- Operating cash flow increased steadily from \$20.6 billion in fiscal 2008 to \$26.2 billion in 2010 and was significantly greater than the company's expenditures on property and equipment in every year.
- In 2009 and 2010, the company used cash to repay borrowing, to pay dividends, and to repurchase its common stock.

Walmart prepares its cash flow statements under the indirect method. In the cash flows from operating activities section of Walmart's cash flow statement, the company reconciles its net income of \$14.8 billion to net cash provided by operating activities of \$26.2 billion. Whenever the indirect method is used, US GAAP mandate disclosure of how much cash was paid for interest and income taxes. Note that these are line items in cash flow statements using the direct method, so disclosure does not have to be mandated. Walmart discloses the amount of cash paid for income tax (\$7.4 billion), interest (\$2.1 billion), and capital lease obligations (\$61 million) at the bottom of its cash flow statements.

3

THE CASH FLOW STATEMENT: LINKAGES AND PREPARATION

The indirect format of the cash flow statement demonstrates that changes in balance sheet accounts are an important factor in determining cash flows. The next section addresses the linkages between the cash flow statement and other financial statements.

3.1 Linkages of the Cash Flow Statement with the Income Statement and Balance Sheet

Recall the accounting equation that summarizes the balance sheet:

$$\text{Assets} = \text{Liabilities} + \text{Equity}$$

Cash is an asset. The statement of cash flows ultimately shows the change in cash during an accounting period. The beginning and ending balances of cash are shown on the company's balance sheets for the previous and current years, and the bottom of the cash flow statement reconciles beginning cash with ending cash. The relationship, stated in general terms, is as shown below.

Beginning Balance Sheet at 31 December 20X8	Statement of Cash Flows for Year Ended 31 December 20X9		Ending Balance Sheet at 31 December 20X9
Beginning cash	Plus: Cash receipts (from operating, investing, and financing activities)	Less: Cash payments (for operating, investing, and financing activities)	Ending cash

In the case of cash held in foreign currencies, there would also be an impact from changes in exchange rates. For example, Walmart's cash flow statement for 2010, presented in Exhibit 5, shows cash flows from operating, investing, and financing activities that total \$438 million during the year (\$26,249 – \$11,620 – \$14,191). Combined with the \$194 million net effect of exchange rates on cash and cash equivalents, the net increase in cash and cash equivalents was \$632 million, the amount by which end-of-year cash and cash equivalents (\$7,907) exceeds beginning-of-year cash and cash equivalents (\$7,275).

The body of Walmart's cash flow statement shows why the change in cash occurred; in other words, it shows the company's operating, investing, and financing activities (as well as the impact of foreign currency translation). The beginning and ending balance sheet values of cash and cash equivalents are linked through the cash flow statement.

The current assets and current liabilities sections of the balance sheet typically reflect a company's operating decisions and activities. Because a company's operating activities are reported on an accrual basis in the income statement, any differences between the accrual basis and the cash basis of accounting for an operating transaction result in an increase or decrease in some (usually) short-term asset or liability on the balance sheet. For example, if revenue reported using accrual accounting is higher than the cash actually collected, the result will typically be an increase in accounts receivable. If expenses reported using accrual accounting are lower than cash actually paid, the result will typically be a decrease in accounts payable or another accrued liability account⁹. As an example of how items on the balance sheet are related to the income statement and/or cash flow statement through the change in the beginning and ending balances, consider accounts receivable:

Beginning Balance Sheet at 31 December 20X8	Income Statement for Year Ended 31 December 20X9	Statement of Cash Flows for Year Ended 31 December 20X9	Ending Balance Sheet at 31 December 20X9
Beginning accounts receivable	Plus: Revenues	Minus: Cash collected from customers	Equals: Ending accounts receivable

Knowing any three of these four items makes it easy to compute the fourth. For example, if you know beginning accounts receivable, revenues, and cash collected from customers, you can easily compute ending accounts receivable. Understanding the interrelationships between the balance sheet, income statement, and cash flow statement is useful in not only understanding the company's financial health but also in detecting accounting irregularities. Recall the extreme illustration of a hypothetical company that makes sales on account without regard to future collections and thus reports healthy sales and significant income on its income statement yet lacks cash inflow. Such a pattern would occur if a company improperly recognized revenue.

A company's investing activities typically relate to the long-term asset section of the balance sheet, and its financing activities typically relate to the equity and long-term debt sections of the balance sheet. The next section demonstrates the preparation of cash flow information based on income statement and balance sheet information.

3.2 Steps in Preparing the Cash Flow Statement

The preparation of the cash flow statement uses data from both the income statement and the comparative balance sheets.

As noted earlier, companies often only disclose indirect operating cash flow information, whereas analysts prefer direct-format information. Understanding how cash flow information is put together will enable you to take an indirect statement apart and reconfigure it in a more useful manner. The result is an approximation of a direct cash flow statement, which—while not perfectly accurate—can be helpful to an analyst. The following demonstration of how an approximation of a direct cash flow statement is prepared uses the income statement and the comparative balance sheets for Acme Corporation (a fictitious retail company) shown in Exhibits 6 and 7.

⁹ There are other less typical explanations of the differences. For example, if revenue reported using accrual accounting is higher than the cash actually collected, it is possible that it is the result of a decrease in an unearned revenue liability account. If expenses reported using accrual accounting are lower than cash actually paid, it is possible that it is the result of an increase in prepaid expenses, inventory, or another asset account.

Exhibit 6 Acme Corporation Income Statement Year Ended 31 December 2009

Revenue		\$23,598
Cost of goods sold		11,456
Gross profit		12,142
Salary and wage expense	\$4,123	
Depreciation expense	1,052	
Other operating expenses	3,577	
Total operating expenses		8,752
Operating profit		3,390
Other revenues (expenses):		
Gain on sale of equipment	205	
Interest expense	(246)	(41)
Income before tax		3,349
Income tax expense		1,139
Net income		\$2,210

Exhibit 7 Acme Corporation Comparative Balance Sheets 31 December 2009 and 2008

	2009	2008	Net Change
Cash	\$1,011	\$1,163	\$(152)
Accounts receivable	1,012	957	55
Inventory	3,984	3,277	707
Prepaid expenses	155	178	(23)
Total current assets	6,162	5,575	587
Land	510	510	—
Buildings	3,680	3,680	—
Equipment*	8,798	8,555	243
Less: accumulated depreciation	(3,443)	(2,891)	(552)
Total long-term assets	9,545	9,854	(309)
Total assets	\$15,707	\$15,429	\$278
Accounts payable	\$3,588	\$3,325	\$263
Salary and wage payable	85	75	10
Interest payable	62	74	(12)
Income tax payable	55	50	5
Other accrued liabilities	1,126	1,104	22
Total current liabilities	4,916	4,628	288
Long-term debt	3,075	3,575	(500)
Common stock	3,750	4,350	(600)

Exhibit 7 (Continued)

	2009	2008	Net Change
Retained earnings	3,966	2,876	1,090
Total liabilities and equity	<u>\$15,707</u>	<u>\$15,429</u>	<u>\$278</u>

*During 2009, Acme purchased new equipment for a total cost of \$1,300. No items impacted retained earnings other than net income and dividends.

The first step in preparing the cash flow statement is to determine the total cash flows from operating activities. The direct method of presenting cash from operating activities is illustrated in sections 3.2.1 through 3.2.4. Section 3.2.5 illustrates the indirect method of presenting cash flows from operating activities. Cash flows from investing activities and from financing activities are identical under either method.

3.2.1 Operating Activities: Direct Method

We first determine how much cash Acme received from its customers, followed by how much cash was paid to suppliers and to employees as well as how much cash was paid for other operating expenses, interest, and income taxes.

3.2.1.1 Cash Received from Customers The income statement for Acme reported revenue of \$23,598 for the year ended 31 December 2009. To determine the approximate cash receipts from its customers, it is necessary to adjust this revenue amount by the net change in accounts receivable for the year. If accounts receivable increase during the year, revenue on an accrual basis is higher than cash receipts from customers, and vice versa. For Acme Corporation, accounts receivable increased by \$55, so cash received from customers was \$23,543, as follows:

Revenue	\$23,598
Less: Increase in accounts receivable	<u>(55)</u>
Cash received from customers	<u>\$23,543</u>

Cash received from customers affects the accounts receivable account as follows:

Beginning accounts receivable	957
Plus revenue	23,598
Minus cash collected from customers	<u>(23,543)</u>
Ending accounts receivable	<u>\$1,012</u>

The accounts receivable account information can also be presented as follows:

Beginning accounts receivable	\$957
Plus revenue	23,598
Minus ending accounts receivable	<u>(1,012)</u>
Cash collected from customers	<u>\$23,543</u>

EXAMPLE 3**Computing Cash Received from Customers**

Blue Bayou, a fictitious advertising company, reported revenues of \$50 million, total expenses of \$35 million, and net income of \$15 million in the most recent year. If accounts receivable decreased by \$12 million, how much cash did the company receive from customers?

- A** \$38 million.
- B** \$50 million.
- C** \$62 million.

Solution:

C is correct. Revenues of \$50 million plus the decrease in accounts receivable of \$12 million equals \$62 million cash received from customers. The decrease in accounts receivable means that the company received more in cash than the amount of revenue it reported.

“Cash received from customers” is sometimes referred to as “cash collections from customers” or “cash collections.”

3.2.1.2 Cash Paid to Suppliers For Acme, the cash paid to suppliers was \$11,900, determined as follows:

Cost of goods sold	\$11,456
Plus: Increase in inventory	707
	<hr/>
Equals purchases from suppliers	\$12,163
Less: Increase in accounts payable	(263)
	<hr/>
Cash paid to suppliers	\$11,900
	<hr/> <hr/>

There are two pieces to this calculation: the amount of inventory purchased and the amount paid for it. To determine purchases from suppliers, cost of goods sold is adjusted for the change in inventory. If inventory increased during the year, then purchases during the year exceeded cost of goods sold, and vice versa. Acme reported cost of goods sold of \$11,456 for the year ended 31 December 2009. For Acme Corporation, inventory increased by \$707, so purchases from suppliers was \$12,163. Purchases from suppliers affect the inventory account, as shown below:

Beginning inventory	\$3,277
Plus purchases	12,163
Minus cost of goods sold	(11,456)
	<hr/>
Ending inventory	\$3,984
	<hr/> <hr/>

Acme purchased \$12,163 of inventory from suppliers in 2009, but is this the amount of cash that Acme paid to its suppliers during the year? Not necessarily. Acme may not have yet paid for all of these purchases and may yet owe for some of the purchases made this year. In other words, Acme may have paid less cash to its suppliers than the amount of this year's purchases, in which case Acme's liability (accounts payable) will have increased by the difference. Alternatively, Acme may have paid even more to its suppliers than the amount of this year's purchases, in which case Acme's accounts payable will have decreased.

Therefore, once purchases have been determined, cash paid to suppliers can be calculated by adjusting purchases for the change in accounts payable. If the company made all purchases with cash, then accounts payable would not change and cash outflows would equal purchases. If accounts payable increased during the year, then purchases on an accrual basis would be higher than they would be on a cash basis, and vice versa. In this example, Acme made more purchases than it paid in cash, so the balance in accounts payable increased. For Acme, the cash paid to suppliers was \$11,900, determined as follows:

Purchases from suppliers	\$12,163
Less: Increase in accounts payable	(263)
Cash paid to suppliers	<u>\$11,900</u>

The amount of cash paid to suppliers is reflected in the accounts payable account, as shown below:

Beginning accounts payable	\$3,325
Plus purchases	12,163
Minus cash paid to suppliers	<u>(11,900)</u>
Ending accounts payable	<u>\$3,588</u>

EXAMPLE 4

Computing Cash Paid to Suppliers

Orange Beverages Plc., a fictitious manufacturer of tropical drinks, reported cost of goods sold for the year of \$100 million. Total assets increased by \$55 million, but inventory declined by \$6 million. Total liabilities increased by \$45 million, but accounts payable decreased by \$2 million. How much cash did the company pay to its suppliers during the year?

- A \$96 million.
- B \$104 million.
- C \$108 million.

Solution:

A is correct. Cost of goods sold of \$100 million less the decrease in inventory of \$6 million equals purchases from suppliers of \$94 million. The decrease in accounts payable of \$2 million means that the company paid \$96 million in cash (\$94 million plus \$2 million).

3.2.1.3 Cash Paid to Employees To determine the cash paid to employees, it is necessary to adjust salary and wages expense by the net change in salary and wages payable for the year. If salary and wages payable increased during the year, then salary and wages expense on an accrual basis would be higher than the amount of cash paid for this expense, and vice versa. For Acme, salary and wages payable increased by \$10, so cash paid for salary and wages was \$4,113, as follows:

Salary and wages expense	\$4,123
Less: Increase in salary and wages payable	(10)
Cash paid to employees	<u>\$4,113</u>

The amount of cash paid to employees is reflected in the salary and wages payable account, as shown below:

Beginning salary and wages payable	\$75
Plus salary and wages expense	4,123
Minus cash paid to employees	<u>(4,113)</u>
Ending salary and wages payable	<u><u>\$85</u></u>

3.2.1.4 Cash Paid for Other Operating Expenses To determine the cash paid for other operating expenses, it is necessary to adjust the other operating expenses amount on the income statement by the net changes in prepaid expenses and accrued expense liabilities for the year. If prepaid expenses increased during the year, other operating expenses on a cash basis would be higher than on an accrual basis, and vice versa. Likewise, if accrued expense liabilities increased during the year, other operating expenses on a cash basis would be lower than on an accrual basis, and vice versa. For Acme Corporation, the amount of cash paid for operating expenses in 2009 was \$3,532, as follows:

Other operating expenses	\$3,577
Less: Decrease in prepaid expenses	(23)
Less: Increase in other accrued liabilities	<u>(22)</u>
Cash paid for other operating expenses	<u><u>\$3,532</u></u>

EXAMPLE 5

Computing Cash Paid for Other Operating Expenses

Black Ice, a fictitious sportswear manufacturer, reported other operating expenses of \$30 million. Prepaid insurance expense increased by \$4 million, and accrued utilities payable decreased by \$7 million. Insurance and utilities are the only two components of other operating expenses. How much cash did the company pay in other operating expenses?

- A \$19 million.
- B \$33 million.
- C \$41 million.

Solution:

C is correct. Other operating expenses of \$30 million plus the increase in prepaid insurance expense of \$4 million plus the decrease in accrued utilities payable of \$7 million equals \$41 million.

3.2.1.5 Cash Paid for Interest The cash paid for interest is included in operating cash flows under US GAAP and may be included in operating or financing cash flows under IFRS. To determine the cash paid for interest, it is necessary to adjust interest expense by the net change in interest payable for the year. If interest payable increases during the year, then interest expense on an accrual basis will be higher than the amount of cash paid for interest, and vice versa. For Acme Corporation, interest payable decreased by \$12, and cash paid for interest was \$258, as follows:

Interest expense	\$246
Plus: Decrease in interest payable	<u>12</u>
Cash paid for interest	<u><u>\$258</u></u>

Alternatively, cash paid for interest may also be determined by an analysis of the interest payable account, as shown below:

Beginning interest payable	\$74
Plus interest expense	246
Minus cash paid for interest	<u>(258)</u>
Ending interest payable	<u>\$62</u>

3.2.1.6 Cash Paid for Income Taxes To determine the cash paid for income taxes, it is necessary to adjust the income tax expense amount on the income statement by the net changes in taxes receivable, taxes payable, and deferred income taxes for the year. If taxes receivable or deferred tax assets increase during the year, income taxes on a cash basis will be higher than on an accrual basis, and vice versa. Likewise, if taxes payable or deferred tax liabilities increase during the year, income tax expense on a cash basis will be lower than on an accrual basis, and vice versa. For Acme Corporation, the amount of cash paid for income taxes in 2009 was \$1,134, as follows:

Income tax expense	\$1,139
Less: Increase in income tax payable	<u>(5)</u>
Cash paid for income taxes	<u>\$1,134</u>

3.2.2 Investing Activities

The second and third steps in preparing the cash flow statement are to determine the total cash flows from investing activities and from financing activities. The presentation of this information is identical, regardless of whether the direct or indirect method is used for operating cash flows.

Purchases and sales of equipment were the only investing activities undertaken by Acme in 2009, as evidenced by the fact that the amounts reported for land and buildings were unchanged during the year. An informational note in Exhibit 7 tells us that Acme *purchased* new equipment in 2009 for a total cost of \$1,300. However, the amount of equipment shown on Acme's balance sheet increased by only \$243 (ending balance of \$8,798 minus beginning balance of \$8,555); therefore, Acme must have also *sold or otherwise disposed of* some equipment during the year. To determine the cash inflow from the sale of equipment, we analyze the equipment and accumulated depreciation accounts as well as the gain on the sale of equipment from Exhibits 6 and 7. Assuming that the entire accumulated depreciation is related to equipment, the cash received from sale of equipment is determined as follows.

The historical cost of the equipment sold was \$1,057. This amount is determined as follows:

Beginning balance equipment (from balance sheet)	\$8,555
Plus equipment purchased (from informational note)	1,300
Minus ending balance equipment (from balance sheet)	<u>(8,798)</u>
Equals historical cost of equipment sold	<u>\$1,057</u>

The accumulated depreciation on the equipment sold was \$500, determined as follows:

Beginning balance accumulated depreciation (from balance sheet)	\$2,891
Plus depreciation expense (from income statement)	1,052
Minus ending balance accumulated depreciation (from balance sheet)	<u>(3,443)</u>
Equals accumulated depreciation on equipment sold	<u>\$500</u>

The historical cost information, accumulated depreciation information, and information from the income statement about the gain on the sale of equipment can be used to determine the cash received from the sale.

Historical cost of equipment sold (calculated above)	\$1,057
Less accumulated depreciation on equipment sold (calculated above)	(500)
Equals book value of equipment sold	<u>\$557</u>
Plus gain on sale of equipment (from the income statement)	205
Equals cash received from sale of equipment	<u><u>\$762</u></u>

EXAMPLE 6**Computing Cash Received from the Sale of Equipment**

Copper, Inc., a fictitious brewery and restaurant chain, reported a gain on the sale of equipment of \$12 million. In addition, the company's income statement shows depreciation expense of \$8 million and the cash flow statement shows capital expenditure of \$15 million, all of which was for the purchase of new equipment.

Balance sheet item	12/31/2009	12/31/2010	Change
Equipment	\$100 million	\$109 million	\$9 million
Accumulated depreciation—equipment	\$30 million	\$36 million	\$6 million

Using the above information from the comparative balance sheets, how much cash did the company receive from the equipment sale?

- A \$12 million.
- B \$16 million.
- C \$18 million.

Solution:

B is correct. Selling price (cash inflow) minus book value equals gain or loss on sale; therefore, gain or loss on sale plus book value equals selling price (cash inflow). The amount of gain is given, \$12 million. To calculate the book value of the equipment sold, find the historical cost of the equipment and the accumulated depreciation on the equipment.

- Beginning balance of equipment of \$100 million plus equipment purchased of \$15 million minus ending balance of equipment of \$109 million equals historical cost of equipment sold, or \$6 million.
- Beginning accumulated depreciation on equipment of \$30 million plus depreciation expense for the year of \$8 million minus ending balance of accumulated depreciation of \$36 million equals accumulated depreciation on the equipment sold, or \$2 million.
- Therefore, the book value of the equipment sold was \$6 million minus \$2 million, or \$4 million.
- Because the gain on the sale of equipment was \$12 million, the amount of cash received must have been \$16 million.

3.2.3 Financing Activities

As with investing activities, the presentation of financing activities is identical, regardless of whether the direct or indirect method is used for operating cash flows.

3.2.3.1 Long-Term Debt and Common Stock The change in long-term debt, based on the beginning 2009 (ending 2008) and ending 2009 balances in Exhibit 7, was a decrease of \$500. Absent other information, this indicates that Acme retired \$500 of long-term debt. Retiring long-term debt is a cash outflow relating to financing activities.

Similarly, the change in common stock during 2009 was a decrease of \$600. Absent other information, this indicates that Acme repurchased \$600 of its common stock. Repurchase of common stock is also a cash outflow related to financing activity.

3.2.3.2 Dividends Recall the following relationship:

$$\text{Beginning retained earnings} + \text{Net income} - \text{Dividends} = \text{Ending retained earnings}$$

Based on this relationship, the amount of cash dividends paid in 2009 can be determined from an analysis of retained earnings, as follows:

Beginning balance of retained earnings (from the balance sheet)	\$2,876
Plus net income (from the income statement)	2,210
Minus ending balance of retained earnings (from the balance sheet)	(3,966)
Equals dividends paid	<u><u>\$1,120</u></u>

Note that dividends paid are presented in the statement of changes in equity.

3.2.4 Overall Statement of Cash Flows: Direct Method

Exhibit 8 summarizes the information about Acme's operating, investing, and financing cash flows in the statement of cash flows. At the bottom of the statement, the total net change in cash is shown to be a decrease of \$152 (from \$1,163 to \$1,011). This decrease can also be seen on the comparative balance sheet in Exhibit 7. The cash provided by operating activities of \$2,606 was adequate to cover the net cash used in investing activities of \$538; however, the company's debt repayments, cash payments for dividends, and repurchase of common stock (i.e., its financing activities) of \$2,220 resulted in an overall decrease in cash of \$152.

Exhibit 8 Acme Corporation Cash Flow Statement (Direct Method) for Year Ended 31 December 2009

Cash flow from operating activities:

Cash received from customers	\$23,543
Cash paid to suppliers	(11,900)
Cash paid to employees	(4,113)
Cash paid for other operating expenses	(3,532)
Cash paid for interest	(258)
Cash paid for income tax	(1,134)
Net cash provided by operating activities	<u><u>2,606</u></u>

Cash flow from investing activities:

Cash received from sale of equipment	762
Cash paid for purchase of equipment	(1,300)
Net cash used for investing activities	<u><u>(538)</u></u>

Cash flow from financing activities:

Cash paid to retire long-term debt	(500)
------------------------------------	-------

(continued)

Exhibit 8 (Continued)

Cash paid to retire common stock	(600)
Cash paid for dividends	(1,120)
Net cash used for financing activities	(2,220)
Net increase (decrease) in cash	(152)
Cash balance, 31 December 2008	1,163
Cash balance, 31 December 2009	\$1,011

3.2.5 Overall Statement of Cash Flows: Indirect Method

Using the alternative approach to reporting cash from operating activities, the indirect method, we will present the same amount of cash provided by operating activities. Under this approach, we reconcile Acme's net income of \$2,210 to its operating cash flow of \$2,606.

To perform this reconciliation, net income is adjusted for the following: a) any non-operating activities, b) any non-cash expenses, and c) changes in operating working capital items.

The only non-operating activity in Acme's income statement, the sale of equipment, resulted in a gain of \$205. This amount is removed from the operating cash flow section; the cash effects of the sale are shown in the investing section.

Acme's only non-cash expense was depreciation expense of \$1,052. Under the indirect method, depreciation expense must be added back to net income because it was a non-cash deduction in the calculation of net income.

Changes in working capital accounts include increases and decreases in the current operating asset and liability accounts. The changes in these accounts arise from applying accrual accounting; that is, recognizing revenues when they are earned and expenses when they are incurred instead of when the cash is received or paid. To make the working capital adjustments under the indirect method, any increase in a current operating asset account is subtracted from net income and a net decrease is added to net income. As described above, the increase in accounts receivable, for example, resulted from Acme recording income statement revenue higher than the amount of cash received from customers; therefore, to reconcile back to operating cash flow, that increase in accounts receivable must be deducted from net income. For current operating liabilities, a net increase is added to net income and a net decrease is subtracted from net income. As described above, the increase in wages payable, for example, resulted from Acme recording income statement expenses higher than the amount of cash paid to employees.

Exhibit 9 presents a tabulation of the most common types of adjustments that are made to net income when using the indirect method to determine net cash flow from operating activities.

Exhibit 9 Adjustments to Net Income Using the Indirect Method

Additions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Non-cash items <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Depreciation expense of tangible assets ● Amortisation expense of intangible assets ● Depletion expense of natural resources ● Amortisation of bond discount ■ Non-operating losses <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Loss on sale or write-down of assets ● Loss on retirement of debt ● Loss on investments accounted for under the equity method ■ Increase in deferred income tax liability ■ Changes in working capital resulting from accruing higher amounts for expenses than the amounts of cash payments or lower amounts for revenues than the amounts of cash receipts <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Decrease in current operating assets (e.g., accounts receivable, inventory, and prepaid expenses) ● Increase in current operating liabilities (e.g., accounts payable and accrued expense liabilities)
Subtractions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Non-cash items (e.g., amortisation of bond premium) ■ Non-operating items <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Gain on sale of assets ● Gain on retirement of debt ● Income on investments accounted for under the equity method ■ Decrease in deferred income tax liability ■ Changes in working capital resulting from accruing lower amounts for expenses than for cash payments or higher amounts for revenues than for cash receipts <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Increase in current operating assets (e.g., accounts receivable, inventory, and prepaid expenses) ● Decrease in current operating liabilities (e.g., accounts payable and accrued expense liabilities)

Accordingly, for Acme Corporation, the \$55 increase in accounts receivable and the \$707 increase in inventory are subtracted from net income and the \$23 decrease in prepaid expenses is added to net income. For Acme's current liabilities, the increases in accounts payable, salary and wage payable, income tax payable, and other accrued liabilities (\$263, \$10, \$5, and \$22, respectively) are added to net income and the \$12 decrease in interest payable is subtracted from net income. Exhibit 10 presents the cash flow statement for Acme Corporation under the indirect method by using the information that we have determined from our analysis of the income statement and the comparative balance sheets. Note that the investing and financing sections are identical to the statement of cash flows prepared using the direct method.

Exhibit 10 Acme Corporation Cash Flow Statement (Indirect Method) Year Ended 31 December 2009

Cash flow from operating activities:

Net income

\$2,210

(continued)

Exhibit 10 (Continued)

Depreciation expense	1,052
Gain on sale of equipment	(205)
Increase in accounts receivable	(55)
Increase in inventory	(707)
Decrease in prepaid expenses	23
Increase in accounts payable	263
Increase in salary and wage payable	10
Decrease in interest payable	(12)
Increase in income tax payable	5
Increase in other accrued liabilities	22
Net cash provided by operating activities	<u>2,606</u>
<hr/>	
Cash flow from investing activities:	
Cash received from sale of equipment	762
Cash paid for purchase of equipment	(1,300)
Net cash used for investing activities	<u>(538)</u>
<hr/>	
Cash flow from financing activities:	
Cash paid to retire long-term debt	(500)
Cash paid to retire common stock	(600)
Cash paid for dividends	(1,120)
Net cash used for financing activities	<u>(2,220)</u>
Net decrease in cash	(152)
Cash balance, 31 December 2008	<u>1,163</u>
Cash balance, 31 December 2009	<u><u>\$1,011</u></u>

EXAMPLE 7**Adjusting Net Income to Compute Operating Cash Flow**

Based on the following information for Pinkerly Inc., a fictitious company, what are the total adjustments that the company would make to net income in order to derive operating cash flow?

Income statement item	Year Ended		Change
	12/31/2008	12/31/2009	
Net income		\$30 million	
Depreciation		\$7 million	
Balance sheet item	12/31/2008	12/31/2009	
Accounts receivable	\$15 million	\$30 million	\$15 million
Inventory	\$16 million	\$13 million	(\$3 million)
Accounts payable	\$10 million	\$20 million	\$10 million

A Add \$5 million.

- B** Add \$21 million.
C Subtract \$9 million.

Solution:

A is correct. To derive operating cash flow, the company would make the following adjustments to net income: add depreciation (a non-cash expense) of \$7 million; add the decrease in inventory of \$3 million; add the increase in accounts payable of \$10 million; and subtract the increase in accounts receivable of \$15 million. Total additions of \$20 million and total subtractions of \$15 million result in net total additions of \$5 million.

3.3 Conversion of Cash Flows from the Indirect to the Direct Method

An analyst may desire to review direct-format operating cash flow to review trends in cash receipts and payments (such as cash received from customers or cash paid to suppliers). If a direct-format statement is not available, cash flows from operating activities reported under the indirect method can be converted to the direct method. Accuracy of conversion depends on adjustments using data available in published financial reports. The method described here is sufficiently accurate for most analytical purposes.

The three-step conversion process is demonstrated for Acme Corporation in Exhibit 11. Referring again to Exhibits 6 and 7 for Acme Corporation's income statement and balance sheet information, begin by disaggregating net income of \$2,210 into total revenues and total expenses (Step 1). Next, remove any non-operating and non-cash items (Step 2). For Acme, we therefore remove the non-operating gain on the sale of equipment of \$205 and the non-cash depreciation expense of \$1,052. Then, convert accrual amounts of revenues and expenses to cash flow amounts of receipts and payments by adjusting for changes in working capital accounts (Step 3). The results of these adjustments are the items of information for the direct format of operating cash flows. These line items are shown as the results of Step 3.

Exhibit 11 Conversion from the Indirect to the Direct Method

<i>Step 1</i>	Total revenues		\$23,803
Aggregate all revenue and all expenses	Total expenses		21,593
	Net income		<u>\$2,210</u>
<hr/>			
<i>Step 2</i>	Total revenue less noncash item revenues:		
Remove all noncash items from aggregated revenues and expenses and break out remaining items into relevant cash flow items		$(\$23,803 - \$205) =$	<u>\$23,598</u>
		Revenue	<u>\$23,598</u>
	Total expenses less noncash item expenses:		
		$(\$21,593 - \$1,052) =$	<u>\$20,541</u>
	Cost of goods sold		\$11,456
	Salary and wage expenses		4,123
	Other operating expenses		3,577
	Interest expense		246
	Income tax expense		1,139
	Total		<u>\$20,541</u>

(continued)

Exhibit 11 (Continued)

<i>Step 3</i>	Cash received from customers ^a	\$23,543
Convert accrual amounts to cash flow	Cash paid to suppliers ^b	(11,900)
amounts by adjusting for working	Cash paid to employees ^c	(4,113)
capital changes	Cash paid for other operating expenses ^d	(3,532)
	Cash paid for interest ^e	(258)
	Cash paid for income tax ^f	(1,134)
	Net cash provided by operating activities	\$2,606

Calculations for Step 3:

^a Revenue of \$23,598 less increase in accounts receivable of \$55.

^b Cost of goods sold of \$11,456 plus increase in inventory of \$707 less increase in accounts payable of \$263.

^c Salary and wage expense of \$4,123 less increase in salary and wage payable of \$10.

^d Other operating expenses of \$3,577 less decrease in prepaid expenses of \$23 less increase in other accrued liabilities of \$22.

^e Interest expense of \$246 plus decrease in interest payable of \$12.

^f Income tax expense of \$1,139 less increase in income tax payable of \$5.

4**CASH FLOW STATEMENT ANALYSIS**

The analysis of a company's cash flows can provide useful information for understanding a company's business and earnings and for predicting its future cash flows. This section describes tools and techniques for analyzing the statement of cash flows, including the analysis of sources and uses of cash and cash flow, common-size analysis, and calculation of free cash flow measures and cash flow ratios.

4.1 Evaluation of the Sources and Uses of Cash

Evaluation of the cash flow statement should involve an overall assessment of the sources and uses of cash between the three main categories as well as an assessment of the main drivers of cash flow within each category, as follows:

- 1 Evaluate where the major sources and uses of cash flow are between operating, investing, and financing activities.
- 2 Evaluate the primary determinants of operating cash flow.
- 3 Evaluate the primary determinants of investing cash flow.
- 4 Evaluate the primary determinants of financing cash flow.

Step 1 The major sources of cash for a company can vary with its stage of growth. For a mature company, it is expected and desirable that operating activities are the primary source of cash flows. Over the long term, a company must generate cash from its operating activities. If operating cash flow were consistently negative, a company would need to borrow money or issue stock (financing activities) to fund the shortfall. Eventually, these providers of capital need to be repaid from operations or they will no longer be willing to provide capital. Cash generated from operating activities can be used in either investing or financing activities. If the company has good opportunities to grow the business or other investment opportunities, it is desirable to use the cash in investing activities. If the company does not have profitable investment opportunities, the cash should be returned to capital providers, a financing activity. For a new or

growth stage company, operating cash flow may be negative for some period of time as it invests in such assets as inventory and receivables (extending credit to new customers) in order to grow the business. This situation is not sustainable over the long term, so eventually the cash must start to come primarily from operating activities so that capital can be returned to the providers of capital. Lastly, it is desirable that operating cash flows are sufficient to cover capital expenditures (in other words, the company has free cash flow as discussed further in Section 4.3). In summary, major points to consider at this step are:

- What are the major sources and uses of cash flow?
- Is operating cash flow positive and sufficient to cover capital expenditures?

Step 2 Turning to the operating section, the analysts should examine the most significant determinants of operating cash flow. Companies need cash for use in operations (for example, to hold receivables and inventory and to pay employees and suppliers) and receive cash from operating activities (for example, payments from customers). Under the indirect method, the increases and decreases in receivables, inventory, payables, and so on can be examined to determine whether the company is using or generating cash in operations and why. It is also useful to compare operating cash flow with net income. For a mature company, because net income includes non-cash expenses (depreciation and amortisation), it is expected and desirable that operating cash flow exceeds net income. The relationship between net income and operating cash flow is also an indicator of earnings quality. If a company has large net income but poor operating cash flow, it may be a sign of poor earnings quality. The company may be making aggressive accounting choices to increase net income but not be generating cash for its business. You should also examine the variability of both earnings and cash flow and consider the impact of this variability on the company's risk as well as the ability to forecast future cash flows for valuation purposes. In summary:

- What are the major determinants of operating cash flow?
- Is operating cash flow higher or lower than net income? Why?
- How consistent are operating cash flows?

Step 3 Within the investing section, you should evaluate each line item. Each line item represents either a source or use of cash. This enables you to understand where the cash is being spent (or received). This section will tell you how much cash is being invested for the future in property, plant, and equipment; how much is used to acquire entire companies; and how much is put aside in liquid investments, such as stocks and bonds. It will also tell you how much cash is being raised by selling these types of assets. If the company is making major capital investments, you should consider where the cash is coming from to cover these investments (e.g., is the cash coming from excess operating cash flow or from the financing activities described in Step 4). If assets are being sold, it is important to determine why and to assess the effects on the company.

Step 4 Within the financing section, you should examine each line item to understand whether the company is raising capital or repaying capital and what the nature of its capital sources are. If the company is borrowing each year, you should consider when repayment may be required. This section will also present dividend payments and repurchases of stock that are alternative means of returning capital to owners. It is important to assess why capital is being raised or repaid.

We now provide an example of a cash flow statement evaluation.

EXAMPLE 8**Analysis of the Cash Flow Statement**

Derek Yee, CFA, is preparing to forecast cash flow for Groupe Danone as an input into his valuation model. He has asked you to evaluate the historical cash flow statement of Groupe Danone, which is presented in Exhibit 12. Groupe Danone prepares its financial statements in conformity with IFRS. Note that Groupe Danone presents the most recent period on the right.

Exhibit 12 Groupe Danone Consolidated Financial Statements Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows (in € Millions)

Years Ended 31 December	2008	2009
Net income attributable to the Group	1,313	1,361
Net income attributable to minority interests	178	160
Net income from discontinued operations	(269)	—
Share of profits of associates	(62)	77
Depreciation and amortization	525	549
Dividends received from associates	29	174
Other flows with impact on cash	(113)	(157)
Other flows with no impact on cash	98	(72)
Cash flows provided by operating activities, excluding changes in net working capital	1,699	2,092
(Increase) decrease in inventories	3	37
(Increase) decrease in trade accounts receivable	(74)	(112)
Increase (decrease) in trade accounts payable	36	(127)
Changes in other accounts receivable and payable	90	110
Change in other working capital requirements	55	(92)
Cash flows provided by (used in) operating activities	1,754	2,000
Capital expenditure	(706)	(699)
Purchase of businesses and other investments, net of cash and cash equivalents acquired	(259)	(147)
Proceeds from the sale of businesses and other investments, including indebtedness of companies sold	329	1,024
(Increase) decrease in long-term loans and other long-term assets	67	36
Cash flows provided by (used in) investing activities	(569)	214
Increase in capital and additional paid-in capital	48	2,977
Purchases of treasury stock (net of disposals)	46	100
Dividends paid to Danone shareholders and to minority interests	(705)	(451)
Settlement of debt hedge financial instruments (mainly equalization payments)		(154)
Increase (decrease) in non-current financial liabilities	1,338	(4,154)
Increase (decrease) in current financial liabilities	(1,901)	(427)
Increase (decrease) in marketable securities	63	(60)
Cash flows provided by (used in) financing activities	(1,111)	(2,169)
Effect of exchange rate changes	(31)	8
Increase (decrease) in cash and cash equivalents	43	53
Cash and cash equivalents at beginning of period	548	591

Exhibit 12 (Continued)

Years Ended 31 December	2008	2009
Cash and cash equivalents at end of period	<u>591</u>	<u>644</u>
Supplemental disclosures		
Payments during the year of:		
• net interest	433	272
• income tax	430	413

Yee would like answers to the following questions:

- What are the major sources of cash for Groupe Danone?
- What are the major uses of cash for Groupe Danone?
- What is the relationship between net income and cash flow from operating activities?
- Is cash flow from operating activities sufficient to cover capital expenditures?
- Other than capital expenditures, is cash being used or generated in investing activities?
- What types of financing cash flows does Groupe Danone have?

Solution:

The major categories of cash flows can be summarized as follows (in € millions):

	2008	2009
Cash flows provided by operating activities	1,754	2,000
Cash flows provided by (used in) investing activities	(569)	214
Cash flows provided by (used in) financing activities	(1,111)	(2,169)
Exchange rate effects on cash	(31)	8
Increase in cash	<u>43</u>	<u>53</u>

The primary source of cash for Groupe Danone is operating activities. In 2009, investing activities provided cash as the result of the sale of businesses and other investments. Cash flow is being used in financing activities, primarily to repay financial liabilities and to pay dividends. The fact that the primary source of cash is from operations is positive and desirable for a mature company. Additionally, the fact that operating cash flow exceeds net income in both years is a positive sign. Finally, operating cash flows exceed capital expenditures, indicating that the company can fund capital expenditures from operations.

4.2 Common-Size Analysis of the Statement of Cash Flows

In common-size analysis of a company's income statement, each income and expense line item is expressed as a percentage of net revenues (net sales). For the common-size balance sheet, each asset, liability, and equity line item is expressed as a percentage of total assets. For the common-size cash flow statement, there are two alternative

approaches. The first approach is to express each line item of cash inflow (outflow) as a percentage of total inflows (outflows) of cash, and the second approach is to express each line item as a percentage of net revenue.

Exhibit 13 demonstrates the total cash inflows/total cash outflows method for Acme Corporation. Under this approach, each of the cash inflows is expressed as a percentage of the total cash inflows, whereas each of the cash outflows is expressed as a percentage of the total cash outflows. In Panel A, Acme's common-size statement is based on a cash flow statement using the direct method of presenting operating cash flows. Operating cash inflows and outflows are separately presented on the cash flow statement, and therefore, the common-size cash flow statement shows each of these operating inflows (outflows) as a percentage of total inflows (outflows). In Panel B, Acme's common-size statement is based on a cash flow statement using the indirect method of presenting operating cash flows. When a cash flow statement has been presented using the indirect method, operating cash inflows and outflows are not separately presented; therefore, the common-size cash flow statement shows only the net operating cash flow (net cash provided by or used in operating activities) as a percentage of total inflows or outflows, depending on whether the net amount was a cash inflow or outflow. Because Acme's net operating cash flow is positive, it is shown as a percentage of total inflows.

Exhibit 13 Acme Corporation Common-Size Cash Flow Statement Year Ended 31 December 2009

Panel A. Direct Format for Cash Flow

Inflows		Percentage of Total Inflows
Receipts from customers	\$23,543	96.86%
Sale of equipment	762	3.14
Total	\$24,305	100.00%
<hr/>		
Outflows		Percentage of Total Outflows
Payments to suppliers	\$11,900	48.66%
Payments to employees	4,113	16.82
Payments for other operating expenses	3,532	14.44
Payments for interest	258	1.05
Payments for income tax	1,134	4.64
Purchase of equipment	1,300	5.32
Retirement of long-term debt	500	2.04
Retirement of common stock	600	2.45
Dividend payments	1,120	4.58
Total	\$24,457	100.00%
Net increase (decrease) in cash	(\$152)	

Exhibit 13 (Continued)

Panel B. Indirect Format for Cash Flow		
Inflows		Percentage of Total Inflows
Net cash provided by operating activities	\$2,606	77.38%
Sale of equipment	762	22.62
Total	<u>\$3,368</u>	<u>100.00%</u>
Outflows		Percentage of Total Outflows
Purchase of equipment	\$1,300	36.93%
Retirement of long-term debt	500	14.20
Retirement of common stock	600	17.05
Dividend payments	1,120	31.82
Total	<u>\$3,520</u>	<u>100.00%</u>
Net increase (decrease) in cash	<u>(\$152)</u>	

Exhibit 14 demonstrates the net revenue common-size cash flow statement for Acme Corporation. Under the net revenue approach, each line item in the cash flow statement is shown as a percentage of net revenue. The common-size statement in this exhibit has been developed based on Acme's cash flow statement using the indirect method for operating cash flows and using net revenue of \$23,598 as shown in Exhibit 6. Each line item of the reconciliation between net income and net operating cash flows is expressed as a percentage of net revenue. The common-size format makes it easier to see trends in cash flow rather than just looking at the total amount. This method is also useful to the analyst in forecasting future cash flows because individual items in the common-size statement (e.g., depreciation, fixed capital expenditures, debt borrowing, and repayment) are expressed as a percentage of net revenue. Thus, once the analyst has forecast revenue, the common-size statement provides a basis for forecasting cash flows for those items with an expected relation to net revenue.

Exhibit 14 Acme Corporation Common-Size Cash Flow Statement: Indirect Format Year Ended 31 December 2009

		Percentage of Net Revenue
Cash flow from operating activities:		
Net income	\$2,210	9.37%
Depreciation expense	1,052	4.46
Gain on sale of equipment	(205)	(0.87)
Increase in accounts receivable	(55)	(0.23)
Increase in inventory	(707)	(3.00)
Decrease in prepaid expenses	23	0.10
Increase in accounts payable	263	1.11

(continued)

Exhibit 14 (Continued)

		Percentage of Net Revenue
Increase in salary and wage payable	10	0.04
Decrease in interest payable	(12)	(0.05)
Increase in income tax payable	5	0.02
Increase in other accrued liabilities	22	0.09
Net cash provided by operating activities	\$2,606	11.04%
Cash flow from investing activities:		
Cash received from sale of equipment	\$762	3.23%
Cash paid for purchase of equipment	(1,300)	(5.51)
Net cash used for investing activities	\$(538)	(2.28)%
Cash flow from financing activities:		
Cash paid to retire long-term debt	\$(500)	(2.12)%
Cash paid to retire common stock	(600)	(2.54)
Cash paid for dividends	(1,120)	(4.75)
Net cash used for financing activities	\$(2,220)	(9.41)%
Net decrease in cash	\$(152)	(0.64)%

EXAMPLE 9**Analysis of a Common-Size Cash Flow Statement**

Andrew Potter is examining an abbreviated common-size cash flow statement for Dell Inc., a provider of technological products and services. The common-size cash flow statement was prepared by dividing each line item by total net revenue for the same year. The terminology is that used by Dell. “Change in cash from” is used instead of “cash provided by (used in).”

	29 Jan 10	30 Jan 09	1 Feb 08
Cash flows from operating activities:			
Net income	2.71%	4.06%	4.82%
Adjustments to reconcile net income to net cash provided by operating activities:			
Depreciation and amortization	1.61	1.26	0.99
Stock-based compensation	0.59	0.68	0.54
In-process research and development charges	0.00	0.00	0.14
Effects of exchange rate changes on monetary assets and liabilities denominated in foreign currencies	0.11	(0.19)	0.05
Deferred income taxes	(0.10)	0.14	(0.50)

	29 Jan 10	30 Jan 09	1 Feb 08
Provision for doubtful accounts—including financing receivables	0.81	0.51	0.31
Other	0.19	0.05	0.05
Changes in operating assets and liabilities, net of effects from acquisitions:			
Accounts receivable	(1.25)	0.79	(1.78)
Financing receivables	(2.05)	(0.49)	(0.64)
Inventories	(0.35)	0.51	(0.81)
Other assets	(0.43)	(0.17)	(0.20)
Accounts payable	5.36	(5.10)	1.37
Deferred services revenue	0.26	1.09	1.69
Accrued and other liabilities	(0.08)	(0.02)	0.45
Change in cash from operating activities	7.38	3.10	6.46
Cash flows from investing activities:			
Investments: Purchases	(2.61)	(2.59)	(3.92)
Investments: Maturities and sales	2.91	3.82	6.02
Capital expenditures	(0.69)	(0.72)	(1.36)
Proceeds from sale of facility and land	0.03	0.07	0.00
Acquisition of business, net of cash received	(6.83)	(0.29)	(3.63)
Change in cash from investing activities	(7.20)	0.29	(2.88)
Cash flows from financing activities:			
Repurchase of common stock	0.00	(4.69)	(6.55)
Issuance of common stock under employee plans	0.00	0.13	0.22
Issuance of commercial paper (maturity 90 days or less), net	0.14	0.16	(0.16)
Proceeds from debt	3.89	2.49	0.11
Repayments of debt	(0.23)	(0.39)	(0.27)
Other	0.00	0.00	(0.09)
Change in cash from financing activities	3.80	(2.30)	(6.74)
Effect of exchange rate changes on cash and cash equivalents	0.33	-0.13	0.25
Change in cash and cash equivalents	4.32%	0.96%	-2.91%

Based on the information in the above exhibit:

- 1 Discuss the significance of
 - A depreciation and amortization.
 - B capital expenditures.
- 2 Compare Dell's operating cash flow as a percentage of revenue with Dell's net profit margin.
- 3 Discuss Dell's use of its positive operating cash flow.

Solution to 1:

- A Dell's depreciation and amortization expense is less than 2 percent of total net revenue in the year ended 29 January 2010. However, as a percentage of total revenue, it has been increasing each year. In the year ended 29 January 2010, adding this expense back to determine operating cash flow

has a significant impact on cash flow from operations as a percentage of total revenue because its size was approximately 60 percent of net profit margin (net income/total net revenue).

- B** Dell's level of capital expenditures is relatively small, less than 1 percent of revenues in the most recent years. Cash flow from operations as a percentage of total revenue indicates that operating cash flows are more than sufficient to cover these expenditures.

Solution to 2:

Dell's operating cash flow as a percentage of revenue is usually much higher than net profit margin, with the exception of the year ended 30 January 2009. In that year, the net profit margin was 4.06 percent and operating cash flow as a percentage of total revenue was 3.10 percent. The primary difference between that year and the other years appears to have been a significant reduction in accounts payable; in each of the other years, accounts payable increased. For the year ended 29 January 2010, operating cash flow as a percentage of total revenue was 7.38 percent and net profit margin was 2.71 percent.

Solution to 3:

In the year ended 29 January 2010, the largest cash outflow was for an acquisition of business (investing activities). In prior years, much of Dell's operating cash flow was used to repurchase its own stock (financing activities). In each of the three years, Dell's purchases of investments (investing activities) were less than the amounts of maturities and sales; thus, on a net basis, investments provided a net source of cash.

4.3 Free Cash Flow to the Firm and Free Cash Flow to Equity

It was mentioned earlier that it is desirable that operating cash flows are sufficient to cover capital expenditures. The excess of operating cash flow over capital expenditures is known generically as **free cash flow**. For purposes of valuing a company or its equity securities, an analyst may want to determine and use other cash flow measures, such as free cash flow to the firm (FCFF) or free cash flow to equity (FCFE).

FCFF is the cash flow available to the company's suppliers of debt and equity capital after all operating expenses (including income taxes) have been paid and necessary investments in working capital and fixed capital have been made. FCFF can be computed starting with net income as

$$\text{FCFF} = \text{NI} + \text{NCC} + \text{Int}(1 - \text{Tax rate}) - \text{FCInv} - \text{WCInv}$$

where

NI = Net income

NCC = Non-cash charges (such as depreciation and amortisation)

Int = Interest expense

FCInv = Capital expenditures (fixed capital, such as equipment)

WCInv = Working capital expenditures

The reason for adding back interest is that FCFF is the cash flow available to the suppliers of debt capital as well as equity capital. Conveniently, FCFF can also be computed from cash flow from operating activities as

$$\text{FCFF} = \text{CFO} + \text{Int}(1 - \text{Tax rate}) - \text{FCInv}$$

CFO represents cash flow from operating activities under US GAAP or under IFRS where the company has included interest paid in operating activities. If interest paid was included in financing activities, then CFO does not have to be adjusted for $\text{Int}(1 - \text{Tax rate})$. Under IFRS, if the company has placed interest and dividends received in investing activities, these should be added back to CFO to determine FCFE. Additionally, if dividends paid were subtracted in the operating section, these should be added back in to compute FCFE.

The computation of FCFE for Acme Corporation (based on the data from Exhibits 6, 7, and 8) is as follows:

CFO	\$2,606
Plus: Interest paid times $(1 - \text{income tax rate})$	
$\{\$258 [1 - 0.34^a]\}$	170
Less: Net investments in fixed capital	
$(\$1,300 - \$762)$	(538)
FCFE	<u>\$2,238</u>

^a Income tax rate of 0.34 = $(\text{Tax expense} \div \text{Pretax income}) = (\$1,139 \div \$3,349)$.

FCFE is the cash flow available to the company's common stockholders after all operating expenses and borrowing costs (principal and interest) have been paid and necessary investments in working capital and fixed capital have been made. FCFE can be computed as

$$\text{FCFE} = \text{CFO} - \text{FCInv} + \text{Net borrowing}$$

When net borrowing is negative, debt repayments exceed receipts of borrowed funds. In this case, FCFE can be expressed as

$$\text{FCFE} = \text{CFO} - \text{FCInv} - \text{Net debt repayment}$$

The computation of FCFE for Acme Corporation (based on the data from Exhibits 6, 7, and 8) is as follows:

CFO	\$2,606
Less: Net investments in fixed capital $(\$1,300 - \$762)$	(538)
Less: Debt repayment	(500)
FCFE	<u>\$1,568</u>

Positive FCFE means that the company has an excess of operating cash flow over amounts needed for capital expenditures and repayment of debt. This cash would be available for distribution to owners.

4.4 Cash Flow Ratios

The statement of cash flows provides information that can be analyzed over time to obtain a better understanding of the past performance of a company and its future prospects. This information can also be effectively used to compare the performance and prospects of different companies in an industry and of different industries. There are several ratios based on cash flow from operating activities that are useful in this analysis. These ratios generally fall into cash flow performance (profitability) ratios and cash flow coverage (solvency) ratios. Exhibit 15 summarizes the calculation and interpretation of some of these ratios.

Exhibit 15 Cash Flow Ratios

Performance Ratios	Calculation	What It Measures
Cash flow to revenue	$\text{CFO} \div \text{Net revenue}$	Operating cash generated per dollar of revenue
Cash return on assets	$\text{CFO} \div \text{Average total assets}$	Operating cash generated per dollar of asset investment
Cash return on equity	$\text{CFO} \div \text{Average shareholders' equity}$	Operating cash generated per dollar of owner investment
Cash to income	$\text{CFO} \div \text{Operating income}$	Cash generating ability of operations
Cash flow per share ^a	$(\text{CFO} - \text{Preferred dividends}) \div \text{Number of common shares outstanding}$	Operating cash flow on a per-share basis

Coverage Ratios	Calculation	What It Measures
Debt coverage	$\text{CFO} \div \text{Total debt}$	Financial risk and financial leverage
Interest coverage ^b	$(\text{CFO} + \text{Interest paid} + \text{Taxes paid}) \div \text{Interest paid}$	Ability to meet interest obligations
Reinvestment	$\text{CFO} \div \text{Cash paid for long-term assets}$	Ability to acquire assets with operating cash flows
Debt payment	$\text{CFO} \div \text{Cash paid for long-term debt repayment}$	Ability to pay debts with operating cash flows
Dividend payment	$\text{CFO} \div \text{Dividends paid}$	Ability to pay dividends with operating cash flows
Investing and financing	$\text{CFO} \div \text{Cash outflows for investing and financing activities}$	Ability to acquire assets, pay debts, and make distributions to owners

Notes:

^a If the company reports under IFRS and includes total dividends paid as a use of cash in the operating section, total dividends should be added back to CFO as reported and then preferred dividends should be subtracted. Recall that CFO reported under US GAAP and IFRS may differ depending on the treatment of interest and dividends, received and paid.

^b If the company reports under IFRS and included interest paid as a use of cash in the financing section, then interest paid should not be added back to the numerator.

EXAMPLE 10**A Cash Flow Analysis of Comparables**

Andrew Potter is comparing the cash-flow-generating ability of Dell Inc. with that of other computer manufacturers: Hewlett Packard and Apple Inc. He collects information from the companies' annual reports and prepares the following table.

Cash Flow from Operating Activities as a Percentage of Total Net Revenue

	2009 (%)	2008 (%)	2007 (%)
DELL	7.38	3.10	6.46
HPQ	11.68	12.33	9.22
APPLE	23.68	29.55	22.79

As a Percentage of Ending Total Assets

	2009 (%)	2008 (%)	2007 (%)
DELL	11.61	7.15	14.33
HPQ	11.65	12.87	10.84
APPLE	21.39	24.25	21.58

DELL = Dell Inc.; AAPLE = Apple Inc.; HPQ = Hewlett Packard.

What is Potter likely to conclude about the relative cash-flow-generating ability of these companies?

Solution:

On both measures—operating cash flow divided by revenue and operating cash flow divided by assets—Apple’s performance was much stronger than the two comparable companies. Dell’s operating cash flow divided by revenue is lower than HP’s for all three years. Dell’s operating cash flow relative to assets is similar to HP’s in 2009, lower than HP’s in 2008, and higher than HP’s in 2007. Apple’s measures are significantly higher than the others, indicating that it has the best cash generating ability. Note that Apple’s cash generating ability presumably reflects the company’s successful introduction and sales of new products (including the iPhone), tightly managed inventory, and ability to generate revenues (and operating cash flow) from businesses not requiring significant investment in such assets as service contracts and sales of third-party compatible products. Overall, Potter should undertake additional research to understand the underlying business reasons for the differences in the companies’ cash flow profiles.

SUMMARY

The cash flow statement provides important information about a company’s cash receipts and cash payments during an accounting period as well as information about a company’s operating, investing, and financing activities. Although the income statement provides a measure of a company’s success, cash and cash flow are also vital to a company’s long-term success. Information on the sources and uses of cash helps creditors, investors, and other statement users evaluate the company’s liquidity, solvency, and financial flexibility. Key concepts are as follows:

- Cash flow activities are classified into three categories: operating activities, investing activities, and financing activities. Significant non-cash transaction activities (if present) are reported by using a supplemental disclosure note to the cash flow statement.
- Cash flow statements under IFRS and US GAAP are similar; however, IFRS provide companies with more choices in classifying some cash flow items as operating, investing, or financing activities.
- Companies can use either the direct or the indirect method for reporting their operating cash flow:

- The direct method discloses operating cash inflows by source (e.g., cash received from customers, cash received from investment income) and operating cash outflows by use (e.g., cash paid to suppliers, cash paid for interest) in the operating activities section of the cash flow statement.
- The indirect method reconciles net income to operating cash flow by adjusting net income for all non-cash items and the net changes in the operating working capital accounts.
- The cash flow statement is linked to a company's income statement and comparative balance sheets and to data on those statements.
- Although the indirect method is most commonly used by companies, an analyst can generally convert it to an approximation of the direct format by following a simple three-step process.
- An evaluation of a cash flow statement should involve an assessment of the sources and uses of cash and the main drivers of cash flow within each category of activities.
- The analyst can use common-size statement analysis for the cash flow statement. Two approaches to developing the common-size statements are the total cash inflows/total cash outflows method and the percentage of net revenues method.
- The cash flow statement can be used to determine free cash flow to the firm (FCFF) and free cash flow to equity (FCFE).
- The cash flow statement may also be used in financial ratios that measure a company's profitability, performance, and financial strength.

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

- 1 The three major classifications of activities in a cash flow statement are:
 - A inflows, outflows, and net flows.
 - B operating, investing, and financing.
 - C revenues, expenses, and net income.
- 2 The sale of a building for cash would be classified as what type of activity on the cash flow statement?
 - A Operating.
 - B Investing.
 - C Financing.
- 3 Under which section of a manufacturing company's cash flow statement are the following activities reported?
 - Item 1: Purchases of securities held for trading
 - Item 2: Sales of securities considered cash equivalents
 - A Both items are investing activities.
 - B Both items are operating activities.
 - C Only Item 1 is an investing activity.
- 4 Which of the following is an example of a financing activity on the cash flow statement under US GAAP?
 - A Payment of interest.
 - B Receipt of dividends.
 - C Payment of dividends.
- 5 A conversion of a face value \$1 million convertible bond for \$1 million of common stock would most likely be:
 - A reported as a \$1 million investing cash inflow and outflow.
 - B reported as a \$1 million financing cash outflow and inflow.
 - C reported as supplementary information to the cash flow statement.
- 6 A company recently engaged in a non-cash transaction that significantly affected its property, plant, and equipment. The transaction is:
 - A reported under the investing section of the cash flow statement.
 - B reported differently in cash flow from operations under the direct and indirect methods.
 - C disclosed as a separate note or in a supplementary schedule to the cash flow statement.
- 7 Interest paid is classified as an operating cash flow under:
 - A US GAAP but may be classified as either operating or investing cash flows under IFRS.
 - B IFRS but may be classified as either operating or investing cash flows under US GAAP.
 - C US GAAP but may be classified as either operating or financing cash flows under IFRS.
- 8 Cash flows from taxes on income must be separately disclosed under:

- A IFRS only.
 B US GAAP only.
 C both IFRS and US GAAP.
- 9 Which of the following components of the cash flow statement may be prepared under the indirect method under both IFRS and US GAAP?
 A Operating.
 B Investing.
 C Financing.
- 10 Which of the following is *most likely* to appear in the operating section of a cash flow statement under the indirect method?
 A Net income.
 B Cash paid to suppliers.
 C Cash received from customers.
- 11 A benefit of using the direct method rather than the indirect method when reporting operating cash flows is that the direct method:
 A mirrors a forecasting approach.
 B is easier and less costly.
 C provides specific information on the sources of operating cash flows.
- 12 Mabel Corporation (MC) reported accounts receivable of \$66 million at the end of its second fiscal quarter. MC had revenues of \$72 million for its third fiscal quarter and reported accounts receivable of \$55 million at the end of its third fiscal quarter. Based on this information, the amount of cash MC collected from customers during the third fiscal quarter is:
 A \$61 million.
 B \$72 million.
 C \$83 million.
- 13 When computing net cash flow from operating activities using the indirect method, an addition to net income is *most likely* to occur when there is a:
 A gain on the sale of an asset.
 B loss on the retirement of debt.
 C decrease in a deferred tax liability.
- 14 Red Road Company, a consulting company, reported total revenues of \$100 million, total expenses of \$80 million, and net income of \$20 million in the most recent year. If accounts receivable increased by \$10 million, how much cash did the company receive from customers?
 A \$90 million.
 B \$100 million.
 C \$110 million.
- 15 In 2014, a company using US GAAP made cash payments of \$6 million for salaries, \$2 million for interest expense, and \$4 million for income taxes. Additional information for the company is provided in the table:

(\$ millions)	2013	2014
Revenue	42	37
Cost of goods sold	18	16
Inventory	36	40

(\$ millions)	2013	2014
Accounts receivable	22	19
Accounts payable	14	12

Based only on the information given, the company's operating cash flow for 2014 is *closest to*:

- A \$6 million.
 B \$10 million.
 C \$14 million.
- 16 Green Glory Corp., a garden supply wholesaler, reported cost of goods sold for the year of \$80 million. Total assets increased by \$55 million, including an increase of \$5 million in inventory. Total liabilities increased by \$45 million, including an increase of \$2 million in accounts payable. The cash paid by the company to its suppliers is most likely *closest to*:
- A \$73 million.
 B \$77 million.
 C \$83 million.
- 17 Purple Fleur S.A., a retailer of floral products, reported cost of goods sold for the year of \$75 million. Total assets increased by \$55 million, but inventory declined by \$6 million. Total liabilities increased by \$45 million, and accounts payable increased by \$2 million. The cash paid by the company to its suppliers is most likely *closest to*:
- A \$67 million.
 B \$79 million.
 C \$83 million.
- 18 White Flag, a women's clothing manufacturer, reported salaries expense of \$20 million. The beginning balance of salaries payable was \$3 million, and the ending balance of salaries payable was \$1 million. How much cash did the company pay in salaries?
- A \$18 million.
 B \$21 million.
 C \$22 million.
- 19 An analyst gathered the following information from a company's 2010 financial statements (in \$ millions):

Year ended 31 December	2009	2010
Net sales	245.8	254.6
Cost of goods sold	168.3	175.9
Accounts receivable	73.2	68.3
Inventory	39.0	47.8
Accounts payable	20.3	22.9

Based only on the information above, the company's 2010 statement of cash flows in the direct format would include amounts (in \$ millions) for cash received from customers and cash paid to suppliers, respectively, that are *closest to*:

	cash received from customers	cash paid to suppliers
A	249.7	169.7
B	259.5	174.5
C	259.5	182.1

- 20** Golden Cumulus Corp., a commodities trading company, reported interest expense of \$19 million and taxes of \$6 million. Interest payable increased by \$3 million, and taxes payable decreased by \$4 million over the period. How much cash did the company pay for interest and taxes?
- A** \$22 million for interest and \$10 million for taxes.
B \$16 million for interest and \$2 million for taxes.
C \$16 million for interest and \$10 million for taxes.
- 21** An analyst gathered the following information from a company's 2010 financial statements (in \$ millions):

Balances as of Year Ended 31 December	2009	2010
Retained earnings	120	145
Accounts receivable	38	43
Inventory	45	48
Accounts payable	36	29

In 2010, the company declared and paid cash dividends of \$10 million and recorded depreciation expense in the amount of \$25 million. The company considers dividends paid a financing activity. The company's 2010 cash flow from operations (in \$ millions) was *closest* to

- A** 25.
B 45.
C 75.
- 22** Silverago Incorporated, an international metals company, reported a loss on the sale of equipment of \$2 million in 2010. In addition, the company's income statement shows depreciation expense of \$8 million and the cash flow statement shows capital expenditure of \$10 million, all of which was for the purchase of new equipment. Using the following information from the comparative balance sheets, how much cash did the company receive from the equipment sale?

Balance Sheet Item	12/31/2009	12/31/2010	Change
Equipment	\$100 million	\$105 million	\$5 million
Accumulated depreciation—equipment	\$40 million	\$46 million	\$6 million

- A** \$1 million.
B \$2 million.
C \$3 million.
- 23** Jaderong Plinkett Stores reported net income of \$25 million. The company has no outstanding debt. Using the following information from the comparative balance sheets (in millions), what should the company report in the financing section of the statement of cash flows in 2010?

Balance Sheet Item	12/31/2009	12/31/2010	Change
Common stock	\$100	\$102	\$2
Additional paid-in capital common stock	\$100	\$140	\$40
Retained earnings	\$100	\$115	\$15
Total stockholders' equity	\$300	\$357	\$57

- A** Issuance of common stock of \$42 million; dividends paid of \$10 million.
B Issuance of common stock of \$38 million; dividends paid of \$10 million.
C Issuance of common stock of \$42 million; dividends paid of \$40 million.
- 24** Based on the following information for Star Inc., what are the total net adjustments that the company would make to net income in order to derive operating cash flow?

Income Statement Item	Year Ended
	12/31/2010
Net income	\$20 million
Depreciation	\$2 million

Balance Sheet Item	12/31/2009	12/31/2010	Change
Accounts receivable	\$25 million	\$22 million	(\$3 million)
Inventory	\$10 million	\$14 million	\$4 million
Accounts payable	\$8 million	\$13 million	\$5 million

- A** Add \$2 million.
B Add \$6 million.
C Subtract \$6 million.
- 25** The first step in cash flow statement analysis should be to:
- A** evaluate consistency of cash flows.
B determine operating cash flow drivers.
C identify the major sources and uses of cash.
- 26** Which of the following would be valid conclusions from an analysis of the cash flow statement for Telefónica Group presented in Exhibit 3?
- A** The primary use of cash is financing activities.
B The primary source of cash is operating activities.
C Telefónica classifies interest received as an operating activity.
- 27** The following information is extracted from Sweetfall Incorporated's financial statements.

Income Statement		Balance Sheet Changes	
Revenue	\$56,800	Decrease in accounts receivable	\$1,324
Cost of goods sold	27,264	Decrease in inventory	501
Other operating expense	562	Increase in prepaid expense	6
Depreciation expense	2,500	Increase in accounts payable	1,063

The amount of cash Sweetfall Inc. paid to suppliers is:

- A \$25,700.
 - B \$26,702.
 - C \$27,826.
- 28 Which is an appropriate method of preparing a common-size cash flow statement?
- A Show each item of revenue and expense as a percentage of net revenue.
 - B Show each line item on the cash flow statement as a percentage of net revenue.
 - C Show each line item on the cash flow statement as a percentage of total cash outflows.
- 29 Which of the following is an appropriate method of computing free cash flow to the firm?
- A Add operating cash flows to capital expenditures and deduct after-tax interest payments.
 - B Add operating cash flows to after-tax interest payments and deduct capital expenditures.
 - C Deduct both after-tax interest payments and capital expenditures from operating cash flows.
- 30 An analyst has calculated a ratio using as the numerator the sum of operating cash flow, interest, and taxes and as the denominator the amount of interest. What is this ratio, what does it measure, and what does it indicate?
- A This ratio is an interest coverage ratio, measuring a company's ability to meet its interest obligations and indicating a company's solvency.
 - B This ratio is an effective tax ratio, measuring the amount of a company's operating cash flow used for taxes and indicating a company's efficiency in tax management.
 - C This ratio is an operating profitability ratio, measuring the operating cash flow generated accounting for taxes and interest and indicating a company's liquidity.

SOLUTIONS

- 1 B is correct. Operating, investing, and financing are the three major classifications of activities in a cash flow statement. Revenues, expenses, and net income are elements of the income statement. Inflows, outflows, and net flows are items of information in the statement of cash flows.
- 2 B is correct. Purchases and sales of long-term assets are considered investing activities. Note that if the transaction had involved the exchange of a building for other than cash (for example, for another building, common stock of another company, or a long-term note receivable), it would have been considered a significant non-cash activity.
- 3 B is correct. The purchase and sale of securities considered cash equivalents and securities held for trading are considered operating activities even for companies in which this activity is not a primary business activity.
- 4 C is correct. Payment of dividends is a financing activity under US GAAP. Payment of interest and receipt of dividends are included in operating cash flows under US GAAP. Note that IFRS allow companies to include receipt of interest and dividends as either operating or investing cash flows and to include payment of interest and dividends as either operating or financing cash flows.
- 5 C is correct. Non-cash transactions, if significant, are reported as supplementary information, not in the investing or financing sections of the cash flow statement.
- 6 C is correct. Because no cash is involved in non-cash transactions, these transactions are not incorporated in the cash flow statement. However, non-cash transactions that significantly affect capital or asset structures are required to be disclosed either in a separate note or a supplementary schedule to the cash flow statement.
- 7 C is correct. Interest expense is always classified as an operating cash flow under US GAAP but may be classified as either an operating or financing cash flow under IFRS.
- 8 C is correct. Taxes on income are required to be separately disclosed under IFRS and US GAAP. The disclosure may be in the cash flow statement or elsewhere.
- 9 A is correct. The operating section may be prepared under the indirect method. The other sections are always prepared under the direct method.
- 10 A is correct. Under the indirect method, the operating section would begin with net income and adjust it to arrive at operating cash flow. The other two items would appear in the operating section under the direct method.
- 11 C is correct. The primary argument in favor of the direct method is that it provides information on the specific sources of operating cash receipts and payments. Arguments for the indirect method include that it mirrors a forecasting approach and it is easier and less costly.
- 12 C is correct. The amount of cash collected from customers during the quarter is equal to beginning accounts receivable plus revenues minus ending accounts receivable: $\$66 \text{ million} + \$72 \text{ million} - \$55 \text{ million} = \83 million . A reduction in accounts receivable indicates that cash collected during the quarter was greater than revenue on an accrual basis.

- 13** B is correct. An addition to net income is made when there is a loss on the retirement of debt, which is a non-operating loss. A gain on the sale of an asset and a decrease in deferred tax liability are both subtracted from net-income.
- 14** A is correct. Revenues of \$100 million minus the increase in accounts receivable of \$10 million equal \$90 million cash received from customers. The increase in accounts receivable means that the company received less in cash than it reported as revenue.
- 15** A is correct.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Operating cash flows} &= \text{Cash received from customers} - (\text{Cash} \\ &\quad \text{paid to suppliers} + \text{Cash paid to employees} \\ &\quad + \text{Cash paid for other operating expenses} \\ &\quad + \text{Cash paid for interest} + \text{Cash paid for} \\ &\quad \text{income taxes}) \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Cash received from customers} &= \text{Revenue} - \text{Decrease in accounts} \\ &\quad \text{receivable} \\ &= \$37 - (\$19 - \$22) = \$40 \text{ million} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Cash paid to suppliers} &= \text{Cost of goods sold} + \text{Decrease in inven-} \\ &\quad \text{tory} - \text{Increase in accounts payable} \\ &= \$16 + (\$40 - \$36) - (\$12 - \$14) = \\ &\quad \$22 \text{ million} \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, the company's operating cash flow = \$40 - \$22 - Cash paid for salaries - Cash paid for interest - Cash paid for taxes = \$40 - \$22 - \$6 - \$2 - \$4 = \$6 million.

- 16** C is correct. Cost of goods sold of \$80 million plus the increase in inventory of \$5 million equals purchases from suppliers of \$85 million. The increase in accounts payable of \$2 million means that the company paid \$83 million in cash (\$85 million minus \$2 million) to its suppliers.
- 17** A is correct. Cost of goods sold of \$75 million less the decrease in inventory of \$6 million equals purchases from suppliers of \$69 million. The increase in accounts payable of \$2 million means that the company paid \$67 million in cash (\$69 million minus \$2 million).
- 18** C is correct. Beginning salaries payable of \$3 million plus salaries expense of \$20 million minus ending salaries payable of \$1 million equals \$22 million. Alternatively, the expense of \$20 million plus the \$2 million decrease in salaries payable equals \$22 million.
- 19** C is correct. Cash received from customers = Sales + Decrease in accounts receivable = 254.6 + 4.9 = 259.5. Cash paid to suppliers = Cost of goods sold + Increase in inventory - Increase in accounts payable = 175.9 + 8.8 - 2.6 = 182.1.
- 20** C is correct. Interest expense of \$19 million less the increase in interest payable of \$3 million equals interest paid of \$16 million. Tax expense of \$6 million plus the decrease in taxes payable of \$4 million equals taxes paid of \$10 million.
- 21** B is correct. All dollar amounts are in millions. Net income (NI) for 2010 is \$35. This amount is the increase in retained earnings, \$25, plus the dividends paid, \$10. Depreciation of \$25 is added back to net income, and the increases in accounts receivable, \$5, and in inventory, \$3, are subtracted from net income because they are uses of cash. The decrease in accounts payable is also a use of cash and, therefore, a subtraction from net income. Thus, cash flow from operations is \$25 + \$10 + \$25 - \$5 - \$3 - \$7 = \$45.

- 22 A is correct. Selling price (cash inflow) minus book value equals gain or loss on sale; therefore, gain or loss on sale plus book value equals selling price (cash inflow). The amount of loss is given—\$2 million. To calculate the book value of the equipment sold, find the historical cost of the equipment and the accumulated depreciation on the equipment.
- Beginning balance of equipment of \$100 million plus equipment purchased of \$10 million minus ending balance of equipment of \$105 million equals the historical cost of equipment sold, or \$5 million.
 - Beginning accumulated depreciation of \$40 million plus depreciation expense for the year of \$8 million minus ending balance of accumulated depreciation of \$46 million equals accumulated depreciation on the equipment sold, or \$2 million.
 - Therefore, the book value of the equipment sold was \$5 million minus \$2 million, or \$3 million.
 - Because the loss on the sale of equipment was \$2 million, the amount of cash received must have been \$1 million.
- 23 A is correct. The increase of \$42 million in common stock and additional paid-in capital indicates that the company issued stock during the year. The increase in retained earnings of \$15 million indicates that the company paid \$10 million in cash dividends during the year, determined as beginning retained earnings of \$100 million plus net income of \$25 million minus ending retained earnings of \$115 million, which equals \$10 million in cash dividends.
- 24 B is correct. To derive operating cash flow, the company would make the following adjustments to net income: Add depreciation (a non-cash expense) of \$2 million; add the decrease in accounts receivable of \$3 million; add the increase in accounts payable of \$5 million; and subtract the increase in inventory of \$4 million. Total additions would be \$10 million, and total subtractions would be \$4 million, which gives net additions of \$6 million.
- 25 C is correct. An overall assessment of the major sources and uses of cash should be the first step in evaluating a cash flow statement.
- 26 B is correct. The primary source of cash is operating activities. The primary use of cash is investing activities. Interest received for Telefónica is classified as an investing activity.
- 27 A is correct. The amount of cash paid to suppliers is calculated as follows:
- $$\begin{aligned} &= \text{Cost of goods sold} - \text{Decrease in inventory} - \text{Increase in accounts payable} \\ &= \$27,264 - \$501 - \$1,063 \\ &= \$25,700. \end{aligned}$$
- 28 B is correct. An appropriate method to prepare a common-size cash flow statement is to show each line item on the cash flow statement as a percentage of net revenue. An alternative way to prepare a statement of cash flows is to show each item of cash inflow as a percentage of total inflows and each item of cash outflows as a percentage of total outflows.
- 29 B is correct. Free cash flow to the firm can be computed as operating cash flows plus after-tax interest expense less capital expenditures.
- 30 A is correct. This ratio is an interest coverage ratio, measuring a company's ability to meet its interest obligations and indicating a company's solvency. This coverage ratio is based on cash flow information; another common coverage ratio uses a measure based on the income statement (earnings before interest, taxes, depreciation, and amortisation).

Financial Analysis Techniques

by Elaine Henry, PhD, CFA, Thomas R. Robinson, PhD, CFA, and
Jan Hendrik van Greuning, DCom, CFA

Elaine Henry, PhD, CFA, is at Stevens Institute of Technology (USA). Thomas R. Robinson, PhD, CFA, is at AACSB International (USA). Jan Hendrik van Greuning, DCom, CFA, is at BIBD (Brunei).

LEARNING OUTCOMES

<i>Mastery</i>	<i>The candidate should be able to:</i>
<input type="checkbox"/>	a. describe tools and techniques used in financial analysis, including their uses and limitations;
<input type="checkbox"/>	b. classify, calculate, and interpret activity, liquidity, solvency, profitability, and valuation ratios;
<input type="checkbox"/>	c. describe relationships among ratios and evaluate a company using ratio analysis;
<input type="checkbox"/>	d. demonstrate the application of DuPont analysis of return on equity and calculate and interpret effects of changes in its components;
<input type="checkbox"/>	e. calculate and interpret ratios used in equity analysis and credit analysis;
<input type="checkbox"/>	f. explain the requirements for segment reporting and calculate and interpret segment ratios;
<input type="checkbox"/>	g. describe how ratio analysis and other techniques can be used to model and forecast earnings.

Note: Changes in accounting standards as well as new rulings and/or pronouncements issued after the publication of the readings on financial reporting and analysis may cause some of the information in these readings to become dated. Candidates are *not* responsible for anything that occurs after the readings were published. In addition, candidates are expected to be familiar with the analytical frameworks contained in the readings, as well as the implications of alternative accounting methods for financial analysis and valuation discussed in the readings. Candidates are also responsible for the content of accounting standards, but not for the actual reference numbers. Finally, candidates should be aware that certain ratios may be defined and calculated differently. When alternative ratio definitions exist and no specific definition is given, candidates should use the ratio definitions emphasized in the readings.

1

INTRODUCTION

Financial analysis tools can be useful in assessing a company's performance and trends in that performance. In essence, an analyst converts data into financial metrics that assist in decision making. Analysts seek to answer such questions as: How successfully has the company performed, relative to its own past performance and relative to its competitors? How is the company likely to perform in the future? Based on expectations about future performance, what is the value of this company or the securities it issues?

A primary source of data is a company's annual report, including the financial statements and notes, and management commentary (operating and financial review or management's discussion and analysis). This reading focuses on data presented in financial reports prepared under International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRS) and United States generally accepted accounting principles (US GAAP). However, financial reports do not contain all the information needed to perform effective financial analysis. Although financial statements do contain data about the *past* performance of a company (its income and cash flows) as well as its *current* financial condition (assets, liabilities, and owners' equity), such statements do not necessarily provide all the information useful for analysis nor do they forecast *future* results. The financial analyst must be capable of using financial statements in conjunction with other information to make projections and reach valid conclusions. Accordingly, an analyst typically needs to supplement the information found in a company's financial reports with other information, including information on the economy, industry, comparable companies, and the company itself.

This reading describes various techniques used to analyze a company's financial statements. Financial analysis of a company may be performed for a variety of reasons, such as valuing equity securities, assessing credit risk, conducting due diligence related to an acquisition, or assessing a subsidiary's performance. This reading will describe techniques common to any financial analysis and then discuss more specific aspects for the two most common categories: equity analysis and credit analysis.

Equity analysis incorporates an owner's perspective, either for valuation or performance evaluation. Credit analysis incorporates a creditor's (such as a banker or bondholder) perspective. In either case, there is a need to gather and analyze information to make a decision (ownership or credit); the focus of analysis varies because of the differing interest of owners and creditors. Both equity and credit analyses assess the entity's ability to generate and grow earnings, and cash flow, as well as any associated risks. Equity analysis usually places a greater emphasis on growth, whereas credit analysis usually places a greater emphasis on risks. The difference in emphasis reflects the different fundamentals of these types of investments: The value of a company's equity generally increases as the company's earnings and cash flow increase, whereas the value of a company's debt has an upper limit.

The balance of this reading is organized as follows: Section 2 recaps the framework for financial statements and the place of financial analysis techniques within the framework. Section 3 provides a description of analytical tools and techniques. Section 4 explains how to compute, analyze, and interpret common financial ratios. Sections 5 through 8 explain the use of ratios and other analytical data in equity analysis, credit analysis, segment analysis, and forecasting, respectively. A summary of the key points and practice problems in the CFA Institute multiple-choice format conclude the reading.

THE FINANCIAL ANALYSIS PROCESS

2

In financial analysis, it is essential to clearly identify and understand the final objective and the steps required to reach that objective. In addition, the analyst needs to know where to find relevant data, how to process and analyze the data (in other words, know the typical questions to address when interpreting data), and how to communicate the analysis and conclusions.

2.1 The Objectives of the Financial Analysis Process

Because of the variety of reasons for performing financial analysis, the numerous available techniques, and the often substantial amount of data, it is important that the analytical approach be tailored to the specific situation. Prior to beginning any financial analysis, the analyst should clarify the purpose and context, and clearly understand the following:

- What is the purpose of the analysis? What questions will this analysis answer?
- What level of detail will be needed to accomplish this purpose?
- What data are available for the analysis?
- What are the factors or relationships that will influence the analysis?
- What are the analytical limitations, and will these limitations potentially impair the analysis?

Having clarified the purpose and context of the analysis, the analyst can select the set of techniques (e.g., ratios) that will best assist in making a decision. Although there is no single approach to structuring the analysis process, a general framework is set forth in Exhibit 1. The steps in this process were discussed in more detail in an earlier reading; the primary focus of this reading is on Phases 3 and 4, processing and analyzing data.

Exhibit 1 A Financial Statement Analysis Framework

Phase	Sources of Information	Output
1 Articulate the purpose and context of the analysis.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ The nature of the analyst's function, such as evaluating an equity or debt investment or issuing a credit rating. ■ Communication with client or supervisor on needs and concerns. ■ Institutional guidelines related to developing specific work product. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Statement of the purpose or objective of analysis. ■ A list (written or unwritten) of specific questions to be answered by the analysis. ■ Nature and content of report to be provided. ■ Timetable and budgeted resources for completion.
2 Collect input data.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Financial statements, other financial data, questionnaires, and industry/economic data. ■ Discussions with management, suppliers, customers, and competitors. ■ Company site visits (e.g., to production facilities or retail stores). 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Organized financial statements. ■ Financial data tables. ■ Completed questionnaires, if applicable.

(continued)

Exhibit 1 (Continued)

Phase	Sources of Information	Output
3 Process data.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Data from the previous phase. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Adjusted financial statements. ■ Common-size statements. ■ Ratios and graphs. ■ Forecasts.
4 Analyze/interpret the processed data.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Input data as well as processed data. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Analytical results.
5 Develop and communicate conclusions and recommendations (e.g., with an analysis report).	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Analytical results and previous reports. ■ Institutional guidelines for published reports. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Analytical report answering questions posed in Phase 1. ■ Recommendation regarding the purpose of the analysis, such as whether to make an investment or grant credit.
6 Follow-up.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Information gathered by periodically repeating above steps as necessary to determine whether changes to holdings or recommendations are necessary. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Updated reports and recommendations.

2.2 Distinguishing between Computations and Analysis

An effective analysis encompasses both computations and interpretations. A well-reasoned analysis differs from a mere compilation of various pieces of information, computations, tables, and graphs by integrating the data collected into a cohesive whole. Analysis of past performance, for example, should address not only what happened but also why it happened and whether it advanced the company's strategy. Some of the key questions to address include:

- What aspects of performance are critical for this company to successfully compete in this industry?
- How well did the company's performance meet these critical aspects? (Established through computation and comparison with appropriate benchmarks, such as the company's own historical performance or competitors' performance.)
- What were the key causes of this performance, and how does this performance reflect the company's strategy? (Established through analysis.)

If the analysis is forward looking, additional questions include:

- What is the likely impact of an event or trend? (Established through interpretation of analysis.)
- What is the likely response of management to this trend? (Established through evaluation of quality of management and corporate governance.)
- What is the likely impact of trends in the company, industry, and economy on future cash flows? (Established through assessment of corporate strategy and through forecasts.)

- What are the recommendations of the analyst? (Established through interpretation and forecasting of results of analysis.)
- What risks should be highlighted? (Established by an evaluation of major uncertainties in the forecast and in the environment within which the company operates.)

Example 1 demonstrates how a company's financial data can be analyzed in the context of its business strategy and changes in that strategy. An analyst must be able to understand the "why" behind the numbers and ratios, not just what the numbers and ratios are.

EXAMPLE 1

Strategy Reflected in Financial Performance

Apple Inc. and Dell Inc. engage in the design, manufacture, and sale of computer hardware and related products and services. Selected financial data for 2007 through 2009 for these two competitors are given below. Apple's fiscal year (FY) ends on the final Saturday in September (for example, FY2009 ended on 26 September 2009). Dell's fiscal year ends on the Friday nearest 31 January (for example, FY2009 ended on 29 January 2010 and FY2007 ended on 1 February 2008).

Selected Financial Data for Apple (Dollars in Millions)

Fiscal year	2009	2008	2007
Net sales	42,905	37,491	24,578
Gross margin	17,222	13,197	8,152
Operating income	11,740	8,327	4,407

Selected Financial Data for Dell (Dollars in Millions)

Fiscal year	2009	2008	2007
Net sales	52,902	61,101	61,133
Gross margin	9,261	10,957	11,671
Operating income	2,172	3,190	3,440

Source: Apple's Forms 10-K and 10-K/A and Dell's Form 10-K.

Apple reported a 53 percent increase in net sales from FY2007 to FY2008 and a further increase in FY2009 of approximately 14 percent. Gross margin increased 62 percent from FY2007 to FY2008 and increased 30 percent from FY2008 to FY2009. From FY2007 to FY2009, the gross margin more than doubled. Also, the company's operating income almost tripled over the three-year period. From FY2007 to 2009, Dell reported a decrease in sales, gross margin, and operating income

What caused Apple's dramatic growth in sales and operating income and Dell's comparatively sluggish performance? One of the most important factors was the introduction of innovative and stylish products, the linkages with

iTunes, and expansion of the distinctive Apple stores. Among the company's most important and most successful new products was the iPhone. Apple's 2009 10-K indicates that iPhone unit sales grew 78 percent from 11.6 million units in 2008 to 20.7 million units in 2009. By 2009, the company's revenues from iPhones and related services had grown to \$13.0 billion and were nearly as large as the company's \$13.8 billion revenues from sales of Mac computers. The new products and linkages among the products not only increased demand but also increased the potential for higher pricing. As a result, gross profit margins and operating profit margins increased over the period because costs did not increase at the same pace as sales. Moreover, the company's products revolutionized the delivery channel for music and video. The financial results reflect a successful execution of the company's strategy to deliver integrated, innovative products by controlling the design and development of both hardware and software.

Dell continued to concentrate in the personal computer market, which arguably is in the market maturity stage of the product life cycle. Dell's results are consistent with a market maturity stage where industry sales level off and competition increases so that industry profits decline. With increased competition, some companies cannot compete and drop out of the market.

Analysts often need to communicate the findings of their analysis in a written report. Their reports should communicate how conclusions were reached and why recommendations were made. For example, a report might present the following:

- the purpose of the report, unless it is readily apparent;
- relevant aspects of the business context:
 - economic environment (country/region, macro economy, sector);
 - financial and other infrastructure (accounting, auditing, rating agencies);
 - legal and regulatory environment (and any other material limitations on the company being analyzed);
- evaluation of corporate governance and assessment of management strategy, including the company's competitive advantage(s);
- assessment of financial and operational data, including key assumptions in the analysis; and
- conclusions and recommendations, including limitations of the analysis and risks.

An effective narrative and well supported conclusions and recommendations are normally enhanced by using 3–10 years of data, as well as analytic techniques appropriate to the purpose of the report.

3

ANALYTICAL TOOLS AND TECHNIQUES

The tools and techniques presented in this section facilitate evaluations of company data. Evaluations require comparisons. It is difficult to say that a company's financial performance was "good" without clarifying the basis for comparison. In assessing a company's ability to generate and grow earnings and cash flow, and the risks related to those earnings and cash flows, the analyst draws comparisons to other companies (cross-sectional analysis) and over time (trend or time-series analysis).

For example, an analyst may wish to compare the profitability of companies competing in a global industry. If the companies differ significantly in size and/or report their financial data in different currencies, comparing net income as reported is not useful. Ratios (which express one number in relation to another) and common-size financial statements can remove size as a factor and enable a more relevant comparison. To achieve comparability across companies reporting in different currencies, one approach is to translate all reported numbers into a common currency using exchange rates at the end of a period. Others may prefer to translate reported numbers using the average exchange rates during the period. Alternatively, if the focus is primarily on ratios, comparability can be achieved without translating the currencies.

The analyst may also want to examine comparable performance over time. Again, the nominal currency amounts of sales or net income may not highlight significant changes. However, using ratios (see Example 2), horizontal financial statements where quantities are stated in terms of a selected base year value, and graphs can make such changes more apparent. Another obstacle to comparison is differences in fiscal year end. To achieve comparability, one approach is to develop trailing twelve months data, which will be described in a section below. Finally, it should be noted that differences in accounting standards can limit comparability.

EXAMPLE 2

Ratio Analysis

An analyst is examining the profitability of three Asian companies with large shares of the global personal computer market: Acer Inc., Lenovo Group Limited, and Toshiba Corporation. Acer has pursued a strategy of selling its products at affordable prices. In contrast, Lenovo aims to achieve higher selling prices by stressing the high engineering quality of its personal computers for business use. Toshiba is a conglomerate with varied product lines in addition to computers. For its personal computer business, one aspect of Toshiba's strategy has been to focus on laptops only, in contrast with other manufacturers that also make desktops. Acer reports in New Taiwan dollars (TW\$), Lenovo reports in US dollars (US\$), and Toshiba reports in Japanese yen (JP¥). For Acer, fiscal year end is 31 December. For both Lenovo and Toshiba, fiscal year end is 31 March; thus, for these companies, FY2009 ended 31 March 2010.

The analyst collects the data shown in Exhibit 2 below. Use this information to answer the following questions:

- 1 Which of the three companies is largest based on the amount of revenue, in US\$, reported in fiscal year 2009? For FY2009, assume the relevant, average exchange rates were 32.2 TW\$/US\$ and 92.5 JP¥/US\$.
- 2 Which company had the highest revenue growth from FY2005 to FY2009?
- 3 How do the companies compare, based on profitability?

Exhibit 2

ACER

<i>TW\$ Millions</i>	FY2005	FY2006	FY2007	FY2008	FY2009
Revenue	318,088	350,816	462,066	546,274	573,983
Gross profit	34,121	38,171	47,418	57,286	58,328
Net income	8,478	10,218	12,959	11,742	11,353

(continued)

Exhibit 2 (Continued)**LENOVO**

<i>US\$ Millions</i>	FY2005	FY2006	FY2007	FY2008	FY2009
Revenue	13,276	14,590	16,352	14,901	16,605
Gross profit	1,858	2,037	2,450	1,834	1,790
Net income (Loss)	22	161	484	(226)	129

TOSHIBA

<i>JP¥ Millions</i>	FY2005	FY2006	FY2007	FY2008	FY2009
Revenue	6,343,506	7,116,350	7,665,332	6,654,518	6,381,599
Gross profit	1,683,711	1,804,171	1,908,729	1,288,431	1,459,362
Net income (Loss)	78,186	137,429	127,413	(343,559)	(19,743)

Solution to 1:

Toshiba is far larger than the other two companies based on FY2009 revenues in US\$. Toshiba's FY2009 revenues of US\$69.0 billion are far higher than either Acer's US\$17.8 billion or Lenovo's US\$16.6 billion.

Acer: At the assumed average exchange rate of 32.2 TW\$/US\$, Acer's FY2009 revenues are equivalent to US\$17.8 billion (= TW\$573.983 billion ÷ 32.2 TW\$/US\$).

Lenovo: Lenovo's FY2009 revenues totaled US\$16.6 billion.

Toshiba: At the assumed average exchange rate of 92.5 JP¥/US\$, Toshiba's revenues for FY2009 are equivalent to US\$69.0 billion (= JP¥ 6,381.599 billion ÷ 92.5 JP¥/US\$).

Note: Comparing the size of companies reporting in different currencies requires translating reported numbers into a common currency using exchange rates at some point in time. This solution converts the revenues of Acer and Toshiba to billions of US dollars using the average exchange rate of the fiscal period. It would be equally informative (and would yield the same conclusion) to convert the revenues of Acer and Lenovo to Japanese yen, or to convert the revenues of Toshiba and Lenovo to New Taiwan dollars.

Solution to 2:

The growth in Acer's revenue was much higher than either of the other two companies.

	Change in Revenue FY2009 versus FY2005 (%)	Compound Annual Growth Rate from FY2005 to FY2009 (%)
Acer	80.4	15.9
Lenovo	25.1	5.8
Toshiba	0.6	0.1

The table shows two growth metrics. Calculations are illustrated using the revenue data for Acer:

The change in Acer's revenue for FY2009 versus FY2005 is 80.4 percent calculated as $(573,983 - 318,088) \div 318,088$ or equivalently $(573,983 \div 318,088) - 1$.

The compound annual growth rate in Acer's revenue from FY2005 to FY2009 is 15.9 percent, calculated using a financial calculator with the following inputs: Present Value = – 318,088; Future value = 573,983; N = 4; Payment = 0; and then Interest = ? to solve for growth.

Calculation of the compound annual growth rate can also be expressed as follows: $[(\text{Ending value} \div \text{Beginning value})^{(1/\text{number of periods})}] - 1 = [(573,983 \div 318,088)^{(1/4)}] - 1 = 0.159$ or 15.9 percent.

Solution to 3:

Profitability can be assessed by comparing the amount of gross profit to revenue and the amount of net income to revenue. The following table presents these two profitability ratios—**gross profit margin** (gross profit divided by revenue) and **net profit margin** (net income divided by revenue)—for each year.

ACER	FY2005 (%)	FY2006 (%)	FY2007 (%)	FY2008 (%)	FY2009 (%)
Gross profit margin	10.7	10.9	10.3	10.5	10.2
Net profit margin	2.7	2.9	2.8	2.1	2.0
LENOVO	FY2005 (%)	FY2006 (%)	FY2007 (%)	FY2008 (%)	FY2009 (%)
Gross profit margin	14.0	14.0	15.0	12.3	10.8
Net profit margin	0.2	1.1	3.0	–1.5	0.8
TOSHIBA	FY2005 (%)	FY2006 (%)	FY2007 (%)	FY2008 (%)	FY2009 (%)
Gross profit margin	26.5	25.4	24.9	19.4	22.9
Net profit margin	1.2	1.9	1.7	–5.2	–0.3

The net profit margins indicate that Acer has been the most profitable of the three companies. The company's net profit margin was somewhat lower in the most recent two years (only 2.1 percent and 2.0 percent in FY2008 and FY2009, respectively, compared to 2.7 percent, 2.9 percent and 2.8 percent in FYs 2005, 2006, and 2007, respectively), but has nonetheless remained positive and has remained higher than the competing companies.

Acer's gross profit margin has remained consistently above 10 percent in all 5 fiscal years. In contrast, Lenovo's gross profit margin has declined markedly over the 5-year period, but remains higher than Acer's, which is consistent with the company's strategic objective to achieve higher selling prices by stressing the high engineering quality of its personal computers. However, Lenovo's net profit margin has typically been lower than Acer's. Further analysis is needed to determine the cause of Lenovo's gross profitability decline over the period FY2005 to 2009 (lower selling prices and/or higher costs), to assess whether this decline is likely to persist in future years, and to determine the reason Lenovo's net profit margins are generally lower than Acer's despite Lenovo's higher gross profit margins.

Because Toshiba is a conglomerate, profit ratios based on data for the entire company give limited information about the company's personal computer business. Ratios based on segment data would likely be more useful than profit ratios for the entire company. Based on the aggregate information, Toshiba's gross profit margins are higher than either Acer's or Lenovo's gross profit margins, whereas Toshiba's net profit margins are generally lower than the net profit margins of either of the other two companies.

Section 3.1 describes the tools and techniques of ratio analysis in more detail. Sections 3.2 to 3.4 describe other tools and techniques.

3.1 Ratios

There are many relationships between financial accounts and between expected relationships from one point in time to another. Ratios are a useful way of expressing these relationships. Ratios express one quantity in relation to another (usually as a quotient).

Extensive academic research has examined the importance of ratios in predicting stock returns (Ou and Penman, 1989; Abarbanell and Bushee, 1998) or credit failure (Altman, 1968; Ohlson, 1980; Hopwood et al., 1994). This research has found that financial statement ratios are effective in selecting investments and in predicting financial distress. Practitioners routinely use ratios to derive and communicate the value of companies and securities.

Several aspects of ratio analysis are important to understand. First, the computed ratio is not “the answer.” The ratio is an *indicator* of some aspect of a company’s performance, telling what happened but not why it happened. For example, an analyst might want to answer the question: Which of two companies was more profitable? As demonstrated in the previous example, the net profit margin, which expresses profit relative to revenue, can provide insight into this question. Net profit margin is calculated by dividing net income by revenue:

$$\frac{\text{Net income}}{\text{Revenue}}$$

Assume Company A has €100,000 of net income and Company B has €200,000 of net income. Company B generated twice as much income as Company A, but was it more profitable? Assume further that Company A has €2,000,000 of revenue, and thus a net profit margin of 5 percent, and Company B has €6,000,000 of revenue, and thus a net profit margin of 3.33 percent. Expressing net income as a percentage of revenue clarifies the relationship: For each €100 of revenue, Company A earns €5 in net income, whereas Company B earns only €3.33 for each €100 of revenue. So, we can now answer the question of which company was more profitable in percentage terms: Company A was more profitable, as indicated by its higher net profit margin of 5 percent. Note that Company A was more *profitable* despite the fact that Company B reported higher absolute amounts of net income and revenue. However, this ratio by itself does not tell us *why* Company A has a higher profit margin. Further analysis is required to determine the reason (perhaps higher relative sales prices or better cost control or lower effective tax rates).

Company size sometimes confers economies of scale, so the absolute amounts of net income and revenue are useful in financial analysis. However, ratios reduce the effect of size, which enhances comparisons between companies and over time.

A second important aspect of ratio analysis is that differences in accounting policies (across companies and across time) can distort ratios, and a meaningful comparison may, therefore, involve adjustments to the financial data. Third, not all ratios are necessarily relevant to a particular analysis. The ability to select a relevant ratio or ratios to answer the research question is an analytical skill. Finally, as with financial analysis in general, ratio analysis does not stop with computation; interpretation of the result is essential. In practice, differences in ratios across time and across companies can be subtle, and interpretation is situation specific.

3.1.1 The Universe of Ratios

There are no authoritative bodies specifying exact formulas for computing ratios or providing a standard, comprehensive list of ratios. Formulas and even names of ratios often differ from analyst to analyst or from database to database. The number of

different ratios that can be created is practically limitless. There are, however, widely accepted ratios that have been found to be useful. Section 4 of this reading will focus primarily on these broad classes and commonly accepted definitions of key ratios. However, the analyst should be aware that different ratios may be used in practice and that certain industries have unique ratios tailored to the characteristics of that industry. When faced with an unfamiliar ratio, the analyst can examine the underlying formula to gain insight into what the ratio is measuring. For example, consider the following ratio formula:

$$\frac{\text{Operating income}}{\text{Average total assets}}$$

Never having seen this ratio, an analyst might question whether a result of 12 percent is better than 8 percent. The answer can be found in the ratio itself. The numerator is operating income and the denominator is average total assets, so the ratio can be interpreted as the amount of operating income generated per unit of assets. For every €100 of average total assets, generating €12 of operating income is better than generating €8 of operating income. Furthermore, it is apparent that this particular ratio is an indicator of profitability (and, to a lesser extent, efficiency in use of assets in generating operating profits). When facing a ratio for the first time, the analyst should evaluate the numerator and denominator to assess what the ratio is attempting to measure and how it should be interpreted. This is demonstrated in Example 3.

EXAMPLE 3

Interpreting a Financial Ratio

A US insurance company reports that its “combined ratio” is determined by dividing losses and expenses incurred by net premiums earned. It reports the following combined ratios:

Fiscal Year	5	4	3	2	1
Combined ratio	90.1%	104.0%	98.5%	104.1%	101.1%

Explain what this ratio is measuring and compare the results reported for each of the years shown in the chart. What other information might an analyst want to review before making any conclusions on this information?

Solution:

The combined ratio is a profitability measure. The ratio is explaining how much costs (losses and expenses) were incurred for every dollar of revenue (net premiums earned). The underlying formula indicates that a lower ratio is better. The Year 5 ratio of 90.1 percent means that for every dollar of net premiums earned, the costs were \$0.901, yielding a gross profit of \$0.099. Ratios greater than 100 percent indicate an overall loss. A review of the data indicates that there does not seem to be a consistent trend in this ratio. Profits were achieved in Years 5 and 3. The results for Years 4 and 2 show the most significant costs at approximately 104 percent.

The analyst would want to discuss this data further with management and understand the characteristics of the underlying business. He or she would want to understand why the results are so volatile. The analyst would also want to determine what should be used as a benchmark for this ratio.

The Operating income/Average total assets ratio shown above is one of many versions of the **return on assets (ROA)** ratio. Note that there are other ways of specifying this formula based on how assets are defined. Some financial ratio databases compute ROA using the ending value of assets rather than average assets. In limited cases, one may also see beginning assets in the denominator. Which one is right? It depends on what you are trying to measure and the underlying company trends. If the company has a stable level of assets, the answer will not differ greatly under the three measures of assets (beginning, average, and ending). However, if the assets are growing (or shrinking), the results will differ among the three measures. When assets are growing, operating income divided by ending assets may not make sense because some of the income would have been generated before some assets were purchased, and this would understate the company's performance. Similarly, if beginning assets are used, some of the operating income later in the year may have been generated only because of the addition of assets; therefore, the ratio would overstate the company's performance. Because operating income occurs throughout the period, it generally makes sense to use some average measure of assets. A good general rule is that when an income statement or cash flow statement number is in the numerator of a ratio and a balance sheet number is in the denominator, then an average should be used for the denominator. It is generally not necessary to use averages when only balance sheet numbers are used in both the numerator and denominator because both are determined as of the same date. However, in some instances, even ratios that only use balance sheet data may use averages. For example, **return on equity (ROE)**, which is defined as net income divided by average shareholders' equity, can be decomposed into other ratios, some of which only use balance sheet data. In decomposing ROE into component ratios, if an average is used in one of the component ratios then it should be used in the other component ratios. The decomposition of ROE is discussed further in Section 4.6.2.

If an average is used, judgment is also required about what average should be used. For simplicity, most ratio databases use a simple average of the beginning and end-of-year balance sheet amounts. If the company's business is seasonal so that levels of assets vary by interim period (semiannual or quarterly), then it may be beneficial to take an average over all interim periods, if available. (If the analyst is working within a company and has access to monthly data, this can also be used.)

3.1.2 Value, Purposes, and Limitations of Ratio Analysis

The value of ratio analysis is that it enables a financial analyst to evaluate past performance, assess the current financial position of the company, and gain insights useful for projecting future results. As noted previously, the ratio itself is not "the answer" but is an indicator of some aspect of a company's performance. Financial ratios provide insights into:

- microeconomic relationships within a company that help analysts project earnings and free cash flow;
- a company's financial flexibility, or ability to obtain the cash required to grow and meet its obligations, even if unexpected circumstances develop;
- management's ability;
- changes in the company and/or industry over time; and
- comparability with peer companies or the relevant industry(ies).

There are also limitations to ratio analysis. Factors to consider include:

- *The heterogeneity or homogeneity of a company's operating activities.* Companies may have divisions operating in many different industries. This can make it difficult to find comparable industry ratios to use for comparison purposes.

- *The need to determine whether the results of the ratio analysis are consistent.* One set of ratios may indicate a problem, whereas another set may indicate that the potential problem is only short term in nature.
- *The need to use judgment.* A key issue is whether a ratio for a company is within a reasonable range. Although financial ratios are used to help assess the growth potential and risk of a company, they cannot be used alone to directly value a company or its securities, or to determine its creditworthiness. The entire operation of the company must be examined, and the external economic and industry setting in which it is operating must be considered when interpreting financial ratios.
- *The use of alternative accounting methods.* Companies frequently have latitude when choosing certain accounting methods. Ratios taken from financial statements that employ different accounting choices may not be comparable unless adjustments are made. Some important accounting considerations include the following:
 - FIFO (first in, first out), LIFO (last in, first out), or average cost inventory valuation methods (IFRS does not allow LIFO);
 - Cost or equity methods of accounting for unconsolidated affiliates;
 - Straight line or accelerated methods of depreciation; and
 - Capital or operating lease treatment.

The expanding use of IFRS and the convergence efforts between IFRS and US GAAP has sought to make the financial statements of different companies more comparable and may overcome some of these difficulties. Nonetheless, there will remain accounting choices that the analyst must consider.

3.1.3 Sources of Ratios

Ratios may be computed using data obtained directly from companies' financial statements or from a database such as Bloomberg, Compustat, FactSet, or Thomson Reuters. The information provided by the database may include information as reported in companies' financial statements and ratios calculated based on the information. These databases are popular because they provide easy access to many years of historical data so that trends over time can be examined. They also allow for ratio calculations based on periods other than the company's fiscal year, such as for the trailing 12 months (TTM) or most recent quarter (MRQ).

EXAMPLE 4

Trailing Twelve Months

On 15 July, an analyst is examining a company with a fiscal year ending on 31 December. Use the following data to calculate the company's trailing 12 month earnings (for the period ended 30 June 2010):

- Earnings for the year ended 31 December, 2009: \$1,200;
- Earnings for the six months ended 30 June 2009: \$550; and
- Earnings for the six months ended 30 June 2010: \$750.

Solution:

The company's trailing 12 months earnings is \$1,400, calculated as \$1,200 – \$550 + \$750.

Analysts should be aware that the underlying formulas for ratios may differ by vendor. The formula used should be obtained from the vendor, and the analyst should determine whether any adjustments are necessary. Furthermore, database providers often exercise judgment when classifying items. For example, operating income may not appear directly on a company's income statement, and the vendor may use judgment to classify income statement items as "operating" or "non-operating." Variation in such judgments would affect any computation involving operating income. It is therefore a good practice to use the same source for data when comparing different companies or when evaluating the historical record of a single company. Analysts should verify the consistency of formulas and data classifications by the data source. Analysts should also be mindful of the judgments made by a vendor in data classifications and refer back to the source financial statements until they are comfortable that the classifications are appropriate.

Systems are under development that collect financial data from regulatory filings and can automatically compute ratios. The eXtensible Business Reporting Language (XBRL) is a mechanism that attaches "smart tags" to financial information (e.g., total assets), so that software can automatically collect the data and perform desired computations. The organization developing XBRL (www.xbrl.org) is an international nonprofit consortium of over 600 members from companies, associations, and agencies, including the International Accounting Standards Board. Many stock exchanges and regulatory agencies around the world now use XBRL for receiving and distributing public financial reports from listed companies.

Analysts can compare a subject company to similar (peer) companies in these databases or use aggregate industry data. For non-public companies, aggregate industry data can be obtained from such sources as Annual Statement Studies by the Risk Management Association or Dun & Bradstreet. These publications typically provide industry data with companies sorted into quartiles. By definition, twenty-five percent of companies' ratios fall within the lowest quartile, 25 percent have ratios between the lower quartile and median value, and so on. Analysts can then determine a company's relative standing in the industry.

3.2 Common-Size Analysis

Common-size analysis involves expressing financial data, including entire financial statements, in relation to a single financial statement item, or base. Items used most frequently as the bases are total assets or revenue. In essence, common-size analysis creates a ratio between every financial statement item and the base item.

Common-size analysis was demonstrated in readings for the income statement, balance sheet, and cash flow statement. In this section, we present common-size analysis of financial statements in greater detail and include further discussion of their interpretation.

3.2.1 Common-Size Analysis of the Balance Sheet

A vertical common-size balance sheet, prepared by dividing each item on the balance sheet by the same period's total assets and expressing the results as percentages, highlights the composition of the balance sheet. What is the mix of assets being used? How is the company financing itself? How does one company's balance sheet composition compare with that of peer companies, and what are the reasons for any differences?

A horizontal common-size balance sheet, prepared by computing the increase or decrease in percentage terms of each balance sheet item from the prior year or prepared by dividing the quantity of each item by a base year quantity of the item, highlights changes in items. These changes can be compared to expectations. The section on trend analysis below will illustrate a horizontal common-size balance sheet.

Exhibit 3 presents a vertical common-size (partial) balance sheet for a hypothetical company in two time periods. In this example, receivables have increased from 35 percent to 57 percent of total assets and the ratio has increased by 63 percent from Period 1 to Period 2. What are possible reasons for such an increase? The increase might indicate that the company is making more of its sales on a credit basis rather than a cash basis, perhaps in response to some action taken by a competitor. Alternatively, the increase in receivables as a percentage of assets may have occurred because of a change in another current asset category, for example, a decrease in the level of inventory; the analyst would then need to investigate why that asset category has changed. Another possible reason for the increase in receivables as a percentage of assets is that the company has lowered its credit standards, relaxed its collection procedures, or adopted more aggressive revenue recognition policies. The analyst can turn to other comparisons and ratios (e.g., comparing the rate of growth in accounts receivable with the rate of growth in sales) to help determine which explanation is most likely.

Exhibit 3 Vertical Common-Size (Partial) Balance Sheet for a Hypothetical Company

	Period 1 Percent of Total Assets	Period 2 Percent of Total Assets
Cash	25	15
Receivables	35	57
Inventory	35	20
Fixed assets, net of depreciation	5	8
Total assets	100	100

3.2.2 Common-Size Analysis of the Income Statement

A vertical common-size income statement divides each income statement item by revenue, or sometimes by total assets (especially in the case of financial institutions). If there are multiple revenue sources, a decomposition of revenue in percentage terms is useful. Exhibit 4 presents a hypothetical company's vertical common-size income statement in two time periods. Revenue is separated into the company's four services, each shown as a percentage of total revenue.

In this example, revenues from Service A have become a far greater percentage of the company's total revenue (30 percent in Period 1 and 45 percent in Period 2). What are possible reasons for and implications of this change in business mix? Did the company make a strategic decision to sell more of Service A, perhaps because it is more profitable? Apparently not, because the company's earnings before interest, taxes, depreciation, and amortisation (EBITDA) declined from 53 percent of sales to 45 percent, so other possible explanations should be examined. In addition, we note from the composition of operating expenses that the main reason for this decline in profitability is that salaries and employee benefits have increased from 15 percent to 25 percent of total revenue. Are more highly compensated employees required for Service A? Were higher training costs incurred in order to increase revenues from Service A? If the analyst wants to predict future performance, the causes of these changes must be understood.

In addition, Exhibit 4 shows that the company's income tax as a percentage of sales has declined dramatically (from 15 percent to 8 percent). Furthermore, taxes as a percentage of earnings before tax (EBT) (the effective tax rate, which is usually the more relevant comparison), have decreased from 36 percent ($= 15/42$) to 24 percent

(= 8/34). Is Service A, which in Period 2 is a greater percentage of total revenue, provided in a jurisdiction with lower tax rates? If not, what is the explanation for the change in effective tax rate?

The observations based on Exhibit 4 summarize the issues that can be raised through analysis of the vertical common-size income statement.

Exhibit 4 Vertical Common-Size Income Statement for Hypothetical Company

	Period 1 Percent of Total Revenue	Period 2 Percent of Total Revenue
Revenue source: Service A	30	45
Revenue source: Service B	23	20
Revenue source: Service C	30	30
Revenue source: Service D	17	5
Total revenue	<u>100</u>	<u>100</u>
Operating expenses (excluding depreciation)		
Salaries and employee benefits	15	25
Administrative expenses	22	20
Rent expense	10	10
EBITDA	<u>53</u>	<u>45</u>
Depreciation and amortisation	4	4
EBIT	<u>49</u>	<u>41</u>
Interest paid	7	7
EBT	<u>42</u>	<u>34</u>
Income tax provision	15	8
Net income	<u>27</u>	<u>26</u>

EBIT = earnings before interest and tax.

3.2.3 Cross-Sectional Analysis

As noted previously, ratios and common-size statements derive part of their meaning through comparison to some benchmark. **Cross-sectional analysis** (sometimes called “relative analysis”) compares a specific metric for one company with the same metric for another company or group of companies, allowing comparisons even though the companies might be of significantly different sizes and/or operate in different currencies. This is illustrated in Exhibit 5.

Exhibit 5 Vertical Common-Size (Partial) Balance Sheet for Two Hypothetical Companies

Assets	Company 1 Percent of Total Assets	Company 2 Percent of Total Assets
Cash	38	12
Receivables	33	55
Inventory	27	24

Exhibit 5 (Continued)

Assets	Company 1 Percent of Total Assets	Company 2 Percent of Total Assets
Fixed assets net of depreciation	1	2
Investments	1	7
Total Assets	100	100

Exhibit 5 presents a vertical common-size (partial) balance sheet for two hypothetical companies at the same point in time. Company 1 is clearly more liquid (liquidity is a function of how quickly assets can be converted into cash) than Company 2, which has only 12 percent of assets available as cash, compared with the highly liquid Company 1, which has 38 percent of assets available as cash. Given that cash is generally a relatively low-yielding asset and thus not a particularly efficient use of excess funds, why does Company 1 hold such a large percentage of total assets in cash? Perhaps the company is preparing for an acquisition, or maintains a large cash position as insulation from a particularly volatile operating environment. Another issue highlighted by the comparison in this example is the relatively high percentage of receivables in Company 2's assets, which may indicate a greater proportion of credit sales, overall changes in asset composition, lower credit or collection standards, or aggressive accounting policies.

3.2.4 Trend Analysis

When looking at financial statements and ratios, trends in the data, whether they are improving or deteriorating, are as important as the current absolute or relative levels. Trend analysis provides important information regarding historical performance and growth and, given a sufficiently long history of accurate seasonal information, can be of great assistance as a planning and forecasting tool for management and analysts.

Exhibit 6A presents a partial balance sheet for a hypothetical company over five periods. The last two columns of the table show the changes for Period 5 compared with Period 4, expressed both in absolute currency (in this case, dollars) and in percentages. A small percentage change could hide a significant currency change and vice versa, prompting the analyst to investigate the reasons despite one of the changes being relatively small. In this example, the largest percentage change was in investments, which decreased by 33.3 percent. However, an examination of the absolute currency amount of changes shows that investments changed by only \$2 million, and the more significant change was the \$12 million increase in receivables.

Another way to present data covering a period of time is to show each item in relation to the same item in a base year (i.e., a horizontal common-size balance sheet). Exhibits 6B and 6C illustrate alternative presentations of horizontal common-size balance sheets. Exhibit 6B presents the information from the same partial balance sheet as in Exhibit 6A, but indexes each item relative to the same item in Period 1. For example, in Period 2, the company had \$29 million cash, which is 74 percent or 0.74 of the amount of cash it had in Period 1. Expressed as an index relative to Period 1, where each item in Period 1 is given a value of 1.00, the value in Period 2 would be 0.74 ($\$29/\$39 = 0.74$). In Period 3, the company had \$27 million cash, which is 69 percent of the amount of cash it had in Period 1 ($\$27/\$39 = 0.69$).

Exhibit 6C presents the percentage change in each item, relative to the previous year. For example, the change in cash from Period 1 to Period 2 was -25.6 percent ($\$29/\$39 - 1 = -0.256$), and the change in cash from Period 2 to Period 3 was

–6.9 percent ($\$27/\$29 - 1 = -0.069$). An analyst will select the horizontal common-size balance that addresses the particular period of interest. Exhibit 6B clearly highlights that in Period 5 compared to Period 1, the company has less than half the amount of cash, four times the amount of investments, and eight times the amount of property, plant, and equipment. Exhibit 6C highlights year-to-year changes: For example, cash has declined in each period. Presenting data this way highlights significant changes. Again, note that a mathematically big change is not necessarily an important change. For example, fixed assets increased 100 percent, i.e., doubled between Period 1 and 2; however, as a proportion of total assets, fixed assets increased from 1 percent of total assets to 2 percent of total assets. The company's working capital assets (receivables and inventory) are a far higher proportion of total assets and would likely warrant more attention from an analyst.

An analysis of horizontal common-size balance sheets highlights structural changes that have occurred in a business. Past trends are obviously not necessarily an accurate predictor of the future, especially when the economic or competitive environment changes. An examination of past trends is more valuable when the macroeconomic and competitive environments are relatively stable and when the analyst is reviewing a stable or mature business. However, even in less stable contexts, historical analysis can serve as a basis for developing expectations. Understanding of past trends is helpful in assessing whether these trends are likely to continue or if the trend is likely to change direction.

Exhibit 6A Partial Balance Sheet for a Hypothetical Company over Five Periods

Assets (\$ Millions)	Period					Change 4 to 5 (\$ Million)	Change 4 to 5 (Percent)
	1	2	3	4	5		
Cash	39	29	27	19	16	–3	–15.8
Investments	1	7	7	6	4	–2	–33.3
Receivables	44	41	37	67	79	12	17.9
Inventory	15	25	36	25	27	2	8.0
Fixed assets net of depreciation	1	2	6	9	8	–1	–11.1
Total assets	100	104	113	126	134	8	6.3

Exhibit 6B Horizontal Common-Size (Partial) Balance Sheet for a Hypothetical Company over Five Periods, with Each Item Expressed Relative to the Same Item in Period One

Assets	Period				
	1	2	3	4	5
Cash	1.00	0.74	0.69	0.49	0.41
Investments	1.00	7.00	7.00	6.00	4.00
Receivables	1.00	0.93	0.84	1.52	1.80
Inventory	1.00	1.67	2.40	1.67	1.80

Exhibit 6B (Continued)

Assets	Period				
	1	2	3	4	5
Fixed assets net of depreciation	1.00	2.00	6.00	9.00	8.00
Total assets	1.00	1.04	1.13	1.26	1.34

Exhibit 6C Horizontal Common-Size (Partial) Balance Sheet for a Hypothetical Company over Five Periods, with Percent Change in Each Item Relative to the Prior Period

Assets	Period			
	2 (%)	3 (%)	4 (%)	5 (%)
Cash	-25.6	-6.9	-29.6	-15.8
Investments	600.0	0.0	-14.3	-33.3
Receivables	-6.8	-9.8	81.1	17.9
Inventory	66.7	44.0	-30.6	8.0
Fixed assets net of depreciation	100.0	200.0	50.0	-11.1
Total assets	4.0	8.7	11.5	6.3

One measure of success is for a company to grow at a rate greater than the rate of the overall market in which it operates. Companies that grow slowly may find themselves unable to attract equity capital. Conversely, companies that grow too quickly may find that their administrative and management information systems cannot keep up with the rate of expansion.

3.2.5 Relationships among Financial Statements

Trend data generated by a horizontal common-size analysis can be compared across financial statements. For example, the growth rate of assets for the hypothetical company in Exhibit 6 can be compared with the company's growth in revenue over the same period of time. If revenue is growing more quickly than assets, the company may be increasing its efficiency (i.e., generating more revenue for every dollar invested in assets).

As another example, consider the following year-over-year percentage changes for a hypothetical company:

Revenue	+20%
Net income	+25%
Operating cash flow	-10%
Total assets	+30%

Net income is growing faster than revenue, which indicates increasing profitability. However, the analyst would need to determine whether the faster growth in net income resulted from continuing operations or from non-operating, non-recurring items. In addition, the 10 percent decline in operating cash flow despite increasing revenue and net income warrants further investigation because it could indicate a problem with earnings quality (perhaps aggressive reporting of revenue). Lastly, the

fact that assets have grown faster than revenue indicates the company's efficiency may be declining. The analyst should examine the composition of the increase in assets and the reasons for the changes. Example 5 illustrates a company where comparisons of trend data from different financial statements were actually indicative of aggressive accounting policies.

EXAMPLE 5

Use of Comparative Growth Information

In July 1996, Sunbeam, a US company, brought in new management to turn the company around. In the following year, 1997, using 1996 as the base, the following was observed based on reported numbers:

Revenue	+19%
Inventory	+58%
Receivables	+38%

It is generally more desirable to observe inventory and receivables growing at a slower (or similar) rate compared to revenue growth. Receivables growing faster than revenue can indicate operational issues, such as lower credit standards or aggressive accounting policies for revenue recognition. Similarly, inventory growing faster than revenue can indicate an operational problem with obsolescence or aggressive accounting policies, such as an improper overstatement of inventory to increase profits.

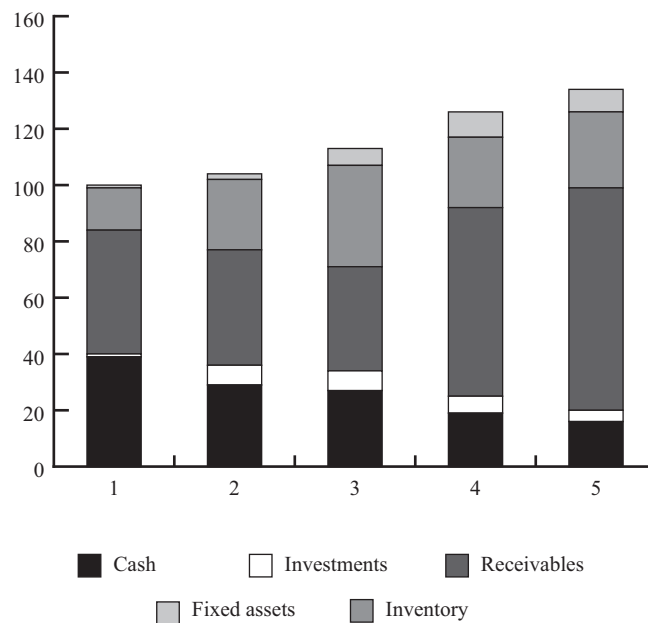
In this case, the explanation lay in aggressive accounting policies. Sunbeam was later charged by the US Securities and Exchange Commission with improperly accelerating the recognition of revenue and engaging in other practices, such as billing customers for inventory prior to shipment.

3.3 The Use of Graphs as an Analytical Tool

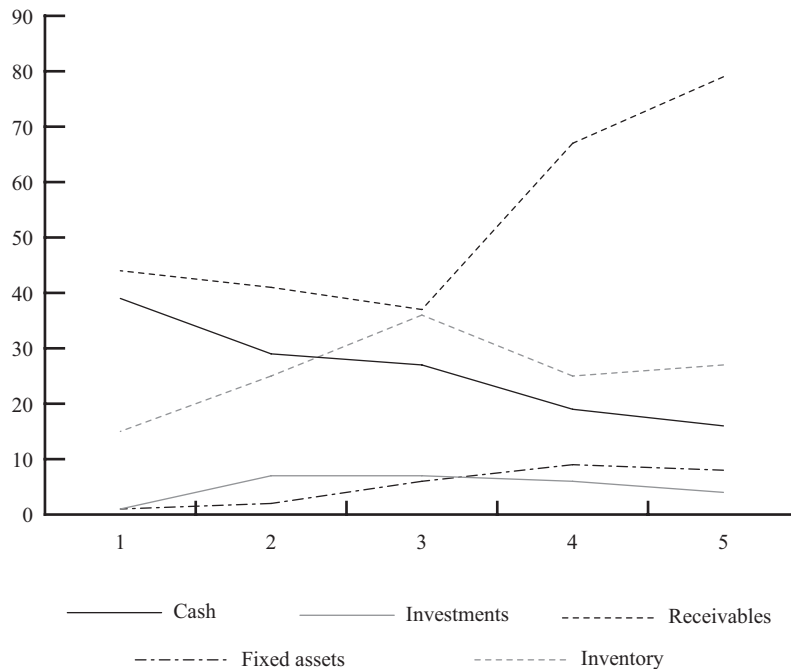
Graphs facilitate comparison of performance and financial structure over time, highlighting changes in significant aspects of business operations. In addition, graphs provide the analyst (and management) with a visual overview of risk trends in a business. Graphs may also be used effectively to communicate the analyst's conclusions regarding financial condition and risk management aspects.

Exhibit 7 presents the information from Exhibit 6A in a stacked column format. The graph makes the significant decline in cash and growth in receivables (both in absolute terms and as a percentage of assets) readily apparent. In Exhibit 7, the vertical axis shows US\$ millions and the horizontal axis denotes the period.

Choosing the appropriate graph to communicate the most significant conclusions of a financial analysis is a skill. In general, pie graphs are most useful to communicate the composition of a total value (e.g., assets over a limited amount of time, say one or two periods). Line graphs are useful when the focus is on the change in amount for a limited number of items over a relatively longer time period. When the composition and amounts, as well as their change over time, are all important, a stacked column graph can be useful.

Exhibit 7 Stacked Column Graph of Asset Composition of Hypothetical Company over Five Periods

When comparing Period 5 with Period 4, the growth in receivables appears to be within normal bounds; but when comparing Period 5 with earlier periods, the dramatic growth becomes apparent. In the same manner, a simple line graph will also illustrate the growth trends in key financial variables. Exhibit 8 presents the information from Exhibit 6A as a line graph, illustrating the growth of assets of a hypothetical company over five periods. The steady decline in cash, volatile movements of inventory, and dramatic growth of receivables is clearly illustrated. Again, the vertical axis is shown in US\$ millions and the horizontal axis denotes periods.

Exhibit 8 Line Graph of Growth of Assets of Hypothetical Company over Five Periods

3.4 Regression Analysis

When analyzing the trend in a specific line item or ratio, frequently it is possible simply to visually evaluate the changes. For more complex situations, regression analysis can help identify relationships (or correlation) between variables. For example, a regression analysis could relate a company's sales to GDP over time, providing insight into whether the company is cyclical. In addition, the statistical relationship between sales and GDP could be used as a basis for forecasting sales.

Other examples include the relationship between a company's sales and inventory over time, or the relationship between hotel occupancy and a company's hotel revenues. In addition to providing a basis for forecasting, regression analysis facilitates identification of items or ratios that are not behaving as expected, given historical statistical relationships.

4

COMMON RATIOS USED IN FINANCIAL ANALYSIS

In the previous section, we focused on ratios resulting from common-size analysis. In this section, we expand the discussion to include other commonly used financial ratios and the broad classes into which they are categorized. There is some overlap with common-size financial statement ratios. For example, a common indicator of profitability is the net profit margin, which is calculated as net income divided by sales. This ratio appears on a vertical common-size income statement. Other ratios involve information from multiple financial statements or even data from outside the financial statements.

Because of the large number of ratios, it is helpful to think about ratios in terms of broad categories based on what aspects of performance a ratio is intended to detect. Financial analysts and data vendors use a variety of categories to classify ratios. The category names and the ratios included in each category can differ. Common ratio categories include activity, liquidity, solvency, profitability, and valuation. These categories are summarized in Exhibit 9. Each category measures a different aspect of the company's business, but all are useful in evaluating a company's overall ability to generate cash flows from operating its business and the associated risks.

Exhibit 9 Categories of Financial Ratios

Category	Description
Activity	Activity ratios measure how efficiently a company performs day-to-day tasks, such as the collection of receivables and management of inventory.
Liquidity	Liquidity ratios measure the company's ability to meet its short-term obligations.
Solvency	Solvency ratios measure a company's ability to meet long-term obligations. Subsets of these ratios are also known as "leverage" and "long-term debt" ratios.
Profitability	Profitability ratios measure the company's ability to generate profits from its resources (assets).
Valuation	Valuation ratios measure the quantity of an asset or flow (e.g., earnings) associated with ownership of a specified claim (e.g., a share or ownership of the enterprise).

These categories are not mutually exclusive; some ratios are useful in measuring multiple aspects of the business. For example, an activity ratio measuring how quickly a company collects accounts receivable is also useful in assessing the company's liquidity because collection of revenues increases cash. Some profitability ratios also reflect the operating efficiency of the business. In summary, analysts appropriately use certain ratios to evaluate multiple aspects of the business. Analysts also need to be aware of variations in industry practice in the calculation of financial ratios. In the text that follows, alternative views on ratio calculations are often provided.

4.1 Interpretation and Context

Financial ratios can only be interpreted in the context of other information, including benchmarks. In general, the financial ratios of a company are compared with those of its major competitors (cross-sectional and trend analysis) and to the company's prior periods (trend analysis). The goal is to understand the underlying causes of divergence between a company's ratios and those of the industry. Even ratios that remain consistent require understanding because consistency can sometimes indicate accounting policies selected to smooth earnings. An analyst should evaluate financial ratios based on the following:

- 1 *Company goals and strategy.* Actual ratios can be compared with company objectives to determine whether objectives are being attained and whether the results are consistent with the company's strategy.

- 2 *Industry norms (cross-sectional analysis)*. A company can be compared with others in its industry by relating its financial ratios to industry norms or to a subset of the companies in an industry. When industry norms are used to make judgments, care must be taken because:
- Many ratios are industry specific, and not all ratios are important to all industries.
 - Companies may have several different lines of business. This will cause aggregate financial ratios to be distorted. It is better to examine industry-specific ratios by lines of business.
 - Differences in accounting methods used by companies can distort financial ratios.
 - Differences in corporate strategies can affect certain financial ratios.
- 3 *Economic conditions*. For cyclical companies, financial ratios tend to improve when the economy is strong and weaken during recessions. Therefore, financial ratios should be examined in light of the current phase of the business cycle.

The following sections discuss activity, liquidity, solvency, and profitability ratios in turn. Selected valuation ratios are presented later in the section on equity analysis.

4.2 Activity Ratios

Activity ratios are also known as **asset utilization ratios** or **operating efficiency ratios**. This category is intended to measure how well a company manages various activities, particularly how efficiently it manages its various assets. Activity ratios are analyzed as indicators of ongoing operational performance—how effectively assets are used by a company. These ratios reflect the efficient management of both working capital and longer term assets. As noted, efficiency has a direct impact on liquidity (the ability of a company to meet its short-term obligations), so some activity ratios are also useful in assessing liquidity.

4.2.1 Calculation of Activity Ratios

Exhibit 10 presents the most commonly used activity ratios. The exhibit shows the numerator and denominator of each ratio.

Exhibit 10 Definitions of Commonly Used Activity Ratios

Activity Ratios	Numerator	Denominator
Inventory turnover	Cost of sales or cost of goods sold	Average inventory
Days of inventory on hand (DOH)	Number of days in period	Inventory turnover
Receivables turnover	Revenue	Average receivables
Days of sales outstanding (DSO)	Number of days in period	Receivables turnover
Payables turnover	Purchases	Average trade payables
Number of days of payables	Number of days in period	Payables turnover
Working capital turnover	Revenue	Average working capital

Exhibit 10 (Continued)

Activity Ratios	Numerator	Denominator
Fixed asset turnover	Revenue	Average net fixed assets
Total asset turnover	Revenue	Average total assets

Activity ratios measure how efficiently the company utilizes assets. They generally combine information from the income statement in the numerator with balance sheet items in the denominator. Because the income statement measures what happened *during* a period whereas the balance sheet shows the condition only at the end of the period, average balance sheet data are normally used for consistency. For example, to measure inventory management efficiency, cost of sales or cost of goods sold (from the income statement) is divided by average inventory (from the balance sheet). Most databases, such as Bloomberg and Baseline, use this averaging convention when income statement and balance sheet data are combined. These databases typically average only two points: the beginning of the year and the end of the year. The examples that follow based on annual financial statements illustrate that practice. However, some analysts prefer to average more observations if they are available, especially if the business is seasonal. If a semiannual report is prepared, an average can be taken over three data points (beginning, middle, and end of year). If quarterly data are available, a five-point average can be computed (beginning of year and end of each quarterly period) or a four-point average using the end of each quarterly period. Note that if the company's year ends at a low or high point for inventory for the year, there can still be bias in using three or five data points, because the beginning and end of year occur at the same time of the year and are effectively double counted.

Because cost of goods sold measures the cost of inventory that has been sold, this ratio measures how many times per year the entire inventory was theoretically turned over, or sold. (We say that the entire inventory was "theoretically" sold because in practice companies do not generally sell out their entire inventory.) If, for example, a company's cost of goods sold for a recent year was €120,000 and its average inventory was €10,000, the inventory turnover ratio would be 12. The company theoretically turns over (i.e., sells) its entire inventory 12 times per year (i.e., once a month). (Again, we say "theoretically" because in practice the company likely carries some inventory from one month into another.) Turnover can then be converted to days of inventory on hand (DOH) by dividing inventory turnover into the number of days in the accounting period. In this example, the result is a DOH of 30.42 (365/12), meaning that, on average, the company's inventory was on hand for about 30 days, or, equivalently, the company kept on hand about 30 days' worth of inventory, on average, during the period.

Activity ratios can be computed for any annual or interim period, but care must be taken in the interpretation and comparison across periods. For example, if the same company had cost of goods sold for the first quarter (90 days) of the following year of €35,000 and average inventory of €11,000, the inventory turnover would be 3.18 times. However, this turnover rate is 3.18 times per quarter, which is not directly comparable to the 12 times per year in the preceding year. In this case, we can annualize the quarterly inventory turnover rate by multiplying the quarterly turnover by 4 (12 months/3 months; or by 4.06, using 365 days/90 days) for comparison to the annual turnover rate. So, the quarterly inventory turnover is equivalent to a 12.72 annual inventory turnover (or 12.91 if we annualize the ratio using a 90-day quarter and a 365-day year). To compute the DOH using quarterly data, we can use the quarterly turnover rate and the number of days in the quarter for the numerator—or, we can use the annualized turnover rate and 365 days; either results in DOH of around 28.3, with

slight differences due to rounding ($90/3.18 = 28.30$ and $365/12.91 = 28.27$). Another time-related computational detail is that for companies using a 52/53-week annual period and for leap years, the actual days in the year should be used rather than 365.

In some cases, an analyst may want to know how many days of inventory are on hand at the end of the year rather than the average for the year. In this case, it would be appropriate to use the year-end inventory balance in the computation rather than the average. If the company is growing rapidly or if costs are increasing rapidly, analysts should consider using cost of goods sold just for the fourth quarter in this computation because the cost of goods sold of earlier quarters may not be relevant. Example 6 further demonstrates computation of activity ratios using Hong Kong Exchange-listed Lenovo Group Limited.

EXAMPLE 6

Computation of Activity Ratios

An analyst would like to evaluate Lenovo Group's efficiency in collecting its trade accounts receivable during the fiscal year ended 31 March 2010 (FY2009). The analyst gathers the following information from Lenovo's annual and interim reports:

	US\$ in Thousands
Trade receivables as of 31 March 2009	482,086
Trade receivables as of 31 March 2010	1,021,062
Revenue for year ended 31 March 2010	16,604,815

Calculate Lenovo's receivables turnover and number of days of sales outstanding (DSO) for the fiscal year ended 31 March 2010.

Solution:

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{Receivables turnover} &= \text{Revenue/Average receivables} \\
 &= 16,604,815 / [(1,021,062 + 482,086)/2] \\
 &= 16,604,815 / 751,574 \\
 &= 22.0934 \text{ times, or } 22.1 \text{ rounded}
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{DSO} &= \text{Number of days in period/Receivables turnover} \\
 &= 365/22.1 \\
 &= 16.5 \text{ days}
 \end{aligned}$$

On average, it took Lenovo 16.5 days to collect receivables during the fiscal year ended 31 March 2010.

4.2.2 Interpretation of Activity Ratios

In the following section, we further discuss the activity ratios that were defined in Exhibit 10.

Inventory Turnover and DOH Inventory turnover lies at the heart of operations for many entities. It indicates the resources tied up in inventory (i.e., the carrying costs) and can, therefore, be used to indicate inventory management effectiveness. A higher inventory turnover ratio implies a shorter period that inventory is held, and thus a lower DOH. In general, inventory turnover and DOH should be benchmarked against industry norms.

A high inventory turnover ratio relative to industry norms might indicate highly effective inventory management. Alternatively, a high inventory turnover ratio (and commensurately low DOH) could possibly indicate the company does not carry adequate inventory, so shortages could potentially hurt revenue. To assess which explanation is more likely, the analyst can compare the company's revenue growth with that of the industry. Slower growth combined with higher inventory turnover could indicate inadequate inventory levels. Revenue growth at or above the industry's growth supports the interpretation that the higher turnover reflects greater inventory management efficiency.

A low inventory turnover ratio (and commensurately high DOH) relative to the rest of the industry could be an indicator of slow-moving inventory, perhaps due to technological obsolescence or a change in fashion. Again, comparing the company's sales growth with the industry can offer insight.

Receivables Turnover and DSO. The number of DSO represents the elapsed time between a sale and cash collection, reflecting how fast the company collects cash from customers to whom it offers credit. Although limiting the numerator to sales made on credit in the receivables turnover would be more appropriate, credit sales information is not always available to analysts; therefore, revenue as reported in the income statement is generally used as an approximation.

A relatively high receivables turnover ratio (and commensurately low DSO) might indicate highly efficient credit and collection. Alternatively, a high receivables turnover ratio could indicate that the company's credit or collection policies are too stringent, suggesting the possibility of sales being lost to competitors offering more lenient terms. A relatively low receivables turnover ratio would typically raise questions about the efficiency of the company's credit and collections procedures. As with inventory management, comparison of the company's sales growth relative to the industry can help the analyst assess whether sales are being lost due to stringent credit policies. In addition, comparing the company's estimates of uncollectible accounts receivable and actual credit losses with past experience and with peer companies can help assess whether low turnover reflects credit management issues. Companies often provide details of receivables aging (how much receivables have been outstanding by age). This can be used along with DSO to understand trends in collection, as demonstrated in Example 7.

EXAMPLE 7

Evaluation of an Activity Ratio

An analyst has computed the average DSO for Lenovo for fiscal years ended 31 March 2010 and 2009:

	2010	2009
Days of sales outstanding	16.5	15.2

Revenue increased from US\$14.901 billion for fiscal year ended 31 March 2009 (FY2008) to US\$16.605 billion for fiscal year ended 31 March 2010 (FY2009). The analyst would like to better understand the change in the company's DSO from FY2008 to FY2009 and whether the increase is indicative of any issues with the customers' credit quality. The analyst collects accounts receivable aging information from Lenovo's annual reports and computes the percentage of accounts receivable by days outstanding. This information is presented in Exhibit 11:

Exhibit 11

	FY2009		FY2008		FY2007	
	US\$000	Percent	US\$000	Percent	US\$000	Percent
Accounts receivable						
0–30 days	907,412	87.39	391,098	76.41	691,428	89.32
31–60 days	65,335	6.29	9,014	1.76	0	0.00
61–90 days	32,730	3.15	21,515	4.20	32,528	4.20
Over 90 days	32,904	3.17	90,214	17.63	50,168	6.48
Total	1,038,381	100.00	511,841	100.00	774,124	100.00
Less: Provision for impairment	–17,319	–1.67	–29,755	–5.81	–13,885	–1.79
Trade receivables, net	1,021,062	98.33	482,086	94.19	760,239	98.21
<i>Total sales</i>	<i>16,604,815</i>		<i>14,900,931</i>		<i>16,351,503</i>	

Note: Lenovo's footnotes disclose that general trade customers are provided with 30-day credit terms.

These data indicate that total accounts receivable more than doubled in FY2009 versus FY2008, while total sales increased by only 11.4 percent. This suggests that, overall, the company has been increasing customer financing to drive its sales growth. The significant increase in accounts receivable in total was the primary reason for the increase in DSO. The percentage of receivables older than 61 days has declined significantly which is generally positive. However, the large increase in 0–30 day receivables may be indicative of aggressive accounting policies or sales practices. Perhaps Lenovo offered incentives to generate a large amount of year-end sales. While the data may suggest that the quality of receivables improved in FY2009 versus FY2008, with a much lower percentage of receivables (and a much lower absolute amount) that are more than 90 days outstanding and, similarly, a lower percentage of estimated uncollectible receivables, this should be investigated further by the analyst.

Payables Turnover and the Number of Days of Payables The number of days of payables reflects the average number of days the company takes to pay its suppliers, and the payables turnover ratio measures how many times per year the company theoretically pays off all its creditors. For purposes of calculating these ratios, an implicit assumption is that the company makes all its purchases using credit. If the amount of purchases is not directly available, it can be computed as cost of goods sold plus ending inventory less beginning inventory. Alternatively, cost of goods sold is sometimes used as an approximation of purchases.

A payables turnover ratio that is high (low days payable) relative to the industry could indicate that the company is not making full use of available credit facilities; alternatively, it could result from a company taking advantage of early payment discounts. An excessively low turnover ratio (high days payable) could indicate trouble making payments on time, or alternatively, exploitation of lenient supplier terms. This is another example where it is useful to look simultaneously at other ratios. If liquidity ratios indicate that the company has sufficient cash and other short-term assets to pay obligations and yet the days payable ratio is relatively high, the analyst would favor the lenient supplier credit and collection policies as an explanation.

Working Capital Turnover **Working capital** is defined as current assets minus current liabilities. Working capital turnover indicates how efficiently the company generates revenue with its working capital. For example, a working capital turnover ratio of 4.0 indicates that the company generates €4 of revenue for every €1 of working capital. A high working capital turnover ratio indicates greater efficiency (i.e., the company is generating a high level of revenues relative to working capital). For some companies, working capital can be near zero or negative, rendering this ratio incapable of being interpreted. The following two ratios are more useful in those circumstances.

Fixed Asset Turnover This ratio measures how efficiently the company generates revenues from its investments in fixed assets. Generally, a higher fixed asset turnover ratio indicates more efficient use of fixed assets in generating revenue. A low ratio can indicate inefficiency, a capital-intensive business environment, or a new business not yet operating at full capacity—in which case the analyst will not be able to link the ratio directly to efficiency. In addition, asset turnover can be affected by factors other than a company's efficiency. The fixed asset turnover ratio would be lower for a company whose assets are newer (and, therefore, less depreciated and so reflected in the financial statements at a higher carrying value) than the ratio for a company with older assets (that are thus more depreciated and so reflected at a lower carrying value). The fixed asset ratio can be erratic because, although revenue may have a steady growth rate, increases in fixed assets may not follow a smooth pattern; so, every year-to-year change in the ratio does not necessarily indicate important changes in the company's efficiency.

Total Asset Turnover The total asset turnover ratio measures the company's overall ability to generate revenues with a given level of assets. A ratio of 1.20 would indicate that the company is generating €1.20 of revenues for every €1 of average assets. A higher ratio indicates greater efficiency. Because this ratio includes both fixed and current assets, inefficient working capital management can distort overall interpretations. It is therefore helpful to analyze working capital and fixed asset turnover ratios separately.

A low asset turnover ratio can be an indicator of inefficiency or of relative capital intensity of the business. The ratio also reflects strategic decisions by management—for example, the decision whether to use a more labor-intensive (and less capital-intensive) approach to its business or a more capital-intensive (and less labor-intensive) approach.

When interpreting activity ratios, the analysts should examine not only the individual ratios but also the collection of relevant ratios to determine the overall efficiency of a company. Example 8 demonstrates the evaluation of activity ratios, both narrow (e.g., days of inventory on hand) and broad (e.g., total asset turnover) for a hypothetical manufacturer.

EXAMPLE 8

Evaluation of Activity Ratios

ZZZ Company is a hypothetical manufacturing company. As part of an analysis of management's operating efficiency, an analyst collects the following activity ratios from a data provider:

Ratio	2009	2008	2007	2006
DOH	35.68	40.70	40.47	48.51
DSO	45.07	58.28	51.27	76.98
Total asset turnover	0.36	0.28	0.23	0.22

These ratios indicate that the company has improved on all three measures of activity over the four-year period. The company appears to be managing its inventory more efficiently, is collecting receivables faster, and is generating a higher level of revenues relative to total assets. The overall trend appears good, but thus far, the analyst has only determined *what* happened. A more important question is *why* the ratios improved, because understanding good changes as well as bad ones facilitates judgments about the company's future performance. To answer this question, the analyst examines company financial reports as well as external information about the industry and economy. In examining the annual report, the analyst notes that in the fourth quarter of 2009, the company experienced an "inventory correction" and that the company recorded an allowance for the decline in market value and obsolescence of inventory of about 15 percent of year-end inventory value (compared with about a 6 percent allowance in the prior year). This reduction in the value of inventory accounts for a large portion of the decline in DOH from 40.70 in 2008 to 35.68 in 2009. Management claims that this inventory obsolescence is a short-term issue; analysts can watch DOH in future interim periods to confirm this assertion. In any event, all else being equal, the analyst would likely expect DOH to return to a level closer to 40 days going forward.

More positive interpretations can be drawn from the total asset turnover. The analyst finds that the company's revenues increased more than 35 percent while total assets only increased by about 6 percent. Based on external information about the industry and economy, the analyst attributes the increased revenues both to overall growth in the industry and to the company's increased market share. Management was able to achieve growth in revenues with a comparatively modest increase in assets, leading to an improvement in total asset turnover. Note further that part of the reason for the increase in asset turnover is lower DOH and DSO.

4.3 Liquidity Ratios

Liquidity analysis, which focuses on cash flows, measures a company's ability to meet its short-term obligations. Liquidity measures how quickly assets are converted into cash. Liquidity ratios also measure the ability to pay off short-term obligations. In day-to-day operations, liquidity management is typically achieved through efficient use of assets. In the medium term, liquidity in the non-financial sector is also addressed by managing the structure of liabilities. (See the discussion on financial sector below.)

The level of liquidity needed differs from one industry to another. A particular company's liquidity position may vary according to the anticipated need for funds at any given time. Judging whether a company has adequate liquidity requires analysis of its historical funding requirements, current liquidity position, anticipated future funding needs, and options for reducing funding needs or attracting additional funds (including actual and potential sources of such funding).

Larger companies are usually better able to control the level and composition of their liabilities than smaller companies. Therefore, they may have more potential funding sources, including public capital and money markets. Greater discretionary access to capital markets also reduces the size of the liquidity buffer needed relative to companies without such access.

Contingent liabilities, such as letters of credit or financial guarantees, can also be relevant when assessing liquidity. The importance of contingent liabilities varies for the non-banking and banking sector. In the non-banking sector, contingent liabilities (usually disclosed in the footnotes to the company's financial statements) represent potential cash outflows, and when appropriate, should be included in an assessment of

a company's liquidity. In the banking sector, contingent liabilities represent potentially significant cash outflows that are not dependent on the bank's financial condition. Although outflows in normal market circumstances typically may be low, a general macroeconomic or market crisis can trigger a substantial increase in cash outflows related to contingent liabilities because of the increase in defaults and business bankruptcies that often accompany such events. In addition, such crises are usually characterized by diminished levels of overall liquidity, which can further exacerbate funding shortfalls. Therefore, for the banking sector, the effect of contingent liabilities on liquidity warrants particular attention.

4.3.1 Calculation of Liquidity Ratios

Common liquidity ratios are presented in Exhibit 12. These liquidity ratios reflect a company's position at a point in time and, therefore, typically use data from the ending balance sheet rather than averages. The current, quick, and cash ratios reflect three measures of a company's ability to pay current liabilities. Each uses a progressively stricter definition of liquid assets.

The **defensive interval ratio** measures how long a company can pay its daily cash expenditures using only its existing liquid assets, without additional cash flow coming in. This ratio is similar to the "burn rate" often computed for start-up internet companies in the late 1990s or for biotechnology companies. The numerator of this ratio includes the same liquid assets used in the quick ratio, and the denominator is an estimate of daily cash expenditures. To obtain daily cash expenditures, the total of cash expenditures for the period is divided by the number of days in the period. Total cash expenditures for a period can be approximated by summing all expenses on the income statement—such as cost of goods sold; selling, general, and administrative expenses; and research and development expenses—and then subtracting any non-cash expenses, such as depreciation and amortisation. (Typically, taxes are not included.)

The **cash conversion cycle**, a financial metric not in ratio form, measures the length of time required for a company to go from cash paid (used in its operations) to cash received (as a result of its operations). The cash conversion cycle is sometimes expressed as the length of time funds are tied up in working capital. During this period of time, the company needs to finance its investment in operations through other sources (i.e., through debt or equity).

Exhibit 12 Definitions of Commonly Used Liquidity Ratios

Liquidity Ratios	Numerator	Denominator
Current ratio	Current assets	Current liabilities
Quick ratio	Cash + Short-term marketable investments + Receivables	Current liabilities
Cash ratio	Cash + Short-term marketable investments	Current liabilities
Defensive interval ratio	Cash + Short-term marketable investments + Receivables	Daily cash expenditures
Additional Liquidity Measure		
Cash conversion cycle (net operating cycle)	DOH + DSO – Number of days of payables	

4.3.2 Interpretation of Liquidity Ratios

In the following, we discuss the interpretation of the five basic liquidity measures presented in Exhibit 12.

Current Ratio This ratio expresses current assets in relation to current liabilities. A higher ratio indicates a higher level of liquidity (i.e., a greater ability to meet short-term obligations). A current ratio of 1.0 would indicate that the book value of its current assets exactly equals the book value of its current liabilities.

A lower ratio indicates less liquidity, implying a greater reliance on operating cash flow and outside financing to meet short-term obligations. Liquidity affects the company's capacity to take on debt. The current ratio implicitly assumes that inventories and accounts receivable are indeed liquid (which is presumably not the case when related turnover ratios are low).

Quick Ratio The quick ratio is more conservative than the current ratio because it includes only the more liquid current assets (sometimes referred to as "quick assets") in relation to current liabilities. Like the current ratio, a higher quick ratio indicates greater liquidity.

The quick ratio reflects the fact that certain current assets—such as prepaid expenses, some taxes, and employee-related prepayments—represent costs of the current period that have been paid in advance and cannot usually be converted back into cash. This ratio also reflects the fact that inventory might not be easily and quickly converted into cash, and furthermore, that a company would probably not be able to sell all of its inventory for an amount equal to its carrying value, especially if it were required to sell the inventory quickly. In situations where inventories are illiquid (as indicated, for example, by low inventory turnover ratios), the quick ratio may be a better indicator of liquidity than is the current ratio.

Cash Ratio The cash ratio normally represents a reliable measure of an entity's liquidity in a crisis situation. Only highly marketable short-term investments and cash are included. In a general market crisis, the fair value of marketable securities could decrease significantly as a result of market factors, in which case even this ratio might not provide reliable information.

Defensive Interval Ratio This ratio measures how long the company can continue to pay its expenses from its existing liquid assets without receiving any additional cash inflow. A defensive interval ratio of 50 would indicate that the company can continue to pay its operating expenses for 50 days before running out of quick assets, assuming no additional cash inflows. A higher defensive interval ratio indicates greater liquidity. If a company's defensive interval ratio is very low relative to peer companies or to the company's own history, the analyst would want to ascertain whether there is sufficient cash inflow expected to mitigate the low defensive interval ratio.

Cash Conversion Cycle (Net Operating Cycle) This metric indicates the amount of time that elapses from the point when a company invests in working capital until the point at which the company collects cash. In the typical course of events, a merchandising company acquires inventory on credit, incurring accounts payable. The company then sells that inventory on credit, increasing accounts receivable. Afterwards, it pays out cash to settle its accounts payable, and it collects cash in settlement of its accounts receivable. The time between the outlay of cash and the collection of cash is called the "cash conversion cycle." A shorter cash conversion cycle indicates greater liquidity. A short cash conversion cycle implies that the company only needs to finance its inventory and accounts receivable for a short period of time. A longer cash conversion cycle indicates lower liquidity; it implies that the company must finance its inventory and accounts receivable for a longer period of time, possibly indicating a need for a

higher level of capital to fund current assets. Example 9 demonstrates the advantages of a short cash conversion cycle as well as how a company's business strategies are reflected in financial ratios.

EXAMPLE 9**Evaluation of Liquidity Measures**

An analyst is evaluating the liquidity of Dell and finds that Dell's 10-K provides a computation of the number of days of receivables, inventory, and accounts payable, as well as the overall cash conversion cycle, as follows:

Fiscal Year Ended	29 Jan 2010	30 Jan 2009	1 Feb 2008
DSO	38	35	36
DOH	8	7	8
Less: Number of days of payables	82	67	80
Equals: Cash conver- sion cycle	(36)	(25)	(36)

The minimal DOH indicates that Dell maintains lean inventories, which is attributable to key aspects of the company's business model. The company does not build a computer until it is ordered and maintains a just-in-time approach to inventory management. In isolation, the increase in number of days payable (from 67 days in 2009 to 82 days in 2010) might suggest an inability to pay suppliers; however, in Dell's case, the balance sheet indicates that the company has more than \$10 billion of cash and short-term investments, which would be more than enough to pay suppliers sooner if Dell chose to do so. Instead, Dell takes advantage of the favorable credit terms granted by its suppliers. The overall effect is a negative cash cycle, a somewhat unusual result. Instead of requiring additional capital to fund working capital as is the case for most companies, Dell has excess cash to invest for about 37 days (reflected on the balance sheet as short-term investments) on which it is earning, rather than paying, interest.

For comparison, the analyst finds the cash conversion cycle reported in the annual reports of two of Dell's competitors, Lenovo and Hewlett-Packard:

Fiscal Year	2009	2008	2007
Lenovo	(30)	(23)	(28)
Hewlett-Packard	14	20	24

The analyst notes that of the three, only Hewlett-Packard has to raise capital for working capital purposes. While both Dell and Lenovo have consistently negative cash conversion cycles, Lenovo has been slightly less liquid than Dell, evidenced by its slightly less negative cash conversion cycle.

EXAMPLE 10

Bounds and Context of Financial Measures

The previous example focused on the cash conversion cycle, which many companies identify as a key performance metric. The less positive the number of days in the cash conversion cycle, typically, the better it is considered to be. However, is this always true?

This example considers the following question: If a larger negative number of days in a cash conversion cycle is considered to be a desirable performance metric, does identifying a company with a large negative cash conversion cycle necessarily imply good performance?

Using the Compustat database, the company identified as the US computer technology company with the most negative number of days in its cash conversion cycle during the 2005 to 2009 period is National Datacomputer Inc., which had a negative cash conversion cycle of 275.5 days in 2008.

Exhibit 13 National Datacomputer Inc. (\$ millions)

Fiscal year	2004	2005	2006	2007	2008	2009
Sales	3.248	2.672	2.045	1.761	1.820	1.723
Cost of goods sold	1.919	1.491	0.898	1.201	1.316	1.228
Receivables, Total	0.281	0.139	0.099	0.076	0.115	0.045
Inventories, Total	0.194	0.176	0.010	0.002	0.000	0.000
Accounts payable	0.223	0.317	0.366	1.423	0.704	0.674
DSO		28.69	21.24	18.14	19.15	16.95
DOH		45.29	37.80	1.82	0.28	0.00
<i>Less: Number of days of payables*</i>		66.10	138.81	271.85	294.97	204.79
Equals: Cash conversion cycle		7.88	-79.77	-251.89	-275.54	-187.84

*Notes: Calculated using Cost of goods sold as an approximation of purchases. Ending inventories 2008 and 2009 are reported as \$0 million; therefore, inventory turnover for 2009 cannot be measured. However, given inventory and average sales per day, DOH in 2009 is 0.00.

Source: Raw data from Compustat. Ratios calculated.

The reason for the negative cash conversion cycle is that the company's accounts payable increased substantially over the period. An increase from approximately 66 days in 2005 to 295 days in 2008 to pay trade creditors is clearly a negative signal. In addition, the company's inventories disappeared, most likely because the company did not have enough cash to purchase new inventory and was unable to get additional credit from its suppliers.

Of course, an analyst would have immediately noted the negative trends in these data, as well as additional data throughout the company's financial statements. In its MD&A, the company clearly reports the risks as follows:

Because we have historically had losses and only a limited amount of cash has been generated from operations, we have funded our operating activities to date primarily from the sale of securities and from the sale of a product line in 2009. In order to continue to fund our operations, we may need to raise additional capital, through the sale of securities. We cannot be certain that any such financing will

be available on acceptable terms, or at all. Moreover, additional equity financing, if available, would likely be dilutive to the holders of our common stock, and debt financing, if available, would likely involve restrictive covenants and a security interest in all or substantially all of our assets. If we fail to obtain acceptable financing when needed, we may not have sufficient resources to fund our normal operations which would have a material adverse effect on our business.

IF WE ARE UNABLE TO GENERATE ADEQUATE WORKING CAPITAL FROM OPERATIONS OR RAISE ADDITIONAL CAPITAL THERE IS SUBSTANTIAL DOUBT ABOUT THE COMPANY'S ABILITY TO CONTINUE AS A GOING CONCERN. (emphasis added by company)

Source: National Datacomputer Inc., 2009 Form 10-K, page 7.

In summary, it is always necessary to consider ratios within bounds of reasonability and to understand the reasons underlying changes in ratios. Ratios must not only be calculated but must also be interpreted by an analyst.

4.4 Solvency Ratios

Solvency refers to a company's ability to fulfill its long-term debt obligations. Assessment of a company's ability to pay its long-term obligations (i.e., to make interest and principal payments) generally includes an in-depth analysis of the components of its financial structure. Solvency ratios provide information regarding the relative amount of debt in the company's capital structure and the adequacy of earnings and cash flow to cover interest expenses and other fixed charges (such as lease or rental payments) as they come due.

Analysts seek to understand a company's use of debt for several main reasons. One reason is that the amount of debt in a company's capital structure is important for assessing the company's risk and return characteristics, specifically its financial leverage. Leverage is a magnifying effect that results from the use of **fixed costs**—costs that stay the same within some range of activity—and can take two forms: operating leverage and financial leverage.

Operating leverage results from the use of fixed costs in conducting the company's business. Operating leverage magnifies the effect of changes in sales on operating income. Profitable companies may use operating leverage because when revenues increase, with operating leverage, their operating income increases at a faster rate. The explanation is that, although **variable costs** will rise proportionally with revenue, fixed costs will not.

When financing a company (i.e., raising capital for it), the use of debt constitutes **financial leverage** because interest payments are essentially fixed financing costs. As a result of interest payments, a given percent change in EBIT results in a larger percent change in earnings before taxes (EBT). Thus, financial leverage tends to magnify the effect of changes in EBIT on returns flowing to equity holders. Assuming that a company can earn more on funds than it pays in interest, the inclusion of some level of debt in a company's capital structure may lower a company's overall cost of capital and increase returns to equity holders. However, a higher level of debt in a company's capital structure increases the risk of default and results in higher borrowing costs for the company to compensate lenders for assuming greater credit risk. Starting with Modigliani and Miller (1958, 1963), a substantial amount of research has focused on determining a company's optimal capital structure and the subject remains an important one in corporate finance.

In analyzing financial statements, an analyst aims to understand levels and trends in a company's use of financial leverage in relation to past practices and the practices of peer companies. Analysts also need to be aware of the relationship between operating leverage (results from the use of non-current assets with fixed costs) and financial leverage (results from the use of long-term debt with fixed costs). The greater a company's operating leverage, the greater the risk of the operating income stream available to cover debt payments; operating leverage can thus limit a company's capacity to use financial leverage.

A company's relative solvency is fundamental to valuation of its debt securities and its creditworthiness. Finally, understanding a company's use of debt can provide analysts with insight into the company's future business prospects because management's decisions about financing may signal their beliefs about a company's future. For example, the issuance of long-term debt to repurchase common shares may indicate that management believes the market is underestimating the company's prospects and that the shares are undervalued.

4.4.1 Calculation of Solvency Ratios

Solvency ratios are primarily of two types. Debt ratios, the first type, focus on the balance sheet and measure the amount of debt capital relative to equity capital. Coverage ratios, the second type, focus on the income statement and measure the ability of a company to cover its debt payments. These ratios are useful in assessing a company's solvency and, therefore, in evaluating the quality of a company's bonds and other debt obligations.

Exhibit 14 describes commonly used solvency ratios. The first three of the debt ratios presented use total debt in the numerator. The definition of total debt used in these ratios varies among informed analysts and financial data vendors, with some using the total of interest-bearing short-term and long-term debt, excluding liabilities such as accrued expenses and accounts payable. (For calculations in this reading, we use this definition.) Other analysts use definitions that are more inclusive (e.g., all liabilities) or restrictive (e.g., long-term debt only, in which case the ratio is sometimes qualified as "long-term," as in "long-term debt-to-equity ratio"). If using different definitions of total debt materially changes conclusions about a company's solvency, the reasons for the discrepancies warrant further investigation.

Exhibit 14 Definitions of Commonly Used Solvency Ratios

Solvency Ratios	Numerator	Denominator
Debt Ratios		
Debt-to-assets ratio ^a	Total debt ^b	Total assets
Debt-to-capital ratio	Total debt ^b	Total debt ^b + Total shareholders' equity
Debt-to-equity ratio	Total debt ^b	Total shareholders' equity
Financial leverage ratio	Average total assets	Average total equity

Exhibit 14 (Continued)**Coverage Ratios**

Interest coverage	EBIT	Interest payments
Fixed charge coverage	EBIT + Lease payments	Interest payments + Lease payments

^a “Total debt ratio” is another name sometimes used for this ratio.

^b In this reading, we take total debt in this context to be the sum of interest-bearing short-term and long-term debt.

4.4.2 Interpretation of Solvency Ratios

In the following, we discuss the interpretation of the basic solvency ratios presented in Exhibit 14.

Debt-to-Assets Ratio This ratio measures the percentage of total assets financed with debt. For example, a **debt-to-assets ratio** of 0.40 or 40 percent indicates that 40 percent of the company’s assets are financed with debt. Generally, higher debt means higher financial risk and thus weaker solvency.

Debt-to-Capital Ratio The **debt-to-capital ratio** measures the percentage of a company’s capital (debt plus equity) represented by debt. As with the previous ratio, a higher ratio generally means higher financial risk and thus indicates weaker solvency.

Debt-to-Equity Ratio The **debt-to-equity ratio** measures the amount of debt capital relative to equity capital. Interpretation is similar to the preceding two ratios (i.e., a higher ratio indicates weaker solvency). A ratio of 1.0 would indicate equal amounts of debt and equity, which is equivalent to a debt-to-capital ratio of 50 percent. Alternative definitions of this ratio use the market value of stockholders’ equity rather than its book value (or use the market values of both stockholders’ equity and debt).

Financial Leverage Ratio This ratio (often called simply the “leverage ratio”) measures the amount of total assets supported for each one money unit of equity. For example, a value of 3 for this ratio means that each €1 of equity supports €3 of total assets. The higher the **financial leverage ratio**, the more leveraged the company is in the sense of using debt and other liabilities to finance assets. This ratio is often defined in terms of average total assets and average total equity and plays an important role in the DuPont decomposition of return on equity that will be presented in Section 4.6.2.

Interest Coverage This ratio measures the number of times a company’s EBIT could cover its interest payments. Thus, it is sometimes referred to as “times interest earned.” A higher **interest coverage** ratio indicates stronger solvency, offering greater assurance that the company can service its debt (i.e., bank debt, bonds, notes) from operating earnings.

Fixed Charge Coverage This ratio relates fixed charges, or obligations, to the cash flow generated by the company. It measures the number of times a company’s earnings (before interest, taxes, and lease payments) can cover the company’s interest and lease payments. Similar to the interest coverage ratio, a higher **fixed charge coverage** ratio implies stronger solvency, offering greater assurance that the company can service its debt (i.e., bank debt, bonds, notes, and leases) from normal earnings. The ratio is sometimes used as an indication of the quality of the preferred dividend, with a higher ratio indicating a more secure preferred dividend.

Example 11 demonstrates the use of solvency ratios in evaluating the creditworthiness of a company.

EXAMPLE 11

Evaluation of Solvency Ratios

A credit analyst is evaluating the solvency of Alcatel-Lucent as of the beginning of 2010. The following data are gathered from the company's 2009 annual report (in € millions):

	2009	2008
Total equity	4,309	5,224
Accrued pension	5,043	4,807
Long-term debt	4,179	3,998
Other long term liabilities*	1,267	1,595
Current liabilities*	9,050	11,687
Total equity + Liabilities (equals Total assets)	23,848	27,311

* For purposes of this example, assume that these items are non-interest bearing, and that long-term debt equals total debt. In practice, an analyst could refer to Alcatel's footnotes to confirm details, rather than making an assumption.

- 1 **A** Calculate the company's financial leverage ratio for 2009.
B Interpret the financial leverage ratio calculated in Part A.
- 2 **A** What are the company's debt-to-assets, debt-to-capital, and debt-to-equity ratios for the two years?
B Is there any discernable trend over the two years?

Solutions to 1:

(Amounts are millions of euro.)

- A** Average total assets was $(27,311 + 23,848)/2 = 25,580$ and average total equity was $(5,224 + 4,309)/2 = 4,767$. Thus, financial leverage was $25,580/4,767 = 5.37$.
- B** For 2009, every €1 in total equity supported €5.37 in total assets, on average.

Solutions to 2:

(Amounts are millions of euro.)

- A** Debt-to-assets for 2008 = $3,998/27,311 = 14.64\%$
Debt-to-assets for 2009 = $4,179/23,848 = 17.52\%$
Debt-to-capital for 2008 = $3,998/(3,998 + 5,224) = 43.35\%$
Debt-to-capital for 2009 = $4,179/(4,179 + 4,309) = 49.23\%$
Debt-to-equity for 2008 = $3,998/5,224 = 0.77$

Debt-to-equity for 2009 = $4,179/4,309 = 0.97$

- B** On all three metrics, the company's leverage has increased. The increase in debt as part of the company's capital structure indicates that the company's solvency has weakened. From a creditor's perspective, lower solvency (higher debt) indicates higher risk of default on obligations.

As with all ratio analysis, it is important to consider leverage ratios in a broader context. In general, companies with lower business risk and operations that generate steady cash flows are better positioned to take on more leverage without a commensurate increase in the risk of insolvency. In other words, a higher proportion of debt financing poses less risk of non-payment of interest and debt principal to a company with steady cash flows than to a company with volatile cash flows.

4.5 Profitability Ratios

The ability to generate profit on capital invested is a key determinant of a company's overall value and the value of the securities it issues. Consequently, many equity analysts would consider profitability to be a key focus of their analytical efforts.

Profitability reflects a company's competitive position in the market, and by extension, the quality of its management. The income statement reveals the sources of earnings and the components of revenue and expenses. Earnings can be distributed to shareholders or reinvested in the company. Reinvested earnings enhance solvency and provide a cushion against short-term problems.

4.5.1 Calculation of Profitability Ratios

Profitability ratios measure the return earned by the company during a period. Exhibit 15 provides the definitions of a selection of commonly used profitability ratios. Return-on-sales profitability ratios express various subtotals on the income statement (e.g., gross profit, operating profit, net profit) as a percentage of revenue. Essentially, these ratios constitute part of a common-size income statement discussed earlier. Return on investment profitability ratios measure income relative to assets, equity, or total capital employed by the company. For operating ROA, returns are measured as operating income, i.e., prior to deducting interest on debt capital. For ROA and ROE, returns are measured as net income, i.e., after deducting interest paid on debt capital. For return on common equity, returns are measured as net income minus preferred dividends (because preferred dividends are a return to preferred equity).

Exhibit 15 Definitions of Commonly Used Profitability Ratios

Profitability Ratios	Numerator	Denominator
Return on Sales^a		
Gross profit margin	Gross profit	Revenue
Operating profit margin	Operating income ^b	Revenue
Pretax margin	EBT (earnings before tax but after interest)	Revenue
Net profit margin	Net income	Revenue

(continued)

Exhibit 15 (Continued)**Return on Investment**

Operating ROA	Operating income	Average total assets
ROA	Net income	Average total assets
Return on total capital	EBIT	Short- and long-term debt and equity
ROE	Net income	Average total equity
Return on common equity	Net income – Preferred dividends	Average common equity

^a “Sales” is being used as a synonym for “revenue.”

^b Some analysts use EBIT as a shortcut representation of operating income. Note that EBIT, strictly speaking, includes non-operating items such as dividends received and gains and losses on investment securities. Of utmost importance is that the analyst compute ratios consistently whether comparing different companies or analyzing one company over time.

4.5.2 Interpretation of Profitability Ratios

In the following, we discuss the interpretation of the profitability ratios presented in Exhibit 15. For each of the profitability ratios, a higher ratio indicates greater profitability.

Gross Profit Margin **Gross profit margin** indicates the percentage of revenue available to cover operating and other expenses and to generate profit. Higher gross profit margin indicates some combination of higher product pricing and lower product costs. The ability to charge a higher price is constrained by competition, so gross profits are affected by (and usually inversely related to) competition. If a product has a competitive advantage (e.g., superior branding, better quality, or exclusive technology), the company is better able to charge more for it. On the cost side, higher gross profit margin can also indicate that a company has a competitive advantage in product costs.

Operating Profit Margin Operating profit is calculated as gross profit minus operating costs. So, an **operating profit margin** increasing faster than the gross profit margin can indicate improvements in controlling operating costs, such as administrative overheads. In contrast, a declining operating profit margin could be an indicator of deteriorating control over operating costs.

Pretax Margin Pretax income (also called “earnings before tax” or “EBT”) is calculated as operating profit minus interest, and the **pretax margin** is the ratio of pretax income to revenue. The pretax margin reflects the effects on profitability of leverage and other (non-operating) income and expenses. If a company’s pretax margin is increasing primarily as a result of increasing amounts of non-operating income, the analyst should evaluate whether this increase reflects a deliberate change in a company’s business focus and, therefore, the likelihood that the increase will continue.

Net Profit Margin Net profit, or net income, is calculated as revenue minus all expenses. Net income includes both recurring and non-recurring components. Generally, the net income used in calculating the net profit margin is adjusted for non-recurring items to offer a better view of a company’s potential future profitability.

ROA ROA measures the return earned by a company on its assets. The higher the ratio, the more income is generated by a given level of assets. Most databases compute this ratio as:

$$\frac{\text{Net income}}{\text{Average total assets}}$$

An issue with this computation is that net income is the return to equity holders, whereas assets are financed by both equity holders and creditors. Interest expense (the return to creditors) has already been subtracted in the numerator. Some analysts, therefore, prefer to add back interest expense in the numerator. In such cases, interest must be adjusted for income taxes because net income is determined after taxes. With this adjustment, the ratio would be computed as:

$$\frac{\text{Net income} + \text{Interest expense}(1 - \text{Tax rate})}{\text{Average total assets}}$$

Alternatively, some analysts elect to compute ROA on a pre-interest and pre-tax basis (operating ROA in Exhibit 15) as:

$$\frac{\text{Operating income or EBIT}}{\text{Average total assets}}$$

In this ROA calculation, returns are measured prior to deducting interest on debt capital (i.e., as operating income or EBIT). This measure reflects the return on all assets invested in the company, whether financed with liabilities, debt, or equity. Whichever form of ROA is chosen, the analyst must use it consistently in comparisons to other companies or time periods.

Return on Total Capital **Return on total capital** measures the profits a company earns on all of the capital that it employs (short-term debt, long-term debt, and equity). As with operating ROA, returns are measured prior to deducting interest on debt capital (i.e., as operating income or EBIT).

ROE ROE measures the return earned by a company on its equity capital, including minority equity, preferred equity, and common equity. As noted, return is measured as net income (i.e., interest on debt capital is not included in the return on equity capital). A variation of ROE is return on common equity, which measures the return earned by a company only on its common equity.

Both ROA and ROE are important measures of profitability and will be explored in more detail in section 4.6.2. As with other ratios, profitability ratios should be evaluated individually and as a group to gain an understanding of what is driving profitability (operating versus non-operating activities). Example 12 demonstrates the evaluation of profitability ratios and the use of the management report (sometimes called management's discussion and analysis or management commentary) that accompanies financial statements to explain the trend in ratios.

EXAMPLE 12

Evaluation of Profitability Ratios

An analyst is evaluating the profitability of Daimler AG over a five-year period. He gathers the following revenue data and calculates the following profitability ratios from information in Daimler's annual reports:

	2009	2008	2007	2006	2005
Revenues (€ millions)	78,924	98,469	101,569	99,222	95,209
Gross profit margin	16.92%	21.89%	23.62%	20.60%	19.48%
Operating profit (EBIT) margin ^a	-1.92%	2.77%	8.58%	5.03%	3.02%
Pretax margin	-2.91%	2.84%	9.04%	4.94%	2.55%
Net profit margin	-3.35%	1.73%	4.78%	3.19%	2.37%

^a EBIT (Earnings before interest and taxes) is the operating profit metric used by Daimler.

Daimler's revenue declined from 2007 to 2008 and from 2008 to 2009. Further, Daimler's 2009 revenues were the lowest of the five years. Management's discussion of the decline in revenue and EBIT in the 2009 Annual Report notes the following:

The main reason for the decline [in EBIT] was a significant drop in revenue due to markedly lower unit sales in all vehicle segments as a result of the global economic downturn. Cost savings achieved through permanent and temporary cost reductions and efficiency improvements realized through ongoing optimization programs could only partially compensate for the drop in revenue.

- 1 Compare gross profit margins and operating profit margins over the 2005 to 2009 period.
- 2 Explain the decline in operating profit margin in 2009.
- 3 Explain why the pretax margin might have decreased to a greater extent than the operating profit margin in 2009.
- 4 Compare net profit margins and pretax margins over 2007 to 2009

Solution to 1:

Gross profit margin improved from 2005 to 2007 as a result of some combination of price increases and/or cost control. However, gross profit margin declined from 2007 to 2009. Operating profit margin showed a similar trend. In 2009, the operating profit margin was negative.

Solution to 2:

The decline in operating profit from 2.77 percent in 2008 to -1.92 percent in 2009 appears to be the result of Daimler's operating leverage. Management indicated that revenue declined in 2009 and reductions in expenses were not enough to offset the revenue decline. Management tried to increase efficiency and reduce costs, including personnel expenses, but this did not sufficiently counteract the decrease in revenues. Expenses thus increased as a proportion of revenue, lowering the gross and operating profit margins. This is an example of the effects of operating leverage (fixed costs that could not be reduced) on profitability. In general, as revenue increases, to the extent that costs remain fixed, operating profit margins should increase. As revenue declines, the opposite occurs.

Solution to 3:

Pretax margin was down substantially in 2009, indicating that the company may have had some non-operating losses or high interest expense in that year. A review of the company's annual report confirms that the cause was higher net interest expense. Specifically, the company increased financing liabilities,

faced higher financing costs because of higher risk premiums on borrowing, and had lower interest income on investments. This is an example of the effects of financial leverage on profitability.

Solution to 4:

Net profit margin followed the same pattern as pretax margin, increasing from 2005 to 2007 and then decreasing from 2007 to 2009. In the absence of major variation in the applicable tax rates, this would be expected as net profit margin is based on net income while pretax margin is based on EBT, and net income is $EBT(1 - \text{Tax rate})$.

4.6 Integrated Financial Ratio Analysis

In prior sections, the text presented separately activity, liquidity, solvency, and profitability ratios. Prior to discussing valuation ratios, the following sections demonstrate the importance of examining a variety of financial ratios—not a single ratio or category of ratios in isolation—to ascertain the overall position and performance of a company. Experience shows that the information from one ratio category can be helpful in answering questions raised by another category and that the most accurate overall picture comes from integrating information from all sources. Section 4.6.1 provides some introductory examples of such analysis and Section 4.6.2 shows how return on equity can be analyzed into components related to profit margin, asset utilization (activity), and financial leverage.

4.6.1 The Overall Ratio Picture: Examples

This section presents two simple illustrations to introduce the use of a variety of ratios to address an analytical task. Example 13 shows how the analysis of a pair of activity ratios resolves an issue concerning a company's liquidity. Example 14 shows that examining the overall ratios of multiple companies can assist an analyst in drawing conclusions about their relative performances.

EXAMPLE 13

A Variety of Ratios

An analyst is evaluating the liquidity of a Canadian manufacturing company and obtains the following liquidity ratios:

Fiscal Year	10	9	8
Current ratio	2.1	1.9	1.6
Quick ratio	0.8	0.9	1.0

The ratios present a contradictory picture of the company's liquidity. Based on the increase in its current ratio from 1.6 to 2.1, the company appears to have strong and improving liquidity; however, based on the decline of the quick ratio from 1.0 to 0.8, its liquidity appears to be deteriorating. Because both ratios have exactly the same denominator, current liabilities, the difference must be the result of changes in some asset that is included in the current ratio but not in the quick ratio (e.g., inventories). The analyst collects the following activity ratios:

DOH	55	45	30
DSO	24	28	30

The company's DOH has deteriorated from 30 days to 55 days, meaning that the company is holding increasingly larger amounts of inventory relative to sales. The decrease in DSO implies that the company is collecting receivables faster. If the proceeds from these collections were held as cash, there would be no effect on either the current ratio or the quick ratio. However, if the proceeds from the collections were used to purchase inventory, there would be no effect on the current ratio and a decline in the quick ratio (i.e., the pattern shown in this example). Collectively, the ratios suggest that liquidity is declining and that the company may have an inventory problem that needs to be addressed.

EXAMPLE 14**A Comparison of Two Companies (1)**

An analyst collects the information shown in Exhibit 16 for two companies:

Exhibit 16

Anson Industries	Fiscal Year			
	5	4	3	2
Inventory turnover	76.69	89.09	147.82	187.64
DOH	4.76	4.10	2.47	1.95
Receivables turnover	10.75	9.33	11.14	7.56
DSO	33.95	39.13	32.77	48.29
Accounts payable turnover	4.62	4.36	4.84	4.22
Days payable	78.97	83.77	75.49	86.56
Cash from operations/Total liabilities	31.41%	11.15%	4.04%	8.81%
ROE	5.92%	1.66%	1.62%	-0.62%
ROA	3.70%	1.05%	1.05%	-0.39%
Net profit margin (Net income/ Revenue)	3.33%	1.11%	1.13%	-0.47%
Total asset turnover (Revenue/Average assets)	1.11	0.95	0.93	0.84
Leverage (Average assets/Average equity)	1.60	1.58	1.54	1.60

Clarence Corporation	Fiscal Year			
	5	4	3	2
Inventory turnover	9.19	9.08	7.52	14.84
DOH	39.73	40.20	48.51	24.59
Receivables turnover	8.35	7.01	6.09	5.16
DSO	43.73	52.03	59.92	70.79
Accounts payable turnover	6.47	6.61	7.66	6.52
Days payable	56.44	55.22	47.64	56.00
Cash from operations/Total liabilities	13.19%	16.39%	15.80%	11.79%
ROE	9.28%	6.82%	-3.63%	-6.75%

Exhibit 16 (Continued)

Clarence Corporation	Fiscal Year			
	5	4	3	2
ROA	4.64%	3.48%	-1.76%	-3.23%
Net profit margin (Net income/ Revenue)	4.38%	3.48%	-1.60%	-2.34%
Total asset turnover (Revenue/Average assets)	1.06	1.00	1.10	1.38
Leverage (Average assets/Average equity)	2.00	1.96	2.06	2.09

Which of the following choices best describes reasonable conclusions an analyst might make about the companies' efficiency?

- A** Over the past four years, Anson has shown greater improvement in efficiency than Clarence, as indicated by its total asset turnover ratio increasing from 0.84 to 1.11.
- B** In FY5, Anson's DOH of only 4.76 indicated that it was less efficient at inventory management than Clarence, which had DOH of 39.73.
- C** In FY5, Clarence's receivables turnover of 8.35 times indicated that it was more efficient at receivables management than Anson, which had receivables turnover of 10.75.

Solution:

A is correct. Over the past four years, Anson has shown greater improvement in efficiency than Clarence, as indicated by its total asset turnover ratio increasing from 0.84 to 1.11. Over the same period of time, Clarence's total asset turnover ratio has declined from 1.38 to 1.06. Choices B and C are incorrect because DOH and receivables turnover are misinterpreted.

4.6.2 DuPont Analysis: The Decomposition of ROE

As noted earlier, ROE measures the return a company generates on its equity capital. To understand what drives a company's ROE, a useful technique is to decompose ROE into its component parts. (Decomposition of ROE is sometimes referred to as **DuPont analysis** because it was developed originally at that company.) Decomposing ROE involves expressing the basic ratio (i.e., net income divided by average shareholders' equity) as the product of component ratios. Because each of these component ratios is an indicator of a distinct aspect of a company's performance that affects ROE, the decomposition allows us to evaluate how these different aspects of performance affected the company's profitability as measured by ROE.

Decomposing ROE is useful in determining the reasons for changes in ROE over time for a given company and for differences in ROE for different companies in a given time period. The information gained can also be used by management to determine which areas they should focus on to improve ROE. This decomposition will also show why a company's overall profitability, measured by ROE, is a function of its efficiency, operating profitability, taxes, and use of financial leverage. DuPont analysis shows the relationship between the various categories of ratios discussed in this reading and how they all influence the return to the investment of the owners.

Analysts have developed several different methods of decomposing ROE. The decomposition presented here is one of the most commonly used and the one found in popular research databases, such as Bloomberg. Return on equity is calculated as:

$$\text{ROE} = \text{Net income} / \text{Average shareholders' equity}$$

The decomposition of ROE makes use of simple algebra and illustrates the relationship between ROE and ROA. Expressing ROE as a product of only two of its components, we can write:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{ROE} &= \frac{\text{Net income}}{\text{Average shareholders' equity}} \\ &= \frac{\text{Net income}}{\text{Average total assets}} \times \frac{\text{Average total assets}}{\text{Average shareholders' equity}} \end{aligned} \quad (1a)$$

which can be interpreted as:

$$\text{ROE} = \text{ROA} \times \text{Leverage}$$

In other words, ROE is a function of a company's ROA and its use of financial leverage ("leverage" for short, in this discussion). A company can improve its ROE by improving ROA or making more effective use of leverage. Consistent with the definition given earlier, leverage is measured as average total assets divided by average shareholders' equity. If a company had no leverage (no liabilities), its leverage ratio would equal 1.0 and ROE would exactly equal ROA. As a company takes on liabilities, its leverage increases. As long as a company is able to borrow at a rate lower than the marginal rate it can earn investing the borrowed money in its business, the company is making an effective use of leverage and ROE would increase as leverage increases. If a company's borrowing cost exceeds the marginal rate it can earn on investing in the business, ROE would decline as leverage increased because the effect of borrowing would be to depress ROA.

Using the data from Example 14 for Anson Industries, an analyst can examine the trend in ROE and determine whether the increase from an ROE of -0.625 percent in FY2 to 5.925 percent in FY5 is a function of ROA or the use of leverage:

	ROE	=	ROA	×	Leverage
FY5	5.92%		3.70%		1.60
FY4	1.66%		1.05%		1.58
FY3	1.62%		1.05%		1.54
FY2	-0.62%		-0.39%		1.60

Over the four-year period, the company's leverage factor was relatively stable. The primary reason for the increase in ROE is the increase in profitability measured by ROA.

Just as ROE can be decomposed, the individual components such as ROA can be decomposed. Further decomposing ROA, we can express ROE as a product of three component ratios:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\text{Net income}}{\text{Average shareholders' equity}} &= \frac{\text{Net income}}{\text{Revenue}} \times \frac{\text{Revenue}}{\text{Average total assets}} \\ &\quad \times \frac{\text{Average total assets}}{\text{Average shareholders' equity}} \end{aligned} \quad (1b)$$

which can be interpreted as:

$$\text{ROE} = \text{Net profit margin} \times \text{Total asset turnover} \times \text{Leverage}$$

The first term on the right-hand side of this equation is the net profit margin, an indicator of profitability: how much income a company derives per one monetary unit (e.g., euro or dollar) of sales. The second term on the right is the asset turnover ratio,

an indicator of efficiency: how much revenue a company generates per one money unit of assets. Note that ROA is decomposed into these two components: net profit margin and total asset turnover. A company's ROA is a function of profitability (net profit margin) and efficiency (total asset turnover). The third term on the right-hand side of Equation 1b is a measure of financial leverage, an indicator of solvency: the total amount of a company's assets relative to its equity capital. This decomposition illustrates that a company's ROE is a function of its net profit margin, its efficiency, and its leverage. Again, using the data from Example 14 for Anson Industries, the analyst can evaluate in more detail the reasons behind the trend in ROE:

	ROE	=	Net profit margin	×	Total asset turnover	×	Leverage
FY5	5.92%		3.33%		1.11		1.60
FY4	1.66%		1.11%		0.95		1.58
FY3	1.62%		1.13%		0.93		1.54
FY2	-0.62%		-0.47%		0.84		1.60

This further decomposition confirms that increases in profitability (measured here as net profit margin) are indeed an important contributor to the increase in ROE over the four-year period. However, Anson's asset turnover has also increased steadily. The increase in ROE is, therefore, a function of improving profitability and improving efficiency. As noted above, ROE decomposition can also be used to compare the ROEs of peer companies, as demonstrated in Example 15.

EXAMPLE 15

A Comparison of Two Companies (2)

Referring to the data for Anson Industries and Clarence Corporation in Example 14, which of the following choices best describes reasonable conclusions an analyst might make about the companies' ROE?

- A** Anson's inventory turnover of 76.69 indicates it is more profitable than Clarence.
- B** The main driver of Clarence's superior ROE in FY5 is its more efficient use of assets.
- C** The main drivers of Clarence's superior ROE in FY5 are its greater use of debt financing and higher net profit margin.

Solution:

C is correct. The main driver of Clarence's superior ROE (9.28 percent compared with only 5.92 percent for Anson) in FY5 is its greater use of debt financing (leverage of 2.00 compared with Anson's leverage of 1.60) and higher net profit margin (4.38 percent compared with only 3.33 percent for Anson). A is incorrect because inventory turnover is not a direct indicator of profitability. An increase in inventory turnover may indicate more efficient use of inventory which in turn could affect profitability; however, an increase in inventory turnover would also be observed if a company was selling more goods even if it was not selling those goods at a profit. B is incorrect because Clarence has less efficient use of assets than Anson, indicated by turnover of 1.06 for Clarence compared with Anson's turnover of 1.11.

To separate the effects of taxes and interest, we can further decompose the net profit margin and write:

$$\frac{\text{Net income}}{\text{Average shareholders' equity}} = \frac{\text{Net income}}{\text{EBT}} \times \frac{\text{EBT}}{\text{EBIT}} \times \frac{\text{EBIT}}{\text{Revenue}} \times \frac{\text{Revenue}}{\text{Average total assets}} \times \frac{\text{Average total assets}}{\text{Average shareholders' equity}} \quad (1c)$$

which can be interpreted as:

$$\text{ROE} = \text{Tax burden} \times \text{Interest burden} \times \text{EBIT margin} \times \text{Total asset turnover} \times \text{Leverage}$$

This five-way decomposition is the one found in financial databases such as Bloomberg. The first term on the right-hand side of this equation measures the effect of taxes on ROE. Essentially, it reflects one minus the average tax rate, or how much of a company's pretax profits it gets to keep. This can be expressed in decimal or percentage form. So, a 30 percent tax rate would yield a factor of 0.70 or 70 percent. A higher value for the tax burden implies that the company can keep a higher percentage of its pretax profits, indicating a lower tax rate. A decrease in the tax burden ratio implies the opposite (i.e., a higher tax rate leaving the company with less of its pretax profits).

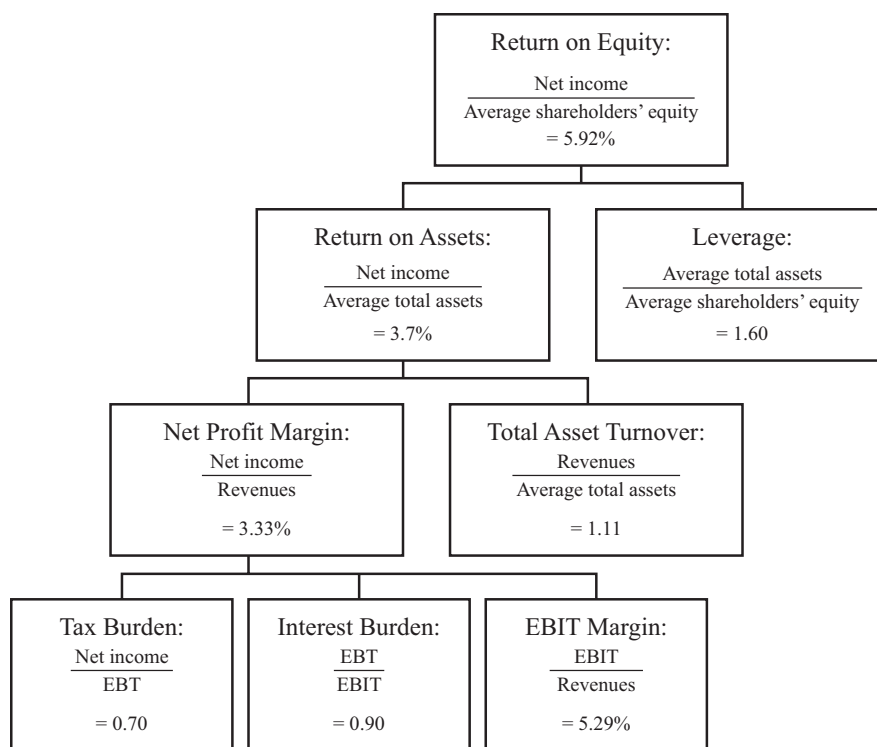
The second term on the right-hand side captures the effect of interest on ROE. Higher borrowing costs reduce ROE. Some analysts prefer to use operating income instead of EBIT for this term and the following term. Either operating income or EBIT is acceptable as long as it is applied consistently. In such a case, the second term would measure both the effect of interest expense and non-operating income on ROE.

The third term on the right-hand side captures the effect of operating margin (if operating income is used in the numerator) or EBIT margin (if EBIT is used) on ROE. In either case, this term primarily measures the effect of operating profitability on ROE.

The fourth term on the right-hand side is again the total asset turnover ratio, an indicator of the overall efficiency of the company (i.e., how much revenue it generates per unit of total assets). The fifth term on the right-hand side is the financial leverage ratio described above—the total amount of a company's assets relative to its equity capital.

This decomposition expresses a company's ROE as a function of its tax rate, interest burden, operating profitability, efficiency, and leverage. An analyst can use this framework to determine what factors are driving a company's ROE. The decomposition of ROE can also be useful in forecasting ROE based upon expected efficiency, profitability, financing activities, and tax rates. The relationship of the individual factors, such as ROA to the overall ROE, can also be expressed in the form of an ROE tree to study the contribution of each of the five factors, as shown in Exhibit 17 for Anson Industries.

Exhibit 17 shows that Anson's ROE of 5.92 percent in FY5 can be decomposed into ROA of 3.70 percent and leverage of 1.60. ROA can further be decomposed into a net profit margin of 3.33 percent and total asset turnover of 1.11. Net profit margin can be decomposed into a tax burden of 0.70 (an average tax rate of 30 percent), an interest burden of 0.90, and an EBIT margin of 5.29 percent. Overall ROE is decomposed into five components.

Exhibit 17 DuPont Analysis of Anson Industries' ROE: Fiscal Year 5

Example 16 demonstrates how the five-component decomposition can be used to determine reasons behind the trend in a company's ROE.

EXAMPLE 16**Five-Way Decomposition of ROE**

An analyst examining Royal Dutch Shell PLC wishes to understand the factors driving the trend in ROE over a four-year period. The analyst obtains and calculates the following data from Shell's annual reports:

	2009	2008	2007	2006
ROE	9.53%	20.78%	26.50%	24.72%
Tax burden	60.50%	52.10%	63.12%	58.96%
Interest burden	97.49%	97.73%	97.86%	97.49%
EBIT margin ^a	7.56%	11.04%	13.98%	13.98%
Asset turnover	0.99	1.71	1.47	1.44
Leverage	2.15	2.17	2.10	2.14

^a Shell's income statement does not present a separate subtotal for operating income. EBIT was calculated as Earnings before taxes plus interest.

What might the analyst conclude?

Solution:

The tax burden measure has varied, with no obvious trend. In the most recent year, 2009, taxes declined as a percentage of pretax profit. (Because the tax burden reflects the relation of after-tax profits to pretax profits, the increase from 52.10 percent in 2008 to 60.50 percent in 2009 indicates that taxes declined as a percentage of pretax profits.) This decline in average tax rates could be a result of lower tax rates from new legislation or revenue in a lower tax jurisdiction. The interest burden has remained fairly constant over the four-year period indicating that the company maintains a fairly constant capital structure. Operating margin (EBIT margin) declined over the period, indicating the company's operations were less profitable. This decline is generally consistent with declines in oil prices in 2009 and declines in refining industry gross margins in 2008 and 2009. The company's efficiency (asset turnover) decreased in 2009. The company's leverage remained constant, consistent with the constant interest burden. Overall, the trend in ROE (declining substantially over the recent years) resulted from decreases in operating profits and a lower asset turnover. Additional research on the causes of these changes is required in order to develop expectations about the company's future performance.

The most detailed decomposition of ROE that we have presented is a five-way decomposition. Nevertheless, an analyst could further decompose individual components of a five-way analysis. For example, EBIT margin (EBIT/Revenue) could be further decomposed into a non-operating component (EBIT/Operating income) and an operating component (Operating income/Revenue). The analyst can also examine which other factors contributed to these five components. For example, an improvement in efficiency (total asset turnover) may have resulted from better management of inventory (DOH) or better collection of receivables (DSO).

5**EQUITY ANALYSIS**

One application of financial analysis is to select securities as part of the equity portfolio management process. Analysts are interested in valuing a security to assess its merits for inclusion or retention in a portfolio. The valuation process has several steps, including:

- 1 understanding the business and the existing financial profile
- 2 forecasting company performance
- 3 selecting the appropriate valuation model
- 4 converting forecasts to a valuation
- 5 making the investment decision

Financial analysis assists in providing the core information to complete the first two steps of this valuation process: understanding the business and forecasting performance.

Fundamental equity analysis involves evaluating a company's performance and valuing its equity in order to assess its relative attractiveness as an investment. Analysts use a variety of methods to value a company's equity, including valuation ratios (e.g., the price-to-earnings or P/E ratio), discounted cash flow approaches, and residual income approaches (ROE compared with the cost of capital), among others. The following section addresses the first of these approaches—the use of valuation ratios.

5.1 Valuation Ratios

Valuation ratios have long been used in investment decision making. A well known example is the **price to earnings ratio** (P/E ratio)—probably the most widely cited indicator in discussing the value of equity securities—which relates share price to the earnings per share (EPS). Additionally, some analysts use other market multiples, such as price to book value (P/B) and price to cash flow (P/CF). The following sections explore valuation ratios and other quantities related to valuing equities.

5.1.1 Calculation of Valuation Ratios and Related Quantities

Exhibit 18 describes the calculation of some common valuation ratios and related quantities.

Exhibit 18 Definitions of Selected Valuation Ratios and Related Quantities

Valuation Ratios	Numerator	Denominator
P/E	Price per share	Earnings per share
P/CF	Price per share	Cash flow per share
P/S	Price per share	Sales per share
P/BV	Price per share	Book value per share
Per-Share Quantities	Numerator	Denominator
Basic EPS	Net income minus preferred dividends	Weighted average number of ordinary shares outstanding
Diluted EPS	Adjusted income available for ordinary shares, reflecting conversion of dilutive securities	Weighted average number of ordinary and potential ordinary shares outstanding
Cash flow per share	Cash flow from operations	Weighted average number of shares outstanding
EBITDA per share	EBITDA	Weighted average number of shares outstanding
Dividends per share	Common dividends declared	Weighted average number of ordinary shares outstanding
Dividend-Related Quantities	Numerator	Denominator
Dividend payout ratio	Common share dividends	Net income attributable to common shares
Retention rate (<i>b</i>)	Net income attributable to common shares – Common share dividends	Net income attributable to common shares
Sustainable growth rate	$b \times \text{ROE}$	

The P/E ratio expresses the relationship between the price per share and the amount of earnings attributable to a single share. In other words, the P/E ratio tells us how much an investor in common stock pays per dollar of earnings.

Because P/E ratios are calculated using net income, the ratios can be sensitive to non-recurring earnings or one-time earnings events. In addition, because net income is generally considered to be more susceptible to manipulation than are cash flows, analysts may use **price to cash flow** as an alternative measure—particularly in situations where earnings quality may be an issue. EBITDA per share, because it is calculated using income before interest, taxes, and depreciation, can be used to eliminate the effect of different levels of fixed asset investment across companies. It facilitates comparison between companies in the same sector but at different stages of infrastructure maturity. **Price to sales** is calculated in a similar manner and is sometimes used as a comparative price metric when a company does not have positive net income.

Another price-based ratio that facilitates useful comparisons of companies' stock prices is **price to book value**, or P/B, which is the ratio of price to book value per share. This ratio is often interpreted as an indicator of market judgment about the relationship between a company's required rate of return and its actual rate of return. Assuming that book values reflect the fair values of the assets, a price to book ratio of one can be interpreted as an indicator that the company's future returns are expected to be exactly equal to the returns required by the market. A ratio greater than one would indicate that the future profitability of the company is expected to exceed the required rate of return, and values of this ratio less than one indicate that the company is not expected to earn excess returns.

5.1.2 Interpretation of Earnings per Share

Exhibit 18 presented a number of per-share quantities that can be used in valuation ratios. In this section, we discuss the interpretation of one such critical quantity, earnings per share or EPS.

EPS is simply the amount of earnings attributable to each share of common stock. In isolation, EPS does not provide adequate information for comparison of one company with another. For example, assume that two companies have only common stock outstanding and no dilutive securities outstanding. In addition, assume the two companies have identical net income of \$10 million, identical book equity of \$100 million and, therefore, identical profitability (10 percent, using ending equity in this case for simplicity). Furthermore, assume that Company A has 100 million weighted average common shares outstanding, whereas Company B has 10 million weighted average common shares outstanding. So, Company A will report EPS of \$0.10 per share, and Company B will report EPS of \$1 per share. The difference in EPS does not reflect a difference in profitability—the companies have identical profits and profitability. The difference reflects only a different number of common shares outstanding. Analysts should understand in detail the types of EPS information that companies report:

Basic EPS provides information regarding the earnings attributable to each share of common stock. To calculate basic EPS, the weighted average number of shares outstanding during the period is first calculated. The weighted average number of shares consists of the number of ordinary shares outstanding at the beginning of the period, adjusted by those bought back or issued during the period, multiplied by a time-weighting factor.

Accounting standards generally require the disclosure of basic as well as **diluted EPS** (diluted EPS includes the effect of all the company's securities whose conversion or exercise would result in a reduction of basic EPS; dilutive securities include convertible debt, convertible preferred, warrants, and options). Basic EPS and diluted EPS must be shown with equal prominence on the face of the income statement for each class of ordinary share. Disclosure includes the amounts used as the numerators in calculating basic and diluted EPS, and a reconciliation of those amounts to the company's profit or loss for the period. Because both basic and diluted EPS are

presented in a company's financial statements, an analyst does not need to calculate these measures for reported financial statements. Understanding the calculations is, however, helpful for situations requiring an analyst to calculate expected future EPS.

To calculate diluted EPS, earnings are adjusted for the after-tax effects assuming conversion, and the following adjustments are made to the weighted number of shares:

- The weighted average number of shares for basic EPS, *plus* those that would be issued on conversion of all dilutive potential ordinary shares. Potential ordinary shares are treated as dilutive when their conversion would decrease net profit per share from continuing ordinary operations.
- These shares are deemed to have been converted into ordinary shares at the beginning of the period or, if later, at the date of the issue of the shares.
- Options, warrants (and their equivalents), convertible instruments, contingently issuable shares, contracts that can be settled in ordinary shares or cash, purchased options, and written put options should be considered.

5.1.3 Dividend-Related Quantities

In this section, we discuss the interpretation of the dividend-related quantities presented in Exhibit 18. These quantities play a role in some present value models for valuing equities.

Dividend Payout Ratio The **dividend payout ratio** measures the percentage of earnings that the company pays out as dividends to shareholders. The amount of dividends per share tends to be relatively fixed because any reduction in dividends has been shown to result in a disproportionately large reduction in share price. Because dividend amounts are relatively fixed, the dividend payout ratio tends to fluctuate with earnings. Therefore, conclusions about a company's dividend payout policies should be based on examination of payout over a number of periods. Optimal dividend policy, similar to optimal capital structure, has been examined in academic research and continues to be a topic of significant interest in corporate finance.

Retention Rate The retention rate, or earnings retention rate, is the complement of the payout ratio or dividend payout ratio (i.e., $1 - \text{payout ratio}$). Whereas the payout ratio measures the percentage of earnings that a company pays out as dividends, the retention rate is the percentage of earnings that a company retains. (Note that both the payout ratio and retention rate are both percentages of earnings. The difference in terminology—"ratio" versus "rate" versus "percentage"—reflects common usage rather than any substantive differences.)

Sustainable Growth Rate A company's **sustainable growth rate** is viewed as a function of its profitability (measured as ROE) and its ability to finance itself from internally generated funds (measured as the retention rate). The sustainable growth rate is ROE times the retention rate. A higher ROE and a higher retention rate result in a higher sustainable growth rate. This calculation can be used to estimate a company's growth rate, a factor commonly used in equity valuation.

5.2 Industry-Specific Ratios

As stated earlier in this reading, a universally accepted definition and classification of ratios does not exist. The purpose of ratios is to serve as indicators of important aspects of a company's performance and value. Aspects of performance that are considered important in one industry may be irrelevant in another, and industry-specific ratios reflect these differences. For example, companies in the retail industry may report same-store sales changes because, in the retail industry, it is important to distinguish

between growth that results from opening new stores and growth that results from generating more sales at existing stores. Industry-specific metrics can be especially important to the value of equity in early stage industries, where companies are not yet profitable.

In addition, regulated industries—especially in the financial sector—often are required to comply with specific regulatory ratios. For example, the banking sector's liquidity and cash reserve ratios provide an indication of banking liquidity and reflect monetary and regulatory requirements. Banking capital adequacy requirements attempt to relate banks' solvency requirements directly to their specific levels of risk exposure.

Exhibit 19 presents, for illustrative purposes only, some industry-specific and task-specific ratios.

Exhibit 19 Definitions of Some Common Industry- and Task-Specific Ratios

Ratio	Numerator	Denominator
Business Risk		
Coefficient of variation of operating income	Standard deviation of operating income	Average operating income
Coefficient of variation of net income	Standard deviation of net income	Average net income
Coefficient of variation of revenues	Standard deviation of revenue	Average revenue
Financial Sector Ratios		
Capital adequacy—banks	Various components of capital	Various measures such as risk-weighted assets, market risk exposure, or level of operational risk assumed
Monetary reserve requirement (Cash reserve ratio)	Reserves held at central bank	Specified deposit liabilities
Liquid asset requirement	Approved “readily marketable” securities	Specified deposit liabilities
Net interest margin	Net interest income	Total interest-earning assets
Retail Ratios		
Same (or comparable) store sales	Average revenue growth year over year for stores open in both periods	Not applicable
Sales per square meter (or square foot)	Revenue	Total retail space in square meters (or square feet)
Service Companies		
Revenue per employee	Revenue	Total number of employees
Net income per employee	Net income	Total number of employees

Exhibit 19 (Continued)

Hotel	Numerator	Denominator
Average daily rate	Room revenue	Number of rooms sold
Occupancy rate	Number of rooms sold	Number of rooms available

5.3 Research on Ratios in Equity Analysis

Some ratios may be particularly useful in equity analysis. The end product of equity analysis is often a valuation and investment recommendation. Theoretical valuation models are useful in selecting ratios that would be useful in this process. For example, a company's P/B is theoretically linked to ROE, growth, and the required return. ROE is also a primary determinant of residual income in a residual income valuation model. In both cases, higher ROE relative to the required return denotes a higher valuation. Similarly, profit margin is related to justified price-to-sales (P/S) ratios. Another common valuation method involves forecasts of future cash flows that are discounted back to the present. Trends in ratios can be useful in forecasting future earnings and cash flows (e.g., trends in operating profit margin and collection of customer receivables). Future growth expectations are a key component of all of these valuation models. Trends may be useful in assessing growth prospects (when used in conjunction with overall economic and industry trends). The variability in ratios and common-size data can be useful in assessing risk, an important component of the required rate of return in valuation models. A great deal of academic research has focused on the use of these fundamental ratios in evaluating equity investments.

A classic study, Ou and Penman (1989a and 1989b), found that ratios and common-size metrics generated from accounting data were useful in forecasting earnings and stock returns. Ou and Penman examined 68 such metrics and found that these could be reduced to a more parsimonious list of relevant variables, including percentage changes in a variety of measures such as current ratio, inventory, and sales; gross and pretax margins; and returns on assets and equity. These variables were found to be useful in forecasting earnings and stock returns.

Subsequent studies have also demonstrated the usefulness of ratios in evaluation of equity investments and valuation. Lev and Thiagarajan (1993) examined fundamental financial variables used by analysts to assess whether they are useful in security valuation. They found that fundamental variables add about 70 percent to the explanatory power of earnings alone in predicting excess returns (stock returns in excess of those expected). The fundamental variables they found useful included percentage changes in inventory and receivables relative to sales, gross margin, sales per employee, and the change in bad debts relative to the change in accounts receivable, among others. Abarbanell and Bushee (1997) found some of the same variables useful in predicting future accounting earnings. Abarbanell and Bushee (1998) devised an investment strategy using these same variables and found that they can generate excess returns under this strategy.

Piotroski (2000) used financial ratios to supplement a value investing strategy and found that he can generate significant excess returns. Variables used by Piotroski include ROA, cash flow ROA, change in ROA, change in leverage, change in liquidity, change in gross margin, and change in inventory turnover.

This research shows that in addition to being useful in evaluating the past performance of a company, ratios can be useful in predicting future earnings and equity returns.

6

CREDIT ANALYSIS

Credit risk is the risk of loss caused by a counterparty's or debtor's failure to make a promised payment. For example, credit risk with respect to a bond is the risk that the obligor (the issuer of the bond) is not able to pay interest and principal according to the terms of the bond indenture (contract). **Credit analysis** is the evaluation of credit risk.

Approaches to credit analysis vary and, as with all financial analysis, depend on the purpose of the analysis and the context in which it is done. Credit analysis for specific types of debt (e.g., acquisition financing and other highly leveraged financing) often involves projections of period-by-period cash flows similar to projections made by equity analysts. Whereas the equity analyst may discount projected cash flows to determine the value of the company's equity, a credit analyst would use the projected cash flows to assess the likelihood of a company complying with its financial covenants in each period and paying interest and principal as due. The analysis would also include expectations about asset sales and refinancing options open to the company.

Credit analysis may relate to the borrower's credit risk in a particular transaction or to its overall creditworthiness. In assessing overall creditworthiness, one general approach is credit scoring, a statistical analysis of the determinants of credit default.

Another general approach to credit analysis is the credit rating process that is used, for example, by credit rating agencies to assess and communicate the probability of default by an issuer on its debt obligations (e.g., commercial paper, notes, and bonds). A credit rating can be either long term or short term and is an indication of the rating agency's opinion of the creditworthiness of a debt issuer with respect to a specific debt security or other obligation. Where a company has no debt outstanding, a rating agency can also provide an issuer credit rating that expresses an opinion of the issuer's overall capacity and willingness to meet its financial obligations. The following sections review research on the use of ratios in credit analysis and the ratios commonly used in credit analysis.

6.1 The Credit Rating Process

The rating process involves both the analysis of a company's financial reports as well as a broad assessment of a company's operations. The credit evaluation process by any analyst includes many of the following procedures performed by analysts at credit rating agencies:

- Meeting with management, typically including the chief financial officer, to discuss, for example, industry outlook, overview of major business segments, financial policies and goals, distinctive accounting practices, capital spending plans, and financial contingency plans.
- Tours of major facilities, time permitting.
- Meeting of a ratings committee where the analyst's recommendations are voted on, after considering factors that include:
 - Business risk, including the evaluation of:
 - operating environment;
 - industry characteristics (e.g., cyclical and capital intensity);
 - success factors and areas of vulnerability; and
 - company's competitive position, including size and diversification.
 - Financial risk, including:
 - the evaluation of capital structure, interest coverage, and profitability using ratio analysis, and

- the examination of debt covenants.
- Evaluation of management.
- Monitoring of publicly distributed ratings—including reconsideration of ratings due to changing conditions.

In assigning credit ratings, rating agencies emphasize the importance of the relationship between a company's business risk profile and its financial risk. "The company's business risk profile determines the level of financial risk appropriate for any rating category."¹⁹

When analyzing financial ratios, rating agencies normally investigate deviations of ratios from the median ratios of the universe of companies for which such ratios have been calculated and also use the median ratings as an indicator for the ratings grade given to a specific debt issuer. This so-called universe of rated companies changes constantly, and any calculations are obviously affected by economic factors as well as by mergers and acquisitions. International ratings include the influence of country and economic risk factors. Exhibit 20 presents key financial ratios used by Standard & Poor's in evaluating industrial companies. Note that before calculating ratios, rating agencies make certain adjustments to reported financials such as adjusting debt to include off-balance sheet debt in a company's total debt.

Exhibit 20 Selected Credit Ratios Used by Standard & Poor's

Credit Ratio	Numerator^b	Denominator^c
EBIT interest coverage	EBIT	Gross interest (prior to deductions for capitalized interest or interest income)
EBITDA interest coverage	EBITDA	Gross interest (prior to deductions for capitalized interest or interest income)
FFO ^a (Funds from operations) interest coverage	FFO plus interest paid, minus operating lease adjustments	Gross interest (prior to deductions for capitalized interest or interest income)
Return on capital	EBIT	Average capital, where capital = equity, plus non-current deferred taxes, plus debt
FFO (Funds from operations) to debt	FFO	Total debt
Free operating cash flow to debt	CFO (adjusted) minus capital expenditures	Total debt
Discretionary cash flow to debt	CFO minus capital expenditures minus dividends paid	Total debt
Net cash flow to capital expenditures	FFO minus dividends	Capital expenditures

(continued)

Exhibit 20 (Continued)

Credit Ratio	Numerator ^b	Denominator ^c
Debt to EBITDA	Total debt	EBITDA
Total debt to total debt plus equity	Total debt	Total debt plus equity

^a FFO = funds from operations, defined as net income adjusted for non-cash items; CFO = cash flow from operations.

^b Emphasis is on earnings from *continuing* operations.

^c Note that both the numerator and denominator definitions are adjusted from ratio to ratio and may not correspond to the definitions used elsewhere in this reading.

Source: Based on data from *Standard & Poor's Corporate Ratings Criteria* (2008), p. 52.

6.2 Research on Ratios in Credit Analysis

A great deal of academic and practitioner research has focused on determining which ratios are useful in assessing the credit risk of a company, including the risk of bankruptcy.

One of the earliest studies examined individual ratios to assess their ability to predict failure of a company up to five years in advance. Beaver (1967) found that six ratios could correctly predict company failure one year in advance 90 percent of the time and five years in advance at least 65 percent of the time. The ratios found effective by Beaver were cash flow to total debt, ROA, total debt to total assets, working capital to total assets, the current ratio, and the no-credit interval ratio (the length of time a company could go without borrowing). Altman (1968) and Altman, Haldeman, and Narayanan (1977) found that financial ratios could be combined in an effective model for predicting bankruptcy. Altman's initial work involved creation of a Z-score that was able to correctly predict financial distress. The Z-score was computed as

$$\begin{aligned}
 Z = & 1.2 \times (\text{Current assets} - \text{Current liabilities}) / \text{Total assets} \\
 & + 1.4 \times (\text{Retained earnings} / \text{Total assets}) \\
 & + 3.3 \times (\text{EBIT} / \text{Total assets}) \\
 & + 0.6 \times (\text{Market value of stock} / \text{Book value of liabilities}) \\
 & + 1.0 \times (\text{Sales} / \text{Total assets})
 \end{aligned}$$

In his initial study, a Z-score of lower than 1.81 predicted failure and the model was able to accurately classify 95 percent of companies studied into a failure group and a non-failure group. The original model was designed for manufacturing companies. Subsequent refinements to the models allow for other company types and time periods. Generally, the variables found to be useful in prediction include profitability ratios, coverage ratios, liquidity ratios, capitalization ratios, and earnings variability (Altman 2000).

Similar research has been performed on the ability of ratios to predict bond ratings and bond yields. For example, Ederington, Yawtiz, and Roberts (1987) found that a small number of variables (total assets, interest coverage, leverage, variability of coverage, and subordination status) were effective in explaining bond yields. Similarly, Ederington (1986) found that nine variables in combination could correctly classify more than 70 percent of bond ratings. These variables included ROA, long-term debt to assets, interest coverage, cash flow to debt, variability of coverage and cash flow, total assets, and subordination status. These studies have shown that ratios are effective in evaluating credit risk, bond yields, and bond ratings.

BUSINESS AND GEOGRAPHIC SEGMENTS

7

Analysts often need to evaluate the performance underlying business segments (subsidiary companies, operating units, or simply operations in different geographic areas) to understand in detail the company as a whole. Although companies are not required to provide full financial statements for segments, they are required to provide segment information under both IFRS and US GAAP.

7.1 Segment Reporting Requirements

An operating segment is defined as a component of a company: a) that engages in activities that may generate revenue and create expenses, including a start-up segment that has yet to earn revenues, b) whose results are regularly reviewed by the company's senior management, and c) for which discrete financial information is available. A company must disclose separate information about any operating segment which meets certain quantitative criteria—namely, the segment constitutes 10 percent or more of the combined operating segments' revenue, assets, or profit. (For purposes of determining whether a segment constitutes 10 percent or more of combined profits or losses, the criteria is expressed in terms of the absolute value of the segment's profit or loss as a percentage of the greater of (i) the combined profits of all profitable segments and (ii) the absolute amount of the combined losses of all loss-making segments.) If, after applying these quantitative criteria, the combined revenue from external customers for all reportable segments combined is less than 75 percent of the total company revenue, the company must identify additional reportable segments until the 75 percent level is reached. Small segments might be combined as one if they share a substantial number of factors that define a business or geographical segment, or they might be combined with a similar significant reportable segment. Information about operating segments and businesses that are not reportable is combined in an "all other segments" category.

Companies may internally report business results in a variety of ways (e.g., product segments and geographical segments). Companies identify the segments for external reporting purposes considering the definition of an operating segment and using factors such as what information is reported to the board of directors and whether a manager is responsible for each segment. Companies must disclose the factors used to identify reportable segments and the types of products and services sold by each reportable segment.

For each reportable segment, the following should also be disclosed:

- a measure of profit or loss;
- a measure of total assets and liabilities (if these amounts are regularly reviewed by the company's chief decision-making officer);
- segment revenue, distinguishing between revenue to external customers and revenue from other segments;
- interest revenue and interest expense;
- cost of property, plant, and equipment, and intangible assets acquired;
- depreciation and amortisation expense;
- other non-cash expenses;
- income tax expense or income; and
- share of the net profit or loss of an investment accounted for under the equity method.

Companies also must provide a reconciliation between the information of reportable segments and the consolidated financial statements in terms of segment revenue, profit or loss, assets, and liabilities.

Another disclosure required is the company's reliance on any single customer. If any single customer represents 10 percent or more of the company's total revenues, the company must disclose that fact. From an analysts' perspective, information about a concentrated customer base can be useful in assessing the risks faced by the company.

7.2 Segment Ratios

Based on the segment information that companies are required to present, a variety of useful ratios can be computed, as shown in Exhibit 21.

Exhibit 21 Definitions of Segment Ratios

Segment Ratios	Numerator	Denominator
Segment margin	Segment profit (loss)	Segment revenue
Segment turnover	Segment revenue	Segment assets
Segment ROA	Segment profit (loss)	Segment assets
Segment debt ratio	Segment liabilities	Segment assets

The segment margin measures the operating profitability of the segment relative to revenues, whereas the segment ROA measures the operating profitability relative to assets. Segment turnover measures the overall efficiency of the segment: how much revenue is generated per unit of assets. The segment debt ratio examines the level of liabilities (hence solvency) of the segment. Example 17 demonstrates the evaluation of segment ratios.

EXAMPLE 17

The Evaluation of Segment Ratios

The information contained in Exhibit 22 relates to the business segments of Groupe Danone for 2008 and 2009 in millions of euro. According to the company's 2009 annual report:

Over the course of the past 10 years, the Group has refocused its activities on the health food industry. On October 31, 2007, the acquisition of Royal Numico N.V. and its subsidiaries ("Numico"), a group specialized in baby nutrition and medical nutrition, marked a new phase in the Group's development by adding these lines of business to Danone's portfolio. The Group has since operated in four markets corresponding to its four business lines: (i) Fresh Dairy Products, (ii) Waters, (iii) Baby Nutrition, and (iv) Medical Nutrition.

Evaluate the performance of the segments using the segment margin, segment ROA, and segment turnover.

Exhibit 22

(In € millions)	2009			2008		
	Revenue (3rd party)	Operating income	Assets	Revenue (3rd party)	Operating income	Assets
Fresh Dairy Products	8,555	1,240	7,843	8,697	1,187	7,145
Waters	2,578	646	2,773	2,874	323	3,426
Baby Nutrition	2,924	547	10,203	2,795	462	9,999
Medical Nutrition	925	190	4,781	854	217	4,450
Business Line Total	14,982	2,623	25,600	15,220	2,189	25,020

Segment Ratios								
	2009				2008			
	Segment Revenue as percent of total	Segment Margin	Segment ROA ^a	Segment Turnover	Segment Revenue as percent of total	Segment Margin	Segment ROA ^a	Segment Turnover
Fresh Dairy Products	57.1%	14.5%	15.8%	1.1	57.1%	13.6%	16.6%	1.2
Waters	17.2%	25.1%	23.3%	0.9	18.9%	11.2%	9.4%	0.8
Baby Nutrition	19.5%	18.7%	5.4%	0.3	18.4%	16.5%	4.6%	0.3
Medical Nutrition	6.2%	20.5%	4.0%	0.2	5.6%	25.4%	4.9%	0.2

^a As used in this table, ROA refers to operating income divided by ending assets.

Solution:

The waters segment (Evian and Volvic) was the most profitable in 2009 as measured by margin and ROA; however, in 2009 the segment did not grow as fast as the company's other segments. In 2008, the segment represented 18.9 percent of total segment revenues, but in 2009 the percentage was only 17.2 percent.

The company's largest segment by revenue, fresh dairy products had the lowest margin in 2009 but a much higher segment ROA than the baby and medical nutrition segments. Medical nutrition is the second highest segment in terms of segment margin but lowest in turnover (an indicator of efficiency, i.e., the ability to generate revenue from assets). As a result, medical nutrition had the lowest segment ROA (Segment ROA = Segment operating income/Segment assets = (Segment operating income/Segment revenue) × (Segment revenue/Segment Assets) = Segment margin × Segment turnover. Reported percentages may differ due to rounding). Part of the explanation for segment differences in ROA may be that the medical and baby nutrition businesses were acquired in 2007. In an acquisition, the acquiring company reports the acquired assets at fair value at the time of the acquisition. Most of a company's other assets are reported at historical costs, and over time, most long-term assets are depreciated. Thus, compared to assets in other segments, it is likely that the assets of the nutrition segments are reported at amounts more reflective of current prices.

8

MODEL BUILDING AND FORECASTING

Analysts often need to forecast future financial performance. For example, EPS forecasts of analysts are widely followed by Wall Street. Analysts use data about the economy, industry, and company in arriving at a company's forecast. The results of an analyst's financial analysis, including common-size and ratio analyses, are integral to this process, along with the judgment of the analysts.

Based upon forecasts of growth and expected relationships among the financial statement data, the analyst can build a model (sometimes referred to as an "earnings model") to forecast future performance. In addition to budgets, pro forma financial statements are widely used in financial forecasting within companies, especially for use by senior executives and boards of directors. Last but not least, these budgets and forecasts are also used in presentations to credit analysts and others in obtaining external financing.

For example, based on a revenue forecast, an analyst may budget expenses based on expected common-size data. Forecasts of balance sheet and cash flow statements can be derived from expected ratio data, such as DSO. Forecasts are not limited to a single point estimate but should involve a range of possibilities. This can involve several techniques:

- **Sensitivity analysis:** Also known as "what if" analysis, sensitivity analysis shows the range of possible outcomes as specific assumptions are changed; this could, in turn, influence financing needs or investment in fixed assets.
- **Scenario analysis:** This type of analysis shows the changes in key financial quantities that result from given (economic) events, such as the loss of customers, the loss of a supply source, or a catastrophic event. If the list of events is mutually exclusive and exhaustive and the events can be assigned probabilities, the analyst can evaluate not only the range of outcomes but also standard statistical measures such as the mean and median value for various quantities of interest.
- **Simulation:** This is computer-generated sensitivity or scenario analysis based on probability models for the factors that drive outcomes. Each event or possible outcome is assigned a probability. Multiple scenarios are then run using the probability factors assigned to the possible values of a variable.

SUMMARY

Financial analysis techniques, including common-size and ratio analysis, are useful in summarizing financial reporting data and evaluating the performance and financial position of a company. The results of financial analysis techniques provide important inputs into security valuation. Key facets of financial analysis include the following:

- Common-size financial statements and financial ratios remove the effect of size, allowing comparisons of a company with peer companies (cross-sectional analysis) and comparison of a company's results over time (trend or time-series analysis).

- Activity ratios measure the efficiency of a company's operations, such as collection of receivables or management of inventory. Major activity ratios include inventory turnover, days of inventory on hand, receivables turnover, days of sales outstanding, payables turnover, number of days of payables, working capital turnover, fixed asset turnover, and total asset turnover.
- Liquidity ratios measure the ability of a company to meet short-term obligations. Major liquidity ratios include the current ratio, quick ratio, cash ratio, and defensive interval ratio.
- Solvency ratios measure the ability of a company to meet long-term obligations. Major solvency ratios include debt ratios (including the debt-to-assets ratio, debt-to-capital ratio, debt-to-equity ratio, and financial leverage ratio) and coverage ratios (including interest coverage and fixed charge coverage).
- Profitability ratios measure the ability of a company to generate profits from revenue and assets. Major profitability ratios include return on sales ratios (including gross profit margin, operating profit margin, pretax margin, and net profit margin) and return on investment ratios (including operating ROA, ROA, return on total capital, ROE, and return on common equity).
- Ratios can also be combined and evaluated as a group to better understand how they fit together and how efficiency and leverage are tied to profitability.
- ROE can be analyzed as the product of the net profit margin, asset turnover, and financial leverage. This decomposition is sometimes referred to as DuPont analysis.
- Valuation ratios express the relation between the market value of a company or its equity (for example, price per share) and some fundamental financial metric (for example, earnings per share).
- Ratio analysis is useful in the selection and valuation of debt and equity securities and is a part of the credit rating process.
- Ratios can also be computed for business segments to evaluate how units within a business are performing.
- The results of financial analysis provide valuable inputs into forecasts of future earnings and cash flow.

REFERENCES

- Abarbanell, J.S., and B. J. Bushee. 1997. "Fundamental Analysis, Future Earnings, and Stock Prices." *Journal of Accounting Research*, vol. 35, no. 1:1–24.
- Abarbanell, J.S., and B.J. Bushee. 1998. "Abnormal Returns to a Fundamental Analysis Strategy." *Accounting Review*, vol. 73, no. 1:19–46.
- Altman, E. 1968. "Financial Ratios, Discriminant Analysis and the Prediction of Corporate Bankruptcy." *Journal of Finance*, vol. 23, no. 4:589–609.
- Altman, E.I. 2013. "Predicting Financial Distress of Companies: Revisiting the Z-Score and Zeta Models," in Prokopczuk, Marcel; Brooks, Chris; Bell, Adrian R., *Handbook of Research Methods and Applications in Empirical Finance*: 428–456.
- Altman, E., R. Haldeman, and P. Narayanan. 1977. "Zeta Analysis: A New Model to Identify Bankruptcy Risk of Corporations." *Journal of Banking & Finance*, vol. 1, no. 1.
- Beaver, W. 1967. "Financial Ratios as Predictors of Failures." *Empirical Research in Accounting*, selected studies supplement to *Journal of Accounting Research*, 4 (1).
- Benninga, Simon Z., and Oded H. Sarig. 1997. *Corporate Finance: A Valuation Approach*. New York: McGraw-Hill Publishing.
- Ederington, L.H. 1986. "Why Split Ratings Occur." *Financial Management*, vol. 15, no. 1:37–47.
- Ederington, L.H., J.B. Yawitz, and B.E. Robert. 1987. "The Information Content of Bond Ratings." *Journal of Financial Research*, vol. 10, no. 3:211–226.
- Lev, B., and S.R. Thiagarajan. 1993. "Fundamental Information Analysis." *Journal of Accounting Research*, vol. 31, no. 2:190–215.
- Modigliani, F., and M. Miller. 1958. "The Cost of Capital, Corporation Finance and the Theory of Investment." *American Economic Review*, vol. 48:261–298.

- Modigliani, F., and M. Miller. 1963. "Corporate Income Taxes and the Cost of Capital: A Correction." *American Economic Review*, vol. 53:433–444.
- Ou, J.A., and S.H. Penman. 1989a. "Financial Statement Analysis and the Prediction of Stock Returns." *Journal of Accounting and Economics*, vol. 11, no. 4:295–329.
- Ou, J.A., and S.H. Penman. 1989b. "Accounting Measurement, Price-Earnings Ratio, and the Information Content of Security Prices." *Journal of Accounting Research*, vol. 27, no. Supplement:111–144.
- Piotroski, J.D. 2000. "Value Investing: The Use of Historical Financial Statement Information to Separate Winners from Losers." *Journal of Accounting Research*, vol. 38, no. Supplement:1–41.
- Robinson, T., and P. Munter. 2004. "Financial Reporting Quality: Red Flags and Accounting Warning Signs." *Commercial Lending Review*, vol. 19, no. 1:2–15.
- van Greuning, H., and S. Brajovic Bratanovic. 2003. *Analyzing and Managing Banking Risk: A Framework for Assessing Corporate Governance and Financial Risk*. Washington, DC: World Bank.

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

- Comparison of a company's financial results to other peer companies for the same time period is called:
 - technical analysis.
 - time-series analysis.
 - cross-sectional analysis.
- In order to assess a company's ability to fulfill its long-term obligations, an analyst would *most likely* examine:
 - activity ratios.
 - liquidity ratios.
 - solvency ratios.
- Which ratio would a company *most likely* use to measure its ability to meet short-term obligations?
 - Current ratio.
 - Payables turnover.
 - Gross profit margin.
- Which of the following ratios would be *most* useful in determining a company's ability to cover its lease and interest payments?
 - ROA.
 - Total asset turnover.
 - Fixed charge coverage.
- An analyst is interested in assessing both the efficiency and liquidity of Spherion PLC. The analyst has collected the following data for Spherion:

	FY3	FY2	FY1
Days of inventory on hand	32	34	40
Days sales outstanding	28	25	23
Number of days of payables	40	35	35

Based on this data, what is the analyst *least likely* to conclude?

- Inventory management has contributed to improved liquidity.
 - Management of payables has contributed to improved liquidity.
 - Management of receivables has contributed to improved liquidity.
- An analyst is evaluating the solvency and liquidity of Apex Manufacturing and has collected the following data (in millions of euro):

	FY5 (€)	FY4 (€)	FY3 (€)
Total debt	2,000	1,900	1,750
Total equity	4,000	4,500	5,000

Which of the following would be the analyst's *most likely* conclusion?

- The company is becoming increasingly less solvent, as evidenced by the increase in its debt-to-equity ratio from 0.35 to 0.50 from FY3 to FY5.

- B** The company is becoming less liquid, as evidenced by the increase in its debt-to-equity ratio from 0.35 to 0.50 from FY3 to FY5.
- C** The company is becoming increasingly more liquid, as evidenced by the increase in its debt-to-equity ratio from 0.35 to 0.50 from FY3 to FY5.
- 7** With regard to the data in Problem 6, what would be the *most* reasonable explanation of the financial data?
- A** The decline in the company's equity results from a decline in the market value of this company's common shares.
- B** The €250 increase in the company's debt from FY3 to FY5 indicates that lenders are viewing the company as increasingly creditworthy.
- C** The decline in the company's equity indicates that the company may be incurring losses, paying dividends greater than income, and/or repurchasing shares.
- 8** An analyst observes a decrease in a company's inventory turnover. Which of the following would *most likely* explain this trend?
- A** The company installed a new inventory management system, allowing more efficient inventory management.
- B** Due to problems with obsolescent inventory last year, the company wrote off a large amount of its inventory at the beginning of the period.
- C** The company installed a new inventory management system but experienced some operational difficulties resulting in duplicate orders being placed with suppliers.
- 9** Which of the following would *best* explain an increase in receivables turnover?
- A** The company adopted new credit policies last year and began offering credit to customers with weak credit histories.
- B** Due to problems with an error in its old credit scoring system, the company had accumulated a substantial amount of uncollectible accounts and wrote off a large amount of its receivables.
- C** To match the terms offered by its closest competitor, the company adopted new payment terms now requiring net payment within 30 days rather than 15 days, which had been its previous requirement.
- 10** Brown Corporation had average days of sales outstanding of 19 days in the most recent fiscal year. Brown wants to improve its credit policies and collection practices and decrease its collection period in the next fiscal year to match the industry average of 15 days. Credit sales in the most recent fiscal year were \$300 million, and Brown expects credit sales to increase to \$390 million in the next fiscal year. To achieve Brown's goal of decreasing the collection period, the change in the average accounts receivable balance that must occur is *closest* to:
- A** +\$0.41 million.
- B** -\$0.41 million.
- C** -\$1.22 million.
- 11** An analyst observes the following data for two companies:

	Company A (\$)	Company B (\$)
Revenue	4,500	6,000
Net income	50	1,000
Current assets	40,000	60,000
Total assets	100,000	700,000

	Company A (\$)	Company B (\$)
Current liabilities	10,000	50,000
Total debt	60,000	150,000
Shareholders' equity	30,000	500,000

Which of the following choices *best* describes reasonable conclusions that the analyst might make about the two companies' ability to pay their current and long-term obligations?

- A** Company A's current ratio of 4.0 indicates it is more liquid than Company B, whose current ratio is only 1.2, but Company B is more solvent, as indicated by its lower debt-to-equity ratio.
- B** Company A's current ratio of 0.25 indicates it is less liquid than Company B, whose current ratio is 0.83, and Company A is also less solvent, as indicated by a debt-to-equity ratio of 200 percent compared with Company B's debt-to-equity ratio of only 30 percent.
- C** Company A's current ratio of 4.0 indicates it is more liquid than Company B, whose current ratio is only 1.2, and Company A is also more solvent, as indicated by a debt-to-equity ratio of 200 percent compared with Company B's debt-to-equity ratio of only 30 percent.

The following information relates to Questions 12–15

The data in Exhibit 1 appear in the five-year summary of a major international company. A business combination with another major manufacturer took place in FY13.

Exhibit 1

	FY10	FY11	FY12	FY13	FY14
Financial statements	GBP m	GBP m	GBP m	GBP m	GBP m
Income statements					
Revenue	4,390	3,624	3,717	8,167	11,366
Profit before interest and taxation (EBIT)	844	700	704	933	1,579
Net interest payable	-80	-54	-98	-163	-188
Taxation	-186	-195	-208	-349	-579
Minorities	-94	-99	-105	-125	-167
Profit for the year	484	352	293	296	645
Balance sheets					
Fixed assets	3,510	3,667	4,758	10,431	11,483
Current asset investments, cash at bank and in hand	316	218	290	561	682
Other current assets	558	514	643	1,258	1,634
Total assets	4,384	4,399	5,691	12,250	13,799
Interest bearing debt (long term)	-602	-1,053	-1,535	-3,523	-3,707

(continued)

Exhibit 1 (Continued)

	FY10	FY11	FY12	FY13	FY14
Other creditors and provisions (current)	-1,223	-1,054	-1,102	-2,377	-3,108
Total liabilities	-1,825	-2,107	-2,637	-5,900	-6,815
Net assets	2,559	2,292	3,054	6,350	6,984
Shareholders' funds	2,161	2,006	2,309	5,572	6,165
Equity minority interests	398	286	745	778	819
Capital employed	2,559	2,292	3,054	6,350	6,984
Cash flow					
Working capital movements	-53	5	71	85	107
Net cash inflow from operating activities	864	859	975	1,568	2,292

- 12 The company's total assets at year-end FY9 were GBP 3,500 million. Which of the following choices *best* describes reasonable conclusions an analyst might make about the company's efficiency?
- A Comparing FY14 with FY10, the company's efficiency improved, as indicated by a total asset turnover ratio of 0.86 compared with 0.64.
 - B Comparing FY14 with FY10, the company's efficiency deteriorated, as indicated by its current ratio.
 - C Comparing FY14 with FY10, the company's efficiency deteriorated due to asset growth faster than turnover revenue growth.
- 13 Which of the following choices *best* describes reasonable conclusions an analyst might make about the company's solvency?
- A Comparing FY14 with FY10, the company's solvency improved, as indicated by an increase in its debt-to-assets ratio from 0.14 to 0.27.
 - B Comparing FY14 with FY10, the company's solvency deteriorated, as indicated by a decrease in interest coverage from 10.6 to 8.4.
 - C Comparing FY14 with FY10, the company's solvency improved, as indicated by the growth in its profits to GBP 645 million.
- 14 Which of the following choices *best* describes reasonable conclusions an analyst might make about the company's liquidity?
- A Comparing FY14 with FY10, the company's liquidity improved, as indicated by an increase in its debt-to-assets ratio from 0.14 to 0.27.
 - B Comparing FY14 with FY10, the company's liquidity deteriorated, as indicated by a decrease in interest coverage from 10.6 to 8.4.
 - C Comparing FY14 with FY10, the company's liquidity improved, as indicated by an increase in its current ratio from 0.71 to 0.75.
- 15 Which of the following choices *best* describes reasonable conclusions an analyst might make about the company's profitability?
- A Comparing FY14 with FY10, the company's profitability improved, as indicated by an increase in its debt-to-assets ratio from 0.14 to 0.27.

- B** Comparing FY14 with FY10, the company's profitability deteriorated, as indicated by a decrease in its net profit margin from 11.0 percent to 5.7 percent.
- C** Comparing FY14 with FY10, the company's profitability improved, as indicated by the growth in its shareholders' equity to GBP 6,165 million.

16 Assuming no changes in other variables, which of the following would decrease ROA?

- A** A decrease in the effective tax rate.
- B** A decrease in interest expense.
- C** An increase in average assets.

17 An analyst compiles the following data for a company:

	FY13	FY14	FY15
ROE	19.8%	20.0%	22.0%
Return on total assets	8.1%	8.0%	7.9%
Total asset turnover	2.0	2.0	2.1

Based only on the information above, the *most* appropriate conclusion is that, over the period FY13 to FY15, the company's:

- A** net profit margin and financial leverage have decreased.
- B** net profit margin and financial leverage have increased.
- C** net profit margin has decreased but its financial leverage has increased.

18 A decomposition of ROE for Integra SA is as follows:

	FY12	FY11
ROE	18.90%	18.90%
Tax burden	0.70	0.75
Interest burden	0.90	0.90
EBIT margin	10.00%	10.00%
Asset turnover	1.50	1.40
Leverage	2.00	2.00

Which of the following choices *best* describes reasonable conclusions an analyst might make based on this ROE decomposition?

- A** Profitability and the liquidity position both improved in FY12.
- B** The higher average tax rate in FY12 offset the improvement in profitability, leaving ROE unchanged.
- C** The higher average tax rate in FY12 offset the improvement in efficiency, leaving ROE unchanged.

19 A decomposition of ROE for Company A and Company B is as follows:

	Company A		Company B	
	FY15	FY14	FY15	FY14
ROE	26.46%	18.90%	26.33%	18.90%
Tax burden	0.7	0.75	0.75	0.75
Interest burden	0.9	0.9	0.9	0.9

(continued)

	Company A		Company B	
	FY15	FY14	FY15	FY14
EBIT margin	7.00%	10.00%	13.00%	10.00%
Asset turnover	1.5	1.4	1.5	1.4
Leverage	4	2	2	2

An analyst is *most likely* to conclude that:

- A Company A's ROE is higher than Company B's in FY15, and one explanation consistent with the data is that Company A may have purchased new, more efficient equipment.
 - B Company A's ROE is higher than Company B's in FY15, and one explanation consistent with the data is that Company A has made a strategic shift to a product mix with higher profit margins.
 - C The difference between the two companies' ROE in FY15 is very small and Company A's ROE remains similar to Company B's ROE mainly due to Company A increasing its financial leverage.
- 20 What does the P/E ratio measure?
- A The "multiple" that the stock market places on a company's EPS.
 - B The relationship between dividends and market prices.
 - C The earnings for one common share of stock.
- 21 A creditor *most likely* would consider a decrease in which of the following ratios to be positive news?
- A Interest coverage (times interest earned).
 - B Debt-to-total assets.
 - C Return on assets.
- 22 When developing forecasts, analysts should *most likely*:
- A develop possibilities relying exclusively on the results of financial analysis.
 - B use the results of financial analysis, analysis of other information, and judgment.
 - C aim to develop extremely precise forecasts using the results of financial analysis.

SOLUTIONS

- 1 C is correct. Cross-sectional analysis involves the comparison of companies with each other for the same time period. Technical analysis uses price and volume data as the basis for investment decisions. Time-series or trend analysis is the comparison of financial data across different time periods.
- 2 C is correct. Solvency ratios are used to evaluate the ability of a company to meet its long-term obligations. An analyst is more likely to use activity ratios to evaluate how efficiently a company uses its assets. An analyst is more likely to use liquidity ratios to evaluate the ability of a company to meet its short-term obligations.
- 3 A is correct. The current ratio is a liquidity ratio. It compares the net amount of current assets expected to be converted into cash within the year with liabilities falling due in the same period. A current ratio of 1.0 would indicate that the company would have just enough current assets to pay current liabilities.
- 4 C is correct. The fixed charge coverage ratio is a coverage ratio that relates known fixed charges or obligations to a measure of operating profit or cash flow generated by the company. Coverage ratios, a category of solvency ratios, measure the ability of a company to cover its payments related to debt and leases.
- 5 C is correct. The analyst is *unlikely* to reach the conclusion given in Statement C because days of sales outstanding increased from 23 days in FY1 to 25 days in FY2 to 28 days in FY3, indicating that the time required to collect receivables has increased over the period. This is a negative factor for Spherion's liquidity. By contrast, days of inventory on hand dropped over the period FY1 to FY3, a positive for liquidity. The company's increase in days payable, from 35 days to 40 days, shortened its cash conversion cycle, thus also contributing to improved liquidity.
- 6 A is correct. The company is becoming increasingly less solvent, as evidenced by its debt-to-equity ratio increasing from 0.35 to 0.50 from FY3 to FY5. The amount of a company's debt and equity do not provide direct information about the company's liquidity position.

Debt to equity:

$$\text{FY5: } 2,000/4,000 = 0.5000$$

$$\text{FY4: } 1,900/4,500 = 0.4222$$

$$\text{FY3: } 1,750/5,000 = 0.3500$$

- 7 C is correct. The decline in the company's equity indicates that the company may be incurring losses, paying dividends greater than income, or repurchasing shares. Recall that Beginning equity + New shares issuance – Shares repurchased + Comprehensive income – Dividends = Ending equity. The book value of a company's equity is not affected by changes in the market value of its common stock. An increased amount of lending does not necessarily indicate that lenders view a company as increasingly creditworthy. Creditworthiness is not evaluated based on how much a company has increased its debt but rather on its willingness and ability to pay its obligations. (Its financial strength is indicated by its solvency, liquidity, profitability, efficiency, and other aspects of credit analysis.)
- 8 C is correct. The company's problems with its inventory management system causing duplicate orders would likely result in a higher amount of inventory and would, therefore, result in a decrease in inventory turnover. A more efficient inventory management system and a write off of inventory at the beginning of

the period would both likely decrease the average inventory for the period (the denominator of the inventory turnover ratio), thus increasing the ratio rather than decreasing it.

- 9 B is correct. A write off of receivables would decrease the average amount of accounts receivable (the denominator of the receivables turnover ratio), thus increasing this ratio. Customers with weaker credit are more likely to make payments more slowly or to pose collection difficulties, which would likely increase the average amount of accounts receivable and thus decrease receivables turnover. Longer payment terms would likely increase the average amount of accounts receivable and thus decrease receivables turnover.
- 10 A is correct. The average accounts receivable balances (actual and desired) must be calculated to determine the desired change. The average accounts receivable balance can be calculated as an average day's credit sales times the DSO. For the most recent fiscal year, the average accounts receivable balance is \$15.62 million [= $(\$300,000,000/365) \times 19$]. The desired average accounts receivable balance for the next fiscal year is \$16.03 million [= $(\$390,000,000/365) \times 15$]. This is an increase of \$0.41 million [= $16.03 \text{ million} - 15.62 \text{ million}$]. An alternative approach is to calculate the turnover and divide sales by turnover to determine the average accounts receivable balance. Turnover equals 365 divided by DSO. Turnover is 19.21 [= $365/19$] for the most recent fiscal year and is targeted to be 24.33 [= $365/15$] for the next fiscal year. The average accounts receivable balances are \$15.62 million [= $\$300,000,000/19.21$], and \$16.03 million [= $\$390,000,000/24.33$]. The change is an increase in receivables of \$0.41 million.
- 11 A is correct. Company A's current ratio of 4.0 [= $\$40,000/\$10,000$] indicates it is more liquid than Company B, whose current ratio is only 1.2 [= $\$60,000/\$50,000$]. Company B is more solvent, as indicated by its lower debt-to-equity ratio of 30 percent [= $\$150,000/\$500,000$] compared with Company A's debt-to-equity ratio of 200 percent [= $\$60,000/\$30,000$].
- 12 C is correct. The company's efficiency deteriorated, as indicated by the decline in its total asset turnover ratio from 1.11 [= $4,390/[(4,384 + 3,500)/2]$] for FY10 to 0.87 [= $11,366/[(12,250 + 13,799)/2]$] for FY14. The decline in the total asset turnover ratio resulted from an increase in average total assets from GBP3,942 [= $(4,384 + 3,500)/2$] for FY10 to GBP13,024.5 for FY14, an increase of 230 percent, compared with an increase in revenue from GBP4,390 in FY10 to GBP11,366 in FY14, an increase of only 159 percent. The current ratio is not an indicator of efficiency.
- 13 B is correct. Comparing FY14 with FY10, the company's solvency deteriorated, as indicated by a decrease in interest coverage from 10.6 [= $844/80$] in FY10 to 8.4 [= $1,579/188$] in FY14. The debt-to-asset ratio increased from 0.14 [= $602/4,384$] in FY10 to 0.27 [= $3,707/13,799$] in FY14. This is also indicative of deteriorating solvency. In isolation, the amount of profits does not provide enough information to assess solvency.
- 14 C is correct. Comparing FY14 with FY10, the company's liquidity improved, as indicated by an increase in its current ratio from 0.71 [= $(316 + 558)/1,223$] in FY10 to 0.75 [= $(682 + 1,634)/3,108$] in FY14. Note, however, comparing only current investments with the level of current liabilities shows a decline in liquidity from 0.26 [= $316/1,223$] in FY10 to 0.22 [= $682/3,108$] in FY14. Debt-to-assets ratio and interest coverage are measures of solvency not liquidity.

- 15** B is correct. Comparing FY14 with FY10, the company's profitability deteriorated, as indicated by a decrease in its net profit margin from 11.0 percent ($= 484/4,390$) to 5.7 percent ($= 645/11,366$). Debt-to-assets ratio is a measure of solvency not an indicator of profitability. Growth in shareholders' equity, in isolation, does not provide enough information to assess profitability.
- 16** C is correct. Assuming no changes in other variables, an increase in average assets (an increase in the denominator) would decrease ROA. A decrease in either the effective tax rate or interest expense, assuming no changes in other variables, would increase ROA.
- 17** C is correct. The company's net profit margin has decreased and its financial leverage has increased. $ROA = \text{Net profit margin} \times \text{Total asset turnover}$. ROA decreased over the period despite the increase in total asset turnover; therefore, the net profit margin must have decreased.
- $ROE = \text{Return on assets} \times \text{Financial leverage}$. ROE increased over the period despite the drop in ROA; therefore, financial leverage must have increased.
- 18** C is correct. The increase in the average tax rate in FY12, as indicated by the decrease in the value of the tax burden (the tax burden equals one minus the average tax rate), offset the improvement in efficiency indicated by higher asset turnover) leaving ROE unchanged. The EBIT margin, measuring profitability, was unchanged in FY12 and no information is given on liquidity.
- 19** C is correct. The difference between the two companies' ROE in 2010 is very small and is mainly the result of Company A's increase in its financial leverage, indicated by the increase in its Assets/Equity ratio from 2 to 4. The impact of efficiency on ROE is identical for the two companies, as indicated by both companies' asset turnover ratios of 1.5. Furthermore, if Company A had purchased newer equipment to replace older, depreciated equipment, then the company's asset turnover ratio (computed as sales/assets) would have declined, assuming constant sales. Company A has experienced a significant decline in its operating margin, from 10 percent to 7 percent which, all else equal, would not suggest that it is selling more products with higher profit margins.
- 20** A is correct. The P/E ratio measures the "multiple" that the stock market places on a company's EPS.
- 21** B is correct. In general, a creditor would consider a decrease in debt to total assets as positive news. A higher level of debt in a company's capital structure increases the risk of default and will, in general, result in higher borrowing costs for the company to compensate lenders for assuming greater credit risk. A decrease in either interest coverage or return on assets is likely to be considered negative news.
- 22** B is correct. The results of an analyst's financial analysis are integral to the process of developing forecasts, along with the analysis of other information and judgment of the analysts. Forecasts are not limited to a single point estimate but should involve a range of possibilities.

FINANCIAL REPORTING AND ANALYSIS STUDY SESSION

8

Financial Reporting and Analysis (3)

This study session examines financial reporting for specific categories of assets and liabilities. Inventories, long-lived assets, income taxes, and non-current liabilities are examined in greater detail because of their effect on financial statements and reported measures of profitability, liquidity, and solvency. For these items in particular, the analyst should be attentive to chosen accounting treatment, corresponding effect on reported performance, and the potential for financial statement manipulation.

READING ASSIGNMENTS

Reading 27	Inventories by Michael Broihahn, CPA, CIA, CFA
Reading 28	Long-lived Assets by Elaine Henry, PhD, CFA, and Elizabeth A. Gordon, PhD, MBA, CPA
Reading 29	Income Taxes By Elbie Louw, PhD, CFA, CIPM, and Michael A. Broihahn, CPA, CIA, CFA
Reading 30	Non-current (Long-term) Liabilities by Elizabeth A. Gordon, PhD, MBA, CPA, and Elaine Henry, PhD, CFA

Note: Changes in accounting standards as well as new rulings and/or pronouncements issued after the publication of the readings on financial reporting and analysis may cause some of the information in these readings to become dated. Candidates are *not* responsible for anything that occurs after the readings were published. In addition, candidates are expected to be familiar with the analytical frameworks contained in the readings, as well as the implications of alternative accounting methods for financial analysis and valuation discussed in the readings. Candidates are also responsible for the content of accounting standards, but not for the actual reference numbers. Finally, candidates should be aware that certain ratios may be defined and calculated differently. When alternative ratio definitions exist and no specific definition is given, candidates should use the ratio definitions emphasized in the readings.

Inventories

by Michael A. Broihahn, CPA, CIA, CFA

Michael A. Broihahn, CPA, CIA, CFA, is at Barry University (USA).

LEARNING OUTCOMES

<i>Mastery</i>	<i>The candidate should be able to:</i>
<input type="checkbox"/>	a. distinguish between costs included in inventories and costs recognised as expenses in the period in which they are incurred;
<input type="checkbox"/>	b. describe different inventory valuation methods (cost formulas);
<input type="checkbox"/>	c. calculate and compare cost of sales, gross profit, and ending inventory using different inventory valuation methods and using perpetual and periodic inventory systems;
<input type="checkbox"/>	d. calculate and explain how inflation and deflation of inventory costs affect the financial statements and ratios of companies that use different inventory valuation methods;
<input type="checkbox"/>	e. explain LIFO reserve and LIFO liquidation and their effects on financial statements and ratios;
<input type="checkbox"/>	f. convert a company's reported financial statements from LIFO to FIFO for purposes of comparison;
<input type="checkbox"/>	g. describe the measurement of inventory at the lower of cost and net realisable value;
<input type="checkbox"/>	h. describe implications of valuing inventory at net realisable value for financial statements and ratios;
<input type="checkbox"/>	i. describe the financial statement presentation of and disclosures relating to inventories;
<input type="checkbox"/>	j. explain issues that analysts should consider when examining a company's inventory disclosures and other sources of information;
<input type="checkbox"/>	k. calculate and compare ratios of companies, including companies that use different inventory methods;
<input type="checkbox"/>	l. analyze and compare the financial statements of companies, including companies that use different inventory methods.

Note: Changes in accounting standards as well as new rulings and/or pronouncements issued after the publication of the readings on financial reporting and analysis may cause some of the information in these readings to become dated. Candidates are *not* responsible for anything that occurs after the readings were published. In addition, candidates are expected to be familiar with the analytical frameworks contained in the readings, as well as the implications of alternative accounting methods for financial analysis and valuation discussed in the readings. Candidates are also responsible for the content of accounting standards, but not for the actual reference numbers. Finally, candidates should be aware that certain ratios may be defined and calculated differently. When alternative ratio definitions exist and no specific definition is given, candidates should use the ratio definitions emphasized in the readings.

1

INTRODUCTION

Merchandising and manufacturing companies generate revenues and profits through the sale of inventory. Further, inventory may represent a significant asset on these companies' balance sheets. Merchandisers (wholesalers and retailers) purchase inventory, ready for sale, from manufacturers and thus account for only one type of inventory—finished goods inventory. Manufacturers, however, purchase raw materials from suppliers and then add value by transforming the raw materials into finished goods. They typically classify inventory into three different categories:¹ raw materials, work in progress,² and finished goods. Work-in-progress inventories have started the conversion process from raw materials but are not yet finished goods ready for sale. Manufacturers may report either the separate carrying amounts of their raw materials, work-in-progress, and finished goods inventories on the balance sheet or simply the total inventory amount. If the latter approach is used, the company must then disclose the carrying amounts of its raw materials, work-in-progress, and finished goods inventories in a footnote to the financial statements.

Inventories and cost of sales (cost of goods sold)³ are significant items in the financial statements of many companies. Comparing the performance of these companies is challenging because of the allowable choices for valuing inventories: Differences in the choice of inventory valuation method can result in significantly different amounts being assigned to inventory and cost of sales. Financial statement analysis would be much easier if all companies used the same inventory valuation method or if inventory price levels remained constant over time. If there was no inflation or deflation with respect to inventory costs and thus unit costs were unchanged, the choice of inventory valuation method would be irrelevant. However, inventory price levels typically do change over time.

International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRS) permit the assignment of inventory costs (costs of goods available for sale) to inventories and cost of sales by three cost formulas: specific identification, first-in, first-out (FIFO), and weighted average cost.⁴ US generally accepted accounting principles (US GAAP) allow the same three inventory valuation methods, referred to as cost flow assumptions in US GAAP, but also include a fourth method called last-in, first-out (LIFO).⁵ The choice of inventory valuation method affects the allocation of the cost of goods available for sale to ending inventory and cost of sales. Analysts must understand the various inventory valuation methods and the related impact on financial statements and financial ratios in order to evaluate a company's performance over time and relative to industry peers. The company's financial statements and related notes provide important information that the analyst can use in assessing the impact of the choice of inventory valuation method on financial statements and financial ratios.

This reading is organized as follows: Section 2 discusses the costs that are included in inventory and the costs that are recognised as expenses in the period in which they are incurred. Section 3 describes inventory valuation methods and compares the measurement of ending inventory, cost of sales and gross profit under each method, and when using periodic versus perpetual inventory systems. Section 4 describes the LIFO method, LIFO reserve, and effects of LIFO liquidations, and demonstrates the adjustments required to compare a company that uses LIFO with one that uses FIFO.

1 Other classifications are possible. Inventory classifications should be appropriate to the entity.

2 This category is commonly referred to as *work in process* under US GAAP.

3 Typically, *cost of sales* is IFRS terminology and *cost of goods sold* is US GAAP terminology.

4 International Accounting Standard (IAS) 2 [Inventories].

5 Financial Accounting Standards Board *Accounting Standards Codification* (FASB ASC) Topic 330 [Inventory].

Section 5 describes the financial statement effects of a change in inventory valuation method. Section 6 discusses the measurement and reporting of inventory when its value changes. Section 7 describes the presentation of inventories on the financial statements and related disclosures, discusses inventory ratios and their interpretation, and shows examples of financial analysis with respect to inventories. A summary and practice problems conclude the reading.

COST OF INVENTORIES

2

Under IFRS, the costs to include in inventories are “all costs of purchase, costs of conversion, and other costs incurred in bringing the inventories to their present location and condition.”⁶ The costs of purchase include the purchase price, import and tax-related duties, transport, insurance during transport, handling, and other costs directly attributable to the acquisition of finished goods, materials, and services. Trade discounts, rebates, and similar items reduce the price paid and the costs of purchase. The costs of conversion include costs directly related to the units produced, such as direct labour, and fixed and variable overhead costs.⁷ Including these product-related costs in inventory (i.e., as an asset) means that they will not be recognised as an expense (i.e., as cost of sales) on the income statement until the inventory is sold. US GAAP provide a similar description of the costs to be included in inventory.⁸

Both IFRS and US GAAP exclude the following costs from inventory: abnormal costs incurred as a result of waste of materials, labour or other production conversion inputs, any storage costs (unless required as part of the production process), and all administrative overhead and selling costs. These excluded costs are treated as expenses and recognised on the income statement in the period in which they are incurred. Including costs in inventory defers their recognition as an expense on the income statement until the inventory is sold. Therefore, including costs in inventory that should be expensed will overstate profitability on the income statement (because of the inappropriate deferral of cost recognition) and create an overstated inventory value on the balance sheet.

EXAMPLE 1

Treatment of Inventory-Related Costs

Acme Enterprises, a hypothetical company that prepares its financial statements in accordance with IFRS, manufactures tables. In 2009, the factory produced 900,000 finished tables and scrapped 1,000 tables. For the finished tables, raw material costs were €9 million, direct labour conversion costs were €18 million, and production overhead costs were €1.8 million. The 1,000 scrapped tables (attributable to abnormal waste) had a total production cost of €30,000 (€10,000 raw material costs and €20,000 conversion costs; these costs are not included in the €9 million raw material and €19.8 million total conversion costs of the finished

⁶ International Accounting Standard (IAS) 2 [Inventories].

⁷ Fixed production overhead costs (depreciation, factory maintenance, and factory management and administration) represent indirect costs of production that remain relatively constant regardless of the volume of production. Variable production overhead costs are indirect production costs (indirect labour and materials) that vary with the volume of production.

⁸ FASB Accounting Standards Codification™ (ASC) Topic 330 [Inventory].

tables). During the year, Acme spent €1 million for freight delivery charges on raw materials and €500,000 for storing finished goods inventory. Acme does not have any work-in-progress inventory at the end of the year.

- 1 What costs should be included in inventory in 2009?
- 2 What costs should be expensed in 2009?

Solution to 1:

Total inventory costs for 2009 are as follows:

Raw materials	€9,000,000
Direct labour	18,000,000
Production overhead	1,800,000
Transportation for raw materials	1,000,000
Total inventory costs	€29,800,000

Solution to 2:

Total costs that should be expensed (not included in inventory) are as follows:

Abnormal waste	€30,000
Storage of finished goods inventory	500,000
Total	€530,000

3

INVENTORY VALUATION METHODS

Generally, inventory purchase costs and manufacturing conversion costs change over time. As a result, the allocation of total inventory costs (i.e., cost of goods available for sale) between cost of sales on the income statement and inventory on the balance sheet will vary depending on the inventory valuation method used by the company. As mentioned in the introduction, inventory valuation methods are referred to as cost formulas and cost flow assumptions under IFRS and US GAAP, respectively. If the choice of method results in more cost being allocated to cost of sales and less cost being allocated to inventory than would be the case with other methods, the chosen method will cause, in the current year, reported gross profit, net income, and inventory carrying amount to be lower than if alternative methods had been used. Accounting for inventory, and consequently the allocation of costs, thus has a direct impact on financial statements and their comparability.

Both IFRS and US GAAP allow companies to use the following inventory valuation methods: specific identification; first-in, first-out (FIFO); and weighted average cost. US GAAP allow companies to use an additional method: last-in, first-out (LIFO). A company must use the same inventory valuation method for all items that have a similar nature and use. For items with a different nature or use, a different inventory valuation method can be used.⁹ When items are sold, the carrying amount of the inventory is recognised as an expense (cost of sales) according to the cost formula (cost flow assumption) in use.

⁹ For example, if a clothing manufacturer produces both a retail line and one-of-a-kind designer garments, the retail line might be valued using FIFO and the designer garments using specific identification.

Specific identification is used for inventory items that are not ordinarily interchangeable, whereas FIFO, weighted average cost, and LIFO are typically used when there are large numbers of interchangeable items in inventory. Specific identification matches the actual historical costs of the specific inventory items to their physical flow; the costs remain in inventory until the actual identifiable inventory is sold. FIFO, weighted average cost, and LIFO are based on cost flow assumptions. Under these methods, companies must make certain assumptions about which goods are sold and which goods remain in ending inventory. As a result, the allocation of costs to the units sold and to the units in ending inventory can be different from the physical movement of the items.

The choice of inventory valuation method would be largely irrelevant if inventory costs remained constant or relatively constant over time. Given relatively constant prices, the allocation of costs between cost of goods sold and ending inventory would be very similar under each of the four methods. Given changing price levels, however, the choice of inventory valuation method can have a significant impact on the amount of reported cost of sales and inventory. And the reported cost of sales and inventory balances affect other items, such as gross profit, net income, current assets, and total assets.

3.1 Specific Identification

The specific identification method is used for inventory items that are not ordinarily interchangeable and for goods that have been produced and segregated for specific projects. This method is also commonly used for expensive goods that are uniquely identifiable, such as precious gemstones. Under this method, the cost of sales and the cost of ending inventory reflect the actual costs incurred to purchase (or manufacture) the items specifically identified as sold and the items specifically identified as remaining in inventory. Therefore, this method matches the physical flow of the specific items sold and remaining in inventory to their actual cost.

3.2 First-In, First-Out (FIFO)

FIFO assumes that the oldest goods purchased (or manufactured) are sold first and the newest goods purchased (or manufactured) remain in ending inventory. In other words, the first units included in inventory are assumed to be the first units sold from inventory. Therefore, cost of sales reflects the cost of goods in beginning inventory plus the cost of items purchased (or manufactured) earliest in the accounting period, and the value of ending inventory reflects the costs of goods purchased (or manufactured) more recently. In periods of rising prices, the costs assigned to the units in ending inventory are higher than the costs assigned to the units sold. Conversely, in periods of declining prices, the costs assigned to the units in ending inventory are lower than the costs assigned to the units sold.

3.3 Weighted Average Cost

Weighted average cost assigns the average cost of the goods available for sale (beginning inventory plus purchase, conversion, and other costs) during the accounting period to the units that are sold as well as to the units in ending inventory. In an accounting period, the weighted average cost per unit is calculated as the total cost of the units available for sale divided by the total number of units available for sale in the period (Total cost of goods available for sale/Total units available for sale).

3.4 Last-In, First-Out (LIFO)

LIFO is permitted only under US GAAP. This method assumes that the newest goods purchased (or manufactured) are sold first and the oldest goods purchased (or manufactured), including beginning inventory, remain in ending inventory. In other words, the last units included in inventory are assumed to be the first units sold from inventory. Therefore, cost of sales reflects the cost of goods purchased (or manufactured) more recently, and the value of ending inventory reflects the cost of older goods. In periods of rising prices, the costs assigned to the units in ending inventory are lower than the costs assigned to the units sold. Conversely, in periods of declining prices, the costs assigned to the units in ending inventory are higher than the costs assigned to the units sold.

3.5 Calculation of Cost of Sales, Gross Profit, and Ending Inventory

In periods of changing prices, the allocation of total inventory costs (i.e., cost of goods available for sale) between cost of sales on the income statement and inventory on the balance sheet will vary depending on the inventory valuation method used by the company. The following example illustrates how cost of sales, gross profit, and ending inventory differ based on the choice of inventory valuation method.

EXAMPLE 2

Inventory Cost Flow Illustration for the Specific Identification, Weighted Average Cost, FIFO, and LIFO Methods

Global Sales, Inc. (GSI) is a hypothetical distributor of consumer products, including bars of violet essence soap. The soap is sold by the kilogram. GSI began operations in 2009, during which it purchased and received initially 100,000 kg of soap at 110 yuan/kg, then 200,000 kg of soap at 100 yuan/kg, and finally 300,000 kg of soap at 90 yuan/kg. GSI sold 520,000 kg of soap at 240 yuan/kg. GSI stores its soap in its warehouse so that soap from each shipment received is readily identifiable. During 2009, the entire 100,000 kg from the first shipment received, 180,000 kg of the second shipment received, and 240,000 kg of the final shipment received was sent to customers. Answers to the following questions should be rounded to the nearest 1,000 yuan.

- 1 What are the reported cost of sales, gross profit, and ending inventory balances for 2009 under the specific identification method?
- 2 What are the reported cost of sales, gross profit, and ending inventory balances for 2009 under the weighted average cost method?
- 3 What are the reported cost of sales, gross profit, and ending inventory balances for 2009 under the FIFO method?
- 4 What are the reported cost of sales, gross profit, and ending inventory balances for 2009 under the LIFO method?

Solution to 1:

Under the specific identification method, the physical flow of the specific inventory items sold is matched to their actual cost.

$$\text{Sales} = 520,000 \times 240 = 124,800,000 \text{ yuan}$$

$$\text{Cost of sales} = (100,000 \times 110) + (180,000 \times 100) + (240,000 \times 90) = 50,600,000 \text{ yuan}$$

$$\text{Gross profit} = 124,800,000 - 50,600,000 = 74,200,000 \text{ yuan}$$

$$\text{Ending inventory} = (20,000 \times 100) + (60,000 \times 90) = 7,400,000 \text{ yuan}$$

Note that in spite of the segregation of inventory within the warehouse, it would be inappropriate to use specific identification for this inventory of interchangeable items. The use of specific identification could potentially result in earnings manipulation through the shipment decision.

Solution to 2:

Under the weighted average cost method, costs are allocated to cost of sales and ending inventory by using a weighted average mix of the actual costs incurred for all inventory items. The weighted average cost per unit is determined by dividing the total cost of goods available for sale by the number of units available for sale.

$$\text{Weighted average cost} = [(100,000 \times 110) + (200,000 \times 100) + (300,000 \times 90)] / 600,000 = 96.667 \text{ yuan/kg}$$

$$\text{Sales} = 520,000 \times 240 = 124,800,000 \text{ yuan}$$

$$\text{Cost of sales} = 520,000 \times 96.667 = 50,267,000 \text{ yuan}$$

$$\text{Gross profit} = 124,800,000 - 50,267,000 = 74,533,000 \text{ yuan}$$

$$\text{Ending inventory} = 80,000 \times 96.667 = 7,733,000 \text{ yuan}$$

Solution to 3:

Under the FIFO method, the oldest inventory units acquired are assumed to be the first units sold. Ending inventory, therefore, is assumed to consist of those inventory units most recently acquired.

$$\text{Sales} = 520,000 \times 240 = 124,800,000 \text{ yuan}$$

$$\text{Cost of sales} = (100,000 \times 110) + (200,000 \times 100) + (220,000 \times 90) = 50,800,000 \text{ yuan}$$

$$\text{Gross profit} = 124,800,000 - 50,800,000 = 74,000,000 \text{ yuan}$$

$$\text{Ending inventory} = 80,000 \times 90 = 7,200,000 \text{ yuan}$$

Solution to 4:

Under the LIFO method, the newest inventory units acquired are assumed to be the first units sold. Ending inventory, therefore, is assumed to consist of the oldest inventory units.

$$\text{Sales} = 520,000 \times 240 = 124,800,000 \text{ yuan}$$

$$\text{Cost of sales} = (20,000 \times 110) + (200,000 \times 100) + (300,000 \times 90) = 49,200,000 \text{ yuan}$$

$$\text{Gross profit} = 124,800,000 - 49,200,000 = 75,600,000 \text{ yuan}$$

$$\text{Ending inventory} = 80,000 \times 110 = 8,800,000 \text{ yuan}$$

The following table (in thousands of yuan) summarizes the cost of sales, the ending inventory, and the cost of goods available for sale that were calculated for each of the four inventory valuation methods. Note that in the first year of operation, the total cost of goods available for sale is the same under all four methods. Subsequently, the cost of goods available for sale will typically differ because beginning inventories will differ. Also shown is the gross profit figure for each of the four methods. Because the cost of a kg of soap declined over the

period, LIFO had the highest ending inventory amount, the lowest cost of sales, and the highest gross profit. FIFO had the lowest ending inventory amount, the highest cost of sales, and the lowest gross profit.

Inventory Valuation Method	Specific ID	Weighted Average Cost	FIFO	LIFO
Cost of sales	50,600	50,267	50,800	49,200
Ending inventory	7,400	7,733	7,200	8,800
Total cost of goods available for sale	58,000	58,000	58,000	58,000
Gross profit	74,200	74,533	74,000	75,600

3.6 Periodic versus Perpetual Inventory Systems

Companies typically record changes to inventory using either a periodic inventory system or a perpetual inventory system. Under a periodic inventory system, inventory values and costs of sales are determined at the end of an accounting period. Purchases are recorded in a purchases account. The total of purchases and beginning inventory is the amount of goods available for sale during the period. The ending inventory amount is subtracted from the goods available for sale to arrive at the cost of sales. The quantity of goods in ending inventory is usually obtained or verified through a physical count of the units in inventory. Under a perpetual inventory system, inventory values and cost of sales are continuously updated to reflect purchases and sales.

Under either system, the allocation of goods available for sale to cost of sales and ending inventory is the same if the inventory valuation method used is either specific identification or FIFO. This is not generally true for the weighted average cost method. Under a periodic inventory system, the amount of cost of goods available for sale allocated to cost of sales and ending inventory may be quite different using the FIFO method compared to the weighted average cost method. Under a perpetual inventory system, inventory values and cost of sales are continuously updated to reflect purchases and sales. As a result, the amount of cost of goods available for sale allocated to cost of sales and ending inventory is similar under the FIFO and weighted average cost methods. Because of lack of disclosure and the dominance of perpetual inventory systems, analysts typically do not make adjustments when comparing a company using the weighted average cost method with a company using the FIFO method.

Using the LIFO method, the periodic and perpetual inventory systems will generally result in different allocations to cost of sales and ending inventory. Under either a perpetual or periodic inventory system, the use of the LIFO method will generally result in significantly different allocations to cost of sales and ending inventory compared to other inventory valuation methods. When inventory costs are increasing and inventory unit levels are stable or increasing, using the LIFO method will result in higher cost of sales and lower inventory carrying amounts than using the FIFO method. The higher cost of sales under LIFO will result in lower gross profit, operating income, income before taxes, and net income. Income tax expense will be lower under LIFO, causing the company's net operating cash flow to be higher. On the balance sheet, the lower inventory carrying amount will result in lower reported current assets, working capital, and total assets. Analysts must carefully assess the financial statement implications of the choice of inventory valuation method when comparing companies that use the LIFO method with companies that use the FIFO method.

Example 3 illustrates the impact of the choice of system under LIFO.

EXAMPLE 3**Perpetual versus Periodic Inventory Systems**

If GSI (the company in Example 2) had used a perpetual inventory system, the timing of purchases and sales would affect the amounts of cost of sales and inventory. Below is a record of the purchases, sales, and quantity of inventory on hand after the transaction in 2009.

Date	Purchased	Sold	Inventory on Hand
5 January	100,000 kg at 110 yuan/kg		100,000 kg
1 February		80,000 kg at 240 yuan/kg	20,000 kg
8 March	200,000 kg at 100 yuan/kg		220,000 kg
6 April		100,000 kg at 240 yuan/kg	120,000 kg
23 May		60,000 kg at 240 yuan/kg	60,000 kg
7 July		40,000 kg at 240 yuan/kg	20,000 kg
2 August	300,000 kg at 90 yuan/kg		320,000 kg
5 September		70,000 kg at 240 yuan/kg	250,000 kg
17 November		90,000 kg at 240 yuan/kg	160,000 kg
8 December		80,000 kg at 240 yuan/kg	80,000 kg
	Total goods available for sale = 58,000,000 yuan	Total sales = 124,800,000 yuan	

The amounts for total goods available for sale and sales are the same under either the perpetual or periodic system in this first year of operation. The carrying amount of the ending inventory, however, may differ because the perpetual system will apply LIFO continuously throughout the year. Under the periodic system, it was assumed that the ending inventory was composed of 80,000 units of the oldest inventory, which cost 110 yuan/kg.

What are the ending inventory, cost of sales, and gross profit amounts using the perpetual system and the LIFO method? How do these compare with the amounts using the periodic system and the LIFO method, as in Example 2?

Solution:

The carrying amounts of the inventory at the different time points using the perpetual inventory system are as follows:

Date	Quantity on Hand	Quantities and Cost	Carrying Amount
5 January	100,000 kg	100,000 kg at 110 yuan/kg	11,000,000 yuan
1 February	20,000 kg	20,000 kg at 110 yuan/kg	2,200,000 yuan
8 March	220,000 kg	20,000 kg at 110 yuan/kg + 200,000 kg at 100 yuan/kg	22,200,000 yuan
6 April	120,000 kg	20,000 kg at 110 yuan/kg + 100,000 kg at 100 yuan/kg	12,200,000 yuan
23 May	60,000 kg	20,000 kg at 110 yuan/kg + 40,000 kg at 100 yuan/kg	6,200,000 yuan
7 July	20,000 kg	20,000 kg at 110 yuan/kg	2,200,000 yuan
2 August	320,000 kg	20,000 kg at 110 yuan/kg + 300,000 kg at 90 yuan/kg	29,200,000 yuan
5 September	250,000 kg	20,000 kg at 110 yuan/kg + 230,000 kg at 90 yuan/kg	22,900,000 yuan

(continued)

Date	Quantity on Hand	Quantities and Cost	Carrying Amount
17 November	160,000 kg	20,000 kg at 110 yuan/kg + 140,000 kg at 90 yuan/kg	14,800,000 yuan
8 December	80,000 kg	20,000 kg at 110 yuan/kg + 60,000 kg at 90 yuan/kg	7,600,000 yuan

Perpetual system

$$\text{Sales} = 520,000 \times 240 = 124,800,000 \text{ yuan}$$

$$\text{Cost of sales} = 58,000,000 - 7,600,000 = 50,400,000 \text{ yuan}$$

$$\text{Gross profit} = 124,800,000 - 50,400,000 = 74,400,000 \text{ yuan}$$

Ending inventory = 7,600,000 yuan

Periodic system from Example 2

$$\text{Sales} = 520,000 \times 240 = 124,800,000 \text{ yuan}$$

$$\text{Cost of sales} = (20,000 \times 110) + (200,000 \times 100) + (300,000 \times 90) = 49,200,000 \text{ yuan}$$

$$\text{Gross profit} = 124,800,000 - 49,200,000 = 75,600,000 \text{ yuan}$$

$$\text{Ending inventory} = 80,000 \times 110 = 8,800,000 \text{ yuan}$$

In this example, the ending inventory amount is lower under the perpetual system because only 20,000 kg of the oldest inventory with the highest cost is assumed to remain in inventory. The cost of sales is higher and the gross profit is lower under the perpetual system compared to the periodic system.

3.7 Comparison of Inventory Valuation Methods

As shown in Example 2, the allocation of the total cost of goods available for sale to cost of sales on the income statement and to ending inventory on the balance sheet varies under the different inventory valuation methods. In an environment of declining inventory unit costs and constant or increasing inventory quantities, FIFO (in comparison with weighted average cost or LIFO) will allocate a higher amount of the total cost of goods available for sale to cost of sales on the income statement and a lower amount to ending inventory on the balance sheet. Accordingly, because cost of sales will be higher under FIFO, a company's gross profit, operating profit, and income before taxes will be lower.

Conversely, in an environment of rising inventory unit costs and constant or increasing inventory quantities, FIFO (in comparison with weighted average cost or LIFO) will allocate a lower amount of the total cost of goods available for sale to cost of sales on the income statement and a higher amount to ending inventory on the balance sheet. Accordingly, because cost of sales will be lower under FIFO, a company's gross profit, operating profit, and income before taxes will be higher.

The carrying amount of inventories under FIFO will more closely reflect current replacement values because inventories are assumed to consist of the most recently purchased items. The cost of sales under LIFO will more closely reflect current replacement value. LIFO ending inventory amounts are typically not reflective of current replacement value because the ending inventory is assumed to be the oldest inventory and costs are allocated accordingly. Example 4 illustrates the different results obtained by using either the FIFO or LIFO methods to account for inventory

EXAMPLE 4**Impact of Inflation Using LIFO Compared to FIFO**

Company L and Company F are identical in all respects except that Company L uses the LIFO method and Company F uses the FIFO method. Each company has been in business for five years and maintains a base inventory of 2,000 units each year. Each year, except the first year, the number of units purchased equaled the number of units sold. Over the five year period, unit sales increased 10 percent each year and the unit purchase and selling prices increased at the beginning of each year to reflect inflation of 4 percent per year. In the first year, 20,000 units were sold at a price of \$15.00 per unit and the unit purchase price was \$8.00.

- 1 What was the end of year inventory, sales, cost of sales, and gross profit for each company for each of the five years?
- 2 Compare the inventory turnover ratios (based on ending inventory carrying amounts) and gross profit margins over the five year period and between companies.

Solution to 1:

Company L using LIFO	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5
Ending inventory ^a	\$16,000	\$16,000	\$16,000	\$16,000	\$16,000
Sales ^b	\$300,000	\$343,200	\$392,621	\$449,158	\$513,837
Cost of sales ^c	160,000	183,040	209,398	239,551	274,046
Gross profit	\$140,000	\$160,160	\$183,223	\$209,607	\$239,791

^a Inventory is unchanged at \$16,000 each year (2,000 units × \$8). 2,000 of the units acquired in the first year are assumed to remain in inventory.

^b Sales Year X = (20,000 × \$15)(1.10)^{X-1}(1.04)^{X-1}. The quantity sold increases by 10 percent each year and the selling price increases by 4 percent each year.

^c Cost of sales Year X = (20,000 × \$8)(1.10)^{X-1}(1.04)^{X-1}. In Year 1, 20,000 units are sold with a cost of \$8. In subsequent years, the number of units purchased equals the number of units sold and the units sold are assumed to be those purchased in the year. The quantity purchased increases by 10 percent each year and the purchase price increases by 4 percent each year.

Note that if the company sold more units than it purchased in a year, inventory would decrease. This is referred to as LIFO liquidation. The cost of sales of the units sold in excess of those purchased would reflect the inventory carrying amount. In this example, each unit sold in excess of those purchased would have a cost of sales of \$8 and a higher gross profit.

Company F using FIFO	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5
Ending inventory ^a	\$16,000	\$16,640	\$17,306	\$17,998	\$18,718
Sales ^b	\$300,000	\$343,200	\$392,621	\$449,158	\$513,837
Cost of sales ^c	160,000	182,400	208,732	238,859	273,326
Gross profit	\$140,000	\$160,800	\$183,889	\$210,299	\$240,511

^a Ending Inventory Year X = 2,000 units × Cost in Year X = 2,000 units [$\$8 \times (1.04)^{X-1}$]. 2,000 units of the units acquired in Year X are assumed to remain in inventory.

^b Sales Year X = $(20,000 \times \$15)(1.10)^{X-1}(1.04)^{X-1}$

^c Cost of sales Year 1 = \$160,000 (= 20,000 units × \$8). There was no beginning inventory.

Cost of sales Year X (where X ≠ 1) = Beginning inventory plus purchases less ending inventory

= (Inventory at Year X-1) + $[(20,000 \times \$8)(1.10)^{X-1}(1.04)^{X-1}]$ - (Inventory at Year X)

= $2,000(\$8)(1.04)^{X-2} + [(20,000 \times \$8)(1.10)^{X-1}(1.04)^{X-1}] - [2,000(\$8)(1.04)^{X-1}]$

For example, cost of sales Year 2 = $2,000(\$8) + [(20,000 \times \$8)(1.10)(1.04)] - [2,000(\$8)(1.04)] = \$16,000 + 183,040 - 16,640 = \$182,400$

Solution to 2:

Year	Company L					Company F				
	1	2	3	4	5	1	2	3	4	5
Inventory turnover	10.0	11.4	13.1	15.0	17.1	10.0	11.0	12.1	13.3	14.6
Gross profit margin (%)	46.7	46.7	46.7	46.7	46.7	46.7	46.9	46.8	46.8	46.8

Inventory turnover ratio = Cost of sales ÷ Ending inventory. The inventory turnover ratio increased each year for both companies because the units sold increased, whereas the units in ending inventory remained unchanged. The increase in the inventory turnover ratio is higher for Company L because Company L's cost of sales is increasing for inflation but the inventory carrying amount is unaffected by inflation. It might appear that a company using the LIFO method manages its inventory more effectively, but this is deceptive. Both companies have identical quantities and prices of purchases and sales and only differ in the inventory valuation method used.

Gross profit margin = Gross profit ÷ Sales. The gross profit margin is stable under LIFO because both sales and cost of sales increase at the same rate of inflation. The gross profit margin is slightly higher under the FIFO method after the first year because a proportion of the cost of sales reflects an older purchase price.

THE LIFO METHOD

4

In the United States, the LIFO method is widely used (approximately 36 percent of US companies use the LIFO method). The potential income tax savings are a benefit of using the LIFO method when inventory costs are increasing. The higher cash flows due to lower income taxes may make the company more valuable because the value of a company is based on the present value of its future cash flows. Under the “LIFO conformity rule,” the US tax code requires that companies using the LIFO method for tax purposes must also use the LIFO method for financial reporting. Under the LIFO method, ending inventory is assumed to consist of those units that have been held the longest. This generally results in ending inventories with carrying amounts lower than current replacement costs because inventory costs typically increase over time. Cost of sales will more closely reflect current replacement costs.

If the purchase prices (purchase costs) or production costs of inventory are increasing, the income statement consequences of using the LIFO method compared to other methods will include higher cost of sales, and lower gross profit, operating profit, income tax expense, and net income. The balance sheet consequences include lower ending inventory, working capital, total assets, retained earnings, and shareholders’ equity. The lower income tax paid will result in higher net cash flow from operating activities. Some of the financial ratio effects are a lower current ratio, higher debt-to-equity ratios, and lower profitability ratios.

If the purchase prices or production costs of inventory are decreasing, it is unlikely that a company will use the LIFO method for tax purposes (and therefore for financial reporting purposes due to the LIFO conformity rule) because this will result in lower cost of sales, and higher taxable income and income taxes. However, if the company had elected to use the LIFO method and cannot justify changing the inventory valuation method for tax and financial reporting purposes when inventory costs begin to decrease, the income statement, balance sheet, and ratio effects will be opposite to the effects during a period of increasing costs.

The US Securities Exchange Commission (SEC) has proposed the full adoption of IFRS by all US reporting companies beginning in 2014. An important consequence of this proposal would be the complete elimination of the LIFO inventory method for financial reporting and, due to the LIFO conformity rule, tax reporting by US companies. As a consequence of the restatement of financial statements to the FIFO or weighted average cost method, significant immediate income tax liabilities may arise in the year of transition from the LIFO method to either the FIFO or weighted average cost method.

4.1 LIFO Reserve

For companies using the LIFO method, US GAAP requires disclosure, in the notes to the financial statements or on the balance sheet, of the amount of the LIFO reserve. The **LIFO reserve** is the difference between the reported LIFO inventory carrying amount and the inventory amount that would have been reported if the FIFO method had been used (in other words, the FIFO inventory value less the LIFO inventory value). The disclosure provides the information that analysts need to adjust a company’s cost of sales (cost of goods sold) and ending inventory balance based on the LIFO method, to the FIFO method.

To compare companies using LIFO with companies not using LIFO, inventory is adjusted by adding the disclosed LIFO reserve to the inventory balance that is reported on the balance sheet. The reported inventory balance, using LIFO, plus the LIFO reserve equals the inventory that would have been reported under FIFO. Cost of sales is adjusted by subtracting the increase in the LIFO reserve during the period

from the cost of sales amount that is reported on the income statement. If the LIFO reserve has declined during the period,¹⁰ the decrease in the reserve is added to the cost of sales amount that is reported on the income statement. The LIFO reserve disclosure can be used to adjust the financial statements of a US company using the LIFO method to make them comparable with a similar company using the FIFO method.

EXAMPLE 5

Inventory Conversion from LIFO to FIFO

Caterpillar Inc. (CAT), based in Peoria, Illinois, USA, is the largest maker of construction and mining equipment, diesel and natural gas engines, and industrial gas turbines in the world. Excerpts from CAT's consolidated financial statements are shown in Exhibits 1 and 2; notes pertaining to CAT's inventories are presented in Exhibit 3. Assume tax rates of 20 percent for 2008 and 30 percent for earlier years. The assumed tax rates are based on the provision for taxes as a percentage of consolidated profits before taxes rather than the US corporate statutory tax rate of 35 percent.

- 1 What inventory values would CAT report for 2008, 2007, and 2006 if it had used the FIFO method instead of the LIFO method?
- 2 What amount would CAT's cost of goods sold for 2008 and 2007 be if it had used the FIFO method instead of the LIFO method?
- 3 What net income (profit) would CAT report for 2008 and 2007 if it had used the FIFO method instead of the LIFO method?
- 4 By what amount would CAT's 2008 and 2007 net cash flow from operating activities decline if CAT used the FIFO method instead of the LIFO method?
- 5 What is the cumulative amount of income tax savings that CAT has generated through 2008 by using the LIFO method instead of the FIFO method?
- 6 What amount would be added to CAT's retained earnings (profit employed in the business) at 31 December 2008 if CAT had used the FIFO method instead of the LIFO method?
- 7 What would be the change in Cat's cash balance if CAT had used the FIFO method instead of the LIFO method?
- 8 Calculate and compare the following for 2008 under the LIFO method and the FIFO method: inventory turnover ratio, days of inventory on hand, gross profit margin, net profit margin, return on assets, current ratio, and total liabilities-to-equity ratio.

Exhibit 1 Caterpillar Inc. Consolidated Results of Operation (US\$ millions)

For the years ended 31 December	2008	2007	2006
Sales and revenues:			
Sales of Machinery and Engines	48,044	41,962	38,869

¹⁰ This typically results from a reduction in inventory units and is referred to as LIFO liquidation. LIFO liquidation is discussed in Section 4.2.

Exhibit 1 (Continued)

For the years ended 31 December	2008	2007	2006
Revenue of Financial Products	3,280	2,996	2,648
Total sales and revenues	51,324	44,958	41,517
Operating costs:			
Cost of goods sold	38,415	32,626	29,549
⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮
Interest expense of Financial Products	1,153	1,132	1,023
⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮
Total operating costs	46,876	40,037	36,596
Operating profit	4,448	4,921	4,921
Interest expense excluding Financial Products	274	288	274
Other income (expense)	299	320	214
Consolidated profit before taxes	4,473	4,953	4,861
Provision for income taxes	953	1,485	1,405
Profit of consolidated companies	3,520	3,468	3,456
Equity in profit of unconsolidated affiliated companies	37	73	81
Profit	3,557	3,541	3,537

Exhibit 2 Caterpillar Inc. Consolidated Financial Position (US\$ millions)

31 December	2008	2007	2006
Assets			
Current assets:			
Cash and short-term investments	2,736	1,122	530
⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮
Inventories	8,781	7,204	6,351
Total current assets	31,633	25,477	23,663
⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮
Total assets	67,782	56,132	51,449
Liabilities			
Total current liabilities	26,069	22,245	19,822
⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮
Total liabilities	61,171	47,249	44,590
Redeemable noncontrolling interest (Note 25)	524		
Stockholders' equity			
Common stock of \$1.00 par value:			
Authorized shares: 900,000,000			

(continued)

Exhibit 2 (Continued)

31 December	2008	2007	2006
Issued shares (2008, 2007 and 2006 – 814,894,624) at paid-in amount	3,057	2,744	2,465
Treasury stock (2008 – 213,367,983 shares; 2007 – 190,908,490 shares and 2006 – 169,086,448 shares) at cost	(11,217)	(9,451)	(7,352)
Profit employed in the business	19,826	17,398	14,593
Accumulated other comprehensive income	(5,579)	(1,808)	(2,847)
Total stockholders' equity	6,087	8,883	6,859
Total liabilities and stockholders' equity	67,782	56,132	51,449

Exhibit 3 Caterpillar Inc. Selected Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements**Note 1. Operations and Summary of Significant Accounting Policies****D. Inventories**

Inventories are stated at the lower of cost or market. Cost is principally determined using the last-in, first-out (LIFO) method. The value of inventories on the LIFO basis represented about 70% of total inventories at December 31, 2008 and about 75% of total inventories at December 31, 2007 and 2006.

If the FIFO (first-in, first-out) method had been in use, inventories would have been \$3,183 million, \$2,617 million and \$2,403 million higher than reported at December 31, 2008, 2007 and 2006, respectively.

Note 9. Inventories

31 December (millions of dollars)	2008	2007	2006
Raw Materials	3,356	2,990	2,698
Work-in-process	1,107	863	591
Finished goods	4,022	3,066	2,785
Supplies	296	285	277
Total inventories	8,781	7,204	6,351

We had long-term material purchase obligations of approximately \$363 million at December 31, 2008.

Solution to 1:

31 December (millions of dollars)	2008	2007	2006
Total inventories (LIFO method)	8,781	7,204	6,351
From Note 1.D (LIFO reserve)	3,183	2,617	2,403
Total inventories (FIFO method)	11,964	9,821	8,754

Solution to 2:

31 December (millions of dollars)	2008	2007
Cost of goods sold (LIFO method)	38,415	32,626
Less: Increase in LIFO reserve*	-566	-214
Cost of goods sold (FIFO method)	37,849	32,412

* From Note 1.D, the increase in LIFO reserve for 2008 is 566 (3,183 – 2,617) and for 2007 is 214 (2,617 – 2,403).

Solution to 3:

31 December (millions of dollars)	2008	2007
Net income (LIFO method)	3,557	3,541
Reduction in cost of goods sold (increase in operating profit)	566	214
Taxes on increased operating profit*	-113	-64
Net income (FIFO method)	4,010	3,691

* The taxes on the increased operating profit are assumed to be 113 (566 × 20%) for 2008 and 64 (214 × 30%) for 2007.

Solution to 4:

The effect on a company's net cash flow from operating activities is limited to the impact of the change on income taxes paid; changes in allocating inventory costs to ending inventory and cost of goods sold does not change any cash flows except income taxes. Consequently, the effect of using FIFO on CAT's net operating cash flow from operating activities would be a decline of \$113 million in 2008 and a decline of \$64 million in 2007. These are the approximate incremental increases in income taxes that CAT would have incurred if the FIFO method were used instead of the LIFO method (see solution to 3 above).

Solution to 5:

Assuming tax rates of 20 percent for 2008 and 30 percent for earlier years, the cumulative amount of income tax savings that CAT has generated by using the LIFO method instead of FIFO is approximately \$898 million (566 × 20% + 2,617 × 30%). Note 1.D indicates a LIFO reserve of \$2,617 million at the end of 2007 and an increase in the LIFO reserve of \$566 million in 2008. Therefore, under the FIFO method, cumulative gross profits would have been \$2,617 million higher as of the end of 2007 and an additional \$566 million higher as of the end of 2008. The estimated tax savings would be higher (lower) if income tax rates were assumed to be higher (lower).

Solution to 6:

The amount that would be added to CAT's retained earnings is \$2,285 million (3,183 – 898) or (566 × 80% + 2,617 × 70%). This represents the cumulative increase in operating profit due to the decrease in cost of goods sold (LIFO reserve of \$3,183 million) less the assumed taxes on that profit (\$898 million, see solution to 5 above). Some analysts advocate ignoring the tax consequences and suggest simply adjusting inventory and equity by the same amount. They argue

that the reported equity of the firm is understated by the difference between the current value of its inventory (approximated by the value under FIFO) and its carrying value (value under LIFO).

Solution to 7:

Under the FIFO method, an additional \$898 million is assumed to have been incurred for tax expenses. If CAT switched to FIFO, it would have an additional tax liability of \$898 million as a consequence of the restatement of financial statements to the FIFO method. This illustrates the significant immediate income tax liabilities that may arise in the year of transition from the LIFO method to the FIFO method. If CAT switched to FIFO for tax purposes, there would be a cash outflow for the additional taxes. However, because the company is not actually converting at this point for either tax or reporting purposes, it is appropriate to reflect a deferred tax liability rather than a reduction in cash. In this case for analysis purposes, under FIFO, inventory would increase by \$3,183 million, equity by \$2,285 million, and non-current liabilities by \$898 million.

Solution to 8:

CAT's ratios for 2008 under the LIFO and FIFO methods are as follows:

	LIFO	FIFO
Inventory turnover	4.81	3.47
Days of inventory on hand	76.1 days	105.5 days
Gross profit margin	20.04%	21.22%
Net profit margin	6.93%	7.81%
Return on assets	5.74%	6.18%
Current ratio	1.21	1.34
Total liabilities-to-equity ratio	10.05	7.41

Inventory turnover ratio = Cost of goods sold ÷ Average inventory

$$\text{LIFO} = 4.81 = 38,415 \div [(8,781 + 7,204) \div 2]$$

$$\text{FIFO} = 3.47 = 37,849 \div [(11,964 + 9,821) \div 2]$$

The ratio is higher under LIFO because, given rising inventory costs, cost of goods sold will be higher and inventory carrying amounts will be lower under LIFO. If an analyst made no adjustment for the difference in inventory methods, it might appear that a company using the LIFO method manages its inventory more effectively.

Days of inventory on hand = Number of days in period ÷ Inventory turnover ratio

$$\text{LIFO} = 76.1 \text{ days} = (366 \text{ days}^* \div 4.81)$$

$$\text{FIFO} = 105.5 \text{ days} = (366 \text{ days} \div 3.47)$$

*2008 was a leap year.

Without adjustment, a company using the LIFO method might appear to manage its inventory more effectively. This is primarily the result of the lower inventory carrying amounts under LIFO.

Gross profit margin = Gross profit ÷ Total revenue

$$\text{LIFO} = 20.04 \text{ percent} = [(48,044 - 38,415) \div 48,044]$$

$$\text{FIFO} = 21.22 \text{ percent} = [(48,044 - 37,849) \div 48,044]$$

Revenue of financial products is excluded from the calculation of gross profit. Gross profit is sales of machinery and engines less cost of goods sold. The gross profit margin is lower under LIFO because the cost of goods sold is higher given rising inventory costs.

Net profit margin = Net income ÷ Total revenue

$$\text{LIFO} = 6.93 \text{ percent} = (3,557 \div 51,324)$$

$$\text{FIFO} = 7.81 \text{ percent} = (4,010 \div 51,324)$$

The net profit margin is lower under LIFO because the cost of goods sold is higher. The absolute percentage difference is less than that of the gross profit margin because of income taxes on the increased income reported under FIFO and because net income is divided by total revenue including sales of machinery and engines and revenue of financial products. The company appears to be less profitable under LIFO.

Return on assets = Net income ÷ Average total assets

$$\text{LIFO} = 5.74 \text{ percent} = 3,557 \div [(67,782 + 56,132) \div 2]$$

$$\text{FIFO} = 6.18 \text{ percent} = 4,010 \div [(67,782 + 3,183) + (56,132 + 2,617) \div 2]$$

The total assets under FIFO are the LIFO total assets increased by the LIFO reserve. The return on assets is lower under LIFO because the lower net income due to the higher cost of goods sold has a greater impact on the ratio than the lower total assets, which are the result of lower inventory carrying amounts. The company appears to be less profitable under LIFO.

Current ratio = Current assets ÷ Current liabilities

$$\text{LIFO} = 1.21 = (31,633 \div 26,069)$$

$$\text{FIFO} = 1.34 = [(31,633 + 3,183) \div 26,069]$$

The current ratio is lower under LIFO primarily because of lower inventory carrying amount. The company appears to be less liquid under LIFO.

Total liabilities-to-equity ratio = Total liabilities ÷ Total shareholders' equity

$$\text{LIFO} = 10.05 = (61,171 \div 6,087)$$

$$\text{FIFO} = 7.41 = [(61,171 + 898) \div (6,087 + 2,285)]$$

The ratio is higher under LIFO because the addition to retained earnings under FIFO reduces the ratio. The company appears to be more highly leveraged under LIFO.

In summary, the company appears to be less profitable, less liquid, and more highly leveraged under LIFO. Yet, because a company's value is based on the present value of future cash flows, LIFO will increase the company's value because the cash flows are higher in earlier years due to lower taxes. LIFO is primarily used for the tax benefits it provides.

4.2 LIFO Liquidations

In periods of rising inventory unit costs, the carrying amount of inventory under FIFO will always exceed the carrying amount of inventory under LIFO. The LIFO reserve may increase over time as the result of the increasing difference between the older costs used to value inventory under LIFO and the more recent costs used to value

inventory under FIFO. Also, when the number of inventory units manufactured or purchased exceeds the number of units sold, the LIFO reserve may increase as the result of the addition of new LIFO layers (the quantity of inventory units is increasing and each increase in quantity creates a new LIFO layer).

When the number of units sold exceeds the number of units purchased or manufactured, the number of units in ending inventory is lower than the number of units in beginning inventory and a company using LIFO will experience a LIFO liquidation (some of the older units held in inventory are assumed to have been sold). If inventory unit costs have been rising from period to period and LIFO liquidation occurs, this will produce an inventory-related increase in gross profits. The increase in gross profits occurs because of the lower inventory carrying amounts of the liquidated units. The lower inventory carrying amounts are used for cost of sales and the sales are at the current prices. The gross profit on these units is higher than the gross profit that would be recognised using more current costs. These inventory profits caused by a LIFO liquidation, however, are one-time events and are not sustainable.

LIFO liquidations can occur for a variety of reasons. The reduction in inventory levels may be outside of management's control; for example, labour strikes at a supplier may force a company to reduce inventory levels to meet customer demands. In periods of economic recession or when customer demand is declining, a company may choose to reduce existing inventory levels rather than invest in new inventory. Analysts should be aware that management can potentially manipulate and inflate their company's reported gross profits and net income at critical times by intentionally reducing inventory quantities and liquidating older layers of LIFO inventory (selling some units of beginning inventory). During economic downturns, LIFO liquidation may result in higher gross profit than would otherwise be realised. If LIFO layers of inventory are temporarily depleted and not replaced by fiscal year-end, LIFO liquidation will occur resulting in unsustainable higher gross profits. Therefore, it is imperative to review the LIFO reserve footnote disclosures to determine if LIFO liquidation has occurred. A decline in the LIFO reserve from the prior period may be indicative of LIFO liquidation.

EXAMPLE 6

LIFO Liquidation: Financial Statement Impact and Disclosure

The following excerpts are from the 2007 10-K of Sturm Ruger & Co., Inc.:

Item 7 — Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations

“Reduction in inventory generated positive cash flow for the Company, partially offset by the tax impact of the consequent LIFO liquidation, which generated negative cash flow as it created taxable income, resulting in higher tax payments.”

Balance Sheets

(In thousands, except per share data)

December 31,	2007	2006
Assets		
Current Assets		
⋮	⋮	⋮
Gross inventories:	64,330	87,477

Balance Sheets*(In thousands, except per share data)*

December 31,	2007	2006
Less LIFO reserve	(46,890)	(57,555)
Less excess and obsolescence reserve	(4,143)	(5,516)
Net inventories	13,297	24,406
⋮	⋮	⋮
Total Current Assets	73,512	81,785
⋮	⋮	⋮
Total Assets	\$101,882	\$117,066

Statements of Income*(In thousands, except per share data)*

Year ended December 31,	2007	2006
⋮	⋮	⋮
Total net sales	156,485	167,620
Cost of products sold	117,186	139,610
Gross profit	39,299	28,010
Expenses:		
⋮	⋮	⋮
Total expenses	30,184	27,088
Operating income	9,115	922
⋮	⋮	⋮
Total other income, net	7,544	921
Income before income taxes	16,659	1,843
Income taxes	6,330	739
Net income	\$10,329	\$1,104
Basic and Diluted Earnings Per Share	\$0.46	\$0.04
Cash Dividends Per Share	\$0.00	\$0.00

Notes to Financial Statements**1. Significant Accounting Policies**

⋮

Inventories

Inventories are stated at the lower of cost, principally determined by the last-in, first-out (LIFO) method, or market. If inventories had been valued using the first-in, first-out method, inventory values would have been higher by approximately \$46.9 million and \$57.6 million at December 31, 2007 and 2006, respectively. During 2007 and 2006, inventory quantities were reduced. This reduction resulted in a liquidation of LIFO inventory quantities carried at lower costs prevailing in prior years as compared with the current cost of purchases, the effect of which decreased costs of products sold by approximately \$12.1 million and \$7.1 million in 2007 and 2006, respectively. There was no LIFO liquidation in 2005.

- 1 What is the decrease in the LIFO reserve on the balance sheet? How much less was the cost of products sold in 2007, because of LIFO liquidation, according to the note disclosure?

- 2 How did the decreased cost of products sold compare to operating income in 2007?
- 3 How did the LIFO liquidation affect cash flows?

Solution to 1:

The LIFO reserve decreased by \$10,665 thousands ($57,555 - 46,890$) in 2007. The LIFO liquidation decreased costs of products sold by approximately \$12.1 million in 2007. The decrease in the LIFO reserve is indicative of a LIFO liquidation but is not sufficient to determine the exact amount of the LIFO liquidation.

Solution to 2:

The decreased cost of products sold of approximately \$12.1 million exceeds the operating income of approximately \$9 million.

Solution to 3:

The LIFO liquidation (reduction in inventory) generated positive cash flow. The positive cash flow effect of the LIFO liquidation was reduced by its tax impact. The LIFO liquidation resulted in higher taxable income and higher tax payments.

EXAMPLE 7**LIFO Liquidation Illustration**

Reliable Fans, Inc. (RF), a hypothetical company, sells high quality fans and has been in business since 2006. Exhibit 4 provides relevant data and financial statement information about RF's inventory purchases and sales of fan inventory for the years 2006 through 2009. RF uses the LIFO method and a periodic inventory system. What amount of RF's 2009 gross profit is due to LIFO liquidation?

Exhibit 4 RF Financial Statement Information under LIFO

	2006	2007	2008	2009
Fans units purchased	12,000	12,000	12,000	12,000
Purchase cost per fan	\$100	\$105	\$110	\$115
Fans units sold	10,000	12,000	12,000	13,000
Sales price per fan	\$200	\$205	\$210	\$215
LIFO Method				
Beginning inventory	\$0	\$200,000	\$200,000	\$200,000
Purchases	1,200,000	1,260,000	1,320,000	1,380,000
Goods available for sale	1,200,000	1,460,000	1,520,000	1,580,000
Ending inventory*	(200,000)	(200,000)	(200,000)	(100,000)
Cost of goods sold	\$1,000,000	1,260,000	\$1,320,000	\$1,480,000
Income Statement				
Sales	\$2,000,000	\$2,460,000	\$2,520,000	\$2,795,000
Cost of goods sold	1,000,000	1,260,000	1,320,000	1,480,000
Gross profit	\$1,000,000	\$1,200,000	\$1,200,000	\$1,315,000

Exhibit 4 (Continued)

	2006	2007	2008	2009
Balance Sheet				
Inventory	\$200,000	\$200,000	\$200,000	\$100,000

* Ending inventory 2006, 2007, and 2008 = (2,000 × \$100); Ending inventory 2009 = (1,000 × \$100).

Solution:

RF's reported gross profit for 2009 is \$1,315,000. RF's 2009 gross profit due to LIFO liquidation is \$15,000. If RF had purchased 13,000 fans in 2009 rather than 12,000 fans, the cost of goods sold under the LIFO method would have been \$1,495,000 (13,000 fans sold at \$115.00 purchase cost per fan), and the reported gross profit would have been \$1,300,000 (\$2,795,000 less \$1,495,000). The gross profit due to LIFO liquidation is \$15,000 (\$1,315,000 reported gross profit less the \$1,300,000 gross profit that would have been reported without the LIFO liquidation). The gross profit due to LIFO liquidation may also be determined by multiplying the number of units liquidated times the difference between the replacement cost of the units liquidated and their historical purchase cost. For RF, 1,000 units times \$15 (\$115 replacement cost per fan less the \$100 historical cost per fan) equals the \$15,000 gross profit due to LIFO liquidation.

INVENTORY METHOD CHANGES**5**

Companies on rare occasion change inventory valuation methods. Under IFRS, a change in method is acceptable only if the change "results in the financial statements providing reliable and more relevant information about the effects of transactions, other events, or conditions on the business entity's financial position, financial performance, or cash flows."¹¹ If the change is justifiable, then it is applied retrospectively.

This means that the change is applied to comparative information for prior periods as far back as is practicable. The cumulative amount of the adjustments relating to periods prior to those presented in the current financial statements is made to the opening balance of each affected component of equity (i.e., retained earnings or comprehensive income) of the earliest period presented. For example, if a company changes its inventory method in 2009 and it presents three years of comparative financial statements (2007, 2008, and 2009) in its annual report, it would retrospectively reflect this change as far back as possible. The change would be reflected in the three years of financial statements presented; the financial statements for 2007 and 2008 would be restated as if the new method had been used in these periods, and the cumulative effect of the change on periods prior to 2007 would be reflected in the 2007 opening balance of each affected component of equity. An exemption to the restatement applies when it is impracticable to determine either the period-specific effects or the cumulative effect of the change.

11 IAS 8 [Accounting Policies, Changes in Accounting Estimates and Errors].

Under US GAAP, the conditions to make a change in accounting policy and the accounting for a change in inventory policy are similar to IFRS.¹² US GAAP, however, requires companies to thoroughly explain why the newly adopted inventory accounting method is superior and preferable to the old method. If a company decides to change from LIFO to another inventory method, US GAAP requires a retrospective restatement as described above. However, if a company decides to change to the LIFO method, it must do so on a prospective basis and retrospective adjustments are not made to the financial statements. The carrying amount of inventory under the old method becomes the initial LIFO layer in the year of LIFO adoption.

Analysts should carefully evaluate changes in inventory valuation methods. Although the stated reason for the inventory change may be to better match inventory costs with sales revenue (or some other plausible business explanation), the real underlying (and unstated) purpose may be to reduce income tax expense (if changing to LIFO from FIFO or average cost), or to increase reported profits (if changing from LIFO to FIFO or average cost). As always, the choice of inventory valuation method can have a significant impact on financial statements and the financial ratios that are derived from them. As a consequence, analysts must carefully consider the impact of the change in inventory valuation methods and the differences in inventory valuation methods when comparing a company's performance with that of its industry or its competitors.

6

INVENTORY ADJUSTMENTS

Significant financial risk can result from the holding of inventory. The cost of inventory may not be recoverable due to spoilage, obsolescence, or declines in selling prices. IFRS state that inventories shall be measured (and carried on the balance sheet) at the lower of cost and net realisable value.¹³ **Net realisable value** is the estimated selling price in the ordinary course of business less the estimated costs necessary to make the sale and estimated costs to get the inventory in condition for sale. The assessment of net realisable value is typically done item by item or by groups of similar or related items. In the event that the value of inventory declines below the carrying amount on the balance sheet, the inventory carrying amount must be written down to its net realisable value¹⁴ and the loss (reduction in value) recognised as an expense on the income statement. This expense may be included as part of cost of sales or reported separately.

In each subsequent period, a new assessment of net realisable value is made. Reversal (limited to the amount of the original write-down) is required for a subsequent increase in value of inventory previously written down. The reversal of any write-down of inventories is recognised as a reduction in cost of sales (reduction in the amount of inventories recognised as an expense).

US GAAP used to specify the lower of cost or market to value inventories.¹⁵ For fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2016, inventories measured using other than LIFO and retail inventory methods are measured at the lower of cost or net realisable value. This is broadly consistent with IFRS with one major difference: US GAAP prohibit the reversal of write-downs. For inventories measured using LIFO and

¹² FASB ASC Topic 250 [Accounting Changes and Error Corrections].

¹³ IAS 2 paragraphs 28–33 [Inventories – Net realisable value].

¹⁴ Frequently, rather than writing inventory down directly, an inventory valuation allowance account is used. The allowance account is netted with the inventory accounts to arrive at the carrying amount that appears on the balance sheet.

¹⁵ FASB ASC Section 330-10-35 [Inventory – Overall – Subsequent Measurement].

retail inventory methods, market value is defined as current replacement cost subject to upper and lower limits. Market value cannot exceed net realisable value (selling price less reasonably estimated costs of completion and disposal). The lower limit of market value is net realisable value less a normal profit margin. Any write-down to market value or net realisable value reduces the value of the inventory, and the loss in value (expense) is generally reflected in the income statement in cost of goods sold.

An inventory write-down reduces both profit and the carrying amount of inventory on the balance sheet and thus has a negative effect on profitability, liquidity, and solvency ratios. However, activity ratios (for example, inventory turnover and total asset turnover) will be positively affected by a write-down because the asset base (denominator) is reduced. The negative impact on some key ratios, due to the decrease in profit, may result in the reluctance by some companies to record inventory write-downs unless there is strong evidence that the decline in the value of inventory is permanent. This is especially true under US GAAP where reversal of a write-down is prohibited.

IAS 2 [Inventories] does not apply to the inventories of producers of agricultural and forest products and minerals and mineral products, nor to commodity broker-traders. These inventories may be measured at net realisable value (fair value less costs to sell and complete) according to well-established industry practices. If an active market exists for these products, the quoted market price in that market is the appropriate basis for determining the fair value of that asset. If an active market does not exist, a company may use market determined prices or values (such as the most recent market transaction price) when available for determining fair value. Changes in the value of inventory (increase or decrease) are recognised in profit or loss in the period of the change. US GAAP is similar to IFRS in its treatment of inventories of agricultural and forest products and mineral ores. Mark-to-market inventory accounting is allowed for bullion.

EXAMPLE 8

Accounting for Declines and Recoveries of Inventory Value

Acme Enterprises, a hypothetical company, manufactures computers and prepares its financial statements in accordance with IFRS. In 2008, the cost of ending inventory was €5.2 million but its net realisable value was €4.9 million. The current replacement cost of the inventory is €4.7 million. This figure exceeds the net realisable value less a normal profit margin. In 2009, the net realisable value of Acme's inventory was €0.5 million greater than the carrying amount.

- 1 What was the effect of the write-down on Acme's 2008 financial statements? What was the effect of the recovery on Acme's 2009 financial statements?
- 2 Under US GAAP, if Acme used the LIFO method, what would be the effects of the write-down on Acme's 2008 financial statements and of the recovery on Acme's 2009 financial statements?
- 3 What would be the effect of the recovery on Acme's 2009 financial statements if Acme's inventory were agricultural products instead of computers?

Solution to 1:

For 2008, Acme would write its inventory down to €4.9 million and record the change in value of €0.3 million as an expense on the income statement. For 2009, Acme would increase the carrying amount of its inventory and reduce the cost of sales by €0.3 million (the recovery is limited to the amount of the original write-down).

Solution to 2:

Under US GAAP, for 2008, Acme would write its inventory down to €4.7 million and typically include the change in value of €0.5 million in cost of goods sold on the income statement. For 2009, Acme would not reverse the write-down.

Solution to 3:

If Acme's inventory were agricultural products instead of computers, inventory would be measured at net realisable value and Acme would, therefore, increase inventory by and record a gain of €0.5 million for 2009.

Analysts should consider the possibility of an inventory write-down because the impact on a company's financial ratios may be substantial. The potential for inventory write-downs can be high for companies in industries where technological obsolescence of inventories is a significant risk. Analysts should carefully evaluate prospective inventory impairments (as well as other potential asset impairments) and their potential effects on the financial ratios when debt covenants include financial ratio requirements. The breaching of debt covenants can have a significant impact on a company.

Companies that use specific identification, weighted average cost, or FIFO methods are more likely to incur inventory write-downs than companies that use the LIFO method. Under the LIFO method, the *oldest* costs are reflected in the inventory carrying amount on the balance sheet. Given increasing inventory costs, the inventory carrying amounts under the LIFO method are already conservatively presented at the oldest and lowest costs. Thus, it is far less likely that inventory write-downs will occur under LIFO—and if a write-down does occur, it is likely to be of a lesser magnitude.

EXAMPLE 9**Effect of Inventory Write-downs on Financial Ratios**

The Volvo Group, based in Göteborg, Sweden, is a leading supplier of commercial transport products such as construction equipment, trucks, busses, and drive systems for marine and industrial applications as well as aircraft engine components.¹⁶ Excerpts from Volvo's consolidated financial statements are shown in Exhibits 5 and 6. Notes pertaining to Volvo's inventories are presented in Exhibit 7.

- 1 What inventory values would Volvo have reported for 2008, 2007, and 2006 if it had no allowance for inventory obsolescence?
- 2 Assuming that any changes to the allowance for inventory obsolescence are reflected in the cost of sales, what amount would Volvo's cost of sales be for 2008 and 2007 if it had not recorded inventory write-downs in 2008 and 2007?

¹⁶ As of this writing, the Volvo line of automobiles is not under the control and management of the Volvo Group.

- 3 What amount would Volvo's profit (net income) be for 2008 and 2007 if it had not recorded inventory write-downs in 2008 and 2007? Assume tax rates of 28.5 percent for 2008 and 30 percent for 2007.
- 4 What would Volvo's 2008 profit (net income) have been if it had reversed all past inventory write-downs in 2008? This question is independent of 1, 2, and 3. Assume a tax rate of 28.5 percent for 2008.
- 5 Compare the following for 2008 based on the numbers as reported and those assuming no allowance for inventory obsolescence as in questions 1, 2, and 3: inventory turnover ratio, days of inventory on hand, gross profit margin, and net profit margin.
- 6 CAT (Example 5) has no disclosures indicative of either inventory write-downs or a cumulative allowance for inventory obsolescence in its 2008 financial statements. Provide a conceptual explanation as to why Volvo incurred inventory write-downs for 2008 but CAT did not.

Exhibit 5 Volvo Group Consolidated Income Statements (Swedish Krona in millions, except per share data)

For the years ended 31 December	2008	2007	2006
Net sales	303,667	285,405	258,835
Cost of sales	(237,578)	(219,600)	(199,054)
Gross income	66,089	65,805	59,781
⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮
Operating income	15,851	22,231	20,399
Interest income and similar credits	1,171	952	666
Income expenses and similar charges	(1,935)	(1,122)	(585)
Other financial income and expenses	(1,077)	(504)	(181)
Income after financial items	14,010	21,557	20,299
Income taxes	(3,994)	(6,529)	(3,981)
Income for the period	10,016	15,028	16,318
Attributable to:			
Equity holders of the parent company	9,942	14,932	16,268
Minority interests	74	96	50
Profit	10,016	15,028	16,318

Exhibit 6 Volvo Group Consolidated Balance Sheets (Swedish Krona in millions)

31 December	2008	2007	2006
Assets			
Total non-current assets	196,381	162,487	124,039
Current assets:			
Inventories	55,045	43,645	34,211
⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮
Cash and cash equivalents	17,712	14,544	10,757

(continued)

Exhibit 6 (Continued)

31 December	2008	2007	2006
Total current assets	176,038	159,160	134,388
Total assets	372,419	321,647	258,427
Shareholders' equity and liabilities			
Shareholders' equity:			
Share capital	2,554	2,554	2,554
Reserves	5,078	2,146	1,664
Retained earnings	66,436	62,570	66,418
Income for the period	9,942	14,932	16,268
Equity attributable to equity holders of the parent company	84,010	82,202	86,904
Minority interests	630	579	284
Total shareholders' equity	84,640	82,781	87,188
Total non-current provisions	29,031	26,202	19,864
Total non-current liabilities	92,608	71,729	45,457
Total current provisions	11,750	10,656	9,799
Total current liabilities	154,390	130,279	96,119
Total shareholders' equity and liabilities	372,419	321,647	258,427

Exhibit 7 Volvo Group Selected Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements**Note 1. Accounting Principles****Inventories**

Inventories are reported at the lower of cost, in accordance with the first-in, first-out method (FIFO), or net realisable value. The acquisition value is based on the standard cost method, including costs for all direct manufacturing expenses and the apportionable share of the capacity and other related manufacturing costs. The standard costs are tested regularly and adjustments are made based on current conditions. Costs for research and development, selling, administration and financial expenses are not included. Net realisable value is calculated as the selling price less costs attributable to the sale.

Note 2. Key Sources of Estimation Uncertainty**Inventory obsolescence**

Inventories are reported at the lower of cost, in accordance with the first-in, first-out method (FIFO), or net realisable value. The estimated net realisable value includes management consideration of out-dated articles, over-stocking, physical damages, inventory-lead-time, handling and other selling costs. If the estimated net realisable value is lower than cost, a valuation allowance is established for inventory obsolescence. The total inventory value, net of inventory obsolescence allowance, is per 31 December 2008, SEK (in millions) 55,045.

Exhibit 7 (Continued)**Note 18. Inventories**

31 December (millions of Krona)	2008	2007	2006
Finished products	39,137	28,077	20,396
Production materials, etc.	15,908	15,568	13,815
Total	55,045	43,645	34,211

Increase (decrease) in allowance for inventory obsolescence

31 December (millions of Krona)	2008	2007	2006
Balance sheet, 31 December, preceding year	2,837	2,015	2,401
Increase in allowance for inventory obsolescence charged to income	1,229	757	186
Scrapping	(325)	(239)	(169)
Translation differences	305	2	(130)
Reclassifications, etc.	(524)	302	(273)
Balance sheet, 31 December	3,522	2,837	2,015

Solution to 1:

31 December (Swedish krona in millions)	2008	2007	2006
Total inventories, net	55,045	43,645	34,211
From Note 18. (Allowance for obsolescence)	3,522	2,837	2,015
Total inventories (without allowance)	58,567	46,482	36,226

Solution to 2:

31 December (Swedish krona in millions)	2008	2007
Cost of sales	237,578	219,600
Less: Increase in allowance for obsolescence*	-685	-822
Cost of sales (without allowance)	236,893	218,778

* From Note 18, the increase in allowance for obsolescence for 2008 is 685 (3,522 – 2,837) and for 2007 is 822 (2,837 – 2,015).

Solution to 3:

31 December (Swedish krona in millions)	2008	2007
Profit (Net income)	10,016	15,028
Reduction in cost of sales (increase in operating profit)	685	822
Taxes on increased operating profit*	-195	-247
Profit (without allowance)	10,506	15,603

* Taxes on the increased operating profit are assumed to be 195 ($685 \times 28.5\%$) for 2008 and 247 ($822 \times 30\%$) for 2007.

Solution to 4:

31 December (Swedish krona in millions)	2008
Profit (Net income)	10,016
Reduction in cost of sales (increase in operating profit)	3,522
Taxes on increased operating profit*	-1,004
Profit (after recovery of previous write-downs)	12,534

* Taxes on the increased operating profit are assumed to be 1,004 ($3,522 \times 28.5\%$) for 2008.

Solution to 5:

The Volvo Group's financial ratios for 2008 with the allowance for inventory obsolescence and without the allowance for inventory obsolescence are as follows:

	With Allowance (As Reported)	Without Allowance (Adjusted)
Inventory turnover ratio	4.81	4.51
Days of inventory on hand	76.1	81.2
Gross profit margin	21.76%	21.99%
Net profit margin	3.30%	3.46%

Inventory turnover ratio = Cost of sales ÷ Average inventory

With allowance (as reported) = 4.81 = $237,578 \div [(55,045 + 43,645) \div 2]$

Without allowance (adjusted) = 4.51 = $236,893 \div [(58,567 + 46,482) \div 2]$

Inventory turnover is higher based on the numbers as reported because cost of sales will be higher (assuming inventory write-downs are reported as part of cost of sales) and inventory carrying amounts will be lower with an allowance for inventory obsolescence. The company appears to manage its inventory more efficiently when it has inventory write-downs.

Days of inventory on hand = Number of days in period ÷ Inventory turnover ratio

With allowance (as reported) = 76.1 days = $(366 \text{ days}^* \div 4.81)$

Without allowance (adjusted) = 81.2 days = $(366 \text{ days} \div 4.51)$

*2008 was a leap year.

Days of inventory on hand are lower based on the numbers as reported because the inventory turnover is higher. A company with inventory write-downs might appear to manage its inventory more effectively. This is primarily the result of the lower inventory carrying amounts.

Gross profit margin = Gross income ÷ Net sales

With allowance (as reported) = 21.76 percent = $(66,089 \div 303,667)$

Without allowance (adjusted) = 21.99 percent = $[(66,089 + 685) \div 303,667]$

The gross profit margin is lower with inventory write-downs because the cost of sales is higher. This assumes that inventory write-downs are reported as part of cost of sales.

Net profit margin = Profit ÷ Net sales

With allowance (as reported) = 3.30 percent = $(10,016 \div 303,667)$

Without allowance (adjusted) = 3.46 percent = $(10,506 \div 303,667)$

The net profit margin is lower with inventory write-downs because the cost of sales is higher (assuming the inventory write-downs are reported as part of cost of sales). The absolute percentage difference is less than that of the gross profit margin because of income taxes on the increased income without write-downs.

The profitability ratios (gross profit margin and net profit margin) for Volvo Group would have been slightly better (higher) for 2008 if the company had not recorded inventory write-downs. The activity ratio (inventory turnover ratio) would appear less attractive without the write-downs. The inventory turnover ratio is slightly better (higher) with inventory write-downs because inventory write-downs increase cost of sales (numerator) and decrease the average inventory (denominator), making inventory management appear more efficient with write-downs.

Solution to 6:

CAT uses the LIFO method whereas Volvo uses the FIFO method. Given increasing inventory costs, companies that use the FIFO inventory method are far more likely to incur inventory write-downs than those companies that use the LIFO method. This is because under the LIFO method, the inventory carrying amounts reflect the *oldest* costs and therefore the *lowest* costs given increasing inventory costs. Because inventory carrying amounts under the LIFO method are already conservatively presented, it is less likely that inventory write-downs will occur.

EVALUATION OF INVENTORY MANAGEMENT

7

The choice of inventory valuation method impacts the financial statements. The financial statement items impacted include cost of sales, gross profit, net income, inventories, current assets, and total assets. Therefore, the choice of inventory valuation method also affects financial ratios that contain these items. Ratios such as current ratio, return on assets, gross profit margin, and inventory turnover are impacted. As a consequence, analysts must carefully consider inventory valuation method differences when evaluating a company's performance over time or when comparing its performance with the performance of the industry or industry competitors. Additionally, the financial statement items and ratios may be impacted by adjustments of inventory carrying amounts to net realisable value or current replacement cost.

7.1 Presentation and Disclosure

Disclosures are useful when analyzing a company. IFRS require the following financial statement disclosures concerning inventory:

- a the accounting policies adopted in measuring inventories, including the cost formula (inventory valuation method) used;
- b the total carrying amount of inventories and the carrying amount in classifications (for example, merchandise, raw materials, production supplies, work in progress, and finished goods) appropriate to the entity;
- c the carrying amount of inventories carried at fair value less costs to sell;
- d the amount of inventories recognised as an expense during the period (cost of sales);
- e the amount of any write-down of inventories recognised as an expense in the period;
- f the amount of any reversal of any write-down that is recognised as a reduction in cost of sales in the period;
- g the circumstances or events that led to the reversal of a write-down of inventories; and
- h the carrying amount of inventories pledged as security for liabilities.

Inventory-related disclosures under US GAAP are very similar to the disclosures above, except that requirements (f) and (g) are not relevant because US GAAP do not permit the reversal of prior-year inventory write-downs. US GAAP also require disclosure of significant estimates applicable to inventories and of any material amount of income resulting from the liquidation of LIFO inventory.

7.2 Inventory Ratios

Three ratios often used to evaluate the efficiency and effectiveness of inventory management are **inventory turnover**, **days of inventory on hand**, and **gross profit margin**.¹⁷ These ratios are directly impacted by a company's choice of inventory valuation method. Analysts should be aware, however, that many other ratios are also affected by the choice of inventory valuation method, although less directly. These include the current ratio, because inventory is a component of current assets; the return-on-assets ratio, because cost of sales is a key component in deriving net income and inventory is a component of total assets; and even the debt-to-equity ratio, because the cumulative measured net income from the inception of a business is an aggregate component of retained earnings.

The inventory turnover ratio measures the number of times during the year a company sells (i.e., turns over) its inventory. The higher the turnover ratio, the more times that inventory is sold during the year and the lower the relative investment of resources in inventory. Days of inventory on hand can be calculated as days in the period divided by inventory turnover. Thus, inventory turnover and days of inventory on hand are inversely related. It may be that inventory turnover, however, is calculated using average inventory in the year whereas days of inventory on hand is based on the ending inventory amount. In general, inventory turnover and the number of days of inventory on hand should be benchmarked against industry norms and compared across years.

¹⁷ *Days of inventory on hand* is also referred to as *days in inventory* and *average inventory days outstanding*.

A high inventory turnover ratio and a low number of days of inventory on hand might indicate highly effective inventory management. Alternatively, a high inventory ratio and a low number of days of inventory on hand could indicate that the company does not carry an adequate amount of inventory or that the company has written down inventory values. Inventory shortages could potentially result in lost sales or production problems in the case of the raw materials inventory of a manufacturer. To assess which explanation is more likely, analysts can compare the company's inventory turnover and sales growth rate with those of the industry and review financial statement disclosures. Slower growth combined with higher inventory turnover could indicate inadequate inventory levels. Write-downs of inventory could reflect poor inventory management. Minimal write-downs and sales growth rates at or above the industry's growth rates would support the interpretation that the higher turnover reflects greater efficiency in managing inventory.

A low inventory turnover ratio and a high number of days of inventory on hand relative to industry norms could be an indicator of slow-moving or obsolete inventory. Again, comparing the company's sales growth across years and with the industry and reviewing financial statement disclosures can provide additional insight.

The gross profit margin, the ratio of gross profit to sales, indicates the percentage of sales being contributed to net income as opposed to covering the cost of sales. Firms in highly competitive industries generally have lower gross profit margins than firms in industries with fewer competitors. A company's gross profit margin may be a function of its type of product. A company selling luxury products will generally have higher gross profit margins than a company selling staple products. The inventory turnover of the company selling luxury products, however, is likely to be much lower than the inventory turnover of the company selling staple products.

7.3 Financial Analysis Illustrations

IFRS and US GAAP require companies to disclose, either on the balance sheet or in the notes to the financial statements, the carrying amounts of inventories in classifications suitable to the company. For manufacturing companies, these classifications might include production supplies, raw materials, work in progress, and finished goods. For a retailer, these classifications might include significant categories of merchandise or the grouping of inventories with similar attributes. These disclosures may provide signals about a company's future sales and profits.

For example, a significant increase (attributable to increases in unit volume rather than increases in unit cost) in raw materials and/or work-in-progress inventories may signal that the company expects an increase in demand for its products. This suggests an anticipated increase in sales and profit. However, a substantial increase in finished goods inventories while raw materials and work-in-progress inventories are declining may signal a decrease in demand for the company's products and hence lower future sales and profit. This may also signal a potential future write down of finished goods inventory. Irrespective of the signal, an analyst should thoroughly investigate the underlying reasons for any significant changes in a company's raw materials, work-in-progress, and finished goods inventories.

Analysts also should compare the growth rate of a company's sales to the growth rate of its finished goods inventories, because this could also provide a signal about future sales and profits. For example, if the growth of inventories is greater than the growth of sales, this could indicate a decline in demand and a decrease in future earnings. The company may have to lower (mark down) the selling price of its products to reduce its inventory balances, or it may have to write down the value of its inventory because of obsolescence, both of which would negatively affect profits. Besides the potential for mark-downs or write-downs, having too much inventory on hand or the wrong type of inventory can have a negative financial effect on a company because

it increases inventory related expenses such as insurance, storage costs, and taxes. In addition, it means that the company has less cash and working capital available to use for other purposes.

Inventory write-downs may have a substantial impact on a company's activity, profitability, liquidity, and solvency ratios. It is critical for the analyst to be aware of industry trends toward product obsolescence and to analyze the financial ratios for their sensitivity to potential inventory impairment. Companies can minimise the impact of inventory write-downs by better matching their inventory composition and growth with prospective customer demand. To obtain additional information about a company's inventory and its future sales, a variety of sources of information are available. Analysts should consider the Management Discussion and Analysis (MD&A) or similar sections of the company's financial reports, industry related news and publications, and industry economic data.

When conducting comparisons, differences in the choice of inventory valuation method can significantly affect the comparability of financial ratios between companies. A restatement from the LIFO method to the FIFO method is critical to make a valid comparison with companies using a method other than the LIFO method such as those companies reporting under IFRS. Analysts should seek out as much information as feasible when analyzing the performance of companies.

EXAMPLE 10

Comparative Illustration

- 1 Using CAT's LIFO numbers as reported and FIFO adjusted numbers (Example 5) and Volvo's numbers as reported (Example 9), compare the following for 2008: inventory turnover ratio, days of inventory on hand, gross profit margin, net profit margin, return on assets, current ratio, total liabilities-to-equity ratio, and return on equity. For the current ratio, include current provisions as part of current liabilities. For the total liabilities-to-equity ratio, include provisions in total liabilities.
- 2 How much do inventories represent as a component of total assets for CAT using LIFO numbers as reported and FIFO adjusted numbers, and for Volvo using reported numbers in 2007 and 2008? Discuss any changes that would concern an analyst.
- 3 Using the reported numbers, compare the 2007 and 2008 growth rates of CAT and Volvo for sales, finished goods inventory, and inventories other than finished goods.

Solution to 1:

The comparisons between Caterpillar and Volvo for 2008 are as follows:

	CAT (LIFO)	CAT (FIFO)	Volvo
Inventory turnover ratio	4.81	3.47	4.81
Days of inventory on hand	76.1 days	105.5 days	76.1 days
Gross profit margin	20.04%	21.22%	21.76%
Net profit margin	6.93%	7.81%	3.30%
Return on assets ^a	5.74%	6.18%	2.89%
Current ratio ^b	1.21	1.34	1.06

	CAT (LIFO)	CAT (FIFO)	Volvo
Total liabilities-to-equity ratio ^c	10.05	7.41	3.40
Return on equity ^d	47.5%	42.0%	12.0%

Calculations for ratios previously calculated (see Examples 5 and 9) are not shown again.

^a Return on assets = Net income ÷ Average total assets

Volvo = 2.89 percent = $10,016 \div [(372,419 + 321,647) \div 2]$

^b Current ratio = Current assets ÷ Current liabilities

Volvo = 1.06 = $[176,038 \div (11,750 + 154,390)]$

The question indicates to include current provisions in current liabilities.

^c Total liabilities-to-equity ratio = Total liabilities ÷ Total shareholders' equity

Volvo = 3.40 = $[(29,031 + 92,608 + 11,750 + 154,390) \div 84,640]$

The question indicates to include provisions in total liabilities.

^d Return on equity = Net income ÷ Average shareholders' equity

CAT (LIFO) = 47.5 percent = $3,557 \div [(6,087 + 8,883) \div 2]$

CAT (FIFO) = 42.0 percent = $4,010 \div \{[(6,087 + 3,183 - 898) + (8,883 + 2,617 - 785)] \div 2\}$

Volvo = 12.0 percent = $10,016 \div [(84,640 + 82,781) \div 2]$

Comparing CAT (FIFO) and Volvo, it appears that Volvo manages its inventory more effectively. It has higher inventory turnover and less days of inventory on hand. CAT appears to have superior profitability based on net profit margins. CAT did report some losses as other comprehensive income in the balance sheet (see Exhibit 2) as indicated by the absolute increase in the negative accumulated other comprehensive income. The absolute increase in the negative accumulated other comprehensive income results in a reduction of shareholders' equity which makes CAT's return on equity higher. The higher leverage of CAT also increases the return on equity. The sources of CAT's higher return on equity (reporting losses through other comprehensive income and higher leverage) should be of concern to an analyst. An analyst should investigate further, rather than reaching a conclusion based on ratios alone (in other words, try to identify the underlying causes of changes or differences in ratios).

Solution to 2:

The 2008 and 2007 inventory to total assets ratios for CAT using LIFO and adjusted to FIFO and for Volvo as reported, are as follows:

	CAT (LIFO)	CAT (FIFO)	Volvo
2008	12.95%	17.08%	14.78%
2007	12.83%	16.94%	13.57%

Inventory to total assets

CAT (LIFO) 2008 = 12.95 percent = $8,781 \div 67,782$

CAT (LIFO) 2007 = 12.83 percent = $7,204 \div 56,132$

CAT (FIFO) 2008 = 17.08 percent = $11,964 \div (67,782 + 3,183 - 898)$

CAT (FIFO) 2007 = 16.94 percent = $9,821 \div (56,132 + 2,617 - 785)$

Volvo 2008 = 14.78 percent = $55,045 \div 372,419$

Volvo 2007 = 13.57 percent = $43,645 \div 321,647$

Based on the numbers as reported, CAT appears to have a lower percentage of assets tied up in inventory than Volvo. However, when CAT's inventory is adjusted to FIFO, it has a higher percentage of its assets tied up in inventory than Volvo.

The increase in Volvo's inventory as a percentage of total assets is cause for some concern. Higher inventory typically results in higher maintenance costs (for example, storage and financing costs). In addition, Volvo may be building up slow moving or obsolete inventories that may result in future inventory write-downs for 2009. In Volvo's Note 18, the breakdown by inventory classification shows a small increase in the inventory of production materials. It appears that Volvo is planning on reducing production until it reduces its finished goods inventory. Looking at CAT's Note 9, all classifications of inventory seem to be increasing and because these are valued using the LIFO method, there is some cause for concern. The company must be increasing inventory quantities and adding LIFO layers.

Solution to 3:

CAT's and Volvo's 2008 and 2007 growth rates for sales (for CAT use Sales of machinery and engines and for Volvo use Net sales), finished goods, and inventories other than finished goods are as follows:

2008	CAT	Volvo
Sales	14.5%	6.4%
Finished goods	31.2%	39.4%
Inventories other than finished goods	15.0%	2.2%

2007	CAT	Volvo
Sales	8.0%	10.3%
Finished goods	10.1%	37.7%
Inventories other than finished goods	16.0%	12.7%

Growth rate = (Value for year – Value for previous year)/Value for previous year

2008 CAT

$$\text{Sales} = 14.5 \text{ percent} = (48,044 - 41,962) \div 41,962$$

$$\text{Finished goods} = 31.2 \text{ percent} = (4,022 - 3,066) \div 3,066$$

$$\text{Inventories other than finished goods} = 15.0 \text{ percent} = [(3,356 + 1,107 + 296) - (2,990 + 863 + 285)] \div (2,990 + 863 + 285)$$

2008 Volvo

$$\text{Sales} = 6.4 \text{ percent} = (303,667 - 285,405) \div 285,405$$

$$\text{Finished products} = 39.4 \text{ percent} = (39,137 - 28,077) \div 28,077$$

$$\text{Inventories other than finished products} = 2.2 \text{ percent} = (15,908 - 15,568) \div 15,568$$

2007 CAT

$$\text{Sales} = 8.0 \text{ percent} = (41,962 - 38,869) \div 38,869$$

$$\text{Finished goods} = 10.1 \text{ percent} = (3,066 - 2,785) \div 2,785$$

$$\text{Inventories other than finished goods} = 16.0 \text{ percent} = [(2,990 + 863 + 285) - (2,698 + 591 + 277)] \div (2,698 + 591 + 277)$$

2007 Volvo

$$\text{Sales} = 10.3 \text{ percent} = (285,405 - 258,835) \div 258,835$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Finished products} &= 37.7 \text{ percent} = (28,077 - 20,396) \div 20,396 \\ \text{Inventories other than finished products} &= 12.7 \text{ percent} = (15,568 - 13,815) \\ &\div 13,815 \end{aligned}$$

For both companies, the growth rates in finished goods inventory exceeds the growth rate in sales; this could be indicative of accumulating excess inventory. Volvo's growth rate in finished goods compared to its growth rate in sales is significantly higher but the lower growth rates in finished goods inventory for CAT is potentially a result of using the LIFO method versus the FIFO method. It appears Volvo is aware that an issue exists and is planning on cutting back production given the relatively small increase in inventories other than finished products. Regardless, an analyst should do further investigation before reaching any conclusion about a company's future prospects for sales and profit.

EXAMPLE 11

Management Discussion and Analysis

The following excerpts commenting on inventory management are from the Volvo Group Annual Report, 2008:

From the CEO Comment: "In a declining economy, it is extremely important to act quickly to reduce the Group's cost level and ensure we do not build inventories, since large inventories generally lead to pressure on prices." ... "During the second half of the year, we implemented sharp production cutbacks to lower inventories of new trucks and construction equipment as part of efforts to maintain our product prices, which represent one of the most important factors in securing favorable profitability in the future. We have been successful in these efforts. During the fourth quarter, inventories of new trucks declined 13% and of new construction equipment by 19%. During the beginning of 2009, we have continued to work diligently and focused to reduce inventories to the new, lower levels of demand that prevail in most of our markets, and for most of our products."

From the Board of Directors' Report 2008: "Inventory reduction contributed to positive operating cash flow of SEK 1.8 billion in Industrial Operations." ... "The value of inventories increased during 2008 by SEK 11.4 billion. Adjusted for currency changes, the increase amounted to SEK 5.8 billion. The increase is mainly related to the truck operations and to construction equipment and is an effect of the rapidly weakening demand during the second half of the year." ... "In order to reduce the capital tied-up in inventory, a number of shutdown days in production were carried out during the end of year. Measures aimed at selling primarily trucks and construction equipment in inventory were prioritized. These measures have continued during the beginning of 2009." and "Overcapacity within the industry can occur if there is a lack of demand, potentially leading to increased price pressure."

From Business Areas 2008 (Ambitions 2009): “Execute on cost reduction and adjust production to ensure inventory levels in line with demand.”

Assume inventory write-downs are reported as part of cost of sales. Based on the excerpts above, discuss the anticipated direction of the following for 2009 compared to 2008:

- 1 Inventory carrying amounts
- 2 Inventory turnover ratio
- 3 Sales
- 4 Gross profit margin
- 5 Return on assets
- 6 Current ratio

Solution to 1:

Inventory carrying amounts are expected to decrease as the company cuts back on inventory levels and pressures are exerted on costs and prices.

Solution to 2:

Inventory turnover ratio is expected to increase. Any potential change in cost of sales will be more than offset by the decline in inventory carrying amounts.

Solution to 3:

Unit sales and sales revenues are expected to decline due to decrease in demand and pressure on prices.

Solution to 4:

Gross profit margin is difficult to predict. Sales revenues are expected to decline but cost of sales as a percentage of sales revenue may decline if cost controls are effective, stay the same if cost controls are offset by increased inventory write-downs, or increase if inventory write-downs more than offset cost controls. In this case, an analyst might use 2008's gross profit margin of 21.8 percent as a reasonable prediction. It is less than the 2006 and 2007 gross profit margin of 23.1 percent and may already reflect cost controls, price pressures, and inventory write-downs.

Solution to 5:

Return on assets is expected to decline. The positive effects of cost controls and reduction in assets is likely to be offset by decreased net income due to the declining sales revenues.

Solution to 6:

The direction of change in the current ratio is difficult to predict. Current assets are expected to be reduced but current liabilities are also expected to be reduced as costs are controlled and purchases are reduced resulting in lower accounts payable.

EXAMPLE 12**Single Company Illustration**

Selected excerpts from the consolidated financial statements and notes to consolidated financial statements for Alcatel-Lucent (ALU) are presented in Exhibits 8, 9, and 10. Exhibit 8 contains excerpts from the consolidated income statements, and Exhibit 9 contains excerpts from the consolidated balance sheets. Exhibit 10 contains excerpts from three of the notes to consolidated financial statements.

Note 1 (i) discloses that ALU's finished goods inventories and work in progress are valued at the lower of cost or net realisable value. Note 2 (a) discloses that the impact of inventory and work in progress write-downs on ALU's income before tax was a net reduction of €285 million in 2008, a net reduction of €186 million in 2007, and a net reduction of €77 million in 2006.¹⁸ The inventory impairment loss amounts steadily increased from 2006 to 2008 and are included as a component, (additions)/reversals, of ALU's change in valuation allowance as disclosed in Note 19 (b) from Exhibit 10. Observe also that ALU discloses its valuation allowance at 31 December 2008, 2007, and 2006 in Note 19 (b) and details on the allocation of the allowance are included in Note 19 (a). The €654 million valuation allowance is the total of a €629 million allowance for inventories and a €25 million allowance for work in progress on construction contracts. Finally, observe that the €2,196 million net value for inventories (excluding construction contracts) at 31 December 2008 in Note 19 (a) reconciles with the balance sheet amount for inventories and work in progress, net, on 31 December 2008, as presented in Exhibit 9.

The inventory valuation allowance represents the total amount of inventory write-downs taken for the inventory reported on the balance sheet (which is measured at the lower of cost or net realisable value). Therefore, an analyst can determine the historical cost of the company's inventory by adding the inventory valuation allowance to the reported inventory carrying amount on the balance sheet. The valuation allowance increased in magnitude and as a percentage of gross inventory values from 2006 to 2008.

Exhibit 8 Alcatel-Lucent Consolidated Income Statements (€ millions)

For years ended 31 December	2008	2007	2006
Revenues	16,984	17,792	12,282
Cost of sales	(11,190)	(12,083)	(8,214)
Gross profit	5,794	5,709	4,068
Administrative and selling expenses	(3,093)	(3,462)	(1,911)
Research and development costs	(2,757)	(2,954)	(1,470)
Income from operating activities before restructuring costs, impairment of assets, gain/(loss) on disposal of consolidated entities, and post-retirement benefit plan amendments	(56)	(707)	687
Restructuring costs	(562)	(856)	(707)
Impairment of assets	(4,725)	(2,944)	(141)
Gain/(loss) on disposal of consolidated entities	(7)	—	15
Post-retirement benefit plan amendments	47	258	—

(continued)

¹⁸ This reduction is often referred to as a *charge*. An accounting charge is the recognition of a loss or expense. In this case, the charge is attributable to the impairment of assets.

Exhibit 8 (Continued)

For years ended 31 December	2008	2007	2006
Income (loss) from operating activities	(5,303)	(4,249)	(146)
⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮
Income (loss) from continuing operations	(5,206)	(4,087)	(219)
Income (loss) from discontinued operations	33	610	158
Net income (loss)	(5,173)	(3,477)	(61)

Exhibit 9 Alcatel-Lucent Consolidated Balance Sheets (€ millions)

31 December	2008	2007	2006
⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮
Total non-current assets	12,742	20,135	25,665
Inventories and work in progress, net	2,196	2,235	2,259
Amounts due from customers on construction contracts	495	704	615
Trade receivables and related accounts, net	4,330	4,163	3,877
Advances and progress payments	99	110	87
⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮
Total current assets	14,569	13,695	16,225
Total assets	27,311	33,830	41,890
⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮
Retained earnings, fair value, and other reserves	(8,820)	(3,821)	(3,441)
⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮
Total shareholders' equity	5,224	11,702	16,323
Pensions, retirement indemnities, and other post-retirement benefits	4,807	4,447	5,449
Bonds and notes issued, long-term	3,931	4,517	4,901
Other long-term debt	67	48	147
Deferred tax liabilities	1,152	1,897	2,583
Other non-current liabilities	443	366	276
Total non-current liabilities	10,400	11,275	13,356
Provisions	2,424	2,566	2,366
Current portion of long-term debt	1,097	483	1,161
Customers' deposits and advances	929	847	778
Amounts due to customers on construction contracts	188	407	273
Trade payables and related accounts	4,571	4,514	4,027
Liabilities related to disposal groups held for sale	—	—	1,606
Current income tax liabilities	185	70	66
Other current liabilities	2,293	1,966	1,934
Total current liabilities	11,687	10,853	12,211
Total liabilities and shareholders' equity	27,311	33,830	41,890

Exhibit 10 Alcatel-Lucent Selected Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements
Note 1. Summary of Significant Accounting Policies
(i) Inventories and work in progress

Inventories and work in progress are valued at the lower of cost (including indirect production costs where applicable) or net realizable value.¹⁹ Net realizable value is the estimated sales revenue for a normal period of activity less expected completion and selling costs.

Note 2. Principal uncertainties regarding the use of estimates
(a) Valuation allowance for inventories and work in progress

Inventories and work in progress are measured at the lower of cost or net realizable value. Valuation allowances for inventories and work in progress are calculated based on an analysis of foreseeable changes in demand, technology, or the market, in order to determine obsolete or excess inventories and work in progress.

The valuation allowances are accounted for in cost of sales or in restructuring costs, depending on the nature of the amounts concerned.

(€ millions)	31 December		
	2008	2007	2006
Valuation allowance for inventories and work in progress on construction contracts	(654)	(514)	(378)
Impact of inventory and work in progress write-downs on income (loss) before income tax related reduction of goodwill and discounted operations	(285)	(186)	(77)

Note 19. Inventories and work in progress
(a) Analysis of net value

(€ millions)	2008	2007	2006
Raw materials and goods	649	564	542
Work in progress excluding construction contracts	972	958	752
Finished goods	1,204	1,185	1,320
Gross value (excluding construction contracts)	2,825	2,707	2,614
Valuation allowance	(629)	(472)	(355)
Net value (excluding construction contracts)	2,196	2,235	2,259
Work in progress on construction contracts, gross*	219	272	347
Valuation allowance	(25)	(42)	(23)
Work in progress on construction contracts, net	194	230	324
Total, net	2,390	2,465	2,583

* Included in the amounts due from/to construction contracts.

¹⁹ Cost approximates cost on a first-in, first-out basis.

(b) Change in valuation allowance

(€ millions)	2008	2007	2006
At 1 January	(514)	(378)	(423)
(Additions)/reversals	(285)	(186)	(77)
Utilization	69	38	54
Changes in consolidation group	—	—	54
Net effect of exchange rate changes and other changes	75	12	14
At 31 December	(654)	(514)	(378)

Rounding differences may result in totals that are different from the sum.

- 1 Calculate ALU's inventory turnover, number of days of inventory on hand, gross profit margin, current ratio, debt-to-equity ratio, and return on total assets for 2008 and 2007 based on the numbers reported. Use an average for inventory and total asset amounts and year-end numbers for other ratio items. For debt, include only bonds and notes issued, long-term; other long-term debt; and current portion of long-term debt.
- 2 Based on the answer to Question 1, comment on the changes from 2007 to 2008.
- 3 If ALU had used the weighted average cost method instead of the FIFO method during 2008, 2007, and 2006, what would be the effect on ALU's reported cost of sales and inventory carrying amounts? What would be the directional impact on the financial ratios that were calculated for ALU in Question 1, above?

Solution to 1:

The financial ratios are as follows:

	2008	2007
Inventory turnover ratio	5.05	5.38
Number of days of inventory	72.3 days	67.8 days
Gross profit margin	34.1%	32.1%
Current ratio	1.25	1.26
Debt-to-equity ratio	0.98	0.43
Return on total assets	-16.9%	-9.2%

Inventory turnover ratio = Cost of sales ÷ Average inventory

$$2008 \text{ inventory turnover ratio} = 5.05 = 11,190 \div [(2,196 + 2,235) \div 2]$$

$$2007 \text{ inventory turnover ratio} = 5.38 = 12,083 \div [(2,235 + 2,259) \div 2]$$

Number of days of inventory = 365 days ÷ Inventory turnover ratio

$$2008 \text{ number of days of inventory} = 72.3 \text{ days} = 365 \text{ days} \div 5.05$$

$$2007 \text{ number of days of inventory} = 67.8 \text{ days} = 365 \text{ days} \div 5.38$$

Gross profit margin = Gross profit ÷ Total revenue

$$2008 \text{ gross profit margin} = 34.1\% = 5,794 \div 16,984$$

$$2007 \text{ gross profit margin} = 32.1\% = 5,709 \div 17,792$$

Current ratio = Current assets ÷ Current liabilities

$$2008 \text{ current ratio} = 1.25 = 14,569 \div 11,687$$

$$2007 \text{ current ratio} = 1.26 = 13,695 \div 10,853$$

Debt-to-equity ratio = Total debt ÷ Total shareholders' equity

$$2008 \text{ debt-to-equity ratio} = 0.98 = (3,931 + 67 + 1,097) \div 5,224$$

$$2007 \text{ debt-to-equity ratio} = 0.43 = (4,517 + 48 + 483) \div 11,702$$

Return on assets = Net income ÷ Average total assets

$$2008 \text{ return on assets} = -16.9\% = -5,173 \div [(27,311 + 33,830) \div 2]$$

$$2007 \text{ return on assets} = -9.2\% = -3,477 \div [(33,830 + 41,890) \div 2]$$

Solution to 2:

From 2007 to 2008, the inventory turnover ratio declined and the number of days of inventory increased by 4.5 days. ALU appears to be managing inventory less efficiently. The gross profit margin improved by 2.0 percent, from 32.1 percent in 2007 to 34.1 percent in 2008. The current ratio is relatively unchanged from 2007 to 2008. The debt-to-equity ratio has risen significantly in 2008 compared to 2007. Although ALU's total debt has been relatively stable during this time period, the company's equity has been declining rapidly because of the cumulative effect of its net losses on retained earnings.

The return on assets is negative and got worse in 2008 compared to 2007. A larger net loss and lower total assets in 2008 resulted in a higher negative return on assets. The analyst should investigate the underlying reasons for the sharp decline in ALU's return on assets. From Exhibit 8, it is apparent that ALU's gross profit margins were insufficient to cover the administrative and selling expenses and research and development costs in 2007 and 2008. Large restructuring costs and asset impairment losses contributed to the loss from operating activities in both 2007 and 2008.

Solution to 3:

If inventory replacement costs were increasing during 2006, 2007, and 2008 (and inventory quantity levels were stable or increasing), ALU's cost of sales would have been higher and its gross profit margin would have been lower under the weighted average cost inventory method than what was reported under the FIFO method (assuming no inventory write-downs that would otherwise neutralize the differences between the inventory valuation methods). FIFO allocates the oldest inventory costs to cost of sales; the reported cost of sales would be lower under FIFO given increasing inventory costs. Inventory carrying amounts would be higher under the FIFO method than under the weighted average cost method because the more recently purchased inventory items would be included in inventory at their higher costs (again assuming no inventory write-downs that would otherwise neutralize the differences between the inventory valuation methods). Consequently, ALU's reported gross profit, net income, and retained earnings would also be higher for those years under the FIFO method.

The effects on ratios are as follows:

- The inventory turnover ratios would all be higher under the weighted average cost method because the numerator (cost of sales) would be higher and the denominator (inventory) would be lower than what was reported by ALU under the FIFO method.
- The number of days of inventory would be lower under the weighted average cost method because the inventory turnover ratios would be higher.
- The gross profit margin ratios would all be lower under the weighted average cost method because cost of sales would be higher under the weighted average cost method than under the FIFO method.
- The current ratios would all be lower under the weighted average cost method because inventory carrying values would be lower than under the FIFO method (current liabilities would be the same under both methods).
- The return-on-assets ratios would all be lower under the weighted average cost method because the incremental profit added to the numerator (net income) has a greater impact than the incremental increase to the denominator (total assets). By way of example, assume that a company has €3 million in net income and €100 million in total assets using the weighted average cost method. If the company reports another €1 million in net income by using FIFO instead of weighted average cost, it would then also report an additional €1 million in total assets (after tax). Based on this example, the return on assets is 3.00 percent ($€3/€100$) under the weighted average cost method and 3.96 percent ($€4/€101$) under the FIFO method.
- The debt-to-equity ratios would all be higher under the weighted average cost method because retained earnings would be lower than under the FIFO method (again assuming no inventory write-downs that would otherwise neutralize the differences between the inventory valuation methods).

Conversely, if inventory replacement costs were decreasing during 2006, 2007, and 2008 (and inventory quantity levels were stable or increasing), ALU's cost of sales would have been lower and its gross profit and inventory would have been higher under the weighted average cost method than were reported under the FIFO method (assuming no inventory write-downs that would otherwise neutralize the differences between the inventory valuation methods). As a result, the ratio assessment that was performed above would result in directly opposite conclusions.

SUMMARY

The choice of inventory valuation method (cost formula or cost flow assumption) can have a potentially significant impact on inventory carrying amounts and cost of sales. These in turn impact other financial statement items, such as current assets, total assets, gross profit, and net income. The financial statements and accompanying

notes provide important information about a company's inventory accounting policies that the analyst needs to correctly assess financial performance and compare it with that of other companies. Key concepts in this reading are as follows:

- Inventories are a major factor in the analysis of merchandising and manufacturing companies. Such companies generate their sales and profits through inventory transactions on a regular basis. An important consideration in determining profits for these companies is measuring the cost of sales when inventories are sold.
- The total cost of inventories comprises all costs of purchase, costs of conversion, and other costs incurred in bringing the inventories to their present location and condition. Storage costs of finished inventory and abnormal costs due to waste are typically treated as expenses in the period in which they occurred.
- The allowable inventory valuation methods implicitly involve different assumptions about cost flows. The choice of inventory valuation method determines how the cost of goods available for sale during the period is allocated between inventory and cost of sales.
- IFRS allow three inventory valuation methods (cost formulas): first-in, first-out (FIFO); weighted average cost; and specific identification. The specific identification method is used for inventories of items that are not ordinarily interchangeable and for goods or services produced and segregated for specific projects. US GAAP allow the three methods above plus the last-in, first-out (LIFO) method. The LIFO method is widely used in the United States for both tax and financial reporting purposes because of potential income tax savings.
- The choice of inventory method affects the financial statements and any financial ratios that are based on them. As a consequence, the analyst must carefully consider inventory valuation method differences when evaluating a company's performance over time or in comparison to industry data or industry competitors.
- A company must use the same cost formula for all inventories having a similar nature and use to the entity.
- The inventory accounting system (perpetual or periodic) may result in different values for cost of sales and ending inventory when the weighted average cost or LIFO inventory valuation method is used.
- Under US GAAP, companies that use the LIFO method must disclose in their financial notes the amount of the LIFO reserve or the amount that would have been reported in inventory if the FIFO method had been used. This information can be used to adjust reported LIFO inventory and cost of goods sold balances to the FIFO method for comparison purposes.
- LIFO liquidation occurs when the number of units in ending inventory declines from the number of units that were present at the beginning of the year. If inventory unit costs have generally risen from year to year, this will produce an inventory-related increase in gross profits.
- Consistency of inventory costing is required under both IFRS and US GAAP. If a company changes an accounting policy, the change must be justifiable and applied retrospectively to the financial statements. An exception to the retrospective restatement is when a company reporting under US GAAP changes to the LIFO method.
- Under IFRS, inventories are measured at the lower of cost and net realisable value. Net realisable value is the estimated selling price in the ordinary course of business less the estimated costs necessary to make the sale. Under US GAAP, inventories are measured at the lower of cost, market value, or net

realisable value depending upon the inventory method used. Market value is defined as current replacement cost subject to an upper limit of net realizable value and a lower limit of net realizable value less a normal profit margin. Reversals of previous write-downs are permissible under IFRS but not under US GAAP.

- Reversals of inventory write-downs may occur under IFRS but are not allowed under US GAAP.
- Changes in the carrying amounts within inventory classifications (such as raw materials, work-in-process, and finished goods) may provide signals about a company's future sales and profits. Relevant information with respect to inventory management and future sales may be found in the Management Discussion and Analysis or similar items within the annual or quarterly reports, industry news and publications, and industry economic data.
- The inventory turnover ratio, number of days of inventory ratio, and gross profit margin ratio are useful in evaluating the management of a company's inventory.
- Inventory management may have a substantial impact on a company's activity, profitability, liquidity, and solvency ratios. It is critical for the analyst to be aware of industry trends and management's intentions.
- Financial statement disclosures provide information regarding the accounting policies adopted in measuring inventories, the principal uncertainties regarding the use of estimates related to inventories, and details of the inventory carrying amounts and costs. This information can greatly assist analysts in their evaluation of a company's inventory management.

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

- Inventory cost is *least likely* to include:
 - production-related storage costs.
 - costs incurred as a result of normal waste of materials.
 - transportation costs of shipping inventory to customers.
- Mustard Seed PLC adheres to IFRS. It recently purchased inventory for €100 million and spent €5 million for storage prior to selling the goods. The amount it charged to inventory expense (€ millions) was *closest* to:
 - €95.
 - €100.
 - €105.
- Carrying inventory at a value above its historical cost would *most likely* be permitted if:
 - the inventory was held by a producer of agricultural products.
 - financial statements were prepared using US GAAP.
 - the change resulted from a reversal of a previous write-down.

The following information relates to Questions 4 and 5.

A retail company is comparing different approaches to valuing inventory. The company has one product that it sells for \$50.

Table 1 Units Purchased and Sold (first quarter)

Date	Units Purchased	Purchase Price	Units Sold	Selling Price	Inventory Units on Hand
2 Jan	1,000	\$20.00			1,000
17 Jan			500	\$50.00	500
16 Feb	1,000	\$18.00			1,500
3 Mar			1,200	\$50.00	300
13 Mar	1,000	\$17.00			1,300
23 Mar			500	\$50.00	800
End of quarter totals:	3,000	\$55,000	2,200	\$110,000	

Table 2 Comparison of Inventory Methods and Models

End of Quarter Valuations 31 March	Perpetual LIFO	Periodic LIFO	Perpetual FIFO
Sales	\$110,000	\$110,000	\$110,000
Ending inventory		\$16,000	\$13,600
Cost of goods sold		\$39,000	\$41,400
Gross profit		\$71,000	\$68,600
Inventory turnover ratio	279%		

Note: LIFO is last in, first out and FIFO is first in, first out.

- 4 What is the value of ending inventory for the first quarter if the company uses a perpetual LIFO inventory valuation method?
- A \$14,500
 B \$15,000
 C \$16,000
- 5 Which inventory accounting method results in the lowest inventory turnover ratio for the first quarter?
- A Periodic LIFO
 B Perpetual LIFO
 C Perpetual FIFO

- 6 During periods of rising inventory unit costs, a company using the FIFO method rather than the LIFO method will report a lower:
- A current ratio.
 B inventory turnover.
 C gross profit margin.
- 7 LIFO reserve is *most likely* to increase when inventory unit:
- A costs are increasing.
 B costs are decreasing.
 C levels are decreasing.
- 8 If inventory unit costs are increasing from period-to-period, a LIFO liquidation is *most likely* to result in an increase in:
- A gross profit.
 B LIFO reserve.
 C inventory carrying amounts.
- 9 A company using the LIFO method reports the following in £:

	2015	2014
Cost of goods sold (COGS)	50,800	48,500
Ending inventories	10,550	10,000
LIFO reserve	4,320	2,600

Cost of goods sold for 2015 under the FIFO method is *closest* to:

- A £48,530.
 - B £49,080.
 - C £52,520.
- 10 Eric's Used Book Store prepares its financial statements in accordance with IFRS. Inventory was purchased for £1 million and later marked down to £550,000. One of the books, however, was later discovered to be a rare collectible item, and the inventory is now worth an estimated £3 million. The inventory is *most likely* reported on the balance sheet at:
- A £550,000.
 - B £1,000,000.
 - C £3,000,000.
- 11 Fernando's Pasta purchased inventory and later wrote it down. The current net realisable value is higher than the value when written down. Fernando's inventory balance will *most likely* be:
- A higher if it complies with IFRS.
 - B higher if it complies with US GAAP.
 - C the same under US GAAP and IFRS.
- 12 A write down of the value of inventory to its net realizable value will have a positive effect on the:
- A balance sheet.
 - B income statement.
 - C inventory turnover ratio.

For questions 13–24, assume the companies use a periodic inventory system.

- 13 Cinnamon Corp. started business in 2007 and uses the weighted average cost method. During 2007, it purchased 45,000 units of inventory at €10 each and sold 40,000 units for €20 each. In 2008, it purchased another 50,000 units at €11 each and sold 45,000 units for €22 each. Its 2008 cost of sales (€ thousands) was *closest* to:
- A €490.
 - B €491.
 - C €495.
- 14 Zimt AG started business in 2007 and uses the FIFO method. During 2007, it purchased 45,000 units of inventory at €10 each and sold 40,000 units for €20 each. In 2008, it purchased another 50,000 units at €11 each and sold 45,000 units for €22 each. Its 2008 ending inventory balance (€ thousands) was *closest* to:
- A €105.
 - B €109.
 - C €110.
- 15 Zimt AG uses the FIFO method, and Nutmeg Inc. uses the LIFO method. Compared to the cost of replacing the inventory, during periods of rising prices, the cost of sales reported by:

- A Zimt is too low.
 - B Nutmeg is too low.
 - C Nutmeg is too high.
- 16 Zimt AG uses the FIFO method, and Nutmeg Inc. uses the LIFO method. Compared to the cost of replacing the inventory, during periods of rising prices the ending inventory balance reported by:
- A Zimt is too high.
 - B Nutmeg is too low.
 - C Nutmeg is too high.
- 17 Like many technology companies, TechnoTools operates in an environment of declining prices. Its reported profits will tend to be *highest* if it accounts for inventory using the:
- A FIFO method.
 - B LIFO method.
 - C weighted average cost method.
- 18 Compared to using the weighted average cost method to account for inventory, during a period in which prices are generally rising, the current ratio of a company using the FIFO method would *most likely* be:
- A lower.
 - B higher.
 - C dependent upon the interaction with accounts payable.
- 19 Zimt AG wrote down the value of its inventory in 2007 and reversed the write-down in 2008. Compared to the ratios that would have been calculated if the write-down had never occurred, Zimt's reported 2007:
- A current ratio was too high.
 - B gross margin was too high.
 - C inventory turnover was too high.
- 20 Zimt AG wrote down the value of its inventory in 2007 and reversed the write-down in 2008. Compared to the results the company would have reported if the write-down had never occurred, Zimt's reported 2008:
- A profit was overstated.
 - B cash flow from operations was overstated.
 - C year-end inventory balance was overstated.
- 21 Compared to a company that uses the FIFO method, during periods of rising prices a company that uses the LIFO method will *most likely* appear more:
- A liquid.
 - B efficient.
 - C profitable.
- 22 Nutmeg, Inc. uses the LIFO method to account for inventory. During years in which inventory unit costs are generally rising and in which the company purchases more inventory than it sells to customers, its reported gross profit margin will *most likely* be:
- A lower than it would be if the company used the FIFO method.
 - B higher than it would be if the company used the FIFO method.
 - C about the same as it would be if the company used the FIFO method.

- 23 Compared to using the FIFO method to account for inventory, during periods of rising prices, a company using the LIFO method is *most likely* to report higher:
- A net income.
 - B cost of sales.
 - C income taxes.
- 24 Carey Company adheres to US GAAP, whereas Jonathan Company adheres to IFRS. It is *least likely* that:
- A Carey has reversed an inventory write-down.
 - B Jonathan has reversed an inventory write-down.
 - C Jonathan and Carey both use the FIFO inventory accounting method.
-
- 25 Company A adheres to US GAAP and Company B adheres to IFRS. Which of the following is *most likely* to be disclosed on the financial statements of both companies?
- A Any material income resulting from the liquidation of LIFO inventory
 - B The amount of inventories recognized as an expense during the period
 - C The circumstances that led to the reversal of a write down of inventories
- 26 Which of the following *most likely* signals that a manufacturing company expects demand for its product to increase?
- A Finished goods inventory growth rate higher than the sales growth rate
 - B Higher unit volumes of work in progress and raw material inventories
 - C Substantially higher finished goods, with lower raw materials and work-in-process
- 27 Compared with a company that uses the FIFO method, during a period of rising unit inventory costs, a company using the LIFO method will *most likely* appear more:
- A liquid.
 - B efficient.
 - C profitable.
- 28 In a period of declining inventory unit costs and constant or increasing inventory quantities, which inventory method is *most likely* to result in a higher debt-to-equity ratio?
- A LIFO
 - B FIFO
 - C Weighted average cost

The following information relates to Questions 29–36

Hans Annan, CFA, a food and beverage analyst, is reviewing Century Chocolate's inventory policies as part of his evaluation of the company. Century Chocolate, based in Switzerland, manufactures chocolate products and purchases and resells other confectionery products to complement its chocolate line. Annan visited Century Chocolate's manufacturing facility last year. He learned that cacao beans, imported

from Brazil, represent the most significant raw material and that the work-in-progress inventory consists primarily of three items: roasted cacao beans, a thick paste produced from the beans (called chocolate liquor), and a sweetened mixture that needs to be “conched” to produce chocolate. On the tour, Annan learned that the conching process ranges from a few hours for lower-quality products to six days for the highest-quality chocolates. While there, Annan saw the facility’s climate-controlled area where manufactured finished products (cocoa and chocolate) and purchased finished goods are stored prior to shipment to customers. After touring the facility, Annan had a discussion with Century Chocolate’s CFO regarding the types of costs that were included in each inventory category.

Annan has asked his assistant, Joanna Kern, to gather some preliminary information regarding Century Chocolate’s financial statements and inventories. He also asked Kern to calculate the inventory turnover ratios for Century Chocolate and another chocolate manufacturer for the most recent five years. Annan does not know Century Chocolate’s most direct competitor, so he asks Kern to do some research and select the most appropriate company for the ratio comparison.

Kern reports back that Century Chocolate prepares its financial statements in accordance with IFRS. She tells Annan that the policy footnote states that raw materials and purchased finished goods are valued at purchase cost whereas work in progress and manufactured finished goods are valued at production cost. Raw material inventories and purchased finished goods are accounted for using the FIFO (first-in, first-out) method, and the weighted average cost method is used for other inventories. An allowance is established when the net realisable value of any inventory item is lower than the value calculated above.

Kern provides Annan with the selected financial statements and inventory data for Century Chocolate shown in Exhibits 1 through 5. The ratio exhibit Kern prepared compares Century Chocolate’s inventory turnover ratios to those of Gordon’s Goodies, a US-based company. Annan returns the exhibit and tells Kern to select a different competitor that reports using IFRS rather than US GAAP. During this initial review, Annan asks Kern why she has not indicated whether Century Chocolate uses a perpetual or a periodic inventory system. Kern replies that she learned that Century Chocolate uses a perpetual system but did not include this information in her report because inventory values would be the same under either a perpetual or periodic inventory system. Annan tells Kern she is wrong and directs her to research the matter.

While Kern is revising her analysis, Annan reviews the most recent month’s Cocoa Market Review from the International Cocoa Organization. He is drawn to the statement that “the ICCO daily price, averaging prices in both futures markets, reached a 29-year high in US\$ terms and a 23-year high in SDRs terms (the SDR unit comprises a basket of major currencies used in international trade: US\$, euro, pound sterling and yen).” Annan makes a note that he will need to factor the potential continuation of this trend into his analysis.

Exhibit 1 Century Chocolate Income Statements (CHF Millions)

For Years Ended 31 December	2009	2008
Sales	95,290	93,248
Cost of sales	–41,043	–39,047
Marketing, administration, and other expenses	–35,318	–42,481
Profit before taxes	18,929	11,720
Taxes	–3,283	–2,962
Profit for the period	15,646	8,758

Exhibit 2 Century Chocolate Balance Sheets (CHF Millions)

31 December	2009	2008
Cash, cash equivalents, and short-term investments	6,190	8,252
Trade receivables and related accounts, net	11,654	12,910
Inventories, net	8,100	7,039
Other current assets	2,709	2,812
Total current assets	28,653	31,013
Property, plant, and equipment, net	18,291	19,130
Other non-current assets	45,144	49,875
Total assets	92,088	100,018
Trade and other payables	10,931	12,299
Other current liabilities	17,873	25,265
Total current liabilities	28,804	37,564
Non-current liabilities	15,672	14,963
Total liabilities	44,476	52,527
Equity		
Share capital	332	341
Retained earnings and other reserves	47,280	47,150
Total equity	47,612	47,491
Total liabilities and shareholders' equity	92,088	100,018

Exhibit 3 Century Chocolate Supplementary Footnote Disclosures: Inventories (CHF Millions)

31 December	2009	2008
Raw Materials	2,154	1,585
Work in Progress	1,061	1,027
Finished Goods	5,116	4,665
Total inventories before allowance	8,331	7,277
Allowance for write-downs to net realisable value	-231	-238
Total inventories net of allowance	8,100	7,039

Exhibit 4 Century Chocolate Inventory Record for Purchased Lemon Drops

Date	Cartons	Per Unit Amount (CHF)
Beginning inventory	100	22
4 Feb 09 Purchase	40	25

(continued)

Exhibit 4 (Continued)

Date		Cartons	Per Unit Amount (CHF)
3 Apr 09	Sale	50	32
23 Jul 09	Purchase	70	30
16 Aug 09	Sale	100	32
9 Sep 09	Sale	35	32
15 Nov 09	Purchase	100	28

Exhibit 5 Century Chocolate Net Realisable Value Information for Black Licorice Jelly Beans

	2009	2008
FIFO cost of inventory at 31 December (CHF)	314,890	374,870
Ending inventory at 31 December (Kilograms)	77,750	92,560
Cost per unit (CHF)	4.05	4.05
Net Realisable Value (CHF per Kilograms)	4.20	3.95

- 29 The costs *least likely* to be included by the CFO as inventory are:
- A storage costs for the chocolate liquor.
 - B excise taxes paid to the government of Brazil for the cacao beans.
 - C storage costs for chocolate and purchased finished goods awaiting shipment to customers.
- 30 What is the *most likely* justification for Century Chocolate's choice of inventory valuation method for its purchased finished goods?
- A It is the preferred method under IFRS.
 - B It allocates the same per unit cost to both cost of sales and inventory.
 - C Ending inventory reflects the cost of goods purchased most recently.
- 31 In Kern's comparative ratio analysis, the 2009 inventory turnover ratio for Century Chocolate is *closest* to:
- A 5.07.
 - B 5.42.
 - C 5.55.
- 32 The *most accurate* statement regarding Annan's reasoning for requiring Kern to select a competitor that reports under IFRS for comparative purposes is that under US GAAP:
- A fair values are used to value inventory.
 - B the LIFO method is permitted to value inventory.
 - C the specific identification method is permitted to value inventory.
- 33 Annan's statement regarding the perpetual and periodic inventory systems is most significant when which of the following costing systems is used?
- A LIFO.

- B FIFO.
- C Specific identification.
- 34 Using the inventory record for purchased lemon drops shown in Exhibit 4, the cost of sales for 2009 will be *closest* to:
- A CHF 3,550.
- B CHF 4,550.
- C CHF 4,850.
- 35 Ignoring any tax effect, the 2009 net realisable value reassessment for the black licorice jelly beans will *most likely* result in:
- A an increase in gross profit of CHF 7,775.
- B an increase in gross profit of CHF 11,670.
- C no impact on cost of sales because under IFRS, write-downs cannot be reversed.
- 36 If the trend noted in the ICCO report continues and Century Chocolate plans to maintain constant or increasing inventory quantities, the *most likely* impact on Century Chocolate's financial statements related to its raw materials inventory will be:
- A a cost of sales that more closely reflects current replacement values.
- B a higher allocation of the total cost of goods available for sale to cost of sales.
- C a higher allocation of the total cost of goods available for sale to ending inventory.

The following information relates to Questions 37–42

John Martinson, CFA, is an equity analyst with a large pension fund. His supervisor, Linda Packard, asks him to write a report on Karp Inc. Karp prepares its financial statements in accordance with US GAAP. Packard is particularly interested in the effects of the company's use of the LIFO method to account for its inventory. For this purpose, Martinson collects the financial data presented in Exhibits 1 and 2.

Exhibit 1 Balance Sheet Information (US\$ Millions)

As of 31 December	2009	2008
Cash and cash equivalents	172	157
Accounts receivable	626	458
Inventories	620	539
Other current assets	125	65
Total current assets	1,543	1,219
Property and equipment, net	3,035	2,972
Total assets	4,578	4,191
Total current liabilities	1,495	1,395
Long-term debt	644	604

(continued)

Exhibit 1 (Continued)

As of 31 December	2009	2008
Total liabilities	2,139	1,999
Common stock and paid in capital	1,652	1,652
Retained earnings	787	540
Total shareholders' equity	2,439	2,192
Total liabilities and shareholders' equity	4,578	4,191

Exhibit 2 Income Statement Information (US\$ Millions)

For the Year Ended 31 December	2009	2008
Sales	4,346	4,161
Cost of goods sold	2,211	2,147
Depreciation and amortisation expense	139	119
Selling, general, and administrative expense	1,656	1,637
Interest expense	31	18
Income tax expense	62	48
Net income	247	192

Martinson finds the following information in the notes to the financial statements:

- The LIFO reserves as of 31 December 2009 and 2008 are \$155 million and \$117 million respectively, and
 - The effective income tax rate applicable to Karp for 2009 and earlier periods is 20 percent.
- 37 If Karp had used FIFO instead of LIFO, the amount of inventory reported as of 31 December 2009 would have been *closest* to:
- A \$465 million.
 - B \$658 million.
 - C \$775 million.
- 38 If Karp had used FIFO instead of LIFO, the amount of cost of goods sold reported by Karp for the year ended 31 December 2009 would have been *closest* to:
- A \$2,056 million.
 - B \$2,173 million.
 - C \$2,249 million.
- 39 If Karp had used FIFO instead of LIFO, its reported net income for the year ended 31 December 2009 would have been higher by an amount *closest* to:
- A \$30 million.
 - B \$38 million.
 - C \$155 million.

- 40 If Karp had used FIFO instead of LIFO, Karp's retained earnings as of 31 December 2009 would have been higher by an amount *closest to*:
- A \$117 million.
 B \$124 million.
 C \$155 million.
- 41 If Karp had used FIFO instead of LIFO, which of the following ratios computed as of 31 December 2009 would *most likely* have been lower?
- A Cash ratio.
 B Current ratio.
 C Gross profit margin.
- 42 If Karp had used FIFO instead of LIFO, its debt to equity ratio computed as of 31 December 2009 would have:
- A increased.
 B decreased.
 C remained unchanged.

The following information relates to Questions 43–48

Robert Groff, an equity analyst, is preparing a report on Crux Corp. As part of his report, Groff makes a comparative financial analysis between Crux and its two main competitors, Rolby Corp. and Mikko Inc. Crux and Mikko report under US GAAP and Rolby reports under IFRS.

Groff gathers information on Crux, Rolby, and Mikko. The relevant financial information he compiles is in Exhibit 1. Some information on the industry is in Exhibit 2.

Exhibit 1 Selected Financial Information (US\$ Millions)

	Crux	Rolby	Mikko
Inventory valuation method	LIFO	FIFO	LIFO
<u>From the Balance Sheets</u>			
As of 31 December 2009			
Inventory, gross	480	620	510
Valuation allowance	20	25	14
Inventory, net	460	595	496
Total debt	1,122	850	732
Total shareholders' equity	2,543	2,403	2,091
As of 31 December 2008			
Inventory, gross	465	602	401
Valuation allowance	23	15	12
Inventory, net	442	587	389
<u>From the Income Statements</u>			
Year Ended 31 December 2009			

(continued)

Exhibit 1 (Continued)

	Crux	Rolby	Mikko
Revenues	4,609	5,442	3,503
Cost of goods sold ^a	3,120	3,782	2,550
Net income	229	327	205
^a Charges included in cost of goods sold for inventory write-downs*	13	15	15

* This does not match the change in the inventory valuation allowance because the valuation allowance is reduced to reflect the valuation allowance attached to items sold and increased for additional necessary write-downs.

LIFO Reserve

As of 31 December 2009	55	0	77
As of 31 December 2008	72	0	50
As of 31 December 2007	96	0	43

Tax Rate

Effective tax rate	30%	30%	30%
--------------------	-----	-----	-----

Exhibit 2 Industry Information

	2009	2008	2007
Raw materials price index	112	105	100
Finished goods price index	114	106	100

To compare the financial performance of the three companies, Groff decides to convert LIFO figures into FIFO figures, and adjust figures to assume no valuation allowance is recognized by any company.

After reading Groff's draft report, his supervisor, Rachel Borghi, asks him the following questions:

- Question 1 Which company's gross profit margin would best reflect current costs of the industry?
- Question 2 Would Rolby's valuation method show a higher gross profit margin than Crux's under an inflationary, a deflationary, or a stable price scenario?
- Question 3 Which group of ratios usually appears more favorable with an inventory write-down?

43 Crux's inventory turnover ratio computed as of 31 December 2009, after the adjustments suggested by Groff, is *closest* to:

- A 5.67.
- B 5.83.
- C 6.13.

- 44 Rolby's net profit margin for the year ended 31 December 2009, after the adjustments suggested by Groff, is *closest* to:
- A 6.01%.
 - B 6.20%.
 - C 6.28%.
- 45 Compared with its unadjusted debt-to-equity ratio, Mikko's debt-to-equity ratio as of 31 December 2009, after the adjustments suggested by Groff, is:
- A lower.
 - B higher.
 - C the same.
- 46 The *best* answer to Borghi's Question 1 is:
- A Crux's.
 - B Rolby's.
 - C Mikko's.
- 47 The *best* answer to Borghi's Question 2 is:
- A Stable.
 - B Inflationary.
 - C Deflationary.
- 48 The *best* answer to Borghi's Question 3 is:
- A Activity ratios.
 - B Solvency ratios.
 - C Profitability ratios.

The following information relates to Questions 49–56

ZP Corporation is a (hypothetical) multinational corporation headquartered in Japan that trades on numerous stock exchanges. ZP prepares its consolidated financial statements in accordance with US GAAP. Excerpts from ZP's 2009 annual report are shown in Exhibits 1–3.

Exhibit 1 Consolidated Balance Sheets (¥ Millions)

31 December	2008	2009
Current Assets		
Cash and cash equivalents	¥542,849	¥814,760
⋮	⋮	⋮
Inventories	608,572	486,465
⋮	⋮	⋮
Total current assets	4,028,742	3,766,309
⋮	⋮	⋮
Total assets	¥10,819,440	¥9,687,346

(continued)

Exhibit 1 (Continued)

31 December	2008	2009
⋮	⋮	⋮
Total current liabilities	¥3,980,247	¥3,529,765
⋮	⋮	⋮
Total long-term liabilities	2,663,795	2,624,002
Minority interest in consolidated subsidiaries	218,889	179,843
Total shareholders' equity	3,956,509	3,353,736
Total liabilities and shareholders' equity	¥10,819,440	¥9,687,346

Exhibit 2 Consolidated Statements of Income (¥ Millions)

For the years ended 31 December	2007	2008	2009
Net revenues			
Sales of products	¥7,556,699	¥8,273,503	¥6,391,240
Financing operations	425,998	489,577	451,950
	7,982,697	8,763,080	6,843,190
Cost and expenses			
Cost of products sold	6,118,742	6,817,446	5,822,805
Cost of financing operations	290,713	356,005	329,128
Selling, general and administrative	827,005	832,837	844,927
⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮
Operating income (loss)	746,237	756,792	-153,670
⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮
Net income	¥548,011	¥572,626	-¥145,646

Exhibit 3 Selected Disclosures in the 2009 Annual Report**Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations**

Cost reduction efforts were offset by increased prices of raw materials, other production materials and parts ... Inventories decreased during fiscal 2009 by ¥122.1 billion, or 20.1%, to ¥486.5 billion. This reflects the impacts of decreased sales volumes and fluctuations in foreign currency translation rates.

Management & Corporate Information**Risk Factors**Industry and Business Risks

Exhibit 3 (Continued)

The worldwide market for our products is highly competitive. ZP faces intense competition from other manufacturers in the respective markets in which it operates. Competition has intensified due to the worldwide deterioration in economic conditions. In addition, competition is likely to further intensify because of continuing globalization, possibly resulting in industry reorganization. Factors affecting competition include product quality and features, the amount of time required for innovation and development, pricing, reliability, safety, economy in use, customer service and financing terms. Increased competition may lead to lower unit sales and excess production capacity and excess inventory. This may result in a further downward price pressure.

ZP's ability to adequately respond to the recent rapid changes in the industry and to maintain its competitiveness will be fundamental to its future success in maintaining and expanding its market share in existing and new markets.

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements**2. Summary of significant accounting policies:**

Inventories. Inventories are valued at cost, not in excess of market. Cost is determined on the "average-cost" basis, except for the cost of finished products carried by certain subsidiary companies which is determined "last-in, first-out" ("LIFO") basis. Inventories valued on the LIFO basis totaled ¥94,578 million and ¥50,037 million at December 31, 2008 and 2009, respectively. Had the "first-in, first-out" basis been used for those companies using the LIFO basis, inventories would have been ¥10,120 million and ¥19,660 million higher than reported at December 31, 2008 and 2009, respectively.

9. Inventories:

Inventories consist of the following:

31 December (¥ Millions)	2008	2009
Finished goods	¥ 403,856	¥ 291,977
Raw materials	99,869	85,966
Work in process	79,979	83,890
Supplies and other	24,868	24,632
	¥ 608,572	¥ 486,465

49 The MD&A indicated that the prices of raw material, other production materials, and parts increased. Based on the inventory valuation methods described in Note 2, which inventory classification would *least accurately* reflect current prices?

- A Raw materials.
- B Finished goods.
- C Work in process.

- 50 The 2008 inventory value as reported on the 2009 Annual Report if the company had used the FIFO inventory valuation method instead of the LIFO inventory valuation method for a portion of its inventory would be *closest* to:
- A ¥104,698 million.
 - B ¥506,125 million.
 - C ¥618,692 million.
- 51 What is the *least likely* reason why ZP may need to change its accounting policies regarding inventory at some point after 2009?
- A The US SEC is likely to require companies to use the same inventory valuation method for all inventories.
 - B The US SEC is likely to prohibit the use of one of the methods ZP currently uses for inventory valuation.
 - C One of the inventory valuation methods used for US tax purposes may be repealed as an acceptable method.
- 52 If ZP had prepared its financial statement in accordance with IFRS, the inventory turnover ratio (using average inventory) for 2009 would be:
- A lower.
 - B higher.
 - C the same.
- 53 Inventory levels decreased from 2008 to 2009 for all of the following reasons *except*:
- A LIFO liquidation.
 - B decreased sales volume.
 - C fluctuations in foreign currency translation rates.
- 54 Which observation is *most likely* a result of looking only at the information reported in Note 9?
- A Increased competition has led to lower unit sales.
 - B There have been significant price increases in supplies.
 - C Management expects a further downturn in sales during 2010.
- 55 Note 2 indicates that, “Inventories valued on the LIFO basis totaled ¥94,578 million and ¥50,037 million at December 31, 2008 and 2009, respectively.” Based on this, the LIFO reserve should *most likely*:
- A increase.
 - B decrease.
 - C remain the same.
- 56 The Industry and Business Risk excerpt states that, “Increased competition may lead to lower unit sales and excess production capacity and excess inventory. This may result in a further downward price pressure.” The downward price pressure could lead to inventory that is valued above current market prices or net realisable value. Any write-downs of inventory are *least likely* to have a significant effect on the inventory valued using:
- A weighted average cost.
 - B first-in, first-out (FIFO).
 - C last-in, first-out (LIFO).
-

SOLUTIONS

- 1 C is correct. Transportation costs incurred to ship inventory to customers are an expense and may not be capitalized in inventory. (Transportation costs incurred to bring inventory to the business location can be capitalized in inventory.) Storage costs required as part of production, as well as costs incurred as a result of normal waste of materials, can be capitalized in inventory. (Costs incurred as a result of abnormal waste must be expensed.)
- 2 B is correct. Inventory expense includes costs of purchase, costs of conversion, and other costs incurred in bringing the inventories to their present location and condition. It does not include storage costs not required as part of production.
- 3 A is correct. IFRS allow the inventories of producers and dealers of agricultural and forest products, agricultural produce after harvest, and minerals and mineral products to be carried at net realisable value even if above historical cost. (US GAAP treatment is similar.)
- 4 A is correct. A perpetual inventory system updates inventory values and quantities and cost of goods sold continuously to reflect purchases and sales. The ending inventory of 800 units consists of 300 units at \$20 and 500 units at \$17.

$$(300 \times \$20) + (500 \times \$17) = \$14,500$$

- 5 A is correct. In an environment with falling inventory costs and declining inventory levels, periodic LIFO will result in a higher ending inventory value and lower cost of goods sold versus perpetual LIFO and perpetual FIFO methods. This results in a lower inventory turnover ratio, which is calculated as follows:

$$\text{Inventory turnover ratio} = \text{Cost of goods sold} / \text{Ending inventory}$$

The inventory turnover ratio using periodic LIFO is $\$39,000 / \$16,000 = 244\%$ or 2.44 times.

The inventory turnover ratio using perpetual LIFO is 279% or 2.79 times, which is provided in Table 2 (= $40,500 / 14,500$ from previous question).

The inventory turnover for perpetual FIFO is $\$41,400 / \$13,600 = 304\%$ or 3.04 times.

- 6 B is correct. During a period of rising inventory costs, a company using the FIFO method will allocate a lower amount to cost of goods sold and a higher amount to ending inventory as compared with the LIFO method. The inventory turnover ratio is the ratio of cost of sales to ending inventory. A company using the FIFO method will produce a lower inventory turnover ratio as compared with the LIFO method. The current ratio (current assets/current liabilities) and the gross profit margin [gross profit/sales = (sales less cost of goods sold)/sales] will be higher under the FIFO method than under the LIFO method in periods of rising inventory unit costs.
- 7 A is correct. LIFO reserve is the FIFO inventory value less the LIFO inventory value. In periods of rising inventory unit costs, the carrying amount of inventory under FIFO will always exceed the carrying amount of inventory under LIFO. The LIFO reserve may increase over time as a result of the increasing difference between the older costs used to value inventory under LIFO and the

more recent costs used to value inventory under FIFO. When inventory unit levels are decreasing, the company will experience a LIFO liquidation, reducing the LIFO reserve.

- 8** A is correct. When the number of units sold exceeds the number of units purchased, a company using LIFO will experience a LIFO liquidation. If inventory unit costs have been rising from period-to-period and a LIFO liquidation occurs, it will produce an increase in gross profit as a result of the lower inventory carrying amounts of the liquidated units (lower cost per unit of the liquidated units).
- 9** B is correct. The adjusted COGS under the FIFO method is equal to COGS under the LIFO method less the increase in LIFO reserve:
- $$\begin{aligned}\text{COGS (FIFO)} &= \text{COGS (LIFO)} - \text{Increase in LIFO reserve} \\ \text{COGS (FIFO)} &= £50,800 - (£4,320 - £2,600) \\ \text{COGS (FIFO)} &= £49,080\end{aligned}$$
- 10** B is correct. Under IFRS, the reversal of write-downs is required if net realisable value increases. The inventory will be reported on the balance sheet at £1,000,000. The inventory is reported at the lower of cost or net realisable value. Under US GAAP, inventory is carried at the lower of cost or market value. After a write-down, a new cost basis is determined and additional revisions may only reduce the value further. The reversal of write-downs is not permitted.
- 11** A is correct. IFRS require the reversal of inventory write-downs if net realisable values increase; US GAAP do not permit the reversal of write-downs.
- 12** C is correct. Activity ratios (for example, inventory turnover and total asset turnover) will be positively affected by a write down to net realizable value because the asset base (denominator) is reduced. On the balance sheet, the inventory carrying amount is written down to its net realizable value and the loss in value (expense) is generally reflected on the income statement in cost of goods sold, thus reducing gross profit, operating profit, and net income.
- 13** B is correct. Cinnamon uses the weighted average cost method, so in 2008, 5,000 units of inventory were 2007 units at €10 each and 50,000 were 2008 purchases at €11. The weighted average cost of inventory during 2008 was thus $(5,000 \times 10) + (50,000 \times 11) = 50,000 + 550,000 = €600,000$, and the weighted average cost was approximately $€10.91 = €600,000/55,000$. Cost of sales was $€10.91 \times 45,000$, which is approximately €490,950.
- 14** C is correct. Zimt uses the FIFO method, and thus the first 5,000 units sold in 2008 depleted the 2007 inventory. Of the inventory purchased in 2008, 40,000 units were sold and 10,000 remain, valued at €11 each, for a total of €110,000.
- 15** A is correct. Zimt uses the FIFO method, so its cost of sales represents units purchased at a (no longer available) lower price. Nutmeg uses the LIFO method, so its cost of sales is approximately equal to the current replacement cost of inventory.
- 16** B is correct. Nutmeg uses the LIFO method, and thus some of the inventory on the balance sheet was purchased at a (no longer available) lower price. Zimt uses the FIFO method, so the carrying value on the balance sheet represents the most recently purchased units and thus approximates the current replacement cost.
- 17** B is correct. In a declining price environment, the newest inventory is the lowest-cost inventory. In such circumstances, using the LIFO method (selling the newer, cheaper inventory first) will result in lower cost of sales and higher profit.

- 18** B is correct. In a rising price environment, inventory balances will be higher for the company using the FIFO method. Accounts payable are based on amounts due to suppliers, not the amounts accrued based on inventory accounting.
- 19** C is correct. The write-down reduced the value of inventory and increased cost of sales in 2007. The higher numerator and lower denominator mean that the inventory turnover ratio as reported was too high. Gross margin and the current ratio were both too low.
- 20** A is correct. The reversal of the write-down shifted cost of sales from 2008 to 2007. The 2007 cost of sales was higher because of the write-down, and the 2008 cost of sales was lower because of the reversal of the write-down. As a result, the reported 2008 profits were overstated. Inventory balance in 2008 is the same because the write-down and reversal cancel each other out. Cash flow from operations is not affected by the non-cash write-down, but the higher profits in 2008 likely resulted in higher taxes and thus lower cash flow from operations.
- 21** B is correct. LIFO will result in lower inventory and higher cost of sales. Gross margin (a profitability ratio) will be lower, the current ratio (a liquidity ratio) will be lower, and inventory turnover (an efficiency ratio) will be higher.
- 22** A is correct. LIFO will result in lower inventory and higher cost of sales in periods of rising costs compared to FIFO. Consequently, LIFO results in a lower gross profit margin than FIFO.
- 23** B is correct. The LIFO method increases cost of sales, thus reducing profits and the taxes thereon.
- 24** A is correct. US GAAP do not permit inventory write-downs to be reversed.
- 25** B is correct. Both US GAAP and IFRS require disclosure of the amount of inventories recognized as an expense during the period. Only US GAAP allows the LIFO method and requires disclosure of any material amount of income resulting from the liquidation of LIFO inventory. US GAAP does not permit the reversal of prior-year inventory write downs.
- 26** B is correct. A significant increase (attributable to increases in unit volume rather than increases in unit cost) in raw materials and/or work-in-progress inventories may signal that the company expects an increase in demand for its products. If the growth of finished goods inventories is greater than the growth of sales, it could indicate a decrease in demand and a decrease in future earnings. A substantial increase in finished goods inventories while raw materials and work-in-progress inventories are declining may signal a decrease in demand for the company's products.
- 27** B is correct. During a period of rising inventory prices, a company using the LIFO method will have higher cost of cost of goods sold and lower inventory compared with a company using the FIFO method. The inventory turnover ratio will be higher for the company using the LIFO method, thus making it appear more efficient. Current assets and gross profit margin will be lower for the company using the LIFO method, thus making it appear less liquid and less profitable.
- 28** B is correct. In an environment of declining inventory unit costs and constant or increasing inventory quantities, FIFO (in comparison with weighted average cost or LIFO) will have higher cost of goods sold (and net income) and lower inventory. Because both inventory and net income are lower, total equity is lower, resulting in a higher debt-to-equity ratio.

- 29** C is correct. The storage costs for inventory awaiting shipment to customers are not costs of purchase, costs of conversion, or other costs incurred in bringing the inventories to their present location and condition and are not included in inventory. The storage costs for the chocolate liquor occur during the production process and are thus part of the conversion costs. Excise taxes are part of the purchase cost.
- 30** C is correct. The carrying amount of inventories under FIFO will more closely reflect current replacement values because inventories are assumed to consist of the most recently purchased items. FIFO is an acceptable, but not preferred, method under IFRS. Weighted average cost, not FIFO, is the cost formula that allocates the same per unit cost to both cost of sales and inventory.
- 31** B is correct. Inventory turnover = Cost of sales/Average inventory = $41,043/7,569.5 = 5.42$. Average inventory is $(8,100 + 7,039)/2 = 7,569.5$.
- 32** B is correct. For comparative purposes, the choice of a competitor that reports under IFRS is requested because LIFO is permitted under US GAAP.
- 33** A is correct. The carrying amount of the ending inventory may differ because the perpetual system will apply LIFO continuously throughout the year, liquidating layers as sales are made. Under the periodic system, the sales will start from the last layer in the year. Under FIFO, the sales will occur from the same layers regardless of whether a perpetual or periodic system is used. Specific identification identifies the actual products sold and remaining in inventory, and there will be no difference under a perpetual or periodic system.
- 34** B is correct. The cost of sales is closest to CHF 4,550. Under FIFO, the inventory acquired first is sold first. Using Exhibit 4, a total of 310 cartons were available for sale ($100 + 40 + 70 + 100$) and 185 cartons were sold ($50 + 100 + 35$), leaving 125 in ending inventory. The FIFO cost would be as follows:
- $$100 \text{ (beginning inventory)} \times 22 = 2,200$$
- $$40 \text{ (4 February 2009)} \times 25 = 1,000$$
- $$45 \text{ (23 July 2009)} \times 30 = 1,350$$
- $$\text{Cost of sales} = 2,200 + 1,000 + 1,350 = \text{CHF } 4,550$$
- 35** A is correct. Gross profit will most likely increase by CHF 7,775. The net realisable value has increased and now exceeds the cost. The write-down from 2008 can be reversed. The write-down in 2008 was 9,256 [$92,560 \times (4.05 - 3.95)$]. IFRS require the reversal of any write-downs for a subsequent increase in value of inventory previously written down. The reversal is limited to the lower of the subsequent increase or the original write-down. Only 77,750 kilograms remain in inventory; the reversal is $77,750 \times (4.05 - 3.95) = 7,775$. The amount of any reversal of a write-down is recognised as a reduction in cost of sales. This reduction results in an increase in gross profit.
- 36** C is correct. Using the FIFO method to value inventories when prices are rising will allocate more of the cost of goods available for sale to ending inventories (the most recent purchases, which are at higher costs, are assumed to remain in inventory) and less to cost of sales (the oldest purchases, which are at lower costs, are assumed to be sold first).

- 37** C is correct. Karp's inventory under FIFO equals Karp's inventory under LIFO plus the LIFO reserve. Therefore, as of 31 December 2009, Karp's inventory under FIFO equals:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Inventory (FIFO method)} &= \text{Inventory (LIFO method)} + \text{LIFO} \\ &\quad \text{reserve} \\ &= \$620 \text{ million} + 155 \text{ million} \\ &= \$775 \text{ million}\end{aligned}$$

- 38** B is correct. Karp's cost of goods sold (COGS) under FIFO equals Karp's cost of goods sold under LIFO minus the increase in the LIFO reserve. Therefore, for the year ended 31 December 2009, Karp's cost of goods sold under FIFO equals:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{COGS (FIFO method)} &= \text{COGS (LIFO method)} - \text{Increase in LIFO} \\ &\quad \text{reserve} \\ &= \$2,211 \text{ million} - (155 \text{ million} - 117 \text{ million}) \\ &= \$2,173 \text{ million}\end{aligned}$$

- 39** A is correct. Karp's net income (NI) under FIFO equals Karp's net income under LIFO plus the after-tax increase in the LIFO reserve. For the year ended 31 December 2009, Karp's net income under FIFO equals:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{NI (FIFO method)} &= \text{NI (LIFO method)} + \text{Increase in LIFO reserve} \times \\ &\quad (1 - \text{Tax rate}) \\ &= \$247 \text{ million} + 38 \text{ million} \times (1 - 20\%) \\ &= \$277.4 \text{ million}\end{aligned}$$

Therefore, the increase in net income is:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Increase in NI} &= \text{NI (FIFO method)} - \text{NI (LIFO method)} \\ &= \$277 \text{ million} - 247 \text{ million} \\ &= \$30.4 \text{ million}\end{aligned}$$

- 40** B is correct. Karp's retained earnings (RE) under FIFO equals Karp's retained earnings under LIFO plus the after-tax LIFO reserve. Therefore, for the year ended 31 December 2009, Karp's retained earnings under FIFO equals:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{RE (FIFO method)} &= \text{RE (LIFO method)} + \text{LIFO reserve} \times (1 - \text{Tax} \\ &\quad \text{rate}) \\ &= \$787 \text{ million} + 155 \text{ million} \times (1 - 20\%) \\ &= \$911 \text{ million}\end{aligned}$$

Therefore, the increase in retained earnings is:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Increase in RE} &= \text{RE (FIFO method)} - \text{RE (LIFO method)} \\ &= \$911 \text{ million} - 787 \text{ million} \\ &= \$124 \text{ million}\end{aligned}$$

- 41** A is correct. The cash ratio (cash and cash equivalents ÷ current liabilities) would be lower because cash would have been less under FIFO. Karp's income before taxes would have been higher under FIFO, and consequently taxes paid by Karp would have also been higher and cash would have been lower. There is no impact on current liabilities. Both Karp's current ratio and gross profit margin would have been higher if FIFO had been used. The current ratio would have been higher because inventory under FIFO increases by a larger amount than the cash decreases for taxes paid. Because the cost of goods sold under FIFO is lower than under LIFO, the gross profit margin would have been higher.

- 42** B is correct. If Karp had used FIFO instead of LIFO, the debt-to-equity ratio would have decreased. No change in debt would have occurred, but shareholders' equity would have increased as a result of higher retained earnings.
- 43** B is correct. Crux's adjusted inventory turnover ratio must be computed using cost of goods sold (COGS) under FIFO and excluding charges for increases in valuation allowances.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{COGS (adjusted)} &= \text{COGS (LIFO method)} - \text{Charges included in} \\ &\quad \text{cost of goods sold for inventory write-downs} - \text{Change} \\ &\quad \text{in LIFO reserve} \\ &= \$3,120 \text{ million} - 13 \text{ million} - (55 \text{ million} - 72 \text{ million}) \\ &= \$3,124 \text{ million}\end{aligned}$$

Note: Minus the change in LIFO reserve is equivalent to plus the decrease in LIFO reserve. The adjusted inventory turnover ratio is computed using average inventory under FIFO.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Ending inventory (FIFO)} &= \text{Ending inventory (LIFO)} + \text{LIFO reserve} \\ \text{Ending inventory 2009 (FIFO)} &= \$480 + 55 = \$535 \\ \text{Ending inventory 2008 (FIFO)} &= \$465 + 72 = \$537 \\ \text{Average inventory} &= (\$535 + 537)/2 = \$536\end{aligned}$$

Therefore, adjusted inventory turnover ratio equals:

$$\text{Inventory turnover ratio} = \text{COGS}/\text{Average inventory} = \$3,124/\$536 = 5.83$$

- 44** B is correct. Rolby's adjusted net profit margin must be computed using net income (NI) under FIFO and excluding charges for increases in valuation allowances.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{NI (adjusted)} &= \text{NI (FIFO method)} + \text{Charges, included in cost of goods} \\ &\quad \text{sold for inventory write-downs, after tax} \\ &= \$327 \text{ million} + 15 \text{ million} \times (1 - 30\%) \\ &= \$337.5 \text{ million}\end{aligned}$$

Therefore, adjusted net profit margin equals:

$$\text{Net profit margin} = \text{NI}/\text{Revenues} = \$337.5/\$5,442 = 6.20\%$$

- 45** A is correct. Mikko's adjusted debt-to-equity ratio is lower because the debt (numerator) is unchanged and the adjusted shareholders' equity (denominator) is higher. The adjusted shareholders' equity corresponds to shareholders' equity under FIFO, excluding charges for increases in valuation allowances. Therefore, adjusted shareholders' equity is higher than reported (unadjusted) shareholders' equity.
- 46** C is correct. Mikko's and Crux's gross margin ratios would better reflect the current gross margin of the industry than Rolby because both use LIFO. LIFO recognizes as cost of goods sold the cost of the most recently purchased units, therefore, it better reflects replacement cost. However, Mikko's gross margin ratio best reflects the current gross margin of the industry because Crux's LIFO reserve is decreasing. This could reflect a LIFO liquidation by Crux which would distort gross profit margin.
- 47** B is correct. The FIFO method shows a higher gross profit margin than the LIFO method in an inflationary scenario, because FIFO allocates to cost of goods sold the cost of the oldest units available for sale. In an inflationary environment, these units are the ones with the lowest cost.

- 48** A is correct. An inventory write-down increases cost of sales and reduces profit and reduces the carrying value of inventory and assets. This has a negative effect on profitability and solvency ratios. However, activity ratios appear positively affected by a write-down because the asset base, whether total assets or inventory (denominator), is reduced. The numerator, sales, in total asset turnover is unchanged, and the numerator, cost of sales, in inventory turnover is increased. Thus, turnover ratios are higher and appear more favorable as the result of the write-down.
- 49** B is correct. Finished goods least accurately reflect current prices because some of the finished goods are valued under the “last-in, first-out” (“LIFO”) basis. The costs of the newest units available for sale are allocated to cost of goods sold, leaving the oldest units (at lower costs) in inventory. ZP values raw materials and work in process using the weighted average cost method. While not fully reflecting current prices, some inflationary effect will be included in the inventory values.
- 50** C is correct. FIFO inventory = Reported inventory + LIFO reserve = ¥608,572 + 10,120 = ¥618,692. The LIFO reserve is disclosed in Note 2 of the notes to consolidated financial statements.
- 51** A is correct. The SEC does not require companies to use the same inventory valuation method for all inventories, so this is the *least likely* reason to change accounting policies regarding inventory. The SEC is currently evaluating whether all US companies should be required to adopt IFRS. If the SEC requires companies to adopt IFRS, the LIFO method of inventory valuation would no longer be allowed.
- 52** A is correct. The inventory turnover ratio would be lower. The average inventory would be higher under FIFO and cost of products sold would be lower by the increase in LIFO reserve. LIFO is not permitted under IFRS.

Inventory turnover ratio = Cost of products sold ÷ Average inventory

2009 inventory turnover ratio as reported = 10.63 = ¥5,822,805 / [(608,572 + 486,465) / 2].

2009 inventory turnover ratio adjusted to FIFO as necessary = 10.34 = [¥5,822,805 – (19,660 – 10,120)] / [(608,572 + 10,120 + 486,465 + 19,660) / 2].

- 53** A is correct. No LIFO liquidation occurred during 2009; the LIFO reserve increased from ¥10,120 million in 2008 to ¥19,660 million in 2009. Management stated in the MD&A that the decrease in inventories reflected the impacts of decreased sales volumes and fluctuations in foreign currency translation rates.
- 54** C is correct. Finished goods and raw materials inventories are lower in 2009 when compared to 2008. Reduced levels of inventory typically indicate an anticipated business contraction.
- 55** B is correct. The decrease in LIFO inventory in 2009 would typically indicate that more inventory units were sold than produced or purchased. Accordingly, one would expect a liquidation of some of the older LIFO layers and the LIFO reserve to decrease. In actuality, the LIFO reserve *increased* from ¥10,120 million in 2008 to ¥19,660 million in 2009. This is not to be expected and is likely caused by the increase in prices of raw materials, other production materials, and parts of foreign currencies as noted in the MD&A. An analyst should seek to confirm this explanation.
- 56** B is correct. If prices have been decreasing, write-downs under FIFO are least likely to have a significant effect because the inventory is valued at closer to the new, lower prices. Typically, inventories valued using LIFO are less likely to

incur inventory write-downs than inventories valued using weighted average cost or FIFO. Under LIFO, the *oldest* costs are reflected in the inventory carrying value on the balance sheet. Given increasing inventory costs, the inventory carrying values under the LIFO method are already conservatively presented at the oldest and lowest costs. Thus, it is far less likely that inventory write-downs will occur under LIFO; and if a write-down does occur, it is likely to be of a lesser magnitude.

Long-Lived Assets

by Elaine Henry, PhD, CFA, and Elizabeth A. Gordon, PhD, MBA, CPA

Elaine Henry, PhD, CFA, is at Stevens Institute of Technology (USA). Elizabeth A. Gordon, PhD, MBA, CPA, is at Temple University (USA).

LEARNING OUTCOMES

<i>Mastery</i>	<i>The candidate should be able to:</i>
<input type="checkbox"/>	a. distinguish between costs that are capitalised and costs that are expensed in the period in which they are incurred;
<input type="checkbox"/>	b. compare the financial reporting of the following types of intangible assets: purchased, internally developed, acquired in a business combination;
<input type="checkbox"/>	c. explain and evaluate how capitalising versus expensing costs in the period in which they are incurred affects financial statements and ratios;
<input type="checkbox"/>	d. describe the different depreciation methods for property, plant, and equipment and calculate depreciation expense;
<input type="checkbox"/>	e. describe how the choice of depreciation method and assumptions concerning useful life and residual value affect depreciation expense, financial statements, and ratios;
<input type="checkbox"/>	f. describe the different amortisation methods for intangible assets with finite lives and calculate amortisation expense;
<input type="checkbox"/>	g. describe how the choice of amortisation method and assumptions concerning useful life and residual value affect amortisation expense, financial statements, and ratios;
<input type="checkbox"/>	h. describe the revaluation model;
<input type="checkbox"/>	i. explain the impairment of property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets;
<input type="checkbox"/>	j. explain the derecognition of property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets;
<input type="checkbox"/>	k. explain and evaluate how impairment, revaluation, and derecognition of property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets affect financial statements and ratios;
<input type="checkbox"/>	l. describe the financial statement presentation of and disclosures relating to property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets;

(continued)

Note: Changes in accounting standards as well as new rulings and/or pronouncements issued after the publication of the readings on financial reporting and analysis may cause some of the information in these readings to become dated. Candidates are *not* responsible for anything that occurs after the readings were published. In addition, candidates are expected to be familiar with the analytical frameworks contained in the readings, as well as the implications of alternative accounting methods for financial analysis and valuation discussed in the readings. Candidates are also responsible for the content of accounting standards, but not for the actual reference numbers. Finally, candidates should be aware that certain ratios may be defined and calculated differently. When alternative ratio definitions exist and no specific definition is given, candidates should use the ratio definitions emphasized in the readings.

LEARNING OUTCOMES

<i>Mastery</i>	<i>The candidate should be able to:</i>
<input type="checkbox"/>	m. analyze and interpret financial statement disclosures regarding property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets;
<input type="checkbox"/>	n. compare the financial reporting of investment property with that of property, plant, and equipment;
<input type="checkbox"/>	o. explain and evaluate how leasing rather than purchasing assets affects financial statements and ratios;
<input type="checkbox"/>	p. explain and evaluate how finance leases and operating leases affect financial statements and ratios from the perspective of both the lessor and the lessee.

1

INTRODUCTION

Long-lived assets, also referred to as non-current assets or long-term assets, are assets that are expected to provide economic benefits over a future period of time, typically greater than one year.¹ Long-lived assets may be tangible, intangible, or financial assets. Examples of long-lived tangible assets, typically referred to as **property, plant, and equipment** and sometimes as fixed assets, include land, buildings, furniture and fixtures, machinery and equipment, and vehicles; examples of long-lived **intangible assets** (assets lacking physical substance) include patents and trademarks; and examples of long-lived financial assets include investments in equity or debt securities issued by other companies. The scope of this reading is limited to long-lived tangible and intangible assets (hereafter, referred to for simplicity as long-lived assets).

The first issue in accounting for a long-lived asset is determining its cost at acquisition. The second issue is how to allocate the cost to expense over time. The costs of most long-lived assets are capitalised and then allocated as expenses in the profit or loss (income) statement over the period of time during which they are expected to provide economic benefits. The two main types of long-lived assets with costs that are typically *not* allocated over time are land, which is not depreciated, and those intangible assets with indefinite useful lives. Additional issues that arise are the treatment of subsequent costs incurred related to the asset, the use of the cost model versus the revaluation model, unexpected declines in the value of the asset, classification of the asset with respect to intent (for example, held for use or held for sale), and the derecognition of the asset.

This reading is organised as follows. Section 2 describes and illustrates accounting for the acquisition of long-lived assets, with particular attention to the impact of capitalizing versus expensing expenditures. Section 3 describes the allocation of the costs of long-lived assets over their useful lives. Section 4 discusses the revaluation model that is based on changes in the fair value of an asset. Section 5 covers the concepts of impairment (unexpected decline in the value of an asset). Section 6 describes accounting for the derecognition of long-lived assets. Section 7 describes financial statement presentation, disclosures, and analysis of long-lived assets. Section

¹ In some instances, industry practice is to include as current assets (inventory) some assets that will be held longer than one year (e.g., leaf tobacco, which is cured and aged over a period longer than one year, and whiskey, which is barrel aged for a period longer than one year).

8 discusses differences in financial reporting of investment property compared with property, plant, and equipment. Section 9 describes accounting for leases. A summary is followed by practice problems.

ACQUISITION OF LONG-LIVED ASSETS

2

Upon acquisition, property, plant, and equipment (tangible assets with an economic life of longer than one year and intended to be held for the company's own use) are recorded on the balance sheet at cost, which is typically the same as their fair value.² Accounting for an intangible asset depends on how the asset is acquired. If several assets are acquired as part of a group, the purchase price is allocated to each asset on the basis of its fair value. An asset's cost potentially includes expenditures additional to the purchase price.

A key concept in accounting for expenditures related to long-lived assets is whether and when such expenditures are capitalised (i.e., included in the asset shown on the balance sheet) versus expensed (i.e., treated as an expense of the period on the income statement). After examining the specific treatment of certain expenditures, we will consider the general financial statement impact of capitalising versus expensing and two analytical issues related to the decision—namely, the effects on an individual company's trend analysis and on comparability across companies.

2.1 Property, Plant, and Equipment

This section primarily discusses the accounting treatment for the acquisition of long-lived tangible assets (property, plant, and equipment) through purchase. Assets can be acquired by methods other than purchase.³ When an asset is exchanged for another asset, the asset acquired is recorded at fair value if reliable measures of fair value exist. Fair value is the fair value of the asset given up unless the fair value of the asset acquired is more clearly evident. If there is no reliable measure of fair value, the acquired asset is measured at the carrying amount of the asset given up. In this case, the carrying amount of the assets is unchanged, and no gain or loss is reported.

Typically, accounting for the exchange involves removing the carrying amount of the asset given up, adding a fair value for the asset acquired, and reporting any difference between the carrying amount and the fair value as a gain or loss. A gain would be reported when the fair value used for the newly acquired asset exceeds the carrying amount of the asset given up. A loss would be reported when the fair value used for the newly acquired asset is less than the carrying amount of the asset given up.

When property, plant, or equipment is purchased, the buyer records the asset at cost. In addition to the purchase price, the buyer also includes, as part of the cost of an asset, all the expenditures necessary to get the asset ready for its intended use. For example, freight costs borne by the purchaser to get the asset to the purchaser's place of business and special installation and testing costs required to make the asset usable are included in the total cost of the asset.

² Fair value is defined in International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRS) and under US generally accepted accounting principles (US GAAP) in the Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) Accounting Standards Codification (ASC) as “the price that would be received to sell an asset or paid to transfer a liability in an orderly transaction between market participants at the measurement date.” [IFRS 13 and FASB ASC Topic 820]

³ IAS 16 *Property, Plant and Equipment*, paragraphs 24–26 [Measurement of Cost]; IAS 38 *Intangible Assets*, paragraphs 45–47 [Exchange of Assets]; and FASB ASC Section 845-10-30 [Nonmonetary Transactions – Overall – Initial Measurement].

Subsequent expenditures related to long-lived assets are included as part of the recorded value of the assets on the balance sheet (i.e., capitalised) if they are expected to provide benefits beyond one year in the future and are expensed if they are not expected to provide benefits in future periods. Expenditures that extend the original life of the asset are typically capitalised. Example 1 illustrates the difference between costs that are capitalised and costs that are expensed in a period.

EXAMPLE 1

Acquisition of PPE

Assume a (hypothetical) company, Trofferini S.A., incurred the following expenditures to purchase a towel and tissue roll machine: €10,900 purchase price including taxes, €200 for delivery of the machine, €300 for installation and testing of the machine, and €100 to train staff on maintaining the machine. In addition, the company paid a construction team €350 to reinforce the factory floor and ceiling joists to accommodate the machine's weight. The company also paid €1,500 to repair the factory roof (a repair expected to extend the useful life of the factory by five years) and €1,000 to have the exterior of the factory and adjoining offices repainted for maintenance reasons. The repainting neither extends the life of factory and offices nor improves their usability.

- 1 Which of these expenditures will be capitalised and which will be expensed?
- 2 How will the treatment of these expenditures affect the company's financial statements?

Solution to 1:

The company will capitalise as part of the cost of the machine all costs that are necessary to get the new machine ready for its intended use: €10,900 purchase price, €200 for delivery, €300 for installation and testing, and €350 to reinforce the factory floor and ceiling joists to accommodate the machine's weight (which was necessary to use the machine and does not increase the value of the factory). The €100 to train staff is not necessary to get the asset ready for its intended use and will be expensed.

The company will capitalise the expenditure of €1,500 to repair the factory roof because the repair is expected to extend the useful life of the factory. The company will expense the €1,000 to have the exterior of the factory and adjoining offices repainted because the painting does not extend the life or alter the productive capacity of the buildings.

Solution to 2:

The costs related to the machine that are capitalised—€10,900 purchase price, €200 for delivery, €300 for installation and testing, and €350 to prepare the factory—will increase the carrying amount of the machine asset as shown on the balance sheet and will be included as investing cash outflows. The item related to the factory that is capitalised—the €1,500 roof repair—will increase the carrying amount of the factory asset as shown on the balance sheet and is an investing cash outflow. The expenditures of €100 to train staff and €1,000 to paint are expensed in the period and will reduce the amount of income reported on the company's income statement (and thus reduce retained earnings on the balance sheet) and the operating cash flow.

Example 1 describes capitalising versus expensing in the context of purchasing property, plant, and equipment. When a company constructs an asset (or acquires an asset that requires a long period of time to get ready for its intended use), borrowing costs incurred directly related to the construction are generally capitalised. Constructing a building, whether for sale (in which case, the building is classified as inventory) or for the company's own use (in which case, the building is classified as a long-lived asset), typically requires a substantial amount of time. To finance construction, any borrowing costs incurred prior to the asset being ready for its intended use are capitalised as part of the cost of the asset. The company determines the interest rate to use on the basis of its existing borrowings or, if applicable, on a borrowing specifically incurred for constructing the asset. If a company takes out a loan specifically to construct a building, the interest cost on that loan during the time of construction would be capitalised as part of the building's cost. Under IFRS, but not under US GAAP, income earned on temporarily investing the borrowed monies decreases the amount of borrowing costs eligible for capitalisation.

Thus, a company's interest costs for a period are included either on the balance sheet (to the extent they are capitalised as part of an asset) or on the income statement (to the extent they are expensed). If the interest expenditure is incurred in connection with constructing an asset for the company's own use, the capitalised interest appears on the balance sheet as a part of the relevant long-lived asset (i.e., property, plant, and equipment). The capitalised interest is expensed over time as the property is depreciated and is thus part of subsequent years' depreciation expense rather than interest expense of the current period. If the interest expenditure is incurred in connection with constructing an asset to sell (for example, by a home builder), the capitalised interest appears on the company's balance sheet as part of inventory. The capitalised interest is expensed as part of the cost of goods sold when the asset is sold. Interest payments made prior to completion of construction that are capitalised are classified as an investing cash outflow. Expensed interest may be classified as an operating or financing cash outflow under IFRS and is classified as an operating cash outflow under US GAAP.

EXAMPLE 2

Capitalised Borrowing Costs

BILDA S.A., a hypothetical company, borrows €1,000,000 at an interest rate of 10 percent per year on 1 January 2010 to finance the construction of a factory that will have a useful life of 40 years. Construction is completed after two years, during which time the company earns €20,000 by temporarily investing the loan proceeds.

- 1 What is the amount of interest that will be capitalised under IFRS, and how would that amount differ from the amount that would be capitalised under US GAAP?
- 2 Where will the capitalised borrowing cost appear on the company's financial statements?

Solution to 1:

The total amount of interest paid on the loan during construction is €200,000 (= €1,000,000 × 10% × 2 years). Under IFRS, the amount of borrowing cost eligible for capitalisation is reduced by the €20,000 interest income from temporarily investing the loan proceeds, so the amount to be capitalised is €180,000. Under US GAAP, the amount to be capitalised is €200,000.

Solution to 2:

The capitalised borrowing costs will appear on the company's balance sheet as a component of property, plant, and equipment. In the years prior to completion of construction, the interest paid will appear on the statement of cash flows as an investment activity. Over time, as the property is depreciated, the capitalised interest component is part of subsequent years' depreciation expense on the company's income statement.

2.2 Intangible Assets

Intangible assets are assets lacking physical substance. Intangible assets include items that involve exclusive rights, such as patents, copyrights, trademarks, and franchises. Under IFRS, identifiable intangible assets must meet three definitional criteria. They must be (1) identifiable (either capable of being separated from the entity or arising from contractual or legal rights), (2) under the control of the company, and (3) expected to generate future economic benefits. In addition, two recognition criteria must be met: (1) It is probable that the expected future economic benefits of the asset will flow to the company, and (2) the cost of the asset can be reliably measured. Goodwill, which is not considered an identifiable intangible asset,⁴ arises when one company purchases another and the acquisition price exceeds the fair value of the identifiable assets (both the tangible assets and the identifiable intangible assets) acquired.

Accounting for an intangible asset depends on how it is acquired. The following sections describe accounting for intangible assets obtained in three ways: purchased in situations other than business combinations, developed internally, and acquired in business combinations.

2.2.1 Intangible Assets Purchased in Situations Other Than Business Combinations

Intangible assets purchased in situations other than business combinations, such as buying a patent, are treated at acquisition the same as long-lived tangible assets; they are recorded at their fair value when acquired, which is assumed to be equivalent to the purchase price. If several intangible assets are acquired as part of a group, the purchase price is allocated to each asset on the basis of its fair value.

In deciding how to treat individual intangible assets for analytical purposes, analysts are particularly aware that companies must use a substantial amount of judgment and numerous assumptions to determine the fair value of individual intangible assets. For analysis, therefore, understanding the types of intangible assets acquired can often be more useful than focusing on the values assigned to the individual assets. In other words, an analyst would typically be more interested in understanding what assets a company acquired (for example, franchise rights and a mailing list) than in the precise portion of the purchase price a company allocated to each asset. Understanding the types of assets a company acquires can offer insights into the company's strategic direction and future operating potential.

2.2.2 Intangible Assets Developed Internally

In contrast with the treatment of construction costs of tangible assets, the costs to internally develop intangible assets are generally expensed when incurred. There are some situations, however, in which the costs incurred to internally develop an

⁴ The IFRS definition of an intangible asset as an "identifiable non-monetary asset without physical substance" applies to intangible assets not specifically dealt with in standards other than IAS 38. The definition of intangible assets under US GAAP—"assets (other than financial assets) that lack physical substance"—includes goodwill in the definition of an intangible asset.

intangible asset are capitalised. The general analytical issues related to the capitalising-versus-expensing decision apply here—namely, comparability across companies and the effect on an individual company's trend analysis.

The general requirement that costs to internally develop intangible assets be expensed should be compared with capitalising the cost of acquiring intangible assets in situations other than business combinations. Because costs associated with internally developing intangible assets are usually expensed, a company that has internally developed such intangible assets as patents, copyrights, or brands through expenditures on R&D or advertising will recognise a lower amount of assets than a company that has obtained intangible assets through external purchase. In addition, on the statement of cash flows, costs of internally developing intangible assets are classified as operating cash outflows whereas costs of acquiring intangible assets are classified as investing cash outflows. Differences in strategy (developing versus acquiring intangible assets) can thus impact financial ratios.

IFRS require that expenditures on research (or during the research phase of an internal project) be expensed rather than capitalised as an intangible asset.⁵ Research is defined as “original and planned investigation undertaken with the prospect of gaining new scientific or technical knowledge and understanding.”⁶ The “research phase of an internal project” refers to the period during which a company cannot demonstrate that an intangible asset is being created—for example, the search for alternative materials or systems to use in a production process. IFRS allow companies to recognise an intangible asset arising from development (or the development phase of an internal project) if certain criteria are met, including a demonstration of the technical feasibility of completing the intangible asset and the intent to use or sell the asset. Development is defined as “the application of research findings or other knowledge to a plan or design for the production of new or substantially improved materials, devices, products, processes, systems or services before the start of commercial production or use.”⁷

Generally, US GAAP require that both research and development costs be expensed as incurred but require capitalisation of certain costs related to software development.⁸ Costs incurred to develop a software product for sale are expensed until the product's technological feasibility is established and are capitalised thereafter. Similarly, companies expense costs related to the development of software for internal use until it is probable that the project will be completed and that the software will be used as intended. Thereafter, development costs are capitalised. The probability that the project will be completed is easier to demonstrate than is technological feasibility. The capitalised costs, related directly to developing software for sale or internal use, include the costs of employees who help build and test the software. The treatment of software development costs under US GAAP is similar to the treatment of all costs of internally developed intangible assets under IFRS.

⁵ IAS 38 *Intangible Assets*.

⁶ IAS 38 *Intangible Assets*, paragraph 8 [Definitions].

⁷ IAS 38 *Intangible Assets*, paragraph 8 [Definitions].

⁸ FASB ASC Section 350-40-25 [Intangibles—Goodwill and Other – Internal-Use Software – Recognition] and FASB ASC Section 985-20-25 [Software – Costs of Software to be Sold, Leased, or Marketed – Recognition] specify US GAAP accounting for software development costs for software for internal use and for software to be sold, respectively.

EXAMPLE 3**Software Development Costs**

Assume REH AG, a hypothetical company, incurs expenditures of €1,000 per month during the fiscal year ended 31 December 2009 to develop software for internal use. Under IFRS, the company must treat the expenditures as an expense until the software meets the criteria for recognition as an intangible asset, after which time the expenditures can be capitalised as an intangible asset.

- 1 What is the accounting impact of the company being able to demonstrate that the software met the criteria for recognition as an intangible asset on 1 February versus 1 December?
- 2 How would the treatment of expenditures differ if the company reported under US GAAP and it had established in 2008 that the project was likely to be completed?

Solution to 1:

If the company is able to demonstrate that the software met the criteria for recognition as an intangible asset on 1 February, the company would recognise €1,000 of expense (on the income statement) during the fiscal year ended 31 December 2009. The other €11,000 of expenditures would be recognised as an intangible asset (on the balance sheet). Alternatively, if the company is not able to demonstrate that the software met the criteria for recognition as an intangible asset until 1 December, the company would recognise €11,000 of expense during the fiscal year ended 31 December 2009, with the other €1,000 of expenditures recognised as an intangible asset.

Solution to 2:

Under US GAAP, the company would capitalise the entire €12,000 spent to develop software for internal use.

2.2.3 Intangible Assets Acquired in a Business Combination

When one company acquires another company, the transaction is accounted for using the **acquisition method** of accounting.⁹ Under the acquisition method, the company identified as the acquirer allocates the purchase price to each asset acquired (and each liability assumed) on the basis of its fair value. If the purchase price exceeds the sum of the amounts that can be allocated to individual identifiable assets and liabilities, the excess is recorded as goodwill. Goodwill cannot be identified separately from the business as a whole.

Under IFRS, the acquired individual assets include identifiable intangible assets that meet the definitional and recognition criteria.¹⁰ Otherwise, if the item is acquired in a business combination and cannot be recognised as a tangible or identifiable intangible asset, it is recognised as goodwill. Under US GAAP, there are two criteria to judge whether an intangible asset acquired in a business combination should be recognised separately from goodwill: The asset must be either an item arising from contractual or legal rights or an item that can be separated from the acquired company. Examples of intangible assets treated separately from goodwill include the intangible assets

⁹ Both IFRS and US GAAP require the use of the acquisition method in accounting for business combinations (IFRS 3 and FASB ASC Section 805).

¹⁰ As previously described, the definitional criteria are identifiability, control by the company, and expected future benefits. The recognition criteria are probable flows of the expected economic benefits to the company and measurability.

previously mentioned that involve exclusive rights (patents, copyrights, franchises, licenses), as well as such items as internet domain names and video and audiovisual materials.

Exhibit 1 describes how InBev allocated the €40.3 billion purchase price for its acquisition of Anheuser-Busch. The majority of the identifiable intangible asset valuation (€16.473 billion) relates to brands with indefinite life. Another €256 million or €0.256 billion was for the identifiable intangible assets with definite useful lives—distribution agreements and favorable contracts. These assets are being amortised over the life of the associated contracts. In addition, €24.7 billion of goodwill was recognised.

Exhibit 1 Acquisition of Intangible Assets through a Business Combination

Excerpt from the 2008 annual report of AB InBev:

On 18 November, InBev has completed the acquisition of Anheuser-Busch, following approval from shareholders of both companies. . . . Effective the date of the closing, InBev has changed its name to AB InBev to reflect the heritage and traditions of Anheuser-Busch. Under the terms of the merger agreement, all shares of Anheuser-Busch were acquired for 70 US dollar per share in cash for an aggregate amount of approximately 52.5b US dollar or 40.3b euro.

The transaction resulted in 24.7b euro goodwill provisionally allocated primarily to the US business on the basis of expected synergies. . . . The valuation of the property, plant and equipment, intangible assets, investment in associates, interest bearing loans and borrowings and employee benefits is based on the valuation performed by independent valuation specialist. The other assets and liabilities are based on the current best estimates of AB InBev's management.

The majority of the intangible asset valuation relates to brands with indefinite life. The valuation of the brands with indefinite life is based on a series of factors, including the brand history, the operating plan and the countries in which the brands are sold. The brands with indefinite life include the Budweiser family (including Bud and Bud Light), the Michelob brand family, the Busch brand family and the Natural brand family and have been fair valued for a total amount of 16,473m euro. Distribution agreements and favorable contracts have been fair valued for a total amount of 256m euro. These are being amortised over the term of the associated contracts ranging from 3 to 18 years.

Source: AB InBev 2008 Annual Report, pp. 74–75.

2.3 Capitalising versus Expensing: Impact on Financial Statements and Ratios

This section discusses the implications for financial statements and ratios of capitalising versus expensing costs in the period in which they are incurred. We first summarize the general financial statement impact of capitalising versus expensing and two analytical issues related to the decision—namely the effect on an individual company's trend analysis and on comparability across companies.

In the period of the expenditure, an expenditure that is capitalised increases the amount of assets on the balance sheet and appears as an investing cash outflow on the statement of cash flows. After initial recognition, a company allocates the capitalised

amount over the asset's useful life as depreciation or amortisation expense (except assets that are not depreciated, i.e., land, or amortised, e.g., intangible assets with indefinite lives). This expense reduces net income on the income statement and reduces the value of the asset on the balance sheet. Depreciation and amortisation are non-cash expenses and therefore, apart from their effect on taxable income and taxes payable, have no impact on the cash flow statement. In the section of the statement of cash flows that reconciles net income to operating cash flow, depreciation and amortisation expenses are added back to net income.

Alternatively, an expenditure that is expensed reduces net income by the after-tax amount of the expenditure in the period it is made. No asset is recorded on the balance sheet and thus no depreciation or amortisation occurs in subsequent periods. The lower amount of net income is reflected in lower retained earnings on the balance sheet. An expenditure that is expensed appears as an operating cash outflow in the period it is made. There is no effect on the financial statements of subsequent periods.

Example 4 illustrates the impact on the financial statements of capitalising versus expensing an expenditure.

EXAMPLE 4

General Financial Statement Impact of Capitalising Versus Expensing

Assume two identical (hypothetical) companies, CAP Inc. (CAP) and NOW Inc. (NOW), start with €1,000 cash and €1,000 common stock. Each year the companies recognise total revenues of €1,500 cash and make cash expenditures, excluding an equipment purchase, of €500. At the beginning of operations, each company pays €900 to purchase equipment. CAP estimates the equipment will have a useful life of three years and an estimated salvage value of €0 at the end of the three years. NOW estimates a much shorter useful life and expenses the equipment immediately. The companies have no other assets and make no other asset purchases during the three-year period. Assume the companies pay no dividends, earn zero interest on cash balances, have a tax rate of 30 percent, and use the same accounting method for financial and tax purposes.

The left side of Exhibit 2 shows CAP's financial statements; i.e., with the expenditure capitalised and depreciated at €300 per year based on the straight-line method of depreciation (€900 cost minus €0 salvage value equals €900, divided by a three-year life equals €300 per year). The right side of the exhibit shows NOW's financial statements, with the entire €900 expenditure treated as an expense in the first year. All amounts are in euro.

Exhibit 2 Capitalising versus Expensing

	CAP Inc.			NOW Inc.			
	Capitalise €900 as asset and depreciate			Expense €900 immediately			
For Year	1	2	3	For Year	1	2	3
Revenue	1,500	1,500	1,500	Revenue	1,500	1,500	1,500
Cash expenses	500	500	500	Cash expenses	1,400	500	500
Depreciation	300	300	300	Depreciation	0	0	0
Income before tax	700	700	700	Income before tax	100	1,000	1,000
Tax at 30%	210	210	210	Tax at 30%	30	300	300

Exhibit 2 (Continued)

	CAP Inc.			NOW Inc.			
	Capitalise €900 as asset and depreciate			Expense €900 immediately			
	For Year	1	2	3	For Year	1	2
Net income	490	490	490	Net income	70	700	700
Cash from operations	790	790	790	Cash from operations	70	700	700
Cash used in investing	(900)	0	0	Cash used in investing	0	0	0
Total change in cash	(110)	790	790	Total change in cash	70	700	700

As of	Time 0	End of Year 1	End of Year 2	End of Year 3	As of	Time 0	End of Year 1	End of Year 2	End of Year 3
Cash	1,000	890	1,680	2,470	Cash	1,000	1,070	1,770	2,470
PP & E (net)	—	600	300	—	PP & E (net)	—	—	—	—
Total Assets	1,000	1,490	1,980	2,470	Total Assets	1,000	1,070	1,770	2,470
Retained earnings	0	490	980	1,470	Retained earnings	0	70	770	1,470
Common stock	1,000	1,000	1,000	1,000	Common stock	1,000	1,000	1,000	1,000
Total shareholders' equity	1,000	1,490	1,980	2,470	Total shareholders' equity	1,000	1,070	1,770	2,470

- 1 Which company reports higher net income over the three years? Total cash flow? Cash from operations?
- 2 Based on ROE and net profit margin, how does the profitability of the two companies compare?
- 3 Why does NOW report change in cash of €70 in Year 1, while CAP reports total change in cash of (€110)?

Solution to 1:

Neither company reports higher total net income or cash flow over the three years. The sum of net income over the three years is identical (€1,470 total) whether the €900 is capitalised or expensed. Also, the sum of the change in cash (€1,470 total) is identical under either scenario. CAP reports higher cash from operations by an amount of €900 because, under the capitalisation scenario, the €900 purchase is treated as an investing cash flow.

Note: Because the companies use the same accounting method for both financial and taxable income, absent the assumption of zero interest on cash balances, expensing the €900 would have resulted in higher income and cash flow for NOW because the lower taxes paid in the first year (€30 versus €210) would have allowed NOW to earn interest income on the tax savings.

Solution to 2:

In general, Ending shareholders' equity = Beginning shareholders' equity + Net income + Other comprehensive income – Dividends + Net capital contributions from shareholders. Because the companies in this example do not have other comprehensive income, did not pay dividends, and reported no capital contributions from shareholders, Ending retained earnings = Beginning retained earnings + Net income, and Ending shareholders' equity = Beginning shareholders' equity + Net income.

ROE is calculated as Net income divided by Average shareholders' equity, and Net profit margin is calculated as Net income divided by Total revenue. For example, CAP had Year 1 ROE of 39 percent ($€490/[(€1,000 + €1,490)/2]$), and Year 1 net profit margin of 33 percent ($€490/€1,500$).

CAP Inc.				NOW Inc.			
Capitalise €900 as asset and depreciate				Expense €900 immediately			
For year	1	2	3	For year	1	2	3
ROE	39%	28%	22%	ROE	7%	49%	33%
Net profit margin	33%	33%	33%	Net profit margin	5%	47%	47%

As shown, capitalising results in higher profitability ratios (ROE and net profit margin) in the first year, and lower profitability ratios in subsequent years. For example, CAP's Year 1 ROE of 39 percent was higher than NOW's Year 1 ROE of 7 percent, but in Years 2 and 3, NOW reports superior profitability.

Note also that NOW's superior growth in net income between Year 1 and Year 2 is not attributable to superior performance compared to CAP but rather to the accounting decision to recognise the expense sooner than CAP. In general, all else equal, accounting decisions that result in recognising expenses sooner will give the appearance of greater subsequent growth. Comparison of the growth of the two companies' net incomes without an awareness of the difference in accounting methods would be misleading. As a corollary, NOW's income and profitability exhibit greater volatility across the three years, not because of more volatile performance but rather because of the different accounting decision.

Solution to 3:

NOW reports an increase in cash of €70 in Year 1, while CAP reports a decrease in cash of €110 because NOW's taxes were €180 lower than CAP's taxes (€30 versus €210).

Note that this problem assumes the accounting method used by each company for its tax purposes is identical to the accounting method used by the company for its financial reporting. In many countries, companies are allowed to use different depreciation methods for financial reporting and taxes, which may give rise to deferred taxes.

As shown, discretion regarding whether to expense or capitalise expenditures can impede comparability across companies. Example 4 assumes the companies purchase a single asset in one year. Because the sum of net income over the three-year period is identical whether the asset is capitalised or expensed, it illustrates that although capitalising results in higher profitability compared to expensing in the first year, it results in lower profitability ratios in the subsequent years. Conversely, expensing results in lower profitability in the first year but higher profitability in later years, indicating a favorable trend.

Similarly, shareholders' equity for a company that capitalises the expenditure will be higher in the early years because the initially higher profits result in initially higher retained earnings. Example 4 assumes the companies purchase a single asset in one year and report identical amounts of total net income over the three-year period, so shareholders' equity (and retained earnings) for the firm that expenses will be identical to shareholders' equity (and retained earnings) for the capitalising firm at the end of the three-year period.

Although Example 4 shows companies purchasing an asset only in the first year, if a company continues to purchase similar or increasing amounts of assets each year, the profitability-enhancing effect of capitalising continues if the amount of the expenditures in a period continues to be more than the depreciation expense. Example 5 illustrates this point.

EXAMPLE 5

Impact of Capitalising Versus Expensing for Ongoing Purchases

A company buys a £300 computer in Year 1 and capitalises the expenditure. The computer has a useful life of three years and an expected salvage value of £0, so the annual depreciation expense using the straight-line method is £100 per year. Compared to expensing the entire £300 immediately, the company's pre-tax profit in Year 1 is £200 greater.

- 1 Assume that the company continues to buy an identical computer each year at the same price. If the company uses the same accounting treatment for each of the computers, when does the profit-enhancing effect of capitalising versus expensing end?
- 2 If the company buys another identical computer in Year 4, using the same accounting treatment as the prior years, what is the effect on Year 4 profits of capitalising versus expensing these expenditures?

Solution to 1:

The profit-enhancing effect of capitalising versus expensing would end in Year 3. In Year 3, the depreciation expense on each of the three computers bought in Years 1, 2, and 3 would total £300 (£100 + £100 + £100). Therefore, the total depreciation expense for Year 3 will be exactly equal to the capital expenditure in Year 3. The expense in Year 3 would be £300, regardless of whether the company capitalised or expensed the annual computer purchases.

Solution to 2:

There is no impact on Year 4 profits. As in the previous year, the depreciation expense on each of the three computers bought in Years 2, 3, and 4 would total £300 (£100 + £100 + £100). Therefore, the total depreciation expense for Year 4 will be exactly equal to the capital expenditure in Year 4. Pre-tax profits would be reduced by £300, regardless of whether the company capitalised or expensed the annual computer purchases.

Compared to expensing an expenditure, capitalising the expenditure typically results in greater amounts reported as cash from operations. Capitalised expenditures are typically treated as an investment cash outflow whereas expenses reduce operating cash flows. Because cash flow from operating activities is an important consideration in some valuation models, companies may try to maximise reported cash flow from

operations by capitalising expenditures that should be expensed. Valuation models that use free cash flow will consider not only operating cash flows but also investing cash flows. Analysts should be alert to evidence of companies manipulating reported cash flow from operations by capitalising expenditures that should be expensed.

In summary, holding all else constant, capitalising an expenditure enhances current profitability and increases reported cash flow from operations. The profitability-enhancing effect of capitalising continues so long as capital expenditures exceed the depreciation expense. Profitability-enhancing motivations for decisions to capitalise should be considered when analyzing performance. For example, a company may choose to capitalise more expenditures (within the allowable bounds of accounting standards) to achieve earnings targets for a given period. Expensing a cost in the period reduces current period profits but enhances future profitability and thus enhances the profit trend. Profit trend-enhancing motivations should also be considered when analyzing performance. If the company is in a reporting environment which requires identical accounting methods for financial reporting and taxes (unlike the United States, which permits companies to use depreciation methods for reporting purposes that differ from the depreciation method required by tax purposes), then expensing will have a more favorable cash flow impact because paying lower taxes in an earlier period creates an opportunity to earn interest income on the cash saved.

In contrast with the relatively simple examples above, it is generally neither possible nor desirable to identify individual instances involving discretion about whether to capitalise or expense expenditures. An analyst can, however, typically identify significant items of expenditure treated differently across companies. The items of expenditure giving rise to the most relevant differences across companies will vary by industry. This cross-industry variation is apparent in the following discussion of the capitalisation of expenditures.

2.4 Capitalisation of Interest Costs

As noted above, companies generally must capitalise interest costs associated with acquiring or constructing an asset that requires a long period of time to get ready for its intended use.¹¹

As a consequence of this accounting treatment, a company's interest costs for a period can appear either on the balance sheet (to the extent they are capitalised) or on the income statement (to the extent they are expensed).

If the interest expenditure is incurred in connection with constructing an asset for the company's own use, the capitalised interest appears on the balance sheet as a part of the relevant long-lived asset. The capitalised interest is expensed over time as the property is depreciated—and is thus part of depreciation expense rather than interest expense. If the interest expenditure is incurred in connection with constructing an asset to sell, for example by a real estate construction company, the capitalised interest appears on the company's balance sheet as part of inventory. The capitalised interest is then expensed as part of the cost of sales when the asset is sold.

The treatment of capitalised interest poses certain issues that analysts should consider. First, capitalised interest appears as part of investing cash outflows, whereas expensed interest reduces operating cash flow. Although the treatment is consistent with accounting standards, an analyst may want to examine the impact on reported cash flows. Second, interest coverage ratios are solvency indicators measuring the extent to which a company's earnings (or cash flow) in a period covered its interest

¹¹ IAS 23 [Borrowing Costs] and FASB ASC Subtopic 835-20 [Interest – Capitalization of Interest] specify respectively IFRS and US GAAP for capitalisation of interest costs. Although the standards are not completely converged, the standards are in general agreement.

costs. To provide a true picture of a company's interest coverage, the entire amount of interest expenditure, both the capitalised portion and the expensed portion, should be used in calculating interest coverage ratios. Additionally, if a company is depreciating interest that it capitalised in a previous period, income should be adjusted to eliminate the effect of that depreciation. Example 6 illustrates the calculation.

EXAMPLE 6**Effect of Capitalised Interest Costs on Coverage Ratios and Cash Flow**

MTR Gaming Group, Inc. disclosed the following information in one of the footnotes to its financial statements: "Interest is allocated and capitalized to construction in progress by applying our cost of borrowing rate to qualifying assets. Interest capitalized in 2007 and 2006 was \$2.2 million and \$6.0 million, respectively. There was no interest capitalized during 2008." (Form 10-K filed 13 March 2009).

Exhibit 3 MTR Gaming Group Selected Data, as Reported (Dollars in thousands)

	2008	2007	2006
EBIT (from income statement)	432,686	389,268	268,800
Interest expense (from income statement)	40,764	34,774	17,047
Interest capitalised (from footnote)	0	2,200	6,000
Net cash provided by operating activities	14,693	14,980	42,206
Net cash from (used) in investing activities	41,620	(144,824)	(162,415)

- 1 Calculate and interpret MTR's interest coverage ratio with and without capitalised interest. Assume that capitalised interest increases depreciation expense by \$475 thousand in 2008 and 2007, and by \$365 thousand in 2006.
- 2 Calculate MTR's percentage change in operating cash flow from 2006 to 2007 and from 2007 to 2008. Assuming the financial reporting does not affect reporting for income taxes, what were the effects of capitalised interest on operating and investing cash flows?

Solution to 1:

MTR did not capitalise any interest during 2008, so the interest coverage ratio for this year is affected only by depreciation expense related to previously capitalised interest. The interest coverage ratio, measured as earnings before interest and taxes (EBIT) divided by interest expense, was as follows for 2008:

10.61 ($\$432,686 \div \$40,764$) for 2008 without adjusting for capitalised interest

10.63 [$(\$432,686 + \$475) \div \$40,764$] including an adjustment to EBIT for depreciation of previously capitalised interest

For the years 2007 and 2006, interest coverage ratios with and without capitalised interest were as follows:

For 2007

11.19 ($\$389,268 \div \$34,774$) without adjusting for capitalised interest; and
 10.54 [$(\$389,268 + \$475) \div (\$34,774 + \$2,200)$] including an adjustment to EBIT for depreciation of previously capitalised interest and an adjustment to interest expense for the amount of interest capitalised in 2007.

For 2006

15.77 ($\$268,800 \div \$17,047$) without adjusting for capitalised interest; and
 11.68 [$(\$268,800 + \$365) \div (\$17,047 + \$6,000)$] including an adjustment to EBIT for depreciation of previously capitalised interest and an adjustment to interest expense for the amount of interest capitalised in 2006.

Because MTR capitalises interest in previous years, EBIT is adjusted by adding in depreciation expense due to capitalised interest costs.

The above calculations indicate that MTR's interest coverage deteriorated over the three-year period from 2006 to 2008, even with no adjustments for capitalised interest. In both 2006 and 2007, the coverage ratio is lower when adjusted for capitalised interest. For 2006, the interest coverage ratio of 11.68 that includes capitalised interest is substantially lower than the ratio without capitalised interest.

Solution to 2:

If the interest had been expensed rather than capitalised, operating cash flows would have been substantially lower in 2006, slightly lower in 2007, but unchanged in 2008. If the interest had been expensed rather than capitalised, the trend—at least in the last two years—would have been more favorable; operating cash flows would have increased rather than decreased over the 2007 to 2008 period. On an unadjusted basis, for 2008 compared with 2007, MTR's operating cash flow declined by 1.9 percent [$(\$14,693 \div \$14,980) - 1$]. If the \$2,200 of interest had been expensed rather than capitalised in 2007, the change in operating cash flow would have been positive, 15.0 percent [$\{[\$14,693 \div (\$14,980 - \$2,200)] - 1\}$].

If interest had been expensed rather than capitalised, the amount of cash outflow for investing activities would have been lower in 2006 and 2007 but unaffected in 2008. The percentage decline in cash outflows for investing activities from 2006 to 2007 would have been slightly smaller excluding capitalised interest from investing activities, 8.8 percent [$\{[(\$144,824 - \$2,200) \div (\$162,415 - \$6,000)] - 1\}$].

The treatment of capitalised interest raises issues for consideration by an analyst. First, capitalised interest appears as part of investing cash outflows, whereas expensed interest reduces operating or financing cash flow under IFRS and operating cash flow under US GAAP. An analyst may want to examine the impact on reported cash flows of interest expenditures when comparing companies. Second, interest coverage ratios are solvency indicators measuring the extent to which a company's earnings (or cash flow) in a period covered its interest costs. To provide a true picture of a company's interest coverage, the entire amount of interest, both the capitalised portion and the expensed portion, should be used in calculating interest coverage ratios.

Generally, including capitalised interest in the calculation of interest coverage ratios provides a better assessment of a company's solvency. In assigning credit ratings, rating agencies include capitalised interest in coverage ratios. For example, Standard & Poor's calculates the EBIT interest coverage ratio as EBIT divided by gross interest (defined as interest prior to deductions for capitalised interest or interest income).

Maintaining a minimum interest coverage ratio is a financial covenant often included in lending agreements, e.g., bank loans and bond indentures. The definition of the coverage ratio can be found in the company's credit agreement. The definition is relevant because treatment of capitalised interest in calculating coverage ratios would affect an assessment of how close a company's actual ratios are to the levels specified by its financial covenants and thus the probability of breaching those covenants.

2.5 Capitalisation of Internal Development Costs

As noted above, accounting standards require companies to capitalise software development costs after a product's feasibility is established. Despite this requirement, judgment in determining feasibility means that companies' capitalisation practices may differ. For example, as illustrated in Exhibit 4, Microsoft judges product feasibility to be established very shortly before manufacturing begins and, therefore, effectively expenses—rather than capitalises—research and development costs.

Exhibit 4 Disclosure on Software Development Costs

Excerpt from Management's Discussion and Analysis (MD&A) of Microsoft Corporation, Application of Critical Accounting Policies, Research and Development Costs:

SFAS No. 86 specifies that costs incurred internally in researching and developing a computer software product should be charged to expense until technological feasibility has been established for the product. Once technological feasibility is established, all software costs should be capitalized until the product is available for general release to customers. Judgment is required in determining when technological feasibility of a product is established. We have determined that technological feasibility for our software products is reached after all high-risk development issues have been resolved through coding and testing. Generally, this occurs shortly before the products are released to manufacturing. The amortization of these costs is included in cost of revenue over the estimated life of the products.

Source: Microsoft Corporation Annual Report 2009, p. 36.

Expensing rather than capitalising development costs results in lower net income in the current period. Expensing rather than capitalising will continue to result in lower net income so long as the amount of the current-period development expenses is higher than the amortisation expense that would have resulted from amortising prior periods' capitalised development costs—the typical situation when a company's development costs are increasing. On the statement of cash flows, expensing rather than capitalising development costs results in lower net operating cash flows and higher net investing cash flows. This is because the development costs are reflected as operating cash outflows rather than investing cash outflows.

In comparing the financial performance of a company that expenses most or all software development costs, such as Microsoft, with another company that capitalises software development costs, adjustments can be made to make the two comparable. For the company that capitalises software development costs, an analyst can adjust (a) the income statement to include software development costs as an expense and to exclude amortisation of prior years' software development costs; (b) the balance sheet to exclude capitalised software (decrease assets and equity); and (c) the statement of

cash flows to decrease operating cash flows and decrease cash used in investing by the amount of the current period development costs. Any ratios that include income, long-lived assets, or cash flow from operations—such as return on equity—will also be affected.

EXAMPLE 7**Software Development Costs**

You are working on a project involving the analysis of JHH Software, a (hypothetical) software development company that established technical feasibility for its first product in 2007. Part of your analysis involves computing certain market-based ratios, which you will use to compare JHH to another company that expenses all of its software development expenditures. Relevant data and excerpts from the company's annual report are included in Exhibit 5.

Exhibit 5 JHH SOFTWARE (Dollars in Thousands, Except Per-Share Amounts)**CONSOLIDATED STATEMENT OF EARNINGS—abbreviated**

For year ended 31 December:	2009	2008	2007
Total revenue	\$91,424	\$91,134	\$96,293
Total operating expenses	78,107	78,908	85,624
Operating income	13,317	12,226	10,669
Provision for income taxes	3,825	4,232	3,172
Net income	\$9,492	\$7,994	\$7,479
Earnings per share (EPS)	\$1.40	\$0.82	\$0.68

STATEMENT OF CASH FLOWS—abbreviated

For year ended 31 December:	2009	2008	2007
Net cash provided by operating activities	\$15,007	\$14,874	\$15,266
Net cash used in investing activities*	(11,549)	(4,423)	(5,346)
Net cash used in financing activities	(8,003)	(7,936)	(7,157)
Net change in cash and cash equivalents	(\$4,545)	\$2,515	\$2,763

*Includes software development expenses of and includes capital expenditures of

	(\$6,000)	(\$4,000)	(\$2,000)
	(\$2,000)	(\$1,600)	(\$1,200)

Additional information:

For year ended 31 December:	2009	2008	2007
Market value of outstanding debt	0	0	0
Amortisation of capitalised software development expenses	(\$2,000)	(\$667)	0
Depreciation expense	(\$2,200)	(\$1,440)	(\$1,320)

Exhibit 5 (Continued)**CONSOLIDATED STATEMENT OF EARNINGS—abbreviated**

For year ended 31 December:	2009	2008	2007
Market price per share of common stock	\$42	\$26	\$17
Shares of common stock outstanding (thousands)	6,780	9,765	10,999

Footnote disclosure of accounting policy for software development:

Expenses that are related to the conceptual formulation and design of software products are expensed to research and development as incurred. The company capitalises expenses that are incurred to produce the finished product after technological feasibility has been established.

- 1 Compute the following ratios for JHH based on the reported financial statements for fiscal year ended 31 December 2009, with no adjustments. Next, determine the approximate impact on these ratios if the company had expensed rather than capitalised its investments in software. (Assume the financial reporting does not affect reporting for income taxes. There would be no change in the effective tax rate.)
 - A P/E: Price/Earnings per share
 - B P/CFO: Price/Operating cash flow per share
 - C EV/EBITDA: Enterprise value/EBITDA, where enterprise value is defined as the total market value of all sources of a company's financing, including equity and debt, and EBITDA is earnings before interest, taxes, depreciation, and amortisation.
- 2 Interpret the changes in the ratios.

Solution to 1:

(Dollars are in thousands, except per-share amounts.) JHH's 2009 ratios are presented in the following table:

	<u>Ratios</u>	<u>As reported</u>	<u>As adjusted</u>
A.	P/E ratio	30.0	42.9
B.	P/CFO	19.0	31.6
C.	EV/EBITDA	16.3	24.7

- A Based on the information as reported, the P/E ratio was 30.0 ($\$42 \div \1.40). Based on EPS adjusted to expense software development costs, the P/E ratio was 42.9 ($\$42 \div \0.98).
 - Price: Assuming that the market value of the company's equity is based on its fundamentals, the price per share is \$42, regardless of a difference in accounting.
 - EPS: As reported, EPS was \$1.40. Adjusted EPS was \$0.98. Expensing software development costs would have reduced JHH's 2009 operating income by \$6,000, but the company would have reported no amortisation of prior years' software costs, which would have increased operating income by \$2,000. The net change of \$4,000 would have reduced operating income from the reported \$13,317 to \$9,317. The effective tax rate for 2009 ($\$3,825 \div \$13,317$) is 28.72%, and using this effective tax rate would give an adjusted net income of \$6,641 [$\$9,317 \times (1$

– 0.2872)], compared to \$9,492 before the adjustment. The EPS would therefore be reduced from the reported \$1.40 to \$0.98 (adjusted net income of \$6,641 divided by 6,780 shares).

- B** Based on information as reported, the P/CFO was 19.0 ($\$42 \div \2.21). Based on CFO adjusted to expense software development costs, the P/CFO was 31.6 ($\$42 \div \1.33).
- Price: Assuming that the market value of the company's equity is based on its fundamentals, the price per share is \$42, regardless of a difference in accounting.
 - CFO per share, as reported, was \$2.21 (total operating cash flows $\$15,007 \div 6,780$ shares).
 - CFO per share, as adjusted, was \$1.33. The company's \$6,000 expenditure on software development costs was reported as a cash outflow from investing activities, so expensing those costs would reduce cash from operating activities by \$6,000, from the reported \$15,007 to \$9,007. Dividing adjusted total operating cash flow of \$9,007 by 6,780 shares results in cash flow per share of \$1.33.
- C** Based on information as reported, the EV/EBITDA was 16.3 ($\$284,760 \div \$17,517$). Based on EBITDA adjusted to expense software development costs, the EV/EBITDA was 24.7 ($\$284,760 \div \$11,517$).
- Enterprise Value: Enterprise value is the sum of the market value of the company's equity and debt. JHH has no debt, and therefore the enterprise value is equal to the market value of its equity. The market value of its equity is \$284,760 ($\42 per share \times 6,780 shares).
 - EBITDA, as reported, was \$17,517 (earnings before interest and taxes of \$13,317 plus \$2,200 depreciation plus \$2,000 amortisation).
 - EBITDA, adjusted for expensing software development costs by the inclusion of \$6,000 development expense and the exclusion of \$2,000 amortisation of prior expense, would be \$11,517 (earnings before interest and taxes of \$9,317 plus \$2,200 depreciation plus \$0 amortisation).

Solution to 2:

Expensing software development costs would decrease historical profits, operating cash flow, and EBITDA, and would thus increase all market multiples. So JHH's stock would appear more expensive if it expensed rather than capitalised the software development costs.

If the unadjusted market-based ratios were used in the comparison of JHH to its competitor that expenses all software development expenditures, then JHH might appear to be under-priced when the difference is solely related to accounting factors. JHH's adjusted market-based ratios provide a better basis for comparison.

For the company in Example 7, current period software development expenditures exceed the amortisation of prior periods' capitalised software development expenditures. As a result, expensing rather than capitalising software development costs would have the effect of lowering income. If, however, software development expenditures slowed such that current expenditures were lower than the amortisation of prior periods' capitalised software development expenditures, then expensing software development costs would have the effect of increasing income relative to capitalising it.

This section illustrated how decisions about capitalising versus expensing impact financial statements and ratios. Earlier expensing lowers current profits but enhances trends, whereas capitalising now and expensing later enhances current profits. Having described the accounting for acquisition of long-lived assets, we now turn to the topic of measuring long-lived assets in subsequent periods.

DEPRECIATION AND AMORTISATION OF LONG-LIVED ASSETS

3

Under the cost model of reporting long-lived assets, which is permitted under IFRS and required under US GAAP, the capitalised costs of long-lived tangible assets (other than land, which is not depreciated) and intangible assets with finite useful lives are allocated to subsequent periods as depreciation and amortisation expenses. Depreciation and amortisation are effectively the same concept, with the term depreciation referring to the process of allocating tangible assets' costs and the term amortisation referring to the process of allocating intangible assets' costs.¹² The alternative model of reporting long-lived assets is the **revaluation model**, which is permitted under IFRS but not under US GAAP. Under the revaluation model, a company reports the long-lived asset at fair value rather than at acquisition cost (historical cost) less accumulated depreciation or amortisation, as in the cost model.

An asset's carrying amount is the amount at which the asset is reported on the balance sheet. Under the cost model, at any point in time, the carrying amount (also called carrying value or net book value) of a long-lived asset is equal to its historical cost minus the amount of depreciation or amortisation that has been accumulated since the asset's purchase (assuming that the asset has not been impaired, a topic which will be addressed in Section 5). Companies may present on the balance sheet the total net amount of property, plant, and equipment and the total net amount of intangible assets. However, more detail is disclosed in the notes to financial statements. The details disclosed typically include the acquisition costs, the depreciation and amortisation expenses, the accumulated depreciation and amortisation amounts, the depreciation and amortisation methods used, and information on the assumptions used to depreciate and amortise long-lived assets.

3.1 Depreciation Methods and Calculation of Depreciation Expense

Depreciation methods include the **straight-line method**, in which the cost of an asset is allocated to expense evenly over its useful life; **accelerated methods**, in which the allocation of cost is greater in earlier years; and the **units-of-production method**, in which the allocation of cost corresponds to the actual use of an asset in a particular period. The choice of depreciation method affects the amounts reported on the financial statements, including the amounts for reported assets and operating and net income. This, in turn, affects a variety of financial ratios, including fixed asset turnover, total asset turnover, operating profit margin, operating return on assets, and return on assets.

¹² Depletion is the term applied to a similar concept for natural resources; costs associated with those resources are allocated to a period on the basis of the usage or extraction of those resources.

Using the straight-line method, depreciation expense is calculated as depreciable cost divided by estimated useful life and is the same for each period. Depreciable cost is the historical cost of the tangible asset minus the estimated residual (salvage) value.¹³ A commonly used accelerated method is the declining balance method, in which the amount of depreciation expense for a period is calculated as some percentage of the carrying amount (i.e., cost net of accumulated depreciation at the beginning of the period). When an accelerated method is used, depreciable cost is not used to calculate the depreciation expense but the carrying amount should not be reduced below the estimated residual value. In the units-of-production method, the amount of depreciation expense for a period is based on the proportion of the asset's production during the period compared with the total estimated productive capacity of the asset over its useful life. The depreciation expense is calculated as depreciable cost times production in the period divided by estimated productive capacity over the life of the asset. Equivalently, the company may estimate a depreciation cost per unit (depreciable cost divided by estimated productive capacity) and calculate depreciation expense as depreciation cost per unit times production in the period. Regardless of the depreciation method used, the carrying amount of the asset is not reduced below the estimated residual value. Example 8 provides an example of these depreciation methods.

EXAMPLE 8

Alternative Depreciation Methods

You are analyzing three hypothetical companies: EVEN-LI Co., SOONER Inc., and AZUSED Co. At the beginning of Year 1, each company buys an identical piece of box manufacturing equipment for \$2,300 and has the same assumptions about useful life, estimated residual value, and productive capacity. The annual production of each company is the same, but each company uses a different method of depreciation. As disclosed in each company's notes to the financial statements, each company's depreciation method, assumptions, and production are as follows:

Depreciation method

- EVEN-LI Co.: straight-line method
- SOONER Inc.: double-declining balance method (the rate applied to the carrying amount is double the depreciation rate for the straight-line method)
- AZUSED Co.: units-of-production method

Assumptions and production

- Estimated residual value: \$100
- Estimated useful life: 4 years

¹³ The residual value is the estimated amount that an entity will obtain from disposal of the asset at the end of its useful life.

- Total estimated productive capacity: 800 boxes
 - Production in each of the four years: 200 boxes in the first year, 300 in the second year, 200 in the third year, and 100 in the fourth year
- 1 Using the following template for each company, record its beginning and ending net book value (carrying amount), end-of-year accumulated depreciation, and annual depreciation expense for the box manufacturing equipment.

Template:

	Beginning Net Book Value	Depreciation Expense	Accumulated Depreciation	Ending Net Book Value
Year 1				
Year 2				
Year 3				
Year 4				

- 2 Explain the significant differences in the timing of the recognition of the depreciation expense.
- 3 For each company, assume that sales, earnings before interest, taxes, and depreciation, and assets other than the box manufacturing equipment are as shown in the following table. Calculate the total asset turnover ratio, the operating profit margin, and the operating return on assets for each company for each of the four years. Discuss the ratios, comparing results within and across companies.

	Sales	Earnings before Interest, Taxes, and Depreciation	Carrying Amount of Total Assets, Excluding the Box Manufacturing Equipment, at Year End*
Year 1	\$300,000	\$36,000	\$30,000
Year 2	320,000	38,400	32,000
Year 3	340,000	40,800	34,000
Year 4	360,000	43,200	36,000

* Assume that total assets at the beginning of Year 1, including the box manufacturing equipment, had a value of \$30,300. Assume that depreciation expense on assets other than the box manufacturing equipment totaled \$1,000 per year.

Solution to 1:

For *each* company, the following information applies: Beginning net book value in Year 1 equals the purchase price of \$2,300; accumulated year-end depreciation equals the balance from the previous year plus the current year’s depreciation expense; ending net book value (carrying amount) equals original cost minus accumulated year-end depreciation (which is the same as beginning net book value minus depreciation expense); and beginning net book value in Years 2, 3, and 4 equals the ending net book value of the prior year. The following text and filled-in templates describe how depreciation *expense* is calculated for each company.

EVEN-LI Co. uses the straight-line method, so depreciation expense in each year equals \$550, which is calculated as $(\$2,300 \text{ original cost} - \$100 \text{ residual value})/4 \text{ years}$. The net book value at the end of Year 4 is the estimated residual value of \$100.

EVEN-LI Co.	Beginning Net Book Value	Depreciation Expense	Accumulated Year-End Depreciation	Ending Net Book Value
Year 1	\$2,300	\$550	\$550	\$1,750
Year 2	1,750	550	1,100	1,200
Year 3	1,200	550	1,650	650
Year 4	650	550	2,200	100

SOONER Inc. uses the double-declining balance method. The depreciation rate for the double-declining balance method is double the depreciation rate for the straight-line method. The depreciation rate under the straight-line method is 25 percent (100 percent divided by 4 years). Thus, the depreciation rate for the double-declining balance method is 50 percent (2 times 25 percent). The depreciation expense for the first year is \$1,150 (50 percent of \$2,300). Note that under this method, the depreciation rate of 50 percent is applied to the carrying amount (net book value) of the asset, without adjustment for expected residual value. Because the carrying amount of the asset is not depreciated below its estimated residual value, however, the depreciation expense in the final year of depreciation decreases the ending net book value (carrying amount) to the estimated residual value.

SOONER Inc.	Beginning Net Book Value	Depreciation Expense	Accumulated Year-End Depreciation	Ending Net Book Value
Year 1	\$2,300	\$1,150	\$1,150	\$1,150
Year 2	1,150	575	1,725	575
Year 3	575	288	2,013	287
Year 4	287	187	2,200	100

Another common approach (not required in this question) is to use an accelerated method, such as the double-declining method, for some period (a year or more) and then to change to the straight-line method for the remaining life of the asset. If SOONER had used the double-declining method for the first year and then switched to the straight-line method for Years 2, 3, and 4, the depreciation expense would be \$350 $[(\$1,150 - \$100 \text{ estimated residual value})/3 \text{ years}]$ a year for Years 2, 3, and 4. The results for SOONER under this alternative approach are shown below.

SOONER Inc.	Beginning Net Book Value	Depreciation Expense	Accumulated Year-End Depreciation	Ending Net Book Value
Year 1	\$2,300	\$1,150	\$1,150	\$1,150
Year 2	1,150	350	1,500	800
Year 3	800	350	1,850	450
Year 4	450	350	2,200	100

AZUSED Co. uses the units-of-production method. Dividing the equipment's total depreciable cost by its total productive capacity gives a cost per unit of \$2.75, calculated as $(\$2,300 \text{ original cost} - \$100 \text{ residual value})/800$. The depreciation

expense recognised each year is the number of units produced times \$2.75. For Year 1, the amount of depreciation expense is \$550 (200 units times \$2.75). For Year 2, the amount is \$825 (300 units times \$2.75). For Year 3, the amount is \$550. For Year 4, the amount is \$275.

AZUSED Co.	Beginning Net Book Value	Depreciation Expense	Accumulated Year-End Depreciation	Ending Net Book Value
Year 1	\$2,300	\$550	\$550	\$1,750
Year 2	1,750	825	1,375	925
Year 3	925	550	1,925	375
Year 4	375	275	2,200	100

Solution to 2:

All three methods result in the same total amount of accumulated depreciation over the life of the equipment. The significant differences are simply in the timing of the recognition of the depreciation expense. The straight-line method recognises the expense evenly, the accelerated method recognises most of the expense in the first year, and the units-of-production method recognises the expense on the basis of production (or use of the asset). Under all three methods, the ending net book value is \$100.

Solution to 3:

Total asset turnover ratio = Total revenue ÷ Average total assets

Operating profit margin = Earnings before interest and taxes ÷ Total revenue

Operating return on assets = Earnings before interest and taxes ÷ Average total assets

Ratios are shown in the table below, and details of the calculations for Years 1 and 2 are described after discussion of the ratios.

Ratio*	EVEN-LI Co.			SOONER Inc.			AZUSED Co.		
	AT	PM (%)	ROA (%)	AT	PM (%)	ROA (%)	AT	PM (%)	ROA (%)
Year 1	9.67	11.48	111.04	9.76	11.28	110.17	9.67	11.48	111.04
Year 2	9.85	11.52	113.47	10.04	11.51	115.57	9.90	11.43	113.10
Year 3	10.02	11.54	115.70	10.17	11.62	118.21	10.10	11.54	116.64
Year 4	10.18	11.57	117.74	10.23	11.67	119.42	10.22	11.65	118.98

* AT = Total asset turnover ratio. PM = Operating profit margin. ROA = Operating return on assets.

For all companies, the asset turnover ratio increased over time because sales grew at a faster rate than that of the assets. SOONER had consistently higher asset turnover ratios than the other two companies, however, because higher depreciation expense in the earlier periods decreased its average total assets. In addition, the higher depreciation in earlier periods resulted in SOONER having lower operating profit margin and operating ROA in the first year and higher operating profit margin and operating ROA in the later periods. SOONER appears to be more efficiently run, on the basis of its higher asset turnover and greater increases in profit margin and ROA over time; however, these comparisons reflect differences in the companies' choice of depreciation method. In addition,

an analyst might question the sustainability of the extremely high ROAs for all three companies because such high profitability levels would probably attract new competitors, which would likely put downward pressure on the ratios.

EVEN-LI Co.

Year 1:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Total asset turnover ratio} &= 300,000 / [(30,300 + 30,000 + 1,750) / 2] \\ &= 300,000 / 31,025 = 9.67 \\ \text{Operating profit margin} &= (36,000 - 1,000 - 550) / 300,000 \\ &= 34,450 / 300,000 = 11.48\% \\ \text{Operating ROA} &= 34,450 / 31,025 = 111.04\%\end{aligned}$$

Year 2:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Total asset turnover ratio} &= 320,000 / [(30,000 + 1,750 + 32,000 + 1,200) / 2] \\ &= 320,000 / 32,475 = 9.85 \\ \text{Operating profit margin} &= (38,400 - 1,000 - 550) / 320,000 \\ &= 36,850 / 320,000 = 11.52\% \\ \text{Operating ROA} &= 36,850 / 32,475 = 113.47\%\end{aligned}$$

SOONER Inc.

Year 1:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Total asset turnover ratio} &= 300,000 / [(30,300 + 30,000 + 1,150) / 2] \\ &= 300,000 / 30,725 = 9.76 \\ \text{Operating profit margin} &= (36,000 - 1,000 - 1,150) / 300,000 \\ &= 33,850 / 300,000 = 11.28\% \\ \text{Operating ROA} &= 33,850 / 30,725 = 110.17\%\end{aligned}$$

Year 2:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Total asset turnover ratio} &= 320,000 / [(30,000 + 1,150 + 32,000 + 575) / 2] \\ &= 320,000 / 31,862.50 = 10.04 \\ \text{Operating profit margin} &= (38,400 - 1,000 - 575) / 320,000 \\ &= 36,825 / 320,000 = 11.51\% \\ \text{Operating ROA} &= 36,825 / 31,862.50 = 115.57\%\end{aligned}$$

AZUSED Co.

Year 1:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Total asset turnover ratio} &= 300,000 / [(30,300 + 30,000 + 1,750) / 2] \\ &= 300,000 / 31,025 = 9.67 \\ \text{Operating profit margin} &= (36,000 - 1,000 - 550) / 300,000 \\ &= 34,450 / 300,000 = 11.48\% \\ \text{Operating ROA} &= 34,450 / 31,025 = 111.04\%\end{aligned}$$

Year 2:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Total asset turnover ratio} &= 320,000 / [(30,000 + 1,750 + 32,000 + 925) / 2] \\ &= 320,000 / 32,337.50 = 9.90 \\ \text{Operating profit margin} &= (38,400 - 1,000 - 825) / 320,000 \\ &= 36,575 / 320,000 = 11.43\% \\ \text{Operating ROA} &= 36,575 / 32,337.50 = 113.10\%\end{aligned}$$

In many countries, a company must use the same depreciation methods for both financial and tax reporting. In other countries, including the United States, a company need not use the same depreciation method for financial reporting and taxes. As a result of using different depreciation methods for financial and tax reporting, pre-tax income on the income statement and taxable income on the tax return may differ. Thus, the amount of tax expense computed on the basis of pre-tax income and the amount of taxes actually owed on the basis of taxable income may differ. Although these differences eventually reverse because the total depreciation is the same regardless of the timing of its recognition in financial statements versus on tax returns, during the period of the difference, the balance sheet will show what is known as deferred taxes. For instance, if a company uses straight-line depreciation for financial reporting and an accelerated depreciation method for tax purposes, the company's financial statements will report lower depreciation expense and higher pre-tax income in the first year, compared with the amount of depreciation expense and taxable income in its tax reporting. (Compare the depreciation expense in Year 1 for EVEN-LI Co. and SOONER Inc. in the previous example.) Tax expense calculated on the basis of the financial statements' pre-tax income will be higher than taxes payable on the basis of taxable income; the difference between the two amounts represents a deferred tax liability. The deferred tax liability will be reduced as the difference reverses (i.e., when depreciation for financial reporting is higher than the depreciation for tax purposes) and the income tax is paid.

Significant estimates required for calculating depreciation include the useful life of the asset (or its total lifetime productive capacity) and its expected residual value at the end of that useful life. A longer useful life and higher expected residual value decrease the amount of annual depreciation expense relative to a shorter useful life and lower expected residual value. Companies should review their estimates periodically to ensure they remain reasonable. IFRS require companies to review estimates annually.

Although no significant differences exist between IFRS and US GAAP with respect to the definition of depreciation and the acceptable depreciation methods, IFRS require companies to use a component method of depreciation.¹⁴ Companies are required to separately depreciate the significant components of an asset (parts of an item with a cost that is significant in relation to the total cost and/or with different useful lives) and thus require additional estimates for the various components. For instance, it may be appropriate to depreciate separately the engine, frame, and interior furnishings of an aircraft. Under US GAAP, the component method of depreciation is allowed but is seldom used in practice.¹⁵ The following example illustrates depreciating components of an asset.

EXAMPLE 9

Illustration of Depreciating Components of an Asset

CUTITUP Co., a hypothetical company, purchases a milling machine, a type of machine used for shaping metal, at a total cost of \$10,000. \$2,000 was estimated to represent the cost of the rotating cutter, a significant component of the machine. The company expects the machine to have a useful life of eight years and a residual value of \$3,000 and that the rotating cutter will need to be

¹⁴ IAS 16 *Property, Plant and Equipment*, paragraphs 43–47 [Depreciation].

¹⁵ According to the Ernst & Young Academic Resource Center.

replaced every two years. Assume the entire residual value is attributable to the milling machine itself, and assume the company uses straight-line depreciation for all assets.

- 1 How much depreciation expense would the company report in Year 1 if it uses the component method of depreciation, and how much depreciation expense would the company report in Year 1 if it does not use the component method?
- 2 Assuming a new cutter with an estimated two-year useful life is purchased at the end of Year 2 for \$2,000, what depreciation expenses would the company report in Year 3 if it uses the component method and if it does not use the component method?
- 3 Assuming replacement of the cutter every two years at a price of \$2,000, what is the total depreciation expense over the eight years if the company uses the component method compared with the total depreciation expense if the company does not use the component method?
- 4 How many different items must the company estimate in the first year to compute depreciation expense for the milling machine if it uses the component method, and how does this compare with what would be required if it does not use the component method?

Solution to 1:

Depreciation expense in Year 1 under the component method would be \$1,625. For the portion of the machine excluding the cutter, the depreciable base is total cost minus the cost attributable to the cutter minus the estimated residual value = $\$10,000 - \$2,000 - \$3,000 = \$5,000$. Depreciation expense for the machine excluding the cutter in the first year equals \$625 (depreciable cost divided by the useful life of the machine = $\$5,000/8$ years). For the cutter, the depreciation expense equals \$1,000 (depreciable cost divided by the useful life of the cutter = $\$2,000/2$ years). Thus, the total depreciation expense for Year 1 under the component method is \$1,625 (the sum of the depreciation expenses of the two components = $\$625 + \$1,000$). Depreciation expense in Year 2 would also be \$1,625.

If the company does not use the component method, depreciation expense in Year 1 is \$875 (the depreciable cost of the total milling machine divided by its useful life = $[\$10,000 - \$3,000]/8$ years). Depreciation expense in Year 2 would also be \$875.

Solution to 2:

Assuming that at the end of Year 2, the company purchases a new cutter for \$2,000 with an estimated two-year life, under the component method, the depreciation expense in Year 3 will remain at \$1,625. If the company does not use the component method and purchases a new cutter with an estimated two-year life for \$2,000 at the end of Year 2, the depreciation expense in Year 3 will be \$1,875 [$\$875 + (\$2,000/2) = \$875 + \$1,000$].

Solution to 3:

Over the eight years, assuming replacement of the cutters every two years at a price of \$2,000, the total depreciation expense will be \$13,000 [$\$1,625 \times 8$ years] when the component method is used. When the component method is not used, the total depreciation expense will also be \$13,000 [$\875×2 years + $\$1,875 \times 6$ years]. This amount equals the total expenditures of \$16,000 [$\$10,000 + 3$ cutters \times \$2,000] less the residual value of \$3,000.

Solution to 4:

The following table summarizes the estimates required in the first year to compute depreciation expense if the company does or does not use the component method:

Estimate	Required using component method?	Required if not using component method?
Useful life of milling machine	Yes	Yes
Residual value of milling machine	Yes	Yes
Portion of machine cost attributable to cutter	Yes	No
Portion of residual value attributable to cutter	Yes	No
Useful life of cutter	Yes	No

Total depreciation expense may be allocated between the cost of sales and other expenses. Within the income statement, depreciation expense of assets used in production is usually allocated to the cost of sales, and the depreciation expense of assets not used in production may be allocated to some other expense category. For instance, depreciation expense may be allocated to selling, general, and administrative expenses if depreciable assets are used in those functional areas. Notes to the financial statements sometimes disclose information regarding which income statement line items include depreciation expense, although the exact amount of detail disclosed by individual companies varies.

3.2 Amortisation Methods and Calculation of Amortisation Expense

Amortisation is similar in concept to depreciation. The term amortisation applies to intangible assets, and the term depreciation applies to tangible assets. Both terms refer to the process of allocating the cost of an asset over the asset's useful life. Only those intangible assets assumed to have finite useful lives are amortised over their useful lives, following the pattern in which the benefits are used up. Acceptable amortisation methods are the same as the methods acceptable for depreciation. Assets assumed to have an indefinite useful life (in other words, without a finite useful life) are not amortised. An intangible asset is considered to have an indefinite useful life when there is "no foreseeable limit to the period over which the asset is expected to generate net cash inflows" for the company.¹⁶

Intangible assets with finite useful lives include an acquired customer list expected to provide benefits to a direct-mail marketing company for two to three years, an acquired patent or copyright with a specific expiration date, an acquired license with a specific expiration date and no right to renew the license, and an acquired trademark for a product that a company plans to phase out over a specific number of years. Examples of intangible assets with indefinite useful lives include an acquired license that, although it has a specific expiration date, can be renewed at little or no cost and an acquired trademark that, although it has a specific expiration, can be renewed at a minimal cost and relates to a product that a company plans to continue selling for the foreseeable future.

¹⁶ IAS 38 *Intangible Assets*, paragraph 88.

As with depreciation for a tangible asset, the calculation of amortisation for an intangible asset requires the original amount at which the intangible asset is recognised and estimates of the length of its useful life and its residual value at the end of its useful life. Useful lives are estimated on the basis of the expected use of the asset, considering any factors that may limit the life of the asset, such as legal, regulatory, contractual, competitive, or economic factors.

EXAMPLE 10

Amortisation Expense

IAS 38 *Intangible Assets* provides illustrative examples regarding the accounting for intangible assets, including the following:

A direct-mail marketing company acquires a customer list and expects that it will be able to derive benefit from the information on the list for at least one year, but no more than three years. The customer list would be amortised over management's best estimate of its useful life, say 18 months. Although the direct-mail marketing company may intend to add customer names and other information to the list in the future, the expected benefits of the acquired customer list relate only to the customers on that list at the date it was acquired.

In this example, in what ways would management's decisions and estimates affect the company's financial statements?

Solution:

Because the acquired customer list is expected to generate future economic benefits for a period greater than one year, the cost of the list should be capitalised and not expensed. The acquired customer list is determined to not have an indefinite life and must be amortised. Management must estimate the useful life of the customer list and must select an amortisation method. In this example, the list appears to have no residual value. Both the amortisation method and the estimated useful life affect the amount of the amortisation expense in each period. A shorter estimated useful life, compared with a longer estimated useful life, results in a higher amortisation expense each year over a shorter period, but the *total* accumulated amortisation expense over the life of the intangible asset is unaffected by the estimate of the useful life. Similarly, the total accumulated amortisation expense over the life of the intangible asset is unaffected by the choice of amortisation method. The amortisation expense per period depends on the amortisation method. If the straight-line method is used, the amortisation expense is the same for each year of useful life. If an accelerated method is used, the amortisation expense will be higher in earlier years.

4

THE REVALUATION MODEL

The revaluation model is an alternative to the cost model for the periodic valuation and reporting of long-lived assets. IFRS permit the use of either the revaluation model or the cost model, but the revaluation model is not allowed under US GAAP. Revaluation changes the carrying amounts of classes of long-lived assets to fair value (the fair value must be measured reliably). Under the cost model, carrying amounts

are historical costs less accumulated depreciation or amortisation. Under the revaluation model, carrying amounts are the fair values at the date of revaluation less any subsequent accumulated depreciation or amortisation.

IFRS allow companies to value long-lived assets either under a cost model at historical cost minus accumulated depreciation or amortisation or under a revaluation model at fair value. In contrast, US accounting standards require that the cost model be used. A key difference between the two models is that the cost model allows only decreases in the values of long-lived assets compared with historical costs but the revaluation model may result in increases in the values of long-lived assets to amounts greater than historical costs.

IFRS allow a company to use the cost model for some classes of assets and the revaluation model for others, but the company must apply the same model to all assets within a particular class of assets and must revalue all items within a class to avoid selective revaluation. Examples of different classes of assets include land, land and buildings, machinery, motor vehicles, furniture and fixtures, and office equipment. The revaluation model may be used for classes of intangible assets but only if an active market for the assets exists, because the revaluation model may only be used if the fair values of the assets can be measured reliably. For practical purposes, the revaluation model is rarely used for either tangible or intangible assets, but its use is especially rare for intangible assets.

Under the revaluation model, whether an asset revaluation affects earnings depends on whether the revaluation initially increases or decreases an asset class' carrying amount. If a revaluation initially decreases the carrying amount of the asset class, the decrease is recognised in profit or loss. Later, if the carrying amount of the asset class increases, the increase is recognised in profit or loss to the extent that it reverses a revaluation decrease of the same asset class previously recognised in profit or loss. Any increase in excess of the reversal amount will not be recognised in the income statement but will be recorded directly to equity in a revaluation surplus account. An upward revaluation is treated the same as the amount in excess of the reversal amount. In other words, if a revaluation initially increases the carrying amount of the asset class, the increase in the carrying amount of the asset class bypasses the income statement and goes directly to equity under the heading of revaluation surplus. Any subsequent decrease in the asset's value first decreases the revaluation surplus and then goes to income. When an asset is retired or disposed of, any related amount of revaluation surplus included in equity is transferred directly to retained earnings.

Asset revaluations offer several considerations for financial statement analyses. First, an increase in the carrying amount of depreciable long-lived assets increases total assets and shareholders' equity, so asset revaluations that increase the carrying amount of an asset can be used to reduce reported leverage. Defining leverage as average total assets divided by average shareholders' equity, increasing both the numerator (assets) and denominator (equity) by the same amount leads to a decline in the ratio. (Mathematically, when a ratio is greater than one, as in this case, an increase in both the numerator and the denominator by the same amount leads to a decline in the ratio.) Therefore, the leverage motivation for the revaluation should be considered in analysis. For example, a company may revalue assets up if it is seeking new capital or approaching leverage limitations set by financial covenants.

Second, assets revaluations that decrease the carrying amount of the assets reduce net income. In the year of the revaluation, profitability measures such as return on assets and return on equity decline. However, because total assets and shareholders' equity are also lower, the company may appear more profitable in future years. Additionally, reversals of downward revaluations also go through income, thus increasing earnings. Managers can then opportunistically time the reversals to manage earnings and increase income. Third, asset revaluations that increase the carrying amount of an asset initially increase depreciation expense, total assets, and shareholders' equity. Therefore,

profitability measures, such as return on assets and return on equity, would decline. Although upward asset revaluations also generally decrease income (through higher depreciation expense), the increase in the value of the long-lived asset is presumably based on increases in the operating capacity of the asset, which will likely be evidenced in increased future revenues.

Finally, an analyst should consider who did the appraisal—i.e. an independent external appraiser or management—and how often revaluations are made. Appraisals of the fair value of long-lived assets involve considerable judgment and discretion. Presumably, appraisals of assets from independent external sources are more reliable. How often assets are revalued can provide an indicator of whether their reported value continues to be representative of their fair values.

The next two examples illustrate revaluation of long-lived assets under IFRS.

EXAMPLE 11

Revaluation Resulting in an Increase in Carrying Amount Followed by Subsequent Revaluation Resulting in a Decrease in Carrying Amount

UPFIRST, a hypothetical manufacturing company, has elected to use the revaluation model for its machinery. Assume for simplicity that the company owns a single machine, which it purchased for €10,000 on the first day of its fiscal period, and that the measurement date occurs simultaneously with the company's fiscal period end.

- 1 At the end of the first fiscal period after acquisition, assume the fair value of the machine is determined to be €11,000. How will the company's financial statements reflect the asset?
- 2 At the end of the second fiscal period after acquisition, assume the fair value of the machine is determined to be €7,500. How will the company's financial statements reflect the asset?

Solution to 1:

At the end of the first fiscal period, the company's balance sheet will show the asset at a value of €11,000. The €1,000 increase in the value of the asset will appear in other comprehensive income and be accumulated in equity under the heading of revaluation surplus.

Solution to 2:

At the end of the second fiscal period, the company's balance sheet will show the asset at a value of €7,500. The total decrease in the carrying amount of the asset is €3,500 (€11,000 – €7,500). Of the €3,500 decrease, the first €1,000 will reduce the amount previously accumulated in equity under the heading of revaluation surplus. The other €2,500 will be shown as a loss on the income statement.

EXAMPLE 12**Revaluation Resulting in a Decrease in Asset's Carrying Amount Followed by Subsequent Revaluation Resulting in an Increase in Asset's Carrying Amount**

DOWNFIRST, a hypothetical manufacturing company, has elected to use the revaluation model for its machinery. Assume for simplicity that the company owns a single machine, which it purchased for €10,000 on the first day of its fiscal period, and that the measurement date occurs simultaneously with the company's fiscal period end.

- 1 At the end of the first fiscal period after acquisition, assume the fair value of the machine is determined to be €7,500. How will the company's financial statements reflect the asset?
- 2 At the end of the second fiscal period after acquisition, assume the fair value of the machine is determined to be €11,000. How will the company's financial statements reflect the asset?

Solution to 1:

At the end of the first fiscal period, the company's balance sheet will show the asset at a value of €7,500. The €2,500 decrease in the value of the asset will appear as a loss on the company's income statement.

Solution to 2:

At the end of the second fiscal period, the company's balance sheet will show the asset at a value of €11,000. The total increase in the carrying amount of the asset is an increase of €3,500 (€11,000 – €7,500). Of the €3,500 increase, the first €2,500 reverses a previously reported loss and will be reported as a gain on the income statement. The other €1,000 will bypass profit or loss and be reported as other comprehensive income and be accumulated in equity under the heading of revaluation surplus.

Exhibit 6 provides an example of a company's disclosures concerning revaluation. The exhibit shows an excerpt from the 2006 annual report of KPN, a Dutch telecommunications and multimedia company. The excerpt is from the section of the annual report in which the company explains differences between its reporting under IFRS and its reporting under US GAAP.¹⁷ One of these differences, as previously noted, is that US GAAP do not allow revaluation of fixed assets held for use. KPN elected to report a class of fixed assets (cables) at fair value and explained that under US GAAP, using the cost model, the value of the class at the end of 2006 would have been €350 million lower.

Exhibit 6 Impact of Revaluation

Excerpt from the annual report of Koninklijke KPN N.V. explaining certain differences between IFRS and US GAAP regarding "Deemed cost fixed assets":

(continued)

¹⁷ On 15 November 2007, the SEC approved rule amendments under which financial statements from foreign private issuers in the United States will be accepted without reconciliation to US GAAP if the financial statements are prepared in accordance with IFRS as issued by the International Accounting Standards Board. The rule took effect for the 2007 fiscal year. As a result, companies such as KPN no longer need to provide reconciliations to US GAAP.

Exhibit 6 (Continued)

KPN elected the exemption to revalue certain of its fixed assets upon the transition to IFRS to fair value and to use this fair value as their deemed cost. KPN applied the depreciated replacement cost method to determine this fair value. The revalued assets pertain to certain cables, which form part of property, plant & equipment. Under US GAAP, this revaluation is not allowed and therefore results in a reconciling item. As a result, the value of these assets as of December 31, 2006 under US GAAP is EUR 350 million lower (2005: EUR 415 million; 2004: EUR 487 million) than under IFRS.

Source: KPN's Form 20-F, p. 168, filed 1 March 2007.

Clearly, the use of the revaluation model as opposed to the cost model can have a significant impact on the financial statements of companies. This has potential consequences for comparing financial performance using financial ratios of companies that use different models.

5**IMPAIRMENT OF ASSETS**

In contrast with depreciation and amortisation charges, which serve to allocate the depreciable cost of a long-lived asset over its useful life, impairment charges reflect an unanticipated decline in the value of an asset. Both IFRS and US GAAP require companies to write down the carrying amount of impaired assets. Impairment reversals for identifiable, long-lived assets are permitted under IFRS but typically not under US GAAP.

An asset is considered to be impaired when its carrying amount exceeds its recoverable amount ("the higher of fair value less cost to sell or value in use" according to IAS 36 *Impairment of Assets*) or under US GAAP when its carrying amount exceeds its fair value. Under US GAAP, however, impairment losses are only recognisable when the carrying amount of the impaired asset is determined to be not recoverable. Therefore, in general, impairment losses are recognised when the asset's carrying amount is not recoverable. However, IFRS and US GAAP define recoverability differently. The following paragraphs describe accounting for impairment for different categories of assets.

5.1 Impairment of Property, Plant, and Equipment

Accounting standards do not require that property, plant, and equipment be tested annually for impairment. Rather, at the end of each reporting period (generally, a fiscal year), a company assesses whether there are indications of asset impairment. If there is no indication of impairment, the asset is not tested for impairment. If there is an indication of impairment, such as evidence of obsolescence, decline in demand for products, or technological advancements, the recoverable amount of the asset should be measured in order to test for impairment. For property, plant, and equipment, impairment losses are recognised when the asset's carrying amount is not recoverable; the carrying amount is more than the recoverable amount. The amount

of the impairment loss will reduce the carrying amount of the asset on the balance sheet and will reduce net income on the income statement. The impairment loss is a non-cash item and will not affect cash from operations.

IFRS and US GAAP differ somewhat both in the guidelines for determining that impairment has occurred and in the measurement of an impairment loss. Under IAS 36, an impairment loss is measured as the excess of carrying amount over the recoverable amount of the asset. The recoverable amount of an asset is defined as “the higher of its fair value less costs to sell and its value in use.” Value in use is a discounted measure of expected future cash flows. Under US GAAP, assessing recoverability is separate from measuring the impairment loss. An asset’s carrying amount is considered not recoverable when it exceeds the undiscounted expected future cash flows. If the asset’s carrying amount is considered not recoverable, the impairment loss is measured as the difference between the asset’s fair value and carrying amount.

EXAMPLE 13

Impairment of Property, Plant, and Equipment

Sussex, a hypothetical manufacturing company in the United Kingdom, has a machine it uses to produce a single product. The demand for the product has declined substantially since the introduction of a competing product. The company has assembled the following information with respect to the machine:

Carrying amount	£18,000
Undiscounted expected future cash flows	£19,000
Present value of expected future cash flows	£16,000
Fair value if sold	£17,000
Costs to sell	£2,000

- 1 Under IFRS, what would the company report for the machine?
- 2 Under US GAAP, what would the company report for the machine?

Solution to 1:

Under IFRS, the company would compare the carrying amount (£18,000) with the higher of its fair value less costs to sell (£15,000) and its value in use (£16,000). The carrying amount exceeds the value in use, the higher of the two amounts, by £2,000. The machine would be written down to the recoverable amount of £16,000, and a loss of £2,000 would be reported in the income statement. The carrying amount of the machine is now £16,000. A new depreciation schedule based on the carrying amount of £16,000 would be developed.

Solution to 2:

Under US GAAP, the carrying amount (£18,000) is compared with the undiscounted expected future cash flows (£19,000). The carrying amount is less than the undiscounted expected future cash flows, so the carrying amount is considered recoverable. The machine would continue to be carried at £18,000, and no loss would be reported.

In Example 13, a write down in the value of a piece of property, plant, and equipment occurred under IFRS but not under US GAAP. In Example 14, a write down occurs under both IFRS and US GAAP.

EXAMPLE 14**Impairment of Property, Plant, and Equipment**

Essex, a hypothetical manufacturing company, has a machine it uses to produce a single product. The demand for the product has declined substantially since the introduction of a competing product. The company has assembled the following information with respect to the machine:

Carrying amount	£18,000
Undiscounted expected future cash flows	£16,000
Present value of expected future cash flows	£14,000
Fair value if sold	£10,000
Costs to sell	£2,000

- 1 Under IFRS, what would the company report for the machine?
- 2 Under US GAAP, what would the company report for the machine?

Solution to 1:

Under IFRS, the company would compare the carrying amount (£18,000) with the higher of its fair value less costs to sell (£8,000) and its value in use (£14,000). The carrying amount exceeds the value in use, the higher of the two amounts, by £4,000. The machine would be written down to the recoverable amount of £14,000, and a loss of £4,000 would be reported in the income statement. The carrying amount of the machine is now £14,000. A new depreciation schedule based on the carrying amount of £14,000 would be developed.

Solution to 2:

Under US GAAP, the carrying amount (£18,000) is compared with the undiscounted expected future cash flows (£16,000). The carrying amount exceeds the undiscounted expected future cash flows, so the carrying amount is considered not recoverable. The machine would be written down to fair value of £10,000, and a loss of £8,000 would be reported in the income statement. The carrying amount of the machine is now £10,000. A new depreciation schedule based on the carrying amount of £10,000 would be developed.

Example 14 shows that the write down to value in use under IFRS can be less than the write down to fair value under US GAAP. The difference in recognition of impairment losses is ultimately reflected in difference in book value of equity.

5.2 Impairment of Intangible Assets with a Finite Life

Intangible assets with a finite life are amortised (carrying amount decreases over time) and may become impaired. As is the case with property, plant, and equipment, the assets are not tested annually for impairment. Instead, they are tested only when significant events suggest the need to test. The company assesses at the end of each reporting period whether a significant event suggesting the need to test for impairment has occurred. Examples of such events include a significant decrease in the market price or a significant adverse change in legal or economic factors. Impairment accounting for intangible assets with a finite life is essentially the same as for tangible assets; the amount of the impairment loss will reduce the carrying amount of the asset on the balance sheet and will reduce net income on the income statement.

5.3 Impairment of Intangibles with Indefinite Lives

Intangible assets with indefinite lives are not amortised. Instead, they are carried on the balance sheet at historical cost but are tested at least annually for impairment. Impairment exists when the carrying amount exceeds its fair value.

5.4 Impairment of Long-Lived Assets Held for Sale

A long-lived (non-current) asset is reclassified as held for sale rather than held for use when it ceases to be used and management's intent is to sell it. For instance, if a building ceases to be used and management's intent is to sell it, the building is reclassified from property, plant, and equipment to non-current assets held for sale. At the time of reclassification, assets previously held for use are tested for impairment. If the carrying amount at the time of reclassification exceeds the fair value less costs to sell, an impairment loss is recognised and the asset is written down to fair value less costs to sell. Long-lived assets held for sale cease to be depreciated or amortised.

5.5 Reversals of Impairments of Long-Lived Assets

After an asset has been deemed impaired and an impairment loss has been reported, the asset's recoverable amount could potentially increase. For instance, a lawsuit appeal may successfully challenge a patent infringement by another company, with the result that a patent previously written down has a higher recoverable amount. IFRS permit impairment losses to be reversed if the recoverable amount of an asset increases regardless of whether the asset is classified as held for use or held for sale. Note that IFRS permit the reversal of impairment losses only. IFRS do not permit the revaluation to the recoverable amount if the recoverable amount exceeds the previous carrying amount. Under US GAAP, the accounting for reversals of impairments depends on whether the asset is classified as held for use or held for sale.¹⁸ Under US GAAP, once an impairment loss has been recognised for assets held for use, it cannot be reversed. In other words, once the value of an asset held for use has been decreased by an impairment charge, it cannot be increased. For assets held for sale, if the fair value increases after an impairment loss, the loss can be reversed.

DERECOGNITION

6

A company derecognises an asset (i.e., removes it from the financial statements) when the asset is disposed of or is expected to provide no future benefits from either use or disposal. A company may dispose of a long-lived operating asset by selling it, exchanging it, or abandoning it. As previously described, non-current assets that are no longer in use and are to be sold are reclassified as non-current assets held for sale.

6.1 Sale of Long-Lived Assets

The gain or loss on the sale of long-lived assets is computed as the sales proceeds minus the carrying amount of the asset at the time of sale. An asset's carrying amount is typically the net book value (i.e., the historical cost minus accumulated depreciation), unless the asset's carrying amount has been changed to reflect impairment and/or revaluation, as previously discussed.

¹⁸ FASB ASC Section 360-10-35 [Property, Plant, and Equipment – Overall – Subsequent Measurement].

EXAMPLE 15**Calculation of Gain or Loss on the Sale of Long-Lived Assets**

Moussilauke Diners Inc., a hypothetical company, as a result of revamping its menus to focus on healthier food items, sells 450 used pizza ovens and reports a gain on the sale of \$1.2 million. The ovens had a carrying amount of \$1.9 million (original cost of \$5.1 million less \$3.2 million of accumulated depreciation). At what price did Moussilauke sell the ovens?

- A \$0.7 million
- B \$3.1 million
- C \$6.3 million

Solution:

B is correct. The ovens had a carrying amount of \$1.9 million, and Moussilauke recognised a gain of \$1.2 million. Therefore, Moussilauke sold the ovens at a price of \$3.1 million. The gain on the sale of \$1.2 million is the selling price of \$3.1 million minus the carrying amount of \$1.9 million. Ignoring taxes, the cash flow from the sale is \$3.1 million, which would appear as a cash inflow from investing.

A gain or loss on the sale of an asset is disclosed on the income statement, either as a component of other gains and losses or in a separate line item when the amount is material. A company typically discloses further detail about the sale in the management discussion and analysis and/or financial statement footnotes. In addition, a statement of cash flows prepared using the indirect method adjusts net income to remove any gain or loss on the sale from operating cash flow and to include the amount of proceeds from the sale in cash from investing activities. Recall that the indirect method of the statement of cash flows begins with net income and makes all adjustments to arrive at cash from operations, including removal of gains or losses from non-operating activities.

6.2 Long-Lived Assets Disposed of Other Than by a Sale

Long-lived assets to be disposed of other than by a sale (e.g., abandoned, exchanged for another asset, or distributed to owners in a spin-off) are classified as held for use until disposal.¹⁹ Thus, the long-lived assets continue to be depreciated and tested for impairment, unless their carrying amount is zero, as required for other long-lived assets owned by the company.

When an asset is retired or abandoned, the accounting is similar to a sale, except that the company does not record cash proceeds. Assets are reduced by the carrying amount of the asset at the time of retirement or abandonment, and a loss equal to the asset's carrying amount is recorded.

When an asset is exchanged, accounting for the exchange typically involves removing the carrying amount of the asset given up, adding a fair value for the asset acquired, and reporting any difference between the carrying amount and the fair value as a gain or loss. The fair value used is the fair value of the asset given up unless the

¹⁹ In a spin-off, shareholders of the parent company receive a proportional number of shares in a new, separate entity.

fair value of the asset acquired is more clearly evident. If no reliable measure of fair value exists, the acquired asset is measured at the carrying amount of the asset given up. A gain is reported when the fair value used for the newly acquired asset exceeds the carrying amount of the asset given up. A loss is reported when the fair value used for the newly acquired asset is less than the carrying amount of the asset given up. If the acquired asset is valued at the carrying amount of the asset given up because no reliable measure of fair value exists, no gain or loss is reported.

When a spin-off occurs, typically, an entire cash generating unit of a company with all its assets is spun off. As an illustration of a spin-off, Altria Group, Inc. effected a spin-off of Kraft Foods on 30 March 2007 by distributing about 89 percent of Kraft's shares to Altria's shareholders. The company prepared unaudited pro forma income statements and balance sheets (for illustrative purposes only) as if the spin-off had occurred at the beginning of the year. Exhibit 7 summarizes information from the asset portion of the company's pro forma balance sheets. The items in the column labeled "Spin-off of Kraft" reflect Kraft's assets being removed from Altria's balance sheet at the time of the spin-off. For example, Kraft's property, plant, and equipment (net of depreciation) totaled \$9.7 billion.

**Exhibit 7 Altria Group, Inc. and Subsidiaries Pro Forma Condensed Consolidated Balance Sheet [Partial]
As of 31 December 2006 (Unaudited)**

Assets (\$ millions)	Historical Altria ^a	Spin-off of Kraft ^b	Adjustments ^c	Pro forma Altria
Cash and cash equivalents	\$5,020	(\$239)	\$369	\$5,150
Receivables, net	6,070	(3,869)		2,201
Inventories	12,186	(3,506)		8,680
Other current assets	2,876	(640)		2,236
Total current assets	\$26,152	(\$8,254)	\$369	\$18,267
Property, plant, and equipment, net	17,274	(9,693)		7,581
Goodwill	33,235	(25,553)	(1,485)	6,197
Other intangible assets, net	12,085	(10,177)		1,908
Other assets	8,734	(1,897)	305	7,142
Total consumer products assets	\$97,480	(\$55,574)	(\$811)	\$41,095
Financial services assets	6,790	0		6,790
Total assets	\$104,270	(\$55,574)	(\$811)	\$47,885

^a Historical consolidated balance sheet of Altria.

^b Reflects the removal of Kraft's consolidated balance sheet from the Altria historical consolidated balance sheet.

^c Represents adjustments, such as for pro forma cash payments by Kraft to Altria, arising from modifications to existing stock awards and tax contingencies, adjustments to goodwill, etc.

Source: Altria's Form 8-K filed with the SEC on 5 April 2007.

PRESENTATION AND DISCLOSURES

7

Under IFRS, for each class of property, plant, and equipment, a company must disclose the measurement bases, the depreciation method, the useful lives (or, equivalently, the depreciation rate) used, the gross carrying amount and the accumulated depreciation at the beginning and end of the period, and a reconciliation of the carrying amount at

the beginning and end of the period.²⁰ In addition, disclosures of restrictions on title and pledges as security of property, plant, and equipment and contractual agreements to acquire property, plant, and equipment are required. If the revaluation model is used, the date of revaluation, details of how the fair value was obtained, the carrying amount under the cost model, and the revaluation surplus must be disclosed.

The disclosure requirements under US GAAP are less exhaustive.²¹ A company must disclose the depreciation expense for the period, the balances of major classes of depreciable assets, accumulated depreciation by major classes or in total, and a general description of the depreciation method(s) used in computing depreciation expense with respect to the major classes of depreciable assets.

Under IFRS, for each class of intangible assets, a company must disclose whether the useful lives are indefinite or finite. If finite, for each class of intangible asset, a company must disclose the useful lives (or, equivalently, the amortisation rate) used, the amortisation methods used, the gross carrying amount and the accumulated amortisation at the beginning and end of the period, where amortisation is included on the income statement, and a reconciliation of the carrying amount at the beginning and end of the period.²² If an asset has an indefinite life, the company must disclose the carrying amount of the asset and why it is considered to have an indefinite life. Similar to property, plant, and equipment, disclosures of restrictions on title and pledges as security of intangible assets and contractual agreements to acquire intangible assets are required. If the revaluation model is used, the date of revaluation, details of how the fair value was obtained, the carrying amount under the cost model, and the revaluation surplus must be disclosed.

Under US GAAP, companies are required to disclose the gross carrying amounts and accumulated amortisation in total and by major class of intangible assets, the aggregate amortisation expense for the period, and the estimated amortisation expense for the next five fiscal years.²³

The disclosures related to impairment losses also differ under IFRS and US GAAP. Under IFRS, a company must disclose for each class of assets the amounts of impairment losses and reversals of impairment losses recognised in the period and where those are recognised on the financial statements.²⁴ The company must also disclose in aggregate the main classes of assets affected by impairment losses and reversals of impairment losses and the main events and circumstances leading to recognition of these impairment losses and reversals of impairment losses. Under US GAAP, there is no reversal of impairment losses. The company must disclose a description of the impaired asset, what led to the impairment, the method of determining fair value, the amount of the impairment loss, and where the loss is recognised on the financial statements.²⁵

Disclosures about long-lived assets appear throughout the financial statements: in the balance sheet, the income statement, the statement of cash flows, and the notes. The balance sheet reports the carrying value of the asset. For the income statement, depreciation expense may or may not appear as a separate line item. Under IFRS, whether the income statement discloses depreciation expense separately depends on whether the company is using a ‘nature of expense’ method or a ‘function of expense’ method. Under the nature of expense method, a company aggregates expenses “according to their nature (for example, depreciation, purchases of materials, transport costs,

²⁰ IAS 16 *Property, Plant and Equipment*, paragraphs 73–78 [Disclosure].

²¹ FASB ASC Section 360-10-50 [Property, Plant, and Equipment – Overall – Disclosure].

²² IAS 38 *Intangible Assets*, paragraphs 118–128 [Disclosure].

²³ FASB ASC Section 350-30-50 [Intangibles – General – Disclosure].

²⁴ IAS 36 *Impairment of Assets*, paragraphs 126–131 [Disclosure].

²⁵ FASB ASC Section 360-10-50 [Property, Plant, and Equipment – Overall – Disclosure] and FASB ASC Section 350-30-50 [Intangibles – General – Disclosure].

employee benefits and advertising costs), and does not reallocate them among functions within the entity.”²⁶ Under the function of expense method, a company classifies expenses according to the function, for example as part of cost of sales or of SG&A (selling, general, and administrative expenses). At a minimum, a company using the function of expense method must disclose cost of sales, but the other line items vary.

The statement of cash flows reflects acquisitions and disposals of fixed assets in the investing section. In addition, when prepared using the indirect method, the statement of cash flows typically shows depreciation expense (or depreciation plus amortisation) as a line item in the adjustments of net income to cash flow from operations. The notes to the financial statements describe the company’s accounting method(s), the range of estimated useful lives, historical cost by main category of fixed asset, accumulated depreciation, and annual depreciation expense.

To illustrate financial statement presentation and disclosures, the following example provides excerpts relating to intangible assets and property, plant, and equipment from the annual report of Vodafone Group Plc for the year ended 31 March 2009.

EXAMPLE 16

Financial Statement Presentation and Disclosures for Long-Lived Assets

The following exhibits include excerpts from the annual report for the year ended 31 March 2009 of Vodafone Group Plc, a global mobile telecommunications company headquartered in the United Kingdom.

Exhibit 8 Vodafone Group Plc Excerpts from the Consolidated Financial Statements

Excerpt from the Consolidated Income Statement for the Years Ended 31 March (Currency in £ Millions)

	Note	2009	2008
Revenue	3	41,017	35,478
⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮
Impairment losses	10*	(5,900)	—
⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮
Operating profit/(loss)	4	5,857	10,047
⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮
Profit/(loss) before taxation		4,189	9,001
Income tax expense	6	(1,109)	(2,245)
Profit/(loss) for the financial year from continuing operations		3,080	6,756
Loss for the year from discontinued operations	30	—	—
Profit/(loss) for the financial year		<u>3,080</u>	<u>6,756</u>
Attributable to:			
– Equity shareholders	23	3,078	6,660

(continued)

Exhibit 8 (Continued)**Excerpt from the Consolidated Income Statement for the Years Ended 31 March (Currency in £ Millions)**

	Note	2009	2008
– Minority interests		2	96
		<u>3,080</u>	<u>6,756</u>

* Notes relating to property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets are underlined.

Excerpt from the Consolidated Statement of Recognised Income and Expense for the Years Ended 31 March (Currency in £ Millions)

	Note	2009	2008
(Losses)/gains on revaluation of available-for-sale investments, net of tax	22	(2,383)	1,949
⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮
Revaluation gain	<u>22</u>	68	—
⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮
Net gain/(loss) recognised directly in equity		9,854	6,909
Profit/(loss) for the financial year		<u>3,080</u>	<u>6,756</u>
Total recognised income and expense relating to the year		<u>12,934</u>	<u>13,665</u>

Attributable to:

– Equity shareholders		13,037	13,912
– Minority interests		<u>(103)</u>	<u>(247)</u>
		12,934	13,665

Excerpt from the Consolidated Balance Sheet at 31 March (Currency in £ Millions)

	Note	2009	2008
Non-current assets			
Goodwill	9	53,958	51,336
Other intangible assets	<u>9</u>	20,980	18,995
Property, plant and equipment	<u>11</u>	19,250	16,735
⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮
		<u>139,670</u>	<u>118,546</u>
Current assets		<u>13,029</u>	<u>8,724</u>
Total assets		<u>152,699</u>	<u>127,270</u>

Equity

⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮
Accumulated other recognised income and expense	<u>22</u>	20,517	10,588

Excerpt from the Consolidated Balance Sheet at 31 March (Currency in £ Millions)

	Note	2009	2008
∴	∴	∴	∴
Total equity		84,777	76,471
Non-current liabilities		39,975	28,826
Current liabilities		27,947	21,973
Total equity and liabilities		152,699	127,270

Exhibit 9 Vodafone Group Plc
Excerpts from the Notes to the Consolidated Financial Statements

Excerpt from Note 9, Intangible Assets (Currency in £ Millions)

Intangible assets	Goodwill	Licences and Spectrum	Computer Software	Other	Total
Cost:					
31 March 2008	91,762	22,040	5,800	1,188	120,790
Exchange movements	14,298	2,778	749	153	17,978
Arising on acquisition	613	199	69	130	1,011
Additions	—	1,138	1,144	—	2,282
Disposals	—	(1)	(403)	—	(404)
Transfer to investments in associated undertakings	(9)	(16)	—	—	(25)
31 March 2009	<u>106,664</u>	<u>26,138</u>	<u>7,359</u>	<u>1,471</u>	<u>141,632</u>
Accumulated impairment losses and amortisation:					
31 March 2008	40,426	5,132	4,160	741	50,459
Exchange movements	6,630	659	569	126	7,984
Amortisation charge for the year	—	1,522	885	346	2,753
Impairment losses	5,650	250	—	—	5,900
Disposals	—	—	(391)	—	(391)
Transfers to investments in associated undertakings	—	(11)	—	—	(11)
31 March 2009	<u>52,706</u>	<u>7,552</u>	<u>5,223</u>	<u>1,213</u>	<u>66,694</u>
Net book value:					
31 March 2008	<u>51,336</u>	<u>16,908</u>	<u>1,640</u>	<u>447</u>	<u>70,331</u>
31 March 2009	<u>53,958</u>	<u>18,586</u>	<u>2,136</u>	<u>258</u>	<u>74,938</u>

For licences and spectrum and other intangible assets, amortisation is included within the cost of sales line within the consolidated income statement. Licences and spectrum with a net book value of £2,765m (2008: £nil) have been pledged as security against borrowings.

(continued)

Exhibit 9 (Continued)

Excerpt from Note 10, Impairment Losses

Impairment losses recognised in the consolidated income statement as a separate line item within operating profit, in respect of goodwill and licences and spectrum fees are as follows (£m):

Cash generating unit	Reportable segment	2009	2008	2007
⋮	⋮	⋮	—	—
Turkey	Other Africa and Central Europe	2,250	—	—
⋮	⋮	⋮	—	—
Total		5,900	—	11,600

The impairment losses were based on value in use calculations....

Turkey

At 30 September 2008, the goodwill was impaired by £1,700 million....

During the second half of the 2009 financial year, impairment losses of £300 million in relation to goodwill and £250 million in relation to licences and spectrum resulted from adverse changes in both the discount rate and a fall in the long term GDP growth rate. The cash flow projections ... were substantially unchanged from those used at 30 September 2008....

Sensitivity to changes in assumptions

The estimated recoverable amount of the Group's operations in Spain, Turkey and Ghana equaled their respective carrying value and, consequently, any adverse change in key assumption would, in isolation, cause a further impairment loss to be recognised....

The changes in the following table to assumptions used in the impairment review would, in isolation, lead to an (increase)/decrease to the aggregate impairment loss recognised in the year ended 31 March 2009:

	Spain	Turkey	Ghana	All other
	⋮	Increase by 2% £bn	Decrease by 2% £bn	⋮
Pre-tax adjusted discount rate	⋮	(0.4)	0.6	⋮
Long term growth rate	⋮	0.3	(0.2)	⋮
Budgeted EBITDA	⋮	0.1	(0.1)	⋮
Budgeted capital expenditure	⋮	(0.1)	0.1	⋮

Exhibit 9 (Continued)**Excerpt from Note 11, Property, Plant, and Equipment**

The net book value of land and buildings and equipment, fixtures and fittings includes £106 million and £82 million, respectively (2008: £110 million and £51 million) in relation to assets held under finance leases. Included in the net book value of land and buildings and equipment, fixtures and fittings are assets in the course of construction, which are not depreciated, with a cost of £44 million and £1,186 million, respectively (2008: £28 million and £1,013 million). Property, plant and equipment with a net book value of £148 million (2008: £1,503 million) has been pledged as security against borrowings.

Excerpt from Note 22, Movements in Accumulated Other Recognised Income and Expense (Currency in £ Millions)

	Translation Reserve	Pensions Reserve	Available-for-Sale Investments Reserve	Asset Revaluation Surplus	Other	Total
31 March 2008	5,974	(96)	4,531	112	37	10,558
Gains/(losses) arising in the year				68		10,023
Transfer to the income statement on disposal				—		(3)
Tax effect				—		(61)
31 March 2009	18,451	(259)	2,148	180	(3)	20,517

- 1 As of 31 March 2009, what percentage of other intangible assets and property, plant, and equipment is pledged as security against borrowings?
- 2 What caused the £250 million impairment losses in relation to licences and spectrum during the year ended 31 March 2009?
- 3 By what amount would impairment losses related to Turkey change if the pre-tax adjusted discount rate decreased by 2 percent?
- 4 Where are impairment losses reported on the financial statements? Where is amortisation included within the consolidated income statement?
- 5 What percentage of property, plant, and equipment, based on net book value, is held under finance leases rather than owned as of 31 March 2009?
- 6 The gains and losses arising in the year on asset revaluation *most likely* are:
 - A reflected on the consolidated income statement.
 - B reported in the notes to the financial statements only.
 - C recognised directly in equity and shown on the consolidated statement of recognised income and expense.

Solution to 1:

Assets that have been pledged as security against borrowings are licences and spectrum, with a net book value of £2,765 million (Note 9), and property, plant, and equipment, with a net book value of £148 million (Note 11). These assets represent 7.24 percent $[(2,765 + 148)/(20,980 + 19,250)]$ of the other intangible assets and property, plant, and equipment.

Solution to 2:

The £250 million impairment losses in relation to licences and spectrum resulted from an increase in the pre-tax adjusted discount rate and a decrease in the long-term growth rate in Turkey (Note 10).

Solution to 3:

A 2 percent decrease in the pre-tax adjusted discount rate related to Turkey would reduce impairment losses by £0.6 billion or £600 million (Note 10).

Solution to 4:

Impairment losses are reported on the consolidated income statement (Exhibit 8). Impairment losses reduce the value of the assets impaired (Note 9) and are thus recognised within the consolidated balance sheet. Amortisation is included within the cost of sales line within the consolidated income statement (Note 9).

Solution to 5:

The net book value of land and buildings and equipment, fixtures, and fittings includes £106 million and £82 million, respectively, in relation to assets held under finance leases (Note 22). The sum of these values represents 0.98 percent of the property, plant, and equipment $[(106 + 82)/19,250]$.

Solution to 6:

C is correct. The gains and losses arising in the year on asset revaluation are recognised directly in equity and shown on the consolidated statement of recognised income and expense. They are also reported in the notes to the financial statements (Note 22).

Note that the exhibits in the previous example contain relatively brief excerpts from the company's disclosures. The complete text of the disclosures concerning the company's non-current assets spans seven different footnotes, most of which are several pages long. In addition to information about the discount rate and other assumptions used to calculate impairment charges, the disclosures provide information about the sensitivity of impairment charges to changes in the assumptions.

Overall, an analyst can use the disclosures to understand a company's investments in tangible and intangible assets, how those investments changed during a reporting period, how those changes affected current performance, and what those changes might indicate about future performance.

Ratios used in analyzing fixed assets include the fixed asset turnover ratio and several asset age ratios. The fixed asset turnover ratio (total revenue divided by average net fixed assets) reflects the relationship between total revenues and investment in PPE. The higher this ratio, the higher the amount of sales a company is able to generate with a given amount of investment in fixed assets. A higher asset turnover ratio is often interpreted as an indicator of greater efficiency.

Asset age ratios generally rely on the relationship between historical cost and depreciation. Under the revaluation model (permitted under IFRS but not US GAAP), the relationship between carrying amount, accumulated depreciation, and depreciation

expense will differ when the carrying amount differs significantly from the depreciated historical cost. Therefore, the following discussion of asset age ratios applies primarily to PPE reported under the cost model.

Asset age and remaining useful life, two asset age ratios, are important indicators of a company's need to reinvest in productive capacity. The older the assets and the shorter the remaining life, the more a company may need to reinvest to maintain productive capacity. The average age of a company's asset base can be estimated as accumulated depreciation divided by depreciation expense. The average remaining life of a company's asset base can be estimated as net PPE divided by depreciation expense. These estimates simply reflect the following relationships for assets accounted for on a historical cost basis: total historical cost minus accumulated depreciation equals net PPE; and, under straight-line depreciation, total historical cost less salvage value divided by estimated useful life equals annual depreciation expense. Equivalently, total historical cost less salvage value divided by annual depreciation expense equals estimated useful life. Assuming straight-line depreciation and no salvage value (for simplicity), we have the following:

Estimated total useful life	=	Time elapsed since purchase (Age)	+	Estimated remaining life
Historical cost ÷ annual depreciation expense	=	Estimated total useful life		
Historical cost	=	Accumulated depreciation	+	Net PPE

Equivalently,

Estimated total useful life	=	Estimated age of equipment	+	Estimated remaining life
Historical cost ÷ annual depreciation expense	=	Accumulated depreciation ÷ annual depreciation expense	+	Net PPE ÷ annual depreciation expense

The application of these estimates can be illustrated by a hypothetical example of a company with a single depreciable asset. Assume the asset initially cost \$100, had an estimated useful life of 10 years, and an estimated salvage value of \$0. Each year, the company records a depreciation expense of \$10, so accumulated depreciation will equal \$10 times the number of years since the asset was acquired (when the asset is 7 years old, accumulated depreciation will be \$70). Equivalently, the age of the asset will equal accumulated depreciation divided by the annual depreciation expense.

In practice, such estimates are difficult to make with great precision. Companies use depreciation methods other than the straight-line method and have numerous assets with varying useful lives and salvage values, including some assets that are fully depreciated, so this approach produces an estimate only. Moreover, fixed asset disclosures are often quite general. Consequently, these estimates may be primarily useful to identify areas for further investigation.

One further measure compares a company's current reinvestment in productive capacity. Comparing annual capital expenditures to annual depreciation expense provides an indication of whether productive capacity is being maintained. It is a very general indicator of the rate at which a company is replacing its PPE relative to the rate at which PPE is being depreciated.

EXAMPLE 17

Using Fixed Asset Disclosure to Compare Companies' Fixed Asset Turnover and Average Age of Depreciable Assets

You are analyzing the property, plant, and equipment of three international paper and paper products companies:

- AbitibiBowater Inc. (ABY) is a Canadian company that manufactures newsprint, commercial printing papers, and other wood products.
- International Paper Company (IP) is a US paper and packaging company.
- UPM-Kymmene Corporation (UPM) is a Finnish company that manufactures fine and specialty papers, newsprint, magazine papers, and other related products. The company's common stock is listed on the Helsinki and New York stock exchanges.

Exhibit 10 presents selected information from the companies' financial statements.

Exhibit 10

	ABY	IP	UPM
Currency, Millions of:	Canadian \$	US \$	Euro €
Historical cost total PPE, end of year	\$9,013	\$29,815	€16,382
Accumulated depreciation, end of year	4,553	15,613	10,694
Net PPE, end of year	4,460	14,202	5,688
Land included in PPE	161	Not separated	347
Average Net PPE	5,067	12,172	5,934
Net Sales	6,771	24,829	9,461
Annual depreciation expense (annual impairment)	726	1,347	745 (182)
Capital expenditure	186	1,002	558
<i>Accounting standards</i>	Canadian GAAP	US GAAP	IFRS
PPE measurement	Historical cost	Historical cost	Historical cost
Depreciation method	Straight-line	Units-of-production for pulp and paper mills;* straight-line for other	Straight-line
Useful life of assets, in years, except as noted	20–40 (buildings); 5–20 (machinery and equipment); 40 (power plants)	Straight-line depreciation rates are 2.5% to 8.5% (buildings), and 5% to 33% (machinery and equipment)	25–40 (buildings); 15–20 (heavy equip.); 5–15 (light equip.)

* Pulp and paper mills historical cost as disclosed in a footnote total \$21,819 million. Depreciation expense and accumulated depreciation is not separately reported for mills.

Sources:

For ABY, Form 10-K for the year ended 31 December 2008, filed 31 March 2009.

Exhibit 10 (Continued)

*For IP, Form 10-K for the year ended 31 December 2008, filed 20 February 2009.
For UPM, annual report for the year ended 31 December 2008.*

- 1 Based on the above data for each company, estimate the total useful life, age, and remaining useful life of PPE.
- 2 Interpret the estimates. What items might affect comparisons across these companies?
- 3 How does each company's 2008 depreciation expense compare to its capital expenditures for the year?
- 4 Calculate and compare fixed asset turnover for each company.

Solution to 1:

The following table presents the estimated total useful life, estimated age, and estimated remaining useful life of PPE for each of the companies.

Estimates	ABY	IP	UPM
Estimated total useful life (years)	12.4	22.1	22.0
Estimated age (years)	6.3	11.6	14.4
Estimated remaining life (years)	6.1	10.5	7.6

The computations are explained using UPM's data. The estimated total useful life of PPE is total historical cost of PPE of €16,382 divided by annual depreciation expense of €745, giving 22.0 years. Estimated age and estimated remaining life are obtained by dividing accumulated depreciation of €10,694 and net PPE of €5,688 by the annual depreciation expense of €745, giving 14.4 years and 7.6 years, respectively.

Ideally, the estimates of asset lives illustrated in this example should exclude land, which is not depreciable, when the information is available; however, IP does not separately disclose land. We will use UPM, for which land appeared to be disclosed separately in the above table, to illustrate the estimates with adjusting for land. As an illustration of the calculations to exclude land, excluding UPM's land would give an estimated total useful life for the non-land PPE of 21.5 years [(total cost €16,382 minus land cost of €347) divided by annual depreciation expense of €745 million].

Solution to 2:

The estimated total useful life suggests that IP and UPM depreciate PPE over a much longer period than ABY: 22.1 and 22.0 years for IP and UPM, respectively, versus 12.4 years for ABY. This result can be compared, to an extent, to the useful life of assets noted by the companies, and the composition of fixed assets. For instance, ABY and UPM depreciate their buildings over similar periods and their equipment over the same period (5 to 20 years). That the estimated useful life of PPE overall differs so much between the companies suggests that equipment reflects a higher proportion of ABY's assets. An inspection of the companies' footnoted information (not shown above) on asset composition confirms that equipment accounts for a larger portion of ABY gross fixed assets (86%) compared to UPM (76%).

The estimated age of the equipment suggests that ABY has the newest PPE with an estimated age of 6.3 years. Additionally, the estimates suggest that around 50 percent of ABY's assets' useful lives have passed (6.3 years ÷ 12.4 years, or

equivalently, C\$4,553 million ÷ C\$9,013 million). In comparison, around 67 percent of the useful lives of the PPE of UPM have passed. Items that can affect comparisons across the companies include business differences, such as differences in composition of the companies' operations and differences in acquisition and divestiture activity. In addition, the companies all report under different accounting standards, and IP discloses that it uses the units-of-production method for the largest component of its PPE. Differences in disclosures, e.g. in the categories of assets disclosed, also can affect comparisons.

Solution to 3:

Capital expenditure as a percentage of depreciation is 26 percent for ABY, 74 percent for IP, and 75 percent for UPM. Based on this measure, IP and UPM are replacing their PPE at rates closer to the rate PPE are being depreciated. ABY's measure suggests the company is replacing its PPE at a slower rate than the PPE is being depreciated, consistent with the company's apparently newer asset base.

Solution to 4:

Fixed asset turnover for each company is presented below, calculated as total revenues divided by average net PPE. Net sales is used as an approximation for total revenues, because differences like sales returns are not consistently disclosed by companies. We can see that IP's fixed asset turnover is highest, implying it is able to generate more sales from each unit of investment in fixed assets.

	ABY	IP	UPM
Fixed Asset Turnover	1.3	2.0	1.6
<i>Currency, millions of:</i>	<i>Canadian \$</i>	<i>US \$</i>	<i>Euro €</i>
Net Sales	6,771	24,829	9,461
Average Net PPE	5,067	12,172	5,934

8

INVESTMENT PROPERTY

Investment property is defined under IFRS as property that is owned (or, in some cases, leased under a finance lease) for the purpose of earning rentals or capital appreciation or both.²⁷ An example of investment property is a building owned by a company and leased out to tenants. In contrast, other long-lived tangible assets (i.e., property considered to be property, plant, and equipment) are owner-occupied properties used for producing the company's goods and services or for housing the company's administrative activities. Investment properties do not include long-lived tangible assets held for sale in the ordinary course of business. For example, the houses and property owned by a housing construction company are considered to be its inventory.

Under IFRS, companies are allowed to value investment properties using either a cost model or a fair value model. The cost model is identical to the cost model used for property, plant, and equipment. If the cost model is used, the fair value of investment property must be disclosed.²⁸ The fair value model, however, differs from the revaluation model used for property, plant, and equipment. Under the revaluation model, whether an asset revaluation affects net income depends on whether the revaluation initially increases or decreases the carrying amount of the asset. In contrast, under

²⁷ IAS 40 *Investment Property* prescribes the accounting treatment for investment property.

²⁸ *Ibid.*, paragraph 32.

the fair value model, all changes in the fair value of the asset affect net income. To use the fair value model, a company must be able to reliably determine the property's fair value on a continuing basis.

Example 18 presents an excerpt from the annual report of a property company reporting under IFRS.

EXAMPLE 18

Financial Statement Presentation and Disclosures for Long-Lived Assets

The following exhibit presents an excerpt from the annual report for the year ended 31 March 2009 of Daejan Holdings PLC, a property company headquartered in the United Kingdom.

Exhibit 11 Excerpt from the Consolidated Income Statements at 31 March (Currency in £ thousands)

	2009	2008
Gross rental income	83,918	73,590
Service charge income	12,055	13,362
Total Rental and Related Income from Investment Properties	95,973	86,952
Property operating expenses	(53,470)	(46,464)
Net Rental and Related Income from Investment Properties	42,503	40,488
Profit on Disposal of Investment Properties	6,758	6,578
Valuation gains on investment properties	6,646	46,646
Valuation losses on investment properties	(268,249)	(25,982)
Net Valuation (Losses)/Gains on Investment Properties	(261,603)	20,664
Administrative expenses	(12,039)	(8,629)
Net Operating (Loss)/Profit before Net Financing Costs	(224,381)	59,101

- 1 What was the primary cause of the company's £224,381 thousand net operating loss before net financing costs for the year ended 31 March 2009?
- 2 What was the primary cause of the company's £59,101 thousand net operating profit before financing costs for the year ended 31 March 2008?
- 3 What was the primary cause of the change from a £59,101 thousand net operating profit in 2008 to a £224,381 thousand net operating loss in 2009?
- 4 Do the valuation gains and losses on investment properties indicate that the properties have been sold?

Solution to 1:

The primary cause of the company's net operating loss for the year ended 31 March 2009 was the net valuation loss on investment properties. The net valuation loss of £262 million (valuation gain of £6,646 thousand minus the valuation loss of £268,249 thousand) exceeded the company's net rental income plus its profit on disposal of investment properties.

Solution to 2:

The primary cause of the company's net operating profit for the year ended 31 March 2008 was the £40 million net rental income. Additionally, the company reported net valuation gains on investment properties of £21 million (valuation gain of £46,646 thousand minus the valuation loss of £25,982 thousand) and profit on disposal of investment properties of £7 million.

Solution to 3:

The change from a net operating profit to a net operating loss was primarily due to valuation gains exceeding valuation losses (net valuation gains) in 2008 and valuation losses significantly exceeding valuation gains (net valuation losses) in 2009.

Solution to 4:

No. The valuation gains and losses on investment properties arise from changes in the fair value of properties that are owned by the company. The gains and losses on properties that have been sold are reported as Profit (Loss) on Disposal of Investment Properties. In neither 2008 nor 2009 did the company experience a loss on disposal of investment properties so the line item was reported as Profit on Disposal of Investment Properties.

In general, a company must apply its chosen model (cost or fair value) to all of its investment property. If a company chooses the fair value model for its investment property, it must continue to use the fair value model until it disposes of the property or changes its use such that it is no longer considered investment property (e.g., it becomes owner-occupied property or part of inventory). The company must continue to use the fair value model for that property even if transactions on comparable properties, used to estimate fair value, become less frequent.

Certain valuation issues arise when a company changes the use of property such that it moves from being an investment property to owner-occupied property or part of inventory. If a company's chosen model for investment property is the cost model, such transfers do not change the carrying amount of the property transferred. If a company's chosen model is the fair value model, transfers from investment property to owner-occupied property or to inventory are made at fair value. In other words, the property's fair value at the time of transfer is considered to be its cost for ongoing accounting for the property. If a company's chosen model for investment property is the fair value model and it transfers a property from owner-occupied to investment property, the change in measurement of the property from depreciated cost to fair value is treated like a revaluation. If a company's chosen model is the fair value model and it transfers a property from inventory to investment property, any difference between the inventory carrying amount and the property's fair value at the time of transfer is recognised as profit or loss.

Investment property appears as a separate line item on the balance sheet. Companies are required to disclose whether they use the fair value model or the cost model for their investment property. If the company uses the fair value model, it must make additional disclosures about how it determines fair value and must provide reconciliation

between the beginning and ending carrying amounts of investment property. If the company uses the cost model, it must make additional disclosures similar to those for property, plant, and equipment—for example, the depreciation method and useful lives must be disclosed. In addition, if the company uses the cost model, it must also disclose the fair value of investment property.

Under US GAAP, there is no specific definition of investment property. Most operating companies and real estate companies in the United States that hold investment-type property use the historical cost model.

LEASING

9

A lease is a contract between the owner of an asset—the **lessor**—and another party seeking use of the assets—the **lessee**. Through the lease, the lessor grants the right to use the asset to the lessee. The right to use the asset can be a long period, such as 20 years, or a much shorter period such as a month. In exchange for the right to use the asset, the lessee makes periodic lease payments to the lessor. A lease, then, is a form of financing to the lessee provided by the lessor that enables the lessee to purchase the *use* of the leased asset.

9.1 The Lease versus Buy Decision

There are several advantages to leasing an asset compared to purchasing it. Leases can provide less costly financing, usually require little, if any, down payment, and are often at fixed interest rates. The negotiated lease contract may contain less restrictive provisions than other forms of borrowing. A lease can also reduce the risks of obsolescence, residual value, and disposition to the lessee because the lessee does not own the asset. The lessor may be better positioned to manage servicing the asset and to take advantage of tax benefits of ownership. As a result, leasing the asset may be less costly than owning the asset for the lessee.

Leases also have perceived financial and tax reporting advantages. While providing a form of financing, certain types of leases are not reported as debt on the balance sheet. The items leased under these types of leases also do not appear as assets on the balance sheet. Therefore, no interest expense or depreciation expense is included in the income statement. Additionally, in some countries such as the United States, financial reporting standards may differ from reporting under tax regulations; thus, in some cases, a company may own an asset for tax purposes (and thus obtain deductions for depreciation expense for tax purposes) while not reflecting the ownership in its financial statements. A lease that is structured to provide a company with the tax benefits of ownership while not requiring the asset to be reflected on the company's financial statements is known as a **synthetic lease**.

9.2 Finance versus Operating Leases

Differences in economic substance and accounting have traditionally existed for two main types of leases—finance and operating. The economic substance of a finance (or capital)²⁹ lease has been regarded as different from an operating lease, as are the

²⁹ Finance lease is IFRS terminology and capital lease is US GAAP terminology. IAS 17 [Leases] and FASB ASC Topic 840 [Leases]. New standards were issued in early 2016, IFRS 16 [Leases] and FASB ASC Topic 842 [Leases], which are effective 1 January 2019 and for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2019, respectively.

implications of each for the financial statements of the lessee and lessor. In substance, a **finance lease** is equivalent to the purchase of an asset (lease to own) by the buyer (lessee) that is directly financed by the seller (lessor). An **operating lease** is an agreement allowing the lessee to use the asset for a period of time, similar to a rental.

Under previous international accounting standards, if substantially *all* the risks and rewards incidental to ownership are transferred to the lessee, the lease was classified as a finance lease. Otherwise, the lease was reported as an operating lease. Under the new international accounting standard (IFRS 16), the lessee is required to recognize leases of more than 12 months duration (other than small asset leases) on the balance sheet, and the lessee can no longer classify a lease as an operating lease. The lessor continues to classify its leases as operating or finance leases under IFRS 16.

While a similar principle of the transfer of benefits and risks guides US GAAP, US accounting standards have been more prescriptive in their criteria for classifying finance and operating leases. Under US GAAP, a lease that meets any one of four specific requirements is classified as a finance lease;³⁰ however, the new accounting standard (ASC Topic 842) requires the lessee to recognize a liability for its lease obligation (initially measured at the present value of the future lease payments not yet paid over the lease term), and an asset for its right to use the underlying asset equal to the lease liability, adjusted for lease payments made at or before lease commencement, lease incentives, and any initial direct costs.

The example below illustrates and compares the accounting and financial statement effects of buying an asset using debt, leasing an asset under an operating lease, and leasing an asset under a finance lease. Under IFRS 16, the treatment of operating leases is similar to finance leases.

EXAMPLE 19

Comparison of Accounting and Financial Statement Effects of the Buy versus Lease Decision

Bi-ly Company is considering the following alternatives in obtaining the use of a new piece of equipment at the beginning of Year 1:

- Alternative 1 Buy the equipment and finance the purchase with new debt.
- Alternative 2 Lease the equipment under an operating lease (the equipment is not reported as an asset, the lease payments each period are treated as an operating expense on the income statement).
- Alternative 3 Lease the equipment under a finance lease (the equipment is reported as an asset and an obligation is recorded equal to the present value of future lease payments).

³⁰ The four criteria are: (1) ownership of the leased asset transfers to lessee at end of lease, (2) the lease contains an option for the lessee to purchase the leased asset cheaply (bargain purchase option), (3) the lease term is 75 percent or more of the useful life of the leased asset, and (4) the present value of lease payments is 90 percent or more of the fair value of the leased asset (ASC 840-10-25-1). These criteria have been superseded by the requirements under ASC 842.

The fair value of the equipment, having a five-year useful life and no salvage value, is \$1,000. If Bi-ly leases the equipment, annual lease payments would be \$264 due at the end of each year. Bi-ly's discount rate is 10%. The company uses straight-line depreciation. (For illustration, assume the company can record the lease as either operating or financing.)

- 1 For each alternative under consideration, determine the effect on assets and liabilities at the beginning of Year 1.
- 2 For each alternative, determine the effect on the income statement in Year 1.
- 3 For each alternative, calculate Bi-ly's return on assets and debt-to-asset ratio at the end of Year 1. For simplicity, assume that—excluding any effects of Bi-ly's choice among the three alternatives for obtaining the assets—total assets at the beginning and end of the year are \$4,500, total liabilities at the beginning and end of the year are \$3,000, and net income for the year is \$800.

Solution to 1:

At the beginning of Year 1, Bi-ly would show the following assets and debt:

Alternative	1	2	3
Buy/Lease	Buy	Lease	Lease
Finance/Accounting	Issue new debt	Operating	Finance*
Long-lived asset	\$1,000		\$1,000
Debt/lease obligation	1,000		1,000

* Under a finance lease, the present value of five future lease payments of \$264 discounted at 10% is reported on the balance sheet as a lease obligation and an asset of \$1,000 (rounded).

Solution to 2:

For Year 1, Bi-ly would show the following expenses related to the equipment:

Alternative	1	2	3
Rent expense		\$264	
Depreciation expense	\$200		\$200
Interest expense	100		100
Total expenses	\$300	\$264	\$300

For Alternatives 1 and 3, depreciation expense is the acquisition cost of \$1,000 divided by the 5-year useful life. Salvage value is 0.

For Alternatives 1 and 3, interest expense is the beginning balance of debt, \$1,000 times the discount rate of 10%. Each year the interest expense will decline.

For Alternative 2, rent expense is the lease payment of \$264.

Solution to 3:

To calculate the return on assets:

Alternative	1	2	3
Net income, excluding new asset	\$800	\$800	\$800
Add additional expenses (solution to 2 above)	\$300	\$264	\$300

(continued)

Alternative	1	2	3
Net income, adjusted	\$500	\$536	\$500
Total assets, beginning, excluding new asset	\$4,500	\$4,500	\$4,500
Add additional asset (solution to 1 above)	1,000		1,000
Total assets, beginning, adjusted	\$5,500	\$4,500	\$5,500
Total assets, end, excluding new asset	\$4,500	\$4,500	\$4,500
Add additional asset*	800		800
Total assets, end, adjusted	\$5,300	\$4,500	\$5,300
Average total assets	\$5,400	\$4,500	\$5,400
Return on assets, adjusted	9.3%	11.9%	9.3%

* The book value of the new asset at the end of the year is its beginning balance of \$1,000 less \$200 accumulated depreciation.

In this example, the highest return on assets is found when the equipment is leased under an operating lease which is expected because net income is highest and the asset base is lowest. Buying an asset and seeking to finance it with new debt and leasing it under a finance lease result in the same return on assets.

To calculate the debt-to-asset ratio at the end of the year:

Alternative	1	2	3
Total assets, end, excluding new asset	\$4,500	\$4,500	\$4,500
Add additional asset	800		800
Total assets, end, adjusted	\$5,300	\$4,500	\$5,300
Total liabilities, end, excluding new asset	\$3,000	\$3,000	\$3,000
Add additional debt*	837		837
Total liabilities, end, adjusted	\$3,837	\$3,000	\$3,837
Debt-to-asset ratio	0.724	0.667	0.724

* Additional debt at the end of the first year is the present value of the four remaining debt/lease payments of \$264 discounted at 10% (and rounded).

In this example, the lowest debt-to-asset ratio is found when the equipment is financed through an operating lease. Buying an asset and seeking to finance it with new debt and leasing it under a finance lease result in the same return on assets.

9.2.1 Accounting and Reporting by the Lessee

A finance lease has traditionally been viewed as economically similar to borrowing money and buying an asset; therefore, a company that enters into a finance lease as the lessee reports an asset (leased asset) and related debt (lease payable) on the balance sheet. The initial value of both the leased asset and the lease payable is the lower of the fair value of the leased asset or the present value of future lease payments. On the income statement, the company reports interest expense on the debt; and if the asset acquired is depreciable, the company reports depreciation expense. (The lessor, as we illustrate in Section 9.2.2, reports the sale of an asset and the lease as a receivable.)

An operating lease has been viewed as economically similar to renting an asset, so the lessee has recorded a lease expense on its income statement during the period of use with no asset or liability recorded on its balance sheet. The main accounting differences between a finance lease and an operating lease are that under a finance lease, reported debt and assets are higher and expenses are generally higher in the early years. Because of the higher reported assets, debt and expenses—and therefore the lower ROA, all else equal—lessees have often preferred operating leases to finance leases. As we illustrate in the next section, lessors' preferences generally differ. Lessors would prefer a finance lease because, under an operating lease, lessors continue to show the asset and its associated financing on their balance sheets.

On the lessee's statement of cash flows, for an operating lease, the full lease payment is shown as an operating cash outflow. For a finance lease, only the portion of the lease payment relating to interest expense potentially reduces operating cash flows,³¹ the portion of the lease payment that reduces the lease liability appears as a cash outflow in the financing section.

A company reporting a lease as an operating lease will typically show higher profits in early years, higher return measures in early years, and a stronger solvency position than an identical company reporting an identical lease as a finance lease. However, the company reporting the lease as a finance lease will show higher operating cash flows because a portion of the lease payment will be reflected as a financing cash outflow rather than an operating cash outflow.

The following example illustrates the effect on a lessee's income, debt, and cash flows when reporting a lease as a finance lease versus an operating lease. Example 20 uses current US GAAP and the recognition of operating leases.

EXAMPLE 20

Financial Statement Impact of a Finance versus Operating Lease for the Lessee

Assume two similar (hypothetical) companies, CAPBS Inc. and OPIS Inc., enter into similar lease agreements for a piece of machinery on 1 January Year 1. The leases require four annual payments of €28,679 starting on 1 January Year 1. The useful life of the machine is four years and its salvage value is zero. CAPBS accounts for the lease as a finance lease and uses straight-line depreciation, while OPIS has determined the lease is an operating lease. For simplicity, this example assumes that the accounting rules governing these hypothetical companies do not mandate either type of lease. The present value of lease payments and fair value of the equipment is €100,000. (A reminder relevant for present value calculations: Lease payments are made at the beginning of each period.)

³¹ Interest expense may be classified as a financing cash flow or an operating cash flow under IFRS (IAS 7 paragraph 33) but is classified as an operating cash flow under US GAAP (FASB ASC paragraph 230-10-45-17).

At the beginning of Year 1, before entering into the lease agreements, both companies reported liabilities of €100,000 and equity of €200,000. Each year the companies receive total revenues of €50,000, and all revenues are cash. Assume the companies have a tax rate of 30 percent, and use the same accounting for financial and tax purposes. Both companies' discount rate is 10 percent. In order to focus only on the differences in the type of lease, assume neither company incurs expenses other than those associated with the lease, and neither invests excess cash.

- 1 Which company reports higher expenses/net income in Year 1? Over the four years?
- 2 Which company reports higher total cash flow over the four years? Cash flow from operations?
- 3 Based on return on equity (ROE), how do the two companies' profitability measures compare?
- 4 Based on the ratio of debt-to-equity, how do the two companies' solvency positions compare?

Solution to 1:

In Year 1 and Year 2, CAPBS reports higher expenses because the depreciation expense and interest expense of its finance lease exceeds the lease expense of OPIS's operating lease. Therefore, OPIS reports higher net income in Year 1 and Year 2. The companies' total expense over the entire four-year period, however, is equal as is the companies' total net income.

Each year, OPIS reports lease expense of €28,679 associated with its operating lease. For CAPBS, its finance lease is treated as being economically similar to borrowing money and purchasing an asset. So, on its income statement, CAPBS reports depreciation expense on the leased asset acquired and interest expense on the lease liability.

The table below shows by year CAPBS's depreciation expense and book values on the leased asset.

Year	Acquisition Cost (a)	Depreciation Expense (b)	Accumulated Depreciation (c)	Carrying Amount (Year End) (d)
1	€100,000	€25,000	€25,000	€75,000
2	100,000	25,000	50,000	50,000
3	100,000	25,000	75,000	25,000
4	100,000	25,000	100,000	0
		€100,000		

- Column (a) is acquisition cost of €100,000 of the leased equipment.
- Column (b) is depreciation expense of €25,000 per year, calculated using the straight line convention, as the acquisition costs less salvage value divided by useful life $[(€100,000 - €0)/4 \text{ years}]$.

- Column (c) is the accumulated depreciation on the leased asset calculated as the prior year's accumulated depreciation plus the current year's depreciation expense.
- Column (d) is the carrying amount at year end of the leased equipment, which is the difference between the acquisition cost and accumulated depreciation.

The table below shows CAPBS's lease payment, interest expense, and carrying amount for its lease liability by year.³²

Year	Lease Liability, 1 January (a)	Annual Lease Payment, 1 January (b)	Interest (at 10%; Accrued in Previous Year) (c)	Reduction of Lease Liability, 1 January (d)	Lease Liability on 31 December after Lease Payment on 1 January Same Year (e)
1	€100,000	€28,679	€0	€28,679	€71,321
2	71,321	28,679	7,132	21,547	49,774
3	49,774	28,679	4,977	23,702	26,072
4	26,072	28,679	2,607	26,072	0
		€114,717	€14,717	€100,000	

- Column (a) is the lease liability at the beginning of the year.

Year 1: €100,000

Years thereafter: lease liability at end of previous year

- Column (b) is the annual lease payment made at the beginning of the year. Part of the lease payment pays any interest accrued in the previous year, and the remainder of the lease payment reduces the lease liability. For example, in Year 2, the €28,679 paid on 1 January reduces the interest payable of €7,132 that accrued in Year 1 ($0.10 \times 71,321$) and then reduces the lease liability by €21,547.
- Column (c) is the interest portion of the 1 January lease payment made on that date. This amount of interest was accrued as interest payable during the *prior* year and is reported as the interest expense of the *prior* year.
- Column (d) is the reduction of the lease liability, which is the difference between the annual lease payment and the interest portion.
- Column (e) is the lease liability on 31 December of a given year just before the lease payment is made on the first day of the next year. It is equal to the lease liability on 1 January of the same year (column a) less the reduction of the lease liability (column d).

The table below summarizes and compares the income statement effects of the lease for CAPBS and OPIS. Notice that over the four-year lease, both companies report the same total amount of expense but CAPBS shows higher expenses earlier in the life of the lease.

³² The computations included throughout the example were made using an Excel worksheet; small discrepancies in the calculations are due to rounding.

Year	CAPBS			OPIS	
	Depreciation Expense	Interest Expense	Total	Lease Expense	Difference
1	€25,000	€7,132	€32,132	€28,679	€3,453
2	25,000	4,977	29,977	28,679	1,298
3	25,000	2,607	27,607	28,679	(1,072)
4	25,000	—	25,000	28,679	(3,679)
Total	€100,000	€14,717	€114,717	€114,717	€(0)

The complete income statements for CAPBS and OPIS are presented below. Notice under the assumption that the same accounting is used for financial and tax purposes, CAPBS's taxes are lower in Year 1 and Year 2. The lower taxes in the earlier years reflect the higher expenses in those years.

Income Statements	CAPBS					OPIS				
	1	2	3	4	Total	1	2	3	4	Total
Sales	€50,000	€50,000	€50,000	€50,000	€200,000	€50,000	€50,000	€50,000	€50,000	€200,000
Depreciation expense	25,000	25,000	25,000	25,000	€100,000					
Interest expense	7,132	4,977	2,607		14,717					
Lease expense						28,679	28,679	28,679	28,679	114,717
Income before taxes	17,868	20,023	22,393	25,000	85,283	21,321	21,321	21,321	21,321	85,283
Tax expense	5,360	6,007	6,718	7,500	25,585	6,396	6,396	6,396	6,396	25,585
Net income	€12,508	€14,016	€15,675	€17,500	€59,698	€14,925	€14,925	€14,925	€14,925	€59,698

Solution to 2:

On the statement of cash flows, observe that over the four years, both CAPBS and OPIS report the same total change in cash of €59,698. Operating cash flows reported by CAPBS are higher because a portion of the lease payment each year is categorised as a financing cash flow rather than an operating cash flow. In the first two years, CAPBS's change in cash is higher due to its lower taxes in those years.

Statements of Cash Flows	CAPBS					OPIS				
	1	2	3	4	Total	1	2	3	4	Total
Sales	€50,000	€50,000	€50,000	€50,000	€200,000	€50,000	€50,000	€50,000	€50,000	€200,000
Interest paid	—	7,132	4,977	2,607	€14,717					
Taxes paid	5,360	6,007	6,718	7,500	25,585	6,396	6,396	6,396	6,396	€25,585
Lease expense	—	—	—	—	—	28,679	28,679	28,679	28,679	114,717
Operating cash flows	44,640	36,861	38,305	39,893	159,698	14,925	14,925	14,925	14,925	59,698

Statements of Cash Flows	CAPBS					OPIS				
	1	2	3	4	Total	1	2	3	4	Total
Payment to reduce lease liability	(28,679)	(21,547)	(23,702)	(26,072)	(100,000)					
Financing cash flows	(28,679)	(21,547)	(23,702)	(26,072)	(100,000)	—	—	—		—
Total change in cash	€15,960	€15,314	€14,603	€13,821	€59,698	€14,925	€14,925	€14,925	€14,925	€59,698

Solution to 3:

Based on ROE, CAPBS looks less profitable than OPIS in the earlier years. Computing ROE requires forecasting shareholders' equity. In general, ending Shareholders' equity = Beginning shareholders' equity + Net income + Other comprehensive income – Dividends + Net capital contributions by shareholders. Because the companies in this example do not have other comprehensive income, did not pay dividends, and experienced no capital contributions from shareholders, Ending shareholders' equity = Beginning shareholders' equity + Net income. The forecasts are presented below.

CAPBS	0	1	2	3	4
Retained earnings	€0	€12,508	€26,523	€42,198	€59,698
Common stock	200,000	200,000	200,000	200,000	200,000
Total shareholders' equity	€200,000	€212,508	€226,523	€242,198	€259,698

OPIS	0	1	2	3	4
Retained earnings	€0	€14,925	€29,849	€44,774	€59,698
Common stock	200,000	200,000	200,000	200,000	200,000
Total shareholders' equity	€200,000	€214,925	€229,849	€244,774	€259,698

ROE is calculated as Net income divided by Average shareholders' equity. For example, CAPBS Inc. had Year 1 ROE of 6.1 percent: $€12,508 / [(€200,000 + €212,508) / 2]$.

	CAPBS				OPIS			
	1	2	3	4	1	2	3	4
ROE	6.1%	6.4%	6.7%	7.0%	7.2%	6.7%	6.3%	5.9%

Solution to 4:

Based on the ratio of debt-to-equity, the solvency position of CAPBS appears weaker than that of OPIS.

For the debt-to-equity ratio, take the total shareholders' equity from Part 3 above. Initially, both companies had reported liabilities of €100,000. For OPIS, the amount of total liabilities remains constant at €100,000. For CAPBS, add

the lease liability at the end of the year and the amount of accrued interest payable at the end of each year from Part 1 above. So at the end of Year 1, CAPBS's total liabilities are €178,453 (€100,000 + €71,321 lease liability + €7,132 accrued interest payable at the end of the year), and its debt-to-equity ratio is 0.84 (€178,453/€212,508). At the end of Year 2, CAPBS total liabilities equal €154,751 (€100,000 + €49,774 lease liability + €4,977 accrued interest payable at the end of the year). The remaining years are computed in the same manner. The table below presents the ratios for each year.

	CAPBS				OPIS			
	1	2	3	4	1	2	3	4
Total debt	178,453	154,751	128,679	100,000	100,000	100,000	100,000	100,000
Shareholders' equity	212,508	226,523	242,198	259,698	214,925	229,849	244,774	259,698
Debt-to-equity ratio	0.84	0.68	0.53	0.39	0.47	0.44	0.41	0.39

In summary, a company reporting a lease as an operating lease will typically show higher profits in early years, higher return measures in early years, and a stronger solvency position than an identical company reporting an identical lease as a finance lease.³³ However, the company reporting the lease as a finance lease will show higher operating cash flows because a portion of the lease payment will be reflected as a financing cash outflow rather than an operating cash outflow.

The precisely defined accounting standards in the United States that determine when a company should report a capital (finance) versus an operating lease enable a company to structure a lease so as to avoid meeting any of the four capital lease criteria and thereby record an operating lease. Similar to debt disclosures, lease disclosures show payments under both capital and operating leases for the next five years and afterwards. Future payments under US GAAP are disclosed year by year for the first five years and then aggregated for all subsequent years. Under IFRS, future payments are disclosed for the first year, in aggregate for years two through five, and then in aggregate for all subsequent years. These disclosures can help to estimate the extent of a company's off-balance-sheet lease financing through operating leases. Example 21 illustrates the disclosures under current US GAAP and how these disclosures can be used to determine the effect on the financial statements if all operating leases were capitalised, as under IFRS 16.

EXAMPLE 21

Financial Statement Impact of Treating Operating Leases as Finance Leases for the Lessee

CEC Entertainment, Inc. (CEC) has significant commitments under capital (finance) and operating leases. Presented below is selected financial statement information and note disclosure to the financial statements for the company.

Commitments and Contingencies Footnote from CEC's Financial Statements:

³³ Example 11 assumes the company uses the straight-line depreciation method, which is common under IFRS and US GAAP. If the company estimated depreciation expense based on the "economic" depreciation of the leased asset, there would be no difference in reported income under a finance lease and operating lease.

8. Commitments and contingencies:

The company leases certain restaurants and related property and equipment under operating and capital leases. All leases require the company to pay property taxes, insurance, and maintenance of the leased assets. The leases generally have initial terms of 10 to 20 years with various renewal options.

Scheduled annual maturities of the obligations for capital and operating leases as of 28 December 2008 are as follows (US\$ thousands):

Years	Capital	Operating
2009	\$1,683	\$66,849
2010	1,683	66,396
2011	1,683	66,558
2012	1,600	65,478
2013	1,586	63,872
Thereafter	9,970	474,754
Minimum future lease payments	18,205	\$803,907
Less amounts representing interest	(5,997)	
Present value of future minimum lease payments	12,208	
Less current portion	(806)	
Long-term finance lease obligation	\$11,402	

Selected Financial Statement Information for CEC:

	28 December 2008	30 December 2007
Total liabilities	\$608,854	\$519,900
Shareholders' equity	\$128,586	\$217,993

- A** Calculate the implicit interest rate used to discount the “scheduled annual maturities” under capital leases to obtain the “present value of future minimum lease payments” of \$12,208 disclosed in the Commitments and Contingencies footnote. To simplify the calculation, assume that future minimum lease payments on the company’s capital leases for the “thereafter” lump sum are as follows: \$1,586 on 31 December of each year from 2014 to 2019, and \$454 in 2020. Assume annual lease payments are made at the end of each year.

B Why is the implicit interest rate estimate in Part A important in assessing a company’s leases?
- If the operating lease agreements had been treated as capital leases, what additional amount would be reported as a lease obligation on the balance sheet at 28 December 2008? To simplify the calculation, assume that future minimum lease payments on the company’s operating leases for the “thereafter” lump sum are as follows: \$63,872 on 31 December each year from 2014 to 2020, and \$27,650 in 2021. Based on the implicit interest rate obtained in Part 1A, use 7.245% to discount future cash flows on the operating leases.
- What would be the effect on the debt-to-equity ratio of treating all operating leases as finance leases (i.e., the ratio of total liabilities to equity) at 28 December 2008?

Solution to 1A:

The implicit interest rate on finance leases is 7.245 percent. The implicit interest rate used to discount the finance lease payments is the internal rate of return on the stream of cash flows; i.e., the interest rate that will make the present value of the lease payments equal to \$12,208. You can use an Excel spreadsheet or a financial calculator for the computations. Set the cash flow at time zero equal to \$12,208 (note on Excel and on most financial calculators, you will input this amount as a negative number), input each of the annual payments on the finance leases, and solve for the internal rate of return.

To demonstrate how the internal rate of return corresponds to the individual present values, refer to the following schedule of the undiscounted minimum lease payments based on information from footnote 8 and the assumptions given. Exhibit 12 presents the present value computations.

Exhibit 12 Present Value Computations Implicit Interest Rate (Internal Rate of Return) based on Capital Leases (7.245%)

Fiscal Year	Years to Discount	Minimum Capital Lease Payment	Times Present Value Factor	Equals Present Value
2009	1	1,683	$1/(1+\text{interest rate})^1$	1,569
2010	2	1,683	$1/(1+\text{interest rate})^2$	1,463
2011	3	1,683	$1/(1+\text{interest rate})^3$	1,364
2012	4	1,600	$1/(1+\text{interest rate})^4$	1,210
2013	5	1,586	$1/(1+\text{interest rate})^5$	1,118
2014	6	1,586	$1/(1+\text{interest rate})^6$	1,042
2015	7	1,586	$1/(1+\text{interest rate})^7$	972
2016	8	1,586	$1/(1+\text{interest rate})^8$	906
2017	9	1,586	$1/(1+\text{interest rate})^9$	845
2018	10	1,586	$1/(1+\text{interest rate})^{10}$	788
2019	11	1,586	$1/(1+\text{interest rate})^{11}$	735
2020	12	454	$1/(1+\text{interest rate})^{12}$	196
Undiscounted sum of minimum future lease payments		\$18,205		
Present value of future minimum lease payments			\$12,208	\$12,208

The interest rate of 7.245 percent approximately equates the future minimum lease payments with the present value of future minimum lease payments of \$12,208 that CEC reports.

Solution to 1B:

The implicit interest rate is important because it will be used to estimate the present value of the lease obligations reported as a liability, the value of the leased assets on the balance sheet, the interest expense, and the lease amortisation on the income statement. For instance, by selecting a higher rate a company could, if desired, opportunistically reduce the present value of its finance leases and thus its reported debt. The reasonableness of the implicit interest rate can be gauged by comparing it to the interest rates of the company's other debt instruments outstanding, which are disclosed in financial statement footnotes, and

by considering recent market conditions. Note, however, that the interest rate implicit in capitalisation of the finance lease obligations reflects the interest rate at the time the lease occurred and thus may differ from current rates.

Solution to 2:

If the operating leases had been treated as finance leases, the additional amount that would be reported as a lease obligation on the balance sheet at 28 December 2008, using a discount rate of 7.245 percent determined in Part 1 above, is \$520,256. Exhibit 13 presents the present value computations. An alternative short cut approach is to divide the discounted finance lease cash flows of \$12,208 by the undiscounted finance lease cash flows of \$18,205 and then apply the resulting percentage of 67.06 percent to the undiscounted operating lease cash flows of \$803,907. The shortcut approach estimates the present value of the operating lease payments as \$539,100, which is close to the estimate obtained using the longer method. It is likely to be most accurate when the timing and relative quantities of the two sets of cash flows are similar.

Exhibit 13 Present Value Computations (Implicit Interest Rate: 7.245%)

Fiscal Year	Years to Discount	Operating Lease Payments	Times Present Value Factor	Equals Present Value
2009	1	66,849	$1/(1+0.07245)^1$	\$62,333
2010	2	66,396	$1/(1+0.07245)^2$	57,728
2011	3	66,558	$1/(1+0.07245)^3$	53,960
2012	4	65,478	$1/(1+0.07245)^4$	49,498
2013	5	63,872	$1/(1+0.07245)^5$	45,022
2014	6	63,872	$1/(1+0.07245)^6$	41,981
2015	7	63,872	$1/(1+0.07245)^7$	39,145
2016	8	63,872	$1/(1+0.07245)^8$	36,500
2017	9	63,872	$1/(1+0.07245)^9$	34,034
2018	10	63,872	$1/(1+0.07245)^{10}$	31,735
2019	11	63,872	$1/(1+0.07245)^{11}$	29,591
2020	12	63,872	$1/(1+0.07245)^{12}$	27,592
2021	13	27,650	$1/(1+0.07245)^{13}$	11,138
Undiscounted sum of future operating lease payment		\$803,907		
Present value of future operating lease payments				\$520,256

Solution to 3:

The debt-to-equity ratio almost doubles, increasing to 8.78x from 4.74x when capitalising the operating leases. The adjusted debt-to-equity ratio is computed as follows:

	Unadjusted for Operating Leases	Adjustment to Capitalise Operating Leases	Adjusted to Capitalise Operating Leases
Total liabilities	\$608,854	\$520,256	\$1,129,110
Common shareholders' equity	128,586		128,586
Debt-to-equity ratio	4.74x		8.78x

9.2.2 Accounting and Reporting by the Lessor

Lessors that report under US GAAP determine whether a lease is a finance (also called “capital lease”) or operating lease using the same four criteria as a lessee, plus additional revenue recognition criteria. If a lessor enters into an operating lease, the lessor records any lease revenue when earned. The lessor also continues to report the leased asset on the balance sheet and the asset’s associated depreciation expense on the income statement.

Under a finance lease, the lessor reports a lease receivable based on the present value of future lease payments, and the lessor also reduces its assets by the carrying amount of the asset leased. Under both US GAAP and IFRS, the carrying amount of the asset leased relative to the present value of lease payments distinguishes a direct financing lease from a sales-type lease. The income statement will show interest revenue on the lease.

EXAMPLE 22

Financial Statement Impact of a Direct Financing Lease versus Operating Lease for the Lessor

Assume two similar (hypothetical) companies, DIRFIN Inc. and LOPER Inc., own a similar piece of machinery and make similar agreements to lease the machinery on 1 January Year 1. In the lease contract, each company requires four annual payments of €28,679 starting on 1 January Year 1. The useful life of the machine is four years and its salvage value is zero. DIRFIN Inc. accounts for the lease as a direct financing lease while LOPER has determined the lease is an operating lease. (For simplicity, this example assumes that the accounting rules governing these hypothetical companies do not mandate either type of lease.) The present value of lease payments and fair value of the equipment is €100,000.

At the beginning of Year 1, before entering into the lease agreement, both companies reported liabilities of €100,000 and equity of €200,000. Assets on hand include the asset about to be leased. Each year the companies receive total revenues of €50,000 cash, apart from any revenue earned on the lease. Assume the companies have a tax rate of 30 percent, and use the same accounting for financial and tax purposes. Both companies’ discount rate is 10 percent. In order to focus only on the differences in the type of lease, assume that neither company incurs revenues or expenses other than those associated with the lease and that neither invests excess cash.

- 1 Which company reports higher expenses/net income in Year 1? Over the four years?

- 2 Which company reports higher total cash flow over the four years? Cash flow from operations?
- 3 Based on ROE, how do the two companies' profitability measures compare?

Solution to 1:

LOPER reports higher expenses in Year 1 because, under an operating lease, the lessor retains ownership of the asset and continues to report associated depreciation expense. DIRFIN, treating the lease as a finance lease, does not reflect ownership of the asset or the associated depreciation expense. DIRFIN has higher net income in Year 1 because the interest revenue component of the lease payment in that year exceeds the lease revenue net of depreciation reported by LOPER.

On its income statement, LOPER reports depreciation expense for the asset it has leased and lease revenue based on the lease payment received. The table below shows LOPER's depreciation and book values on leased equipment by year.³⁴

Year	Cost (a)	Depreciation Expense (b)	Accumulated Depreciation (c)	Book Value (Year End) (d)
1	€100,000	€25,000	€25,000	€75,000
2	100,000	25,000	50,000	50,000
3	100,000	25,000	75,000	25,000
4	100,000	25,000	100,000	0
		€100,000		

- Column (a) is the cost of €100,000 of the leased equipment.
- Column (b) is depreciation expense of €25,000 per year, calculated using the straight-line method as the cost less the salvage value divided by the useful life $[(€100,000 - €0)/4 \text{ years}]$.
- Column (c) is the accumulated depreciation on the leased asset calculated as the prior year's accumulated depreciation plus the current year's depreciation expense.
- Column (d) is the ending book value of the leased equipment, which is the difference between the cost and accumulated depreciation.

DIRFIN, however, records the lease as a direct financing lease. It removes the leased asset from its assets and records a lease receivable. On its income statement, DIRFIN reports interest revenues earned from financing the lease. The table below shows DIRFIN's interest revenues and carrying amounts on the lease receivable.

³⁴ The computations included throughout the example were made using an Excel worksheet; small apparent discrepancies in the calculations are due to the rounding.

Year	Lease Receivable, 1 January (a)	Annual Lease Payment Received, 1 January (b)	Interest (at 10%; Accrued in Previous Year) (c)	Reduction of Lease Receivable, 1 January (d)	Lease Receivable on 31 December after Lease Payment on 1 January of Same Year (e)
1	€100,000	€28,679	€0	€28,679	€71,321
2	71,321	28,679	7,132	21,547	49,774
3	49,774	28,679	4,977	23,702	26,072
4	26,072	28,679	2,607	26,072	0
		€114,717	€14,717	€100,000	

- Column (a) is the lease receivable at the beginning of the year.
- Column (b) is annual lease payment received at the beginning of the year, which is allocated to interest and reduction of the lease receivable.
- Column (c) is interest accrued in the previous year calculated as the lease receivable outstanding for the year times the interest rate.
- Column (d) is the reduction of the lease receivable which is the difference between the annual lease payments received and interest. Because the lease payment is due on 1 January, this amount of interest is a receivable at the end of the *prior* year and is reported as interest revenue in the *prior* year.
- Column (e) is the lease receivable after the lease payment is received and at the end of the year. It is the lease receivable at 1 January (Column a) less the reduction of the lease receivable (Column d).

The table below summarises and compares the income statement effects of the lease for DIRFIN and LOPER. Notice that over the four-year lease, both companies report the same total amount of revenue, but DIRFIN's revenues in the earlier years of the lease are higher than the net of lease revenues less depreciation reported by LOPER in those years.

Year	DIRFIN	LOPER		Total	Difference
	Lease Revenue	Lease Revenue	Depreciation Expense		
1	€7,132	€28,679	€25,000	€3,679	€3,453
2	4,977	28,679	25,000	3,679	1,298
3	2,607	28,679	25,000	3,679	(1,072)
4	—	28,679	25,000	3,679	(-3,679)
Total	€14,717	€114,717	€100,000	€14,717	€0

The complete income statements for DIRFIN and LOPER are presented below. Notice that, under the assumption that the same accounting is used for financial and tax purposes, DIRFIN's taxes are higher than those of LOPER in Years 1 and 2.

Income Statements	DIRFIN					LOPER				
	1	2	3	4	Total	1	2	3	4	Total
Sales	€50,000	€50,000	€50,000	€50,000	€200,000	€50,000	€50,000	€50,000	€50,000	€200,000
Depreciation expense						(25,000)	(25,000)	(25,000)	(25,000)	(100,000)
Interest revenue	7,132	4,977	2,607		14,717					
Lease revenue	—	—	—	—	—	28,679	28,679	28,679	28,679	114,717
Income before taxes	€57,132	€54,977	€52,607	€50,000	€214,717	€53,679	€53,679	€53,679	€53,679	€214,717
Tax expense	17,140	16,493	15,782	15,000	64,415	16,104	16,104	16,104	16,104	64,415
Net income	<u>€39,992</u>	<u>€38,484</u>	<u>€36,825</u>	<u>€35,000</u>	<u>€150,302</u>	<u>€37,575</u>	<u>€37,575</u>	<u>€37,575</u>	<u>€37,575</u>	<u>€150,302</u>

Solution to 2:

Looking at the statement of cash flows, observe that operating cash flows reported by DIRFIN are lower, but investing cash flows are higher than LOPER. Over the four years, both DIRFIN and LOPER report the same total change in cash.

Statements of Cash Flows	DIRFIN					LOPER				
	1	2	3	4	Total	1	2	3	4	Total
Net income	€39,992	€38,484	€36,825	€35,000	€150,302	€37,575	€37,575	€37,575	€37,575	€150,302
Increase (decrease) in interest receivable	7,132	(2,155)	(2,370)	(2,607)	0					
Add back depreciation expense	—	—	—	—	—	25,000	25,000	25,000	25,000	100,000
Operating cash flows	€32,860	€40,639	€39,195	€37,607	€150,302	€62,575	€62,575	€62,575	€62,575	€250,302
Payments received on finance leases	28,679	21,547	23,702	26,072	100,000					
Investing cash flows	28,679	21,547	23,702	26,072	100,000	—	—	—	—	—
Change in cash	<u>€61,540</u>	<u>€62,186</u>	<u>€62,897</u>	<u>€63,679</u>	<u>€250,302</u>	<u>€62,575</u>	<u>€62,575</u>	<u>€62,575</u>	<u>€62,575</u>	<u>€250,302</u>

Solution to 3:

Based on ROE, DIRFIN appears more profitable than LOPER in the early years of the lease.

Computing ROE requires forecasting shareholders' equity. In general, Ending shareholders' equity = Beginning shareholders' equity + Net income + Other comprehensive income – Dividends + Net capital contributions by shareholders. Because the companies in this example do not have other comprehensive

income, do not pay dividends, and have no capital contributions, Ending shareholders' equity = Beginning shareholders' equity + Net income. The forecasts are presented below.

DIRFIN	0	1	2	3	4
Retained earnings	€0	€39,992	€78,477	€115,302	€150,302
Common stock	200,000	200,000	200,000	200,000	200,000
Total shareholders' equity	<u>€200,000</u>	<u>€239,992</u>	<u>€278,477</u>	<u>€315,302</u>	<u>€350,302</u>

LOPER	0	1	2	3	4
Retained earnings	€0	€37,575	€75,151	€112,726	€150,302
Common stock	200,000	200,000	200,000	200,000	200,000
Total shareholders' equity	<u>€200,000</u>	<u>€237,575</u>	<u>€275,151</u>	<u>€312,726</u>	<u>€350,302</u>

ROE is calculated as net income divided by average shareholders' equity. For example, DIRFIN Inc. had Year 1 ROE of 18.2 percent: $€39,992 / [(€200,000 + €239,992) / 2]$.

	DIRFIN				LOPER			
	1	2	3	4	1	2	3	4
ROE	18.2%	14.8%	12.4%	10.5%	17.2%	14.7%	12.8%	11.3%

From the comparisons above, DIRFIN looks more profitable in the early years of the lease, but less profitable in the later years.

US GAAP make a further distinction in defining two types of non-operating leases: (1) **direct financing leases**, and (2) **sales-type leases** from the lessor's perspective.³⁵ A direct financing lease results when the present value of lease payments (and thus the amount recorded as a lease receivable) equals the carrying amount of the leased asset. Because there is no "profit" on the asset itself, the lessor is essentially providing financing to the lessee, and the revenues earned by the lessor are financing in nature (i.e., interest revenue). If, however, the present value of lease payments (and thus the amount recorded as a lease receivable) exceeds the carrying value of the leased asset, the lease is treated as a sale.

When a company enters into a sales-type lease, a lease agreement where the present value of lease payment is greater than the value of the leased asset to the lessor, it will show a profit on the transaction in the year of inception and interest revenue over the life of the lease.

³⁵ IFRS does not make the distinction between a sales-type lease and a direct financing lease. However, a similar treatment to 'sales-type' is allowed for finance leases originated by 'manufacturer or dealer lessors' within the general provisions for finance leases.

EXAMPLE 23**Financial Statement Impact of a Sales-type Lease for the Lessor**

Assume a (hypothetical) company, Selnow Inc., owns a piece of machinery and enters into an agreement to lease the machinery on 1 January Year 1. In the lease contract, the company requires four annual payments of €28,679 starting on 1 January Year 1. The present value of the lease payments (using a 10 percent discount rate) is €100,000, and the fair value of the equipment is €90,000. The useful life of the machinery is four years and its salvage value is zero.

- 1 Is the lease a direct financing or sales-type lease?
- 2 What is Selnow's income related to the lease in Year 1? In Year 2? Ignore taxes.

Solution to 1:

This is a sales-type lease: The present value of lease payments is more than the lessor's carrying amount of the leased asset. The difference between the present value of the lease payments and the carrying amount of the leased asset is the lessor's profit from selling the machinery. The lessor will record a profit of €10,000 on the sale of the leased equipment in Year 1 (€100,000 present value of lease payments receivable less €90,000 value of leased equipment).

Solution to 2:

In Year 1, Selnow shows income of €17,132 related to the lease. One part of this is the €10,000 gain on the sale of the lease equipment (sales revenues of €100,000 less costs of goods sold of €90,000). Selnow also shows interest revenue of €7,132 on its financing of the lease (lease receivable of €71,321 after the initial lease payment is received times the 10 percent discount rate). In Year 2, Selnow reports only the interest revenue of €4,977 (lease receivable of €49,774 after the 1 January lease payment is received times the 10 percent discount rate). The table below shows lease payments received, interest revenue, and reduction of the lease receivable for Selnow's sales-type lease. Note that this table is the same as DIRFIN's table in the previous example with the direct financing lease. They are the same because the present value of the lease payments in both cases is the same. It is the fair value of the equipment that differs between the two examples.

Year	Lease Receivable, 1 January (a)	Annual Lease Payment Received, 1 January (b)	Interest (at 10%; Accrued in Previous Year) (c)	Reduction of Lease Receivable, 1 January (d)	Lease Receivable on 31 December after Lease Payment on 1 January Same Year (e)
1	€100,000	€28,679	€0	€28,679	€71,321
2	71,321	28,679	7,132	21,547	49,774
3	49,774	28,679	4,977	23,702	26,072
4	26,072	28,679	2,607	26,072	0
		€114,717	€14,717	€100,000	

SUMMARY

Understanding the reporting of long-lived assets at inception requires distinguishing between expenditures that are capitalised (i.e., reported as long-lived assets) and those that are expensed. Once a long-lived asset is recognised, it is reported under the cost model at its historical cost less accumulated depreciation (amortisation) and less any impairment or under the revaluation model at its fair value. IFRS permit the use of either the cost model or the revaluation model, whereas US GAAP require the use of the cost model. Most companies reporting under IFRS use the cost model. The choice of different methods to depreciate (amortise) long-lived assets can create challenges for analysts comparing companies.

Key points include the following:

- Expenditures related to long-lived assets are capitalised as part of the cost of assets if they are expected to provide future benefits, typically beyond one year. Otherwise, expenditures related to long-lived assets are expensed as incurred.
- Although capitalising expenditures, rather than expensing them, results in higher reported profitability in the initial year, it results in lower profitability in subsequent years; however, if a company continues to purchase similar or increasing amounts of assets each year, the profitability-enhancing effect of capitalisation continues.
- Capitalising an expenditure rather than expensing it results in a greater amount reported as cash from operations because capitalised expenditures are classified as an investing cash outflow rather than an operating cash outflow.
- Companies must capitalise interest costs associated with acquiring or constructing an asset that requires a long period of time to prepare for its intended use.
- Including capitalised interest in the calculation of interest coverage ratios provides a better assessment of a company's solvency.
- IFRS require research costs be expensed but allow all development costs (not only software development costs) to be capitalised under certain conditions. Generally, US accounting standards require that research and development costs be expensed; however, certain costs related to software development are required to be capitalised.
- When one company acquires another company, the transaction is accounted for using the acquisition method of accounting in which the company identified as the acquirer allocates the purchase price to each asset acquired (and each liability assumed) on the basis of its fair value. Under acquisition accounting, if the purchase price of an acquisition exceeds the sum of the amounts that can be allocated to individual identifiable assets and liabilities, the excess is recorded as goodwill.
- The capitalised costs of long-lived tangible assets and of intangible assets with finite useful lives are allocated to expense in subsequent periods over their useful lives. For tangible assets, this process is referred to as depreciation, and for intangible assets, it is referred to as amortisation.
- Long-lived tangible assets and intangible assets with finite useful lives are reviewed for impairment whenever changes in events or circumstances indicate that the carrying amount of an asset may not be recoverable.
- Intangible assets with an indefinite useful life are not amortised but are reviewed for impairment annually.

- Impairment disclosures can provide useful information about a company's expected cash flows.
- Methods of calculating depreciation or amortisation expense include the straight-line method, in which the cost of an asset is allocated to expense in equal amounts each year over its useful life; accelerated methods, in which the allocation of cost is greater in earlier years; and the units-of-production method, in which the allocation of cost corresponds to the actual use of an asset in a particular period.
- Estimates required for depreciation and amortisation calculations include the useful life of the equipment (or its total lifetime productive capacity) and its expected residual value at the end of that useful life. A longer useful life and higher expected residual value result in a smaller amount of annual depreciation relative to a shorter useful life and lower expected residual value.
- IFRS permit the use of either the cost model or the revaluation model for the valuation and reporting of long-lived assets, but the revaluation model is not allowed under US GAAP.
- Under the revaluation model, carrying amounts are the fair values at the date of revaluation less any subsequent accumulated depreciation or amortisation.
- In contrast with depreciation and amortisation charges, which serve to allocate the cost of a long-lived asset over its useful life, impairment charges reflect an unexpected decline in the fair value of an asset to an amount lower than its carrying amount.
- IFRS permit impairment losses to be reversed, with the reversal reported in profit. US GAAP do not permit the reversal of impairment losses.
- The gain or loss on the sale of long-lived assets is computed as the sales proceeds minus the carrying amount of the asset at the time of sale.
- Estimates of average age and remaining useful life of a company's assets reflect the relationship between assets accounted for on a historical cost basis and depreciation amounts.
- The average remaining useful life of a company's assets can be estimated as net PPE divided by depreciation expense, although the accounting useful life may not necessarily correspond to the economic useful life.
- Long-lived assets reclassified as held for sale cease to be depreciated or amortised. Long-lived assets to be disposed of other than by a sale (e.g., by abandonment, exchange for another asset, or distribution to owners in a spin-off) are classified as held for use until disposal. Thus, they continue to be depreciated and tested for impairment.
- Investment property is defined as property that is owned (or, in some cases, leased under a finance lease) for the purpose of earning rentals, capital appreciation, or both.
- Under IFRS, companies are allowed to value investment properties using either a cost model or a fair value model. The cost model is identical to the cost model used for property, plant, and equipment, but the fair value model differs from the revaluation model used for property, plant, and equipment. Under the fair value model, all changes in the fair value of investment property affect net income.
- Under US GAAP, investment properties are generally measured using the cost model.
- Accounting standards have traditionally defined two types of leases: operating leases and finance (or capital) leases. US GAAP specify four criteria to determine when a lease is classified as a capital lease, although proposed standards

would eliminate those specific criteria. IFRS have been less prescriptive in determining the classification of a lease as a finance lease. The new IFRS 16 requires that both operating leases and financing leases are recognized and accounted for as finance leases by the lessee.

- When a lessee reports a lease as an operating lease rather than a finance lease, it usually appears more profitable in early years of the lease and less so later, and it appears less leveraged over the entire lease period.
- When a lessor reports a lease as a finance lease rather than an operating lease, it usually appears more profitable in early years of the lease.

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

- 1 JOOVI Inc. has recently purchased and installed a new machine for its manufacturing plant. The company incurred the following costs:

Purchase price	\$12,980
Freight and insurance	\$1,200
Installation	\$700
Testing	\$100
Maintenance staff training costs	\$500

The total cost of the machine to be shown on JOOVI's balance sheet is *closest* to:

- A \$14,180.
 B \$14,980.
 C \$15,480.
- 2 Which costs incurred with the purchase of property and equipment are expensed?
 A Delivery charges
 B Installation and testing
 C Training required to use the property and equipment
- 3 When constructing an asset for sale, directly related borrowing costs are *most likely*:
 A expensed as incurred.
 B capitalized as part of inventory.
 C capitalized as part of property, plant, and equipment.
- 4 BAURU, S.A., a Brazilian corporation, borrows capital from a local bank to finance the construction of its manufacturing plant. The loan has the following conditions:

Borrowing date	1 January 2009
Amount borrowed	500 million Brazilian real (BRL)
Annual interest rate	14 percent
Term of the loan	3 years
Payment method	Annual payment of interest only. Principal amortization is due at the end of the loan term.

The construction of the plant takes two years, during which time BAURU earned BRL 10 million by temporarily investing the loan proceeds. Which of the following is the amount of interest related to the plant construction (in BRL million) that can be capitalized in BAURU's balance sheet?

- A 130.
 B 140.
 C 210.
- 5 After reading the financial statements and footnotes of a company that follows IFRS, an analyst identified the following intangible assets:
- product patent expiring in 40 years;

- copyright with no expiration date; and
- goodwill acquired 2 years ago in a business combination.

Which of these assets is an intangible asset with a finite useful life?

	Product Patent	Copyright	Goodwill
A	Yes	Yes	No
B	Yes	No	No
C	No	Yes	Yes

- 6** Intangible assets with finite useful lives *mostly* differ from intangible assets with infinite useful lives with respect to accounting treatment of:
- A** revaluation.
 - B** impairment.
 - C** amortization.
- 7** Costs incurred for intangible assets are generally expensed when they are:
- A** internally developed.
 - B** individually acquired.
 - C** acquired in a business combination.
- 8** Under US GAAP, when assets are acquired in a business combination, goodwill *most likely* arises from:
- A** contractual or legal rights.
 - B** assets that can be separated from the acquired company.
 - C** assets that are neither tangible nor identifiable intangible assets.
- 9** All else equal, in the fiscal year when long-lived equipment is purchased:
- A** depreciation expense increases.
 - B** cash from operations decreases.
 - C** net income is reduced by the amount of the purchase.
- 10** Companies X and Z have the same beginning-of-the-year book value of equity and the same tax rate. The companies have identical transactions throughout the year and report all transactions similarly except for one. Both companies acquire a £300,000 printer with a three-year useful life and a salvage value of £0 on 1 January of the new year. Company X capitalizes the printer and depreciates it on a straight-line basis, and Company Z expenses the printer. The following year-end information is gathered for Company X.

	Company X As of 31 December
Ending shareholders' equity	£10,000,000
Tax rate	25%
Dividends	£0.00
Net income	£750,000

Based on the information given, Company Z's return on equity using year-end equity will be *closest* to:

- A** 5.4%.
- B** 6.1%.
- C** 7.5%.

- 11 A financial analyst is studying the income statement effect of two alternative depreciation methods for a recently acquired piece of equipment. She gathers the following information about the equipment's expected production life and use:

	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5	Total
Units of production	2,000	2,000	2,000	2,000	2,500	10,500

Compared with the units-of-production method of depreciation, if the company uses the straight-line method to depreciate the equipment, its net income in Year 1 will *most likely* be:

- A lower.
 B higher.
 C the same.
- 12 A company purchases a piece of equipment for €1,500. The equipment is expected to have a useful life of five years and no residual value. In the first year of use, the units of production are expected to be 15% of the equipment's lifetime production capacity and the equipment is expected to generate €1,500 of revenue and incur €500 of cash expenses.
- The depreciation method yielding the lowest operating profit on the equipment in the first year of use is:
- A straight line.
 B units of production.
 C double-declining balance.
- 13 Juan Martinez, CFO of VIRMIN, S.A., is selecting the depreciation method to use for a new machine. The machine has an expected useful life of six years. Production is expected to be relatively low initially but to increase over time. The method chosen for tax reporting must be the same as the method used for financial reporting. If Martinez wants to minimize tax payments in the first year of the machine's life, which of the following depreciation methods is Martinez *most likely* to use?
- A Straight-line method.
 B Units-of-production method.
 C Double-declining balance method.

The following information relates to Questions 14–15

Miguel Rodriguez of MARIO S.A., an Uruguayan corporation, is computing the depreciation expense of a piece of manufacturing equipment for the fiscal year ended 31 December 2009. The equipment was acquired on 1 January 2009. Rodriguez gathers the following information (currency in Uruguayan pesos, UYP):

Cost of the equipment	UYP 1,200,000
Estimated residual value	UYP 200,000
Expected useful life	8 years
Total productive capacity	800,000 units

(continued)

Production in FY 2009	135,000 units
Expected production for the next 7 years	95,000 units each year

- 14** If MARIO uses the straight-line method, the amount of depreciation expense on MARIO's income statement related to the manufacturing equipment is *closest* to:
- A 125,000.
 B 150,000.
 C 168,750.
- 15** If MARIO uses the units-of-production method, the amount of depreciation expense (in UYP) on MARIO's income statement related to the manufacturing equipment is *closest* to:
- A 118,750.
 B 168,750.
 C 202,500.
-
- 16** Which of the following amortization methods is *most likely* to evenly distribute the cost of an intangible asset over its useful life?
- A Straight-line method.
 B Units-of-production method.
 C Double-declining balance method.
- 17** Which of the following will cause a company to show a lower amount of amortization of intangible assets in the first year after acquisition?
- A A higher residual value.
 B A higher amortization rate.
 C A shorter useful life.
- 18** A company purchases equipment for \$200,000 with a five-year useful life and salvage value of zero. It uses the double-declining balance method of depreciation for two years, then shifts to straight-line depreciation at the beginning of Year 3. Compared with annual depreciation expense under the double-declining balance method, the resulting annual depreciation expense in Year 4 is:
- A smaller.
 B the same.
 C greater.
- 19** An analyst in the finance department of BOOLDO S.A., a French corporation, is computing the amortization of a customer list, an intangible asset, for the fiscal year ended 31 December 2009. She gathers the following information about the asset:

Acquisition cost	€2,300,000
Acquisition date	1 January 2008
Expected residual value at time of acquisition	€500,000

The customer list is expected to result in extra sales for three years after acquisition. The present value of these expected extra sales exceeds the cost of the list.

If the analyst uses the straight-line method, the amount of accumulated amortization related to the customer list as of 31 December 2009 is *closest* to:

- A €600,000.
- B €1,200,000.
- C €1,533,333.

- 20 A financial analyst is analyzing the amortization of a product patent acquired by MAKETTI S.p.A., an Italian corporation. He gathers the following information about the patent:

Acquisition cost	€5,800,000
Acquisition date	1 January 2009
Patent expiration date	31 December 2015
Total plant capacity of patented product	40,000 units per year
Production of patented product in fiscal year ended 31 December 2009	20,000 units
Expected production of patented product during life of the patent	175,000 units

If the analyst uses the units-of-production method, the amortization expense on the patent for fiscal year 2009 is *closest* to:

- A €414,286.
 - B €662,857.
 - C €828,571.
- 21 A company acquires a patent with an expiration date in six years for ¥100 million. The company assumes that the patent will generate economic benefits that will decline over time and decides to amortize the patent using the double-declining balance method. The annual amortization expense in Year 4 is closest to:
- A ¥6.6 million.
 - B ¥9.9 million.
 - C ¥19.8 million.
- 22 A company is comparing straight-line and double-declining balance amortization methods for a non-renewable six-year license, acquired for €600,000. The difference between the Year 4 ending net book values using the two methods is *closest to*:
- A €81,400.
 - B €118,600.
 - C €200,000.
- 23 MARU S.A. de C.V., a Mexican corporation that follows IFRS, has elected to use the revaluation model for its property, plant, and equipment. One of MARU's machines was purchased for 2,500,000 Mexican pesos (MXN) at the beginning of the fiscal year ended 31 March 2010. As of 31 March 2010, the machine has a fair value of MXN 3,000,000. Should MARU show a profit for the revaluation of the machine?
- A Yes.
 - B No, because this revaluation is recorded directly in equity.
 - C No, because value increases resulting from revaluation can never be recognized as a profit.
- 24 An analyst is studying the impairment of the manufacturing equipment of WLP Corp., a UK-based corporation that follows IFRS. He gathers the following information about the equipment:

Fair value	£16,800,000
Costs to sell	£800,000
Value in use	£14,500,000
Net carrying amount	£19,100,000

The amount of the impairment loss on WLP Corp.'s income statement related to its manufacturing equipment is *closest* to:

- A £2,300,000.
 - B £3,100,000.
 - C £4,600,000.
- 25 Under IFRS, an impairment loss on a property, plant, and equipment asset is measured as the excess of the carrying amount over the asset's:
- A fair value.
 - B recoverable amount.
 - C undiscounted expected future cash flows.
- 26 A financial analyst at BETTO S.A. is analyzing the result of the sale of a vehicle for 85,000 Argentine pesos (ARP) on 31 December 2009. The analyst compiles the following information about the vehicle:

Acquisition cost of the vehicle	ARP 100,000
Acquisition date	1 January 2007
Estimated residual value at acquisition date	ARP 10,000
Expected useful life	9 years
Depreciation method	Straight-line

The result of the sale of the vehicle is *most likely*:

- A a loss of ARP 15,000.
 - B a gain of ARP 15,000.
 - C a gain of ARP 18,333.
- 27 CROCO S.p.A sells an intangible asset with a historical acquisition cost of €12 million and an accumulated depreciation of €2 million and reports a loss on the sale of €3.2 million. Which of the following amounts is *most likely* the sale price of the asset?
- A €6.8 million
 - B €8.8 million
 - C €13.2 million
- 28 The impairment of intangible assets with finite lives affects:
- A the balance sheet but not the income statement.
 - B the income statement but not the balance sheet.
 - C both the balance sheet and the income statement.
- 29 The gain or loss on a sale of a long-lived asset to which the revaluation model has been applied is *most likely* calculated using sales proceeds less:
- A carrying amount.
 - B carrying amount adjusted for impairment.
 - C historical cost net of accumulated depreciation.

- 30 According to IFRS, all of the following pieces of information about property, plant, and equipment must be disclosed in a company's financial statements and footnotes *except for*:
- A useful lives.
 - B acquisition dates.
 - C amount of disposals.
- 31 According to IFRS, all of the following pieces of information about intangible assets must be disclosed in a company's financial statements and footnotes *except for*:
- A fair value.
 - B impairment loss.
 - C amortization rate.
- 32 Which of the following is a required financial statement disclosure for long-lived intangible assets under US GAAP?
- A The useful lives of assets
 - B The reversal of impairment losses
 - C Estimated amortization expense for the next five fiscal years
- 33 Which of the following characteristics is *most likely* to differentiate investment property from property, plant, and equipment?
- A It is tangible.
 - B It earns rent.
 - C It is long-lived.
- 34 If a company uses the fair value model to value investment property, changes in the fair value of the asset are *least likely* to affect:
- A net income.
 - B net operating income.
 - C other comprehensive income.
- 35 Investment property is *most likely* to:
- A earn rent.
 - B be held for resale.
 - C be used in the production of goods and services.
- 36 A company is *most likely* to:
- A use a fair value model for some investment property and a cost model for other investment property.
 - B change from the fair value model when transactions on comparable properties become less frequent.
 - C change from the fair value model when the company transfers investment property to property, plant, and equipment.
- 37 Under the revaluation model for property, plant, and equipment and the fair model for investment property:
- A fair value of the asset must be able to be measured reliably.
 - B net income is affected by all changes in the fair value of the asset.
 - C net income is never affected if the asset increases in value from its carrying amount.
- 38 Under IFRS, what must be disclosed under the cost model of valuation for investment properties?

- A Useful lives
 - B The method for determining fair value
 - C Reconciliation between beginning and ending carrying amounts of investment property
- 39 A potential advantage of leasing through a finance lease, compared with purchasing an asset, is *most likely*:
- A no effect on the balance sheet.
 - B no reporting of interest expense.
 - C reduced risk related to asset obsolescence.

The following information relates to Questions 40–45

Melanie Hart, CFA, is a transportation analyst. Hart has been asked to write a research report on Altai Mountain Rail Company (AMRC). Like other companies in the railroad industry, AMRC's operations are capital intensive, with significant investments in such long-lived tangible assets as property, plant, and equipment. In November of 2008, AMRC's board of directors hired a new team to manage the company. In reviewing the company's 2009 annual report, Hart is concerned about some of the accounting choices that the new management has made. These choices differ from those of the previous management and from common industry practice. Hart has highlighted the following statements from the company's annual report:

Statement 1 "In 2009, AMRC spent significant amounts on track replacement and similar improvements. AMRC expensed rather than capitalised a significant proportion of these expenditures."

Statement 2 "AMRC uses the straight-line method of depreciation for both financial and tax reporting purposes to account for plant and equipment."

Statement 3 "In 2009, AMRC recognized an impairment loss of €50 million on a fleet of locomotives. The impairment loss was reported as 'other income' in the income statement and reduced the carrying amount of the assets on the balance sheet."

Statement 4 "AMRC acquires the use of many of its assets, including a large portion of its fleet of rail cars, under long-term lease contracts. In 2009, AMRC acquired the use of equipment with a fair value of €200 million under 20-year lease contracts. These leases were classified as operating leases. Prior to 2009, most of these lease contracts were classified as finance leases."

Exhibits 1 and 2 contain AMRC's 2009 consolidated income statement and balance sheet. AMRC prepares its financial statements in accordance with International Financial Reporting Standards.

Exhibit 1 Consolidated Statement of Income

For the Years Ended 31 December	2009		2008	
	€ Millions	% Revenues	€ Millions	% Revenues
Operating revenues	2,600	100.0	2,300	100.0
Operating expenses				
Depreciation	(200)	(7.7)	(190)	(8.3)
Lease payments	(210)	(8.1)	(195)	(8.5)
Other operating expense	(1,590)	(61.1)	(1,515)	(65.9)
Total operating expenses	(2,000)	(76.9)	(1,900)	(82.6)
Operating income	600	23.1	400	17.4
Other income	(50)	(1.9)	—	0.0
Interest expense	(73)	(2.8)	(69)	(3.0)
Income before taxes	477	18.4	331	14.4
Income taxes	(189)	(7.3)	(125)	(5.4)
Net income	288	11.1	206	9.0

Exhibit 2 Consolidated Balance Sheet

As of 31 December	2009		2008	
	€ Millions	% Assets	€ Millions	% Assets
Assets				
Current assets	500	9.4	450	8.5
Property & equipment:				
Land	700	13.1	700	13.2
Plant & equipment	6,000	112.1	5,800	109.4
Total property & equipment	6,700	125.2	6,500	122.6
Accumulated depreciation	(1,850)	(34.6)	(1,650)	(31.1)
Net property & equipment	4,850	90.6	4,850	91.5
Total assets	5,350	100.0	5,300	100.0
Liabilities and Shareholders' Equity				
Current liabilities	480	9.0	430	8.1
Long-term debt	1,030	19.3	1,080	20.4
Other long-term provisions and liabilities	1,240	23.1	1,440	27.2
Total liabilities	2,750	51.4	2,950	55.7
Shareholders' equity				
Common stock and paid-in-surplus	760	14.2	760	14.3
Retained earnings	1,888	35.5	1,600	30.2
Other comprehensive losses	(48)	(0.9)	(10)	(0.2)

(continued)

Exhibit 2 (Continued)

As of 31 December	2009		2008	
	€ Millions	% Assets	€ Millions	% Assets
Assets				
Total shareholders' equity	2,600	48.6	2,350	44.3
Total liabilities & shareholders' equity	5,350	100.0	5,300	100.0

- 40 With respect to Statement 1, which of the following is the *most likely* effect of management's decision to expense rather than capitalise these expenditures?
- A 2009 net profit margin is higher than if the expenditures had been capitalised.
 - B 2009 total asset turnover is lower than if the expenditures had been capitalised.
 - C Future profit growth will be higher than if the expenditures had been capitalised.
- 41 With respect to Statement 2, what would be the *most likely* effect in 2010 if AMRC were to switch to an accelerated depreciation method for both financial and tax reporting?
- A Net profit margin would increase.
 - B Total asset turnover would decrease.
 - C Cash flow from operating activities would increase.
- 42 With respect to Statement 3, what is the *most likely* effect of the impairment loss?
- A Net income in years prior to 2009 was likely understated.
 - B Net profit margins in years after 2009 will likely exceed the 2009 net profit margin.
 - C Cash flow from operating activities in 2009 was likely lower due to the impairment loss.
- 43 Based on Exhibits 1 and 2, the *best estimate* of the average remaining useful life of the company's plant and equipment at the end of 2009 is:
- A 20.75 years.
 - B 24.25 years.
 - C 30.00 years.
- 44 With respect to Statement 4, if AMRC had used its old classification method for its leases instead of its new classification method, its 2009 total asset turnover ratio would *most likely* be:
- A lower.
 - B higher.
 - C the same.
- 45 With respect to Statement 4 and Exhibit 1, if AMRC had used its old classification method for its leases instead of its new classification method, the *most likely* effect on its 2009 ratios would be a:
- A higher net profit margin.

- B higher fixed asset turnover.
 - C higher total liabilities-to-total assets ratio.
-

The following information relates to Questions 46–52

Brian Jordan is interviewing for a junior equity analyst position at Orion Investment Advisors. As part of the interview process, Mary Benn, Orion's Director of Research, provides Jordan with information about two hypothetical companies, Alpha and Beta, and asks him to comment on the information on their financial statements and ratios. Both companies prepare their financial statements in accordance with International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRS) and are identical in all respects except for their accounting choices.

Jordan is told that at the beginning of the current fiscal year, both companies purchased a major new computer system and began building new manufacturing plants for their own use. Alpha capitalised and Beta expensed the cost of the computer system; Alpha capitalised and Beta expensed the interest costs associated with the construction of the manufacturing plants. In mid-year, both companies leased new office headquarters. Alpha classified the lease as an operating lease, and Beta classified it as a finance lease.

Benn asks Jordan, "What was the impact of these decisions on each company's current fiscal year financial statements and ratios?"

Jordan responds, "Alpha's decision to capitalise the cost of its new computer system instead of expensing it results in lower net income, lower total assets, and higher cash flow from operating activities in the current fiscal year. Alpha's decision to capitalise its interest costs instead of expensing them results in a lower fixed asset turnover ratio and a higher interest coverage ratio. Alpha's decision to classify its lease as an operating lease instead of a finance lease results in higher net income, higher cash flow from operating activities, and stronger solvency and activity ratios compared to Beta."

Jordan is told that Alpha uses the straight-line depreciation method and Beta uses an accelerated depreciation method; both companies estimate the same useful lives for long-lived assets. Many companies in their industry use the units-of-production method.

Benn asks Jordan, "What are the financial statement implications of each depreciation method, and how do you determine a company's need to reinvest in its productive capacity?"

Jordan replies, "All other things being equal, the straight-line depreciation method results in the least variability of net profit margin over time, while an accelerated depreciation method results in a declining trend in net profit margin over time. The units-of-production can result in a net profit margin trend that is quite variable. I use a three-step approach to estimate a company's need to reinvest in its productive capacity. First, I estimate the average age of the assets by dividing net property, plant, and equipment by annual depreciation expense. Second, I estimate the average remaining useful life of the assets by dividing accumulated depreciation by depreciation expense. Third, I add the estimates of the average remaining useful life and the average age of the assets in order to determine the total useful life."

Jordan is told that at the end of the current fiscal year, Alpha revalued a manufacturing plant; this increased its reported carrying amount by 15 percent. There was no previous downward revaluation of the plant. Beta recorded an impairment loss on a manufacturing plant; this reduced its carrying by 10 percent.

Benn asks Jordan “What was the impact of these decisions on each company’s current fiscal year financial ratios?”

Jordan responds, “Beta’s impairment loss increases its debt to total assets and fixed asset turnover ratios, and lowers its cash flow from operating activities. Alpha’s revaluation increases its debt to capital and return on assets ratios, and reduces its return on equity.”

At the end of the interview, Benn thanks Jordan for his time and states that a hiring decision will be made shortly.

- 46 Jordan’s response about the financial statement impact of Alpha’s decision to capitalise the cost of its new computer system is most likely *correct* with respect to:
- A lower net income.
 - B lower total assets.
 - C higher cash flow from operating activities.
- 47 Jordan’s response about the ratio impact of Alpha’s decision to capitalise interest costs is most likely *correct* with respect to the:
- A interest coverage ratio.
 - B fixed asset turnover ratio.
 - C interest coverage and fixed asset turnover ratios.
- 48 Jordan’s response about the impact of Alpha’s decision to classify its lease as an operating lease instead of finance lease is most likely *incorrect* with respect to:
- A net income.
 - B solvency and activity ratios.
 - C cash flow from operating activities.
- 49 Jordan’s response about the impact of the different depreciation methods on net profit margin is most likely *incorrect* with respect to:
- A accelerated depreciation.
 - B straight-line depreciation.
 - C units-of-production depreciation.
- 50 Jordan’s response about his approach to estimating a company’s need to reinvest in its productive capacity is most likely *correct* regarding:
- A estimating the average age of the asset base.
 - B estimating the total useful life of the asset base.
 - C estimating the average remaining useful life of the asset base.
- 51 Jordan’s response about the effect of Beta’s impairment loss is most likely *incorrect* with respect to the impact on its:
- A debt to total assets.
 - B fixed asset turnover.
 - C cash flow from operating activities.
- 52 Jordan’s response about the effect of Alpha’s revaluation is most likely *correct* with respect to the impact on its:
- A return on equity.
 - B return on assets.
 - C debt to capital ratio.
-

SOLUTIONS

- 1 B is correct. Only costs necessary for the machine to be ready to use can be capitalized. Therefore, Total capitalized costs = 12,980 + 1,200 + 700 + 100 = \$14,980.
- 2 C is correct. When property and equipment are purchased, the assets are recorded on the balance sheet at cost. Costs for the assets include all expenditures required to prepare the assets for their intended use. Any other costs are expensed. Costs to train staff for using the machine are not required to prepare the property and equipment for their intended use, and these costs are expensed.
- 3 B is correct. When a company constructs an asset, borrowing costs incurred directly related to the construction are generally capitalized. If the asset is constructed for sale, the borrowing costs are classified as inventory.
- 4 A is correct. Borrowing costs can be capitalized under IFRS until the tangible asset is ready for use. Also, under IFRS, income earned on temporarily investing the borrowed monies decreases the amount of borrowing costs eligible for capitalization. Therefore, Total capitalized interest = (500 million × 14% × 2 years) – 10 million = 130 million.
- 5 B is correct. A product patent with a defined expiration date is an intangible asset with a finite useful life. A copyright with no expiration date is an intangible asset with an indefinite useful life. Goodwill is no longer considered an intangible asset under IFRS and is considered to have an indefinite useful life.
- 6 C is correct. An intangible asset with a finite useful life is amortized, whereas an intangible asset with an indefinite useful life is not.
- 7 A is correct. The costs to internally develop intangible assets are generally expensed when incurred.
- 8 C is correct. Under both International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRS) and US GAAP, if an item is acquired in a business combination and cannot be recognized as a tangible asset or identifiable intangible asset, it is recognized as goodwill. Under US GAAP, assets arising from contractual or legal rights and assets that can be separated from the acquired company are recognized separately from goodwill.
- 9 A is correct. In the fiscal year when long-lived equipment is purchased, the assets on the balance sheet increase and depreciation expense on the income statement increases because of the new long-lived asset.
- 10 B is correct. Company Z's return on equity based on year-end equity value will be 6.1%. Company Z will have an additional £200,000 of expenses compared with Company X. Company Z expensed the printer for £300,000 rather than capitalizing the printer and having a depreciation expense of £100,000 like Company X. Company Z's net income and shareholders' equity will be £150,000 lower (= £200,000 × 0.75) than that of Company X.

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{ROE} &= \left(\frac{\text{Net income}}{\text{Shareholders' Equity}} \right) \\
 &= £600,000 / £9,850,000 \\
 &= 0.61 = 6.1\%
 \end{aligned}$$

- 11** A is correct. If the company uses the straight-line method, the depreciation expense will be one-fifth (20 percent) of the depreciable cost in Year 1. If it uses the units-of-production method, the depreciation expense will be 19 percent (2,000/10,500) of the depreciable cost in Year 1. Therefore, if the company uses the straight-line method, its depreciation expense will be higher and its net income will be lower.
- 12** C is correct. The operating income or earnings before interest and taxes will be lowest for the method that results in the highest depreciation expense. The double-declining balance method results in the highest depreciation expense in the first year of use.

Depreciation expense:

$$\text{Straight line} = \text{€}1,500/5 = \text{€}300.$$

$$\text{Double-declining balance} = \text{€}1,500 \times 0.40 = \text{€}600.$$

$$\text{Units of production} = \text{€}1,500 \times 0.15 = \text{€}225.$$

- 13** C is correct. If Martinez wants to minimize tax payments in the first year of the machine's life, he should use an accelerated method, such as the double-declining balance method.
- 14** A is correct. Using the straight-line method, depreciation expense amounts to

$$\text{Depreciation expense} = (1,200,000 - 200,000)/8 \text{ years} = 125,000.$$

- 15** B is correct. Using the units-of-production method, depreciation expense amounts to

$$\text{Depreciation expense} = (1,200,000 - 200,000) \times (135,000/800,000) = 168,750.$$

- 16** A is correct. The straight-line method is the method that evenly distributes the cost of an asset over its useful life because amortization is the same amount every year.
- 17** A is correct. A higher residual value results in a lower total depreciable cost and, therefore, a lower amount of amortization in the first year after acquisition (and every year after that).
- 18** C is correct. Shifting at the end of Year 2 from double-declining balance to straight-line depreciation methodology results in depreciation expense being the same in each of Years 3, 4, and 5. Shifting to the straight-line methodology at the beginning of Year 3 results in a greater depreciation expense in Year 4 than would have been calculated using the double-declining balance method.

Depreciation expense Year 4 (Using double-declining balance method all five years)

$$\begin{aligned} &= 2 \times \text{Annual depreciation \% using straight-line method} \times \text{Carrying amount} \\ &\quad \text{at end of Year 3} \\ &= 40\% \times \$43,200 \end{aligned}$$

Depreciation expense Year 4 with switch to straight-line method in Year 3

$$\begin{aligned} &= \frac{1}{3} \times \text{Remaining depreciable cost at start of Year 3} \\ &= \frac{1}{3} \times \$72,000 \\ &= \$24,000 \end{aligned}$$

- 19 B is correct. Using the straight-line method, accumulated amortization amounts to

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Accumulated amortization} &= [(2,300,000 - 500,000)/3 \text{ years}] \times 2 \text{ years} \\ &= 1,200,000\end{aligned}$$

- 20 B is correct. Using the units-of-production method, depreciation expense amounts to

$$\text{Depreciation expense} = 5,800,000 \times (20,000/175,000) = 662,857$$

- 21 B is correct. As shown in the following calculations, under the double-declining balance method, the annual amortization expense in Year 4 is closest to ¥9.9 million.

Annual amortization expense = 2 × Straight-line amortization rate × Net book value.

$$\text{Amortization expense Year 4} = 33.3\% \times \text{¥}29.6 \text{ million} = \text{¥}9.9 \text{ million.}$$

- 22 A is correct. As shown in the following calculations, at the end of Year 4, the difference between the net book values calculated using straight-line versus double-declining balance is closest to €81,400.

$$\text{Net book value end of Year 4 using straight-line method} = \text{€}600,000 - [4 \times (\text{€}600,000/6)] = \text{€}200,000.$$

$$\text{Net book value end of Year 4 using double-declining balance method} = \text{€}600,000 (1 - 33.33\%)^4 \approx \text{€}118,600.$$

- 23 B is correct. In this case, the value increase brought about by the revaluation should be recorded directly in equity. The reason is that under IFRS, an increase in value brought about by a revaluation can only be recognized as a profit to the extent that it reverses a revaluation decrease of the same asset previously recognized in the income statement.

- 24 B is correct. The impairment loss equals £3,100,000.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Impairment} &= \max(\text{Fair value less costs to sell; Value in use}) - \text{Net carrying amount} \\ &= \max(16,800,000 - 800,000; 14,500,000) - 19,100,000 \\ &= -3,100,000.\end{aligned}$$

- 25 B is correct. Under IFRS, an impairment loss is measured as the excess of the carrying amount over the asset's recoverable amount. The recoverable amount is the higher of the asset's fair value less costs to sell and its value in use. Value in use is a discounted measure of expected future cash flows. Under US GAAP, assessing recoverability is separate from measuring the impairment loss. If the asset's carrying amount exceeds its undiscounted expected future cash flows, the asset's carrying amount is considered unrecoverable and the impairment loss is measured as the excess of the carrying amount over the asset's fair value.

- 26 B is correct. The result on the sale of the vehicle equals

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Gain or loss on the sale} &= \text{Sale proceeds} - \text{Carrying amount} \\ &= \text{Sale proceeds} - (\text{Acquisition cost} - \text{Accumulated depreciation}) \\ &= 85,000 - \{100,000 - [(100,000 - 10,000)/9 \text{ years}] \\ &\quad \times 3 \text{ years}\} \\ &= 15,000.\end{aligned}$$

- 27 A is correct. Gain or loss on the sale = Sale proceeds – Carrying amount. Rearranging this equation, Sale proceeds = Carrying amount + Gain or loss on sale. Thus, Sale price = (12 million – 2 million) + (–3.2 million) = 6.8 million.
- 28 C is correct. The carrying amount of the asset on the balance sheet is reduced by the amount of the impairment loss, and the impairment loss is reported on the income statement.
- 29 A is correct. The gain or loss on the sale of long-lived assets is computed as the sales proceeds minus the carrying amount of the asset at the time of sale. This is true under the cost and revaluation models of reporting long-lived assets. In the absence of impairment losses, under the cost model, the carrying amount will equal historical cost net of accumulated depreciation.
- 30 B is correct. IFRS do not require acquisition dates to be disclosed.
- 31 A is correct. IFRS do not require fair value of intangible assets to be disclosed.
- 32 C is correct. Under US GAAP, companies are required to disclose the estimated amortization expense for the next five fiscal years. Under US GAAP, there is no reversal of impairment losses. Disclosure of the useful lives—finite or indefinite and additional related details—is required under IFRS.
- 33 B is correct. Investment property earns rent. Investment property and property, plant, and equipment are tangible and long-lived.
- 34 C is correct. When a company uses the fair value model to value investment property, changes in the fair value of the property are reported in the income statement—not in other comprehensive income.
- 35 A is correct. Investment property earns rent. Inventory is held for resale, and property, plant, and equipment are used in the production of goods and services.
- 36 C is correct. A company will change from the fair value model to either the cost model or revaluation model when the company transfers investment property to property, plant, and equipment.
- 37 A is correct. Under both the revaluation model for property, plant, and equipment and the fair model for investment property, the asset's fair value must be able to be measured reliably. Under the fair value model, net income is affected by all changes in the asset's fair value. Under the revaluation model, any increase in an asset's value to the extent that it reverses a previous revaluation decrease will be recognized on the income statement and increase net income.
- 38 A is correct. Under IFRS, when using the cost model for its investment properties, a company must disclose useful lives. The method for determining fair value, as well as reconciliation between beginning and ending carrying amounts of investment property, is a required disclosure when the fair value model is used.
- 39 C is correct. A lease can reduce the risks of obsolescence to the lessee because the lessee does not own the asset. Under a finance lease, a leased asset and a lease obligation are reported on the balance sheet, and depreciation expense and interest expense are reported on the income statement.
- 40 C is correct. Expensing rather than capitalising an investment in long-term assets will result in higher expenses and lower net income and net profit margin in the current year. Future years' incomes will not include depreciation expense related to these expenditures. Consequently, year-to-year growth in profitability will be higher. If the expenses had been capitalised, the carrying amount of the assets would have been higher and the 2009 total asset turnover would have been lower.

- 41 C is correct. In 2010, switching to an accelerated depreciation method would increase depreciation expense and decrease income before taxes, taxes payable, and net income. Cash flow from operating activities would increase because of the resulting tax savings.
- 42 B is correct. 2009 net income and net profit margin are lower because of the impairment loss. Consequently, net profit margins in subsequent years are likely to be higher. An impairment loss suggests that insufficient depreciation expense was recognized in prior years, and net income was overstated in prior years. The impairment loss is a non-cash item and will not affect operating cash flows.
- 43 A is correct. The estimated average remaining useful life is 20.75 years.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Estimate of remaining useful life} &= \text{Net plant and equipment} \div \text{Annual} \\ &\quad \text{depreciation expense} \\ \text{Net plant and equipment} &= \text{Gross P \& E} - \text{Accumulated depreciation} \\ &= \text{€6000} - \text{€1850} = \text{€4150} \\ \text{Estimate of remaining useful life} &= \text{Net P \& E} \div \text{Depreciation expense} \\ &= \text{€4150} \div \text{€200} = 20.75 \end{aligned}$$

- 44 A is correct. When leases are classified as finance leases, the lessee initially reports an asset and liability at a carrying amount equal to the lower of the fair value of the leased asset or the present value of the future lease payments. Under an operating lease, the lessee does not report an asset or liability. Therefore, total asset turnover (total revenue \div average total assets) would be lower if the leases were classified as finance leases.
- 45 C is correct. Total liabilities-to-assets would be higher. When leases are classified as finance leases, the lessee initially reports an asset and liability at a carrying amount equal to the lower of the fair value of the leased asset or the present value of the future lease payments. Both the numerator and denominator would increase by an equal amount, but the proportional increase in the numerator is higher and the ratio would be higher. The following exhibit shows what would happen to 2009 total liabilities, assets, and total liabilities-to-assets if €200 million, the fair value of the leased equipment, is added to AMRC's total liabilities and assets. This simple example ignores the impact of accounting for the 2009 lease payment.

	2009 Actual Under Operating Lease	2009 Hypothetical Under Finance Lease
Total liabilities	€2,750	€2,950
Total assets	€5,350	€5,550
Total liabilities-to-assets	51.4%	53.2%

The depreciation and interest expense under a finance lease tends to be higher than the operating lease payment in the early years of the lease. The finance lease would result in lower net income and net profit margin. Long-lived (fixed) assets are higher under a finance lease and fixed asset turnover is lower.

- 46 C is correct. The decision to capitalise the costs of the new computer system results in higher cash flow from operating activities; the expenditure is reported as an outflow of investing activities. The company allocates the capitalised amount over the asset's useful life as depreciation or amortisation expense rather than expensing it in the year of expenditure. Net income and total assets are higher in the current fiscal year.

- 47** B is correct. Alpha's fixed asset turnover will be lower because the capitalised interest will appear on the balance sheet as part of the asset being constructed. Therefore, fixed assets will be higher and the fixed asset turnover ratio (total revenue/average net fixed assets) will be lower than if it had expensed these costs. Capitalised interest appears on the balance sheet as part of the asset being constructed instead of being reported as interest expense in the period incurred. However, the interest coverage ratio should be based on interest payments, not interest expense (earnings before interest and taxes/interest payments), and should be unchanged. To provide a true picture of a company's interest coverage, the entire amount of interest expenditure, both the capitalised portion and the expensed portion, should be used in calculating interest coverage ratios.
- 48** C is correct. The cash flow from operating activities will be lower, not higher, because the full lease payment is treated as an operating cash outflow. With a finance lease, only the portion of the lease payment relating to interest expense potentially reduces operating cash outflows. A company reporting a lease as an operating lease will typically show higher profits in early years, because the lease expense is less than the sum of the interest and depreciation expense. The company reporting the lease as an operating lease will typically report stronger solvency and activity ratios.
- 49** A is correct. Accelerated depreciation will result in an improving, not declining, net profit margin over time, because the amount of depreciation expense declines each year. Under straight-line depreciation, the amount of depreciation expense will remain the same each year. Under the units-of-production method, the amount of depreciation expense reported each year varies with the number of units produced.
- 50** B is correct. The estimated average total useful life of a company's assets is calculated by adding the estimates of the average remaining useful life and the average age of the assets. The average age of the assets is estimated by dividing accumulated depreciation by depreciation expense. The average remaining useful life of the asset base is estimated by dividing net property, plant, and equipment by annual depreciation expense.
- 51** C is correct. The impairment loss is a non-cash charge and will not affect cash flow from operating activities. The debt to total assets and fixed asset turnover ratios will increase, because the impairment loss will reduce the carrying amount of fixed assets and therefore total assets.
- 52** A is correct. In an asset revaluation, the carrying amount of the assets increases. The increase in the asset's carrying amount bypasses the income statement and is reported as other comprehensive income and appears in equity under the heading of revaluation surplus. Therefore, shareholders' equity will increase but net income will not be affected, so return on equity will decline. Return on assets and debt to capital ratios will also decrease.

Income Taxes

by Elbie Louw, PhD, CFA, CIPM, and Michael A. Broihahn, CPA, CIA, CFA

Elbie Louw, PhD, CFA, CIPM (South Africa). Michael A. Broihahn, CPA, CIA, CFA, is at Barry University (USA).

LEARNING OUTCOMES

<i>Mastery</i>	<i>The candidate should be able to:</i>
<input type="checkbox"/>	a. describe the differences between accounting profit and taxable income and define key terms, including deferred tax assets, deferred tax liabilities, valuation allowance, taxes payable, and income tax expense;
<input type="checkbox"/>	b. explain how deferred tax liabilities and assets are created and the factors that determine how a company's deferred tax liabilities and assets should be treated for the purposes of financial analysis;
<input type="checkbox"/>	c. calculate the tax base of a company's assets and liabilities;
<input type="checkbox"/>	d. calculate income tax expense, income taxes payable, deferred tax assets, and deferred tax liabilities, and calculate and interpret the adjustment to the financial statements related to a change in the income tax rate;
<input type="checkbox"/>	e. evaluate the effect of tax rate changes on a company's financial statements and ratios;
<input type="checkbox"/>	f. distinguish between temporary and permanent differences in pre-tax accounting income and taxable income;
<input type="checkbox"/>	g. describe the valuation allowance for deferred tax assets—when it is required and what effect it has on financial statements;
<input type="checkbox"/>	h. explain recognition and measurement of current and deferred tax items;
<input type="checkbox"/>	i. analyze disclosures relating to deferred tax items and the effective tax rate reconciliation and explain how information included in these disclosures affects a company's financial statements and financial ratios;
<input type="checkbox"/>	j. identify the key provisions of and differences between income tax accounting under International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRS) and US generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP).

Note: Changes in accounting standards as well as new rulings and/or pronouncements issued after the publication of the readings on financial reporting and analysis may cause some of the information in these readings to become dated. Candidates are *not* responsible for anything that occurs after the readings were published. In addition, candidates are expected to be familiar with the analytical frameworks contained in the readings, as well as the implications of alternative accounting methods for financial analysis and valuation discussed in the readings. Candidates are also responsible for the content of accounting standards, but not for the actual reference numbers. Finally, candidates should be aware that certain ratios may be defined and calculated differently. When alternative ratio definitions exist and no specific definition is given, candidates should use the ratio definitions emphasized in the readings.

1

INTRODUCTION

For those companies reporting under International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRS), IAS 12 [Income Taxes] covers accounting for a company's income taxes and the reporting of deferred taxes. For those companies reporting under United States generally accepted accounting principles (US GAAP), FASB ASC Topic 740 [Income Taxes] is the primary source for information on accounting for income taxes. Although IFRS and US GAAP follow similar conventions on many income tax issues, there are some key differences that will be discussed in the reading.

Differences between how and when transactions are recognized for financial reporting purposes relative to tax reporting can give rise to differences in tax expense and related tax assets and liabilities. To reconcile these differences, companies that report under either IFRS or US GAAP create a provision on the balance sheet called deferred tax assets or deferred tax liabilities, depending on the nature of the situation.

Deferred tax assets or liabilities usually arise when accounting standards and tax authorities recognize the timing of revenues and expenses at different times. Because timing differences such as these will eventually reverse over time, they are called “temporary differences.” Deferred tax assets represent taxes that have been recognized for tax reporting purposes (or often the carrying forward of losses from previous periods) but have not yet been recognized on the income statement prepared for financial reporting purposes. Deferred tax liabilities represent tax expense that has appeared on the income statement for financial reporting purposes, but has not yet become payable under tax regulations.

This reading provides a primer on the basics of income tax accounting and reporting. The reading is organized as follows. Section 2 describes the differences between taxable income and accounting profit. Section 3 explains the determination of tax base, which relates to the valuation of assets and liabilities for tax purposes. Section 4 discusses several types of timing differences between the recognition of taxable and accounting profit. Section 5 examines unused tax losses and tax credits. Section 6 describes the recognition and measurement of current and deferred tax. Section 7 discusses the disclosure and presentation of income tax information on companies' financial statements and illustrates its practical implications for financial analysis. Section 8 provides an overview of the similarities and differences for income-tax reporting between IFRS and US GAAP. A summary of the key points and practice problems in the CFA Institute multiple-choice format conclude the reading.

2

DIFFERENCES BETWEEN ACCOUNTING PROFIT AND TAXABLE INCOME

A company's **accounting profit** is reported on its income statement in accordance with prevailing accounting standards. Accounting profit (also referred to as income before taxes or pretax income) does not include a provision for income tax expense.¹ A company's **taxable income** is the portion of its income that is subject to income taxes under the tax laws of its jurisdiction. Because of different guidelines for how income is reported on a company's financial statements and how it is measured for income tax purposes, accounting profit and taxable income may differ.

¹ As defined under IAS 12, paragraph 5.

A company's taxable income is the basis for its **income tax payable** (a liability) or recoverable (an asset), which is calculated on the basis of the company's tax rate and appears on its balance sheet. A company's **tax expense**, or tax benefit in the case of a recovery, appears on its income statement and is an aggregate of its income tax payable (or recoverable in the case of a tax benefit) and any changes in deferred tax assets and liabilities.

When a company's taxable income is greater than its accounting profit, then its income taxes payable will be higher than what would have otherwise been the case had the income taxes been determined based on accounting profit. **Deferred tax assets**, which appear on the balance sheet, arise when an excess amount is paid for income taxes (taxable income higher than accounting profit) and the company expects to recover the difference during the course of future operations. Actual income taxes payable will thus exceed the financial accounting income tax expense (which is reported on the income statement and is determined based on accounting profit). Related to deferred tax assets is a **valuation allowance**, which is a reserve created against deferred tax assets. The valuation allowance is based on the likelihood of realizing the deferred tax assets in future accounting periods. **Deferred tax liabilities**, which also appear on the balance sheet, arise when a deficit amount is paid for income taxes and the company expects to eliminate the deficit over the course of future operations. In this case, financial accounting income tax expense exceeds income taxes payable.

Income tax paid in a period is the actual amount paid for income taxes (not a provision, but the actual cash outflow). The income tax paid may be less than the income tax expense because of payments in prior periods or refunds received in the current period. Income tax paid reduces the income tax payable, which is carried on the balance sheet as a liability.

The **tax base** of an asset or liability is the amount at which the asset or liability is valued for tax purposes, whereas the **carrying amount** is the amount at which the asset or liability is valued according to accounting principles.² Differences between the tax base and the carrying amount also result in differences between accounting profit and taxable income. These differences can carry through to future periods. For example, a **tax loss carry forward** occurs when a company experiences a loss in the current period that may be used to reduce future taxable income. The company's tax expense on its income statement must not only reflect the taxes payable based on taxable income, but also the effect of these differences.

2.1 Current Tax Assets and Liabilities

A company's current tax liability is the amount payable in taxes and is based on current taxable income. If the company expects to receive a refund for some portion previously paid in taxes, the amount recoverable is referred to as a current tax asset. The current tax liability or asset may, however, differ from what the liability would have been if it was based on accounting profit rather than taxable income for the period. Differences in accounting profit and taxable income are the result of the application of different rules. Such differences between accounting profit and taxable income can occur in several ways, including:

- Revenues and expenses may be recognized in one period for accounting purposes and a different period for tax purposes;

² The terms "tax base" and "tax basis" are interchangeable. "Tax basis" is more commonly used in the United States. Similarly, "carrying amount" and "book value" refer to the same concept.

- Specific revenues and expenses may be either recognized for accounting purposes and not for tax purposes; or not recognized for accounting purposes but recognized for tax purposes;
- The carrying amount and tax base of assets and/or liabilities may differ;
- The deductibility of gains and losses of assets and liabilities may vary for accounting and income tax purposes;
- Subject to tax rules, tax losses of prior years might be used to reduce taxable income in later years, resulting in differences in accounting and taxable income (tax loss carryforward); and
- Adjustments of reported financial data from prior years might not be recognized equally for accounting and tax purposes or might be recognized in different periods.

2.2 Deferred Tax Assets and Liabilities

Deferred tax assets represent taxes that have been paid (or often the carrying forward of losses from previous periods) but have not yet been recognized on the income statement. Deferred tax liabilities occur when financial accounting income tax expense is greater than regulatory income tax expense. Deferred tax assets and liabilities usually arise when accounting standards and tax authorities recognize the timing of taxes due at different times; for example, when a company uses accelerated depreciation when reporting to the tax authority (to increase expense and lower tax payments in the early years) but uses the straight-line method on the financial statements. Although not similar in treatment on a year-to-year basis (e.g., depreciation of 5 percent on a straight-line basis may be permitted for accounting purposes whereas 10 percent is allowed for tax purposes) over the life of the asset, both approaches allow for the total cost of the asset to be depreciated (or amortized). Because these timing differences will eventually reverse or self-correct over the course of the asset's depreciable life, they are called "temporary differences."

Under IFRS, deferred tax assets and liabilities are always classified as noncurrent. Under US GAAP, however, deferred tax assets and liabilities are classified on the balance sheet as current and noncurrent based on the classification of the underlying asset or liability.

Any deferred tax asset or liability is based on temporary differences that result in an excess or a deficit amount paid for taxes, which the company expects to recover from future operations. Because taxes will be recoverable or payable at a future date, it is only a temporary difference and a deferred tax asset or liability is created. Changes in the deferred tax asset or liability on the balance sheet reflect the difference between the amounts recognized in the previous period and the current period. The changes in deferred tax assets and liabilities are added to income tax payable to determine the company's income tax expense (or credit) as it is reported on the income statement.

At the end of each fiscal year, deferred tax assets and liabilities are recalculated by comparing the tax bases and carrying amounts of the balance sheet items. Identified temporary differences should be assessed on whether the difference will result in future economic benefits. For example, Pinto Construction (a hypothetical company) depreciates equipment on a straight-line basis of 10 percent per year. The tax authorities allow depreciation of 15 percent per year. At the end of the fiscal year, the carrying amount of the equipment for accounting purposes would be greater than the tax base of the equipment thus resulting in a temporary difference. A deferred tax item may only be created if it is not doubtful that the company will realize economic benefits in the future. In our example, the equipment is used in the core business of

Pinto Construction. If the company is a going concern and stable, there should be no doubt that future economic benefits will result from the equipment and it would be appropriate to create the deferred tax item.

Should it be doubtful that future economic benefits will be realized from a temporary difference (such as Pinto Construction being under liquidation), the temporary difference will not lead to the creation of a deferred tax asset or liability. If a deferred tax asset or liability resulted in the past, but the criteria of economic benefits is not met on the current balance sheet date, then, under IFRS, an existing deferred tax asset or liability related to the item will be reversed. Under US GAAP, a valuation allowance is established. In assessing future economic benefits, much is left to the discretion of the auditor in assessing the temporary differences and the issue of future economic benefits.

EXAMPLE 1

The following information pertains to a fictitious company, Reston Partners:

Reston Partners Consolidated Income Statement			
Period Ending 31 March (£ Millions)	2017	2016	2015
Revenue	£40,000	£30,000	£25,000
Other net gains	2,000	0	0
Changes in inventories of finished goods and work in progress	400	180	200
Raw materials and consumables used	(5,700)	(4,000)	(8,000)
Depreciation expense	(2,000)	(2,000)	(2,000)
Other expenses	(6,000)	(5,900)	(4,500)
Interest expense	(2,000)	(3,000)	(6,000)
Profit before tax	£26,700	£15,280	£4,700

The financial performance and accounting profit of Reston Partners on this income statement is based on accounting principles appropriate for the jurisdiction in which Reston Partners operates. The principles used to calculate accounting profit (profit before tax in the example above) may differ from the principles applied for tax purposes (the calculation of taxable income). For illustrative purposes, however, assume that all income and expenses on the income statement are treated identically for tax and accounting purposes *except* depreciation.

The depreciation is related to equipment owned by Reston Partners. For simplicity, assume that the equipment was purchased at the beginning of the 2015 fiscal year. Depreciation should thus be calculated and expensed for the full year. Assume that accounting standards permit equipment to be depreciated on a straight-line basis over a 10-year period, whereas the tax standards in the jurisdiction specify that equipment should be depreciated on a straight-line basis over a 7-year period. For simplicity, assume a salvage value of £0 at the end of the equipment's useful life. Both methods will result in the full depreciation of the asset over the respective tax or accounting life.

The equipment was originally purchased for £20,000. In accordance with accounting standards, over the next 10 years the company will recognize annual depreciation of £2,000 ($£20,000 \div 10$) as an expense on its income statement and for the determination of accounting profit. For tax purposes, however, the company will recognize £2,857 ($£20,000 \div 7$) in depreciation each year. Each

fiscal year the depreciation expense related to the use of the equipment will, therefore, differ for tax and accounting purposes (tax base vs. carrying amount), resulting in a difference between accounting profit and taxable income.

The previous income statement reflects accounting profit (depreciation at £2,000 per year). The following table shows the taxable income for each fiscal year.

Taxable Income (£ Millions)	2017	2016	2015
Revenue	£40,000	£30,000	£25,000
Other net gains	2,000	0	0
Changes in inventories of finished goods and work in progress	400	180	200
Raw materials and consumables used	(5,700)	(4,000)	(8,000)
Depreciation expense	(2,857)	(2,857)	(2,857)
Other expenses	(6,000)	(5,900)	(4,500)
Interest expense	(2,000)	(3,000)	(6,000)
Taxable income	£25,843	£14,423	£3,843

The carrying amount and tax base for the equipment is as follows:

(£ Millions)	2017	2016	2015
Equipment value for accounting purposes (<i>carrying amount</i>) (depreciation of £2,000/year)	£14,000	£16,000	£18,000
Equipment value for tax purposes (<i>tax base</i>) (depreciation of £2,857/year)	£11,429	£14,286	£17,143
Difference	£2,571	£1,714	£857

At each balance sheet date, the tax base and carrying amount of all assets and liabilities must be determined. The income tax payable by Reston Partners will be based on the taxable income of each fiscal year. If a tax rate of 30 percent is assumed, then the income taxes payable for 2015, 2016, and 2017 are £1,153 ($30\% \times 3,843$), £4,327 ($30\% \times 14,423$), and £7,753 ($30\% \times 25,843$).

Remember, though, that if the tax obligation is calculated based on accounting profits, it will differ because of the differences between the tax base and the carrying amount of equipment. The difference in each fiscal year is reflected in the table above. In each fiscal year the carrying amount of the equipment exceeds its tax base. For tax purposes, therefore, the asset tax base is less than its carrying value under financial accounting principles. The difference results in a deferred tax liability.

(£ Millions)	2017	2016	2015
Deferred tax liability	£771	£514	£257
(Difference between tax base and carrying amount) \times tax rate			
2004: $\pounds(18,000 - 17,143) \times 30\% = 257$			
2005: $\pounds(16,000 - 14,286) \times 30\% = 514$			
2006: $\pounds(14,000 - 11,429) \times 30\% = 771$			

The comparison of the tax base and carrying amount of equipment shows what the deferred tax liability should be on a particular balance sheet date. In each fiscal year, only the change in the deferred tax liability should be included in the calculation of the income tax expense reported on the income statement prepared for accounting purposes.

On the income statement, the company's income tax expense will be the sum of change in the deferred tax liability and the income tax payable.

(£ Millions)	2017	2016	2015
Income tax payable (based on tax accounting)	£7,753	£4,327	£1,153
Change in deferred tax liability	257	257	257
Income tax (based on financial accounting)	£8,010	£4,584	£1,410

Note that because the different treatment of depreciation is a temporary difference, the income tax on the income statement is 30 percent of the accounting profit, although only a part is income tax payable and the rest is a deferred tax liability.

The consolidated income statement of Reston Partners including income tax is presented as follows:

Reston Partners Consolidated Income Statement			
Period Ending 31 March (£ Millions)	2017	2016	2015
Revenue	£40,000	£30,000	£25,000
Other net gains	2,000	0	0
Changes in inventories of finished goods and work in progress	400	180	200
Raw materials and consumables used	(5,700)	(4,000)	(8,000)
Depreciation expense	(2,000)	(2,000)	(2,000)
Other expenses	(6,000)	(5,900)	(4,500)
Interest expense	(2,000)	(3,000)	(6,000)
Profit before tax	£26,700	£15,280	£4,700
Income tax	(8,010)	(4,584)	(1,410)
Profit after tax	£18,690	£10,696	£3,290

Any amount paid to the tax authorities will reduce the liability for income tax payable and be reflected on the statement of cash flows of the company.

DETERMINING THE TAX BASE OF ASSETS AND LIABILITIES

3

As mentioned in Section 2, temporary differences arise from a difference in the tax base and carrying amount of assets and liabilities. The tax base of an asset or liability is the amount attributed to the asset or liability for tax purposes, whereas the carrying amount is based on accounting principles. Such a difference is considered temporary if it is expected that the taxes will be recovered or payable at a future date.

3.1 Determining the Tax Base of an Asset

The tax base of an asset is the amount that will be deductible for tax purposes in future periods as the economic benefits become realized and the company recovers the carrying amount of the asset.

For example, our previously mentioned Reston Partners (from Example 1) depreciates equipment on a straight-line basis at a rate of 10 percent per year. The tax authorities allow depreciation of approximately 15 percent per year. At the end of the fiscal year, the carrying amount of equipment for accounting purposes is greater than the asset tax base thus resulting in a temporary difference.

EXAMPLE 2

Determining the Tax Base of an Asset

The following information pertains to Entiguan Sports, a hypothetical developer of products used to treat sports-related injuries. (The treatment of items for accounting and tax purposes is based on fictitious accounting and tax standards and is not specific to a particular jurisdiction.) Calculate the tax base and carrying amount for each item.

- 1 *Dividends receivable*: On its balance sheet, Entiguan Sports reports dividends of €1 million receivable from a subsidiary. Assume that dividends are not taxable.
- 2 *Development costs*: Entiguan Sports capitalized development costs of €3 million during the year. Entiguan amortized €500,000 of this amount during the year. For tax purposes amortization of 25 percent per year is allowed.
- 3 *Research costs*: Entiguan incurred €500,000 in research costs, which were all expensed in the current fiscal year for financial reporting purposes. Assume that applicable tax legislation requires research costs to be expensed over a four-year period rather than all in one year.
- 4 *Accounts receivable*: Included on the income statement of Entiguan Sports is a provision for doubtful debt of €125,000. The accounts receivable amount reflected on the balance sheet, after taking the provision into account, amounts to €1,500,000. The tax authorities allow a deduction of 25 percent of the gross amount for doubtful debt.

Solutions:

	Carrying Amount (€)	Tax Base (€)	Temporary Difference (€)
1. Dividends receivable	1,000,000	1,000,000	0
2. Development costs	2,500,000	2,250,000	250,000
3. Research costs	0	375,000	(375,000)
4. Accounts receivable	1,500,000	1,218,750	281,250

Comments:

- 1 *Dividends receivable*: Although the dividends received are economic benefits from the subsidiary, we are assuming that dividends are not taxable. Therefore, the carrying amount equals the tax base for dividends receivable.
- 2 *Development costs*: First, we assume that development costs will generate economic benefits for Entiguan Sports. Therefore, it may be included as an asset on the balance sheet for the purposes of this example. Second, the amortization allowed by the tax authorities exceeds the amortization accounted for based on accounting rules. Therefore, the carrying amount

of the asset exceeds its tax base. The carrying amount is $(€3,000,000 - €500,000) = €2,500,000$ whereas the tax base is $[€3,000,000 - (25\% \times €3,000,000)] = €2,250,000$.

- 3 *Research costs*: We assume that research costs will result in future economic benefits for the company. If this were not the case, creation of a deferred tax asset or liability would not be allowed. The tax base of research costs exceeds their carrying amount. The carrying amount is €0 because the full amount has been expensed for financial reporting purposes in the year in which it was incurred. Therefore, there would not have been a balance sheet item “Research costs” for tax purposes, and only a proportion may be deducted in the current fiscal year. The tax base of the asset is $(€500,000 - €500,000/4) = €375,000$.
- 4 *Accounts receivable*: The economic benefits that should have been received from accounts receivable have already been included in revenues included in the calculation of the taxable income when the sales occurred. Because the receipt of a portion of the accounts receivable is doubtful, the provision is allowed. The provision, based on tax legislation, results in a greater amount allowed in the current fiscal year than would be the case under accounting principles. This results in the tax base of accounts receivable being lower than its carrying amount. Note that the example specifically states that the balance sheet amount for accounts receivable after the provision for accounting purposes amounts to €1,500,000. Therefore, accounts receivable before any provision was $€1,500,000 + €125,000 = €1,625,000$. The tax base is calculated as $(€1,500,000 + €125,000) - [25\% \times (€1,500,000 + €125,000)] = €1,218,750$.

3.2 Determining the Tax Base of a Liability

The tax base of a liability is the carrying amount of the liability less any amounts that will be deductible for tax purposes in the future. With respect to payments from customers received in advance of providing the goods and services, the tax base of such a liability is the carrying amount less any amount of the revenue that will not be taxable in future. Keep in mind the following fundamental principle: In general, a company will recognize a deferred tax asset or liability when recovery/settlement of the carrying amount will affect future tax payments by either increasing or reducing the taxable profit. Remember, an analyst is not only evaluating the difference between the carrying amount and the tax base, but the relevance of that difference on future profits and losses and thus by implication future taxes.

IFRS offers specific guidelines with regard to revenue received in advance: IAS 12 states that the tax base is the carrying amount less any amount of the revenue that will not be taxed at a future date. Under US GAAP, an analysis of the tax base would result in a similar outcome. The tax legislation within the jurisdiction will determine the amount recognized on the income statement and whether the liability (revenue received in advance) will have a tax base greater than zero. This will depend on how tax legislation recognizes revenue received in advance.

EXAMPLE 3**Determining the Tax Base of a Liability**

The following information pertains to Entiguan Sports for the 2017 year-end. The treatment of items for accounting and tax purposes is based on fictitious accounting and tax standards and is not specific to a particular jurisdiction. Calculate the tax base and carrying amount for each item.

- 1 *Donations*: Entiguan Sports made donations of €100,000 in the current fiscal year. The donations were expensed for financial reporting purposes, but are not tax deductible based on applicable tax legislation.
- 2 *Interest received in advance*: Entiguan Sports received in advance interest of €300,000. The interest is taxed because tax authorities recognize the interest to accrue to the company (part of taxable income) on the date of receipt.
- 3 *Rent received in advance*: Entiguan recognized €10 million for rent received in advance from a lessee for an unused warehouse building. Rent received in advance is deferred for accounting purposes but taxed on a cash basis.
- 4 *Loan*: Entiguan Sports secured a long-term loan for €550,000 in the current fiscal year. Interest is charged at 13.5 percent per annum and is payable at the end of each fiscal year.

Solutions:

	Carrying Amount (€)	Tax Base (€)	Temporary Difference (€)
1. Donations	0	0	0
2. Interest received in advance	300,000	0	(300,000)
3. Rent received in advance	10,000,000	0	(10,000,000)
4. Loan (capital)	550,000	550,000	0
Interest paid	0	0	0

Comments:

- 1 *Donations*: The amount of €100,000 was immediately expensed on Entiguan's income statement; therefore, the carrying amount is €0. Tax legislation does not allow donations to be deducted for tax purposes, so the tax base of the donations equals the carrying amount. Note that while the carrying amount and tax base are the same, the difference in the treatment of donations for accounting and tax purposes (expensed for accounting purposes, but not deductible for tax purposes) represents a permanent difference (a difference that will not be reversed in future). Permanent and temporary differences are elaborated on in Section 4 and it will refer to this particular case with an expanded explanation.
- 2 *Interest received in advance*: Based on the information provided, for tax purposes, interest is deemed to accrue to the company on the date of receipt. For tax purposes, it is thus irrelevant whether it is for the current or a future accounting period; it must be included in taxable income in the financial year received. Interest received in advance is, for accounting purposes though, included in the financial period in which it is deemed to have been earned. For this reason, the interest income received in advance

is a balance sheet liability. It was not included on the income statement because the income relates to a future financial year. Because the full €300,000 is included in taxable income in the current fiscal year, the tax base is $€300,000 - 300,000 = €0$. Note that although interest received in advance and rent received in advance are both taxed, the timing depends on how the particular item is treated in tax legislation.

- 3 *Rent received in advance*: The result is similar to interest received in advance. The carrying amount of rent received in advance would be €10,000,000 while the tax base is €0.
- 4 *Loan*: Repayment of the loan has no tax implications. The repayment of the capital amount does not constitute an income or expense. The interest paid is included as an expense in the calculation of taxable income as well as accounting income. Therefore, the tax base and carrying amount is €0. For clarity, the interest paid that would be included on the income statement for the year amounts to $13.5\% \times €550,000 = €74,250$ if the loan was acquired at the beginning of the current fiscal year.

3.3 Changes in Income Tax Rates

The measurement of deferred tax assets and liabilities is based on current tax law. But if there are subsequent changes in tax laws or new income tax rates, existing deferred tax assets and liabilities must be adjusted for the effects of these changes. The resulting effects of the changes are also included in determining accounting profit in the period of change.

When income tax rates change, the deferred tax assets and liabilities are adjusted to the new tax rate. If income tax rates increase, deferred taxes (that is, the deferred tax assets and liabilities) will also increase. Likewise, if income tax rates decrease, deferred taxes will decrease. A decrease in tax rates decreases deferred tax liabilities, which reduces future tax payments to the taxing authorities. A decrease in tax rates will also decrease deferred tax assets, which reduces their value toward the offset of future tax payments to the taxing authorities.

To illustrate the effect of a change in tax rate, consider Example 1 again. In that illustration, the timing difference that led to the recognition of a deferred tax liability for Reston Partners was attributable to differences in the method of depreciation and the related effects on the accounting carrying value and the asset tax base. The relevant information is restated below.

The carrying amount and tax base for the equipment is:

(£ Millions)	2017	2016	2015
Equipment value for accounting purposes (<i>carrying amount</i>) (depreciation of £2,000/year)	£14,000	£16,000	£18,000
Equipment value for tax purposes (<i>tax base</i>) (depreciation of £2,857/year)	£11,429	£14,286	£17,143
Difference	£2,571	£1,714	£857

At a 30 percent income tax rate, the deferred tax liability was then determined as follows:

(£ Millions)	2017	2016	2015
Deferred tax liability	£771	£514	£257

(Difference between tax base and carrying amount)

2015: $£(18,000 - 17,143) \times 30\% = £257$

(continued)

(£ Millions)	2017	2016	2015
2016: $£(16,000 - 14,286) \times 30\% = £514$			
2017: $£(14,000 - 11,429) \times 30\% = £771$			

For this illustration, assume that the taxing authority has changed the income tax rate to 25 percent for 2017. Although the difference between the carrying amount and the tax base of the depreciable asset are the same, the deferred tax liability for 2017 will be £643 (instead of £771 or a reduction of £128 in the liability). 2017: $£(14,000 - 11,429) \times 25\% = £643$.

Reston Partners' provision for income tax expense is also affected by the change in tax rates. Taxable income for 2017 will now be taxed at a rate of 25 percent. The benefit of the 2017 accelerated depreciation tax shield is now only £214 ($£857 \times 25\%$) instead of the previous £257 (a reduction of £43). In addition, the reduction in the beginning carrying value of the deferred tax liability for 2017 (the year of change) further reduces the income tax expense for 2017. The reduction in income tax expense attributable to the change in tax rate is £85. 2017: $(30\% - 25\%) \times £1,714 = £85$. Note that these two components together account for the reduction in the deferred tax liability ($£43 + £85 = £128$).

As may be seen from this discussion, changes in the income tax rate have an effect on a company's deferred tax asset and liability carrying values as well as an effect on the measurement of income tax expense in the year of change. The analyst must thus note that proposed changes in tax law can have a quantifiable effect on these accounts (and any related financial ratios that are derived from them) if the proposed changes are subsequently enacted into law.

4

TEMPORARY AND PERMANENT DIFFERENCES BETWEEN TAXABLE AND ACCOUNTING PROFIT

Temporary differences arise from a difference between the tax base and the carrying amount of assets and liabilities. The creation of a deferred tax asset or liability from a temporary difference is only possible if the difference reverses itself at some future date and to such an extent that the balance sheet item is expected to create future economic benefits for the company. IFRS and US GAAP both prescribe the balance sheet liability method for recognition of deferred tax. This balance sheet method focuses on the recognition of a deferred tax asset or liability should there be a temporary difference between the carrying amount and tax base of balance sheet items.³

Permanent differences are differences between tax and financial reporting of revenue (expenses) that *will not* be reversed at some future date. Because they will not be reversed at a future date, these differences do not give rise to deferred tax. These items typically include

- Income or expense items not allowed by tax legislation, and
- Tax credits for some expenditures that directly reduce taxes.

³ Previously, IAS 12 required recognition of deferred tax based on the deferred method (also known as the income statement method), which focused on timing differences. Timing differences are differences in the recognition of income and expenses for accounting and tax purposes that originate in one period and will reverse in a future period. Given the definition of timing differences, all timing differences are temporary differences, such as the different treatment of depreciation for tax and accounting purposes (although the timing is different with regard to the allowed depreciation for tax and accounting purposes, the asset will eventually be fully depreciated).

Because no deferred tax item is created for permanent differences, all permanent differences result in a difference between the company's effective tax rate and statutory tax rate. The effective tax rate is also influenced by different statutory taxes should an entity conduct business in more than one tax jurisdiction. The formula for the reported effective tax rate is thus equal to:

$$\text{Reported effective tax rate} = \frac{\text{Income tax expense}}{\text{Pretax income (accounting profit)}}$$

The net change in deferred tax during a reporting period is the difference between the balance of the deferred tax asset or liability for the current period and the balance of the previous period.

4.1 Taxable Temporary Differences

Temporary differences are further divided into two categories, namely taxable temporary differences and deductible temporary differences. **Taxable temporary differences** are temporary differences that result in a taxable amount in a future period when determining the taxable profit as the balance sheet item is recovered or settled. Taxable temporary differences result in a deferred tax liability when the carrying amount of an asset exceeds its tax base and, in the case of a liability, when the tax base of the liability exceeds its carrying amount.

Under US GAAP, a deferred tax asset or liability is not recognized for unamortizable goodwill. Under IFRS, a deferred tax account is not recognized for goodwill arising in a business combination. Since goodwill is a residual, the recognition of a deferred tax liability would increase the carrying amount of goodwill. Discounting deferred tax assets or liabilities is generally not allowed for temporary differences related to business combinations as it is for other temporary differences.

IFRS provides an exemption (that is, deferred tax is not provided on the temporary difference) for the initial recognition of an asset or liability in a transaction that: a) is not a business combination (e.g., joint ventures, branches and unconsolidated investments); and b) affects neither accounting profit nor taxable profit at the time of the transaction. US GAAP does not provide an exemption for these circumstances.

As a simple example of a temporary difference with no recognition of deferred tax liability, assume that a fictitious company, Corporate International, a holding company of various leisure related businesses and holiday resorts, buys an interest in a hotel in the current financial year. The goodwill related to the transaction will be recognized on the financial statements, but the related tax liability will not, as it relates to the initial recognition of goodwill.

4.2 Deductible Temporary Differences

Deductible temporary differences are temporary differences that result in a reduction or deduction of taxable income in a future period when the balance sheet item is recovered or settled. Deductible temporary differences result in a deferred tax asset when the tax base of an asset exceeds its carrying amount and, in the case of a liability, when the carrying amount of the liability exceeds its tax base. The recognition of a deferred tax asset is only allowed to the extent there is a reasonable expectation of future profits against which the asset or liability (that gave rise to the deferred tax asset) can be recovered or settled.

To determine the probability of sufficient future profits for utilization, one must consider the following: 1) Sufficient taxable temporary differences must exist that are related to the same tax authority and the same taxable entity; and 2) The taxable temporary differences that are expected to reverse in the same periods as expected for the reversal of the deductible temporary differences.

As with deferred tax liabilities, IFRS states that deferred tax assets should not be recognized in cases that would arise from the initial recognition of an asset or liability in transactions that are not a business combination and when, at the time of the transaction, there is no impact on either accounting or taxable profit. Subsequent to initial recognition under IFRS and US GAAP, any deferred tax assets that arise from investments in subsidiaries, branches, associates, and interests in joint ventures are recognized as a deferred tax asset.

IFRS and US GAAP allow the creation of a deferred tax asset in the case of tax losses and tax credits. These two unique situations will be further elaborated on in Section 6. IAS 12 *does not* allow the creation of a deferred tax asset arising from negative goodwill. Negative goodwill arises when the amount that an entity pays for an interest in a business is less than the net fair market value of the portion of assets and liabilities of the acquired company, based on the interest of the entity.

4.3 Examples of Taxable and Deductible Temporary Differences

Exhibit 1 summarizes how differences between the tax bases and carrying amounts of assets and liabilities give rise to deferred tax assets or deferred tax liabilities.

Exhibit 1 Treatment of Temporary Differences

Balance Sheet Item	Carrying Amount vs. Tax Base	Results in Deferred Tax Asset/Liability
Asset	Carrying amount > tax base	Deferred tax liability
Asset	Carrying amount < tax base	Deferred tax asset
Liability	Carrying amount > tax base	Deferred tax asset
Liability	Carrying amount < tax base	Deferred tax liability

EXAMPLE 4

Taxable and Deductible Temporary Differences

Examples 2 and 3 illustrated how to calculate the tax base of assets and liabilities, respectively. Based on the information provided in Examples 2 and 3, indicate whether the difference in the tax base and carrying amount of the assets and liabilities are temporary or permanent differences and whether a deferred tax asset or liability will be recognized based on the difference identified.

Solution to Example 2:

	Carrying Amount (€)	Tax Base (€)	Temporary Difference (€)	Will Result in Deferred Tax Asset/Liability
1. Dividends receivable	1,000,000	1,000,000	0	N/A
2. Development costs	2,500,000	2,250,000	250,000	Deferred tax liability
3. Research costs	0	375,000	(375,000)	Deferred tax asset
4. Accounts receivable	1,500,000	1,218,750	281,250	Deferred tax liability

Example 2 included comments on the calculation of the carrying amount and tax base of the assets.

- 1** *Dividends receivable:* As a result of non-taxability, the carrying amount equals the tax base of dividends receivable. This constitutes a permanent difference and will not result in the recognition of any deferred tax asset or liability. A temporary difference constitutes a difference that will, at some future date, be reversed. Although the timing of recognition is different for tax and accounting purposes, in the end the full carrying amount will be expensed/recognized as income. A permanent difference will never be reversed. Based on tax legislation, dividends from a subsidiary are not recognized as income. Therefore, no amount will be reflected as dividend income when calculating the taxable income, and the tax base of dividends receivable must be the total amount received, namely €1,000,000. The taxable income and accounting profit will permanently differ with the amount of dividends receivable, even on future financial statements as an effect on the retained earnings reflected on the balance sheet.
- 2** *Development costs:* The difference between the carrying amount and tax base is a temporary difference that, in the future, will reverse. In this fiscal year, it will result in a deferred tax liability.
- 3** *Research costs:* The difference between the carrying amount and tax base is a temporary difference that results in a deferred tax asset. Remember the explanation in Section 2 for deferred tax assets—a deferred tax asset arises because of an excess amount paid for taxes (when taxable income is greater than accounting profit), which is expected to be recovered from future operations. Based on accounting principles, the full amount was deducted resulting in a lower accounting profit, while the taxable income by implication, should be greater because of the lower amount expensed.
- 4** *Accounts receivable:* The difference between the carrying amount and tax base of the asset is a temporary difference that will result in a deferred tax liability.

Solution to Example 3:

	Carrying Amount (€)	Tax Base (€)	Temporary Difference (€)	Will Result in Deferred Tax Asset/Liability
1. Donations	0	0	0	N/A
2. Interest received in advance	300,000	0	(300,000)	Deferred tax asset
3. Rent received in advance	10,000,000	0	(10,000,000)	Deferred tax asset
4. Loan (capital)	550,000	550,000	0	N/A
Interest paid	0	0	0	N/A

Example 3 included extensive comments on the calculation of the carrying amount and tax base of the liabilities.

- 1 *Donations*: It was assumed that tax legislation does not allow donations to be deducted for tax purposes. No temporary difference results from donations, and thus a deferred tax asset or liability will not be recognized. This constitutes a permanent difference.
- 2 *Interest received in advance*: Interest received in advance results in a temporary difference that gives rise to a deferred tax asset. A deferred tax asset arises because of an excess amount paid for taxes (when taxable income is greater than accounting profit), which is expected to be recovered from future operations.
- 3 *Rent received in advance*: The difference between the carrying amount and tax base is a temporary difference that leads to the recognition of a deferred tax asset.
- 4 *Loan*: There are no temporary differences as a result of the loan or interest paid, and thus no deferred tax item is recognized.

4.4 Temporary Differences at Initial Recognition of Assets and Liabilities

In some situations the carrying amount and tax base of a balance sheet item may vary at initial recognition. For example, a company may deduct a government grant from the initial carrying amount of an asset or liability that appears on the balance sheet. For tax purposes, such grants may not be deducted when determining the tax base of the balance sheet item. In such circumstances, the carrying amount of the asset or liability will be lower than its tax base. Differences in the tax base of an asset or liability as a result of the circumstances described above may not be recognized as deferred tax assets or liabilities.

For example, a government may offer grants to Small, Medium, and Micro Enterprises (SMME) in an attempt to assist these entrepreneurs in their endeavors that contribute to the country's GDP and job creation. Assume that a particular grant is offered for infrastructure needs (office furniture, property, plant, and equipment, etc.). In these circumstances, although the carrying amount will be lower than the tax base of the asset, the related deferred tax may not be recognized. As mentioned earlier, deferred tax assets and liabilities should not be recognized in cases that would arise from the initial recognition of an asset or liability in transactions that are not a business combination and when, at the time of the transaction, there is no impact on either accounting or taxable profit.

A deferred tax liability will also not be recognized at the initial recognition of goodwill. Although goodwill may be treated differently across tax jurisdictions, which may lead to differences in the carrying amount and tax base of goodwill, IAS 12 does not allow the recognition of such a deferred tax liability. Any impairment that an entity should, for accounting purposes, impose on goodwill will again result in a temporary difference between its carrying amount and tax base. Any impairment that an entity should, for accounting purposes, impose on goodwill and if part of the goodwill is related to the initial recognition, that part of the difference in tax base and carrying amount should not result in any deferred taxation because the initial deferred tax liability was not recognized. Any future differences between the carrying amount and tax base as a result of amortization and the deductibility of a portion of goodwill constitute a temporary difference for which provision should be made.

4.5 Business Combinations and Deferred Taxes

The fair value of assets and liabilities acquired in a business combination is determined on the acquisition date and may differ from the previous carrying amount. It is highly probable that the values of acquired intangible assets, including goodwill, would differ from their carrying amounts. This temporary difference will affect deferred taxes as well as the amount of goodwill recognized as a result of the acquisition.

4.6 Investments in Subsidiaries, Branches, Associates and Interests in Joint Ventures

Investments in subsidiaries, branches, associates and interests in joint ventures may lead to temporary differences on the consolidated versus the parent's financial statements. The related deferred tax liabilities as a result of temporary differences will be recognized unless both of the following criterion are satisfied:

- The parent is in a position to control the timing of the future reversal of the temporary difference, and
- It is probable that the temporary difference will not reverse in the future.

With respect to deferred tax assets related to subsidiaries, branches, and associates and interests, deferred tax assets will only be recognized if the following criteria are satisfied:

- The temporary difference will reverse in the future, and
- Sufficient taxable profits exist against which the temporary difference can be used.

UNUSED TAX LOSSES AND TAX CREDITS

5

IAS 12 allows the recognition of unused tax losses and tax credits only to the extent that it is probable that in the future there will be taxable income against which the unused tax losses and credits can be applied. Under US GAAP, a deferred tax asset is recognized in full but is then reduced by a valuation allowance if it is more likely than not that some or all of the deferred tax asset will not be realized. The same requirements for creation of a deferred tax asset as a result of deductible temporary differences also apply to unused tax losses and tax credits. The existence of tax losses may indicate that the entity cannot reasonably be expected to generate sufficient future taxable income. All other things held constant, the greater the history of tax losses, the greater the concern regarding the company's ability to generate future taxable profits.

Should there be concerns about the company's future profitability, then the deferred tax asset may not be recognized until it is realized. When assessing the probability that sufficient taxable profit will be generated in the future, the following criteria can serve as a guide:

- If there is uncertainty as to the probability of future taxable profits, a deferred tax asset as a result of unused tax losses or tax credits is only recognized to the extent of the available taxable temporary differences;
- Assess the probability that the entity will in fact generate future taxable profits before the unused tax losses and/or credits expire pursuant to tax rules regarding the carry forward of the unused tax losses;

- Verify that the above is with the same tax authority and based on the same taxable entity;
- Determine whether the past tax losses were a result of specific circumstances that are unlikely to be repeated; and
- Discover if tax planning opportunities are available to the entity that will result in future profits. These may include changes in tax legislation that is phased in over more than one financial period to the benefit of the entity.

It is imperative that the timing of taxable and deductible temporary differences also be considered before creating a deferred tax asset based on unused tax credits.

6

RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT OF CURRENT AND DEFERRED TAX

Current taxes payable or recoverable from tax authorities are based on the applicable tax rates at the balance sheet date. Deferred taxes should be measured at the tax rate that is expected to apply when the asset is realized or the liability settled. With respect to the income tax for a current or prior period not yet paid, it is recognized as a tax liability until paid. Any amount paid in excess of any tax obligation is recognized as an asset. The income tax paid in excess or owed to tax authorities is separate from deferred taxes on the company's balance sheet.

When measuring deferred taxes in a jurisdiction, there are different forms of taxation such as income tax, capital gains tax (any capital gains made), or secondary tax on companies (tax payable on the dividends that a company declares) and possibly different tax bases for a balance sheet item (as in the case of government grants influencing the tax base of an asset such as property). In assessing which tax laws should apply, it is dependent on how the related asset or liability will be settled. It would be prudent to use the tax rate and tax base that is consistent with how it is expected the tax base will be recovered or settled.

Although deferred tax assets and liabilities are related to temporary differences expected to be recovered or settled at some future date, neither are discounted to present value in determining the amounts to be booked. Both must be adjusted for changes in tax rates.

Deferred taxes as well as income taxes should always be recognized on the income statement of an entity unless it pertains to:

- Taxes or deferred taxes charged directly to equity, or
- A possible provision for deferred taxes relates to a business combination.

The carrying amount of the deferred tax assets and liabilities should also be assessed. The carrying amounts may change even though there may have been no change in temporary differences during the period evaluated. This can result from:

- Changes in tax rates;
- Reassessments of the recoverability of deferred tax assets; or
- Changes in the expectations for how an asset will be recovered and what influences the deferred tax asset or liability.

All unrecognized deferred tax assets and liabilities must be reassessed at the balance sheet date and measured against the criteria of probable future economic benefits. If such a deferred asset is likely to be recovered, it may be appropriate to recognize the related deferred tax asset.

Different jurisdictions have different requirements for determining tax obligations that can range from different forms of taxation to different tax rates based on taxable income. When comparing financial statements of entities that conduct business in different jurisdictions subject to different tax legislation, the analyst should be cautious in reaching conclusions because of the potentially complex tax rules that may apply.

6.1 Recognition of a Valuation Allowance

Deferred tax assets must be assessed at each balance sheet date. If there is any doubt whether the deferral will be recovered, then the carrying amount should be reduced to the expected recoverable amount. Should circumstances subsequently change and suggest the future will lead to recovery of the deferral, the reduction may be reversed.

Under US GAAP, deferred tax assets are reduced by creating a valuation allowance. Establishing a valuation allowance reduces the deferred tax asset and income in the period in which the allowance is established. Should circumstances change to such an extent that a deferred tax asset valuation allowance may be reduced, the reversal will increase the deferred tax asset and operating income. Because of the subjective judgment involved, an analyst should carefully scrutinize any such changes.

6.2 Recognition of Current and Deferred Tax Charged Directly to Equity

In general, IFRS and US GAAP require that the recognition of deferred tax liabilities and current income tax should be treated similarly to the asset or liability that gave rise to the deferred tax liability or income tax based on accounting treatment. Should an item that gives rise to a deferred tax liability be taken directly to equity, the same should hold true for the resulting deferred tax.

The following are examples of such items:

- Revaluation of property, plant, and equipment (revaluations are not permissible under US GAAP);
- Long-term investments at fair value;
- Changes in accounting policies;
- Errors corrected against the opening balance of retained earnings;
- Initial recognition of an equity component related to complex financial instruments; and
- Exchange rate differences arising from the currency translation procedures for foreign operations.

Whenever it is determined that a deferred tax liability will not be reversed, an adjustment should be made to the liability. The deferred tax liability will be reduced and the amount by which it is reduced should be taken directly to equity. Any deferred taxes related to a business combination must also be recognized in equity.

Depending on the items that gave rise to the deferred tax liabilities, an analyst should exercise judgment regarding whether the taxes should be included with deferred tax liabilities or whether it should be taken directly to equity. It may be more appropriate simply to ignore deferred taxes.

EXAMPLE 5**Taxes Charged Directly to Equity**

The following information pertains to Anderson Company (a hypothetical company). A building owned by Anderson Company was originally purchased for €1,000,000 on 1 January 2015. For accounting purposes, buildings are depreciated at 5 percent a year on a straight-line basis, and depreciation for tax purposes is 10 percent a year on a straight-line basis. On the first day of 2017, the building is revalued at €1,200,000. It is estimated that the remaining useful life of the building from the date of revaluation is 20 years. *Important:* For tax purposes the revaluation of the building is not recognized.

Based on the information provided, the following illustrates the difference in treatment of the building for accounting and tax purposes.

	Carrying Amount of Building	Tax Base of Building
Balance on 1 January 2015	€1,000,000	€1,000,000
Depreciation 2015	50,000	100,000
Balance on 31 December 2015	€950,000	€900,000
Depreciation 2016	50,000	100,000
Balance on 31 December 2016	€900,000	€800,000
Revaluation on 1 January 2017	300,000	n/a
Balance on 1 January 2017	€1,200,000	€800,000
Depreciation 2017	60,000	100,000
Balance on 31 December 2017	€1,140,000	€700,000
<i>Accumulated depreciation</i>		
Balance on 1 January 2015	€0	€0
Depreciation 2015	50,000	100,000
Balance on 31 December 2015	€50,000	€100,000
Depreciation 2016	50,000	100,000
Balance on 31 December 2016	€100,000	€200,000
Revaluation at 1 January 2017	(100,000)	n/a
Balance on 1 January 2017	€0	€200,000
Depreciation 2017	60,000	100,000
Balance on 30 November 2017	€60,000	€300,000
	Carrying Amount	Tax Base
On 31 December 2015	€950,000	€900,000
On 31 December 2016	€900,000	€800,000
On 31 December 2017	€1,140,000	€700,000

31 December 2015: On 31 December 2015, different treatments for depreciation expense result in a temporary difference that gives rise to a deferred tax liability. The difference in the tax base and carrying amount of the building was a result of different depreciation amounts for tax and accounting purposes. Depreciation appears on the income statement. For this reason the deferred tax liability will also be reflected on the income statement. If we assume that the applicable tax rate in 2015 was 40 percent, then the resulting deferred tax liability will be $40\% \times (\text{€}950,000 - \text{€}900,000) = \text{€}20,000$.

31 December 2016: As of 31 December 2016, the carrying amount of the building remains greater than the tax base. The temporary difference again gives rise to a deferred tax liability. Again, assuming the applicable tax rate to be 40 percent, the deferred tax liability from the building is $40\% \times (\text{€}900,000 - \text{€}800,000) = \text{€}40,000$.

31 December 2017: On 31 December 2017, the carrying amount of the building again exceeds the tax base. This is not the result of disposals or additions, but is a result of the revaluation at the beginning of the 2017 fiscal year and the different rates of depreciation. The deferred tax liability would seem to be $40\% \times (\text{€}1,140,000 - \text{€}700,000) = \text{€}176,000$, *but* the treatment is different than it was for the 2015 and 2016. In 2017, revaluation of the building gave rise to a balance sheet equity account, namely “Revaluation Surplus” in the amount of €300,000, which is not recognized for tax purposes.

The deferred tax liability would usually have been calculated as follows:

	2017	2016	2015
Deferred tax liability (closing balance at end of fiscal year)	€176,000	€40,000	€20,000
(Difference between tax base and carrying amount)			
2015: $\text{€}(950,000 - 900,000) \times 40\% = 20,000$			
2016: $\text{€}(900,000 - 800,000) \times 40\% = 40,000$			
2017: $\text{€}(1,140,000 - 700,000) \times 40\% = 176,000$			

The change in the deferred tax liability in 2015 is €20,000, in 2016: €20,000 (€40,000 – €20,000) and, it would seem, in 2017: €136,000 (€176,000 – €40,000). In 2017, although it would seem that the balance for deferred tax liability should be €176,000, the revaluation is not recognized for tax purposes. Only the portion of the difference between the tax base and carrying amount that is not a result of the revaluation is recognized as giving rise to a deferred tax liability.

The effect of the revaluation surplus and the associated tax effects are accounted for in a direct adjustment to equity. The revaluation surplus is reduced by the tax provision associated with the excess of the fair value over the carry value and it affects retained earnings ($\text{€}300,000 \times 40\% = \text{€}120,000$).

The deferred tax liability that should be reflected on the balance sheet is thus not €176,000 but only €56,000 (€176,000 – €120,000). Given the balance of deferred tax liability at the beginning of the 2017 fiscal year in the amount of €40,000, the change in the deferred tax liability is only €56,000 – €40,000 = €16,000.

In the future, at the end of each year, an amount equal to the depreciation as a result of the revaluation minus the deferred tax effect will be transferred from the revaluation reserve to retained earnings. In 2017 this will amount to a portion of depreciation resulting from the revaluation, €15,000 ($\text{€}300,000 \div 20$), minus the deferred tax effect of €6,000 ($\text{€}15,000 \times 40\%$), thus €9,000.

7

PRESENTATION AND DISCLOSURE

We will discuss the presentation and disclosure of income tax related information by way of example. The Consolidated Statements of Operations (Income Statements) and Consolidated Balance Sheets for Micron Technology (MU) are provided in Exhibits 2 and 3, respectively. Exhibit 4 provides the income tax note disclosures for MU for the 2014, 2015, and 2016 fiscal years.

MU's income tax provision (i.e., income tax expense) for fiscal year 2016 is \$19 million (see Exhibit 2). The income tax note disclosure in Exhibit 4 reconciles how the income tax provision was determined beginning with MU's reported loss before taxes (shown in Exhibit 4 as \$281 million for fiscal year 2016). The note disclosure then denotes the income tax provision for 2016 that is current (\$28 million), which is then offset by the deferred tax benefit for foreign taxes (\$9 million), for a net income tax provision of \$19 million. Exhibit 4 further shows a reconciliation of how the income tax provision was derived from the US federal statutory rate. Many public companies comply with this required disclosure by displaying the information in percentage terms, but MU has elected to provide the disclosure in absolute dollar amounts. From this knowledge, for 2016 we can see that the dollar amount shown for US federal income tax benefit at the statutory rate (\$98 million) was determined by multiplying MU's loss before taxes by the 35 percent US federal statutory rate ($\$281 \times 0.35 = \98).

In addition, the note disclosure in Exhibit 4 provides detailed information about the derivation of the deferred tax assets (\$657 million for 2016) and deferred tax liabilities (\$2 million for 2016). These deferred tax assets are shown separately on MU's consolidated balance sheet for fiscal year 2016 with noncurrent assets (see Exhibit 3), while the deferred tax liabilities are included in other noncurrent liabilities (also see Exhibit 3).

**Exhibit 2 Micron Technology, Inc. Consolidated Statements of Operations
(Amounts in Millions except Per Share)**

For the Year Ended	1 Sept. 2016	3 Sept. 2015	28 Aug. 2014
Net sales	\$12,399	\$16,192	\$16,358
Cost of goods sold	9,894	10,977	10,921
Gross margin	2,505	5,215	5,437
Selling, general and administrative	659	719	707
Research and development	1,617	1,540	1,371
Restructure and asset impairments	67	3	40
Other operating (income) expense, net	(6)	(45)	232
Operating income	168	2,998	3,087
Interest income (expense), net	(395)	(336)	(329)
Other non-operating income (expense), net	(54)	(53)	(25)
Income tax (provision) benefit	(19)	(157)	(128)
Equity in net income (loss) of equity method investees	25	447	474
Net income (loss) attributable to non-controlling interests	(1)	—	(34)
Net income (loss) attributable to Micron	\$(276)	\$2,899	\$3,045
Earnings (loss) per share:			

Exhibit 2 (Continued)

For the Year Ended	1 Sept. 2016	3 Sept. 2015	28 Aug. 2014
Basic	\$(0.27)	\$2.71	\$2.87
Diluted	\$(0.27)	\$2.47	\$2.54
Number of shares used in per share calculations:			
Basic	1,036	1,070	1,060
Diluted	1,036	1,170	1,198

Exhibit 3 Micron Technology, Inc. Consolidated Balance Sheets (Dollars in Millions)

As of	1 Sept. 2016	3 Sept. 2015
Assets		
Cash and equivalents	\$4,140	\$2,287
Short-term investments	258	1,234
Receivables	2,068	2,507
Inventories	2,889	2,340
Other current assets	140	228
Total current assets	9,495	8,596
Long-term marketable investments	414	2,113
Property, plant and equipment, net	14,686	10,554
Equity method investments	1,364	1,379
Intangible assets, net	464	449
Deferred tax assets	657	597
Other noncurrent assets	460	455
Total assets	\$27,540	\$24,143
Liabilities and shareholders' equity		
Accounts payable and accrued expenses	\$3,879	\$2,611
Deferred income	200	205
Current debt	756	1,089
Total current liabilities	4,835	3,905
Long-term debt	9,154	6,252
Other noncurrent liabilities	623	698
Total liabilities	14,612	10,855
Commitments and contingencies	—	—
Redeemable convertible notes	—	49
Micron shareholder's equity		
Common stock of \$0.10 par value, 3,000 shares authorized, 1,094 shares issued and outstanding (1,084 as of September 3, 2015)	109	108
Additional capital	7,736	7,474

(continued)

Exhibit 3 (Continued)

As of	1 Sept. 2016	3 Sept. 2015
Retained earnings	5,299	5,588
Treasury stock, 54 shares held (45 as of September 3, 2015)	(1,029)	(881)
Accumulated other comprehensive income (loss)	(35)	13
Total Micron shareholders' equity	12,080	12,302
Noncontrolling interests in subsidiaries	848	937
Total equity	12,928	13,239
Total liabilities and shareholders' equity	\$27,540	\$24,143

Exhibit 4 Micron Technology, Inc. Income Taxes Note to the Consolidated Financial Statements

Income (loss) before taxes and the income tax (provision) benefit consisted of the following:

(Millions)	2016	2015	2014
Income (loss) before income taxes, net income (loss) attributable to noncontrolling interests, and equity in net income (loss) of equity method investees			
Foreign	\$(353)	\$2,431	\$2,619
US	72	178	114
	\$(281)	\$2,609	\$2,733
Income tax (provision) benefit:			
Current:			
Foreign	\$(27)	\$(93)	\$(46)
State	(1)	(1)	(2)
US federal	—	6	(3)
	(28)	(88)	(51)
Deferred:			
US federal	39	15	4
State	2	1	—
Foreign	(32)	(85)	(81)
	9	(69)	(77)
Income tax (provision)	\$(19)	\$(157)	\$(128)

The company's income tax (provision) computed using the US federal statutory rate and the company's income tax (provision) benefit is reconciled as follows:

Exhibit 4 (Continued)

(Millions)	2016	2015	2014
US federal income tax (provision) benefit at statutory rate	\$98	\$(913)	\$(956)
Foreign tax rate differential	(300)	515	474
Change in valuation allowance	63	260	544
Change in unrecognized tax benefits	52	(118)	(152)
Tax credits	48	53	11
State taxes, net of federal benefit	3	19	(39)
Noncontrolling investment transactions	—	57	—
Other	17	(30)	(10)
Income tax (provision) benefit	\$(19)	\$(157)	\$(128)

State taxes reflect investment tax credits of \$211 million as at 1 September 2016. Deferred income taxes reflect the net tax effects of temporary differences between the bases of assets and liabilities for financial reporting and income tax purposes. The company's deferred tax assets and liabilities consist of the following as of the end of the periods shown below:

(\$ Millions)	2016	2015
Deferred tax assets:		
Net operating loss and tax credit carryforwards	\$3,014	\$2,869
Accrued salaries, wages, and benefits	142	143
Other accrued liabilities	76	97
Other	65	86
Gross deferred assets	3,297	3,195
Less valuation allowance	(2,107)	(2,051)
Deferred tax assets, net of valuation allowance	1,190	1,144
Deferred tax liabilities:		
Debt discount	(170)	(207)
Property, plant, and equipment	(135)	(2)
Unremitted earnings on certain subsidiaries	(121)	(162)
Product and process technology	(81)	(43)
Other	(28)	(55)
Deferred tax liabilities	(535)	(469)
Net deferred tax assets	\$655	\$675
Reported as:		
Current deferred tax assets (included in other current assets)	\$—	\$104
Deferred tax assets	657	597
Current deferred tax liabilities (included in accounts payable and accrued expenses)	—	(4)
Deferred tax liabilities (included in other noncurrent liabilities)	(2)	(22)
Net deferred tax assets	\$655	\$675

The company has a valuation allowance against substantially all of its US net deferred tax assets. As of 1 September 2016, the company had aggregate US tax net operating loss carryforwards of \$3.9 billion and unused US tax credit carryforwards of \$351 million. The company also has unused state tax net operating loss carryforwards of \$1.9 billion and unused state tax credits of \$211 million. The majority of the net operating loss carryforwards and the tax credit carryforwards expire between 2021 to 2036 and 2022 to 2036, respectively.

The changes in valuation allowance of \$63 million and \$260 million in 2016 and 2015, respectively, are primarily a result of uncertainties of realizing certain US and foreign net operating losses and certain tax credit carryforwards.

Provision has been made for deferred taxes on undistributed earnings of non-US subsidiaries to the extent that dividend payments from such companies are expected to result in additional tax liability. Remaining undistributed earnings of \$6.74 billion as of 1 September 2016 have been indefinitely reinvested. Determination of the amount of unrecognized deferred tax liability on these unremitted earnings is not practicable.

EXAMPLE 6

Financial Analysis Example

Use the financial statement information and disclosures provided by MU in Exhibits 2, 3, and 4 to answer the following questions:

- 1 MU discloses a valuation allowance of \$2,107 million (see Exhibit 4) against gross deferred assets of \$3,297 million in 2016. Does the existence of this valuation allowance have any implications concerning MU's future earning prospects?
- 2 How would MU's deferred tax assets and deferred tax liabilities be affected if the federal statutory tax rate was changed to 32 percent? Would a change in the rate to 32 percent be beneficial to MU?
- 3 How would reported earnings have been affected if MU were not using a valuation allowance?
- 4 How would MU's \$3,014 million in net operating loss carryforwards in 2016 (see Exhibit 4) affect the valuation that an acquiring company would be willing to offer?
- 5 Under what circumstances should the analyst consider MU's deferred tax liability as debt or as equity? Under what circumstances should the analyst exclude MU's deferred tax liability from both debt and equity when calculating the debt-to-equity ratio?

Solution to 1:

According to Exhibit 4, MU's deferred tax assets expire gradually until 2036 (2027 to 2036 for the net operating loss carryforwards and 2022 to 2036 for the tax credit carryforwards).

Because the company is still relatively young, it is likely that most of these expirations occur toward the end of that period. Because cumulative US tax net operating loss carryforwards total \$3.9 billion, the valuation allowance could imply that MU is not reasonably expected to earn \$3.9 billion over the next 20 years. However, as we can see in Exhibit 2, MU earned a profit for 2015 and 2014, thereby showing that the allowance could be adjusted downward if the company continues to generate profits in the future, and making it more likely than not that the deferred tax asset would be recognized.

Solution to 2:

MU’s total deferred tax assets exceed total deferred tax liabilities by \$655 million. A change in the federal statutory tax rate to 32 percent from the current rate of 35 percent would make these net deferred assets less valuable. Also, because it is possible that the deferred tax asset valuation allowance could be adjusted downward in the future (see discussion to solution 1), the impact could be far greater in magnitude.

Solution to 3:

The disclosure in Exhibit 4 shows that the increase in the valuation allowance increased the income tax provision as reported on the income statement by \$63 million in 2016. Additional potential reductions in the valuation allowance could similarly reduce reported income taxes (actual income taxes would not be affected by a valuation allowance established for financial reporting) in future years (see discussion to solution 1).

Solution to 4:

If an acquiring company is profitable, it may be able to use MU’s tax loss carry-forwards to offset its own tax liabilities. The value to an acquirer would be the present value of the carryforwards, based on the acquirer’s tax rate and expected timing of realization. The higher the acquiring company’s tax rate, and the more profitable the acquirer, the sooner it would be able to benefit. Therefore, an acquirer with a high current tax rate would theoretically be willing to pay more than an acquirer with a lower tax rate.

Solution to 5:

The analyst should classify the deferred tax liability as debt if the liability is expected to reverse with subsequent tax payment. If the liability is not expected to reverse, there is no expectation of a cash outflow and the liability should be treated as equity. By way of example, future company losses may preclude the payment of any income taxes, or changes in tax laws could result in taxes that are never paid. The deferred tax liability should be excluded from both debt and equity when both the amounts and timing of tax payments resulting from the reversals of temporary differences are uncertain.

COMPARISON OF IFRS AND US GAAP

8

As mentioned earlier, though IFRS and US GAAP follow similar conventions on many tax issues, there are some notable differences (such as revaluation). Exhibit 5 summarizes many of the key similarities and differences between IFRS and US GAAP. Though both frameworks require a provision for deferred taxes, there are differences in the methodologies.

Exhibit 5 Deferred Income Tax Issues IFRS and US GAAP Methodology Similarities and Differences

Issue	IFRS	US GAAP
General considerations:		
General approach	Full provision.	Similar to IFRS.

(continued)

Exhibit 5 (Continued)

Issue	IFRS	US GAAP
Basis for deferred tax assets and liabilities	Temporary differences—i.e., the difference between carrying amount and tax base of assets and liabilities (see exceptions below).	Similar to IFRS.
Exceptions (i.e., deferred tax is not provided on the temporary difference)	Nondeductible goodwill (that which is not deductible for tax purposes) does not give rise to taxable temporary differences.	Similar to IFRS, except no initial recognition exemption and special requirements apply in computing deferred tax on leveraged leases.
General considerations:	Initial recognition of an asset or liability in a transaction that: a) is not a business combination; and b) affects neither accounting profit nor taxable profit at the time of the transaction. Other amounts that do not have a tax consequence (commonly referred to as permanent differences) exist and depend on the tax rules and jurisdiction of the entity.	
Specific applications:		
Revaluation of plant, property, and equipment and intangible assets	Deferred tax recognized in equity.	Not applicable, as revaluation is prohibited.
Foreign nonmonetary assets/liabilities when the tax reporting currency is not the functional currency	Deferred tax is recognized on the difference between the carrying amount, determined using the historical rate of exchange, and the tax base, determined using the balance sheet date exchange rate.	No deferred tax is recognized for differences related to assets and liabilities that are remeasured from local currency into the functional currency resulting from changes in exchange rates or indexing for tax purposes.
Investments in subsidiaries—treatment of undistributed profit	Deferred tax is recognized except when the parent is able to control the distribution of profit and it is probable that the temporary difference will not reverse in the foreseeable future.	Deferred tax is required on temporary differences arising after 1992 that relate to investments in domestic subsidiaries, unless such amounts can be recovered tax-free and the entity expects to use that method. No deferred taxes are recognized on undistributed profits of foreign subsidiaries that meet the indefinite reversal criterion. Deferred tax assets may be recorded only to the extent they will reverse in the foreseeable future.
Investments in joint ventures—treatment of undistributed profit	Deferred tax is recognized except when the venturer can control the sharing of profits and if it is probable that the temporary difference will not reverse in the foreseeable future.	Deferred tax is required on temporary differences arising after 1992 that relate to investment in domestic corporate joint ventures. No deferred taxes are recognized on undistributed profits of foreign corporate joint ventures that meet the indefinite reversal criterion. Deferred tax assets may be recorded only to the extent they will reverse in the foreseeable future.
Investment in associates—treatment of undistributed profit	Deferred tax is recognized except when the investor can control the sharing of profits and it is probable that the temporary difference will not reverse in the foreseeable future.	Deferred tax is recognized on temporary differences relating to investments in investees.

Exhibit 5 (Continued)

Issue	IFRS	US GAAP
Uncertain tax positions	Reflects the tax consequences that follow from the manner in which the entity expects, at the balance sheet date, to be paid to (recovered from) the taxation authorities.	A tax benefit from an uncertain tax position may be recognized only if it is “more likely than not” that the tax position is sustainable based on its technical merits. The tax position is measured as the largest amount of tax benefit that is greater than 50 percent likely of being realized upon ultimate settlement.
Measurement of deferred tax:		
Tax rates	Tax rates and tax laws that have been enacted or substantively enacted.	Use of substantively enacted rates is not permitted. Tax rate and tax laws used must have been enacted.
Recognition of deferred tax assets	A deferred tax asset is recognized if it is probable (more likely than not) that sufficient taxable profit will be available against which the temporary difference can be utilized.	A deferred tax asset is recognized in full but is then reduced by a valuation allowance if it is more likely than not that some or all of the deferred tax asset will not be realized.
Business combinations—Acquisitions:		
Step-up of acquired assets/liabilities to fair value	Deferred tax is recorded unless the tax base of the asset is also stepped up.	Similar to IFRS.
Previously unrecognized tax losses of the acquirer	A deferred tax asset is recognized if the recognition criteria for the deferred tax asset are met as a result of the acquisition. Offsetting credit is recorded in income.	Similar to IFRS, except the offsetting credit is recorded against goodwill.
Tax losses of the acquiree (initial recognition)	Similar requirements as for the acquirer except the offsetting credit is recorded against goodwill.	Similar to IFRS.
Subsequent resolution of income tax uncertainties in a business combination	If the resolution is more than one year after the year in which the business combination occurred, the result is recognized on the income statement.	The subsequent resolution of any tax uncertainty relating to a business combination is recorded against goodwill.
Subsequent recognition of deferred tax assets that were not “probable” at the time of the business combination	A deferred tax asset that was not considered probable at the time of the business combination but later becomes probable is recognized. The adjustment is to income tax expense with a corresponding adjustment to goodwill. The income statement shows a debit to goodwill expense and a credit to income tax expense. There is no time limit for recognition of this deferred tax asset.	The subsequent resolution of any tax uncertainty relating to a business combination is recorded first against goodwill, then noncurrent intangibles, and then income tax expense. There is no time limit for recognition of this deferred tax asset.
Presentation of deferred tax:		
Offset of deferred tax assets and liabilities	Permitted only when the entity has a legally enforceable right to offset and the balance relates to tax levied by the same authority.	Similar to IFRS.

(continued)

Exhibit 5 (Continued)

Issue	IFRS	US GAAP
Current/noncurrent	Deferred tax assets and liabilities are classified net as noncurrent on the balance sheet, with supplemental note disclosure for 1) the components of the temporary differences, and 2) amounts expected to be recovered within 12 months and more than 12 months from the balance sheet date.	Deferred tax assets and liabilities are either classified as current or noncurrent, based on the classification of the related non-tax asset or liability for financial reporting. Tax assets or liabilities not associated with an underlying asset or liability are classified based on the expected reversal period.
Reconciliation of actual and expected tax expense	Required. Computed by applying the applicable tax rates to accounting profit, disclosing also the basis on which the applicable tax rates are calculated.	Required for public companies only. Calculated by applying the domestic federal statutory tax rates to pre-tax income from continuing operations.

Sources: IFRS: IAS 1, IAS 12, and IFRS 3.

US GAAP: FAS 109 and FIN 48.

“Similarities and Differences—A Comparison of IFRS and US GAAP,” PricewaterhouseCoopers, October 2006.

SUMMARY

Income taxes are a significant category of expense for profitable companies. Analyzing income tax expenses is often difficult for the analyst because there are many permanent and temporary timing differences between the accounting that is used for income tax reporting and the accounting that is used for financial reporting on company financial statements. The financial statements and notes to the financial statements of a company provide important information that the analyst needs to assess financial performance and to compare a company’s financial performance with other companies. Key concepts in this reading are as follows:

- Differences between the recognition of revenue and expenses for tax and accounting purposes may result in taxable income differing from accounting profit. The discrepancy is a result of different treatments of certain income and expenditure items.
- The tax base of an asset is the amount that will be deductible for tax purposes as an expense in the calculation of taxable income as the company expenses the tax basis of the asset. If the economic benefit will not be taxable, the tax base of the asset will be equal to the carrying amount of the asset.
- The tax base of a liability is the carrying amount of the liability less any amounts that will be deductible for tax purposes in the future. With respect to revenue received in advance, the tax base of such a liability is the carrying amount less any amount of the revenue that will not be taxable in the future.
- Temporary differences arise from recognition of differences in the tax base and carrying amount of assets and liabilities. The creation of a deferred tax asset or liability as a result of a temporary difference will only be allowed if the difference reverses itself at some future date and to the extent that it is expected that the balance sheet item will create future economic benefits for the company.

- Permanent differences result in a difference in tax and financial reporting of revenue (expenses) that will not be reversed at some future date. Because it will not be reversed at a future date, these differences do not constitute temporary differences and do not give rise to a deferred tax asset or liability.
- Current taxes payable or recoverable are based on the applicable tax rates on the balance sheet date of an entity; in contrast, deferred taxes should be measured at the tax rate that is expected to apply when the asset is realized or the liability settled.
- All unrecognized deferred tax assets and liabilities must be reassessed on the appropriate balance sheet date and measured against their probable future economic benefit.
- Deferred tax assets must be assessed for their prospective recoverability. If it is probable that they will not be recovered at all or partly, the carrying amount should be reduced. Under US GAAP, this is done through the use of a valuation allowance.

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

- 1 Using the straight-line method of depreciation for reporting purposes and accelerated depreciation for tax purposes would *most likely* result in a:
 - A valuation allowance.
 - B deferred tax asset.
 - C temporary difference.
- 2 In early 2017 Sanborn Company must pay the tax authority €37,000 on the income it earned in 2016. This amount was recorded on the company's 31 December 2016 financial statements as:
 - A taxes payable.
 - B income tax expense.
 - C a deferred tax liability.
- 3 Income tax expense reported on a company's income statement equals taxes payable, plus the net increase in:
 - A deferred tax assets and deferred tax liabilities.
 - B deferred tax assets, less the net increase in deferred tax liabilities.
 - C deferred tax liabilities, less the net increase in deferred tax assets.
- 4 Analysts should treat deferred tax liabilities that are expected to reverse as:
 - A equity.
 - B liabilities.
 - C neither liabilities nor equity.
- 5 Deferred tax liabilities should be treated as equity when:
 - A they are not expected to reverse.
 - B the timing of tax payments is uncertain.
 - C the amount of tax payments is uncertain.
- 6 When both the timing and amount of tax payments are uncertain, analysts should treat deferred tax liabilities as:
 - A equity.
 - B liabilities.
 - C neither liabilities nor equity.
- 7 When accounting standards require recognition of an expense that is not permitted under tax laws, the result is a:
 - A deferred tax liability.
 - B temporary difference.
 - C permanent difference.
- 8 When certain expenditures result in tax credits that directly reduce taxes, the company will *most likely* record:
 - A a deferred tax asset.
 - B a deferred tax liability.
 - C no deferred tax asset or liability.

- 9 When accounting standards require an asset to be expensed immediately but tax rules require the item to be capitalized and amortized, the company will *most likely* record:
- A a deferred tax asset.
 - B a deferred tax liability.
 - C no deferred tax asset or liability.
- 10 A company incurs a capital expenditure that may be amortized over five years for accounting purposes, but over four years for tax purposes. The company will *most likely* record:
- A a deferred tax asset.
 - B a deferred tax liability.
 - C no deferred tax asset or liability.
- 11 A company receives advance payments from customers that are immediately taxable but will not be recognized for accounting purposes until the company fulfills its obligation. The company will *most likely* record:
- A a deferred tax asset.
 - B a deferred tax liability.
 - C no deferred tax asset or liability.

The following information relates to Questions 12–14

Note I Income Taxes

The components of earnings before income taxes are as follows (\$ thousands):

	2017	2016	2015
Earnings before income taxes:			
United States	\$ 88,157	\$ 75,658	\$ 59,973
Foreign	116,704	113,509	94,760
Total	\$204,861	\$189,167	\$154,733

The components of the provision for income taxes are as follows (\$ thousands):

	2017	2016	2015
Income taxes			
Current:			
Federal	\$30,632	\$22,031	\$18,959
Foreign	28,140	27,961	22,263
	\$58,772	\$49,992	\$41,222
Deferred:			
Federal	(\$4,752)	\$5,138	\$2,336
Foreign	124	1,730	621

(continued)

	2017	2016	2015
	(4,628)	6,868	2,957
Total	\$54,144	\$56,860	\$44,179

- 12 In 2017, the company's US GAAP income statement recorded a provision for income taxes *closest* to:
- A \$30,632.
 - B \$54,144.
 - C \$58,772.
- 13 The company's effective tax rate was *highest* in:
- A 2015.
 - B 2016.
 - C 2017.
- 14 Compared to the company's effective tax rate on US income, its effective tax rate on foreign income was:
- A lower in each year presented.
 - B higher in each year presented.
 - C higher in some periods and lower in others.
-
- 15 Zimt AG presents its financial statements in accordance with US GAAP. In 2017, Zimt discloses a valuation allowance of \$1,101 against total deferred tax assets of \$19,201. In 2016, Zimt disclosed a valuation allowance of \$1,325 against total deferred tax assets of \$17,325. The change in the valuation allowance *most likely* indicates that Zimt's:
- A deferred tax liabilities were reduced in 2017.
 - B expectations of future earning power has increased.
 - C expectations of future earning power has decreased.
- 16 Cinnamon, Inc. recorded a total deferred tax asset in 2017 of \$12,301, offset by a \$12,301 valuation allowance. Cinnamon *most likely*:
- A fully utilized the deferred tax asset in 2017.
 - B has an equal amount of deferred tax assets and deferred tax liabilities.
 - C expects not to earn any taxable income before the deferred tax asset expires.

The following information relates to Questions 17–19

The tax effects of temporary differences that give rise to deferred tax assets and liabilities are as follows (\$ thousands):

	2017	2016
Deferred tax assets:		
Accrued expenses	\$8,613	\$7,927
Tax credit and net operating loss carryforwards	2,288	2,554

	2017	2016
LIFO and inventory reserves	5,286	4,327
Other	2,664	2,109
Deferred tax assets	18,851	16,917
Valuation allowance	(1,245)	(1,360)
Net deferred tax assets	\$17,606	\$15,557
Deferred tax liabilities:		
Depreciation and amortization	\$(27,338)	\$(29,313)
Compensation and retirement plans	(3,831)	(8,963)
Other	(1,470)	(764)
Deferred tax liabilities	(32,639)	(39,040)
Net deferred tax liability	(\$15,033)	(\$23,483)

- 17 A reduction in the statutory tax rate would *most likely* benefit the company's:
- A income statement and balance sheet.
 - B income statement but not the balance sheet.
 - C balance sheet but not the income statement.
- 18 If the valuation allowance had been the same in 2017 as it was in 2016, the company would have reported \$115 *higher*:
- A net income.
 - B deferred tax assets.
 - C income tax expense.
- 19 Compared to the provision for income taxes in 2017, the company's cash tax payments were:
- A lower.
 - B higher.
 - C the same.

The following information relates to Questions 20–22

A company's provision for income taxes resulted in effective tax rates attributable to loss from continuing operations before cumulative effect of change in accounting principles that varied from the statutory federal income tax rate of 34 percent, as summarized in the table below.

Year Ended 30 June	2017	2016	2015
Expected federal income tax expense (benefit) from continuing operations at 34 percent	(\$112,000)	\$768,000	\$685,000
Expenses not deductible for income tax purposes	357,000	32,000	51,000
State income taxes, net of federal benefit	132,000	22,000	100,000

(continued)

Year Ended 30 June	2017	2016	2015
Change in valuation allowance for deferred tax assets	(150,000)	(766,000)	(754,000)
Income tax expense	\$227,000	\$56,000	\$82,000

- 20 In 2017, the company's net income (loss) was *closest* to:
- A (\$217,000).
 - B (\$329,000).
 - C (\$556,000).
- 21 The \$357,000 adjustment in 2017 *most likely* resulted in:
- A an increase in deferred tax assets.
 - B an increase in deferred tax liabilities.
 - C no change to deferred tax assets and liabilities.
- 22 Over the three years presented, changes in the valuation allowance for deferred tax assets were *most likely* indicative of:
- A decreased prospect for future profitability.
 - B increased prospects for future profitability.
 - C assets being carried at a higher value than their tax base.
-

SOLUTIONS

- 1 C is correct. Because the differences between tax and financial accounting will correct over time, the resulting deferred tax liability, for which the expense was charged to the income statement but the tax authority has not yet been paid, will be a temporary difference. A valuation allowance would only arise if there was doubt over the company's ability to earn sufficient income in the future to require paying the tax.
- 2 A is correct. The taxes a company must pay in the immediate future are taxes payable.
- 3 C is correct. Higher reported tax expense relative to taxes paid will increase the deferred tax liability, whereas lower reported tax expense relative to taxes paid increases the deferred tax asset.
- 4 B is correct. If the liability is expected to reverse (and thus require a cash tax payment) the deferred tax represents a future liability.
- 5 A is correct. If the liability will not reverse, there will be no required tax payment in the future and the "liability" should be treated as equity.
- 6 C is correct. The deferred tax liability should be excluded from both debt and equity when both the amounts and timing of tax payments resulting from the reversals of temporary differences are uncertain.
- 7 C is correct. Accounting items that are not deductible for tax purposes will not be reversed and thus result in permanent differences.
- 8 C is correct. Tax credits that directly reduce taxes are a permanent difference, and permanent differences do not give rise to deferred tax.
- 9 A is correct. The capitalization will result in an asset with a positive tax base and zero carrying value. The amortization means the difference is temporary. Because there is a temporary difference on an asset resulting in a higher tax base than carrying value, a deferred tax asset is created.
- 10 B is correct. The difference is temporary, and the tax base will be lower (because of more rapid amortization) than the carrying value of the asset. The result will be a deferred tax liability.
- 11 A is correct. The advances represent a liability for the company. The carrying value of the liability exceeds the tax base (which is now zero). A deferred tax asset arises when the carrying value of a liability exceeds its tax base.
- 12 B is correct. The income tax provision in 2017 was \$54,144, consisting of \$58,772 in current income taxes, of which \$4,628 were deferred.
- 13 B is correct. The effective tax rate of 30.1 percent ($\$56,860/\$189,167$) was higher than the effective rates in 2015 and 2017.
- 14 A is correct. In 2017 the effective tax rate on foreign operations was 24.2 percent $[(\$28,140 + \$124)/\$116,704]$ and the effective US tax rate was $[(\$30,632 - \$4,752)/\$88,157] = 29.4$ percent. In 2016 the effective tax rate on foreign operations was 26.2 percent and the US rate was 35.9 percent. In 2015 the foreign rate was 24.1 percent and the US rate was 35.5 percent.
- 15 B is correct. The valuation allowance is taken against deferred tax assets to represent uncertainty that future taxable income will be sufficient to fully utilize the assets. By decreasing the allowance, Zimt is signaling greater likelihood that future earnings will be offset by the deferred tax asset.

- 16** C is correct. The valuation allowance is taken when the company will “more likely than not” fail to earn sufficient income to offset the deferred tax asset. Because the valuation allowance equals the asset, by extension the company expects *no* taxable income prior to the expiration of the deferred tax assets.
- 17** A is correct. A lower tax rate would increase net income on the income statement, and because the company has a net deferred tax liability, the net liability position on the balance sheet would also improve (be smaller).
- 18** C is correct. The reduction in the valuation allowance resulted in a corresponding reduction in the income tax provision.
- 19** B is correct. The net deferred tax liability was smaller in 2017 than it was in 2016, indicating that in addition to meeting the tax payments provided for in 2017 the company also paid taxes that had been deferred in prior periods.
- 20** C is correct. The income tax provision at the statutory rate of 34 percent is a benefit of \$112,000, suggesting that the pre-tax income was a loss of $\$112,000/0.34 = (\$329,412)$. The income tax provision was \$227,000. $(\$329,412) - \$227,000 = (\$556,412)$.
- 21** C is correct. Accounting expenses that are not deductible for tax purposes result in a permanent difference, and thus do not give rise to deferred taxes.
- 22** B is correct. Over the three-year period, changes in the valuation allowance reduced cumulative income taxes by \$1,670,000. The reductions to the valuation allowance were a result of the company being “more likely than not” to earn sufficient taxable income to offset the deferred tax assets.

Non-Current (Long-Term) Liabilities

by Elizabeth A. Gordon, PhD, MBA, CPA, and Elaine Henry, PhD, CFA

Elizabeth A. Gordon, PhD, MBA, CPA, is at Temple University (USA). Elaine Henry, PhD, CFA, is at Stevens Institute of Technology (USA).

LEARNING OUTCOMES

<i>Mastery</i>	<i>The candidate should be able to</i>
<input type="checkbox"/>	a. determine the initial recognition, initial measurement and subsequent measurement of bonds;
<input type="checkbox"/>	b. describe the effective interest method and calculate interest expense, amortisation of bond discounts/premiums, and interest payments;
<input type="checkbox"/>	c. explain the derecognition of debt;
<input type="checkbox"/>	d. describe the role of debt covenants in protecting creditors;
<input type="checkbox"/>	e. describe the financial statement presentation of and disclosures relating to debt;
<input type="checkbox"/>	f. explain motivations for leasing assets instead of purchasing them;
<input type="checkbox"/>	g. distinguish between a finance lease and an operating lease from the perspectives of the lessor and the lessee;
<input type="checkbox"/>	h. determine the initial recognition, initial measurement, and subsequent measurement of finance leases;
<input type="checkbox"/>	i. compare the disclosures relating to finance and operating leases;
<input type="checkbox"/>	j. compare the presentation and disclosure of defined contribution and defined benefit pension plans;
<input type="checkbox"/>	k. calculate and interpret leverage and coverage ratios.

Note: Changes in accounting standards as well as new rulings and/or pronouncements issued after the publication of the readings on financial reporting and analysis may cause some of the information in these readings to become dated. Candidates are *not* responsible for anything that occurs after the readings were published. In addition, candidates are expected to be familiar with the analytical frameworks contained in the readings, as well as the implications of alternative accounting methods for financial analysis and valuation discussed in the readings. Candidates are also responsible for the content of accounting standards, but not for the actual reference numbers. Finally, candidates should be aware that certain ratios may be defined and calculated differently. When alternative ratio definitions exist and no specific definition is given, candidates should use the ratio definitions emphasized in the readings.

1

INTRODUCTION

A non-current liability (long-term liability) broadly represents a probable sacrifice of economic benefits in periods generally greater than one year in the future. Common types of **non-current liabilities** reported in a company's financial statements include long-term debt (e.g., bonds payable, long-term notes payable), finance leases, pension liabilities, and deferred tax liabilities. This reading focuses on bonds payable and leases. Pension liabilities are also introduced.

This reading is organised as follows. Section 2 describes and illustrates the accounting for long-term bonds, including the issuance of bonds, the recording of interest expense and interest payments, the amortisation of any discount or premium, the derecognition of debt, and the disclosure of information about debt financings. In discussing the financial statement effects and analyses of these issues, we focus on solvency and coverage ratios. Section 3 discusses leases, including benefits of leasing and accounting for leases by both lessees and lessors. Section 4 provides an introduction to pension accounting and the resulting non-current liabilities. Section 5 discusses the use of leverage and coverage ratios in evaluating solvency. Section 6 concludes and summarises the reading. Practice problems in the CFA Institute format are included after the reading.

2

BONDS PAYABLE

This section discusses accounting for bonds payable—a common form of long-term debt. In some contexts (e.g., some government debt obligations), the word “bond” is used only for a debt security with a maturity of 10 years or longer; “note” refers to a debt security with a maturity between 2 and 10 years; and “bill” refers to a debt security with a maturity of less than 2 years. In this reading, we use the terms bond and note interchangeably because the accounting treatments of bonds payable and long-term notes payable are similar. In the following sections, we discuss bond issuance (initial recognition and measurement); bond amortisation, interest expense, and interest payments; market rates and fair value (subsequent measurement); repayment of bonds, including retirements and redemptions (derecognition); and other issues concerning disclosures related to debt. We also discuss debt covenants.

2.1 Accounting for Bond Issuance

Bonds are contractual promises made by a company (or other borrowing entity) to pay cash in the future to its lenders (i.e., bondholders) in exchange for receiving cash in the present. The terms of a bond contract are contained in a document called an indenture. The cash or sales proceeds received by a company when it issues bonds is based on the value (price) of the bonds at the time of issue; the price at the time of issue is determined as the present value of the future cash payments promised by the company in the bond agreement.

Ordinarily, bonds contain promises of two types of future cash payments: 1) the face value of the bonds, and 2) periodic interest payments. The **face value** of the bonds is the amount of cash payable by the company to the bondholders when the bonds mature. The face value is also referred to as the principal, par value, stated value, or maturity value. The date of maturity of the bonds (the date on which the face value is paid to bondholders) is stated in the bond contract and typically is a number of years in the future. Periodic interest payments are made based on the interest rate promised in the bond contract applied to the bonds' face value. The interest rate

promised in the contract, which is the rate used to calculate the periodic interest payments, is referred to as the **coupon rate**, nominal rate, or stated rate. Similarly, the periodic interest payment is referred to as the coupon payment or simply the coupon. For fixed rate bonds (the primary focus of our discussion here), the coupon rate remains unchanged throughout the life of the bonds. The frequency with which interest payments are made is also stated in the bond contract. For example, bonds paying interest semi-annually will make two interest payments per year.¹

The future cash payments are discounted to the present to arrive at the market value of the bonds. The **market rate of interest** is the rate demanded by purchasers of the bonds given the risks associated with future cash payment obligations of the particular bond issue. The market rate of interest at the time of issue often differs from the coupon rate because of interest rate fluctuations that occur between the time the issuer establishes the coupon rate and the day the bonds are actually available to investors. If the market rate of interest when the bonds are issued equals the coupon rate, the market value (price) of the bonds will equal the face value of the bonds. Thus, ignoring issuance costs, the issuing company will receive sales proceeds (cash) equal to the face value of the bonds. When a bond is issued at a price equal to its face value, the bond is said to have been issued at par.

If the coupon rate when the bonds are issued is higher than the market rate, the market value of the bonds—and thus the amount of cash the company receives—will be higher than the face value of the bonds. In other words, the bonds will sell at a premium to face value because they are offering an attractive coupon rate compared to current market rates. If the coupon rate is lower than the market rate, the market value and thus the sale proceeds from the bonds will be less than the face value of the bonds; the bond will sell at a discount to face value. The market rate at the time of issuance is the **effective interest rate** or borrowing rate that the company incurs on the debt. The effective interest rate is the discount rate that equates the present value of the two types of promised future cash payments to their selling price. For the issuing company, interest expense reported for the bonds in the financial statements is based on the effective interest rate.

On the issuing company's statement of cash flows, the cash received (sales proceeds) from issuing bonds is reported as a financing cash inflow. On the issuing company's balance sheet at the time of issue, bonds payable normally are measured and reported at the sales proceeds. In other words, the bonds payable are initially reported at the face value of the bonds minus any discount, or plus any premium.

Using a three-step approach, the following two examples illustrate accounting for bonds issued at face value and then accounting for bonds issued at a discount to face value. Accounting for bonds issued at a premium involves steps similar to the steps followed in the examples below. For simplicity, these examples assume a flat interest rate yield curve (i.e., that the market rate of interest is the same for each period). More-precise bond valuations use the interest rate applicable to each time period in which a payment of interest or principal occurs.

¹ Interest rates are stated on an annual basis regardless of the frequency of payment.

EXAMPLE 1**Bonds Issued at Face Value**

Debond Corp. (a hypothetical company) issues £1,000,000 worth of five-year bonds, dated 1 January 2010, when the market interest rate on bonds of comparable risk and terms is 5 percent per annum. The bonds pay 5 percent interest annually on 31 December. What are the sales proceeds of the bonds when issued, and how is the issuance reflected in the financial statements?

Solution:

Calculating the value of the bonds at issuance and thus the sales proceeds involves three steps: 1) identifying key features of the bonds and the market interest rate, 2) determining future cash outflows, and 3) discounting the future cash flows to the present.

First, identify key features of the bonds and the market interest rate necessary to determine sales proceeds:

Face value (principal):	£1,000,000	
Time to maturity:	5 years	
Coupon rate:	5%	
Market rate at issuance:	5%	
Frequency of interest payments:	annual	
Interest payment:	£50,000	Each annual interest payment is the face value times the coupon rate (£1,000,000 × 5%). If interest is paid other than annually, adjust the interest rate to match the interest payment period (e.g., divide the annual coupon rate by two for semi-annual interest payments).

Second, determine future cash outflows. Debond will pay bondholders £1,000,000 when the bonds mature in five years. On 31 December of each year until the bonds mature, Debond will make an interest payment of £50,000.

Third, sum the present value² of the future payments of interest and principal to obtain the value of the bonds and thus the sales proceeds from issuing the bonds. In this example, the sum is £1,000,000 = (£216,474 + £783,526).

Date	Interest Payment	Present Value at Market Rate (5%)	Face Value Payment	Present Value at Market Rate (5%)	Total Present Value
31 December 2010	£50,000	£47,619			
31 December 2011	50,000	45,352			
31 December 2012	50,000	43,192			
31 December 2013	50,000	41,135			
31 December 2014	50,000	39,176	£1,000,000	£783,526	
Total		£216,474		£783,526	£1,000,000
					Sales Proceeds

² Alternative ways to calculate the present value include 1) to treat the five annual interest payments as an annuity and use the formula for finding the present value of an annuity and then add the present value of the principal payment, or 2) to use a financial calculator to calculate the total present value.

The sales proceeds of the bonds when issued are £1,000,000. There is no discount or premium because these bonds are issued at face value. The issuance is reflected on the balance sheet as an increase of cash and an increase in a long-term liability, bonds payable, of £1,000,000. The issuance is reflected in the statement of cash flows as a financing cash inflow of £1,000,000.

The price of bonds is often expressed as a percentage of face value. For example, the price of bonds issued at par, as in Example 1, is 100 (i.e., 100 percent of face value). In Example 2, in which bonds are issued at a discount, the price is 95.79 (i.e., 95.79 percent of face value).

EXAMPLE 2

Bonds Issued at a Discount

Debond Corp. issues £1,000,000 worth of five-year bonds, dated 1 January 2010, when the market interest rate on bonds of comparable risk and terms is 6 percent. The bonds pay 5 percent interest annually on 31 December. What are the sales proceeds of the bonds when issued, and how is the issuance reflected in the financial statements?

Solution:

The key features of the bonds and the market interest rate are:

Face value (principal):	£1,000,000	
Time to maturity:	5 years	
Coupon rate:	5%	
Market rate at issuance:	6%	
Frequency of interest payments:	annual	
Interest payment:	£50,000	Each annual interest payment is the face value times the coupon rate (£1,000,000 × 5%).

The future cash outflows (interest payments and face value payment), the present value of the future cash outflows, and the total present value are:

Date	Interest Payment	Present Value at Market Rate (6%)	Face Value Payment	Present Value at Market Rate (6%)	Total Present Value
31 December 2010	£50,000	£47,170			
31 December 2011	50,000	44,500			
31 December 2012	50,000	41,981			
31 December 2013	50,000	39,605			
31 December 2014	50,000	37,363	£1,000,000	£747,258	
Total		£210,618		£747,258	£957,876
					Sales Proceeds

The sales proceeds of the bonds when issued are £957,876. The bonds sell at a discount of £42,124 = (£1,000,000 – £957,876) because the market rate when the bonds are issued (6 percent) is greater than the bonds' coupon rate (5 percent). The issuance is reflected on the balance sheet as an increase of cash and an increase in a long-term liability, bonds payable, of £957,876. The

bonds payable is composed of the face value of £1,000,000 minus a discount of £42,124. The issuance is reflected in the statement of cash flows as a financing cash inflow of £957,876.

In Example 2, the bonds were issued at a discount to face value because the bonds' coupon rate of 5 percent was less than the market rate. Bonds are issued at a premium to face value when the bonds' coupon rate exceeds the market rate.

Bonds issued with a coupon rate of zero (zero-coupon bonds) are always issued at a discount to face value. The value of zero-coupon bonds is based on the present value of the principal payment only because there are no periodic interest payments.

Such issuance costs as printing, legal fees, commissions, and other types of charges are costs incurred when bonds are issued. Under International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRS), all debt issuance costs are included in the measurement of the liability, bonds payable. Under US generally accepted accounting principles (US GAAP), companies generally used to show these debt issuance costs as an asset (a deferred charge), which was amortised on a straight-line basis to the relevant expense (e.g., legal fees) over the life of the bonds. Under US GAAP, debt issuance costs are deducted from the related debt liability. Companies reporting under US GAAP may still report debt issuance costs for lines of credit as an asset because the SEC indicated that it would not object to this treatment. Under IFRS and US GAAP, cash outflows related to bond issuance costs are included in the financing section of the statement of cash flows, usually netted against bond proceeds.

2.2 Accounting for Bond Amortisation, Interest Expense, and Interest Payments

In this section, we discuss accounting and reporting for bonds after they are issued. Most companies maintain the historical cost (sales proceeds) of the bonds after issuance, and they amortise any discount or premium over the life of the bond. The amount reported on the balance sheet for bonds is thus the historical cost plus or minus the cumulative amortisation, which is referred to as amortised cost. Companies also have the option to report the bonds at their current fair values.

The rationale for reporting the bonds at amortised historical cost is the company's intention to retain the debt until it matures. Therefore, changes in the underlying economic value of the debt are not relevant from the issuing company's perspective. From an investor's perspective, however, analysis of a company's underlying economic liabilities and solvency is more difficult when debt is reported at amortised historical cost. The rest of this section illustrates accounting and reporting of bonds at amortised historical cost. Section 2.3 discusses the alternative of reporting bonds at fair value.

Companies initially report bonds as a liability on their balance sheet at the amount of the sales proceeds net of issuance costs under both IFRS and US GAAP, ignoring any bond issuance costs. The amount at which bonds are reported on the company's balance sheet is referred to as the carrying amount, carrying value, book value, or net book value. If the bonds are issued at par, the initial carrying amount will be identical to the face value, and usually the carrying amount will not change over the life of the bonds.³ For bonds issued at face value, the amount of periodic interest *expense* will be the same as the amount of periodic interest *payment* to bondholders.

If, however, the market rate differs from the bonds' coupon rate at issuance such that the bonds are issued at a premium or discount, the premium or discount is amortised systematically over the life of the bonds as a component of interest expense. For

³ If a company reports debt at fair value, rather than amortised cost, the carrying value may change.

bonds issued at a premium to face value, the carrying amount of the bonds is initially greater than the face value. As the premium is amortised, the carrying amount (amortised cost) of the bonds will decrease to the face value. The reported interest expense will be less than the coupon payment. For bonds issued at a discount to face value, the carrying amount of the bonds is initially less than the face value. As the discount is amortised, the carrying amount (amortised cost) of the bonds will increase to the face value. The reported interest expense will be higher than the coupon payment.

The accounting treatment for bonds issued at a discount reflects the fact that the company essentially paid some of its borrowing costs at issuance by selling its bonds at a discount. Rather than there being an actual cash transfer in the future, this “payment” was made in the form of accepting less than the face value for the bonds at the date of issuance. The remaining borrowing cost occurs as a cash interest payment to investors each period. The total interest expense reflects both components of the borrowing cost: the periodic interest payments plus the amortisation of the discount. The accounting treatment for bonds issued at a premium reflects the fact that the company essentially received a reduction on its borrowing costs at issuance by selling its bonds at a premium. Rather than there being an actual reduced cash transfer in the future, this “reduction” was made in the form of receiving more than face value for the bonds at the date of issuance. The total interest expense reflects both components of the borrowing cost: the periodic interest payments less the amortisation of the premium. When the bonds mature, the carrying amount will be equal to the face value regardless of whether the bonds were issued at face value, a discount, or a premium.

Two methods for amortising the premium or discount of bonds that were issued at a price other than par are the effective interest rate method and the straight-line method. The effective interest rate method is required under IFRS and preferred under US GAAP because it better reflects the economic substance of the transaction. The effective interest rate method applies the market rate in effect when the bonds were issued (historical market rate or effective interest rate) to the current amortised cost (carrying amount) of the bonds to obtain interest expense for the period. The difference between the interest expense (based on the effective interest rate and amortised cost) and the interest payment (based on the coupon rate and face value) is the **amortisation** of the discount or premium. The straight-line method of amortisation evenly amortises the premium or discount over the life of the bond, similar to straight-line depreciation on long-lived assets. Under either method, as the bond approaches maturity, the amortised cost approaches face value.

Example 3 illustrates both methods of amortisation for bonds issued at a discount. Example 4 shows amortisation for bonds issued at a premium.

EXAMPLE 3

Amortising a Bond Discount

Debond Corp. issues £1,000,000 face value of five-year bonds, dated 1 January 2010, when the market interest rate is 6 percent. The sales proceeds are £957,876. The bonds pay 5 percent interest annually on 31 December.

- 1 What is the interest *payment* on the bonds each year?
- 2 What amount of interest *expense* on the bonds would be reported in 2010 and 2011 using the effective interest rate method?
- 3 Determine the reported value of the bonds (i.e., the carrying amount) at 31 December 2010 and 2011, assuming the effective interest rate method is used to amortise the discount.
- 4 What amount of interest expense on the bonds would be reported under the straight-line method of amortising the discount?

Solution to 1:

The interest payment equals £50,000 annually ($£1,000,000 \times 5\%$).

Solution to 2:

The sales proceeds of £957,876 are less than the face value of £1,000,000; the bonds were issued at a discount of £42,124. The bonds are initially reported as a long-term liability, bonds payable, of £957,876, which comprises the face value of £1,000,000 minus a discount of £42,124. The discount is amortised over time, ultimately, increasing the carrying amount (amortised cost) to face value.

Under the effective interest rate method, interest expense on the bonds is calculated as the bonds' carrying amount times the market rate in effect when the bonds are issued (effective interest rate). For 2010, interest expense is £57,473 = ($£957,876 \times 6\%$). The amount of the discount amortised in 2010 is the difference between the interest expense of £57,473 and the interest payment of £50,000 (i.e., £7,473). The bonds' carrying amount increases by the discount amortisation; at 31 December 2010, the bonds' carrying amount is £965,349 (beginning balance of £957,876 plus £7,473 discount amortisation). At this point, the carrying amount reflects a remaining unamortised discount of £34,651 (£42,124 discount at issuance minus £7,473 amortised).

For 2011, interest expense is £57,921 = ($£965,349 \times 6\%$), the carrying amount of the bonds on 1 January 2011 times the effective interest rate. The amount of the discount amortised in 2011 is the difference between the interest expense of £57,921 and the interest payment of £50,000 (i.e., £7,921). At 31 December 2011, the bonds' carrying amount is £973,270 (beginning balance of £965,349 plus £7,921 discount amortisation).

The following table illustrates interest expense, discount amortisation, and carrying amount (amortised cost) over the life of the bonds.

Year	Carrying Amount (beginning of year)	Interest Expense (at effective interest rate of 6%)	Interest Payment (at coupon rate of 5%)	Amortisation of Discount	Carrying Amount (end of year)
	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)
2010	£957,876	£57,473	£50,000	£7,473	£965,349
2011	965,349	57,921	50,000	7,921	973,270
2012	973,270	58,396	50,000	8,396	981,666
2013	981,666	58,900	50,000	8,900	990,566
2014	990,566	59,434	50,000	9,434	1,000,000
Total		£292,124	£250,000	£42,124	

Solution to 3:

The carrying amounts of the bonds at 31 December 2010 and 2011 are £965,349 and £973,270, respectively. Observe that the carrying amount of the bonds issued at a discount increases over the life of the bonds. At maturity, 31 December 2014, the carrying amount of the bonds equals the face value of the bonds. The carrying amount of the bonds will be reduced to zero when the principal payment is made.

Solution to 4:

Under the straight-line method, the discount (or premium) is evenly amortised over the life of the bonds. In this example, the £42,124 discount would be amortised by £8,424.80 (£42,124 divided by 5 years) each year under the straight-line method. So, the annual interest expense under the straight-line method would be £58,424.80 (£50,000 plus £8,424.80).

The accounting and reporting for zero-coupon bonds is similar to the example above except that no interest payments are made; thus, the amount of interest expense each year is the same as the amount of the discount amortisation for the year.

EXAMPLE 4**Amortising a Bond Premium**

Prembond Corp. issues £1,000,000 face value of five-year bonds, dated 1 January 2010, when the market interest rate is 4 percent. The sales proceeds are £1,044,518. The bonds pay 5 percent interest annually on 31 December.

- 1 What is the interest *payment* on the bonds each year?
- 2 What amount of interest *expense* on the bonds would be reported in 2010 and 2011 using the effective interest rate method?
- 3 Determine the reported value of the bonds (i.e., the carrying amount) at 31 December 2010 and 2011, assuming the effective interest rate method is used to amortise the premium.
- 4 What amount of interest expense on the bonds would be reported under the straight-line method of amortising the premium?

Solution to 1:

The interest payment equals £50,000 annually (£1,000,000 × 5%).

Solution to 2:

The sales proceeds of £1,044,518 are more than the face value of £1,000,000; the bonds were issued at a premium of £44,518. The bonds are initially reported as a long-term liability, bonds payable, of £1,044,518, which comprises the face value of £1,000,000 plus a premium of £44,518. The premium is amortised over time, ultimately decreasing the carrying amount (amortised cost) to face value.

Under the effective interest rate method, interest expense on the bonds is calculated as the bonds' carrying amount times the market rate in effect when the bonds are issued (effective interest rate). For 2010, interest expense is £41,781 = (£1,044,518 × 4%). The amount of the premium amortised in 2010 is the difference between the interest expense of £41,781 and the interest payment of £50,000 (i.e., £8,219). The bonds' carrying amount decreases by the premium amortisation; at 31 December 2010, the bonds' carrying amount is £1,036,299 (beginning balance of £1,044,518 less £8,219 premium amortisation). At this point, the carrying amount reflects a remaining unamortised premium of £36,299 (£44,518 premium at issuance minus £8,219 amortised).

For 2011, interest expense is £41,452 = (£1,036,299 × 4%). The amount of the premium amortised in 2011 is the difference between the interest expense of £41,452 and the interest payment of £50,000 (i.e., £8,548). At 31 December 2011, the bonds' carrying amount is £1,027,751 (beginning balance of £1,036,299 less £8,548 premium amortisation).

The following table illustrates interest expense, premium amortisation, and carrying amount (amortised cost) over the life of the bonds.

Year	Carrying Amount (beginning of year)	Interest Expense (at effective interest rate of 4%)	Interest Payment (at coupon rate of 5%)	Amortisation of Premium	Carrying Amount (end of year)
	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)
2010	£1,044,518	£41,781	£50,000	£8,219	£1,036,299
2011	1,036,299	41,452	50,000	8,548	1,027,751
2012	1,027,751	41,110	50,000	8,890	1,018,861
2013	1,018,861	40,754	50,000	9,246	1,009,615
2014	1,009,615	40,385	50,000	9,615	1,000,000
Total				£44,518	

Solution to 3:

The carrying amounts of the bonds at 31 December 2010 and 2011 are £1,036,299 and £1,027,751, respectively. Observe that the carrying amount of the bonds issued at a premium decreases over the life of the bonds. At maturity, 31 December 2014, the carrying amount of the bonds equals the face value of the bonds. The carrying amount of the bonds will be reduced to zero when the principal payment is made.

Solution to 4:

Under the straight-line method, the premium is evenly amortised over the life of the bonds. In this example, the £44,518 premium would be amortised by £8,903.64 (£44,518 divided by 5 years) each year under the straight-line method. So, the annual interest expense under the straight-line method would be £41,096.36 (£50,000 less £8,903.64).

The reporting of interest payments on the statement of cash flows can differ under IFRS and US GAAP. Under IFRS, interest payments on bonds can be included as an outflow in either the operating section or the financing section of the statement of cash flows. US GAAP requires interest payments on bonds to be included as an operating cash outflow. (Some financial statement users consider the placement of interest payments in the operating section to be inconsistent with the placement of bond issue proceeds in the financing section of the statement of cash flows.) Typically, cash interest paid is not shown directly on the statement of cash flows, but companies are required to disclose interest paid separately.

Amortisation of a discount (premium) is a non-cash item and thus, apart from its effect on taxable income, has no effect on cash flow. In the section of the statement of cash flows that reconciles net income to operating cash flow, amortisation of a discount (premium) is added back to (subtracted from) net income.

2.3 Current Market Rates and Fair Value Reporting Option

Reporting bonds at amortised historical costs (historical cost plus or minus the cumulative amortisation) reflects the market rate at the time the bonds were *issued* (i.e., historical market rate or effective interest rate). As market interest rates change, the bonds' carrying amount diverges from the bonds' fair market value. When market interest rates decline, the fair value of a bond with a fixed coupon rate increases. As a result, a company's economic liabilities may be higher than its reported debt based on amortised historical cost. Conversely, when market interest rates increase, the

fair value of a bond with a fixed coupon rate decreases and the company's economic liability may be lower than its reported debt. Using financial statement amounts based on amortised cost may underestimate (or overestimate) a company's debt-to-total-capital ratio and similar leverage ratios.

Companies recently have been given the option to report financial liabilities at fair values. Financial liabilities reported at fair value are designated as financial liabilities at fair value through profit or loss. Even if a company does not opt to report financial liabilities at fair value, the availability of fair value information in the financial statements has increased. IFRS and US GAAP require fair value disclosures in the financial statements unless the carrying amount approximates fair value or the fair value cannot be reliably measured.⁴

A company selecting the fair value option for a liability with a fixed coupon rate will report gains (losses) when market interest rates increase (decrease). When market interest rates increase or other factors cause the fair value of a company's bonds to decline, the company reports a decrease in the fair value of its liability and a corresponding gain. When interest rates decrease or other factors cause the fair value of a company's bonds to increase, the company reports an increase in the fair value of its liability and a corresponding loss. The gains or losses resulting from changes in fair values are recognised in profit or loss.

Few companies have selected the option to report financial liabilities at fair value. Those that have are primarily companies in the financial sector. Reporting standards for financial investments and derivatives already required these companies to report a significant portion of their assets at fair values. Measuring financial liabilities at other than fair value, when financial assets are measured at fair value, results in earnings volatility. This volatility is the result of using different bases of measurement for financial assets and financial liabilities. Goldman Sachs elected to account for some financial liabilities at fair value under the fair value option. In its fiscal year 2008 10-K filing (page 74), Goldman explains this choice:

The primary reasons for electing the fair value option are to reflect economic events in earnings on a timely basis, to mitigate volatility in earnings from using different measurement attributes and to address simplification and cost-benefit considerations.

Most companies, as required under IFRS and US GAAP, disclose the fair values of financial liabilities. The primary exception to the disclosure occurs when fair value cannot be reliably measured. Example 5 illustrates Sony's fair value disclosures, including the fair values of long-term debt.

EXAMPLE 5

Fair Value Disclosures of Debt and Financial Instruments

The following are excerpts from Notes 2 and 13 of Sony Corporation's 20-F filing for the fiscal year ended 31 March 2009. These discuss the option for reporting fair values in the balance sheet and illustrate financial statement disclosures of fair values.

Excerpt from Note 2: Summary of significant accounting policies

... "The Fair Value Option for Financial Assets and Financial Liabilities." ...permits companies to choose to measure, on an instrument-by-instrument basis, various financial instruments and

⁴ IFRS (IAS 32, IAS 39, and IFRS 7) and US GAAP (FASB ASC 820 and 825).

certain other items at fair value that are not currently required to be measured at fair value. The fair value measurement election is irrevocable and subsequent changes in fair value must be recorded in earnings. ... Sony did not elect the fair value option for any assets or liabilities that were not previously carried at fair value.

Excerpt from Note 13: Fair value measurements

The estimated fair values of Sony's financial instruments are summarised as follows. The following summary excludes cash and cash equivalents, call loans, time deposits, notes and accounts receivable, trade, call money, short-term borrowings, notes and accounts payable, trade and deposits from customers in the banking business because the carrying values of these financial instruments approximated their fair values due to their short-term nature.

	Yen in millions			
	March 31, 2008		March 31, 2009	
	Carrying amount	Estimated fair value	Carrying amount	Estimated fair value
Long-term debt including the current portion	1,020,938	1,024,879	807,687	809,377
Investment contracts included in policyholders' account in the life insurance business	274,779	275,967	286,104	289,905

The fair values of long-term debt including the current portion and investment contracts included in policyholders' account in the life insurance business were estimated based on either the market value or the discounted future cash flows using Sony's current incremental borrowing rates for similar liabilities.

Use the excerpts from the notes to Sony's financial statements to address the following questions:

- 1 Does Sony report the fair values of its long-term debt on the balance sheet?
- 2 How does Sony measure the long-term debt reported on the balance sheet?
- 3 As of 31 March 2008 and 31 March 2009, what is the percent difference in the carrying amount and fair value of Sony's long-term debt?

Solution to 1:

Sony does not report the fair values of its long-term debt on the balance sheet; Sony discloses that it did not elect the fair value option for any assets or liabilities that were not previously carried at fair value in Note 2. In Note 13, we also observe that Sony discloses the estimated fair value of long-term debt separately from its carrying amount.

Solution to 2:

Notes 2 and 13 indicate that Sony did not elect the fair value option. Therefore, the carrying amount of its debt must be its amortised historical cost.

Solution to 3:

In each year, the fair value of Sony's long-term debt is less than 0.5% greater than its carrying amount: 0.4% [= (1,024,879/1,020,938) - 1] on 31 March 2008 and 0.2% [= (809,377/807,687) - 1] on 31 March 2009. Although the estimated fair values are higher, the difference is small and would most likely not materially affect an analysis of the company.

2.4 Derecognition of Debt

Once bonds are issued, a company may leave the bonds outstanding until maturity or redeem the bonds before maturity either by calling the bonds (if the bond issue includes a call provision) or by purchasing the bonds in the open market. If the bonds remain outstanding until the maturity date, the company pays bondholders the face value of the bonds at maturity. The discount or premium on the bonds would be fully amortised at maturity; the carrying amount would equal face value. Upon repayment, bonds payable is reduced by the carrying amount at maturity (face value) of the bonds and cash is reduced by an equal amount. Repayment of the bonds appears in the statement of cash flows as a financing cash outflow.

If a company decides to redeem bonds before maturity and thus extinguish the liability early, bonds payable is reduced by the carrying amount of the redeemed bonds. The difference between the cash required to redeem the bonds and the carrying amount of the bonds is a gain or loss on the extinguishment of debt. Under IFRS, debt issuance costs are included in the measurement of the liability and are thus part of its carrying amount. Under US GAAP, debt issuance costs are accounted for separately from bonds payable and are amortised over the life of the bonds. Any unamortised debt issuance costs must be written off at the time of redemption and included in the gain or loss on debt extinguishment.

For example, a company reporting under IFRS has a £10 million bond issuance with a carrying amount equal to its face value and five years remaining until maturity. The company redeems the bonds at a call price of 103. The redemption cost is £10.3 million (= £10 million × 103%). The company's loss on redemption would be £300 thousand (£10 million carrying amount minus £10.3 million cash paid to redeem the callable bonds).

A gain or loss on the extinguishment of debt is disclosed on the income statement, in a separate line item, when the amount is material. A company typically discloses further detail about the extinguishment in the management discussion and analysis (MD&A) and/or notes to the financial statements.⁵ In addition, in a statement of cash flows prepared using the indirect method, net income is adjusted to remove any gain or loss on the extinguishment of debt from operating cash flows and the cash paid to redeem the bonds is classified as cash used for financing activities. (Recall that the indirect method of the statement of cash flows begins with net income and makes necessary adjustments to arrive at cash from operations, including removal of gains or losses from non-operating activities.)

To illustrate the financial statement impact of the extinguishment of debt, consider the notes payable repurchase by B+H Ocean Carriers in Example 6 below.

⁵ We use the term MD&A generally to refer to any management commentary provided on a company's financial condition, changes in financial condition, and results of operations. In the United States, the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) requires a management discussion and analysis for companies listed on US public markets. Reporting requirements for such a commentary as the SEC-required MD&A vary across exchanges, but some are similar to the SEC requirements. The IASB issued an IFRS Practice Statement, "Management Commentary," in December 2010 to guide all companies reporting under IFRS.

EXAMPLE 6**Debt Extinguishment Disclosure**

The following excerpts are from the 2008 20-F filing of B+H Ocean Carriers. In its statement of cash flows, the company uses the indirect method to reconcile net income with net cash (used in) provided by operations.

**Excerpt from Consolidated Statements of Income
For the years ended 31 December 2008, 2007, and 2006**

	2008	2007	2006
Revenues:			
⋮			
Total revenues	104,908,915	112,416,831	96,879,051
⋮			
Total operating expenses	100,279,906	96,140,562	71,018,929
Income from vessel operations	4,629,009	16,276,269	25,860,122
Other income (expense):			
⋮			
Gain on debt extinguishment	2,345,000	—	—
⋮			
Total other income (expense), net	11,236,107	(14,257,092)	(7,085,809)
Net income	\$15,865,116	\$2,019,177	\$18,774,313

**Excerpt from Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows
For the years ended 31 December 2008, 2007, and 2006**

	2008	2007	2006
CASH FLOWS FROM OPERATING ACTIVITIES:			
Net Income	\$15,865,116	\$2,019,177	\$18,774,313
Adjustments to reconcile net income to net cash (used in) provided by operating activities:			
⋮			
Gain on debt extinguishment	(2,345,000)	—	—
⋮			
Total adjustments	(16,635,993)	38,842,386	19,815,773
Net cash (used in) provided by operating activities	(770,877)	40,861,563	38,590,086
⋮			
CASH FLOWS FROM FINANCING ACTIVITIES:			
Payments for debt financing costs	(294,999)	(1,526,501)	(1,481,505)
⋮			

(Continued)

	2008	2007	2006
Purchase of debt securities	(2,155,000)	—	(5,000,000)
⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮
Payments of unsecured debt	—	(31,402,960)	(1,356,092)

Excerpt from NOTE 2: SUMMARY OF SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES

... The carrying amount of the Company's variable rate long-term debt approximates fair value.

Excerpt from NOTE 8: BONDS PAYABLE

On December 12, 2006, the Company issued \$25 million of unsecured bonds... Interest on the bonds is equal to Libor plus 4%, payable quarterly in arrears. ... During the 4th quarter of 2008, the Company repurchased the unsecured bonds with a face value of \$4.5 million and realized a \$2.3 million gain.

- 1 The balance in bonds payable was reduced at redemption by:
- A \$2,155,000.
 - B \$2,345,000.
 - C \$4,500,000.

Solution to 1:

C is correct. The bonds payable is reduced at redemption by the carrying amount of the bonds redeemed. The cash paid to extinguish the bonds plus the gain on redemption equals the carrying amount of the bonds. The carrying amount of the bonds was \$4,500,000. In this case, the carrying amount equals the face value. The company recognised a gain of \$2,345,000 when it extinguished the debt of \$4,500,000 by paying only \$2,155,000.

2.5 Debt Covenants

Borrowing agreements (the bond indenture) often include restrictions called covenants that protect creditors by restricting activities of the borrower. Debt covenants benefit borrowers to the extent that they lower the risk to the creditors and thus reduce the cost of borrowing. Affirmative covenants restrict the borrower's activities by requiring certain actions. For instance, covenants may require that the borrower maintain certain ratios above a specified amount or perform regular maintenance on real assets used as collateral. Negative covenants require that the borrower not take certain actions. Covenants may restrict the borrower's ability to invest, pay dividends, or make other operating and strategic decisions that might adversely affect the company's ability to pay interest and principal.

Common covenants include limitations on how borrowed monies can be used, maintenance of collateral pledged as security (if any), restrictions on future borrowings, requirements that limit dividends, and requirements to meet specific working capital requirements. Covenants may also specify minimum acceptable levels of financial ratios, such as debt-to-equity, current, or interest coverage.

When a company violates a debt covenant, it is a breach of contract. Depending on the severity of the breach and the terms of the contract, lenders may choose to waive the covenant, be entitled to a penalty payment or higher interest rate, renegotiate, or call for payment of the debt. Bond contracts typically require that the decision to call for immediate repayment be made, on behalf of all the bondholders, by holders of some minimum percentage of the principal amount of the bond issue.

Example 7 illustrates common disclosures related to debt covenants included in financial statement disclosures (notes to the financial statements).

EXAMPLE 7

Illustration of Debt Covenant Disclosures

The following excerpt is from TORM A/S from the Risk Factors section of Item 3, Key Information, in its fiscal year 2008 20-F filing. The excerpt illustrates debt covenants and their disclosure:

Certain of our loan agreements contain restrictive covenants, which may limit our liquidity and corporate activities and prevent proper service of debt, which could result in the loss of our vessels.

Some loan agreements impose operating and financial restrictions upon us. These restrictions may limit our ability to:

- change the management of our vessels without the lenders' consent (which they are not entitled to unreasonably withhold); and
- enter into mergers or corporate restructurings, or effect material divestments, if such would be materially adverse to the company.

Our lenders' interests may be different from ours and we cannot guarantee that we will be able to obtain our lenders' permission when needed. This may prevent us from taking actions that are in our best interest.

The following excerpt is an additional excerpt from "Note 8: Bonds Payable" of B+H Ocean Carriers that was referenced in Example 6.

The bond facility contains certain restrictive covenants which restrict the payment of dividends. The facility requires a minimum value adjusted equity ratio (as defined) of 25%. At December 31, 2008, the Company was in compliance with these covenants and is likely to remain in compliance throughout 2009. However, the bond agreement contains a cross default provision that essentially enables the lender to call the bonds if the Company defaults on a separate loan facility. The Company reclassified its long term debt because of a determination

prospectively that certain covenants in certain long term agreements may be breached during 2009. As such, the Company has recorded the entire balance of the bonds as current as of December 31, 2008.

- 1 Which of the covenants described in the above excerpts is an affirmative covenant?
- 2 Based on the excerpt from B+H Ocean Carriers, what is the implied consequence of breaching certain covenants?

Solution to 1:

The requirement that “a minimum value adjusted equity ratio (as defined) of 25 percent” be maintained by B+H Ocean Carriers is an example of an affirmative covenant. It requires the issuer to do something. The covenants on TORM A/S require that TORM not take certain actions (e.g., not change management of vessels without lenders’ consent and not enter into mergers that would be materially adverse) and are negative covenants.

Solution to 2:

If B+H Ocean Carriers breaches certain covenants, it seems that the entire balance of bonds payable becomes due. The bonds payable have been prospectively moved from non-current to current liabilities.

2.6 Presentation and Disclosure of Long-Term Debt

The non-current (long-term) liabilities section of the balance sheet usually includes a single line item of the total amount of a company’s long-term debt due after one year, with the portion of long-term debt due in the next twelve months shown as a current liability. Notes to the financial statements provide more information on the types and nature of a company’s debt. These note disclosures can be used to determine the amount and timing of future cash outflows. The notes generally include stated and effective interest rates, maturity dates, restrictions imposed by creditors (covenants), and collateral pledged (if any). The amount of scheduled debt repayments for the next five years also is shown in the notes.

Example 8 contains an excerpt from Johnson & Johnson’s 2008 10-K filing that illustrates common long-term debt disclosures.

EXAMPLE 8

Illustration of Long-Term Debt Disclosures

Exhibit 1 is an excerpt from Note 6 of Johnson & Johnson’s 2008 financial statements that illustrates financial statement disclosure for long-term debt, including type and nature of long-term debt, effective interest rates, and required payments over the next five years. Johnson & Johnson reports its debt at amortised cost.

Exhibit 1 Johnson & Johnson

Excerpt from 6. Borrowings

The components of long-term debt are as follows:

(continued)

Exhibit 1 (Continued)

(Dollars in Millions)	2008	Effective Rate %	2007	Effective Rate %
3% Zero Coupon Convertible Subordinated Debentures due 2020	\$183	3	178	3
4.95% Debentures due 2033	500	4.95	500	4.95
3.80% Debentures due 2013	500	3.82	500	3.82
6.95% Notes due 2029	294	7.14	294	7.14
6.73% Debentures due 2023	250	6.73	250	6.73
6.625% Notes due 2009	199	6.8	199	6.8
5.55% Debentures due 2017	1,000	5.55	1,000	5.55
5.95% Notes due 2037	995	5.99	995	5.99
5.50% Notes due 2024 (500 GBP1.4759) ^b (500 GBP 1.9944) ^c	731	5.71	989	5.71
4.75% Notes due 2019 (1B Euro 1.4000) ^b (1B Euro 1.4573) ^c	1,390	5.35	1,447	5.35
5.15% Debentures due 2012	599	5.18	599	5.18
5.86% Debentures due 2038	700	5.86		
5.15% Debentures due 2018	898	5.15		
Other (Includes Industrial Revenue Bonds)	102		132	
	8,341^d	5.46^a	7,083^d	5.47^a
Less current portion	221		9	—
	<u>\$8,120</u>		<u>7,074</u>	

^a Weighted average effective rate.

^b Translation rate at December 28, 2008.

^c Translation rate at December 30, 2007.

^d The excess of the fair value over the carrying value of debt was \$1.4 billion in 2008 and \$0.3 billion in 2007.

The Company has access to substantial sources of funds at numerous banks worldwide. In September 2008, the Company secured a new 364-day and 5-year Credit Facility. Total credit available to the Company approximates \$7.7 billion of which \$6.3 billion expires September 24, 2009, and \$1.4 billion expires September 25, 2013. Interest charged on borrowings under the credit line agreements is based on either bids provided by banks, the prime rate or London Interbank Offered Rates (Libor), plus applicable margins. Commitment fees under the agreements are not material.

...

Aggregate maturities of long-term obligations commencing in 2007 are (dollars in millions):

2009	2010	2011	2012	2013	After 2014
\$221	22	18	620	507	6,953

Use the information in Exhibit 1 to answer the following questions:

- 1 Why are the effective interest rates unchanged from 2007 and 2008 for the first 11 borrowings listed?

- 2 Why does the carrying amount of the “4.95% Debentures due 2033” remain the same in 2007 and 2008?
- 3 Why does the carrying amount of the “4.75% Notes due 2019” decrease from 2007 to 2008?

Solution to 1:

The effective interest rate is the market rate at which the bonds are issued and does not change from year to year.

Solution to 2:

The carrying amount of the “4.95% Debentures due 2033” remains the same because the effective interest rate at which the debentures were issued is the same as the coupon rate. The debentures were issued at par, and the carrying amount does not change.

Solution to 3:

The notes are denominated in euros, with a face value of €1 billion. The dollar/euro translation exchange rate at the end of 2008 was lower than the exchange rate at the end of 2007 (1.4000 versus 1.4573). That decline explains the decrease in carrying value. Note that the face amount of the debt at the translation rate (at the end of 2008, €1 billion times 1.4000 = \$1.4 billion) is higher than the carrying amount (at the end of 2008, \$1.39 billion). The reason for this difference is that the notes were issued at a discount; the effective interest rate of 5.35 percent is higher than the 4.75 percent coupon rate. The carrying amount of the notes thus reflects the amortisation of the discount at issuance; the amortisation of the discount will increase the carrying amount.

In this reading, we focus on accounting for simple debt contracts. Debt contracts can take on additional features, which lead to more complexity. For instance, convertible debt and debt with warrants are more complex instruments that have both debt and equity features. Convertible debt gives the debt holder the option to exchange the debt for equity. Bonds issued with warrants give holders the right to purchase shares of the issuer’s common stock at a specific price, similar to stock options. Issuance of bonds with warrants is more common by non-US companies. Example 9 provides an example of a financial statement disclosure of bonds with warrants issued by a Chinese company.

EXAMPLE 9

Financial Statement Disclosure of Bonds with Warrants

The following excerpt is from the fiscal year 2008 Annual Report of the China Petroleum & Chemical Corporation.

Excerpt from NOTE 29: DEBENTURES PAYABLE

On 26 February 2008, the Company issued convertible bonds with stock warrants due 2014 with an aggregate principal amount of RMB 30 billion in the PRC (the “Bonds with Warrants”). The Bonds with Warrants with fixed interest rate of 0.8% per annum and interest payable annually, were issued at par value of RMB 100. The Bonds with Warrants were guaranteed by Sinopec Group Company. Each lot of the Bonds with Warrants, comprising ten Bonds with Warrants are entitled to warrants (the “Warrants”) to subscribe 50.5 A shares of

the Company during the 5 trading days prior to 3 March 2010 at an initial exercise price of RMB 19.68 per share, subject to adjustment for, amongst other things, cash dividends, subdivision or consolidation of shares, bonus issues, rights issues, capital distribution, change of control and other events which have a dilutive effect on the issued share capital of the Company.

If all warrants were exercised, how many shares would be subscribed for?

Solution:

1,515,000,000 shares would be subscribed for [aggregate principal amount divided by par value of a lot times shares subscribed per lot = (RMB 30,000,000,000 / RMB 1,000) × 50.5 shares].

In addition to disclosures in the notes to the financial statements, an MD&A commonly provides other information about a company's capital resources, including debt financing and off-balance-sheet financing. In the MD&A, management often provides a qualitative discussion on any material trends, favorable or unfavorable, in capital resources and indicates any expected material changes in their mix and relative cost. Additional quantitative information is typically provided, including schedules summarising a company's contractual obligations (e.g., bond payables) and other commitments (e.g., lines of credit and guarantees) in total and over the next five years.

3

LEASES

A company wishing to obtain the use of an asset can either purchase the asset or lease the asset. Section 3.1 describes some advantages to leasing from the viewpoint of the **lessee** (the party obtaining the use of an asset through a lease). Section 3.2 describes the classification of leases. Section 3.2.1 describes the accounting treatments of different types of leases from the perspective of the lessee, and section 3.2.2 discusses leases from the perspective of the **lessor** (the owner of the asset).

3.1 Advantages of Leasing

A lease is a contract between the owner of an asset—the lessor—and another party seeking use of the asset—the lessee. Through the lease, the lessor grants the right to use the asset to the lessee. The right to use the asset can be for a long period, such as 20 years, or a much shorter period, such as a month. In exchange for the right to use the asset, the lessee makes periodic lease payments to the lessor. A lease, then, is a form of financing to the lessee provided by the lessor that enables the lessee to obtain the *use* of the leased asset.

There are several advantages to leasing an asset compared to purchasing it. Leases can provide less costly financing; they usually require little, if any, down payment and often are at lower fixed interest rates than those incurred if the asset was purchased. This financing advantage is the result of the lessor having advantages over the lessee and/or another lender. The lessor may be in a better position to take advantage of tax benefits of ownership, such as depreciation and interest. The lessor may be better able to value and bear the risks associated with ownership, such as obsolescence, residual value, and disposition of asset. The lessor may enjoy economies of scale for servicing assets. As a result of these advantages, the lessor may offer attractive lease terms and

leasing the asset may be less costly for the lessee than owning the asset. Further, the negotiated lease contract may contain less-restrictive provisions than other forms of borrowing.

Companies have also used certain types of leases because of perceived financial reporting and tax advantages. Although they provide a form of financing, certain types of leases are not shown as debt on the balance sheet. The items leased under these operating leases have not appeared as assets on the balance sheet. Therefore, no interest expense or depreciation expense is included in the income statement. In addition, in some countries—including the United States—because financial reporting rules differ from tax regulations, a company may own an asset for tax purposes (and thus obtain deductions for depreciation expense for tax purposes) while not reflecting the ownership in its financial statements. A lease that is structured to provide a company with the tax benefits of ownership while not requiring the asset to be reflected on the company's financial statements is known as a synthetic lease.

3.2 Finance (or Capital) Leases versus Operating Leases

There are two main classifications of leases: **finance leases** (or **capital leases**) and **operating leases**.⁶ The economic substance of a finance (or capital) lease is very different from an operating lease, as are the implications of each for the financial statements for the lessee and lessor. In substance, a finance (capital) lease is equivalent to the purchase of some asset (lease to own) by the buyer (lessee) that is directly financed by the seller (lessor). An operating lease is an agreement allowing the lessee to use some asset for a period of time, as if it were a rental.

Under the existing IFRS standard (IAS 17), the classification of a lease as a finance lease or an operating lease depends on the transfer of the risks and rewards incidental to ownership of the leased asset. If substantially *all* the risks and rewards are transferred to the lessee, the lease is classified as a finance lease and the lessee reports a leased asset and lease obligation on its balance sheet. Otherwise, the lease is reported as an operating lease, in which case the lessee reports neither an asset nor a liability—only the lease expense. Similarly, if the lessor transfers substantially *all* the risks and rewards incidental to legal ownership, the lease is reported as a finance lease and the lessor reports a lease receivable on its balance sheet and removes the leased asset from its balance sheet. Otherwise, the lease is reported as an operating lease, and the lessor keeps the leased asset on its balance sheet. Examples of situations that would normally lead to a lease being classified as a finance lease include the following:⁷

- The lease transfers ownership of the asset to the lessee by the end of the lease term.
- The lessee has the option to purchase the asset at a price that is expected to be sufficiently lower than the fair value at the date the option becomes exercisable for it to be reasonably certain, at the inception of the lease, that the option will be exercised.
- The lease term is for the major part of the economic life of the asset, even if the title is not transferred.

⁶ “Finance lease” is IFRS terminology and “capital lease” is US GAAP terminology. New standards IFRS 16 (Leases) and FASB ASC Topic 842 (Leases) are effective 1 January 2019 and for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2019, respectively. A consequence of these standards is that both operating and finance leases will appear on a lessee's balance sheets.

⁷ Examples are from IAS 17, paragraph 10, and do not include all indicators that would lead to a lease being classified as a finance lease.

- At the inception of the lease, the present value of the minimum lease payments amounts to at least substantially all of the fair value of the leased asset.
- The leased assets are of such a specialized nature that only the lessee can use them without major modifications.

As mentioned previously, a new IFRS standard for accounting for leases (IFRS 16) is applicable for financial years beginning 1 January 2019. IFRS 16 defines a lease as a contract, or part of a contract, that conveys the right to use an asset (the underlying asset) for a period of time in exchange for consideration.⁸

Under IFRS 16, if a contract meets the above criteria, the lessee is required to recognize all of its leases on the balance sheet.⁹ This involves recognizing both a “right to use” asset and a lease liability in the lessee’s balance sheet. In essence, IFRS 16 requires lessees to record both finance and operating leases in an identical manner—that is, as assets and associated liabilities in the lessee’s balance sheet.

Although accounting for leases under US GAAP is guided by a similar principle of the transfer of benefits and risks, US GAAP is more prescriptive in its criteria for classifying capital and operating leases. Under US GAAP,¹⁰ leases can be recognized as either a capital (finance) or an operating lease. Four criteria are specified to identify when a lease is a capital lease:¹¹

- 1 Ownership of the leased asset transfers to the lessee at the end of the lease.
- 2 The lease contains an option for the lessee to purchase the leased asset cheaply (bargain purchase option).
- 3 The lease term is 75 percent or more of the useful life of the leased asset.
- 4 The present value of lease payments is 90 percent or more of the fair value of the leased asset.

Only one of these criteria has to be met for the lease to be considered a capital lease by the lessee. On the lessor side, satisfying at least one of these four criteria plus meeting revenue recognition requirements (that is, being reasonably assured of cash collection and having performed substantially under the lease) determine a capital lease. If none of the four criteria are met or if the revenue recognition requirement is not met, the lessor reports the lease as an operating lease.

3.2.1 Accounting and Reporting by the Lessee

Because a finance lease is economically similar to borrowing money and buying an asset, a company that enters into a finance lease as the lessee reports an asset (leased asset) and related debt (lease payable) on its balance sheet. The initial value of both the leased asset and lease payable is the lower of the present value of future lease payments and the fair value of the leased asset; in many cases, these will be equal. On the income statement, the company reports interest expense on the debt, and if the asset acquired is depreciable, the company reports depreciation expense. (The lessor, as we illustrate in the next section, reports the sale of an asset and a lease as receivable.) Note that following the introduction of IFRS 16, all contracts meeting the criteria of a lease are classified as finance leases by the lessee, and the lessor continues to classify leases as either financial or operating.

⁸ <http://www.ifrs.org/-/media/project/leases/ifrs/published-documents/ifrs16-project-summary.pdf>

⁹ IFRS 16 allows the lessee to elect to account for lease payments as an expense on a straight line basis over the lease term or another systematic basis for two types of leases: (1) leases with a lease term of 12 months or less and containing no purchase options, and (2) leases where the underlying asset has a low value when new.

¹⁰ FASB ASC Topic 842 [Leases].

¹¹ FASB ASC Topic 840 [Leases].

Because an operating lease is economically similar to renting an asset, a company that enters into an operating lease as the lessee records a lease expense on its income statement during the period it uses the asset. No asset or liability is recorded on its balance sheet. This has led lessees to often prefer operating leases to finance leases. (Although classifying a lease as an operating lease can make reported profitability ratios and debt-to-equity ratios appear better, financial analysts are aware of this impact and typically adjust the reported numbers accordingly.)

On the lessee's statement of cash flows, for an operating lease, the lease payment is shown as an operating cash outflow. For a finance lease, only the portion of the lease payment relating to interest expense potentially reduces operating cash flow; the portion of the lease payment that reduces the lease liability appears as a cash outflow in the financing section.

Example 10 illustrates the accounting of a finance lease by a lessee.

EXAMPLE 10

Determining the Initial Recognition and Measurement and Subsequent Measurement of a Finance Lease for a Lessee

CAPBS Inc. enters into a lease agreement to acquire the use of a piece of machinery for four years beginning on 1 January 2010. The lease requires four annual payments of €28,679 starting on 1 January 2010. The useful life of the machine is four years, and its salvage value is zero. CAPBS accounts for the lease as a finance lease. The fair value of the machine is €100,000. The present value of the lease payments using the company's discount rate of 10 percent is €100,000. (A reminder is relevant for present value calculations: Lease payments are made at the beginning of each period.) The company uses straight-line depreciation.

- 1 Comment on the appropriateness of CAPBS treating the lease agreement as a finance lease under IFRS and a capital lease under US GAAP.
- 2 What is the amount reported as a leased asset on the balance sheet on 1 January 2010? What depreciation expense is reported in fiscal year 2010?
- 3 What is the amount of the machinery reported as a leased asset on the balance sheet on 31 December 2010?
- 4 What is the amount of the lease liability reported on the balance sheet on 1 January 2010? What interest expense is reported in fiscal year 2010?
- 5 What is the amount of the lease liability reported on the balance sheet on 31 December 2010? What interest expense is reported in fiscal year 2011?
- 6 If CAPBS had determined that the above lease was an operating lease, what amount of expenses would be reported on the income statements in fiscal 2010 and 2011? How does this expense compare to the expenses reported under a capital lease?

Solution to 1:

CAPBS should treat this lease as a finance lease under IFRS. The machine is leased for the major part of its useful life (the useful life of the machine and the lease are each four years). Also, the present value of lease payments equals substantially the fair value of the machine (both are €100,000). CAPBS should treat this lease as a capital lease under US GAAP. The machine is leased for more than 75 percent of its useful life, and the present value of the lease payments exceeds 90 percent of the fair value of the leased asset.

Solution to 2:

The amount initially reported as a leased asset on 1 January 2010 is €100,000. Depreciation expense each year is €25,000 [(€100,000 – €0)/4 years].

The table below shows CAPBS's depreciation expense and carrying amount for the leased asset by year.

Year	Initial Recognition Amount	Depreciation Expense	Accumulated Depreciation	Carrying Amount (year-end)
	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)
2010	€100,000	€25,000	€25,000	€75,000
2011	100,000	25,000	50,000	50,000
2012	100,000	25,000	75,000	25,000
2013	100,000	25,000	100,000	0
		€100,000		

- Column (a) is the lower of the fair value of the machinery and the present value (PV) of lease payments at lease inception. In this example, they are the same.
- Column (b) is the depreciation expense of €25,000 per year [straight-line depreciation = acquisition cost less salvage value divided by useful life = (€100,000 – €0)/4 years].
- Column (c) is the accumulated depreciation on the leased asset calculated as the prior year's accumulated depreciation plus the current year's depreciation expense.
- Column (d) is the carrying amount of the machine (the leased asset), which is the difference between the initial recognition amount and accumulated depreciation.

Solution to 3:

From the table presented in *Solution to 2*, the carrying amount on 31 December 2010 is €75,000.

Solution to 4:

The amount of the lease liability initially recognised on 1 January 2010 is €100,000, which is both the fair value of the leased asset and the present value of lease payments. However, the first lease payment of €28,679, due on 1 January 2010, immediately reduces the lease liability balance to €71,321. Interest expense in 2010 is based on the €71,321 carrying amount. Interest expense reported in fiscal year 2010 is €7,132 (€71,321 × 10%).

The table below shows CAPBS's lease payment, interest expense, and carrying values for its lease liability by year.¹²

¹² The computations included throughout the example were made using an Excel worksheet; small apparent discrepancies in the calculations are because of rounding.

Year	Lease Liability, 1 January	Annual Lease Payment, 1 January	Interest (at 10%; accrued in previous year)	Reduction of Lease Liability, 1 January	Lease Liability on 31 December after Lease Payment on 1 January Same Year
	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)
2010	€100,000	€28,679	€0	€28,679	€71,321
2011	71,321	28,679	7,132	21,547	49,774
2012	49,774	28,679	4,977	23,702	26,072
2013	26,072	28,679	2,607	26,072	0
		€114,717	€14,717	€100,000	

- Column (a) is the lease liability at the beginning of the year.
 - 2010: €100,000
 - Years thereafter: It is the lease liability at the end of the previous year
- Column (b) is the annual lease payment made at the beginning of the year. A portion of the lease payment reduces interest accrued in the previous year, and the remainder of the lease payment reduces the carrying amount of the lease liability.
 - For example, in 2011, the €28,679 paid on 1 January reduces the interest payable of €7,132 that accrued in 2010 ($€71,321 \times 10\%$) and then reduces the lease liability by €21,547.
- Column (c) is the interest portion of the 1 January lease payment made on that date. This amount of interest was accrued as interest payable during the *prior* year and is reported as the interest expense of the *prior* year. For example, at 31 December 2010, interest expense and interest payable in the amount of €7,132 was recognised.
- Column (d) is the reduction of the lease liability, which is the difference between the annual lease payment and the interest portion.
- Column (e) is the lease liability on 31 December of a given year just before the lease payment is made on the first day of the next year. It is equal to the lease liability on 1 January of the same year (column a) less the reduction of the lease liability (column d).

Solution to 5:

From the table presented in *Solution to 4*, the interest expense in fiscal year 2011 is €4,977 ($€49,744 \times 10\%$).

Solution to 6:

As an operating lease, a rent expense of €28,679 would be reported on the income statement each year. Under a capital lease, the expenses related to the lease are depreciation and interest expense. In 2010, the depreciation expense is €25,000 and the interest expense is €7,132. In 2011, the depreciation expense is €25,000 and the interest expense is €4,977.

A company reporting a lease as an operating lease will typically show higher profits in early years, higher return measures in early years, and a stronger solvency position than an identical company reporting an identical lease as a finance lease. However, the company reporting the lease as a finance lease will show higher operating cash flows because the portion of the lease payment that reduces the carrying amount of

the lease liability will be reflected as a financing cash outflow rather than an operating cash outflow. The interest expense portion of the lease payment on the statement of cash flows can be treated as operating or financing cash outflow under IFRS and is treated as an operating cash outflow under US GAAP. However, the effect of reporting under either an operating lease or finance lease over the life of the lease is neutral with respect to pretax profits.

The explicit standards in the United States that determine when a company should report a capital lease versus an operating lease make it easier for a company to structure a lease so that it is reported as an operating lease. The company structures the lease so that none of the four capital lease identifying criteria is met. Similar to debt disclosures, however, lease disclosures show payments under both capital and operating leases for the next five years and afterward. These disclosures can help to estimate the extent of a company's off-balance-sheet lease financing through operating leases. Example 11 illustrates the disclosures of operating and finance leases. Although these disclosures can be used to determine the effect on the financial statements if all operating leases were capitalized, this reading focuses solely on the information that is disclosed.

EXAMPLE 11**Financial Statement Disclosure of Leases by the Lessee**

BASF Group has significant commitments under finance and operating leases. Presented below is selected note disclosure from its fiscal year 2008 financial statements.

27. LEASING**Leased assets**

Property, plant and equipment include those assets which are considered to be economically owned through a finance lease. They primarily concern the following items:

Leased assets (million €)	2008		2007	
	Acquisition cost	Net book value	Acquisition cost	Net book value
Land, land rights and buildings	20	13	26	18
Machinery and technical equipment	223	96	226	118
Miscellaneous equipment and fixtures	73	18	71	20
Advance payments and construction in progress	—	—	—	—
	316	127	323	156

Liabilities from finance leases (million €)	2008			2007		
	Minimum lease payments	Interest portion	Leasing liability	Minimum lease payments	Interest portion	Leasing liability
Following year 1	20	5	15	29	6	23
Following year 2	20	5	14	19	5	13
Following year 3	22	5	18	18	5	13
Following year 4	11	2	9	21	5	16

Liabilities from finance leases (million €)	2008			2007		
	Minimum lease payments	Interest portion	Leasing liability	Minimum lease payments	Interest portion	Leasing liability
Following year 5	7	2	4	10	3	8
Over 5 years	29	10	20	35	12	23
	108	29	80	132	36	96

In the current business year and in 2007, no additional lease payments arising from contractual obligations were recognized in income above the minimum lease payments.

In 2008, leasing liabilities were not offset by any expected minimum lease payments from sub-leases.

In addition, BASF is a lessee under operating lease contracts. The resulting lease obligations totaling €1,449 million in 2008 and €1,272 in 2007 are due in the following years:

Commitments due to operating lease contracts (million €)		
	Nominal value of the future minimum payments	
	Dec. 31, 2008	Dec. 31, 2007
Less than 1 year	280	292
1–5 years	613	505
Over 5 years	556	475
	1,449	1,272

- At the end of fiscal year 2008, what is the total amount of finance lease liabilities BASF reports on its balance sheet?
- Based on finance lease agreements in place at the end of fiscal year 2008, how much will BASF pay out on finance lease commitments in fiscal year 2009?
- Based on finance lease agreements in place at the end of fiscal year 2008, what is the amount of interest expense that BASF will report in fiscal year 2009?
- At the end of fiscal 2008, what are BASF's total commitments under operating leases?
- Based on operating lease agreements in place at the end of fiscal year 2008, what is the minimum amount of rent expense that BASF will report in fiscal year 2009?
- At the end of fiscal year 2008, what is the amount of leased assets (carrying amount) BASF reports on its balance sheet?

Solution to 1:

€80 million—the total of the 2008 column “Leasing liability” in the “Liabilities from finance leases” table.

Solution to 2:

€20 million—reported in the 2008 column “Minimum lease payments,” row “Following year 1,” in the “Liabilities from finance leases” table.

Solution to 3:

€5 million—reported in the 2008 column “Interest portion,” row “Following year 1,” in the “Liabilities from finance leases” table.

Solution to 4:

€1,449 million—the total of the 2008 column “Nominal value of the future minimum payments” in the “Commitments due to operating lease contracts” table.

Solution to 5:

€280 million—reported in the 2008 column “Nominal value of the future minimum payments,” row “Less than 1 year,” in the “Commitments due to operating lease contracts” table.

Solution to 6:

€127 million—the total of the 2008 column “Net book value” in the “Leased assets” table.

Example 12 contains information from Royal Dutch Shell’s 2008 financial statements. As required by IFRS, the balance sheet presents finance lease obligations in the line items labeled “Debt.” Additionally, IFRS require certain disclosures to be made in the notes; the layout of disclosure notes on debt varies across companies. For Royal Dutch, the disclosure note on debt, Note 18[A], first shows a breakdown of total debt reported on the balance sheet into two components: the amount of debt excluding finance lease obligations and the amount of finance lease obligations. Note 18[B] provides disclosures on the component of on-balance-sheet debt, excluding finance lease obligations. Next, Note 18[C] presents information about all the companies’ lease obligations—both finance leases (which are a component of the on-balance-sheet total debt) and operating leases (for which no obligation appears on the balance sheet). This disclosure clearly illustrates that although finance leases and operating leases are both contractual obligations, only the finance leases are reported on the balance sheet. As mentioned above, a subsequent reading demonstrates how analysts adjust the total amount of debt as reported on the balance sheet to also include the off-balance-sheet obligations for operating leases. As mentioned previously, analysts also should be aware that IFRS 16 requires lessees to account for leases of more than one year in a similar way to finance leases.

EXAMPLE 12**Long-Term Debt and Lease Disclosures**

Use the following excerpts taken from Royal Dutch Shell 2008 consolidated financial statements and notes to the consolidated financial statements to answer the questions below.

Excerpt from CONSOLIDATED BALANCE SHEET

\$ million	NOTES	Dec 31, 2008	Dec 31, 2007
LIABILITIES			
Non-current liabilities			
Debt	18	13,772	12,363
⋮		⋮	⋮

(Continued)

\$ million	NOTES	Dec 31, 2008	Dec 31, 2007
Current liabilities			
Debt	18	9,497	5,736
⋮		⋮	⋮
Total liabilities		153,535	143,502
EQUITY			
⋮		⋮	⋮
Total equity		128,866	125,968
Total liabilities and equity		282,401	269,470

Excerpt from CONSOLIDATED STATEMENT OF CASH FLOWS

	Dec 31, 2008	Dec 31, 2007
Net increase/(decrease) in debt with maturity period within three months	4,161	(455)
Other debt:		
New borrowings	3,555	4,565
Repayments	(2,890)	(2,796)

Excerpt from Note 1: Basis of Preparation

The Consolidated Financial Statements of Royal Dutch Shell plc (the Company) and its subsidiaries (collectively known as “Shell” or the “Shell group”) have been prepared in accordance with the provisions of the Companies Act 1985, Article 4 of the International Accounting Standards (IAS) Regulation and with International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRS) as adopted by the European Union. As applied to Shell, there are no material differences with IFRS as issued by the International Accounting Standards Board (IASB), therefore the Consolidated Financial Statements have been prepared in accordance with IFRS as issued by the IASB.

Excerpt from Note 2: Accounting Policies**Financial liabilities**

Debt and accounts payable are recognised initially at fair value based on amounts exchanged and subsequently at amortised cost, except for fixed rate debt subject to fair value hedging, which is re-measured for the hedged risk (see “Derivative contracts”).

Interest on debt is accounted for using the effective interest method and, other than interest capitalised, is recognised in income.

Where fair value is not applied subsequent to initial recognition but is required for disclosure purposes, it is based on market prices where available, otherwise it is calculated as the net present value of expected future cash flows.

Excerpt from Note 18: Debt and Lease Arrangements
[A] DEBT (\$ million)

	Dec 31, 2008			Dec 31, 2007		
	Debt (excluding finance lease obligations)	Finance lease obligations	Total	Debt (excluding finance lease obligations)	Finance lease obligations	Total
Short-term debt	7,879	—	7,879	3,292	—	3,292
Long-term debt due within one year	1,314	304	1,618	2,290	154	2,444
Current debt	9,193	304	9,497	5,582	154	5,736
Non-current debt	10,061	3,711	13,772	8,533	3,830	12,363
Total	19,254	4,015	23,269	14,115	3,984	18,099

The fair value of debt approximates the carrying amount.

[B] DEBT (EXCLUDING FINANCE LEASE OBLIGATIONS)

The following tables compare contractual cash flows for debt (excluding finance lease obligations) owed by subsidiaries at December 31, by year of maturity, with the carrying amount in the Consolidated Balance Sheet. The carrying amount reflects the effects of discounting, premiums and fair value adjustments where hedging is applied.

2008	\$ million, except where otherwise indicated								
	Contractual repayments (excluding interest)							Difference from carrying amount	Carrying Amount
	2009	2010	2011	2012	2013	2014 and after	Total		
Fixed rate dollar	6,821	506	1,001	503	1	3,539	12,371	290	12,661
Average interest rate	2.6%	5.2%	5.6%	5.0%	7.3%	5.4%			
Variable rate dollar debt	521	156	5	—	—	122	804	—	804
Average interest rate	1.8%	3.8%	6.3%	—	—	0.0%			
Fixed rate European debt	568	1,146	285	—	—	2,117	4,116	197	4,313
Average interest rate	2.9%	4.8%	2.0%	—	—	4.6%			
Variable rate European debt	237	—	—	—	—	—	237	—	237

2008	\$ million, except where otherwise indicated								
	Contractual repayments (excluding interest)							Total	Difference from carrying amount
	2009	2010	2011	2012	2013	2014 and after			
Average interest rate	3.1%	—	—	—	—	—			
Other fixed rate debt	426	—	2	—	1	—	429	—	429
Average interest rate	18.4%	—	11.7%	—	12.4%	—			
Other variable rate debt	620	33	143	14	—	—	810	—	810
Average interest rate	9.4%	11.5%	7.8%	4.8%	—	—			
Total	9,193	1,841	1,436	517	2	5,778	18,767	487	19,254

The table above excludes interest estimated to be \$827 million in 2009, \$480 million in 2010, \$389 million in 2011, \$316 million in 2012, \$290 million in 2013 and \$290 million in 2014 and after (assuming interest rates with respect to variable rate debt remain constant and there is no change in aggregate principal amount of debt other than repayment at scheduled maturity as reflected in the table).

The weighted average interest rate on short-term debt excluding the short-term portion of long-term debt at December 31, 2008, was 4% (2007: 7%).

[C] LEASE ARRANGEMENTS

The future minimum lease payments for finance and operating leases and the present value of minimum finance lease payments at December 31, by maturity date are as follows:

2008	\$ million			
	Total future minimum finance lease payments	Interest	Present value of minimum finance lease payments	Total future minimum operating lease payments
2009	608	304	304	4,648
2010–2013	2,008	1,094	914	9,905
2014 and after	4,076	1,279	2,797	4,712
Total	6,692	2,677	4,015	19,265

Operating lease expenses were as follows (\$ million):

	2008	2007	2006
Minimum lease payments	3,339	3,091	2,571
Contingent rentals	68	63	59
Sub-lease income	(161)	(138)	(132)
Total	3,246	3,016	2,498

Use the above information to answer the following questions:

- 1 How does Royal Dutch Shell initially value its debt on the balance sheet? How is debt subsequently measured on the balance sheet?
- 2 What method does Shell use to calculate interest expense on its debt?
- 3 What is the total amount of debt appearing within current liabilities on the balance sheet at 31 December 2008, and what does it include?
- 4 What is the total amount of debt due after one year appearing on the balance sheet at 31 December 2008, and what does it include?
- 5 How does the interest rate in 2008 on short-term debt (excluding finance lease obligations and the short-term portion of long-term debt) compare to that in 2007?
- 6 What is the fair value of Royal Dutch Shell's debt at 31 December 2008?
- 7 What was Royal Dutch Shell's rent expense in fiscal year 2008 related to operating leases?
- 8 Comment on the relative magnitude of operating leases compared to finance leases?
- 9 What are Shell's debt-to-equity ratios for 2008 and 2007? Comment on year-to-year changes.

Solution to 1:

From Note 2, debt is initially reported at fair value based on amounts exchanged. After issuance, debt is reported at amortised cost except for certain fixed rate debt that is subject to fair value hedging. That debt is remeasured to fair value.

Solution to 2:

Note 2 indicates that Shell uses the effective interest rate method to calculate interest expense.

Solution to 3:

The total amount of debt included in current liabilities on the balance sheet is \$9,497. Note 18[A] shows that this amount comprises \$7,879 short-term debt (excluding finance lease obligations), \$1,314 long-term debt due within one year (excluding finance lease obligations), and \$304 finance lease obligations. The finance lease obligations are those due within one year.

Solution to 4:

The total amount of debt due after next year (non-current debt) is \$13,722. Note 18[A] shows that this amount comprises \$10,061 debt (excluding finance lease obligations) and \$3,711 finance lease obligations.

Solution to 5:

In Note 18 [B], Shell indicates that the interest rate on short-term debt has declined significantly. The weighted average interest rate at 31 December on short-term debt was 4 percent in 2008 and 7 percent in 2007.

Solution to 6:

From Note 18 [A], Shell reports that the fair value of debt approximates its carrying amount. The carrying amount is \$23,269.

Solution to 7:

From Note 18 [C], rent expense on operating leases was \$3,246 in 2008.

Solution to 8:

Although operating and finance leases are accounted for differently, we can compare the undiscounted future minimum lease payments under operating leases and finance leases reported in Note 18 [C] to gain an initial understanding of their relative magnitude. The total future minimum lease payments under operating leases of \$19,265 are more than two and one-half times the \$6,692 under finance leases.

Solution to 9:

Debt-to-equity ratios are calculated as follows (\$ million):

	2008	2007
Debt (included in non-current liabilities)	13,772	12,363
Debt (included in current liabilities)	9,497	5,736
Total current and non-current debt	23,269	18,099
Total equity	128,866	125,966
Debt-to-equity	18.06%	14.37%

The debt-to-equity ratio increased to 18.06 percent in 2008 from 14.37 percent in 2007. This increase is primarily attributable to an increase in short-term debt. From Note 18 [A] disclosures, short-term debt increased by \$4,587 million (from \$3,292 million in 2007 to \$7,879 million in 2008), while the current portion of long-term debt decreased by \$826 million (from \$2,444 million to \$1,618 million) and the non-current portion of debt increased by only \$1,409 million (from \$12,363 million to \$13,772 million). The financing section of the statement of cash flows discloses that Shell issued \$4,161 million in short-term debt in 2008, compared with repaying short-term debt in 2007.

3.2.2 Accounting and Reporting by the Lessor

Similar to accounting and reporting on the lessee side, the lessor also must determine whether a lease is classified as operating or finance. Under IFRS, the determination of a finance lease on the lessor's side mirrors that of the lessee's. That is, in a finance lease the lessor transfers substantially all the risks and rewards incidental to legal ownership.¹³ Under US GAAP, the lessor determines whether a lease is a capital or operating lease using the same four identifying criteria as a lessee, plus the additional revenue recognition criteria. That is, the lessor must be reasonably assured of cash collection and has performed substantially under the lease. From the lessor's perspective, US GAAP distinguishes between types of capital leases. There are two main types of capital leases from a lessor's perspective: 1) **direct financing leases**, and 2) **sales-type leases**.¹⁴

Under IFRS and US GAAP, if a lessor enters into an operating lease, the lessor records any lease revenue when earned. The lessor also continues to report the leased asset on the balance sheet and the asset's associated depreciation expense on the income statement.

Under IFRS, if a lessor enters into a finance lease, the lessor reports a receivable at an amount equal to the net investment in the lease (the present value of the minimum lease payments receivable and any estimated unguaranteed residual value accruing

¹³ IAS 17, paragraph 36.

¹⁴ A leveraged lease is a third type of capital lease from the lessor's perspective under US GAAP. FASB ASC paragraph 840-3-05-4.

to the lessor).¹⁵ The leased asset is derecognised; assets are reduced by the carrying amount of the leased asset. Initial direct costs incurred by a lessor, other than a manufacturer or dealer lessor, are added to the receivable and reduce the amount of income recognised over the lease term. The lease payment is treated as repayment of principal (reduces lease receivable) and finance income. The recognition of finance income should reflect a constant periodic rate of return on the lessor's net investment in the lease. Under the new IFRS on lease accounting (IFRS 16), lessors continue to recognize leases as either finance or operating leases in a similar manner to IAS 17.

For lessors that are manufacturers or dealers, the initial direct costs are treated as an expense when the selling profit is recognised; typically, selling profit is recognised at the beginning of the lease term. Sales revenue equals the lower of the fair value of the asset or the present value of the minimum lease payments. The cost of sale is the carrying amount of the leased asset less the present value of the estimated unguaranteed residual value.

Under US GAAP, a direct financing lease results when the present value of lease payments (and thus the amount recorded as a lease receivable) equals the carrying value of the leased asset. Because there is no "profit" on the asset itself, the lessor is essentially providing financing to the lessee and the revenues earned by the lessor are financing in nature (i.e., interest revenue). If, however, the present value of lease payments (and thus the amount recorded as a lease receivable) exceeds the carrying amount of the leased asset, the lease is treated as a sales-type lease.

Both types of capital leases have similar effects on the balance sheet: The lessor reports a lease receivable based on the present value of future lease payments and derecognises the leased asset. The carrying value of the leased asset relative to the present value of lease payments distinguishes a direct financing lease from a sales-type lease. A direct financing lease is reported when the present value of lease payment is equal to the value of the leased asset to the lessor. When the present value of lease payments is greater than the value of the leased asset, the lease is a sales-type lease. The income statement effect will thus differ based on the type of lease.

In a direct financing lease, the lessor exchanges a lease receivable for the leased asset, no longer reporting the leased asset on its books. The lessor's revenue is derived from interest on the lease receivable. In a sales-type lease, the lessor "sells" the asset to the lessee and also provides financing on the sale. Therefore, in a sales-type lease, a lessor reports revenue from the sale, cost of goods sold (i.e., the carrying amount of the asset leased), profit on the sale, and interest revenue earned from financing the sale. The lessor will show a profit on the transaction in the year of inception and interest revenue over the life of the lease.

EXAMPLE 13

Determining Initial Recognition and Measurement and Subsequent Measurement of a Finance Lease when the Present Value of Lease Payments Equals the Value of the Leased Asset

DIRFIN Inc. owns a piece of machinery and plans to lease the machine on 1 January 2010. In the lease contract, DIRFIN requires four annual payments of €28,679 starting on 1 January 2010. DIRFIN is confident that the payments will be received. The useful life of the machine is four years, and its salvage value is

¹⁵ Some lease contracts specify minimum lease payments with the potential for additional payments based upon some criteria.

zero. The present value of the lease payments and the fair value of the machine are each €100,000. The carrying amount for the machine also is €100,000. DIRFIN's discount rate is 10 percent.

- 1 Comment on the appropriateness of DIRFIN's treating the lease as a finance lease under IFRS and a capital lease under US GAAP.
- 2 What is the amount of the lease receivable reported on the balance sheet on 1 January 2010? What is interest revenue reported in fiscal year 2010?
- 3 What is the carrying amount of the machine reported on the balance sheet on 1 January 2010?
- 4 What is the amount of the lease receivable reported on the balance sheet on 31 December 2010? What is interest income reported in fiscal year 2011?
- 5 If DIRFIN had determined the above lease was an operating lease, what amount of income would be reported on the income statement in fiscal year 2010?

Solution to 1:

Treating this lease as a finance lease under IFRS and a capital lease under US GAAP is appropriate. Under the old international standard, the lease needed to meet at least two of the suggested criteria for a finance lease: 1) The lease term is for the major part of the economic life of the asset, and 2) at inception of the lease, the present value of the minimum lease payments amounts to at least substantially all of the fair value of the leased asset. Under IFRS 16, most long-term leases are accounted for as finance leases. Under US GAAP, the lease meets more than one of the required criteria for a capital lease: 1) The lease term is 75 percent or more of the useful life of the leased asset (the lease term and useful life are both four years), and 2) the present value is 90 percent or more of the fair value of the leased asset (the present value of lease payments approximately equals the fair value of the machine). The revenue recognition requirement also is met. Under US GAAP, this capital lease is classified as a direct financing lease because the present value of lease payment is equal to the value of the leased asset.

Solution to 2:

DIRFIN removes the leased asset from its records and records a lease receivable. On its income statement, DIRFIN reports interest revenues earned from financing the lease. The table below shows DIRFIN's interest revenue and carrying amounts for the lease receivable.

On 1 January 2010, the lease receivable is initially recorded at €100,000. Immediately after the first lease payment is received on 1 January 2010, the carrying amount of the lease receivable decreases to €71,321 and remains at this amount through 31 December 2010. Interest revenue for 2010 is €7,132 (10 percent interest rate times the loan receivable balance of €71,321 throughout 2010).

Year	Lease Receivable, 1 January	Annual Lease Payment Received, 1 January	Interest (at 10%; accrued in previous year)	Reduction of Lease Receivable, 1 January	Lease Receivable on 31 December after Lease Payment on 1 January of Same Year
	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)
2010	€100,000	€28,679	€0	€28,679	€71,321
2011	71,321	28,679	7,132	21,547	49,774
2012	49,774	28,679	4,977	23,702	26,072

(continued)

Year	Lease Receivable, 1 January	Annual Lease Payment Received, 1 January	Interest (at 10%; accrued in previous year)	Reduction of Lease Receivable, 1 January	Lease Receivable on 31 December after Lease Payment on 1 January of Same Year
2013	26,072	28,679	2,607	26,072	0
		€114,717	€14,717	€100,000	

- Column (a) is the lease receivable at the beginning of the year.
- Column (b) is the annual lease payment received at the beginning of the year, which is allocated to interest and reduction of the lease receivable.
- Column (c) is interest for the year calculated as the lease receivable outstanding for the year multiplied by the interest rate.
- Column (d) is the reduction of the lease receivable, which is the difference between the annual lease payments received and interest. Because the lease payment is due on 1 January, this amount of interest is a receivable at the end of the *prior* year and interest revenue of the *prior* year.
- Column (e) is the lease receivable after the lease payment is received and at the end of the year. It is the lease receivable at 1 January (column a) less the reduction of the lease receivable (column d).

Solution to 3:

DIRFIN effectively sells the machine through the finance lease and so reports no carrying amount for the machine.

Solution to 4:

The lease receivable is €71,321 at 31 December 2010. At 1 January 2011, the lease receivable decreases to €49,774 after the second lease payment is received on 1 January 2011. Interest revenue for 2011 is €4,977 (10 percent interest rate times the loan receivable balance of €49,774 throughout 2011).

Solution to 5:

As an operating lease, rent income of €28,679 would be reported on the income statement. Note that IFRS 16 does not allow the lease to be recognised as an operating lease.

When a lessor enters into a sales-type lease (a lease agreement where the present value of the future lease payments is greater than the value of the leased asset to the lessor), it will show a profit on the transaction in the year of lease inception and interest revenue over the life of the lease.

EXAMPLE 14

Determining the Financial Statement Impact of a Finance Lease by the Lessor when the Present Value of Lease Payments Is Greater than the Value of the Leased Asset

Assume a (hypothetical) company, Selnow, manufactures machinery and enters into an agreement to lease a machine on 1 January 2010. Under the lease, the company is to receive four annual payments of €28,679 starting on 1 January 2010. Selnow is confident that the payments will be received. The fair value of the

machine and present value of the lease payments (using a 10 percent discount rate) are each €100,000, and the carrying amount of the machine is €90,000. The useful life of the machine is four years, and its salvage value is zero.

- 1 Comment on the appropriateness of Selnow's treatment of the lease agreement as a finance lease under IFRS and a capital lease under US GAAP.
- 2 Ignoring taxes, what is Selnow's income related to the lease in 2010? In 2011?

Solution to 1:

Treating this lease as a finance lease under IFRS and a capital lease under US GAAP is appropriate.

Under IFRS, the lease meets at least two of the suggested criteria for a finance lease: 1) The lease term is for the major part of the economic life of the asset (the lease term and useful life of the machine are both four years), and 2) at inception of the lease the present value of the minimum lease payments amounts to at least substantially all of the fair value of the leased asset (the present value of lease payments equals the fair value of the machine). Note that under IFRS 16, the lessor needs to account for the lease as a finance lease even if the above criteria are not met.

Under US GAAP, the lease meets more than one of the required capital lease criteria, including the following: 1) The lease term is 75 percent or more of the useful life of the leased asset (the lease term and useful life of the machine are both four years), and 2) the present value is 90 percent or more of the fair value of the leased asset. The revenue recognition requirement also is met (Selnow is confident that the payments will be received). Further, under US GAAP this lease is classified as a sales-type lease because the present value of the lease payments is greater than the carrying amount of the leased asset.

There is no difference, however, in accounting between IFRS and US GAAP as a result of this additional classification under US GAAP. The present value of the future lease payments is more than the lessor's carrying amount for the machine, and the difference is the lessor's profit from selling the machine. The lessor will record a profit of €10,000 on the sale of the machine in 2010 (€100,000 present value of lease payments receivable less €90,000 value of the machine).

Solution to 2:

In 2010, Selnow shows income of €17,132 related to the lease. One part of this income is the €10,000 gain on the sale of the machine (sales revenues of €100,000 less costs of goods sold of €90,000). Selnow also shows interest revenue of €7,132 on its financing of the lease (lease receivable of €71,321 after the initial lease payment is received times the 10 percent discount rate). In 2011, Selnow reports only the interest revenue of €4,977 (lease receivable of €49,774 after the 1 January lease payment is received times the 10 percent discount rate). The table below shows lease payments received, interest revenue, and reduction of the lease receivable for Selnow's sales-type lease. Note that this table is the same as DIRFIN's table in Example 13 with the direct financing lease. They are the same because the present value of the lease payments in both cases is the same. It is the carrying amount of the machine that differs between the two examples.

Year	Lease Receivable, 1 January	Annual Lease Payment Received, 1 January	Interest (at 10%; accrued in previous year)	Reduction of Lease Receivable, 1 January	Lease Receivable on 31 December after Lease Payment on 1 January of Same Year
	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)
2010	€100,000	€28,679	€0	€28,679	€71,321
2011	71,321	28,679	7,132	21,547	49,774
2012	49,774	28,679	4,977	23,702	26,072
2013	26,072	28,679	2,607	26,072	0
		<u>€114,717</u>	<u>€14,717</u>	<u>€100,000</u>	

Exhibit 2 summarises the financial statement impact of operating and financing leases on the lessee and lessor.

Exhibit 2 Summary of Financial Statement Impact of Operating and Financing Leases on the Lessee and Lessor

	Balance Sheet	Income Statement	Statement of Cash Flows
Lessee			
<i>Operating Lease</i>	No effect	Reports rent expense	Rent payment is an operating cash outflow
<i>Finance Lease under IFRS (capital lease under US GAAP)</i>	Recognises leased asset and lease liability	Reports depreciation expense on leased asset Reports interest expense on lease liability	Reduction of lease liability is a financing cash outflow Interest portion of lease payment is either an operating or financing cash outflow under IFRS and an operating cash outflow under US GAAP
Lessor			
<i>Operating Lease</i>	Retains asset on balance sheet	Reports rent income Reports depreciation expense on leased asset	Rent payments received are an operating cash inflow
<i>Finance Lease^a</i>			

Exhibit 2 (Continued)

	Balance Sheet	Income Statement	Statement of Cash Flows
When present value of lease payments equals the carrying amount of the leased asset (called a direct financing lease in US GAAP)	Removes asset from balance sheet Recognises lease receivable	Reports interest revenue on lease receivable	Interest portion of lease payment received is either an operating or investing cash inflow under IFRS and an operating cash inflow under US GAAP Receipt of lease principal is an investing cash inflow ^b
When present value of lease payments exceeds the carrying amount of the leased asset (called a sales-type lease in US GAAP)	Removes asset Recognises lease receivable	Reports profit on sale Reports interest revenue on lease receivable	Interest portion of lease payment received is either an operating or investing cash inflow under IFRS and an operating cash inflow under US GAAP Receipt of lease principal is an investing cash inflow ^b

^a US GAAP distinguishes between a direct financing lease and a sales-type lease, but IFRS does not. The accounting is the same for IFRS and US GAAP despite this additional classification under US GAAP.

^b If providing leases is part of a company's normal business activity, the cash flows related to the leases are classified as operating cash.

INTRODUCTION TO PENSIONS AND OTHER POST-EMPLOYMENT BENEFITS

4

Pensions and other post-employment benefits give rise to non-current liabilities reported by many companies. Companies may offer various types of benefits to their employees following retirement, such as pension plans, health care plans, medical insurance, and life insurance. Pension plans often are the most significant post-employment benefits provided to retired employees.

The accounting and reporting for pension plans depends on the type of pension plan offered. Two common types of pension plans are **defined contribution pension plans** and **defined benefit pension plans**. Under a defined-contribution plan, a company contributes an agreed-upon (defined) amount into the plan. The agreed-upon amount is the pension expense. The amount the company contributes to the plan is treated as an operating cash outflow. The only impact on assets and liabilities is a decrease in cash, although if some portion of the agreed-upon amount has not been paid by fiscal year-end, a liability would be recognised on the balance sheet. Because the amount of the contribution is defined and the company has no further obligation once the contribution has been made, accounting for a defined-contribution plan is fairly straightforward.

Accounting for a defined-benefit plan is more complicated. Under a defined-benefit plan, a company makes promises of future benefits to be paid to the employee during retirement. For example, a company could promise an employee annual pension payments equal to 70 percent of his final salary at retirement until death. Estimating the eventual amount of the obligation arising from that promise requires the company to make many assumptions, such as the employee's expected salary at retirement and the number of years the employee is expected to live beyond retirement. The company estimates the future amounts to be paid and discounts the future estimated amounts to a present value (using a rate reflective of a high-quality corporate bond yield) to

determine the pension obligation. The discount rate used to determine the pension obligation significantly affects the amount of the pension obligation. The pension obligation is allocated over the employee's employment as part of pension expense.

Most defined-benefit pension plans are funded through a separate legal entity, typically a pension trust fund. A company makes payments into the pension fund, and retirees are paid from the fund. The payments that a company makes into the fund are invested until they are needed to pay the retirees. If the fair value of the fund's assets is higher than the present value of the estimated pension obligation, the plan has a surplus and the company's balance sheet will reflect a net pension asset.¹⁶ Conversely, if the present value of the estimated pension obligation exceeds the fund's assets, the plan has a deficit and the company's balance sheet will reflect a net pension liability.¹⁷ Thus, a company reports either a net pension asset or a net pension liability. Each period, the change in the net pension asset or liability is recognised either in profit or loss or in other comprehensive income.

Under IFRS, the change in the net pension asset or liability each period is viewed as having three general components. Two of the components of this change are recognised as pension expense in profit and loss: (1) employees' service costs and (2) the net interest expense or income accrued on the beginning net pension asset or liability. The service cost during the period for an employee is the present value of the increase in the pension benefit earned by the employee as a result of providing one more year of service. The service cost also includes past service costs, which are changes in the present value of the estimated pension obligation related to employees' service in prior periods, such as might arise from changes in the plan. The net interest expense or income is calculated as the net pension asset or liability multiplied by the discount rate used in estimating the present value of the pension obligation. The third component of the change in the net pension asset or liability during a period—"remeasurements"—is recognised in other comprehensive income. Remeasurements are not amortised into profit or loss over time.

Remeasurements include (a) actuarial gains and losses and (b) the actual return on plan assets less any return included in the net interest expense or income. Actuarial gains and losses can occur when changes are made to the assumptions on which a company bases its estimated pension obligation (e.g., employee turnover, mortality rates, retirement ages, compensation increases). The actual return on plan assets would likely differ from the amount included in the net interest expense or income, which is calculated using a rate reflective of a high-quality corporate bond yield; plan assets are typically allocated across various asset classes, including equity as well as bonds.

Under US GAAP, the change in net pension asset or liability each period is viewed as having five components, some of which are recognised in profit and loss in the period incurred and some of which are recognised in other comprehensive income and amortised into profit and loss over time. The three components recognised in profit and loss in the period incurred are (1) employees' service costs for the period, (2) interest expense accrued on the beginning pension obligation, and (3) expected return on plan assets, which reduces the amount of expense recognised. The other two components are past service costs and actuarial gains and losses. Past service costs are recognised in other comprehensive income in the period in which they arise and then subsequently amortised into pension expense over the future service period of the employees covered by the plan. Actuarial gains and losses are also recognised in

¹⁶ The amount of any reported net pension asset is capped at the amount of any expected future economic benefits to the company from the plan; this cap is referred to as the asset ceiling.

¹⁷ The description of accounting for pensions presented in this reading corresponds to the June 2011 version of IAS 19 *Employee Benefits*, which took effect on 1 January 2013. Both IFRS and US GAAP require companies to present the amount of net pension liability or asset on the balance sheet.

other comprehensive income in the period in which they occur and then amortised into pension expense over time. In effect, US GAAP allows companies to “smooth” the effects on pension expense over time for these latter two components.

Similar to other forms of employee compensation for a manufacturing company, the pension expense related to production employees is added to inventory and expensed through cost of sales (cost of goods sold). For employees not involved directly in the production process, the pension expense is included with salaries and other administrative expenses. Therefore, pension expense is not directly reported on the income statement. Rather, extensive disclosures are included in the notes to the financial statements.

Example 15 presents excerpts of pension-related disclosures from Novo Nordisk’s 2010 Annual Report.

EXAMPLE 15

Pension-Related Disclosures

The following are excerpts of pension-related disclosures from Novo Nordisk’s 2010 Annual Report. Novo Nordisk reports under IFRS. *These financial statements were issued prior to the updated IFRS for pension accounting, which (effective January 2013) requires companies to show the entire amount of net liability or asset on the balance sheet and to recognise the entire change in that amount each period.*

1 Summary of significant accounting policies

Pensions

The Group operates a number of defined contribution plans throughout the world. In a few countries the group still operates defined benefit plans. The costs for the year for defined benefit plans are determined using the projected unit credit method. This reflects services rendered by employees to the dates of valuation and is based on actuarial assumptions primarily regarding discount rates used in determining the present value of benefits, projected rates of remuneration growth and long-term expected rates of return for plan assets. Discount rates are based on the market yields of high-rated corporate bonds in the country concerned.

21 Retirement Benefit Obligations

DKK million	2010	2009	2008	2007	2006
Retirement obligations	1,452	1,063	1,103	885	938
Plan assets	(766)	(620)	(649)	(566)	(495)

Use information in the excerpts to answer the following questions:

- 1 What type(s) of pension plans does Novo Nordisk have?
- 2 Under the updated standards, what would have been reported on Novo Nordisk’s 2009 and 2010 balance sheets with respect to pensions?
- 3 Under the updated standards, what amount of pension costs would Novo Nordisk have recognised in 2010? Describe how these costs would have been reported.

Solution to 1:

Note 1 “Summary of significant accounting policies” indicates that the company has both defined contribution and defined benefit pension plans. The note indicates that the company continues to operate defined benefit plans in only a few countries.

Solution to 2:

Under the updated standards, Novo Nordisk would have reported a net pension obligation of DKK686 million in 2010 and DKK 443 million in 2009:

(DKK million)	2010	2009
Retirement obligations	1,452	1,063
Plan assets	(766)	(620)
Deficit/(surplus)	686	443

Solution to 3:

Under the updated standards, Novo Nordisk would have reported total pension cost of DKK 243 million in 2010, which is the change in the pension deficit from DKK 443 million in 2009 to DKK 686 million in 2010.

Of the total pension cost, two components would be recognised in profit and loss (service costs and net interest expense on the pension deficit) and one component would be recognised in other comprehensive income (remeasurements).

5**EVALUATING SOLVENCY: LEVERAGE AND COVERAGE RATIOS**

Solvency refers to a company’s ability to meet its long-term debt obligations, including both principal and interest payments. In evaluating a company’s solvency, ratio analyses can provide information about the relative amount of debt in the company’s capital structure and the adequacy of earnings and cash flow to cover interest expense and other fixed charges (such as lease or rental payments) as they come due. Ratios are useful to evaluate a company’s performance over time compared to the performance of other companies and industry norms. Ratio analysis has the advantage of allowing the comparison of companies regardless of their size and reporting currency.

The two primary types of solvency ratios are leverage ratios and coverage ratios. Leverage ratios focus on the balance sheet and measure the extent to which a company uses liabilities rather than equity to finance its assets. Coverage ratios focus on the income statement and cash flows and measure the ability of a company to cover its debt-related payments.

Exhibit 3 describes the two types of commonly used solvency ratios. The first three leverage ratios use total debt in the numerator.¹⁸ The *debt-to-assets ratio* expresses the percentage of total assets financed with debt. Generally, the higher the ratio, the higher the financial risk and thus the weaker the solvency. The *debt-to-capital ratio* measures the percentage of a company’s total capital (debt plus equity) financed

¹⁸ For calculations in this reading, total debt is the sum of interest-bearing short-term and long-term debt, excluding non-interest-bearing liabilities, such as accrued expenses, accounts payable, and deferred income taxes. This definition of total debt differs from other definitions that are more inclusive (e.g., all liabilities) or more restrictive (e.g., long-term debt only). If the use of different definitions of total debt materially changes conclusions about a company’s solvency, the reasons for the discrepancies should be further investigated.

through debt. The *debt-to-equity ratio* measures the amount of debt financing relative to equity financing. A *debt-to-equity ratio* of 1.0 indicates equal amounts of debt and equity, which is the same as a debt-to-capital ratio of 50 percent. Interpretations of these ratios are similar. Higher debt-to-capital or debt-to-equity ratios imply weaker solvency. A caveat must be made when comparing debt ratios of companies in different countries. Within certain countries, companies historically have obtained more capital from debt than equity financing, so debt ratios tend to be higher for companies in these countries.

Exhibit 3 Definitions of Commonly Used Solvency Ratios

Solvency Ratios	Numerator	Denominator
<u>Leverage ratios</u>		
Debt-to-assets ratio	Total debt ^a	Total assets
Debt-to-capital ratio	Total debt ^a	Total debt ^a + Total shareholders' equity
Debt-to-equity ratio	Total debt ^a	Total shareholders' equity
Financial leverage ratio	Average total assets	Average shareholders' equity
<u>Coverage ratios</u>		
Interest coverage ratio	EBIT ^b	Interest payments
Fixed charge coverage ratio	EBIT ^b + lease payments	Interest payments + lease payments

^a In this reading, debt is defined as the sum of interest-bearing short-term and long-term debt.

^b EBIT is earnings before interest and taxes.

The *financial leverage ratio* (also called the 'leverage ratio' or 'equity multiplier') measures the amount of total assets supported by one money unit of equity. For example, a value of 4 for this ratio means that each €1 of equity supports €4 of total assets. The higher the financial leverage ratio, the more leveraged the company in the sense of using debt and other liabilities to finance assets. This ratio often is defined in terms of average total assets and average total equity and plays an important role in the DuPont decomposition of return on equity.¹⁹

The *interest coverage ratio* measures the number of times a company's EBIT could cover its interest payments. A higher interest coverage ratio indicates stronger solvency, offering greater assurance that the company can service its debt from operating earnings. The *fixed charge coverage ratio* relates fixed financing charges, or obligations, to the cash flow generated by the company. It measures the number of times a company's earnings (before interest, taxes, and lease payments) can cover the company's interest and lease payments.

Example 16 demonstrates the use of solvency ratios in evaluating the creditworthiness of a company.

¹⁹ The basic DuPont decomposition is: Return on Equity = Net income/Average shareholders' equity = (Sales/Average total assets) × (Net income/Sales) × (Average total assets/Average shareholders' equity).

EXAMPLE 16**Evaluating Solvency Ratios**

A credit analyst is evaluating and comparing the solvency of two companies—Nokia Corporation and LM Ericsson Telephone Company—at the beginning of 2009. The following data are gathered from the companies' 2008 annual reports and 20-F filings:

	Nokia (€ millions)		Ericsson (SEK millions)	
	2008	2007	2008	2007
Short-term borrowings	3,578	714	1,639	2,831
Current portion of long-term interest bearing debt	13	173	3,903	3,068
Long-term interest bearing debt	861	203	24,939	21,320
Total shareholders' equity	14,208	14,773	140,823	134,112
Total assets	39,582	37,599	285,684	245,117
EBIT	4,966	7,985	16,252	30,646
Interest payments	155	59	1,689	1,513

Use the above information to answer the following questions:

- 1 **A** What are each company's debt-to-assets, debt-to-capital, and debt-to-equity ratios for 2008 and 2007?
- B** Comment on any changes in the calculated leverage ratios from year-to-year for both companies.
- C** Comment on the calculated leverage ratios of Nokia compared to Ericsson.
- 2 **A** What is each company's interest coverage ratio for 2008 and 2007?
- B** Comment on any changes in the interest coverage ratio from year to year for both companies.
- C** Comment on the interest coverage ratio of Nokia compared to Ericsson.

Solution to 1:**A For Nokia**

$$\text{Debt-to-assets for 2008: } 11.2\% = (3,578 + 13 + 861)/39,582$$

$$\text{Debt-to-assets for 2007: } 2.9\% = (714 + 173 + 203)/37,599$$

$$\text{Debt-to-capital for 2008: } 23.9\% = (3,578 + 13 + 861)/(3,578 + 13 + 861 + 14,208)$$

$$\text{Debt-to-capital for 2007: } 6.9\% = (714 + 173 + 203)/(714 + 173 + 203 + 14,773)$$

$$\text{Debt-to-equity for 2008: } 31.3\% = (3,578 + 13 + 861)/(14,208)$$

$$\text{Debt-to-equity for 2007: } 7.4\% = (714 + 173 + 203)/(14,773)$$

For Ericsson

Debt-to-assets for 2008: $10.7\% = (1,639 + 3,903 + 24,939)/(285,684)$

Debt-to-assets for 2007: $11.1\% = (2,831 + 3,068 + 21,320)/(245,117)$

Debt-to-capital for 2008: $17.8\% = (1,639 + 3,903 + 24,939)/(1,639 + 3,903 + 24,939 + 140,823)$

Debt-to-capital for 2007: $16.9\% = (2,831 + 3,068 + 21,320)/(2,831 + 3,068 + 21,320 + 134,112)$

Debt-to-equity for 2008: $21.6\% = (1,639 + 3,903 + 24,939)/(140,823)$

Debt-to-equity for 2007: $20.3\% = (2,831 + 3,068 + 21,320)/(134,112)$

- B** Nokia's leverage ratios all increased from 2007 to 2008, suggesting weakening solvency. Comparing debt year to year, we observe that leverage ratios increased because of a significant increase in short-term borrowings and an increase in long-term interest bearing debt without a similar increase in shareholders' equity. In fact, shareholders' equity declined. On the other hand, Ericsson's leverage ratios appear fairly similar for 2007 and 2008. During 2008, it appears as though Ericsson shifted away from short borrowings to long-term debt.
- C** In 2007, all three of Nokia's leverage ratios were lower than Ericsson's. In 2008, the opposite was true. Ericsson's capital structure seems fairly constant over the two years, whereas Nokia's capital structure has shifted toward more debt.

Solution to 2:**A For Nokia**

Interest coverage ratio for 2008: $32.0 = (4,966/155)$

Interest coverage ratio for 2007: $135.3 = (7,985/59)$

For Ericsson

Interest coverage ratio for 2008: $9.6 = (16,252/1,689)$

Interest coverage ratio for 2007: $20.3 = (30,646/1,513)$

- B** Nokia's interest coverage ratio decreased from 2007 to 2008 because of a decrease in EBIT and an increase in interest payments. Even with the decrease, Nokia appears to have sufficient operating earnings to cover interest payments. Similarly, Ericsson's interest coverage ratio decreased from 2007 to 2008, primarily because of a decrease in EBIT. Ericsson also appears to have sufficient operating earnings to cover interest payments.
- C** Nokia's ability to cover interest payments is greater than Ericsson's, although both companies appear to have sufficient operating earnings to cover interest payments.

SUMMARY

Non-current liabilities arise from different sources of financing and different types of creditors. Bonds are a common source of financing from debt markets. Bonds are initially valued at fair value when issued, and then companies have the choice of whether to subsequently measure bonds at fair value or amortised cost.

Leases are related to the use of specific assets. In a finance lease, the lessee assumes substantially all the risks and benefits of ownership of the leased asset so the lessee reports an asset and related obligation. Typically, the lessor will report a lease receivable and derecognise the asset. In an operating lease, the lessee secures the right to use the leased asset but substantially all the risk and rewards of ownership are not transferred. The lessor does not derecognise the asset and reports lease (rent) income. Under IFRS 16, leases of more than one year are treated in a manner similar to finance leases—that is, as assets and associated liabilities in the lessee's balance sheet.

Pensions and other post-employment benefits are additional forms of compensation. Employees work currently to earn current salaries and wages and also to earn benefits for retirement or post-employment. Companies with defined contribution plans report the agreed upon contribution paid into a plan as an expense. Defined benefit plans provide for agreed upon future benefits. Understanding the reporting of non-current liabilities when they arise and how they are subsequently valued is important in assessing a company's solvency and potential changes in its solvency.

Key points in accounting and reporting of non-current liabilities include the following:

- The sales proceeds of a bond issue are determined by discounting future cash payments using the market rate of interest at the time of issuance (effective interest rate). The reported interest expense on bonds is based on the effective interest rate.
- Future cash payments on bonds usually include periodic interest payments (made at the stated interest rate or coupon rate) and the principal amount at maturity.
- When the market rate of interest equals the coupon rate for the bonds, the bonds will sell at par (i.e., at a price equal to the face value). When the market rate of interest is higher than the bonds' coupon rate, the bonds will sell at a discount. When the market rate of interest is lower than the bonds' coupon rate, the bonds will sell at a premium.
- An issuer amortises any issuance discount or premium on bonds over the life of the bonds.
- If a company redeems bonds before maturity, it reports a gain or loss on debt extinguishment computed as the net carrying amount of the bonds (including bond issuance costs under IFRS) less the amount required to redeem the bonds.
- Debt covenants impose restrictions on borrowers, such as limitations on future borrowing or requirements to maintain a minimum debt-to-equity ratio.
- The carrying amount of bonds is typically amortised historical cost, which can differ from their fair value.
- Companies are required to disclose the fair value of financial liabilities, including debt. Although permitted to do so, few companies opt to report debt at fair values on the balance sheet.

- Accounting standards have traditionally required leases to be classified as either operating leases or finance (capital) leases. Leases are classified as finance leases when substantially all the risks and rewards of legal ownership are transferred to the lessee.
- When a lessee reports a lease as an operating lease rather than a finance lease, the lessee usually reports higher profits before tax in the early years of the lease and lower profits in later years; however, the impact on pretax profits will be neutral between the choice of leases.
- When a lessor reports a lease as a finance lease rather than an operating lease, the lessor usually appears more profitable in the early years of the lease.
- In a finance lease where the present value of lease payments equals the carrying amount of the leased asset, a lessor earns only interest revenue. In a finance lease where the present value of lease payments exceeds the carrying amount of the leased asset, a lessor earns both interest revenue and a profit (or loss) on the sale of the leased asset.
- Two types of pension plans are defined contribution plans and defined benefits plans. In a defined contribution plan, the amount of contribution into the plan is specified (i.e., defined) and the amount of pension that is ultimately paid by the plan (received by the retiree) depends on the performance of the plan's assets. In a defined benefit plan, the amount of pension that is ultimately paid by the plan (received by the retiree) is defined, usually according to a benefit formula.
- Under a defined contribution plan, the cash payment made into the plan is recognised as pension expense.
- Under both IFRS and US GAAP, companies must report the difference between the defined benefit pension obligation and the pension assets as an asset or liability on the balance sheet.
- Under IFRS, the change in the defined benefit plan net asset or liability is recognised as a cost of the period, with two components of the change (service cost and net interest expense or income) recognised in profit and loss and one component (remeasurements) of the change recognised in other comprehensive income.
- Under US GAAP, the change in the defined benefit plan net asset or liability is also recognised as a cost of the period with three components of the change (current service costs, interest expense on the beginning pension obligation, and expected return on plan assets) recognised in profit and loss and two components (past service costs and actuarial gains and losses) recognised in other comprehensive income.
- Solvency refers to a company's ability to meet its long-term debt obligations.
- In evaluating solvency, leverage ratios focus on the balance sheet and measure the amount of debt financing relative to equity financing.
- In evaluating solvency, coverage ratios focus on the income statement and cash flows and measure the ability of a company to cover its interest payments.

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

- 1 A company issues €1 million of bonds at face value. When the bonds are issued, the company will record a:
 - A cash inflow from investing activities.
 - B cash inflow from financing activities.
 - C cash inflow from operating activities.
- 2 At the time of issue of 4.50% coupon bonds, the effective interest rate was 5.00%. The bonds were *most likely* issued at:
 - A par.
 - B a discount.
 - C a premium.
- 3 Oil Exploration LLC paid \$45,000 in printing, legal fees, commissions, and other costs associated with its recent bond issue. It is *most likely* to record these costs on its financial statements as:
 - A an asset under US GAAP and reduction of the carrying value of the debt under IFRS.
 - B a liability under US GAAP and reduction of the carrying value of the debt under IFRS.
 - C a cash outflow from investing activities under both US GAAP and IFRS.
- 4 A company issues \$1,000,000 face value of 10-year bonds on 1 January 2015 when the market interest rate on bonds of comparable risk and terms is 5%. The bonds pay 6% interest annually on 31 December. At the time of issue, the bonds payable reflected on the balance sheet is *closest* to:
 - A \$926,399.
 - B \$1,000,000.
 - C \$1,077,217.
- 5 Midland Brands issues three-year bonds dated 1 January 2015 with a face value of \$5,000,000. The market interest rate on bonds of comparable risk and term is 3%. If the bonds pay 2.5% annually on 31 December, bonds payable when issued are most likely reported as *closest* to:
 - A \$4,929,285.
 - B \$5,000,000.
 - C \$5,071,401.
- 6 A firm issues a bond with a coupon rate of 5.00% when the market interest rate is 5.50% on bonds of comparable risk and terms. One year later, the market interest rate increases to 6.00%. Based on this information, the effective interest rate is:
 - A 5.00%.
 - B 5.50%.
 - C 6.00%.
- 7 On 1 January 2010, Elegant Fragrances Company issues £1,000,000 face value, five-year bonds with annual interest payments of £55,000 to be paid each 31 December. The market interest rate is 6.0 percent. Using the effective interest rate method of amortisation, Elegant Fragrances is *most likely* to record:

- A an interest expense of £55,000 on its 2010 income statement.
- B a liability of £982,674 on the 31 December 2010 balance sheet.
- C a £58,736 cash outflow from operating activity on the 2010 statement of cash flows.
- 8 Consolidated Enterprises issues €10 million face value, five-year bonds with a coupon rate of 6.5 percent. At the time of issuance, the market interest rate is 6.0 percent. Using the effective interest rate method of amortisation, the carrying value after one year will be *closest* to:
- A €10.17 million.
- B €10.21 million.
- C €10.28 million.
- 9 A company issues €10,000,000 face value of 10-year bonds dated 1 January 2015 when the market interest rate on bonds of comparable risk and terms is 6%. The bonds pay 7% interest annually on 31 December. Based on the effective interest rate method, the interest expense on 31 December 2015 is *closest* to:
- A €644,161.
- B €700,000.
- C €751,521.
- 10 A company issues \$30,000,000 face value of five-year bonds dated 1 January 2015 when the market interest rate on bonds of comparable risk and terms is 5%. The bonds pay 4% interest annually on 31 December. Based on the effective interest rate method, the carrying amount of the bonds on 31 December 2015 is *closest* to:
- A \$28,466,099.
- B \$28,800,000.
- C \$28,936,215.
- 11 Lesp Industries issues five-year bonds dated 1 January 2015 with a face value of \$2,000,000 and 3% coupon rate paid annually on 31 December. The market interest rate on bonds of comparable risk and term is 4%. The sales proceeds of the bonds are \$1,910,964. Under the effective interest rate method, the interest expense in 2017 is *closest* to:
- A \$77,096.
- B \$77,780.
- C \$77,807.
- 12 For a bond issued at a premium, using the effective interest rate method, the:
- A carrying amount increases each year.
- B amortization of the premium increases each year.
- C premium is evenly amortized over the life of the bond.
- 13 Comte Industries issues \$3,000,000 worth of three-year bonds dated 1 January 2015. The bonds pay interest of 5.5% annually on 31 December. The market interest rate on bonds of comparable risk and term is 5%. The sales proceeds of the bonds are \$3,040,849. Under the straight-line method, the interest expense in the first year is *closest* to:
- A \$150,000.
- B \$151,384.
- C \$152,042.

- 14 The management of Bank EZ repurchases its own bonds in the open market. They pay €6.5 million for bonds with a face value of €10.0 million and a carrying value of €9.8 million. The bank will *most likely* report:
- A other comprehensive income of €3.3 million.
 - B other comprehensive income of €3.5 million.
 - C a gain of €3.3 million on the income statement.
- 15 A company redeems \$1,000,000 face value bonds with a carrying value of \$990,000. If the call price is 104 the company will:
- A reduce bonds payable by \$1,000,000.
 - B recognize a loss on the extinguishment of debt of \$50,000.
 - C recognize a gain on the extinguishment of debt of \$10,000.
- 16 Innovative Inventions, Inc. needs to raise €10 million. If the company chooses to issue zero-coupon bonds, its debt-to-equity ratio will *most likely*:
- A rise as the maturity date approaches.
 - B decline as the maturity date approaches.
 - C remain constant throughout the life of the bond.
- 17 Fairmont Golf issued fixed rate debt when interest rates were 6 percent. Rates have since risen to 7 percent. Using only the carrying amount (based on historical cost) reported on the balance sheet to analyze the company's financial position would *most likely* cause an analyst to:
- A overestimate Fairmont's economic liabilities.
 - B underestimate Fairmont's economic liabilities.
 - C underestimate Fairmont's interest coverage ratio.
- 18 Which of the following is an example of an affirmative debt covenant? The borrower is:
- A prohibited from entering into mergers.
 - B prevented from issuing excessive additional debt.
 - C required to perform regular maintenance on equipment pledged as collateral.
- 19 Debt covenants are *least likely* to place restrictions on the issuer's ability to:
- A pay dividends.
 - B issue additional debt.
 - C issue additional equity.
- 20 Regarding a company's debt obligations, which of the following is *most likely* presented on the balance sheet?
- A Effective interest rate
 - B Maturity dates for debt obligations
 - C The portion of long-term debt due in the next 12 months
- 21 Compared to using a finance lease, a lessee that makes use of an operating lease will *most likely* report higher:
- A debt.
 - B rent expense.
 - C cash flow from operating activity.
- 22 Which of the following is *most likely* a lessee's disclosure about operating leases?
- A Lease liabilities.

- B Future obligations by maturity.
 - C Net carrying amounts of leased assets.
- 23 For a lessor, the leased asset appears on the balance sheet and continues to be depreciated when the lease is classified as:
- A a sales-type lease.
 - B an operating lease.
 - C a financing lease.
- 24 Under US GAAP, a lessor's reported revenues at lease inception will be *highest* if the lease is classified as:
- A a sales-type lease.
 - B an operating lease.
 - C a direct financing lease.
- 25 A lessor will record interest income if a lease is classified as:
- A a capital lease.
 - B an operating lease.
 - C either a capital or an operating lease.
- 26 Compared with a finance lease, an operating lease:
- A is similar to renting an asset.
 - B is equivalent to the purchase of an asset.
 - C term is for the majority of the economic life of the asset.
- 27 Under US GAAP, which of the following would require the lessee to classify a lease as a capital lease?
- A The term is 60% of the useful life of the asset.
 - B The lease contains an option to purchase the asset at fair value.
 - C The present value of the lease payments is 95% of the fair value.
- 28 A lessee that enters into a finance lease will report the:
- A lease payable on its balance sheet.
 - B full lease payment on its income statement.
 - C full lease payment as an operating cash flow.
- 29 A company enters into a finance lease agreement to acquire the use of an asset for three years with lease payments of €19,000,000 starting next year. The leased asset has a fair market value of €49,000,000 and the present value of the lease payments is €47,250,188. Based on this information, the value of the lease payable reported on the company's balance sheet is *closest* to:
- A €47,250,188.
 - B €49,000,000.
 - C €57,000,000.
- 30 Which of the following *best* describes reporting and disclosure requirements for a company that enters into an operating lease as the lessee? The operating lease obligation is:
- A reported as a receivable on the balance sheet.
 - B disclosed in notes to the financial statements.
 - C reported as a component of debt on the balance sheet.

- 31 Cavalier Copper Mines has \$840 million in total liabilities and \$520 million in shareholders' equity. It discloses operating lease commitments over the next five years with a present value of \$100 million. If the lease commitments are treated as debt, the debt-to-total-capital ratio is *closest* to:

- A 0.58.
- B 0.62.
- C 0.64.

- 32 The following presents selected financial information for a company:

	\$ Millions
Short-term borrowing	4,231
Current portion of long-term interest-bearing debt	29
Long-term interest-bearing debt	925
Average shareholders' equity	18,752
Average total assets	45,981

The financial leverage ratio is *closest* to:

- A 0.113
- B 0.277
- C 2.452

- 33 An analyst evaluating three industrial companies calculates the following ratios:

	Company A	Company B	Company C
Debt-to-Equity	23.5%	22.5%	52.5%
Interest Coverage	15.6	49.5	45.5

The company with both the lowest financial leverage and the greatest ability to meet interest payments is:

- A Company A.
- B Company B.
- C Company C.

- 34 An analyst evaluating a company's solvency gathers the following information:

	\$ Millions
Short-term interest-bearing debt	1,258
Long-term interest-bearing debt	321
Total shareholder's equity	4,285
Total assets	8,750
EBIT	2,504
Interest payments	52

The company's debt-to-assets ratio is *closest* to:

- A 0.18.
- B 0.27.
- C 0.37.

- 35** Penben Corporation has a defined benefit pension plan. At 31 December, its pension obligation is €10 million and pension assets are €9 million. Under either IFRS or US GAAP, the reporting on the balance sheet would be *closest* to which of the following?
- A** €10 million is shown as a liability, and €9 million appears as an asset.
 - B** €1 million is shown as a net pension obligation.
 - C** Pension assets and obligations are not required to be shown on the balance sheet but only disclosed in footnotes.
- 36** The following information is associated with a company that offers its employees a defined benefit plan:

Fair value of fund's assets	\$1,500,000,000
Estimated pension obligations	\$2,600,000,000
Present value of estimated pension obligations	\$1,200,000,000

Based on this information, the company's balance sheet will present a net pension:

- A** asset of \$300,000,000.
- B** asset of \$1,400,000,000.
- C** liability of \$1,100,000,000.

SOLUTIONS

- 1 B is correct. The company receives €1 million in cash from investors at the time the bonds are issued, which is recorded as a financing activity.
- 2 B is correct. The effective interest rate is greater than the coupon rate and the bonds will be issued at a discount.
- 3 A is correct. Under US GAAP, expenses incurred when issuing bonds are generally recorded as an asset and amortised to the related expense (legal, etc.) over the life of the bonds. Under IFRS, they are included in the measurement of the liability. The related cash flows are financing activities.
- 4 C is correct. The bonds will be issued at a premium because the coupon rate is higher than the market interest rate. The future cash outflows, the present value of the cash outflows, and the total present value are as follows:

Date	Interest Payment (\$)	Present Value at Market Rate 5% (\$)		Present Value at Market Rate 5% (\$)	Total Present Value (\$)
31 December 2015	60,000.00	57,142.86			
31 December 2016	60,000.00	54,421.77			
31 December 2017	60,000.00	51,830.26			
31 December 2018	60,000.00	49,362.15			
31 December 2019	60,000.00	47,011.57			
31 December 2020	60,000.00	44,772.92			
31 December 2021	60,000.00	42,640.88			
31 December 2022	60,000.00	40,610.36			
31 December 2023	60,000.00	38,676.53			
31 December 2024	60,000.00	36,834.80	1,000,000.00	613,913.25	
		463,304.10		613,913.25	1,077,217.35
					Sales Proceeds

The following illustrates the keystrokes for many financial calculators to calculate sales proceeds of \$1,077,217.35:

Calculator Notation	Numerical Value for This Problem
N	10
% <i>i</i> or I/Y	5
FV	\$1,000,000.00
PMT	\$60,000.00
PV compute	X

Thus, the sales proceeds are reported on the balance sheet as an increase in long-term liability, bonds payable of \$1,077,217.

- 5 A is correct. The bonds payable reported at issue is equal to the sales proceeds. The interest payments and future value of the bond must be discounted at the market interest rate of 3% to determine the sales proceeds.

Date	Interest Payment	Present Value at Market Rate (3%)	Face Value Payment	Present Value at Market Rate (3%)	Total Present Value
31 December 2015	\$125,000.00	\$121,359.22			
31 December 2016	\$125,000.00	\$117,824.49			
31 December 2017	\$125,000.00	\$114,392.71	\$5,000,000.00	\$4,575,708.30	
Total		\$353,576.42		\$4,575,708.30	\$4,929,284.72

The following illustrates the keystrokes for many financial calculators to calculate sales proceeds of \$1,077,217.35:

Calculator Notation	Numerical Value for This Problem
N	3
% <i>i</i> or I/Y	3.0
FV	\$5,000,000.00
PMT	\$125,000.00
PV compute	X

- 6 B is correct. The market interest rate at the time of issuance is the effective interest rate that the company incurs on the debt. The effective interest rate is the discount rate that equates the present value of the coupon payments and face value to their selling price. Consequently, the effective interest rate is 5.50%.
- 7 B is correct. The bonds will be issued at a discount because the market interest rate is higher than the stated rate. Discounting the future payments to their present value indicates that at the time of issue, the company will record £978,938 as both a liability and a cash inflow from financing activities. Interest expense in 2010 is £58,736 (£978,938 times 6.0 percent). During the year, the company will pay cash of £55,000 related to the interest payment, but interest expense on the income statement will also reflect £3,736 related to amortisation of the initial discount (£58,736 interest expense less the £55,000 interest payment). Thus, the value of the liability at 31 December 2010 will reflect the initial value (£978,938) plus the amortised discount (£3,736), for a total of £982,674. The cash outflow of £55,000 may be presented as either an operating or financing activity under IFRS.
- 8 A is correct. The coupon rate on the bonds is higher than the market rate, which indicates that the bonds will be issued at a premium. Taking the present value of each payment indicates an issue date value of €10,210,618. The interest expense is determined by multiplying the carrying amount at the beginning of the period (€10,210,618) by the market interest rate at the time of issue (6.0 percent) for an interest expense of €612,637. The value after one year will equal the beginning value less the amount of the premium amortised to date, which is the difference between the amount paid (€650,000) and the expense accrued (€612,637) or €37,363. €10,210,618 – €37,363 = €10,173,255 or €10.17 million.
- 9 A is correct. The future cash outflows, the present value of the cash outflows, and the total present value are as follows:

Date	Interest Payment (€)	Present Value at Market Rate 6% (€)		Present Value at Market Rate 6% (€)	Total Present Value (€)
31 December 2015	700,000.00	660,377.36			
31 December 2016	700,000.00	622,997.51			
31 December 2017	700,000.00	587,733.50			
31 December 2018	700,000.00	554,465.56			
31 December 2019	700,000.00	523,080.72			
31 December 2020	700,000.00	493,472.38			
31 December 2021	700,000.00	465,539.98			
31 December 2022	700,000.00	439,188.66			
31 December 2023	700,000.00	414,328.92			
31 December 2024	700,000.00	390,876.34	10,000,000.00	5,583,947.77	
		<u>5,152,060.94</u>		<u>5,583,947.77</u>	<u>10,736,008.71</u>
					Sales Proceeds

The following illustrates the keystrokes for many financial calculators to calculate sales proceeds of €10,736,008.71:

Calculator Notation	Numerical Value for This Problem
N	10
% <i>i</i> or I/Y	6
FV	\$10,000,000.00
PMT	\$700,000.00
PV compute	X

The interest expense is calculated by multiplying the carrying amount at the beginning of the year by the effective interest rate at issuance. As a result, the interest expense at 31 December 2015 is €644,161 ($€10,736,008.71 \times 6\%$).

- 10** C is correct. The future cash outflows, the present value of the cash outflows, and the total present value are as follows:

Date	Interest Payment (\$)	Present Value at Market Rate 5% (\$)		Present Value at Market Rate 5% (\$)	Total Present Value (\$)
31 December 2015	1,200,000	1,142,857.14			
31 December 2016	1,200,000	1,088,435.37			
31 December 2017	1,200,000	1,036,605.12			
31 December 2018	1,200,000	987,242.97			
31 December 2019	1,200,000	940,231.40	30,000,000	23,505,785.00	
		<u>5,195,372.00</u>		<u>23,505,785.00</u>	<u>28,701,157.00</u>
					Sales Proceeds

The following illustrates the keystrokes for many financial calculators to calculate sales proceeds of \$28,701,157.00:

Calculator Notation	Numerical Value for This Problem
N	5
% <i>i</i> or I/Y	5
FV	\$30,000,000.00
PMT	\$1,200,000.00
PV compute	X

The following table illustrates interest expense, premium amortization, and carrying amount (amortized cost) for 2015.

Year	Carrying Amount (beginning of year)	Interest Expense (at effective interest rate of 5%)	Interest Payment (at coupon rate of 4%)	Amortization of Discount	Carrying Amount (end of year)
2015	\$28,701,157.00	\$1,435,057.85	\$1,200,000.00	\$235,057.85	\$28,936,214.85

The carrying amount at the end of the year is found by adding the amortization of the discount to the carrying amount at the beginning of the year. As a result, the carrying amount on 31 December 2015 is \$28,936,215.

Alternatively, the following illustrates the keystrokes for many financial calculators to calculate the carrying value at the end of first year of \$28,936, 215:

Calculator Notation	Numerical Value for This Problem
N	4
% <i>i</i> or I/Y	5
FV	\$30,000,000.00
PMT	\$1,200,000.00
PV compute	X

- 11 B is correct. The interest expense for a given year is equal to the carrying amount at the beginning of the year times the effective interest of 4%. Under the effective interest rate method, the difference between the interest expense and the interest payment (based on the coupon rate and face value) is the discount amortized in the period, which increases the carrying amount annually. For 2017, the interest expense is the beginning carrying amount (\$1,944,499) times the effective interest of 4%.

Year	Carrying Amount (beginning)	Interest Expense (at effective interest of 4%)	Interest Payment (at coupon rate of 3%)	Amortization of Discount	Carrying Amount (end of year)
2015	\$1,910,964	\$76,439	\$60,000.00	\$16,439	\$1,927,403
2016	\$1,927,403	\$77,096	\$60,000.00	\$17,096	\$1,944,499
2017	\$1,944,499	\$77,780	\$60,000.00	\$17,780	\$1,962,279

- 12 B is correct. The amortization of the premium equals the interest payment minus the interest expense. The interest payment is constant and the interest expense decreases as the carrying amount decreases. As a result, the amortization of the premium increases each year.

- 13** B is correct. Under the straight-line method, the bond premium is amortized equally over the life of the bond. The annual interest payment is \$165,000 ($\$3,000,000 \times 5.5\%$) and annual amortization of the premium under the straight-line method is \$13,616 [$(\$3,040,849 - \$3,000,000)/3$]. The interest expense is the interest payment less the amortization of the premium ($\$165,000 - \$13,616 = \$151,384$).
- 14** C is correct. A gain of €3.3 million (carrying amount less amount paid) will be reported on the income statement.
- 15** B is correct. If a company decides to redeem a bond before maturity, bonds payable is reduced by the carrying amount of the debt. The difference between the cash required to redeem the bonds and the carrying amount of the bonds is a gain or loss on the extinguishment of debt. Because the call price is 104 and the face value is \$1,000,000, the redemption cost is 104% of \$1,000,000 or \$1,040,000. The company's loss on redemption would be \$50,000 (\$990,000 carrying amount of debt minus \$1,040,000 cash paid to redeem the callable bonds).
- 16** A is correct. The value of the liability for zero-coupon bonds increases as the discount is amortised over time. Furthermore, the amortised interest will reduce earnings at an increasing rate over time as the value of the liability increases. Higher relative debt and lower relative equity (through retained earnings) will cause the debt-to-equity ratio to increase as the zero-coupon bonds approach maturity.
- 17** A is correct. When interest rates rise, bonds decline in value. Thus, the carrying amount of the bonds being carried on the balance sheet is higher than the market value. The company could repurchase the bonds for less than the carrying amount, so the economic liabilities are overestimated. Because the bonds are issued at a fixed rate, there is no effect on interest coverage.
- 18** C is correct. Affirmative covenants require certain actions of the borrower. Requiring the company to perform regular maintenance on equipment pledged as collateral is an example of an affirmative covenant because it requires the company to do something. Negative covenants require that the borrower not take certain actions. Prohibiting the borrower from entering into mergers and preventing the borrower from issuing excessive additional debt are examples of negative covenants.
- 19** C is correct. Covenants protect debtholders from excessive risk taking, typically by limiting the issuer's ability to use cash or by limiting the overall levels of debt relative to income and equity. Issuing additional equity would increase the company's ability to meet its obligations, so debtholders would not restrict that ability.
- 20** C is correct. The non-current liabilities section of the balance sheet usually includes a single line item of the total amount of a company's long-term debt due after 1 year, and the current liabilities section shows the portion of a company's long-term debt due in the next 12 months. Notes to the financial statements generally present the stated and effective interest rates and maturity dates for a company's debt obligations.
- 21** B is correct. An operating lease is not recorded on the balance sheet (debt is lower), and lease payments are entirely categorised as rent (interest expense is lower.) Because the rent expense is an operating outflow but principal repayments are financing cash flows, the operating lease will result in lower cash flow from operating activity.
- 22** B is correct. The lessee will disclose the future obligation by maturity of its operating leases. The future obligations by maturity, leased assets, and lease liabilities will all be shown for finance leases.

- 23** B is correct. When a lease is classified as an operating lease, the underlying asset remains on the lessor's balance sheet. The lessor will record a depreciation expense that reduces the asset's value over time.
- 24** A is correct. A sales-type lease treats the lease as a sale of the asset, and revenue is recorded at the time of sale equal to the present value of future lease payments. Under a direct financing lease, only interest income is reported as earned. Under an operating lease, revenue from rent is reported when collected.
- 25** A is correct. A portion of the payments for capital leases, either direct financing or sales-type, is reported as interest income. With an operating lease, all revenue is recorded as rental revenue.
- 26** A is correct. An operating lease is an agreement that allows the lessee to use an asset for a period of time. Thus, an operating lease is similar to renting an asset, whereas a finance lease is equivalent to the purchase of an asset by the lessee that is directly financed by the lessor.
- 27** C is correct. If the present value of the lease payments is greater than 90% of the fair value of the asset, the lease is considered a capital lease. A lease with a term that is 75% or more of the useful life of the asset is deemed to be a capital lease. The option to purchase the asset must be deemed to be cheap (bargain purchase option), not just include the option to purchase the asset.
- 28** A is correct. A finance lease is similar to borrowing money and buying an asset; a company that enters into a finance lease as the lessee reports an asset (leased asset) and related debt (lease payable) on its balance sheet. A company that enters into a finance lease as the lessee will report interest expense and depreciation expense on its income statement. A company that enters into an operating lease will report the lease payment on its income statement. For a finance lease, only the portion of the lease payment relating to interest expense reduces operating cash flow; the portion of the lease payment that reduces the lease liability appears as a cash outflow in the financing section. A company that enters into an operating lease as the lessee will report the full lease payment as an operating cash outflow.
- 29** A is correct. A company that enters into a finance lease reports the value of both the leased asset and lease payable as the lower of the present value of future lease payments and the fair value of the leased asset. The present value of the future lease payments, €47,250,188, is lower than the fair market value of the leased asset, €49,000,000. The company will record a lease payable on the balance sheet of €47,250,188.
- 30** B is correct. An operating lease is economically similar to renting an asset. A company that enters into an operating lease as a lessee reports a lease expense on its income statement during the period it uses the asset and reports no asset or liability on its balance sheet. The operating lease is disclosed in notes to the financial statements.
- 31** C is correct. The current debt-to-total-capital ratio is $\$840/(\$840 + \$520) = 0.62$. To adjust for the lease commitments, an analyst should add \$100 to both the numerator and denominator: $\$940/(\$940 + \$520) = 0.64$.
- 32** C is correct. The financial leverage ratio is calculated as follows:

$$\frac{\text{Average total assets}}{\text{Average shareholder's equity}} = \frac{\$45,981 \text{ million}}{\$18,752 \text{ million}} = 2.452 \text{ million}$$

- 33** B is correct. Company B has the lowest debt-to-equity ratio, indicating the lowest financial leverage, and the highest interest coverage ratio, indicating the greatest number of times that EBIT covers interest payments.

- 34 A is correct because the debt-to-assets (total debt)/(total assets) ratio is $(1,258 + 321)/(8,750) = 1,579/8,750 = 0.18$
- 35 B is correct. The company will report a net pension obligation of €1 million equal to the pension obligation (€10 million) less the plan assets (€9 million).
- 36 A is correct. A company that offers a defined benefit plan makes payments into a pension fund and the retirees are paid from the fund. The payments that a company makes into the fund are invested until they are needed to pay retirees. If the fair value of the fund's assets is higher than the present value of the estimated pension obligation, the plan has a surplus and the company's balance sheet will reflect a net pension asset. Because the fair value of the fund's assets is \$1,500,000,000 and the present value of estimated pension obligations is \$1,200,000,000, the company will present a net pension asset of \$300,000,000 on its balance sheet.

FINANCIAL REPORTING AND ANALYSIS STUDY SESSION

9

Financial Reporting and Analysis (4)

This study session introduces the concept of financial reporting quality. The session examines the financial reporting quality differences that may exist between companies and the means for identifying them. Warning signs of poor or low quality reporting are covered. The application of financial analysis techniques to evaluate a company's past and projected performance, assess credit risk, and screen for potential equity investments follows. Common adjustments to reported financials to facilitate cross-company comparisons conclude the session.

READING ASSIGNMENTS

- Reading 31** Financial Reporting Quality
by Jack T. Ciesielski, CPA, CFA, Elaine Henry, PhD, CFA, and
Thomas I. Selling, PhD, CPA
- Reading 32** Financial Statement Analysis: Applications
by Thomas R. Robinson, PhD, CFA, Jan Hendrik van Greuning,
DCom, CFA, Elaine Henry, PhD, CFA, and Michael A. Broihahn,
CPA, CIA, CFA

Note: Changes in accounting standards as well as new rulings and/or pronouncements issued after the publication of the readings on financial reporting and analysis may cause some of the information in these readings to become dated. Candidates are *not* responsible for anything that occurs after the readings were published. In addition, candidates are expected to be familiar with the analytical frameworks contained in the readings, as well as the implications of alternative accounting methods for financial analysis and valuation discussed in the readings. Candidates are also responsible for the content of accounting standards, but not for the actual reference numbers. Finally, candidates should be aware that certain ratios may be defined and calculated differently. When alternative ratio definitions exist and no specific definition is given, candidates should use the ratio definitions emphasized in the readings.

Financial Reporting Quality

by Jack T. Ciesielski, CPA, CFA, Elaine Henry, PhD, CFA, and Thomas I. Selling, PhD, CPA

Jack T. Ciesielski, CPA, CFA, is at R.G. Associates, Inc., publisher of The Analyst's Accounting Observer (USA). Elaine Henry, PhD, CFA, is at Stevens Institute of Technology (USA). Thomas I. Selling, PhD, CPA, is at the Cox School of Business, Southern Methodist University (USA).

LEARNING OUTCOMES

<i>Mastery</i>	<i>The candidate should be able to:</i>
<input type="checkbox"/>	a. distinguish between financial reporting quality and quality of reported results (including quality of earnings, cash flow, and balance sheet items);
<input type="checkbox"/>	b. describe a spectrum for assessing financial reporting quality;
<input type="checkbox"/>	c. distinguish between conservative and aggressive accounting;
<input type="checkbox"/>	d. describe motivations that might cause management to issue financial reports that are not high quality;
<input type="checkbox"/>	e. describe conditions that are conducive to issuing low-quality, or even fraudulent, financial reports;
<input type="checkbox"/>	f. describe mechanisms that discipline financial reporting quality and the potential limitations of those mechanisms;
<input type="checkbox"/>	g. describe presentation choices, including non-GAAP measures, that could be used to influence an analyst's opinion;
<input type="checkbox"/>	h. describe accounting methods (choices and estimates) that could be used to manage earnings, cash flow, and balance sheet items;
<input type="checkbox"/>	i. describe accounting warning signs and methods for detecting manipulation of information in financial reports.

Note: Changes in accounting standards as well as new rulings and/or pronouncements issued after the publication of the readings on financial reporting and analysis may cause some of the information in these readings to become dated. Candidates are *not* responsible for anything that occurs after the readings were published. In addition, candidates are expected to be familiar with the analytical frameworks contained in the readings, as well as the implications of alternative accounting methods for financial analysis and valuation discussed in the readings. Candidates are also responsible for the content of accounting standards, but not for the actual reference numbers. Finally, candidates should be aware that certain ratios may be defined and calculated differently. When alternative ratio definitions exist and no specific definition is given, candidates should use the ratio definitions emphasized in the readings.

1

INTRODUCTION

Ideally, analysts would always have access to financial reports that are based on sound financial reporting standards, such as those from the International Accounting Standards Board (IASB) and the Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB), and are free from manipulation. But, in practice, the quality of financial reports can vary greatly. High-quality financial reporting provides information that is useful to analysts in assessing a company's performance and prospects. Low-quality financial reporting contains inaccurate, misleading, or incomplete information.

Extreme lapses in financial reporting quality have given rise to high-profile scandals that resulted not only in investor losses but also in reduced confidence in the financial system. Financial statement users who were able to accurately assess financial reporting quality were better positioned to avoid losses. These lapses illustrate the challenges analysts face as well as the potential costs of failing to recognize practices that result in misleading or inaccurate financial reports.¹ Examples of misreporting can provide an analyst with insight into various signals that may indicate poor-quality financial reports.

It is important to be aware, however, that high-profile financial scandals reflect only those instances of misreporting that were identified. Although no one can know the extent of undetected misreporting, some research suggests that it is relatively widespread. An Ernst & Young 2013 survey of more than 3,000 board members, executives, managers, and other employees in 36 countries across Europe, the Middle East, India, and Africa indicates that 20% of the respondents had seen manipulation (such as overstated sales and understated costs) occurring in their own companies, and 42% of board directors and senior managers were aware of some type of irregular financial reporting in their own companies (Ernst & Young, 2013). Another survey of 169 chief financial officers of public US companies found that they believed, on average, that about 20% of companies intentionally distort earnings to misrepresent economic performance—even while adhering to US GAAP—and for such companies the magnitude of misrepresentation is about 10% of reported earnings (Dichev, Graham, Harvey, and Rajgopal, 2013 and 2015).

This reading addresses *financial reporting quality*, which pertains to the quality of information in financial reports, including disclosures in notes. High-quality reporting provides decision-useful information, which is relevant and faithfully represents the economic reality of the company's activities during the reporting period as well as the company's financial condition at the end of the period. A separate but interrelated attribute of quality is *quality of reported results* or *earnings quality*, which pertains to the earnings and cash generated by the company's actual economic activities and the resulting financial condition. The term "earnings quality" is commonly used in practice and will be used broadly to encompass the quality of earnings, cash flow, and/or balance sheet items. High-quality earnings result from activities that a company will likely be able to sustain in the future and provide a sufficient return on the company's investment. The concepts of earnings quality and financial reporting quality are interrelated because a correct assessment of earnings quality is possible only when there is some basic level of financial reporting quality. Beyond this basic level, as the quality of reporting increases, the ability of financial statement users to correctly assess earnings quality and to develop expectations for future performance arguably also increases.

¹ In this reading, the examples of misleading or inaccurate financial reports occurred in prior years—*not* because there are no current examples of questionable financial reporting, but rather because it has been conclusively resolved that misreporting occurred in the historical examples.

Section 2 provides a conceptual overview of reporting quality. Section 3 discusses motivations that might cause, and conditions that might enable, management to issue financial reports that are not high quality and mechanisms that aim to provide discipline to financial reporting quality. Section 4 describes choices made by management that can affect financial reporting quality—presentation choices, accounting methods, and estimates—as well as warning signs of poor-quality financial reporting.

CONCEPTUAL OVERVIEW

2

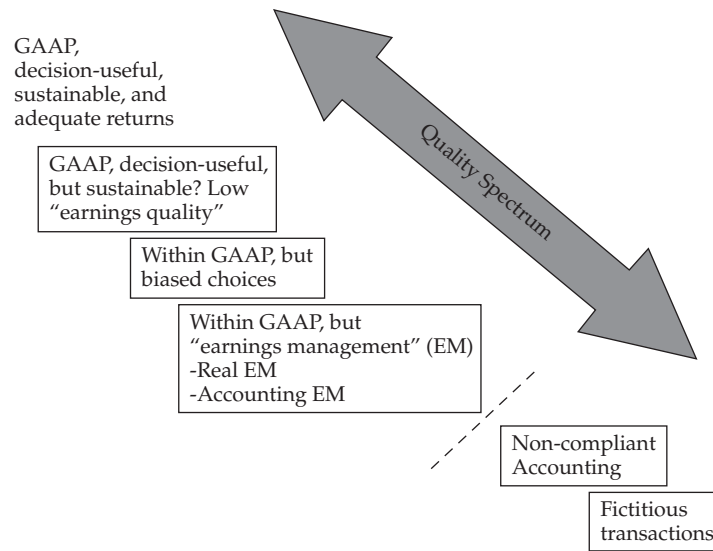
As indicated in the introduction, financial reporting quality and results or earnings quality are interrelated attributes of quality. Exhibit 1 illustrates this interrelationship and its implications.

Exhibit 1 Relationships between Financial Reporting Quality and Earnings Quality

		Financial Reporting Quality	
		Low	High
Earnings (Results) Quality	High	LOW financial reporting quality impedes assessment of earnings quality and impedes valuation.	HIGH financial reporting quality enables assessment. HIGH earnings quality increases company value.
	Low		HIGH financial reporting quality enables assessment. LOW earnings quality decreases company value.

As can be seen in Exhibit 1, if financial reporting quality is low, the information provided is not useful to assess the company’s performance and thus to make investment and other decisions.

Financial reporting quality varies across companies. High-quality reports contain information that is relevant, complete, neutral, and free from error. The lowest-quality reports contain information that is pure fabrication. Earnings (results) quality can range from high and sustainable to low and unsustainable. Providers of resources prefer high and sustainable earnings. Combining the two measures of quality—financial reporting and earnings—the overall quality of financial reports from a user perspective can be thought of as spanning a continuum from the highest to the lowest. Exhibit 2 presents a quality spectrum that provides a basis for evaluating better versus poorer quality reports. This spectrum ranges from reports that are of high financial reporting quality and reflect high and sustainable earnings quality to reports that are not useful because of poor financial reporting quality.

Exhibit 2 Quality Spectrum of Financial Reports


2.1 GAAP, Decision-Useful, Sustainable, and Adequate Returns

At the top of the spectrum, labeled in Exhibit 2 as “GAAP, decision-useful, sustainable, and adequate returns” are high-quality reports that provide useful information about high-quality earnings.

- High-quality financial reports conform to the generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) of the jurisdiction, such as International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRS), US GAAP, or other home-country GAAP. The exhibit uses the term GAAP to refer generically to the accounting standards accepted in a company’s jurisdiction.
- In addition to conforming to GAAP, high-quality financial reports also embody the characteristics of decision-useful information such as those defined in the *Conceptual Framework*.² Recall that the fundamental characteristics of useful information are relevance and faithful representation. Relevant information is defined as information that can affect a decision and encompasses the notion of materiality. (Information is considered material if “omitting it or misstating it could influence decisions that users make on the basis of the financial information of a specific reporting entity.”³) Faithful representation of economic events is complete, neutral, and free from error.

² The characteristics of decision-useful information are identical under IFRS and US GAAP. In September 2010, the IASB adopted the *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting* in place of the *Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements* (1989). The *Conceptual Framework* represents the partial completion of a joint convergence project between the IASB and FASB on an updated framework. The *Conceptual Framework* (2010) contains two updated chapters: “The Objective of Financial Reporting” and “Qualitative Characteristics of Useful Financial Information.” The remainder of the material in the *Conceptual Framework* is from the *Framework* (1989) and will be updated as the project is completed. Also in September 2010, the FASB issued Concepts Statement 8, “Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting,” to replace Concepts Statements 1 and 2.

³ Text from conceptual frameworks referenced in Note 4.

The *Conceptual Framework* also enumerates enhancing characteristics of useful information: comparability, verifiability, timeliness, and understandability. Of course, the desirable characteristics for financial information require trade-offs. For example, financial reports must balance the aim of providing information that is produced quickly enough to be timely and thus relevant, and yet not so quickly that errors occur. Financial reports must balance the aim of providing information that is complete but not so exhaustive that immaterial information is included. High-quality information results when these and other tradeoffs are made in an unbiased, skillful manner.

- High-quality earnings indicate an adequate level of return on investment and derive from activities that a company will likely be able to sustain in the future. An adequate level of return on investment exceeds the cost of the investment and also equals or exceeds the expected return. Sustainable activities and sustainable earnings are those expected to recur in the future. Sustainable earnings that provide a high return on investment contribute to higher valuation of a company and its securities.

2.2 GAAP, Decision-Useful, but Sustainable?

The next level down in Exhibit 2, “GAAP, decision-useful, but sustainable?” refers to circumstances in which high-quality reporting provides useful information, but that information reflects results or earnings that are not sustainable (lower earnings quality). The earnings may not be sustainable because the company cannot expect earnings that generate the same level of return on investment in the future or because the earnings, although replicable, will not generate sufficient return on investment to sustain the company. Earnings quality is low in both cases. Reporting can be high quality even when the economic reality being depicted is not of high quality. For example, consider a company that generates a loss, or earnings that do not provide an adequate return on investment, or earnings that resulted from non-recurring activities. The relatively undesirable economic reality could nonetheless be depicted in financial reporting that provides high-quality, decision-useful information.

Exhibit 3 presents an excerpt from the fiscal year 2014 first-quarter results of Toyota Motor Corporation, a Japanese automobile company. As highlighted by a *Wall Street Journal* article,⁴ the company sold fewer cars but reported an 88% increase in operating profits compared with the prior year, primarily because of the change in exchange rates. The weaker yen benefited Toyota both because the company manufactures more cars in Japan (compared with its competitors) and because the company sells a significant number of cars outside of Japan. Exchange rate weakening is a less sustainable source of profits than manufacturing and selling cars. In summary, this example is a case of high-quality financial reporting coupled with lower earnings quality.

Exhibit 3 Excerpt from Toyota Motor Corporation’s Consolidated Financial Results for FY2014 First Quarter Ending 30 June 2013

Consolidated vehicle unit sales in Japan and overseas decreased by 37 thousand units, or 1.6%, to 2,232 thousand units in FY2014 first quarter (the three months ended June 30, 2013) compared with FY2013 first quarter (the three months ended June 30, 2012). Vehicle unit sales in Japan decreased by 51 thousand units, or 8.8%, to 526 thousand units in FY2014 first quarter compared with FY2013

(continued)

⁴ Back (2013).

Exhibit 3 (Continued)

first quarter. Meanwhile, overseas vehicle unit sales increased by 14 thousand units, or 0.8%, to 1,706 thousand units in FY2014 first quarter compared with FY2013 first quarter.

As for the results of operations, net revenues increased by 753.7 billion yen, or 13.7%, to 6,255.3 billion yen in FY2014 first quarter compared with FY2013 first quarter, and operating income increased by 310.2 billion yen, or 87.9%, to 663.3 billion yen in FY2014 first quarter compared with FY2013 first quarter. The factors contributing to an increase in operating income were the effects of changes in exchange rates of 260.0 billion yen, cost reduction efforts of 70.0 billion yen, marketing efforts of 30.0 billion yen and other factors of 10.2 billion yen. On the other hand, the factors contributing to a decrease in operating income were the increase in expenses and others of 60.0 billion yen.

2.3 Biased Accounting Choices

The next level down in the spectrum in Exhibit 2 is “Within GAAP, but biased choices.” Biased choices result in financial reports that do not faithfully represent economic phenomena. The problem with bias in financial reporting, as with other deficiencies in financial reporting quality, is that it impedes an investor’s ability to correctly assess a company’s past performance, to accurately forecast future performance, and thus, to appropriately value the company.

Choices are deemed to be “aggressive” if they increase a company’s reported performance and financial position in the current period. The choice can increase the amount of revenues, earnings, and/or operating cash flow reported in the period or decrease the amount of expenses reported in the period and/or the amount of debt reported on the balance sheet. Aggressive choices may decrease the company’s reported performance and financial position in later periods. In contrast, choices are deemed “conservative” if they decrease a company’s reported performance and financial position in the current period. Conservative choices may decrease the amount of revenues, earnings, and/or operating cash flow reported in the period or increase the amount of expenses reported in the period and/or the amount of debt reported on the balance sheet. Conservative choices may increase the company’s reported performance and financial position in later periods.

Another type of bias is understatement of earnings volatility, so-called earnings “smoothing.” Earnings smoothing can result from conservative choices to understate earnings in periods when a company’s operations are performing well plus aggressive choices in periods when the company’s operations are struggling.

Biased choices can be made not only in the context of reported amounts but also in the context of how information is presented. For example, companies can disclose information transparently and in a manner that facilitates analysis, or they can disclose information in a manner that aims to obscure unfavorable information and/or to emphasize favorable information.

EXAMPLE 1

Quality of Financial Reports

PACCAR Inc. designs, manufactures, and distributes trucks and related after-market parts that are sold worldwide under the Kenworth, Peterbilt, and DAF nameplates. In 2013, the US SEC charged PACCAR for various accounting deficiencies that “clouded their financial reporting to investors in the midst

of the financial crisis.” The SEC complaint cites the company’s 2009 segment reporting. Exhibit 4A presents an excerpt from the notes to PACCAR’s financial statements, and Exhibit 4B presents an excerpt from the management’s discussion and analysis (MD&A) of PACCAR’s annual report.

Exhibit 4A Excerpt from Notes to PACCAR’s 2009 Financial Statements

S. SEGMENT AND RELATED INFORMATION

PACCAR operates in two principal segments, Truck and Financial Services. The Truck segment includes the manufacture of trucks and the distribution of related aftermarket parts, both of which are sold through a network of independent dealers... The Financial Services segment is composed of finance and leasing products and services provided to truck customers and dealers ... Included in All Other is PACCAR’s industrial winch manufacturing business. Also within this category are other sales, income and expenses not attributable to a reportable segment, including a portion of corporate expense.

Business Segment Data (\$ millions)

	2009	2008	2007
Income before Income Taxes			
Truck	\$25.9	\$1,156.5	\$1,352.8
All other	42.2	6.0	32.0
	68.1	1,162.5	1,384.8
Financial services	84.6	216.9	284.1
Investment income	22.3	84.6	95.4
	\$175.0	\$1,464.0	\$1,764.3

Exhibit 4B Excerpt from MD&A of PACCAR’s 2009 Annual Report

Net sales and revenues and gross margins for truck units and aftermarket parts are provided below. The aftermarket parts gross margin includes direct revenues and costs, but excludes certain truck segment costs.

	2009	2008	% Change
Net Sales and Revenues			
Trucks	\$5,103.30	\$11,281.30	-55
Aftermarket parts	1,890.70	2,266.10	-17
	\$6,994.00	\$13,547.40	-48
Gross Margin			
Trucks	-\$46.6	\$1,141.70	-104

(continued)

Exhibit 4B (Continued)

	2009	2008	% Change
Aftermarket parts	625.7	795.20	-21
	\$579.1	\$1,936.90	-70

- 1 Based on the segment data excerpted from the notes to the financial statements, was PACCAR's truck segment profitable in 2009?
- 2 Based on the data about the truck's gross margin presented in the MD&A, was PACCAR's truck segment profitable in 2009?
- 3 What is the main difference between the note presentation and the MD&A presentation?
- 4 The SEC complaint stated that "PACCAR failed to report the operating results of its aftermarket parts business separately from its truck sales business as required under segment reporting requirements, which are in place to ensure that investors gain the same insight into a company as its executives." Is the PACCAR situation an example of issues with financial reporting quality, earnings quality, or both?

Solution to 1:

Yes, the segment data presented in the note to the financial statements indicates that the Truck segment earned \$25.9 million in 2009.

Solution to 2:

No, the segment data presented in the MD&A indicates that the Truck segment had a negative gross margin.

Solution to 3:

The main difference between the note presentation and the MD&A presentation is that the aftermarket parts business is combined with the trucks business in the notes but separated in the MD&A. Although the data are not exactly comparable in the two disclosures (because the note shows income before taxes and the MD&A shows gross profit), the two disclosures present a different picture of PACCAR's profits from truck sales.

Solution to 4:

The PACCAR situation appears to be an example of issues with both financial reporting quality and earnings quality. The substantial decrease in truck sales and the negative gross margin reflect poor earnings quality. The failure to disclose clear segment information is an instance of poor financial reporting quality.

While choices exist within GAAP for the presentation of a desired economic picture, non-GAAP reporting adds yet another dimension of management discretion. Non-GAAP reporting includes both non-GAAP financial metrics and non-GAAP operating metrics.⁵ Non-GAAP financial metrics relate directly to the financial statements. A common non-GAAP financial metric is "non-GAAP earnings," which are earnings metrics created by reporting companies "that adjust standards-compliant earnings to

⁵ The term "non-GAAP" refers generally to all metrics that are non-compliant with generally accepted accounting principles and thus includes "non-IFRS" metrics.

exclude items required by accounting standards or to include items not permitted by accounting standards” (Ciesielski and Henry, 2017). In contrast, non-GAAP operating metrics do not relate directly to the financial statements and include metrics that are typically industry-driven, such as subscribers, active users, and occupancy rates.

Non-GAAP financial reporting has become increasingly common; this development presents challenges to analysts. An important challenge is that non-GAAP financial reporting diminishes comparability across financial statements. The adjustments that companies make to create non-GAAP earnings, for example, are generally ad hoc and thus differ significantly across companies. When evaluating non-GAAP financial metrics, investors must decide the extent to which specific adjustments should be incorporated into their analysis. In general, for all non-GAAP metrics, investors need to decide how such metrics should be incorporated into their analyses and forecasts.⁶

Management emphasis on non-GAAP financial measures, such as pro forma earnings (also sometimes called “adjusted earnings”) to deflect attention from less-than-desirable financial results is an example of an aggressive presentation choice.

Since 2003, if a company uses a non-GAAP financial measure⁷ in an SEC filing, it is required to display the most directly comparable GAAP measure with equal prominence and to provide a reconciliation between the non-GAAP measure and the equivalent GAAP measure. In other words, a company is not allowed to give more prominence to a non-GAAP financial measure in an SEC filing.

Similarly, the IFRS Practice Statement “Management Commentary,” issued December 2010, requires disclosures when non-IFRS measures are included in financial reports:

If information from the financial statements has been adjusted for inclusion in management commentary, that fact should be disclosed. If financial performance measures that are not required or defined by IFRSs are included within management commentary, those measures should be defined and explained, including an explanation of the relevance of the measure to users. When financial performance measures are derived or drawn from the financial statements, those measures should be reconciled to measures presented in the financial statements that have been prepared in accordance with IFRSs. (Page 17)

The reconciliation between as-reported measures (GAAP financial measures presented in the financial statements) and as-adjusted measures (non-GAAP financial measures presented in places other than the financial statements) can provide important information.

EXAMPLE 2

Presentation of Non-GAAP Financial Measures

Nokia Corporation, a global telecommunications company headquartered in Finland, operates three businesses: Devices & Services, HERE (the new brand for location and mapping services, formerly called Location & Commerce), and Nokia Siemens Networks. Exhibit 5 presents an excerpt from the company’s Interim Report for the second quarter ending June 2013.

⁶ A survey of non-GAAP earnings in the S&P 500 is presented in Ciesielski and Henry (2017). Some observers even recommend that investors shift their focus from a company’s earnings to a company’s “strategic assets” and the contribution of these assets to its competitive edge (Gu and Lev, 2017).

⁷ Non-domestic private issuers can file financial statements prepared in accordance with IFRS without reconciliation to US GAAP. The SEC recognizes US GAAP and IFRS as GAAP.

Exhibit 5 Excerpt from Summary Financial Information

EUR million	Reported and Non-IFRS second quarter 2013 Results ^{1,2,3}				
	Q2/13	Q2/12	YoY		QoQ
			Change	Q1/13	Change
Nokia					
Net sales	5,695	7,542	-24%	5,852	-3%
Operating profit	-115	-824		-150	
Operating profit (non-IFRS)	303	-325		181	67%
EPS, EUR diluted	-0.06	-0.38		-0.07	
EPS, EUR diluted (non-IFRS)	0.00	-0.08		-0.02	

The following excerpt explains the term “Non-IFRS.”

Note 1 relating to non-IFRS (also referred to as “underlying”) results: In addition to information on our reported IFRS results, we provide certain information on a non-IFRS, or underlying business performance, basis. Non-IFRS results exclude all material special items for all periods. In addition, non-IFRS results exclude intangible asset amortization, other purchase price accounting related items and inventory value adjustments arising from (i) the formation of Nokia Siemens Networks and (ii) all business acquisitions completed after June 30, 2008. Nokia believes that our non-IFRS results provide meaningful supplemental information to both management and investors regarding Nokia’s underlying business performance by excluding the above-described items that may not be indicative of Nokia’s business operating results. These non-IFRS financial measures should not be viewed in isolation or as substitutes to the equivalent IFRS measure(s), but should be used in conjunction with the most directly comparable IFRS measure(s) in the reported results. See note 2 below for information about the exclusions from our non-IFRS results. More information, including a reconciliation of our Q2 2013 and Q2 2012 non-IFRS results to our reported results, can be found

In an excerpt from Note 2, the company also disclosed the following.

Note 2 relating to non-IFRS exclusions:

Q2 2013—EUR 418 million (net) consisting of:

- EUR 157 million restructuring charge and other associated items in Nokia Siemens Networks.
- EUR 151 million losses related to divestments of businesses in Nokia Siemens Networks.
- EUR 10 million restructuring charge in HERE
- EUR 12 million of intangible asset amortization and other purchase price accounting related items arising from the acquisition of Motorola Solutions’ networks assets

- EUR 87 million of intangible asset amortization and other purchase price accounting related items arising from the acquisition of NAVTEQ
- EUR 1 million of intangible assets amortization and other purchase price accounting related items arising from the acquisition of Novarra, MetaCarta and Motally in Devices & Services

Note 3 related to changes to historical comparative financial results due to revised IFRS accounting standard, IAS 19 Employee benefits.

- 1 Based on the information provided, explain the differences between the following two disclosures contained in Nokia's interim statement:
 - A The first page of the interim report includes the following statement as a second-quarter 2013 highlight: "Nokia Group achieved underlying operating profitability for the fourth consecutive quarter, with a Q2 non-IFRS operating margin of 5.3%..."
 - B Nokia's Consolidated Income Statements (found on page 20 of the interim report) report a EUR278 million net loss.
- 2 How does the heading "Q2 2013—EUR418 million" from Nokia's Note 2 correspond with the excerpt from the company's Summary Financial Information shown in Exhibit 5?

Solution to 1:

As shown in Note 1, the company uses the term "underlying" to refer to non-IFRS metrics. The non-IFRS metric disclosed in A, "non-IFRS operating margin"—by definition—does not appear within financial statements prepared in accordance with IFRS. Here, it is referred to as a non-IFRS metric because information on the company's financial statements has been adjusted. In contrast, the IFRS metric disclosed in B, "net loss," is clearly presented on an income statement prepared in accordance with IFRS. Another difference between Disclosures A and B is that they refer to two different metrics: A refers to operating profit and B refers to net profit (loss). These two items appear on two different lines of the income statement. In general, operating profit (or operating loss) is before deductions for non-operating items, such as interest and taxes. The company's operating profit in accordance with IFRS was a negative EUR115 million—in other words, a EUR115 million operating loss. Note that as shown in Exhibit 5, the second-quarter non-IFRS operating profit was EUR303 million and second-quarter net sales totaled EUR5,695 million. As indicated in Disclosure A, the non-IFRS operating margin is 5.3% ($= 303/5,695$).

Overall, there are three key differences between Disclosures A and B: (1) A refers to a non-IFRS metric rather than an IFRS metric; (2) A refers to operating profit, which was positive, rather than to net income, which was negative; and (3) A highlights a positive economic outcome. An analyst should be aware of the alternative means by which earnings announcements can paint a positive picture of companies' results.

Solution to 2:

The heading "Q2 2013—EUR418 million" refers to the difference between the company's non-IFRS operating profit of EUR303 million and the company's operating loss of EUR115 million calculated in accordance with IFRS. The next

lines indicate the components of the EUR418 million that were excluded when calculating the non-IFRS operating profit but included when calculating the IFRS operating profit (loss).

Often, poor reporting quality occurs simultaneously with poor earnings quality; for example, aggressive accounting choices are made to obscure poor performance. It is also possible, of course, for poor reporting quality to occur with high-quality earnings. Although a company with good performance would not require aggressive accounting choices to obscure poor performance, it might nonetheless produce poor-quality reports for other reasons. A company with good performance might be unable to produce high-quality reports because of inadequate internal systems.

Another scenario in which poor reporting quality might occur simultaneously with high quality earnings is that a company with good performance might deliberately produce reports based on “conservative” rather than aggressive accounting choices—that is, choices that make current performance look worse. One motivation might be to avoid unwanted political attention. Another motivation could arise in a period in which management had already exceeded targets before the end of the period and thus made conservative accounting choices that would delay reporting profits until the following period (so-called “hidden reserves”). Similar motivations might also contribute to accounting choices that create the appearance that the trajectory of future results would appear more attractive. For example, a company might make choices to accelerate losses in the first year of an acquisition or the first year of a new CEO’s tenure so that the trajectory of future results would appear more attractive.

Overall, *unbiased* financial reporting is the ideal and the preference. Investors may prefer conservative choices rather than aggressive ones, however, because a positive surprise is easier to tolerate than a negative surprise. Biased reporting, whether conservative or aggressive, adversely affects a user’s ability to assess a company.

The quality spectrum considers the more intuitive situation in which less-than-desired underlying economics are the central motivation for poor reporting quality. In addition, it is necessary to have some degree of reporting quality in order to evaluate earnings quality. Proceeding down the spectrum, therefore, the concepts of reporting quality and earnings quality become progressively less distinguishable.

2.3.1 *Within GAAP, but “Earnings Management”*

The next level down on the spectrum in Exhibit 2 is labeled “Within GAAP, but ‘earnings management.’” The term “earnings management” is defined here as making intentional choices that create biased financial reports.⁸ The distinction between earnings management and biased choices is subtle and, primarily, a matter of intent. Earnings management represents “deliberate actions to influence reported earnings and their interpretation” (Ronen and Yaari, 2008). Earnings can be “managed” upward (increased) by taking *real* actions, such as deferring research and development (R&D) expenses into the next reporting period. Alternatively, earnings can be increased by *accounting* choices, such as changing accounting estimates. For example, the amount of estimated product returns, bad debt expense, or asset impairment could be decreased. Because it is difficult to determine intent, we include earnings management under the biased choices discussion.

⁸ Various definitions have appeared in academic research. Closest to the discussion here is Schipper (1989), which uses the term “earnings management” to mean “disclosure management” in the sense of a purposeful intervention in the external financial reporting process, with the intent of obtaining some private gain (as opposed to, say, merely facilitating the neutral operation of the process).”

2.4 Departures from GAAP

The next levels down on the spectrum in Exhibit 2 mark departures from GAAP. Financial reporting that departs from GAAP can generally be considered low quality. In such situations, earnings quality is likely difficult or impossible to assess because comparisons with earlier periods and/or other entities cannot be made. An example of improper accounting was Enron (accounting issues revealed in 2001), whose inappropriate use of off-balance-sheet structures and other complex transactions resulted in vastly understated indebtedness as well as overstated profits and operating cash flow. Another notorious example of improper accounting was WorldCom (accounting issues discovered in 2002), a company that by improperly capitalizing certain expenditures dramatically understated its expenses and thus overstated its profits. More recently, New Century Financial (accounting issues revealed in 2007) issued billions of dollars of subprime mortgages and improperly reserved only minimal amounts for loan repurchase losses. Each of these companies subsequently filed for bankruptcy.

In the 1980s, Polly Peck International (PPI) reported currency losses, incurred in the normal course of operations, directly through equity rather than in its profit and loss statements. In the 1990s, Sunbeam improperly reported revenues from “bill-and-hold” sales and also manipulated the timing of expenses in an effort to falsely portray outstanding performance of its then-new chief executive.

At the bottom of the quality spectrum, fabricated reports portray fictitious events, either to fraudulently obtain investments by misrepresenting the company’s performance and/or to obscure fraudulent misappropriation of the company’s assets. Examples of fraudulent reporting are unfortunately easy to find, although they were not necessarily easy to identify at the time. In the 1970s, Equity Funding Corp. created fictitious revenues and even fictitious policyholders. In the 1980s, Crazy Eddie’s reported fictitious inventory as well as fictitious revenues supported by fake invoices. In 2004, Parmalat reported fictitious bank balances.

EXAMPLE 3

Spectrum for Assessing Quality of Financial Reports

Jake Lake, a financial analyst, has identified several items in the financial reports of several (hypothetical) companies. Describe each of these items in the context of the financial reporting quality spectrum.

- 1 ABC Co.’s 2012 earnings totaled \$233 million, including a \$100 million gain from selling one of its less profitable divisions. ABC’s earnings for the prior three years totaled \$120 million, \$107 million, and \$111 million. The company’s financial reports are extremely clear and detailed, and the company’s earnings announcement highlights the one-time nature of the \$100 million gain.
- 2 DEF Co. discloses that in 2012, it changed the depreciable life of its equipment from 3 years to 15 years. Equipment represents a substantial component of the company’s assets. The company’s disclosures indicate that the change is permissible under the accounting standards of its jurisdiction but provide only limited explanation of the change.
- 3 GHI Co.’s R&D expenditures for the past five years have been approximately 3% of sales. In 2012, the company significantly reduced its R&D expenditures. Without the reduction in R&D expenditures, the company would have reported a loss. No explanation is disclosed.

Solution to 1:

ABC's 2012 total earnings quality can be viewed as low because nearly half of the earnings are derived from a non-sustainable activity, namely the sale of a division. ABC's 2012 quality of earnings from continuing operations may be high because the amounts are fairly consistent from year to year, although an analyst would undertake further analysis to confirm earnings quality. In general, a user of financial reports should look beyond the bottom-line net income. The description provided suggests that the company's reporting quality is high; the reports are clear and detailed, and the one-time nature of the \$100 million gain is highlighted.

Solution to 2:

DEF's accounting choice appears to be within permissible accounting standards, but its effect is to substantially lower depreciation expense and thus to increase earnings for the year. The quality of reported earnings is questionable. Although the new level of earnings may be sustainable, similar increases in earnings for future periods might not be achievable, because increasing earnings solely by changing accounting estimates is likely not sustainable. In addition, the description provided suggests that the company's reporting quality is low because it offers only a limited explanation for the change.

Solution to 3:

GHI's operational choice to reduce its R&D may reflect real earnings management because the change enabled the company to avoid reporting a loss. In addition, the description provided suggests that the company's reporting quality is low because it does not offer an explanation for the change.

2.5 Differentiate between Conservative and Aggressive Accounting

This section returns to the implications of conservative and aggressive accounting choices. As mentioned earlier, *unbiased* financial reporting is the ideal. But investors may prefer or be perceived to prefer conservative rather than aggressive accounting choices because a positive surprise is acceptable. In contrast, management may prefer or be perceived to prefer aggressive accounting choices because they increase the company's reported performance and financial position in the current period.

Aggressive accounting choices in the current period may decrease the company's reported performance and financial position in later periods, which creates a sustainability issue. Conservative choices do not typically create a sustainability issue, because they decrease the company's reported performance and financial position in the current period and may increase its reported performance and financial position in later periods. In terms of establishing expectations for the future, however, financial reporting that is relevant and faithfully representative is the most useful.

A common presumption is that financial reports are typically biased upward, but that is not always the case. Although accounting standards ideally promote unbiased financial reporting, some accounting standards may specifically require a conservative treatment of a transaction or an event. Also, managers may choose to take a conservative approach when applying standards. It is important that an analyst consider the possibility of conservative choices and their effects.

At its most extreme, conservatism follows accounting practices that "anticipate no profit, but anticipate all losses" (Bliss, 1924). But in general, conservatism means that revenues may be recognized once a verifiable and legally enforceable receivable has been generated and that losses need not be recognized until it becomes "probable" that

an actual loss will be incurred. Conservatism is not an absolute but is characterized by degrees, such as “the accountant’s tendency to require a higher degree of verification to recognize good news as gains than to recognize bad news as losses” (Basu, 1997). From this perspective, “verification” (e.g., physical existence of inventories, evidence of costs incurred or to be incurred, or establishment of rights and obligations on legal grounds) drives the degree of conservatism: For recognition of revenues, a higher degree of verification would be required than for expenses.

2.5.1 Conservatism in Accounting Standards

The *Conceptual Framework* supports neutrality of information: “A neutral depiction is without bias in the selection or presentation of financial information.”⁹ Neutrality—lack of upward or downward bias—is considered a desirable characteristic of financial reporting. Conservatism directly conflicts with the characteristic of neutrality because the asymmetric nature of conservatism leads to bias in measuring assets and liabilities—and ultimately, earnings.

Despite efforts to support neutrality in financial reporting, however, many conservatively biased standards remain. These standards result in downward-biased pictures of earnings and financial position within financial reports. Without care, this biased portrayal can result in biased estimates of future prospects developed using financial reports.

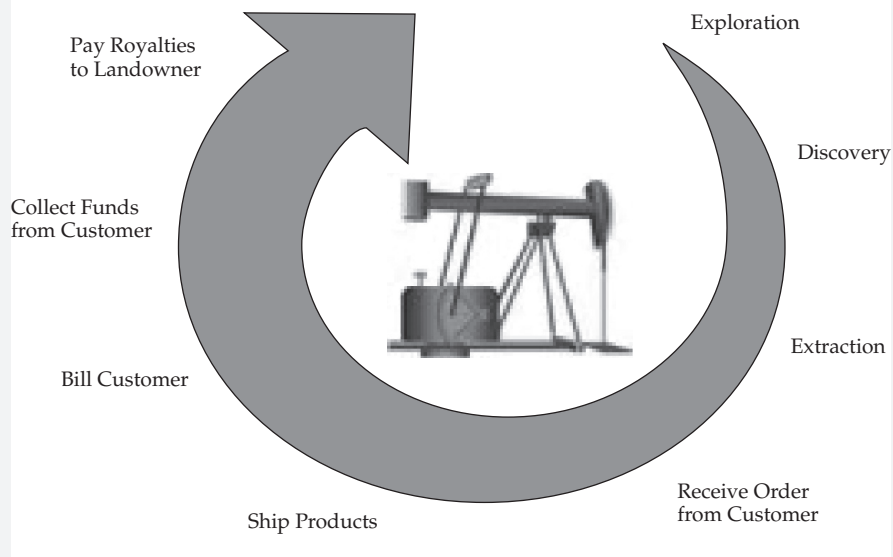
Example 4 illustrates the issues posed by conservative accounting practices for analyzing financial reports of companies engaged in the exploration and production of underground natural resources—oil and gas, coal, precious metals, and so on.

EXAMPLE 4

Accounting Conservatism in Extractive Industries

Exhibit 6 depicts the typical exploration and production operating cycle, beginning with exploration activities, through realization of cash from customers, and beyond, to the payment of royalties from cash collections that are often due to landowners and/or host governments.

⁹ IASB and FASB, *The Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting* (2010):QC 14.

Exhibit 6 The Extractive Industries Production Cycle


Under both IFRS and US GAAP, companies in the oil and gas industry recognize revenue after the product has been shipped. In addition, under both sets of standards, companies may capitalize some acquisition, exploration, and development costs, but extraction costs are expensed as they are incurred. Thus, extraction costs are expensed during the period between discovery and the time of sale.

- 1 Why is the revenue recognition accounting standard in the oil and gas industry characterized as conservative?
- 2 Why is the expense recognition accounting standard in the oil and gas industry characterized as conservative?

Solution to 1:

The most significant “good news” events for an oil exploration and production company, by far, are discoveries of oil and gas “reserves.” Ironically, one could not possibly know this critical fact from looking at the company’s reported earnings, because conservative accounting standards delay recognition of sales revenue until the energy resources are extracted, a customer is identified, and product is shipped. Conservative accounting standards prohibit recognition of the first revenues from an oil and gas reserve until years after its actual discovery.

Solution to 2:

Because extraction costs must be expensed rather than capitalized, a company may report losses (or reduced profits) during the periods between discovery and the first sales from an oil field—even though the oil exists with certainty and possesses saleable value.

The unavoidable conclusion is that conservatism—which can now be characterized as a delay in the recognition in profits from when they are actually created until a point at which they are subject to a sufficiently high level of verification—sometimes impairs the relevance of financial statements for external decision makers. In the particular case of oil and gas exploration and production, many jurisdictions require extensive supplemental disclosures about operations, which reduce the problem to a degree.

Standards across jurisdictions may differ on the extent of conservatism embedded within the standards. An analyst should be aware of the implications of accounting standards on the financial reports.

An example is the different treatment by IFRS and US GAAP for the impairment of long-lived assets.¹⁰ Both IFRS and US GAAP specify an impairment analysis protocol that begins with an assessment of whether recent events indicate that the economic benefit from an individual or group of long-lived assets may be less than its carrying amount(s). From that point on, however, the two regimes diverge:

- Under IFRS, if the “recoverable amount” (the higher of fair value less costs to sell and value in use) is less than the carrying amount, then an impairment charge will be recorded.
- Under US GAAP, an impairment charge will be recorded only when the sum of the undiscounted future cash flows expected to be derived from the asset(s) is less than the carrying amount(s). If the undiscounted future cash flows are less than the carrying amount, the asset is written down to fair value.

To illustrate the difference in application, assume that a factory is the unit of account eligible for impairment testing: Its carrying amount is \$10,000,000; “fair value” and “recoverable amount” are both \$6,000,000; and the undiscounted future net cash flows associated with the factory total \$10,000,000. Under IFRS, an impairment charge of \$4,000,000 would be recorded; but under US GAAP, no impairment charge would be recognized.

Thus, on its face, IFRS would be regarded as more conservative than US GAAP because impairment losses would normally be recognized earlier under IFRS than under US GAAP. But, taking the analysis one step further, such a broad generalization may not hold up. For example, if an asset is impaired under both IFRS and US GAAP and the asset’s value in use exceeds its fair value, the impairment loss under US GAAP will be greater. Also, IFRS permits the recognition of recoveries of the recoverable amount in subsequent periods if evidence indicates that the recoverable amount has subsequently increased. In contrast, US GAAP prohibits the subsequent write-up of an asset after an impairment charge has been taken; it would recognize the asset’s increased value only when the asset is ultimately sold.

Other common examples of conservatism in accounting standards include the following:

- *Research costs.* Because the future benefit of research costs is uncertain at the time the costs are incurred, both US GAAP and IFRS require immediate expensing instead of capitalization.
- *Litigation losses.* When it becomes “probable” that a cost will be incurred, both US GAAP and IFRS require expense recognition, even though a legal liability may not be incurred until a future date.
- *Insurance recoverables.* Generally, a company that receives payment on an insurance claim may not recognize a receivable until the insurance company acknowledges the validity of the claimed amount.
- *Commodity inventories.* Increases in the market prices of commodity inventories held may not be recognized unless they are sold, despite the fact that identifying a specific buyer is a relatively inconsequential activity from an economic standpoint.

¹⁰ See IAS 36 and FASB ASC Section 360-10-35.

Watts (2003) reviews empirical studies of conservatism, and identifies four potential benefits of conservatism:

- Given asymmetrical information, conservatism may protect the contracting parties with less information and greater risk. This protection is necessary because the contracting party may be at a disadvantage. For example, corporations that access debt markets have limited liability, and lenders thus have limited recourse to recover their losses from shareholders. As another example, executives who receive earnings-based bonuses might not be subject to having those bonuses “clawed back” if earnings are subsequently discovered to be overstated.
- Conservatism reduces the possibility of litigation and, by extension, litigation costs. Rarely, if ever, is a company sued because it understated good news or overstated bad news.
- Conservative rules may protect the interests of regulators and politicians by reducing the possibility that fault will be found with them if companies overstate earnings or assets.
- In many tax jurisdictions, financial and tax reporting rules are linked. For example, in Germany and Japan, only deductions taken against reported income can be deducted against taxable income. Hence, companies can reduce the present value of their tax payments by electing conservative accounting policies for certain types of events.

Analysts should consider possible conservative and aggressive biases and their consequences when examining financial reports. Current-period financial reports may be unbiased, upward biased through aggressive accounting choices, downward biased through conservative accounting choices, or biased through a combination of conservative and aggressive accounting choices.

2.5.2 *Bias in the Application of Accounting Standards*

Any application of accounting standards, whether the standard itself is neutral or not, often requires significant amounts of judgment. Characterizing the application of an accounting standard as conservative or aggressive is more a matter of intent rather than definition.

Careful analysis of disclosures, facts, and circumstances contributes to making an accurate inference of intent. Management seeking to manipulate earnings may take a longer view by sacrificing short-term profitability in order to ensure higher profits in later periods. One example of biased accounting in the guise of conservatism is the so-called “big bath” restructuring charges. Both US GAAP and IFRS provide for accrual of future costs associated with restructurings, and these costs are often associated with and presented along with asset impairments. But in some instances, companies use the accounting provisions to estimate “big” losses in the current period so that performance in future periods will appear better. Having observed numerous instances of manipulative practices in the late 1990s, in which US companies set up opportunities to report higher profits in future periods that were not connected with performance in those periods, the SEC staff issued rules that narrowed the circumstances under which costs can be categorized as part of a “non-recurring” restructuring event and enhanced the transparency surrounding restructuring charges and asset impairments.¹¹

A similar manifestation of “big bath” accounting is often referred to as “cookie jar reserve accounting.” Both US GAAP and IFRS require accruals of estimates of future non-payments of loans. In his 1998 speech “The ‘Numbers Game,’” SEC chair Arthur

¹¹ SEC, “Restructuring and Impairment Charges,” Staff Accounting Bulletin (SAB) No. 100 (1999): www.sec.gov/interps/account/sab100.htm.

Levitt expressed the general concern that corporations were overstating loans and other forms of loss allowances for the purpose of smoothing income over time.¹² In 2003, the SEC issued interpretive guidance that essentially requires a company to provide a separate section in management's discussion and analysis (MD&A) titled "Critical Accounting Estimates."¹³ If the effects of subjective estimates and judgments of highly uncertain matters are material to stakeholders (investors, customers, suppliers, and other users of the financial statements), disclosures of their nature and exposure to uncertainty should be made in the MD&A. This requirement is in addition to required disclosures in the notes to the financial statements.

CONTEXT FOR ASSESSING FINANCIAL REPORTING QUALITY

3

In assessing financial reporting quality, it is useful to consider whether a company's managers may be motivated to issue financial reports that are not high quality. If motivation exists, an analyst should consider whether the reporting environment is conducive to managers' misreporting. It is important to consider mechanisms within the reporting environment that discipline financial reporting quality, such as the regulatory regime.

3.1 Motivations

Managers may be motivated to issue financial reports that are not high quality to mask poor performance, such as loss of market share or lower profitability than competitors. Lewis (2012) stated, "A firm experiencing performance problems, particularly those it considers transient, may induce a response that inflates current earnings numbers in exchange for lower future earnings."

- Even when there is no need to mask poor performance, managers frequently have incentives to meet or beat market expectations as reflected in analysts' forecasts and/or management's own forecasts. Exceeding forecasts typically increases stock price, if only temporarily. Additionally, exceeding forecasts can increase management compensation that is linked to increases in stock price or to reported earnings. Graham, Harvey, and Rajgopal (2005) found that the CFOs they surveyed view earnings as the most important financial metric to financial markets. Achieving (or exceeding) particular benchmarks, including prior-year earnings and analysts' forecasts, is very important. The authors examined a variety of motivations for why managers might "exercise accounting discretion to achieve some desirable earnings goal." Motivations to meet earnings benchmarks include equity market effects (for example, building credibility with market participants and positively affecting stock price) and trade effects

¹² Arthur Levitt, "The 'Numbers Game,'" Remarks given at NYU Center for Law and Business (28 September 1998): www.sec.gov/news/speech/speecharchive/1998/spch220.txt.

¹³ SEC, "Commission Guidance Regarding Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations," Financial Reporting Release (FRR) No. 72 (2003): www.sec.gov/rules/interp/33-8350.htm.

(for example, enhancing reputation with customers and suppliers). Equity market effects are the most powerful incentives, but trade effects are important, particularly for smaller companies.

- Career concerns and incentive compensation may motivate accounting choices. For example, managers might be concerned that working for a company that performs poorly will limit their future career opportunities or that they will not receive a bonus based on exceeding a particular earnings target. In both cases, management might be motivated to make accounting choices to increase earnings. In a period of marginally poor performance, a manager might accelerate or inflate revenues and/or delay or under report expenses. Conversely, in a period of strong performance, a manager might delay revenue recognition or accelerate expense recognition to increase the probability of exceeding the next period's targets (i.e., to "bank" some earnings for the next period.) The surveyed managers indicated a greater concern with career implications of reported results than with incentive compensation implications.

Avoiding debt covenant violations can motivate managers to inflate earnings. Graham, Harvey, and Rajgopal's survey indicates that avoidance of bond covenant violation is important to highly leveraged and unprofitable companies but relatively unimportant overall.

3.2 Conditions Conducive to Issuing Low-Quality Financial Reports

As discussed, deviations from a neutral presentation of financial results could be driven by management choices or by a jurisdiction's financial reporting standards. Ultimately, a decision to issue low-quality, or even fraudulent, financial reports is made by an individual or individuals. Why individuals make such choices is not always immediately apparent. For example, why would the newly appointed CEO of Sunbeam, who already had a net worth of more than \$100 million, commit accounting fraud by improperly reporting revenues from "bill-and-hold" sales and manipulating the timing of expenses, rather than admit to lower-than-expected financial results?

Typically, three conditions exist when low-quality financial reports are issued: opportunity, motivation, and rationalization. Opportunity can be the result of internal conditions, such as poor internal controls or an ineffective board of directors, or external conditions, such as accounting standards that provide scope for divergent choices or minimal consequences for an inappropriate choice. Motivation can result from pressure to meet some criteria for personal reasons, such as a bonus, or corporate reasons, such as concern about financing in the future. Rationalization is important because if an individual is concerned about a choice, he or she needs to be able to justify it to him- or herself.

Former Enron CFO Andrew Fastow, speaking at the 2013 Association of Certified Fraud Examiners Annual Fraud Conference, indicated that he knew at the time he was doing something wrong but followed procedure to justify his decision (Pavlo, 2013). He made sure to get management and board approval, as well as legal and accounting opinions, and to include appropriate disclosures. The incentive and corporate culture was to create earnings rather than focus on long-term value. Clearly, as reflected in his prison sentence, he did something that was not only wrong but illegal.

3.3 Mechanisms That Discipline Financial Reporting Quality

Markets potentially discipline financial reporting quality. Companies and nations compete for capital, and the cost of capital is a function of perceived risk—including the risk that a company's financial statements will skew investors' expectations. Thus,

in the absence of other conflicting economic incentives, a company seeking to minimize its long-term cost of capital should aim to provide high-quality financial reports. In addition to markets, other mechanisms that discipline financial reporting quality include market regulatory authorities, auditors, and private contracts.

3.3.1 Market Regulatory Authorities

Companies seeking to minimize the cost of capital should maximize reporting quality, but as discussed earlier, conflicting incentives often exist. For this reason, national regulations, and the regulators that establish and enforce rules, can play a significant role in financial reporting quality. Many of the world's securities regulators are members of the International Organization of Securities Commissions (IOSCO). IOSCO is recognized as the "global standard setter for the securities sector" although it does not actually set standards but rather establishes objectives and principles to guide securities and capital market regulation. IOSCO's membership includes more than 120 securities regulators and 80 other securities market participants, such as stock exchanges.¹⁴

One member of IOSCO is the European Securities and Markets Authority (ESMA),¹⁵ an independent EU authority with a mission to "enhance the protection of investors and reinforce stable and well-functioning financial markets in the European Union."¹⁶ ESMA organizes financial reporting enforcement activities through a forum consisting of European enforcers from European Economic Area countries. Direct supervision and enforcement activities are performed at the national level. For example, the Financial Conduct Authority (FCA) is the IOSCO member with primary responsibility for securities regulation in the United Kingdom. ESMA reported that European enforcers performed 850 full and 1,100 partial reviews of companies' accounts in 2011, which in turn led to enforcement actions with the following outcomes: 18 amended reports to restate financial statements, approximately 150 public corrective notes or announcements, and approximately 420 required corrections in future financial statements.¹⁷

Another member of IOSCO is the US regulatory authority, the Securities and Exchange Commission. The SEC is responsible for overseeing approximately 9,100 US public companies (along with investment advisers, broker/dealers, securities exchanges, and other entities) and reviews the disclosures of these companies at least once every three years with the aim of improving information available to investors and potentially uncovering possible violations of securities laws.¹⁸ In 2002, the SEC reported that it had filed 515 enforcement actions for financial reporting and disclosure violations during the preceding five-year period (along with around 2,000 other types of enforcement actions) in which 68% of the named parties were charged with fraud.¹⁹

Examples of regulatory bodies in Asia include the Financial Services Agency in Japan, the China Securities Regulatory Commission, and the Securities and Exchange Board of India. Examples of regulatory bodies in South America include the Comisión

¹⁴ Visit www.iosco.org for more information.

¹⁵ ESMA is an associate member of IOSCO. The individual countries' authorities are ordinary members of IOSCO. An ordinary member has primary responsibility for securities regulation in its jurisdiction and is the voting member of IOSCO. Some countries' stock exchanges are ordinary or affiliate members. An affiliate member is a self-regulatory body (SRO), or an international body, with an appropriate interest in securities regulation.

¹⁶ Text from ESMA's mission statement on their website: www.esma.europa.eu.

¹⁷ ESMA, "Activity Report on IFRS Enforcement in the European Economic Area in 2011," European Securities and Markets Authority (28 June 2012): www.esma.europa.eu.

¹⁸ SEC, "FY2013 Congressional Justification," Securities and Exchange Commission (February 2012): www.sec.gov/about/secfy13congbudjust.pdf

¹⁹ SEC, "Report Pursuant to Section 704 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002," Securities and Exchange Commission (30 July 2002): www.sec.gov/news/studies/sox704report.pdf

Nacional de Valores in Argentina, Comissão de Valores Mobiliários in Brazil, and Superintendencia de Valores y Seguros in Chile. A full list of IOSCO members can be found on the organization's website.

Typical features of a regulatory regime that most directly affect financial reporting quality include the following:

- *Registration requirements.* Market regulators typically require publicly traded companies to register securities before offering the securities for sale to the public. A registration document typically contains current financial statements, other relevant information about the risks and prospects of the company issuing the securities, and information about the securities being offered.
- *Disclosure requirements.* Market regulators typically require publicly traded companies to make public periodic reports, including financial reports and management comments. Standard-setting bodies, such as the IASB and FASB, are typically private sector, self-regulated organizations with board members who are experienced accountants, auditors, users of financial statements, and academics. Regulatory authorities, such as the Accounting and Corporate Regulatory Authority in Singapore, the Securities and Exchange Commission in the United States, the Securities and Exchange Commission in Brazil, and the Financial Reporting Council in the United Kingdom, have the legal authority to enforce financial reporting requirements and exert other controls over entities that participate in the capital markets within their jurisdiction. In other words, *generally*, standard-setting bodies set the standards, and regulatory authorities recognize and enforce those standards. Without the recognition of standards by regulatory authorities, the private-sector standard-setting bodies would have no authority. Regulators often retain the legal authority to establish financial reporting standards in their jurisdiction and can overrule the private-sector standard-setting bodies.
- *Auditing requirements.* Market regulators typically require companies' financial statements to be accompanied by an audit opinion attesting that the financial statements conform to the relevant set of accounting standards. Some regulators, such as the SEC in the United States, require an additional audit opinion attesting to the effectiveness of the company's internal controls over financial reporting.
- *Management commentaries.* Regulations typically require publicly traded companies' financial reports to include statements by management. For example, the FCA in the United Kingdom requires a management report containing "(1) a fair review of the issuer's business; and (2) a description of the principal risks and uncertainties facing the issuer."
- *Responsibility statements.* Regulations typically require a statement from the person or persons responsible for the company's filings. Such statements require the responsible individuals to explicitly acknowledge responsibility and to attest to the correctness of the financial reports. Some regulators, such as the SEC in the United States, require formal certifications that carry specific legal penalties for false certifications.
- *Regulatory review of filings.* Regulators typically undertake a review process to ensure that the rules have been followed. The review process typically covers all initial registrations and a sample of subsequent periodic financial reports.
- *Enforcement mechanisms.* Regulators are granted various powers to enforce the securities market rules. Such powers can include assessing fines, suspending or permanently barring market participants, and bringing criminal prosecutions. Public announcements of disciplinary actions are also a type of enforcement mechanism.

In summary, market regulatory authorities play a central role in encouraging high-quality financial reporting.

3.3.2 Auditors

As noted, regulatory authorities typically require that publicly traded companies' financial statements be audited by an independent auditor. Private companies also obtain audit opinions for their financial statements, either voluntarily or because audit reports are required by an outside party, such as providers of debt or equity capital.

Audit opinions provide financial statement users with some assurance that the information complies with the relevant set of accounting standards and presents the company's information fairly. Exhibits 7, 8, and 9 provide excerpts from the independent auditors' reports for GlaxoSmithKline plc, Novartis Group, and the Nestlé Group, respectively. Note that for each company, the auditor issued an unqualified or clean opinion that reflects the specific requirements of the company's regulatory regime. For example, the audit opinions for Novartis include an SEC-required opinion on the effectiveness of internal controls because Novartis' securities trade in the United States. The SEC permits non-US companies to report using US GAAP, IFRS as issued by the IASB, or home-country GAAP. If a company reports using home-country GAAP, a reconciliation to US GAAP must be provided. Regardless of the standards used by a non-US company in preparing its financial statements, an opinion on internal controls' effectiveness is required.

Exhibit 7 Excerpts from Audit Opinion of PricewaterhouseCoopers LLP from the 2012 Annual Report of GlaxoSmithKline plc

In our opinion the Group financial statements:

- give a true and fair view of the state of the Group's affairs as at 31 December 2012 and of its profit and cash flows for the year then ended;
- have been properly prepared in accordance with IFRS as adopted by the European Union; and
- have been prepared in accordance with the requirements of the Companies Act 2006 and Article 4 of the IAS Regulation.

...

In our opinion the Group financial statements comply with IFRSs as issued by the IASB.

...

In our opinion the information given in the Directors' Report for the financial year for which the Group financial statements are prepared is consistent with the Group financial statements.

Exhibit 8 Excerpts from Audit Opinion of PricewaterhouseCoopers AG from the 2012 Annual Report of Novartis Group

In our opinion, the consolidated financial statements for the year ended December 31, 2012 present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position, the results of operations and the cash flows in accordance with International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRS) as issued by the International Accounting Standards Board and comply with Swiss law.

...

(continued)

Exhibit 8 (Continued)

In our opinion, Novartis Group maintained, in all material respects, effective internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 2012, based on criteria established in Internal Control – Integrated Framework issued by the COSO.

Exhibit 9 Excerpt from Audit Opinion of KPMG SA from the 2012 Annual Report of Nestlé Group

In our opinion, the consolidated financial statements [of the Nestlé Group] for the year ended 31 December 2012 give a true and fair view of the financial position, the results of operations and the cash flows in accordance with International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRS) and comply with Swiss law.

Although audit opinions provide discipline for financial reporting quality, inherent limitations exist. First, an audit opinion is based on a review of information prepared by the company. If a company deliberately intends to deceive its auditor, a review of information might not uncover misstatements. Second, an audit is based on sampling, and the sample might not reveal misstatements. Third, an “expectations gap” may exist between the auditor’s role and the public’s expectation of auditors. An audit is not typically intended to detect fraud; it is intended to provide assurance that the financial reports are fairly presented. Finally, the company being audited pays the audit fees, often established through a competitive process. This situation could provide an auditor with an incentive to show leniency to the company being audited, particularly if the auditor’s firm provides additional services to the company.

3.3.3 Private Contracting

Aspects of private contracts, such as loan agreements or investment contracts, can serve as mechanisms to discipline financial reporting quality. Many parties that have a contractual arrangement with a company have an incentive to monitor that company’s performance and to ensure that the company’s financial reports are high quality. For example, loan agreements often contain loan covenants, which create specifically tailored financial reporting requirements that are legally binding for the issuer. As noted earlier, avoidance of debt covenant violation is a potential motivation for managers to inflate earnings. As another example, an investment contract could contain provisions giving investors the option to recover all or part of their investment if certain financial triggers occur. Such provisions could motivate the investee’s managers to manipulate reported results to avoid the financial triggers.

Because the financial reports prepared by the investees or borrowers directly affect the contractual outcomes—potentially creating a motivation for misreporting—investors and lenders are motivated to monitor financial reports and to ensure that they are high quality.

EXAMPLE 5**Financial Reporting Manipulation: Motivations and Disciplining Mechanisms**

For each of the following two scenarios, identify (1) factors that might motivate the company's managers to manipulate reported financial amounts and (2) applicable mechanisms that could discipline financial reporting quality.

- 1 ABC Co. is a private company. Bank NTBig has made a loan to ABC Co. ABC is required to maintain a minimum 2.0 interest coverage ratio. In its most recent financial reports, ABC reported earnings before interest and taxes of \$1,200 and interest expense of \$600. In the report's notes, the company discloses that it changed the estimated useful life of its property, plant, and equipment during the year. Depreciation was approximately \$150 lower as a result of this change in estimate.
- 2 DEF Co. is a publicly traded company. For the most recent quarter, the average of analysts' forecasts for earnings per share was \$2.50. In its quarterly earnings announcement, DEF reported net income of \$3,458,780. The number of common shares outstanding was 1,378,000. DEF's main product is a hardware device that includes a free two-year service contract in the selling price. Based on management estimates, the company allocates a portion of revenues to the hardware device, which it recognizes immediately, and a portion to the service contract, which it defers and recognizes over the two years of the contract. Based on the disclosures, a higher percentage of revenue was allocated to hardware than in the past, with an estimated after-tax impact on net income of \$27,000.

Solution to 1:

The need to maintain a minimum interest coverage ratio of 2.0 might motivate ABC's managers to manipulate reported financial amounts. The company's coverage ratio based on the reported amounts is exactly equal to 2.0. If ABC's managers had not changed the estimated useful life of the property, plant, and equipment, the coverage ratio would have fallen below the required level.

EBIT, as reported	\$1,200
Impact on depreciation expense of changed assumptions about useful life	150
EBIT, as adjusted	\$1,050
Interest expense	\$600
Coverage ratio, as reported	2.00
Coverage ratio, as adjusted	1.75

The potential disciplining mechanisms include the auditors, who will assess the reasonableness of the depreciable lives estimates. In addition, the lenders will carefully scrutinize the change in estimate because the company only barely achieved the minimum coverage ratio and would not have achieved the minimum without the change in accounting estimate.

Solution to 2:

The desire to meet or exceed the average of analysts' forecasts for earnings per share might motivate DEF Co.'s managers to manipulate reported financial amounts. As illustrated in the following calculations, the impact of allocating a greater portion of revenue to hardware enabled the company to exceed analysts' earnings per share forecasts by \$0.01.

Net income, as reported	\$3,458,780
Impact on gross profit of changed revenue recognition, net of tax	27,000
Net income, as adjusted	\$3,431,780
Weighted average number of shares	1,378,000
Earnings per share, as reported	\$2.51
Earnings per share, as adjusted	\$2.49

The potential disciplining mechanisms include the auditors, market regulators, financial analysts, and financial journalists.

4**DETECTION OF FINANCIAL REPORTING QUALITY ISSUES**

Choices in the application of accounting standards abound, which is perhaps one reason why accounting literature and texts are so voluminous. Compounding the complexity, measurement often depends on estimates of economic phenomena. Two estimates might be justifiable, but they may have significantly different effects on the company's financial statements. As discussed earlier, the choice of a particular estimate may depend on the motivations of the reporting company's managers. With many choices available, and the inherent flexibility of estimates in the accounting process, managers have many tools for managing and meeting analysts' expectations through financial reporting.

An understanding of the choices that companies make in financial reporting is fundamental to evaluating the overall quality—both financial reporting and earnings quality—of the reports produced. Choices exist both in how information is presented (financial reporting quality) and in how financial results are calculated (earnings quality). Choices in presentation (financial reporting quality) may be fairly transparent to investors. Choices in the calculation of financial results (earnings quality), however, are more difficult to discern because they can be deeply embedded in the construction of reported financial results.

The availability of accounting choices enables managers to affect the reporting of financial results. Some choices increase performance and financial position in the current period (aggressive choices), and others increase them in later periods (conservative choices). A manager that wants to increase performance and financial position in the current period could:

- Recognize revenue prematurely;
- Use nonrecurring transactions to increase profits;
- Defer expenses to later periods;

- Measure and report assets at higher values; and/or
- Measure and report liabilities at lower values.

A manager that wants to increase performance and financial position in a later period could:

- Defer current income to a later period (save income for a “rainy day”); and/or
- Recognize future expenses in a current period, setting the table for improving future performance.

The following sections describe some of the potential choices for how information is presented and how accounting elements [assets, liabilities, owners’ equity, revenue and gains (income), and expenses and losses] are recognized, measured, and reported. In addition to choices within GAAP, companies may prepare fraudulent reports. For example, these reports may include non-existent revenue or assets. Section 4 concludes with some of the warning signs that can indicate poor-quality financial reports.

4.1 Presentation Choices

The technology boom of the 1990s and the internet bubble of the early 2000s featured companies, popular with investors, that often shared the same characteristic: They could not generate enough current earnings to justify their stock prices using the traditional price-to-earnings ratio (P/E) approaches to valuation. Many investors chose to explain these apparent anomalies by rationalizing that the old focus on profits and traditional valuation approaches no longer applied to such companies. Strange new metrics for determining operating performance emerged. Website operators spoke of the “eyeballs” they had captured in a quarter, or the “stickiness” of their websites for web surfers’ visits. Various versions of “pro forma earnings”—that is, “non-GAAP earnings measures”—became a financial reporting staple of the era.

Many technology companies were accomplished practitioners of pro forma reporting, but they were not the first to use it. In the early 1990s, downsizing of large companies was a commonplace event, and massive restructuring charges obscured the operating performance at many established companies. For example, as it learned to cope in a world that embraced the personal computer rather than mainframe computing, International Business Machines (IBM) reported massive restructuring charges in 1991, 1992, and 1993: \$3.7 billion, \$11.6 billion, and \$8.9 billion, respectively. IBM was not alone. Sears incurred \$2.7 billion of restructuring charges in 1993, and AT&T reported restructuring charges of \$7.7 billion in 1995. These events were not isolated; restructuring charges were a standard quarterly reporting event. To counter perceptions that their operations were floundering, and supposedly to assist investors in evaluating operating performance, companies often sanitized earnings releases by excluding restructuring charges in pro forma measures of financial performance.

Accounting principles for reporting business combinations also played a role in boosting the popularity of pro forma earnings. Before 2001, acquisitions of one company by another often resulted in goodwill amortization charges that made subsequent earnings reports look weak. Complicating matters, there were two accounting methods for recording acquisitions: pooling-of-interests and purchase methods. The now-extinct pooling-of-interests treatment was difficult for companies to achieve because of the many restrictive criteria for its use, but it was greatly desired because it did not result in goodwill amortization charges. In the technology boom period, acquisitions were common and many were reported as purchases, with consequential goodwill amortization dragging down earnings for as long as 40 years under the then-existing rules. Acquisitive companies reporting under purchase accounting standards perceived themselves to be at a reporting disadvantage compared with companies able

to apply pooling-of-interests accounting. The companies reporting under purchase accounting began to present earnings adjusted for the exclusion of amortization of intangible assets and goodwill.

Because investors try to make intercompany comparisons on a consistent basis, earnings before interest, taxes, depreciation, and amortization has become an extremely popular performance measure. EBITDA is widely viewed as eliminating noisy reporting signals. That noise may be introduced by different accounting methods among companies for depreciation, amortization of intangible assets, and restructuring charges. Companies may construct and report their own version of EBITDA, sometimes referring to it as “adjusted EBITDA,” by adding to the list of items to exclude from net income. Items that analysts might encounter include the following:

- Rental payments for operating leases, resulting in EBITDAR (earnings before interest, taxes, depreciation, amortization, and rentals);
- Equity-based compensation, usually justified on the grounds that it is a non-cash expense;
- Acquisition-related charges;
- Impairment charges for goodwill or other intangible assets;
- Impairment charges for long-lived assets;
- Litigation costs; and
- Loss/gain on debt extinguishments.

Among other incentives for the spread of non-GAAP earnings measures are loan covenants. Lenders may make demands on a borrowing company that require achieving and maintaining performance criteria defined by using GAAP net income as a starting point but arriving at a measure suitable to the lender. The company may use this measure as its preferred non-GAAP metric in earnings releases, and it also may use the measure in describing its liquidity or solvency situation in the management commentary (called management discussion and analysis in the United States).

As mentioned earlier, if a company uses a non-GAAP financial measure in an SEC filing, it must display the most directly comparable GAAP measure with equal prominence and provide a reconciliation of the non-GAAP measure and the equivalent GAAP measure. Management must explain why it believes that the non-GAAP financial measure provides useful information regarding the company’s financial condition and operations. Management must also disclose additional purposes, if material, for which it uses the non-GAAP financial measures.

Similarly, IFRS requires a definition and explanation of any non-IFRS measures included in financial reports, including why the measure is potentially relevant to users of the financial reports. Management must provide reconciliations of non-IFRS measures with IFRS measures presented in the financial reports. There seems to be a general concern that management may use non-GAAP measures to distract a user’s attention from GAAP measures.

The SEC intended that the definition of non-GAAP financial measure capture all measures that have the effect of depicting either

- a measure of performance that differs from that presented in the financial statements, such as income or loss before taxes or net income or loss, as calculated in accordance with GAAP; or
- a measure of liquidity that differs from cash flow or cash flow from operations computed in accordance with GAAP.²⁰

²⁰ SEC, “Final Rule: Conditions for Use of Non-GAAP Financial Measures,” Securities and Exchange Commission (www.sec.gov/rules/final/33-8176.htm).

The SEC prohibits the exclusion of charges or liabilities requiring cash settlement from any non-GAAP liquidity measures, other than EBIT and EBITDA. Also prohibited is the calculation of a non-GAAP performance measure intended to eliminate or smooth items tagged as non-recurring, infrequent, or unusual when such items are very likely to occur again. The SEC views the period within two years of either before or after the reporting date as the relevant time frame for considering whether a charge or gain is a recurring item. Example 6 describes a case of misuse and misreporting of non-GAAP measures.

EXAMPLE 6

Misuse and Misreporting of Non-GAAP Measures

Groupon is an online discount merchant. In the company's initial S-1 registration statement in 2011, then-CEO Andrew Mason gave prospective investors an up-front warning in a section entitled "We don't measure ourselves in conventional ways." He described Groupon's adjusted consolidated segment operating income (adjusted CSOI) measure. Exhibit 10 provides excerpts from a section entitled "Non-GAAP Financial Measures," which offered a more detailed explanation of the measure. Exhibit 11, also from the initial registration statement, shows a reconciliation of CSOI to the most comparable US GAAP measure. In its review, the SEC took the position that online marketing expenses were a recurring cost of business. Groupon responded that the marketing costs were similar to acquisition costs, not recurring costs, and that "we'll ramp down marketing just as fast as we ramped it up, reducing the customer acquisition part of our marketing expenses" as time passes.²¹

Eventually, and after much negative publicity, Groupon changed its non-GAAP measure. Exhibit 12 shows an excerpt from the final prospectus filed in November, after the SEC's review. Use the three exhibits to answer the questions that follow.

Exhibit 10 Groupon's "Non-GAAP Financial Measures"

Disclosures from June S-1 Filing

Adjusted CSOI is operating income of our two segments, North America and International, adjusted for online marketing expense, acquisition-related costs and stock-based compensation expense. Online marketing expense primarily represents the cost to acquire new subscribers and is dictated by the amount of growth we wish to pursue. Acquisition-related costs are non-recurring non-cash items related to certain of our acquisitions. Stock-based compensation expense is a non-cash item. We consider Adjusted CSOI to be an important measure of the performance of our business as it excludes expenses that are non-cash or otherwise not indicative of future operating expenses. We believe it is important to view Adjusted CSOI as a complement to our entire consolidated statements of operations.

Our use of Adjusted CSOI has limitations as an analytical tool, and you should not consider this measure in isolation or as a substitute for analysis of our results as reported under GAAP. Some of these limitations are:

- Adjusted CSOI does not reflect the significant cash investments that we currently are making to acquire new subscribers;

(continued)

²¹ Correspondence between Groupon and SEC, filed in EDGAR on 16 September 2011.

Exhibit 10 (Continued)

- Adjusted CSOI does not reflect the potentially dilutive impact of issuing equity-based compensation to our management team and employees or in connection with acquisitions;
- Adjusted CSOI does not reflect any interest expense or the cash requirements necessary to service interest or principal payments on any indebtedness that we may incur;
- Adjusted CSOI does not reflect any foreign exchange gains and losses;
- Adjusted CSOI does not reflect any tax payments that we might make, which would represent a reduction in cash available to us;
- Adjusted CSOI does not reflect changes in, or cash requirements for, our working capital needs; and
- Other companies, including companies in our industry, may calculate Adjusted CSOI differently or may use other financial measures to evaluate their profitability, which reduces the usefulness of it as a comparative measure.

Because of these limitations, Adjusted CSOI should not be considered as a measure of discretionary cash available to us to invest in the growth of our business. When evaluating our performance, you should consider Adjusted CSOI alongside other financial performance measures, including various cash flow metrics, net loss and our other GAAP results.

Exhibit 11 Groupon's "Adjusted CSOI"**Excerpt from June S-1 Filing**

The following is a reconciliation of CSOI to the most comparable US GAAP measure, "loss from operations," for the years ended December 31, 2008, 2009, and 2010 and the three months ended March 31, 2010 and 2011:

(in \$ thousands)	Year Ended December 31,			Three Months Ended March 31,	
	2008	2009	2010	2010	2011
(Loss) Income from operations	(1,632)	(1,077)	(420,344)	8,571	(117,148)
Adjustments:					
Online marketing	162	4,446	241,546	3,904	179,903
Stock-based compensation	24	115	36,168	116	18,864
Acquisition-related	—	—	203,183	—	—
Total adjustments	186	4,561	480,897	4,020	198,767
Adjusted CSOI	(1,446)	3,484	60,553	12,591	81,619

Exhibit 12 Groupon's "CSOI"**Excerpt from Revised S-1 Filing**

The following is a reconciliation of CSOI to the most comparable US GAAP measure, "loss from operations," for the years ended December 31, 2008, 2009, and 2010 and the nine months ended September 30, 2010 and 2011:

(in \$ thousands)	Year Ended December 31,			Nine Months Ended September 30,	
	2008	2009	2010	2010	2011
Loss from operations	(1,632)	(1,077)	(420,344)	(84,215)	(218,414)
Adjustments:					
Stock-based compensation	24	115	36,168	8,739	60,922
Acquisition-related	—	—	203,183	37,844	(4,793)
Total adjustments	24	115	239,351	46,583	56,129
CSOI	(1,608)	(962)	(180,993)	(37,632)	(162,285)

- 1 What cautions did Groupon include along with its description of the "Adjusted CSOI" metric?
- 2 Groupon excludes "online marketing" from "Adjusted CSOI." How does the exclusion of this expense compare with the SEC's limits on non-GAAP performance measures?
- 3 In the first quarter of 2011, what was the effect of excluding online marketing expenses on the calculation of "Adjusted CSOI"?
- 4 For 2010, how did results under the revised non-GAAP metric compare with the originally reported metric?

Solution to 1:

Groupon cautioned that the "Adjusted CSOI" metric should not be considered in isolation, should not be considered as a substitute for analysis using GAAP results, and "should not be considered a measure of discretionary cash flow." The company lists numerous limitations, primarily citing items that adjusted CSOI did not reflect.

Solution to 2:

The SEC specifies that non-GAAP measures should not eliminate items tagged as non-recurring, infrequent, or unusual when such items may be very likely to occur again. Because the online marketing expense occurred in every period reported and is likely to occur again, exclusion of this item appears contrary to SEC requirements.

Solution to 3:

As shown in Exhibit 11, in the first quarter of 2011, the exclusion of the online marketing expense was enough to swing the company from a net loss under US GAAP reporting to a profit—at least, a profit as defined by adjusted CSOI. Using adjusted CSOI as a performance measure, the company showed results that were 35% higher for the first *quarter* of 2011 compared with the entire previous *year*.

Solution to 4:

As shown in Exhibit 12, the revised metric is now called “CSOI” and no longer refers to “Adjusted CSOI.” For 2010, results under the revised non-GAAP metric, which includes online marketing costs, shows a loss of \$180,993,000 instead of a profit of \$60,553,000.

4.2 Accounting Choices and Estimates

Choices do not necessarily involve complex accounting standards. Something as simple as the shipping terms for goods delivered to customers can have a profound effect on the timing of revenue. On the last day of the first quarter, suppose a company ships \$10,000 of goods to a customer on the terms “free on board (FOB) shipping point,” arriving the next day. This shipping term means that the customer takes title to the goods, and bears the risk of loss, at the time the goods leave the seller’s loading dock. Barring any issues with collectability of the receivable, or a likelihood of a return, the seller would be able to recognize revenue on the sale along with the associated profit. That revenue and profit would be recognized in the first quarter of the year. Change the point at which the goods’ title transfers to the customer to “FOB destination” and the revenue pattern will be completely different. Under these terms, the title—and risk of loss—transfers to the customer when the goods arrive at their destination, which is the customer’s address. The seller cannot recognize the sale and profit until the shipment arrives the following day, which is the start of a new accounting period.

A simple change in shipping terms can make the difference between revenue and profits in the current period or postponing them until the next period. Shipping terms can also influence management behavior: To “make the numbers,” managers might push product out the door prematurely under FOB shipping point arrangements in order to reflect as much revenue as possible in the current period. Alternatively, in the case of an overabundance of orders, the company could run the risk of exceeding analysts’ consensus estimates by a large margin. Management might be uncomfortable with this situation because investors might extrapolate too much from one reporting period in which expectations were exceeded. Management might want to prevent investors from becoming too optimistic and, if possible, delay revenue recognition until the next quarter. This result could be accomplished by fulfilling customer orders by initiating delivery on the last day of the quarter, with shipping terms set as FOB destination. By doing so, title would transfer in the next accounting period. Another possibility in this scenario is that if the customers insisted on FOB shipping point terms, the selling company could simply delay shipment until after the close of the quarter.

This illustration also highlights a difficult distinction for investors to make. A company may use accounting as a tool to aggressively promote earnings growth—as in the example with the premature shipment of goods with FOB shipping point terms—but it may be aggressively managing the business flow by slacking off on shipping goods when business is “too good,” as in the second example. In either case, a desired management outcome is obtained by a simple change in shipping terms. Yet, many investors might be inclined to say that the second example is a conservative kind of earnings management and accept it, even though it artificially masks the actual economic activity that occurred at the time.

4.2.1 How Accounting Choices and Estimates Affect Earnings and Balance Sheets

Assumptions about inventory cost flows provide another example of how accounting choices can affect financial reporting. Companies may assume that their purchases of inventory items are sold to customers on a first-in-first-out (FIFO) basis, with the result that the remaining inventory reflects the most recent costs. Alternatively, they may assume that their purchases of inventory items are sold to customers on a weighted-average cost basis. Example 7 makes the point that merely choosing a cost flow assumption can affect profitability.

EXAMPLE 7

Effect of Cost Flow Assumption

A company starts operations with no inventory at the beginning of a fiscal year and makes purchases of a good for resale five times during the period at increasing prices. Each purchase is for the same number of units of the good. The purchases, and the cost of goods available for sale, appear in the following table. Notice that the price per unit has increased by 140% by the end of the period.

	Units	Price	Cost
Purchase 1	5	\$100	\$500
Purchase 2	5	150	750
Purchase 3	5	180	900
Purchase 4	5	200	1,000
Purchase 5	5	240	1,200
Cost of goods available for sale			\$4,350

During the period, the company sells, at \$250 each, all of the goods purchased except for five of them. Although the ending inventory consists of five units, the cost attached to those units can vary greatly.

- 1 What are the ending inventory and cost of goods sold if the company uses the FIFO method of inventory costing?
- 2 What are the ending inventory and cost of goods sold if the company uses the weighted-average method of inventory costing?
- 3 Compare cost of goods sold and gross profit calculated under the two methods.

Solution to 1:

The ending inventory and cost of goods sold if the company uses the FIFO method of inventory costing are \$1,200 and \$3,150.

Solution to 2:

The ending inventory and cost of goods sold if the company uses the weighted-average method of inventory costing are \$870 and \$3,480.

Solution to 3:

The following table shows how the choice of inventory costing methods—FIFO versus weighted average—affects the cost of goods sold and gross profit.

Cost Flow Assumption	FIFO	Weighted Average
Cost of goods available for sale	\$4,350	\$4,350
Ending inventory (5 units)	(1,200)	(870)
Cost of goods sold	\$3,150	\$3,480
Sales	\$5,000	\$5,000
Cost of goods sold	3,150	3,480
Gross profit	\$1,850	\$1,520
Gross profit margin	37.0%	30.4%

Note: Average inventory cost is calculated as Cost of goods available for sale/Units purchased = $\$4,350/25 = \174 . There are five units in ending inventory, yielding an inventory value of \$870.

Depending on which cost flow assumption the company uses, the end-of-period inventory is either \$870 (under the weighted-average method) or \$1,200 (under FIFO). The choice of method results in a difference of \$330 in gross profit and 6.6% in gross profit margin.

The previous example is simplified and extreme for purposes of illustration clarity, but the point is important: Management's choice among acceptable inventory assumptions and methods affects profit. The selection of an inventory costing method is a policy decision, and companies cannot arbitrarily switch from one method to another at random. The selection does matter to profitability, however, and it also matters to the balance sheet.

In periods of changing prices, the FIFO cost assumption will provide a more current picture of ending inventory value, because the most recent purchases will remain in inventory. The balance sheet will be more relevant to investors. Under the weighted-average cost assumption, however, the balance sheet will display a blend of old and new costs. During inflationary periods, the value of the inventory will be understated: The company will not be able to replenish its inventory at the value shown. At the same time, the weighted-average inventory cost method ensures that the more current costs are shown in cost of sales, making the income statement more relevant than under the FIFO assumption. Trade-offs exist, and investors should be aware of how accounting choices affect financial reports. High-quality financial reporting provides users sufficient information to assess the effects of accounting choices.

Estimates abound in financial reporting because of the use of accrual accounting, which attempts to show the effects of all economic events on a company during a particular period. Accrual accounting stands in contrast to cash basis accounting, which shows only the cash transactions conducted by a company. Although a high degree of certainty exists with reporting only cash transactions, much information is hidden. For instance, a company with growing revenues that makes the majority of its sales on credit would be understating its revenues for each period if it reported only cash transactions. On an accrual basis, revenues reflect all transactions that occurred, whether they transacted on a cash basis or credit-extended basis. Estimates enter the process because some facts related to events occurring in a particular period might not yet be known. Estimates can be well grounded in reality and applied to present a complete picture of the events affecting a company, or they can be management tools for achieving a desired financial picture.

To illustrate how estimates affect financial reporting, consider revenues that include credit sales. A company sells \$1,000,000 of merchandise on credit and records the sale just before year end. Under accrual accounting, that amount is included in revenues

and accounts receivable. The company's managers know from experience that they will never collect every dollar of the accounts receivable. Past experience is that, on average, only 97% of accounts receivable is collected. The company would estimate an amount of the uncollectible accounts at the time the sales occur and record an uncollectible accounts expense of \$30,000, lowering earnings. The other side of the entry would be to establish an allowance for uncollectible accounts of \$30,000. This allowance would be a contra asset account, presented as an offset to accounts receivable. The accounts receivable, net of the allowance for uncollectible accounts, would be stated at \$970,000, which is the amount of cash the company ultimately expects to receive. If cash basis accounting had been used, no revenues or accounts receivable would have been reported even though sales of merchandise had occurred. Accrual accounting, which contains estimates about future events, provides a much fuller picture of what transpired in the period than pure cash basis accounting.

Yet, accrual accounting poses temptations to managers to manage the numbers, rather than to manage the business. Suppose a company's managers realize that the company will not meet analysts' consensus estimates in a particular quarter, and further, their bonus pay is dependent on reaching specified earnings targets. By offering special payment terms, or discounts, the managers may induce customers to take delivery of products that they would normally not order so they could ship the products on FOB shipping point terms and recognize the revenues in the current quarter. They could even be so bold as to ship the goods under those terms even if the customer did not order them, in hopes that the customer would keep them or, at worst, return them in the next accounting period. Their focus would be to move the product off the company's property with FOB shipping point terms.

To further improve earnings in order to meet the consensus estimates, the company's managers might revise their estimate of the uncollectible accounts. The company's collection history shows a typical non-collection rate of 3% of sales, but the managers might rationalize the use of a 2% non-collection rate. This change will reduce the allowance for uncollectible accounts and uncollectible accounts expense reported for the period. The managers might be able to justify the reduction on the grounds that the sales occurred in a part of the country that was experiencing an improved economic outlook, or that the company's collection history had been biased by the inclusion of a prolonged period of economic downturn. Whatever the justification, it would be hard to prove that the new estimate is completely right or wrong until time has passed. Because proof of the reliability of estimates is rarely available at the time the estimate is recorded, managers have a readily available means for manipulating earnings at their discretion.

ConAgra Foods, Inc. provides an example of how the allowance for uncollectible accounts may be manipulated in order to manage earnings.²² A subsidiary of ConAgra Foods, called United Agri-Products (UAP), engaged in several improper accounting practices, one of them being the understatement of uncollectible accounts expense for several years. Exhibit 13 presents an excerpt from the SEC's Accounting and Auditing Enforcement Release.

²² Accounting and Auditing Enforcement Release No. 2542, "SEC v. James Charles Blue, Randy Cook, and Victor Campbell," United States District Court for the District of Colorado, Civ. Action No. 07-CV-00095 REB-MEH (17 January 2007).

Exhibit 13 SEC's Accounting and Auditing Enforcement Release Regarding United Agri-Products

... Generally, UAP's policy required that accounts which were past due between 90 days and one year should be reserved at 50%, and accounts over one year past due were to be reserved at 100%.

... In FY 1999 and continuing through FY 2000, UAP had substantial bad debt problems. In FY 2000, certain former UAP senior executives were informed that UAP needed to record an additional \$50 million of bad debt expense. Certain former UAP senior executives were aware that in FY 1999 the size of the bad debt at certain IOCs had been substantial enough that it could have negatively impacted those IOC's ability to achieve PBT (profits before taxes) targets. In addition, just prior to the end of UAP's FY 2000, the Former UAP COO (chief operating officer), in the presence of other UAP employees, ordered that UAP's bad debt reserve be reduced by \$7 million in order to assist the Company in meeting its PBT target for the fiscal year.

... At the end of FY 2000, former UAP senior executives reported financial results to ConAgra which they knew, or were reckless in not knowing, overstated UAP's income before income taxes because UAP had failed to record sufficient bad debt expense. The misconduct with respect to bad debt expense caused ConAgra to overstate its reported income before income taxes by \$7 million, or 1.13%, in FY 2000. At the Agricultural Products' segment level, the misconduct caused that segment's reported operating profit to be overstated by 5.05%.

Deferred-tax assets provide another example of choices in estimates that are very similar to the ones encountered in accrual accounting for credit sales. Deferred-tax assets may arise when a company reports a net operating loss under tax accounting rules. A company may record a deferred-tax asset based on the expectation that current net tax operating losses will offset expected future profits and reduce the company's future income tax liability. Accounting standards require that the deferred tax asset be reduced by a "valuation allowance" to account for the possibility that the company will be unable to generate enough profit to use all of the available tax benefits.²³

Assume a company loses €1 billion in 2012, generating a net operating loss of the same amount for tax purposes. The company's income tax rate is 25%, and it will be able to apply the net operating loss to its taxable income for the next 10 years. The net operating loss results in a deferred tax asset with a nominal value of €250 million ($25\% \times \text{€}1,000,000,000$). Initial recognition would result in a deferred tax asset of €250 million and a credit to deferred tax expense of €250 million. The company must address the question of whether or not the €250 million will ever be completely applied to future income. It may be experiencing increased competition and other circumstances that resulted in the €1 billion loss, and it may be unreasonable to assume that the company will have taxable income against which to apply the loss. In fact, the company's managers might believe it is reasonable to assume only that it will survive for five years, and with marginal profitability. The €250 million deferred tax asset is thus overstated if no valuation allowance is recorded to offset it.

The managers believe that only €100 million of the net operating losses will actually be applied to the company's taxable income. That belief implies that only €25 million of the tax benefits will ever be realized. The deferred tax assets reported on the balance sheet should not exceed this amount. The company should record a valuation allowance of €225 million, which would offset the deferred tax asset balance of €250 million,

²³ See Accounting Standards Codification 740-10-30-16 to 25, "Establishment of a Valuation Allowance for Deferred Tax Assets."

resulting in a net deferred tax asset balance of €25 million. There would also be a €225 million credit to the deferred tax provision. It is important to understand that the valuation allowance should be revised whenever facts and circumstances change.

The ultimate value of the deferred tax asset is driven by management's outlook for the future—and that outlook may be influenced by other factors. If the company needs to stay in compliance with debt covenants and needs every euro of value that can be justified by the outlook, its managers may take a more optimistic view of the future and keep the valuation allowance artificially low (in other words, the net deferred tax asset high).

PowerLinx, Inc. provides an example of how over-optimism about the realizability of a deferred tax asset can lead to misstated financial reports. PowerLinx was a maker of security video cameras, underwater cameras, and accessories. Aside from fraudulently reporting 90% of its fiscal year 2000 revenue, PowerLinx had problems with valuation of its deferred tax assets. Exhibit 14 provides an excerpt from the SEC's Accounting and Auditing Enforcement Release with emphasis added.²⁴

Exhibit 14 SEC's Accounting and Auditing Enforcement Release Regarding PowerLinx

PowerLinx improperly recorded on its fiscal year 2000 balance sheet a deferred tax asset of \$1,439,322 without any valuation allowance. The tax asset was material, representing *almost forty percent of PowerLinx's total assets* of \$3,841,944. PowerLinx also recorded deferred tax assets of \$180,613, \$72,907, and \$44,921, respectively, in its financial statements for the first three quarters of 2000.

PowerLinx did not have a proper basis for recording the deferred tax assets. The company had accumulated significant losses in 2000 and had no historical operating basis from which to conclude that it would be profitable in future years. Underwater camera sales had declined significantly and the company had devoted most of its resources to developing its SecureView product. The sole basis for PowerLinx's "expectation" of future profitability was the purported \$9 million backlog of SecureView orders, which management assumed would generate taxable income; however, this purported backlog, which predated Bauer's hiring, did not reflect actual demand for SecureView cameras and, consequently, was not a reasonable or reliable indicator of future profitability.

Another example of how choices and estimates can affect balance sheets is in the area of selecting a depreciation method for allocating the cost of long-lived assets to accounting periods subsequent to their acquisition. A company's managers may choose to depreciate long-lived assets (1) on a straight-line basis, with each year bearing the same amount of depreciation expense; (2) using an accelerated method, with greater depreciation expense recognition in the earlier part of an asset's life; or (3) using an activity-based depreciation method, which allocates depreciation expense based on units of use or production. Depreciation expense is affected by another set of choices and estimates regarding the salvage value of the assets being depreciated. A salvage value of zero will always increase depreciation expense under any method compared with the choice of a non-zero salvage value.

Assume a company invests \$1,000,000 in manufacturing equipment and expects it to have a useful economic life of 10 years. During its expected life, the equipment will produce 400,000 units of product, or \$2.50 depreciation expense per unit produced.

²⁴ Accounting and Auditing Enforcement Release No. 2448, "In the Matter of Douglas R. Bauer, Respondent," SEC (27 June 2006): www.sec.gov/litigation/admin/2006/34-54049.pdf.

When it is disposed of at the end of its expected life, the company's managers expect to realize no value for the equipment. The following table shows the differences in three alternative methods of depreciation: straight-line, accelerated on a double-declining balance basis, and units-of-production method, with no salvage value assumed at the end of the equipment's life.

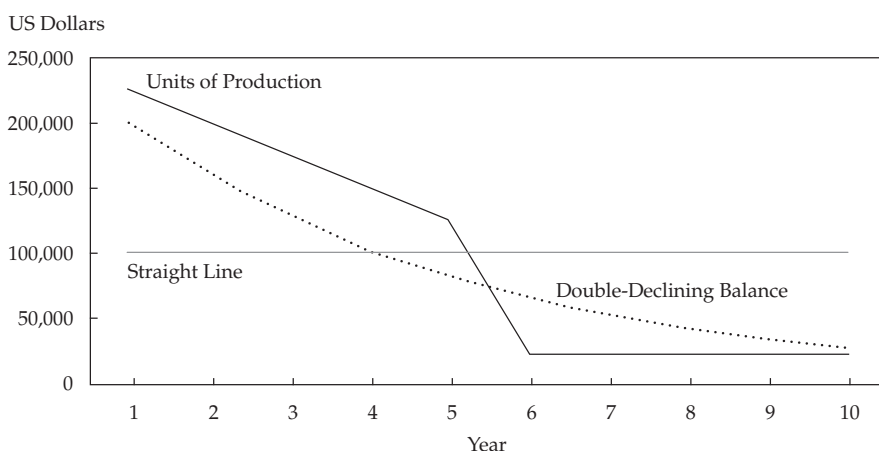
Year	Straight-Line Method	Double-Declining Balance Method			Units-of-Production Method		
	Depreciation Expense	Balance	Declining Balance Rate ¹	Depreciation Expense	Units Produced	Depreciation Rate/Unit	Depreciation Expense
1	\$100,000	\$1,000,000	20%	\$200,000	90,000	\$2.50	\$225,000
2	100,000	800,000	20%	160,000	80,000	\$2.50	200,000
3	100,000	640,000	20%	128,000	70,000	\$2.50	175,000
4	100,000	512,000	20%	102,400	60,000	\$2.50	150,000
5	100,000	409,600	20%	81,920	50,000	\$2.50	125,000
6	100,000	327,680	20%	65,536	10,000	\$2.50	25,000
7	100,000	262,144	20%	52,429	10,000	\$2.50	25,000
8	100,000	209,715	20%	41,943	10,000	\$2.50	25,000
9	100,000	167,772	20%	33,554	10,000	\$2.50	25,000
10	100,000	134,218	20%	26,844	10,000	\$2.50	25,000
Total	\$1,000,000			\$892,626	400,000		\$1,000,000

¹ Declining balance rate of 20% calculated as 10-year life being equivalent to 10% annual depreciation rate, multiplied by 2 = 20%.

The straight-line method allocates the cost of the equipment evenly to all 10 years of the equipment's life. The double-declining balance method will have a higher allocation of cost to the earlier years of the equipment's life, and as its name implies, the depreciation expense will decline in each succeeding year because it is based on a fixed rate applied to a declining balance. The rate used was double the straight-line rate, but it could have been any other rate that the company's managers believed was representative of the way the actual equipment depreciation occurred. Notice that the double-declining balance method also results in an incomplete depreciation of the machine at the end of 10 years; a balance of \$107,374 (= \$1,000,000 – \$892,626) remains at the end of the expected life, which will result in a loss upon the retirement of the equipment if the company's expectation of zero salvage value turns out to be correct. Some companies may choose to depreciate the equipment to its expected salvage, zero in this case, in its final year of use. Some companies may use a policy of switching to straight-line depreciation after the mid-life of its depreciable assets in order to fully depreciate them. That particular pattern is coincidentally displayed in the units-of-production example, in which the equipment is used most heavily in the earliest part of its useful life, and then levels off to much less utilization in the second half of the expected life.

Exhibit 15 shows the different expense allocation patterns of the methods over the same life. Each will affect earnings differently.

Exhibit 15 Expense Allocation Patterns of Different Depreciation Methods



The company’s managers could justify any one of these methods. Each might fairly represent the way the equipment will be consumed over its expected economic life, which is a subjective estimate itself. The choices of methods and lives can profoundly affect reported income. These choices are not proven right or wrong until far into the future—but managers must estimate their effects in the present.

Exhibit 16 shows the effects of the three different methods on operating profit and operating profit margins, assuming that the production output of the equipment generates revenues of \$500,000 each year and \$200,000 of cash operating expenses are incurred, leaving \$300,000 of operating profit before depreciation expense.

Exhibit 16 Effects of Depreciation Methods on Operating Profit

Year	Straight Line		
	Depreciation	Operating Profit	Operating Profit Margin
1	\$100,000	\$200,000	40.0%
2	100,000	200,000	40.0%
3	100,000	200,000	40.0%
4	100,000	200,000	40.0%
5	100,000	200,000	40.0%
6	100,000	200,000	40.0%
7	100,000	200,000	40.0%
8	100,000	200,000	40.0%
9	100,000	200,000	40.0%
10	100,000	200,000	40.0%

Year	Double Declining Balance		
	Depreciation	Operating Profit	Operating Profit Margin
1	\$200,000	\$100,000	20.0%
2	160,000	140,000	28.0%
3	128,000	172,000	34.4%
4	102,400	197,600	39.5%
5	81,920	218,080	43.6%

(continued)

Exhibit 16 (Continued)

Year	Double Declining Balance		
	Depreciation	Operating Profit	Operating Profit Margin
6	65,536	234,464	46.9%
7	52,429	247,571	49.5%
8	41,943	258,057	51.6%
9	33,554	266,446	53.3%
10	134,218*	165,782	33.2%

Year	Units of Production		
	Depreciation	Operating Profit	Operating Profit Margin
1	\$225,000	\$75,000	15.0%
2	200,000	100,000	20.0%
3	175,000	125,000	25.0%
4	150,000	150,000	30.0%
5	125,000	175,000	35.0%
6	25,000	275,000	55.0%
7	25,000	275,000	55.0%
8	25,000	275,000	55.0%
9	25,000	275,000	55.0%
10	25,000	275,000	55.0%

* Includes \$107,374 of undepreciated basis, treated as depreciation expense in final year of service.

The straight-line method shows consistent operating profit margins, and the other two methods show varying degrees of increasing operating profit margins as the depreciation expense decreases over time.

The example above shows the differences among several alternative methods, but even more depreciation expense variation is possible by changing estimated lives and assumptions about salvage value. For instance, change the expected life assumption to 5 years from 10 and add an expectation that the equipment will have a 10% salvage value at the end of its expected life. Exhibit 17 shows the revised depreciation calculations. Notice that under the double-declining balance method, the depreciation rate is applied to the gross cost, unlike the other two methods. The straight-line method and the units-of-production method subtract the salvage value from the cost before depreciation expense is calculated. Also note that the assumption about the usage of the equipment is revised so that it is depreciated only to its salvage value of \$100,000 by the end of its estimated life. The total depreciation under each method is \$900,000.

Exhibit 17 Depreciation Calculations for Each Method in Changed Scenario

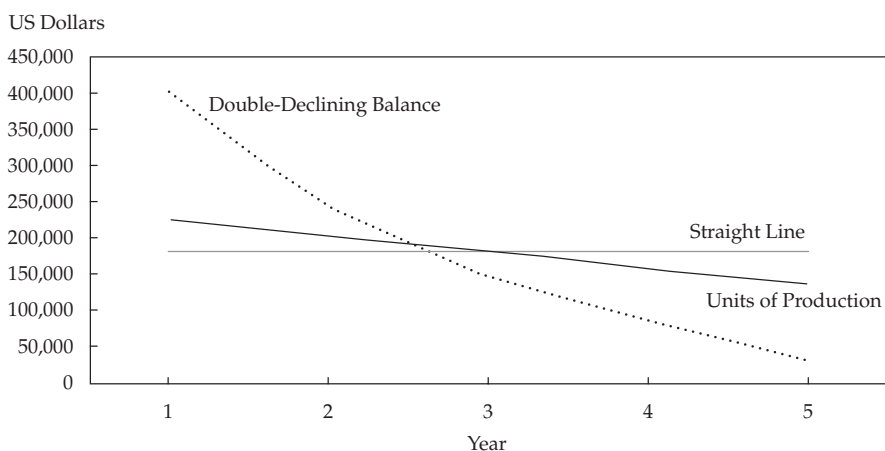
Year	Straight-Line Method	Double-Declining Balance Method		Units-of-Production Method			
	Depreciation Expense	Balance	Declining Balance Rate ¹	Depreciation Expense	Units Produced	Depreciation Rate/Unit	Depreciation Expense
1	\$180,000	\$1,000,000	40%	\$400,000	100,000	\$2.25	\$225,000
2	180,000	600,000	40%	240,000	90,000	\$2.25	202,500
3	180,000	360,000	40%	144,000	80,000	\$2.25	180,000
4	180,000	216,000	40%	86,400	70,000	\$2.25	157,500
5	180,000	129,600	40%	29,600 ²	60,000	\$2.25	135,000
Total	<u>\$900,000</u>			<u>\$900,000</u>	400,000		<u>\$900,000</u>

¹ Declining balance rate of 40% calculated as 5-year life being equivalent to 20% annual depreciation rate, multiplied by 2 = 40%.

² Depreciation calculated as \$29,600 instead of 40% × \$129,600. Rote application of the declining-balance rate would have resulted in \$51,840 of expense, which would have depreciated the asset below salvage value.

Exhibit 18 shows the different expense allocation patterns of the methods over the five-year expected life, and assuming a 10% salvage value. Although each method is distinctly different in the timing of the cost allocation over time, the variation is less pronounced than over the longer life used in the previous example.

Exhibit 18 Expense Allocation Patterns of Depreciation Methods in Changed Scenario



Perhaps one of the clearest examples of how choices affect both the balance sheet and income statement can be found in the area of capitalization practices. In classifying a payment made, management must determine whether the payment will benefit only the current period—making it an expense—or whether it will benefit future periods, leading to classification as a cost to be capitalized as an asset. This management judgment embodies an implicit forecast of how the item acquired by the payment will be used, or not used, in the future.

That judgment can be biased by the powerful effect a capitalization policy can have on current earnings. Every amount capitalized on the balance sheet as a building, an item of inventory, a deferred cost, or any “other asset” is an amount that does not get recognized as an expense in the current period.

A real-life example can be found in the case of WorldCom, Inc., a telecom concern that grew rapidly in the late 1990s. Much of WorldCom’s financial reporting was eventually found to be fraudulent, and one important part of the misreporting centered on its treatment of what is known in the telecom industry as “line costs.” These are the costs of carrying a voice call or data transmission from its starting point to its ending point, and they represented WorldCom’s largest expense. WorldCom’s chief financial officer decided to capitalize such costs instead of treating them as an operating expense. As a consequence, from the second quarter of 1999 through the first quarter of 2002, WorldCom increased its operating income by \$7 billion. In three of the five quarters in which the improper line cost capitalization took place, WorldCom would have recognized pretax losses instead of profits.²⁵

Similarly, acquisitions are an area in which the managers charged with recording an acquisition must exercise judgment. An allocation of purchase price must be made to all of the different assets acquired based on their fair values, and those fair values are not always objectively verifiable. Management may have to make its own estimate of fair values for assets acquired, and management may be biased towards a low estimate for the values of depreciable assets in order to depress future depreciation expense. Another benefit to keeping depreciable asset values low is that the amount of the purchase price that cannot be allocated to specific assets is classified as goodwill, which is neither depreciated nor amortized in future reporting periods.

Goodwill reporting has choices of its own. Although goodwill has no effect on future earnings when unimpaired, annual testing of its fair value may reveal that the excess of price paid over the fair value of assets may not be recoverable, which should lead to a write-down of goodwill. The estimation process for the fair value of goodwill may depend heavily on projections of future performance. Those projections may be biased upward in order to avoid a goodwill write-down.

4.2.2 How Choices Affect the Cash Flow Statement

The cash flow statement consists of three sections: the operating section, which shows the cash generated or used by operations; the investing section, which shows the cash used for investments or provided by their disposal; and the financing section, which shows the cash transactions attributable to financing activities.

The operating section of the cash flow statement is often the portion most scrutinized by investors. Many of them consider the operating section to be a reality check on the reported earnings, on the grounds that significant earnings that are attributable only to accrual accounting methods and unsupported by actual cash flows may indicate earnings manipulation. Such investors believe that amounts shown for cash generated by operations is more insulated from managerial manipulation than the income statement. Cash generated by operations can be managed to an extent, however.

The operating section of the cash flow statement can be shown either under the direct method or the indirect method. Under the direct method, “entities are encouraged to report major classes of gross cash receipts and gross cash payments and their arithmetic sum—the net cash flow from operating activities.”²⁶ In practice, companies rarely use the direct method. Instead, they use the indirect method, which shows

²⁵ See Report of Investigation by the Special Investigative Committee of the Board of Directors of WorldCom, Inc., by Dennis R. Beresford, Nicholas deB. Katzenbach, & C.B. Rogers, Jr. PP 9-11: www.sec.gov/Archives/edgar/data/723527/000093176303001862/dex991.htm.

²⁶ Accounting Standards Codification Section 230-10-45-25, “Reporting Operating, Investing, and Financing Activities.” The direct method and indirect method are similar in IFRS, as addressed in IAS 7, Paragraph 18.

a reconciliation of net income to cash provided by operations. The reconciliation shows the non-cash items affecting net income along with changes in working capital accounts affecting cash provided by operations. Exhibit 19 provides an example of the indirect presentation method.

Exhibit 19 Indirect Presentation Method

Cash Flows from Operating Activities (\$ millions)	2012
Net income	\$3,000
<i>Adjustments to reconcile net income to net cash provided by operating activities:</i>	
Provision for doubtful receivables	10
Provision for depreciation and amortization	1,000
Goodwill impairment charges	35
Share-based compensation expense	100
Provision for deferred income taxes	200
<i>Changes in assets and liabilities:</i>	
Trade, notes and financing receivables related to sales	(2,000)
Inventories	(1,500)
Accounts payable	1,200
Accrued income taxes payable/receivable	(80)
Retirement benefits	90
Other	(250)
Net cash provided by operating activities	<u>\$1,805</u>

Whether the indirect method or direct method is used, simple choices exist for managers to improve the *appearance* of cash flow provided by operations without actually improving it. One such choice is in the area of accounts payable management, shaded in Exhibit 19. Assume that the accounts payable balance is \$5,200 million at the end of the period, an increase of \$1,200 million from its previous year-end balance of \$4,000 million. The \$1,200 million increase in accounts payable matched increased expenses and/or assets but did not require cash. If the company's managers had further delayed paying creditors \$500 million until the day *after* the balance sheet date, they could have increased the cash provided by operating activities by \$500 million. If the managers believe that the cash generated from operations is a metric of focus for investors, the managers could impress them with an artificially stronger cash flow by simply stretching the accounts payable credit period.

What might alert investors to such machinations? They need to examine the composition of the operations section of the cash flow statement—if they do not, then *nothing* will ever alert them. Studying changes in the working capital can reveal unusual patterns that may indicate manipulation of the cash provided by operations.

Another practice that might lead an investor to question the quality of cash provided by operations is to compare a company's cash generation with an industry-wide level or with the cash operating performance of one or more similar competitors. Cash generation performance can be measured several ways. One way is to compare the relationship between cash generated by operations and net income. Cash generated by operations in excess of net income signifies better quality of earnings, whereas a chronic excess of net income over cash generated by operations should be a cause for concern; it may signal the use of accounting methods to simply raise net income instead

of depicting financial reality. Another way to measure cash generation performance is to compare cash generated by operations with debt service, capital expenditures, and dividends (if any). When there is a wide variance between the company's cash generation performance and that of its benchmarks, investors should seek an explanation and carefully examine the changes in working capital accounts.

Because investors may focus on cash provided by operations as an important metric, managers may resort to managing the working capital accounts as described in order to present the most favorable picture of cash provided by operations. But there are other means to improve the cash generation picture. A company may misclassify operating uses of cash into either the investing or financing sections of the cash flow statement, which enhances the appearance of cash generated by operating activities.

Dynegy Inc. provides an example of manipulation of cash from operations through clever construction of contracts and assistance from an unconsolidated special purpose entity named ABG Gas Supply LLC (ABG). In April 2001, Dynegy entered into a contract for the purchase of natural gas from ABG. According to the contract, Dynegy would purchase gas at *below-market* rates from ABG for nine months and sell it at the current market rate. The nine-month term coincided with Dynegy's 2001 year end and would result in gains backed by cash flows. Dynegy also agreed to buy gas at *above-market* rates from ABG for the following 51 months and sell it at the current market rate. The contract was reported at its fair value at the end of fiscal year 2001. It had no effect on net income for the year. The earlier portion of the contract resulted in a gain, supported by \$300 million of cash flow, but the latter portion of the contract resulted in non-cash losses that offset the profit. The mark-to-market rules required the recognition of both gains and losses from all parts of the contract, and hence the net effect on earnings was zero.

In April 2002, a *Wall Street Journal* article exposed the chicanery, thanks to leaked documents. The SEC required Dynegy to restate the cash flow statement by reclassifying \$300 million from the operating section of the cash flow statement to the financing section, on the grounds that Dynegy had used ABG as a conduit to effectively borrow \$300 million from Citigroup. The bank had extended credit to ABG, which it used to finance its losses on the contract (Lee, 2012).

Another area of flexibility in cash flow statement reporting is found in the area of interest capitalization, which creates differences between total interest payments and total interest costs.²⁷ Assume a company incurs total interest cost of \$30,000, composed of \$3,000 of discount amortization and \$27,000 of interest payments. Of the \$30,000, two-thirds of it (\$20,000) is expensed; the remaining third (\$10,000) is capitalized as plant assets. If the company uses the same interest expense/capitalization proportions to allocate the interest payments between operating and investing activities, then it will report \$18,000 ($2/3 \times \$27,000$) as an operating outflow and \$9,000 ($1/3 \times \$27,000$) as an investing outflow. The company might also choose to offset the entire \$3,000 of non-cash discount amortization against the \$20,000 treated as expense, resulting in an operating outflow as low as \$17,000, or as much as \$20,000 if it allocated all of the non-cash discount amortization to interest capitalized as investing activities. Similarly, the investing outflow could be as much as \$10,000 or as little as \$7,000, depending on the treatment of the non-cash discount amortization. There are choices within the choices, all in areas where investors believe choices do not even exist. Nurnberg and Largay (1998) note that companies apparently favor the method that reports the lowest operating outflow, presumably to maximize reported cash from operations.

²⁷ See Nurnberg and Largay (1998) and Nurnberg (2006).

Investors and analysts need to be aware that presentation choices permitted in IAS 7, “Statement of Cash Flows,” offer flexibility in classification of certain items in the cash flow statement. This flexibility can drastically change the results in the operating section of the cash flow statement. An excerpt from IAS 7, Paragraphs 33 and 34, provides the background:

33. Interest paid and interest and dividends received are usually classified as operating cash flows for a financial institution. However, there is no consensus on the classification of these cash flows for other entities. Interest paid and interest and dividends received may be classified as operating cash flows because they enter into the determination of profit or loss. *Alternatively, interest paid and interest and dividends received may be classified as financing cash flows and investing cash flows respectively, because they are costs of obtaining financial resources or returns on investments.*

34. Dividends paid may be classified as a financing cash flow because they are a cost of obtaining financial resources. *Alternatively, dividends paid may be classified as a component of cash flows from operating activities in order to assist users to determine the ability of an entity to pay dividends out of operating cash flows.* [Emphasis added.]

By allowing a choice of operating or financing for the placement of interest and dividends received or paid, IAS 7 gives a company’s managers the opportunities to select the presentation that gives the best-looking picture of operating performance. An example is Norse Energy Corp. ASA, a Norwegian gas explorer and producer, which changed its classifications of interest paid and interest received in 2007 (Gordon, Henry, Jorgensen, and Linthicum, 2017). Interest paid was switched to financing instead of decreasing cash generated from operations. Norse Energy also switched its classification of interest received to investing from operating cash flow. The net effect of these changes was to report positive, rather than negative, operating cash flows in both 2007 and 2008. With these simple changes, the company could also change the perception of its operations. The cash flow statement formerly presented the appearance of a company with operations that used more cash than it generated, and it possibly raised questions about the sustainability of operations. After the revision, the operating section of the cash flow statement depicted a much more viable operation.

Exhibit 20 shows the net effect of the reclassifications on Norse Energy’s cash flows.

Exhibit 20 Reclassification of Cash Flows

	As Reported (following 2007 reclassification)		Adjustments, If No Reclassification*		Pro-forma (if no reclassification)	
	2008	2007	2008	2007	2008	2007
Operating	\$5.30	\$2.80	(\$13.70)	(\$14.40)	(\$8.40)	(\$11.60)
Investing	\$0.90	(\$56.80)	(\$9.00)	(\$3.50)	(\$8.10)	(\$60.30)
Financing	(\$16.60)	\$34.50	\$22.70	\$17.90	\$6.10	\$52.40
Total	(\$10.40)	(\$19.50)	\$0	\$0	(\$10.40)	(\$19.50)

* The adjustments reverse the addition of interest received to investing and instead add it to operating. The adjustments also reverse the deduction of interest paid from financing and instead subtract it from operating.

4.2.3 Choices That Affect Financial Reporting

Exhibit 21 summarizes some of the areas where choices can be made that affect financial reports.

Exhibit 21 Areas Where Choices and Estimates Affect Financial Reporting

Area of Choice/ Estimate	Analyst Concerns
<i>Revenue recognition</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ How is revenue recognized: upon shipment or upon delivery of goods? ■ Is the company engaging in “channel stuffing”—the practice of overloading a distribution channel with more product than it is normally capable of selling? This can be accomplished by inducing customers to buy more through unusual discounts, the threat of near-term price increases, or both—or simply by shipping goods that were not ordered. These transactions may be corrected in a subsequent period and may even result in restated results. Are accounts receivable relative to revenues abnormally high for a company relative to its history or its peers? If so, channel stuffing may have occurred. ■ Is there unusual activity in the allowance for sales returns relative to past history? ■ Does the company’s days sales outstanding indicate any collection issues that might indicate shipment of unneeded or unwanted goods to customers? ■ Does the company engage in “bill-and-hold” transactions? In such transactions, a customer purchases goods but requests that the goods remain with the seller until a later date. This kind of transaction makes it possible for a seller to manufacture fictitious sales by declaring end-of-period inventory as “sold but held,” with a minimum of effort and phony documentation. ■ Does the company use rebates as part of its marketing approach? If so, how significantly do the estimates of rebate fulfillment affect net revenues, and have any unusual breaks with history occurred?

Exhibit 21 (Continued)

Area of Choice/ Estimate	Analyst Concerns
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Does the company separate its revenue arrangements into multiple deliverables of goods or services? This area is one of great revenue recognition flexibility, and also one that provides little visibility to investors. They simply cannot examine a company's arrangements and decide for themselves as to the propriety of revenue allocation to different components of a contract. If a company uses multiple deliverable arrangements with its customers as a routine matter, investors might be more sensitive to revenue reporting risks. In seeking a comfort level, investors might ask the following questions: Does the company explain adequately how it determines the different allocations of deliverables and how revenue is recognized on each one? Do deferred revenues result? If not, does it seem reasonable that there are no deferred revenues for this kind of arrangement? Are there unusual trends in revenues and receivables, particularly with regard to cash conversion? If an investor cannot be satisfied with the answers from these questions, he or she might be more comfortable with other investment choices.
<i>Long-lived assets: Depreciation policies</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Do the estimated life spans of the associated assets make sense, or are they unusually low compared with others in the same industry? ■ Have there been changes in depreciable lives that have a positive effect on current earnings? ■ Do recent asset write-downs indicate that company policy on asset lives might need to be reconsidered?
<i>Intangibles: Capitalization policies</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Does the company capitalize expenditures related to intangibles, such as software? Does its balance sheet show any R&D capitalized as a result of acquisitions? Or, if the company is an IFRS filer, has it capitalized any internally generated development costs? ■ How do the company's capitalization policies compare with the competition? ■ Are amortization policies reasonable?
<i>Allowance for doubtful accounts/ loan loss reserves</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Are additions to such allowances lower or higher than in the past? ■ Does the collection experience justify any difference from historical provisioning? ■ Is there a possibility that any lowering of the allowance may be the result of industry difficulties along with the difficulty of meeting earnings expectations?

(continued)

Exhibit 21 (Continued)

Area of Choice/ Estimate	Analyst Concerns
<i>Inventory cost methods</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Does the company use a costing method that produces fair reporting results in view of its environment? How do its inventory methods compare with others in its industry? Are there differences that will make comparisons uneven if there are unusual changes in inflation? ■ Does the company use reserves for obsolescence in its inventory valuation? If so, are they subject to unusual fluctuations that might indicate adjusting them to arrive at a specified earnings result? ■ If a company reports under US GAAP and uses last-in-first-out (LIFO) inventory accounting, does LIFO liquidation (the assumed sale of old, lower-cost layers of inventory) occur through inventory reduction programs? This inventory reduction may generate earnings without supporting cash flow, and management may intentionally reduce the layers to produce specific earnings benefits.
<i>Tax asset valuation accounts</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Tax assets, if present, must be stated at the value at which management expects to realize them, and an allowance must be set up to restate tax assets to the level expected to eventually be converted into cash. Determining the allowance involves an estimate of future operations and tax payments. Does the amount of the valuation allowance seem reasonable, overly optimistic, or overly pessimistic? ■ Are there contradictions between the management commentary and the allowance level, or the tax note and the allowance level? There cannot be an optimistic management commentary and a fully reserved tax asset, or vice versa. One of them has to be wrong. ■ Look for changes in the tax asset valuation account. It may be 100% reserved at first, and then “optimism” increases whenever an earnings boost is needed. Lowering the reserve decreases tax expense and increases net income.
<i>Goodwill</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Companies must annually assess goodwill balances for impairment on a qualitative basis. If further testing appears necessary, it is based on estimates of the fair value of reporting units (US GAAP issuers) or cash-generating units (IFRS issuers), which are associated with goodwill balances. The tests are based on subjective estimates, including future cash flows and the employment of discount rates. ■ Do the disclosures relating to the goodwill testing suggest that the testing was skewed to avoid goodwill impairment charges?

Exhibit 21 (Continued)

Area of Choice/ Estimate	Analyst Concerns
<i>Warranty reserves</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Have additions to the reserves been reduced, perhaps to make earnings targets? Examine the trend in the charges of actual costs against the reserves: Do they support or contradict the warranty provisioning activity? Do the actual costs charged against the reserve give the analyst any indication about the quality of the products sold?
<i>Related-party transactions</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Is the company engaged in transactions that disproportionately benefit members of management? Does one company have control over another's destiny through supply contracts or other dealings? ■ Do extensive dealings take place with <i>non-public</i> companies that are under management control? If so, non-public companies could absorb losses (through supply arrangements that are unfavorable to the private company, for example) in order to make the public company's performance look good. This scenario may provide opportunities for an owner to cash out.

The most important lesson is that choices exist among accounting methods and estimates, and an analyst needs a working knowledge of them in order to understand whether management may have made choices to achieve a desired result.

4.3 Warning Signs

The choices management makes to achieve desired results leave a trail, like tracks in sand or snow. The evidence or warning signs of information manipulation in financial reports are directly linked to the basic means of manipulation: biased revenue recognition and biased expense recognition. The bias may relate to timing and/or location of recognition. For example, a company may choose to defer expenses by capitalizing them, which relates to when an expense is recognized. In another example, a company may choose to recognize a loss in other comprehensive income or directly through equity rather than through the profit and loss statement, which relates to where the loss is recognized. The alert investor or analyst should do the following to find warning signs.

1) Pay attention to revenue. The single largest number on the income statement is revenue, and revenue recognition is a recurring source of accounting manipulation and even outright fraud. Answering the question, "Is revenue higher or lower than the previous comparable period?" is not sufficient. Many analytical procedures can be routinely performed to provide warning signals of accounting malfeasance:

- *Examine the accounting policies note for a company's revenue recognition policies.*
 - Consider whether the policies make it easier to prematurely recognize revenue, such as recognizing revenue immediately upon shipment of goods, or if the company uses bill-and-hold arrangements whereby a sale is recognized before goods are actually shipped to the customer.
 - Barter transactions may exist, which can be difficult to value properly.

- Rebate programs involve many estimates, including forecasts of the amount of rebates that will ultimately be incurred. These estimates can have significant effects on revenue recognition.
- Multiple-deliverable arrangements of goods and services are common, but clarity about the timing of revenue recognition for each item or service delivered is necessary for the investor to be comfortable with the reporting of revenues.

Although none of these decisions violates accounting standards, each can raise investor suspicions if other warning signs are present.

- *Look at revenue relationships.* Compare a company's revenue growth with its primary competitors or its industry peer group.
 - If a company's revenue growth is out of line with its competitors, its industry, or the economy, the investor or analyst needs to understand the reasons for the outperformance. It may be a result of superior management or products and services, but not all management is superior, nor are the products and services of their companies. Revenue quality might be suspect, and the investor should take additional analytical steps.
 - Compare accounts receivable with revenues over several years.
 - Examine the trend to determine whether receivables are increasing as a percentage of total revenues. If so, a company might be engaging in channel-stuffing activities, or worse, recording fictitious sales transactions.
 - Calculate receivables turnover for several years:
 - Examine the trend for unusual changes and seek an explanation if they exist.
 - Compare a company's days sales outstanding (DSO) or receivables turnover with that of relevant competitors or an industry peer group and determine whether the company is an outlier.

An increase in DSO or decrease in receivables turnover could suggest that some revenues are recorded prematurely or are even fictitious, or that the allowance for doubtful accounts is insufficient.

- Examine asset turnover. If a company's managers make poor asset allocation choices, revenues may not be sufficient to justify the investment. Be particularly alert when asset allocation choices involve acquisitions of entire companies. If post-acquisition revenue generation is weak, managers might reach for revenue growth anywhere it can be found. That urge for growth might result in accounting abuses.

Revenues, divided by total assets, indicate the productivity of assets in generating revenues. If the company's asset turnover is continually declining, or lagging the asset turnover of competitors or industry, it may portend future asset write-downs, particularly in the area of goodwill balances for acquisitive companies.

2) Pay attention to signals from inventories. Although inventory is not a component of every company's asset base, its presence creates an opportunity for accounting manipulation.

- *Look at inventory relationships.* Because revenues involve items sold from inventory, the kind of examination an investor should perform on inventory is similar to that for revenues.

- Compare growth in inventories with competitors and industry benchmarks. If a company's inventory growth is out of line with its peers, without any concurrent sales growth, then it may be simply the result of poor inventory management—an operational inefficiency that might affect an investor's view of a company. It may also signal obsolescence problems in the company's inventory that have not yet been recognized through markdowns to the inventory's net realizable value. Current gross and net profits could be overstated because of overstated inventory.
- Calculate the inventory turnover ratio. This ratio is the cost of sales divided by the average ending inventory. Declining inventory turnover could also suggest obsolescence problems that should be recognized.
- Companies reporting under US GAAP may use LIFO inventory cost flow assumptions. When this assumption is part of the accounting policies, and a company operates in an inflationary environment, investors should note whether old, low-cost inventory costs have been passed through current earnings and artificially improved gross, operating, and net profits.

3) Pay attention to capitalization policies and deferred costs. In a study of enforcement actions over a five-year period, the SEC found that improper revenue recognition was the most prevalent accounting issue.²⁸ Suppression of expenses was the next most prevalent problem noted. As the earlier discussion of WorldCom showed, improper capitalization practices can result in a significant misstatement of financial results.

- *Examine the company's accounting policy note for its capitalization policy for long-term assets, including interest costs, and for its handling of other deferred costs.* Compare the company's policy with the industry practice. If the company is the only one capitalizing certain costs while other industry participants treat them as expenses, a red flag is raised. If an outlier company of this type is encountered, it would be useful to cross-check such a company's asset turnover and profitability margins with others in its industry. An investor might expect such a company to be more profitable than its competitors, but the investor might also have lower confidence in the quality of the reported numbers.

4) Pay attention to the relationship of cash flow and net income. Net income propels stock prices, but cash flow pays bills. Management can manipulate either one, but sooner or later, net income must be realized in cash if a company is to remain viable. When net income is higher than cash provided by operations, one possibility is that aggressive accrual accounting policies have shifted current expenses to later periods. Increasing earnings in the presence of declining cash generated by operations might signal accounting irregularities.

- *Construct a time series of cash generated by operations divided by net income.* If the ratio is consistently below 1.0 or has declined repeatedly, there may be problems in the company's accrual accounts.

5) Other potential warnings signs. Other areas that might suggest further analysis include the following:

- *Depreciation methods and useful lives.* As discussed earlier, depreciation methods and the useful lives selected can greatly influence profitability. An investor should compare a company's policies with those of its peers to determine

²⁸ SEC, "Report Pursuant to Section 704 of the Sarbanes–Oxley Act of 2002" (www.sec.gov/news/studies/sox704report.pdf): 5–6.

whether it is particularly lenient in its effects on earnings. Investors should likewise compare the length of depreciable lives used by a company with those used by its peers.

- *Fourth-quarter surprises.* An investor should be suspicious of possible earnings management if a company routinely disappoints investors with poor earnings or overachieves in the fourth quarter of the year when no seasonality exists in the business. The company may be over- or under-reporting profits in the first three quarters of the year.
- *Presence of related-party transactions.* Related-party transactions often arise when a company's founders are still very active in managing the company, with much of their wealth tied to the company's fortunes. They may be more biased in their view of a company's performance because it relates directly to their own wealth and reputations, and they may be able to transact business with the company in ways that may not be detected. For instance, they may purchase unsellable inventory from the company for disposal in another company of their own in order to avoid markdowns.
- *Non-operating income or one-time sales included in revenue.* To disguise weakening revenue growth, or just to enhance revenue growth, a company might classify non-operating income items into revenues or fail to clarify the nature of revenues. In the first quarter of 1997, Sunbeam Corporation included one-time disposal of product lines in sales without indicating that such non-recurring sales were included in revenues. This inclusion gave investors a false impression of the company's sustainable revenue-generating capability.
- *Classification of expenses as "non-recurring."* To make operating performance look more attractive, managers might carve out "special items" in the income statement. Particularly when such special items appear period after period, equity investors might find their interests best served by not giving serial "special items" such treatment and instead focusing on the net income line in evaluating performance over long periods.
- *Gross/operating margins out of line with competitors or industry.* This disparity is an ambivalent warning sign. It might signal superior management ability. But it might also signal the presence of accounting manipulations to add a veneer of superior management ability to the company's reputation. Only the compilation and examination of other warning signals will enable an investor or analyst to decide which signal is being given.

Warning signals are just that: signals, not indisputable declarations of accounting manipulation guilt. Investors and analysts need to evaluate them cohesively, not on an isolated basis. When an investor finds a number of these signals, the subject investment should be viewed with caution or even discarded in favor of alternatives.

Furthermore, as discussed earlier, context is important in judging the value of warning signals. A few examples of facts and circumstances to be aware of are as follows.

- *Younger companies with an unblemished record of meeting growth projections.* It is plausible, especially for a younger company with new and popular product offerings, to generate above-average returns for a period of time. But, as demand dissipates, products mature, and competitors challenge for market share, management may seek to extend its recent record of rapid growth in sales and profitability by unconventional means. At this point, the "earnings games" begin: aggressive estimates, drawing down "cookie jar" reserves, selling assets for accounting gains, taking on excess leverage, or entering into financial transactions with no apparent business purpose other than financial statement "window dressing."

- *Management has adopted a minimalist approach to disclosure.* Confidence in accounting quality depends on disclosure. For example, when large companies claim that they have only one reportable segment or that management's commentary is similar from period to period, there is cause for concern. If management does not seem to take seriously its obligation to provide information, one needs to be concerned. A plausible explanation for minimalist disclosure policies could be that management is protecting investors' interests by withholding valuable information from competitors. But, this explanation is not necessarily the case. For example, after Sony Corporation acquired CBS Records and Columbia Pictures, it incurred substantial losses for a number of years. Yet, Sony chose to hide its negative trends and doubtful future prospects by aggregating the results within a much larger "Entertainment Division." In 1998, after Sony ultimately wrote off much of the goodwill associated with these ill-fated acquisitions, the SEC sanctioned Sony and its CFO for failing to separately discuss them in MD&A in a balanced manner.²⁹
- *Management fixation on earnings reports.* Beware of companies whose management appears to be fixated on reported earnings, sometimes to the detriment of attending to real drivers of value. Indicators of excessive earnings fixation include the aggressive use of non-GAAP measures of performance, special items, or non-recurring charges. Another indicator of earnings fixation is highly decentralized operations in which division managers' compensation packages are heavily weighted toward the attainment of reported earnings or non-GAAP measures of performance.

A company's culture is an intangible that investors should bear in mind when they are evaluating financial statements for the possibility of accounting manipulation. A management's highly competitive mentality may serve investors well when the company conducts business (assuming that actions taken are not unethical, illegal, or harmfully myopic), but that kind of thinking should not extend to communications with the owners of the company: the shareholders. That mentality can lead to the kind of accounting gamesmanship seen in the early part of the century. In examining financial statements for warning signs of manipulation, the investor should consider whether that mindset exists in the preparation of the financial statements.

One notable example of the mindset comes from one of the most recognized corporate names in the world, General Electric. In the mid-1980s, GE acquired Kidder Peabody, and it was ultimately determined that much of the earnings that Kidder had reported were bogus. As a consequence, GE would announce within two days that it would take a non-cash write-off of \$350 million. Here is how former CEO/Chair Jack Welch described the ensuing meeting with senior management in his memoir, *Straight from the Gut*:

"The response of our business leaders to the crisis was typical of the GE culture [emphasis added]. Even though the books had closed on the quarter, many immediately offered to pitch in to cover the Kidder gap. Some said they could find an extra \$10 million, \$20 million, and even \$30 million from their businesses to offset the surprise. Though it was too late, their willingness to help was a dramatic contrast to the excuses I had been hearing from the Kidder people." (p. 225)

It appears that the corporate governance apparatus fostered a GE culture that extended the concept of teamwork to the point of "sharing" profits to win one for the team as a whole, which is incompatible with the concept of neutral financial

²⁹ Accounting and Auditing Enforcement Release No. 1061, "In the Matter of Sony Corporation and Sumio Sano, Respondents," SEC (5 August 1998).

reporting. Although research is not conclusive on this question, it may also be worth considering that predisposition to earnings manipulation is more likely to be present when the CEO and board chair are one and the same, or when the audit committee of the board essentially serves at the pleasure of the CEO and lacks financial reporting sophistication. Finally, one could discuss whether the financial reporting environment today would reward or penalize a CEO who openly endorsed a view that he could legitimately exercise financial reporting discretion—albeit within limits—for the purpose of artificially smoothing earnings.

Restructuring and/or impairment charges. At times, a company's stock price has been observed to rise after it recognized a "big bath" charge to earnings of the current period. The conventional wisdom explaining the stock price rise is that accounting recognition signals something positive: that management is now ready to part with the lagging portion of a company, so as to redirect its attention and talents to more-profitable activities. Consequently, the earnings charge should be disregarded for being solely related to past events.

The analyst should also consider, however, that the events leading ultimately to the big bath on the financial statements did not happen overnight, even though the accounting for those events occurs at a subsequent point. Management may want to communicate that the accounting adjustments reflect the company's new path, but the restructuring charge also indicates that the old path of reported earnings was not real. In particular, expenses reported in prior years were very likely understated—even assuming that no improper financial statement manipulation had occurred. To extrapolate historical earnings trends, an analyst should consider making pro forma analytical adjustments of prior years' earnings to reflect in those prior years a reasonable share of the current period's restructuring and impairment charges.

Management has a merger and acquisition orientation. Tyco International Ltd. acquired more than 700 companies from 1996 to 2002. Even assuming the best of intentions regarding financial reporting, a growth-at-any-cost corporate culture poses a severe challenge to operational and financial reporting controls. In Tyco's case, the SEC found that it consistently and fraudulently understated assets acquired (lowering future depreciation and amortization charges) and overstated liabilities assumed (avoiding expense recognition and potentially increasing earnings in future periods).³⁰

5

CONCLUSION

Financial reporting quality varies across companies. The ability to assess the quality of a company's financial reporting is an important skill for analysts. Indications of low-quality financial reporting can prompt an analyst to maintain heightened skepticism when reading a company's reports, to review disclosures critically when undertaking financial statement analysis, and to incorporate appropriate adjustments in assessments of past performance and forecasts of future performance.

- Financial reporting quality can be thought of as spanning a continuum from the highest (containing information that is relevant, correct, complete, and unbiased) to the lowest (containing information that is not just biased or incomplete but possibly pure fabrication).

³⁰ Accounting and Auditing Enforcement Release No. 2414, "SEC Brings Settled Charges Against Tyco International Ltd. Alleging Billion Dollar Accounting Fraud," SEC (17 April 2006): www.sec.gov/litigation/litreleases/2006/lr19657.htm.

- *Reporting quality*, the focus of this reading, pertains to the information disclosed. High-quality reporting represents the economic reality of the company's activities during the reporting period and the company's financial condition at the end of the period.
- *Results quality* (commonly referred to as earnings quality) pertains to the earnings and cash generated by the company's actual economic activities and the resulting financial condition, relative to expectations of current and future financial performance.
- An aspect of financial reporting quality is the degree to which accounting choices are conservative or aggressive. "Aggressive" typically refers to choices that aim to enhance the company's reported performance and financial position by inflating the amount of revenues, earnings, and/or operating cash flow reported in the period; or by decreasing the amount of expenses reported in the period and/or the amount of debt reported on the balance sheet.
- Conservatism in financial reports can result from either (1) accounting standards that specifically require a conservative treatment of a transaction or an event or (2) judgments necessarily made by managers when applying accounting standards that result in more- or less-conservative results.
- An example of conservatism in the oil and gas industry is the revenue recognition accounting standard. This standard permits recognition of revenue only at time of shipment rather than closer to the time of actual value creation, which is the time of discovery.
- Managers may be motivated to issue less than high quality financial reports in order to mask poor performance, to boost the stock price, to increase personal compensation, and/or to avoid violation of debt covenants.
- Conditions that are conducive to the issuance of low-quality financial reports include cultural environment attributes that result in fewer or less transparent financial disclosures, book/tax conformity that shifts emphasis toward legal compliance and away from fair presentation, and limited capital markets regulation.
- Mechanisms that discipline financial reporting quality include the free market and incentives for companies to minimize cost of capital, auditors, contract provisions specifically tailored to penalize misreporting, and enforcement by regulatory entities.
- Pro forma earnings (also commonly referred to as non-GAAP or non-IFRS earnings) adjust earnings as reported on the income statement. Pro forma earnings that exclude negative items are a hallmark of aggressive presentation choices.
- Companies are required to make additional disclosures when presenting any non-GAAP or non-IFRS metric.
- Managers' considerable flexibility in choosing their companies' accounting policies and in formulating estimates provides opportunities for aggressive accounting.
- Examples of accounting choices that affect earnings and balance sheets include inventory cost flow assumptions, estimates of uncollectible accounts receivable, estimated realizability of deferred tax assets, depreciation method, estimated salvage value of depreciable assets, and estimated useful life of depreciable assets.
- Cash from operations is a metric of interest to investors that can be enhanced by operating choices, such as stretching accounts payable, and potentially by classification choices.

REFERENCES

- Back, Aaron. 2013. "Toyota, What a Difference the Yen Makes." *Wall Street Journal* (4 August 2013).
- Basu, Sudipta. 1997. "The Conservatism Principle and the Asymmetric Timeliness of Earnings." *Journal of Accounting and Economics*, vol. 24, no. 1 (December):3–37.
- Bliss, James Harris. 1924. *Management through Accounts*. New York: Ronald Press Company.
- Ciesielski, Jack T, and Elaine Henry. 2017. "Accounting's Tower of Babel: Key Considerations in Assessing Non-GAAP Earnings." *Financial Analysts Journal*, vol. 73, no. 2:34–50.
- Dichev, Ilija, John Graham, Campbell Harvey, and Shivaram Rajgopal. 2013. "Earnings Quality: Evidence from the Field." *Journal of Accounting and Economics*, vol. 56, issues 2–3:1–33.
- Ernst & Young. 2013. *Navigating Today's Complex Business Risks*. Europe, Middle East, India and Africa Fraud Survey 2013 (May): [www.ey.com/Publication/vwLUAssets/Navigating_todays_complex_business_risks/\\$FILE/Navigating_todays_complex_business_risks.pdf](http://www.ey.com/Publication/vwLUAssets/Navigating_todays_complex_business_risks/$FILE/Navigating_todays_complex_business_risks.pdf).
- Gordon, Elizabeth, Elaine Henry, Bjorn Jorgensen, and Cheryl Linthicum. 2017. "Flexibility in Cash-Flow Classification under IFRS: Determinants and Consequences." *Review of Accounting Studies*, vol. 22, no. 2:839–872.
- Graham, John, Campbell Harvey, and Shiva Rajgopal. 2005. "The Economic Implications of Corporate Financial Reporting." *Journal of Accounting and Economics*, vol. 40, no. 1 (December):3–73.
- Gu, Feng, and Baruch Lev. 2017. "Time to Change Your Investment Model." *Financial Analysts Journal*, vol. 73, no. 4:23–33.
- Lee, Lian Fen. 2012. "Incentives to Inflate Reported Cash from Operations Using Classification and Timing." *Accounting Review*, vol. 87, no. 1 (January):1–33.
- Lewis, Craig M. 2012. "Risk Modeling at the SEC: The Accounting Quality Model" Speech, the Financial Executives International Committee on Finance and Information Technology (13 December): www.sec.gov/news/speech/2012/spch121312cml.htm.
- Nurnberg, H. 2006. "Perspectives on the Cash Flow Statement under FASB Statement No. 95." Center for Excellence in Accounting and Security Analysis Occasional Paper Series. Columbia Business School.
- Nurnberg, H., and J. Largay. 1998. "Interest Payments in the Cash Flow Statement." *Accounting Horizons*, vol. 12, no. 4 (December):407–418.
- Pavlo, Walter. 2013. "Fmr Enron CFO Andrew Fastow Speaks At ACFE Annual Conference." *Forbes* (26 June): www.forbes.com/sites/walterpavlo/2013/06/26/fmr-enron-cfo-andrew-fastow-speaks-at-acfe-annual-conference/.
- Ronen, Joshua, and Varda Yaari. 2008. *Earnings Management: Emerging Insights in Theory, Practice, and Research*. New York: Springer.
- Schipper, Katherine. 1989. "Commentary on Earnings Management." *Accounting Horizons*, vol. 3, no. 4 (December):91–102.
- Watts, Ross. 2003. "Conservatism in Accounting Part I: Explanations and Implications." *Accounting Horizons*, vol. 17, no. 3 (September):207–221.

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

- 1 In contrast to earnings quality, financial reporting quality *most likely* pertains to:
 - A sustainable earnings.
 - B relevant information.
 - C adequate return on investment.
- 2 The information provided by a low-quality financial report will *most likely*:
 - A decrease company value.
 - B indicate earnings are not sustainable.
 - C impede the assessment of earnings quality.
- 3 To properly assess a company's past performance, an analyst requires:
 - A high earnings quality.
 - B high financial reporting quality.
 - C both high earnings quality and high financial reporting quality.
- 4 Low quality earnings *most likely* reflect:
 - A low-quality financial reporting.
 - B company activities which are unsustainable.
 - C information that does not faithfully represent company activities.
- 5 Earnings that result from non-recurring activities *most likely* indicate:
 - A lower-quality earnings.
 - B biased accounting choices.
 - C lower-quality financial reporting.
- 6 Which attribute of financial reports would *most likely* be evaluated as optimal in the financial reporting spectrum?
 - A Conservative accounting choices
 - B Sustainable and adequate returns
 - C Emphasized pro forma earnings measures
- 7 Financial reports of the lowest level of quality reflect:
 - A fictitious events.
 - B biased accounting choices.
 - C accounting that is non-compliant with GAAP.
- 8 When earnings are increased by deferring research and development (R&D) investments until the next reporting period, this choice is considered:
 - A non-compliant accounting.
 - B earnings management as a result of a real action.
 - C earnings management as a result of an accounting choice.
- 9 A high-quality financial report may reflect:
 - A earnings smoothing.
 - B low earnings quality.
 - C understatement of asset impairment.

- 10 If a particular accounting choice is considered aggressive in nature, then the financial performance for the current period would *most likely*:
- A be neutral.
 - B exhibit an upward bias.
 - C exhibit a downward bias.
- 11 Which of the following is *most likely* to reflect conservative accounting choices?
- A Decreased reported earnings in later periods
 - B Increased reported earnings in the current period
 - C Increased debt reported on the balance sheet at the end of the current period
- 12 Which of the following is *most likely* to be considered a potential benefit of accounting conservatism?
- A A reduction in litigation costs
 - B Less biased financial reporting
 - C An increase in current period reported performance
- 13 Which of the following statements *most likely* describes a situation that would motivate a manager to issue low-quality financial reports?
- A The manager's compensation is tied to stock price performance.
 - B The manager has increased the market share of products significantly.
 - C The manager has brought the company's profitability to a level higher than competitors.
- 14 Which of the following concerns would *most likely* motivate a manager to make conservative accounting choices?
- A Attention to future career opportunities
 - B Expected weakening in the business environment
 - C Debt covenant violation risk in the current period
- 15 Which of the following conditions *best* explains why a company's manager would obtain legal, accounting, and board level approval prior to issuing low-quality financial reports?
- A Motivation
 - B Opportunity
 - C Rationalization
- 16 A company is experiencing a period of strong financial performance. In order to increase the likelihood of exceeding analysts' earnings forecasts in the next reporting period, the company would *most likely* undertake accounting choices that:
- A inflate reported revenue in the current period.
 - B delay expense recognition in the current period.
 - C accelerate expense recognition in the current period.
- 17 Which of the following situations represents a motivation, rather than an opportunity, to issue low-quality financial reports?
- A Poor internal controls
 - B Search for a personal bonus
 - C Inattentive board of directors
- 18 Which of the following situations will *most likely* motivate managers to inflate earnings in the current period?

- A Possibility of bond covenant violation
 - B Earnings in excess of analysts' forecasts
 - C Earnings that are greater than the previous year
- 19 Which of the following *best* describes an opportunity for management to issue low-quality financial reports?
- A Ineffective board of directors
 - B Pressure to achieve some performance level
 - C Corporate concerns about financing in the future
- 20 An audit opinion of a company's financial reports is *most likely* intended to:
- A detect fraud.
 - B reveal misstatements.
 - C assure that financial information is presented fairly.
- 21 If a company uses a non-GAAP financial measure in an SEC filing, then the company must:
- A give more prominence to the non-GAAP measure if it is used in earnings releases.
 - B provide a reconciliation of the non-GAAP measure and equivalent GAAP measure.
 - C exclude charges requiring cash settlement from any non-GAAP liquidity measures.
- 22 A company wishing to increase earnings in the current period may choose to:
- A decrease the useful life of depreciable assets.
 - B lower estimates of uncollectible accounts receivables.
 - C classify a purchase as an expense rather than a capital expenditure.
- 23 Bias in revenue recognition would *least likely* be suspected if:
- A the firm engages in barter transactions.
 - B reported revenue is higher than the previous quarter.
 - C revenue is recognized before goods are shipped to customers.
- 24 Which technique *most likely* increases the cash flow provided by operations?
- A Stretching the accounts payable credit period
 - B Applying all non-cash discount amortization against interest capitalized
 - C Shifting classification of interest paid from financing to operating cash flows
- 25 Which of the following is an indication that a company may be recognizing revenue prematurely? Relative to its competitors, the company's:
- A asset turnover is decreasing.
 - B receivables turnover is increasing.
 - C days sales outstanding is increasing.
- 26 Which of the following would *most likely* signal that a company may be using aggressive accrual accounting policies to shift current expenses to later periods? Over the last five-year period, the ratio of cash flow to net income has:
- A increased each year.
 - B decreased each year.
 - C fluctuated from year to year.
- 27 An analyst reviewing a firm with a large, current-period restructuring charge to earnings should:

- A view expenses reported in prior years as overstated.
- B disregard it because it is solely related to past events.
- C consider making pro forma adjustments to prior years' earnings.

SOLUTIONS

- 1 B is correct. Financial reporting quality pertains to the quality of information in financial reports. High-quality financial reporting provides decision-useful information, which is relevant and faithfully represents the economic reality of the company's activities. Earnings of high quality are sustainable and provide an adequate level of return. Highest-quality financial reports reflect both high financial reporting quality and high earnings quality.
- 2 C is correct. Financial reporting quality pertains to the quality of the information contained in financial reports. High-quality financial reports provide decision-useful information that faithfully represents the economic reality of the company. Low-quality financial reports impede assessment of earnings quality. Financial reporting quality is distinguishable from earnings quality, which pertains to the earnings and cash generated by the company's actual economic activities and the resulting financial condition. Low quality earnings are not sustainable and decrease company value.
- 3 B is correct. Financial reporting quality pertains to the quality of the information contained in financial reports. If financial reporting quality is low, the information provided is not useful to assess the company's performance. Financial reporting quality is distinguishable from earnings quality, which pertains to the earnings and cash generated by the company's actual economic activities and the resulting financial condition.
- 4 B is correct. Earnings quality pertains to the earnings and cash generated by the company's actual economic activities and the resulting financial condition. Low-quality earnings are likely not sustainable over time because the company does not expect to generate the same level of earnings in the future or because earnings will not generate sufficient return on investment to sustain the company in the future. Earnings that are not sustainable decrease company value. Earnings quality is distinguishable from financial reporting quality, which pertains to the quality of the information contained in financial reports.
- 5 A is correct. Earnings that result from non-recurring activities are unsustainable. Unsustainable earnings are an example of lower-quality earnings. Recognizing earnings that result from non-recurring activities is neither a biased accounting choice or indicative of lower quality financial reporting because it faithfully represents economic events.
- 6 B is correct. At the top of the quality spectrum of financial reports are reports that conform to GAAP, are decision useful, and have earnings that are sustainable and offer adequate returns. In other words, these reports have both high financial reporting quality and high earnings quality.
- 7 A is correct. Financial reports span a quality continuum from high to low based on decision-usefulness and earnings quality (see Exhibit 2 of the reading). The lowest-quality reports portray fictitious events, which may misrepresent the company's performance and/or obscure fraudulent misappropriation of the company's assets.
- 8 B is correct. Deferring research and development (R&D) investments into the next reporting period is an example of earnings management by taking a *real* action.
- 9 B is correct. High-quality financial reports offer useful information, meaning information that is relevant and faithfully represents actual performance. Although low earnings quality may not be desirable, if the reported earnings

are representative of actual performance, they are consistent with high-quality financial reporting. Highest-quality financial reports reflect both high financial reporting quality and high earnings quality.

- 10 B is correct. Aggressive accounting choices aim to enhance the company's reported performance by inflating the amount of revenues, earnings, and/or operating cash flow reported in the period. Consequently, the financial performance for the current period would most likely exhibit an upward bias.
- 11 C is correct. Accounting choices are considered conservative if they decrease the company's reported performance and financial position in the current period. Conservative choices may increase the amount of debt reported on the balance sheet. Conservative accounting choices may decrease the amount of revenues, earnings, and/or operating cash flow reported in the current period and increase those amounts in later periods.
- 12 A is correct. Conservatism reduces the possibility of litigation and, by extension, litigation costs. Rarely, if ever, is a company sued because it understated good news or overstated bad news. Accounting conservatism is a type of bias in financial reporting that decreases a company's reported performance in the current period. Conservatism directly conflicts with the characteristic of neutrality.
- 13 A is correct. Managers often have incentives to meet or beat market expectations, particularly if management compensation is linked to increases in stock prices or to reported earnings.
- 14 B is correct. Managers may be motivated to understate earnings in the current period and increase the probability of meeting or exceeding the next period's earnings target.
- 15 C is correct. Typically, conditions of opportunity, motivation, and rationalization exist when individuals issue low-quality financial reports. Rationalization exists when an individual is concerned about a choice and needs to be able to justify it to herself or himself. If the manager is concerned about a choice in a financial reports, she or he may ask for other opinions to convince herself or himself that it is okay.
- 16 C is correct. In a period of strong financial performance, managers may pursue accounting choices that increase the probability of exceeding next period's earnings forecasts. By accelerating expense recognition or delaying revenue recognition, managers may increase earnings in the next period and increase the likelihood of exceeding next period's earnings targets.
- 17 B is correct. Motivation can result from pressure to meet some criteria for personal reasons, such as a bonus, or corporate reasons, such as concern about financing in the future. Poor internal controls and an inattentive board of directors offer opportunities to issue low-quality financial reports.
- 18 A is correct. The possibility of bond covenant violations may motivate managers to inflate earnings in the current period. By inflating earnings in the current period, the company may be able to avoid the consequences associated with violating bond covenants.
- 19 A is correct. Opportunities to issue low quality financial reports include internal conditions such as an ineffective board of directors and external conditions such as accounting standards that provide scope for divergent choices. Pressure to achieve some performance level and corporate concerns about financing in the future are examples of motivations to issue low-quality financial reports. Typically, three conditions exist when low-quality financial reports are issued: opportunity, motivation, and rationalization.

- 20** C is correct. An audit is intended to provide assurance that the company's financial reports are presented fairly, thus providing discipline regarding financial reporting quality. Regulatory agencies usually require that the financial statements of publicly traded companies be audited by an independent auditor to provide assurance that the financial statements conform to accounting standards. Privately held companies may also choose to obtain audit opinions either voluntarily or because an outside party requires it. An audit is not typically intended to detect fraud. An audit is based on sampling and it is possible that the sample might not reveal misstatements.
- 21** B is correct. If a company uses a non-GAAP financial measure in an SEC filing, it is required to provide the most directly comparable GAAP measure with equivalent prominence in the filing. In addition, the company is required to provide a reconciliation between the non-GAAP measure and the equivalent GAAP measure. Similarly, IFRS require that any non-IFRS measures included in financial reports must be defined and their potential relevance explained. The non-IFRS measures must be reconciled with IFRS measures.
- 22** B is correct. If a company wants to increase reported earnings, the company's managers may reduce the allowance for uncollected accounts and uncollected accounts expense reported in the period. Decreasing the useful life of depreciable assets would increase depreciation expense and decrease earnings in the current period. Classifying a purchase as an expense rather than a capital expenditure would decrease earnings in the current period. The use of accrual accounting may result in estimates included in financial reports, because all facts associated with events may not be known at the time of recognition. These estimates can be grounded in reality or can be managed by the company to present a desired financial picture.
- 23** B is correct. Bias in revenue recognition can lead to manipulation of information presented in financial reports. Addressing the question as to whether revenue is higher or lower than the previous period is not sufficient to determine if there is bias in revenue recognition. Additional analytical procedures must be performed to provide warning signals of accounting malfeasance. Barter transactions are difficult to value properly and may result in bias in revenue recognition. Policies that make it easier to prematurely recognize revenue, such as revenue being recognized before goods are shipped to customers, may be a warning sign of accounting malfeasance.
- 24** A is correct. Managers can temporarily show a higher cash flow from operations by stretching the accounts payable credit period. In other words, the managers delay payments until the next accounting period. Applying all non-cash discount amortization against interest capitalized causes reported interest expenses and operating cash outflow to be higher, resulting in a lower cash flow provided by operations. Shifting the classification of interest paid from financing to operating cash flows lowers the cash flow provided by operations.
- 25** C is correct. If a company's days sales outstanding (DSO) is increasing relative to competitors, this may be a signal that revenues are being recorded prematurely or are even fictitious. There are numerous analytical procedures that can be performed to provide evidence of manipulation of information in financial reporting. These warning signs are often linked to bias associated with revenue recognition and expense recognition policies.
- 26** B is correct. If the ratio of cash flow to net income for a company is consistently below 1 or has declined repeatedly over time, this may be a signal of manipulation of information in financial reports through aggressive accrual accounting

policies. When net income is consistently higher than cash provided by operations, one possible explanation is that the company may be using aggressive accrual accounting policies to shift current expenses to later periods.

- 27** C is correct. To extrapolate historical earnings trends, an analyst should consider making pro forma analytical adjustments of prior years' earnings to reflect in those prior years a reasonable share of the current period's restructuring and impairment charges.

Financial Statement Analysis: Applications

by Thomas R. Robinson, PhD, CFA, Jan Hendrik van Greuning, DCom, CFA, Elaine Henry, PhD, CFA, and Michael A. Broihahn, CPA, CIA, CFA

Thomas R. Robinson, PhD, CFA, is at AACSB International (USA). Jan Hendrik van Greuning, DCom, CFA, is at BIBD (Brunei). Elaine Henry, PhD, CFA, is at Stevens Institute of Technology (USA). Michael A. Broihahn, CPA, CIA, CFA, is at Barry University (USA).

LEARNING OUTCOMES

<i>Mastery</i>	<i>The candidate should be able to:</i>
<input type="checkbox"/>	a. evaluate a company's past financial performance and explain how a company's strategy is reflected in past financial performance;
<input type="checkbox"/>	b. forecast a company's future net income and cash flow;
<input type="checkbox"/>	c. describe the role of financial statement analysis in assessing the credit quality of a potential debt investment;
<input type="checkbox"/>	d. describe the use of financial statement analysis in screening for potential equity investments;
<input type="checkbox"/>	e. explain appropriate analyst adjustments to a company's financial statements to facilitate comparison with another company.

Note: Changes in accounting standards as well as new rulings and/or pronouncements issued after the publication of the readings on financial reporting and analysis may cause some of the information in these readings to become dated. Candidates are *not* responsible for anything that occurs after the readings were published. In addition, candidates are expected to be familiar with the analytical frameworks contained in the readings, as well as the implications of alternative accounting methods for financial analysis and valuation discussed in the readings. Candidates are also responsible for the content of accounting standards, but not for the actual reference numbers. Finally, candidates should be aware that certain ratios may be defined and calculated differently. When alternative ratio definitions exist and no specific definition is given, candidates should use the ratio definitions emphasized in the readings.

1

INTRODUCTION

This reading presents several important applications of financial statement analysis. Among the issues we will address are the following:

- What are the key questions to address in evaluating a company's past financial performance?
- How can an analyst approach forecasting a company's future net income and cash flow?
- How can financial statement analysis be used to evaluate the credit quality of a potential fixed-income investment?
- How can financial statement analysis be used to screen for potential equity investments?
- How can differences in accounting methods affect financial ratio comparisons between companies, and what are some adjustments analysts make to reported financials to facilitate comparability among companies.

The reading "Financial Statement Analysis: An Introduction" described a framework for conducting financial statement analysis. Consistent with that framework, prior to undertaking any analysis, an analyst should explore the purpose and context of the analysis. The purpose and context guide further decisions about the approach, the tools, the data sources, and the format in which to report results of the analysis, and also suggest which aspects of the analysis are most important. Having identified the purpose and context, the analyst should then be able to formulate the key questions that the analysis must address. The questions will suggest the data the analyst needs to collect to objectively address the questions. The analyst then processes and analyzes the data to answer these questions. Conclusions and decisions based on the analysis are communicated in a format appropriate to the context, and follow-up is undertaken as required. Although this reading will not formally present applications as a series of steps, the process just described is generally applicable.

Section 2 of this reading describes the use of financial statement analysis to evaluate a company's past financial performance, and Section 3 describes basic approaches to projecting a company's future financial performance. Section 4 presents the use of financial statement analysis in assessing the credit quality of a potential debt investment. Section 5 concludes the survey of applications by describing the use of financial statement analysis in screening for potential equity investments. Analysts often encounter situations in which they must make adjustments to a company's reported financial results to increase their accuracy or comparability with the financials of other companies. Section 6 illustrates several common types of analyst adjustments. Section 7 presents a summary, and practice problems in the CFA Institute multiple-choice format conclude the reading.

APPLICATION: EVALUATING PAST FINANCIAL PERFORMANCE

2

Analysts examine a company's past financial performance for a number of reasons. Cross-sectional analysis of financial performance facilitates understanding of the comparability of companies for a market-based valuation.¹ Analysis of a company's historical performance over time can provide a basis for a forward-looking analysis of the company. Both cross-sectional and trend analysis can provide information for evaluating the quality and performance of a company's management.

An evaluation of a company's past performance addresses not only *what* happened (i.e., how the company performed) but also *why* it happened—the causes behind the performance and how the performance reflects the company's strategy. Evaluative judgments assess whether the performance is better or worse than a relevant benchmark, such as the company's own historical performance, a competitor's performance, or market expectations. Some key analytical questions include the following:

- How and why have corporate measures of profitability, efficiency, liquidity, and solvency changed over the periods being analyzed?
- How do the level and trend in a company's profitability, efficiency, liquidity, and solvency compare with the corresponding results of other companies in the same industry? What factors explain any differences?
- What aspects of performance are critical for a company to successfully compete in its industry, and how did the company perform relative to those critical performance aspects?
- What are the company's business model and strategy, and how did they influence the company's performance as reflected in, for example, its sales growth, efficiency, and profitability?

Data available to answer these questions include the company's (and its competitors') financial statements, materials from the company's investor relations department, corporate press releases, and non-financial-statement regulatory filings, such as proxies. Useful data also include industry information (e.g., from industry surveys, trade publications, and government sources), consumer information (e.g., from consumer satisfaction surveys), and information that is gathered by the analyst firsthand (e.g., through on-site visits). Processing the data typically involves creating common-size financial statements, calculating financial ratios, and reviewing or calculating industry-specific metrics. Example 1 illustrates the effects of strategy on performance and the use of basic economic reasoning in interpreting results.

EXAMPLE 1

A Change in Strategy Reflected in Financial Performance

Apple Inc. is a company that has evolved and adapted over time. In its 1994 Prospectus (Form 424B5) filed with the US SEC, Apple identified itself as “one of the world's leading personal computer technology companies.” At that time, most of its revenue was generated by computer sales. In the prospectus, however, Apple stated, “The Company's strategy is to expand its market share

¹ Pinto et al. (2010) describe market-based valuation as using price multiples—ratios of a stock's market price to some measure of value per share (e.g., price-to-earnings ratios). Although the valuation method may be used independently of an analysis of a company's past financial performance, such an analysis may provide reasons for differences in companies' price multiples.

in the personal computing industry while developing and expanding into new related business such as Personal Interactive Electronics and Apple Business Systems.” Over time, products other than computers became significant generators of revenue and profit. In its 2010 Annual Report (Form 10-K) filed with the SEC, Apple stated in Part I, Item 1, under Business Strategy, “The Company is committed to bringing the best user experience to its customers through its innovative hardware, software, peripherals, services, and Internet offerings. The Company’s business strategy leverages its unique ability to design and develop . . . to provide its customers new products and solutions with superior ease-of-use, seamless integration, and innovative industrial design. . . . The Company is therefore uniquely positioned to offer superior and well-integrated digital lifestyle and productivity solutions.” Clearly, the company is no longer simply a personal computer technology company.

In analyzing the historical performance of Apple as of the beginning of 2011, an analyst might refer to the information presented in Exhibit 1. Panel A presents selected financial data for the company from 2007 to 2010. Panels B and C present excerpts from the segment note. Panel B reports the net sales by product, in millions of dollars, and Panel C reports the unit sales by product, in thousands. [Because Apple manages its business on the basis of geographical segments, the more complete data required in segment reporting (i.e., segment operating income and segment assets) is available only by geographical segment, not by product.]

In 2005, an article in *Barron’s* said, “In the last year, the iPod has become Apple’s best-selling product, bringing in a third of revenues for the Cupertino, Calif. firm . . . Little noticed by these iPod zealots, however is a looming threat . . . Wireless phone companies are teaming up with the music industry to make most mobile phones into music players” (*Barron’s* 27 June 2005, p. 19). The threat noted by *Barron’s* was not unnoticed or ignored by Apple.

In June 2007, Apple itself entered the mobile phone market with the launch of the original iPhone, followed in June 2008 by the second-generation iPhone 3G (a handheld device combining the features of a mobile phone, an iPod, and an internet connection device). Soon after, the company launched the iTunes App Store, which allows users to download third-party applications onto their iPhones. As noted in a 2009 *Business Week* article, Apple “is the world’s largest music distributor, having passed Wal-Mart Stores in early 2008. Apple sells around 90% of song downloads and 75% of digital music players in the United States” (*Business Week*, 28 September 2009, p. 34). Product innovations continue as evidenced by the introduction of the iPad in January 2010.

Exhibit 1 Selected Data for Apple Inc. (for the four years ended 25 September 2010)

Panel A: Data for Apple Inc. (dollars in millions)	Fiscal Year			
	2010	2009	2008	2007
Net sales	\$65,225	\$42,905	\$37,491	\$24,578
Gross margin	25,684	17,222	13,197	8,152
Net income	14,013	8,235	6,119	3,495
Cash and marketable securities	51,011	33,992	24,490	15,386
Total current assets	41,678	31,555	30,006	21,956
Total assets	75,183	47,501	36,171	24,878
Total current liabilities	20,722	11,506	11,361	9,280

Exhibit 1 (Continued)**Panel B: Net Sales by Product**

(dollars in millions)	2010	2009	2008	2007
Desktops	\$6,201	\$4,324	\$5,622	\$4,023
Portables	11,278	9,535	8,732	6,313
Total Mac net sales	17,479	13,859	14,354	10,336
iPod	8,274	8,091	9,153	8,305
Other music related products and services	4,948	4,036	3,340	2,496
iPhone and related products and services	25,179	13,033	6,742	630
iPad and related products and services	4,958	0	0	0
Peripherals and other hardware	1,814	1,475	1,694	1,303
Software, service and other sales	2,573	2,411	2,208	1,508
Total net sales	\$65,225	\$42,905	\$37,491	\$24,578

Panel C: Unit Sales by Product

(units in thousands)	2010	2009	2008	2007
Desktops	4,627	3,182	3,712	2,714
Portables	9,035	7,214	6,003	4,337
Total Mac unit sales	13,662	10,396	9,715	7,051
Net sales per Mac unit sold	\$1,279	\$1,333	\$1,478	\$1,466
iPod unit sales	50,312	54,132	54,828	51,630
Net sales per iPod unit sold	\$164	\$149	\$167	\$161
iPhone units sold	39,989	20,731	11,627	1,389
iPad units sold	7,458	0	0	0

Source: Apple Inc. 2008 Form 10-K, 2009 Form 10-K/A, and 2010 Form 10-K.

Using the information provided, address the following:

- Typically, products that are differentiated either through recognizable brand names, proprietary technology, unique styling, or some combination of these features can be sold at a higher price than commodity products.
 - In general, would the selling prices of differentiated products be more directly reflected in a company's operating profit margin or gross profit margin?
 - Does Apple's financial data (Panel A) reflect a successful differentiation strategy?
- How liquid is Apple at the end of fiscal 2009 and 2010? In general, what are some of the considerations that a company makes in managing its liquidity?
- Based on the product segment data for 2007 (Panels B and C), Apple's primary source of revenue was from sales of computers (the \$10,336 million in sales of Mac computers represented 42 percent of total net sales) and its secondary source of revenue was from iPods. How has the company's product mix changed since 2007, and what might this change suggest for an analyst examining Apple relative to its competitors?

Solution to 1:

- A** Sales of differentiated products at premium prices would generally be reflected more directly in the gross profit margin; such sales would have a higher gross profit margin, all else equal. The effect of premium pricing generally would also be reflected in a higher operating margin. Expenditures on advertising and/or research are required to support differentiation, however, which means that the effect of premium pricing on operating profit margins is often weaker than the effect on gross profit margins.
- B** Based on Apple's financial data in Panel A, the company appears to have successfully implemented a differentiation strategy, with gross margin increasing from 33 percent of sales to 40 percent of sales, as shown in the following table:

	2010		2009		2008		2007	
	\$ Millions	Percent of Sales	\$ Millions	Percent of Sales	\$ Millions	Percent of Sales	\$ Millions	Percent of Sales
Net sales	\$65,225	100%	\$42,905	100%	\$37,491	100%	\$24,578	100%
Cost of sales	39,541	61%	25,683	60%	24,294	65%	16,426	67%
Gross margin	\$25,684	39%	\$17,222	40%	\$13,197	35%	\$8,152	33%

In general, in addition to a successful differentiation strategy, higher gross margins can result from lower input costs and/or a change in sales mix to include more product types with high gross margins.

Solution to 2:

Apple was very liquid at the end of fiscal 2009 and 2010, with current ratios of, respectively, 2.7 (\$31,555/\$11,506) and 2.0 (= \$41,678/\$20,722). In addition, the company had 71.6 and 67.8 percent of total assets invested in cash and marketable securities at the end of, respectively, 2009 and 2010. In general, some of the considerations that a company makes in managing its liquidity include the following: (1) maintaining enough cash and other liquid assets to ensure that it can meet near-term operating expenditures and unexpected needs, (2) avoiding excessive amounts of cash because the return on cash assets is almost always less than the company's costs of capital to finance its assets, and (3) accumulating cash that will be used for acquisitions (sometimes referred to as a "war chest," which is illustrated in Exhibit 2). Apple may be accumulating a war chest, but an analyst might, given point 2 above, question the amount of cash and marketable securities on hand.

Solution to 3:

In 2009, the proportion of Apple's total sales from computers declined from 42 percent to 32 percent and the proportion of total sales from iPods declined from 34 percent to 19 percent. The biggest shift in product sales was the increase in iPhone sales from 3 percent in 2007, the year of the product's introduction, to 30 percent in 2009. In 2010, the proportion of Apple's total sales from computers and iPods continued to decline and the proportion from iPhones continued to increase. These proportions in 2010 were, respectively, 27 percent, 13 percent, and 39 percent of total sales. The iPad introduced in fiscal 2010 represented 8 percent of total sales that year. For an analyst examining Apple relative to its competitors, the relevant comparable companies clearly changed from 2007 to 2010. Recently, the company may be more appropriately compared not only

with other computer manufacturers but also with mobile phone manufacturers and companies developing competing software and systems for mobile internet devices. Apple's product innovation has reshaped the competitive landscape.

To illustrate the use of a war chest, Exhibit 2 provides descriptions of several companies' cash positions and potential uses of their funds. When a company has accumulated large amounts of cash, an analyst should consider the likely implications for a company's strategic actions (i.e., potential acquisitions) or financing decisions (e.g., share buybacks, dividends, or debt repayment).

Exhibit 2 War Chests

The expression "war chest" is sometimes used to refer to large cash balances that a company accumulates prior to making acquisitions. Some examples are shown here:

Apple Inc.

Apple closed 2009 with nearly \$40 billion in the bank, in the form of cash, short-term and long-term marketable securities. That "war chest," as one shareholder described it [during Apple's annual shareholder's meeting], has fueled speculation about what the company might do with the funds. Options could include large acquisitions or returning cash to shareholders in the form of a buyback or dividend.

Dan Gallagher, *MarketWatch*, 25 February 2010.

McLeod Russel India Ltd.

McLeod Russel India Ltd., the world's biggest tea grower, plans to use rising prices to build a "war chest" of as much as \$250 million to acquire companies. . . . The plantation company, based in Kolkata, may buy tea companies in India and Africa as it targets a 50 percent increase in production to 150 million kilograms in three to four years, said Aditya Khaitan, managing director of McLeod Russel.

Arijit Ghosh and Thomas Kutty Abraham, *Bloomberg*, 14 May 2010.

In calculating and interpreting financial statement ratios, an analyst needs to be aware of the potential impact on the financial statements and related ratios of companies reporting under different accounting standards, such as international financial reporting standards (IFRS), US generally accepted accounting principles (US GAAP), or other home-country GAAP. Furthermore, even within a given set of accounting standards, companies still have discretion to choose among acceptable methods. A company also may make different assumptions and estimates even when applying the same method as another company. Therefore, making selected adjustments to a company's financial statement data may be useful to facilitate comparisons with other companies or with the industry overall. Examples of such analyst adjustments will be discussed in Section 6.

Non-US companies that use any acceptable body of accounting standards (other than IFRS or US GAAP) and file with the US SEC (because their shares or depositary receipts based on their shares trade in the United States) are required to reconcile their net income and shareholders' equity accounts to US GAAP. Note that in 2007, the SEC eliminated the reconciliation requirement for non-US companies using IFRS and

filing with the SEC. Example 2 uses reconciliation data from SEC filings to illustrate how differences in accounting standards can affect financial ratio comparisons. The differences in the example are very large.

EXAMPLE 2

The Effect of Differences in Accounting Standards on ROE Comparisons

In the process of comparing the 2009 performance of three telecommunication companies—Teléfonos de México, S.A.B. DE C.V. (TMX), Tele Norte Leste Participações S.A. (TNE), and Verizon Communications Inc. (VZ)—an analyst prepared Exhibit 3 to evaluate whether the differences in accounting standards affect the comparison of the three companies' return on equity (ROE). Panel A presents selected data for TMX for 2008 and 2009 under Mexican GAAP and US GAAP. Panel B presents data for TNE under Brazilian GAAP and US GAAP. Panel C presents data for VZ under US GAAP.

Exhibit 3 Data for TMX, TNE, and VZ for a ROE Calculation (years ended 31 December)

Panel A: Selected Data for Teléfonos de México (TMX)

(in millions of Mexican pesos)	2009	2008
<i>Mexican GAAP</i>		
Net income	20,469	20,177
Shareholders' equity	38,321	39,371
<i>US GAAP</i>		
Net income	19,818	19,782
Shareholders' equity	7,465	11,309

Panel B: Selected Data for Tele Norte Leste Participações S.A. (TNE)

(in millions of Brazilian reais ^a)	2009	2008
<i>Brazilian GAAP</i>		
Net income	(1,056)	1,432
Shareholders' equity	15,352	11,411
<i>US GAAP</i>		
Net income	4,866	1,252
Shareholders' equity	21,967	11,203

Panel C: Selected Data for Verizon Communications Inc.

(in millions of US dollars)	2009	2008
<i>US GAAP</i>		
Net income	10,358	12,583
Shareholders' equity	84,367	78,905

^a "Reais" is the plural of "real."

Sources: TMX's and TNE's 2009 Form 20-F; VZ's 2009 10-K.

Based on TMX's reconciliation note, the most significant adjustment for TMX between Mexican GAAP and US GAAP was an adjustment to shareholders' equity for "Labor obligations (SFAS 158)." The US accounting standard SFAS 158, *Employers' Accounting for Defined Benefit Pension and Other Postretirement Plans*, now codified as Accounting Standards Codification (ASC) 715 (i.e., Expenses: Compensation—Retirement Benefits) requires companies to reflect on their balance sheets the funded status of pensions and other post-employment benefits. (Funded status equals plan assets minus plan obligations.) For an underfunded plan—i.e., one in which assets that are held in trust to pay for the obligation are less than the amount of the obligation—the amount of underfunding is shown as a liability and as a reduction to shareholders' equity. [The full reconciliation between shareholders' equity under Mexican FRS and US GAAP (not presented here) shows that the adjustment related to SFAS 158 reduced equity at TMX by 50,028 million pesos and 46,637 million pesos in 2009 and 2008, respectively.]

Based on TNE's reconciliation note, the most significant adjustment for TNE between Brazilian GAAP and US GAAP was an increase to net income to recognize a "bargain purchase gain on business combination." A bargain purchase gain under US GAAP results when the purchase price of an acquisition is less than the fair value (as of the acquisition date) of the net identified assets acquired. The adjustment for the bargain purchase gain represented an increase of 6,591 million Brazilian reais to net income as reported under Brazilian GAAP.

Does the difference in accounting standards affect the ROE comparison?

Solution:

When ROE is compared under different standards, both of the non-US companies report significantly higher ROE under US GAAP than under home-country GAAP (Mexican GAAP for TMX and Brazilian GAAP for TNE).

When ROE is compared across companies, TMX's ROE is higher than that of both of the other two companies regardless of whether the comparison is based on home-country amounts or US GAAP amounts. For TNE, however, the company reported a loss and thus a negative ROE under home-country (Brazilian) GAAP but a profit under US GAAP. The ROE for TNE is lower than VZ's ROE when calculations are based on home-country GAAP but higher than VZ's ROE when calculations are based on US GAAP.

Results of the calculations are summarized in the following table, with the calculations based on TMX's Mexican GAAP explained after the table:

Panel A: Teléfonos de México (TMX)

Mexican GAAP

Return on average shareholders' equity	52.69%
--	--------

US GAAP

Return on average shareholders' equity	211.12%
--	---------

Panel B: Tele Norte Leste Participações S.A. (TNE)

Brazilian GAAP

Return on average shareholders' equity	-7.89%
--	--------

US GAAP

Return on average shareholders' equity	29.34%
--	--------

Panel C: Verizon Communications Inc. (VZ)

US GAAP

Return on average shareholders' equity	12.69%
--	--------

For an illustration of the ROE calculation, we have calculated TMX's ROE (with all numbers in thousands of Mexican pesos) as $20,468,983 / [(38,320,773 + 39,371,099) / 2] = 52.69\%$. Note that TMX's significantly higher ROE under US GAAP is the result of a much lower shareholders' equity under US GAAP than under Mexican GAAP.

In Example 2, the 2009 ROE for both TMX and TNE differed substantially under home-country GAAP and US GAAP. In general, because the reconciliation data are no longer required by the SEC, we cannot determine whether differences in net income, equity, and thus ROE also exist between IFRS and the companies' home-country GAAP (including US GAAP). Historically, research indicates that for most non-US companies filing with the SEC, differences in net income between US GAAP and home-country GAAP average 1–2 percent of market value of equity, but large variations do occur.² Additionally, research indicates that for most non-US companies filing with the SEC, ROE was historically higher under IFRS than under US GAAP.³

Comparison of the levels and trends in a company's performance provide information about *how* the company performed. The company's management presents its view about causes underlying its performance in the management commentary or management discussion and analysis (MD&A) section of its annual report and during periodic conference calls with analysts and investors. To gain additional understanding of the causes underlying a company's performance, an analyst can review industry information or seek information from additional sources, such as consumer surveys.

The results of an analysis of past performance provide a basis for reaching conclusions and making recommendations. For example, an analysis undertaken as the basis for a forward-looking study might conclude that a company's future performance is or is not likely to reflect continuation of recent historical trends. As another example, an analysis to support a market-based valuation of a company might focus on whether the company's profitability and growth outlook, which is better (worse) than the peer group median, justifies its relatively high (low) valuation. This analysis would consider market multiples, such as price-to-earnings ratio (P/E), price-to-book ratio, and total invested capital to EBITDA (earnings before interest, taxes, depreciation, and amortization).⁴ As another example, an analysis undertaken as part of an evaluation of the management of two companies might result in conclusions about whether one company has grown as fast as another company, or as fast as the industry overall, and whether each company has maintained profitability while growing.

² Pownall and Schipper (1999).

³ In a study of European companies' reconciliations in the last year that reconciliations were required by the SEC, Henry, Lin, and Yang (2009) found that most of the companies reported IFRS net income higher than US GAAP net income and reported IFRS shareholders' equity lower than US GAAP shareholders' equity. The result was that 28 percent of the sample companies' 2006 ROE under IFRS was more than 5 percentage points higher than under US GAAP whereas fewer than 10 percent of the sample report ROE more than 5 percentage points lower.

⁴ **Total invested capital** is the sum of market value of common equity, book value of preferred equity, and face value of debt.

APPLICATION: PROJECTING FUTURE FINANCIAL PERFORMANCE

3

Projections of future financial performance are used in determining the value of a company or its equity component. Projections of future financial performance are also used in credit analysis—particularly in project finance or acquisition finance—to determine whether a company’s cash flows will be adequate to pay the interest and principal on its debt and to evaluate whether a company will likely remain in compliance with its financial covenants.

Sources of data for analysts’ projections include some or all of the following: the company’s projections, the company’s previous financial statements, industry structure and outlook, and macroeconomic forecasts.

Evaluating a company’s past performance may provide a basis for forward-looking analyses. An evaluation of a company’s business and economic environment and its history may persuade the analyst that historical information constitutes a valid basis for such analyses and that the analyst’s projections may be based on the continuance of past trends, perhaps with some adjustments. Alternatively, in the case of a major acquisition or divestiture, for a start-up company, or for a company operating in a volatile industry, past performance may be less relevant to future performance.

Projections of a company’s near-term performance may be used as an input to market-based valuation or relative valuation (i.e., valuation based on price multiples). Such projections may involve projecting next year’s sales and using the common-size income statement to project major expense items or particular margins on sales (e.g., gross profit margin or operating profit margin). These calculations will then lead to the development of an income measure for a valuation calculation, such as net income, earnings per share (EPS) or EBITDA. More complex projections of a company’s future performance involve developing a more detailed analysis of the components of performance for multiple periods—for example, projections of sales and gross margin by product line, projection of operating expenses based on historical patterns, and projection of interest expense based on requisite debt funding, interest rates, and applicable taxes. Furthermore, a projection should include sensitivity analyses applied to the major assumptions.

3.1 Projecting Performance: An Input to Market-Based Valuation

One application of financial statement analysis involves projecting a company’s near-term performance as an input to market-based valuation. For example, an analyst might project a company’s sales and profit margin to estimate EPS and then apply a projected P/E to establish a target price for the company’s stock.

Analysts often take a top-down approach to projecting a company’s sales.⁵ First, industry sales are projected on the basis of their historical relationship with some macroeconomic indicator, such as growth in real gross domestic product (GDP). In researching the automobile industry, for example, the analyst may find that the industry’s annual domestic unit car sales (number of cars sold in domestic markets) bears a relationship to annual changes in real GDP. Regression analysis is often used to establish the parameters of such relationships. Other factors in projecting sales may include consumer income or tastes, technological developments, and the availability of substitute products or services. After industry sales are projected, a company’s

⁵ The discussion in this paragraph is indebted to Benninga and Sarig (1997).

market share is projected. Company-level market share projections may be based on historical market share and a forward-looking assessment of the company's competitive position. The company's sales are then estimated as its projected market share multiplied by projected total industry sales.

After developing a sales forecast for a company, an analyst can choose among various methods for forecasting income and cash flow. An analyst must decide on the level of detail to consider in developing forecasts. For example, separate forecasts may be made for individual expense items or for more aggregated expense items, such as total operating expenses. Rather than stating a forecast in terms of expenses, the forecast might be stated in terms of a forecasted profit margin (gross, operating, or net). The net profit margin, in contrast to the gross or operating profit margins, is affected by financial leverage and tax rates, which are subject to managerial and legal/regulatory revisions; therefore, historical data may sometimes be more relevant for projecting gross or operating profit margins than for projecting net profit margins. Whatever the margin used, the forecasted amount of profit for a given period is the product of the forecasted amount of sales and the forecast of the selected profit margin.

As Example 3 illustrates, for relatively mature companies operating in non-volatile product markets, historical information on operating profit margins can provide a useful starting point for forecasting future operating profits (at least over short forecasting horizons). Historical operating profit margins are typically less reliable for projecting future margins for a new or relatively volatile business or one with significant fixed costs (which can magnify the volatility of operating margins).

EXAMPLE 3

Using Historical Operating Profit Margins to Forecast Operating Profit

One approach to projecting operating profit is to determine a company's average operating profit margin over the previous several years and apply that margin to a forecast of the company's sales. Use the following information on three companies to answer Questions 1 and 2 below:

- Johnson & Johnson (JNJ). This US health care conglomerate, founded in 1887, had 2009 sales of around \$61.9 billion from its three main businesses: pharmaceuticals, medical devices and diagnostics, and consumer products.
- BHP Billiton (BHP). This company, with group headquarters in Australia and secondary headquarters in London, is the world's largest natural resources company, reporting revenue of approximately US\$50.2 billion for the fiscal year ended June 2009. The company mines, processes, and markets coal, copper, nickel, iron, bauxite, and silver and also has substantial petroleum operations.
- Baidu. This Chinese company, which was established in 2000 and went public on NASDAQ in 2005, is the leading Chinese language search engine. The company's revenues for 2009 were 4.4 billion renminbi (RMB), an increase of 40 percent from 2008 and more than 14 times greater than revenues in 2005.

- 1 For each of the three companies, state and justify whether the suggested forecasting method (applying the average operating profit over the previous several years to a forecast of sales) would be a reasonable starting point for projecting future operating profit.

2 Assume that the 2009 forecast of sales was perfect and, therefore, equal to the realized sales by the company in 2009. Compare the forecast of 2009 operating profit, using an average of the previous four years' operating profit margins, with the actual 2009 operating profit reported by the company given the following additional information:

- JNJ: For the four years prior to 2009, JNJ's average operating profit margin was approximately 25.0 percent. The company's actual operating profit for 2009 was \$15.6 billion.
- BHP: For the four years prior to the year ending June 2009, BHP's average operating profit margin was approximately 38.5 percent. The company's actual operating profit for the year ended June 2009 was US\$12.2 billion.
- Baidu: Over the four years prior to 2009, Baidu's average operating profit margin was approximately 27.1 percent. The company's actual operating profit for 2009 was RMB1.6 billion.

Using the additional information given, state and justify whether actual results support the usefulness of the stable operating margin assumption.

Solution to 1:

JNJ. Because JNJ is an established company with diversified operations in relatively stable businesses, the suggested approach to projecting the company's operating profit would be a reasonable starting point.

BHP. Because commodity prices tend to be volatile and the mining industry is relatively capital intensive, the suggested approach to projecting BHP's operating profit would probably not be a useful starting point.

Baidu. A relatively new company such as Baidu has limited operating history on which to judge stability of margins. The company appears to have been in a period of rapid growth and is in an industry that has been changing rapidly in recent years. This important aspect about the company suggests that the broad approach to projecting operating profit would not be a useful starting point for Baidu.

Solution to 2:

JNJ. JNJ's actual operating profit margin for 2009 was 25.2 percent (\$15.6 billion divided by sales of \$61.9 billion), which is very close to the company's three-year average operating profit margin of approximately 25.0 percent. If the average operating profit margin had been applied to perfectly forecasted 2009 sales to obtain forecasted operating profit, the forecasting error would have been minimal.

BHP. BHP's actual operating profit margin for the year ended June 2009 was 24.3 percent (\$12.2 billion divided by sales of \$50.2 billion). If the company's average profit margin of 38.5 percent had been applied to perfectly forecasted sales, the forecasted operating profit would have been approximately US\$19.3 billion, around 58 percent higher than actual operating profit.

Baidu. Baidu's actual operating profit margin for 2009 was 36.4 percent (RMB1.6 billion divided by sales of RMB4.4 billion). If the average profit margin of 27.1 percent had been applied to perfectly forecasted sales, the forecasted operating profit would have been approximately RMB1.2 billion, or around 25 percent below Baidu's actual operating profit.

Although prior years' profit margins can provide a useful starting point in projections for companies with relatively stable business, the underlying data should, nonetheless, be examined to identify items that are not likely to occur again in the following year(s). Such non-recurring (i.e., transitory) items should be removed from computations of any profit amount or profit margin that will be used in projections. Example 4 illustrates this principle.

EXAMPLE 4

Issues in Forecasting

Following are excerpts from the annual reports of two global companies. Indicate the relevance of each disclosure in forecasting the company's future net income. (Business descriptions are from the companies' websites.)

- 1 Anheuser-Busch InBev SA/NV, the world's largest brewing company by volume, with brands such as Budweiser, Stella Artois, and Beck's, disclosed the following items, which are primarily related to its acquisition of Anheuser-Busch.

1.1 "The 2009 restructuring charges of (153)m US dollar primarily relate to the Anheuser-Busch integration, organizational alignments and outsourcing activities in the global headquarters, Western Europe and Asia Pacific. These changes aim to eliminate overlap or duplicated processes and activities across functions and zones. These one time expenses as a result of the series of decisions will provide the company with a lower cost base besides a stronger focus on AB InBev's core activities, quicker decision-making and improvements to efficiency, service and quality..."

1.2 "2009 business and asset disposals resulted in an exceptional income of 1,541m US dollar mainly representing the sale of assets of InBev USA LLC (also doing business under the name Labatt USA) to an affiliate of KPS Capital Partners, L.P. (54m US dollar), the sale of the Korean subsidiary Oriental Brewery to an affiliate of Kohlberg Kravis Roberts & Co. L.P. (428m US dollar) and the sale of the Central European operations to CVC Capital Partners (1,088m US dollar)..."

Source: 2009 Annual Report, note 8.

- 2 Nestlé Group, the largest food and beverages manufacturer in the world, disclosed the following information about the sale of its holding in the eye care company Alcon Inc.

2.1 "The most significant divestment was announced on 4 January 2010, with the agreement to sell our remaining holding in Alcon, for about USD 28 billion. The completion of this transaction will bring the total value realised from the three-part disposal of Alcon to over USD 40 billion. Alcon was acquired by Nestlé in 1977 for USD 280 million."

Source: 2009 Annual Report, Shareholder Letter, p. 4.

2.2 "On 7 July 2008, the Group sold 24.8% of Alcon outstanding capital to Novartis for a total amount of USD 10.4 billion, resulting in a profit on disposal of CHF 9208 million and in an increase of non-controlling interests of CHF 1537 million. The agreement further included the option for Novartis to acquire Nestlé's remaining shareholding in Alcon at a price of USD 181.– per share from January 2010

until July 2011. During the same period, Nestlé had the option to sell its remaining shareholding in Alcon to Novartis at the lower of either the call price of USD 181.– per share or the average share price during the week preceding the exercise plus a premium of 20.5%. On 4 January 2010, Novartis exercised its call option to acquire the remaining 52% shareholding from Nestlé at a price of USD 181.– per share. The transaction is now pending regulatory approval which can be expected during the course of 2010. As IFRS 5 criteria were met on 31 December 2009, Alcon's related assets and liabilities are classified as a disposal group in Assets held for sale and Liabilities directly associated with assets held for sale. Moreover, Alcon operations are disclosed as discontinued operations in the 2009 Consolidated Financial Statements. The results of Alcon discontinued operations are disclosed separately in the income statement."

Source: 2009 Financial Statements, note 25

2.3 Excerpt from Nestlé's consolidated income statement for the year ended 31 December 2009:

	(CHF millions)	
	2009	2008
Sales		
Continuing operations	100,579	103,086
Discontinued operations	7,039	6,822
Total	<u>107,618</u>	<u>109,908</u>
EBIT (earnings before interest, taxes, restructuring and impairments)		
Continuing operations	13,222	13,240
Discontinued operations	2,477	2,436
Total	<u>15,699</u>	<u>15,676</u>
Profit for the year		
Continuing operations	9,551	7,656
Discontinued operations	2,242	11,395
Total	<u>11,793</u>	<u>19,051</u>

Source: 2009 Financial Statements.

Discussion of 1.1

This item relates to one-time restructuring charges aimed at eliminating duplication between the pre-acquisition operations of the two companies (InBev and Anheuser-Busch). The restructuring charges themselves are not directly relevant in forecasting the future net income of the company. If the restructuring successfully reduced the company's cost base, however, the combined companies' expenses in the future are likely to be less than the sum of the two individual companies' expenses. Also, if the cost base was successfully reduced, the profit

margin for the combined company is likely to be higher than a profit margin calculated as the sum of the individual companies' profits divided by the sum of the individual companies' sales revenues.

Discussion of 1.2

Gains on sales of businesses and assets that result in exceptional income are not a core part of a company's business. This item should typically not be viewed as an ongoing source of earnings and should not, therefore, be a component of forecasts of net income. Additionally, any portion of the company's past income that had been generated by the businesses sold should be excluded from forecasted net income.

Discussion of 2.1

These disclosures pertain to Nestlé's total USD40 billion return on the USD280 million investment in Alcon over 33 years (between 1977 and 2010). The information is not directly relevant to forecasting future net income. Although forecasts of net income must exclude the income from the divested business, information about the amount of that income is disclosed elsewhere.

Discussion of 2.2

Gains on sales of businesses and assets that result in exceptional income are not a core part of a company's business, so neither the CHF9,208 million gain in 2008 nor any further gains on the transaction should be included in ongoing, long-term forecasts. An analyst can, however, use the disclosed information about the sale price and information about the net book value of the investment to estimate the gain that will be reported in 2010 net income. In addition, results of discontinued items should not be included when assessing past performance or when forecasting future net income. As noted, the results of the discontinued items are shown separately on the income statement, as shown in excerpt 2.3.

Discussion of 2.3

Results of discontinued items should not be included when assessing past performance or when forecasting future net income. For example, the company's EBIT margin (EBIT/sales) for continuing operations for 2009 of 13 percent should be included in an analysis (not the 15 percent for the combined continuing and discontinued operations).

In general, when earnings projections are used as a foundation for market-based valuations, an analyst will make appropriate allowance for transitory components of past earnings.

3.2 Projecting Multiple-Period Performance

Projections of future financial performance over multiple periods are needed in valuation models that estimate the value of a company or its equity by discounting future cash flows. The value of a company or its equity developed in this way can then be compared with its current market price as a basis for investment decisions.

Projections of future performance are also used for credit analysis. These projections are important in assessing a borrower's ability to repay interest and principal of debt obligations. Investment recommendations depend on the needs and objectives of the client and on an evaluation of the risk of the investment relative to its expected return—both of which are a function of the terms of the debt obligation itself as well as financial market conditions. Terms of the debt obligation include amount, interest rate, maturity, financial covenants, and collateral.

Example 5 presents an elementary illustration of net income and cash flow forecasting to illustrate a format for analysis and some basic principles. In Example 5, assumptions are shown first; then, the period-by-period abbreviated financial statement resulting from the assumptions is shown.

Depending on the use of the forecast, an analyst may choose to compute further, more specific cash flow metrics. For example, free cash flow to equity, which is used in discounted cash flow approaches to equity valuation, can be estimated as net income adjusted for noncash items, minus investment in net working capital and in net fixed assets, plus net borrowing.

EXAMPLE 5**Basic Example of Financial Forecasting**

Assume a company is formed with \$100 of equity capital, all of which is immediately invested in working capital. Assumptions are as follows:

Dividends	Non-dividend-paying
First-year sales	\$100
Sales growth	10% per year
Cost of goods sold/Sales	20%
Operating expense/Sales	70%
Interest income rate	5%
Tax rate	30%
Working capital as percent of sales	90%

Based on this information, forecast the company's net income and cash flow for five years.

Solution:

Exhibit 4 shows the net income forecasts in Line 7 and cash flow forecasts ("Change in cash") in Line 18.

Exhibit 4 Basic Financial Forecasting

	Time Period					
	0	1	2	3	4	5
(1) Sales		100.0	110.0	121.0	133.1	146.4
(2) Cost of goods sold		(20.0)	(22.0)	(24.2)	(26.6)	(29.3)
(3) Operating expenses		(70.0)	(77.0)	(84.7)	(93.2)	(102.5)
(4) Interest income		0.0	0.9	0.8	0.8	0.7
(5) Income before tax		10.0	11.9	12.9	14.1	15.3
(6) Taxes		(3.0)	(3.6)	(3.9)	(4.2)	(4.6)
(7) Net income		7.0	8.3	9.0	9.9	10.7
(8) Cash/Borrowing	0.0	17.0	16.3	15.4	14.4	13.1
(9) Working capital (non-cash)	100.0	90.0	99.0	108.9	119.8	131.8
(10) Total assets	100.0	107.0	115.3	124.3	134.2	144.9
(11) Liabilities	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0

(continued)

Exhibit 4 (Continued)

	Time Period					
	0	1	2	3	4	5
(12) Equity	100.0	107.0	115.3	124.3	134.2	144.9
(13) Total liabilities + Equity	100.0	107.0	115.3	124.3	134.2	144.9
(14) Net income		7.0	8.3	9.0	9.9	10.7
(15) Plus: Non-cash items		0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0
(16) Less: Investment in working capital		-10.0	9.0	9.9	10.9	12.0
(17) Less: Investment in fixed capital		0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0
(18) Change in cash		17.0	-0.7	-0.9	-1.0	-1.3
(19) Beginning cash		0.0	17.0	16.3	15.4	14.4
(20) Ending cash		17.0	16.3	15.4	14.4	13.1

Exhibit 4 indicates that at time 0, the company is formed with \$100 of equity capital (Line 12). All of the company's capital is assumed to be immediately invested in working capital (Line 9). In future periods, because it is assumed that no dividends are paid, book equity increases each year by the amount of net income (Line 14). Future periods' required working capital (Line 9) is assumed to be 90 percent of annual sales (Line 1). Sales are assumed to be \$100 in the first period and to grow at a constant rate of 10 percent per year (Line 1). The cost of goods sold is assumed to be constant at 20 percent of sales (Line 2), so the gross profit margin is 80 percent. Operating expenses are assumed to be 70 percent of sales each year (Line 3). Interest income (Line 4) is calculated as 5 percent of the beginning balance of cash/borrowing or the ending balance of the previous period (Line 8) and is an income item when there is a cash balance, as in this example. (If available cash is inadequate to cover required cash outflows, the shortfall is presumed to be covered by borrowing. This borrowing would be shown as a negative balance on Line 8 and an associated interest expense on Line 4. Alternatively, a forecast can be presented with separate lines for cash and borrowing.) Taxes of 30 percent are deducted to obtain net income (Line 7).

To calculate each period's cash flow, begin with net income (Line 7 = Line 14), add back any noncash items, such as depreciation (Line 15), deduct investment in working capital in the period or change in working capital over the period (Line 16), and deduct investment in fixed capital in the period (Line 17).⁶ In this simple example, we are assuming that the company does not invest in any fixed capital (long-term assets) but, rather, rents furnished office space. Therefore, there is no depreciation and noncash items are zero. Each period's change in cash (Line 18) is added to the beginning cash balance (Line 19) to obtain the ending cash balance (Line 20 = Line 8).

⁶ Working capital represents funds that must be invested in the daily operations of a business to, for example, carry inventory and accounts receivable. The term "investment" in this context means "addition to" or "increase in." The "investment in fixed capital" is also referred to as "capital expenditure" ("capex").

Example 5 is simplified to demonstrate some principles of forecasting. In practice, each aspect of a forecast presents a range of challenges. Sales forecasts may be very detailed, with separate forecasts for each year of each product line, each geographical, and/or each business segment. Sales forecasts may be based on past results (for relatively stable businesses), management forecasts, industry studies, and/or macro-economic forecasts. Similarly, gross profit margins may be based on past results or forecasted relationships and may be detailed. Expenses other than cost of goods sold may be broken down into more detailed line items, each of which may be forecasted on the basis of its relationship with sales (if variable) or on the basis of its historical levels. Working capital requirements may be estimated as a proportion of the amount of sales (as in Example 5) or the change in sales or as a compilation of specific forecasts for inventory, receivables, and payables. Most forecasts will involve some investment in fixed assets, in which case, depreciation amounts affect taxable income and net income but not cash flow. Example 5 makes the simplifying assumption that interest is paid on the beginning-of-year cash balance.

Example 5 develops a series of point estimates for future net income and cash flow. In practice, forecasting generally includes an analysis of the risk in forecasts—in this case, an assessment of the impact on income and cash flow if the realized values of variables differ significantly from the assumptions used in the base case or if actual sales are much different from forecasts. Quantifying the risk in forecasts requires an analysis of the economics of the company's businesses and expense structure and the potential impact of events affecting the company, the industry, and the economy in general. When that investigation is completed, the analyst can use scenario analysis or Monte Carlo simulation to assess risk. Scenario analysis involves specifying assumptions that differ from those used as the base-case assumptions. In Example 5, the projections of net income and cash flow could be recast in a more pessimistic scenario, with assumptions changed to reflect slower sales growth and higher costs. A Monte Carlo simulation involves specifying probability distributions of values for variables and random sampling from those distributions. In the analysis in Example 5, the projections would be repeatedly recast with the selected values for the drivers of net income and cash flow, thus permitting the analyst to evaluate a range of possible results and the probability of simulating the possible actual outcomes.

An understanding of financial statements and ratios can enable an analyst to make more detailed projections of income statement, balance sheet, and cash flow statement items. For example, an analyst may collect information on normal inventory and receivables turnover and use this information to forecast accounts receivable, inventory, and cash flows based on sales projections rather than use a composite working capital investment assumption, as in Example 5.

As the analyst makes detailed forecasts, he or she must ensure that the forecasts are consistent with each other. For instance, in Example 6, the analyst's forecast concerning days of sales outstanding (which is an estimate of the average time to collect payment from sales made on credit) should flow from a model of the company that yields a forecast of the change in the average accounts receivable balance. Otherwise, predicted days of sales outstanding and accounts receivable will not be mutually consistent.

EXAMPLE 6

Consistency of Forecasts

Brown Corporation had an average days-of-sales-outstanding (DSO) period of 19 days in 2009. An analyst thinks that Brown's DSO will decline in 2010 (because of expected improvements in the company's collections department) to match the industry average of 15 days. Total sales (all on credit) in 2009 were \$300 million,

and Brown expects total sales (all on credit) to increase to \$320 million in 2010. To achieve the lower DSO, the change in the average accounts receivable balance from 2009 to 2010 that must occur is *closest* to:

- A -\$3.51 million.
- B -\$2.46 million.
- C \$2.46 million.
- D \$3.51 million.

Solution:

B is correct. The first step is to calculate accounts receivable turnover from the DSO collection period. Receivable turnover equals $365/19$ (DSO) = 19.2 for 2009 and $365/15 = 24.3$ in 2010. Next, the analyst uses the fact that the average accounts receivable balance equals sales/receivable turnover to conclude that for 2009, average accounts receivable was $\$300,000,000/19.2 = \$15,625,000$ and for 2010, it must equal $\$320,000,000/24.3 = \$13,168,724$. The difference is a reduction in receivables of \$2,456,276.

The next section illustrates the application of financial statement analysis to credit risk analysis.

4

APPLICATION: ASSESSING CREDIT RISK

Credit risk is the risk of loss caused by a counterparty's or debtor's failure to make a promised payment. For example, credit risk with respect to a bond is the risk that the obligor (the issuer of the bond) will not be able to pay interest and/or principal according to the terms of the bond indenture (contract). **Credit analysis** is the evaluation of credit risk. Credit analysis may relate to the credit risk of an obligor in a particular transaction or to an obligor's overall creditworthiness.

In assessing an obligor's overall creditworthiness, one general approach is credit scoring, a statistical analysis of the determinants of credit default. Credit analysis for specific types of debt (e.g., acquisition financing and other highly leveraged financing) typically involves projections of period-by-period cash flows.

Whatever the techniques adopted, the analytical focus of credit analysis is on debt-paying ability. Unlike payments to equity investors, payments to debt investors are limited by the agreed contractual interest. If a company experiences financial success, its debt becomes less risky but its success does not increase the amount of payments to its debtholders. In contrast, if a company experiences financial distress, it may be unable to pay interest and principal on its debt obligations. Thus, credit analysis has a special concern with the sensitivity of debt-paying ability to adverse events and economic conditions—cases in which the creditor's promised returns may be most at risk. Because those returns are generally paid in cash, credit analysis usually focuses on cash flow rather than accrual income. Typically, credit analysts use return measures related to operating cash flow because it represents cash generated internally, which is available to pay creditors.

These themes are reflected in Example 7, which illustrates the application to an industry group of four groups of quantitative factors in credit analysis: (1) scale and diversification, (2) tolerance for leverage, (3) operational efficiency, and (4) margin stability.

“Scale and diversification” relate to a company’s sensitivity to adverse events, adverse economic conditions, and other factors—such as market leadership, purchasing power with suppliers, and access to capital markets—that may affect debt-paying ability.

Financial policies, or “tolerance for leverage,” relate to the obligor’s ability to service its indebtedness (i.e., make the promised payments on debt). In Example 7, various solvency ratios are used to measure tolerance for leverage. One set of tolerance-for-leverage measures is based on retained cash flow (RCF). RCF is defined by Moody’s Investors Service as operating cash flow before working capital changes less dividends. For example, under the assumption of no capital expenditures, a ratio of RCF to total debt of 0.5 indicates that the company may be able to pay off debt from cash flow retained in the business in approximately $1/0.5 = 2$ years (at current levels of RCF and debt); a ratio adjusting for capital expenditures is also used. Other factors include interest coverage ratios based on EBITDA, which are also chosen by Moody’s in specifying factors for operational efficiency and margin stability.

“Operational efficiency” as defined by Moody’s relates to cost structure: Companies with lower costs are better positioned to deal with financial stress.

“Margin stability” relates to the past volatility of profit margins: Higher stability should be associated with lower credit risk.

EXAMPLE 7

Moody’s Evaluation of Quantifiable Rating Factors for a Specific Industry⁷

Moody’s considers a number of items when assigning credit ratings for the global aerospace and defense industry, including quantitative measures of three broad factors: size and scale; business profile, revenue sustainability, and efficiency; and financial leverage and flexibility. A company’s ratings for each of these factors are weighted and aggregated in determining the overall credit rating assigned. The broad factors, the sub-factors, and weightings are as follows:

Broad Factor	Sub-factors	Sub-factor Weighting (%)	Broad Factor Weighting (%)
Size and scale	Total revenue	10	25
	Operating profit	15	
Business profile, revenue sustainability and efficiency	Expected business profile (e.g., prime contractor versus easily replaced small supplier)	10	25
	Revenue visibility (backlog/revenue)	5	
	Revenue protection (competitive factors; e.g., barriers to entry)	5	
	EBITA/Average assets	5	

(continued)

⁷ “Rating Methodology: Global Aerospace and Defense” (Moody’s, 2010), p. 21.

Broad Factor	Sub-factors	Sub-factor Weighting (%)	Broad Factor Weighting (%)
Financial leverage and flexibility	Debt/EBITDA	10	50
	Free cash flow/Net debt	10	
	Retained cash flow/Debt	10	
	Cash and marketable securities/ Debt	10	
	EBIT/Interest	10	
Total		100	100

- 1 What are some reasons why Moody's may have selected these three broad factors as being important in assigning a credit rating in the aerospace and defense industry?
- 2 Why might financial leverage and flexibility be weighted so heavily?

Solution to 1:

Size and scale:

- Larger size can strengthen negotiating position with customers and suppliers, leading to better contract terms and potential cost savings.
- Larger scale typically indicates prior success.
- Larger scale can enhance a company's ability to manage and react to variable market conditions.
- Larger scale often indicates greater geographical, product, and customer diversification.

Business profile, revenue sustainability, and efficiency:

- A business profile that provides some protection from competition, a sustainable flow of revenues as indicated by a strong order backlog, and better operating efficiency should contribute to higher and more sustainable cash flows.

Financial leverage and flexibility:

- Strong financial policies should increase the likelihood of cash flows being sufficient to service debt.

Solution to 2:

The level of debt relative to earnings and cash flow is a critical factor in assessing creditworthiness. The higher the current level of debt, the higher the risk of default.

A point to note regarding Example 7 is that the rating factors and the metrics used to represent each can vary by industry group. For example, for heavy manufacturing (manufacturing of the capital assets used in other manufacturing and production processes), Moody's distinguishes order trends and quality as distinctive credit factors affecting future revenues, factory load, and profitability patterns.

Analyses of a company's historical and projected financial statements are an integral part of the credit evaluation process. As noted by Moody's, financial statement information is an important source of information for the rating process:

Much of the information used in assessing performance for the sub-factors is found in or calculated using the company's financial statements; others are derived from observations or estimates by the analysts. . . . Moody's ratings are forward-looking and incorporate our expectations for future financial and operating performance. We use both historical and projected financial results in the rating process. Historical results help us understand patterns and trends for a company's performance as well as for peer comparison.⁸

As noted, Moody computes a variety of ratios in assessing creditworthiness. A comparison of a company's ratios with the ratios of its peers is informative in evaluating relative creditworthiness, as demonstrated in Example 8.

EXAMPLE 8

Peer Comparison of Ratios

A credit analyst is assessing the efficiency and leverage of two aerospace companies on the basis of certain sub-factors identified by Moody's. The analyst collects the information from the companies' annual reports and calculates the following ratios:⁹

	Bombardier Inc.	BAE Systems plc
EBITDA/Average assets	7.5%	10.1%
Debt/EBITDA	3.9	3.1
Retained cash flow to debt	6.1%	13.7%
Free cash flow to net debt	-7.0%	7.7%

Based solely on the data given, which company is more likely to be assigned a higher credit rating, and why?

Solution:

The ratio comparisons are all in favor of BAE Systems plc. BAE has a higher level of EBITDA in relation to average assets, higher retained cash flow relative to debt, and higher free cash flow to net debt. BAE also has a lower level of debt relative to EBITDA. Based on the data given, therefore, BAE is likely to be assigned a higher credit rating.

Before calculating ratios such as those presented in Example 8, rating agencies make certain adjustments to reported financial statements, such as adjusting debt to include off-balance-sheet debt in a company's total debt.¹⁰ We will describe in Section 6 some common adjustments.

Financial statement analysis, especially financial ratio analysis, can also be an important tool in selecting equity investments, as discussed in the next section.

⁸ Ibid., p. 7.

⁹ In calculating financial ratios (values not disclosed in the rating report), Moody's makes various adjustments to the financial data reported by companies in order to better reflect underlying obligations and/or to achieve greater comparability with other companies in the industry. The adjustments made in calculating ratios for this example do not necessarily correspond exactly to those calculated by Moody's.

¹⁰ Ibid., p. 6.

5

APPLICATION: SCREENING FOR POTENTIAL EQUITY INVESTMENTS

Ratios constructed from financial statement data and market data are often used to screen for potential equity investments. **Screening** is the application of a set of criteria to reduce a set of potential investments to a smaller set having certain desired characteristics. Criteria involving financial ratios generally involve comparing one or more ratios with some pre-specified target or cutoff values.

A security selection approach incorporating financial ratios may be applied whether the investor uses top-down analysis or bottom-up analysis. **Top-down analysis** involves identifying attractive geographical segments and/or industry segments, from which the investor chooses the most attractive investments. **Bottom-up analysis** involves selection of specific investments from all companies within a specified investment universe. Regardless of the direction, screening for potential equity investments aims to identify companies that meet specific criteria. An analysis of this type may be used as the basis for directly forming a portfolio, or it may be undertaken as a preliminary part of a more thorough analysis of potential investment targets.

Fundamental to this type of analysis are decisions about which metrics to use as screens, how many metrics to include, what values of those metrics to use as cutoff points, and what weighting to give each metric. Metrics may include not only financial ratios but also characteristics such as market capitalization or membership as a component security in a specified index. Exhibit 5 presents a hypothetical example of a simple stock screen based on the following criteria: a valuation ratio (P/E) less than a specified value, a solvency ratio measuring financial leverage (total debt/assets) not exceeding a specified value, positive net income, and dividend yield (dividends per share divided by price per share) greater than a specified value. Exhibit 5 shows the results of applying the screen in August 2010 to a set of 5,187 US companies with market capitalization greater than \$100 million, which compose a hypothetical equity manager's investment universe.

Exhibit 5 Example of a Stock Screen

Criterion	Stocks Meeting Criterion	
	Number	Percent of Total
P/E <15	1,471	28.36%
Total debt/Assets ≤ 0.5	880	16.97%
Net income/Sales > 0	2,907	56.04%
Dividend yield > 0.5%	1,571	30.29%
Meeting all four criteria simultaneously	101	1.95%

Source for data: <http://google.com/finance/>.

Several points about the screen in Exhibit 5 are consistent with many screens used in practice:

- Some criteria serve as checks on the results from applying other criteria. In this hypothetical example, the first criterion selects stocks that appear relatively cheaply valued. The stocks might be cheap for a good reason, however, such as poor profitability or excessive financial leverage. So, the requirement for net income to be positive serves as a check on profitability, and the limitation on

financial leverage serves as a check on financial risk. Of course, financial ratios or other statistics cannot generally control for exposure to certain other types of risk (e.g., risk related to regulatory developments or technological innovation).

- If all the criteria were completely independent of each other, the set of stocks meeting all four criteria would be 42, equal to 5,187 times 0.82 percent—the product of the fraction of stocks satisfying the four criteria individually (i.e., $0.2836 \times 0.1697 \times 0.5604 \times 0.3029 = 0.0082$, or 0.82 percent). As the screen illustrates, criteria are often not independent, and the result is that more securities pass the screening than if criteria were independent. In this example, 101 (or 1.95 percent) of the securities pass all four screens simultaneously. For an example of the lack of independence, we note that dividend-paying status is probably positively correlated with the ability to generate positive earnings and the value of the third criterion. If stocks that pass one test tend to also pass another, few are eliminated after the application of the second test.
- The results of screens can sometimes be relatively concentrated in a subset of the sectors represented in the benchmark. The financial leverage criterion in Exhibit 5 would exclude banking stocks, for example. What constitutes a high or low value of a measure of a financial characteristic can be sensitive to the industry in which a company operates.

Screens can be used by both **growth investors** (focused on investing in high-earnings-growth companies), **value investors** (focused on paying a relatively low share price in relation to earnings or assets per share), and **market-oriented investors** (an intermediate grouping of investors whose investment disciplines cannot be clearly categorized as value or growth). Growth screens would typically feature criteria related to earnings growth and/or momentum. Value screens, as a rule, feature criteria setting upper limits for the value of one or more valuation ratios. Market-oriented screens would not strongly emphasize valuation or growth criteria. The use of screens involving financial ratios may be most common among value investors.

Many studies have assessed the most effective items of accounting information for screening equity investments. Some research suggests that certain items of accounting information can help explain (and potentially predict) market returns (e.g., Chan et al. 1991; Lev and Thiagarajan 1993; Lakonishok et al. 1994; Davis 1994; Abarbanell and Bushee 1998). Representative of such investigations is Piotroski (2000), whose screen uses nine accounting-based fundamentals that aim to identify financially strong and profitable companies among those with high book value/market value ratios. For example, the profitability measures relate to whether the company reported positive net income, positive cash flow, and an increase in return on assets (ROA).

An analyst may want to evaluate how a portfolio based on a particular screen would have performed historically. For this purpose, the analyst uses a process known as “back-testing.” **Back-testing** applies the portfolio selection rules to historical data and calculates what returns would have been earned if a particular strategy had been used. The relevance of back-testing to investment success in practice, however, may be limited. Haugen and Baker (1996) described some of these limitations:

- Survivorship bias: If the database used in back-testing eliminates companies that cease to exist because of a bankruptcy or merger, then the remaining companies collectively will appear to have performed better.

- Look-ahead bias: If a database includes financial data updated for restatements (where companies have restated previously issued financial statements to correct errors or reflect changes in accounting principles),¹¹ then there is a mismatch between what investors would have actually known at the time of the investment decision and the information used in the back-testing.
- Data-snooping bias: If researchers build a model on the basis of previous researchers' findings, then use the same database to test that model, they are not actually testing the model's predictive ability. When each step is backward looking, the same rules may or may not produce similar results in the future. The predictive ability of the model's rules can validly be tested only by using future data. One academic study has argued that the apparent ability of value strategies to generate excess returns is largely explainable as the result of collective data snooping (Conrad, Cooper, and Kaul, 2003).

EXAMPLE 9

Ratio-Based Screening for Potential Equity Investments

Below are two alternative strategies under consideration by an investment firm:

Strategy A: Invest in stocks that are components of a global equity index, have a ROE above the median ROE of all stocks in the index, and have a P/E less than the median P/E.

Strategy B: Invest in stocks that are components of a broad-based US equity index, have a ratio of price to operating cash flow in the lowest quartile of companies in the index, and have shown increases in sales for at least the past three years.

Both strategies were developed with the use of back-testing.

- 1 How would you characterize the two strategies?
- 2 What concerns might you have about using such strategies?

Solution to 1:

Strategy A appears to aim for global diversification and combines a requirement for high relative profitability with a traditional measure of value (low P/E). Strategy B focuses on both large and small companies in a single market and apparently aims to identify companies that are growing and have a lower price multiple based on cash flow from operations.

Solution to 2:

The use of *any* approach to investment decisions depends on the objectives and risk profile of the investor. With that crucial consideration in mind, we note that ratio-based benchmarks may be an efficient way to screen for potential equity investments. In screening, however, many questions arise.

First, unintentional selections can be made if criteria are not specified carefully. For example, Strategy A might unintentionally select a loss-making company with negative shareholders' equity because negative net income divided by negative shareholders' equity arithmetically results in a positive ROE. Strategy B might unintentionally select a company with negative operating cash flow

¹¹ The US Government Accounting Office (2002) reported 919 restatements by 834 public companies from January 1997 to June 2002. The *Wall Street Journal* has reported that the number of restatements increased from 613 in 2004 to 1,195 in 2005 (*Wall Street Journal*, 2006).

because price to operating cash flow will be negative and thus very low in the ranking. In both cases, the analyst can add additional screening criteria to avoid unintentional selections; these additional criteria could include requiring positive shareholders' equity in Strategy A and requiring positive operating cash flow in Strategy B.

Second, the inputs to ratio analysis are derived from financial statements, and companies may differ in the financial standards they apply (e.g., IFRS versus US GAAP), the specific accounting method(s) they choose within those allowed by the reporting standards, and/or the estimates made in applying an accounting method.

Third, back-testing may not provide a reliable indication of future performance because of survivorship bias, look-ahead bias, or data-snooping bias. Also, as suggested by finance theory and by common sense, the past is not necessarily indicative of the future.

Fourth, implementation decisions can dramatically affect returns. For example, decisions about frequency and timing of portfolio re-evaluation and changes affect transaction costs and taxes paid out of the portfolio.

ANALYST ADJUSTMENTS TO REPORTED FINANCIALS

6

When comparing companies that use different accounting methods or estimate key accounting inputs in different ways, analysts frequently adjust a company's financials. In this section, we first provide a framework for considering potential analyst adjustments to facilitate such comparisons and then provide examples of such adjustments. In practice, required adjustments vary widely. The examples presented here are not intended to be comprehensive but, rather, to illustrate the use of adjustments to facilitate a meaningful comparison.

6.1 A Framework for Analyst Adjustments

In this discussion of potential analyst adjustments to a company's financial statements, we use a framework focused on the *balance sheet*. Because the financial statements are interrelated, however, adjustments to items reported on one statement may also be reflected in adjustments to items on another financial statement. For example, an analyst adjustment to inventory on the balance sheet affects cost of goods sold on the income statement (and thus also affects net income and, subsequently, the retained earnings account on the balance sheet).

Regardless of the particular order in which an analyst considers the items that may require adjustment for comparability, the following aspects are appropriate:

- *Importance (materiality)*. Is an adjustment to this item likely to affect the conclusions? In other words, does it matter? For example, in an industry where companies require minimal inventory, does it matter that two companies use different inventory accounting methods?
- *Body of standards*. Is there a difference in the body of standards being used (US GAAP versus IFRS)? If so, in which areas is the difference likely to affect a comparison?
- *Methods*. Is there a difference in accounting methods used by the companies being compared?
- *Estimates*. Is there a difference in important estimates used by the companies being compared?

The following sections illustrate analyst adjustments—first, those relating to the asset side of the balance sheet and then those relating to the liability side.

6.2 Analyst Adjustments Related to Investments

Accounting for investments in the debt and equity securities of other companies (other than investments accounted for under the equity method and investments in consolidated subsidiaries) depends on management's intention (i.e., whether to actively trade the securities, make them available for sale, or in the case of debt securities, hold them to maturity). When securities are classified as "financial assets measured at fair value through profit or loss" (similar to "trading" securities in US GAAP), unrealized gains and losses are reported in the income statement. When securities are classified as "financial assets measured at fair value through other comprehensive income" (similar to "available-for-sale" securities in US GAAP), unrealized gains and losses are not reported in the income statement and, instead, are recognized in equity. If two otherwise comparable companies have significant differences in the classification of investments, analyst adjustments may be useful to facilitate comparison.

6.3 Analyst Adjustments Related to Inventory

With inventory, adjustments may be required for different accounting methods. As described in previous readings, a company's decision about inventory method will affect the value of inventory shown on the balance sheet as well as the value of inventory that is sold (cost of goods sold). If a company not reporting under IFRS¹² uses LIFO (last-in, first-out) and another uses FIFO (first-in, first-out), comparability of the financial results of the two companies will suffer. Companies that use the LIFO method, must also, however, disclose the value of their inventory under the FIFO method. To recast inventory values for a company using LIFO reporting on a FIFO basis, the analyst adds the ending balance of the LIFO reserve to the ending value of inventory under LIFO accounting. To adjust cost of goods sold to a FIFO basis, the analyst subtracts the change in the LIFO reserve from the reported cost of goods sold under LIFO accounting. Example 10 illustrates the use of a disclosure of the value of inventory under the FIFO method to make a more consistent comparison of the current ratios of two companies reporting in different methods.

EXAMPLE 10

Adjustment for a Company Using LIFO Accounting for Inventories

An analyst is comparing the financial performance of Carpenter Technology Corporation (CRS), a US company operating in the specialty metals industry, with the financial performance of a similar company that uses IFRS for reporting. Under IFRS, this company uses the FIFO method of inventory accounting. Therefore, the analyst must convert results to a comparable basis. Exhibit 6 provides balance sheet information on CRS.

¹² IAS No. 2 does not permit the use of LIFO.

Exhibit 6 Data for Carpenter Technology Corporation

	30 June	
	2010	2009
Total current assets	820.2	749.7
Total current liabilities	218.1	198.5

NOTE 6. INVENTORIES

Inventories consist of the following (\$ millions):

	30 June	
	2010	2009
Raw materials	\$30.7	\$29.5
Work in process	109.1	90.8
Finished goods	63.8	65.1
	<u>\$203.6</u>	<u>\$185.4</u>

If the first-in, first-out method of inventory had been used instead of the LIFO method, inventories would have been \$331.8 and \$305.8 million higher as of June 30, 2010 and 2009, respectively.

Source: 10-K for Carpenter Technology Corporation for the year ended 30 June 2010.

- 1 Based on the information in Exhibit 6, calculate CRS's current ratio under FIFO and LIFO for 2009 and 2010.
- 2 CRS makes the following disclosure in the risk section of its MD&A. Assuming an effective tax rate of 35 percent, estimate the impact on CRS's tax liability.

“We value most of our inventory using the LIFO method, which could be repealed resulting in adverse affects on our cash flows and financial condition.

The cost of our inventories is primarily determined using the Last-In First-Out (“LIFO”) method. Under the LIFO inventory valuation method, changes in the cost of raw materials and production activities are recognized in cost of sales in the current period even though these materials and other costs may have been incurred at significantly different values due to the length of time of our production cycle. Generally in a period of rising prices, LIFO recognizes higher costs of goods sold, which both reduces current income and assigns a lower value to the year-end inventory. Recent proposals have been initiated aimed at repealing the election to use the LIFO method for income tax purposes. According to these proposals, generally taxpayers that currently use the LIFO method would be required to revalue their LIFO inventory to its first-in, first-out (“FIFO”) value. As of June 30, 2010, if the FIFO method of inventory had been used instead of the LIFO method, our inventories would have been about \$332 million higher. This increase in inventory would result in a one time increase in taxable income which would be taken into account

ratably over the first taxable year and the following several taxable years. The repeal of LIFO could result in a substantial tax liability which could adversely impact our cash flows and financial condition.”

Source: 10-K for Carpenter Technology Corporation for the year ended 30 June 2010.

- 3** CRS reported cash flow from operations of \$115.2 million for the year ended 30 June 2010. In comparison with the company’s operating cash flow, how significant is the additional potential tax liability?

Solution to 1:

The calculations of CRS’s current ratio (current assets divided by current liabilities) are as follows:

	2010	2009
I. Current ratio (unadjusted)		
Total current assets	\$820.2	\$749.7
Total current liabilities	\$218.1	\$198.5
Current ratio (unadjusted)	3.8	3.8
II. Current ratio (adjusted)		
Total current assets	\$820.2	\$749.7
Adjust inventory to FIFO, add:	331.8	305.8
Total current assets (adjusted)	\$1,152	\$1,056
Total current liabilities	218.1	198.5
Current ratio (adjusted)	5.3	5.3

To adjust the LIFO inventory to FIFO, add the excess amounts of FIFO cost over LIFO cost to LIFO inventory and increase current assets by an equal amount. The effect of adjusting inventory on the current ratio is to increase the current ratio from 3.8 to 5.3 in both 2009 and 2010. CRS has greater liquidity according to the adjusted current ratio.

Solution to 2:

Assuming an effective tax rate of 35 percent, we find the total increase in CRS’s tax liability to be \$116.1 million ($0.35 \times \331.8 million).

Solution to 3:

The additional tax liability would be greater than the entire amount of the company’s cash flow from operations of \$115.2 million; the additional tax liability would be apportioned, however, over several years.

In summary, the information disclosed by companies that use LIFO allows an analyst to calculate the value of the company’s inventory as if the company were using the FIFO method. In Example 10, the portion of inventory valued under the LIFO method was a relatively small portion of total inventory; the LIFO reserve (excess of FIFO cost over LIFO) was also relatively small. If the LIFO method is used for a substantial part of a company’s inventory and the LIFO reserve is large relative to reported inventory, however, the adjustment to a FIFO basis can be important for comparison of the LIFO-reporting company with a company that uses the FIFO method of inventory valuation. Example 11 illustrates a case in which such an adjustment would have a major impact on an analyst’s conclusions.

EXAMPLE 11**Analyst Adjustment to Inventory Value for Comparability in a Current Ratio Comparison**

Company A reports under IFRS and uses the FIFO method of inventory accounting. Company B reports under US GAAP and uses the LIFO method. Exhibit 7 gives data pertaining to current assets, LIFO reserves, and current liabilities of these companies.

Exhibit 7 Data for Companies Accounting for Inventory on Different Bases

	Company A (FIFO)	Company B (LIFO)
Current assets (includes inventory)	\$ 300,000	\$ 80,000
LIFO reserve	NA	\$ 20,000
Current liabilities	\$ 150,000	\$ 45,000

NA = not applicable.

Based on the data given in Exhibit 7, compare the liquidity of the two companies as measured by the current ratio.

Solution:

Company A's current ratio is 2.0. Based on unadjusted balance sheet data, Company B's current ratio is 1.78. Company A's higher current ratio indicates that Company A appears to be more liquid than Company B; however, the use of unadjusted data for Company B is not appropriate for making comparisons with Company A.

After adjusting Company B's inventory to a comparable basis (i.e., to a FIFO basis), the conclusion changes. The following table summarizes the results when Company B's inventory is left on a LIFO basis and when it is placed on a FIFO basis for comparability with Company A.

	Company A (FIFO)	Company B	
		Unadjusted (LIFO basis)	Adjusted (FIFO basis)
Current assets (includes inventory)	\$ 300,000	\$ 80,000	\$ 100,000
Current liabilities	\$ 150,000	\$ 45,000	\$ 45,000
Current ratio	2.00	1.78	2.22

When both companies' inventories are stated on a FIFO basis, Company B appears to be the more liquid, as indicated by its current ratio of 2.22 versus Company A's ratio of 2.00.

The adjustment to place Company B's inventory on a FIFO basis was significant because Company B was assumed to use LIFO for its entire inventory and its inventory reserve was $\$20,000/\$80,000 = 0.25$, or 25 percent of its reported inventory.

As mentioned earlier, an analyst can also adjust the cost of goods sold for a company using LIFO to a FIFO basis by subtracting the change in the amount of the LIFO reserve from cost of goods sold. Such an adjustment would be appropriate for making profitability comparisons with a company reporting on a FIFO basis and is important to make when the impact of the adjustment would be material.

6.4 Analyst Adjustments Related to Property, Plant, and Equipment

Management generally has considerable discretion in determination of depreciation expense. Depreciation expense affects the values of reported net income and reported net fixed assets. Analysts often consider management's choices related to depreciation as a qualitative factor in evaluating the quality of a company's financial reporting, and in some cases, analysts may adjust reported depreciation expense for a specific analytical purpose.

The amount of depreciation expense depends on both the accounting method and the estimates used in the calculations. Companies can use the straight-line method, an accelerated method, or a usage method to depreciate fixed assets (other than land). The straight-line method reports an equal amount of depreciation expense each period, and the expense is computed as the depreciable cost divided by the estimated useful life of the asset (when acquired, an asset's depreciable cost is calculated as its total cost minus its estimated salvage value). Accelerated methods depreciate the asset more quickly; they apportion a greater amount of the depreciable cost to depreciation expense in the earlier periods. Usage-based methods depreciate an asset in proportion to its usage. In addition to selecting a depreciation method, companies must estimate an asset's salvage value and useful life to compute depreciation.

Disclosures required for depreciation often do not facilitate specific adjustments, so comparisons of companies concerning their decisions in depreciating assets are often qualitative and general. The accounts that are associated with depreciation include the balance sheet accounts for gross property, plant, and equipment (PPE) and accumulated depreciation; the income statement amount for depreciation expense; and the statement of cash flows disclosure of capital expenditure (capex) and asset disposals. The relationships among these items can reveal various pieces of information. Note, however, that PPE typically includes a mix of assets with different depreciable lives and salvage values, so the items in the following list reflect general relationships in the total pool of assets.

- Accumulated depreciation divided by gross PPE, from the balance sheet, suggests how much of the useful life of the company's overall asset base has passed.
- Accumulated depreciation divided by depreciation expense suggests how many years' worth of depreciation expense have already been recognized (i.e., the average age of the asset base).
- Net PPE (net of accumulated depreciation) divided by depreciation expense is an approximate indicator of how many years of useful life remain for the company's overall asset base.
- Gross PPE divided by depreciation expense suggests the average life of the assets at installation.
- Capex divided by the sum of gross PPE plus capex can suggest what percentage of the asset base is being renewed through new capital investment.
- Capex in relation to asset disposal provides information on growth of the asset base.

As Example 12 shows, these relationships can be evaluated for companies in an industry to suggest differences in their strategies for asset utilization or areas for further investigation.

EXAMPLE 12

Differences in Depreciation

An analyst is evaluating the financial statements of two companies in the same industry. The companies have similar strategies with respect to the use of equipment in manufacturing their products. The following information is provided (amounts in millions):

	Company A	Company B
Net PPE	\$1,200	\$750
Depreciation expense	\$120	\$50

- 1 Based on the information given, estimate the average remaining useful lives of the asset bases of Company A and Company B.
- 2 Suppose that, based on a physical inspection of the companies' plants and other industry information, the analyst believes that the actual remaining useful lives of Company A's and Company B's assets are roughly equal at 10 years. Based only on the facts given, what might the analyst conclude about Company B's reported net income?

Solution to 1:

The estimated average remaining useful life of Company A's asset base is 10 years (calculated as net PPE divided by depreciation expense, or $\$1,200/\$120 = 10$ years). For Company B, the average remaining useful life of the asset base appears to be far longer, 15 years ($\$750/\50).

Solution to 2:

If 10 years were used to calculate Company B's depreciation expense, the expense would be \$75 million (i.e., \$25 million higher than reported) and higher depreciation expense would decrease net income. The analyst might conclude that Company B's reported net income reflects relatively more aggressive accounting estimates than estimates reflected in Company A's reported net income.

6.5 Analyst Adjustments Related to Goodwill

Goodwill arises when one company purchases another for a price that exceeds the fair value of the net identifiable assets acquired. Net identifiable assets include current assets, fixed assets, and certain intangible assets that have value and meet recognition criteria under accounting standards. A broad range of intangible assets might require valuation in the context of a business combination—for example, brands, technology, and customer lists. Goodwill is recorded as an asset and essentially represents the difference between the purchase price and the net identifiable assets. For example, assume ParentCo purchases TargetCo for a purchase price of \$400 million and the fair value of TargetCo's identifiable assets is \$300 million (which includes the fair values of current assets, fixed assets, and a recognized brand). ParentCo will record total assets of \$400 million consisting of \$300 million in identifiable assets (including the fair

value of the brand) and \$100 million of goodwill. The goodwill is tested annually for impairment and if the value of the goodwill is determined to be impaired, ParentCo will then reduce the amount of the asset and report a write-off resulting from impairment.

One of the conceptual difficulties with goodwill arises in comparative financial statement analysis. Consider, for example, two hypothetical US companies, one of which has grown by making an acquisition and the other of which has grown internally. Assume that the economic value of the two companies is identical: Each has an identically valuable branded product, well-trained workforce, and proprietary technology. The company that has grown by acquisition will have recorded the transaction to acquire the target company and its underlying net assets on the basis of the total consideration paid for the acquisition. The company that has grown internally will have done so by incurring expenditures for advertising, staff training, and research, all of which are expensed as incurred under US GAAP. Given the immediate expensing, the value of the internally generated assets is not capitalized onto the balance sheet and is thus not directly reflected on the company's balance sheet (revenues, income, and cash flows should reflect the benefits derived from the investment in the intangible assets). Ratios based on asset values and/or income, including profitability ratios (such as ROA) and market value to book value (MV/BV),¹³ will generally differ for the two companies because of differences in the accounting values of assets and income related to acquired intangibles and goodwill, although, by assumption, the economic value of the companies is identical.

EXAMPLE 13

Ratio Comparisons for Goodwill

Miano Marseglia is an analyst who is evaluating the relative valuation of two securities brokerage companies: TD Ameritrade Holding Corporation (AMTD) and the Charles Schwab Corporation (SCHW). As one part of an overall analysis, Marseglia would like to see how the two companies compare with each other and with the industry based on market value to book value. Because both companies are large players in the industry, Marseglia expects them to sell at a higher MV/BV than the industry median of 1.2. He collects the following data on the two companies.

	SCHW	AMTD
Market capitalization on January 2010 (market price per share times the number of shares outstanding)	\$21,871	\$11,525
Total shareholders' equity as of most recent quarter	\$5,073	\$3,551
Goodwill	\$528	\$2,472
Other intangible assets	\$23	\$1,225

Marseglia computes the MV/BV for the companies as follows:

$$\text{SCHW } \$21,871 / \$5,073 = 4.3$$

$$\text{AMTD } \$11,525 / \$3,551 = 3.2$$

¹³ MV/BV equals the total market value of the stock (the market capitalization) divided by total stockholders' equity. It is also referred to as the price-to-book ratio because it can also be calculated as price per share divided by stockholders' equity per share.

As expected, each company appears to be selling at a premium to the industry average MV/BV of 1.2. The companies have similar MV/BVs (i.e., they are somewhat equally valued relative to the book value of shareholders' equity), but based solely on MV/BV, AMTD appears to be a better value. Marseglia is concerned, however, because he notes that AMTD has significant amounts of goodwill and acquired intangible assets. He wonders what the relative value would be if the MV/BV were computed after adjusting book value, first, to remove goodwill and, second, to remove all intangible assets. Book value reduced by all intangible assets (including goodwill) is known as "tangible book value." The median price/tangible book value for the industry is 1.3.

- 1 Compute the MV/BV adjusted for goodwill and the price/tangible book value for each company.
- 2 Which company appears to be a better value based *solely* on this data? (Note that the MV/BV is only one part of a broader analysis. Much more evidence related to the valuations and the comparability of the companies would be required to reach a conclusion about whether one company is a better value.)

Solution to 1:

	(\$ millions)	
	SCHW	AMTD
Total stockholders' equity	\$5,073	\$3,551
Less: Goodwill	\$528	\$2,472
Book value, adjusted	<u>\$4,545</u>	<u>\$1,079</u>
Adjusted MV/BV	4.8	10.7

	(\$ millions)	
	SCHW	AMTD
Total stockholders' equity	\$5,073	\$3,551
Less: Goodwill	\$528	\$2,472
Less: Other intangible assets	\$23	\$1,225
Tangible book value	<u>\$4,522</u>	<u>(\$146)</u>
MV/tangible book value	4.8	NM

NM = not meaningful.

Solution to 2:

After adjusting for goodwill, SCHW appears to be selling for a lower price relative to book value than does AMTD (4.8 versus 10.7). Both companies are selling at a premium to the industry, particularly AMTD, after adjusting for goodwill.

SCHW is also selling for a higher multiple than the industry (4.8 versus 1.3) based on price/tangible book value. AMTD has a negative tangible book value and, therefore, its price/tangible book value is not meaningful. Based on this interpretation and based *solely* on this information, Marseglia would conclude that AMTD is relatively more expensive than SCHW.

6.6 Analyst Adjustments Related to Off-Balance-Sheet Financing

A number of business activities give rise to obligations that, although they are economically liabilities of a company, are not required to be reported on a company's balance sheet. Including such off-balance-sheet obligations in a company's liabilities can affect ratios and conclusions based on such ratios. In this section, we describe adjustments to financial statements related to one type of off-balance-sheet obligation, the operating lease. (Note that revised leasing standard IFRS 16 results in both operating and financing leases appearing on the lessee's balance sheet. These standards are likely to change or even eliminate adjustments required for operating leases.)¹⁴

The rights of a lessee (the party that is leasing some asset) may be similar to the rights of an owner, but if the terms of the lease can be structured so it can be accounted for as an operating lease, the lease is treated like a rental contract and neither the leased asset nor the associated liability is reported on the balance sheet.¹⁵ The lessee simply records the periodic lease payment as a rental expense in its income statement. In contrast, when a company actually owns an asset, the asset is shown on the balance sheet, together with any corresponding liability, such as financing for the asset. Similarly, if a lease is accounted for as a capital lease—essentially equivalent to ownership—the leased asset and associated liability appear on the lessee's balance sheet. Note that under IFRS 16, a company is required to account for most leases as capital leases, with both an asset and liability recorded on the balance sheet.

What is of concern to analysts is when a lease conveys to the lessee most of the benefits and risks of ownership but the lease is accounted for as an operating lease—giving rise to off-balance-sheet financing. International accounting standard setters have stated that the entities should not avoid balance sheet recording of leases through artificial leasing structures.

A 2005 report by the US SEC on off-balance-sheet financing estimates that more than 63 percent of companies in the United States report having an operating lease. The SEC estimate of total future lease payments under operating leases was \$1.2 trillion over the remaining terms of the leases.

Because companies are required to disclose in their financial statements the amount and timing of lease payments, an analyst can use this information to answer the question: How would a company's financial position look if operating lease obligations were included in its total liabilities?

Exhibit 8 presents selected items from the balance sheet of AMR Corporation (the parent of American Airlines) and the text of the note from the financial statements about the company's leases. We use the information in this exhibit to illustrate analyst adjustments.

¹⁴ IFRS 16 [Leases] and FASB ASC Topic 842 [Leases] are effective 1 January 2019 and for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2019, respectively.

¹⁵ A lessee classifies a lease as an operating lease if certain guidelines concerning the term of the lease, the present value of the lease payments, and the ownership of the asset at the end of the lease term are satisfied. Under US GAAP, FASB ASC 840-10-25 (Leases: Overall—Recognition)] specifies the criteria for classification.

Exhibit 8 Lease Arrangements of AMR Corporation
Selected Items from Balance Sheet
(\$ millions)

	31 December	
	2009	2008
Total Assets	<u>\$25,438</u>	<u>\$25,175</u>
Current maturities of long-term debt	\$1,024	\$1,845
Long-term debt, less current maturities	9,984	8,423
Total long-term debt	11,008	10,268
Current obligations under capital leases	90	107
Obligations under capital leases, less current obligations	599	582
Total long-term debt and capital leases	<u>\$11,697</u>	<u>\$10,957</u>

From Note 5. Leases

AMR's subsidiaries lease various types of equipment and property, primarily aircraft and airport facilities. The future minimum lease payments required under capital leases, together with the present value of such payments, and future minimum lease payments required under operating leases that have initial or remaining non-cancelable lease terms in excess of one year as of December 31, 2009, were (in millions):

Year Ending December 31,	Capital Leases	Operating Leases
2010	\$181	\$1,057
2011	184	1,032
2012	134	848
2013	119	755
2014	98	614
2015 and thereafter	436	5,021
	<u>\$1,152</u>	<u>\$9,327⁽¹⁾</u>
Less amount representing interest	463	
Present value of net minimum lease payments	\$689	

(1) As of December 31, 2009, included in Accrued liabilities and Other liabilities and deferred credits on the accompanying consolidated balance sheet is approximately \$1.2 billion relating to rent expense being recorded in advance of future operating lease payments.

Source: AMR Corporation's Form 10-K for period ending 31 December 2009.

To evaluate the company's solvency, we can calculate the debt-to-assets ratio, defined as the ratio of total debt to total assets. When we include obligations under capital leases (amounting to \$689 million in 2009), the debt-to-assets ratio for 2009 is 46.0 percent (total long-term debt/total assets = \$11,697/\$25,438). The company's note on leases discloses a total of \$9.3 billion of future payments for operating leases on an undiscounted basis. The note also indicates that of this amount, only \$1.2 billion is shown on the balance sheet. To determine the impact of including operating lease obligations in total liabilities, we can calculate the present value of the future operating lease payments. Calculating the present value of these payments requires

a discount rate. We can estimate an appropriate discount rate from the information about the present value of the capital lease payments. Using the present value of the capital lease payments and the schedule of future payments, we can calculate the internal rate of return (i.e., the return that results in the discounted future payments equaling the present value). The internal rate of return from the capital lease information can then be used as the discount rate to estimate the present value of the series of operating lease payments.

For AMR, the present value of the capital lease payments is \$689 million. Exhibit 9 shows different assumed streams of payments based on the information given in the note and illustrates the sensitivity of the analysis to assumptions about the timing of cash flows. Each assumed stream results in a different implied discount rate on the lease or internal rate of return to the lease. Using the stream of payments shown in the note and assuming that all of the \$436 million payments indicated for 2015 and thereafter are made in the year 2015 results in an internal rate of return of 15.04 percent. Based on the schedule of payments shown, a more reasonable assumption, however, is that the \$436 million payments do not all occur in a single year. One approach to estimating the timing of these payments is to assume that the payments in 2015 and subsequent years equal the average annual payments in years 2010–2014 of $\$143 = (\$181 + \$184 + \$134 + \$119 + \$98)/5$. Using this approach, we assume payments in 2015 and the following three years that total the amount shown in the note for 2015 and the internal rate of return of the capital lease is 13.90 percent. Given that lease payments have been generally declining over 2010–2015, another approach is to assume that the amount of the lease payment after 2015 remains constant in subsequent years at an amount equal to the payment in 2014 until the total amount shown in the note for 2015 is reached. Using this assumption, we find the internal rate of return of the capital lease payments is 13.24 percent.¹⁶

Exhibit 9 Present Value of Operating Lease Payments Using a Discount Rate Derived from Present Value of Capital Lease Payments (\$ millions)

	Capital Lease			Operating Lease	
	Payments (as given in note)	Payments Including Estimated Annual Payments for 2015 and Thereafter (Through 2018)	Payments Including Estimated Annual Payments for 2015 and Thereafter (Through 2019)	Payments As Given	Payments Including Estimated Annual Payments for 2015 and Thereafter
Present value, <i>given</i>	(\$689)	(\$689)	(\$689)		
2010	\$181	\$181	\$181	\$1,057	\$1,057
2011	\$184	\$184	\$184	\$1,032	\$1,032
2012	\$134	\$134	\$134	\$848	\$848

¹⁶ If the term structure of the capital and operating leases can be assumed to be similar, an alternative, shortcut, way to estimate the present value of future operating lease payments that do not appear on the balance sheet is to assume that the relationship between the discounted and undiscounted operating lease payments is approximately the same as the relationship between the discounted and undiscounted capital lease payments. The discounted capital lease payments of \$689 million as reported on the balance sheet are 64.9 percent of the undiscounted noncurrent capital lease payments of \$1,062 million (\$1,152 million total minus \$90 million current liabilities). Applying the same relationship to operating lease payments, we find that 64.9 percent of the undiscounted noncurrent operating lease payments of \$8,127 million (\$9,327 million total minus \$1,200 million current) equals \$5.3 billion, somewhat higher than the estimate of the present value of future operating lease payments given in Exhibit 9 with a discount rate of 13.24 percent.

Exhibit 9 (Continued)

	Capital Lease			Operating Lease	
	Payments (as given in note)	Payments Including Estimated Annual Payments for 2015 and Thereafter (Through 2018)	Payments Including Estimated Annual Payments for 2015 and Thereafter (Through 2019)	Payments As Given	Payments Including Estimated Annual Payments for 2015 and Thereafter
2013	\$119	\$119	\$119	\$755	\$755
2014	\$98	\$98	\$98	\$614	\$614
2015 and thereafter	\$436	\$143	\$98	\$5,021	\$614
		\$143	\$98		\$614
		\$143	\$98		\$614
		\$7	\$98		\$614
			\$44		\$614
					\$614
					\$614
					\$109
Internal rate of return	15.04%	13.90%	13.24%		
Present value of operating lease payments with 15.04% discount rate					\$4,373
Present value of operating lease payments with 13.90% discount rate					\$4,575
Present value of operating lease payments with 13.24% discount rate					\$4,700

We developed discount rate estimates of 13.90 percent and 13.24 percent. Using a discount rate of 13.90 percent, the present value of future operating lease payments would be roughly \$4.6 billion, and using a discount rate of 13.24 percent, the present value would be around \$4.7 billion. Because \$1.2 billion of the amounts related to operating leases already appear on the balance sheet (as disclosed in the company's lease note), the value of the future operating lease payments that do not appear on the balance sheet are estimated to be in the range of \$4,575 million – \$1,200 million = \$3,375 million to \$4,700 million – \$1,200 million = \$3,500 million. The lower the assumed discount rate, the higher the present value of the lease payments.

We now add the present value of the off-balance-sheet future operating lease payments to the company's total assets and total debt. Making this adjustment increases the debt-to-assets ratio to an amount between $(\$11,697 + \$3,375)/(\$25,438 + \$3,375) = 52.3$ percent and $(\$11,697 + \$3,500)/(\$25,438 + \$3,500) = 52.5$ percent. The discount rates implied by the company's capital lease structure are significantly higher, however, than yields on investment-grade bonds as of the date of the example; therefore, an analyst might choose to examine the sensitivity of the lease obligation to alternative discount rates.

EXAMPLE 14**Analyst Adjustment to Debt for Operating Lease Payments**

An analyst is evaluating the capital structure of two (hypothetical) companies, Koller Semiconductor and MacRae Manufacturing, as of the beginning of 2010. Koller Semiconductor makes somewhat less use of operating leases than MacRae Manufacturing. The analyst has the additional information in Exhibit 10.

Exhibit 10

	Koller Semiconductor	MacRae Manufacturing
Total debt	\$1,200	\$2,400
Total equity	\$2,000	\$4,000
Average interest rate on debt	10%	8%
Lease payments on operating leases:		
2010	10	90
2011	18	105
2012	22	115
2013	25	128
2014 and thereafter	75	384

Based on the information given in Exhibit 10 and assuming no adjustment to equity, discuss how adjusting for operating leases affects the companies' solvency on the basis of debt/debt-plus-equity. (Assume payments after 2013 occur at the same rate as for 2013. For example, for Koller Semiconductor, the payments for 2014 through 2016 would be assumed to be \$25 each year.)

Solution:

Before the adjustment is made, the companies' debt/debt-plus-equity are identical, both at 37.5 percent. To make the adjustment for operating leases, the first step is to calculate the present value of the operating lease payments. Assuming that payments after 2013 occur at the same rate as for 2013, the analyst finds Koller's payment would be \$25 in 2014, 2015, and 2016. The present value of \$25 discounted for five years at 10 percent is \$15.52. MacRae's payment is assumed to be \$128 in each of 2014, 2015, and 2016. The present value of \$128 discounted for five years at 8 percent is \$87.11. Calculations for 2015 and 2016 are made in the same manner, resulting in the present values shown in Exhibit 11.

Exhibit 11

	Koller Semiconductor	MacRae Manufacturing
2010	\$9.09	\$83.33
2011	\$14.88	\$90.02
2012	\$16.53	\$91.29
2013	\$17.08	\$94.08
2014	\$15.52	\$87.11

Exhibit 11 (Continued)

	Koller Semiconductor	MacRae Manufacturing
2015	\$14.11	\$80.66
2016	\$12.83	\$74.69
Total present value	\$100.04	\$601.18

After the present value of capitalized lease obligations is added to total debt, MacRae Manufacturing's debt/debt-plus-equity is significantly higher, at 42.9 percent, than the debt/debt-plus-equity of Koller Semiconductor, as shown in Exhibit 12. The higher ratio reflects the impact of lease obligations on MacRae's solvency, as measured by debt/debt-plus-equity.

Exhibit 12

	Koller Semiconductor		MacRae Manufacturing	
	Before Capitalizing	After Capitalizing	Before Capitalizing	After Capitalizing
Total debt	\$1,200	\$1,300	\$2,400	\$3,001
Total equity	\$2,000	\$2,000	\$4,000	\$4,000
Debt/(Debt + Equity)	37.5%	39.4%	37.5%	42.9%

The adjustment for operating leases essentially treats the transaction as if the asset subject to the operating lease had been purchased rather than leased. The present value of the capitalized lease obligations is the amount owed and the amount at which the asset is valued. Further adjustments reflect the reduction of rent expenses (if the asset is owned, rent would not be paid), the related interest expense on the amount owed, and a depreciation expense for the asset. The reduction of rent expense can be estimated as the average of two years of rent expense. Interest expense is estimated as the interest rate times the present value of the lease payments. Depreciation is estimated on a straight-line basis for the number of years of future lease payments. As mentioned previously, IFRS 16 requires companies to recognize operating leases similar to that of capital leases, including recording the lease on the balance sheet.

EXAMPLE 15**Effect on Coverage Ratio for Operating Lease Adjustment**

The analyst is also evaluating the interest coverage ratio of the companies in the previous example, Koller Semiconductor and MacRae Manufacturing.

	Koller Semiconductor	MacRae Manufacturing
EBIT before adjustment	\$850	\$1,350
Interest expense before adjustment	\$120	\$192

The prior-year (2009) rent expense was \$11 for Koller Semiconductor and \$90 for MacRae Manufacturing.

Using the information in Example 14 and the additional information given here, discuss how adjustment for operating leases affects the companies' solvency as measured by their coverage ratios.

Solution:

Interest coverage is calculated as EBIT divided by interest. For the adjustments, rent expense is the average of two years of rent. For Koller Semiconductor, rent expense is calculated as $(\$11 + \$10)/2$. The cost of interest on lease obligations is estimated as the interest rate multiplied by the present value of the lease payments. For Koller Semiconductor, this interest expense is calculated as $10\% \times \$100.04$, and for MacRae Manufacturing, it is calculated as $8\% \times \$601.18$. Depreciation is estimated on a straight-line basis by dividing the present value of lease payments by the number of years of lease payments (seven years). After the adjustment, both companies show a decline in interest coverage ratio, reflecting the increased obligation associated with the operating leases. Also the apparent difference in the coverage between the two companies is larger than it was in Example 14.

Exhibit 13

	Koller Semiconductor	MacRae Manufacturing
Interest coverage before adjustment	7.1	7.0
EBIT before adjustment	\$850.0	\$1,350.0
Rent expense (an add-back to EBIT)	10.5	90.0
Depreciation (a deduction from EBIT)	(14.3)	(85.9)
EBIT after adjustment	\$846.2	\$1354.1
Interest expense before adjustment	\$120.0	\$192.0
Assumed cost of interest on lease obligation (to add to interest)	10.0	48.1
Interest expense after adjustment	\$130.0	\$240.1
Interest coverage after adjustment	6.5	5.6

In summary, adjusting a company's financial statements to include amounts of lease payments provides a more complete picture of the company's financial condition and enables the comparison of companies with varying arrangements for financing assets and liabilities. The analyst may also need to adjust for amounts associated with other off-balance-sheet financing arrangements.

SUMMARY

This reading described selected applications of financial statement analysis, including the evaluation of past financial performance, the projection of future financial performance, the assessment of credit risk, and the screening of potential equity investments. In addition, the reading introduced analyst adjustments to reported financials. In all cases, the analyst needs to have a good understanding of the financial reporting standards under which the financial statements were prepared. Because standards evolve over time, analysts must stay current in order to make good investment decisions.

The main points in the reading are as follows:

- Evaluating a company's historical performance addresses not only what happened but also the causes behind the company's performance and how the performance reflects the company's strategy.
- The projection of a company's future net income and cash flow often begins with a top-down sales forecast in which the analyst forecasts industry sales and the company's market share. By projecting profit margins or expenses and the level of investment in working and fixed capital needed to support projected sales, the analyst can forecast net income and cash flow.
- Projections of future performance are needed for discounted cash flow valuation of equity and are often needed in credit analysis to assess a borrower's ability to repay interest and principal of a debt obligation.
- Credit analysis uses financial statement analysis to evaluate credit-relevant factors, including tolerance for leverage, operational stability, and margin stability.
- When ratios constructed from financial statement data and market data are used to screen for potential equity investments, fundamental decisions include which metrics to use as screens, how many metrics to include, what values of those metrics to use as cutoff points, and what weighting to give each metric.
- Analyst adjustments to a company's reported financial statements are sometimes necessary (e.g., when comparing companies that use different accounting methods or assumptions). Adjustments include those related to investments; inventory; property, plant, and equipment; goodwill; and off-balance-sheet financing.

REFERENCES

- Abarbanell, J.S., and B.J. Bushee. 1998. "Abnormal Returns to a Fundamental Analysis Strategy." *Accounting Review*, vol. 73, no. 1:19–46.
- Benninga, Simon Z., and Oded H. Sarig. 1997. *Corporate Finance: A Valuation Approach*. New York: McGraw-Hill Publishing.
- Chan, L.K.C., Y. Hamao, and J. Lakonishok. 1991. "Fundamentals and Stock Returns in Japan." *Journal of Finance*, vol. 46, no. 5:1739–1764. doi:10.2307/2328571
- Conrad, J., M. Cooper, and G. Kaul. 2003. "Value versus Glamour." *Journal of Finance*, vol. 58, no. 5:1969–1996.
- Davis, J. L. 1994. "The Cross-Section of Realized Stock Returns: The Pre-COMPSTAT Evidence." *Journal of Finance*, vol. 49, no. 5:1579–1593.
- Haugen, R.A., and N.L. Baker. 1996. "Commonality in the Determinants of Expected Stock Returns." *Journal of Financial Economics*, vol. 41, no. 3:401–439.
- Henry, Elaine, Stephen Lin, and Ya-wen Yang. 2009. "The European-U.S. 'GAAP Gap': IFRS to U.S. GAAP Form 20-F Reconciliations." *Accounting Horizons*, vol. 23, no. 2:121–150.
- Lakonishok, J., A. Shleifer, and R.W. Vishny. 1994. "Contrarian Investment, Extrapolation and Risk." *Journal of Finance*, vol. 49, no. 5:1541–1578.
- Lev, B., and S.R. Thiagarajan. 1993. "Fundamental Information Analysis." *Journal of Accounting Research*, vol. 31, no. 2:190–215.
- Piotroski, J.D. 2000. "Value Investing: The Use of Historical Financial Statement Information to Separate Winners from Losers." *Journal of Accounting Research*, vol. 38, Supplement:1–41.
- Pownall, G., and K. Schipper. 1999. "Implications of Accounting Research for the SEC's Consideration of International Accounting Standards for U.S. Securities Offerings." *Accounting Horizons*, vol. 13, no. 3:259–280.

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

- 1 Projecting profit margins into the future on the basis of past results would be *most* reliable when the company:
 - A is in the commodities business.
 - B operates in a single business segment.
 - C is a large, diversified company operating in mature industries.
- 2 Galambos Corporation had an average receivables collection period of 19 days in 2003. Galambos has stated that it wants to decrease its collection period in 2004 to match the industry average of 15 days. Credit sales in 2003 were \$300 million, and analysts expect credit sales to increase to \$400 million in 2004. To achieve the company's goal of decreasing the collection period, the change in the average accounts receivable balance from 2003 to 2004 that must occur is *closest* to:
 - A -\$420,000.
 - B \$420,000.
 - C \$836,000.
- 3 Credit analysts are likely to consider which of the following in making a rating recommendation?
 - A Business risk but not financial risk
 - B Financial risk but not business risk
 - C Both business risk and financial risk
- 4 When screening for potential equity investments based on return on equity, to control risk, an analyst would be *most likely* to include a criterion that requires:
 - A positive net income.
 - B negative net income.
 - C negative shareholders' equity.
- 5 One concern when screening for stocks with low price-to-earnings ratios is that companies with low P/Es may be financially weak. What criterion might an analyst include to avoid inadvertently selecting weak companies?
 - A Net income less than zero
 - B Debt-to-total assets ratio below a certain cutoff point
 - C Current-year sales growth lower than prior-year sales growth
- 6 When a database eliminates companies that cease to exist because of a merger or bankruptcy, this can result in:
 - A look-ahead bias.
 - B back-testing bias.
 - C survivorship bias.
- 7 In a comprehensive financial analysis, financial statements should be:
 - A used as reported without adjustment.
 - B adjusted after completing ratio analysis.
 - C adjusted for differences in accounting standards, such as international financial reporting standards and US generally accepted accounting principles.

- 8 When comparing a US company that uses the last in, first out (LIFO) method of inventory with companies that prepare their financial statements under international financial reporting standards (IFRS), analysts should be aware that according to IFRS, the LIFO method of inventory:

- A is never acceptable.
- B is always acceptable.
- C is acceptable when applied to finished goods inventory only.

- 9 An analyst is evaluating the balance sheet of a US company that uses last in, first out (LIFO) accounting for inventory. The analyst collects the following data:

	31 Dec 05	31 Dec 06
Inventory reported on balance sheet	\$500,000	\$600,000
LIFO reserve	\$ 50,000	\$70,000
Average tax rate	30%	30%

After adjusting the amounts to convert to the first in, first out (FIFO) method, inventory at 31 December 2006 would be closest to:

- A \$600,000.
 - B \$620,000.
 - C \$670,000.
- 10 An analyst gathered the following data for a company (\$ millions):

	31 Dec 2000	31 Dec 2001
Gross investment in fixed assets	\$2.8	\$2.8
Accumulated depreciation	\$1.2	\$1.6

The average age and average depreciable life of the company's fixed assets at the end of 2001 are *closest* to:

	Average Age	Average Depreciable Life
A	1.75 years	7 years
B	1.75 years	14 years
C	4.00 years	7 years

- 11 To compute tangible book value, an analyst would:
- A add goodwill to stockholders' equity.
 - B add all intangible assets to stockholders' equity.
 - C subtract all intangible assets from stockholders' equity.
- 12 Which of the following is an off-balance-sheet financing technique? The use of:
- A capital leases.
 - B operating leases.
 - C the last in, first out inventory method.
- 13 To better evaluate the solvency of a company, an analyst would most likely add to total liabilities:
- A the present value of future capital lease payments.
 - B the total amount of future operating lease payments.
 - C the present value of future operating lease payments.

SOLUTIONS

- 1 C is correct. For a large, diversified company, margin changes in different business segments may offset each other. Furthermore, margins are most likely to be stable in mature industries.
- 2 C is correct. Accounts receivable turnover is equal to $365/19$ (collection period in days) = 19.2 for 2003 and needs to equal $365/15 = 24.3$ in 2004 for Galambos to meet its goal. Sales/turnover equals the accounts receivable balance. For 2003, $\$300,000,000/19.2 = \$15,625,000$, and for 2004, $\$400,000,000/24.3 = \$16,460,905$. The difference of $\$835,905$ is the increase in receivables needed for Galambos to achieve its goal.
- 3 C is correct. Credit analysts consider both business risk and financial risk.
- 4 A is correct. Requiring that net income be positive would eliminate companies that report a positive return on equity only because both net income and shareholders' equity are negative.
- 5 B is correct. A lower value of debt/total assets indicates greater financial strength. Requiring that a company's debt/total assets be below a certain cutoff point would allow the analyst to screen out highly leveraged and, therefore, potentially financially weak companies.
- 6 C is correct. Survivorship bias exists when companies that merge or go bankrupt are dropped from the database and only surviving companies remain. Look-ahead bias involves using updated financial information in back-testing that would not have been available at the time the decision was made. Back-testing involves testing models in prior periods and is not, itself, a bias.
- 7 C is correct. Financial statements should be adjusted for differences in accounting standards (as well as accounting and operating choices). These adjustments should be made prior to common-size and ratio analysis.
- 8 A is correct. LIFO is not permitted under IFRS.
- 9 C is correct. To convert LIFO inventory to FIFO inventory, the entire LIFO reserve must be added back: $\$600,000 + \$70,000 = \$670,000$.
- 10 C is correct. The company made no additions to or deletions from the fixed asset account during the year, so depreciation expense is equal to the difference in accumulated depreciation at the beginning of the year and the end of the year, or $\$0.4$ million. Average age is equal to accumulated depreciation/depreciation expense, or $\$1.6/\$0.4 = 4$ years. Average depreciable life is equal to ending gross investment/depreciation expense = $\$2.8/\$0.4 = 7$ years.
- 11 C is correct. Tangible book value removes all intangible assets, including goodwill, from the balance sheet.
- 12 B is correct. Operating leases can be used as an off-balance-sheet financing technique because neither the asset nor liability appears on the balance sheet. Inventory and capital leases are reported on the balance sheet.
- 13 C is correct. The present value of future operating lease payments would be added to total assets and total liabilities.

Glossary

- A priori probability** A probability based on logical analysis rather than on observation or personal judgment.
- Abnormal return** The amount by which a security's actual return differs from its expected return, given the security's risk and the market's return.
- Absolute advantage** A country's ability to produce a good or service at a lower absolute cost than its trading partner.
- Absolute dispersion** The amount of variability present without comparison to any reference point or benchmark.
- Absolute frequency** The number of observations in a given interval (for grouped data).
- Accelerated book build** An offering of securities by an investment bank acting as principal that is accomplished in only one or two days.
- Accelerated methods** Depreciation methods that allocate a relatively large proportion of the cost of an asset to the early years of the asset's useful life.
- Accounting costs** Monetary value of economic resources used in performing an activity. These can be explicit, out-of-pocket, current payments, or an allocation of historical payments (depreciation) for resources. They do not include implicit opportunity costs.
- Accounting profit** Income as reported on the income statement, in accordance with prevailing accounting standards, before the provisions for income tax expense. Also called *income before taxes* or *pretax income*.
- Accounts payable** Amounts that a business owes to its vendors for goods and services that were purchased from them but which have not yet been paid.
- Accounts receivable turnover** Ratio of sales on credit to the average balance in accounts receivable.
- Accrued expenses** Liabilities related to expenses that have been incurred but not yet paid as of the end of an accounting period—an example of an accrued expense is rent that has been incurred but not yet paid, resulting in a liability "rent payable." Also called *accrued liabilities*.
- Accrued interest** Interest earned but not yet paid.
- Acid-test ratio** A stringent measure of liquidity that indicates a company's ability to satisfy current liabilities with its most liquid assets, calculated as (cash + short-term marketable investments + receivables) divided by current liabilities.
- Acquisition method** A method of accounting for a business combination where the acquirer is required to measure each identifiable asset and liability at fair value. This method was the result of a joint project of the IASB and FASB aiming at convergence in standards for the accounting of business combinations.
- Action lag** Delay from policy decisions to implementation.
- Active investment** An approach to investing in which the investor seeks to outperform a given benchmark.
- Active return** The return on a portfolio minus the return on the portfolio's benchmark.
- Active strategy** In reference to short-term cash management, an investment strategy characterized by monitoring and attempting to capitalize on market conditions to optimize the risk and return relationship of short-term investments.
- Activity ratios** Ratios that measure how efficiently a company performs day-to-day tasks, such as the collection of receivables and management of inventory. Also called *asset utilization ratios* or *operating efficiency ratios*.
- Add-on rates** Bank certificates of deposit, repos, and indexes such as Libor and Euribor are quoted on an add-on rate basis (bond equivalent yield basis).
- Addition rule for probabilities** A principle stating that the probability that *A* or *B* occurs (both occur) equals the probability that *A* occurs, plus the probability that *B* occurs, minus the probability that both *A* and *B* occur.
- Agency bonds** See *quasi-government bond*.
- Agency RMBS** In the United States, securities backed by residential mortgage loans and guaranteed by a federal agency or guaranteed by either of the two GSEs (Fannie Mae and Freddie Mac).
- Aggregate demand** The quantity of goods and services that households, businesses, government, and foreign customers want to buy at any given level of prices.
- Aggregate demand curve** Inverse relationship between the price level and real output.
- Aggregate income** The value of all the payments earned by the suppliers of factors used in the production of goods and services.
- Aggregate output** The value of all the goods and services produced in a specified period of time.
- Aggregate supply** The quantity of goods and services producers are willing to supply at any given level of price.
- Aggregate supply curve** The level of domestic output that companies will produce at each price level.
- Aging schedule** A breakdown of accounts into categories of days outstanding.
- All-or-nothing (AON) orders** An order that includes the instruction to trade only if the trade fills the entire quantity (size) specified.
- Allocationally efficient** Said of a market, a financial system, or an economy that promotes the allocation of resources to their highest value uses.
- Alternative data** Non-traditional data types generated by the use of electronic devices, social media, satellite and sensor networks, and company exhaust.
- Alternative investment markets** Market for investments other than traditional securities investments (i.e., traditional common and preferred shares and traditional fixed income instruments). The term usually encompasses direct and indirect investment in real estate (including timberland and farmland) and commodities (including precious metals); hedge funds, private equity, and other investments requiring specialized due diligence.
- Alternative trading systems** Trading venues that function like exchanges but that do not exercise regulatory authority over their subscribers except with respect to the conduct of the subscribers' trading in their trading systems. Also called *electronic communications networks* or *multilateral trading facilities*.
- American depository receipt** A US dollar-denominated security that trades like a common share on US exchanges.

- American depository share** The underlying shares on which American depository receipts are based. They trade in the issuing company's domestic market.
- American-style** Said of an option contract that can be exercised at any time up to the option's expiration date.
- Amortisation** The process of allocating the cost of intangible long-term assets having a finite useful life to accounting periods; the allocation of the amount of a bond premium or discount to the periods remaining until bond maturity.
- Amortised cost** The historical cost (initially recognised cost) of an asset, adjusted for amortisation and impairment.
- Amortizing bond** Bond with a payment schedule that calls for periodic payments of interest and repayments of principal.
- Amortizing loan** Loan with a payment schedule that calls for periodic payments of interest and repayments of principal.
- Annual percentage rate** The cost of borrowing expressed as a yearly rate.
- Annuity** A finite set of level sequential cash flows.
- Annuity due** An annuity having a first cash flow that is paid immediately.
- Anticipation stock** Excess inventory that is held in anticipation of increased demand, often because of seasonal patterns of demand.
- Antidilutive** With reference to a transaction or a security, one that would increase earnings per share (EPS) or result in EPS higher than the company's basic EPS—antidilutive securities are not included in the calculation of diluted EPS.
- Arbitrage** 1) The simultaneous purchase of an undervalued asset or portfolio and sale of an overvalued but equivalent asset or portfolio, in order to obtain a riskless profit on the price differential. Taking advantage of a market inefficiency in a risk-free manner. 2) The condition in a financial market in which equivalent assets or combinations of assets sell for two different prices, creating an opportunity to profit at no risk with no commitment of money. In a well-functioning financial market, few arbitrage opportunities are possible. 3) A risk-free operation that earns an expected positive net profit but requires no net investment of money.
- Arbitrage-free pricing** The overall process of pricing derivatives by arbitrage and risk neutrality. Also called the *principle of no arbitrage*.
- Arbitrageurs** Traders who engage in arbitrage. See *arbitrage*.
- Arithmetic mean** The sum of the observations divided by the number of observations.
- Arms index** A flow of funds indicator applied to a broad stock market index to measure the relative extent to which money is moving into or out of rising and declining stocks.
- Artificial intelligence** Computer systems that exhibit cognitive and decision-making ability comparable (or superior) to that of humans.
- Asian call option** A European-style option with a value at maturity equal to the difference between the stock price at maturity and the average stock price during the life of the option, or \$0, whichever is greater.
- Ask** The price at which a dealer or trader is willing to sell an asset, typically qualified by a maximum quantity (ask size). See *offer*.
- Ask size** The maximum quantity of an asset that pertains to a specific ask price from a trader. For example, if the ask for a share issue is \$30 for a size of 1,000 shares, the trader is offering to sell at \$30 up to 1,000 shares.
- Asset allocation** The process of determining how investment funds should be distributed among asset classes.
- Asset-backed securities** A type of bond issued by a legal entity called a *special purpose entity* (SPE) on a collection of assets that the SPE owns. Also, securities backed by receivables and loans other than mortgages.
- Asset-based loan** A loan that is secured with company assets.
- Asset-based valuation models** Valuation based on estimates of the market value of a company's assets.
- Asset beta** The unlevered beta; reflects the business risk of the assets; the asset's systematic risk.
- Asset class** A group of assets that have similar characteristics, attributes, and risk/return relationships.
- Asset swap** Converts the periodic fixed coupon of a specific bond to a Libor plus or minus a spread.
- Asset utilization ratios** Ratios that measure how efficiently a company performs day-to-day tasks, such as the collection of receivables and management of inventory.
- Assets** Resources controlled by an enterprise as a result of past events and from which future economic benefits to the enterprise are expected to flow.
- Assignment of accounts receivable** The use of accounts receivable as collateral for a loan.
- At the money** An option in which the underlying's price equals the exercise price.
- Auction** A type of bond issuing mechanism often used for sovereign bonds that involves bidding.
- Autarkic price** The price of a good or service in an autarkic economy.
- Autarky** A state in which a country does not trade with other countries.
- Automated Clearing House (ACH)** An electronic payment network available to businesses, individuals, and financial institutions in the United States, US Territories, and Canada.
- Automatic stabilizer** A countercyclical factor that automatically comes into play as an economy slows and unemployment rises.
- Available-for-sale** Debt and equity securities not classified as either held-to-maturity or held-for-trading securities. The investor is willing to sell but not actively planning to sell. In general, available-for-sale securities are reported at fair value on the balance sheet.
- Average fixed cost** Total fixed cost divided by quantity produced.
- Average life** See *weighted average life*.
- Average product** Measures the productivity of inputs on average and is calculated by dividing total product by the total number of units for a given input that is used to generate that output.
- Average revenue** Total revenue divided by quantity sold.
- Average total cost** Total cost divided by quantity produced.
- Average variable cost** Total variable cost divided by quantity produced.
- Back simulation** Another term for the historical method of estimating VaR. This term is somewhat misleading in that the method involves not a *simulation* of the past but rather what *actually happened* in the past, sometimes adjusted to reflect the fact that a different portfolio may have existed in the past than is planned for the future.
- Back-testing** With reference to portfolio strategies, the application of a strategy's portfolio selection rules to historical data to assess what would have been the strategy's historical performance.

- Backup lines of credit** A type of credit enhancement provided by a bank to an issuer of commercial paper to ensure that the issuer will have access to sufficient liquidity to repay maturing commercial paper if issuing new paper is not a viable option.
- Balance of payments** A double-entry bookkeeping system that summarizes a country's economic transactions with the rest of the world for a particular period of time, typically a calendar quarter or year.
- Balance of trade deficit** When the domestic economy is spending more on foreign goods and services than foreign economies are spending on domestic goods and services.
- Balance sheet** The financial statement that presents an entity's current financial position by disclosing resources the entity controls (its assets) and the claims on those resources (its liabilities and equity claims), as of a particular point in time (the date of the balance sheet). Also called *statement of financial position* or *statement of financial condition*.
- Balance sheet ratios** Financial ratios involving balance sheet items only.
- Balanced** With respect to a government budget, one in which spending and revenues (taxes) are equal.
- Balloon payment** Large payment required at maturity to retire a bond's outstanding principal amount.
- Bank discount basis** A quoting convention that annualizes, on a 360-day year, the discount as a percentage of face value.
- Bar chart** A price chart with four bits of data for each time interval—the high, low, opening, and closing prices. A vertical line connects the high and low. A cross-hatch left indicates the opening price and a cross-hatch right indicates the close.
- Barter economy** An economy where economic agents as households, corporations, and governments “pay” for goods and services with another good or service.
- Base rates** The reference rate on which a bank bases lending rates to all other customers.
- Basic EPS** Net earnings available to common shareholders (i.e., net income minus preferred dividends) divided by the weighted average number of common shares outstanding.
- Basis point** Used in stating yield spreads, one basis point equals one-hundredth of a percentage point, or 0.01%.
- Basket of listed depository receipts** An exchange-traded fund (ETF) that represents a portfolio of depository receipts.
- Bearer bonds** Bonds for which ownership is not recorded; only the clearing system knows who the bond owner is.
- Behavioral finance** A field of finance that examines the psychological variables that affect and often distort the investment decision making of investors, analysts, and portfolio managers.
- Behind the market** Said of prices specified in orders that are worse than the best current price; e.g., for a limit buy order, a limit price below the best bid.
- Benchmark** A comparison portfolio; a point of reference or comparison.
- Benchmark issue** The latest sovereign bond issue for a given maturity. It serves as a benchmark against which to compare bonds that have the same features but that are issued by another type of issuer.
- Benchmark rate** Typically the yield-to-maturity on a government bond having the same, or close to the same, time-to-maturity.
- Benchmark spread** The yield spread over a specific benchmark, usually measured in basis points.
- Bermuda-style** Said of an option contract that can be exercised on specified dates up to the option's expiration date.
- Bernoulli random variable** A random variable having the outcomes 0 and 1.
- Bernoulli trial** An experiment that can produce one of two outcomes.
- Best bid** The highest bid in the market.
- Best effort offering** An offering of a security using an investment bank in which the investment bank, as agent for the issuer, promises to use its best efforts to sell the offering but does not guarantee that a specific amount will be sold.
- Best-in-class** An ESG implementation approach that seeks to identify the most favorable companies in an industry based on ESG considerations.
- Best offer** The lowest offer (ask price) in the market.
- Beta** A measure of the sensitivity of a given investment or portfolio to movements in the overall market.
- Bid** The price at which a dealer or trader is willing to buy an asset, typically qualified by a maximum quantity.
- Bid–ask spread** The difference between the prices at which dealers will buy from a customer (bid) and sell to a customer (offer or ask). It is often used as an indicator of liquidity.
- Bid–offer spread** The difference between the prices at which dealers will buy from a customer (bid) and sell to a customer (offer or ask). It is often used as an indicator of liquidity.
- Bid size** The maximum quantity of an asset that pertains to a specific bid price from a trader.
- Big Data** The vast amount of data being generated by industry, governments, individuals, and electronic devices that arises from both traditional and non-traditional data sources.
- Bilateral loan** A loan from a single lender to a single borrower.
- Binomial model** A model for pricing options in which the underlying price can move to only one of two possible new prices.
- Binomial random variable** The number of successes in n Bernoulli trials for which the probability of success is constant for all trials and the trials are independent.
- Binomial tree** The graphical representation of a model of asset price dynamics in which, at each period, the asset moves up with probability p or down with probability $(1 - p)$.
- Bitcoin** A cryptocurrency using blockchain technology that was created in 2009.
- Block brokers** A broker (agent) that provides brokerage services for large-size trades.
- Blockchain** A type of digital ledger in which information is recorded sequentially and then linked together and secured using cryptographic methods.
- Blue chip** Widely held large market capitalization companies that are considered financially sound and are leaders in their respective industry or local stock market.
- Bollinger Bands** A price-based technical analysis indicator consisting of a moving average plus a higher line representing the moving average plus a set number of standard deviations from average price (for the same number of periods as used to calculate the moving average) and a lower line that is a moving average minus the same number of standard deviations.
- Bond** Contractual agreement between the issuer and the bondholders.

- Bond equivalent yield** A calculation of yield that is annualized using the ratio of 365 to the number of days to maturity. Bond equivalent yield allows for the restatement and comparison of securities with different compounding periods.
- Bond indenture** The governing legal credit agreement, typically incorporated by reference in the prospectus. Also called *trust deed*.
- Bond market vigilantes** Bond market participants who might reduce their demand for long-term bonds, thus pushing up their yields.
- Bond yield plus risk premium approach** An estimate of the cost of common equity that is produced by summing the before-tax cost of debt and a risk premium that captures the additional yield on a company's stock relative to its bonds. The additional yield is often estimated using historical spreads between bond yields and stock yields.
- Bonus issue of shares** A type of dividend in which a company distributes additional shares of its common stock to shareholders instead of cash.
- Book building** Investment bankers' process of compiling a "book" or list of indications of interest to buy part of an offering.
- Book value** The net amount shown for an asset or liability on the balance sheet; book value may also refer to the company's excess of total assets over total liabilities. Also called *carrying value*.
- Boom** An expansionary phase characterized by economic growth "testing the limits" of the economy.
- Bottom-up analysis** With reference to investment selection processes, an approach that involves selection from all securities within a specified investment universe, i.e., without prior narrowing of the universe on the basis of macroeconomic or overall market considerations.
- Break point** In the context of the weighted average cost of capital (WACC), a break point is the amount of capital at which the cost of one or more of the sources of capital changes, leading to a change in the WACC.
- Breakeven point** The number of units produced and sold at which the company's net income is zero (Revenues = Total cost); in the case of perfect competition, the quantity at which price, average revenue, and marginal revenue equal average total cost.
- Bridge financing** Interim financing that provides funds until permanent financing can be arranged.
- Broad money** Encompasses narrow money plus the entire range of liquid assets that can be used to make purchases.
- Broker** 1) An agent who executes orders to buy or sell securities on behalf of a client in exchange for a commission. 2) See *utures commission merchants*.
- Broker-dealer** A financial intermediary (often a company) that may function as a principal (dealer) or as an agent (broker) depending on the type of trade.
- Brokered market** A market in which brokers arrange trades among their clients.
- Budget surplus/deficit** The difference between government revenue and expenditure for a stated fixed period of time.
- Business risk** The risk associated with operating earnings. Operating earnings are uncertain because total revenues and many of the expenditures contributed to produce those revenues are uncertain.
- Buy-side firm** An investment management company or other investor that uses the services of brokers or dealers (i.e., the client of the sell side firms).
- Buyback** A transaction in which a company buys back its own shares. Unlike stock dividends and stock splits, share repurchases use corporate cash.
- Buyout fund** A fund that buys all the shares of a public company so that, in effect, the company becomes private.
- Call** An option that gives the holder the right to buy an underlying asset from another party at a fixed price over a specific period of time.
- Call market** A market in which trades occur only at a particular time and place (i.e., when the market is called).
- Call money rate** The interest rate that buyers pay for their margin loan.
- Call option** An option that gives the holder the right to buy an underlying asset from another party at a fixed price over a specific period of time.
- Call protection** The time during which the issuer of the bond is not allowed to exercise the call option.
- Callable bond** A bond containing an embedded call option that gives the issuer the right to buy the bond back from the investor at specified prices on pre-determined dates.
- Callable common shares** Shares that give the issuing company the option (or right), but not the obligation, to buy back the shares from investors at a call price that is specified when the shares are originally issued.
- Candlestick chart** A price chart with four bits of data for each time interval. A candle indicates the opening and closing price for the interval. The body of the candle is shaded if the opening price was higher than the closing price, and the body is clear if the opening price was lower than the closing price. Vertical lines known as wicks or shadows extend from the top and bottom of the candle to indicate the high and the low prices for the interval.
- Cannibalization** Cannibalization occurs when an investment takes customers and sales away from another part of the company.
- Capacity** The ability of the borrower to make its debt payments on time.
- Capital account** A component of the balance of payments account that measures transfers of capital.
- Capital allocation line** (CAL) A graph line that describes the combinations of expected return and standard deviation of return available to an investor from combining the optimal portfolio of risky assets with the risk-free asset.
- Capital asset pricing model** (CAPM) An equation describing the expected return on any asset (or portfolio) as a linear function of its beta relative to the market portfolio.
- Capital budgeting** The allocation of funds to relatively long-range projects or investments.
- Capital consumption allowance** A measure of the wear and tear (depreciation) of the capital stock that occurs in the production of goods and services.
- Capital deepening investment** Increases the stock of capital relative to labor.
- Capital expenditure** Expenditure on physical capital (fixed assets).
- Capital-indexed bonds** Type of index-linked bond. The coupon rate is fixed but is applied to a principal amount that increases in line with increases in the index during the bond's life.
- Capital lease** See *finance lease*.
- Capital market expectations** An investor's expectations concerning the risk and return prospects of asset classes.

- Capital market line (CML)** The line with an intercept point equal to the risk-free rate that is tangent to the efficient frontier of risky assets; represents the efficient frontier when a risk-free asset is available for investment.
- Capital market securities** Securities with maturities at issuance longer than one year.
- Capital markets** Financial markets that trade securities of longer duration, such as bonds and equities.
- Capital rationing** A capital rationing environment assumes that the company has a fixed amount of funds to invest.
- Capital restrictions** Controls placed on foreigners' ability to own domestic assets and/or domestic residents' ability to own foreign assets.
- Capital stock** The accumulated amount of buildings, machinery, and equipment used to produce goods and services.
- Capital structure** The mix of debt and equity that a company uses to finance its business; a company's specific mixture of long-term financing.
- Captive finance subsidiary** A wholly-owned subsidiary of a company that is established to provide financing of the sales of the parent company.
- Carry** The net of the costs and benefits of holding, storing, or "carrying" an asset.
- Carrying amount** The amount at which an asset or liability is valued according to accounting principles.
- Carrying value** The net amount shown for an asset or liability on the balance sheet; book value may also refer to the company's excess of total assets over total liabilities. For a bond, the purchase price plus (or minus) the amortized amount of the discount (or premium).
- Cartel** Participants in collusive agreements that are made openly and formally.
- Cash collateral account** Form of external credit enhancement whereby the issuer immediately borrows the credit-enhancement amount and then invests that amount, usually in highly rated short-term commercial paper.
- Cash conversion cycle** A financial metric that measures the length of time required for a company to convert cash invested in its operations to cash received as a result of its operations; equal to days of inventory on hand + days of sales outstanding – number of days of payables. Also called *net operating cycle*.
- Cash flow additivity principle** The principle that dollar amounts indexed at the same point in time are additive.
- Cash flow from operating activities** The net amount of cash provided from operating activities.
- Cash flow from operations** The net amount of cash provided from operating activities.
- Cash flow yield** The internal rate of return on a series of cash flows.
- Cash market securities** Money market securities settled on a "same day" or "cash settlement" basis.
- Cash markets** See *spot markets*.
- Cash prices** See *spot prices*.
- Cash-settled forwards** See *non-deliverable forwards*.
- CBOE Volatility Index** A measure of near-term market volatility as conveyed by S&P 500 stock index option prices.
- CD equivalent yield** A yield on a basis comparable to the quoted yield on an interest-bearing money market instrument that pays interest on a 360-day basis; the annualized holding period yield, assuming a 360-day year.
- Central bank funds market** The market in which deposit-taking banks that have an excess reserve with their national central bank can loan money to banks that need funds for maturities ranging from overnight to one year. Called the Federal or Fed funds market in the United States.
- Central bank funds rates** Interest rates at which central bank funds are bought (borrowed) and sold (lent) for maturities ranging from overnight to one year. Called Federal or Fed funds rates in the United States.
- Central banks** The dominant bank in a country, usually with official or semi-official governmental status.
- Certificate of deposit** An instrument that represents a specified amount of funds on deposit with a bank for a specified maturity and interest rate. It is issued in small or large denominations, and can be negotiable or non-negotiable.
- Change in polarity principle** A tenet of technical analysis that once a support level is breached, it becomes a resistance level. The same holds true for resistance levels; once breached, they become support levels.
- Change of control put** A covenant giving bondholders the right to require the issuer to buy back their debt, often at par or at some small premium to par value, in the event that the borrower is acquired.
- Character** The quality of a debt issuer's management.
- Classified balance sheet** A balance sheet organized so as to group together the various assets and liabilities into subcategories (e.g., current and noncurrent).
- Clawback** A requirement that the general partner return any funds distributed as incentive fees until the limited partners have received back their initial investment and a percentage of the total profit.
- Clearing** The process by which the exchange verifies the execution of a transaction and records the participants' identities.
- Clearing instructions** Instructions that indicate how to arrange the final settlement ("clearing") of a trade.
- Clearinghouse** An entity associated with a futures market that acts as middleman between the contracting parties and guarantees to each party the performance of the other.
- Closed economy** An economy that does not trade with other countries; an *autarkic economy*.
- Closed-end fund** A mutual fund in which no new investment money is accepted. New investors invest by buying existing shares, and investors in the fund liquidate by selling their shares to other investors.
- Code of ethics** An established guide that communicates an organization's values and overall expectations regarding member behavior. A code of ethics serves as a general guide for how community members should act.
- Coefficient of variation (CV)** The ratio of a set of observations' standard deviation to the observations' mean value.
- Coincident economic indicators** Turning points that are usually close to those of the overall economy; they are believed to have value for identifying the economy's present state.
- Collateral manager** Buys and sells debt obligations for and from the CDO's portfolio of assets (i.e., the collateral) to generate sufficient cash flows to meet the obligations to the CDO bondholders.
- Collateral trust bonds** Bonds secured by securities such as common shares, other bonds, or other financial assets.
- Collateralized bond obligations** A structured asset-backed security that is collateralized by a pool of bonds.

- Collateralized debt obligation** Generic term used to describe a security backed by a diversified pool of one or more debt obligations.
- Collateralized loan obligations** A structured asset-backed security that is collateralized by a pool of loans.
- Collateralized mortgage obligation** A security created through the securitization of a pool of mortgage-related products (mortgage pass-through securities or pools of loans).
- Collaterals** Assets or financial guarantees underlying a debt obligation that are above and beyond the issuer's promise to pay.
- Combination** A listing in which the order of the listed items does not matter.
- Commercial paper** A short-term, negotiable, unsecured promissory note that represents a debt obligation of the issuer.
- Committed capital** The amount that the limited partners have agreed to provide to the private equity fund.
- Committed lines of credit** A bank commitment to extend credit up to a pre-specified amount; the commitment is considered a short-term liability and is usually in effect for 364 days (one day short of a full year).
- Commodity swap** A swap in which the underlying is a commodity such as oil, gold, or an agricultural product.
- Common market** Level of economic integration that incorporates all aspects of the customs union and extends it by allowing free movement of factors of production among members.
- Common shares** A type of security that represent an ownership interest in a company.
- Common-size analysis** The restatement of financial statement items using a common denominator or reference item that allows one to identify trends and major differences; an example is an income statement in which all items are expressed as a percent of revenue.
- Common stock** See *common shares*.
- Company analysis** Analysis of an individual company.
- Comparable company** A company that has similar business risk; usually in the same industry and preferably with a single line of business.
- Comparative advantage** A country's ability to produce a good or service at a lower relative cost, or opportunity cost, than its trading partner.
- Competitive strategy** A company's plans for responding to the threats and opportunities presented by the external environment.
- Complements** Goods that tend to be used together; technically, two goods whose cross-price elasticity of demand is negative.
- Complete markets** Informally, markets in which the variety of distinct securities traded is so broad that any desired payoff in a future state-of-the-world is achievable.
- Completed contract** A method of revenue recognition in which the company does not recognize any revenue until the contract is completed; used particularly in long-term construction contracts.
- Component cost of capital** The rate of return required by suppliers of capital for an individual source of a company's funding, such as debt or equity.
- Compounding** The process of accumulating interest on interest.
- Comprehensive income** The change in equity of a business enterprise during a period from nonowner sources; includes all changes in equity during a period except those resulting from investments by owners and distributions to owners; comprehensive income equals net income plus other comprehensive income.
- Conditional expected value** The expected value of a stated event given that another event has occurred.
- Conditional probability** The probability of an event given (conditioned on) another event.
- Conditional variances** The variance of one variable, given the outcome of another.
- Consistent** With reference to estimators, describes an estimator for which the probability of estimates close to the value of the population parameter increases as sample size increases.
- Constant-yield price trajectory** A graph that illustrates the change in the price of a fixed-income bond over time assuming no change in yield-to-maturity. The trajectory shows the "pull to par" effect on the price of a bond trading at a premium or a discount to par value.
- Constituent securities** With respect to an index, the individual securities within an index.
- Consumer surplus** The difference between the value that a consumer places on units purchased and the amount of money that was required to pay for them.
- Contingency provision** Clause in a legal document that allows for some action if a specific event or circumstance occurs.
- Contingent claims** Derivatives in which the payoffs occur if a specific event occurs; generally referred to as options.
- Contingent convertible bonds** Bonds that automatically convert into equity if a specific event or circumstance occurs, such as the issuer's equity capital falling below the minimum requirement set by the regulators. Also called *CoCos*.
- Continuation patterns** A type of pattern used in technical analysis to predict the resumption of a market trend that was in place prior to the formation of a pattern.
- Continuous random variable** A random variable for which the range of possible outcomes is the real line (all real numbers between $-\infty$ and $+\infty$ or some subset of the real line).
- Continuous time** Time thought of as advancing in extremely small increments.
- Continuous trading market** A market in which trades can be arranged and executed any time the market is open.
- Continuously compounded return** The natural logarithm of 1 plus the holding period return, or equivalently, the natural logarithm of the ending price over the beginning price.
- Contra account** An account that offsets another account.
- Contract rate** See *mortgage rate*.
- Contraction** The period of a business cycle after the peak and before the trough; often called a *recession* or, if exceptionally severe, called a *depression*.
- Contraction risk** The risk that when interest rates decline, the security will have a shorter maturity than was anticipated at the time of purchase because borrowers refinance at the new, lower interest rates.
- Contractionary** Tending to cause the real economy to contract.
- Contractionary fiscal policy** A fiscal policy that has the objective to make the real economy contract.
- Contracts for differences** See *non-deliverable forwards*.
- Contribution margin** The amount available for fixed costs and profit after paying variable costs; revenue minus variable costs.
- Controlling shareholders** A particular shareholder or block of shareholders holding a percentage of shares that gives them significant voting power.

- Convenience yield** A non-monetary advantage of holding an asset.
- Conventional bond** See *plain vanilla bond*.
- Conventional cash flow** A conventional cash flow pattern is one with an initial outflow followed by a series of inflows.
- Convergence** The tendency for differences in output per capita across countries to diminish over time; in technical analysis, a term that describes the case when an indicator moves in the same manner as the security being analyzed.
- Conversion price** For a convertible bond, the price per share at which the bond can be converted into shares.
- Conversion ratio** For a convertible bond, the number of common shares that each bond can be converted into.
- Conversion value** For a convertible bond, the current share price multiplied by the conversion ratio.
- Convertible bond** Bond that gives the bondholder the right to exchange the bond for a specified number of common shares in the issuing company.
- Convertible preference shares** A type of equity security that entitles shareholders to convert their shares into a specified number of common shares.
- Convexity adjustment** For a bond, one half of the annual or approximate convexity statistic multiplied by the change in the yield-to-maturity squared.
- Core inflation** The inflation rate calculated based on a price index of goods and services except food and energy.
- Corporate governance** The system of internal controls and procedures by which individual companies are managed.
- Correlation** A number between -1 and $+1$ that measures the comovement (linear association) between two random variables.
- Correlation coefficient** A number between -1 and $+1$ that measures the consistency or tendency for two investments to act in a similar way. It is used to determine the effect on portfolio risk when two assets are combined.
- Cost averaging** The periodic investment of a fixed amount of money.
- Cost of capital** The rate of return that suppliers of capital require as compensation for their contribution of capital.
- Cost of carry** See *carry*.
- Cost of debt** The cost of debt financing to a company, such as when it issues a bond or takes out a bank loan.
- Cost of preferred stock** The cost to a company of issuing preferred stock; the dividend yield that a company must commit to pay preferred stockholders.
- Cost-push** Type of inflation in which rising costs, usually wages, compel businesses to raise prices generally.
- Cost recovery method** A method of revenue recognition in which the seller does not report any profit until the cash amounts paid by the buyer—including principal and interest on any financing from the seller—are greater than all the seller's costs for the merchandise sold.
- Cost structure** The mix of a company's variable costs and fixed costs.
- Counterparty risk** The risk that the other party to a contract will fail to honor the terms of the contract.
- Coupon rate** The interest rate promised in a contract; this is the rate used to calculate the periodic interest payments.
- Cournot assumption** Assumption in which each firm determines its profit-maximizing production level assuming that the other firms' output will not change.
- Covariance** A measure of the co-movement (linear association) between two random variables.
- Covariance matrix** A matrix or square array whose entries are covariances; also known as a variance–covariance matrix.
- Covenants** The terms and conditions of lending agreements that the issuer must comply with; they specify the actions that an issuer is obligated to perform (affirmative covenant) or prohibited from performing (negative covenant).
- Covered bond** Debt obligation secured by a segregated pool of assets called the cover pool. The issuer must maintain the value of the cover pool. In the event of default, bondholders have recourse against both the issuer and the cover pool.
- Credit analysis** The evaluation of credit risk; the evaluation of the creditworthiness of a borrower or counterparty.
- Credit curve** A curve showing the relationship between time to maturity and yield spread for an issuer with comparable bonds of various maturities outstanding, usually upward sloping.
- Credit default swap (CDS)** A type of credit derivative in which one party, the credit protection buyer who is seeking credit protection against a third party, makes a series of regularly scheduled payments to the other party, the credit protection seller. The seller makes no payments until a credit event occurs.
- Credit derivatives** A contract in which one party has the right to claim a payment from another party in the event that a specific credit event occurs over the life of the contract.
- Credit enhancements** Provisions that may be used to reduce the credit risk of a bond issue.
- Credit-linked coupon bond** Bond for which the coupon changes when the bond's credit rating changes.
- Credit-linked note (CLN)** Fixed-income security in which the holder of the security has the right to withhold payment of the full amount due at maturity if a credit event occurs.
- Credit migration risk** The risk that a bond issuer's creditworthiness deteriorates, or migrates lower, leading investors to believe the risk of default is higher. Also called *downgrade risk*.
- Credit risk** The risk of loss caused by a counterparty's or debtor's failure to make a promised payment. Also called *default risk*.
- Credit scoring model** A statistical model used to classify borrowers according to creditworthiness.
- Credit spread option** An option on the yield spread on a bond.
- Credit tranching** A structure used to redistribute the credit risk associated with the collateral; a set of bond classes created to allow investors a choice in the amount of credit risk that they prefer to bear.
- Credit-worthiness** The perceived ability of the borrower to pay what is owed on the borrowing in a timely manner; it represents the ability of a company to withstand adverse impacts on its cash flows.
- Cross-default provisions** Provisions whereby events of default such as non-payment of interest on one bond trigger default on all outstanding debt; implies the same default probability for all issues.
- Cross-price elasticity of demand** The percentage change in quantity demanded for a given percentage change in the price of another good; the responsiveness of the demand for Product A that is associated with the change in price of Product B.
- Cross-sectional analysis** Analysis that involves comparisons across individuals in a group over a given time period or at a given point in time.
- Cross-sectional data** Observations over individual units at a point in time, as opposed to time-series data.

- Crossing networks** Trading systems that match buyers and sellers who are willing to trade at prices obtained from other markets.
- Crowding out** The thesis that government borrowing may divert private sector investment from taking place.
- Cryptocurrency** An electronic medium of exchange that lacks physical form.
- Cryptography** An algorithmic process to encrypt data, making the data unusable if received by unauthorized parties.
- Cumulative distribution function** A function giving the probability that a random variable is less than or equal to a specified value.
- Cumulative preference shares** Preference shares for which any dividends that are not paid accrue and must be paid in full before dividends on common shares can be paid.
- Cumulative relative frequency** For data grouped into intervals, the fraction of total observations that are less than the value of the upper limit of a stated interval.
- Cumulative voting** A voting process whereby each shareholder can accumulate and vote all his or her shares for a single candidate in an election, as opposed to having to allocate their voting rights evenly among all candidates.
- Currencies** Monies issued by national monetary authorities.
- Currency option bonds** Bonds that give the bondholder the right to choose the currency in which he or she wants to receive interest payments and principal repayments.
- Currency swap** A swap in which each party makes interest payments to the other in different currencies.
- Current account** A component of the balance of payments account that measures the flow of goods and services.
- Current assets** Assets that are expected to be consumed or converted into cash in the near future, typically one year or less. *Also called liquid assets.*
- Current cost** With reference to assets, the amount of cash or cash equivalents that would have to be paid to buy the same or an equivalent asset today; with reference to liabilities, the undiscounted amount of cash or cash equivalents that would be required to settle the obligation today.
- Current government spending** With respect to government expenditures, spending on goods and services that are provided on a regular, recurring basis including health, education, and defense.
- Current liabilities** Short-term obligations, such as accounts payable, wages payable, or accrued liabilities, that are expected to be settled in the near future, typically one year or less.
- Current ratio** A liquidity ratio calculated as current assets divided by current liabilities.
- Current yield** The sum of the coupon payments received over the year divided by the flat price; also called the *income or interest yield or running yield.*
- Curve duration** The sensitivity of the bond price (or the market value of a financial asset or liability) with respect to a benchmark yield curve.
- Customs union** Extends the free trade area (FTA) by not only allowing free movement of goods and services among members, but also creating a common trade policy against nonmembers.
- CVaR** Conditional VaR, a tail loss measure. The weighted average of all loss outcomes in the statistical distribution that exceed the VaR loss.
- Cyclical** See *cyclical companies.*
- Cyclical companies** Companies with sales and profits that regularly expand and contract with the business cycle or state of economy.
- Daily settlement** See *mark to market* and *marking to market.*
- Dark pools** Alternative trading systems that do not display the orders that their clients send to them.
- Data mining** The practice of determining a model by extensive searching through a dataset for statistically significant patterns. Also called *data snooping.*
- Data science** An interdisciplinary field that brings computer science, statistics, and other disciplines together to analyze and produce insights from Big Data.
- Data snooping** See *data mining.*
- Day order** An order that is good for the day on which it is submitted. If it has not been filled by the close of business, the order expires unfilled.
- Day's sales outstanding** Estimate of the average number of days it takes to collect on credit accounts.
- Days in receivables** Estimate of the average number of days it takes to collect on credit accounts.
- Days of inventory on hand** An activity ratio equal to the number of days in the period divided by inventory turnover over the period.
- Dead cross** A technical analysis term that describes a situation where a short-term moving average crosses from above a longer-term moving average to below it; this movement is considered bearish.
- Dealers** A financial intermediary that acts as a principal in trades.
- Dealing securities** Securities held by banks or other financial intermediaries for trading purposes.
- Debentures** Type of bond that can be secured or unsecured.
- Debt incurrence test** A financial covenant made in conjunction with existing debt that restricts a company's ability to incur additional debt at the same seniority based on one or more financial tests or conditions.
- Debt-rating approach** A method for estimating a company's before-tax cost of debt based upon the yield on comparably rated bonds for maturities that closely match that of the company's existing debt.
- Debt-to-assets ratio** A solvency ratio calculated as total debt divided by total assets.
- Debt-to-capital ratio** A solvency ratio calculated as total debt divided by total debt plus total shareholders' equity.
- Debt-to-equity ratio** A solvency ratio calculated as total debt divided by total shareholders' equity.
- Declaration date** The day that the corporation issues a statement declaring a specific dividend.
- Decreasing returns to scale** When a production process leads to increases in output that are proportionately smaller than the increase in inputs.
- Deductible temporary differences** Temporary differences that result in a reduction of or deduction from taxable income in a future period when the balance sheet item is recovered or settled.
- Deep learning** Machine learning using neural networks with many hidden layers.
- Deep learning nets** Machine learning using neural networks with many hidden layers.
- Default probability** The probability that a borrower defaults or fails to meet its obligation to make full and timely payments of principal and interest, according to the terms of the debt security. Also called *default risk.*

- Default risk** The probability that a borrower defaults or fails to meet its obligation to make full and timely payments of principal and interest, according to the terms of the debt security. Also called *default probability*.
- Default risk premium** An extra return that compensates investors for the possibility that the borrower will fail to make a promised payment at the contracted time and in the contracted amount.
- Defensive companies** Companies with sales and profits that have little sensitivity to the business cycle or state of the economy.
- Defensive interval ratio** A liquidity ratio that estimates the number of days that an entity could meet cash needs from liquid assets; calculated as (cash + short-term marketable investments + receivables) divided by daily cash expenditures.
- Deferred coupon bond** Bond that pays no coupons for its first few years but then pays a higher coupon than it otherwise normally would for the remainder of its life. Also called *split coupon bond*.
- Deferred income** A liability account for money that has been collected for goods or services that have not yet been delivered; payment received in advance of providing a good or service.
- Deferred revenue** A liability account for money that has been collected for goods or services that have not yet been delivered; payment received in advance of providing a good or service.
- Deferred tax assets** A balance sheet asset that arises when an excess amount is paid for income taxes relative to accounting profit. The taxable income is higher than accounting profit and income tax payable exceeds tax expense. The company expects to recover the difference during the course of future operations when tax expense exceeds income tax payable.
- Deferred tax liabilities** A balance sheet liability that arises when a deficit amount is paid for income taxes relative to accounting profit. The taxable income is less than the accounting profit and income tax payable is less than tax expense. The company expects to eliminate the liability over the course of future operations when income tax payable exceeds tax expense.
- Defined benefit pension plans** Plans in which the company promises to pay a certain annual amount (defined benefit) to the employee after retirement. The company bears the investment risk of the plan assets.
- Defined contribution pension plans** Individual accounts to which an employee and typically the employer makes contributions, generally on a tax-advantaged basis. The amounts of contributions are defined at the outset, but the future value of the benefit is unknown. The employee bears the investment risk of the plan assets.
- Deflation** Negative inflation.
- Degree of confidence** The probability that a confidence interval includes the unknown population parameter.
- Degree of financial leverage** (DFL) The ratio of the percentage change in net income to the percentage change in operating income; the sensitivity of the cash flows available to owners when operating income changes.
- Degree of operating leverage** (DOL) The ratio of the percentage change in operating income to the percentage change in units sold; the sensitivity of operating income to changes in units sold.
- Degree of total leverage** The ratio of the percentage change in net income to the percentage change in units sold; the sensitivity of the cash flows to owners to changes in the number of units produced and sold.
- Degrees of freedom (df)** The number of independent observations used.
- Delta** The sensitivity of the derivative price to a small change in the value of the underlying asset.
- Demand curve** Graph of the inverse demand function. A graph showing the demand relation, either the highest quantity willingly purchased at each price or the highest price willingly paid for each quantity.
- Demand function** A relationship that expresses the quantity demanded of a good or service as a function of own-price and possibly other variables.
- Demand-pull** Type of inflation in which increasing demand raises prices generally, which then are reflected in a business's costs as workers demand wage hikes to catch up with the rising cost of living.
- Demand shock** A typically unexpected disturbance to demand, such as an unexpected interruption in trade or transportation.
- Dependent** With reference to events, the property that the probability of one event occurring depends on (is related to) the occurrence of another event.
- Depository bank** A bank that raises funds from depositors and other investors and lends it to borrowers.
- Depository institutions** Commercial banks, savings and loan banks, credit unions, and similar institutions that raise funds from depositors and other investors and lend it to borrowers.
- Depository receipt** A security that trades like an ordinary share on a local exchange and represents an economic interest in a foreign company.
- Depreciation** The process of systematically allocating the cost of long-lived (tangible) assets to the periods during which the assets are expected to provide economic benefits.
- Depression** See *contraction*.
- Derivative pricing rule** A pricing rule used by crossing networks in which a price is taken (derived) from the price that is current in the asset's primary market.
- Derivatives** A financial instrument whose value depends on the value of some underlying asset or factor (e.g., a stock price, an interest rate, or exchange rate).
- Descriptive statistics** The study of how data can be summarized effectively.
- Development capital** Minority equity investments in more-mature companies that are seeking capital to expand or restructure operations, enter new markets, or finance major acquisitions.
- Diffuse prior** The assumption of equal prior probabilities.
- Diffusion index** Reflects the proportion of the index's components that are moving in a pattern consistent with the overall index.
- Diluted EPS** The EPS that would result if all dilutive securities were converted into common shares.
- Diluted shares** The number of shares that would be outstanding if all potentially dilutive claims on common shares (e.g., convertible debt, convertible preferred stock, and employee stock options) were exercised.
- Diminishing balance method** An accelerated depreciation method, i.e., one that allocates a relatively large proportion of the cost of an asset to the early years of the asset's useful life.

- Diminishing marginal productivity** Describes a state in which each additional unit of input produces less output than previously.
- Direct debit program** An arrangement whereby a customer authorizes a debit to a demand account; typically used by companies to collect routine payments for services.
- Direct financing leases** A type of finance lease, from a lessor perspective, where the present value of the lease payments (lease receivable) equals the carrying value of the leased asset. The revenues earned by the lessor are financing in nature.
- Direct format** With reference to the cash flow statement, a format for the presentation of the statement in which cash flow from operating activities is shown as operating cash receipts less operating cash disbursements. Also called *direct method*.
- Direct method** See *direct format*.
- Direct taxes** Taxes levied directly on income, wealth, and corporate profits.
- Direct write-off method** An approach to recognizing credit losses on customer receivables in which the company waits until such time as a customer has defaulted and only then recognizes the loss.
- Disbursement float** The amount of time between check issuance and a check's clearing back against the company's account.
- Discount** To reduce the value of a future payment in allowance for how far away it is in time; to calculate the present value of some future amount. Also, the amount by which an instrument is priced below its face (par) value.
- Discount interest** A procedure for determining the interest on a loan or bond in which the interest is deducted from the face value in advance.
- Discount margin** See *required margin*.
- Discount rates** In general, the interest rate used to calculate a present value. In the money market, however, discount rate is a specific type of quoted rate.
- Discounted cash flow models** Valuation models that estimate the intrinsic value of a security as the present value of the future benefits expected to be received from the security.
- Discouraged worker** A person who has stopped looking for a job or has given up seeking employment.
- Discrete random variable** A random variable that can take on at most a countable number of possible values.
- Discriminatory pricing rule** A pricing rule used in continuous markets in which the limit price of the order or quote that first arrived determines the trade price.
- Diseconomies of scale** Increase in cost per unit resulting from increased production.
- Dispersion** The variability around the central tendency.
- Display size** The size of an order displayed to public view.
- Distressed investing** Investing in securities of companies in financial difficulties. Private equity funds that specialize in distressed investing typically buy the debt of mature companies in financial difficulties.
- Distributed ledger** A type of database that may be shared among entities in a network.
- Distributed ledger technology** Technology based on a distributed ledger.
- Divergence** In technical analysis, a term that describes the case when an indicator moves differently from the security being analyzed.
- Diversification ratio** The ratio of the standard deviation of an equally weighted portfolio to the standard deviation of a randomly selected security.
- Dividend** A distribution paid to shareholders based on the number of shares owned.
- Dividend discount model** (DDM) A present value model that estimates the intrinsic value of an equity share based on the present value of its expected future dividends.
- Dividend discount model based approach** An approach for estimating a country's equity risk premium. The market rate of return is estimated as the sum of the dividend yield and the growth rate in dividends for a market index. Subtracting the risk-free rate of return from the estimated market return produces an estimate for the equity risk premium.
- Dividend payout ratio** The ratio of cash dividends paid to earnings for a period.
- Divisor** A number (denominator) used to determine the value of a price return index. It is initially chosen at the inception of an index and subsequently adjusted by the index provider, as necessary, to avoid changes in the index value that are unrelated to changes in the prices of its constituent securities.
- Domestic content provisions** Stipulate that some percentage of the value added or components used in production should be of domestic origin.
- Double bottoms** In technical analysis, a reversal pattern that is formed when the price reaches a low, rebounds, and then sells off back to the first low level; used to predict a change from a downtrend to an uptrend.
- Double coincidence of wants** A prerequisite to barter trades, in particular that both economic agents in the transaction want what the other is selling.
- Double declining balance depreciation** An accelerated depreciation method that involves depreciating the asset at double the straight-line rate. This rate is multiplied by the book value of the asset at the beginning of the period (a declining balance) to calculate depreciation expense.
- Double top** In technical analysis, a reversal pattern that is formed when an uptrend reverses twice at roughly the same high price level; used to predict a change from an uptrend to a downtrend.
- Down transition probability** The probability that an asset's value moves down in a model of asset price dynamics.
- Downgrade risk** The risk that a bond issuer's creditworthiness deteriorates, or migrates lower, leading investors to believe the risk of default is higher. Also called *credit migration risk*.
- Drag on liquidity** When receipts lag, creating pressure from the decreased available funds.
- Drawdown** A percentage peak-to-trough reduction in net asset value.
- Dual-currency bonds** Bonds that make coupon payments in one currency and pay the par value at maturity in another currency.
- DuPont analysis** An approach to decomposing return on investment, e.g., return on equity, as the product of other financial ratios.
- Duration** A measure of the approximate sensitivity of a security to a change in interest rates (i.e., a measure of interest rate risk).
- Duration gap** A bond's Macaulay duration minus the investment horizon.
- Dutch Book theorem** A result in probability theory stating that inconsistent probabilities create profit opportunities.
- Early repayment option** See *prepayment option*.

- Earnings per share** The amount of income earned during a period per share of common stock.
- Earnings surprise** The portion of a company's earnings that is unanticipated by investors and, according to the efficient market hypothesis, merits a price adjustment.
- Economic costs** All the remuneration needed to keep a productive resource in its current employment or to acquire the resource for productive use; the sum of total accounting costs and implicit opportunity costs.
- Economic indicator** A variable that provides information on the state of the overall economy.
- Economic loss** The amount by which accounting profit is less than normal profit.
- Economic order quantity–reorder point (EOQ–ROP)** An approach to managing inventory based on expected demand and the predictability of demand; the ordering point for new inventory is determined based on the costs of ordering and carrying inventory, such that the total cost associated with inventory is minimized.
- Economic profit** Equal to accounting profit less the implicit opportunity costs not included in total accounting costs; the difference between total revenue (TR) and total cost (TC). Also called *abnormal profit* or *supernormal profit*.
- Economic stabilization** Reduction of the magnitude of economic fluctuations.
- Economic union** Incorporates all aspects of a common market and in addition requires common economic institutions and coordination of economic policies among members.
- Economies of scale** Reduction in cost per unit resulting from increased production.
- Effective annual rate** The amount by which a unit of currency will grow in a year with interest on interest included.
- Effective annual yield (EAY)** An annualized return that accounts for the effect of interest on interest; EAY is computed by compounding 1 plus the holding period yield forward to one year, then subtracting 1.
- Effective convexity** A *curve convexity* statistic that measures the secondary effect of a change in a benchmark yield curve on a bond's price.
- Effective duration** The sensitivity of a bond's price to a change in a benchmark yield curve.
- Effective interest rate** The borrowing rate or market rate that a company incurs at the time of issuance of a bond.
- Efficient market** A market in which asset prices reflect new information quickly and rationally.
- Elastic** Said of a good or service when the magnitude of elasticity is greater than one.
- Elasticity** The percentage change in one variable for a percentage change in another variable; a general measure of how sensitive one variable is to a change in the value of another variable.
- Elasticity of demand** A measure of the sensitivity of quantity demanded to a change in a product's own price: $\% \Delta Q^D / \% \Delta P$.
- Elasticity of supply** A measure of the sensitivity of quantity supplied to a change in price: $\% \Delta Q^S / \% \Delta P$.
- Electronic communications networks** See *alternative trading systems*.
- Electronic funds transfer (EFT)** The use of computer networks to conduct financial transactions electronically.
- Elliott wave theory** A technical analysis theory that claims that the market follows regular, repeated waves or cycles.
- Embedded option** Contingency provisions that provide the issuer or the bondholders the right, but not the obligation, to take action. These options are not part of the security and cannot be traded separately.
- Empirical probability** The probability of an event estimated as a relative frequency of occurrence.
- Employed** The number of people with a job.
- Enterprise risk management** An overall assessment of a company's risk position. A centralized approach to risk management sometimes called firmwide risk management.
- Enterprise value** A measure of a company's total market value from which the value of cash and short-term investments have been subtracted.
- Equal weighting** An index weighting method in which an equal weight is assigned to each constituent security at inception.
- Equipment trust certificates** Bonds secured by specific types of equipment or physical assets.
- Equity** Assets less liabilities; the residual interest in the assets after subtracting the liabilities.
- Equity risk premium** The expected return on equities minus the risk-free rate; the premium that investors demand for investing in equities.
- Equity swap** A swap transaction in which at least one cash flow is tied to the return to an equity portfolio position, often an equity index.
- ESG** An acronym that encompasses environmental, social and governance.
- ESG incorporation** The integration of qualitative and quantitative environmental, social, and governance factors into traditional security and industry analysis; also known as *ESG integration*.
- ESG integration** The integration of qualitative and quantitative environmental, social, and governance factors into traditional security and industry analysis; also known as *ESG incorporation*.
- ESG investing** The consideration of environmental, social, and governance factors in the investment process.
- Estimate** The particular value calculated from sample observations using an estimator.
- Estimation** With reference to statistical inference, the subdivision dealing with estimating the value of a population parameter.
- Estimator** An estimation formula; the formula used to compute the sample mean and other sample statistics are examples of estimators.
- Ethical principles** Beliefs regarding what is good, acceptable, or obligatory behavior and what is bad, unacceptable, or forbidden behavior.
- Ethics** The study of moral principles or of making good choices. Ethics encompasses a set of moral principles and rules of conduct that provide guidance for our behavior.
- Eurobonds** Type of bond issued internationally, outside the jurisdiction of the country in whose currency the bond is denominated.
- European option** An option that can only be exercised on its expiration date.
- European-style** Said of an option contract that can only be exercised on the option's expiration date.
- Event** Any outcome or specified set of outcomes of a random variable.
- Ex-dividend date** The first date that a share trades without (i.e., "ex") the dividend.

- Excess kurtosis** Degree of kurtosis (fatness of tails) in excess of the kurtosis of the normal distribution.
- Exchanges** Places where traders can meet to arrange their trades.
- Exclusionary screening** An ESG implementation approach that excludes certain sectors or companies that deviate from an investor's accepted standards. Also called *negative screening* or *norms-based screening*.
- Execution instructions** Instructions that indicate how to fill an order.
- Exercise** The process of using an option to buy or sell the underlying.
- Exercise price** The fixed price at which an option holder can buy or sell the underlying. Also called *strike price*, *striking price*, or *strike*.
- Exercise value** The value obtained if an option is exercised based on current conditions. Also known as *intrinsic value*.
- Exhaustive** Covering or containing all possible outcomes.
- Expansion** The period of a business cycle after its lowest point and before its highest point.
- Expansionary** Tending to cause the real economy to grow.
- Expansionary fiscal policy** Fiscal policy aimed at achieving real economic growth.
- Expected inflation** The level of inflation that economic agents expect in the future.
- Expected loss** Default probability times Loss severity given default.
- Expected value** The probability-weighted average of the possible outcomes of a random variable.
- Expenses** Outflows of economic resources or increases in liabilities that result in decreases in equity (other than decreases because of distributions to owners); reductions in net assets associated with the creation of revenues.
- Experience curve** A curve that shows the direct cost per unit of good or service produced or delivered as a typically declining function of cumulative output.
- Export subsidy** Paid by the government to the firm when it exports a unit of a good that is being subsidized.
- Exports** Goods and services that an economy sells to other countries.
- Extension risk** The risk that when interest rates rise, fewer prepayments will occur because homeowners are reluctant to give up the benefits of a contractual interest rate that now looks low. As a result, the security becomes longer in maturity than anticipated at the time of purchase.
- Externality** An effect of a market transaction that is borne by parties other than those who transacted.
- Extra dividend** A dividend paid by a company that does not pay dividends on a regular schedule, or a dividend that supplements regular cash dividends with an extra payment.
- Extreme value theory** A branch of statistics that focuses primarily on extreme outcomes.
- Face value** The amount of cash payable by a company to the bondholders when the bonds mature; the promised payment at maturity separate from any coupon payment.
- Factor** A common or underlying element with which several variables are correlated.
- Fair value** The amount at which an asset could be exchanged, or a liability settled, between knowledgeable, willing parties in an arm's-length transaction; the price that would be received to sell an asset or paid to transfer a liability in an orderly transaction between market participants.
- Fed funds rate** The US interbank lending rate on overnight borrowings of reserves.
- Federal funds rate** The US interbank lending rate on overnight borrowings of reserves.
- Fiat money** Money that is not convertible into any other commodity.
- Fibonacci sequence** A sequence of numbers starting with 0 and 1, and then each subsequent number in the sequence is the sum of the two preceding numbers. In Elliott Wave Theory, it is believed that market waves follow patterns that are the ratios of the numbers in the Fibonacci sequence.
- Fiduciary call** A combination of a European call and a risk-free bond that matures on the option expiration day and has a face value equal to the exercise price of the call.
- FIFO method** The first in, first out, method of accounting for inventory, which matches sales against the costs of items of inventory in the order in which they were placed in inventory.
- Fill or kill** See *immediate or cancel order*.
- Finance lease** Essentially, the purchase of some asset by the buyer (lessee) that is directly financed by the seller (lessor). Also called *capital lease*.
- Financial account** A component of the balance of payments account that records investment flows.
- Financial flexibility** The ability to react and adapt to financial adversities and opportunities.
- Financial leverage** The extent to which a company can effect, through the use of debt, a proportional change in the return on common equity that is greater than a given proportional change in operating income; also, short for the financial leverage ratio.
- Financial leverage ratio** A measure of financial leverage calculated as average total assets divided by average total equity.
- Financial risk** The risk that environmental, social, or governance risk factors will result in significant costs or other losses to a company and its shareholders; the risk arising from a company's obligation to meet required payments under its financing agreements.
- Financing activities** Activities related to obtaining or repaying capital to be used in the business (e.g., equity and long-term debt).
- Fintech** Technological innovation in the design and delivery of financial services and products in the financial industry.
- Firm commitment offering** See *underwritten offering*.
- First-degree price discrimination** Where a monopolist is able to charge each customer the highest price the customer is willing to pay.
- First lien debt** Debt secured by a pledge of certain assets that could include buildings, but may also include property and equipment, licenses, patents, brands, etc.
- First mortgage debt** Debt secured by a pledge of a specific property.
- Fiscal multiplier** The ratio of a change in national income to a change in government spending.
- Fiscal policy** The use of taxes and government spending to affect the level of aggregate expenditures.
- Fisher effect** The thesis that the real rate of interest in an economy is stable over time so that changes in nominal interest rates are the result of changes in expected inflation.
- Fisher index** The geometric mean of the Laspeyres index.
- Fixed charge coverage** A solvency ratio measuring the number of times interest and lease payments are covered by operating income, calculated as (EBIT + lease payments) divided by (interest payments + lease payments).
- Fixed costs** Costs that remain at the same level regardless of a company's level of production and sales.

- Fixed-for-floating interest rate swap** An interest rate swap in which one party pays a fixed rate and the other pays a floating rate, with both sets of payments in the same currency. Also called *plain vanilla swap* or *vanilla swap*.
- Fixed rate perpetual preferred stock** Nonconvertible, non-cancellable preferred stock that has a fixed dividend rate and no maturity date.
- Flags** A technical analysis continuation pattern formed by parallel trendlines, typically over a short period.
- Flat price** The full price of a bond minus the accrued interest; also called the *quoted* or *clean* price.
- Float** In the context of customer receipts, the amount of money that is in transit between payments made by customers and the funds that are usable by the company.
- Float-adjusted market-capitalization weighting** An index weighting method in which the weight assigned to each constituent security is determined by adjusting its market capitalization for its market float.
- Float factor** An estimate of the average number of days it takes deposited checks to clear; average daily float divided by average daily deposit.
- Floater** See *floating-rate notes*.
- Floating-rate notes** A note on which interest payments are not fixed, but instead vary from period to period depending on the current level of a reference interest rate.
- Flotation cost** Fees charged to companies by investment bankers and other costs associated with raising new capital.
- Foreclosure** Allows the lender to take possession of a mortgaged property if the borrower defaults and then sell it to recover funds.
- Foreign currency reserves** Holding by the central bank of non-domestic currency deposits and non-domestic bonds.
- Foreign direct investment** Direct investment by a firm in one country (the source country) in productive assets in a foreign country (the host country).
- Foreign exchange gains (or losses)** Gains (or losses) that occur when the exchange rate changes between the investor's currency and the currency that foreign securities are denominated in.
- Foreign portfolio investment** Shorter-term investment by individuals, firms, and institutional investors (e.g., pension funds) in foreign financial instruments such as foreign stocks and foreign government bonds.
- Forward commitments** Class of derivatives that provides the ability to lock in a price to transact in the future at a previously agreed-upon price.
- Forward contract** An agreement between two parties in which one party, the buyer, agrees to buy from the other party, the seller, an underlying asset at a later date for a price established at the start of the contract.
- Forward curve** A series of forward rates, each having the same timeframe.
- Forward market** For future delivery, beyond the usual settlement time period in the cash market.
- Forward price** The fixed price or rate at which the transaction scheduled to occur at the expiration of a forward contract will take place. This price is agreed on at the initiation date of the contract.
- Forward rate** The interest rate on a bond or money market instrument traded in a forward market. A forward rate can be interpreted as an incremental, or marginal, return for extending the time-to-maturity for an additional time period.
- Forward rate agreements** A forward contract calling for one party to make a fixed interest payment and the other to make an interest payment at a rate to be determined at the contract expiration.
- Fractile** A value at or below which a stated fraction of the data lies.
- Fractional reserve banking** Banking in which reserves constitute a fraction of deposits.
- Free cash flow** The actual cash that would be available to the company's investors after making all investments necessary to maintain the company as an ongoing enterprise (also referred to as free cash flow to the firm); the internally generated funds that can be distributed to the company's investors (e.g., shareholders and bondholders) without impairing the value of the company.
- Free cash flow to equity (FCFE)** The cash flow available to a company's common shareholders after all operating expenses, interest, and principal payments have been made, and necessary investments in working and fixed capital have been made.
- Free-cash-flow-to-equity models** Valuation models based on discounting expected future free cash flow to equity.
- Free cash flow to the firm (FCFF)** The cash flow available to the company's suppliers of capital after all operating expenses have been paid and necessary investments in working capital and fixed capital have been made.
- Free float** The number of shares that are readily and freely tradable in the secondary market.
- Free trade** When there are no government restrictions on a country's ability to trade.
- Free trade areas** One of the most prevalent forms of regional integration, in which all barriers to the flow of goods and services among members have been eliminated.
- Frequency distribution** A tabular display of data summarized into a relatively small number of intervals.
- Frequency polygon** A graph of a frequency distribution obtained by drawing straight lines joining successive points representing the class frequencies.
- Full price** The price of a security with accrued interest; also called the *invoice* or *dirty* price.
- Fundamental analysis** The examination of publicly available information and the formulation of forecasts to estimate the intrinsic value of assets.
- Fundamental value** The underlying or true value of an asset based on an analysis of its qualitative and quantitative characteristics. Also called *intrinsic value*.
- Fundamental weighting** An index weighting method in which the weight assigned to each constituent security is based on its underlying company's size. It attempts to address the disadvantages of market-capitalization weighting by using measures that are independent of the constituent security's price.
- Funds of funds** Funds that hold a portfolio of hedge funds.
- Funds of hedge funds** Funds that hold a portfolio of hedge funds.
- Future value (FV)** The amount to which a payment or series of payments will grow by a stated future date.
- Futures contract** A variation of a forward contract that has essentially the same basic definition but with some additional features, such as a clearinghouse guarantee against credit losses, a daily settlement of gains and losses, and an organized electronic or floor trading facility.
- Futures price** The agreed-upon price of a futures contract.

- FX swap** The combination of a spot and a forward FX transaction.
- G-spread** The yield spread in basis points over an actual or interpolated government bond.
- Gains** Asset inflows not directly related to the ordinary activities of the business.
- Game theory** The set of tools decision makers use to incorporate responses by rival decision makers into their strategies.
- Gamma** A numerical measure of how sensitive an option's delta (the sensitivity of the derivative's price) is to a change in the value of the underlying.
- GDP deflator** A gauge of prices and inflation that measures the aggregate changes in prices across the overall economy.
- General partner** (GP) The partner that runs the business and theoretically bears unlimited liability.
- Geometric mean** A measure of central tendency computed by taking the n th root of the product of n non-negative values.
- Giffen goods** Goods that are consumed more as the price of the good rises because it is a very inferior good whose income effect overwhelms its substitution effect when price changes.
- Gilts** Bonds issued by the UK government.
- Giro system** An electronic payment system used widely in Europe and Japan.
- Global depository receipt** A depository receipt that is issued outside of the company's home country and outside of the United States.
- Global minimum-variance portfolio** The portfolio on the minimum-variance frontier with the smallest variance of return.
- Global registered share** A common share that is traded on different stock exchanges around the world in different currencies.
- Gold standard** With respect to a currency, if a currency is on the gold standard a given amount can be converted into a prespecified amount of gold.
- Golden cross** A technical analysis term that describes a situation where a short-term moving average crosses from below a longer-term moving average to above it; this movement is considered bullish.
- Good-on-close** An execution instruction specifying that an order can only be filled at the close of trading. Also called *market on close*.
- Good-on-open** An execution instruction specifying that an order can only be filled at the opening of trading.
- Good-till-cancelled order** An order specifying that it is valid until the entity placing the order has cancelled it (or, commonly, until some specified amount of time such as 60 days has elapsed, whichever comes sooner).
- Goodwill** An intangible asset that represents the excess of the purchase price of an acquired company over the value of the net assets acquired.
- Government equivalent yield** A yield that restates a yield-to-maturity based on 30/360 day-count to one based on actual/actual.
- Green bonds** A bond used in green finance whereby the proceeds are earmarked towards environmental-related products.
- Green finance** A type of finance that addresses environmental concerns while achieving economic growth.
- Grey market** The forward market for bonds about to be issued. Also called "when issued" market.
- Gross domestic product** The market value of all final goods and services produced within the economy in a given period of time (output definition) or, equivalently, the aggregate income earned by all households, all companies, and the government within the economy in a given period of time (income definition).
- Gross margin** Sales minus the cost of sales (i.e., the cost of goods sold for a manufacturing company).
- Gross profit** Sales minus the cost of sales (i.e., the cost of goods sold for a manufacturing company).
- Gross profit margin** The ratio of gross profit to revenues.
- Grouping by function** With reference to the presentation of expenses in an income statement, the grouping together of expenses serving the same function, e.g. all items that are costs of goods sold.
- Grouping by nature** With reference to the presentation of expenses in an income statement, the grouping together of expenses by similar nature, e.g., all depreciation expenses.
- Growth cyclical** A term sometimes used to describe companies that are growing rapidly on a long-term basis but that still experience above-average fluctuation in their revenues and profits over the course of a business cycle.
- Growth investors** With reference to equity investors, investors who seek to invest in high-earnings-growth companies.
- Guarantee certificate** A type of structured financial instrument that provides investors capital protection. It combines a zero-coupon bond and a call option on some underlying asset.
- Haircut** See *repo margin*.
- Harmonic mean** A type of weighted mean computed by averaging the reciprocals of the observations, then taking the reciprocal of that average.
- Head and shoulders pattern** In technical analysis, a reversal pattern that is formed in three parts: a left shoulder, head, and right shoulder; used to predict a change from an uptrend to a downtrend.
- Headline inflation** The inflation rate calculated based on the price index that includes all goods and services in an economy.
- Hedge funds** Private investment vehicles that typically use leverage, derivatives, and long and short investment strategies.
- Hedge portfolio** A hypothetical combination of the derivative and its underlying that eliminates risk.
- Held for trading** Debt or equity financial assets bought with the intention to sell them in the near term, usually less than three months; securities that a company intends to trade. Also called *trading securities*.
- Held-to-maturity** Debt (fixed-income) securities that a company intends to hold to maturity; these are presented at their original cost, updated for any amortization of discounts or premiums.
- Herding** Clustered trading that may or may not be based on information.
- Hidden order** An order that is exposed not to the public but only to the brokers or exchanges that receive it.
- High-frequency trading** A form of algorithmic trading that makes use of vast quantities of data to execute trades on ultra-high-speed networks in fractions of a second.
- High-water marks** The highest value, net of fees, that a fund has reached in history. It reflects the highest cumulative return used to calculate an incentive fee.
- Histogram** A bar chart of data that have been grouped into a frequency distribution.

- Historical cost** In reference to assets, the amount paid to purchase an asset, including any costs of acquisition and/or preparation; with reference to liabilities, the amount of proceeds received in exchange in issuing the liability.
- Historical equity risk premium approach** An estimate of a country's equity risk premium that is based upon the historical averages of the risk-free rate and the rate of return on the market portfolio.
- Historical simulation** Another term for the historical method of estimating VaR. This term is somewhat misleading in that the method involves not a *simulation* of the past but rather what *actually happened* in the past, sometimes adjusted to reflect the fact that a different portfolio may have existed in the past than is planned for the future.
- Holder-of-record date** The date that a shareholder listed on the corporation's books will be deemed to have ownership of the shares for purposes of receiving an upcoming dividend.
- Holding period return** The return that an investor earns during a specified holding period; a synonym for total return.
- Holding period yield (HPY)** The return that an investor earns during a specified holding period; holding period return with reference to a fixed-income instrument.
- Homogeneity of expectations** The assumption that all investors have the same economic expectations and thus have the same expectations of prices, cash flows, and other investment characteristics.
- Horizon yield** The internal rate of return between the total return (the sum of reinvested coupon payments and the sale price or redemption amount) and the purchase price of the bond.
- Horizontal analysis** Common-size analysis that involves comparing a specific financial statement with that statement in prior or future time periods; also, cross-sectional analysis of one company with another.
- Horizontal demand schedule** Implies that at a given price, the response in the quantity demanded is infinite.
- Hostile takeover** An attempt by one entity to acquire a company without the consent of the company's management.
- Household** A person or a group of people living in the same residence, taken as a basic unit in economic analysis.
- Human capital** The accumulated knowledge and skill that workers acquire from education, training, or life experience and the corresponding present value of future earnings to be generated by said skilled individual.
- Hurdle rate** The rate of return that must be met for a project to be accepted.
- Hypothesis** With reference to statistical inference, a statement about one or more populations.
- Hypothesis testing** With reference to statistical inference, the subdivision dealing with the testing of hypotheses about one or more populations.
- I-spread** The yield spread of a specific bond over the standard swap rate in that currency of the same tenor.
- Iceberg order** An order in which the display size is less than the order's full size.
- If-converted method** A method for accounting for the effect of convertible securities on earnings per share (EPS) that specifies what EPS would have been if the convertible securities had been converted at the beginning of the period, taking account of the effects of conversion on net income and the weighted average number of shares outstanding.
- Immediate or cancel order** An order that is valid only upon receipt by the broker or exchange. If such an order cannot be filled in part or in whole upon receipt, it cancels immediately. Also called *fill or kill*.
- Impact investing** Investing that seeks to achieve targeted social or environmental objectives along with measurable financial returns through engagement with a company or by direct investment in projects or companies.
- Impact lag** The lag associated with the result of actions affecting the economy with delay.
- Implicit price deflator for GDP** A gauge of prices and inflation that measures the aggregate changes in prices across the overall economy.
- Implied forward rates** Calculated from spot rates, an implied forward rate is a break-even reinvestment rate that links the return on an investment in a shorter-term zero-coupon bond to the return on an investment in a longer-term zero-coupon bond.
- Implied volatility** The volatility that option traders use to price an option, implied by the price of the option and a particular option-pricing model.
- Import license** Specifies the quantity of a good that can be imported into a country.
- Imports** Goods and services that a domestic economy (i.e., households, firms, and government) purchases from other countries.
- In the money** Options that, if exercised, would result in the value received being worth more than the payment required to exercise.
- Incentive fee** Fees paid to the general partner from the limited partner(s) based on realized profits.
- Income** Increases in economic benefits in the form of inflows or enhancements of assets, or decreases of liabilities that result in an increase in equity (other than increases resulting from contributions by owners).
- Income elasticity of demand** A measure of the responsiveness of demand to changes in income, defined as the percentage change in quantity demanded divided by the percentage change in income.
- Income tax paid** The actual amount paid for income taxes in the period; not a provision, but the actual cash outflow.
- Income tax payable** The income tax owed by the company on the basis of taxable income.
- Income trust** A type of equity ownership vehicle established as a trust issuing ownership shares known as units.
- Increasing marginal returns** When the marginal product of a resource increases as additional units of that input are employed.
- Increasing returns to scale** When a production process leads to increases in output that are proportionately larger than the increase in inputs.
- Incremental cash flow** The cash flow that is realized because of a decision; the changes or increments to cash flows resulting from a decision or action.
- Indenture** Legal contract that describes the form of a bond, the obligations of the issuer, and the rights of the bondholders. Also called the *trust deed*.
- Independent** With reference to events, the property that the occurrence of one event does not affect the probability of another event occurring.
- Independent projects** Independent projects are projects whose cash flows are independent of each other.

- Independently and identically distributed (IID)** With respect to random variables, the property of random variables that are independent of each other but follow the identical probability distribution.
- Index-linked bond** Bond for which coupon payments and/or principal repayment are linked to a specified index.
- Index of Leading Economic Indicators** A composite of economic variables used by analysts to predict future economic conditions.
- Indexing** An investment strategy in which an investor constructs a portfolio to mirror the performance of a specified index.
- Indifference curve** A curve representing all the combinations of two goods or attributes such that the consumer is entirely indifferent among them.
- Indirect format** With reference to cash flow statements, a format for the presentation of the statement which, in the operating cash flow section, begins with net income then shows additions and subtractions to arrive at operating cash flow. Also called *indirect method*.
- Indirect method** See *indirect format*.
- Indirect taxes** Taxes such as taxes on spending, as opposed to direct taxes.
- Industry** A group of companies offering similar products and/or services.
- Industry analysis** The analysis of a specific branch of manufacturing, service, or trade.
- Inelastic** Said of a good or service when the magnitude of elasticity is less than one. Insensitive to price changes.
- Inferior goods** A good whose consumption decreases as income increases.
- Inflation** The percentage increase in the general price level from one period to the next; a sustained rise in the overall level of prices in an economy.
- Inflation-linked bond** Type of index-linked bond that offers investors protection against inflation by linking the bond's coupon payments and/or the principal repayment to an index of consumer prices. Also called *linkers*.
- Inflation premium** An extra return that compensates investors for expected inflation.
- Inflation rate** The percentage change in a price index—that is, the speed of overall price level movements.
- Inflation Reports** A type of economic publication put out by many central banks.
- Inflation uncertainty** The degree to which economic agents view future rates of inflation as difficult to forecast.
- Information cascade** The transmission of information from those participants who act first and whose decisions influence the decisions of others.
- Information-motivated traders** Traders that trade to profit from information that they believe allows them to predict future prices.
- Informationally efficient market** A market in which asset prices reflect new information quickly and rationally.
- Initial coin offering** An unregulated process whereby companies raise capital by selling crypto tokens to investors in exchange for fiat money or another agreed-upon cryptocurrency.
- Initial margin** The amount that must be deposited in a clearinghouse account when entering into a futures contract.
- Initial margin requirement** The margin requirement on the first day of a transaction as well as on any day in which additional margin funds must be deposited.
- Initial public offering (IPO)** The first issuance of common shares to the public by a formerly private corporation.
- Input productivity** The amount of output produced by workers in a given period of time—for example, output per hour worked; measures the efficiency of labor.
- Installment method** With respect to revenue recognition, a method that specifies that the portion of the total profit of the sale that is recognized in each period is determined by the percentage of the total sales price for which the seller has received cash.
- Installment sales** With respect to revenue recognition, a method that specifies that the portion of the total profit of the sale that is recognized in each period is determined by the percentage of the total sales price for which the seller has received cash.
- Intangible assets** Assets lacking physical substance, such as patents and trademarks.
- Interbank market** The market of loans and deposits between banks for maturities ranging from overnight to one year.
- Interbank money market** The market of loans and deposits between banks for maturities ranging from overnight to one year.
- Interest** Payment for lending funds.
- Interest coverage** A solvency ratio calculated as EBIT divided by interest payments.
- Interest-only mortgage** A loan in which no scheduled principal repayment is specified for a certain number of years.
- Interest rate** A rate of return that reflects the relationship between differently dated cash flows; a discount rate.
- Interest rate swap** A swap in which the underlying is an interest rate. Can be viewed as a currency swap in which both currencies are the same and can be created as a combination of currency swaps.
- Intergenerational data mining** A form of data mining that applies information developed by previous researchers using a dataset to guide current research using the same or a related dataset.
- Intermarket analysis** A field within technical analysis that combines analysis of major categories of securities—namely, equities, bonds, currencies, and commodities—to identify market trends and possible inflections in a trend.
- Internal rate of return (IRR)** The discount rate that makes net present value equal 0; the discount rate that makes the present value of an investment's costs (outflows) equal to the present value of the investment's benefits (inflows).
- Internet of Things** A network arrangement of structures and devices whereby the objects on the network are able to interact and share information.
- Interpolated spread** The yield spread of a specific bond over the standard swap rate in that currency of the same tenor.
- Interquartile range** The difference between the third and first quartiles of a dataset.
- Interval** With reference to grouped data, a set of values within which an observation falls.
- Interval scale** A measurement scale that not only ranks data but also gives assurance that the differences between scale values are equal.
- Intrinsic value** See *exercise value*.
- Inventory blanket lien** The use of inventory as collateral for a loan. Though the lender has claim to some or all of the company's inventory, the company may still sell or use the inventory in the ordinary course of business.
- Inventory investment** Net change in business inventory.

- Inventory turnover** An activity ratio calculated as cost of goods sold divided by average inventory.
- Inverse demand function** A restatement of the demand function in which price is stated as a function of quantity.
- Inverse floater** A type of leveraged structured financial instrument. The cash flows are adjusted periodically and move in the opposite direction of changes in the reference rate.
- Investing activities** Activities which are associated with the acquisition and disposal of property, plant, and equipment; intangible assets; other long-term assets; and both long-term and short-term investments in the equity and debt (bonds and loans) issued by other companies.
- Investment banks** Financial intermediaries that provide advice to their mostly corporate clients and help them arrange transactions such as initial and seasoned securities offerings.
- Investment opportunity schedule** A graphical depiction of a company's investment opportunities ordered from highest to lowest expected return. A company's optimal capital budget is found where the investment opportunity schedule intersects with the company's marginal cost of capital.
- Investment policy statement** (IPS) A written planning document that describes a client's investment objectives and risk tolerance over a relevant time horizon, along with constraints that apply to the client's portfolio.
- Investment property** Property used to earn rental income or capital appreciation (or both).
- IRR rule** An investment decision rule that accepts projects or investments for which the IRR is greater than the opportunity cost of capital.
- January effect** Calendar anomaly that stock market returns in January are significantly higher compared to the rest of the months of the year, with most of the abnormal returns reported during the first five trading days in January. Also called *turn-of-the-year effect*.
- Joint probability** The probability of the joint occurrence of stated events.
- Joint probability function** A function giving the probability of joint occurrences of values of stated random variables.
- Just-in-time (JIT) method** Method of managing inventory that minimizes in-process inventory stocks.
- Key rate duration** A method of measuring the interest rate sensitivities of a fixed-income instrument or portfolio to shifts in key points along the yield curve.
- Keynesians** Economists who believe that fiscal policy can have powerful effects on aggregate demand, output, and employment when there is substantial spare capacity in an economy.
- Kondratieff wave** A 54-year long economic cycle postulated by Nikolai Kondratieff.
- Kurtosis** The statistical measure that indicates the combined weight of the tails of a distribution relative to the rest of the distribution.
- Labor force** The portion of the working age population (over the age of 16) that is employed or is available for work but not working (unemployed).
- Labor productivity** The quantity of goods and services (real GDP) that a worker can produce in one hour of work.
- Laddering strategy** A form of active strategy which entails scheduling maturities on a systematic basis within the investment portfolio such that investments are spread out equally over the term of the ladder.
- Lagging economic indicators** Turning points that take place later than those of the overall economy; they are believed to have value in identifying the economy's past condition.
- Laspeyres index** A price index created by holding the composition of the consumption basket constant.
- Law of demand** The principle that as the price of a good rises, buyers will choose to buy less of it, and as its price falls, they will buy more.
- Law of diminishing marginal returns** The observation that a variable factor's marginal product must eventually fall as more of it is added to a fixed amount of the other factors.
- Law of diminishing returns** The smallest output that a firm can produce such that its long run average costs are minimized.
- Law of one price** The condition in a financial market in which two equivalent financial instruments or combinations of financial instruments can sell for only one price. Equivalent to the principle that no arbitrage opportunities are possible.
- Lead underwriter** The lead investment bank in a syndicate of investment banks and broker-dealers involved in a securities underwriting.
- Leading economic indicators** Turning points that usually precede those of the overall economy; they are believed to have value for predicting the economy's future state, usually near-term.
- Legal tender** Something that must be accepted when offered in exchange for goods and services.
- Lender of last resort** An entity willing to lend money when no other entity is ready to do so.
- Leptokurtic** Describes a distribution that has fatter tails than a normal distribution.
- Lessee** The party obtaining the use of an asset through a lease.
- Lessor** The owner of an asset that grants the right to use the asset to another party.
- Letter of credit** Form of external credit enhancement whereby a financial institution provides the issuer with a credit line to reimburse any cash flow shortfalls from the assets backing the issue.
- Level of significance** The probability of a Type I error in testing a hypothesis.
- Leverage** In the context of corporate finance, leverage refers to the use of fixed costs within a company's cost structure. Fixed costs that are operating costs (such as depreciation or rent) create operating leverage. Fixed costs that are financial costs (such as interest expense) create financial leverage.
- Leveraged buyout** (LBO) A transaction whereby the target company management team converts the target to a privately held company by using heavy borrowing to finance the purchase of the target company's outstanding shares.
- Liabilities** Present obligations of an enterprise arising from past events, the settlement of which is expected to result in an outflow of resources embodying economic benefits; creditors' claims on the resources of a company.
- Life-cycle stage** The stage of the life cycle: embryonic, growth, shakeout, mature, declining.
- LIFO layer liquidation** With respect to the application of the LIFO inventory method, the liquidation of old, relatively low-priced inventory; happens when the volume of sales rises above the volume of recent purchases so that some sales are made from relatively old, low-priced inventory. Also called *LIFO liquidation*.

- LIFO method** The last in, first out, method of accounting for inventory, which matches sales against the costs of items of inventory in the reverse order the items were placed in inventory (i.e., inventory produced or acquired last are assumed to be sold first).
- LIFO reserve** The difference between the reported LIFO inventory carrying amount and the inventory amount that would have been reported if the FIFO method had been used (in other words, the FIFO inventory value less the LIFO inventory value).
- Likelihood** The probability of an observation, given a particular set of conditions.
- Limit down** A limit move in the futures market in which the price at which a transaction would be made is at or below the lower limit.
- Limit order** Instructions to a broker or exchange to obtain the best price immediately available when filling an order, but in no event accept a price higher than a specified (limit) price when buying or accept a price lower than a specified (limit) price when selling.
- Limit order book** The book or list of limit orders to buy and sell that pertains to a security.
- Limit up** A limit move in the futures market in which the price at which a transaction would be made is at or above the upper limit.
- Limitations on liens** Meant to put limits on how much secured debt an issuer can have.
- Limited partners** Partners with limited liability. Limited partnerships in hedge and private equity funds are typically restricted to investors who are expected to understand and to be able to assume the risks associated with the investments.
- Line chart** In technical analysis, a plot of price data, typically closing prices, with a line connecting the points.
- Linear interpolation** The estimation of an unknown value on the basis of two known values that bracket it, using a straight line between the two known values.
- Linear scale** A scale in which equal distances correspond to equal absolute amounts. Also called *arithmetic scale*.
- Linker** See *inflation-linked bond*.
- Liquid market** Said of a market in which traders can buy or sell with low total transaction costs when they want to trade.
- Liquidation** To sell the assets of a company, division, or subsidiary piecemeal, typically because of bankruptcy; the form of bankruptcy that allows for the orderly satisfaction of creditors' claims after which the company ceases to exist.
- Liquidity** The ability to purchase or sell an asset quickly and easily at a price close to fair market value. The ability to meet short-term obligations using assets that are the most readily converted into cash.
- Liquidity premium** An extra return that compensates investors for the risk of loss relative to an investment's fair value if the investment needs to be converted to cash quickly.
- Liquidity ratios** Financial ratios measuring the company's ability to meet its short-term obligations.
- Liquidity risk** The risk that a financial instrument cannot be purchased or sold without a significant concession in price due to the size of the market.
- Liquidity trap** A condition in which the demand for money becomes infinitely elastic (horizontal demand curve) so that injections of money into the economy will not lower interest rates or affect real activity.
- Load fund** A mutual fund in which, in addition to the annual fee, a percentage fee is charged to invest in the fund and/or for redemptions from the fund.
- Loan-to-value ratio** The ratio of a property's purchase price to the amount of its mortgage.
- Lockbox system** A payment system in which customer payments are mailed to a post office box and the banking institution retrieves and deposits these payments several times a day, enabling the company to have use of the fund sooner than in a centralized system in which customer payments are sent to the company.
- Locked limit** A condition in the futures markets in which a transaction cannot take place because the price would be beyond the limits.
- Lockup period** The minimum period before investors are allowed to make withdrawals or redeem shares from a fund.
- Logarithmic scale** A scale in which equal distances represent equal proportional changes in the underlying quantity.
- London interbank offered rate (Libor)** Collective name for multiple rates at which a select set of banks believe they could borrow unsecured funds from other banks in the London interbank market for different currencies and different borrowing periods ranging from overnight to one year.
- Long** The buyer of a derivative contract. Also refers to the position of owning a derivative.
- Long-lived assets** Assets that are expected to provide economic benefits over a future period of time, typically greater than one year. Also called *long-term assets*.
- Long position** A position in an asset or contract in which one owns the asset or has an exercisable right under the contract.
- Long-run average total cost** The curve describing average total cost when no costs are considered fixed.
- Long-term contract** A contract that spans a number of accounting periods.
- Longitudinal data** Observations on characteristic(s) of the same observational unit through time.
- Look-ahead bias** A bias caused by using information that was unavailable on the test date.
- Loss aversion** The tendency of people to dislike losses more than they like comparable gains.
- Loss severity** Portion of a bond's value (including unpaid interest) an investor loses in the event of default.
- Losses** Asset outflows not directly related to the ordinary activities of the business.
- Lower bound** The lowest possible value of an option.
- M^2** A measure of what a portfolio would have returned if it had taken on the same total risk as the market index.
- Macaulay duration** The approximate amount of time a bond would have to be held for the market discount rate at purchase to be realized if there is a single change in interest rate. It indicates the point in time when the coupon reinvestment and price effects of a change in yield-to-maturity offset each other.
- Machine learning** Diverse approaches by which computers are programmed to improve performance in specified tasks with experience.
- Macroeconomics** The branch of economics that deals with aggregate economic quantities, such as national output and national income.
- Maintenance covenants** Covenants in bank loan agreements that require the borrower to satisfy certain financial ratio tests while the loan is outstanding.

- Maintenance margin** The minimum amount that is required by a futures clearinghouse to maintain a margin account and to protect against default. Participants whose margin balances drop below the required maintenance margin must replenish their accounts.
- Maintenance margin requirement** The margin requirement on any day other than the first day of a transaction.
- Management buy-ins** Leveraged buyout in which the current management team is being replaced and the acquiring team will be involved in managing the company.
- Management buyout** (MBO) A leveraged buyout event in which a group of investors consisting primarily of the company's existing management purchase at least controlling interest of its outstanding shares. They may purchase all shares and take the company private.
- Management fee** A fee based on assets under management or committed capital, as applicable, also called a *base fee*.
- Manufacturing resource planning (MRP)** The incorporation of production planning into inventory management. A MRP analysis provides both a materials acquisition schedule and a production schedule.
- Margin** The amount of money that a trader deposits in a margin account. The term is derived from the stock market practice in which an investor borrows a portion of the money required to purchase a certain amount of stock. In futures markets, there is no borrowing so the margin is more of a down payment or performance bond.
- Margin bond** A cash deposit required by the clearinghouse from the participants to a contract to provide a credit guarantee. Also called a *performance bond*.
- Margin call** A request for the short to deposit additional funds to bring their balance up to the initial margin.
- Margin loan** Money borrowed from a broker to purchase securities.
- Marginal cost** The cost of producing an additional unit of a good.
- Marginal probability** The probability of an event *not* conditioned on another event.
- Marginal product** Measures the productivity of each unit of input and is calculated by taking the difference in total product from adding another unit of input (assuming other resource quantities are held constant).
- Marginal propensity to consume** The proportion of an additional unit of disposable income that is consumed or spent; the change in consumption for a small change in income.
- Marginal propensity to save** The proportion of an additional unit of disposable income that is saved (not spent).
- Marginal revenue** The change in total revenue divided by the change in quantity sold; simply, the additional revenue from selling one more unit.
- Marginal value curve** A curve describing the highest price consumers are willing to pay for each additional unit of a good.
- Mark to market** The revaluation of a financial asset or liability to its current market value or fair value.
- Market** A means of bringing buyers and sellers together to exchange goods and services.
- Market anomaly** Change in the price or return of a security that cannot directly be linked to current relevant information known in the market or to the release of new information into the market.
- Market bid-ask spread** The difference between the best bid and the best offer.
- Market-capitalization weighting** An index weighting method in which the weight assigned to each constituent security is determined by dividing its market capitalization by the total market capitalization (sum of the market capitalization) of all securities in the index. Also called *value weighting*.
- Market discount rate** The rate of return required by investors given the risk of the investment in a bond; also called the *required yield* or the *required rate of return*.
- Market float** The number of shares that are available to the investing public.
- Market liquidity risk** The risk that the price at which investors can actually transact—buying or selling—may differ from the price indicated in the market.
- Market model** A regression equation that specifies a linear relationship between the return on a security (or portfolio) and the return on a broad market index.
- Market multiple models** Valuation models based on share price multiples or enterprise value multiples.
- Market-on-close** An execution instruction specifying that an order can only be filled at the close of trading.
- Market order** Instructions to a broker or exchange to obtain the best price immediately available when filling an order.
- Market-oriented investors** With reference to equity investors, investors whose investment disciplines cannot be clearly categorized as value or growth.
- Market rate of interest** The rate demanded by purchases of bonds, given the risks associated with future cash payment obligations of the particular bond issue.
- Market risk** The risk that arises from movements in interest rates, stock prices, exchange rates, and commodity prices.
- Market value** The price at which an asset or security can currently be bought or sold in an open market.
- Marketable limit order** A buy limit order in which the limit price is placed above the best offer, or a sell limit order in which the limit price is placed below the best bid. Such orders generally will partially or completely fill right away.
- Markowitz efficient frontier** The graph of the set of portfolios offering the maximum expected return for their level of risk (standard deviation of return).
- Matching principle** The accounting principle that expenses should be recognized when the associated revenue is recognized.
- Matching strategy** An active investment strategy that includes intentional matching of the timing of cash outflows with investment maturities.
- Matrix pricing** Process of estimating the market discount rate and price of a bond based on the quoted or flat prices of more frequently traded comparable bonds.
- Maturity premium** An extra return that compensates investors for the increased sensitivity of the market value of debt to a change in market interest rates as maturity is extended.
- Maturity structure** A factor explaining the differences in yields on similar bonds; also called *term structure*.
- Mean absolute deviation** With reference to a sample, the mean of the absolute values of deviations from the sample mean.
- Mean excess return** The average rate of return in excess of the risk-free rate.
- Mean-variance analysis** An approach to portfolio analysis using expected means, variances, and covariances of asset returns.
- Measure of central tendency** A quantitative measure that specifies where data are centered.

- Measure of value** A standard for measuring value; a function of money.
- Measurement scales** A scheme of measuring differences. The four types of measurement scales are nominal, ordinal, interval, and ratio.
- Measures of location** A quantitative measure that describes the location or distribution of data; includes not only measures of central tendency but also other measures such as percentiles.
- Median** The value of the middle item of a set of items that has been sorted into ascending or descending order; the 50th percentile.
- Medium of exchange** Any asset that can be used to purchase goods and services or to repay debts; a function of money.
- Medium-term note** A corporate bond offered continuously to investors by an agent of the issuer, designed to fill the funding gap between commercial paper and long-term bonds.
- Menu costs** A cost of inflation in which businesses constantly have to incur the costs of changing the advertised prices of their goods and services.
- Mesokurtic** Describes a distribution with kurtosis identical to that of the normal distribution.
- Mezzanine financing** Debt or preferred shares with a relationship to common equity resulting from a feature such as attached warrants or conversion options. Mezzanine financing is subordinate to both senior and high-yield debt. It is referred to as mezzanine because of its location on the balance sheet.
- Microeconomics** The branch of economics that deals with markets and decision making of individual economic units, including consumers and businesses.
- Minimum efficient scale** The smallest output that a firm can produce such that its long-run average total cost is minimized.
- Minimum-variance portfolio** The portfolio with the minimum variance for each given level of expected return.
- Minority shareholders** A particular shareholder or block of shareholders holding a small proportion of a company's outstanding shares, resulting in a limited ability to exercise control in voting activities.
- Minsky moment** Named for Hyman Minsky: A point in a business cycle when, after individuals become overextended in borrowing to finance speculative investments, people start realizing that something is likely to go wrong and a panic ensues leading to asset sell-offs.
- Mismatching strategy** An active investment strategy whereby the timing of cash outflows is not matched with investment maturities.
- Modal interval** With reference to grouped data, the most frequently occurring interval.
- Mode** The most frequently occurring value in a set of observations.
- Modern portfolio theory** (MPT) The analysis of rational portfolio choices based on the efficient use of risk.
- Modified duration** A measure of the percentage price change of a bond given a change in its yield-to-maturity.
- Momentum oscillators** A graphical representation of market sentiment that is constructed from price data and calculated so that it oscillates either between a high and a low or around some number.
- Monetarists** Economists who believe that the rate of growth of the money supply is the primary determinant of the rate of inflation.
- Monetary policy** Actions taken by a nation's central bank to affect aggregate output and prices through changes in bank reserves, reserve requirements, or its target interest rate.
- Monetary transmission mechanism** The process whereby a central bank's interest rate gets transmitted through the economy and ultimately affects the rate of increase of prices.
- Monetary union** An economic union in which the members adopt a common currency.
- Money** A generally accepted medium of exchange and unit of account.
- Money convexity** For a bond, the annual or approximate convexity multiplied by the full price.
- Money creation** The process by which changes in bank reserves translate into changes in the money supply.
- Money duration** A measure of the price change in units of the currency in which the bond is denominated given a change in its yield-to-maturity.
- Money market** The market for short-term debt instruments (one-year maturity or less).
- Money market securities** Fixed-income securities with maturities at issuance of one year or less.
- Money market yield** A yield on a basis comparable to the quoted yield on an interest-bearing money market instrument that pays interest on a 360-day basis; the annualized holding period yield, assuming a 360-day year.
- Money multiplier** Describes how a change in reserves is expected to affect the money supply; in its simplest form, 1 divided by the reserve requirement.
- Money neutrality** The thesis that an increase in the money supply leads in the long-run to an increase in the price level, while leaving real variables like output and employment unaffected.
- Money-weighted return** The internal rate of return on a portfolio, taking account of all cash flows.
- Monyness** The relationship between the price of the underlying and an option's exercise price.
- Monopolistic competition** Highly competitive form of imperfect competition; the competitive characteristic is a notably large number of firms, while the monopoly aspect is the result of product differentiation.
- Monopoly** In pure monopoly markets, there are no substitutes for the given product or service. There is a single seller, which exercises considerable power over pricing and output decisions.
- Monte Carlo simulation** An approach to estimating a probability distribution of outcomes to examine what might happen if particular risks are faced. This method is widely used in the sciences as well as in business to study a variety of problems.
- Moral principles** Beliefs regarding what is good, acceptable, or obligatory behavior and what is bad, unacceptable, or forbidden behavior.
- Mortgage-backed securities** Debt obligations that represent claims to the cash flows from pools of mortgage loans, most commonly on residential property.
- Mortgage loan** A loan secured by the collateral of some specified real estate property that obliges the borrower to make a predetermined series of payments to the lender.
- Mortgage pass-through security** A security created when one or more holders of mortgages form a pool of mortgages and sell shares or participation certificates in the pool.
- Mortgage rate** The interest rate on a mortgage loan; also called *contract rate* or *note rate*.

- Moving average** The average of the closing price of a security over a specified number of periods. With each new period, the average is recalculated.
- Moving-average convergence/divergence oscillator** (MACD) A momentum oscillator that is constructed based on the difference between short-term and long-term moving averages of a security's price.
- Multi-factor model** A model that explains a variable in terms of the values of a set of factors.
- Multi-market indexes** Comprised of indexes from different countries, designed to represent multiple security markets.
- Multi-step format** With respect to the format of the income statement, a format that presents a subtotal for gross profit (revenue minus cost of goods sold).
- Multilateral trading facilities** See *alternative trading systems*.
- Multinational corporation** A company operating in more than one country or having subsidiary firms in more than one country.
- Multiplication rule for probabilities** The rule that the joint probability of events *A* and *B* equals the probability of *A* given *B* times the probability of *B*.
- Multiplier models** Valuation models based on share price multiples or enterprise value multiples.
- Multivariate distribution** A probability distribution that specifies the probabilities for a group of related random variables.
- Multivariate normal distribution** A probability distribution for a group of random variables that is completely defined by the means and variances of the variables plus all the correlations between pairs of the variables.
- Muni** A type of non-sovereign bond issued by a state or local government in the United States. It very often (but not always) offers income tax exemptions.
- Municipal bonds** A type of non-sovereign bond issued by a state or local government in the United States. It very often (but not always) offers income tax exemptions.
- Mutual fund** A professionally managed investment pool in which investors in the fund typically each have a pro-rata claim on the income and value of the fund.
- Mutually exclusive projects** Mutually exclusive projects compete directly with each other. For example, if Projects A and B are mutually exclusive, you can choose A or B, but you cannot choose both.
- n* Factorial** For a positive integer *n*, the product of the first *n* positive integers; 0 factorial equals 1 by definition. *n* factorial is written as *n!*.
- Narrow money** The notes and coins in circulation in an economy, plus other very highly liquid deposits.
- Nash equilibrium** When two or more participants in a non-cooperative game have no incentive to deviate from their respective equilibrium strategies given their opponent's strategies.
- National income** The income received by all factors of production used in the generation of final output. National income equals gross domestic product (or, in some countries, gross national product) minus the capital consumption allowance and a statistical discrepancy.
- Natural language processing** Computer programs developed to analyze and interpret human language.
- Natural rate of unemployment** Effective unemployment rate, below which pressure emerges in labor markets.
- Negative screening** An ESG implementation approach that excludes certain sectors or companies that deviate from an investor's accepted standards. Also called *exclusionary screening* or *norms-based screening*.
- Neo-Keynesians** A group of dynamic general equilibrium models that assume slow-to-adjust prices and wages.
- Net book value** The remaining (undepreciated) balance of an asset's purchase cost. For liabilities, the face value of a bond minus any unamortized discount, or plus any unamortized premium.
- Net exports** The difference between the value of a country's exports and the value of its imports (i.e., value of exports minus imports).
- Net income** The difference between revenue and expenses; what remains after subtracting all expenses (including depreciation, interest, and taxes) from revenue.
- Net operating cycle** An estimate of the average time that elapses between paying suppliers for materials and collecting cash from the subsequent sale of goods produced.
- Net present value** (NPV) The present value of an investment's cash inflows (benefits) minus the present value of its cash outflows (costs).
- Net profit margin** An indicator of profitability, calculated as net income divided by revenue; indicates how much of each dollar of revenues is left after all costs and expenses. Also called *profit margin* or *return on sales*.
- Net realisable value** Estimated selling price in the ordinary course of business less the estimated costs necessary to make the sale.
- Net revenue** Revenue after adjustments (e.g., for estimated returns or for amounts unlikely to be collected).
- Net tax rate** The tax rate net of transfer payments.
- Neural networks** Computer programs based on how our own brains learn and process information.
- Neutral rate of interest** The rate of interest that neither spurs on nor slows down the underlying economy.
- New classical macroeconomics** An approach to macroeconomics that seeks the macroeconomic conclusions of individuals maximizing utility on the basis of rational expectations and companies maximizing profits.
- New Keynesians** A group of dynamic general equilibrium models that assume slow-to-adjust prices and wages.
- No-load fund** A mutual fund in which there is no fee for investing in the fund or for redeeming fund shares, although there is an annual fee based on a percentage of the fund's net asset value.
- Node** Each value on a binomial tree from which successive moves or outcomes branch.
- Nominal GDP** The value of goods and services measured at current prices.
- Nominal rate** A rate of interest based on the security's face value.
- Nominal risk-free interest rate** The sum of the real risk-free interest rate and the inflation premium.
- Nominal scale** A measurement scale that categorizes data but does not rank them.
- Non-accelerating inflation rate of unemployment** Effective unemployment rate, below which pressure emerges in labor markets.
- Non-agency RMBS** In the United States, securities issued by private entities that are not guaranteed by a federal agency or a GSE.

- Non-cumulative preference shares** Preference shares for which dividends that are not paid in the current or subsequent periods are forfeited permanently (instead of being accrued and paid at a later date).
- Non-current assets** Assets that are expected to benefit the company over an extended period of time (usually more than one year).
- Non-current liabilities** Obligations that broadly represent a probable sacrifice of economic benefits in periods generally greater than one year in the future.
- Non-cyclical** A company whose performance is largely independent of the business cycle.
- Non-deliverable forwards** Cash-settled forward contracts, used predominately with respect to foreign exchange forwards. Also called *contracts for differences*.
- Non-financial risks** Risks that arise from sources other than changes in the external financial markets, such as changes in accounting rules, legal environment, or tax rates.
- Non-participating preference shares** Preference shares that do not entitle shareholders to share in the profits of the company. Instead, shareholders are only entitled to receive a fixed dividend payment and the par value of the shares in the event of liquidation.
- Non-recourse loan** Loan in which the lender does not have a shortfall claim against the borrower, so the lender can look only to the property to recover the outstanding mortgage balance.
- Non-renewable resources** Finite resources that are depleted once they are consumed, such as oil and coal.
- Non-sovereign bonds** A bond issued by a government below the national level, such as a province, region, state, or city.
- Non-sovereign government bonds** A bond issued by a government below the national level, such as a province, region, state, or city.
- Nonconventional cash flow** In a nonconventional cash flow pattern, the initial outflow is not followed by inflows only, but the cash flows can flip from positive (inflows) to negative (outflows) again (or even change signs several times).
- Nonparametric test** A test that is not concerned with a parameter, or that makes minimal assumptions about the population from which a sample comes.
- Nonsystematic risk** Unique risk that is local or limited to a particular asset or industry that need not affect assets outside of that asset class.
- Normal distribution** A continuous, symmetric probability distribution that is completely described by its mean and its variance.
- Normal goods** Goods that are consumed in greater quantities as income increases.
- Normal profit** The level of accounting profit needed to just cover the implicit opportunity costs ignored in accounting costs.
- Norms-based screening** An ESG implementation approach that excludes certain sectors or companies that deviate from an investor's accepted standards. Also called *negative screening* or *exclusionary screening*.
- Notching** Ratings adjustment methodology where specific issues from the same borrower may be assigned different credit ratings.
- Note rate** See *mortgage rate*.
- Notes payable** Amounts owed by a business to creditors as a result of borrowings that are evidenced by (short-term) loan agreements.
- Notice period** The length of time (typically 30 to 90 days) in advance that investors may be required to notify a fund of their intent to redeem.
- Notional principal** An imputed principal amount.
- NPV rule** An investment decision rule that states that an investment should be undertaken if its NPV is positive but not undertaken if its NPV is negative.
- Number of days of inventory** An activity ratio equal to the number of days in a period divided by the inventory ratio for the period; an indication of the number of days a company ties up funds in inventory.
- Number of days of payables** An activity ratio equal to the number of days in a period divided by the payables turnover ratio for the period; an estimate of the average number of days it takes a company to pay its suppliers.
- Number of days of receivables** Estimate of the average number of days it takes to collect on credit accounts.
- Objective probabilities** Probabilities that generally do not vary from person to person; includes a priori and objective probabilities.
- Off-the-run** Seasoned government bonds are off-the-run securities; they are not the most recently issued or the most actively traded.
- Offer** The price at which a dealer or trader is willing to sell an asset, typically qualified by a maximum quantity (ask size).
- Official interest rate** An interest rate that a central bank sets and announces publicly; normally the rate at which it is willing to lend money to the commercial banks. Also called *official policy rate* or *policy rate*.
- Official policy rate** An interest rate that a central bank sets and announces publicly; normally the rate at which it is willing to lend money to the commercial banks.
- Oligopoly** Market structure with a relatively small number of firms supplying the market.
- On-the-run** The most recently issued and most actively traded sovereign securities.
- One-sided hypothesis test** A test in which the null hypothesis is rejected only if the evidence indicates that the population parameter is greater than (smaller than) θ_0 . The alternative hypothesis also has one side.
- One-tailed hypothesis test** A test in which the null hypothesis is rejected only if the evidence indicates that the population parameter is greater than (smaller than) θ_0 . The alternative hypothesis also has one side.
- Open economy** An economy that trades with other countries.
- Open-end fund** A mutual fund that accepts new investment money and issues additional shares at a value equal to the net asset value of the fund at the time of investment.
- Open interest** The number of outstanding contracts in a clearinghouse at any given time. The open interest figure changes daily as some parties open up new positions, while other parties offset their old positions.
- Open market operations** The purchase or sale of bonds by the national central bank to implement monetary policy. The bonds traded are usually sovereign bonds issued by the national government.
- Operating activities** Activities that are part of the day-to-day business functioning of an entity, such as selling inventory and providing services.
- Operating breakeven** The number of units produced and sold at which the company's operating profit is zero (revenues = operating costs).
- Operating cash flow** The net amount of cash provided from operating activities.

- Operating cycle** A measure of the time needed to convert raw materials into cash from a sale; it consists of the number of days of inventory and the number of days of receivables.
- Operating efficiency ratios** Ratios that measure how efficiently a company performs day-to-day tasks, such as the collection of receivables and management of inventory.
- Operating lease** An agreement allowing the lessee to use some asset for a period of time; essentially a rental.
- Operating leverage** The use of fixed costs in operations.
- Operating profit** A company's profits on its usual business activities before deducting taxes. Also called *operating income*.
- Operating profit margin** A profitability ratio calculated as operating income (i.e., income before interest and taxes) divided by revenue. Also called *operating margin*.
- Operating risk** The risk attributed to the operating cost structure, in particular the use of fixed costs in operations; the risk arising from the mix of fixed and variable costs; the risk that a company's operations may be severely affected by environmental, social, and governance risk factors.
- Operational independence** A bank's ability to execute monetary policy and set interest rates in the way it thought would best meet the inflation target.
- Operational risk** The risk of loss from failures in a company's systems and procedures.
- Operationally efficient** Said of a market, a financial system, or an economy that has relatively low transaction costs.
- Opportunity cost** The value that investors forgo by choosing a particular course of action; the value of something in its best alternative use.
- Option** A financial instrument that gives one party the right, but not the obligation, to buy or sell an underlying asset from or to another party at a fixed price over a specific period of time. Also referred to as *contingent claim* or *option contract*.
- Option-adjusted price** The value of the embedded option plus the flat price of the bond.
- Option-adjusted spread** $OAS = Z\text{-spread} - \text{Option value}$ (in basis points per year).
- Option-adjusted yield** The required market discount rate whereby the price is adjusted for the value of the embedded option.
- Option contract** See *option*.
- Option premium** The amount of money a buyer pays and seller receives to engage in an option transaction.
- Order** A specification of what instrument to trade, how much to trade, and whether to buy or sell.
- Order-driven markets** A market (generally an auction market) that uses rules to arrange trades based on the orders that traders submit; in their pure form, such markets do not make use of dealers.
- Order precedence hierarchy** With respect to the execution of orders to trade, a set of rules that determines which orders execute before other orders.
- Ordinal scale** A measurement scale that sorts data into categories that are ordered (ranked) with respect to some characteristic.
- Ordinary annuity** An annuity with a first cash flow that is paid one period from the present.
- Ordinary shares** Equity shares that are subordinate to all other types of equity (e.g., preferred equity). Also called *common stock* or *common shares*.
- Organized exchange** A securities marketplace where buyers and seller can meet to arrange their trades.
- Other comprehensive income** Items of comprehensive income that are not reported on the income statement; comprehensive income minus net income.
- Out-of-sample test** A test of a strategy or model using a sample outside the time period on which the strategy or model was developed.
- Out of the money** Options that, if exercised, would require the payment of more money than the value received and therefore would not be currently exercised.
- Outcome** A possible value of a random variable.
- Over-the-counter (OTC) markets** A decentralized market where buy and sell orders initiated from various locations are matched through a communications network.
- Overbought** A market condition in which market sentiment is thought to be unsustainably bullish.
- Overcollateralization** Form of internal credit enhancement that refers to the process of posting more collateral than needed to obtain or secure financing.
- Overfitting** An undesirable result from fitting a model so closely to a dataset that it does not perform well on new data.
- Oversold** A market condition in which market sentiment is thought to be unsustainably bearish.
- Own price** The price of a good or service itself (as opposed to the price of something else).
- Own-price elasticity of demand** The percentage change in quantity demanded for a percentage change in good's own price, holding all other things constant.
- Owners' equity** The excess of assets over liabilities; the residual interest of shareholders in the assets of an entity after deducting the entity's liabilities. Also called *shareholders' equity*.
- Paasche index** An index formula using the current composition of a basket of products.
- Paired comparisons test** A statistical test for differences based on paired observations drawn from samples that are dependent on each other.
- Paired observations** Observations that are dependent on each other.
- Pairs arbitrage trade** A trade in two closely related stocks involving the short sale of one and the purchase of the other.
- Panel data** Observations through time on a single characteristic of multiple observational units.
- Par curve** A sequence of yields-to-maturity such that each bond is priced at par value. The bonds are assumed to have the same currency, credit risk, liquidity, tax status, and annual yields stated for the same periodicity.
- Par value** The amount of principal on a bond.
- Parallel shift** A parallel yield curve shift implies that all rates change by the same amount in the same direction.
- Parameter** A descriptive measure computed from or used to describe a population of data, conventionally represented by Greek letters.
- Parametric test** Any test (or procedure) concerned with parameters or whose validity depends on assumptions concerning the population generating the sample.
- Pari passu** On an equal footing.
- Partial duration** See *key rate duration*.
- Participating preference shares** Preference shares that entitle shareholders to receive the standard preferred dividend plus the opportunity to receive an additional dividend if the company's profits exceed a pre-specified level.

- Pass-through rate** The coupon rate of a mortgage pass-through security.
- Passive investment** A buy and hold approach in which an investor does not make portfolio changes based on short-term expectations of changing market or security performance.
- Passive strategy** In reference to short-term cash management, it is an investment strategy characterized by simple decision rules for making daily investments.
- Payable date** The day that the company actually mails out (or electronically transfers) a dividend payment.
- Payment date** The day that the company actually mails out (or electronically transfers) a dividend payment.
- Payments system** The system for the transfer of money.
- Peak** The highest point of a business cycle.
- Peer group** A group of companies engaged in similar business activities whose economics and valuation are influenced by closely related factors.
- Pennants** A technical analysis continuation pattern formed by trendlines that converge to form a triangle, typically over a short period.
- Per capita real GDP** Real GDP divided by the size of the population, often used as a measure of the average standard of living in a country.
- Per unit contribution margin** The amount that each unit sold contributes to covering fixed costs—that is, the difference between the price per unit and the variable cost per unit.
- Percentage-of-completion** A method of revenue recognition in which, in each accounting period, the company estimates what percentage of the contract is complete and then reports that percentage of the total contract revenue in its income statement.
- Percentiles** Quantiles that divide a distribution into 100 equal parts.
- Perfect competition** A market structure in which the individual firm has virtually no impact on market price, because it is assumed to be a very small seller among a very large number of firms selling essentially identical products.
- Perfectly elastic** When the quantity demanded or supplied of a given good is infinitely sensitive to a change in the value of a specified variable (e.g., price).
- Perfectly inelastic** When the quantity demanded or supplied of a given good is completely insensitive to a change in the value of a specified variable (e.g., price).
- Performance appraisal** The evaluation of risk-adjusted performance; the evaluation of investment skill.
- Performance bond** See *margin bond*.
- Performance evaluation** The measurement and assessment of the outcomes of investment management decisions.
- Performance fee** Fees paid to the general partner from the limited partner(s) based on realized profits.
- Performance measurement** The calculation of returns in a logical and consistent manner.
- Period costs** Costs (e.g., executives' salaries) that cannot be directly matched with the timing of revenues and which are thus expensed immediately.
- Periodicity** The assumed number of periods in the year, typically matches the frequency of coupon payments.
- Permanent differences** Differences between tax and financial reporting of revenue (expenses) that will not be reversed at some future date. These result in a difference between the company's effective tax rate and statutory tax rate and do not result in a deferred tax item.
- Permissioned networks** Networks that are fully open only to select participants on a DLT network.
- Permissionless networks** Networks that are fully open to any user on a DLT network.
- Permutation** An ordered listing.
- Perpetual bonds** Bonds with no stated maturity date.
- Perpetuity** A perpetual annuity, or a set of never-ending level sequential cash flows, with the first cash flow occurring one period from now. A bond that does not mature.
- Personal consumption expenditures** All domestic personal consumption; the basis for a price index for such consumption called the PCE price index.
- Personal disposable income** Equal to personal income less personal taxes.
- Personal income** A broad measure of household income that includes all income received by households, whether earned or unearned; measures the ability of consumers to make purchases.
- Plain vanilla bond** Bond that makes periodic, fixed coupon payments during the bond's life and a lump-sum payment of principal at maturity. Also called *conventional bond*.
- Platykurtic** Describes a distribution that has relatively less weight in the tails than the normal distribution.
- Point and figure chart** A technical analysis chart that is constructed with columns of X's alternating with columns of O's such that the horizontal axis represents only the number of changes in price without reference to time or volume.
- Point estimate** A single numerical estimate of an unknown quantity, such as a population parameter.
- Point of sale (POS)** Systems that capture transaction data at the physical location in which the sale is made.
- Policy rate** An interest rate that a central bank sets and announces publicly; normally the rate at which it is willing to lend money to the commercial banks.
- Population** All members of a specified group.
- Population mean** The arithmetic mean value of a population; the arithmetic mean of all the observations or values in the population.
- Population standard deviation** A measure of dispersion relating to a population in the same unit of measurement as the observations, calculated as the positive square root of the population variance.
- Population variance** A measure of dispersion relating to a population, calculated as the mean of the squared deviations around the population mean.
- Portfolio company** In private equity, the company in which the private equity fund is investing.
- Portfolio demand for money** The demand to hold speculative money balances based on the potential opportunities or risks that are inherent in other financial instruments.
- Portfolio planning** The process of creating a plan for building a portfolio that is expected to satisfy a client's investment objectives.
- Position** The quantity of an asset that an entity owns or owes.
- Positive screening** An ESG implementation approach that seeks to identify companies that embrace desired ESG-related principles.
- Posterior probability** An updated probability that reflects or comes after new information.
- Potential GDP** The level of real GDP that can be produced at full employment; measures the productive capacity of the economy.
- Power of a test** The probability of correctly rejecting the null—that is, rejecting the null hypothesis when it is false.

- Precautionary money balances** Money held to provide a buffer against unforeseen events that might require money.
- Precautionary stocks** A level of inventory beyond anticipated needs that provides a cushion in the event that it takes longer to replenish inventory than expected or in the case of greater than expected demand.
- Preference shares** A type of equity interest which ranks above common shares with respect to the payment of dividends and the distribution of the company's net assets upon liquidation. They have characteristics of both debt and equity securities. Also called *preferred stock*.
- Preferred stock** See *preference shares*.
- Premium** In the case of bonds, premium refers to the amount by which a bond is priced above its face (par) value. In the case of an option, the amount paid for the option contract.
- Prepaid expense** A normal operating expense that has been paid in advance of when it is due.
- Prepayment option** Contractual provision that entitles the borrower to prepay all or part of the outstanding mortgage principal prior to the scheduled due date when the principal must be repaid. Also called *early repayment option*.
- Prepayment penalty mortgages** Mortgages that stipulate a monetary penalty if a borrower prepays within a certain time period after the mortgage is originated.
- Prepayment risk** The uncertainty that the timing of the actual cash flows will be different from the scheduled cash flows as set forth in the loan agreement due to the borrowers' ability to alter payments, usually to take advantage of interest rate movements.
- Present value (PV)** The present discounted value of future cash flows: For assets, the present discounted value of the future net cash inflows that the asset is expected to generate; for liabilities, the present discounted value of the future net cash outflows that are expected to be required to settle the liabilities.
- Present value models** Valuation models that estimate the intrinsic value of a security as the present value of the future benefits expected to be received from the security. Also called *discounted cash flow models*.
- Pretax margin** A profitability ratio calculated as earnings before taxes divided by revenue.
- Price elasticity of demand** Measures the percentage change in the quantity demanded, given a percentage change in the price of a given product.
- Price index** Represents the average prices of a basket of goods and services.
- Price limits** Limits imposed by a futures exchange on the price change that can occur from one day to the next.
- Price multiple** A ratio that compares the share price with some sort of monetary flow or value to allow evaluation of the relative worth of a company's stock.
- Price priority** The principle that the highest priced buy orders and the lowest priced sell orders execute first.
- Price relative** A ratio of an ending price over a beginning price; it is equal to 1 plus the holding period return on the asset.
- Price return** Measures *only* the price appreciation or percentage change in price of the securities in an index or portfolio.
- Price return index** An index that reflects *only* the price appreciation or percentage change in price of the constituent securities. Also called *price index*.
- Price stability** In economics, refers to an inflation rate that is low on average and not subject to wide fluctuation.
- Price takers** Producers that must accept whatever price the market dictates.
- Price to book value** A valuation ratio calculated as price per share divided by book value per share.
- Price to cash flow** A valuation ratio calculated as price per share divided by cash flow per share.
- Price to earnings ratio** (P/E ratio or P/E) The ratio of share price to earnings per share.
- Price to sales** A valuation ratio calculated as price per share divided by sales per share.
- Price value of a basis point** A version of money duration, it is an estimate of the change in the full price of a bond given a 1 basis point change in the yield-to-maturity.
- Price weighting** An index weighting method in which the weight assigned to each constituent security is determined by dividing its price by the sum of all the prices of the constituent securities.
- Priced risk** Risk for which investors demand compensation for bearing (e.g. equity risk, company-specific factors, macroeconomic factors).
- Primary bond markets** Markets in which issuers first sell bonds to investors to raise capital.
- Primary capital markets (primary markets)** The market where securities are first sold and the issuers receive the proceeds.
- Primary dealers** Financial institutions that are authorized to deal in new issues of sovereign bonds and that serve primarily as trading counterparties of the office responsible for issuing sovereign bonds.
- Primary market** The market where securities are first sold and the issuers receive the proceeds.
- Prime brokers** Brokers that provide services including custody, administration, lending, short borrowing, and trading.
- Principal** The amount of funds originally invested in a project or instrument; the face value to be paid at maturity.
- Principal-agent relationship** A relationship in which a principal hires an agent to perform a particular task or service; also known as an *agency relationship*.
- Principal amount** Amount that an issuer agrees to repay the debt holders on the maturity date.
- Principal business activity** The business activity from which a company derives a majority of its revenues and/or earnings.
- Principal value** Amount that an issuer agrees to repay the debt holders on the maturity date.
- Principle of no arbitrage** See *arbitrage-free pricing*.
- Prior probabilities** Probabilities reflecting beliefs prior to the arrival of new information.
- Priority of claims** Priority of payment, with the most senior or highest ranking debt having the first claim on the cash flows and assets of the issuer.
- Private equity securities** Securities that are not listed on public exchanges and have no active secondary market. They are issued primarily to institutional investors via non-public offerings, such as private placements.
- Private investment in public equity** An investment in the equity of a publicly traded firm that is made at a discount to the market value of the firm's shares.
- Private placement** Typically a non-underwritten, unregistered offering of securities that are sold only to an investor or a small group of investors. It can be accomplished directly between the issuer and the investor(s) or through an investment bank.
- Probability** A number between 0 and 1 describing the chance that a stated event will occur.

- Probability density function** A function with non-negative values such that probability can be described by areas under the curve graphing the function.
- Probability distribution** A distribution that specifies the probabilities of a random variable's possible outcomes.
- Probability function** A function that specifies the probability that the random variable takes on a specific value.
- Producer price index** Reflects the price changes experienced by domestic producers in a country.
- Production function** Provides the quantitative link between the level of output that the economy can produce and the inputs used in the production process.
- Productivity** The amount of output produced by workers in a given period of time—for example, output per hour worked; measures the efficiency of labor.
- Profit** The return that owners of a company receive for the use of their capital and the assumption of financial risk when making their investments.
- Profit and loss (P&L) statement** A financial statement that provides information about a company's profitability over a stated period of time.
- Profit margin** An indicator of profitability, calculated as net income divided by revenue; indicates how much of each dollar of revenues is left after all costs and expenses.
- Profitability ratios** Ratios that measure a company's ability to generate profitable sales from its resources (assets).
- Project sequencing** To defer the decision to invest in a future project until the outcome of some or all of a current project is known. Projects are sequenced through time, so that investing in a project creates the option to invest in future projects.
- Promissory note** A written promise to pay a certain amount of money on demand.
- Property, plant, and equipment** Tangible assets that are expected to be used for more than one period in either the production or supply of goods or services, or for administrative purposes.
- Prospectus** The document that describes the terms of a new bond issue and helps investors perform their analysis on the issue.
- Protective put** An option strategy in which a long position in an asset is combined with a long position in a put.
- Proxy contest** Corporate takeover mechanism in which shareholders are persuaded to vote for a group seeking a controlling position on a company's board of directors.
- Proxy voting** A process that enables shareholders who are unable to attend a meeting to authorize another individual to vote on their behalf.
- Pseudo-random numbers** Numbers produced by random number generators.
- Public offer** See *public offering*.
- Public offering** An offering of securities in which any member of the public may buy the securities. Also called *public offer*.
- Pull on liquidity** When disbursements are paid too quickly or trade credit availability is limited, requiring companies to expend funds before they receive funds from sales that could cover the liability.
- Pure discount bonds** See *zero-coupon bonds*.
- Pure discount instruments** Instruments that pay interest as the difference between the amount borrowed and the amount paid back.
- Pure-play method** A method for estimating the beta for a company or project; it requires using a comparable company's beta and adjusting it for financial leverage differences.
- Put** An option that gives the holder the right to sell an underlying asset to another party at a fixed price over a specific period of time.
- Put–call–forward parity** The relationship among puts, calls, and forward contracts.
- Put–call parity** An equation expressing the equivalence (parity) of a portfolio of a call and a bond with a portfolio of a put and the underlying, which leads to the relationship between put and call prices.
- Put/call ratio** A technical analysis indicator that evaluates market sentiment based upon the volume of put options traded divided by the volume of call options traded for a particular financial instrument.
- Put option** An option that gives the holder the right to sell an underlying asset to another party at a fixed price over a specific period of time.
- Puttable bonds** Bonds that give the bondholder the right to sell the bond back to the issuer at a predetermined price on specified dates.
- Puttable common shares** Common shares that give investors the option (or right) to sell their shares (i.e., “put” them) back to the issuing company at a price that is specified when the shares are originally issued.
- Quantile** A value at or below which a stated fraction of the data lies. Also called *fractile*.
- Quantitative easing** An expansionary monetary policy based on aggressive open market purchase operations.
- Quantity equation of exchange** An expression that over a given period, the amount of money used to purchase all goods and services in an economy, $M \times V$, is equal to monetary value of this output, $P \times Y$.
- Quantity theory of money** Asserts that total spending (in money terms) is proportional to the quantity of money.
- Quartiles** Quartiles that divide a distribution into four equal parts.
- Quasi-fixed cost** A cost that stays the same over a range of production but can change to another constant level when production moves outside of that range.
- Quasi-government bonds** A bond issued by an entity that is either owned or sponsored by a national government. Also called *agency bond*.
- Quick assets** Assets that can be most readily converted to cash (e.g., cash, short-term marketable investments, receivables).
- Quick ratio** A stringent measure of liquidity that indicates a company's ability to satisfy current liabilities with its most liquid assets, calculated as (cash + short-term marketable investments + receivables) divided by current liabilities.
- Quintiles** Quartiles that divide a distribution into five equal parts.
- Quota rents** Profits that foreign producers can earn by raising the price of their goods higher than they would without a quota.
- Quotas** Government policies that restrict the quantity of a good that can be imported into a country, generally for a specified period of time.
- Quote-driven market** A market in which dealers acting as principals facilitate trading.
- Quoted interest rate** A quoted interest rate that does not account for compounding within the year. Also called *stated annual interest rate*.
- Quoted margin** The specified yield spread over the reference rate, used to compensate an investor for the difference in the credit risk of the issuer and that implied by the reference rate.

- Random number** An observation drawn from a uniform distribution.
- Random number generator** An algorithm that produces uniformly distributed random numbers between 0 and 1.
- Random variable** A quantity whose future outcomes are uncertain.
- Range** The difference between the maximum and minimum values in a dataset.
- Ratio scales** A measurement scale that has all the characteristics of interval measurement scales as well as a true zero point as the origin.
- Real GDP** The value of goods and services produced, measured at base year prices.
- Real income** Income adjusted for the effect of inflation on the purchasing power of money. Also known as the *purchasing power of income*. If income remains constant and a good's price falls, real income is said to rise, even though the number of monetary units (e.g., dollars) remains unchanged.
- Real interest rate** Nominal interest rate minus the expected rate of inflation.
- Real risk-free interest rate** The single-period interest rate for a completely risk-free security if no inflation were expected.
- Realizable (settlement) value** With reference to assets, the amount of cash or cash equivalents that could currently be obtained by selling the asset in an orderly disposal; with reference to liabilities, the undiscounted amount of cash or cash equivalents expected to be paid to satisfy the liabilities in the normal course of business.
- Rebalancing** Adjusting the weights of the constituent securities in an index.
- Rebalancing policy** The set of rules that guide the process of restoring a portfolio's asset class weights to those specified in the strategic asset allocation.
- Recession** A period during which real GDP decreases (i.e., negative growth) for at least two successive quarters, or a period of significant decline in total output, income, employment, and sales usually lasting from six months to a year.
- Recognition lag** The lag in government response to an economic problem resulting from the delay in confirming a change in the state of the economy.
- Recourse loan** Loan in which the lender has a claim against the borrower for any shortfall between the outstanding mortgage balance and the proceeds received from the sale of the property.
- Redemption yield** See *yield to maturity*.
- Redemptions** Withdrawals of funds by investors.
- Refinancing rate** A type of central bank policy rate.
- Registered bonds** Bonds for which ownership is recorded by either name or serial number.
- Relative dispersion** The amount of dispersion relative to a reference value or benchmark.
- Relative frequency** With reference to an interval of grouped data, the number of observations in the interval divided by the total number of observations in the sample.
- Relative price** The price of a specific good or service in comparison with those of other goods and services.
- Relative strength analysis** A comparison of the performance of one asset with the performance of another asset or a benchmark based on changes in the ratio of the securities' respective prices over time.
- Relative strength index** A technical analysis momentum oscillator that compares a security's gains with its losses over a set period.
- Renewable resources** Resources that can be replenished, such as a forest.
- Rent** Payment for the use of property.
- Reorganization** Agreements made by a company in bankruptcy under which a company's capital structure is altered and/or alternative arrangements are made for debt repayment; US Chapter 11 bankruptcy. The company emerges from bankruptcy as a going concern.
- Replication** The creation of an asset or portfolio from another asset, portfolio, and/or derivative.
- Repo** A form of collateralized loan involving the sale of a security with a simultaneous agreement by the seller to buy the same security back from the purchaser at an agreed-on price and future date. The party who sells the security at the inception of the repurchase agreement and buys it back at maturity is borrowing money from the other party, and the security sold and subsequently repurchased represents the collateral.
- Repo margin** The difference between the market value of the security used as collateral and the value of the loan. Also called *haircut*.
- Repo rate** The interest rate on a repurchase agreement.
- Repurchase agreement** A form of collateralized loan involving the sale of a security with a simultaneous agreement by the seller to buy the same security back from the purchaser at an agreed-on price and future date. The party who sells the security at the inception of the repurchase agreement and buys it back at maturity is borrowing money from the other party, and the security sold and subsequently repurchased represents the collateral.
- Repurchase date** The date when the party who sold the security at the inception of a repurchase agreement buys the security back from the cash lending counterparty.
- Repurchase price** The price at which the party who sold the security at the inception of the repurchase agreement buys the security back from the cash lending counterparty.
- Required margin** The yield spread over, or under, the reference rate such that an FRN is priced at par value on a rate reset date.
- Required rate of return** See *market discount rate*.
- Required yield** See *market discount rate*.
- Required yield spread** The difference between the yield-to-maturity on a new bond and the benchmark rate; additional compensation required by investors for the difference in risk and tax status of a bond relative to a government bond. Sometimes called the *spread over the benchmark*.
- Reserve accounts** Form of internal credit enhancement that relies on creating accounts and depositing in these accounts cash that can be used to absorb losses. Also called *reserve funds*.
- Reserve funds** See *reserve accounts*.
- Reserve requirement** The requirement for banks to hold reserves in proportion to the size of deposits.
- Resistance** In technical analysis, a price range in which selling activity is sufficient to stop the rise in the price of a security.
- Responsible investing** The practice of identifying companies that can efficiently manage their financial, environmental, and human capital resources to generate attractive long-term profitability; often synonymous with *sustainable investing*.
- Restricted payments** A bond covenant meant to protect creditors by limiting how much cash can be paid out to shareholders over time.

- Retail method** An inventory accounting method in which the sales value of an item is reduced by the gross margin to calculate the item's cost.
- Retracement** In technical analysis, a reversal in the movement of a security's price such that it is counter to the prevailing longer-term price trend.
- Return-generating model** A model that can provide an estimate of the expected return of a security given certain parameters and estimates of the values of the independent variables in the model.
- Return on assets (ROA)** A profitability ratio calculated as net income divided by average total assets; indicates a company's net profit generated per dollar invested in total assets.
- Return on equity (ROE)** A profitability ratio calculated as net income divided by average shareholders' equity.
- Return on sales** An indicator of profitability, calculated as net income divided by revenue; indicates how much of each dollar of revenues is left after all costs and expenses.
- Return on total capital** A profitability ratio calculated as EBIT divided by the sum of short- and long-term debt and equity.
- Revaluation model** The process of valuing long-lived assets at fair value, rather than at cost less accumulated depreciation. Any resulting profit or loss is either reported on the income statement and/or through equity under revaluation surplus.
- Revenue** The amount charged for the delivery of goods or services in the ordinary activities of a business over a stated period; the inflows of economic resources to a company over a stated period.
- Reversal patterns** A type of pattern used in technical analysis to predict the end of a trend and a change in direction of the security's price.
- Reverse repo** A repurchase agreement viewed from the perspective of the cash lending counterparty.
- Reverse repurchase agreement** A repurchase agreement viewed from the perspective of the cash lending counterparty.
- Reverse stock split** A reduction in the number of shares outstanding with a corresponding increase in share price, but no change to the company's underlying fundamentals.
- Revolving credit agreements** The strongest form of short-term bank borrowing facilities; they are in effect for multiple years (e.g., 3–5 years) and may have optional medium-term loan features.
- Rho** The sensitivity of the option price to the risk-free rate.
- Ricardian equivalence** An economic theory that implies that it makes no difference whether a government finances a deficit by increasing taxes or issuing debt.
- Risk** Exposure to uncertainty. The chance of a loss or adverse outcome as a result of an action, inaction, or external event.
- Risk averse** The assumption that an investor will choose the least risky alternative.
- Risk aversion** The degree of an investor's inability and unwillingness to take risk.
- Risk budgeting** The establishment of objectives for individuals, groups, or divisions of an organization that takes into account the allocation of an acceptable level of risk.
- Risk exposure** The state of being exposed or vulnerable to a risk. The extent to which an entity is sensitive to underlying risks.
- Risk governance** The top-down process and guidance that directs risk management activities to align with and support the overall enterprise.
- Risk management** The process of identifying the level of risk an entity wants, measuring the level of risk the entity currently has, taking actions that bring the actual level of risk to the desired level of risk, and monitoring the new actual level of risk so that it continues to be aligned with the desired level of risk.
- Risk management framework** The infrastructure, process, and analytics needed to support effective risk management in an organization.
- Risk-neutral pricing** Sometimes said of derivatives pricing, uses the fact that arbitrage opportunities guarantee that a risk-free portfolio consisting of the underlying and the derivative must earn the risk-free rate.
- Risk-neutral probabilities** Weights that are used to compute a binomial option price. They are the probabilities that would apply if a risk-neutral investor valued an option.
- Risk premium** An extra return expected by investors for bearing some specified risk.
- Risk shifting** Actions to change the distribution of risk outcomes.
- Risk tolerance** The amount of risk an investor is willing and able to bear to achieve an investment goal.
- Risk transfer** Actions to pass on a risk to another party, often, but not always, in the form of an insurance policy.
- Robo-adviser** A machine-based analytical tool or service that provides technology-driven investment solutions through online platforms.
- Robust** The quality of being relatively unaffected by a violation of assumptions.
- Rule of 72** The principle that the approximate number of years necessary for an investment to double is 72 divided by the stated interest rate.
- Running yield** See *current yield*.
- Safety-first rules** Rules for portfolio selection that focus on the risk that portfolio value will fall below some minimum acceptable level over some time horizon.
- Safety stock** A level of inventory beyond anticipated needs that provides a cushion in the event that it takes longer to replenish inventory than expected or in the case of greater than expected demand.
- Sales** Generally, a synonym for revenue; "sales" is generally understood to refer to the sale of goods, whereas "revenue" is understood to include the sale of goods or services.
- Sales risk** Uncertainty with respect to the quantity of goods and services that a company is able to sell and the price it is able to achieve; the risk related to the uncertainty of revenues.
- Sales-type leases** A type of finance lease, from a lessor perspective, where the present value of the lease payments (lease receivable) exceeds the carrying value of the leased asset. The revenues earned by the lessor are operating (the profit on the sale) and financing (interest) in nature.
- Sample** A subset of a population.
- Sample excess kurtosis** A sample measure of the degree of a distribution's kurtosis in excess of the normal distribution's kurtosis.
- Sample kurtosis** A sample measure of the degree of a distribution's peakedness.
- Sample mean** The sum of the sample observations, divided by the sample size.

- Sample selection bias** Bias introduced by systematically excluding some members of the population according to a particular attribute—for example, the bias introduced when data availability leads to certain observations being excluded from the analysis.
- Sample skewness** A sample measure of degree of asymmetry of a distribution.
- Sample standard deviation** The positive square root of the sample variance.
- Sample statistic** A quantity computed from or used to describe a sample.
- Sample variance** A sample measure of the degree of dispersion of a distribution, calculated by dividing the sum of the squared deviations from the sample mean by the sample size minus 1.
- Sampling** The process of obtaining a sample.
- Sampling distribution** The distribution of all distinct possible values that a statistic can assume when computed from samples of the same size randomly drawn from the same population.
- Sampling error** The difference between the observed value of a statistic and the quantity it is intended to estimate.
- Sampling plan** The set of rules used to select a sample.
- Say on pay** A process whereby shareholders may vote on executive remuneration (compensation) matters.
- Say's law** Named for French economist J.B. Say: All that is produced will be sold because supply creates its own demand.
- Scenario analysis** Analysis that shows the changes in key financial quantities that result from given (economic) events, such as the loss of customers, the loss of a supply source, or a catastrophic event; a risk management technique involving examination of the performance of a portfolio under specified situations. Closely related to stress testing.
- Screening** The application of a set of criteria to reduce a set of potential investments to a smaller set having certain desired characteristics.
- Seasoned offering** An offering in which an issuer sells additional units of a previously issued security.
- Second-degree price discrimination** When the monopolist charges different per-unit prices using the quantity purchased as an indicator of how highly the customer values the product.
- Second lien** A secured interest in the pledged assets that ranks below first lien debt in both collateral protection and priority of payment.
- Secondary bond markets** Markets in which existing bonds are traded among investors.
- Secondary market** The market where securities are traded among investors.
- Secondary precedence rules** Rules that determine how to rank orders placed at the same time.
- Sector** A group of related industries.
- Sector indexes** Indexes that represent and track different economic sectors—such as consumer goods, energy, finance, health care, and technology—on either a national, regional, or global basis.
- Secured bonds** Bonds secured by assets or financial guarantees pledged to ensure debt repayment in case of default.
- Secured debt** Debt in which the debtholder has a direct claim—a pledge from the issuer—on certain assets and their associated cash flows.
- Securitization** A process that involves moving assets into a special legal entity, which then uses the assets as guarantees to secure a bond issue.
- Securitized assets** Assets that are typically used to create asset-backed bonds; for example, when a bank securitizes a pool of loans, the loans are said to be securitized.
- Security characteristic line** A plot of the excess return of a security on the excess return of the market.
- Security market index** A portfolio of securities representing a given security market, market segment, or asset class.
- Security market line** (SML) The graph of the capital asset pricing model.
- Security selection** The process of selecting individual securities; typically, security selection has the objective of generating superior risk-adjusted returns relative to a portfolio's benchmark.
- Self-investment limits** With respect to investment limitations applying to pension plans, restrictions on the percentage of assets that can be invested in securities issued by the pension plan sponsor.
- Sell-side firm** A broker or dealer that sells securities to and provides independent investment research and recommendations to investment management companies.
- Semi-strong-form efficient market** A market in which security prices reflect all publicly known and available information.
- Semiannual bond basis yield** An annual rate having a periodicity of two; also known as a *semiannual bond equivalent yield*.
- Semiannual bond equivalent yield** See *semiannual bond basis yield*.
- Semideviation** The positive square root of semivariance (sometimes called *semistandard deviation*).
- Semilogarithmic** Describes a scale constructed so that equal intervals on the vertical scale represent equal rates of change, and equal intervals on the horizontal scale represent equal amounts of change.
- Semivariance** The average squared deviation below the mean.
- Seniority ranking** Priority of payment of various debt obligations.
- Sensitivity analysis** Analysis that shows the range of possible outcomes as specific assumptions are changed.
- Separately managed account** (SMA) An investment portfolio managed exclusively for the benefit of an individual or institution.
- Serial maturity structure** Structure for a bond issue in which the maturity dates are spread out during the bond's life; a stated number of bonds mature and are paid off each year before final maturity.
- Settlement** The process that occurs after a trade is completed, the securities are passed to the buyer, and payment is received by the seller.
- Settlement date** Date when the buyer makes cash payment and the seller delivers the security.
- Settlement price** The official price, designated by the clearinghouse, from which daily gains and losses will be determined and marked to market.
- Share repurchase** A transaction in which a company buys back its own shares. Unlike stock dividends and stock splits, share repurchases use corporate cash.
- Shareholder activism** Strategies used by shareholders to attempt to compel a company to act in a desired manner.
- Shareholder engagement** The process whereby companies engage with their shareholders.

- Shareholders' equity** Assets less liabilities; the residual interest in the assets after subtracting the liabilities.
- Sharpe ratio** The average return in excess of the risk-free rate divided by the standard deviation of return; a measure of the average excess return earned per unit of standard deviation of return.
- Shelf registration** Type of public offering that allows the issuer to file a single, all-encompassing offering circular that covers a series of bond issues.
- Short** The seller of an asset or derivative contract. Also refers to the position of being short an asset or derivative contract.
- Short position** A position in an asset or contract in which one has sold an asset one does not own, or in which a right under a contract can be exercised against oneself.
- Short-run average total cost** The curve describing average total cost when some costs are considered fixed.
- Short selling** A transaction in which borrowed securities are sold with the intention to repurchase them at a lower price at a later date and return them to the lender.
- Shortfall risk** The risk that portfolio value will fall below some minimum acceptable level over some time horizon.
- Shutdown point** The point at which average revenue is equal to the firm's average variable cost.
- Simple interest** The interest earned each period on the original investment; interest calculated on the principal only.
- Simple random sample** A subset of a larger population created in such a way that each element of the population has an equal probability of being selected to the subset.
- Simple random sampling** The procedure of drawing a sample to satisfy the definition of a simple random sample.
- Simple yield** The sum of the coupon payments plus the straight-line amortized share of the gain or loss, divided by the flat price.
- Simulation** Computer-generated sensitivity or scenario analysis that is based on probability models for the factors that drive outcomes.
- Simulation trial** A complete pass through the steps of a simulation.
- Single-step format** With respect to the format of the income statement, a format that does not subtotal for gross profit (revenue minus cost of goods sold).
- Sinking fund arrangement** Provision that reduces the credit risk of a bond issue by requiring the issuer to retire a portion of the bond's principal outstanding each year.
- Situational influences** External factors, such as environmental or cultural elements, that shape our behavior.
- Skewed** Not symmetrical.
- Skewness** A quantitative measure of skew (lack of symmetry); a synonym of skew.
- Small country** A country that is a price taker in the world market for a product and cannot influence the world market price.
- Smart contract** A computer program that is designed to self-execute on the basis of pre-specified terms and conditions agreed to by parties to a contract.
- Socially responsible investing** An investment approach that excludes investments in companies or industries that deviate from an organization's beliefs and sometimes includes investments with favorable environmental or social profiles.
- Solvency** With respect to financial statement analysis, the ability of a company to fulfill its long-term obligations.
- Solvency ratios** Ratios that measure a company's ability to meet its long-term obligations.
- Solvency risk** The risk that an entity does not survive or succeed because it runs out of cash, even though it might otherwise be solvent.
- Sovereign bonds** A bond issued by a national government.
- Sovereign yield spread** An estimate of the country spread (country equity premium) for a developing nation that is based on a comparison of bonds yields in country being analyzed and a developed country. The sovereign yield spread is the difference between a government bond yield in the country being analyzed, denominated in the currency of the developed country, and the Treasury bond yield on a similar maturity bond in the developed country.
- Sovereigns** A bond issued by a national government.
- Spearman rank correlation coefficient** A measure of correlation applied to ranked data.
- Special dividend** A dividend paid by a company that does not pay dividends on a regular schedule, or a dividend that supplements regular cash dividends with an extra payment.
- Special purpose entity** A non-operating entity created to carry out a specified purpose, such as leasing assets or securitizing receivables; can be a corporation, partnership, trust, limited liability, or partnership formed to facilitate a specific type of business activity. Also called *special purpose vehicle* or *variable interest entity*.
- Special purpose vehicle** See *special purpose entity*.
- Specific identification method** An inventory accounting method that identifies which specific inventory items were sold and which remained in inventory to be carried over to later periods.
- Speculative demand for money** The demand to hold speculative money balances based on the potential opportunities or risks that are inherent in other financial instruments. Also called *portfolio demand for money*.
- Speculative money balances** Monies held in anticipation that other assets will decline in value.
- Split coupon bond** See *deferred coupon bond*.
- Sponsored** A type of depository receipt in which the foreign company whose shares are held by the depository has a direct involvement in the issuance of the receipts.
- Spot curve** A sequence of yields-to-maturity on zero-coupon bonds. Sometimes called *zero* or *strip curve* because coupon payments are "stripped" off of the bonds.
- Spot markets** Markets in which assets are traded for immediate delivery.
- Spot prices** The price of an asset for immediately delivery.
- Spot rates** A sequence of market discount rates that correspond to the cash flow dates; yields-to-maturity on zero-coupon bonds maturing at the date of each cash flow.
- Spread** In general, the difference in yield between different fixed income securities. Often used to refer to the difference between the yield-to-maturity and the benchmark.
- Spread over the benchmark** See *required yield spread*.
- Spread risk** Bond price risk arising from changes in the yield spread on credit-risky bonds; reflects changes in the market's assessment and/or pricing of credit migration (or downgrade) risk and market liquidity risk.
- Stackelberg model** A prominent model of strategic decisionmaking in which firms are assumed to make their decisions sequentially.
- Stagflation** When a high inflation rate is combined with a high level of unemployment and a slowdown of the economy.
- Staggered boards** Election process whereby directors are typically divided into multiple classes that are elected separately in consecutive years—that is, one class every year.

- Stakeholder management** The identification, prioritization, and understanding of the interests of stakeholder groups, and managing the company's relationships with these groups.
- Stakeholders** Individuals or groups of individuals who may be affected either directly or indirectly by a decision and thus have an interest, or stake, in the decision.
- Standard cost** With respect to inventory accounting, the planned or target unit cost of inventory items or services.
- Standard deviation** The positive square root of the variance; a measure of dispersion in the same units as the original data.
- Standard normal distribution** The normal density with mean (μ) equal to 0 and standard deviation (σ) equal to 1.
- Standardizing** A transformation that involves subtracting the mean and dividing the result by the standard deviation.
- Standards of conduct** Behaviors required by a group; established benchmarks that clarify or enhance a group's code of ethics.
- Standing limit orders** A limit order at a price below market and which therefore is waiting to trade.
- Stated annual interest rate** A quoted interest rate that does not account for compounding within the year. Also called *quoted interest rate*.
- Statement of changes in equity** (statement of owners' equity) A financial statement that reconciles the beginning-of-period and end-of-period balance sheet values of shareholders' equity; provides information about all factors affecting shareholders' equity. Also called *statement of owners' equity*.
- Statement of financial condition** The financial statement that presents an entity's current financial position by disclosing resources the entity controls (its assets) and the claims on those resources (its liabilities and equity claims), as of a particular point in time (the date of the balance sheet).
- Statement of financial position** The financial statement that presents an entity's current financial position by disclosing resources the entity controls (its assets) and the claims on those resources (its liabilities and equity claims), as of a particular point in time (the date of the balance sheet).
- Statement of operations** A financial statement that provides information about a company's profitability over a stated period of time.
- Statistic** A quantity computed from or used to describe a sample of data.
- Statistical inference** Making forecasts, estimates, or judgments about a larger group from a smaller group actually observed; using a sample statistic to infer the value of an unknown population parameter.
- Statistically significant** A result indicating that the null hypothesis can be rejected; with reference to an estimated regression coefficient, frequently understood to mean a result indicating that the corresponding population regression coefficient is different from 0.
- Statutory voting** A common method of voting where each share represents one vote.
- Step-up coupon bond** Bond for which the coupon, which may be fixed or floating, increases by specified margins at specified dates.
- Stock dividend** A type of dividend in which a company distributes additional shares of its common stock to shareholders instead of cash.
- Stock-out losses** Profits lost from not having sufficient inventory on hand to satisfy demand.
- Stock split** An increase in the number of shares outstanding with a consequent decrease in share price, but no change to the company's underlying fundamentals.
- Stop-loss order** See *stop order*.
- Stop order** An order in which a trader has specified a stop price condition. Also called *stop-loss order*.
- Store of value** The quality of tending to preserve value.
- Store of wealth** Goods that depend on the fact that they do not perish physically over time, and on the belief that others would always value the good.
- Straight-line method** A depreciation method that allocates evenly the cost of a long-lived asset less its estimated residual value over the estimated useful life of the asset.
- Straight voting** A shareholder voting process in which shareholders receive one vote for each share owned.
- Strategic analysis** Analysis of the competitive environment with an emphasis on the implications of the environment for corporate strategy.
- Strategic asset allocation** The set of exposures to IPS-permissible asset classes that is expected to achieve the client's long-term objectives given the client's investment constraints.
- Strategic groups** Groups sharing distinct business models or catering to specific market segments in an industry.
- Street convention** Yield measure that neglects weekends and holidays; the internal rate of return on cash flows assuming payments are made on the scheduled dates, even when the scheduled date falls on a weekend or holiday.
- Stress testing** A specific type of scenario analysis that estimates losses in rare and extremely unfavorable combinations of events or scenarios.
- Strong-form efficient market** A market in which security prices reflect all public and private information.
- Structural (or cyclically adjusted) budget deficit** The deficit that would exist if the economy was at full employment (or full potential output).
- Structural subordination** Arises in a holding company structure when the debt of operating subsidiaries is serviced by the cash flow and assets of the subsidiaries before funds can be passed to the holding company to service debt at the parent level.
- Structured financial instruments** Financial instruments that share the common attribute of repackaging risks. Structured financial instruments include asset-backed securities, collateralized debt obligations, and other structured financial instruments such as capital protected, yield enhancement, participation and leveraged instruments.
- Subjective probability** A probability drawing on personal or subjective judgment.
- Subordinated debt** A class of unsecured debt that ranks below a firm's senior unsecured obligations.
- Subordination** Form of internal credit enhancement that relies on creating more than one bond tranche and ordering the claim priorities for ownership or interest in an asset between the tranches. The ordering of the claim priorities is called a senior/subordinated structure, where the tranches of highest seniority are called senior followed by subordinated or junior tranches. Also called *credit tranching*.
- Substitutes** Said of two goods or services such that if the price of one increases the demand for the other tends to increase, holding all other things equal (e.g., butter and margarine).
- Sunk cost** A cost that has already been incurred.
- Supervised learning** A machine learning approach that makes use of labeled training data.

- Supply shock** A typically unexpected disturbance to supply.
- Support** In technical analysis, a price range in which buying activity is sufficient to stop the decline in the price of a security.
- Support tranche** A class or tranche in a CMO that protects the PAC tranche from prepayment risk.
- Supranational bonds** A bond issued by a supranational agency such as the World Bank.
- Surety bond** Form of external credit enhancement whereby a rated and regulated insurance company guarantees to reimburse bondholders for any losses incurred up to a maximum amount if the issuer defaults.
- Survey approach** An estimate of the equity risk premium that is based upon estimates provided by a panel of finance experts.
- Survivorship bias** The bias resulting from a test design that fails to account for companies that have gone bankrupt, merged, or are otherwise no longer reported in a database.
- Sustainable growth rate** The rate of dividend (and earnings) growth that can be sustained over time for a given level of return on equity, keeping the capital structure constant and without issuing additional common stock.
- Sustainable investing** The practice of identifying companies that can efficiently manage their financial, environmental, and human capital resources to generate attractive long-term profitability; often synonymous with *responsible investing*.
- Sustainable rate of economic growth** The rate of increase in the economy's productive capacity or potential GDP.
- Swap contract** An agreement between two parties to exchange a series of future cash flows.
- Syndicated loans** Loans from a group of lenders to a single borrower.
- Syndicated offering** A bond issue that is underwritten by a group of investment banks.
- Synthetic lease** A lease that is structured to provide a company with the tax benefits of ownership while not requiring the asset to be reflected on the company's financial statements.
- Systematic risk** Risk that affects the entire market or economy; it cannot be avoided and is inherent in the overall market. Systematic risk is also known as non-diversifiable or market risk.
- Systematic sampling** A procedure of selecting every k th member until reaching a sample of the desired size. The sample that results from this procedure should be approximately random.
- t-Test** A hypothesis test using a statistic (t -statistic) that follows a t -distribution.
- Tactical asset allocation** The decision to deliberately deviate from the strategic asset allocation in an attempt to add value based on forecasts of the near-term relative performance of asset classes.
- Target balance** A minimum level of cash to be held available—estimated in advance and adjusted for known funds transfers, seasonality, or other factors.
- Target capital structure** A company's chosen proportions of debt and equity.
- Target independent** A bank's ability to determine the definition of inflation that they target, the rate of inflation that they target, and the horizon over which the target is to be achieved.
- Target semideviation** The positive square root of target semivariance.
- Target semivariance** The average squared deviation below a target value.
- Tariffs** Taxes that a government levies on imported goods.
- Tax base** The amount at which an asset or liability is valued for tax purposes.
- Tax expense** An aggregate of an entity's income tax payable (or recoverable in the case of a tax benefit) and any changes in deferred tax assets and liabilities. It is essentially the income tax payable or recoverable if these had been determined based on accounting profit rather than taxable income.
- Tax loss carry forward** A taxable loss in the current period that may be used to reduce future taxable income.
- Taxable income** The portion of an entity's income that is subject to income taxes under the tax laws of its jurisdiction.
- Taxable temporary differences** Temporary differences that result in a taxable amount in a future period when determining the taxable profit as the balance sheet item is recovered or settled.
- Technical analysis** A form of security analysis that uses price and volume data, which is often displayed graphically, in decision making.
- Technology** The process a company uses to transform inputs into outputs.
- Tender offer** Corporate takeover mechanism which involves shareholders selling their interests directly to the group seeking to gain control.
- Tenor** The time-to-maturity for a bond or derivative contract. Also called *term to maturity*.
- Term maturity structure** Structure for a bond issue in which the bond's notional principal is paid off in a lump sum at maturity.
- Term structure** See *maturity structure*.
- Term structure of credit spreads** The relationship between the spreads over the "risk-free" (or benchmark) rates and times-to-maturity.
- Term structure of yield volatility** The relationship between the volatility of bond yields-to-maturity and times-to-maturity.
- Terminal stock value** The expected value of a share at the end of the investment horizon—in effect, the expected selling price. Also called *terminal value*.
- Terminal value** The expected value of a share at the end of the investment horizon—in effect, the expected selling price.
- Terms of trade** The ratio of the price of exports to the price of imports, representing those prices by export and import price indexes, respectively.
- Text analytics** The use of computer programs to analyze and derive meaning from typically large, unstructured text- or voice-based datasets.
- Thematic investing** An ESG implementation approach that focuses on investing in companies within a specific sector or industry theme.
- Third-degree price discrimination** When the monopolist segregates customers into groups based on demographic or other characteristics and offers different pricing to each group.
- Time-period bias** The possibility that when we use a time-series sample, our statistical conclusion may be sensitive to the starting and ending dates of the sample.
- Time-series data** Observations of a variable over time.
- Time tranching** The creation of classes or tranches in an ABS/MBS that possess different (expected) maturities.
- Time value** The difference between the market price of the option and its intrinsic value.

- Time value decay** Said of an option when, at expiration, no time value remains and the option is worth only its exercise value.
- Time value of money** The principles governing equivalence relationships between cash flows with different dates.
- Time-weighted rate of return** The compound rate of growth of one unit of currency invested in a portfolio during a stated measurement period; a measure of investment performance that is not sensitive to the timing and amount of withdrawals or additions to the portfolio.
- Tokenization** The process of representing ownership rights to physical assets on a blockchain or distributed ledger.
- Top-down analysis** With reference to investment selection processes, an approach that starts with macro selection (i.e., identifying attractive geographic segments and/or industry segments) and then addresses selection of the most attractive investments within those segments.
- Total comprehensive income** The change in equity during a period resulting from transaction and other events, other than those changes resulting from transactions with owners in their capacity as owners.
- Total cost** The summation of all costs, for which costs are classified as fixed or variable.
- Total factor productivity** A scale factor that reflects the portion of growth that is not accounted for by explicit factor inputs (e.g. capital and labor).
- Total fixed cost** The summation of all expenses that do not change as the level of production varies.
- Total invested capital** The sum of market value of common equity, book value of preferred equity, and face value of debt.
- Total probability rule** A rule explaining the unconditional probability of an event in terms of probabilities of the event conditional on mutually exclusive and exhaustive scenarios.
- Total probability rule for expected value** A rule explaining the expected value of a random variable in terms of expected values of the random variable conditional on mutually exclusive and exhaustive scenarios.
- Total return** Measures the price appreciation, or percentage change in price of the securities in an index or portfolio, plus any income received over the period.
- Total return index** An index that reflects the price appreciation or percentage change in price of the constituent securities plus any income received since inception.
- Total return swap** A swap in which one party agrees to pay the total return on a security. Often used as a credit derivative, in which the underlying is a bond.
- Total variable cost** The summation of all variable expenses.
- Tracking error** The standard deviation of the differences between a portfolio's returns and its benchmark's returns; a synonym of active risk.
- Tracking risk** The standard deviation of the differences between a portfolio's returns and its benchmark's returns; a synonym of active risk. Also called *tracking error*.
- Trade creation** When regional integration results in the replacement of higher cost domestic production by lower cost imports from other members.
- Trade credit** A spontaneous form of credit in which a purchaser of the goods or service is financing its purchase by delaying the date on which payment is made.
- Trade diversion** When regional integration results in lower-cost imports from non-member countries being replaced with higher-cost imports from members.
- Trade payables** Amounts that a business owes to its vendors for goods and services that were purchased from them but which have not yet been paid.
- Trade protection** Government policies that impose restrictions on trade, such as tariffs and quotas.
- Trade surplus (deficit)** When the value of exports is greater (less) than the value of imports.
- Trading securities** Securities held by a company with the intent to trade them. Also called *held-for-trading securities*.
- Traditional investment markets** Markets for traditional investments, which include all publicly traded debts and equities and shares in pooled investment vehicles that hold publicly traded debts and/or equities.
- Transactions money balances** Money balances that are held to finance transactions.
- Transactions motive** In the context of inventory management, the need for inventory as part of the routine production-sales cycle.
- Transfer payments** Welfare payments made through the social security system that exist to provide a basic minimum level of income for low-income households.
- Transparency** Said of something (e.g., a market) in which information is fully disclosed to the public and/or regulators.
- Treasury Inflation-Protected Securities** A bond issued by the United States Treasury Department that is designed to protect the investor from inflation by adjusting the principal of the bond for changes in inflation.
- Treasury stock method** A method for accounting for the effect of options (and warrants) on earnings per share (EPS) that specifies what EPS would have been if the options and warrants had been exercised and the company had used the proceeds to repurchase common stock.
- Tree diagram** A diagram with branches emanating from nodes representing either mutually exclusive chance events or mutually exclusive decisions.
- Trend** A long-term pattern of movement in a particular direction.
- Treynor ratio** A measure of risk-adjusted performance that relates a portfolio's excess returns to the portfolio's beta.
- Triangle patterns** In technical analysis, a continuation chart pattern that forms as the range between high and low prices narrows, visually forming a triangle.
- Trimmed mean** A mean computed after excluding a stated small percentage of the lowest and highest observations.
- TRIN** A flow of funds indicator applied to a broad stock market index to measure the relative extent to which money is moving into or out of rising and declining stocks.
- Triple bottoms** In technical analysis, a reversal pattern that is formed when the price forms three troughs at roughly the same price level; used to predict a change from a downtrend to an uptrend.
- Triple tops** In technical analysis, a reversal pattern that is formed when the price forms three peaks at roughly the same price level; used to predict a change from an uptrend to a downtrend.
- Trough** The lowest point of a business cycle.
- True yield** The internal rate of return on cash flows using the actual calendar including weekends and bank holidays.
- Trust deed** The governing legal credit agreement, typically incorporated by reference in the prospectus. Also called *bond indenture*.

- Trust receipt arrangement** The use of inventory as collateral for a loan. The inventory is segregated and held in trust, and the proceeds of any sale must be remitted to the lender immediately.
- Turn-of-the-year effect** Calendar anomaly that stock market returns in January are significantly higher compared to the rest of the months of the year, with most of the abnormal returns reported during the first five trading days in January.
- Two-fund separation theorem** The theory that all investors regardless of taste, risk preferences, and initial wealth will hold a combination of two portfolios or funds: a risk-free asset and an optimal portfolio of risky assets.
- Two-sided hypothesis test** A test in which the null hypothesis is rejected in favor of the alternative hypothesis if the evidence indicates that the population parameter is either smaller or larger than a hypothesized value.
- Two-tailed hypothesis test** A test in which the null hypothesis is rejected in favor of the alternative hypothesis if the evidence indicates that the population parameter is either smaller or larger than a hypothesized value.
- Two-week repo rate** The interest rate on a two-week repurchase agreement; may be used as a policy rate by a central bank.
- Type I error** The error of rejecting a true null hypothesis.
- Type II error** The error of not rejecting a false null hypothesis.
- Unanticipated (unexpected) inflation** The component of inflation that is a surprise.
- Unconditional probability** The probability of an event *not* conditioned on another event.
- Underemployed** A person who has a job but has the qualifications to work a significantly higher-paying job.
- Underlying** An asset that trades in a market in which buyers and sellers meet, decide on a price, and the seller then delivers the asset to the buyer and receives payment. The underlying is the asset or other derivative on which a particular derivative is based. The market for the underlying is also referred to as the *spot market*.
- Underwriter** A firm, usually an investment bank, that takes the risk of buying the newly issued securities from the issuer, and then reselling them to investors or to dealers, thus guaranteeing the sale of the securities at the offering price negotiated with the issuer.
- Underwritten offering** A type of securities issue mechanism in which the investment bank guarantees the sale of the securities at an offering price that is negotiated with the issuer. Also known as *firm commitment offering*.
- Unearned revenue** A liability account for money that has been collected for goods or services that have not yet been delivered; payment received in advance of providing a good or service. Also called *deferred revenue* or *deferred income*.
- Unemployed** People who are actively seeking employment but are currently without a job.
- Unemployment rate** The ratio of unemployed to the labor force.
- Unexpected inflation** The component of inflation that is a surprise.
- Unit elastic** An elasticity with a magnitude of negative one. Also called *unitary elastic*.
- Unit labor cost** The average labor cost to produce one unit of output.
- Unit normal distribution** The normal density with mean (μ) equal to 0 and standard deviation (σ) equal to 1.
- Units-of-production method** A depreciation method that allocates the cost of a long-lived asset based on actual usage during the period.
- Univariate distribution** A distribution that specifies the probabilities for a single random variable.
- Universal owners** Long-term investors, such as pension funds, that have significant assets invested in globally diversified portfolios.
- Unlimited funds** An unlimited funds environment assumes that the company can raise the funds it wants for all profitable projects simply by paying the required rate of return.
- Unsecured debt** Debt which gives the debtholder only a general claim on an issuer's assets and cash flow.
- Un-sponsored** A type of depository receipt in which the foreign company whose shares are held by the depository has no involvement in the issuance of the receipts.
- Unsupervised learning** A machine learning approach that does not make use of labeled training data.
- Up transition probability** The probability that an asset's value moves up.
- Validity instructions** Instructions which indicate when the order may be filled.
- Valuation allowance** A reserve created against deferred tax assets, based on the likelihood of realizing the deferred tax assets in future accounting periods.
- Valuation ratios** Ratios that measure the quantity of an asset or flow (e.g., earnings) in relation to the price associated with a specified claim (e.g., a share or ownership of the enterprise).
- Value at risk (VaR)** A money measure of the minimum value of losses expected during a specified time period at a given level of probability.
- Value investors** With reference to equity investors, investors who are focused on paying a relatively low share price in relation to earnings or assets per share.
- VaR** See *value at risk*.
- Variable costs** Costs that fluctuate with the level of production and sales.
- Variable-rate note** Similar to a floating-rate note, except that the spread is variable rather than constant.
- Variance** The expected value (the probability-weighted average) of squared deviations from a random variable's expected value.
- Variation margin** Additional margin that must be deposited in an amount sufficient to bring the balance up to the initial margin requirement.
- Veblen goods** Goods that increase in desirability with increasing price.
- Vega** A measure of the sensitivity of an option's price to changes in the underlying's volatility.
- Venture capital** Investments that provide "seed" or start-up capital, early-stage financing, or later-stage financing (including mezzanine-stage financing) to companies that are in early development stages and require additional capital for expansion or preparation for an initial public offering.
- Venture capital fund** A fund for private equity investors that provides financing for development-stage companies.
- Vertical analysis** Common-size analysis using only one reporting period or one base financial statement; for example, an income statement in which all items are stated as percentages of sales.
- Vertical demand schedule** Implies that some fixed quantity is demanded, regardless of price.

- Volatility** As used in option pricing, the standard deviation of the continuously compounded returns on the underlying asset.
- Voluntarily unemployed** A person voluntarily outside the labor force, such as a jobless worker refusing an available vacancy.
- Voluntary export restraint** A trade barrier under which the exporting country agrees to limit its exports of the good to its trading partners to a specific number of units.
- Vote by proxy** A mechanism that allows a designated party—such as another shareholder, a shareholder representative, or management—to vote on the shareholder's behalf.
- Warehouse receipt arrangement** The use of inventory as collateral for a loan; similar to a trust receipt arrangement except there is a third party (i.e., a warehouse company) that supervises the inventory.
- Warrant** Attached option that gives its holder the right to buy the underlying stock of the issuing company at a fixed exercise price until the expiration date.
- Weak-form efficient market hypothesis** The belief that security prices fully reflect all past market data, which refers to all historical price and volume trading information.
- Wealth effect** An increase (decrease) in household wealth increases (decreases) consumer spending out of a given level of current income.
- Weighted average cost method** An inventory accounting method that averages the total cost of available inventory items over the total units available for sale.
- Weighted average cost of capital** A weighted average of the aftertax required rates of return on a company's common stock, preferred stock, and long-term debt, where the weights are the fraction of each source of financing in the company's target capital structure.
- Weighted average coupon rate** Weighting the mortgage rate of each mortgage loan in the pool by the percentage of the mortgage outstanding relative to the outstanding amount of all the mortgages in the pool.
- Weighted average life** A measure that gives investors an indication of how long they can expect to hold the MBS before it is paid off; the convention-based average time to receipt of all principal repayments. Also called *average life*.
- Weighted average maturity** Weighting the remaining number of months to maturity for each mortgage loan in the pool by the amount of the outstanding mortgage balance.
- Weighted mean** An average in which each observation is weighted by an index of its relative importance.
- Wholesale price index** Reflects the price changes experienced by domestic producers in a country.
- Winsorized mean** A mean computed after assigning a stated percent of the lowest values equal to one specified low value, and a stated percent of the highest values equal to one specified high value.
- Working capital** The difference between current assets and current liabilities.
- Working capital management** The management of a company's short-term assets (such as inventory) and short-term liabilities (such as money owed to suppliers).
- World price** The price prevailing in the world market.
- Yield** The actual return on a debt security if it is held to maturity.
- Yield duration** The sensitivity of the bond price with respect to the bond's own yield-to-maturity.
- Yield to maturity** Annual return that an investor earns on a bond if the investor purchases the bond today and holds it until maturity. It is the discount rate that equates the present value of the bond's expected cash flows until maturity with the bond's price. Also called *yield-to-redemption* or *redemption yield*.
- Yield to redemption** See *yield to maturity*.
- Yield-to-worst** The lowest of the sequence of yields-to-call and the yield-to-maturity.
- Zero-coupon bonds** Bonds that do not pay interest during the bond's life. It is issued at a discount to par value and redeemed at par. Also called *pure discount bonds*.
- Zero volatility spread (Z-spread)** Calculates a constant yield spread over a government (or interest rate swap) spot curve.

Index

A

- ABG Gas Supply LLC, 650
- AbitibiBowater Inc., 462–464
- accelerated methods of depreciation, 122–124, 435
- accounting
 - accrual, 640–641
 - acquisition method of, 422
 - “big bath,” 624
 - cash-basis, 640–641
 - “cookie jar” reserve, 624–625
- Accounting and Auditing Enforcement Release (SEC), 641–643
- Accounting and Corporate Regulatory Authority, 47, 59, 628
- accounting choices
 - aggressive
 - and bias in application of accounting standards, 624–625
 - conservative vs., 620–625
 - defined, 612
 - biased, 612–620
 - conservative, 620–625
 - aggressive vs., 620–625
 - benefits of, 624
 - bias in application of accounting standards, 624–625
 - defined, 612
 - in extractive industries, 621–622
 - losses in, 620–621
 - and deferred-tax assets, 642–643
 - earnings management with, 618
 - financial reporting issues, 638–655
 - cash flow statements, 648–651
 - earnings and balance sheets, 639–648
- accounting equation, 12
- accounting estimates, 640–641
- Accounting for Income Taxes* (SFAS 109), 508
- Accounting for the Costs of Computer Software to be Sold, Leased, or Otherwise Marketed* (SFAS 86), 431
- accounting goodwill, 184
- accounting policies
 - changes in, 81–83
 - disclosures relating to, 79–83
 - retrospective application of, 128
- accounting profit
 - defined, 508
 - taxable income vs., 508–513
 - and current tax assets/liabilities, 509–510
 - and deferred tax assets/liabilities, 510–513
 - taxable profit vs., 518–523
 - and business combinations/deferred taxes, 523
 - and investments in subsidiaries, branches, associates, and interests, 523
 - temporary differences, 519–522
- Accounting Regulatory Committee, 55
- accounting scandals, 608
- accounting standards. *see also specific standards*
 - biased application of, 624–625
 - convergence of, 99–100, 112
 - for revenue recognition, 112–116
 - and ROE, 678–680
- Accounting Standards Board of Japan, 57
- accounting standards boards, 48–50
 - attributes of, 50
 - Financial Accounting Standards Board, 49–50
 - International Accounting Standards Board, 48–49
- Accounting Standards Codification* (FASB), 49–50
 - Accounting Standards Updates, 82, 114
 - Business Combinations (ASC 805), 422n.9
 - Expenses: Compensation–Retirement Benefits (ASC 715), 679
 - Fair Value Measurements and Disclosures (ASC 820), 417n.2
 - General Electric disclosures, 82
 - Income Taxes (ASC 740), 508
 - Interest (ASC 835), 428n.11
 - Leases (ASC 840), 467n.29, 577n.14
 - Leases (ASC 842), 468
 - Revenue from Contracts with Customers (ASC 606), 112n.25, 114
 - Statement of Cash Flows (ASC 230), 471n.32
- Accounting Standards Updates (ASUs), 82, 114
- accounts (on financial statements)
 - contra, 169
 - doubtful, 120, 653
 - tax asset valuation, 654
 - uncollectible, 641–642
- accounts payable, as current liability, 176
- accounts receivable
 - as current assets, 169–171
 - and financial reporting quality, 656
 - and taxable/deductible temporary differences, 521
 - and tax bases of assets, 514, 515
- accrual accounting, cash-basis vs., 640–641
- accrued expenses, as current liability, 176
- accumulated other comprehensive income, 193
- Acer Inc., 275–277
- acquisition
 - of businesses, 535
 - of long-lived assets, 417–435
 - accounting for, 417
 - capitalisation of interest costs, 428–431
 - capitalisation of internal development costs, 431–435
 - capitalising vs. expensing costs, 423–428
 - and financial reporting issues, 648
 - intangible assets, 420–423
 - property, plant, and equipment, 417–420
- acquisition method of accounting, 422
- activity ratios, 291–298
 - calculation of, 292–294
 - defined, 292–293
 - evaluation of, 295–298
 - interpretation of, 294–298
 - fixed asset turnover, 297
 - inventory turnover and DOH, 294–295
 - payables turnover and number of days of payables, 296
 - receivables turnover and DSO, 295–296
 - total asset turnover, 297
 - working capital turnover, 297
- adjusted consolidated segment operating income (adjusted CSOI), 635–638
- adjusted EBITDA, 634
- adjustments
 - financial statement, 698–713
 - to debt, 710–712
 - framework for, 698
 - for goodwill, 704–706
 - for inventory, 699–702
 - and current ratio, 701–702
 - with LIFO accounting, 699–701
 - for investments, 698
 - for off-balance-sheet financing, 706–713
 - for plant, property, and equipment, 703–704
 - inventory, 368–375
 - declines and recoveries of inventory value, 369–370
 - inventory write-downs and financial ratios, 370–375
- adverse audit opinion, 28
- affirmative covenants, 559
- Afghanistan, 59
- Africa, 59. *see also specific countries and regions*
- age ratios, asset, 460–464
- aggressive accounting choices
 - and biased application of standards, 624–625
 - conservative vs., 620–625
 - defined, 612
 - and non-GAAP measures in reports, 612, 615
- Alcatel-Lucent, 383–388
 - consolidated balance sheet, 384
 - consolidated income statement, 383–384
 - notes to consolidated financial statements, 385–386
 - solvency ratio evaluation, 306

- Alcon, 685
allowance
 for doubtful accounts, 653
 for loan loss reserves, 653
alternative inventory costing, 118–120, 654
Altria Group Inc., 453
amortisation
 of bonds, 550–554
 amortisation of discounts, 551–553
 amortisation of premiums, 553–554
 and interest expense/interest payments, 550–554
 defined, 121
 and expense recognition on income statements, 124
 of intangible assets, 121, 181
 of long-lived assets, 443–444
amortisation expenses, 444
amortised costs, 66, 168–169, 186, 188
AMR Corporation, 707–710
analyst adjustments, 698–713
 to debt, 710–712
 framework for, 698
 for goodwill, 704–706
 for inventory, 699–702
 and current ratio, 701–702
 with LIFO accounting, 699–701
 for investments, 698
 for off-balance-sheet financing, 706–713
 for plant, property, and equipment, 703–704
analysts, 652–655
Anheuser-Busch, 423
Anheuser-Busch InBev SA/NV, 684–686
annual reports, 53, 613–614
Annual Statement Studies (Risk Management Association), 282
antidilutive securities, 139–140
Apple Inc.
 accounts receivable, 169–170
 balance sheet components, 164
 cash flow analysis of comparables, 256–257
 change in accounting standards, 129–130
 cross-sectional common-size analysis, 200, 203–204
 current assets, 168
 current liabilities, 175
 deferred revenue, 176–178
 deferred tax assets, 174
 deferred tax liabilities, 192
 earnings announcements, 8–9
 equity, 194–195
 financial assets, 189
 goodwill, 186
 inventory valuation, 171, 172
 marketable securities, 169
 non-current assets, 179
 non-current liabilities, 190–191
 and revenue recognition on income statements, 111–112
 statement of changes in equity, 195–196
 strategy and financial performance, 273–274, 673–677
 war chests, 677
Apple TV, 129–130
applications of financial statement analysis, 671–717
analyst adjustments, 698–713
 to debt, 710–712
 framework for, 698
 for goodwill, 704–706
 for inventory, 699–702
 for investments, 698
 for off-balance-sheet financing, 706–713
 for plant, property, and equipment, 703–704
credit risk assessments, 691–694
 Moody's rating factors, 692–693
 peer comparison ratios, 694
equity screening, 694–697
 example, 695
 ratio-based, 697
financial performance evaluations, 673–681
 accounting standards and ROE, 678–680
 and changes in business strategy, 673–677
 and war chests, 677
financial performance projections, 681–690
 consistency of forecasts, 690
 example, 687–689
 forecasting operating profit, 683–684
 issues with, 684–687
 with market-based valuation, 682–687
 for multiple periods, 687–690
 practice problems, 715–716
 solutions to problems, 717
appraisals, asset revaluation, 446
Argentina, 58, 628
Armenia, 59
Arngrove Group Holdings, 127
ASA, 651
Asahi Breweries, 677
Asia, 59, 627. *see also specific countries and regions*
asset age ratios, 460–464
assets
 average age of depreciable, 462–464
 on balance sheets, 162, 186–189
 in *Conceptual Framework*, 64
 current
 and accounting profit vs. taxable income, 509–510
 on balance sheets, 165, 167–174
 debt-to-assets ratio, 304, 305, 586, 587
 deferred tax
 accounting choices about, 642–643
 accounting profit vs. taxable income for, 510–513
 changes in tax rates, 517–518
 current assets, 174
 defined, 509
 and timing, 508
 unused tax losses/credits, 523–524
 defined, 9, 162
 income tax bases of, 513–515
 intangible
 acquisition of, 420–423
 on balance sheets, 181–186
 from business combinations, 422–423
 capitalization of, 647–648, 653
 depreciation/amortisation of, 121, 181
 identifiable, 182–183
 impairment of, 181, 450–451
 on income statements, 124
 internally-developed, 420–422
 long-lived, 416
 not from business combinations, 420
 and research, 182, 421
 lease versus buy decision for, 467–470
 liquid asset requirement, 322
 long-lived (*see* long-lived assets)
 non-current, on balance sheets, 165, 178–189
 recoverable amount of, 449
 return on, 280, 308–309, 363
asset turnover
 and financial reporting quality, 656
 fixed, 293, 297, 462–464
 total, 293, 297
asset utilization ratios, 292. *see also* activity ratios
associate businesses, investments in, 523
assumptions, for financial reports, 65
ASUs. *see* Accounting Standards Updates
AT&T, 633
auditors, financial reporting quality and, 629–630
audits
 adverse opinions, 28
 auditor's reports, 27–29
 qualified and unqualified opinions, 27–28
 standards for, 27
Australia, 15, 59
available-for-sale securities
 defined, 187
 as financial assets, 187–189
 on income statements, 146
average age of depreciable assets, 462–464
average daily rate, 323
average inventory days outstanding. *see* days of inventory on hand (DOH)
Azerbaijan, 59
- B**
back-testing, 696
Baidu, 683, 684
balance sheet equation, 12
balance sheet ratios, 204–206
balance sheets, 161–216
 about, 162
 analysis of, 13–16, 196–206
 balance sheet ratios, 204–206
 common-size, 196–204, 282–283, 285–287
 and capitalising vs. expensing of costs, 423
 and cash flow statements, 169, 232–233
 classified, 166
 components of, 163–165

- consolidated
 - Alcatel-Lucent, 384
 - Micron Technology, Inc., 529–530
 - Volvo Group, 371–372
- current assets, 167–174
 - Apple Inc., 168
 - cash and cash equivalents, 168–169
 - inventories, 171–173
 - marketable securities, 169
 - other, 173–174
 - SAP Group, 167–168
 - trade receivables, 169–171
- current liabilities, 174–178
 - Apple Inc., 175
 - deferred revenue analysis, 176–178
 - SAP Group, 175
- defined, 12, 162
- equity, 192–196
 - components of, 192–195
 - statement of changes in equity, 195–196
- financial assets on, 186–189
- format of, 165–167
- interest costs, 428
- inventories, 171–173
- leases, 471
- LIFO liquidation, 364–365
- non-current assets, 165, 178–189
 - Apple Inc., 179
 - financial assets, 186–189
 - goodwill, 183–186
 - intangible assets, 181–186
 - investment property, 180–181
 - property, plant, and equipment, 179–180
 - SAP Group, 178–179
- non-current liabilities, 190–192
 - Apple Inc., 190–191
 - deferred tax liabilities, 191–192
 - long-term financial liabilities, 191
 - SAP Group, 190
- practice problems, 209–213
- quality of reporting on, 639–648
- solutions to problems, 214–216
- vertical common-size, 282–283
- Banco Central del Uruguay, 51n.10
- banks
 - capital adequacy ratios, 322
 - regulation of, 47
- barter transactions, revenue recognition for, 109, 655
- Basel Accords, 47
- Basel Committee on Banking Supervision, 47, 48, 51
- Baseline (database), 293
- BASF Group, 570–572
- basic earnings per share, 132–134, 319, 320
- benchmarks, 625
- B+H Ocean Carriers, 558–561
- BHP Billiton, 683, 684
- biased accounting choices, 612–620
- biases
 - in accounting standard application, 624–625
 - in equity screening, 696
- “big bath” accounting, 624
- bill-and-hold transactions, 652
- Bloomberg, 281, 293, 316
- Bolivia, 58
- bonds
 - amortisation, 550–554
 - at discount, 549–553
 - at face value, 546–549
 - interest expense for, 550–554
 - interest payments for, 550–554
 - issuance, 546–550
 - at premium, 553–554
 - with warrants, 563–564
- bonds payable, 546–564
 - and amortisation of bonds, 550–554
 - debt covenants, 559–561
 - derecognition of debt, 557–559
 - disclosure of long-term debt, 561–564
 - fair value reporting, 554–557
 - and interest expense, 550–554
 - and interest payments, 550–554
 - and issuance of bonds, 546–550
 - presentation of long-term debt, 561–564
- Borrowing Costs* (IAS 23), 428n.11
- borrowing costs, for property, plant, and equipment, 419–420
- Botswana, 59
- bottom line, income statement, 97
- bottom-up analysis, 694–695
- branches of businesses, investments in, 523
- Brazil, 58, 628
- Brazilian GAAP, 58, 678–680
- business combinations
 - IFRS vs. US GAAP on, 535
 - intangible assets from, 422–423
 - intangible assets not from, 420
 - and quality of financial reporting, 633–634
 - taxable vs. accounting profit for, 523
- Business Combinations (ASC 805), 422n.9
- Business Combinations* (IFRS 3), 422n.9
- business segments, financial analysis for, 327–329
- business strategy, financial performance and, 673–677
- C**
- Cameroon, 59
- Canada
 - bank regulation, 47
 - IFRS adoption, 58
 - liquidity representations on balance sheets, 15
- Canadian GAAP, 58
- capacity, productive, 461
- capital
 - capital structure vs., 198
 - debt-to-capital ratio, 304, 305, 586–587
 - return on, 308, 309, 325
 - total invested, 681n.4
 - working, 166, 297, 689n.6
- capital adequacy ratios, for banks, 322
- capital expenditures
 - net cash flow to, 325
 - property, plant, and equipment as, 417, 418
- capitalization
 - of costs, 423–435
 - expensing of costs vs., 423–428
 - on financial statements, 423–428
 - of interest costs, 428–431
 - of internal development costs, 431–435
 - for ongoing purchases, 427
 - and financial reporting issues, 647–648, 657
 - of intangibles, 653
 - of interest, 650–651
- capital leases. *see* finance leases
- capital markets, regulation of, 55
- capital structure, 132, 198
- Carpenter Technology Corporation, 699–701
- carrying amount, 444–447, 509
- CAS. *see* Chinese accounting standards
- cash
 - on balance sheets, 168–169
 - from customers, 235–236
 - to employees, 237–238
 - generation of, 649–650
 - for income taxes, 239
 - for interest, 238–239
 - for other operating expenses, 238
 - from sale of equipment, 239–240
 - sources and uses of, 246–249
 - to suppliers, 236–237
- cash-basis accounting, 640–641
- cash conversion cycle, 299–301
- cash equivalents, 168–169
- cash flow(s)
 - and capitalisation of interest costs, 428–430
 - on cash flow statements, 219–221
 - discretionary cash flow to debt, 325
 - and financial reporting issues, 657
 - financing, 221
 - free cash flow to equity, 254–255
 - free cash flow to the firm, 254–255
 - net, 220, 325
 - net income and, 657
 - operating, 221–232
 - and capitalising vs. expensing of costs, 427–428
 - direct-format statement under IFRS, 226–228
 - financing vs., 221
 - free operating cash flow to debt, 325
 - indirect-format statement under IFRS, 223–226
 - and leases, 471
 - under US GAAP, 228–232
 - price to cash flow ratio, 319, 320
 - profits vs., 7–8
 - retained, 691
- cash flow per share, 319
- cash flow ratios, 255–256
- cash flow statements, 217–267
 - about, 218
 - analysis of, 20, 22–23, 246–257
 - cash flow ratios, 255–256
 - common-size, 250–254
 - for comparables, 256–257
 - free cash flow to equity, 254–255
 - free cash flow to the firm, 254–255
 - sources and uses of cash, 246–249
 - and balance sheets, 169, 232–233
 - and capitalising vs. expensing costs, 423–424

- cash flow statements (*Continued*)
 components and format, 219–232
 cash flows and non-cash activities, 219–221
 cash flows from operating activities, 222–232
 and IFRS vs. US GAAP, 221–222
 defined, 12
 disclosures about long-lived assets on, 455
 effects of reporting quality on, 648–651
 financing activities on, 219–220, 240
 and income statements, 232–233
 investing activities on, 219, 239–240
 leases on, 471
 operating activities on, 219, 235–239
 cash for income taxes, 239
 cash for interest, 238–239
 cash for other operating expenses, 238
 cash from customers, 235–236
 cash to employees, 237–238
 cash to suppliers, 236–237
 overall statement of cash flows, 241–246
 direct method, 23, 222, 241–242
 indirect method, 23, 222–223, 242–245
 practice problems, 259–264
 preparation of, 232–246
 financing activities, 240
 investing activities, 239–240
 operating activities, 235–239
 overall statement of cash flows, 241–246
 solutions to problems, 265–267
 cash ratio, 299, 300
 cash reserve ratio, 322
 Caterpillar Inc.
 consolidated financial position, 359–360
 consolidated results of operation, 358–359
 inventories of Volvo Group and, 378–381
 LIFO to FIFO conversion for, 358–363
 notes to consolidated financial statements, 360
 CBS Records, 659
 CEC Entertainment, Inc., 476–480
 Central America, 58. *see also specific countries*
 CESR. *see* Committee of European Securities Regulators
 CFA Institute
 monitoring of financial reporting standards, 78–79
 standards for communicating recommendations, 34
 channel stuffing, 652
 Charles Schwab Corporation, 705–706
 Chile, 58, 628
 China, 59, 627
 China Construction Bank, 166–167
 China Petroleum & Chemical Corporation, 563–564
 China Securities Regulatory Commission, 51n.10
 Chinese accounting standards (CAS), 59
 Cisco Systems, 172–173
 Citigroup, 650
 classified balance sheet, 166
 Codification. *see* Accounting Standards Codification (FASB)
 coefficient of variation of net income, 322
 coefficient of variation of operating income, 322
 coefficient of variation of revenues, 322
 Colombia, 58
 Columbia Pictures, 659
 combined ratio, 279
 Committee of European Securities Regulators (CESR), 55
 commodity inventories, 623
 common shares, 132, 192, 241
 common-size analysis
 for balance sheets, 196–204
 analysis of ratios, 282–283, 285–287
 cross-sectional, 200, 203–204
 for S&P 500, 201–202
 for cash flow statements, 250–254
 horizontal, 141n.50, 282, 285–287
 for income statements, 141–143, 283–285
 of ratios, 282–288
 vertical, 141n.50, 197, 282–285
 common stock, 132, 192, 241
 comparability, of accounting choices, 24
 comparables, 256–257
 comparable store sales ratio, 322
 comparative growth information, 288
 compensation, 625–626
 completed contract method of revenue recognition, 104–105, 107
 complex capital structures, 132
 component method of depreciation for long-lived assets, 441–443
A Comprehensive Business Reporting Model (CFA Institute), 78–79
 comprehensive income
 defined, 193n.20
 IFRS on, 145, 148
 on income statements, 145–148
 other
 accumulated, 193
 defined, 145
 on income statements, 147–148
 on statement of comprehensive income, 19–20
 statement of, 12, 16–20
 total, 145
 US GAAP on, 145, 148
 Compustat, 281
 computations, financial analysis vs., 272–274
 ConAgra Foods, Inc., 641–642
 “Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting” (Concepts Statement 8), 610n.2
Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting 2010 (IFRS), 60–72
 and barriers to single standards framework, 73–74
 conservatism in, 621
 constraints on financial reports, 63–64
 convergence of US GAAP and, 70–72
 and effective standards frameworks, 72–73
 elements of financial reports, 64–66
 objective of financial reporting/reports, 44–46, 61–62
 qualitative characteristics of financial reports, 62–63
 and quality of financial reporting, 610–611
 requirements of Presentation of Financial Statements (IAS No. 1), 66–70
 conclusions, from financial statement analysis, 33–34
 conservative accounting choices (conservatism)
 aggressive vs., 620–625
 benefits of, 624
 biased application of standards, 624–625
 defined, 612
 in extractive industries, 621–622
 losses in, 620–621
 consistency, of financial performance forecasts, 690
 consolidated balance sheets
 Alcatel-Lucent, 384
 Micron Technology, Inc., 529–530
 Volvo Group, 371–372
 consolidated financial position, 359–360
 consolidated financial statements, notes to
 Alcatel-Lucent, 385–386
 Caterpillar Inc., 360
 Micron Technology, Inc., 530–531
 Volvo Group, 372–373
 consolidated income statements
 Alcatel-Lucent, 383–384
 Volvo Group, 371
 consolidated results of operation, 358–359
 consolidated statements of operations, 528–529
 contra accounts, 169
 contracts
 and discipline for financial reporting quality, 630
 modifications of, 115
 and revenue recognition, 104–107, 112–116
 convertible debt, 136–137
 “cookie jar” reserve accounting, 624–625
 corporate culture, financial reporting issues and, 659–660
 cost(s)
 amortised, 66, 168–169, 186, 188
 borrowing, 419–420
 capitalisation of, 423–435
 current, 66
 deferred, 657
 development, 431–435, 514–515, 521
 expensing of, 423–428
 fixed, 303–304, 347n.7
 historical, 66
 incremental, 115
 interest, 428–431
 internal development, 431–435
 inventory, 117–118, 346–348
 line, 648

- period, 117
- production, 347n.7
- research, 514, 515, 521, 623
- software development, 422, 431–434
- standard, 171
- variable, 303, 347n.7
- weighted average, 172
- Costa Rica, 58
- cost flow assumptions, 639–640
- cost of goods sold
 - and activity ratio, 294
 - in inventory valuation, 172
- cost of sales
 - and inflation, 355–356
 - and inventory valuation method, 346, 350–352
 - and LIFO reserve, 357–358
 - in periodic vs. perpetual inventory systems, 352–354
- cost recovery method of revenue recognition, 108–109
- Cote D'Ivoire, 59
- Council of the European Union, 55
- coupon rate, 547
- covenants, debt, 559–561, 626
- coverage ratios, 305
 - for capitalised interest, 429–431
 - fixed charge, 305–306, 587
 - interest, 305, 325, 587
 - for operating lease adjustment, 712–713
 - and solvency ratios, 587–589
- CRA International Inc., 99
- Crazy Eddie's, 619
- credit analysis, 324–326
 - credit rating process, 324–326
 - defined, 691
 - research on ratios in, 326
- credit analysts, 30
- credit risk
 - assessing, 691–694
 - defined, 324, 691
- credits, unused tax, 523–524
- credit sales, revenues and, 640–641
- “Critical Accounting Estimates” (MD&A), 625
- cross-sectional common-size analysis, 200, 203–204
- cross-sectional ratio analysis, 284–285, 292
- culture, corporate, 659–660
- current assets
 - and accounting profit vs. taxable income, 509–510
 - on balance sheets, 165, 167–174
 - Apple Inc., 168
 - cash and cash equivalents, 168–169
 - inventories, 171–173
 - marketable securities, 169
 - other, 173–174
 - SAP Group, 167–168
 - trade receivables, 169–171
- current cost, 66
- current liabilities
 - of Apple Inc., 175
 - on balance sheets, 165–166, 174–178
 - deferred revenue analysis of, 176–178
 - of SAP Group, 175
- current ratio
 - and conversion from LIFO to FIFO, 363
 - defined, 299
 - interpretation of, 300
 - inventory value in comparison of, 701–702
- current tax, 524–527
 - tax charged to equity, 525–527
 - and valuation allowance, 525
- current tax liabilities, 509–510
- customers, cash from, 235–236
- CVC Capital Partners, 685
- Czech Republic, 58
- D**
- Daejan Holdings PLC, 465–466
- Daimler AG, 309–311
- DaimlerChrysler, 102
- Danone. *see* Groupe Danone
- data, financial statement
 - analysis, 33
 - collection, 32
 - interpretation, 33
 - processing, 33
- data-snooping bias, 696
- days of inventory on hand (DOH)
 - and activity ratios, 292–294
 - and conversion from LIFO to FIFO, 362
 - inventory management with, 376–377
 - and inventory turnover, 294–295
 - and inventory write-downs, 374–375
- days of sales outstanding (DSO)
 - in activity ratio definition, 292
 - and quality of financial reporting, 656
 - and receivables turnover, 295–296
- dealing securities, 219
- debt
 - analyst adjustments to, 710–712
 - convertible, 136–137
 - in credit ratios, 325–326
 - derecognition of, 557–559
 - discretionary cash flow to, 325
 - extinguishment of, 557–559
 - forgiveness of, 127
 - long-term
 - on cash flow statement, 241
 - disclosure of, 561–564
 - and lease disclosure, 572–577
 - presentation of, 561–564
 - segment debt ratio, 328
- debt covenants, 559–561, 626
- debt ratios, 304, 305
- debt-to-assets ratio, 304, 305, 586, 587
- debt-to-capital ratio, 304, 305, 586–587
- debt to EBITDA ratio, 326
- debt-to-equity ratio, 304, 305, 587
- decision-useful information, in financial reports, 610–612
- declining balance depreciation method, 436
- decomposition, of ROE, 313–318
- deductible temporary differences, in taxable/accounting profit, 519–522
- defensive internal ratio, 299, 300
- deferred costs, 657
- deferred income, 176
- deferred method of tax recognition, 518n.3
- deferred revenue (unearned revenue)
 - analysis of, 176–178
 - as current liability, 176
 - on income statements, 100
- deferred tax, 524–527
 - IFRS vs. US GAAP on, 533–536
 - and taxable vs. accounting profit, 522
 - tax charged to equity, 525–527
 - and valuation allowance, 525
- deferred tax assets
 - accounting choices about, 642–643
 - accounting profit vs. taxable income for, 510–513
 - changes in tax rates, 517–518
 - current assets as, 174
 - defined, 509
 - and timing, 508
 - unused tax losses/credits, 523–524
- deferred tax liabilities
 - accounting profit vs. taxable income for, 510–513
 - on balance sheets, 191–192
 - changes in tax rates, 517–518
 - defined, 509
- defined-benefit pension plans, 583–584
- defined-contribution pension plans, 583
- Dell Inc.
 - business strategy and financial performance, 273–274
- cash flow analysis of comparables, 256–257
- common-size cash flow statement, 252–254
- cross-sectional common-size analysis, 200, 203–204
 - evaluation of liquidity measures, 301
- depletion (term), 435n.12
- depreciation
 - accelerated, 122–124, 435
 - average age of depreciable assets, 462–464
 - component method, 441–443
 - declining balance, 436
 - defined, 24, 121
 - diminishing balance, 123–124
 - double-declining balance, 123, 436–440, 644–647
 - and expense recognition on income statements, 122–124
 - of long-lived assets, 435–443
 - calculation of depreciation expense, 441–443
 - financial reporting quality issues, 643–647, 653
 - methods, 435–441
 - plant, property, and equipment, 180, 703–704
 - and quality of financial reporting, 657–658
 - straight-line
 - and balance sheet, 644–647
 - bond premium/discount amortisation, 551
 - calculation, 436
 - defined, 435
 - depreciation/amortisation, 121–122
 - double-declining and units-of-production methods vs., 436–440
 - units-of-production, 435–440, 644–647
 - useful life and residual value in, 121–124

- depreciation expenses, 441–443, 454
 - derecognition
 - of debt, 557–559
 - of long-lived assets, 451–453
 - derivatives, 186
 - detection of financial reporting issues, 632–660
 - accounting choices and estimates, 638–655
 - cash flow statement effects, 648–651
 - earnings and balance sheet effects, 639–648
 - areas of choice/estimate and analyst concerns, 652–655
 - presentation choices, 633–638
 - warning signs, 655–660
 - capitalization policies, 657
 - cash flow and net income relationship, 657
 - company culture, 659–660
 - context for judging signs, 658–659
 - deferred costs, 657
 - inventories, 656–657
 - revenue, 655–656
 - development costs
 - internal, 431–435
 - and taxable/deductible temporary differences, 521
 - and tax bases of assets, 514–515
 - development phase (intangible assets), 182
 - diluted earnings per share, 134–140
 - with antidilutive securities, 139–140
 - defined, 132
 - if-converted method, 134–136
 - for stock options, 139
 - treasury stock method, 137–139
 - in valuation ratios, 319–321
 - diluted shares, 18
 - diminishing balance depreciation, 123–124
 - direct financing leases
 - defined, 484, 578
 - and financial statements, 480–485, 582–583
 - initial recognition and measurement of, 578–580
 - US GAAP on, 577, 578
 - direct-format statements
 - benefits of, 223
 - under IFRS, 226–228
 - for Telefónica Group, 226–228
 - direct method for cash flow from operating activities, 648
 - direct method for overall statement of cash flows, 241–242
 - adjustments to net income, 241–242
 - converting indirect and, 245–246
 - defined, 23, 222
 - direct write-off method, 120
 - disciplining mechanisms for financial reporting quality, 626–632
 - auditors, 629–630
 - market regulatory authorities, 627–629
 - and motivation for manipulation, 631–632
 - private contracts, 630
 - disclosure of opinion, 28
 - disclosure(s)
 - of bonds with warrants, 563–564
 - of debt and financial instruments, 555–557
 - of debt covenants, 560–561
 - of debt extinguishment, 558–559
 - and financial reporting quality, 659
 - and financial reporting standards, 79–83
 - disclosures relating to accounting policies, 79–81
 - disclosures relating to changes in accounting policies, 81–83
 - at General Electric, 82
 - at Volkswagen, 80–81
 - of income tax information, 528–533
 - and financial analysis, 532–533
 - Micron Technology, Inc., 528–533
 - interim period, 115n.26
 - of inventory information, 376
 - of investment property, 466–467
 - of leases, 570–577
 - of LIFO liquidations, 364–366
 - of long-term debt, 561–564
 - market regulators' requirements of, 628
 - and monitoring of financial reporting standards, 79–83
 - in notes to financial statements, 70
 - of pension plans, 585–586
 - and presentation of long-lived assets, 453–466
 - Daejan Holdings PLC, 465–466
 - fixed asset turnover and average age of depreciable assets, 462–464
 - Vodafone Group Plc, 455–460
 - of revaluation model for long-lived assets, 447–448
 - of revenue recognition, 115–116
 - disclosure management, 618n.8
 - discontinued operations, on income statements, 126
 - discount, bonds at, 549–553
 - discretionary cash flow to debt, 325
 - disposal, of long-lived assets, 452–453
 - diversification, as credit analysis factor, 691
 - dividend-payout ratio, 319, 321
 - dividends, on cash flow statement, 241
 - dividends per share, 319
 - dividends receivable, 514, 521
 - DOH. *see* days of inventory on hand
 - donations, 516, 521, 522
 - double-declining balance depreciation
 - acceleration factor in, 123
 - on financial statements, 644–647
 - of long-lived assets, 436–440
 - other depreciation methods vs., 436–440, 644–647
 - doubtful accounts, 120, 653
 - DSO. *see* days of sales outstanding
 - Dun & Bradstreet, 282
 - DuPont analysis, 313–318
 - Dynegy Inc., 650
- E**
- earnings
 - accounting choices/estimates and, 639–648
 - announcements of, 8–11
 - price to earnings ratio, 319–320
 - quality of, 608, 609, 618
 - retained, 193
 - sustainability of, 610–612
 - earnings before interest, taxes, depreciation, and amortization (EBITDA), adjusted, 634
 - earnings before interest and taxes (EBIT), 18, 99
 - earnings management, 618
 - earnings per share (EPS)
 - basic, 132–134, 319, 320
 - changes in, 140–141
 - defined, 18
 - diluted, 134–140
 - with antidilutive securities, 139–140
 - defined, 132
 - if-converted method, 134–136
 - for stock options, 139
 - treasury stock method, 137–139
 - in valuation ratios, 319–321
 - EBITDA per share, 319, 320
 - on income statements, 95n.5, 131–141
 - interpretation of, 320–321
 - and simple vs. complex capital structure, 132
 - earnings reports, 659
 - earnings smoothing, 612
 - earnings statements, 96
 - EBIT. *see* earnings before interest and taxes
 - EBITDA. *see* earnings before interest, taxes, depreciation, and amortization
 - EBITDA interest coverage, 325
 - EBITDA per share, 319, 320
 - EBIT interest coverage, 325
 - economic goodwill, 184
 - Ecuador, 58
 - EDGAR. *see* Electronic Data Gathering, Analysis, and Retrieval System
 - effective interest rate, 547, 551
 - Egypt, 59
 - Egyptian Financial Supervisory Authority, 51n.10
 - Electronic Data Gathering, Analysis, and Retrieval System (EDGAR), 52
 - El Salvador, 58
 - Employee Benefits* (IAS 19), 584n.17
 - employees
 - cash to, 237–238
 - net income/revenue per employee, 322
 - Employers' Accounting for Defined Benefit Pension and Other Postretirement Plans* (SFAS 158), 679
 - ending inventory
 - and inflation, 355–356
 - and inventory valuation method, 346, 350–352
 - in periodic vs. perpetual inventory systems, 352–354
 - enforcement, by market regulators, 628
 - Enron, 619, 626
 - EPS. *see* earnings per share
 - Equatorial Guinea, 59
 - equity
 - on balance sheets, 162, 192–196
 - components of, 192–195
 - statement of changes in equity, 195–196

- Conceptual Framework* on, 64
 - debt-to-equity ratio, 304, 305, 587
 - defined, 162
 - and financial position, 9
 - free cash flow to equity, 254–255
 - owners', 12, 162
 - return on equity, 309
 - and accounting standards, 678–680
 - decomposition of, 313–318
 - defined, 308
 - and ratio analysis, 280
 - shareholders', 162, 427
 - statement of changes in equity, 195–196
 - Apple Inc., 195–196
 - and balance sheet, 195–196
 - defined, 12
 - for financial statement analysis, 20, 21
 - tax charged to, 525–527
 - total debt to total debt plus equity ratio, 326
 - total liabilities-to-equity ratio, 363
 - equity analysts, 30
 - Equity Funding Corp., 619
 - equity investments
 - analysis, 318–323
 - actions based on, 33
 - industry-specific ratios, 321–323
 - research on ratios in, 323
 - valuation ratios, 319–321
 - screening, 694–697
 - example, 695
 - ratio-based, 697
 - Ernst & Young, 608
 - ESC. *see* European Securities Committee
 - ESMA. *see* European Securities and Market Authority
 - estimates
 - and earnings/balance sheets, 640–641
 - in financial reporting, 45–46
 - EU. *see* European Union
 - Europe, 55, 58. *see also specific countries and regions*
 - European Commission, 48, 55
 - European Financial Reporting Advisory Group, 55
 - European Parliament, 55
 - European Securities and Market Authority (ESMA), 55, 627
 - European Securities Committee (ESC), 55
 - European Union (EU), 55, 74
 - Evian, 329
 - expected loss impairment method, 187
 - expenditures, capital, 325, 417, 418
 - expense recognition on income statements, 16, 96–97, 116–125
 - and amortisation, 124
 - applications, 120–124
 - for doubtful accounts, 120
 - and financial analysis, 125
 - general principles, 117–120
 - and inventory costs, 117–118
 - for warranties, 120–121
 - expenses
 - accrued, 176
 - amortisation, 444
 - Conceptual Framework* on, 65
 - depreciation, 441–443, 454
 - income tax, 368
 - interest, 471n.32, 550–554
 - other operating, 238
 - prepaid, 173–174
 - tax, 368, 509
 - and warranties, 120–121
 - Expenses: Compensation–Retirement Benefits (ASC 715), 679
 - expensing of costs
 - capitalisation of costs vs., 423–428
 - on financial statements, 423–428
 - for ongoing purchases, 427
 - eXtensible Business Reporting Language (XBRL), 282
 - external sources of information, for financial statement analysis, 29–30
 - extractive industries, 621–622
 - extraordinary items, on income statements, 126–127
- F**
- face value, 546–549
 - FactSet, 281
 - fair value
 - of bonds payable, 554–557
 - Conceptual Framework* on, 66
 - defined, 162n.1, 169, 417n.2
 - financial assets at, 187–188
 - of financial liabilities, 554–555
 - and long-term asset acquisition, 417
 - Fair Value Measurement* (IFRS 13), 417n.2
 - Fair Value Measurements and Disclosures (ASC 820), 417n.2
 - fair value reporting, for bonds payable, 554–557
 - FASB. *see* Financial Accounting Standards Board
 - Fastow, Andrew, 626
 - FCA. *see* Financial Conduct Authority
 - FCFE. *see* free cash flow to equity
 - FCFF. *see* free cash flow to the firm
 - Federal Financial Supervisory Authority, 47
 - FFO interest coverage. *see* funds from operations interest coverage
 - FFO to debt. *see* funds from operations to debt
 - FIFO method. *see* first-in, first-out method
 - finance leases
 - accounting/reporting by lessee, 566–577
 - accounting/reporting by lessor, 577–583
 - defined, 468
 - direct financing leases
 - defined, 484, 578
 - and financial statements, 480–485, 582–583
 - initial recognition and measurement of, 578–580
 - US GAAP on, 577, 578
 - financial statement impact of, 580–583
 - operating leases vs.
 - for lessees, 471–480, 566–577, 582–583
 - for lessors, 480–485, 577–583
 - on long-lived assets, 467–485
 - on non-current liabilities, 564–583
 - recognition and measurement of, 567–569, 578–580
 - sales-type leases
 - defined, 484, 578
 - financial statement impact of, 485, 580–583
 - US GAAP on, 577
 - treating operating leases as, 476–480
- Financial Accounting Foundation, 49
- Financial Accounting Standards Advisory Council, 49
- Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB), 49–50
 - and convergence of global reporting standards, 56–57
 - development of standards, 45, 46
 - disclosure requirements of, 628
 - evolving standards, 78
 - revenue recognition standards, 99–100, 112
- as standard-setting body, 47
- financial analysis, 269–341
 - about, 270
 - for business/geographic segments, 327–329
 - reporting requirements, 327–328
 - segment ratios, 328–329
- common ratios, 290–318
 - activity ratios, 292–298
 - categories, 291
 - integrated analysis with, 311–318
 - interpretation and context, 291–292
 - liquidity ratios, 298–303
 - profitability ratios, 307–311
 - solvency ratios, 303–307
- computations vs., 272–274
- credit analysis, 324–326
 - credit rating process, 324–326
 - research on ratios in, 326
- disclosure of income tax information, 532–533
- equity analysis, 318–323
 - industry-specific ratios, 321–323
 - research on ratios in, 323
 - valuation ratios, 319–321
- and expense recognition on income statements, 125
- framework for, 271–272
- inventory management in, 377–388
- model building and forecasting with, 330
- objectives of, 271–272
- practice problems, 333–338
- process, 271–274
- solutions to problems, 339–341
- strategy and financial performance, 272–274
- tools and techniques, 274–290
 - graphs, 288–290
 - regression analysis, 290
- financial assets, on balance sheets, 186–189
- financial condition, statements of, 162. *see also* balance sheets
- Financial Conduct Authority (FCA), 627, 628
- financial flexibility, 20
- Financial Instruments* (IFRS 9), 146, 187
- financial leverage, 303–304
- financial leverage ratio, 304, 305, 587

- financial performance
 - evaluating, 673–681
 - accounting standards and ROE, 678–680
 - and changes in business strategy, 673–677
 - and war chests, 677
 - integrated analysis of, 312–313
 - projecting, 681–690
 - consistency of forecasts, 690
 - example, 687–689
 - forecasting operating profit, 683–684
 - issues with, 684–687
 - with market-based valuation, 682–687
 - for multiple periods, 687–690
- financial position, statements of, 12, 162. *see also* balance sheets
- financial ratios
 - financial analysis with, 278–282
 - and inventory write-downs, 370–375
- financial reporting, for business segments, 327–328
- Financial Reporting Council, 628
- financial reporting quality, 607–670
 - about, 608–609
 - assessing, 625–632
 - conditions conducive to low-quality reports, 626
 - disciplining mechanism, 626–632
 - motivations for issuing low-quality reports, 625–626
 - conservative vs. aggressive accounting, 620–625
 - bias in application of accounting standards, 624–625
 - in extractive industries, 621–622
 - detection of issues, 632–660
 - accounting choices and estimates, 638–655
 - areas of choice/estimate and analyst concerns, 652–655
 - presentation choices, 633–638
 - warning signs, 655–660
 - disciplining mechanisms, 626–632
 - auditors, 629–630
 - market regulatory authorities, 627–629
 - and motivation for manipulation, 631–632
 - private contracts, 630
 - and earnings quality, 609, 618
 - practice problems, 663–666
 - solutions to problems, 667–670
 - spectrum of quality for financial reports, 609–620
 - and aggressive presentation, 612, 615
 - and biased accounting choices, 612–618
 - departures from GAAP, 619–620
 - “GAAP, decision-useful, but sustainable?” level, 611–612
 - “GAAP, decision-useful, sustainable, and adequate returns” level, 610–611
 - presentation of non-GAAP financial measures, 614–618
 - “Within GAAP, but biased choices” level, 612–618
 - “Within GAAP, but ‘earnings management’” level, 618
- financial reporting standards, 43–89
 - about, 44
 - Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting 2010*, 60–72
 - and barriers to single standards framework, 73–74
 - constraints on financial reports, 63–64
 - convergence of US GAAP and, 70–72
 - and effective standards frameworks, 72–73
 - elements of financial reports, 64–66
 - objective of financial reports, 61–62
 - qualitative characteristics of financial reports, 62–63
 - requirements for financial statements, 66–70
 - global, 56–59
 - of IFRS vs. US GAAP, 74–77
 - monitoring developments in, 77–83
 - by CFA Institute, 78–79
 - with company disclosures, 79–83
 - for new products/types of transactions, 77–78
 - and objectives of financial reporting, 44–46
 - practice problems, 85–87
 - reports based on, 608
 - solutions to problems, 88–89
 - standard-setting bodies, 47–55
 - accounting standards boards, 48–50
 - for industry-specific regulation, 47–48
 - regulatory authorities, 50–55
- financial reports
 - constraints, 63–64
 - elements, 64–66
 - high-quality, 609–612
 - low-quality
 - conditions conducive to, 626
 - and earnings quality, 609, 618
 - motivations for, 625–626
 - on spectrum of quality, 619–620
 - manipulation of
 - motivation for, 631–632
 - prevalence of, 608
 - objectives, 61–62
 - qualitative characteristics, 62–63
 - spectrum of quality, 609–620
 - and aggressive presentation, 612, 615
 - and biased accounting choices, 612–620
 - departures from GAAP, 619–620
 - “GAAP, decision-useful, but sustainable?” level, 611–612
 - “GAAP, decision-useful, sustainable, and adequate returns” level, 610–611
 - presentation of non-GAAP financial measures, 614–618
 - “Within GAAP, but biased choices” level, 612–618
 - “Within GAAP, but ‘earnings management’” level, 618
- Financial Services Agency, 47, 48, 57
- financial statement analysis, 5–41. *see also* applications of financial statement analysis
 - about, 6
 - asset revaluations in, 445–446
 - framework, 30–34
 - conclusions and recommendations, 33–34
 - data analysis and interpretation, 33
 - data collection, 32
 - data processing, 33
 - follow-up, 34
 - purpose and context of analysis, 31–32
 - information sources, 11–30
 - auditor’s reports, 27–29
 - balance sheet, 12–16
 - cash flow statement, 20, 22–23
 - financial notes, 24–25
 - financial statements, 11–30
 - internal and external sources of information, 29–30
 - management commentary/MD&A, 26
 - statement of changes in equity, 20, 21
 - statement of comprehensive income, 16–20
 - supplementary information, 11–12
 - supplementary schedules, 24–25
 - practice problems, 37–39
 - scope of, 6–11
 - and earnings announcements, 8–11
 - and profit vs. cash flow, 7–8
 - solutions to problems, 40–41
- financial statements. *see also specific statements*
 - capitalisation vs. expensing of costs on, 423–428
 - and direct financing leases, 480–485
 - finance vs. operating leases on, 471–484
 - leases on, 580–583
 - LIFO liquidation on, 364–366
 - long-lived assets on, 454–455
 - notes to financial statements
 - Alcatel-Lucent, 385–386
 - Caterpillar Inc., 360
 - disclosures, 70
 - financial statement analysis, 24–25
 - LIFO liquidation, 365
 - PACCAR, 613
 - Volvo Group, 372–373
 - relationships of, 287–288
 - requirements of IFRS framework, 66–70
 - for disclosures in notes, 70
 - from IAS No. 1, 68–70
 - required statements, 67
 - statement features, 67–68
 - for structure and content, 68–70
 - and revenue recognition on income statements, 111–112
 - and sales-type leases, 485
- financing activities
 - cash flow from, 221
 - on cash flow statements, 219–220, 240
 - defined, 22
 - financing cash flow, 221
 - finished goods inventory, 346, 377
 - finite lives, intangible assets with, 450
 - Finland, 58
 - first-in, first-out (FIFO) method
 - analyst adjustments related to, 699–702

- and earnings/balance sheets, 639–640
- of inventory valuation
 - assigning costs in, 349
 - conversion from LIFO to FIFO, 358–363
 - and cost of goods sold, 172
 - defined, 118–119
 - inflation and LIFO vs., 354–356
 - other valuation methods vs., 349–352
 - in periodic vs. perpetual inventory systems, 352
- five-way decomposition of ROE, 316–318
- fixed asset turnover ratio
 - and average age of depreciable assets, 462–464
 - calculating, 293
 - interpreting, 297, 460
- fixed charge coverage ratio, 305–306, 587
- fixed costs, leverage and, 303–304
- fixed production costs, 347n.7
- FOB shipping. *see* free on board shipping
- follow-up, financial statement analysis, 34
- Ford Motor Company, 102–103
- forecasts
 - consistency of, 690
 - and financial analysis, 330
 - of financial performance, 681–690
 - of operating profit, 683–684
 - and quality of financial reports, 625
- ForgeHouse, Inc., 127
- Form 3 (SEC), 54–55
- Form 4 (SEC), 54–55
- Form 5 (SEC), 54–55
- Form 6-K (SEC), 53
- Form 8-K (SEC), 54
- Form 10-K (SEC), 53, 364–365
- Form 10-Q (SEC), 53
- Form 11-K (SEC), 55
- Form 20-F (SEC), 53
- Form 40-F (SEC), 53
- Form 144 (SEC), 54
- format
 - of balance sheets, 165–167
 - of cash flow statements, 219–232
 - cash flows and non-cash activities, 219–221
 - cash flows from operating activities, 222–232
 - and IFRS vs. US GAAP, 221–222
 - of income statements, 95–99
- Form DEF-14A (SEC), 53
- fourth-quarter surprises, 658
- Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements* (IASB), 45, 116
- FRC. *see* UK Financial Reporting Council
- free cash flow to equity (FCFE), 254–255
- free cash flow to the firm (FCFF), 254–255
- free on board (FOB) shipping, 638
- free operating cash flow to debt, 325
- function of expense method, 454–455
- funds from operations (FFO) interest coverage, 325
- funds from operations (FFO) to debt, 325
- G**
- GAAP. *see* generally accepted accounting principles
- “GAAP, decision-useful, but sustainable?” financial reports, 611–612
- “GAAP, decision-useful, sustainable, and adequate returns” financial reports, 610–611
- gains
 - on debt forgiveness, 127
 - extraordinary, 127
 - on income statement, 97
 - on marketable securities, 188–189
- GDP. *see* gross domestic product
- General Electric, 82, 659
- generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP). *see also entries for specific countries and regions, e.g.: US GAAP*
 - convergence of IFRS and, 57–59
 - financial reports with departures from, 619–620
 - “GAAP, decision-useful, but sustainable?” financial reports, 611–612
 - “GAAP, decision-useful, sustainable, and adequate returns” financial reports, 610–611
 - non-GAAP measures in financial reports, 614–618, 633–638
 - “Within GAAP, but biased choices” financial reports, 612–618
 - “Within GAAP, but ‘earnings management’” financial reports, 618
- geographic segments, financial analysis for, 327–329
- Georgia, 58
- Germany
 - bank regulation, 47
 - conservatism in, 624
 - IFRS adoption, 58
 - management reporting requirements, 26
- Ghana, 59
- GICS. *see* S&P/MSCI Global Industrial Classification System
- GlaxoSmithKline plc, 629
- global financial crisis (2008-2009), 56
- global financial reporting standards, 56–59. *see also* International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRS)
- Goldman Sachs, 555
- goodwill
 - accounting, 184
 - analyst adjustments for, 704–706
 - on balance sheets, 183–186
 - from business combinations, 422–423
 - defined, 420
 - economic, 184
 - and financial reporting issues, 648
- financial reporting issues with, 654
- on income statements, 124
- ratio comparisons for, 705–706
- valuation of, 181–182
- goodwill impairment, 185–186
- Google, 54
- graphs, for financial analysis, 288–290
- gross domestic product (GDP), 682
- gross margin, financial reporting quality and, 658
- gross profit, 98
 - and inflation, 355–356
 - and inventory valuation method, 350–352
 - and LIFO liquidation, 364, 366–367
 - in periodic vs. perpetual inventory systems, 352–354
- gross profit margin, 307, 308
 - calculating, 356
 - and conversion from LIFO to FIFO, 362–363
 - defined, 308
 - and income statement ratios, 144
 - on income statements, 98
 - inventory management with, 376, 377
 - and inventory write-downs, 375
 - in ratio analysis, 277
- gross reporting of revenue, 109–110
- Groupe Danone
 - cash flow statement, 248–249
 - income statement, 95–98, 131
 - segment ratio evaluation, 328–329
- grouping by function (term), 98
- grouping by nature (term), 98
- Groupon, 635–638
- growth investors, 696
- Guatemala, 58
- H**
- held-for-sale assets, impairment of, 451
- held for trading (term), 187
- held-to-maturity (term), 186
- HERE, 615, 616
- Hewlett-Packard
 - cash flow analysis of comparables, 256–257
 - cross-sectional common-size analysis, 200, 203–204
 - evaluation of liquidity measures, 301
- high-quality financial reports
 - and earnings quality, 609
 - on spectrum of quality, 610–612
- historical cost, 66
- Honduras, 58
- Hong Kong SAR, 59
- horizontal common-size analysis, 141n.50, 282, 285–287
- I**
- IAS. *see* International Accounting Standards
- IASB. *see* International Accounting Standards Board
- IBM. *see* International Business Machines
- identifiable intangible assets, 182–183
- if-converted method for diluted earnings per share, 134–136

- IFRS. *see* International Financial Reporting Standards
- IFRS Foundation, 48–49
- impairment(s)
- expected loss method of, 187
 - financial reporting quality and, 660
 - of goodwill, 185–186
 - of intangible assets, 181, 450–451
 - of long-lived assets, 448–451, 623
 - of PPE, 180, 449
- Impairment of Assets* (IAS 36), 448
- implicit interest rate, 478–479
- InBev USA LLC, 423, 685, 686
- incentives, for low-quality financial reports, 625–626
- income
- adjusted CSOI, 635–638
 - comprehensive
 - defined, 193n.20
 - IFRS on, 145, 148
 - on income statements, 145–148
 - on statement of comprehensive income, 19–20
 - US GAAP on, 145, 148
 - Conceptual Framework* on, 65
 - deferred, 176
 - on income statements, 100
 - net, 242–245
 - and asset revaluations, 445–446
 - coefficient of variation of, 322
 - defined, 98
 - and direct method for overall statement of cash flows, 241–242
 - on income statement, 98
 - and indirect method for overall statement of cash flows, 242–245
 - per employee, 322
 - relationship of cash flow and, 657
 - operating, 322
 - other comprehensive
 - accumulated, 193
 - defined, 145
 - on income statements, 147–148
 - on statement of comprehensive income, 19–20
 - taxable, 508–513
 - total comprehensive, 145
- income statement method of tax recognition, 518n.3
- income statement ratios, 143–145
- income statements, 93–159
- analysis of, 16–19, 141–145
 - common-size, 141–143, 283–285
 - income statement ratios, 143–145
 - and cash flow statements, 232–233
 - common-size analysis of, 141–143, 283–285
 - components and format, 95–99
 - for CRA International Inc., 99
 - for Groupe Danone, 95–98
 - for Kraft Foods, 96–97
 - comprehensive income on, 145–148
 - consolidated
 - of Alcatel-Lucent, 383–384
 - of Volvo Group, 371
 - disclosures about long-lived assets in, 454–455
 - earnings per share, 95n.5, 131–141
 - basic, 132–134
 - changes in, 140–141
 - diluted, 134–140
 - and simple vs. complex capital structure, 132
 - expense recognition, 116–125
 - and amortisation, 124
 - applications, 120–124
 - and depreciation/amortisation, 121–124
 - for doubtful accounts, 120
 - and financial analysis, 125
 - general principles, 117–120
 - for warranties, 120–121
 - function, 94–95
 - interest costs on, 428
 - leases on, 471
 - LIFO liquidation on, 365
 - non-operating items, 130–131
 - non-recurring items, 125–131
 - and changes in accounting policies, 128–130
 - discontinued operations, 126
 - extraordinary items, 126–127
 - unusual and infrequent items, 127–128
 - practice problems, 151–155
 - revenue recognition, 99–116
 - accounting standards issued May 2014, 112–116
 - for barter transactions, 109
 - and financial statements, 111–112
 - general principles, 100–103
 - and gross vs. net reporting of revenues, 109–110
 - for installment sales, 108–109
 - for long-term contracts, 104–107
 - in special cases, 103–110
 - solutions to problems, 156–159
 - vertical common-size, 283–285
- income taxes, 507–544
- and accounting profit vs. taxable income, 508–513
 - cash for, 239
 - current and deferred tax, 524–527
 - disclosure of tax information, 528–533
 - IFRS vs. US GAAP, 508, 533–536
 - and inventory method changes, 368
 - practice problems, 538–542
 - presentation, 528–533
 - solutions to problems, 543–544
 - and taxable vs. accounting profit, 518–523
 - tax bases, 513–518
 - of assets, 513–515
 - and changes in tax rates, 517–518
 - of liabilities, 515–517
 - unused tax losses and credits, 523–524
- Income Taxes (ASC 740), 508
- Income Taxes* (IAS 12), 508, 515, 518n.3, 520, 522, 523
- income tax paid, 509
- income tax payable, 174, 177, 509
- incremental costs, 115
- indefinite lives, intangible assets with, 451
- India, 59, 627
- indirect-format statements, 223–226
- indirect method for cash flow from operating activities, 648–649
- indirect method for overall statement of cash flows, 242–245
- adjustments to net income, 242–245
 - converting direct method and, 245–246
 - defined, 23, 222–223
- Indonesia, 59
- industry-specific ratios, for equity analysis, 321–323
- industry-specific regulation, of financial statements, 47–48
- inflation, LIFO vs. FIFO and, 354–356
- information
- comparative growth, 288
 - decision-useful, 610–612
 - for financial statement analysis, 11–30
 - auditor's reports, 27–29
 - balance sheet, 12–16
 - cash flow statement, 20, 22–23
 - financial notes, 24–25
 - internal and external sources of information, 29–30
 - management commentary/MD&A, 26
 - statement of changes in equity, 20, 21
 - statement of comprehensive income, 16–20
 - supplementary information, 11–12
 - supplementary schedules, 24–25
 - income tax, 528–533
 - from SEC forms, 52–55
 - supplementary, 11–12
- infrequent items, 127–128
- initial recognition, taxable and accounting profit at, 522
- installment method of revenue recognition, 108–109
- installment sales, revenue recognition for, 108–109
- Insurance Medical Group, Ltd., 127
- insurance recoverables, 623
- intangible assets
- acquisition of, 420–423
 - on balance sheets, 181–186
 - from business combinations, 422–423
 - capitalization of, 647–648, 653
 - depreciation/amortisation of, 121, 181
 - identifiable, 182–183
 - impairment of, 181, 450–451
 - on income statements, 124
 - internally-developed, 420–422
 - long-lived, 416
 - not from business combinations, 420
 - and research, 182, 421
- Intangible Assets* (IAS 38), 444
- integrated analysis with ratios, 311–318
- DuPont analysis, 313–318
 - liquidity of company, 311–312
 - performance of company, 312–313
 - ROE decomposition, 313–318
- interest
- and amortisation of bonds, 550–554
 - capitalization of, 419, 428–431, 650–651
 - cash for, 238–239
- Interest (ASC 835), 428n.11
- interest coverage ratio, 305, 325, 587

- interest expenses, 471n.32, 550–554
- interest payments, 550–554
- interest rate
 - effective, 547, 551
 - implicit, 478–479
 - market, 547
- interest received in advance, 516–517, 521, 522
- interests (in businesses)
 - as investments, 523
 - minority/noncontrolling, 17, 193
- interim period disclosures, 115n.26
- internal control systems, 29
- internal development costs, 431–435
- internally-developed intangible assets, 420–422
- internal sources of information, for financial statement analysis, 29–30
- International Accounting Standards (IAS), 66–70
 - Borrowing Costs* (IAS 23), 428n.11
 - Employee Benefits* (IAS 19), 584n.17
 - Impairment of Assets* (IAS 36), 448
 - Income Taxes* (IAS 12), 508, 515, 518n.3, 520, 522, 523
 - Intangible Assets* (IAS 38), 444
 - Inventories*, 369
 - Leases* (IAS 17), 467n.29
 - Presentation of Financial Statements* (IAS 1), 68–70, 94n.1
 - Statement of Cash Flows* (IAS 7), 471n.32
- International Accounting Standards Board (IASB), 48–49
 - disclosure requirements, 628
 - development of standards, 45, 46, 78
 - Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements*, 45, 116
 - and GAAP, 70–72
 - and global reporting standards, 56–57
 - on income, 100
 - income statement standards, 94n.1
 - management reporting framework of, 26
 - on objective of financial reporting, 44
 - revenue recognition standards, 99–100, 112
 - as standard-setting body, 47
- International Business Machines (IBM), 633
- International Federation of Accountants, 27
- International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRS). *see also* *Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting 2010*
 - adoption of, 58–59
 - on amortisation, 121, 550, 551
 - on available-for-sale classification, 146–147
 - for balance sheets, 14–15
 - on barter transactions, 109
 - on bond cost reporting, 555
 - on borrowed funds, 419
 - on capitalisation of interest costs, 428n.11, 430
 - for cash flow statements, 22, 220
 - on comprehensive income, 145, 148
 - on debt issuance costs, 557
 - on decision-useful information, 610n.2
 - on deferred tax assets/liabilities, 510, 511, 525
 - on depreciation, 121, 441
 - on diluted earnings per share, 139
 - on direct-format statements, 226–228
 - disclosure requirements, 79–81, 453–454
 - for EU capital markets, 55
 - fair value definition, 417n.2
 - on financial statement ratios, 677–678
 - and global reporting standards, 56–59
 - on impairments, 180, 181, 448–451, 454
 - income definition, 100
 - for income statements, 94, 98
 - on income taxes, 508
 - for indirect-format statements, 223–226
 - for intangible assets, 420–422
 - on interest, 238, 419, 471n.32, 554
 - on inventory valuation, 346–348, 367–369, 377
 - on investment property, 464
 - and IOSCO, 51
 - on leases, 468, 476, 480, 484n.36, 565, 566, 570, 572, 577–578, 582–583
 - non-IFRS measures in financial reports, 634
 - on pension plans, 584
 - on percentage-of-completion method, 104
 - on residual value, 121
 - on revaluation, 435, 444, 445, 447–448
 - on revenue recognition, 101, 112, 113, 622
 - SEC's adoption of, 357
 - on segment reporting, 327
 - and Swiss financial statements, 50
 - on taxable profit vs. accounting profit, 518–520
 - on tax issues, 515
 - and US GAAP
 - conservatism in, 622–624
 - on financial reporting standards, 74–77
 - frameworks of, 70–72
 - on income taxes, 508, 533–536
- International Organization of Securities Commissions (IOSCO), 26, 48, 51, 627–628
- International Paper Company, 462–464
- international standards for auditing (ISAs), 27
- introductory paragraph, audit report, 27
- Inventories* (IAS 2), 369
- inventory(-ies), 345–414
 - adjustments to, 368–375
 - declines and recoveries of inventory value, 369–370
 - inventory write-downs and financial ratios, 370–375
 - with LIFO reserve, 357
 - analyst adjustments for, 699–702
 - on balance sheets, 171–173
 - commodity, 623
 - cost of, 347–348
 - days of inventory on hand
 - and activity ratios, 292–294
 - and conversion from LIFO to FIFO, 362
 - inventory management with, 376–377
 - and inventory turnover, 294–295
 - and inventory write-downs, 374–375
 - ending, 346, 350–356
 - and financial reporting issues, 656–657
 - finished goods, 346, 377
 - growth in, 656–657
 - inventory management, 375–388
 - comparisons of companies, 378–381
 - in financial analysis, 377–388
 - inventory ratios, 376–377
 - in MD&A of annual report, 381–382
 - presentation and disclosure of inventories, 376
 - for single company, 383–388
 - of manufacturing and merchandising companies, 346
 - practice problems, 391–406
 - presentation and disclosure of, 376
 - raw materials, 346, 377
 - solutions to problems, 407–414
 - valuation, 118–120, 172, 348–368
 - changes in, 367–368
 - comparison of, 354–356
 - cost of sales, gross profit, and ending inventory, 350–352
 - first-in, first-out, 118–119, 172, 349–352
 - last-in, first-out, 119, 172, 349–352, 357–367
 - LIFO liquidation, 363–367
 - LIFO reserve, 357–363
 - periodic vs. perpetual inventory systems, 352–354
 - retail method, 171
 - specific identification, 118, 349–352
 - specific identification methods, 172
 - weighted average cost, 172, 349–352
 - weighted average cost method, 119
 - work-in-progress, 346, 377
- inventory costing, alternative methods, 118–120, 654
- inventory costs, 117–118, 346–348
- inventory management, 375–388
 - comparisons of companies, 378–381
 - in financial analysis, 377–388
 - inventory ratios, 376–377
 - in MD&A of annual report, 381–382
 - presentation and disclosure of inventories, 376
 - for single company, 383–388
 - inventory ratios, 376–377
 - inventory revenues, 117–118
 - inventory turnover ratio, 293–295
 - and activity ratio, 293–294
 - activity ratio definition, 292
 - calculating, 356
 - and conversion from LIFO to FIFO, 362
 - and DOH, 294–295
 - inventory management with, 376–377
 - inventory ratios, 657
 - and inventory write-downs, 374

- inventory value, 369–370
 - inventory write-downs
 - in financial analysis, 378
 - and financial ratios, 370–375
 - US GAAP vs. IFRS on, 368–369
 - investing activities
 - on cash flow statement, 219, 239–240
 - defined, 20, 22
 - net cash flow from, 220
 - investment property, 180–181, 464–467
 - investments
 - analyst adjustments for, 698
 - in business subsidiaries, branches, associates, or interests, 523
 - IOSCO. *see* International Organization of Securities Commissions
 - iPad, 674–676
 - iPhone, 9, 129–130, 274, 674–676
 - iPod, 9, 674–676
 - Ireland, 58
 - Irving, Bryan, 127
 - ISAs. *see* international standards for auditing
 - Israel, 59
 - issuance, bond, 546–550
 - iTunes, 273–274, 674
 - Izumiya, Naoki, 677
- J**
- Japan
 - benefits of conservatism in, 624
 - discipline for financial reporting quality in, 627
 - regulatory body of, 47
 - use of IFRS vs. GAAP in, 59
 - Japanese Business Accounting Council, 57
 - Japanese GAAP, 57, 59
 - Jobs, Steve, 9
 - Johnson & Johnson, 561–563, 683, 684
- K**
- Kazakhstan, 59
 - Kenya, 59
 - Khaitan, Aditya, 677
 - Kidder Peabody, 659
 - Kingdom of Saudi Arabia Capital Market Authority, 51n.10
 - Kohlberg Kravis Roberts & Co. L.P., 685
 - Koninklijke KPN N.V., 447–448
 - Korea, 59
 - KPMG SA, 630
 - KPS Capital Partners, L.P., 685
 - Kraft Foods
 - derecognition of long-lived assets, 453
 - income statement, 97–98
 - income statement ratios, 143–145
 - statement of earnings, 96
 - Kyrgyz Republic, 59
- L**
- last-in, first-out (LIFO) method
 - analyst adjustments related to, 699–702
 - financial reporting issues with, 654, 657
 - of inventory valuation, 349–367
 - assigning costs in, 350
 - conversion from LIFO to FIFO, 358–363
 - and cost of goods sold, 172
 - defined, 119, 350
 - inflation and FIFO vs., 354–356
 - and inventory write-downs, 370
 - LIFO liquidations, 363–367
 - LIFO reserve, 357–363
 - other valuation methods vs., 349–352
 - in periodic vs. perpetual inventory systems, 352–354
 - leases, 564–583
 - advantages of, 564–565
 - analyst adjustments for, 707–713
 - direct financing, 480–485, 577–580, 582–583
 - finance
 - accounting/reporting by lessee, 566–577
 - accounting/reporting by lessor, 577–583
 - defined, 468
 - direct financing leases, 480–485, 577–580, 582–583
 - financial statement impact of, 580–583
 - operating leases vs., 467–485, 565–583
 - operating vs., 565–583
 - recognition and measurement of, 567–569, 578–580
 - sales-type, 577, 578, 580–583
 - sales-type leases, 484, 485, 577, 578, 580–583
 - treating operating leases as, 476–480
 - for long-lived assets, 467–485
 - finance vs. operating leases, 467–485
 - lease versus buy decision, 467–470
 - operating
 - accounting/reporting by lessee, 566–567, 570–577
 - accounting/reporting by lessor, 577, 582–583
 - analyst adjustments related to, 707–713
 - and analyst adjustments to debt, 710–712
 - coverage ratio for analyst adjustment, 712–713
 - defined, 468
 - finance vs., 467–485, 565–583
 - financial statement impact of, 582–583
 - sales-type, 484, 485, 577, 578, 580–583
 - synthetic, 467, 565
 - Leases (ASC 840), 467n.29, 577n.14
 - Leases (ASC 842), 468
 - Leases (IAS 17), 467n.29
 - Leases (IFRS 16), 78, 220, 468, 566
 - lease versus buy decision, 467–470
 - Lebanon, 59
 - Lenovo Group Limited
 - activity ratios, 294–296
 - liquidity measures, 301
 - ratio analysis, 275–277
 - lessees
 - defined, 467, 564
 - finance vs. operating leases for financial statement impact of leases, 471–480
 - leases on long-lived assets, 471–480
 - leases on non-current liabilities, 566–577
 - treating operating leases as finance leases, 476–480
 - lessors
 - defined, 467, 564
 - finance vs. operating leases for direct financing leases, 480–485
 - financial statement impact of leases, 480–485
 - leases on long-term assets, 480–485
 - leases on non-current liabilities, 577–583
 - sales-type leases, 485
 - leverage, 303–304, 445
 - leverage ratios, 305, 587–589
 - Levitt, Arthur, 624–625
 - liabilities. *see also* non-current liabilities
 - on balance sheets, 162, 165–166, 174–178, 191
 - Conceptual Framework* on, 64
 - current
 - of Apple Inc., 175
 - on balance sheets, 165–166, 174–178
 - deferred revenue analysis, 176–178
 - of SAP Group, 175
 - current tax, 509–510
 - deferred tax
 - accounting profit vs. taxable income for, 510–513
 - on balance sheets, 191–192
 - changes in tax rates, 517–518
 - defined, 509
 - defined, 162
 - and financial position, 9
 - income tax bases of, 515–517
 - long-term, 191
 - total liabilities-to-equity ratio, 363
 - LIFO conformity rule, 357
 - LIFO liquidations, 363–367
 - disclosure of, 364–366
 - example, 366–367
 - on financial statements, 364–366
 - and LIFO reserve, 363–364
 - LIFO method. *see* last-in, first-out method
 - LIFO reserve, 357–363
 - converting LIFO to FIFO inventory with, 358–363
 - defined, 357
 - and LIFO liquidations, 363–364
 - Lindsay, Don, 10–11
 - line costs, 648
 - line graphs, 290
 - liquid asset requirement, 322
 - liquidations, LIFO, 363–367
 - disclosure of, 364–366
 - example, 366–367
 - on financial statements, 364–366
 - and LIFO reserve, 363–364
 - liquidity
 - on balance sheet, 15, 165–167
 - defined, 8, 164–165, 196
 - evaluation of measures, 301
 - integrated analysis of, 311–312

- liquidity ratios, 298–303
 - bounds and context of, 302–303
 - calculations, 299
 - defined, 204, 291, 299
 - evaluation, 301
 - interpretation, 300–301
 - cash conversion cycle, 301
 - cash ratio, 300
 - current ratio, 300
 - defensive internal ratio, 300
 - quick ratio, 300
- Lithuania, 58
- litigation losses, 623
- LM Ericsson Telephone Company, 588–589
- loan covenants, 634
- loan loss reserves, allowances for, 653
- loans
 - and taxable/deductible temporary differences, 521, 522
 - and tax bases of liabilities, 516, 517
- long-lived assets, 415–506. *see also* non-current assets
 - acquisition of, 417–435
 - accounting for, 417
 - capitalisation of costs, 423–435
 - and financial reporting issues, 648
 - intangible assets, 420–423
 - property, plant, and equipment, 417–420
 - amortisation of, 443–444
 - defined, 121, 416
 - depreciation of, 435–443, 643–647, 653
 - derecognition of, 451–453
 - disclosures for, 453–466
 - Daejan Holdings PLC, 465–466
 - fixed asset turnover and average age of depreciable assets, 462–464
 - Vodafone Group Plc, 455–460
 - impairment of, 448–451, 623
 - investment property as, 464–467
 - leases on, 467–485
 - finance vs. operating leases, 467–485
 - lease versus buy decision, 467–470
 - practice problems, 489–500
 - presentation of, 453–466
 - comparing fixed asset turnover and average age of depreciable assets, 462–464
 - Daejan Holdings PLC, 465–466
 - Vodafone Group Plc, 455–460
 - revaluation model for, 444–448
 - solutions to problems, 501–506
- long-term contracts, revenue recognition for, 104–107
- long-term debt
 - on cash flow statement, 241
 - disclosure of, 561–564
 - and lease disclosure, 572–577
 - presentation of, 561–564
- long-term financial liabilities, 191
- look-ahead bias, 696
- losses
 - in conservative accounting choices, 620–621
 - expected, as impairment method, 187
 - impairment, 449
 - on income statement, 98
 - litigation, 623
 - on marketable securities, 188–189
 - tax loss carry forward, 509
 - unused tax, 523–524
- Lotte Group, 677
- low-quality financial reports
 - conditions conducive to, 626
 - and earnings quality, 609, 618
 - motivations for, 625–626
 - on spectrum of quality, 619–620
- M**
- Macedonia, 58
- Macintosh® computers, 9
- McLeod Russel India Ltd., 677
- Malawi, 59
- Malaysia, 59
- Malaysian GAAP, 59
- management commentary, 26, 628
- “Management Commentary” (IFRS Practice Statement), 615
- management discussion and analysis (MD&A), 12
 - “Critical Accounting Estimates,” 625
 - on derecognition, 557
 - in financial statement analysis, 26
 - information in, 564
 - inventory management in, 381–382
 - LIFO liquidation in, 364
 - of Microsoft, 431
 - of PACCAR, 613–614
 - policy disclosure requirements, 79
 - as SEC requirement, 557n.5
 - of Volvo Group, 381–382
- managers
 - financial reporting quality and disclosure by, 659
 - fixation on earnings reports by, 659
 - merger and acquisition orientation of, 660
 - motivations for issuing low-quality reports by, 625–626
- manipulation, of financial reports, 608, 631–632
- manufacturing companies, inventories of, 346
- margin stability, 691
- marketable securities, 169, 187–189
- market-based valuation, 682–687
- market-oriented investors, 696
- market rate(s)
 - for bonds payable, 554–555
 - of interest, 547
- market value to book value (MV/BV) ratio, 705–706
- mark-to-market, 187
- Mason, Andrew, 635
- matching principle, 117
- Mauritius, 59
- MD&A. *see* management discussion and analysis
- merchandising companies, inventories of, 346
- merger and acquisition orientation, 660
- MetaCarta, 617
- Mexico, 58, 678–680
- Micron Technology, Inc., 528–533
 - consolidated balance sheet, 529–530
 - consolidated statement of operations, 528–529
 - notes to consolidated financial statement, 530–531
- Microsoft, 431
- Middle East, 59. *see also specific countries*
- minimalist disclosure approach, 659
- minority interests, 17, 193
- model building, financial analysis for, 330
- Moldova, 58
- monetary reserve requirement, 322
- monitoring, of financial reporting standards, 77–83
 - by CFA Institute, 78–79
 - with company disclosures, 79–83
 - for new products/types of transactions, 77–78
- Monte Carlo simulation, for risk assessment, 690
- Moody’s Investor Service, 692–693
- Morl, Ian, 127
- Morocco, 59
- Motally, 617
- motivation
 - for manipulating financial reports, 631–632
 - for producing low-quality financial reports, 618, 625–626
- Motorola Solutions, 616
- Mozambique, 59
- MTR Gaming Group, Inc., 429–430
- multiple-delivery arrangements, 656
- multiple-period financial performance, projecting, 687–690
- multi-step format, income statement, 98
- MV/BV ratio. *see* market value to book value ratio
- N**
- Namibia, 59
- National Datacomputer Inc., 302–303
- nature of expense method, 454–455
- NAVTEQ, 617
- negative covenants, 559
- Nestlé Group, 630, 685–687
- net book value, 123
- net cash flow, 220, 325
- Netherlands, 58
- net income
 - and asset revaluations, 445–446
 - cash flow and, 657
 - coefficient of variation for, 322
 - defined, 98
 - and direct method for overall statement of cash flows, 241–242
 - and financial reporting issues, 657
 - on income statement, 98
 - and indirect method for overall statement of cash flows, 242–245
 - per employee, 322
- net interest margin, 322
- net profit margin, 307, 308
 - calculation of, 278
 - and conversion from LIFO to FIFO, 363
 - defined, 308
 - and income statement ratios, 143
 - and inventory write-downs, 375
 - in ratio analysis, 277

- net realisable value (NRV), 171–172, 368
net reporting of revenues, 109–110
neutrality, in financial reporting, 621
New Century Financial, 619
new products, financial reporting standards for, 77–78
New Zealand, 59
Nicaragua, 58
Nigeria, 59
Nigerian Federal Executive Council, 59
Nokia Corporation, 588–589, 615–618
Nokia Siemens Networks, 615, 616
non-cash activities, on cash flow statements, 219–221
noncontrolling interest, 17, 193
non-current assets. *see also* long-lived assets
on balance sheets, 165, 178–189
Apple Inc., 179
financial assets, 186–189
goodwill, 183–186
intangible assets, 181–186
investment property, 180–181
property, plant, and equipment, 179–180
SAP Group, 178–179
non-current liabilities, 545–604
balance sheets, 190–192
of Apple Inc., 190–191
deferred tax liabilities, 191–192
long-term financial liabilities, 191
of SAP Group, 190
on balance sheets, 166
bonds payable, 546–564
amortisation of bonds, 550–554
debt covenants, 559–561
derecognition of debt, 557–559
disclosure of long-term debt, 561–564
fair value reporting, 554–557
interest expense, 550–554
interest payment, 550–554
issuance of bonds, 546–550
presentation of long-term debt, 561–564
defined, 546
leases, 564–583
advantages of, 564–565
finance vs. operating, 565–583
pension plans, 583–586
practice problems, 592–597
solutions to problems, 598–604
solvency of, 586–589
non-operating items
financial reporting quality issues with, 658
on income statements, 130–131
non-public companies, related-party transactions with, 655
non-recurring items
financial reporting quality issues with, 658
on income statements, 125–131
and changes in accounting policies, 128–130
discontinued operations, 126
extraordinary items, 126–127
unusual and infrequent items, 127–128
non-recurring restructuring events, 624
no par shares, 192
Norse Energy Corp., 651
North America, 58. *see also specific countries and regions*
Norwalk Agreement, 56
Norway, 58
notes payable, 176
notes to financial statements
by Alcatel-Lucent, 385–386
by Caterpillar Inc., 360
disclosures in, 70
in financial statement analysis, 24–25
LIFO liquidation in, 365
by PACCAR, 613
by Volvo Group, 372–373
Novarra, 617
Novartis Group, 629–630, 685
Novo Nordisk, 585–586
NRV. *see* net realisable value
number of days of payables, 292, 296
- O**
objectives
of financial analysis, 271–272
of financial reporting, 44–46
of financial reports, 61–62
Objectives and Principles of Securities Regulation (IOSCO), 51
obligations
in contracts, 113
performance, 114
occupancy rate, 323
OCI. *see* other comprehensive income
off-balance-sheet financing, 706–713
Office of the Comptroller of the Currency, 47
oil and gas industry, 621–622
one-time sales, 658
ongoing purchases, 427
operating activities
on cash flow statement, 219, 235–239
cash for income taxes, 239
cash for interest, 238–239
cash for other operating expenses, 238
cash from customers, 235–236
and cash generation activities, 649–650
cash to employees, 237–238
cash to suppliers, 236–237
direct vs. indirect reporting method, 648–649
defined, 20
operating cash flows (cash flows from operating activities), 221–232
and capitalising vs. expensing of costs, 427–428
direct-format statement under IFRS, 226–228
direct method for calculating, 648
financing vs., 221
free operating cash flow to debt, 325
indirect-format statement under IFRS, 223–226
indirect method for calculating, 648–649
and leases, 471
under US GAAP, 228–232
operating efficiency ratios, 292. *see also* activity ratios
operating income
adjusted consolidated segment, 635–638
coefficient of variation for, 322
operating leases
accounting/reporting by lessee, 566–567, 570–577
accounting/reporting by lessor, 577, 582–583
and adjustments to debt, 710–712
analyst adjustments for, 707–713
coverage ratio for, 712–713
defined, 468
finance leases vs.
for lessees, 471–480, 566–577, 582–583
for lessors, 480–485, 577–583
on long-lived assets, 467–485
on non-current liabilities, 565–583
financial statement impact of, 582–583
treating, as finance leases, 476–480
operating leverage, 303
operating margins, 658
operating profit
defined, 18
and depreciation method, 645–646
EBIT vs., 99
forecasts of, 683–684
on income statement, 99
operating profit margin, 307, 308
defined, 308
and depreciation method, 645–646
and income statement ratios, 144
operating ROA, 308
operational efficiency, 691
operations, statement of, 17, 528–529.
see also income statements
opinion paragraph, audit report, 27
opinions, audit, 27–28
Oppenheimer, Peter, 9
ordinary shares, 132
Organization for the Harmonization of Business Law, 59
Oriental Brewery, 685
other comprehensive income (OCI)
accumulated, 193
defined, 145
on income statements, 147–148
on statement of comprehensive income, 19–20
other current assets, on balance sheets, 173–174
other operating expenses, 238
overall statement of cash flows, 241–246
direct method, 241–242
adjustments to net income, 241–242
converting indirect and, 245–246
defined, 23, 222
indirect method, 242–245
adjustments to net income, 242–245
converting direct and, 245–246
defined, 23, 222–223
owners' equity, 12, 162. *see also* equity
- P**
PACCAR, 612–614
Pakistan, 59

- Panama, 58
 Paraguay, 58
 parent companies, on income statements, 17
 Parmalat, 619
 par value, 192
 payables
 accounts payable, as current liability, 176
 bonds payable, 546–564
 and amortisation of bonds, 550–554
 debt covenants, 559–561
 derecognition of debt, 557–559
 disclosure of long-term debt, 561–564
 fair value reporting, 554–557
 and interest expense, 550–554
 and interest payments, 550–554
 and issuance of bonds, 546–550
 presentation of long-term debt, 561–564
 income tax payable, 174, 177, 509
 notes payable, 176
 number of days of payables, 292, 296
 payables turnover, 292, 296
 payments, interest, 550–554
 P/B ratio. *see* price to book value ratio
 PCAOB. *see* Public Company Accounting Oversight Board
 P/CF ratio. *see* price to cash flow ratio
 peer comparison ratios, 694
 pension plans
 defined-benefit, 583–584
 defined-contribution, 583
 disclosure of, 585–586
 as non-current liabilities, 583–586
 pension trust fund, 584
 P/E ratio. *see* price to earnings ratio
 percentage-of-completion method of revenue recognition, 104–106, 114
 performance obligation, 114
 period costs, 117
 periodic inventory systems, 352–354
 permanent differences, in taxable and accounting profit, 518–519
 perpetual inventory systems, 352–354
 Peru, 58
 Philippines, 59
 P&L statements. *see* profit and loss statements
 Poland, 58
 Polly Peck International (PPI), 619
 PowerLinx, Inc., 643
 PPE. *see* property, plant, and equipment
 PPI. *see* Polly Peck International
 preferred stock, 134–136, 192–193
 premiums, bond, 553–554
 prepaid expenses, 173–174
 presentation
 aggressive, 612, 615
 of deferred tax, 535–536
 and detection of financial reporting issues, 633–638
 of income tax information, 528–533
 of inventory information, 376
 of long-lived assets, 453–466
 Daejan Holdings PLC, 465–466
 fixed asset turnover and average age of depreciable assets, 462–464
 Vodafone Group Plc, 455–460
 of long-term debt, 561–564
 of non-GAAP financial measures, 614–618
 Presentation of Financial Statements (IAS 1), 68–70, 94n.1
 present value, 66
 pretax margin, 144, 307, 308
 price, transaction, 113, 115
 price to book value (P/B) ratio, 319, 320
 price to cash flow (P/CF) ratio, 319, 320
 price to earnings (P/E) ratio, 319–320
 price to sales (P/S) ratio, 319, 320
 PricewaterhouseCoopers, 28, 629
 private contracts, 630
 production costs, 347n.7
 productive capacity, 461
 products, new, 77–78
 profit
 accounting
 defined, 508
 taxable income vs., 508–513
 taxable profit vs., 518–523
 cash flow vs., 7–8
 gross, 98
 and inflation, 355–356
 and inventory valuation method, 350–352
 and LIFO liquidation, 364, 366–367
 in periodic vs. perpetual inventory systems, 352–354
 operating
 defined, 18
 and depreciation method, 645–646
 EBIT vs., 99
 forecasts of, 683–684
 on income statement, 99
 taxable, 518–523
 profitability
 and capitalising vs. expensing of costs, 426, 428
 cost flow assumptions and, 639–640
 profitability ratios, 307–311
 calculation, 307–308
 defined, 291
 evaluation, 309–311
 and income statement ratios, 145
 interpretation, 308–311
 profit and loss (P&L) statements, 17. *see also* income statements
 profit margin
 gross, 307, 308
 calculating, 356
 and conversion from LIFO to FIFO, 362–363
 defined, 308
 and income statement ratios, 144
 on income statements, 98
 inventory management with, 376, 377
 and inventory write-downs, 375
 in ratio analysis, 277
 and income statement ratios, 143
 net, 307, 308
 calculation of, 278
 and conversion from LIFO to FIFO, 363
 defined, 308
 and income statement ratios, 143
 and inventory write-downs, 375
 in ratio analysis, 277
 operating, 307, 308
 defined, 308
 and depreciation method, 645–646
 and income statement ratios, 144
 pretax, 144, 307, 308
 pro forma reporting, 633
 property, plant, and equipment (PPE), 416. *see also* long-lived assets
 acquisition of, 417–420
 analyst adjustments for, 703–704
 on balance sheets, 179–180
 on cash flow statements, 239–240
 depreciation of, 703–704
 impairment of, 448–450
 investment property, 180–181
 sale of, 240
 prorated revenue recognition, 104, 105
 proxy statements, 53
 P/S ratio. *see* price to sales ratio
 Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (PCAOB), 27, 52
- Q**
 Qatar, 59
 qualified audit opinion, 28
 quality
 of earnings, 608, 609, 618
 of financial reporting (*see* financial reporting quality)
 of reported results, 608
 quick ratio, 299, 300
- R**
 ratio analysis, 275–288
 for Acer Inc., 275–277
 classes of ratios, 278–279
 common-size, 282–288
 of balance sheet, 282–283, 285–287
 of income statement, 283–285
 vertical, 141n.50, 197, 282–285
 cross-sectional, 284–285, 292
 for equity investments, 697
 for goodwill, 705–706
 interpreting financial ratios, 279
 for Lenovo Group Limited, 275–277
 and relationships of financial statements, 287–288
 and sources of ratios, 281–282
 for Toshiba Corporation, 275–277
 trend, 285–287
 value, purpose, and limitations, 280–281
 raw materials inventory, 346, 377
 RCF. *see* retained cash flow
 realizable value, 66
 rebate programs, 656
 receivables
 dividends, 514, 521
 trade, 169–171
 receivables turnover, 292, 295–296
 recognition. *see also* revenue recognition
 Conceptual Framework on, 65
 and derecognition, 451–453, 557–559
 expense, 16, 96–97, 116–125
 of finance leases, 567–569, 578–580
 of financial report elements, 65
 tax, 518n.3
 taxable and accounting profit at, 522

- recommendations, from financial statement analysis, 33–34
- recoverable amount, 449, 623
- registration requirements, of market regulators, 628
- regression analysis, 290
- Regulation FD (SEC), 54n.14
- regulatory authorities, 50–55. *see also*
 - US Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC)
 - for capital markets in Europe, 55
 - discipline for financial reporting quality from, 627–629
 - International Organization of Securities Commissions, 51
 - S-1 registration statements for, 54
- related-party transactions, 655, 658
- remaining useful life, 461–464
- remeasurements, pension plan, 584
- rent received in advance
 - and taxable/deductible temporary differences, 521, 522
 - and tax bases of liabilities, 516, 517
- research and development, 182, 184, 421
- research costs, 514, 515, 521, 623
- reserve, LIFO, 357–363
 - converting LIFO to FIFO inventory with, 358–363
 - defined, 357
 - and LIFO liquidations, 363–364
- residual value, 121–124
- responsibility statements, 628
- restructuring events, 624, 660
- results, quality of, 608
- retail method for inventory valuation, 171
- retained cash flow (RCF), 691
- retained earnings, 193
- retention rate, 319, 321
- retrospective application, of accounting policies, 128
- return on assets (ROA), 280, 308–309
 - and conversion from LIFO to FIFO, 363
 - operating, 308
 - segment, 328–329
- return on capital, 308, 309, 325
- return on common equity, 308
- return on equity (ROE), 309
 - and accounting standards, 678–680
 - decomposition of, 313–318
 - defined, 308
 - and ratio analysis, 280
- return on investment, 308
- return on sales. *see* net profit margin
- return on total capital, 308, 309
- revaluation model for long-lived assets, 435, 444–448
- revenue(s)
 - and accounts receivable, 656
 - coefficient of variation for, 322
 - and credit sales, 640–641
 - deferred/unearned
 - analysis of, 176–178
 - as current liability, 176
 - on income statements, 100
 - gross vs. net reporting of, 109–110
 - on income statements, 16, 95
 - inventory, 117–118
 - outsized growth of, 656
 - Revenue from Contracts with Customers (ASC 606), 112n.25, 114
 - Revenue from Contracts with Customers* (ASU 2014-09), 114
 - Revenue from Contracts with Customers* (IFRS 15), 112n.25, 114
 - revenue per employee, 322
 - revenue recognition
 - completed contract method, 104–105, 107
 - and financial reporting issues, 640–641, 652–653, 655–656
 - on income statements, 99–116
 - accounting standards issued May 2014, 112–116
 - for barter transactions, 109
 - and financial statements, 111–112
 - general principles, 100–103
 - and gross vs. net reporting of revenues, 109–110
 - for installment sales, 108–109
 - for long-term contracts, 104–107
 - in special cases, 103–110
 - installment method, 108–109
 - in oil and gas industry, 622
 - percentage-of-completion method, 104–106
 - prorated, 104, 105
 - reversal, impairment, 451
 - reviews, by market regulators, 628
 - rights, in contracts, 113
 - risk
 - credit, 324, 691–694
 - Monte Carlo simulation for assessing, 690
 - Risk Management Association, 282
 - ROA. *see* return on assets
 - “A Roadmap for Convergence between IFRSs and US GAAP” (IASB/FASB), 56
 - Roche Group, 128
 - ROE. *see* return on equity
 - Royal Dutch Shell PLC, 317–318, 572–577
 - Royal Numico N. V., 328
 - Rule 144 (SEC), 54
- S**
- S-1 registration statements, 54
- Safeway, Inc., 185–186
- sale(s)
 - available-for-sale securities, 146, 187–189
 - cost of
 - adjusting, with LIFO reserve, 357–358
 - and inflation, 355–356
 - and inventory valuation method, 346, 350–352
 - in perpetual vs. periodic inventory systems, 352–354
 - credit, 640–641
 - days of sales outstanding, 292, 295–296, 656
 - and finished goods inventory, 377–378
 - on income statements, 95n.4
 - installment, 108–109
 - of long-lived assets
 - cash from, 240
 - and derecognition of assets, 451–452
 - impairment of assets held for sale, 451
 - one-time, 658
 - price to sales ratio, 319, 320
 - return on (*see* net profit margin)
 - sales per square meter (sales per square foot) ratio, 322
 - sales-type leases
 - defined, 484, 578
 - financial statement impact of, 485, 580–583
 - US GAAP on, 577
 - salvage value, 122
 - same store sales ratio, 321–322
- SAP Group
 - accounts receivable, 169, 170
 - balance sheet components, 163–164
 - common-size analysis, 199
 - current assets, 167–168
 - current liabilities, 175
 - deferred revenue, 176–178
 - deferred tax assets, 174
 - deferred tax liabilities, 192
 - equity, 193–194
 - financial assets, 189
 - goodwill, 186
 - inventories, 171
 - marketable securities, 169
 - non-current assets, 178–179
 - non-current liabilities, 190
- Sarbanes-Oxley Act (2002)
 - auditing standards, 27
 - internal control systems requirements, 29
 - and SEC authority, 52
- Saudi Arabia, 59
- Saudi Arabian Monetary Agency, 59
- scale, as credit analysis factor, 691
- Scania AB, 18
- scenario analysis, 330
- scope paragraph, of audit report, 27
- screening, of equity investments, 694–697
- Sears, 633
- SEC. *see* US Securities and Exchange Commission
- securities
 - antidilutive, 139–140
 - available-for-sale, 146, 187–189
 - dealing, 219
 - marketable, 169, 187–189
 - trading, 146, 219
- Securities Act (1933), 52
- Securities and Exchange Board of India, 51n.10
- Securities and Exchange Commission (Brazil), 47
- Securities Exchange Act (1934), 52
- Securities Offerings Registration Statement, 52
- segment debt ratio, 328
- segment margin, 328–329
- segment ratios, 328–329
- segment ROA, 328–329
- segment turnover, 328–329
- Self-Regulatory Organizations (SROs), 51
- sensitivity analysis, 330

- Serbia, 58
 settlement value, 66
 SFAS. *see* Statement of Financial Accounting Standards
 shareholders' equity, 162, 427. *see also* equity
 shares. *see also* earnings per share (EPS)
 cash flow per share, 319
 common, 132, 192, 241
 diluted, 18
 dividends per share, 319
 no par, 192
 ordinary, 132
 treasury, 193
 shipping, financial reporting quality and, 638
 simple capital structures, 132
 simulations, 330, 690
 Singapore, 59, 628
 single-step format, for income statements, 98
 Small, Medium, and Micro Enterprises (SMME), 522
 software development costs, 422, 431–434
 solvency
 defined, 8, 196, 303, 586
 of non-current liabilities, 586–589
 solvency ratios, 303–307
 calculation, 304–305
 defined, 204, 291, 304–305, 587
 evaluation, 306–307, 588–589
 interpretation, 305–307
 leverage/coverage ratios, 587–589
 Sony Corporation, 555–557, 659
 South Africa, 59, 95n.4
 South America, 58, 627–628. *see also* *specific countries and regions*
 S&P 500, common-size analysis of, 142–143, 201–202
 specific identification method of inventory valuation, 118, 172, 349–352
 spin-offs, 452–453
 S&P/MSCI Global Industrial Classification System (GICS), 142–143, 200
 SROs. *see* Self-Regulatory Organizations
 stacked column graphs, 289
 standard costs, 171
 Standard & Poor's Corporation
 coverage ratios for capitalized interest, 430
 credit rating process, 325
 Standards Advice Review Group, 55
 Standards and Financial Marketing Integrity Division, 78
Standards of Practice Handbook (CFA Institute), 34
 “Statement in Support of Convergence and Global Accounting Standards” (SEC), 57
 statement of cash flows. *see* cash flow statements
 Statement of Cash Flows (ASC 230), 471n.32
Statement of Cash Flows (IAS 7), 471n.32, 651
 statement of changes in equity
 of Apple Inc., 195–196
 and balance sheet, 195–196
 defined, 12
 in financial statement analysis, 20, 21
 statement of comprehensive income, 12, 16–20
 Statement of Financial Accounting Standards (SFAS)
 Accounting for the Costs of Computer Software to be Sold, Leased, or Otherwise Marketed (SFAS 86), 431
 Employers' Accounting for Defined Benefit Pension and Other Postretirement Plans (SFAS 158), 679
 statement of operations, 17, 528–529. *see also* income statement
 statements of financial condition, 162. *see also* balance sheets
 statements of financial position, 12, 162. *see also* balance sheets
 stock. *see also* equity investments
 common, 132, 192, 241
 preferred, 134–136, 192–193
 treasury stock method for diluted EPS, 137–139
 stock options, diluted earnings per share for, 139
Straight from the Gut (Welsh), 659
 straight-line depreciation method
 and balance sheet, 644–647
 bond premium/discount amortisation, 551
 calculation, 436
 defined, 435
 depreciation/amortisation, 121–122
 double-declining and units-of-production methods vs., 436–440
 Strum Ruger & Co., Inc.
 Form 10-K, 364–365
 LIFO liquidation for, 364–366
 subscription accounting, 129–130
 subsidiaries, 17, 523
 Sunbeam, 288, 619, 626, 658
 supplementary information, for financial statement analysis, 11–12
 supplementary schedules, 24–25
 suppliers, cash to, 236–237
 survivorship bias, 696
 sustainability, of earnings, 610–612
 sustainable growth rate, 319, 321
 Swaziland, 59
 Swiss Exchange, 50, 58
 Swiss GAAP, 50, 58
 Switzerland, 50, 58
 Syngenta, 75
 synthetic leases, 467, 565
T
 Tanzania, 59
 taxable income, 508–513
 taxable profit, accounting profit vs., 518–523
 taxable temporary differences, in taxable/accounting profit, 519–522
 tax asset valuation accounts, 654
 tax bases, 513–518
 of assets, 513–515
 and changes in tax rates, 517–518
 defined, 509
 of liabilities, 515–517
 taxes
 current, 524–527
 deferred, 524–527, 533–536
 income, 507–544
 and accounting profit vs. taxable income, 508–513
 cash for, 239
 disclosure of tax information, 528–533
 IFRS vs. US GAAP, 508, 533–536
 practice problems, 538–542
 presentation, 528–533
 solutions to problems, 543–544
 and taxable vs. accounting profit, 518–523
 tax bases for, 513–518
 unused tax losses and credits, 523–524
 and inventory method changes, 368
 in lease versus buy decision, 467
 and LIFO method, 357
 reporting of depreciation methods, 441
 tax expense, 368, 509
 tax loss carry forward, 509
 tax rates, changes in, 517–518
 tax recognition, 518n.3
 TD Ameritrade Holding Corporation, 705–706
 Tech Data Corporation, 228–230
 Teck Resources Ltd., 10–11
 Telefónica Group, 226–228
 Teléfonos de México, S.A.B. DE C.V., 678–680
 Tele Norte Leste Participações S.A., 678–680
 temporary differences, in accounting/taxable profit, 508, 519–522
 deductible differences, 519–522
 examples, 520–522
 at initial recognition, 522
 taxable differences, 519–522
 10-K, Form. *see* Form 10-K
 Thailand, 59
 Thomson Reuters, 281
 Tokyo Agreement, 57
 tolerance for leverage, 691
 top-down analysis, 694
 TORM A/S, 560–561
 Toshiba Corporation, 275–277
 total asset turnover, 293, 297
 total comprehensive income, 145
 total debt to total debt plus equity ratio, 326
 total invested capital, 681n.4
 total liabilities-to-equity ratio, 363
 Toyota Motor Corporation, 611–612
 trade payables. *see* accounts payable
 trade receivables, 169–171
 trading securities, 146, 219
 trailing twelve months (TTM) ratio, 281
 transaction price, 113, 115
 transactions, new, 77–78
 treasury shares, 193
 treasury stock method, 137–139
 trend analysis, 285–287

- Tsingtao Brewery, 677
- TTM ratio. *see* trailing twelve months ratio
- Turkey, 59
- turnover
- asset, 293, 297, 462–464, 656
 - fixed asset turnover ratio
 - and average age of depreciable assets, 462–464
 - calculating, 293
 - interpreting, 297, 460
 - on income statements, 95n.4
 - inventory turnover ratio, 294–295
 - and activity ratio, 293–294
 - activity ratio definition, 292
 - calculation, 356
 - and conversion from LIFO to FIFO, 362
 - and DOH, 294–295
 - inventory management with, 376–377
 - inventory ratios, 657
 - and inventory write-downs, 374
 - payables, 292, 296
 - receivables, 292, 295–296
 - segment, 328–329
 - total asset, 297
 - working capital, 292, 297
- Tyco International Ltd., 660
- U**
- Uganda, 59
- uncollectible accounts, 641–642
- unearned revenue
- analysis of, 176–178
 - as current liability, 176
 - on income statements, 100
- Unilever Group, 223–226
- United Agri-Products (UPI), 641–642
- United Kingdom, disclosure requirements, 628
- UK Financial Reporting Council (FRC), 26
- United States
- auditing standards, 27
 - bank regulation, 47
 - depreciation methods in, 428
 - LIFO method and taxes, 357
 - liquidity representations on balance sheets, 15
 - manipulation of financial reporting, 608
 - OCI statement format, 19
 - tax and financial regulations, 467
- US GAAP
- for barter transactions, 109
 - for bonds, 550, 551, 554, 555
 - for borrowed funds, 419
 - for capitalisation of interest costs, 428n.11, 430
 - for cash flows, 22, 220, 223, 228–232
 - and completed contract method, 104–105
 - for comprehensive income, 145, 148
 - for debt issuance costs, 557
 - on decision-useful information, 610n.2
 - for deferred tax assets/liabilities, 510, 511, 525
 - for depreciation, 441
 - fair value definition, 417n.2
 - and FASB, 50
 - for financial statement ratios, 677–678
 - and global reporting standards, 57, 70–72, 74–75
 - for gross vs. net reporting, 110
 - and IFRS
 - conservatism in, 622–624
 - on financial reporting standards, 74–77
 - frameworks of, 70–72
 - on income taxes, 508, 533–536
 - for impairments, 448–451, 454
 - income statement standards, 94
 - income taxes, 508
 - for intangible assets, 420n.4, 421, 422
 - for interest, 238, 419, 471n.32, 554
 - for inventory valuation, 346–350, 368–370, 377
 - for investment property, 467
 - for leases, 468, 476, 480, 484, 566, 570, 577, 578, 582–583
 - for LIFO reserve, 357
 - for long-lived assets, 454
 - manipulation of financial reporting under, 608
 - for pension plans, 584–585
 - policy disclosure requirements, 79
 - for revaluation, 435, 444, 447–448
 - for revenue recognition, 101–102, 112, 113, 622
 - and ROE comparisons, 678–680
 - SEC on reconciliations with, 447n.17
 - for segment reporting, 327
 - and Syngenta, 75
 - and taxable profit v. accounting profit, 518–520
 - on tax-related issues, 515, 523

US Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC)

 - Accounting and Auditing Enforcement Release, 641–643
 - adoption of IFRS, 357
 - and convergence of global reporting standards, 57, 58
 - on “cookie jar” reserve accounting, 625
 - discipline for financial reporting by, 627, 628
 - financial reporting standards of, 51–55
 - Form 3, 54–55
 - Form 4, 54–55
 - Form 5, 54–55
 - Form 6-K, 53
 - Form 8-K, 54
 - Form 10-K, 53, 364–365
 - Form 10-Q, 53
 - Form 11-K, 55
 - Form 20-F, 53
 - Form 40-F, 53
 - Form 144, 54
 - Form DEF-14A, 53
 - and GAAP, 50, 72, 74–75
 - and Groupon, 635
 - and IASB, 48
 - on management reporting, 26
 - MD&A requirements, 26, 557n.5
 - on non-GAAP measures in financial reports, 615, 635
 - on non-recurring restructuring events, 624
 - and PACCAR, 612–613
 - on reconciliations with US GAAP, 447n.17
 - Regulation FD, 54n.14
 - as regulatory body, 47
 - reporting requirements, 629
 - revenue recognition standards, 101–102
 - Rule 144, 54
 - units-of-production depreciation method, 435–440, 644–647
 - unqualified audit opinion, 27–28
 - unused tax credits, 523–524
 - unused tax losses, 523–524
 - unusual items, on income statements, 127–128
 - UPI. *see* United Agri-Products
 - UPM-Kymmene Corporation, 462–464
 - Uruguay, 58
 - useful life, 121–124
 - Uzbekistan, 59

V

valuation

 - inventory, 348–368
 - changes in, 367–368
 - comparison of, 354–356
 - cost of sales, gross profit, and ending inventory, 350–352
 - first-in, first-out, 118–119, 172, 349–352
 - last-in, first-out, 119, 172, 349–352, 357–367
 - LIFO liquidation, 363–367
 - LIFO reserve, 357–363
 - periodic vs. perpetual inventory systems, 352–354
 - retail method, 171
 - specific identification, 118, 349–352
 - weighted average cost, 349–352
 - weighted average cost method, 119
 - market-based, 682–687
 - valuation allowance, 509, 525, 642
 - valuation ratios, 319–321
 - calculation, 319–320
 - defined, 291, 319–320
 - dividend-related quantities, 321
 - interpretation of EPS, 320–321

value

 - face, 546–549
 - fair
 - of bonds payable, 554–557
 - Conceptual Framework* on, 66
 - defined, 162n.1, 169, 417n.2
 - financial assets at, 187–188
 - of financial liabilities, 554–555
 - and long-term asset acquisition, 417
 - inventory, 369–370
 - market value to book value ratio, 705–706
 - net book, 123
 - net realisable, 171–172, 368
 - par, 192
 - present, 66
 - price to book value ratio, 319, 320
 - realizable, 66
 - residual, 121–124

- salvage, 122
 - settlement, 66
 - value investors, 696
 - variable consideration, 114–115
 - variable costs, 303, 347n.7
 - variable production costs, 347n.7
 - variation, coefficient of, 322
 - Venezuela, 58
 - verification, conservatism and, 621
 - Verizon Communications Inc., 678–680
 - vertical common-size balance sheet, 282–283
 - vertical common-size income statement, 283–285
 - vertical common-size ratio analysis, 141n.50, 197, 282–285
 - Vietnam, 59
 - Vodafone Group Plc, 455–460
 - Volkswagen Group
 - auditor's reports, 28–29
 - balance sheets, 13–15
 - cash flow statements, 22–23
 - disclosures, 80–81
 - financial notes, 25
 - income statements, 17–18
 - MD&A, 26
 - statement of changes in equity, 20, 21
 - statement of comprehensive income, 19–20
 - Volvic, 329
 - Volvo Group
 - consolidated balance sheet, 371–372
 - consolidated income statement, 371
 - inventories of Caterpillar Inc. and, 378–381
 - inventory write-downs, 370–375
 - MD&A, 381–382
 - notes to consolidated financial statements, 372–373
- W**
- Wal-Mart Stores
 - balance sheets, 15–16
 - cash flows from operating activities, 231–233
 - war chests, 677
 - warranties, expense recognition for, 120–121
 - warrants, bonds with, 563–564
 - warranty reserves, 655
 - weighted average cost, 172
- Weighted average cost method, 119, 349–352**
- Welsh, Jack, 659
 - “Within GAAP, but biased choices” financial reports, 612–618
 - “Within GAAP, but ‘earnings management’” financial reports, 618
 - working capital, 166, 297, 689n.6
 - working capital turnover, 292, 297
 - work-in-progress inventory, 346, 377
- WorldCom**
- capitalization policies, 648
 - financial reporting quality, 619
 - write-downs, inventory
 - in financial analysis, 378
 - and financial ratios, 370–375
 - US GAAP vs. IFRS on, 368–369
- X**
- XBRL. *see* eXtensible Business Reporting Language
- Z**
- Zambia, 59
 - Zimbabwe, 59
 - Z-score, 326

CORPORATE FINANCE AND PORTFOLIO MANAGEMENT

CFA[®] Program Curriculum
2019 • LEVEL I • VOLUME 4

WILEY

CONTENTS

How to Use the CFA Program Curriculum		vii
Curriculum Development Process		vii
Organization of the Curriculum		viii
Features of the Curriculum		viii
Designing Your Personal Study Program		ix
Feedback		xi
Corporate Finance		
Study Session 10	Corporate Finance (1)	3
Reading 33	Corporate Governance and ESG: An Introduction	5
	Introduction	6
	Corporate Governance Overview	6
	Company Stakeholders	8
	Stakeholder Groups	8
	Principal–Agent and Other Relationships in Corporate Governance	11
	Stakeholder Management	14
	Overview of Stakeholder Management	14
	Mechanisms of Stakeholder Management	15
	Board of Directors and Committees	21
	Composition of the Board of Directors	21
	Functions and Responsibilities of the Board	22
	Board of Directors Committees	22
	Factors Affecting Stakeholder Relationships and Corporate Governance	25
	Market Factors	25
	Non-market Factors	27
	Corporate Governance and Stakeholder Management Risks and Benefits	28
	Risks of Poor Governance and Stakeholder Management	28
	Benefits of Effective Governance and Stakeholder Management	29
	Analyst Considerations in Corporate Governance and Stakeholder Management	31
	Economic Ownership and Voting Control	31
	Board of Directors Representation	32
	Remuneration and Company Performance	33
	Investors in the Company	33
	Strength of Shareholders’ Rights	34
	Managing Long-Term Risks	35
	Summary of Analyst Considerations	35
	ESG Considerations for Investors	36
	ESG Terminology	36
	ESG Implementation Approaches	37
	Catalysts for ESG Growth	38
	ESG Market Overview	39
	ESG Factors in Investment Analysis	39

	<i>Summary</i>	41
	<i>Practice Problems</i>	43
	<i>Solutions</i>	45
Reading 34	Capital Budgeting	47
	Introduction	47
	The Capital Budgeting Process	48
	Basic Principles of Capital Budgeting	50
	Investment Decision Criteria	52
	Net Present Value	52
	Internal Rate of Return	53
	Payback Period	54
	Discounted Payback Period	56
	Average Accounting Rate of Return	57
	Profitability Index	58
	NPV Profile	58
	Ranking Conflicts between NPV and IRR	60
	The Multiple IRR Problem and the No IRR Problem	64
	Popularity and Usage of the Capital Budgeting Methods	66
	<i>Summary</i>	68
	<i>Practice Problems</i>	70
	<i>Solutions</i>	73
Reading 35	Cost of Capital	77
	Introduction	78
	Cost of Capital	78
	Taxes and the Cost of Capital	79
	Weights of the Weighted Average	80
	Applying the Cost of Capital to Capital Budgeting and Security Valuation	82
	Costs of the Different Sources of Capital	84
	Cost of Debt	84
	Cost of Preferred Stock	86
	Cost of Common Equity	88
	Topics in Cost of Capital Estimation	93
	Estimating Beta and Determining a Project Beta	94
	Country Risk	100
	Marginal Cost of Capital Schedule	102
	Flotation Costs	105
	What Do CFOs Do?	107
	<i>Summary</i>	108
	<i>Practice Problems</i>	111
	<i>Solutions</i>	118

Study Session 11	Corporate Finance (2)	123
Reading 36	Measures of Leverage	125
	Introduction	125
	Leverage	126
	Business Risk and Financial Risk	128
	Business Risk and Its Components	128
	Sales Risk	129
	Operating Risk	130
	Financial Risk	136
	Total Leverage	140
	Breakeven Points and Operating Breakeven Points	143
	The Risks of Creditors and Owners	145
	<i>Summary</i>	147
	<i>Practice Problems</i>	149
	<i>Solutions</i>	153
Reading 37	Working Capital Management	155
	Introduction	155
	Managing and Measuring Liquidity	156
	Defining Liquidity Management	157
	Measuring Liquidity	159
	Managing the Cash Position	164
	Forecasting Short-Term Cash Flows	165
	Monitoring Cash Uses and Levels	166
	Investing Short-Term Funds	167
	Short-Term Investment Instruments	168
	Strategies	171
	Evaluating Short-Term Funds Management	174
	Managing Accounts Receivable	175
	Key Elements of the Trade Credit Granting Process	176
	Managing Customers' Receipts	177
	Evaluating Accounts Receivable Management	180
	Managing Inventory	182
	Approaches to Managing Levels of Inventory	183
	Inventory Costs	184
	Evaluating Inventory Management	184
	Managing Accounts Payable	185
	The Economics of Taking a Trade Discount	187
	Managing Cash Disbursements	188
	Evaluating Accounts Payable Management	188
	Managing Short-Term Financing	189
	Sources of Short-Term Financing	189
	Short-Term Borrowing Approaches	191
	Asset-Based Loans	192
	Computing the Costs of Borrowing	193
	<i>Summary</i>	194
	<i>Practice Problems</i>	196
	<i>Solutions</i>	199

Portfolio Management

Study Session 12	Portfolio Management (1)	205
Reading 38	Portfolio Management: An Overview	207
	Introduction	207
	A Portfolio Perspective on Investing	207
	Portfolio Diversification: Avoiding Disaster	208
	Portfolios: Reduce Risk	210
	Portfolios: Composition Matters for the Risk–Return Trade-off	212
	Portfolios: Not Necessarily Downside Protection	213
	Portfolios: The Emergence of Modern Portfolio Theory	215
	Investment Clients	216
	Individual Investors	216
	Institutional Investors	216
	Steps in the Portfolio Management Process	222
	Step One: The Planning Step	222
	Step Two: The Execution Step	223
	Step Three: The Feedback Step	225
	Pooled Investments	226
	Mutual Funds	226
	Types of Mutual Funds	230
	Other Investment Products	233
	<i>Summary</i>	237
	<i>Practice Problems</i>	239
	<i>Solutions</i>	241
Reading 39	Portfolio Risk and Return: Part I	243
	Introduction	243
	Investment Characteristics of Assets	244
	Return	244
	Other Major Return Measures and their Applications	253
	Variance and Covariance of Returns	256
	Historical Return and Risk	259
	Other Investment Characteristics	264
	Risk Aversion and Portfolio Selection	267
	The Concept of Risk Aversion	267
	Utility Theory and Indifference Curves	268
	Application of Utility Theory to Portfolio Selection	273
	Portfolio Risk	276
	Portfolio of Two Risky Assets	276
	Portfolio of Many Risky Assets	281
	The Power of Diversification	282
	Efficient Frontier and Investor's Optimal Portfolio	288
	Investment Opportunity Set	288
	Minimum-Variance Portfolios	289
	A Risk-Free Asset and Many Risky Assets	291
	Optimal Investor Portfolio	294

	<i>Summary</i>	300
	<i>Practice Problems</i>	302
	<i>Solutions</i>	309
Reading 40	Portfolio Risk and Return: Part II	313
	Introduction	313
	Capital Market Theory	314
	Portfolio of Risk-Free and Risky Assets	314
	The Capital Market Line	318
	Pricing of Risk and Computation of Expected Return	326
	Systematic Risk and Nonsystematic Risk	326
	Calculation and Interpretation of Beta	328
	The Capital Asset Pricing Model	335
	Assumptions of the CAPM	335
	The Security Market Line	337
	Applications of the CAPM	340
	Beyond the Capital Asset Pricing Model	351
	The CAPM	351
	Limitations of the CAPM	351
	Extensions to the CAPM	353
	The CAPM and Beyond	354
	<i>Summary</i>	354
	<i>Practice Problems</i>	356
	<i>Solutions</i>	362
Study Session 13	Portfolio Management (2)	365
Reading 41	Basics of Portfolio Planning and Construction	367
	Introduction	367
	Portfolio Planning	368
	The Investment Policy Statement	368
	Major Components of an IPS	369
	Gathering Client Information	381
	Portfolio Construction	384
	Capital Market Expectations	385
	The Strategic Asset Allocation	385
	Steps Toward an Actual Portfolio	393
	Additional Portfolio Organizing Principles	397
	<i>Summary</i>	398
	<i>Practice Problems</i>	400
	<i>Solutions</i>	404
Reading 42	Risk Management: An Introduction	407
	Introduction	407
	The Risk Management Process	409
	Risk Governance	417
	An Enterprise View of Risk Governance	417
	Risk Tolerance	419
	Risk Budgeting	421

Identification of Risks	424
Financial Risks	425
Non-Financial Risks	426
Interactions between Risks	430
Measuring and Modifying Risks	434
Drivers	434
Metrics	435
Methods of Risk Modification	439
<i>Summary</i>	447
<i>Practice Problems</i>	450
<i>Solutions</i>	453
Reading 43	
Fintech in Investment Management	455
Introduction	455
What Is Fintech?	456
Big Data	457
Sources of Big Data	458
Big Data Challenges	460
Advanced Analytical Tools: Artificial Intelligence and Machine Learning	460
Types of Machine Learning	461
Data Science: Extracting Information from Big Data	463
Data Processing Methods	463
Data Visualization	463
Selected Applications of Fintech to Investment Management	465
Text Analytics and Natural Language Processing	465
Robo-Advisory Services	466
Risk Analysis	468
Algorithmic Trading	469
Distributed Ledger Technology	469
Permissioned and Permissionless Networks	471
Applications of Distributed Ledger Technology to Investment Management	472
<i>Summary</i>	473
<i>Practice Problems</i>	475
<i>Solutions</i>	477
Glossary	G-1
Index	I-1

Corporate Finance

STUDY SESSION

Study Session 10	Corporate Finance (1)
Study Session 11	Corporate Finance (2)

TOPIC LEVEL LEARNING OUTCOME

The candidate should be able to evaluate a company's corporate governance; to analyze a capital budgeting problem; to estimate a company's cost of capital; to evaluate a company's operating and financial leverage and its working capital management.

Some academic studies have shown that well governed companies may perform better in financial terms. Increasingly, investment approaches that consider environmental, social, and governance factors, known as ESG, are being adopted. In addition to good governance practices, management decisions regarding investment and financing also play a central role in corporate profitability and performance. To remain in business as a going concern and to increase shareholder value over time, management must consistently identify and invest in profitable long-term capital projects relative to cost of capital (financing) and make optimal use of leverage and working capital in day to day operations.

CORPORATE FINANCE STUDY SESSION

10

Corporate Finance (1)

This study session provides an introduction to corporate governance and investing and financing decisions. An overview of corporate governance is presented along with a framework for understanding and analyzing corporate governance and stakeholder management. The growing impact of environmental and social considerations in investing is also highlighted. Capital budgeting and the assessment of capital investments are covered next. The session ends with practical techniques to estimate a company's or project's cost of capital.

READING ASSIGNMENTS

- | | |
|-------------------|---|
| Reading 33 | Corporate Governance and ESG: An Introduction
by Assem Safieddine, PhD, Young Lee, CFA, Donna F.
Anderson, CFA, and Deborah Kidd, CFA |
| Reading 34 | Capital Budgeting
by John D. Stowe, PhD, CFA, and Jacques R. Gagné,
FSA, CFA, CIPM |
| Reading 35 | Cost of Capital
by Yves Courtois, CMT, MRICS, CFA, Gene C. Lai,
PhD, and Pamela Peterson Drake, PhD, CFA |

READING

33

Corporate Governance and ESG: An Introduction

by Assem Safieddine, PhD, Young Lee, CFA, Donna F. Anderson, CFA, and Deborah Kidd, CFA

Assem Safieddine, PhD, is at Suliman Olayan Business School, American University of Beirut (Lebanon). Young Lee, CFA, is at MacKay Shields LLC (USA) and MacKay Shields UK LLP (United Kingdom). Donna F. Anderson, CFA (USA). Deborah Kidd, CFA, is at Boyd Watterson Asset Management, LLC (USA).

LEARNING OUTCOMES

<i>Mastery</i>	<i>The candidate should be able to:</i>
<input type="checkbox"/>	a. describe corporate governance;
<input type="checkbox"/>	b. describe a company's stakeholder groups and compare interests of stakeholder groups;
<input type="checkbox"/>	c. describe principal-agent and other relationships in corporate governance and the conflicts that may arise in these relationships;
<input type="checkbox"/>	d. describe stakeholder management;
<input type="checkbox"/>	e. describe mechanisms to manage stakeholder relationships and mitigate associated risks;
<input type="checkbox"/>	f. describe functions and responsibilities of a company's board of directors and its committees;
<input type="checkbox"/>	g. describe market and non-market factors that can affect stakeholder relationships and corporate governance;
<input type="checkbox"/>	h. identify potential risks of poor corporate governance and stakeholder management and identify benefits from effective corporate governance and stakeholder management;
<input type="checkbox"/>	i. describe factors relevant to the analysis of corporate governance and stakeholder management;
<input type="checkbox"/>	j. describe environmental and social considerations in investment analysis;
<input type="checkbox"/>	k. describe how environmental, social, and governance factors may be used in investment analysis.

1

INTRODUCTION

Weak corporate governance is a common thread found in many company failures. A lack of proper oversight by the board of directors, inadequate protection for minority shareholders, and incentives at companies that promote excessive risk taking are just a few of the examples that can be problematic for a company. Poor corporate governance practices resulted in several high-profile accounting scandals and corporate bankruptcies over the past several decades and have been cited as significantly contributing to the 2008–2009 global financial crisis.

In response to these company failures, regulations have been introduced to promote stronger governance practices and protect financial markets and investors. Academics, policy makers, and other groups have published numerous works discussing the benefits of good corporate governance and identifying core corporate governance principles believed to be essential to ensuring sound capital markets and the stability of the financial system.

The investment community has also demonstrated a greater appreciation for the importance of good corporate governance. The assessment of a company's corporate governance system, including consideration of conflicts of interest and transparency of operations, has increasingly become an essential factor in the investment decision-making process. Additionally, investors have become more attentive to environment and social issues related to a company's operations. Collectively, these areas often are referred to as environmental, social, and governance (**ESG**).

Section 2 of this reading provides an overview of corporate governance, including its underlying principles and theories. Section 3 discusses the various stakeholders of a company and conflicts of interest that exist among stakeholder groups. Section 4 describes stakeholder management, reflecting how companies manage their relationships with stakeholders. Section 5 focuses on the role of the board of directors and its committees as overseers of the company. Section 6 explores certain key factors that affect corporate governance. Section 7 highlights the risks and benefits that underlie a corporate governance structure. Section 8 provides an overview of corporate governance issues relevant for investment professionals. Finally, Section 9 discusses the growing effect of environmental and social considerations in the investment process.

2

CORPORATE GOVERNANCE OVERVIEW

Corporate governance can be defined as “the system of internal controls and procedures by which individual companies are managed. It provides a framework that defines the rights, roles and responsibilities of various groups . . . within an organization. At its core, corporate governance is the arrangement of checks, balances, and incentives a company needs in order to minimize and manage the conflicting interests between insiders and external shareowners.”¹

Corporate governance practices differ among countries and jurisdictions, and even within countries different corporate governance systems may co-exist. The corporate governance systems adopted in most of the world typically reflect the influences of either *shareholder theory* or *stakeholder theory* to a varying extent, as well as historical, cultural, legal, political, and other influences specific to a region.

¹ CFA Institute Centre for Financial Market Integrity, *The Corporate Governance of Listed Companies: A Manual for Investors*, 2nd ed. (Charlottesville, VA: CFA Institute, 2009).

Shareholder theory takes the view that the most important responsibility of a company's managers is to maximize shareholder returns. Stakeholder theory broadens a company's focus beyond the interests of only its shareholders to its customers, suppliers, employees, and others who have an interest in the company. The approach to corporate governance in a given country typically places greater emphasis on one of the two theories but can also exhibit a combination of the two. Notwithstanding the system of corporate governance used, nearly all companies depend on contributions from a number of stakeholders for their long-term success. The company's strategy is set by the board of directors, which also oversees management; in turn, the company's strategy is executed by its managers; financial capital to fund the company's activities and operations is supplied by shareholders, creditors, and suppliers; human capital is provided by employees; and demand for goods and services comes from customers. Other stakeholders include governments and regulators, which seek to protect the interests and well-being of their citizens. Certain external forces, such as the legal environment and competition, affect the way a company operates and the relationships among its stakeholders.

Two reports issued during the 1990s, the Cadbury Report and the Principles of Corporate Governance, were particularly influential in shaping the global corporate governance landscape. In 1991, the Committee on the Financial Aspects of Corporate Governance was established in the United Kingdom by the Financial Reporting Council, the London Stock Exchange, and the accountancy profession to examine corporate governance. In the following year, the report of the committee—commonly referred to as the Cadbury Report, after its chairman—defined corporate governance simply as “the system by which companies are directed and controlled.” The report focused on the responsibilities of a company's board of directors, shareholders, and auditors, with shareholders implicitly identified as the primary stakeholder. In 1999, the Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development (OECD) produced the *Principles of Corporate Governance*, which expanded the scope of corporate governance to consider the interests of other stakeholders—notably employees, creditors, and suppliers. According to the OECD, “Corporate governance includes a set of relationships between a company's management, its board, its shareholders, and other stakeholders.” The *Principles of Corporate Governance*, which was revised in 2004 and again in 2015, also discusses potential positive outcomes of good corporate governance practices (including financial market stability and economic growth) and includes standards and guidelines designed to evaluate and improve the corporate governance framework throughout the world.

There is evidence that some movement toward global convergence of corporate governance systems is underway. One trend is the increased acceptance and adoption of corporate governance regulations with similar principles from one jurisdiction to another. For example, a number of countries implemented regulations similar to those of the US Sarbanes–Oxley Act of 2002 (SOX) in response to corporate and accounting scandals of the early 2000s. Although these regulations are not identical, they share the same objective of improving internal controls and restoring investor confidence in financial disclosures. Another trend is initiatives by international agencies to build greater consensus on important corporate governance principles. The *Principles of Corporate Governance*, for example, has been ratified by more than 30 member countries, representing a broad range of corporate governance models. The *Principles of Corporate Governance* do not mandate, or even promote, the adoption of a single corporate governance regime; rather, the principles were designed to serve as a framework that can be adopted by any number of corporate governance systems.

EXAMPLE 1**Corporate Governance Overview**

Which statement regarding corporate governance is *most* accurate?

- A** Most countries have similar corporate governance regulations.
- B** A single definition of corporate governance is widely accepted in practice.
- C** Both shareholder theory and stakeholder theory consider the needs of a company's shareholders.

Solution:

C is correct. Both shareholder and stakeholder theories consider the needs of shareholders, with the latter extending to a broader group of stakeholders. A is incorrect because corporate governance regulations differ across countries, although there is a trend toward convergence. B is incorrect because a universally accepted definition of corporate governance remains elusive.

3**COMPANY STAKEHOLDERS**

A corporate governance system is likely to be influenced by several stakeholder groups. These groups do not necessarily share similar goals or needs; in fact, the interests of any one group may conflict with the interests of another group. The varying influences of these groups are important considerations for investment professionals when analyzing a corporate governance system. This section provides an overview of a corporation's primary stakeholder groups, followed by a discussion of principal–agent considerations and the conflicts that may arise among the groups.

3.1 Stakeholder Groups

The primary stakeholder groups of a corporation consist of shareholders, creditors, managers (or executives), other employees, board of directors, customers, suppliers, and governments/regulators (and, by extension, affected individuals and community groups). The interests of each of these groups are discussed in the following sections.

3.1.1 Shareholders

Shareholders own shares of stock in a corporation and are entitled to certain rights, such as the right to receive dividends and to vote on certain corporate issues.² In terms of capital structure, shareholders are the most junior class of capital providers; in case of a company bankruptcy, shareholders receive proceeds only after all creditors' claims are paid. Shareholder interests are, therefore, typically focused on growth in corporate profitability that maximizes the value of a company's equity.

As a company grows in size and its operations and structure become more complex, most individual shareholders have little involvement in the company's activities. Shareholders maintain control over the company through their power to elect the board of directors and vote for specified resolutions. The board of directors is expected to represent shareholders—protecting their interests, appointing senior management, providing strategic direction, and monitoring company and management performance.

² <https://themoderncorporation.wordpress.com/company-law-memo/>

In publicly traded companies that have dispersed ownership, the voting power in general meetings is distributed among a large number of shareholders. But in some companies, a particular shareholder or block of shareholders may hold a percentage of shares that gives them sufficient voting power to control the election of the board of directors and to influence the approval or blockage of a company resolution; these shareholders are known as **controlling shareholders**. In contrast, non-controlling shareholders (**minority shareholders**) hold a much smaller proportion of a company's outstanding shares, resulting in a more limited ability to exercise control in voting activities.

3.1.2 Creditors

Creditors, most commonly bondholders and banks, are a company's lenders and the providers of debt financing. Creditors do not hold voting power (unlike common shareholders) and typically have limited influence over a company's operations. Creditors may protect themselves and exert some control over a company by using covenants, which restrict activities of the borrower. In return for capital provided, creditors expect to receive interest and principal payments. These payments are pre-determined from the terms of a debt contract and are typically not contingent on the company's performance. Creditors usually do not participate in a company's superior performance beyond receiving promised interest and principal payments. The company's ability to generate cash flows, mainly through its operations, is the primary source of payments for creditors. Consequently, creditors generally prefer stability in company operations and performance, which contrasts with the interests of shareholders, who generally are inclined to tolerate higher risks in return for higher return potential from strong company performance.

3.1.3 Managers and Employees

Senior executives and other high-level managers are normally compensated through salary, bonuses, equity-based remuneration (or compensation),³ and certain perquisites. As a result, managers may be motivated to maximize the value of their total remuneration while also protecting their employment positions. Lower-level employees normally seek fair remuneration, good working conditions, access to promotions, career development opportunities, training and development, job security, and a safe and healthy work environment.

As with shareholders and creditors, managers and employees have a significant interest in the company's viability. Managers and employees tend to benefit if the company performs well and are among the most adversely affected stakeholders if a company's financial position weakens. Despite some similarities, the interests of managers and employees and other stakeholders can conflict. For example, a company may be presented with a takeover offer that is attractive to shareholders but would jeopardize the interests of managers in preserving their employment at the company.

3.1.4 Board of Directors

A company's board of directors is elected by shareholders to protect shareholders' interests, provide strategic direction, and monitor company and management performance. A board is typically structured as either *one-tier* or *two-tier*.

A one-tier structure consists of a single board of directors, composed of executive and non-executive directors. Executive (sometimes called "internal") directors are employees, typically senior managers, of the company. Non-executive (sometimes

³ The terms "remuneration" and "compensation" are typically interchangeable, with compensation generally used in North America and remuneration generally used outside North America. In this reading, unless specifically identified with North America, we primarily use "remuneration".

called “external”) directors are not employees of the company. Countries in which one-tier boards are common include the United States, the United Kingdom, and India. A two-tier structure consists of two separate boards: (1) a *supervisory board*, which is primarily composed of non-executive directors, and (2) a *management (executive) board*, which is composed of executive directors. The supervisory board oversees the management board. Two-tier boards are common in such countries as Germany, the Netherlands, Finland, and China.

In this reading, unless specified otherwise, the term “board” refers to the single board of directors in a one-tier structure and the supervisory board in a two-tier structure. Directors, both internal and external, are typically experienced individuals who are focused on fulfilling their responsibilities toward shareholders and the company while maintaining a good reputation in the business community. Directors are also typically concerned with their exposure to liability for breach of duty. Directors can mitigate this exposure by exercising appropriate levels of control over the company’s operations and its management. A company’s board of directors is discussed in more detail in Section 5 of this reading.

3.1.5 Customers

Customers expect a company’s products or services to satisfy their needs and provide appropriate benefits given the price paid, as well as to meet applicable standards of safety. Depending on the type of product or service and the duration of their relationship with the company, customers may desire ongoing support, product guarantees, and after-sale service. Companies are concerned with customer satisfaction given its potential correlation with sales revenues and profit. Compared with other stakeholder groups, customers tend to be less concerned with, and affected by, a company’s financial performance. However, customers, particularly those with long-term relationships with the company, typically have an interest in a company’s stability.

3.1.6 Suppliers

A company’s suppliers have a primary interest in being paid as contracted or agreed on, and in a timely manner, for products or services delivered to the company. Suppliers often seek to build long-term relationships with companies for the benefit of both parties and aim for these relationships to be fair and transparent. Suppliers, like creditors, are concerned with a company’s ability to generate sufficient cash flows to meet its financial obligations.

3.1.7 Governments/Regulators

Governments and regulators seek to protect the interests of the general public and ensure the well-being of their nations’ economies. Because corporations have a significant effect on a nation’s economic output, capital flows, employment, and social welfare, among other factors, regulators have an interest in ensuring that corporations behave in a manner that is consistent with applicable laws. As the collector of tax revenues, a government can also be considered one of the company’s major stakeholders.



Stakeholders in Non-profit Organizations

The stakeholders of a non-profit organization tend to differ from those of for-profit companies. Non-profit organizations do not have shareholders. Their stakeholders most commonly include board directors or trustees, employees, regulators, society, patrons of

the organization, donors, and volunteers. The stakeholders of non-profit organizations are generally focused on ensuring that the organization is serving the intended cause and that the donated funds are used as promised.

EXAMPLE 2

Stakeholder Groups

Which stakeholders would *most likely* realize the greatest benefit from a significant increase in the market value of the company?

- A Creditors
- B Customers
- C Shareholders

Solution:

C is correct. Shareholders own shares of stock in the company, and their wealth is directly related to the market value of the company. A is incorrect because creditors are usually not entitled to any additional cash flows (beyond interest and debt repayment) if the company's value increases. B is incorrect because customers may have an interest in the company's stability and long-term viability but they do not benefit directly from an increase in a company's value.

3.2 Principal–Agent and Other Relationships in Corporate Governance

A **principal–agent relationship** (also known as an agency relationship) is created when a principal hires an agent to perform a particular task or service. The principal–agent relationship involves obligations, trust, and expectations of loyalty; the agent is expected to act in the best interests of the principal. In a company, agency theory stipulates that principal–agent relationships often lead to conflicts—for example, when managers do not act in the best interests of shareholders.⁴ Examples of principal–agent relationships and potential conflicts between the principal and agent are discussed in the following sections. Conflicts among stakeholder groups are also discussed but do not involve principal–agent relationships.

3.2.1 Shareholder and Manager/Director Relationships

In shareholder-owned companies, shareholders typically grant directors and managers the responsibility to make most corporate decisions. According to traditional shareholder theory discussed earlier, the central duty of directors and managers is to act in the best interests of shareholders. In certain circumstances, managers may seek to maximize their personal benefits (e.g., remuneration and perquisites) to the detriment of shareholders' interests.

⁴ Agency theory considers the problems that can arise in a business relationship when one person delegates decision-making authority to another. The traditional view in the investment community is that directors and managers are agents of shareholders. More recently, however, many legal experts have argued that in several countries, corporations are separate “legal persons” and thus directors and managers are agents of the corporations rather than shareholders (or a subset of shareholders). See <https://themoderncorporation.wordpress.com/company-law-memo>.

Shareholder and manager (or shareholder and director) interests can also diverge with respect to risk tolerance. In some cases, shareholders with diversified investment portfolios may have a relatively high risk tolerance because the risk undertaken by a specific company can be diversified across the shareholders' investments. Managers and directors, however, are typically more risk averse in their corporate decision making so they can better protect their employment status. Such behavior may differ from the company's value creation objective. In addition, compared with shareholders, managers typically have greater access to information about the business and are more knowledgeable about its operations. Such "information asymmetry" (that is, unequal access to information) makes it easier for managers to make strategic decisions that are not necessarily in the best interest of shareholders and weakens the ability of shareholders to exercise control. Another conflict of interest might arise between shareholders and directors when the board is influenced by insiders. In this case, the ability of the board to properly perform its monitoring and control role may be hindered. Finally, a conflict between the two groups may occur if directors favor certain influential shareholders over other shareholders.

3.2.2 Controlling and Minority Shareholder Relationships

In companies in which a particular shareholder holds a controlling stake, conflicts of interest may arise among the controlling and minority shareholders. In such ownership structures, the opinions of minority shareholders are often outweighed or overshadowed by the influence of the controlling shareholders. Minority shareholders often have limited or no control over management and limited or no voice in director appointments or in major transactions that could have a direct effect on the value of their shares. For instance, in companies that adopt **straight voting** (that is, one vote for each share owned), controlling shareholders clearly wield the most influence in board of director elections, leaving minority shareholders with much less representation on the board.

The decisions made by controlling shareholders, or their board representatives, could also have an effect on corporate performance and, consequently, on minority shareholders' wealth. Takeover transactions are notable situations in which controlling shareholders typically have greater influence than do minority shareholders with regard to the consideration received and other deal terms. An example of this situation occurred in 2007 when Qtel, Qatar's largest telecommunications company, executed a deal with a consortium of the shareholders of Wataniya, Kuwait's telecommunications company, to acquire the consortium's shares in Wataniya (representing a 51% stake in the target). The consortium of Wataniya's shareholders sold their shares to Qtel at a premium of 48% on the stock price to the exclusion of minority shareholders.

Related-party transactions are another example for which controlling shareholders may place their interests ahead of minority shareholders' interests. Such a situation could occur when a controlling shareholder maintains a financial interest in a transaction between the company and a third party and that transaction conflicts with the company's best interests. Consider, for example, a controlling shareholder that arranges a deal between the company and a third-party supplier that is owned by the shareholder's spouse whereby the supplier provides the company with inventory at above market prices. Such a transaction would benefit the controlling shareholder and the spouse's interests but could harm the profitability of the company and the interests of minority shareholders.

Lastly, an equity structure with multiple share classes in which one class is non-voting or has limited voting rights creates a divergence between the ownership and control rights of different classes of shareholders. Under a multiple-class structure (traditionally called a *dual-class structure* when there are two share classes), the company's founders, executives, and other key insiders control the company by virtue of ownership of a share class with superior voting powers. The multiple-class structure

enables controlling shareholders to mitigate dilution of their voting power when new shares are issued. Examples of companies that have adopted multiple-class stock structures are Alibaba and Facebook (each with two share classes), as well as Comcast and Google (each with three share classes).

3.2.3 Manager and Board Relationships

Given that a board of directors typically relies on management to operate the company, the board's monitoring role can be compromised in the event of limited information provided to the board. This conflict is particularly pronounced for non-executive directors who are typically not involved in the day-to-day operations of a company.

3.2.4 Shareholder versus Creditor Interests

Shareholders typically seek growth in corporate profitability because of the residual nature of equity returns. However, the pre-determined returns of debt obligations normally prevent creditors from receiving any cash flows beyond principal and interest payments, but do expose creditors to default risk in case of extremely poor corporate performance. From an investment perspective, shareholders would likely prefer riskier projects with a strong likelihood of higher return potential, whereas creditors would likely prefer stable performance and lower-risk activities. A divergence in risk tolerance regarding the company's investments thus exists between shareholders and creditors.

Creditors may also find their interests jeopardized when the company attempts to increase its borrowings to a level that would increase default risk. If the company's operations and investments fail to generate sufficient returns required to repay the increased interest and debt obligations, creditors will be increasingly exposed to default risk. The distribution of excessive dividends to shareholders might also conflict with creditors' interests if it impairs the company's ability to pay interest and principal.

3.2.5 Other Stakeholder Conflicts

In a corporation, interests can also conflict among other stakeholders. Some of these situations are as follows:

- *Conflict between customers and shareholders:* For example, a company decides to charge a high price for its products or reduces product safety features to reduce costs.
- *Conflict between customers and suppliers:* A company offers overly lenient credit terms to its customers, whereby the company's ability to repay suppliers on time may be affected.
- *Conflict between shareholders and governments or regulators:* Examples of such conflicts may include a company adopting accounting and reporting practices that reduce its tax burden, thus potentially benefiting shareholders, or a bank's shareholders preferring a lower equity capital base while regulators prefer a higher capital position. This last conflict is fairly common in the banking industry and has been increasingly in focus since the global financial crisis of 2008–2009.

EXAMPLE 3

Stakeholder Relationships

A controlling shareholder of XYZ Company owns 55% of XYZ's shares, and the remaining shares are spread among a large group of shareholders. In this situation, conflicts of interest are *most likely* to arise between:

- A shareholders and regulators.

- B the controlling shareholder and managers.
- C the controlling shareholder and minority shareholders.

Solution:

C is correct. In this ownership structure, the controlling shareholder's power is likely more influential than that of minority shareholders. Thus, the controlling shareholder may be able to exploit its position to the detriment of the interests of the remaining shareholders. Choices A and B are incorrect because the ownership structure in and of itself is unlikely to create material conflicts between shareholders and regulators or shareholders and managers.

4

STAKEHOLDER MANAGEMENT

Because interests among stakeholder groups differ, companies often adopt mechanisms to more efficiently manage stakeholder relationships. **Stakeholder management** involves identifying, prioritizing, and understanding the interests of stakeholder groups, and, on that basis, managing the company's relationships with these groups.

4.1 Overview of Stakeholder Management

Effective communication and active engagement with the various stakeholders form the basis of stakeholder management. Although the practices underlying stakeholder management may vary, companies typically seek to balance the interests of their various stakeholders and thus limit the effect of conflicts.

To help balance these interests, corporate governance and stakeholder management frameworks reflect a legal, contractual, organizational, and governmental infrastructure that defines the rights, responsibilities, and powers of each group. The *legal infrastructure* defines the framework for rights established by law and the availability or ease of legal recourse for any violation of these rights. The *contractual infrastructure* is shaped by the contractual arrangements entered into by the company and its stakeholders that help define and secure the rights of both parties. The *organizational infrastructure* refers to internal systems, governance procedures, and practices adopted and controlled by the company in managing its stakeholder relationships. Lastly, the *governmental infrastructure* refers to regulations imposed on companies.

The corporate governance systems in such countries as France, Germany, and Japan focus on a broader range of stakeholders relative to the more shareholder-driven Anglo-American systems. Globally, there is a growing movement among regulators and practitioners to more effectively balance the interests of all stakeholders. For instance, the Companies Act 2006 in the United Kingdom introduced “enlightened shareholder value,” which requires directors to consider the interests of all stakeholders—not just shareholders. Several regulators, such as those in the United Kingdom and Japan, have adopted stewardship codes that encourage more active engagement of institutional investors with companies.

EXAMPLE 4**Stakeholder Management**

The component of stakeholder management in which a corporation has the *most* control is:

- A legal infrastructure.
- B contractual infrastructure.
- C governmental infrastructure.

Solution:

B is correct. A corporation's contractual infrastructure refers to the contractual arrangements between the corporation and stakeholders. As such, the corporation has control over these arrangements. A is incorrect because the legal infrastructure is established by law, which is outside the corporation's own control. Similarly, C is incorrect because a corporation's governmental structure is largely imposed by regulators.

4.2 Mechanisms of Stakeholder Management

Stakeholder management and governance practices attempt to manage the interests of all stakeholders. As mentioned earlier, a prescribed or standard set of rights and practices does not exist across all companies, and the principles vary across countries and jurisdictions. Still, there are some common control elements and governance mechanisms among companies.

4.2.1 General Meetings

Corporate laws grant shareholders certain powers and controls. The participation of shareholders in general meetings, also known as general assemblies, and the exercise of their voting rights are among the most influential tools available. General meetings enable shareholders to participate in discussions and to vote on major corporate matters and transactions that are not delegated to the board of directors.

Companies are ordinarily required to hold an annual general meeting (AGM) within a certain period following the end of their fiscal year. The main purpose of those meetings is to present shareholders with the annual audited financial statements of the company, provide an overview of the company's performance and activities, and address shareholder questions. Shareholders also elect the directors at the AGM and, in some countries, may be required to approve the financial statements, discharge directors of their duties, appoint external auditors, or vote on the remuneration of the board and/or top management. Extraordinary general meetings can be called by the company or by shareholders throughout the year when significant resolutions requiring shareholder approval are proposed. These resolutions might relate to proposed material corporate changes, such as amendments to the company's bylaws or rights attached to a class of shares, mergers and acquisitions, or the sale of significant corporate assets or businesses.

All shareholders typically have the right to attend, speak at, and vote at general meetings. Regulations, particularly corporate laws, specify conditions for inviting shareholders to general meetings and circulating information to shareholders. These conditions vary across regulations but generally aim at ensuring the participation of a large number of shareholders in general meetings without imposing excessive restrictions on the ability of the company to hold a meeting. By engaging in general meetings, shareholders can exercise their voting rights on major corporate issues

and better monitor the performance of the board and senior management. General meetings and the underlying voting procedures are among the most widely adopted practices by companies in mitigating agency problems and their associated risks.

Some resolutions, such as the approval of financial statements and the election of directors and auditors, are considered ordinary at general meetings because they require only a simple majority of votes to be passed. Decisions that are more material in nature may require a supermajority vote, such as two-thirds or 75% of votes, to be passed. Such special resolutions may include amendments to bylaws, voting on a merger or takeover transaction, or waiving pre-emptive rights. Depending on the ownership structure, supermajority requirements may make it harder for majority shareholders to influence corporate decisions at the expense of minority shareholders.

Proxy voting is a process that enables shareholders who are unable to attend a meeting to authorize another individual (for example, another shareholder or director) to vote on their behalf. Proxy voting is the most common form of investor participation in general meetings. Although most resolutions at most companies pass without controversy, sometimes minority shareholders attempt to strengthen their influence at companies via proxy voting. Several shareholders sometimes use this process to collectively vote their shares in favor of or in opposition to a certain resolution. **Cumulative voting** (as opposed to straight voting) enables each shareholder to accumulate and vote all his or her shares for a single candidate in an election involving more than one director. This voting process raises the likelihood that minority shareholders are represented by at least one director on the board, but it may not be compatible with majority voting standards for director elections in which share ownership is widely dispersed. In terms of worldwide practice, the existence of cumulative voting varies; for example, it is mandated in Spain but not allowed in several countries, such as Germany, Japan, Singapore, and Turkey.

Minority shareholders are often granted rights to protect their interests in acquisitions. For example, companies in European Union member states are required to adopt sell-out rights. These rights allow minority shareholders who have voted against a merger offer to force a bidder with more than 90% of the target's voting rights to buy their shares at a fair price upon the deal's approval.

EXAMPLE 5

General Meetings

Which of the statements about extraordinary general meetings (EGMs) of shareholders is true?

- A The appointment of external auditors occurs during the EGM.
- B A corporation provides an overview of corporate performance at the EGM.
- C An amendment to a corporation's bylaws typically occurs during the EGM.

Solution:

C is correct. An amendment to corporate bylaws would normally take place during an EGM, which covers significant changes to a company, such as bylaw amendments. A and B are incorrect because the appointment of external auditors and a corporate performance overview would typically take place during the AGM.

4.2.2 Board of Director Mechanisms

In companies with complex ownership structures and operations, it is impractical for shareholders to be involved in strategy formulation and day-to-day activities. Shareholders thus elect a board of directors to provide broad oversight of the company. Shareholders monitor the board's performance through exercise of voting power and participation in general meetings. The board, in turn, appoints the top management of the company. The board is accountable primarily to shareholders and is responsible for the proper governance of the company; in this regard, the board is the link between shareholders and managers. The board guides managers on the company's strategic direction, oversees and monitors management's actions in implementing the strategy, and evaluates and rewards or disciplines management performance. The board also supervises the company's audit, control, and risk management functions and ensures the adoption of proper governance systems and compliance with all applicable laws and regulations. In Section 5 of this reading, we provide more detail regarding the functions and responsibilities of the board of directors and its committees.

4.2.3 The Audit Function

The audit function is an integral component of any governance structure. The function represents the systems, controls, and policies/procedures in place to examine the company's operations and financial records. Internal audits are conducted by an independent internal audit function or department. External auditors are independent from the company and conduct an annual audit of the company's financial records to provide reasonable and independent assurance of the accuracy of financial statements and their fair representation of the financial position of the company. External auditors are typically recommended by an audit committee (which we discuss later in the reading) for appointment by shareholders or, in some jurisdictions, by the board. The board of directors is generally required to receive and review the financial statements and auditors' reports and confirm their accuracy before they are presented to shareholders for approval at the AGM. Senior management of publicly traded companies is also required to review and provide assurance of the effectiveness of the internal control systems to the board of directors or to shareholders. Overall, a company's audit function limits insiders' discretion with regard to the use of company resources and to its financial reporting. The audit function is also designed to mitigate incidents of fraud or misstatements of accounting and financial information.

4.2.4 Reporting and Transparency

Shareholders have access to a range of financial and non-financial information concerning the company, typically through annual reports, proxy statements, disclosures on the company's website, the investor relations department, and other means of communication (e.g., social media). This information may relate to the company's operations, its strategic direction or objectives, audited financial statements, governance structure, ownership structure, remuneration policies, related-party transactions, and risk factors. Such information is essential for shareholders to

- reduce the extent of information asymmetry between shareholders and managers;
- assess the performance of the company and of its directors and managers;
- make informed decisions in valuing the company and deciding to purchase, sell, or transfer shares; and
- vote on key corporate matters or changes.

4.2.5 Policies on Related-Party Transactions

The development and implementation of policies for related-party transactions and other conflicts of interest is an increasingly common practice among companies. These policies establish the procedures for mitigating, managing, and disclosing such cases. Typically, directors and managers are required to disclose any actual or potential, or direct or indirect, conflict of interest they have with the company, as well as any material interests in a transaction that may affect the company. Often, these policies require such transactions or matters to be voted on by the board (or shareholders) excluding the director (or shareholder) holding the interest. The adoption of these policies and procedures aims at ensuring that related-party transactions are handled fairly and that they do not advance the interests of the related party at the expense of the interests of the company or other shareholders.

4.2.6 Remuneration Policies

Executive remuneration plans have gained significant attention in the investment world, with a primary goal of aligning the interests of managers with those of shareholders. For this purpose, incentive plans increasingly include a variable component—typically profit sharing, stocks, or stock options—that is contingent on corporate or stock price performance. However, the granting of stock-based remuneration does not serve its purpose if managers can improve their personal gains at the expense of the company while limiting their exposure to weak stock performance. As a result, companies are increasingly designing incentive plans that discourage either “short-termism” or excessive risk taking by managers. Some incentive plans include granting shares, rather than options, to managers and restricting their vesting or sale for several years or until retirement. A long-term incentive plan delays the payment of remuneration, either partially or in total, until company strategic objectives (typically performance targets) are met.

Regulators across the world are also increasingly focused on remuneration policies. In some cases, regulators require companies to base remuneration specifically on long-term performance measures. A number of regulators are requiring companies, including many in the financial industry, to adopt clawback provisions. These provisions allow a company to recover previously paid remuneration if certain events, such as financial restatements, misconduct, breach of the law, or risk management deficiencies, are uncovered.

4.2.7 Say on Pay

Given the role of remuneration plans in aligning the interests of executives with those of shareholders, regulators and companies are increasingly seeking shareholder views on pay. The concept of **say on pay** enables shareholders to vote on executive remuneration matters. Say on pay was first introduced in the United Kingdom in the early 2000s. As one early example, in 2003 the shareholders of GlaxoSmithKline rejected the company’s remuneration report because of opposition to the proposed executive pay. This was the first such rejection by the shareholders of a large UK-based company. Shortly thereafter, the practice of say on pay spread to other parts of the world and was implemented in the United States as part of the Dodd–Frank Act in 2011.

The scope and effect of say on pay varies across countries and companies. Some countries, such as Canada, have a non-mandatory and advisory (non-binding) say on pay system in which shareholders signal, rather than impose, their views on proposed remuneration. In other countries, such as the United States, France, and South Africa, say on pay is mandatory but non-binding. In these countries, the board is required to enable shareholders to vote on remuneration plans or packages, but the board does not have to abide by the result of the vote. Conversely, countries in which shareholder votes on say on pay are binding include the Netherlands, the United Kingdom, and China.

Say on pay has been subject to criticism because of the fact that shareholders often have limited involvement in a company's strategy and operations. These opponents argue that the board is better suited to determine remuneration matters. Conversely, by allowing shareholders to express their views on remuneration-related matters, companies can limit the discretion of directors and managers in granting themselves excessive or inadequate remuneration. This approach could thus reduce a critical agency conflict in stakeholder management by better aligning the interests of principals and agents.

4.2.8 *Contractual Agreements with Creditors*

The rights of creditors are established by laws and according to contracts executed with the company. Laws vary by jurisdiction but commonly contain provisions to protect creditors' interests and provide legal recourse. One such provision is an **indenture**, which is a legal contract that describes the structure of a bond, the obligations of the issuer, and the rights of the bondholders. To limit creditors' risk during the term of a bond (or loan), debtholders may choose to impose **covenants** within indentures or contracts. Covenants are the terms and conditions of lending agreements, enabling creditors to specify the actions an issuer is obligated to perform or prohibited from performing. **Collaterals** are another tool often used by creditors to guarantee repayment, representing assets or financial guarantees that are above and beyond an issuer's promise to repay its obligations.

To further protect their rights, creditors usually require the company to provide periodic information (including financial statements) to ensure that covenants are not violated and thus potential default risk is not increased. Because it is usually impractical and costly for individual bondholders to fully scrutinize a bond issue, companies often hire a financial institution to act as a trustee and monitor the issue on behalf of a class of bondholders. In some countries, credit committees, particularly for unsecured bondholders, are established once a company files for bankruptcy. Such committees are expected to represent bondholders throughout the bankruptcy proceedings and protect bondholder interests in any restructuring or liquidation.

4.2.9 *Employee Laws and Contracts*

Employee rights are primarily secured through labor laws, which define the standards for employees' rights and responsibilities and cover such matters as labor hours, pension and retirement plans, hiring and firing, and vacation and leave. In most countries, employees have the right to create unions. Unions seek to influence certain matters affecting employees. In the European Union, companies meeting specific size and geographic criteria are required to establish European Works Councils that are composed of employees who meet with management at least annually. Although not a common practice in the United States and many other parts of the world, employees are sometimes represented on the board of directors—or supervisory boards—of companies meeting certain size or ownership criteria (e.g., in Germany, Austria, and Luxembourg). In Japan, the employee model stresses reaching a consensus between management and employees in decision making.

At the individual level, employment contracts specify an employee's various rights and responsibilities. Employment contracts typically do not cover every situation between employees and employers, and thus there is some area of discretion in the employment relationship. Human resources policies also help companies manage their relationships with employees. Effective human resources policies seek to attract and recruit high-quality employees while providing remuneration, training/development, and career growth to improve employee retention. Some companies have employee stock ownership plans (ESOPs) to help retain and motivate employees. As part of an ESOP, a company establishes a fund consisting of cash and/or company shares. The shares, which have designated vesting periods, are granted to employees.

Codes of ethics and business conduct also serve an important role in the relationship between employees and the company. Such codes establish the company's values and the standards of ethical and legal behavior that employees must follow. Companies typically assign a compliance or corporate governance officer (or a board committee) to implement these codes, receive violation reports, and resolve ethical matters.

By managing its relationships with its employees, a company seeks to comply with employees' rights and mitigate legal or reputational risks in violation of these rights. Employee relationship management also helps ensure that employees are fulfilling their responsibilities toward the company and are qualified and motivated to act in the company's best interests.

4.2.10 *Contractual Agreements with Customers and Suppliers*

Both customers and suppliers enter into contractual agreements with a company that specify the products and services underlying the relationship, the prices or fees and the payment terms, the rights and responsibilities of each party, the after-sale relationship, and any guarantees. Contracts also specify actions to be taken and recourse available if either party breaches the terms of the contract.

4.2.11 *Laws and Regulations*

As part of their public service roles, governments and regulatory authorities develop laws that companies must follow and monitor companies' compliance with these laws. Such laws may address or protect the rights of a specific group, such as consumers or the environment. Some industries or sectors whose services, products, or operations are more likely to endanger the public or specific stakeholders' interests are usually subject to a more rigorous regulatory framework. Examples of these industries are banks, food manufacturers, and health care companies.

Many regulatory authorities have also adopted corporate governance codes that consist of guiding principles for publicly traded companies. Publicly traded companies, in turn, are generally required to annually publish corporate governance reports describing their governance structure and explain any deviations from guiding principles. Companies normally seek to adopt internal governance and compliance procedures and adhere to the relevant financial reporting and transparency requirements imposed by regulators.

EXAMPLE 6

Stakeholder Relationships

Which of the following is **not** typically used to protect creditors' rights?

- A Proxy voting
- B Collateral to secure debt obligations
- C The imposition of a covenant to limit a company's debt level

Solution:

A is correct. Proxy voting is a practice adopted by shareholders, not creditors. B and C are incorrect because both collateral and covenants are used by creditors to help mitigate the default risk of a company.

BOARD OF DIRECTORS AND COMMITTEES

5

As discussed earlier in the reading, the board of directors is a central component of a company's governance structure. The board serves as the link between shareholders and managers and acts as the shareholders' monitoring tool within the company. As the relevance of corporate governance has grown within the investment field, the responsibilities of the board of directors have also increased in importance.

5.1 Composition of the Board of Directors

The structure and composition of a board of directors vary by company and geography. There is no single or optimal structure, and the number of directors may differ depending on the company size, structure, and complexity of operations. Most corporate governance codes require that the board include a diverse mix of expertise, backgrounds, and competencies. Such qualifications may include specialized knowledge of the company's industry as well as experience in certain functions, such as strategy, finance/audit, risk management, human resources, or legal. Moreover, many companies seek age, gender, and racial diversity in board composition.

Boards with one-tier structures comprise a mix of executive and non-executive directors. Executive (or internal) directors are employed by the company and are typically members of senior management. Non-executive (or external) directors provide objective decision making, monitoring, and performance assessment. Additionally, non-executive directors can serve an important role in challenging management and using past expertise in strategy and board issues. An *independent director* is a specific type of non-executive director that does not have a material relationship with the company with regard to employment, ownership, or remuneration.

In two-tier structures, the supervisory and management boards are independent from each other. Regulators generally prohibit members of the management board from serving on the supervisory board or limit the number of individuals serving on both boards. Employee representatives are typically elected by the company's employees and could make up half of the supervisory board in large companies.

In many countries, the chief executive officer (CEO) and chairperson roles are increasingly separated. In the United States, many companies have historically had "CEO duality," in which the CEO also serves as chairperson of the board. Nevertheless, the percentage of companies separating the two roles, particularly in the United States, has increased considerably in recent years. The appointment of a lead independent director is an alternative that is sometimes practiced by boards of companies without CEO duality. The lead independent director generally has the authority to request and oversee meetings of all independent directors. Duality is not applicable in two-tier structures that prohibit the members of the management board from serving on the supervisory board. In these models, the chairperson of the supervisory board is typically external and the CEO usually chairs the management board.



Staggered Boards

The general practice for boards is that elections occur simultaneously and for specified terms (three years, for example). Some companies, however, have **staggered boards** whereby directors are typically divided into three classes that are elected separately in consecutive years—that is, one class every year. Because shareholders would need several years to replace a full board, this election process limits their ability to effect a

major change of control at the company. This staggered board model was historically prevalent in the United States but has been generally replaced by regular board election terms. In contrast, the practice is common in Australia.

5.2 Functions and Responsibilities of the Board

As mentioned earlier, a company's board of directors is elected by shareholders to act on their behalf. In fulfilling their functions, directors have a responsibility to consider the interests of all stakeholders. The duties of directors are mandated by law in many countries but vary across jurisdictions. Two widely established elements of directors' responsibilities are the *duty of care* and the *duty of loyalty*. According to the OECD's *Principles of Corporate Governance*, duty of care "requires board members to act on a fully informed basis, in good faith, with due diligence and care." The OECD further notes that duty of loyalty "is the duty of the board member to act in the interest of the company and shareholders. The duty of loyalty should prevent individual board members from acting in their own interest, or the interest of another individual or group, at the expense of the company and all shareholders."

A board of directors does not typically engage in the company's day-to-day activities; rather, those activities are delegated to management. The board guides and approves the company's strategic direction, taking into consideration the company's risk profile. It delegates the implementation of the company's strategy to senior management, oversees the execution of the strategy, and establishes milestones to monitor the progress in reaching the objectives. The board also reviews corporate performance and determines relevant courses of action accordingly. In doing so, the board can monitor and evaluate management's performance and determine whether senior executive remuneration is aligned with the long-term interests of the company. The board is also responsible for selecting, appointing, and terminating the employment of senior managers (or the management board in case of a two-tier structure). One of the board's main responsibilities is to ensure leadership continuity through succession planning for the CEO and other key executives.

The board plays a central role in ensuring the effectiveness of the company's audit and control systems. It sets the overall structure of these systems and oversees their implementation, including oversight of the financial reporting practices and the review of the financial statements for fairness and accuracy. The board also oversees reports by internal audit, the audit committee, and the external auditors and proposes and follows up on remedial actions. The board has the ultimate responsibility to ensure that the company adopts and implements proper corporate governance principles and complies with all applicable internal and external laws and regulations, including ethical standards.

In addition, the board typically ensures that the company has an appropriate enterprise risk management system in place, whereby risks are identified, mitigated, assessed, and managed appropriately. The board monitors the effectiveness of these systems through regular reviews and reports received from both management and the company's risk function. The board also has the responsibility to review any proposals for corporate transactions or changes, such as major capital acquisitions, divestures, mergers, and acquisitions, before they are referred to shareholders for approval, if applicable.

5.3 Board of Directors Committees

A company's board of directors typically establishes committees that focus on specific functions. Such committees, in turn, provide recommendations that are reported to the board on a regular basis. Despite the delegation of responsibilities to committees,

the overall board remains ultimately responsible to shareholders and is not discharged of its liabilities to shareholders. Although board committees may vary by organization, some of the most common committees are discussed in the following sections.

5.3.1 Audit Committee

The audit committee is perhaps the most common board committee among companies worldwide. The audit committee plays a key role in overseeing the audit and control systems at the company and ensuring their effectiveness. In this regard, the committee monitors the financial reporting process, including the application of accounting policies; ensures the integrity of financial statements; supervises the internal audit function and ensures its independence and competence; and presents an annual audit plan to the board and monitors its implementation by the internal audit function. The audit committee is also responsible for recommending the appointment of an independent external auditor and proposing the auditor's remuneration. Both internal and external auditors report their findings to the audit committee, which in turn proposes remedial action for highlighted issues or matters.

5.3.2 Governance Committee

The primary role of the governance (or corporate governance) committee is to ensure that the company adopts good corporate governance practices. In doing so, the committee develops and oversees the implementation of the corporate governance code, the charters of the board and its committees, and the company's code of ethics and conflict of interest policy. The governance committee reviews these policies on a regular basis to incorporate any regulatory requirements or relevant developments in the field. Most importantly, the committee monitors the implementation of the governance policies and standards as well as the compliance with the applicable laws and regulations throughout the company. Remedial actions are recommended if any flaws or breaches of laws or regulations are identified. In some companies, the governance committee may be responsible for overseeing an annual evaluation of the board to ensure that its structure and activities are aligned with the governance principles.

5.3.3 Remuneration or Compensation Committee

The remuneration (or compensation) committee of the board specializes in remuneration matters. This committee develops and proposes remuneration policies for the directors and key executives and presents them for approval by the board or by shareholders. The committee may also be involved in handling the contracts of managers and directors as well as in setting performance criteria and evaluating the performance of managers. The responsibilities of the remuneration committee may extend to establishing human resources policies for the company when remuneration matters are involved. In some companies, the remuneration committee also sets and oversees the implementation of employee benefit plans, including insurance, pension, severance benefits, and retirement plans (including monitoring investment performance of benefit plan funds).

5.3.4 Nomination Committee

The nomination committee identifies candidates who are qualified to serve as directors and recommends their nomination for election by shareholders. The committee also establishes the nomination procedures and policies, including the criteria for board directors, the search process, and the identification of qualified candidates for director positions. Director independence, including what constitutes an independent director, is also a function of the nomination committee. Through these roles, the nomination committee can help ensure that the board's composition is well balanced and aligned with the company's governance principles.

5.3.5 Risk Committee

The risk committee assists the board in determining the risk policy, profile, and appetite of the company. Accordingly, the committee oversees establishing enterprise risk management plans and monitors their implementation. It also supervises the risk management functions in the company, receives regular reports, and reports on its findings and recommendations to the board.

5.3.6 Investment Committee

The investment committee of the board reviews material investment opportunities proposed by management and considers their viability for the company. Such opportunities may include large projects, acquisitions, and expansion plans, as well as divestures or major asset disposals. The committee often challenges, when necessary, management assumptions underlying investment prospects, monitors the performance of investments, and reports its findings to the board. The committee also is typically responsible for establishing and revising the investment strategy and policies of the company.

The specific board committees discussed in previous sections are the most commonly used, although the composition and number of committees may vary depending on the jurisdiction or on company-specific factors (e.g., company size, industry, complexity of operations, or regulatory requirements). An audit committee, for instance, is a regulatory requirement in a large number of jurisdictions. For banks and other financial institutions, a risk committee is strongly recommended by some regulators and required by others. In Brazil, the Central Bank of Brazil requires financial institutions to establish a remuneration committee at the board level. Some companies choose to combine two or more committees into one—for example, a nomination and remuneration (or compensation) committee or an audit and risk committee. Companies may also find it valuable to establish committees with other specializations, such as a compliance committee, an ethics committee, a human resources committee, or a health/environmental/safety committee.

The composition of a board committee is normally aligned with its scope of responsibilities. For instance, many regulators request that executive (internal) directors do not rule on matters underlying conflicts of interest or on matters requiring an unbiased judgment (such as audit, remuneration, or related-party transaction matters). As such, a large number of rules, including those adopted by the London Stock Exchange and the New York Stock Exchange, require that the audit and the compensation committees be composed of independent directors only. Less stringent regulations, such as those of the Gulf Cooperation Council, require the audit committee to be composed of external (non-executive) directors, the majority of which should be independent (including the chairperson).

EXAMPLE 7

Responsibilities of Board Committees

A primary responsibility of a board's audit committee does **not** include the:

- A** proper application of accounting policies.
- B** adoption of proper corporate governance.
- C** recommendation of remuneration for the external auditor(s).

Solution:

B is correct. The adoption of proper corporate governance is the responsibility of a corporation's governance committee. Both A and C are incorrect because proper application of accounting policies and the remuneration of external auditors fall under the domain of the audit committee.

FACTORS AFFECTING STAKEHOLDER RELATIONSHIPS AND CORPORATE GOVERNANCE

6

This section explores ways in which certain factors, both market and non-market related, can affect stakeholder relationships and corporate governance. For this section, market factors include those that relate to capital markets whereas non-market factors do not.

6.1 Market Factors

This section focuses on shareholder engagement, shareholder activism, and competitive forces, all of which are influential market factors for a company. Shareholder engagement involves a company's interactions with its shareholders, whereas shareholder activism describes the efforts by shareholders to create a change within a corporation or modify a corporation's behavior. Meanwhile, competitive dynamics can help align managerial interests with those of its stakeholders.

6.1.1 Shareholder Engagement

The engagement of companies with shareholders—called **shareholder engagement**—has traditionally involved certain events, such as the annual shareholder meeting and analyst calls, the scope of which was limited to financial and strategic matters. There is a growing trend, however, for greater engagement between companies and their shareholders beyond these venues and topics. Companies have increasingly recognized the benefits that frequent, year-round engagement with shareholders can provide, such as building support against short-term activist investors, countering negative recommendations from proxy advisory firms, and receiving greater support for management's position.

6.1.2 Shareholder Activism

Shareholder activism refers to strategies used by shareholders to attempt to compel a company to act in a desired manner. Although shareholder activism can focus on a range of issues, including those involving social or political considerations, the primary motivation of activist shareholders is to increase shareholder value. Activist shareholders often pressure management through such tactics as initiating proxy battles (fights), proposing shareholder resolutions, and publicly raising awareness on issues of contention.

Shareholder activists may pursue additional tactics, such as shareholder derivative lawsuits, which are legal proceedings initiated by one or more shareholders against board directors, management, and/or controlling shareholders of the company. The theory behind this type of lawsuit is that the plaintiff shareholder is deemed to be acting on behalf of the company in place of its directors and officers who have failed to adequately act for the benefit of the company and its shareholders. In many countries, however, the law restricts shareholders from pursuing legal action via the

court system—in some cases, by imposing thresholds that enable only shareholders with interests above a minimum amount to pursue legal actions or by denying legal action altogether.

Hedge funds are among the most predominant shareholder activists. Compared with most traditional institutional investors, the fee structure of hedge funds often provides a significant stake in the financial success of any activist campaign. Furthermore, unlike regulated investment entities that are typically subject to restrictions on their investments (e.g., limitations on leverage or ownership of distressed or illiquid securities), hedge funds are loosely regulated and can thus pursue a greater range of activist opportunities.

6.1.3 Competition and Takeovers

Metrics that measure a company's success, such as market share or earnings growth, provide information that is useful for shareholders to judge the performance of a company's management team or board of directors and compare such performance with that of competitors. Senior managers risk their employment status in the event of underperformance, and directors, in turn, can be voted out by shareholders.

The traditional view of the market for corporate control (often known as the takeover market) is one in which shareholders of a company hire and fire management to achieve better resource utilization. Corporate takeovers can be pursued in several different ways. One mechanism is the **proxy contest** (or proxy fight). In a proxy contest, shareholders are persuaded to vote for a group seeking a controlling position on a company's board of directors. Managerial teams can also be displaced through a **tender offer**, which involves shareholders selling their interests directly to the group seeking to gain control. A contest for corporate control may attract arbitrageurs and takeover specialists, who facilitate transfers of control by accumulating long positions from existing shareholders in the target company and later selling the positions to the highest bidder. Finally, a **hostile takeover** is an attempt by one entity to acquire a company without the consent of the company's management.

Preservation of their employment status serves as an incentive for board members and managers to focus on shareholder wealth maximization. This threat of removal, however, can also have negative implications for a company's corporate governance practices if the company chooses to adopt anti-takeover measures, such as a staggered board or a shareholder rights plan (also known as a poison pill) to reduce the likelihood of an unwanted takeover. Staggering director elections can dilute the value of shareholder voting rights by extending the term that each director serves and eliminating the ability of shareholders to replace the entire board at any given election. Shareholder rights plans enable shareholders to buy additional shares at a discount if another shareholder purchases a certain percentage of the company's shares. These plans are designed to increase the cost to any bidder seeking to take over a company.

EXAMPLE 8

Shareholder Activism

Which of the following is true of shareholder activism?

- A Shareholder activists rarely include hedge funds.
- B Regulators play a prominent role in shareholder activism.
- C A primary goal of shareholder activism is to increase shareholder value.

Solution:

C is correct. Although the subject of shareholder activism may involve social and political issues, activist shareholders' primary motivation is to increase shareholder value. A is incorrect because hedge funds commonly serve as shareholder activists. B is incorrect because regulators play a prominent role in standard setting, not shareholder activism.

6.2 Non-market Factors

This section focuses on certain non-market factors, such as a company's legal environment, the role of the media, and the corporate governance industry, that can have an effect on stakeholder relationships and corporate governance.

6.2.1 Legal Environment

The legal environment in which a company operates can significantly influence the rights and remedies of stakeholders. Countries that have a common law system (such as the United Kingdom, the United States, India, and Canada) are generally considered to offer superior protection of the interests of shareholders and creditors relative to those that have adopted a civil law system (such as France, Germany, Italy, and Japan). The key difference between the two systems lies in the ability of a judge to create laws. In civil law systems, laws are created primarily through statutes and codes enacted by the legislature. The role of judges is generally limited to rigidly applying the statutes and codes to the specific case brought before the court. In contrast, in common law systems, laws are created both from statutes enacted by the legislature and by judges through judicial opinions. In common law systems, shareholders and creditors have the ability to appeal to a judge to rule against management actions and decisions that are not expressly forbidden by statute or code, whereas in civil law systems, this option is generally not possible.

Regardless of a country's legal system, creditors are generally more successful in seeking remedies in court to enforce their rights than shareholders are because shareholder disputes often involve complex legal theories, such as whether a manager or director breached a duty owed to shareholders. In contrast, disputes involving creditors, such as whether the terms of an indenture or other debt contract have been breached, are more straightforward and therefore are more easily determinable by a court.

6.2.2 The Media

The media can affect corporate governance and influence stakeholder relationships through its ability to spread information quickly and shape public opinion. As an example, negative media attention can adversely affect the reputation or public perception of a company or its managers and directors. Senior management's concern over reputational risk can thus reduce the cost of monitoring management activities by stakeholders. Media attention can motivate politicians and regulators to introduce corporate governance reforms or enforce laws that protect stakeholders and society at large. This influence was evident in the aftermath of the 2008–2009 financial crisis, when significant media attention was a factor in the adoption of new laws and regulations designed to address perceived deficiencies in corporate governance.

Social media has become a powerful tool that stakeholders have increasingly used to protect their interests or enhance their influence on corporate matters. Prior to the advent of social media, companies typically had an advantage in distributing information because of their considerable resources as well as relationships with traditional media organizations. Through social media, stakeholders can instantly broadcast information with little cost or effort and are better able to compete with company management in influencing public sentiment.

6.2.3 *The Corporate Governance Industry*

An important catalyst for the rise of the corporate governance industry occurred in 2003, when the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) required US-registered mutual funds to disclose their proxy voting records annually. The same rule also required US mutual funds to adopt policies and procedures designed to reasonably ensure that proxies would be voted in the best interests of their clients. In the years following the SEC's 2003 mutual fund rule, institutional investors have, to varying degrees, committed additional resources to monitor and vote proxies for the large number of companies in which they invest.

With the increased importance and relevance of corporate governance among investors, the demand for external corporate governance services has grown considerably. In particular, some institutional investors have retained outside experts to assist with corporate governance monitoring and proxy voting. In response to this demand, an industry that provides corporate governance services, including governance ratings and proxy advice, has developed. Because the corporate governance industry is relatively concentrated, these vendors have considerable influence in corporate governance practices, and in turn, corporations are generally compelled to pay attention to ratings and recommendations produced by the corporate governance industry.

7

CORPORATE GOVERNANCE AND STAKEHOLDER MANAGEMENT RISKS AND BENEFITS

As illustrated thus far, good corporate governance and stakeholder management can have a meaningfully positive effect on a company. A company will likely not meet the expectations of all stakeholders if one group is able to extract private benefits at the expense of another group. Depending on their nature and magnitude, unmanaged conflicts of interest and weak control over a company's operations may expose the company to various risks, such as legal, regulatory, reputational, or default risks. By adopting effective guidelines for managing the interests of stakeholder groups and instituting adequate levels of control, corporate governance can be reflected in better company relationships, superior levels of efficiency in operations, and improved financial performance.

7.1 Risks of Poor Governance and Stakeholder Management

Weaknesses in stakeholder management mechanisms or the adoption of poor governance structures can create various risks for a company and its stakeholders. A weak control environment can encourage misconduct and hinder the ability of the company to identify and manage risks.

7.1.1 *Weak Control Systems*

In a company with weak control systems or inefficient monitoring tools, such as poor audit procedures or insufficient scrutiny by the board, one stakeholder group may benefit at the expense of the company or other stakeholders. This could consequently have an adverse effect on the company's resources, performance, and value. The audit deficiencies at Enron, for instance, prevented the uncovering of the acts of fraud, erroneous accounting records, and other related issues that led to one of the largest corporate bankruptcies in US history.

7.1.2 Ineffective Decision Making

When the quality and quantity of information available to managers are superior to those available to the board or shareholders, in the absence of sufficient monitoring tools, managers have an opportunity to make decisions that benefit themselves relative to the company or shareholders. Without proper scrutiny, such practices might go unnoticed. Deficient decisions could include managing the company with a lower risk profile relative to shareholders' tolerance, thus avoiding investment opportunities that could create value for the company. Conversely, manager overconfidence may result in poor investment decisions without proper examination of their effect on the company or on shareholders' wealth.

Remuneration policies for management could also have significant implications for the company. Outsized remuneration packages for executives could have an adverse effect on shareholders' wealth, constitute a burden on corporate performance, and affect the interests of other stakeholders, such as employees, customers, or creditors. Remuneration policies that are not carefully designed may also encourage managers to seek immediate personal gains by taking excessive risks or focusing on creating short-term performance or stock price increases. Related-party transactions that underlie unfair terms for the company are another example of activities that are not aligned with the objective of value creation and that could be facilitated by a poor governance system.

7.1.3 Legal, Regulatory, and Reputational Risks

Compliance weaknesses in the implementation of regulatory requirements or lack of proper reporting practices may expose the company to legal, regulatory, or reputational risks. In such cases, the company may become subject to investigation by government or regulatory authorities for violation of applicable laws. A company could also be exposed to lawsuits filed by shareholders, employees, creditors, or other parties for breach of contractual agreements or company bylaws or for violation of stakeholders' legal rights. In today's markets, information flows rapidly. Improperly managed conflicts of interest or governance failures could bring reputational damage to the company, and its associated costs could be significant. Such risks are particularly acute for publicly listed companies subject to scrutiny by investors, analysts, and other market participants.

7.1.4 Default and Bankruptcy Risks

Poor corporate governance, including weak management of creditors' interests, can affect the company's financial position and may hinder its ability to honor its debt obligations. To the extent that the deterioration of corporate performance results in a debt default, the company may be exposed to bankruptcy risk if creditors choose to take legal action. The adverse consequences of corporate failures are not limited to the company's shareholders; they extend to other stakeholders, such as managers and employees and even society and the environment.

7.2 Benefits of Effective Governance and Stakeholder Management

The development of good governance practices can play a vital role in aligning the interests of managers and the board of directors with those of shareholders, while balancing the interests of the company's stakeholders. A good governance structure can be reflected in operational efficiency, improved control processes, better financial performance, and lower levels of risk.

7.2.1 Operational Efficiency

As part of a good governance structure, an organization clarifies the delegation of responsibilities and reporting lines across the company and ensures that all employees have a clear understanding of their respective duties. When balanced with adequate internal control mechanisms, the governance structure can ensure that corporate decisions and activities are properly monitored and controlled to mitigate risk and help improve the operational efficiency of the company.

7.2.2 Improved Control

Governance practices seek to institute more effective control exercised at all corporate levels, from shareholders to the board of directors and management. These practices can help identify and manage risk at early stages that can otherwise hinder corporate performance and/or damage reputation. Control can be enhanced by the proper functioning of a company's audit committee and the effectiveness of its audit systems. By adopting procedures for monitoring compliance with internal policies and external regulations and for reporting any violations, the company can better mitigate regulatory or legal risks and their associated costs. Additionally, the adoption of formal procedures with regard to conflicts of interest and related-party transactions allows the company to ensure fairness in its relationships with those parties.

7.2.3 Better Operating and Financial Performance

Good governance and stakeholder management can help a company improve its operating performance and reduce the costs associated with weak control systems. The costs of poor investments, legal proceedings against the company, and excessive perquisites are just a few examples that could be mitigated by well-functioning governance systems. Enhanced corporate governance could also allow the company to improve its decision-making process and respond faster to market factors. Proper remuneration policies are another governance tool that can motivate managers to make decisions with the objective of creating corporate value.

7.2.4 Lower Default Risk and Cost of Debt

Good corporate governance can lower business and investment risk. Governance arrangements that manage conflicts of interest with creditors, and that help protect creditor rights, can reduce a company's cost of debt and default risk. Default risk can also often be mitigated by proper functioning of audit systems, improved transparency (e.g., reporting of earnings), and the control of information asymmetries between the company and its capital providers. With regard to credit risk, corporate governance mechanisms have become increasingly relevant criteria among credit rating agencies when assessing a company's creditworthiness.

EXAMPLE 9

Benefits of Corporate Governance

Which of the following is **not** a benefit of an effective corporate governance structure?

- A Operating performance can be improved.
- B A corporation's cost of debt can be reduced.
- C Corporate decisions and activities require less control.

Solution:

C is correct. A benefit of an effective corporate governance system is to enable adequate scrutiny and control over operations. B is incorrect because an effective governance structure can reduce investors' perceived credit risk of a corporation, thus potentially lowering the corporation's cost of debt. A is incorrect because operating efficiency may indeed be a benefit of an effective corporate governance structure.

ANALYST CONSIDERATIONS IN CORPORATE GOVERNANCE AND STAKEHOLDER MANAGEMENT

8

In the past, analysts may have considered corporate governance and stakeholder management issues to be only peripherally related to traditional fundamental analysis. Generally, these issues were seen as obscure and unlikely to be material drivers of performance. Following the aforementioned governance failures in the early 2000s, the global financial crisis, and the rise of shareholder activism around the world, there is little doubt that governance and stakeholder issues have become increasingly important topics for analysts.

Some key questions that analysts may consider when assessing a company's corporate governance or stakeholder management system are as follows:

- What is the company's ownership and voting structure among shareholders?
- Who represents shareholders on this company's board?
- What are the main drivers of the management team's remuneration and incentive structure?
- Who are the significant investors in the company?
- How robust are the shareholder rights at the company, including relative to peers?
- How effectively is the company managing long-term risks, such as securing access to necessary resources, managing human capital, exhibiting integrity and leadership, and strengthening the long-term sustainability of the enterprise?

A qualitative analysis of these issues—typically provided by a company's proxy statements, annual reports, and sustainability reports, if available—can provide important insights about the quality of management and sources of potential risk.

8.1 Economic Ownership and Voting Control

Generally speaking, corporations with publicly traded equity have a voting structure that involves one vote for each share. That is, any shareholder's voting power is equal to the percentage of the company's outstanding shares owned by that shareholder. When there are exceptions to this norm and economic ownership becomes separated from control, investors can face significant potential risks.

In a small number of markets, dual-class structures are allowed under the local regulatory framework or exchange rules, which is the most common way that voting power is decoupled from ownership. In these cases, common shares may be divided into two classes, one of which has superior voting rights to the other. A common arrangement is when a share class (for example, Class A) carries one vote per share and is publicly traded whereas another share class (for example, Class B) carries several votes per share and is held exclusively by company insiders or family members. This

structure is used by Facebook, for example. In this way, the founders and/or insiders of a company may continue to control board elections, strategic decisions, and all other significant voting matters for a long period—even once their ownership level declines to less than 50% of the company's shares.

Another mechanism used to separate voting control from economic ownership is when one class of stock (held by insiders) elects a majority of the board; outside shareholders who hold a different share class would then be entitled to elect only a minority of the board. Technically, each share carries equal voting rights, but with this structure, the insiders retain substantial power over the affairs of the corporation because they control a majority of the board. Alibaba's partnership structure is one example of this type of control.

Proponents of dual share systems, such as those just mentioned, argue that the systems promote company stability and enable management to make long-term strategic investments, insulated from the short-term pressures of outside investors. Critics of these structures believe they create conflicts of interest between the providers of capital and the management of the business.

It is virtually impossible for outside investors to dismantle dual-class structures because of the inherent design of their unequal voting rights. Therefore, these structures can remain in place even through generational changes within a founding family. Investors with long time horizons may want to consider the motivations of the controlling stockholders, generational dynamics, succession planning, and the relationship between the board and management. In addition, there may be potential valuation implications because dual-class companies tend to trade at a discount to their peers.

8.2 Board of Directors Representation

In most markets, investors have access to basic biographical information about the non-executive members of corporate boards. Analysts can assess the available information to determine whether the experience and skill sets on the board match the current and future needs of the company.

In particular, questions regarding directors' independence, tenure, experience, and diversity may bring useful investment insights. For example, if the board has multiple directors engaging in related-party transactions with the company, investors may have cause for concern about any conflicts of interest that arise. The issue of board tenure can also be a useful tool for investors. Directors with long periods of service to a company clearly offer valuable experience and expertise, but if the board composition is dominated by such long-tenured members, it may have a negative effect on the board's diversity and adaptability.

An example in which board composition had a significant effect on company performance occurred at a European pharmaceutical company. At one point in its history, the company had become overleveraged and faced significant financial distress. In response, non-executive directors with banking and turnaround experience were added to the board. With the help of these directors, the company recovered. Seven years later, the most promising product in the company's pharmaceutical portfolio began to cause serious side effects in its patient population. The situation required both a meaningful understanding of the medical issues involved and a rapid response from the company. However, the board was still composed of directors with financial expertise rather than medical training. The company struggled with its response to the crisis, and its stock price fell sharply. This situation was one in which the board's composition had been ideal for a certain point in the company's history, but ultimately the directors failed to refresh the board's membership as the needs of the business changed.

8.3 Remuneration and Company Performance

The availability and quality of information about executive remuneration plans varies widely across markets. In those markets where such disclosures are available, analysts can assess the elements of the remuneration program to determine whether they support or conflict with the key drivers of performance for the company.

Generally speaking, current executive remuneration programs consist of a base salary, a short-term bonus usually delivered in the form of cash, and a multi-year incentive plan delivered in one or more forms of equity (options, time-vested shares, and/or performance-vested shares). Often, these short-term and long-term plans are contingent on achieving financial or operational objectives, and often these objectives are disclosed. In these situations, an analyst can assess whether the primary drivers of the remuneration plan are the same factors that, in the analyst's view, drive overall company results.

Assessment of the suitability of a remuneration plan for a particular company is a subjective exercise and is highly dependent on industry and geographic norms. But there are some warning signs that may warrant particular scrutiny:

- **Plans offering little alignment with shareholders.** As an example, if a plan offers only cash-based payouts and no equity, there may be a misalignment of incentives between executives and investors unless management already owns a significant stake in the company.
- **Plans exhibiting little variation in results over multiple years.** If an award is described as performance-based but still pays in full every year regardless of the company's results, investors may have concerns about the rigor of the performance hurdles underlying the awards.
- **Plans with excessive payouts relative to comparable companies with comparable performance.** Investors may want to understand the cause of the anomaly and whether it is a temporary issue or a result of flawed remuneration plan design.
- **Plans that may have specific strategic implications.** As an example, some remuneration plans contain payouts tied to specific milestones, such as regulatory approval of a product, completion of an acquisition, or achievement of specific cost reductions. In addition, some companies offer particularly high post-employment pay arrangements tied to the sale of the company, whereas others offer no such arrangements. These factors are not necessarily negative features, but investors may want to understand whether the milestones driving the incentive plan align with the company's objectives.
- **Plans based on incentives from an earlier period in the company's life cycle.** A frequent example of such a plan relates to a company that has matured beyond its fast growth phase. The company's business may have matured, and competition may have limited the opportunity for market share gains. Investors may believe the company should become more focused on both returns and disciplined capital allocation. Even after the company communicates to the investor community a more returns-oriented strategy, the financial incentives in the remuneration plan may still be based purely on revenue growth. Investors may want to understand such potential misalignment of interests.

8.4 Investors in the Company

Examining the composition of investors in a company can be another source of useful insight for analysts. The behavior of these investors can result in both limitations and catalysts with regard to changes in the corporation. For example, cross-shareholdings

are still prevalent in a number of markets. This situation occurs when a company, particularly a publicly listed one, holds a large, passive, minority stake in another company. Such holdings generally help to protect management from shareholder pressures because implicit in a cross-shareholding arrangement is the guarantee that the owner of the shares will support management on all voting issues. In effect, these shareholdings act as takeover defenses.

Similarly, the presence of a sizable affiliated stockholder (such as an individual, family trust, endowment, or private equity fund) can shield a company from the effects of voting by outside shareholders. As an example, a US consumer goods company has an affiliated charitable foundation that owns more than 20% of the outstanding shares. The company also has a provision in its corporate charter requiring that any changes to the charter must be approved by two-thirds of outstanding shares. As a result, it is virtually impossible for any measure to pass without the support of the foundation. The interests of the foundation thus conflict with the interests of the overall shareholder base. In effect, this single minority shareholder most likely holds the power to block the votes of the majority.

Analysts should note that market context is important in assessing the potential effects of affiliated stockholders. In certain countries, the presence of such shareholders is common, viewed by local market participants as a means of enhancing stability, strengthening the relationship between companies and their business partners, and fostering a long-term perspective by protecting the company against hostile takeover bids.

A final aspect of investor composition that has become increasingly relevant relates to activist shareholders, which we discussed earlier. The presence of activist shareholders can meaningfully and rapidly change the investment thesis for a company. Experienced activists, together with short-term-oriented investors who follow their activities, can create substantial turnover in a company's shareholder composition in a short amount of time. This is because an activist often serves as a catalyst for new strategic alternatives at a company and can attract new investors and/or arbitrageurs.

8.5 Strength of Shareholders' Rights

Within a framework of regional regulations and corporate governance codes, analysts may want to understand whether the shareholder rights of a particular company are strong, weak, or average compared with other companies. For example, if an analyst's viewpoint includes the possibility that a company will merge in the future, he or she may want to understand whether there are significant structural obstacles to transactions that are embedded in the company's charter or bylaws. Similarly, if the thesis involves an outside catalyst, such as an activist shareholder who will introduce change at the company and improve performance, the analyst must take a position on whether shareholders are sufficiently empowered to advance such a change. If it is impossible for shareholders to remove directors from the board or to convene special stockholder meetings, it will be difficult for external initiatives to be successful.

In a number of developed markets, including the United Kingdom, the Netherlands, and Japan, regulatory agencies or stock exchanges have adopted governance codes, which are standards of governance reflecting local investors' expectations with regard to disclosure, board composition, shareholder rights, and other related issues. Often, these governance codes are implemented on a "comply or explain" basis, which indicates that standards are voluntary in nature. However, any deviation from the code must be explained by the company in a public disclosure. If a company has elected to deviate from the locally accepted governance practice, the analyst may want to understand the reasoning behind the decision.

8.6 Managing Long-Term Risks

Analysts may uncover useful insights regarding how a company manages various issues, such as long-term environmental risks, management of human capital, transparency, and treatment of investors and other stakeholders. Of particular note, the academic evidence linking these and other management quality issues to share price performance remains mixed, in part because indicators of management quality are often correlated with each other and, therefore, difficult to isolate. However, poor stakeholder relations and inadequate management of long-term risks have indeed had an enormous negative effect on share value in certain instances. Therefore, analysts may consider the assessment of such issues to be a useful component of their overall risk assessment of the company.

One way to approach management quality issues is to assess whether the company demonstrates a persistent pattern of fines, accidents, regulatory penalties, investigations, and the like. A notable example was US coal mining company Massey Energy, which was penalized by environmental and worker-safety agencies numerous times over multiple years for accidents, safety violations, and repeated breaches of regulations. In 2010, an explosion at one of the company's sites resulted in the deaths of 29 workers and, ultimately, the sale of the company and criminal charges against its executives. Even in the absence of circumstances as extreme as these, poor management of stakeholder interests can have a significant effect on company operations, reputation, and valuation.

8.7 Summary of Analyst Considerations

The analysis of corporate governance, stakeholder management, and other non-financial (often termed "extra-financial") considerations is inherently a subjective exercise. Governance practices that may raise the risk profile of one company may be perfectly acceptable in a different context, depending on geographic norms, mitigating circumstances, or the investor's risk tolerance and investment thesis. In this section, we have provided a basic framework for investors interested in uncovering incremental insights about a company by analyzing its governance standards, practices, and risks.

EXAMPLE 10

Analyst Considerations

- 1 Which of the following *best* describes dual-class share structures?
 - A Dual-class share structures can be easily changed over time.
 - B Company insiders can maintain significant power over the organization.
 - C Conflicts of interest between management and stakeholder groups are less likely than with single share structures.
- 2 An investment analyst would likely be *most* concerned with an executive remuneration plan that:
 - A varies each year.
 - B is consistent with a company's competitors.
 - C is cash-based only, without an equity component.
- 3 Which of the following *best* describes activist shareholders? Activist shareholders:
 - A help stabilize a company's strategic direction.

- B have little effect on the company's long-term investors.
- C can alter the composition of a company's shareholder base.

Solution to 1:

B is correct. Under dual-class share systems, company founders or insiders may control board elections, strategic decisions, and other significant voting matters. A is incorrect because dual share systems are virtually impossible to dismantle once adopted. C is incorrect because conflicts of interest between management and stakeholders are more likely than with single share structures because of the potential control element under dual systems.

Solution to 2:

C is correct. If an executive remuneration plan offers cash only, the incentives between management and investors and other stakeholders may be misaligned. A is incorrect because a plan that varies over time would typically be of less concern to an analyst compared with one that did not change. B is incorrect because an analyst would likely be concerned if a company's executives were excessively compensated relative to competitors.

Solution to 3:

C is correct. The presence of activist shareholders can create substantial turnover in the company's shareholder composition. A is incorrect because the presence of activist shareholders can materially change a company's strategic direction. B is incorrect because long-term investors in a company need to consider how activist shareholders affect the company.

9

ESG CONSIDERATIONS FOR INVESTORS

The inclusion of governance factors in investment analysis has evolved considerably. Management and accountability structures are relatively transparent, and information regarding them is widely available. Also, the risks of poor corporate governance have long been understood by analysts and shareholders. In contrast, the practice of considering environmental and social factors, which collectively with governance form the commonly used acronym “ESG,” has evolved more slowly. A large number of environmental and social issues exist, and identifying which factors are likely to affect company performance is not an easy task. Issues driving the inclusion of environmental and social information in the investment process include scarcity of natural resources, climate change, global economic and demographic trends, and societal evolution. Although ESG factors were once regarded as intangible or qualitative information, refinements in the identification and analysis of such factors, as well as increased corporate disclosures, have resulted in increasingly quantifiable information. Still, the process of reflecting quantitative ESG-related information and data in financial valuation is evolving.

9.1 ESG Terminology

Several ESG-related terms exist, and distinguishing among them can be challenging because of the lack of definitive terminology in the investment community. Among the most common—and broadest—terms are **sustainable investing** (SI) and **responsible investing** (RI). Both of these terms refer to identifying companies that, in an investor's view, efficiently manage their financial, environmental, and human capital resources

to generate attractive long-term profitability; that is, the companies are deemed to have “sustainable” business models. Sustainable investing and responsible investing, along with the term **ESG investing**, generally refer to the consideration of ESG factors in the investment process.

Socially responsible investing (SRI) is a related term that tends to have multiple meanings, creating confusion among investors. Socially responsible investing has traditionally referred to the practice of excluding investments in companies or industries, such as weapons and defense, that deviate from an investor’s beliefs. The term has evolved to include investment objectives that promote positive social attributes, often by investing in companies with favorable environmental or social profiles.

9.2 ESG Implementation Approaches

Implementation approaches to ESG range from *value*-based to *values*-based. The objective of a *value*-based approach is to mitigate risks and identify opportunities by analyzing ESG considerations in addition to traditional financial metrics. Conversely, the objective of a *values*-based approach is to express the moral or ethical beliefs of an investor. Between the value-based and values-based approaches lie a continuum of approaches that strives for value creation through values investing.

Specific implementation approaches to ESG include negative screening (sometimes also referred to as **exclusionary screening** or **norms-based screening**), positive screening, best-in-class approach, ESG integration, thematic investing, and impact investing. **Negative screening** refers to the practice of excluding certain sectors, such as companies engaged in fossil fuel extraction or production, or excluding companies that deviate from accepted standards in areas such as human rights or environmental concerns. Many of these negative screens use specific standards, such as the UN Global Compact’s Ten Principles on human rights, labor, the environment, and corruption.

In contrast to negative screening, **positive screening** or **best-in-class** approach focuses on investments with favorable ESG aspects. Positive screening, typically implemented through an ESG ranking or scoring approach, aims to identify companies that successfully manage ESG risks and may benefit from ESG-related opportunities in their sector. For example, positive screening may include seeking companies that promote employee rights, workplace well-being, and customer safety. The best-in-class approach seeks to identify companies within each industry that rank (or score) most favorably based on ESG considerations. The best-in-class approach does not exclude any industries but instead focuses on finding the best representation within each sector. This approach typically maintains sector weightings comparable to a relative benchmark index to avoid overweighting or underweighting risk exposures.

ESG integration, or **ESG incorporation**, refers to the integration of qualitative and quantitative environmental, social, and governance factors into traditional security and industry analysis. The focus of ESG integration is to identify risks and opportunities arising from ESG factors and to determine whether a company is properly managing its environmental, social, and governance resources in accordance with a sustainable business model.

Thematic investing focuses on investing in companies within a specific sector or following a specific theme, such as energy efficiency or climate change. This approach is often based on needs arising from economic or social trends. Two common ESG-related trends are increased demand for energy and water, as well as the availability of alternative sources of each. Global economic development has raised the demand for energy, whereas increased carbon emissions are believed to negatively affect the earth’s climate. Similarly, rising global living standards and heightened industrial needs have created a greater demand for water along with the need to prevent drought or limited access to clean drinking water in certain regions of the world.

Impact investing seeks to achieve targeted social or environmental objectives along with measurable financial returns through engagement with a company or by direct investment in projects or companies. It has evolved through greater acceptance that positive social and environmental impact can be consistent with economic profit generation. Impact investing can be executed through various asset classes and investment vehicles, often through direct transactions, such as venture capital investing. Another example of impact investing relates to **green finance**. According to the Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development (OECD), green finance relates to “achieving economic growth while reducing pollution and greenhouse gas emissions, minimising waste and improving efficiency in the use of natural resources.”⁵ As with other previously mentioned ESG terms, there are several definitions for green finance in practice. The primary investment vehicles used in green finance are **green bonds**, in which issuers earmark the proceeds towards environmental-related projects. Green bond issuance has grown significantly in recent years. According to the Climate Bond Initiative, total worldwide green bond issuance for the first ten months of 2017 totaled USD 95 billion, compared to USD 37 billion for all of 2014.

9.3 Catalysts for ESG Growth

ESG considerations have become increasingly relevant over the past several years after many investors suffered substantial losses from environmental disasters, social controversies, or governance deficiencies. In one notable example, the 2010 explosion of the Deepwater Horizon oil rig in the Gulf of Mexico caused a massive oil spill, resulting in loss of life, widespread destruction of marine and wildlife habitats, and economic damage to surrounding tourism destinations. As a result of BP plc’s economic interest in the rig, the company incurred tens of billions of dollars in fines, remuneration claims, and clean-up costs.

In addition to environmental issues, investors have become increasingly conscious of workplace, human rights, and governance issues—and the costs associated with them. For example, Walmart lost a 2011 appeals court ruling on a US\$187 million class action lawsuit over wage and hour discrimination. Over the years, Walmart has faced numerous employee strikes and lawsuits over labor and human rights violations and the company has paid a significant amount of money to settle claims and lawsuits. An example of investor loss related to corporate governance occurred in 2015 at German automaker Volkswagen. Specifically, many investors believed that inadequate governance oversight at Volkswagen permitted more than 11 million of its diesel cars to pass emissions tests yet emit unlawful amounts of nitrogen oxide. Many investors attributed their losses to internal audit and compliance shortcomings, as well as a lack of independence in Volkswagen’s board of directors. The company ultimately incurred several billion dollars of civil and criminal penalties.

Another investor development that has supported ESG growth is the adoption of more sophisticated views about sustainable growth and its effect on investment performance. To this end, some large institutional asset owners embrace the concept of being “universal owners.” **Universal owners** are long-term investors, such as pension funds, that have significant assets invested in globally diversified portfolios. Given their size and scope, the investment portfolios of universal owners are linked to economic growth and unavoidably exposed to costs resulting from external factors, such as environmental damages. Because their funds’ long-term performance and the interests of their beneficiaries are at stake, some universal owners strive to positively

⁵ http://www.oecd-ilibrary.org/environment/green-finance-and-investment_24090344

influence the way companies conduct business to minimize exposure to ESG-related costs. Institutions that adhere to the universal owner philosophy believe that sustainable global economic growth is essential to successful investment performance.

9.4 ESG Market Overview

Reflecting the growth of ESG-related information in the marketplace, the amount of global assets under management (AUM) dedicated to the consideration of ESG factors in portfolio selection and management has increased substantially. According to the Global Sustainable Investing Alliance (GSIA), a collaboration of organizations dedicated to advancing sustainable investing in the financial markets, about US\$23 trillion of AUM were dedicated toward sustainable investment mandates as of year-end 2016. Europe (53%) and the United States (38%) accounted for the vast majority of these AUM. Determining the true size of the ESG investment universe is difficult, however, because managers and investors define and implement ESG mandates in many different ways. There are often differences regarding which ESG factors should be considered—as well as how they are considered—in the investment process.

The increased interest in sustainable investing has led to increased corporate disclosures of ESG issues, as well as a growing number of companies that collect and analyze ESG data. In addition to the GSIA, several organizations have been formed to monitor and advance the mission of sustainable investing. For example, the Global Reporting Initiative (GRI), a non-profit organization formed in 1997, produces a sustainability reporting framework that measures and reports sustainability-related issues and performance. In 2006, the United Nations and a consortium of institutional investors launched the Principles of Responsible Investment (PRI) to support investors committed to including ESG issues into their investment decision-making and ownership practices. In 2011, the non-profit Sustainability Accounting Standards Board (SASB) was formed to develop sustainability accounting standards for companies when disclosing material ESG information. In addition to these key organizations, several others exist that promote the advancement of sustainable investing. To help educate investors, CFA Institute published “Environmental, Social, and Governance Issues in Investing: A Guide for Investment Professionals” in November 2015.⁶

9.5 ESG Factors in Investment Analysis

The materiality of ESG factors in investment analysis, particularly environmental and social factors, often differ meaningfully among sectors. An ESG factor is considered to be material when it is believed to have an impact on a company’s long-term business model. For example, environmental factors such as emissions and water usage will likely be significant for utilities or mining companies, yet are relatively inconsequential for financial institutions.

Overall, environmental factors that are generally considered material in investment analysis include natural resource management, pollution prevention, water conservation, energy efficiency and reduced emissions, the existence of carbon assets, and adherence to environmental safety and regulatory standards. A specific concern among investors of energy companies is also the existence of “stranded assets,” i.e., carbon-intensive assets that are at risk of no longer being economically viable because of changes in regulation or investor sentiment. Analysts may find it difficult to assess potentially significant financial risks of energy companies because of limited information on the existence of these companies’ carbon assets, as well as the difficulty in determining political and regulatory risks. Material environmental effects can arise

⁶ <https://www.cfapubs.org/doi/pdf/10.2469/ccb.v2015.n11.1>

from strategic or operational decisions based on inadequate governance processes or errors in judgment. For example, oil spills, industrial waste contamination events, and local resource depletion can result from poor environmental standards, breaches in safety standards, or unsustainable business models. Such events can be costly in terms of regulatory fines, litigation, clean-up costs, reputational risk, and resource management.

Social factors considered in ESG implementation generally pertain to the management of the human capital of a business, including human rights and welfare concerns in the workplace; product development; and, in some cases, community impact. Staff turnover, worker training and safety, employee morale, ethics policies, employee diversity, and supply chain management can all affect a company's ability to sustain its competitive advantage. In addition, minimizing social risks can lower a company's costs (e.g., through higher employee productivity, lower employee turnover, and reduced litigation potential) and reduce its reputational risk.

As mentioned earlier, governance factors have long been recognized in investment analysis. Many performance indicators can help evaluate risks arising from governance issues such as ownership structure, board independence and composition, and compensation. Although several governance factors may apply across industries and geographic regions, other factors are unique (such as systemic risk management for financial services companies).

One area of debate is whether the consideration of ESG factors is consistent with fiduciary duty—particularly when overseeing and managing pension fund assets. Pension fund regulation regarding ESG considerations varies globally. In the United States, the Employee Retirement Income Security Act of 1974 (ERISA) sets the standards for the protection of private pension plan beneficiaries. A fiduciary must act solely in the interest of pension plan participants and beneficiaries. Accepting lower returns or assuming greater risk in a private pension plan to promote environmental, social, or public policy causes would violate fiduciary duty and is prohibited by ERISA. However, in October 2015, the US Department of Labor (DOL) determined that certain ESG-related investment considerations do not violate ERISA or fiduciary duty. These considerations include the addition of ESG factors in investment policy statements; the integration of ESG factors in the evaluation of an investment's risk or return; and using ESG considerations as determining factors when choosing among investments that are otherwise financially or economically equivalent.

EXAMPLE 11

ESG Implementation Methods

The ESG implementation method that is *most* associated with excluding certain sectors or companies is:

- A best-in-class.
- B thematic investing.
- C negative screening.

Solution:

C is correct. Negative screening entails excluding certain companies or sectors, such as fossil fuel extraction, from a portfolio. B is incorrect because thematic investing typically focuses on investing in companies within a specific sector or following a specific theme, such as energy efficiency or climate change, as

opposed to merely excluding a set of companies or industries from a portfolio. Likewise, A is incorrect because best-in-class focuses on companies that rank (or score) most favorably with regard to ESG factors.

SUMMARY

The investment community has increasingly recognized the importance of corporate governance, as well as environmental and social considerations. Although practices concerning corporate governance (and ESG overall) will undoubtedly continue to evolve, investment analysts who have a good understanding of these concepts can better appreciate the implications of ESG considerations in investment decision making. The core concepts covered in this reading are as follows:

- Corporate governance can be defined as a system of controls and procedures by which individual companies are managed.
- There are many systems of corporate governance, most reflecting the influences of either shareholder theory or stakeholder theory, or both. Current trends, however, point to increasing convergence.
- A corporation's governance system is influenced by several stakeholder groups, and the interests of the groups often diverge or conflict.
- The primary stakeholder groups of a corporation consist of shareholders, creditors, managers and employees, the board of directors, customers, suppliers, and government/regulators.
- A principal–agent relationship (or agency relationship) entails a principal hiring an agent to perform a particular task or service. In a corporate structure, such relationships often lead to conflicts among various stakeholders.
- Stakeholder management involves identifying, prioritizing, and understanding the interests of stakeholder groups and on that basis managing the company's relationships with stakeholders. The framework of corporate governance and stakeholder management reflects a legal, contractual, organizational, and governmental infrastructure.
- Mechanisms of stakeholder management may include general meetings, a board of directors, the audit function, company reporting and transparency, related-party transactions, remuneration policies (including say on pay), and other mechanisms to manage the company's relationship with its creditors, employees, customers, suppliers, and regulators.
- A board of directors is the central pillar of the governance structure, serves as the link between shareholders and managers, and acts as the shareholders' internal monitoring tool within the company.
- The structure and composition of a board of directors vary across countries and companies. The number of directors may vary, and the board typically includes a mix of expertise levels, backgrounds, and competencies.
- Executive (internal) directors are employed by the company and are typically members of senior management. Non-executive (external) directors have limited involvement in daily operations but serve an important oversight role.
- Two primary duties of a board of directors are duty of care and duty of loyalty.

- A company's board of directors typically has several committees that are responsible for specific functions and report to the board. Although the types of committees may vary across organization, the most common are the audit committee, governance committee, remuneration (compensation) committee, nomination committee, risk committee, and investment committee.
- Stakeholder relationships and corporate governance are continually shaped and influenced by a variety of market and non-market factors.
- Shareholder engagement by a company can provide benefits that include building support against short-term activist investors, countering negative recommendations from proxy advisory firms, and receiving greater support for management's position.
- Shareholder activism encompasses a range of strategies that may be used by shareholders when seeking to compel a company to act in a desired manner.
- From a corporation's perspective, risks of poor governance include weak control systems; ineffective decision making; and legal, regulatory, reputational, and default risk. Benefits include better operational efficiency, control, and operating and financial performance, as well as lower default risk (or cost of debt).
- Key analyst considerations in corporate governance and stakeholder management include economic ownership and voting control, board of directors representation, remuneration and company performance, investor composition, strength of shareholders' rights, and the management of long-term risks.
- Several terms—sometimes interchangeable—and investment approaches have evolved in relation to ESG: sustainable investing; responsible investing; ESG investing; and socially responsible investing.
- Negative screening is an approach to ESG implementation that excludes certain companies or sectors from investment consideration because of their underlying business activities or other environmental or social concerns. Positive screening and best-in-class strategies focus on investments with favorable ESG aspects. Thematic investing focuses on investing in companies within a specific sector or industry theme, such as energy efficiency or climate change. Impact investing seeks to achieve targeted social or environmental objectives along with measurable financial returns.
- ESG integration (or ESG incorporation) integrates qualitative and quantitative environmental, social, and governance factors into traditional security and industry analysis.

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

- 1 Corporate governance:
 - A complies with a set of global standards.
 - B is independent of both shareholder theory and stakeholder theory.
 - C seeks to minimize and manage conflicting interests between insiders and external shareholders.
- 2 Which group of company stakeholders would be *least* affected if the firm's financial position weakens?
 - A Suppliers
 - B Customers
 - C Managers and employees
- 3 Which of the following represents a principal–agent conflict between shareholders and management?
 - A Risk tolerance
 - B Multiple share classes
 - C Accounting and reporting practices
- 4 Which of the following issues discussed at a shareholders' general meeting would *most likely* require only a simple majority vote for approval?
 - A Voting on a merger
 - B Election of directors
 - C Amendments to bylaws
- 5 Which of the following statements regarding stakeholder management is *most* accurate?
 - A Company management ensures compliance with all applicable laws and regulations.
 - B Directors are excluded from voting on transactions in which they hold material interest.
 - C The use of variable incentive plans in executive remuneration is decreasing.
- 6 Which of the following represents a responsibility of a company's board of directors?
 - A Implementation of strategy
 - B Enterprise risk management
 - C Considering the interests of shareholders only
- 7 Which of the following statements about non-market factors in corporate governance is *most* accurate?
 - A Stakeholders can spread information quickly and shape public opinion.
 - B A civil law system offers better protection of shareholder interests than does a common law system.
 - C Vendors providing corporate governance services have limited influence on corporate governance practices.
- 8 Which of the following statements regarding corporate shareholders is *most* accurate?
 - A Cross-shareholdings help promote corporate mergers.

- B Dual-class structures are used to align economic ownership with control.
 - C Affiliated shareholders can protect a company against hostile takeover bids.
- 9 Which of the following statements about environmental, social, and governance (ESG) in investment analysis is correct?
- A ESG factors are strictly intangible in nature.
 - B ESG terminology is easily distinguishable among investors.
 - C Environmental and social factors have been adopted in investment analysis more slowly than governance factors.
- 10 Which of the following statements regarding ESG implementation methods is *most accurate*?
- A Negative screening is the most commonly applied method.
 - B Thematic investing considers multiple factors.
 - C The best-in-class strategy excludes industries with unfavorable ESG aspects.

SOLUTIONS

- 1 C is correct. Corporate governance is the arrangement of checks, balances, and incentives a company needs to minimize and manage the conflicting interests between insiders and external shareholders.
- 2 B is correct. Compared with other stakeholder groups, customers tend to be less concerned with, and affected by, a company's financial performance.
- 3 A is correct. Shareholder and manager interests can diverge with respect to risk tolerance. In some cases, shareholders with diversified investment portfolios can have a fairly high risk tolerance because specific company risk can be diversified away. Managers are typically more risk averse in their corporate decision making to better protect their employment status.
- 4 B is correct. The election of directors is considered an ordinary resolution and, therefore, requires only a simple majority of votes to be passed.
- 5 B is correct. Often, policies on related-party transactions require that such transactions or matters be voted on by the board (or shareholders), excluding the director holding the interest.
- 6 B is correct. The board typically ensures that the company has an appropriate enterprise risk management system in place.
- 7 A is correct. Social media has become a powerful tool for stakeholders to instantly broadcast information with little cost or effort and to compete with company management in influencing public sentiment.
- 8 C is correct. The presence of a sizable affiliated stockholder (such as an individual, family trust, endowment, or private equity fund) can shield a company from the effects of voting by outside shareholders.
- 9 C is correct. The risks of poor corporate governance have long been understood by analysts and shareholders. In contrast, the practice of considering environmental and social factors has been slower to take hold.
- 10 A is correct. Negative screening, which refers to the practice of excluding certain sectors or companies that violate accepted standards in such areas as human rights or environmental concerns, is the most common ESG investment strategy (implementation method).

Capital Budgeting

by John D. Stowe, PhD, CFA, and Jacques R. Gagné, FSA, CFA, CIPM

John D. Stowe, PhD, CFA, is at Ohio University (USA). Jacques R. Gagné, FSA, CFA, CIPM, is at ENAP (Canada).

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Mastery	The candidate should be able to:
<input type="checkbox"/>	a. describe the capital budgeting process and distinguish among the various categories of capital projects;
<input type="checkbox"/>	b. describe the basic principles of capital budgeting;
<input type="checkbox"/>	c. explain how the evaluation and selection of capital projects is affected by mutually exclusive projects, project sequencing, and capital rationing;
<input type="checkbox"/>	d. calculate and interpret net present value (NPV), internal rate of return (IRR), payback period, discounted payback period, and profitability index (PI) of a single capital project;
<input type="checkbox"/>	e. explain the NPV profile, compare the NPV and IRR methods when evaluating independent and mutually exclusive projects, and describe the problems associated with each of the evaluation methods;
<input type="checkbox"/>	f. describe expected relations among an investment's NPV, company value, and share price.

INTRODUCTION

1

Capital budgeting is the process that companies use for decision making on capital projects—those projects with a life of a year or more. This is a fundamental area of knowledge for financial analysts for many reasons.

- First, capital budgeting is very important for corporations. Capital projects, which make up the long-term asset portion of the balance sheet, can be so large that sound capital budgeting decisions ultimately decide the future of many corporations. Capital decisions cannot be reversed at a low cost, so mistakes are

very costly. Indeed, the real capital investments of a company describe a company better than its working capital or capital structures, which are intangible and tend to be similar for many corporations.

- Second, the principles of capital budgeting have been adapted for many other corporate decisions, such as investments in working capital, leasing, mergers and acquisitions, and bond refunding.
- Third, the valuation principles used in capital budgeting are similar to the valuation principles used in security analysis and portfolio management. Many of the methods used by security analysts and portfolio managers are based on capital budgeting methods. Conversely, there have been innovations in security analysis and portfolio management that have also been adapted to capital budgeting.
- Finally, although analysts have a vantage point outside the company, their interest in valuation coincides with the capital budgeting focus of maximizing shareholder value. Because capital budgeting information is not ordinarily available outside the company, the analyst may attempt to estimate the process, within reason, at least for companies that are not too complex. Further, analysts may be able to appraise the quality of the company's capital budgeting process—for example, on the basis of whether the company has an accounting focus or an economic focus.

This reading is organized as follows: Section 2 presents the steps in a typical capital budgeting process. After introducing the basic principles of capital budgeting in Section 3, in Section 4 we discuss the criteria by which a decision to invest in a project may be made.

2

THE CAPITAL BUDGETING PROCESS

The specific capital budgeting procedures that a manager uses depend on the manager's level in the organization, the size and complexity of the project being evaluated, and the size of the organization. The typical steps in the capital budgeting process are as follows:

- **Step One: Generating Ideas**—Investment ideas can come from anywhere, from the top or the bottom of the organization, from any department or functional area, or from outside the company. Generating good investment ideas to consider is the most important step in the process.
- **Step Two: Analyzing Individual Proposals**—This step involves gathering the information to forecast cash flows for each project and then evaluating the project's profitability.
- **Step Three: Planning the Capital Budget**—The company must organize the profitable proposals into a coordinated whole that fits within the company's overall strategies, and it also must consider the projects' timing. Some projects that look good when considered in isolation may be undesirable strategically. Because of financial and real resource issues, the scheduling and prioritizing of projects is important.
- **Step Four: Monitoring and Post-auditing**—In a post-audit, actual results are compared to planned or predicted results, and any differences must be explained. For example, how do the revenues, expenses, and cash flows realized from an investment compare to the predictions? Post-auditing capital projects is important for several reasons. First, it helps monitor the forecasts and

analysis that underlie the capital budgeting process. Systematic errors, such as overly optimistic forecasts, become apparent. Second, it helps improve business operations. If sales or costs are out of line, it will focus attention on bringing performance closer to expectations if at all possible. Finally, monitoring and post-auditing recent capital investments will produce concrete ideas for future investments. Managers can decide to invest more heavily in profitable areas and scale down or cancel investments in areas that are disappointing.

Planning for capital investments can be very complex, often involving many persons inside and outside of the company. Information about marketing, science, engineering, regulation, taxation, finance, production, and behavioral issues must be systematically gathered and evaluated. The authority to make capital decisions depends on the size and complexity of the project. Lower-level managers may have discretion to make decisions that involve less than a given amount of money, or that do not exceed a given capital budget. Larger and more complex decisions are reserved for top management, and some are so significant that the company's board of directors ultimately has the decision-making authority.

Like everything else, capital budgeting is a cost–benefit exercise. At the margin, the benefits from the improved decision making should exceed the costs of the capital budgeting efforts.

Companies often put capital budgeting projects into some rough categories for analysis. One such classification would be as follows:

- 1 Replacement projects. These are among the easier capital budgeting decisions. If a piece of equipment breaks down or wears out, whether to replace it may not require careful analysis. If the expenditure is modest and if not investing has significant implications for production, operations, or sales, it would be a waste of resources to overanalyze the decision. Just make the replacement. Other replacement decisions involve replacing existing equipment with newer, more efficient equipment, or perhaps choosing one type of equipment over another. These replacement decisions are often amenable to very detailed analysis, and you might have a lot of confidence in the final decision.
- 2 Expansion projects. Instead of merely maintaining a company's existing business activities, expansion projects increase the size of the business. These expansion decisions may involve more uncertainties than replacement decisions, and these decisions will be more carefully considered.
- 3 New products and services. These investments expose the company to even more uncertainties than expansion projects. These decisions are more complex and will involve more people in the decision-making process.
- 4 Regulatory, safety, and environmental projects. These projects are frequently required by a governmental agency, an insurance company, or some other external party. They may generate no revenue and might not be undertaken by a company maximizing its own private interests. Often, the company will accept the required investment and continue to operate. Occasionally, however, the cost of the regulatory/safety/environmental project is sufficiently high that the company would do better to cease operating altogether or to shut down any part of the business that is related to the project.
- 5 Other. The projects above are all susceptible to capital budgeting analysis, and they can be accepted or rejected using the net present value (NPV) or some other criterion. Some projects escape such analysis. These are either pet projects of someone in the company (such as the CEO buying a new aircraft) or so risky that they are difficult to analyze by the usual methods (such as some research and development decisions).

3

BASIC PRINCIPLES OF CAPITAL BUDGETING

Capital budgeting has a rich history and sometimes employs some pretty sophisticated procedures. Fortunately, capital budgeting relies on just a few basic principles. Capital budgeting usually uses the following assumptions:

- 1 Decisions are based on cash flows. The decisions are not based on accounting concepts, such as net income. Furthermore, intangible costs and benefits are often ignored because, if they are real, they should result in cash flows at some other time.
- 2 Timing of cash flows is crucial. Analysts make an extraordinary effort to detail precisely when cash flows occur.
- 3 Cash flows are based on opportunity costs. What are the incremental cash flows that occur with an investment compared to what they would have been without the investment?
- 4 Cash flows are analyzed on an after-tax basis. Taxes must be fully reflected in all capital budgeting decisions.
- 5 Financing costs are ignored. This may seem unrealistic, but it is not. Most of the time, analysts want to know the after-tax operating cash flows that result from a capital investment. Then, these after-tax cash flows and the investment outlays are discounted at the “required rate of return” to find the net present value (NPV). Financing costs are reflected in the required rate of return. If we included financing costs in the cash flows and in the discount rate, we would be double-counting the financing costs. So even though a project may be financed with some combination of debt and equity, we ignore these costs, focusing on the operating cash flows and capturing the costs of debt (and other capital) in the discount rate.
- 6 Capital budgeting cash flows are not accounting net income. Accounting net income is reduced by noncash charges such as accounting depreciation. Furthermore, to reflect the cost of debt financing, interest expenses are also subtracted from accounting net income. (No subtraction is made for the cost of equity financing in arriving at accounting net income.) Accounting net income also differs from economic income, which is the cash inflow plus the change in the market value of the company. Economic income does not subtract the **cost of debt** financing, and it is based on the changes in the market value of the company, not changes in its book value (accounting depreciation).

In assumption 5 above, we referred to the rate used in discounting the cash flows as the “required rate of return.” The required rate of return is the discount rate that investors should require given the riskiness of the project. This discount rate is frequently called the “opportunity cost of funds” or the “cost of capital.” If the company can invest elsewhere and earn a return of r , or if the company can repay its sources of capital and save a cost of r , then r is the company’s opportunity cost of funds. If the company cannot earn more than its opportunity cost of funds on an investment, it should not undertake that investment. Unless an investment earns more than the cost of funds from its suppliers of capital, the investment should not be undertaken. The cost-of-capital concept is discussed more extensively elsewhere. Regardless of what it is called, an economically sound discount rate is essential for making capital budgeting decisions.

Although the principles of capital budgeting are simple, they are easily confused in practice, leading to unfortunate decisions. Some important capital budgeting concepts that managers find very useful are given below.

- A **sunk cost** is one that has already been incurred. You cannot change a sunk cost. Today's decisions, on the other hand, should be based on current and future cash flows and should not be affected by prior, or sunk, costs.
- An **opportunity cost** is what a resource is worth in its next-best use. For example, if a company uses some idle property, what should it record as the investment outlay: the purchase price several years ago, the current market value, or nothing? If you replace an old machine with a new one, what is the opportunity cost? If you invest \$10 million, what is the opportunity cost? The answers to these three questions are, respectively: the current market value, the cash flows the old machine would generate, and \$10 million (which you could invest elsewhere).
- An **incremental cash flow** is the cash flow that is realized because of a decision: the cash flow *with* a decision minus the cash flow *without* that decision. If opportunity costs are correctly assessed, the incremental cash flows provide a sound basis for capital budgeting.
- An **externality** is the effect of an investment on other things besides the investment itself. Frequently, an investment affects the cash flows of other parts of the company, and these externalities can be positive or negative. If possible, these should be part of the investment decision. Sometimes externalities occur outside of the company. An investment might benefit (or harm) other companies or society at large, and yet the company is not compensated for these benefits (or charged for the costs). **Cannibalization** is one externality. Cannibalization occurs when an investment takes customers and sales away from another part of the company.
- **Conventional cash flows** versus **nonconventional cash flows**—A conventional cash flow pattern is one with an initial outflow followed by a series of inflows. In a nonconventional cash flow pattern, the initial outflow is not followed by inflows only, but the cash flows can flip from positive to negative again (or even change signs several times). An investment that involved outlays (negative cash flows) for the first couple of years that were then followed by positive cash flows would be considered to have a conventional pattern. If cash flows change signs once, the pattern is conventional. If cash flows change signs two or more times, the pattern is nonconventional.

Several types of project interactions make the incremental cash flow analysis challenging. The following are some of these interactions:

- **Independent projects** versus **mutually exclusive projects**—Independent projects are projects whose cash flows are independent of each other. Mutually exclusive projects compete directly with each other. For example, if Projects A and B are mutually exclusive, you can choose A or B, but you cannot choose both. Sometimes there are several mutually exclusive projects, and you can choose only one from the group.
- **Project sequencing**—Many projects are sequenced through time, so that investing in a project creates the option to invest in future projects. For example, you might invest in a project today and then in one year invest in a second

project if the financial results of the first project or new economic conditions are favorable. If the results of the first project or new economic conditions are not favorable, you do not invest in the second project.

- **Unlimited funds** versus **capital rationing**—An unlimited funds environment assumes that the company can raise the funds it wants for all profitable projects simply by paying the required rate of return. Capital rationing exists when the company has a fixed amount of funds to invest. If the company has more profitable projects than it has funds for, it must allocate the funds to achieve the maximum shareholder value subject to the funding constraints.

4

INVESTMENT DECISION CRITERIA

Analysts use several important criteria to evaluate capital investments. The two most comprehensive measures of whether a project is profitable or unprofitable are the net present value (NPV) and internal rate of return (IRR). In addition to these, we present four other criteria that are frequently used: the payback period, discounted payback period, average accounting rate of return (AAR), and profitability index (PI). An analyst must fully understand the economic logic behind each of these investment decision criteria as well as its strengths and limitations in practice.

4.1 Net Present Value

For a project with one investment outlay, made initially, the net present value (NPV) is the present value of the future after-tax cash flows minus the investment outlay, or

$$\text{NPV} = \sum_{t=1}^n \frac{CF_t}{(1+r)^t} - \text{Outlay} \quad (1)$$

where

CF_t = after-tax cash flow at time t

r = required rate of return for the investment

Outlay = investment cash flow at time zero

To illustrate the net present value criterion, we will take a look at a simple example. Assume that Gerhardt Corporation is considering an investment of €50 million in a capital project that will return after-tax cash flows of €16 million per year for the next four years plus another €20 million in Year 5. The required rate of return is 10 percent.

For the Gerhardt example, the NPV would be¹

$$\begin{aligned} \text{NPV} &= \frac{16}{1.10^1} + \frac{16}{1.10^2} + \frac{16}{1.10^3} + \frac{16}{1.10^4} + \frac{20}{1.10^5} - 50 \\ \text{NPV} &= 14.545 + 13.223 + 12.021 + 10.928 + 12.418 - 50 \\ \text{NPV} &= 63.136 - 50 = \text{€}13.136 \text{ million.} \end{aligned}$$

¹ Occasionally, you will notice some rounding errors in our examples. In this case, the present values of the cash flows, as rounded, add up to €63.135. Without rounding, they add up to €63.13627, or €63.136. We will usually report the more accurate result, the one that you would get from your calculator or computer without rounding intermediate results.

The investment has a total value, or present value of future cash flows, of €63.136 million. Since this investment can be acquired at a cost of €50 million, the investing company is giving up €50 million of its wealth in exchange for an investment worth €63.136 million. The investor's wealth increases by a net of €13.136 million.

Because the NPV is the amount by which the investor's wealth increases as a result of the investment, the decision rule for the NPV is as follows:

Invest if	NPV > 0
Do not invest if	NPV < 0

Positive NPV investments are wealth-increasing, whereas negative NPV investments are wealth-decreasing.

Many investments have cash flow patterns in which outflows may occur not only at time zero, but also at future dates. It is useful to consider the NPV to be the present value of all cash flows:

$$\text{NPV} = \text{CF}_0 + \frac{\text{CF}_1}{(1+r)^1} + \frac{\text{CF}_2}{(1+r)^2} + \dots + \frac{\text{CF}_n}{(1+r)^n}, \text{ or} \quad (2)$$

$$\text{NPV} = \sum_{t=0}^n \frac{\text{CF}_t}{(1+r)^t}$$

In Equation 2, the investment outlay, CF_0 , is simply a negative cash flow. Future cash flows can also be negative.

4.2 Internal Rate of Return

The internal rate of return (IRR) is one of the most frequently used concepts in capital budgeting and in security analysis. The IRR definition is one that all analysts know by heart. For a project with one investment outlay, made initially, the IRR is the discount rate that makes the present value of the future after-tax cash flows equal that investment outlay. Written out in equation form, the IRR solves this equation:

$$\sum_{t=1}^n \frac{\text{CF}_t}{(1+\text{IRR})^t} = \text{Outlay}$$

where IRR is the internal rate of return. The left-hand side of this equation is the present value of the project's future cash flows, which, discounted at the IRR, equals the investment outlay. This equation will also be seen rearranged as

$$\sum_{t=1}^n \frac{\text{CF}_t}{(1+\text{IRR})^t} - \text{Outlay} = 0 \quad (3)$$

In this form, Equation 3 looks like the NPV equation, Equation 1, except that the discount rate is the IRR instead of r (the required rate of return). Discounted at the IRR, the NPV is equal to zero.

In the Gerhardt Corporation example, we want to find a discount rate that makes the total present value of all cash flows, the NPV, equal zero. In equation form, the IRR is the discount rate that solves this equation:

$$-50 + \frac{16}{(1+\text{IRR})^1} + \frac{16}{(1+\text{IRR})^2} + \frac{16}{(1+\text{IRR})^3} + \frac{16}{(1+\text{IRR})^4} + \frac{20}{(1+\text{IRR})^5} = 0$$

Algebraically, this equation would be very difficult to solve. We normally resort to trial and error, systematically choosing various discount rates until we find one, the IRR, that satisfies the equation. We previously discounted these cash flows at 10 percent and found the NPV to be €13.136 million. Since the NPV is positive, the IRR is

probably greater than 10 percent. If we use 20 percent as the discount rate, the NPV is –€0.543 million, so 20 percent is a little high. One might try several other discount rates until the NPV is equal to zero; this approach is illustrated in Table 1.

Table 1 Trial and Error Process for Finding IRR

Discount Rate (%)	NPV
10	13.136
20	–0.543
19	0.598
19.5	0.022
19.51	0.011
19.52	0.000

The IRR is 19.52 percent. Financial calculators and spreadsheet software have routines that calculate the IRR for us, so we do not have to go through this trial and error procedure ourselves. The IRR, computed more precisely, is 19.5197 percent.

The decision rule for the IRR is to invest if the IRR exceeds the required rate of return for a project:

Invest if	$IRR > r$
Do not invest if	$IRR < r$

In the Gerhardt example, since the IRR of 19.52 percent exceeds the project's required rate of return of 10 percent, Gerhardt should invest.

Many investments have cash flow patterns in which the outlays occur at time zero and at future dates. Thus, it is common to define the IRR as the discount rate that makes the present values of all cash flows sum to zero:

$$\sum_{t=0}^n \frac{CF_t}{(1 + IRR)^t} = 0 \quad (4)$$

Equation 4 is a more general version of Equation 3.

4.3 Payback Period

The payback period is the number of years required to recover the original investment in a project. The payback is based on cash flows. For example, if you invest \$10 million in a project, how long will it be until you recover the full original investment? Table 2 below illustrates the calculation of the payback period by following an investment's cash flows and cumulative cash flows.

Table 2 Payback Period Example

Year	0	1	2	3	4	5
Cash flow	–10,000	2,500	2,500	3,000	3,000	3,000
Cumulative cash flow	–10,000	–7,500	–5,000	–2,000	1,000	4,000

In the first year, the company recovers 2,500 of the original investment, with 7,500 still unrecovered. You can see that the company recoups its original investment between Year 3 and Year 4. After three years, 2,000 is still unrecovered. Since the Year 4 cash flow is 3,000, it would take two-thirds of the Year 4 cash flow to bring the cumulative cash flow to zero. So, the payback period is three years plus two-thirds of the Year 4 cash flow, or 3.67 years.

The drawbacks of the payback period are transparent. Since the cash flows are not discounted at the project's required rate of return, the payback period ignores the time value of money and the risk of the project. Additionally, the payback period ignores cash flows after the payback period is reached. In the table above, for example, the Year 5 cash flow is completely ignored in the payback computation!

Example 1 is designed to illustrate some of the implications of these drawbacks of the payback period.

EXAMPLE 1

Drawbacks of the Payback Period

The cash flows, payback periods, and NPVs for Projects A through F are given in Table 3. For all of the projects, the required rate of return is 10 percent.

Table 3 Examples of Drawbacks of the Payback Period

Year	Cash Flows					
	Project A	Project B	Project C	Project D	Project E	Project F
0	-1,000	-1,000	-1,000	-1,000	-1,000	-1,000
1	1,000	100	400	500	400	500
2		200	300	500	400	500
3		300	200	500	400	10,000
4		400	100		400	
5		500	500		400	
Payback period	1.0	4.0	4.0	2.0	2.5	2.0
NPV	-90.91	65.26	140.60	243.43	516.31	7,380.92

Comment on why the payback period provides misleading information about the following:

- 1 Project A.
- 2 Project B versus Project C.
- 3 Project D versus Project E.
- 4 Project D versus Project F.

Solution to 1:

Project A does indeed pay itself back in one year. However, this result is misleading because the investment is unprofitable, with a negative NPV.

Solution to 2:

Although Projects B and C have the same payback period and the same cash flow after the payback period, the payback period does not detect the fact that Project C's cash flows within the payback period occur earlier and result in a higher NPV.

Solution to 3:

Projects D and E illustrate a common situation. The project with the shorter payback period is the less profitable project. Project E has a longer payback and higher NPV.

Solution to 4:

Projects D and F illustrate an important flaw of the payback period—that the payback period ignores cash flows after the payback period is reached. In this case, Project F has a much larger cash flow in Year 3, but the payback period does not recognize its value.

The payback period has many drawbacks—it is a measure of payback and not a measure of profitability. By itself, the payback period would be a dangerous criterion for evaluating capital projects. Its simplicity, however, is an advantage. The payback period is very easy to calculate and to explain. The payback period may also be used as an indicator of project liquidity. A project with a two-year payback may be more liquid than another project with a longer payback.

Because it is not economically sound, the payback period has no decision rule like that of the NPV or IRR. If the payback period is being used (perhaps as a measure of liquidity), analysts should also use an NPV or IRR to ensure that their decisions also reflect the profitability of the projects being considered.

4.4 Discounted Payback Period

The discounted payback period is the number of years it takes for the cumulative discounted cash flows from a project to equal the original investment. The discounted payback period partially addresses the weaknesses of the payback period. Table 4 gives an example of calculating the payback period and discounted payback period. The example assumes a discount rate of 10 percent.

Table 4 Payback Period and Discounted Payback Period

Year	0	1	2	3	4	5
Cash flow (CF)	-5,000	1,500.00	1,500.00	1,500.00	1,500.00	1,500.00
Cumulative CF	-5,000	-3,500.00	-2,000.00	-500.00	1,000.00	2,500.00
Discounted CF	-5,000	1,363.64	1,239.67	1,126.97	1,024.52	931.38
Cumulative discounted CF	-5,000	-3,636.36	-2,396.69	-1,269.72	-245.20	686.18

The payback period is three years plus $500/1,500 = 1/3$ of the fourth year's cash flow, or 3.33 years. The discounted payback period is between four and five years. The discounted payback period is four years plus $245.20/931.38 = 0.26$ of the fifth year's discounted cash flow, or 4.26 years.

The discounted payback period relies on discounted cash flows, much as the NPV criterion does. If a project has a negative NPV, it will usually not have a discounted payback period since it never recovers the initial investment.

The discounted payback does account for the time value of money and risk within the discounted payback period, but it ignores cash flows after the discounted payback period is reached. This drawback has two consequences. First, the discounted payback period is not a good measure of profitability because it ignores these cash flows. Second, another idiosyncrasy of the discounted payback period comes from the possibility of negative cash flows after the discounted payback period is reached. It is possible for a project to have a negative NPV but to have a positive cumulative discounted cash flow in the middle of its life and, thus, a reasonable discounted payback period. The NPV and IRR, which consider all of a project's cash flows, do not suffer from this problem.

4.5 Average Accounting Rate of Return

The average accounting rate of return (AAR) can be defined as

$$\text{AAR} = \frac{\text{Average net income}}{\text{Average book value}}$$

To understand this measure of return, we will use a numerical example.

Assume a company invests \$200,000 in a project that is depreciated straight-line over a five-year life to a zero salvage value. Sales revenues and cash operating expenses for each year are as shown in Table 5. The table also shows the annual income taxes (at a 40 percent tax rate) and the net income.

Table 5 Net Income for Calculating an Average Accounting Rate of Return

	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5
Sales	\$100,000	\$150,000	\$240,000	\$130,000	\$80,000
Cash expenses	50,000	70,000	120,000	60,000	50,000
Depreciation	40,000	40,000	40,000	40,000	40,000
Earnings before taxes	10,000	40,000	80,000	30,000	-10,000
Taxes (at 40 percent)	4,000	16,000	32,000	12,000	-4,000 ^a
Net income	6,000	24,000	48,000	18,000	-6,000

^a Negative taxes occur in Year 5 because the earnings before taxes of -\$10,000 can be deducted against earnings on other projects, thus reducing the tax bill by \$4,000.

For the five-year period, the average net income is \$18,000. The initial book value is \$200,000, declining by \$40,000 per year until the final book value is \$0. The average book value for this asset is $(\$200,000 - \$0) / 2 = \$100,000$. The average accounting rate of return is

$$\text{AAR} = \frac{\text{Average net income}}{\text{Average book value}} = \frac{18,000}{100,000} = 18\%$$

The advantages of the AAR are that it is easy to understand and easy to calculate. The AAR has some important disadvantages, however. Unlike the other capital budgeting criteria discussed here, the AAR is based on accounting numbers and not based on cash flows. This is an important conceptual and practical limitation. The AAR also does not account for the time value of money, and there is no conceptually sound cutoff for the AAR that distinguishes between profitable and unprofitable investments. The AAR is frequently calculated in different ways, so the analyst should verify the

formula behind any AAR numbers that are supplied by someone else. Analysts should know the AAR and its potential limitations in practice, but they should rely on more economically sound methods like the NPV and IRR.

4.6 Profitability Index

The profitability index (PI) is the present value of a project's future cash flows divided by the initial investment. It can be expressed as

$$PI = \frac{\text{PV of future cash flows}}{\text{Initial investment}} = 1 + \frac{\text{NPV}}{\text{Initial investment}} \quad (5)$$

You can see that the PI is closely related to the NPV. The PI is the *ratio* of the PV of future cash flows to the initial investment, whereas an NPV is the *difference* between the PV of future cash flows and the initial investment. Whenever the NPV is positive, the PI will be greater than 1.0; conversely, whenever the NPV is negative, the PI will be less than 1.0. The investment decision rule for the PI is as follows:

Invest if	PI > 1.0
Do not invest if	PI < 1.0

Because the PV of future cash flows equals the initial investment plus the NPV, the PI can also be expressed as 1.0 plus the ratio of the NPV to the initial investment, as shown in Equation 5 above. Example 2 illustrates the PI calculation.

EXAMPLE 2

Example of a PI Calculation

The Gerhardt Corporation investment (discussed earlier) had an outlay of €50 million, a present value of future cash flows of €63.136 million, and an NPV of €13.136 million. The profitability index is

$$PI = \frac{\text{PV of future cash flows}}{\text{Initial investment}} = \frac{63.136}{50.000} = 1.26$$

The PI can also be calculated as

$$PI = 1 + \frac{\text{NPV}}{\text{Initial investment}} = 1 + \frac{13.136}{50.000} = 1.26$$

Because the PI > 1.0, this is a profitable investment.

The PI indicates the value you are receiving in exchange for one unit of currency invested. Although the PI is used less frequently than the NPV and IRR, it is sometimes used as a guide in capital rationing. The PI is usually called the profitability index in corporations, but it is commonly referred to as a “benefit–cost ratio” in governmental and not-for-profit organizations.

4.7 NPV Profile

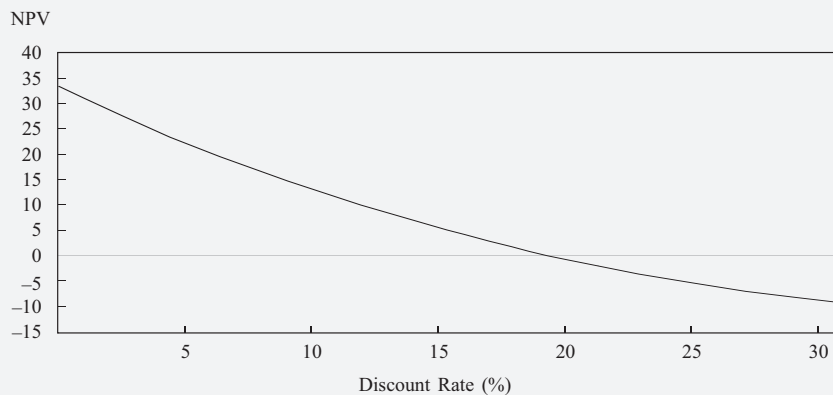
The NPV profile shows a project's NPV graphed as a function of various discount rates. Typically, the NPV is graphed vertically (on the *y*-axis), and the discount rates are graphed horizontally (on the *x*-axis). The NPV profile for the Gerhardt capital budgeting project is shown in Example 3.

EXAMPLE 3**NPV Profile**

For the Gerhardt example, we have already calculated several NPVs for different discount rates. At 10 percent the NPV is €13.136 million; at 20 percent the NPV is –€0.543 million; and at 19.52 percent (the IRR), the NPV is zero. What is the NPV if the discount rate is 0 percent? The NPV discounted at 0 percent is €34 million, which is simply the sum of all of the undiscounted cash flows. Table 6 and Figure 1 show the NPV profile for the Gerhardt example for discount rates between 0 percent and 30 percent.

Table 6 Gerhardt NPV Profile

Discount Rate (%)	NPV (€ Millions)
0	34.000
5.00	22.406
10.00	13.136
15.00	5.623
19.52	0.000
20.00	–0.543
25.00	–5.661
30.00	–9.954

Figure 1 Gerhardt NPV Profile

Three interesting points on this NPV profile are where the profile goes through the vertical axis (the NPV when the discount rate is zero), where the profile goes through the horizontal axis (where the discount rate is the IRR), and the NPV for the required rate of return (NPV is €13.136 million when the discount rate is the 10 percent required rate of return).

The NPV profile in Figure 1 is very well-behaved. The NPV declines at a decreasing rate as the discount rate increases. The profile is convex from the origin (convex from below). You will shortly see some examples in which the NPV profile is more complicated.

4.8 Ranking Conflicts between NPV and IRR

For a single conventional project, the NPV and IRR will agree on whether to invest or to not invest. For independent, conventional projects, no conflict exists between the decision rules for the NPV and IRR. However, in the case of two mutually exclusive projects, the two criteria will sometimes disagree. For example, Project A might have a larger NPV than Project B, but Project B has a higher IRR than Project A. In this case, should you invest in Project A or in Project B?

Differing cash flow patterns can cause two projects to rank differently with the NPV and IRR. For example, suppose Project A has shorter-term payoffs than Project B. This situation is presented in Example 4.

EXAMPLE 4

Ranking Conflict Due to Differing Cash Flow Patterns

Projects A and B have similar outlays but different patterns of future cash flows. Project A realizes most of its cash payoffs earlier than Project B. The cash flows, as well as the NPV and IRR for the two projects, are shown in Table 7. For both projects, the required rate of return is 10 percent.

Table 7 Cash Flows, NPV, and IRR for Two Projects with Different Cash Flow Patterns

Year	Cash Flows					NPV	IRR (%)
	0	1	2	3	4		
Project A	-200	80	80	80	80	53.59	21.86
Project B	-200	0	0	0	400	73.21	18.92

If the two projects were not mutually exclusive, you would invest in both because they are both profitable. However, you can choose either A (which has the higher IRR) or B (which has the higher NPV).

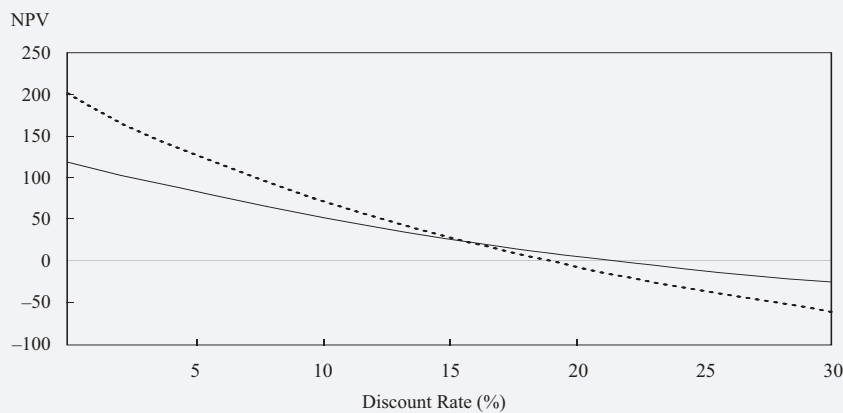
Table 8 and Figure 2 show the NPVs for Project A and Project B for various discount rates between 0 percent and 30 percent.

Table 8 NPV Profiles for Two Projects with Different Cash Flow Patterns

Discount Rate (%)	NPV for Project A	NPV for Project B
0	120.00	200.00
5.00	83.68	129.08
10.00	53.59	73.21
15.00	28.40	28.70
15.09	27.98	27.98

Table 8 (Continued)

Discount Rate (%)	NPV for Project A	NPV for Project B
18.92	11.41	0.00
20.00	7.10	-7.10
21.86	0.00	-18.62
25.00	-11.07	-36.16
30.00	-26.70	-59.95

Figure 2 NPV Profiles for Two Projects with Different Cash Flow Patterns

Project B (broken line) has the higher NPV for discount rates between 0 percent and 15.09 percent. Project A (solid line) has the higher NPV for discount rates exceeding 15.09 percent. The crossover point of 15.09 percent in Figure 2 corresponds to the discount rate at which both projects have the same NPV (of 27.98). Project B has the higher NPV below the crossover point, and Project A has the higher NPV above it.

Whenever the NPV and IRR rank two mutually exclusive projects differently, as they do in the example above, you should choose the project based on the NPV. Project B, with the higher NPV, is the better project because of the reinvestment assumption. Mathematically, whenever you discount a cash flow at a particular discount rate, you are implicitly assuming that you can reinvest a cash flow at that same discount rate.² In the NPV calculation, you use a discount rate of 10 percent for both projects. In the IRR calculation, you use a discount rate equal to the IRR of 21.86 percent for Project A and 18.92 percent for Project B.

² For example, assume that you are receiving \$100 in one year discounted at 10 percent. The present value is $\$100/\$1.10 = \$90.91$. Instead of receiving the \$100 in one year, invest it for one additional year at 10 percent, and it grows to \$110. What is the present value of \$110 received in two years discounted at 10 percent? It is the same \$90.91. Because both future cash flows are worth the same, you are implicitly assuming that reinvesting the earlier cash flow at the discount rate of 10 percent has no effect on its value.

Can you reinvest the cash inflows from the projects at 10 percent, or 21.86 percent, or 18.92 percent? When you assume the required rate of return is 10 percent, you are assuming an opportunity cost of 10 percent—that you can either find other projects that pay a 10 percent return or pay back your sources of capital that cost you 10 percent. The fact that you earned 21.86 percent in Project A or 18.92 percent in Project B does not mean that you can reinvest future cash flows at those rates. (In fact, if you can reinvest future cash flows at 21.86 percent or 18.92 percent, these should have been used as your required rate of return instead of 10 percent.) Because the NPV criterion uses the most realistic discount rate—the opportunity cost of funds—the NPV criterion should be used for evaluating mutually exclusive projects.

Another circumstance that frequently causes mutually exclusive projects to be ranked differently by NPV and IRR criteria is project scale—the sizes of the projects. Would you rather have a small project with a higher rate of return or a large project with a lower rate of return? Sometimes, the larger, low rate of return project has the better NPV. This case is developed in Example 5.

EXAMPLE 5

Ranking Conflicts due to Differing Project Scale

Project A has a much smaller outlay than Project B, although they have similar future cash flow patterns. The cash flows, as well as the NPVs and IRRs for the two projects, are shown in Table 9. For both projects, the required rate of return is 10 percent.

Table 9 Cash Flows, NPV, and IRR for Two Projects of Differing Scale

Year	Cash Flows					NPV	IRR (%)
	0	1	2	3	4		
Project A	-100	50	50	50	50	58.49	34.90
Project B	-400	170	170	170	170	138.88	25.21

If they were not mutually exclusive, you would invest in both projects because they are both profitable. However, you can choose either Project A (which has the higher IRR) or Project B (which has the higher NPV).

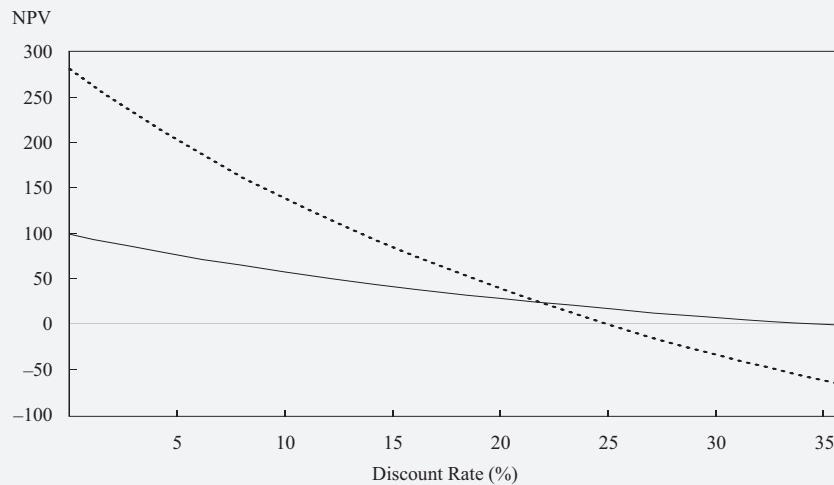
Table 10 and Figure 3 show the NPVs for Project A and Project B for various discount rates between 0 percent and 30 percent.

Table 10 NPV Profiles for Two Projects of Differing Scale

Discount Rate (%)	NPV for Project A	NPV for Project B
0	100.00	280.00
5.00	77.30	202.81
10.00	58.49	138.88
15.00	42.75	85.35
20.00	29.44	40.08
21.86	25.00	25.00
25.00	18.08	1.47
25.21	17.65	0.00

Table 10 (Continued)

Discount Rate (%)	NPV for Project A	NPV for Project B
30.00	8.31	-31.74
34.90	0.00	-60.00
35.00	-0.15	-60.52

Figure 3 NPV Profiles for Two Projects of Differing Scale

Project B (broken line) has the higher NPV for discount rates between 0 percent and 21.86 percent. Project A has the higher NPV for discount rates exceeding 21.86 percent. The crossover point of 21.86 percent in Figure 3 corresponds to the discount rate at which both projects have the same NPV (of 25.00). Below the crossover point, Project B has the higher NPV, and above it, Project A has the higher NPV. When cash flows are discounted at the 10 percent required rate of return, the choice is clear—Project B, the larger project, which has the superior NPV.

The good news is that the NPV and IRR criteria will usually indicate the same investment decision for a given project. They will usually both recommend acceptance or rejection of the project. When the choice is between two mutually exclusive projects and the NPV and IRR rank the two projects differently, the NPV criterion is strongly preferred. There are good reasons for this preference. The NPV shows the amount of gain, or wealth increase, as a currency amount. The reinvestment assumption of the NPV is the more economically realistic. The IRR does give you a rate of return, but the IRR could be for a small investment or for only a short period of time. As a practical matter, once a corporation has the data to calculate the NPV, it is fairly trivial to go ahead and calculate the IRR and other capital budgeting criteria. However, the most appropriate and theoretically sound criterion is the NPV.

4.9 The Multiple IRR Problem and the No IRR Problem

A problem that can arise with the IRR criterion is the “multiple IRR problem.” We can illustrate this problem with the following nonconventional cash flow pattern:³

Time	0	1	2
Cash flow	-1,000	5,000	-6,000

The IRR for these cash flows satisfies this equation:

$$-1,000 + \frac{5,000}{(1 + \text{IRR})^1} + \frac{-6,000}{(1 + \text{IRR})^2} = 0$$

It turns out that there are two values of IRR that satisfy the equation: IRR = 1 = 100% and IRR = 2 = 200%. To further understand this problem, consider the NPV profile for this investment, which is shown in Table 11 and Figure 4.

As you can see in the NPV profile, the NPV is equal to zero at IRR = 100% and IRR = 200%. The NPV is negative for discount rates below 100 percent, positive between 100 percent and 200 percent, and then negative above 200 percent. The NPV reaches its highest value when the discount rate is 140 percent.

It is also possible to have an investment project with no IRR. The “no-IRR problem” occurs with this cash flow pattern:⁴

Time	0	1	2
Cash flow	100	-300	250

The IRR for these cash flows satisfies this equation:

$$100 + \frac{-300}{(1 + \text{IRR})^1} + \frac{250}{(1 + \text{IRR})^2} = 0$$

For these cash flows, no discount rate exists that results in a zero NPV. Does that mean this project is a bad investment? In this case, the project is actually a good investment. As Table 12 and Figure 5 show, the NPV is positive for all discount rates. The lowest NPV, of 10, occurs for a discount rate of 66.67 percent, and the NPV is always greater than zero. Consequently, no IRR exists.

Table 11 NPV Profile for a Multiple IRR Example

Discount Rate (%)	NPV
0	-2,000.00
25	-840.00
50	-333.33
75	-102.04
100	0.00
125	37.04
140	41.67
150	40.00
175	24.79
200	0.00
225	-29.59

³ This example is adapted from Hirschleifer (1958).

⁴ This example is also adapted from Hirschleifer.

Table 11 (Continued)

Discount Rate (%)	NPV
250	-61.22
300	-125.00
350	-185.19
400	-240.00
500	-333.33
1,000	-595.04
2,000	-775.51
3,000	-844.95
4,000	-881.62
10,000	-951.08
1,000,000	-999.50

Figure 4 NPV Profile for a Multiple IRR Example

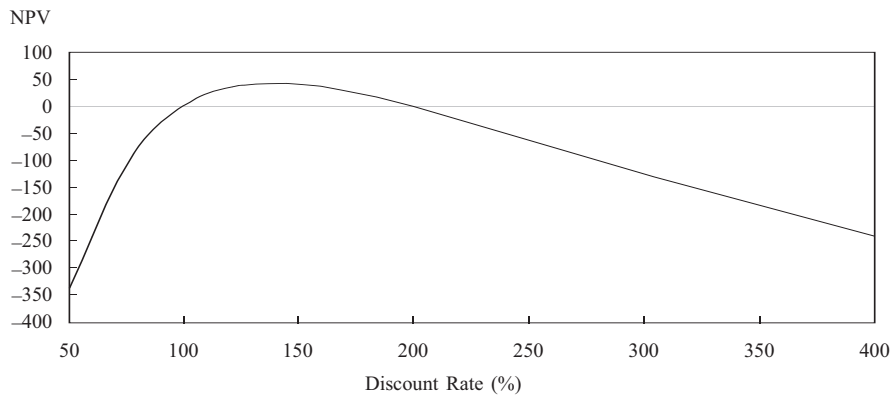


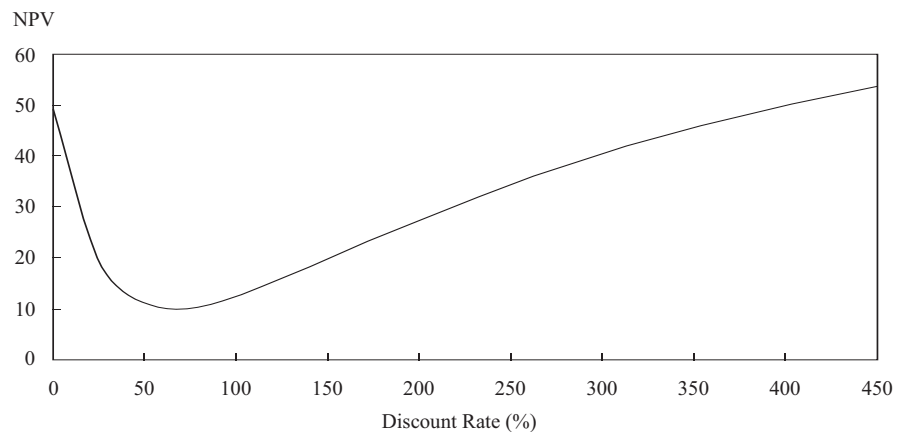
Table 12 NPV Profile for a Project with No IRR

Discount Rate (%)	NPV
0	50.00
25	20.00
50	11.11
66.67	10.00
75	10.20
100	12.50
125	16.05
150	20.00
175	23.97
200	27.78
225	31.36

(continued)

Table 12 (Continued)

Discount Rate (%)	NPV
250	34.69
275	37.78
300	40.63
325	43.25
350	45.68
375	47.92
400	50.00

Figure 5 NPV Profile for a Project with No IRR

For conventional projects that have outlays followed by inflows—negative cash flows followed by positive cash flows—the multiple IRR problem cannot occur. However, for nonconventional projects, as in the example above, the multiple IRR problem can occur. The IRR equation is essentially an n th degree polynomial. An n th degree polynomial can have up to n solutions, although it will have no more real solutions than the number of cash flow sign changes. For example, a project with two sign changes could have zero, one, or two IRRs. Having two sign changes does not mean that you *will* have multiple IRRs; it just means that you *might*. Fortunately, most capital budgeting projects have only one IRR. Analysts should always be aware of the unusual cash flow patterns that can generate the multiple IRR problem.

4.10 Popularity and Usage of the Capital Budgeting Methods

Analysts need to know the basic logic of the various capital budgeting criteria as well as the practicalities involved in using them in real corporations. Before delving into the many issues involved in applying these models, we would like to present some feedback on their popularity.

The usefulness of any analytical tool always depends on the specific application. Corporations generally find these capital budgeting criteria useful. Two surveys by Graham and Harvey (2001) and Brounen, De Jong, and Koedijk (2004) report on the frequency of their use by US and European corporations. Table 13 gives the mean

responses of executives in five countries to the question “How frequently does your company use the following techniques when deciding which projects or acquisitions to pursue?”

Table 13 Mean Responses about Frequency of Use of Capital Budgeting Techniques

	United States	United Kingdom	Netherlands	Germany	France
Internal rate of return ^a	3.09	2.31	2.36	2.15	2.27
Net present value ^a	3.08	2.32	2.76	2.26	1.86
Payback period ^a	2.53	2.77	2.53	2.29	2.46
Hurdle rate	2.13	1.35	1.98	1.61	0.73
Sensitivity analysis	2.31	2.21	1.84	1.65	0.79
Earnings multiple approach	1.89	1.81	1.61	1.25	1.70
Discounted payback period ^a	1.56	1.49	1.25	1.59	0.87
Real options approach	1.47	1.65	1.49	2.24	2.20
Accounting rate of return ^a	1.34	1.79	1.40	1.63	1.11
Value at risk	0.95	0.85	0.51	1.45	1.68
Adjusted present value	0.85	0.78	0.78	0.71	1.11
Profitability index ^a	0.85	1.00	0.78	1.04	1.64

^a These techniques were described in this section of the reading. You will encounter the others elsewhere.

Note: Respondents used a scale ranging from 0 (never) to 4 (always).

Although financial textbooks preach the superiority of the NPV and IRR techniques, it is clear that several other methods are heavily used.⁵ In the four European countries, the payback period is used as often as, or even slightly more often than, the NPV and IRR. In these two studies, larger companies tended to prefer the NPV and IRR over the payback period. The fact that the US companies were larger, on average, partially explains the greater US preference for the NPV and IRR. Other factors influence the choice of capital budgeting techniques. Private corporations used the payback period more frequently than did public corporations. Companies managed by an MBA had a stronger preference for the discounted cash flow techniques. Of course, any survey research also has some limitations. In this case, the persons in these large corporations responding to the surveys may not have been aware of all of the applications of these techniques.

These capital budgeting techniques are essential tools for corporate managers. Capital budgeting is also relevant to external analysts. Because a corporation's investing decisions ultimately determine the value of its financial obligations, the corporation's investing processes are vital. The NPV criterion is the criterion most directly related to stock prices. If a corporation invests in positive NPV projects, these should add to the wealth of its shareholders. Example 6 illustrates this scenario.

⁵ Analysts often refer to the NPV and IRR as “discounted cash flow techniques” because they accurately account for the timing of all cash flows when they are discounted.

EXAMPLE 6**NPVs and Stock Prices**

Freitag Corporation is investing €600 million in distribution facilities. The present value of the future after-tax cash flows is estimated to be €850 million. Freitag has 200 million outstanding shares with a current market price of €32.00 per share. This investment is new information, and it is independent of other expectations about the company. What should be the effect of the project on the value of the company and the stock price?

Solution:

The NPV of the project is €850 million – €600 million = €250 million. The total market value of the company prior to the investment is €32.00 × 200 million shares = €6,400 million. The value of the company should increase by €250 million to €6,650 million. The price per share should increase by the NPV per share, or €250 million/200 million shares = €1.25 per share. The share price should increase from €32.00 to €33.25.

The effect of a capital budgeting project's positive or negative NPV on share price is more complicated than Example 6 above, in which the value of the stock increased by the project's NPV. The value of a company is the value of its existing investments plus the net present values of all of its future investments. If an analyst learns of an investment, the impact of that investment on the stock price will depend on whether the investment's profitability is more or less than expected. For example, an analyst could learn of a positive NPV project, but if the project's profitability is less than expectations, this stock might drop in price on the news. Alternatively, news of a particular capital project might be considered as a signal about other capital projects underway or in the future. A project that by itself might add, say, €0.25 to the value of the stock might signal the existence of other profitable projects. News of this project might increase the stock price by far more than €0.25.

The integrity of a corporation's capital budgeting processes is important to analysts. Management's capital budgeting processes can demonstrate two things about the quality of management: the degree to which management embraces the goal of shareholder wealth maximization, and its effectiveness in pursuing that goal. Both of these factors are important to shareholders.

SUMMARY

Capital budgeting is the process that companies use for decision making on capital projects—those projects with a life of a year or more. This reading developed the principles behind the basic capital budgeting model, the cash flows that go into the model, and several extensions of the basic model.

- Capital budgeting undergirds the most critical investments for many corporations—their investments in long-term assets. The principles of capital budgeting have been applied to other corporate investing and financing decisions and to security analysis and portfolio management.
- The typical steps in the capital budgeting process are: 1) generating ideas, 2) analyzing individual proposals, 3) planning the capital budget, and 4) monitoring and post-auditing.

- Projects susceptible to capital budgeting process can be categorized as: 1) replacement, 2) expansion, 3) new products and services, and 4) regulatory, safety and environmental.
- Capital budgeting decisions are based on incremental after-tax cash flows discounted at the opportunity cost of funds. Financing costs are ignored because both the cost of debt and the cost of other capital are captured in the discount rate.
- The net present value (NPV) is the present value of all after-tax cash flows, or

$$\text{NPV} = \sum_{t=0}^n \frac{\text{CF}_t}{(1+r)^t}$$

where the investment outlays are negative cash flows included in the CF_t s and where r is the required rate of return for the investment.

- The IRR is the discount rate that makes the present value of all future cash flows sum to zero. This equation can be solved for the IRR:

$$\sum_{t=0}^n \frac{\text{CF}_t}{(1+\text{IRR})^t} = 0$$

- The payback period is the number of years required to recover the original investment in a project. The payback is based on cash flows.
- The discounted payback period is the number of years it takes for the cumulative discounted cash flows from a project to equal the original investment.
- The average accounting rate of return (AAR) can be defined as follows:

$$\text{AAR} = \frac{\text{Average net income}}{\text{Average book value}}$$

- The profitability index (PI) is the present value of a project's future cash flows divided by the initial investment:

$$\text{PI} = \frac{\text{PV of future cash flows}}{\text{Initial investment}} = 1 + \frac{\text{NPV}}{\text{Initial investment}}$$

- The capital budgeting decision rules are to invest if the $\text{NPV} > 0$, if the $\text{IRR} > r$, or if the $\text{PI} > 1.0$. There are no decision rules for the payback period, discounted payback period, and AAR because they are not always sound measures.
- The NPV profile is a graph that shows a project's NPV graphed as a function of various discount rates.
- For mutually exclusive projects that are ranked differently by the NPV and IRR, it is economically sound to choose the project with the higher NPV.
- The "multiple IRR problem" and the "no IRR problem" can arise for a project with nonconventional cash flows—cash flows that change signs more than once during the project's life.
- The fact that projects with positive NPVs theoretically increase the value of the company and the value of its stock could explain the popularity of NPV as an evaluation method.

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

- 1 Given the following cash flows for a capital project, calculate the NPV and IRR. The required rate of return is 8 percent.

Year	0	1	2	3	4	5
Cash flow	-50,000	15,000	15,000	20,000	10,000	5,000

	NPV	IRR
A	\$1,905	10.9%
B	\$1,905	26.0%
C	\$3,379	10.9%

- 2 Given the following cash flows for a capital project, calculate its payback period and discounted payback period. The required rate of return is 8 percent.

Year	0	1	2	3	4	5
Cash flow	-50,000	15,000	15,000	20,000	10,000	5,000

The discounted payback period is:

- A** 0.16 years longer than the payback period.
B 0.51 years longer than the payback period.
C 1.01 years longer than the payback period.
- 3 An investment of \$100 generates after-tax cash flows of \$40 in Year 1, \$80 in Year 2, and \$120 in Year 3. The required rate of return is 20 percent. The net present value is *closest* to:
- A** \$42.22.
B \$58.33.
C \$68.52.
- 4 An investment of \$150,000 is expected to generate an after-tax cash flow of \$100,000 in one year and another \$120,000 in two years. The cost of capital is 10 percent. What is the internal rate of return?
- A** 28.39 percent.
B 28.59 percent.
C 28.79 percent.
- 5 Kim Corporation is considering an investment of 750 million won with expected after-tax cash inflows of 175 million won per year for seven years. The required rate of return is 10 percent. What is the project's:

	NPV?	IRR?
A	102 million won	14.0%
B	157 million won	23.3%
C	193 million won	10.0%

- 6 Kim Corporation is considering an investment of 750 million won with expected after-tax cash inflows of 175 million won per year for seven years. The required rate of return is 10 percent. Expressed in years, the project's payback period and discounted payback period, respectively, are *closest* to:
- A 4.3 years and 5.4 years.
 B 4.3 years and 5.9 years.
 C 4.8 years and 6.3 years.
- 7 An investment of \$20,000 will create a perpetual after-tax cash flow of \$2,000. The required rate of return is 8 percent. What is the investment's profitability index?
- A 1.08.
 B 1.16.
 C 1.25.
- 8 Hermann Corporation is considering an investment of €375 million with expected after-tax cash inflows of €115 million per year for seven years and an additional after-tax salvage value of €50 million in Year 7. The required rate of return is 10 percent. What is the investment's PI?
- A 1.19.
 B 1.33.
 C 1.56.
- 9 Erin Chou is reviewing a profitable investment project that has a conventional cash flow pattern. If the cash flows for the project, initial outlay, and future after-tax cash flows all double, Chou would predict that the IRR would:
- A increase and the NPV would increase.
 B stay the same and the NPV would increase.
 C stay the same and the NPV would stay the same.
- 10 Shirley Shea has evaluated an investment proposal and found that its payback period is one year, it has a negative NPV, and it has a positive IRR. Is this combination of results possible?
- A Yes.
 B No, because a project with a positive IRR has a positive NPV.
 C No, because a project with such a rapid payback period has a positive NPV.
- 11 An investment has an outlay of 100 and after-tax cash flows of 40 annually for four years. A project enhancement increases the outlay by 15 and the annual after-tax cash flows by 5. As a result, the vertical intercept of the NPV profile of the enhanced project shifts:
- A up and the horizontal intercept shifts left.
 B up and the horizontal intercept shifts right.
 C down and the horizontal intercept shifts left.
- 12 Projects 1 and 2 have similar outlays, although the patterns of future cash flows are different. The cash flows as well as the NPV and IRR for the two projects are shown below. For both projects, the required rate of return is 10 percent.

Year	Cash Flows					NPV	IRR (%)
	0	1	2	3	4		
Project 1	-50	20	20	20	20	13.40	21.86
Project 2	-50	0	0	0	100	18.30	18.92

The two projects are mutually exclusive. What is the appropriate investment decision?

- A Invest in both projects.
 - B Invest in Project 1 because it has the higher IRR.
 - C Invest in Project 2 because it has the higher NPV.
- 13 Consider the two projects below. The cash flows as well as the NPV and IRR for the two projects are given. For both projects, the required rate of return is 10 percent.

Year	Cash Flows					NPV	IRR (%)
	0	1	2	3	4		
Project 1	-100	36	36	36	36	14.12	16.37
Project 2	-100	0	0	0	175	19.53	15.02

What discount rate would result in the same NPV for both projects?

- A A rate between 0.00 percent and 10.00 percent.
 - B A rate between 10.00 percent and 15.02 percent.
 - C A rate between 15.02 percent and 16.37 percent.
- 14 Wilson Flannery is concerned that this project has multiple IRRs.

Year	0	1	2	3
Cash flows	-50	100	0	-50

How many discount rates produce a zero NPV for this project?

- A One, a discount rate of 0 percent.
 - B Two, discount rates of 0 percent and 32 percent.
 - C Two, discount rates of 0 percent and 62 percent.
- 15 With regard to the net present value (NPV) profiles of two projects, the cross-over rate is *best* described as the discount rate at which:
- A two projects have the same NPV.
 - B two projects have the same internal rate of return.
 - C a project's NPV changes from positive to negative.
- 16 With regard to net present value (NPV) profiles, the point at which a profile crosses the vertical axis is *best* described as:
- A the point at which two projects have the same NPV.
 - B the sum of the undiscounted cash flows from a project.
 - C a project's internal rate of return when the project's NPV is equal to zero.
- 17 With regard to net present value (NPV) profiles, the point at which a profile crosses the horizontal axis is *best* described as:
- A the point at which two projects have the same NPV.
 - B the sum of the undiscounted cash flows from a project.
 - C a project's internal rate of return when the project's NPV is equal to zero.
- 18 With regard to capital budgeting, an appropriate estimate of the incremental cash flows from a project is *least likely* to include:
- A externalities.
 - B interest costs.
 - C opportunity costs.

SOLUTIONS

- 1 C is correct.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{NPV} &= -50,000 + \frac{15,000}{1.08} + \frac{15,000}{1.08^2} + \frac{20,000}{1.08^3} + \frac{10,000}{1.08^4} + \frac{5,000}{1.08^5} \\ \text{NPV} &= -50,000 + 13,888.89 + 12,860.08 + 15,876.64 + 7,350.30 \\ &\quad + 3,402.92 \\ \text{NPV} &= -50,000 + 53,378.83 = 3,378.83 \end{aligned}$$

The IRR, found with a financial calculator, is 10.88 percent.

- 2 C is correct.

Year	0	1	2	3	4	5
Cash flow	-50,000	15,000	15,000	20,000	10,000	5,000
Cumulative cash flow	-50,000	-35,000	-20,000	0	10,000	15,000
Discounted cash flow	-50,000	13,888.89	12,860.08	15,876.64	7,350.30	3,402.92
Cumulative DCF	-50,000	-36,111.11	-23,251.03	-7,374.38	-24.09	3,378.83

As the table shows, the cumulative cash flow offsets the initial investment in exactly three years. The payback period is 3.00 years. The discounted payback period is between four and five years. The discounted payback period is 4 years plus $24.09/3,402.92 = 0.007$ of the fifth year cash flow, or $4.007 = 4.01$ years. The discounted payback period is $4.01 - 3.00 = 1.01$ years longer than the payback period.

- 3 B is correct.

$$\text{NPV} = \sum_{t=0}^3 \frac{\text{CF}_t}{(1+r)^t} = -100 + \frac{40}{1.20} + \frac{80}{1.20^2} + \frac{120}{1.20^3} = \$58.33$$

- 4 C is correct. The IRR can be found using a financial calculator or with trial and error. Using trial and error, the total PV is equal to zero if the discount rate is 28.79 percent.

Year	Cash Flow	Present Value			
		28.19%	28.39%	28.59%	28.79%
0	-150,000	-150,000	-150,000	-150,000	-150,000
1	100,000	78,009	77,888	77,767	77,646
2	120,000	73,025	72,798	72,572	72,346
Total		1,034	686	338	-8

A more precise IRR of 28.7854 percent has a total PV closer to zero.

- 5 A is correct.

$$\text{The NPV} = -750 + \sum_{t=1}^7 \frac{175}{1.10^t} = -750 + 851.97 = 101.97 \text{ million won.}$$

The IRR, found with a financial calculator, is 14.02 percent. (The PV is -750, N = 7, and PMT = 175.)

- 6 B is correct.

Year	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
Cash flow	-750	175	175	175	175	175	175	175
Cumulative cash flow	-750	-575	-400	-225	-50	125	300	475

The payback period is between four and five years. The payback period is four years plus $50/175 = 0.29$ of the fifth year cash flow, or 4.29 years.

Year	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
Cash flow	-750	175	175	175	175	175	175	175
Discounted cash flow	-750	159.09	144.63	131.48	119.53	108.66	98.78	89.80
Cumulative DCF	-750	-590.91	-446.28	-314.80	-195.27	-86.61	12.17	101.97

The discounted payback period is between five and six years. The discounted payback period is five years plus $86.61/98.78 = 0.88$ of the sixth year cash flow, or 5.88 years.

7 C is correct.

$$\text{The present value of future cash flows is } PV = \frac{2,000}{0.08} = 25,000$$

$$\text{The profitability index is } PI = \frac{PV}{\text{Investment}} = \frac{25,000}{20,000} = 1.25$$

8 C is correct.

$$PV = \sum_{t=1}^7 \frac{115}{1.10^t} + \frac{50}{1.10^7} = 585.53 \text{ million euros}$$

$$PI = \frac{585.53}{375} = 1.56$$

9 B is correct. The IRR would stay the same because both the initial outlay and the after-tax cash flows double, so that the return on each dollar invested remains the same. All of the cash flows and their present values double. The difference between total present value of the future cash flows and the initial outlay (the NPV) also doubles.

10 A is correct. If the cumulative cash flow in one year equals the outlay and additional cash flows are not very large, this scenario is possible. For example, assume the outlay is 100, the cash flow in Year 1 is 100 and the cash flow in Year 2 is 5. The required return is 10 percent. This project would have a payback of 1.0 years, an NPV of -4.96, and an IRR of 4.77 percent.

11 A is correct. The vertical intercept changes from 60 to 65 (NPV when cost of capital is 0%), and the horizontal intercept (IRR, when NPV equals zero) changes from 21.86 percent to 20.68 percent.

12 C is correct. When valuing mutually exclusive projects, the decision should be made with the NPV method because this method uses the most realistic discount rate, namely the opportunity cost of funds. In this example, the reinvestment rate for the NPV method (here 10 percent) is more realistic than the reinvestment rate for the IRR method (here 21.86 percent or 18.92 percent).

13 B is correct. For these projects, a discount rate of 13.16 percent would yield the same NPV for both (an NPV of 6.73).

14 C is correct. Discount rates of 0 percent and approximately 61.8 percent both give a zero NPV.

Rate	0%	20%	40%	60%	61.8%	80%	100%
NPV	0.00	4.40	3.21	0.29	0.00	-3.02	-6.25

- 15** A is correct. The crossover rate is the discount rate at which the NPV profiles for two projects cross; it is the only point where the NPVs of the projects are the same.
- 16** B is correct. The vertical axis represents a discount rate of zero. The point where the profile crosses the vertical axis is simply the sum of the cash flows.
- 17** C is correct. The horizontal axis represents an NPV of zero. By definition, the project's IRR equals an NPV of zero.
- 18** B is correct. Costs to finance the project are taken into account when the cash flows are discounted at the appropriate cost of capital; including interest costs in the cash flows would result in double-counting the cost of debt.

READING

35

Cost of Capital

by Yves Courtois, CMT, MRICS, CFA, Gene C. Lai, PhD, and
Pamela Peterson Drake, PhD, CFA

*Yves Courtois, CMT, MRICS, CFA, is at KPMG (Luxembourg). Gene C. Lai, PhD (USA).
Pamela Peterson Drake, PhD, CFA, is at James Madison University (USA).*

LEARNING OUTCOMES

<i>Mastery</i>	<i>The candidate should be able to:</i>
<input type="checkbox"/>	a. calculate and interpret the weighted average cost of capital (WACC) of a company;
<input type="checkbox"/>	b. describe how taxes affect the cost of capital from different capital sources;
<input type="checkbox"/>	c. describe the use of target capital structure in estimating WACC and how target capital structure weights may be determined;
<input type="checkbox"/>	d. explain how the marginal cost of capital and the investment opportunity schedule are used to determine the optimal capital budget;
<input type="checkbox"/>	e. explain the marginal cost of capital's role in determining the net present value of a project;
<input type="checkbox"/>	f. calculate and interpret the cost of debt capital using the yield-to-maturity approach and the debt-rating approach;
<input type="checkbox"/>	g. calculate and interpret the cost of noncallable, nonconvertible preferred stock;
<input type="checkbox"/>	h. calculate and interpret the cost of equity capital using the capital asset pricing model approach, the dividend discount model approach, and the bond-yield-plus risk-premium approach;
<input type="checkbox"/>	i. calculate and interpret the beta and cost of capital for a project;
<input type="checkbox"/>	j. describe uses of country risk premiums in estimating the cost of equity;
<input type="checkbox"/>	k. describe the marginal cost of capital schedule, explain why it may be upward-sloping with respect to additional capital, and calculate and interpret its break-points;
<input type="checkbox"/>	l. explain and demonstrate the correct treatment of flotation costs.

1

INTRODUCTION

A company grows by making investments that are expected to increase revenues and profits. The company acquires the capital or funds necessary to make such investments by borrowing or using funds from owners. By applying this capital to investments with long-term benefits, the company is producing value today. But, how much value? The answer depends not only on the investments' expected future cash flows but also on the cost of the funds. Borrowing is not costless. Neither is using owners' funds.

The cost of this capital is an important ingredient in both investment decision making by the company's management and the valuation of the company by investors. If a company invests in projects that produce a return in excess of the cost of capital, the company has created value; in contrast, if the company invests in projects whose returns are less than the cost of capital, the company has actually destroyed value. Therefore, the estimation of the cost of capital is a central issue in corporate financial management. For the analyst seeking to evaluate a company's investment program and its competitive position, an accurate estimate of a company's cost of capital is important as well.

Cost of capital estimation is a challenging task. As we have already implied, the cost of capital is not observable but, rather, must be estimated. Arriving at a cost of capital estimate requires a host of assumptions and estimates. Another challenge is that the cost of capital that is appropriately applied to a specific investment depends on the characteristics of that investment: The riskier the investment's cash flows, the greater its cost of capital. In reality, a company must estimate project-specific costs of capital. What is often done, however, is to estimate the cost of capital for the company as a whole and then adjust this overall corporate cost of capital upward or downward to reflect the risk of the contemplated project relative to the company's average project.

This reading is organized as follows: In the next section, we introduce the cost of capital and its basic computation. Section 3 presents a selection of methods for estimating the costs of the various sources of capital. Section 4 discusses issues an analyst faces in using the cost of capital. A summary concludes the reading.

2

COST OF CAPITAL

The **cost of capital** is the rate of return that the suppliers of capital—bondholders and owners—require as compensation for their contribution of capital. Another way of looking at the cost of capital is that it is the opportunity cost of funds for the suppliers of capital: A potential supplier of capital will not voluntarily invest in a company unless its return meets or exceeds what the supplier could earn elsewhere in an investment of comparable risk.

A company typically has several alternatives for raising capital, including issuing equity, debt, and instruments that share characteristics of debt and equity. Each source selected becomes a component of the company's funding and has a cost (required rate of return) that may be called a **component cost of capital**. Because we are using the cost of capital in the evaluation of investment opportunities, we are dealing with a *marginal* cost—what it would cost to raise additional funds for the potential investment project. Therefore, the cost of capital that the investment analyst is concerned with is a marginal cost.

Let us focus on the cost of capital for the entire company (later we will address how to adjust that for specific projects). The cost of capital of a company is the required rate of return that investors demand for the average-risk investment of a company. The most common way to estimate this required rate of return is to calculate the

marginal cost of each of the various sources of capital and then calculate a weighted average of these costs. This weighted average is referred to as the **weighted average cost of capital** (WACC). The WACC is also referred to as the marginal cost of capital (MCC) because it is the cost that a company incurs for additional capital. The weights in this weighted average are the proportions of the various sources of capital that the company uses to support its investment program. Therefore, the WACC, in its most general terms, is

$$\text{WACC} = w_d r_d (1 - t) + w_p r_p + w_e r_e \quad (1)$$

where

w_d = the proportion of debt that the company uses when it raises new funds

r_d = the before-tax marginal cost of debt

t = the company's marginal tax rate

w_p = the proportion of preferred stock the company uses when it raises new funds

r_p = the marginal cost of preferred stock

w_e = the proportion of equity that the company uses when it raises new funds

r_e = the marginal cost of equity

EXAMPLE 1

Computing the Weighted Average Cost of Capital

Assume that ABC Corporation has the following capital structure: 30 percent debt, 10 percent preferred stock, and 60 percent equity. ABC Corporation wishes to maintain these proportions as it raises new funds. Its before-tax cost of debt is 8 percent, its cost of preferred stock is 10 percent, and its cost of equity is 15 percent. If the company's marginal tax rate is 40 percent, what is ABC's weighted average cost of capital?

Solution:

The weighted average cost of capital is

$$\begin{aligned} \text{WACC} &= (0.3)(0.08)(1 - 0.40) + (0.1)(0.1) + (0.6)(0.15) \\ &= 11.44 \text{ percent} \end{aligned}$$

There are important points concerning the calculation of the WACC as shown in Equation 1 that the analyst must be familiar with. The next two sections address two key issues: taxes and the selection of weights.

2.1 Taxes and the Cost of Capital

Notice that in Equation 1 we adjust the expected before-tax cost on new debt financing, r_d , by a factor of $(1 - t)$. In the United States and many other tax jurisdictions, the interest on debt financing is a deduction to arrive at taxable income. Taking the tax-deductibility of interest as the base case, we adjust the pre-tax cost of debt for this tax shield. Multiplying r_d by $(1 - t)$ results in an estimate of the after-tax cost of debt.

For example, suppose a company pays €1 million in interest on its €10 million of debt. The cost of this debt is not €1 million because this interest expense reduces taxable income by €1 million, resulting in a lower tax. If the company is subject to a tax rate of 40 percent, this €1 million of interest costs the company (€1 million) $(1 - 0.4)$

= €0.6 million because the interest reduces the company's tax bill by €0.4 million. In this case, the before-tax cost of debt is 10 percent, whereas the after-tax cost of debt is $(€0.6 \text{ million}) / (€10 \text{ million}) = 6 \text{ percent}$.

Estimating the cost of common equity capital is more challenging than estimating the cost of debt capital. Debt capital involves a stated legal obligation on the part of the company to pay interest and repay the principal on the borrowing. Equity entails no such obligation. Estimating the cost of conventional preferred equity is rather straightforward because the dividend is generally stated and fixed, but estimating the cost of common equity is challenging. There are several methods available for estimating the cost of common equity, and we discuss two in this reading. The first method uses the capital asset pricing model, and the second method uses the dividend discount model, which is based on discounted cash flows. No matter the method, there is no need to make any adjustment in the cost of equity for taxes because the payments to owners, whether in the form of dividends or the return on capital, are not tax-deductible for the company.

EXAMPLE 2

Incorporating the Effect of Taxes on the Costs of Capital

Jorge Ricard, a financial analyst, is estimating the costs of capital for the Zeale Corporation. In the process of this estimation, Ricard has estimated the before-tax costs of capital for Zeale's debt and equity as 4 percent and 6 percent, respectively. What are the after-tax costs of debt and equity if Zeale's marginal tax rate is:

- 1 30 percent?
- 2 48 percent?

	Marginal Tax Rate	After-Tax Cost of Debt	After-Tax Cost of Equity
Solution to 1:	30 percent	$0.04(1 - 0.30) = 2.80 \text{ percent}$	6 percent
Solution to 2:	48 percent	$0.04(1 - 0.48) = 2.08 \text{ percent}$	6 percent

Note: There is no adjustment for taxes in the case of equity; the before-tax cost of equity is equal to the after-tax cost of equity.

2.2 Weights of the Weighted Average

How do we determine what weights to use? Ideally, we want to use the proportion of each source of capital that the company would use in the project or company. If we assume that a company has a target capital structure and raises capital consistent with this target, we should use this target capital structure. The **target capital structure** is the capital structure that a company is striving to obtain. If we know the company's target capital structure, then, of course, we should use this in our analysis. Someone outside the company, however, such as an analyst, typically does not know the target capital structure and must estimate it using one of several approaches:

- 1 Assume the company's current capital structure, at market value weights for the components, represents the company's target capital structure.
- 2 Examine trends in the company's capital structure or statements by management regarding capital structure policy to infer the target capital structure.
- 3 Use averages of comparable companies' capital structures as the target capital structure.

In the absence of knowledge of a company’s target capital structure, we may take Method 1 as the baseline. Note that in applying Method 3, we use an unweighted, arithmetic average, as is often done for simplicity. An alternative is to calculate a weighted average, which would give more weight to larger companies.

Suppose we are using the company’s current capital structure as a proxy for the target capital structure. In this case, we use the market value of the different capital sources in the calculation of these proportions. For example, if a company has the following market values for its capital

Bonds outstanding	\$5 million
Preferred stock	1 million
Common stock	14 million
Total capital	<u>\$20 million</u>

the weights that we apply would be

$$w_d = 0.25$$

$$w_p = 0.05$$

$$w_e = 0.70$$

Example 3 illustrates the estimation of weights. Note that a simple way of transforming a debt-to-equity ratio D/E into a weight—that is, $D/(D + E)$ —is to divide D/E by $1 + D/E$.

EXAMPLE 3

Estimating the Proportions of Capital

Fin Anziell is a financial analyst with Analytiker Firma. Anziell is in the process of estimating the cost of capital of Gewicht GmbH. The following information is provided:

Gewicht GmbH	
Market value of debt	€50 million
Market value of equity	€60 million

Primary competitors and their capital structures (in millions):

Competitor	Market Value of Debt	Market Value of Equity
A	€25	€50
B	€101	€190
C	£40	£60

What are Gewicht’s proportions of debt and equity that Anziell would use if estimating these proportions using the company’s:

- 1 current capital structure?
- 2 competitors’ capital structure?
- 3 Suppose Gewicht announces that a debt-to-equity ratio of 0.7 reflects its target capital structure. What weights should Anziell use in the cost of capital calculations?

Solution to 1:

Current capital structure

$$w_d = \frac{\text{€50 million}}{\text{€50 million} + \text{€60 million}} = 0.4545$$

$$w_e = \frac{\text{€60 million}}{\text{€50 million} + \text{€60 million}} = 0.5454$$

Solution to 2:Competitors' capital structure:¹

$$w_d = \frac{\left(\frac{\text{€25}}{\text{€25} + \text{€50}}\right) + \left(\frac{\text{€101}}{\text{€101} + \text{€190}}\right) + \left(\frac{\text{£40}}{\text{£40} + \text{£60}}\right)}{3} = 0.3601$$

$$w_e = \frac{\left(\frac{\text{€50}}{\text{€25} + \text{€50}}\right) + \left(\frac{\text{€190}}{\text{€101} + \text{€190}}\right) + \left(\frac{\text{£60}}{\text{£40} + \text{£60}}\right)}{3} = 0.6399$$

Solution to 3:

A debt-to-equity ratio of 0.7 represents a weight on debt of $0.7/1.7 = 0.4118$ so that $w_d = 0.4118$ and $w_e = 1 - 0.4118 = 0.5882$. These would be the preferred weights to use in a cost of capital calculation.

2.3 Applying the Cost of Capital to Capital Budgeting and Security Valuation

With some insight now into the calculation of the cost of capital, let us continue to improve our understanding of the roles it plays in financial analysis. A chief use of the marginal cost of capital estimate is in capital-budgeting decision making. What role does the marginal cost of capital play in a company's investment program, and how do we adapt it when we need to evaluate a specific investment project?

A company's marginal cost of capital (MCC) may increase as additional capital is raised, whereas returns to a company's investment opportunities are generally believed to decrease as the company makes additional investments, as represented by the **investment opportunity schedule** (IOS).² We show this relation in Figure 1, graphing the upward-sloping marginal cost of capital schedule against the downward-sloping investment opportunity schedule. In the context of a company's investment decision, the optimal capital budget is that amount of capital raised and invested at which the marginal cost of capital is equal to the marginal return from investing. In other words, the optimal capital budget occurs when the marginal cost of capital intersects with the investment opportunity schedule as seen in Figure 1.

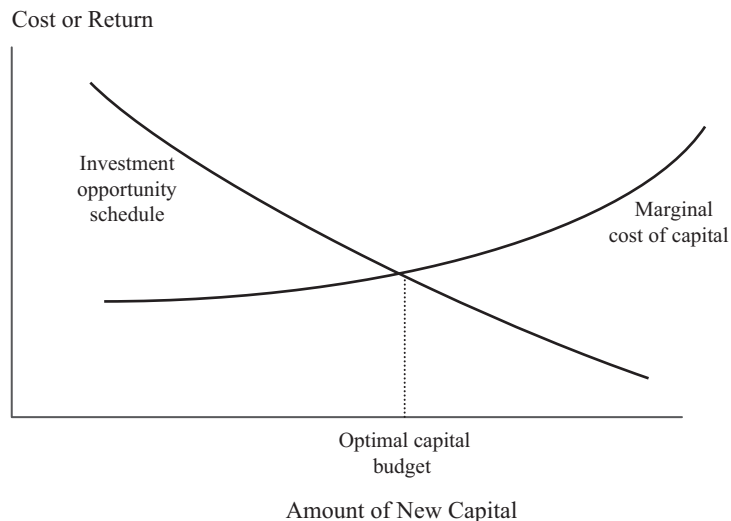
The relation between the MCC and the IOS provides a broad picture of the basic decision-making problem of a company. However, we are often interested in valuing an individual project or even a portion of a company, such as a division or product line. In these applications, we are interested in the cost of capital for the project, product, or division as opposed to the cost of capital for the company overall. The

¹ These weights represent the arithmetic average of the three companies' debt proportion and equity proportion, respectively.

² The investment opportunity schedule originates with Fisher's production opportunities [Irving Fisher, *The Theory of Interest* (New York: MacMillan Co.), 1930] and was adapted to capital budgeting by John Hirshleifer ["On the Theory of Optimal Investment Decision," *Journal of Political Economy*, Vol. 66, No. 4 (August 1958), pp. 329–352.]

cost of capital in these applications should reflect the riskiness of the future cash flows of the project, product, or division. For an average-risk project, the opportunity cost of capital is the company's WACC. If the systematic risk of the project is above or below average relative to the company's current portfolio of projects, an upward or downward adjustment, respectively, is made to the company's WACC. Companies may take an *ad hoc* or a systematic approach to making such adjustments. The discussion of a systematic approach is a somewhat advanced topic that we defer to Section 4.1.

Figure 1 Optimal Investment Decision



The WACC or MCC corresponding to the average risk of the company, adjusted appropriately for the risk of a given project, plays a role in capital-budgeting decision making based on the **net present value (NPV)** of that project. Recall from the reading on capital budgeting that the NPV is the present value of all the project cash flows. It is useful to think of it as the difference between the present value of the cash inflows, discounted at the opportunity cost of capital applicable to the specific project, and the present value of the cash outflows, discounted using that same opportunity cost of capital:

$$\text{NPV} = \text{Present value of inflows} - \text{Present value of outflows}$$

If an investment's NPV is positive, the company should undertake the project. If we choose to use the company's WACC in the calculation of the NPV of a project, we are assuming that the project:

- has the same risk as the average-risk project of the company, and
- will have a constant target capital structure throughout its useful life.³

These may not be realistic or appropriate assumptions and are potential drawbacks to using the company's WACC in valuing projects. However, alternative approaches are subject to drawbacks as well, and the approach outlined has wide acceptance.⁴

³ WACC is estimated using fixed proportions of equity and debt. The NPV method assumes a constant required rate of return, whereas a fluctuating capital structure would cause WACC to fluctuate. The importance of this issue is demonstrated by James A. Miles and John R. Ezzell, "The Weighted Average Cost of Capital, Perfect Capital Markets, and Project Life: A Clarification," *Journal of Financial and Quantitative Analysis*, Vol. 15, No. 3 (September 1980), pp. 719–730.

⁴ See the reading on capital budgeting for a discussion.

For the analyst, the second key use of the marginal cost of capital is in security valuation using any one of several discounted cash flow valuation models available.⁵ For a particular valuation model, if these cash flows are cash flows to the company's suppliers of capital (that is, free cash flow to the firm), the analyst uses the weighted average cost of capital of the company in the valuation.⁶ If these cash flows are strictly those belonging to the company's owners, such as the free cash flow to equity, or dividends, the analyst uses the cost of equity capital to find the present value of these flows.⁷

In the next section, we discuss how an analyst may approach the calculation of the component costs of capital, focusing on debt, preferred stock, and common equity.

3

COSTS OF THE DIFFERENT SOURCES OF CAPITAL

Each source of capital has a different cost because of the differences among the sources, such as seniority, contractual commitments, and potential value as a tax shield. We focus on the costs of three primary sources of capital: debt, preferred equity, and common equity.

3.1 Cost of Debt

The **cost of debt** is the cost of debt financing to a company when it issues a bond or takes out a bank loan. We discuss two methods to estimate the before-tax cost of debt, r_d : the yield-to-maturity approach and debt-rating approach.

3.1.1 Yield-to-Maturity Approach

The **yield to maturity** (YTM) is the annual return that an investor earns on a bond if the investor purchases the bond today and holds it until maturity. In other words, it is the yield, r_d , that equates the present value of the bond's promised payments to its market price:

$$P_0 = \frac{PMT_1}{\left(1 + \frac{r_d}{2}\right)} + \dots + \frac{PMT_n}{\left(1 + \frac{r_d}{2}\right)^n} + \frac{FV}{\left(1 + \frac{r_d}{2}\right)^n} = \left(\sum_{t=1}^n \frac{PMT_t}{\left(1 + \frac{r_d}{2}\right)^t} \right) + \frac{FV}{\left(1 + \frac{r_d}{2}\right)^n} \quad (2)$$

where

P_0 = the current market price of the bond

PMT_t = the interest payment in period t

r_d = the yield to maturity

n = the number of periods remaining to maturity

FV = the maturity value of the bond

⁵ Such models are discussed thoroughly at Level II of the CFA Program.

⁶ **Free cash flow to the firm (FCFF)** is the cash flow available to the company's suppliers of capital after all operating expenses (including taxes) have been paid and necessary investments in working capital (e.g., inventory) and fixed capital (e.g., plant and equipment) have been made.

⁷ **Free cash flow to equity (FCFE)** is the cash flow available to holders of the company's common equity after all operating expenses, interest, and principal payments have been paid and necessary investments in working capital and fixed capital have been made.

This valuation equation assumes the bond pays semi-annual interest and that any intermediate cash flows (in this case the interest prior to maturity) are reinvested at the rate $r_d/2$.⁸

Example 4 illustrates the calculation of the after-tax cost of debt.

EXAMPLE 4

Calculating the After-Tax Cost of Debt

Valence Industries issues a bond to finance a new project. It offers a 10-year, \$1,000 face value, 5 percent semi-annual coupon bond. Upon issue, the bond sells at \$1,025. What is Valence's before-tax cost of debt? If Valence's marginal tax rate is 35 percent, what is Valence's after-tax cost of debt?

Solution:

Given:

$$PV = \$1,025$$

$$FV = \$1,000$$

$$PMT = 5 \text{ percent of } 1,000 \div 2 = \$25$$

$$n = 10 \times 2 = 20$$

$$\$1,025 = \left(\sum_{t=1}^{20} \frac{\$25}{(1+i)^t} \right) + \frac{\$1,000}{(1+i)^{20}}$$

Use a financial calculator to solve for i , the six-month yield. Because $i = 2.342$ percent, the before-tax cost of debt is $r_d = 2.342 \text{ percent} \times 2 = 4.684$ percent, and Valence's after-tax cost of debt is $r_d(1 - t) = 0.04684(1 - 0.35) = 0.03045$ or 3.045 percent.

3.1.2 Debt-Rating Approach

When a reliable current market price for a company's debt is not available, the **debt-rating approach** can be used to estimate the before-tax cost of debt. Based on a company's debt rating, we estimate the before-tax cost of debt by using the yield on comparably rated bonds for maturities that closely match that of the company's existing debt.

Suppose a company's capital structure includes debt with an average maturity (or duration) of 10 years and the company's marginal tax rate is 35 percent. If the company's rating is AAA and the yield on debt with the same debt rating and similar maturity is 4 percent, the company's after-tax cost of debt is

$$r_d(1 - t) = 4 \text{ percent}(1 - 0.35) = 2.6 \text{ percent}$$

A consideration when using this approach is that debt ratings are ratings of the debt issue itself, with the issuer being only one of the considerations. Other factors, such as debt seniority and security, also affect ratings and yields, so care must be taken to consider the likely type of debt to be issued by the company in determining the comparable debt rating and yield. The debt-rating approach is a simple example of pricing on the basis of valuation-relevant characteristics, which in bond markets has been known as evaluated pricing or **matrix pricing**.

⁸ r_d is expressed as an annual rate and is divided by the number of payment periods per year. Because most corporate bonds pay semi-annual interest, we divided r_d by 2 in this calculation. The interest payment for each period thus corresponds with the bond's semi-annual coupon payment.

3.1.3 Issues in Estimating the Cost of Debt

3.1.3.1 Fixed-Rate Debt versus Floating-Rate Debt Up to now, we have assumed that the interest on debt is a fixed amount each period. We can observe market yields of the company's existing debt or market yields of debt of similar risk in estimating the before-tax cost of debt. However, the company may also issue floating-rate debt in which the interest rate adjusts periodically according to a prescribed index, such as the prime rate or Libor, over the life of the instrument.

Estimating the cost of a floating-rate security is difficult because the cost of this form of capital over the long term depends not only on the current yields but also on the future yields. The analyst may use the current term structure of interest rates and term structure theory to assign an average cost to such instruments.

3.1.3.2 Debt with Optionlike Features How should an analyst determine the cost of debt when the company used debt with optionlike features, such as call, conversion, or put provisions? Clearly, options affect the value of debt. For example, a callable bond would have a yield greater than a similar noncallable bond of the same issuer because bondholders want to be compensated for the call risk associated with the bond. In a similar manner, the put feature of a bond, which provides the investor with an option to sell the bond back to the issuer at a predetermined price, has the effect of lowering the yield on a bond below that of a similar nonputtable bond.

If the company already has debt outstanding incorporating optionlike features that the analyst believes are representative of the future debt issuance of the company, the analyst may simply use the yield to maturity on such debt in estimating the cost of debt.

If the analyst believes that the company will add or remove option features in future debt issuance, the analyst can make market value adjustments to the current YTM to reflect the value of such additions and/or deletions. The technology for such adjustments is an advanced topic that is outside the scope of this reading.

3.1.3.3 Nonrated Debt If a company does not have any debt outstanding or if the yields on the company's existing debt are not available, the analyst may not always be able to use the yield on similarly rated debt securities. It may be the case that the company does not have rated bonds. Though researchers offer approaches for estimating a company's "synthetic" debt rating based on financial ratios, these methods are imprecise because debt ratings incorporate not only financial ratios but also information about the particular bond issue and the issuer that are not captured in financial ratios.

3.1.3.4 Leases A lease is a contractual obligation that can substitute for other forms of borrowing. This is true whether the lease is an **operating lease** or a **capital lease (finance lease)**. If the company uses leasing as a source of capital, the cost of these leases should be included in the cost of capital. The cost of this form of borrowing is similar to that of the company's other long-term borrowing.

3.2 Cost of Preferred Stock

The **cost of preferred stock** is the cost that a company has committed to pay preferred stockholders as a preferred dividend when it issues preferred stock. In the case of nonconvertible, noncallable preferred stock that has a fixed dividend rate and no maturity date (**fixed rate perpetual preferred stock**), we can use the formula for the value of a preferred stock:

$$P_p = \frac{D_p}{r_p}$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} P_p &= \text{the current preferred stock price per share} \\ D_p &= \text{the preferred stock dividend per share} \\ r_p &= \text{the cost of preferred stock} \end{aligned}$$

We can rearrange this equation to solve for the cost of preferred stock:

$$r_p = \frac{D_p}{P_p} \quad (3)$$

Therefore, the cost of preferred stock is the preferred stock's dividend per share divided by the current preferred stock's price per share. Unlike interest on debt, the dividend on preferred stock is not tax-deductible by the company; therefore, there is no adjustment to the cost for taxes.⁹

A preferred stock may have a number of features that affect the yield and hence the cost of preferred stock. These features include a call option, cumulative dividends, participating dividends, adjustable-rate dividends, or convertibility into common stock. When estimating a yield based on current yields of the company's preferred stock, we must make appropriate adjustments for the effects of these features on the yield of an issue. For example, if the company has callable, convertible preferred stock outstanding, yet it is expected that the company will issue only noncallable, nonconvertible preferred stock in the future, we would have to either use the current yields on comparable companies' noncallable, nonconvertible preferred stock or estimate the yield on preferred equity using methods outside the scope of this reading.

EXAMPLE 5

Calculating the Cost of Preferred Equity

Alcoa has one class of preferred stock outstanding, a \$3.75 cumulative preferred stock, for which there are 546,024 shares outstanding.¹⁰ If the price of this stock is \$72, what is the estimate of Alcoa's cost of preferred equity?

Solution:

Cost of Alcoa's preferred stock = \$3.75/\$72.00 = 5.21 percent.

EXAMPLE 6

Choosing the Best Estimate of the Cost of Preferred Equity

Wim Vanistendael is finance director of De Gouden Tulip N.V., a leading Dutch flower producer and distributor. He has been asked by the CEO to calculate the cost of preferred equity and has recently obtained the following information:

- The issue price of preferred stock was €3.5 million and the preferred dividend is 5 percent.

⁹ This is not to be confused, however, with the dividends-received deduction, which reduces the effective tax on intercorporate preferred dividends received.

¹⁰ Alcoa Annual Report 2004, Footnote R, p. 56.

- If the company issued new preferred stock today, the preferred coupon rate would be 6.5 percent.
- The company's marginal tax rate is 30.5 percent.

What is the cost of preferred equity for De Gouden Tulip N.V.?

Solution:

If De Gouden Tulip were to issue new preferred stock today, the coupon rate would be close to 6.5 percent. The current terms thus prevail over the past terms when evaluating the actual cost of preferred stock. The cost of preferred stock for De Gouden Tulip is, therefore, 6.5 percent. Because preferred dividends offer no tax shield, there is no adjustment made based upon the marginal tax rate.

3.3 Cost of Common Equity

The cost of common equity, (r_e), usually referred to simply as the cost of equity, is the rate of return required by a company's common shareholders. A company may increase common equity through the reinvestment of earnings—that is, retained earnings—or through the issuance of new shares of stock.

As we discussed earlier, the estimation of the cost of equity is challenging because of the uncertain nature of the future cash flows in terms of the amount and timing. Commonly used approaches for estimating the cost of equity include the capital asset pricing model, the dividend discount model, and the bond yield plus risk premium method.

3.3.1 Capital Asset Pricing Model Approach

In the capital asset pricing model (CAPM) approach, we use the basic relationship from the capital asset pricing model theory that the expected return on a stock, $E(R_i)$, is the sum of the risk-free rate of interest, R_F , and a premium for bearing the stock's market risk, $\beta_i(R_M - R_F)$:

$$E(R_i) = R_F + \beta_i [E(R_M) - R_F] \quad (4)$$

where

β_i = the return sensitivity of stock i to changes in the market return

$E(R_M)$ = the expected return on the market

$E(R_M) - R_F$ = the expected market risk premium

A risk-free asset is defined here as an asset that has no default risk. A common proxy for the risk-free rate is the yield on a default-free government debt instrument. In general, the selection of the appropriate risk-free rate should be guided by the duration of projected cash flows. If we are evaluating a project with an estimated useful life of 10 years, we may want to use the rate on the 10-year Treasury bond.

EXAMPLE 7

Using the CAPM to Estimate the Cost of Equity

Valence Industries wants to know its cost of equity. Its CFO believes the risk-free rate is 5 percent, equity risk premium is 7 percent, and Valence's equity beta is 1.5. What is Valence's cost of equity using the CAPM approach?

Solution:

Cost of common stock = 5 percent + 1.5(7 percent) = 15.5 percent.

The expected market risk premium, or $E(R_M - R_F)$, is the premium that investors demand for investing in a market portfolio relative to the risk-free rate. When using the CAPM to estimate the cost of equity, in practice we typically estimate beta relative to an equity market index. In that case, the market premium estimate we are using is actually an estimate of the **equity risk premium** (ERP).

An alternative to the CAPM to accommodate risks that may not be captured by the market portfolio alone is a multifactor model that incorporates factors that may be other sources of **priced risk** (risk for which investors demand compensation for bearing), including macroeconomic factors and company-specific factors. In general

$$\begin{aligned} E(R_i) = & R_F + \beta_{i1}(\text{Factor risk premium})_1 \\ & + \beta_{i2}(\text{Factor risk premium})_2 + \dots \\ & + \beta_{ij}(\text{Factor risk premium})_j \end{aligned} \quad (5)$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} \beta_{ij} &= \text{stock } i\text{'s sensitivity to changes in the } j\text{th factor} \\ (\text{Factor risk premium})_j &= \text{expected risk premium for the } j\text{th factor} \end{aligned}$$

The basic idea behind these multifactor models is that the CAPM beta may not capture all the risks, especially in a global context, which include inflation, business-cycle, interest rate, exchange rate, and default risks.^{11,12}

There are several ways to estimate the equity risk premium, though there is no general agreement as to the best approach. The three we discuss are the historical equity risk premium approach, the dividend discount model approach, and the survey approach.

The **historical equity risk premium approach** is a well-established approach based on the assumption that the realized equity risk premium observed over a long period of time is a good indicator of the expected equity risk premium. This approach requires compiling historical data to find the average rate of return of a country's market portfolio and the average rate of return for the risk-free rate in that country. For example, an analyst might use the historical returns to the TOPIX Index to estimate the risk premium for Japanese equities. The exceptional bull market observed during the second half of the 1990s, and the bursting of the technology bubble that followed during the years 2000–2002, reminds us that the time period for such estimates should cover complete market cycles.

Elroy Dimson, Paul Marsh, and Mike Staunton conducted an analysis of the equity risk premiums observed in markets located in 16 countries, including the United States, over the period 1900–2002.¹³ These researchers found that the annualized US equity risk premium relative to US Treasury bills was 5.3 percent (geometric mean) and 7.2 percent (arithmetic mean). They also found that the annualized US equity risk premium relative to bonds was 4.4 percent (geometric mean) and 6.4 percent

¹¹ An example of the multi-factor model is the three-factor Fama and French model [Eugene Fama and Kenneth French, "The Cross-Section of Expected Stock Returns," *Journal of Finance*, Vol. 47, No. 2 (1992), pp. 427–465], which includes factors for the market, equity capitalization, and the ratio of book value of equity to the market value of equity.

¹² These models are discussed in more detail by Robert F. Bruner, Robert M. Conroy, Wei Li, Elizabeth O'Halloran, and Miquel Palacios Lleras [*Investing in Emerging Markets*, AIMR Research Foundation monograph (August 2003)] and by Eugene F. Fama and Kenneth R. French, "The Capital Asset Pricing Model: Theory and Evidence," *Journal of Economic Perspectives*, Vol. 18, No. 3 (Summer 2004), pp. 3–24.

¹³ Elroy Dimson, Paul Marsh, and Mike Staunton, "Global Evidence on the Equity Risk Premium," *Journal of Applied Corporate Finance* (Fall 2003), pp. 27–38.

(arithmetic mean).¹⁴ Note that the arithmetic mean is greater than the geometric mean as a result of the significant volatility of the observed market rate of return and of the observed risk-free rate. Under the assumption of an unchanging distribution of returns through time, the arithmetic mean is the unbiased estimate of the expected single-period equity risk premium, but the geometric mean better reflects growth rate over multiple periods.¹⁵ In Table 1 we provide historical estimates of the equity risk premium for 16 developed markets from Dimson, Marsh, and Staunton's study.

Table 1 Equity Risk Premiums Relative to Bonds (1900 to 2002)

Country	Mean	
	Geometric	Arithmetic
Australia	6.3%	7.9%
Belgium	2.8	4.7
Canada	4.2	5.7
Denmark	1.8	3.1
France	4.6	6.7
Germany	6.3	9.6
Ireland	3.1	4.5
Italy	4.6	8.0
Japan	5.9	10.0
The Netherlands	4.4	6.4
South Africa	5.4	7.1
Spain	2.2	4.1
Sweden	4.9	7.1
Switzerland	2.4	3.9
United Kingdom	4.2	5.5
United States	4.8	6.7
World	4.3	5.4

Note: Germany excludes 1922–23. Switzerland commences in 1911.

Source: Dimson, Marsh, and Staunton (2003).

To illustrate the historical method as applied in the CAPM, suppose that we use the historical geometric mean for US equity of 4.8 percent to value Citibank Inc. as of early January 2006. According to Standard & Poor's, Citibank had a beta of 1.32 at that time. Using the 10-year US Treasury bond yield of 4.38 percent to represent the risk-free rate, the estimate of the cost of equity for Citibank is 4.38 percent + 1.32(4.8 percent) = 10.72 percent.

¹⁴ Jeremy Siegel presents a longer time series of market returns, covering the period from 1802 through 2004, and observes an equity return of 6.82 percent and an equity risk premium in the range of 3.31 to 5.36 percent. See Jeremy J. Siegel, "Perspectives on the Equity Risk Premium," *Financial Analysts Journal*, Vol. 61, No. 6 (November/December 2005), pp. 61–73. The range depends on the method of calculation (compounded or arithmetic) and the benchmark (bonds or bills).

¹⁵ Aside from the method of averaging (geometric versus arithmetic), estimates of the historical equity risk premium differ depending on the assumed investment horizon (short versus intermediate versus long), whether conditional on some variable or unconditional, whether US or global markets are examined, the source of the data, the period observed, and whether nominal or real returns are estimated.

The historical premium approach has several limitations. One limitation is that the level of risk of the stock index may change over time. Another is that the risk aversion of investors may change over time. And still another limitation is that the estimates are sensitive to the method of estimation and the historical period covered.

EXAMPLE 8

Estimating the Equity Risk Premium Using Historical Rates of Return

Suppose that the arithmetic average T-bond rate observed over the last 100 years is an unbiased estimator for the risk-free rate and amounts to 5.4 percent. Likewise, suppose the arithmetic average of return on the market observed over the last 100 years is an unbiased estimator for the expected return for the market. The average rate of return of the market was 9.3 percent. Calculate the equity risk premium.

Solution:

$$\text{ERP} = \bar{R}_M - \bar{R}_F = 9.3 \text{ percent} - 5.4 \text{ percent} = 3.9 \text{ percent}$$

A second approach for estimating the equity risk premium is the **dividend discount model based approach** or implied risk premium approach, which is implemented using the Gordon growth model (also known as the constant-growth dividend discount model). For developed markets, corporate earnings often meet, at least approximately, the model's assumption of a long-run trend growth rate. We extract the premium by analyzing how the market prices an index. That is, we use the relationship between the value of an index and expected dividends, assuming a constant growth in dividends:

$$P_0 = \frac{D_1}{r_e - g}$$

where P_0 is the current market value of the equity market index, D_1 are the dividends expected next period on the index, r_e is the required rate of return on the market, and g is the expected growth rate of dividends. We solve for the required rate of return on the market as

$$r_e = \frac{D_1}{P_0} + g \quad (6)$$

Therefore, the expected return on the market is the sum of the dividend yield and the growth rate in dividends.¹⁶ The equity risk premium thus is the difference between the expected return on the equity market and the risk-free rate.

Suppose the expected dividend yield on an equity index is 5 percent and the expected growth rate of dividends on the index is 2 percent. The expected return on the market according to the Gordon growth model is

$$E(R_m) = 5 \text{ percent} + 2 \text{ percent} = 7 \text{ percent}$$

A risk-free rate of interest of 3.8 percent implies an equity risk premium of 7 percent – 3.8 percent = 3.2 percent.

¹⁶ We explain Equation 6 in more detail in Section 3.3.2.

Another approach to estimate the equity risk premium is quite direct: Ask a panel of finance experts for their estimates and take the mean response. This is the **survey approach**. For example, one set of US surveys found that the expected US equity risk premium over the next 30 years was 5.5 percent to 7 percent forecasting from 2001 as the baseline year and 7.1 percent using 1998 as the baseline year.

Once we have an estimate of the equity risk premium, we fine-tune this estimate for the particular company or project by adjusting it for the specific systematic risk of the project. We adjust for the specific systematic risk by multiplying the market risk premium by beta to arrive at the company's or project's risk premium, which we then add to the risk-free rate to determine the cost of equity within the framework of the CAPM.¹⁷

3.3.2 Dividend Discount Model Approach

Earlier we used the Gordon growth model to develop an estimate of the equity risk premium for use in the CAPM. We can also use the Gordon growth model directly to obtain an estimate of the cost of equity. To review, the dividend discount model in general states that the intrinsic value of a share of stock is the present value of the share's expected future dividends:

$$V_0 = \sum_{t=1}^{\infty} \left(\frac{D_t}{(1+r_e)^t} \right) = \frac{D_1}{(1+r_e)} + \frac{D_2}{(1+r_e)^2} + \dots$$

where

V_0 = the intrinsic value of a share

D_t = the share's dividend at the end of period t

r_e = the cost of equity

Based on Gordon's constant growth formulation, we assume dividends are expected to grow at a constant rate, g .¹⁸ Therefore, if we assume that price reflects intrinsic value ($V_0 = P_0$), we can rewrite the valuation of the stock as

$$P_0 = \frac{D_1}{r_e - g}$$

We can then rewrite the above equation and estimate the cost of equity as we did for Equation 6 in Section 3.3.1:

$$r_e = \frac{D_1}{P_0} + g$$

Therefore, to estimate r_e , we need to estimate the dividend in the next period and the assumed constant dividend growth rate. The current stock price, P_0 , is known, and the dividend of the next period, D_1 , can be predicted if the company has a stable dividend policy. (The ratio D_1/P_0 may be called the forward annual dividend yield.) The challenge is estimating the growth rate.

There are at least two ways to estimate the growth rate. The first is to use a forecasted growth rate from a published source or vendor. A second is to use a relationship between the growth rate, the retention rate, and the return on equity. In this context, this is often referred to as the **sustainable growth rate** and is interpretable as the

¹⁷ Some researchers argue that the equity risk premium should reflect a country risk premium. For example, a multinational company or project may have a higher cost of capital than a comparable domestic company because of political risk, foreign exchange risk, or higher agency costs. In most cases, this risk is unsystematic and hence does not affect the cost of capital estimate.

¹⁸ Myron J. Gordon, *The Investment, Financing, and Valuation of the Corporation*, Homewood, IL: Irwin, 1962.

rate of dividend (and earnings) growth that can be sustained over time for a given level of return on equity, keeping the capital structure constant and without issuing additional common stock. The relationship is given in Equation 7:

$$g = (1 - D/EPs)ROE \quad (7)$$

where D/EPs represents the assumed stable dividend payout ratio and ROE is the historical return on equity. The term $(1 - D/EPs)$ is the company's earnings retention rate.

Consider Citigroup, Inc. Citigroup has an earnings retention rate of 59 percent. As of early January 2006, Citigroup had a forward annual dividend yield of 3.9 percent, a trailing return on equity of approximately 20 percent, but an estimated average return on equity going forward of approximately 16.6 percent. According to Equation 7, Citigroup's sustainable growth rate is $0.59(16.6 \text{ percent}) = 9.79 \text{ percent}$. The dividend discount model estimate of the cost of equity is, therefore, $9.79 \text{ percent} + 3.9 \text{ percent} = 13.69 \text{ percent}$.

3.3.3 Bond Yield plus Risk Premium Approach

The **bond yield plus risk premium approach** is based on the fundamental tenet in financial theory that the cost of capital of riskier cash flows is higher than that of less risky cash flows. In this approach, we sum the before-tax cost of debt, r_d , and a risk premium that captures the additional yield on a company's stock relative to its bonds. The estimate is, therefore,

$$r_e = r_d + \text{Risk premium} \quad (8)$$

The risk premium compensates for the additional risk of equity compared with debt.¹⁹ Ideally, this risk premium is forward looking, representing the additional risk associated with the stock of the company as compared with the bonds of the same company. However, we often estimate this premium using historical spreads between bond yields and stock yields. In developed country markets, a typical risk premium added is in the range of 3 to 5 percent.

Looking again at Citigroup, as of early January 2006, the yield to maturity of the Citigroup 5.3s bonds maturing in 2016 was approximately 4.95 percent. Adding an arbitrary risk premium of 3.5 percent produces an estimate of the cost of equity of $4.95 + 3.5 = 8.45 \text{ percent}$. This estimate contrasts with the higher estimates of 10.72 percent, under the CAPM approach, and 13.69 percent, under the dividend discount model approach. Such disparities are not uncommon and reflect the difficulty of cost of equity estimation.

TOPICS IN COST OF CAPITAL ESTIMATION

4

When calculating a company's weighted average cost of capital (WACC), it is essential to understand the risk factors that have been considered in determining the risk-free rate, the equity risk premium, and beta to ensure a consistent calculation of WACC and avoid the double counting or omission of pertinent risk factors.

¹⁹ This risk premium is not to be confused with the equity risk premium. The equity risk premium is the difference between the cost of equity and the *risk-free rate of interest*. The risk premium in the bond yield plus risk premium approach is the difference between the cost of equity and the *company's cost of debt*.

4.1 Estimating Beta and Determining a Project Beta

When the analyst uses the CAPM to estimate the cost of equity, he or she must estimate beta. The estimation of beta presents many choices as well as challenges.

One common method of estimating the company's stock beta is to use a market model regression of the company's stock returns (R_i) against market returns (R_m) over T periods:²⁰

$$R_{it} = \hat{a} + \hat{b}R_{mt} \quad t = 1, 2, \dots, T$$

where \hat{a} is the estimated intercept and \hat{b} is the estimated slope of the regression that is used as an estimate of beta. However, beta estimates are sensitive to the method of estimation and data used. Consider some of the issues:

- *Estimation period.* The estimated beta is sensitive to the length of the estimation period, with beta commonly estimated using data over two to nine years. Selection of the estimation period is a trade-off between data richness captured by longer estimation periods and company-specific changes that are better reflected with shorter estimation periods. In general, longer estimation periods are applied to companies with a long and stable operating history, and shorter estimation periods are used for companies that have undergone significant structural changes in the recent past (such as restructuring, recent acquisition, or divestiture) or changes in financial and operating leverage.
- *Periodicity of the return interval* (e.g., daily, weekly, or monthly). Researchers have observed smaller standard error in beta estimated using smaller return intervals, such as daily returns.²¹
- *Selection of an appropriate market index.* The choice of market index affects the estimate of beta.
- *Use of a smoothing technique.* Some analysts adjust historical betas to reflect the tendency of betas to revert to 1.²² As an example, the expression $\beta_{i,adj} = 0.333 + 0.667\beta_i$ adjusts betas above and below 1.0 toward 1.0.
- *Adjustments for small-capitalization stocks.* Small-capitalization stocks have generally exhibited greater risks and greater returns than large-capitalization stocks over the long run. Roger Ibbotson, Paul Kaplan, and James Peterson argue that betas for small-capitalization companies be adjusted upward.²³

Arriving at an estimated beta for publicly traded companies is generally not a problem because of the accessibility of stock return data, the ease of use of estimating beta using simple regression, and the availability of estimated betas on publicly traded companies from financial analysis vendors, such as Barra, Bloomberg, Thompson Financial's Datastream, Reuters, and Value Line. The challenge is to estimate a beta for a company that is not publicly traded or to estimate a beta for a project that is not the average or typical project of a publicly traded company. Estimating a beta in these cases requires proxying for the beta by using the information on the project or company combined with a beta of a publicly traded company.

²⁰ This equation is commonly referred to as the *market model* and was first introduced by Michael C. Jensen in "The Performance of Mutual Funds in the Period 1945–1964," *Journal of Finance*, Vol. 23, No. 2 (1969), pp. 389–416.

²¹ Phillip R. Daves, Michael C. Ehrhardt, and Robert A. Kunkel, "Estimating Systematic Risk: The Choice of Return Interval and Estimation Period," *Journal of Financial and Strategic Decisions*, Vol. 13, No. 1 (Spring 2000), pp. 7–13.

²² Marshall Blume, "On the Assessment of Risk," *Journal of Finance*, Vol. 26, No. 1 (March 1971), pp. 1–10.

²³ Roger G. Ibbotson, Paul D. Kaplan, and James D. Peterson, "Estimates of Small Stock Betas Are Much Too Low," *Journal of Portfolio Management* (Summer 1997), pp. 104–110.

The beta of a company or project is affected by the systematic components of business risk and by financial risk. Both of these factors affect the uncertainty of the cash flows of the company or project. The **business risk** of a company or project is the risk related to the uncertainty of revenues, referred to as **sales risk**, and to **operating risk**, which is the risk attributed to the company's operating cost structure. Sales risk is affected by the elasticity of the demand of the product, the cyclical nature of the revenues, and the structure of competition in the industry. Operating risk is affected by the relative mix of fixed and variable operating costs: the greater the fixed operating costs, relative to variable operating costs, the greater the uncertainty of income and cash flows from operations.

Financial risk is the uncertainty of net income and net cash flows attributed to the use of financing that has a fixed cost, such as debt and leases. The greater the use of fixed-financing sources of capital, relative to variable sources, the greater the financial risk. In other words, a company that relies heavily on debt financing instead of equity financing is assuming a great deal of financial risk.

How does a financial analyst estimate a beta for a company or project that is not publicly traded? One common method is the **pure-play method**, which requires using a comparable publicly traded company's beta and adjusting it for financial leverage differences.

A **comparable company** is a company that has similar business risk. The reason it is referred to as the *pure-play* method is that one of the easiest ways of identifying a comparable for a project is to find a company in the same industry that is in that *single* line of business. For example, if the analyst is examining a project that involves drug stores, appropriate comparables in the United States may be Walgreens, CVS Corporation, and Rite Aid Corporation.

In estimating a beta in this way, the analyst must make adjustments to account for differing degrees of financial leverage. This requires a process of "unlevering" and "levering" the beta. The beta of the comparable is first "unlevered" by removing the effects of its financial leverage.²⁴ The unlevered beta is often referred to as the **asset beta** because it reflects the business risk of the assets. Once we determine the unlevered beta, we adjust it for the capital structure of the company or project that is the focus of our analysis. In other words, we "lever" the asset beta to arrive at an estimate of the equity beta for the project or company of interest.

For a given company, we can unlever its equity beta to estimate its asset beta. To do this, we must determine the relationship between a company's asset beta and its equity beta. Because the company's risk is shared between creditors and owners, we can represent the company's risk, β_{asset} , as the weighted average of the company's creditors' market risk, β_{debt} , and the market risk of the owners, β_{equity} :

$$\beta_{\text{asset}} = \beta_{\text{debt}}w_d + \beta_{\text{equity}}w_e$$

or

$$\beta_{\text{asset}} = \beta_{\text{debt}}\left(\frac{D}{D + E}\right) + \beta_{\text{equity}}\left(\frac{E}{D + E}\right)$$

where

E = market value of equity

D = market value of debt

w_d = proportion of debt = $D/(D + E)$

w_e = proportion of equity = $E/(D + E)$

²⁴ The process of unlevering and levering a beta was developed by Robert S. Hamada ["The Effect of the Firm's Capital Structure on the Systematic Risk of Common Stocks," *Journal of Finance* (May 1972), pp. 435–452] and is based on the capital structure theories of Franco Modigliani and Merton Miller.

But interest on debt is deducted by the company to arrive at taxable income, so the claim that creditors have on the company's assets does not cost the company the full amount but, rather, the after-tax claim; the burden of debt financing is actually less due to interest deductibility. We can represent the asset beta of a company as the weighted average of the betas of debt and equity after considering the effects of the tax-deductibility of interest:

$$\beta_{\text{asset}} = \beta_{\text{debt}} \frac{(1-t)D}{(1-t)D + E} + \beta_{\text{equity}} \frac{E}{(1-t)D + E}$$

where t is the marginal tax rate.

We generally assume that a company's debt does not have market risk, so $\beta_{\text{debt}} = 0$. This means that the returns on debt do not vary with the returns on the market, which we generally assume to be true for most large companies. If $\beta_{\text{debt}} = 0$, then²⁵

$$\beta_{\text{asset}} = \beta_{\text{equity}} \left[\frac{1}{1 + \left((1-t) \frac{D}{E} \right)} \right] \quad (9)$$

Therefore, the market risk of a company's equity is affected by both the asset's market risk, β_{asset} , and a factor representing the nondiversifiable portion of the company's financial risk, $\left[1 + \left((1-t) \frac{D}{E} \right) \right]$:

$$\beta_{\text{equity}} = \beta_{\text{asset}} \left[1 + \left((1-t) \frac{D}{E} \right) \right] \quad (10)$$

Suppose a company has an equity beta of 1.5, a debt-to-equity ratio of 0.4, and a marginal tax rate of 30 percent. Using Equation 9, the company's asset beta is 1.1719:

$$\beta_{\text{asset}} = 1.5 \left[\frac{1}{1 + \left((1-0.3)(0.4) \right)} \right] = 1.5[0.7813] = 1.1719$$

In other words, if the company did not have any debt financing, its $\beta_{\text{asset}} = \beta_{\text{equity}} = 1.1719$; however, the use of debt financing increases its β_{equity} from 1.1719 to 1.5. What would the company's equity beta be if the company's debt-to-equity ratio were 0.5 instead of 0.4? In this case, we apply Equation 10, using the debt-to-equity ratio of 0.5:

$$\beta_{\text{equity}} = 1.1719 \left[1 + \left((1-0.3)(0.5) \right) \right] = 1.5821$$

Therefore, the unlevering calculation produces a measure of market risk for the assets of the company—ignoring the company's capital structure. We use the levering calculation in Equation 10 to estimate the market risk of a company given a specific asset risk, marginal tax rate, and capital structure.

We can use the same unlevering and levering calculations to estimate the asset risk and equity risk for a project. We start with the equity beta of the comparable company, which is the levered beta, $\beta_{L,\text{comparable}}$, and then convert it into the equivalent asset beta for the unlevered company, $\beta_{U,\text{comparable}}$. Once we have the estimate of the unlevered beta, which is the company's asset risk, we then can use the project's capital structure and marginal tax rate to convert this asset beta into an equity beta for the project, $\beta_{L,\text{project}}$.

²⁵ The first step is $\beta_{\text{asset}} = \beta_{\text{equity}} \left[\frac{E}{(1-t)D + E} \right]$, which we simplify to arrive at Equation 9.

Estimating a Beta Using the Pure-Play Method

Step 1: Select the comparable Determine comparable company or companies. These are companies with similar business risk.



Step 2: Estimate comparable's beta Estimate the equity beta of the comparable company or companies.



Step 3: Unlever the comparable's beta Unlever the beta of the comparable company or companies, removing the financial risk component of the equity beta, leaving the business risk component of the beta.



Step 4: Lever the beta for the project's financial risk Lever the beta of the project by adjusting the asset beta for the financial risk of the project.

We begin by estimating the levered beta of the comparable company, $\beta_{L, \text{comparable}}$. Using the capital structure and tax rate of the levered company, we estimate the asset beta for the comparable company, $\beta_{U, \text{comparable}}$:

$$\beta_{U, \text{comparable}} = \frac{\beta_{L, \text{comparable}}}{\left[1 + \left((1 - t_{\text{comparable}}) \frac{D_{\text{comparable}}}{E_{\text{comparable}}} \right) \right]} \tag{11}$$

We then consider the financial leverage of the project or company and calculate its equity risk, $\beta_{L, \text{project}}$:

$$\beta_{L, \text{project}} = \beta_{U, \text{comparable}} \left[1 + \left((1 - t_{\text{project}}) \frac{D_{\text{project}}}{E_{\text{project}}} \right) \right] \tag{12}$$

To illustrate the use of these equations, suppose we want to evaluate a project that will be financed with debt and equity in a ratio of 0.4:1 [a debt-to-equity ratio of 0.4, corresponding to approximately $0.4/(0.4 + 1.0) = \text{€}0.286$ for each euro of capital needed]. We find a comparable company operating in the same line of business as the project. The marginal tax rate for the company sponsoring the project and the comparable company is 35 percent. The comparable company has a beta of 1.2 and a debt-to-equity ratio of 0.125. The unlevered beta of the comparable is 1.1098:

$$\beta_{U, \text{comparable}} = \frac{1.2}{\left[1 + \left((1 - 0.35)0.125 \right) \right]} = 1.1098$$

The levered beta for the project is 1.3983:

$$\beta_{L, \text{project}} = 1.1098 \left[1 + \left((1 - 0.35)0.4 \right) \right] = 1.3983$$

We then use the 1.3983 as the beta in our CAPM estimate of the component cost of equity for the project and, combined with the cost of debt in a weighted average, provide an estimate of the cost of capital for the project.²⁶

²⁶ In this example, the weights are $w_d = 0.4/1.4 = 0.2857$ and $w_e = 1/1.4 = 0.7143$.

EXAMPLE 9**Inferring an Asset Beta**

Suppose that the beta of a publicly traded company's stock is 1.3 and that the market value of equity and debt are, respectively, C\$540 million and C\$720 million. If the marginal tax rate of this company is 40 percent, what is the asset beta of this company?

Solution:

$$\beta_U = \frac{1.3}{\left[1 + \left(1 - 0.4\right)\frac{720}{540}\right]} = 0.72$$

EXAMPLE 10**Calculating a Beta Using the Pure-Play Method**

Raymond Cordier is the business development manager of Aerotechnique S.A., a private Belgian subcontractor of aerospace parts. Although Aerotechnique is not listed on the Belgian stock exchange, Cordier needs to evaluate the levered beta for the company. He has access to the following information:

- The average levered and average unlevered betas for the group of comparable companies operating in different European countries are 1.6 and 1.0, respectively.
- Aerotechnique's debt-to-equity ratio, based on market values, is 1.4.
- Aerotechnique's corporate tax rate is 34 percent.

Solution:

The beta for Aerotechnique is estimated on the basis of the average unlevered beta extracted from the group of comparable companies. On that basis, and applying the financing structure of Aerotechnique, the estimated beta for Aerotechnique is

$$\beta_{\text{Aerotechnique}} = 1.0 \left[1 + \left((1 - 0.34)(1.4) \right) \right] = 1.924$$

EXAMPLE 11**Estimating the Weighted Average Cost of Capital**

Georg Schrempp is the CFO of Bayern Chemicals KgaA, a large German manufacturer of industrial, commercial, and consumer chemical products. Bayern Chemicals is privately owned, and its shares are not listed on an exchange. The CFO has appointed Markus Meier, CFA, of Crystal Clear Valuation Advisors, a third-party valuator, to perform a stand-alone valuation of Bayern Chemicals. Meier had access to the following information to calculate Bayern Chemicals' weighted average cost of capital:

- The nominal risk-free rate is represented by the yield on the long-term 10-year German bund, which at the valuation date was 4.5 percent.

- The average long-term historical equity risk premium in Germany is assumed at 5.7 percent.²⁷
- Bayern Chemicals’ corporate tax rate is 38 percent.
- Bayern Chemicals’ target debt-to-equity ratio is 0.7. Bayern is operating at its target debt-to-equity ratio.
- Bayern Chemicals’ cost of debt has an estimated spread of 225 basis points over the 10-year bund.
- Table 2 supplies additional information on comparables for Bayern Chemicals.

Table 2 Information on Comparables

Comparable Companies	Country	Tax Rate (%)	Market Capitalization in Millions	Net Debt in Millions	D/E	Beta
British Chemicals Ltd.	United Kingdom	30.0	4,500	6,000	1.33	1.45
Compagnie Petrochimique S.A.	France	30.3	9,300	8,700	0.94	0.75
Rotterdam Chemie N.V.	Netherlands	30.5	7,000	7,900	1.13	1.05
Average					1.13	1.08

Based only on the information given, calculate Bayern Chemicals’ WACC.

Solution:

To calculate the cost of equity, the first step is to “unlever” the betas of the comparable companies and calculate an average for a company with business risk similar to the average of these companies:

Comparable Companies	Unlevered Beta
British Chemicals Ltd.	0.75
Compagnie Petrochimique S.A.	0.45
Rotterdam Chemie N.V.	0.59
Average*	0.60

* An analyst must apply judgment and experience to determine a representative average for the comparable companies. This example uses a simple average, but in some situations a weighted average based on some factor such as market capitalization may be more appropriate.

Levering the average unlevered beta for the peer group average, applying Bayern Chemicals’ target debt-to-equity ratio and marginal tax rate, results in a beta of 0.86:

$$\beta_{\text{Bayern Chemical}} = 0.60\{1 + [(1 - 0.38)0.7]\} = 0.86$$

The cost of equity of Bayern Chemicals (r_e) can be calculated as follows:

$$r_e = 4.5 \text{ percent} + (0.86)(5.7 \text{ percent}) = 9.4 \text{ percent}$$

The weights for the cost of equity and cost of debt may be calculated as follows:

$$w_d = \frac{D/E}{\left(\frac{D}{E} + 1\right)} = \frac{0.7}{1.7} = 0.41$$

$$w_e = 1 - w_d = 1 - 0.41 = 0.59$$

The before-tax cost of debt of Bayern Chemicals (r_d) is 6.75 percent:

$$r_d = 4.5 \text{ percent} + 2.25 \text{ percent} = 6.75 \text{ percent}$$

As a result, Bayern Chemicals' WACC is 7.27 percent:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{WACC} &= [(0.41)(0.0675)(1 - 0.38)] + [(0.59)(0.094)] \\ &= 0.0726 \text{ or } 7.26 \text{ percent} \end{aligned}$$

4.2 Country Risk

The use of a stock's beta to capture the country risks of a project is well supported in empirical studies that examine developed nations. However, beta does not appear to adequately capture country risk for companies in developing nations.²⁸ A common approach for dealing with this problem is to adjust the cost of equity estimated using the CAPM by adding a country spread to the market risk premium.²⁹ The country spread is also referred to as a country risk premium.

Perhaps the simplest estimate of the country spread is the **sovereign yield spread**, which is the difference between the government bond yield in that country, denominated in the currency of a developed country, and the Treasury bond yield on a similar maturity bond in the developed country.³⁰ However, this approach may be too coarse for the purposes of risk premium estimation.

²⁸ Campbell R. Harvey, "The International Cost of Capital and Risk Calculator," Duke University working paper (July 2001).

²⁹ Adding the country spread to the market risk premium for a developing country and then multiplying this sum by the market risk of the project is making the assumption that the country risk premium varies according to market risk. An alternative method calculates the cost of equity as the sum of three terms: 1) the risk-free rate of interest, 2) the product of the beta and the developed market risk premium, and 3) the country risk premium. This latter method assumes that the country risk premium is the same, regardless of the project's market risk.

³⁰ Jorge O. Mariscal and Rafaelina M. Lee, "The Valuation of Mexican Stocks: An Extension of the Capital Asset Pricing Model," New York: Goldman Sachs (1993).

Another approach is to calculate the country risk premium as the product of the sovereign yield spread and the ratio of the volatility of the developing country equity market to that of the sovereign bond market denominated in terms of the currency of a developed country:³¹

$$\text{Country equity premium} = \text{Sovereign yield spread} \left[\frac{\text{Annualized standard deviation of equity index}}{\text{Annualized standard deviation of the sovereign bond market in terms of the developed market currency}} \right] \quad (13)$$

The logic of this calculation is that the sovereign yield spread captures the general risk of the country, which is then adjusted for the volatility of the stock market relative to the bond market. This country risk premium is then used in addition to the equity premium estimated for a project in a developed country. Therefore, if the equity risk premium for a project in a developed country is 4.5 percent and the country risk premium is 3 percent, the total equity risk premium used in the CAPM estimation is 7.5 percent. If the appropriate beta is 1.2 and the risk-free rate of interest is 4 percent, the cost of equity is

$$\text{Cost of equity} = 0.04 + 1.2(0.045 + 0.03) = 0.13 \text{ or } 13 \text{ percent}$$

EXAMPLE 12

Estimating the Country Risk Premium

Miles Avenaugh, an analyst with the Global Company, is estimating a country risk premium to include in his estimate of the cost of equity capital for Global's investment in Argentina. Avenaugh has researched yields in Argentina and observed that the Argentinean government's 10-year bond is 9.5 percent. A similar maturity US Treasury bond has a yield of 4.5 percent. The annualized standard deviation of the Argentina Merval stock index, a market value index of stocks listed on the Buenos Aires Stock Exchange, during the most recent year is 40 percent. The annualized standard deviation of the Argentina dollar-denominated 10-year government bond over the recent period was 28 percent.

What is the estimated country risk premium for Argentina based on Avenaugh's research?

Solution:

$$\text{Country risk premium} = 0.05 \left(\frac{0.40}{0.28} \right) = 0.05(1.4286) = 0.0714 \text{ or } 7.14 \text{ percent}$$

Still another approach is to use country credit ratings to estimate the expected rates of returns for countries that have credit ratings but no equity markets.³² This method requires estimating reward to credit risk measures for a large sample of countries for which there are both credit ratings and equity markets and then applying this ratio to those countries without equity markets based on the country's credit rating.

³¹ Aswath Damodaran, "Estimating Equity Risk Premiums," New York University working paper (1999) and Aswath Damodaran, "Measuring Company Exposure to Country Risk: Theory and Practice," New York University working paper (September 2003).

³² Claude Erb, Campbell R. Harvey, and Tadas Viskanta, "Expected Returns and Volatility in 135 Countries," *Journal of Portfolio Management* (Spring 1996), pp. 46–58.

4.3 Marginal Cost of Capital Schedule

As we noted in Section 2.3, as a company raises more funds, the costs of the different sources of capital may change, resulting in a change in the weighted average cost of capital for different levels of financing. The result is the marginal cost of capital (MCC) schedule, which we often depict in graphical form as the weighted average cost of capital for different amounts of capital raised, as we showed earlier in Figure 1.³³

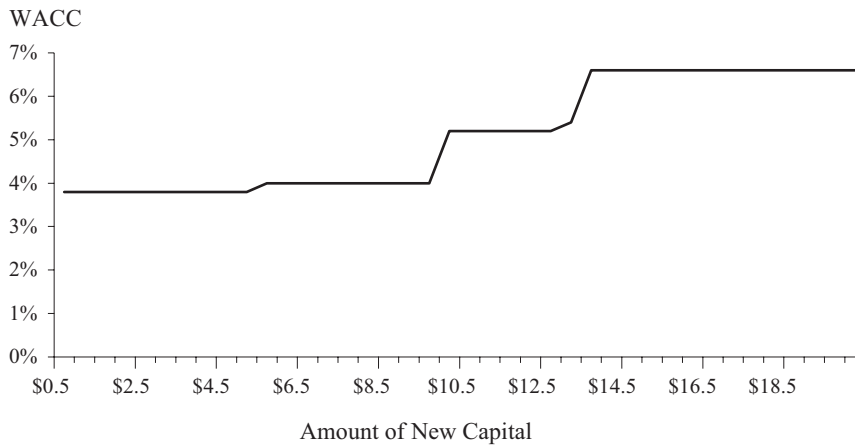
Why would the cost of capital change as more capital is raised? One source of a difference in cost depending on the amount of capital raised is that a company may have existing debt with a bond covenant that restricts the company from issuing debt with similar seniority as existing debt. Or, a **debt incurrence test** may restrict a company's ability to incur additional debt at the same seniority based on one or more financial tests or conditions. For example, if a company issues senior debt such that any additional debt at that seniority violates the debt incurrence test of an existing bond covenant, the company may have to issue less senior debt or even equity, which would have a higher cost.

Another source of increasing marginal costs of capital is a deviation from the target capital structure. In the ideal, theoretical world, a company has a target capital structure and goes to the market each period and raises capital in these proportions. However, as a practical matter, companies do not necessarily tap the market in these ideal proportions because of considerations for economies of scale in raising new capital and market conditions. Because of such perceived economies of scale, companies tend to issue new securities such that in any given period, it may deviate from the proportions dictated by any target or optimal capital structure. In other words, these short-run deviations are due to the “lumpiness” of security issuance. As the company experiences deviations from the target capital structure, the marginal cost of capital may increase, reflecting these deviations.

The amount of capital at which the weighted average cost of capital changes—which means that the cost of one of the sources of capital changes—is referred to as a **break point**. The reality of raising capital is that the marginal cost of capital schedule is not as smooth as we depicted in Figure 1 but, rather, is a step-up cost schedule as shown in Figure 2.

³³ Later in this section, we will discuss cases where a company's WACC may actually decrease as additional capital is raised. For example, if a company financed solely with common equity raises additional capital via debt, then the tax advantages provided by debt will result in a lower WACC under the new capital structure. For this discussion, we are assuming that the company is already operating at or near its optimum balance of debt versus equity.

Figure 2 Marginal Cost of Capital Schedule



Consider the case of a company facing the costs of capital given in Table 3.

Table 3 Schedule of the Costs of Debt and Equity

Amount of New Debt (in Millions)	After-Tax Cost of Debt	Amount of New Equity (in Millions)	Cost of Equity
new debt ≤ €2	2.0 percent	new equity ≤ €6	5.0 percent
€2 < new debt ≤ €5	2.5 percent	€6 < new equity ≤ €8	7.0 percent
€5 < new debt	3.0 percent	€8 < new equity	9.0 percent

If the company raises capital according to its target capital structure proportions of 40 percent debt and 60 percent equity, this company faces a marginal cost of capital schedule that is upward sloping, with break points at €5 million, €10 million, €12.5 million, and €13.3 million, as depicted in Figure 2. These break points are determined from the amounts of capital at which the cost changes, calculated as

$$\text{Break point} = \frac{\text{Amount of capital at which the source's cost of capital changes}}{\text{Proportion of new capital raised from the source}} \quad (14)$$

For example, the first break point for debt financing is reached with €2 million/0.4 = €5 million of new capital raised. The first break point attributed to a change in equity cost occurs at €6 million/0.6 = €10 million. Example 13 illustrates a marginal cost of capital schedule with break points and also how the WACC figures in the choice of an optimal capital structure.

EXAMPLE 13**Marginal Cost of Capital Schedule**

Alan Conlon is the CFO of Allied Canadian Breweries Ltd. He wants to determine the capital structure that will result in the lowest cost of capital for Allied. He has access to the following information:

- The minimum rate at which the company can borrow is the 12-month Libor rate plus a premium that varies with the debt-to-capital ratio $[D/(D + E)]$ as given in Table 4.

Table 4 Spreads over Libor for Alternative Debt-to-Capital Ratios

$\frac{D}{D + E}$	Spread (bps)
Less than 0.40	200
0.40 to 0.49	300
0.50 to 0.59	400
0.60 to 0.69	600
0.70 to 0.79	800
0.80 to 0.89	1,000
0.90 or higher	1,200

- The current 12-month Libor is 4.5 percent.
 - The market risk premium is 4 percent, and unlevered beta is 0.9.
 - The risk-free rate is 4.25 percent.
 - The company's tax rate is 36 percent.
- 1 Determine the WACC for 10 percent intervals of the debt-to-capital ratio (i.e., 0.1, 0.2, etc.) based on the information given in Table 4.
 - 2 Recommend a target capital structure based on 10 percent intervals of the debt-to-capital ratio, recommend a target capital structure.

Solution to 1:

The WACC expressed as a function of the capital structure is shown in Table 5.

Table 5 WACC for Alternative Capital Structures

$\frac{D}{D + E}$	β	r_d (Percent)	r_e (Percent)	WACC (Percent)
0.1	0.96	6.5	8.1	7.7
0.2	1.04	6.5	8.4	7.6
0.3	1.15	6.5	8.8	7.4
0.4	1.28	7.5	9.4	7.6

Table 5 (Continued)

$\frac{D}{D + E}$	β	r_d (Percent)	r_e (Percent)	WACC (Percent)
0.5	1.48	8.5	10.2	7.8
0.6	1.76	10.5	11.3	8.6
0.7	2.24	12.5	13.2	9.6
0.8	3.20	14.5	17.1	10.8
0.9	6.08	16.5	28.6	12.4

Solution to 2:

The optimal capital structure is 30 percent debt; based on 10 percent intervals of the debt-to-capital ratio, this will achieve the lowest possible cost of capital.

4.4 Flotation Costs

When a company raises new capital, it generally seeks the assistance of investment bankers. Investment bankers charge the company a fee based on the size and type of offering. This fee is referred to as the **flotation cost**. In the case of debt and preferred stock, we do not usually incorporate flotation costs in the estimated cost of capital because the amount of these costs is quite small, often less than 1 percent.³⁴

However, with equity issuance, the flotation costs may be substantial, so we should consider these when estimating the cost of external equity capital. For example, Inmoo Lee, Scott Lochhead, Jay Ritter, and Quanshui Zhao observe average flotation costs for new equity in the United States of 7.11 percent.³⁵ The flotation costs in other countries differ from the US experience: Thomas Bühner and Christoph Kaserer observe flotation costs around 1.65 percent in Germany, Seth Armitage estimates an average issuance cost of 5.78 percent in the United Kingdom, and Christoph Kaserer and Fabian Steiner observe an average cost of 4.53 for Swiss capital offerings.³⁶ A large part of the differences in costs among these studies is likely attributed to the type of offering; cash underwritten offers, typical in the United States, are generally more expensive than rights offerings, which are common in Europe.

Should we incorporate flotation costs into the cost of capital? There are two views on this topic. One view, which you can find often in textbooks, is to incorporate the flotation costs into the cost of capital. The other view is that flotation costs should not be included in the cost of capital but, rather, incorporated into any valuation analysis as an additional cost of the project.

³⁴ We can incorporate them for these sources by simply treating the flotation costs as an outlay, hence reducing proceeds from the source.

³⁵ Inmoo Lee, Scott Lochhead, Jay R. Ritter, and Quanshui Zhao, "The Costs of Raising Capital," *Journal of Financial Research*, Vol. 19 (Spring, 1996), pp. 59–71.

³⁶ Thomas Bühner and Christoph Kaserer, "External Financing Costs and Economies of Scale in Investment Banking: The Case of Seasoned Equity Offerings in Germany," *European Financial Management*, Vol. 9 (June 2002), pp. 249; Seth Armitage, "The Direct Costs of UK Rights Issues and Open Offers," *European Financial Management*, Vol. 6 (2000), pp. 57–68; Christoph Kaserer and Fabian Steiner, "The Cost of Raising Capital—New Evidence from Seasoned Equity Offerings in Switzerland," Technische Universität München working paper (February 2004).

Consistent with the first view, we can specify flotation costs in monetary terms, as an amount per share or as a percentage of the share price. With flotation costs in monetary terms on a per share basis, F , the cost of external equity is

$$r_e = \left(\frac{D_1}{P_0 - F} \right) + g \quad (15)$$

As a percentage applied against the price per share, the cost of external equity is

$$r_e = \left(\frac{D_1}{P_0(1 - f)} \right) + g \quad (16)$$

where f is the flotation cost as a percentage of the issue price.

Suppose a company has a current dividend of \$2 per share, a current price of \$40 per share, and an expected growth rate of 5 percent. The cost of internally generated equity would be 10.25 percent:

$$r_e = \left(\frac{\$2(1 + 0.05)}{\$40} \right) + 0.05 = 0.0525 + 0.05 = 0.1025, \text{ or } 10.25 \text{ percent}$$

If the flotation costs are 4 percent of the issuance, the cost of externally generated equity would be slightly higher at 10.469 percent:

$$r_e = \left(\frac{\$2(1 + 0.05)}{\$40(1 - 0.04)} \right) + 0.05 = 0.05469 + 0.05 = 0.1047, \text{ or } 10.47 \text{ percent}$$

The problem with this approach is that the flotation costs are a cash flow at the initiation of the project and affect the value of any project by reducing the initial cash flow. Adjusting the cost of capital for flotation costs is incorrect because by doing so, we are adjusting the present value of the future cash flows by a fixed percentage—in the above example, a difference of 22 basis points, which does not necessarily equate to the present value of the flotation costs.³⁷

The alternative and recommended approach is to make the adjustment to the cash flows in the valuation computation. For example, consider a project that requires a €60,000 initial cash outlay and is expected to produce cash flows of €10,000 each year for 10 years. Suppose the company's marginal tax rate is 40 percent and that the before-tax cost of debt is 5 percent. Furthermore, suppose that the company's dividend next period is €1, the current price of the stock is €20, and the expected growth rate is 5 percent so that the cost of equity using the dividend discount model is $(€1/€20) + 0.05 = 0.10$ or 10 percent. Assume the company will finance the project with 40 percent debt and 60 percent equity. Table 6 summarizes the information on the component costs of capital.

Table 6 After-Tax Costs of Debt and Equity

Source of Capital	Amount Raised (€)	Proportion	Marginal After-Tax Cost
Debt	24,000	0.40	$0.05(1 - 0.4) = 0.03$
Equity	36,000	0.60	0.10

³⁷ This argument is made by John R. Ezzell and R. Burr Porter ["Flotation Costs and the Weighted Average Cost of Capital," *Journal of Financial and Quantitative Analysis*, Vol. 11, No. 3 (September 1976), pp. 403–413]. They argue that the correct treatment is to deduct flotation costs as part of the valuation as one of the initial-period cash flows.

The weighted average cost of capital is 7.2 percent calculated as $0.40(3 \text{ percent}) + 0.60(10 \text{ percent})$. Ignoring flotation costs for the moment, the net present value (NPV) of this project is

$$\text{NPV} = \text{€}69,591 - \text{€}60,000 = \text{€}9,591$$

If the flotation costs are, say, 5 percent of the new equity capital, the flotation costs are €1,800. The net present value considering flotation costs is

$$\text{NPV} = \text{€}69,591 - \text{€}60,000 - \text{€}1,800 = \text{€}7,791$$

If flotation costs are not tax deductible, or $\text{€}69,591 - \text{€}60,000 - \text{€}1,800(0.6) = \text{€}8,511$, if flotation costs are tax deductible.

If, instead of considering the flotation costs as part of the cash flows, we adjust the cost of equity, the cost of capital is 7.3578 percent and the NPV is

$$\text{NPV} = \text{€}69,089 - \text{€}60,000 = \text{€}9,089$$

As you can see, we arrive at different assessments of value using these two methods.

So, if it is preferred to deduct the flotation costs as part of the net present value calculation, why do we see the adjustment in the cost of capital so often in textbooks? The first reason is that it is often difficult to identify particular financing associated with a project. Using the adjustment for the flotation costs in the cost of capital may be useful if specific project financing cannot be identified. Second, by adjusting the cost of capital for the flotation costs, it is easier to demonstrate how costs of financing a company change as a company exhausts internally generated equity (i.e., retained earnings) and switches to externally generated equity (i.e., a new stock issue).

4.5 What Do CFOs Do?

In this reading, we have introduced you to methods that may be used to estimate the cost of capital for a company or a project. What do companies actually use when making investment decisions? In a survey of a large number of US company CFOs, John Graham and Campbell Harvey asked about the methods that companies actually use.³⁸ Their survey revealed the following:

- The most popular method for estimating the cost of equity is the capital asset pricing model.
- Few companies use the dividend cash flow model to estimate a cost of equity.
- Publicly traded companies are more likely to use the capital asset pricing model than are private companies.
- In evaluating projects, the majority use a single company cost of capital, but a large portion apply some type of risk adjustment for individual projects.

The survey also reveals that the single-factor capital asset pricing model is the most popular method for estimating the cost of equity, though the next most popular methods, respectively, are average stock returns and multifactor return models. The lack of popularity of the dividend discount model indicates that this approach, which was once favored, has lost its following in practice.³⁹

³⁸ John Graham and Campbell Harvey, "How Do CFOs Make Capital Budgeting and Capital Structure Decisions," *Journal of Applied Corporate Finance*, Vol. 15, No. 1 (Spring 2002), pp. 8–23.

³⁹ A survey published in 1982 by Lawrence Gitman and V. Mercurio ["Cost of Capital Techniques Used by Major US Firms: Survey and Analysis of Fortune's 1000," *Financial Management*, Vol. 14, No. 4 (Winter 1982), pp. 21–29] indicated that fewer than 30 percent used the CAPM model in the estimation of the cost of equity.

In a survey of publicly traded multinational European companies, Franck Bancel and Usha Mittoo provide evidence consistent with the Graham and Harvey survey.⁴⁰ They find that over 70 percent of companies use the CAPM to determine the cost of equity; this compares with the 73.5 percent of US companies that use the CAPM. In a survey of both publicly traded and private European companies, Dirk Brounen, Abe de Jong, and Kees Koedijk confirm the result of Graham and Harvey that larger companies are more likely to use the more sophisticated methods, such as CAPM, in estimating the cost of equity.⁴¹ Brounen, Jong, and Koedijk find that the popularity of the use of CAPM is less for their sample (ranging from 34 percent to 55.6 percent, depending on the country) than for the other two surveys, which may reflect the inclusion of smaller, private companies in the latter sample.

We learn from the survey evidence that the CAPM is a popular method for estimating the cost of equity capital and that it is used less by smaller, private companies. This latter result is not surprising because of the difficulty in estimating systematic risk in cases in which the company's equity is not publicly traded.

SUMMARY

In this reading, we provided an overview of the techniques used to calculate the cost of capital for companies and projects. We examined the weighted average cost of capital, discussing the methods commonly used to estimate the component costs of capital and the weights applied to these components. The international dimension of the cost of capital, as well as key factors influencing the cost of capital, were also analyzed.

- The weighted average cost of capital is a weighted average of the after-tax marginal costs of each source of capital: $WACC = w_d r_d (1 - t) + w_p r_p + w_e r_e$
- An analyst uses the WACC in valuation. For example, the WACC is used to value a project using the net present value method:

$$NPV = \text{Present value of inflows} - \text{Present value of the outflows}$$

- The before-tax cost of debt is generally estimated by means of one of the two methods: yield to maturity or bond rating.
- The yield-to-maturity method of estimating the before-tax cost of debt uses the familiar bond valuation equation. Assuming semi-annual coupon payments, the equation is

$$P_0 = \frac{PMT_1}{\left(1 + \frac{r_d}{2}\right)} + \dots + \frac{PMT_n}{\left(1 + \frac{r_d}{2}\right)^n} + \frac{FV}{\left(1 + \frac{r_d}{2}\right)^n} = \left(\sum_{t=1}^n \frac{PMT_t}{\left(1 + \frac{r_d}{2}\right)^t} \right) + \frac{FV}{\left(1 + \frac{r_d}{2}\right)^n}$$

We solve for the six-month yield ($r_d/2$) and then annualize it to arrive at the before-tax cost of debt, r_d .

⁴⁰ Franck Bancel and Usha Mittoo, "The Determinants of Capital Structure Choice: A Survey of European Firms," *Financial Management*, Vol. 44, No. 4 (Winter 2004).

⁴¹ Dirk Brounen, Abe de Jong, and Kees Koedijk, "Corporate Finance in Europe: Confronting Theory with Practice," *Financial Management*, Vol. 44, No. 4 (Winter 2004).

- Because interest payments are generally tax-deductible, the after-tax cost is the true, effective cost of debt to the company. If a current yield or bond rating is not available, such as in the case of a private company without rated debt or a project, the estimate of the cost of debt becomes more challenging.
- The cost of preferred stock is the preferred stock dividend divided by the current preferred stock price:

$$r_p = \frac{D_p}{P_p}$$

- The cost of equity is the rate of return required by a company's common stockholders. We estimate this cost using the CAPM (or its variants) or the dividend discount method.
- The CAPM is the approach most commonly used to calculate the cost of common stock. The three components needed to calculate the cost of common stock are the risk-free rate, the equity risk premium, and beta:

$$E(R_i) = R_F + \beta_i [E(R_M) - R_F]$$

- When estimating the cost of equity capital using the CAPM when we do not have publicly traded equity, we may be able to use the pure-play method in which we estimate the unlevered beta for a company with similar business risk, β_U .

$$\beta_{U, \text{comparable}} = \frac{\beta_{L, \text{comparable}}}{\left[1 + \left((1 - t_{\text{comparable}}) \frac{D_{\text{comparable}}}{E_{\text{comparable}}} \right) \right]}$$

and then lever this beta to reflect the financial risk of the project or company:

$$\beta_{L, \text{project}} = \beta_{U, \text{comparable}} \left[1 + \left((1 - t_{\text{project}}) \frac{D_{\text{project}}}{E_{\text{project}}} \right) \right]$$

- It is often the case that country and foreign exchange risk are diversified so that we can use the estimated β in the CAPM analysis. However, in the case in which these risks cannot be diversified away, we can adjust our measure of systematic risk by a country equity premium to reflect this nondiversified risk:

$$\text{Country equity premium} = \text{Sovereign yield spread} \left[\frac{\text{Annualized standard deviation of equity index}}{\text{Annualized standard deviation of the sovereign bond market in terms of the developed market currency}} \right]$$

- The dividend discount model approach is an alternative approach to calculating the cost of equity, whereby the cost of equity is estimated as follows:

$$r_e = \frac{D_1}{P_0} + g$$

- We can estimate the growth rate in the dividend discount model by using published forecasts of analysts or by estimating the sustainable growth rate:

$$g = (1 - D/\text{EPS})\text{ROE}$$

- In estimating the cost of equity, an alternative to the CAPM and dividend discount approaches is the bond yield plus risk premium approach. In this approach, we estimate the before-tax cost of debt and add a risk premium that reflects the additional risk associated with the company's equity.
- The marginal cost of capital schedule is a graph plotting the new funds raised by a company on the x -axis and the cost of capital on the y -axis. The cost of capital is level to the point at which one of the costs of capital changes, such as when the company bumps up against a debt covenant, requiring it to use another form of capital. We calculate a break point using information on when the different sources' costs change and the proportions that the company uses when it raises additional capital:

$$\text{Break point} = \frac{\text{Amount of capital at which the source's cost of capital changes}}{\text{Proportion of new capital raised from the source}}$$

- Flotation costs are costs incurred in the process of raising additional capital. The preferred method of including these costs in the analysis is as an initial cash flow in the valuation analysis.
- Survey evidence tells us that the CAPM method is the most popular method used by companies in estimating the cost of equity. The CAPM is more popular with larger, publicly traded companies, which is understandable considering the additional analyses and assumptions required in estimating systematic risk for a private company or project.

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

- 1 The cost of equity is equal to the:
 - A expected market return.
 - B rate of return required by stockholders.
 - C cost of retained earnings plus dividends.
- 2 Which of the following statements is correct?
 - A The appropriate tax rate to use in the adjustment of the before-tax cost of debt to determine the after-tax cost of debt is the average tax rate because interest is deductible against the company's entire taxable income.
 - B For a given company, the after-tax cost of debt is generally less than both the cost of preferred equity and the cost of common equity.
 - C For a given company, the investment opportunity schedule is upward sloping because as a company invests more in capital projects, the returns from investing increase.
- 3 Using the dividend discount model, what is the cost of equity capital for Zeller Mining if the company will pay a dividend of C\$2.30 next year, has a payout ratio of 30 percent, a return on equity (ROE) of 15 percent, and a stock price of C\$45?
 - A 9.61 percent.
 - B 10.50 percent.
 - C 15.61 percent.
- 4 Dot.Com has determined that it could issue \$1,000 face value bonds with an 8 percent coupon paid semi-annually and a five-year maturity at \$900 per bond. If Dot.Com's marginal tax rate is 38 percent, its after-tax cost of debt is *closest* to:
 - A 6.2 percent.
 - B 6.4 percent.
 - C 6.6 percent.
- 5 The cost of debt can be determined using the yield-to-maturity and the bond rating approaches. If the bond rating approach is used, the:
 - A coupon is the yield.
 - B yield is based on the interest coverage ratio.
 - C company is rated and the rating can be used to assess the credit default spread of the company's debt.
- 6 Morgan Insurance Ltd. issued a fixed-rate perpetual preferred stock three years ago and placed it privately with institutional investors. The stock was issued at \$25 per share with a \$1.75 dividend. If the company were to issue preferred stock today, the yield would be 6.5 percent. The stock's current value is:
 - A \$25.00.
 - B \$26.92.
 - C \$37.31.
- 7 A financial analyst at Buckco Ltd. wants to compute the company's weighted average cost of capital (WACC) using the dividend discount model. The analyst has gathered the following data:

Before-tax cost of new debt	8 percent
Tax rate	40 percent
Target debt-to-equity ratio	0.8033
Stock price	\$30
Next year's dividend	\$1.50
Estimated growth rate	7 percent

Buckco's WACC is *closest* to:

- A 8 percent.
 - B 9 percent.
 - C 12 percent.
- 8 The Gearing Company has an after-tax cost of debt capital of 4 percent, a cost of preferred stock of 8 percent, a cost of equity capital of 10 percent, and a weighted average cost of capital of 7 percent. Gearing intends to maintain its current capital structure as it raises additional capital. In making its capital-budgeting decisions for the average-risk project, the relevant cost of capital is:
- A 4 percent.
 - B 7 percent.
 - C 8 percent.
- 9 Fran McClure of Alba Advisers is estimating the cost of capital of Frontier Corporation as part of her valuation analysis of Frontier. McClure will be using this estimate, along with projected cash flows from Frontier's new projects, to estimate the effect of these new projects on the value of Frontier. McClure has gathered the following information on Frontier Corporation:

	Current Year (\$)	Forecasted for Next Year (\$)
Book value of debt	50	50
Market value of debt	62	63
Book value of shareholders' equity	55	58
Market value of shareholders' equity	210	220

The weights that McClure should apply in estimating Frontier's cost of capital for debt and equity are, respectively:

- A $w_d = 0.200$; $w_e = 0.800$.
 - B $w_d = 0.185$; $w_e = 0.815$.
 - C $w_d = 0.223$; $w_e = 0.777$.
- 10 Wang Securities had a long-term stable debt-to-equity ratio of 0.65. Recent bank borrowing for expansion into South America raised the ratio to 0.75. The increased leverage has what effect on the asset beta and equity beta of the company?
- A The asset beta and the equity beta will both rise.
 - B The asset beta will remain the same and the equity beta will rise.
 - C The asset beta will remain the same and the equity beta will decline.
- 11 Brandon Wiene is a financial analyst covering the beverage industry. He is evaluating the impact of DEF Beverage's new product line of flavored waters. DEF currently has a debt-to-equity ratio of 0.6. The new product line would be financed with \$50 million of debt and \$100 million of equity. In estimating the valuation impact of this new product line on DEF's value, Wiene has estimated

- the equity beta and asset beta of comparable companies. In calculating the equity beta for the product line, Wiene is intending to use DEF's existing capital structure when converting the asset beta into a project beta. Which of the following statements is correct?
- A Using DEF's debt-to-equity ratio of 0.6 is appropriate in calculating the new product line's equity beta.
 - B Using DEF's debt-to-equity ratio of 0.6 is not appropriate, but rather the debt-to-equity ratio of the new product, 0.5, is appropriate to use in calculating the new product line's equity beta.
 - C Wiene should use the new debt-to-equity ratio of DEF that would result from the additional \$50 million debt and \$100 million equity in calculating the new product line's equity beta.
- 12 Trumpit Resorts Company currently has 1.2 million common shares of stock outstanding and the stock has a beta of 2.2. It also has \$10 million face value of bonds that have five years remaining to maturity and 8 percent coupon with semi-annual payments, and are priced to yield 13.65 percent. If Trumpit issues up to \$2.5 million of new bonds, the bonds will be priced at par and have a yield of 13.65 percent; if it issues bonds beyond \$2.5 million, the expected yield on the entire issuance will be 16 percent. Trumpit has learned that it can issue new common stock at \$10 a share. The current risk-free rate of interest is 3 percent and the expected market return is 10 percent. Trumpit's marginal tax rate is 30 percent. If Trumpit raises \$7.5 million of new capital while maintaining the same debt-to-equity ratio, its weighted average cost of capital is *closest* to:
- A 14.5 percent.
 - B 15.5 percent.
 - C 16.5 percent.

The following information relates to Questions 13–18¹

Jurgen Knudsen has been hired to provide industry expertise to Henrik Sandell, CFA, an analyst for a pension plan managing a global large-cap fund internally. Sandell is concerned about one of the fund's larger holdings, auto parts manufacturer Kruspa AB. Kruspa currently operates in 80 countries, with the previous year's global revenues at €5.6 billion. Recently, Kruspa's CFO announced plans for expansion into Trutan, a country with a developing economy. Sandell worries that this expansion will change the company's risk profile and wonders if he should recommend a sale of the position.

Sandell provides Knudsen with the basic information. Kruspa's global annual free cash flow to the firm is €500 million and earnings are €400 million. Sandell estimates that cash flow will level off at a 2 percent rate of growth. Sandell also estimates that Kruspa's after-tax free cash flow to the firm on the Trutan project for next three years is, respectively, €48 million, €52 million, and €54.4 million. Kruspa recently announced a dividend of €4.00 per share of stock. For the initial analysis, Sandell requests that Knudsen ignore possible currency fluctuations. He expects the Trutanese plant to sell only to customers within Trutan for the first three years. Knudsen is asked to evaluate Kruspa's planned financing of the required €100 million with a €80 million public offering of 10-year debt in Sweden and the remainder with an equity offering.

¹ The Level I exam uses only independent questions. This minicase is intended as a learning exercise.

Additional information:

Equity risk premium, Sweden	4.82 percent
Risk-free rate of interest, Sweden	4.25 percent
Industry debt-to-equity ratio	0.3
Market value of Kruspa's debt	€900 million
Market value of Kruspa's equity	€2.4 billion
Kruspa's equity beta	1.3
Kruspa's before-tax cost of debt	9.25 percent
Trutan credit A2 country risk premium	1.88 percent
Corporate tax rate	37.5 percent
Interest payments each year	Level

- 13** Using the capital asset pricing model, Kruspa's cost of equity capital for its typical project is *closest* to:
- A 7.62 percent.
 - B 10.52 percent.
 - C 12.40 percent.
- 14** Sandell is interested in the weighted average cost of capital of Kruspa AB prior to its investing in the Trutan project. This weighted average cost of capital (WACC) is *closest* to:
- A 7.65 percent.
 - B 9.23 percent.
 - C 10.17 percent.
- 15** In his estimation of the project's cost of capital, Sandell would like to use the asset beta of Kruspa as a base in his calculations. The estimated asset beta of Kruspa prior to the Trutan project is *closest* to:
- A 1.053.
 - B 1.110.
 - C 1.327.
- 16** Sandell is performing a sensitivity analysis of the effect of the new project on the company's cost of capital. If the Trutan project has the same asset risk as Kruspa, the estimated project beta for the Trutan project, if it is financed 80 percent with debt, is *closest* to:
- A 1.300.
 - B 2.635.
 - C 3.686.
- 17** As part of the sensitivity analysis of the effect of the new project on the company's cost of capital, Sandell is estimating the cost of equity of the Trutan project considering that the Trutan project requires a country equity premium to capture the risk of the project. The cost of equity for the project in this case is *closest* to:
- A 10.52 percent.
 - B 19.91 percent.
 - C 28.95 percent.

- 18 In his report, Sandell would like to discuss the sensitivity of the project's net present value to the estimation of the cost of equity. The Trutan project's net present value calculated using the equity beta without and with the country risk premium are, respectively:
- A €26 million and €24 million.
 - B €28 million and €25 million.
 - C €30 million and €27 million.

The following information relates to Questions 19–22²

Boris Duarte, CFA, covers initial public offerings for Zellweger Analytics, an independent research firm specializing in global small-cap equities. He has been asked to evaluate the upcoming new issue of TagOn, a US-based business intelligence software company. The industry has grown at 26 percent per year for the previous three years. Large companies dominate the market, but sizable “pure-play” companies such as Relevant, Ltd., ABJ, Inc., and Opus Software Pvt. Ltd also compete. Each of these competitors is domiciled in a different country, but they all have shares of stock that trade on the US NASDAQ. The debt ratio of the industry has risen slightly in recent years.

Company	Sales in Millions (\$)	Market Value Equity in Millions (\$)	Market Value Debt in Millions (\$)	Equity Beta	Tax Rate	Share Price (\$)
Relevant Ltd.	752	3,800	0.0	1.702	23 percent	42
ABJ, Inc.	843	2,150	6.5	2.800	23 percent	24
Opus Software Pvt. Ltd.	211	972	13.0	3.400	23 percent	13

Duarte uses the information from the preliminary prospectus for TagOn's initial offering. The company intends to issue 1 million new shares. In his conversation with the investment bankers for the deal, he concludes the offering price will be between \$7 and \$12. The current capital structure of TagOn consists of a \$2.4 million five-year non-callable bond issue and 1 million common shares. Other information that Duarte has gathered:

Currently outstanding bonds	\$2.4 million five-year bonds, coupon of 12.5 percent, with a market value of \$2.156 million
Risk-free rate of interest	5.25 percent
Estimated equity risk premium	7 percent
Tax rate	23 percent

- 19 The asset betas for Relevant, ABJ, and Opus, respectively, are:
- A 1.70, 2.52, and 2.73.
 - B 1.70, 2.79, and 3.37.
 - C 1.70, 2.81, and 3.44.

2 The Level I exam uses only independent questions. This minicase is intended as a learning exercise.

- 20 The average asset beta for the pure players in this industry, Relevant, ABJ, and Opus, weighted by market value of equity is *closest* to:
- A 1.67.
 - B 1.97.
 - C 2.27.
- 21 Using the capital asset pricing model, the cost of equity capital for a company in this industry with a debt-to-equity ratio of 0.01, asset beta of 2.27, and a marginal tax rate of 23 percent is *closest* to:
- A 17 percent.
 - B 21 percent.
 - C 24 percent.
- 22 The marginal cost of capital for TagOn, based on an average asset beta of 2.27 for the industry and assuming that new stock can be issued at \$8 per share, is *closest* to:
- A 20.5 percent.
 - B 21.0 percent.
 - C 21.5 percent.

- 23 Two years ago, a company issued \$20 million in long-term bonds at par value with a coupon rate of 9 percent. The company has decided to issue an additional \$20 million in bonds and expects the new issue to be priced at par value with a coupon rate of 7 percent. The company has no other debt outstanding and has a tax rate of 40 percent. To compute the company's weighted average cost of capital, the appropriate after-tax cost of debt is *closest* to:
- A 4.2%.
 - B 4.8%.
 - C 5.4%.
- 24 An analyst gathered the following information about a company and the market:

Current market price per share of common stock	\$28.00
Most recent dividend per share paid on common stock (D_0)	\$2.00
Expected dividend payout rate	40%
Expected return on equity (ROE)	15%
Beta for the common stock	1.3
Expected rate of return on the market portfolio	13%
Risk-free rate of return	4%

Using the discounted cash flow (DCF) approach, the cost of retained earnings for the company is *closest* to:

- A 15.7%.
 - B 16.1%.
 - C 16.8%.
- 25 An analyst gathered the following information about a company and the market:

Current market price per share of common stock	\$28.00
Most recent dividend per share paid on common stock (D_0)	\$2.00
Expected dividend payout rate	40%
Expected return on equity (ROE)	15%
Beta for the common stock	1.3
Expected rate of return on the market portfolio	13%
Risk-free rate of return	4%

Using the Capital Asset Pricing Model (CAPM) approach, the cost of retained earnings for the company is *closest* to:

- A 13.6%.
 - B 15.7%.
 - C 16.1%.
- 26 An analyst gathered the following information about a private company and its publicly traded competitor:

Comparable Companies	Tax Rate (%)	Debt/Equity	Equity Beta
Private company	30.0	1.00	N.A.
Public company	35.0	0.90	1.75

Using the pure-play method, the estimated equity beta for the private company is *closest* to:

- A 1.029.
 - B 1.104.
 - C 1.877.
- 27 An analyst gathered the following information about the capital markets in the United States and in Paragon, a developing country.

Selected Market Information (%)	
Yield on US 10-year Treasury bond	4.5
Yield on Paragon 10-year government bond	10.5
Annualized standard deviation of Paragon stock index	35.0
Annualized standard deviation of Paragon dollar-denominated government bond	25.0

Based on the analyst's data, the estimated country equity premium for Paragon is *closest* to:

- A 4.29%.
- B 6.00%.
- C 8.40%.

SOLUTIONS

- 1 B is correct. The cost of equity is defined as the rate of return required by stockholders.
- 2 B is correct. Debt is generally less costly than preferred or common stock. The cost of debt is further reduced if interest expense is tax deductible.
- 3 C is correct. First calculate the growth rate using the sustainable growth calculation, and then calculate the cost of equity using the rearranged dividend discount model:

$$g = (1 - \text{Dividend payout ratio})(\text{Return on equity}) = (1 - 0.30)(15\%) = 10.5\%$$

$$r_e = (D_1/P_0) + g = (\$2.30/\$45) + 10.50\% = 15.61\%$$

- 4 C is correct. $FV = \$1,000$; $PMT = \$40$; $N = 10$; $PV = \$900$

Solve for i . The six-month yield, i , is 5.3149%

$$\text{YTM} = 5.3149\% \times 2 = 10.62985\%$$

$$r_d(1 - t) = 10.62985\%(1 - 0.38) = 6.5905\%$$

- 5 C is correct. The bond rating approach depends on knowledge of the company's rating and can be compared with yields on bonds in the public market.
- 6 B is correct. The company can issue preferred stock at 6.5%.

$$P_p = \$1.75/0.065 = \$26.92$$

- 7 B is correct.

$$\text{Cost of equity} = D_1/P_0 + g = \$1.50/\$30 + 7\% = 5\% + 7\% = 12\%$$

$$D/(D + E) = 0.8033/1.8033 = 0.445$$

$$\text{WACC} = [(0.445)(0.08)(1 - 0.4)] + [(0.555)(0.12)] = 8.8\%$$

- 8 B is correct. The weighted average cost of capital, using weights derived from the current capital structure, is the best estimate of the cost of capital for the average-risk project of a company.
- 9 C is correct.

$$w_d = \$63/(\$220 + 63) = 0.223$$

$$w_e = \$220/(\$220 + 63) = 0.777$$

- 10 B is correct. Asset risk does not change with a higher debt-to-equity ratio. Equity risk rises with higher debt.
- 11 B is correct. The debt-to-equity ratio of the new product should be used when making the adjustment from the asset beta, derived from the comparables, to the equity beta of the new product.
- 12 B is correct.

Capital structure:

Market value of debt: $FV = \$10,000,000$, $PMT = \$400,000$, $N = 10$,

$I/YR = 13.65\%$. Solving for PV gives the answer $\$7,999,688$.

Market value of equity: 1.2 million shares outstanding at $\$10 = \$12,000,000$

Market value of debt	\$7,999,688	40%
Market value of equity	12,000,000	60%
Total capital	\$19,999,688	100%

To raise \$7.5 million of new capital while maintaining the same capital structure, the company would issue \$7.5 million \times 40% = \$3.0 million in bonds, which results in a before-tax rate of 16 percent.

$$r_d(1 - t) = 0.16(1 - 0.3) = 0.112 \text{ or } 11.2\%$$

$$r_e = 0.03 + 2.2(0.10 - 0.03) = 0.184 \text{ or } 18.4\%$$

$$\text{WACC} = [0.40(0.112)] + [0.6(0.184)] = 0.0448 + 0.1104 = 0.1552 \text{ or } 15.52\%$$

13 B is correct.

$$r_e = 0.0425 + (1.3)(0.0482) = 0.1052 \text{ or } 10.52\%$$

14 B is correct.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{WACC} &= [(\text{€}900/\text{€}3300) .0925 (1 - 0.375)] + [(\text{€}2400/\text{€}3300)(0.1052)] \\ &= 0.0923 \text{ or } 9.23\% \end{aligned}$$

15 A is correct.

$$\text{Asset beta} = \text{Unlevered beta} = 1.3 / (1 + [(1 - 0.375)(\text{€}900/\text{€}2400)]) = 1.053$$

16 C is correct.

$$\text{Project beta} = 1.053 \{1 + [(1 - 0.375)(\text{€}80/\text{€}20)]\} = 1.053 \{3.5\} = 3.686$$

17 C is correct.

$$r_e = 0.0425 + 3.686(0.0482 + 0.0188) = 0.2895 \text{ or } 28.95\%$$

18 C is correct.

Cost of equity without the country risk premium:

$$r_e = 0.0425 + 3.686(0.0482) = 0.2202 \text{ or } 22.02\%$$

Cost of equity with the country risk premium:

$$r_e = 0.0425 + 3.686(0.0482 + 0.0188) = 0.2895 \text{ or } 28.95\%$$

Weighted average cost of capital without the country risk premium:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{WACC} &= [0.80(0.0925)(1 - 0.375)] + [0.20(0.2202)] = 0.04625 + 0.04404 \\ &= 0.09038 \text{ or } 9.03 \text{ percent} \end{aligned}$$

Weighted average cost of capital with the country risk premium:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{WACC} &= [0.80(0.0925)(1 - 0.375)] + [0.20(0.2895)] = 0.04625 + 0.0579 \\ &= 0.1042 \text{ or } 10.42 \text{ percent} \end{aligned}$$

NPV without the country risk premium:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{NPV} &= \frac{\text{€}48 \text{ million}}{(1 + 0.0903)^1} + \frac{\text{€}52 \text{ million}}{(1 + 0.0903)^2} + \frac{\text{€}54.4 \text{ million}}{(1 + 0.0903)^3} - \text{€}100 \text{ million} \\ &= \text{€}44.03 \text{ million} + 43.74 \text{ million} + 41.97 \text{ million} - \text{€}100 \text{ million} \\ &= \text{€}29.74 \text{ million} \end{aligned}$$

NPV with the country risk premium:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{NPV} &= \frac{\text{€48 million}}{(1 + 0.1042)^1} + \frac{\text{€52 million}}{(1 + 0.1042)^2} + \frac{\text{€54.4 million}}{(1 + 0.1042)^3} - \text{€100 million} \\ &= \text{€43.47 million} + \text{€42.65 million} + \text{€40.41 million} - \text{€100 million} \\ &= \text{€26.53 million} \end{aligned}$$

19 B is correct.

$$\text{Asset betas: } \beta_{\text{equity}}/[1 + (1 - t)(D/E)]$$

$$\text{Relevant} = 1.702/[1 + (0.77)(0)] = 1.702$$

$$\text{ABJ} = 2.8/[1 + (0.77)(0.003)] = 2.7918$$

$$\text{Opus} = 3.4/1 + [(0.77)(0.013)] = 3.3663$$

20 C is correct.

Weights are determined based on relative market values:

Pure-Play	Market Value of Equity in Millions	Proportion of Total
Relevant	\$3,800	0.5490
ABJ	2,150	0.3106
Opus	972	0.1404
Total	\$6,922	1.0000

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Weighted average beta} &= (0.5490)(1.702) + (0.3106)(2.7918) + (0.1404)(3.3572) \\ &= 2.27. \end{aligned}$$

21 B is correct.

$$\text{Asset beta} = 2.27$$

$$\text{Levered beta} = 2.27 \{1 + [(1 - 0.23)(0.01)]\} = 2.2875$$

$$\text{Cost of equity capital} = 0.0525 + (2.2875)(0.07) = 0.2126 \text{ or } 21.26\%$$

22 C is correct.

$$\text{For debt: } FV = 2,400,000; PV = 2,156,000; n = 10; PMT = 150,000$$

$$\text{Solve for } i. i = 0.07748. \text{ YTM} = 15.5\%$$

$$\text{Before-tax cost of debt} = 15.5\%$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Market value of equity} &= 1 \text{ million shares outstanding} + 1 \text{ million newly issued shares} \\ &= 2 \text{ million shares at } \$8 = \$16 \text{ million} \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{Total market capitalization} = \$2.156 \text{ million} + \$16 \text{ million} = \$18.156 \text{ million}$$

$$\text{Levered beta} = 2.27 \{1 + [(1 - 0.23)(2.156/16)]\} = 2.27 (1.1038) = 2.5055$$

$$\text{Cost of equity} = 0.0525 + 2.5055 (0.07) = 0.2279 \text{ or } 22.79\%$$

$$\text{Debt weight} = \$2.156/\$18.156 = 0.1187$$

$$\text{Equity weight} = \$16/\$18.156 = 0.8813$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{TagOn's MCC} &= [(0.1187)(0.155)(1 - 0.23)] + [(0.8813)(0.2279)] \\ &= 0.01417 + 0.20083 \\ &= 0.2150 \text{ or } 21.50\% \end{aligned}$$

- 23** A is correct. The relevant cost is the marginal cost of debt. The before-tax marginal cost of debt can be estimated by the yield to maturity on a comparable outstanding. After adjusting for tax, the after-tax cost is $7(1 - 0.4) = 7(0.6) = 4.2\%$.
- 24** C is correct. The expected return is the sum of the expected dividend yield plus expected growth. The expected growth is $(1 - 0.4)15\% = 9\%$. The expected dividend yield is $\$2.18/\$28 = 7.8\%$. The sum is 16.8%.
- 25** B is correct. Using the CAPM approach, $4\% + 1.3(9\%) = 15.7\%$.
- 26** C is correct. Inferring the asset beta for the public company: unlevered beta = $1.75/[1 + (1 - 0.35)(0.90)] = 1.104$. Relevering to reflect the target debt ratio of the private firm: levered beta = $1.104 \times [1 + (1 - 0.30)(1.00)] = 1.877$.
- 27** C is correct. The country equity premium can be estimated as the sovereign yield spread times the volatility of the country's stock market relative to its bond market. Paragon's equity premium is $(10.5\% - 4.5\%) \times (35\%/25\%) = 6\% \times 1.4 = 8.40\%$.

CORPORATE FINANCE STUDY SESSION

11

Corporate Finance (2)

This study session covers how companies make use of leverage and manage their working capital to meet short-term operational needs. The various types of leverage (operating, financial, total), measures of leverage, and how leverage affects a company's earnings and financial ratios are examined. A discussion then follows on the different types of working capital and the management issues associated with each. The session concludes with techniques for assessing the effectiveness of working capital management.

READING ASSIGNMENTS

- | | |
|-------------------|---|
| Reading 36 | Measures of Leverage
by Pamela Peterson Drake, PhD, CFA, Raj Aggarwal, PhD,
CFA, Cynthia Harrington, CFA, and Adam Kobor, PhD,
CFA |
| Reading 37 | Working Capital Management
by Edgar A. Norton, Jr., PhD, CFA, Kenneth L. Parkinson,
MBA, CCM, and Pamela Peterson Drake, PhD, CFA |

Measures of Leverage

by Pamela Peterson Drake, PhD, CFA, Raj Aggarwal, PhD, CFA,
Cynthia Harrington, CFA, and Adam Kabor, PhD, CFA

Pamela Peterson Drake, PhD, CFA, is at James Madison University (USA). Raj Aggarwal, PhD, CFA (USA). Cynthia Harrington, CFA, is at teamyou.co (USA). Adam Kabor, PhD, CFA, is at New York University (USA).

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Mastery	The candidate should be able to:
<input type="checkbox"/>	a. define and explain leverage, business risk, sales risk, operating risk, and financial risk and classify a risk;
<input type="checkbox"/>	b. calculate and interpret the degree of operating leverage, the degree of financial leverage, and the degree of total leverage;
<input type="checkbox"/>	c. analyze the effect of financial leverage on a company's net income and return on equity;
<input type="checkbox"/>	d. calculate the breakeven quantity of sales and determine the company's net income at various sales levels;
<input type="checkbox"/>	e. calculate and interpret the operating breakeven quantity of sales.

INTRODUCTION

1

This reading presents elementary topics in leverage. **Leverage** is the use of fixed costs in a company's cost structure. Fixed costs that are operating costs (such as depreciation or rent) create operating leverage. Fixed costs that are financial costs (such as interest expense) create financial leverage.

Analysts refer to the use of fixed costs as leverage because fixed costs act as a fulcrum for the company's earnings. Leverage can magnify earnings both up and down. The profits of highly leveraged companies might soar with small upturns in revenue. But the reverse is also true: Small downturns in revenue may lead to losses.

Analysts need to understand a company's use of leverage for three main reasons. First, the degree of leverage is an important component in assessing a company's risk and return characteristics. Second, analysts may be able to discern information about a company's business and future prospects from management's decisions about the use of operating and financial leverage. Knowing how to interpret these signals also helps the analyst evaluate the quality of management's decisions. Third, the valuation of a

company requires forecasting future cash flows and assessing the risk associated with those cash flows. Understanding a company's use of leverage should help in forecasting cash flows and in selecting an appropriate discount rate for finding their present value.

The reading is organized as follows: Section 2 introduces leverage and defines important terms. Section 3 illustrates and discusses measures of operating leverage and financial leverage, which combine to define a measure of total leverage that gauges the sensitivity of net income to a given percent change in units sold. This section also covers breakeven points in using leverage and corporate reorganization (a possible consequence of using leverage inappropriately). A summary and practice problems conclude this reading.

2

LEVERAGE

Leverage increases the volatility of a company's earnings and cash flows and increases the risk of lending to or owning a company. Additionally, the valuation of a company and its equity is affected by the degree of leverage: The greater a company's leverage, the greater its risk and, hence, the greater the discount rate that should be applied in its valuation. Further, highly leveraged (levered) companies have a greater chance of incurring significant losses during downturns, thus accelerating conditions that lead to financial distress and bankruptcy.

Consider the simple example of two companies, Impulse Robotics, Inc., and Malvey Aerospace, Inc. These companies have the following performance for the period of study:¹

Exhibit 1 Impulse Robotics and Malvey Aerospace

	Impulse Robotics	Malvey Aerospace
Revenues	\$1,000,000	\$1,000,000
Operating costs	700,000	750,000
Operating income	\$300,000	\$250,000
Financing expense	100,000	50,000
Net income	\$200,000	\$200,000

These companies have the same net income, but are they identical in terms of operating and financial characteristics? Would we appraise these two companies at the same value? Not necessarily.

The risk associated with future earnings and cash flows of a company are affected by the company's cost structure. The **cost structure** of a company is the mix of variable and fixed costs. **Variable costs** fluctuate with the level of production and sales. Some examples of variable costs are the cost of goods purchased for resale, costs of materials or supplies, shipping charges, delivery charges, wages for hourly employees, sales commissions, and sales or production bonuses. **Fixed costs** are expenses that are the same regardless of the production and sales of the company. These costs include depreciation, rent, interest on debt, insurance, and wages for salaried employees.

¹ We are ignoring taxes for this example, but when taxes are included, the general conclusions remain the same.

Suppose that the cost structures of the companies differ in the manner shown in Exhibit 2.

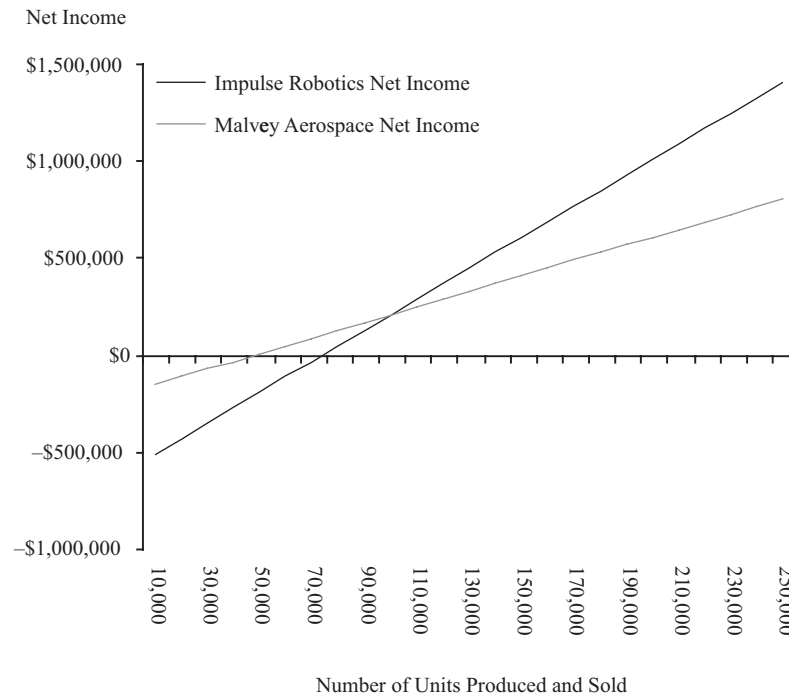
Exhibit 2 Impulse Robotics and Malvey Aerospace

	Impulse Robotics	Malvey Aerospace
Number of units produced and sold	100,000	100,000
Sales price per unit	\$10	\$10
Variable cost per unit	\$2	\$6
Fixed operating cost	\$500,000	\$150,000
Fixed financing expense	\$100,000	\$50,000

The risk associated with these companies is different, although, as we saw in Exhibit 1, they have the same net income. They have different operating and financing cost structures, resulting in differing volatility of net income.

For example, if the number of units produced and sold is different from 100,000, the net income of the two companies diverges. If 50,000 units are produced and sold, Impulse Robotics has a loss of \$200,000 and Malvey Aerospace has \$0 earnings. If, on the other hand, the number of units produced and sold is 200,000, Impulse Robotics earns \$1 million whereas Malvey Aerospace earns \$600,000. In other words, the variability in net income is greater for Impulse Robotics, which has higher fixed costs in terms of both fixed operating costs and fixed financing costs.

Impulse Robotics' cost structure results in more leverage than that of Malvey Aerospace. We can see this effect when we plot the net income of each company against the number of units produced and sold, as in Exhibit 3. The greater leverage of Impulse Robotics is reflected in the greater slope of the line representing net income. This means that as the number of units sold changes, Impulse Robotics experiences a greater change in net income than does Malvey Aerospace for the same change in units sold.

Exhibit 3 Net Income for Different Numbers of Units Produced and Sold

Companies that have more fixed costs relative to variable costs in their cost structures have greater variation in net income as revenues fluctuate and, hence, more risk.

3

BUSINESS RISK AND FINANCIAL RISK

Risk arises from both the operating and financing activities of a company. In the following, we address how that happens and the measures available to the analyst to gauge the risk in each case.

3.1 Business Risk and Its Components

Business risk is the risk associated with operating earnings. Operating earnings are risky because total revenues are risky, as are the costs of producing revenues. Revenues are affected by a large number of factors, including economic conditions, industry dynamics (including the actions of competitors), government regulation, and demographics. Therefore, prices of the company's goods or services or the quantity of sales may be different from what is expected. We refer to the uncertainty with respect to the price and quantity of goods and services as **sales risk**.

Operating risk is the risk attributed to the operating cost structure, in particular the use of fixed costs in operations. The greater the fixed operating costs relative to variable operating costs, the greater the operating risk. Business risk is therefore the combination of sales risk and operating risk. Companies that operate in the same line of business generally have similar business risk.

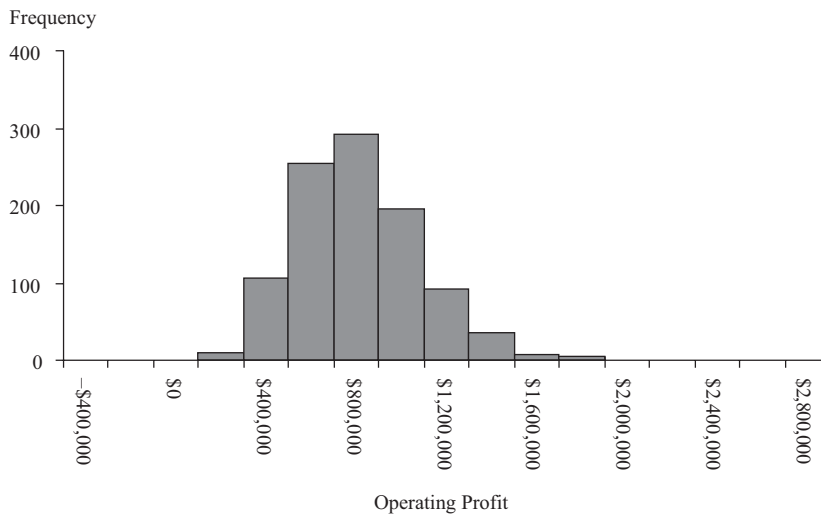
3.2 Sales Risk

Consider Impulse Robotics once again. Suppose that the forecasted number of units produced and sold in the next period is 100,000 but that the standard deviation of the number of units sold is 20,000. And suppose the price that the units sell for is expected to be \$10 per unit but the standard deviation is \$2. Contrast this situation with that of a company named Tolley Aerospace, Inc., which has the same cost structure but a standard deviation of units sold of 40,000 and a price standard deviation of \$4.

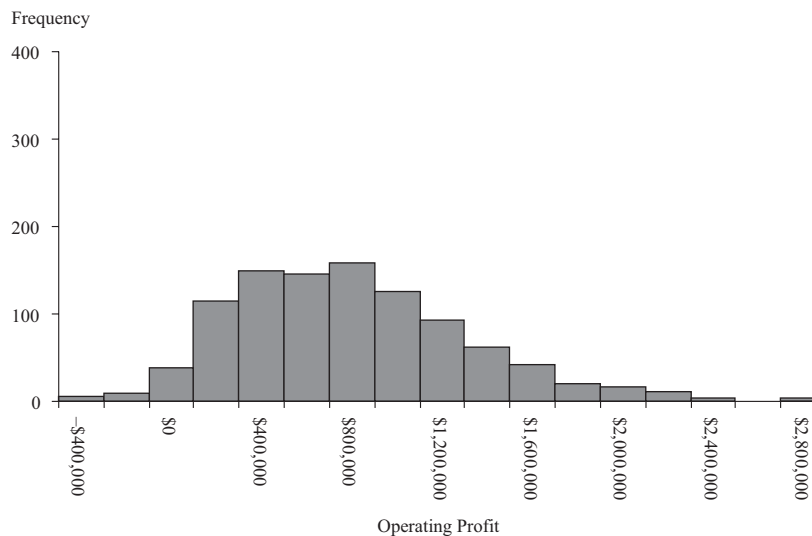
If we assume, for simplicity's sake, that the fixed operating costs are known with certainty and that the units sold and price per unit follow a normal distribution, we can see the impact of the different risks on the operating income of the two companies through a simulation; the results are shown in Exhibit 4. Here, we see the differing distributions of operating income that result from the distributions of units sold and price per unit. So, even if the companies have the same cost structure, differing *sales risk* affects the potential variability of the company's profitability. In our example, Tolley Aerospace has a wider distribution of likely outcomes in terms of operating profit. This greater volatility in operating earnings means that Tolley Aerospace has more sales risk than Impulse Robotics.

Exhibit 4 Operating Income Simulations for Impulse Robotics and Tolley Aerospace

Panel A: Impulse Robotics



(continued)

Exhibit 4 (Continued)**Panel B: Tolley Aerospace****3.3 Operating Risk**

The greater the fixed component of costs, the more difficult it is for a company to adjust its operating costs to changes in sales. The mixture of fixed and variable costs depends largely on the type of business. Even within the same line of business, companies can vary their fixed and variable costs to some degree. We refer to the risk arising from the mix of fixed and variable costs as **operating risk**. The greater the fixed operating costs relative to variable operating costs, the greater the operating risk.

Next, we look at how operating risk affects the variability of cash flows. A concept taught in microeconomics is **elasticity**, which is simply a measure of the sensitivity of changes in one item to changes in another. We can apply this concept to examine how sensitive a company's operating income is to changes in demand, as measured by unit sales. We will calculate the operating income elasticity, which we refer to as the **degree of operating leverage** (DOL). DOL is a quantitative measure of operating risk as it was defined earlier.

The degree of operating leverage is the ratio of the percentage change in operating income to the percentage change in units sold. We will simplify things and assume that the company sells all that it produces in the same period. Then,

$$\text{DOL} = \frac{\text{Percentage change in operating income}}{\text{Percentage change in units sold}} \quad (1)$$

For example, if DOL at a given level of unit sales is 2.0, a 5 percent increase in unit sales from that level would be expected to result in a $(2.0)(5\%) = 10$ percent increase in operating income. As illustrated later in relation to Exhibit 6, a company's DOL is dependent on the level of unit sales being considered.

Returning to Impulse Robotics, the price per unit is \$10, the variable cost per unit is \$2, and the total fixed operating costs are \$500,000. If Impulse Robotics' output changes from 100,000 units to 110,000 units—an increase of 10 percent in the number of units sold—operating income changes from \$300,000 to \$380,000:²

Exhibit 5 Operating Leverage of Impulse Robotics

Item	Selling 100,000 Units	Selling 110,000 Units	Percentage Change
Revenues	\$1,000,000	\$1,100,000	+10.00
Less variable costs	200,000	220,000	+10.00
Less fixed costs	500,000	500,000	0.00
Operating income	\$300,000	\$380,000	+26.67

Operating income increases by 26.67 percent when units sold increases by 10 percent. What if the number of units *decreases* by 10 percent, from 100,000 to 90,000? Operating income is \$220,000, representing a *decline* of 26.67 percent.

What is happening is that for a 1 percent change in units sold, the operating income changes by 2.67 times that percentage, in the same direction. If units sold increases by 10 percent, operating income increases by 26.7 percent; if units sold decreased by 20 percent, operating income would decrease by 53.3 percent.

We can represent the degree of operating leverage as given in Equation 1 in terms of the basic elements of the price per unit, variable cost per unit, number of units sold, and fixed operating costs. Operating income is revenue minus total operating costs (with variable and fixed cost components):

$$\text{Operating income} = \left[\left(\frac{\text{Price}}{\text{per unit}} \right) \left(\text{Number of units sold} \right) \right] - \left[\left(\frac{\text{Variable cost}}{\text{per unit}} \right) \left(\text{Number of units sold} \right) \right] - \left[\text{Fixed operating costs} \right]$$

or

$$\text{Operating income} = \underbrace{\left(\text{Number of units sold} \right) \left[\left(\frac{\text{Price}}{\text{per unit}} \right) - \left(\frac{\text{Variable cost}}{\text{per unit}} \right) \right]}_{\text{Contribution margin}} - \left[\text{Fixed operating costs} \right]$$

The **per unit contribution margin** is the amount that each unit sold contributes to covering fixed costs—that is, the difference between the price per unit and the variable cost per unit. That difference multiplied by the quantity sold is the **contribution margin**, which equals revenue minus variable costs.

² We provide the variable and fixed operating costs for our sample companies used in this reading to illustrate the leverage and breakeven concepts. In reality, however, the financial analyst does not have these breakdowns but rather is faced with interpreting reported account values that often combine variable and fixed costs and costs for different product lines.

How much does operating income change when the number of units sold changes? Fixed costs do not change; therefore, operating income changes by the contribution margin. The percentage change in operating income for a given change in units sold simplifies to

$$\text{DOL} = \frac{Q(P - V)}{Q(P - V) - F} \quad (2)$$

where Q is the number of units, P is the price per unit, V is the variable operating cost per unit, and F is the fixed operating cost. Therefore, $P - V$ is the per unit contribution margin and $Q(P - V)$ is the contribution margin.

Applying the formula for DOL using the data for Impulse Robotics, we can calculate the sensitivity to change in units sold from 100,000 units:

$$\text{DOL @ } 100,000 \text{ units} = \frac{100,000(\$10 - \$2)}{100,000(\$10 - \$2) - \$500,000} = 2.67$$

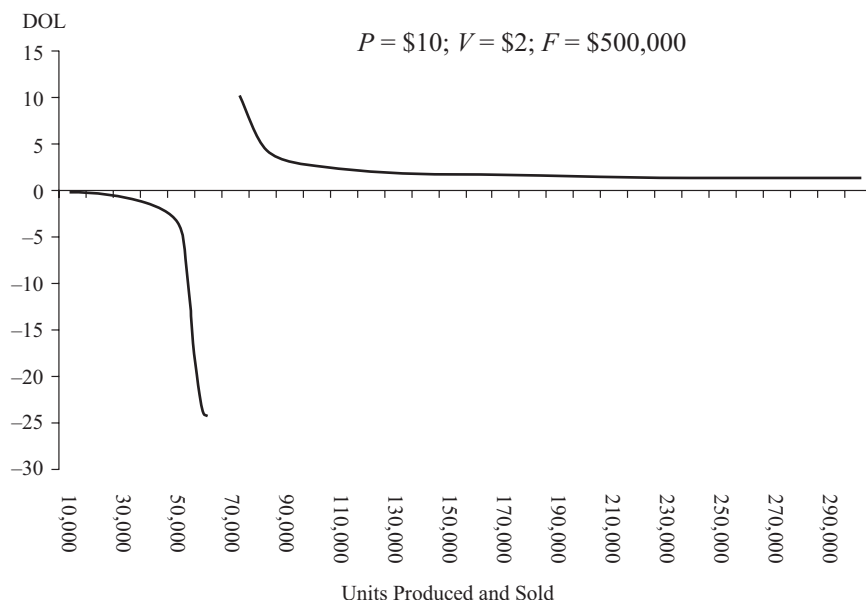
A DOL of 2.67 means that a 1 percent change in units sold results in a $1\% \times 2.67 = 2.67\%$ change in operating income; a DOL of 5 means that a 1 percent change in units sold results in a 5 percent change in operating income, and so on.

Why do we specify that the DOL is at a particular quantity sold (in this case, 100,000 units)? Because the DOL is different at different numbers of units produced and sold. For example, at 200,000 units,

$$\text{DOL @ } 200,000 \text{ units} = \frac{200,000(\$10 - \$2)}{200,000(\$10 - \$2) - \$500,000} = 1.45$$

We can see the sensitivity of the DOL for different numbers of units produced and sold in Exhibit 6. When operating profit is negative, the DOL is negative. At positions just below and just above the point where operating income is \$0, operating income is at its most sensitive on a percentage basis to changes in units produced and sold. At the point at which operating income is \$0 (at 62,500 units produced and sold in this example), the DOL is undefined because the denominator in the DOL calculation is \$0. After this point, the DOL gradually declines as more units are produced and sold.

Exhibit 6 Impulse Robotics' Degree of Operating Leverage for Different Number of Units Produced and Sold



We will now look at a similar situation in which the company has shifted some of the operating costs away from fixed costs and into variable costs. Malvey Aerospace has a unit sales price of \$10, a variable cost of \$6 a unit, and \$150,000 in fixed costs. A change in units sold from 100,000 to 110,000 (a 10 percent change) changes operating profit from \$250,000 to \$290,000, or 16 percent. The DOL in this case is 1.6:

$$\text{DOL @ } 100,000 \text{ units} = \frac{100,000(\$10 - \$6)}{100,000(\$10 - \$6) - \$150,000} = 1.6$$

and the change in operating income is 16 percent:

$$\text{Percentage change in operating income} = (\text{DOL}) \left(\frac{\text{Percentage change in units sold}}{\text{in units sold}} \right) = (1.6)(10\%) = 16\%$$

We can see the difference in leverage in the case of Impulse Robotics and Malvey Aerospace companies in Exhibit 7. In Panel A, we see that Impulse Robotics has higher operating income than Malvey Aerospace when both companies produce and sell more than 87,500 units, but lower operating income than Malvey when both companies produce and sell less than 87,500 units.³

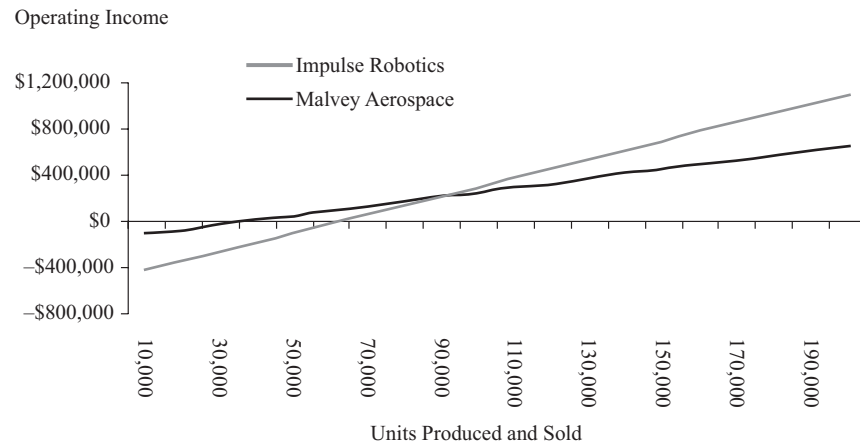
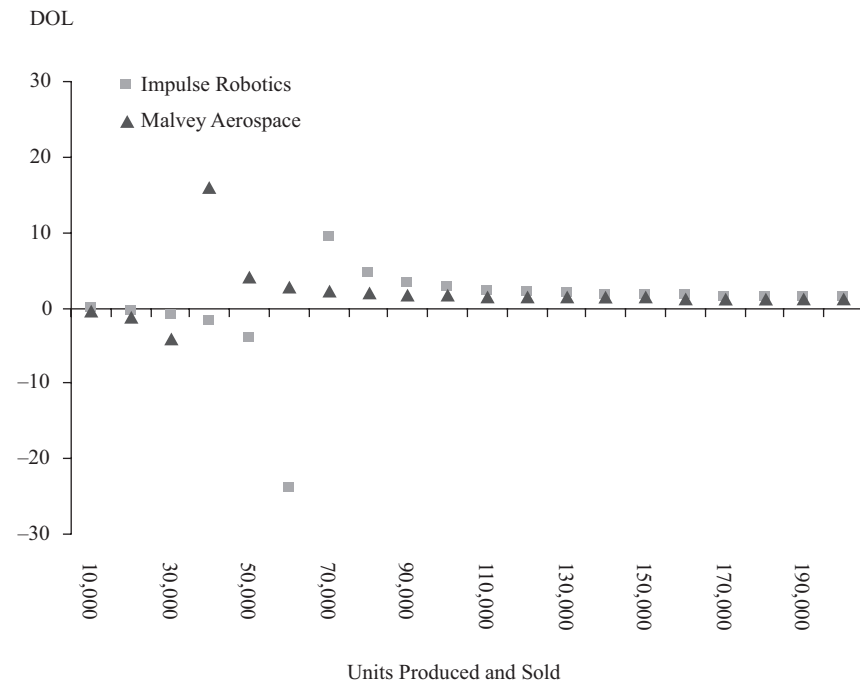
Exhibit 7 Profitability and the DOL for Impulse Robotics and Malvey Aerospace

Impulse Robotics: $P = \$10; V = \$2; F = \$500,000$

Malvey Aerospace: $P = \$10; V = \$6; F = \$150,000$

(continued)

³ We can calculate the number of units that produce the same operating income for these two companies by equating the operating incomes and solving for the number of units. Let X be the number of units. The X at which Malvey Aerospace and Impulse Robotics generate the same operating income is the X that solves the following: $10X - 2X - 500,000 = 10X - 6X - 150,000$; that is, $X = 87,500$.

Exhibit 7 (Continued)**Panel A: Operating Income and Number of Units Produced and Sold****Panel B: Degree of Operating Leverage (DOL)**

This example confirms what we saw earlier in our reasoning of fixed and variable costs: The greater the use of fixed, relative to variable, operating costs, the more sensitive operating income is to changes in units sold and, therefore, the more operating risk. Impulse Robotics has more operating risk because it has more operating leverage. However, as Panel B of Exhibit 7 shows, the degrees of operating leverage are similar for the two companies for larger numbers of units produced and sold.

Both sales risk and operating risk influence a company's business risk. And both sales risk and operating risk are determined in large part by the type of business the company is in. But management has more opportunity to manage and control operating risk than sales risk.

Suppose a company is deciding which equipment to buy to produce a particular product. The sales risk is the same no matter what equipment is chosen to produce the product. But the available equipment may differ in terms of the fixed and variable operating costs of producing the product. Financial analysts need to consider how the operating cost structure of a company affects the company's risk.

EXAMPLE 1

Calculating the Degree of Operating Leverage

Arnaud Kenigswald is analyzing the potential impact of an improving economy on earnings at Global Auto, one of the world's largest car manufacturers. Global is headquartered in Berlin. Two Global Auto divisions manufacture passenger cars and produce combined revenues of €93 billion. Kenigswald projects that sales will improve by 10 percent due to increased demand for cars. He wants to see how Global's earnings might respond given that level of increase in sales. He first looks at the degree of leverage at Global, starting with operating leverage.

Global sold 6 million passenger cars in 2009. The average price per car was €24,000, fixed costs associated with passenger car production total €15 billion per year, and variable costs per car are €14,000. What is the degree of operating leverage of Global Auto?

Solution:

$$\text{DOL @ } \frac{6 \text{ million units}}{6 \text{ million units}} = \frac{6 \text{ million } (\text{€}24,000 - \text{€}14,000)}{6 \text{ million } (\text{€}24,000 - \text{€}14,000) - \text{€}15 \text{ billion}} = 1.333$$

For a 10 percent increase in cars sold, operating income increases by $1.333 \times 10\% = 13.33\%$.

Industries that tend to have high operating leverage are those that invest up front to produce a product but spend relatively little on making and distributing it. Software developers and pharmaceutical companies fit this description. Alternatively, retailers have low operating leverage because much of the cost of goods sold is variable.

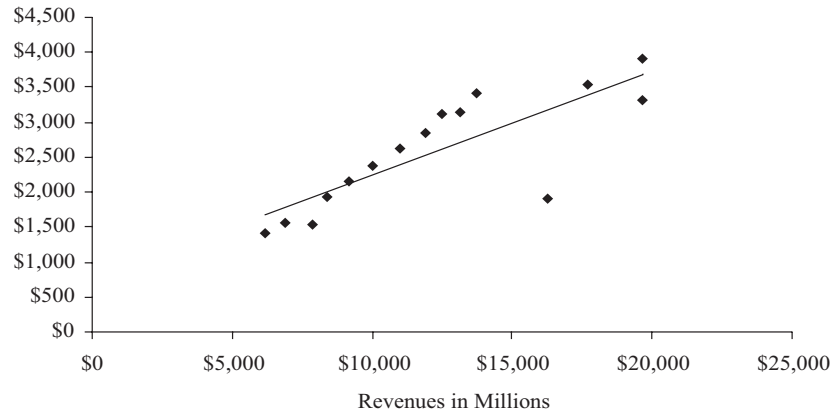
Because most companies produce more than one product, the ratio of variable to fixed costs is difficult to obtain. We can get an idea of the operating leverage of a company by looking at changes in operating income in relation to changes in sales for the entire company. This relation can be estimated by regressing changes in operating income (the variable to be explained) on changes in sales (the explanatory variable) over a recent time period.⁴ Although this approach does not provide a precise measure of operating risk, it can help provide a general idea of the amount of operating leverage present. For example, compare the relation between operating earnings and revenues for Abbott Laboratories, a pharmaceutical company, and Wal-Mart Stores, a discount retailer, as shown in Exhibit 8. Note that the slope of the least-squares regression line is greater for Abbott (with a slope coefficient of 0.1488) than for Wal-Mart (with a slope coefficient of 0.0574). (A visual comparison of slopes should not be relied upon because the scales of the x - and y -axes are different in diagrams for the two regressions.) We can see that operating earnings are more sensitive to changes in revenues for the higher-operating-leveraged Abbott Laboratories as compared to the lower-operating-leveraged Wal-Mart Stores.

⁴ A least-squares regression is a procedure for finding the best-fitting line (called the least squares regression line) through a set of data points by minimizing the squared deviations from the line.

Exhibit 8 Relation between Operating Earnings and Revenues**Panel A: Abbott Laboratories Operating Earnings and Revenues, 1990–2004**

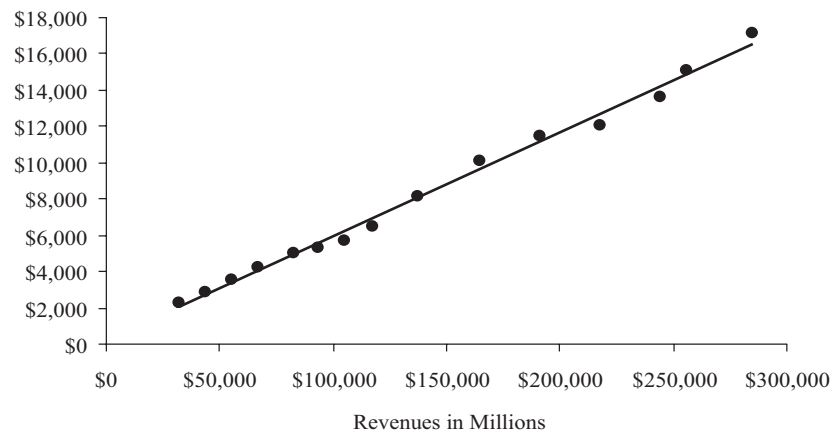
Estimated regression: Operating earnings = \$754.77 + 0.1488 Revenues
 $R^2 = 66.25\%$

Operating Earnings in Millions

**Panel B: Wal-Mart Stores Operating Earnings and Revenues, 1990–2004**

Estimated regression: Operating earnings = \$152.762 + 0.0574 Revenues
 $R^2 = 99.38\%$

Operating Earnings in Millions



Sources: Abbott Laboratories 10-K filings and Wal-Mart Stores 10-K filings, various years.

3.4 Financial Risk

We can expand on the concept of risk to accommodate the perspective of owning a security. A security represents a claim on the income and assets of a business; therefore, the risk of the security goes beyond the variability of operating earnings to include how the cash flows from those earnings are distributed among the claimants—the creditors and owners of the business. The risk of a security is therefore affected by both business risk and financial risk.

Financial risk is the risk associated with how a company finances its operations. If a company finances with debt, it is legally obligated to pay the amounts that make up its debts when due. By taking on fixed obligations, such as debt and long-term leases, the company increases its financial risk. If a company finances its business with common equity, generated either from operations (retained earnings) or from issuing new common shares, it does not incur fixed obligations. The more fixed-cost financial obligations (e.g., debt) incurred by the company, the greater its financial risk.

We can quantify this risk in the same way we did for operating risk, looking at the sensitivity of the cash flows available to owners when operating income changes. This sensitivity, which we refer to as the **degree of financial leverage** (DFL), is

$$\text{DFL} = \frac{\text{Percentage change in net income}}{\text{Percentage change in operating income}} \quad (3)$$

For example, if DFL at a given level of operating income is 1.1, a 5 percent increase in operating income would be expected to result in a $(1.1)(5\%) = 5.5$ percent increase in net income. A company's DFL is dependent on the level of operating income being considered.

Net income is equal to operating income, less interest and taxes.⁵ If operating income changes, how does net income change? Consider Impulse Robotics. Suppose the interest payments are \$100,000 and, for simplicity, the tax rate is 0 percent: If operating income changes from \$300,000 to \$360,000, net income changes from \$200,000 to \$260,000:

Exhibit 9 Financial Risk of Impulse Robotics (1)

	Operating Income of \$300,000	Operating Income of \$360,000	Percentage Change
Operating income	\$300,000	\$360,000	+20
Less interest	100,000	100,000	0
Net income	\$200,000	\$260,000	+30

A 20 percent increase in operating income increases net income by \$60,000, or 30 percent. What if the fixed financial costs are \$150,000? A 20 percent change in operating income results in a 40 percent change in the net income, from \$150,000 to \$210,000:

Exhibit 10 Financial Risk of Impulse Robotics (2)

	Operating Income of \$300,000	Operating Income of \$360,000	Percentage Change
Operating income	\$300,000	\$360,000	+20
Less interest	150,000	150,000	0
Net income	\$150,000	\$210,000	+40

⁵ More complex entities than we have been using for our examples may also need to account for other income (losses) and extraordinary income (losses) together with operating income as the basis for earnings before interest and taxes.

Using more debt financing, which results in higher fixed costs, increases the sensitivity of net income to changes in operating income. We can represent the sensitivity of net income to a change in operating income, continuing the notation from before and including the fixed financial cost, C , and the tax rate, t , as

$$\text{DFL} = \frac{[Q(P - V) - F](1 - t)}{[Q(P - V) - F - C](1 - t)} = \frac{[Q(P - V) - F]}{[Q(P - V) - F - C]} \quad (4)$$

As you can see in Equation 4, the factor that adjusts for taxes, $(1 - t)$, cancels out of the equation. In other words, the DFL is not affected by the tax rate.

In the case in which operating income is \$300,000 and fixed financing costs are \$100,000, the degree of financial leverage is

$$\text{DFL @ } \$300,000 \text{ operating income} = \frac{\$300,000}{\$300,000 - \$100,000} = 1.5$$

If, instead, fixed financial costs are \$150,000, the DFL is equal to 2.0:

$$\text{DFL @ } \$300,000 \text{ operating income} = \frac{\$300,000}{\$300,000 - \$150,000} = 2.0$$

Again, we need to qualify our degree of leverage by the level of operating income because DFL is different at different levels of operating income.

The greater the use of financing sources that require fixed obligations, such as interest, the greater the sensitivity of net income to changes in operating income.

EXAMPLE 2

Calculating the Degree of Financial Leverage

Global Auto also employs debt financing. If Global can borrow at 8 percent, the interest cost is €40 billion. What is the degree of financial leverage of Global Auto if 6 million cars are produced and sold?

Solution:

At 6 million cars produced and sold, operating income = €45 billion. Therefore:

$$\text{DFL @ } €45 \text{ billion operating income} = \frac{€45 \text{ billion}}{€45 \text{ billion} - €40 \text{ billion}} = 9.0$$

For every 1 percent change in operating income, net income changes 9 percent due to financial leverage.

Unlike operating leverage, the degree of financial leverage is most often a choice by the company's management. Whereas operating costs are very similar among companies in the same industry, competitors may decide on differing capital structures.

Companies with relatively high ratios of tangible assets to total assets may be able to use higher degrees of financial leverage than companies with relatively low ratios because the claim on the tangible assets that lenders would have in the event of a default may make lenders more confident in extending larger amounts of credit. In general, businesses with plants, land, and equipment that can be used to collateralize borrowings and businesses whose revenues have below-average business cycle sensitivity may be able to use more financial leverage than businesses without such assets and with relatively high business cycle sensitivity.

Using financial leverage generally increases the variability of return on equity (net income divided by shareholders' equity). In addition, its use by a profitable company may increase the level of return on equity. Example 3 illustrates both effects.

EXAMPLE 3**The Leveraging Role of Debt**

Consider the Capital Company, which is expected to generate \$1,500,000 in revenues and \$500,000 in operating earnings next year. Currently, the Capital Company does not use debt financing and has assets of \$2,000,000.

Suppose Capital were to change its capital structure, buying back \$1,000,000 of stock and issuing \$1,000,000 in debt. If we assume that interest on debt is 5 percent and income is taxed at a rate of 30 percent, what is the effect of debt financing on Capital's net income and return on equity if operating earnings may vary as much as 40 percent from expected earnings?

Exhibit 11 Return on Equity of Capital Company

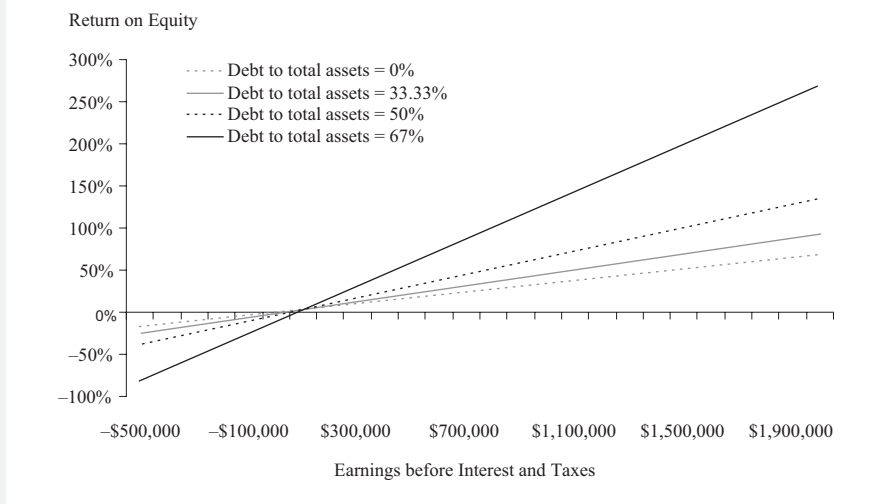
No Debt (Shareholders' Equity = \$2 million)	Expected Operating Earnings, Less 40%	Expected Operating Earnings	Expected Operating Earnings, Plus 40%
Earnings before interest and taxes	\$300,000	\$500,000	\$700,000
Interest expense	0	0	0
Earnings before taxes	\$300,000	\$500,000	\$700,000
Taxes	90,000	150,000	210,000
Net income	\$210,000	\$350,000	\$490,000
Return on equity ¹	10.5%	17.5%	24.5%

Debt to Total Assets = 50%; (Shareholders' Equity = \$1 million)	Expected Operating Earnings, Less 40%	Expected Operating Earnings	Expected Operating Earnings, Plus 40%
Earnings before interest and taxes	\$300,000	\$500,000	\$700,000
Interest expense	50,000	50,000	50,000
Earnings before taxes	\$250,000	\$450,000	\$650,000
Taxes	75,000	135,000	195,000
Net income	\$175,000	\$315,000	\$455,000
Return on equity	17.5%	31.5%	45.5%

¹ Recall that ROE is calculated as net income/shareholders' equity.

Depicting a broader array of capital structures and operating earnings, ranging from an operating loss of \$500,000 to operating earnings of \$2,000,000, Exhibit 12 shows the effect of leverage on the return on equity for Capital Company:

Exhibit 12 Return on Equity of Capital Company for Different Levels of Operating Earnings and Different Financing Choices



Business is generally an uncertain venture. Changes in the macroeconomic and competitive environments that influence sales and profitability are typically difficult to discern and forecast. The larger the proportion of debt in the financing mix of a business, the greater is the chance that it will face default. Similarly, the greater the proportion of debt in the capital structure, the more earnings are magnified upward in improving economic times. The bottom line? Financial leverage tends to increase the risk of ownership for shareholders.

3.5 Total Leverage

The degree of operating leverage gives us an idea of the sensitivity of operating income to changes in revenues. And the degree of financial leverage gives us an idea of the sensitivity of net income to changes in operating income. But often we are concerned about the combined effect of both operating leverage and financial leverage. Owners are concerned about the combined effect because both factors contribute to the risk associated with their future cash flows. And financial managers, making decisions intended to maximize owners' wealth, need to be concerned with how investment decisions (which affect the operating cost structure) and financing decisions (which affect the capital structure) affect lenders' and owners' risk.

Look back at the example of Impulse Robotics. The sensitivity of owners' cash flow to a given change in units sold is affected by both operating and financial leverage. Consider using 100,000 units as the base number produced and sold. A 10 percent increase in units sold results in a 27 percent increase in operating income and a 40 percent increase in net income; a like decrease in units sold results in a similar decrease in operating income and net income.

Exhibit 13 Total Leverage of Impulse Robotics

	Units Produced and Sold:		
	90,000	100,000	110,000
Revenues	\$900,000	\$1,000,000	\$1,100,000
Less variable costs	180,000	200,000	220,000
Less fixed costs	500,000	500,000	500,000
Operating income	\$220,000	\$300,000	\$380,000
Less interest	100,000	100,000	100,000
Net income	\$120,000	\$200,000	\$280,000
Relative to 100,000 units produced and sold			
Percentage change in units sold	-10%		+10%
Percentage change in operating profit	-27%		+27%
Percentage change in net income	-40%		+40%

Combining a company's degree of operating leverage with its degree of financial leverage results in the **degree of total leverage** (DTL), a measure of the sensitivity of net income to changes in the number of units produced and sold. We again make the simplifying assumption that a company sells all that it produces in the same period:

$$DTL = \frac{\text{Percentage change in net income}}{\text{Percentage change in the number of units sold}} \quad (5)$$

or

$$DTL = \frac{Q(P - V)}{Q(P - V) - F} \times \frac{[Q(P - V) - F]}{[Q(P - V) - F - C]} \quad (6)$$

$$= \frac{Q(P - V)}{Q(P - V) - F - C}$$

Suppose

Number of units sold	=	Q	=	100,000
Price per unit	=	P	=	\$10
Variable cost per unit	=	V	=	\$2
Fixed operating cost	=	F	=	\$500,000
Fixed financing cost	=	C	=	\$100,000

Then,

$$DTL = \frac{100,000(\$10 - \$2)}{100,000(\$10 - \$2) - \$500,000 - \$100,000} = 4.0$$

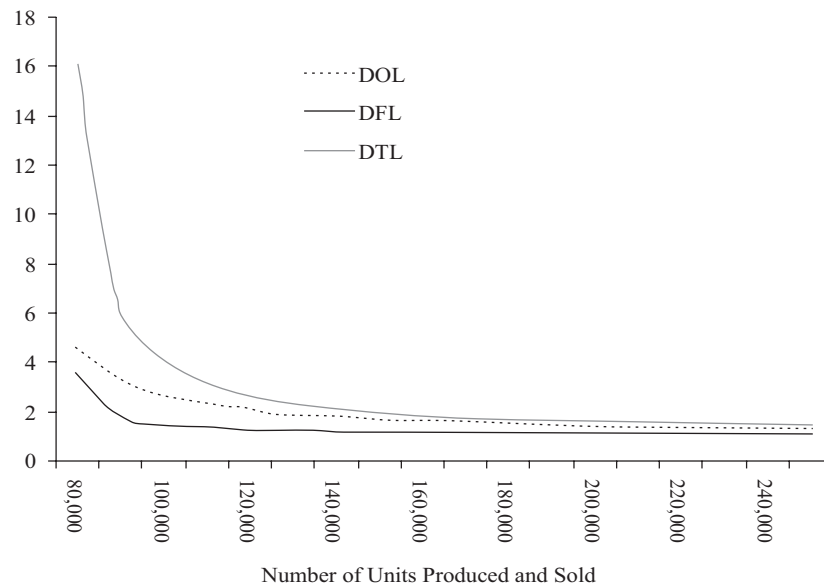
which we could also have determined by multiplying the DOL, 2.67, by the DFL, 1.5. This means that a 1 percent increase in units sold will result in a 4 percent increase in net income; a 50 percent increase in units produced and sold results in a 200 percent increase in net income; a 5 percent decline in units sold results in a 20 percent decline in income to owners; and so on.

Because the DOL is relative to the base number of units produced and sold and the DFL is relative to the base level of operating earnings, DTL is different depending on the number of units produced and sold. We can see the DOL, DFL, and DTL for Impulse Robotics for different numbers of units produced and sold, beginning at the number of units for which the degrees are positive, in Exhibit 14.

Exhibit 14 DOL, DFL, and DTL for Different Numbers of Units Produced and Sold

$$P = \$10, V = \$2, F = \$500,000, C = \$100,000$$

Degree of Leverage



In the case of operating leverage, the fixed operating costs act as a fulcrum. The greater the proportion of operating costs that are fixed, the more sensitive operating income is to changes in sales. In the case of financial leverage, the fixed financial costs, such as interest, act as a fulcrum. The greater the proportion of financing with fixed cost sources, such as debt, the more sensitive cash flows available to owners are to changes in operating income. Combining the effects of both types of leverage, we see that fixed operating and financial costs together increase the sensitivity of earnings to owners.

EXAMPLE 4

Calculating the Degree of Total Leverage

Continuing from Example 2, Global Auto’s total leverage is

$$\text{DTL @ 6 million units} = \text{DOL @ 6 million units} \times \frac{\text{DFL @ €45 billion operating income}}{\text{€45 billion operating income}}$$

$$\text{DTL @ 6 million units} = \frac{6 \text{ million}(\text{€}24,000 - \text{€}14,000)}{6 \text{ million}(\text{€}24,000 - \text{€}14,000) - \text{€}15 \text{ billion}} \times \frac{\text{€}45 \text{ billion}}{\text{€}45 \text{ billion} - \text{€}40 \text{ billion}}$$

$$\text{DTL @ 6 million units} = 1.333 \times 9.0 = 12$$

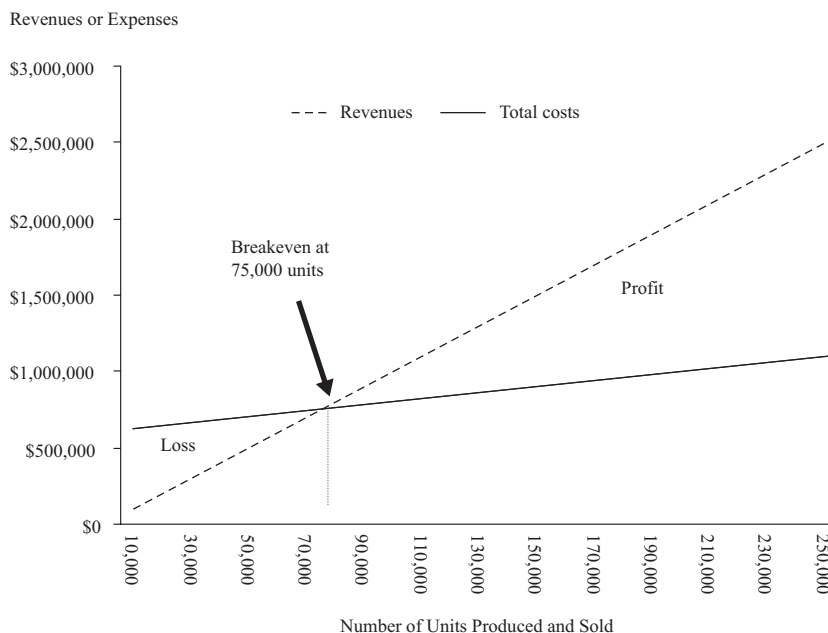
Given Global Auto’s operating and financial leverage, a 1 percent change in unit sales changes net income by 12 percent.

3.6 Breakeven Points and Operating Breakeven Points

Looking back at Exhibit 3, we see that there is a number of units at which the company goes from being unprofitable to being profitable—that is, the number of units at which the net income is zero. This number is referred to as the breakeven point. The **breakeven point**, Q_{BE} , is the number of units produced and sold at which the company’s net income is zero—the point at which revenues are equal to costs.

Plotting revenues and total costs against the number of units produced and sold, as in Exhibit 15, indicates that the breakeven is at 75,000 units. At this number of units produced and sold, revenues are equal to costs and, hence, profit is zero.

Exhibit 15 Impulse Robotics Breakeven



We can calculate this breakeven point for Impulse Robotics and Malvey Aerospace. Consider that net income is zero when the revenues are equal to the expenses. We can represent this equality of revenues and costs (summing variable operating costs, fixed operating costs, and fixed financing costs) by the following equation:

$$PQ = VQ + F + C$$

where

P = the price per unit

Q = the number of units produced and sold

V = the variable cost per unit

F = the fixed operating costs

C = the fixed financial cost

Therefore,

$$PQ_{BE} = VQ_{BE} + F + C$$

and the breakeven number of units, Q_{BE} , is⁶

$$Q_{BE} = \frac{F + C}{P - V} \quad (7)$$

In the case of Impulse Robotics and Malvey Aerospace, Impulse Robotics has a higher breakeven point. Using numbers taken from Exhibit 2:

$$\text{Impulse Robotics: } Q_{BE} = \frac{\$500,000 + \$100,000}{\$10 - \$2} = 75,000 \text{ units}$$

$$\text{Malvey Aerospace: } Q_{BE} = \frac{\$150,000 + \$50,000}{\$10 - \$6} = 50,000 \text{ units}$$

This means that Impulse Robotics must produce and sell more units to achieve a profit. So, while the higher-leveraged Impulse Robotics has a greater breakeven point relative to Malvey Aerospace, the profit that Impulse Robotics generates beyond this breakeven point is greater than that of Malvey Aerospace. Therefore, leverage has its rewards in terms of potentially greater profit, but it also increases risk.

In addition to the breakeven point specified in terms of net income, Q_{BE} , we can also specify the breakeven point in terms of operating profit, which we refer to as the **operating breakeven** point, Q_{OBE} . Revenues at the operating breakeven point are set equal to operating costs at the operating breakeven point to solve for the operating breakeven number of units, Q_{OBE} . The expression shows Q_{OBE} as equal to fixed operating costs divided by the difference between price per unit and variable cost per unit:

$$PQ_{OBE} = VQ_{OBE} + F$$

$$Q_{OBE} = \frac{F}{P - V}$$

For the two companies in our example, Impulse Robotics and Malvey Aerospace, the operating breakevens are 62,500 and 37,500 units, respectively:

$$\text{Impulse Robotics: } Q_{OBE} = \frac{\$500,000}{\$10 - \$2} = 62,500 \text{ units}$$

$$\text{Malvey Aerospace: } Q_{OBE} = \frac{\$150,000}{\$10 - \$6} = 37,500 \text{ units}$$

Impulse Robotics has a higher operating breakeven point in terms of the number of units produced and sold.

⁶ You will notice that we did not consider taxes in our calculation of the breakeven point. This is because at the point of breakeven, taxable income is zero.

EXAMPLE 5**Calculating Operating Breakeven and Breakeven Points**

Continuing with his analysis, Kenigswald considers the effect of a possible downturn on Global Auto's earnings. He divides the fixed costs of €15 billion by the per unit contribution margin:

$$Q_{\text{OBE}} = \frac{\text{€15 billion}}{\text{€24,000} - \text{€14,000}} = 1,500,000 \text{ cars}$$

The operating breakeven for Global is 1,500,000 cars, or €36 billion in revenues. We calculate the breakeven point by dividing fixed operating costs, plus interest costs, by the contribution margin:

$$Q_{\text{BE}} = \frac{\text{€15 billion} + \text{€40 billion}}{\text{€24,000} - \text{€14,000}} = \frac{\text{€55 billion}}{\text{€10,000}} = 5,500,000 \text{ cars}$$

Considering the degree of total leverage, Global's breakeven is 5.5 million cars, or revenues of €132 billion.

We can verify these calculations by constructing an income statement for the breakeven sales (in € billions):

	1,500,000 Cars	5,500,000 Cars
Revenues ($= P \times Q$)	€36	€132
Variable operating costs ($= V \times Q$)	21	77
Fixed operating costs (F)	15	15
Operating income	€ 0	€ 40
Fixed financial costs (C)	40	40
Net income	-€40	€ 0

As business expands or contracts beyond or below breakeven points, fixed costs do not change. The breakeven points for companies with low operating and financial leverage are less important than those for companies with high leverage. Companies with greater total leverage must generate more revenue to cover fixed operating and financing costs. The farther unit sales are from the breakeven point for high-leverage companies, the greater the magnifying effect of this leverage.

3.7 The Risks of Creditors and Owners

As we discussed earlier, business risk refers to the effect of economic conditions as well as the level of operating leverage. Uncertainty about demand, output prices, and costs are among the many factors that affect business risk. When conditions change for any of these factors, companies with higher business risk experience more volatile earnings. Financial risk is the additional risk that results from the use of debt and preferred stock. The degree of financial risk grows with greater use of debt. Who bears this risk?

The risk for providers of equity and debt capital differs because of the relative rights and responsibilities associated with the use of borrowed money in a business. Lenders have a prior claim on assets relative to shareholders, so they have greater security. In return for lending money to a business, lenders require the payment of interest and principal when due. These contractual payments to lenders must be made

regardless of the profitability of the business. A business must satisfy these claims in a timely fashion or face the pain of bankruptcy should it default. In return for their higher priority in claims, lenders get predefined yet limited returns.

In contrast, equity providers claim whatever is left over after all expenses, including debt service, have been paid. So, unlike the fixed and known commitments to the lenders, what is left over for the owners may be a great deal or may be nothing. In exchange for this risk, providers of equity capital exercise the decision-making power over the business, including the right to hire, guide, and if necessary, fire managers. In public companies, ownership rights are usually exercised through an elected board of directors. They undertake the decisions over what portion of the business's earnings should be paid out as dividends for common shareholders.

Legal codes in most countries provide for these rights, as well as conditions for companies to file for bankruptcy (with reference to businesses, often called insolvency). A number of bankruptcy codes provide in some form for two categories of bankruptcies. One form provides for a temporary protection from creditors so that a viable business may reorganize. In the United States, the US Bankruptcy Code sets the terms for the form of negotiated **reorganization** of a company's capital structure that allows it to remain a going concern in Chapter 11.⁷ For businesses that are not viable, the second form of bankruptcy process allows for the orderly satisfaction of the creditors' claims. In the United States, this form of bankruptcy is referred to as **liquidation**.⁸ Whereas both types of bankruptcy lead to major dislocations in the rights and privileges of owners, lenders, employees, and managers, it is in this latter category of bankruptcy that the original business ceases to exist.

The difference between a company that reorganizes and emerges from bankruptcy and one that is liquidated is often the difference between operating and financial leverage. Companies with high operating leverage have less flexibility in making changes, and bankruptcy protection does little to help reduce operating costs. Companies with high financial leverage use bankruptcy laws and protection to change their capital structure and, once the restructuring is complete, can emerge as ongoing concerns.

EXAMPLE 6

Chapter 11 Reorganization and Owens Corning

The world's largest manufacturer of glass fiber insulation, Owens Corning Corporation of Toledo, Ohio, filed for Chapter 11 bankruptcy on 5 October 2000, as it faced growing asbestos liability claims. With revenues exceeding \$6 billion per year, Owens Corning was one of the largest corporations ever afforded bankruptcy protection by the US courts.

From 1952 to 1972, Owens Corning produced an asbestos-containing high-temperature pipe coating called Kaylo, and at the time of its bankruptcy filing, it had received more than 460,000 asbestos personal injury claims and had paid or agreed to pay more than \$5 billion for asbestos-related awards and settlements, legal expenses, and claims processing fees. While the company had assets of \$7 billion and liabilities of \$5.7 billion, the trust fund it set aside to pay those claims appeared inadequate.

⁷ US Code, Title 11—Bankruptcy, Chapter 11—Reorganization. Companies filing for bankruptcy under this code are referred to as having filed for Chapter 11 bankruptcy.

⁸ US Code, Title 11—Bankruptcy, Chapter 7—Liquidation.

The company's stock traded at between \$15 and \$25 per share in the year prior to the announcement; the price fell to \$1 per share when Owens Corning declared bankruptcy and admitted that it had been overwhelmed by the asbestos liabilities.

EXAMPLE 7

Chapter 7 and Webvan Do Not Deliver

Since the peak of the NASDAQ in March of 2000, many technology companies have found either that they cannot raise enough capital to implement their business plans or that they have an untenable business plan. Some have simply shut their doors and gone out of business, while others have filed for bankruptcy. Either way, these companies have left many unsatisfied creditors.

For example, Webvan.com was a start-up company in the late 1990s that raised over \$1.2 billion in equity, \$375 million of which came from an IPO in November 1999. It had very ambitious business plans to build a series of warehouses and deliver groceries to fulfill customer orders placed over the internet. Webvan.com, however, faced a number of challenges, including a downturn in the economy, and quickly ran through its capital.

Webvan.com filed for Chapter 11 bankruptcy protection in July 2001 and reported that it owed \$106 million to creditors. By the time it began liquidation under Chapter 7 in January 2002, it reported that the value of its liquidated assets totaled only \$25 million, leaving its creditors to receive pennies on the dollar and its investors to receive little or nothing for their \$1.2 billion investment in the company.

Whereas the ability to file for bankruptcy is important to the economy, the goal of most investors is to avoid ownership of companies that are heading toward this extreme step, as well as to be able to evaluate opportunities among companies already in bankruptcy. Under both Chapter 7 and Chapter 11, providers of equity capital generally lose all value during the bankruptcy. On the other hand, debtholders typically receive at least a portion of their capital, but the payments of principal and interest are delayed during the period of bankruptcy protection.

SUMMARY

In this reading, we have reviewed the fundamentals of business risk, financial risk, and measures of leverage.

- Leverage is the use of fixed costs in a company's cost structure. Business risk is the risk associated with operating earnings and reflects both sales risk (uncertainty with respect to the price and quantity of sales) and operating risk (the risk related to the use of fixed costs in operations). Financial risk is the risk associated with how a company finances its operations (i.e., the split between equity and debt financing of the business).

- The degree of operating leverage (DOL) is the ratio of the percentage change in operating income to the percentage change in units sold. We can use the following formula to measure the degree of operating leverage:

$$\text{DOL} = \frac{Q(P - V)}{Q(P - V) - F}$$

- The degree of financial leverage (DFL) is the percentage change in net income for a one percent change in operating income. We can use the following formula to measure the degree of financial leverage:

$$\text{DFL} = \frac{[Q(P - V) - F](1 - t)}{[Q(P - V) - F - C](1 - t)} = \frac{[Q(P - V) - F]}{[Q(P - V) - F - C]}$$

- The degree of total leverage (DTL) is a measure of the sensitivity of net income to changes in unit sales, which is equivalent to $\text{DTL} = \text{DOL} \times \text{DFL}$.
- The breakeven point, Q_{BE} , is the number of units produced and sold at which the company's net income is zero, which we calculate as

$$Q_{\text{BE}} = \frac{F + C}{P - V}$$

- The operating breakeven point, Q_{OBE} , is the number of units produced and sold at which the company's operating income is zero, which we calculate as

$$Q_{\text{OBE}} = \frac{F}{P - V}$$

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

- 1 If two companies have identical unit sales volume and operating risk, they are *most likely* to also have identical:
 - A sales risk.
 - B business risk.
 - C sensitivity of operating earnings to changes in the number of units produced and sold.
- 2 Degree of operating leverage is *best* described as a measure of the sensitivity of:
 - A net earnings to changes in sales.
 - B fixed operating costs to changes in variable costs.
 - C operating earnings to changes in the number of units produced and sold.
- 3 The Fulcrum Company produces decorative swivel platforms for home televisions. If Fulcrum produces 40 million units, it estimates that it can sell them for \$100 each. Variable production costs are \$65 per unit and fixed production costs are \$1.05 billion. Which of the following statements is *most accurate*? Holding all else constant, the Fulcrum Company would:
 - A generate positive operating income if unit sales were 25 million.
 - B have less operating leverage if fixed production costs were 10 percent greater than \$1.05 billion.
 - C generate 20 percent more operating income if unit sales were 5 percent greater than 40 million.
- 4 The business risk of a particular company is *most accurately* measured by the company's:
 - A debt-to-equity ratio.
 - B efficiency in using assets to generate sales.
 - C operating leverage and level of uncertainty about demand, output prices, and competition.
- 5 Consider two companies that operate in the same line of business and have the same degree of operating leverage: the Basic Company and the Grundlegend Company. The Basic Company and the Grundlegend Company have, respectively, no debt and 50 percent debt in their capital structure. Which of the following statements is *most accurate*? Compared to the Basic Company, the Grundlegend Company has:
 - A a lower sensitivity of net income to changes in unit sales.
 - B the same sensitivity of operating income to changes in unit sales.
 - C the same sensitivity of net income to changes in operating income.
- 6 Myundia Motors now sells 1 million units at ¥3,529 per unit. Fixed operating costs are ¥1,290 million and variable operating costs are ¥1,500 per unit. If the company pays ¥410 million in interest, the levels of sales at the operating breakeven and breakeven points are, respectively:
 - A ¥1,500,000,000 and ¥2,257,612,900.
 - B ¥2,243,671,760 and ¥2,956,776,737.
 - C ¥2,975,148,800 and ¥3,529,000,000.

- 7 Juan Alavanca is evaluating the risk of two companies in the machinery industry: The Gearing Company and Hebelkraft, Inc. Alavanca used the latest fiscal year's financial statements and interviews with managers of the respective companies to gather the following information:

	The Gearing Company	Hebelkraft, Inc.
Number of units produced and sold	1 million	1.5 million
Sales price per unit	\$200	\$200
Variable cost per unit	\$120	\$100
Fixed operating cost	\$40 million	\$90 million
Fixed financing expense	\$20 million	\$20 million

Based on this information, the breakeven points for The Gearing Company and Hebelkraft, Inc. are:

- A 0.75 million and 1.1 million units, respectively.
- B 1 million and 1.5 million units, respectively.
- C 1.5 million and 0.75 million units, respectively.

The following information relates to Questions 8–16

Mary Benn, CFA, is a financial analyst for Twin Fields Investments, located in Storrs, Connecticut, USA. She has been asked by her supervisor, Bill Cho, to examine two small Japanese cell phone component manufacturers: 4G, Inc. and Qphone Corp. Cho indicates that his clients are most interested in the use of leverage by 4G and Qphone. Benn states, "I will have to specifically analyze each company's respective business risk, sales risk, operating risk, and financial risk." "Fine, I'll check back with you shortly," Cho, answers.

Benn begins her analysis by examining the sales prospects of the two firms. The results of her sales analysis appear in Exhibit 1. She also expects very little price variability for these cell phones. She next gathers more data on these two companies to assist her analysis of their operating and financial risk.

When Cho inquires as to her progress Benn responds, "I have calculated Qphone's degree of operating leverage (DOL) and degree of financial leverage (DFL) at Qphone's 2009 level of unit sales. I have also calculated Qphone's breakeven level for unit sales. I will have 4G's leverage results shortly."

Cho responds, "Good, I will call a meeting of some potential investors for tomorrow. Please help me explain these concepts to them, and the differences in use of leverage by these two companies. In preparation for the meeting, I have a number of questions":

- "You mentioned business risk; what is included in that?"
- "How would you classify the risk due to the varying mix of variable and fixed costs?"
- "Could you conduct an analysis and tell me how the two companies will fare relative to each other in terms of net income if their unit sales increased by 10 percent above their 2009 unit sales levels?"
- "Finally, what would be an accurate verbal description of the degree of total leverage?"

The relevant data for analysis of 4G is contained in Exhibit 2, and Benn's analysis of the Qphone data appears in Exhibit 3:

Exhibit 1 Benn's Unit Sales Estimates for 4G, Inc. and Qphone Corp.

Company	2009 Unit Sales	Standard Deviation of Unit Sales	2010 Expected Unit Sales Growth Rate (%)
4G, Inc.	1,000,000	25,000	15
Qphone Corp.	1,500,000	10,000	15

Exhibit 2 Sales, Cost, and Expense Data for 4G, Inc. (At Unit Sales of 1,000,000)

Number of units produced and sold	1,000,000
Sales price per unit	¥108
Variable cost per unit	¥72
Fixed operating cost	¥22,500,000
Fixed financing expense	¥9,000,000

Exhibit 3 Benn's Analysis of Qphone (At Unit Sales of 1,500,000)

Degree of operating leverage	1.40
Degree of financial leverage	1.15
Breakeven quantity (units)	571,429

- 8 Based on Benn's analysis, 4G's sales risk relative to Qphone's is *most likely* to be:
- A lower.
 - B equal.
 - C higher.
- 9 What is the *most appropriate* response to Cho's question regarding the components of business risk?
- A Sales risk and financial risk.
 - B Operating risk and sales risk.
 - C Financial risk and operating risk.
- 10 The *most appropriate* response to Cho's question regarding the classification of risk arising from the mixture of variable and fixed costs is:
- A sales risk.
 - B financial risk.
 - C operating risk.

- 11 Based on the information in Exhibit 2, the degree of operating leverage (DOL) of 4G, Inc., at unit sales of 1,000,000, is *closest* to:
- A 1.60.
 - B 2.67.
 - C 3.20.
- 12 Based on the information in Exhibit 2, 4G, Inc.'s degree of financial leverage (DFL), at unit sales of 1,000,000, is *closest* to:
- A 1.33.
 - B 2.67.
 - C 3.00.
- 13 Based on the information in Exhibit 1 and Exhibit 3, Qphone's expected percentage change in operating income for 2010 is *closest* to:
- A 17.25%.
 - B 21.00%.
 - C 24.30%.
- 14 4G's breakeven quantity of unit sales is *closest* to:
- A 437,500 units.
 - B 625,000 units.
 - C 875,000 units.
- 15 In response to Cho's question regarding an increase in unit sales above 2009 unit sales levels, it is *most likely* that 4G's net income will increase at:
- A a slower rate than Qphone's.
 - B the same rate as Qphone's.
 - C a faster rate than Qphone's.
- 16 The *most appropriate* response to Cho's question regarding a description of the degree of total leverage is that degree of total leverage is:
- A the percentage change in net income divided by the percentage change in units sold.
 - B the percentage change in operating income divided by the percentage change in units sold.
 - C the percentage change in net income divided by the percentage change in operating income.
-

SOLUTIONS

- 1 C is correct. The companies' degree of operating leverage should be the same, consistent with C. Sales risk refers to the uncertainty of the number of units produced and sold and the price at which units are sold. Business risk is the joint effect of sales risk and operating risk.
- 2 C is correct. The degree of operating leverage is the elasticity of operating earnings with respect to the number of units produced and sold. As an elasticity, the degree of operating leverage measures the sensitivity of operating earnings to a change in the number of units produced and sold.
- 3 C is correct. Because DOL is 4, if unit sales increase by 5 percent, Fulcrum's operating earnings are expected to increase by $4 \times 5\% = 20\%$. The calculation for DOL is:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{DOL} &= \frac{(40 \text{ million})(\$100 - \$65)}{[(40 \text{ million})(\$100 - \$65)] - \$1.05 \text{ billion}} \\ &= \frac{\$1.400 \text{ billion}}{\$1.400 \text{ billion} - \$1.05 \text{ billion}} = \frac{\$1.4}{\$0.35} = 4 \end{aligned}$$

- 4 C is correct. Business risk reflects operating leverage and factors that affect sales (such as those given).
- 5 B is correct. Grundlegend's degree of operating leverage is the same as Basic Company's, whereas Grundlegend's degree of total leverage and degree of financial leverage are higher.
- 6 B is correct.

$$\text{Operating breakeven units} = \frac{\text{¥1,290 million}}{(\text{¥3,529} - \text{¥1,500})} = 635,781.173 \text{ units}$$

$$\text{Operating breakeven sales} = \text{¥3,529} \times 635,781.173 \text{ units} = \text{¥2,243,671,760}$$

or

$$\text{Operating breakeven sales} = \frac{\text{¥1,290 million}}{1 - (\text{¥1,500}/\text{¥3,529})} = \text{¥2,243,671,760}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Total breakeven} &= \frac{\text{¥1,290 million} + \text{¥410 million}}{(\text{¥3,529} - \text{¥1,500})} = \frac{\text{¥1,700 million}}{\text{¥2,029}} \\ &= 837,851.1582 \text{ units} \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{Breakeven sales} = \text{¥3,529} \times 837,851.1582 \text{ units} = \text{¥2,956,776,737}$$

or

$$\text{Breakeven sales} = \frac{\text{¥1,700 million}}{1 - (\text{¥1,500}/\text{¥3,529})} = \text{¥2,956,776,737}$$

- 7 A is correct. For The Gearing Company,

$$Q_{\text{BE}} = \frac{F + C}{P - V} = \frac{\$40 \text{ million} + \$20 \text{ million}}{\$200 - \$120} = 750,000$$

For Hebelkraft, Inc.,

$$Q_{\text{BE}} = \frac{F + C}{P - V} = \frac{\$90 \text{ million} + \$20 \text{ million}}{\$200 - \$100} = 1,100,000$$

- 8 C is correct. Sales risk is defined as uncertainty with respect to the price or quantity of goods and services sold. 4G has a higher standard deviation of unit sales than Qphone; in addition, 4G's standard deviation of unit sales stated as a fraction of its level of unit sales, at $25,000/1,000,000 = 0.025$, is greater than the comparable ratio for Qphone, $10,000/1,500,000 = 0.0067$.
- 9 B is correct. Business risk is associated with operating earnings. Operating earnings are affected by sales risk (uncertainty with respect to price and quantity), and operating risk (the operating cost structure and the level of fixed costs).
- 10 C is correct. Operating risk refers to the risk arising from the mix of fixed and variable costs.

11 B is correct.
$$DOL = \frac{Q(P - V)}{Q(P - V) - F}$$

$$DOL @ \begin{matrix} 1,000,000 \text{ units} \end{matrix} = \frac{1,000,000(\text{¥}108 - \text{¥}72)}{1,000,000(\text{¥}108 - \text{¥}72) - \text{¥}22,500,000} = 2.67$$

- 12 C is correct. Degree of financial leverage is

$$DFL = \frac{[Q(P - V) - F]}{[Q(P - V) - F - C]}$$

$$= \frac{1,000,000(\text{¥}108 - \text{¥}72) - \text{¥}22,500,000}{1,000,000(\text{¥}108 - \text{¥}72) - \text{¥}22,500,000 - \text{¥}9,000,000} = 3.00$$

- 13 B is correct. The degree of operating leverage of Qphone is 1.4. The percentage change in operating income is equal to the DOL times the percentage change in units sold, therefore:

$$\begin{matrix} \text{Percentage change} \\ \text{in operating income} \end{matrix} = (DOL) \left(\begin{matrix} \text{Percentage change} \\ \text{in units sold} \end{matrix} \right) = (1.4)(15\%) = 21\%$$

- 14 C is correct. The breakeven quantity is computed

$$Q_{BE} = \frac{F + C}{P - V} = \frac{(\text{¥}22,500,000 + \text{¥}9,000,000)}{(\text{¥}108 - \text{¥}72)} = 875,000$$

- 15 C is correct. 4G, Inc.'s degree of total leverage can be shown to equal 8, whereas Qphone Corp.'s degree of total leverage is only $DOL \times DFL = 1.4 \times 1.15 = 1.61$. Therefore, a 10 percent increase in unit sales will mean an 80 percent increase in net income for 4G, but only a 16.1 percent increase in net income for Qphone Corp. The calculation for 4G, Inc.'s DTL is

$$DTL = \frac{Q(P - V)}{Q(P - V) - F - C}$$

$$= \frac{1,000,000(\text{¥}108 - \text{¥}72)}{1,000,000(\text{¥}108 - \text{¥}72) - \text{¥}22,500,000 - \text{¥}9,000,000} = 8.00$$

- 16 A is correct. Degree of total leverage is defined as the percentage change in net income divided by the percentage change in units sold.

Working Capital Management

by Edgar A. Norton, Jr., PhD, CFA, Kenneth L. Parkinson, MBA, CCM, and Pamela Peterson Drake, PhD, CFA

Edgar A. Norton, Jr., PhD, CFA, is at Illinois State University (USA). Kenneth L. Parkinson, MBA, CCM, is at Treasury Information Services, LLC (USA). Pamela Peterson Drake, PhD, CFA, is at James Madison University (USA).

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Mastery	The candidate should be able to:
<input type="checkbox"/>	a. describe primary and secondary sources of liquidity and factors that influence a company's liquidity position;
<input type="checkbox"/>	b. compare a company's liquidity measures with those of peer companies;
<input type="checkbox"/>	c. evaluate working capital effectiveness of a company based on its operating and cash conversion cycles and compare the company's effectiveness with that of peer companies;
<input type="checkbox"/>	d. describe how different types of cash flows affect a company's net daily cash position;
<input type="checkbox"/>	e. calculate and interpret comparable yields on various securities, compare portfolio returns against a standard benchmark, and evaluate a company's short-term investment policy guidelines;
<input type="checkbox"/>	f. evaluate a company's management of accounts receivable, inventory, and accounts payable over time and compared to peer companies;
<input type="checkbox"/>	g. evaluate the choices of short-term funding available to a company and recommend a financing method.

INTRODUCTION

The focus of this reading is on the short-term aspects of corporate finance activities collectively referred to as **working capital management**. The goal of effective working capital management is to ensure that a company has adequate ready access to the funds necessary for day-to-day operating expenses, while at the same time making sure that the company's assets are invested in the most productive way. Achieving this goal requires a balancing of concerns. Insufficient access to cash could ultimately lead

to severe restructuring of a company by selling off assets, reorganization via bankruptcy proceedings, or final liquidation of the company. On the other hand, excessive investment in cash and liquid assets may not be the best use of company resources.

Effective working capital management encompasses several aspects of short-term finance: maintaining adequate levels of cash, converting short-term assets (i.e., accounts receivable and inventory) into cash, and controlling outgoing payments to vendors, employees, and others. To do this successfully, companies invest short-term funds in working capital portfolios of short-dated, highly liquid securities, or they maintain credit reserves in the form of bank lines of credit or access to financing by issuing commercial paper or other money market instruments.

Working capital management is a broad-based function. Effective execution requires managing and coordinating several tasks within the company, including managing short-term investments, granting credit to customers and collecting on this credit, managing inventory, and managing payables. Effective working capital management also requires reliable cash forecasts, as well as current and accurate information on transactions and bank balances.

Both internal and external factors influence working capital needs; we summarize them in Exhibit 1.

Exhibit 1 Internal and External Factors That Affect Working Capital Needs

Internal Factors	External Factors
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Company size and growth rates ■ Organizational structure ■ Sophistication of working capital management ■ Borrowing and investing positions/activities/capacities 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Banking services ■ Interest rates ■ New technologies and new products ■ The economy ■ Competitors

The scope of working capital management includes transactions, relations, analyses, and focus:

- Transactions include payments for trade, financing, and investment.
- Relations with financial institutions and trading partners must be maintained to ensure that the transactions work effectively.
- Analyses of working capital management activities are required so that appropriate strategies can be formulated and implemented.
- Focus requires that organizations of all sizes today must have a global viewpoint with strong emphasis on liquidity.

In this reading, we examine the different types of working capital and the management issues associated with each. We also look at methods of evaluating the effectiveness of working capital management.

2

MANAGING AND MEASURING LIQUIDITY

Liquidity is the extent to which a company is able to meet its short-term obligations using assets that can be readily transformed into cash. When we evaluate the liquidity of an asset, we focus on two dimensions: the type of asset and the speed at which the

asset can be converted to cash, either by sale or financing. Unlike many aspects of corporate finance, corporate liquidity management does not involve a great deal of theory or generally accepted principles. For companies that have the luxury of large excesses of cash, liquidity is typically taken for granted, and the focus is on putting the excess liquidity to its most productive use. On the other hand, when a company faces tighter financial situations, it is important to have effective liquidity management to ensure solvency. Unfortunately, this recognition comes too late for some companies, with bankruptcy and possible liquidation representing the company's final choice.

2.1 Defining Liquidity Management

Liquidity management refers to the ability of an organization to generate cash when and where it is needed. Liquidity refers to the resources available for an entity to tap into cash balances and to convert other assets or extend other liabilities into cash for use in keeping the entity solvent (i.e., being able to pay bills and continue in operation). For the most part, we associate liquidity with short-term assets and liabilities, yet longer-term assets can be converted into cash to provide liquidity. In addition, longer-term liabilities can also be renegotiated to reduce the drain on cash, thereby providing liquidity by preserving the limited supply of cash. Of course, the last two methods may come at a price as they tend to reduce the company's overall financial strength.

The challenges of managing liquidity include developing, implementing, and maintaining a liquidity policy. To do this effectively, a company must manage all of its key sources of liquidity efficiently. These key sources may vary from company to company, but they generally include the primary sources of liquidity, such as cash balances, and secondary sources of liquidity, such as selling assets.

2.1.1 Primary Sources of Liquidity

Primary sources of liquidity represent the most readily accessible resources available. They may be held as cash or as near-cash securities. Primary sources include:

- Ready cash balances, which is cash available in bank accounts, resulting from payment collections, investment income, liquidation of near-cash securities (i.e., those with maturities of less than 90 days), and other cash flows.
- Short-term funds, which may include items such as trade credit, bank lines of credit, and short-term investment portfolios.
- Cash flow management, which is the company's effectiveness in its cash management system and practices, and the degree of decentralization of the collections or payments processes. The more decentralized the system of collections, for example, the more likely the company will be to have cash tied up in the system and not available for use.

These sources represent liquidity that is typical for most companies. They represent funds that are readily accessible at relatively low cost.

2.1.2 Secondary Sources of Liquidity

The main difference between the primary and secondary sources of liquidity is that using a primary source is not likely to affect the normal operations of the company, whereas using a secondary source may result in a change in the company's financial and operating positions. Secondary sources include:

- negotiating debt contracts, relieving pressures from high interest payments or principal repayments;

- liquidating assets, which depends on the degree to which short-term and/or long-term assets can be liquidated and converted into cash without substantial loss in value; and
- filing for bankruptcy protection and reorganization.

Use of secondary sources may signal a company's deteriorating financial health and provide liquidity at a high price—the cost of giving up a company asset to produce emergency cash. The last source, reorganization through bankruptcy, may also be considered a liquidity tool because a company under bankruptcy protection that generates operating cash will be liquid and generally able to continue business operations until a restructuring has been devised and approved.

2.1.3 Drags and Pulls on Liquidity

Cash flow transactions—that is, cash receipts and disbursements—have significant effects on a company's liquidity position. We refer to these effects as drags and pulls on liquidity. A **drag on liquidity** is when receipts lag, creating pressure from the decreased available funds; a **pull on liquidity** is when disbursements are paid too quickly or trade credit availability is limited, requiring companies to expend funds before they receive funds from sales that could cover the liability.

Major drags on receipts involve pressures from credit management and deterioration in other assets and include:

- *Uncollected receivables.* The longer these are outstanding, the greater the risk that they will not be collected at all. They are indicated by the large number of days of receivables and high levels of bad debt expenses. Just as the drags on receipts may cause increased pressures on working capital, pulls on outgoing payments may have similar effects.
- *Obsolete inventory.* If inventory stands unused for long periods, it may be an indication that it is no longer usable. Slow inventory turnover ratios can also indicate obsolete inventory. Once identified, obsolete inventory should be attended to as soon as possible in order to minimize storage and other costs.
- *Tight credit.* When economic conditions make capital scarcer, short-term debt becomes more expensive to arrange and use. Attempting to smooth out peak borrowings can help blunt the impact of tight credit as can improving the company's collections.

In many cases, drags may be alleviated by stricter enforcement of credit and collection practices.¹

However, managing the cash outflows may be as important as managing the inflows. If suppliers and other vendors who offer credit terms perceive a weakened financial position or are unfamiliar with a company, they may restrict payment terms so much that the company's liquidity reserves are stretched thin. Major pulls on payments include:

- *Making payments early.* By paying vendors, employees, or others before the due dates, companies forgo the use of funds. Effective payment management means not making early payments. Payables managers typically hold payments until they can be made by the due date.

¹ In a survey of CFOs, companies have become more efficient in working capital management, with US companies in 2005 reducing their investment in working capital by 2.5 percent from 2004 levels and European companies reducing their investment by 3.3 percent (REL 2005 CFO Survey, www.relconsult.com).

- *Reduced credit limits.* If a company has a history of making late payments, suppliers may cut the amount of credit they will allow to be outstanding at any time, which can squeeze the company's liquidity. Some companies try to extend payment periods as long as possible, disregarding the possible impact of reduced credit limits.
- *Limits on short-term lines of credit.* If a company's bank reduces the line of credit it offers the company, a liquidity squeeze may result. Credit line restrictions may be government-mandated, market-related, or simply company-specific. Many companies try to avert this situation by establishing credit lines far in excess of what they are likely to need. This "over-banking" approach is often commonplace in emerging economies or even in more-developed countries where the banking system is not sound and the economy is shaky.
- *Low liquidity positions.* Many companies face chronic liquidity shortages, often because of their particular industry or from their weaker financial position. The major remedy for this situation is, of course, to improve the company's financial position, or else the company will be heavily affected by interest rates and credit availability. Most companies facing this situation have to deal with secured borrowing to obtain any working capital funds. Therefore, it is important for these companies to identify assets that can be used to help support the company's short-term borrowing activities.

It is critical that these drags and pulls be identified as soon as possible, often when they have not yet happened or have just arisen.

2.2 Measuring Liquidity

Liquidity contributes to a company's credit-worthiness. **Credit-worthiness** is the perceived ability of the borrower to pay what is owed on the borrowing in a timely manner and represents the ability of a company to withstand adverse impacts on its cash flows. Credit-worthiness allows the company to obtain lower borrowing costs and better terms for trade credit and contributes to the company's investment flexibility, enabling it to exploit profitable opportunities.

The less liquid the company, the greater the risk it will suffer financial distress or, in the extreme case, insolvency or bankruptcy. Because debt obligations are paid with cash, the company's cash flows ultimately determine solvency. The immediate source of funds for paying bills is cash on hand, proceeds from the sale of marketable securities, or the collection of accounts receivable. Additional liquidity also comes from inventory that can be sold and thus converted into cash either directly through cash sales or indirectly through credit sales (i.e., accounts receivable).

There is, however, some point at which a company may have too much invested in low- and non-earning assets. Cash, marketable securities, accounts receivable, and inventory represent a company's liquidity. However, these investments are low earning relative to the long-term, capital investment opportunities that companies may have available.

Various financial ratios can be used to assess a company's liquidity as well as its management of assets over time. Here we will look at some of these ratios in a little more detail.

We calculate **liquidity ratios** to measure a company's ability to meet short-term obligations to creditors as they mature or come due. This form of liquidity analysis focuses on the relationship between current assets and current liabilities and the rapidity with which receivables and inventory can be converted into cash during normal business operations.

In short-term financial management, a great deal of emphasis is placed on the levels of and changes in current assets and liabilities. The two most common measurements are the current ratio and the quick ratio. The **current ratio** is the ratio of current assets to current liabilities:

$$\text{Current ratio} = \frac{\text{Current assets}}{\text{Current liabilities}}$$

The **quick ratio** (also known as the **acid-test ratio**) is the ratio of the quick assets to current liabilities. **Quick assets** are those assets that can be most readily converted to cash. In most situations, the least liquid of the current assets is inventory. Hence, we typically exclude inventory when calculating the quick ratio:

$$\text{Quick ratio} = \frac{\text{Cash} + \text{Short-term marketable investments} + \text{Receivables}}{\text{Current liabilities}}$$

The greater the current ratio or the quick ratio (that is, the greater the potential ability to cover current liabilities), the higher a company's liquidity. Whether a given current or quick ratio is good or bad, however, depends on a number of factors, including the trend in these ratios, the comparability of these ratios with competitors, and the available opportunities in more-profitable, long-lived, capital investments.

In addition to looking at the relations among these balance sheet accounts, we can also form ratios that measure how well key current assets are managed over time. The key ratios for asset management are turnover ratios. For example, the **accounts receivable turnover** is the ratio of sales on credit to the average balance in accounts receivable:²

$$\text{Accounts receivable turnover} = \frac{\text{Credit sales}}{\text{Average receivables}}$$

This ratio is a measure of how many times, on average, accounts receivable are created by credit sales and collected on during the fiscal period. As another example, the **inventory turnover** is the ratio of the cost of goods sold to the balance in inventory:

$$\text{Inventory turnover} = \frac{\text{Cost of goods sold}}{\text{Average inventory}}$$

This ratio is a measure of how many times, on average, inventory is created or acquired and sold during the fiscal period.

Another perspective on the activity within the current accounts is to estimate the number of days of the current asset or liability that are on hand. For example, the **number of days of receivables**, also referred to as the **day's sales outstanding** and **days in receivables**, gives us an idea of the management of the extension and collection of credit to customers:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Number of days of receivables} &= \frac{\text{Accounts receivable}}{\text{Average day's sales on credit}} \\ &= \frac{\text{Accounts receivable}}{\text{Sales on credit}/365} \end{aligned}$$

² You will notice that we use credit sales instead of total revenue; the difference lies in the context. Within the context of working capital management, the corporate financial analyst would have access to details regarding the company's credit versus cash sales. For some companies, sales may be for cash or be some combination of cash sales and credit sales. For the analyst who is looking at the company without benefit of internal information regarding how much of sales is in the form of credit sales, an approximation is generally used based on industry norms for credit practices.

For example, if this number of days is 35.5, this tells us that it takes, on average, 35.5 days to collect on the credit accounts. Whether this is good or bad depends on credit terms that are offered to customers and the relation between sales and the extension of credit, which is often dictated by industry customs and competitive pressures.

The **number of days of inventory** gives us an indication of how well the inventory acquisition, process, and distribution is managed:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Number of days of inventory} &= \frac{\text{Inventory}}{\text{Average day's cost of goods sold}} \\ &= \frac{\text{Inventory}}{\text{Cost of goods sold}/365}\end{aligned}$$

The number of days of inventory, also known as the average inventory period, day's sales in ending inventory, and the inventory holding period, is the length of time, on average, that the inventory remains within the company during the fiscal period. We expect variation in the number of days of inventory among industries because of differences in the production cycle of different types of inventory. For example, we expect a grocery store to have a lower number of days of inventory than, say, an aircraft manufacturer.

We can also look at the disbursement side of cash flows with the **number of days of payables**, which provides a measure of how long it takes the company to pay its own suppliers:

$$\text{Number of days of payables} = \frac{\text{Accounts payable}}{\text{Average day's purchases}} = \frac{\text{Accounts payable}}{\text{Purchases}/365}$$

The number of days of payables is also referred to as the day's payables outstanding and the average days payable. Purchases are not an item on published financial statements, so if you are evaluating a company's payables, you can estimate the purchases by using what you know about the company's cost of goods sold and beginning and ending balances in inventory.³

Each of these turnover ratios and numbers of days helps tell a story of how the company is managing its liquid assets. Like all ratios, the numbers themselves do not indicate much, but when we put these together with trends, information on the company's profitability, and information about competitors, we develop a good understanding of a company's performance.⁴

Some of the major applications of this type of analysis include performance evaluation, monitoring, credit-worthiness, and financial projections. But ratios are useful only when they can be compared. The comparison should be done in two ways—comparisons over time for the same company and over time for the company compared with its peer group. Peer groups can include competitors from the same industries as the company as well as other companies with comparable size and financial situations.

Consider Wal-Mart Stores, Inc. We can see the change in the current ratio and quick ratio over the fiscal years 1992 through 2005 in Exhibit 2, Panel A. Here, we see that the current ratio has declined, yet the quick ratio has increased slightly. We can see what is driving these trends in Panel B of this exhibit. One driver is the efficiency in the management of inventory, which results in holding on to inventory fewer days, as indicated by the downward trend in the number of days of inventory. Putting it in

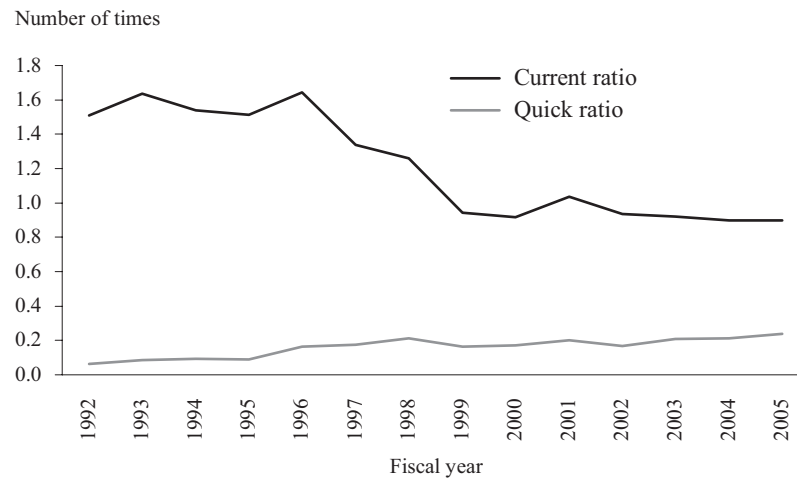
³ We know that Beginning inventory + Purchases – Cost of goods sold = Ending inventory. Therefore, if we know the inventory balances (from the balance sheet) and the cost of goods sold (from the income statement), we can determine the purchases: Purchases = Cost of goods sold + Ending inventory – Beginning inventory.

⁴ For example, if we see a small number of days of inventory, it could mean that the company is managing its production very efficiently or it could mean that the company is at significant risk of a shortage of inventory. We don't know more until we look at what is needed or usual for companies in the industry, trends in turnover for the company, and the company's profitability in relation to the number of days of inventory.

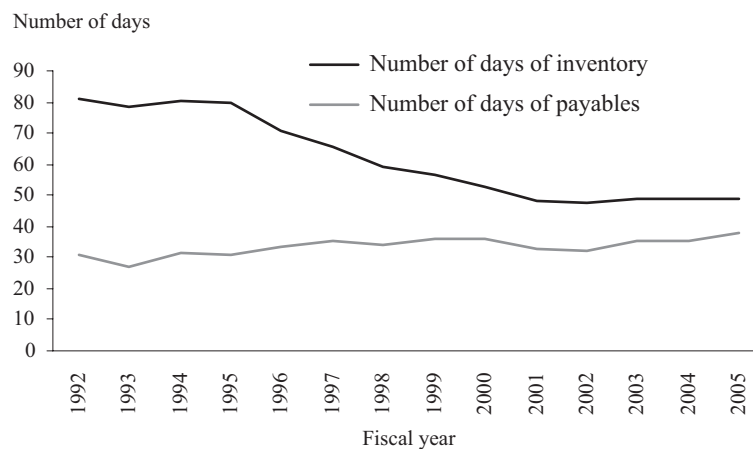
perspective, this trend may be because of, in part, the product shift when Wal-Mart Stores increased its presence in the grocery line of business. Another driver is the increasing number of days of payables, which means that company is taking longer to pay what it owes suppliers.

Exhibit 2 Liquidity Analysis of Wal-Mart Stores

Panel A: Current and Quick Ratios, 1992–2005



Panel B: Number of Days of Inventory and Number of Days of Payables



Source: Wal-Mart Stores, Inc., 10-K filings, various years.

Comparing Wal-Mart with Target Inc. and Kohl's in the 2005 fiscal year, as shown in Exhibit 3, we see differences among these three competitors. These differences may be explained, in part, by the different product mixes (e.g., Wal-Mart has more sales from grocery lines than the others), as well as different inventory management systems and different inventory suppliers. The different need for liquidity may also be explained, in part, by the different operating cycles of the companies.

Exhibit 3 Liquidity Ratios among Discount Retailers

Ratio for 2005 Fiscal Year	Company		
	Wal-Mart	Target	Kohl's
Current ratio	0.9	1.5	2.4
Quick ratio	0.2	0.9	1.2
Number of days of inventory	48.9	61.0	94.5
Number of days of payables	38.1	64.7	33.9

Source: Company 10-K filings with Securities and Exchange Commission for fiscal year 2005.

EXAMPLE 1
Measuring Liquidity

Given the following ratios, how well has the company been managing its liquidity for the past two years?

Ratio	Current Year		Past Year	
	Company	Industry	Company	Industry
Current ratio	1.9	2.5	1.1	2.3
Quick ratio	0.7	1.0	0.4	0.9
Number of days of receivables	39.0	34.0	44.0	32.5
Number of days of inventory	41.0	30.3	45.0	27.4
Number of days of payables	34.3	36.0	29.4	35.5

Solution:

The ratios should be compared in two ways—over time (there would typically be more than two years' worth of data) and against the industry averages. In all ratios shown here, the current year shows improvement over the previous year in terms of increased liquidity. In each case, however, the company remains behind the industry average in terms of liquidity. A brief snapshot such as this example could be the starting point to initiate or encourage more improvements with the goal of reaching or beating the industry standards.

We can combine the number of days of inventory, number of days of receivables, and number of days of payables to get a sense of the company's operating cycle and net operating cycle. The **operating cycle** is a measure of the time needed to convert raw materials into cash from a sale. It consists of the number of days of inventory and the number of days of receivables:

$$\text{Operating cycle} = \frac{\text{Number of days}}{\text{of inventory}} + \frac{\text{Number of days}}{\text{of receivables}}$$

The operating cycle does not take everything into account, however, because the available cash flow is increased by deferring payment to suppliers. This deferral is considered in the **net operating cycle**, also called the **cash conversion cycle**. The

net operating cycle is a measure of the time from paying suppliers for materials to collecting cash from the subsequent sale of goods produced from these supplies. It consists of the operating cycle minus the number of days of payables:

$$\text{Net operating cycle} = \frac{\text{Number of days of inventory}}{\text{of inventory}} + \frac{\text{Number of days of receivables}}{\text{of receivables}} - \frac{\text{Number of days of payables}}{\text{of payables}}$$

In general, the shorter these cycles the greater a company's cash-generating ability and the less its need for liquid assets or outside finance. For many companies, the cash conversion cycle represents a period of time that requires financing—that is, the company offsets some of the financing need by deferring payments through payables terms, but the remainder must be financed.

3

MANAGING THE CASH POSITION

Although the mix or magnitude of data items may change from day to day, the goal is the same: ensuring that the net cash position is not negative. Ideally, the company's daily cash inflows and outflows would be equal, but this is rarely the case. Without the reliability of matching these flows, companies must take other steps to ensure that the flows net out each day. Most companies try to avoid negative balances because the cost of garnering daily funds by issuing debt or by drawing on bank overdraft facilities is very costly, although the cost of maintaining a small short-term investment portfolio, in terms of an opportunity cost, is regarded as an acceptable cost of doing business.

In addition, it is difficult to borrow the exact amount needed, so many companies borrow a little extra to be safe and invest any small excesses overnight at lower rates than if they could invest them earlier or in securities with higher rates. To manage the cash position effectively, the treasury function, which is usually responsible for this activity, must gather information from various sources at all times during the day, making decisions based on the latest information.

Several critical factors help determine how a company can establish an efficient cash flow system. In most cases, the central treasury function may not be able to dictate how the company collects from customers or pays its vendors. What it can do, however, is use the best services and techniques associated with the company's payment configuration.

As an example of a typical cycle of cash management information that occurs daily, consider the process outlined in Exhibit 4. This hypothetical schedule shows how important it is to have an efficient, smooth-flowing information system that can meet the time requirements.

Exhibit 4 An Example of the Daily Cycle of Cash Management

Information from bank reporting systems is gathered and analyzed. *Morning*



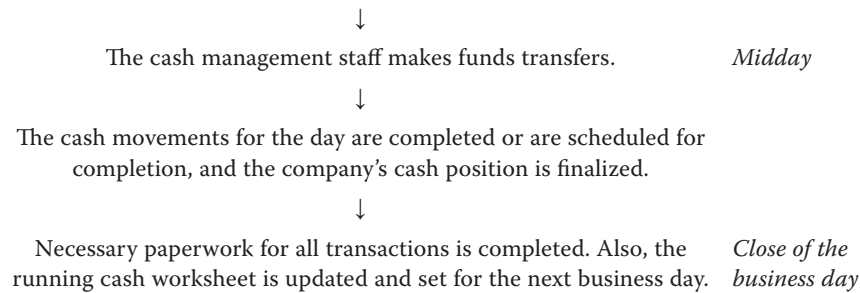
The cash manager receives information from company sources.



The cash manager receives updates from the company's bank(s) on current-day transactions.



The cash management staff is arranging short-term investments and/or loans, as necessary, through broker-dealers from their banks or investment banks.

Exhibit 4 (Continued)

3.1 Forecasting Short-Term Cash Flows

Forecasting cash flows is necessary to allow effective management of working capital accounts. For cash forecasting to be effective, it has to be relatively precise. However, a forecast that is precise may not be *accurate*. There are many factors that are outside of the company's control, such as the general economy, unexpected raw material shortages, and changing interest rates. The uncertainty in forecasting encourages companies to maintain some minimum level of cash on hand as a buffer.

3.1.1 Minimum Cash Balances

Most companies want a cash buffer as protection from unexpected cash needs or to provide the financial flexibility to take advantage of attractive opportunities, such as procuring raw material inventory at a discount. This buffer is often expressed as a minimum desired cash balance. The size of this buffer depends on several influences, including the variation in the levels of the company's cash inflows and outflows, the company's ability to access other liquidity sources, and the company's ability to access borrowing facilities with little lead time.

3.1.2 Identifying Typical Cash Flows

Having an accurate forecast can help a financial manager make better use of the company's financial history. Many product lines, especially those that are not in high-growth stages but rather are in steadier, mature stages, will have similar cash flows from year to year or season to season. If an extensive database has been established, it will be possible to draw reasonable projections for the current period or longer.

Even in cases of heavy growth through mergers and acquisitions, companies should try to transfer the acquired company's cash flow history to be used as a starting point for consolidating the new operation into the rest of the company. The cash manager must identify cash flow elements to build a reliable forecast. These elements are not difficult to identify in general terms, but it is much harder to define them more specifically to be able to collect data regularly.

The cash elements that comprise a total forecast vary from company to company. However, it is good practice to identify the elements that pertain to any one individual company. Exhibit 5 shows typical elements arranged as inflows and outflows. It may be more useful to try to arrange the elements in this manner—i.e., show matching elements by the direction of their flow (in or out). In most cases, a company's data elements can be arranged this way to facilitate data gathering, reviewing variances, and presenting final reports to management and other cash users or providers.

Exhibit 5 Examples of Cash Inflows and Outflows

Inflows	Outflows
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Receipts from operations, broken down by operating unit, departments, etc. ■ Funds transfers from subsidiaries, joint ventures, third parties ■ Maturing investments ■ Debt proceeds (short and long term) ■ Other income items (interest, etc.) ■ Tax refunds 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Payables and payroll disbursements, broken down by operating unit, departments, etc. ■ Funds transfers to subsidiaries ■ Investments made ■ Debt repayments ■ Interest and dividend payments ■ Tax payments

These elements should reflect real cash flows, excluding such items as depreciation or accruals that are paid at a later date (these should be included when they are to be paid).

3.1.3 Cash Forecasting Systems

Cash forecasting should be structured as a system in order to be effective, and to do this, several aspects of the forecast must be considered. We provide some examples of these aspects in Exhibit 6, which highlights each aspect for three different forecast horizons. In some cases, one aspect may be more important than others. For instance, if daily cash is being handled fairly easily, it may be more critical to spend time and resources to ensure that the medium-term forecasting part of the overall system is functioning at the highest levels of reliability. In addition, some factors, such as format or time horizon, should not be changed arbitrarily because change may affect their accuracy and reliability levels.

Exhibit 6 Examples of Cash Forecasting Aspects over Different Forecast Horizons

	Short Term	Medium Term	Long Term
Data frequency	Daily/weekly for 4–6 weeks	Monthly for one year	Annually for 3–5 years
Format	Receipts and disbursements	Receipts and disbursements	Projected financial statements
Techniques	Simple projections	Projection models and averages	Statistical models
Accuracy	Very high	Moderate	Lowest
Reliability	Very high	Fairly high	Not as high
Uses	Daily cash management	Planning financial transactions	Long-range financial position

3.2 Monitoring Cash Uses and Levels

Another facet of cash forecasting is monitoring and control. Managing the cash position essentially means keeping a “running score” on daily cash flows. Monitoring daily cash flows is a key aspect of a company’s cash forecasting system in that the financial manager in charge of managing the cash position must know the company’s cash balance in the bank on virtually a real-time basis. However, it really is not *forecasting* as such, because most of the transactions are actually known; the challenge lies in the

collection of this known information in time to do something with that information. For example, receiving information about a deposit too late to transfer the funds renders the information valueless.

To receive the appropriate information on a timely basis, information should be gathered from principal users and providers of cash, supplemented by short-term cash projections in days or even throughout the current day. The minimum level of cash available is estimated in advance, adjusted for known funds transfers, seasonality, or other factors, and is used as a **target balance** figure for each bank. Note that most companies use one major bank as their lead bank (or concentration bank) and control the balances for the bank through one main concentration account, with the target balance applied to the main account. For larger companies, more than one concentration bank is possible, but managing the cash positions in multiple concentration banks quickly makes the system complex and requires an efficient information processing system.

For most companies, it is necessary to manage a cash position with the assistance of short-term investments and borrowings. These short-term liquidity sources help counter the excesses and deficits that typically occur in a company's cash flow. The short-term investments are usually kept in a portfolio that is very liquid, with short maturities. In this way, funds are available whenever they are needed, but the company gives up the extra yield that might have been earned if the investments were made for longer periods of time or with securities with less liquidity. Short-term borrowing is for very short periods of time, but a borrower may find more economies in borrowing for regular periods, such as thirty days, to reduce the number of transactions and associated paperwork. Also, by extending the borrowing period, companies can usually obtain better rates and availabilities of funds than if they continually borrow very short maturities.

Many companies face predictable peaks and valleys in their business throughout the year. For instance, manufacturers of consumer electronics products achieve the bulk of their sales during the holiday shopping season (from late November through the end of the year), which means that they have build-up of products that are shipped well before they receive payment. Thus, they have to finance this inventory roll-out before they receive any cash. During this period, they are likely to use up most or all of the temporary excess funds they set aside or to tap into the credit lines they arranged for this purpose. When sales roll in during the busy shopping season, they use the proceeds to pay down the borrowing and then invest any excess.

Other influencing factors on a company's cash needs may be associated with non-operating activities, such as major capital expenditure programs, mergers and acquisitions, sales or disposition of company assets, and the timing of long-term financial transactions, such as bond issues, private placements of debt or equity, and equity issues.

Predicting the peak need caused by seasonality or other non-operating activities is important if the company is going to have to borrow funds to cover the need. If a company sets aside too much, it will incur excess costs that are unjustified. If it sets aside too little, it will have to pay a penalty to raise funds quickly. Either case is a costly error. A reliable forecast can help avoid this situation.

INVESTING SHORT-TERM FUNDS

4

Short-term investments represent a temporary store of funds that are not necessarily needed in a company's daily transactions. If a substantial portion of a company's working capital portfolio is not needed for short-term transactions, it should be separated from a working capital portfolio and placed in a longer-term portfolio. Such

longer-term portfolios are often handled by another area or are handled by an outside money manager under the company's supervision. In this way, the risks, maturities, and portfolio management of longer-term portfolios can be managed independently of the working capital portfolio.

Short-term working capital portfolios consist of securities that are highly liquid, less risky, and shorter in maturity than other types of investment portfolios. Thus, a company's working capital portfolio may consist of short-term debt securities, such as short-term US government securities and short-term bank and corporate obligations. This type of portfolio changes almost constantly, as cash is needed or more excess cash is available for investments.

4.1 Short-Term Investment Instruments

We describe examples of the major instruments for short-term investments in Exhibit 7. The relative amounts of each security can vary from one company to another, depending on the company's risk tolerance and how quickly the invested funds will be needed.

Exhibit 7 Examples of Short-Term Investment Instruments

Instruments	Typical Maturities	Features	Risks
US Treasury Bills (T-bills)	13, 26, and 52 weeks	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Obligations of US government (guaranteed), issued at a discount ■ Active secondary market ■ Lowest rates for traded securities 	Virtually no risk
Federal agency securities	5–30 days	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Obligations of US federal agencies (e.g., Fannie Mae, Federal Home Loan Board) issued as interest-bearing ■ Slightly higher yields than T-bills 	Slight liquidity risk; insignificant credit risk
Bank certificates of deposit (CDs)	14–365 days	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Bank obligations, issued interest-bearing in \$100,000 increments ■ “Yankee” CDs offer slightly higher yields 	Credit and liquidity risk (depending on bank's credit)
Banker's acceptances (BAs)	30–180 days	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Bank obligations for trade transactions (usually foreign), issued at a discount ■ Investor protected by underlying company and trade flow itself ■ Small secondary market 	Credit and liquidity risk (depending on bank's credit)
Eurodollar time deposits	1–180 days	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Time deposit with bank off-shore (outside United States, such as Bahamas) ■ Can be CD or straight time deposit (TD) ■ Interest-bearing investment ■ Small secondary market for CDs, but not TDs 	Credit risk (depending on bank) Very high liquidity risk for TDs
Bank sweep services	1 day	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Service offered by banks that essentially provides interest on checking account balance (usually over a minimum level) ■ Large number of sweeps are for overnight 	Credit and liquidity risk (depending on bank)
Repurchase agreements (Repos)	1 day +	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Sale of securities with the agreement of the dealer (seller) to buy them back at a future time ■ Typically over-collateralized at 102 percent ■ Often done for very short maturities (< 1 week) 	Credit and liquidity risk (depending on dealer)

Exhibit 7 (Continued)

Instruments	Typical Maturities	Features	Risks
Commercial paper (CP)	1–270 days	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Unsecured obligations of corporations and financial institutions, issued at discount ■ Secondary market for large issuers ■ CP issuers obtain short-term credit ratings 	Credit and liquidity risk (depending on credit rating)
Mutual funds and money market mutual funds	Varies	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Money market mutual funds commonly used by smaller businesses ■ Low yields but high liquidity for money market funds; mutual fund liquidity dependent on underlying securities in fund ■ Can be linked with bank sweep arrangement 	Credit and liquidity risk (depending on fund manager)
Tax-advantaged securities	7, 28, 35, 49, and 90 days	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Preferred stock in many forms, including adjustable rate preferred stocks (ARPs), auction rate preferred stocks (AURPs), and convertible adjustable preferred stocks (CAPs) ■ Dutch auction often used to set rate ■ Offer higher yields 	Credit and liquidity risk (depending on issuer's credit)

4.1.1 Computing Yields on Short-Term Investments

Some securities, such as T-bills and banker's acceptances, are issued at a discount. Thus, the investor invests less than the face value of the security and receives the face value back at maturity. For instance, a \$1 million security that pays 5 percent in interest with one month remaining to maturity would be purchased at:

$$\text{Purchase price} = \$1,000,000 - [(0.05)(1/12)(\$1,000,000)] = \$995,833.33$$

$$\text{Proceeds (face value)} = \$1,000,000$$

The difference between the purchase price and the face value, \$4,166.67, is the **discount interest**.

Interest-bearing securities differ from discounted securities in that the investor pays the face amount and receives back that same face amount plus the interest on the security. For example, a 5 percent, 30-day, \$1 million security would return \$1 million face value plus interest earned:

$$\text{Purchase price (face value)} = \$1,000,000$$

$$\text{Proceeds} = \$1,000,000 + [(0.05)(1/12)(\$1,000,000)] = \$1,004,166.67$$

Rates on securities may be quoted as nominal rates or as yields. A **nominal rate** is a rate of interest based on the security's face value. In the previous two examples, the nominal rate in each instance was 5 percent. A **yield**, on the other hand, is the actual return on the investment if it is held to maturity. For example, if you buy the discount security for \$995,833.33 and hold it for one month until it matures for \$1 million, your yield on this investment is

$$\text{Yield} = \left(\frac{\$1,000,000 - 995,833.33}{995,833.33} \right) (12) = (0.004184)(12) = 5.0209\%$$

where the second factor, 12, annualizes the monthly yield of 0.4184 percent. The factor that is used to annualize the yield depends on the type of security and the traditions for quoting yields. For example, the **money market yield** is typically annualized using the ratio of 360 to the number of days to maturity:

$$\text{Money market yield} = \left(\frac{\text{Face value} - \text{Purchase price}}{\text{Purchase price}} \right) \left(\frac{360}{\text{Number of days to maturity}} \right)$$

On the other hand, the **bond equivalent yield** is typically annualized using the ratio of 365 to the number of days to maturity:

$$\text{Bond equivalent yield} = \left(\frac{\text{Face value} - \text{Purchase price}}{\text{Purchase price}} \right) \left(\frac{365}{\text{Number of days to maturity}} \right)$$

One source of confusion is that the yield on US T-bills may be quoted on the basis of the discount basis or the bond equivalent basis (also referred to as the investment yield basis). The yield on a T-bill using the discount basis is calculated using the face value as the basis for the yield and then using a 360-day year:

$$\text{Discount-basis yield} = \left(\frac{\text{Face value} - \text{Purchase price}}{\text{Face value}} \right) \left(\frac{360}{\text{Number of days to maturity}} \right)$$

Although the relevant yield for investment decision purposes is the bond equivalent yield, it is important to understand the discount basis because it is often quoted in the context of these securities.

EXAMPLE 2

Computing Investment Yields

For a 91-day \$100,000 US T-bill sold at a discounted rate of 7.91 percent, calculate the following:

- 1 Money market yield.
- 2 Bond equivalent yield.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Purchase price} &= \$100,000 - [(0.0791)(91/360)(\$100,000)] \\ &= \$98,000.53 \end{aligned}$$

Solution to 1:

$$\text{Money market yield} = [1,999.47/98,000.53] \times [360/91] = 8.07 \text{ percent}$$

Solution to 2:

$$\text{Bond equivalent yield} = [1,999.47/98,000.53] \times [365/91] = 8.18 \text{ percent}$$

4.1.2 Investment Risks

Investors face several types of risks. We list a number of these in Exhibit 8. In this exhibit, we list the types of risk—credit, market, liquidity, and foreign exchange—and the attributes and safety measures associated with each type. The attributes describe the conditions that contribute to the type of risk, and the safety measures describe the steps that investors usually take to prevent losses from the risk. With the exception of foreign exchange risk, the key safety measures taken are to shift to “safety” (i.e., government securities, such as US T-bills) or to shorten maturities so that securities will mature quicker, allowing an investor to shift funds to a safer type of security.

Exhibit 8 Types of Investment Risks and Safety Measures

Type of Risk	Key Attributes	Safety Measures
Credit (or default)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Issuer may default ■ Issuer could be adversely affected by economy, market ■ Little secondary market 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Minimize amount ■ Keep maturities short ■ Watch for “questionable” names ■ Emphasize government securities
Market (or interest rate)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Price or rate changes may adversely affect return ■ There is no market to sell the maturity to, or there is only a small secondary market 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Keep maturities short ■ Keep portfolio diverse in terms of maturity, issuers
Liquidity	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Security is difficult or impossible to (re)sell ■ Security must be held to maturity and cannot be liquidated until then 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Stick with government securities ■ Look for good secondary market ■ Keep maturities short
Foreign exchange	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Adverse general market movement against your currency 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Hedge regularly ■ Keep most in your currency and domestic market (avoid foreign exchange)

4.2 Strategies

Short-term investment strategies are fairly simple because the securities in a working capital portfolio are limited in type and are much shorter in maturity than a longer-term portfolio. Most short-term investors seek “reasonable” returns and do not want to take on substantial risk. Short-term investment strategies can be grouped into two types: passive and active. A **passive strategy** is characterized by one or two decision rules for making daily investments, whereas an **active strategy** involves constant monitoring and may involve matching, mismatching, or laddering strategies.

Passive strategies are less aggressive than active ones and place top priority on safety and liquidity. Yet, passive strategies do not have to offer poor returns, especially if companies have reliable cash forecasts. Often, companies with good cash forecasts can combine a passive strategy with an active matching strategy to enhance the yield of a working capital portfolio without taking on substantially greater risks.

The major problem associated with passive strategies is complacency, which can cause the company to roll over the portfolio mechanically, with little attention paid to yields and more focus on simply reinvesting funds as they mature. Passive strategies must be monitored, and the yield from investment portfolios should be benchmarked regularly against a suitable standard, such as a T-bill with comparable maturity.

Active strategies require more daily involvement and possibly a wider choice of investments. Although investments are rolled over with an active strategy, just as they are with a passive strategy, this type of strategy calls for more shopping around, better forecasts, and a more flexible investment policy/guideline.

Active strategies can include intentional matching or mismatching the timing of cash outflows with investment maturities. A **matching strategy** is the more conservative of the two and uses many of the same investment types as are used with passive strategies. A **mismatching strategy** is riskier and requires very accurate and

reliable cash forecasts. These strategies usually use securities that are more liquid, such as T-bills, so that securities can be liquidated if adverse market conditions arise. Mismatching strategies may also be accomplished using derivatives, which may pose additional risks to a company unaccustomed to buying and selling derivatives.

A **laddering strategy** is another form of active strategy, which entails scheduling maturities on a systematic basis within the investment portfolio such that investments are spread out equally over the term of the ladder. A laddering strategy falls somewhere between a matching and a passive strategy. Laddering strategies have been used effectively in managing longer-term investment portfolios, but laddering also should be an effective short-term strategy.

Managing a working capital portfolio involves handling and safeguarding assets of the company. Accordingly, companies with investment portfolios should have a formal, written policy/guideline that protects the company and the investment managers. Investment policy/guidelines should not be very lengthy, especially because they must be understood by the company's investment managers and communicated to the company's investment dealers.

Although the investment policy/guideline should be customized for an individual company, the basic structure of such a policy is provided in Exhibit 9.

Exhibit 9 Sample Format of an Investment Policy

Purpose	List and explain the reasons that the portfolio exists and also describe the general attributes of the portfolio, such as a summary of the strategy that will be used and the general types of securities that are acceptable investments.
Authorities	Identify the executives who oversee the portfolio managers who make the investments that compose the portfolio and the outside managers that could be used and how they would be managed. Also describe procedures that must be performed if the policy is not followed.
Limitations and/or restrictions	Describe, in general terms, the types of investments that should be considered for inclusion in the portfolio. The list should not consist of specific securities; it should describe the general <i>types</i> of securities, such as commercial paper, US T-bills, or bank CDs. In this manner, the policy retains more flexibility than if specific issuers or securities are listed. In the latter case, the policy would require change every time an issuer was no longer issuing any securities. This section should also include any restrictions as to the relative amount of each security that is allowable in the overall portfolio. This section may also include procedures when a maximum has been exceeded or must be exceeded under special circumstances, such as when the portfolio is temporarily inflated prior to using the funds for an acquisition or other long-term use.

Exhibit 9 (Continued)

Quality	May be in a separate section or may be included with the previous one. Investments with working capital funds must be safe, so many companies include credit standards for potential investments in their policy statements. Reference may be made to long-term ratings or, more frequently, to short-term credit ratings. The ratings cited are usually those from the major rating agencies: Standard & Poor's and Moody's.
Other items	Other items are sometimes included in a policy/guideline, such as statements that require the portfolio to be included in the financial audit or that regular reports will be generated by the investment manager. Some companies also define the types of securities that are "eligible," but this does not seem necessary if the policy is well written.

EXAMPLE 3**Evaluating an Investment Policy**

A sample investment policy is shown below. Review the client's investment policy, considering the basic investment policy structure shown in Exhibit 9. The average portfolio size is \$100 million, with no significant peaks or valleys throughout the year. After reviewing the policy, answer the following questions:

- 1 Is the policy an effective one?
- 2 What shortcomings or potential problem areas, if any, does it have?
- 3 How would you change this policy, if at all?

Working Capital Portfolio Investment Policy/Guidelines

- Purpose: This is a working capital portfolio with emphasis on safety and liquidity. We will sacrifice return for either of these two goals.
- Authorities: The treasurer, with agreement from the CFO, will be in charge of managing short-term investments. Authority and control to execute can be delegated by the treasurer or CFO to another treasury manager if documented.
- Maximum maturity: Securities may not be made for longer than three (3) years.
- Types/amounts of investments permitted: no more than 10 percent of the portfolio or \$50 million with any issuer, subject to the credit limitation that any eligible issuer must be rated A-1, P-1 by Standard & Poor's and Moody's.
- Repurchase agreements must be equal to, or preferably exceed, the PSA Standard Investment Agreement, which requires 102 percent collateral for repurchases.
- All investments must be held in safekeeping by XYZ Bank.
- The investment manager can execute exception transactions but must document them in writing.

Solution to 1:

The policy is fairly effective in that it tries to provide simple, understandable rules. It calls for credit quality, limits the possible position with any single issuer, accepts market standards (such as the PSA), and calls for safekeeping. It also has an exception procedure that is straightforward.

Solution to 2:

The credit ratings may be too restrictive. Many investment securities may not be rated by both S&P and Moody's, which is implied, if not stated, in the policy. Also, the 10 percent limitation apparently is to be applied to all securities. However, most investment managers do not consider securities issued by governmental agencies or the government itself to be so risky that a limitation needs to be applied.

Solution to 3:

The words "or equivalent" should be added to the credit quality of the types of investments. Also, there should be no limitation to highly rated governmental securities, such as US Treasury-bills and the equivalent from the major developed countries. A credit rating reference could be applied to determine eligible governmental securities.

4.3 Evaluating Short-Term Funds Management

Tracking tools can range from simple spreadsheets to more expensive treasury workstations. If both portfolios are not too large or diversified, a spreadsheet may be sufficient to be able to compare effective yields and borrowing costs on an ongoing basis and to generate periodic performance reports.

Investment returns should be expressed as bond equivalent yields, to allow comparability among investment alternatives. In addition, the overall portfolio return should be weighted according to the currency size of the investment. We provide an abbreviated example of a portfolio report in Exhibit 10. The report provides the weighted average returns of the different investments. The yields are all calculated on a bond equivalent yield basis.

Exhibit 10 Short-Term Investment Portfolio Report

Security/Loan	Dealer/Bank	€ Amt (000)	Weight (%)	Yield (%)	Maturity
US T-bills	ABC Bank	23,575	39.8	3.50	90 days
Finco CP	XYZ Co.	20,084	33.9	4.65	45 days
Megabank CD	Megabank	15,560	26.3	5.05	30 days
Weighted average yield from investments				4.30	
Short-term benchmark rate ^a				4.25	

^a Benchmark rate = independent source, such as synthetic portfolio maintained independently or rate provided by third party, such as a money manager or other empirical source (e.g., a financial institution, trade association, or central bank).

MANAGING ACCOUNTS RECEIVABLE

5

Credit accounts vary by type of customer and the industry, and granting credit involves a tradeoff between increasing sales and uncollectible accounts. There are three primary activities in accounts receivable management: granting credit and processing transactions, monitoring credit balances, and measuring performance of the credit function.

Processing accounts receivable transactions requires recording credit sales to create a record and posting customer payments—or at least monitoring the posting—to the accounts receivable account by applying the payment against the customer's outstanding credit balance. Monitoring the outstanding accounts receivable requires a regular reporting of outstanding receivable balances and notifying the collection managers of past due situations. Monitoring is an ongoing activity. Measuring the performance of the credit functions entails preparing and distributing key performance measurement reports, including an accounts receivable aging schedule and day's sales outstanding reports.

Essentially, the accounts receivable management function is a go-between for the credit manager, treasury manager, and accounting manager. This role is an important one because it can slow up the recording of payments, which may, in turn, prevent customers from purchasing more of the company's products or, worse yet, could prevent the treasury manager from depositing the check and converting the check to available funds.

The accounts receivable management function is also considered to be a derivative activity from credit granting because it helps in providing information needed by the credit management function. It depends on the source of the sale for its records, on the credit manager for additional information on the status of the accounts receivable record, and possibly on the treasury manager to establish an efficient system of getting the payment information to the accounts receivable manager for cash application (e.g., from a bank lockbox).

The goals for the accounts receivable management system include the following:

- efficient processing and maintaining accurate, up-to-date records that are available to credit managers and other interested parties as soon as possible after payments have been received;
- control of accounts receivable and ensuring that accounts receivable records are current and that no unauthorized entry into the accounts receivable file has occurred;
- collection on accounts and coordination with the treasury management function;
- coordination and notification with the credit managers frequently; and
- preparation of regular performance measurement reports.

Companies may achieve scale economies by centralizing the accounts receivable function by using a captive finance subsidiary.⁵ A **captive finance subsidiary** is a wholly owned subsidiary of the company that is established to provide financing of the sales of the parent company.

⁵ As pointed out by Shehzad L. Mian and Clifford W. Smith ["Accounts Receivable Management Policy: Theory and Evidence," *Journal of Finance*, vol. 47, no. 1 (March 1992) pp. 169–200], companies that have highly variable accounts receivable (for example, from seasonality) may find the use of a captive finance subsidiary attractive because it may allow the subsidiary's debt indentures to differ from those of the parent company.

One of the challenges in accounts receivable management is monitoring receivables and collecting on accounts. Many companies resort to outsourcing the accounts receivable function, primarily to increase the collection on accounts, provide credit evaluation services, and to apply the most recent technology. Also, some companies may invest in credit insurance, which reduces the risk of bad debts and shifts some of the evaluation of credit-worthiness to the insurer.

5.1 Key Elements of the Trade Credit Granting Process

Credit management is an integral part of the collection process. It sets the framework for sales in that it can restrict sales by rejecting credit or expand it by loosening acceptance criteria. It also links the collection and cash application processes and has a profound effect on the method of collection as well. In addition, credit management techniques incorporate fundamental financial analysis methods in setting credit policy, granting credit, and managing existing credit customers.

A weak, ineffective credit management function may enhance sales, but many of those sales may become bad debts. On the other hand, a strong, active credit management function can work in tandem with sales and marketing on one side and accounting and treasury on the other. To establish an effective credit management function a company must have a well-conceived strategy customized to the company's needs and reflecting the company's goals.

Credit management policies are usually established as a set of basic guidelines to be used by credit managers. A company's credit policy sets the boundaries for the credit management function. It lays out procedures as part of the policy and offers guidance for each typical situation. The policy shows the steps in the granting process and provides decision rules for specific situations. The policy can also influence the sales level by making it easy or difficult for customers to buy on credit.

Customers may start out with one type of credit account that is restrictive, such as cash on delivery, and may eventually demonstrate that they are regular payers and can be given open book credit accounts.

The major types of credit accounts include the following:

- open book, which is the most common for company to company;
- documentary, with or without lines of credit, most common for cross-border transactions;
- installment credit, with regular timed payments; and
- revolving credit.

The types of credit terms offered vary by type of customer, the relative financial strength of the customer, and the type of credit terms the competition is offering. The different forms of terms of credit other than cash, which generally implies 7 to 10 days, include the following:

- **Ordinary terms.** Terms are set forth in a standard format—*net t* or *d/t₁ net t₂*, where *t* in the first example refers to the length of time a customer has to pay the invoice before becoming past due. In the second example, *t₁* is the time period for taking discounts, and *t₂* is the same as *t* in the first example. For example, *net 60* means that the full amount of the invoice is due in 60 days. Most trade credit customers will take the full 60 days. Terms of *1/10 net 30* mean that the customer can take a 1 percent discount if the invoice is paid within 10 days or else pay the full amount of the invoice by 30 days from the invoice date.

- **Cash before delivery (CBD)** terms require that the amount of the invoice must be paid in advance before delivery will be scheduled. Checks must clear before any shipment is made.
- **Cash on delivery (COD)** terms require that payment must be made (usually in the form of a bank check) when the product is delivered; otherwise, no delivery will be made.
- **Bill-to-bill.** These terms require that each prior bill must be paid before new shipments are possible.
- **Monthly billing.** These terms require payment monthly. They have a different format; for example, *2/10th Prox net 30th* means that the customer can take a 2 percent discount if it pays within the first 10 days of the next month or else it must pay the full amount of the invoice by the 30th day of the next month.

Credit managers may evaluate customers' credit-worthiness using a credit scoring model. A **credit scoring model** is a statistical model used to classify borrowers according to credit-worthiness. These models were first designed for assisting in making consumer credit decisions. Major credit card issuers needed a tool they could use to make mass credit decisions. It was also used for small business loans after many larger banks discovered that their costs of reviewing and deciding whether to grant loans were such that they could not efficiently make loans of the smaller sizes required by smaller businesses. To overcome this problem, they adopted credit scoring models.

Credit scoring models offer an opportunity for a company to make fast decisions on the basis of simple data, not requiring a great deal of paperwork. The scoring models give greater weight to such factors as:

- ready cash (e.g., high checking account balances);
- organization type, with corporations rated higher than sole proprietorships or partnership; and
- being current in supplier payments, as indicated by financial services such as Dun & Bradstreet.

The models penalize the potential borrower for:

- prior late payment behavior or defaults: payment patterns are habitual;
- heavy use of personal credit cards: no reserves or reduced reserves available;
- previous *personal* bankruptcy or tax liens: carries over from person to company; and
- high-risk categories: food services, hospitality industries.

Credit scoring can also be used to predict late payers.

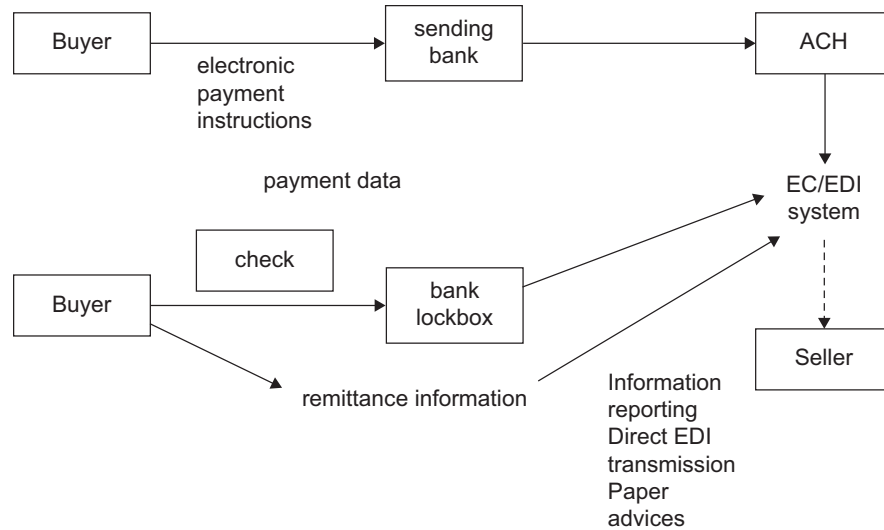
5.2 Managing Customers' Receipts

Cash collections systems are a function of the types of customers a company has and the methods of payment that the customers use. For instance, if a company's sales are made at retail locations, it cannot take advantage of the benefits offered by bank lockbox services. Instead, it must deal with organizing and controlling local deposits and concentrating these deposits efficiently and economically. On the other hand, if a company manufactures and sells products to other businesses, it can use a bank lockbox services to expedite processing and clearing of check payments.

We illustrate a typical network for a company with both electronic and check payments in Exhibit 11. Checks from one type of customer are directed to a bank lockbox, while electronic payments from another type of customer are transmitted via **electronic funds transfer (EFT)** through one of the available networks, such as

the **Automated Clearing House (ACH)** system or the **Giro system**. The ACH system is an electronic payment network available to businesses, individuals, and financial institutions in the United States, US Territories, and Canada. The Giro systems are postal-based systems in Europe and elsewhere.

Exhibit 11 Cash Collections and Concentration



In most cases, the best practice for collections involves the establishment of a system that accelerates payments as well as their information content, such as the customer's name and identification number and which invoices are being paid. From the collecting company's point of view, the way to achieve this best practice is to establish an electronic collection network. This can apply to either retail or wholesale companies.

Retail payments can be made by credit/debit cards or electronic checks, which are converted to electronic debits or digitized images, or by direct debit. These payments clear electronically and can be facilitated through **point of sale (POS)** systems, which are systems that capture the transaction data at the physical location in which the sale is made. A **direct debit program** is an arrangement whereby the customer authorizes a debit to a demand account and is used by companies—such as utilities, telecommunications service providers, cable companies, insurance companies, and credit card companies—to collect routine payments for services.

If payments cannot be converted to electronic payments, the next best practice is to use a bank lockbox service. A **lockbox system** is coordinated with the banking institution in which customer payments are mailed to a post office box and the banking institution retrieves and deposits these payments several times a day, enabling the company to have use of the fund sooner than in a centralized system in which customer payments are sent to the company. An acceptable bank lockbox arrangement is one in which the checks deposited today are available tomorrow or the next business day. This one-day availability lays the groundwork for best practices in cash concentration.

A good performance measure for check deposits is a calculated **float factor**. The **float** in this context is the amount of money that is in transit between payments made by customers and the funds that are usable by the company. We compute the float factor by dividing the average daily deposit in dollars into the average daily float:⁶

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Float factor} &= \frac{\text{Average daily float}}{\text{Average daily deposit}} \\ &= \frac{\text{Average daily float}}{\text{Total amount of checks deposited/Number of days}}\end{aligned}$$

This calculation gives the average number of days it took deposited checks to clear. If the float factor is very small (e.g., less than 1.0), it is probably worthwhile to investigate further to determine whether same-day wire transfers from the depository account are warranted, assuming the depository account is with a bank other than the company's lead bank. The float factor only measures how long it takes for checks to clear, not how long it takes to receive the checks, deposit them, and then have them clear. However, it is still very useful and can be computed easily for any depository accounts.

EXAMPLE 4

Calculating Float Factors

Given the following data, compute a float factor for this company bank account.

Total deposits for the month:	\$3,360,900
Number of days in month:	30 days
Average daily float:	\$154,040

Solution:

$$\text{Average daily deposit} = (\$3,360,900)/30 = \$112,030$$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Float factor} &= \text{Average daily float}/\text{Average daily deposit} \\ &= \$154,040/\$112,030 = 1.375\end{aligned}$$

Cash concentration involves two major activities: consolidating deposits and moving funds between company accounts or to outside points. The best practice for cash concentration may be different for consolidating deposits than for moving funds, depending on the timing required and the availability of the funds being transferred.

For bank lockbox concentration, assuming that the checks clear in one business day (on average), the concentration technique of choice is the electronic funds transfer method. In this method, bank lockbox personnel call in the deposit via a reporting service or directly to the concentration bank. The concentration bank creates an electronic funds transfer debit that clears overnight, giving the company available funds in its concentration account. This system can be set up to run with or without intervention by the company's cash manager. In most cases, the best practice does not involve any intervention.

Electronic funds transfers offer distinct advantages to companies that use them for concentration of funds. First, they are substantially cheaper than the alternative, the wire transfer. In addition, they are reliable in that the transfer can be made part

⁶ We determine the average daily float from an analysis of cash accounts.

of a routine that can be performed daily without exception. Even small payments that would not be economical to transfer out by wire can be transferred economically by electronic funds transfer.

5.3 Evaluating Accounts Receivable Management

There are numerous ways of measuring accounts receivable performance. Most of them deal with how effectively outstanding accounts receivable items can be converted into cash. Measures can be derived from general financial reports as well as more detailed internal financial records.

Many measures, such as number of days of receivables, can be calculated easily from financial statements. The standard number of days of receivables evaluates the total receivables outstanding but does not consider the age distribution within this outstanding balance.

5.3.1 Accounts Receivable Aging Schedule

One key report that accounts receivable managers should use is the **aging schedule**, which is a breakdown of the accounts into categories of days outstanding. We provide an example of an aging schedule in Exhibit 12, Panel A. As you can see in this example, the report shows the total sales and receivables for each reporting period (typically 30 days). It is handier to convert the aging schedule to percentages, as we show in this exhibit. Note that in the exhibit, it is easy to spot a change in April's aging: Accounts receivable have not been collected and converted to cash as rapidly as in previous months. In this case, the April change should be scrutinized. For example, the extension of credit terms may have been increased as part of a special program. This change could also signal a change in payments by the company's customers.

Exhibit 12 An Accounts Receivable Aging Schedule

Panel A: The Aging Schedule

(\$ Millions)	January	February	March	April
Sales	530	450	560	680
Total accounts receivable	600	560	650	720
Current (1–30 days old)	330	290	360	280
1–30 days past due	90	120	160	250
31–60 days past due	80	60	60	110
61–90 days past due	70	50	40	50
>90 days past due	30	40	30	30
Aging Expressed as Percent	January	February	March	April
Current (1–30 days old)	55.0	51.8	55.4	38.9
1–30 days past due	15.0	21.4	24.6	34.7
31–60 days past due	13.3	10.7	9.2	15.3
61–90 days past due	11.7	8.9	6.2	6.9
>90 days past due	5.0	7.1	4.6	4.2

Exhibit 12 (Continued)**Panel B: Calculation of the Weighted Average Collection Period**

Aging Group	March			April		
	Collection Days ^a	Weight (%) ^b	Weighted Days ^c	Collection Days	Weight (%)	Weighted Days
Current (1–30 days)	20	55.4	11.1	29	38.9	11.3
31–60 days	48	24.6	11.8	55	34.7	19.1
61–90 days	80	9.2	7.4	88	15.3	13.5
91–120 days	110	6.2	6.8	115	6.9	7.9
121+ days	130	4.6	6.0	145	4.2	6.1
Weighted average collection days ^d			43.0			57.9

^a The average days for collecting receivables in each grouping.

^b The weighting from the aging schedule.

^c This figure, expressed in days, is the product of the previous two columns.

^d The sum of each grouping's product equals the overall days.

5.3.2 The Number of Days of Receivables

The number of days of receivables gives us the overall picture of accounts receivable collection. We can compare the number of days with the credit policy to give us an idea of how well the company is collecting on its accounts, relative to the terms that it grants credit. But we can take this a step further by calculating a weighted average of the collection period, or weighted average day's sales outstanding. By focusing on the time it takes to collect receivables, the weighted average collection period is a good measure of how long it is taking to collect from the company's customers regardless of the sales level or the changes in sales.

The calculation of the weighted average collection period requires data on the number of days it takes to collect accounts of each age grouping. For example, we could group receivables in regular increments, such as 30-day periods, and then weight the collection period in each group by the monetary amount of accounts in the group.

Using the data provided in Exhibit 12, Panel A, it is possible to compute number of days of receivables for March and April, as shown in Panel B of this exhibit. As you can see in this example, we can get a better idea of why the number of days of receivables changed from one month to the next. The weighted average collection days increased from March to April, primarily because of the large representation in receivable accounts in the 31–60 and 61–90 day ranges, which made up only 24.6 percent + 9.2 percent = 33.8 percent of accounts in March, but 50 percent of accounts in April.

The primary drawback to this measure is that it requires more information than number of days of receivables, and this information is not readily available, especially for comparisons among companies.

6

MANAGING INVENTORY

The primary goal for an inventory system is to maintain the level of inventory so that production management and sales management can make and sell the company's products without more than necessary invested in this asset. Like cash and accounts receivable management, inventory management involves balancing: having sufficient inventory, but not too much.

Inventory is a current asset that is created by purchasing, paid by accounts payable, and funded by the treasury. The investment in inventory does not produce cash until it is sold or otherwise disposed of. Excessive levels of inventory can possibly overstate the value of inventory because the more that is on hand, the greater the potential for obsolete inventory, which can be sold off, but at a discount. Shortages of inventory result in lost sales.

The amount of inventory that a company holds or feels it has to hold creates a financial requirement for the company. If the company's product lines are more diverse or if its production processes are more involved in using inventory to make final products and then store the products, the company may have a significant financial investment in inventory.

The investment in inventory has been quite staggering for many companies, which has caused them to look for new inventory management techniques. New techniques in inventory control, aided by improved technology, have enabled substantial reduction of the inventory levels a company must maintain and still be able to make products and have them available for sale as needed. For instance, newer just-in-time approaches to inventory management have lowered required inventory balances and cemented major trading partner relationships.

The motives for holding inventory, which dictate how much inventory will be held and, in turn, how much working capital will be tied up in inventory, are very similar to the need for holding cash. The major motives include the transactions motive, the precautionary motives, and the speculative motive.

The **transactions motive** reflects the need for inventory as part of the routine production–sales cycle. Inventory need is equal to the planned manufacturing activity, and the approach to inventory will be dictated by the manufacturing plan.

Precautionary stocks also may be desirable to avoid any **stock-out losses**, which are profits lost from not having sufficient inventory on hand to satisfy demand. Managing inventory well means keeping extra inventory, especially if it could become obsolete quickly, at a minimum. To do this, a company must have a reliable forecast and a flexible inventory approach. In addition, many companies that do not have a reliable forecast maintain a reserve as a precaution for shortfalls in the plan. Of course, how much stock is determined by the lead time for additional inventory purchases, the length of time it takes to deliver final products to the market, and how much can be spent on extra inventory.

In certain industries, managers may acquire inventory for speculative reasons, such as ensuring the availability and pricing of inventory. Inventory managers working together with purchasing managers can benefit from out-of-the-ordinary purchases. For instance, if a publisher is certain that paper costs will be increasing for the next year, it can buy more paper in the current year and store it for future use. This decision assumes that the storage costs are not greater than the savings.

Companies usually attempt to strike a balance in managing their inventory levels. Overinvestment can result in liquidity squeezes or related problems with an increase in debt without an increase in cash. Overinvestment can also lead to the misuse of facilities as more storage is required for the built-up inventory. Having large amounts

of inventory on hand can result in losses from shrinkage, spoilage, and so on. Finally, overinvestment can reduce the company's competitiveness as it may not be able to match pricing because of its large inventory costs.

On the other hand, underinvestment in inventory can create problems from losing customers who could not purchase a product, or gaining their ill-will from long delays in delivery. Plant shutdowns and expensive special runs can also be costly. Finally, a risk with underinvestment is the company's inability to avoid price increases by suppliers.

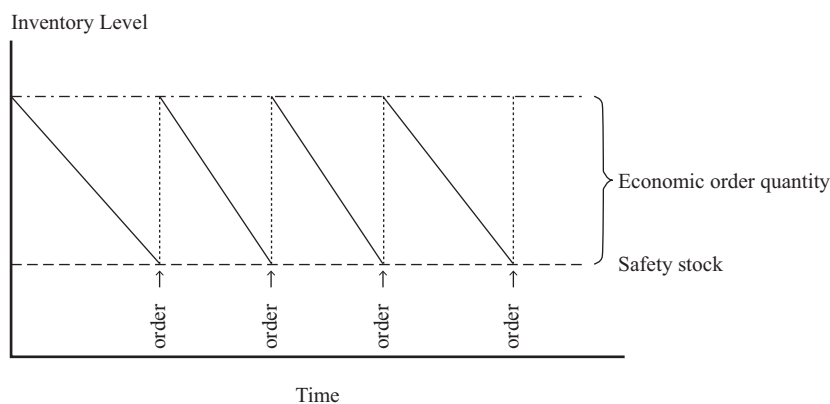
6.1 Approaches to Managing Levels of Inventory

To control inventory costs, a company should adopt the appropriate approach for its inventory. The two basic approaches are the economic order quantity and just-in-time.

Many companies use the classical approach, **economic order quantity-reorder point (EOQ-ROP)**, at least for some portion of their inventory. This method is based on expected demand and the predictability of demand, and it requires determining the level of inventory at which new inventory is ordered. This ordering point is determined based on the costs of ordering and carrying inventory, such that the total cost associated with inventory is minimized. The demand and lead times determine the inventory level. For EOQ-ROP to work well, there must be a reliable short-term forecast. Often, a company may use EOQ-ROP for smaller items that have low unit costs.

Use of the EOQ-ROP method may involve safety stocks and anticipation stocks. A **safety stock** is a level of inventory beyond anticipated needs that provides a cushion in the event that it takes longer to replenish inventory than expected or in the case of greater than expected demand. A company may consider the number of days of inventory on hand and the lead time in replenishing stock in determining the appropriate level of the safety stock. An **anticipation stock** is inventory in excess of that needed for anticipated demand, which may fluctuate with the company's sales or production seasonality. We illustrate the EOQ-ROP method in Exhibit 13.

Exhibit 13 EOQ-ROP Inventory Method



The **just-in-time (JIT) method** is a system that minimizes in-process inventory stocks—raw materials and in production—by evaluating the entire system of the delivery of materials and production. Materials are ordered, for example, at a point at which current stocks of material reach a reorder point, a point determined primarily by historical demand. Materials or **manufacturing resource planning (MRP)** systems incorporate production planning into inventory management. The analysis of production and materials needed for production are incorporated into an analysis that

provides both a materials acquisition schedule and a production schedule. Combining the JIT and MRP methods can provide a broader base for integrating inventory into the company's supply chain management and effectively reduce inventory levels.⁷

In most instances, companies will have several types of inventory that can be managed effectively using one or more of these approaches. Obviously, a company should select the method that allows the most cost-beneficial investment in inventory.

6.2 Inventory Costs

There are several component costs of inventory. Some components represent opportunity costs, whereas others may be real costs. The component costs include:

- *Ordering.* Procurement or replenishment costs, both of which may be fixed or variable. These costs depend on the number of orders placed. Examples: freight, labor and handling, paperwork, machine setup.
- *Carrying.* Financing and holding costs, which are opportunity or real costs. These costs depend on average inventory levels and the type of goods. Examples: storage, capital costs, obsolescence, insurance, and taxes.
- *Stock-out.* Opportunity or real costs, which are affected by level of inventory, item mix, processing time versus term of sale. These costs might vary greatly depending on how they are estimated. Examples: lost sales, back-order costs, substitution costs.
- *Policy.* Costs of gathering data and general operating costs, which may be real costs or "soft" costs. These costs depend on inventory mix and complexity. Examples: data processing, labor charges, overtime, training.

6.3 Evaluating Inventory Management

The most common way to measure the company's investment in inventory and evaluate its inventory management is to compute the inventory turnover ratio and the number of days of inventory. The inventory turnover is a rough measure, but it is simple to calculate and compare with other standards or past history. Inventory turnover will vary among industries, as you can see in Exhibit 14, which provides a calculated inventory turnover and number of days of inventory for various industries.

Further, the inventory turnover may differ among companies within an industry because of different product mixes. For example, in fiscal year 2005, Wal-Mart Stores had an inventory turnover of 7.5 times compared with Target's 5.7 times. This difference may be because of Wal-Mart's greater foothold in the higher turnover grocery business, as compared with Target.

Although the analysis of trends is important, care should be taken when interpreting changes. For example, a decrease in the inventory turnover may mean that more inventory is on hand and is not moving through manufacturing and being sold. On the other hand, a decrease in inventory turnover may indicate a change in the company's product mix, or it may mean that the company is reducing its risk of inventory stock-outs.

⁷ Some companies have integrated cash management and inventory management. For example, the moment a customer orders and pays for a computer with Dell Corporation, the production process begins. This efficiency results in a negative operating cycle; that is, Dell Corporation is collecting on accounts as it invests in the inventory production. Because it uses trade credit for its supplies, it has little need for working capital.

Exhibit 14 Inventory Turnover and Number of Days of Inventory for US Corporations in Different Industries, 2002

Industry	Inventory Turnover (Times)	Number of Days of Inventory
Apparel manufacturing	4.9	74.0
Chemical manufacturing	5.7	64.4
Electronics and appliances stores	7.3	50.2
Food manufacturing	8.1	44.9
Food, beverage, and liquor stores	11.2	32.7
Machinery manufacturing	5.6	65.2
Mining	10.4	35.2
Motor vehicle dealers and parts dealers	5.6	65.2
Paper manufacturing	6.8	53.8
Transportation equipment manufacturing	9.7	37.7

Source: *Statistics of Income, 2002*, Corporation Returns with Net Income, Table 7, www.irs.gov.

EXAMPLE 5
Financial Impact of Inventory Methods

If a company's inventory turnover ratio is 6.1 times (annually) and the industry average number of days of inventory is 52 days, how does the company compare with the industry average?

Solution:

Convert the turnover ratio to a number of days of inventory:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Number of days of inventory} &= 365/\text{Inventory turnover} \\ &= 365/6.1 = 59.84 \text{ days} \end{aligned}$$

Comparing this answer with the industry average, 52.0 days, it appears that the company's inventory turnover is slower than the industry average.

MANAGING ACCOUNTS PAYABLE
7

Accounts payable are amounts due suppliers of goods and services that have not been paid. They arise from **trade credit**, which is a spontaneous form of credit in which a purchaser of the goods or service is, effectively, financing its purchase by delaying the date on which payment is made. Trade credit may involve a delay of payment, with a discount for early payment. The terms of the latter form of credit are generally stated in the discount form: A discount from the purchase price is allowed if payment is received within a specified number of days; otherwise the full amount is due by a specified date. For example, the terms "2/10, net 30" indicate that a 2 percent discount is available if the account is paid within 10 days; otherwise the full amount is due by the 30th day. The terms will differ among industries, influenced by tradition within the industry, terms of competitors, and current interest rates.

A key working capital link is the purchasing–inventory–payables process. This process is concerned with the procurement of goods—finished or not—that become the company’s items for sale. Handled efficiently, the process minimizes excess funds “in the pipeline.” Handled inefficiently, the process can create a severe drain on a company’s liquidity, tying up funds and reducing the company’s financial reserves.

Inefficiencies may arise in managing purchasing, inventory, and payables. Each area has to be organized and efficiently linked with the other areas. Purchasing can often influence how payments are to be made and the terms of credit. Here again, purchasing management needs to be kept informed as to the types of payment mechanisms the company can handle to avoid agreeing with suppliers to make payments in a medium that the company does not yet support.

The effective management of accounts payable is an important working capital management activity because inefficient payables management may result in opportunity costs from payments made too early, lost opportunities to take advantage of trade discounts, and failure to use the benefits of technologies offered by e-commerce and other web-based activities.

Accounts payable is the final step in the procurement cycle because it combines the paperwork, approvals, and disbursements of funds. An effective accounts payable function helps integrate the components of the cycle and does not require the uneconomical outlay of the company’s funds until the outlay is due.

A company may not believe that it needs a formal guideline or policy to manage the function well. However, there must be some method to ensure that payables practices are organized, consistent, and cost-effective. For example, if payables management is decentralized and more than one operating entity deals with the same supplier, the credit terms offered to each entity should be the same unless there are special circumstances, such as volume constraints, that warrant different terms. To handle payables effectively, a company needs rules to ensure that company assets are not being depleted unnecessarily.

There are several factors that a company should consider as guidelines for effectively managing its accounts payable, including:

- *Financial organization’s centralization.* The degree to which the company’s core financial function is centralized or decentralized affects how tightly payables can be controlled.
- *Number, size, and location of vendors.* The composition of the company’s supply chain and how dependent the company is on its trading partners (and vice versa) determines how sophisticated a payables system it needs.
- *Trade credit and cost of borrowing or alternative cost.* The importance of credit to the company and its ability to evaluate trade credit opportunities, such as trade discounts, encourages standardized payables procedures and enhanced information management throughout the company.
- *Control of disbursement float.* Many companies still pay suppliers by check and create **disbursement float**—the amount of time between check issuance and a check’s clearing back against the company’s account. This float has value to many companies because it allows them to use their funds longer than if they had to fund their checking account on the day the checks were mailed.
- *Inventory management.* Newer inventory control techniques, such as MRP and JIT, increase the number of payments that must be processed by accounts payable. Many older systems cannot accommodate this extra volume, so newer management techniques and systems are required.
- *E-commerce and electronic data interchange (EDI).* Global developments to use the internet and other direct connections between customer and supplier are revolutionizing the supply chain for many companies. Because payments

for many of these activities should be considered as part of the overall process, many companies have determined that paying electronically offers a more efficient, cost-effective alternative to checks, which only are more valuable when the disbursement float value is large and interest rates (which provide value to float) are also high.

Stretching payables, also known as pushing on payables when it stretches beyond the due date, is sometimes done by corporate cash managers and other financial managers.⁸ Stretching payables is taking advantage of vendor grace periods. The evaluation of payables stretching opportunities is fairly straightforward. The number of additional days that payments can be extended or stretched is determined and valued by applying the company's opportunity cost for the additional days times the amount of the payable.

For example, if a payable that averaged \$100,000 can be stretched for an additional seven days, the company gains an additional seven days' use of the funds. This opportunity can be valued by multiplying the amount, \$100,000, by the company's opportunity cost for short-term funds. For example, if the company's estimated cost for short-term funds is 8 percent annually (0.02191 percent daily), then the value of stretching a \$100,000 payment for seven days is \$153.42. The values for each opportunity (throughout a year's activity) can be valued in this way to determine the overall benefit, which can then be weighed against the costs (both financial and nonfinancial ones).

There are basically two countering forces: paying too early is costly unless the company can take advantage of discounts, and paying late affects the company's perceived credit-worthiness.

7.1 The Economics of Taking a Trade Discount

One key activity that companies should review from time to time is the evaluation of trade discounts. Trade discounts should be evaluated using the formula shown below, which computes the implicit rate (of return) that is represented by the trade discount offer; that is, it is the equivalent return to the customer of an alternative investment.

The implicit rate is calculated as follows:

$$\text{Cost of trade credit} = \left(1 + \frac{\text{Discount}}{1 - \text{Discount}} \right)^{\left(\frac{365}{\text{Number of days beyond discount period}} \right)} - 1$$

The cost of funds during the discount period is 0 percent, so it is beneficial for the customer to pay close to the end of the discount period. Once the discount period ends, the cost of the credit to the customer jumps up and then declines as the net day is approached. For example, if the terms are 2/10, net 30, which means that there is a 2 percent discount for paying within 10 days and the net amount is due by the 30th day, the cost of trade credit is 109 percent if the credit is paid on the 20th day, but it is only 44.6 percent if paid on the 30th day.

If the customer's cost of funds or short-term investment rate is less than the calculated rate, the discount offers a better return or incremental return over the company's short-term borrowing rate.

⁸ Keep in mind that stretching payments beyond their due dates might be considered unethical and may draw retaliation from suppliers in the form of tighter credit terms in the future.

EXAMPLE 6**Evaluating Trade Discounts**

Compute the cost of trade credit if terms are 1/10, net 30 and the account is paid on:

- the 20th day, and
- the 30th day.

Solution:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Cost of trade credit if paid on day 20} &= \left(1 + \frac{0.01}{1 - 0.01}\right)^{(365/10)} - 1 \\ &= 44.32 \text{ percent} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Cost of trade credit if paid on day 30} &= \left(1 + \frac{0.01}{1 - 0.01}\right)^{(365/20)} - 1 \\ &= 20.13 \text{ percent} \end{aligned}$$

As you can see, the cost of the credits is much lower when the company pays on the net day than any day prior to the net day.

7.2 Managing Cash Disbursements

Handling cash disbursements effectively is a common goal for most companies. To accomplish this, companies use best practices that include the ability to delay funding bank accounts until the day checks clear, to erect safeguards against check fraud, to pay electronically when it is cost-effective to do so, and to manage bank charges for disbursement services. Best practices in cash disbursements, like check collections, depend on the nature of the payments—i.e., whether they are made electronically or by check.

Banks offer controlled disbursement services to optimize the funding of checks on the same day they clear against the company's account. When combined with a positive pay service, which provides a filter against check fraud, this method provides the best practice in handling paper-based (check) disbursements.

7.3 Evaluating Accounts Payable Management

The number of days of payables, which is also referred to as the average age of payables, is a useful measure in evaluating a company's credit extension and collection.

If the accounts payable balance from the company's balance sheet is €450 million and the amount of purchases is €4,100 million, the number of days of payables is

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Number of days of payables} &= \frac{\text{Accounts payable}}{\text{Average day's purchases}} = \frac{450}{4100 / 365} \\ &= 40.06 \text{ days} \end{aligned}$$

Comparing the number of days of payables with the credit terms under which credit was granted to the company is important; paying sooner than necessary is costly in terms of the cost of credit, and paying later than the net day is costly in terms of relations with suppliers.

In some cases, treasurers will manage the company's payables closely, comparing the number of days of payables with the number of days of inventory because in some industries these two numbers of days are similar to one another.

MANAGING SHORT-TERM FINANCING

8

An overall short-term financial strategy should focus on ensuring that the company maintains a sound liquidity position. It should also reflect the degree of risk the company believes can be managed without affecting the company's stability. It is common to consider short-term financial strategies as applying mostly to investments. However, they should include other financial activities as well. In many cases, a company will only be an investor or borrower, but it is common for large multinational corporations to have both short-term investments and short-term borrowing.

A short-term policy should include guidelines for managing investment, borrowing, foreign exchange, and risk management activities and should encompass all the company's operations, including foreign subsidiaries and other domestic subsidiaries that are self-financing. These guidelines accomplish several things.

Too often companies do not explore their options sufficiently, and as a result, they do not take advantage of cost savings that some forms of borrowing offer. This lack of awareness usually indicates that a company's treasurer may not be familiar with the common forms of short-term borrowing and has not factored them into an effective borrowing strategy.

8.1 Sources of Short-Term Financing

The main types of short-term borrowing alternatives that borrowers should consider include bank sources as well as money market sources. The main types of bank short-term borrowing include uncommitted and committed bank lines of credit and revolving credit agreements ("revolvers"). The latter two types can be unsecured or secured, depending on the company's financial strength and the general credit situation, which may vary from country to country. Two of these types—uncommitted lines and revolvers—are more common in the United States, whereas regular lines are more common in other parts of the world. We provide examples of several types of short-term borrowing options in Exhibit 15, with bank sources in Panel A of this exhibit and nonbank sources in Panel B. In this exhibit, we provide the primary features for each type of borrowing, including the typical users, source(s) for the alternative, the base rate for computing interest, type of compensation required, and any other comments.

Exhibit 15 Short-Term Financing Instruments

Panel A: Bank Sources

Source/Type	Users	Rate Base	Compensation	Other
Uncommitted line	Large corporations		None	Mainly in United States; limited reliability
Regular line	All sizes	Prime (US) or base rate (other countries), money market, Libor +	Commitment fee	Common everywhere
Overdraft line	All sizes		Commitment fee	Mainly outside United States
Revolving credit agreement	Larger corporations		Commitment fee+ extra fees	Most reliable (primarily in United States)
Collateralized loan	Small, weak borrowers	Base +	Collateral	Common everywhere

(continued)

Exhibit 15 (Continued)

Source/Type	Users	Rate Base	Compensation	Other
Discounted receivables	Large companies	Varies	Extra fees	More overseas, but some in United States
Banker's acceptances	International companies	Spread over commercial paper	None	Small volume
Factoring	Smaller	Prime + +	Service fees	Special industries

Panel B: Nonbank Sources

Source/Type	Users	Rate Base	Compensation	Other
Nonbank finance companies	Small, weak borrowers	Prime + + +	Service fees	Less reliable
Commercial paper	Largest corporations	Money market sets rate	Backup line of credit, commissions +	Lowest rates for short-term funds

Uncommitted lines of credit are, as the name suggests, the least reliable form of bank borrowing. A bank may offer an uncommitted line of credit for an extended period of time, but it reserves the right to refuse to honor any request for use of the line. In other words, an uncommitted line is very unstable and is only as good as the bank's desire to offer it. Therefore, companies should not rely very much on uncommitted lines. In fact, banks will not "officially" acknowledge that an uncommitted line is usable, which means that uncommitted lines cannot be shown as a financial reserve in a footnote to the company's financial statements. The primary attraction of uncommitted lines is that they do not require any compensation other than interest.

Committed lines of credit are the form of bank line of credit that most companies refer to as regular lines of credit. They are more reliable than uncommitted because of the bank's formal commitment, which can be verified through an acknowledgment letter as part of the annual financial audit and can be footnoted in the company's annual report. These lines of credit are in effect for 364 days (one day short of a full year). This effectively makes sure that they are short-term liabilities, usually classified as notes payable or the equivalent, on the financial statements.

Regular lines are unsecured and are pre-payable without any penalties. The borrowing rate is a negotiated item. The most common interest rates negotiated are borrowing at the bank's prime rate or at a money market rate plus a spread. The most common money market rate is an offshore rate—the **London interbank offered rate (Libor)**, which is a Eurodollar rate—plus a spread. The spread varies depending on the borrower's credit-worthiness. Regular lines, unlike uncommitted lines, require compensation, usually in the form of a commitment fee. The fee is typically a fractional percent (e.g., ½ percent) of the full amount or the unused amount of the line, depending on bank–company negotiations.

Revolving credit agreements, which are often referred to as revolvers, are the most reliable form of short-term bank borrowing facilities. They have formal legal agreements that define the aspects of the agreement. These agreements are similar to regular lines with respect to borrowing rates, compensation, and being unsecured. Revolvers differ in that they are in effect for multiple years (e.g., 3–5 years) and may have optional medium-term loan features. In addition, they are often done for much larger amounts than a regular line, and these larger amounts are spread out among more than one bank.

For companies with weak financial positions, such as those facing financial distress or that have deteriorated profitability, and many smaller companies that do not have sufficient capital, banks or other lenders (see nonbank sources in Exhibit 15) require that the company (or individual for much smaller companies) provide collateral in the form of an asset, such as a fixed asset that the company owns or high-quality receivables and inventory. These assets are pledged against the loans, and banks or other lenders file a lien against them with the state in which the loan is made. This lien becomes part of the borrower's financial record and is shown on its credit report.

8.2 Short-Term Borrowing Approaches

Given the various forms of short-term borrowing, it is essential that a borrower have a planned strategy before getting stuck in an uneconomical situation. Many borrowing companies spend too little time establishing a sound strategy for their short-term borrowing beyond making sure that they are able to borrow at all, from any source.

The major objectives of a short-term borrowing strategy include the following:

- Ensuring that there is sufficient capacity to handle peak cash needs.
- Maintaining sufficient sources of credit to be able to fund ongoing cash needs.
- Ensuring that rates obtained are cost-effective and do not substantially exceed market averages.

In addition, there are several factors that borrowers should consider as part of their short-term borrowing strategies, including the following:

- *Size and credit-worthiness.* There is no doubt that the size of the borrower dictates the options available. Larger companies can take advantage of economies of scale to access commercial paper, banker's acceptances, and so on. The size of the borrower often reflects a manufacturing company's need for short-term financing. The size of lender is also an important criterion, as larger banks have higher house or legal lending limits. Credit-worthiness of the borrower will determine the rate, compensation, or even whether the loan will be made at all.
- *Sufficient access.* Borrowers should diversify to have adequate alternatives and not be too reliant on one lender or form of lending if the amount of their lending is very large. Even so, it is typical for borrowers to use one alternative primarily, but often with more than one provider. Borrowers should be ready to go to other sources and know how to. Borrowers should not stay too long with just one source or with lowest rates. Many borrowers are usually prepared to trade off rates (somewhat) for certainty.
- *Flexibility of borrowing options.* Flexibility means the ability to manage maturities efficiently; that is, there should not be any "big" days, when significant amounts of loans mature. To do this successfully, borrowers need active maturity management, awareness of the market conditions (e.g., knowing when the market or certain maturities should be avoided), and the ability to prepay loans when unexpected cash receipts happen.

Borrowing strategies, like investment strategies, can be either passive or active. Passive strategies usually involve minimal activity with one source or type of borrowing and with little (if any) planning. This "take what you can get" strategy is often reactive in responding to immediate needs or "panic attacks." Passive strategies are characterized by steady, often routine rollovers of borrowings for the same amount of funds each time, without much comparison shopping. Passive strategies may also arise when borrowing is restricted, such as instances where borrowers are limited to one or two lenders by agreement (e.g., in a secured loan arrangement).

Active strategies are usually more flexible, reflecting planning, reliable forecasting, and seeking the best deal. With active strategies, borrowers are more in control and do not fall into the rollover “trap” that is possible with passive strategies.

Many active strategies are matching strategies. Matching borrowing strategies function in a manner similar to matching investment strategies—loans are scheduled to mature when large cash receipts are expected. These receipts can pay back the loan, so the company does not have to invest the funds at potentially lower rates than the borrowing cost, thereby creating unnecessary costs.

8.3 Asset-Based Loans

Many companies that do not have the credit quality sufficient to qualify for unsecured bank loans may borrow from financial institutions by arranging for a secured loan, where the loan is secured using assets of the company. These secured loans are often referred to as **asset-based loans**. Often the assets used in short-term secured loans are the current assets of receivables and inventory. Unlike the collateral that may be used in longer-term borrowing, asset-based loans secured by accounts receivable and inventory present a challenge for the lender because the cash flows from accounts receivable depend on the amount and timing of collections and are influenced by the business risk of the company and its customers.

Lenders of these short-term asset-based loans are protected by the existence of the collateral and by provisions in the law that may provide them with a blanket lien on current and future assets of the company. The downside of a blanket lien is that even if the asset-based loan was secured by, say, accounts receivable, the lender may have a legal interest in other assets of the company until the loan is repaid.

Besides using working capital as the security for a loan, a company can use other means to generate cash flow from these working capital accounts. For example, a company can use its accounts receivable to generate cash flow through the **assignment of accounts receivable**, which is the use of these receivables as collateral for a loan, or a company can **factor** its accounts receivable, which is selling the receivables to the factor. In an assignment arrangement, the company remains responsible for the collection of the accounts, whereas in a factoring arrangement the company is shifting the credit granting and collection process to the factor. The cost of this credit depends on the credit quality of the accounts and the costs of collection.

Like accounts receivables, inventory may be a source of cash flow through the use of the inventory as collateral, with different types of arrangements possible:

- An **inventory blanket lien**, in which the lender has a claim on some or all of the company’s inventory, but the company can sell the inventory in the ordinary course of business.
- A **trust receipt arrangement**, in which the lender requires the company to certify that the goods are segregated and held in trust, with proceeds of any sale remitted to the lender immediately.
- A **warehouse receipt arrangement** is similar to the trust receipt arrangement, but there is a third party (i.e., a warehouse company) that supervises the inventory.

The cost of asset-based loans security by inventory depends on the length of time it takes to sell the goods.

8.4 Computing the Costs of Borrowing

In carrying out a sound short-term borrowing strategy, one of the key decisions is selecting the most cost-effective form of short-term loan. However, this selection is often not a simple task, because each of the major forms has to be adjusted to be on a common basis for comparability. The fundamental rule is to compute the total cost of the form of borrowing and divide that number by the total amount of loan you received (i.e., net proceeds), adjusted for any discounting or compensating balances.

For example, in the case of a line of credit that requires a commitment fee,⁹ the cost of the line of credit is

$$\text{Cost} = \frac{\text{Interest} + \text{Commitment fee}}{\text{Loan amount}}$$

On the other hand, if the interest rate is stated as “all inclusive” such that the amount borrowed includes the interest, as may be the case in a banker’s acceptance, the interest is compared with the net proceeds when determining the cost:

$$\text{Cost} = \frac{\text{Interest}}{\text{Net proceeds}} = \frac{\text{Interest}}{\text{Loan amount} - \text{Interest}}$$

If there are dealer’s fees and other fees, the expenses beyond the interest must be considered when determining the cost. For example, if a borrowing involves a dealer’s fee and a backup fee and is quoted as all inclusive, the cost is

$$\text{Cost} = \frac{\text{Interest} + \text{Dealer's commission} + \text{Backup costs}}{\text{Loan amount} - \text{Interest}}$$

The key is to compare the interest and fees paid with the net proceeds of the loan. If the loan is for a period less than a year, then we annualize accordingly.

EXAMPLE 7

Computing the Effective Cost of Short-Term Borrowing Alternatives

You are asked to select one of the following choices as the best offer for borrowing \$5,000,000 for one month:

- 1 Drawing down on a line of credit at 6.5 percent with a 1/2 percent commitment fee on the full amount. **Note:** One-twelfth of the cost of the commitment fee (which gives an option to borrow any time during the year) is allocated to the first month.
- 2 A banker’s acceptance at 6.75 percent, an all-inclusive rate.
- 3 Commercial paper at 6.15 percent with a dealer’s commission of 1/8 percent and a backup line cost of 1/4 percent, both of which would be assessed on the \$5 million of commercial paper issued.

⁹ A commitment fee is a fee paid to the lender in return for the legal commitment to lend funds in the future.

Solution:

Line of credit cost:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Line cost} &= \frac{\text{Interest} + \text{Commitment fee}}{\text{Usable loan amount}} \times 12 \\ &= \frac{(0.065 \times \$5,000,000 \times 1/12) + (0.005 \times \$5,000,000 \times 1/12)}{\$5,000,000} \times 12 \\ &= \frac{\$27,083.33 + 2,083.33}{\$5,000,000} \times 12 = 0.07 \text{ or } 7 \text{ percent} \end{aligned}$$

Banker's acceptance cost:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{BA cost} &= \frac{\text{Interest}}{\text{Net proceeds}} \times 12 \\ &= \frac{0.0675 \times \$5,000,000 \times 1/12}{\$5,000,000 - (0.0675 \times \$5,000,000 \times 1/12)} \times 12 \\ &= \frac{\$28,125}{\$4,971,875} \times 12 = 0.0679 \text{ or } 6.79 \text{ percent} \end{aligned}$$

Commercial paper cost (quoted as nominal rate at a discount):

CP cost

$$\begin{aligned} &= \frac{\text{Interest} + \text{Dealer's commissions} + \text{Backup costs}}{\text{Net proceeds}} \times 12 \\ &= \frac{(0.0615 \times \$5,000,000 \times 1/12) + (0.00125 \times \$5,000,000 \times 1/12) + (0.0025 \times \$5,000,000 \times 1/12)}{\$5,000,000 - (0.0615 \times \$5,000,000 \times 1/12)} \times 12 \\ &= \frac{\$25,625 + 520.83 + 1041.67}{\$5,000,000 - 25,625} \times 12 = 0.0656 \text{ or } 6.56 \text{ percent} \end{aligned}$$

We have simplified this cost analysis by assuming a loan for one month, using a factor of 1/12 to determine the interest and a factor of 12 to annualize. For specific arrangements for which the cost is determined using a 365-day or 360-day year, the appropriate adjustment would be required.

As the results show, the commercial paper alternative comes out with the lowest effective cost, and the line of credit has the highest effective cost. The commitment fee that was payable on the full line added more additional costs than the additional fees and discounting effects added in the other two options.

Line cost	7.00 percent
Banker's acceptance cost	6.79 percent
Commercial paper cost	6.56 percent

SUMMARY

In this reading, we considered a key aspect of financial management: the management of a company's working capital. This aspect of finance is a critical one in that it ensures, if done effectively, that the company will stay solvent and remain in business. If done improperly, the results can be disastrous for the company.

Working capital management covers a wide range of activities, most of which are focused on or involve the company's cash levels. Competing uses for the company's cash, which is often a scarce resource, create the need for an efficient method of handling the short-term financing of company activities.

Major points that were covered in this reading:

- Understanding how to evaluate a company's liquidity position.
- Calculating and interpreting operating and cash conversion cycles.
- Evaluating overall working capital effectiveness of a company and comparing it with other peer companies.
- Identifying the components of a cash forecast to be able to prepare a short-term (i.e., up to one year) cash forecast.
- Understanding the common types of short-term investments, and computing comparable yields on securities.
- Measuring the performance of a company's accounts receivable function.
- Measuring the financial performance of a company's inventory management function.
- Measuring the performance of a company's accounts payable function.
- Evaluating the short-term financing choices available to a company and recommending a financing method.

Working capital management is an integral part of the financial management of a company because many short-term activities have effects on long-term financial decisions. Having an effective short-term financial strategy, for example, allows a company to plan ahead with the confidence that its short-term concerns are being handled properly. Perhaps unlike other areas of finance, short-term finance has more qualitative features, making each company's case somewhat different from another's. This unique nature, combined with the short time frame associated with this aspect of finance, makes short-term finance a dynamic, challenging activity.

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

- 1 Suppose a company has a current ratio of 2.5 times and a quick ratio of 1.5 times. If the company's current liabilities are €100 million, the amount of inventory is *closest* to:
- A €50 million.
 B €100 million.
 C €150 million.
- 2 Given the following financial statement data, calculate the operating cycle for this company.

	In Millions (\$)
Credit sales	25,000
Cost of goods sold	20,000
Accounts receivable	2,500
Inventory—Beginning balance	2,000
Inventory—Ending balance	2,300
Accounts payable	1,700

The operating cycle for this company is *closest* to:

- A 42.0 days.
 B 47.9 days.
 C 78.5 days.
- 3 Given the following financial statement data, calculate the net operating cycle for this company.

	In Millions (\$)
Credit sales	40,000
Cost of goods sold	30,000
Accounts receivable	3,000
Inventory—Beginning balance	1,500
Inventory—Ending balance	2,000
Accounts payable	4,000

The net operating cycle of this company is *closest* to:

- A 3.8 days.
 B 24.3 days.
 C 51.7 days.
- 4 The bond equivalent yield for a 182-day US Treasury bill that has a price of \$9,725 per \$10,000 face value is *closest* to:
- A 5.44%.
 B 5.53%.
 C 5.67%.
- 5 A company increasing its credit terms for customers from 1/10, net 30 to 1/10, net 60 will *most likely* experience:

- A an increase in cash on hand.
 B a higher level of uncollectible accounts.
 C an increase in the average collection period.
- 6 Suppose a company uses trade credit with the terms of 2/10, net 50. If the company pays its account on the 50th day, the effective borrowing cost of skipping the discount on day 10 is *closest* to:
- A 14.9%.
 B 15.0%.
 C 20.2%.
- 7 William Jones is evaluating three possible means of borrowing \$1 million for one month:
- Drawing down on a line of credit at 7.2 percent with a 1/2 percent commitment fee on the full amount with no compensating balances.
 - A banker's acceptance at 7.1 percent, an all-inclusive rate.
 - Commercial paper at 6.9 percent with a dealer's commission of 1/4 percent and a backup line cost of 1/3 percent, both of which would be assessed on the \$1 million of commercial paper issued.

Which of these forms of borrowing results in the lowest cost of credit?

- A Line of credit.
 B Banker's acceptance.
 C Commercial paper.

The following information relates to Questions 8–12

Mary Gonzales is evaluating companies in the office supply industry and has compiled the following information:

Company	20X1		20X2	
	Credit Sales (\$)	Average Receivables Balance (\$)	Credit Sales (\$)	Average Receivables Balance (\$)
A	5.0 million	1.0 million	6.0 million	1.2 million
B	3.0 million	1.2 million	4.0 million	1.5 million
C	2.5 million	0.8 million	3.0 million	1.0 million
D	0.5 million	0.1 million	0.6 million	0.2 million
Industry	25.0 million	5.0 million	28.0 million	5.4 million

- 8 Which of the companies had the highest number of days of receivables for the year 20X1?
- A Company A.
 B Company B.
 C Company C.
- 9 Which of the companies has the lowest accounts receivable turnover in the year 20X2?

- A Company A.
 - B Company B.
 - C Company D.
- 10 The industry average receivables collection period:
- A increased from 20X1 to 20X2.
 - B decreased from 20X1 to 20X2.
 - C did not change from 20X1 to 20X2.
- 11 Which of the companies reduced the average time it took to collect on accounts receivable from 20X1 to 20X2?
- A Company B.
 - B Company C.
 - C Company D.
- 12 Mary determined that Company A had an operating cycle of 100 days in 20X2, whereas Company D had an operating cycle of 145 days for the same fiscal year. This means that:
- A Company D's inventory turnover is less than that of Company A.
 - B Company D's inventory turnover is greater than that of Company A.
 - C Company D's cash conversion cycle is shorter than that of Company A.
-

SOLUTIONS

- 1 B is correct.

$$\text{Current ratio} = \text{Current assets} / \text{Current Liabilities} = \text{Current assets} / \text{€100 million} = 2.5$$

Therefore, current assets = €250 million

$$\text{Quick ratio} = (\text{Current assets} - \text{Inventory}) / \text{Current Liabilities} = (\text{€250 million} - \text{Inventory}) / \text{€100 million} = 1.5$$

Therefore, Inventory = **€100 million**

- 2 C is correct.

$$\text{Number of days of inventory} = \$2,300 / (\$20,000 / 365) = 41.975 \text{ days}$$

$$\text{Number of days of receivables} = \$2,500 / (\$25,000 / 365) = 36.5 \text{ days}$$

$$\text{Operating cycle} = 41.975 + 36.5 \text{ days} = \mathbf{78.475 \text{ days}}$$

Note: The net operating cycle is 47.9 days.

$$\text{Purchases} = \$20,000 + \$2,300 - \$2,000 = \$20,300$$

$$\text{Number of days of payables} = \$1,700 / (\$20,300 / 365) = 30.567 \text{ days}$$

$$\text{The net operating cycle is } 78.475 - 30.567 = 47.908 \text{ days}$$

- 3 A is correct.

$$\text{Number of days of inventory} = \$2,000 / (\$30,000 / 365) = 24.333 \text{ days}$$

$$\text{Number of days of receivables} = \$3,000 / (\$40,000 / 365) = 27.375 \text{ days}$$

$$\text{Operating cycle} = 24.333 + 27.375 \text{ days} = 51.708 \text{ days}$$

$$\text{Purchases} = \$30,000 + \$2,000 - \$1,500 = \$30,500$$

$$\text{Number of days of payables} = \$4,000 / (\$30,500 / 365) = 47.869 \text{ days}$$

$$\text{The net operating cycle is } 51.708 - 47.869 = \mathbf{3.839 \text{ days}}$$

- 4 C is correct.

$$\text{Bond equivalent yield} = [(\$10,000 - 9,725) / \$9,725] \times (365 / 182) = \mathbf{5.671 \text{ percent}}$$

- 5 C is correct. A higher level of uncollectible accounts may occur, but a longer average collection period will certainly occur.

- 6 C is correct.

$$\text{Cost} = \left(1 + \frac{0.02}{0.98} \right)^{365/40} - 1 = 20.24 \text{ percent}$$

7 B is correct.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Line cost} &= \frac{\text{Interest} + \text{Commitment fee}}{\text{Net Proceed}} \times 12 \\ &= \frac{(0.072 \times \$1,000,000 \times 1/12) + (0.005 \times \$1,000,000 \times 1/12)}{\$1,000,000} \times 12 \\ &= \frac{\$6,000 + 416.67}{\$1,000,000} \times 12 = 0.077 \text{ or } 7.7 \text{ percent}\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Banker's acceptance cost} &= \frac{\text{Interest}}{\text{Net Proceed}} \times 12 \\ &= \frac{(0.071 \times \$1,000,000 \times 1/12)}{\$1,000,000 - (0.071 \times \$1,000,000 \times 1/12)} \times 12 \\ &= \frac{\$5,916.67}{\$994,083.33} \times 12 = 0.0714 \text{ or } 7.14 \text{ percent}\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Commercial paper cost} &= \frac{\text{Interest} + \text{Dealer's commission} + \text{Backup costs}}{\text{Net proceed}} \times 12 \\ &= \frac{(0.069 \times \$1,000,000 \times 1/12) + (0.0025 \times \$1,000,000 \times 1/12) + (0.003333 \times \$1,000,000 \times 1/12)}{\$1,000,000 - (0.069 \times \$1,000,000 \times 1/12)} \times 12 \\ &= \frac{\$5,750 + 208.33 + 277.78}{\$1,000,000 - 5,750} \times 12 = 0.0753 \text{ or } 7.53 \text{ percent}\end{aligned}$$

8 B is correct.

$$\text{Company A: } \$1.0 \text{ million}/(\$5.0 \text{ million}/365) = 73.0 \text{ days}$$

$$\text{Company B: } \$1.2 \text{ million}/(\$3.0 \text{ million}/365) = 146.0 \text{ days}$$

$$\text{Company C: } \$0.8 \text{ million}/(\$2.5 \text{ million}/365) = 116.8 \text{ days}$$

$$\text{Company D: } \$0.1 \text{ million}/(\$0.5 \text{ million}/365) = 73.0 \text{ days}$$

9 B is correct.

$$\text{Company A: } \$6.0 \text{ million}/\$1.2 \text{ million} = 5.00$$

$$\text{Company B: } \$4.0 \text{ million}/\$1.5 \text{ million} = 2.67$$

$$\text{Company C: } \$3.0 \text{ million}/\$1.0 \text{ million} = 3.00$$

$$\text{Company D: } \$0.6 \text{ million}/\$0.2 \text{ million} = 3.00$$

10 B is correct.

$$20X1: 73 \text{ days}$$

$$20X2: 70.393$$

Note: If the number of days decreased from 20X1 to 20X2, the receivable turnover increased.

11 A is correct.

Company B increased its accounts receivable (A/R) turnover and reduced its number of days of receivables between 20X1 and 20X2.

Company	20X1		20X2	
	A/R Turnover	Number of Days of Receivables	A/R Turnover	Number of Days of Receivables
A	5.000	73.000	5.000	73.000
B	2.500	146.000	2.667	136.875
C	3.125	116.800	3.000	121.667
D	5.000	73.000	3.000	121.667

12 B is correct.

Company A number of days of inventory = $100 - 73 = 27$ days

Company D number of days of inventory = $145 - 121.67 = 23.33$ days

Company A's turnover = $365/27 = 13.5$ times

Company D's inventory turnover = $365/23.3 = 15.6$ times

Portfolio Management

STUDY SESSION

Study Session 12

Portfolio Management (1)

Study Session 13

Portfolio Management (2)

TOPIC LEVEL LEARNING OUTCOME

The candidate should be able to explain and demonstrate the use of fundamentals of portfolio and risk management, including return and risk measurement, and portfolio planning and construction.

PORTFOLIO MANAGEMENT
STUDY SESSION

12

Portfolio Management (1)

This study session introduces the concept of a portfolio approach to investments. The needs of individual and institutional investors are each examined, along with the range of available investment solutions. The three main steps in the portfolio management process (planning, execution, and feedback) are outlined. Common measures of portfolio risk and return and the introduction of modern portfolio theory—a quantitative framework for asset pricing and portfolio selection—then follow.

READING ASSIGNMENTS

- | | |
|-------------------|---|
| Reading 38 | Portfolio Management: An Overview
by Robert M. Conroy, DBA, CFA, and Alistair Byrne,
PhD, CFA |
| Reading 39 | Portfolio Risk and Return: Part I
by Vijay Singal, PhD, CFA |
| Reading 40 | Portfolio Risk and Return: Part II
by Vijay Singal, PhD, CFA |

Portfolio Management: An Overview

by Robert M. Conroy, DBA, CFA, and Alistair Byrne, PhD, CFA

Robert M. Conroy, DBA, CFA, is at the Darden School of Business, University of Virginia (USA). Alistair Byrne, PhD, CFA, is at State Street Global Advisors (United Kingdom).

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Mastery	The candidate should be able to:
<input type="checkbox"/>	a. describe the portfolio approach to investing;
<input type="checkbox"/>	b. describe types of investors and distinctive characteristics and needs of each;
<input type="checkbox"/>	c. describe defined contribution and defined benefit pension plans;
<input type="checkbox"/>	d. describe the steps in the portfolio management process;
<input type="checkbox"/>	e. describe mutual funds and compare them with other pooled investment products.

INTRODUCTION

1

In this reading we explain why the portfolio approach is important to all types of investors in achieving their financial goals. We compare the financial needs of different types of individual and institutional investors. After we outline the steps in the portfolio management process, we compare and contrast the types of investment management products that are available to investors and how they apply to the portfolio approach.

A PORTFOLIO PERSPECTIVE ON INVESTING

2

One of the biggest challenges faced by individuals and institutions is to decide how to invest for future needs. For individuals, the goal might be to fund retirement needs. For such institutions as insurance companies, the goal is to fund future liabilities in the form of insurance claims, whereas endowments seek to provide income to meet the ongoing needs of such institutions as universities. Regardless of the ultimate goal, all face the same set of challenges that extend beyond just the choice of what asset classes to invest in. They ultimately center on formulating basic principles that

determine how to think about investing. One important question is: Should we invest in individual securities, evaluating each in isolation, or should we take a portfolio approach? By “portfolio approach,” we mean evaluating individual securities in relation to their contribution to the investment characteristics of the whole portfolio. In the following section, we illustrate a number of reasons why a diversified portfolio perspective is important.

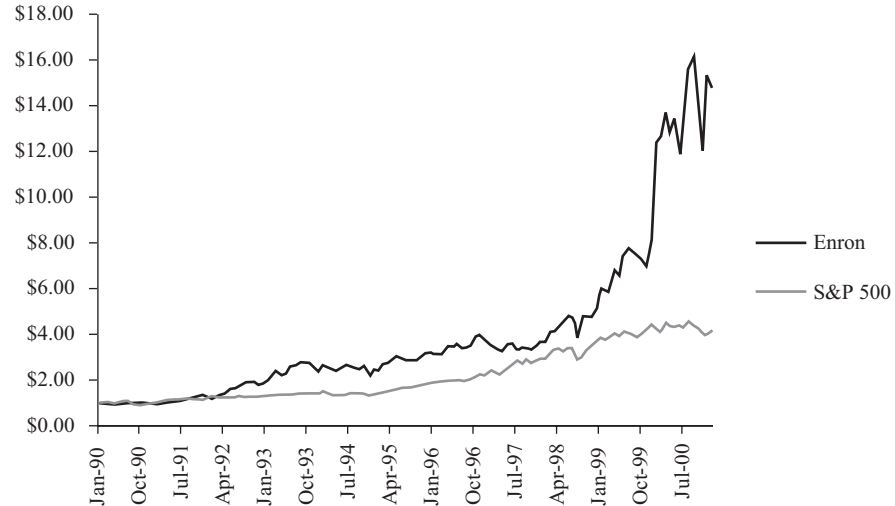
2.1 Portfolio Diversification: Avoiding Disaster

Portfolio diversification helps investors avoid disastrous investment outcomes. This benefit is most convincingly illustrated by examining what may happen when individuals have *not* diversified.

We are usually not able to observe how individuals manage their personal investments. However, in the case of US 401(k) individual retirement portfolios,¹ it is possible to see the results of individuals’ investment decisions. When we examine their retirement portfolios, we find that some individual participants make sub-optimal investment decisions.

During the 1990s, Enron Corporation was one of the most admired corporations in the United States. A position in Enron shares returned over 27 percent per year from 1990 to September 2000, compared to 13 percent for the S&P 500 Index for the same time period.

**Exhibit 1 Value of US\$1 Invested from January 1990 to September 2000
Enron vs. S&P 500 Composite Index (01/01/1990 = US\$1.00)**



Source: Thomson Reuters Datastream.

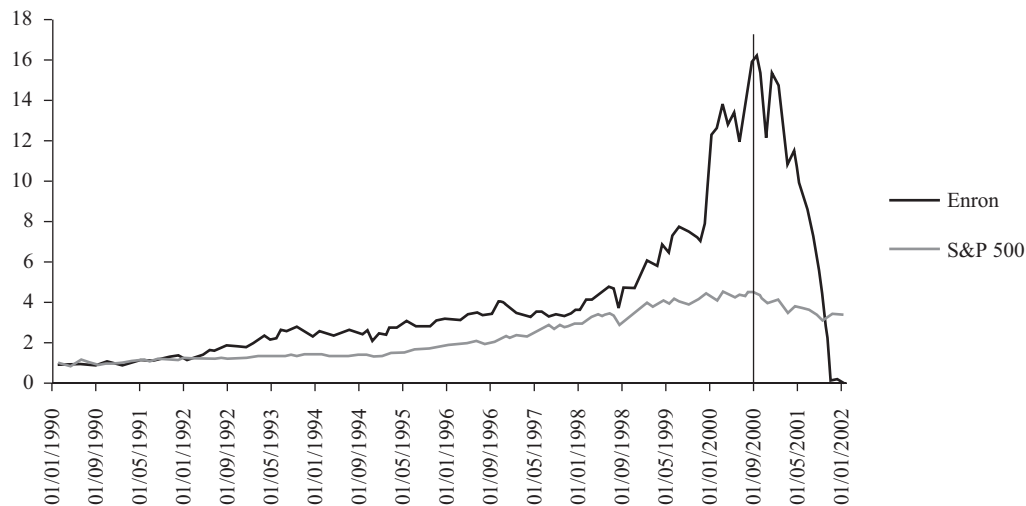
During this time period, thousands of Enron employees participated in the company’s 401(k) retirement plan. The plan allowed employees to set aside some of their earnings in a tax-deferred account. Enron participated by matching the employees’

¹ In the United States, 401(k) plans are employer-sponsored individual retirement savings plans. They allow individuals to save a portion of their current income and defer taxation until the time when the savings and earnings are withdrawn. In some cases, the sponsoring firm will also make matching contributions in the form of cash or shares. Individuals within certain limits have control of the invested funds and consequently can express their preferences as to which assets to invest in.

contributions. Enron made the match by depositing required amounts in the form of Enron shares. Enron restricted the sale of its contributed shares until an employee turned 50 years old. In January 2001, the employees' 401(k) retirement accounts were valued at over US\$2 billion, of which US\$1.3 billion (or 62 percent) was in Enron shares. Although Enron restricted the sale of shares it contributed, less than US\$150 million of the total of US\$1.3 billion in shares had this restriction. The implication was that Enron employees continued to hold large amounts of Enron shares even though they were free to sell them and invest the proceeds in other assets.

A typical individual was Roger Bruce,² a 67-year-old Enron retiree who held all of his US\$2 million in retirement funds in Enron shares. Unlike most stories, this one does not have a happy ending. Between January 2001 and January 2002, Enron's share price fell from about US\$90 per share to zero.

Exhibit 2 Value of US\$1 Invested from January 1990 to January 2002 Enron vs. S&P 500 Composite Index (1/1/1990 = US\$1.00)



Source: Thomson Reuters Datastream.

Employees and retirees who had invested all or most of their retirement savings in Enron shares, just like Mr. Bruce, experienced financial ruin. The hard lesson that the Enron employees learned from this experience was to “not put all your eggs in one basket.”³ Unfortunately, the typical Enron employee did have most of his or her eggs in one basket. Most employees' wages and financial assets were dependent on Enron's continued viability; hence, any financial distress on Enron would have a material impact on an employee's financial health. The bankruptcy of Enron resulted in the closing of its operations, the dismissal of thousands of employees, and its shares becoming worthless. Hence, the failure of Enron was disastrous to the typical Enron employee.

Enron employees were not the only ones to be victims of over-investment in a single company's shares. Another form of pension arrangement in many corporations is the defined contribution plan, in which the employer makes periodic cash contributions to a retirement fund managed by the employees themselves instead of guaranteeing a certain pension at retirement. In the defined contribution retirement plans at Owens Corning, Northern Telecom, Corning, and ADC Telecommunications, employees

² Singletary (2001).

³ This expression, which most likely originated in England in the 1700s, has a timeless sense of wisdom.

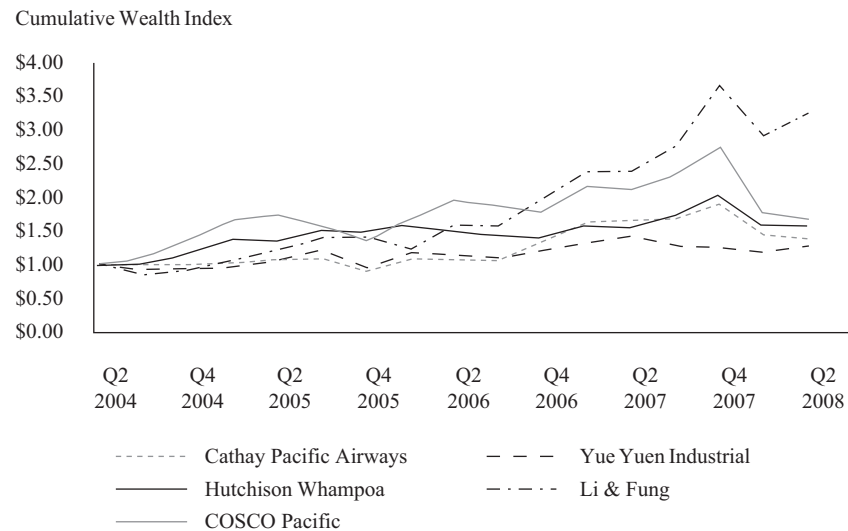
all held more than 25 percent of their assets in the company's shares during a time (March 2000 to December 2001) in which the share prices in these companies fell by almost 90 percent. The good news in this story is that the employees participating in employer-matched 401(k) plans since 2001 have significantly reduced their holdings of their employers' shares.

Thus, by taking a diversified portfolio approach, investors can spread away some of the risk. All rational investors are concerned about the risk–return trade-off of their investments. The portfolio approach provides investors with a way to reduce the risk associated with their wealth without necessarily decreasing their expected rate of return.

2.2 Portfolios: Reduce Risk

In addition to avoiding a potential disaster associated with over investing in a single security, portfolios also generally offer equivalent expected returns with lower overall **volatility** of returns—as represented by a measure such as standard deviation. Consider this simple example: Suppose you wish to make an investment in companies listed on the Hong Kong Stock Exchange (HKSE) and you start with a sample of five companies.⁴ The cumulative returns for the five companies from Q2 2004 through Q2 2008 are shown in Exhibit 3.

Exhibit 3 Cumulative Wealth Index of Sample of Shares Listed on HKSE (Q2 2004 = US\$1.00)



Source: Thomson Reuters Datastream.

The individual quarterly returns for each of the five shares are shown in Exhibit 4. The annualized means and annualized standard deviations for each are also shown.⁵

⁴ A sample of five companies from a similar industry group was arbitrarily selected for illustration purposes.
⁵ Mean quarterly returns are annualized by multiplying the quarterly mean by 4. Quarterly standard deviations are annualized by taking the quarterly standard deviation and multiplying it by 2.

Exhibit 4 Quarterly Returns (in Percent) for Sample of HKSE Listed Shares End of Q2 2004–End of Q2 2008

	Yue Yuen Industrial	Cathay Pacific Airways	Hutchison Whampoa	Li & Fung	COSCO Pacific	Equally Weighted Portfolio
Q3 2004	-11.1%	-2.3%	0.6%	-13.2%	-1.1%	-5.4%
Q4 2004	-0.5	-5.4	10.8	1.7	21.0	5.5
Q1 2005	5.7	6.8	19.1	13.8	15.5	12.2
Q2 2005	5.3	4.6	-2.1	16.9	12.4	7.4
Q3 2005	17.2	2.4	12.6	14.5	-7.9	7.8
Q4 2005	-17.6	-10.4	-0.9	4.4	-16.7	-8.2
Q1 2006	12.6	7.4	4.2	-10.9	15.4	5.7
Q2 2006	7.5	-0.4	-3.6	29.2	21.9	10.9
Q3 2006	-7.9	1.3	-5.1	-2.0	-1.6	-3.1
Q4 2006	8.2	27.5	0.1	26.0	-10.1	10.3
Q1 2007	18.3	24.3	16.5	22.8	25.7	21.5
Q2 2007	0.1	-2.6	-6.7	-0.4	0.3	-1.8
Q3 2007	-6.2	-4.2	16.7	11.9	11.1	5.8
Q4 2007	-8.0	17.9	-1.8	12.4	8.4	5.8
Q1 2008	3.5	-20.1	-8.5	-20.3	-31.5	-15.4
Q2 2008	2.1	-11.8	-2.6	24.2	-6.1	1.2
Mean annual return	7.3%	8.7%	12.3%	32.8%	14.2%	15.1%
Annual standard deviation	20.2%	25.4%	18.1%	29.5%	31.3%	17.9%
Diversification ratio						71.0%

Source: Thomson Reuters Datastream.

Suppose you want to invest in one of these five securities next year. There is a wide variety of risk–return trade-offs for the five shares selected. If you believe that the future will replicate the past, then choosing Li & Fung would be a good choice. For the prior four years, Li & Fung provided the best trade-off between return and risk. In other words, it provided the most return per unit of risk. However, if there is no reason to believe that the future will replicate the past, it is more likely that the risk and return on the one security selected will be more like selecting one randomly. When we randomly selected one security each quarter, we found an average annualized return of 15.1 percent and an average annualized standard deviation of 24.9 percent, which would now become your expected return and standard deviation, respectively.

Alternatively, you could invest in an equally weighted portfolio of the five shares, which means that you would invest the same dollar amount in each security for each quarter. The quarterly returns on the equally weighted portfolio are just the average of the returns of the individual shares. As reported in Exhibit 4, the equally weighted portfolio has an average return of 15.1 percent and a standard deviation of 17.9 percent. As expected, the equally weighted portfolio's return is the same as the return on the randomly selected security. However, the same does not hold true for the portfolio standard deviation. That is, the standard deviation of an equally weighted portfolio is not simply the average of the standard deviations of the individual shares. In a more advanced reading we will demonstrate in greater mathematical detail how such a portfolio offers a lower standard deviation of return than the average of its individual components due to the correlations or interactions between the individual securities.

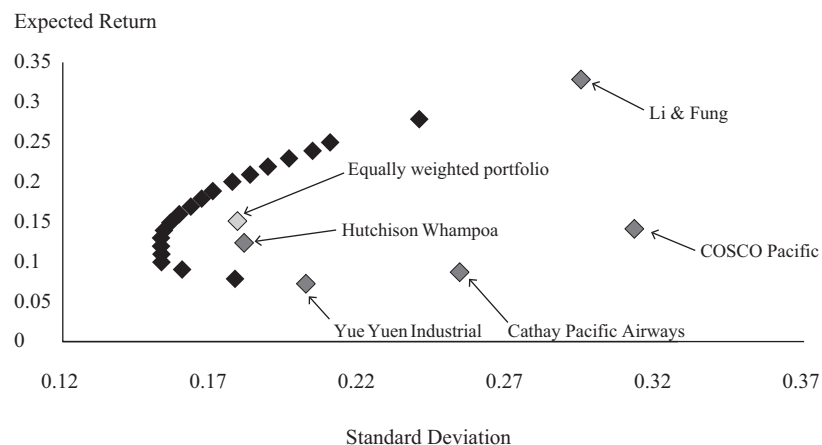
Because the mean return is the same, a simple measure of the value of diversification is calculated as the ratio of the standard deviation of the equally weighted portfolio to the standard deviation of the randomly selected security. This ratio may be referred to as the **diversification ratio**. In this case, the equally weighted portfolio's standard deviation is approximately 71 percent of that of a security selected at random. The diversification ratio of the portfolio's standard deviation to the individual asset's standard deviation measures the risk reduction benefits of a simple portfolio construction method, equal weighting. Even though the companies were chosen from a similar industry grouping, we see significant risk reduction. An even greater portfolio effect (i.e., lower diversification ratio) could have been realized if we had chosen companies from completely different industries.

This example illustrates one of the critical ideas about portfolios: Portfolios affect risk more than returns. In the prior section portfolios helped avoid the effects of downside risk associated with investing in a single company's shares. In this section we extended the notion of risk reduction through portfolios to illustrate why individuals and institutions should hold portfolios.

2.3 Portfolios: Composition Matters for the Risk–Return Trade-off

In the previous section we compared an equally weighted portfolio to the selection of a single security. In this section we examine additional combinations of the same set of shares and observe the trade-offs between portfolio volatility of returns and expected return (for short, their risk–return trade-offs). If we select the portfolios with the best combination of risk and return (taking historical statistics as our expectations for the future), we produce the set of portfolios shown in Exhibit 5.

Exhibit 5 Optimal Portfolios for Sample of HKSE Listed Shares



Source: Thomson Reuters Datastream.

In addition to illustrating that the diversified portfolio approach reduces risk, Exhibit 5 also shows that the composition of the portfolio matters. For example, an equally weighted portfolio (20 percent of the portfolio in each security) of the five shares has an expected return of 15.1 percent and a standard deviation of 17.9 percent. Alternatively, a portfolio with 25 percent in Yue Yuen Industrial (Holdings), 3 percent in Cathay Pacific, 52 percent in Hutchison Whampoa, 20 percent in Li & Fung, and 0 percent in COSCO Pacific produces a portfolio with an expected return

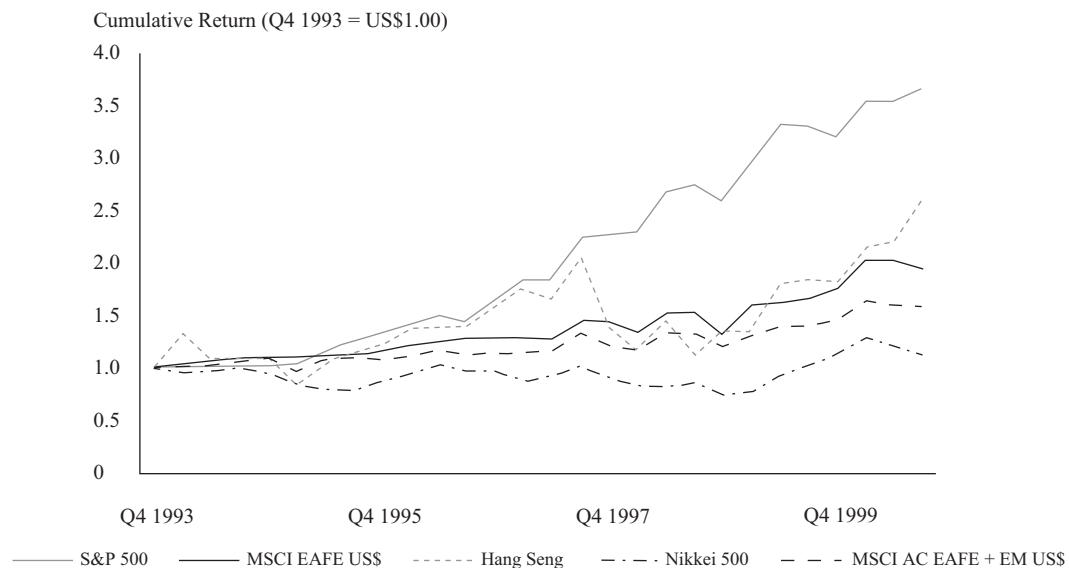
of 15.1 percent and a standard deviation of 15.6 percent. Compared to a simple equally weighted portfolio, this provides an improved trade-off between risk and return because a lower level of risk was achieved for the same level of return.

2.4 Portfolios: Not Necessarily Downside Protection

A major reason that portfolios can effectively reduce risk is that combining securities whose returns do not move together provides diversification. Sometimes a subset of assets will go up in value at the same time that another will go down in value. The fact that these may offset each other creates the potential diversification benefit we attribute to portfolios. However, an important issue is that the co-movement or correlation pattern of the securities' returns in the portfolio can change in a manner unfavorable to the investor. We use historical return data from a set of global indexes to show the impact of changing co-movement patterns.

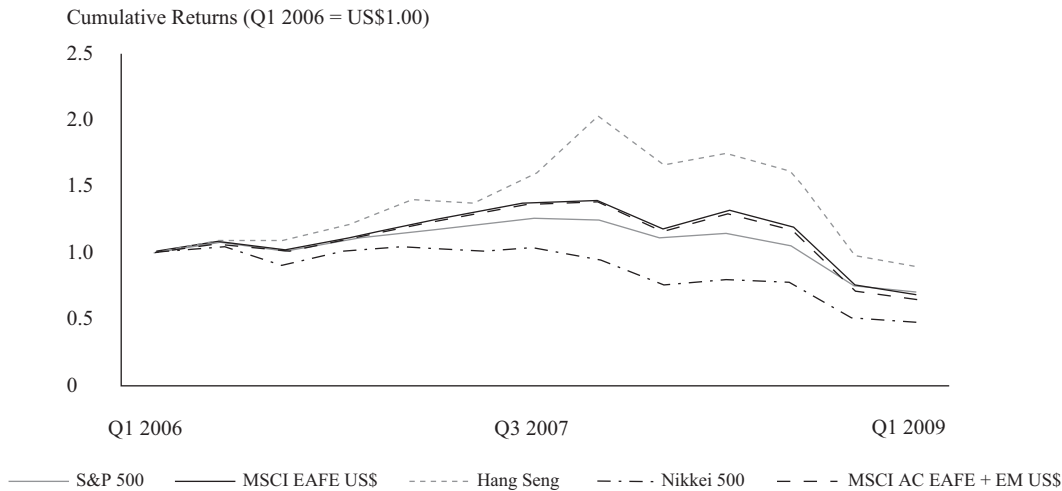
When we examine the returns of a set of global equity indexes over the last 15 years, we observe a reduction in the diversification benefit due to a change in the pattern of co-movements of returns. Exhibits 6 and 7 show the cumulative returns for a set of five global indexes⁶ for two different time periods. Comparing the first time period, from Q4 1993 through Q3 2000 (as shown in Exhibit 6), with the last time period, from Q1 2006 through Q1 2009 (as shown in Exhibit 7), we show that the degree to which these global equity indexes move together has increased over time.

Exhibit 6 Returns to Global Equity Indexes Q4 1993–Q3 2000



Source: Thomson Reuters Datastream.

⁶ The S&P 500, Hang Seng, and Nikkei 500 are broad-based composite equity indexes designed to measure the performance of equities in the United States, Hong Kong, and Japan. MSCI stands for Morgan Stanley Capital International. EAFE refers to developed markets in Europe, Australasia, and the Far East. AC indicates all countries, and EM is emerging markets. All index returns are in US dollars.

Exhibit 7 Returns to Global Equity Indexes Q1 2006–Q1 2009

Source: Thomson Reuters Datastream.

The latter part of the second time period, from Q4 2007 to Q1 2009, was a period of dramatic declines in global share prices. Exhibit 8 shows the mean annual returns and standard deviation of returns for this time period.

Exhibit 8 Returns to Global Equity Indexes

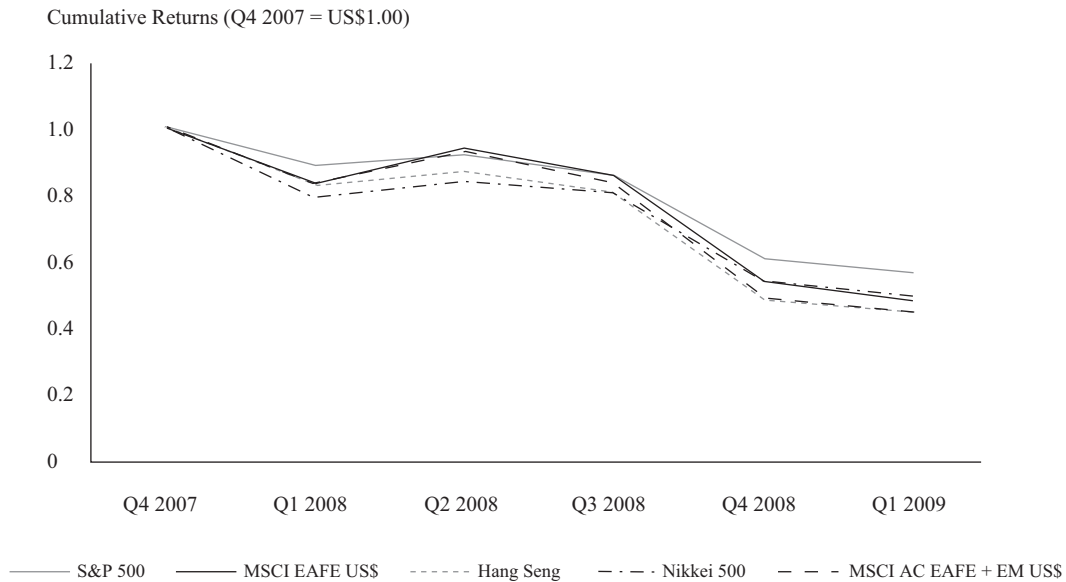
Global Index	Q4 1993–Q3 2000		Q1 2006–Q1 2009		Q4 2007–Q1 2009	
	Mean	Stand. Dev.	Mean	Stand. Dev.	Mean	Stand. Dev.
S&P 500	20.5%	13.9%	−6.3%	21.1%	−40.6%	23.6%
MSCI EAFE US\$	10.9	14.2	−3.5	29.4	−48.0	35.9
Hang Seng	20.4	35.0	5.1	34.2	−53.8	34.0
Nikkei 500	3.3	18.0	−13.8	27.6	−48.0	30.0
MSCI AC EAFE + EM US\$	7.6	13.2	−4.9	30.9	−52.0	37.5
Randomly selected index	12.6%	18.9%	−4.7%	28.6%	−48.5%	32.2%
Equally weighted portfolio	12.6%	14.2%	−4.7%	27.4%	−48.5%	32.0%
Diversification ratio		75.1%		95.8%		99.4%

Source: Thomson Reuters Datastream.

During the period Q4 2007 through Q1 2009, the average return for the equally weighted portfolio, including dividends, was −48.5 percent. Other than reducing the risk of earning the return of the worst performing market, the diversification benefits were small. Exhibit 9 shows the cumulative quarterly returns of each of the five indexes over this time period. All of the indexes declined in unison. The lesson is that although portfolio diversification generally does reduce risk, it does not necessarily provide the same level of risk reduction during times of severe market turmoil as it does when the economy and markets are operating ‘normally’. In fact, if the economy

or markets fail totally (which has happened numerous times around the world), then diversification is a false promise. In the face of a worldwide contagion, diversification was ineffective, as illustrated at the end of 2008.

Exhibit 9 Return to Global Equity Indexes Q4 2007–Q1 2009



Source: Thomson Reuters Datastream.

Portfolios are *most likely* to provide:

- A risk reduction.
- B risk elimination.
- C downside protection.

Solution:

A is correct. Combining assets into a portfolio should reduce the portfolio's volatility. However, the portfolio approach does not necessarily provide downside protection or eliminate all risk.

2.5 Portfolios: The Emergence of Modern Portfolio Theory

The concept of diversification has been around for a long time and has a great deal of intuitive appeal. However, the actual theory underlying this basic concept and its application to investments only emerged in 1952 with the publication of Harry Markowitz's classic article on portfolio selection.⁷ The article provided the foundation for what is now known as **modern portfolio theory** (MPT). The main conclusion of MPT is that investors should not only hold portfolios but should also focus on how individual securities in the portfolios are related to one another. In addition to the

⁷ Markowitz (1952).

diversification benefits of portfolios to investors, the work of William Sharpe (1964), John Lintner (1965), and Jack Treynor (1961) demonstrated the role that portfolios play in determining the appropriate individual asset risk premium (i.e., the return in excess of the risk-free return expected by investors as compensation for the asset's risk). According to capital market theory, the priced risk of an individual security is affected by holding it in a well-diversified portfolio. The early research provided the insight that an asset's risk should be measured in relation to the remaining systematic or non-diversifiable risk, which should be the only risk that affects the asset's price. This view of risk is the basis of the capital asset pricing model, or CAPM, which is discussed in greater detail in other readings. Although MPT has limitations, the concepts and intuitions illustrated in the theory continue to be the foundation of knowledge for portfolio managers.

3

INVESTMENT CLIENTS

Portfolio managers are employed or contracted by a wide variety of investment clients. We can group the clients into categories based on their distinctive characteristics and needs. Our initial distinction is between management of the private wealth of individual investors and investment management for institutional investors.

3.1 Individual Investors

Individual investors have a variety of motives for investing and constructing portfolios. Short-term goals can include providing for children's education, saving for a major purchase (such as a vehicle or a house), or starting a business. The retirement goal—investing to provide for an income in retirement—is a major part of the investment planning of most individuals. Many employees of public and private companies invest for retirement through **defined contribution pension plans** (DC plans). A DC plan is a pension plan in which contributions rather than benefits are specified, such as 401(k) plans in the United States, group personal pension schemes in the United Kingdom, and superannuation plans in Australia. Individuals will invest part of their wages while working, expecting to draw on the accumulated funds to provide income during retirement or to transfer some of their wealth to their heirs. The key to a DC plan is that the employee accepts the investment risk and is responsible for ensuring that there are enough funds in the plan to meet their needs upon retirement.

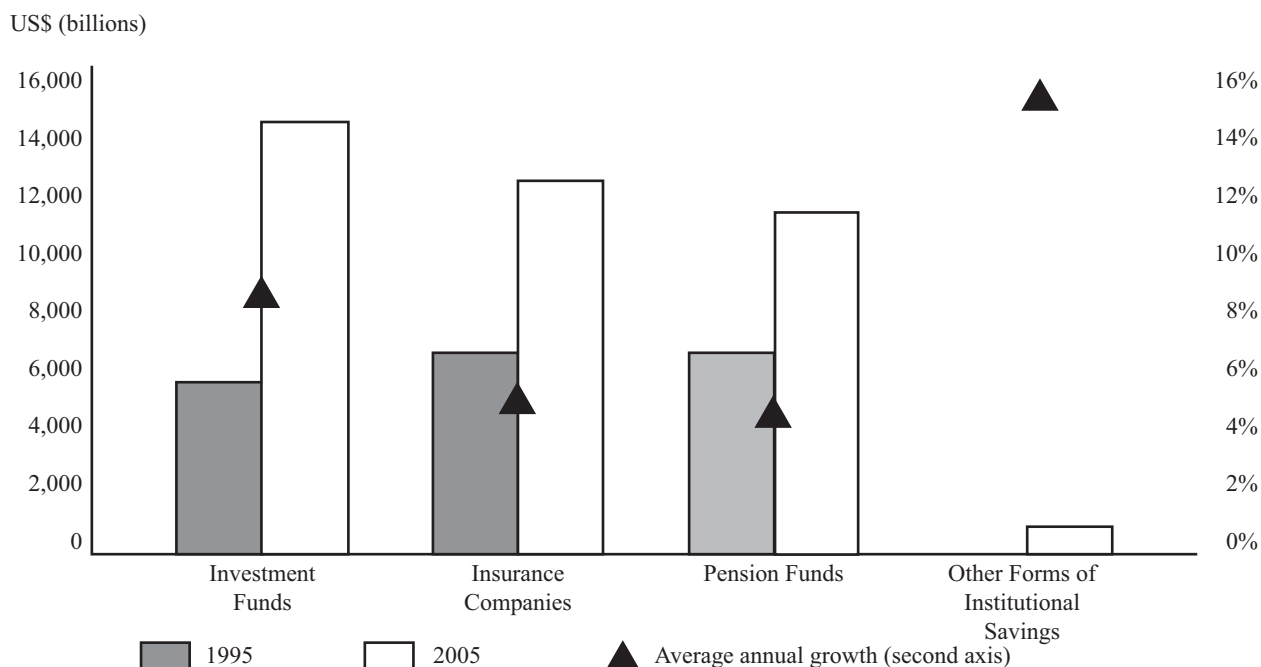
Some individuals will be investing for growth and will therefore seek assets that have the potential for capital gains. Others, such as retirees, may need to draw an income from their assets and may therefore choose to invest in fixed-income and dividend-paying shares. The investment needs of individuals will depend in part on their broader financial circumstances, such as their employment prospects and whether or not they own their own residence. They may also need to consider such issues as building up a cash reserve and the purchase of appropriate insurance policies before undertaking longer-term investments.

3.2 Institutional Investors

There are many different types of institutional investors. Examples include defined benefit pensions plans, university endowments, charitable foundations, banks, insurance companies, investment companies, and sovereign wealth funds (SWFs). Institutional investors are major participants in the investment markets. Exhibit 10 shows the relative size and growth rates of the key categories across the Organisation for Economic

Co-operation and Development (OECD) countries. Investment funds are the largest category, with insurance companies and pension funds not far behind. The relative importance of these categories does vary significantly across the individual OECD countries.

Exhibit 10 Institutional Assets (in US\$ billions) 1995 to 2005



Source: OECD, "Recent Trends in Institutional Investors Statistics" (2008); www.oecd.org/dataoecd/53/49/42143444.pdf.

3.2.1 Defined Benefit Pension Plans

In **defined benefit pension plans** (DB plans), an employer has an obligation to pay a certain annual amount to its employees when they retire. In other words, the future benefit is defined because the DB plan requires the plan sponsor to specify the obligation stated in terms of the retirement income benefits owed to participants. DB plans need to invest the assets that will provide cash flows that match the timing of the future pension payments (i.e., liabilities). Plans are committed to paying pensions to members, and the assets of these plans are there to fund those payments. Plan managers need to ensure that sufficient assets will be available to pay pension benefits as they come due. The plan may have an indefinitely long time horizon if new plan members are being admitted or a finite time horizon if the plan has been closed to new members. Even a plan closed to new members may still have a time horizon of 70 or 80 years. For example, a plan member aged 25 may not retire for another 40 years and may live 30 years in retirement. Hence, pension plans can be considered long-term investors. In some cases, the plan managers attempt to match the fund's assets to its liabilities by, for example, investing in bonds that will produce cash flows corresponding to expected future pension payments. There may be many different investment philosophies for pension plans, depending on funded status and other variables.

3.2.2 Endowments and Foundations

University endowments are established to provide continuing financial support to a university and its students (e.g., scholarships). Endowments vary in size (assets under management), but many are major investors. It is common for US universities to have large endowments, but it is somewhat less common elsewhere in the world. Exhibit 11 shows the top ten US university endowments by assets as of the end of 2008. In terms of non-US examples, the University of Oxford, United Kingdom, and its various colleges were estimated to have a total endowment of £4.8 billion as of 2004 and the University of Cambridge, United Kingdom, and its colleges, £5.3 billion. These were by far the largest endowments in the United Kingdom. The third largest, University of Edinburgh, was £156 million.⁸ The French business school INSEAD's endowment was valued at €105 million as of 2008.

Exhibit 11 Top Ten US University Endowments by Asset Value

Rank	Institution	State	Endowment Funds 2008 (US\$000)
1	Harvard University	MA	\$36,556,284
2	Yale University	CT	22,869,700
3	Stanford University	CA	17,200,000
4	Princeton University	NJ	16,349,329
5	University of Texas System	TX	16,111,184
6	Massachusetts Institute of Technology	MA	10,068,800
7	University of Michigan	MI	7,571,904
8	Northwestern University	IL	7,243,948
9	Columbia University	NY	7,146,806
10	Texas A&M University System and foundations	TX	6,659,352

Source: NACUBO, "2008 NACUBO Endowment Study" (January 2009): www.nacubo.org/Research/NACUBO_Endowment_Study.html.

Charitable foundations invest donations made to them for the purpose of funding grants that are consistent with the charitable foundation's objectives. Similar to university endowments, many charitable foundations are substantial investors. Exhibit 12 lists US grant-making foundations ranked by the market value of their assets based on the most current audited financial data in the Foundation Center's database as of 5 February 2009. Again, large foundations are most common in the United States, but they also exist elsewhere. For example, the Wellcome Trust is a UK-based medical charity that had approximately £13 billion of assets as of 2008.⁹ The Li Ka Shing Foundation is a Hong Kong-based education and medical charity with grants, sponsorships, and commitments amounting to HK\$10.7 billion.

⁸ Acharya and Dimson (2007).

⁹ See www.wellcome.ac.uk/Investments/History-and-objectives/index.htm.

Exhibit 12 Top Ten US Foundation Endowments by Asset Value

Rank	Foundation	Assets (US\$000)	As of Fiscal Year- End Date
1	Bill & Melinda Gates Foundation	\$38,921,022	12/31/07
2	J. Paul Getty Trust	11,187,007	06/30/07
3	Ford Foundation	11,045,128	09/30/08
4	Robert Wood Johnson Foundation	10,722,296	12/31/07
5	William and Flora Hewlett Foundation	9,284,917	12/31/07
6	W.K. Kellogg Foundation	8,402,996	08/31/07
7	Lilly Endowment	7,734,860	12/31/07
8	John D. and Catherine T. MacArthur Foundation	7,052,165	12/31/07
9	David and Lucile Packard Foundation	6,594,540	12/31/07
10	Andrew W. Mellon Foundation	6,539,865	12/31/07

Source: Foundation Center (2009): <http://foundationcenter.org>.

A typical investment objective of an endowment or a foundation is to maintain the real (inflation-adjusted) capital value of the fund while generating income to fund the objectives of the institution. Most foundations and endowments are established with the intent of having perpetual lives. Example 1 describes the US\$22 billion Yale University endowment's approach to balancing short-term spending needs with ensuring that future generations also benefit from the endowment, and it also shows the £13 billion Wellcome Trust's approach. The investment approach undertaken considers the objectives and constraints of the institution (for example, no tobacco investments for a medical endowment).

EXAMPLE 1**Spending Rules**

The following examples of spending rules are from the Yale University endowment (in the United States) and from the Wellcome Trust (in the United Kingdom).

Yale University Endowment

The spending rule is at the heart of fiscal discipline for an endowed institution. Spending policies define an institution's compromise between the conflicting goals of providing substantial support for current operations and preserving purchasing power of Endowment assets. The spending rule must be clearly defined and consistently applied for the concept of budget balance to have meaning.

Yale's policy is designed to meet two competing objectives. The first goal is to release substantial current income to the operating budget in a stable stream, since large fluctuations in revenues are difficult to accommodate through changes in University activities or programs. The second goal is to protect the value of Endowment assets against inflation, allowing programs to be supported at today's level far into the future.

Yale's spending rule attempts to achieve these two objectives by using a long-term spending rate of 5.25 percent combined with a smoothing rule that adjusts spending gradually to changes in Endowment market value. The amount released under the spending rule is based on a weighted average of prior spending adjusted for inflation (80 percent weight) and an amount determined by applying the target rate to the current Endowment market value (20 percent weight) with an adjustment factor based on inflation and the expected growth of the Endowment net of spending.

("2007 Yale Endowment Annual Report" (p.15): [www.yale.edu/investments/Yale_Endowment_07.pdf]).

Wellcome Trust

Our overall investment objective is to generate 6 percent real return over the long term. This is to provide for real increases in annual expenditure while preserving at least the Trust's capital base in real terms in order to balance the needs of both current and future beneficiaries. We use this absolute return strategy because it aligns asset allocation with funding requirements and it provides a competitive framework in which to judge individual investments.

(Wellcome Trust, "History and Objectives: Investment Goals" [www.wellcome.ac.uk/Investments/History-and-objectives/index.htm])

3.2.3 Banks

Banks typically accept deposits and extend loans. In some cases, banks need to invest their excess reserves, (i.e., when deposits have not been used to make loans). The investments of excess reserves need to be conservative, emphasizing fixed-income and money market instruments rather than equities and other riskier assets. In some countries, including the United States, there are legal restrictions on banks owning equity investments.¹⁰ In addition to low risk, the investments also need to be relatively liquid so that they can be sold quickly if depositors wish to withdraw their funds. The bank's objective is to earn a return on its reserves that exceeds the rate of interest it pays on its deposits.

3.2.4 Insurance Companies

Insurance companies receive premiums for the policies they write, and they need to invest these premiums in a manner that will allow them to pay claims. Similar to banks, such investments need to be relatively conservative given the necessity of paying claims when due. Life insurance companies and non-life insurance companies (for example, auto and home insurance) differ in their purpose and objectives and hence in their investment time horizons. Life insurance companies have longer time horizons than non-life insurance companies as a result of different expectations of when payments will be required under policies.

¹⁰ See, for example, www.minneapolisfed.org/publications_papers/pub_display.cfm?id=3518.

3.2.5 Investment Companies

Investment companies that manage mutual funds are also institutional investors. The mutual fund is a collective financial institution in which investors pool their capital to have it invested by a professional manager. The investors own shares or units in the fund. For many investment managers, the mutual fund is, in effect, their client. However, mutual funds are slightly different in that they can also be considered a financial product. For many individual investors, the mutual fund is an efficient means to benefit from portfolio diversification and the skill of a professional manager. The mutual fund is likely to invest in a particular category of investments, such as US small capitalization equities. Mutual funds may also have certain limits and restrictions that apply to their investments, either as set by regulation and law or as decided by the board of directors of the investment company. We will revisit these investment vehicles in greater detail when we discuss pooled investments in Section 5.

3.2.6 Sovereign Wealth Funds

Sovereign wealth funds (SWFs) are government-owned investment funds, of which many are very sizable. Exhibit 13 provides a listing of the top 10 sovereign wealth funds as of March 2018.

Exhibit 13 Sovereign Wealth Funds by Asset Value

Fund	Assets as of March 2018 (US\$ bns)	Inception Date	Country
Government Pension Fund – Global	\$1,033	1990	Norway
China Investment Corporation	900	2007	Peoples' Republic of China
Abu Dhabi Investment Corporation	828	1976	UAE – Abu Dhabi
Kuwait Investment Authority	524	1953	Kuwait
SAMA Foreign Holdings	494	1952	Saudi Arabia
Hong Kong Monetary Authority Investment Portfolio	457	1993	Peoples' Republic of China
SAFE Investment Company	441	1997	Peoples' Republic of China
Government of Singapore Investment Authority	390	1981	Singapore
Qatar Investment Authority	320	2005	Qatar
National Social Security Fund	295	2000	Peoples' Republic of China
Total of top 10 SWFs	\$5,682		
Total of all SWFs	\$7,677		

Source: SWF Institute (www.swfinstitute.org).

Some funds have been established to invest revenues from finite natural resources (e.g., oil) for the benefit of future generations of citizens. Others manage foreign exchange reserves or other assets of the state. Some funds are quite transparent in nature—disclosing their investment returns and their investment holdings—whereas relatively little is known about the investment operations of others.

Exhibit 14 summarizes how investment needs vary across client groups. In some cases, generalizations are possible. In others, needs vary by client.

Exhibit 14 Summary of Investment Needs by Client Type

Client	Time Horizon	Risk Tolerance	Income Needs	Liquidity Needs
Individual investors	Varies by individual	Varies by individual	Varies by individual	Varies by individual
Defined benefit pension plans	Typically long term	Typically quite high	High for mature funds; low for growing funds	Typically quite low
Endowments and foundations	Very long term	Typically high	To meet spending commitments	Typically quite low
Banks	Short term	Quite low	To pay interest on deposits and operational expenses	High to meet repayment of deposits
Insurance companies	Short term for property and casualty; long term for life insurance companies	Typically quite low	Typically low	High to meet claims
Investment companies	Varies by fund	Varies by fund	Varies by fund	High to meet redemptions

4

STEPS IN THE PORTFOLIO MANAGEMENT PROCESS

In the previous section we discussed the different types of investment management clients and the distinctive characteristics and needs of each. The following steps in the investment process are critical in the establishment and management of a client's investment portfolio.

- The Planning Step
 - Understanding the client's needs
 - Preparation of an investment policy statement (IPS)
- The Execution Step
 - Asset allocation
 - Security analysis
 - Portfolio construction
- The Feedback Step
 - Portfolio monitoring and rebalancing
 - Performance measurement and reporting

4.1 Step One: The Planning Step

The first step in the investment process is to understand the client's needs (objectives and constraints) and develop an **investment policy statement (IPS)**. A portfolio manager is unlikely to achieve appropriate results for a client without a prior understanding of the client's needs. The IPS is a written planning document that describes the client's investment objectives and the constraints that apply to the client's portfolio. The IPS may state a benchmark—such as a particular rate of return or the performance of a particular market index—that can be used in the feedback stage to assess

the performance of the investments and whether objectives have been met. The IPS should be reviewed and updated regularly (for example, either every three years or when a major change in a client's objectives, constraints, or circumstances occurs).


4.2 Step Two: The Execution Step

The next step is for the portfolio manager to construct a suitable portfolio based on the IPS of the client. The portfolio execution step consists of first deciding on a target asset allocation, which determines the weighting of asset classes to be included in the portfolio. This step is followed by the analysis, selection, and purchase of individual investment securities.

4.2.1 Asset Allocation

The next step in the process is to assess the risk and return characteristics of the available investments. The analyst forms economic and capital market expectations that can be used to form a proposed allocation of asset classes suitable for the client. Decisions that need to be made in the **asset allocation** of the portfolio include the distribution between equities, fixed-income securities, and cash; sub-asset classes, such as corporate and government bonds; and geographical weightings within asset classes. Alternative assets—such as real estate, commodities, hedge funds, and private equity—may also be included.

Economists and market strategists may set the top down view on economic conditions and broad market trends. The returns on various asset classes are likely to be affected by economic conditions; for example, equities may do well when economic growth has been unexpectedly strong whereas bonds may do poorly if inflation increases. The economists and strategists will attempt to forecast these conditions.



Top down—A **top-down analysis** begins with consideration of macroeconomic conditions. Based on the current and forecasted economic environment, analysts evaluate markets and industries with the purpose of investing in those that are expected to perform well. Finally, specific companies within these industries are considered for investment.

Bottom up—Rather than emphasizing economic cycles or industry analysis, a **bottom-up analysis** focuses on company-specific circumstances, such as management quality and business prospects. It is less concerned with broad economic trends than is the case for top-down analysis, but instead focuses on company specifics.

4.2.2 Security Analysis

The top-down view can be combined with the bottom-up insights of security analysts who are responsible for identifying attractive investments in particular market sectors. They will use their detailed knowledge of the companies and industries they cover to assess the expected level and risk of the cash flows that each security will produce. This knowledge allows the analysts to assign a valuation to the security and identify preferred investments.

4.2.3 Portfolio Construction

The portfolio manager will then construct the portfolio, taking account of the target asset allocation, security analysis, and the client's requirements as set out in the IPS. A key objective will be to achieve the benefits of diversification (i.e., to avoid putting all the eggs in one basket). Decisions need to be taken on asset class weightings, sector weightings within an asset class, and the selection and weighting of individual securities

or assets. The relative importance of these decisions on portfolio performance depends at least in part on the investment strategy selected; for example, consider an investor that actively adjusts asset sector weights in relation to forecasts of sector performance and one who does not. Although all decisions have an effect on portfolio performance, the asset allocation decision is commonly viewed as having the greatest impact.

Exhibit 15 shows the broad portfolio weights of the endowment funds of Yale University and the University of Virginia as of June 2008. As you can see, the portfolios have a heavy emphasis on such alternative assets as hedge funds, private equity, and real estate—Yale University particularly so.

Exhibit 15 Endowment Portfolio Weights, June 2008

Asset Class	Yale University Endowment	University of Virginia Endowment
Public equity	25.3%	53.6%
Fixed income	4.0	15.0
Private equity	20.2	19.6
Real assets (e.g., real estate)	29.3	10.1
Absolute return (e.g., hedge funds)	25.1	8.1
Cash	-3.9	-6.5
Portfolio value	US\$22.9bn	US\$5.1bn

Note: The negative cash position indicates that at the point the figures were taken, the funds had net borrowing rather than net cash.

Sources: “2008 Yale Endowment Annual Report” (p. 2): www.yale.edu/investments/Yale_Endowment_08.pdf; “University of Virginia Investment Management Company Annual Report 2008” (p. 16): http://uvm-web.eservices.virginia.edu/public/reports/FinancialStatements_2008.pdf.

Risk management is an important part of the portfolio construction process. The client’s risk tolerance will be set out in the IPS, and the portfolio manager must make sure the portfolio is consistent with it. As noted above, the manager will take a diversified portfolio perspective: What is important is not the risk of any single investment, but rather how all the investments perform as a portfolio.

The endowments shown above are relatively risk tolerant investors. Contrast the asset allocation of the endowment funds with the portfolio mix of the insurance companies shown in Exhibit 16. You will notice that the majority of the insurance assets are invested in fixed-income investments, typically of high quality. Note that the Yale University portfolio has only 4 percent invested in fixed income, with the remainder invested in such growth assets as equity, real estate, and hedge funds. This allocation is in sharp contrast to the Massachusetts Mutual Life Insurance Company (MassMutual) portfolio, which is over 80 percent invested in bonds, mortgages, loans, and cash—reflecting the differing risk tolerance and constraints (life insurers face regulatory constraints on their investments).


Exhibit 16 Insurance Company Portfolios, December 2008¹¹

Asset Classes	MassMutual Portfolio	MetLife Portfolio
Bonds	56.4%	58.7%
Preferred and common shares	2.2	1.0
Mortgages	15.1	15.9
Real estate	1.3	2.4
Policy loans	10.6	3.0
Partnerships	6.4	1.9
Other assets	4.5	5.3
Cash	3.5	11.8

Note: MetLife is the Metropolitan Life Insurance Company.

Sources: “MassMutual Financial Group 2008 Annual Report” (p. 26): www.massmutual.com/mmfg/docs/annual_report/index.html, “MetLife 2008 Annual Report” (p. 83): <http://investor.metlife.com/phoenix.zhtml?c=121171&p=irol-reportsannual>.

The portfolio construction phase also involves trading. Once the portfolio manager has decided which securities to buy and in what amounts, the securities must be purchased. In many investment firms, the portfolio manager will pass the trades to a buy-side trader—a colleague who specializes in securities trading—who will contact a stockbroker or dealer to have the trades executed.



Sell-side firm—A broker or dealer that sells securities to and provides independent investment research and recommendations to investment management companies.

Buy-side firm—Investment management companies and other investors that use the services of brokers or dealers (i.e., the clients of the sell-side firms).

4.3 Step Three: The Feedback Step

Finally, the feedback step assists the portfolio manager in rebalancing the portfolio due to a change in, for example, market conditions or the circumstances of the client.

4.3.1 Portfolio Monitoring and Rebalancing

Once the portfolio has been constructed, it needs to be monitored and reviewed and the composition revised as the security analysis changes because of changes in security prices and changes in fundamental factors. When security and asset weightings have drifted from the intended levels as a result of market movements, some rebalancing may be required. The portfolio may also need to be revised if it becomes apparent that the client’s needs or circumstances have changed.

¹¹ Asset class definitions: Bonds—Debt instruments of corporations and governments as well as various types of mortgage- and asset-backed securities; Preferred and Common Shares—Investments in preferred and common equities; Mortgages—Mortgage loans secured by various types of commercial property as well as residential mortgage whole loan pools; Real Estate—Investments in real estate; Policy Loans—Loans by policyholders that are secured by insurance and annuity contracts; Partnerships—Investments in partnerships and limited liability companies; Cash—Cash, short-term investments, receivables for securities, and derivatives. Cash equivalents have short maturities (less than one year) or are highly liquid and able to be readily sold.

4.3.2 Performance Evaluation and Reporting

Finally, the performance of the portfolio must be evaluated, which will include assessing whether the client's objectives have been met. For example, the investor will wish to know whether the return requirement has been achieved and how the portfolio has performed relative to any benchmark that has been set. Analysis of performance may suggest that the client's objectives need to be reviewed and perhaps changes made to the IPS. As we will discuss in the next section, there are numerous investment products that clients can use to meet their investment needs. Many of these products are diversified portfolios that an investor can purchase.

5

POOLED INVESTMENTS

The challenge faced by all investors is finding the right set of investment products to meet their needs. Just as there are many different types of investment management clients, there is a diverse set of investment products available to investors. These vary from a simple brokerage account in which the individual creates her own portfolio by assembling individual securities, to large institutions that hire individual portfolio managers for all or part of their investment management needs. Although the array of products is staggering, there are some general categories of pooled investment products that represent the full range of what is available. At one end are mutual funds and exchange traded funds in which investors can participate with a small initial investment. At the other end are hedge funds and private equity funds, which might require a minimum investment of US\$1 million or more. In this context, the amount of funds that an individual or institution can commit to a particular product has a significant impact on which products are available. Exhibit 17 provides a general breakdown of what investment products are available to investors based on investable funds.

Exhibit 17 Investment Products by Minimum Investment

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Mutual funds ■ Exchange traded funds 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Mutual funds ■ Exchange traded funds ■ Separately managed accounts 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Mutual funds ■ Exchange traded funds ■ Separately managed accounts ■ Hedge funds ■ Private equity funds
As little as US\$50	US\$100,000	US\$1,000,000 +

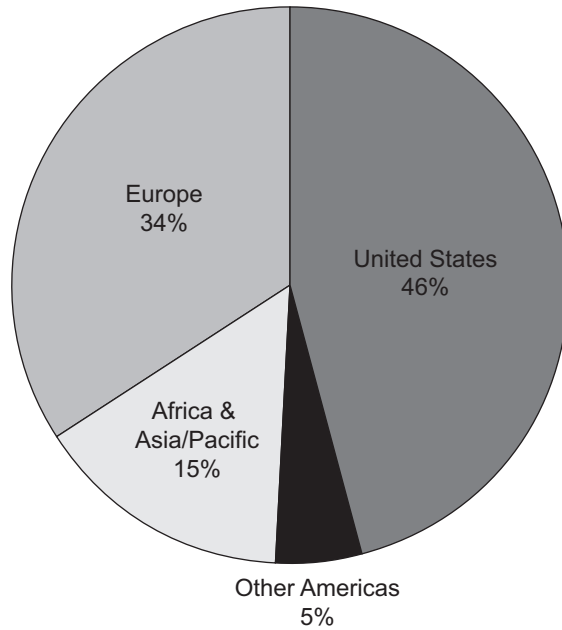
5.1 Mutual Funds

Rather than assemble a portfolio on their own, individual investors and institutions can turn over the selection and management of their investment portfolio to a third party. One alternative is a **mutual fund**. This type of fund is a comingled investment pool in which investors in the fund each have a pro-rata claim on the income and value of the fund. The value of a mutual fund is referred to as the "net asset value." It is computed daily based on the closing price of the securities in the portfolio. At the end of the third quarter of 2008,¹² the Investment Company Institute reported over

¹² Investment Company Institute (2009b).

48,000 mutual funds in over 23 countries with a total net asset value of approximately US\$20 trillion. Exhibit 18 shows the breakdown of mutual fund assets across the major regions of the world as of the end of 2007.

Exhibit 18 Global Allocation of Mutual Fund Assets: 2007



Source: 2008 Investment Company Fact Book, 48th ed. (p. 20): (www.ici.org/pdf/2008_factbook.pdf).

Mutual funds are one of the most important investment vehicles for individuals and institutions. The best way to understand how a mutual fund works is to consider a simple example. Suppose that an investment firm wishes to start a mutual fund with a target amount of US\$10 million. It is able to reach this goal through investments from five individuals and two institutions. The investment of each is as follows:

Investor	Amount Invested (US\$)	Percent of Total	Number of Shares
<i>Individuals</i>			
A	\$1.0 million	10%	10,000
B	1.0	10	10,000
C	0.5	5	5,000
D	2.0	20	20,000
E	0.5	5	5,000
<i>Institutions</i>			
X	2.0	20	20,000
Y	3.0	30	30,000
Totals	\$10.0 million	100%	100,000

Based on the US\$10 million value (net asset value), the investment firm sets a total of 100,000 shares at an initial value of US\$100 per share (US\$10 million/100,000 = US\$100). The investment firm will appoint a portfolio manager to be responsible for the investment of the US\$10 million. Going forward, the total value of the fund or net asset value will depend on the value of the assets in the portfolio.

The fund can be set up as an open-end fund or a closed-end fund. If it is an **open-end fund**, it will accept new investment money and issue additional shares at a value equal to the net asset value of the fund at the time of investment. For example, assume that at a later date the net asset value of the fund increases to US\$12.0 million and the new net asset value per share is US\$120. A new investor, F, wishes to invest US\$0.96 million in the fund. If the total value of the assets in the fund is now US\$12 million or US\$120 per share, in order to accommodate the new investment the fund would create 8,000 (US\$0.96 million/US\$120) new shares. After this investment, the net asset value of the fund would be US\$12.96 million and there would be a total of 108,000 shares.

Funds can also be withdrawn at the net asset value per share. Suppose on the same day Investor E wishes to withdraw all her shares in the mutual fund. To accommodate this withdrawal, the fund will have to liquidate US\$0.6 million in assets to retire 5,000 shares at a net asset value of US\$120 per share (US\$0.6 million/US\$120). The combination of the inflow and outflow on the same day would be as follows:

Type	Investment (US\$)	Shares
Inflow (Investor F buys)	\$960,000	8,000
Outflow (Investor E sells)	-\$600,000	-5,000
Net	\$360,000	3,000

The net of the inflows and outflows on that day would be US\$360,000 of new funds to be invested and 3,000 new shares created. However, the number of shares held and the value of the shares of all remaining investors, except Investor E, would remain the same.

An alternative to setting the fund up as an open-end fund would be to create a **closed-end fund** in which no new investment money is accepted into the fund. New investors invest by buying existing shares, and investors in the fund liquidate by selling their shares to other investors. Hence, the number of outstanding shares does not change. One consequence of this fixed share base is that, unlike open-end funds in which new shares are created and sold at the current net asset value per share, closed-end funds can sell for a premium or discount to net asset value depending on the demand for the shares.

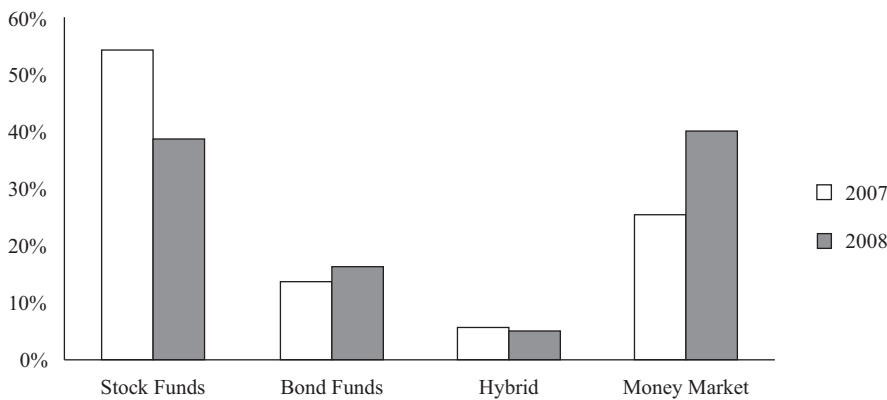
There are advantages and disadvantages to each type of fund. The open-end fund structure makes it easy to grow in size but creates pressure on the portfolio manager to manage the cash inflows and outflows. One consequence of this structure is the need to liquidate assets that the portfolio manager might not want to sell at the time to meet redemptions. Conversely, the inflows require finding new assets in which to invest. As such, open-end funds tend not to be fully invested but rather keep some cash for redemptions not covered by new investments. Closed-end funds do not have these problems, but they do have a limited ability to grow. Of the total net asset value of all US mutual funds at the end of 2008 (US\$9.6 trillion), only approximately 2 percent were in the form of closed-end funds.

In addition to open-end or closed-end funds, mutual funds can be classified as load or no-load funds. The primary difference between the two is whether the investor pays a sales charge (a “load”) to purchase, hold, or redeem shares in the fund. In the case of the **no-load fund**, there is no fee for investing in the fund or for redemption but there is an annual fee based on a percentage of the fund’s net asset value. **Load funds** are funds in which, in addition to the annual fee, a percentage fee is charged

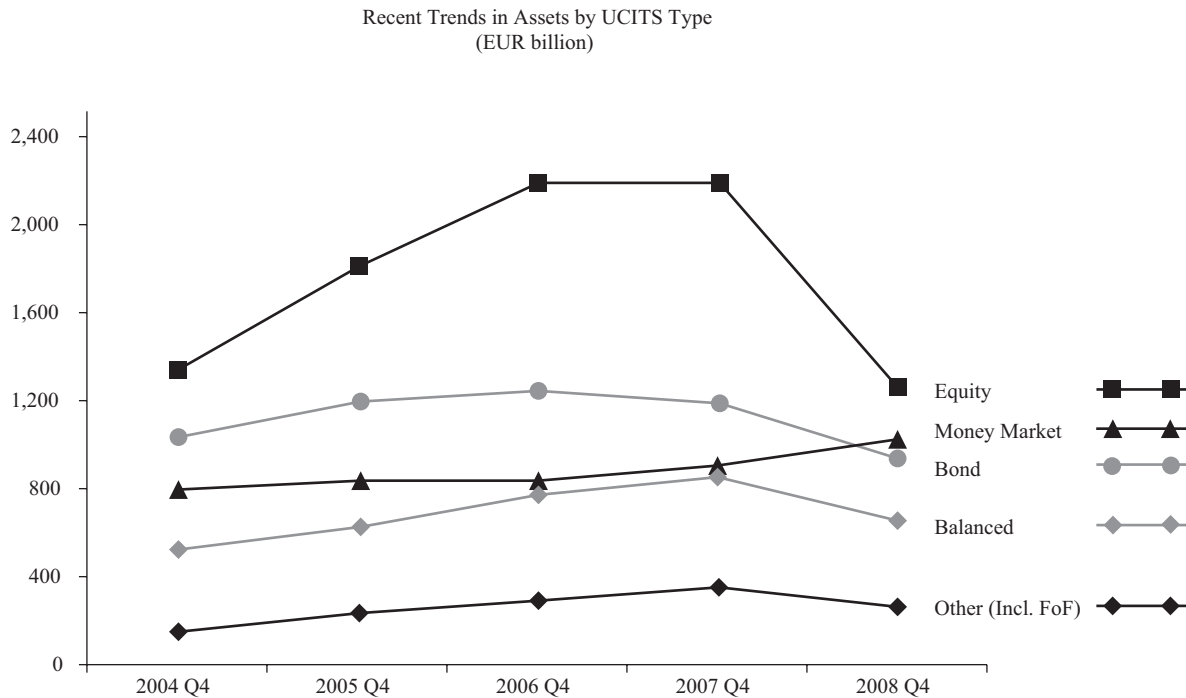
to invest in the fund and/or for redemptions from the fund. In addition, load funds are usually sold through retail brokers who receive part of the upfront fee. Overall, the number and importance of load funds has declined over time.

Mutual funds also differ in terms of the type of assets that they invest in. Broadly speaking, there are four different types of funds that are differentiated by broad asset type: stock funds (domestic and international), bond funds (taxable and non-taxable), hybrid or balanced funds (combination of stocks and bonds), and money market funds (taxable and non-taxable). The approximately US\$9.6 trillion in US mutual fund net asset value by asset type as of the end of 2008 is shown in Exhibit 19. A breakdown for the European mutual fund market is shown in Exhibit 20.

Exhibit 19 Mutual Funds Net Asset Value by Asset Type End of 2007 and 2008



Source: Investment Company Institute (2009a).

Exhibit 20 European Mutual Fund (UCITS) Assets

Note: UCITS (Undertakings for Collective Investments in Transferable Securities) are a set of regulations designed to help the European Union achieve a single funds market across Europe.

Source: EFAMA Quarterly Statistical Release No. 36 (Fourth Quarter of 2008). EFAMA is the European Fund and Asset Management Association.

Stock and money market funds make up the largest segments of the US mutual fund industry. Between 2007 and 2008, however, there was a dramatic shift in the relative proportion of net asset value in stock funds and money market funds. Although there was a significant increase in the total value of assets in money market funds (24 percent, or approximately US\$700 billion), the biggest change was in the value of total assets of stock funds, which fell by 43 percent or approximately US\$2.8 trillion. Close to 10 percent of this drop, or US\$280 billion, was the result of redemptions exceeding new investments, with the remaining of the decline attributed to the dramatic fall in share prices during 2008.¹³ A similar drop in equity assets is evident in the European data.

5.2 Types of Mutual Funds

The following section introduces the major types of mutual funds differentiated by the asset type that they invest in: money market funds, bond mutual funds, stock mutual funds, and hybrid or balanced funds.

5.2.1 Money Market Funds

Although money market funds have been a substitute for bank savings accounts since the early 1980s, they are not insured in the same way as bank deposits. At the end of 2008, the total net asset value of US money market funds was in excess of US\$3.8 trillion, with a further €1 trillion in European money market funds. In the United States,

¹³ These figures were extracted from data in Investment Company Institute (2009a).

there are two basic types of money market funds: taxable and tax-free. Taxable money market funds invest in high-quality, short-term corporate debt and federal government debt. Tax-free money market funds invest in short-term state and local government debt. At the end of 2008 in the United States, there were approximately 540 taxable funds with about US\$3.3 trillion in net asset value and approximately 250 tax-free money market funds with a total net asset value of about US\$490 billion. From an investor's point of view, these funds are essentially cash holdings. As such, the presumption of investors is that the net asset value of a money market fund is always US\$1.00 per share.

In September 2008 two large money market funds "broke the buck"; that is, the net asset value of the shares fell below US\$1.00 per share. This drop in value caused investors to question the safety of money market funds and resulted in a massive outflow of funds from money market funds. This outflow continued until the US Federal Reserve intervened to provide short-term insurance for some money market funds. This insurance, although similar to bank deposits, was limited in scope and time.

5.2.2 Bond Mutual Funds

A bond mutual fund is an investment fund consisting of a portfolio of individual bonds and, occasionally, preferred shares. The net asset value of the fund is the sum of the value of each bond in the portfolio divided by the number of shares. Investors in the mutual fund hold shares, which account for their pro-rata share or interest in the portfolio. The advantage is that an investor can invest in a bond fund for as little as US\$100, which provides a stake in a diversified bond portfolio in which each individual bond may cost between US\$10,000 and US\$100,000. The major difference between a bond mutual fund and a money market fund is the maturity of the underlying assets. In a money market fund the maturity is as short as overnight and rarely longer than 90 days. A bond mutual fund, however, holds bonds with maturities as short as one year and as long as 30 years. Exhibit 21 illustrates the general categories of bond mutual funds.¹⁴

Exhibit 21 Bond Mutual Funds

Type of Bond Mutual Fund	Securities Held
Global	Domestic and non-domestic government, corporate, and securitized debt
Government	Government bonds and other government-affiliated bonds
Corporate	Corporate debt
High yield	Below investment-grade corporate debt
Inflation protected	Inflation-protected government debt
National tax-free bonds	National tax-free bonds (e.g., US municipal bonds)

An example of a typical bond mutual fund is the T. Rowe Price Corporate Income Fund. Exhibit 22 shows the asset composition, credit quality, and maturity diversification for this bond mutual fund.

¹⁴ In the United States, judicial rulings on federal powers of taxation have created a distinction between (federally) taxable and (federally) tax-exempt bonds and a parallel distinction for US bond mutual funds.

Exhibit 22 Asset Composition of T. Rowe Price Corporate Income Fund As of 31 March 2009

Asset Composition		Credit Quality Diversification		Maturity Diversification	
Assets	% of Total	Bond Rating ^a	% of Total	Maturity (years)	% of Total
US corporate	78.7	AAA	7.1	0–1 year	3.7
Foreign bonds	18.4	AA	7.4	1–5 years	31.3
Cash	2.4	A	28.1	5–10 years	46.2
Other	0.5	BBB	48.8	10+ years	18.7
		BB	5.8		
		Other and not rated	0.3		
		Cash	2.4		

^a Bond rating is from Standard & Poor's. AAA represents the highest credit quality. Bonds rated BBB and above are considered to be investment-grade bonds. Bonds rated below BBB are non-investment-grade bonds and are also known as high-yield or junk bonds.

Source: T. Rowe Price (www.troweprice.com).

5.2.3 Stock Mutual Funds

Historically, the largest types of mutual funds based on market value of assets under management are stock or equity funds. At the end of the third quarter of 2008, the worldwide investment in stock mutual funds totaled around US\$8.6 trillion, with approximately US\$4 trillion of that in US stock mutual funds.

There are two types of stock mutual funds. The first is an actively managed fund in which the portfolio manager seeks outstanding performance through the selection of the appropriate stocks to be included in the portfolio. Passive management is followed by index funds that are very different from actively managed funds. Their goal is to match or track the performance of different indexes. The first index fund was introduced in 1976 by the Vanguard Group. At the end of 2008, index funds held approximately 13 percent of the total net asset value of stock mutual funds.¹⁵

There are several major differences between actively managed funds and index funds. First, management fees for actively managed funds are higher than for index funds. The higher fees for actively managed funds reflect its goal to outperform an index, whereas the index fund simply aims to match the return on the index. Higher fees are required to pay for the research conducted to actively select securities. A second difference is that the level of trading in an actively managed fund is much higher than in an index fund, which has obvious tax implications. Mutual funds are required to distribute all income and capital gains realized in the portfolio, so the actively managed fund tends to have more opportunity to realize capital gains. This results in higher taxes relative to an index fund, which uses a buy-and-hold strategy. Consequently, there is less buying and selling in an index fund and less likelihood of realizing capital gains distributions.

5.2.4 Hybrid/Balanced Funds

Hybrid or balanced funds are mutual funds that invest in both bonds and shares. These types of funds represent a small fraction of the total investment in US mutual funds but are more common in Europe. (See Exhibits 19 and 20.) These types of funds, however, are gaining popularity with the growth of lifecycle funds. These are funds that manage the asset mix based on a desired retirement date. For example, if an investor was 40 years old in 2008 and planned to retire at the age of 67, he could invest in a mutual fund with a target date of 2035 and the fund would manage the appropriate

asset mix over the next 27 years. In 2008 it might be 90 percent invested in shares and 10 percent in bonds. As time passes, however, the fund would gradually change the mix of shares and bonds to reflect the appropriate mix given the time to retirement.

5.3 Other Investment Products

In addition to mutual funds, a number of pooled investment products are increasingly popular in meeting the individual needs of clients. The following section introduces these products: exchange traded funds, separately managed accounts, hedge funds, and buyout and **venture capital funds**.

5.3.1 Exchange Traded Funds¹⁶

Exchange traded funds (ETFs) combine features of closed-end and open-end mutual funds. ETFs trade like closed-end mutual funds; however, like open-end funds, ETFs' prices track net asset value due to an innovative redemption procedure. ETFs are created by fund sponsors who determine which securities will be included in the basket of securities. To obtain the basket, the fund sponsors contact an institutional investor who deposits the securities with the fund sponsor. In return, the institutional investor receives creation units that typically represent between 50,000 and 100,000 ETF shares. These shares can then be sold to the public by the institutional investor. The institutional investor can redeem the securities held in the ETF by returning the number of shares in the original creation unit. This process prevents meaningful premiums or discounts from net asset value. Closed-end mutual funds are predominantly actively managed stock or bond funds whereas ETFs are typically index funds. The first ETF was created in the United States in 1993 and in 1999 in Europe. At the end of 2017, there were nearly 1,800 ETFs available in the United States with a total net asset value of over US\$3 trillion. A breakdown of the types of ETFs traded in the United States is shown in Exhibit 23.

The major difference between an index mutual fund and an ETF is that an investor investing in an index mutual fund buys the fund shares directly from the fund and all investments are settled at the net asset value. In the case of an ETF, however, investors buy the shares from other investors just as if they were buying or selling shares of stock. This setup includes the opportunity to short the shares or even purchase the shares on margin. The price an investor pays is based on the prevailing price at the time the transaction was made. This price may or may not be equal to the net asset value at the time, but it represents the price at that time for a willing buyer and seller. In practice, the market price of the ETF is likely to be close to the net asset value of the underlying investments.

Other main differences between an index mutual fund and an index ETF are transaction costs, transaction price, treatment of dividends, and the minimum investment amount. Expenses are lower for ETFs but, unlike mutual funds, investors do incur brokerage costs. Also as noted above, all purchases and redemptions in a mutual fund take place at the same price at the close of business. ETFs are constantly traded throughout the business day, and as such each purchase or sale takes place at the prevailing market price at that time. In the case of the ETF, dividends are paid out to the shareholders whereas index mutual funds usually reinvest the dividends. Hence, there is a direct cash flow from the ETF that is not there with the index mutual fund. Depending on the investor, this cash flow may or may not be desirable. Note that the tax implications are the same with either fund type. Finally, the minimum required investment in an ETF is usually smaller. Investors can purchase as little as one share in an ETF, which is usually not the case with an index mutual fund.

¹⁶ For more detailed information on ETFs, see Hill, Nadig, and Hougan (2015).

Exhibit 23 Types of Exchange Traded Funds (ETFs) October 2017

Type of ETF	October 2017	Totals		Asset Class by Type of ETF as a Percentage of Total ETF Assets under Management											
		(in US\$ trillions)		Total Market	Large Cap	Mid-Cap	Broad-Based, Other	Commodities	Consumer	Financial	Natural Resources	Real Estate	Technology	Utilities	Other Sectors
Broad-based equity	46.6%	\$1,508.6		4.5%	26.7%	5.1%	5.2%								
Sector															
Global/intern.	13.1%	423.9		2.1%	0.9%	1.8%	1.7%	1.7%	1.7%	1.7%	2.0%	1.6%	1.4%		
				Global	International	Regional	Single Country	Emerging Markets							
	23.3%	753.4		2.4%	10.2%	2.3%	1.6%	6.8%							
Hybrid				Hybrid											
	0.2%	7.4		0.2%											
Bond															
				Government Bond	Municipal Bond	Corporate Bond	High Yield Bonds	International Bond							
	16.8%	543.0		3.6%	0.9%	8.9%	2.0%	1.3%							
Totals	100.0%	\$3,236.3													

Source: Investment Company Institute, "ETF Assets and Net Issuance, October 2017."

ETFs are often cited as having tax advantages over index mutual funds. The advantage is not related to the dividends but rather to capital gains. As long as there is no sale of assets in either fund, no taxable capital gains would be realized by investors. It is possible, however, that because of the flow of funds into and out of index mutual funds, these funds would have a greater likelihood of generating taxable capital gains for investors. Overall, it is not clear how much of an advantage there is or if there is any advantage at all.

5.3.2 Separately Managed Accounts

A fund management service for institutions or individual investors with substantial assets is the **separately managed account (SMA)**, which is also commonly referred to as a “managed account,” “wrap account,” or “individually managed account”. An SMA is an investment portfolio managed exclusively for the benefit of an individual or institution. The account is managed by an individual investment professional to meet the specific needs of the client in relation to investment objectives, risk tolerance, and tax situation. In an SMA, the individual shares are held directly by the investor; and in return for annual fees, an individual can receive personalized investment advice.

The key difference between an SMA and a mutual fund is that the assets are owned directly by the individual. Therefore, unlike a mutual fund, the investor has control over which assets are bought and sold and the timing of the transactions. Moreover, in a mutual fund, there is no consideration given to the tax position of the individual asset. In an SMA, the transactions can take into account the specific tax needs of the investor. The main disadvantage of an SMA is that the required minimum investment is usually much higher than is the case with a mutual fund. Usually, the minimum investment is between US\$100,000 and US\$500,000.

Large institutions often use segregated accounts, which means their investments are held in an account on their behalf and managed by a portfolio manager or team. They can also use mutual funds. The decision on which approach to take often depends on the value of assets involved. Larger amounts of assets are more likely to be managed on a segregated basis.

5.3.3 Hedge Funds

The origin of **hedge funds**¹⁷ can be traced back as far as 1949 to a fund managed by A.W. Jones & Co. It offered a strategy of a non-correlated offset to the “long-only” position typical of most portfolios. From this start emerged a whole new industry of hedge funds. Hedge fund strategies generally involve a significant amount of risk, driven in large measure by the liberal use of leverage and complexity. They also often involve the extensive use of derivatives.

A key difference between hedge funds and mutual funds is that the vast majority of hedge funds are exempt from many of the reporting requirements for the typical public investment company. In the United States, investment companies do not have to register with the US Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) if they have 100 or fewer investors [Section 3(c)1 of the Investment Company Act of 1940] or if the investor base is greater than 100 but less than 500 “qualified purchasers”¹⁸ [Section 3(c)7 of the Investment Company Act of 1940]. In order to qualify for the exemption, hedge funds cannot be offered for sale to the general public; they can only be sold via private placement. In addition, Regulation D of the Securities Act of 1933 requires

¹⁷ For more information on hedge funds, see the Level I CFA Program curriculum reading “Introduction to Alternative Investments.”

¹⁸ A “qualified purchaser” is an individual with over US\$5 million in investment assets.

that hedge funds be offered solely to “accredited investors.”¹⁹ The net effect of these regulations is that the hedge fund investor base is generally very different from that of the typical mutual fund.

From its start in 1955 to the end of 2008, the hedge fund industry has grown to over 9,200 hedge funds with approximately US\$1.4 trillion in assets.²⁰ Not all hedge funds are the same, however. Many different strategies are employed. A few examples²¹ include:

- **Convertible Arbitrage**—Buying such securities as convertible bonds that can be converted into shares at a fixed price and simultaneously selling the stock short.
- **Dedicated Short Bias**—Taking more short positions than long positions.
- **Emerging Markets**—Investing in companies in emerging markets by purchasing corporate or sovereign securities.
- **Equity Market Neutral**—Attempting to eliminate the overall market movement by going short overvalued securities and going long a nearly equal value of undervalued securities.
- **Event Driven**—Attempting to take advantage of specific company events. Event-driven strategies take advantage of transaction announcements and other one-time events.
- **Fixed-Income Arbitrage**—Attempting to profit from arbitrage opportunities in interest rate securities. When using a fixed-income arbitrage strategy, the investor assumes opposing positions in the market to take advantage of small price discrepancies while limiting interest rate risk.
- **Global Macro**—Trying to capture shifts between global economies, usually using derivatives on currencies or interest rates.
- **Long/Short**—Buying long equities that are expected to increase in value and selling short equities that are expected to decrease in value. Unlike the equity market neutral strategy, this strategy attempts to profit from market movements, not just from identifying overvalued and undervalued equities.

The list above is not all-inclusive; there are many other strategies. Hedge funds are not readily available to all investors. They require a minimum investment that is typically US\$250,000 for new funds and US\$1 million or more for well-established funds. In addition, they usually have restricted liquidity that could be in the form of allowing only quarterly withdrawals or having a fixed-term commitment of up to five years. Management fees are not only a fixed percentage of the funds under management; managers also collect fees based on performance. A typical arrangement would include a 1 percent to 2 percent fee on assets under management and 20 percent of the outperformance as compared to a stated benchmark.

¹⁹ An “accredited individual” investor must have a minimum net worth of US\$1 million or a minimum individual income of US\$200,000 in each of the two most recent years with the expectation of having the same income in the current year. An accredited institution must have a minimum of US\$5 million in invested assets.

²⁰ Both the number of hedge funds and the value of assets under management fell dramatically in the second half of 2008. According to Hedge Fund Research, Inc., during 2008 the total number of funds fell by 8 percent and the value of assets under management fell from approximately US\$1.9 trillion to US\$1.4 trillion at the end of 2008.

²¹ In the examples, “long” refers to owning the security and “selling short” refers to a strategy of borrowing shares and converting them to cash with the intention of repaying the shares at a later date by buying them back at a lower price. Long positions have a positive return when the price of the security increases, and short positions have a positive return when the price of the security falls.

5.3.4 Buyout and Venture Capital Funds

Two areas that have grown considerably over the last 15 years have been buyout and venture capital funds. Both take equity positions but in different types of companies. An essential feature of both is that they are not passive investors, and as such, they play a very active role in the management of the company. Furthermore, the equity they hold is private rather than traded on public markets. In addition, neither intends to hold the equity for the long term; from the beginning, both plan for an exit strategy that will allow them to liquidate their positions. Both venture capital funds and private equity funds operate in a manner similar to hedge funds. A minimum investment is required, there is limited liquidity during some fixed time period, and management fees are based not only on funds under management but also on the performance of the fund.

Buyout Funds The essence of a **buyout fund** is that it buys all the shares of a public company and, by holding all the shares, the company becomes private. The early **leveraged buyouts** (LBOs) of the mid-1960s through the early 1990s created the modern private equity firm. These were highly levered transactions that used the company's cash flow to pay down the debt and build the equity position. In its current form, private equity firms raise money specifically for the purpose of buying public companies, converting them to private companies, and simultaneously restructuring the company. The purchase is usually financed through a significant increase in the amount of debt issued by the company. A typical financing would include 25 percent equity and 75 percent debt in one form or another. The high level of debt is also accompanied by a restructuring of the operations of the company. The key is to increase the cash flow. Most private equity funds do not intend to hold the company for the long run because their goal is to exit the investment in three to five years either through an initial public offering (IPO) or a sale to another company. Generally, a private equity firm makes a few very large investments.

Venture Capital Funds Venture capital differs from a buyout fund in that a venture capital firm does not buy established companies but rather provides financing for companies in their start-up phase. Venture capital funds play a very active role in the management of the companies in which they invest; beyond just providing money, they provide close oversight and advice. Similar to buyout funds, venture capital funds typically have a finite investment horizon and, depending on the type of business, make the investment with the intent to exit in three to five years. These funds make a large number of small investments with the expectation that only a small number will pay off. The assumption is that the one that does pay off pays off big enough to compensate for the ones that do not pay off.

SUMMARY

- In this reading we have discussed how a portfolio approach to investing could be preferable to simply investing in individual securities.
- The problem with focusing on individual securities is that this approach may lead to the investor “putting all her eggs in one basket.”
- Portfolios provide important diversification benefits, allowing risk to be reduced without necessarily affecting or compromising return.

- We have outlined the differing investment needs of various types of individual and institutional investors. Institutional clients include defined benefit pension plans, endowments and foundations, banks, insurance companies, investment companies, and sovereign wealth funds.
- Understanding the needs of your client and creating an investment policy statement represent the first steps of the portfolio management process. Those steps are followed by security analysis, portfolio construction, monitoring, and performance measurement stages.
- We also discussed the different types of investment products that investors can use to create their portfolio. These range from mutual funds, to exchange traded funds, to hedge funds, to private equity funds.

REFERENCES

- Acharya, Shanta, and Elroy Dimson. 2007. *Endowment Asset Management: Investment Strategies in Oxford and Cambridge*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Hill, Joanne M., Dave Nadig, and Matt Hougan. 2015. *A Comprehensive Guide to Exchange-Traded Funds (ETFs)*. Charlottesville, VA: The CFA Institute Research Foundation.
- Investment Company Institute. 2007. "A Guide to Exchange-Traded Funds": (www.ici.org/investor_ed/brochures/bro_etf).
- Investment Company Institute. 2009a. "Trends in Mutual Fund Investing, December 2008" (20 March).
- Investment Company Institute. 2009b. "Worldwide Mutual Fund Assets and Flows, Third Quarter 2008" (5 May).
- Lintner, John. 1965. "The Valuation of Risk Assets and the Selection of Risky Investments in Stock Portfolios and Capital Budgets." *Review of Economics and Statistics*, vol. 47, no. 1 (February):13–37.
- Mamudi, Sam. 2009. "More Investors Ditch Market-Beating Attempts, Embrace Index Funds." *FiLife* (in partnership with the *Wall Street Journal*; 27 February): <http://www.filife.com/stories/more-investors-ditch-market-beating-attempts-embrace-index-funds>.
- Markowitz, Harry M. 1952. "Portfolio Selection." *Journal of Finance*, vol. 7, no. 1 (March):77–91.
- Sharpe, William F. 1964. "Capital Asset Prices: A Theory of Market Equilibrium under Conditions of Risk." *Journal of Finance*, vol. 19, no. 3 (September):425–442.
- Singletery, Michelle. 2001. "Cautionary Tale of an Enron Employee Who Went for Broke." *Seattlepi.com* (10 December): http://www.seattlepi.com/money/49894_singletery10.shtml.
- Treynor, J. L. 1961. "Toward a Theory of Market Value of Risky Assets." Unpublished manuscript.

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

- 1 Investors should use a portfolio approach to:
 - A reduce risk.
 - B monitor risk.
 - C eliminate risk.
- 2 Which of the following is the *best* reason for an investor to be concerned with the composition of a portfolio?
 - A Risk reduction.
 - B Downside risk protection.
 - C Avoidance of investment disasters.
- 3 With respect to the formation of portfolios, which of the following statements is *most accurate*?
 - A Portfolios affect risk less than returns.
 - B Portfolios affect risk more than returns.
 - C Portfolios affect risk and returns equally.
- 4 Which of the following institutions will *on average* have the greatest need for liquidity?
 - A Banks.
 - B Investment companies.
 - C Non-life insurance companies.
- 5 Which of the following institutional investors will *most likely* have the longest time horizon?
 - A Defined benefit plan.
 - B University endowment.
 - C Life insurance company.
- 6 A defined benefit plan with a large number of retirees is *likely* to have a high need for
 - A income.
 - B liquidity.
 - C insurance.
- 7 Which of the following institutional investors is *most likely* to manage investments in mutual funds?
 - A Insurance companies.
 - B Investment companies.
 - C University endowments.
- 8 With respect to the portfolio management process, the asset allocation is determined in the:
 - A planning step.
 - B feedback step.
 - C execution step.
- 9 The planning step of the portfolio management process is *least likely* to include an assessment of the client's

- A securities.
 - B constraints.
 - C risk tolerance.
- 10 With respect to the portfolio management process, the rebalancing of a portfolio's composition is *most likely* to occur in the:
- A planning step.
 - B feedback step.
 - C execution step.
- 11 An analyst gathers the following information for the asset allocations of three portfolios:

Portfolio	Fixed Income (%)	Equity (%)	Alternative Assets (%)
1	25	60	15
2	60	25	15
3	15	60	25

- Which of the portfolios is *most likely* appropriate for a client who has a high degree of risk tolerance?
- A Portfolio 1.
 - B Portfolio 2.
 - C Portfolio 3.
- 12 Which of the following investment products is *most likely* to trade at their net asset value per share?
- A Exchange traded funds.
 - B Open-end mutual funds.
 - C Closed-end mutual funds.
- 13 Which of the following financial products is *least likely* to have a capital gain distribution?
- A Exchange traded funds.
 - B Open-end mutual funds.
 - C Closed-end mutual funds.
- 14 Which of the following forms of pooled investments is subject to the *least* amount of regulation?
- A Hedge funds.
 - B Exchange traded funds.
 - C Closed-end mutual funds.
- 15 Which of the following pooled investments is *most likely* characterized by a few large investments?
- A Hedge funds.
 - B Buyout funds.
 - C Venture capital funds.

SOLUTIONS

- 1 A is correct. Combining assets into a portfolio should reduce the portfolio's volatility. Specifically, "individuals and institutions should hold portfolios to reduce risk." As illustrated in the reading, however, risk reduction may not be as great during a period of dramatic economic change.
- 2 A is correct. Combining assets into a portfolio should reduce the portfolio's volatility. The portfolio approach does not necessarily provide downside protection or guarantee that the portfolio always will avoid losses.
- 3 B is correct. As illustrated in the reading, portfolios reduce risk more than they increase returns.
- 4 A is correct. The excess reserves invested by banks need to be relatively liquid. Although investment companies and non-life insurance companies have high liquidity needs, the liquidity need for banks is on average the greatest.
- 5 B is correct. Most foundations and endowments are established with the intent of having perpetual lives. Although defined benefit plans and life insurance companies have portfolios with a long time horizon, they are not perpetual.
- 6 A is correct. Income is necessary to meet the cash flow obligation to retirees. Although defined benefit plans have a need for income, the need for liquidity typically is quite low. A retiree may need life insurance; however, a defined benefit plan does not need insurance.
- 7 B is correct. Investment companies manage investments in mutual funds. Although endowments and insurance companies may own mutual funds, they do not issue or redeem shares of mutual funds.
- 8 C is correct. The client's objectives and constraints are established in the investment policy statement and are used to determine the client's target asset allocation, which occurs in the execution step of the portfolio management process.
- 9 A is correct. Securities are analyzed in the execution step. In the planning step, a client's objectives and constraints are used to develop the investment policy statement.
- 10 B is correct. Portfolio monitoring and rebalancing occurs in the feedback step of the portfolio management process.
- 11 C is correct. Portfolio 3 has the same equity exposure as Portfolio 1 and has a higher exposure to alternative assets, which have greater volatility (as discussed in the section of the reading comparing the endowments from Yale University and the University of Virginia).
- 12 B is correct. Open-end funds trade at their net asset value per share, whereas closed-end funds and exchange traded funds can trade at a premium or a discount.
- 13 A is correct. Exchange traded funds do not have capital gain distributions. If an investor sells shares of an ETF (or open-end mutual fund or closed-end mutual fund), the investor may have a capital gain or loss on the shares sold; however, the gain (or loss) from the sale is not a distribution.
- 14 A is correct. Hedge funds are currently exempt from the reporting requirements of a typical public investment company.
- 15 B is correct. Buyout funds or private equity firms make only a few large investments in private companies with the intent of selling the restructured companies in three to five years. Venture capital funds also have a short time horizon; however, these funds consist of many small investments in companies with the expectation that only a few will have a large payoff (and that most will fail).

READING

39

Portfolio Risk and Return: Part I

by Vijay Singal, PhD, CFA

Vijay Singal, PhD, CFA, is at Virginia Tech (USA).

LEARNING OUTCOMES

<i>Mastery</i>	<i>The candidate should be able to:</i>
<input type="checkbox"/>	a. calculate and interpret major return measures and describe their appropriate uses;
<input type="checkbox"/>	b. describe characteristics of the major asset classes that investors consider in forming portfolios;
<input type="checkbox"/>	c. calculate and interpret the mean, variance, and covariance (or correlation) of asset returns based on historical data;
<input type="checkbox"/>	d. explain risk aversion and its implications for portfolio selection;
<input type="checkbox"/>	e. calculate and interpret portfolio standard deviation;
<input type="checkbox"/>	f. describe the effect on a portfolio's risk of investing in assets that are less than perfectly correlated;
<input type="checkbox"/>	g. describe and interpret the minimum-variance and efficient frontiers of risky assets and the global minimum-variance portfolio;
<input type="checkbox"/>	h. explain the selection of an optimal portfolio, given an investor's utility (or risk aversion) and the capital allocation line.

INTRODUCTION

1

Construction of an optimal portfolio is an important objective for an investor. In this reading, we will explore the process of examining the risk and return characteristics of individual assets, creating all possible portfolios, selecting the most efficient portfolios, and ultimately choosing the optimal portfolio tailored to the individual in question.

During the process of constructing the optimal portfolio, several factors and investment characteristics are considered. The most important of those factors are risk and return of the individual assets under consideration. Correlations among individual assets along with risk and return are important determinants of portfolio risk. Creating a portfolio for an investor requires an understanding of the risk profile of the investor.

Although we will not discuss the process of determining risk aversion for individuals or institutional investors, it is necessary to obtain such information for making an informed decision. In this reading, we will explain the broad types of investors and how their risk–return preferences can be formalized to select the optimal portfolio from among the infinite portfolios contained in the investment opportunity set.

The reading is organized as follows: Section 2 discusses the investment characteristics of assets. In particular, we show the various types of returns and risks, their computation and their applicability to the selection of appropriate assets for inclusion in a portfolio. Section 3 discusses risk aversion and how indifference curves, which incorporate individual preferences, can be constructed. The indifference curves are then applied to the selection of an optimal portfolio using two risky assets. Section 4 provides an understanding and computation of portfolio risk. The role of correlation and diversification of portfolio risk are examined in detail. Section 5 begins with the risky assets available to investors and constructs a large number of risky portfolios. It illustrates the process of narrowing the choices to an efficient set of risky portfolios before identifying the optimal risky portfolio. The risky portfolio is combined with investor risk preferences to generate the optimal risky portfolio. A summary concludes this reading.

2

INVESTMENT CHARACTERISTICS OF ASSETS

Financial assets are generally defined by their risk and return characteristics. Comparison along these two dimensions simplifies the process of selecting from millions of assets and makes financial assets substitutable. These characteristics distinguish financial assets from physical assets, which can be defined along multiple dimensions. For example, wine is characterized by its grapes, aroma, sweetness, alcohol content, and age, among other factors. The price of a television depends on picture quality, manufacturer, screen size, number and quality of speakers, and so on, none of which are similar to the characteristics for wine. Therein lies one of the biggest differences between financial and physical assets. Although financial assets are generally claims on real assets, their commonality across two dimensions (risk and return) simplifies the issue and makes them easier to value than real assets. In this section, we will compute, evaluate, and compare various measures of return and risk.

2.1 Return

Financial assets normally generate two types of return for investors. First, they may provide periodic income through cash dividends or interest payments. Second, the price of a financial asset can increase or decrease, leading to a capital gain or loss.

Certain financial assets, through design or choice, provide return through only one of these mechanisms. For example, investors in non-dividend-paying stocks, such as Google or Baidu, obtain their return from capital appreciation only. Similarly, you could also own or have a claim to assets that only generate periodic income. For example, defined benefit pension plans, retirement annuities, and reverse mortgages¹ make income payments as long as you live.

¹ A reverse mortgage is a type of loan that allows individuals to convert part of their home equity into cash. The loan is usually disbursed in a stream of payments made to the homeowner by the lender. As long as the homeowner lives in the home, they need not be repaid during the lifetime of the homeowner. The loan, however, can be paid off at any time by the borrower not necessarily by selling the home.

You should be aware that returns reported for stock indexes are sometimes misleading because most index levels only capture price appreciation and do not adjust for cash dividends unless the stock index is labeled “total return” or “net dividends reinvested.” For example, as reported by Yahoo! Finance, the S&P 500 Index of US stocks was at 903.25 on 31 December 2008. Similarly, Yahoo! Finance reported that the index closed on 30 July 2002 at 902.78, implying a return of close to 0 percent over the approximately six-and-a-half-year period. The results are very different, however, if the total return S&P 500 Index is considered. The index was at 1283.62 on 30 July 2002 and had risen 13.2 percent to 1452.98 on 31 December 2008, giving an annual return of 1.9 percent. The difference in the two calculations arises from the fact that index levels reported by Yahoo! Finance and other reporting agencies do not include cash dividends, which are an important part of the total return. Thus, it is important to recognize and account for income from investments.

In the following subsection, we consider various types of returns, their computation, and their application.

2.1.1 Holding Period Return

Returns can be measured over a single period or over multiple periods. Single period returns are straightforward because there is only one way to calculate them. Multiple period returns, however, can be calculated in various ways and it is important to be aware of these differences to avoid confusion.

A **holding period return** is the return earned from holding an asset for a single specified period of time. The period may be 1 day, 1 week, 1 month, 5 years, or any specified period. If the asset (bond, stock, etc.) is bought now, time $(t - 1)$, at a price of 100 and sold later, say at time t , at a price of 105 with no dividends or other income, then the holding period return is 5 percent $[(105 - 100)/100]$. If the asset also pays an income of 2 units at time t , then the total return is 7 percent. This return can be generalized and shown as a mathematical expression:

$$\begin{aligned} R &= \frac{P_t - P_{t-1} + D_t}{P_{t-1}} = \frac{P_t - P_{t-1}}{P_{t-1}} + \frac{D_t}{P_{t-1}} = \text{Capital gain} + \text{Dividend yield} \\ &= \frac{P_T + D_T}{P_0} - 1 \end{aligned}$$

In the above expression, P is the price and D is the dividend. The subscript indicates the time of that price or dividend, $t - 1$, is the beginning of the period and t is the end of the period. The following two observations are important.

- We computed a capital gain of 5 percent and a dividend yield of 2 percent in the above example. For ease of illustration, we assumed that the dividend is paid at time t . If the dividend was received any time before t , our holding period return would have been higher because we would have earned a return by putting the dividend in the bank for the remainder of the period.
- Return can be expressed in decimals (0.07), fractions (7/100), or as a percent (7%). They are all equivalent.

The holding period return can be computed for a period longer than one year. For example, you may need to compute a three-year holding period return from three annual returns. In that case, the holding period return is computed by compounding the three annual returns: $R = [(1 + R_1) \times (1 + R_2) \times (1 + R_3)] - 1$, where R_1 , R_2 , and R_3 are the three annual returns.

In this and succeeding parts of Section 2.1, we consider the aggregation of several single period returns.

2.1.2 Arithmetic or Mean Return

When assets have returns for multiple holding periods, it is necessary to aggregate those returns into one overall return for ease of comparison and understanding. It is also possible to compute the return for a long or an unusual holding period. Such returns, however, may be difficult to interpret. For example, a return of 455 percent earned by AstraZeneca PLC over the last 16 years (1993 to 2008) may not be meaningful unless all other returns are computed for the same period. Therefore, most holding period returns are reported as daily, monthly, or annual returns.

Aggregating returns across several holding periods becomes a challenge and can lead to different conclusions depending on the method of aggregation. The remainder of this section is designed to present various ways of computing average returns as well as discussing their applicability.

The simplest way to compute the return is to take the simple average of all holding period returns. Thus, three annual returns of -50 percent, 35 percent, and 27 percent will give us an average of 4 percent per year $= \left(\frac{-50\% + 35\% + 27\%}{3} \right)$. The arithmetic

return is easy to compute and has known statistical properties, such as standard deviation. We can calculate the arithmetic return and its standard deviation to determine how dispersed the observations are around the mean or if the mean return is statistically different from zero.

In general, the arithmetic or mean return is denoted by \bar{R}_i and given by the following equation for asset i , where R_{it} is the return in period t and T is the total number of periods:

$$\bar{R}_i = \frac{R_{i1} + R_{i2} + \dots + R_{iT-1} + R_{iT}}{T} = \frac{1}{T} \sum_{t=1}^T R_{it}$$

2.1.3 Geometric Mean Return

The arithmetic mean return is the average of the returns earned on a unit of investment at the beginning of each holding period. It assumes that the amount invested at the beginning of each period is the same, similar to the concept of calculating simple interest. However, because the base amount changes each year (the previous year's earnings needs to be added to or "compounded" to the beginning value of the investment), a holding or geometric period return may be quite different from the return implied by the arithmetic return. The geometric mean return assumes that the investment amount is not reset at the beginning of each year and, in effect, accounts for the compounding of returns. Basically, the geometric mean reflects a "buy-and-hold" strategy, whereas the arithmetic reflects a constant dollar investment at the beginning of each time period.²

² A buy-and-hold strategy assumes that the money invested initially grows or declines with time depending on whether a particular period's return is positive or negative. On the one hand, a geometric return compounds the returns and captures changes in values of the initial amount invested. On the other hand, arithmetic return assumes that we start with the same amount of money every period without compounding the return earned in a prior period.

A geometric mean return provides a more accurate representation of the growth in portfolio value over a given time period than does an arithmetic mean return. In general, the geometric mean return is denoted by \bar{R}_{Gi} and given by the following equation for asset i :

$$\begin{aligned}\bar{R}_{Gi} &= \sqrt[T]{(1 + R_{i1}) \times (1 + R_{i2}) \times \dots \times (1 + R_{i,T-1}) \times (1 + R_{iT})} - 1 \\ &= \sqrt[T]{\prod_{t=1}^T (1 + R_{it})} - 1\end{aligned}$$

where R_{it} is the return in period t and T is the total number of periods.

In the example in Section 2.1.2, we calculated the arithmetic mean to be 4 percent. Exhibit 1 shows the actual return for each year and the actual amount at the end of each year using actual returns. Beginning with an initial investment of €1.0000, we will have €0.8573 at the end of the three-year period as shown in the third column. Note that we compounded the returns because, unless otherwise stated, we receive return on the amount at the end of the prior year. That is, we will receive a return of 35 percent in the second year on the amount at the end of the first year, which is only €0.5000, not the initial amount of €1.0000. Let us compare the actual amount at the end of the three-year period, €0.8573, with the amount we get using an annual arithmetic mean return of 4 percent calculated above. The year-end amounts are shown in the fourth column using the arithmetic return of 4 percent. At the end of the three-year period, €1 will be worth €1.1249 ($=1.0000 \times 1.04^3$). This ending amount of €1.1249 is much larger than the actual amount of €0.8573. Clearly, the calculated arithmetic return is greater than the actual return. In general, the arithmetic return is biased upward unless the actual holding period returns are equal. The bias in arithmetic mean returns is particularly severe if holding period returns are a mix of both positive and negative returns, as in the example.

For our example and using the above formula, the geometric mean return per year is -5.0 percent, compared with an arithmetic mean return of 4.0 percent. The last column of Exhibit 1 shows that using the geometric return of -5.0 percent generates a value of €0.8574 at the end of the three-year period, which is very close to the actual value of €0.8573. The small difference in ending values is the result of a slight approximation used in computing the geometric return of -5.0 percent. Because of the effect of compounding, the geometric mean return is always less than or equal to the arithmetic mean return, $\bar{R}_{Gi} \leq \bar{R}_i$, unless there is no variation in returns, in which case they are equal.

Exhibit 1

	Actual Return for the Year (%)	Year-End Actual Amount	Year-End Amount Using Arithmetic Return of 4%	Year-End Amount Using Geometric Return of -5%
Year 0		€1.0000	€1.0000	€1.0000
Year 1	-50	0.5000	1.0400	0.9500
Year 2	35	0.6750	1.0816	0.9025
Year 3	27	0.8573	1.1249	0.8574

2.1.4 Money-Weighted Return or Internal Rate of Return

The above return computations do not account for the amount of money invested in different periods. It matters to an investor how much money was invested in each of the three years. If she had invested €10,000 in the first year, €1,000 in the second year, and €1,000 in the third year, then the return of –50 percent in the first year significantly hurts her. On the other hand, if she had invested only €100 in the first year, the effect of the –50 percent return is drastically reduced.

The **money-weighted return** accounts for the money invested and provides the investor with information on the return she earns on her actual investment. The money-weighted return and its calculation are similar to the **internal rate of return** and the yield to maturity. Just like the internal rate of return, amounts invested are cash outflows from the investor's perspective and amounts returned or withdrawn by the investor, or the money that remains at the end of an investment cycle, is a cash inflow for the investor.

The money-weighted return can be illustrated most effectively with an example. In this example, we use the actual returns from the previous example. Assume that the investor invests €100 in a mutual fund at the beginning of the first year, adds another €950 at the beginning of the second year, and withdraws €350 at the end of the second year. The cash flows are shown in Exhibit 2.

Exhibit 2

Year	1	2	3
Balance from previous year	€0	€50	€1,000
New investment by the investor (cash inflow for the mutual fund) at the start of the year	100	950	0
Net balance at the beginning of year	100	1,000	1,000
Investment return for the year	–50%	35%	27%
Investment gain (loss)	–50	350	270
Withdrawal by the investor (cash outflow for the mutual fund) at the end of the year	0	–350	0
Balance at the end of year	€50	€1,000	€1,270

The internal rate of return is the discount rate at which the sum of present values of these cash flows will equal zero. In general, the equation may be expressed as follows, where T is the number of periods, CF_t is the cash flow at time t , and IRR is the internal rate of return or the money-weighted rate of return:

$$\sum_{t=0}^T \frac{CF_t}{(1 + \text{IRR})^t} = 0$$

A cash flow can be positive or negative; a positive cash flow is an inflow where money flows to the investor, whereas a negative cash flow is an outflow where money flows away from the investor. We can compute the internal rate of return by using the above equation. The flows are expressed as follows, where each cash inflow or outflow occurs at the end of each year. Thus, CF_0 refers to the cash flow at the end of Year 0

or beginning of Year 1, and CF_3 refers to the cash flow at end of Year 3 or beginning of Year 4. Because cash flows are being discounted to the present—that is, end of Year 0 or beginning of Year 1—the period of discounting CF_0 is zero.

$$CF_0 = -100$$

$$CF_1 = -950$$

$$CF_2 = +350$$

$$CF_3 = +1,270$$

$$\begin{aligned} & \frac{CF_0}{(1 + IRR)^0} + \frac{CF_1}{(1 + IRR)^1} + \frac{CF_2}{(1 + IRR)^2} + \frac{CF_3}{(1 + IRR)^3} \\ &= \frac{-100}{1} + \frac{-950}{(1 + IRR)^1} + \frac{+350}{(1 + IRR)^2} + \frac{+1270}{(1 + IRR)^3} = 0 \end{aligned}$$

$$IRR = 26.11\%$$

$IRR = 26.11\%$ is the internal rate of return, or the money-weighted rate of return, which tells the investor what she earned on the actual euros invested for the entire period. This return is much greater than the arithmetic and geometric mean returns because only a small amount was invested when the mutual fund's return was -50 percent.

Although the money-weighted return is an accurate measure of what the investor actually earned on the money invested, it is limited in its applicability to other situations. For example, it does not allow for return comparison between different individuals or different investment opportunities. Two investors in the *same* mutual fund may have different money-weighted returns because they invested different amounts in different years.

2.1.5 Comparison of Returns

The previous subsections have introduced a number of return measures. The following example illustrates the computation, comparison, and applicability of each measure.

EXAMPLE 1

Computation of Returns

Ulli Lohrmann and his wife, Suzanne Lohrmann, are planning for retirement and want to compare the past performance of a few mutual funds they are considering for investment. They believe that a comparison over a five-year period would be appropriate. They are given the following information about the Rhein Valley Superior Fund that they are considering.

Year	Assets Under Management at the Beginning of Year (€)	Net Return (%)
1	30 million	15
2	45 million	-5
3	20 million	10
4	25 million	15
5	35 million	3

The Lohrmanns are interested in aggregating this information for ease of comparison with other funds.

- 1 Compute the holding period return for the five-year period.
- 2 Compute the arithmetic mean annual return.

- 3 Compute the geometric mean annual return. How does it compare with the arithmetic mean annual return?
- 4 The Lohrmanns want to earn a minimum annual return of 5 percent. Is the money-weighted annual return greater than 5 percent?

Solution to 1:

The holding period return is $R = (1 + R_1)(1 + R_2)(1 + R_3)(1 + R_4)(1 + R_5) - 1 = (1.15)(0.95)(1.10)(1.15)(1.03) - 1 = 0.4235 = 42.35\%$ for the five-year period.

Solution to 2:

The arithmetic mean annual return can be computed as an arithmetic mean of the returns given by this equation:

$$\bar{R}_i = \frac{15\% - 5\% + 10\% + 15\% + 3\%}{5} = 7.60\%$$

Solution to 3:

The geometric mean annual return can be computed using this equation:

$$\begin{aligned}\bar{R}_{Gi} &= \sqrt[T]{(1 + R_{i1}) \times (1 + R_{i2}) \times \dots \times (1 + R_{iT-1}) \times (1 + R_{iT})} - 1 \\ &= \sqrt[5]{1.15 \times 0.95 \times 1.10 \times 1.15 \times 1.03} - 1 \\ &= \sqrt[5]{1.4235} - 1 = 0.0732 = 7.32\%\end{aligned}$$

Thus, the geometric mean annual return is 7.32 percent, slightly less than the arithmetic mean return.

Solution to 4:

To calculate the money-weighted rate of return, tabulate the annual returns and investment amounts to determine the cash flows, as shown in Exhibit 3. All amounts are in millions of euros.

Exhibit 3

Year	1	2	3	4	5
Balance from previous year	0	34.50	42.75	22.00	28.75
New investment by the investor (cash inflow for the Rhein fund)	30.00	10.50	0	3.00	6.25
Withdrawal by the investor (cash outflow for the Rhein fund)	0	0	-22.75	0	0
Net balance at the beginning of year	30.00	45.00	20.00	25.00	35.00
Investment return for the year	15%	-5%	10%	15%	3%
Investment gain (loss)	4.50	-2.25	2.00	3.75	1.05
Balance at the end of year	34.50	42.75	22.00	28.75	36.05

$$CF_0 = -30.00, CF_1 = -10.50, CF_2 = +22.75, CF_3 = -3.00, CF_4 = -6.25, CF_5 = +36.05.$$

For clarification, it may be appropriate to explain the notation for cash flows. Each cash inflow or outflow occurs at the end of each year. Thus, CF_0 refers to the cash flow at the end of Year 0 or beginning of Year 1, and CF_5 refers to the cash flow at end of Year 5 or beginning of Year 6. Because cash flows are being discounted to the present—that is, end of Year 0 or beginning of Year 1—the period of discounting CF_0 is zero whereas the period of discounting for CF_5 is 5 years.

To get the exact money-weighted rate of return (IRR), the following equation would be equal to zero. Instead of calculating, however, use the 5 percent return to see whether the value of the expression is positive or not. If it is positive, then the money-weighted rate of return is greater than 5 percent, because a 5 percent discount rate could not reduce the value to zero.

$$\frac{-30.00}{(1.05)^0} + \frac{-10.50}{(1.05)^1} + \frac{22.75}{(1.05)^2} + \frac{-3.00}{(1.05)^3} + \frac{-6.25}{(1.05)^4} + \frac{36.05}{(1.05)^5} = 1.1471$$

Because the value is positive, the money-weighted rate of return is greater than 5 percent. Using a financial calculator, the exact money-weighted rate of return is 5.86 percent.

2.1.6 Annualized Return

The period during which a return is earned or computed can vary and often we have to annualize a return that was calculated for a period that is shorter (or longer) than one year. You might buy a short-term treasury bill with a maturity of 3 months, or you might take a position in a futures contract that expires at the end of the next quarter. How can we compare these returns? In many cases, it is most convenient to annualize all available returns. Thus, daily, weekly, monthly, and quarterly returns are converted to an annual return. In addition, many formulas used for calculating certain values or prices may require all returns and periods to be expressed as annualized rates of return. For example, the most common version of the Black–Scholes option-pricing model requires annualized returns and periods to be in years.

To annualize any return for a period shorter than one year, the return for the period must be compounded by the number of periods in a year. A monthly return is compounded 12 times, a weekly return is compounded 52 times, and a quarterly return is compounded 4 times. Daily returns are normally compounded 365 times. For an uncommon number of days, we compound by the ratio of 365 to the number of days.

If the weekly return is 0.2 percent, then the compound annual return is computed as shown because there are 52 weeks in a year:

$$\begin{aligned} r_{\text{annual}} &= (1 + r_{\text{weekly}})^{52} - 1 = (1 + 0.2\%)^{52} - 1 \\ &= (1.002)^{52} - 1 = 0.1095 = 10.95\% \end{aligned}$$

If the return for 15 days is 0.4 percent, the annualized return is computed assuming 365 days in a year. Thus,

$$\begin{aligned} r_{\text{annual}} &= (1 + r_{15})^{365/15} - 1 = (1 + 0.4\%)^{365/15} - 1 \\ &= (1.004)^{365/15} - 1 = 0.1020 = 10.20\% \end{aligned}$$

A general equation to annualize returns is given, where c is the number of periods in a year. For a quarter, $c = 4$ and for a month, $c = 12$:

$$r_{\text{annual}} = (1 + r_{\text{period}})^c - 1$$

How can we annualize a return when the holding period return is more than one year? For example, how do we annualize an 18-month holding period return? Because one year contains two-thirds of 18-month periods, $c = 2/3$ in the above equation. An 18-month return of 20 percent can be annualized, as shown:

$$r_{annual} = (1 + r_{18month})^{2/3} - 1 = (1 + 0.20)^{2/3} - 1 = 0.1292 = 12.92\%$$

Similar expressions can be constructed when quarterly or weekly returns are needed for comparison instead of annual returns. In such cases, c is equal to the number of holding periods in a quarter or in a week. For example, assume that you want to convert daily returns to weekly returns or annual returns to weekly returns for comparison between weekly returns. For converting daily returns to weekly returns, $c = 5$, assuming that there are five trading days in a week. For converting annual returns to weekly returns, $c = 1/52$. The expressions for annual returns can then be rewritten as expressions for weekly returns, as shown:

$$r_{weekly} = (1 + r_{daily})^5 - 1; r_{weekly} = (1 + r_{annual})^{1/52} - 1$$

One major limitation of annualizing returns is the implicit assumption that returns can be repeated precisely, that is, money can be reinvested repeatedly while earning a similar return. This type of return is not always possible. An investor may earn a return of 5 percent during a week because the market went up that week or he got lucky with his stock, but it is highly unlikely that he will earn a return of 5 percent every week for the next 51 weeks, resulting in an annualized return of 1,164.3 percent ($= 1.05^{52} - 1$). Therefore, it is important to annualize short-term returns with this limitation in mind. Annualizing returns, however, allows for comparison among different assets and over different time periods.

EXAMPLE 2

Annualized Returns

London Arbitrageurs, PLC employs many analysts who devise and implement trading strategies. Mr. Brown is trying to evaluate three trading strategies that have been used for different periods of time.

- Keith believes that he can predict share price movements based on earnings announcements. In the last 100 days he has earned a return of 6.2 percent.
- Thomas has been very successful in predicting daily movements of the Australian dollar and the Japanese yen based on the carry trade. In the last 4 weeks, he has earned 2 percent after accounting for all transactions costs.
- Lisa follows the fashion industry and luxury retailers. She has been investing in these companies for the last 3 months. Her return is 5 percent.

Mr. Brown wants to give a prize to the best performer but is somewhat confused by the returns earned over different periods. Annualize returns in all three cases and advise Mr. Brown.

Solution:

$$\text{Annualized return for Keith: } R_{Keith} = (1 + 0.062)^{365/100} - 1 = 0.2455 = 24.55\%$$

$$\text{Annualized return for Thomas: } R_{Thomas} = (1 + 0.02)^{52/4} - 1 = 0.2936 = 29.36\%$$

$$\text{Annualized return for Lisa: } R_{Lisa} = (1 + 0.05)^4 - 1 = 0.2155 = 21.55\%$$

Thomas earned the highest return and deserves the reward, assuming the performance of all traders is representative of what they can achieve over the year.

2.1.7 Portfolio Return

When several individual assets are combined into a portfolio, we can compute the portfolio return as a weighted average of the returns in the portfolio. The portfolio return is simply a weighted average of the returns of the individual investments, or assets. If Asset 1 has a return of 20 percent and constitutes 25 percent of the portfolio's investment, then the contribution to the portfolio return is 5 percent (= 25% of 20%). In general, if Asset i has a return of R_i and has a weight of w_i in the portfolio, then the portfolio return, R_P , is given as:

$$R_P = \sum_{i=1}^N w_i R_i, \quad \sum_{i=1}^N w_i = 1$$

Note that the weights must add up to 1 because the assets in a portfolio, including cash, must account for 100 percent of the investment. Also, note that these are single period returns, so there are no cash flows during the period and the weights remain constant.

A two-asset portfolio is easier to work with, so we will use only two assets to illustrate most concepts. Extending the analysis to multiple assets, however, is easily achieved and covered in later sections. With only two assets in the portfolio, the portfolio return can be written as shown, where w_1 and w_2 are weights in assets 1 and 2.

$$R_P = w_1 R_1 + w_2 R_2$$

Because the portfolio consists of only two assets, the sum of the two weights should equal 100 percent. Therefore, $w_1 + w_2 = 1$ or $w_2 = (1 - w_1)$. By substituting, we can rewrite the above equation as follows:

$$R_P = w_1 R_1 + (1 - w_1) R_2$$

2.2 Other Major Return Measures and their Applications

The statistical measures of return discussed in the previous section are generally applicable across a wide range of assets and time periods. Special assets, however, such as mutual funds, and other considerations, such as taxes or inflation, may require return measures that are specific to a particular application.

Although it is not possible to consider all types of special applications, we will discuss the effect of fees (gross versus net returns), taxes (pre-tax and after-tax returns), inflation (nominal and real returns), and **leverage**. Many investors use mutual funds or other external entities (i.e., investment vehicles) for investment. In those cases, funds charge management fees and expenses to the investors. Consequently, gross and net-of-fund-expense returns should also be considered. Of course, an investor may be interested in the net-of-expenses after-tax real return, which is in fact what an investor truly receives. We consider these additional return measures in the following sections.

2.2.1 Gross and Net Return

A gross return is the return earned by an asset manager prior to deductions for management expenses, custodial fees, taxes, or any other expenses that are not directly related to the generation of returns but rather related to the management and administration of an investment. These expenses are not deducted from the gross return because they may vary with the amount of assets under management or may vary because of the tax status of the investor. Trading expenses, however, such as commissions, are accounted for in (i.e., deducted from) the computation of gross return because

trading expenses contribute directly to the return earned by the manager. Thus, gross return is an appropriate measure for evaluating and comparing the investment skill of asset managers because it does not include any fees related to the management and administration of an investment.

Net return is a measure of what the investment vehicle (mutual fund, etc.) has earned for the investor. Net return accounts for (i.e., deducts) all managerial and administrative expenses that reduce an investor's return. Because individual investors are most concerned about the net return (i.e., what they actually receive), small mutual funds with a limited amount of assets under management are at a disadvantage compared with the larger funds that can spread their largely fixed administrative expenses over a larger asset base. As a result, many small-sized mutual funds waive part of the expenses to keep the funds competitive.

2.2.2 Pre-tax and After-tax Nominal Return

All return measures discussed previously are pre-tax nominal returns—that is, no adjustment has been made for taxes or inflation. In general, all returns are pre-tax nominal returns unless they are otherwise designated.

Investors are concerned about the tax liability of their returns because taxes reduce the actual return that they receive. The two types of returns, capital gains (change in price) and income (such as dividends or interest), are usually taxed differently. Capital gains come in two forms: short-term capital gains and long-term capital gains. Long-term capital gains typically receive preferential tax treatment in a number of countries. Interest income is taxed as ordinary income in most countries. Dividend income may be taxed as ordinary income, may have a lower tax rate, or may be exempt from taxes depending on the country and the type of investor. The after-tax nominal return is computed as the total return minus any allowance for taxes on realized gains.³

Because taxes are paid on realized capital gains and income, the investment manager can minimize the tax liability by selecting appropriate securities (e.g., those subject to more favorable taxation, all other investment considerations equal) and reducing trading turnover. Therefore, many investors evaluate investment managers based on the after-tax nominal return.

2.2.3 Real Returns

A nominal return (r) consists of three components: a real risk-free return as compensation for postponing consumption (r_{rF}), inflation as compensation for loss of purchasing power (π), and a **risk premium** for assuming risk (RP). Thus, nominal return and real return can be expressed as:

$$\begin{aligned}(1 + r) &= (1 + r_{rF}) \times (1 + \pi) \times (1 + RP) \\ (1 + r_{real}) &= (1 + r_{rF}) \times (1 + RP) \text{ or} \\ (1 + r_{real}) &= (1 + r) \div (1 + \pi)\end{aligned}$$

Often the real risk-free return and the risk premium are combined to arrive at the real “risky” rate as given in the second equation above, simply referred to as the real return. Real returns are particularly useful in comparing returns across time periods because inflation rates may vary over time. Real returns are also useful in comparing returns among countries when returns are expressed in local currencies instead of a constant investor currency in which inflation rates vary between countries (which are usually the case). Finally, the after-tax real return is what the investor receives as compensation for postponing consumption and assuming risk after paying taxes on investment returns. As a result, the after-tax real return becomes a reliable benchmark

³ Bonds issued at a discount to the par value may be taxed based on accrued gains instead of realized gains.

for making investment decisions. Although it is a measure of an investor's benchmark return, it is not commonly calculated by asset managers because it is difficult to estimate a general tax component applicable to all investors. For example, the tax component depends on an investor's specific taxation rate (marginal tax rate), how long the investor holds an investment (long-term versus short-term), and the type of account the asset is held in (tax-exempt, tax-deferred, or normal).

2.2.4 Leveraged Return

In the previous calculations, we have assumed that the investor's position in an asset is equal to the total investment made by an investor using his or her own money. This section differs in that the investor creates a leveraged position. There are two ways of creating a claim on asset returns that are greater than the investment of one's own money. First, an investor may trade futures contracts in which the money required to take a position may be as little as 10 percent of the notional value of the asset. In this case, the leveraged return, the return on the investor's own money, is 10 times the actual return of the underlying security. Note that both the gains and losses are amplified by a factor of 10.

Investors can also invest more than their own money by borrowing money to purchase the asset. This approach is easily done in stocks and bonds, and very common when investing in real estate. If half (50 percent) of the money invested is borrowed, then the asset return to the investor is doubled but the investor must account for interest to be paid on borrowed money.

EXAMPLE 3

Computation of Special Returns

Let's return to Example 1. After reading this section, Mr. Lohrmann decided that he was not being fair to the fund manager by including the asset management fee and other expenses because the small size of the fund would put it at a competitive disadvantage. He learns that the fund spends a fixed amount of €500,000 every year on expenses that are unrelated to the manager's performance.

Mr. Lohrmann has become concerned that both taxes and inflation may reduce his return. Based on the current tax code, he expects to pay 20 percent tax on the return he earns from his investment. Historically, inflation has been around 2 percent and he expects the same rate of inflation to be maintained.

- 1 Estimate the annual gross return for the first year by adding back the fixed expenses.
- 2 What is the net return that investors in the Rhein Valley Superior Fund earned during the five-year period?
- 3 What is the after-tax net return for the first year that investors earned from the Rhein Valley Superior Fund? Assume that all gains are realized at the end of the year and the taxes are paid immediately at that time.
- 4 What is the anticipated after-tax real return that investors would have earned in the fifth year?

Solution to 1:

The gross return for the first year is higher by 1.67 percent ($= €500,000/€30,000,000$) than the investor return reported by the fund. Thus, the gross return is 16.67 percent ($= 15\% + 1.67\%$).

Solution to 2:

The investor return reported by the mutual fund is the net return of the fund after accounting for all direct and indirect expenses. The net return is also the pre-tax nominal return because it has not been adjusted for taxes or inflation. The net return for the five-year holding period was 42.35 percent.

Solution to 3:

The net return earned by investors during the first year was 15 percent. Applying a 20 percent tax rate, the after-tax return that accrues to the investors is 12 percent [= 15% – (0.20 × 15%)].

Solution to 4:

As in Part 3, the after-tax return earned by investors in the fifth year is 2.4 percent [= 3% – (0.20 × 3%)]. Inflation reduces the return by 2 percent so the after-tax real return earned by investors in the fifth year is 0.39 percent, as shown:

$$\frac{(1 + 2.40\%)}{(1 + 2.00\%)} - 1 = \frac{(1 + 0.0240)}{(1 + 0.0200)} - 1 = 1.0039 - 1 = 0.0039 = 0.39\%$$

Note that taxes are paid before adjusting for inflation.

2.3 Variance and Covariance of Returns

Having discussed the various kinds of returns in considerable detail, we now turn to measures of riskiness of those returns. Just like return, there are various kinds of risk. For now, we will consider the total risk of an asset or a portfolio of assets as measured by its standard deviation, which is the square root of variance.

2.3.1 Variance of a Single Asset

Variance, or risk, is a measure of the volatility or the dispersion of returns. Variance is measured as the average squared deviation from the mean. Higher variance suggests less predictable returns and therefore a more risky investment. The variance (σ^2) of asset returns is given by the following equation,

$$\sigma^2 = \frac{\sum_{t=1}^T (R_t - \mu)^2}{T}$$

where R_t is the return for period t , T is the total number of periods, and μ is the mean of T returns, assuming T is the population of returns.

If only a sample of returns is available instead of the population of returns (as is usually the case in the investment world), then the above expression underestimates the variance. The correction for *sample* variance is made by replacing the denominator with $(T - 1)$, as shown next, where \bar{R} is the mean return of the sample observations and s^2 is the sample variance:

$$s^2 = \frac{\sum_{t=1}^T (R_t - \bar{R})^2}{T - 1}$$

2.3.2 Standard Deviation of an Asset

The **standard deviation** of returns of an asset is the square root of the variance of returns. The *population* standard deviation (σ) and the *sample* standard deviation (s) are given below.

$$\sigma = \sqrt{\frac{\sum_{t=1}^T (R_t - \mu)^2}{T}}; \quad s = \sqrt{\frac{\sum_{t=1}^T (R_t - \bar{R})^2}{T-1}}$$

Standard deviation is another measure of the risk of an asset, which may also be referred to as its volatility. In a later section, we will decompose this risk measure into its separate components.

2.3.3 Variance of a Portfolio of Assets

Like a portfolio's return, we can calculate a portfolio's variance. When computing the variance of portfolio returns, standard statistical methodology can be used by finding the variance of the full expression of portfolio return. Although the return of a portfolio is simply a weighted average of the returns of each security, this is not the case with the standard deviation of a portfolio (unless all securities are perfectly correlated—that is, correlation equals one). Variance can be expressed more generally for N securities in a portfolio using the notation from section 2.1.7 of this reading:

$$\sum_{i=1}^N w_i = 1$$

$$\sigma_P^2 = \text{Var}(R_P) = \text{Var}\left(\sum_{i=1}^N w_i R_i\right)$$

The right side of the equation is the variance of the weighted average returns of individual securities. Weight is a constant, but the returns are variables whose variance is shown by $\text{Var}(R_i)$. We can rewrite the equation as shown next. Because the covariance of an asset with itself is the variance of the asset, we can separate the variances from the covariances in the second equation:

$$\sigma_P^2 = \sum_{i,j=1}^N w_i w_j \text{Cov}(R_i, R_j)$$

$$\sigma_P^2 = \sum_{i=1}^N w_i^2 \text{Var}(R_i) + \sum_{i,j=1, i \neq j}^N w_i w_j \text{Cov}(R_i, R_j)$$

$\text{Cov}(R_i, R_j)$ is the covariance of returns, R_i and R_j , and can be expressed as the product of the correlation between the two returns ($\rho_{1,2}$) and the standard deviations of the two assets. Thus, $\text{Cov}(R_i, R_j) = \rho_{ij} \sigma_i \sigma_j$.

For a two asset portfolio, the expression for portfolio variance simplifies to the following using covariance and then using correlation:

$$\sigma_P^2 = w_1^2 \sigma_1^2 + w_2^2 \sigma_2^2 + 2w_1 w_2 \text{Cov}(R_1, R_2)$$

$$\sigma_P^2 = w_1^2 \sigma_1^2 + w_2^2 \sigma_2^2 + 2w_1 w_2 \rho_{12} \sigma_1 \sigma_2$$

The standard deviation of a two asset portfolio is given by the square root of the portfolio's variance:

$$\sigma_P = \sqrt{w_1^2 \sigma_1^2 + w_2^2 \sigma_2^2 + 2w_1 w_2 \text{Cov}(R_1, R_2)}$$

or,

$$\sigma_P = \sqrt{w_1^2 \sigma_1^2 + w_2^2 \sigma_2^2 + 2w_1 w_2 \rho_{12} \sigma_1 \sigma_2}$$

EXAMPLE 4**Return and Risk of a Two-Asset Portfolio**

Assume that as a US investor, you decide to hold a portfolio with 80 percent invested in the S&P 500 US stock index and the remaining 20 percent in the MSCI Emerging Markets index. The expected return is 9.93 percent for the S&P 500 and 18.20 percent for the Emerging Markets index. The risk (standard deviation) is 16.21 percent for the S&P 500 and 33.11 percent for the Emerging Markets index. What will be the portfolio's expected return and risk given that the covariance between the S&P 500 and the Emerging Markets index is 0.5 percent or 0.0050? Note that units for covariance and variance are written as %² when not expressed as a fraction. These are units of measure like squared feet and the numbers themselves are not actually squared.

Solution:

Portfolio return, $R_P = w_1R_1 + (1 - w_1)R_2 = (0.80 \times 0.0993) + (0.20 \times 0.1820) = 0.1158 = 11.58\%$.

$$\text{Portfolio risk} = \sigma_P = \sqrt{w_1^2\sigma_1^2 + w_2^2\sigma_2^2 + 2w_1w_2Cov(R_1, R_2)}$$

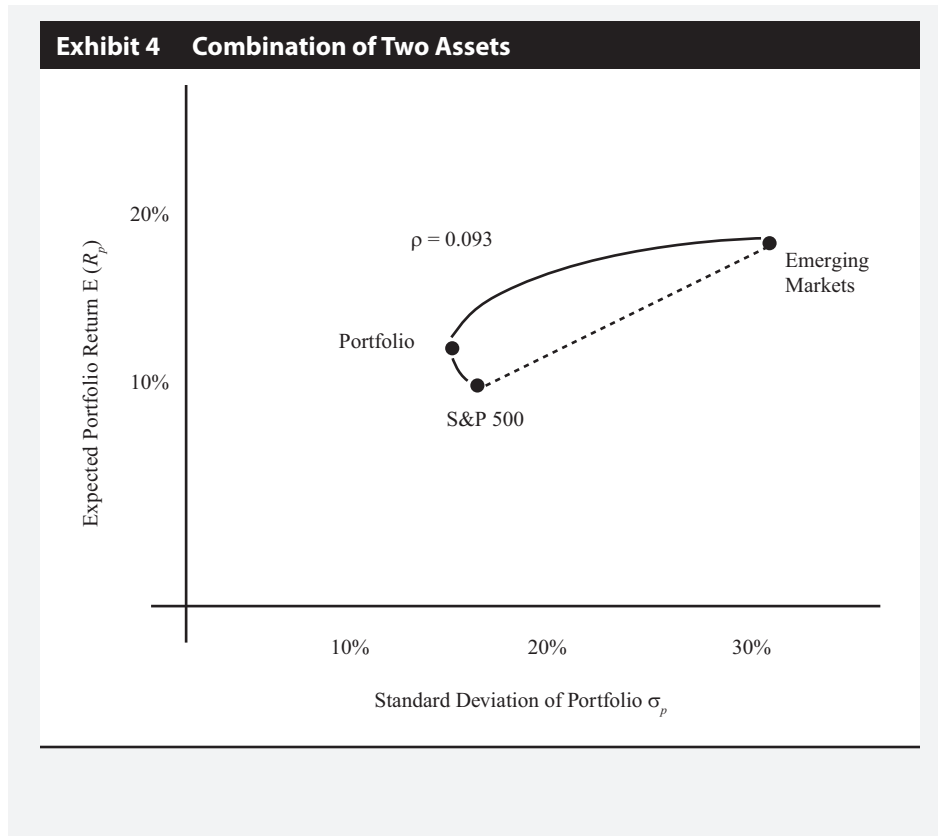
$$\sigma_P^2 = w_{US}^2\sigma_{US}^2 + w_{EM}^2\sigma_{EM}^2 + 2w_{US}w_{EM}Cov_{US,EM}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\sigma_P^2 &= (0.80^2 \times 0.1621^2) + (0.20^2 \times 0.3311^2) \\ &\quad + (2 \times 0.80 \times 0.20 \times 0.0050)\end{aligned}$$

$$\sigma_P^2 = 0.01682 + 0.00439 + 0.00160 = 0.02281$$

$$\sigma_P = 0.15103 = 15.10\%$$

The portfolio's expected return is 11.58 percent and the portfolio's risk is 15.10 percent. Look at this example closely. It shows that we can take the portfolio of a US investor invested only in the S&P 500, combine it with a *riskier* portfolio consisting of emerging markets securities, and the return of the US investor increases from 9.93 percent to 11.58 percent while the risk of the portfolio actually falls from 16.21 percent to 15.10 percent. Exhibit 4 depicts how the combination of the two assets results in a superior risk–return trade-off. Not only does the investor get a higher return, but he also gets it at a lower risk. That is the power of diversification as you will see later in this reading.



2.4 Historical Return and Risk

At this time, it is beneficial to look at historical risk and returns for the three main asset categories: stocks, bonds, and Treasury bills. Stocks refer to corporate ownership, bonds refer to long-term fixed-income securities, and Treasury bills refer to short-term government debt securities. Although there is generally no expectation of default on government securities, long-term government bond prices are volatile (risky) because of possible future changes in interest rates. In addition, bondholders also face the risk that inflation will reduce the purchasing power of their cash flows.

2.4.1 Historical Mean Return and Expected Return

Before examining historical data, it is useful to distinguish between the historical mean return and expected return, which are very different concepts but easy to confuse. Historical return is what was actually earned in the *past*, whereas expected return is what an investor anticipates to earn in the *future*.

Expected return is the nominal return that would cause the marginal investor to invest in an asset based on the real risk-free interest rate (r_{rF}), expected inflation [$E(\pi)$], and expected risk premium for the risk of the asset [$E(RP)$]. The real risk-free interest rate is expected to be positive as compensation for postponing consumption. Similarly, the risk premium is expected to be positive in most cases.⁴ The expected inflation rate is generally positive, except when the economy is in a deflationary state

⁴ There are exceptions when an asset reduces overall risk of a portfolio. We will consider those exceptions in section 4.3.

and prices are falling. Thus, expected return is generally positive. The relationship between the expected return and the real risk-free interest rate, inflation rate, and risk premium can be expressed by the following equation:

$$1 + E(R) = (1 + r_{rF}) \times [1 + E(\pi)] \times [1 + E(RP)]$$

The historical mean return for investment in a particular asset, however, is obtained from the actual return that was earned by an investor. Because the investment is risky, there is no guarantee that the actual return will be equal to the expected return. In fact, it is very unlikely that the two returns are equal for a specific time period being considered. Given a long enough period of time, we can *expect* that the future (expected) return will equal the average historical return. Unfortunately, we do not know how long that period is—10 years, 50 years, or 100 years. As a practical matter, we often assume that the historical mean return is an adequate representation of the expected return, although this assumption may not be accurate. For example, Exhibit 5 shows that the historical equity returns in the last nine years (2000–2008) for large US company stocks were negative whereas the expected return was nearly always positive. Nonetheless, longer-term returns (1926–2008) were positive and could be consistent with expected return. Though it is unknown if the historical mean returns accurately represent expected returns, it is an assumption that is commonly made.

Exhibit 5 Risk and Return for US Asset Classes by Decade (%)

		1930s	1940s	1950s	1960s	1970s	1980s	1990s	2000s*	1926–2008
Large company stocks	Return	−0.1	9.2	19.4	7.8	5.9	17.6	18.2	−3.6	9.6
	Risk	41.6	17.5	14.1	13.1	17.2	19.4	15.9	15.0	20.6
Small company stocks	Return	1.4	20.7	16.9	15.5	11.5	15.8	15.1	4.1	11.7
	Risk	78.6	34.5	14.4	21.5	30.8	22.5	20.2	24.5	33.0
Long-term corporate bonds	Return	6.9	2.7	1.0	1.7	6.2	13.0	8.4	8.2	5.9
	Risk	5.3	1.8	4.4	4.9	8.7	14.1	6.9	11.3	8.4
Long-term government bonds	Return	4.9	3.2	−0.1	1.4	5.5	12.6	8.8	10.5	5.7
	Risk	5.3	2.8	4.6	6.0	8.7	16.0	8.9	11.7	9.4
Treasury bills	Return	0.6	0.4	1.9	3.9	6.3	8.9	4.9	3.1	3.7
	Risk	0.2	0.1	0.2	0.4	0.6	0.9	0.4	0.5	3.1
Inflation	Return	−2.0	5.4	2.2	2.5	7.4	5.1	2.9	2.5	3.0
	Risk	2.5	3.1	1.2	0.7	1.2	1.3	0.7	1.6	4.2

* Through 31 December 2008.

Note: Returns are measured as annualized geometric mean returns.

Risk is measured by annualizing monthly standard deviations.

Source: 2009 Ibbotson S&P Classic Yearbook (Tables 2-1, 6-1, C-1 to C-7).

Going forward, be sure to distinguish between expected return and historical mean return. We will alert the reader whenever historical returns are used to estimate expected returns.

2.4.2 Nominal Returns of Major US Asset Classes

We focus on three major asset categories in Exhibit 5: stocks, bonds, and T-bills. The mean nominal returns for US asset classes are reported decade by decade since the 1930s. The total for the 1926–2008 period is in the last column. All returns are annual geometric mean returns. Large company stocks had an overall annual return of 9.6 percent during the 83-year period. The return was negative in the 1930s and 2000s,

and positive in all remaining decades. The 1950s and 1990s were the best decades for large company stocks. Small company stocks fared even better. The nominal return was never negative for any decade, and had double-digit growth in all decades except two, leading to an overall 83-year annual return of 11.7 percent.

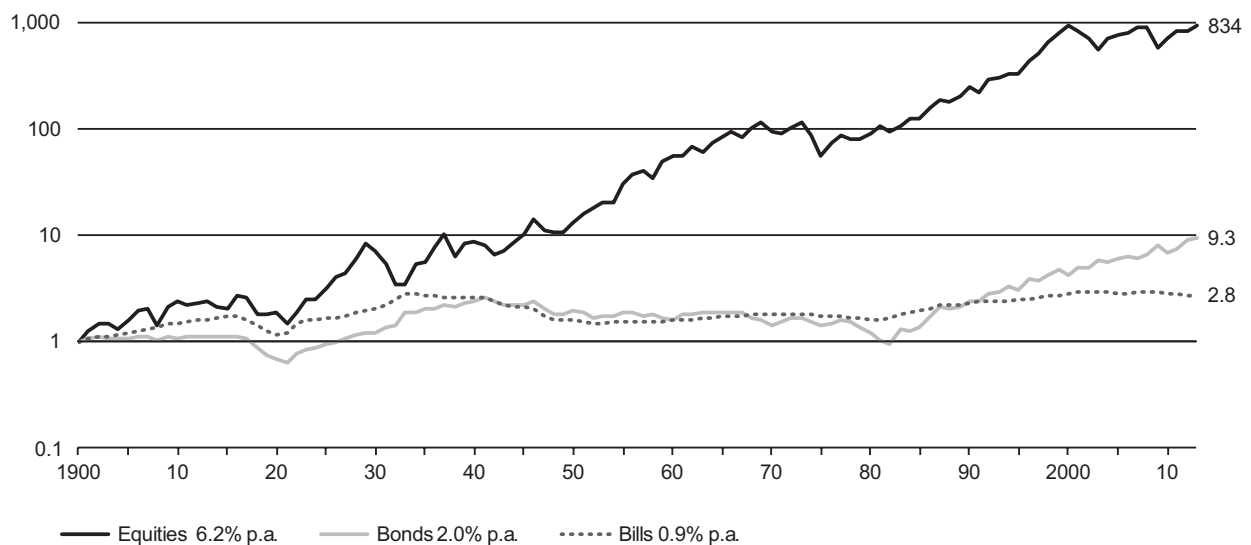
Long-term corporate bonds and long-term government bonds earned overall returns of 5.9 percent and 5.7 percent, respectively. The corporate bonds did not have a single negative decade, although government bonds recorded a negative return in the 1950s when stocks were doing extremely well. Bonds also had some excellent decades, earning double-digit returns in the 1980s and 2000s.

Treasury bills (short-term government securities) did not earn a negative return in any decade. In fact, Treasury bills earned a negative return only in 1938 (−0.02 percent) when the inflation rate was −2.78 percent. Consistently positive returns for Treasury bills are not surprising because nominal interest rates are almost never negative and the Treasury bills suffer from little interest rate or inflation risk. Since the Great Depression, there has been no deflation in any decade, although inflation rates were highly negative in 1930 (−6.03 percent), 1931 (−9.52 percent), and 1932 (−10.30 percent). Conversely, inflation rates were very high in the late 1970s and early 1980s, reaching 13.31 percent in 1979. Inflation rates have fallen since then to a negligible level of 0.09 percent in 2008. Overall, the inflation rate was 3.0 percent for the 83-year period.

2.4.3 Real Returns of Major US Asset Classes

Because inflation rates can vary greatly, from −10.30 percent to +13.31 percent in the last 83 years, comparisons across various time periods is difficult and misleading using nominal returns. Therefore, it is more effective to rely on real returns. Real returns on stocks, bonds, and T-bills are reported from 1900 in Exhibits 6 and 7.

Exhibit 6 Cumulative Returns on US Asset Classes in Real Terms, 1900–2011



Source: E. Dimson, P. Marsh, and M. Staunton, *Credit Suisse Global Investment Returns Yearbook 2012*, Credit Suisse Research Institute (February 2009). This chart is updated annually and can be found at www.tinyurl.com/DMSsourcebook.

Exhibit 6 shows that \$1 would have grown to \$834 if invested in stocks, to only \$9.30 if invested in bonds, and to \$2.80 if invested in T-bills. The difference in growth among the three asset categories is huge, although the difference in real returns does not seem that large: 6.2 percent per year for equities compared with 2.0 percent per year for bonds. This difference represents the effect of compounding over a 112-year period.

Exhibit 7 reports both the nominal and real rates of return. As we discussed earlier and as shown in the table, geometric mean is never greater than the arithmetic mean. Our analysis of returns focuses on the geometric mean because it is a more accurate representation of returns for multiple holding periods than the arithmetic mean. We observe that the real returns for US stocks are higher than the real returns for US bonds, and that the real returns for bonds are higher than the real returns for US T-bills.

Exhibit 7 Nominal Returns, Real Returns and Risk Premiums for Asset Classes (1900–2008)

Asset	United States			World			World excluding United States			
	GM (%)	AM (%)	SD (%)	GM (%)	AM (%)	SD (%)	GM (%)	AM (%)	SD (%)	
Nominal Returns	Equities	9.2	11.1	20.2	8.4	9.8	17.3	7.9	9.7	20.1
	Bonds	5.2	5.5	8.3	4.8	5.2	8.6	4.2	5.0	13.0
	Bills	4.0	4.0	2.8	—	—	—	—	—	—
	Inflation	3.0	3.1	4.9	—	—	—	—	—	—
Real Returns	Equities	6.0	8.0	20.4	5.2	6.7	17.6	4.8	6.7	20.2
	Bonds	2.2	2.6	10.0	1.8	2.3	10.3	1.2	2.2	14.1
	Bills	1.0	1.1	4.7	—	—	—	—	—	—
Premiums	Equities vs. bills	5.0	7.0	19.9	—	—	—	—	—	—
	Equities vs. bonds	3.8	5.9	20.6	3.4	4.6	15.6	3.5	4.7	15.9
	Bonds vs. bills	1.1	1.4	7.9	—	—	—	—	—	—

Note: All returns are in percent per annum measured in US\$. GM = geometric mean, AM = arithmetic mean, SD = standard deviation. "World" consists of 17 developed countries: Australia, Belgium, Canada, Denmark, France, Germany, Ireland, Italy, Japan, the Netherlands, Norway, South Africa, Spain, Sweden, Switzerland, United Kingdom, and the United States. Weighting is by each country's relative market capitalization size.

Sources: Credit Suisse Global Investment Returns Sourcebook, 2009. Compiled from tables 62, 65, and 68. T-bills and inflation rates are not available for the world and world excluding the United States.

2.4.4 Nominal and Real Returns of Asset Classes in Major Countries

Along with US returns, returns of major asset classes for a 17-country world and the world excluding the United States are also presented in Exhibit 7. Equity returns are weighted by each country's GDP before 1968 because of a lack of reliable market capitalization data. Returns are weighted by a country's market capitalization beginning with 1968. Similarly, bond returns are defined by a 17-country bond index, except GDP is used to create the weights because equity market capitalization weighting is inappropriate for a bond index and bond market capitalizations were not readily available.

The nominal mean return for the world stock index over the last 109 years was 8.4 percent, and bonds had a nominal geometric mean return of 4.8 percent. The nominal geometric mean returns for the world excluding the United States are 7.9 percent for stocks and 4.2 percent for bonds. For both stocks and bonds, the United States has earned higher returns than the world excluding the United States. Similarly, real

returns for stocks and bonds in the United States are higher than the real returns for rest of the world. No separate information is available for Treasury bills for non-US countries.

2.4.5 Risk of Major Asset Classes

Risk for major asset classes in the United States is reported for 1926–2008 in Exhibit 5, and the risk for major asset classes for the United States, the world, and the world excluding the United States are reported for 1900–2008 in Exhibit 7. Exhibit 5 shows that US small company stocks had the highest risk, 33.0 percent, followed by US large company stocks, 20.6 percent. Long-term government bonds and long-term corporate bonds had lower risk at 9.4 percent and 8.4 percent, with Treasury bills having the lowest risk at about 3.1 percent.

Exhibit 7 shows that the risk for world stocks is 17.3 percent and for world bonds is 8.6 percent. The world excluding the United States has risks of 20.1 percent for stocks and 13.0 percent for bonds. The effect of diversification is apparent when world risk is compared with US risk and world excluding US risk. Although the risk of US stocks is 20.2 percent and the risk of world excluding US stocks is 20.1 percent, the combination gives a risk of only 17.3 percent for world stocks. We can see a similar impact for world bonds when compared with US bonds and world bonds excluding US bonds. We observe a similar pattern in the risk levels of real returns.

2.4.6 Risk–Return Trade-off

The expression “risk–return trade-off” refers to the positive relationship between expected risk and return. In other words, a higher return is not possible to attain in efficient markets and over long periods of time without accepting higher risk. Expected returns should be greater for assets with greater risk.

The historical data presented above show the risk–return trade-off. Exhibit 5 shows for the United States that small company stocks had higher risk and higher return than large company stocks. Large company stocks had higher returns and higher risk than both long-term corporate bonds and government bonds. Bonds had higher returns and higher risk than Treasury bills. Uncharacteristically, however, long-term government bonds had higher total risk than long-term corporate bonds, although the returns of corporate bonds were slightly higher. These factors do not mean that long-term government bonds had greater default risk, just that they were more variable than corporate bonds during this historic period.

Turning to real returns, we find the same pattern: Higher returns were earned by assets with higher risk. Exhibit 7 reveals that the risk and return for stocks were the highest of the asset classes, and the risk and return for bonds were lower than stocks for the United States, the world, and the world excluding the United States. US Treasury bills had the lowest return and lowest risk among T-bills, bonds, and stocks.

Another way of looking at the risk–return trade-off is to focus on the **risk premium**, which is the extra return investors can expect for assuming additional risk, after accounting for the nominal risk-free interest rate (includes both compensation for expected inflation and the real risk-free interest rate). Worldwide equity risk premiums reported at the bottom of Exhibit 7 show that equities outperformed bonds and bonds outperformed T-bills. Investors in equities earned a higher return than investors in T-bills because of the higher risk in stocks. Conversely, investors in T-bills cannot expect to earn as high a return as equity investors because the risk of their holdings is much lower.

A more dramatic representation of the risk–return trade-off is shown in Exhibit 6, which shows the cumulative returns of US asset classes in real terms. The line representing T-bills is much less volatile than the other lines. Adjusted for inflation, the average real return on T-bills was 0.9 percent per year. The line representing bonds is more volatile than the line for T-bills but less volatile than the line representing

stocks. The total return for equities including dividends and capital gains shows how \$1 invested at the beginning of 1900 grows to \$834, generating an annualized return of 6.2 percent in real terms.

Over long periods of time, we observe that higher risk does result in higher mean returns. Thus, it is reasonable to claim that, over the long term, market prices reward higher risk with higher returns, which is a characteristic of a risk-averse investor, a topic that we discuss in Section 3.

2.5 Other Investment Characteristics

In evaluating investments using mean (expected return) and variance (risk), we make two important assumptions. First, we assume that the returns are normally distributed because a normal distribution can be fully characterized by its mean and variance. Second, we assume that markets are not only informationally efficient but that they are also operationally efficient. To the extent that these assumptions are violated, we need to consider additional investment characteristics. These are discussed below.

2.5.1 *Distributional Characteristics*

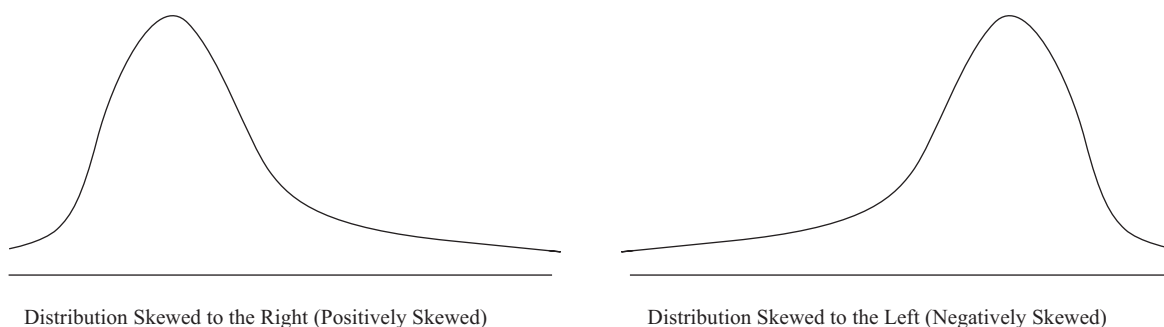
As explained in an earlier reading, a **normal distribution** has three main characteristics: its mean and median are equal; it is completely defined by two parameters, mean and variance; and it is symmetric around its mean with:

- 68 percent of the observations within $\pm 1\sigma$ of the mean,
- 95 percent of the observations within $\pm 2\sigma$ of the mean, and
- 99 percent of the observations within $\pm 3\sigma$ of the mean.

Using only mean and variance would be appropriate to evaluate investments if returns were distributed normally. Returns, however, are not normally distributed; deviations from normality occur both because the returns are skewed, which means they are not symmetric around the mean, and because the probability of extreme events is significantly greater than what a normal distribution would suggest. The latter deviation is referred to as kurtosis or fat tails in a return distribution. The next sections discuss these deviations more in-depth.

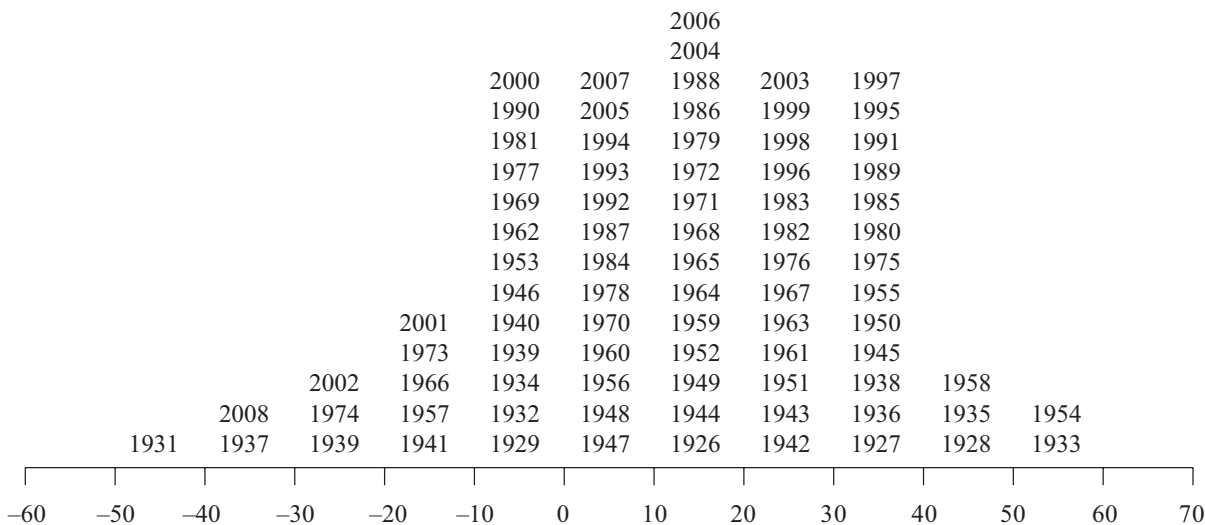
Skewness **Skewness** refers to asymmetry of the return distribution, that is, returns are not symmetric around the mean. A distribution is said to be left skewed or negatively skewed if most of the distribution is concentrated to the right, and right skewed or positively skewed if most is concentrated to the left. Exhibit 8 shows a typical representation of negative and positive skewness, whereas Exhibit 9 demonstrates the negative skewness of stock returns by plotting a histogram of US large company stock returns for 1926–2008.

Exhibit 8 Skewness



Source: Reprinted from *Fixed Income Readings for the Chartered Financial Analyst® Program*. Copyright CFA Institute.

Exhibit 9 Histogram of US Large Company Stock Returns, 1926–2008 (Percent)



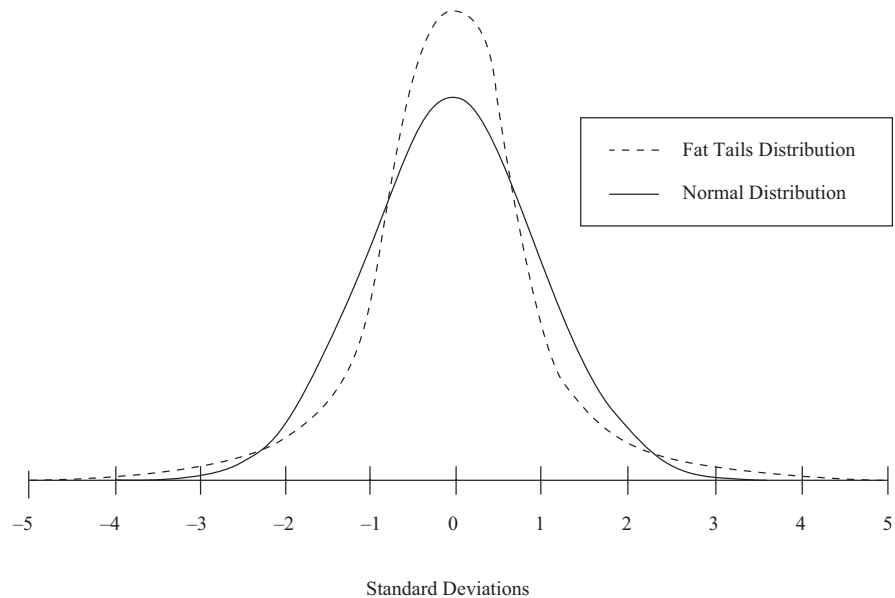
Source: 2009 Ibbotson S&P Classic Yearbook (Table 2.2)

Kurtosis Kurtosis refers to fat tails or higher than normal probabilities for extreme returns and has the effect of increasing an asset’s risk that is not captured in a mean–variance framework, as illustrated in Exhibit 10. Investors try to evaluate the effect of kurtosis by using such statistical techniques as value at risk (VaR) and conditional tail expectations.⁵ Several market participants note that the probability and the magnitude

⁵ Value at risk is a money measure of the minimum losses expected on a portfolio during a specified time period at a given level of probability. It is commonly used to measure the losses a portfolio can suffer under normal market conditions. For example, if a portfolio’s one-day 10 percent VaR is £200,000, it implies that there is a 10 percent probability that the value of the portfolio will decrease by more than £200,000 over a single one-day period (under normal market conditions). This probability implies that the portfolio will experience a loss of at least £200,000 on one out of every ten days.

of extreme events is underappreciated and was a primary contributing factor to the financial crisis of 2008.⁶ The higher probability of extreme negative outcomes among stock returns can also be observed in Exhibit 9.

Exhibit 10 Kurtosis



Source: Reprinted from *Fixed Income Readings for the Chartered Financial Analyst® Program*. Copyright CFA Institute.

2.5.2 Market Characteristics

In the previous analysis, we implicitly assumed that markets are both informationally and operationally efficient. Although informational efficiency of markets is a topic beyond the purview of this reading, we should highlight certain operational limitations of the market that affect the choice of investments. One such limitation is **liquidity**.

The cost of trading has three main components—brokerage commission, bid–ask spread, and price impact—of which liquidity affects the latter two. Brokerage commission is usually negotiable and does not constitute a large fraction of the total cost of trading except in small-sized trades. Stocks with low liquidity can have wide bid–ask spreads. The bid–ask spread, which is the difference between the buying price and the selling price, is incurred as a cost of trading a security. The larger the bid–ask spread, the higher is the cost of trading. If a \$100 stock has a spread of 10 cents, the bid–ask spread is only 0.1 percent ($\$0.10/\100). On the other hand, if a \$10 stock has a spread of 10 cents, the bid–ask spread is 1 percent. Clearly, the \$10 stock is more expensive to trade and an investor will need to earn 0.9 percent extra to make up the higher cost of trading relative to the \$100 stock.

Liquidity also has implications for the price impact of trade. Price impact refers to how the price moves in response to an order in the market. Small orders usually have little impact, especially for liquid stocks. For example, an order to buy 100 shares of a \$100 stock with a spread of 1 cent may have no effect on the price. On the other hand, an order to buy 100,000 shares may have a significant impact on the price as the

⁶ For example, see Bogle (2008) and Taleb (2007).

buyer has to induce more and more stockholders to tender their shares. The extent of the price impact depends on the liquidity of the stock. A stock that trades millions of shares a day may be less affected than a stock that trades only a few hundred thousand shares a day. Investors, especially institutional investors managing large sums of money, must keep the liquidity of a stock in mind when making investment decisions.

Liquidity is a bigger concern in emerging markets than in developed markets because of the smaller volume of trading in those markets. Similarly, liquidity is a more important concern in corporate bond markets and especially for bonds of lower credit quality than in equity markets because an individual corporate bond issue may not trade for several days or weeks. This certainly became apparent during the global financial crisis.

There are other market-related characteristics that affect investment decisions because they might instill greater confidence in the security or might affect the costs of doing business. These include analyst coverage, availability of information, firm size, etc. These characteristics about companies and financial markets are essential components of investment decision making.

RISK AVERSION AND PORTFOLIO SELECTION

3

As we have seen, stocks, bonds, and T-bills provide different levels of returns and have different levels of risk. Although investment in equities may be appropriate for one investor, another investor may not be inclined to accept the risk that accompanies a share of stock and may prefer to hold more cash. In the last section, we considered investment characteristics of assets in understanding their risk and return. In this section, we consider the characteristics of investors, both individual and institutional, in an attempt to pair the right kind of investors with the right kind of investments.

First, we discuss risk aversion and utility theory. Later we discuss their implications for portfolio selection.

3.1 The Concept of Risk Aversion

The concept of **risk aversion** is related to the behavior of individuals under uncertainty. Assume that an individual is offered two alternatives: one where he will get £50 for sure and the other is a gamble with a 50 percent chance that he gets £100 and 50 percent chance that he gets nothing. The expected value in both cases is £50, one with certainty and the other with uncertainty. What will an investor choose? There are three possibilities: an investor chooses the gamble, the investor chooses £50 with certainty, or the investor is indifferent. Let us consider each in turn. However, please understand that this is only a representative example, and a single choice does not determine the risk aversion of an investor.

Risk Seeking

If an investor chooses the gamble, then the investor is said to be risk loving or risk seeking. The gamble has an uncertain outcome, but with the same expected value as the guaranteed outcome. Thus, an investor choosing the gamble means that the investor gets extra “utility” from the uncertainty associated with the gamble. How much is that extra utility worth? Would the investor be willing to accept a smaller expected value because he gets extra utility from risk? Indeed, risk seekers will accept less return because of the risk that accompanies the gamble. For example, a risk seeker may choose a gamble with an expected value of £45 in preference to a guaranteed outcome of £50.

There is a little bit of gambling instinct in many of us. People buy lottery tickets although the expected value is less than the money they pay to buy it. Or people gamble at casinos in Macau or Las Vegas with the full knowledge that the expected return is negative, a characteristic of risk seekers. These or any other isolated actions, however, cannot be taken at face value except for compulsive gamblers.

Risk Neutral

If an investor is indifferent about the gamble or the guaranteed outcome, then the investor may be risk neutral. Risk neutrality means that the investor cares only about return and not about risk, so higher return investments are more desirable even if they come with higher risk. Many investors may exhibit characteristics of risk neutrality when the investment at stake is an insignificant part of their wealth. For example, a billionaire may be indifferent about choosing the gamble or a £50 guaranteed outcome.

Risk Averse

If an investor chooses the guaranteed outcome, he/she is said to be **risk averse** because the investor does not want to take the chance of not getting anything at all. Depending on the level of aversion to risk, an investor may be willing to accept a guaranteed outcome of £45 instead of a gamble with an expected value of £50.

In general, investors are likely to shy away from risky investments for a lower, but guaranteed return. That is why they want to minimize their risk for the same amount of return, and maximize their return for the same amount of risk. The risk–return trade-off discussed earlier is an indicator of risk aversion. A risk-neutral investor would maximize return irrespective of risk and a risk-seeking investor would maximize both risk and return.

Data presented in the last section illustrate the historically positive relationship between risk and return, which demonstrates that market prices were based on transactions and investments by risk-averse investors and reflect risk aversion. Therefore, for all practical purposes and for our future discussion, we will assume that the representative investor is a risk-averse investor. This assumption is the standard approach taken in the investment industry globally.

Risk Tolerance

Risk tolerance refers to the amount of risk an investor can tolerate to achieve an investment goal. The higher the risk tolerance, the greater is the willingness to take risk. Thus, risk tolerance is negatively related to risk aversion.

3.2 Utility Theory and Indifference Curves

Continuing with our previous example, a risk-averse investor would rank the guaranteed outcome of £50 higher than the uncertain outcome with an expected value of £50. We can say that the utility that an investor or an individual derives from the guaranteed outcome of £50 is greater than the utility or satisfaction or happiness he/she derives from the alternative. In general terms, utility is a measure of relative satisfaction from consumption of various goods and services or in the case of investments, the satisfaction that an investor derives from different portfolios.

Because individuals are different in their preferences, all risk-averse individuals may not rank investment alternatives in the same manner. Consider the £50 gamble again. All risk-averse individuals will rank the guaranteed outcome of £50 higher than the gamble. What if the guaranteed outcome is only £40? Some risk-averse investors might consider £40 inadequate, others might accept it, and still others may now be indifferent about the uncertain £50 and the certain £40.

A simple implementation of utility theory allows us to quantify the rankings of investment choices using risk and return. There are several assumptions about individual behavior that we make in the definition of utility given in the equation below. We assume that investors are risk averse. They always prefer more to less (greater return to lesser return). They are able to rank different portfolios in the order of their preference and that the rankings are internally consistent. If an individual prefers X to Y and Y to Z, then he/she must prefer X to Z. This property implies that the indifference curves (see Exhibit 11) for the same individual can never touch or intersect. An example of a utility function is given below

$$U = E(r) - \frac{1}{2}A\sigma^2$$

where, U is the utility of an investment, $E(r)$ is the expected return, and σ^2 is the variance of the investment.

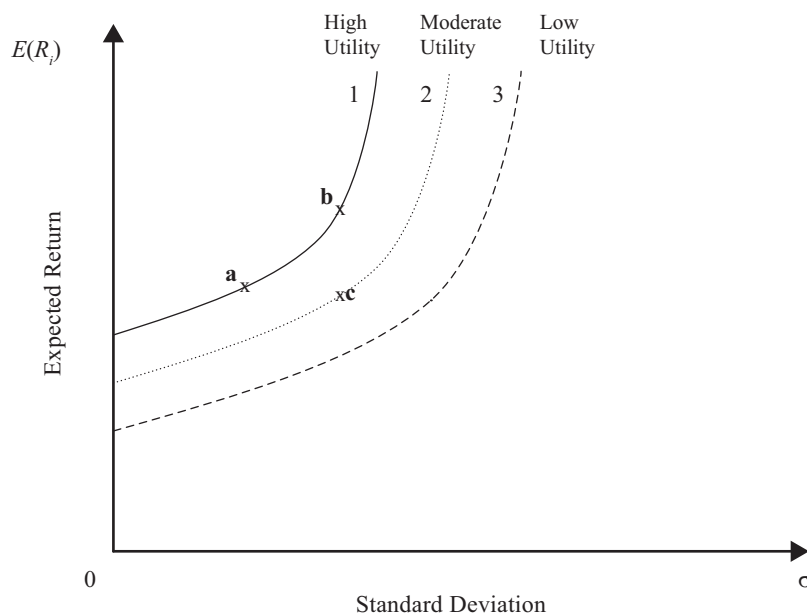
In the above equation, A is a measure of risk aversion, which is measured as the marginal reward that an investor requires to accept additional risk. More risk-averse investors require greater compensation for accepting additional risk. Thus, A is higher for more risk-averse individuals. As was mentioned previously, a risk-neutral investor would maximize return irrespective of risk and a risk-seeking investor would maximize both risk and return.

We can draw several conclusions from the utility function. First, utility is unbounded on both sides. It can be highly positive or highly negative. Second, higher return contributes to higher utility. Third, higher variance reduces the utility but the reduction in utility gets amplified by the risk aversion coefficient, A . Utility can always be increased, albeit marginally, by getting higher return or lower risk. Fourth, utility does not indicate or measure satisfaction. It can be useful only in ranking various investments. For example, a portfolio with a utility of 4 is not necessarily two times better than a portfolio with a utility of 2. The portfolio with a utility of 4 could increase our happiness 10 times or just marginally. But we do prefer a portfolio with a utility of 4 to a portfolio with a utility of 2. Utility cannot be compared among individuals or investors because it is a very personal concept. From a societal point of view, by the same argument, utility cannot be summed among individuals.

Let us explore the utility function further. The risk aversion coefficient, A , is greater than zero for a risk-averse investor. So any increase in risk reduces his/her utility. The risk aversion coefficient for a risk-neutral investor is 0, and changes in risk do not affect his/her utility. For a risk lover, the risk aversion coefficient is negative, creating an inverse situation so that additional risk contributes to an increase in his/her utility. Note that a risk-free asset ($\sigma^2 = 0$) generates the same utility for all individuals.

3.2.1 Indifference Curves

An **indifference curve** plots the combinations of risk–return pairs that an investor would accept to maintain a given level of utility (i.e., the investor is indifferent about the combinations on any one curve because they would provide the same level of overall utility). Indifference curves are thus defined in terms of a trade-off between expected rate of return and variance of the rate of return. Because an infinite number of combinations of risk and return can generate the same utility for the same investor, indifference curves are continuous at all points.

Exhibit 11 Indifference Curves for Risk-Averse Investors

A set of indifference curves is plotted in Exhibit 11. By definition, all points on any one of the three curves have the same utility. An investor does not care whether he/she is at Point **a** or Point **b** on indifference Curve 1. Point **a** has lower risk and lower return than Point **b**, but the utility of both points is the same because the higher return at Point **b** is offset by the higher risk.

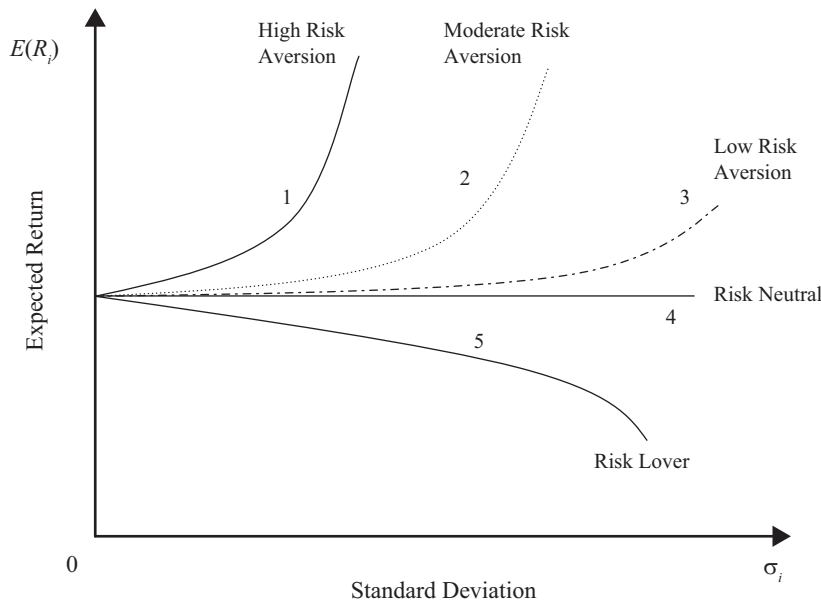
Like Curve 1, all points on Curve 2 have the same utility and an investor is indifferent about where he/she is on Curve 2. Now compare Point **c** with Point **b**. Point **c** has the same risk but significantly lower return than Point **b**, which means that the utility at Point **c** is less than the utility at Point **b**. Given that all points on Curve 1 have the same utility and all points on Curve 2 have the same utility and Point **b** has higher utility than Point **c**, Curve 1 has higher utility than Curve 2. Therefore, risk-averse investors with indifference Curves 1 and 2 will prefer Curve 1 to Curve 2. The utility of risk-averse investors always increases as you move northwest—higher return with lower risk. Because all investors prefer more utility to less, investors want to move northwest to the indifference curve with the highest utility.

The indifference curve for risk-averse investors runs from the southwest to the northeast because of the risk–return trade-off. If risk increases (going east) then it must be compensated by higher return (going north) to generate the same utility. The indifference curves are convex because of diminishing marginal utility of return (or wealth). As risk increases, an investor needs greater return to compensate for higher risk at an increasing rate (i.e., the curve gets steeper). The upward-sloping convex indifference curve has a slope coefficient closely related to the risk aversion coefficient. The greater the slope, the higher is the risk aversion of the investor as a greater increment in return is required to accept a given increase in risk.

Indifference curves for investors with different levels of risk aversion are plotted in Exhibit 12. The most risk-averse investor has an indifference curve with the greatest slope. As volatility increases, this investor demands increasingly higher returns to compensate for risk. The least risk-averse investor has an indifference curve with the least slope and so the demand for higher return as risk increases is not as acute as for the more risk-averse investor. The risk-loving investor's indifference curve, however, exhibits a negative slope, implying that the risk-lover is happy to substitute risk for

return. For a risk lover, the utility increases both with higher risk and higher return. Finally, the indifference curves of risk-neutral investors are horizontal because the utility is invariant with risk.

Exhibit 12 Indifference Curves for Various Types of Investors



In the remaining parts of this reading, all investors are assumed to be risk averse unless stated otherwise.

EXAMPLE 5

Comparing a Gamble with a Guaranteed Outcome

Assume that you are given an investment with an expected return of 10 percent and a risk (standard deviation) of 20 percent, and your risk aversion coefficient is 3.

- 1 What is your utility of this investment?
- 2 What must be the minimum risk-free return you should earn to get the same utility?

Solution to 1:

$$U = 0.10 - 0.5 \times 3 \times 0.20^2 = 0.04.$$

Solution to 2:

A risk-free return's σ is zero, so the second term disappears. To get the same utility (0.04), the risk-free return must be at least 4 percent. Thus, in your mind, a risky return of 10 percent is equivalent to a risk-free return or a guaranteed outcome of 4 percent.

EXAMPLE 6**Computation of Utility**

Based on investment information given below and the utility formula $U = E(r) - 0.5A\sigma^2$, answer the following questions. Returns and standard deviations are both expressed as percent per year. When using the utility formula, however, returns and standard deviations must be expressed in decimals.

Investment	Expected Return $E(r)$	Standard Deviation σ
1	12%	30%
2	15	35
3	21	40
4	24	45

- 1 Which investment will a risk-averse investor with a risk aversion coefficient of 4 choose?
- 2 Which investment will a risk-averse investor with a risk aversion coefficient of 2 choose?
- 3 Which investment will a risk-neutral investor choose?
- 4 Which investment will a risk-loving investor choose?

Solutions to 1 and 2:

The utility for risk-averse investors with $A = 4$ and $A = 2$ for each of the four investments are shown in the following table. Complete calculations for Investment 1 with $A = 4$ are as follows: $U = 0.12 - 0.5 \times 4 \times 0.30^2 = -0.06$.

Investment	Expected Return $E(r)$	Standard Deviation σ	Utility $A = 4$	Utility $A = 2$
1	12%	30%	-0.0600	0.0300
2	15	35	-0.0950	0.0275
3	21	40	-0.1100	0.0500
4	24	45	-0.1650	0.0375

The risk-averse investor with a risk aversion coefficient of 4 should choose Investment 1. The risk-averse investor with a risk aversion coefficient of 2 should choose Investment 3.

Solution to 3:

A risk-neutral investor cares only about return. In other words, his risk aversion coefficient is 0. Therefore, a risk-neutral investor will choose Investment 4 because it has the highest return.

Solution to 4:

A risk-loving investor likes both higher risk and higher return. In other words, his risk aversion coefficient is negative. Therefore, a risk-loving investor will choose Investment 4 because it has the highest return and highest risk among the four investments.

3.3 Application of Utility Theory to Portfolio Selection

The simplest application of utility theory and risk aversion is to a portfolio of two assets, a risk-free asset and a risky asset. The risk-free asset has zero risk and a return of R_f . The risky asset has a risk of σ_i (> 0) and an expected return of $E(R_i)$. Because the risky asset has risk that is greater than that of the risk-free asset, the expected return from the risky asset will be greater than the return from the risk-free asset, that is, $E(R_i) > R_f$.

We can construct a portfolio of these two assets with a portfolio expected return, $E(R_p)$, and portfolio risk, σ_p , based on sections 2.1.7 and 2.3.3. In the equations given below, w_1 is the weight in the risk-free asset and $(1 - w_1)$ is the weight in the risky asset. Because $\sigma_f = 0$ for the risk-free asset, the first and third terms in the formula for variance are zero leaving only the second term. We arrive at the last equation by taking the square root of both sides, which shows the expression for standard deviation for a portfolio of two assets when one asset is the risk-free asset:

$$\begin{aligned} E(R_p) &= w_1 R_f + (1 - w_1) E(R_i) \\ \sigma_p^2 &= w_1^2 \sigma_f^2 + (1 - w_1)^2 \sigma_i^2 + 2w_1(1 - w_1)\rho_{12}\sigma_f\sigma_i = (1 - w_1)^2 \sigma_i^2 \\ \sigma_p &= (1 - w_1)\sigma_i \end{aligned}$$

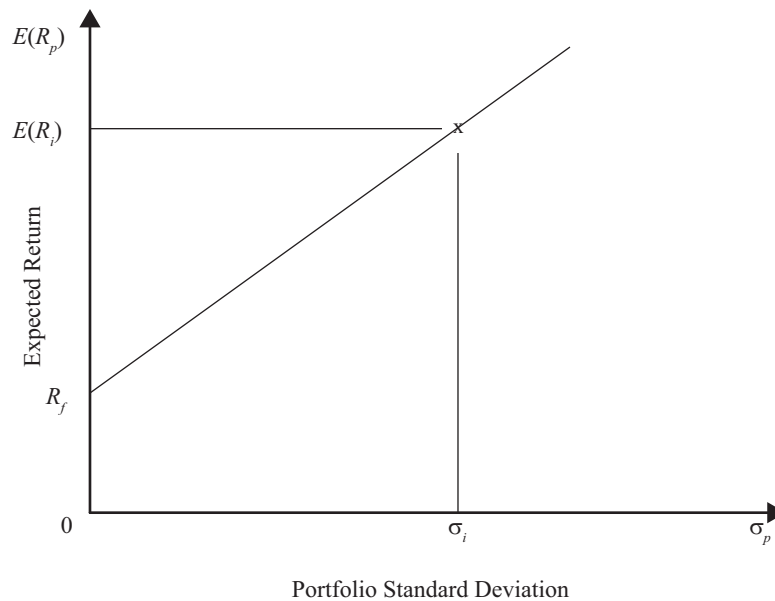
The two-asset portfolio is drawn in Exhibit 13 by varying w_1 from 0 percent to 100 percent. The portfolio standard deviation is on the horizontal axis and the portfolio return is on the vertical axis. If only these two assets are available in the economy and the risky asset represents the market, the line in Exhibit 13 is called the **capital allocation line**. The capital allocation line represents the portfolios available to an investor. The equation for this line can be derived from the above two equations by rewriting the second equation as $w_1 = 1 - \frac{\sigma_p}{\sigma_i}$. Substituting the value of w_1 in the equation for expected return, we get the following equation for the capital allocation line:

$$E(R_p) = \left(1 - \frac{\sigma_p}{\sigma_i}\right) R_f + \frac{\sigma_p}{\sigma_i} E(R_i)$$

This equation can be rewritten in a more usable form:

$$E(R_p) = R_f + \frac{(E(R_i) - R_f)}{\sigma_i} \sigma_p$$

The capital allocation line has an intercept of R_f and a slope of $\frac{(E(R_i) - R_f)}{\sigma_i}$, which is the additional required return for every increment in risk, and is sometimes referred to as the market price of risk.

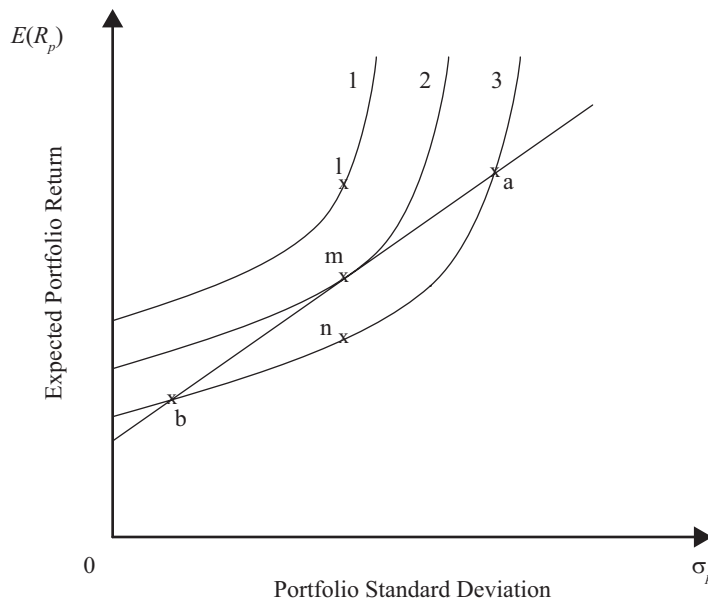
Exhibit 13 Capital Allocation Line with Two Assets

Because the equation is linear, the plot of the capital allocation line is a straight line. The line begins with the risk-free asset as the leftmost point with zero risk and a risk-free return, R_f . At that point, the portfolio consists of only the risk-free asset. If 100 percent is invested in the portfolio of all risky assets, however, we have a return of $E(R_i)$ with a risk of σ_i .

We can move further along the line in pursuit of higher returns by borrowing at the risk-free rate and investing the borrowed money in the portfolio of all risky assets. If 50 percent is borrowed at the risk-free rate, then $w_f = -0.50$ and 150 percent is placed in the risky asset, giving a return $= 1.50E(R_i) - 0.50R_f$ which is $> E(R_i)$ because $E(R_i) > R_f$.

The line plotted in Exhibit 13 is comprised of an unlimited number of risk–return pairs or portfolios. Which *one* of these portfolios should be chosen by an investor? The answer lies in combining indifference curves from utility theory with the capital allocation line from portfolio theory. Utility theory gives us the utility function or the indifference curves for an individual, as in Exhibit 11, and the capital allocation line gives us the set of feasible investments. Overlaying each individual's indifference curves on the capital allocation line will provide us with the optimal portfolio for that investor. Exhibit 14 illustrates this process of portfolio selection.

Exhibit 14 Portfolio Selection



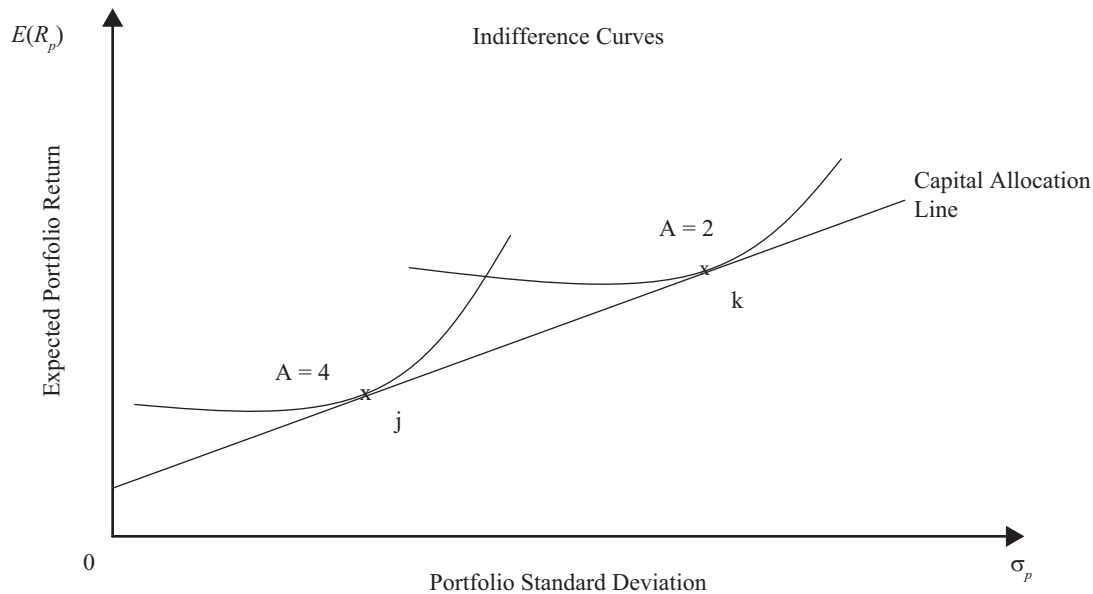
The capital allocation line consists of the set of feasible portfolios. Points under the capital allocation line may be attainable but are not preferred by any investor because the investor can get a higher return for the same risk by moving up to the capital allocation line. Points above the capital allocation line are desirable but not achievable with available assets.

Three indifference curves for the same individual are also shown in Exhibit 14. Curve 1 is above the capital allocation line, Curve 2 is tangential to the line, and Curve 3 intersects the line at two points. Curve 1 has the highest utility and Curve 3 has the lowest utility. Because Curve 1 lies completely above the capital allocation line, points on Curve 1 are not achievable with the available assets on the capital allocation line. Curve 3 intersects the capital allocation line at two points, **a** and **b**. The investor is able to invest at either Point **a** or **b** to derive the risk–return trade-off and utility associated with Curve 3. Comparing points with the same risk, observe that Point **n** on Curve 3 has the same risk as Point **m** on Curve 2, yet Point **m** has the higher expected return. Therefore, all investors will choose Curve 2 instead of Curve 3. Curve 2 is tangential to the capital allocation line at Point **m**. Point **m** is on the capital allocation line and investable. Point **m** and the utility associated with Curve 2 is the best that the investor can do because he/she cannot move to a higher utility indifference curve. Thus, we have been able to select the optimal portfolio for the investor with indifference Curves 1, 2, and 3. Point **m**, the optimal portfolio for one investor, may not be optimal for another investor. We can follow the same process, however, for finding the optimal portfolio for other investors: the optimal portfolio is the point of tangency between the capital allocation line and the indifference curve for that investor. In other words, the optimal portfolio maximizes the return per unit of risk (as it is on the capital allocation line), and it simultaneously supplies the investor with the most satisfaction (utility).

As an illustration, Exhibit 15 shows two indifference curves for two different investors: Kelly with a risk aversion coefficient of 2 and Jane with a risk aversion coefficient of 4. The indifference curve for Kelly is to the right of the indifference curve for Jane because Kelly is less risk averse than Jane and can accept a higher amount of risk, i.e. has a higher tolerance for risk. Accordingly, their optimal portfolios are different: Point **k** is the optimal portfolio for Kelly and Point **j** is the optimal portfolio for Jane.

In addition, for the same return, the slope of Jane's curve is higher than Kelly's suggesting that Jane needs greater incremental return as compensation for accepting an additional amount of risk compared with Kelly.

Exhibit 15 Portfolio Selection for Two Investors with Various Levels of Risk Aversion



4

PORTFOLIO RISK

We have seen before that investors are risk averse and demand a higher return for a riskier investment. Therefore, ways of controlling portfolio risk without affecting return are valuable. As a precursor to managing risk, this section explains and analyzes the components of portfolio risk. In particular, it examines and describes how a portfolio consisting of assets with low correlations have the potential of reducing risk without necessarily reducing return.

4.1 Portfolio of Two Risky Assets

The return and risk of a portfolio of two assets was introduced in Section 2 of this reading. In this section, we briefly review the computation of return and extend the concept of portfolio risk and its components.

4.1.1 Portfolio Return

When two individual assets are combined in a portfolio, we can compute the portfolio return as a weighted average of the returns of the two assets. Consider Assets 1 and 2 with weights of 25 percent and 75 percent in a portfolio. If their returns are 20 percent and 5 percent, the weighted average return = $(0.25 \times 20\%) + (0.75 \times 5\%) = 8.75\%$. More generally, the portfolio return can be written as below, where R_p is return of the portfolio and R_1, R_2 are returns on the two assets:

$$R_p = w_1 R_1 + (1 - w_1) R_2$$

4.1.2 Portfolio Risk

Portfolio risk or variance measures the amount of uncertainty in portfolio returns. Portfolio variance can be calculated by taking the variance of both sides of the return equation as below, where $\text{Cov}(R_1, R_2)$ is the covariance of returns, R_1 and R_2 , w_1 is the weight in Asset 1, $w_2 (= 1 - w_1)$ is the weight in Asset 2, and σ_1^2, σ_2^2 are the variances of the two assets:

$$\begin{aligned}\sigma_p^2 &= \text{Var}(R_p) = \text{Var}(w_1R_1 + w_2R_2) \\ &= w_1^2\text{Var}(R_1) + w_2^2\text{Var}(R_2) + 2w_1w_2\text{Cov}(R_1, R_2) \\ &= w_1^2\sigma_1^2 + w_2^2\sigma_2^2 + 2w_1w_2\text{Cov}(R_1, R_2)\end{aligned}$$

The standard deviation, or risk, of a portfolio of two assets is given by the square root of the portfolio's variance:

$$\sigma_p = \sqrt{w_1^2\sigma_1^2 + w_2^2\sigma_2^2 + 2w_1w_2\text{Cov}(R_1, R_2)}$$

4.1.3 Covariance and Correlation

The **covariance** in the formula for portfolio standard deviation can be expanded as $\text{Cov}(R_1, R_2) = \rho_{12}\sigma_1\sigma_2$ where ρ_{12} is the correlation between returns, R_1, R_2 . Although covariance is important, it is difficult to interpret because it is unbounded on both sides. It is easier to understand the **correlation coefficient** (ρ_{12}), which is bounded but provides similar information.

Correlation is a measure of the consistency or tendency for two investments to act in a similar way. The correlation coefficient, ρ_{12} , can be positive or negative and ranges from -1 to $+1$. Consider three different values of the correlation coefficient:

- $\rho_{12} = +1$: Returns of the two assets are perfectly *positively* correlated. Assets 1 and 2 move together 100 percent of the time.
- $\rho_{12} = -1$: Returns of the two assets are perfectly *negatively* correlated. Assets 1 and 2 move in opposite directions 100 percent of the time.
- $\rho_{12} = 0$: Returns of the two assets are *uncorrelated*. Movement of Asset 1 provides no prediction regarding the movement of Asset 2.

The correlation coefficient between two assets determines the effect on portfolio risk when the two assets are combined. To see how this works, consider two different values of ρ_{12} . You will find that portfolio risk is unaffected when the two assets are perfectly correlated ($\rho_{12} = +1$). In other words, the portfolio's standard deviation is simply a weighted average of the standard deviations of the two assets and as such a portfolio's risk is unchanged with the addition of assets with the same risk parameters. Portfolio risk falls, however, when the two assets are not perfectly correlated ($\rho_{12} < +1$). Sufficiently low values of the correlation coefficient can make the portfolio riskless under certain conditions.

First, let $\rho_{12} = +1$

$$\begin{aligned}\sigma_p^2 &= w_1^2\sigma_1^2 + w_2^2\sigma_2^2 + 2w_1w_2\rho_{12}\sigma_1\sigma_2 = w_1^2\sigma_1^2 + w_2^2\sigma_2^2 + 2w_1w_2\sigma_1\sigma_2 \\ &= (w_1\sigma_1 + w_2\sigma_2)^2 \\ \sigma_p &= w_1\sigma_1 + w_2\sigma_2\end{aligned}$$

The first set of terms on the right side of the first equation contain the usual terms for portfolio variance. Because the correlation coefficient is equal to $+1$, the right side can be rewritten as a perfect square. The third row shows that portfolio risk is a weighted average of the risks of the individual assets' risks. In Subsection 4.1.1., the

portfolio return was shown always to be a weighted average of returns. Because both risk and return are just weighted averages of the two assets in the portfolio there is no reduction in risk when $\rho_{12} = +1$.

Now let $\rho_{12} < +1$

The above analysis showed that portfolio risk is a weighted average of asset risks when $\rho_{12} = +1$. When $\rho_{12} < +1$, the portfolio risk is less than the weighted average of the individual assets' risks.

To show this, we begin by reproducing the general formula for portfolio risk, which is expressed by the terms to the left of the "<" sign below. The term to the right of "<" shows the portfolio risk when $\rho_{12} = +1$:

$$\begin{aligned}\sigma_p &= \sqrt{w_1^2\sigma_1^2 + w_2^2\sigma_2^2 + 2w_1w_2\rho_{12}\sigma_1\sigma_2} < \sqrt{w_1^2\sigma_1^2 + w_2^2\sigma_2^2 + 2w_1w_2\sigma_1\sigma_2} \\ &= (w_1\sigma_1 + w_2\sigma_2) \\ \sigma_p &< (w_1\sigma_1 + w_2\sigma_2)\end{aligned}$$

The left side is smaller than the right side because the correlation coefficient on the left side for the new portfolio is <1 . Thus, the portfolio risk is less than the weighted average of risks while the portfolio return is still a weighted average of returns.

As you can see, we have achieved diversification by combining two assets that are not perfectly correlated. For an extreme case in which $\rho_{12} = -1$ (that is, the two asset returns move in opposite directions), the portfolio can be made risk free.

EXAMPLE 7

Effect of Correlation on Portfolio Risk

Two stocks have the same return and risk (standard deviation): 10 percent return with 20 percent risk. You form a portfolio with 50 percent each of Stock 1 and Stock 2 to examine the effect of correlation on risk.

- 1 Calculate the portfolio return and risk if the correlation is 1.0.
- 2 Calculate the portfolio return and risk if the correlation is 0.0.
- 3 Calculate the portfolio return and risk if the correlation is -1.0 .
- 4 Compare the return and risk of portfolios with different correlations.

Solution to 1:

$$R_1 = R_2 = 10\% = 0.10; \sigma_1 = \sigma_2 = 20\% = 0.20; w_1 = w_2 = 50\% = 0.50. \text{ Case 1: } \rho_{12} = +1$$

$$R_p = w_1R_1 + w_2R_2$$

$$R_p = (0.5 \times 0.1) + (0.5 \times 0.1) = 0.10 = 10\%$$

$$\sigma_p^2 = w_1^2\sigma_1^2 + w_2^2\sigma_2^2 + 2w_1w_2\sigma_1\sigma_2\rho_{12}$$

$$\sigma_p^2 = (0.5^2 \times 0.2^2) + (0.5^2 \times 0.2^2) + (2 \times 0.5 \times 0.5 \times 0.2 \times 0.2 \times 1) = 0.04$$

$$\sigma_p = \sqrt{0.04} = 0.20 = 20\%$$

This equation demonstrates the earlier point that with a correlation of 1.0 the risk of the portfolio is the same as the risk of the individual assets.

Solution to 2:

$$\begin{aligned}\rho_{12} &= 0 \\ R_p &= w_1 R_1 + w_2 R_2 = 0.10 = 10\% \\ \sigma_p^2 &= w_1^2 \sigma_1^2 + w_2^2 \sigma_2^2 + 2w_1 w_2 \sigma_1 \sigma_2 \rho_{12} \\ \sigma_p^2 &= (0.5^2 \times 0.2^2) + (0.5^2 \times 0.2^2) \\ &\quad + (2 \times 0.5 \times 0.5 \times 0.2 \times 0.2 \times 0) = 0.02 \\ \sigma_p &= \sqrt{0.02} = 0.14 = 14\%\end{aligned}$$

This equation demonstrates the earlier point that, when assets have correlations of less than 1.0, they can be combined in a portfolio that has less risk than either of the assets individually.

Solution to 3:

$$\begin{aligned}\rho_{12} &= -1 \\ R_p &= w_1 R_1 + w_2 R_2 = 0.10 = 10\% \\ \sigma_p^2 &= w_1^2 \sigma_1^2 + w_2^2 \sigma_2^2 + 2w_1 w_2 \sigma_1 \sigma_2 \rho_{12} \\ \sigma_p^2 &= (0.5^2 \times 0.2^2) + (0.5^2 \times 0.2^2) \\ &\quad + (2 \times 0.5 \times 0.5 \times 0.2 \times 0.2 \times -1) = 0 \\ \sigma_p &= 0\%\end{aligned}$$

This equation demonstrates the earlier point that, if the correlation of assets is low enough, in this case 100 percent negative correlation or -1.00 (exactly inversely related), a portfolio can be designed that eliminates risk. The individual assets retain their risk characteristics, but the portfolio is risk free.

Solution to 4:

The expected return is 10 percent in all three cases; however, the returns will be more volatile in Case 1 and least volatile in Case 3. In the first case, there is no diversification of risk (same risk as before of 20 percent) and the return remains the same. In the second case, with a correlation coefficient of 0, we have achieved diversification of risk (risk is now 14 percent instead of 20 percent), again with the same return. In the third case with a correlation coefficient of -1 , the portfolio is risk free, although we continue to get the same return of 10 percent. This example shows the power of diversification that we expand on further in Section 4.3.

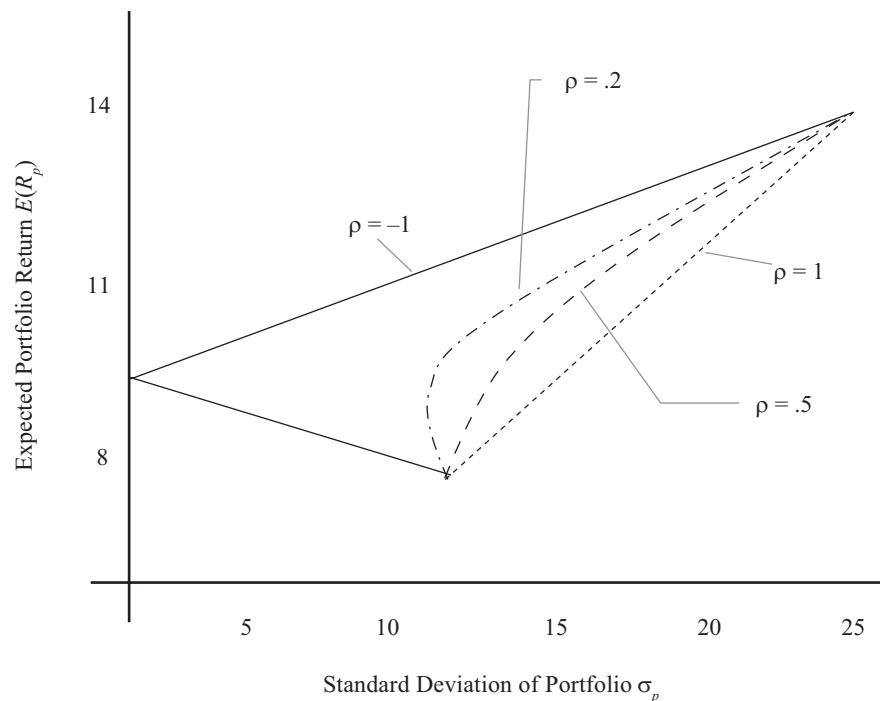
4.1.4 Relationship between Portfolio Risk and Return

The previous example illustrated the effect of correlation on portfolio risk while keeping the weights in the two assets equal and unchanged. In this section, we consider how portfolio risk and return vary with different portfolio weights and different correlations. Formulas for computation are in Subsections 4.1.1 and 4.1.2.

Asset 1 has an annual return of 7 percent and annualized risk of 12 percent, whereas Asset 2 has an annual return of 15 percent and annualized risk of 25 percent. The relationship is tabulated in Exhibit 16 for the two assets and graphically represented in Exhibit 17.

Exhibit 16 Relationship between Risk and Return

Weight in Asset 1 (%)	Portfolio Return	Portfolio Risk with Correlation of			
		1.0	0.5	0.2	-1.0
0	15.0	25.0	25.0	25.0	25.0
10	14.2	23.7	23.1	22.8	21.3
20	13.4	22.4	21.3	20.6	17.6
30	12.6	21.1	19.6	18.6	13.9
40	11.8	19.8	17.9	16.6	10.2
50	11.0	18.5	16.3	14.9	6.5
60	10.2	17.2	15.0	13.4	2.8
70	9.4	15.9	13.8	12.3	0.9
80	8.6	14.6	12.9	11.7	4.6
90	7.8	13.3	12.2	11.6	8.3
100	7.0	12.0	12.0	12.0	12.0

Exhibit 17 Relationship between Risk and Return

The table shows the portfolio return and risk for four correlation coefficients ranging from +1.0 to -1.0 and 11 weights ranging from 0 percent to 100 percent. The portfolio return and risk are 15 percent and 25 percent, respectively, when 0 percent is invested in Asset 1, versus 7 percent and 12 percent when 100 percent is invested in Asset 1. The portfolio return varies with weights but is unaffected by the correlation coefficient.

Portfolio risk becomes smaller with each successive decrease in the correlation coefficient, with the smallest risk when $\rho_{12} = -1$. The graph in Exhibit 17 shows that the risk–return relationship is a straight line when $\rho_{12} = +1$. As the correlation

falls, the risk becomes smaller and smaller as in the table. The curvilinear nature of a portfolio of assets is recognizable in all investment opportunity sets (except at the extremes where $\rho_{12} = -1$ or $+1$).

EXAMPLE 8

Portfolio of Two Assets

An investor is considering investing in a small-cap stock fund and a general bond fund. Their returns and standard deviations are given below and the correlation between the two fund returns is 0.10.

	Expected Annual Return (%)	Standard Deviation of Returns (%)
Small-cap fund, S	19	33
Bond fund, B	8	13

- 1 If the investor requires a portfolio return of 12 percent, what should the proportions in each fund be?
- 2 What is the standard deviation of the portfolio constructed in Part 1?

Solution to 1:

We can calculate the weights by setting the portfolio return equal to 12 percent. $12\% = w_1 \times 19\% + (1 - w_1) \times 8\%$; $w_1 = 36.4\%$, $(1 - w_1) = 63.6\%$. Thus, 36.4 percent should be invested in the small-cap fund and 63.6 percent should be invested in the bond fund.

Solution to 2:

$$\begin{aligned}\sigma_p &= \sqrt{w_1^2 \sigma_1^2 + w_2^2 \sigma_2^2 + 2w_1 w_2 \rho_{12} \sigma_1 \sigma_2} \\ &= \sqrt{(0.364^2 \times 0.33^2) + (0.636^2 \times 0.13^2) + (2 \times 0.364 \times 0.636 \times 0.10 \times 0.33 \times 0.13)} \\ &= 15.23\%\end{aligned}$$

The portfolio risk is 15.23 percent, which is much less than a weighted average of risks of 20.28% ($63.6\% \times 13\% + 36.4\% \times 33\%$).

4.2 Portfolio of Many Risky Assets

In the previous section, we discussed how the correlation between two assets can affect the risk of a portfolio and the smaller the correlation the lower is the risk. The above analysis can be extended to a portfolio with many risky assets (N). Recall the following equations from Sections 2.1.7 and 2.3.3 for portfolio return and variance:

$$E(R_p) = \sum_{i=1}^N w_i E(R_i), \quad \sigma_p^2 = \left(\sum_{i=1}^N w_i^2 \sigma_i^2 + \sum_{i,j=1, i \neq j}^N w_i w_j \text{Cov}(i,j) \right), \quad \sum_{i=1}^N w_i = 1$$

To examine how a portfolio with many risky assets works and the ways in which we can reduce the risk of a portfolio, assume that the portfolio has equal weights ($1/N$) for all N assets. In addition, assume that $\bar{\sigma}^2$ and $\bar{\text{Cov}}$ are the average variance and

average covariance. Given equal weights and average variance/covariance, we can rewrite the portfolio variance as below (intermediate steps are omitted to focus on the main result):

$$\sigma_P^2 = \left(\sum_{i=1}^N w_i^2 \sigma_i^2 + \sum_{i,j=1, i \neq j}^N w_i w_j \text{Cov}(i,j) \right)$$

$$\sigma_P^2 = \frac{\bar{\sigma}^2}{N} + \frac{(N-1)}{N} \text{Cov}$$

The equation in the second line shows that as N becomes large, the first term on the right side with the denominator of N becomes smaller and smaller, implying that the contribution of one asset's variance to portfolio variance gradually becomes negligible. The second term, however, approaches the average covariance as N increases. It is reasonable to say that for portfolios with a large number of assets, covariance among the assets accounts for almost all of the portfolio's risk.

4.2.1 Importance of Correlation in a Portfolio of Many Assets

The analysis becomes more instructive and interesting if we assume that all assets in the portfolio have the same variance and the same correlation among assets. In that case, the portfolio risk can then be rewritten as:

$$\sigma_P = \sqrt{\frac{\sigma^2}{N} + \frac{(N-1)}{N} \rho \sigma^2}$$

The first term under the root sign becomes negligible as the number of assets in the portfolio increases leaving the second term (correlation) as the main determining factor for portfolio risk. If the assets are unrelated to one another, the portfolio can have close to zero risk. In the next section, we review these concepts to learn how portfolios can be diversified.

4.3 The Power of Diversification

Diversification is one of the most important and powerful concepts in investments. Because investors are risk averse, they are interested in reducing risk preferably without reducing return. In other cases, investors may accept a lower return if it will reduce the chance of catastrophic losses. In previous sections of this reading, you learned the importance of correlation and covariance in managing risk. This section applies those concepts to explore ways for risk diversification. We begin with a simple but intuitive example.

EXAMPLE 9

Diversification with Rain and Shine

Assume a company Beachwear rents beach equipment. The annual return from the company's operations is 20 percent in years with many sunny days but falls to 0 percent in rainy years with few sunny days. The probabilities of a sunny year and a rainy year are equal at 50 percent. Thus, the average return is 10 percent, with a 50 percent chance of 20 percent return and a 50 percent chance of 0 percent return. Because Beachwear can earn a return of 20 percent or 0 percent, its average return of 10 percent is risky.

You are excited about investing in Beachwear but do not like the risk. Having heard about diversification, you decide to add another business to the portfolio to reduce your investment risk.

- There is a snack shop on the beach that sells all the healthy food you like. You estimate that the annual return from the Snackshop is also 20 percent in years with many sunny days and 0 percent in other years. As with the Beachwear shop, the average return is 10 percent.

You decide to invest 50 percent each in Snackshop and Beachwear. The average return is still 10 percent, with 50 percent of 10 percent from Snackshop and 50 percent of 10 percent from Beachwear. In a sunny year, you would earn 20 percent (= 50% of 20% from Beachwear + 50% of 20% from Snackshop). In a rainy year, you would earn 0 percent (=50% of 0% from Beachwear + 50% of 0% from Snackshop). The results are tabulated in Exhibit 18.

Exhibit 18

Type	Company	Percent Invested	Return in Sunny Year (%)	Return in Rainy Year (%)	Average Return (%)
Single stock	Beachwear	100	20	0	10
Single stock	Snackshop	100	20	0	10
Portfolio of two stocks	Beachwear	50	20	0	10
	Snackshop	50	20	0	10
	Total	100	20	0	10

These results seem counterintuitive. You thought that by adding another business you would be able to diversify and reduce your risk, but the risk is exactly the same as before. What went wrong? Note that both businesses do well when it is sunny and both businesses do poorly when it rains. The correlation between the two businesses is +1.0. No reduction in risk occurs when the correlation is +1.0.

- To reduce risk, you must consider a business that does well in a rainy year. You find a company that rents DVDs. DVDrental company is similar to the Beachwear company, except that its annual return is 20 percent in a rainy year and 0 percent in a sunny year, with an average return of 10 percent. DVDrental's 10 percent return is also risky just like Beachwear's return.

If you invest 50 percent each in DVDrental and Beachwear, then the average return is still 10 percent, with 50 percent of 10 percent from DVDrental and 50 percent of 10 percent from Beachwear. In a sunny year, you would earn 10 percent (= 50% of 20% from Beachwear + 50% of 0% from DVDrental). In a rainy year also, you would earn 10 percent (=50% of 0% from Beachwear + 50% of 20% from DVDrental). You have no risk because you earn 10 percent in both sunny and rainy years. Thus, by adding DVDrental to Beachwear, you have reduced (eliminated) your risk without affecting your return. The results are tabulated in Exhibit 19.

Exhibit 19

Type	Company	Percent Invested	Return in Sunny Year (%)	Return in Rainy Year (%)	Average Return (%)
Single stock	Beachwear	100	20	0	10
Single stock	DVDrental	100	0	20	10
Portfolio of two stocks	Beachwear	50	20	0	10
	DVDrental	50	0	20	10
	Total	100	10	10	10

In this case, the two businesses have a correlation of -1.0 . When two businesses with a correlation of -1.0 are combined, risk can always be reduced to zero.

4.3.1 Correlation and Risk Diversification

Correlation is the key in diversification of risk. Notice that the returns from Beachwear and DVDrental always go in the opposite direction. If one of them does well, the other does not. Therefore, adding assets that do not behave like other assets in your portfolio is good and can reduce risk. The two companies in the above example have a correlation of -1.0 .

Even when we expand the portfolio to many assets, correlation among assets remains the primary determinant of portfolio risk. Lower correlations are associated with lower risk. Unfortunately, most assets have high positive correlations. The challenge in diversifying risk is to find assets that have a correlation that is much lower than $+1.0$.

4.3.2 Historical Risk and Correlation

When we discussed asset returns in section 2.4.1, we were careful to distinguish between historical or past returns and expected or future returns because historical returns may not be a good indicator of future returns. Returns may be highly positive in one period and highly negative in another period depending on the risk of that asset. Exhibit 5 showed that returns for large US company stocks were high in the 1990s but have been very low in the 2000s.

Risk for an asset class, however, does not usually change dramatically from one period to the next. Stocks have been risky even in periods of low returns. T-bills are always less risky even when they earn high returns. From Exhibit 5, we can see that risk has typically not varied much from one decade to the next, except that risk for bonds has been much higher in recent decades when compared with earlier decades. Therefore, it is not unreasonable to assume that historical risk can work as a good proxy for future risk.

As with risk, correlations are quite stable among assets of the same country. Intercountry correlations, however, have been on the rise in the last few decades as a result of globalization and the liberalization of many economies. A correlation above 0.90 is considered high because the assets do not provide much opportunity for diversification of risk, such as the correlations that exist among large US company stocks on the NYSE, NASDAQ, S&P 500 Index, and Dow Jones Industrial Average. Correlations below 0.30 are considered attractive for portfolio diversification.

4.3.3 Historical Correlation among Asset Classes

Correlations among major US asset classes and international stocks are reported in Exhibit 20 for 1970–2008. The highest correlation is between US large company stocks and US small company stocks at about 70 percent, whereas the correlation between US large company stocks and international stocks is approximately 66 percent. Although these are the highest correlations, they still provide diversification benefits because the correlations are less than 100 percent. The correlation between international stocks and US small company stocks is lower, at 49 percent. The lowest correlations are between stocks and bonds, with some correlations being negative, such as that between US small company stocks and US long-term government bonds. Similarly, the correlation between T-bills and stocks is close to zero and is marginally negative for international stocks.⁷

Exhibit 20 Correlation Among US Assets and International Stocks (1970–2008)

Series	International Stocks	US Large Company Stocks	US Small Company Stocks	US Long-Term Corporate Bonds	US Long-Term Treasury Bonds	US T-Bills	US Inflation
International stocks	1.00						
US large company stocks	0.66	1.00					
US small company stocks	0.49	0.71	1.00				
US long-term corporate bonds	0.07	0.31	0.13	1.00			
US long-term Treasury bonds	−0.04	0.13	−0.05	0.92	1.00		
US T-bills	−0.02	0.15	0.07	0.02	0.90	1.00	
US inflation	−0.09	−0.09	0.06	−0.40	−0.40	0.65	1.00

Source: 2009 Ibbotson SBBI Classic Yearbook (Table 13-5).

The low correlations between stocks and bonds are attractive for portfolio diversification. Similarly, including international securities in a portfolio can also control portfolio risk. It is not surprising that most diversified portfolios of investors contain domestic stocks, domestic bonds, foreign stocks, foreign bonds, real estate, cash, and other asset classes.

4.3.4 Avenues for Diversification

The reason for diversification is simple. By constructing a portfolio with assets that do not move together, you create a portfolio that reduces the ups and downs in the short term but continues to grow steadily in the long term. Diversification thus makes a portfolio more resilient to gyrations in financial markets.

⁷ In any short period, T-bills are riskless and uncorrelated with other asset classes. For example, a 3-month US Treasury bill is redeemable at its face value upon maturity irrespective of what happens to other assets. When we consider multiple periods, however, returns on T-bills may be related to other asset classes because short-term interest rates vary depending on the strength of the economy and outlook for inflation.

We describe a number of approaches for diversification, some of which have been discussed previously and some of which might seem too obvious. Diversification, however, is such an important part of investing that it cannot be emphasized enough, especially when we continue to meet and see many investors who are not properly diversified.

- *Diversify with asset classes.* Correlations among major asset classes⁸ are not usually high, as can be observed from the few US asset classes listed in Exhibit 20. Correlations for other asset classes and other countries are also typically low, which provides investors the opportunity to benefit from diversifying among many asset classes to achieve the biggest benefit from diversification. A partial list of asset classes includes domestic large caps, domestic small caps, growth stocks, value stocks, domestic corporate bonds, long-term domestic government bonds, domestic Treasury bills (cash), emerging market stocks, emerging market bonds, developed market stocks (i.e., developed markets excluding domestic market), developed market bonds, real estate, and gold and other commodities. In addition, industries and sectors are used to diversify portfolios. For example, energy stocks may not be well correlated with health care stocks. The exact proportions in which these assets should be included in a portfolio depend on the risk, return, and correlation characteristics of each and the home country of the investor.
- *Diversify with index funds.* Diversifying among asset classes can become costly for small portfolios because of the number of securities required. For example, creating exposure to a single category, such as a domestic large company asset class, may require a group of at least 30 stocks. Exposure to 10 asset classes may require 300 securities, which can be expensive to trade and track. Instead, it may be effective to use exchange-traded funds or mutual funds that track the respective indexes, which could bring down the costs associated with building a well-diversified portfolio. Therefore, many investors should seriously consider index mutual funds as an investment vehicle as opposed to individual securities.
- *Diversification among countries.* Countries are different because of different economic fundamentals, industry focus, economic policy, and political climate. Thus, securities of issuers domiciled in different countries provide an opportunity for diversification. Country returns may also be different because of different currencies. In other words, the return on a foreign investment may be different when translated to the home country's currency. Because currency returns are uncorrelated with stock returns, they may help reduce the risk of investing in a foreign country even when that country, in isolation, is a very risky emerging market from an equity investment point of view. Investment in foreign countries is an essential part of a well-diversified portfolio.
- *Diversify by not owning your employer's stock.* Companies encourage their employees to invest in company stock through employee stock plans and retirement plans. You should evaluate investing in your company, however, just as you would evaluate any other investment. In addition, you should consider the nonfinancial investments that you have made, especially the human capital you have invested in your company. Because you work for your employer, you are already heavily invested in it because your earnings depend on your employer. The level of your earnings, whether your compensation improves or whether you get a promotion, depends on how well your employer performs. If

⁸ Major asset classes are distinguished from sub-classes, such as US value stocks and US growth stocks.

a competitor drives your employer out of the market, you will be out of a job. Additional investments in your employer will concentrate your wealth in one asset even more so and make you less diversified.

- *Evaluate each asset before adding to a portfolio.* Every time you add a security or an asset class to the portfolio, recognize that there is a cost associated with diversification. There is a cost of trading an asset as well as the cost of tracking a larger portfolio. In some cases, the securities or assets may have different names but belong to an asset class in which you already have sufficient exposure. A general rule to evaluate whether a new asset should be included to an existing portfolio is based on the following risk–return trade-off relationship:

$$E(R_{new}) = R_f + \frac{\sigma_{new}\rho_{new,p}}{\sigma_p} \times [E(R_p) - R_f]$$

where $E(R)$ is the return from the asset, R_f is the return on the risk-free asset, σ is the standard deviation, ρ is the correlation coefficient, and the subscripts *new* and *p* refer to the new stock and existing portfolio. If the new asset's risk-adjusted return benefits the portfolio, then the asset should be included. The condition can be rewritten using the Sharpe ratio on both sides of the equation as:

$$\frac{E(R_{new}) - R_f}{\sigma_{new}} > \frac{E(R_p) - R_f}{\sigma_p} \times \rho_{new,p}$$

If the Sharpe ratio of the new asset is greater than the Sharpe ratio of the current portfolio times the correlation coefficient, it is beneficial to add the new asset.

- *Buy insurance for risky portfolios.* It may come as a surprise, but insurance is an investment asset—just a different kind of asset. Insurance has a negative correlation with your assets and is thus very valuable. Insurance gives you a positive return when your assets lose value, but pays nothing if your assets maintain their value. Over time, insurance generates a negative average return. Many individuals, however, are willing to accept a small negative return because insurance reduces their exposure to an extreme loss. In general, it is reasonable to add an investment with a negative return if that investment significantly reduces risk (an example of a classic case of the risk–return trade-off).

Alternatively, investments with negative correlations also exist. Historically, gold has a negative correlation with stocks; however, the expected return is usually small and sometimes even negative. Investors often include gold and other commodities in their portfolios as a way of reducing their overall portfolio risk, including currency risk and inflation risk.

Buying put options is another way of reducing risk. Because put options pay when the underlying asset falls in value (negative correlation), they can protect an investor's portfolio against catastrophic losses. Of course, put options cost money, and the expected return is zero or marginally negative.

5

EFFICIENT FRONTIER AND INVESTOR'S OPTIMAL PORTFOLIO

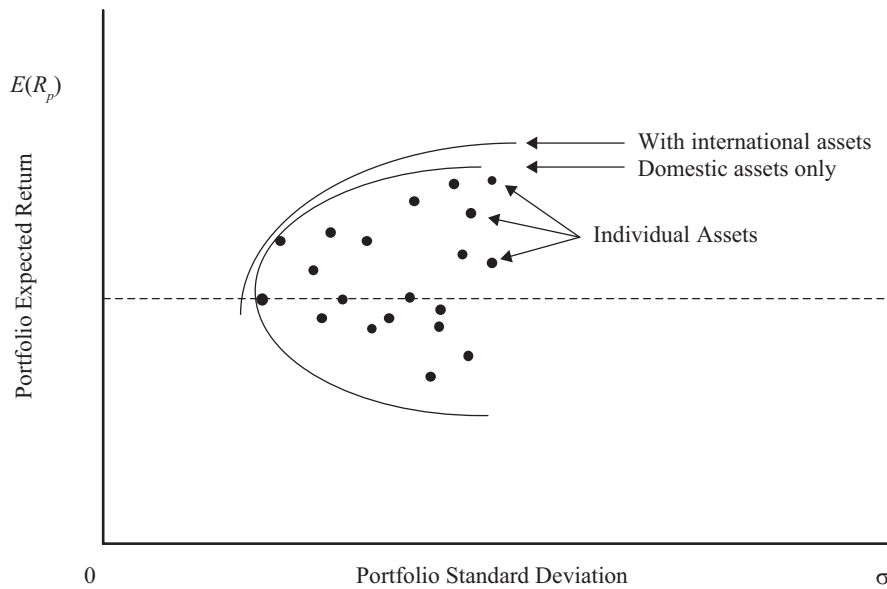
In this section, we formalize the effect of diversification and expand the set of investments to include all available risky assets in a mean–variance framework. The addition of a risk-free asset generates an optimal risky portfolio and the capital allocation line. We can then derive an investor's optimal portfolio by overlaying the capital allocation line with the indifference curves of investors.

5.1 Investment Opportunity Set

If two assets are perfectly correlated, the risk–return opportunity set is represented by a straight line connecting those two assets. The line contains portfolios formed by changing the weight of each asset invested in the portfolio. This correlation was depicted by the straight line (with $\rho = 1$) in Exhibit 17. If the two assets are not perfectly correlated, the portfolio's risk is less than the weighted average risk of the components, and the portfolio formed from the two assets bulges on the left as shown by curves with the correlation coefficient (ρ) less than 1.0 in Exhibit 17. All of the points connecting the two assets are achievable (or feasible). The addition of new assets to this portfolio creates more and more portfolios that are either a linear combination of the existing portfolio and the new asset or a curvilinear combination, depending on the correlation between the existing portfolio and the new asset.

As the number of available assets increases, the number of possible combinations increases rapidly. When all investable assets are considered, and there are hundreds and thousands of them, we can construct an opportunity set of investments. The opportunity set will ordinarily span all points within a frontier because it is also possible to reach every possible point within that curve by judiciously creating a portfolio from the investable assets.

We begin with individual investable assets and gradually form portfolios that can be plotted to form a curve as shown in Exhibit 21. All points on the curve and points to the right of the curve are attainable by a combination of one or more of the investable assets. This set of points is called the investment opportunity set. Initially, the opportunity set consists of domestic assets only and is labeled as such in Exhibit 21.

Exhibit 21 Investment Opportunity Set

5.1.1 Addition of Asset Classes

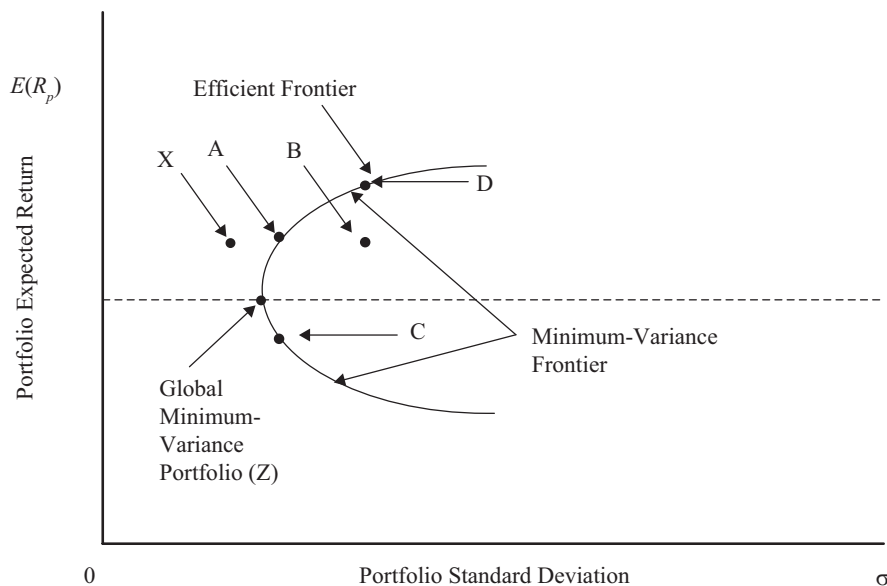
Exhibit 21 shows the effect of adding a new asset class, such as international assets. As long as the new asset class is not perfectly correlated with the existing asset class, the investment opportunity set will expand out further to the northwest, providing a superior risk–return trade-off.

The investment opportunity set with international assets dominates the opportunity set that includes only domestic assets. Adding other asset classes will have the same impact on the opportunity set. Thus, we should continue to add asset classes until they do not further improve the risk–return trade-off. The benefits of diversification can be fully captured in this way in the construction of the investment opportunity set, and eventually in the selection of the optimal portfolio.

In the discussion that follows in this section, we will assume that *all* investable assets available to an investor are included in the investment opportunity set and no special attention needs to be paid to new asset classes or new investment opportunities.

5.2 Minimum-Variance Portfolios

The investment opportunity set consisting of all available investable sets is shown in Exhibit 22. There are a large number of portfolios available for investment, but we must choose a single optimal portfolio. In this subsection, we begin the selection process by narrowing the choice to fewer portfolios.

Exhibit 22 Minimum-Variance Frontier

5.2.1 Minimum-Variance Frontier

Risk-averse investors seek to minimize risk for a given return. Consider Points A, B, and X in Exhibit 22 and assume that they are on the same horizontal line by construction. Thus, the three points have the same expected return, $E(R_1)$, as do all other points on the imaginary line connecting A, B, and X. Given a choice, an investor will choose the point with the minimum risk, which is Point X. Point X, however, is unattainable because it does not lie within the investment opportunity set. Thus, the minimum risk that we can attain for $E(R_1)$ is at Point A. Point B and all points to the right of Point A are feasible but they have higher risk. Therefore, a risk-averse investor will choose only Point A in preference to any other portfolio with the same return.

Similarly, Point C is the minimum variance point for the return earned at C. Points to the right of C have higher risk. We can extend the above analysis to all possible returns. In all cases, we find that the **minimum-variance portfolio** is the one that lies on the solid curve drawn in Exhibit 22. The entire collection of these minimum-variance portfolios is referred to as the minimum-variance frontier. The minimum-variance frontier defines the smaller set of portfolios in which investors would want to invest. Note that no risk-averse investor will choose to invest in a portfolio to the right of the minimum-variance frontier because a portfolio on the minimum-variance frontier can give the same return but at a lower risk.

5.2.2 Global Minimum-Variance Portfolio

The left-most point on the minimum-variance frontier is the portfolio with the minimum variance among all portfolios of risky assets, and is referred to as the **global minimum-variance portfolio**. An investor cannot hold a portfolio consisting of *risky* assets that has less risk than that of the global minimum-variance portfolio. Note the emphasis on “risky” assets. Later, the introduction of a risk-free asset will allow us to relax this constraint.

5.2.3 Efficient Frontier of Risky Assets

The minimum-variance frontier gives us portfolios with the minimum variance for a given return. However, investors also want to maximize return for a given risk. Observe Points A and C on the minimum-variance frontier shown in Exhibit 22. Both of them have the same risk. Given a choice, an investor will choose Portfolio A because it has a higher return. No one will choose Portfolio C. The same analysis applies to all points on the minimum-variance frontier that lie below the global minimum-variance portfolio. Thus, portfolios on the curve below the global minimum-variance portfolio and to the right of the global minimum-variance portfolio are not beneficial and are inefficient portfolios for an investor.

The curve that lies above and to the right of the global minimum-variance portfolio is referred to as the **Markowitz efficient frontier** because it contains all portfolios of risky assets that rational, risk-averse investors will choose.

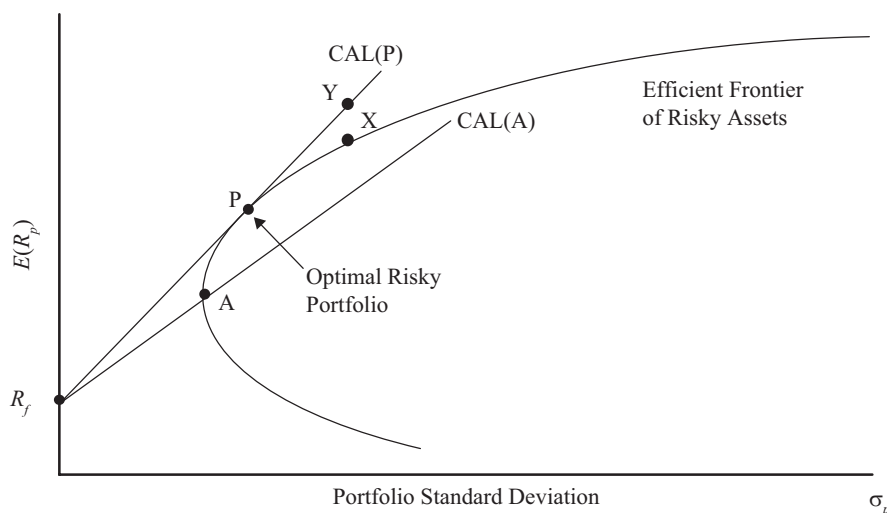
An important observation that is often ignored is the slope at various points on the efficient frontier. As we move right from the global minimum-variance portfolio (Point Z) in Exhibit 22, there is an increase in risk with a concurrent increase in return. The increase in return with every unit increase in risk, however, keeps decreasing as we move from left to the right because the slope continues to decrease. The slope at Point D is less than the slope at Point A, which is less than the slope at Point Z. The increase in return by moving from Point Z to Point A is the same as the increase in return by moving from Point A to Point D. It can be seen that the additional risk in moving from Point A to Point D is 3 to 4 times more than the additional risk in moving from Point Z to Point A. Thus, investors obtain decreasing increases in returns as they assume more risk.

5.3 A Risk-Free Asset and Many Risky Assets

Until now, we have only considered risky assets in which the return is risky or uncertain. Most investors, however, have access to a risk-free asset, most notably from securities issued by the government. The addition of a risk-free asset makes the investment opportunity set much richer than the investment opportunity set consisting only of risky assets.

5.3.1 Capital Allocation Line and Optimal Risky Portfolio

By definition, a risk-free asset has zero risk so it must lie on the y -axis in a mean-variance graph. A risk-free asset with a return of R_f is plotted in Exhibit 23. This asset can now be combined with a portfolio of risky assets. The combination of a risk-free asset with a portfolio of risky assets is a straight line, such as in Section 3.3 (see Exhibit 13). Unlike in Section 3.3, however, we have many risky portfolios to choose from instead of a single risky portfolio.

Exhibit 23 Optimal Risky Portfolio

All portfolios on the efficient frontier are candidates for being combined with the risk-free asset. Two combinations are shown in Exhibit 23: one between the risk-free asset and efficient Portfolio A and the other between the risk-free asset and efficient Portfolio P. Comparing capital allocation line A and capital allocation line P reveals that there is a point on CAL(P) with a higher return and same risk for each point on CAL(A). In other words, the portfolios on CAL(P) dominate the portfolios on CAL(A). Therefore, an investor will choose CAL(P) over CAL(A). We would like to move further northwest to achieve even better portfolios. None of those portfolios, however, is attainable because they are above the efficient frontier.

What about other points on the efficient frontier? For example, Point X is on the efficient frontier and has the highest return of all risky portfolios for its risk. However, Point Y on CAL(P), achievable by leveraging Portfolio P as seen in Section 3.3, lies above Point X and has the same risk but higher return. In the same way, we can observe that not only does CAL(P) dominate CAL(A) but it also dominates the Markowitz efficient frontier of risky assets.

CAL(P) is the optimal capital allocation line and Portfolio P is the optimal risky portfolio. Thus, with the addition of the risk-free asset, we are able to narrow our selection of risky portfolios to a single optimal risky portfolio, P, which is at the tangent of CAL(P) and the efficient frontier of risky assets.

5.3.2 The Two-Fund Separation Theorem

The **two-fund separation theorem** states that all investors regardless of taste, risk preferences, and initial wealth will hold a combination of two portfolios or funds: a risk-free asset and an optimal portfolio of risky assets.⁹

The separation theorem allows us to divide an investor's investment problem into two distinct steps: the investment decision and the financing decision. In the first step, as in the previous analysis, the investor identifies the optimal risky portfolio. The optimal risky portfolio is selected from numerous risky portfolios without considering the investor's preferences. The investment decision at this step is based on the optimal risky portfolio's (a single portfolio) return, risk, and correlations.

⁹ In the next reading, you will learn that the optimal portfolio of risky assets is the market portfolio.

The capital allocation line connects the optimal risky portfolio and the risk-free asset. All optimal investor portfolios must be on this line. Each investor's optimal portfolio on the CAL(P) is determined in the second step. Considering each individual investor's risk preference, using indifference curves, determines the investor's allocation to the risk-free asset (lending) and to the optimal risky portfolio. Portfolios beyond the optimal risky portfolio are obtained by borrowing at the risk-free rate (i.e., buying on margin). Therefore, the individual investor's risk preference determines the amount of financing (i.e., lending to the government instead of investing in the optimal risky portfolio or borrowing to purchase additional amounts of the optimal risky portfolio).

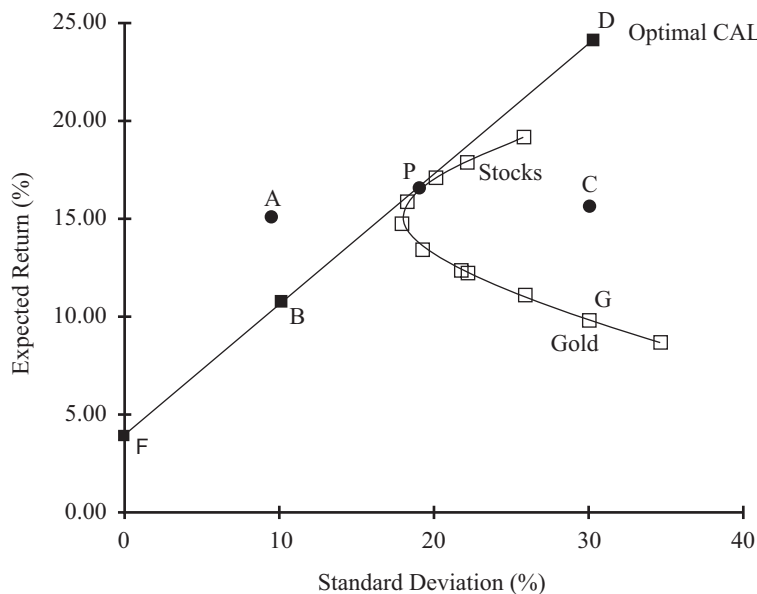
EXAMPLE 10

Choosing the Right Portfolio

In Exhibit 24, the risk and return of the points marked are as follows:

Point	Return (%)	Risk (%)	Point (%)	Return (%)	Risk (%)
A	15	10	B	11	10
C	15	30	D	25	30
F	4	0	G (gold)	10	30
P	16	17			

Exhibit 24



Answer the following questions with reference to the points plotted on Exhibit 24 and explain your answers. The investor is choosing one portfolio based on the graph.

- 1 Which of the above points is not achievable?
- 2 Which of these portfolios will not be chosen by a rational, risk-averse investor?
- 3 Which of these portfolios is most suitable for a risk-neutral investor?

- 4 Gold is on the inefficient part of the feasible set. Nonetheless, gold is owned by many rational investors as part of a larger portfolio. Why?
- 5 What is the utility of an investor at point P with a risk aversion coefficient of 3?

Solution to 1:

Portfolio A is not attainable because it lies outside the feasible set and not on the capital allocation line.

Solution to 2:

Portfolios G and C will not be chosen because D provides higher return for the same risk. G and C are the only investable points that do not lie on the capital allocation line.

Solution to 3:

Portfolio D is most suitable because a risk-neutral investor cares only about return and portfolio D provides the highest return. $A = 0$ in the utility formula.

Solution to 4:

Gold may be owned as part of a portfolio (not as *the* portfolio) because gold has low or negative correlation with many risky assets, such as stocks. Being part of a portfolio can thus reduce overall risk even though its standalone risk is high and return is low. Note that gold's price is not stable—its return is very risky (30 percent). Even risk seekers will choose D over G, which has the same risk but higher return.

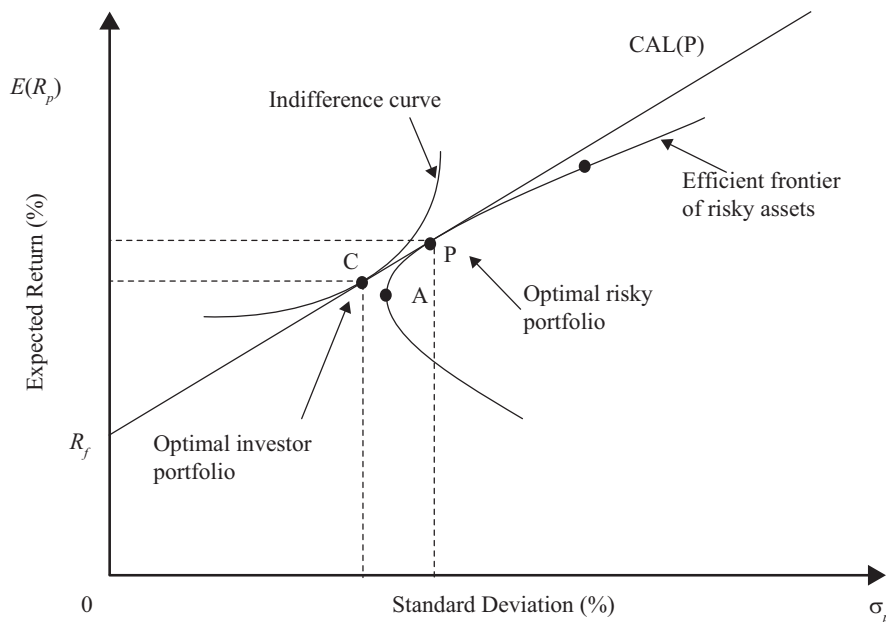
Solution to 5:

$$U = E(r) - 0.5A\sigma^2 = 0.16 - 0.5 \times 3 \times 0.0289 = 0.1167 = 11.67\%.$$

5.4 Optimal Investor Portfolio

The CAL(P) in Exhibits 23 and 25 contains the best possible portfolios available to investors. Each of those portfolios is a linear combination of the risk-free asset and the optimal risky portfolio. Among the available portfolios, the selection of each investor's optimal portfolio depends on the risk preferences of an investor. In Section 3, we discussed that the individual investor's risk preferences are incorporated into their indifference curves. These can be used to select the optimal portfolio.

Exhibit 25 shows an indifference curve that is tangent to the capital allocation line, CAL(P). Indifference curves with higher utility than this one lie above the capital allocation line, so their portfolios are not achievable. Indifference curves that lie below this one are not preferred because they have lower utility. Thus, the optimal portfolio for the investor with this indifference curve is portfolio C on CAL(P), which is tangent to the indifference curve.

Exhibit 25 Optimal Investor Portfolio

EXAMPLE 11
Comprehensive Example on Portfolio Selection

This comprehensive example reviews many concepts learned in this reading. The example begins with simple information about available assets and builds an optimal investor portfolio for the Lohrmanns.

Suppose the Lohrmanns can invest in only two risky assets, A and B. The expected return and standard deviation for asset A are 20 percent and 50 percent, and the expected return and standard deviation for asset B are 15 percent and 33 percent. The two assets have zero correlation with one another.

- 1 Calculate portfolio expected return and portfolio risk (standard deviation) if an investor invests 10 percent in A and the remaining 90 percent in B.

Solution to 1:

The subscript “*rp*” means risky portfolio.

$$R_{rp} = [0.10 \times 20\%] + [(1 - 0.10) \times 15\%] = 0.155 = 15.50\%$$

$$\begin{aligned} \sigma_{rp} &= \sqrt{w_A^2 \sigma_A^2 + w_B^2 \sigma_B^2 + 2w_A w_B \rho_{AB} \sigma_A \sigma_B} \\ &= \sqrt{(0.10^2 \times 0.50^2) + (0.90^2 \times 0.33^2) + (2 \times 0.10 \times 0.90 \times 0.0 \times 0.50 \times 0.33)} \\ &= 0.3012 = 30.12\% \end{aligned}$$

Note that the correlation coefficient is 0, so the last term for standard deviation is zero.

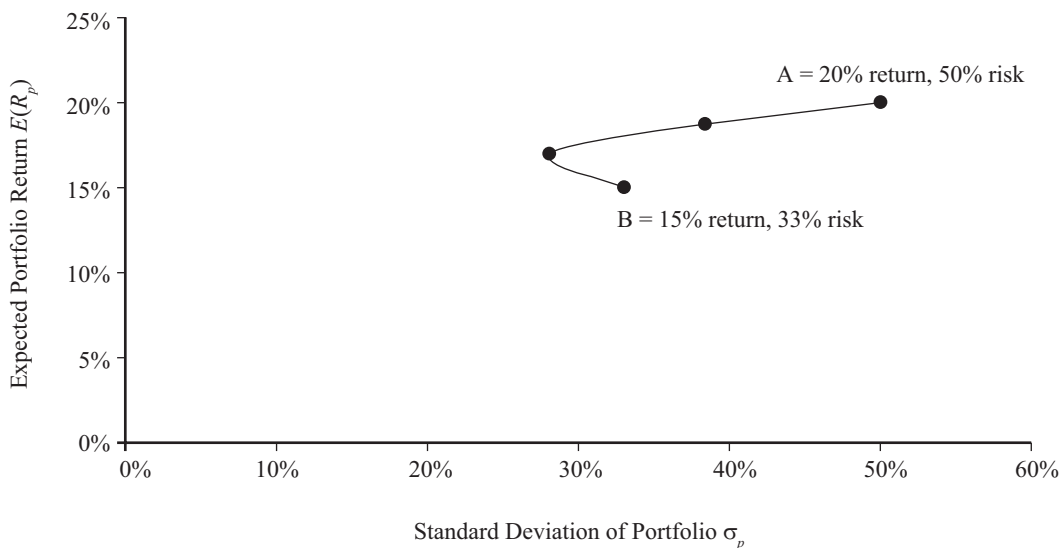
- 2 Generalize the above calculations for portfolio return and risk by assuming an investment of w_A in Asset A and an investment of $(1 - w_A)$ in Asset B.

Solution to 2:

$$R_{rp} = w_A \times 20\% + (1 - w_A) \times 15\% = 0.05w_A + 0.15$$

$$\begin{aligned} \sigma_{rp} &= \sqrt{w_A^2 \times 0.5^2 + (1 - w_A)^2 \times 0.33^2} = \sqrt{0.25w_A^2 + 0.1089(1 - 2w_A + w_A^2)} \\ &= \sqrt{0.3589w_A^2 - 0.2178w_A + 0.1089} \end{aligned}$$

The investment opportunity set can be constructed by using different weights in the expressions for $E(R_{rp})$ and σ_{rp} in Part 1 of this example. Exhibit 26 shows the combination of Assets A and B.

Exhibit 26

- 3 Now introduce a risk-free asset with a return of 3 percent. Write an equation for the capital allocation line in terms of w_A that will connect the risk-free asset to the portfolio of risky assets. (Hint: use the equation in Section 3.3 and substitute the expressions for a risky portfolio's risk and return from Part 2 above).

Solution to 3:

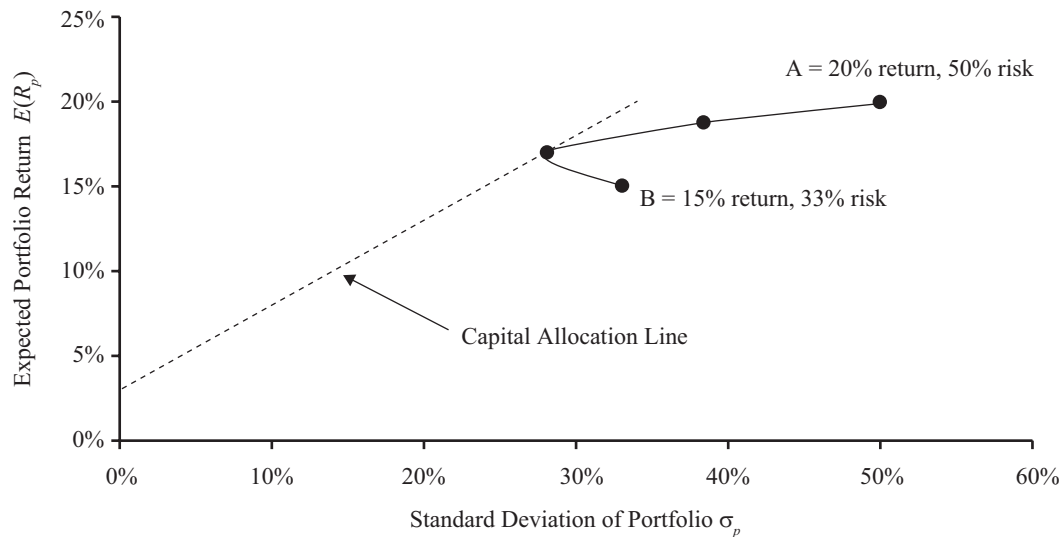
The equation of the line connecting the risk-free asset to the portfolio of risky assets is given below (see Section 3.3), where the subscript “ rp ” refers to the risky portfolio instead of “ i ,” and the subscript “ p ” refers to the new portfolio of two risky assets and one risk-free asset.

$$E(R_p) = R_f + \frac{E(R_i) - R_f}{\sigma_i} \sigma_p,$$

Rewritten as

$$\begin{aligned} E(R_p) &= R_f + \frac{E(R_{rp}) - R_f}{\sigma_{rp}} \sigma_p \\ &= 0.03 + \frac{0.05w_A + 0.15 - 0.03}{\sqrt{0.3589w_A^2 - 0.2178w_A + 0.1089}} \sigma_p \\ &= 0.03 + \frac{0.05w_A + 0.12}{\sqrt{0.3589w_A^2 - 0.2178w_A + 0.1089}} \sigma_p \end{aligned}$$

The capital allocation line is the line that has the maximum slope because it is tangent to the curve formed by portfolios of the two risky assets. Exhibit 27 shows the capital allocation line based on a risk-free asset added to the group of assets.

Exhibit 27

- 4 The slope of the capital allocation line is maximized when the weight in Asset A is 38.20 percent.¹⁰ What is the equation for the capital allocation line using w_A of 38.20 percent?

¹⁰ You can maximize $\frac{0.05w_A + 0.12}{\sqrt{0.3589w_A^2 - 0.2178w_A + 0.1089}}$ by taking the first derivative of the slope with respect to w_A and setting it to 0.

Solution to 4:

By substituting 38.20 percent for w_A in the equation in Part 3, we get $E(R_p) = 0.03 + 0.4978\sigma_p$ as the capital allocation line.

- 5 Having created the capital allocation line, we turn to the Lohrmanns. What is the standard deviation of a portfolio that gives a 20 percent return and is on the capital allocation line? How does this portfolio compare with asset A?

Solution to 5:

Solve the equation for the capital allocation line to get the standard deviation: $0.20 = 0.03 + 0.4978\sigma_p$, $\sigma_p = 34.2\%$. The portfolio with a 20 percent return has the same return as Asset A but a lower standard deviation, 34.2 percent instead of 50.0 percent.

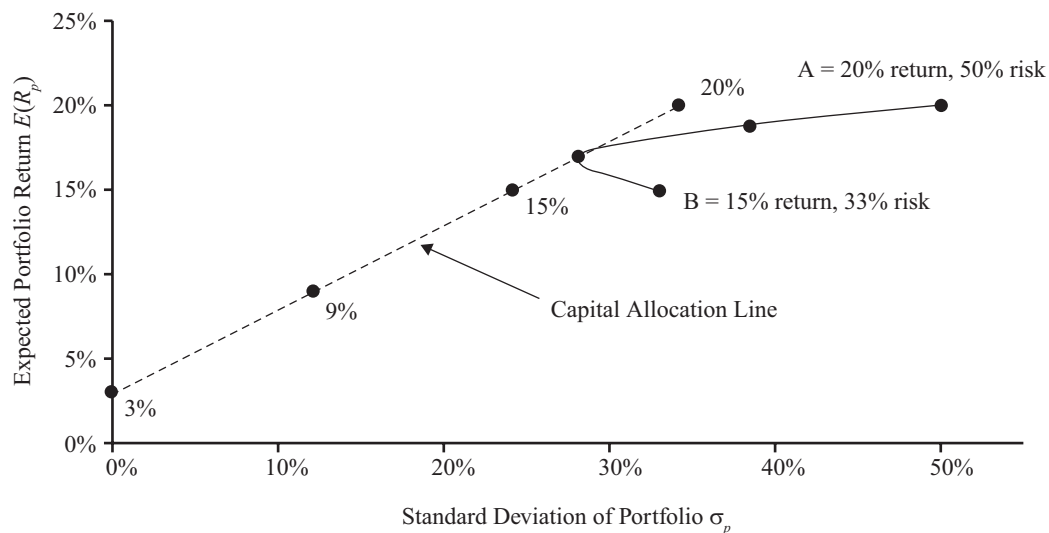
- 6 What is the risk of portfolios with returns of 3 percent, 9 percent, 15 percent, and 20 percent?

Solution to 6:

You can find the risk of the portfolio using the equation for the capital allocation line: $E(R_p) = 0.03 + 0.4978\sigma_p$.

For a portfolio with a return of 15 percent, write $0.15 = 0.03 + 0.4978\sigma_p$. Solving for σ_p gives 24.1 percent. You can similarly calculate risks of other portfolios with the given returns.

The risk of the portfolio for a return of 3 percent is 0.0 percent, for a return of 9 percent is 12.1 percent, for a return of 15 percent is 24.1 percent, and for a return of 20 percent is 34.2 percent. The points are plotted in Exhibit 28.

Exhibit 28

- 7 What is the utility that the Lohrmanns derive from a portfolio with a return of 3 percent, 9 percent, 15 percent, and 20 percent? The risk aversion coefficient for the Lohrmanns is 2.5.

Solution to 7:

To find the utility, use the utility formula with a risk aversion coefficient of 2.5:

$$\text{Utility} = E(R_p) - 0.5 \times 2.5 \sigma_p^2$$

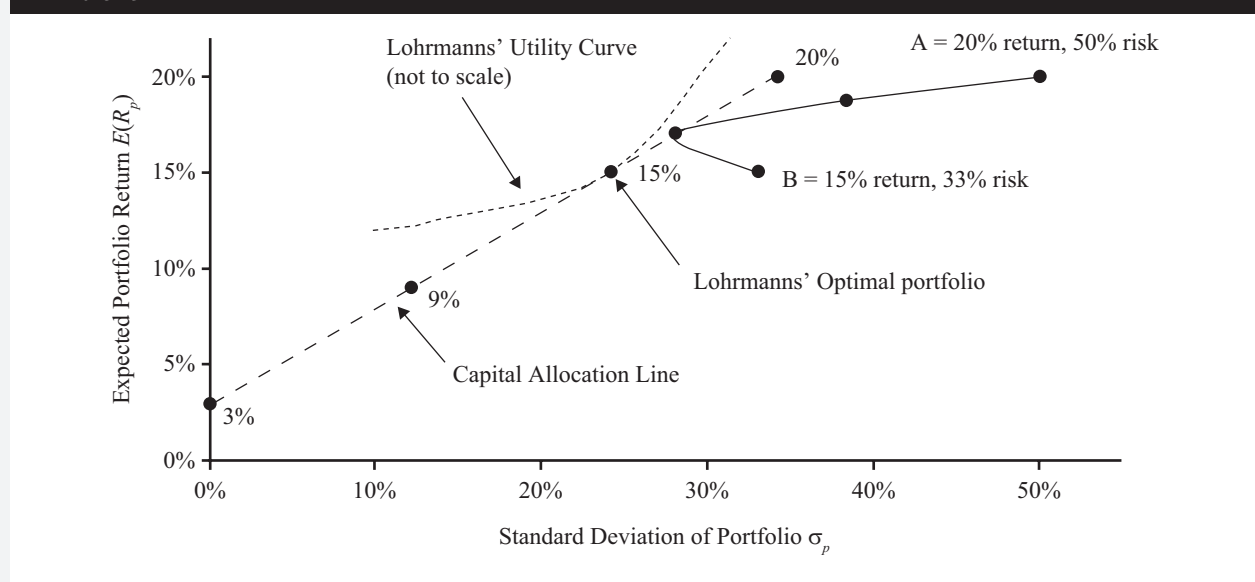
$$\text{Utility (3\%)} = 0.0300$$

$$\text{Utility (9\%)} = 0.09 - 0.5 \times 2.5 \times 0.121^2 = +0.0717$$

$$\text{Utility (15\%)} = 0.15 - 0.5 \times 2.5 \times 0.241^2 = +0.0774$$

$$\text{Utility (20\%)} = 0.20 - 0.5 \times 2.5 \times 0.341^2 = +0.0546$$

Based on the above information, the Lohrmanns choose a portfolio with a return of 15 percent and a standard deviation of 24.1 percent because it has the highest utility: 0.0774. Finally, Exhibit 29 shows the indifference curve that is tangent to the capital allocation line to generate Lohrmanns' optimal investor portfolio.

Exhibit 29**5.4.1 Investor Preferences and Optimal Portfolios**

The location of an optimal investor portfolio depends on the investor's risk preferences. A highly risk-averse investor may invest a large proportion, even 100 percent, of his/her assets in the risk-free asset. The optimal portfolio in this investor's case will be located close to the y-axis. A less risk-averse investor, however, may invest a large portion of his/her wealth in the optimal risky asset. The optimal portfolio in this investor's case will lie closer to Point P in Exhibit 25.

Some less risk-averse investors (i.e., with a high risk tolerance) may wish to accept even more risk because of the chance of higher return. Such an investor may borrow money to invest more in the risky portfolio. If the investor borrows 25 percent of his wealth, he/she can invest 125 percent in the optimal risky portfolio. The optimal investor portfolio for such an investor will lie to the right of Point P on the capital allocation line.

Thus, moving from the risk-free asset along the capital allocation line, we encounter investors who are willing to accept more risk. At Point P, the investor is 100 percent invested in the optimal risky portfolio. Beyond Point P, the investor accepts even more risk by borrowing money and investing in the optimal risky portfolio.

Note that we are able to accommodate all types of investors with just two portfolios: the risk-free asset and the optimal risky portfolio. Exhibit 25 is also an illustration of the two-fund separation theorem. Portfolio P is the optimal risky portfolio that is selected without regard to investor preferences. The optimal investor portfolio is selected on the capital allocation line by overlaying the indifference curves that incorporate investor preferences.

SUMMARY

This reading provides a description and computation of investment characteristics, such as risk and return, that investors use in evaluating assets for investment. This was followed by sections about portfolio construction, selection of an optimal risky portfolio, and an understanding of risk aversion and indifference curves. Finally, the tangency point of the indifference curves with the capital allocation line allows identification of the optimal investor portfolio. Key concepts covered in the reading include the following:

- Holding period return is most appropriate for a single, predefined holding period.
- Multiperiod returns can be aggregated in many ways. Each return computation has special applications for evaluating investments.
- Risk-averse investors make investment decisions based on the risk–return trade-off, maximizing return for the same risk, and minimizing risk for the same return. They may be concerned, however, by deviations from a normal return distribution and from assumptions of financial markets’ operational efficiency.
- Investors are risk averse, and historical data confirm that financial markets price assets for risk-averse investors.
- The risk of a two-asset portfolio is dependent on the proportions of each asset, their standard deviations and the correlation (or covariance) between the asset’s returns. As the number of assets in a portfolio increases, the correlation among asset risks becomes a more important determinate of portfolio risk.
- Combining assets with low correlations reduces portfolio risk.
- The two-fund separation theorem allows us to separate decision making into two steps. In the first step, the optimal risky portfolio and the capital allocation line are identified, which are the same for all investors. In the second step, investor risk preferences enable us to find a unique optimal investor portfolio for each investor.
- The addition of a risk-free asset creates portfolios that are dominant to portfolios of risky assets in all cases except for the optimal risky portfolio.

By successfully understanding the content of this reading, you should be comfortable calculating an investor’s optimal portfolio given the investor’s risk preferences and universe of investable assets available.

REFERENCES

- 2009 Ibbotson *Stocks, Bonds, Bills, and Inflation (S&P) Classic Yearbook*. 2009. Chicago, IL: Morningstar.
- Bogle, John C. 2008. "Black Monday and Black Swans." *Financial Analysts Journal*, vol. 64, no. 2: 30–40.
- Dimson, Elroy, Paul Marsh, and Mike Staunton. 2009. *Credit Suisse Global Investment Returns Sourcebook*. 2009. Zurich, Switzerland: Credit Suisse Research Institute.
- Taleb, Nassim N. 2007. *The Black Swan: The Impact of the Highly Improbable*. New York: Random House Inc.

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

- 1 An investor purchased 100 shares of a stock for \$34.50 per share at the beginning of the quarter. If the investor sold all of the shares for \$30.50 per share after receiving a \$51.55 dividend payment at the end of the quarter, the holding period return is *closest* to:
- A -13.0%
 B -11.6%
 C -10.1%

- 2 An analyst obtains the following annual rates of return for a mutual fund:

Year	Return (%)
2008	14
2009	-10
2010	-2

The fund's holding period return over the three-year period is *closest* to:

- A 0.18%
 B 0.55%
 C 0.67%
- 3 An analyst observes the following annual rates of return for a hedge fund:

Year	Return (%)
2008	22
2009	-25
2010	11

The hedge fund's annual geometric mean return is *closest* to:

- A 0.52%
 B 1.02%
 C 2.67%
- 4 Which of the following return calculating methods is *best* for evaluating the annualized returns of a buy-and-hold strategy of an investor who has made annual deposits to an account for each of the last five years?
- A Geometric mean return.
 B Arithmetic mean return.
 C Money-weighted return.
- 5 An investor evaluating the returns of three recently formed exchange-traded funds gathers the following information:

ETF	Time Since Inception	Return Since Inception (%)
1	146 days	4.61
2	5 weeks	1.10
3	15 months	14.35

The ETF with the highest annualized rate of return is:

- A ETF 1.
 B ETF 2.
 C ETF 3.
- 6 With respect to capital market theory, which of the following asset characteristics is *least likely* to impact the variance of an investor's equally weighted portfolio?
 A Return on the asset.
 B Standard deviation of the asset.
 C Covariances of the asset with the other assets in the portfolio.
- 7 A portfolio manager creates the following portfolio:

Security	Security Weight (%)	Expected Standard Deviation (%)
1	30	20
2	70	12

If the correlation of returns between the two securities is 0.40, the expected standard deviation of the portfolio is *closest* to:

- A 10.7%.
 B 11.3%.
 C 12.1%.
- 8 A portfolio manager creates the following portfolio:

Security	Security Weight (%)	Expected Standard Deviation (%)
1	30	20
2	70	12

If the covariance of returns between the two securities is -0.0240 , the expected standard deviation of the portfolio is *closest* to:

- A 2.4%.
 B 7.5%.
 C 9.2%.

The following information relates to Questions 9–10

A portfolio manager creates the following portfolio:

Security	Security Weight (%)	Expected Standard Deviation (%)
1	30	20
2	70	12

- 9 If the standard deviation of the portfolio is 14.40%, the correlation between the two securities is equal to:
 A -1.0 .

- B 0.0.
C 1.0.
- 10 If the standard deviation of the portfolio is 14.40%, the covariance between the two securities is equal to:
A 0.0006.
B 0.0240.
C 1.0000.

The following information relates to Questions 11–14

An analyst observes the following historic geometric returns:

Asset Class	Geometric Return (%)
Equities	8.0
Corporate Bonds	6.5
Treasury bills	2.5
Inflation	2.1

- 11 The real rate of return for equities is *closest* to:
A 5.4%.
B 5.8%.
C 5.9%.
- 12 The real rate of return for corporate bonds is *closest* to:
A 4.3%.
B 4.4%.
C 4.5%.
- 13 The risk premium for equities is *closest* to:
A 3.2%.
B 3.4%.
C 3.6%.
- 14 The risk premium for corporate bonds is *closest* to:
A 1.5%.
B 1.8%.
C 2.1%.
-
- 15 With respect to trading costs, liquidity is *least likely* to impact the:
A stock price.
B bid–ask spreads.
C brokerage commissions.
- 16 Evidence of risk aversion is *best* illustrated by a risk–return relationship that is:
A negative.

- B** neutral.
C positive.
- 17** With respect to risk-averse investors, a risk-free asset will generate a numerical utility that is:
A the same for all individuals.
B positive for risk-averse investors.
C equal to zero for risk seeking investors.
- 18** With respect to utility theory, the most risk-averse investor will have an indifference curve with the:
A most convexity.
B smallest intercept value.
C greatest slope coefficient.
- 19** With respect to an investor's utility function expressed as: $U = E(r) - \frac{1}{2}A\sigma^2$, which of the following values for the measure for risk aversion has the *least* amount of risk aversion?
A -4.
B 0.
C 4.

The following information relates to Questions 20–23

A financial planner has created the following data to illustrate the application of utility theory to portfolio selection:

Investment	Expected Return (%)	Expected Standard Deviation (%)
1	18	2
2	19	8
3	20	15
4	18	30

- 20** A risk-neutral investor is *most likely* to choose:
A Investment 1.
B Investment 2.
C Investment 3.
- 21** If an investor's utility function is expressed as $U = E(r) - \frac{1}{2}A\sigma^2$ and the measure for risk aversion has a value of -2, the risk-seeking investor is *most likely* to choose:
A Investment 2.
B Investment 3.
C Investment 4.

- 22 If an investor's utility function is expressed as $U = E(r) - \frac{1}{2}A\sigma^2$ and the measure for risk aversion has a value of 2, the risk-averse investor is *most likely* to choose:
- A Investment 1.
 - B Investment 2.
 - C Investment 3.
- 23 If an investor's utility function is expressed as $U = E(r) - \frac{1}{2}A\sigma^2$ and the measure for risk aversion has a value of 4, the risk-averse investor is *most likely* to choose:
- A Investment 1.
 - B Investment 2.
 - C Investment 3.
-
- 24 With respect to the mean–variance portfolio theory, the capital allocation line, CAL, is the combination of the risk-free asset and a portfolio of all:
- A risky assets.
 - B equity securities.
 - C feasible investments.
- 25 Two individual investors with different levels of risk aversion will have optimal portfolios that are:
- A below the capital allocation line.
 - B on the capital allocation line.
 - C above the capital allocation line.

The following information relates to Questions 26–28

A portfolio manager creates the following portfolio:

Security	Expected Annual Return (%)	Expected Standard Deviation (%)
1	16	20
2	12	20

- 26 If the portfolio of the two securities has an expected return of 15%, the proportion invested in Security 1 is:
- A 25%.
 - B 50%.
 - C 75%.
- 27 If the correlation of returns between the two securities is -0.15 , the expected standard deviation of an equal-weighted portfolio is *closest* to:
- A 13.04%.
 - B 13.60%.

- C 13.87%.
- 28 If the two securities are uncorrelated, the expected standard deviation of an equal-weighted portfolio is *closest* to:
- A 14.00%.
B 14.14%.
C 20.00%.
-
- 29 As the number of assets in an equally-weighted portfolio increases, the contribution of each individual asset's variance to the volatility of the portfolio:
- A increases.
B decreases.
C remains the same.
- 30 With respect to an equally-weighted portfolio made up of a large number of assets, which of the following contributes the *most* to the volatility of the portfolio?
- A Average variance of the individual assets.
B Standard deviation of the individual assets.
C Average covariance between all pairs of assets.
- 31 The correlation between assets in a two-asset portfolio increases during a market decline. If there is no change in the proportion of each asset held in the portfolio or the expected standard deviation of the individual assets, the volatility of the portfolio is *most likely* to:
- A increase.
B decrease.
C remain the same.

The following information relates to Questions 32–34

An analyst has made the following return projections for each of three possible outcomes with an equal likelihood of occurrence:

Asset	Outcome 1 (%)	Outcome 2 (%)	Outcome 3 (%)	Expected Return (%)
1	12	0	6	6
2	12	6	0	6
3	0	6	12	6

- 32 Which pair of assets is perfectly negatively correlated?
- A Asset 1 and Asset 2.
B Asset 1 and Asset 3.
C Asset 2 and Asset 3.
- 33 If the analyst constructs two-asset portfolios that are equally-weighted, which pair of assets has the *lowest* expected standard deviation?
- A Asset 1 and Asset 2.

- B Asset 1 and Asset 3.
C Asset 2 and Asset 3.
- 34 If the analyst constructs two-asset portfolios that are equally weighted, which pair of assets provides the *least* amount of risk reduction?
A Asset 1 and Asset 2.
B Asset 1 and Asset 3.
C Asset 2 and Asset 3.
-
- 35 Which of the following statements is *least* accurate? The efficient frontier is the set of all attainable risky assets with the:
A highest expected return for a given level of risk.
B lowest amount of risk for a given level of return.
C highest expected return relative to the risk-free rate.
- 36 The portfolio on the minimum-variance frontier with the lowest standard deviation is:
A unattainable.
B the optimal risky portfolio.
C the global minimum-variance portfolio.
- 37 The set of portfolios on the minimum-variance frontier that dominates all sets of portfolios below the global minimum-variance portfolio is the:
A capital allocation line.
B Markowitz efficient frontier.
C set of optimal risky portfolios.
- 38 The dominant capital allocation line is the combination of the risk-free asset and the:
A optimal risky portfolio.
B levered portfolio of risky assets.
C global minimum-variance portfolio.
- 39 Compared to the efficient frontier of risky assets, the dominant capital allocation line has higher rates of return for levels of risk greater than the optimal risky portfolio because of the investor's ability to:
A lend at the risk-free rate.
B borrow at the risk-free rate.
C purchase the risk-free asset.
- 40 With respect to the mean-variance theory, the optimal portfolio is determined by each individual investor's:
A risk-free rate.
B borrowing rate.
C risk preference.

SOLUTIONS

- 1 C is correct. -10.1% is the holding period return, which is calculated as: $(3,050 - 3,450 + 51.55)/3,450$, which is comprised of a dividend yield of $1.49\% = 51.55/(3,450)$ and a capital loss yield of $-11.59\% = -400/(3,450)$.
- 2 B is correct. $[(1 + 0.14)(1 - 0.10)(1 - 0.02)] - 1 = 0.0055 = 0.55\%$.
- 3 A is correct. $[(1 + 0.22)(1 - 0.25)(1 + 0.11)]^{(1/3)} - 1 = 1.0157^{(1/3)} - 1 = 0.0052 = 0.52\%$
- 4 A is correct. The geometric mean return compounds the returns instead of the amount invested.
- 5 B is correct. The annualized rate of return for ETF 2 is $12.05\% = (1.0110^{52/5}) - 1$, which is greater than the annualized rate of ETF 1, $11.93\% = (1.0461^{365/146}) - 1$, and ETF 3, $11.32\% = (1.1435^{12/15}) - 1$. Despite having the lowest value for the periodic rate, ETF 2 has the highest annualized rate of return because of the reinvestment rate assumption and the compounding of the periodic rate.
- 6 A is correct. The asset's returns are not used to calculate the portfolio's variance [only the assets' weights, standard deviations (or variances), and covariances (or correlations) are used].
- 7 C is correct.

$$\begin{aligned}\sigma_{port} &= \sqrt{w_1^2\sigma_1^2 + w_2^2\sigma_2^2 + 2w_1w_2\rho_{1,2}\sigma_1\sigma_2} \\ &= \sqrt{(0.3)^2(20\%)^2 + (0.7)^2(12\%)^2 + 2(0.3)(0.7)(0.40)(20\%)(12\%)} \\ &= (0.3600\% + 0.7056\% + 0.4032\%)^{0.5} = (1.4688\%)^{0.5} = 12.11\%\end{aligned}$$

- 8 A is correct.

$$\begin{aligned}\sigma_{port} &= \sqrt{w_1^2\sigma_1^2 + w_2^2\sigma_2^2 + 2w_1w_2Cov(R_1R_2)} \\ &= \sqrt{(0.3)^2(20\%)^2 + (0.7)^2(12\%)^2 + 2(0.3)(0.7)(-0.0240)} \\ &= (0.3600\% + 0.7056\% - 1.008\%)^{0.5} = (0.0576\%)^{0.5} = 2.40\%\end{aligned}$$

- 9 C is correct. A portfolio standard deviation of 14.40% is the weighted average, which is possible only if the correlation between the securities is equal to 1.0 .
- 10 B is correct. A portfolio standard deviation of 14.40% is the weighted average, which is possible only if the correlation between the securities is equal to 1.0 . If the correlation coefficient is equal to 1.0 , then the covariance must equal 0.0240 , calculated as: $Cov(R_1, R_2) = \rho_{12}\sigma_1\sigma_2 = (1.0)(20\%)(12\%) = 2.40\% = 0.0240$.
- 11 B is correct. $(1 + 0.080)/(1 + 0.0210) - 1 = 5.8\%$
- 12 A is correct. $(1 + 0.065)/(1 + 0.0210) - 1 = 4.3\%$
- 13 A is correct. $(1 + 0.058)/(1 + 0.0250) - 1 = 3.2\%$
- 14 B is correct. $(1 + 0.043)/(1 + 0.0250) - 1 = 1.8\%$
- 15 C is correct. Brokerage commissions are negotiated with the brokerage firm. A security's liquidity impacts the operational efficiency of trading costs. Specifically, liquidity impacts the bid-ask spread and can impact the stock price (if the ability to sell the stock is impaired by the uncertainty associated with being able to sell the stock).

- 16 C is correct. Historical data over long periods of time indicate that there exists a positive risk–return relationship, which is a reflection of an investor’s risk aversion.
- 17 A is correct. A risk-free asset has a variance of zero and is not dependent on whether the investor is risk neutral, risk seeking or risk averse. That is, given that the utility function of an investment is expressed as $U = E(r) - \frac{1}{2}A\sigma^2$, where A is the measure of risk aversion, then the sign of A is irrelevant if the variance is zero (like that of a risk-free asset).
- 18 C is correct. The most risk-averse investor has the indifference curve with the greatest slope.
- 19 A is correct. A negative value in the given utility function indicates that the investor is a risk seeker.
- 20 C is correct. Investment 3 has the highest rate of return. Risk is irrelevant to a risk-neutral investor, who would have a measure of risk aversion equal to 0. Given the utility function, the risk-neutral investor would obtain the greatest amount of utility from Investment 3.

Investment	Expected Return (%)	Expected Standard Deviation (%)	Utility $A = 0$
1	18	2	0.1800
2	19	8	0.1900
3	20	15	0.2000
4	18	30	0.1800

- 21 C is correct. Investment 4 provides the highest utility value (0.2700) for a risk-seeking investor, who has a measure of risk aversion equal to -2 .

Investment	Expected Return (%)	Expected Standard Deviation (%)	Utility $A = -2$
1	18	2	0.1804
2	19	8	0.1964
3	20	15	0.2225
4	18	30	0.2700

- 22 B is correct. Investment 2 provides the highest utility value (0.1836) for a risk-averse investor who has a measure of risk aversion equal to 2.

Investment	Expected Return (%)	Expected Standard Deviation (%)	Utility $A = 2$
1	18	2	0.1796
2	19	8	0.1836
3	20	15	0.1775
4	18	30	0.0900

- 23 A is correct. Investment 1 provides the highest utility value (0.1792) for a risk-averse investor who has a measure of risk aversion equal to 4.

Investment	Expected Return (%)	Expected Standard Deviation (%)	Utility A = 4
1	18	2	0.1792
2	19	8	0.1772
3	20	15	0.1550
4	18	30	0.0000

- 24** A is correct. The CAL is the combination of the risk-free asset with zero risk and the portfolio of all risky assets that provides for the set of feasible investments. Allowing for borrowing at the risk-free rate and investing in the portfolio of all risky assets provides for attainable portfolios that dominate risky assets below the CAL.
- 25** B is correct. The CAL represents the set of all feasible investments. Each investor's indifference curve determines the optimal combination of the risk-free asset and the portfolio of all risky assets, which must lie on the CAL.
- 26** C is correct.

$$R_p = w_1 \times R_1 + (1 - w_1) \times R_2$$

$$R_p = w_1 \times 16\% + (1 - w_1) \times 12\%$$

$$15\% = 0.75(16\%) + 0.25(12\%)$$

- 27** A is correct.

$$\sigma_{port} = \sqrt{w_1^2 \sigma_1^2 + w_2^2 \sigma_2^2 + 2w_1 w_2 \rho_{1,2} \sigma_1 \sigma_2}$$

$$= \sqrt{(0.5)^2 (20\%)^2 + (0.5)^2 (20\%)^2 + 2(0.5)(0.5)(-0.15)(20\%)(20\%)}$$

$$= (1.0000\% + 1.0000\% - 0.3000\%)^{0.5} = (1.7000\%)^{0.5} = 13.04\%$$

- 28** B is correct.

$$\sigma_{port} = \sqrt{w_1^2 \sigma_1^2 + w_2^2 \sigma_2^2 + 2w_1 w_2 \rho_{1,2} \sigma_1 \sigma_2}$$

$$= \sqrt{(0.5)^2 (20\%)^2 + (0.5)^2 (20\%)^2 + 2(0.5)(0.5)(0.00)(20\%)(20\%)}$$

$$= (1.0000\% + 1.0000\% + 0.0000\%)^{0.5} = (2.0000\%)^{0.5} = 14.14\%$$

- 29** B is correct. The contribution of each individual asset's variance (or standard deviation) to the portfolio's volatility decreases as the number of assets in the equally weighted portfolio increases. The contribution of the co-movement measures between the assets increases (i.e., covariance and correlation) as the number of assets in the equally weighted portfolio increases. The following equation for the variance of an equally weighted portfolio illustrates these

$$\text{points: } \sigma_p^2 = \frac{\bar{\sigma}^2}{N} + \frac{N-1}{N} \overline{COV} = \frac{\bar{\sigma}^2}{N} + \frac{N-1}{N} \bar{\rho} \bar{\sigma}^2.$$

- 30** C is correct. The co-movement measures between the assets increases (i.e., covariance and correlation) as the number of assets in the equally weighted portfolio increases. The contribution of each individual asset's variance (or

standard deviation) to the portfolio's volatility decreases as the number of assets in the equally weighted portfolio increases. The following equation for the variance of an equally weighted portfolio illustrates these points:

$$\sigma_p^2 = \frac{\bar{\sigma}^2}{N} + \frac{N-1}{N} COV = \frac{\bar{\sigma}^2}{N} + \frac{N-1}{N} \rho \bar{\sigma}^2$$

- 31** A is correct. Higher correlations will produce less diversification benefits provided that the other components of the portfolio standard deviation do not change (i.e., the weights and standard deviations of the individual assets).
- 32** C is correct. Asset 2 and Asset 3 have returns that are the same for Outcome 2, but the exact opposite returns for Outcome 1 and Outcome 3; therefore, because they move in opposite directions at the same magnitude, they are perfectly negatively correlated.
- 33** C is correct. An equally weighted portfolio of Asset 2 and Asset 3 will have the lowest portfolio standard deviation, because for each outcome, the portfolio has the same expected return (they are perfectly negatively correlated).
- 34** A is correct. An equally weighted portfolio of Asset 1 and Asset 2 has the highest level of volatility of the three pairs. All three pairs have the same expected return; however, the portfolio of Asset 1 and Asset 2 provides the least amount of risk reduction.
- 35** C is correct. The efficient frontier does not account for the risk-free rate. The efficient frontier is the set of all attainable risky assets with the highest expected return for a given level of risk or the lowest amount of risk for a given level of return.
- 36** C is correct. The global minimum-variance portfolio is the portfolio on the minimum-variance frontier with the lowest standard deviation. Although the portfolio is attainable, when the risk-free asset is considered, the global minimum-variance portfolio is not the optimal risky portfolio.
- 37** B is correct. The Markowitz efficient frontier has higher rates of return for a given level of risk. With respect to the minimum-variance portfolio, the Markowitz efficient frontier is the set of portfolios above the global minimum-variance portfolio that dominates the portfolios below the global minimum-variance portfolio.
- 38** A is correct. The use of leverage and the combination of a risk-free asset and the optimal risky asset will dominate the efficient frontier of risky assets (the Markowitz efficient frontier).
- 39** B is correct. The CAL dominates the efficient frontier at all points except for the optimal risky portfolio. The ability of the investor to purchase additional amounts of the optimal risky portfolio by borrowing (i.e., buying on margin) at the risk-free rate makes higher rates of return for levels of risk greater than the optimal risky asset possible.
- 40** C is correct. Each individual investor's optimal mix of the risk-free asset and the optimal risky asset is determined by the investor's risk preference.

Portfolio Risk and Return: Part II

by Vijay Singal, PhD, CFA

Vijay Singal, PhD, CFA, is at Virginia Tech (USA).

LEARNING OUTCOMES

<i>Mastery</i>	<i>The candidate should be able to:</i>
<input type="checkbox"/>	a. describe the implications of combining a risk-free asset with a portfolio of risky assets;
<input type="checkbox"/>	b. explain the capital allocation line (CAL) and the capital market line (CML);
<input type="checkbox"/>	c. explain systematic and nonsystematic risk, including why an investor should not expect to receive additional return for bearing nonsystematic risk;
<input type="checkbox"/>	d. explain return generating models (including the market model) and their uses;
<input type="checkbox"/>	e. calculate and interpret beta;
<input type="checkbox"/>	f. explain the capital asset pricing model (CAPM), including its assumptions, and the security market line (SML);
<input type="checkbox"/>	g. calculate and interpret the expected return of an asset using the CAPM;
<input type="checkbox"/>	h. describe and demonstrate applications of the CAPM and the SML;
<input type="checkbox"/>	i. calculate and interpret the Sharpe ratio, Treynor ratio, M^2 , and Jensen's alpha.

INTRODUCTION

1

Our objective in this reading is to identify the optimal risky portfolio for all investors by using the capital asset pricing model (CAPM). The foundation of this reading is the computation of risk and return of a portfolio and the role that correlation plays in diversifying portfolio risk and arriving at the efficient frontier. The efficient frontier and the capital allocation line consist of portfolios that are generally acceptable to all

investors. By combining an investor's individual indifference curves with the market-determined capital allocation line, we are able to illustrate that the only optimal risky portfolio for an investor is the portfolio of all risky assets (i.e., the market).

Additionally, we discuss the capital market line, a special case of the capital allocation line that is used for passive investor portfolios. We also differentiate between systematic and nonsystematic risk, and explain why investors are compensated for bearing systematic risk but receive no compensation for bearing nonsystematic risk. We discuss in detail the CAPM, which is a simple model for estimating asset returns based only on the asset's systematic risk. Finally, we illustrate how the CAPM allows security selection to build an optimal portfolio for an investor by changing the asset mix beyond a passive market portfolio.

The reading is organized as follows. In Section 2, we discuss the consequences of combining a risk-free asset with the market portfolio and provide an interpretation of the capital market line. Section 3 decomposes total risk into systematic and nonsystematic risk and discusses the characteristics of and differences between the two kinds of risk. We also introduce return-generating models, including the single-index model, and illustrate the calculation of beta by using formulas and graphically by using the security characteristic line. In Section 4, we introduce the capital asset pricing model and the security market line. We discuss many applications of the CAPM and the SML throughout the reading, including the use of expected return in making capital budgeting decisions, the evaluation of portfolios using the CAPM's risk-adjusted return as the benchmark, security selection, and determining whether adding a new security to the current portfolio is appropriate. Our focus on the CAPM does not suggest that the CAPM is the only viable asset pricing model. Although the CAPM is an excellent starting point, more advanced readings expand on these discussions and extend the analysis to other models that account for multiple explanatory factors. A preview of a number of these models is given in Section 5, and a summary and practice problems conclude the reading.

2

CAPITAL MARKET THEORY

You have learned how to combine a risk-free asset with one risky asset and with many risky assets to create a capital allocation line. In this section, we will expand our discussion of multiple risky assets and consider a special case of the capital allocation line, called the capital market line. While discussing the capital market line, we will define the market and its role in passive portfolio management. Using these concepts, we will illustrate how leveraged portfolios can enhance both risk and return.

2.1 Portfolio of Risk-Free and Risky Assets

Although investors desire an asset that produces the highest return and carries the lowest risk, such an asset does not exist. As the risk–return capital market theory illustrates, one must assume higher risk in order to earn a higher return. We can improve an investor's portfolio, however, by expanding the opportunity set of risky assets because this allows the investor to choose a superior mix of assets.

Similarly, an investor's portfolio improves if a risk-free asset is added to the mix. In other words, a combination of the risk-free asset and a risky asset can result in a better risk–return trade-off than an investment in only one type of asset because the risk-free asset has zero correlation with the risky asset. The combination is called the **capital allocation line** (and is depicted in Exhibit 2). Superimposing an investor's indifference curves on the capital allocation line will lead to the optimal investor portfolio.

Investors with different levels of risk aversion will choose different portfolios. Highly risk-averse investors choose to invest most of their wealth in the risk-free asset and earn low returns because they are not willing to assume higher levels of risk. Less risk-averse investors, in contrast, invest more of their wealth in the risky asset, which is expected to yield a higher return. Obviously, the higher return cannot come without higher risk, but the less risk-averse investor is willing to accept the additional risk.

2.1.1 Combining a Risk-Free Asset with a Portfolio of Risky Assets

We can extend the analysis of one risky asset to a portfolio of risky assets. For convenience, assume that the portfolio contains all available risky assets,¹ although an investor may not wish to include all of these assets in the portfolio because of the investor's specific preferences. If an asset is not included in the portfolio, its weight will be zero. The risk–return characteristics of a portfolio of N risky assets are given by the following equations:

$$E(R_p) = \sum_{i=1}^N w_i E(R_i), \quad \sigma_p^2 = \left(\sum_{i=1, j=1}^N w_i w_j \text{Cov}(i, j) \right), \quad \text{and} \quad \sum_{i=1}^N w_i = 1$$

The expected return on the portfolio, $E(R_p)$, is the weighted average of the expected returns of individual assets, where w_i is the fractional weight in asset i and R_i is the expected return of asset i . The risk of the portfolio (σ_p), however, depends on the weights of the individual assets, the risk of the individual assets, and their interrelationships. The **covariance** between assets i and j , $\text{Cov}(i, j)$, is a statistical measure of the interrelationship between each pair of assets in the portfolio and can be expressed as follows, where ρ_{ij} is the **correlation** between assets i and j and σ_i is the risk of asset i :

$$\text{Cov}(i, j) = \rho_{ij} \sigma_i \sigma_j$$

Note from the equation below that the correlation of an asset with itself is 1; therefore:

$$\text{Cov}(i, i) = \rho_{ii} \sigma_i \sigma_i = \sigma_i^2$$

By substituting the above expressions for covariance, we can rewrite the portfolio variance equation as

$$\sigma_p^2 = \left(\sum_{i=1}^N w_i^2 \sigma_i^2 + \sum_{i, j=1, i \neq j}^N w_i w_j \rho_{ij} \sigma_i \sigma_j \right)$$

The suggestion that portfolios have lower risk than the assets they contain may seem counterintuitive. These portfolios can be constructed, however, as long as the assets in the portfolio are not perfectly correlated. As an illustration of the effect of asset weights on portfolio characteristics, consider a simple two-asset portfolio with zero weights in all other assets. Assume that Asset 1 has a return of 10 percent and a standard deviation (risk) of 20 percent. Asset 2 has a return of 5 percent and a standard deviation (risk) of 10 percent. Furthermore, the correlation between the two assets is zero. Exhibit 1 shows risks and returns for Portfolio X with a weight of 25 percent in Asset 1 and 75 percent in Asset 2, Portfolio Y with a weight of 50 percent in each of the two assets, and Portfolio Z with a weight of 75 percent in Asset 1 and 25 percent in Asset 2.

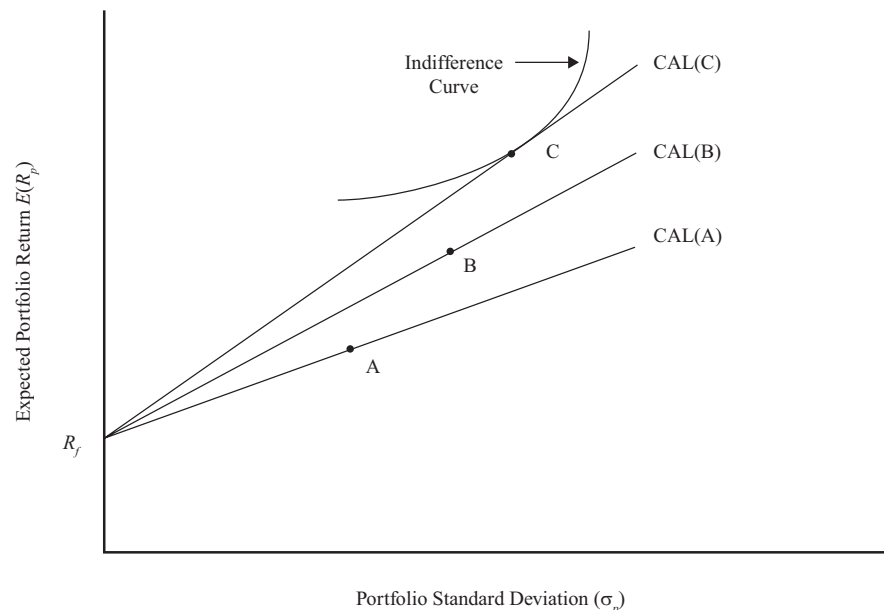
¹ N risky assets.

Exhibit 1 Portfolio Risk and Return

Portfolio	Weight in Asset 1 (%)	Weight in Asset 2 (%)	Portfolio Return (%)	Portfolio Standard Deviation (%)
X	25.0	75.0	6.25	9.01
Y	50.0	50.0	7.50	11.18
Z	75.0	25.0	8.75	15.21
Return	10.0	5.0		
Standard deviation	20.0	10.0		
Correlation between Assets 1 and 2		0.0		

From this example we observe that the three portfolios are quite different in terms of their risk and return. Portfolio X has a 6.25 percent return and only 9.01 percent standard deviation, whereas the standard deviation of Portfolio Z is more than two-thirds higher (15.21 percent), although the return is only slightly more than one-third higher (8.75 percent). These portfolios may become even more dissimilar as other assets are added to the mix.

Consider three portfolios of risky assets, A, B, and C, as in Exhibit 2, that may have been presented to a representative investor by three different investment advisers. Each portfolio is combined with the risk-free asset to create three capital allocation lines, CAL(A), CAL(B), and CAL(C). The exhibit shows that Portfolio C is superior to the other two portfolios because it has a greater expected return for any given level of risk. As a result, an investor will choose the portfolio that lies on the capital allocation line for Portfolio C. The combination of the risk-free asset and the risky Portfolio C that is selected for an investor depends on the investor's degree of risk aversion.

Exhibit 2 Risk-Free Asset and Portfolio of Risky Assets

2.1.2 Does a Unique Optimal Risky Portfolio Exist?

We assume that all investors have the same economic expectation and thus have the same expectations of prices, cash flows, and other investment characteristics. This assumption is referred to as **homogeneity of expectations**. Given these investment characteristics, everyone goes through the same calculations and should arrive at the same optimal risky portfolio. Therefore, assuming homogeneous expectations, only one optimal portfolio exists. If investors have different expectations, however, they might arrive at different optimal risky portfolios. To illustrate, we begin with an expression for the price of an asset:

$$P = \sum_{t=0}^T \frac{CF_t}{(1+r_t)^t}$$

where CF_t is the cash flow at the end of period t and r_t is the discount rate or the required rate of return for that asset for period t . Period t refers to all periods beginning from now until the asset ceases to exist at the end of time T . Because the current time is the end of period 0, which is the same as the beginning of period 1, there are $(T + 1)$ cash flows and $(T + 1)$ required rates of return. These conditions are based on the assumption that a cash flow, such as an initial investment, can occur now ($t = 0$). Ordinarily, however, CF_0 is zero.

We use the formula for the price of an asset to estimate the intrinsic value of an asset. For ease of reference, assume that the asset we are valuing is a share of HSBC Holdings (parent of HSBC Bank), a British company that also trades on the Hong Kong Stock Exchange. In the case of corporate stock, there is no expiration date, so T could be extremely large, meaning we will need to estimate a large number of cash flows and rates of return. Fortunately, the denominator reduces the importance of distant cash flows, so it may be sufficient to estimate, say, 20 annual cash flows and 20 rates of returns. How much will HSBC earn next year and the year after next? What will the banking sector look like in five years' time? Different analysts and investors will have their own estimates that may be quite different from one another. Also, as we delve further into the future, more serious issues in estimating future revenue, expenses, and growth rates arise. Therefore, to assume that cash flow estimates for HSBC will vary among these investors is reasonable. In addition to the numerator (cash flows), it is also necessary to estimate the denominator, the required rates of return. We know that riskier companies will require higher returns because risk and return are positively correlated. HSBC stock is riskier than a risk-free asset, but by how much? And what should the compensation for that additional risk be? Again, it is evident that different analysts will view the riskiness of HSBC differently and, therefore, arrive at different required rates of return.

HSBC closed at HK\$89.40 on 31 December 2009 on the Hong Kong Stock Exchange. The traded price represents the value that a marginal investor attaches to a share of HSBC, say, corresponding to Analyst A's expectation. Analyst B may think that the price should be HK\$50, however, and Analyst C may think that the price should be HK\$150. Given a current price of HK\$89.40, the expected returns of HSBC are quite different for the three analysts. Analyst B, who believes the price should be HK\$50, concludes that HSBC is overvalued and may assign a weight of zero to HSBC in the recommended portfolio even though the market capitalization of HSBC is in excess of HK\$1 trillion. In contrast, Analyst C, with a valuation of HK\$150, thinks HSBC is undervalued and will significantly overweight HSBC in a portfolio.

Our discussion illustrates that analysts can arrive at different valuations that necessitate the assignment of different asset weights in a portfolio. Given the existence of many asset classes and numerous assets in each asset class, one can visualize that

each investor will have his or her own optimal risky portfolio depending on his or her assumptions underlying the valuation computations. Therefore, market participants will have their own and possibly different optimal risky portfolios.

If investors have different valuations of assets, then the construction of a unique optimal risky portfolio is not possible. If we make a simplifying assumption of homogeneity in investor expectations, we will have a single optimal risky portfolio as previously mentioned. Even if investors have different expectations, market prices are a proxy of what the marginal, informed investor expects, and the market portfolio becomes the base case, the benchmark, or the reference portfolio that other portfolios can be judged against. For HSBC, the market price is HK\$89.40 per share and the market capitalization is HK\$1.08 trillion. In constructing the market portfolio, HSBC's weight in the market portfolio will be equal to its market value divided by the value of all other assets included in the market portfolio.

2.2 The Capital Market Line

In the previous section, we discussed how the risk-free asset could be combined with a risky portfolio to create a capital allocation line. In this section, we discuss a specific CAL that uses the market portfolio as the optimal risky portfolio and is known as the capital market line. We also discuss the significance of the market portfolio and applications of the capital market line.

2.2.1 *Passive and Active Portfolios*

In the above subsection, we arrived at three possible valuations for each share of HSBC: HK\$50, HK\$89.40, and HK\$150. Which one is correct?

If the market is an **informationally efficient market**, the price in the market, HK\$89.40, is an unbiased estimate of all future discounted cash flows (recall the formula for the price of an asset). In other words, the price aggregates and reflects all information that is publicly available, and investors cannot expect to earn a return that is greater than the required rate of return for that asset. If, however, the price reflects all publicly available information and there is no way to outperform the market, then there is little point in investing time and money in evaluating HSBC to arrive at your price using your own estimates of cash flows and rates of return.

In that case, a simple and convenient approach to investing is to rely on the prices set by the market. Portfolios that are based on the assumption of unbiased market prices are referred to as passive portfolios. Passive portfolios most commonly replicate and track market indexes, which are passively constructed on the basis of market prices and market capitalizations. Examples of market indexes are the S&P 500 Index, the Nikkei 300, and the CAC 40. Passive portfolios based on market indexes are called index funds and generally have low costs because no significant effort is expended in valuing securities that are included in an index.

In contrast to passive investors' reliance on market prices and index funds, active investors may not rely on market valuations. They have more confidence in their own ability to estimate cash flows, growth rates, and discount rates. Based on these estimates, they value assets and determine whether an asset is fairly valued. In an actively managed portfolio, assets that are undervalued, or have a chance of offering above-normal returns, will have a positive weight (i.e., overweight compared to the market weight in the benchmark index), whereas other assets will have a zero weight, or even a negative weight if short selling is permitted (i.e., some assets will be underweighted compared with the market weight in the benchmark index). This style of investing is called active investment management, and the portfolios are referred to as active portfolios. Most open-end mutual funds and hedge funds practice active investment management, and most analysts believe that active investing adds value. Whether these analysts are right or wrong is the subject of continuing debate.

2.2.2 What Is the “Market”?

In the previous discussion, we referred to the “market” on numerous occasions without actually defining the market. The optimal risky portfolio and the capital market line depend on the definition of the market. So what is the market?

Theoretically, the **market** includes all risky assets or anything that has value, which includes stocks, bonds, real estate, and even human capital. Not all assets are tradable, however, and not all tradable assets are investable. For example, the Taj Mahal in India is an asset but is not a tradable asset. Similarly, human capital is an asset that is not tradable. Moreover, assets may be tradable but not investable because of restrictions placed on certain kinds of investors. For example, all stocks listed on the Shanghai Stock Exchange are tradable. Class A shares, however, are available only to domestic investors, whereas Class B shares are available to both domestic and foreign investors. For investors not domiciled in China, Class A shares are not investable—that is, they are not available for investment.

If we consider all stocks, bonds, real estate assets, commodities, etc., probably hundreds of thousands of assets are tradable and investable. The “market” should contain as many assets as possible; we emphasize the word “possible” because it is not practical to include all assets in a single risky portfolio. Even though advancements in technology and interconnected markets have made it much easier to span the major equity markets, we are still not able to easily invest in other kinds of assets like bonds and real estate except in the most developed countries.

For the rest of this reading, we will define the “market” quite narrowly because it is practical and convenient to do so. Typically, a local or regional stock market index is used as a proxy for the market because of active trading in stocks and because a local or regional market is most visible to the local investors. For our purposes, we will use the S&P 500 Index as the market’s proxy. The S&P 500 is commonly used by analysts as a benchmark for market performance throughout the United States. It contains 500 of the largest stocks that are domiciled in the United States, and these stocks are weighted by their market capitalization (price times the number of outstanding shares).

The stocks in the S&P 500 account for approximately 80 percent of the total equity market capitalization in the United States, and because the US stock markets represent about 32 percent of the world markets, the S&P 500 represents roughly 25 percent of worldwide publicly traded equity. Our definition of the market does not include non-US stock markets, bond markets, real estate, and many other asset classes, and therefore, “market” return and the “market” risk premium refer to US equity return and the US equity risk premium, respectively. The use of this proxy, however, is sufficient for our discussion, and is relatively easy to expand to include other tradable assets.

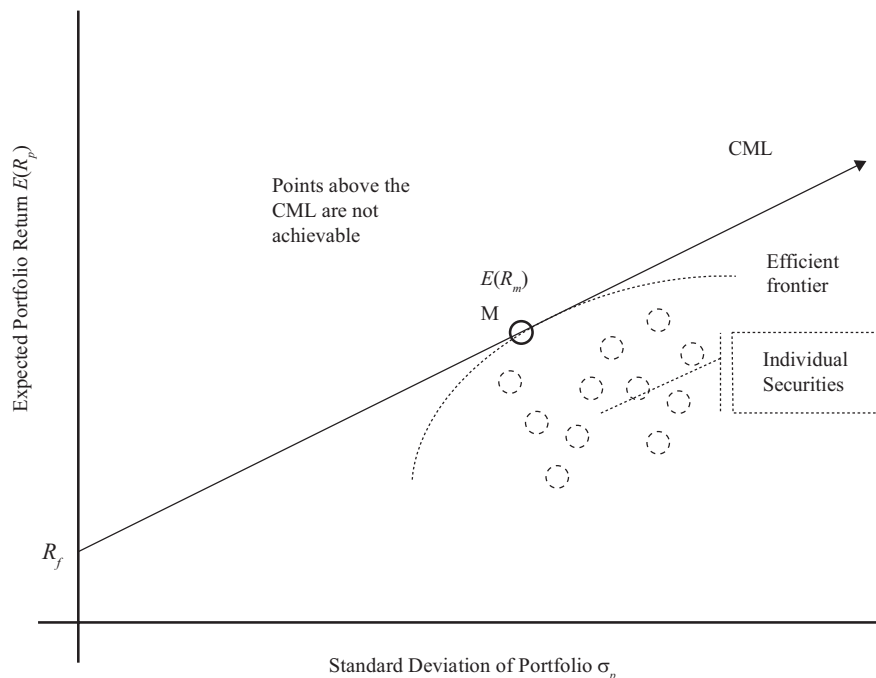
2.2.3 The Capital Market Line (CML)

A capital allocation line includes all possible combinations of the risk-free asset and an investor’s optimal risky portfolio. The **capital market line** is a special case of the capital allocation line, where the risky portfolio is the market portfolio. The risk-free asset is a debt security with no default risk, no inflation risk, no liquidity risk, no interest rate risk, and no risk of any other kind. US Treasury bills are usually used as a proxy of the risk-free return, R_f .

The S&P 500 is a proxy of the market portfolio, which is the optimal risky portfolio. Therefore, the expected return on the risky portfolio is the expected market return, expressed as $E(R_m)$. The capital market line is shown in Exhibit 3, where the standard deviation (σ_p), or total risk, is on the x -axis and expected portfolio return, $E(R_p)$, is on the y -axis. Graphically, the market portfolio is the point on the Markowitz efficient frontier where a line from the risk-free asset is tangent to the Markowitz efficient frontier. All points on the interior of the Markowitz efficient frontier are inefficient portfolios in that they provide the same level of return with a higher level of risk or

a lower level of return with the same amount of risk. When plotted together, the point at which the CML is tangent to the Markowitz efficient frontier is the optimal combination of risky assets, on the basis of market prices and market capitalizations. The optimal risky portfolio is the market portfolio.

Exhibit 3 Capital Market Line



The CML's intercept on the y -axis is the risk-free return (R_f) because that is the return associated with zero risk. The CML passes through the point represented by the market return, $E(R_m)$. With respect to capital market theory, any point above the CML is not achievable and any point below the CML is dominated by and inferior to any point on the CML.

Note that we identify the CML and CAL as lines even though they are a combination of two assets. Unlike a combination of two risky assets, which is usually not a straight line, a combination of the risk-free asset and a risky portfolio is a straight line, as illustrated below by computing the combination's risk and return.

Risk and return characteristics of the portfolio represented by the CML can be computed by using the return and risk expressions for a two-asset portfolio:

$$E(R_p) = w_1 R_f + (1 - w_1) E(R_m),$$

and

$$\sigma_p = \sqrt{w_1^2 \sigma_f^2 + (1 - w_1)^2 \sigma_m^2 + 2w_1(1 - w_1) \text{Cov}(R_f, R_m)}$$

The proportion invested in the risk-free asset is given by w_1 , and the balance is invested in the market portfolio, $(1 - w_1)$. The risk of the risk-free asset is given by σ_f , the risk of the market is given by σ_m , the risk of the portfolio is given by σ_p , and the covariance between the risk-free asset and the market portfolio is represented by $\text{Cov}(R_f, R_m)$.

By definition, the standard deviation of the risk-free asset is zero. Because its risk is zero, the risk-free asset does not co-vary or move with any other asset. Therefore, its covariance with all other assets, including the market portfolio, is zero, making the first and third terms under the square root sign zero. As a result, the portfolio return and portfolio standard deviation can be simplified and rewritten as:

$$E(R_p) = w_1 R_f + (1 - w_1) E(R_m),$$

and

$$\sigma_p = (1 - w_1) \sigma_m$$

By substitution, we can express $E(R_p)$ in terms of σ_p . Substituting for w_1 , we get:

$$E(R_p) = R_f + \left(\frac{E(R_m) - R_f}{\sigma_m} \right) \times \sigma_p$$

Note that the expression is in the form of a line, $y = a + bx$. The y -intercept is the risk-free rate, and the slope of the line referred to as the market price of risk is $[E(R_m) - R_f]/\sigma_m$. The CML has a positive slope because the market's risky return is larger than the risk-free return. As the amount of the total investment devoted to the market increases—that is, as we move up the line—both standard deviation (risk) and expected return increase.

EXAMPLE 1

Risk and Return on the CML

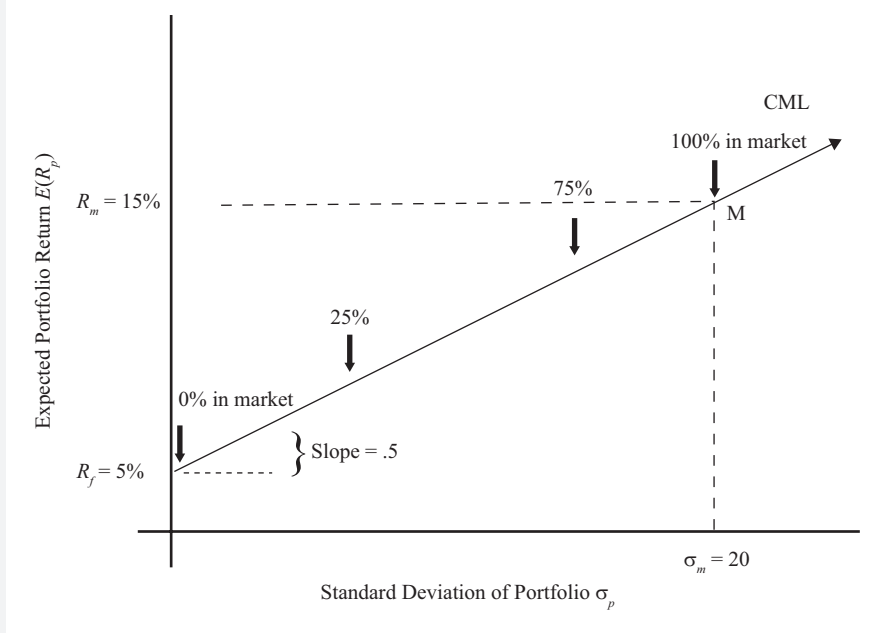
Mr. Miles is a first time investor and wants to build a portfolio using only US T-bills and an index fund that closely tracks the S&P 500 Index. The T-bills have a return of 5 percent. The S&P 500 has a standard deviation of 20 percent and an expected return of 15 percent.

- 1 Draw the CML and mark the points where the investment in the market is 0 percent, 25 percent, 75 percent, and 100 percent.
- 2 Mr. Miles is also interested in determining the exact risk and return at each point.

Solution to 1:

We calculate the equation for the CML as $E(R_p) = 5\% + 0.50 \times \sigma_p$ by substituting the given information into the general CML equation. The intercept of the line is 5 percent, and its slope is 0.50. We can draw the CML by arbitrarily taking any two points on the line that satisfy the above equation.

Alternatively, the CML can be drawn by connecting the risk-free return of 5 percent on the y -axis with the market portfolio at (20 percent, 15 percent). The CML is shown in Exhibit 4.

Exhibit 4 Risk and Return on the CML**Solution to 2:**

Return with 0 percent invested in the market = 5 percent, which is the risk-free return.

Standard deviation with 0 percent invested in the market = 0 percent because T-bills are not risky.

Return with 25 percent invested in the market = $(0.75 \times 5\%) + (0.25 \times 15\%) = 7.5\%$.

Standard deviation with 25 percent invested in the market = $0.25 \times 20\% = 5\%$.

Return with 75 percent invested in the market = $(0.25 \times 5\%) + (0.75 \times 15\%) = 12.50\%$.

Standard deviation with 75 percent invested in the market = $0.75 \times 20\% = 15\%$.

Return with 100 percent invested in the market = 15 percent, which is the return on the S&P 500.

Standard deviation with 100 percent invested in the market = 20 percent, which is the risk of the S&P 500.

2.2.4 Leveraged Portfolios

In the previous example, Mr. Miles evaluated an investment of between 0 percent and 100 percent in the market and the balance in T-bills. The line connecting R_f and M (market portfolio) in Exhibit 4 illustrates these portfolios with their respective levels of investment. At R_f an investor is investing all of his or her wealth into risk-free securities, which is equivalent to lending 100 percent at the risk-free rate. At Point M he or she is holding the market portfolio and not lending any money at the risk-free rate. The combinations of the risk-free asset and the market portfolio, which may be achieved by the points between these two limits, are termed “lending” portfolios. In effect, the investor is lending part of his or her wealth at the risk-free rate.

If Mr. Miles is willing to take more risk, he may be able to move to the right of the market portfolio (Point M in Exhibit 4) by borrowing money and purchasing more of Portfolio M . Assume that he is able to borrow money at the same risk-free rate of interest, R_f , at which he can invest. He can then supplement his available wealth with borrowed money and construct a borrowing portfolio. If the straight line joining R_f and M is extended to the right of Point M , this extended section of the line represents borrowing portfolios. As one moves further to the right of Point M , an increasing amount of borrowed money is being invested in the market. This means that there is *negative* investment in the risk-free asset, which is referred to as a *leveraged position* in the risky portfolio. The particular point chosen on the CML will depend on the individual's utility function, which, in turn, will be determined by his risk and return preferences.

EXAMPLE 2

Risk and Return of a Leveraged Portfolio with Equal Lending and Borrowing Rates

Mr. Miles decides to set aside a small part of his wealth for investment in a portfolio that has greater risk than his previous investments because he anticipates that the overall market will generate attractive returns in the future. He assumes that he can borrow money at 5 percent and achieve the same return on the S&P 500 as before: an expected return of 15 percent with a standard deviation of 20 percent.

Calculate his expected risk and return if he borrows 25 percent, 50 percent, and 100 percent of his initial investment amount.

Solution:

The leveraged portfolio's standard deviation and return can be calculated in the same manner as before with the following equations:

$$E(R_p) = w_1 R_f + (1 - w_1) E(R_m)$$

and

$$\sigma_p = (1 - w_1) \sigma_m$$

The proportion invested in T-bills becomes negative instead of positive because Mr. Miles is borrowing money. If 25 percent of the initial investment is borrowed, $w_1 = -0.25$, and $(1 - w_1) = 1.25$, etc.

Return with -25 percent invested in T-bills = $(-0.25 \times 5\%) + (1.25 \times 15\%) = 17.5\%$.

Standard deviation with -25 percent invested in T-bills = $1.25 \times 20\% = 25\%$.

Return with -50 percent invested in T-bills = $(-0.50 \times 5\%) + (1.50 \times 15\%) = 20.0\%$.

Standard deviation with -50 percent invested in T-bills = $1.50 \times 20\% = 30\%$.

Return with -100 percent invested in T-bills = $(-1.00 \times 5\%) + (2.00 \times 15\%) = 25.0\%$.

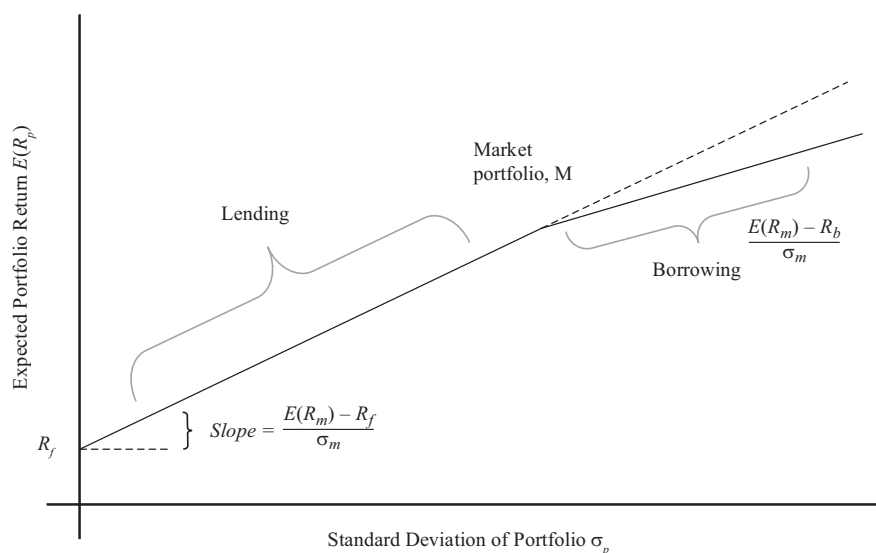
Standard deviation with -100 percent invested in T-bills = $2.00 \times 20\% = 40\%$.

Note that negative investment (borrowing) in the risk-free asset provides a higher expected return for the portfolio but that higher return is also associated with higher risk.

Leveraged Portfolios with Different Lending and Borrowing Rates Although we assumed that Mr. Miles can borrow at the same rate as the US government, it is more likely that he will have to pay a higher interest rate than the government because his ability to repay is not as certain as that of the government. Now consider that although Mr. Miles can invest (lend) at R_f he can borrow at only R_b , a rate that is higher than the risk-free rate.

With different lending and borrowing rates, the CML will no longer be a single straight line. The line will have a slope of $[E(R_m) - R_f]/\sigma_m$ between Points R_f and M , where the lending rate is R_f , but will have a smaller slope of $[E(R_m) - R_b]/\sigma_m$ at points to the right of M , where the borrowing rate is R_b . Exhibit 5 illustrates the CML with different lending and borrowing rates.

Exhibit 5 CML with Different Lending and Borrowing Rates



The equations for the two lines are given below.

$$w_1 \geq 0: E(R_p) = R_f + \left(\frac{E(R_m) - R_f}{\sigma_m} \right) \times \sigma_p$$

and

$$w_1 < 0: E(R_p) = R_b + \left(\frac{E(R_m) - R_b}{\sigma_m} \right) \times \sigma_p$$

The first equation is for the line where the investment in the risk-free asset is zero or positive—that is, at M or to the left of M in Exhibit 5. The second equation is for the line where borrowing, or negative investment in the risk-free asset, occurs. Note that the only difference between the two equations is in the interest rates used for borrowing and lending.

All passive portfolios will lie on the kinked CML, although the investment in the risk-free asset may be positive (lending), zero (no lending or borrowing), or negative (borrowing). Leverage allows less risk-averse investors to increase the amount of risk they take by borrowing money and investing more than 100 percent in the passive portfolio.

EXAMPLE 3**Leveraged Portfolio with Different Lending and Borrowing Rates**

Mr. Miles approaches his broker to borrow money against securities held in his portfolio. Even though Mr. Miles' loan will be secured by the securities in his portfolio, the broker's rate for lending to customers is 7 percent. Assuming a risk-free rate of 5 percent and a market return of 15 percent with a standard deviation of 20 percent, estimate Mr. Miles' expected return and risk if he invests 25 percent and 75 percent in the risk-free asset and if he decides to borrow 25 percent and 75 percent of his initial investment and invest the money in the market.

Solution:

The unleveraged portfolio's standard deviation and return are calculated using the same equations as before:

$$E(R_p) = w_1 R_f + (1 - w_1) E(R_m),$$

and

$$\sigma_p = (1 - w_1) \sigma_m$$

The results are unchanged. The slope of the line for the unleveraged portfolio is 0.50, just as before:

$$\text{Return with 25 percent invested in the market} = (0.75 \times 5\%) + (0.25 \times 15\%) = 7.5\%.$$

$$\text{Standard deviation with 25 percent invested in the market} = 0.25 \times 20\% = 5\%.$$

$$\text{Return with 75 percent invested in the market} = (0.25 \times 5\%) + (0.75 \times 15\%) = 12.5\%.$$

$$\text{Standard deviation with 75 percent invested in the market} = 0.75 \times 20\% = 15\%.$$

For the leveraged portfolio, everything remains the same except that R_f is replaced with R_b .

$$E(R_p) = w_1 R_b + (1 - w_1) E(R_m),$$

and

$$\sigma_p = (1 - w_1) \sigma_m.$$

$$\text{Return with } -25 \text{ percent invested in T-bills} = (-0.25 \times 7\%) + (1.25 \times 15\%) = 17.0\%.$$

$$\text{Standard deviation with } -25 \text{ percent invested in T-bills} = 1.25 \times 20\% = 25\%.$$

$$\text{Return with } -75 \text{ percent invested in T-bills} = (-0.75 \times 7\%) + (1.75 \times 15\%) = 21.0\%.$$

$$\text{Standard deviation with } -75 \text{ percent invested in T-bills} = 1.75 \times 20\% = 35\%.$$

The risk and return of the leveraged portfolio is higher than that of the unleveraged portfolio. As Mr. Miles borrows more money to invest in the market, the expected return increases but so does the standard deviation of the portfolio. The slope of the line for the leveraged portfolio is 0.40, compared with 0.50 for the unleveraged portfolio, which means that for every 1 percent increase in risk, the investor gets a 0.40 percent increase in expected return in the leveraged

part of the portfolio, compared with a 0.50 percent increase in expected return in the unleveraged part of the portfolio. Only investors who are less risk averse will choose leveraged portfolios.

3

PRICING OF RISK AND COMPUTATION OF EXPECTED RETURN

In constructing a portfolio, it is important to understand the concept of correlation and how less than perfect correlation can diversify the risk of a portfolio. As a consequence, the risk of an asset held alone may be greater than the risk of that same asset when it is part of a portfolio. Because the risk of an asset varies from one environment to another, which kind of risk should an investor consider and how should that risk be priced? This section addresses the question of pricing of risk by decomposing the total risk of a security or a portfolio into systematic and nonsystematic risk. The meaning of these risks, how they are computed, and their relevance to the pricing of assets are also discussed.

3.1 Systematic Risk and Nonsystematic Risk

Systematic risk, also known as non-diversifiable or market risk, is the risk that affects the entire market or economy. In contrast, nonsystematic risk is the risk that pertains to a single company or industry and is also known as company-specific, industry-specific, diversifiable, or idiosyncratic risk.

Systematic risk is risk that cannot be avoided and is inherent in the overall market. It is non-diversifiable because it includes risk factors that are innate within the market and affect the market as a whole. Examples of factors that constitute systematic risk include interest rates, inflation, economic cycles, political uncertainty, and widespread natural disasters. These events affect the entire market, and there is no way to avoid their effect. Systematic risk can be magnified through selection or by using leverage, or diminished by including securities that have a low correlation with the portfolio, assuming they are not already part of the portfolio.

Nonsystematic risk is risk that is local or limited to a particular asset or industry that need not affect assets outside of that asset class. Examples of nonsystematic risk could include the failure of a drug trial, major oil discoveries, or an airliner crash. All these events will directly affect their respective companies and possibly industries, but have no effect on assets that are far removed from these industries. Investors are capable of avoiding nonsystematic risk through diversification by forming a portfolio of assets that are not highly correlated with one another.

We will derive expressions for each kind of risk later in this reading. You will see that the sum of systematic variance and nonsystematic variance equals the total variance of the security or portfolio:

$$\text{Total variance} = \text{Systematic variance} + \text{Nonsystematic variance}$$

Although the equality relationship is between variances, you will find frequent references to total risk as the sum of systematic risk and nonsystematic risk. In those cases, the statements refer to variance, not standard deviation.

3.1.1 Pricing of Risk

Pricing or valuing an asset is equivalent to estimating its expected rate of return. If an asset has a known terminal value, such as the face value of a bond, then a lower current price implies a higher future return and a higher current price implies a lower future return. The relationship between price and return can also be observed in the valuation expression shown in Section 2.1.2. Therefore, we will occasionally use price and return interchangeably when discussing the price of risk.

Consider an asset with both systematic and nonsystematic risk. Assume that both kinds of risk are priced—that is, you receive a return for both systematic risk and nonsystematic risk. What will you do? Realizing that nonsystematic risk can be diversified away, you would buy assets that have a large amount of nonsystematic risk. Once you have bought those assets with nonsystematic risk, you would diversify, or reduce that risk, by including other assets that are not highly correlated. In the process, you will minimize nonsystematic risk and eventually eliminate it altogether from your portfolio. Now, you would have a diversified portfolio with only systematic risk, yet you would be compensated for nonsystematic risk that you no longer have. Just like everyone else, you would have an incentive to take on more and more diversifiable risk because you are compensated for it even though you can get rid of it. The demand for diversifiable risk will keep increasing until its price becomes infinite and its expected return falls to zero. This means that our initial assumption of a non-zero return for diversifiable risk was incorrect and that the correct assumption is zero return for diversifiable risk. Therefore, we can assume that in an efficient market, no incremental reward can be earned for taking on diversifiable risk.

In the previous exercise we illustrated why investors should not be compensated for taking on nonsystematic risk. Therefore, investors who have nonsystematic risk must diversify it away by investing in many industries, many countries, and many asset classes. Because future returns are unknown and it is not possible to pick only winners, diversification helps in offsetting poor returns in one asset class by garnering good returns in another asset class, thereby reducing the overall risk of the portfolio. In contrast, investors must be compensated for accepting systematic risk because that risk cannot be diversified away. If investors do not receive a return commensurate with the amount of systematic risk they are taking, they will refuse to accept systematic risk.

In summary, systematic or non-diversifiable risk is priced and investors are compensated for holding assets or portfolios based only on that investment's systematic risk. Investors do not receive any return for accepting nonsystematic or diversifiable risk. Therefore, it is in the interest of risk-averse investors to hold only well-diversified portfolios.

EXAMPLE 4

Systematic and Nonsystematic Risk

- 1 Describe the systematic and nonsystematic risk components of the following assets:
 - A A risk-free asset, such as a three-month Treasury bill
 - B The market portfolio, such as the S&P 500, with total risk of 20 percent
- 2 Consider two assets, A and B. Asset A has total risk of 30 percent, half of which is nonsystematic risk. Asset B has total risk of 17 percent, all of which is systematic risk. Which asset should have a higher expected rate of return?

Solution to 1A:

By definition, a risk-free asset has no risk. Therefore, a risk-free asset has zero systematic risk and zero nonsystematic risk.

Solution to 1B:

As we mentioned earlier, a market portfolio is a diversified portfolio, one in which no more risk can be diversified away. We have also described it as an efficient portfolio. Therefore, a market portfolio does not contain any nonsystematic risk. All of its total risk, 20 percent, is systematic risk.

Solution to 2:

The amount of systematic risk in Asset A is 15 percent, and the amount of systematic risk in Asset B is 17 percent. Because only systematic risk is priced or receives a return, the expected rate of return must be higher for Asset B.

3.2 Calculation and Interpretation of Beta

As previously mentioned, in order to form the market portfolio, you should combine all available risky assets. Knowledge of the correlations among those assets allows us to estimate portfolio risk. You also learned that a fully diversified portfolio will include all asset classes and essentially all assets in those asset classes. The work required for construction of the market portfolio is formidable. For example, for a portfolio of 1,000 assets, we will need 1,000 return estimates, 1,000 standard deviation estimates, and 499,500 ($1,000 \times 999 \div 2$) correlations. Other related questions that arise with this analysis are whether we really need all 1,000 assets and what happens if there are errors in these estimates.

An alternate method of constructing an optimal portfolio is simpler and easier to implement. An investor begins with a known portfolio, such as the S&P 500, and then adds other assets one at a time on the basis of the asset's standard deviation, expected return, and impact on the portfolio's risk and return. This process continues until the addition of another asset does not have a significant impact on the performance of the portfolio. The process requires only estimates of systematic risk for each asset because investors will not be compensated for nonsystematic risk. Expected returns can be calculated by using return-generating models, as we will discuss in this section. In addition to using return-generating models, we will also decompose total variance into systematic variance and nonsystematic variance and establish a formal relationship between systematic risk and return. In the next section, we will expand on this discussion and introduce the CAPM as the preferred return-generating model.

3.2.1 Return-Generating Models

A **return-generating model** is a model that can provide an estimate of the expected return of a security given certain parameters. If systematic risk is the only relevant parameter for return, then the return-generating model will estimate the expected return for any asset given the level of systematic risk.

As with any model, the quality of estimates of expected return will depend on the quality of input estimates and the accuracy of the model. Because it is difficult to decide which factors are appropriate for generating returns, the most general form of a return-generating model is a multi-factor model. A **multi-factor model** allows more than one variable to be considered in estimating returns and can be built using different kinds of factors, such as macroeconomic, fundamental, and statistical factors.

Macroeconomic factor models use economic factors that are correlated with security returns. These factors may include economic growth, the interest rate, the inflation rate, productivity, employment, and consumer confidence. Past relationships

with returns are estimated to obtain parameter estimates, which are, in turn, used for computing expected returns. Fundamental factor models analyze and use relationships between security returns and the company's underlying fundamentals, such as, for example, earnings, earnings growth, cash flow generation, investment in research, advertising, and number of patents. Finally, in a statistical factor model, historical and cross-sectional return data are analyzed to identify factors that explain variance or covariance in observed returns. These statistical factors, however, may or may not have an economic or fundamental connection to returns. For example, the conference to which the American football Super Bowl winner belongs, whether the American Football Conference or the National Football Conference, may be a factor in US stock returns, but no obvious economic connection seems to exist between the winner's conference and US stock returns. Moreover, data mining may generate many spurious factors that are devoid of any economic meaning. Because of this limitation, analysts prefer the macroeconomic and fundamental factor models for specifying and estimating return-generating models.

A general return-generating model is expressed in the following manner:

$$E(R_i) - R_f = \sum_{j=1}^k \beta_{ij} E(F_j) = \beta_{i1} [E(R_m) - R_f] + \sum_{j=2}^k \beta_{ij} E(F_j)$$

The model has k factors, $E(F_1), E(F_2), \dots, E(F_k)$. The coefficients, β_{ij} , are called factor weights or factor loadings associated with each factor. The left-hand side of the model has excess return, or return over the risk-free rate. The right-hand side provides the risk factors that would generate the return or premium required to assume that risk. We have separated out one factor, $E(R_m)$, which represents the market return. All models contain return on the market portfolio as a key factor.

Three-Factor and Four-Factor Models Eugene Fama and Kenneth French² suggested that a return-generating model for stock returns should include relative size of the company and relative book-to-market value of the company in addition to beta. Fama and French found that past returns could be explained better with their model than with other models available at that time, most notably, the capital asset pricing model. Mark Carhart (1997) extended the Fama and French model by adding another factor: momentum, defined as relative past stock returns. We will discuss these models further in Section 5.3.2.

The Single-Index Model The simplest form of a return-generating model is a single-factor linear model, in which only one factor is considered. The most common implementation is a single-index model, which uses the market factor in the following form: $E(R_i) - R_f = \beta_i [E(R_m) - R_f]$.

Although the single-index model is simple, it fits nicely with the capital market line. Recall that the CML is linear, with an intercept of R_f and a slope of $[E(R_m) - R_f]/\sigma_m$. We can rewrite the CML by moving the intercept to the left-hand side of the equation, rearranging the terms, and generalizing the subscript from p to i , for any security:

$$E(R_i) - R_f = \left(\frac{\sigma_i}{\sigma_m} \right) [E(R_m) - R_f]$$

The factor loading or factor weight, σ_i/σ_m , refers to the ratio of total security risk to total market risk. To obtain a better understanding of factor loading and to illustrate that the CML reduces to a single-index model, we decompose total risk into its components.

² Fama and French (1992).

3.2.2 Decomposition of Total Risk for a Single-Index Model

With the introduction of return-generating models, particularly the single-index model, we are able to decompose total variance into systematic and nonsystematic variances. Instead of using expected returns in the single index, let us use realized returns. The difference between expected returns and realized returns is attributable to non-market changes, as an error term, e_i , in the second equation below:

$$E(R_i) - R_f = \beta_i[E(R_m) - R_f]$$

and

$$R_i - R_f = \beta_i(R_m - R_f) + e_i$$

The variance of realized returns can be expressed in the equation below (note that R_f is a constant). We can further drop the covariance term in this equation because, by definition, any non-market return is uncorrelated with the market. Thus, we are able to decompose total variance into systematic and nonsystematic variances in the second equation below:

$$\sigma_i^2 = \beta_i^2 \sigma_m^2 + \sigma_e^2 + 2\text{Cov}(R_m, e_i)$$

Total variance = Systematic variance + Nonsystematic variance, which can be written as

$$\sigma_i^2 = \beta_i^2 \sigma_m^2 + \sigma_e^2$$

Total risk can be expressed as

$$\sigma_i = \sqrt{\beta_i^2 \sigma_m^2 + \sigma_e^2}$$

Because nonsystematic risk is zero for well-diversified portfolios, such as the market portfolio, the total risk of a market portfolio and other similar portfolios is only systematic risk, which is $\beta_i \sigma_m$. We can now return to the CML discussed in the previous subsection and replace σ_i with $\beta_i \sigma_m$ because the CML assumes that the market is a diversified portfolio. By making this substitution for the above equation, we get the following single-index model:

$$E(R_i) - R_f = \left(\frac{\sigma_i}{\sigma_m} \right) \times [E(R_m) - R_f] = \left(\frac{\beta_i \sigma_m}{\sigma_m} \right) \times [E(R_m) - R_f],$$

$$E(R_i) - R_f = \beta_i[E(R_m) - R_f]$$

Thus, the CML, which is only for well-diversified portfolios, is fully consistent with a single-index model.

In this section, you have learned how to decompose total variance into systematic and nonsystematic variances and how the CML is the same as a single-index model for diversified portfolios.

3.2.3 Return-Generating Models: The Market Model

The most common implementation of a single-index model is the **market model**, in which the market return is the single factor or single index. In principle, the market model and the single-index model are similar. The difference is that the market model is easier to work with and is normally used for estimating beta risk and computing abnormal returns. The market model is

$$R_i = \alpha_i + \beta_i R_m + e_i$$

To be consistent with the previous section, $\alpha_i = R_f(1 - \beta)$. The intercept, α_i , and slope coefficient, β_i , can be estimated by using historical security and market returns. These parameter estimates are then used to predict company-specific returns that a security may earn in a future period. Assume that a regression of Wal-Mart's historical daily returns on S&P 500 daily returns gives an α_i of 0.0001 and a β_i of 0.9. Thus,

Wal-Mart's expected daily return = $0.0001 + 0.90 \times R_m$. If on a given day the market rises by 1 percent and Wal-Mart's stock rises by 2 percent, then Wal-Mart's company-specific return (e_i) for that day = $R_i - E(R_i) = R_i - (\alpha_i + \beta_i R_m) = 0.02 - (0.0001 + 0.90 \times 0.01) = 0.0109$, or 1.09%. In other words, Wal-Mart earned an abnormal return of 1.09 percent on that day.

3.2.4 Calculation and Interpretation of Beta

We begin with the single-index model introduced in Section 3.2.2 using realized returns and rewrite it as

$$R_i = (1 - \beta_i)R_f + \beta_i \times R_m + e_i$$

Because systematic risk depends on the correlation between the asset and the market, we can arrive at a measure of systematic risk from the covariance between R_i and R_m , where R_i is defined using the above equation. Note that the risk-free rate is a constant, so the first term in R_i drops out.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Cov}(R_i, R_m) &= \text{Cov}(\beta_i \times R_m + e_i, R_m) \\ &= \beta_i \text{Cov}(R_m, R_m) + \text{Cov}(e_i, R_m) \\ &= \beta_i \sigma_m^2 + 0 \end{aligned}$$

The first term is beta multiplied by the variance of R_m . Because the error term is uncorrelated with the market, the second term drops out. Then, we can rewrite the equation in terms of beta as follows:

$$\beta_i = \frac{\text{Cov}(R_i, R_m)}{\sigma_m^2} = \frac{\rho_{i,m} \sigma_i \sigma_m}{\sigma_m^2} = \frac{\rho_{i,m} \sigma_i}{\sigma_m}$$

The above formula shows the expression for beta, β_i , which is similar to the factor loading in the single-index model presented in Section 3.2.1. For example, if the correlation between an asset and the market is 0.70 and the asset and market have standard deviations of return of 0.25 and 0.15, respectively, the asset's beta would be $(0.70)(0.25)/0.15 = 1.17$. If the asset's covariance with the market and market variance were given as 0.026250 and 0.02250, respectively, the calculation would be $0.026250/0.02250 = 1.17$. The beta in the market model includes an adjustment for the correlation between asset i and the market because the market model covers all assets whereas the CML works only for fully diversified portfolios.

As shown in the above equation, **beta** is a measure of how sensitive an asset's return is to the market as a whole and is calculated as the covariance of the return on i and the return on the market divided by the variance of the market return; that expression is equivalent to the product of the asset's correlation with the market with a ratio of standard deviations of return (i.e., the ratio of the asset's standard deviation to the market's). As we have shown, beta captures an asset's systematic risk, or the portion of an asset's risk that cannot be eliminated by diversification. The variances and correlations required for the calculation of beta are usually based on historical returns.

A positive beta indicates that the return of an asset follows the general market trend, whereas a negative beta shows that the return of an asset generally follows a trend that is opposite to that of the market. In other words, a positive beta indicates that the return of an asset moves in the same direction of the market, whereas a negative beta indicates that the return of an asset moves in the opposite direction of the market. A risk-free asset's beta is zero because its covariance with other assets is zero. In other words, a beta of zero indicates that the asset's return has no correlation

with movements in the market. The market's beta can be calculated by substituting σ_m for σ_i in the numerator. Also, any asset's correlation with itself is 1, so the beta of the market is 1:

$$\beta_i = \frac{\rho_{i,m}\sigma_i}{\sigma_m} = \frac{\rho_{m,m}\sigma_m}{\sigma_m} = 1$$

Because the market's beta is 1, the average beta of stocks in the market, by definition, is 1. In terms of correlation, most stocks, especially in developed markets, tend to be highly correlated with the market, with correlations in excess of 0.70. Some US broad market indexes, such as the S&P 500, the Dow Jones 30, and the NASDAQ 100, have even higher correlations that are in excess of 0.90. The correlations among different sectors are also high, which shows that companies have similar reactions to the same economic and market changes. As a consequence and as a practical matter, finding assets that have a consistently negative beta because of the market's broad effects on all assets is unusual.

EXAMPLE 5

Calculation of Beta

Assuming that the risk (standard deviation) of the market is 25 percent, calculate the beta for the following assets:

- 1 A short-term US Treasury bill.
- 2 Gold, which has a standard deviation equal to the standard deviation of the market but a zero correlation with the market.
- 3 A new emerging market that is not currently included in the definition of "market"—the emerging market's standard deviation is 60 percent, and the correlation with the market is -0.1 .
- 4 An initial public offering or new issue of stock with a standard deviation of 40 percent and a correlation with the market of 0.7 (IPOs are usually very risky but have a relatively low correlation with the market).

We use the formula for beta in answering the above questions: $\beta_i = \frac{\rho_{i,m}\sigma_i}{\sigma_m}$

Solution to 1:

By definition, a short-term US Treasury bill has zero risk. Therefore, its beta is zero.

Solution to 2:

Because the correlation of gold with the market is zero, its beta is zero.

Solution to 3:

Beta of the emerging market is $-0.1 \times 0.60 \div 0.25 = -0.24$.

Solution to 4:

Beta of the initial public offering is $0.7 \times 0.40 \div 0.25 = 1.12$.

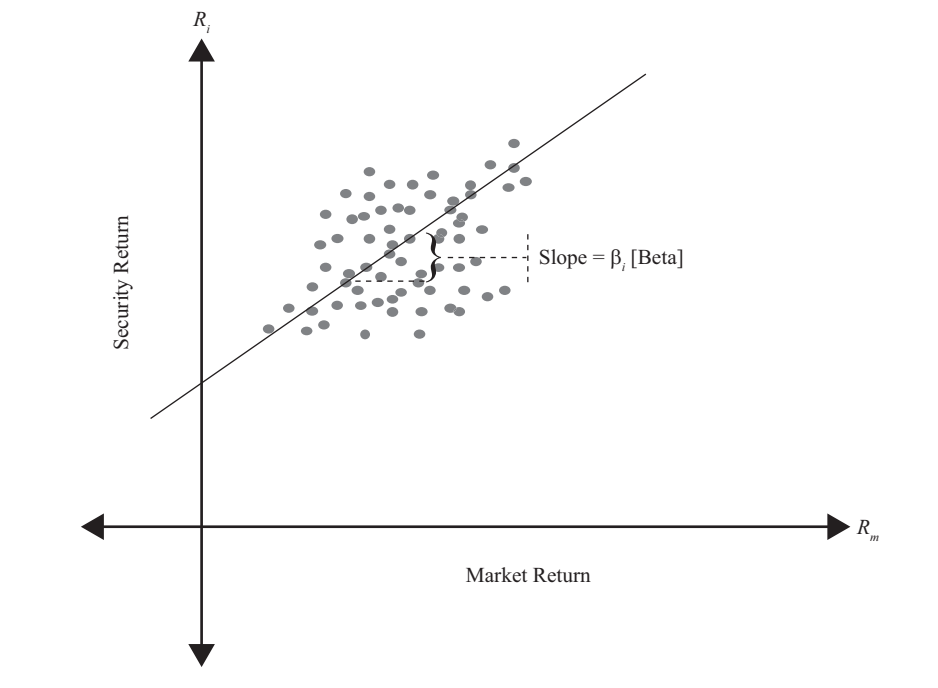
3.2.5 Estimation of Beta

An alternative and more practical approach is to estimate beta directly by using the market model described above. The market model, $R_i = \alpha_i + \beta_i R_m + e_i$ is estimated by using regression analysis, which is a statistical process that evaluates the relationship

between a given variable (the dependent variable) and one or more other (independent) variables. Historical security returns (R_i) and historical market returns (R_m) are inputs used for estimating the two parameters α_i and β_i .

Regression analysis is similar to plotting all combinations of the asset's return and the market return (R_i, R_m) and then drawing a line through all points such that it minimizes the sum of squared linear deviations from the line. Exhibit 6 illustrates the market model and the estimated parameters. The intercept, α_i (sometimes referred to as the constant), and the slope term, β_i , are all that is needed to define the security characteristic line and obtain beta estimates.

Exhibit 6 Beta Estimation Using a Plot of Security and Market Returns



Although beta estimates are important for forecasting future levels of risk, there is much concern about their accuracy. In general, shorter periods of estimation (e.g., 12 months) represent betas that are closer to the asset's current level of systematic risk. Shorter period beta estimates, however, are also less accurate than beta estimates measured over three to five years because they may be affected by special events in that short period. Although longer period beta estimates are more accurate, they may be a poor representation of future expectations, especially if major changes in the asset have occurred. Therefore, it is necessary to recognize that estimates of beta, whether obtained through calculation or regression analysis, may or may not represent current or future levels of an asset's systematic risk.

3.2.6 Beta and Expected Return

Although the single-index model, also called the **capital asset pricing model** (CAPM), will be discussed in greater detail in the next section, we will use the CAPM in this section to estimate returns, given asset betas. The CAPM is usually written with the risk-free rate on the right-hand side:

$$E(R_i) = R_f + \beta_i[E(R_m) - R_f]$$

The model shows that the primary determinant of expected return for a security is its beta, or how well the security correlates with the market. The higher the beta of an asset, the higher its expected return will be. Assets with a beta greater than 1 have an expected return that is higher than the market return, whereas assets with a beta of less than 1 have an expected return that is less than the market return.

In certain cases, assets may require a return less than the risk-free return. For example, if an asset's beta is negative, the required return will be less than the risk-free rate. When combined with the market, the asset reduces the risk of the overall portfolio, which makes the asset very valuable. Insurance is one such asset. Insurance gives a positive return when the insured's wealth is reduced because of a catastrophic loss. In the absence of such a loss or when the insured's wealth is growing, the insured is required to pay an insurance premium. Thus, insurance has a negative beta and a negative expected return, but helps in reducing overall risk.

EXAMPLE 6

Calculation of Expected Return

- 1 Alpha Natural Resources (ANR), a coal producer, buys a large but privately held coal producer in China. As a result of the cross-border acquisition of a private company, ANR's standard deviation of returns is reduced from 50 percent to 30 percent and its correlation with the market falls from 0.95 to 0.75. Assume that the standard deviation and return of the market remain unchanged at 25 percent and 10 percent, respectively, and that the risk-free rate is 3 percent.
 - A Calculate the beta of ANR stock and its expected return before the acquisition.
 - B Calculate the expected return after the acquisition.

Solution to 1A:

Using the formula for β_i , we can calculate β_i and then the return.

$$\beta_i = \frac{\rho_{i,m}\sigma_i}{\sigma_m} = \frac{0.95 \times 0.50}{0.25} = 1.90$$

$$E(R_i) = R_f + \beta_i[E(R_m) - R_f] = 0.03 + 1.90 \times (0.10 - 0.03) = 0.163 = 16.3\%$$

Solution to 1B:

We follow the same procedure but with the after-acquisition correlation and risk.

$$\beta_i = \frac{\rho_{i,m}\sigma_i}{\sigma_m} = \frac{0.75 \times 0.30}{0.25} = 0.90$$

$$E(R_i) = R_f + \beta_i[E(R_m) - R_f] = 0.03 + 0.90 \times (0.10 - 0.03) = 0.093 = 9.3\%$$

The market risk premium is 7 percent (10% – 3%). As the beta changes, the change in the security's expected return is the market risk premium multiplied by the change in beta. In this scenario, ANR's beta decreased by 1.0, so the new expected return for ANR is 7 percentage points lower.

- 2 Mr. Miles observes the strong demand for iPods and iPhones and wants to invest in Apple stock. Unfortunately, Mr. Miles doesn't know the return he should expect from his investment. He has been given a risk-free rate of 3 percent, a market return of 10 percent, and Apple's beta of 1.5.

- A** Calculate Apple's expected return.
- B** An analyst looking at the same information decides that the past performance of Apple is not representative of its future performance. He decides that, given the increase in Apple's market capitalization, Apple acts much more like the market than before and thinks Apple's beta should be closer to 1.1. What is the analyst's expected return for Apple stock?

Solution to 2A:

$$E(R_i) = R_f + \beta_i[E(R_m) - R_f] = 0.03 + 1.5 \times (0.10 - 0.03) = 0.135 = 13.5\%$$

Solution to 2B:

$$E(R_i) = R_f + \beta_i[E(R_m) - R_f] = 0.03 + 1.1 \times (0.10 - 0.03) = 0.107 = 10.7\%$$

This example illustrates the lack of connection between estimation of past returns and projection into the future. Investors should be aware of the limitations of using past returns for estimating future returns.

THE CAPITAL ASSET PRICING MODEL

4

The capital asset pricing model is one of the most significant innovations in portfolio theory. The model is simple, yet powerful; is intuitive, yet profound; and uses only one factor, yet is broadly applicable. The CAPM was introduced independently by William Sharpe, John Lintner, Jack Treynor, and Jan Mossin and builds on Harry Markowitz's earlier work on diversification and modern portfolio theory.³ The model provides a linear expected return–beta relationship that precisely determines the expected return given the beta of an asset. In doing so, it makes the transition from total risk to systematic risk, the primary determinant of expected return. Recall the following equation:

$$E(R_i) = R_f + \beta_i[E(R_m) - R_f]$$

The CAPM asserts that the expected returns of assets vary only by their systematic risk as measured by beta. Two assets with the same beta will have the same expected return irrespective of the nature of those assets. Given the relationship between risk and return, all assets are defined only by their beta risk, which we will explain as the assumptions are described.

In the remainder of this section, we will examine the assumptions made in arriving at the CAPM and the limitations those assumptions entail. Second, we will implement the CAPM through the security market line to price any portfolio or asset, both efficient and inefficient. Finally, we will discuss ways in which the CAPM can be applied to investments, valuation, and capital budgeting.

4.1 Assumptions of the CAPM

Similar to all other models, the CAPM ignores many of the complexities of financial markets by making simplifying assumptions. These assumptions allow us to gain important insights into how assets are priced without complicating the analysis. Once

³ See, for example, Markowitz (1952), Sharpe (1964), Lintner (1965a, 1965b), Treynor (1961, 1962), and Mossin (1966).

the basic relationships are established, we can relax the assumptions and examine how our insights need to be altered. Some of these assumptions are constraining, whereas others are benign. And other assumptions affect only a particular set of assets or only marginally affect the hypothesized relationships.

1 *Investors are risk-averse, utility-maximizing, rational individuals.*

Risk aversion means that investors expect to be compensated for accepting risk. Note that the assumption does not require investors to have the same degree of risk aversion; it only requires that they are averse to risk. Utility maximization implies that investors want higher returns, not lower returns, and that investors always want more wealth (i.e., investors are never satisfied). Investors are understood to be rational in that they correctly evaluate and analyze available information to arrive at rational decisions. Although rational investors may use the same information to arrive at different estimates of expected risk and expected returns, homogeneity among investors (see Assumption 4) requires that investors be rational individuals.

Risk aversion and utility maximization are generally accepted as reflecting a realistic view of the world. Yet, rationality among investors has been questioned because investors may allow their personal biases and experiences to disrupt their decision making, resulting in suboptimal investments. Nonetheless, the model's results are unaffected by such irrational behavior as long as it does not affect prices in a significant manner (i.e., the trades of irrational investors cancel each other or are dominated by the trades of rational investors).

2 *Markets are frictionless, including no transaction costs and no taxes.*

Frictionless markets allow us to abstract the analysis from the operational characteristics of markets. In doing so, we do not allow the risk–return relationship to be affected by, for example, the trading volume on the New York Stock Exchange or the difference between buying and selling prices. Specifically, frictionless markets do not have transaction costs, taxes, or any costs or restrictions on short selling. We also assume that borrowing and lending at the risk-free rate is possible.

The transaction costs of many large institutions are negligible, and many institutions do not pay taxes. Even the presence of non-zero transaction costs, taxes, or the inability to borrow at the risk-free rate does not materially affect the general conclusions of the CAPM. Costs of short selling⁴ or restrictions on short selling, however, can introduce an upward bias in asset prices, potentially jeopardizing important conclusions of the CAPM.

3 *Investors plan for the same single holding period.*

The CAPM is a single-period model, and all investor decisions are made on the basis of that one period. The assumption of a single period is applied for convenience because working with multi-period models is more difficult. A single-period model, however, does not allow learning to occur, and bad decisions can persist. In addition, maximizing utility at the end of a multi-period horizon may require decisions in certain periods that may seem suboptimal when examined from a single-period perspective. Nonetheless, the single holding period does not severely limit the applicability of the CAPM to multi-period settings.

4 *Investors have homogeneous expectations or beliefs.*

4 Short selling shares involves selling shares that you do not own. Because you do not own the shares, you (or your broker) must borrow the shares before you can short sell. You sell the borrowed shares in the market hoping that you will be able to return the borrowed shares by buying them later in the market at a lower price. Brokerage houses and securities lenders lend shares to you to sell in return for a portion (or all) of the interest earned on the cash you receive for the shares that are short sold.

This assumption means that all investors analyze securities in the same way using the same probability distributions and the same inputs for future cash flows. In addition, given that they are rational individuals, the investors will arrive at the same valuations. Because their valuations of all assets are identical, they will generate the same optimal risky portfolio, which we call the market portfolio.

The assumption of homogeneous beliefs can be relaxed as long as the differences in expectations do not generate significantly different optimal risky portfolios.

5 All investments are infinitely divisible.

This assumption implies that an individual can invest as little or as much as he or she wishes in an asset. This supposition allows the model to rely on continuous functions rather than on discrete jump functions. The assumption is made for convenience only and has an inconsequential impact on the conclusions of the model.

6 Investors are price takers.

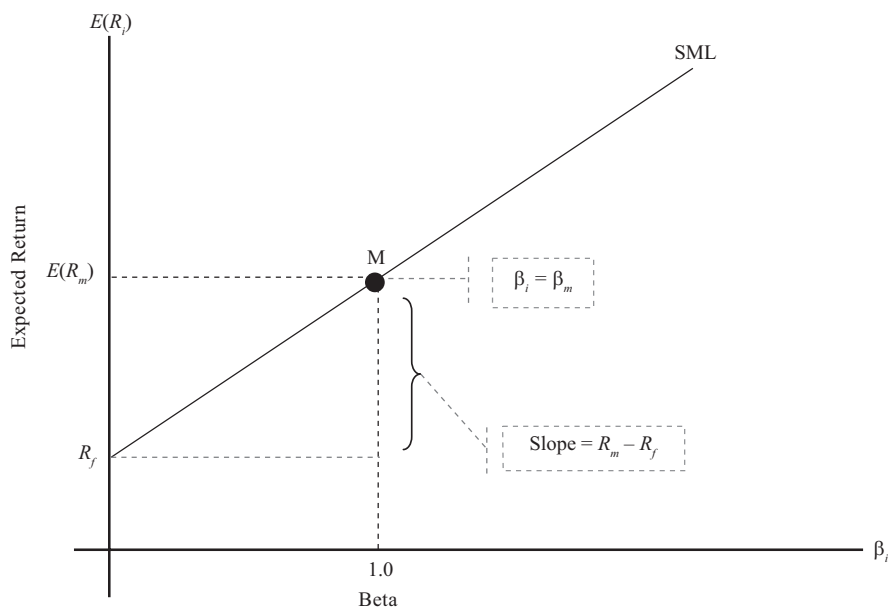
The CAPM assumes that there are many investors and that no investor is large enough to influence prices. Thus, investors are price takers, and we assume that security prices are unaffected by investor trades. This assumption is generally true because even though investors may be able to affect prices of small stocks, those stocks are not large enough to affect the primary results of the CAPM.

The main objective of these assumptions is to create a marginal investor who rationally chooses a mean–variance-efficient portfolio in a predictable fashion. We assume away any inefficiency in the market from both operational and informational perspectives. Although some of these assumptions may seem unrealistic, relaxing most of them will have only a minor influence on the model and its results. Moreover, the CAPM, with all its limitations and weaknesses, provides a benchmark for comparison and for generating initial return estimates.

4.2 The Security Market Line

In this subsection, we apply the CAPM to the pricing of securities. The **security market line** (SML) is a graphical representation of the capital asset pricing model with beta, reflecting systematic risk, on the x -axis and expected return on the y -axis. Using the same concept as the capital market line, the SML intersects the y -axis at the risk-free rate of return, and the slope of this line is the market risk premium, $R_m - R_f$. Recall that the capital market line (CML) does not apply to all securities or assets but only to portfolios on the efficient frontier. The efficient frontier gives optimal combinations of expected return and total risk. In contrast, the security market line applies to any security, efficient or not. Total risk and systematic risk are equal only for efficient portfolios because those portfolios have no diversifiable risk remaining.

Exhibit 7 is a graphical representation of the CAPM, the security market line. As shown earlier in this reading, the beta of the market is 1 (x -axis) and the market earns an expected return of R_m (y -axis). Using this line, it is possible to calculate the expected return of an asset. The next example illustrates the beta and return calculations.

Exhibit 7 The Security Market Line**EXAMPLE 7****Security Market Line and Expected Return**

- 1 Suppose the risk-free rate is 3 percent, the expected return on the market portfolio is 13 percent, and its standard deviation is 23 percent. An Indian company, Bajaj Auto, has a standard deviation of 50 percent but is uncorrelated with the market. Calculate Bajaj Auto's beta and expected return.
- 2 Suppose the risk-free rate is 3 percent, the expected return on the market portfolio is 13 percent, and its standard deviation is 23 percent. A German company, Mueller Metals, has a standard deviation of 50 percent and a correlation of 0.65 with the market. Calculate Mueller Metal's beta and expected return.

Solution to 1:

Using the formula for β_i , we can calculate β_i and then the return.

$$\beta_i = \frac{\rho_{i,m}\sigma_i}{\sigma_m} = \frac{0.0 \times 0.50}{0.23} = 0$$

$$E(R_i) = R_f + \beta_i[E(R_m) - R_f] = 0.03 + 0 \times (0.13 - 0.03) = 0.03 = 3.0\%$$

Because of its zero correlation with the market portfolio, Bajaj Auto's beta is zero. Because the beta is zero, the expected return for Bajaj Auto is the risk-free rate, which is 3 percent.

Solution to 2:

Using the formula for β_i , we can calculate β_i and then the return.

$$\beta_i = \frac{\rho_{i,m}\sigma_i}{\sigma_m} = \frac{0.65 \times 0.50}{0.23} = 1.41$$

$$E(R_i) = R_f + \beta_i[E(R_m) - R_f] = 0.03 + 1.41 \times (0.13 - 0.03) = 0.171 = 17.1\%$$

Because of the high degree of correlation with the market, the beta for Mueller Metals is 1.41 and the expected return is 17.1 percent. Because Mueller Metals has systematic risk that is greater than that of the market, it has an expected return that exceeds the expected return of the market.

4.2.1 Portfolio Beta

As we stated above, the security market line applies to all securities. But what about a combination of securities, such as a portfolio? Consider two securities, 1 and 2, with a weight of w_i in Security 1 and the balance in Security 2. The return for the two securities and return of the portfolio can be written as:

$$\begin{aligned} E(R_1) &= R_f + \beta_1[E(R_m) - R_f] \\ E(R_2) &= R_f + \beta_2[E(R_m) - R_f] \\ E(R_p) &= w_1E(R_1) + w_2E(R_2) \\ &= w_1R_f + w_1\beta_1[E(R_m) - R_f] + w_2R_f + w_2\beta_2[E(R_m) - R_f] \\ &= R_f + (w_1\beta_1 + w_2\beta_2)[E(R_m) - R_f] \end{aligned}$$

The last equation gives the expression for the portfolio's expected return. From this equation, we can conclude that the portfolio's beta = $w_1\beta_1 + w_2\beta_2$. In general, the portfolio beta is a weighted sum of the betas of the component securities and is given by:

$$\beta_p = \sum_{i=1}^n w_i\beta_i; \quad \sum_{i=1}^n w_i = 1$$

The portfolio's return given by the CAPM is

$$E(R_p) = R_f + \beta_p[E(R_m) - R_f]$$

This equation shows that a linear relationship exists between the expected return of a portfolio and the systematic risk of the portfolio as measured by β_p .

EXAMPLE 8

Portfolio Beta and Return

You invest 20 percent of your money in the risk-free asset, 30 percent in the market portfolio, and 50 percent in RedHat, a US stock that has a beta of 2.0. Given that the risk-free rate is 4 percent and the market return is 16 percent, what are the portfolio's beta and expected return?

Solution:

The beta of the risk-free asset = 0, the beta of the market = 1, and the beta of RedHat is 2.0. The portfolio beta is

$$\beta_p = w_1\beta_1 + w_2\beta_2 + w_3\beta_3 = (0.20 \times 0.0) + (0.30 \times 1.0) + (0.50 \times 2.0) = 1.30$$

$$E(R_i) = R_f + \beta_i[E(R_m) - R_f] = 0.04 + 1.30 \times (0.16 - 0.04) = 0.196 = 19.6\%$$

The portfolio beta is 1.30, and its expected return is 19.6 percent.

Alternate Method:

Another method for calculating the portfolio's return is to calculate individual security returns and then use the portfolio return formula (i.e., weighted average of security returns) to calculate the overall portfolio return.

Return of the risk-free asset = 4 percent; return of the market = 16 percent

RedHat's return based on its beta = $0.04 + 2.0 \times (0.16 - 0.04) = 0.28$

Portfolio return = $(0.20 \times 0.04) + (0.30 \times 0.16) + (0.50 \times 0.28) = 0.196 = 19.6\%$

Not surprisingly, the portfolio return is 19.6 percent, as calculated in the first method.

4.3 Applications of the CAPM

The CAPM offers powerful and intuitively appealing predictions about risk and the relationship between risk and return. The CAPM is not only important from a theoretical perspective but is also used extensively in practice. In this section, we will discuss some common applications of the model. When applying these tools to different scenarios, it is important to understand that the CAPM and the SML are functions that give an indication of what the return in the market *should* be, given a certain level of risk. The actual return may be quite different from the expected return.

Applications of the CAPM include estimates of the expected return for capital budgeting, comparison of the actual return of a portfolio or portfolio manager with the CAPM return for performance appraisal, and the analysis of alternate return estimates and the CAPM returns as the basis for security selection. The applications are discussed in more detail in this section.

4.3.1 Estimate of Expected Return

Given an asset's systematic risk, the expected return can be calculated using the CAPM. Recall that the price of an asset is the sum of all future cash flows discounted at the required rate of return, where the discount rate or the required rate of return is commensurate with the asset's risk. The expected rate of return obtained from the CAPM is normally the first estimate that investors use for valuing assets, such as stocks, bonds, real estate, and other similar assets. The required rate of return from the CAPM is also used for capital budgeting and determining the economic feasibility of projects. Again, recall that when computing the net present value of a project, investments and net revenues are considered cash flows and are discounted at the required rate of return. The required rate of return, based on the project's risk, is calculated using the CAPM.

Because risk and return underlie almost all aspects of investment decision making, it is not surprising that the CAPM is used for estimating expected return in many scenarios. Other examples include calculating the cost of capital for regulated companies by regulatory commissions and setting fair insurance premiums. The next example shows an application of the CAPM to capital budgeting.

EXAMPLE 9

Application of the CAPM to Capital Budgeting

GlaxoSmithKline Plc is examining the economic feasibility of developing a new medicine. The initial investment in Year 1 is \$500 million. The investment in Year 2 is \$200 million. There is a 50 percent chance that the medicine will be

developed and will be successful. If that happens, GlaxoSmithKline must spend another \$100 million in Year 3, but its income from the project in Year 3 will be \$500 million, not including the third-year investment. In Years 4, 5, and 6, it will earn \$400 million a year if the medicine is successful. At the end of Year 6, it intends to sell all rights to the medicine for \$600 million. If the medicine is unsuccessful, none of GlaxoSmithKline's investments can be salvaged. Assume that the market return is 12 percent, the risk-free rate is 2 percent, and the beta risk of the project is 2.3. All cash flows occur at the end of each year.

- 1 Calculate the expected annual cash flows using the probability of success.
- 2 Calculate the expected return.
- 3 Calculate the net present value.

Solution to 1:

There is a 50 percent chance that the cash flows in Years 3–6 will occur. Taking that into account, the expected annual cash flows are:

Year 1: −\$500 million (outflow)

Year 2: −\$200 million (outflow)

Year 3: 50% of −\$100 million (outflow) + 50% of \$500 million = \$200 million

Year 4: 50% of \$400 million = \$200 million

Year 5: 50% of \$400 million = \$200 million

Year 6: 50% of \$400 million + 50% of \$600 million = \$500 million

Solution to 2:

The expected or required return for the project can be calculated using the CAPM, which is $= 0.02 + 2.3 \times (0.12 - 0.02) = 0.25$.

Solution to 3:

The net present value is the discounted value of all cash flows:

$$\begin{aligned}
 NPV &= \sum_{t=0}^T \frac{CF_t}{(1+r_t)^t} \\
 &= \frac{-500}{(1+0.25)} + \frac{-200}{(1+0.25)^2} + \frac{200}{(1+0.25)^3} + \frac{200}{(1+0.25)^4} \\
 &\quad + \frac{200}{(1+0.25)^5} + \frac{500}{(1+0.25)^6} \\
 &= -400 - 128 + 102.40 + 81.92 + 65.54 + 131.07 = -147.07.
 \end{aligned}$$

Because the net present value is negative (−\$147.07 million), the project should not be accepted by GlaxoSmithKline.

4.3.2 Portfolio Performance Evaluation

Institutional money managers, pension fund managers, and mutual fund managers manage large amounts of money for other people. Are they doing a good job? How does their performance compare with a passively managed portfolio—that is, one in which the investor holds just the market portfolio? Evaluating the performance of a portfolio is of interest to all investors and money managers. Because active management costs significantly more than passive management, we expect active managers to perform better than passive managers or at least to cover the difference in expenses. For example, Fidelity's passively managed Spartan 500 Index fund has an expense ratio

of only 0.10 percent whereas Fidelity's actively managed Contrafund has an expense ratio of 0.94 percent. Investors need a method for determining whether the manager of the Contrafund is worth the extra 0.84 percent in expenses.

In this reading, **performance evaluation** is based only on the CAPM. However, it is easy to extend this analysis to multi-factor models that may include industry or other special factors. Four ratios are commonly used in performance evaluation.

Sharpe and Treynor Ratios Performance has two components, risk and return. Although return maximization is a laudable objective, comparing just the return of a portfolio with that of the market is not sufficient. Because investors are risk averse, they will require compensation for higher risk in the form of higher returns. A commonly used measure of performance is the **Sharpe ratio**, which is defined as the portfolio's risk premium divided by its risk:

$$\text{Sharpe ratio} = \frac{R_p - R_f}{\sigma_p}$$

Recalling the CAL from earlier in the reading, one can see that the Sharpe ratio, also called the reward-to-variability ratio, is simply the slope of the capital allocation line; the greater the slope, the better the asset. Note, however, that the ratio uses the *total risk* of the portfolio, not its systematic risk. The use of total risk is appropriate if the portfolio is an investor's total portfolio—that is, the investor does not own any other assets. Sharpe ratios of the market and other portfolios can also be calculated in a similar manner. The portfolio with the highest Sharpe ratio has the best performance, and the one with the lowest Sharpe ratio has the worst performance, provided that the numerator is positive for all comparison portfolios. If the numerator is negative, the ratio will be less negative for riskier portfolios, resulting in incorrect rankings.

The Sharpe ratio, however, suffers from two limitations. First, it uses total risk as a measure of risk when only systematic risk is priced. Second, the ratio itself (e.g., 0.2 or 0.3) is not informative. To rank portfolios, the Sharpe ratio of one portfolio must be compared with the Sharpe ratio of another portfolio. Nonetheless, the ease of computation makes the Sharpe ratio a popular tool.

The **Treynor ratio** is a simple extension of the Sharpe ratio and resolves the Sharpe ratio's first limitation by substituting beta risk for total risk. The Treynor ratio is

$$\text{Treynor ratio} = \frac{R_p - R_f}{\beta_p}$$

Just like the Sharpe ratio, the numerators must be positive for the Treynor ratio to give meaningful results. In addition, the Treynor ratio does not work for negative-beta assets—that is, the denominator must also be positive for obtaining correct estimates and rankings. Although both the Sharpe and Treynor ratios allow for ranking of portfolios, neither ratio gives any information about the economic significance of differences in performance. For example, assume the Sharpe ratio of one portfolio is 0.75 and the Sharpe ratio for another portfolio is 0.80. The second portfolio is superior, but is that difference meaningful? In addition, we do not know whether either of the portfolios is better than the passive market portfolio. The remaining two measures, M^2 and Jensen's alpha, attempt to address that problem by comparing portfolios while also providing information about the extent of the overperformance or underperformance.

M-Squared (M^2) M^2 was created by Franco Modigliani and his granddaughter, Leah Modigliani—hence the name *M*-squared. M^2 is an extension of the Sharpe ratio in that it is based on *total risk*, not beta risk. The idea behind the measure is to create a portfolio (P') that mimics the risk of a market portfolio—that is, the mimicking portfolio (P') alters the weights in Portfolio P and the risk-free asset until Portfolio P' has the same total risk as the market (i.e., $\sigma_{P'} = \sigma_m$). Because the risks of the mimicking portfolio

and the market portfolio are the same, we can obtain the return on the mimicking portfolio and directly compare it with the market return. The weight in Portfolio P, w_p , that makes the risks equal can be calculated as follows:

$$\sigma_{p'} = w_p \sigma_p + (1 - w_p) \sigma_{R_f} = \sigma_m = w_p \sigma_p, \text{ which gives}$$

$$w_p = \frac{\sigma_m}{\sigma_p}$$

Because the correlation between the market and the risk-free asset is zero, we get w_p as the weight invested in Portfolio P and the balance invested in the risk-free asset. The risk-adjusted return for the mimicking portfolio is:

$$\begin{aligned} R_{p'} &= w_p R_p + (1 - w_p) R_f = \left(\frac{\sigma_m}{\sigma_p} \right) R_p + \left(1 - \frac{\sigma_m}{\sigma_p} \right) R_f \\ &= R_f + \left(\frac{\sigma_m}{\sigma_p} \right) (R_p - R_f) = R_f + \sigma_m \left(\frac{R_p - R_f}{\sigma_p} \right) \end{aligned}$$

The return of the mimicking portfolio based on excess returns is $(R_p - R_f) \frac{\sigma_m}{\sigma_p}$.⁵ The difference in the return of the mimicking portfolio and the market return is M^2 , which can be expressed as a formula:

$$M^2 = (R_p - R_f) \frac{\sigma_m}{\sigma_p} - (R_m - R_f)$$

M^2 gives us rankings that are identical to those of the Sharpe ratio. They are easier to interpret, however, because they are in percentage terms. A portfolio that matches the performance of the market will have an M^2 of zero, whereas a portfolio that outperforms the market will have an M^2 that is positive. By using M^2 , we are not only able to determine the rank of a portfolio but also which, if any, of our portfolios beat the market on a risk-adjusted basis.

Jensen's Alpha Like the Treynor ratio, Jensen's alpha is based on systematic risk. We can measure a portfolio's systematic risk by estimating the market model, which is done by regressing the portfolio's daily return on the market's daily return. The coefficient on the market return is an estimate of the beta risk of the portfolio (see Section 3.2.5 for more details). We can calculate the risk-adjusted return of the portfolio using the beta of the portfolio and the CAPM. The difference between the actual portfolio return and the calculated risk-adjusted return is a measure of the portfolio's performance relative to the market portfolio and is called Jensen's alpha. By definition, α_m of the market is zero. Jensen's alpha is also the vertical distance from the SML measuring the excess return for the same risk as that of the market and is given by

$$\alpha_p = R_p - [R_f + \beta_p (R_m - R_f)]$$

If the period is long, it may contain different risk-free rates, in which case R_f represents the average risk-free rate. Furthermore, the returns in the equation are all realized, actual returns. The sign of α_p indicates whether the portfolio has outperformed the market. If α_p is positive, then the portfolio has outperformed the market; if α_p is negative, the portfolio has underperformed the market. Jensen's alpha is commonly used for evaluating most institutional managers, pension funds, and mutual funds. Values of alpha can be used to rank different managers and the performance of their

⁵ Note that the last term within parentheses on the right-hand side of the previous equation is the Sharpe ratio.

portfolios, as well as the magnitude of underperformance or overperformance. For example, if a portfolio's alpha is 2 percent and another portfolio's alpha is 5 percent, the second portfolio has outperformed the first portfolio by 3 percentage points and the market by 5 percentage points. Jensen's alpha is the maximum amount that you should be willing to pay the manager to manage your money.

EXAMPLE 10**Portfolio Performance Evaluation**

A British pension fund has employed three investment managers, each of whom is responsible for investing in one-third of all asset classes so that the pension fund has a well-diversified portfolio. Information about the managers is given below.

Manager	Return	σ	β
X	10%	20%	1.1
Y	11	10	0.7
Z	12	25	0.6
Market (M)	9	19	
Risk-free rate (R_f)	3		

Calculate the expected return, Sharpe ratio, Treynor ratio, M^2 , and Jensen's alpha. Analyze your results and plot the returns and betas of these portfolios.

Solution:

In each case, the calculations are shown only for Manager X. All answers are tabulated below. Note that the β of the market is 1 and the σ and β of the risk-free rate are both zero.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Expected return: } E(R_X) &= R_f + \beta_X [E(R_m) - R_f] = 0.03 + 1.10 \\ &\quad \times (0.09 - 0.03) = 0.096 = 9.6\% \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{Sharpe ratio} = \frac{R_X - R_f}{\sigma_X} = \frac{0.10 - 0.03}{0.20} = 0.35$$

$$\text{Treynor ratio} = \frac{R_X - R_f}{\beta_X} = \frac{0.10 - 0.03}{1.1} = 0.064$$

$$\begin{aligned} M^2 &= (R_X - R_f) \frac{\sigma_m}{\sigma_X} - (R_m - R_f) = (0.10 - 0.03) \frac{0.19}{0.20} \\ &\quad - (0.09 - 0.03) = 0.0065 = 0.65\% \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \alpha_X &= R_X - [R_f + \beta_X (R_m - R_f)] = 0.10 - (0.03 + 1.1 \times 0.06) \\ &= 0.004 = 0.40\% \end{aligned}$$

Exhibit 8 Measures of Portfolio Performance Evaluation

Manager	R_i	σ_i	β_i	$E(R_i)$	Sharpe Ratio	Treynor Ratio	M^2	α_i
X	10.0%	20.0%	1.10	9.6%	0.35	0.064	0.65%	0.40%
Y	11.0	10.0	0.70	7.2	0.80	0.114	9.20	3.80
Z	12.0	25.0	0.60	6.6	0.36	0.150	0.84	5.40

Exhibit 8 (Continued)

Manager	R_i	σ_i	β_i	$E(R_i)$	Sharpe Ratio	Treynor Ratio	M^2	α_i
M	9.0	19.0	1.00	9.0	0.32	0.060	0.00	0.00
R_f	3.0	0.0	0.00	3.0	–	–	–	0.00

Let us begin with an analysis of the risk-free asset. Because the risk-free asset has zero risk and a beta of zero, calculating the Sharpe ratio, Treynor ratio, or M^2 is not possible because they all require the portfolio risk in the denominator. The risk-free asset's alpha, however, is zero. Turning to the market portfolio, we see that the absolute measures of performance, the Sharpe ratio and the Treynor ratio, are positive for the market portfolio. These ratios are positive as long as the portfolio earns a return that is in excess of that of the risk-free asset. M^2 and α_i are performance measures relative to the market, so they are both equal to zero for the market portfolio.

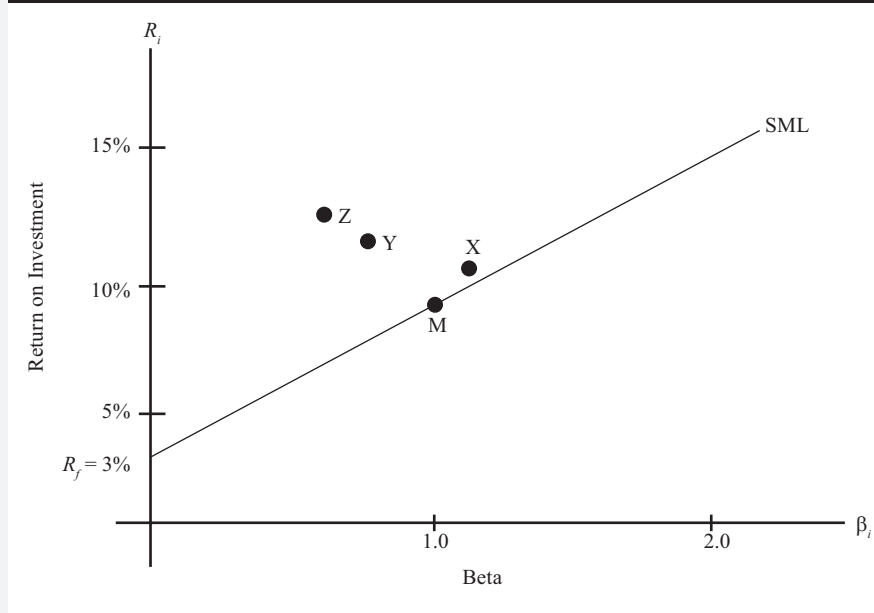
All three managers have Sharpe and Treynor ratios greater than those of the market, and all three managers' M^2 and α_i are positive; therefore, the pension fund should be satisfied with their performance. Among the three managers, Manager X has the worst performance, irrespective of whether total risk or systematic risk is considered for measuring performance. The relative rankings are depicted in Exhibit 9.

Exhibit 9 Ranking of Portfolios by Performance Measure

Rank	Sharpe Ratio	Treynor Ratio	M^2	α_i
1	Y	Z	Y	Z
2	Z	Y	Z	Y
3	X	X	X	X
4	M	M	M	M
5	–	–	–	R_f

Comparing Y and Z, we can observe that Y performs much better than Z when total risk is considered. Y has a Sharpe ratio of 0.80, compared with a Sharpe ratio of 0.36 for Z. Similarly, M^2 is higher for Y (9.20 percent) than for Z (0.84 percent). In contrast, when systematic risk is used, Z outperforms Y. The Treynor ratio is higher for Z (0.150) than for Y (0.114), and Jensen's alpha is also higher for Z (5.40 percent) than for Y (3.80 percent), which indicates that Z has done a better job of generating excess return relative to systematic risk than Y.

Exhibit 10 confirms these observations in that all three managers outperform the benchmark because all three points lie above the SML. Among the three portfolios, Z performs the best when we consider risk-adjusted returns because it is the point in Exhibit 10 that is located northwest relative to the portfolios X and Y.

Exhibit 10 Portfolios Along the SML

When do we use total risk performance measures like the Sharpe ratio and M^2 , and when do we use beta risk performance measures like the Treynor ratio and Jensen's alpha? Total risk is relevant for an investor when he or she holds a portfolio that is not fully diversified, which is not a desirable portfolio. In such cases, the Sharpe ratio and M^2 are appropriate performance measures. Thus, if the pension fund were to choose only one fund manager to manage all its assets, it should choose Manager Y. Performance measures relative to beta risk—Treynor ratio and Jensen's alpha—are relevant when the investor holds a well-diversified portfolio with negligible diversifiable risk. In other words, if the pension fund is well diversified and only the systematic risk of the portfolio matters, the fund should choose Manager Z.

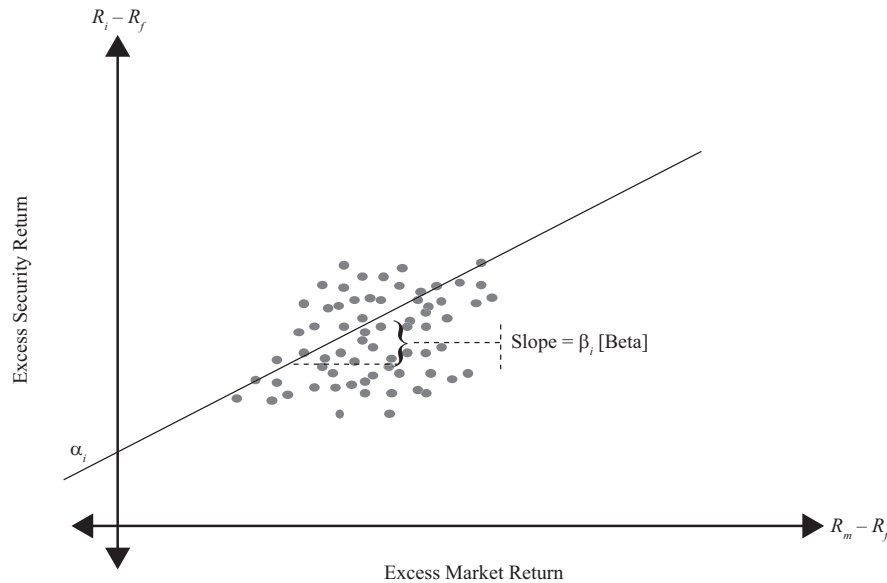
The measures of performance evaluation assume that the benchmark market portfolio is the correct portfolio. As a result, an error in the benchmark may cause the results to be misleading. For example, evaluating a real estate fund against the S&P 500 is incorrect because real estate has different characteristics than equity. In addition to errors in benchmarking, errors could occur in the measurement of risk and return of the market portfolio and the portfolios being evaluated. Finally, many estimates are based on historical data. Any projections based on such estimates assume that this level of performance will continue in the future.

4.3.3 Security Characteristic Line

Similar to the SML, we can draw a **security characteristic line** (SCL) for a security. The SCL is a plot of the excess return of the security on the excess return of the market. In Exhibit 11, Jensen's alpha is the intercept and the beta is the slope. The equation of the line can be obtained by rearranging the terms in the expression for Jensen's alpha and replacing the subscript p with i :

$$R_i - R_f = \alpha_i + \beta_i(R_m - R_f)$$

As an example, the SCL is drawn in Exhibit 11 using Manager X's portfolio from Exhibit 8. The security characteristic line can also be estimated by regressing the excess security return, $R_i - R_f$, on the excess market return, $R_m - R_f$.

Exhibit 11 The Security Characteristic Line

4.3.4 Security Selection

When discussing the CAPM, we assumed that investors have homogeneous expectations and are rational, risk-averse, utility-maximizing investors. With these assumptions, we were able to state that all investors assign the same value to all assets and, therefore, have the same optimal risky portfolio, which is the market portfolio. In other words, we assumed that there is commonality among beliefs about an asset's future cash flows and the required rate of return. Given the required rate of return, we can discount the future cash flows of the asset to arrive at its current value, or price, which is agreed upon by all or most investors.

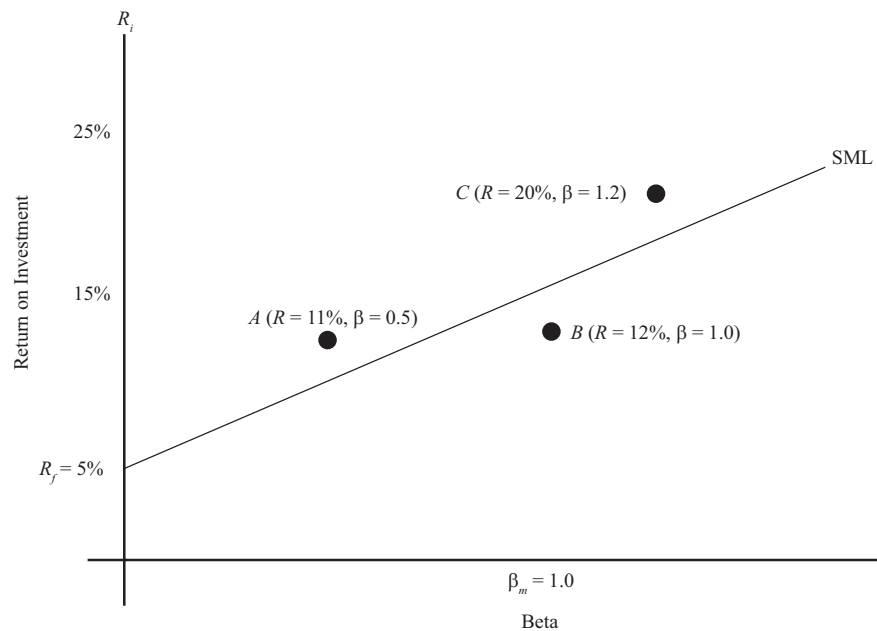
In this section, we introduce heterogeneity in beliefs of investors. Because investors are price takers, it is assumed that such heterogeneity does not significantly affect the market price of an asset. The difference in beliefs can relate to future cash flows, the systematic risk of the asset, or both. Because the current price of an asset is the discounted value of the future cash flows, the difference in beliefs could result in an investor-estimated price that is different from the CAPM-calculated price. The CAPM-calculated price is the current market price because it reflects the beliefs of all other investors in the market. If the investor-estimated current price is higher (lower) than the market price, the asset is considered undervalued (overvalued). Therefore, the CAPM is an effective tool for determining whether an asset is undervalued or overvalued and whether an investor should buy or sell the asset.

Although portfolio performance evaluation is backward looking and security selection is forward looking, we can apply the concepts of portfolio evaluation to security selection. The best measure to apply is Jensen's alpha because it uses systematic risk and is meaningful even on an absolute basis. A positive Jensen's alpha indicates a superior security, whereas a negative Jensen's alpha indicates a security that is likely to underperform the market when adjusted for risk.

Another way of presenting the same information is with the security market line. Potential investors can plot a security's expected return and beta against the SML and use this relationship to decide whether the security is overvalued or undervalued

in the market.⁶ Exhibit 12 shows a number of securities along with the SML. All securities that reflect the consensus market view are points directly on the SML (i.e., properly valued). If a point representing the estimated return of an asset is above the SML (Points A and C), the asset has a low level of risk relative to the amount of expected return and would be a good choice for investment. In contrast, if the point representing a particular asset is below the SML (Point B), the stock is considered overvalued. Its return does not compensate for the level of risk and should not be considered for investment. Of course, a short position in Asset B can be taken if short selling is permitted.

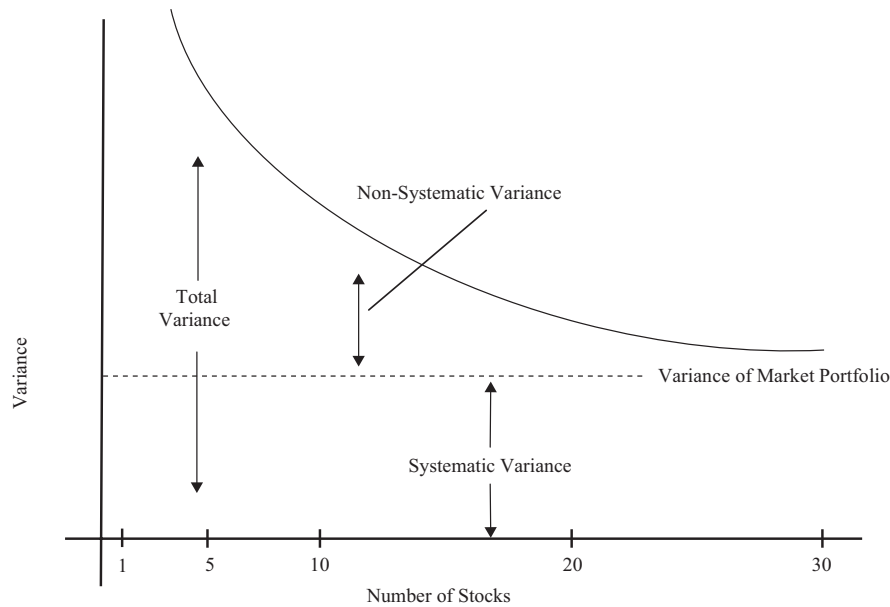
Exhibit 12 Security Selection Using SML



4.3.5 Constructing a Portfolio

Based on the CAPM, investors should hold a combination of the risk-free asset and the market portfolio. The true market portfolio consists of a large number of securities, and an investor would have to own all of them in order to be completely diversified. Because owning all existing securities is not practical, in this section, we will consider an alternate method of constructing a portfolio that may not require a large number of securities and will still be sufficiently diversified. Exhibit 13 shows the reduction in risk as we add more and more securities to a portfolio. As can be seen from the exhibit, much of the nonsystematic risk can be diversified away in as few as 30 securities. These securities, however, should be randomly selected and represent different asset classes for the portfolio to effectively diversify risk. Otherwise, one may be better off using an index (e.g., the S&P 500 for a diversified large-cap equity portfolio and other indexes for other asset classes).

⁶ In this reading, we do not consider transaction costs, which are important whenever deviations from a passive portfolio are considered. Thus, the magnitude of undervaluation or overvaluation should be considered in relation to transaction costs prior to making an investment decision.

Exhibit 13 Diversification with Number of Stocks

Let's begin constructing the optimal portfolio with a portfolio of securities like the S&P 500. Although the S&P 500 is a portfolio of 500 securities, it is a good starting point because it is readily available as a single security for trading. In contrast, it represents only the large corporations that are traded on the US stock markets and, therefore, does not encompass the global market entirely. Because the S&P 500 is the base portfolio, however, we treat it as the market for the CAPM.

Any security not included in the S&P 500 can be evaluated to determine whether it should be integrated into the portfolio. That decision is based on the α_i of the security, which is calculated using the CAPM with the S&P 500 as the market portfolio. Note that security i may not necessarily be priced incorrectly for it to have a non-zero α_i ; α_i can be positive merely because it is not well correlated with the S&P 500 and its return is sufficient for the amount of systematic risk it contains. For example, assume a new stock market, ABC, opens to foreign investors only and is being considered for inclusion in the portfolio. We estimate ABC's model parameters relative to the S&P 500 and find an α_i of approximately 3 percent, with a β_i of 0.60. Because α_i is positive, ABC should be added to the portfolio. Securities with a significantly negative α_i may be short sold to maximize risk-adjusted return. For convenience, however, we will assume that negative positions are not permitted in the portfolio.

In addition to the securities that are correctly priced but enter the portfolio because of their risk–return superiority, securities already in the portfolio (S&P 500) may be undervalued or overvalued based on investor expectations that are incongruent with the market. Securities in the S&P 500 that are overvalued (negative α_i) should be dropped from the S&P 500 portfolio, if it is possible to exclude individual securities, and positions in securities in the S&P 500 that are undervalued (positive α_i) should be increased.

This brings us to the next question: What should the relative weight of securities in the portfolio be? Because we are concerned with maximizing risk-adjusted return, securities with a higher α_i should have a higher weight, and securities with greater nonsystematic risk should be given less weight in the portfolio. A complete analysis of portfolio optimization is beyond the scope of this reading, but the following principles are helpful. The weight in each nonmarket security should be proportional

to $\frac{\alpha_i}{\sigma_{ei}^2}$, where the denominator is the nonsystematic variance of security i . The total

weight of nonmarket securities in the portfolio is proportional to $\frac{\sum_{i=1}^N w_i \alpha_i}{\sum_{i=1}^N w_i^2 \sigma_{ei}^2}$. The weight

in the market portfolio is a function of $\frac{E(R_m)}{\sigma_m^2}$. The information ratio, $\frac{\alpha_i}{\sigma_{ei}}$ (i.e., alpha

divided by nonsystematic risk), measures the abnormal return per unit of risk added by the security to a well-diversified portfolio. The larger the information ratio is, the more valuable the security.

EXAMPLE 11

Optimal Investor Portfolio with Heterogeneous Beliefs

A Japanese investor is holding the Nikkei 225 index, which is her version of the market. She thinks that three stocks, P, Q, and R, which are not in the Nikkei 225, are undervalued and should form a part of her portfolio. She has the following information about the stocks, the Nikkei 225, and the risk-free rate (the information is given as expected return, standard deviation, and beta):

P: 15%, 30%, 1.5

Q: 18%, 25%, 1.2

R: 16%, 23%, 1.1

Nikkei 225: 12%, 18%, 1.0

Risk-free rate: 2%, 0%, 0.0

- 1 Calculate Jensen's alpha for P, Q, and R.
- 2 Calculate nonsystematic variance for P, Q, and R.
- 3 Should any of the three stocks be included in the portfolio? If so, which stock should have the highest weight in the portfolio?

Solution to 1:

$$\text{Stock P's } \alpha: R_i - [R_f + \beta_i(R_m - R_f)] = 0.15 - (0.02 + 1.5 \times 0.10) = -0.02$$

$$\text{Stock Q's } \alpha: R_i - [R_f + \beta_i(R_m - R_f)] = 0.18 - (0.02 + 1.2 \times 0.10) = 0.04$$

$$\text{Stock R's } \alpha: R_i - [R_f + \beta_i(R_m - R_f)] = 0.16 - (0.02 + 1.1 \times 0.10) = 0.03$$

Solution to 2:

Total variance = Systematic variance + Nonsystematic variance. From Section 3.2.2, we write the equation as $\sigma_{ei}^2 = \sigma_i^2 - \beta_i^2 \sigma_m^2$.

$$\text{Stock P's nonsystematic variance} = (0.30 \times 0.30) - (1.5 \times 1.5 \times 0.18 \times 0.18) = 0.09 - 0.0729 = 0.0171$$

$$\text{Stock Q's nonsystematic variance} = (0.25 \times 0.25) - (1.2 \times 1.2 \times 0.18 \times 0.18) = 0.0625 - 0.0467 = 0.0158$$

$$\text{Stock R's nonsystematic variance} = (0.23 \times 0.23) - (1.1 \times 1.1 \times 0.18 \times 0.18) = 0.0529 - 0.0392 = 0.0137$$

Solution to 3:

Stock P has a negative α and should not be included in the portfolio, unless a negative position can be assumed through short selling. Stocks Q and R have a positive α ; therefore, they should be included in the portfolio with positive weights.

The relative weight of Q is $0.04/0.0158 = 2.53$.

The relative weight of R is $0.03/0.0137 = 2.19$.

Stock Q will have the largest weight among the nonmarket securities to be added to the portfolio. In relative terms, the weight of Q will be 15.5 percent greater than the weight of R ($2.53/2.19 = 1.155$). As the number of securities increases, the analysis becomes more complex. However, the contribution of each additional security toward improvement in the risk–return trade-off will decrease and eventually disappear, resulting in a well-diversified portfolio.

BEYOND THE CAPITAL ASSET PRICING MODEL**5**

In general, return-generating models allow us to estimate an asset's return given its characteristics, where the asset characteristics required for estimating the return are specified in the model. Estimating an asset's return is important for investment decision making. These models are also important as a benchmark for evaluating portfolio, security, or manager performance. The return-generating models were briefly introduced in Section 3.2.1, and one of those models, the capital asset pricing model, was discussed in detail in Section 4.

The purpose of this section is to make readers aware that, although the CAPM is an important concept and model, the CAPM is not the only return-generating model. In this section, we revisit and highlight the limitations of the CAPM and preview return-generating models that address some of those limitations.

5.1 The CAPM

The CAPM is a model that simplifies a complex investment environment and allows investors to understand the relationship between risk and return. Although the CAPM affords us this insight, its assumptions can be constraining and unrealistic, as mentioned in Section 5.2. In Section 5.3, we discuss other models that have been developed along with their own limitations.

5.2 Limitations of the CAPM

The CAPM is subject to theoretical and practical limitations. Theoretical limitations are inherent in the structure of the model, whereas practical limitations are those that arise in implementing the model.

5.2.1 Theoretical Limitations of the CAPM

- Single-factor model: Only systematic risk or beta risk is priced in the CAPM. Thus, the CAPM states that no other investment characteristics should be considered in estimating returns. As a consequence, it is prescriptive and easy to understand and apply, although it is very restrictive and inflexible.
- Single-period model: The CAPM is a single-period model that does not consider multi-period implications or investment objectives of future periods, which can lead to myopic and suboptimal investment decisions. For example, it may be optimal to default on interest payments in the current period to maximize current returns, but the consequences may be negative in the next period. A single-period model like the CAPM is unable to capture factors that vary over time and span several periods.

5.2.2 Practical Limitations of the CAPM

In addition to the theoretical limitations, implementation of the CAPM raises several practical concerns, some of which are listed below.

- Market portfolio: The true market portfolio according to the CAPM includes all assets, financial and nonfinancial, which means that it also includes many assets that are not investable, such as human capital and assets in closed economies. Richard Roll⁷ noted that one reason the CAPM is not testable is that the true market portfolio is unobservable.
- Proxy for a market portfolio: In the absence of a true market portfolio, market participants generally use proxies. These proxies, however, vary among analysts, the country of the investor, etc. and generate different return estimates for the same asset, which is impermissible in the CAPM.
- Estimation of beta risk: A long history of returns (three to five years) is required to estimate beta risk. The historical state of the company, however, may not be an accurate representation of the current or future state of the company. More generally, the CAPM is an *ex ante* model, yet it is usually applied using *ex post* data. In addition, using different periods for estimation results in different estimates of beta. For example, a three-year beta is unlikely to be the same as a five-year beta, and a beta estimated with daily returns is unlikely to be the same as the beta estimated with monthly returns. Thus, we are likely to estimate different returns for the same asset depending on the estimate of beta risk used in the model.
- The CAPM is a poor predictor of returns: If the CAPM is a good model, its estimate of asset returns should be closely associated with realized returns. However, empirical support for the CAPM is weak.⁸ In other words, tests of the CAPM show that asset returns are not determined only by systematic risk. Poor predictability of returns when using the CAPM is a serious limitation because return-generating models are used to estimate future returns.
- Homogeneity in investor expectations: The CAPM assumes that homogeneity exists in investor expectations for the model to generate a single optimal risky portfolio (the market) and a single security market line. Without this assumption, there will be numerous optimal risky portfolios and numerous security market lines. Clearly, investors can process the same information in a rational manner and arrive at different optimal risky portfolios.

⁷ Roll (1977).

⁸ See, for example, Fama and French (1992).

5.3 Extensions to the CAPM

Given the limitations of the CAPM, it is not surprising that other models have been proposed to address some of these limitations. These new models are not without limitations of their own, which we will mention while discussing the models. We divide the models into two categories and provide one example of each type.

5.3.1 Theoretical Models

Theoretical models are based on the same principle as the CAPM but expand the number of risk factors. The best example of a theoretical model is the arbitrage pricing theory (APT), which was developed by Stephen Ross.⁹ Like the CAPM, APT proposes a linear relationship between expected return and risk:

$$E(R_p) = R_F + \lambda_1\beta_{p,1} + \dots + \lambda_K\beta_{p,K}$$

where

$E(R_p)$ = the expected return of portfolio p

R_F = the risk-free rate

λ_j = the risk premium (expected return in excess of the risk-free rate) for factor j

$\beta_{p,j}$ = the sensitivity of the portfolio to factor j

K = the number of risk factors

Unlike the CAPM, however, APT allows numerous risk factors—as many as are relevant to a particular asset. Moreover, other than the risk-free rate, the risk factors need not be common and may vary from one asset to another. A no-arbitrage condition in asset markets is used to determine the risk factors and estimate betas for the risk factors.

Although it is theoretically elegant, flexible, and superior to the CAPM, APT is not commonly used in practice because it does not specify any of the risk factors and it becomes difficult to identify risk factors and estimate betas for each asset in a portfolio. So from a practical standpoint, the CAPM is preferred to APT.

5.3.2 Practical Models

If beta risk in the CAPM does not explain returns, which factors do? Practical models seek to answer this question through extensive research. As mentioned in Section 3.2.1, the best example of such a model is the four-factor model proposed by Fama and French (1992) and Carhart (1997).

Based on an analysis of the relationship between past returns and a variety of different factors, Fama and French (1992) proposed that three factors seem to explain asset returns better than just systematic risk. Those three factors are relative size, relative book-to-market value, and beta of the asset. With Carhart's (1997) addition of relative past stock returns, the model can be written as follows:

$$E(R_{it}) = \alpha_i + \beta_{i,MKT}MKT_t + \beta_{i,SMB}SMB_t + \beta_{i,HML}HML_t + \beta_{i,UMD}UMD_t$$

⁹ Ross (1976).

where

$E(R_i)$ = the return on an asset in excess of the one-month T-bill return

MKT = the excess return on the market portfolio

SMB = the difference in returns between small-capitalization stocks and large-capitalization stocks (size)

HML = the difference in returns between high-book-to-market stocks and low-book-to-market stocks (value versus growth)

UMD = the difference in returns of the prior year's winners and losers (momentum)

Historical analysis shows that the coefficient on MKT is not significantly different from zero, which implies that stock return is unrelated to the market. The factors that explain stock returns are size (smaller companies outperform larger companies), book-to-market ratio (value companies outperform glamour companies), and momentum (past winners outperform past losers).

The four-factor model has been found to predict asset returns much better than the CAPM and is extensively used in estimating returns for *US stocks*. Note the emphasis on US stocks; because these factors were estimated for US stocks, they have worked well for US stocks over the last several years.

Three observations are in order. First, no strong economic arguments exist for the three additional risk factors. Second, the four-factor model does not necessarily apply to other assets or assets in other countries, and third, there is no expectation that the model will continue to work well in the future.

5.4 The CAPM and Beyond

The CAPM has limitations and, more importantly, is ineffective in modeling asset returns. However, it is a simple model that allows us to estimate returns and evaluate performance. The newer models provide alternatives to the CAPM, although they are not necessarily better in all situations or practical in their application in the real world.

SUMMARY

In this reading, we discussed the capital asset pricing model in detail and covered related topics such as the capital market line. The reading began with an interpretation of the CML, uses of the market portfolio as a passive management strategy, and leveraging of the market portfolio to obtain a higher expected return. Next, we discussed systematic and nonsystematic risk and why one should not expect to be compensated for taking on nonsystematic risk. The discussion of systematic and nonsystematic risk was followed by an introduction to beta and return-generating models. This broad topic was then broken down into a discussion of the CAPM and, more specifically, the relationship between beta and expected return. The final section included applications of the CAPM to capital budgeting, portfolio performance evaluation, and security selection. The highlights of the reading are as follows.

- The capital market line is a special case of the capital allocation line, where the efficient portfolio is the market portfolio.
- Obtaining a unique optimal risky portfolio is not possible if investors are permitted to have heterogeneous beliefs because such beliefs will result in heterogeneous asset prices.

- Investors can leverage their portfolios by borrowing money and investing in the market.
- Systematic risk is the risk that affects the entire market or economy and is not diversifiable.
- Nonsystematic risk is local and can be diversified away by combining assets with low correlations.
- Beta risk, or systematic risk, is priced and earns a return, whereas nonsystematic risk is not priced.
- The expected return of an asset depends on its beta risk and can be computed using the CAPM, which is given by $E(R_i) = R_f + \beta_i[E(R_m) - R_f]$.
- The security market line is an implementation of the CAPM and applies to all securities, whether they are efficient or not.
- Expected return from the CAPM can be used for making capital budgeting decisions.
- Portfolios can be evaluated by several CAPM-based measures, such as the Sharpe ratio, the Treynor ratio, M^2 , and Jensen's alpha.
- The SML can assist in security selection and optimal portfolio construction.

By successfully understanding the content of this reading, you should feel comfortable decomposing total variance into systematic and nonsystematic variance, analyzing beta risk, using the CAPM, and evaluating portfolios and individual securities.

REFERENCES

- Carhart, Mark. 1997. "On Persistence in Mutual Fund Performance." *Journal of Finance*, vol. 52, no. 1:57–82.
- Fama, Eugene, and Kenneth French. 1992. "The Cross-Section of Expected Stock Returns." *Journal of Finance*, vol. 47, no. 2:427–466.
- Lintner, John. 1965a. "Security Prices, Risk, and Maximal Gains from Diversification." *Journal of Finance*, vol. 20, no. 4:587–615.
- Lintner, John. 1965b. "The Valuation of Risk Assets and the Selection of Risky Investments in Stock Portfolios and Capital Budgets." *Review of Economics and Statistics*, vol. 47, no. 1:13–37.
- Markowitz, Harry. 1952. "Portfolio Selection." *Journal of Finance*, vol. 7, no. 1:77–91.
- Mossin, Jan. 1966. "Equilibrium in a Capital Asset Market." *Econometrica*, vol. 34, no. 4:768–783.
- Roll, Richard. 1977. "A Critique of the Asset Pricing Theory's Tests Part I: On Past and Potential Testability of the Theory." *Journal of Financial Economics*, vol. 4, no. 2:129–176.
- Ross, Stephen A. 1976. "The Arbitrage Theory of Capital Asset Pricing." *Journal of Economic Theory*, vol. 13, no. 3:341–360.
- Sharpe, William F. 1964. "Capital Asset Prices: A Theory Of Market Equilibrium under Conditions of Risk." *Journal of Finance*, vol. 19, no. 3:425–442.
- Treynor, Jack L. 1961. *Market Value, Time, and Risk*. Unpublished manuscript.
- Treynor, Jack L. 1962. *Toward a Theory of Market Value of Risky Assets*. Unpublished manuscript.

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

- 1 The line depicting the total risk and expected return of portfolio combinations of a risk-free asset and any risky asset is the:
 - A security market line.
 - B capital allocation line.
 - C security characteristic line.
- 2 The portfolio of a risk-free asset and a risky asset has a better risk-return tradeoff than investing in only one asset type because the correlation between the risk-free asset and the risky asset is equal to:
 - A -1.0 .
 - B 0.0 .
 - C 1.0 .
- 3 With respect to capital market theory, an investor's optimal portfolio is the combination of a risk-free asset and a risky asset with the highest:
 - A expected return.
 - B indifference curve.
 - C capital allocation line slope.
- 4 Highly risk-averse investors will *most likely* invest the majority of their wealth in:
 - A risky assets.
 - B risk-free assets.
 - C the optimal risky portfolio.
- 5 The capital market line (CML) is the graph of the risk and return of portfolio combinations consisting of the risk-free asset and:
 - A any risky portfolio.
 - B the market portfolio.
 - C the leveraged portfolio.
- 6 Which of the following statements *most accurately* defines the market portfolio in capital market theory? The market portfolio consists of all:
 - A risky assets.
 - B tradable assets.
 - C investable assets.
- 7 With respect to capital market theory, the optimal risky portfolio:
 - A is the market portfolio.
 - B has the highest expected return.
 - C has the lowest expected variance.
- 8 Relative to portfolios on the CML, any portfolio that plots above the CML is considered:
 - A inferior.
 - B inefficient.
 - C unachievable.

- 9 A portfolio on the capital market line with returns greater than the returns on the market portfolio represents a(n):
- A lending portfolio.
 - B borrowing portfolio.
 - C unachievable portfolio.
- 10 With respect to the capital market line, a portfolio on the CML with returns less than the returns on the market portfolio represents a(n):
- A lending portfolio.
 - B borrowing portfolio.
 - C unachievable portfolio.
- 11 Which of the following types of risk is *most likely* avoided by forming a diversified portfolio?
- A Total risk.
 - B Systematic risk.
 - C Nonsystematic risk.
- 12 Which of the following events is *most likely* an example of nonsystematic risk?
- A A decline in interest rates.
 - B The resignation of chief executive officer.
 - C An increase in the value of the US dollar.
- 13 With respect to the pricing of risk in capital market theory, which of the following statements is *most accurate*?
- A All risk is priced.
 - B Systematic risk is priced.
 - C Nonsystematic risk is priced.
- 14 The sum of an asset's systematic variance and its nonsystematic variance of returns is equal to the asset's:
- A beta.
 - B total risk.
 - C total variance.
- 15 With respect to return-generating models, the intercept term of the market model is the asset's estimated:
- A beta.
 - B alpha.
 - C variance.
- 16 With respect to return-generating models, the slope term of the market model is an estimate of the asset's:
- A total risk.
 - B systematic risk.
 - C nonsystematic risk.
- 17 With respect to return-generating models, which of the following statements is *most accurate*? Return-generating models are used to directly estimate the:
- A expected return of a security.
 - B weights of securities in a portfolio.
 - C parameters of the capital market line.

The following information relates to Questions 18–20

An analyst gathers the following information:

Security	Expected Annual Return (%)	Expected Standard Deviation (%)	Correlation between Security and the Market
Security 1	11	25	0.6
Security 2	11	20	0.7
Security 3	14	20	0.8
Market	10	15	1.0

- 18 Which security has the *highest* total risk?
- A Security 1.
 - B Security 2.
 - C Security 3.
- 19 Which security has the *highest* beta measure?
- A Security 1.
 - B Security 2.
 - C Security 3.
- 20 Which security has the *least* amount of market risk?
- A Security 1.
 - B Security 2.
 - C Security 3.
-
- 21 With respect to capital market theory, the average beta of all assets in the market is:
- A less than 1.0.
 - B equal to 1.0.
 - C greater than 1.0.
- 22 The slope of the security characteristic line is an asset's:
- A beta.
 - B excess return.
 - C risk premium.
- 23 The graph of the capital asset pricing model is the:
- A capital market line.
 - B security market line.
 - C security characteristic line.
- 24 With respect to capital market theory, correctly priced individual assets can be plotted on the:
- A capital market line.
 - B security market line.
 - C capital allocation line.

- 25 With respect to the capital asset pricing model, the primary determinant of expected return of an individual asset is the:
- A asset's beta.
 - B market risk premium.
 - C asset's standard deviation.
- 26 With respect to the capital asset pricing model, which of the following values of beta for an asset is *most likely* to have an expected return for the asset that is less than the risk-free rate?
- A -0.5
 - B 0.0
 - C 0.5
- 27 With respect to the capital asset pricing model, the market risk premium is:
- A less than the excess market return.
 - B equal to the excess market return.
 - C greater than the excess market return.

The following information relates to Questions 28–31

An analyst gathers the following information:

Security	Expected Standard Deviation (%)	Beta
Security 1	25	1.50
Security 2	15	1.40
Security 3	20	1.60

- 28 With respect to the capital asset pricing model, if the expected market risk premium is 6% and the risk-free rate is 3%, the expected return for Security 1 is *closest* to:
- A 9.0%.
 - B 12.0%.
 - C 13.5%.
- 29 With respect to the capital asset pricing model, if expected return for Security 2 is equal to 11.4% and the risk-free rate is 3%, the expected return for the market is *closest* to:
- A 8.4%.
 - B 9.0%.
 - C 10.3%.
- 30 With respect to the capital asset pricing model, if the expected market risk premium is 6% the security with the *highest* expected return is:
- A Security 1.
 - B Security 2.
 - C Security 3.
- 31 With respect to the capital asset pricing model, a decline in the expected market return will have the *greatest* impact on the expected return of:

- A Security 1.
 - B Security 2.
 - C Security 3.
-

- 32 Which of the following performance measures is consistent with the CAPM?
- A M -squared.
 - B Sharpe ratio.
 - C Jensen's alpha.
- 33 Which of the following performance measures does *not* require the measure to be compared to another value?
- A Sharpe ratio.
 - B Treynor ratio.
 - C Jensen's alpha.
- 34 Which of the following performance measures is *most* appropriate for an investor who is *not* fully diversified?
- A M -squared.
 - B Treynor ratio.
 - C Jensen's alpha.
- 35 Analysts who have estimated returns of an asset to be greater than the expected returns generated by the capital asset pricing model should consider the asset to be:
- A overvalued.
 - B undervalued.
 - C properly valued.
- 36 With respect to capital market theory, which of the following statements *best* describes the effect of the homogeneity assumption? Because all investors have the same economic expectations of future cash flows for all assets, investors will invest in:
- A the same optimal risky portfolio.
 - B the Standard and Poor's 500 Index.
 - C assets with the same amount of risk.
- 37 With respect to capital market theory, which of the following assumptions allows for the existence of the market portfolio? All investors:
- A are price takers.
 - B have homogeneous expectations.
 - C plan for the same, single holding period.
- 38 The intercept of the best fit line formed by plotting the excess returns of a manager's portfolio on the excess returns of the market is *best* described as Jensen's:
- A beta.
 - B ratio.
 - C alpha.
- 39 Portfolio managers who are maximizing risk-adjusted returns will seek to invest *more* in securities with:
- A lower values of Jensen's alpha.
 - B values of Jensen's alpha equal to 0.

- C higher values of Jensen's alpha.
- 40 Portfolio managers, who are maximizing risk-adjusted returns, will seek to invest *less* in securities with:
- A lower values for nonsystematic variance.
 - B values of nonsystematic variance equal to 0.
 - C higher values for nonsystematic variance.

SOLUTIONS

- 1 B is correct. A capital allocation line (CAL) plots the expected return and total risk of combinations of the risk-free asset and a risky asset (or a portfolio of risky assets).
- 2 B is correct. A portfolio of the risk-free asset and a risky asset or a portfolio of risky assets can result in a better risk-return tradeoff than an investment in only one type of an asset, because the risk-free asset has zero correlation with the risky asset.
- 3 B is correct. Investors will have different optimal portfolios depending on their indifference curves. The optimal portfolio for each investor is the one with highest utility; that is, where the CAL is tangent to the individual investor's highest possible indifference curve.
- 4 B is correct. Although the optimal risky portfolio is the market portfolio, highly risk-averse investors choose to invest most of their wealth in the risk-free asset.
- 5 B is correct. Although the capital allocation line includes all possible combinations of the risk-free asset and any risky portfolio, the capital market line is a special case of the capital allocation line, which uses the market portfolio as the optimal risky portfolio.
- 6 A is correct. The market includes all risky assets, or anything that has value; however, not all assets are tradable, and not all tradable assets are investable.
- 7 A is correct. The optimal risky portfolio is the market portfolio. Capital market theory assumes that investors have homogeneous expectations, which means that all investors analyze securities in the same way and are rational. That is, investors use the same probability distributions, use the same inputs for future cash flows, and arrive at the same valuations. Because their valuations of all assets are identical, all investors will invest in the same optimal risky portfolio (i.e., the market portfolio).
- 8 C is correct. Theoretically, any point above the CML is not achievable and any point below the CML is dominated by and inferior to any point on the CML.
- 9 B is correct. As one moves further to the right of point M on the capital market line, an increasing amount of borrowed money is being invested in the market portfolio. This means that there is negative investment in the risk-free asset, which is referred to as a leveraged position in the risky portfolio.
- 10 A is correct. The combinations of the risk-free asset and the market portfolio on the CML where returns are less than the returns on the market portfolio are termed 'lending' portfolios.
- 11 C is correct. Investors are capable of avoiding nonsystematic risk by forming a portfolio of assets that are not highly correlated with one another, thereby reducing total risk and being exposed only to systematic risk.
- 12 B is correct. Nonsystematic risk is specific to a firm, whereas systematic risk affects the entire economy.
- 13 B is correct. Only systematic risk is priced. Investors do not receive any return for accepting nonsystematic or diversifiable risk.
- 14 C is correct. The sum of systematic variance and nonsystematic variance equals the total variance of the asset. References to total risk as the sum of systematic risk and nonsystematic risk refer to variance, not to risk.
- 15 B is correct. In the market model, $R_i = \alpha_i + \beta_i R_m + e_i$, the intercept, α_i , and slope coefficient, β_i , are estimated using historical security and market returns.

- 16 B is correct. In the market model, $R_i = \alpha_i + \beta_i R_m + e_i$, the slope coefficient, β_i , is an estimate of the asset's systematic or market risk.
- 17 A is correct. In the market model, $R_i = \alpha_i + \beta_i R_m + e_i$, the intercept, α_i , and slope coefficient, β_i , are estimated using historical security and market returns. These parameter estimates then are used to predict firm-specific returns that a security may earn in a future period.
- 18 A is correct. Security 1 has the highest total variance; $0.0625 = 0.25^2$ compared to Security 2 and Security 3 with a total variance of 0.0400.
- 19 C is correct. Security 3 has the highest beta value; $1.07 = \frac{\rho_{3,m}\sigma_3}{\sigma_m} = \frac{(0.80)(20\%)}{15\%}$ compared to Security 1 and Security 2 with beta values of 1.00 and 0.93, respectively.
- 20 B is correct. Security 2 has the lowest beta value; $0.93 = \frac{\rho_{2,m}\sigma_2}{\sigma_m} = \frac{(0.70)(20\%)}{15\%}$ compared to Security 1 and 3 with beta values of 1.00 and 1.07, respectively.
- 21 B is correct. The average beta of all assets in the market, by definition, is equal to 1.0.
- 22 A is correct. The security characteristic line is a plot of the excess return of the security on the excess return of the market. In such a graph, Jensen's alpha is the intercept and the beta is the slope.
- 23 B is correct. The security market line (SML) is a graphical representation of the capital asset pricing model, with beta risk on the x-axis and expected return on the y-axis.
- 24 B is correct. The security market line applies to any security, efficient or not. The CAL and the CML use the total risk of the asset (or portfolio of assets) rather than its systematic risk, which is the only risk that is priced.
- 25 A is correct. The CAPM shows that the primary determinant of expected return for an individual asset is its beta, or how well the asset correlates with the market.
- 26 A is correct. If an asset's beta is negative, the required return will be less than the risk-free rate in the CAPM. When combined with a positive market return, the asset reduces the risk of the overall portfolio, which makes the asset very valuable. Insurance is an example of a negative beta asset.
- 27 B is correct. In the CAPM, the market risk premium is the difference between the return on the market and the risk-free rate, which is the same as the return in excess of the market return.
- 28 B is correct. The expected return of Security 1, using the CAPM, is $12.0\% = 3\% + 1.5(6\%)$; $E(R_i) = R_f + \beta_i[E(R_m) - R_f]$.
- 29 B is correct. The expected risk premium for Security 2 is 8.4%, $(11.4\% - 3\%)$, indicates that the expected market risk premium is 6%; therefore, since the risk-free rate is 3% the expected rate of return for the market is 9%. That is, using the CAPM, $E(R_i) = R_f + \beta_i[E(R_m) - R_f]$, $11.4\% = 3\% + 1.4(X\%)$, where $X\% = (11.4\% - 3\%)/1.4 = 6.0\% =$ market risk premium.
- 30 C is correct. Security 3 has the highest beta; thus, regardless of the value for the risk-free rate, Security 3 will have the highest expected return:

$$E(R_i) = R_f + \beta_i[E(R_m) - R_f]$$

- 31 C is correct. Security 3 has the highest beta; thus, regardless of the risk-free rate the expected return of Security 3 will be most sensitive to a change in the expected market return.

- 32 C is correct. Jensen's alpha adjusts for systematic risk, and *M*-squared and the Sharpe Ratio adjust for total risk.
- 33 C is correct. The sign of Jensen's alpha indicates whether or not the portfolio has outperformed the market. If alpha is positive, the portfolio has outperformed the market; if alpha is negative, the portfolio has underperformed the market.
- 34 A is the correct. *M*-squared adjusts for risk using standard deviation (i.e., total risk).
- 35 B is correct. If the estimated return of an asset is above the SML (the expected return), the asset has a lower level of risk relative to the amount of expected return and would be a good choice for investment (i.e., undervalued).
- 36 A is correct. The homogeneity assumption refers to all investors having the same economic expectation of future cash flows. If all investors have the same expectations, then all investors should invest in the same optimal risky portfolio, therefore implying the existence of only one optimal portfolio (i.e., the market portfolio).
- 37 B is correct. The homogeneous expectations assumption means that all investors analyze securities in the same way and are rational. That is, they use the same probability distributions, use the same inputs for future cash flows, and arrive at the same valuations. Because their valuation of all assets is identical, they will generate the same optimal risky portfolio, which is the market portfolio.
- 38 C is correct. This is because of the plot of the excess return of the security on the excess return of the market. In such a graph, Jensen's alpha is the intercept and the beta is the slope.
- 39 C is correct. Since managers are concerned with maximizing risk-adjusted returns, securities with a higher value of Jensen's alpha, α_p , should have a higher weight.
- 40 C is correct. Since managers are concerned with maximizing risk-adjusted returns, securities with greater nonsystematic risk should be given less weight in the portfolio.

PORTFOLIO MANAGEMENT
STUDY SESSION

13

Portfolio Management (2)

This study session introduces the portfolio planning and construction process, including the development of an investment policy statement (IPS). A discussion of risk management, including the various types and measures of risk, follows, and a risk management framework is provided. The session concludes with coverage on how financial technology (fintech) is impacting areas within the investment industry, such as investment analysis, automated advice, and risk management.

READING ASSIGNMENTS

- | | |
|-------------------|---|
| Reading 41 | Basics of Portfolio Planning and Construction
by Alistair Byrne, PhD, CFA, and Frank E. Smudde,
CFA |
| Reading 42 | Risk Management: An Introduction
by Don M. Chance, PhD, CFA, and Michael E.
Edleson, PhD, CFA |
| Reading 43 | Fintech in Investment Management
by Barbara J. Mack and Robert Kissell, PhD |

Basics of Portfolio Planning and Construction

by Alistair Byrne, PhD, CFA, and Frank E. Smudde, CFA

Alistair Byrne, PhD, CFA, is at State Street Global Advisors (United Kingdom). Frank E. Smudde, CFA (Netherlands).

LEARNING OUTCOMES

<i>Mastery</i>	<i>The candidate should be able to:</i>
<input type="checkbox"/>	a. describe the reasons for a written investment policy statement (IPS);
<input type="checkbox"/>	b. describe the major components of an IPS;
<input type="checkbox"/>	c. describe risk and return objectives and how they may be developed for a client;
<input type="checkbox"/>	d. distinguish between the willingness and the ability (capacity) to take risk in analyzing an investor's financial risk tolerance;
<input type="checkbox"/>	e. describe the investment constraints of liquidity, time horizon, tax concerns, legal and regulatory factors, and unique circumstances and their implications for the choice of portfolio assets;
<input type="checkbox"/>	f. explain the specification of asset classes in relation to asset allocation;
<input type="checkbox"/>	g. describe the principles of portfolio construction and the role of asset allocation in relation to the IPS.

INTRODUCTION

1

To build a suitable portfolio for a client, investment advisers should first seek to understand the client's investment goals, resources, circumstances, and constraints. Investors can be categorized into broad groups based on shared characteristics with respect to these factors (e.g., various types of individual investors and institutional investors). Even investors within a given type, however, will invariably have a number of distinctive requirements. In this reading, we consider in detail the planning for investment success based on an individualized understanding of the client.

This reading is organized as follows: Section 2 discusses the investment policy statement, a written document that captures the client's investment objectives and the constraints. Section 3 discusses the portfolio construction process, including the first step of specifying a strategic asset allocation for the client. A summary and practice problems conclude the reading.

2

PORTFOLIO PLANNING

Portfolio planning can be defined as a program developed in advance of constructing a portfolio that is expected to satisfy the client's investment objectives. The written document governing this process is the investment policy statement (IPS).

2.1 The Investment Policy Statement

The IPS is the starting point of the portfolio management process. Without a full understanding of the client's situation and requirements, it is unlikely that successful results will be achieved. "Success" can be defined as a client achieving his or her important investment goals using means that he or she is comfortable with (in terms of risks taken and other concerns). The IPS essentially communicates a plan for achieving investment success.

The IPS will be developed following a fact finding discussion with the client. This fact finding discussion can include the use of a questionnaire designed to articulate the client's risk tolerance as well as specific circumstances. In the case of institutional clients, the fact finding may involve asset–liability management studies, identification of liquidity needs, and a wide range of tax and legal considerations.

The IPS can take a variety of forms. A typical format will include the client's investment objectives and the constraints that apply to the client's portfolio.

The client's objectives are specified in terms of risk tolerance and return requirements. These must be consistent with each other: a client is unlikely to be able to find a portfolio that offers a relatively high expected return without taking on a relatively high level of risk.

The constraints section covers factors that need to be taken into account when constructing a portfolio for the client that meets the objectives. The typical constraint categories are liquidity requirements, time horizon, regulatory requirements, tax status, and unique needs. The constraints may be internal (i.e., set by the client), or external (i.e., set by law or regulation). These are discussed in detail below.

Having a well constructed IPS for all clients should be standard procedure for a portfolio manager. The portfolio manager should have the IPS close at hand and be able to refer to it to assess the suitability of a particular investment for the client. In some cases, the need for the IPS goes beyond simply being a matter of standard procedure. In some countries, the IPS (or an equivalent document) is a legal or regulatory requirement. For example, UK pension schemes must have a statement of investment principles under the Pensions Act 1995 (Section 35), and this statement is in essence an IPS. The UK Financial Conduct Authority (FCA) also has requirements for investment firms to "know their customers." The European Union's Markets in Financial Instruments Directive ("MiFID") requires firms to assign clients to categories, such as professional clients and retail clients.

In the case of an institution, such as a pension plan or university endowment, the IPS may set out the governance arrangements that apply to the investment funds. For example, this information could cover the investment committee's approach to appointing and reviewing investment managers for the portfolio, and the discretion

that those managers have. The IPS could also set out the institution's approach to corporate governance, in terms of how it will approach the use of shareholder voting rights and other forms of engagement with corporate management.

The IPS should be reviewed on a regular basis to ensure that it remains consistent with the client's circumstances and requirements. For example, the UK Pensions Regulator suggests that a pension scheme's statements of investment principles—a form of IPS—should be reviewed at least every three years. The IPS should also be reviewed if the manager becomes aware of a material change in the client's circumstances, or on the initiative of the client when his or her objectives, time horizon, or liquidity needs change.

2.2 Major Components of an IPS

There is no single standard format for an IPS. Many IPS, however, include the following sections:

- *Introduction.* This section describes the client.
- *Statement of Purpose.* This section states the purpose of the IPS.
- *Statement of Duties and Responsibilities.* This section details the duties and responsibilities of the client, the custodian of the client's assets, and the investment managers.
- *Procedures.* This section explains the steps to take to keep the IPS current and the procedures to follow to respond to various contingencies.
- *Investment Objectives.* This section explains the client's objectives in investing.
- *Investment Constraints.* This section presents the factors that constrain the client in seeking to achieve the investment objectives.
- *Investment Guidelines.* This section provides information about how policy should be executed (e.g., on the permissible use of leverage and derivatives) and on specific types of assets excluded from investment, if any.
- *Evaluation and Review.* This section provides guidance on obtaining feedback on investment results.
- *Appendices:* (A) Strategic Asset Allocation (B) Rebalancing Policy. Many investors specify a strategic asset allocation (SAA), also known as the policy portfolio, which is the baseline allocation of portfolio assets to asset classes in view of the investor's investment objectives and the investor's policy with respect to rebalancing asset class weights.

The sections that are most closely linked to the client's distinctive needs, and probably the most important from a planning perspective, are those dealing with investment objectives and constraints. An IPS focusing on these two elements has been called an IPS in an "objectives and constraints" format.

In the following sections, we discuss the investment objectives and constraints format of an IPS beginning with risk and return objectives. We follow a tradition of CFA Institute presentations in discussing risk objectives first. The process of developing the IPS is the basic mechanism for evaluating and trying to improve an investor's overall expected return–risk stance. In a portfolio context, "investors have learned to appreciate that their objective is not to manage reward but to control and manage risk." Stated another way, return objectives and expectations must be tailored to be consistent with risk objectives. The risk and return objectives must also be consistent with the constraints that apply to the portfolio.

2.2.1 Risk Objectives

When constructing a portfolio for a client, it is important to ensure that the risk of the portfolio is suitable for the client. The IPS should state clearly the risk tolerance of the client.

Risk objectives are specifications for portfolio risk that reflect the risk tolerance of the client. Quantitative risk objectives can be absolute or relative or a combination of the two.

Examples of an absolute risk objective would be a desire not to suffer any loss of capital or not to lose more than a given percent of capital in any 12-month period. Note that these objectives are not related to investment market performance, good or bad, and are absolute in the sense of being self-standing. The fulfillment of such objectives could be achieved by not taking any risk; for example, by investing in an insured bank certificate of deposit at a credit-worthy bank. If investments in risky assets are undertaken, however, such statements would need to be restated as a probability statement to be operational (i.e., practically useful). For example, the desire not to lose more than 4 percent of capital in any 12-month period might be restated as an objective that with 95 percent probability the portfolio not lose more than 4 percent in any 12-month period. Measures of absolute risk include the variance or standard deviation of returns and value at risk.¹

Some clients may choose to express relative risk objectives, which relate risk relative to one or more benchmarks perceived to represent appropriate risk standards. For example, investments in large-cap UK equities could be benchmarked to an equity market index, such as the FTSE 100 Index. The S&P 500 Index could be used as a benchmark for large-cap US equities, or for investments with cash-like characteristics, the benchmark could be an interest rate such as Libor or a Treasury bill rate. For risk relative to a benchmark, the relevant measure is tracking risk, or tracking error.²

For institutional clients, the benchmark may be linked to some form of liability the institution has. For example, a pension plan must meet the pension payments as they come due and the risk objective will be to minimize the probability that it will fail to do so. (A related return objective might be to outperform the discount rate used in finding the present value of liabilities over a multi-year time horizon.)

When a policy portfolio (that is, a specified set of long-term asset class weightings) is used, the risk objective may be expressed as a desire for the portfolio return to be within a band of plus or minus X percent of the benchmark return calculated by assigning an index or benchmark to represent each asset class present in the policy portfolio. Again, this objective has to be interpreted as a statement of probability; for example, a 95 percent probability that the portfolio return will be within X percent of the benchmark return over a stated time period. Example 1 reviews this material.

EXAMPLE 1

Types of Risk Objectives

A Japanese institutional investor has a portfolio valued at ¥10 billion. The investor expresses his first risk objective as a desire not to lose more than ¥1 billion in the coming 12-month period. The investor specifies a second risk objective

¹ **Value at risk** is a money measure of the minimum value of losses expected during a specified time period at a given level of probability.

² **Tracking risk** (sometimes called **tracking error**) is the standard deviation of the differences between a portfolio's returns and its benchmark's returns.

of achieving returns within 4 percent of the return to the TOPIX stock market index, which is the investor's benchmark. Based on this information, address the following:

- 1 **A** Characterize the first risk objective as absolute or relative.
B Give an example of how the risk objective could be restated in a practical manner.
- 2 **A** Characterize the second risk objective as absolute or relative.
B Identify a measure for quantifying the risk objective.

Solutions to 1:

- A** This is an absolute risk objective.
- B** This risk objective could be restated in a practical manner by specifying that the 12-month 95 percent value at risk of the portfolio must not be more than ¥1 billion.

Solutions to 2:

- A** This is a relative risk objective.
- B** This risk objective could be quantified using the tracking risk as a measure. For example, assuming returns follow a normal distribution, an expected tracking risk of 2 percent would imply a return within 4 percent of the index return approximately 95 percent of the time. Remember that tracking risk is stated as a one standard deviation measure.

A client's overall risk tolerance is a function of the client's ability to bear (accept) risk and his or her "risk attitude," which might be considered as the client's willingness to take risk. For ease of expression, from this point on we will refer to ability to bear risk and willingness to take risk as the two components of risk tolerance. Above average ability to bear risk and above average willingness to take risk imply above average risk tolerance. Below average ability to bear risk and below average willingness to take risk imply below average risk tolerance.

The ability to bear risk is measured mainly in terms of objective factors, such as time horizon, expected income, and the level of wealth relative to liabilities. For example, an investor with a 20-year time horizon can be considered to have a greater ability to bear risk, other things being equal, than an investor with a 2-year horizon. This difference is because over 20 years there is more scope for losses to be recovered or other adjustments to circumstances to be made than there is over 2 years.

Similarly, an investor whose assets are comfortably in excess of their liabilities has more ability to bear risk than an investor whose wealth and expected future expenditure are more closely balanced. For example, a wealthy individual who can sustain a comfortable lifestyle after a very substantial investment loss has a relatively high ability to bear risk. A pension plan that has a large surplus of assets over liabilities has a relatively high ability to bear risk.

Risk attitude, or willingness to take risk, is a more subjective factor based on the client's psychology and perhaps also his or her current circumstances. Although the list of factors that are related to an individual's risk attitude remains open to debate, it is believed that some psychological factors, such as personality type, self-esteem, and inclination to independent thinking, are correlated with risk attitude. Some individuals are comfortable taking financial and investment risk, whereas others find it distressing. Although there is no single agreed-upon method for measuring risk tolerance, a willingness to take risk may be gauged by discussing risk with the client or

by asking the client to complete a psychometric questionnaire. For example, financial planning academic John Grable and collaborators have developed 13-item and 5-item risk attitude questionnaires that have undergone some level of technical validation. The five-item questionnaire is shown in Exhibit 1.

Exhibit 1 A Five-Item Risk Assessment Instrument

- 1 Investing is too difficult to understand.
 - a Strongly agree
 - b Tend to agree
 - c Tend to disagree
 - d Strongly disagree
- 2 I am more comfortable putting my money in a bank account than in the stock market.
 - a Strongly agree
 - b Tend to agree
 - c Tend to disagree
 - d Strongly disagree
- 3 When I think of the word “risk” the term “loss” comes to mind immediately.
 - a Strongly agree
 - b Tend to agree
 - c Tend to disagree
 - d Strongly disagree
- 4 Making money in stocks and bonds is based on luck.
 - a Strongly agree
 - b Tend to agree
 - c Tend to disagree
 - d Strongly disagree
- 5 In terms of investing, safety is more important than returns.
 - a Strongly agree
 - b Tend to agree
 - c Tend to disagree
 - d Strongly disagree

Source: Grable and Joo (2004).

The responses, a), b), c), and d), are coded 1, 2, 3, and 4, respectively, and summed. The lowest score is 5 and the highest score is 20, with higher scores indicating greater risk tolerance. For two random samples drawn from the faculty and staff of large US universities ($n = 406$), the mean score was 12.86 with a standard deviation of 3.01 and a median score of 13.

Note that a question, such as the first one in Exhibit 1, indicates that risk attitude may be associated with non-psychological factors (such as level of financial knowledge and understanding and decision-making style) as well as psychological factors.

The adviser needs to examine whether a client's ability to accept risk is consistent with the client's willingness to take risk. For example, a wealthy investor with a 20-year time horizon, who is thus able to take risk, may also be comfortable taking risk; in this case the factors are consistent. If the wealthy investor has a low willingness to take risk, there would be a conflict.

In the institutional context, there could also be conflict between ability and willingness to take risk. In addition, different stakeholders within the institution may take different views. For example, the trustees of a well-funded pension plan may desire a low-risk approach to safeguard the funding of the scheme and beneficiaries of the scheme may take a similar view. The sponsor, however, may wish a higher-risk/higher-return approach in an attempt to reduce future funding costs. When a trustee bears a fiduciary responsibility to pension beneficiaries and the interests of the pension sponsor and the pension beneficiaries conflict, the trustee should act in the best interests of the beneficiaries.

When ability to take risk and willingness to take risk are consistent, the investment adviser's task is the simplest. When ability to take risk is below average and willingness to take risk is above average, the investor's risk tolerance should be assessed as below average overall. When ability to take risk is above average but willingness is below average, the portfolio manager or adviser may seek to counsel the client and explain the conflict and its implications. For example, the adviser could outline the reasons why the client is considered to have a high ability to take risk and explain the likely consequences, in terms of reduced expected return, of not taking risk. The investment adviser, however, should not aim to change a client's willingness to take risk that is not a result of a miscalculation or misperception. Modification of elements of personality is not within the purview of the investment adviser's role. The prudent approach is to reach a conclusion about risk tolerance consistent with the lower of the two factors (ability and willingness) and to document the decisions made.

Example 2 is the first of a set that follows the analysis of a private wealth management client through the preparation of the major elements of an IPS.

EXAMPLE 2

The Case of Henri Gascon: Risk Tolerance

Henri Gascon is an energy trader who works for a major French oil company based in Paris. He is 30-years old and married with one son, aged 5. Gascon has decided that it is time to review his financial situation and consults a financial adviser. The financial adviser notes the following aspects of Gascon's situation:

- Gascon's annual salary of €250,000 is more than sufficient to cover the family's outgoings.
- Gascon owns his apartment outright and has €1,000,000 of savings.
- Gascon perceives that his job is reasonably secure.
- Gascon has a good knowledge of financial matters and is confident that equity markets will deliver positive returns over the longer term.
- In the risk tolerance questionnaire, Gascon strongly disagrees with the statements that "making money in stocks and bonds is based on luck" and that "in terms of investing, safety is more important than returns."
- Gascon expects that most of his savings will be used to fund his retirement, which he hopes to start at age 50.

Based only on the information given, which of the following statements is *most* accurate?

- A Gascon has a low ability to take risk, but a high willingness to take risk.
- B Gascon has a high ability to take risk, but a low willingness to take risk.
- C Gascon has a high ability to take risk, and a high willingness to take risk.

Solution:

C is correct. Gascon has a high income relative to outgoings, a high level of assets, a secure job, and a time horizon of 20 years. This information suggests a high *ability* to take risk. At the same time, Gascon is knowledgeable and confident about financial markets and responds to the questionnaire with answers that suggest risk tolerance. This result suggests he also has a high *willingness* to take risk.

EXAMPLE 3

The Case of Jacques Gascon: Risk Tolerance

Henri Gascon is so pleased with the services provided by the financial adviser, that he suggests to his brother Jacques that he should also consult the adviser. Jacques thinks it is a good idea. Jacques is a self-employed computer consultant also based in Paris. He is 40-years old and divorced with four children, aged between 12 and 16. The financial adviser notes the following aspects of Jacques' situation:

- Jacques' consultancy earnings average €40,000 per annum, but are quite volatile.
- Jacques is required to pay €10,000 per year to his ex-wife and children.
- Jacques has a mortgage on his apartment of €100,000 and €10,000 of savings.
- Jacques has a good knowledge of financial matters and expects that equity markets will deliver very high returns over the longer term.
- In the risk tolerance questionnaire, Jacques strongly disagrees with the statements "I am more comfortable putting my money in a bank account than in the stock market" and "When I think of the word "risk" the term "loss" comes to mind immediately."
- Jacques expects that most of his savings will be required to support his children at university.

Based on the above information, which statement is correct?

- A Jacques has a low ability to take risk, but a high willingness to take risk.
- B Jacques has a high ability to take risk, but a low willingness to take risk.
- C Jacques has a high ability to take risk, and a high willingness to take risk.

Solution:

A is correct. Jacques does not have a particularly high income, his income is unstable, and he has reasonably high outgoings for his mortgage and maintenance payments. His investment time horizon is approximately two to six years given the ages of his children and his desire to support them at university. This

finely balanced financial situation and short time horizon suggests a low ability to take risk. In contrast, his expectations for financial market returns and risk tolerance questionnaire answers suggest a high willingness to take risk. The financial adviser may wish to explain to Jacques how finely balanced his financial situation is and suggest that, despite his desire to take more risk, a relatively cautious portfolio might be the most appropriate approach to take.

2.2.2 Return Objectives

A client's return objectives can be stated in a number of ways. Similar to risk objectives, return objectives may be stated on an absolute or a relative basis.

As an example of an absolute objective, the client may want to achieve a particular percentage rate of return, for example, X percent. This could be a nominal rate of return or be expressed in real (inflation-adjusted) terms.

Alternatively, the return objective can be stated on a relative basis, for example, relative to a benchmark return. The benchmark could be an equity market index, such as the S&P 500 or the FTSE 100, or a cash rate of interest such as Libor. Libor might be appropriate when the investor has some liability that is linked to that rate; for example, a bank that has a particular cost of funding linked to Libor. A relative return objective might be stated as, for example, a desire to outperform the benchmark index by one percentage point per year.

Some institutions also set their return objective relative to a peer group or universe of managers; for example, an endowment aiming for a return that is in the top 50 percent of returns of similar institutions, or a private equity mandate aiming for returns in the top quartile among the private equity universe. This objective can be problematic when limited information is known about the investment strategies or the returns calculation methodology being used by peers, and we must bear in mind the impossibility of *all* institutions being "above average." Furthermore, a good benchmark should be investable—that is, able to be replicated by the investor—and a peer benchmark typically does not meet that criterion.

In each case, the return requirement can be stated before or after fees. Care should be taken that the fee basis used is clear and understood by both the manager and client. The return can also be stated on either a pre- or post-tax basis when the investor is required to pay tax. For a taxable investor, the baseline is to state and analyze returns on an after-tax basis.

The return objective could be a required return—that is, the amount the investor needs to earn to meet a particular future goal—such as a certain level of retirement income.

The manager or adviser must ensure that the return objective is realistic. Care should be taken that client and manager are in agreement on whether the return objective is nominal (which is more convenient for measurement purposes) or real (i.e., inflation-adjusted, which usually relates better to the objective). It must be consistent with the client's risk objective (high expected returns are unlikely to be possible without high levels of risk) and also with the current economic and market environment. For example, 15 percent nominal returns might be possible when inflation is 10 percent, but will be unlikely when inflation is 3 percent.

When a client has unrealistic return expectations, the manager or adviser will need to counsel them about what is achievable in the current market environment and within the client's tolerance for risk.

EXAMPLE 4**The Case of Henri Gascon: Return Objectives**

Having assessed his risk tolerance, Henri Gascon now begins to discuss his retirement income needs with the financial adviser. He wishes to retire at age 50, which is 20 years from now. His salary meets current and expected future expenditure requirements, but he does not expect to be able to make any additional pension contributions to his fund. Gascon sets aside €100,000 of his savings as an emergency fund to be held in cash. The remaining €900,000 is invested for his retirement.

Gascon estimates that a before-tax amount of €2,000,000 in today's money will be sufficient to fund his retirement income needs. The financial adviser expects inflation to average 2 percent per year over the next 20 years. Pension fund contributions and pension fund returns in France are exempt from tax, but pension fund distributions are taxable upon retirement.

- 1 Which of the following is closest to the amount of money Gascon will have to accumulate in nominal terms by his retirement date to meet his retirement income objective (i.e., expressed in money of the day in 20 years)?
 - A €900,000.
 - B €2,000,000.
 - C €3,000,000.
- 2 Which of the following is closest to the annual rate of return that Gascon must earn on his pension portfolio to meet his retirement income objective?
 - A 2.0%.
 - B 6.2%.
 - C 8.1%.

Solution to 1:

C is correct. At 2 percent annual inflation, €2,000,000 in today's money equates to €2,971,895 in 20 years measured in money of the day [$2m \times (1 + 2\%)^{20}$].

Solution to 2:

B is correct. €900,000 growing at 6.2 percent per year for 20 years will accumulate to €2,997,318, which is just above the required amount. [The solution of 6.2 percent comes from $€2,997,318/€900,000 = (1 + X)^{20}$, where X is the required rate of return.]

In the following sections, we analyze five major types of constraints on portfolio selection: liquidity, time horizon, tax concerns, legal and regulatory factors, and unique circumstances.

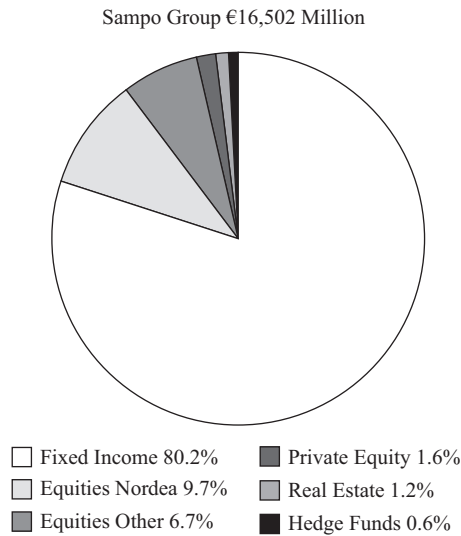
2.2.3 Liquidity

The IPS should state what the likely requirements are to withdraw funds from the portfolio. Examples for an individual investor would be outlays for covering healthcare payments or tuition fees. For institutions, it could be spending rules and requirements for endowment funds, the existence of claims coming due in the case of property and casualty insurance, or benefit payments for pension funds and life insurance companies.

When the client does have such a requirement, the manager should allocate part of the portfolio to cover the liability. This part of the portfolio will be invested in assets that are liquid—that is, easily converted to cash—and low risk at the point in time the liquidity need is actually present (e.g., a bond maturing at the time when private education expenses will be incurred), so that their value is known with reasonable certainty. For example, the asset allocation in the insurance portfolios of Finnish insurer Sampo (see Exhibit 2) shows a large allocation to fixed-income investments, some of which are either highly liquid or have a short maturity. These investments enable the company, in the case of property and casualty insurance, to pay out on potentially “lumpy” claims of which the timing is unpredictable, and in the case of life insurance, to pay out on life benefits, the size and timing of which are more predictable and can therefore be matched with the maturity profile of the fixed-income portfolio.

Exhibit 2 Asset Allocation of Sampo

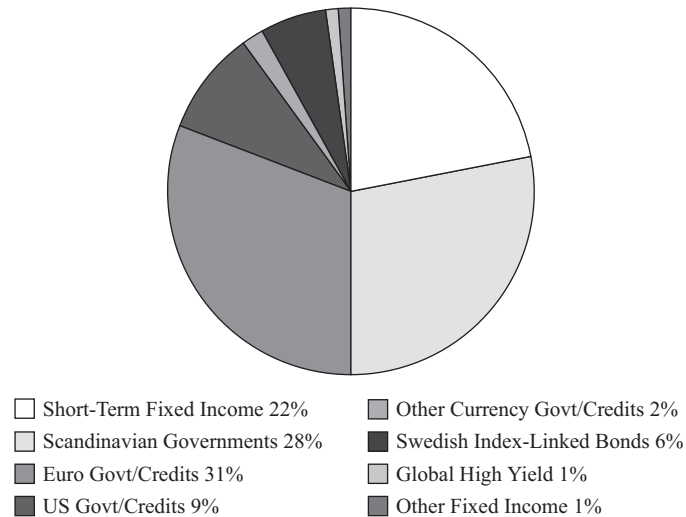
Panel A: Allocation of Investment Assets, Sampo Group, 31 December 2008



(continued)

Exhibit 2 (Continued)**Panel B: Fixed-Income Investments by Type of Instrument, Sampo Group, 31 December 2008**

Sampo Group €13,214 Million



Source: Sampo Group, 2008 Annual Report, pp. 59–61.

2.2.4 Time Horizon

The IPS should state the time horizon over which the investor is investing. It may be the period over which the portfolio is accumulating before any assets need to be withdrawn; it could also be the period until the client's circumstances are likely to change. For example, a 50-year old pension plan investor hoping to retire at age 60 has a 10-year horizon. The portfolio may not be liquidated at age 60, but its structure may need to change, for example, as the investor begins to draw an income from the fund.

The time horizon of the investor will affect the nature of investments used in the portfolio. Illiquid or risky investments may be unsuitable for an investor with a short time horizon because the investor may not have enough time to recover from investment losses, for example. Such investments, however, may be suitable for an investor with a longer horizon, especially if the risky investments are expected to have higher returns.

EXAMPLE 5**Investment Time Horizon**

- Frank Johnson is investing for retirement and has a 20-year horizon. He has an average risk tolerance. Which investment is likely to be the *least* suitable for a major allocation in Johnson's portfolio?
 - Listed equities.
 - Private equity.
 - US Treasury bills.
- Al Smith has to pay a large tax bill in six months and wants to invest the money in the meantime. Which investment is likely to be the *least* suitable for a major allocation in Smith's portfolio?

- A Listed equities.
- B Private equity.
- C US Treasury bills.

Solution to 1:

C is correct. With a 20-year horizon and average risk tolerance, Johnson can accept the additional risk of listed equities and private equity compared with US Treasury bills.

Solution to 2:

B is correct. Private equity is risky, has no public market, and is the least liquid among the assets mentioned.

2.2.5 Tax Concerns

Tax status varies among investors. Some investors will be subject to taxation on investment returns and some will not. For example, in many countries returns to pension funds are exempt from tax. Some investors will face various rates of tax on income (dividends and interest payments) than they do on capital gains (associated with increases in asset prices). Typically, when there is a differential, income is taxed more highly than gains. Gains may be subject to a lower rate of tax or part or all of the gain may be exempt from taxation. Furthermore, income may be taxed as it is earned, whereas gains may be taxed when they are realized. Hence, in such cases there is a time value of money benefit in the deferment of taxation of gains relative to income.

In many cases, the portfolio should reflect the tax status of the client. For example, a taxable investor may wish to hold a portfolio that emphasizes capital gains and receives little income. A taxable investor based in the United States is also likely to consider including US municipal bonds (“munis”) in his or her portfolio because interest income from munis, unlike from treasuries and corporate bonds, is exempt from taxes. A tax-exempt investor, such as a pension fund, will be relatively indifferent to the form of returns.

2.2.6 Legal and Regulatory Factors

The IPS should state any legal and regulatory restrictions that constrain how the portfolio is invested.

In some countries, such institutional investors as pension funds are subject to restrictions on the composition of the portfolio. For example, there may be a limit on the proportion of equities or other risky assets in the portfolio, or on the proportion of the portfolio that may be invested overseas. The United States has no limits on pension fund asset allocation but some countries do, examples of which are shown in Exhibit 3. Pension funds also often face restrictions on the percentage of assets that can be invested in securities issued by the plan sponsor, so called **self-investment limits**.

Exhibit 3 Examples of Pension Fund Investment Restrictions

Country	Listed Equity	Real Estate	Government Bonds	Corporate Bonds	Foreign Assets
Switzerland	50%	50%	No limits	No limits	30%
Russia	65%	Not allowed	No limits	80%	10%

(continued)

Exhibit 3 (Continued)

Country	Listed Equity	Real Estate	Government Bonds	Corporate Bonds	Foreign Assets
Japan	No limits	Not permitted	No limits	No limits	No limits
India	Minimum 25 percent in central government bonds; minimum 15 percent in state government bonds; minimum 30 percent invested in bonds of public sector enterprises				

Source: OECD "Survey of Investment Regulations of Pension Funds," July 2008.

When an individual has access to material nonpublic information about a particular security, this situation may also form a constraint. For example, the directors of a public company may need to refrain from trading the company's stock at certain points of the year before financial results are published. The IPS should note this constraint so that the portfolio manager does not inadvertently trade the stock on the client's behalf.

2.2.7 Unique Circumstances

This section of the IPS should cover any other aspect of the client's circumstances that is likely to have a material impact on the composition of the portfolio. A client may have considerations derived from his or her religion or ethical values that could constrain investment choices. For instance, a Muslim investor seeking compliance with Shari'a (the Islamic law) will avoid investing in businesses and financial instruments inconsistent with Shari'a, such as casinos and bonds, because Shari'a prohibits gambling and lending money on interest. Similarly, a Christian investor may wish to avoid investments that he or she believes are inconsistent with their faith.

Whether rooted in religious beliefs or not, a client may have personal objections to certain products (e.g., pornography, weapons, tobacco, gambling) or practices (e.g., environmental impact of business activities, human impact of government policies, labour standards), which could lead to the exclusion of certain companies, countries, or types of securities (e.g., interest-bearing debt) from the investable universe as well as the client's benchmark. Such considerations are often referred to as ESG (environmental, social, governance), and investing in accordance with such considerations is referred to as SRI (socially responsible investing).

EXAMPLE 6

Ethical Preferences

The £3 billion F&C Stewardship Growth Fund is designed for investors who wish to have ethical and environmental principles applied to the selection of their investments. The fund's managers apply both positive (characteristics to be emphasized in the portfolio) and negative (characteristics to be avoided in the portfolio) screening criteria:

Positive Criteria

- Supplies the basic necessities of life (e.g., healthy food, housing, clothing, water, energy, communication, healthcare, public transport, safety, personal finance, education)
- Offers product choices for ethical and sustainable lifestyles (e.g. fair trade, organic)
- Improves quality of life through the responsible use of new technologies

- Shows good environmental management
- Actively addresses climate change (e.g., renewable energy, energy efficiency)
- Promotes and protects human rights
- Supports good employment practices
- Provides a positive impact on local communities
- Maintains good relations with customers and suppliers
- Applies effective anti-corruption controls
- Uses transparent communication

Negative Criteria

- Tobacco production
- Alcohol production
- Gambling
- Pornography or violent material
- Manufacture and sale of weapons
- Unnecessary exploitation of animals
- Nuclear power generation
- Poor environmental practices
- Human rights abuses
- Poor relations with employees, customers or suppliers

Source: Excerpted from F&C documents; www.fandc.com/new/Advisor/Default.aspx?ID=79620.

When the portfolio represents only part of the client's total wealth, there may be aspects or portions of wealth not under the control of the manager that have implications for the portfolio. For example, an employee of a public company whose labour income and retirement income provision are reliant on that company and who may have substantial investment exposure to the company through employee share options and stock holdings, may decide that his or her portfolio should not invest additional amounts in that stock. An entrepreneur may be reluctant to see his or her portfolio invested in the shares of competing businesses or in any business that has risk exposures aligned with his or her entrepreneurial venture.

A client's income may rely on a particular industry or asset class. Appropriate diversification requires that industry or asset class to be de-emphasized in the client's investments. For example, a stockbroker should consider having a relatively low weighting in equities, as his skills and thus income-generating ability are worth less when equities do not perform well. Employees should similarly be wary of having concentrated share positions in the equity of the company they work for. If the employer encounters difficulties, not only may the employee lose his or her job, but their investment portfolio could also suffer a significant loss of value.

2.3 Gathering Client Information

As noted above, it is important for portfolio managers and investment advisers to know their clients. For example, Dutch securities industry practice requires financial intermediaries to undertake substantial fact finding. This is required not only in the case of full service wealth management or in the context of an IPS, but also in

“lighter” forms of financial intermediation, such as advisory relationships (in which clients make investment decisions after consultation with their investment adviser or broker) or execution-only relationships (in which the client makes his investment decisions independently).

An exercise in fact finding about the customer should take place at the beginning of the client relationship. This will involve gathering information about the client’s circumstances as well as discussing the client’s objectives and requirements.

Important data to gather from a client should cover family and employment situation as well as financial information. If the client is an individual, it may also be necessary to know about the situation and requirements of the client’s spouse or other family members. The health of the client and his or her dependents is also relevant information. In an institutional relationship, it will be important to know about key stakeholders in the organization and what their perspective and requirements are. Information gathering may be done in an informal way or may involve structured interviews or questionnaires or analysis of data. Many advisers will capture data electronically and use special systems that record data and produce customized reports.

Good record keeping is very important, and may be crucial in a case in which any aspect of the client relationship comes into dispute at a later stage.

EXAMPLE 7

Henri Gascon: Description of Constraints

Henri Gascon continues to discuss his investment requirements with the financial adviser. The financial adviser begins to draft the constraints section of the IPS.

Gascon expects that he will continue to work for the oil company and that his relatively high income will continue for the foreseeable future. Gascon and his wife do not plan to have any additional children, but expect that their son will go to a university at age 18. They expect that their son’s education costs can be met out of their salary income.

Gascon’s emergency reserve of €100,000 is considered to be sufficient as a reserve for unforeseen expenditures and emergencies. His retirement savings of €900,000 has been contributed to his defined-contribution pension plan account to fund his retirement. Under French regulation, pension fund contributions are paid from gross income (i.e., income prior to deduction of tax) and pension fund returns are exempt from tax, but pension payments from a fund to retirees are taxed as income to the retiree.

With respect to Gascon’s retirement savings portfolio, refer back to Example 2 as needed and address the following:

- 1 As concerns liquidity,
 - A a maximum of 50 percent of the portfolio should be invested in liquid assets.
 - B the portfolio should be invested entirely in liquid assets because of high spending needs.
 - C the portfolio has no need for liquidity because there are no short-term spending requirements.
- 2 The investment time horizon is *closest* to:
 - A 5 years.
 - B 20 years.
 - C 40 years.
- 3 As concerns taxation, the portfolio:

- A should emphasize capital gains because income is taxable.
 - B should emphasize income because capital gains are taxable.
 - C is tax exempt and thus indifferent between income and capital gains.
- 4 The principle legal and regulatory factors applying to the portfolio are:
- A US Securities laws.
 - B European banking laws.
 - C French pension fund regulations.
- 5 As concerns unique needs, the portfolio should:
- A have a high weighting in oil and other commodity stocks.
 - B be invested only in responsible and sustainable investments.
 - C not have significant exposure to oil and other commodity stocks.

Solution to 1:

C is correct. The assets are for retirement use, which is 20 years away. Any short-term spending needs will be met from other assets or income.

Solution to 2:

B is correct. The relevant time horizon is to the retirement date, which is 20 years away. The assets may not be liquidated at that point, but a restructuring of the portfolio is to be expected as Gascon starts to draw an income from it.

Solution to 3:

C is correct. Because no tax is paid in the pension fund, it does not matter whether returns come in the form of income or capital gains.

Solution to 4:

C is correct. The management of the portfolio will have to comply with any rules relating the French pension funds.

Solution to 5:

C is correct. Gascon's human capital (i.e., future labour income) is affected by the prospects of the oil industry. If his portfolio has significant exposure to oil stocks, he would be increasing a risk exposure he already has.

Example 8, the final one based on Henri Gascon, shows how the information obtained from the fact-finding exercises might be incorporated into the objectives and constraints section of an IPS.

EXAMPLE 8**Henri Gascon: Outline of an IPS**

Following is a simplified excerpt from the IPS the adviser prepares for Henri Gascon, covering objectives and constraints.

Risk Objectives:

- The portfolio may take on relatively high amounts of risk in seeking to meet the return requirements. With a 20-year time horizon and significant assets and income, the client has an above average ability to take risk.

The client is a knowledgeable investor, with an above average willingness to take risk. Hence, the client's risk tolerance is above average, explaining the above portfolio risk objective.

- The portfolio should be well diversified with respect to asset classes and concentration of positions within an asset class. Although the client has above average risk tolerance, his investment assets should be diversified to control the risk of catastrophic loss.

Return Objectives:

The portfolio's long-term return requirement is 6.2 percent per year, in nominal terms and net of fees, to meet the client's retirement income goal.

Constraints:

- *Liquidity*: The portfolio consists of pension fund assets and there is no need for liquidity in the short to medium term.
- *Time Horizon*: The portfolio will be invested with a 20-year time horizon. The client intends to retire in 20 years, at which time an income will be drawn from the portfolio.
- *Tax Status*: Under French law, contributions to the fund are made gross of tax and returns in the fund are tax-free. Hence, the client is indifferent between income and capital gains in the fund.
- *Legal and Regulatory Factors*: The management of the portfolio must comply with French pension fund regulations.
- *Unique Needs*: The client is an executive in the oil industry. The portfolio should strive to minimize additional exposures to oil and related stocks.

3

PORTFOLIO CONSTRUCTION

Once the IPS has been compiled, the investment manager can construct a suitable portfolio. Strategic asset allocation is a traditional focus of the first steps in portfolio construction. The strategic asset allocation is stated in terms of percent allocations to asset classes. An **asset class** is a category of assets that have similar characteristics, attributes, and risk–return relationships. The **strategic asset allocation** (SAA) is the set of exposures to IPS-permissible asset classes that is expected to achieve the client's long-term objectives given the client's investment constraints.

The focus on the SAA is the result of a number of important investment principles. One principle is that a portfolio's systematic risk accounts for most of its change in value over the long term. **Systematic risk** is risk related to the economic system (e.g., risk related to business cycle) that cannot be eliminated by holding a diversified portfolio. This risk is different from the particular risks of individual securities, which may be avoided by holding other securities with offsetting risks. A second principle is that the returns to groups of similar assets (e.g., long-term debt claims) predictably reflect exposures to certain sets of systematic factors (e.g., for the debt claims, unexpected changes in the inflation rate). Thus, the SAA is a means of providing the investor with exposure to the systematic risks of asset classes in proportions that meet the risk and return objectives.

The process of formulating a strategic asset allocation is based on the IPS, already discussed, and capital market expectations, introduced in Section 3.1. How to make the strategic asset allocation operational with a rebalancing policy and a translation

into actual investment portfolios will be described in Section 3.3. Section 3.4 lists some alternatives to the approach chosen and describes some portfolio construction techniques.

3.1 Capital Market Expectations

Capital market expectations are the investor's expectations concerning the risk and return prospects of asset classes, however broadly or narrowly the investor defines those asset classes. When associated with the client's investment objectives, the result is the strategic asset allocation that is expected to allow the client to achieve his or her investment objectives (at least under normal capital market conditions).

Traditionally, capital market expectations are quantified in terms of asset class expected returns, standard deviation of returns, and correlations among pairs of asset classes. Formally, the expected return of an asset class consists of the risk-free rate and one or more risk premium(s) associated with the asset class. Expected returns are in practice developed in a variety of ways, including the use of historical estimates, economic analysis, and various kinds of valuation models. Standard deviations and correlation estimates are frequently based on historical data.

3.2 The Strategic Asset Allocation

Traditionally, investors have distinguished cash, equities, bonds, and real estate as the major asset classes. This list has been expanded with private equity, hedge funds, and commodities. In addition, such assets as art and intellectual property rights may be considered asset classes for those investors prepared to take a more innovative approach and to accept some illiquidity. Combining such new asset classes as well as hedge funds and private equity under the header "alternative investments" has become accepted practice.

As the strategic asset allocation is built up by asset classes, the decision about how to define those asset classes is an important one. Defining the asset classes also determines the extent to which the investor controls the risk and return characteristics of the eventual investment portfolio. For example, separating bonds into government bonds and corporate bonds, and then further separating corporate bonds into investment grade and non-investment grade (high yield) and government bonds into domestic and foreign government bonds, creates four bond categories for which risk–return expectations can be expressed and correlations with other asset classes (and, in an asset–liability management context, with the liabilities) can be estimated. An asset allocator who wants to explicitly consider the risk–return characteristics of those bond categories in the strategic asset allocation may choose to treat them as distinct asset classes. Similarly, in equities some investors distinguish between emerging market and developed market equities, between domestic and international equities, or between large-cap and small-cap equities. In some regulatory environments for institutional investors, asset class definitions are mandatory, thereby forcing asset allocators to articulate risk–return expectations (and apply risk management) on the asset classes specified.

When defining asset classes, a number of criteria apply. Intuitively, an asset class should contain relatively homogeneous assets while providing diversification relative to other asset classes. In statistical terms, risk and return expectations should be similar and paired correlations of assets should be relatively high within an asset class but should be lower versus assets in other asset classes.³ Also, the asset classes, while

³ A technically precise characterization other than one in terms of pairwise correlations is given by Kritzman (1999).

being mutually exclusive, should add up to a sufficient approximation of the relevant investable universe. Applying these criteria ensures that the strategic asset allocation process has considered all available investment alternatives.

EXAMPLE 9

Specifying Asset Classes

The strategic asset allocations of many institutional investors make a distinction between domestic equities and international equities, or between developed market equities and emerging market equities. Often, equities are separated into different market capitalization brackets, resulting, for example, in an asset class such as domestic small-cap equity.

The correlation matrix in Exhibit 4 shows the paired correlations between different equity asset classes and other asset classes. These correlations are measured over 10 years of monthly returns through February 2009. In addition, the exhibit shows the annualized volatility of monthly returns.

Exhibit 4 Asset Class Correlation Matrix

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L
A. MSCI Europe	1.00	0.77	0.95	0.97	0.88	0.20	0.59	-0.08	-0.35	0.10	-0.29	0.01
B. MSCI Emerging Markets	0.77	1.00	0.82	0.83	0.76	0.35	0.63	0.18	-0.25	0.22	-0.20	0.11
C. MSCI World	0.95	0.82	1.00	0.96	0.97	0.25	0.69	0.00	-0.31	0.18	-0.27	0.06
D. MSCI EAFE	0.97	0.83	0.96	1.00	0.88	0.27	0.65	-0.01	-0.34	0.15	-0.29	0.05
E. MSCI US	0.88	0.76	0.97	0.88	1.00	0.20	0.70	-0.01	-0.27	0.18	-0.24	0.06
F. Commodities	0.20	0.35	0.25	0.27	0.20	1.00	0.27	0.25	-0.04	0.14	-0.07	0.14
G. Real Estate	0.59	0.63	0.69	0.65	0.70	0.27	1.00	0.18	-0.01	0.40	0.02	0.32
H. Gold	-0.08	0.18	0.00	-0.01	-0.01	0.25	0.18	1.00	0.21	0.30	0.12	0.14
I. US Treasuries	-0.35	-0.25	-0.31	-0.34	-0.27	-0.04	-0.01	0.21	1.00	0.67	0.78	0.55
J. US Investment Grade	0.10	0.22	0.18	0.15	0.18	0.14	0.40	0.30	0.67	1.00	0.61	0.79
K. European Government Bonds	-0.29	-0.20	-0.27	-0.29	-0.24	-0.07	0.02	0.12	0.78	0.61	1.00	0.83
L. European Investment Grade Corporates	0.01	0.11	0.06	0.05	0.06	0.14	0.32	0.14	0.55	0.79	0.83	1.00
Annualized Volatility	16.6%	20.7%	15.0%	15.4%	15.7%	25.4%	18.9%	16.6%	5.0%	6.0%	3.1%	3.2%

Data based on monthly returns in local currencies from January 1999 to February 2009. Commodities, Real Estate, and Gold in USD.
 Source: MSCI, NAREIT, Bloomberg Barclays (formerly Bloomberg Capital), Standard and Poor's.

Based only on the information given, address the following:

- 1 Contrast the correlations between equity asset classes with the correlations between equity asset classes and European government bonds.
- 2 Which equity asset class is most sharply distinguished from MSCI Europe?

Solution to 1:

The matrix reveals very strong correlation between the equity asset classes (MSCI Europe, MSCI Emerging Markets, MSCI EAFE, and MSCI US). For example, the correlation between European equities and US equities is 0.88. The correlation of equities with bonds, however, is much lower. For example, both asset classes have a similar negative correlation with European government bonds (-0.29 and -0.24 , respectively). It is worth noting, however, that correlations can vary through time, and the values shown may be specific to the sample period used. In this particular case, extreme market conditions in 2008 resulted in negative correlations between equities and bonds.

Solution to 2:

Correlations of emerging market equities with other categories of equities are 0.76 or higher, whereas all groupings of equities share similar correlations with commodities (between 0.20 and 0.35), gold (between -0.08 and 0.18), and real estate (between 0.59 and 0.70). These high-paired correlations between equity asset classes, combined with the similarity of the correlations between any of these asset classes and non-equity asset classes, suggests that defining the equity asset class more narrowly has limited added value in providing diversification. The case for treatment as a separate asset class can best be made for emerging markets stocks, which usually have the lowest correlation of all equity asset classes with other asset classes and have a volatility of returns far in excess of the other equity groupings.

Using correlation as a metric, Example 9 tends to indicate that only emerging markets were well differentiated from European equities. So, why do investors still often subdivide equities? Apart from any regulatory reasons, one explanation might be that this decomposition into smaller asset classes corresponds to the way the asset allocation is structured in portfolios. Many investment managers have expertise exclusively in specific areas of the market, such as emerging market equities, US small-cap equity, or international investment-grade credit. Bringing the asset class definitions of the asset allocation in line with investment products actually available in the market may simplify matters from an organizational perspective.

The risk–return profile of the strategic asset allocation depends on the expected returns and risks of the individual asset classes, as well as the correlation between those asset classes. In general, adding assets classes with low correlation improves the risk–return trade-off (more return for similar risk), as long as the stand-alone risk of such asset classes does not exceed its diversification effect. Typically, the strategic asset allocation for risk-averse investors will have a large weight in government bonds and cash, whereas those with more willingness and ability to take risk will have more of their assets in risky asset classes, such as equities and many types of alternative investments.

EXAMPLE 10**Objective of a Strategic Asset Allocation**

ABP is a pension fund with approximately 2.6 million members. It manages a defined-benefit scheme for civil servants in the Netherlands, and its goal is to pay out a “real” pension (i.e., one that will increase through time in line with consumer price inflation). With €173 billion under management at the end of 2008, ABP is one of the world’s largest pension funds. It decides on its asset allocation in an investment plan that is reviewed every three years. The asset class terminology used by ABP is distinctive.⁴ Exhibit 5 shows ABP’s SAA under the plan for 2007–2009.

Exhibit 5 Strategic Asset Allocation for ABP**Real assets**

Equities, developed countries	27%
Equities, emerging markets	5
Convertible bonds	2
Private Equity	5
Hedge Funds	5
Commodities	3
Real estate	9
Infrastructure	2
Innovation	2
Total real assets	60%

Fixed income securities

Inflation-linked bonds	7%
Government bonds	10
Corporate bonds	23
Total fixed income securities	40%
Total	100%

- 1 Discuss the way the asset classes have been defined.
- 2 How does the asset allocation relate to the pension fund’s ambition to pay out a real (i.e., inflation-adjusted) pension?

⁴ ABP defines an asset class category called “real assets,” which contains asset classes (not fixed-income securities) that are expected to perform well in times of inflation, but considered a major risk. The use of the term “real assets” differs from the use elsewhere in the CFA curriculum. The term “innovation” refers to alternative investments that are relatively new to ABP’s portfolio. An example of such an investment is music rights. “Infrastructure” is investments in non-public equity of infrastructure projects such as toll roads. Inflation-linked bonds are fixed-income securities of which the payout depends on a measure of inflation in the issuing country. Some major issuers of such bonds are the United States, the United Kingdom, and France.

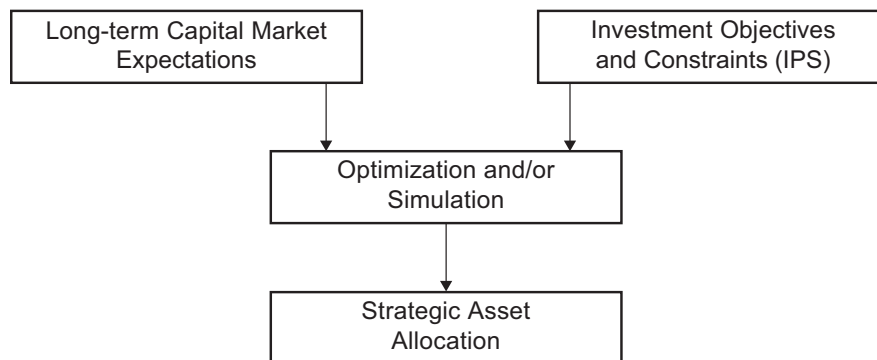
Solution to 1:

The asset allocation is fairly narrow in its definition of alternative asset classes, whereas the traditional asset classes, such as bonds and equities, are defined quite broadly. It appears that allocations within the broader groupings of government bonds, credits, and equities (developed and emerging) are not made on the strategic level.

Solution to 2:

This asset allocation seems to reflect an attempt to control the risk of inflation: only 33 percent of the strategic asset allocation is in nominal bonds, whereas 7 percent is in inflation-linked bonds and 60 percent in “real” assets (assets believed to have a positive correlation with inflation and, therefore, hedging inflation to some degree).

A strategic asset allocation results from combining the constraints and objectives articulated in the IPS and long-term capital market expectations regarding the asset classes. The strategic asset allocation or policy portfolio will subsequently be implemented into real portfolios. Exhibit 6 illustrates conceptually how investment objectives and constraints and long-term capital market expectations combine into a policy portfolio.

Exhibit 6 Strategic Asset Allocation Process

In some frameworks used in practice, the asset allocation is an integral part of the investment policy statement. This presentation, however, keeps the asset allocation separate from the investment policy statement because clients’ investment objectives and constraints qualitatively differ in nature from capital market expectations, thus requiring different types of analysis, different sources of information, and different review cycles.

How will capital market expectations and investment objectives and constraints eventually translate into a strategic asset allocation? In general, investors choosing from a range of asset allocations with similar returns would prefer those with lower risk. Choosing from allocations with similar levels of risk, investors would prefer those with the highest return. Formally, investors’ risk and return objectives can be described as a utility function, in which utility increases with higher expected returns

and lower risk. The assumption that expected utility is increasing in expected return and decreasing in variance of return could yield an expected utility equation, such as that shown in Equation 1.

$$U_p = E(R_p) - \lambda \sigma_p^2 \quad (1)$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} U_p &= \text{the investor's expected utility from the portfolio} \\ E(R_p) &= \text{the expected return of the portfolio} \\ \sigma_p &= \text{the standard deviation of returns of the portfolio} \\ \lambda &= \text{a measure of the investor's risk aversion} \end{aligned}$$

This utility function expresses a positive relationship between utility and expected portfolio return (i.e., higher expected return increases utility, all else equal) and a negative relationship between utility and volatility of portfolio return as measured by the variance of portfolio returns. The stronger the negative relationship, the greater the investor's risk aversion. The portfolio is understood to represent a particular asset allocation. The asset allocation providing the highest expected utility is the one that is optimal for the investor given his or her risk aversion.

For different values of U_p , a line can be plotted that links those combinations of risk and expected return that produces that level of utility: an indifference curve. An investor would attain equal utility from all risk/return combinations on that curve.

Capital market expectations, specified in asset classes' expected returns, standard deviations of return, and correlations, translate into an efficient frontier of portfolios. A multi-asset class portfolio's expected return is given by

$$E(R_p) = \sum_{i=1}^n w_i E(R_i) \quad (2)$$

where w_i equals the weight of asset class i in the portfolio, and its risk is given by

$$\sigma_p = \sqrt{\sum_{i=1}^n \sum_{j=1}^n w_{p,i} w_{p,j} \text{Cov}(R_i, R_j)} \quad (3)$$

The covariance between the returns on asset classes i and j is given by the product of the correlation between the two asset classes and their standard deviations of return:

$$\text{Cov}(R_i, R_j) = \rho_{i,j} \sigma_i \sigma_j \quad (4)$$

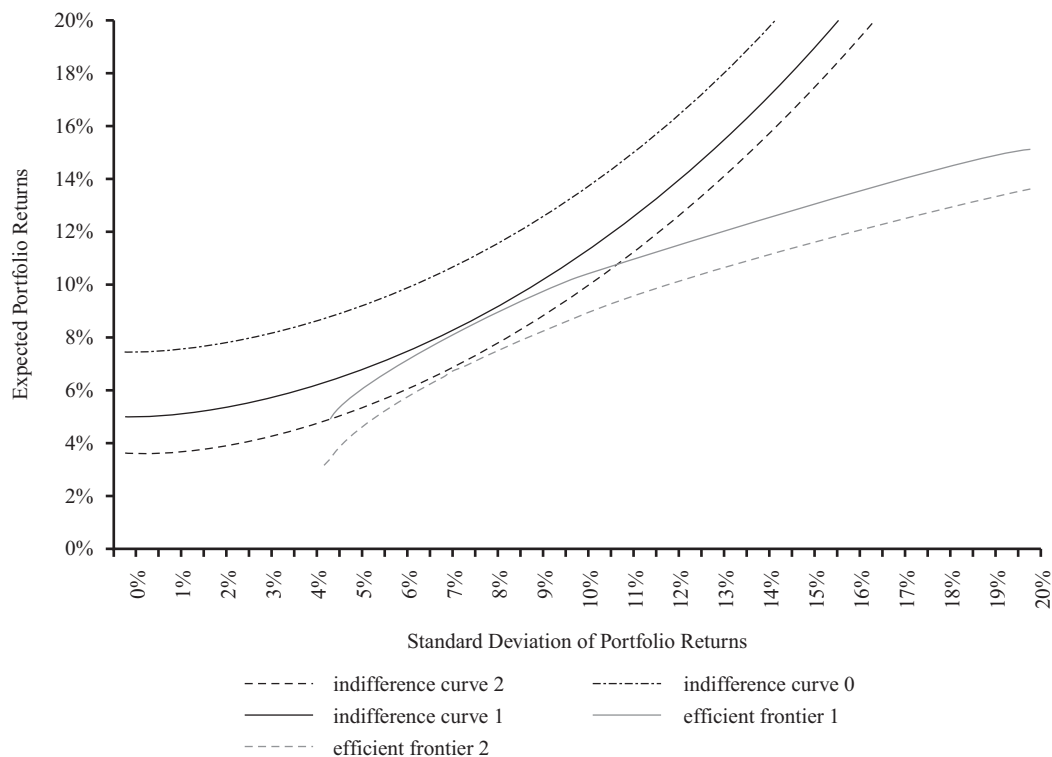
where

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Cov}(R_i, R_j) &= \text{the covariance between the return of asset classes } i \text{ and } j \\ \rho_{i,j} &= \text{the correlation between the returns of asset classes } i \text{ and } j \end{aligned}$$

The resulting portfolios can be represented as a scatter of dots in a chart depicting their risk and expected return. As a portfolio's risk is a positive function of the risk of its assets and the correlations among them, a portfolio consisting of lowly correlated risky assets has lower risk than one with similarly risky assets with high correlation. It is therefore possible to construct different portfolios with equal expected returns but with different levels of risk. The line that connects those portfolios with the minimal risk for each level of expected return (above that of the minimum variance portfolio) is the efficient frontier. Clearly, the efficient frontier will move "upward" as more lowly correlated assets with sufficient expected return are added to the mix because it lowers the risk in the portfolios. Similarly, when return expectations increase for asset classes while volatility and correlation assumptions remain unchanged, the efficient frontier will move upward because each portfolio is able to generate higher returns for the same level of risk.

Both the efficient frontier and a range of indifference curves can be plotted in the risk–return space. In Exhibit 7, the downward curves that are concave from below represent efficient frontiers associated with different assumed expected returns. The upward or convex curves are indifference curves. The point where the efficient frontier intersects with the indifference curve with the highest utility attainable (i.e., the point of tangency) represents the optimal asset allocation for the client/investor. In Exhibit 7, efficient frontier 1 has a point of tangency with indifference curve 1. Higher levels of utility, such as those associated with indifference curve 0, can apparently not be reached with the assets underlying the efficient frontier. It is clear that when capital market expectations change, this change moves the efficient frontier away from its original location. In the chart, this movement is illustrated by efficient frontier 2, which incorporates different capital market expectations. This new efficient frontier has a point of tangency with indifference curve 2, which is associated with a lower level of expected utility. Because the point of tangency represents the strategic asset allocation, it implies the asset allocation should be adjusted. Similarly, should investment objectives or constraints change, the indifference curves will change their shape and location. This change will again move the point of tangency, and hence change the asset allocation.

Exhibit 7 Strategic Asset Allocation Efficient Frontier



This framework describes how investor objectives and capital market expectations should theoretically be reconciled. It will, however, not be the exact procedure that in practice will be followed. First, an IPS does not necessarily translate the client’s investment objectives and constraint into a utility function. Rather, an IPS gives threshold levels for risk and expected return, combined with a number of additional constraints that cannot be captured in this model. Second, the model illustrated is a

single-period model, whereas in practice, the constraints from the IPS will make it more appropriate to use multi-period models. Multi-period problems can be more effectively addressed using simulation.

EXAMPLE 11

Approaching a SAA for a Private Investor

Rainer Gottschalk recently sold his local home construction company in the south of Germany to a large homebuilder with a nationwide reach. Upon selling his company, he accepted a job as regional manager for that nationwide homebuilder. He is now considering his and his family's financial future. He looks forward to his new job, where he likes his new role, and which provides him with income to fulfill his family's short-term and medium-term liquidity needs. He feels strongly that he should not invest the proceeds of the sale of his company in real estate because his income already depends on the state of the real estate market. He consults a financial adviser from his bank about how to invest his money to retire in good wealth in 20 years.

The IPS they develop suggests a return objective of 6 percent, with a standard deviation of 12 percent. The bank's asset management division provides Gottschalk and his adviser with the following data (Exhibit 8) on market expectations.

Exhibit 8 Risk, Return, and Correlation Estimates

	Expected Return (%)	Standard Deviation (%)	Correlation Matrix		
			European Equities	Emerging Mkt. Equities	European Govt. Bonds
European equities	8.40	24	1.00	0.86	-0.07
Emerging market equities	9.20	28	0.86	1.00	-0.07
European government bonds	3.50	7	-0.07	-0.07	1.00

Note: Standard deviation and correlation calculated over the period March 1999–December 2008. All data in unhedged euros.
Sources: Barclay's, MSCI, Bloomberg.

To illustrate the possibilities, the adviser presents Gottschalk with the following plot (Exhibit 9), in which the points forming the shaded curve outline the risk–return characteristics of the portfolios that can be constructed out of the three assets. An imaginary line linking the points with the lowest standard deviation for each attainable level of return would be the efficient frontier. The two straight lines show the risk and return objectives. Gottschalk should aim for portfolios that offer an expected return of at least 6 percent (the straight horizontal line or above) and a standard deviation of return of 12 percent or lower (the straight vertical line to the left).

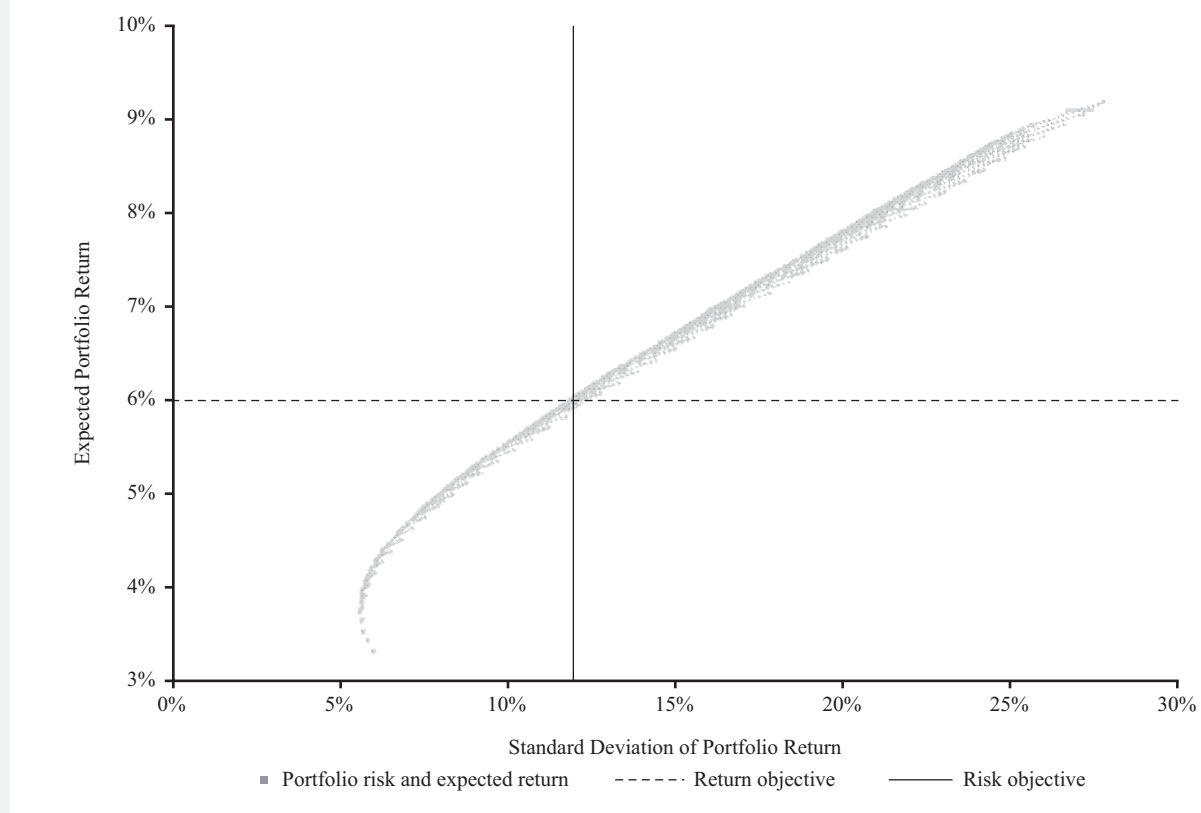
Exhibit 9 Efficient Frontier

Exhibit 9 shows that a portfolio on the efficient frontier satisfies the two objectives. This portfolio consists of 28 percent European stocks, 20 percent emerging market equities, and 52 percent government bonds and gives a 6 percent expected return and a 12 percent standard deviation. This combination is what the adviser recommends to Gottschalk as his strategic asset allocation.

3.3 Steps Toward an Actual Portfolio

The strategic asset allocation in itself does not yet represent an actual investment portfolio. It is the first step in implementing an investment strategy. For quantitatively oriented portfolio managers, the next step is often risk budgeting.

As used in this reading, **risk budgeting** is the process of deciding on the amount of risk to assume in a portfolio (the overall risk budget), and subdividing that risk over the sources of investment return (e.g., strategic asset allocation, tactical asset allocation, and security selection).⁵ Because the decision about the amount of risk to be taken is made in constructing the IPS, at this stage we are concerned about the subdivision of that risk.

Apart from the exposures to systematic risk factors specified in the strategic asset allocation, the returns of an investment strategy depend on two other sources: tactical asset allocation and security selection. **Tactical asset allocation** is the decision to deliberately deviate from the policy exposures to systematic risk factors (i.e., the policy weights of asset classes) with the intent to add value based on forecasts of

⁵ Some writers use risk budgeting to refer to allocating an amount or budget of tracking risk to active portfolio managers on a given asset class. See Waring, Whitney, Pirone, Castille (2000).

the near-term returns of those asset classes. For instance, an investor may decide to temporarily invest more of the portfolio in equities than the SAA prescribes if the investor anticipates that equities will deliver a higher return over the short term than other asset classes. **Security selection** is an attempt to generate higher returns than the asset class benchmark by selecting securities with a higher expected return. For example, an investment manager may decide to add more IBM stock in his portfolio than the weight in his equity benchmark if he expects this stock to do better than the benchmark. To fund this purchase, he may sell another stock expected to do worse than either the benchmark or IBM. Obviously, deciding to deviate from policy weights or to select securities aiming to beat the benchmark creates additional uncertainty about returns. This risk is over and above the risk inherent in the policy portfolio. Hence, an investment policy should set risk limits and desired payoffs for each of these three activities.

Risk budgeting implies that the portfolio manager has to choose, for every asset class, whether to deploy security selection as a return generator. This choice is generally referred to as the choice between active or passive management. Contrary to strategic asset allocation, where exposures to sources of systematic risk are selected and sized, security selection is not rewarded with a long-run payoff to risk. Security selection is a zero-sum game: All investors in an asset class are competing with each to identify a typically limited number of assets that are misvalued. In total, the gross returns of all market participants average out to the market return (the reward for taking systematic risk). This implies that the average active investor will match the market return, and that one investor's gain versus the market return is the other investor's loss versus the market return. However, because active managers tend to trade more and have to pay people (including themselves) to generate investment ideas or information leading to such ideas, the average active manager will underperform the market, net of costs. This does not imply, however, that there are no skillful investment managers who, with some consistency, beat their benchmarks. Neither does it imply that all passive managers will be able to match the benchmark. The higher the turnover of an index, the more trading costs a passive manager will incur, making the task of effectively mimicking an index more difficult.

The likelihood of adding a significant amount of value from security selection depends on the skills of the manager and the informational efficiency of the market for the asset class his skill relates to. The more efficient an asset class or a subset of that asset class (such as a regional stock, bond, or real estate market or a size category within the stock market), the more skillful an asset manager has to be to add value. Broadly speaking, an efficient market is a market in which prices, on average, very quickly reflect newly available information. That requires a sizeable participation of mean–variance optimizing investors, acting on rational expectations, using the same or similar pricing models, and having equal opportunities to access relevant information. Clearly, the market for US large-capitalization equities would be quite efficient. By contrast, some regional bond and equity markets do not have the technical and regulatory systems for information dissemination that are sufficient to serve all investors on a timely basis. Skilled managers should be able to exploit the resulting inefficiencies.

Sometimes, however, the choice between active and passive management is actually made implicitly when the asset class is included in the asset allocation. The markets for some assets—such as those for non-listed real estate, art, and infrastructure assets—are so illiquid that it is very difficult to buy a diversified exposure. As a result, there is no way of taking exposure to the asset class without engaging in security selection.

As the portfolio is constructed and its value changes with the returns of the asset classes and securities in which it is invested, the weights of the asset classes will gradually deviate from the policy weights in the strategic asset allocation. This process is referred to as drift. Periodically, or when a certain threshold deviation from the policy weight (the bandwidth) has been breached, the portfolio should be rebalanced back to

the policy weights. The set of rules that guide the process of restoring the portfolio's original exposures to systematic risk factors is known as the **rebalancing policy**. Even absent a formal risk budget, formulating a rebalancing policy is an important element of risk management.

EXAMPLE 12**Strategic Asset Allocation for a European Charity**

A European charity has an asset allocation at the beginning of the year consisting of the asset classes and weights shown in Exhibit 10:

Exhibit 10 Asset Allocation of a European Charity (Beginning of Year)

Asset Class	Policy Weight	Corridor (+/-)	Upper Limit	Lower Limit
European equities	30.0%	2.0%	32.0%	28.0%
International equities	15.0	2.0	17.0	13.0
European government bonds	20.0	2.0	22.0	18.0
Corporate bonds	20.0	2.0	22.0	18.0
Cash and money market instruments	15.0	2.0	17.0	13.0
Total	100.0			

As Exhibit 10 reveals, the charity has a policy that the asset class weights cannot deviate from the policy weights by more than 2 percent (the corridor). The resulting upper and lower limits for the asset class weights are shown in the rightmost columns of the table. There are two reasons for asset class actual weights to deviate from policy weights: by deliberate choice (tactical asset allocation or market timing) and as a result of divergence of the returns of the different asset classes (drift). In this example, the asset class weights start the year exactly in line with policy weights.

After half a year, the investment portfolio is as shown in Exhibit 11.

Exhibit 11 Asset Allocation for a European Charity (6 Months Later)

Asset Class	Policy Weight	Corridor (+/-)	Upper Limit	Lower Limit	Period Return	Ending Weight
European equities	30.0%	2.0%	32.0%	28.0%	15.0%	32.4%
International equities	15.0	2.0	17.0	13.0	10.0	15.5
European government bonds	20.0	2.0	22.0	18.0	0.5	18.9
Corporate bonds	20.0	2.0	22.0	18.0	1.5	19.1
Cash and money market instruments	15.0	2.0	17.0	13.0	1.0	14.2
Total	100.0%				6.6%	100.0%

- 1 Discuss the returns of the portfolio and comment on the main asset weight changes.

Solution to 1:

The investment portfolio generated a return calculated on beginning (policy) weights of 6.55 percent or 6.6 percent ($= 0.30 \times 15\% + 0.15 \times 10\% + 0.20 \times 0.5\% + 0.20 \times 1.5\% + 0.15 \times 1.0\%$), mainly driven by a strong equity market. Bond returns were more subdued, leading to considerable drift in asset class weights. In particular, the European equity weight breached the upper limit of its allowed actual weight.

The investment committee decides against reducing European equities back to policy weight and adding to the fixed income and cash investments toward policy weights. Although this rebalancing would be prudent, the committee decides to engage in tactical asset allocation based on the view that this market will continue to be strong over the course of the year. It decides to just bring European equities back to within its bandwidth (a 32 percent portfolio weight) and add the proceeds to cash. Exhibit 12 shows the outcome after another half year.

Exhibit 12 Asset Allocation for a European Charity (an Additional 6 Months Later)

Asset Class	Policy Weight	Starting Weight	Corridor (+/-)	Upper Limit	Lower Limit	Period Return	Ending Weight
European equities	30.0%	32.0%	2.0%	32.0%	28.0%	-9.0%	29.7%
International equities	15.0	15.5	2.0	17.0	13.0	-6.0	14.9
European government bonds	20.0	18.9	2.0	22.0	18.0	4.0	20.0
Corporate bonds	20.0	19.1	2.0	22.0	18.0	4.0	20.2
Cash and money market instruments	15.0	14.6	2.0	17.0	13.0	2.0	15.2
Total	100.0%					-2.0%	100.0%

The prior decision not to rebalance to policy weights did not have a positive result. Contrary to the expectations of the investment committee, both European and international equities performed poorly while bonds recovered. The return of the portfolio was -2.0 percent.

2 How much of this return can be attributed to tactical asset allocation?

Solution to 2:

Because tactical asset allocation is the deliberate decision to deviate from policy weights, the return contribution from tactical asset allocation is equal to the difference between the actual return, and the return that would have been made if the asset class weights were equal to the policy weights. Exhibit 13 shows the difference to be -0.30 percent.

Exhibit 13 Returns to Tactical Asset Allocation

Asset Class	Policy Weight I	Starting Weight II	Weights Difference III (= II - I)	Period Return IV	TAA Contribution V (= III × IV)
European equities	30.0%	32.0%	2.0%	-9.0%	-0.18%
International equities	15.0	15.5	0.5	-6.0	-0.03
European government bonds	20.0	18.9	-1.1	4.0	-0.05
Corporate bonds	20.0	19.1	-0.9	4.0	-0.04

Exhibit 13 (Continued)

Asset Class	Policy Weight I	Starting Weight II	Weights Difference III (= II – I)	Period Return IV	TAA Contribution V (= III × IV)
Cash and money market instruments	15.0	14.6	–0.4	2.0	–0.01
Total	100.0%			–2.0%	–0.30%

The process of executing an investment strategy continues with selecting the appropriate manager(s) for each asset class and allocating funds to them. The investment portfolio management process is then well into the execution stage.

The investment managers' performance will be monitored, as well as the results of the strategic asset allocation. When asset class weights move outside their corridors, money is transferred from the asset classes that have become too large compared with the SAA to those that fall short. Managers as well as the strategic asset allocation will be reviewed on the basis of the outcome of the monitoring process. In addition, capital market expectations may change, as may the circumstances and objectives of the client. These changes could result in an adjustment of the strategic asset allocation.

3.4 Additional Portfolio Organizing Principles

The top-down oriented framework laid out in earlier paragraphs is quite general. Other models of portfolio organization are also used in practice, and these are described briefly here. In addition, this section introduces some portfolio construction concepts in use to better capture the value of active management.

According to some practitioners, a top-down investment process as described earlier has two drawbacks. They both result from the fact that in a top-down process, a multitude of specialist managers may work for the same client within the same asset class. Each of these managers will manage risk versus the client's benchmark, and because these benchmarks may be similar to or overlapping with those of other managers, the aggregate of all the portfolios within one asset class may be less active than was intended. The resulting investment portfolio may underutilize its risk budget. Another drawback is that as the investment managers each engage in trading over the full extent (including the benchmark exposure) of their portfolio, the aggregate of all portfolios may not be efficient from a capital gains tax point of view. More trading results in more capital gains being realized, increasing the tax bill at the end of the year. To circumvent these issues, the core–satellite approach was developed. In this approach, a majority of the portfolio is invested on a passive or low active risk basis (usually a combination of a bond portfolio and an equity portfolio) while a minority of the assets is managed aggressively in smaller “satellite” portfolios. The aim of the satellite portfolios is to generate a high active return with little regard for benchmark exposure, whereas the core is managed with low turnover to capture the long-term systematic risk premium of its assets on a tax-optimal basis. The aggressive management in satellites can be executed with the objective of market timing (in which case tactical asset tilts are executed through long–short positions in asset class indexes or derivatives), as well as security selection (in which case, highly active security selection vehicles act as satellites). A drawback of the core–satellite approach is that the assignment of asset class monies to actual portfolio managers—with their various expected

alphas, risk surrounding those alphas, and correlations between those alphas—can be seen as an optimization process in its own right. The outcome of that process is not necessarily consistent with a core–satellite structure (Waring and Siegel, 2003).

SUMMARY

In this reading, we have discussed construction of a client’s investment policy statement, including discussion of risk and return objectives and the various constraints that will apply to the portfolio. We have also discussed the portfolio construction process, with emphasis on the strategic asset allocation decisions that must be made.

- The IPS is the starting point of the portfolio management process. Without a full understanding of the client’s situation and requirements, it is unlikely that successful results will be achieved.
- The IPS can take a variety of forms. A typical format will include the client’s investment objectives and also list the constraints that apply to the client’s portfolio.
- The client’s objectives are specified in terms of risk tolerance and return requirements.
- The constraints section covers factors that need to be considered when constructing a portfolio for the client that meets the objectives. The typical constraint categories are liquidity requirements, time horizon, regulatory requirements, tax status, and unique needs.
- Risk objectives are specifications for portfolio risk that reflect the risk tolerance of the client. Quantitative risk objectives can be absolute or relative or a combination of the two.
- The client’s overall risk tolerance is a function of the client’s ability to accept risk and their “risk attitude,” which can be considered the client’s willingness to take risk.
- The client’s return objectives can be stated on an absolute or a relative basis. As an example of an absolute objective, the client may want to achieve a particular percentage rate of return. Alternatively, the return objective can be stated on a relative basis, for example, relative to a benchmark return.
- The liquidity section of the IPS should state what the client’s requirements are to draw cash from the portfolio.
- The time horizon section of the IPS should state the time horizon over which the investor is investing. This horizon may be the period during which the portfolio is accumulating before any assets need to be withdrawn.
- Tax status varies among investors and a client’s tax status should be stated in the IPS.
- The IPS should state any legal or regulatory restrictions that constrain the investment of the portfolio.
- The unique circumstances section of the IPS should cover any other aspect of a client’s circumstances that is likely to have a material impact on the composition of the portfolio; for example, any religious or ethical preferences.
- Asset classes are the building blocks of an asset allocation. An asset class is a category of assets that have similar characteristics, attributes, and risk–return relationships. Traditionally, investors have distinguished cash, equities, bonds, and real estate as the major asset classes.

- A strategic asset allocation results from combining the constraints and objectives articulated in the IPS and capital market expectations regarding the asset classes.
- As time goes on, a client's asset allocation will drift from the target allocation, and the amount of allowable drift as well as a rebalancing policy should be formalized.
- In addition to taking systematic risk, an investment committee may choose to take tactical asset allocation risk or security selection risk. The amount of return attributable to these decisions can be measured.

REFERENCES

- Grable, John E., and Soo-Hyun Joo. 2004. "Environmental and Biopsychosocial Factors Associated with Financial Risk Tolerance." *Financial Counseling and Planning*, vol. 15, no. 1: 73–82.
- Kritzman, Mark. 1999. "Toward Defining an Asset Class." *Journal of Alternative Investments*, vol. 2, no. 1: 79–82.
- Waring, M. Barton, and Laurence B. Siegel. 2003. "The Dimensions of Active Management." *Journal of Portfolio Management*, vol. 29, no. 3: 35–51.
- Waring, M. Barton, Duane Whitney, John Pirone, and Charles Castille. 2000. "Optimizing Manager Structure and Budgeting Manager Risk." *Journal of Portfolio Management*, vol. 26, no. 3: 90–104.

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

- 1 Which of the following is *least* important as a reason for a written investment policy statement (IPS)?
 - A The IPS may be required by regulation.
 - B Having a written IPS is part of best practice for a portfolio manager.
 - C Having a written IPS ensures the client's risk and return objectives can be achieved.
- 2 Which of the following *best* describes the underlying rationale for a written investment policy statement (IPS)?
 - A A written IPS communicates a plan for trying to achieve investment success.
 - B A written IPS provides investment managers with a ready defense against client lawsuits.
 - C A written IPS allows investment managers to instruct clients about the proper use and purpose of investments.
- 3 A written investment policy statement (IPS) is *most* likely to succeed if:
 - A it is created by a software program to assure consistent quality.
 - B it is a collaborative effort of the client and the portfolio manager.
 - C it reflects the investment philosophy of the portfolio manager.
- 4 The section of the investment policy statement (IPS) that provides information about how policy may be executed, including investment constraints, is *best* described as the:
 - A *Investment Objectives.*
 - B *Investment Guidelines.*
 - C *Statement of Duties and Responsibilities.*
- 5 Which of the following is *least* likely to be placed in the appendices to an investment policy statement (IPS)?
 - A *Rebalancing Policy.*
 - B *Strategic Asset Allocation.*
 - C *Statement of Duties and Responsibilities.*
- 6 Which of the following typical topics in an investment policy statement (IPS) is *most* closely linked to the client's "distinctive needs"?
 - A *Procedures.*
 - B *Investment Guidelines.*
 - C *Statement of Duties and Responsibilities.*
- 7 An investment policy statement that includes a return objective of outperforming the FTSE 100 by 120 basis points is *best* characterized as having a(n):
 - A relative return objective.
 - B absolute return objective.
 - C arbitrage-based return objective.
- 8 Risk assessment questionnaires for investment management clients are *most* useful in measuring:
 - A value at risk.

- B ability to take risk.
C willingness to take risk.
- 9 Which of the following is *best* characterized as a relative risk objective?
- A Value at risk for the fund will not exceed US\$3 million.
B The fund will not underperform the DAX by more than 250 basis points.
C The fund will not lose more than €2.5 million in the coming 12-month period.
- 10 In preparing an investment policy statement, which of the following is *most* difficult to quantify?
- A Time horizon.
B Ability to accept risk.
C Willingness to accept risk.
- 11 After interviewing a client in order to prepare a written investment policy statement (IPS), you have established the following:
- The client has earnings that vary dramatically between £30,000 and £70,000 (pre-tax) depending on weather patterns in Britain.
 - In three of the previous five years, the after-tax income of the client has been less than £20,000.
 - The client's mother is dependent on her son (the client) for approximately £9,000 per year support.
 - The client's own subsistence needs are approximately £12,000 per year.
 - The client has more than 10 years' experience trading investments including commodity futures, stock options, and selling stock short.
 - The client's responses to a standard risk assessment questionnaire suggest he has above average risk tolerance.
- The client is *best* described as having a:
- A low ability to take risk, but a high willingness to take risk.
B high ability to take risk, but a low willingness to take risk.
C high ability to take risk and a high willingness to take risk.
- 12 After interviewing a client in order to prepare a written investment policy statement (IPS), you have established the following:
- The client has earnings that have exceeded €120,000 (pre-tax) each year for the past five years.
 - She has no dependents.
 - The client's subsistence needs are approximately €45,000 per year.
 - The client states that she feels uncomfortable with her lack of understanding of securities markets.
 - All of the client's current savings are invested in short-term securities guaranteed by an agency of her national government.
 - The client's responses to a standard risk assessment questionnaire suggest she has low risk tolerance.
- The client is *best* described as having a:
- A low ability to take risk, but a high willingness to take risk.
B high ability to take risk, but a low willingness to take risk.
C high ability to take risk and a high willingness to take risk.

- 13 A client who is a 34-year old widow with two healthy young children (aged 5 and 7) has asked you to help her form an investment policy statement. She has been employed as an administrative assistant in a bureau of her national government for the previous 12 years. She has two primary financial goals—her retirement and providing for the college education of her children. This client's time horizon is *best* described as being:
- A long term.
 - B short term.
 - C medium term.
- 14 The timing of payouts for property and casualty insurers is unpredictable (“lumpy”) in comparison with the timing of payouts for life insurance companies. Therefore, in general, property and casualty insurers have:
- A lower liquidity needs than life insurance companies.
 - B greater liquidity needs than life insurance companies.
 - C a higher return objective than life insurance companies.
- 15 A client who is a director of a publicly listed corporation is required by law to refrain from trading that company's stock at certain points of the year when disclosure of financial results are pending. In preparing a written investment policy statement (IPS) for this client, this restriction on trading:
- A is irrelevant to the IPS.
 - B should be included in the IPS.
 - C makes it illegal for the portfolio manager to work with this client.
- 16 Consider the pairwise correlations of monthly returns of the following asset classes:

	Brazilian Equities	East Asian Equities	European Equities	US Equities
Brazilian equities	1.00	0.70	0.85	0.76
East Asian equities	0.70	1.00	0.91	0.88
European equities	0.85	0.91	1.00	0.90
US equities	0.76	0.88	0.90	1.00

Based solely on the information in the above table, which equity asset class is *most* sharply distinguished from US equities?

- A Brazilian equities.
 - B European equities.
 - C East Asian equities.
- 17 Returns on asset classes are *best* described as being a function of:
- A the failure of arbitrage.
 - B exposure to the idiosyncratic risks of those asset classes.
 - C exposure to sets of systematic factors relevant to those asset classes.
- 18 In defining asset classes as part of the strategic asset allocation decision, pairwise correlations within asset classes should generally be:
- A equal to correlations among asset classes.
 - B lower than correlations among asset classes.
 - C higher than correlations among asset classes.
- 19 Tactical asset allocation is *best* described as:
- A attempts to exploit arbitrage possibilities among asset classes.

- B** the decision to deliberately deviate from the policy portfolio.
 - C** selecting asset classes with the desired exposures to sources of systematic risk in an investment portfolio.
- 20** Investing the majority of the portfolio on a passive or low active risk basis while a minority of the assets is managed aggressively in smaller portfolios is *best* described as:
- A** the core–satellite approach.
 - B** a top-down investment policy.
 - C** a delta-neutral hedge approach.

SOLUTIONS

- 1 C is correct. Depending on circumstances, a written IPS or its equivalent may be required by law or regulation and a written IPS is certainly consistent with best practices. The mere fact that a written IPS is prepared for a client, however, does not *ensure* that risk and return objectives will in fact be achieved.
- 2 A is correct. A written IPS is best seen as a communication instrument allowing clients and portfolio managers to mutually establish investment objectives and constraints.
- 3 B is correct. A written IPS, to be successful, must incorporate a full understanding of the client's situation and requirements. As stated in the reading, "The IPS will be developed following a fact finding discussion with the client."
- 4 B is correct. The major components of an IPS are listed in Section 2.2 of the reading. *Investment Guidelines* are described as the section that provides information about how policy may be executed, including investment constraints. *Statement of Duties and Responsibilities* "detail[s] the duties and responsibilities of the client, the custodian of the client's assets, the investment managers, and so forth." *Investment Objectives* is "a section explaining the client's objectives in investing."
- 5 C is correct. The major components of an IPS are listed in Section 2.2 of the reading. Strategic Asset Allocation (also known as the policy portfolio) and Rebalancing Policy are often included as appendices to the IPS. The *Statement of Duties and Responsibilities*, however, is an integral part of the IPS and is unlikely to be placed in an appendix.
- 6 B is correct. According to the reading, "The sections of an IPS that are most closely linked to the client's distinctive needs are those dealing with investment objectives and constraints." *Investment Guidelines* "[provide] information about how policy may be executed, including investment constraints." *Procedures* "[detail] the steps to be taken to keep the IPS current and the procedures to follow to respond to various contingencies." *Statement of Duties and Responsibilities* "detail[s] the duties and responsibilities of the client, the custodian of the client's assets, the investment managers, and so forth."
- 7 A is correct. Because the return objective specifies a target return *relative to* the FTSE 100 Index, the objective is best described as a relative return objective.
- 8 C is correct. Risk attitude is a subjective factor and measuring risk attitude is difficult. Oftentimes, investment managers use psychometric questionnaires, such as those developed by Grable and Joo (2004), to assess a client's willingness to take risk.
- 9 B is correct. The reference to the DAX marks this response as a relative risk objective. Value at risk establishes a minimum value of loss expected during a specified time period at a given level of probability. A statement of maximum allowed absolute loss (€2.5 million) is an absolute risk objective.
- 10 C is correct. Measuring willingness to take risk (risk tolerance, risk aversion) is an exercise in applied psychology. Instruments attempting to measure risk attitudes exist, but they are clearly less objective than measurements of ability to take risk. Ability to take risk is based on relatively objective traits such as expected income, time horizon, and existing wealth relative to liabilities.

- 11 A is correct. The volatility of the client's income and the significant support needs for his mother and himself suggest that the client has a low ability to take risk. The client's trading experience and his responses to the risk assessment questionnaire indicate that the client has an above average willingness to take risk.
- 12 B is correct. On the one hand, the client has a stable, high income and no dependents. On the other hand, she exhibits above average risk aversion. Her ability to take risk is high, but her willingness to take risk is low.
- 13 A is correct. The client's financial objectives are long term. Her stable employment indicates that her immediate liquidity needs are modest. The children will not go to college until 10 or more years later. Her time horizon is best described as being long term.
- 14 B is correct. The unpredictable nature of property and casualty (P&C) claims forces P&C insurers to allocate a substantial proportion of their investments into liquid, short maturity assets. This need for liquidity also forces P&C companies to accept investments with relatively low expected returns. Liquidity is of less concern to life insurance companies given the greater predictability of life insurance payouts.
- 15 B is correct. When a client has a restriction in trading, such as this obligation to refrain from trading, the IPS "should note this constraint so that the portfolio manager does not inadvertently trade the stock on the client's behalf."
- 16 A is correct. The correlation between US equities and Brazilian equities is 0.76. The correlations between US equities and East Asian equities and the correlation between US equities and European equities both exceed 0.76. Lower correlations indicate a greater degree of separation between asset classes. Therefore, using solely the data given in the table, returns on Brazilian equities are most sharply distinguished from returns on US equities.
- 17 C is correct. Strategic asset allocation depends on several principles. As stated in the reading, "One principle is that a portfolio's systematic risk accounts for most of its change in value over the long run." A second principle is that, "the returns to groups of like assets... predictably reflect exposures to certain sets of systematic factors." This latter principle establishes that returns on asset classes primarily reflect the systematic risks of the classes.
- 18 C is correct. As the reading states, "an asset class should contain homogeneous assets... paired correlations of securities would be high within an asset class, but should be lower versus securities in other asset classes."
- 19 B is correct. Tactical asset allocation allows actual asset allocation to deviate from that of the strategic asset allocation (policy portfolio) of the IPS. Tactical asset allocation attempts to take advantage of temporary dislocations from the market conditions and assumptions that drove the policy portfolio decision.
- 20 A is correct. The core-satellite approach to constructing portfolios is defined as "investing the majority of the portfolio on a passive or low active risk basis while a minority of the assets is managed aggressively in smaller portfolios."

Risk Management: An Introduction

by Don M. Chance, PhD, CFA, and Michael E. Edleson, PhD, CFA

Don M. Chance, PhD, CFA, is at Louisiana State University (USA). Michael E. Edleson, PhD, CFA, is at the University of Chicago (USA).

LEARNING OUTCOMES

<i>Mastery</i>	<i>The candidate should be able to:</i>
<input type="checkbox"/>	a. define risk management;
<input type="checkbox"/>	b. describe features of a risk management framework;
<input type="checkbox"/>	c. define risk governance and describe elements of effective risk governance;
<input type="checkbox"/>	d. explain how risk tolerance affects risk management;
<input type="checkbox"/>	e. describe risk budgeting and its role in risk governance;
<input type="checkbox"/>	f. identify financial and non-financial sources of risk and describe how they may interact;
<input type="checkbox"/>	g. describe methods for measuring and modifying risk exposures and factors to consider in choosing among the methods.

INTRODUCTION

Risk—and risk management—is an inescapable part of economic activity. People generally manage their affairs in order to be as happy and secure as their environment and resources will allow. But regardless of how carefully these affairs are managed, there is risk because the outcome, whether good or bad, is seldom predictable with complete certainty. There is risk inherent in nearly everything we do, but this reading will focus on economic and financial risk, particularly as it relates to investment management.

All businesses and investors manage risk, whether consciously or not, in the choices they make. At its core, business and investing are about allocating resources and capital to chosen risks. In their decision process, within an environment of uncertainty, these entities may take steps to avoid some risks, pursue the risks that provide the highest rewards, and measure and mitigate their exposure to these risks as necessary. Risk management processes and tools make difficult business and financial problems easier to address in an uncertain world. Risk is not just a matter of fate; it is

something that organizations can actively control with their decisions, within a risk management framework. Risk is an integral part of the business or investment process. Even in the earliest models of modern portfolio theory, such as mean–variance portfolio optimization and the capital asset pricing model, investment return is linked directly to risk but requires that risk be managed optimally. Proper identification and measurement of risk, and keeping risks aligned with the goals of the enterprise, are key factors in managing businesses and investments. Good risk management results in a higher chance of a preferred outcome—more value for the company or portfolio or more utility for the individual.

Portfolio managers need to be familiar with risk management not only to improve the portfolio's risk–return outcome, but also because of two other ways in which they use risk management at an enterprise level. First, they help to manage their own companies that have their own enterprise risk issues. Second, many portfolio assets are claims on companies that have risks. Portfolio managers need to evaluate the companies' risks and how those companies are addressing them.

This reading takes a broad approach that addresses both the risk management of enterprises in general and portfolio risk management. The principles underlying portfolio risk management are generally applicable to the risk management of financial and non-financial institutions as well.

The concept of risk management is also relevant to individuals. Although many large entities formally practice risk management, most individuals practice it more informally and some practice it haphazardly, oftentimes responding to risk events after they occur. Although many individuals do take reasonable precautions against unwanted risks, these precautions are often against obvious risks, such as sticking a wet hand into an electrical socket or swallowing poison. The more subtle risks are often ignored. Many individuals simply do not view risk management as a formal, systematic process that would help them achieve not only their financial goals but also the ultimate end result of happiness, or maximum utility as economists like to call it, but they should.

Although the primary focus of this reading is on institutions, we will also cover risk management as it applies to individuals. We will show that many common themes underlie risk management—themes that are applicable to both organizations and individuals.

Although often viewed as defensive, risk management is a valuable offensive weapon in the manager's arsenal. In the quest for preferred outcomes, such as higher profit, returns, or share price, management does not usually get to choose the outcomes but does choose the risks it takes in pursuit of those outcomes. The choice of which risks to undertake through the allocation of its scarce resources is the key tool available to management. An organization with a comprehensive risk management culture in place, in which risk is integral to every key strategy and decision, should perform better in the long-term, in good times and bad, as a result of better decision making.

The fact that all businesses and investors engage in risky activities (i.e., activities with uncertain outcomes) raises a number of important questions. The questions that this reading will address include the following:

- What is risk management, and why is it important?
- What risks does an organization (or individual) face in pursuing its objectives?
- How are an entity's goals affected by risk, and how does it make risk management decisions to produce better results?
- How does risk governance guide the risk management process and risk budgeting to integrate an organization's goals with its activities?
- How does an organization measure and evaluate the risks it faces, and what tools does it have to address these risks?

The answers to these questions collectively help to define the process of risk management. This reading is organized along the lines of these questions. Section 2 describes the risk management process, and Section 3 discusses risk governance and risk tolerance. Section 4 covers the identification of various risks, and Section 5 addresses the measurement and management of risks. Section 6 provides a summary.

THE RISK MANAGEMENT PROCESS

2

Risk, broadly speaking, is exposure to uncertainty. Risk is also the concept used to describe all of the uncertain environmental variables that lead to variation in and unpredictability of outcomes. More colloquially, risk is about the chance of a loss or adverse outcome as a result of an action, inaction, or external event.

This last view may make it sound as if risk is something to be avoided. But that is not at all the case. Risk is a key ingredient in the recipe for business or investment success, and return without risk is generally a false hope and usually a prescription for falling short of one's goals. Risks taken must be carefully chosen, understood, and well-managed to have a chance at adding value through decisions. Risk and return are the interconnected forces of the financial universe. Many decision makers focus on return, which is not something that is easily controlled, as opposed to risk, or exposure to risk, which may actually be managed or controlled.

Risk exposure is the extent to which the underlying environmental or market risks result in actual risk borne by a business or investor who has assets or liabilities that are sensitive to those risks. It is the state of being exposed or vulnerable to a risk. Risk exposure results from the decisions of an organization or investor to take on risk-sensitive assets and liabilities.

Suppose there is an important announcement in Japan that will result in the yen either appreciating or depreciating by 1%. The range of possible outcomes in real situations is clearly not as simple as the up-or-down 1% case used here, but we will use a simplified example to make an important point. The risk is the uncertain outcome of this event, and the currency risk to a non-Japanese business is the uncertain return or variation in return in domestic currency terms that results from the event. The risk can be described as the range of resulting outcomes and is often thought of in terms of a probability distribution of future returns. Suppose that the underlying amount is ¥1,000,000. The risk exposure of a business may be zero or it could be sizable, depending on whether the business has assets or liabilities tied to this risk¹—in this case, exposure to that currency. One million yen would, in this example, result in ¥10,000 of risk exposure (1% of ¥1,000,000). Risk management would include, among other things, quantifying and understanding this risk exposure, deciding how and why to have the exposure and how much risk the participant can bear, and possibly mitigating this risk by tailoring the exposure in a number of ways. The risk management process would inform the decision of whether to operate or invest in this risky currency.

¹ The word "risk" is confusing because it is used by different people at different times to mean so many different things. Even when used properly, the term has three related but different meanings, which this example illustrates well. Risk can mean, in turn, the underlying uncertainty, the extent of the risky action taken, or the resulting range of risky outcomes to the entity. In this example, the first meaning is the uncertain +1% or -1% movement of the currency. The second meaning is the ¥1,000,000 worth of risky currency, the position taken by the business. The third meaning is the +¥10,000 or -¥10,000 risky outcome that might accrue to the business for having engaged in this risky activity. A common way of more precisely distinguishing among these three "risks" in usage is: *risk driver* for the underlying risk, *risk position* to describe or quantify the risky action taken, and *risk exposure* for the potential valuation change that may result. In the oversimplified example above, the risk exposure is simply the risk position multiplied by the risk driver. In practice the term "risk" is used interchangeably for all three meanings.

***Risk management** is the process by which an organization or individual defines the level of risk to be taken, measures the level of risk being taken, and adjusts the latter toward the former, with the goal of maximizing the company's or portfolio's value or the individual's overall satisfaction, or utility.*

Said differently, risk management comprises all the decisions and actions needed to *best* achieve organizational or personal objectives while bearing a tolerable level of risk. Risk management is *not* about minimizing risk; it is about actively understanding and embracing those risks that best balance the achievement of goals with an acceptable chance of failure, quantifying the exposure, and continually monitoring and modifying it. A company that shied away from all risk would find that it could not operate. In trying to create wealth, all entities will find themselves “in the risk business.” Risk management is not about avoiding risks any more than a practical diet is about avoiding calories. Risk management is not even about predicting risks. “The Doctrine of No Surprises” is a key mantra among many risk managers, but it does not mean they are expected to predict what will happen. Instead, it means that if an unpredictable event, either positive or negative, happens in an uncertain world, the *impact* of that event on the organization or portfolio would not be a surprise and would have been quantified and considered in advance.

For example, a risk manager of a bank would not have been expected to know that a real estate crisis was going to occur and cause significant defaults on the bank's real estate securities. But a good risk manager would help the bank's management decide how much exposure it should have in these securities by quantifying the potential financial impact of such a crisis destroying, say, 60% of the bank's capital. A good risk management process would include a deep discussion at the governance level about the balance between the likely returns and the unlikely—but sizable—losses and whether such losses are tolerable. Management would ensure that the risk analysis and discussion actively affects their investment decisions, that the potential loss is continuously quantified and communicated, and that it will take actions to mitigate or transfer any portion of the risk exposure that cannot be tolerated.² The only surprise here should be the market shock itself; the risk manager should have prepared the organization through stress-testing and scenario analysis, continuously reporting in advance on the potential impact of this sizable risk exposure.

A poor risk management process would have ignored the possibility, though small, of such a significant market event and not quantified the potential loss from exposure to a real estate crisis. As such, the bank's management would have had no idea that more than half of the bank's capital could be at risk, not addressed this risk in any governance/risk appetite discussion, ignored these risks in its investment decisions, and not taken any action to mitigate this risk. In a good risk management process, most of the work is done before an adverse event happens; in a poor risk management process, perhaps just as much work gets done, but it all comes after the event, which is after the damage has been done.

Good risk management does not prevent losses, but provides a full top-to-bottom framework that rigorously informs the decision-making process—before, during, and after a risk event. Because risks and exposures are dynamic, risk management is a continuous process that is always being reevaluated and revised. If this process is done well, it provides management and staff with the knowledge to navigate as efficiently as possible toward the goals set by the governing body. In turn, this effort increases *ex ante* the value of the business or investment decisions undertaken. Good risk management may allow managers to more quickly or effectively act in the face

² For example, hedges may be used to limit loss of capital to 20%.

of a crisis. But *ex post*, even the best risk management may not stop a portfolio from losing money in a market crash nor prevent a business from reduced profits in an economic downturn.

A **risk management framework** flows logically from the definition of risk management that was previously given: It is the infrastructure, process, and analytics needed to support effective risk management in an organization. This process should fully integrate the “risk” and “return” aspects of the enterprise into decisions in support of best achieving its goals within its tolerance for risk. Risk management is not a “one size fits all” solution; it is integral to the enterprise’s goals and needs. Thus, it is best achieved through a custom solution. Despite customization, every risk management system or framework should address the following key factors:

- Risk governance
- Risk identification and measurement
- Risk infrastructure
- Defined policies and processes
- Risk monitoring, mitigation, and management
- Communications
- Strategic analysis or integration

Not surprisingly, these factors often overlap in practice. They are defined and discussed here.

Governance is the top-level system of structures, rights, and obligations by which organizations are directed and controlled. Normally performed at the board level, governance is how goals are defined, authority is granted, and top-level decisions are made. The foundation for risk management in the organization is set at the board level as well. **Risk governance** is the top-down process and guidance that directs risk management activities to align with and support the overall enterprise and is addressed in more detail in Section 3. Good governance should include defining an organization’s risk tolerance and providing risk oversight. Governance is often driven by regulatory concerns, as well as by the fiduciary role of the governing body. A risk management committee is another facet of governance; it provides top decision makers with a forum for regularly considering risk management issues. To achieve the best results for an organization, risk governance should take an enterprise-wide view. **Enterprise risk management** is an overarching governance approach applied throughout the entity and consistent with its strategy, guiding the risk management framework to focus risk activities on the objectives, health, and value of the *entire* organization.

Risk identification and measurement is the main quantitative core of risk management; but more than that, it must include the qualitative assessment and evaluation of all potential sources of risk and the organization’s risk exposures.³ This ongoing work involves analyzing the environment for relevant risk drivers, which is the common term used for any fundamental underlying factor that results in a risk that is relevant or important to an entity,⁴ analyzing the business or portfolio to ascertain risk exposures, tracking changes in those risk exposures, and calculating risk metrics to size these risks under various scenarios and stresses.

Risks are not limited to what is going on in the financial markets. There are many types of risk that can potentially impact a business, portfolio, or individual. A fuller overview of the range of risks will be the focus of Section 4.

³ This material is covered in more detail in Section 4.

⁴ Risk drivers are covered in more detail in Section 5.1.

The power of technology has allowed for risk management to be more quantitative and timely. Management can measure and monitor risk, run scenarios, conduct statistical analysis, work with more complex models, and examine more dimensions and risk drivers as well as do it faster. This use of technology needs to be balanced with and supplement—not supplant—experienced business judgment. Technology has made risk infrastructure even more important and beneficial in managing risks.

Risk infrastructure refers to the people and systems required to track risk exposures and perform most of the quantitative risk analysis to allow an assessment of the organization's risk profile. Infrastructure would include risk capture (the important operational process by which a risk exposure gets populated into a risk system), a database and data model, analytic models and systems, a stress or scenario engine, and an ability to generate reports, as well as some amount of skilled and empowered personnel resources dedicated to building and executing the risk framework. With increased reliance on technology, more time and effort must be allotted to test data, models, and results in order to avoid the ironic outcome of the risk of errors coming from within risk systems.

Obviously, the scope of risk infrastructure will be related to the resources, or potential losses, of the organization. Individuals and smaller businesses may rely heavily on an external partner or provider for much of their risk infrastructure and analysis.

Policies and processes are the extension of risk governance into both the day-to-day operation and decision-making processes of the organization. There may be limits, requirements, constraints, and guidelines—some quantitative, some procedural—to ensure risky activities are in line with the organization's predetermined risk tolerance and regulatory requirements. Much of this is just common sense business practice: updating and protecting data, controlling cash flows, conducting due diligence on investments, handling exceptions and escalations, and making checklists to support important decisions. In a good risk framework, processes would naturally evolve to consider risk at all key decision points, such as investment decisions and asset allocation. Risk management should become an integrated part of the business and not just a policing or regulatory function.

The process of *risk monitoring, mitigation, and management* is the most obvious facet of a risk framework, but also one of the most difficult. Actively monitoring and managing risk requires pulling together risk governance, identification and measurement, infrastructure, and policies and processes and continually reviewing and reevaluating in the face of changing risk exposures and risk drivers. It requires recognizing when risk exposure is not aligned with risk tolerance and then taking action to bring them back into alignment.⁵

Communication of critical risk issues must happen continually and across all levels of the organization. Governance parameters, such as risk tolerances and associated constraints, must be clearly communicated to, and understood by, managers. Risk metrics must be reported in a clear and timely manner. Risk issues must be reviewed and discussed as a standard part of decision making. Changes in exposure must be discussed so that action can be taken as appropriate. There should also be a feedback loop with the governance body so that top-level risk guidance can be validated or updated and communicated back to the rest of the organization.

Strategic analysis and integration help turn risk management into an offensive weapon to improve performance. Good risk management is a key to increasing the value of the overall business or portfolio. A risk management framework should provide the tools to better understand the how and why of performance and help sort out which activities are adding value and which are not. In investing, rigorous analysis can support better investment decisions and improve strategy and risk-adjusted returns.

⁵ Risk mitigation and management is discussed in more detail in Section 5.

Exhibit 1 The Risk Management Framework in an Enterprise Context

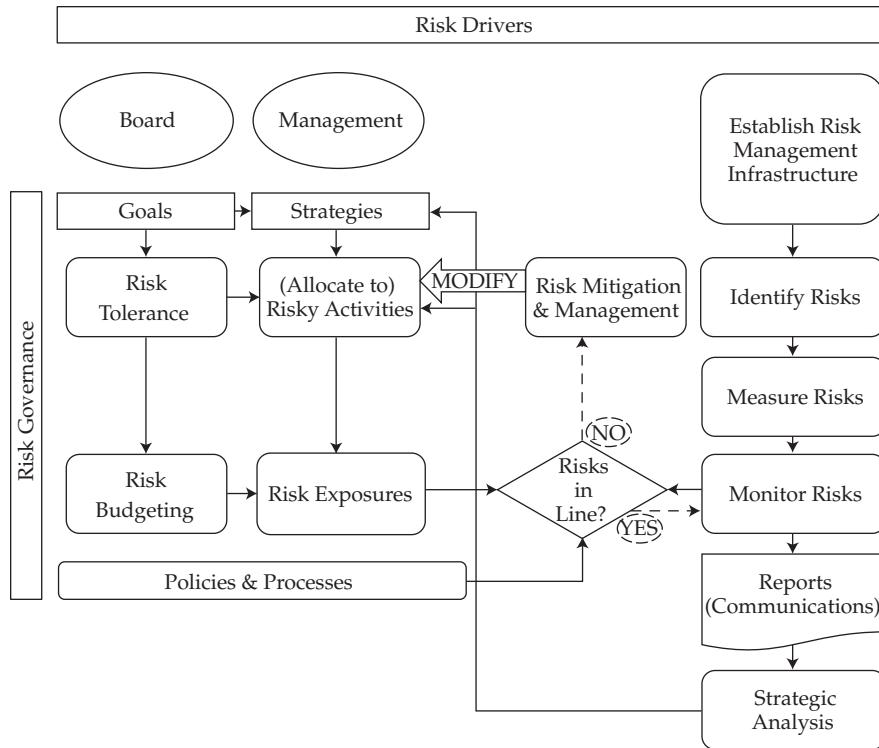


Exhibit 1 illustrates the process of risk management for an enterprise, pulling all the described elements of the risk framework together. Although there are a very high number of risks faced by every organization, most organizations are primarily affected by a small number of key risk drivers, or primary underlying factors that create risk. Along the left side is risk governance, which represents board-level decisions and encompasses and affects the boxes immediately to its right. The governance body, often called a board, defines the goals of the organization and, in turn, decides on its risk tolerance. It may additionally provide guidance on how or where that risk is taken (risk budgeting). The board is also involved in setting high-level policies that will affect most risk management processes. These risk governance activities are a crucial keystone of the risk framework and will be discussed in detail in the next section. When the rest of the risk framework hinges off of these top-down governance elements and is focused on the goals of the entire enterprise (as shown here), the end result is effective enterprise risk management.

The role of management, shown in the middle column, is to plan and execute value-maximizing strategies consistent with their governance guidance. Each management activity in the framework flows not only from management (shown with the arrows) but also from the governance activities on the left. Thus, not only are management's strategies designed to achieve the board's goals, but management also allocates capital to risky activities (its business or investing choices) to execute its strategies consistent with the defined risk tolerance. The risk exposures that result from management's choice of activities should also be aligned with the governing body's risk budget. In

addition, management participates actively in setting or implementing policies and establishing procedures that relate to when, how, how much, and by whom each of the other elements of the risk framework are performed.⁶

The rest of the risk management framework comprises a number of important risk activities to help the business achieve all of its strategic and governance goals and mandates. These other elements to implement risk management are shown in the far right column of the illustration. Driven by its need to establish a risk management program to support the enterprise's goals, management would provide the requisite resources for risk management activities by establishing a risk management infrastructure. With risk processes defined and risk infrastructure in place, risks are then identified and measured, which is a regular and continual process of translating risk exposures (produced by the risky activities) into meaningful and generally quantitative risk metrics.

The next major steps—risk monitoring, mitigation, and management—are where much of a firm's day-to-day risk management activity is focused. These activities are split across three boxes in the illustration. Risk levels are continuously monitored, having just been measured.⁷ There is a major decision at the monitoring stage: Management must check that all the risks are in line and not outside the limits of the defined risk tolerance or budget.⁸ This process involves evaluating the actual risk exposures compared with the organization's risk policies and procedures to ensure that everything is in compliance. If the answer is "no," then risk mitigation and management actions need to be taken to modify risk levels and to bring them back into compliance. There are a variety of methods to accomplish this task, which are addressed in Section 5. Whatever the method, management's allocation of the risk budget to risky activities will be altered by this modification, which includes changing the entity's risk exposures, starting the circle again through the steps on the right, and re-checking to see if risk levels are now consistent with risk policies.

When risks *are* in line with limits, policies, tolerances, mandates, and so on, then the process moves back to continuous monitoring followed by communicating risk levels.⁹ This communication, at a minimum, includes reporting key risk metrics on a regular and timely basis across the organization to assist management in its decision-making process and the board in fulfilling its governance duties. Finally, strategic analysis is supported by the risk measurement, reporting, and other steps of the enterprise risk management process. By analyzing all of the enterprise's strategies and risky activities via the risk measurement lens, management can improve its decision-making process and ascertain where to invest its limited capital and risk budget most fruitfully. This step is generally underappreciated and is an inexpensive and beneficial by-product of having built a risk framework. The last two boxes or steps (reports and strategic analysis) represent important feedback loops to inform and improve both governance and the portfolio of risky activities that make up the business.

⁶ In essence, there could be an arrow from policies and processes to every other box to the right, but these rather obvious relationships are intentionally omitted in the diagram to avoid clutter. Likewise, risk exposures inform nearly all the boxes to the right. Risk management is innately quite interrelated.

⁷ Continuous usually does not mean real-time; the frequency of monitoring is based on the resources available, the level of systems support, and the need for risk information in the decision process. At large financial firms, this monitoring will generally be daily; for small businesses and individuals it might be quarterly.

⁸ This task is generally delegated to a risk manager; but whatever the title, someone must be accountable for this important check.

⁹ While not obvious in the illustration, communication and reporting should happen whether or not risk levels are in compliance; such communications are even more important when risk levels are out of alignment with tolerances.

There are many feedback loops in properly executed risk management. In practice, most of these steps overlap most of the time and are being performed simultaneously. Good risk management ties together all these steps from the highest governance decisions to lower-level specifics, such as models, reports, and operational checklists.

The risk environment is dynamic, and many of our notions of probabilities and likely risk outcomes change in ways we probably could not predict. The risk management framework should be robust enough to anticipate this dynamism—to expect the unexpected. It should be evolutionary—flexible enough to grow with a company or individual and its new challenges.

The complexity of the risk management framework depends on the complexity of an entity's risk exposures and their resources. But that does not mean that smaller organizations or individuals should skip the risk management process; they may simply be able to do less, or have to work with external partners to assist with large portions of the framework, or be less formal about the process. Ultimately, the key principles just covered are still important even to the smallest entity, even if the specific components do not get assembled as described.

THE RISK MANAGEMENT PROCESS FOR AN INDIVIDUAL



Although an individual has neither the resources nor the organizational overhead of a large business, the importance of risk management is not diminished and the risk management framework still applies, albeit most likely in a scaled-down form. Though nearly all of the essential elements of the process illustrated in Exhibit 1 are still useful, the individual can reduce the recipe to six essential ingredients, consistent with the reduced scope of the individual's risk exposures.

The first step for an individual is much like that shown in Exhibit 1 for the most complex organization: the determination of goals or objectives. This step would include most of the elements associated with risk governance, just without all the organizational complexity.

The next functional step involves choosing investments (or other assets) and identifying their risks. Lacking any risk infrastructure, the individual may at this stage already require the services of an investment professional or financial adviser. This step and subsequent steps will probably be executed by the adviser, although the individual principal still needs to stay knowledgeable and involved. In the context of the illustration in Exhibit 1, the individual is effectively their own governance body and the adviser serves the role of management.

The next steps for the individual are equivalent to the heart of the risk management process: risk monitoring and risk mitigation and management. The individual would first evaluate their risk exposure (like the diamond or decision step in the illustration), then consider various alternative approaches to modify the risk if necessary, followed by implementing the risk management solution (insuring, hedging, trading, etc.).

The final functional step for an individual's risk management process would be evaluation and review. This step is parallel to the back-end of the risk management illustration, the boxes at the bottom right. This process may occur with much less frequency for an individual—but it is no less important.

Each individual should simplify the risk management process as required so that they do not end up considering it "too esoteric and complicated to worry about" and thus ignoring risk management altogether. The potential costs of avoiding risk management are essentially the same for an individual as for a large corporation or a hedge fund, although perhaps with less money involved.

At its core, business and investing are about allocating resources and capital to chosen risks. Understanding which risks drive better outcomes should be one of the goals of risk management, and it makes good *risk* management inextricably linked with good management generally. When effective risk management is truly integrated at all levels of the decision-making process and the overall management process,

the organization has developed an effective *risk culture*. This culture generally produces better results than just considering risk issues as a separate afterthought, and, in turn, it produces *much* better results than ignoring risk issues altogether in the decision-making process. For individuals, the adoption of a risk culture should result in a personal awareness of the many types of risks, their rewards, the costs, the relationships between them, and the methods of aligning the risks borne with the risks and outcomes desired. This awareness should lead to better investment return and/or smaller losses for the risk taken, resulting in higher satisfaction.

There are a number of other benefits from establishing good risk management: (1) Most obvious is less frequent surprises and a better notion of what the damage would be in the event of a surprise; (2) more decision discipline leading to better consideration of trade-offs and better risk–return relationships; (3) better response and risk mitigation stemming from more awareness and active monitoring, which should trim some of the worst losses; (4) better efficiency and fewer operational errors from policies and procedures, transparency, and risk awareness; (5) better relations, with more trust, between the governing body and management, which generally results in more effective delegation; (6) a better image or reputation because analysts and investors perceive a company as prudent and value-focused. Together, all these benefits should lead to higher value for the enterprise.

EXAMPLE 1

Risk Management and Risk Management Framework

- 1 Which of the following is *not* a goal of risk management?
 - A Measuring risk exposures
 - B Minimizing exposure to risk
 - C Defining the level of risk appetite
- 2 Which element of a risk management framework sets the overall context for risk management in an organization?
 - A Governance
 - B Risk infrastructure
 - C Policies and processes
- 3 Which element of risk management makes up the analytical component of the process?
 - A Communication
 - B Risk governance
 - C Risk identification and measurement
- 4 Which element of risk management involves action when risk exposures are found to be out of line with risk tolerance?
 - A Risk governance
 - B Risk identification and measurement
 - C Risk monitoring, mitigation, and management

Solution to 1:

B is correct. The definition of risk management includes both defining the level of risk desired and measuring the level of risk taken. Risk management means taking risks actively and in the best, most value-added way possible and is not about minimizing risks.

Solution to 2:

A is correct. Governance is the element of the risk management framework that is the top-level foundation for risk management. Although policies, procedures, and infrastructure are necessary to implement a risk management framework, it is governance that provides the overall context for an organization's risk management.

Solution to 3:

C is correct. Risk identification and measurement is the quantitative part of the process. It involves identifying the risks and summarizing their potential quantitative impact. Communication and risk governance are largely qualitative.

Solution to 4:

C is correct. Risk monitoring, mitigation, and management require recognizing and taking action when these (risk exposure and risk tolerance) are not in line, as shown in the middle of Exhibit 1. Risk governance involves setting the risk tolerance. Risk identification and measurement involves identifying and measuring the risk exposures.

RISK GOVERNANCE

3

Risk governance is the foundation for risk management. As defined earlier, it is the top-down process and guidance that directs risk management activities to align with and support the goals of the overall enterprise. It typically emanates from a board of directors with fiduciary obligations and risk oversight and who prescribe goals and authorities. Referring back to the definition of risk management, note that risk management is keenly focused on the risk and value of the overall enterprise.

3.1 An Enterprise View of Risk Governance

In addition to the responsibility for risk oversight, there are two other important areas in which the governing body drives the risk framework. First, it determines the organization's goals, direction, and priorities, which combined serve as a key foundation for enterprise risk management. Recall that enterprise risk management is an overarching governance approach applied across the entity that focuses risk activities on the objectives, health, and value of the whole organization. Second, it spells out the risk appetite or tolerance, meaning which risks are acceptable, which risks are to be mitigated and to what extent, and which risks are unacceptable. Risk governance should also provide a sense of the worst losses that could be tolerated in various scenarios, and management should manage risk accordingly. These considerations should flow naturally into decisions about risk budgeting to guide implementation of an optimal program that is consistent with that risk tolerance.

Risk governance is the impact of the governing body of an organization on the risk management framework. It provides context for and clarity on an organization's value drivers and risk appetite, specifies clear authority to management to execute risk management, and ensures risk oversight to continually determine whether risk management is functioning well and consistent with the organization's value maximization. It is the governing body's job to tie the organizational goals and risk framework together; thus, risk governance happens within an enterprise context. Risk

governance and risk oversight also entail compliance with regulatory requirements. Risk governance is a difficult and demanding discipline, and if it is going to flourish in an organization, it needs visible commitment from the top.

Providing clear guidance with sufficient leeway to execute strategy is often a difficult balance. Even more challenging is providing for advance discussion and a clear decision and statement of organizational risk appetite. There is usually substantial discussion about this risk appetite *after* a crisis, but too often there is very little discussion during periods of normalcy, when it would be much more beneficial. Because risk is one of the main strategic tools that management can regulate, it is especially important for governing bodies to openly discuss risk, consider scenarios, understand the impact of negative outcomes on the organization, and make it clear where they are not willing to venture. Much like an automobile that comes with a red zone on some dials to establish boundaries for safe operation, risk governance bodies should likewise establish hypothetical red zones to ensure the safe operation of their enterprise.

Enterprise risk management (focusing risk activities on the objectives, health, and value of the *whole* organization) requires that the entire economic balance sheet of the business be considered, not just the assets or one part of the business in isolation. A narrower view of risk management is unlikely to meet the goal of maximizing the value of the entire enterprise.

Pension fund management provides a classic example of the importance of considering enterprise risk management: “Funds” are the assets and “pension” is the liability. But a true enterprise view requires an even broader outlook. A corporate pension fund’s manager might try to maximize only the fund’s assets, but this would generally do a disservice to the corporation. The assets and liabilities of a pension fund are both sensitive to market variables, so ignoring the liabilities would be ignoring half the risk. With liabilities that are quite bond-like, a pension fund manager using all equities for maximum growth would potentially make the overall fund insolvent in a market collapse with declining interest rates because, in such a situation, the liabilities would increase substantially in value while the assets fell. Risk tolerance for the assets in isolation would be far different from the risk tolerance of the entire enterprise. One should look beyond just the pension liabilities, which are likely to be a small part of the overall enterprise. Broader still, a true enterprise risk view in this case would *also* consider the parent corporation’s business risk profile and not just the pension assets and liabilities. In a market collapse, the overall business might be in a recessionary phase, rendering increasing contributions from the corporation to its pension fund quite painful. Factoring the corporate risk profile into the pension fund investment strategy may cause the risk tolerance to be lower in this case.

Risk governance that focuses on the entire enterprise will result in risk management that is much less likely to be at odds with the goals of the organization and more likely to enhance long-run value. Likewise, consideration of a full spectrum of risks, and not just the most obvious quantitative risks, will result in better risk governance.

The enterprise view of risk management is equally applicable and important to an individual, even if the term “enterprise” is not often used in an individual context.¹⁰ The appropriate set of risks for an individual must be viewed not in isolation, but in consideration of the goals and characteristics of the individual in a holistic view. For example, an adviser may be designing an investment portfolio to maximize a client’s wealth and optimize the risk–return trade-off at some perceived comfortable level of risk.¹¹ But the client, whose wealth consists not only of financial assets but also

¹⁰ Enterprise risk management is actually an easier concept for an individual; compared with an organization in which deciding, coordinating, and communicating goals can be a big challenge, the scope of risk management efforts for an individual is smaller and more manageable.

¹¹ Here, the individual is the governing body, setting individual goals and risk appetite; the financial professional or wealth manager is the “management team” executing much of the rest of the risk framework.

of valuable human capital,¹² might prefer that risk allocation decisions be made in view of both forms of capital, optimizing her total wealth. For example, a client with a career in real estate would most likely benefit if her financial portfolio is invested in a way that considers her earnings exposure to real estate related risks. Holdings of real estate securities above a certain level, even if optimal from an isolated portfolio perspective, might make this individual less than optimally diversified from a total wealth perspective. In another example, Investor X, who has substantial inflation-adjusted pension benefits, is different from Investor Y, who has a fixed pension benefit, and different still from Investor Z, who has no pension benefit and retires with solely his own investment portfolio. These three investors will require remarkably different investment solutions, not only to deal with inflation but also to deal with the uncertainty surrounding lifespans. Individuals with different goals and characteristics will need differing investment and risk solutions that are best suited to their individual situations. In fact, because of the extremely variable life cycle of an individual and the discrete nature of many individuals' goals, the enterprise view is even more important to risk management for individuals than it is for institutions.

Risk governance extends into management to include ways to ensure that the risk framework of an organization stays consistent with top-level guidance. One useful approach is to provide a regular forum to discuss the risk framework and key risk issues at the management level. In other words, a risk management committee would be a key element of good risk governance. Its activities could parallel the governance body's risk deliberations, but at an operational level as opposed to high-level oversight. In this forum, governance overlaps with many of the other aspects of the organization's risk framework as discussed in Section 2. In fact, if done well, it integrates all of them.

In the same vein, another element of good risk governance is the formal appointment of a responsible executive as chief risk officer (CRO). This officer should be responsible for building and implementing the risk framework for the enterprise and managing the many activities therein. In the same manner that risks are inextricably linked with the core business activities, the CRO is likewise a key participant in the strategic decisions of the enterprise—this position is not solely a policing role. Although the chief executive is responsible for risk as well as all other aspects of an enterprise, it makes no more sense for the CEO to perform the role of the CRO than it would be for the CEO to perform the role of the CFO. Many financial firms now have a CRO in executive management,¹³ which had become best practice even in the years prior to the 2008 crisis.

3.2 Risk Tolerance

Perhaps the most important element of good risk governance is the **risk tolerance** discussion and decision within the governing body. Business and investment strategy centers on selecting a portfolio of acceptable risk activities that will maximize value and produce the highest returns possible for the given risk level. At the governance level, the duty is generally not to select these activities—a job that usually falls to management—but to establish the organization's risk appetite. Certain risks or levels of risks may be deemed acceptable, other risks deemed unacceptable, and in the middle

¹² **Human capital** is a common term in economics and finance relating to the marketable skills of an individual and the corresponding present value of future earnings to be generated by said skilled individual. As with nearly any valuable asset, it is risky; for example, the present value of an architect's lifetime earnings stream is quite sensitive to equity market and real estate valuations as well as to interest rates. Risk considerations related to human capital will be important later in the curriculum.

¹³ Although this is common for financial firms or other large organizations, many less-complex companies will forgo a formal risk structure. The board still maintains its risk governance responsibilities; and it is up to them to work out with management as to how, and to what extent, to meet these responsibilities.

are risks that may be pursued in a risk-limited fashion. Said differently, risk tolerance identifies the extent to which the entity is willing to experience losses or opportunity costs and to fail in meeting its objectives.¹⁴

The enterprise risk management perspective is the right lens through which to view the risk appetite question. The risk tolerance decision begins with two different analyses that must be integrated—an “inside” view and an “outside” view. First, what shortfalls within an organization would cause it to fail, or at least fail to achieve some critical goals? Second, what uncertain forces is the organization exposed to? That is, what are its risk drivers? With the answers to these two difficult questions in hand, a board could begin defining dimensions and levels of risk that it finds too uncomfortable to take on. This risk tolerance should be formally chosen and communicated *before* a crisis, and will serve as the high-level guidance for management in its strategic selection of risks. Many organizations will do this *after* a crisis, which is better than not doing it at all but is much like buying insurance after the loss occurs. It is best to take care of it when there seems to be no particularly pressing reason to do so. Similarly, some individuals may not give much thought to their own risk tolerance until after a crisis occurs, when they belatedly decide that the risk was not worth taking.

For example, suppose a Spanish construction equipment manufacturing company’s board is determining its risk tolerance. From the inside perspective, it has two main concerns: revenue and liquidity. It determines that it can tolerate a 5%–10% drop in revenue, but that a 20% drop would trigger its debt covenants and put the launch of its new flagship product at risk. Related to this strategy, it needs €40 million of cash flow annually for the next three years for critical capital expenditures and can leave almost none of this cash flow at risk. From the outside perspective, it realizes that there are three main uncertainties or risk drivers over which it has no control: changes in the value of the US dollar, interest rate changes, and market returns on industrial sector equities. Both its business results and its own stock price are strongly correlated with these three risks and could be adversely affected by any of them.

Rather than taking a passive approach as a risk observer, the board in this example uses a top-level analysis to formulate its risk tolerance. In this case, it may decide to limit maximum cash flow variation to €10 million annually and revenue exposure to –10% in a global recession. In addition, it may specify other stated limits, such as the maximum exposure to currency or other risks. This guidance may affect the riskiness of other product strategies that management may pursue. The company may require more expensive financing options to reduce cash flow uncertainty. The governance restrictions may drive risk mitigation programs, such as a hedging strategy, especially for the primary risk drivers that are stated areas of concern.

Governance guidance is important in helping an enterprise target where it should actively pursue risk and where it should mitigate or modify risk. Strategic goals centered on core competencies should be pursued, which leads the company into taking risks that best position the enterprise for success and value creation. Companies sometimes take risks in areas where they have no expertise, which puts their core value creation and their entire organization at peril. A well-functioning risk program would limit or hedge those non-core risks in areas where they have no comparative advantage. Modifying risk is covered in detail in Section 5.

¹⁴ The risk tolerance decision for an individual is similar, but not identical, to that of a business enterprise. In traditional finance theory, the individual focuses on maximizing unobservable utility, whereas the business maximizes a generally observable value—the market value or equity price of the company. Although individuals are facing life and certain death on an uncertain timetable, most businesses tend to be relatively short-lived entities, but with an expectation of immortality. The decisions about risk tolerance from those two very different viewpoints can be expected to differ—for example, risk tolerance in organizations often treats its continued existence as a major consideration. In many ways, the individual’s risk tolerance decision is the harder one.

How does a company determine its risk tolerance? There is certainly no formula. Most importantly, a company's goals, its expertise in certain areas, and its strategies will help a board determine which risks the company may pursue and with how much intensity. The ability of a company to respond dynamically to adverse events may allow for a higher risk tolerance. The amount of loss a company can sustain without impairing its status as a going concern should factor into its risk tolerance; some companies are more fragile than others. The competitive landscape matters because both the board's and investors' expectations are usually developed in the context of how a company is positioned in its industry. The government and regulatory landscape is important too, both in their *ex ante* demands on how companies approach risk and in the likely *ex post* reaction in the event of disasters. Quantitative analyses such as scenario analysis, economic models, and sensitivities to macro risk drivers might be used to assess where a board's zone of comfort is bounded. There are other factors that should *not* determine risk tolerance, but in many cases they do. Personal motivations, beliefs, and agendas of board members (the agency problem); company size; whether the market environment seems stable; short-term pressures; and management compensation often affect risk tolerance in ways that might not be in line with the owners' best interests.

Once risk tolerance is determined, the overall risk framework should be geared toward measuring, managing, and communicating compliance with this risk tolerance—getting the risk exposure in line with the enterprise's risk appetite.

This sort of governance exercise not only helps ensure that the organization survives through the worst of times, but also helps ensure a strategic trade-off between risk and return in the decision process, which, in turn, improves potential returns for the given level of risk and value. It is quite easy to find business strategies and investment approaches that produce apparently outsized returns, but they might be at the cost of putting the organization at extreme risk. A somewhat extreme example would be a company selling put options on its own equity, which could produce higher short-term profits but would dramatically increase the chance of the company failing in a steep market decline. Excessive leverage is another risky strategy for boosting short-term profits that may actually decrease value or lead to failure in the long run. A formal risk governance process with a stated risk tolerance would naturally result in avoidance of many easier, less well-reasoned strategies that entail excessive risk compared with the firm's risk tolerance. Instead, it would lead the strategic discussion into alternative strategies that are more likely to actually add value while taking reasonable risk within the enterprise's risk tolerance and not simply trade ruin for return. Sincere, good risk governance and risk culture can avoid excessively risky strategies that might put the long-term enterprise value at risk. This approach should produce enhanced value for the enterprise.

3.3 Risk Budgeting

Risk budgeting picks up where risk tolerance leaves off. Whereas risk tolerance focuses on the appetite for risk and what is and is not acceptable, risk budgeting has a more specific focus on how that risk is taken. Risk budgeting quantifies and allocates the tolerable risk by specific metrics; it extends and guides implementation of the risk tolerance decision.

Risk budgeting applies to both business management and portfolio management. Its foundation is the perspective that business or portfolio management involves assembling a number of risk activities or securities, which can be collated into an assemblage of various risk characteristics. For example, a traditional view of a portfolio might be that it is allocated 20% to hedge funds, 30% to private equity, and the remaining 50% is split between stocks and bonds. An alternative risk view of the same portfolio might be 70% driven by global equity returns, 20% by domestic equity returns, with

the remaining 10% driven by interest rates. The equity component might be allocated 65% to value and 35% to growth. The portfolio might also have 45% illiquid securities and the remainder liquid. Other allocations can be stated in terms of exposures to inflation, long-term interest rates, currencies, and so on. These multiple dimensions for viewing the allocation of a portfolio are not mutually exclusive: they co-exist. If one is evaluating the risk exposure of a portfolio and trying to keep it in line with a stated risk tolerance, one would be far more concerned with the risk characteristics of the investment assets and portfolio rather than their common classifications of stocks, hedge funds, real estate, private equity, and so on. These terms tell us a little about risk but not enough. Equity is traditionally riskier than hedge funds, but some equities are of quite low risk and some hedge funds are of quite high risk. The risk view may be more meaningful and useful in understanding the portfolio risk than the traditional asset allocation view.

Risk budgeting is any means of allocating a portfolio based on some risk characteristics of the investments. In the purest sense, the term “budget” implies that there is a total risk limit for the organization. Although this approach is not formally required,¹⁵ it would certainly be good practice to have a risk budget that is consistent with the organization’s risk tolerance. A risk budget provides a means of implementing the risk tolerance at a strategic level, or in other words, a means of bridging from the high-level governance risk decision to the many management decisions, large and small, that result in the actual risk exposures.

A risk budget can be complex and multi-dimensional or it can be a simple, one-dimensional risk measure. Even the simplest measure can provide significant benefits in developing an effective risk culture. Four well-known single-dimension measures that are often used are standard deviation, beta, value at risk (VaR), and scenario loss, but there are many others. It is common for some hedge funds to budget risk using standard deviation, managing to a fixed-risk fund target, and evaluating individual investments based on their returns and risks as they affect the *ex ante* standard deviation.

More complex forms of risk budgeting use multiple dimensions of risk. One popular approach evaluates risks by their underlying risk classes, such as equity, fixed income, commodity risk, and so on, and then allocates investments by their risk class. Also common are risk factor approaches to risk budgeting, in which exposure to various factors is used to attempt to capture associated risk premiums. An example would be to budget an allocation to give greater emphasis to value stocks based on the belief that they may provide a higher risk-adjusted return than growth stocks. This tactic might be layered over a strategic budget with a certain “beta” as the overall equity risk, supplemented with value and additional factor tilts specified up to some level.

Risk budgeting, although a desirable element of risk governance, cuts across the entire risk management framework, providing a focal point for each of the facets of risk management described in Section 2. And although it is true that in practice many organizations operate without a risk budget, it is generally because there has been no specific declaration of their risk tolerance. If a board has a clear understanding of its risk appetite, both the board and management will want some means of implementing a strategic allocation that is consistent with it. Thus, the risk budget becomes a critical overarching construct for the organization’s risk framework.

Some individuals may, often through the assistance of a financial planner, engage in some form of risk budgeting, but many do not execute it well or carry it far enough. A classic example of this failure is the tendency of many individuals to invest their financial portfolios in their employers. The risk budget for their total wealth—financial

¹⁵ One could do risk budgeting even if there were no other risk governance guidance.

and human capital—is extremely concentrated in one firm and/or one industry. Not surprisingly, such risk budgets typically occur not through formal planning because most formal plans would recognize the problem, but through inaction or inattention.

One major benefit of even the most basic risk budgeting is that it forces risk trade-offs and supports a culture in which risk is considered as a part of all key decisions. Suppose that all the activities a business wants to pursue are in excess of the risk budget. The budgeting of risk should result in an approach, whether explicit or not, of choosing to invest where the return per unit of risk is the highest. Better still, it should also result in a market-benchmarked choice of risk intensity, between possibly doing less of each risky investment or doing more, but with a risk-mitigating hedge. This benefit is extremely important. By choosing between a market hedge or less of a risky investment, one ends up evaluating the investment directly against the market risk–return benchmark. Thus, one is not only comparing risk–return relationships among one’s investment choices, but also comparing active versus passive strategies; that is, evaluating investment choices as a whole against the “market return” on a risk-equivalent basis. In other words, one ends up attempting to add active value in each of one’s decisions while still staying within the confines of the organization’s risk tolerance. The result is even more powerful than merely ensuring that the business is compensated well for the risks they decide to accept. Just having a risk budget forces decision makers to try to add value to the enterprise in every risky decision they make. The risk-budgeting framework makes this consideration innate to the decision process.

EXAMPLE 2

Risk Governance

- 1 Which of the following approaches is *most* consistent with an enterprise view of risk governance?
 - A Separate strategic planning processes for each part of the enterprise
 - B Considering an organization’s risk tolerance when developing its asset allocation
 - C Trying to achieve the highest possible risk-adjusted return on a company’s pension fund’s assets
- 2 Which of the following statements about risk tolerance is *most* accurate?
 - A Risk tolerance is best discussed after a crisis, when awareness of risk is heightened.
 - B The risk tolerance discussion is about the actions management will take to minimize losses.
 - C The organization’s risk tolerance describes the extent to which the organization is willing to experience losses.
- 3 Which of the following is *not* consistent with a risk-budgeting approach to portfolio management?
 - A Limiting the beta of the portfolio to 0.75
 - B Allocating investments by their amount of underlying risk sources or factors
 - C Limiting the amount of money available to be spent on hedging strategies by each portfolio manager
- 4 Who would be the *least* appropriate for controlling the risk management function in a large organization?
 - A Chief risk officer

- B Chief financial officer
- C Risk management committee

Solution to 1:

B is correct. The enterprise view is characterized by a focus on the organization as a whole—its goals, value, and risk tolerance. It is not about strategies or risks at the individual business line level.

Solution to 2:

C is correct. Risk tolerance identifies the extent to which the organization is willing to experience losses or opportunity costs and fail in meeting its objectives. It is best discussed before a crisis and is primarily a risk governance or oversight issue at the board level, not a management or tactical one.

Solution to 3:

C is correct. Risk budgeting is any means of allocating a portfolio by some risk characteristics of the investments. This approach could be a strict limit on beta or some other risk measure or an approach that uses risk classes or factors to allocate investments. Risk budgeting does not require nor prohibit hedging, although hedging is available as an implementation tool to support risk budgeting and overall risk governance.

Solution to 4:

B is correct. A chief risk officer or a risk management committee is an individual or group that specializes in risk management. A chief financial officer may have considerable knowledge of risk management, may supervise a CRO, and would likely have some involvement in a risk management committee, but a CFO has broader responsibilities and cannot provide the specialization and attention to risk management that is necessary in a large organization.

4

IDENTIFICATION OF RISKS

Having laid the framework for understanding the concept of risk management and risk governance, we now move into the implementation of the process. One of the first important parts of the process is the identification of risks. In this reading, we identify two general categorizations of risks. The first is the set of risks that originate from the financial markets. Accordingly, we refer to this type of risk as **financial risks**. The second group of risks includes those that emanate from outside the financial markets. As such, we refer to these as **non-financial risks**. Although most risks ultimately have monetary consequences, we reserve the term “financial risks” to refer to the risks that arise from events occurring in the financial markets, such as changes in prices or interest rates.¹⁶ Non-financial risks arise from other sources, such as actions within an entity, or from external origins, such as the environment, the community, regulators, politicians, suppliers, and customers. In this reading, we will consider the types of financial and non-financial risks faced by organizations and individuals.

¹⁶ We use the term “financial markets” in a very broad sense. A company may also be exposed to commodity price risk, which we would include as a financial risk.

4.1 Financial Risks

The risk management industry has come to classify three types of risks as primarily financial in nature. The three primary types of financial risks are market risk, credit risk, and liquidity risk. **Market risk** is the risk that arises from movements in interest rates, stock prices, exchange rates, and commodity prices. This categorization is not to say that these four main factors are the underlying drivers of market risks. Market risks typically arise from certain fundamental economic conditions or events in the economy or industry or developments in specific companies. These are the underlying risk drivers, which we will cover later.

Market risks are among the most obvious and visible risks faced by most organizations and many individuals. The financial markets receive considerable attention in the media, and information on financial market activity is abundant. Institutional investors and many corporations devote considerable resources to processing this information with the objective of optimizing performance. Many individuals also devote considerable attention to market risk, and financial publications and television and radio shows are widely followed in the general population. The state of knowledge in risk management is probably greatest in the area of market risk.

The second primary financial risk is credit risk. **Credit risk** is the risk of loss if one party fails to pay an amount owed on an obligation, such as a bond, loan, or derivative, to another party. In a loan, only one party owes money to the other. In some types of derivatives, only one party owes money to the other, and in other types of derivatives, either party can owe the other. This type of risk is also sometimes called default risk and sometimes counterparty risk. As with market risk, the root source of the risk can arise from fundamental conditions in the economy, industry, or weakness in the market for a company's products. Ultimately, default is an asset-specific risk. Bond and derivatives investors must consider credit risk as one of their primary decision tools.¹⁷ Similar to market risk, credit risk is also a highly visible risk with considerable attention paid to defaults, bankruptcies, and the stresses arising from inadequate cash flow in relation to leverage. Credit risk is a particularly significant risk in that although market prices can go down and bounce back up, defaults and bankruptcies have extremely long-term implications for borrowers.

Although market and credit risk are extremely common risks to institutions, they are also assumed by individuals in their personal investments. One other financial risk, however, is much more common to institutions, although it can be faced by individuals, often unknowingly. This third risk is **liquidity risk**, which is the risk of a significant downward valuation adjustment when selling a financial asset. In order to sell an asset, a party may need to reduce the price to a level that is less than the marked value or the seller's assessment of the asset's true value based on the fundamentals of the asset. In certain market conditions, the seller must make a significant price concession. Having to make price concessions is not necessarily unusual and does not imply a poorly functioning market. Indeed, given no shift in demand, a rightward shift of a supply curve in order to sell a larger quantity is entirely consistent with the notion that a seller must lower the price to sell a greater quantity.

All assets have transaction costs in the market, such as the bid–ask spread. The existence of a sell price that is less than a buy price, however, is not a risk but simply a cost. It is the *uncertainty* of that valuation spread that creates this type of risk. Thus, liquidity risk could also be called “transaction cost risk.” The liquidity risk of a \$10 stock purchased for \$10 is not the risk that one would receive the “bid” price of only \$9.99 right after one bought it. That \$0.01 spread is a known cost when the stock is

¹⁷ With certain derivatives (swaps and forwards), either party could be forced to pay off to the other, so each party is concerned about whether its counterparty will pay off, meaning that for some products, credit risk is bilateral.

purchased, so it is not a risk. The risk is that this spread cost might increase dramatically as a result of either changing market conditions or attempting to maintain a position significantly larger than the normal trading volume for the stock. This problem becomes a serious issue for risk management when the liquidation price falls to less than the seller's estimate of the fundamental value of the asset. Although this risk is often associated with illiquid assets,¹⁸ it really stems from a couple of sources. First, market liquidity varies over time and the market for specific assets may become less liquid; second, as the size of a position increases, the cost and uncertainty associated with liquidating it will increase. In some extreme cases, there may be no price above zero at which the seller can sell the asset.

Of course one might argue that the cost of illiquidity, and liquidity risk, should thus be part of the investor's assessment of fundamental value, and indeed it is for many analysts. If not, liquidity risk can sometimes be confused with a form of valuation denial in which investors believe that they paid an appropriate price and that the market has not converged to its true value. But less liquidity means a thin market and a lack of investor interest, which may be fertile ground for investment opportunities. Although lack of liquidity can offer benefits, such as the opportunity to buy an asset well before everyone else sees that it is an attractive investment, liquidity risk is generally considered to be a negative factor with which risk managers and indeed all investors must contend.

4.2 Non-Financial Risks

Recall that we refer to financial risks as those arising primarily from changes in prices and rates in financial markets. Although most risks have monetary consequences, there are a number of risks that are typically classified as non-financial in nature. These risks arise from a variety of sources, such as the relationship between the entity and counterparties, regulators, governments, the environment, suppliers, customers, and employees.

One important risk of this type is closely related to default risk but deals more with the settling of payments that occur just before a default. This risk is called settlement risk. As an example, suppose Party A enters into a forward contract to purchase ¥200 million of Japanese government bonds from Party B. Now at expiration if all goes well, Party A would wire the money and Party B would transfer the bonds. Each party fulfills its obligation expecting that the other will do so as well. Now, suppose Party A wires the money but Party B does not send the bonds, and in fact, Party B declares bankruptcy. At this point, Party A cannot get the money back, except possibly much later through the potentially slow and cumbersome bankruptcy process.¹⁹ Although the financial consequences are very high, the root source of this risk is the timing of the payment process itself.

Entities face two types of risks related to the law, and as such, this risk is referred to as legal risk. One risk is simply the risk of being sued over a transaction or for that matter, anything an entity does or fails to do. In financial risk management, however, the major legal concern is that the terms of a contract will not be upheld by the legal system. For example, suppose Bank E enters into a derivatives contract with Party F.

¹⁸ The illiquid nature of an asset is not itself the risk because that is a direct cost borne immediately upon purchase. Still, uncertainty around the valuation of illiquid assets is a pervasive issue, so it is natural to associate liquidity risk with liquidity characteristics. More importantly, though, the term *liquidity risk* also commonly refers to a much broader set of risks for the entity, which are addressed in the next section.

¹⁹ This type of risk often arises because of significant time zone differences. Settlement risk is also called Herstatt risk; Herstatt was the name of a German bank that failed in 1974 after receiving "overnight" payments and then defaulting. More recently, in the case of Lehman Brothers in 2008, in addition to obvious and serious counterparty issues, there were settlement losses, especially related to overseas subsidiaries.

Assume that as the underlying changes in price, Party F incurs a loss, whereas there is a corresponding gain to Bank E. But suppose that Party F then identifies a legal issue that it interprets as giving it the right to refuse to pay. If the court upholds Party F's position, Bank E could incur a loss. Litigation always involves uncertainty because even a seemingly weak case can prevail in court.

The following three non-financial risks are related: regulatory risk, accounting risk, and tax risk. They could even be collectively referred to as compliance risk because they all deal with the matter of conforming to policies, laws, rules, and regulations as set forth by governments and authoritative bodies, such as accounting governing boards. Obviously the regulatory, accounting, and tax environment is always subject to change, but the rapid expansion of financial products and strategies in relation to the relatively slow manner in which government and private regulators are able to respond means that laws and regulations are nearly always catching up with the financial world. When these laws and regulations are updated, it can result in significant unexpected costs, back taxes, financial restatements, and penalties.

Another type of non-financial risk is model risk, which is the risk of a valuation error from improperly using a model. This risk arises when an organization uses the wrong model or uses the right model incorrectly. A simple example applicable to both a portfolio manager and a corporate analyst is the assumption of constant dividend growth in the dividend discount model when, in fact, growth is not constant.

Closely related to model risk is tail risk—more events in the tail of the distribution than would be expected by probability models. This risk is a facet of market risk, but it also infects valuations and models when it is ignored or mishandled. Tail risk is known to be especially severe for the normal distribution, which tends to be overused in modeling. As an example, consider the monthly returns on the S&P 500 Index from 1950 to 2013. The monthly average return was 0.7%, and the monthly standard deviation was 4.18%. If we rank the monthly returns, we would find that the largest negative return was -21.76% , which occurred in the well-known market crash of October 1987. With a normal distribution, we would find that a return that low would occur only once every 2,199,935 years.²⁰ The second and third worst monthly returns of -16.94% (October 2008) and -14.58% (August 1998) would occur only once every 6,916 and 654 years respectively. If the normal distribution is a realistic descriptor of returns, results of these magnitudes should *never* have occurred in recorded market history, and yet we have seen three such instances. Interestingly, according to the normal distribution, the largest positive return of 16.30% in October 1974 would occur only once every 888 years. Technically, one could argue that if we go another 2,199,935 years and do not observe a monthly return as low as -21.76% , then the assumption of a normal distribution might seem reasonable, but it seems safe to reject the normal distribution for at least another two million years. Similar comments can apply to the second and third worst returns albeit over shorter periods.

Many quantitative models (e.g., option models) and decision models (e.g., portfolio construction and asset allocation, relying on standard deviation in analysis and decisions) ignore the existence of fat tails in returns; as a result, market risk is often considered and dealt with in an oversimplified fashion.²¹ Tail risk, as the term is used in practice, is important and is discussed separately because financial professionals realize the implicit failure of modeling market risk. More plainly, ignoring tail risk is

²⁰ This calculation and those that follow are based on determining the probability of the given return or less.

²¹ A related model risk normally lumped in with tail risk is that of unstable parameters or changing regimes because these are pathologies that can produce returns that appear fat-tailed. A simple, recent, and realistic example is changing correlations. Suppose that everybody believes that the equity–commodity correlation is 0.1 and uses models for portfolio construction and diversification based on that relationship. If the true correlation suddenly changes to 0.9, such as during a financial crisis, then all the model prescriptions become not just useless but harmful. Portfolio diversification turns out far less than expected, risk is higher than expected, and the “optimal” allocation to commodities turns out to be very wrong.

a form of model risk. And although tail risk might seem more of a financial risk than a non-financial risk, the mistake occurs internally, arising from poor choices made in modeling.

Most of the internal risks faced by an organization are often grouped together and referred to as operational risk. **Operational risk** is the risk that arises from the people and processes that combine to produce the output of an organization. Although the factors that give rise to such risks can arise externally, the risks themselves are largely internal to an organization because it would be expected to have its people and processes functioning effectively regardless of pressures placed on it by external forces. For example, a hacker breaking into a company's computer system and stealing credit cards is an external force. Hacking, however, is not simply a random act of mischief. Companies are aware of the threat of hackers, and hackers can break in to a system only if that system is vulnerable. An organization is responsible for establishing sufficiently tight computer security to deter hackers from breaking in and stealing or doing mischief. In addition to the threats posed by hackers and viruses, even secure computers themselves are a particular source of risk. Programming errors and bugs can create the possibility of costly mistakes.

Employees themselves are major sources of potential internal risks. Banks are keenly aware of the vulnerability to employee theft, given the ease with which so many employees have access to accounts and systems for making entries. But even perfectly honest employees make mistakes and some can be quite costly. The employee who credits someone's account \$100,000 for a \$100 deposit may have made an honest mistake, but it is a mistake that could quickly lead to the rapid disappearance of money. In the past, employees up to senior management have been guilty of perpetrating accounting fraud, not necessarily for their own direct benefit but to make the company look better.

In banks and other companies that trade in the financial markets, there is the risk that a trader or portfolio manager will fail to follow laws, rules, or guidelines and put the company at great financial risk. This individual is commonly described as a "rogue trader." Personified by Nick Leeson of Barings Bank, who in 1995 destroyed the 200-year old company by engaging in a series of highly speculative trades to cover up losses, the rogue trader has become a standard concern of risk managers. Although it was never clear if Leeson's trades were truly unauthorized, his legacy left the fear that institutions bear the risk that one trader can imperil the entire organization by making large and highly speculative trades that put the bank's entire capital base at risk.²² In essence, a rogue trader is a trader who engages in risky transactions without regard for the organization's limits or conforming to its controls.

Companies are also threatened by business interruptions, such as the weather. Not only can weather temporarily shut down a company, but it can do serious long-term damage. Although weather is an external force that is completely out of the control of an organization, it does not excuse the organization from having the appropriate internal procedures for managing weather-related problems. Simple and fairly low-cost actions, such as having generators, sleeping quarters, and food available, can go a long way toward keeping employees around and working when roads are closed and electricity is off. Airlines are particularly experienced in quickly adjusting their schedules to the weather. Yet, some companies have not heeded inclement weather forecasts. Failing to react to the warnings of hurricanes and dangerous snowstorms can result in considerable loss.

²² Although Leeson may have been the origin of the term "rogue trader," he has certainly not been the largest rogue trader. For example, the trading of Bruno Iksil, a credit default swaps trader in the London office of JPMorgan Chase, resulted in a \$2 billion loss for one of Wall Street's most stable financial institutions. Unlike Barings, however, JPMorgan Chase survived the financial loss but suffered great embarrassment and was fined almost a billion dollars by regulators.

Terrorism is another form of operational risks that poses a threat to organizations and individuals. The 1993 attacks on the World Trade Center led many companies to recognize that the New York City financial district was a major terrorist target and that, as such, their operations could be shut down by these acts of violence. When the more destructive attacks of 11 September 2001 occurred, many companies had already established backup operations sufficiently far away from that area. Of course, such risk is not confined to major financial centers, and indeed, organizations worldwide have begun to take security measures that address this operational risk.

Some of these operational risks are insurable, at least to a modest extent. We will briefly discuss insurance later, but most companies would much prefer to take proactive steps toward prevention than to incur the inconvenience of losses and then have an outside entity compensate them for their losses.

Solvency risk is the risk that the entity does not survive or succeed because it runs out of cash, even though it might otherwise be solvent.²³ This was probably the most underappreciated component of risk prior to the financial crisis of 2008.²⁴ The collapse of Lehman Brothers was often associated with an excess of leverage, which was certainly a key factor in its failure. But it was solvency risk that forced the company into bankruptcy. Almost overnight, Lehman's liquidity disappeared because most funding sources would no longer willingly bear Lehman's counterparty risk. Even if it had experienced large market gains on the day it went under, it had already been destroyed by solvency risk. Across the entire financial industry, from hedge funds to pension funds, painful but valuable lessons were learned about the critical importance of funds availability and solvency risk, even if all other risks were well-aligned. Solvency risk is now viewed as one of the key factors in running a successful hedge fund because investors are extremely sensitive to not recovering their investment in the event of a "run on the fund."

Solvency, in the personal or institutional sense, is the availability of funding to continue to operate without liquidating—or at a less extreme level, to be able to make good on liabilities and meet one's cash flow requirements. Solvency risk is the ultimate example of the importance of taking an enterprise view of risk management. For example, a university's investment officer might have a perfectly well-balanced set of risks in the endowment portfolio when viewed in isolation. But as a part of a university, the portfolio may be affected by a deep recession because the university's professional degree revenue, grant money, and donations will fall at the same time as the portfolio's investment value and cash distributions are in decline. Although the endowment and university may survive, it might be necessary for the endowment to take many emergency actions that impair its value, simply attributable to the overall solvency risk and the ultimate need of the enterprise to not run out of cash.

Solvency risk is easily mitigated though never eliminated by a large number of possible safeguards, none of which is free. Many businesses produce short-term higher returns by essentially ignoring solvency risk, but in doing so, they are not managing risk very well. Since the 2008 crisis, most businesses are keenly aware of the consequences of bad solvency management, and have taken such steps as using less leverage, securing more stable sources of financing, investing in models to provide more transparency on solvency risk, incorporating solvency risk at an enterprise level in risk governance, and holding more cash equivalents and assets with less liquidity risk.

²³ Solvency risk is often referred to as liquidity risk by industry professionals, even though the expression *liquidity risk* was used earlier to refer to the risk of valuation shock when selling a security. Although the term "liquidity risk" is used in practice in both contexts, in this reading we will refer to the risk relating to the cash position of an entity as "solvency risk."

²⁴ Bank runs are perhaps the simplest example of solvency risk. An otherwise solvent bank can easily be ruined by a bank run that wipes out its ability to make good on short-term liabilities. Bank runs are not uncommon occurrences in history, so solvency risk certainly long predates the 2008 crisis.

Individuals can also face a number of risks of an operational nature. These include hackers breaking into one's computer and the threat of burglary and robbery. One of the most commonly cited risks for individuals is identity theft. For individuals, however, we consider their primary non-financial risks to be related to their life and health as well as other life-changing events.

Obviously the health of an individual is an extremely important risk. Poor health can result from poor choices in life, but it can also arise from factors that are outside the control of the individual. These risks can result in direct health care expenses, reduced income because of disability, and reduced lifespan or quality of life. People vary widely in the risk management strategies they undertake to control their health, such as in their choices in diet, exercise, preventive health care, and avoidance of undue health risks. Some individuals address only their financial exposure to health risks, and still others do not take proactive steps to address this risk at all.

Closely related to health risk is mortality risk—the risk of dying relatively young—and longevity risk—the risk of outliving one's financial resources. Not only are these risks a primary determinant of the quality of life, they are also critical factors in investment planning. Although it is probably desirable not to know when one will die, financial planning for one's years in retirement is heavily dependent on one's mortality assumption. Insurance companies, defined benefit pension plans, and vendors of retirement annuities need only know the group average mortality. Mortality tables are reasonably accurate, so these institutions have relatively precise estimates of death rates for groups as a whole. Individuals themselves, however, clearly do not know how long they will live. People who use defined contribution plans must therefore build portfolios and control retirement distributions so that their assets outlive them, which is difficult to do when they do not know when they will die. No one wants to outlive their money, but with an increasingly aging population and good health care, this problem is becoming a greater concern.

There are a number of other major non-financial risks that individuals face, which are generally involved with some sort of life-changing disaster. The largest ones—fire, natural disaster, or massive liability stemming from harming others, such as in a car accident—are generally considered “property and casualty” risks and are insured as such.

Individuals also face another non-financial risk that, although not common, does seem to be growing. This risk is the possibility that the individual will be cheated by a financial adviser. Whether an adviser simply charges too much for their services, steals a small amount of money, or engages in a massive Ponzi scheme, individuals may face a high risk of loss from their advisers. Although the overwhelming majority of financial advisers are honest, the amount of money at stake has proven to be a significant temptation for an unscrupulous few.

4.3 Interactions between Risks

In some cases, a risk classified into one category could easily have been classified into another. Indeed, the interactions between risks are numerous. It has been said that market risk begets credit risk, which begets operational risk. That is, given unexpected market moves, one party then owes the other party money. Given the debtor–creditor nature of the relationship, the two parties must have internal operations that process the transactions and pay or collect the money. Thus, whenever there is credit risk, there is settlement risk. If there were no market risk, the other risks in the chain would likely be relatively minor. Legal risk often arises from market or credit risk. Large market moves create losses for one party. There is a long history of parties searching for loopholes in contracts and suing to avoid incurring the loss.

One simple example of an adverse risk interaction is counterparty risk. When trading a derivative contract, it is important to consider the cost of counterparty risk. Suppose Party A buys an out-of-the-money put option with a strike price of ¥1000—a contract theoretically worth ¥100 entitling him to as much as ¥1000 from Counterparty C if an underlying equity index is down. But there is a 2% chance that C could default; and assume that the possibility of default is considered independent of the performance of the equity market. This transaction, with payoffs adjusted for the possibility of default, might price at, say, ¥98 to A. But in reality, the credit risk of C's default is likely dependent on the equity market return. If the probability distribution of default risk overlaps substantially with that of the market being down, which is a likely scenario, then the risks interact and the cost of risk is higher. In this example, perhaps the probability of C defaulting is 10% or more when the put option is in the money. So A's expected payoff is lower as a result of facing a credit risk that is compounded by market risk. In fact, it is quite likely that in the extreme event—a deep decline in the equity market when A would presumably receive ¥1000—Party A will in all likelihood get nothing. Thus, the investor bears much more risk than initially thought as a result of the failure to consider the interaction of the two risks. And in doing so, Party A overpaid for the contract. This sort of risk interaction is so common in markets that practitioners have given it a very fitting term—“wrong-way risk.” In fact, it was extremely common in the financial crisis of 2008, when holders of many securities based on mortgage credit believed that the risks were well-diversified when in truth, the risks were quite systematic.

Another example of interacting risks was experienced by many banks, funds, and private investment partnerships in 2008, as well as the hedge fund Long-Term Capital Management in 1998. Leverage, which manifested itself in higher market risk, interacted in an extremely toxic manner with liquidity risk and solvency risk and impaired or shuttered many investment firms.²⁵

In most adverse financial risk interactions, the whole is much worse than the sum of its parts; the combined risk compounds the individual risks in a non-linear manner. For this example, a 2× levered entity might produce a 2% loss when its unlevered twin or baseline risk bears a 1% loss. If liquidity is a serious issue for the entity, then at a 10% baseline loss, the entity might face some moderate distress from liquidity or funding problems that it ends up losing 25% instead of 20%. It would not be surprising if this entity failed at a 30% baseline loss because of the toxic interplay between levered risk and liquidity problems. This resulting non-linear reaction to risk drivers exists across many risk interactions in many markets, making up-front scenario planning even more valuable to the risk process, a point we will return to later.

Earlier, we briefly described a common example of interacting risks for individuals. Suppose an individual works for a publicly traded company and, through an incentive program, receives shares of the company in her company retirement portfolio or for her personal holdings. Company policies may require that employees hold on to these shares for a number of years. When that time has elapsed, however, many individuals fail to recognize the incredibly concentrated risk they are assuming, so they hold on to their shares. An employee's reasoning for not selling the shares is often that the company she works for has been a solid performing company for many years, so she feels no reason to worry. Moreover, the team spirit often imbued in employees generates pride that can make employees believe that there is no better place in which to work and to invest their money. But if something goes wrong in the company or the industry, the employee may lose her job *and* her savings—an incredibly adverse

²⁵ This example illustrates yet another risk, systemic risk, that is a significant concern to regulators and governments. Stresses and failures in one sector transmit to stresses and failures in other sectors, which can ultimately impact an entire economy. Systemic risk is the ultimate example of interactions among risks.

interaction between market risk and human capital risk. In 2003, Enron was a sad example, with many loyal and honest employees losing virtually all of their retirement savings by failing to recognize this risk.

In sum, it is important to recognize that risks do not usually arise independently, but generally interact with one another, a problem that is even more critical in stressed market conditions. The resulting combined risk is practically always non-linear in that the total risk faced is worse than the sum of the risks of the separate components. Most risk models and systems do not directly account for risk interactions, which makes the consequences of the risk interaction even worse. Governance bodies, company management, and financial analysts should be keenly aware of the potential risk and damage of risks in combination, and be aware of the dangers of treating risks as separate and unrelated.

EXAMPLE 3

Financial and Non-Financial Sources of Risk

- 1 Which of the following is *not* a financial risk?
 - A Credit risk
 - B Market risk
 - C Operational risk
- 2 Which of the following *best* describes an example of interactions among risks?
 - A A stock in Russia declines at the same time as a stock in Japan declines.
 - B Political events cause a decline in economic conditions and an increase in credit spreads.
 - C A market decline makes a derivative counterparty less creditworthy while causing it to owe more money on that derivative contract.
- 3 Which of the following *best* describes a financial risk?
 - A The risk of an increase in interest rates.
 - B The risk that regulations will make a transaction illegal.
 - C The risk of an individual trading without limits or controls.
- 4 Which of the following is *not* an example of model risk?
 - A Assuming the tails of a returns distribution are thin when they are, in fact, fat.
 - B Using standard deviation to measure risk when the returns distribution is asymmetric.
 - C Using the one-year risk-free rate to discount the face value of a one-year government bond.
- 5 Which of the following is the risk that arises when it becomes difficult to sell a security in a highly stressed market?
 - A Liquidity risk
 - B Systemic risk
 - C Wrong-way risk
- 6 The risks that individuals face based on mortality create which of the following problems?
 - A The risk of loss of income to their families.

- B** Covariance risk associated with their human capital and their investment portfolios.
- C** The interacting effects of solvency risk and the risk of being taken advantage of by an unscrupulous financial adviser.

Solution to 1:

C is correct. Operational risk is the only risk listed that is considered non-financial, even though it may have financial consequences. Credit and market risks derive from the possibility of default and market movements, respectively, and along with liquidity risk, are considered financial risks.

Solution to 2:

C is correct. Although most risks are likely to be interconnected in some way, in some cases the risks an entity is exposed to will *interact* in such a way that a loss (or gain) in one exposure will lead directly to a loss in a different exposure as well, such as with many counterparty contracts. Conditions in A and B are much more directly linked in that market participants fully expect what follows—for example, in B, an outbreak of war in one region of the world could well cause widespread uncertainty; a flight to quality, such as to government-backed securities; and a widening in spreads for credit-risky securities. In C, in contrast, the reduction in creditworthiness following the market decline may be expected, but owing more money on an already existing contract as a result comes from the interaction of risks.

Solution to 3:

A is correct because this risk arises from the financial markets.

Solution to 4:

C is correct. The risk-free rate is generally the appropriate rate to use in discounting government bonds. Although government bonds are generally default free, their returns are certainly risky. Assuming a returns distribution has thin tails when it does not and assuming symmetry in an asymmetric distribution are both forms of model risk.

Solution to 5:

A is correct. Securities vary highly in how liquid they are. Those with low liquidity are those for which either the number of agents willing to invest or the amount of capital these agents are willing to invest is limited. When markets are stressed, these limited number of investors or small amount of capital dry up, leading to the inability to sell the security at any price the seller feels is reasonable. Systemic risk is the risk of failure of the entire financial system and a much broader risk than liquidity risk. Wrong-way risk is the extent to which one's exposure to a counterparty is positively related to the counterparty's credit risk.

Solution to 6:

A is correct. The uncertainty about death creates two risks: mortality risk and longevity risk. The mortality risk (risk of dying relatively young) is manifested by a termination of the income stream generated by the person. In contrast, longevity risk is the risk of outliving one's financial resources.

5

MEASURING AND MODIFYING RISKS

The core element of risk management is the measurement and modification of risk. One cannot modify risk without measuring it. The primary purpose of measuring risk is to determine whether the risk being taken, or being considered, is consistent with the pre-defined risk tolerance. To understand how risk is measured, it is important to understand the basic elements that drive risk.

5.1 Drivers

This section illustrates the origins of risk. Risk is a part of life itself. None of us knows from one day to the next everything that will happen to us in the next 24 hours, let alone over a longer period. We may get a phone call that a relative is extremely sick, or we may be contacted by a head-hunter about an attractive job possibility. We may learn that we are going to be given an award from a prestigious organization, or we may find that our identity has been stolen. All of us can almost surely name something that happened the previous day that was not anticipated. Most of these happenings are minor and often quickly forgotten. Others are serious. Some are good. Some are bad. Some are unpredictable outcomes of known events, such as whether we get an offer following a job interview or whether a medical test reveals that we are healthy or ill. Some events are completely unanticipated, such as getting a phone call from an old friend we have not talked to in many years or having a flat tire on the drive home. Fortunately, the vast majority of risks in life are minor. The ones that are not minor, however, have the potential to be highly unpredictable and financially, and sometimes physically and emotionally, quite costly.

In a conceptual sense, financial risks are no different from the other risks we face in life. All risks arise from the fact that the future is unknown. Financial risks largely emanate from economic risks, and economic risks emanate from the uncertainties of life.

Financial markets generate prices that fluctuate as investors absorb information about the global and domestic state of the economy, the company's industry, and the idiosyncratic characteristics of the company itself. Global and domestic macroeconomies are driven by the companies that operate within them, but much of the tone as well as the ground rules are set by governments and quasi-governmental agencies, such as central banks. Taxes, regulations, laws, and monetary and fiscal policy establish a legal and economic environment and a set of ground rules that greatly affect the degree and quality of economic activity that takes place. Attempts by governments and central banks of different countries to coordinate economic policies can lead to some degrees of success if harmonized, but if not, they can create an environment in which companies engage in practices designed to seek favorable treatment in some countries and avoid unfavorable treatment in others.²⁶

All economies, in turn, are composed of industries. Government policies also affect industries, in some cases encouraging economic activity in some industries while discouraging it in others. Some industries are stable, weathering macroeconomic storms quite well, whereas others are highly cyclical.

²⁶ This practice is sometimes called regulatory arbitrage. The policies of certain countries can be more conducive to establishing operations. Examples are the flow of money into countries whose banking laws are less restrictive and more conducive to secrecy and incorporation in or moving a company to a country with lighter regulations or more favorable tax treatment.

The uncertainties of global and domestic macroeconomic and central bank policies create risks for economies and industries that we often treat as systematic. Seemingly minor events, such as filling the position of central bank chairperson, are often viewed by investors as major events, signaling possibly a change in policy that can greatly affect the macroeconomy and possibly certain industries.

Moving down to a more fundamental level, investors face the unsystematic or idiosyncratic risks of individual companies. Modern investment analysis prescribes that diversified portfolios bear no unsystematic risk. We are then led to believe that unsystematic risk does not matter in a well-diversified portfolio. But unsystematic risk does matter to the management of a company. It also matters to poorly diversified investors. And it certainly matters to the financial analysts who cover specific companies. And what would appear to be unsystematic risk can oftentimes actually be systematic. For example, poor credit risk management by a major bank can turn into a global financial crisis if that bank is “too big to fail.”

In sum, the basic drivers of risk arise from global and domestic macroeconomies, industries, and individual companies. Risk management can control some of this risk, but it cannot control all of it. For example, the risk manager of a company may be able to reduce the likelihood that his company will default, but he cannot control movements in interest rates. For the latter risk, he must accept that interest rate volatility is a given and that he can only position the company to be able to ensure that its risk exposure is aligned with its objective and risk tolerance. In order to do so, he must first be able to measure the risk.

5.2 Metrics

The notion of metrics in the context of risk refers to the quantitative measures of risk exposure. The most basic metric associated with risk is probability. Probability is a measure of the relative frequency with which one would expect an outcome, series of outcomes, or range of outcomes to occur. One can speak about the probability of rolling a six in one roll of a die as $1/6$, the chance of rain in the next 24 hours as 20%, or the odds of a central bank taking actions to increase interest rates of 50%. These are all probabilities, differing in concept by the fact that the die roll is associated with an objective probability measure, whereas the other two examples are subjective probabilities. It is important to note that probability, in and of itself, is not a sufficient metric of risk. A chance of financial loss of 25% does not tell us everything we need to know. There are other measures of risk that incorporate probability but give us more information.

The standard deviation is a measure of the dispersion in a probability distribution. Although there is a formal mathematical definition of standard deviation, at this point we need only understand the conceptual definition. Standard deviation measures a range over which a certain percentage of the outcomes would be expected to occur. For example, in a normal distribution, about 68% of the time the outcomes will lie within plus or minus one standard deviation of the expected value. Two standard deviations in both directions would cover about 95% of the outcomes, whereas three would encompass 99% of the outcomes. Although standard deviation, or volatility, is widely used in the financial world, it does have significant limitations. In particular, standard deviation may not be an appropriate measure of risk for non-normal distributions. Standard deviation may not exist for return distributions with fat tails.

Moreover, according to modern portfolio theory, the risk captured by an asset's standard deviation overstates the risk of that asset's returns in the context of a diversified portfolio. Investors can easily diversify their holdings, thereby eliminating a portion of the risk in their portfolios by diversifying away the security-specific risk. As a result, most financial valuation theories assert that the ability of investors to eliminate security-specific risk, or non-systematic risk, means that investors should

not expect to earn a premium to compensate them for the assumption of this risk. As a consequence, the risk of a security may be better measured by its **beta**, a measure of the sensitivity of a security's returns to the returns on the market portfolio. Beta measures relative risk, meaning how much market risk an asset contributes to a well-diversified portfolio.²⁷

Beta describes risk well for a portfolio of equities, but other sources of risk may require other descriptive risk metrics. The risk associated with derivatives is one example of this. Although derivatives are widely used to manage risk, they do so by assuming other risks. Even if the derivative is being used to establish a hedge of an existing exposure to risk, it would still result in the assumption of additional risk because the assumed risk is being used to offset an existing risk. For example, if one purchases a call option denominated in euros to buy Russian rubles, one would be assuming the risk of the ruble/euro exchange rate. Because most derivatives exposures are highly leveraged, it is critical that the risk of derivatives be properly measured. There are several specialized measures of derivatives risk.

The sensitivity of the derivative price to a small change in the value of the underlying asset is called the **delta**. It is perhaps the most important measure of derivatives risk. Yet delta is limited to capturing only small changes in the value of the underlying. Large changes are captured by the concept of **gamma**. Whereas delta is a first-order risk, gamma is considered a second-order risk because it reflects the risk of changes in delta.²⁸ Some derivatives, such as options, are also sensitive to changes in the volatility of the underlying. This risk is captured by a concept called **vega**, which is a first-order measure of the change in the derivative price for a change in the volatility of the underlying. Derivatives are also sensitive to changes in interest rates, which are reflected in a measure called **rho**. Most options have relatively low sensitivity to interest rates.²⁹ These, and other mathematically derived derivatives metrics, are collectively referred to as "the Greeks."

Other asset classes may have their own special metrics to describe risk. One well-known example, **duration**, is a measure of the interest rate sensitivity of a fixed-income instrument. Analogous to delta, it is a first-order risk. The wide variety of financial instrument types and asset classes leads to a proliferation of terminology and risk measures, with most of them having no meaning outside their asset class. As financial organizations and asset risk modeling became more sophisticated and computer power increased, an approach was needed to measure and describe financial risk across the broad spectrum of asset classes. Spurred by the onset of global bank capital regulation, this led to the development of value at risk.

Value at risk or **VaR** is a measure of the size of the tail of the distribution of profits on a portfolio or for an entity. A VaR measure contains three elements: an amount stated in units of currency, a time period, and a probability. For example, assume a

²⁷ Earlier we discussed the fact that unsystematic risk matters to some parties. Here we seem to be saying that it should not matter to anyone. Capital market models almost always assume that investors can diversify quite easily and, as a result, they should not expect to earn a premium for bearing diversifiable risk. This assumption does not mean that everyone's wealth is well-diversified. Investors who do not diversify probably cannot expect to earn a return for bearing diversifiable risk, but it does not mean that these investors should not care about measuring the risk they choose to assume by not diversifying.

²⁸ The notion of a first-order risk versus a second-order risk can be seen by considering the following. Suppose A affects B and B, in turn, affects C. A does not affect C directly but does so only indirectly. A is a first-order risk for B and a second-order risk for C. In the case of options, small market movements affect an option price through the option's delta. As long as the movements are small, the delta is relatively stable. If the movements are large, the delta itself will move, creating gamma risk that arises as a result of the non-linear valuation function of the option. Of course, it is natural to wonder what it means to say that a movement passes from the notion of "small" to the notion of "large." Unfortunately, the passage from small to large does not cross an identifiable border.

²⁹ Options on interest rates, however, have a high sensitivity to interest rates, but only because interest rates are the underlying, and thus, the source of market risk.

London bank determines that its VaR is £3 million at 5% for one day. This statement means that the bank expects to lose a minimum of £3 million in one day 5% of the time. A critical, and often overlooked word, is *minimum*. In this example, the bank expects that its losses will be at least £3 million in one day with 5% probability. In a VaR measure, there is no ultimate maximum that one can state. VaR is thus a minimum extreme loss metric. With a probability of 5% and a measurement period of one day, we can interpret the bank's VaR as expecting a minimum loss of £3 million once every 20 business days. VaR can also be used to measure credit losses, although the construction of the measure is considerably more difficult given the extreme asymmetry of the risk.

VaR is a simple but controversial measure. There are several ways to estimate VaR, each of which has its own advantages and disadvantages. The different measures can lead to highly diverse estimates. Moreover, VaR is subject to the same model risk as derivative pricing models. VaR is based on a particular assumption about the probability distribution of returns or profits. If that assumption is incorrect, the VaR estimate will be incorrect. VaR also requires certain inputs. If those inputs are incorrect, the VaR estimate will be incorrect. Many critics of VaR have argued that naive users of VaR can be lulled into a false sense of security. A presumably tolerable VaR can give the illusion that the risk is under control, when in fact, it is not. Yet, VaR is accepted as a risk measure by most banking regulators and is approved for disclosure purposes in typical accounting standards. As with any risk measure, one should supplement it with other measures.

As emphasized earlier, VaR does not tell the maximum loss. The maximum loss is the entire equity of an organization or the entire value of a portfolio, but the statistics used to estimate VaR can be used to gauge average extreme losses. Conditional VaR or **CVaR** is a common tail loss measure, defined as the weighted average of all loss outcomes in the statistical distribution that exceed the VaR loss. Another tail risk metric in the credit risk space that is analogous to CVaR is expected loss given default, which answers the question for a debt security, "If the underlying company or asset defaults, how much do we lose on average?"

VaR focuses on the left tail of the distribution and purports to tell us the expected frequency of extreme negative returns, but it can understate the actual risk. For example, the normal distribution gives us a well-defined measure of extreme negative returns, which are balanced by extreme positive returns. Yet, actual historical return distributions have shown that there are more extreme negative returns than would be expected under the normal distribution. We previously described this concern in the form of tail risk. In response to this concern, statisticians have developed a branch of study that focuses primarily on extreme outcomes, which is called **extreme value theory**, and leads to measures of the statistical characteristics of outcomes that occur in the tails of the distribution. There are mathematical rules that define the statistical properties of such large outcomes, and these rules have been widely used for years in the insurance business. In the past 20 years or so, risk managers have taken to using them to help gauge the likelihood of outcomes that exceed those that would normally be expected.

Two measures in particular that are often used to complement VaR are **scenario analysis** and **stress testing**. These are common sense approaches that ask "If this happens, then how are we affected?" Scenario analysis can be thought of as a package of stress tests, usually with some common underlying theme. A scenario defines a set of conditions or market movements that could occur and would put some pressure on a portfolio. An example might be a sharp increase in interest rates coupled with a significant decline in the value of a currency. The portfolio is then evaluated to determine its expected loss under these scenarios. A different means of posing a scenario analysis is stress testing, which is done by proposing specific asset price moves generally involving extremely large and high pressure scenarios that would occur only

rarely but would have the potential for destabilizing the entire organization. The US Federal Reserve and other central banks have begun requiring major banks to stress test their portfolios. Although scenario analysis and stress testing can provide some information, they are, as noted previously for other measures, subject to model risk.

Of course, the measures just mentioned focus primarily on market risk. Credit risk, which is covered in more detail in readings on fixed-income analysis, has long relied heavily on the credit ratings provided by private companies, such as Moody's Analytics, Standard & Poor's, and Fitch Ratings. In effect, a large part of credit analysis for many lenders has been outsourced since the early part of the 20th century. Most lenders, however, do not rely exclusively on these rating companies. They do their own analysis, which focuses on the creditor's liquidity, profitability, and leverage. Liquidity measures, such as the current ratio, may indicate how well a borrower can cover short-term obligations. Solvency ratios, such as cash flow coverage or interest coverage, may reveal whether a borrower generates enough cash or earnings to make its promised interest payments. Profitability measures, such as return on assets, estimate whether a company is sufficiently profitable so that it can easily accommodate debt. Leverage measures, such as the ratio of debt to total assets, reflect whether a company has sufficient equity capital in relation to its debt to absorb losses and negative cash flows without defaulting. Credit analysis also examines the strength and cyclicity of the macroeconomy and the company's industry. Other widely used measures of credit risk include credit VaR, probability of default, expected loss given default, and the probability of a credit rating change.

One of the problems of credit risk measurement is that credit events, such as a ratings downgrade or a default, are relatively rare for a particular entity. Certainly in the aggregate there are many credit losses, but very few companies that default have a history of defaulting.³⁰ Without a history to go by, estimating the likelihood of an event that has never actually occurred is extremely difficult. Imagine the challenge of assigning a default probability to Lehman Brothers in 2007. It had been in operation since 1850 and had never defaulted. Yet in 2008, Lehman Brothers, one of the most successful financial companies of all time, filed for bankruptcy. Because of the infrequency of default, risk managers normally attempt to assess default probability by aggregating companies with similar characteristics.³¹

Another useful source of information for risk managers about these rare events is the *ex ante* risk cost that is implied by the market pricing of derivatives. A credit default swap (CDS) on an issuing company has an observable price that acts as a signal to a bondholder of the risk cost of a default.³² Put options, exotic options, insurance contracts, and other financial instruments may contain valuable signals of the cost of rare adverse events, or at least the price of hedging them.

Operational risk is one of the most difficult risks to measure. Consider the operational risk event reported in 2014 in which hackers broke into Home Depot's credit card data base. Assessing the likelihood of such an event and estimating the potential losses would be almost impossible. The threat of litigation alone for years afterward

³⁰ Hostess, Frontier Airlines, and Aloha Airlines have all filed for bankruptcy twice, and all are still operating today. Filing for bankruptcy, of course, does not necessarily imply default. Liberal bankruptcy laws in the United States have made bankruptcy filings more or less one of many common corporate strategies. Nonetheless, very few companies have defaulted or filed for bankruptcy more than once. Even two observations of bankruptcy for one firm is a very unreliable sample.

³¹ In some sense, aggregating companies with similar characteristics is what credit ratings do. Companies rated BAA/Baa+ can be quite diverse but all are considered similar with respect to their ability to pay their debts.

³² A credit default swap is a derivative contract between a credit protection buyer and a credit protection seller in which the buyer makes a series of payments to the seller in exchange for a promise of compensation for losses resulting from a pre-defined credit event, such as a default. If a bond issuer is perceived by market participants to be in a weakening credit position (at higher risk of default), its yield spread will widen. This risk is reflected quickly in the liquid CDS market.

is difficult to quantify. As with credit risk, significant operational risk events are rare but usually quite costly if they do occur. Hence, attempts to quantify the risk usually involve a third party aggregating operational risk events across numerous companies and publishing the statistics.

As mentioned, there are numerous other risks that would likewise be difficult to measure. For example, there is always the possibility of changes in accounting rules, laws, tax rates, and regulatory requirements that can result in significant costs as companies adapt their policies and actions from one regulatory environment to a new one. How would one measure such risks? Moreover, the time period spanned by these risks is extremely long, and in fact, theoretically infinite. Changes in these rules and laws are often motivated by politics. How does one quantify such risks when there are no real numeric measures? Analysis invariably reverts to subjective evaluation of the likelihood of such threats and their potential losses.

As we have described, many risks are measurable, at least on an *ex post* basis. Market-related risks are blessed with large quantities of data, so they are relatively measurable. Credit, operational, and other risks are somewhat rare events. Although it is probably a good thing that such events are indeed rare, their infrequency makes measurement more difficult. Nonetheless, virtually any risk manager will attempt to obtain at least a subjective sense of the expected frequency, likelihood, and cost of these events. With either objective or subjective measurements in mind, risk managers can then proceed to modify these risks accordingly.

5.3 Methods of Risk Modification

The notion of risk modification presumes that an analysis has been conducted in the risk governance stage that defines how much risk is acceptable. Coupled with measurements of the actual risk, as discussed in the previous section, the risk manager then proceeds to align the actual risk with the acceptable risk.

It is important to understand, however, that risk modification is not strictly risk reduction. For example, a portfolio with the strategic objective of maintaining a 50/50 split between equity and cash will naturally find that in a market in which cash outperforms equity, the split between equity and cash will tilt toward cash. Thus, the portfolio becomes less risky. Beyond a certain point, the risk of the portfolio is unacceptably low given the return target. Thus, risk modification would take the form of rebalancing by increasing the risk. For the most part, however, risk management focuses more on reducing the risk. Risk reduction is commonly referred to as hedging. A hedge is a transaction put in place to reduce risk. Some hedges are designed to lead to the ultimate in risk reduction—the complete elimination of risk. Others are simply designed to lower the risk to an acceptable level.³³ For some companies, risk management is primarily concerned with keeping the organization solvent. Regardless of the focus, much of what is done to manage risk is the same. In this section, we will examine four broad categories of risk modification: risk prevention and avoidance, risk acceptance, risk transfer, and risk shifting.

5.3.1 Risk Prevention and Avoidance

One method of managing risk is taking steps to avoid it altogether, but avoiding risk may not be as simple as it appears. It is difficult to completely avoid risk, but more importantly, it is unclear that every risk should be completely avoided. Consider, for example, the threat of a terrorist getting on a plane with a weapon. It might well be

³³ For example, in the case of the portfolio with a strategic target of 50/50 equity and cash, if equity outperforms cash, the portfolio will tilt toward equity. At some point, a risk-reducing strategy would then be in order. This type of hedge would reduce the risk but not eliminate it.

possible to completely eliminate this risk. We could subject ourselves to extensive background checks, provide fingerprint and DNA samples, and permit complete searches of our bodies and baggage at airports. Clearly, there is a very high cost to eliminating this risk in terms of money, time, and freedom. Instead we choose a trade-off between cost and benefits. The actual trade-off may be subject to debate because risk assessment and risk management are subject to variation from one person to another.

We could nearly eliminate the risk of being injured or killed in an airplane crash if we choose to never fly.³⁴ Like any risk-avoidance strategy, however, there would more than likely be a trade-off in terms of the loss of the benefits provided by the activity. We could try to protect our children from all harm, but that may come at the expense of preparing them poorly for adult life. We could invest our entire retirement savings in cash, but would most likely give up protection against inflation and lose out on the opportunity to benefit from long-term economic growth and the performance of investable assets that benefit from that growth.

Insurance companies rely heavily on the techniques of risk prevention and avoidance. An automobile insurance company would prefer that their policyholders never drive their cars. Although it cannot prohibit them from doing so, it can reward them with lower premiums if they drive less and have safe driving records. A life insurance company would prefer that their policyholders do not smoke, and it can reward non-smokers with lower rates.

Nearly every risk we take has an upside, at least as perceived by the person taking the risk. Some counterexamples might seem to belie this point, but not if viewed from the point of view of the risk taker. One could argue that there are no benefits from smoking, but people who smoke may have the opinion that the pleasure they receive exceeds the costs. Casino gambling incurs the risk of significant financial loss and addiction, but it is risk that is acceptable to the consumers who incur it relative to the perceived benefits they receive. The risks of extreme sports, such as skydiving, would seem to be exceeded by the benefits obtained by participants, and yet participants engage in them with apparently much enjoyment. People undertake all types of risky behaviors because they obtain commensurate benefits. These examples are simply cases in which the decision maker chooses to bear a certain degree of risk. They are conceptually the same as an investor who chooses to accept a relatively high degree of risk. Likewise, those who live their lives engaging in very few risky activities are conceptually the same as the investor who keeps only a modest exposure to risky assets.

In organizations, the decision to avoid risk is generally made at the governance level as a part of setting the risk tolerance. Boards will often decide that there are some business or investment activities simply not worth pursuing based on either the goals of the organization or the perceived risk–return trade-off. These are strategic decisions. Boards may exclude some areas or activities to allow management to focus on choosing risks in other areas where they presumably have a better chance of adding value.

We recap this section by noting that risk prevention and avoidance is simply an element of the decision of how much risk to accept, given the trade-off between the risk of loss and the benefit of gain. This could be a direct benefit or an indirect benefit of avoiding or eliminating a risk. Most decisions in life involve a trade-off between benefits and costs, neither of which is necessarily easy to measure. Thus, risk management is an ongoing process of fine-tuning exposure to achieve the level of risk that is desired in relation to the benefits.

In the event that the risk measurement process shows that the risk exceeds the acceptable level, there are three approaches to managing the risk: self-insuring, risk transfer, and risk shifting.

³⁴ Of course, it would still be possible to be hit by an airplane when it comes down, but that risk is extremely small.

5.3.2 Risk Acceptance: Self-Insurance and Diversification

In many cases, from both a risk tolerance and a strategic standpoint, it makes sense to keep a risk exposure—but to do so in the most efficient manner possible. Self-insurance is the notion of bearing a risk that is considered undesirable but too costly to eliminate by external means. In some cases, self-insuring means simply to bear the risk. In other cases, it may involve the establishment of a reserve to cover losses. Choosing to not have health insurance can be an optimal choice for some young, healthy adults without responsibility for children. Setting aside some money to cover potential health costs completes the picture of an individual who completely self-insures. Similarly, a young healthy individual who does not buy life insurance but engages in a systematic, well-conceived savings and investment plan is engaging in self-insurance.

One must be careful with this approach, however, because there is a fine line between self-insurance and denial. To the extent that self-insurance results in risks that are completely in line with the enterprise's risk tolerance, it would be an example of good governance. But if there is a risk that is outside the enterprise's risk tolerance, and management decides to bear that risk anyway, saying it is self-insuring, management is basically ignoring that risk, disregarding and violating its risk tolerance, and practicing bad risk governance. For example, an investment management firm, via its risk tolerance decision, may decide that it cannot bear any investment loss exceeding €1 billion and may apply a variety of risk management tools to limit its market and credit risk accordingly. But suppose that the firm makes no move to limit or insure its risks from fraud or a rogue trader on the grounds that it is "self-insuring" this risk, which could result in a loss as high as €3 billion. By leaving itself open to a loss that far exceeds its stated risk tolerance, management is violating the firm's risk governance.

From the perspective of a business organization, self-insurance is obtained by setting aside sufficient capital to cover losses. The banking industry is a classic example of self-insurance. Although in many countries government insurance may protect depositors, banks self-insure to some extent by maintaining capital and loan loss reserves.

Another form of accepting risk, but doing so in the most efficient manner possible, is diversification. Technically, it is a risk-mitigation technique. But diversification and "the efficient frontier" are so central to modern portfolio analysis that capturing the full benefits of diversification seems the obvious thing for all organizations to pursue—a starting point at which other risk modification could be appended. Although diversification is one form of risk management, it is usually not effective if used in isolation.

In the next two subsections, we discuss how undesired risk can be modified or eliminated by selling the risk to another party. We make two subtle classifications of these methods: risk transfer and risk shifting.

5.3.3 Risk Transfer

Risk transfer is the process of passing on a risk to another party, often, but not always, in the form of an insurance policy. Insurance is a legal contract in which one party, the insurer, agrees to cover some percentage of a loss incurred by another party, the insured, from a specific event in return for the payment of a premium by the insured. Insurance as a method of risk modification has been in existence for very long time, and in fact, is even mentioned in the Code of Hammurabi almost 4,000 years ago. Insurance has been widely used in the commercial shipping and farming industries going back hundreds of years. Insurance is almost as old as commerce itself.³⁵

³⁵ It is worth noting that the insurance industry has for a long time referred to itself using the term "risk management." A department of risk management in a large organization is often the group that manages the organization's insurance policies. But since around 1990 or so, the term "risk management" has increasingly come to refer to far more than insurance.

From the point of view of the insurer, insurance almost always works on the basis of diversification or pooling of risks. An insurer attempts to sell many policies with risks that have low correlations. The insurer assesses the pooled risks and charges a premium that covers the expected aggregate losses and the insurer's operating costs as well as leaves a profit. Insurers need accurate statistics on aggregate risks, but these are often not difficult to obtain. These actuarial data are widely available on accidents, illnesses, property and casualty damage, and death. In principle, a well-diversified insurer does not care if a single insured party has significantly larger-than-average claims as long as there is no reason to believe that the claims are correlated. There will be other parties that have smaller-than-average claims.

Insurers do have to manage their risks carefully. Some risks can be correlated. In the US Gulf Coast region, property insurance, which includes coverage for loss by hurricanes, is typically more expensive than property insurance in other regions. Even with a higher premium, an insurer has to avoid providing too much property coverage in an area where a systemic event, such as a hurricane, can occur in order to diversify its risk exposure.

Although insurers carefully assess their risk and charge premiums that they believe accurately reflect expected losses, they nonetheless remain responsible for potentially large claims. Insurers also manage their risk by avoiding writing too many policies with similar and potentially correlated risks and by selling some of the risk to another insurer, a practice known as reinsurance. A company that primarily insures property in the US Midwest, which is highly subject to tornado risk, might be willing to accept some Gulf Coast hurricane risk for a reasonable premium. Insurers often write provisions into contracts to exclude coverage of special cases. For example, a war might nullify insurance coverage in an area. Most insurance policies also contain provisions to guard against moral hazards, such as suicide or destroying one's own property. In the last 20 years or so, some insurance companies have issued bonds that permit them to legally avoid paying principal and/or interest if insurance claims exceed a certain amount. These instruments, known as catastrophe bonds, essentially pass some of the insurance risk on to the investors who buy the bonds.

Most insurance policies do not cover *all* of the risk that is insured. It is common for policies to contain a provision known as a deductible. A deductible is a monetary amount of the loss that will be covered by the insured before any claims are paid. Thus, both the insured and the insurer bear some of the risk, although the insurer usually bears the greater amount. Deductibles serve several purposes. Because insurers incur fixed costs for each claim, deductibles reduce the number of small claims. Deductibles also encourage good risk management by the insured parties. Finally, deductibles offer the insured the opportunity to combine risk transfer with self-insurance and thereby achieve a potentially better trade-off of risk and reward.

As noted, the concept of insurance relies on the diversification or pooling of risks. In a few cases, however, the risks are not easy to pool. For example, suppose a volatile but extremely successful actor is signed to star in a movie. The production company knows that it runs the risk that the actor will engage in behavior that damages the ability of the company to finish the movie. The number of volatile and extremely successful actors for whom policies could be written at the same time is somewhat limited. Thus, an insurer would have to bear that risk without the benefit of diversification.

For example, suppose a television network plans to cover the Olympics but is concerned about a possible cancellation or boycott. It might want an insurance policy to cover it against loss. Specialized coverage is possible through such companies as Lloyd's of London. The approximately 350-year old Lloyd's is famous for covering unusual risks. It does so by organizing groups of investors who are willing to bear a risk for a premium. These groups, called syndicates, are subject to the full extent of losses. In many cases, investors in these syndicates have been required to pay substantial

amounts of money to cover losses.³⁶ These examples illustrate how syndicates work. Although there is only one Olympics to insure, there may also be only one actor to insure. Because the two risks are uncorrelated, a company could write policies on both risks and would achieve some diversification. Moreover, there are other unusual risks that can be covered such that the aggregate pool would represent a highly diverse set of risks that have low correlations.³⁷

A very slight variation of insurance is a surety bond. With a surety bond, an insurer promises to pay an insured a certain amount of money if a third party fails to fulfill its obligation. For example, if a party engages the services of another party, the first party is covered if the party obligated to provide the service fails to perform to a satisfactory degree. Surety bonds are widely used in commercial activity when one party bears the risk of the potentially high cost of non-performance by another party. A slight variation of a surety bond is a fidelity bond, which is often used to cover against losses that result from employee dishonesty. Bonds of this type work very similarly to insurance and rely on the pooling of uncorrelated risks.³⁸ Other similar arrangements include indemnity clauses and hold harmless arrangements, such as when two parties sign a contract and one party agrees to hold the other harmless and/or indemnify the other in the event of loss.

The use of insurance by so many as a risk management tool suggests that the cost of risk exceeds the actuarial cost to many individuals and enterprises. *Ex ante* consideration of the cost of a risk in terms of the entity's value or utility ties risk mitigation back to the risk tolerance decision and the most fundamental governance decisions on which value-added strategies to pursue. As an alternative to *ignoring* the cost of risk, the impact on enterprise value should be quite positive.

5.3.4 Risk Shifting

Whereas risk transfer refers to actions taken that pass the risk on to other parties, **risk shifting** refers to actions that change the distribution of risk outcomes. Risk transfer is often associated with insurance, whereas risk shifting generally involves derivatives as the risk modification vehicle. Although insurance is a form of risk management based on the pooling or diversification of risks, risk shifting diverts some portion of the risk distribution to another market participant who either bears the risk or intermediates that risk by moving it to yet another party. The organization may want to adjust its probability distribution of returns, essentially adjusting the payoff diagram of its risk exposures. An example is a company that is willing to make slightly less profit than it otherwise would if the stock market is up to prevent it from losing too much money if the stock market is down, for example, more than 20% next year. It is adjusting its potential economic outcomes by shifting the probability distribution of its profits conditional on market performance. Risk shifting represents the bulk of hedging and is the most common form of risk modification for financial organizations.

The principal device through which risk shifting is performed is a derivative. We briefly mentioned derivatives earlier in this reading. By definition, a derivative is a financial instrument that derives its price from the price of an underlying asset or rate. Because the price of the underlying and the price of the derivative are so closely related, derivatives can provide essentially the same exposure as the underlying but

³⁶ NBC insured the 1980 Summer Olympics in Moscow through Lloyd's of London to the extent that if a US boycott occurred, Lloyd's would pay NBC for losses that it incurred by prepaying the Soviet Union for broadcasting rights. The United States did boycott the Olympics and NBC collected on its policy.

³⁷ There are insurance policies to cover singers' voices, athletes' bodies, and even such bizarre possibilities as alien abductions and risks from paranormal activity.

³⁸ In the context of surety and fidelity bonds, the word "bond" does not mean a debt obligation issued by one party, the borrower, and bought by another, the lender. In this context, the word refers to assuring one party that it bears no risk for the actions of a specific other party.

can do so at lower cost and capital requirements. As such, derivatives permit the efficient shifting of risk across the probability distribution and from one party to another. One can hold the underlying and take an offsetting position in the derivative or vice versa. Whereas insurance can be designed to perform similarly, insurance functions primarily through the pooling of diverse risks. With derivatives, risks are shifted across probability distributions or payoffs and across parties, to leave specific outcomes of the conditional probability distribution with the parties most willing to bear the risk.

There are several types of derivatives, and the manner in which they provide risk shifting varies by type. Derivatives are classified into two categories: forward commitments or contingent claims. Forward commitments are agreements that obligate two parties to undertake a transaction at a future date at a price or rate agreed on when the commitment is made. Forward commitments include such instruments as forward contracts, futures contracts, and swaps. Forward commitments can be used to lock in a future interest rate for a borrower or lender, the purchase or sale price of an asset, or an exchange rate for a currency. Parties who engage in forward commitments do not pay any money at the initiation of the contract. In lieu of any up-front payment from one party to the other, the two parties agree on the terms of the transaction that will be consummated at the end of the contract. Depending on movements in the price or rate of the underlying, one party will ultimately gain from the transaction while the other will lose or, in the less likely case, both parties could breakeven. For example, a corporate treasurer can use a forward contract to lock in the rate at which a foreign cash flow will be converted into the company's domestic currency. Regardless of movements in the exchange rate during the life of the contract, the foreign cash flow will convert to the domestic currency at a rate that is locked in when the contract is initiated. On the opposite side of the transaction, the party can be a speculator who simply bears the risk or it can be a dealer who intermediates the risk between the hedger and the speculator. We will discuss dealers in more detail in a few paragraphs.

The other type of derivative is a contingent claim, which is commonly known as an option. An option is a contract between two parties that gives one party the right to buy or sell an underlying asset or to pay or receive a known underlying rate. An option takes the form of either a call option, which provides the right to buy the underlying or to pay a known rate, or a put option, which provides the right to sell the underlying or to receive a known rate.

With a forward commitment, both parties are mutually obligated to each other. Because an option grants the right, but not the obligation, to one party, that party has an advantage over the other. Consequently, that party, the buyer of the option, must pay cash, called the premium, to the seller of the option at the start of the contract. Once the premium is paid, the option buyer has no further obligation. He can either exercise the option or he can let the option expire unexercised. In the latter case, the option buyer incurs a loss equal to the premium. If the option is a call and it is exercised, the buyer pays the fixed price or rate and receives the underlying. If the option is a put and it is exercised, the buyer receives the fixed price or rate and delivers the underlying.³⁹ If the buyer of the option does exercise it, he may achieve a gain that exceeds the premium paid but the gain could also be less than the premium paid, thereby resulting in a net overall loss. An option buyer could be using the option to speculate on an upward move in the underlying if a call or downward move if a put. Alternatively, the option buyer could be hedging. In the example used earlier for forward commitments, the corporate treasurer anticipating an inflow of cash in a foreign currency could buy a put option to sell that currency, thereby converting it into his

³⁹ Instead of one party delivering the underlying, some options call for settlement in cash of an equivalent amount. Some forward commitments also settle in cash.

domestic cash flow at a known fixed rate. The option gives the treasurer the flexibility to not exercise it if the underlying currency rises in value. This flexibility comes at the cost of having to pay a premium at the start of the transaction, thus shifting the financial outcome across the entire probability distribution of that uncertain currency rate. In contrast, with the forward contract, the treasurer does not have to pay cash at the start but is obligated to convert at the agreed-upon rate.

Derivatives can be created in public forums, such as on derivatives exchanges, or privately between two parties. On derivatives exchanges, there are a large number of individual and institutional traders that make markets in derivatives. For private derivatives transactions, there is an extensive market of large bank and non-bank dealers willing to buy and sell derivatives. In both types of markets, these dealers assume the risk being transferred from parties who originate the transactions. These dealers almost always restructure and transfer some portion if not all of the risk by finding other parties that are willing to take on that risk. Ultimately, the risk is assumed by some party willing to accept the risk, producing an economically efficient outcome for all parties.⁴⁰

5.3.5 How to Choose Which Method for Modifying Risk

Choosing which risk mitigation method to use—risk prevention and avoidance, self-insuring, risk transfer, or risk shifting—is a critical part of the risk management process. Fortunately, the methods are not mutually exclusive, and many organizations use all methods to some extent. No single method provides a clear-cut advantage over the others. As with all decisions, the trade-off is one of costs versus benefits that are weighed in light of the risk tolerance of the organization or individual.

For example, many companies that have extensive foreign operations and are, therefore, highly exposed to exchange rate risk, hedge that risk using derivatives. Some companies prefer forwards, some prefer swaps, some prefer options, and some use multiple instruments. Some companies attempt to hedge currency risk by setting up operations in foreign countries rather than manufacturing domestically and shipping the goods to foreign countries.⁴¹ Some companies manage their currency risk by attempting to balance currency assets and liabilities. Some airlines hedge the risk of oil price changes and others do not. Some airlines that do hedge this risk do so to a far greater degree than others. Additionally, some prefer the certainty of forwards and swaps, whereas others prefer the flexibility of options, even with the up-front cost that options require. Most insurance companies rely on their actuarial knowledge but supplement it with proactive measures, such as selling risk to other parties.

To the extent possible, most organizations should avoid risks that provide few benefits and potentially extreme costs. Reasonable, low-cost precautions against risks with few benefits should always be taken. Thus, risk prevention and avoidance is probably the first choice of measures, especially for risks that lie outside the core competencies of the organization and have little reasonable expectation of adding value.

⁴⁰ There is a potential exception to this statement. If the corporate treasurer wanting to lay off the foreign currency risk could be matched with a counterparty with the exact opposite risk, the ultimate risk could be extinguished. For example, suppose the treasurer of a South Korean company anticipates the inflow of £150 million in exactly three months and expects on that day to convert that money into Korean won. If there were another party who anticipated on that same day that it would take a certain amount of Korean won and convert it to £150 million, the two parties could offset their risk by trading with each other, a process called novation. Of course, finding parties with the exact opposite needs is difficult. Dealers typically parcel out risk, sometimes in pieces to various parties. Also, through sophisticated modeling, dealers and speculators can offset the risk with similar but not precisely balanced positions.

⁴¹ Here is yet another example of the interactions of risks. A decision to manufacture products in a foreign country involves trade-offs between exchange rate risk, political risk, and a variety of other risks germane to that country's economy, not to mention a potentially different degree of operational risk, in the pursuit of higher profits.

Nonetheless, avoidance may not be the best value for its cost. Moreover, avoiding risk may mean avoiding opportunity. Thus, an organization often cannot simply decide not to take a risk, at least not for all undesirable risks.

Organizations that have large amounts of free cash flow may choose to self-insure some risks, but few organizations have so much cash that they can afford to self-insure all risks. Some risks can potentially imperil the entire capital base. Most companies would, however, prefer to self-insure to the extent possible because self-insurance reduces the costs associated with external monitoring and gives the organization the greatest flexibility. Self-insurance and avoidance should generally be clearly addressed at the governance level and be consistent with stated risk tolerance.

Risk transfer, or the use of insurance, is a widely used risk management tactic, but it may not be suitable for many types of risks. Some risks simply are not insurable, at least not in a cost-effective way. Insurance works best when risks can be pooled, and that is not the case for many types of risks, particularly those that can affect a large number of parties at the same time. The use of risk shifting tools, such as derivatives, may not be available for all types of risks, thus limiting their use in risk mitigation. For financial risks that exceed risk appetite, risk shifting is a very common choice.

The various risk management methods are not equal in terms of the risk reduction and the risk profile that remains. For example, contingent claims, such as insurance, provide the flexibility in the form of offering opportunity to profit in one direction and have a loss reduced in the other, but they require payment of cash up front. In contrast, forward commitments lock in an outcome. In other words, they provide little flexibility, but they require no cash payment up front. The risk profile that exists when a contingent claim hedge is put in place differs significantly from the risk profile that exists when a forward commitment hedge is placed. This process requires significant understanding and discussion at all levels of the organization.

To recap, risk takers should identify risks that offer few rewards in light of potential costs and avoid those risks when possible. They should self-insure where it makes sense and diversify to the extent possible. They should consider insurance when risks can be pooled effectively if the cost of the insurance is less than the expected benefit. If derivatives are used, they must consider the trade-off of locking in outcomes with forward commitments versus the flexibility relative to cash cost of contingent claims, which can tailor the desired outcomes or payoffs by shifting the risk. Ultimately, the decision is always one of balancing costs against benefits while producing a risk profile that is consistent with the risk management objectives of the organization.

EXAMPLE 4

Measuring and Modifying Risk

- 1 From the perspective of an organization, which of the following *best* describes risk drivers?
 - A The probabilities of adverse events
 - B The statistical methods that measure risk
 - C Factors that influence macroeconomies and industries
- 2 Which of the following concepts directly measures the risk of derivatives?
 - A Probability
 - B Delta and gamma
 - C Beta and standard deviation
- 3 The *best* definition of value at risk is:
 - A the expected loss if a counterparty defaults.

- B** the maximum loss an organization would expect to incur over a holding period.
 - C** the minimum loss expected over a holding period a certain percentage of the time.
- 4 Which of the following are methods commonly used to supplement VaR to measure the risk of extreme events?
- A** Standard deviation
 - B** Loss given default
 - C** Scenario analysis and stress testing
- 5 Which of the following is a true statement about insurable risks?
- A** Insurable risks are less costly.
 - B** Insurable risks have smaller loss limits.
 - C** Insurable risks are typically diversifiable by the insurer.

Solution to 1:

C is correct. Risks (and risk drivers) arise from fundamental factors in macro-economies and industries.

Solution to 2:

B is correct. Delta and gamma are measures of the movement in an option price, given a movement in the underlying. The other answers can reflect some elements of derivatives risk, but they are not direct measures of the risk.

Solution to 3:

C is correct. VaR measures a minimum loss expected over a holding period a certain percentage of the time. It is not an expected loss nor does it reflect the maximum possible loss, which is the entire equity of the organization.

Solution to 4:

C is correct. Scenario analysis and stress testing both examine the performance of a portfolio subject to extreme events. The other two answers are metrics used in portfolio analysis but are not typically associated with extreme events.

Solution to 5:

C is correct. Insurance works by pooling risks. It is not necessarily less costly than derivatives nor does it have lower loss limits.

SUMMARY

Success in business and investing requires the skillful selection and management of risks. A well-developed risk management process ties together an entity's goals, strategic competencies, and tools to create value to help it both thrive and survive. Good risk management results in better decision making and a keener assessment of the many important trade-offs in business and investing, helping managers maximize value.

- Risk and risk management are critical to good business and investing. Risk management is *not* only about avoiding risk.

- Taking risk is an active choice by boards and management, investment managers, and individuals. Risks must be understood and carefully chosen and managed.
- Risk exposure is the extent to which an entity's value may be affected through sensitivity to underlying risks.
- Risk management is a process that defines risk tolerance and measures, monitors, and modifies risks to be in line with that tolerance.
- A risk management framework is the infrastructure, processes, and analytics needed to support effective risk management; it includes risk governance, risk identification and measurement, risk infrastructure, risk policies and processes, risk mitigation and management, communication, and strategic risk analysis and integration.
- Risk governance is the top-level foundation for risk management, including risk oversight and setting risk tolerance for the organization.
- Risk identification and measurement is the quantitative and qualitative assessment of all potential sources of risk and the organization's risk exposures.
- Risk infrastructure comprises the resources and systems required to track and assess the organization's risk profile.
- Risk policies and processes are management's complement to risk governance at the operating level.
- Risk mitigation and management is the active monitoring and adjusting of risk exposures, integrating all the other factors of the risk management framework.
- Communication includes risk reporting and active feedback loops so that the risk process improves decision making.
- Strategic risk analysis and integration involves using these risk tools to rigorously sort out the factors that are and are not adding value as well as incorporating this analysis into the management decision process, with the intent of improving outcomes.
- Employing a risk management committee, along with a chief risk officer (CRO), are hallmarks of a strong risk governance framework.
- Governance and the entire risk process should take an enterprise risk management perspective to ensure that the value of the entire enterprise is maximized.
- Risk tolerance, a key element of good risk governance, delineates which risks are acceptable, which are unacceptable, and how much risk the overall organization can be exposed to.
- Risk budgeting is any means of allocating investments or assets by their risk characteristics.
- Financial risks are those that arise from activity in the financial markets.
- Non-financial risks arise from actions within an entity or from external origins, such as the environment, the community, regulators, politicians, suppliers, and customers.
- Financial risks consist of market risk, credit risk, and liquidity risk.
- Market risk arises from movements in stock prices, interest rates, exchange rates, and commodity prices.
- Credit risk is the risk that a counterparty will not pay an amount owed.
- Liquidity risk is the risk that, as a result of degradation in market conditions or the lack of market participants, one will be unable to sell an asset without lowering the price to less than the fundamental value.

- Non-financial risks consist of a variety of risks, including settlement risk, operational risk, legal risk, regulatory risk, accounting risk, tax risk, model risk, tail risk, and sovereign or political risk.
- Operational risk is the risk that arises from within the operations of an organization and includes both human and system or process errors.
- Solvency risk is the risk that the entity does not survive or succeed because it runs out of cash to meet its financial obligations.
- Individuals face many of the same organizational risks outlined here but also face health risk, mortality or longevity risk, and property and casualty risk.
- Risks are not necessarily independent because many risks arise as a result of other risks; risk interactions can be extremely non-linear and harmful.
- Risk drivers are the fundamental global and domestic macroeconomic and industry factors that create risk.
- Common measures of risk include standard deviation or volatility; asset-specific measures, such as beta or duration; derivative measures, such as delta, gamma, vega, and rho; and tail measures such as value at risk, CVaR and expected loss given default.
- Risk can be modified by prevention and avoidance, risk transfer (insurance), or risk shifting (derivatives).
- Risk can be mitigated internally through self-insurance or diversification.
- The primary determinants of which method is best for modifying risk are the benefits weighed against the costs, with consideration for the overall final risk profile and adherence to risk governance objectives.

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

- 1 Risk management in the case of individuals is *best* described as concerned with:
 - A hedging risk exposures.
 - B maximizing utility while bearing a tolerable level of risk.
 - C maximizing utility while avoiding exposure to undesirable risks.
- 2 Which of the following may be controlled by an investor?
 - A Risk
 - B Raw returns
 - C Risk-adjusted returns
- 3 The process of risk management includes:
 - A minimizing risk.
 - B maximizing returns.
 - C defining and measuring risks being taken.
- 4 Risk governance:
 - A aligns risk management activities with the goals of the overall enterprise.
 - B defines the qualitative assessment and evaluation of potential sources of risk in an organization.
 - C delegates responsibility for risk management to all levels of the organization's hierarchy.
- 5 The factors a risk management framework should address include all of the following *except*:
 - A communications.
 - B policies and processes.
 - C names of responsible individuals.
- 6 Which of the following is the correct sequence of events for risk governance and management that focuses on the entire enterprise? Establishing:
 - A risk tolerance, then risk budgeting, and then risk exposures.
 - B risk exposures, then risk tolerance, and then risk budgeting.
 - C risk budgeting, then risk exposures, and then risk tolerance.
- 7 Which of the following *best* describes activities that are supported by a risk management infrastructure?
 - A Risk tolerance, budgeting, and reporting
 - B Risk tolerance, measurement, and monitoring
 - C Risk identification, measurement, and monitoring
- 8 Effective risk governance in an enterprise provides guidance on all of the following *except*:
 - A unacceptable risks.
 - B worst losses that may be tolerated.
 - C specific methods to mitigate risk for each subsidiary in the enterprise.
- 9 A firm's risk management committee would be expected to do all of the following *except*:
 - A approving the governing body's proposed risk policies.

- B deliberating the governing body's risk policies at the operational level.
 - C providing top decision-makers with a forum for considering risk management issues.
- 10 Once an enterprise's risk tolerance is determined, the role of risk management is to:
- A analyze risk drivers.
 - B align risk exposures with risk appetite.
 - C identify the extent to which the enterprise is willing to fail in meeting its objectives.
- 11 Which factor should *most* affect a company's ability to tolerate risk?
- A A stable market environment
 - B The beliefs of the individual board members
 - C The ability to dynamically respond to adverse events
- 12 Risk budgeting includes all of the following *except*:
- A determining the target return.
 - B quantifying tolerable risk by specific metrics.
 - C allocating a portfolio by some risk characteristics of the investments.
- 13 A benefit of risk budgeting is that it:
- A considers risk tradeoffs.
 - B establishes a firm's risk tolerance.
 - C reduces uncertainty facing the firm.
- 14 Which of the following risks is *best* described as a financial risk?
- A Credit
 - B Solvency
 - C Operational
- 15 Liquidity risk is *most* associated with:
- A the probability of default.
 - B a widening bid–ask spread.
 - C a poorly functioning market.
- 16 An example of a non-financial risk is:
- A market risk.
 - B liquidity risk.
 - C settlement risk.
- 17 If a company has a one-day 5% Value at Risk of \$1 million, this means:
- A 5% of the time the firm is expected to lose at least \$1 million in one day.
 - B 95% of the time the firm is expected to lose at least \$1 million in one day.
 - C 5% of the time the firm is expected to lose no more than \$1 million in one day.
- 18 An entity choosing to accept a risk exposure may:
- A buy insurance.
 - B enter into a derivative contract.
 - C establish a reserve fund to cover losses.
- 19 The choice of risk-modification method is based on:
- A minimizing risk at the lowest cost.

- B** maximizing returns at the lowest cost.
- C** weighing costs versus benefits in light of the entity's risk tolerance.

SOLUTIONS

- 1 B is correct. For individuals, risk management concerns maximizing utility while taking risk consistent with individual's level of risk tolerance.
- 2 A is correct. Many decision makers focus on return, which is not something that is easily controlled, as opposed to risk, or exposure to risk, which may actually be managed or controlled.
- 3 C is correct. Risks need to be defined and measured so as to be consistent with the entity's chosen level of risk tolerance and target for returns or other outcomes.
- 4 A is correct. Risk governance is the top-down process that defines risk tolerance, provides risk oversight and guidance to align risk with enterprise goals.
- 5 C is correct. While risk infrastructure, which a risk management framework must address, refers to the people and systems required to track risk exposures, there is no requirement to actually name the responsible individuals.
- 6 A is correct. In establishing a risk management system, determining risk tolerance must happen before specific risks can be accepted or reduced. Risk tolerance defines the appetite for risk. Risk budgeting determine how or where the risk is taken and quantifies the tolerable risk by specific metrics. Risk exposures can then be measured and compared against the acceptable risk.
- 7 C is correct. *Risk infrastructure* refers to the people and systems required to track risk exposures and perform most of the quantitative risk analysis to allow an assessment of the organization's risk profile. The risk management infrastructure identifies, measures, and monitors risks (among other things).
- 8 C is correct. Risk governance is not about specifying methods to mitigate risk at the business line level. Rather, it is about establishing an appropriate level of risk for the entire enterprise. Specifics of dealing with risk fall under risk management and the risk infrastructure framework.
- 9 A is correct. The risk management committee is a part of the risk governance structure at the operational level—as such, it does not approve the governing body's policies.
- 10 B is correct. When risk tolerance has been determined, the risk framework should be geared toward measuring, managing, and complying with the risk tolerance, or aligning risk exposure with risk tolerance. The risk tolerance decision begins by looking at what shortfalls within an organization would cause it to fail to achieve some critical goals and what are the organization's risk drivers.
- 11 C is correct. If a company has the ability to adapt quickly to adverse events may allow for a higher risk tolerance. There are other factors, such as beliefs of board members and a stable market environment, which may but should not affect risk tolerance.
- 12 A is correct. Risk budgeting does not include determining the target return. Risk budgeting quantifies and allocates the tolerable risk by specific metrics.
- 13 A is correct. The process of risk budgeting forces the firm to consider risk tradeoffs. As a result, the firm should choose to invest where the return per unit of risk is the highest.

- 14 A is correct. A financial risk originates from the financial markets. Credit risk is one of three financial risks identified in the reading: Credit risk is the chance of loss due to an outside party defaulting on an obligation. Solvency risk depends at least in part on factors internal to the organization and operational risk is an *internal* risk arising from the people and processes within the organization.
- 15 B is correct. Liquidity risk is also called transaction cost risk. When the bid–ask spread widens, purchase and sale transactions become increasingly costly. The risk arises from the uncertainty of the spread.
- 16 C is correct. Settlement risk is related to default risk, but deals with the timing of payments rather than the risk of default.
- 17 A is correct. The VaR measure indicates the probability of a loss of at least a certain level in a time period.
- 18 C is correct. Risk acceptance is similar to self-insurance. An entity choosing to self-insure may set up a reserve fund to cover losses. Buying insurance is a form of risk transfer and using derivatives is a form of risk-shifting, not risk acceptance.
- 19 C is correct. Among the risk-modification methods of risk avoidance, risk acceptance, risk transfer, and risk shifting none has a clear advantage. One must weigh benefits and costs in light of the firm’s risk tolerance when choosing the method to use.

Fintech in Investment Management

by Barbara J. Mack and Robert Kissell, PhD

Barbara J. Mack is at Pingry Hill Enterprises, Inc. (USA). Robert Kissell, PhD, is at Kissell Research Group (USA).

LEARNING OUTCOMES

<i>Mastery</i>	<i>The candidate should be able to</i>
<input type="checkbox"/>	a. describe “fintech;”
<input type="checkbox"/>	b. describe Big Data, artificial intelligence, and machine learning;
<input type="checkbox"/>	c. describe fintech applications to investment management;
<input type="checkbox"/>	d. describe financial applications of distributed ledger technology.

INTRODUCTION

1

The meeting of finance and technology, commonly known as *fintech*, is changing the landscape of investment management. Advancements include the use of Big Data, artificial intelligence, and machine learning to evaluate investment opportunities, optimize portfolios, and mitigate risks. These developments are affecting not only quantitative asset managers but also fundamental asset managers who make use of these tools and technologies to engage in hybrid forms of investment decision making.

Investment advisory services are undergoing changes with the growth of automated wealth advisers or “robo-advisers.” Robo-advisers may assist investors without the intervention of a human adviser, or they may be used in combination with a human adviser. The desired outcome is the ability to provide tailored, actionable advice to investors with greater ease of access and at lower cost.

In the area of financial record keeping, blockchain and distributed ledger technology (DLT) are creating new ways to record, track, and store transactions for financial assets. An early example of this trend is the cryptocurrency bitcoin, but the technology is being considered in a broader set of applications.

This reading is divided into seven main sections, which together define fintech and outline some of its key areas of impact in the field of investment management. Section 2 explains the concept of and areas of fintech. Sections 3 and 4 discuss Big

Data, artificial intelligence, and machine learning. Section 5 discusses data science, and Section 6 provides applications of fintech to investment management. Section 7 examines DLT. A summary of key points completes the reading.

2

WHAT IS FINTECH?

In its broadest sense, the term “fintech” generally refers to technology-driven innovation occurring in the financial services industry. For the purposes of this reading, **fintech** refers to technological innovation in the design and delivery of financial services and products. Note, however, that in common usage, fintech can also refer to companies (often new, startup companies) involved in developing the new technologies and their applications, as well as the business sector that comprises such companies. Many of these innovations are challenging the traditional business models of incumbent financial services providers.

Early forms of fintech included data processing and the automation of routine tasks. Then followed systems that provided execution of decisions according to specified rules and instructions. Fintech has since advanced into decision-making applications based on complex machine-learning logic, where computer programs are able to “learn” how to complete tasks over time. In some applications, advanced computer systems are performing tasks at levels far surpassing human capabilities. Fintech has changed the financial services industry in many ways, giving rise to new systems for investment advice, financial planning, business lending, and payments.

Whereas fintech covers a broad range of services and applications, areas of fintech development that are more directly relevant to the investment industry include the following:

- **Analysis of large datasets.** In addition to growing amounts of traditional data, such as security prices, corporate financial statements, and economic indicators, massive amounts of alternative data generated from non-traditional data sources, such as social media and sensor networks, can now be integrated into a portfolio manager’s investment decision-making process and used to help generate alpha and reduce losses.
- **Analytical tools.** For extremely large datasets, techniques involving **artificial intelligence** (AI)—computer systems capable of performing tasks that previously required human intelligence—may be better suited to identify complex, non-linear relationships than traditional quantitative methods and statistical analysis. Advances in AI-based techniques are enabling different data analysis approaches. For example, analysts are turning to artificial intelligence to sort through the enormous amounts of data from company filings, annual reports, and earnings calls to determine which data are most important and to help uncover trends and generate insights relating to human sentiment and behavior.
- **Automated trading.** Executing investment decisions through computer algorithms or automated trading applications may provide a number of benefits to investors, including more efficient trading, lower transaction costs, anonymity, and greater access to market liquidity.

- **Automated advice. Robo-advisers** or automated personal wealth management services provide investment services to a larger number of retail investors at lower cost than traditional adviser models can provide.
- **Financial record keeping.** New technology, such as DLT, may provide secure ways to track ownership of financial assets on a peer-to-peer (P2P) basis. By allowing P2P interactions—in which individuals or firms transact directly with each other without mediation by a third party—DLT reduces the need for financial intermediaries.

Drivers underlying fintech development in these areas include extremely rapid growth in data—including their quantity, types, sources, and quality—and technological advances that enable the capture and extraction of information from them. The data explosion is addressed in Section 3, and selected technological advances and data science are addressed in Sections 4 and 5, respectively.

BIG DATA

3

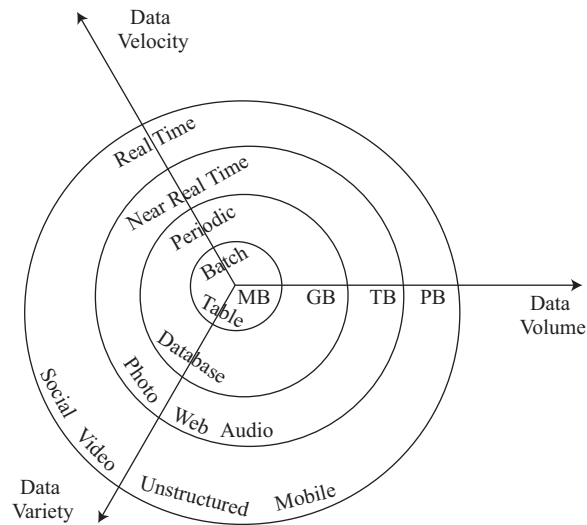
As noted, datasets are growing rapidly in terms of the size and diversity of data types that are available for analysis. The term **Big Data** has been in use since the late 1990s and refers to the vast amount of data being generated by industry, governments, individuals, and electronic devices. Big Data includes data generated from traditional sources—such as stock exchanges, companies, and governments—as well as non-traditional data types, also known as **alternative data**, arising from the use of electronic devices, social media, sensor networks, and company exhaust (data generated in the normal course of doing business).

Traditional data sources include corporate data in the form of annual reports, regulatory filings, sales and earnings figures, and conference calls with analysts. Traditional data also include data that are generated in the financial markets, including trade prices and volumes. Because the world has become increasingly connected, we can now obtain data from a wide range of devices, including smart phones, cameras, microphones, radio-frequency identification (RFID) readers, wireless sensors, and satellites that are now in use all over the world. As the internet and the presence of such networked devices have grown, the use of non-traditional data sources, or alternative data sources—including social media (posts, tweets, and blogs), email and text communications, web traffic, online news sites, and other electronic information sources—has risen.

The term *Big Data* typically refers to datasets having the following characteristics:

- **Volume:** The amount of data collected in files, records, and tables is very large, representing many millions, or even billions, of data points.
- **Velocity:** The speed with which the data are communicated is extremely great. Real-time or near-real-time data have become the norm in many areas.
- **Variety:** The data are collected from many different sources and in a variety of formats, including structured data (e.g., SQL tables or CSV files), semi-structured data (e.g., HTML code), and unstructured data (e.g., video messages).

Features relating to Big Data's volume, velocity, and variety are shown in Exhibit 1.

Exhibit 1 Big Data Characteristics: Volume, Velocity, and Variety

Data	Volume Key	Bytes of Information
------	------------	----------------------

MB	Megabyte	One Million
GB	Gigabyte	One Billion
TB	Terabyte	One Trillion
PB	Petabyte	One Quadrillion

Source: <http://whatis.techtarget.com/definition/3Vs>.

Exhibit 1 shows that data volumes are growing from megabytes (MB) and gigabytes (GB) to far larger sizes, such as terabytes (TB) and petabytes (PB), as more data are being generated, captured, and stored. At the same time, more data, traditional and non-traditional, are available on a real-time or near-real-time basis with far greater variety in data types than ever before.

Big Data may be structured, semi-structured, or unstructured data. Structured data items can be organized in tables and are commonly stored in a database where each field represents the same type of information. Unstructured data may be disparate, unorganized data that cannot be represented in tabular form. Unstructured data, such as those generated by social media, email, text messages, voice recordings, pictures, blogs, scanners, and sensors, often require different, specialized applications or custom programs before they can be useful to investment professionals. For example, in order to analyze data contained in emails or texts, specially developed or customized computer code may be required to first process these files. Semi-structured data may have attributes of both structured and unstructured data.

3.1 Sources of Big Data

Big Data, therefore, encompasses data generated by

- financial markets (e.g., equity, fixed income, futures, options, and other derivatives),
- businesses (e.g., corporate financials, commercial transactions, and credit card purchases),
- governments (e.g., trade, economic, employment, and payroll data),

- individuals (e.g., credit card purchases, product reviews, internet search logs, and social media posts),
- sensors (e.g., satellite imagery, shipping cargo information, and traffic patterns), and, in particular,
- the Internet of Things, or IoT (e.g., data generated by “smart” buildings, where the building is providing a steady stream of information about climate control, energy consumption, security, and other operational details).

In gathering business intelligence, historically, analysts have tended to draw on traditional data sources, employing statistical methods to measure performance, predict future growth, and analyze sector and market trends. In contrast, the analysis of Big Data incorporates the use of alternative data sources.

From retail sales data to social media sentiment to satellite imagery that may reveal information about agriculture, shipping, and oil rigs, alternative datasets may provide additional insights about consumer behavior, firm performance, trends, and other factors important for investment-related activities. Such information is having a significant effect on the way that professional investors, particularly quantitative investors, approach financial analysis and decision-making processes.

There are three main sources of alternative data:

- data generated by individuals,
- data generated by business processes, and
- data generated by sensors.

Data generated by individuals are often produced in text, video, photo, and audio formats and may also be generated through such means as website clicks or time spent on a webpage. This type of data tends to be unstructured. The volume of this type of data is growing dramatically as people participate in greater numbers and more frequently in online activities, such as social media and e-commerce, including online reviews of products, services, and entire companies, and as they make personal data available through web searches, email, and other electronic trails.

Business process data include information flows from corporations and other public entities. These data tend to be structured data and include direct sales information, such as credit card data, as well as corporate exhaust. Corporate exhaust includes corporate supply chain information, banking records, and retail point-of-sale scanner data. Business process data can be leading or real-time indicators of business performance, whereas traditional corporate metrics may be reported only on a quarterly or even yearly basis and are typically lagging indicators of performance.

Sensor data are collected from such devices as smart phones, cameras, RFID chips, and satellites that are usually connected to computers via wireless networks. Sensor data can be unstructured, and the volume of data is many orders of magnitude greater than that of individual or business process datastreams. This form of data is growing exponentially because microprocessors and networking technology are increasingly present in a wide array of personal and commercial electronic devices. Extended to office buildings, homes, vehicles, and many other physical forms, this culminates in a network arrangement, known as the **Internet of Things**, that is formed by the vast array of physical devices, home appliances, smart buildings, vehicles, and other items that are embedded with electronics, sensors, software, and network connections that enable the objects in the system to interact and share information.

Exhibit 2 shows a classification of alternative data sources and includes examples for each.

Exhibit 2 Classification of Alternative Data Sources

Individuals	Business Processes	Sensors
Social media	Transaction data	Satellites
News, reviews	Corporate data	Geolocation
Web searches, personal data		Internet of Things
		Other sensors

In the search to identify new factors that may affect security prices, enhance asset selection, improve trade execution, and uncover trends, alternative data are being used to support data-driven investment models and decisions. As interest in alternative data has risen, there has been a growth in the number of specialized firms that collect, aggregate, and sell alternative datasets.

While the marketplace for alternative data is expanding, investment professionals should understand potential legal and ethical issues related to information that is not in the public domain. For example, the scraping of web data could potentially capture personal information that is protected by regulations or that may have been published or provided without the explicit knowledge and consent of the individuals involved. Best practices are still in development in many jurisdictions, and because of varying approaches taken by national regulators, there may be conflicting forms of guidance.

3.2 Big Data Challenges

Big Data poses several challenges when it is used in investment analysis, including the quality, volume, and appropriateness of the data. Key issues revolve around the following questions, among others: Does the dataset have selection bias, missing data, or data outliers? Is the volume of collected data sufficient? Is the dataset well suited for the type of analysis? In most instances, the data must be sourced, cleansed, and organized before analysis can occur. This process can be extremely difficult with alternative data owing to the unstructured characteristics of the data involved, which are more often qualitative (e.g., texts, photos, and videos) than quantitative in nature.

Given the size and complexity of alternative datasets, traditional analytical methods cannot always be used to interpret and evaluate these datasets. To address this challenge, artificial intelligence and machine learning techniques have emerged that support work on such large and complex sources of information.

4

ADVANCED ANALYTICAL TOOLS: ARTIFICIAL INTELLIGENCE AND MACHINE LEARNING

Artificial intelligence computer systems are capable of performing tasks that have traditionally required human intelligence. AI technology has enabled the development of computer systems that exhibit cognitive and decision-making ability comparable or superior to that of human beings.

An early example of AI was the “expert system,” a type of computer programming that attempted to simulate the knowledge base and analytical abilities of human experts in specific problem-solving contexts. This was often accomplished through the use of “if-then” rules. By the late 1990s, faster networks and more powerful processors enabled AI to be deployed in logistics, data mining, financial analysis, medical diagnosis, and

other areas. Since the 1980s, financial institutions have made use of AI—particularly, **neural networks**, programming based on how our brain learns and processes information—to detect abnormal charges or claims in credit card fraud detection systems.

Machine learning (ML) is a technology that has grown out of the wider AI field. ML algorithms are computer programs that are able to “learn” how to complete tasks, improving their performance over time with experience. As it is currently used in the investing context, ML requires massive amounts of data for “training,” so although some ML techniques have existed for years, insufficient data have historically limited broader application. Previously, these algorithms lacked access to the large amounts of data needed to model relationships successfully. The growth in Big Data has provided ML algorithms, such as neural networks, with sufficient data to improve modeling and predictive accuracy, and greater use of ML techniques is now possible.

In ML, the computer algorithm is given “inputs” (a set of variables or datasets) and may be given “outputs” (the target data). The algorithm “learns” from the data provided how best to model inputs to outputs (if provided) or how to identify or describe underlying data structure if no outputs are given. Training occurs as the algorithm identifies relationships in the data and uses that information to refine its learning process.

ML involves splitting the dataset into a training dataset and validation dataset (evaluation dataset). The training dataset allows the algorithm to identify relationships between inputs and outputs based on historical patterns in the data. These relationships are then tested on the validation dataset. Once an algorithm has mastered the training and validation datasets, the ML model can be used to predict outcomes based on other datasets.

ML still requires human judgement in understanding the underlying data and selecting the appropriate techniques for data analysis. Before they can be used, the data must be clean and free of biases and spurious data. As noted, ML models also require sufficiently large amounts of data and may not perform well where there may not be enough available data to train and validate the model.

Analysts must also be cognizant of errors that may arise from **overfitting** the data, because models that overfit the data may discover “false” relationships or “unsubstantiated” patterns that will lead to prediction errors and incorrect output forecasts. Overfitting occurs when the ML model learns the input and target dataset too precisely. In such cases, the model has been “over-trained” on the data and treats noise in the data as true parameters. An ML model that has been overfitted is not able to accurately predict outcomes using a different dataset and may be too complex. When a model has been underfitted, the ML model treats true parameters as if they are noise and is not able to recognize relationships within the training data. In such cases, the model may be too simplistic. Underfitted models will typically fail to fully discover patterns that underlie the data.

In addition, since they are not explicitly programmed, ML techniques can appear to be opaque or “black box” approaches, which arrive at outcomes that may not be entirely understood or explainable.

4.1 Types of Machine Learning

ML approaches can help identify relationships between variables, detect patterns or trends, and create structure from data, including data classification. The main types of machine learning approaches include supervised and unsupervised learning.

In **supervised learning**, computers learn to model relationships based on labeled training data. In supervised learning, inputs and outputs are labeled, or identified, for the algorithm. After learning how best to model relationships for the labeled data, the trained algorithms are used to model or predict outcomes for new datasets. Trying to identify the best signal, or variable, to forecast future returns on a stock or

trying to predict whether local stock market performance will be up, down, or flat during the next business day are problems that may be approached using supervised learning techniques.

In **unsupervised learning**, computers are not given labeled data but instead are given only data from which the algorithm seeks to describe the data and their structure. Trying to group companies into peer groups based on their characteristics rather than using standard sector or country groupings is a problem that may be approached using unsupervised learning techniques.

Underlying AI advances have been key developments relating to neural networks. In **deep learning**, (or **deep learning nets**), computers use neural networks, often with many hidden layers, to perform multistage, non-linear data processing to identify patterns. Deep learning may use supervised or unsupervised machine learning approaches. By taking a layered or multistage approach to data analysis, deep learning develops an understanding of simple concepts that informs analysis of more complex concepts. Neural networks have existed since 1958 and have been used for many applications, such as forecasting and pattern recognition, since the early 1990s. Improvements in the algorithms underlying neural networks are providing more accurate models that better incorporate and learn from data. As a result, these algorithms are now far better at such activities as image, pattern, and speech recognition. In many cases, the advanced algorithms require less computing power than the earlier neural networks, and their improved solution enables analysts to discover insights and identify relationships that were previously too difficult or too time consuming to uncover.



Advances in Artificial Intelligence outside Finance

Non-finance-related AI breakthroughs include victories in the general knowledge game-show Jeopardy (by IBM's Watson in 2011) and in the ancient Chinese board game Go (by Google's DeepMind in 2016). Not only is AI providing solutions where there is perfect information (all players have equal access to the same information), such as checkers, chess, and Go, but AI is also providing insight in cases where information may be imperfect and players have hidden information; AI successes at the game of poker (by DeepStack) are an example. AI has also been behind the rise of virtual assistants, such as Siri (from Apple), Google's Translate app, and Amazon's product recommendation engine.

The ability to analyze Big Data using ML techniques, alongside more traditional statistical methods, represents a significant development in investment research, supported by the presence of greater data availability and advances in the algorithms themselves. Improvements in computing power and software processing speeds and falling storage costs have further supported this evolution.

ML techniques are being used for Big Data analysis to help predict trends or market events, such as the likelihood of a successful merger or an outcome to a political election. Image recognition algorithms can now analyze data from satellite-imaging systems to provide intelligence on the number of consumers in retail store parking lots, shipping activity and manufacturing facilities, and yields on agricultural crops, to name just a few examples.

Such information may provide insights into individual firms or at national or global levels and may be used as inputs into valuation or economic models.

DATA SCIENCE: EXTRACTING INFORMATION FROM BIG DATA

5

Data science can be defined as an interdisciplinary field that harnesses advances in computer science (including machine learning), statistics, and other disciplines for the purpose of extracting information from Big Data (or data in general). Companies rely on the expertise of data scientists/analysts to extract information and insights from Big Data for a wide variety of business and investment purposes.

An important consideration for the data scientist is the structure of the data. As noted in the discussion on Big Data, because of their unstructured nature, alternative data often require specialized treatment before they can be used for analysis.

5.1 Data Processing Methods

To help determine the best data management technique needed for Big Data analysis, data scientists use various data processing methods, including capture, curation, storage, search, and transfer.

- **Capture**—Data capture refers to how the data are collected and transformed into a format that can be used by the analytical process. Low-latency systems—systems that operate on networks that communicate high volumes of data with minimal delay (latency)—are essential for automated trading applications that make decisions based on real-time prices and market events. In contrast, high-latency systems do not require access to real-time data and calculations.
- **Curation**—Data curation refers to the process of ensuring data quality and accuracy through a data cleaning exercise. This process consists of reviewing all data to detect and uncover data errors—bad or inaccurate data—and making adjustments for missing data when appropriate.
- **Storage**—Data storage refers to how the data will be recorded, archived, and accessed and the underlying database design. An important consideration for data storage is whether the data are structured or unstructured and whether analytical needs require low-latency solutions.
- **Search**—Search refers to how to query data. Big Data has created the need for advanced applications capable of examining and reviewing large quantities of data to locate requested data content.
- **Transfer**—Transfer refers to how the data will move from the underlying data source or storage location to the underlying analytical tool. This could be through a direct data feed, such as a stock exchange's price feed.

5.2 Data Visualization

Data visualization is an important tool for understanding Big Data. Visualization refers to how the data will be formatted, displayed, and summarized in graphical form. Traditional structured data can be visualized using tables, charts, and trends, whereas non-traditional unstructured data require new techniques of data visualization. These visualization tools include, for example, interactive three-dimensional (3D) graphics, where users can focus in on specified data ranges and rotate the data across 3D axes to help identify trends and uncover relationships. Multidimensional data analysis consisting of more than three variables requires additional data visualization techniques—for example, adding color, shapes, and sizes to the 3D charts. Further, a wide

- **Java:** Java is a programming language that can run on different computers, servers, and operating systems. Java is the underlying program language used in many internet applications.
- **C/C++:** C/C++ is a specialized programming language that provides the ability to optimize source code to achieve superior calculation speed and processing performance. C/C++ is used in applications for algorithmic and high-frequency trading.
- **Excel VBA:** Excel VBA helps bridge the gap between programming and manual data processing by allowing users to run macros to automate tasks, such as updating data tables and formulas, running data queries and collecting data from different web locations, and performing calculations. Excel VBA allows users to develop customized reports and analyses that rely on data that are updated from different applications and databases.

Some of the more common databases in use include the following:

- **SQL:** SQL is a database for structured data where the data can be stored in tables with rows and columns. SQL databases need to be run on a server that is accessed by users.
- **SQLite:** SQLite is a database for structured data. SQLite databases are embedded into the program and do not need to be run on a server. It is the most common database for mobile apps that require access to data.
- **NoSQL:** NoSQL is a database used for unstructured data where the data cannot be summarized in traditional tables with rows and columns.

SELECTED APPLICATIONS OF FINTECH TO INVESTMENT MANAGEMENT

6

Fintech is being used in numerous areas of investment management. Applications for investment management include text analytics and natural language processing, robo-advisory services, risk analysis, and algorithmic trading.

6.1 Text Analytics and Natural Language Processing

Text analytics involves the use of computer programs to analyze and derive meaning typically from large, unstructured text- or voice-based datasets, such as company filings, written reports, quarterly earnings calls, social media, email, internet postings, and surveys. Text analytics includes using computer programs to perform automated information retrieval from different, unrelated sources in order to aid the decision-making process. More analytical usage includes lexical analysis, or the analysis of word frequency in a document and pattern recognition based on key words and phrases. Text analytics may be used in predictive analysis to help identify indicators of future performance, such as consumer sentiment.

Natural language processing (NLP) is a field of research at the intersection of computer science, artificial intelligence, and linguistics that focuses on developing computer programs to analyze and interpret human language. Within the larger field of text analytics, NLP is an important application. Automated tasks using NLP include translation, speech recognition, text mining, sentiment analysis, and topic analysis. NLP may also be employed in compliance functions to review employee voice and electronic communications for adherence to company or regulatory policy, inappropriate conduct, or fraud or for ensuring private or customer information is kept confidential.

Consider that all the public corporations worldwide generate millions of pages of annual reports and tens of thousands of hours of earnings calls each year. This is more information than any individual analyst or team of researchers can assess. NLP, especially when aided by ML algorithms, can analyze annual reports, call transcripts, news articles, social media posts, and other text- and audio-based data to identify trends in shorter timespans and with greater scale and accuracy than is humanly possible.

For example, NLP may be used to monitor analyst commentary to aid investment decision making. Financial analysts may generate earnings-per-share (EPS) forecasts reflecting their views on a company's near-term prospects. Focusing on forecasted EPS numbers could mean investors miss subtleties contained in an analyst's written research report. Since analysts tend not to change their buy, hold, and sell recommendations for a company frequently, they may instead offer nuanced commentary without making a change in their investment recommendation. After analyzing analyst commentary, NLP can assign sentiment ratings ranging from very negative to very positive for each. NLP can, therefore, be used to detect, monitor, and tag shifts in sentiment, potentially ahead of an analyst's recommendation change. Machine capabilities enable this analysis to scale across thousands of companies worldwide, performing work previously done by humans.

Similarly, communications and transcripts from policymakers, such as the European Central Bank or the US Federal Reserve, offer an opportunity for NLP-based analysis, because officials at these institutions may send subtle messages through their choice of topics, words, and inferred tone. NLP can help analyze nuances within text to provide insights around trending or waning topics of interest, such as interest rate policy, aggregate output, or inflation expectations.

Models using NLP analysis may incorporate non-traditional information to evaluate what people are saying—via their preferences, opinions, likes, or dislikes—in an attempt to identify trends and short-term indicators about a company, a stock, or an economic event that might have a bearing on future performance. Past research has evaluated the predictive power of Twitter sentiment regarding IPO performance, for example.¹ The effect of positive and negative news sentiment on stock returns has also been researched.²

6.2 Robo-Advisory Services

Since their emergence in 2008, a number of startup firms, as well as large asset managers, have introduced robo-advisory services, which provide investment solutions through online platforms, reducing the need for direct interaction with financial advisers.

As robo-advisers have been incorporated into the investment landscape, they have drawn the attention of regulatory authorities. In the United States, robo-advisers must be established as registered investment advisers, and they are regulated by the Securities and Exchange Commission. In the United Kingdom, they are regulated by the Financial Conduct Authority. In Australia, all financial advisers must obtain an Australian Financial Services license, with guidance on digital advisers coming from the Australian Securities and Investments Commission. Robo-advisers are also on the rise in parts of Asia and the rest of the world. Although regulatory conditions vary, robo-advisers are likely to be held to a similar level of scrutiny and code of conduct as other investment professionals in the given region.

¹ Jim Kyung-Soo Liew and Garrett Zhengyuan Wang, "Twitter Sentiment and IPO Performance: A Cross-Sectional Examination," *Journal of Portfolio Management*, vol. 42, no. 4 (Summer 2016): 129–135.

² Steven L. Heston and Nitish Ranjan Sinha, "News vs. Sentiment: Predicting Stock Returns from News Stories," *Financial Analysts Journal*, vol. 73, no. 3 (Third Quarter 2017): 67–83. (<https://www.cfapubs.org/doi/abs/10.2469/faj.v73.n3.3>).

Robo-advice tends to start with an investor questionnaire, which may include many of the categories and subcategories shown in Exhibit 4. Exhibit 4 is a synthesis of questionnaires created by the researchers attributed in the source below. Once assets, liabilities, risk preferences, and target investment returns have been digitally entered by a client, the robo-adviser software produces recommendations, based on algorithmic rules and historical market data, that incorporate the client's stated investment parameters. According to research by Michael Tertilt and Peter Scholz, robo-advisers do not seem to incorporate the full range of available information into their recommendations;³ further research will be necessary over time to see how this may affect performance and the evolution of digital advisory services. Nevertheless, current robo-advisory services include automated asset allocation, trade execution, portfolio optimization, tax-loss harvesting, and rebalancing for investor portfolios.

Exhibit 4 Categories and Subcategories for Investor Questionnaires

General Information	Risk Tolerance
Income	Age
Investment Amount	Association with Investing
Job Description	Association with Risk
Other	Choose Portfolio Risk Level
Source of Income	Comfort Investing in Stock
Spending	Credit Based Investments
Time to Retirement	Dealing with Financial Decisions
Type of Account	Degree of Financial Risk Taken
Working Status	Education
Risk Capacity	Ever Interested in Risky Asset for Thrill
Dependence on Withdrawal of Investment Amount	Experience of Drop/Reaction on Drop/Max Drop before Selling
Income Prediction	Family and Household Status
Investment Amount/Savings Rate Ratio	Financial Knowledge
Investment Amount/Total Capital Ratio	Gender
Investment Horizon	Investment Experience
Liabilities	Investment Goal
Savings Rate	Investor Type/Self-Assessment Risk Tolerance
Total Capital	Preference Return vs. Risk

Source: Michael Tertilt and Peter Scholz, 2017 "To Advise, or Not to Advise—How Robo-Advisors Evaluate the Risk Preferences of Private Investors," working paper (13 June): Table 1: Categories and Subcategories for Questionnaires.

Although their analyses and recommendations can cover both active and passive management styles, most robo-advisers follow a passive investment approach. These robo-advisers typically have low fees and low account minimums, implementing their recommendations with low-cost, diversified index mutual funds or exchange-traded funds (ETFs). A diverse range of asset classes can be managed in this manner, including

³ Michael Tertilt and Peter Scholz, To Advise, or Not to Advise — How Robo-Advisors Evaluate the Risk Preferences of Private Investors (June 12, 2017). Available at SSRN: <https://ssrn.com/abstract=2913178> or <http://dx.doi.org/10.2139/ssrn.2913178>

stocks, bonds, commodities, futures, and real estate. Because of their low-cost structure, robo-advisers can reach underserved populations, such as the mass affluent or mass market segments, which are less able to afford a traditional financial adviser.

Two types of wealth management services dominate the robo-advice sector: fully automated digital wealth managers and adviser-assisted digital wealth managers.

■ Fully Automated Digital Wealth Managers

The fully automated model does not rely on assistance from a human financial adviser. These services seek to offer a low-cost solution to investing and recommend an investment portfolio, which is often composed of ETFs. The service package may include direct deposits, periodic rebalancing, and dividend reinvestment options.

■ Adviser-Assisted Digital Wealth Managers

Adviser-assisted digital wealth managers provide automated investment services along with a virtual financial adviser, who is available to offer basic financial planning advice and periodic reviews by phone. Adviser-assisted digital wealth managers are capable of providing additional services that may involve a more holistic analysis of a client's assets and liabilities.

Wealthy and ultra-wealthy individuals typically have had access to human advisory teams, but there has been a gap in the availability and quality of advisers to serve investors with less wealth. The advent of robo-advisers offers a cost-effective and easily accessible form of financial guidance. In following a typically passive investment approach, research suggests that robo-advisers tend to offer fairly conservative advice.

However, critics of robo-advisers have wondered what would happen in a time of crisis, when people most often look to human expertise for guidance. It may not always be completely transparent why a robo-adviser chooses to make a recommendation or take a trading action that it did, unlike a human adviser who can provide his or her rationale. And finally, there may be trust issues in allowing computers to make these decisions, including worries of instances where robo-advisers might recommend inappropriate investments.

As the complexity and size of an investor's portfolio grows, robo-advisers may not be able to sufficiently address the particular preferences and needs of the investor. In the case of extremely affluent investors who may own a greater number of asset types—including alternative investments (e.g., venture capital, private equity, hedge funds, and real estate)—in addition to global stocks and bonds and have greater demands for customization, the need for a team of human advisers, each with particular areas of investment or wealth-management expertise, is likely to endure.

6.3 Risk Analysis

As mandated by regulators worldwide, the global investment industry has undertaken major steps in stress testing and risk assessment that involve the analysis of vast amounts of quantitative and qualitative risk data. Required data include information on the liquidity of the firm and its trading partners, balance sheet positions, credit exposures, risk-weighted assets, and risk parameters. Stress tests may also take qualitative information into consideration, such as capital planning procedures, expected business plan changes, business model sustainability, and operational risk.

There is increasing interest in monitoring risk in real time. To do so, relevant data must be taken by a firm, mapped to known risks, and identified as it moves within the firm. Data may be aggregated for reporting purposes or used as inputs to risk models. Big Data may provide insights into real-time and changing market circumstances to help identify weakening market conditions and adverse trends in advance, allowing managers to employ risk management techniques and hedging practices sooner to help

preserve asset value. For example, evaluation of alternative data using ML techniques may help foreshadow declining company earnings and future stock performance. Furthermore, analysis of real-time market data and trading patterns may help analysts detect buying or selling pressure in the stock.

ML techniques may be used to help assess data quality. To help ensure accurate and reliable data that may originate from numerous alternative data sources, ML techniques can help validate data quality by identifying questionable data, potential errors, and data outliers before integration with traditional data for use in risk models and in risk management applications.

Portfolio risk management often makes use of scenario analysis—analyzing the likely performance of the portfolio and liquidation costs under a hypothetical stress scenario or the repeat of a historical stress event. For example, to understand the implications of holding or liquidating positions during adverse or extreme market periods, such as the financial crisis, fund managers may perform “what-if” scenario analysis and portfolio backtesting using point-in-time data to understand liquidation costs and portfolio consequences under differing market conditions. These backtesting simulations are often computationally intense and may be facilitated through the use of advanced AI-based techniques.

6.4 Algorithmic Trading

Algorithmic trading is the computerized buying and selling of financial instruments, in accordance with pre-specified rules and guidelines. Algorithmic trading is often used to execute large institutional orders, slicing orders into smaller pieces and executing across different exchanges and trading venues. Algorithmic trading provides investors with many benefits, including speed of execution, anonymity, and lower transaction costs. Over the course of a day, algorithms may continuously update and revise their execution strategy on the basis of changing prices, volumes, and market volatility. Algorithms may also determine the best way to price the order (e.g., limit or market order) and the most appropriate trading venue (e.g., exchange or dark pool) to route for execution.

High-frequency trading (HFT) is a form of algorithmic trading that makes use of vast quantities of granular financial data (tick data, for example) to automatically place trades when certain conditions are met. Trades are executed on ultra-high-speed, low-latency networks in fractions of a second. HFT algorithms decide what to buy or sell and where to execute on the basis of real-time prices and market conditions, seeking to earn a profit from intraday market mispricings.

Global financial markets have undergone substantial change as markets have fragmented into multiple trading destinations consisting of electronic exchanges, alternative trading systems, and so-called dark pools, and average trade sizes have fallen. In this environment, and with markets continuously reflecting real-time information, algorithmic trading has been viewed as an important tool.

DISTRIBUTED LEDGER TECHNOLOGY

7

Distributed ledger technology—technology based on a distributed ledger (defined below)—represents a fintech development that offers potential improvements in the area of financial record keeping. DLT networks are being considered as an efficient means to create, exchange, and track ownership of financial assets on a peer-to-peer basis. Potential benefits include greater accuracy, transparency, and security in record keeping; faster transfer of ownership; and peer-to-peer interactions. However, the

technology is not fully secure, and breaches in privacy and data protection are possible. In addition, the processes underlying DLT generally require massive amounts of energy to verify transaction activity.

A **distributed ledger** is a type of database that may be shared among entities in a network. In a distributed ledger, entries are recorded, stored, and distributed across a network of participants so that each participant has a matching copy of the digital database. Basic elements of a DLT network include a digital ledger, a consensus mechanism used to confirm new entries, and a participant network.

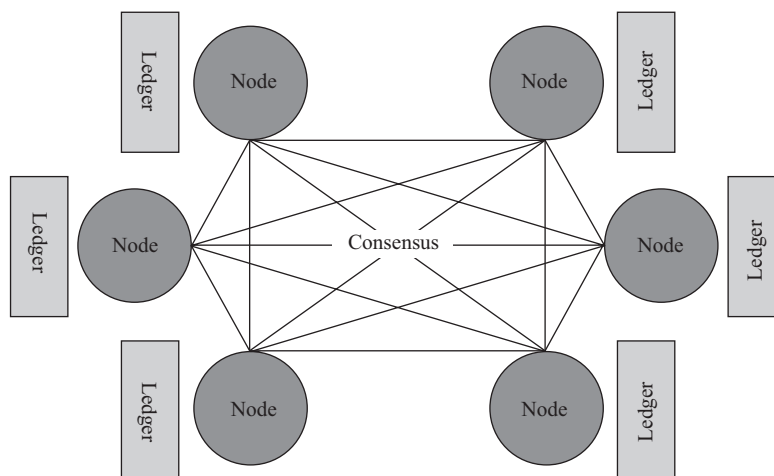
The consensus mechanism is the process by which the computer entities (or nodes) in a network agree on a common state of the ledger. Consensus generally involves two steps: transaction validation and agreement on ledger update by network parties. These features enable the creation of records that are, for the most part, considered immutable, or unchangeable, yet they are transparent and accessible to network participants on a near-real-time basis.

Features of DLT include the use of **cryptography**—an algorithmic process to encrypt data, making the data unusable if received by unauthorized parties—which enables a high level of network security and database integrity. For example, DLT uses cryptographic methods of proof to verify network participant identity and for data encryption.

DLT has the potential to accommodate “**smart contracts**,” which are computer programs that self-execute on the basis of pre-specified terms and conditions agreed to by the parties to a contract. Examples of smart contract use are the automatic execution of contingent claims for derivatives and the instantaneous transfer of collateral in the event of default.

Exhibit 5 illustrates a distributed ledger network in which all nodes are connected to one another, each having a copy of the distributed ledger. The term “Consensus” is shown in the center of the network and represents the consensus mechanism in which the nodes agree on new transactions and ledger updates.

Exhibit 5 Distributed Ledger Network Setup



Source: <https://blockgeeks.com/guides/what-is-hyperledger/>.

Blockchain is a type of digital ledger in which information, such as changes in ownership, is recorded sequentially within blocks that are then linked or “chained” together and secured using cryptographic methods. Each block contains a grouping of transactions (or entries) and a secure link (known as a hash) to the previous block.

New transactions are inserted into the chain only after validation via a consensus mechanism in which authorized members agree on the transaction and the preceding order, or history, in which previous transactions have occurred.

The consensus mechanism used to verify a transaction includes a cryptographic problem that must be solved by some computers on the network (known as miners) each time a transaction takes place. The process to update the blockchain can require substantial amounts of computing power, making it very difficult and extremely expensive for an individual third party to manipulate historical data. To manipulate historical data, an individual or entity would have to control the majority of nodes in the network. The success of the network, therefore, relies on broad network participation.



Blockchain (Distributed Ledger) Network—How Do Transactions Get Added?

Outlined below are the steps involved in adding a transaction to a blockchain distributed ledger.

- 1 Transaction takes place between buyer and seller
- 2 Transaction is broadcast to the network of computers (nodes)
- 3 Nodes validate the transaction details and parties to the transaction
- 4 Once verified, the transaction is combined with other transactions to form a new block (of predetermined size) of data for the ledger
- 5 This block of data is then added or linked (using a cryptographic process) to the previous block(s) containing data
- 6 Transaction is considered complete and ledger has been updated

7.1 Permissioned and Permissionless Networks

DLT can take the form of permissionless or permissioned networks. **Permissionless networks** are open to any user who wishes to make a transaction, and all users within the network can see all transactions that exist on the blockchain. In a permissionless, or open, DLT system, network participants can perform all network functions.

The main benefit of a permissionless network is that it does not depend on a centralized authority to confirm or deny the validity of transactions, because this takes place through the consensus mechanism. This means no single point of failure exists, since all transactions are recorded on a single distributed database and every node stores a copy of the database. Once a transaction has been added to the blockchain, it cannot be changed, barring manipulation; the distributed ledger becomes a permanent and immutable record of all previous transactions. In a permissionless network, trust is not a requirement between transacting parties.

A well-known example of an open, permissionless network is **bitcoin**. Using blockchain technology, Bitcoin was created in 2009 to serve as the public ledger for all transactions occurring on its virtual currency. Since the introduction of bitcoin, many more cryptocurrencies, or digital currencies, which use permissionless DLT networks, have been created.

In **permissioned networks**, network members may be restricted from participating in certain network activities. Controls, or permissions, may be used to allow varying levels of access to the ledger, from adding transactions (e.g., a participant) to viewing transactions only (e.g., a regulator) to viewing selective details of the transactions but not the full record.

7.2 Applications of Distributed Ledger Technology to Investment Management

Potential applications of DLT to investment management include cryptocurrencies, tokenization, post-trade clearing and settlement, and compliance.

7.2.1 Cryptocurrencies

A **cryptocurrency**, also known as a digital currency, operates as electronic currency and allows near-real-time transactions between parties without the need for an intermediary, such as a bank. As electronic mediums of exchange, cryptocurrencies lack physical form and are issued privately by individuals, companies, and other organizations. Most issued cryptocurrencies utilize open DLT systems in which a decentralized distributed ledger is used to record and verify all digital currency transactions. Cryptocurrencies have not traditionally been government backed or regulated. Central banks around the world, however, are recognizing potential benefits and examining use cases for their own cryptocurrency versions.

Many cryptocurrencies have a self-imposed limit on the total amount of currency they may issue. Although such limits could help maintain their store of value, it is important to note that many cryptocurrencies have experienced high levels of price volatility. A lack of clear fundamentals underlying these currencies has contributed to their volatility.

Cryptocurrencies have proven to be an attractive means for companies looking to raise capital. An **initial coin offering** (ICO) is an unregulated process whereby companies sell their crypto tokens to investors in exchange for fiat money or for another agreed upon cryptocurrency. An ICO is typically structured to issue digital tokens to investors that can be used to purchase future products or services being developed by the issuer. ICOs provide an alternative to traditional, regulated capital-raising processes, such as initial public offerings (IPOs). Compared to the regulated IPO market, ICOs may have lower associated issuance costs and shorter capital raising time frames. However, most ICOs do not typically have attached voting rights. Regulation for ICOs is under consideration in a number of jurisdictions, and there have been numerous instances of investor loss resulting from fraudulent schemes.

7.2.2 Tokenization

Transactions involving physical assets, such as real estate, luxury goods, and commodities, often require substantial efforts in ownership verification and examination each time a transfer in ownership takes place. Through **tokenization**, the process of representing ownership rights to physical assets on a blockchain or distributed ledger, DLT has the potential to streamline this process by creating a single, digital record of ownership with which to verify ownership title and authenticity, including all historical activity. Real estate transactions that require ownership and identify verification may be one area to benefit from tokenization, because these transactions are typically labor intensive and costly, involving decentralized, paper-based records and multiple parties.

7.2.3 Post-Trade Clearing and Settlement


In the financial securities markets, post-trade processes to confirm, clear, and settle transactions are often complex and labor intensive, requiring multiple interactions between counterparties and financial intermediaries. DLT has the ability to streamline existing post-trade processes by providing near-real-time trade verification, reconciliation, and settlement, thereby reducing the complexity, time, and costs associated with processing transactions. A single distributed record of ownership between network peers would eliminate the need for independent and duplicative reconciliation efforts between parties and reduce the need for third-party facilitation. A shortened

settlement time frame could lessen the time exposed to counterparty risk and associated collateral requirements while increasing the potential liquidity of assets and funds. Additionally, the use of automated contracts may also help to reduce post-trade time frames, lowering exposure to counterparty credit risk and trade fails.

7.2.4 Compliance

Regulators worldwide have imposed more stringent reporting requirements and demand greater transparency and access to data. To meet these requirements, many firms have added staff to their post-trade and compliance groups. But these functions remain predominantly manual. To comply with regulations, firms need to maintain and process large amounts of risk-related data. DLT may allow regulators and firms to maintain near-real-time review over transactions and other compliance-related processes. Improved post-trade reconciliation and automation through DLT could lead to more accurate record keeping and create operational efficiencies for a firm's compliance and regulatory reporting processes, while providing greater transparency and auditability for external authorities and regulators.

DLT-based compliance may better support shared information, communications, and transparency within and between firms, exchanges, custodians, and regulators. Closed or permissioned networks could offer advantages in security and privacy. These platforms could store highly sensitive information in a way that is secure but easily accessible to internal and external authorities. DLT could help uncover fraudulent activity and reduce compliance costs associated with know-your-customer and anti-money-laundering regulations, which entail verifying the identity of clients and business partners.



DLT Challenges

A number of challenges exist before DLT may be successfully adopted by the investment industry. These include the following:

- There is a lack of DLT network standardization, as well as difficulty integrating with legacy systems.
- DLT processing capabilities may not be financially competitive with existing solutions.
- Increasing the scale of DLT systems requires substantial (storage) resources.
- Immutability of transactions means accidental or “canceled” trades can be undone only by submitting an equal and offsetting trade.
- DLT requires huge amounts of computer power normally associated with high electricity usage.
- Regulatory approaches may differ by jurisdiction.

SUMMARY

- The term “fintech” refers to technological innovation in the design and delivery of financial services and products.

- Areas of fintech development include the analysis of large datasets, analytical techniques, automated trading, automated advice, and financial record keeping.
- Big Data is characterized by the three Vs—volume, velocity, and variety—and includes both traditional and non-traditional (or alternative) datasets.
- Among the main sources of alternative data are data generated by individuals, business processes, and sensors.
- Artificial intelligence computer systems are capable of performing tasks that traditionally required human intelligence at levels comparable (or superior) to those of human beings.
- Machine learning (ML) computer programs are able to “learn” how to complete tasks, improving their performance over time with experience. Main types of ML include supervised and unsupervised learning.
- Natural language processing is an application of text analytics that uses insight into the structure of human language to analyze and interpret text- and voice-based data.
- Robo-advisory services are providing automated advisory services to increasing numbers of retail investors. Services include asset allocation, portfolio optimization, trade execution, rebalancing, and tax strategies.
- Big Data and ML techniques may provide insights into real-time and changing market circumstances to help identify weakening or adverse trends in advance, allowing for improved risk management and investment decision making.
- Algorithmic traders use automated trading programs to determine when, where, and how to trade an order on the basis of pre-specified rules and market conditions. Benefits include speed of executions, lower trading costs, and anonymity.
- Blockchain and distributed ledger technology (DLT) may offer a new way to store, record, and track financial assets on a secure, distributed basis. Applications include cryptocurrencies and tokenization. Additionally, DLT may bring efficiencies to post-trade and compliance processes through automation, smart contracts, and identity verification.

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

- 1 A correct description of fintech is that it:
 - A is driven by rapid growth in data and related technological advances.
 - B increases the need for intermediaries.
 - C is at its most advanced state using systems that follow specified rules and instructions.
- 2 A characteristic of Big Data is that:
 - A one of its traditional sources is business processes.
 - B it involves formats with diverse types of structures.
 - C real-time communication of it is uncommon due to vast content.
- 3 In the use of machine learning (ML):
 - A some techniques are termed “black box” due to data biases.
 - B human judgment is not needed because algorithms continuously learn from data.
 - C training data can be learned too precisely, resulting in inaccurate predictions when used with different datasets.
- 4 Text Analytics is appropriate for application to:
 - A economic trend analysis.
 - B large, structured datasets.
 - C public but not private information.
- 5 In providing investment services, robo-advisers are *most likely* to:
 - A rely on their cost effectiveness to pursue active strategies.
 - B offer fairly conservative advice as easily accessible guidance.
 - C be free from regulation when acting as fully-automated wealth managers.
- 6 Which of the following statements on fintech’s use of data as part of risk analysis is correct?
 - A Stress testing requires precise inputs and excludes qualitative data.
 - B Machine learning ensures that traditional and alternative data are fully segregated.
 - C For real-time risk monitoring, data may be aggregated for reporting and used as model inputs.
- 7 A factor associated with the widespread adoption of algorithmic trading is increased:
 - A market efficiency.
 - B average trade sizes.
 - C trading destinations.
- 8 A benefit of distributed ledger technology (DLT) favoring its use by the investment industry is its:
 - A scalability of underlying systems.
 - B ease of integration with existing systems.
 - C streamlining of current post-trade processes.

- 9 What is a distributed ledger technology (DLT) application suited for physical assets?
- A Tokenization
 - B Cryptocurrencies
 - C Permissioned networks

SOLUTIONS

- 1 A is correct. Drivers of fintech include extremely rapid growth in data (including their quantity, types, sources, and quality) and technological advances enabling the capture and extraction of information from it.
- 2 B is correct. Big Data is collected from many different sources and is in a variety of formats, including structured data (e.g., SQL tables or CSV files), semi-structured data (e.g., HTML code), and unstructured data (e.g., video messages).
- 3 C is correct. Overfitting occurs when the ML model learns the input and target dataset too precisely. In this case, the model has been “over trained” on the data and is treating noise in the data as true parameters. An ML model that has been overfitted is not able to accurately predict outcomes using a different dataset and may be too complex.
- 4 A is correct. Through the Text Analytics application of natural language processing (NLP), models using NLP analysis may incorporate non-traditional information to evaluate what people are saying—via their preferences, opinions, likes, or dislikes—in the attempt to identify trends and short-term indicators about a company, a stock, or an economic event that might have a bearing on future performance.
- 5 B is correct. Research suggests that robo-advisers tend to offer fairly conservative advice, providing a cost-effective and easily accessible form of financial guidance to underserved populations, such as the mass affluent and mass market segments.
- 6 C is correct. There is increasing interest in monitoring risk in real-time. To do so, relevant data must be taken by a firm, mapped to known risks, and identified while moving within the firm. Data may be aggregated for reporting purposes or used as inputs to risk models.
- 7 C is correct. Global financial markets have undergone substantial change as markets have fragmented into multiple trading destinations consisting of electronic exchanges, alternative trading systems, and so-called dark pools. In such an environment, when markets are continuously reflecting real-time information and continuously changing conditions, algorithmic trading has been viewed as an important tool.
- 8 C is correct. DLT has the potential to streamline the existing, often complex and labor intensive post-trade processes in securities markets by providing close to real-time trade verification, reconciliation, and settlement, thereby reducing related complexity, time, and costs.
- 9 A is correct. Through tokenization—the process of representing ownership rights to physical assets on a blockchain or distributed ledger—DLT has the potential to streamline this rights process by creating a single, digital record of ownership with which to verify ownership title and authenticity, including all historical activity.

Glossary

- A priori probability** A probability based on logical analysis rather than on observation or personal judgment.
- Abnormal return** The amount by which a security's actual return differs from its expected return, given the security's risk and the market's return.
- Absolute advantage** A country's ability to produce a good or service at a lower absolute cost than its trading partner.
- Absolute dispersion** The amount of variability present without comparison to any reference point or benchmark.
- Absolute frequency** The number of observations in a given interval (for grouped data).
- Accelerated book build** An offering of securities by an investment bank acting as principal that is accomplished in only one or two days.
- Accelerated methods** Depreciation methods that allocate a relatively large proportion of the cost of an asset to the early years of the asset's useful life.
- Accounting costs** Monetary value of economic resources used in performing an activity. These can be explicit, out-of-pocket, current payments, or an allocation of historical payments (depreciation) for resources. They do not include implicit opportunity costs.
- Accounting profit** Income as reported on the income statement, in accordance with prevailing accounting standards, before the provisions for income tax expense. Also called *income before taxes* or *pretax income*.
- Accounts payable** Amounts that a business owes to its vendors for goods and services that were purchased from them but which have not yet been paid.
- Accounts receivable turnover** Ratio of sales on credit to the average balance in accounts receivable.
- Accrued expenses** Liabilities related to expenses that have been incurred but not yet paid as of the end of an accounting period—an example of an accrued expense is rent that has been incurred but not yet paid, resulting in a liability "rent payable." Also called *accrued liabilities*.
- Accrued interest** Interest earned but not yet paid.
- Acid-test ratio** A stringent measure of liquidity that indicates a company's ability to satisfy current liabilities with its most liquid assets, calculated as (cash + short-term marketable investments + receivables) divided by current liabilities.
- Acquisition method** A method of accounting for a business combination where the acquirer is required to measure each identifiable asset and liability at fair value. This method was the result of a joint project of the IASB and FASB aiming at convergence in standards for the accounting of business combinations.
- Action lag** Delay from policy decisions to implementation.
- Active investment** An approach to investing in which the investor seeks to outperform a given benchmark.
- Active return** The return on a portfolio minus the return on the portfolio's benchmark.
- Active strategy** In reference to short-term cash management, an investment strategy characterized by monitoring and attempting to capitalize on market conditions to optimize the risk and return relationship of short-term investments.
- Activity ratios** Ratios that measure how efficiently a company performs day-to-day tasks, such as the collection of receivables and management of inventory. Also called *asset utilization ratios* or *operating efficiency ratios*.
- Add-on rates** Bank certificates of deposit, repos, and indexes such as Libor and Euribor are quoted on an add-on rate basis (bond equivalent yield basis).
- Addition rule for probabilities** A principle stating that the probability that *A* or *B* occurs (both occur) equals the probability that *A* occurs, plus the probability that *B* occurs, minus the probability that both *A* and *B* occur.
- Agency bonds** See *quasi-government bond*.
- Agency RMBS** In the United States, securities backed by residential mortgage loans and guaranteed by a federal agency or guaranteed by either of the two GSEs (Fannie Mae and Freddie Mac).
- Aggregate demand** The quantity of goods and services that households, businesses, government, and foreign customers want to buy at any given level of prices.
- Aggregate demand curve** Inverse relationship between the price level and real output.
- Aggregate income** The value of all the payments earned by the suppliers of factors used in the production of goods and services.
- Aggregate output** The value of all the goods and services produced in a specified period of time.
- Aggregate supply** The quantity of goods and services producers are willing to supply at any given level of price.
- Aggregate supply curve** The level of domestic output that companies will produce at each price level.
- Aging schedule** A breakdown of accounts into categories of days outstanding.
- All-or-nothing (AON) orders** An order that includes the instruction to trade only if the trade fills the entire quantity (size) specified.
- Allocationally efficient** Said of a market, a financial system, or an economy that promotes the allocation of resources to their highest value uses.
- Alternative data** Non-traditional data types generated by the use of electronic devices, social media, satellite and sensor networks, and company exhaust.
- Alternative investment markets** Market for investments other than traditional securities investments (i.e., traditional common and preferred shares and traditional fixed income instruments). The term usually encompasses direct and indirect investment in real estate (including timberland and farmland) and commodities (including precious metals); hedge funds, private equity, and other investments requiring specialized due diligence.
- Alternative trading systems** Trading venues that function like exchanges but that do not exercise regulatory authority over their subscribers except with respect to the conduct of the subscribers' trading in their trading systems. Also called *electronic communications networks* or *multilateral trading facilities*.
- American depository receipt** A US dollar-denominated security that trades like a common share on US exchanges.

- American depository share** The underlying shares on which American depository receipts are based. They trade in the issuing company's domestic market.
- American-style** Said of an option contract that can be exercised at any time up to the option's expiration date.
- Amortisation** The process of allocating the cost of intangible long-term assets having a finite useful life to accounting periods; the allocation of the amount of a bond premium or discount to the periods remaining until bond maturity.
- Amortised cost** The historical cost (initially recognised cost) of an asset, adjusted for amortisation and impairment.
- Amortizing bond** Bond with a payment schedule that calls for periodic payments of interest and repayments of principal.
- Amortizing loan** Loan with a payment schedule that calls for periodic payments of interest and repayments of principal.
- Annual percentage rate** The cost of borrowing expressed as a yearly rate.
- Annuity** A finite set of level sequential cash flows.
- Annuity due** An annuity having a first cash flow that is paid immediately.
- Anticipation stock** Excess inventory that is held in anticipation of increased demand, often because of seasonal patterns of demand.
- Antidilutive** With reference to a transaction or a security, one that would increase earnings per share (EPS) or result in EPS higher than the company's basic EPS—antidilutive securities are not included in the calculation of diluted EPS.
- Arbitrage** 1) The simultaneous purchase of an undervalued asset or portfolio and sale of an overvalued but equivalent asset or portfolio, in order to obtain a riskless profit on the price differential. Taking advantage of a market inefficiency in a risk-free manner. 2) The condition in a financial market in which equivalent assets or combinations of assets sell for two different prices, creating an opportunity to profit at no risk with no commitment of money. In a well-functioning financial market, few arbitrage opportunities are possible. 3) A risk-free operation that earns an expected positive net profit but requires no net investment of money.
- Arbitrage-free pricing** The overall process of pricing derivatives by arbitrage and risk neutrality. Also called the *principle of no arbitrage*.
- Arbitrageurs** Traders who engage in arbitrage. See *arbitrage*.
- Arithmetic mean** The sum of the observations divided by the number of observations.
- Arms index** A flow of funds indicator applied to a broad stock market index to measure the relative extent to which money is moving into or out of rising and declining stocks.
- Artificial intelligence** Computer systems that exhibit cognitive and decision-making ability comparable (or superior) to that of humans.
- Asian call option** A European-style option with a value at maturity equal to the difference between the stock price at maturity and the average stock price during the life of the option, or \$0, whichever is greater.
- Ask** The price at which a dealer or trader is willing to sell an asset, typically qualified by a maximum quantity (ask size). See *offer*.
- Ask size** The maximum quantity of an asset that pertains to a specific ask price from a trader. For example, if the ask for a share issue is \$30 for a size of 1,000 shares, the trader is offering to sell at \$30 up to 1,000 shares.
- Asset allocation** The process of determining how investment funds should be distributed among asset classes.
- Asset-backed securities** A type of bond issued by a legal entity called a *special purpose entity* (SPE) on a collection of assets that the SPE owns. Also, securities backed by receivables and loans other than mortgages.
- Asset-based loan** A loan that is secured with company assets.
- Asset-based valuation models** Valuation based on estimates of the market value of a company's assets.
- Asset beta** The unlevered beta; reflects the business risk of the assets; the asset's systematic risk.
- Asset class** A group of assets that have similar characteristics, attributes, and risk/return relationships.
- Asset swap** Converts the periodic fixed coupon of a specific bond to a Libor plus or minus a spread.
- Asset utilization ratios** Ratios that measure how efficiently a company performs day-to-day tasks, such as the collection of receivables and management of inventory.
- Assets** Resources controlled by an enterprise as a result of past events and from which future economic benefits to the enterprise are expected to flow.
- Assignment of accounts receivable** The use of accounts receivable as collateral for a loan.
- At the money** An option in which the underlying's price equals the exercise price.
- Auction** A type of bond issuing mechanism often used for sovereign bonds that involves bidding.
- Autarkic price** The price of a good or service in an autarkic economy.
- Autarky** A state in which a country does not trade with other countries.
- Automated Clearing House (ACH)** An electronic payment network available to businesses, individuals, and financial institutions in the United States, US Territories, and Canada.
- Automatic stabilizer** A countercyclical factor that automatically comes into play as an economy slows and unemployment rises.
- Available-for-sale** Debt and equity securities not classified as either held-to-maturity or held-for-trading securities. The investor is willing to sell but not actively planning to sell. In general, available-for-sale securities are reported at fair value on the balance sheet.
- Average fixed cost** Total fixed cost divided by quantity produced.
- Average life** See *weighted average life*.
- Average product** Measures the productivity of inputs on average and is calculated by dividing total product by the total number of units for a given input that is used to generate that output.
- Average revenue** Total revenue divided by quantity sold.
- Average total cost** Total cost divided by quantity produced.
- Average variable cost** Total variable cost divided by quantity produced.
- Back simulation** Another term for the historical method of estimating VaR. This term is somewhat misleading in that the method involves not a *simulation* of the past but rather what *actually happened* in the past, sometimes adjusted to reflect the fact that a different portfolio may have existed in the past than is planned for the future.
- Back-testing** With reference to portfolio strategies, the application of a strategy's portfolio selection rules to historical data to assess what would have been the strategy's historical performance.

- Backup lines of credit** A type of credit enhancement provided by a bank to an issuer of commercial paper to ensure that the issuer will have access to sufficient liquidity to repay maturing commercial paper if issuing new paper is not a viable option.
- Balance of payments** A double-entry bookkeeping system that summarizes a country's economic transactions with the rest of the world for a particular period of time, typically a calendar quarter or year.
- Balance of trade deficit** When the domestic economy is spending more on foreign goods and services than foreign economies are spending on domestic goods and services.
- Balance sheet** The financial statement that presents an entity's current financial position by disclosing resources the entity controls (its assets) and the claims on those resources (its liabilities and equity claims), as of a particular point in time (the date of the balance sheet). Also called *statement of financial position* or *statement of financial condition*.
- Balance sheet ratios** Financial ratios involving balance sheet items only.
- Balanced** With respect to a government budget, one in which spending and revenues (taxes) are equal.
- Balloon payment** Large payment required at maturity to retire a bond's outstanding principal amount.
- Bank discount basis** A quoting convention that annualizes, on a 360-day year, the discount as a percentage of face value.
- Bar chart** A price chart with four bits of data for each time interval—the high, low, opening, and closing prices. A vertical line connects the high and low. A cross-hatch left indicates the opening price and a cross-hatch right indicates the close.
- Barter economy** An economy where economic agents as households, corporations, and governments “pay” for goods and services with another good or service.
- Base rates** The reference rate on which a bank bases lending rates to all other customers.
- Basic EPS** Net earnings available to common shareholders (i.e., net income minus preferred dividends) divided by the weighted average number of common shares outstanding.
- Basis point** Used in stating yield spreads, one basis point equals one-hundredth of a percentage point, or 0.01%.
- Basket of listed depository receipts** An exchange-traded fund (ETF) that represents a portfolio of depository receipts.
- Bearer bonds** Bonds for which ownership is not recorded; only the clearing system knows who the bond owner is.
- Behavioral finance** A field of finance that examines the psychological variables that affect and often distort the investment decision making of investors, analysts, and portfolio managers.
- Behind the market** Said of prices specified in orders that are worse than the best current price; e.g., for a limit buy order, a limit price below the best bid.
- Benchmark** A comparison portfolio; a point of reference or comparison.
- Benchmark issue** The latest sovereign bond issue for a given maturity. It serves as a benchmark against which to compare bonds that have the same features but that are issued by another type of issuer.
- Benchmark rate** Typically the yield-to-maturity on a government bond having the same, or close to the same, time-to-maturity.
- Benchmark spread** The yield spread over a specific benchmark, usually measured in basis points.
- Bermuda-style** Said of an option contract that can be exercised on specified dates up to the option's expiration date.
- Bernoulli random variable** A random variable having the outcomes 0 and 1.
- Bernoulli trial** An experiment that can produce one of two outcomes.
- Best bid** The highest bid in the market.
- Best effort offering** An offering of a security using an investment bank in which the investment bank, as agent for the issuer, promises to use its best efforts to sell the offering but does not guarantee that a specific amount will be sold.
- Best-in-class** An ESG implementation approach that seeks to identify the most favorable companies in an industry based on ESG considerations.
- Best offer** The lowest offer (ask price) in the market.
- Beta** A measure of the sensitivity of a given investment or portfolio to movements in the overall market.
- Bid** The price at which a dealer or trader is willing to buy an asset, typically qualified by a maximum quantity.
- Bid–ask spread** The difference between the prices at which dealers will buy from a customer (bid) and sell to a customer (offer or ask). It is often used as an indicator of liquidity.
- Bid–offer spread** The difference between the prices at which dealers will buy from a customer (bid) and sell to a customer (offer or ask). It is often used as an indicator of liquidity.
- Bid size** The maximum quantity of an asset that pertains to a specific bid price from a trader.
- Big Data** The vast amount of data being generated by industry, governments, individuals, and electronic devices that arises from both traditional and non-traditional data sources.
- Bilateral loan** A loan from a single lender to a single borrower.
- Binomial model** A model for pricing options in which the underlying price can move to only one of two possible new prices.
- Binomial random variable** The number of successes in n Bernoulli trials for which the probability of success is constant for all trials and the trials are independent.
- Binomial tree** The graphical representation of a model of asset price dynamics in which, at each period, the asset moves up with probability p or down with probability $(1 - p)$.
- Bitcoin** A cryptocurrency using blockchain technology that was created in 2009.
- Block brokers** A broker (agent) that provides brokerage services for large-size trades.
- Blockchain** A type of digital ledger in which information is recorded sequentially and then linked together and secured using cryptographic methods.
- Blue chip** Widely held large market capitalization companies that are considered financially sound and are leaders in their respective industry or local stock market.
- Bollinger Bands** A price-based technical analysis indicator consisting of a moving average plus a higher line representing the moving average plus a set number of standard deviations from average price (for the same number of periods as used to calculate the moving average) and a lower line that is a moving average minus the same number of standard deviations.
- Bond** Contractual agreement between the issuer and the bondholders.

- Bond equivalent yield** A calculation of yield that is annualized using the ratio of 365 to the number of days to maturity. Bond equivalent yield allows for the restatement and comparison of securities with different compounding periods.
- Bond indenture** The governing legal credit agreement, typically incorporated by reference in the prospectus. Also called *trust deed*.
- Bond market vigilantes** Bond market participants who might reduce their demand for long-term bonds, thus pushing up their yields.
- Bond yield plus risk premium approach** An estimate of the cost of common equity that is produced by summing the before-tax cost of debt and a risk premium that captures the additional yield on a company's stock relative to its bonds. The additional yield is often estimated using historical spreads between bond yields and stock yields.
- Bonus issue of shares** A type of dividend in which a company distributes additional shares of its common stock to shareholders instead of cash.
- Book building** Investment bankers' process of compiling a "book" or list of indications of interest to buy part of an offering.
- Book value** The net amount shown for an asset or liability on the balance sheet; book value may also refer to the company's excess of total assets over total liabilities. Also called *carrying value*.
- Boom** An expansionary phase characterized by economic growth "testing the limits" of the economy.
- Bottom-up analysis** With reference to investment selection processes, an approach that involves selection from all securities within a specified investment universe, i.e., without prior narrowing of the universe on the basis of macroeconomic or overall market considerations.
- Break point** In the context of the weighted average cost of capital (WACC), a break point is the amount of capital at which the cost of one or more of the sources of capital changes, leading to a change in the WACC.
- Breakeven point** The number of units produced and sold at which the company's net income is zero (Revenues = Total cost); in the case of perfect competition, the quantity at which price, average revenue, and marginal revenue equal average total cost.
- Bridge financing** Interim financing that provides funds until permanent financing can be arranged.
- Broad money** Encompasses narrow money plus the entire range of liquid assets that can be used to make purchases.
- Broker** 1) An agent who executes orders to buy or sell securities on behalf of a client in exchange for a commission. 2) See *futures commission merchants*.
- Broker-dealer** A financial intermediary (often a company) that may function as a principal (dealer) or as an agent (broker) depending on the type of trade.
- Brokered market** A market in which brokers arrange trades among their clients.
- Budget surplus/deficit** The difference between government revenue and expenditure for a stated fixed period of time.
- Business risk** The risk associated with operating earnings. Operating earnings are uncertain because total revenues and many of the expenditures contributed to produce those revenues are uncertain.
- Buy-side firm** An investment management company or other investor that uses the services of brokers or dealers (i.e., the client of the sell side firms).
- Buyback** A transaction in which a company buys back its own shares. Unlike stock dividends and stock splits, share repurchases use corporate cash.
- Buyout fund** A fund that buys all the shares of a public company so that, in effect, the company becomes private.
- Call** An option that gives the holder the right to buy an underlying asset from another party at a fixed price over a specific period of time.
- Call market** A market in which trades occur only at a particular time and place (i.e., when the market is called).
- Call money rate** The interest rate that buyers pay for their margin loan.
- Call option** An option that gives the holder the right to buy an underlying asset from another party at a fixed price over a specific period of time.
- Call protection** The time during which the issuer of the bond is not allowed to exercise the call option.
- Callable bond** A bond containing an embedded call option that gives the issuer the right to buy the bond back from the investor at specified prices on pre-determined dates.
- Callable common shares** Shares that give the issuing company the option (or right), but not the obligation, to buy back the shares from investors at a call price that is specified when the shares are originally issued.
- Candlestick chart** A price chart with four bits of data for each time interval. A candle indicates the opening and closing price for the interval. The body of the candle is shaded if the opening price was higher than the closing price, and the body is clear if the opening price was lower than the closing price. Vertical lines known as wicks or shadows extend from the top and bottom of the candle to indicate the high and the low prices for the interval.
- Cannibalization** Cannibalization occurs when an investment takes customers and sales away from another part of the company.
- Capacity** The ability of the borrower to make its debt payments on time.
- Capital account** A component of the balance of payments account that measures transfers of capital.
- Capital allocation line** (CAL) A graph line that describes the combinations of expected return and standard deviation of return available to an investor from combining the optimal portfolio of risky assets with the risk-free asset.
- Capital asset pricing model** (CAPM) An equation describing the expected return on any asset (or portfolio) as a linear function of its beta relative to the market portfolio.
- Capital budgeting** The allocation of funds to relatively long-range projects or investments.
- Capital consumption allowance** A measure of the wear and tear (depreciation) of the capital stock that occurs in the production of goods and services.
- Capital deepening investment** Increases the stock of capital relative to labor.
- Capital expenditure** Expenditure on physical capital (fixed assets).
- Capital-indexed bonds** Type of index-linked bond. The coupon rate is fixed but is applied to a principal amount that increases in line with increases in the index during the bond's life.
- Capital lease** See *finance lease*.
- Capital market expectations** An investor's expectations concerning the risk and return prospects of asset classes.

- Capital market line (CML)** The line with an intercept point equal to the risk-free rate that is tangent to the efficient frontier of risky assets; represents the efficient frontier when a risk-free asset is available for investment.
- Capital market securities** Securities with maturities at issuance longer than one year.
- Capital markets** Financial markets that trade securities of longer duration, such as bonds and equities.
- Capital rationing** A capital rationing environment assumes that the company has a fixed amount of funds to invest.
- Capital restrictions** Controls placed on foreigners' ability to own domestic assets and/or domestic residents' ability to own foreign assets.
- Capital stock** The accumulated amount of buildings, machinery, and equipment used to produce goods and services.
- Capital structure** The mix of debt and equity that a company uses to finance its business; a company's specific mixture of long-term financing.
- Captive finance subsidiary** A wholly-owned subsidiary of a company that is established to provide financing of the sales of the parent company.
- Carry** The net of the costs and benefits of holding, storing, or "carrying" an asset.
- Carrying amount** The amount at which an asset or liability is valued according to accounting principles.
- Carrying value** The net amount shown for an asset or liability on the balance sheet; book value may also refer to the company's excess of total assets over total liabilities. For a bond, the purchase price plus (or minus) the amortized amount of the discount (or premium).
- Cartel** Participants in collusive agreements that are made openly and formally.
- Cash collateral account** Form of external credit enhancement whereby the issuer immediately borrows the credit-enhancement amount and then invests that amount, usually in highly rated short-term commercial paper.
- Cash conversion cycle** A financial metric that measures the length of time required for a company to convert cash invested in its operations to cash received as a result of its operations; equal to days of inventory on hand + days of sales outstanding – number of days of payables. Also called *net operating cycle*.
- Cash flow additivity principle** The principle that dollar amounts indexed at the same point in time are additive.
- Cash flow from operating activities** The net amount of cash provided from operating activities.
- Cash flow from operations** The net amount of cash provided from operating activities.
- Cash flow yield** The internal rate of return on a series of cash flows.
- Cash market securities** Money market securities settled on a "same day" or "cash settlement" basis.
- Cash markets** See *spot markets*.
- Cash prices** See *spot prices*.
- Cash-settled forwards** See *non-deliverable forwards*.
- CBOE Volatility Index** A measure of near-term market volatility as conveyed by S&P 500 stock index option prices.
- CD equivalent yield** A yield on a basis comparable to the quoted yield on an interest-bearing money market instrument that pays interest on a 360-day basis; the annualized holding period yield, assuming a 360-day year.
- Central bank funds market** The market in which deposit-taking banks that have an excess reserve with their national central bank can loan money to banks that need funds for maturities ranging from overnight to one year. Called the Federal or Fed funds market in the United States.
- Central bank funds rates** Interest rates at which central bank funds are bought (borrowed) and sold (lent) for maturities ranging from overnight to one year. Called Federal or Fed funds rates in the United States.
- Central banks** The dominant bank in a country, usually with official or semi-official governmental status.
- Certificate of deposit** An instrument that represents a specified amount of funds on deposit with a bank for a specified maturity and interest rate. It is issued in small or large denominations, and can be negotiable or non-negotiable.
- Change in polarity principle** A tenet of technical analysis that once a support level is breached, it becomes a resistance level. The same holds true for resistance levels; once breached, they become support levels.
- Change of control put** A covenant giving bondholders the right to require the issuer to buy back their debt, often at par or at some small premium to par value, in the event that the borrower is acquired.
- Character** The quality of a debt issuer's management.
- Classified balance sheet** A balance sheet organized so as to group together the various assets and liabilities into subcategories (e.g., current and noncurrent).
- Clawback** A requirement that the general partner return any funds distributed as incentive fees until the limited partners have received back their initial investment and a percentage of the total profit.
- Clearing** The process by which the exchange verifies the execution of a transaction and records the participants' identities.
- Clearing instructions** Instructions that indicate how to arrange the final settlement ("clearing") of a trade.
- Clearinghouse** An entity associated with a futures market that acts as middleman between the contracting parties and guarantees to each party the performance of the other.
- Closed economy** An economy that does not trade with other countries; an *autarkic economy*.
- Closed-end fund** A mutual fund in which no new investment money is accepted. New investors invest by buying existing shares, and investors in the fund liquidate by selling their shares to other investors.
- Code of ethics** An established guide that communicates an organization's values and overall expectations regarding member behavior. A code of ethics serves as a general guide for how community members should act.
- Coefficient of variation (CV)** The ratio of a set of observations' standard deviation to the observations' mean value.
- Coincident economic indicators** Turning points that are usually close to those of the overall economy; they are believed to have value for identifying the economy's present state.
- Collateral manager** Buys and sells debt obligations for and from the CDO's portfolio of assets (i.e., the collateral) to generate sufficient cash flows to meet the obligations to the CDO bondholders.
- Collateral trust bonds** Bonds secured by securities such as common shares, other bonds, or other financial assets.
- Collateralized bond obligations** A structured asset-backed security that is collateralized by a pool of bonds.

- Collateralized debt obligation** Generic term used to describe a security backed by a diversified pool of one or more debt obligations.
- Collateralized loan obligations** A structured asset-backed security that is collateralized by a pool of loans.
- Collateralized mortgage obligation** A security created through the securitization of a pool of mortgage-related products (mortgage pass-through securities or pools of loans).
- Collaterals** Assets or financial guarantees underlying a debt obligation that are above and beyond the issuer's promise to pay.
- Combination** A listing in which the order of the listed items does not matter.
- Commercial paper** A short-term, negotiable, unsecured promissory note that represents a debt obligation of the issuer.
- Committed capital** The amount that the limited partners have agreed to provide to the private equity fund.
- Committed lines of credit** A bank commitment to extend credit up to a pre-specified amount; the commitment is considered a short-term liability and is usually in effect for 364 days (one day short of a full year).
- Commodity swap** A swap in which the underlying is a commodity such as oil, gold, or an agricultural product.
- Common market** Level of economic integration that incorporates all aspects of the customs union and extends it by allowing free movement of factors of production among members.
- Common shares** A type of security that represent an ownership interest in a company.
- Common-size analysis** The restatement of financial statement items using a common denominator or reference item that allows one to identify trends and major differences; an example is an income statement in which all items are expressed as a percent of revenue.
- Common stock** See *common shares*.
- Company analysis** Analysis of an individual company.
- Comparable company** A company that has similar business risk; usually in the same industry and preferably with a single line of business.
- Comparative advantage** A country's ability to produce a good or service at a lower relative cost, or opportunity cost, than its trading partner.
- Competitive strategy** A company's plans for responding to the threats and opportunities presented by the external environment.
- Complements** Goods that tend to be used together; technically, two goods whose cross-price elasticity of demand is negative.
- Complete markets** Informally, markets in which the variety of distinct securities traded is so broad that any desired payoff in a future state-of-the-world is achievable.
- Completed contract** A method of revenue recognition in which the company does not recognize any revenue until the contract is completed; used particularly in long-term construction contracts.
- Component cost of capital** The rate of return required by suppliers of capital for an individual source of a company's funding, such as debt or equity.
- Compounding** The process of accumulating interest on interest.
- Comprehensive income** The change in equity of a business enterprise during a period from nonowner sources; includes all changes in equity during a period except those resulting from investments by owners and distributions to owners; comprehensive income equals net income plus other comprehensive income.
- Conditional expected value** The expected value of a stated event given that another event has occurred.
- Conditional probability** The probability of an event given (conditioned on) another event.
- Conditional variances** The variance of one variable, given the outcome of another.
- Consistent** With reference to estimators, describes an estimator for which the probability of estimates close to the value of the population parameter increases as sample size increases.
- Constant-yield price trajectory** A graph that illustrates the change in the price of a fixed-income bond over time assuming no change in yield-to-maturity. The trajectory shows the "pull to par" effect on the price of a bond trading at a premium or a discount to par value.
- Constituent securities** With respect to an index, the individual securities within an index.
- Consumer surplus** The difference between the value that a consumer places on units purchased and the amount of money that was required to pay for them.
- Contingency provision** Clause in a legal document that allows for some action if a specific event or circumstance occurs.
- Contingent claims** Derivatives in which the payoffs occur if a specific event occurs; generally referred to as options.
- Contingent convertible bonds** Bonds that automatically convert into equity if a specific event or circumstance occurs, such as the issuer's equity capital falling below the minimum requirement set by the regulators. Also called *CoCos*.
- Continuation patterns** A type of pattern used in technical analysis to predict the resumption of a market trend that was in place prior to the formation of a pattern.
- Continuous random variable** A random variable for which the range of possible outcomes is the real line (all real numbers between $-\infty$ and $+\infty$ or some subset of the real line).
- Continuous time** Time thought of as advancing in extremely small increments.
- Continuous trading market** A market in which trades can be arranged and executed any time the market is open.
- Continuously compounded return** The natural logarithm of 1 plus the holding period return, or equivalently, the natural logarithm of the ending price over the beginning price.
- Contra account** An account that offsets another account.
- Contract rate** See *mortgage rate*.
- Contraction** The period of a business cycle after the peak and before the trough; often called a *recession* or, if exceptionally severe, called a *depression*.
- Contraction risk** The risk that when interest rates decline, the security will have a shorter maturity than was anticipated at the time of purchase because borrowers refinance at the new, lower interest rates.
- Contractionary** Tending to cause the real economy to contract.
- Contractionary fiscal policy** A fiscal policy that has the objective to make the real economy contract.
- Contracts for differences** See *non-deliverable forwards*.
- Contribution margin** The amount available for fixed costs and profit after paying variable costs; revenue minus variable costs.
- Controlling shareholders** A particular shareholder or block of shareholders holding a percentage of shares that gives them significant voting power.

- Convenience yield** A non-monetary advantage of holding an asset.
- Conventional bond** See *plain vanilla bond*.
- Conventional cash flow** A conventional cash flow pattern is one with an initial outflow followed by a series of inflows.
- Convergence** The tendency for differences in output per capita across countries to diminish over time; in technical analysis, a term that describes the case when an indicator moves in the same manner as the security being analyzed.
- Conversion price** For a convertible bond, the price per share at which the bond can be converted into shares.
- Conversion ratio** For a convertible bond, the number of common shares that each bond can be converted into.
- Conversion value** For a convertible bond, the current share price multiplied by the conversion ratio.
- Convertible bond** Bond that gives the bondholder the right to exchange the bond for a specified number of common shares in the issuing company.
- Convertible preference shares** A type of equity security that entitles shareholders to convert their shares into a specified number of common shares.
- Convexity adjustment** For a bond, one half of the annual or approximate convexity statistic multiplied by the change in the yield-to-maturity squared.
- Core inflation** The inflation rate calculated based on a price index of goods and services except food and energy.
- Corporate governance** The system of internal controls and procedures by which individual companies are managed.
- Correlation** A number between -1 and $+1$ that measures the comovement (linear association) between two random variables.
- Correlation coefficient** A number between -1 and $+1$ that measures the consistency or tendency for two investments to act in a similar way. It is used to determine the effect on portfolio risk when two assets are combined.
- Cost averaging** The periodic investment of a fixed amount of money.
- Cost of capital** The rate of return that suppliers of capital require as compensation for their contribution of capital.
- Cost of carry** See *carry*.
- Cost of debt** The cost of debt financing to a company, such as when it issues a bond or takes out a bank loan.
- Cost of preferred stock** The cost to a company of issuing preferred stock; the dividend yield that a company must commit to pay preferred stockholders.
- Cost-push** Type of inflation in which rising costs, usually wages, compel businesses to raise prices generally.
- Cost recovery method** A method of revenue recognition in which the seller does not report any profit until the cash amounts paid by the buyer—including principal and interest on any financing from the seller—are greater than all the seller's costs for the merchandise sold.
- Cost structure** The mix of a company's variable costs and fixed costs.
- Counterparty risk** The risk that the other party to a contract will fail to honor the terms of the contract.
- Coupon rate** The interest rate promised in a contract; this is the rate used to calculate the periodic interest payments.
- Cournot assumption** Assumption in which each firm determines its profit-maximizing production level assuming that the other firms' output will not change.
- Covariance** A measure of the co-movement (linear association) between two random variables.
- Covariance matrix** A matrix or square array whose entries are covariances; also known as a variance–covariance matrix.
- Covenants** The terms and conditions of lending agreements that the issuer must comply with; they specify the actions that an issuer is obligated to perform (affirmative covenant) or prohibited from performing (negative covenant).
- Covered bond** Debt obligation secured by a segregated pool of assets called the cover pool. The issuer must maintain the value of the cover pool. In the event of default, bondholders have recourse against both the issuer and the cover pool.
- Credit analysis** The evaluation of credit risk; the evaluation of the creditworthiness of a borrower or counterparty.
- Credit curve** A curve showing the relationship between time to maturity and yield spread for an issuer with comparable bonds of various maturities outstanding, usually upward sloping.
- Credit default swap (CDS)** A type of credit derivative in which one party, the credit protection buyer who is seeking credit protection against a third party, makes a series of regularly scheduled payments to the other party, the credit protection seller. The seller makes no payments until a credit event occurs.
- Credit derivatives** A contract in which one party has the right to claim a payment from another party in the event that a specific credit event occurs over the life of the contract.
- Credit enhancements** Provisions that may be used to reduce the credit risk of a bond issue.
- Credit-linked coupon bond** Bond for which the coupon changes when the bond's credit rating changes.
- Credit-linked note (CLN)** Fixed-income security in which the holder of the security has the right to withhold payment of the full amount due at maturity if a credit event occurs.
- Credit migration risk** The risk that a bond issuer's creditworthiness deteriorates, or migrates lower, leading investors to believe the risk of default is higher. Also called *downgrade risk*.
- Credit risk** The risk of loss caused by a counterparty's or debtor's failure to make a promised payment. Also called *default risk*.
- Credit scoring model** A statistical model used to classify borrowers according to creditworthiness.
- Credit spread option** An option on the yield spread on a bond.
- Credit tranching** A structure used to redistribute the credit risk associated with the collateral; a set of bond classes created to allow investors a choice in the amount of credit risk that they prefer to bear.
- Credit-worthiness** The perceived ability of the borrower to pay what is owed on the borrowing in a timely manner; it represents the ability of a company to withstand adverse impacts on its cash flows.
- Cross-default provisions** Provisions whereby events of default such as non-payment of interest on one bond trigger default on all outstanding debt; implies the same default probability for all issues.
- Cross-price elasticity of demand** The percentage change in quantity demanded for a given percentage change in the price of another good; the responsiveness of the demand for Product A that is associated with the change in price of Product B.
- Cross-sectional analysis** Analysis that involves comparisons across individuals in a group over a given time period or at a given point in time.
- Cross-sectional data** Observations over individual units at a point in time, as opposed to time-series data.

- Crossing networks** Trading systems that match buyers and sellers who are willing to trade at prices obtained from other markets.
- Crowding out** The thesis that government borrowing may divert private sector investment from taking place.
- Cryptocurrency** An electronic medium of exchange that lacks physical form.
- Cryptography** An algorithmic process to encrypt data, making the data unusable if received by unauthorized parties.
- Cumulative distribution function** A function giving the probability that a random variable is less than or equal to a specified value.
- Cumulative preference shares** Preference shares for which any dividends that are not paid accrue and must be paid in full before dividends on common shares can be paid.
- Cumulative relative frequency** For data grouped into intervals, the fraction of total observations that are less than the value of the upper limit of a stated interval.
- Cumulative voting** A voting process whereby each shareholder can accumulate and vote all his or her shares for a single candidate in an election, as opposed to having to allocate their voting rights evenly among all candidates.
- Currencies** Monies issued by national monetary authorities.
- Currency option bonds** Bonds that give the bondholder the right to choose the currency in which he or she wants to receive interest payments and principal repayments.
- Currency swap** A swap in which each party makes interest payments to the other in different currencies.
- Current account** A component of the balance of payments account that measures the flow of goods and services.
- Current assets** Assets that are expected to be consumed or converted into cash in the near future, typically one year or less. *Also called liquid assets.*
- Current cost** With reference to assets, the amount of cash or cash equivalents that would have to be paid to buy the same or an equivalent asset today; with reference to liabilities, the undiscounted amount of cash or cash equivalents that would be required to settle the obligation today.
- Current government spending** With respect to government expenditures, spending on goods and services that are provided on a regular, recurring basis including health, education, and defense.
- Current liabilities** Short-term obligations, such as accounts payable, wages payable, or accrued liabilities, that are expected to be settled in the near future, typically one year or less.
- Current ratio** A liquidity ratio calculated as current assets divided by current liabilities.
- Current yield** The sum of the coupon payments received over the year divided by the flat price; also called the *income or interest yield or running yield.*
- Curve duration** The sensitivity of the bond price (or the market value of a financial asset or liability) with respect to a benchmark yield curve.
- Customs union** Extends the free trade area (FTA) by not only allowing free movement of goods and services among members, but also creating a common trade policy against nonmembers.
- CVaR** Conditional VaR, a tail loss measure. The weighted average of all loss outcomes in the statistical distribution that exceed the VaR loss.
- Cyclical** See *cyclical companies.*
- Cyclical companies** Companies with sales and profits that regularly expand and contract with the business cycle or state of economy.
- Daily settlement** See *mark to market* and *marking to market.*
- Dark pools** Alternative trading systems that do not display the orders that their clients send to them.
- Data mining** The practice of determining a model by extensive searching through a dataset for statistically significant patterns. Also called *data snooping.*
- Data science** An interdisciplinary field that brings computer science, statistics, and other disciplines together to analyze and produce insights from Big Data.
- Data snooping** See *data mining.*
- Day order** An order that is good for the day on which it is submitted. If it has not been filled by the close of business, the order expires unfilled.
- Day's sales outstanding** Estimate of the average number of days it takes to collect on credit accounts.
- Days in receivables** Estimate of the average number of days it takes to collect on credit accounts.
- Days of inventory on hand** An activity ratio equal to the number of days in the period divided by inventory turnover over the period.
- Dead cross** A technical analysis term that describes a situation where a short-term moving average crosses from above a longer-term moving average to below it; this movement is considered bearish.
- Dealers** A financial intermediary that acts as a principal in trades.
- Dealing securities** Securities held by banks or other financial intermediaries for trading purposes.
- Debentures** Type of bond that can be secured or unsecured.
- Debt incurrence test** A financial covenant made in conjunction with existing debt that restricts a company's ability to incur additional debt at the same seniority based on one or more financial tests or conditions.
- Debt-rating approach** A method for estimating a company's before-tax cost of debt based upon the yield on comparably rated bonds for maturities that closely match that of the company's existing debt.
- Debt-to-assets ratio** A solvency ratio calculated as total debt divided by total assets.
- Debt-to-capital ratio** A solvency ratio calculated as total debt divided by total debt plus total shareholders' equity.
- Debt-to-equity ratio** A solvency ratio calculated as total debt divided by total shareholders' equity.
- Declaration date** The day that the corporation issues a statement declaring a specific dividend.
- Decreasing returns to scale** When a production process leads to increases in output that are proportionately smaller than the increase in inputs.
- Deductible temporary differences** Temporary differences that result in a reduction of or deduction from taxable income in a future period when the balance sheet item is recovered or settled.
- Deep learning** Machine learning using neural networks with many hidden layers.
- Deep learning nets** Machine learning using neural networks with many hidden layers.
- Default probability** The probability that a borrower defaults or fails to meet its obligation to make full and timely payments of principal and interest, according to the terms of the debt security. Also called *default risk.*

- Default risk** The probability that a borrower defaults or fails to meet its obligation to make full and timely payments of principal and interest, according to the terms of the debt security. Also called *default probability*.
- Default risk premium** An extra return that compensates investors for the possibility that the borrower will fail to make a promised payment at the contracted time and in the contracted amount.
- Defensive companies** Companies with sales and profits that have little sensitivity to the business cycle or state of the economy.
- Defensive interval ratio** A liquidity ratio that estimates the number of days that an entity could meet cash needs from liquid assets; calculated as (cash + short-term marketable investments + receivables) divided by daily cash expenditures.
- Deferred coupon bond** Bond that pays no coupons for its first few years but then pays a higher coupon than it otherwise normally would for the remainder of its life. Also called *split coupon bond*.
- Deferred income** A liability account for money that has been collected for goods or services that have not yet been delivered; payment received in advance of providing a good or service.
- Deferred revenue** A liability account for money that has been collected for goods or services that have not yet been delivered; payment received in advance of providing a good or service.
- Deferred tax assets** A balance sheet asset that arises when an excess amount is paid for income taxes relative to accounting profit. The taxable income is higher than accounting profit and income tax payable exceeds tax expense. The company expects to recover the difference during the course of future operations when tax expense exceeds income tax payable.
- Deferred tax liabilities** A balance sheet liability that arises when a deficit amount is paid for income taxes relative to accounting profit. The taxable income is less than the accounting profit and income tax payable is less than tax expense. The company expects to eliminate the liability over the course of future operations when income tax payable exceeds tax expense.
- Defined benefit pension plans** Plans in which the company promises to pay a certain annual amount (defined benefit) to the employee after retirement. The company bears the investment risk of the plan assets.
- Defined contribution pension plans** Individual accounts to which an employee and typically the employer makes contributions, generally on a tax-advantaged basis. The amounts of contributions are defined at the outset, but the future value of the benefit is unknown. The employee bears the investment risk of the plan assets.
- Deflation** Negative inflation.
- Degree of confidence** The probability that a confidence interval includes the unknown population parameter.
- Degree of financial leverage** (DFL) The ratio of the percentage change in net income to the percentage change in operating income; the sensitivity of the cash flows available to owners when operating income changes.
- Degree of operating leverage** (DOL) The ratio of the percentage change in operating income to the percentage change in units sold; the sensitivity of operating income to changes in units sold.
- Degree of total leverage** The ratio of the percentage change in net income to the percentage change in units sold; the sensitivity of the cash flows to owners to changes in the number of units produced and sold.
- Degrees of freedom (df)** The number of independent observations used.
- Delta** The sensitivity of the derivative price to a small change in the value of the underlying asset.
- Demand curve** Graph of the inverse demand function. A graph showing the demand relation, either the highest quantity willingly purchased at each price or the highest price willingly paid for each quantity.
- Demand function** A relationship that expresses the quantity demanded of a good or service as a function of own-price and possibly other variables.
- Demand-pull** Type of inflation in which increasing demand raises prices generally, which then are reflected in a business's costs as workers demand wage hikes to catch up with the rising cost of living.
- Demand shock** A typically unexpected disturbance to demand, such as an unexpected interruption in trade or transportation.
- Dependent** With reference to events, the property that the probability of one event occurring depends on (is related to) the occurrence of another event.
- Depository bank** A bank that raises funds from depositors and other investors and lends it to borrowers.
- Depository institutions** Commercial banks, savings and loan banks, credit unions, and similar institutions that raise funds from depositors and other investors and lend it to borrowers.
- Depository receipt** A security that trades like an ordinary share on a local exchange and represents an economic interest in a foreign company.
- Depreciation** The process of systematically allocating the cost of long-lived (tangible) assets to the periods during which the assets are expected to provide economic benefits.
- Depression** See *contraction*.
- Derivative pricing rule** A pricing rule used by crossing networks in which a price is taken (derived) from the price that is current in the asset's primary market.
- Derivatives** A financial instrument whose value depends on the value of some underlying asset or factor (e.g., a stock price, an interest rate, or exchange rate).
- Descriptive statistics** The study of how data can be summarized effectively.
- Development capital** Minority equity investments in more-mature companies that are seeking capital to expand or restructure operations, enter new markets, or finance major acquisitions.
- Diffuse prior** The assumption of equal prior probabilities.
- Diffusion index** Reflects the proportion of the index's components that are moving in a pattern consistent with the overall index.
- Diluted EPS** The EPS that would result if all dilutive securities were converted into common shares.
- Diluted shares** The number of shares that would be outstanding if all potentially dilutive claims on common shares (e.g., convertible debt, convertible preferred stock, and employee stock options) were exercised.
- Diminishing balance method** An accelerated depreciation method, i.e., one that allocates a relatively large proportion of the cost of an asset to the early years of the asset's useful life.

- Diminishing marginal productivity** Describes a state in which each additional unit of input produces less output than previously.
- Direct debit program** An arrangement whereby a customer authorizes a debit to a demand account; typically used by companies to collect routine payments for services.
- Direct financing leases** A type of finance lease, from a lessor perspective, where the present value of the lease payments (lease receivable) equals the carrying value of the leased asset. The revenues earned by the lessor are financing in nature.
- Direct format** With reference to the cash flow statement, a format for the presentation of the statement in which cash flow from operating activities is shown as operating cash receipts less operating cash disbursements. Also called *direct method*.
- Direct method** See *direct format*.
- Direct taxes** Taxes levied directly on income, wealth, and corporate profits.
- Direct write-off method** An approach to recognizing credit losses on customer receivables in which the company waits until such time as a customer has defaulted and only then recognizes the loss.
- Disbursement float** The amount of time between check issuance and a check's clearing back against the company's account.
- Discount** To reduce the value of a future payment in allowance for how far away it is in time; to calculate the present value of some future amount. Also, the amount by which an instrument is priced below its face (par) value.
- Discount interest** A procedure for determining the interest on a loan or bond in which the interest is deducted from the face value in advance.
- Discount margin** See *required margin*.
- Discount rates** In general, the interest rate used to calculate a present value. In the money market, however, discount rate is a specific type of quoted rate.
- Discounted cash flow models** Valuation models that estimate the intrinsic value of a security as the present value of the future benefits expected to be received from the security.
- Discouraged worker** A person who has stopped looking for a job or has given up seeking employment.
- Discrete random variable** A random variable that can take on at most a countable number of possible values.
- Discriminatory pricing rule** A pricing rule used in continuous markets in which the limit price of the order or quote that first arrived determines the trade price.
- Diseconomies of scale** Increase in cost per unit resulting from increased production.
- Dispersion** The variability around the central tendency.
- Display size** The size of an order displayed to public view.
- Distressed investing** Investing in securities of companies in financial difficulties. Private equity funds that specialize in distressed investing typically buy the debt of mature companies in financial difficulties.
- Distributed ledger** A type of database that may be shared among entities in a network.
- Distributed ledger technology** Technology based on a distributed ledger.
- Divergence** In technical analysis, a term that describes the case when an indicator moves differently from the security being analyzed.
- Diversification ratio** The ratio of the standard deviation of an equally weighted portfolio to the standard deviation of a randomly selected security.
- Dividend** A distribution paid to shareholders based on the number of shares owned.
- Dividend discount model** (DDM) A present value model that estimates the intrinsic value of an equity share based on the present value of its expected future dividends.
- Dividend discount model based approach** An approach for estimating a country's equity risk premium. The market rate of return is estimated as the sum of the dividend yield and the growth rate in dividends for a market index. Subtracting the risk-free rate of return from the estimated market return produces an estimate for the equity risk premium.
- Dividend payout ratio** The ratio of cash dividends paid to earnings for a period.
- Divisor** A number (denominator) used to determine the value of a price return index. It is initially chosen at the inception of an index and subsequently adjusted by the index provider, as necessary, to avoid changes in the index value that are unrelated to changes in the prices of its constituent securities.
- Domestic content provisions** Stipulate that some percentage of the value added or components used in production should be of domestic origin.
- Double bottoms** In technical analysis, a reversal pattern that is formed when the price reaches a low, rebounds, and then sells off back to the first low level; used to predict a change from a downtrend to an uptrend.
- Double coincidence of wants** A prerequisite to barter trades, in particular that both economic agents in the transaction want what the other is selling.
- Double declining balance depreciation** An accelerated depreciation method that involves depreciating the asset at double the straight-line rate. This rate is multiplied by the book value of the asset at the beginning of the period (a declining balance) to calculate depreciation expense.
- Double top** In technical analysis, a reversal pattern that is formed when an uptrend reverses twice at roughly the same high price level; used to predict a change from an uptrend to a downtrend.
- Down transition probability** The probability that an asset's value moves down in a model of asset price dynamics.
- Downgrade risk** The risk that a bond issuer's creditworthiness deteriorates, or migrates lower, leading investors to believe the risk of default is higher. Also called *credit migration risk*.
- Drag on liquidity** When receipts lag, creating pressure from the decreased available funds.
- Drawdown** A percentage peak-to-trough reduction in net asset value.
- Dual-currency bonds** Bonds that make coupon payments in one currency and pay the par value at maturity in another currency.
- DuPont analysis** An approach to decomposing return on investment, e.g., return on equity, as the product of other financial ratios.
- Duration** A measure of the approximate sensitivity of a security to a change in interest rates (i.e., a measure of interest rate risk).
- Duration gap** A bond's Macaulay duration minus the investment horizon.
- Dutch Book theorem** A result in probability theory stating that inconsistent probabilities create profit opportunities.
- Early repayment option** See *prepayment option*.

- Earnings per share** The amount of income earned during a period per share of common stock.
- Earnings surprise** The portion of a company's earnings that is unanticipated by investors and, according to the efficient market hypothesis, merits a price adjustment.
- Economic costs** All the remuneration needed to keep a productive resource in its current employment or to acquire the resource for productive use; the sum of total accounting costs and implicit opportunity costs.
- Economic indicator** A variable that provides information on the state of the overall economy.
- Economic loss** The amount by which accounting profit is less than normal profit.
- Economic order quantity–reorder point (EOQ–ROP)** An approach to managing inventory based on expected demand and the predictability of demand; the ordering point for new inventory is determined based on the costs of ordering and carrying inventory, such that the total cost associated with inventory is minimized.
- Economic profit** Equal to accounting profit less the implicit opportunity costs not included in total accounting costs; the difference between total revenue (TR) and total cost (TC). Also called *abnormal profit* or *supernormal profit*.
- Economic stabilization** Reduction of the magnitude of economic fluctuations.
- Economic union** Incorporates all aspects of a common market and in addition requires common economic institutions and coordination of economic policies among members.
- Economies of scale** Reduction in cost per unit resulting from increased production.
- Effective annual rate** The amount by which a unit of currency will grow in a year with interest on interest included.
- Effective annual yield (EAY)** An annualized return that accounts for the effect of interest on interest; EAY is computed by compounding 1 plus the holding period yield forward to one year, then subtracting 1.
- Effective convexity** A *curve convexity* statistic that measures the secondary effect of a change in a benchmark yield curve on a bond's price.
- Effective duration** The sensitivity of a bond's price to a change in a benchmark yield curve.
- Effective interest rate** The borrowing rate or market rate that a company incurs at the time of issuance of a bond.
- Efficient market** A market in which asset prices reflect new information quickly and rationally.
- Elastic** Said of a good or service when the magnitude of elasticity is greater than one.
- Elasticity** The percentage change in one variable for a percentage change in another variable; a general measure of how sensitive one variable is to a change in the value of another variable.
- Elasticity of demand** A measure of the sensitivity of quantity demanded to a change in a product's own price: $\% \Delta Q^D / \% \Delta P$.
- Elasticity of supply** A measure of the sensitivity of quantity supplied to a change in price: $\% \Delta Q^S / \% \Delta P$.
- Electronic communications networks** See *alternative trading systems*.
- Electronic funds transfer (EFT)** The use of computer networks to conduct financial transactions electronically.
- Elliott wave theory** A technical analysis theory that claims that the market follows regular, repeated waves or cycles.
- Embedded option** Contingency provisions that provide the issuer or the bondholders the right, but not the obligation, to take action. These options are not part of the security and cannot be traded separately.
- Empirical probability** The probability of an event estimated as a relative frequency of occurrence.
- Employed** The number of people with a job.
- Enterprise risk management** An overall assessment of a company's risk position. A centralized approach to risk management sometimes called firmwide risk management.
- Enterprise value** A measure of a company's total market value from which the value of cash and short-term investments have been subtracted.
- Equal weighting** An index weighting method in which an equal weight is assigned to each constituent security at inception.
- Equipment trust certificates** Bonds secured by specific types of equipment or physical assets.
- Equity** Assets less liabilities; the residual interest in the assets after subtracting the liabilities.
- Equity risk premium** The expected return on equities minus the risk-free rate; the premium that investors demand for investing in equities.
- Equity swap** A swap transaction in which at least one cash flow is tied to the return to an equity portfolio position, often an equity index.
- ESG** An acronym that encompasses environmental, social and governance.
- ESG incorporation** The integration of qualitative and quantitative environmental, social, and governance factors into traditional security and industry analysis; also known as *ESG integration*.
- ESG integration** The integration of qualitative and quantitative environmental, social, and governance factors into traditional security and industry analysis; also known as *ESG incorporation*.
- ESG investing** The consideration of environmental, social, and governance factors in the investment process.
- Estimate** The particular value calculated from sample observations using an estimator.
- Estimation** With reference to statistical inference, the subdivision dealing with estimating the value of a population parameter.
- Estimator** An estimation formula; the formula used to compute the sample mean and other sample statistics are examples of estimators.
- Ethical principles** Beliefs regarding what is good, acceptable, or obligatory behavior and what is bad, unacceptable, or forbidden behavior.
- Ethics** The study of moral principles or of making good choices. Ethics encompasses a set of moral principles and rules of conduct that provide guidance for our behavior.
- Eurobonds** Type of bond issued internationally, outside the jurisdiction of the country in whose currency the bond is denominated.
- European option** An option that can only be exercised on its expiration date.
- European-style** Said of an option contract that can only be exercised on the option's expiration date.
- Event** Any outcome or specified set of outcomes of a random variable.
- Ex-dividend date** The first date that a share trades without (i.e., "ex") the dividend.

- Excess kurtosis** Degree of kurtosis (fatness of tails) in excess of the kurtosis of the normal distribution.
- Exchanges** Places where traders can meet to arrange their trades.
- Exclusionary screening** An ESG implementation approach that excludes certain sectors or companies that deviate from an investor's accepted standards. Also called *negative screening* or *norms-based screening*.
- Execution instructions** Instructions that indicate how to fill an order.
- Exercise** The process of using an option to buy or sell the underlying.
- Exercise price** The fixed price at which an option holder can buy or sell the underlying. Also called *strike price*, *striking price*, or *strike*.
- Exercise value** The value obtained if an option is exercised based on current conditions. Also known as *intrinsic value*.
- Exhaustive** Covering or containing all possible outcomes.
- Expansion** The period of a business cycle after its lowest point and before its highest point.
- Expansionary** Tending to cause the real economy to grow.
- Expansionary fiscal policy** Fiscal policy aimed at achieving real economic growth.
- Expected inflation** The level of inflation that economic agents expect in the future.
- Expected loss** Default probability times Loss severity given default.
- Expected value** The probability-weighted average of the possible outcomes of a random variable.
- Expenses** Outflows of economic resources or increases in liabilities that result in decreases in equity (other than decreases because of distributions to owners); reductions in net assets associated with the creation of revenues.
- Experience curve** A curve that shows the direct cost per unit of good or service produced or delivered as a typically declining function of cumulative output.
- Export subsidy** Paid by the government to the firm when it exports a unit of a good that is being subsidized.
- Exports** Goods and services that an economy sells to other countries.
- Extension risk** The risk that when interest rates rise, fewer prepayments will occur because homeowners are reluctant to give up the benefits of a contractual interest rate that now looks low. As a result, the security becomes longer in maturity than anticipated at the time of purchase.
- Externality** An effect of a market transaction that is borne by parties other than those who transacted.
- Extra dividend** A dividend paid by a company that does not pay dividends on a regular schedule, or a dividend that supplements regular cash dividends with an extra payment.
- Extreme value theory** A branch of statistics that focuses primarily on extreme outcomes.
- Face value** The amount of cash payable by a company to the bondholders when the bonds mature; the promised payment at maturity separate from any coupon payment.
- Factor** A common or underlying element with which several variables are correlated.
- Fair value** The amount at which an asset could be exchanged, or a liability settled, between knowledgeable, willing parties in an arm's-length transaction; the price that would be received to sell an asset or paid to transfer a liability in an orderly transaction between market participants.
- Fed funds rate** The US interbank lending rate on overnight borrowings of reserves.
- Federal funds rate** The US interbank lending rate on overnight borrowings of reserves.
- Fiat money** Money that is not convertible into any other commodity.
- Fibonacci sequence** A sequence of numbers starting with 0 and 1, and then each subsequent number in the sequence is the sum of the two preceding numbers. In Elliott Wave Theory, it is believed that market waves follow patterns that are the ratios of the numbers in the Fibonacci sequence.
- Fiduciary call** A combination of a European call and a risk-free bond that matures on the option expiration day and has a face value equal to the exercise price of the call.
- FIFO method** The first in, first out, method of accounting for inventory, which matches sales against the costs of items of inventory in the order in which they were placed in inventory.
- Fill or kill** See *immediate or cancel order*.
- Finance lease** Essentially, the purchase of some asset by the buyer (lessee) that is directly financed by the seller (lessor). Also called *capital lease*.
- Financial account** A component of the balance of payments account that records investment flows.
- Financial flexibility** The ability to react and adapt to financial adversities and opportunities.
- Financial leverage** The extent to which a company can effect, through the use of debt, a proportional change in the return on common equity that is greater than a given proportional change in operating income; also, short for the financial leverage ratio.
- Financial leverage ratio** A measure of financial leverage calculated as average total assets divided by average total equity.
- Financial risk** The risk that environmental, social, or governance risk factors will result in significant costs or other losses to a company and its shareholders; the risk arising from a company's obligation to meet required payments under its financing agreements.
- Financing activities** Activities related to obtaining or repaying capital to be used in the business (e.g., equity and long-term debt).
- Fintech** Technological innovation in the design and delivery of financial services and products in the financial industry.
- Firm commitment offering** See *underwritten offering*.
- First-degree price discrimination** Where a monopolist is able to charge each customer the highest price the customer is willing to pay.
- First lien debt** Debt secured by a pledge of certain assets that could include buildings, but may also include property and equipment, licenses, patents, brands, etc.
- First mortgage debt** Debt secured by a pledge of a specific property.
- Fiscal multiplier** The ratio of a change in national income to a change in government spending.
- Fiscal policy** The use of taxes and government spending to affect the level of aggregate expenditures.
- Fisher effect** The thesis that the real rate of interest in an economy is stable over time so that changes in nominal interest rates are the result of changes in expected inflation.
- Fisher index** The geometric mean of the Laspeyres index.
- Fixed charge coverage** A solvency ratio measuring the number of times interest and lease payments are covered by operating income, calculated as (EBIT + lease payments) divided by (interest payments + lease payments).
- Fixed costs** Costs that remain at the same level regardless of a company's level of production and sales.

- Fixed-for-floating interest rate swap** An interest rate swap in which one party pays a fixed rate and the other pays a floating rate, with both sets of payments in the same currency. Also called *plain vanilla swap* or *vanilla swap*.
- Fixed rate perpetual preferred stock** Nonconvertible, non-callable preferred stock that has a fixed dividend rate and no maturity date.
- Flags** A technical analysis continuation pattern formed by parallel trendlines, typically over a short period.
- Flat price** The full price of a bond minus the accrued interest; also called the *quoted* or *clean* price.
- Float** In the context of customer receipts, the amount of money that is in transit between payments made by customers and the funds that are usable by the company.
- Float-adjusted market-capitalization weighting** An index weighting method in which the weight assigned to each constituent security is determined by adjusting its market capitalization for its market float.
- Float factor** An estimate of the average number of days it takes deposited checks to clear; average daily float divided by average daily deposit.
- Floater** See *floating-rate notes*.
- Floating-rate notes** A note on which interest payments are not fixed, but instead vary from period to period depending on the current level of a reference interest rate.
- Flotation cost** Fees charged to companies by investment bankers and other costs associated with raising new capital.
- Foreclosure** Allows the lender to take possession of a mortgaged property if the borrower defaults and then sell it to recover funds.
- Foreign currency reserves** Holding by the central bank of non-domestic currency deposits and non-domestic bonds.
- Foreign direct investment** Direct investment by a firm in one country (the source country) in productive assets in a foreign country (the host country).
- Foreign exchange gains (or losses)** Gains (or losses) that occur when the exchange rate changes between the investor's currency and the currency that foreign securities are denominated in.
- Foreign portfolio investment** Shorter-term investment by individuals, firms, and institutional investors (e.g., pension funds) in foreign financial instruments such as foreign stocks and foreign government bonds.
- Forward commitments** Class of derivatives that provides the ability to lock in a price to transact in the future at a previously agreed-upon price.
- Forward contract** An agreement between two parties in which one party, the buyer, agrees to buy from the other party, the seller, an underlying asset at a later date for a price established at the start of the contract.
- Forward curve** A series of forward rates, each having the same timeframe.
- Forward market** For future delivery, beyond the usual settlement time period in the cash market.
- Forward price** The fixed price or rate at which the transaction scheduled to occur at the expiration of a forward contract will take place. This price is agreed on at the initiation date of the contract.
- Forward rate** The interest rate on a bond or money market instrument traded in a forward market. A forward rate can be interpreted as an incremental, or marginal, return for extending the time-to-maturity for an additional time period.
- Forward rate agreements** A forward contract calling for one party to make a fixed interest payment and the other to make an interest payment at a rate to be determined at the contract expiration.
- Fractile** A value at or below which a stated fraction of the data lies.
- Fractional reserve banking** Banking in which reserves constitute a fraction of deposits.
- Free cash flow** The actual cash that would be available to the company's investors after making all investments necessary to maintain the company as an ongoing enterprise (also referred to as free cash flow to the firm); the internally generated funds that can be distributed to the company's investors (e.g., shareholders and bondholders) without impairing the value of the company.
- Free cash flow to equity (FCFE)** The cash flow available to a company's common shareholders after all operating expenses, interest, and principal payments have been made, and necessary investments in working and fixed capital have been made.
- Free-cash-flow-to-equity models** Valuation models based on discounting expected future free cash flow to equity.
- Free cash flow to the firm (FCFF)** The cash flow available to the company's suppliers of capital after all operating expenses have been paid and necessary investments in working capital and fixed capital have been made.
- Free float** The number of shares that are readily and freely tradable in the secondary market.
- Free trade** When there are no government restrictions on a country's ability to trade.
- Free trade areas** One of the most prevalent forms of regional integration, in which all barriers to the flow of goods and services among members have been eliminated.
- Frequency distribution** A tabular display of data summarized into a relatively small number of intervals.
- Frequency polygon** A graph of a frequency distribution obtained by drawing straight lines joining successive points representing the class frequencies.
- Full price** The price of a security with accrued interest; also called the *invoice* or *dirty* price.
- Fundamental analysis** The examination of publicly available information and the formulation of forecasts to estimate the intrinsic value of assets.
- Fundamental value** The underlying or true value of an asset based on an analysis of its qualitative and quantitative characteristics. Also called *intrinsic value*.
- Fundamental weighting** An index weighting method in which the weight assigned to each constituent security is based on its underlying company's size. It attempts to address the disadvantages of market-capitalization weighting by using measures that are independent of the constituent security's price.
- Funds of funds** Funds that hold a portfolio of hedge funds.
- Funds of hedge funds** Funds that hold a portfolio of hedge funds.
- Future value (FV)** The amount to which a payment or series of payments will grow by a stated future date.
- Futures contract** A variation of a forward contract that has essentially the same basic definition but with some additional features, such as a clearinghouse guarantee against credit losses, a daily settlement of gains and losses, and an organized electronic or floor trading facility.
- Futures price** The agreed-upon price of a futures contract.

- FX swap** The combination of a spot and a forward FX transaction.
- G-spread** The yield spread in basis points over an actual or interpolated government bond.
- Gains** Asset inflows not directly related to the ordinary activities of the business.
- Game theory** The set of tools decision makers use to incorporate responses by rival decision makers into their strategies.
- Gamma** A numerical measure of how sensitive an option's delta (the sensitivity of the derivative's price) is to a change in the value of the underlying.
- GDP deflator** A gauge of prices and inflation that measures the aggregate changes in prices across the overall economy.
- General partner** (GP) The partner that runs the business and theoretically bears unlimited liability.
- Geometric mean** A measure of central tendency computed by taking the n th root of the product of n non-negative values.
- Giffen goods** Goods that are consumed more as the price of the good rises because it is a very inferior good whose income effect overwhelms its substitution effect when price changes.
- Gilts** Bonds issued by the UK government.
- Giro system** An electronic payment system used widely in Europe and Japan.
- Global depository receipt** A depository receipt that is issued outside of the company's home country and outside of the United States.
- Global minimum-variance portfolio** The portfolio on the minimum-variance frontier with the smallest variance of return.
- Global registered share** A common share that is traded on different stock exchanges around the world in different currencies.
- Gold standard** With respect to a currency, if a currency is on the gold standard a given amount can be converted into a prespecified amount of gold.
- Golden cross** A technical analysis term that describes a situation where a short-term moving average crosses from below a longer-term moving average to above it; this movement is considered bullish.
- Good-on-close** An execution instruction specifying that an order can only be filled at the close of trading. Also called *market on close*.
- Good-on-open** An execution instruction specifying that an order can only be filled at the opening of trading.
- Good-till-cancelled order** An order specifying that it is valid until the entity placing the order has cancelled it (or, commonly, until some specified amount of time such as 60 days has elapsed, whichever comes sooner).
- Goodwill** An intangible asset that represents the excess of the purchase price of an acquired company over the value of the net assets acquired.
- Government equivalent yield** A yield that restates a yield-to-maturity based on 30/360 day-count to one based on actual/actual.
- Green bonds** A bond used in green finance whereby the proceeds are earmarked towards environmental-related products.
- Green finance** A type of finance that addresses environmental concerns while achieving economic growth.
- Grey market** The forward market for bonds about to be issued. Also called "when issued" market.
- Gross domestic product** The market value of all final goods and services produced within the economy in a given period of time (output definition) or, equivalently, the aggregate income earned by all households, all companies, and the government within the economy in a given period of time (income definition).
- Gross margin** Sales minus the cost of sales (i.e., the cost of goods sold for a manufacturing company).
- Gross profit** Sales minus the cost of sales (i.e., the cost of goods sold for a manufacturing company).
- Gross profit margin** The ratio of gross profit to revenues.
- Grouping by function** With reference to the presentation of expenses in an income statement, the grouping together of expenses serving the same function, e.g. all items that are costs of goods sold.
- Grouping by nature** With reference to the presentation of expenses in an income statement, the grouping together of expenses by similar nature, e.g., all depreciation expenses.
- Growth cyclical** A term sometimes used to describe companies that are growing rapidly on a long-term basis but that still experience above-average fluctuation in their revenues and profits over the course of a business cycle.
- Growth investors** With reference to equity investors, investors who seek to invest in high-earnings-growth companies.
- Guarantee certificate** A type of structured financial instrument that provides investors capital protection. It combines a zero-coupon bond and a call option on some underlying asset.
- Haircut** See *repo margin*.
- Harmonic mean** A type of weighted mean computed by averaging the reciprocals of the observations, then taking the reciprocal of that average.
- Head and shoulders pattern** In technical analysis, a reversal pattern that is formed in three parts: a left shoulder, head, and right shoulder; used to predict a change from an uptrend to a downtrend.
- Headline inflation** The inflation rate calculated based on the price index that includes all goods and services in an economy.
- Hedge funds** Private investment vehicles that typically use leverage, derivatives, and long and short investment strategies.
- Hedge portfolio** A hypothetical combination of the derivative and its underlying that eliminates risk.
- Held for trading** Debt or equity financial assets bought with the intention to sell them in the near term, usually less than three months; securities that a company intends to trade. Also called *trading securities*.
- Held-to-maturity** Debt (fixed-income) securities that a company intends to hold to maturity; these are presented at their original cost, updated for any amortization of discounts or premiums.
- Herding** Clustered trading that may or may not be based on information.
- Hidden order** An order that is exposed not to the public but only to the brokers or exchanges that receive it.
- High-frequency trading** A form of algorithmic trading that makes use of vast quantities of data to execute trades on ultra-high-speed networks in fractions of a second.
- High-water marks** The highest value, net of fees, that a fund has reached in history. It reflects the highest cumulative return used to calculate an incentive fee.
- Histogram** A bar chart of data that have been grouped into a frequency distribution.

- Historical cost** In reference to assets, the amount paid to purchase an asset, including any costs of acquisition and/or preparation; with reference to liabilities, the amount of proceeds received in exchange in issuing the liability.
- Historical equity risk premium approach** An estimate of a country's equity risk premium that is based upon the historical averages of the risk-free rate and the rate of return on the market portfolio.
- Historical simulation** Another term for the historical method of estimating VaR. This term is somewhat misleading in that the method involves not a *simulation* of the past but rather what *actually happened* in the past, sometimes adjusted to reflect the fact that a different portfolio may have existed in the past than is planned for the future.
- Holder-of-record date** The date that a shareholder listed on the corporation's books will be deemed to have ownership of the shares for purposes of receiving an upcoming dividend.
- Holding period return** The return that an investor earns during a specified holding period; a synonym for total return.
- Holding period yield (HPY)** The return that an investor earns during a specified holding period; holding period return with reference to a fixed-income instrument.
- Homogeneity of expectations** The assumption that all investors have the same economic expectations and thus have the same expectations of prices, cash flows, and other investment characteristics.
- Horizon yield** The internal rate of return between the total return (the sum of reinvested coupon payments and the sale price or redemption amount) and the purchase price of the bond.
- Horizontal analysis** Common-size analysis that involves comparing a specific financial statement with that statement in prior or future time periods; also, cross-sectional analysis of one company with another.
- Horizontal demand schedule** Implies that at a given price, the response in the quantity demanded is infinite.
- Hostile takeover** An attempt by one entity to acquire a company without the consent of the company's management.
- Household** A person or a group of people living in the same residence, taken as a basic unit in economic analysis.
- Human capital** The accumulated knowledge and skill that workers acquire from education, training, or life experience and the corresponding present value of future earnings to be generated by said skilled individual.
- Hurdle rate** The rate of return that must be met for a project to be accepted.
- Hypothesis** With reference to statistical inference, a statement about one or more populations.
- Hypothesis testing** With reference to statistical inference, the subdivision dealing with the testing of hypotheses about one or more populations.
- I-spread** The yield spread of a specific bond over the standard swap rate in that currency of the same tenor.
- Iceberg order** An order in which the display size is less than the order's full size.
- If-converted method** A method for accounting for the effect of convertible securities on earnings per share (EPS) that specifies what EPS would have been if the convertible securities had been converted at the beginning of the period, taking account of the effects of conversion on net income and the weighted average number of shares outstanding.
- Immediate or cancel order** An order that is valid only upon receipt by the broker or exchange. If such an order cannot be filled in part or in whole upon receipt, it cancels immediately. Also called *fill or kill*.
- Impact investing** Investing that seeks to achieve targeted social or environmental objectives along with measurable financial returns through engagement with a company or by direct investment in projects or companies.
- Impact lag** The lag associated with the result of actions affecting the economy with delay.
- Implicit price deflator for GDP** A gauge of prices and inflation that measures the aggregate changes in prices across the overall economy.
- Implied forward rates** Calculated from spot rates, an implied forward rate is a break-even reinvestment rate that links the return on an investment in a shorter-term zero-coupon bond to the return on an investment in a longer-term zero-coupon bond.
- Implied volatility** The volatility that option traders use to price an option, implied by the price of the option and a particular option-pricing model.
- Import license** Specifies the quantity of a good that can be imported into a country.
- Imports** Goods and services that a domestic economy (i.e., households, firms, and government) purchases from other countries.
- In the money** Options that, if exercised, would result in the value received being worth more than the payment required to exercise.
- Incentive fee** Fees paid to the general partner from the limited partner(s) based on realized profits.
- Income** Increases in economic benefits in the form of inflows or enhancements of assets, or decreases of liabilities that result in an increase in equity (other than increases resulting from contributions by owners).
- Income elasticity of demand** A measure of the responsiveness of demand to changes in income, defined as the percentage change in quantity demanded divided by the percentage change in income.
- Income tax paid** The actual amount paid for income taxes in the period; not a provision, but the actual cash outflow.
- Income tax payable** The income tax owed by the company on the basis of taxable income.
- Income trust** A type of equity ownership vehicle established as a trust issuing ownership shares known as units.
- Increasing marginal returns** When the marginal product of a resource increases as additional units of that input are employed.
- Increasing returns to scale** When a production process leads to increases in output that are proportionately larger than the increase in inputs.
- Incremental cash flow** The cash flow that is realized because of a decision; the changes or increments to cash flows resulting from a decision or action.
- Indenture** Legal contract that describes the form of a bond, the obligations of the issuer, and the rights of the bondholders. Also called the *trust deed*.
- Independent** With reference to events, the property that the occurrence of one event does not affect the probability of another event occurring.
- Independent projects** Independent projects are projects whose cash flows are independent of each other.

- Independently and identically distributed (IID)** With respect to random variables, the property of random variables that are independent of each other but follow the identical probability distribution.
- Index-linked bond** Bond for which coupon payments and/or principal repayment are linked to a specified index.
- Index of Leading Economic Indicators** A composite of economic variables used by analysts to predict future economic conditions.
- Indexing** An investment strategy in which an investor constructs a portfolio to mirror the performance of a specified index.
- Indifference curve** A curve representing all the combinations of two goods or attributes such that the consumer is entirely indifferent among them.
- Indirect format** With reference to cash flow statements, a format for the presentation of the statement which, in the operating cash flow section, begins with net income then shows additions and subtractions to arrive at operating cash flow. Also called *indirect method*.
- Indirect method** See *indirect format*.
- Indirect taxes** Taxes such as taxes on spending, as opposed to direct taxes.
- Industry** A group of companies offering similar products and/or services.
- Industry analysis** The analysis of a specific branch of manufacturing, service, or trade.
- Inelastic** Said of a good or service when the magnitude of elasticity is less than one. Insensitive to price changes.
- Inferior goods** A good whose consumption decreases as income increases.
- Inflation** The percentage increase in the general price level from one period to the next; a sustained rise in the overall level of prices in an economy.
- Inflation-linked bond** Type of index-linked bond that offers investors protection against inflation by linking the bond's coupon payments and/or the principal repayment to an index of consumer prices. Also called *linkers*.
- Inflation premium** An extra return that compensates investors for expected inflation.
- Inflation rate** The percentage change in a price index—that is, the speed of overall price level movements.
- Inflation Reports** A type of economic publication put out by many central banks.
- Inflation uncertainty** The degree to which economic agents view future rates of inflation as difficult to forecast.
- Information cascade** The transmission of information from those participants who act first and whose decisions influence the decisions of others.
- Information-motivated traders** Traders that trade to profit from information that they believe allows them to predict future prices.
- Informationally efficient market** A market in which asset prices reflect new information quickly and rationally.
- Initial coin offering** An unregulated process whereby companies raise capital by selling crypto tokens to investors in exchange for fiat money or another agreed-upon cryptocurrency.
- Initial margin** The amount that must be deposited in a clearinghouse account when entering into a futures contract.
- Initial margin requirement** The margin requirement on the first day of a transaction as well as on any day in which additional margin funds must be deposited.
- Initial public offering (IPO)** The first issuance of common shares to the public by a formerly private corporation.
- Input productivity** The amount of output produced by workers in a given period of time—for example, output per hour worked; measures the efficiency of labor.
- Installment method** With respect to revenue recognition, a method that specifies that the portion of the total profit of the sale that is recognized in each period is determined by the percentage of the total sales price for which the seller has received cash.
- Installment sales** With respect to revenue recognition, a method that specifies that the portion of the total profit of the sale that is recognized in each period is determined by the percentage of the total sales price for which the seller has received cash.
- Intangible assets** Assets lacking physical substance, such as patents and trademarks.
- Interbank market** The market of loans and deposits between banks for maturities ranging from overnight to one year.
- Interbank money market** The market of loans and deposits between banks for maturities ranging from overnight to one year.
- Interest** Payment for lending funds.
- Interest coverage** A solvency ratio calculated as EBIT divided by interest payments.
- Interest-only mortgage** A loan in which no scheduled principal repayment is specified for a certain number of years.
- Interest rate** A rate of return that reflects the relationship between differently dated cash flows; a discount rate.
- Interest rate swap** A swap in which the underlying is an interest rate. Can be viewed as a currency swap in which both currencies are the same and can be created as a combination of currency swaps.
- Intergenerational data mining** A form of data mining that applies information developed by previous researchers using a dataset to guide current research using the same or a related dataset.
- Intermarket analysis** A field within technical analysis that combines analysis of major categories of securities—namely, equities, bonds, currencies, and commodities—to identify market trends and possible inflections in a trend.
- Internal rate of return (IRR)** The discount rate that makes net present value equal 0; the discount rate that makes the present value of an investment's costs (outflows) equal to the present value of the investment's benefits (inflows).
- Internet of Things** A network arrangement of structures and devices whereby the objects on the network are able to interact and share information.
- Interpolated spread** The yield spread of a specific bond over the standard swap rate in that currency of the same tenor.
- Interquartile range** The difference between the third and first quartiles of a dataset.
- Interval** With reference to grouped data, a set of values within which an observation falls.
- Interval scale** A measurement scale that not only ranks data but also gives assurance that the differences between scale values are equal.
- Intrinsic value** See *exercise value*.
- Inventory blanket lien** The use of inventory as collateral for a loan. Though the lender has claim to some or all of the company's inventory, the company may still sell or use the inventory in the ordinary course of business.
- Inventory investment** Net change in business inventory.

- Inventory turnover** An activity ratio calculated as cost of goods sold divided by average inventory.
- Inverse demand function** A restatement of the demand function in which price is stated as a function of quantity.
- Inverse floater** A type of leveraged structured financial instrument. The cash flows are adjusted periodically and move in the opposite direction of changes in the reference rate.
- Investing activities** Activities which are associated with the acquisition and disposal of property, plant, and equipment; intangible assets; other long-term assets; and both long-term and short-term investments in the equity and debt (bonds and loans) issued by other companies.
- Investment banks** Financial intermediaries that provide advice to their mostly corporate clients and help them arrange transactions such as initial and seasoned securities offerings.
- Investment opportunity schedule** A graphical depiction of a company's investment opportunities ordered from highest to lowest expected return. A company's optimal capital budget is found where the investment opportunity schedule intersects with the company's marginal cost of capital.
- Investment policy statement** (IPS) A written planning document that describes a client's investment objectives and risk tolerance over a relevant time horizon, along with constraints that apply to the client's portfolio.
- Investment property** Property used to earn rental income or capital appreciation (or both).
- IRR rule** An investment decision rule that accepts projects or investments for which the IRR is greater than the opportunity cost of capital.
- January effect** Calendar anomaly that stock market returns in January are significantly higher compared to the rest of the months of the year, with most of the abnormal returns reported during the first five trading days in January. Also called *turn-of-the-year effect*.
- Joint probability** The probability of the joint occurrence of stated events.
- Joint probability function** A function giving the probability of joint occurrences of values of stated random variables.
- Just-in-time (JIT) method** Method of managing inventory that minimizes in-process inventory stocks.
- Key rate duration** A method of measuring the interest rate sensitivities of a fixed-income instrument or portfolio to shifts in key points along the yield curve.
- Keynesians** Economists who believe that fiscal policy can have powerful effects on aggregate demand, output, and employment when there is substantial spare capacity in an economy.
- Kondratieff wave** A 54-year long economic cycle postulated by Nikolai Kondratieff.
- Kurtosis** The statistical measure that indicates the combined weight of the tails of a distribution relative to the rest of the distribution.
- Labor force** The portion of the working age population (over the age of 16) that is employed or is available for work but not working (unemployed).
- Labor productivity** The quantity of goods and services (real GDP) that a worker can produce in one hour of work.
- Laddering strategy** A form of active strategy which entails scheduling maturities on a systematic basis within the investment portfolio such that investments are spread out equally over the term of the ladder.
- Lagging economic indicators** Turning points that take place later than those of the overall economy; they are believed to have value in identifying the economy's past condition.
- Laspeyres index** A price index created by holding the composition of the consumption basket constant.
- Law of demand** The principle that as the price of a good rises, buyers will choose to buy less of it, and as its price falls, they will buy more.
- Law of diminishing marginal returns** The observation that a variable factor's marginal product must eventually fall as more of it is added to a fixed amount of the other factors.
- Law of diminishing returns** The smallest output that a firm can produce such that its long run average costs are minimized.
- Law of one price** The condition in a financial market in which two equivalent financial instruments or combinations of financial instruments can sell for only one price. Equivalent to the principle that no arbitrage opportunities are possible.
- Lead underwriter** The lead investment bank in a syndicate of investment banks and broker-dealers involved in a securities underwriting.
- Leading economic indicators** Turning points that usually precede those of the overall economy; they are believed to have value for predicting the economy's future state, usually near-term.
- Legal tender** Something that must be accepted when offered in exchange for goods and services.
- Lender of last resort** An entity willing to lend money when no other entity is ready to do so.
- Leptokurtic** Describes a distribution that has fatter tails than a normal distribution.
- Lessee** The party obtaining the use of an asset through a lease.
- Lessor** The owner of an asset that grants the right to use the asset to another party.
- Letter of credit** Form of external credit enhancement whereby a financial institution provides the issuer with a credit line to reimburse any cash flow shortfalls from the assets backing the issue.
- Level of significance** The probability of a Type I error in testing a hypothesis.
- Leverage** In the context of corporate finance, leverage refers to the use of fixed costs within a company's cost structure. Fixed costs that are operating costs (such as depreciation or rent) create operating leverage. Fixed costs that are financial costs (such as interest expense) create financial leverage.
- Leveraged buyout** (LBO) A transaction whereby the target company management team converts the target to a privately held company by using heavy borrowing to finance the purchase of the target company's outstanding shares.
- Liabilities** Present obligations of an enterprise arising from past events, the settlement of which is expected to result in an outflow of resources embodying economic benefits; creditors' claims on the resources of a company.
- Life-cycle stage** The stage of the life cycle: embryonic, growth, shakeout, mature, declining.
- LIFO layer liquidation** With respect to the application of the LIFO inventory method, the liquidation of old, relatively low-priced inventory; happens when the volume of sales rises above the volume of recent purchases so that some sales are made from relatively old, low-priced inventory. Also called *LIFO liquidation*.

- LIFO method** The last in, first out, method of accounting for inventory, which matches sales against the costs of items of inventory in the reverse order the items were placed in inventory (i.e., inventory produced or acquired last are assumed to be sold first).
- LIFO reserve** The difference between the reported LIFO inventory carrying amount and the inventory amount that would have been reported if the FIFO method had been used (in other words, the FIFO inventory value less the LIFO inventory value).
- Likelihood** The probability of an observation, given a particular set of conditions.
- Limit down** A limit move in the futures market in which the price at which a transaction would be made is at or below the lower limit.
- Limit order** Instructions to a broker or exchange to obtain the best price immediately available when filling an order, but in no event accept a price higher than a specified (limit) price when buying or accept a price lower than a specified (limit) price when selling.
- Limit order book** The book or list of limit orders to buy and sell that pertains to a security.
- Limit up** A limit move in the futures market in which the price at which a transaction would be made is at or above the upper limit.
- Limitations on liens** Meant to put limits on how much secured debt an issuer can have.
- Limited partners** Partners with limited liability. Limited partnerships in hedge and private equity funds are typically restricted to investors who are expected to understand and to be able to assume the risks associated with the investments.
- Line chart** In technical analysis, a plot of price data, typically closing prices, with a line connecting the points.
- Linear interpolation** The estimation of an unknown value on the basis of two known values that bracket it, using a straight line between the two known values.
- Linear scale** A scale in which equal distances correspond to equal absolute amounts. Also called *arithmetic scale*.
- Linker** See *inflation-linked bond*.
- Liquid market** Said of a market in which traders can buy or sell with low total transaction costs when they want to trade.
- Liquidation** To sell the assets of a company, division, or subsidiary piecemeal, typically because of bankruptcy; the form of bankruptcy that allows for the orderly satisfaction of creditors' claims after which the company ceases to exist.
- Liquidity** The ability to purchase or sell an asset quickly and easily at a price close to fair market value. The ability to meet short-term obligations using assets that are the most readily converted into cash.
- Liquidity premium** An extra return that compensates investors for the risk of loss relative to an investment's fair value if the investment needs to be converted to cash quickly.
- Liquidity ratios** Financial ratios measuring the company's ability to meet its short-term obligations.
- Liquidity risk** The risk that a financial instrument cannot be purchased or sold without a significant concession in price due to the size of the market.
- Liquidity trap** A condition in which the demand for money becomes infinitely elastic (horizontal demand curve) so that injections of money into the economy will not lower interest rates or affect real activity.
- Load fund** A mutual fund in which, in addition to the annual fee, a percentage fee is charged to invest in the fund and/or for redemptions from the fund.
- Loan-to-value ratio** The ratio of a property's purchase price to the amount of its mortgage.
- Lockbox system** A payment system in which customer payments are mailed to a post office box and the banking institution retrieves and deposits these payments several times a day, enabling the company to have use of the fund sooner than in a centralized system in which customer payments are sent to the company.
- Locked limit** A condition in the futures markets in which a transaction cannot take place because the price would be beyond the limits.
- Lockup period** The minimum period before investors are allowed to make withdrawals or redeem shares from a fund.
- Logarithmic scale** A scale in which equal distances represent equal proportional changes in the underlying quantity.
- London interbank offered rate (Libor)** Collective name for multiple rates at which a select set of banks believe they could borrow unsecured funds from other banks in the London interbank market for different currencies and different borrowing periods ranging from overnight to one year.
- Long** The buyer of a derivative contract. Also refers to the position of owning a derivative.
- Long-lived assets** Assets that are expected to provide economic benefits over a future period of time, typically greater than one year. Also called *long-term assets*.
- Long position** A position in an asset or contract in which one owns the asset or has an exercisable right under the contract.
- Long-run average total cost** The curve describing average total cost when no costs are considered fixed.
- Long-term contract** A contract that spans a number of accounting periods.
- Longitudinal data** Observations on characteristic(s) of the same observational unit through time.
- Look-ahead bias** A bias caused by using information that was unavailable on the test date.
- Loss aversion** The tendency of people to dislike losses more than they like comparable gains.
- Loss severity** Portion of a bond's value (including unpaid interest) an investor loses in the event of default.
- Losses** Asset outflows not directly related to the ordinary activities of the business.
- Lower bound** The lowest possible value of an option.
- M^2** A measure of what a portfolio would have returned if it had taken on the same total risk as the market index.
- Macaulay duration** The approximate amount of time a bond would have to be held for the market discount rate at purchase to be realized if there is a single change in interest rate. It indicates the point in time when the coupon reinvestment and price effects of a change in yield-to-maturity offset each other.
- Machine learning** Diverse approaches by which computers are programmed to improve performance in specified tasks with experience.
- Macroeconomics** The branch of economics that deals with aggregate economic quantities, such as national output and national income.
- Maintenance covenants** Covenants in bank loan agreements that require the borrower to satisfy certain financial ratio tests while the loan is outstanding.

- Maintenance margin** The minimum amount that is required by a futures clearinghouse to maintain a margin account and to protect against default. Participants whose margin balances drop below the required maintenance margin must replenish their accounts.
- Maintenance margin requirement** The margin requirement on any day other than the first day of a transaction.
- Management buy-ins** Leveraged buyout in which the current management team is being replaced and the acquiring team will be involved in managing the company.
- Management buyout** (MBO) A leveraged buyout event in which a group of investors consisting primarily of the company's existing management purchase at least controlling interest of its outstanding shares. They may purchase all shares and take the company private.
- Management fee** A fee based on assets under management or committed capital, as applicable, also called a *base fee*.
- Manufacturing resource planning (MRP)** The incorporation of production planning into inventory management. A MRP analysis provides both a materials acquisition schedule and a production schedule.
- Margin** The amount of money that a trader deposits in a margin account. The term is derived from the stock market practice in which an investor borrows a portion of the money required to purchase a certain amount of stock. In futures markets, there is no borrowing so the margin is more of a down payment or performance bond.
- Margin bond** A cash deposit required by the clearinghouse from the participants to a contract to provide a credit guarantee. Also called a *performance bond*.
- Margin call** A request for the short to deposit additional funds to bring their balance up to the initial margin.
- Margin loan** Money borrowed from a broker to purchase securities.
- Marginal cost** The cost of producing an additional unit of a good.
- Marginal probability** The probability of an event *not* conditioned on another event.
- Marginal product** Measures the productivity of each unit of input and is calculated by taking the difference in total product from adding another unit of input (assuming other resource quantities are held constant).
- Marginal propensity to consume** The proportion of an additional unit of disposable income that is consumed or spent; the change in consumption for a small change in income.
- Marginal propensity to save** The proportion of an additional unit of disposable income that is saved (not spent).
- Marginal revenue** The change in total revenue divided by the change in quantity sold; simply, the additional revenue from selling one more unit.
- Marginal value curve** A curve describing the highest price consumers are willing to pay for each additional unit of a good.
- Mark to market** The revaluation of a financial asset or liability to its current market value or fair value.
- Market** A means of bringing buyers and sellers together to exchange goods and services.
- Market anomaly** Change in the price or return of a security that cannot directly be linked to current relevant information known in the market or to the release of new information into the market.
- Market bid-ask spread** The difference between the best bid and the best offer.
- Market-capitalization weighting** An index weighting method in which the weight assigned to each constituent security is determined by dividing its market capitalization by the total market capitalization (sum of the market capitalization) of all securities in the index. Also called *value weighting*.
- Market discount rate** The rate of return required by investors given the risk of the investment in a bond; also called the *required yield* or the *required rate of return*.
- Market float** The number of shares that are available to the investing public.
- Market liquidity risk** The risk that the price at which investors can actually transact—buying or selling—may differ from the price indicated in the market.
- Market model** A regression equation that specifies a linear relationship between the return on a security (or portfolio) and the return on a broad market index.
- Market multiple models** Valuation models based on share price multiples or enterprise value multiples.
- Market-on-close** An execution instruction specifying that an order can only be filled at the close of trading.
- Market order** Instructions to a broker or exchange to obtain the best price immediately available when filling an order.
- Market-oriented investors** With reference to equity investors, investors whose investment disciplines cannot be clearly categorized as value or growth.
- Market rate of interest** The rate demanded by purchases of bonds, given the risks associated with future cash payment obligations of the particular bond issue.
- Market risk** The risk that arises from movements in interest rates, stock prices, exchange rates, and commodity prices.
- Market value** The price at which an asset or security can currently be bought or sold in an open market.
- Marketable limit order** A buy limit order in which the limit price is placed above the best offer, or a sell limit order in which the limit price is placed below the best bid. Such orders generally will partially or completely fill right away.
- Markowitz efficient frontier** The graph of the set of portfolios offering the maximum expected return for their level of risk (standard deviation of return).
- Matching principle** The accounting principle that expenses should be recognized when the associated revenue is recognized.
- Matching strategy** An active investment strategy that includes intentional matching of the timing of cash outflows with investment maturities.
- Matrix pricing** Process of estimating the market discount rate and price of a bond based on the quoted or flat prices of more frequently traded comparable bonds.
- Maturity premium** An extra return that compensates investors for the increased sensitivity of the market value of debt to a change in market interest rates as maturity is extended.
- Maturity structure** A factor explaining the differences in yields on similar bonds; also called *term structure*.
- Mean absolute deviation** With reference to a sample, the mean of the absolute values of deviations from the sample mean.
- Mean excess return** The average rate of return in excess of the risk-free rate.
- Mean-variance analysis** An approach to portfolio analysis using expected means, variances, and covariances of asset returns.
- Measure of central tendency** A quantitative measure that specifies where data are centered.

- Measure of value** A standard for measuring value; a function of money.
- Measurement scales** A scheme of measuring differences. The four types of measurement scales are nominal, ordinal, interval, and ratio.
- Measures of location** A quantitative measure that describes the location or distribution of data; includes not only measures of central tendency but also other measures such as percentiles.
- Median** The value of the middle item of a set of items that has been sorted into ascending or descending order; the 50th percentile.
- Medium of exchange** Any asset that can be used to purchase goods and services or to repay debts; a function of money.
- Medium-term note** A corporate bond offered continuously to investors by an agent of the issuer, designed to fill the funding gap between commercial paper and long-term bonds.
- Menu costs** A cost of inflation in which businesses constantly have to incur the costs of changing the advertised prices of their goods and services.
- Mesokurtic** Describes a distribution with kurtosis identical to that of the normal distribution.
- Mezzanine financing** Debt or preferred shares with a relationship to common equity resulting from a feature such as attached warrants or conversion options. Mezzanine financing is subordinate to both senior and high-yield debt. It is referred to as mezzanine because of its location on the balance sheet.
- Microeconomics** The branch of economics that deals with markets and decision making of individual economic units, including consumers and businesses.
- Minimum efficient scale** The smallest output that a firm can produce such that its long-run average total cost is minimized.
- Minimum-variance portfolio** The portfolio with the minimum variance for each given level of expected return.
- Minority shareholders** A particular shareholder or block of shareholders holding a small proportion of a company's outstanding shares, resulting in a limited ability to exercise control in voting activities.
- Minsky moment** Named for Hyman Minsky: A point in a business cycle when, after individuals become overextended in borrowing to finance speculative investments, people start realizing that something is likely to go wrong and a panic ensues leading to asset sell-offs.
- Mismatching strategy** An active investment strategy whereby the timing of cash outflows is not matched with investment maturities.
- Modal interval** With reference to grouped data, the most frequently occurring interval.
- Mode** The most frequently occurring value in a set of observations.
- Modern portfolio theory** (MPT) The analysis of rational portfolio choices based on the efficient use of risk.
- Modified duration** A measure of the percentage price change of a bond given a change in its yield-to-maturity.
- Momentum oscillators** A graphical representation of market sentiment that is constructed from price data and calculated so that it oscillates either between a high and a low or around some number.
- Monetarists** Economists who believe that the rate of growth of the money supply is the primary determinant of the rate of inflation.
- Monetary policy** Actions taken by a nation's central bank to affect aggregate output and prices through changes in bank reserves, reserve requirements, or its target interest rate.
- Monetary transmission mechanism** The process whereby a central bank's interest rate gets transmitted through the economy and ultimately affects the rate of increase of prices.
- Monetary union** An economic union in which the members adopt a common currency.
- Money** A generally accepted medium of exchange and unit of account.
- Money convexity** For a bond, the annual or approximate convexity multiplied by the full price.
- Money creation** The process by which changes in bank reserves translate into changes in the money supply.
- Money duration** A measure of the price change in units of the currency in which the bond is denominated given a change in its yield-to-maturity.
- Money market** The market for short-term debt instruments (one-year maturity or less).
- Money market securities** Fixed-income securities with maturities at issuance of one year or less.
- Money market yield** A yield on a basis comparable to the quoted yield on an interest-bearing money market instrument that pays interest on a 360-day basis; the annualized holding period yield, assuming a 360-day year.
- Money multiplier** Describes how a change in reserves is expected to affect the money supply; in its simplest form, 1 divided by the reserve requirement.
- Money neutrality** The thesis that an increase in the money supply leads in the long-run to an increase in the price level, while leaving real variables like output and employment unaffected.
- Money-weighted return** The internal rate of return on a portfolio, taking account of all cash flows.
- Monyness** The relationship between the price of the underlying and an option's exercise price.
- Monopolistic competition** Highly competitive form of imperfect competition; the competitive characteristic is a notably large number of firms, while the monopoly aspect is the result of product differentiation.
- Monopoly** In pure monopoly markets, there are no substitutes for the given product or service. There is a single seller, which exercises considerable power over pricing and output decisions.
- Monte Carlo simulation** An approach to estimating a probability distribution of outcomes to examine what might happen if particular risks are faced. This method is widely used in the sciences as well as in business to study a variety of problems.
- Moral principles** Beliefs regarding what is good, acceptable, or obligatory behavior and what is bad, unacceptable, or forbidden behavior.
- Mortgage-backed securities** Debt obligations that represent claims to the cash flows from pools of mortgage loans, most commonly on residential property.
- Mortgage loan** A loan secured by the collateral of some specified real estate property that obliges the borrower to make a predetermined series of payments to the lender.
- Mortgage pass-through security** A security created when one or more holders of mortgages form a pool of mortgages and sell shares or participation certificates in the pool.
- Mortgage rate** The interest rate on a mortgage loan; also called *contract rate* or *note rate*.

- Moving average** The average of the closing price of a security over a specified number of periods. With each new period, the average is recalculated.
- Moving-average convergence/divergence oscillator** (MACD) A momentum oscillator that is constructed based on the difference between short-term and long-term moving averages of a security's price.
- Multi-factor model** A model that explains a variable in terms of the values of a set of factors.
- Multi-market indexes** Comprised of indexes from different countries, designed to represent multiple security markets.
- Multi-step format** With respect to the format of the income statement, a format that presents a subtotal for gross profit (revenue minus cost of goods sold).
- Multilateral trading facilities** See *alternative trading systems*.
- Multinational corporation** A company operating in more than one country or having subsidiary firms in more than one country.
- Multiplication rule for probabilities** The rule that the joint probability of events *A* and *B* equals the probability of *A* given *B* times the probability of *B*.
- Multiplier models** Valuation models based on share price multiples or enterprise value multiples.
- Multivariate distribution** A probability distribution that specifies the probabilities for a group of related random variables.
- Multivariate normal distribution** A probability distribution for a group of random variables that is completely defined by the means and variances of the variables plus all the correlations between pairs of the variables.
- Muni** A type of non-sovereign bond issued by a state or local government in the United States. It very often (but not always) offers income tax exemptions.
- Municipal bonds** A type of non-sovereign bond issued by a state or local government in the United States. It very often (but not always) offers income tax exemptions.
- Mutual fund** A professionally managed investment pool in which investors in the fund typically each have a pro-rata claim on the income and value of the fund.
- Mutually exclusive projects** Mutually exclusive projects compete directly with each other. For example, if Projects A and B are mutually exclusive, you can choose A or B, but you cannot choose both.
- n* Factorial** For a positive integer *n*, the product of the first *n* positive integers; 0 factorial equals 1 by definition. *n* factorial is written as *n!*.
- Narrow money** The notes and coins in circulation in an economy, plus other very highly liquid deposits.
- Nash equilibrium** When two or more participants in a non-cooperative game have no incentive to deviate from their respective equilibrium strategies given their opponent's strategies.
- National income** The income received by all factors of production used in the generation of final output. National income equals gross domestic product (or, in some countries, gross national product) minus the capital consumption allowance and a statistical discrepancy.
- Natural language processing** Computer programs developed to analyze and interpret human language.
- Natural rate of unemployment** Effective unemployment rate, below which pressure emerges in labor markets.
- Negative screening** An ESG implementation approach that excludes certain sectors or companies that deviate from an investor's accepted standards. Also called *exclusionary screening* or *norms-based screening*.
- Neo-Keynesians** A group of dynamic general equilibrium models that assume slow-to-adjust prices and wages.
- Net book value** The remaining (undepreciated) balance of an asset's purchase cost. For liabilities, the face value of a bond minus any unamortized discount, or plus any unamortized premium.
- Net exports** The difference between the value of a country's exports and the value of its imports (i.e., value of exports minus imports).
- Net income** The difference between revenue and expenses; what remains after subtracting all expenses (including depreciation, interest, and taxes) from revenue.
- Net operating cycle** An estimate of the average time that elapses between paying suppliers for materials and collecting cash from the subsequent sale of goods produced.
- Net present value** (NPV) The present value of an investment's cash inflows (benefits) minus the present value of its cash outflows (costs).
- Net profit margin** An indicator of profitability, calculated as net income divided by revenue; indicates how much of each dollar of revenues is left after all costs and expenses. Also called *profit margin* or *return on sales*.
- Net realisable value** Estimated selling price in the ordinary course of business less the estimated costs necessary to make the sale.
- Net revenue** Revenue after adjustments (e.g., for estimated returns or for amounts unlikely to be collected).
- Net tax rate** The tax rate net of transfer payments.
- Neural networks** Computer programs based on how our own brains learn and process information.
- Neutral rate of interest** The rate of interest that neither spurs on nor slows down the underlying economy.
- New classical macroeconomics** An approach to macroeconomics that seeks the macroeconomic conclusions of individuals maximizing utility on the basis of rational expectations and companies maximizing profits.
- New Keynesians** A group of dynamic general equilibrium models that assume slow-to-adjust prices and wages.
- No-load fund** A mutual fund in which there is no fee for investing in the fund or for redeeming fund shares, although there is an annual fee based on a percentage of the fund's net asset value.
- Node** Each value on a binomial tree from which successive moves or outcomes branch.
- Nominal GDP** The value of goods and services measured at current prices.
- Nominal rate** A rate of interest based on the security's face value.
- Nominal risk-free interest rate** The sum of the real risk-free interest rate and the inflation premium.
- Nominal scale** A measurement scale that categorizes data but does not rank them.
- Non-accelerating inflation rate of unemployment** Effective unemployment rate, below which pressure emerges in labor markets.
- Non-agency RMBS** In the United States, securities issued by private entities that are not guaranteed by a federal agency or a GSE.

- Non-cumulative preference shares** Preference shares for which dividends that are not paid in the current or subsequent periods are forfeited permanently (instead of being accrued and paid at a later date).
- Non-current assets** Assets that are expected to benefit the company over an extended period of time (usually more than one year).
- Non-current liabilities** Obligations that broadly represent a probable sacrifice of economic benefits in periods generally greater than one year in the future.
- Non-cyclical** A company whose performance is largely independent of the business cycle.
- Non-deliverable forwards** Cash-settled forward contracts, used predominately with respect to foreign exchange forwards. Also called *contracts for differences*.
- Non-financial risks** Risks that arise from sources other than changes in the external financial markets, such as changes in accounting rules, legal environment, or tax rates.
- Non-participating preference shares** Preference shares that do not entitle shareholders to share in the profits of the company. Instead, shareholders are only entitled to receive a fixed dividend payment and the par value of the shares in the event of liquidation.
- Non-recourse loan** Loan in which the lender does not have a shortfall claim against the borrower, so the lender can look only to the property to recover the outstanding mortgage balance.
- Non-renewable resources** Finite resources that are depleted once they are consumed, such as oil and coal.
- Non-sovereign bonds** A bond issued by a government below the national level, such as a province, region, state, or city.
- Non-sovereign government bonds** A bond issued by a government below the national level, such as a province, region, state, or city.
- Nonconventional cash flow** In a nonconventional cash flow pattern, the initial outflow is not followed by inflows only, but the cash flows can flip from positive (inflows) to negative (outflows) again (or even change signs several times).
- Nonparametric test** A test that is not concerned with a parameter, or that makes minimal assumptions about the population from which a sample comes.
- Nonsystematic risk** Unique risk that is local or limited to a particular asset or industry that need not affect assets outside of that asset class.
- Normal distribution** A continuous, symmetric probability distribution that is completely described by its mean and its variance.
- Normal goods** Goods that are consumed in greater quantities as income increases.
- Normal profit** The level of accounting profit needed to just cover the implicit opportunity costs ignored in accounting costs.
- Norms-based screening** An ESG implementation approach that excludes certain sectors or companies that deviate from an investor's accepted standards. Also called *negative screening* or *exclusionary screening*.
- Notching** Ratings adjustment methodology where specific issues from the same borrower may be assigned different credit ratings.
- Note rate** See *mortgage rate*.
- Notes payable** Amounts owed by a business to creditors as a result of borrowings that are evidenced by (short-term) loan agreements.
- Notice period** The length of time (typically 30 to 90 days) in advance that investors may be required to notify a fund of their intent to redeem.
- Notional principal** An imputed principal amount.
- NPV rule** An investment decision rule that states that an investment should be undertaken if its NPV is positive but not undertaken if its NPV is negative.
- Number of days of inventory** An activity ratio equal to the number of days in a period divided by the inventory ratio for the period; an indication of the number of days a company ties up funds in inventory.
- Number of days of payables** An activity ratio equal to the number of days in a period divided by the payables turnover ratio for the period; an estimate of the average number of days it takes a company to pay its suppliers.
- Number of days of receivables** Estimate of the average number of days it takes to collect on credit accounts.
- Objective probabilities** Probabilities that generally do not vary from person to person; includes a priori and objective probabilities.
- Off-the-run** Seasoned government bonds are off-the-run securities; they are not the most recently issued or the most actively traded.
- Offer** The price at which a dealer or trader is willing to sell an asset, typically qualified by a maximum quantity (ask size).
- Official interest rate** An interest rate that a central bank sets and announces publicly; normally the rate at which it is willing to lend money to the commercial banks. Also called *official policy rate* or *policy rate*.
- Official policy rate** An interest rate that a central bank sets and announces publicly; normally the rate at which it is willing to lend money to the commercial banks.
- Oligopoly** Market structure with a relatively small number of firms supplying the market.
- On-the-run** The most recently issued and most actively traded sovereign securities.
- One-sided hypothesis test** A test in which the null hypothesis is rejected only if the evidence indicates that the population parameter is greater than (smaller than) θ_0 . The alternative hypothesis also has one side.
- One-tailed hypothesis test** A test in which the null hypothesis is rejected only if the evidence indicates that the population parameter is greater than (smaller than) θ_0 . The alternative hypothesis also has one side.
- Open economy** An economy that trades with other countries.
- Open-end fund** A mutual fund that accepts new investment money and issues additional shares at a value equal to the net asset value of the fund at the time of investment.
- Open interest** The number of outstanding contracts in a clearinghouse at any given time. The open interest figure changes daily as some parties open up new positions, while other parties offset their old positions.
- Open market operations** The purchase or sale of bonds by the national central bank to implement monetary policy. The bonds traded are usually sovereign bonds issued by the national government.
- Operating activities** Activities that are part of the day-to-day business functioning of an entity, such as selling inventory and providing services.
- Operating breakeven** The number of units produced and sold at which the company's operating profit is zero (revenues = operating costs).
- Operating cash flow** The net amount of cash provided from operating activities.

- Operating cycle** A measure of the time needed to convert raw materials into cash from a sale; it consists of the number of days of inventory and the number of days of receivables.
- Operating efficiency ratios** Ratios that measure how efficiently a company performs day-to-day tasks, such as the collection of receivables and management of inventory.
- Operating lease** An agreement allowing the lessee to use some asset for a period of time; essentially a rental.
- Operating leverage** The use of fixed costs in operations.
- Operating profit** A company's profits on its usual business activities before deducting taxes. Also called *operating income*.
- Operating profit margin** A profitability ratio calculated as operating income (i.e., income before interest and taxes) divided by revenue. Also called *operating margin*.
- Operating risk** The risk attributed to the operating cost structure, in particular the use of fixed costs in operations; the risk arising from the mix of fixed and variable costs; the risk that a company's operations may be severely affected by environmental, social, and governance risk factors.
- Operational independence** A bank's ability to execute monetary policy and set interest rates in the way it thought would best meet the inflation target.
- Operational risk** The risk of loss from failures in a company's systems and procedures.
- Operationally efficient** Said of a market, a financial system, or an economy that has relatively low transaction costs.
- Opportunity cost** The value that investors forgo by choosing a particular course of action; the value of something in its best alternative use.
- Option** A financial instrument that gives one party the right, but not the obligation, to buy or sell an underlying asset from or to another party at a fixed price over a specific period of time. Also referred to as *contingent claim* or *option contract*.
- Option-adjusted price** The value of the embedded option plus the flat price of the bond.
- Option-adjusted spread** $OAS = Z\text{-spread} - \text{Option value}$ (in basis points per year).
- Option-adjusted yield** The required market discount rate whereby the price is adjusted for the value of the embedded option.
- Option contract** See *option*.
- Option premium** The amount of money a buyer pays and seller receives to engage in an option transaction.
- Order** A specification of what instrument to trade, how much to trade, and whether to buy or sell.
- Order-driven markets** A market (generally an auction market) that uses rules to arrange trades based on the orders that traders submit; in their pure form, such markets do not make use of dealers.
- Order precedence hierarchy** With respect to the execution of orders to trade, a set of rules that determines which orders execute before other orders.
- Ordinal scale** A measurement scale that sorts data into categories that are ordered (ranked) with respect to some characteristic.
- Ordinary annuity** An annuity with a first cash flow that is paid one period from the present.
- Ordinary shares** Equity shares that are subordinate to all other types of equity (e.g., preferred equity). Also called *common stock* or *common shares*.
- Organized exchange** A securities marketplace where buyers and seller can meet to arrange their trades.
- Other comprehensive income** Items of comprehensive income that are not reported on the income statement; comprehensive income minus net income.
- Out-of-sample test** A test of a strategy or model using a sample outside the time period on which the strategy or model was developed.
- Out of the money** Options that, if exercised, would require the payment of more money than the value received and therefore would not be currently exercised.
- Outcome** A possible value of a random variable.
- Over-the-counter (OTC) markets** A decentralized market where buy and sell orders initiated from various locations are matched through a communications network.
- Overbought** A market condition in which market sentiment is thought to be unsustainably bullish.
- Overcollateralization** Form of internal credit enhancement that refers to the process of posting more collateral than needed to obtain or secure financing.
- Overfitting** An undesirable result from fitting a model so closely to a dataset that it does not perform well on new data.
- Oversold** A market condition in which market sentiment is thought to be unsustainably bearish.
- Own price** The price of a good or service itself (as opposed to the price of something else).
- Own-price elasticity of demand** The percentage change in quantity demanded for a percentage change in good's own price, holding all other things constant.
- Owners' equity** The excess of assets over liabilities; the residual interest of shareholders in the assets of an entity after deducting the entity's liabilities. Also called *shareholders' equity*.
- Paasche index** An index formula using the current composition of a basket of products.
- Paired comparisons test** A statistical test for differences based on paired observations drawn from samples that are dependent on each other.
- Paired observations** Observations that are dependent on each other.
- Pairs arbitrage trade** A trade in two closely related stocks involving the short sale of one and the purchase of the other.
- Panel data** Observations through time on a single characteristic of multiple observational units.
- Par curve** A sequence of yields-to-maturity such that each bond is priced at par value. The bonds are assumed to have the same currency, credit risk, liquidity, tax status, and annual yields stated for the same periodicity.
- Par value** The amount of principal on a bond.
- Parallel shift** A parallel yield curve shift implies that all rates change by the same amount in the same direction.
- Parameter** A descriptive measure computed from or used to describe a population of data, conventionally represented by Greek letters.
- Parametric test** Any test (or procedure) concerned with parameters or whose validity depends on assumptions concerning the population generating the sample.
- Pari passu** On an equal footing.
- Partial duration** See *key rate duration*.
- Participating preference shares** Preference shares that entitle shareholders to receive the standard preferred dividend plus the opportunity to receive an additional dividend if the company's profits exceed a pre-specified level.

- Pass-through rate** The coupon rate of a mortgage pass-through security.
- Passive investment** A buy and hold approach in which an investor does not make portfolio changes based on short-term expectations of changing market or security performance.
- Passive strategy** In reference to short-term cash management, it is an investment strategy characterized by simple decision rules for making daily investments.
- Payable date** The day that the company actually mails out (or electronically transfers) a dividend payment.
- Payment date** The day that the company actually mails out (or electronically transfers) a dividend payment.
- Payments system** The system for the transfer of money.
- Peak** The highest point of a business cycle.
- Peer group** A group of companies engaged in similar business activities whose economics and valuation are influenced by closely related factors.
- Pennants** A technical analysis continuation pattern formed by trendlines that converge to form a triangle, typically over a short period.
- Per capita real GDP** Real GDP divided by the size of the population, often used as a measure of the average standard of living in a country.
- Per unit contribution margin** The amount that each unit sold contributes to covering fixed costs—that is, the difference between the price per unit and the variable cost per unit.
- Percentage-of-completion** A method of revenue recognition in which, in each accounting period, the company estimates what percentage of the contract is complete and then reports that percentage of the total contract revenue in its income statement.
- Percentiles** Quantiles that divide a distribution into 100 equal parts.
- Perfect competition** A market structure in which the individual firm has virtually no impact on market price, because it is assumed to be a very small seller among a very large number of firms selling essentially identical products.
- Perfectly elastic** When the quantity demanded or supplied of a given good is infinitely sensitive to a change in the value of a specified variable (e.g., price).
- Perfectly inelastic** When the quantity demanded or supplied of a given good is completely insensitive to a change in the value of a specified variable (e.g., price).
- Performance appraisal** The evaluation of risk-adjusted performance; the evaluation of investment skill.
- Performance bond** See *margin bond*.
- Performance evaluation** The measurement and assessment of the outcomes of investment management decisions.
- Performance fee** Fees paid to the general partner from the limited partner(s) based on realized profits.
- Performance measurement** The calculation of returns in a logical and consistent manner.
- Period costs** Costs (e.g., executives' salaries) that cannot be directly matched with the timing of revenues and which are thus expensed immediately.
- Periodicity** The assumed number of periods in the year, typically matches the frequency of coupon payments.
- Permanent differences** Differences between tax and financial reporting of revenue (expenses) that will not be reversed at some future date. These result in a difference between the company's effective tax rate and statutory tax rate and do not result in a deferred tax item.
- Permissioned networks** Networks that are fully open only to select participants on a DLT network.
- Permissionless networks** Networks that are fully open to any user on a DLT network.
- Permutation** An ordered listing.
- Perpetual bonds** Bonds with no stated maturity date.
- Perpetuity** A perpetual annuity, or a set of never-ending level sequential cash flows, with the first cash flow occurring one period from now. A bond that does not mature.
- Personal consumption expenditures** All domestic personal consumption; the basis for a price index for such consumption called the PCE price index.
- Personal disposable income** Equal to personal income less personal taxes.
- Personal income** A broad measure of household income that includes all income received by households, whether earned or unearned; measures the ability of consumers to make purchases.
- Plain vanilla bond** Bond that makes periodic, fixed coupon payments during the bond's life and a lump-sum payment of principal at maturity. Also called *conventional bond*.
- Platykurtic** Describes a distribution that has relatively less weight in the tails than the normal distribution.
- Point and figure chart** A technical analysis chart that is constructed with columns of X's alternating with columns of O's such that the horizontal axis represents only the number of changes in price without reference to time or volume.
- Point estimate** A single numerical estimate of an unknown quantity, such as a population parameter.
- Point of sale (POS)** Systems that capture transaction data at the physical location in which the sale is made.
- Policy rate** An interest rate that a central bank sets and announces publicly; normally the rate at which it is willing to lend money to the commercial banks.
- Population** All members of a specified group.
- Population mean** The arithmetic mean value of a population; the arithmetic mean of all the observations or values in the population.
- Population standard deviation** A measure of dispersion relating to a population in the same unit of measurement as the observations, calculated as the positive square root of the population variance.
- Population variance** A measure of dispersion relating to a population, calculated as the mean of the squared deviations around the population mean.
- Portfolio company** In private equity, the company in which the private equity fund is investing.
- Portfolio demand for money** The demand to hold speculative money balances based on the potential opportunities or risks that are inherent in other financial instruments.
- Portfolio planning** The process of creating a plan for building a portfolio that is expected to satisfy a client's investment objectives.
- Position** The quantity of an asset that an entity owns or owes.
- Positive screening** An ESG implementation approach that seeks to identify companies that embrace desired ESG-related principles.
- Posterior probability** An updated probability that reflects or comes after new information.
- Potential GDP** The level of real GDP that can be produced at full employment; measures the productive capacity of the economy.
- Power of a test** The probability of correctly rejecting the null—that is, rejecting the null hypothesis when it is false.

- Precautionary money balances** Money held to provide a buffer against unforeseen events that might require money.
- Precautionary stocks** A level of inventory beyond anticipated needs that provides a cushion in the event that it takes longer to replenish inventory than expected or in the case of greater than expected demand.
- Preference shares** A type of equity interest which ranks above common shares with respect to the payment of dividends and the distribution of the company's net assets upon liquidation. They have characteristics of both debt and equity securities. Also called *preferred stock*.
- Preferred stock** See *preference shares*.
- Premium** In the case of bonds, premium refers to the amount by which a bond is priced above its face (par) value. In the case of an option, the amount paid for the option contract.
- Prepaid expense** A normal operating expense that has been paid in advance of when it is due.
- Prepayment option** Contractual provision that entitles the borrower to prepay all or part of the outstanding mortgage principal prior to the scheduled due date when the principal must be repaid. Also called *early repayment option*.
- Prepayment penalty mortgages** Mortgages that stipulate a monetary penalty if a borrower prepays within a certain time period after the mortgage is originated.
- Prepayment risk** The uncertainty that the timing of the actual cash flows will be different from the scheduled cash flows as set forth in the loan agreement due to the borrowers' ability to alter payments, usually to take advantage of interest rate movements.
- Present value (PV)** The present discounted value of future cash flows: For assets, the present discounted value of the future net cash inflows that the asset is expected to generate; for liabilities, the present discounted value of the future net cash outflows that are expected to be required to settle the liabilities.
- Present value models** Valuation models that estimate the intrinsic value of a security as the present value of the future benefits expected to be received from the security. Also called *discounted cash flow models*.
- Pretax margin** A profitability ratio calculated as earnings before taxes divided by revenue.
- Price elasticity of demand** Measures the percentage change in the quantity demanded, given a percentage change in the price of a given product.
- Price index** Represents the average prices of a basket of goods and services.
- Price limits** Limits imposed by a futures exchange on the price change that can occur from one day to the next.
- Price multiple** A ratio that compares the share price with some sort of monetary flow or value to allow evaluation of the relative worth of a company's stock.
- Price priority** The principle that the highest priced buy orders and the lowest priced sell orders execute first.
- Price relative** A ratio of an ending price over a beginning price; it is equal to 1 plus the holding period return on the asset.
- Price return** Measures *only* the price appreciation or percentage change in price of the securities in an index or portfolio.
- Price return index** An index that reflects *only* the price appreciation or percentage change in price of the constituent securities. Also called *price index*.
- Price stability** In economics, refers to an inflation rate that is low on average and not subject to wide fluctuation.
- Price takers** Producers that must accept whatever price the market dictates.
- Price to book value** A valuation ratio calculated as price per share divided by book value per share.
- Price to cash flow** A valuation ratio calculated as price per share divided by cash flow per share.
- Price to earnings ratio** (P/E ratio or P/E) The ratio of share price to earnings per share.
- Price to sales** A valuation ratio calculated as price per share divided by sales per share.
- Price value of a basis point** A version of money duration, it is an estimate of the change in the full price of a bond given a 1 basis point change in the yield-to-maturity.
- Price weighting** An index weighting method in which the weight assigned to each constituent security is determined by dividing its price by the sum of all the prices of the constituent securities.
- Priced risk** Risk for which investors demand compensation for bearing (e.g. equity risk, company-specific factors, macroeconomic factors).
- Primary bond markets** Markets in which issuers first sell bonds to investors to raise capital.
- Primary capital markets (primary markets)** The market where securities are first sold and the issuers receive the proceeds.
- Primary dealers** Financial institutions that are authorized to deal in new issues of sovereign bonds and that serve primarily as trading counterparties of the office responsible for issuing sovereign bonds.
- Primary market** The market where securities are first sold and the issuers receive the proceeds.
- Prime brokers** Brokers that provide services including custody, administration, lending, short borrowing, and trading.
- Principal** The amount of funds originally invested in a project or instrument; the face value to be paid at maturity.
- Principal-agent relationship** A relationship in which a principal hires an agent to perform a particular task or service; also known as an *agency relationship*.
- Principal amount** Amount that an issuer agrees to repay the debt holders on the maturity date.
- Principal business activity** The business activity from which a company derives a majority of its revenues and/or earnings.
- Principal value** Amount that an issuer agrees to repay the debt holders on the maturity date.
- Principle of no arbitrage** See *arbitrage-free pricing*.
- Prior probabilities** Probabilities reflecting beliefs prior to the arrival of new information.
- Priority of claims** Priority of payment, with the most senior or highest ranking debt having the first claim on the cash flows and assets of the issuer.
- Private equity securities** Securities that are not listed on public exchanges and have no active secondary market. They are issued primarily to institutional investors via non-public offerings, such as private placements.
- Private investment in public equity** An investment in the equity of a publicly traded firm that is made at a discount to the market value of the firm's shares.
- Private placement** Typically a non-underwritten, unregistered offering of securities that are sold only to an investor or a small group of investors. It can be accomplished directly between the issuer and the investor(s) or through an investment bank.
- Probability** A number between 0 and 1 describing the chance that a stated event will occur.

- Probability density function** A function with non-negative values such that probability can be described by areas under the curve graphing the function.
- Probability distribution** A distribution that specifies the probabilities of a random variable's possible outcomes.
- Probability function** A function that specifies the probability that the random variable takes on a specific value.
- Producer price index** Reflects the price changes experienced by domestic producers in a country.
- Production function** Provides the quantitative link between the level of output that the economy can produce and the inputs used in the production process.
- Productivity** The amount of output produced by workers in a given period of time—for example, output per hour worked; measures the efficiency of labor.
- Profit** The return that owners of a company receive for the use of their capital and the assumption of financial risk when making their investments.
- Profit and loss (P&L) statement** A financial statement that provides information about a company's profitability over a stated period of time.
- Profit margin** An indicator of profitability, calculated as net income divided by revenue; indicates how much of each dollar of revenues is left after all costs and expenses.
- Profitability ratios** Ratios that measure a company's ability to generate profitable sales from its resources (assets).
- Project sequencing** To defer the decision to invest in a future project until the outcome of some or all of a current project is known. Projects are sequenced through time, so that investing in a project creates the option to invest in future projects.
- Promissory note** A written promise to pay a certain amount of money on demand.
- Property, plant, and equipment** Tangible assets that are expected to be used for more than one period in either the production or supply of goods or services, or for administrative purposes.
- Prospectus** The document that describes the terms of a new bond issue and helps investors perform their analysis on the issue.
- Protective put** An option strategy in which a long position in an asset is combined with a long position in a put.
- Proxy contest** Corporate takeover mechanism in which shareholders are persuaded to vote for a group seeking a controlling position on a company's board of directors.
- Proxy voting** A process that enables shareholders who are unable to attend a meeting to authorize another individual to vote on their behalf.
- Pseudo-random numbers** Numbers produced by random number generators.
- Public offer** See *public offering*.
- Public offering** An offering of securities in which any member of the public may buy the securities. Also called *public offer*.
- Pull on liquidity** When disbursements are paid too quickly or trade credit availability is limited, requiring companies to expend funds before they receive funds from sales that could cover the liability.
- Pure discount bonds** See *zero-coupon bonds*.
- Pure discount instruments** Instruments that pay interest as the difference between the amount borrowed and the amount paid back.
- Pure-play method** A method for estimating the beta for a company or project; it requires using a comparable company's beta and adjusting it for financial leverage differences.
- Put** An option that gives the holder the right to sell an underlying asset to another party at a fixed price over a specific period of time.
- Put–call–forward parity** The relationship among puts, calls, and forward contracts.
- Put–call parity** An equation expressing the equivalence (parity) of a portfolio of a call and a bond with a portfolio of a put and the underlying, which leads to the relationship between put and call prices.
- Put/call ratio** A technical analysis indicator that evaluates market sentiment based upon the volume of put options traded divided by the volume of call options traded for a particular financial instrument.
- Put option** An option that gives the holder the right to sell an underlying asset to another party at a fixed price over a specific period of time.
- Puttable bonds** Bonds that give the bondholder the right to sell the bond back to the issuer at a predetermined price on specified dates.
- Puttable common shares** Common shares that give investors the option (or right) to sell their shares (i.e., “put” them) back to the issuing company at a price that is specified when the shares are originally issued.
- Quantile** A value at or below which a stated fraction of the data lies. Also called *fractile*.
- Quantitative easing** An expansionary monetary policy based on aggressive open market purchase operations.
- Quantity equation of exchange** An expression that over a given period, the amount of money used to purchase all goods and services in an economy, $M \times V$, is equal to monetary value of this output, $P \times Y$.
- Quantity theory of money** Asserts that total spending (in money terms) is proportional to the quantity of money.
- Quartiles** Quartiles that divide a distribution into four equal parts.
- Quasi-fixed cost** A cost that stays the same over a range of production but can change to another constant level when production moves outside of that range.
- Quasi-government bonds** A bond issued by an entity that is either owned or sponsored by a national government. Also called *agency bond*.
- Quick assets** Assets that can be most readily converted to cash (e.g., cash, short-term marketable investments, receivables).
- Quick ratio** A stringent measure of liquidity that indicates a company's ability to satisfy current liabilities with its most liquid assets, calculated as (cash + short-term marketable investments + receivables) divided by current liabilities.
- Quintiles** Quartiles that divide a distribution into five equal parts.
- Quota rents** Profits that foreign producers can earn by raising the price of their goods higher than they would without a quota.
- Quotas** Government policies that restrict the quantity of a good that can be imported into a country, generally for a specified period of time.
- Quote-driven market** A market in which dealers acting as principals facilitate trading.
- Quoted interest rate** A quoted interest rate that does not account for compounding within the year. Also called *stated annual interest rate*.
- Quoted margin** The specified yield spread over the reference rate, used to compensate an investor for the difference in the credit risk of the issuer and that implied by the reference rate.

- Random number** An observation drawn from a uniform distribution.
- Random number generator** An algorithm that produces uniformly distributed random numbers between 0 and 1.
- Random variable** A quantity whose future outcomes are uncertain.
- Range** The difference between the maximum and minimum values in a dataset.
- Ratio scales** A measurement scale that has all the characteristics of interval measurement scales as well as a true zero point as the origin.
- Real GDP** The value of goods and services produced, measured at base year prices.
- Real income** Income adjusted for the effect of inflation on the purchasing power of money. Also known as the *purchasing power of income*. If income remains constant and a good's price falls, real income is said to rise, even though the number of monetary units (e.g., dollars) remains unchanged.
- Real interest rate** Nominal interest rate minus the expected rate of inflation.
- Real risk-free interest rate** The single-period interest rate for a completely risk-free security if no inflation were expected.
- Realizable (settlement) value** With reference to assets, the amount of cash or cash equivalents that could currently be obtained by selling the asset in an orderly disposal; with reference to liabilities, the undiscounted amount of cash or cash equivalents expected to be paid to satisfy the liabilities in the normal course of business.
- Rebalancing** Adjusting the weights of the constituent securities in an index.
- Rebalancing policy** The set of rules that guide the process of restoring a portfolio's asset class weights to those specified in the strategic asset allocation.
- Recession** A period during which real GDP decreases (i.e., negative growth) for at least two successive quarters, or a period of significant decline in total output, income, employment, and sales usually lasting from six months to a year.
- Recognition lag** The lag in government response to an economic problem resulting from the delay in confirming a change in the state of the economy.
- Recourse loan** Loan in which the lender has a claim against the borrower for any shortfall between the outstanding mortgage balance and the proceeds received from the sale of the property.
- Redemption yield** See *yield to maturity*.
- Redemptions** Withdrawals of funds by investors.
- Refinancing rate** A type of central bank policy rate.
- Registered bonds** Bonds for which ownership is recorded by either name or serial number.
- Relative dispersion** The amount of dispersion relative to a reference value or benchmark.
- Relative frequency** With reference to an interval of grouped data, the number of observations in the interval divided by the total number of observations in the sample.
- Relative price** The price of a specific good or service in comparison with those of other goods and services.
- Relative strength analysis** A comparison of the performance of one asset with the performance of another asset or a benchmark based on changes in the ratio of the securities' respective prices over time.
- Relative strength index** A technical analysis momentum oscillator that compares a security's gains with its losses over a set period.
- Renewable resources** Resources that can be replenished, such as a forest.
- Rent** Payment for the use of property.
- Reorganization** Agreements made by a company in bankruptcy under which a company's capital structure is altered and/or alternative arrangements are made for debt repayment; US Chapter 11 bankruptcy. The company emerges from bankruptcy as a going concern.
- Replication** The creation of an asset or portfolio from another asset, portfolio, and/or derivative.
- Repo** A form of collateralized loan involving the sale of a security with a simultaneous agreement by the seller to buy the same security back from the purchaser at an agreed-on price and future date. The party who sells the security at the inception of the repurchase agreement and buys it back at maturity is borrowing money from the other party, and the security sold and subsequently repurchased represents the collateral.
- Repo margin** The difference between the market value of the security used as collateral and the value of the loan. Also called *haircut*.
- Repo rate** The interest rate on a repurchase agreement.
- Repurchase agreement** A form of collateralized loan involving the sale of a security with a simultaneous agreement by the seller to buy the same security back from the purchaser at an agreed-on price and future date. The party who sells the security at the inception of the repurchase agreement and buys it back at maturity is borrowing money from the other party, and the security sold and subsequently repurchased represents the collateral.
- Repurchase date** The date when the party who sold the security at the inception of a repurchase agreement buys the security back from the cash lending counterparty.
- Repurchase price** The price at which the party who sold the security at the inception of the repurchase agreement buys the security back from the cash lending counterparty.
- Required margin** The yield spread over, or under, the reference rate such that an FRN is priced at par value on a rate reset date.
- Required rate of return** See *market discount rate*.
- Required yield** See *market discount rate*.
- Required yield spread** The difference between the yield-to-maturity on a new bond and the benchmark rate; additional compensation required by investors for the difference in risk and tax status of a bond relative to a government bond. Sometimes called the *spread over the benchmark*.
- Reserve accounts** Form of internal credit enhancement that relies on creating accounts and depositing in these accounts cash that can be used to absorb losses. Also called *reserve funds*.
- Reserve funds** See *reserve accounts*.
- Reserve requirement** The requirement for banks to hold reserves in proportion to the size of deposits.
- Resistance** In technical analysis, a price range in which selling activity is sufficient to stop the rise in the price of a security.
- Responsible investing** The practice of identifying companies that can efficiently manage their financial, environmental, and human capital resources to generate attractive long-term profitability; often synonymous with *sustainable investing*.
- Restricted payments** A bond covenant meant to protect creditors by limiting how much cash can be paid out to shareholders over time.

- Retail method** An inventory accounting method in which the sales value of an item is reduced by the gross margin to calculate the item's cost.
- Retracement** In technical analysis, a reversal in the movement of a security's price such that it is counter to the prevailing longer-term price trend.
- Return-generating model** A model that can provide an estimate of the expected return of a security given certain parameters and estimates of the values of the independent variables in the model.
- Return on assets (ROA)** A profitability ratio calculated as net income divided by average total assets; indicates a company's net profit generated per dollar invested in total assets.
- Return on equity (ROE)** A profitability ratio calculated as net income divided by average shareholders' equity.
- Return on sales** An indicator of profitability, calculated as net income divided by revenue; indicates how much of each dollar of revenues is left after all costs and expenses.
- Return on total capital** A profitability ratio calculated as EBIT divided by the sum of short- and long-term debt and equity.
- Revaluation model** The process of valuing long-lived assets at fair value, rather than at cost less accumulated depreciation. Any resulting profit or loss is either reported on the income statement and/or through equity under revaluation surplus.
- Revenue** The amount charged for the delivery of goods or services in the ordinary activities of a business over a stated period; the inflows of economic resources to a company over a stated period.
- Reversal patterns** A type of pattern used in technical analysis to predict the end of a trend and a change in direction of the security's price.
- Reverse repo** A repurchase agreement viewed from the perspective of the cash lending counterparty.
- Reverse repurchase agreement** A repurchase agreement viewed from the perspective of the cash lending counterparty.
- Reverse stock split** A reduction in the number of shares outstanding with a corresponding increase in share price, but no change to the company's underlying fundamentals.
- Revolving credit agreements** The strongest form of short-term bank borrowing facilities; they are in effect for multiple years (e.g., 3–5 years) and may have optional medium-term loan features.
- Rho** The sensitivity of the option price to the risk-free rate.
- Ricardian equivalence** An economic theory that implies that it makes no difference whether a government finances a deficit by increasing taxes or issuing debt.
- Risk** Exposure to uncertainty. The chance of a loss or adverse outcome as a result of an action, inaction, or external event.
- Risk averse** The assumption that an investor will choose the least risky alternative.
- Risk aversion** The degree of an investor's inability and unwillingness to take risk.
- Risk budgeting** The establishment of objectives for individuals, groups, or divisions of an organization that takes into account the allocation of an acceptable level of risk.
- Risk exposure** The state of being exposed or vulnerable to a risk. The extent to which an entity is sensitive to underlying risks.
- Risk governance** The top-down process and guidance that directs risk management activities to align with and support the overall enterprise.
- Risk management** The process of identifying the level of risk an entity wants, measuring the level of risk the entity currently has, taking actions that bring the actual level of risk to the desired level of risk, and monitoring the new actual level of risk so that it continues to be aligned with the desired level of risk.
- Risk management framework** The infrastructure, process, and analytics needed to support effective risk management in an organization.
- Risk-neutral pricing** Sometimes said of derivatives pricing, uses the fact that arbitrage opportunities guarantee that a risk-free portfolio consisting of the underlying and the derivative must earn the risk-free rate.
- Risk-neutral probabilities** Weights that are used to compute a binomial option price. They are the probabilities that would apply if a risk-neutral investor valued an option.
- Risk premium** An extra return expected by investors for bearing some specified risk.
- Risk shifting** Actions to change the distribution of risk outcomes.
- Risk tolerance** The amount of risk an investor is willing and able to bear to achieve an investment goal.
- Risk transfer** Actions to pass on a risk to another party, often, but not always, in the form of an insurance policy.
- Robo-adviser** A machine-based analytical tool or service that provides technology-driven investment solutions through online platforms.
- Robust** The quality of being relatively unaffected by a violation of assumptions.
- Rule of 72** The principle that the approximate number of years necessary for an investment to double is 72 divided by the stated interest rate.
- Running yield** See *current yield*.
- Safety-first rules** Rules for portfolio selection that focus on the risk that portfolio value will fall below some minimum acceptable level over some time horizon.
- Safety stock** A level of inventory beyond anticipated needs that provides a cushion in the event that it takes longer to replenish inventory than expected or in the case of greater than expected demand.
- Sales** Generally, a synonym for revenue; "sales" is generally understood to refer to the sale of goods, whereas "revenue" is understood to include the sale of goods or services.
- Sales risk** Uncertainty with respect to the quantity of goods and services that a company is able to sell and the price it is able to achieve; the risk related to the uncertainty of revenues.
- Sales-type leases** A type of finance lease, from a lessor perspective, where the present value of the lease payments (lease receivable) exceeds the carrying value of the leased asset. The revenues earned by the lessor are operating (the profit on the sale) and financing (interest) in nature.
- Sample** A subset of a population.
- Sample excess kurtosis** A sample measure of the degree of a distribution's kurtosis in excess of the normal distribution's kurtosis.
- Sample kurtosis** A sample measure of the degree of a distribution's peakedness.
- Sample mean** The sum of the sample observations, divided by the sample size.

- Sample selection bias** Bias introduced by systematically excluding some members of the population according to a particular attribute—for example, the bias introduced when data availability leads to certain observations being excluded from the analysis.
- Sample skewness** A sample measure of degree of asymmetry of a distribution.
- Sample standard deviation** The positive square root of the sample variance.
- Sample statistic** A quantity computed from or used to describe a sample.
- Sample variance** A sample measure of the degree of dispersion of a distribution, calculated by dividing the sum of the squared deviations from the sample mean by the sample size minus 1.
- Sampling** The process of obtaining a sample.
- Sampling distribution** The distribution of all distinct possible values that a statistic can assume when computed from samples of the same size randomly drawn from the same population.
- Sampling error** The difference between the observed value of a statistic and the quantity it is intended to estimate.
- Sampling plan** The set of rules used to select a sample.
- Say on pay** A process whereby shareholders may vote on executive remuneration (compensation) matters.
- Say's law** Named for French economist J.B. Say: All that is produced will be sold because supply creates its own demand.
- Scenario analysis** Analysis that shows the changes in key financial quantities that result from given (economic) events, such as the loss of customers, the loss of a supply source, or a catastrophic event; a risk management technique involving examination of the performance of a portfolio under specified situations. Closely related to stress testing.
- Screening** The application of a set of criteria to reduce a set of potential investments to a smaller set having certain desired characteristics.
- Seasoned offering** An offering in which an issuer sells additional units of a previously issued security.
- Second-degree price discrimination** When the monopolist charges different per-unit prices using the quantity purchased as an indicator of how highly the customer values the product.
- Second lien** A secured interest in the pledged assets that ranks below first lien debt in both collateral protection and priority of payment.
- Secondary bond markets** Markets in which existing bonds are traded among investors.
- Secondary market** The market where securities are traded among investors.
- Secondary precedence rules** Rules that determine how to rank orders placed at the same time.
- Sector** A group of related industries.
- Sector indexes** Indexes that represent and track different economic sectors—such as consumer goods, energy, finance, health care, and technology—on either a national, regional, or global basis.
- Secured bonds** Bonds secured by assets or financial guarantees pledged to ensure debt repayment in case of default.
- Secured debt** Debt in which the debtholder has a direct claim—a pledge from the issuer—on certain assets and their associated cash flows.
- Securitization** A process that involves moving assets into a special legal entity, which then uses the assets as guarantees to secure a bond issue.
- Securitized assets** Assets that are typically used to create asset-backed bonds; for example, when a bank securitizes a pool of loans, the loans are said to be securitized.
- Security characteristic line** A plot of the excess return of a security on the excess return of the market.
- Security market index** A portfolio of securities representing a given security market, market segment, or asset class.
- Security market line** (SML) The graph of the capital asset pricing model.
- Security selection** The process of selecting individual securities; typically, security selection has the objective of generating superior risk-adjusted returns relative to a portfolio's benchmark.
- Self-investment limits** With respect to investment limitations applying to pension plans, restrictions on the percentage of assets that can be invested in securities issued by the pension plan sponsor.
- Sell-side firm** A broker or dealer that sells securities to and provides independent investment research and recommendations to investment management companies.
- Semi-strong-form efficient market** A market in which security prices reflect all publicly known and available information.
- Semiannual bond basis yield** An annual rate having a periodicity of two; also known as a *semiannual bond equivalent yield*.
- Semiannual bond equivalent yield** See *semiannual bond basis yield*.
- Semideviation** The positive square root of semivariance (sometimes called *semistandard deviation*).
- Semilogarithmic** Describes a scale constructed so that equal intervals on the vertical scale represent equal rates of change, and equal intervals on the horizontal scale represent equal amounts of change.
- Semivariance** The average squared deviation below the mean.
- Seniority ranking** Priority of payment of various debt obligations.
- Sensitivity analysis** Analysis that shows the range of possible outcomes as specific assumptions are changed.
- Separately managed account** (SMA) An investment portfolio managed exclusively for the benefit of an individual or institution.
- Serial maturity structure** Structure for a bond issue in which the maturity dates are spread out during the bond's life; a stated number of bonds mature and are paid off each year before final maturity.
- Settlement** The process that occurs after a trade is completed, the securities are passed to the buyer, and payment is received by the seller.
- Settlement date** Date when the buyer makes cash payment and the seller delivers the security.
- Settlement price** The official price, designated by the clearinghouse, from which daily gains and losses will be determined and marked to market.
- Share repurchase** A transaction in which a company buys back its own shares. Unlike stock dividends and stock splits, share repurchases use corporate cash.
- Shareholder activism** Strategies used by shareholders to attempt to compel a company to act in a desired manner.
- Shareholder engagement** The process whereby companies engage with their shareholders.

- Shareholders' equity** Assets less liabilities; the residual interest in the assets after subtracting the liabilities.
- Sharpe ratio** The average return in excess of the risk-free rate divided by the standard deviation of return; a measure of the average excess return earned per unit of standard deviation of return.
- Shelf registration** Type of public offering that allows the issuer to file a single, all-encompassing offering circular that covers a series of bond issues.
- Short** The seller of an asset or derivative contract. Also refers to the position of being short an asset or derivative contract.
- Short position** A position in an asset or contract in which one has sold an asset one does not own, or in which a right under a contract can be exercised against oneself.
- Short-run average total cost** The curve describing average total cost when some costs are considered fixed.
- Short selling** A transaction in which borrowed securities are sold with the intention to repurchase them at a lower price at a later date and return them to the lender.
- Shortfall risk** The risk that portfolio value will fall below some minimum acceptable level over some time horizon.
- Shutdown point** The point at which average revenue is equal to the firm's average variable cost.
- Simple interest** The interest earned each period on the original investment; interest calculated on the principal only.
- Simple random sample** A subset of a larger population created in such a way that each element of the population has an equal probability of being selected to the subset.
- Simple random sampling** The procedure of drawing a sample to satisfy the definition of a simple random sample.
- Simple yield** The sum of the coupon payments plus the straight-line amortized share of the gain or loss, divided by the flat price.
- Simulation** Computer-generated sensitivity or scenario analysis that is based on probability models for the factors that drive outcomes.
- Simulation trial** A complete pass through the steps of a simulation.
- Single-step format** With respect to the format of the income statement, a format that does not subtotal for gross profit (revenue minus cost of goods sold).
- Sinking fund arrangement** Provision that reduces the credit risk of a bond issue by requiring the issuer to retire a portion of the bond's principal outstanding each year.
- Situational influences** External factors, such as environmental or cultural elements, that shape our behavior.
- Skewed** Not symmetrical.
- Skewness** A quantitative measure of skew (lack of symmetry); a synonym of skew.
- Small country** A country that is a price taker in the world market for a product and cannot influence the world market price.
- Smart contract** A computer program that is designed to self-execute on the basis of pre-specified terms and conditions agreed to by parties to a contract.
- Socially responsible investing** An investment approach that excludes investments in companies or industries that deviate from an organization's beliefs and sometimes includes investments with favorable environmental or social profiles.
- Solvency** With respect to financial statement analysis, the ability of a company to fulfill its long-term obligations.
- Solvency ratios** Ratios that measure a company's ability to meet its long-term obligations.
- Solvency risk** The risk that an entity does not survive or succeed because it runs out of cash, even though it might otherwise be solvent.
- Sovereign bonds** A bond issued by a national government.
- Sovereign yield spread** An estimate of the country spread (country equity premium) for a developing nation that is based on a comparison of bonds yields in country being analyzed and a developed country. The sovereign yield spread is the difference between a government bond yield in the country being analyzed, denominated in the currency of the developed country, and the Treasury bond yield on a similar maturity bond in the developed country.
- Sovereigns** A bond issued by a national government.
- Spearman rank correlation coefficient** A measure of correlation applied to ranked data.
- Special dividend** A dividend paid by a company that does not pay dividends on a regular schedule, or a dividend that supplements regular cash dividends with an extra payment.
- Special purpose entity** A non-operating entity created to carry out a specified purpose, such as leasing assets or securitizing receivables; can be a corporation, partnership, trust, limited liability, or partnership formed to facilitate a specific type of business activity. Also called *special purpose vehicle* or *variable interest entity*.
- Special purpose vehicle** See *special purpose entity*.
- Specific identification method** An inventory accounting method that identifies which specific inventory items were sold and which remained in inventory to be carried over to later periods.
- Speculative demand for money** The demand to hold speculative money balances based on the potential opportunities or risks that are inherent in other financial instruments. Also called *portfolio demand for money*.
- Speculative money balances** Monies held in anticipation that other assets will decline in value.
- Split coupon bond** See *deferred coupon bond*.
- Sponsored** A type of depository receipt in which the foreign company whose shares are held by the depository has a direct involvement in the issuance of the receipts.
- Spot curve** A sequence of yields-to-maturity on zero-coupon bonds. Sometimes called *zero* or *strip curve* because coupon payments are "stripped" off of the bonds.
- Spot markets** Markets in which assets are traded for immediate delivery.
- Spot prices** The price of an asset for immediately delivery.
- Spot rates** A sequence of market discount rates that correspond to the cash flow dates; yields-to-maturity on zero-coupon bonds maturing at the date of each cash flow.
- Spread** In general, the difference in yield between different fixed income securities. Often used to refer to the difference between the yield-to-maturity and the benchmark.
- Spread over the benchmark** See *required yield spread*.
- Spread risk** Bond price risk arising from changes in the yield spread on credit-risky bonds; reflects changes in the market's assessment and/or pricing of credit migration (or downgrade) risk and market liquidity risk.
- Stackelberg model** A prominent model of strategic decisionmaking in which firms are assumed to make their decisions sequentially.
- Stagflation** When a high inflation rate is combined with a high level of unemployment and a slowdown of the economy.
- Staggered boards** Election process whereby directors are typically divided into multiple classes that are elected separately in consecutive years—that is, one class every year.

- Stakeholder management** The identification, prioritization, and understanding of the interests of stakeholder groups, and managing the company's relationships with these groups.
- Stakeholders** Individuals or groups of individuals who may be affected either directly or indirectly by a decision and thus have an interest, or stake, in the decision.
- Standard cost** With respect to inventory accounting, the planned or target unit cost of inventory items or services.
- Standard deviation** The positive square root of the variance; a measure of dispersion in the same units as the original data.
- Standard normal distribution** The normal density with mean (μ) equal to 0 and standard deviation (σ) equal to 1.
- Standardizing** A transformation that involves subtracting the mean and dividing the result by the standard deviation.
- Standards of conduct** Behaviors required by a group; established benchmarks that clarify or enhance a group's code of ethics.
- Standing limit orders** A limit order at a price below market and which therefore is waiting to trade.
- Stated annual interest rate** A quoted interest rate that does not account for compounding within the year. Also called *quoted interest rate*.
- Statement of changes in equity** (statement of owners' equity) A financial statement that reconciles the beginning-of-period and end-of-period balance sheet values of shareholders' equity; provides information about all factors affecting shareholders' equity. Also called *statement of owners' equity*.
- Statement of financial condition** The financial statement that presents an entity's current financial position by disclosing resources the entity controls (its assets) and the claims on those resources (its liabilities and equity claims), as of a particular point in time (the date of the balance sheet).
- Statement of financial position** The financial statement that presents an entity's current financial position by disclosing resources the entity controls (its assets) and the claims on those resources (its liabilities and equity claims), as of a particular point in time (the date of the balance sheet).
- Statement of operations** A financial statement that provides information about a company's profitability over a stated period of time.
- Statistic** A quantity computed from or used to describe a sample of data.
- Statistical inference** Making forecasts, estimates, or judgments about a larger group from a smaller group actually observed; using a sample statistic to infer the value of an unknown population parameter.
- Statistically significant** A result indicating that the null hypothesis can be rejected; with reference to an estimated regression coefficient, frequently understood to mean a result indicating that the corresponding population regression coefficient is different from 0.
- Statutory voting** A common method of voting where each share represents one vote.
- Step-up coupon bond** Bond for which the coupon, which may be fixed or floating, increases by specified margins at specified dates.
- Stock dividend** A type of dividend in which a company distributes additional shares of its common stock to shareholders instead of cash.
- Stock-out losses** Profits lost from not having sufficient inventory on hand to satisfy demand.
- Stock split** An increase in the number of shares outstanding with a consequent decrease in share price, but no change to the company's underlying fundamentals.
- Stop-loss order** See *stop order*.
- Stop order** An order in which a trader has specified a stop price condition. Also called *stop-loss order*.
- Store of value** The quality of tending to preserve value.
- Store of wealth** Goods that depend on the fact that they do not perish physically over time, and on the belief that others would always value the good.
- Straight-line method** A depreciation method that allocates evenly the cost of a long-lived asset less its estimated residual value over the estimated useful life of the asset.
- Straight voting** A shareholder voting process in which shareholders receive one vote for each share owned.
- Strategic analysis** Analysis of the competitive environment with an emphasis on the implications of the environment for corporate strategy.
- Strategic asset allocation** The set of exposures to IPS-permissible asset classes that is expected to achieve the client's long-term objectives given the client's investment constraints.
- Strategic groups** Groups sharing distinct business models or catering to specific market segments in an industry.
- Street convention** Yield measure that neglects weekends and holidays; the internal rate of return on cash flows assuming payments are made on the scheduled dates, even when the scheduled date falls on a weekend or holiday.
- Stress testing** A specific type of scenario analysis that estimates losses in rare and extremely unfavorable combinations of events or scenarios.
- Strong-form efficient market** A market in which security prices reflect all public and private information.
- Structural (or cyclically adjusted) budget deficit** The deficit that would exist if the economy was at full employment (or full potential output).
- Structural subordination** Arises in a holding company structure when the debt of operating subsidiaries is serviced by the cash flow and assets of the subsidiaries before funds can be passed to the holding company to service debt at the parent level.
- Structured financial instruments** Financial instruments that share the common attribute of repackaging risks. Structured financial instruments include asset-backed securities, collateralized debt obligations, and other structured financial instruments such as capital protected, yield enhancement, participation and leveraged instruments.
- Subjective probability** A probability drawing on personal or subjective judgment.
- Subordinated debt** A class of unsecured debt that ranks below a firm's senior unsecured obligations.
- Subordination** Form of internal credit enhancement that relies on creating more than one bond tranche and ordering the claim priorities for ownership or interest in an asset between the tranches. The ordering of the claim priorities is called a senior/subordinated structure, where the tranches of highest seniority are called senior followed by subordinated or junior tranches. Also called *credit tranching*.
- Substitutes** Said of two goods or services such that if the price of one increases the demand for the other tends to increase, holding all other things equal (e.g., butter and margarine).
- Sunk cost** A cost that has already been incurred.
- Supervised learning** A machine learning approach that makes use of labeled training data.

- Supply shock** A typically unexpected disturbance to supply.
- Support** In technical analysis, a price range in which buying activity is sufficient to stop the decline in the price of a security.
- Support tranche** A class or tranche in a CMO that protects the PAC tranche from prepayment risk.
- Supranational bonds** A bond issued by a supranational agency such as the World Bank.
- Surety bond** Form of external credit enhancement whereby a rated and regulated insurance company guarantees to reimburse bondholders for any losses incurred up to a maximum amount if the issuer defaults.
- Survey approach** An estimate of the equity risk premium that is based upon estimates provided by a panel of finance experts.
- Survivorship bias** The bias resulting from a test design that fails to account for companies that have gone bankrupt, merged, or are otherwise no longer reported in a database.
- Sustainable growth rate** The rate of dividend (and earnings) growth that can be sustained over time for a given level of return on equity, keeping the capital structure constant and without issuing additional common stock.
- Sustainable investing** The practice of identifying companies that can efficiently manage their financial, environmental, and human capital resources to generate attractive long-term profitability; often synonymous with *responsible investing*.
- Sustainable rate of economic growth** The rate of increase in the economy's productive capacity or potential GDP.
- Swap contract** An agreement between two parties to exchange a series of future cash flows.
- Syndicated loans** Loans from a group of lenders to a single borrower.
- Syndicated offering** A bond issue that is underwritten by a group of investment banks.
- Synthetic lease** A lease that is structured to provide a company with the tax benefits of ownership while not requiring the asset to be reflected on the company's financial statements.
- Systematic risk** Risk that affects the entire market or economy; it cannot be avoided and is inherent in the overall market. Systematic risk is also known as non-diversifiable or market risk.
- Systematic sampling** A procedure of selecting every k th member until reaching a sample of the desired size. The sample that results from this procedure should be approximately random.
- t-Test** A hypothesis test using a statistic (t -statistic) that follows a t -distribution.
- Tactical asset allocation** The decision to deliberately deviate from the strategic asset allocation in an attempt to add value based on forecasts of the near-term relative performance of asset classes.
- Target balance** A minimum level of cash to be held available—estimated in advance and adjusted for known funds transfers, seasonality, or other factors.
- Target capital structure** A company's chosen proportions of debt and equity.
- Target independent** A bank's ability to determine the definition of inflation that they target, the rate of inflation that they target, and the horizon over which the target is to be achieved.
- Target semideviation** The positive square root of target semivariance.
- Target semivariance** The average squared deviation below a target value.
- Tariffs** Taxes that a government levies on imported goods.
- Tax base** The amount at which an asset or liability is valued for tax purposes.
- Tax expense** An aggregate of an entity's income tax payable (or recoverable in the case of a tax benefit) and any changes in deferred tax assets and liabilities. It is essentially the income tax payable or recoverable if these had been determined based on accounting profit rather than taxable income.
- Tax loss carry forward** A taxable loss in the current period that may be used to reduce future taxable income.
- Taxable income** The portion of an entity's income that is subject to income taxes under the tax laws of its jurisdiction.
- Taxable temporary differences** Temporary differences that result in a taxable amount in a future period when determining the taxable profit as the balance sheet item is recovered or settled.
- Technical analysis** A form of security analysis that uses price and volume data, which is often displayed graphically, in decision making.
- Technology** The process a company uses to transform inputs into outputs.
- Tender offer** Corporate takeover mechanism which involves shareholders selling their interests directly to the group seeking to gain control.
- Tenor** The time-to-maturity for a bond or derivative contract. Also called *term to maturity*.
- Term maturity structure** Structure for a bond issue in which the bond's notional principal is paid off in a lump sum at maturity.
- Term structure** See *maturity structure*.
- Term structure of credit spreads** The relationship between the spreads over the "risk-free" (or benchmark) rates and times-to-maturity.
- Term structure of yield volatility** The relationship between the volatility of bond yields-to-maturity and times-to-maturity.
- Terminal stock value** The expected value of a share at the end of the investment horizon—in effect, the expected selling price. Also called *terminal value*.
- Terminal value** The expected value of a share at the end of the investment horizon—in effect, the expected selling price.
- Terms of trade** The ratio of the price of exports to the price of imports, representing those prices by export and import price indexes, respectively.
- Text analytics** The use of computer programs to analyze and derive meaning from typically large, unstructured text- or voice-based datasets.
- Thematic investing** An ESG implementation approach that focuses on investing in companies within a specific sector or industry theme.
- Third-degree price discrimination** When the monopolist segregates customers into groups based on demographic or other characteristics and offers different pricing to each group.
- Time-period bias** The possibility that when we use a time-series sample, our statistical conclusion may be sensitive to the starting and ending dates of the sample.
- Time-series data** Observations of a variable over time.
- Time tranching** The creation of classes or tranches in an ABS/MBS that possess different (expected) maturities.
- Time value** The difference between the market price of the option and its intrinsic value.

- Time value decay** Said of an option when, at expiration, no time value remains and the option is worth only its exercise value.
- Time value of money** The principles governing equivalence relationships between cash flows with different dates.
- Time-weighted rate of return** The compound rate of growth of one unit of currency invested in a portfolio during a stated measurement period; a measure of investment performance that is not sensitive to the timing and amount of withdrawals or additions to the portfolio.
- Tokenization** The process of representing ownership rights to physical assets on a blockchain or distributed ledger.
- Top-down analysis** With reference to investment selection processes, an approach that starts with macro selection (i.e., identifying attractive geographic segments and/or industry segments) and then addresses selection of the most attractive investments within those segments.
- Total comprehensive income** The change in equity during a period resulting from transaction and other events, other than those changes resulting from transactions with owners in their capacity as owners.
- Total cost** The summation of all costs, for which costs are classified as fixed or variable.
- Total factor productivity** A scale factor that reflects the portion of growth that is not accounted for by explicit factor inputs (e.g. capital and labor).
- Total fixed cost** The summation of all expenses that do not change as the level of production varies.
- Total invested capital** The sum of market value of common equity, book value of preferred equity, and face value of debt.
- Total probability rule** A rule explaining the unconditional probability of an event in terms of probabilities of the event conditional on mutually exclusive and exhaustive scenarios.
- Total probability rule for expected value** A rule explaining the expected value of a random variable in terms of expected values of the random variable conditional on mutually exclusive and exhaustive scenarios.
- Total return** Measures the price appreciation, or percentage change in price of the securities in an index or portfolio, plus any income received over the period.
- Total return index** An index that reflects the price appreciation or percentage change in price of the constituent securities plus any income received since inception.
- Total return swap** A swap in which one party agrees to pay the total return on a security. Often used as a credit derivative, in which the underlying is a bond.
- Total variable cost** The summation of all variable expenses.
- Tracking error** The standard deviation of the differences between a portfolio's returns and its benchmark's returns; a synonym of active risk.
- Tracking risk** The standard deviation of the differences between a portfolio's returns and its benchmark's returns; a synonym of active risk. Also called *tracking error*.
- Trade creation** When regional integration results in the replacement of higher cost domestic production by lower cost imports from other members.
- Trade credit** A spontaneous form of credit in which a purchaser of the goods or service is financing its purchase by delaying the date on which payment is made.
- Trade diversion** When regional integration results in lower-cost imports from non-member countries being replaced with higher-cost imports from members.
- Trade payables** Amounts that a business owes to its vendors for goods and services that were purchased from them but which have not yet been paid.
- Trade protection** Government policies that impose restrictions on trade, such as tariffs and quotas.
- Trade surplus (deficit)** When the value of exports is greater (less) than the value of imports.
- Trading securities** Securities held by a company with the intent to trade them. Also called *held-for-trading securities*.
- Traditional investment markets** Markets for traditional investments, which include all publicly traded debts and equities and shares in pooled investment vehicles that hold publicly traded debts and/or equities.
- Transactions money balances** Money balances that are held to finance transactions.
- Transactions motive** In the context of inventory management, the need for inventory as part of the routine production-sales cycle.
- Transfer payments** Welfare payments made through the social security system that exist to provide a basic minimum level of income for low-income households.
- Transparency** Said of something (e.g., a market) in which information is fully disclosed to the public and/or regulators.
- Treasury Inflation-Protected Securities** A bond issued by the United States Treasury Department that is designed to protect the investor from inflation by adjusting the principal of the bond for changes in inflation.
- Treasury stock method** A method for accounting for the effect of options (and warrants) on earnings per share (EPS) that specifies what EPS would have been if the options and warrants had been exercised and the company had used the proceeds to repurchase common stock.
- Tree diagram** A diagram with branches emanating from nodes representing either mutually exclusive chance events or mutually exclusive decisions.
- Trend** A long-term pattern of movement in a particular direction.
- Treynor ratio** A measure of risk-adjusted performance that relates a portfolio's excess returns to the portfolio's beta.
- Triangle patterns** In technical analysis, a continuation chart pattern that forms as the range between high and low prices narrows, visually forming a triangle.
- Trimmed mean** A mean computed after excluding a stated small percentage of the lowest and highest observations.
- TRIN** A flow of funds indicator applied to a broad stock market index to measure the relative extent to which money is moving into or out of rising and declining stocks.
- Triple bottoms** In technical analysis, a reversal pattern that is formed when the price forms three troughs at roughly the same price level; used to predict a change from a downtrend to an uptrend.
- Triple tops** In technical analysis, a reversal pattern that is formed when the price forms three peaks at roughly the same price level; used to predict a change from an uptrend to a downtrend.
- Trough** The lowest point of a business cycle.
- True yield** The internal rate of return on cash flows using the actual calendar including weekends and bank holidays.
- Trust deed** The governing legal credit agreement, typically incorporated by reference in the prospectus. Also called *bond indenture*.

- Trust receipt arrangement** The use of inventory as collateral for a loan. The inventory is segregated and held in trust, and the proceeds of any sale must be remitted to the lender immediately.
- Turn-of-the-year effect** Calendar anomaly that stock market returns in January are significantly higher compared to the rest of the months of the year, with most of the abnormal returns reported during the first five trading days in January.
- Two-fund separation theorem** The theory that all investors regardless of taste, risk preferences, and initial wealth will hold a combination of two portfolios or funds: a risk-free asset and an optimal portfolio of risky assets.
- Two-sided hypothesis test** A test in which the null hypothesis is rejected in favor of the alternative hypothesis if the evidence indicates that the population parameter is either smaller or larger than a hypothesized value.
- Two-tailed hypothesis test** A test in which the null hypothesis is rejected in favor of the alternative hypothesis if the evidence indicates that the population parameter is either smaller or larger than a hypothesized value.
- Two-week repo rate** The interest rate on a two-week repurchase agreement; may be used as a policy rate by a central bank.
- Type I error** The error of rejecting a true null hypothesis.
- Type II error** The error of not rejecting a false null hypothesis.
- Unanticipated (unexpected) inflation** The component of inflation that is a surprise.
- Unconditional probability** The probability of an event *not* conditioned on another event.
- Underemployed** A person who has a job but has the qualifications to work a significantly higher-paying job.
- Underlying** An asset that trades in a market in which buyers and sellers meet, decide on a price, and the seller then delivers the asset to the buyer and receives payment. The underlying is the asset or other derivative on which a particular derivative is based. The market for the underlying is also referred to as the *spot market*.
- Underwriter** A firm, usually an investment bank, that takes the risk of buying the newly issued securities from the issuer, and then reselling them to investors or to dealers, thus guaranteeing the sale of the securities at the offering price negotiated with the issuer.
- Underwritten offering** A type of securities issue mechanism in which the investment bank guarantees the sale of the securities at an offering price that is negotiated with the issuer. Also known as *firm commitment offering*.
- Unearned revenue** A liability account for money that has been collected for goods or services that have not yet been delivered; payment received in advance of providing a good or service. Also called *deferred revenue* or *deferred income*.
- Unemployed** People who are actively seeking employment but are currently without a job.
- Unemployment rate** The ratio of unemployed to the labor force.
- Unexpected inflation** The component of inflation that is a surprise.
- Unit elastic** An elasticity with a magnitude of negative one. Also called *unitary elastic*.
- Unit labor cost** The average labor cost to produce one unit of output.
- Unit normal distribution** The normal density with mean (μ) equal to 0 and standard deviation (σ) equal to 1.
- Units-of-production method** A depreciation method that allocates the cost of a long-lived asset based on actual usage during the period.
- Univariate distribution** A distribution that specifies the probabilities for a single random variable.
- Universal owners** Long-term investors, such as pension funds, that have significant assets invested in globally diversified portfolios.
- Unlimited funds** An unlimited funds environment assumes that the company can raise the funds it wants for all profitable projects simply by paying the required rate of return.
- Unsecured debt** Debt which gives the debtholder only a general claim on an issuer's assets and cash flow.
- Un-sponsored** A type of depository receipt in which the foreign company whose shares are held by the depository has no involvement in the issuance of the receipts.
- Unsupervised learning** A machine learning approach that does not make use of labeled training data.
- Up transition probability** The probability that an asset's value moves up.
- Validity instructions** Instructions which indicate when the order may be filled.
- Valuation allowance** A reserve created against deferred tax assets, based on the likelihood of realizing the deferred tax assets in future accounting periods.
- Valuation ratios** Ratios that measure the quantity of an asset or flow (e.g., earnings) in relation to the price associated with a specified claim (e.g., a share or ownership of the enterprise).
- Value at risk (VaR)** A money measure of the minimum value of losses expected during a specified time period at a given level of probability.
- Value investors** With reference to equity investors, investors who are focused on paying a relatively low share price in relation to earnings or assets per share.
- VaR** See *value at risk*.
- Variable costs** Costs that fluctuate with the level of production and sales.
- Variable-rate note** Similar to a floating-rate note, except that the spread is variable rather than constant.
- Variance** The expected value (the probability-weighted average) of squared deviations from a random variable's expected value.
- Variation margin** Additional margin that must be deposited in an amount sufficient to bring the balance up to the initial margin requirement.
- Veblen goods** Goods that increase in desirability with increasing price.
- Vega** A measure of the sensitivity of an option's price to changes in the underlying's volatility.
- Venture capital** Investments that provide "seed" or start-up capital, early-stage financing, or later-stage financing (including mezzanine-stage financing) to companies that are in early development stages and require additional capital for expansion or preparation for an initial public offering.
- Venture capital fund** A fund for private equity investors that provides financing for development-stage companies.
- Vertical analysis** Common-size analysis using only one reporting period or one base financial statement; for example, an income statement in which all items are stated as percentages of sales.
- Vertical demand schedule** Implies that some fixed quantity is demanded, regardless of price.

- Volatility** As used in option pricing, the standard deviation of the continuously compounded returns on the underlying asset.
- Voluntarily unemployed** A person voluntarily outside the labor force, such as a jobless worker refusing an available vacancy.
- Voluntary export restraint** A trade barrier under which the exporting country agrees to limit its exports of the good to its trading partners to a specific number of units.
- Vote by proxy** A mechanism that allows a designated party—such as another shareholder, a shareholder representative, or management—to vote on the shareholder's behalf.
- Warehouse receipt arrangement** The use of inventory as collateral for a loan; similar to a trust receipt arrangement except there is a third party (i.e., a warehouse company) that supervises the inventory.
- Warrant** Attached option that gives its holder the right to buy the underlying stock of the issuing company at a fixed exercise price until the expiration date.
- Weak-form efficient market hypothesis** The belief that security prices fully reflect all past market data, which refers to all historical price and volume trading information.
- Wealth effect** An increase (decrease) in household wealth increases (decreases) consumer spending out of a given level of current income.
- Weighted average cost method** An inventory accounting method that averages the total cost of available inventory items over the total units available for sale.
- Weighted average cost of capital** A weighted average of the aftertax required rates of return on a company's common stock, preferred stock, and long-term debt, where the weights are the fraction of each source of financing in the company's target capital structure.
- Weighted average coupon rate** Weighting the mortgage rate of each mortgage loan in the pool by the percentage of the mortgage outstanding relative to the outstanding amount of all the mortgages in the pool.
- Weighted average life** A measure that gives investors an indication of how long they can expect to hold the MBS before it is paid off; the convention-based average time to receipt of all principal repayments. Also called *average life*.
- Weighted average maturity** Weighting the remaining number of months to maturity for each mortgage loan in the pool by the amount of the outstanding mortgage balance.
- Weighted mean** An average in which each observation is weighted by an index of its relative importance.
- Wholesale price index** Reflects the price changes experienced by domestic producers in a country.
- Winsorized mean** A mean computed after assigning a stated percent of the lowest values equal to one specified low value, and a stated percent of the highest values equal to one specified high value.
- Working capital** The difference between current assets and current liabilities.
- Working capital management** The management of a company's short-term assets (such as inventory) and short-term liabilities (such as money owed to suppliers).
- World price** The price prevailing in the world market.
- Yield** The actual return on a debt security if it is held to maturity.
- Yield duration** The sensitivity of the bond price with respect to the bond's own yield-to-maturity.
- Yield to maturity** Annual return that an investor earns on a bond if the investor purchases the bond today and holds it until maturity. It is the discount rate that equates the present value of the bond's expected cash flows until maturity with the bond's price. Also called *yield-to-redemption* or *redemption yield*.
- Yield to redemption** See *yield to maturity*.
- Yield-to-worst** The lowest of the sequence of yields-to-call and the yield-to-maturity.
- Zero-coupon bonds** Bonds that do not pay interest during the bond's life. It is issued at a discount to par value and redeemed at par. Also called *pure discount bonds*.
- Zero volatility spread (Z-spread)** Calculates a constant yield spread over a government (or interest rate swap) spot curve.

Index

A

AAR. *see* average accounting rate of return

Abbott Laboratories, 135–136

ability to take risk, investors', 371–373.
see also risk tolerance

ABP (pension fund), 388–389

absolute risk objectives, 370

Abu Dhabi Investment Authority, 221

access, short-term borrowing strategy and, 191

accounting risk, 427

accounts payable management, 185–188

cash disbursements, 188

evaluating, 188

trade discounts, 187–188

accounts receivable aging schedule, 180–181

accounts receivable management, 175–181

customers' receipts, 177–180

evaluating, 180–181

trade granting process, 176–177

accounts receivable turnover, 160

accredited individuals, 236n.20

ACH. *see* Automated Clearing House

acid-test ratio, 160

actively managed funds, 232

active portfolios, capital market line for, 318

active strategies

borrowing, 192

short-term investing, 171–172

activist shareholders. *see* shareholder activism

ADC Telecommunications, 209–210

adviser-assisted digital wealth managers, 468

affiliated stockholders, as takeover defense, 34

after-tax cost of debt, 85

after-tax nominal return, 254

agency relationship, 11. *see also* principal–agent relationship

aging schedule, 180–181

AGM. *see* annual general meeting

AI. *see* artificial intelligence

algorithmic trading, 469

algorithms, 462

Alibaba, 13, 32

Aloha Airlines, 438n.30

Alpha Natural Resources, 334–335

alternative data, 457, 460

analysts

corporate governance considerations, 31–36

board of directors representation, 32

composition of investors, 33–34

economic ownership and voting control, 31–32

long-term risk management, 35

remuneration and company

performance, 32–33

shareholders' rights, 34

estimates of value by, 48
natural language processing for monitoring, 466

analytical tools, 456

Andrew W. Mellon Foundation, 219

annual general meeting (AGM), 15

annualized return, 251–253

anticipation stock, of inventory, 183

Appendices, IPS, 369

Apple, 334–335

arbitrage, 236

arbitrage pricing theory (APT), 353

arithmetic return, 246

Armitage, Seth, 105

artificial intelligence (AI), 456, 460–462.

see also machine learning

asset(s). *see also* investment

characteristics of assets

physical, 472

quick, 160

risk-free, 291–294

and capital allocation line, 291–292

and capital market line, 319–321

combining risky assets with, 315–318

and homogeneity of expectations assumption, 317–318

two-fund separation theorem, 292–293

utility theory and selection of, 273–276

risk of two-asset portfolio, 258–259

risky

combining risk-free assets with, 315–318

covariance and correlation of risks, 277–279

efficient frontier of, 291

importance of correlation of risks in portfolio, 282

portfolio return, 276

portfolio risk, 276–282

risk and return relationship, 279–281

utility theory and selection of, 273–276

tradable, 319

variance of return for single, 256

asset allocation. *see also* strategic asset allocation (SAA)

in portfolio management, 223

tactical, 393–394

asset-based loans, 192

asset beta, 95–98

asset class(es)

adding to investment opportunity set, 289

correlation matrix, 386–387

correlation of risk among, 285

defining, 384

diversification with, 286

nominal returns, 260–262

real returns, 261–262

risk and return of, 260, 263

robo-advisory services to manage, 467–468

in strategic asset allocation, 385–387

asset risk premium, 216

assignments of accounts receivable, 192

assumptions

CAPM, 335–337, 348n.6

heterogeneous beliefs, 347, 350–351

homogeneity of expectations, 317–318, 336–337, 352

infinite divisibility, 337

AstraZeneca PLC, 246

audit committee, 23

audit function, 17

audit systems, 22

Australia

equity risk premiums, 90

robo-advisory services in, 466

Australian Financial Services license, 466

Australian Securities and Investment

Commission, 466

Austria, 19

authorities, investment policy, 172

automated advice, 457

Automated Clearing House (ACH), 177–178

automated trading, 456

average accounting rate of return (AAR), 57–58

average inventory period, 161

A.W. Jones & Co., 235

B

backtesting simulations, 469

Baidu, 244

balanced funds, 229–230, 232–233

Bancel, Franck, 108

bank certificates of deposit (CDs), 168

banker's acceptances (BAs), 168, 190

bank runs, 429n.24

bankruptcy, business risk and, 145–147

bankruptcy risk, 29

banks

credit from, 189–190

portfolio management for, 220

risk management for, 410

bank sweep services, 168

Barings Bank, 428

BAs. *see* banker's acceptances

Belgium, 90

beliefs, investors', 336–337, 347, 350–351

benchmark rate, 174

best-in-class, 37

beta, 328–335

asset, 95–98

calculation and interpretation, 331–332

and CAPM, 332–333, 352

- beta (*Continued*)
 estimating, 94–100
 with CAPM, 332–333
 inferring asset betas, 98
 pure-play method, 97, 98
 and expected return, 333–335
 leveraging and unlevering, 95
 return-generating models, 328–329
 risk budgeting with, 422
 as risk metric, 436
 and security characteristic line, 346
- bid–ask spread, 266
- Big Data, 457–460
 challenges of, 460
 defined, 457
 extracting information from, 463–465
 in risk analysis, 468–469
 sources of, 458–460
- Bill & Melinda Gates Foundation, 219
- bill-to-bill terms, 177
- bitcoin, 471
- blockchains, 470–471
- Blume, Marshall, 94n.22
- board, risk governance, 413, 420
- board member–shareholder relationships, 8–9, 12–13
- board of directors, 21–25
 committees, 22–25
 audit committee, 23
 governance committee, 23
 investment committee, 24
 nomination committee, 23
 remuneration (compensation) committee, 23
 risk committee, 24
 composition of, 21–22, 32
 employee representation on, 19
 functions and responsibilities, 22
 manager relations with, 13
 staggered boards, 21–22
 stakeholder management mechanisms, 17
 as stakeholders, 9–10
- bond equivalent yield, 170
- bond ETFs, 234
- bond mutual funds, 229–232
- bonds
 correlation of T-bills/stocks with, 284, 285
 defined, 259
 government, 386
 historical risk and return, 259–260
 investment grade, 386
 municipal, 379
 nominal returns of, 262
 real returns of, 261–262
 surety, 443
 US Treasury, 88, 90, 386
- bond yield plus risk premium approach, 93
- borrowers, size and short-term strategy of, 191
- borrowing
 costs of, 186, 193–194
 short-term, 167, 191–192
- borrowing rates, effects on leveraged portfolios, 324–326
- bottom-up portfolio analysis, 223
- BP plc, 38
- Brazil, 24
- breakeven points
 and leverage, 143–144
 operating, 143–145
- breaking the buck, 231
- break point, 102, 103
- broad-based equity ETFs, 234
- brokerage commissions, 266
- Brounen, Dirk, 108
- Bruce, Roger, 209
- Bruner, Robert F., 89n.12
- budgeting, risk, 421–423
- Bühner, Thomas, 105
- business processes, as Big Data sources, 458–460
- business risk
 components of, 128
 for creditors and owners, 145–147
 defined, 95
 financial risk, 136–140
 and leverage, 128–136
 operating risk, 130–136
 sales risk, 128–130
- buy-and-hold strategies, 246n.2
- buyout funds, 237
- buy-side firms, 225
- C**
- CAC 40 Index, 318
- Cadbury Report, 7
- Canada
 ACH system, 178
 common law system, 27
 equity risk premiums, 90
 say on pay, 18
- cannibalization, 51
- capital
 cost of (*see* cost of capital)
 human, 419n.12
 proportions of, 81–82
- capital allocation line. *see also* capital market line
 defined, 273, 314
 of optimal portfolio, 294–295
 and optimal risky portfolio, 291–292
 and portfolio selection, 273–276
 for risk-free assets in portfolios of risky assets, 316
 SML vs., 337–339
- capital asset pricing model (CAPM), 335–354
 applications, 340–351
 capital budgeting, 340–341
 estimate of expected return, 340–341
 portfolio construction, 348–351
 portfolio performance evaluation, 341–346
 security characteristic line, 346–347
 security selection, 347–348
 assumptions of, 335–337
 and beta/expected return, 333–335
 cost of common equity, 88–92, 107–108
 extensions, 353–354
 limitations, 351–352
 and portfolio construction, 348–351
 security market line, 337–340
 and expected return, 338–339
 portfolio beta, 339–340
- capital budget, planning of, 48
- capital budgeting, 47–75
 CAPM for, 340–341
 and cost of capital, 82–84
 importance of, 47–48
 investment decision criteria, 52–68
 average accounting rate of return, 57–58
 internal rate of return, 53–54, 60–66
 net present value, 52–53, 58–63
 payback period, 54–57
 popularity and use of capital budgeting methods, 66–68
 profitability index, 58
 popularity and use of, 66–68
 practice problems, 70–72
 principles, 50–52
 process, 48–49
 solutions to problems, 73–75
- capital gains taxes, 254
- capital market expectations, 385
- capital market line (CML), 318–326
 defined, 319–321
 and definition of market, 319
 of leveraged portfolios, 322–326
 with different lending/borrowing rates, 324–326
 with equal lending/borrowing rates, 323
 passive and active portfolios, 318
 risk and return on, 321–322
 and single-index model of beta, 329, 330
 SML vs., 337–339
- capital market theory, 314–326
- capital market line, 318–326
 portfolio of risk-free and risky assets, 314–318
 combining risk-free asset with risky assets, 315–318
 homogeneity of expectations assumption, 317–318
- capital rationing, 52
- capital structure
 marginal cost of capital structure, 102–105
 target, 80
- CAPM. *see* capital asset pricing model
- captive finance subsidiaries, 175
- capture (data processing method), 463
- carbon assets, 39
- Carhart, Mark, 329
- carrying costs, 184
- cash
 minimum balances, 165
 monitoring uses and levels of, 166–167
- cash before delivery (CBD), 177
- cash collections systems, 177–180
- cash concentration, 179
- cash conversion cycle, 163
- cash disbursements, 188
- cash dividends, in returns, 245
- cash flows, 164–167
 in capital budgeting, 50–51
 conventional, 51
 discounted cash flow techniques, 67n.5
 free cash flow to equity, 84n.7
 free cash flow to the firm, 84n.6
 incremental, 51
 IRR vs. NPV and patterns in, 60–61

- monitoring cash uses and levels, 166–167
- nonconventional, 51
- short-term, 165–166
 - cash forecasting systems, 166
 - identifying typical cash flows, 165–166
 - and minimum cash balances, 165
 - typical, 165–166
- cash inflows, in forecasts, 166
- cash management, 164–167
- cash on delivery (COD), 177
- cash outflows, in forecasts, 166
- cash position, 164–167
- Cathay Pacific Airways, 210–213
- CBD. *see* cash before delivery
- C/C++ (programming language), 465
- CDs. *see* certificates of deposit
- Central Bank of Brazil, 24
- central banks, 438
- centralization, of financial organization, 186
- CEO duality, 21
- CEOs. *see* chief executive officers
- certificates of deposit (CDs), 168
- CFA Institute, 369
- CFOs. *see* chief financial officers
- Chapter 7 bankruptcy, 146n.8, 147
- Chapter 11 bankruptcy, 146–147
- charitable foundations, endowments for, 218–220
- charities, strategic asset allocation for, 395–397
- chief executive officers (CEOs), 21
- chief financial officers (CFOs), 107–108
- chief risk officers (CROs), 419
- China
 - say on pay, 18
 - two-tier boards, 10
- China Investment Corporation, 221
- Citibank Inc., 90
- Citigroup, Inc., 93
- civil law system, 27
- clearing, post-trade, 472–473
- clients
 - gathering information from, 381–384
 - individual investors as, 216
 - institutional investors as, 216–222
- Climate Bond Initiative, 38
- climate change, 38
- closed-end funds, 228
- CML. *see* capital market line
- COD. *see* cash on delivery
- Code of Hammurabi, 441
- codes of ethics (generally), 20
- collateral, 19
- collateralized loans, 189, 191
- Columbia University, 218
- Comcast, 13
- commercial paper (CP), 169, 190
- commissions, brokerage, 266
- commitment fees, 193n.10
- committed lines of credit, 190
- Committee on the Financial Aspects of Corporate Governance, 7
- commodities, correlation with other asset classes, 386
- common equity, cost of. *see* cost of common equity
- common law system, 27
- common shares, 31–32
- communication
 - analysis of, 466
 - in risk management framework, 412
- co-movement patterns, 213–215
- Companies Act 2006 (United Kingdom), 14
- company(-ies)
 - comparable, 95
 - as risk drivers, 434
- company stakeholders, 8–14
 - relationships, 11–14
 - controlling shareholder–minority shareholder relationships, 12–13
 - manager–board relationships, 13
 - principal–agent relationship, 11
 - shareholder–manager/director relationships, 11–12
 - shareholder vs. creditor interests, 13
 - various conflicts, 13
 - stakeholder groups, 8–11
 - board of directors, 9–10
 - creditors, 9
 - customers, 10
 - employees, 9
 - governments, 10
 - managers, 9
 - regulators, 10
 - shareholders, 8–9
 - suppliers, 10
- company value, cost of capital and, 78
- comparable company, 95
- compensation
 - and company performance, 32–33
 - policy development, 18
 - remuneration vs., 9n.3
 - say on pay, 18–19
- compensation committee, 23, 24
- compensation plans, 33
- compensation policies, 29
- complacency, passive investment strategies and, 171
- compliance, 473
- “comply or explain” codes, 34
- component cost of capital, 78
- conditional value at risk (CVaR), 437
- conflicts of interest, 18
- Conroy, Robert M., 89n.12
- consensus mechanism, 470, 471
- contingent claims, 444
- contractual infrastructure, 14
- contribution margin, 131
- control, governance practices and, 30
- controlling shareholders, 9
- control systems
 - board’s role in, 22
 - weak, 28
- conventional cash flow, 51
- convertible arbitrage, 236
- core–satellite approach, 397–398
- Corning, 209–210
- corporate bond mutual funds, 231
- corporate exhaust, 459
- corporate governance, 5–36
 - about, 6–8
 - analyst considerations, 31–36
 - board of directors representation, 32
 - composition of investors, 33–34
 - economic ownership and voting control, 31–32
 - long-term risk management, 35
 - remuneration and company performance, 32–33
 - shareholders’ rights, 34
 - board of directors representation, 32
 - boards of directors, 21–25
 - committees, 22–25
 - composition of, 21–22
 - functions and responsibilities, 22
 - staggered boards, 21–22
 - company stakeholders, 8–14
 - relationships, 11–14
 - stakeholder groups, 8–11
 - composition of investors, 33–34
 - defined, 6
 - economic ownership and voting control, 31–32
 - factors affecting, 25–28
 - market factors, 25–26
 - non-market factors, 27–28
 - long-term risk management, 35
 - non-profit organizations, 10–11
 - remuneration and company performance, 32–33
 - risks and benefits, 28–31
 - benefits of effective governance, 29–31
 - risks of poor governance, 28–29
 - shareholders’ rights, 34
 - stakeholder management, 14–20
 - about, 14
 - defined, 14
 - mechanisms, 15–20
- corporate governance committee, 23
- corporate governance industry, 28
- corporate governance reports, 20
- corporate transparency, 17
- correlation(s)
 - of asset classes, 285, 386–387
 - defined, 277
 - and historical risk, 284
 - and investment opportunity set, 288–289
 - and portfolio risk, 277–279, 282
 - and risk diversification, 284
 - of risk-free asset in portfolio of risky assets, 315
 - risk from changing, 427n.21
- correlation coefficient, 277
- COSCO Pacific, 210–213
- cost of capital, 50, 77–121
 - about, 78–79
 - for capital budgeting and security valuation, 82–84
 - and company value, 78
 - cost of common equity, 88–93
 - bond yield plus risk premium approach, 93
 - CAPM approach, 88–92
 - dividend discount model approach, 92–93
 - and equity risk premium, 89–92
 - cost of debt, 84–86
 - debt-rating approach, 85
 - estimating, 86
 - yield-to-maturity approach, 84–85
 - cost of preferred equity
 - best estimate, 87–88
 - calculating, 87

- cost of capital (*Continued*)
 cost of preferred stock, 86–88
 and country risk, 100–101
 defined, 78
 estimating, 93–108
 with beta and project beta, 94–100
 with weighted average cost of capital, 98–100
 flotation costs, 105–107
 in investment decision-making by CFOs, 107–108
 marginal cost of capital schedule, 102–105
 practice problems, 111–117
 solutions to problems, 118–121
 and taxes, 79–80
 weights for, 80–82
- cost of common equity, 88–93
 bond yield plus risk premium approach, 93
 CAPM approach, 88–92
 dividend discount model approach, 92–93
 and equity risk premium, 89–92
- cost of debt, 84–86
 after-tax, 85
 for capital budgeting, 50
 company's, 93n.19
 debt-rating approach, 85
 defined, 84
 estimating, 86
 and governance, 30
 and taxes, 79
 yield-to-maturity approach, 84–85
- cost of preferred stock, 86–88
- costs
 carrying, 184
 financing, 50
 fixed
 and breakeven points, 145
 and degree of operating leverage, 133–135
 and degree of total leverage, 142–143
 and leverage, 125–128
 flotation, 105–107
 inventory, 184
 opportunity, 50, 51
 ordering, 184
 policy, 184
 stock-out, 184
 sunk, 51
 transaction, 336, 348n.6, 425–426
 variable, 126–128, 133–135
- cost structure, leverage and, 126–128
- counterparty risk, 425, 431
- country risk, cost of capital and, 100–101
- covariance
 and correlation of risks in portfolio, 277–279
 of return, 257
 of risk-free asset in portfolio of risky assets, 315
 and strategic asset allocation, 390
- covenants, 9, 19
- CP. *see* commercial paper
- credit
 and accounts receivable management, 175
 as drag on liquidity, 158
 for short-term financing, 189–191
 trade, 185, 186
- credit accounts, 176–177
- credit default swaps, 438n.32
- credit events, 438
- credit insurance, 176
- credit limits, 159
- credit lines
 restrictions on, 159
 for short-term financing, 189–191
- creditors
 contractual agreements with, 19
 legal protections for, 27
 shareholder interests vs., 13
 as stakeholders, 9
- creditors, business risk for, 145–147
- credit rating agencies, 30
- credit ratings, 101, 438
- credit risk, 30, 171, 425, 438. *see also* default risk
- credit scoring model, 177
- credit-worthiness, 159, 177, 191
- CROs. *see* chief risk officers
- cross-shareholdings, 33–34
- cryptocurrencies, 472
- cryptography, 470
- culture, risk, 416
- cumulative voting, 16
- curation (data processing method), 463
- currency risk, managing, 409–410
- current ratio, 160
- customers
 contractual agreements with, 20
 receipts of, 177–180
 shareholder conflicts with, 13
 as stakeholders, 10
 supplier conflicts with, 13
- CVaR. *see* conditional value at risk
- CVS Corporation, 95
- D**
- Damodaran, Aswath, 101n.31
- data
 alternative, 457, 460
 overfitting of, 461
 semi-structured, 458
 structured, 458
 traditional, 457
 unstructured, 458
- databases, 465, 470
- data processing methods, 463
- data science, 463–465
- data processing methods, 463
- data visualization, 463–465
- datasets
 analysis of large, 456
 in machine learning, 461
- data visualization, 463–465
- Daves, Phillip R., 94n.21
- David and Lucile Packard Foundation, 219
- days in receivables, 160, 181
- day's sales outstanding, 160
- DB pension plans. *see* defined benefit pension plans
- DC pension plans. *see* defined contribution pension plans
- dealers, risk shifting to, 445
- debt
 cost of (*see* cost of debt)
 fixed- vs. floating-rate, 86
 leveraging role of, 139–140
 nonrated, 86
 with optionlike features, 86
- debt incurrence test, 102
- debt-rating approach, for cost of debt, 85
- debt-to-equity ratio, 81–82
- decision making, ineffective, 29
- decisions
 capital budgeting, investment decision criteria for, 52–68
 average accounting rate of return, 57–58
 internal rate of return, 53–54
 net present value, 52–53
 payback period, 54–57
 popularity and use of capital budgeting methods, 66–68
 profitability index, 58
 CFOs, investment decision-making by, 107–108
 risk management, 407–408
- decomposition of total risk, 330
- dedicated short bias strategies, 236
- deep learning, 462
- Deepwater Horizon oil spill, 38
- default risk. *see also* credit risk
 attributes and safety measures, 171
 defined, 425
 governance and, 29, 30
 shareholder vs. creditor interests, 13
- defined benefit (DB) pension plans, 217
- defined contribution (DC) pension plans, 216
- degree of financial leverage (DFL)
 defined, 137
 and degree of total leverage, 142–143
- degree of operating leverage (DOL)
 calculating, 135
 defined, 130
 and degree of total leverage, 142–143
 and financial risk, 140–142
 and operating risk, 130–135
- degree of total leverage (DTL), 141–143
- Dell Corporation, 184n.8
- delta, 436
- Denmark, 90
- derivatives
 beta for, 436
 risk shifting with, 443–445
- DFL. *see* degree of financial leverage
- digital wealth managers, 468
- Dimson, Elroy, 89–90
- direct debit programs, 178
- directors. *see* board members
- disbursement float, 186
- discounted cash flow techniques, 67n.5
- discounted payback period, 56–57
- discounted receivables, 190
- discounted securities, yields of, 169–170
- discount interest, 169
- discounts, trade, 187–188

- distributed ledger technology (DLT),
469–473
about, 469–471
applications of, 472–473
compliance, 473
cryptocurrencies, 472
post-trade clearing and settlement,
472–473
tokenization, 472
financial record keeping with, 457
permissioned and permissionless
networks, 471
- distributional characteristics of assets,
264–266
kurtosis, 265–266
skewness, 264–265
- diversification
and employee stock options, 208–210,
286, 381
and investing in portfolios vs. single
equities, 208–210
and portfolio risk, 278
of portfolio risk, 282–287
as risk modification method, 441
diversification ratio, 212
dividend discount model approach
for cost of common equity, 92–93
for cost of equity, 91
in decision-making by CFOs, 107
dividend income, taxes on, 254
DLT. *see* distributed ledger technology
“The Doctrine of No Surprises,” 410
documentary credit accounts, 176
Dodd–Frank Act (2011), 18
DOL. *see* degree of operating leverage
Dow Jones 30 Index, 332
Dow Jones Industrial Average, 284
downside risk, 213–215
drag on liquidity, 158–159
DTL. *see* degree of total leverage
dual-class share structure
and controlling–minority shareholder
relationships, 12–13
and voting control, 31–32
duration, 436
duty of care, 22
duty of loyalty, 22
- E**
- e-commerce, 186–187
economic activity, risk and, 407
economic order quantity–reorder point
(EOQ–ROP) approach, 183
EDI. *see* electronic data interchange
efficient frontier, 288–300
indifference curve, 294–295
investment opportunity set, 288–289
investor preferences and optimal
portfolio, 299–300
Markowitz, 291, 319–320
minimum-variance portfolios, 289–291
portfolio selection example, 294–299
for risk-free assets, 291–294
and strategic asset allocation, 390–391
EFT. *see* electronic funds transfer
Ehrhardt, Michael C., 94n.21
elasticity, 130
electronic data interchange (EDI),
186–187
electronic funds transfer (EFT),
177–180
emerging markets, 236
employee(s), 9
employee benefit plans, 23
employee representatives, 21
employee rights, 19–20
employee stock options, diversification
and, 208–210, 286, 381
employee stock ownership plans
(ESOPs), 19
employment contracts, 19
endowments, portfolio management for,
218–220
energy sector
ESG factors in investment analysis, 39
thematic investing, 37
Enron Corporation, 28, 208–209, 432
enterprise risk management
defined, 411
process for, 413–415
risk governance in, 417–419
risk tolerance in, 420
enterprise risk management system, 22
environmental, social, governance (ESG)
considerations, 36–40
about, 6
as catalysts for growth, 38–39
governance (*see* corporate governance)
implementation methods, 37–38, 40
in investment analysis, 39–40
in investment policy statements,
380–381
market overview, 39
terminology, 36–37
environmental projects, capital
budgeting for, 49
EOQ–ROP approach. *see* economic
order quantity–reorder point
approach
equities
correlation of, 386–387
investing in portfolios vs., 207–208
and diversification, 208–210
and downside risk, 213–215
and modern portfolio theory,
215–216
and portfolio composition, 212–213
and risk–return tradeoff, 210–212
equity market neutral strategies, 236
equity risk premium (ERP), 89–92
Erb, Claude, 101n.32
ESG considerations. *see* environmental,
social, governance considerations
ESG integration/incorporation, 37
ESG investing, 37
ESOPs. *see* employee stock ownership
plans
estimation
of beta, 94–100
inferring asset beta, 98
market model, 332–333
pure-play method, 97, 98
of cost of capital, 93–108
with beta and project beta, 94–100
and country risk, 100–101
and decision-making by CFOs,
107–108
and flotation costs, 105–107
and marginal cost of capital
structure, 102–105
with weighted average cost of capital,
98–100
of cost of debt, 86
of cost of equity, 88–93
of cost of preferred equity, 87–88
of expected returns, 340–341
of value by analysts, 48
of weighted average cost of capital,
98–100
estimation period, beta, 94
ETFs. *see* exchange traded funds
ethics. *see* codes of ethics
EU. *see* European Union
Eurodollar rate, 190
Eurodollar time deposits, 168
Europe
correlation of equities, 386–387
Giro system, 178
hybrid/balanced funds, 232–233
money market funds, 230–231
mutual fund assets, 230
rights offerings, 105
European Union
employee rights, 19
sell-out rights, 16
European Works Councils, 19
Evaluation and Review, IPS, 369
evaluation datasets, 461
event-driven strategies, 236
ex ante models, 352
Excel VBA (programming language),
465
exchange traded funds (ETFs),
233–235
exclusionary screening, 37
execution step (portfolio management),
223–225
asset allocation, 223
portfolio construction, 223–225
security analysis, 223
executive (management) board, 10
executive (internal) directors, 9, 21
expansion projects, capital budgeting
for, 49
expectations
capital market, 385
homogeneity of expectations
assumption, 317–318, 336–337,
352
expected inflation rate, 259
expected return(s)
and beta, 333–335
CAPM estimation of, 340–341
and historical mean return, 259–260
and SML, 338–339
and strategic asset allocation, 390
expected risk premium, 259
“expert system,” as artificial intelligence,
460
ex post models, 352
exposure, risk, 409–410
external auditors, 17
external (non-executive) directors,
10, 21
externality, 51
extreme value theory, 437
Ezzell, John R., 83n.3, 106n.37

- F**
- Facebook, 13, 32
 - factoring, 190, 192
 - Fama, Eugene, 89n.11, 89n.12, 329
 - FCA. *see* Financial Conduct Authority
 - FCFE. *see* free cash flow to equity
 - FCFF. *see* free cash flow to the firm
 - F&C Stewardship Growth Fund, 380–381
 - federal agency securities, 168
 - Federal Reserve, 438
 - feedback
 - in portfolio management, 225–226
 - performance measurement and reporting, 226
 - portfolio monitoring and rebalancing, 225
 - in risk management framework, 415
 - Fidelity, 341–342
 - Financial Conduct Authority (FCA), 368, 466
 - financial crisis (2008), 265–266, 429
 - financial leverage, 136–140
 - degree of, 137–138, 142–143
 - leveraging role of debt, 139–140
 - financial record keeping, 457
 - Financial Reporting Council, 7
 - financial risks, 95
 - defined, 424
 - drivers of, 434–435
 - and leverage, 136–140
 - non-financial vs., 432–433
 - types of, 424–426
 - financing
 - short-term, 189–194
 - asset-based loans, 192
 - borrowing approaches, 191–192
 - costs of borrowing for, 193–194
 - sources of, 189–191
 - financing costs, 50
 - Finland, 10
 - fintech, in investment management, 455–477
 - about, 455–456
 - applications of, 465–469
 - algorithmic trading, 469
 - natural language processing, 465–466
 - risk analysis, 468–469
 - robo-advisory services, 466–468
 - text analytics, 465
 - artificial intelligence, 460–461
 - Big Data, 457–460
 - challenges of, 460
 - extracting information from, 463–465
 - sources of, 458–460
 - data science, 463–465
 - data processing methods, 463
 - data visualization, 463–465
 - defining, 456–457
 - distributed ledger technology, 469–473
 - about, 469–471
 - applications of, 472–473
 - permissioned and permissionless networks, 471
 - machine learning, 460–462
 - practice problems, 475–476
 - solutions to problems, 477
 - first-order risk, 436n.28
 - Fisher, Irving, 82n.2
 - Fitch Ratings, 438
 - fixed costs
 - and breakeven points, 145
 - and degree of operating leverage, 133–135
 - and degree of total leverage, 142–143
 - and leverage, 125–128
 - fixed-income arbitrage, 236
 - fixed-rate debt, 86
 - fixed rate perpetual preferred stock, 86–87
 - flexibility, of short-term borrowing strategy, 191
 - float, 179
 - float factor, 179
 - floating-rate debt, 86
 - flotation costs, 105–107
 - Ford Foundation, 219
 - forecasting, of short-term cash flows, 165–166
 - foreign countries, diversification of investment in, 286
 - foreign exchange risk, 171
 - forward commitments, 444
 - fossil fuels, 37
 - foundations, portfolio management for, 218–220
 - 401(k) plans, 208–210
 - four-factor models for beta, 329, 353–354
 - France
 - civil law system, 27
 - corporate governance systems, 14
 - equity risk premiums, 90
 - frequency of capital budgeting, 67
 - say on pay, 18
 - free cash flow to equity (FCFE), 84n.7
 - free cash flow to the firm (FCFF), 84n.6
 - French, Kenneth, 89n.11, 89n.12, 329
 - frictionless markets, 336
 - Frontier Airlines, 438n.30
 - FTSE 100 Index, 370, 375
 - fully automated digital wealth managers, 468
 - fundamental factor models, 329

G

 - gamma, 436
 - Gascon, Henri (case study), 373–374, 376, 382–384
 - Gascon, Jacques (case study), 374–375
 - general meetings, 15–16
 - geometric mean return, 246–247
 - Germany
 - civil law system, 27
 - corporate governance systems, 14
 - cumulative voting rules, 16
 - employee representation on boards, 19
 - equity risk premiums, 90
 - flotation costs, 105
 - frequency of capital budgeting, 67
 - two-tier boards, 10
 - Giro system, 177–178
 - Gitman, Lawrence, 107n.39
 - GlaxoSmithKline Plc, 18, 340–341
 - global bond mutual funds, 231
 - global ETFs, 234
 - global financial crisis of late 2000s
 - corporate governance and, 6
 - media's effect on regulation following, 27
 - global macro strategies, 236
 - global minimum-variance portfolios, 290
 - Global Reporting Initiative (GRI), 39
 - Global Sustainable Investing Alliance (GSIA), 39
 - gold, correlation with other asset classes, 386
 - Google, 13, 244
 - Gordon, Myron J., 92n.18
 - Gordon growth model, 92
 - governance
 - corporate (*see* corporate governance)
 - risk, 417–424
 - defined, 411
 - for enterprises, 417–419
 - establishing risk tolerance level, 419–421
 - example, 423–424
 - with risk budgeting, 421–423
 - governance codes, 34
 - governance committee, 23
 - government(s)
 - shareholder conflicts with, 13
 - as stakeholders, 10
 - governmental infrastructure, 14
 - government bond mutual funds, 231
 - government bonds, 386
 - Government of Singapore Investment Corporation, 221
 - government policies, as risk drivers, 434
 - governments, as Big Data sources, 458
 - Graham, John, 107
 - the “Greeks,” 436
 - green bonds, 38
 - green finance, 38
 - GRI. *see* Global Reporting Initiative
 - gross return, 253–254
 - growth rate, sustainable, 92–93
 - Gulf Cooperation Council, 24
 - Gulf of Mexico oil spill (2010), 38

H

 - hackers, 428
 - Hamada, Robert S., 95n.24
 - Hang Seng Index, 213–215
 - Harvard University, 218
 - Harvey, Campbell R., 100n.28, 101n.32, 107
 - health risk, 430
 - hedge funds, 26, 235–236
 - hedges, risk budgeting with, 423
 - Herstatt risk, 426n.19
 - heterogeneous beliefs assumption, 347, 350–351
 - high-frequency trading (HFT), 469
 - high-yield bond mutual funds, 231
 - Hirschleifer, John, 82n.2
 - historical equity risk premium approach, 89–92
 - historical mean return, 259–260
 - historical returns, 259–264
 - estimating cost of equity with, 89–92
 - historical mean return and expected return, 259–260
 - nominal and real returns of asset classes in other countries, 262–263
 - nominal returns of major US asset classes, 260–261

- real returns of major US asset classes, 261–262
 - risk–return tradeoff for, 263–264
 - historical risk
 - risk of major asset classes, 263
 - risk–return tradeoff, 263–264
 - HKSE. *see* Hong Kong Stock Exchange
 - holding period return, 245
 - holding periods, CAPM assumptions
 - about, 336
 - Home Depot, 438
 - homogeneity of expectations assumption, 317–318, 336–337, 352
 - Hong Kong Monetary Authority
 - Investment Portfolio, 221
 - Hong Kong Stock Exchange (HKSE)
 - HSBC Holdings on, 317–318
 - volatility of returns, 210–213
 - Hostess, 438n.30
 - hostile takeovers, 26
 - HSBC Holdings, 317–318
 - human capital, 419n.12
 - human rights, 38, 40
 - Hutchison Whampoa, 210–213
 - hybrid ETFs, 234
 - hybrid funds, 229–230, 232–233
- I**
- Ibbotson, Roger G., 94n.23
 - IBM, 394
 - ICOs. *see* initial coin offerings
 - image recognition algorithms, 462
 - impact investing, 38
 - incentive plans, 18
 - income needs, in portfolio management, 222
 - incremental cash flow, 51
 - indenture, 19
 - independent directors, 21
 - independent projects, 51
 - index funds
 - actively managed funds vs., 232
 - diversification with, 286
 - ETFs vs., 233, 235
 - India
 - common law system, 27
 - one-tier boards, 10
 - pension fund investment restrictions, 380
 - indifference curves
 - of optimal investor portfolio, 294–295
 - in portfolio selection, 274–276
 - and risk aversion, 269–271
 - and strategic asset allocation, 391
 - individual investors
 - and enterprise risk management, 418–419
 - operational risks for, 430
 - portfolio management for, 216
 - risk drivers for, 435
 - risk interactions for, 431–432
 - risk management as concern of, 408
 - risk management process for, 415
 - risk tolerance of, 420n.14
 - individually managed accounts, 235
 - individuals, as Big Data sources, 459, 460
 - industry(-ies)
 - diversification according to, 381
 - as risk drivers, 434
 - infinite divisibility assumption, 337
 - inflation, expected rate of, 259
 - inflation-protected bond mutual funds, 231
 - informationally efficient markets, 318
 - information asymmetry, 12
 - information ratio, 350
 - infrastructure, risk, 412
 - initial coin offerings (ICOs), 472
 - installment credit accounts, 176
 - institutional investors
 - portfolio management for, 216–222
 - banks, 220
 - defined-benefit pension plans, 217
 - endowments and foundations, 218–220
 - insurance companies, 220
 - investment companies, 221
 - sovereign wealth funds, 221
 - relative risk objectives of, 370
 - insurance
 - credit, 176
 - risk transfer with, 441–443
 - for risky portfolios, 287
 - insurance companies, 220, 440
 - interest, discount, 169
 - interest rate, risk-free, 93n.19, 259
 - interest rate risk, 171
 - internal (executive) directors, 9, 21
 - internal rate of return (IRR)
 - for capital budgeting, 53–54
 - multiple IRR problem, 64–66
 - no IRR problem, 64–66
 - defined, 248
 - ranking conflicts of NPV and IRR, 60–63
 - due to cash flow patterns, 60–61
 - due to project scale, 62–63
 - international ETFs, 234
 - Internet of Things (IoT), 459
 - Introduction, IPS, 369
 - inventory
 - anticipation stock, 183
 - average inventory period, 161
 - as drag on liquidity, 158
 - number of days of, 161, 185
 - precautionary stocks, 182
 - purchasing–inventory–payables process, 186–187
 - safety stock, 183
 - inventory blanket liens, 192
 - inventory costs, 184
 - inventory management, 182–185
 - and accounts payable management, 186
 - approaches, 183–184
 - evaluating, 184–185
 - financial impact of inventory methods, 185
 - and inventory costs, 184
 - inventory turnover, 160, 184–185
 - investment characteristics of assets, 244–267
 - distributional characteristics, 264–266
 - market characteristics, 266–267
 - return characteristics, 244–259
 - covariance of return, 257
 - historical returns, 259–264
 - types, 245
 - variance of returns, 257
 - risk characteristics, 258–259
 - investment committee, 24
 - investment companies, portfolio management for, 221
 - Investment Company Act (1940), 235
 - Investment Company Institute, 226–227
 - Investment Constraints, IPS, 369
 - investment decision criteria for capital budgeting, 52–68
 - average accounting rate of return, 57–58
 - internal rate of return, 53–54
 - net present value, 52–53
 - payback period, 54–57
 - popularity and use of capital budgeting methods, 66–68
 - profitability index, 58
 - investment decision-making, by CFOs, 107–108
 - investment grade bonds, 386
 - Investment Guidelines, IPS, 369
 - investment ideas, in capital budgeting process, 48
 - investment instruments, for short-term funds management, 168–171. *see also* specific types
 - investment management, fintech in, 455–477
 - about, 455–456
 - applications of, 465–469
 - algorithmic trading, 469
 - natural language processing, 465–466
 - risk analysis, 468–469
 - robo-advisory services, 466–468
 - text analytics, 465
 - artificial intelligence, 460–461
 - Big Data, 457–460
 - challenges of, 460
 - extracting information from, 463–465
 - sources of, 458–460
 - data science, 463–465
 - data processing methods, 463
 - data visualization, 463–465
 - defining, 456–457
 - distributed ledger technology, 469–473
 - about, 469–471
 - applications of, 472–473
 - permissioned and permissionless networks, 471
 - machine learning, 460–462
 - practice problems, 475–476
 - solutions to problems, 477
 - investment managers, selection of, 397
 - Investment Objectives, IPS, 369
 - investment opportunity schedule (IOS), 82
 - investment opportunity set, 288–289
 - investment policies
 - components, 172–173
 - evaluating, 173–174
 - short-term funds management in, 171–174

- investment policy statements (IPs),
368–381
components of, 369
defined, 222
and investor constraints, 376–381
 legal and regulatory factors,
 379–380
 liquidity, 376–378
 tax concerns, 379
 time horizon, 378–379
 unique circumstances, 380–381
in planning step of portfolio
 management, 222–223
and portfolio construction, 389–392
return objectives, 375–376
risk objectives, 370–375
- investment risks, short-term funds
 management and, 170–171
- investment strategy, in portfolio
 construction, 393–397
- investor questionnaires, 467
- investors. *see also* individual investors
 beliefs of, 336–337, 347, 350–351
 capital market expectations of, 385
 CAPM assumptions about, 336
 composition of, 33–34
 constraints on
 legal and regulatory factors,
 379–380
 liquidity, 376–378
 and portfolio planning, 376–381
 tax concerns, 379
 time horizon, 378–379
 unique circumstances, 380–381
 objectives of, 243–244
 preferences of, 299–300
 willingness and ability to take risk,
 371–373
- IOS. *see* investment opportunity
 schedule
- IoT. *see* Internet of Things
- IPs. *see* investment policy statements
- Ireland, 90
- IRR. *see* internal rate of return
- Italy, 27, 90
- J**
- J. Paul Getty Trust, 219
- Japan
 civil law system, 27
 “comply or explain” codes, 34
 corporate governance systems, 14
 cumulative voting rules, 16
 employee involvement with decision
 making, 19
 equity risk premiums, 90
 pension fund investment restrictions,
 380
- Java (programming language), 465
- Jensen, Michael C., 94n.20
- Jensen’s alpha
 defined, 343–344
 and security characteristic line, 346
 and security selection, 347
- JIT method. *see* just-in-time method
- John D. and Catherine T. MacArthur
 Foundation, 219
- Jong, Abe de, 108
- just-in-time (JIT) method, 183–184
- K**
- Kaplan, Paul D., 94n.23
- Kaserer, Christoph, 105
- Koedijk, Kees, 108
- Kohl’s, 162–163
- Kunkel, Robert A., 94n.21
- kurtosis, 265–266
- Kuwait Investment Authority, 221
- L**
- labor laws, 19
- labor unions, 19
- laddering strategies, 172
- law, governance and, 20
- LBOs. *see* leveraged buyouts
- leases, 86
- Lee, Inmoo, 105
- Lee, Rafaelina M., 100n.30
- Leeson, Nick, 428
- legal environment, 27
- legal factors, in IPs, 379–380
- legal infrastructure, 14
- legal risk, 29, 426–427
- Lehman Brothers, 429, 438
- lending portfolios, 322
- lending rates, effects on leveraged
 portfolios, 324–326
- leverage, 125–154
 about, 126–128
 breakeven points, 143–145
 business risk, 128–136
 components of business risk, 128
 for creditors and owners, 145–147
 financial risk, 136–140
 operating risk, 130–136
 sales risk, 128–130
 defined, 125
 financial, 136–140
 degree of financial leverage, 137–138
 leveraging role of debt, 139–140
 fixed costs as, 125
 measuring, 438
 practice problems, 149–152
 solutions to problems, 153–154
 total, 140–143
- leveraged buyouts (LBOs), 237
- leveraged portfolios
 capital market line for, 322–326
 with different lending and borrowing
 rates, 324–326
 with equal lending and borrowing
 rates, 323
- leveraged positions, 255, 323
- leveraged returns, 255
- Li, Wei, 89n.12
- Libor. *see* London Interbank Offered
 Rate
- Li & Fung, 210–213
- Lilly Endowment, 219
- limitations, investment policy, 172
- lines of credit
 restrictions on, 159
 for short-term financing, 189–191
- Lintner, John, 216, 335
- liquidation, 146, 147
- liquidity, 156–164
 defined, 156–157
 drags and pulls on, 158–159
 as investor constraints, 376–378
 liquidity management, 157–159
 as market characteristic, 266–267
 measuring, 159–164, 438
 and portfolio management, 222
 primary sources, 157
 secondary sources, 157–158
- liquidity management, 157–159
- liquidity ratios, 159–160
- liquidity risk
 as financial risk, 425–426
 interactions of market and solvency
 risk with, 431
 safety measures for, 171
 solvency risk vs., 429n.23
- Lleras, Miguel Palacios, 89n.12
- Lloyd’s of London, 442–443
- load funds, 228–229
- loans
 asset-based, 192
 collateralized, 189, 191
- Lochhead, Scott, 105
- lockbox systems, 178
- London Interbank Offered Rate (Libor)
 as benchmark for returns, 375
 defined, 190
 floating-rate debt, 86
 marginal cost of capital structure, 104
- London Stock Exchange
 board composition rules, 24
 and Committee on the Financial
 Aspects of Corporate Governance,
 7
- long hedge fund strategies, 236
- Long-Term Capital Management, 431
- long-term risk management, 35
- loss(es)
 scenario, 422
 stock-out, 182
- low liquidity positions, 159
- Luxembourg, 19
- M**
- M^2 , 342–343
- machine learning (ML), 460–462
 defined, 461
 in risk analysis, 469
 types of, 461–462
- macroeconomic factor models, 328–329
- macroeconomic risk drivers, 434
- managed accounts, 235
- management
 risk governance by, 419
 in risk management framework,
 413–414
- management (executive) board, 10
- managers
 digital wealth, 468
 relations with board, 13
 shareholder relationships, 11–12
 as stakeholders, 9
 use of fintech by, 455
- manufacturing resource planning (MRP)
 systems, 183–184
- marginal cost of capital (MCC), 82–83
- marginal cost of capital (MCC) schedule,
 102–105
- Mariscal, Jorge O., 100n.30
- market characteristics of assets, 266–267
- market index, for beta, 94

- market model, 94n.20, 330–333
market portfolio, in CAPM, 352
market price of risk, 273
market risk, 171, 425, 431
markets
 algorithmic trading and fragmentation of, 469
 as Big Data sources, 458
 CAPM assumptions about, 336
 defined, 319
 informationally efficient, 318
Markets in Financial Instruments Directive (MiFID), 368
Markowitz, Harry, 215, 335
Markowitz efficient frontier, 291, 319–320
Marsh, Paul, 89–90
Massachusetts Institute of Technology, 218
Massachusetts Mutual Life Insurance Company, 224–225
Massey Energy, 35
matching strategies, 171–172, 192
matrix pricing, 85
MCC. *see* marginal cost of capital
MCC schedule. *see* marginal cost of capital schedule
mean return, 246
media, governance and, 27
Mercurio, V., 107n.39
Metropolitan Life Insurance Company, 225
Mian, Shehzad L., 175n.5
MiFID. *see* Markets in Financial Instruments Directive
Miles, James A., 83n.3
Miller, Merton, 95n.24
“mind maps,” 464
minimum cash balances, 165
minimum-variance frontier, 290
minimum-variance portfolios, 289–291
 and efficient frontier of risky assets, 291
 global, 290
 minimum-variance frontier, 290
minority (non-controlling) shareholders, 9, 12, 16
mismatching strategies, 171–172
Mittoo, Usha, 108
ML. *see* machine learning
model risk, 427
modern portfolio theory (MPT), 215–216, 335, 435
Modigliani, Franco, 95n.24, 342
Modigliani, Leah, 342
money market funds, 169, 230–231
money market yield, 170
money-weighted return, 248–249
monitoring
 in capital budgeting process, 48–49
 in portfolio management, 225
 in risk management framework, 412
monthly billing terms, 177
Moody’s Analytics, 438
mortality risk, 430
Mossin, Jan, 335
MPT. *see* modern portfolio theory
MRP systems. *see* manufacturing resource planning systems
- MSCI EAFE Index
 co-movement patterns, 213–215
 correlation with other indexes, 386
MSCI Emerging Markets, 258–259, 386
MSCI Europe, 386
MSCI US Index, 386
MSCI World Index, 386
multi-factor model, 328
multiple-class share structure, 12–13
multiple IRR problem, for capital projects, 64–66
municipal bonds, 379
mutual funds, 226–233
 about, 226–230
 hedge funds vs., 235–236
 short-term investment, 169
 SMAs vs., 235
 types, 230–233
 bond mutual funds, 231–232
 hybrid/balanced funds, 232–233
 money market funds, 230–231
 stock mutual funds, 232
mutually exclusive projects, 51
- N**
NASDAQ, 284
NASDAQ 100 Index, 332
national tax-free bond mutual funds, 231
National Welfare Fund, 221
natural language processing (NLP), 465–466
NBC, 443n.36
negative correlation, 277
negative screening, 37
net asset value
 breaking the buck, 231
 mutual fund, 226–227
Netherlands
 “comply or explain” codes, 34
 equity risk premiums, 90
 fact finding requirements, 381
 frequency of capital budgeting, 67
 say on pay, 18
 two-tier boards, 10
net operating cycle, 163–164
net present value (NPV), 58–63
 in capital-budgeting decisions, 83
 defined, 52–53
 and IRR, 53–54
 NPV profile, 58–60
 ranking conflicts between IRR and, 60–63
 and stock prices, 67–68
net return, 253–254
networks
 neural, 461, 462
 permissioned and permissionless, 471
 neural networks, 461, 462
 new products, capital budgeting for, 49
New York Stock Exchange (NYSE)
 board composition rules, 24
 correlations of stocks, 284
 trading volume, 336
Nikkei 300 Index, 318
Nikkei 500 Index, 213–215
NLP. *see* natural language processing
no IRR problem, for capital projects, 64–66
- no-load funds, 228
nominal rate, for securities, 169
nominal returns
 of asset classes in other countries, 262–263
 of asset classes in United States, 260–261
 defined, 254
nomination committee, 23
nonbank finance companies, 190
non-controlling (minority) shareholders, 9
nonconventional cash flow, 51
non-executive (external) directors, 9–10, 21
non-financial risks
 defined, 424
 financial vs., 432–433
 types of, 426–430
nonmarket securities, weight of, 350
non-profit organizations, 10–11
nonrated debt, cost of, 86
nonsystematic risk, 326–328
normal distribution, 264
norms-based screening, 37
Northern Telecom, 209–210
Northwestern University, 218
Norwegian Government Pension Fund-Global, 221
NoSQL (database), 465
NPV. *see* net present value
NPV profile, 58–60
number of days of inventory, 161, 185
number of days of payables, 161, 188
number of days of receivables, 160, 181
NYSE. *see* New York Stock Exchange
- O**
objectives
 of investors, 243–244
 return, 375–376
 risk, 370–375
 of strategic asset allocation, 388–389
OECD. *see* Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development
O’Halloran, Elizabeth, 89n.12
one-tier board structure, 9–10, 21
open book credit accounts, 176
open distributed ledger networks, 471
open-end funds, 228
operating breakeven points, 143–145
operating cycle, 163
operating income, 140
operating leverage. *see* degree of operating leverage
operating risk
 defined, 95, 128
 and leverage, 130–136
operational efficiency, 30
operational risk, 428–430, 438–439
opportunity costs, 50, 51
optimal portfolio, 243–364
 beta, 328–335
 calculation and interpretation, 331–332
 estimation, 332–333
 and expected return, 333–335
 return-generating models, 328–329

- optimal portfolio (*Continued*)
 and capital asset pricing model, 335–354
 applications, 340–351
 assumptions, 335–337
 extensions, 353–354
 limitations, 351–352
 security market line, 337–340
 and capital market theory, 314–326
 capital market line, 318–326
 risk-free and risky assets, portfolio of, 314–318
 and efficient frontier, 288–300
 indifference curve, 294–295
 investment opportunity set, 288–289
 investor preferences and optimal portfolio, 299–300
 minimum-variance portfolios, 289–291
 portfolio selection example, 294–299
 risk-free assets, 291–294
 and investment characteristics of assets, 244–267
 distributional characteristics, 264–266
 market characteristics, 266–267
 return characteristics, 244–259
 as investor objective, 243–244
 for investor with heterogeneous beliefs, 350–351
 optimal risky portfolio, 313–314
 and portfolio risk, 276–287
 diversification of risk, 282–287
 portfolio with many risky assets, 281–282
 portfolio with two risky assets, 276–281
 practice problems, 302–308, 356–361
 pricing of risk, 326–328
 and risk aversion, 267–276
 concepts, 267–268
 indifference curves, 269–271
 utility theory, 268–276
 solutions to problems, 309–312, 362–364
 optimal risky portfolio
 and capital market line, 320
 and homogeneity of expectations, 317–318
 portfolio selection for, 313–314
 optionlike features, debt with, 86
 options, 444–445
 ordering costs, 184
 ordinary terms, 176
 Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development (OECD), 7, 38, 216–217
 organizational infrastructure, 14
 overdraft lines of credit, 189
 overfitting, of data, 461
 overinvestment, in inventory, 182–183
 Owens Corning Corporation, 146–147, 209–210
 owners, business risk for, 145–147
 ownership, voting rights and, 31–32
- P**
 P2P basis. *see* peer-to-peer basis, of record keeping
 passive portfolios, 318
 passive strategies
 borrowing, 191
 employed by robo-advisors, 467
 short-term investing, 171
 payback period
 capital budgeting, 54–56
 discounted, 56–57
 drawbacks of, 55–56
 payments, as pull on liquidity, 158
 peer-to-peer (P2P) basis, of record keeping, 457
 pension funds
 enterprise risk management for, 418
 investment restrictions for, 379–380
 pension plans
 defined benefit, 217
 defined contribution, 216
 Pensions Act (1995), 368
 Pensions Regulator, 369
 performance evaluation, 342. *see also* portfolio performance evaluation
 performance measurement, in portfolio management, 226
 performance reporting, in portfolio management, 226
 periodicity, of beta return interval, 94
 permissioned networks, 471
 permissionless networks, 471
 per unit contribution margin, 131
 Peterson, James D., 94n.23
 pet projects, 49
 physical assets, 472
 PI. *see* profitability index
 planning step (portfolio management), 222–223
 point of sale (POS) systems, 178
 poison pills, 26
 policy costs, 184
 policy portfolios, risk objectives for, 370
 pooled investments, 226–237
 buyout funds, 237
 exchange traded funds, 233–235
 hedge funds, 235–236
 mutual funds, 226–233
 about, 226–230
 types of, 230–233
 separately managed accounts, 235
 venture capital funds, 237
 population standard deviation, 257
 Porter, R. Burr, 106n.37
 portfolio beta, SML and, 339–340
 portfolio construction, 384–398
 about, 384–385
 capital market expectations, 385
 and CAPM, 348–351
 implementing investment strategy, 393–397
 organizing principles for, 397–398
 and portfolio management, 223–225
 strategic asset allocation, 385–393
 for European charity, 395–397
 objective of, 388–389
 for private investor, 392–393
 specifying asset classes for, 386–387
 portfolio management, 207–241
 investing in portfolios vs. single equities, 207–208
 diversification, 208–210
 downside risk, 213–215
 and modern portfolio theory, 215–216
 and portfolio composition, 212–213
 risk–return tradeoff, 210–212
 investment clients, 216–222
 individual investors, 216
 institutional investors, 216–222
 pooled investments, 226–237
 buyout funds, 237
 exchange traded funds, 233–235
 hedge funds, 235–236
 mutual funds, 226–233
 separately managed accounts, 235
 venture capital funds, 237
 practice problems, 239–240
 risk budgeting for, 421–422
 solutions to problems, 241
 steps in, 222–226
 execution, 223–225
 feedback, 225–226
 planning, 222–223
 portfolio managers, risk management by, 408
 portfolio performance evaluation, 341–346
 example, 344–346
 Jensen's alpha, 343–344, 346
 M^2 , 342–343
 Sharpe ratio, 342
 Treynor ratio, 342
 portfolio planning, 368–384
 case studies, 373–376, 382–384
 gathering client information, 381–384
 investment policy statements, 368–381
 components, 369
 investor constraints, 376–381
 legal and regulatory factors, 379–380
 liquidity, 376–378
 return objectives, 375–376
 risk objectives, 370–375
 tax concerns, 379
 time horizon, 378–379
 unique circumstances on, 380–381
 portfolio returns
 defined, 253
 for portfolios of risky assets, 276, 315–316
 portfolio risk, 276–287
 diversification, 282–287
 avenues for diversification, 285–287
 correlation and risk diversification, 284
 historical correlation among asset classes, 285
 historical risk and correlation, 284
 for portfolios of risky assets
 with many risky assets, 281–282
 with one risk-free asset, 315–316
 with two risky assets, 276–281
 scenario analysis for, 469
 portfolios
 composition of, 212–213
 as investment approach, 207–208
 and diversification, 208–210
 and downside risk, 213–215
 and modern portfolio theory, 215–216
 and portfolio composition, 212–213
 and risk–return tradeoff, 210–212

- portfolio selection
 - and capital allocation line, 273–276
 - comprehensive example, 294–299
 - for optimal risky portfolio, 313–314
 - and risk aversion, 273–276
 - with utility theory, 273–276
 - positive correlation, 277
 - positive screening, 37
 - POS systems. *see* point of sale systems
 - post-auditing, 48–49
 - post-trade clearing and settlement, 472–473
 - precautionary stocks, of inventory, 182
 - preferred stock
 - cost of, 86–88
 - fixed rate perpetual, 86–87
 - premiums, of asset classes, 262. *see also* risk premiums
 - pre-tax nominal return, 254
 - PRI. *see* Principles of Responsible Investment
 - priced risk, 89
 - price impact, in cost of trading, 266
 - price takers, 337
 - pricing. *see also* capital asset pricing model (CAPM)
 - arbitrage pricing theory, 353
 - matrix, 85
 - risk, 326–328
 - primary sources of liquidity, 157
 - Princeton University, 218
 - principal–agent relationship, 11
 - Principles of Corporate Governance*, 7, 22
 - Principles of Responsible Investment (PRI) initiative, 39
 - private investors, strategic asset allocation for, 392–393
 - probability, 435
 - Procedures, IPS, 369
 - profitability, degree of operating leverage and, 133–134
 - profitability index (PI), 58
 - programming languages, 464–465
 - project beta. *see* beta
 - project sequencing, 51–52
 - proposals, in capital budgeting process, 48
 - proxy, for market portfolio, 352
 - proxy contests, 26
 - proxy voting, 16, 28
 - pull on liquidity, 158–159
 - purchasing–inventory–payables process, 186–187
 - pure-play method, for beta, 95–98
 - purpose, investment policy, 172
 - Python (programming language), 464
- Q**
- Qtel, 12
 - quality, investment policy, 173
 - quick assets, 160
 - quick ratio, 160
- R**
- R (programming language), 464
 - rate of return
 - average accounting, 57–58
 - internal (*see* internal rate of return (IRR))
 - required, 50, 91
 - rationing, capital, 52
 - real estate, correlation with other asset classes, 386
 - real returns
 - of asset classes in other countries, 262–263
 - of asset classes in United States, 261–262
 - defined, 254–255
 - real risk-free interest rate, 259
 - rebalancing, in portfolio management, 225
 - rebalancing policy, 395
 - receipts, customers', 177–180
 - receivables
 - discounted, 190
 - as drag on liquidity, 158
 - number of days of, 160, 181
 - record keeping, 457
 - regression analysis, 332–333
 - regular lines of credit, 189, 190
 - regulations, 20
 - regulators
 - and remuneration policies, 18
 - shareholder conflicts with, 13
 - as stakeholders, 10
 - regulatory compliance, 473
 - regulatory factors, in IPSs, 379–380
 - regulatory projects, capital budgeting for, 49
 - regulatory risk, 29, 427
 - related-party transactions
 - and controlling–minority shareholder relationships, 12–13
 - policy development, 18
 - and poor governance, 29
 - relative risk objectives, 370
 - remuneration. *see* compensation
 - reorganization, 146–147
 - replacement projects, capital budgeting for, 49
 - reporting, 17
 - reports
 - analyzed with machine learning, 466
 - in portfolio management, 226
 - on short-term investment portfolio, 174
 - repurchase agreements, 168
 - reputational risk, 29
 - required rate of return, 50, 91
 - responsible investing (RI), 36–37
 - restrictions, investment policy, 172
 - return(s), 244–259
 - annualized, 251–253
 - arithmetic, 246
 - and beta, 331–332, 339–340
 - on capital market line, 321–322
 - CAPM's prediction of, 352
 - covariance of, 257
 - expected
 - and beta, 333–335
 - CAPM estimation of, 340–341
 - and historical mean return, 259–260
 - and SML, 338–339
 - and strategic asset allocation, 390
 - geometric mean, 246–247
 - gross, 253–254
 - historical, 263
 - estimating cost of equity with, 89–92
 - historical mean return and expected return, 259–260
 - nominal and real returns of asset classes in other countries, 262–263
 - nominal returns of major US asset classes, 260–261
 - real returns of major US asset classes, 261–262
 - risk–return tradeoff, 263–264
 - historical mean, 259–260
 - holding period, 245
 - leveraged, 255
 - mean, 246
 - money-weighted, 248–249
 - net, 253–254
 - nominal
 - of asset classes in other countries, 262–263
 - of asset classes in United States, 260–261
 - pre-tax/after-tax, 254
 - portfolio
 - defined, 253
 - for portfolios of risky assets, 276, 315–316
 - real, 254–255
 - of asset classes in other countries, 262–263
 - of asset classes in United States, 261–262
 - defined, 254–255
 - risk and, 279–281 (*see also* risk–return tradeoff)
 - risk-free, 319–321
 - for risky assets, 276
 - uncorrelated, 277
 - variance of, 257
 - for portfolio of assets, 257, 281–282
 - for portfolio of risky assets, 315
 - for single asset, 256
 - and standard deviation, 257
 - return-generating models for beta, 328–329, 351. *see also* capital asset pricing model (CAPM)
 - decomposition of total risk for, 330
 - market model, 330–331
 - single-index models, 330
 - three- and four-factor, 329
 - return interval, beta, 94
 - return objectives, on IPSs, 375–376
 - reverse mortgage, 244n.1
 - revolving credit accounts, 176
 - revolving credit agreements, 189–191
 - rho, 436
 - RI. *see* responsible investing
 - rights, shareholder. *see* shareholder rights
 - risk(s). *see also* portfolio risk
 - acceptance of, 441
 - accounting, 427
 - business
 - components of, 128
 - for creditors and owners, 145–147
 - defined, 95
 - financial risk, 136–140
 - and leverage, 128–136
 - operating risk, 130–136
 - sales risk, 128–130
 - on capital market line, 321–322
 - counterparty, 425, 431

- risk(s) (*Continued*)
- country, 100–101
 - credit, 171, 425, 438
 - currency, 409–410
 - default, 171, 425
 - defined, 409
 - downside, 213–215
 - and economic activity, 407
 - financial, 95
 - defined, 424
 - drivers of, 434–435
 - and leverage, 136–140
 - non-financial vs., 432–433
 - types of, 424–426
 - first- vs. second-order, 436n.28
 - foreign exchange, 171
 - health, 430
 - Herstatt, 426n.19
 - historical, 263–264
 - identification of, 424–433
 - financial risks, 424–426, 432–433
 - and interactions between risks, 430–432
 - non-financial risks, 424, 426–430, 432–433
 - in risk management framework, 411
 - infrastructure, 412
 - interactions between, 430–432
 - interest rate, 171
 - investment, 170–171
 - investors' willingness/ability to take risk, 371–373
 - legal, 426–427
 - liquidity, 425–426
 - as financial risk, 425–426
 - interactions of market and solvency risk with, 431
 - safety measures for, 171
 - solvency risk vs., 429n.23
 - of major asset classes, 263
 - market, 171, 425, 431
 - market price of, 273
 - measurement of, 411–412, 435–439, 446–447
 - model, 427
 - mortality, 430
 - non-financial, 424, 426–430, 432–433
 - nonsystematic, 326–328
 - operating, 95, 128, 130–136
 - operational, 428–430, 438–439
 - prevention and avoidance of, 439–440
 - priced, 89
 - pricing of, 326–328
 - regulatory, 427
 - relationship of return and, 279–281
 - sales, 95, 128–130
 - settlement, 426
 - solvency, 429, 431
 - systematic, 326–328
 - and calculation of beta, 331–332
 - drivers of, 435
 - in Jensen's alpha, 343
 - for single-index model of beta, 331
 - and strategic asset allocation, 384
 - in Treynor ratio, 342
 - tail, 427–428
 - tax, 427
 - total, 330, 342
 - tracking, 370n.2
 - of two-asset portfolio, 258–259
 - unsystematic, 436n.27
 - value at risk, 370n.1
 - conditional, 437
 - and kurtosis, 265
 - risk budgeting with, 422
 - as risk metric, 436–438
 - "wrong-way," 431
 - risk analysis, 468–469
 - risk attitude, clients', 371
 - risk averse (term), 268
 - risk aversion, 267–276
 - in CAPM assumptions, 336
 - concepts, 267–268
 - and indifference curves, 269–271
 - and optimal portfolio, 299–300
 - and portfolio selection, 273–276
 - and utility theory, 268–276
 - computation of utility, 272
 - portfolio selection with utility theory, 273–276
 - risk aversion coefficient, 269
 - risk budgeting, 393, 394, 421–423
 - risk committee, 24
 - risk culture, 416
 - risk drivers, 409n.1, 434–435
 - risk exposure, 409–410
 - risk-free assets, 291–294
 - capital allocation line and optimal risky portfolio, 291–292
 - and capital market line, 319–321
 - combining risky assets with, 315–318
 - and homogeneity of expectations assumption, 317–318
 - two-fund separation theorem, 292–293
 - utility theory and selection of, 273–276
 - risk-free rate of interest, 93n.19, 259
 - risk-free return, capital market line and, 319–321
 - risk governance, 417–424
 - defined, 411
 - for enterprises, 417–419
 - establishing risk tolerance level, 419–421
 - example, 423–424
 - with risk budgeting, 421–423
 - risk infrastructure, 412
 - risk management, 407–454
 - and corporate governance, 35
 - in decision process, 407–408
 - defined, 410
 - and drivers of risk, 434–435
 - enterprise
 - defined, 411
 - process for, 413–415
 - risk governance in, 417–419
 - risk tolerance in, 420
 - identification of risks, 424–433
 - financial risks, 424–426, 432–433
 - and interactions between risks, 430–432
 - non-financial risks, 424, 426–430, 432–433
 - long-term, 35
 - metrics for, 435–439, 446–447
 - in portfolio construction, 224
 - by portfolio managers, 408
 - practice problems, 450–452
 - in real time, with fintech, 468–469
 - risk governance, 417–424
 - for enterprises, 417–419
 - establishing risk tolerance level, 419–421
 - example, 423–424
 - with risk budgeting, 421–423
 - risk management process, 409–417
 - benefits from, 416
 - for enterprises, 413–415
 - framework for, 411–417
 - good vs. bad, 410–411
 - for individuals, 415
 - risk exposure in, 409–410
 - risk modification methods, 439–447
 - acceptance of risk, 441
 - example, 446–447
 - prevention and avoidance of risk, 439–440
 - selecting, 445–446
 - shifting of risk, 443–445
 - transfer of risk, 441–443
 - solutions to problems, 453–454
 - risk management framework, 411–417
 - risk mitigation, 412
 - risk modification, 439–447
 - acceptance of risk, 441
 - example, 446–447
 - prevention and avoidance of risk, 439–440
 - selecting, 445–446
 - shifting of risk, 443–445
 - transfer of risk, 441–443
 - risk monitoring, 412
 - risk neutral (term), 268
 - risk objectives, on IPSSs, 370–375
 - risk position, 409n.1
 - risk premiums
 - asset, 216
 - bond yield plus, 93
 - defined, 263
 - equity, 89–92
 - expected, 259
 - historical equity risk premium approach, 89–92
 - for real returns, 254
 - risk–return tradeoff, 263–264
 - and adding assets to portfolios, 287
 - and investing in portfolios vs. equities, 210–212
 - for strategic asset allocation, 387
 - risk seeking (term), 267–268
 - risk shifting, 443–445
 - risk tolerance, 419–421
 - defined, 268
 - in enterprise risk management, 417
 - on investment policy statements, 371–373
 - in portfolio management, 222
 - and shareholder–manager relationships, 12
 - shareholder vs. creditor interests, 13
 - risk transfer, 441–443
 - risky assets
 - combining risk-free assets with, 315–318
 - covariance and correlation of risks, 277–279
 - efficient frontier of, 291
 - importance of correlation of risks in portfolio, 282
 - portfolio return for, 276

- portfolio risk with, 276–282
- relationship of risk and return, 279–281
- utility theory and selection of, 273–276
- risky portfolios
 - insurance for, 287
 - optimal risky portfolio
 - and capital market line, 320
 - and homogeneity of expectations, 317–318
 - selection for, 313–314
- Rite Aid Corporation, 95
- Ritter, Jay, 105
- Robert Wood Johnson Foundation, 219
- robo-advisory services, 455, 457, 466–468
- rogue traders, 428
- Ross, Stephen, 353
- Russia, 379
- S**
- SAA. *see* strategic asset allocation
- SAFE Investment Company, 221
- safety projects, capital budgeting for, 49
- safety stock, of inventory, 183
- sales risk, 95, 128–130
- SAMA Foreign Holdings, 221
- sample standard deviation, 257
- Sampo, 377–378
- Sarbanes–Oxley Act of 2002 (SOX), 7
- SASB. *see* Sustainability Accounting Standards Board
- say on pay, 18–19
- scale, project, 62–63
- scenario analysis, 437, 469
- scenario loss, 422
- schedules
 - accounts receivable aging, 180–181
 - investment opportunity, 82
 - marginal cost of capital, 102–105
- Scholz, Peter, 467
- SCL. *see* security characteristic line
- search (data processing method), 463
- SEC. *see* US Securities and Exchange Commission
- secondary sources of liquidity, 157–158
- second-order risk, 436n.28
- sector ETFs, 234
- Securities Act (1933), 235–236
- security analysis, in portfolio management, 223
- security characteristic line (SCL), 346–347
- security market line (SML), 337–340
 - and expected return, 338–339
 - portfolio beta, 339–340
 - and security selection, 347–348
- security selection
 - and CAPM, 347–348
 - defined, 394
- security valuation, cost of capital for, 82–84
- self-insurance, 441
- self-investment limits, 379–380
- sell-out rights, 16
- sell-side firms, 225
- semi-structured data, 458
- sensors, as Big Data sources, 459, 460
- separately managed accounts (SMAs), 235
- settlement, post-trade, 472–473
- settlement risk, 426
- Shanghai Stock Exchange, 319
- shareholder(s)
 - conflicts with governments or regulators, 13
 - controlling shareholders vs. minority shareholders, 12–13
 - creditor interests vs., 13
 - customer conflicts with, 13
 - legal protections for, 27
 - manager/director relationships, 11–12
- shareholder activism, 25–26, 34
- shareholder engagement, 25
- shareholder rights, 34
- shareholder rights plan (poison pill), 26
- shareholder theory, 7
- Shari’a, 380
- Sharpe, William, 216, 335
- Sharpe ratio, 287, 342
- short hedge fund strategies, 236
- short selling, 336n.4
- short-term borrowing, 167
- short-term cash flows, 165–166
 - cash forecasting systems, 166
 - identifying typical cash flows, 165–166
 - minimum cash balances, 165
- short-term financing, 189–194
 - asset-based loans, 192
 - borrowing approaches, 191–192
 - costs of borrowing for, 193–194
 - sources of, 189–191
- short-term funds management, 167–174
 - evaluating, 174
 - investment instruments, 168–171
 - strategies for, 171–174
- short-term investment portfolio reports, 174
- short-term investments, 168–171
 - examples, 168–169
 - investment risks, 170–171
 - managing cash positions with, 167
 - yields of, 169–170
- SI. *see* sustainable investing
- Siegel, Jeremy, 90n.14
- Singapore, 16
- single-factor models of beta, limitations of, 352
- single-index models for beta, 330. *see also* capital asset pricing model (CAPM)
 - calculation and interpretation of beta with, 331–332
 - decomposition of total risk for, 330
 - defined, 329
- single-period models of beta, limitations of, 352
- skewness, 264–265
- small-capitalization stocks, beta adjustments for, 94
- “smart contracts,” 470
- SMAs. *see* separately managed accounts
- Smith, Clifford W., 175n.5
- SML. *see* security market line
- smoothing techniques, for beta, 94
- socially responsible investing (SRI), 37, 380–381
- social media, 27
- solvency ratios, 438
- solvency risk, 429, 431
- South Africa, 18, 90
- sovereign wealth funds (SWFs), 221
- sovereign yield spread, 100
- SOX. *see* Sarbanes–Oxley Act of 2002
- S&P 500 Index
 - as benchmark, 375
 - co-movement patterns, 213–215
 - correlations of stocks, 284, 332
 - diversification with stocks, 348–349
 - as market index, 318
 - as market proxy, 319–321
 - reported returns, 245
 - return and risk of two-asset portfolio, 258–259
 - returns for Enron vs., 208–209
 - tail risk with, 427
- Spain, 16, 90
- Spartan 500 Index fund, 341–342
- SQL (database), 465
- SQLite (database), 465
- SRI. *see* socially responsible investing
- staggered boards, 21–22, 26
- stakeholder(s), 8–14
 - relationships, 11–14, 25–28
 - controlling shareholder–minority shareholder relationships, 12–13
 - manager–board relationships, 13
 - market factors, 25–26
 - non-market factors, 27–28
 - principal–agent relationship, 11
 - shareholder–manager/director relationships, 11–12
 - shareholder vs. creditor interests, 13
 - various conflicts, 13
- stakeholder groups, 8–11
 - board of directors, 9–10
 - creditors, 9
 - customers, 10
 - employees, 9
 - governments, 10
 - managers, 9
 - regulators, 10
 - shareholders, 8–9
 - suppliers, 10
- stakeholder management, 5–36, 14–20
 - about, 14
 - analyst considerations, 31–36
 - board of directors representation, 32
 - composition of investors, 33–34
 - economic ownership and voting control, 31–32
 - long-term risk management, 35
 - remuneration and company performance, 32–33
 - shareholders’ rights, 34
 - defined, 14
 - mechanisms, 15–20
 - audit function, 17
 - board of directors, 17
 - contractual agreements with creditors, 19
 - contractual agreements with customers/suppliers, 20
 - employee laws/contracts, 19–20
 - general meetings, 15–16
 - laws and regulations, 20
 - related-party transaction policies, 18
 - remuneration policies, 18
 - reporting and transparency, 17
 - say on pay, 18–19
 - risks and benefits, 28–31
 - benefits of effective governance, 29–31
 - risks of poor governance, 28–29

- stakeholder theory, 7
 - standard deviation
 - and correlation, 277
 - for portfolio of two assets, 277
 - risk budgeting with, 422
 - of risk-free asset, 320
 - as risk metric, 435–436
 - and variance of returns, 257
 - Standard & Poor's, 438
 - Stanford University, 218
 - Statement of Duties and Responsibilities, IPS, 369
 - Statement of Purpose, IPS, 369
 - statistical factor models, 329
 - Staunton, Mike, 89–90
 - Steiner, Fabian, 105
 - stock(s)
 - correlation of T-bills/bonds with, 285
 - defined, 259
 - employee stock options, 208–210, 286, 381
 - fixed rate perpetual preferred, 86–87
 - historical risk and correlation, 285
 - nominal returns, 259–262
 - preferred, 86–88
 - real returns, 261–262
 - risk and return, 259–260
 - skewness of stock returns, 264–265
 - stock funds, 229
 - stock mutual funds, 232
 - stock-out costs, 184
 - stock-out losses, 182
 - stock price, net present value and, 67–68
 - storage (data processing method), 463
 - straight voting, 12
 - stranded assets, 39
 - strategic analysis, 412
 - strategic asset allocation (SAA), 385–393
 - for European charity, 395–397
 - objective of, 388–389
 - for private investor, 392–393
 - specifying asset classes for, 385–387
 - stress testing, 437, 468
 - stretching payables, 187
 - structured data, 458
 - subsidiary, captive finance, 175
 - Summer Olympics (1980), 443n.36
 - sunk costs, 51
 - supervised learning, 461–462
 - supervisory board, 10
 - suppliers
 - contractual agreements with, 20
 - customer conflicts with, 13
 - as stakeholders, 10
 - surety bonds, 443
 - survey approach, for cost of equity, 92
 - Sustainability Accounting Standards Board (SASB), 39
 - sustainable growth rate, 92–93
 - sustainable investing (SI), 36–37
 - swaps, credit default, 438n.32
 - Sweden, 90
 - SWFs. *see* sovereign wealth funds
 - Switzerland, 90, 105, 379
 - syndicates, 442–443
 - systematic risk, 326–328
 - and calculation of beta, 331–332
 - drivers of, 435
 - in Jensen's alpha, 343
 - for single-index model of beta, 331
 - and strategic asset allocation, 384
 - in Treynor ratio, 342
- T**
- T. Rowe Price Corporate Income Fund, 231–232
 - tactical asset allocation, 393–394
 - “tag clouds,” 464
 - tail risk, 427–428
 - takeover(s), 12
 - takeover defenses
 - cross-shareholdings, 33–34
 - poison pills, 26
 - takeover market, 26
 - Target, 162–163, 184
 - target balance, 167
 - target capital structure, 80
 - tax-advantaged securities, 169
 - taxes
 - capital gains, 254
 - in CAPM assumptions, 336
 - and cost of capital, 79–80
 - on dividend income, 254
 - and IPSs, 379
 - tax risk, 427
 - T-bills. *see* US Treasury bills
 - Temasek Holdings, 221
 - tender offers, 26
 - terrorism, as operational risk, 429
 - Tertilt, Michael, 467
 - Texas A&M University System, 218
 - text analytics, 465
 - thematic investing, 37
 - three-dimensional (3D) graphics, 463
 - three-factor models for beta, 329
 - time horizon
 - for cash forecasting, 166
 - for portfolio management, 222
 - and portfolio planning, 378–379
 - and risk tolerance, 371
 - tokenization, 472
 - top-down portfolio analysis, 223, 397
 - TOPIX Index, 89, 371
 - total leverage, 140–143
 - total risk
 - decomposition of, 330
 - in Sharpe ratio, 342
 - tracking error, 370n.2
 - tracking risk, 370n.2
 - tradable assets, 319
 - trade credit, 185, 186
 - trade discounts, 187–188
 - trade granting process, 176–177
 - traders, rogue, 428
 - trading
 - algorithmic, 469
 - automated, 456
 - cost of, 266, 287
 - high-frequency, 469
 - traditional data, 457
 - training, in machine learning, 461
 - training datasets, 461
 - transaction costs, 336, 348n.6, 425–426
 - transactions motive, 182
 - transfer (data processing method), 463
 - transfer, risk, 441–443
 - transparency. *see* corporate transparency
 - Treasury bills, 259
 - Treynor, Jack, 216, 335
 - Treynor ratio, 342
 - trust receipt agreements, 192
 - Turkey, 16
 - turnover
 - accounts receivable, 160
 - inventory, 160, 184–185
 - two-asset portfolio, risk of, 258–259
 - two-fund separation theorem, 292–293
 - two-tier board structure, 10
 - typical cash flows, identifying, 165–166
- U**
- uncommitted lines of credit, 189, 190
 - uncorrelated returns, 277
 - underinvestment, in inventory, 183
 - underlying, risk budgeting based on, 422
 - unions, 19
 - United Kingdom
 - common law system, 27
 - “comply or explain” codes, 34
 - corporate governance systems, 14
 - equity risk premiums, 90
 - flotation costs, 105
 - frequency of capital budgeting, 67
 - IPS requirement, 368
 - one-tier boards, 10
 - robo-advisory services in, 466
 - say on pay, 18
 - United Nations, 39
 - UN Global Compact, 37
 - United States
 - ACH system, 178
 - bank sources of credit, 189
 - bond mutual funds, 231n.15
 - capital budgeting, 67
 - cash underwritten offers, 105
 - CEO duality, 21
 - common law system, 27
 - correlation of equities, 386–387
 - equity risk premium, 89–90
 - ETFs, 233
 - flotation costs, 105
 - four-factor model use, 354
 - money market funds, 230–231
 - municipal bonds, 379
 - mutual funds, 230–231
 - nominal returns of major asset classes, 260–261
 - one-tier boards, 10
 - pension fund investment restrictions, 379
 - portfolio management by banks, 220, 221
 - real returns of major asset classes, 261–262
 - risk diversification by insurance companies, 442
 - risk of asset classes, 263
 - robo-advisory services in, 466
 - say on pay, 18
 - taxes and cost of capital, 79
 - US Bankruptcy Code, 146
 - US Federal Reserve, 231
 - US Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC)
 - reporting requirements, 235
 - robo-advisory services regulated by, 466
 - and stakeholder relationships, 28

- US Territories, ACH system, 178
 - US Treasury bills (T-bills)
 - as benchmark, 171
 - correlation of stocks/bonds with, 285
 - historical risk and correlation, 285
 - nominal returns, 260–261
 - as proxy of risk-free return, 319–321
 - real returns, 261–262
 - risk–return tradeoff, 261, 263
 - short-term investment, 168
 - in short-term portfolio report, 174
 - yield, 169–170
 - US Treasury bonds
 - correlation with other asset classes, 386
 - in cost of equity, 88, 90
 - universal owners, 38–39
 - university endowments, 218
 - University of Michigan, 218
 - University of Texas System, 218
 - University of Virginia, 224
 - unlimited funds, 52
 - unstructured data, 458
 - unsupervised learning, 462
 - unsystematic risk, 436n.27
 - utility, 269, 389–390
 - computation of, 272
 - and risk seeking, 267
 - utility maximization, 336
 - utility theory
 - portfolio selection with, 273–276
 - and risk aversion, 268–276
- V**
- validation datasets, 461
 - valuation principles, in capital
 - budgeting, 48
 - value, company, 78
 - value at risk (VaR), 370n.1
 - conditional, 437
 - and kurtosis, 265
 - risk budgeting with, 422
 - as risk metric, 436–438
 - value-based investing, 37
 - values-based investing, 37
 - Vanguard Group, 232
 - VaR. *see* value at risk
 - variable costs
 - and degree of operating leverage, 133–135
 - and leverage, 126–128
 - variance
 - of returns, 257
 - for portfolio of assets, 257, 281–282
 - for portfolio of risky assets, 315
 - for single asset, 256
 - and standard deviation, 257
 - for single-index model of beta, 330
 - variety, of collected data, 457–458
 - vega, 436
 - velocity, of collected data, 457, 458
 - vendors, number, size, location of, 186
 - Viskanta, Tadas, 101n.32
 - volatility, portfolio management and, 210–212
 - Volkswagen, emissions scandal, 38
 - volume, of collected data, 457, 458
 - voting, 16
 - voting rights
 - in dual-class share structure, 31–32
 - shareholder, 31–32

W

 - WACC. *see* weighted average cost of capital
 - Walgreens, 95
 - Wal-Mart Stores, Inc.
 - inventory management, 184
 - liquidity management, 161–163
 - and market model, 330–331
 - operating leverage, 135–136
 - wage/hour discrimination suit, 38
 - warehouse receipt agreements, 192
 - Wataniya, 12
 - weather, risk associated with, 428
 - Webvan.com, 147
 - weighing
 - for cost of capital, 80–82
 - of nonmarket securities in portfolio, 350
 - weighted average cost of capital (WACC)
 - in capital budgeting decisions, 82–83
 - computing, 79
 - defined, 79
 - estimations, 98–100
 - and raising of additional capital, 102–105
 - risk factors in, 93
 - Wellcome Trust, 220
 - William and Flora Hewlett Foundation, 219
 - willingness to take risk, investors', 371–373
 - W.K. Kellogg Foundation, 219
 - working capital management, 155–201
 - about, 155–156
 - accounts payable management, 185–188
 - cash disbursements, 188
 - evaluating, 188
 - trade discounts, 187–188
 - accounts receivable management, 175–181
 - customers' receipts, 177–180
 - evaluating, 180–181
 - trade granting process, 176–177
 - cash flows, 164–167
 - forecasting short-term, 165–166
 - monitoring cash uses and levels, 166–167
 - cash position, 164–167
 - defined, 155
 - inventory management, 182–185
 - approaches, 183–184
 - evaluating, 184–185
 - financial impact of inventory methods, 185
 - and inventory costs, 184
 - liquidity, 156–164
 - drags and pulls on, 158–159
 - liquidity management, 157–159
 - measuring, 159–164
 - primary sources, 157
 - secondary sources, 157–158
 - practice problems, 196–198
 - short-term financing, 189–194
 - asset-based loans, 192
 - borrowing approaches, 191–192
 - costs of borrowing for, 193–194
 - sources of, 189–191
 - short-term funds management, 167–174
 - evaluating, 174
 - investment instruments, 168–171
 - strategies for, 171–174
 - solutions to problems, 199–201
 - wrap accounts, 235
 - “wrong-way” risk, 431

Y

 - Yahoo! Finance, 245
 - Yale University, 218–220, 224
 - yields
 - bond equivalent, 170
 - defined, 169–170
 - of discounted securities, 169–170
 - money market, 170
 - on short-term investments, 169–170
 - sovereign yield spread, 100
 - yield-to-maturity (YTM) approach, 84–85
 - Yue Yuen Industrial, 210–213

Z

 - Zhao, Quanshui, 105

EQUITY AND FIXED INCOME

CFA[®] Program Curriculum
2019 • LEVEL I • VOLUME 5

WILEY

CONTENTS

How to Use the CFA Program Curriculum		ix
Curriculum Development Process		ix
Organization of the Curriculum		x
Features of the Curriculum		x
Designing Your Personal Study Program		xi
Feedback		xiii
Equity Investments		
Study Session 14	Equity Investments (1)	3
Reading 44	Market Organization and Structure	5
	Introduction	6
	The Functions of the Financial System	6
	Helping People Achieve Their Purposes in Using the Financial System	7
	Determining Rates of Return	12
	Capital Allocation Efficiency	13
	Assets and Contracts	14
	Classifications of Assets and Markets	14
	Securities	16
	Currencies	19
	Contracts	20
	Commodities	25
	Real Assets	26
	Financial Intermediaries	28
	Brokers, Exchanges, and Alternative Trading Systems	28
	Dealers	30
	Securitizers	31
	Depository Institutions and Other Financial Corporations	32
	Insurance Companies	33
	Arbitrageurs	34
	Settlement and Custodial Services	36
	Summary	38
	Positions	38
	Short Positions	40
	Leveraged Positions	41
	Orders	44
	Execution Instructions	44
	Validity Instructions	48
	Clearing Instructions	49
	Primary Security Markets	50
	Public Offerings	50
	Private Placements and Other Primary Market Transactions	52
	Importance of Secondary Markets to Primary Markets	53

	Secondary Security Market and Contract Market Structures	53
	Trading Sessions	54
	Execution Mechanisms	54
	Market Information Systems	58
	Well-Functioning Financial Systems	58
	Market Regulation	60
	<i>Summary</i>	63
	<i>Practice Problems</i>	66
	<i>Solutions</i>	73
Reading 45	Security Market Indexes	77
	Introduction	77
	Index Definition and Calculations of Value and Returns	78
	Calculation of Single-Period Returns	79
	Calculation of Index Values over Multiple Time Periods	81
	Index Construction and Management	82
	Target Market and Security Selection	82
	Index Weighting	83
	Index Management: Rebalancing and Reconstitution	91
	Uses of Market Indexes	93
	Gauges of Market Sentiment	93
	Proxies for Measuring and Modeling Returns, Systematic Risk, and Risk-Adjusted Performance	94
	Proxies for Asset Classes in Asset Allocation Models	94
	Benchmarks for Actively Managed Portfolios	94
	Model Portfolios for Investment Products	94
	Equity Indexes	95
	Broad Market Indexes	95
	Multi-Market Indexes	95
	Sector Indexes	97
	Style Indexes	97
	Fixed-Income Indexes	98
	Construction	98
	Types of Fixed-Income Indexes	98
	Indexes for Alternative Investments	101
	Commodity Indexes	101
	Real Estate Investment Trust Indexes	101
	Hedge Fund Indexes	102
	<i>Summary</i>	104
	<i>Practice Problems</i>	106
	<i>Solutions</i>	112
Reading 46	Market Efficiency	115
	Introduction	115
	The Concept of Market Efficiency	117
	The Description of Efficient Markets	117
	Market Value versus Intrinsic Value	119
	Factors Contributing to and Impeding a Market's Efficiency	120
	Transaction Costs and Information-Acquisition Costs	123

	Forms of Market Efficiency	124
	Weak Form	125
	Semi-Strong Form	125
	Strong Form	128
	Implications of the Efficient Market Hypothesis	128
	Market Pricing Anomalies	129
	Time-Series Anomalies	130
	Cross-Sectional Anomalies	133
	Other Anomalies	133
	Implications for Investment Strategies	136
	Behavioral Finance	136
	Loss Aversion	137
	Herding	137
	Overconfidence	137
	Information Cascades	138
	Other Behavioral Biases	138
	Behavioral Finance and Investors	139
	Behavioral Finance and Efficient Markets	139
	<i>Summary</i>	139
	<i>Practice Problems</i>	142
	<i>Solutions</i>	145
Study Session 15	Equity Investments (2)	147
Reading 47	Overview of Equity Securities	149
	Introduction	149
	Equity Securities in Global Financial Markets	150
	Types and Characteristics of Equity Securities	155
	Common Shares	156
	Preference Shares	159
	Private versus Public Equity Securities	162
	Investing in Non-Domestic Equity Securities	164
	Direct Investing	165
	Depository Receipts	166
	Risk and Return Characteristics of Equity Securities	169
	Return Characteristics of Equity Securities	169
	Risk of Equity Securities	170
	Equity Securities and Company Value	171
	Accounting Return on Equity	172
	The Cost of Equity and Investors' Required Rates of Return	177
	<i>Summary</i>	178
	<i>Practice Problems</i>	180
	<i>Solutions</i>	184
Reading 48	Introduction to Industry and Company Analysis	187
	Introduction	188
	Uses of Industry Analysis	188
	Approaches to Identifying Similar Companies	189
	Products and/or Services Supplied	189

	Business-Cycle Sensitivities	190
	Statistical Similarities	191
	Industry Classification Systems	192
	Commercial Industry Classification Systems	192
	Governmental Industry Classification Systems	196
	Strengths and Weaknesses of Current Systems	197
	Constructing a Peer Group	198
	Describing and Analyzing an Industry	202
	Principles of Strategic Analysis	204
	External Influences on Industry Growth, Profitability, and Risk	222
	Company Analysis	228
	Elements That Should be Covered in a Company Analysis	229
	Spreadsheet Modeling	232
	<i>Summary</i>	233
	<i>Practice Problems</i>	237
	<i>Solutions</i>	241
Reading 49	Equity Valuation: Concepts and Basic Tools	243
	Introduction	244
	Estimated Value and Market Price	245
	Major Categories of Equity Valuation Models	246
	Present Value Models: The Dividend Discount Model	248
	Dividends: Background for the Dividend Discount Model	248
	The Dividend Discount Model: Description	251
	Preferred Stock Valuation	254
	The Gordon Growth Model	256
	Multistage Dividend Discount Models	261
	Multiplier Models	265
	Relationships among Price Multiples, Present Value Models, and Fundamentals	266
	The Method of Comparables	269
	Illustration of a Valuation Based on Price Multiples	272
	Enterprise Value	274
	Asset-Based Valuation	276
	<i>Summary</i>	280
	<i>Practice Problems</i>	283
	<i>Solutions</i>	289
Fixed Income		
Study Session 16	Fixed Income (1)	295
Reading 50	Fixed-Income Securities: Defining Elements	297
	Introduction	297
	Overview of a Fixed-Income Security	298
	Basic Features of a Bond	299
	Yield Measures	304
	Legal, Regulatory, and Tax Considerations	304
	Bond Indenture	305

	Legal and Regulatory Considerations	313
	Tax Considerations	316
	Structure of a Bond's Cash Flows	318
	Principal Repayment Structures	318
	Coupon Payment Structures	323
	Bonds with Contingency Provisions	329
	Callable Bonds	330
	Putable Bonds	332
	Convertible Bonds	332
	<i>Summary</i>	336
	<i>Practice Problems</i>	339
	<i>Solutions</i>	343
Reading 51	Fixed-Income Markets: Issuance, Trading, and Funding	347
	Introduction	347
	Overview of Global Fixed-Income Markets	348
	Classification of Fixed-Income Markets	348
	Fixed-Income Indexes	357
	Investors in Fixed-Income Securities	358
	Primary and Secondary Bond Markets	359
	Primary Bond Markets	359
	Secondary Bond Markets	365
	Sovereign Bonds	367
	Characteristics of Sovereign Bonds	367
	Credit Quality of Sovereign Bonds	368
	Types of Sovereign Bonds	369
	Non-Sovereign Government, Quasi-Government, and Supranational Bonds	371
	Non-Sovereign Bonds	371
	Quasi-Government Bonds	372
	Supranational Bonds	372
	Corporate Debt	373
	Bank Loans and Syndicated Loans	373
	Commercial Paper	374
	Corporate Notes and Bonds	377
	Structured Financial Instruments	381
	Capital Protected Instruments	382
	Yield Enhancement Instruments	382
	Participation Instruments	382
	Leveraged Instruments	383
	Short-Term Funding Alternatives Available to Banks	384
	Retail Deposits	385
	Short-Term Wholesale Funds	385
	Repurchase and Reverse Repurchase Agreements	386
	<i>Summary</i>	390
	<i>Practice Problems</i>	393
	<i>Solutions</i>	397

Reading 52	Introduction to Fixed-Income Valuation	401
	Introduction	401
	Bond Prices and the Time Value of Money	402
	Bond Pricing with a Market Discount Rate	402
	Yield-to-Maturity	406
	Relationships between the Bond Price and Bond Characteristics	407
	Pricing Bonds with Spot Rates	411
	Prices and Yields: Conventions for Quotes and Calculations	413
	Flat Price, Accrued Interest, and the Full Price	413
	Matrix Pricing	417
	Yield Measures for Fixed-Rate Bonds	420
	Yield Measures for Floating-Rate Notes	425
	Yield Measures for Money Market Instruments	429
	The Maturity Structure of Interest Rates	433
	Yield Spreads	441
	Yield Spreads over Benchmark Rates	441
	Yield Spreads over the Benchmark Yield Curve	443
	<i>Summary</i>	446
	<i>Practice Problems</i>	449
	<i>Solutions</i>	458
Reading 53	Introduction to Asset-Backed Securities	473
	Introduction	473
	Benefits of Securitization for Economies and Financial Markets	474
	How Securitization Works	476
	An Example of a Securitization	476
	Parties to a Securitization and Their Roles	478
	Structure of a Securitization	481
	Key Role of the Special Purpose Entity	482
	Residential Mortgage Loans	485
	Maturity	486
	Interest Rate Determination	486
	Amortization Schedule	487
	Prepayment Options and Prepayment Penalties	488
	Rights of the Lender in a Foreclosure	488
	Residential Mortgage-Backed Securities	490
	Mortgage Pass-Through Securities	491
	Collateralized Mortgage Obligations	497
	Non-agency Residential Mortgage-Backed Securities	503
	Commercial Mortgage-Backed Securities	503
	Credit Risk	504
	CMBS Structure	504
	Non-Mortgage Asset-Backed Securities	508
	Auto Loan ABS	508
	Credit Card Receivable ABS	511
	Collateralized Debt Obligations	512
	CDO Structure	513
	An Example of a CDO Transaction	513

	<i>Summary</i>	516
	<i>Practice Problems</i>	519
	<i>Solutions</i>	523
Study Session 17	Fixed Income (2)	527
Reading 54	Understanding Fixed-Income Risk and Return	529
	Introduction	530
	Sources of Return	530
	Interest Rate Risk on Fixed-Rate Bonds	537
	Macaulay, Modified, and Approximate Duration	538
	Effective Duration	545
	Key Rate Duration	549
	Properties of Bond Duration	549
	Duration of a Bond Portfolio	555
	Money Duration of a Bond and the Price Value of a Basis Point	557
	Bond Convexity	559
	Interest Rate Risk and the Investment Horizon	567
	Yield Volatility	568
	Investment Horizon, Macaulay Duration, and Interest Rate Risk	569
	Credit and Liquidity Risk	574
	<i>Summary</i>	575
	<i>Practice Problems</i>	579
	<i>Solutions</i>	584
Reading 55	Fundamentals of Credit Analysis	591
	Introduction	592
	Credit Risk	592
	Capital Structure, Seniority Ranking, and Recovery Rates	595
	Capital Structure	595
	Seniority Ranking	595
	Recovery Rates	597
	Ratings Agencies, Credit Ratings, and Their Role in the Debt Markets	601
	Credit Ratings	602
	Issuer vs. Issue Ratings	603
	Risks in Relying on Agency Ratings	605
	Traditional Credit Analysis: Corporate Debt Securities	610
	Credit Analysis vs. Equity Analysis: Similarities and Differences	610
	The Four Cs of Credit Analysis: A Useful Framework	611
	Credit Risk vs. Return: Yields and Spreads	628
	Special Considerations of High-Yield, Sovereign, and Non-Sovereign	
	Credit Analysis	638
	High Yield	638
	Sovereign Debt	645
	Non-Sovereign Government Debt	650
	<i>Summary</i>	652
	<i>Practice Problems</i>	656
	<i>Solutions</i>	666

Glossary
Index

G-1
I-1

Equity Investments

STUDY SESSIONS

Study Session 14	Equity Investments (1)
Study Session 15	Equity Investments (2)

TOPIC LEVEL LEARNING OUTCOME

The candidate should be able to describe characteristics of equity investments, security markets, and indexes. The candidate should also be able to analyze industries, companies, and equity securities and to describe and demonstrate the use of basic equity valuation models.

Global equities are an important asset class for meeting longer term growth and diversification objectives. Global equities also represent a substantial share of capital markets that has been expanding in breadth and depth as developing economies come to market for equity capital. As developed and emerging economies continue to open their markets to investment, their activity is expected to significantly change the composition of world equity markets.

EQUITY INVESTMENTS STUDY SESSION

14

Equity Investments (1)

This study session provides a structural overview of financial markets and their operating characteristics. Overview markets include equities, fixed income, derivatives, and alternative investments. Various asset types, market participants, and how assets trade within these markets and ecosystems are described. Coverage of these core asset classes continues in subsequent Level I study sessions, laying the foundation for further study in Levels II and III. The study session then turns to the calculation, construction, and use of security market indexes. A discussion of market efficiency and the degree to which market prices may reflect available information concludes the session.

READING ASSIGNMENTS

- | | |
|-------------------|---|
| Reading 44 | Market Organization and Structure
by Larry Harris, PhD, CFA |
| Reading 45 | Security Market Indexes
by Paul D. Kaplan, PhD, CFA, and Dorothy C. Kelly,
CFA |
| Reading 46 | Market Efficiency
by Sean Cleary, PhD, CFA, Howard J. Atkinson, CIMA,
ICD.D, CFA, and Pamela Peterson Drake, PhD, CFA |

Market Organization and Structure

by Larry Harris, PhD, CFA

Larry Harris, PhD, CFA, is at the USC Marshall School of Business (USA).

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Mastery	The candidate should be able to:
<input type="checkbox"/>	a. explain the main functions of the financial system;
<input type="checkbox"/>	b. describe classifications of assets and markets;
<input type="checkbox"/>	c. describe the major types of securities, currencies, contracts, commodities, and real assets that trade in organized markets, including their distinguishing characteristics and major subtypes;
<input type="checkbox"/>	d. describe types of financial intermediaries and services that they provide;
<input type="checkbox"/>	e. compare positions an investor can take in an asset;
<input type="checkbox"/>	f. calculate and interpret the leverage ratio, the rate of return on a margin transaction, and the security price at which the investor would receive a margin call;
<input type="checkbox"/>	g. compare execution, validity, and clearing instructions;
<input type="checkbox"/>	h. compare market orders with limit orders;
<input type="checkbox"/>	i. define primary and secondary markets and explain how secondary markets support primary markets;
<input type="checkbox"/>	j. describe how securities, contracts, and currencies are traded in quote-driven, order-driven, and brokered markets;
<input type="checkbox"/>	k. describe characteristics of a well-functioning financial system;
<input type="checkbox"/>	l. describe objectives of market regulation.

1

INTRODUCTION

Financial analysts gather and process information to make investment decisions, including those related to buying and selling assets. Generally, the decisions involve trading securities, currencies, contracts, commodities, and real assets such as real estate. Consider several examples:

- Fixed income analysts evaluate issuer credit-worthiness and macroeconomic prospects to determine which bonds and notes to buy or sell to preserve capital while obtaining a fair rate of return.
- Stock analysts study corporate values to determine which stocks to buy or sell to maximize the value of their stock portfolios.
- Corporate treasurers analyze exchange rates, interest rates, and credit conditions to determine which currencies to trade and which notes to buy or sell to have funds available in a needed currency.
- Risk managers work for producers or users of commodities to calculate how many commodity futures contracts to buy or sell to manage inventory risks.

Financial analysts must understand the characteristics of the markets in which their decisions will be executed. This reading, by examining those markets from the analyst's perspective, provides that understanding.

This reading is organized as follows. Section 2 examines the functions of the financial system. Section 3 introduces assets that investors, information-motivated traders, and risk managers use to advance their financial objectives and presents ways practitioners classify these assets into markets. These assets include such financial instruments as securities, currencies, and some contracts; certain commodities; and real assets. Financial analysts must know the distinctive characteristics of these trading assets.

Section 4 is an overview of financial intermediaries (entities that facilitate the functioning of the financial system). Section 5 discusses the positions that can be obtained while trading assets. You will learn about the benefits and risks of long and short positions, how these positions can be financed, and how the financing affects their risks. Section 6 discusses how market participants order trades and how markets process those orders. These processes must be understood to achieve trading objectives while controlling transaction costs.

Section 7 focuses on describing primary markets. Section 8 describes the structures of secondary markets in securities. Sections 9 and 10 close the reading with discussions of the characteristics of a well-functioning financial system and of how regulation helps make financial markets function better. A summary reviews the reading's major ideas and points, and practice problems conclude.

2

THE FUNCTIONS OF THE FINANCIAL SYSTEM

The financial system includes markets and various financial intermediaries that help transfer financial assets, real assets, and financial risks in various forms from one entity to another, from one place to another, and from one point in time to another. These transfers take place whenever someone exchanges one asset or financial contract for another. The assets and contracts that people (people act on behalf of themselves, companies, charities, governments, etc., so the term "people" has a broad definition in this reading) trade include notes, bonds, stocks, exchange-traded funds, currencies,

forward contracts, futures contracts, option contracts, swap contracts, and certain commodities. When the buyer and seller voluntarily arrange their trades, as is usually the case, the buyer and the seller both expect to be better off.

People use the financial system for six main purposes:

- 1 to save money for the future;
- 2 to borrow money for current use;
- 3 to raise equity capital;
- 4 to manage risks;
- 5 to exchange assets for immediate and future deliveries; and
- 6 to trade on information.

The main functions of the financial system are to facilitate:

- 1 the achievement of the purposes for which people use the financial system;
- 2 the discovery of the rates of return that equate aggregate savings with aggregate borrowings; and
- 3 the allocation of capital to the best uses.

These functions are extremely important to economic welfare. In a well-functioning financial system, transaction costs are low, analysts can value savings and investments, and scarce capital resources are used well.

Sections 2.1 through 2.3 expand on these three functions. The six subsections of Section 2.1 cover the six main purposes for which people use the financial system and how the financial system facilitates the achievement of those purposes. Sections 2.2 and 2.3 discuss determining rates of return and capital allocation efficiency, respectively.

2.1 Helping People Achieve Their Purposes in Using the Financial System

People often arrange transactions to achieve more than one purpose when using the financial system. For example, an investor who buys the stock of an oil producer may do so to move her wealth from the present to the future, to hedge the risk that she will have to pay more for energy in the future, and to exploit insightful research that she conducted that suggests the company's stock is undervalued in the marketplace. If the investment proves to be successful, she will have saved money for the future, managed her energy risk exposure, and obtained a return on her research.

The separate discussions of each of the six main uses of the financial system by people will help you better identify the reasons why people trade. Your ability to identify the various uses of the financial system will help you avoid confusion that often leads to poor financial decisions. The financial intermediaries that are mentioned in these discussions are explained further in Section 4.

2.1.1 Saving

People often have money that they choose not to spend now and that they want available in the future. For example, workers who save for their retirements need to move some of their current earnings into the future. When they retire, they will use their savings to replace the wages that they will no longer be earning. Similarly, companies save money from their sales revenue so that they can pay vendors when their bills come due, repay debt, or acquire assets (for example, other companies or machinery) in the future.

To move money from the present to the future, savers buy notes, certificates of deposit, bonds, stocks, mutual funds, or real assets such as real estate. These alternatives generally provide a better expected rate of return than simply storing money.

Savers then sell these assets in the future to fund their future expenditures. When savers commit money to earn a financial return, they commonly are called investors. They invest when they purchase assets, and they divest when they sell them.

Investors require a fair rate of return while their money is invested. The required fair rate of return compensates them for the use of their money and for the risk that they may lose money if the investment fails or if inflation reduces the real value of their investments.

The financial system facilitates savings when institutions create investment vehicles, such as bank deposits, notes, stocks, and mutual funds, that investors can acquire and sell without paying substantial transaction costs. When these instruments are fairly priced and easy to trade, investors will use them to save more.

2.1.2 *Borrowing*

People, companies, and governments often want to spend money now that they do not have. They can obtain money to fund projects that they wish to undertake now by borrowing it. Companies can also obtain funds by selling ownership or equity interests (covered in Section 2.1.3). Banks and other investors provide those requiring funds with money because they expect to be repaid with interest or because they expect to be compensated with future disbursements, such as dividends and capital gains, as the ownership interest appreciates in value.

People may borrow to pay for such items as vacations, homes, cars, or education. They generally borrow through mortgages and personal loans, or by using credit cards. People typically repay these loans with money they earn later.

Companies often require money to fund current operations or to engage in new capital projects. They may borrow the needed funds in a variety of ways, such as arranging a loan or a line of credit with a bank, or selling fixed income securities to investors. Companies typically repay their borrowing with income generated in the future. In addition to borrowing, companies may raise funds by selling ownership interests.

Governments may borrow money to pay salaries and other expenses, to fund projects, to provide welfare benefits to their citizens and residents, and to subsidize various activities. Governments borrow by selling bills, notes, or bonds. Governments repay their debt using future revenues from taxes and in some instances from the projects funded by these debts.

Borrowers can borrow from lenders only if the lenders believe that they will be repaid. If the lenders believe, however, that repayment in full with interest may not occur, they will demand higher rates of interest to cover their expected losses and to compensate them for the discomfit they experience wondering whether they will lose their money. To lower the costs of borrowing, borrowers often pledge assets as collateral for their loans. The assets pledged as collateral often include those that will be purchased by the proceeds of the loan. If the borrowers do not repay their loans, the lenders can sell the collateral and use the proceeds to settle the loans.

Lenders often will not loan to borrowers who intend to invest in risky projects, especially if the borrowers cannot pledge other collateral. Investors may still be willing to supply capital for these risky projects if they believe that the projects will likely produce valuable future cash flows. Rather than lending money, however, they will contribute capital in exchange for equity in the projects.

The financial system facilitates borrowing. Lenders aggregate from savers the funds that borrowers require. Borrowers must convince lenders that they can repay their loans, and that, in the event they cannot, lenders can recover most of the funds lent. Credit bureaus, credit rating agencies, and governments promote borrowing; credit bureaus and credit rating agencies do so by collecting and disseminating information that lenders need to analyze credit prospects and governments do so by establishing bankruptcy codes and courts that define and enforce the rights of borrowers and

lenders. When the transaction costs of loans (i.e., the costs of arranging, monitoring, and collecting them) are low, borrowers can borrow more to fund current expenditures with credible promises to return the money in the future.

2.1.3 Raising Equity Capital

Companies often raise money for projects by selling (issuing) ownership interests (e.g., corporate common stock or partnership interests). Although these equity instruments legally represent ownership in companies rather than loans to the companies, selling equity to raise capital is simply another mechanism for moving money from the future to the present. When shareholders or partners contribute capital to a company, the company obtains money in the present in exchange for equity instruments that will be entitled to distributions in the future. Although the repayment of the money is not scheduled as it would be for loans, equity instruments also represent potential claims on money in the future.

The financial system facilitates raising equity capital. Investment banks help companies issue equities, analysts value the securities that companies sell, and regulatory reporting requirements and accounting standards attempt to ensure the production of meaningful financial disclosures. The financial system helps promote capital formation by producing the financial information needed to determine fair prices for equity. Liquid markets help companies raise capital. In these markets, shareholders can easily divest their equities as desired. When investors can easily value and trade equities, they are more willing to fund reasonable projects that companies wish to undertake.

EXAMPLE 1

Financing Capital Projects

As a chief financial officer (CFO) of a large industrial firm, you need to raise cash within a few months to pay for a project to expand existing and acquire new manufacturing facilities. What are the primary options available to you?

Solution:

Your primary options are to borrow the funds or to raise the funds by selling ownership interests. If the company borrows the funds, you may have the company pledge some or all of the project as collateral to reduce the cost of borrowing.

2.1.4 Managing Risks

Many people, companies, and governments face financial risks that concern them. These risks include default risk and the risk of changes in interest rates, exchange rates, raw material prices, and sale prices, among many other risks. These risks are often managed by trading contracts that serve as hedges for the risks.

For example, a farmer and a food processor both face risks related to the price of grain. The farmer fears that prices will be lower than expected when his grain is ready for sale whereas the food processor fears that prices will be higher than expected when she has to buy grain in the future. They both can eliminate their exposures to these risks if they enter into a binding forward contract for the farmer to sell a specified quantity of grain to the food processor at a future date at a mutually agreed upon price. By entering into a forward contract that sets the future trade price, they both eliminate their exposure to changing grain prices.

In general, hedgers trade to offset or insure against risks that concern them. In addition to forward contracts, they may use futures contracts, option contracts, or insurance contracts to transfer risk to other entities more willing to bear the risks

(these contracts will be covered in Section 3.4). Often the hedger and the other entity face exactly the opposite risks, so the transfer makes both more secure, as in the grain example.

The financial system facilitates risk management when liquid markets exist in which risk managers can trade instruments that are correlated (or inversely correlated) with the risks that concern them without incurring substantial transaction costs. Investment banks, exchanges, and insurance companies devote substantial resources to designing such contracts and to ensuring that they will trade in liquid markets. When such markets exist, people are better able to manage the risks that they face and often are more willing to undertake risky activities that they expect will be profitable.

2.1.5 *Exchanging Assets for Immediate Delivery (Spot Market Trading)*

People and companies often trade one asset for another that they rate more highly or, equivalently, that is more useful to them. They may trade one currency for another currency, or money for a needed commodity or right. Following are some examples that illustrate these trades:

- Volkswagen pays its German workers in euros, but the company receives dollars when it sells cars in the United States. To convert money from dollars to euros, Volkswagen trades in the foreign exchange markets.
- A Mexican investor who is worried about the prospects for peso inflation or a potential devaluation of the peso may buy gold in the spot gold market. (This transaction may hedge against the risk of devaluation of the peso because the value of gold may increase with inflation.)
- A plastic producer must buy carbon credits to emit carbon dioxide when burning fuel to comply with environmental regulations. The carbon credit is a legal right that the producer must have to engage in activities that emit carbon dioxide.

In each of these cases, the trades are considered spot market trades because the instruments trade for immediate delivery. The financial system facilitates these exchanges when liquid spot markets exist in which people can arrange and settle trades without substantial transaction costs.

2.1.6 *Information-Motivated Trading*

Information-motivated traders trade to profit from information that they believe allows them to predict future prices. Like all other traders, they hope to buy at low prices and sell at higher prices. Unlike pure investors, however, they expect to earn a return on their information in addition to the normal return expected for bearing risk through time.

Active investment managers are information-motivated traders who collect and analyze information to identify securities, contracts, and other assets that their analyses indicate are under- or overvalued. They then buy those that they consider undervalued and sell those that they consider overvalued. If successful, they obtain a greater return than the unconditional return that would be expected for bearing the risk in their positions. The return that they expect to obtain is a conditional return earned on the basis of the information in their analyses. Practitioners often call this process active portfolio management.

Note that the distinction between pure investors and information-motivated traders depends on their motives for trading and not on the risks that they take or their expected holding periods. Investors trade to move wealth from the present to the future whereas information-motivated traders trade to profit from superior information about future values. When trading to move wealth forward, the time period may be short or long. For example, a bank treasurer may only need to move money

overnight and might use money market instruments trading in an interbank funds market to accomplish that. A pension fund, however, may need to move money 30 years forward and might do that by using shares trading in a stock market. Both are investors although their expected holding periods and the risks in the instruments that they trade are vastly different.

In contrast, information-motivated traders trade because their information-based analyses suggest to them that prices of various instruments will increase or decrease in the future at a rate faster than others without their information or analytical models would expect. After establishing their positions, they hope that prices will change quickly in their favor so that they can close their positions, realize their profits, and redeploy their capital. These price changes may occur almost instantaneously, or they may take years to occur if information about the mispricing is difficult to obtain or understand.

The two categories of traders are not mutually exclusive. Investors also are often information-motivated traders. Many investors who want to move wealth forward through time collect and analyze information to select securities that will allow them to obtain conditional returns that are greater than the unconditional returns expected for securities in their assets classes. If they have rational reasons to expect that their efforts will indeed produce superior returns, they are information-motivated traders. If they consistently fail to produce such returns, their efforts will be futile, and they would have been better off simply buying and holding well-diversified portfolios.

EXAMPLE 2

Investing versus Information-Motivated Trading

The head of a large labor union with a pension fund asks you, a pension consultant, to distinguish between investing and information-motivated trading. You are expected to provide an explanation that addresses the financial problems that she faces. How would you respond?

Solution:

The object of investing for the pension fund is to move the union's pension assets from the present to the future when they will be needed to pay the union's retired pensioners. The pension fund managers will typically do this by buying stocks, bonds, and perhaps other assets. The pension fund managers expect to receive a fair rate of return on the pension fund's assets without paying excessive transaction costs and management fees. The return should compensate the fund for the risks that it bears and for the time that other people are using the fund's money.

The object of information-motivated trading is to earn a return in excess of the fair rate of return. Information-motivated traders analyze information that they collect with the hope that their analyses will allow them to predict better than others where prices will be in the future. They then buy assets that they think will produce excess returns and sell those that they think will underperform. Active investment managers are information-motivated traders.

The characteristic that most distinguishes investors from information-motivated traders is the return that they expect. Although both types of traders hope to obtain extraordinary returns, investors rationally expect to receive only fair returns during the periods of their investments. In contrast, information-motivated traders expect to make returns in excess of required fair rates of return. Of course, not all investing or information-motivated trading is successful (in other words, the actual returns may not equal or exceed the expected returns).

The financial system facilitates information-motivated trading when liquid markets allow active managers to trade without significant transaction costs. Accounting standards and reporting requirements that produce meaningful financial disclosures reduce the costs of being well informed, but do not necessarily help informed traders profit because they often compete with each other. The most profitable well-informed traders are often those that have the most unique insights into future values.

2.1.7 Summary

People use the financial system for many purposes, the most important of which are saving, borrowing, raising equity capital, managing risk, exchanging assets in spot markets, and information-motivated trading. The financial system best facilitates these uses when people can trade instruments that interest them in liquid markets, when institutions provide financial services at low cost, when information about assets and about credit risks is readily available, and when regulation helps ensure that everyone faithfully honors their contracts.

2.2 Determining Rates of Return

Saving, borrowing, and selling equity are all means of moving money through time. Savers move money from the present to the future whereas borrowers and equity issuers move money from the future to the present.

Because time machines do not exist, money can travel forward in time only if an equal amount of money is travelling in the other direction. This equality always occurs because borrowers and equity sellers create the securities in which savers invest. For example, the bond sold by a company that needs to move money from the future to the present is the same bond bought by a saver who needs to move money from the present to the future.

The aggregate amount of money that savers will move from the present to the future is related to the expected rate of return on their investments. If the expected return is high, they will forgo current consumption and move more money to the future. Similarly, the aggregate amount of money that borrowers and equity sellers will move from the future to the present depends on the costs of borrowing funds or of giving up ownership. These costs can be expressed as the rate of return that borrowers and equity sellers are expected to deliver in exchange for obtaining current funds. It is the same rate that savers expect to receive when delivering current funds. If this rate is low, borrowers and equity sellers will want to move more money to the present from the future. In other words, they will want to raise more funds.

Because the total money saved must equal the total money borrowed and received in exchange for equity, the expected rate of return depends on the aggregate supply of funds through savings and the aggregate demand for funds. If the rate is too high, savers will want to move more money to the future than borrowers and equity issuers will want to move to the present. The expected rate will have to be lower to discourage the savers and to encourage the borrowers and equity issuers. Conversely, if the rate is too low, savers will want to move less money forward than borrowers and equity issuers will want to move to the present. The expected rate will have to be higher to encourage the savers and to discourage the borrowers and equity issuers. Between rates too high and too low, an expected rate of return exists, in theory, in which the aggregate supply of funds for investing (supply of funds saved) and the aggregate demand for funds through borrowing and equity issuing are equal.

Economists call this rate the equilibrium interest rate. It is the price for moving money through time. Determining this rate is one of the most important functions of the financial system. The equilibrium interest rate is the only interest rate that would exist if all securities were equally risky, had equal terms, and were equally liquid. In fact, the required rates of return for securities vary by their risk characteristics, terms,

and liquidity. For a given issuer, investors generally require higher rates of return for equity than for debt, for long-term securities than for short-term securities, and for illiquid securities than for liquid ones. Financial analysts recognize that all required rates of return depend on a common equilibrium interest rate plus adjustments for risk.

EXAMPLE 3

Interest Rates

For a presentation to private wealth clients by your firm's chief economist, you are asked to prepare the audience by explaining the most fundamental facts concerning the role of interest rates in the economy. You agree. What main points should you try to convey?

Solution:

Savers have money now that they will want to use in the future. Borrowers want to use money now that they do not have, but they expect that they will have money in the future. Borrowers are loaned money by savers and promise to repay it in the future.

The interest rate is the return that lenders, the savers, expect to receive from borrowers for allowing borrowers to use the savers' money. The interest rate is the price of using money.

Interest rates depend on the total amount of money that people want to borrow and the total amount of money that people are willing to lend. Interest rates are high when, in aggregate, people value having money now substantially more than they value having money in the future. In contrast, if many people with money want to use it in the future and few people presently need more money than they have, interest rates will be low.

2.3 Capital Allocation Efficiency

Primary capital markets (primary markets) are the markets in which companies and governments raise capital (funds). Companies may raise funds by borrowing money or by issuing equity. Governments may raise funds by borrowing money.

Economies are said to be allocationally efficient when their financial systems allocate capital (funds) to those uses that are most productive. Although companies may be interested in getting funding for many potential projects, not all projects are worth funding. One of the most important functions of the financial system is to ensure that only the best projects obtain scarce capital funds; the funds available from savers should be allocated to the most productive uses.

In market-based economies, savers determine, directly or indirectly, which projects obtain capital. Savers determine capital allocations directly by choosing which securities they will invest in. Savers determine capital allocations indirectly by giving funds to financial intermediaries that then invest the funds. Because investors fear the loss of their money, they will lend at lower interest rates to borrowers with the best credit prospects or the best collateral, and they will lend at higher rates to other borrowers with less secure prospects. Similarly, they will buy only those equities that they believe have the best prospects relative to their prices and risks.

To avoid losses, investors carefully study the prospects of the various investment opportunities available to them. The decisions that they make tend to be well informed, which helps ensure that capital is allocated efficiently. The fear of losses by investors

and by those raising funds to invest in projects ensures that only the best projects tend to be funded. The process works best when investors are well informed about the prospects of the various projects.

In general, investors will fund an equity project if they expect that the value of the project is greater than its cost, and they will not fund projects otherwise. If the investor expectations are accurate, only projects that should be undertaken will be funded and all such projects will be funded. Accurate market information thus leads to efficient capital allocation.

EXAMPLE 4

Primary Market Capital Allocation

How can poor information about the value of a project result in poor capital allocation decisions?

Solution:

Projects should be undertaken only if their value is greater than their cost. If investors have poor information and overestimate the value of a project in which its true value is less than its cost, a wealth-diminishing project may be undertaken. Alternatively, if investors have poor information and underestimate the value of a project in which its true value is greater than its cost, a wealth-enhancing project may not be undertaken.

3

ASSETS AND CONTRACTS

People, companies, and governments use many different assets and contracts to further their financial goals and to manage their risks. The most common assets include financial assets (such as bank deposits, certificates of deposit, loans, mortgages, corporate and government bonds and notes, common and preferred stocks, real estate investment trusts, master limited partnership interests, pooled investment products, and exchange-traded funds), currencies, certain commodities (such as gold and oil), and real assets (such as real estate). The most common contracts are option, futures, forward, swap, and insurance contracts. People, companies, and governments use these assets and contracts to raise funds, to invest, to profit from information-motivated trading, to hedge risks, and/or to transfer money from one form to another.

3.1 Classifications of Assets and Markets

Practitioners often classify assets and the markets in which they trade by various common characteristics to facilitate communications with their clients, with each other, and with regulators.

The most actively traded assets are securities, currencies, contracts, and commodities. In addition, real assets are traded. Securities generally include debt instruments, equities, and shares in pooled investment vehicles. **Currencies** are monies issued by national monetary authorities. Contracts are agreements to exchange securities, currencies, commodities or other contracts in the future. Commodities include precious metals, energy products, industrial metals, and agricultural products. Real assets are tangible properties such as real estate, airplanes, or machinery. Securities, currencies, and contracts are classified as financial assets whereas commodities and real assets are classified as physical assets.

Securities are further classified as debt or equity. Debt instruments (also called fixed-income instruments) are promises to repay borrowed money. Equities represent ownership in companies. Pooled investment vehicle shares represent ownership of an undivided interest in an investment portfolio. The portfolio may include securities, currencies, contracts, commodities, or real assets. Pooled investment vehicles, such as exchange-traded funds, which exclusively own shares in other companies, generally are also considered equities.

Securities are also classified by whether they are public or private securities. Public securities are those registered to trade in public markets, such as on exchanges or through dealers. In most jurisdictions, issuers must meet stringent minimum regulatory standards, including reporting and corporate governance standards, to issue publicly traded securities.

Private securities are all other securities. Often, only specially qualified investors can purchase private equities and private debt instruments. Investors may purchase them directly from the issuer or indirectly through an investment vehicle specifically formed to hold such securities. Issuers often issue private securities when they find public reporting standards too burdensome or when they do not want to conform to the regulatory standards associated with public equity. Venture capital is private equity that investors supply to companies when or shortly after they are founded. Private securities generally are illiquid. In contrast, many public securities trade in liquid markets in which sellers can easily find buyers for their securities.

Contracts are derivative contracts if their values depend on the prices of other underlying assets. Derivative contracts may be classified as physical or financial depending on whether the underlying instruments are physical products or financial securities. Equity derivatives are contracts whose values depend on equities or indexes of equities. Fixed-income derivatives are contracts whose values depend on debt securities or indexes of debt securities.

Practitioners classify markets by whether the markets trade instruments for immediate delivery or for future delivery. Markets that trade contracts that call for delivery in the future are forward or futures markets. Those that trade for immediate delivery are called **spot markets** to distinguish them from forward markets that trade contracts on the same underlying instruments. Options markets trade contracts that deliver in the future, but delivery takes place only if the holders of the options choose to exercise them.

When issuers sell securities to investors, practitioners say that they trade in the **primary market**. When investors sell those securities to others, they trade in the **secondary market**. In the primary market, funds flow to the issuer of the security from the purchaser. In the secondary market, funds flow between traders.

Practitioners classify financial markets as money markets or capital markets. **Money markets** trade debt instruments maturing in one year or less. The most common such instruments are repurchase agreements (defined in Section 3.2.1), negotiable certificates of deposit, government bills, and commercial paper. In contrast, **capital markets** trade instruments of longer duration, such as bonds and equities, whose values depend on the credit-worthiness of the issuers and on payments of interest or dividends that will be made in the future and may be uncertain. Corporations generally finance their operations in the capital markets, but some also finance a portion of their operations by issuing short-term securities, such as commercial paper.

Finally, practitioners distinguish between **traditional investment markets** and **alternative investment markets**. Traditional investments include all publicly traded debts and equities and shares in pooled investment vehicles that hold publicly traded debts and/or equities. Alternative investments include **hedge funds**, private equities (including venture capital), commodities, real estate securities and real estate properties, securitized debts, operating leases, machinery, collectibles, and precious gems. Because these investments are often hard to trade and hard to value, they may

sometimes trade at substantial deviations from their intrinsic values. The discounts compensate investors for the research that they must do to value these assets and for their inability to easily sell the assets if they need to liquidate a portion of their portfolios.

The remainder of this section describes the most common assets and contracts that people, companies, and governments trade.

EXAMPLE 5

Asset and Market Classification

The investment policy of a mutual fund only permits the fund to invest in public equities traded in secondary markets. Would the fund be able to purchase:

- 1 Common stock of a company that trades on a large stock exchange?
- 2 Common stock of a public company that trades only through dealers?
- 3 A government bond?
- 4 A single stock futures contract?
- 5 Common stock sold for the first time by a properly registered public company?
- 6 Shares in a privately held bank with €10 billion of capital?

Solution to 1:

Yes. Common stock is equity. Those common stocks that trade on large exchanges invariably are public equities that trade in secondary markets.

Solution to 2:

Yes. Dealer markets are secondary markets and the security is a public equity.

Solution to 3:

No. Although government bonds are public securities, they are not equities. They are debt securities.

Solution to 4:

No. Although the underlying instruments for single stock futures are invariably public equities, single stock futures are derivative contracts, not equities.

Solution to 5:

No. The fund would not be able to buy these shares because a purchase from the issuer would be in the primary market. The fund would have to wait until it could buy the shares from someone other than the issuer.

Solution to 6:

No. These shares are private equities, not public equities. The public prominence of the company does not make its securities public securities unless they have been properly registered as public securities.

3.2 Securities

People, companies, and governments sell securities to raise money. Securities include bonds, notes, commercial paper, mortgages, common stocks, preferred stocks, warrants, mutual fund shares, unit trusts, and depository receipts. These can be classified broadly as fixed-income instruments, equities, and shares in pooled investment vehicles. Note

that the legal definition of a security varies by country and may or may not coincide with the usage here. Securities that are sold to the public or that can be resold to the public are called issues. Companies and governments are the most common issuers.

3.2.1 *Fixed Income*

Fixed-income instruments contractually include predetermined payment schedules that usually include interest and principal payments. Fixed-income instruments generally are promises to repay borrowed money but may include other instruments with payment schedules, such as settlements of legal cases or prizes from lotteries. The payment amounts may be pre-specified or they may vary according to a fixed formula that depends on the future values of an interest rate or a commodity price. Bonds, notes, bills, certificates of deposit, commercial paper, repurchase agreements, loan agreements, and mortgages are examples of promises to repay money in the future. People, companies, and governments create fixed-income instruments when they borrow money.

Corporations and governments issue bonds and notes. Fixed-income securities with shorter maturities are called “notes,” those with longer maturities are called “bonds.” The cutoff is usually at 10 years. In practice, however, the terms are generally used interchangeably. Both become short-term instruments when the remaining time until maturity is short, usually taken to be one year or less.

Some corporations issue convertible bonds, which are typically convertible into stock, usually at the option of the holder after some period. If stock prices are high so that conversion is likely, convertibles are valued like stock. Conversely, if stock prices are low so that conversion is unlikely, convertibles are valued like bonds.

Bills, certificates of deposit, and commercial paper are respectively issued by governments, banks, and corporations. They usually mature within a year of being issued; certificates of deposit sometimes have longer initial maturities.

Repurchase agreements (repos) are short-term lending instruments. The term can be as short as overnight. A borrower seeking funds will sell an instrument—typically a high quality bond—to a lender with an agreement to repurchase it later at a slightly higher price based on an agreed upon interest rate.

Practitioners distinguish between short-term, intermediate-term, and long-term fixed-income securities. No general consensus exists about the definition of short-term, intermediate-term, and long-term. Instruments that mature in less than one to two years are considered short-term instruments whereas those that mature in more than five to ten years are considered long-term instruments. In the middle are intermediate-term instruments.

Instruments trading in money markets are called money market instruments. Such instruments are traded debt instruments maturing in one year or less. Money market funds and corporations seeking a return on their short-term cash balances typically hold money market instruments.

3.2.2 *Equities*

Equities represent ownership rights in companies. These include common and preferred shares. Common shareholders own residual rights to the assets of the company. They have the right to receive any dividends declared by the boards of directors, and in the event of liquidation, any assets remaining after all other claims are paid. Acting through the boards of directors that they elect, common shareholders usually can select the managers who run the corporations.

Preferred shares are equities that have preferred rights (relative to common shares) to the cash flows and assets of the company. Preferred shareholders generally have the right to receive a specific dividend on a regular basis. If the preferred share is a cumulative preferred equity, the company must pay the preferred shareholders any previously omitted dividends before it can pay dividends to the common shareholders.

Preferred shareholders also have higher claims to assets relative to common shareholders in the event of corporate liquidation. For valuation purposes, financial analysts generally treat preferred stocks as fixed-income securities when the issuers will clearly be able to pay their promised dividends in the foreseeable future.

Warrants are securities issued by a corporation that allow the warrant holders to buy a security issued by that corporation, if they so desire, usually at any time before the warrants expire or, if not, upon expiration. The security that warrant holders can buy usually is the issuer's common stock, in which case the warrants are considered equities because the warrant holders can obtain equity in the company by exercising their warrants. The warrant **exercise price** is the price that the warrant holder must pay to buy the security.

EXAMPLE 6

Securities

What factors distinguish fixed-income securities from equities?

Solution:

Fixed-income securities generate income on a regular schedule. They derive their value from the promise to pay a scheduled cash flow. The most common fixed-income securities are promises made by people, companies, and governments to repay loans.

Equities represent residual ownership in companies after all other claims—including any fixed-income liabilities of the company—have been satisfied. For corporations, the claims of preferred equities typically have priority over the claims of common equities. Common equities have the residual ownership in corporations.

3.2.3 Pooled Investments

Pooled investment vehicles are mutual funds, trusts, depositories, and hedge funds, that issue securities that represent shared ownership in the assets that these entities hold. The securities created by mutual funds, trusts, depositories, and hedge fund are respectively called *shares*, *units*, *depository receipts*, and *limited partnership interests* but practitioners often use these terms interchangeably. People invest in pooled investment vehicles to benefit from the investment management services of their managers and from diversification opportunities that are not readily available to them on an individual basis.

Mutual funds are investment vehicles that pool money from many investors for investment in a portfolio of securities. They are often legally organized as investment trusts or as corporate investment companies. Pooled investment vehicles may be open-ended or closed-ended. Open-ended funds issue new shares and redeem existing shares on demand, usually on a daily basis. The price at which a fund redeems and sells the fund's shares is based on the net asset value of the fund's portfolio, which is the difference between the fund's assets and liabilities, expressed on a per share basis. Investors generally buy and sell open-ended mutual funds by trading with the mutual fund.

In contrast, closed-end funds issue shares in primary market offerings that the fund or its investment bankers arrange. Once issued, investors cannot sell their shares of the fund back to the fund by demanding redemption. Instead, investors in closed-end funds must sell their shares to other investors in the secondary market. The secondary market prices of closed-end funds may differ—sometimes quite significantly—from their net asset values. Closed-end funds generally trade at a discount to their net asset

values. The discount reflects the expenses of running the fund and sometimes investor concerns about the quality of the management. Closed-end funds may also trade at a discount or a premium to net asset value when investors believe that the portfolio securities are overvalued or undervalued. Many financial analysts thus believe that discounts and premiums on closed-end funds measure market sentiment.

Exchange-traded funds (ETFs) and exchange-traded notes (ETNs) are open-ended funds that investors can trade among themselves in secondary markets. The prices at which ETFs trade rarely differ much from net asset values because a class of investors, known as authorized participants (APs), has the option of trading directly with the ETF. If the market price of an equity ETF is sufficiently below its net asset value, APs will buy shares in the secondary market at market price and redeem shares at net asset value with the fund. Conversely, if the price of an ETF is sufficiently above its net asset value, APs will buy shares from the fund at net asset value and sell shares in the secondary market at market price. As a result, the market price and net asset values of ETFs tend to converge.

Many ETFs permit only in-kind deposits and redemptions. Buyers who buy directly from such a fund pay for their shares with a portfolio of securities rather than with cash. Similarly, sellers receive a portfolio of securities. The transaction portfolio generally is very similar—often essentially identical—to the portfolio held by the fund. Practitioners sometimes call such funds “depositories” because they issue depository receipts for the portfolios that traders deposit with them. The traders then trade the receipts in the secondary market. Some warehouses holding industrial materials and precious metals also issue tradable warehouse receipts.

Asset-backed securities are securities whose values and income payments are derived from a pool of assets, such as mortgage bonds, credit card debt, or car loans. These securities typically pass interest and principal payments received from the pool of assets through to their holders on a monthly basis. These payments may depend on formulas that give some classes of securities—called tranches—backed by the pool more value than other classes.

Hedge funds are investment funds that generally organize as limited partnerships. The hedge fund managers are the general partners. The limited partners are qualified investors who are wealthy enough and well informed enough to tolerate and accept substantial losses, should they occur. The regulatory requirements to participate in a hedge fund and the regulatory restrictions on hedge funds vary by jurisdiction. Most hedge funds follow only one investment strategy, but no single investment strategy characterizes hedge funds as a group. Hedge funds exist that follow almost every imaginable strategy ranging from long–short arbitrage in the stock markets to direct investments in exotic alternative assets.

The primary distinguishing characteristic of hedge funds is their management compensation scheme. Almost all funds pay their managers with an annual fee that is proportional to their assets and with an additional performance fee that depends on the wealth that the funds generate for their shareholders. A secondary distinguishing characteristic of many hedge funds is the use of leverage to increase risk exposure and to hopefully increase returns.

3.3 Currencies

Currencies are monies issued by national monetary authorities. Approximately 175 currencies are currently in use throughout the world. Some of these currencies are regarded as reserve currencies. Reserve currencies are currencies that national central banks and other monetary authorities hold in significant quantities. The primary reserve currencies are the US dollar and the euro. Secondary reserve currencies include the British pound, the Japanese yen, and the Swiss franc.

Currencies trade in foreign exchange markets. In spot currency transactions, one currency is immediately or almost immediately exchanged for another. The rate of exchange is called the spot exchange rate. Traders typically negotiate institutional trades in multiples of large quantities, such as US\$1 million or ¥100 million. Institutional trades generally settle in two business days.

Retail currency trades most commonly take place through commercial banks when their customers exchange currencies at a location of the bank, use ATM machines when travelling to withdraw a different currency than the currency in which their bank accounts are denominated, or use credit cards to buy items priced in different currencies. Retail currency trades also take place at airport kiosks, at store front currency exchanges, or on the street.

3.4 Contracts

A contract is an agreement among traders to do something in the future. Contracts include forward, futures, swap, option, and insurance contracts. The values of most contracts depend on the value of an **underlying** asset. The underlying asset may be a commodity, a security, an index representing the values of other instruments, a currency pair or basket, or other contracts.

Contracts provide for some physical or cash settlement in the future. In a physically settled contract, settlement occurs when the parties to the contract physically exchange some item, such as tomatoes, pork bellies, or gold bars. Physical settlement also includes the delivery of such financial instruments as bonds, equities, or futures contracts even though the delivery is electronic. In contrast, cash settled contracts settle through cash payments. The amount of the payment depends on formulas specified in the contracts.

Financial analysts classify contracts by whether they are physical or financial based on the nature of the underlying asset. If the underlying asset is a physical product, the contract is a physical; otherwise, the contract is a financial. Examples of assets classified as physical include contracts for the delivery of petroleum, lumber, and gold. Examples of assets classified as financial include option contracts, and contracts on interest rates, stock indexes, currencies, and credit default swaps.

Contracts that call for immediate delivery are called spot contracts, and they trade in spot markets. Immediate delivery generally is three days or less, but depends on each market. All other contracts involve what practitioners call futurity. They derive their values from events that will take place in the future.

EXAMPLE 7

Contracts for Difference

Contracts for difference (CFD) allow people to speculate on price changes for an underlying asset, such as a common stock or an index. Dealers generally sell CFDs to their clients. When the clients sell the CFDs back to their dealer, they receive any appreciation in the underlying asset's price between the time of purchase and sale (open and close) of the contract. If the underlying asset's price drops over this interval, the client pays the dealer the difference.

- 1 Are contracts for difference derivative contracts?
- 2 Are contracts for difference based on copper prices cash settled or physically settled?

Solution to 1:

Contracts for difference are derivative contracts because their values are derived from changes in the prices of the underlying asset on which they are based.

Solution to 2:

All contracts for difference are cash settled contracts regardless of the underlying asset on which they are based because they settle in cash and not in the underlying asset.

3.4.1 Forward Contracts

A **forward contract** is an agreement to trade the underlying asset in the future at a price agreed upon today. For example, a contract for the sale of wheat after the harvest is a forward contract. People often use forward contracts to reduce risk. Before planting wheat, farmers like to know the price at which they will sell their crop. Similarly, before committing to sell flour to bakers in the future, millers like to know the prices that they will pay for wheat. The farmer and the miller both reduce their operating risks by agreeing to trade wheat forward.

Practitioners call such traders hedgers because they use their contractual commitments to hedge their risks. If the price of wheat falls, the wheat farmer's crop will drop in value on the spot market but he has a contract to sell wheat in the future at a higher fixed price. The forward contract has become more valuable to the farmer. Conversely, if the price of wheat rises, the miller's future obligation to sell flour will become more burdensome because of the high price he would have to pay for wheat on the spot market, but the miller has a contract to buy wheat at a lower fixed price. The forward contract has become more valuable to the miller. In both cases, fluctuations in the spot price are hedged by the forward contract. The forward contract offsets the operating risks that the hedgers face.

Consider a simple example of hedging. A tomato farmer in southern Ontario, Canada, grows tomatoes for processing into tomato sauce. The farmer expects to harvest 250,000 bushels and that the price at harvest will be \$1.03. That price, however, could fluctuate significantly before the harvest. If the price of tomatoes drops to \$0.75, the farmer would lose \$0.28 per bushel ($\$1.03 - \0.75) relative to his expectations, or a total of \$70,000. Now, suppose that the farmer can sell tomatoes forward to Heinz at \$1.01 for delivery at the harvest. If the farmer sells 250,000 bushels forward, and the price of tomatoes drops to \$0.75, the farmer would still be able to sell his tomatoes for \$1.01, and thus would not suffer from the drop in price of tomatoes.

EXAMPLE 8**Hedging Gold Production**

An Indonesian gold producer invests in a mine expansion project on the expectation that gold prices will remain at or above 35,000 rupiah per gram when the new project starts producing ore.

- 1 What risks does the gold producer face with respect to the price of gold?
- 2 How might the gold producer hedge its gold price risk?

Solution to 1:

The gold producer faces the risk that the price of gold could fall below 35,000 rupiah before it can sell its new production. If so, the investment in the expansion project will be less profitable than expected, and may even generate losses for the mine.

Solution to 2:

The gold producer could hedge the gold price risk by selling gold forward, hopefully at a price near 35,000 rupiah. Even if the price of gold falls, the gold producer would get paid the contract price.

Forward contracts are very common, but two problems limit their usefulness for many market participants. The first problem is counterparty risk. **Counterparty risk** is the risk that the other party to a contract will fail to honor the terms of the contract. Concerns about counterparty risk ensure that generally only parties who have long-standing relationships with each other execute forward contracts. Trustworthiness is critical when prices are volatile because, after a large price change, one side or the other may prefer not to settle the contract.

The second problem is liquidity. Trading out of a forward contract is very difficult because it can only be done with the consent of the other party. The liquidity problem ensures that forward contracts tend to be executed only among participants for whom delivery is economically efficient and quite certain at the time of contracting so that both parties will want to arrange for delivery.

The counterparty risk problem and the liquidity problem often make it difficult for market participants to obtain the hedging benefits associated with forward contracting. Fortunately, futures contracts have been developed to mitigate these problems.

3.4.2 Futures Contracts

A **futures contract** is a standardized forward contract for which a clearinghouse guarantees the performance of all traders. The buyer of a futures contract is the side that will take physical delivery or its cash equivalent. The seller of a futures contract is the side that is liable for the delivery or its cash equivalent. A **clearinghouse** is an organization that ensures that no trader is harmed if another trader fails to honor the contract. In effect, the clearinghouse acts as the buyer for every seller and as the seller for every buyer. Buyers and sellers, therefore, can trade futures without worrying whether their counterparties are creditworthy. Because futures contracts are standardized, a buyer can eliminate his obligation to buy by selling his contract to anyone. A seller similarly can eliminate her obligation to deliver by buying a contract from anyone. In either case, the clearinghouse will release the trader from all future obligations if his or her long and short positions exactly offset each other.

To protect against defaults, futures clearinghouses require that all participants post with the clearinghouse an amount of money known as **initial margin** when they enter a contract. The clearinghouse then settles the margin accounts on a daily basis. All participants who have lost on their contracts that day will have the amount of their losses deducted from their margin by the clearinghouse. The clearinghouse similarly increases margins for all participants who gained on that day. Participants whose margins drop below the required **maintenance margin** must replenish their accounts. If a participant does not provide sufficient additional margin when required, the participant's broker will immediately trade to offset the participant's position. These **variation margin** payments ensure that the liabilities associated with futures contracts do not grow large.

EXAMPLE 9**Futures Margin**

NYMEX's Light Sweet Crude Oil futures contract specifies the delivery of 1,000 barrels of West Texas Intermediate Crude Oil when the contract finally settles. A broker requires that its clients post an initial overnight margin of \$7,763 per contract and an overnight maintenance margin of \$5,750 per contract. A client buys ten contracts at \$75 per barrel through this broker. On the next day, the contract settles for \$72 per barrel. How much additional margin will the client have to provide to his broker?

Solution:

The client lost three dollars per barrel (he is the side committed to take delivery or its cash equivalent at \$75 per barrel). This results in a \$3,000 loss on each of his 10 contracts, and a total loss of \$30,000. His initial margin of \$77,630 is reduced by \$30,000 leaving \$47,630 in his margin account. Because his account has dropped below the maintenance margin requirement of \$57,500, the client will get a margin call. The client must provide an additional $\$30,000 = \$77,630 - \$47,630$ to replenish his margin account; the account is replenished to the amount of the initial margin. The client will only receive another margin call if his account drops to below \$57,500 again.

Futures contracts have vastly improved the efficiency of forward contracting markets. Traders can trade standardized futures contracts with anyone without worrying about counterparty risk, and they can close their positions by arranging offsetting trades. Hedgers for whom the terms of the standard contract are not ideal generally still use the futures markets because the contracts embody most of the price risk that concerns them. They simply offset (close out) their futures positions, at the same time they enter spot contracts on which they make or take ultimate delivery.

EXAMPLE 10**Forward and Futures Contracts**

What feature most distinguishes futures contracts from forward contracts?

Solution:

A futures contract is a standardized forward contract for which a clearinghouse guarantees the performance of all buyers and sellers. The clearinghouse reduces the counterparty risk problem. The clearinghouse allows a buyer who has bought a contract from one person and sold the same contract to another person to net out the two obligations so that she is no longer liable for either side of the contract; the positions are closed. The ability to trade futures contracts provides liquidity in futures contracts compared with forward contracts.

3.4.3 Swap Contracts

A **swap contract** is an agreement to exchange payments of periodic cash flows that depend on future asset prices or interest rates. For example, in a typical **interest rate swap**, at periodic intervals, one party makes fixed cash payments to the counterparty in exchange for variable cash payments from the counterparty. The variable payments are based on a pre-specified variable interest rate such as the London Interbank Offered

Rate (Libor). This swap effectively exchanges fixed interest payments for variable interest payments. Because the variable rate is set in the future, the cash flows for this contract are uncertain when the parties enter the contract.

Investment managers often enter interest rate swaps when they own a fixed long-term income stream that they want to convert to a cash flow that varies with current short-term interest rates, or vice versa. The conversion may allow them to substantially reduce the total interest rate risk to which they are exposed. Hedgers often use swap contracts to manage risks.

In a **commodity swap**, one party typically makes fixed payments in exchange for payments that depend on future prices of a commodity such as oil. In a **currency swap**, the parties exchange payments denominated in different currencies. The payments may be fixed, or they may vary depending on future interest rates in the two countries. In an **equity swap**, the parties exchange fixed cash payments for payments that depend on the returns to a stock or a stock index.

EXAMPLE 11

Swap and Forward Contracts

What feature most distinguishes a swap contract from a cash-settled forward contract?

Solution:

Both contracts provide for the exchange of cash payments in the future. A forward contract only has a single cash payment at the end that depends on an underlying price or index at the end. In contrast, a swap contract has several scheduled periodic payments, each of which depends on an underlying price or index at the time of the payment.

3.4.4 Option Contracts

An **option contract** allows the holder (the purchaser) of the **option** to buy or sell, depending on the type of option, an underlying instrument at a specified price at or before a specified date in the future. Those that do buy or sell are said to **exercise** their contracts. An option to buy is a **call option**, and an option to sell is a **put option**. The specified price is called the strike price (exercise price). If the holders can exercise their contracts only when they mature, they are **European-style** contracts. If they can exercise the contracts earlier, they are **American-style** contracts. Many exchanges list standardized option contracts on individual stocks, stock indexes, futures contracts, currencies, swaps, and precious metals. Institutions also trade many customized option contracts with dealers in the over-the-counter derivative market.

Option holders generally will exercise call options if the strike price is below the market price of the underlying instrument, in which case, they will be able to buy at a lower price than the market price. Similarly, they will exercise put options if the strike price is above the underlying instrument price so that they sell at a higher price than the market price. Otherwise, option holders allow their options to expire as worthless.

The price that traders pay for an option is the option premium. Options can be quite expensive because, unlike forward and futures contracts, they do not impose any liability on the holder. The premium compensates the sellers of options—called option writers—for giving the call option holders the right to potentially buy below market prices and put option holders the right to potentially sell above market prices. Because the writers must trade if the holders exercise their options, option contracts may impose substantial liabilities on the writers.

EXAMPLE 12**Option and Forward Contracts**

What feature most distinguishes option contracts from forward contracts?

Solution:

The holder of an option contract has the right, but not the obligation, to buy (for a call option) or sell (for a put option) the underlying instrument at some time in the future. The writer of an option contract must trade the underlying instrument if the holder exercises the option.

In contrast, the two parties to a forward contract must trade the underlying instrument (or its equivalent value for a cash-settled contract) at some time in the future if either party wants to settle the contract.

3.4.5 Other Contracts

Insurance contracts pay their beneficiaries a cash benefit if some event occurs. Life, liability, and automobile insurance are examples of insurance contracts sold to retail clients. People generally use insurance contracts to compensate for losses that they will experience if bad things happen unexpectedly. Insurance contracts allow them to hedge risks that they face.

Credit default swaps (CDS) are insurance contracts that promise payment of principal in the event that a company defaults on its bonds. Bondholders use credit default swaps to convert risky bonds into more secure investments. Other creditors of the company may also buy them to hedge against the risk they will not be paid if the company goes bankrupt.

Well-informed traders who believe that a corporation will default on its bonds may buy credit default swaps written on the corporation's bonds if the swap prices are sufficiently low. If they are correct, the traders will profit if the payoff to the swap is more than the cost of buying and maintaining the swap position.

People sometimes also buy insurance contracts as investments, especially in jurisdictions where payouts from insurance contracts are not subject to as much taxation as are payouts to other investment vehicles. They may buy these contracts directly from insurance companies, or they may buy already issued contracts from their owners. For example, the life settlements market trades life insurance contracts that people sell to investors when they need cash.

3.5 Commodities

Commodities include precious metals, energy products, industrial metals, agricultural products, and carbon credits. Spot commodity markets trade commodities for immediate delivery whereas the forward and futures markets trade commodities for future delivery. Managers seeking positions in commodities can acquire them directly by trading in the spot markets or indirectly by trading forward and futures contracts.

The producers and processors of industrial metals and agricultural products are the primary users of the spot commodity markets because they generally are best able to take and make delivery and to store physical products. They undertake these activities in the normal course of operating their businesses. Their ability to handle physical products and the information that they gather operating businesses also gives them substantial advantages as information-motivated traders in these markets. Many producers employ financial analysts to help them analyze commodity market conditions so that they can best manage their inventories to hedge their operational risks and to speculate on future price changes.

Commodities also interest information-motivated traders and investment managers because they can use them as hedges against risks that they hold in their portfolios or as vehicles to speculate on future price changes. Most such traders take positions in the futures markets because they usually do not have facilities to handle most physical products nor can they easily obtain them. They also cannot easily cope with the normal variation in qualities that characterizes many commodities. Information-motivated traders and investment managers also prefer to trade in futures markets because most futures markets are more liquid than their associated spot markets and forward markets. The liquidity allows them to easily close their positions before delivery so that they can avoid handling physical products.

Some information-motivated traders and investment managers, however, trade in the spot commodity markets, especially when they can easily contract for low-cost storage. Commodities for which delivery and storage costs are lowest are nonperishable products for which the ratio of value to weight is high and variation in quality is low. These generally include precious metals, industrial diamonds, such high-value industrial metals as copper, aluminum, and mercury, and carbon credits.

3.6 Real Assets

Real assets include such tangible properties as real estate, airplanes, machinery, or lumber stands. These assets normally are held by operating companies, such as real estate developers, airplane leasing companies, manufacturers, or loggers. Many institutional investment managers, however, have been adding real assets to their portfolios as direct investments (involving direct ownership of the real assets) and indirect investments (involving indirect ownership, for example, purchase of securities of companies that invest in real assets or real estate investment trusts). Investments in real assets are attractive to them because of the income and tax benefits that they often generate, and because changes in their values may have a low correlation with other investments that the managers hold.

Direct investments in real assets generally require substantial management to ensure that the assets are maintained and used efficiently. Investment managers investing in such assets must either hire personnel to manage them or hire outside management companies. Either way, management of real assets is quite costly.

Real assets are unique properties in the sense that no two assets are alike. An example of a unique property is a real estate parcel. No two parcels are the same because, if nothing else, they are located in different places. Real assets generally differ in their conditions, remaining useful lives, locations, and suitability for various purposes. These differences are very important to the people who use them, so the market for a given real asset may be very limited. Thus, real assets tend to trade in very illiquid markets.

The heterogeneity of real assets, their illiquidity, and the substantial costs of managing them are all factors that complicate the valuation of real assets and generally make them unsuitable for most investment portfolios. These same problems, however, often cause real assets to be misvalued in the market, so astute information-motivated traders may occasionally identify significantly undervalued assets. The benefits from purchasing such assets, however, are often offset by the substantial costs of searching for them and by the substantial costs of managing them.

Many financial intermediaries create entities, such as real estate investment trusts (REITs) and master limited partnerships (MLPs), to securitize real assets and to facilitate indirect investment in real assets. The financial intermediaries manage the assets and pass through the net benefits after management costs to the investors who hold these securities. Because these securities are much more homogenous and divisible than the real assets that they represent, they tend to trade in much more liquid markets. Thus, they are much more suitable as investments than the real assets themselves.

Of course, investors seeking exposure to real assets can also buy shares in corporations that hold and operate real assets. Although almost all corporations hold and operate real assets, many specialize in assets that particularly interest investors seeking exposure to specific real asset classes. For example, investors interested in owning aircraft can buy an aircraft leasing company such as Waha Capital (Abu Dhabi Securities Exchange) and Aircastle Limited (NYSE).

EXAMPLE 13**Assets and Contracts**

Consider the following assets and contracts:

Bank deposits	Hedge funds
Certificates of deposit	Master limited partnership interests
Common stocks	Mortgages
Corporate bonds	Mutual funds
Currencies	Stock option contracts
Exchange-traded funds	Preferred stocks
Lumber forward contracts	Real estate parcels
Crude oil futures contracts	Interest rate swaps
Gold	Treasury notes

- 1 Which of these represent ownership in corporations?
- 2 Which of these are debt instruments?
- 3 Which of these are created by traders rather than by issuers?
- 4 Which of these are pooled investment vehicles?
- 5 Which of these are real assets?
- 6 Which of these would a home builder most likely use to hedge construction costs?
- 7 Which of these would a corporation trade when moving cash balances among various countries?

Solution to 1:

Common and preferred stocks represent ownership in corporations.

Solution to 2:

Bank deposits, certificates of deposit, corporate bonds, mortgages, and Treasury notes are all debt instruments. They respectively represent loans made to banks, corporations, mortgagees (typically real estate owners), and the Treasury.

Solution to 3:

Lumber forward contracts, crude oil futures contracts, stock option contracts, and interest rate swaps are created when the seller sells them to a buyer.

Solution to 4:

Exchange-traded funds, hedge funds, and mutual funds are pooled investment vehicles. They represent shared ownership in a portfolio of other assets.

Solution to 5:

Real estate parcels are real assets.

Solution to 6:

A builder would buy lumber forward contracts to lock in the price of lumber needed to build homes.

Solution to 7:

Corporations often trade currencies when moving cash from one country to another.

4**FINANCIAL INTERMEDIARIES**

Financial intermediaries help entities achieve their financial goals. These intermediaries include commercial, mortgage, and investment banks; credit unions, credit card companies, and various other finance corporations; brokers and exchanges; dealers and arbitrageurs; clearinghouses and depositories; mutual funds and hedge funds; and insurance companies. The services and products that financial intermediaries provide allow their clients to solve the financial problems that they face more efficiently than they could do so by themselves. Financial intermediaries are essential to well-functioning financial systems.

Financial intermediaries are called intermediaries because the services and products that they provide help connect buyers to sellers in various ways. Whether the connections are easy to identify or involve complex financial structures, financial intermediaries stand between one or more buyers and one or more sellers and help them transfer capital and risk between them. Financial intermediaries' activities allow buyers and sellers to benefit from trading, often without any knowledge of the other.

This section introduces the main financial intermediaries that provide services and products in well-developed financial markets. The discussion starts with those intermediaries whose services most obviously connect buyers to sellers and then proceeds to those intermediaries whose services create more subtle connections. Because many financial intermediaries provide many different types of services, some are mentioned more than once. The section concludes with a general characterization of the various ways in which financial intermediaries add value to the financial system.

4.1 Brokers, Exchanges, and Alternative Trading Systems

Brokers are agents who fill orders for their clients. They do not trade with their clients. Instead, they search for traders who are willing to take the other side of their clients' orders. Individual brokers may work for large brokerage firms, the brokerage arm of banks, or at exchanges. Some brokers match clients to clients personally. Others use specialized computer systems to identify potential trades and help their clients fill their orders. Brokers help their clients trade by reducing the costs of finding counterparties for their trades.

Block brokers provide brokerage service to large traders. Large orders are hard to fill because finding a counterparty willing to do a large trade is often quite difficult. A large buy order generally will trade at a premium to the current market price, and a large sell order generally will trade at a discount to the current market price. These price concessions encourage other traders to trade with the large traders. They also make large traders reluctant, however, to expose their orders to the public before their trades are arranged because they do not want to move the market. Block brokers, therefore, carefully manage the exposure of the orders entrusted to them, which makes filling them difficult.

Investment banks provide advice to their mostly corporate clients and help them arrange transactions such as initial and seasoned securities offerings. Their corporate finance divisions help corporations finance their business by issuing securities, such as common and preferred shares, notes, and bonds. Another function of corporate finance divisions is to help companies identify and acquire other companies (i.e., in mergers and acquisitions).

Exchanges provide places where traders can meet to arrange their trades. Historically, brokers and dealers met on an exchange floor to negotiate trades. Increasingly, exchanges arrange trades for traders based on orders that brokers and dealers submit to them. Such exchanges essentially act as brokers. The distinction between exchanges and brokers has become quite blurred. Exchanges and brokers that use electronic order matching systems to arrange trades among their clients are functionally indistinguishable in this respect. Examples of exchanges include the NYSE-Euronext, Eurex, Deutsche Börse, the Chicago Mercantile Exchange, the Tokyo Stock Exchange, and the Singapore Exchange.

Exchanges are easily distinguished from brokers by their regulatory operations. Most exchanges regulate their members' behavior when trading on the exchange, and sometimes away from the exchange.

Many securities exchanges regulate the issuers that list their securities on the exchange. These regulations generally require timely financial disclosure. Financial analysts use this information to value the securities traded at the exchange. Without such disclosure, valuing securities could be very difficult and market prices might not reflect the fundamental values of the securities. In such situations, well-informed participants may profit from less-informed participants. To avoid such losses, the less-informed participants may withdraw from the market, which can greatly increase corporate costs of capital.

Some exchanges also prohibit issuers from creating capital structures that would concentrate voting rights in the hands of a few owners who do not own a commensurate share of the equity. These regulations attempt to ensure that corporations are run for the benefit of all shareholders and not to promote the interests of controlling shareholders who do not have significant economic stakes in the company.

Exchanges derive their regulatory authority from their national or regional governments, or through the voluntary agreements of their members and issuers to subject themselves to the exchange regulations. In most countries, government regulators oversee the exchange rules and the regulatory operations. Most countries also impose financial disclosure standards on public issuers. Examples of government regulatory bodies include the Japanese Financial Services Agency, the British Financial Services Authority, the German Bundesanstalt für Finanzdienstleistungsaufsicht, the US Securities and Exchange Commission, the Ontario Securities Commission, and the Mexican Comisión Nacional Bancaria y de Valores.

Alternative trading systems (ATSs), also known as **electronic communications networks** (ECNs) or **multilateral trading facilities** (MTFs) are trading venues that function like exchanges but that do not exercise regulatory authority over their subscribers except with respect to the conduct of their trading in their trading systems. Some ATSs operate electronic trading systems that are otherwise indistinguishable from the trading systems operated by exchanges. Others operate innovative trading systems that suggest trades to their customers based on information that their customers share with them or that they obtain through research into their customers' preferences. Many ATSs are known as **dark pools** because they do not display the orders that their clients send to them. Large investment managers especially like these systems because market prices often move to their disadvantage when other traders know about their large orders. ATSs may be owned and operated by broker-dealers, exchanges, banks, or by companies organized solely for this purpose, many of which may be owned by a consortia of brokers-dealers and banks. Examples of ATSs include

PureTrading (Canada), the Order Machine (Netherlands), Chi-X Europe, BATS (United States), POSIT (United States), Liquidnet (United States), Baxter-FX (Ireland), and Turquoise (Europe). Many of these ATSs provide services in many markets besides the ones in which they are domiciled.

4.2 Dealers

Dealers fill their clients' orders by trading with them. When their clients want to sell securities or contracts, dealers buy the instruments for their own accounts. If their clients want to buy securities, dealers sell securities that they own or have borrowed. After completing a transaction, dealers hope to reverse the transaction by trading with another client on the other side of the market. When they are successful, they effectively connect a buyer who arrived at one point in time with a seller who arrived at another point in time.

The service that dealers provide is liquidity. **Liquidity** is the ability to buy or sell with low transactions costs when you want to trade. By allowing their clients to trade when they want to trade, dealers provide liquidity to them. In over-the-counter markets, dealers offer liquidity when their clients ask them to trade with them. In exchange markets, dealers offer liquidity to anyone who is willing to trade at the prices that the dealers offer at the exchange. Dealers profit when they can buy at prices that on average are lower than the prices at which they sell.

Dealers may organize their operations within proprietary trading houses, investment banks, and hedge funds, or as sole proprietorships. Some dealers are traditional dealers in the sense that individuals make trading decisions. Others use computerized trading to make all trading decisions. Examples of companies with large dealing operations include Deutsche Securities (Germany), RBC Capital Markets (Canada), Nomura (Japan), Timber Hill (United States), Knight Securities (United States), Goldman Sachs (United States), and IG Group plc (United Kingdom). Almost all investment banks have large dealing operations.

Most dealers also broker orders, and many brokers deal to their customers. Accordingly, practitioners often use the term **broker-dealer** to refer to dealers and brokers. Broker-dealers have a conflict of interest with respect to how they fill their customers' orders. When acting as a broker, they must seek the best price for their customers' orders. When acting as dealers, however, they profit most when they sell to their customers at high prices or buy from their customers at low prices. The problem is most serious when the customer allows the broker-dealer to decide whether to trade the order with another trader or to fill it as a dealer. Consequently, when trading with a broker-dealer, some customers specify how they want their orders filled. They may also trade only with pure agency brokers who do not also deal.

Primary dealers are dealers with whom central banks trade when conducting monetary policy. They buy bills, notes, and bonds when the central banks sell them to decrease the money supply. The dealers then sell these instruments to their clients. Similarly, when the central banks want to increase the money supply, the primary dealers buy these instruments from their clients and sell them to the central banks.

EXAMPLE 14

Brokers and Dealers

What characteristic *most likely* distinguishes brokers from dealers?

Solution:

Brokers are agents that arrange trades on behalf of their clients. They do not trade with their clients. In contrast, dealers are proprietary traders who trade with their clients.

4.3 Securitizers

Banks and investment companies create new financial products when they buy and repackage securities or other assets. For example, mortgage banks commonly originate hundreds or thousands of residential mortgages by lending money to homeowners. They then place the mortgages in a pool and sell shares of the pool to investors as mortgage pass-through securities, which are also known as mortgage-backed securities. All payments of principal and interest are passed through to the investors each month, after deducting the costs of servicing the mortgages. Investors who purchase these pass-through securities obtain securities that in aggregate have the same net cash flows and associated risks as the pool of mortgages.

The process of buying assets, placing them in a pool, and then selling securities that represent ownership of the pool is called securitization.

Mortgage-backed securities have the advantage that default losses and early repayments are much more predictable for a diversified portfolio of mortgages than they are for individual mortgages. They are also attractive to investors who cannot efficiently service mortgages but wish to invest in mortgages. By securitizing mortgage pools, the mortgage banks allow investors who are not large enough to buy hundreds of mortgages to obtain the benefits of diversification and economies of scale in loan servicing.

Securitization greatly improves liquidity in the mortgage markets because it allows investors in the pass-through securities to buy mortgages indirectly that they otherwise would not buy. Because the financial risks associated with mortgage-backed securities (debt securities with specified claims on the cash flows of a portfolio of mortgages) are much more predictable than those of individual mortgages, mortgage-backed securities are easier to price and thus easier to sell when investors need to raise cash. These characteristics make the market for mortgage-backed securities much more liquid than the market for individual mortgages. Because investors value liquidity—the ability to sell when they want to—they will pay more for securitized mortgages than for individual mortgages. The homeowners benefit because higher mortgage prices imply lower interest rates.

The mortgage bank is a financial intermediary because it connects investors who want to buy mortgages to homeowners who want to borrow money. The homeowners sell mortgages to the bank when the bank lends them money.

Some mortgage banks form mortgage pools from mortgages that they buy from other banks that originate the loans. These mortgage banks are also financial intermediaries because they connect sellers of mortgages to buyers of mortgage-backed securities. Although the sellers of the mortgages are the originating lenders and not the borrowers, the benefits of creating liquid mortgage-backed securities ultimately flow back to the borrowers.

The creation of the pass-through securities generally takes place on the accounts of the mortgage bank. The bank buys mortgages and sells pass-through securities whose values depend on the mortgage pool. The mortgages appear on the bank's accounts as assets and the mortgage-backed securities appear as liabilities.

In many securitizations, the financial intermediary avoids placing the assets and liabilities on its balance sheet by setting up a special corporation or trust that buys the assets and issues the securities. That corporation or trust is called a **special purpose vehicle (SPV)** or alternatively a **special purpose entity (SPE)**. Conducting a

securitization through a special purpose vehicle is advantageous to investors because their interests in the asset pool are better protected in an SPV than they would be on the balance sheet of the financial intermediary if the financial intermediary were to go bankrupt.

Financial intermediaries securitize many assets. Besides mortgages, banks securitize car loans, credit card receivables, bank loans, and airplane leases, to name just a few assets. As a class, these securities are called asset-backed securities.

When financial intermediaries securitize assets, they often create several classes of securities, called tranches, that have different rights to the cash flows from the asset pool. The tranches are structured so that some produce more predictable cash flows than do others. The senior tranches have first rights to the cash flow from the asset pool. Because the overall risk of a given asset pool cannot be changed, the more junior tranches bear a disproportionate share of the risk of the pool. Practitioners often call the most junior tranche toxic waste because it is so risky. The complexity associated with slicing asset pools into tranches can make the resulting securities difficult to value. Mistakes in valuing these securities contributed to the financial crisis that started in 2007.

Investment companies also create pass-through securities based on investment pools. For example, an exchange-traded fund is an asset-backed security that represents ownership in the securities and contracts held by the fund. The shareholders benefit from the securitization because they can buy or sell an entire portfolio in a single transaction. Because the transaction cost savings are quite substantial, exchange-traded funds often trade in very liquid markets. The investment companies (and sometimes the arbitrageurs) that create exchange-traded funds are financial intermediaries because they connect the buyers of the funds to the sellers of the assets that make up the fund portfolios.

More generally, the creators of all pooled investment vehicles are financial intermediaries that transform portfolios of securities and contracts into securities that represent undivided ownership of the portfolios. The investors in these funds thus indirectly invest in the securities held by the fund. They benefit from the expertise of the investment manager and from obtaining a portfolio that may be more diversified than one they might otherwise be able to hold.

4.4 Depository Institutions and Other Financial Corporations

Depository institutions include commercial banks, savings and loan banks, credit unions, and similar institutions that raise funds from depositors and other investors and lend it to borrowers. The banks give their depositors interest and transaction services, such as check writing and check cashing, in exchange for using their money. They may also raise funds by selling bonds or equity in the bank.

These banks are financial intermediaries because they transfer funds from their depositors and investors to their borrowers. The depositors and investors benefit because they obtain a return (in interest, transaction services, dividends, or capital appreciation) on their funds without having to contract with the borrowers and manage their loans. The borrowers benefit because they obtain the funds that they need without having to search for investors who will trust them to repay their loans.

Many other financial corporations provide credit services. For example, acceptance corporations, discount corporations, payday advance corporations, and factors provide credit to borrowers by lending them money secured by such assets as consumer loans, machinery, future paychecks, or accounts receivables. They finance these loans by selling commercial paper, bonds, and shares to investors. These corporations are intermediaries because they connect investors to borrowers. The investors obtain investments secured by a diversified portfolio of loans while the borrowers obtain funds without having to search for investors.

Brokers also act as financial intermediaries when they lend funds to clients who want to buy securities on margin. They generally obtain the funds from other clients who deposit them in their accounts. Brokers who provide these services to hedge funds and other similar institutions are called prime brokers.

Banks, financial corporations, and brokers can only raise money from depositors and other lenders because their equity owners retain residual interests in the performance of the loans that they make. If the borrowers default, the depositors and other lenders have priority claims over the equity owners. If insufficient money is collected from the borrowers, shareholders' equity is used to pay their depositors and other lenders. The risk of losing capital focuses the equity owners' and management's attention so that credit is not offered foolishly.

Because the ability of these companies to cover their credit losses is limited by the capital that their owners invest in them, the depositors and other investors who lend them money pay close attention to how much money the owners have at risk. For example, if a finance corporation is poorly capitalized, its shareholders will lose little if its clients default on the loans that the finance corporation makes to them. In that case, the finance corporation will have little incentive to lend only to creditworthy borrowers and to effectively manage collection on those loans once they have been made. Worse, it may even choose to lend to borrowers with poor credit because the interest rates that they can charge such borrowers are higher. Until those loans default, the higher income will make the corporation appear to be more profitable than it actually is. Depositors and other investors are aware of these problems and generally pay close attention to them. Accordingly, poorly capitalized financial institutions cannot easily borrow money to finance their operations at favorable rates.

Depository banks and financial corporations are similar to securitized asset pools that issue pass-through securities. Their depositors and investors own securities that ultimately are backed by an asset pool consisting of their loan portfolios. The depositors generally hold the most senior tranche, followed by the other creditors. The shareholders hold the most junior tranche. In the event of bankruptcy, they are paid only if everyone else is paid.

EXAMPLE 15

Commercial Banks

What services do commercial banks provide that make them financial intermediaries?

Solution:

Commercial banks collect deposits from investors and lend them to borrowers. They are intermediaries because they connect lenders to borrowers. Commercial banks also provide transaction services that make it easier for the banks' depository customers to pay bills and collect funds from their own customers.

4.5 Insurance Companies

Insurance companies help people and companies offset risks that concern them. They do this by creating insurance contracts (policies) that provide a payment in the event that some loss occurs. The insured buy these contracts to hedge against potential losses. Common examples of insurance contracts include auto, fire, life, liability, medical, theft, and disaster insurance contracts.

Credit default swaps are also insurance contracts, but historically they have not been subject to the same reserve requirements that most governments apply to more traditional insurance contracts. They may be sold by insurance companies or by other financial entities, such as investment banks or hedge funds.

Insurance contracts transfer risk from those who buy the contracts to those who sell them. Although insurance companies occasionally broker trades between the insured and the insurer, they more commonly provide the insurance themselves. In that case, the insurance company's owners and creditors become the indirect insurers of the risks that the insurance company assumes. Insurance companies also often transfer risks that they do not wish to bear by buying reinsurance policies from reinsurers.

Insurers are financial intermediaries because they connect the buyers of their insurance contracts with investors, creditors, and reinsurers who are willing to bear the insured risks. The buyers benefit because they can easily obtain the risk transfers that they seek without searching for entities that would be willing to assume those risks.

The owners, creditors, and reinsurers of the insurance company benefit because the company allows them to sell their tolerance for risk easily without having to manage the insurance contracts. Instead, the company manages the relationships with the insured—primarily collections and claims—and hopefully controls the various problems—fraud, moral hazard, and adverse selection—that often plague insurance markets. Fraud occurs when people deliberately cause or falsely report losses to collect on insurance. Moral hazard occurs when people are less careful about avoiding insured losses than they would be if they were not insured so that losses occur more often than they would otherwise. Adverse selection occurs when only those who are most at risk buy insurance so that insured losses tend to be greater than average.

Everyone benefits because insurance companies hold large diversified portfolios of policies. Loss rates for well-diversified portfolios of insurance contracts are much more predictable than for single contracts. For such contracts as auto insurance in which losses are almost uncorrelated across policies, diversification ensures that the financial performance of a large portfolio of contracts will be quite predictable and so holding the portfolio will not be very risky. The insured benefit because they do not have to pay the insurers much to compensate them for bearing risk (the expected loss is quite predictable so the risk is relatively low). Instead, their insurance premiums primarily reflect the expected loss rate in the portfolio plus the costs of running and financing the company.

4.6 Arbitrageurs

Arbitrageurs trade when they can identify opportunities to buy and sell identical or essentially similar instruments at different prices in different markets. They profit when they can buy in one market for less than they sell in another market. Arbitrageurs are financial intermediaries because they connect buyers in one market to sellers in another market.

The purest form of arbitrage involves buying and selling the same instrument in two different markets. Arbitrageurs who do such trades sell to buyers in one market and buy from sellers in the other market. They provide liquidity to the markets because they make it easier for buyers and sellers to trade when and where they want to trade.

Because dealers and arbitrageurs both provide liquidity to other traders, they compete with each other. The dealers connect buyers and sellers who arrive in the same market at different times whereas the arbitrageurs connect buyers and sellers who arrive at the same time in different markets. In practice, traders who profit from offering liquidity rarely are purely dealers or purely arbitrageurs. Instead, most traders attempt to identify and exploit every opportunity they can to manage their inventories profitably.

If information about prices is readily available to market participants, pure arbitrages involving the same instrument will be quite rare. Traders who are well informed about market conditions usually route their orders to the market offering the best price so that arbitrageurs will have few opportunities to match traders across markets when they want to trade the exact same instrument.

Arbitrageurs often trade securities or contracts whose values depend on the same underlying factors. For example, dealers in equity option contracts often sell call options in the contract market and buy the underlying shares in the stock market. Because the values of the call options and of the underlying shares are closely correlated (the value of the call increases with the value of the shares), the long stock position hedges the risk in the short call position so that the dealer's net position is not too risky.

Similar to the pure arbitrage that involves the same instrument in different markets, these arbitrage trades connect buyers in one market to sellers in another market. In this case, however, the buyers and sellers are interested in different instruments whose values are closely related. In the example, the buyer is interested in buying a call options contract, the value of which is a nonlinear function of the value of the underlying stock; the seller is interested in selling the underlying stock.

Options dealers buy stock and sell calls when calls are overpriced relative to the underlying stocks. They use complicated financial models to value options in relation to underlying stock values, and they use financial engineering techniques to control the risk of their portfolios. Successful arbitrageurs must know valuation relations well and they must manage the risk in their portfolios well to trade profitably. They profit by buying the relatively undervalued instrument and selling the relatively overvalued instrument.

Buying a risk in one form and selling it another form involves a process called replication. Arbitrageurs use various trading strategies to replicate the returns to securities and contracts. If they can substantially replicate those returns, they can use the replication trading strategy to offset the risk of buying or selling the actual securities and contracts. The combined effect of their trading is to transform risk from one form to another. This process allows them to create or eliminate contracts in response to the excess demand for, and supply of, contracts.

For example, when traders want to buy more call contracts than are presently available, they push the call contract prices up so that calls become overvalued relative to the underlying stock. The arbitrageurs replicate calls by using a particular financial engineering strategy to buy the underlying stock, and then create the desired call option contracts by selling them short. In contrast, if more calls have been created than traders want to hold, call prices will fall so that calls become undervalued relative to the underlying stock. The arbitrageurs will trade stocks and contracts to absorb the excess contracts. Arbitrageurs who use these strategies are financial intermediaries because they connect buyers and sellers who want to trade the same underlying risks but in different forms.

EXAMPLE 16

Dealers and Arbitrageurs

With respect to providing liquidity to market participants, what characteristics most clearly distinguish dealers from arbitrageurs?

Solution:

Dealers provide liquidity to buyers and sellers who arrive at the same market at different times. They move liquidity through time. Arbitrageurs provide liquidity to buyers and sellers who arrive at different markets at the same time. They move liquidity across markets.

4.7 Settlement and Custodial Services

In addition to connecting buyers to sellers through a variety of direct and indirect means, financial intermediaries also help their customers settle their trades and ensure that the resulting positions are not stolen or pledged more than once as collateral.

Clearinghouses arrange for final settlement of trades. In futures markets, they guarantee contract performance. In other markets, they may act only as escrow agents, transferring money from the buyer to the seller while transferring securities from the seller to the buyer.

The members of a clearinghouse are the only traders for whom the clearinghouse will settle trades. To ensure that their members settle the trades that they present to the clearinghouse, clearinghouses require that their members have adequate capital and post-performance bonds (margins). Clearinghouses also limit the aggregate net (buy minus sell) quantities that their members can settle.

Brokers and dealers who are not members of the clearinghouse must arrange to have a clearinghouse member settle their trades. To ensure that the non-member brokers and dealers can settle their trades, clearinghouse members require that their customers (the non-member brokers and dealers) have adequate capital and post-margins. They also limit the aggregate net quantities that their customers can settle and they monitor their customers' trading to ensure that they do not arrange trades that they cannot settle.

Brokers and dealers similarly monitor the trades made by their retail and institutional customers, and regulate their customers to ensure that they do not arrange trades that they cannot settle.

This hierarchical system of responsibility generally ensures that traders settle their trades. The brokers and dealers guarantee settlement of the trades they arrange for their retail and institutional customers. The clearinghouse members guarantee settlement of the trades that their customers present to them, and clearinghouses guarantee settlement of all trades presented to them by their members. If a clearinghouse member fails to settle a trade, the clearinghouse settles the trade using its own capital or capital drafted from the other members.

Reliable settlement of all trades is extremely important to a well-functioning financial system because it allows strangers to confidently contract with each other without worrying too much about **counterparty risk**, the risk that their counterparties will not settle their trades. A secure clearinghouse system thus greatly increases liquidity because it greatly increases the number of counterparties with whom a trader can safely arrange a trade.

In many national markets, clearinghouses clear all securities trades so that traders can trade securities through any exchange, broker, alternative trading system, or dealer. These clearinghouse systems promote competition among these exchange service providers.

In contrast, most futures exchanges have their own clearinghouses. These clearinghouses usually will not accept trades arranged away from their exchanges so that a competing exchange cannot trade another exchange's contracts. Competing exchanges may create similar contracts, but moving traders from one established market to a new market is extraordinarily difficult because traders prefer to trade where other traders trade.

Depositories or custodians hold securities on behalf of their clients. These services, which are often offered by banks, help prevent the loss of securities through fraud, oversight, or natural disaster. Broker–dealers also often hold securities on behalf of their customers so that the customers do not have to hold the securities in certificate form. To avoid problems with lost certificates, securities increasingly are issued only in electronic form.

EXAMPLE 17**Financial Intermediaries**

As a relatively new member of the business community, you decide it would be advantageous to join the local lunch club to network with businessmen. Upon learning that you are a financial analyst, club members soon enlist you to give a lunch speech. During the question and answer session afterwards, a member of the audience asks, “I keep reading in the newspaper about the need to regulate ‘financial intermediaries,’ but really don’t understand exactly what they are. Can you tell me?” How do you answer?

Solution:

Financial intermediaries are companies that help their clients achieve their financial goals. They are called intermediaries because, in some way or another, they stand between two or more people who would like to trade with each other, but for various reasons find it difficult to do so directly. The intermediary arranges the trade for them, or more often, trades with both sides.

For example, a commercial bank is an intermediary that connects investors with money to borrowers who need money. The investors buy certificates of deposit from the bank, buy bonds or stock issued by the bank, or simply are depositors in the bank. The borrowers borrow this money from the bank when they arrange loans. Without the bank’s intermediation, the investors would have to find trustworthy borrowers themselves, which would be difficult, and the borrowers would have to find trusting lenders, which would also be difficult.

Similarly, an insurance company is an intermediary because it connects customers who want to insure risks with investors who are willing to bear those risks. The investors own shares or bonds issued by the insurance company, or they have sold reinsurance contracts to the insurance company. The insured benefit because they can more easily buy a policy from an insurance company than they can find counterparties who would be willing to bear their risks. The investors benefit because the insurance company creates a diversified portfolio of risks by selling insurance to thousands or millions of customers. Diversification ensures that the net risk borne by the insurance company and its investors will be predictable and thus financially manageable.

In both cases, the financial intermediary also manages the relationships with its customers and investors so that neither side has to worry about the credit-worthiness or trust-worthiness of its counterparties. For example, the bank manages credit quality and collections on its loans and the insurance company manages risk exposure and collections on its policies. These services benefit both sides by reducing the costs of connecting investors to borrowers or of insured to insurers.

These are only two examples of financial intermediation. Many others involve firms engaged in brokerage, dealing, arbitrage, securitization, investment management, and the clearing and settlement of trades. In all cases, the financial

intermediary stands between a buyer and a seller, offering them services that allow them to better achieve their financial goals in a cost effective and efficient manner.

4.8 Summary

By facilitating transactions among buyers and sellers, financial intermediaries provide services essential to a well-functioning financial system. They facilitate transactions the following ways:

- 1 Brokers, exchanges, and various alternative trading systems match buyers and sellers interested in trading the same instrument at the same place and time. These financial intermediaries specialize in discovering and organizing information about who wants to trade.
- 2 Dealers and arbitrageurs connect buyers to sellers interested in trading the same instrument but who are not present at the same place and time. Dealers connect buyers to sellers who are present at the same place but at different times whereas arbitrageurs connect buyers to sellers who are present at the same time but in different places. These financial intermediaries trade for their own accounts when providing these services. Dealers buy or sell with one client and hope to do the offsetting transaction later with another client. Arbitrageurs buy from a seller in one market while simultaneously selling to a buyer in another market.
- 3 Many financial intermediaries create new instruments that depend on the cash flows and associated financial risks of other instruments. The intermediaries provide these services when they securitize assets, manage investment funds, operate banks and other finance corporations that offer investments to investors and loans to borrowers, and operate insurance companies that pool risks. The instruments that they create generally are more attractive to their clients than the instruments on which they are based. The new instruments also may be differentiated to appeal to diverse clienteles. Their efforts connect buyers of one or more instruments to sellers of other instruments, all of which in aggregate provide the same cash flows and risk exposures. Financial intermediaries thus effectively arrange trades among traders who otherwise would not trade with each other.
- 4 Arbitrageurs who conduct arbitrage among securities and contracts whose values depend on common factors convert risk from one form to another. Their trading connects buyers and sellers who want to trade similar risks expressed in different forms.
- 5 Banks, clearinghouses, and depositories provide services that ensure traders settle their trades and that the resulting positions are not stolen or pledged more than once as collateral.

5

POSITIONS

People generally solve their financial and risk management problems by taking positions in various assets or contracts. A **position** in an asset is the quantity of the instrument that an entity owns or owes. A portfolio consists of a set of positions.

People have **long positions** when they own assets or contracts. Examples of long positions include ownership of stocks, bonds, currencies, contracts, commodities, or real assets. Long positions benefit from an appreciation in the prices of the assets or contracts owned.

People have **short positions** when they have sold assets that they do not own, or when they write and sell contracts. Short positions benefit from a decrease in the prices of the assets or contracts sold. Short sellers profit by selling at high prices and repurchasing at lower prices. Information-motivated traders sell assets and contracts short positions when they believe that prices will fall.

Hedgers also often sell instruments short. They short securities and contracts when the financial risks inherent in the instruments are positively correlated with the risks to which they are exposed. For example, to hedge the risk associated with holding copper inventories, a wire manufacturer would sell short copper futures. If the price of copper falls, the manufacturer will lose on his copper inventories but gain on his short futures position. (If the risk in an instrument is inversely correlated with a risk to which hedgers are exposed, the hedgers will hedge with long positions.)

Contracts have long sides and short sides. The long side of a forward or futures contract is the side that will take physical delivery or its cash equivalent. The short side of such contracts is the side that is liable for the delivery. The long side of a futures contract increases in value when the value of the underlying asset increases in value.

The identification of the two sides can be confusing for option contracts. The long side of an option contract is the side that holds the right to exercise the option. The short side is the side that must satisfy the obligation. Practitioners say that the long side *holds* the option and the short side *writes* the option, so the long side is the holder and the short side is the writer. The put contracts are the source of the potential confusion. The put contract holder has the right to sell the underlying to the writer. The holder will benefit if the price of the underlying falls, in which case the price of the put contract will rise. The holder is long the put contract and has an indirect short position in the underlying instrument. Analysts call the indirect short position short exposure to the underlying. The put contract holders have long exposure to their option contract and short exposure to the underlying instrument.

Exhibit 1 Option Positions and Their Associated Underlying Risk Exposures

Type of Option	Option Position	Exposure to Underlying Risk
Call	Long	Long
Call	Short	Short
Put	Long	Short
Put	Short	Long

The identification of the long side in a swap contract is often arbitrary because swap contracts call for the exchange of contractually determined cash flows rather than for the purchase (or the cash equivalent) of some underlying instrument. In general, the side that benefits from an increase in the quoted price is the long side.

The identification of the long side in currency contracts also may be confusing. In this case, the confusion stems from symmetry in the contracts. The buyer of one currency is the seller of the other currency, and vice versa for the seller. Thus, a long forward position in one currency is a short forward position in the other currency. When practitioners describe a position, they generally will say, "I'm long the dollar against the yen," which means they have bought dollars and sold yen.

5.1 Short Positions

Short sellers create short positions in contracts by selling contracts that they do not own. In a sense, they become the issuers of the contract when they create the liabilities associated with their contracts. This analogy will also help you better understand risk when you study corporate finance: Corporations create short positions in their bonds when they issue bonds in exchange for cash. Although bonds are generally considered to be securities, they are also contracts between the issuer and the bondholder.

Short sellers create short positions in securities by borrowing securities from security lenders who are long holders. The short sellers then sell the borrowed securities to other traders. Short sellers close their positions by repurchasing the securities and returning them to the security lenders. If the securities drop in value, the short sellers profit because they repurchase the securities at lower prices than the prices at which they sold the securities. If the securities rise in value, they will lose. Short sellers who buy to close their positions are said to cover their positions.

The potential gains in a long position generally are unbounded. For example, the stock prices of such highly successful companies as Yahoo! have increased more than 50-fold since they were first publicly traded. The potential losses on long positions, however, are limited to no more than 100 percent—a complete loss—for long positions without any associated liabilities.

In contrast, the potential gains on a short position are limited to no more than 100 percent whereas the potential losses are unbounded. The unbounded potential losses on short positions make short positions very risky in volatile instruments. For example, if you shorted 100 shares of Yahoo! in July 1996 at \$20 and you kept your position open for four years, you would have lost \$148,000 on your \$2,000 initial short position. During this period, Yahoo! rose 75-fold to \$1,500 on a split-adjusted equivalent basis.

Although security lenders generally believe that they are long the securities that they lend, in fact, they do not actually own the securities during the periods of their loans. Instead, they own promises made by the short sellers to return the securities. These promises are memorialized in security lending agreements. These agreements specify that the short sellers will pay the long sellers all dividends or interest that they otherwise would have received had they not lent their securities. These payments are called payments-in-lieu of dividends (or of interest), and they may have different tax treatments than actual dividends and interest. The security lending agreements also protect the lenders in the event of a stock split.

To secure the security loans, lenders require that the short seller leave the proceeds of the short sale on deposit with them as collateral for the stock loan. They invest the collateral in short-term securities, and they rebate the interest to the short sellers at rates called short rebate rates. The short rebate rates are determined in the market and generally are available only to institutional short-sellers and some large retail traders. If a security is hard to borrow, the rebate rate may be very small or even negative. Such securities are said to be on special. Otherwise, the rebate rate is usually 10 basis points less than the overnight rate in the interbank funds market. Most security lending agreements require various margin payments to keep the credit risk among the parties from growing when prices change.

Securities lenders lend their securities because the short rebate rates they pay on the collateral are lower than the interest rates they receive from investing the collateral. The difference is because of the implicit loan fees that they receive from the borrowers for borrowing the stock. The difference also compensates lenders for risks that the lenders take when investing the collateral and for the risk that the borrowers will default if prices rise significantly.

EXAMPLE 18**Short Positions in Securities and Contracts**

How is the process of short selling shares of Siemens different from that of short selling a Siemens equity call option contract?

Solution:

To short sell shares of Siemens, the seller (or his broker) must borrow the shares from a long holder so that he can deliver them to the buyer. To short sell a Siemens equity call option contract, the seller simply creates the contract when he sells it to the buyer.

5.2 Leveraged Positions

In many markets, traders can buy securities by borrowing some of the purchase price. They usually borrow the money from their brokers. The borrowed money is called the **margin loan**, and they are said to buy on margin. The interest rate that the buyers pay for their margin loan is called the **call money rate**. The call money rate is above the government bill rate and is negotiable. Large buyers generally obtain more favorable rates than do retail buyers. For institutional-size buyers, the call money rate is quite low because the loans are generally well secured by securities held as collateral by the lender.

Trader's equity is that portion of the security price that the buyer must supply. Traders who buy securities on margin are subject to minimum margin requirements. The **initial margin requirement** is the minimum fraction of the purchase price that must be trader's equity. This requirement may be set by the government, the exchange, or the exchange clearinghouse. For example, in the United States, the Federal Reserve Board sets the initial margin requirement through Regulation T. In Hong Kong, the Securities and Futures Commission sets the margin requirements. In all markets, brokers often require more equity than the government-required minimum from their clients when lending to them.

Many markets allow brokers to lend their clients more money if the brokers use risk models to measure and control the overall risk of their clients' portfolios. This system is called portfolio margining.

Buying securities on margin can greatly increase the potential gains or losses for a given amount of equity in a position because the trader can buy more securities on margin than he could otherwise. The buyer thus earns greater profits when prices rise and suffers greater losses when prices fall. The relation between risk and borrowing is called **financial leverage** (often simply called leverage). Traders leverage their positions when they borrow to buy more securities. A highly leveraged position is large relative to the equity that supports it.

The leverage ratio is the ratio of the value of the position to the value of the equity investment in it. The leverage ratio indicates how many times larger a position is than the equity that supports it. The maximum leverage ratio associated with a position financed by the minimum margin requirement is one divided by the minimum margin requirement. If the requirement is 40 percent, then the maximum leverage ratio is $2.5 = 100\% \text{ position} \div 40\% \text{ equity}$.

The leverage ratio indicates how much more risky a leveraged position is relative to an unleveraged position. For example, if a stock bought on 40 percent margin rises 10 percent, the buyer will experience a 25 percent ($2.5 \times 10\%$) return on the equity investment in her leveraged position. But if the stock falls by 10 percent, the return on the equity investment will be -25 percent (before the interest on the margin loan and before payment of commissions).

Financial analysts must be able to compute the total return to the equity investment in a leveraged position. The total return depends on the price change of the purchased security, the dividends or interest paid by the security, the interest paid on the margin loan, and the commissions paid to buy and sell the security. The following example illustrates the computation of the total return to a leveraged purchase of stock that pays a dividend.

EXAMPLE 19**Computing Total Return to a Leveraged Stock Purchase**

A buyer buys stock on margin and holds the position for exactly one year, during which time the stock pays a dividend. For simplicity, assume that the interest on the loan and the dividend are both paid at the end of the year.

Purchase price	\$20/share
Sale price	\$15/share
Shares purchased	1,000
Leverage ratio	2.5
Call money rate	5%
Dividend	\$0.10/share
Commission	\$0.01/share

- 1 What is the total return on this investment?
- 2 Why is the loss greater than the 25 percent decrease in the market price?

Solution to 1:

To find the return on this investment, first determine the initial equity and then determine the equity remaining after the sale. The total purchase price is \$20,000. The leverage ratio of 2.5 indicates that the buyer's equity financed 40 percent = $(1 \div 2.5)$ of the purchase price. Thus, the equity investment is \$8,000 = 40% of \$20,000. The \$12,000 remainder is borrowed. The actual investment is slightly higher because the buyer must pay a commission of \$10 = $\$0.01/\text{share} \times 1,000$ shares to buy the stock. The total initial investment is \$8,010.

At the end of the year, the stock price has declined by \$5/share. The buyer lost \$5,000 = $\$5/\text{share} \times 1,000$ shares as a result of the price change. In addition, the buyer has to pay interest at 5 percent on the \$12,000 loan, or \$600. The buyer also receives a dividend of \$0.10/share, or \$100. The trader's equity remaining after the sale is computed from the initial equity investment as follows:

Initial investment	\$8,010
Purchase commission	-10
Trading gains/losses	-5,000
Margin interest paid	-600
Dividends received	100
Sales commission paid	-10
Remaining equity	<u>\$2,490</u>

or

Proceeds on sale	\$15,000
Payoff loan	-12,000

Margin interest paid	-600
Dividends received	100
Sales commission paid	-10
Remaining equity	\$2,490

so that the return on the initial investment of \$8,010 is $(2,490 - 8,010)/8,010 = -68.9\%$.

Solution to 2:

The realized loss is substantially greater than the stock price return of $(\$15 - \$20)/\$20 = -25\%$. Most of the difference is because of the leverage with the remainder primarily the result of the interest paid on the loan. Based on the leverage alone and ignoring the other cash flows, we would expect that the return on the equity would be $-62.5\% = 2.5$ leverage times the -25% stock price return.

In the above example, if the stock dropped more than the buyer's original 40 percent margin (ignoring commissions, interest, and dividends), the trader's equity would have become negative. In that case, the investor would owe his broker more than the stock is worth. Brokers often lose money in such situations if the buyer does not repay the loan out of other funds.

To prevent such losses, brokers require that margin buyers always have a minimum amount of equity in their positions. This minimum is called the **maintenance margin requirement**. It is usually 25 percent of the current value of the position, but it may be higher or lower depending on the volatility of the instrument and the policies of the broker.

If the value of the equity falls below the maintenance margin requirement, the buyer will receive a **margin call**, or request for additional equity. If the buyer does not deposit additional equity with the broker in a timely manner, the broker will close the position to prevent further losses and thereby secure repayment of the margin loan.

When you buy securities on margin, you must know the price at which you will receive a margin call if prices drop. The answer to this question depends on your initial equity and on the maintenance margin requirement.

EXAMPLE 20

Margin Call Price

A trader buys stock on margin posting 40 percent of the initial stock price of \$20 as equity. The maintenance margin requirement for the position is 25 percent. Below what price will a margin call occur?

Solution:

The trader's initial equity is 40 percent of the initial stock price of \$20, or \$8 per share. Subsequent changes in equity per share are equal to the share price change so that equity per share is equal to $\$8 + (P - 20)$ where P is the current share price. The margin call takes place when equity drops below the 25 percent maintenance margin requirement. The price below which a margin call will take place is the solution to the following equation:

$$\frac{\text{Equity/share}}{\text{Price/share}} = \frac{\$8 + P - 20}{P} = 25\%$$

which occurs at $P = 16$. When the price drops below \$16, the equity will be under \$4/share, which is less than 25 percent of the price.

Traders who sell securities short are also subject to margin requirements because they have borrowed securities. Initially, the trader's equity supporting the short position must be at least equal to the margin requirement times the initial value of the short position. If prices rise, equity will be lost. At some point, the short seller will have to contribute additional equity to meet the maintenance margin requirement. Otherwise, the broker will buy the security back to cover the short position to prevent further losses and thereby secure repayment of the stock loan.

6

ORDERS

Buyers and sellers communicate with the brokers, exchanges, and dealers that arrange their trades by issuing **orders**. All orders specify what instrument to trade, how much to trade, and whether to buy or sell. Most orders also have other instructions attached to them. These additional instructions may include execution instructions, validity instructions, and clearing instructions. **Execution instructions** indicate how to fill the order, **validity instructions** indicate when the order may be filled, and **clearing instructions** indicate how to arrange the final settlement of the trade.

In this section, we introduce various order instructions and explain how traders use them to achieve their objectives. We discuss execution mechanisms—how exchanges, brokers and dealers fill orders—in the next section. To understand the concepts in this section, however, you need to know a little about order execution mechanisms.

In most markets, dealers and various other proprietary traders often are willing to buy from, or sell to, other traders seeking to sell or buy. The prices at which they are willing to buy are called **bid** prices and those at which they are willing to sell are called **ask** prices, or sometimes **offer** prices. The ask prices are invariably higher than the bid prices.

The traders who are willing to trade at various prices may also indicate the quantities that they will trade at those prices. These quantities are called **bid sizes** and **ask sizes** depending on whether they are attached to bids or offers.

Practitioners say that the traders who offer to trade make a market. Those who trade with them take the market.

The highest bid in the market is the **best bid**, and the lowest ask in the market is the **best offer**. The difference between the best bid and the best offer is the **market bid–ask spread**. When traders ask, “What’s the market?” they want to know the best bid and ask prices and their associated sizes. Bid–ask spreads are an implicit cost of trading. Markets with small bid–ask spreads are markets in which the costs of trading are small, at least for the sizes quoted. Dealers often quote both bid and ask prices, and in that case, practitioners say that they quote a two-sided market. The market spread is never more than any dealer spread.

6.1 Execution Instructions

Market and limit orders convey the most common execution instructions. A **market order** instructs the broker or exchange to obtain the best price immediately available when filling the order. A **limit order** conveys almost the same instruction: Obtain the best price immediately available, but in no event accept a price higher than a specified limit price when buying or accept a price lower than a specified limit price when selling.

Many people mistakenly believe that limit orders specify the prices at which the orders will trade. Although limit orders do often trade at their limit prices, remember that the first instruction is to obtain the best price available. If better prices are available than the limit price, brokers and exchanges should obtain those prices for their clients.

Market orders generally execute immediately if other traders are willing to take the other side of the trade. The main drawback with market orders is that they can be expensive to execute, especially when the order is placed in a market for a thinly traded security, or more generally, when the order is large relative to the normal trading activity in the market. In that case, a market buy order may fill at a high price, or a market sell order may fill at a low price if no traders are willing to trade at better prices. High purchase prices and low sale prices represent price concessions given to other traders to encourage them to take the other side of the trade. Because the sizes of price concessions can be difficult to predict, and because prices often change between when a trader submits an order and when the order finally fills, the execution prices for market orders are often uncertain.

Buyers and sellers who are concerned about the possibility of trading at unacceptable prices add limit price instructions to their orders. The main problem with limit orders is that they may not execute. Limit orders do not execute if the limit price on a buy order is too low, or if the limit price on a sell order is too high. For example, if an investment manager submits a limit order to buy at the limit price of 20 (buy limit 20) and nobody is willing to sell at or below 20, the order will not trade. If prices never drop to 20, the manager will never buy. If the price subsequently rises, the manager will have lost the opportunity to profit from the price rise.

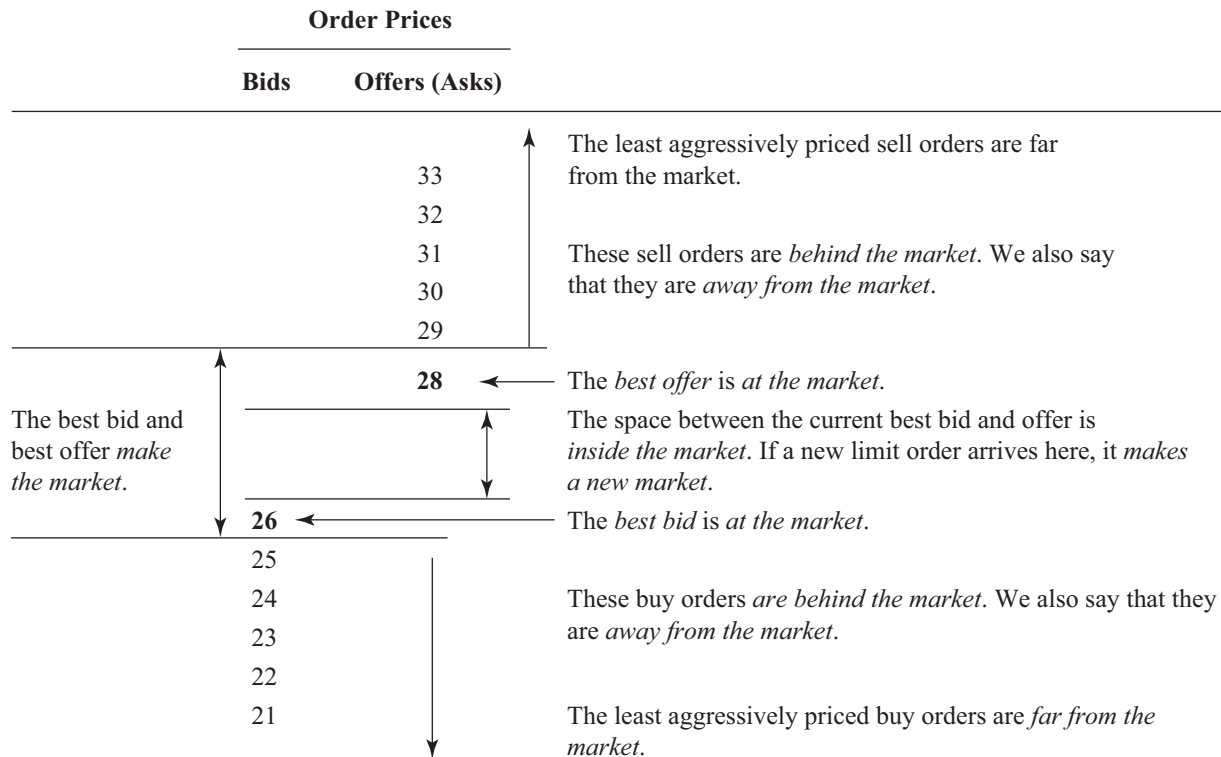
Whether traders use market orders or limit orders when trying to arrange trades depends on their concerns about price, trading quickly, and failing to trade. On average, limit orders trade at better prices than do market orders, but they often do not trade. Traders generally regret when their limit orders fail to trade because they usually would have profited if they had traded. Limit buy orders do not fill when prices are rising, and limit sell orders do not fill when prices are falling. In both cases, traders would be better off if their orders had filled.

The probability that a limit order will execute depends on where the order is placed relative to market prices. An aggressively priced order is more likely to trade than is a less aggressively priced order. A limit buy order is aggressively priced when the limit price is high relative to the market bid and ask prices. If the limit price is placed above the best offer, the buy order generally will partially or completely fill at the best offer price, depending on the size available at the best offer. Such limit orders are called **marketable limit orders** because at least part of the order can trade immediately. A limit buy order with a very high price relative to the market is essentially a market order.

If the buy order is placed above the best bid but below the best offer, traders say the order makes a new market because it becomes the new best bid. Such orders generally will not immediately trade, but they may attract sellers who are interested in trading. A buy order placed at the best bid is said to make market. It may have to wait until all other buy orders at that price trade first. Finally, a buy order placed below the best bid is **behind the market**. It will not execute unless market prices drop. Traders call limit orders that are waiting to trade **standing limit orders**.

Sell limit orders are aggressively priced if the limit price is low relative to market prices. The limit price of a marketable sell limit order is below the best bid. A limit sell order placed between the best bid and the best offer makes a new market on the sell side, one placed at the best offer makes market, and one placed above the best offer is behind the market.

Exhibit 2 presents a simplified **limit order book** in which orders are presented ranked by their limit prices for a hypothetical market. The market is “26 bid, offered at 28” because the best bid is 26 and the best offer (ask) is 28.

Exhibit 2 Terms Traders Use to Describe Standing Limit Orders


Source: *Trading and Exchanges*.

Harris, Larry. 2003. *Trading and Exchanges: Market Microstructure for Practitioners*. New York: Oxford University Press.

EXAMPLE 21
Making and Taking

- 1 What is the difference between making a market and taking a market?
- 2 What order types are most likely associated with making a market and taking a market?

Solution to 1:

A trader makes a market when the trader offers to trade. A trader takes a market when the trader accepts an offer to trade.

Solution to 2:

Traders place standing limit orders to give other traders opportunities to trade. Standing limit orders thus make markets. In contrast, traders use market orders or marketable limit orders to take offers to trade. These marketable orders take the market.

A trade-off exists between how aggressively priced an order is and the ultimate trade price. Although aggressively priced orders fill faster and with more certainty than do less aggressively priced limit orders, the prices at which they execute are inferior.

Buyers seeking to trade quickly must pay higher prices to increase the probability of trading quickly. Similarly, sellers seeking to trade quickly must accept lower prices to increase the probability of trading quickly.

Some order execution instructions specify conditions on size. For example, **all-or-nothing (AON) orders** can only trade if their entire sizes can be traded. Traders can similarly specify minimum fill sizes. This specification is common when settlement costs depend on the number of trades made to fill an order and not on the aggregate size of the order.

Exposure instructions indicate whether, how, and perhaps to whom orders should be exposed. **Hidden orders** are exposed only to the brokers or exchanges that receive them. These agencies cannot disclose hidden orders to other traders until they can fill them. Traders use hidden orders when they are afraid that other traders might behave strategically if they knew that a large order was in the market. Traders can discover hidden size only by submitting orders that will trade with that size. Thus, traders can only learn about hidden size after they have committed to trading with it.

Traders also often indicate a specific **display size** for their orders. Brokers and exchanges then expose only the display size for these orders. Any additional size is hidden from the public but can be filled if a suitably large order arrives. Traders sometimes call such orders **iceberg orders** because most of the order is hidden. Traders specify display sizes when they do not want to display their full sizes, but still want other traders to know that someone is willing to trade at the displayed price. Traders on the opposite side who wish to trade additional size at that price can discover the hidden size only if they trade the displayed size, at which point the broker or exchange will display any remaining size up to the display size. They also can discover the hidden size by submitting large orders that will trade with that size.

EXAMPLE 22

Market versus Limit and Hidden versus Displayed Orders

You are the buy-side trader for a very clever investment manager. The manager has hired a commercial satellite firm to take regular pictures of the parking lots in which new car dealers store their inventories. It has also hired some part-time workers to count the cars on the lots. With this information and some econometric analyses, the manager can predict weekly new car sale announcements more accurately than can most analysts. The manager typically makes a quarter percent each week on this strategy. Once a week, a day before the announcements are made, the manager gives you large orders to buy or sell car manufacturers based on his insights into their dealers' sales. What primary issues should you consider when deciding whether to:

- 1 use market or limit orders to fill his orders?
- 2 display the orders or hide them?

Solution to 1:

The manager's information is quite perishable. If his orders are not filled before the weekly sales are reported to the public, the manager will lose the opportunity to profit from the information as prices immediately adjust to the news. The manager, therefore, needs to get the orders filled quickly. This consideration suggests that the orders should be submitted as market orders. If submitted as limit orders, the orders might not execute and the firm would lose the opportunity to profit.

Large market orders, however, can be very expensive to execute, especially if few people are willing to trade significant size on the other side of the market. Because transaction costs can easily exceed the expected quarter percent return, you should submit limit orders to limit the execution prices that you are willing to accept. It is better to fail to trade than to trade at losing prices.

Solution to 2:

Your large orders could easily move the market if many people were aware of them, and even more so if others were aware that you are trading on behalf of a successful information-motivated trader. You thus should consider submitting hidden orders. The disadvantage of hidden orders is that they do not let people know that they can trade the other side if they want to.

6.2 Validity Instructions

Validity instructions indicate when an order may be filled. The most common validity instruction is the **day order**. A day order is good for the day on which it is submitted. If it has not been filled by the close of business, the order expires unfilled.

Good-till-cancelled orders (GTC) are just that. In practice, most brokers limit how long they will manage an order to ensure that they do not fill orders that their clients have forgotten. Such brokers may limit their GTC orders to a few months.

Immediate or cancel orders (IOC) are good only upon receipt by the broker or exchange. If they cannot be filled in part or in whole, they cancel immediately. In some markets these orders are also known as **fill or kill** orders. When searching for hidden liquidity, electronic algorithmic trading systems often submit thousands of these IOC orders for every order that they fill.

Good-on-close orders can only be filled at the close of trading. These orders often are market orders, so traders call them **market-on-close** orders. Traders often use on-close orders when they want to trade at the same prices that will be published as the closing prices of the day. Mutual funds often like to trade at such prices because they value their portfolios at closing prices. Many traders also use **good-on-open** orders.

6.2.1 Stop Orders

A **stop order** is an order in which a trader has specified a stop price condition. The stop order may not be filled until the stop price condition has been satisfied. For a sell order, the stop price condition suspends execution of the order until a trade occurs at or below the stop price. After that trade, the stop condition is satisfied and the order becomes valid for execution, subject to all other execution instructions attached to it. If the market price subsequently rises above the sell order's stop price before the order trades, the order remains valid. Similarly, a buy order with a stop condition becomes valid only after a price rises above the specified stop price.

Traders often call stop orders **stop-loss orders** because many traders use them with the hope of stopping losses on positions that they have established. For example, a trader who has bought stock at 40 may want to sell the stock if the price falls below 30. In that case, the trader might submit a "GTC, stop 30, market sell" order. If the price falls to or below 30, the market order becomes valid and it should immediately execute at the best price then available in the market. That price may be substantially lower than 30 if the market is falling quickly. The stop-loss order thus does not guarantee a stop to losses at the stop price. If potential sellers are worried about trading at too low of a price, they can attach stop instructions to limit orders instead of market orders. In this example, if the trader is unwilling to sell below 25, the trader would submit a "GTC, stop 30, limit 25 sell" order.

If a trader wants to guarantee that he can sell at 30, the trader would buy a put option contract struck at 30. The purchase price of the option would include a premium for the insurance that the trader is buying. Option contracts can be viewed as limit orders for which execution is guaranteed at the strike price. A trader similarly might use a stop-buy order or a call option to limit losses on a short position.

A portfolio manager might use a stop-buy order when the manager believes that a security is undervalued but is unwilling to trade without market confirmation. For example, suppose that a stock currently trades for 50 RMB and a manager believes that it should be worth 100 RMB. Further, the manager believes that the stock will much more likely be worth 100 RMB if other traders are willing to buy it above 65 RMB. To best take advantage of this information, the manager would consider issuing a “GTC, stop 65 RMB, limit 100 RMB buy” order. Note that if the manager relies too much on the market when making this trading decision, however, he may violate CFA Standard of Professional Conduct V.A.2, which requires that all investment actions have a reasonable and adequate basis supported by appropriate research and investigation.

Because stop-sell orders become valid when prices are falling and stop-buy orders become valid when prices are rising, traders using stop orders contribute to market momentum as their sell orders push prices down further and their buy orders push prices up. Execution prices for stop orders thus are often quite poor.

EXAMPLE 23

Limit and Stop Instructions

In what ways do limit and stop instructions differ?

Solution:

Although both limit and stop instructions specify prices, the role that these prices play in the arrangement of a trade are completely different. A limit price places a limit on what trade prices will be acceptable to the trader. A buyer will accept prices only at or lower than the limit price whereas a seller will accept prices only at or above the limit price.

In contrast, a stop price indicates when an order can be filled. A buy order can only be filled once the market has traded at a price at or above the stop price. A sell order can only be filled once the market has traded at a price at or below the stop price.

Both order instructions may delay or prevent the execution of an order. A buy limit order will not execute until someone is willing to sell at or below the limit price. Similarly, a sell limit order will not execute until someone is willing to buy at or above the limit sell price. In contrast, a stop-buy order will not execute if the market price never rises to the stop price. Similarly, a stop-sell order will not execute if the market price never falls to the stop price.

6.3 Clearing Instructions

Clearing instructions tell brokers and exchanges how to arrange final settlement of trades. Traders generally do not attach these instructions to each order—instead they provide them as standing instructions. These instructions indicate what entity is responsible for clearing and settling the trade. For retail trades, that entity is the customer’s broker. For institutional trades, that entity may be a custodian or another broker. When a client uses one broker to arrange trades and another broker to settle trades, traders say that the first broker gives up the trade to the other broker, who is often known as the prime broker. Institutional traders provide these instructions

so they can obtain specialized execution services from different brokers while maintaining a single account for custodial services and other prime brokerage services, such as margin loans.

An important clearing instruction that must appear on security sale orders is an indication of whether the sale is a long sale or a short sale. In either case, the broker representing the sell order must ensure that the trader can deliver securities for settlement. For a long sale, the broker must confirm that the securities held are available for delivery. For a short sale, the broker must either borrow the security on behalf of the client or confirm that the client can borrow the security.

7

PRIMARY SECURITY MARKETS

When issuers first sell their securities to investors, practitioners say that the trades take place in the **primary markets**. An issuer makes an **initial public offering** (IPO)—sometimes called a placing—of a security issue when it sells the security to the public for the first time. A seasoned security is a security that an issuer has already issued. If the issuer wants to sell additional units of a previously issued security, it makes a **seasoned offering** (sometimes called a secondary offering). Both types of offerings occur in the **primary market** where issuers sell their securities to investors. Later, if investors trade these securities among themselves, they trade in **secondary markets**. This section discusses primary markets and the procedures that issuers use to offer their securities to the public.

7.1 Public Offerings

Corporations generally contract with an investment bank to help them sell their securities to the public. The investment bank then lines up subscribers who will buy the security. Investment bankers call this process **book building**. In London, the book builder is called the book runner. The bank tries to build a book of orders to which they can sell the offering. Investment banks often support their book building by providing investment information and opinion about the issuer to their clients and to the public. Before the offering, the issuer generally makes a very detailed disclosure of its business, of the risks inherent in it, and of the uses to which the new funds will be placed.

When time is of the essence, issuers in Europe may issue securities through an **accelerated book build**, in which the investment bank arranges the offering in only one or two days. Such sales often occur at discounted prices.

The first public offering of common stock in a company consists of newly issued shares to be sold by the company. It may also include shares that the founders and other early investors in the company seek to sell. The initial public offering provides these investors with a means of liquidating their investments.

In an **underwritten offering**—the most common type of offering—the investment bank guarantees the sale of the issue at an offering price that it negotiates with the issuer. If the issue is undersubscribed, the bank will buy whatever securities it cannot sell at the offering price. In the case of an IPO, the underwriter usually also promises to make a market in the security for about a month to ensure that the secondary market will be liquid and to provide price support, if necessary. For large issues, a syndicate of investment banks and broker–dealers helps the **lead underwriter** build the book. The issuer usually pays an underwriting fee of about 7 percent for these various services. The underwriting fee is a placement cost of the offering.

In a **best effort offering**, the investment bank acts only as broker. If the offering is undersubscribed, the issuer will not sell as much as it hoped to sell.

For both types of offerings, the issuer and the bank usually jointly set the offering price following a negotiation. If they set a price that buyers consider too high, the offering will be undersubscribed, and they will fail to sell the entire issue. If they set the price too low, the offering will be oversubscribed, in which case the securities are often allocated to preferred clients or on a pro-rata basis.

(Note that CFA Standard of Professional Conduct III.B—fair dealing—requires that the allocation be based on a written policy disclosed to clients and suggests that the securities be offered on a pro-rata basis among all clients who have comparable relationships with their broker–dealers.)

Investment banks have a conflict of interest with respect to the offering price in underwritten offerings. As agents for the issuers, they generally are supposed to select the offering price that will raise the most money. But as underwriters, they have strong incentives to choose a low price. If the price is low, the banks can allocate valuable shares to benefit their clients and thereby indirectly benefit the banks. If the price is too high, the underwriters will have to buy overvalued shares in the offering and perhaps also during the following month if they must support the price in the secondary market, which directly costs the banks. These considerations tend to lower initial offering prices so that prices in the secondary market often rise immediately following an IPO. They are less important in a seasoned offering because trading in the secondary market helps identify the proper price for the offering.

First time issuers generally accept lower offering prices because they and many others believe that an undersubscribed IPO conveys very unfavorable information to the market about the company's prospects at a time when it is most vulnerable to public opinion about its prospects. They fear that an undersubscribed initial public offering will make it substantially harder to raise additional capital in subsequent seasoned offerings.

EXAMPLE 24

The Playtech Initial Public Offering

Playtech is a designer, developer, and licensor of software for the gambling industry. On 28 March 2006, Playtech raised approximately £265 million gross through an initial public offering of 103,142,466 ordinary shares at £2.57 per ordinary share. After the initial public offering, Playtech had 213,333,333 ordinary shares issued and outstanding.

Playtech received gross proceeds of approximately £34.3 million and net proceeds of £31.8 million. The ordinary shares that were sold to the public represented approximately 48 percent of Playtech's total issued ordinary shares.

The shares commenced trading at 8:00 AM on the AIM market of the London Stock Exchange where Playtech opened at £2.74, traded 37 million shares between £2.68 and £2.74, and closed at £2.73.

- 1 Approximately how many new shares were issued by the company and how many shares were sold by the company's founders? What fraction of their holdings in the company did the founders sell?
- 2 Approximately what return did the subscribers who participated in the IPO make on the first day it traded?
- 3 Approximately how much did Playtech pay in placement costs as a percentage of the new funds raised?

Solution to 1:

Playtech received gross proceeds of £34.3 million at £2.57 per share so the company issued and sold 13,346,304 shares (= £34.3 million/£2.57 per share). The total placement was for 103,142,466 shares, so the founders sold 89,796,162 shares (= 103,142,466 shares – 13,346,304 shares). Because approximately 200 million = 213.3 million – 13.3 million shares were outstanding before the placement, the founders sold approximately 45 percent (= 90 million/200 million) of the company.

Solution to 2:

The subscribers bought the stock for £2.57 per share and it closed at £2.73. The first day return thus was $6.2\% = \frac{2.73 - 2.57}{2.57} \times 100$.

Solution to 3:

Playtech obtained gross proceeds of £34.3 million, but only raised net proceeds of £31.8 million. The £2.5 million difference was the total cost of the placement to the firm, which is 7.9 percent of £31.8 million net proceeds.

7.2 Private Placements and Other Primary Market Transactions

Corporations sometimes issue their securities in private placements. In a **private placement**, corporations sell securities directly to a small group of qualified investors, usually with the assistance of an investment bank. Qualified investors have sufficient knowledge and experience to recognize the risks that they assume, and sufficient wealth to assume those risks responsibly. Most countries allow corporations to do private placements without nearly as much public disclosure as is required for public offerings. Private placements, therefore, may be cheaper than public offerings, but the buyers generally require higher returns (lower purchase prices) because they cannot subsequently trade the securities in an organized secondary market.

Corporations sometimes sell new issues of seasoned securities directly to the public on a piecemeal basis via a shelf registration. In a **shelf registration**, the corporation makes all public disclosures that it would for a regular offering, but it does not sell the shares in a single transaction. Instead, it sells the shares directly into the secondary market over time, generally when it needs additional capital. Shelf registrations provide corporations with flexibility in the timing of their capital transactions, and they can alleviate the downward price pressures often associated with large secondary offerings.

Many corporations may also issue shares via dividend reinvestment plans (DRPs or DRIPs, for short) that allow their shareholders to reinvest their dividends in newly issued shares of the corporation (in particular, DRPs specify that the corporation issue new shares for the plan rather than purchase them on the open market). These plans sometimes also allow existing shareholders and other investors to buy additional stock at a slight discount to current prices.

Finally, corporations can issue new stock via a rights offering. In a rights offering, the corporation distributes rights to buy stock at a fixed price to existing shareholders in proportion to their holdings. Because the rights need not be exercised, they are options. The exercise price, however, is set below the current market price of the stock so that buying stock with the rights is immediately profitable. Consequently, shareholders will experience dilution in the value of their existing shares. They can offset the dilution loss by exercising their rights or by selling the rights to others who will exercise them. Shareholders generally do not like rights offerings because they must provide additional capital (or sell their rights) to avoid losses through dilution. Financial analysts recognize that these securities, although called rights, are actually short-term stock warrants and value them accordingly.

The national governments of financially strong countries generally issue their bonds, notes, and bills in public auctions organized by a government agency (usually associated with the finance ministry). They may also sell them directly to dealers.

Smaller and less financially secure national governments and most regional governments often contract with investment banks to help them sell and distribute their securities. The laws of many governments, however, require that they auction their securities.

EXAMPLE 25**Private and Public Placements**

In what ways do private placements differ from public placements?

Solution:

Issuers make private placements to a limited number of investors that generally are financially sophisticated and well informed about risk. The investors generally have some relationship to the issuer. Issuers make public placements when they sell securities to the general public. Public placements generally require substantially more financial disclosure than do private placements.

7.3 Importance of Secondary Markets to Primary Markets

Corporations and governments can raise money in the primary markets at lower cost when their securities will trade in liquid secondary markets. In a **liquid market**, traders can buy or sell with low transaction costs and small price concessions when they want to trade. Buyers value liquidity because they may need to sell their securities to meet liquidity needs. Investors thus will pay more for securities that they can easily sell than for those that they cannot easily sell. Higher prices translate into lower costs of capital for the issuers.

SECONDARY SECURITY MARKET AND CONTRACT MARKET STRUCTURES**8**

Trading is the successful outcome to a bilateral search in which buyers look for sellers and sellers look for buyers. Many market structures have developed to reduce the costs of this search. Markets are liquid when the costs of finding a suitable counterparty to a trade are low.

Trading in securities and contracts takes place in a variety of market structures. The structures differ by when trades can be arranged, who arranges the trades, how they do so, and how traders learn about possible trading opportunities and executed trades. This section introduces the various market structures used to trade securities and contracts. We first consider trading sessions, then execution mechanisms, and finally market information systems.

8.1 Trading Sessions

Markets are organized as call markets or as continuous trading markets. In a **call market**, trades can be arranged only when the market is called at a particular time and place. In contrast in a **continuous trading market**, trades can be arranged and executed anytime the market is open.

Buyers can easily find sellers and vice versa in call markets because all traders interested in trading (or orders representing their interests) are present at the same time and place. Call markets thus have the potential to be very liquid when they are called. But they are completely illiquid between trading sessions. In contrast, traders can arrange and execute their trades at anytime in continuous trading markets, but doing so can be difficult if the buyers and sellers (or their orders) are not both present at the same time.

Most call markets use single price auctions to match buyers to sellers. In these auctions, the market constructs order books representing all buy orders and all seller orders. The market then chooses a single trade price that will maximize the total volume of trade. The order books are supply and demand schedules, and the point at which they cross determines the trade price.

Call markets usually are organized just once a day, but some markets organize calls at more frequent intervals.

Many continuous trading markets start their trading with a call market auction. During a pre-opening period, traders submit their orders for the market call. At the opening, any possible trades are arranged and then trading continues in the continuous trading session. Some continuous trading markets also close their trading with a call. In these markets, traders who are only interested in trading in the closing call submit market- or limit-on-close orders.

EXAMPLE 26

Call Markets and Continuous Trading Markets

- 1 What is the main advantage of a call market compared with a continuous trading market?
- 2 What is the main advantage of a continuous trading market compared with a call market?

Solution to 1:

By gathering all traders to the same place at the same time, a call market makes it easier for buyers to find sellers and vice versa. In contrast, if buyers and sellers (or their orders) are not present at the same time in a continuous market, they cannot trade.

Solution to 2:

In a continuous trading market, a willing buyer and seller can trade at any time the market is open. In contrast, in a call market trading can take place only when the market is called.

8.2 Execution Mechanisms

The three main types of market structures are quote-driven markets (sometimes called price-driven or dealer markets), order-driven markets, and brokered markets. In **quote-driven markets**, customers trade with dealers. In **order-driven markets**, an order matching system run by an exchange, a broker, or an alternative trading system uses

rules to arrange trades based on the orders that traders submit. Most exchanges and ECNs organize order-driven markets. In **brokered markets**, brokers arrange trades between their customers. Brokered markets are common for transactions of unique instruments, such as real estate properties, intellectual properties, or large blocks of securities. Many trading systems use more than one type of market structure.

8.2.1 Quote-Driven Markets

Worldwide, most trading, other than in stocks, takes place in quote-driven markets. Almost all bonds and currencies and most spot commodities trade in quote-driven markets. Traders call them quote-driven (or price-driven or dealer) because customers trade at the prices quoted by dealers. Depending on the instrument traded, the dealers work for commercial banks, for investment banks, for broker-dealers, or for proprietary trading houses.

Quote-driven markets also often are called over-the-counter (OTC) markets because securities used to be literally traded over the dealer's counter in the dealer's office. Now, most trades in OTC markets are conducted over proprietary computer communications networks, by telephone, or sometimes over instant messaging systems.

8.2.2 Order-Driven Markets

Order-driven markets arrange trades using rules to match buy orders to sell orders. The orders may be submitted by customers or by dealers. Almost all exchanges use order-driven trading systems, and every automated trading system is an order-driven system.

Because rules match buyers to sellers, traders often trade with complete strangers. Order-driven markets thus must have procedures to ensure that buyers and sellers perform on their trade contracts. Otherwise, dishonest traders would enter contracts that they would not settle if a change in market conditions made settlement unprofitable.

Two sets of rules characterize order-driven market mechanisms: Order matching rules and trade pricing rules. The order matching rules match buy orders to sell orders. The trade pricing rules determine the prices at which the matched trades take place.

8.2.2.1 Order Matching Rules Order-driven trading systems match buyers to sellers using rules that rank the buy orders and the sell orders based on price, and often along with other secondary criteria. The systems then match the highest ranking buy order with the highest ranking sell order. If the buyer is willing to pay at least as much as the seller is willing to receive, the system will arrange a trade for the minimum of the buy and sell quantities. The remaining size, if any, is then matched with the next order on the other side and the process continues until no further trades can be arranged.

The **order precedence hierarchy** determines which orders go first. The first rule is **price priority**: The highest priced buy orders and the lowest priced sell orders go first. They are the most aggressively priced orders. **Secondary precedence rules** determine how to rank orders at the same price. Most trading systems use time precedence to rank orders at the same price. The first order to arrive has precedence over other orders. In trading systems that permit hidden and partially hidden orders, displayed quantities at a given price generally have precedence over the undisplayed quantities. So the complete precedence hierarchy is given by price priority, display precedence at a given price, and finally time precedence among all orders with the same display status at a given price. These rules give traders incentives to improve price, display their orders, and arrive early if they want to trade quickly. These incentives increase market liquidity.

8.2.2.2 Trade Pricing Rules After the orders are matched, the trading system then uses its trade pricing rule to determine the trade price. The three rules that various order-driven markets use to price their trades are the uniform pricing rule, the discriminatory pricing rule, and the derivative pricing rule.

Call markets commonly use the uniform pricing rule. Under this rule, all trades execute at the same price. The market chooses the price that maximizes the total quantity traded.

Continuous trading markets use the **discriminatory pricing rule**. Under this rule, the limit price of the order or quote that first arrived—the standing order—determines the trade price. This rule allows a large arriving trader to discriminate among standing limit orders by filling the most aggressively priced orders first at their limit prices and then filling less aggressively priced orders at their less favorable (from the point of view of the arriving trader) limit prices. If trading systems did not use this pricing rule, large traders would break their orders into pieces to price discriminate on their own.

EXAMPLE 27

Filling a Large Order in a Continuous Trading Market

Before the arrival of a large order, a market has the following limit orders standing on its book:

Buyer	Bid Size	Limit Price(¥)	Offer Size	Seller
Takumi	15	100.1		
Hiroto	8	100.2		
Shou	10	100.3		
		100.4	4	Hina
		100.5	6	Sakur
		100.6	12	Miku

Buyer Tsubasa submits a day order to buy 15 contracts, limit ¥100.5. With whom does he trade, what is his average trade price, and what does the limit order book look like afterward?

Solution:

Tsubasa's buy order first fills with the most aggressively priced sell order, which is Hina's order for four contracts. A trade takes place at ¥100.4 for four contracts, Hina's order fills completely, and Tsubasa still has 11 more contracts remaining.

The next most aggressively priced sell order is Sakur's order for six contracts. A second trade takes place at ¥100.5 for six contracts, Sakur's order fills completely, and Tsubasa still has five more contracts remaining.

The next most aggressively priced sell order is Miku's order at ¥100.6. No further trade is possible, however, because her limit sell price is above Tsubasa's limit buy price. Tsubasa's average trade price is $¥100.46 = \frac{4 \times ¥100.4 + 6 \times ¥100.5}{4 + 6}$.

Because Tsubasa issued a day order, the remainder of his order is placed on the book on the buy side at ¥100.5. The following orders are then on the book:

Buyer	Bid Size	Limit Price (¥)	Offer Size	Seller
Takumi	15	100.1		
Hiroto	8	100.2		
Shou	10	100.3		

Buyer	Bid Size	Limit Price (¥)	Offer Size	Seller
		100.4		
Tsubasa	5	100.5		
		100.6	12	Miku

If Tsubasa had issued an immediate-or-cancel order, the remaining five contracts would have been cancelled.

Crossing networks use the derivative pricing rule. **Crossing networks** are trading systems that match buyers and sellers who are willing to trade at prices obtained from other markets. Most systems cross their trades at the midpoint of the best bid and ask quotes published by the exchange at which the security primarily trades. This pricing rule is called a **derivative pricing rule** because the price is derived from another market. In particular, the price does not depend on the orders submitted to the crossing network. Some crossing networks are organized as call markets and others as continuously trading markets. The most important crossing market is the equity trading system POSIT.

8.2.3 Brokered Markets

The third execution mechanism is the **brokered market**, in which brokers arrange trades among their clients. Brokers organize markets for instruments for which finding a buyer or a seller willing to trade is difficult because the instruments are unique and thus of interest only to a limited number of people or institutions. These instruments generally are also infrequently traded and expensive to carry in inventory. Examples of such instruments include very large blocks of stock, real estate properties, fine art masterpieces, intellectual properties, operating companies, liquor licenses, and taxi medallions. Because dealers generally are unable or unwilling to hold these assets in their inventories, they will not make markets in them. Organizing order-driven markets for these instruments is not sensible because too few traders would submit orders to them.

Successful brokers in these markets try to know everyone who might now or in the future be willing to trade. They spend most of their time on the telephone and in meetings building their networks.

EXAMPLE 28

Quote-Driven, Order-Driven, and Brokered Markets

What are the primary advantages of quote-driven, order-driven, and brokered markets?

Solution:

In a quote-driven market, dealers generally are available to supply liquidity. In an order-driven market, traders can supply liquidity to each other. In a brokered market, brokers help find traders who are willing to trade when dealers would not be willing to make markets and when traders would not be willing to post orders.

8.3 Market Information Systems

Markets vary in the type and quantity of data that they disseminate to the public. Traders say that a market is pre-trade transparent if the market publishes real-time data about quotes and orders. Markets are post-trade transparent if the market publishes trade prices and sizes soon after trades occur.

Buy-side traders value transparency because it allows them to better manage their trading, understand market values, and estimate their prospective and actual transaction costs. In contrast, dealers prefer to trade in opaque markets because, as frequent traders, they have an information advantage over those who know less than they do. Bid–ask spreads tend to be wider and transaction costs tend to be higher in opaque markets because finding the best available price is harder for traders in such markets.

9

WELL-FUNCTIONING FINANCIAL SYSTEMS

The financial system allows traders to solve financing and risk management problems. In a well-functioning financial system:

- investors can easily move money from the present to the future while obtaining a fair rate of return for the risks that they bear;
- borrowers can easily obtain funds that they need to undertake current projects if they can credibly promise to repay the funds in the future;
- hedgers can easily trade away or offset the risks that concern them; and
- traders can easily trade currencies for other currencies or commodities that they need.

If the assets or contracts needed to solve these problems are available to trade, the financial system has **complete markets**. If the costs of arranging these trades are low, the financial system is **operationally efficient**. If the prices of the assets and contracts reflect all available information related to fundamental values, the financial system is informationally efficient.

Well-functioning financial systems are characterized by:

- the existence of well-developed markets that trade instruments that help people solve their financial problems (complete markets);
- liquid markets in which the costs of trading—commissions, bid–ask spreads, and order price impacts—are low (operationally efficient markets);
- timely financial disclosures by corporations and governments that allow market participants to estimate the fundamental values of securities (support **informationally efficient markets**); and
- prices that reflect fundamental values so that prices vary primarily in response to changes in fundamental values and not to demands for liquidity made by uninformed traders (informationally efficient markets).

Such complete and operationally efficient markets are produced by financial intermediaries who:

- organize exchanges, brokerages, and alternative trading systems that match buyers to sellers;
- provide liquidity on demand to traders;
- securitize assets to produce investment instruments that are attractive to investors and thereby lower the costs of funds for borrowers;

- run banks that match investors to borrowers by taking deposits and making loans;
- run insurance companies that pool uncorrelated risks;
- provide investment advisory services that help investors manage and grow their assets at low cost;
- organize clearinghouses that ensure everyone settles their trades and contracts; and
- organize depositories that ensure nobody loses their assets.

The benefits of a well-functioning financial system are huge. In such systems, investors who need to move money to the future can easily connect with entrepreneurs who need money now to develop new products and services. Similarly, producers who would otherwise avoid valuable projects because they are too risky can easily transfer those risks to others who can better bear them. Most importantly, these transactions generally can take place among strangers so that the benefits from trading can be derived from an enormous number of potential matches.

In contrast, economies that have poorly functioning financial systems have great difficulties allocating capital among the many companies who could use it. Financial transactions tend to be limited to arrangements within families when people cannot easily find trustworthy counterparties who will honor their contracts. In such economies, capital is allocated inefficiently, risks are not easily shared, and production is inefficient.

An extraordinarily important byproduct of an operationally efficient financial system is the production of informationally efficient prices. Prices are informationally efficient when they reflect all available information about fundamental values. Informative prices are crucially important to the welfare of an economy because they help ensure that resources go where they are most valuable. Economies that use resources where they are most valuable are **allocationally efficient**. Economies that do not use resources where they are most valuable waste their resources and consequently often are quite poor.

Well-informed traders make prices informationally efficient. When they buy assets and contracts that they think are undervalued, they tend to push the assets' prices up. Similarly, when they sell assets and contracts that they think are overvalued, they tend to push the assets' prices down. The effect of their trading thus causes prices to reflect their information about values.

How accurately prices reflect fundamental information depends on the costs of obtaining fundamental information and on the liquidity available to well-informed traders. Accounting standards and reporting requirements that produce meaningful and timely financial disclosures reduce the costs of obtaining fundamental information and thereby allow analysts to form more accurate estimates of fundamental values. Liquid markets allow well-informed traders to fill their orders at low cost. If filling orders is very costly, informed trading may not be profitable. In that case, information-motivated traders will not commit resources to collect and analyze data and they will not trade. Without their research and their associated trading, prices would be less informative.

EXAMPLE 29**Well-Functioning Financial Systems**

As a financial analyst specializing in emerging market equities, you understand that a well-functioning financial system contributes to the economic prosperity of a country. You are asked to start covering a new small market country. What factors will you consider when characterizing the quality of its financial markets?

Solution:

In general, you will consider whether:

- the country has markets that allow its companies and residents to finance projects, save for the future, and exchange risk;
- the costs of trading in those markets is low; and
- prices reflect fundamental values.

You may specifically check to see whether:

- fixed income and stock markets allow borrowers to easily obtain capital from investors;
- corporations disclose financial and operating data on a timely basis in conformity to widely respected reporting standards, such as IFRS;
- forward, futures, and options markets trade instruments that companies need to hedge their risks;
- dealers and arbitrageurs allow traders to trade when they want to;
- bid–ask spreads are small;
- trades and contracts invariably settle as expected;
- investment managers provide high-quality management services for reasonable fees;
- banks and other financing companies are well capitalized and thus able to help investors provide capital to borrowers;
- securitized assets are available and represent reasonable credit risks;
- insurance companies are well capitalized and thus able to help those exposed to risks insure against them; and
- price volatility appears consistent with changes in fundamental values.

10**MARKET REGULATION**

Government agencies and practitioner organizations regulate many markets and the financial intermediaries that participate in them. The regulators generally seek to promote fair and orderly markets in which traders can trade at prices that accurately reflect fundamental values without incurring excessive transaction costs. This section identifies the problems that financial regulators hope to solve and the objectives of their regulations.

Regrettably, some people will steal from each other if given a chance, especially if the probability of detection is low or if the penalty for being caught is low. The number of ways that people can steal or misappropriate wealth generally increases with the complexity of their relationships and with asymmetries in their knowledge. Because

financial markets tend to be complex, and because customers are often much less sophisticated than the professionals that serve them, the potential for losses through various frauds can be unacceptably high in unregulated markets.

Regulators thus ensure that systems are in place to protect customers from fraud. In principle, the customers themselves would demand such systems as a condition of doing business. When customers are unsophisticated or poorly informed, however, they may not know how to protect themselves. When the costs of learning are large—as they often are in complex financial markets—having regulators look out for the public interest can be economically efficient.

More customer money is probably lost in financial markets through negligence than through outright fraud. Most customers in financial markets use various agents to help them solve problems that they do not understand well. These agents include securities brokers, financial advisers, investment managers, and insurance agents. Because customers generally do not have much information about market conditions, they find it extremely difficult to measure the added value they obtain from their agents. This problem is especially challenging when performance has a strong random component. In that case, determining whether agents are skilled or lucky is very difficult. Moreover, if the agent is a good salesman, the customer may not critically evaluate their agent's performance. These conditions, which characterize most financial markets, ensure that customers cannot easily determine whether their agents are working faithfully for them. They tend to lose if their agents are unqualified or lazy, or if they unconsciously favor themselves and their friends over their clients, as is natural for even the most honest people.

Regulators help solve these agency problems by setting minimum standards of competence for agents and by defining and enforcing minimum standards of practice. CFA Institute provides significant standard setting leadership in the areas of investment management and investment performance reporting through its Chartered Financial Analyst Program, in which you are studying, and its Global Investment Performance Standards. In principle, regulation would not be necessary if customers could identify competent agents and effectively measure their performance. In the financial markets, doing so is very difficult.

Regulators often act to level the playing field for market participants. For example, in many jurisdictions, insider trading in securities is illegal. The rule prevents corporate insiders and others with access to corporate information from trading on material information that has not been released to the public. The purpose of the rule is to reduce the profits that insiders could extract from the markets. These profits would come from other traders who would lose when they trade with well-informed insiders. Because traders tend to withdraw from markets when they lose, rules against insider trading help keep markets liquid. They also keep corporate insiders from hoarding information.

Many situations arise in financial markets in which common standards benefit everyone involved. For example, having all companies report financial results on a common basis allows financial analysts to easily compare companies. Accordingly, the International Accounting Standards Board (IASB) and the US-based Financial Accounting Standards Board, among many others, promulgate common financial standards to which all companies must report. The benefits of having common reporting standards has led to a very successful and continuing effort to converge all accounting standards to a single worldwide standard. Without such regulations, investors might eventually refuse to invest in companies that do not report to a common standard, but such market-based discipline is a very slow regulator of behavior, and it would have little effect on companies that do not need to raise new capital.

Regulators generally require that financial firms maintain minimum levels of capital. These capital requirements serve two purposes. First, they ensure that the companies will be able to honor their contractual commitments when unexpected market

movements or poor decisions cause them to lose money. Second, they ensure that the owners of financial firms have substantial interest in the decisions that they make. Without a substantial financial interest in the decisions that they make, companies often take too many risks and exercise poor judgment about extending credit to others. When such companies fail, they impose significant costs on others. Minimum capital requirements reduce the probability that financial firms will fail and they reduce the disruptions associated with those failures that do occur. In principle, a firm's customers and counterparties could require minimum capital levels as a condition of doing business with the firm, but they have more difficulty enforcing their contracts than do governments who can imprison people.

Regulators similarly regulate insurance companies and pension funds that make long-term promises to their clients. Such entities need to maintain adequate reserves to ensure that they can fund their liabilities. Unfortunately, their managers have a tendency to underestimate these reserves if they will not be around when the liabilities come due. Again, in principle, policyholders and employees could regulate the behavior of their insurance funds and their employers by refusing to contract with them if they do not promise to adequately fund their liabilities. In practice, however, the sophistication, information, and time necessary to write and enforce contracts that control these problems are beyond the reach of most people. The government thus is a sensible regulator of such problems.

Many regulators are self-regulating organizations (SROs) that regulate their members. Exchanges, clearinghouses, and dealer trade organizations are examples of self-regulating organizations. In some cases, the members of these organizations voluntarily subject themselves to the SRO's regulations to promote the common good. In other cases, governments delegate regulatory and enforcement authorities to SROs, usually subject to the supervision of a government agency, such as a national securities and exchange authority. Exchanges, dealer associations, and clearing agencies often regulate their members with these delegated powers.

By setting high standards of behavior, SROs help their members obtain the confidence of their customers. They also reduce the chance that members of the SRO will incur losses when dealing with other members of the SRO.

When regulators fail to solve the problems discussed here, the financial system does not function well. People who lose money stop saving and borrowers with good ideas cannot fund their projects. Similarly, hedgers withdraw from markets when the costs of hedging are high. Without the ability to hedge, producers become reluctant to specialize because specialization generally increases risk. Because specialization also decreases costs, however, production becomes less efficient as producers chose safer technologies. Economies that cannot solve the regulatory problems described in this section tend to operate less efficiently than do better regulated economies, and they tend to be less wealthy.

To summarize, the objectives of market regulation are to:

- 1 control fraud;
- 2 control agency problems;
- 3 promote fairness;
- 4 set mutually beneficial standards;
- 5 prevent undercapitalized financial firms from exploiting their investors by making excessively risky investments; and
- 6 ensure that long-term liabilities are funded.

Regulation is necessary because regulating certain behaviors through market-based mechanisms is too costly for people who are unsophisticated and uninformed. Effectively regulated markets allow people to better achieve their financial goals.

EXAMPLE 30**Bankrupt Traders**

You are the chief executive officer of a brokerage that is a member of a clearinghouse. A trader who clears through your firm is bankrupt at midday, but you do not yet know it even though your clearing agreement with him explicitly requires that he immediately report significant losses. The trader knows that if he takes a large position, prices might move in his favor so that he will no longer be bankrupt. The trader attempts to do so and succeeds. You find out about this later in the evening.

- 1 Why does the clearinghouse regulate its members?
- 2 What should you do about the trader?
- 3 Why would the clearinghouse allow you to keep his trading profits?

Solution to 1:

The clearinghouse regulates its members to ensure that no member imposes costs on another member by failing to settle a trade.

Solution to 2:

You should immediately end your clearing relationship with the trader and confiscate his trading profits. The trader was trading with your firm's capital after he became bankrupt. Had he lost, your firm would have borne the loss.

Solution to 3:

If the clearinghouse did not permit you to keep his trading profits, other traders similarly situated might attempt the same strategy.

SUMMARY

This reading introduces how the financial system operates and explains how well-functioning financial systems lead to wealthy economies. Financial analysts need to understand how the financial system works because their analyses often lead to trading decisions.

The financial system consists of markets and the financial intermediaries that operate in them. These institutions allow buyers to connect with sellers. They may trade directly with each other when they trade the same instrument or they only may trade indirectly when a financial intermediary connects the buyer to the seller through transactions with each that appear on the intermediary's balance sheet. The buyer and seller may exchange instruments, cash flows, or risks.

The following points, among others, were made in this reading:

- The financial system consists of mechanisms that allow strangers to contract with each other to move money through time, to hedge risks, and to exchange assets that they value less for those that they value more.
- Investors move money from the present to the future when they save. They expect a normal rate of return for bearing risk through time. Borrowers move money from the future to the present to fund current projects and

expenditures. Hedgers trade to reduce their exposure to risks they prefer not to take. Information-motivated traders are active investment managers who try to identify under- and overvalued instruments.

- Securities are first sold in primary markets by their issuers. They then trade in secondary markets.
- People invest in pooled investment vehicles to benefit from the investment management services of their managers.
- Forward contracts allow buyers and sellers to arrange for future sales at predetermined prices. Futures contracts are forward contracts guaranteed by clearinghouses. The guarantee ensures that strangers are willing to trade with each other and that traders can offset their positions by trading with anybody. These features of futures contract markets make them highly attractive to hedgers and information-motivated traders.
- Many financial intermediaries connect buyers to sellers in a given instrument, acting directly as brokers and exchanges or indirectly as dealers and arbitrageurs.
- Financial intermediaries create instruments when they conduct arbitrage, securitize assets, borrow to lend, manage investment funds, or pool insurance contracts. These activities all transform cash flows and risks from one form to another. Their services allow buyers and sellers to connect with each other through instruments that meet their specific needs.
- Financial markets work best when strangers can contract with each other without worrying about whether their counterparts are able and willing to honor their contract. Clearinghouses, variation margins, maintenance margins, and settlement guarantees made by creditworthy brokers on behalf of their clients help manage credit risk and ultimately allow strangers to contract with each other.
- Information-motivated traders short sell when they expect that prices will fall. Hedgers short sell to reduce the risks of a long position in a related contract or commodity.
- Margin loans allow people to buy more securities than their equity would otherwise permit them to buy. The larger positions expose them to more risk so that gains and losses for a given amount of equity will be larger. The leverage ratio is the value of a position divided by the value of the equity supporting it. The returns to the equity in a position are equal to the leverage ratio times the returns to the unleveraged position.
- To protect against credit losses, brokers demand maintenance margin payments from their customers who have borrowed cash or securities when adverse price changes cause their customer's equity to drop below the maintenance margin ratio. Brokers close positions for customers who do not satisfy these margin calls.
- Orders are instructions to trade. They always specify instrument, side (buy or sell), and quantity. They usually also provide several other instructions.
- Market orders tend to fill quickly but often at inferior prices. Limit orders generally fill at better prices if they fill, but they may not fill. Traders choose order submission strategies on the basis of how quickly they want to trade, the prices they are willing to accept, and the consequences of failing to trade.
- Stop instructions are attached to other orders to delay efforts to fill them until the stop condition is satisfied. Although stop orders are often used to stop losses, they are not always effective.

- Issuers sell their securities using underwritten public offerings, best efforts public offerings, private placements, shelf registrations, dividend reinvestment programs, and rights offerings. Investment banks have a conflict of interests when setting the initial offering price in an IPO.
- Well-functioning secondary markets are essential to raising capital in the primary markets because investors value the ability to sell their securities if they no longer want to hold them or if they need to disinvest to raise cash. If they cannot trade their securities in a liquid market, they will not pay as much for them.
- Matching buyers and sellers in call markets is easy because the traders (or their orders) come together at the same time and place.
- Dealers provide liquidity in quote-driven markets. Public traders as well as dealers provide liquidity in order-driven markets.
- Order-driven markets arrange trades by ranking orders using precedence rules. The rules generally ensure that traders who provide the best prices, display the most size, and arrive early trade first. Continuous order-driven markets price orders using the discriminatory pricing rule. Under this rule, standing limit orders determine trade prices.
- Brokers help people trade unique instruments or positions for which finding a buyer or a seller is difficult.
- Transaction costs are lower in transparent markets than in opaque markets because traders can more easily determine market value and more easily manage their trading in transparent markets.
- A well-functioning financial system allows people to trade instruments that best solve their wealth and risk management problems with low transaction costs. Complete and liquid markets characterize a well-functioning financial system. Complete markets are markets in which the instruments needed to solve investment and risk management problems are available to trade. Liquid markets are markets in which traders can trade when they want to trade at low cost.
- The financial system is operationally efficient when its markets are liquid. Liquid markets lower the costs of raising capital.
- A well-functioning financial system promotes wealth by ensuring that capital allocation decisions are well made. A well-functioning financial system also promotes wealth by allowing people to share the risks associated with valuable products that would otherwise not be undertaken.
- Prices are informationally efficient when they reflect all available information about fundamental values. Information-motivated traders make prices informationally efficient. Prices will be most informative in liquid markets because information-motivated traders will not invest in information and research if establishing positions based on their analyses is too costly.
- Regulators generally seek to promote fair and orderly markets in which traders can trade at prices that accurately reflect fundamental values without incurring excessive transaction costs. Governmental agencies and self-regulating organizations of practitioners provide regulatory services that attempt to make markets safer and more efficient.
- Mandated financial disclosure programs for the issuers of publicly traded securities ensure that information necessary to estimate security values is available to financial analysts on a consistent basis.

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

- 1 Akihiko Takabe has designed a sophisticated forecasting model, which predicts the movements in the overall stock market, in the hope of earning a return in excess of a fair return for the risk involved. He uses the predictions of the model to decide whether to buy, hold, or sell the shares of an index fund that aims to replicate the movements of the stock market. Takabe would *best* be characterized as a(n):
 - A hedger.
 - B investor.
 - C information-motivated trader.
- 2 James Beach is young and has substantial wealth. A significant proportion of his stock portfolio consists of emerging market stocks that offer relatively high expected returns at the cost of relatively high risk. Beach believes that investment in emerging market stocks is appropriate for him given his ability and willingness to take risk. Which of the following labels *most appropriately* describes Beach?
 - A Hedger.
 - B Investor.
 - C Information-motivated trader.
- 3 Lisa Smith owns a manufacturing company in the United States. Her company has sold goods to a customer in Brazil and will be paid in Brazilian real (BRL) in three months. Smith is concerned about the possibility of the BRL depreciating more than expected against the US dollar (USD). Therefore, she is planning to sell three-month futures contracts on the BRL. The seller of such contracts generally gains when the BRL depreciates against the USD. If Smith were to sell these future contracts, she would *most appropriately* be described as a(n):
 - A hedger.
 - B investor.
 - C information-motivated trader.
- 4 Which of the following is *not* a function of the financial system?
 - A To regulate arbitrageurs' profits (excess returns).
 - B To help the economy achieve allocational efficiency.
 - C To facilitate borrowing by businesses to fund current operations.
- 5 An investor primarily invests in stocks of publicly traded companies. The investor wants to increase the diversification of his portfolio. A friend has recommended investing in real estate properties. The purchase of real estate would *best* be characterized as a transaction in the:
 - A derivative investment market.
 - B traditional investment market.
 - C alternative investment market.
- 6 A hedge fund holds its excess cash in 90-day commercial paper and negotiable certificates of deposit. The cash management policy of the hedge fund is *best described* as using:
 - A capital market instruments.

- B money market instruments.
 - C intermediate-term debt instruments.
- 7 An oil and gas exploration and production company announces that it is offering 30 million shares to the public at \$45.50 each. This transaction is *most likely* a sale in the:
- A futures market.
 - B primary market.
 - C secondary market.
- 8 Consider a mutual fund that invests primarily in fixed-income securities that have been determined to be appropriate given the fund's investment goal. Which of the following is *least likely* to be a part of this fund?
- A Warrants.
 - B Commercial paper.
 - C Repurchase agreements.
- 9 A friend has asked you to explain the differences between open-end and closed-end funds. Which of the following will you *most likely* include in your explanation?
- A Closed-end funds are unavailable to new investors.
 - B When investors sell the shares of an open-end fund, they can receive a discount or a premium to the fund's net asset value.
 - C When selling shares, investors in an open-end fund sell the shares back to the fund whereas investors in a closed-end fund sell the shares to others in the secondary market.
- 10 The usefulness of a forward contract is limited by some problems. Which of the following is *most likely* one of those problems?
- A Once you have entered into a forward contract, it is difficult to exit from the contract.
 - B Entering into a forward contract requires the long party to deposit an initial amount with the short party.
 - C If the price of the underlying asset moves adversely from the perspective of the long party, periodic payments must be made to the short party.
- 11 Tony Harris is planning to start trading in commodities. He has heard about the use of futures contracts on commodities and is learning more about them. Which of the following is Harris *least likely* to find associated with a futures contract?
- A Existence of counterparty risk.
 - B Standardized contractual terms.
 - C Payment of an initial margin to enter into a contract.
- 12 A German company that exports machinery is expecting to receive \$10 million in three months. The firm converts all its foreign currency receipts into euros. The chief financial officer of the company wishes to lock in a minimum fixed rate for converting the \$10 million to euro but also wants to keep the flexibility to use the future spot rate if it is favorable. What hedging transaction is *most likely* to achieve this objective?
- A Selling dollars forward.
 - B Buying put options on the dollar.
 - C Selling futures contracts on dollars.

- 13 A book publisher requires substantial quantities of paper. The publisher and a paper producer have entered into an agreement for the publisher to buy and the producer to supply a given quantity of paper four months later at a price agreed upon today. This agreement is a:
- A futures contract.
 - B forward contract.
 - C commodity swap.
- 14 The Standard & Poor's Depository Receipts (SPDRs) is an investment that tracks the S&P 500 stock market index. Purchases and sales of SPDRs during an average trading day are *best* described as:
- A primary market transactions in a pooled investment.
 - B secondary market transactions in a pooled investment.
 - C secondary market transactions in an actively managed investment.
- 15 The Standard & Poor's Depository Receipts (SPDRs) is an exchange-traded fund in the United States that is designed to track the S&P 500 stock market index. The current price of a share of SPDRs is \$113. A trader has just bought call options on shares of SPDRs for a premium of \$3 per share. The call options expire in five months and have an exercise price of \$120 per share. On the expiration date, the trader will exercise the call options (ignore any transaction costs) if and only if the shares of SPDRs are trading:
- A below \$120 per share.
 - B above \$120 per share.
 - C above \$123 per share.
- 16 Which of the following statements about exchange-traded funds is *most correct*?
- A Exchange-traded funds are not backed by any assets.
 - B The investment companies that create exchange-traded funds are financial intermediaries.
 - C The transaction costs of trading shares of exchange-traded funds are substantially greater than the combined costs of trading the underlying assets of the fund.
- 17 Jason Schmidt works for a hedge fund and he specializes in finding profit opportunities that are the result of inefficiencies in the market for convertible bonds—bonds that can be converted into a predetermined amount of a company's common stock. Schmidt tries to find convertibles that are priced inefficiently relative to the underlying stock. The trading strategy involves the simultaneous purchase of the convertible bond and the short sale of the underlying common stock. The above process could best be described as:
- A hedging.
 - B arbitrage.
 - C securitization.
- 18 Pierre-Louis Robert just purchased a call option on shares of the Michelin Group. A few days ago he wrote a put option on Michelin shares. The call and put options have the same exercise price, expiration date, and number of shares underlying. Considering both positions, Robert's exposure to the risk of the stock of the Michelin Group is:
- A long.
 - B short.
 - C neutral.

- 19 An online brokerage firm has set the minimum margin requirement at 55 percent. What is the maximum leverage ratio associated with a position financed by this minimum margin requirement?
- A 1.55.
 - B 1.82.
 - C 2.22.
- 20 A trader has purchased 200 shares of a non-dividend-paying firm on margin at a price of \$50 per share. The leverage ratio is 2.5. Six months later, the trader sells these shares at \$60 per share. Ignoring the interest paid on the borrowed amount and the transaction costs, what was the return to the trader during the six-month period?
- A 20 percent.
 - B 33.33 percent.
 - C 50 percent.
- 21 Jason Williams purchased 500 shares of a company at \$32 per share. The stock was bought on 75 percent margin. One month later, Williams had to pay interest on the amount borrowed at a rate of 2 percent per month. At that time, Williams received a dividend of \$0.50 per share. Immediately after that he sold the shares at \$28 per share. He paid commissions of \$10 on the purchase and \$10 on the sale of the stock. What was the rate of return on this investment for the one-month period?
- A -12.5 percent.
 - B -15.4 percent.
 - C -50.1 percent.
- 22 Caroline Rogers believes the price of Gamma Corp. stock will go down in the near future. She has decided to sell short 200 shares of Gamma Corp. at the current market price of €47. The initial margin requirement is 40 percent. Which of the following is an appropriate statement regarding the margin requirement that Rogers is subject to on this short sale?
- A She will need to contribute €3,760 as margin.
 - B She will need to contribute €5,640 as margin.
 - C She will only need to leave the proceeds from the short sale as deposit and does not need to contribute any additional funds.
- 23 The current price of a stock is \$25 per share. You have \$10,000 to invest. You borrow an additional \$10,000 from your broker and invest \$20,000 in the stock. If the maintenance margin is 30 percent, at what price will a margin call first occur?
- A \$9.62.
 - B \$17.86.
 - C \$19.71.
- 24 You have placed a sell market-on-open order—a market order that would automatically be submitted at the market's open tomorrow and would fill at the market price. Your instruction, to sell the shares at the market open, is a(n):
- A execution instruction.
 - B validity instruction.
 - C clearing instruction.
- 25 A market has the following limit orders standing on its book for a particular stock. The bid and ask sizes are number of shares in hundreds.

Bid Size	Limit Price (€)	Offer Size
5	9.73	
12	9.81	
4	9.84	
6	9.95	
	10.02	5
	10.10	12
	10.14	8

What is the market?

- A 9.73 bid, offered at 10.14.
 - B 9.81 bid, offered at 10.10.
 - C 9.95 bid, offered at 10.02.
- 26 Consider the following limit order book for a stock. The bid and ask sizes are number of shares in hundreds.

Bid Size	Limit Price (¥)	Offer Size
3	122.80	
8	123.00	
4	123.35	
	123.80	7
	124.10	6
	124.50	7

A new buy limit order is placed for 300 shares at ¥123.40. This limit order is said to:

- A take the market.
 - B make the market.
 - C make a new market.
- 27 Currently, the market in a stock is “\$54.62 bid, offered at \$54.71.” A new sell limit order is placed at \$54.62. This limit order is said to:
- A take the market.
 - B make the market.
 - C make a new market.
- 28 Jim White has sold short 100 shares of Super Stores at a price of \$42 per share. He has also simultaneously placed a “good-till-cancelled, stop 50, limit 55 buy” order. Assume that if the stop condition specified by White is satisfied and the order becomes valid, it will get executed. Excluding transaction costs, what is the maximum possible loss that White can have?
- A \$800.
 - B \$1,300.
 - C Unlimited.
- 29 You own shares of a company that are currently trading at \$30 a share. Your technical analysis of the shares indicates a support level of \$27.50. That is, if the price of the shares is going down, it is more likely to stay above this level rather than fall below it. If the price does fall below this level, however, you believe that the price may continue to decline. You have no immediate intent to sell the

- shares but are concerned about the possibility of a huge loss if the share price declines below the support level. Which of the following types of orders could you place to most appropriately address your concern?
- A** Short sell order.
B Good-till-cancelled stop sell order.
C Good-till-cancelled stop buy order.
- 30** In an underwritten offering, the risk that the entire issue may not be sold to the public at the stipulated offering price is borne by the:
- A** issuer.
B investment bank.
C buyers of the part of the issue that is sold.
- 31** A British company listed on the Alternative Investment Market of the London Stock Exchange, announced the sale of 6,686,665 shares to a small group of qualified investors at £0.025 per share. Which of the following *best describes* this sale?
- A** Shelf registration.
B Private placement.
C Initial public offering.
- 32** A German publicly traded company, to raise new capital, gave its existing shareholders the opportunity to subscribe for new shares. The existing shareholders could purchase two new shares at a subscription price of €4.58 per share for every 15 shares held. This is an example of a(n):
- A** rights offering.
B private placement.
C initial public offering.
- 33** Consider an order-driven system that allows hidden orders. The following four sell orders on a particular stock are currently in the system's limit order book. Based on the commonly used order precedence hierarchy, which of these orders will have precedence over others?

Order	Time of Arrival (HH:MM:SS)	Limit Price (€)	Special Instruction (If any)
I	9:52:01	20.33	
II	9:52:08	20.29	Hidden order
III	9:53:04	20.29	
IV	9:53:49	20.29	

- A** Order I (time of arrival of 9:52:01).
B Order II (time of arrival of 9:52:08).
C Order III (time of arrival of 9:53:04).
- 34** Zhenhu Li has submitted an immediate-or-cancel buy order for 500 shares of a company at a limit price of CNY 74.25. There are two sell limit orders standing in that stock's order book at that time. One is for 300 shares at a limit price of CNY 74.30 and the other is for 400 shares at a limit price of CNY 74.35. How many shares in Li's order would get cancelled?
- A** None (the order would remain open but unfilled).
B 200 (300 shares would get filled).
C 500 (there would be no fill).

- 35 A market has the following limit orders standing on its book for a particular stock:

Buyer	Bid Size		Offer Size		Seller
	(Number of Shares)	Limit Price (£)	(Number of Shares)		
Keith	1,000	19.70			
Paul	200	19.84			
Ann	400	19.89			
Mary	300	20.02			
		20.03	800		Jack
		20.11	1,100		Margaret
		20.16	400		Jeff

Ian submits a day order to sell 1,000 shares, limit £19.83. Assuming that no more buy orders are submitted on that day after Ian submits his order, what would be Ian's average trade price?

- A £19.70.
 B £19.92.
 C £20.05.
- 36 A financial analyst is examining whether a country's financial market is well functioning. She finds that the transaction costs in this market are low and trading volumes are high. She concludes that the market is quite liquid. In such a market:
- A traders will find it hard to make use of their information.
 B traders will find it easy to trade and their trading will make the market less informationally efficient.
 C traders will find it easy to trade and their trading will make the market more informationally efficient.
- 37 The government of a country whose financial markets are in an early stage of development has hired you as a consultant on financial market regulation. Your first task is to prepare a list of the objectives of market regulation. Which of the following is *least likely* to be included in this list of objectives?
- A Minimize agency problems in the financial markets.
 B Ensure that financial markets are fair and orderly.
 C Ensure that investors in the stock market achieve a rate of return that is at least equal to the risk-free rate of return.

SOLUTIONS

- 1 C is correct. Takabe is best characterized as an information-motivated trader. Takabe believes that his model provides him superior information about the movements in the stock market and his motive for trading is to profit from this information.
- 2 B is correct. Beach is an investor. He is simply investing in risky assets consistent with his level of risk aversion. Beach is not hedging any existing risk or using information to identify and trade mispriced securities. Therefore, he is not a hedger or an information-motivated trader.
- 3 A is correct. Smith is a hedger. The short position on the BRL futures contract offsets the BRL long position in three months. She is hedging the risk of the BRL depreciating against the USD. If the BRL depreciates, the value of the cash inflow goes down in USD terms but there is a gain on the futures contracts.
- 4 A is correct. Regulation of arbitrageurs' profits is not a function of the financial system. The financial system facilitates the allocation of capital to the best uses and the purposes for which people use the financial system, including borrowing money.
- 5 C is correct. The purchase of real estate properties is a transaction in the alternative investment market.
- 6 B is correct. The 90-day commercial paper and negotiable certificates of deposit are money market instruments.
- 7 B is correct. This transaction is a sale in the primary market. It is a sale of shares from the issuer to the investor and funds flow to the issuer of the security from the purchaser.
- 8 A is correct. Warrants are least likely to be part of the fund. Warrant holders have the right to buy the issuer's common stock. Thus, warrants are typically classified as equity and are least likely to be a part of a fixed-income mutual fund. Commercial paper and repurchase agreements are short-term fixed-income securities.
- 9 C is correct. When investors want to sell their shares, investors of an open-end fund sell the shares back to the fund whereas investors of a closed-end fund sell the shares to others in the secondary market. Closed-end funds are available to new investors but they must purchase shares in the fund in the secondary market. The shares of a closed-end fund trade at a premium or discount to net asset value.
- 10 A is correct. Once you have entered into a forward contract, it is difficult to exit from the contract. As opposed to a futures contract, trading out of a forward contract is quite difficult. There is no exchange of cash at the origination of a forward contract. There is no exchange on a forward contract until the maturity of the contract.
- 11 A is correct. Harris is least likely to find counterparty risk associated with a futures contract. There is limited counterparty risk in a futures contract because the clearinghouse is on the other side of every contract.
- 12 B is correct. Buying a put option on the dollar will ensure a minimum exchange rate but does not have to be exercised if the exchange rate moves in a favorable direction. Forward and futures contracts would lock in a fixed rate but would not allow for the possibility to profit in case the value of the dollar three months later in the spot market turns out to be greater than the value in the forward or futures contract.

- 13** B is correct. The agreement between the publisher and the paper supplier to respectively buy and supply paper in the future at a price agreed upon today is a forward contract.
- 14** B is correct. SPDRs trade in the secondary market and are a pooled investment vehicle.
- 15** B is correct. The holder of the call option will exercise the call options if the price is above the exercise price of \$120 per share. Note that if the stock price is above \$120 but less than \$123, the option would be exercised even though the net result for the option buyer after considering the premium is a loss. For example, if the stock price is \$122, the option buyer would exercise the option to make $\$2 = \$122 - \$120$ per share, resulting in a loss of $\$1 = \$3 - \$2$ after considering the premium. It is better to exercise and have a loss of only \$1, however, rather than not exercise and lose the entire \$3 premium.
- 16** B is correct. The investment companies that create exchange-traded funds (ETFs) are financial intermediaries. ETFs are securities that represent ownership in the assets held by the fund. The transaction costs of trading shares of ETFs are substantially lower than the combined costs of trading the underlying assets of the ETF.
- 17** B is correct. The process can best be described as arbitrage because it involves buying and selling instruments, whose values are closely related, at different prices in different markets.
- 18** A is correct. Robert's exposure to the risk of the stock of the Michelin Group is long. The exposure as a result of the long call position is long. The exposure as a result of the short put position is also long. Therefore, the combined exposure is long.
- 19** B is correct. The maximum leverage ratio is $1.82 = 100\% \text{ position} \div 55\% \text{ equity}$. The maximum leverage ratio associated with a position financed by the minimum margin requirement is one divided by the minimum margin requirement.
- 20** C is correct. The return is 50 percent. If the position had been unleveraged, the return would be $20\% = (60 - 50)/50$. Because of leverage, the return is $50\% = 2.5 \times 20\%$.

Another way to look at this problem is that the equity contributed by the trader (the minimum margin requirement) is $40\% = 100\% \div 2.5$. The trader contributed $\$20 = 40\%$ of \$50 per share. The gain is \$10 per share, resulting in a return of $50\% = 10/20$.

- 21** B is correct. The return is -15.4 percent.
- Total cost of the purchase = $\$16,000 = 500 \times \32
- Equity invested = $\$12,000 = 0.75 \times \$16,000$
- Amount borrowed = $\$4,000 = 16,000 - 12,000$
- Interest paid at month end = $\$80 = 0.02 \times \$4,000$
- Dividend received at month end = $\$250 = 500 \times \0.50
- Proceeds on stock sale = $\$14,000 = 500 \times \28
- Total commissions paid = $\$20 = \$10 + \$10$
- Net gain/loss = $-\$1,850 = -16,000 - 80 + 250 + 14,000 - 20$
- Initial investment including commission on purchase = $\$12,010$
- Return = $-15.4\% = -\$1,850/\$12,010$

- 22** A is correct. She will need to contribute €3,760 as margin. In view of the possibility of a loss, if the stock price goes up, she will need to contribute €3,760 = 40% of €9,400 as the initial margin. Rogers will need to leave the proceeds from the short sale (€9,400 = 200 × €47) on deposit.
- 23** B is correct. A margin call will first occur at a price of \$17.86. Because you have contributed half and borrowed the remaining half, your initial equity is 50 percent of the initial stock price, or \$12.50 = 0.50 × \$25. If P is the subsequent price, your equity would change by an amount equal to the change in price. So, your equity at price P would be $12.50 + (P - 25)$. A margin call will occur when the percentage margin drops to 30 percent. So, the price at which a margin call will occur is the solution to the following equation.

$$\frac{\text{Equity/Share}}{\text{Price/Share}} = \frac{12.50 + P - 25}{P} = 30\%$$

The solution is $P = \$17.86$.

- 24** B is correct. An instruction regarding when to fill an order is considered a validity instruction.
- 25** C is correct. The market is 9.95 bid, offered at 10.02. The best bid is at €9.95 and the best offer is €10.02.
- 26** C is correct. This order is said to make a new market. The new buy order is at ¥123.40, which is better than the current best bid of ¥123.35. Therefore, the buy order is making a new market. Had the new order been at ¥123.35, it would be said to make the market. Because the new buy limit order is at a price less than the best offer of ¥123.80, it will not immediately execute and is not taking the market.
- 27** A is correct. This order is said to take the market. The new sell order is at \$54.62, which is at the current best bid. Therefore, the new sell order will immediately trade with the current best bid and is taking the market.
- 28** B is correct. The maximum possible loss is \$1,300. If the stock price crosses \$50, the stop buy order will become valid and will get executed at a maximum limit price of \$55. The maximum loss per share is \$13 = \$55 - \$42, or \$1,300 for 100 shares.
- 29** B is correct. The most appropriate order is a good-till-cancelled stop sell order. This order will be acted on if the stock price declines below a specified price (in this case, \$27.50). This order is sometimes referred to as a good-till-cancelled stop loss sell order. You are generally bullish about the stock, as indicated by no immediate intent to sell, and would expect a loss on short selling the stock. A stop buy order is placed to buy a stock when the stock is going up.
- 30** B is correct. The investment bank bears the risk that the issue may be undersubscribed at the offering price. If the entire issue is not sold, the investment bank underwriting the issue will buy the unsold securities at the offering price.
- 31** B is correct. This sale is a private placement. As the company is already publicly traded, the share sale is clearly not an initial public offering. The sale also does not involve a shelf registration because the company is not selling shares to the public on a piecemeal basis.
- 32** A is correct. This offering is a rights offering. The company is distributing rights to buy stock at a fixed price to existing shareholders in proportion to their holdings.
- 33** C is correct. Order III (time of arrival of 9:53:04) has precedence. In the order precedence hierarchy, the first rule is price priority. Based on this rule, sell orders II, III, and IV get precedence over order I. The next rule is display

precedence at a given price. Because order II is a hidden order, orders III and IV get precedence. Finally, order III gets precedence over order IV based on time priority at same price and same display status.

- 34** C is correct. The order for 500 shares would get cancelled; there would be no fill. Li is willing to buy at CNY 74.25 or less but the minimum offer price in the book is CNY 74.30; therefore, no part of the order would be filled. Because Li's order is immediate-or-cancel, it would be cancelled.

- 35** B is correct. Ian's average trade price is:

$$£19.92 = \frac{300 \times £20.02 + 400 \times £19.89 + 200 \times £19.84}{300 + 400 + 200}$$

Ian's sell order first fills with the most aggressively priced buy order, which is Mary's order for 300 shares at £20.02. Ian still has 700 shares for sale. The next most aggressively priced buy order is Ann's order for 400 shares at £19.89. This order is filled. Ian still has 300 shares for sale. The next most aggressively priced buy order is Paul's order for 200 shares at £19.84. A third trade takes place. Ian still has 100 shares for sale.

The next buy order is Keith's order for 1,000 shares at £19.70. However, this price is below Ian's limit price of £19.83. Therefore, no more trade is possible.

- 36** C is correct. In such a market, well-informed traders will find it easy to trade and their trading will make the market more informationally efficient. In a liquid market, it is easier for informed traders to fill their orders. Their trading will cause prices to incorporate their information and the prices will be more in line with the fundamental values.
- 37** C is correct. Ensure that investors in the stock market achieve a rate of return that is at least equal to the risk-free rate of return is least likely to be included as an objective of market regulation. Stocks are risky investments and there would be occasions when a stock market investment would not only have a return less than the risk-free rate but also a negative return. Minimizing agency costs and ensuring that financial markets are fair and orderly are objectives of market regulation.

Security Market Indexes

by Paul D. Kaplan, PhD, CFA, and Dorothy C. Kelly, CFA

Paul D. Kaplan, PhD, CFA, is at Morningstar Research, Inc. (Canada). Dorothy C. Kelly, CFA, is at McIntire School of Commerce, University of Virginia (USA).

LEARNING OUTCOMES


<i>Mastery</i>	<i>The candidate should be able to:</i>
<input type="checkbox"/>	a. describe a security market index;
<input type="checkbox"/>	b. calculate and interpret the value, price return, and total return of an index;
<input type="checkbox"/>	c. describe the choices and issues in index construction and management;
<input type="checkbox"/>	d. compare the different weighting methods used in index construction;
<input type="checkbox"/>	e. calculate and analyze the value and return of an index given its weighting method;
<input type="checkbox"/>	f. describe rebalancing and reconstitution of an index;
<input type="checkbox"/>	g. describe uses of security market indexes;
<input type="checkbox"/>	h. describe types of equity indexes;
<input type="checkbox"/>	i. describe types of fixed-income indexes;
<input type="checkbox"/>	j. describe indexes representing alternative investments;
<input type="checkbox"/>	k. compare types of security market indexes.

INTRODUCTION

1

Investors gather and analyze vast amounts of information about security markets on a continual basis. Because this work can be both time consuming and data intensive, investors often use a single measure that consolidates this information and reflects the performance of an entire security market.

Security market indexes were first introduced as a simple measure to reflect the performance of the US stock market. Since then, security market indexes have evolved into important multi-purpose tools that help investors track the performance of various security markets, estimate risk, and evaluate the performance of investment managers. They also form the basis for new investment products.



in-dex, *noun* (pl. **in-dex-es** or **in-di-ces**) Latin *indic-*, *index*, from *indicare* to indicate: an indicator, sign, or measure of something.



ORIGIN OF MARKET INDEXES

Investors had access to regularly published data on individual security prices in London as early as 1698, but nearly 200 years passed before they had access to a simple indicator to reflect security market information. To give readers a sense of how the US stock market in general performed on a given day, publishers Charles H. Dow and Edward D. Jones introduced the Dow Jones Average, the world's first security market index, in 1884. The index, which appeared in *The Customers' Afternoon Letter*, consisted of the stocks of nine railroads and two industrial companies. It eventually became the Dow Jones Transportation Average. Convinced that industrial companies, rather than railroads, would be "the great speculative market" of the future, Dow and Jones introduced a second index in May 1896—the Dow Jones Industrial Average (DJIA). It had an initial value of 40.94 and consisted of 12 stocks from major US industries. Today, investors can choose from among thousands of indexes to measure and monitor different security markets and asset classes.

This reading is organized as follows. Section 2 defines a security market index and explains how to calculate the price return and total return of an index for a single period and over multiple periods. Section 3 describes how indexes are constructed and managed. Section 4 discusses the use of market indexes. Sections 5, 6, and 7 discuss various types of indexes, and the final section summarizes the reading. Practice problems follow the conclusions and summary.

2

INDEX DEFINITION AND CALCULATIONS OF VALUE AND RETURNS

A **security market index** represents a given security market, market segment, or asset class. Most indexes are constructed as portfolios of marketable securities.

The value of an index is calculated on a regular basis using either the actual or estimated market prices of the individual securities, known as **constituent securities**, within the index. For each security market index, investors may encounter two versions of the same index (i.e., an index with identical constituent securities and weights): one version based on price return and one version based on total return. As the name suggests, a **price return index**, also known as a **price index**, reflects *only* the prices of the constituent securities within the index. A **total return index**, in contrast, reflects not only the prices of the constituent securities but also the reinvestment of all income received since inception.

At inception, the values of the price and total return versions of an index are equal. As time passes, however, the value of the total return index, which includes the reinvestment of all dividends and/or interest received, will exceed the value of the price return index by an increasing amount. A look at how the values of each version are calculated over multiple periods illustrates why.

The value of a price return index is calculated as:

$$V_{PRI} = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^N n_i P_i}{D} \quad (1)$$

where

V_{PRI} = the value of the price return index

n_i = the number of units of constituent security i held in the index portfolio

N = the number of constituent securities in the index

P_i = the unit price of constituent security i

D = the value of the divisor

The **divisor** is a number initially chosen at inception. It is frequently chosen so that the price index has a convenient initial value, such as 1,000. The index provider then adjusts the value of the divisor as necessary to avoid changes in the index value that are unrelated to changes in the prices of its constituent securities. For example, when changing index constituents, the index provider may adjust the divisor so that the value of the index with the new constituents equals the value of the index prior to the changes.

Index return calculations, like calculations of investment portfolio returns, may measure price return or total return. **Price return** measures only price appreciation or percentage change in price. **Total return** measures price appreciation plus interest, dividends, and other distributions.

2.1 Calculation of Single-Period Returns

For a security market index, price return can be calculated in two ways: either the percentage change in value of the price return index, or the weighted average of price returns of the constituent securities. The price return of an index can be expressed as:

$$PR_I = \frac{V_{PRI1} - V_{PRI0}}{V_{PRI0}} \quad (2)$$

where

PR_I = the price return of the index portfolio (as a decimal number, i.e., 12 percent is 0.12)

V_{PRI1} = the value of the price return index at the end of the period

V_{PRI0} = the value of the price return index at the beginning of the period

Similarly, the price return of each constituent security can be expressed as:

$$PR_i = \frac{P_{i1} - P_{i0}}{P_{i0}} \quad (3)$$

where

PR_i = the price return of constituent security i (as a decimal number)

P_{i1} = the price of constituent security i at the end of the period

P_{i0} = the price of constituent security i at the beginning of the period

Because the price return of the index equals the weighted average of price returns of the individual securities, we can write:

$$PR_I = \sum_{i=1}^N w_i PR_i = \sum_{i=1}^N w_i \left(\frac{P_{i1} - P_{i0}}{P_{i0}} \right) \quad (4)$$

where:

PR_I = the price return of index portfolio (as a decimal number)

PR_i = the price return of constituent security i (as a decimal number)

N = the number of individual securities in the index

w_i = the weight of security i (the fraction of the index portfolio allocated to security i)

P_{i1} = the price of constituent security i at the end of the period

P_{i0} = the price of constituent security i at the beginning of the period

Equation 4 can be rewritten simply as:

$$PR_I = w_1 PR_1 + w_2 PR_2 + \dots + w_N PR_N \quad (5)$$

where

PR_I = the price return of index portfolio (as a decimal number)

PR_i = the price return of constituent security i (as a decimal number)

w_i = the weight of security i (the fraction of the index portfolio allocated to security i)

N = the number of securities in the index

Total return measures price appreciation plus interest, dividends, and other distributions. Thus, the **total return** of an index is the price appreciation, or change in the value of the price return index, plus income (dividends and/or interest) over the period, expressed as a percentage of the beginning value of the price return index. The total return of an index can be expressed as:

$$TR_I = \frac{V_{PRI1} - V_{PRI0} + Inc_I}{V_{PRI0}} \quad (6)$$

where

TR_I = the total return of the index portfolio (as a decimal number)

V_{PRI1} = the value of the price return index at the end of the period

V_{PRI0} = the value of the price return index at the beginning of the period

Inc_I = the total income (dividends and/or interest) from all securities in the index held over the period

The total return of an index can also be calculated as the weighted average of total returns of the constituent securities. The total return of each constituent security in the index is calculated as:

$$TR_i = \frac{P_{1i} - P_{0i} + Inc_i}{P_{0i}} \quad (7)$$

where

TR_i = the total return of constituent security i (as a decimal number)

P_{1i} = the price of constituent security i at the end of the period

P_{0i} = the price of constituent security i at the beginning of the period

Inc_i = the total income (dividends and/or interest) from security i over the period

Because the total return of an index can be calculated as the weighted average of total returns of the constituent securities, we can express total return as:

$$TR_I = \sum_{i=1}^N w_i TR_i = \sum_{i=1}^N w_i \left(\frac{P_{1i} - P_{0i} + Inc_i}{P_{0i}} \right) \tag{8}$$

Equation 8 can be rewritten simply as

$$TR_I = w_1 TR_1 + w_2 TR_2 + \dots + w_N TR_N \tag{9}$$

where

- TR_I = the total return of the index portfolio (as a decimal number)
- TR_i = the total return of constituent security *i* (as a decimal number)
- w_i = the weight of security *i* (the fraction of the index portfolio allocated to security *i*)
- N = the number of securities in the index

2.2 Calculation of Index Values over Multiple Time Periods

The calculation of index values over multiple time periods requires geometrically linking the series of index returns. With a series of price returns for an index, we can calculate the value of the price return index with the following equation:

$$V_{PRI\,T} = V_{PRI\,0}(1 + PR_{I1})(1 + PR_{I2})\dots(1 + PR_{IT}) \tag{10}$$

where

- V_{PRI0} = the value of the price return index at inception
- V_{PRI_T} = the value of the price return index at time *t*
- PR_{IT} = the price return (as a decimal number) on the index over period *t*, *t* = 1, 2, ..., *T*

For an index with an inception value set to 1,000 and price returns of 5 percent and 3 percent for Periods 1 and 2 respectively, the values of the price return index would be calculated as follows:

Period	Return (%)	Calculation	Ending Value
0		1,000(1.00)	1,000.00
1	5.00	1,000(1.05)	1,050.00
2	3.00	1,000(1.05)(1.03)	1,081.50

Similarly, the series of total returns for an index is used to calculate the value of the total return index with the following equation:

$$V_{TRIT} = V_{TRI0}(1 + TR_{I1})(1 + TR_{I2})\dots(1 + TR_{IT}) \tag{11}$$

where

- V_{TRI0} = the value of the index at inception
- V_{TRIT} = the value of the total return index at time *t*
- TR_{IT} = the total return (as a decimal number) on the index over period *t*, *t* = 1, 2, ..., *T*

Suppose that the same index yields an additional 1.5 percent return from income in Period 1 and an additional 2.0 percent return from income in Period 2, bringing the total returns for Periods 1 and 2, respectively, to 6.5 percent and 5 percent. The values of the total return index would be calculated as follows:

Period	Return (%)	Calculation	Ending Value
0		1,000(1.00)	1,000.00
1	6.50	1,000(1.065)	1,065.00
2	5.00	1,000(1.065)(1.05)	1,118.25

As illustrated above, as time passes, the value of the total return index, which includes the reinvestment of all dividends and/or interest received, exceeds the value of the price return index by an increasing amount.

3

INDEX CONSTRUCTION AND MANAGEMENT

Constructing and managing a security market index is similar to constructing and managing a portfolio of securities. Index providers must decide the following:

- 1 Which target market should the index represent?
- 2 Which securities should be selected from that target market?
- 3 How much weight should be allocated to each security in the index?
- 4 When should the index be rebalanced?
- 5 When should the security selection and weighting decision be re-examined?

3.1 Target Market and Security Selection

The first decision in index construction is identifying the target market, market segment, or asset class that the index is intended to represent. The target market may be defined very broadly or narrowly. It may be based on asset class (e.g., equities, fixed income, real estate, commodities, hedge funds); geographic region (e.g., Japan, South Africa, Latin America, Europe); the exchange on which the securities are traded (e.g., Shanghai, Toronto, Tokyo), and/or other characteristics (e.g., economic sector, company size, investment style, duration, or credit quality).

The target market determines the investment universe and the securities available for inclusion in the index. Once the investment universe is identified, the number of securities and the specific securities to include in the index must be determined. The constituent securities could be nearly all those in the target market or a representative sample of the target market. Some equity indexes, such as the S&P 500 Index and the FTSE 100, fix the number of securities included in the index and indicate this number in the name of the index. Other indexes allow the number of securities to vary to reflect changes in the target market or to maintain a certain percentage of the target market. For example, the Tokyo Stock Price Index (TOPIX) represents and includes all of the largest stocks, known as the First Section, listed on the Tokyo Stock Exchange. To be included in the First Section—and thus the TOPIX—stocks must meet certain criteria, such as the number of shares outstanding, the number of shareholders, and market capitalization. Stocks that no longer meet the criteria are removed from the First Section and also the TOPIX. Objective or mechanical rules determine the constituent securities of most, but not all, indexes. The Sensex of Bombay and the S&P 500, for example, use a selection committee and more subjective decision-making rules to determine constituent securities.

3.2 Index Weighting

The weighting decision determines how much of each security to include in the index and has a substantial impact on an index's value. Index providers use a number of methods to weight the constituent securities in an index. Indexes can be price weighted, equal weighted, market-capitalization weighted, or fundamentally weighted. Each weighting method has its advantages and disadvantages.

3.2.1 Price Weighting

The simplest method to weight an index and the one used by Charles Dow to construct the Dow Jones Industrial Average is **price weighting**. In price weighting, the weight on each constituent security is determined by dividing its price by the sum of all the prices of the constituent securities. The weight is calculated using the following formula:

$$w_i^P = \frac{P_i}{\sum_{i=1}^N P_i} \quad (12)$$

Exhibit 1 illustrates the values, weights, and single-period returns following inception of a price-weighted equity index with five constituent securities. The value of the price-weighted index is determined by dividing the sum of the security values (101.50) by the divisor, which is typically set at inception to equal the initial number of securities in the index. Thus, in our example, the divisor is 5 and the initial value of the index is calculated as $101.50 \div 5 = 20.30$.

As illustrated in this exhibit, Security A, which has the highest price, also has the highest weighting and thus will have the greatest impact on the return of the index. Note how both the price return and the total return of the index are calculated on the basis of the corresponding returns on the constituent securities.

A property unique to price-weighted indexes is that a stock split on one constituent security changes the weights on all the securities in the index.¹ To prevent the stock split and the resulting new weights from changing the value of the index, the index provider must adjust the value of the divisor as illustrated in Exhibit 2. Given a 2-for-1 split in Security A, the divisor is adjusted by dividing the sum of the constituent prices *after* the split (77.50) by the value of the index *before* the split (21.00). This adjustment results in changing the divisor from 5 to 3.69 so that the index value is maintained at 21.00.

The primary advantage of price weighting is its simplicity. The main disadvantage of price weighting is that it results in arbitrary weights for each security. In particular, a stock split in any one security causes arbitrary changes in the weights of all the constituents' securities.

Exhibit 2 Impact of 2-for-1 Split in Security A

Security	Price before Split	Weight before Split (%)	Price after Split	Weight after Split (%)
A	55.00	52.38	27.50	35.48
B	22.00	20.95	22.00	28.39
C	8.00	7.62	8.00	10.32
D	14.00	13.33	14.00	18.07

(continued)

¹ A stock split is an increase in the number of shares outstanding and a proportionate decrease in the price per share such that the total market value of equity, as well as investors' proportionate ownership in the company, does not change.

Exhibit 1 Example of a Price-Weighted Equity Index

Security	Shares in Index	BOP Price	Value (Shares × BOP Price)	BOP Weight (%)	EOP Price	Dividends Per Share	Value (Shares × EOP Price)	Total Dividends	Price Return (%)	Total Return (%)	BOP Weight × Price Return (%)	BOP Weight × Total Return (%)	EOP Weight (%)
A	1	50.00	50.00	49.26	55.00	0.75	55.00	0.75	10.00	11.50	4.93	5.66	52.38
B	1	25.00	25.00	24.63	22.00	0.10	22.00	0.10	-12.00	-11.60	-2.96	-2.86	20.95
C	1	12.50	12.50	12.32	8.00	0.00	8.00	0.00	-36.00	-36.00	-4.43	-4.43	7.62
D	1	10.00	10.00	9.85	14.00	0.05	14.00	0.05	40.00	40.50	3.94	3.99	13.33
E	1	4.00	4.00	3.94	6.00	0.00	6.00	0.00	50.00	50.00	1.97	1.97	5.72
Total			101.50	100.00			105.00	0.90			3.45	4.33	100.00
Index Value			20.30				21.00	0.18			3.45	4.33	

Divisor = 5

BOP = Beginning of period

EOP = End of period

Type of Index	BOP Value	Return (%)	EOP Value
Price Return	20.30	3.45	21.00
Total Return	20.30	4.33	21.18

Exhibit 2 (Continued)

Security	Price before Split	Weight before Split (%)	Price after Split	Weight after Split (%)
E	6.00	5.72	6.00	7.74
Total	105.00	100.00	77.50	100.00
Divisor	5.00		3.69	
Index Value	21.00		21.00	

3.2.2 Equal Weighting

Another simple index weighting method is **equal weighting**. This method assigns an equal weight to each constituent security at inception. The weights are calculated as:

$$w_i^E = \frac{1}{N} \quad (13)$$

where

w_i = fraction of the portfolio that is allocated to security i or weight of security i

N = number of securities in the index

To construct an equal-weighted index from the five securities in Exhibit 1, the index provider allocates one-fifth (20 percent) of the value of the index (at the beginning of the period) to each security. Dividing the value allocated to each security by each security's individual share price determines the number of shares of each security to include in the index. Unlike a price-weighted index, where the weights are arbitrarily determined by the market prices, the weights in an equal-weighted index are arbitrarily assigned by the index provider.

Exhibit 3 illustrates the values, weights, and single-period returns following inception of an equal-weighted index with the same constituent securities as those in Exhibit 1. This example assumes a beginning index portfolio value of 10,000 (i.e., an investment of 2,000 in each security). To set the initial value of the index to 1,000, the divisor is set to 10 ($10,000 \div 10 = 1,000$).

Exhibits 1 and 3 demonstrate how different weighting methods result in different returns. The 10.4 percent price return of the equal-weighted index shown in Exhibit 3 differs significantly from the 3.45 percent price return of the price-weighted index in Exhibit 1.

Like price weighting, the primary advantage of equal weighting is its simplicity. Equal weighting, however, has a number of disadvantages. First, securities that constitute the largest fraction of the target market value are underrepresented, and securities that constitute a small fraction of the target market value are overrepresented. Second, after the index is constructed and the prices of constituent securities change, the index is no longer equally weighted. Therefore, maintaining equal weights requires frequent adjustments (rebalancing) to the index.

3.2.3 Market-Capitalization Weighting

In **market-capitalization weighting**, or value weighting, the weight on each constituent security is determined by dividing its market capitalization by the total market capitalization (the sum of the market capitalization) of all the securities in the index. Market capitalization or value is calculated by multiplying the number of shares outstanding by the market price per share.

Exhibit 3 Example of an Equal-Weighted Equity Index

Security	Shares in Index	BOP Price	Value (Shares × BOP Price)	Weight (%)	EOP Price	Dividends Per Share	Value (Shares × EOP Price)	Total Dividends	Price Return (%)	Total Return (%)	Weight × Price Return (%)	Weight × Total Return (%)	EOP Weight (%)
A	40	50.00	2,000	20.00	55.00	0.75	2,200	30	10.00	11.50	2.00	2.30	19.93
B	80	25.00	2,000	20.00	22.00	0.10	1,760	8	-12.00	-11.60	-2.40	-2.32	15.94
C	160	12.50	2,000	20.00	8.00	0.00	1,280	0	-36.00	-36.00	-7.20	-7.20	11.60
D	200	10.00	2,000	20.00	14.00	0.05	2,800	10	40.00	40.50	8.00	8.10	25.36
E	500	4.00	2,000	20.00	6.00	0.00	3,000	0	50.00	50.00	10.00	10.00	27.17
Total			10,000	100.00			11,040	48			10.40	10.88	100.00
Index Value			1,000				1,104	4.80			10.40	10.88	

Divisor = 10

BOP = Beginning of period

EOP = End of period

Type of Index	BOP Value	Return (%)	EOP Value
Price	1,000.00	10.40	1,104.00
Return			
Total Return	1,000.00	10.88	1,108.80

The market-capitalization weight of security i is:

$$w_i^M = \frac{Q_i P_i}{\sum_{j=1}^N Q_j P_j} \quad (14)$$

where

w_i = fraction of the portfolio that is allocated to security i or weight of security i

Q_i = number of shares outstanding of security i

P_i = share price of security i

N = number of securities in the index

Exhibit 4 illustrates the values, weights, and single-period returns following inception of a market-capitalization-weighted index for the same five-security market. Security A, with 3,000 shares outstanding and a price of 50 per share, has a market capitalization of 150,000 or 26.29 percent (150,000/570,500) of the entire index portfolio. The resulting index weights in the exhibit reflect the relative value of each security as measured by its market capitalization.

As shown in Exhibits 1, 3, and 4, the weighting method affects the index's returns. The price and total returns of the market-capitalization index in Exhibit 4 (1.49 percent and 2.13 percent, respectively) differ significantly from those of the price-weighted (3.45 percent and 4.33 percent, respectively) and equal-weighted (10.40 percent and 10.88 percent respectively) indexes. To understand the source and magnitude of the difference, compare the weights and returns of each security under each of the weighting methods. The weight of Security A, for example, ranges from 49.26 percent in the price-weighted index to 20 percent in the equal-weighted index. With a price return of 10 percent, Security A contributes 4.93 percent to the price return of the price-weighted index, 2.00 percent to the price return of the equal-weighted index, and 2.63 percent to the price return of the market-capitalization-weighted index. With a total return of 11.50 percent, Security A contributes 5.66 percent to the total return of the price-weighted index, 2.30 percent to the total return of the equal-weighted index, and 3.02 percent to the total return of the market-capitalization-weighted index.

3.2.3.1 Float-Adjusted Market-Capitalization Weighting In **float-adjusted market-capitalization weighting**, the weight on each constituent security is determined by adjusting its market capitalization for its **market float**. Typically, market float is the number of shares of the constituent security that are available to the investing public. For companies that are closely held, only a portion of the shares outstanding are available to the investing public (the rest are held by a small group of controlling investors). In addition to excluding shares held by controlling shareholders, most float-adjusted market-capitalization-weighted indexes also exclude shares held by other corporations and governments. Some providers of indexes that are designed to represent the investment opportunities of global investors further reduce the number of shares included in the index by excluding shares that are not available to foreign investors. The index providers may refer to these indexes as “free-float-adjusted market-capitalization-weighted indexes.”

Float-adjusted market-capitalization-weighted indexes reflect the shares available for public trading by multiplying the market price per share by the number of shares available to the investing public (i.e., the float-adjusted market capitalization) rather than the total number of shares outstanding (total market capitalization). Currently, most market-capitalization-weighted indexes are float adjusted. Therefore, unless otherwise indicated, for the remainder of this reading, “market-capitalization” weighting refers to float-adjusted market-capitalization weighting.

Exhibit 4 Example of a Market-Capitalization-Weighted Equity Index

Stock	Shares Out- standing	BOP Price	BOP Market Cap	BOP Weight (%)	EOP Price	Dividends Per Share	EOP Market Cap	Total Dividends	Price Return (%)	Total Return (%)	BOP Weight × Price Return (%)	BOP Weight × Total Return (%)	EOP Weight (%)
A	3,000	50.00	150,000	26.29	55.00	0.75	165,000	2,250	10.00	11.50	2.63	3.02	28.50
B	10,000	25.00	250,000	43.82	22.00	0.10	220,000	1,000	-12.00	-11.60	-5.26	-5.08	38.00
C	5,000	12.50	62,500	10.96	8.00	0.00	40,000	0	-36.00	-36.00	-3.95	-3.95	6.91
D	8,000	10.00	80,000	14.02	14.00	0.05	112,000	400	40.00	40.50	5.61	5.68	19.34
E	7,000	4.00	28,000	4.91	6.00	0.00	42,000	0	50.00	50.00	2.46	2.46	7.25
Total			570,500	100.00			579,000	3,650			1.49	2.13	100.00
Index Value			1,000				1,014.90	6.40	1.49	2.13			

Divisor = 570.50

BOP = Beginning of period

EOP = End of period

Type of Index	BOP Value	Return (%)	EOP Value
Price	1,000.00	1.49	1,014.90
Return			
Total	1,000.00	2.13	1,021.30
Return			

The float-adjusted market-capitalization weight of security i is calculated as:

$$w_i^M = \frac{f_i Q_i P_i}{\sum_{j=1}^N f_j Q_j P_j} \quad (15)$$

where

f_i = fraction of shares outstanding in the market float

w_i = fraction of the portfolio that is allocated to security i or weight of security i

Q_i = number of shares outstanding of security i

P_i = share price of security i

N = number of securities in the index

Exhibit 5 illustrates the values, weights, and single-period returns following inception of a float-adjusted market-capitalization-weighted equity index using the same five securities as before. The low percentage of shares of Security D in the market float compared with the number of shares outstanding indicates that the security is closely held.

The primary advantage of market-capitalization weighting (including float adjusted) is that constituent securities are held in proportion to their value in the target market. The primary disadvantage is that constituent securities whose prices have risen the most (or fallen the most) have a greater (or lower) weight in the index (i.e., as a security's price rises relative to other securities in the index, its weight increases; and as its price decreases in value relative to other securities in the index, its weight decreases). This weighting method leads to over weighting stocks that have risen in price (and may be overvalued) and under weighting stocks that have declined in price (and may be undervalued). The effect of this weighting method is similar to a momentum investment strategy in that over time, the securities that have risen in price the most will have the largest weights in the index.

3.2.4 Fundamental Weighting

Fundamental weighting attempts to address the disadvantages of market-capitalization weighting by using measures of a company's size that are independent of its security price to determine the weight on each constituent security. These measures include book value, cash flow, revenues, earnings, dividends, and number of employees.

Some fundamental indexes use a single measure, such as total dividends, to weight the constituent securities, whereas others combine the weights from several measures to form a composite value that is used for weighting.

Letting F_i denote a given fundamental size measure of company i , the fundamental weight on security i is:

$$w_i^F = \frac{F_i}{\sum_{j=1}^N F_j} \quad (16)$$

Relative to a market-capitalization-weighted index, a fundamental index with weights based on such an item as earnings will result in greater weights on constituent securities with earnings yields (earnings divided by price) that are higher than the earnings yield of the overall market-weighted portfolio. Similarly, stocks with earnings yields less than the yield on the overall market-weighted portfolio will have lower weights. For example, suppose there are two stocks in an index. Stock A has a market capitalization of €200 million, Stock B has a market capitalization of €800 million, and their aggregate market capitalization is €1 billion (€1,000 million). Both companies

Exhibit 5 Example of Float-Adjusted Market-Capitalization-Weighted Equity Index

Stock	Shares Out- standing	Shares in Market		Shares in Index	BOP Price	BOP Float- Adjusted Market Cap		BOP Weight (%)	EOP Price	Dividends Per Share	Ending Float- Adjusted Market Cap	Total Dividends	Price Return (%)	Total Return (%)	BOP Weight × Price Return (%)	BOP Weight × Total Return (%)	EOP Weight (%)
		Float	Market			Adjusted Market Cap	Adjusted Market Cap										
A	3,000	100	3,000	3,000	50.00	150,000	150,000	35.40	55.00	0.75	165,000	2,250	10.00	11.50	3.54	4.07	39.61
B	10,000	70	7,000	7,000	25.00	175,000	154,000	41.31	22.00	0.10	154,000	700	-12.00	-11.60	-4.96	-4.79	36.97
C	5,000	90	4,500	4,500	12.50	56,250	36,000	13.28	8.00	0.00	36,000	0	-36.00	-36.00	-4.78	-4.78	8.64
D	8,000	25	2,000	2,000	10.00	20,000	28,000	4.72	14.00	0.05	28,000	100	40.00	40.50	1.89	1.91	6.72
E	7,000	80	5,600	5,600	4.00	22,400	33,600	5.29	6.00	0.00	33,600	0	50.00	50.00	2.65	2.65	8.06
Total						423,650	416,600	100.00			416,600	3,050			-1.66	-0.94	100.00
Index Value						1,000	983.36				983.36	7.20			-1.66	-0.94	

Divisor = 423.65

BOP = Beginning of period

EOP = End of period

Type of Index	Initial Value	Return (%)	Ending Value
Price Return	1,000.00	-1.66	983.36
Total Return	1,000.00	-0.94	990.56

have earnings of €20 million and aggregate earnings of €40 million. Thus, Stock A has an earnings yield of 10 percent ($20/200$) and Stock B has an earnings yield of 2.5 percent ($20/800$). The earnings weight of Stock A is 50 percent ($20/40$), which is higher than its market-capitalization weight of 20 percent ($200/1,000$). The earnings weight of Stock B is 50 percent ($20/40$), which is less than its market-capitalization weight of 80 percent ($800/1,000$). Relative to the market-cap-weighted index, the earnings-weighted index over-weights the high-yield Stock A and under-weights the low-yield Stock B.

The most important property of fundamental weighting is that it leads to indexes that have a “value” tilt. That is, a fundamentally weighted index has ratios of book value, earnings, dividends, etc. to market value that are higher than its market-capitalization-weighted counterpart. Also, in contrast to the momentum “effect” of market-capitalization-weighted indexes, fundamentally weighted indexes generally will have a contrarian “effect” in that the portfolio weights will shift away from securities that have increased in relative value and toward securities that have fallen in relative value whenever the portfolio is rebalanced.

3.3 Index Management: Rebalancing and Reconstitution

So far, we have discussed index construction. Index management entails the two remaining questions:

- When should the index be rebalanced?
- When should the security selection and weighting decisions be re-examined?

3.3.1 Rebalancing

Rebalancing refers to adjusting the weights of the constituent securities in the index. To maintain the weight of each security consistent with the index’s weighting method, the index provider rebalances the index by adjusting the weights of the constituent securities on a regularly scheduled basis (rebalancing dates)—usually quarterly. Rebalancing is necessary because the weights of the constituent securities change as their market prices change. Note, for example, that the weights of the securities in the equal-weighted index (Exhibit 3) at the end of the period are no longer equal (i.e., 20 percent):

Security A	19.93%
Security B	15.94
Security C	11.60
Security D	25.36
Security E	27.17

In rebalancing the index, the weights of Securities D and E (which had the highest returns) would be decreased and the weights of Securities A, B, and C (which had the lowest returns) would be increased. Thus, rebalancing creates turnover within an index.

Price-weighted indexes are not rebalanced because the weight of each constituent security is determined by its price. For market-capitalization-weighted indexes, rebalancing is less of a concern because the indexes largely rebalance themselves. In our market-capitalization index, for example, the weight of Security C automatically declined from 10.96 percent to 6.91 percent, reflecting the 36 percent decline in its market price. Market-capitalization weights are only adjusted to reflect mergers, acquisitions, liquidations, and other corporate actions between rebalancing dates.

3.3.2 Reconstitution

Reconstitution is the process of changing the constituent securities in an index. It is similar to a portfolio manager deciding to change the securities in his or her portfolio. Reconstitution is part of the rebalancing cycle. The reconstitution date is the date on which index providers review the constituent securities, re-apply the initial criteria for inclusion in the index, and select which securities to retain, remove, or add. Constituent securities that no longer meet the criteria are replaced with securities that do meet the criteria. Once the revised list of constituent securities is determined, the weighting method is re-applied. Indexes are reconstituted to reflect changes in the target market (bankruptcies, de-listings, mergers, acquisitions, etc.) and/or to reflect the judgment of the selection committee.

Reconstitution creates turnover in a number of different ways, particularly for market-capitalization-weighted indexes. When one security is removed and another is added, the index provider has to change the weights of the other securities in order to maintain the market-capitalization weighting of the index.

The frequency of reconstitution is a major issue for widely used indexes and their constituent securities. The Russell 2000 Index, for example, reconstitutes annually. It is used as a benchmark by numerous investment funds, and each year, prior to the index's reconstitution, the managers of these funds buy stocks they think will be added to the index—driving those stocks' prices up—and sell stocks they think will be deleted from the index—driving those stocks' prices down. Exhibit 6 illustrates the potential impact of these decisions. Beginning in late April 2009, some managers began acquiring and bidding up the price of Uranium Energy Corporation (UEC) because they believed that it would be included in the reconstituted Russell 2000 Index. On 12 June, Russell listed UEC as a preliminary addition to the Russell 2000 Index and the Russell 3000 Index.² By that time, the stock value had increased by more than 300 percent. Investors continued to bid up the stock price in the weeks following the announcement, and the stock closed on the reconstitution date of 30 June at USD2.90, up nearly 400 percent for the quarter.

² According to the press release, final membership in the index would be published after market close on Friday, 26 June.

Exhibit 6 Three-Month Performance of Uranium Energy Corporation and NASDAQ April through June 2009



Source: Yahoo! Finance and Capital IQ.

USES OF MARKET INDEXES

4

Indexes were initially created to give a sense of how a particular security market performed on a given day. With the development of modern financial theory, their uses in investment management have expanded significantly. Some of the major uses of indexes include:

- gauges of market sentiment;
- proxies for measuring and modeling returns, systematic risk, and risk-adjusted performance;
- proxies for asset classes in asset allocation models;
- benchmarks for actively managed portfolios; and
- model portfolios for such investment products as index funds and exchange-traded funds (ETFs).

Investors using security market indexes must be familiar with how various indexes are constructed in order to select the index or indexes most appropriate for their needs.

4.1 Gauges of Market Sentiment

The original purpose of stock market indexes was to provide a gauge of investor confidence or market sentiment. As indicators of the collective opinion of market participants, indexes reflect investor attitudes and behavior. The Dow Jones Industrial Average has a long history, is frequently quoted in the media, and remains a popular gauge of market sentiment. It may not accurately reflect the overall attitude of investors or the “market,” however, because the index consists of only 30 of the thousands of US stocks traded each day.

4.2 Proxies for Measuring and Modeling Returns, Systematic Risk, and Risk-Adjusted Performance

The capital asset pricing model (CAPM) defines beta as the systematic risk of a security with respect to the entire market. The market portfolio in the CAPM consists of all risky securities. To represent the performance of the market portfolio, investors use a broad index. For example, the Tokyo Price Index (TOPIX) and the S&P 500 often serve as proxies for the market portfolio in Japan and the United States, respectively, and are used for measuring and modeling systematic risk and market returns.

Security market indexes also serve as market proxies when measuring risk-adjusted performance. The beta of an actively managed portfolio allows investors to form a passive alternative with the same level of systematic risk. For example, if the beta of an actively managed portfolio of global stocks is 0.95 with respect to the MSCI World Index, investors can create a passive portfolio with the same systematic risk by investing 95 percent of their portfolio in a MSCI World Index fund and holding the remaining 5 percent in cash. Alpha, the difference between the return of the actively managed portfolio and the return of the passive portfolio, is a measure of risk-adjusted return or investment performance. Alpha can be the result of manager skill (or lack thereof), transaction costs, and fees.

4.3 Proxies for Asset Classes in Asset Allocation Models

Because indexes exhibit the risk and return profiles of select groups of securities, they play a critical role as proxies for asset classes in asset allocation models. They provide the historical data used to model the risks and returns of different asset classes.

4.4 Benchmarks for Actively Managed Portfolios

Investors often use indexes as benchmarks to evaluate the performance of active portfolio managers. The index selected as the benchmark should reflect the investment strategy used by the manager. For example, an active manager investing in global small-capitalization stocks should be evaluated using a benchmark index, such as the FTSE Global Small Cap Index, which includes 4,600 small-capitalization stocks across 48 countries.

The choice of an index to use as a benchmark is important because an inappropriate index could lead to incorrect conclusions regarding an active manager's investment performance. Suppose that the small-cap manager underperformed the small-cap index but outperformed a broad equity market index. If investors use the broad market index as a benchmark, they might conclude that the small-cap manager is earning his or her fees and should be retained or given additional assets to invest. Using the small-cap index as a benchmark might lead to a very different conclusion.

4.5 Model Portfolios for Investment Products

Indexes also serve as the basis for the development of new investment products. Using indexes as benchmarks for actively managed portfolios has led some investors to conclude that they should invest in the benchmarks instead. Based on the CAPM's conclusion that investors should hold the market portfolio, broad market index funds have been developed to function as proxies for the market portfolio.

Investment management firms initially developed and managed index portfolios for institutional investors. Eventually, mutual fund companies introduced index funds for individual investors. Subsequently, investment management firms introduced exchange-traded funds, which are managed the same way as index mutual funds but trade like stocks.

The first ETFs were based on existing indexes. As the popularity of ETFs increased, index providers created new indexes for the specific purpose of forming ETFs, leading to the creation of numerous narrowly defined indexes with corresponding ETFs. The Market Vectors Vietnam ETF, for example, allows investors to invest in the equity market of Vietnam.

The choice of indexes to meet the needs of investors is extensive. Index providers are constantly looking for opportunities to develop indexes to meet the needs of investors.

EQUITY INDEXES

5

A wide variety of equity indexes exist, including broad market, multi-market, sector, and style indexes.

5.1 Broad Market Indexes

A broad equity market index, as its name suggests, represents an entire given equity market and typically includes securities representing more than 90 percent of the selected market. For example, the Shanghai Stock Exchange Composite Index (SSE) is a market-capitalization-weighted index of all shares that trade on the Shanghai Stock Exchange. In the United States, the Wilshire 5000 Total Market Index is a market-capitalization-weighted index that includes more than 6,000 equity securities and is designed to represent the entire US equity market.³ The Russell 3000, consisting of the largest 3,000 stocks by market capitalization, represents 99 percent of the US equity market.

5.2 Multi-Market Indexes

Multi-market indexes usually comprise indexes from different countries and regions and are designed to represent multiple security markets. Multi-market indexes may represent multiple national markets, geographic regions, economic development groups, and, in some cases, the entire world. World indexes are of importance to investors who take a global approach to equity investing without any particular bias toward a particular country or region. A number of index providers publish families of multi-market equity indexes.

MSCI Barra offers a number of multi-market indexes. As shown in Exhibit 7, MSCI Barra classifies countries and regions along two dimensions: level of economic development and geographic region. Developmental groups, which MSCI Barra refers to as market classifications, include developed markets, emerging markets, and frontier markets. The geographic regions are largely divided by longitudinal lines of the globe: the Americas, Europe with Africa, and Asia with the Pacific. MSCI Barra provides country- and region-specific indexes for each of the developed and emerging markets

³ Despite its name, the Wilshire 5000 has no constraint on the number of securities that can be included. It included approximately 5,000 securities at inception.

within its multi-market indexes. MSCI Barra periodically reviews the classifications of markets in its indexes for movement from frontier markets to emerging markets and from emerging markets to developed markets and reconstitutes the indexes accordingly.

Exhibit 7 MSCI International Equity Indexes Coverage (as of June 2009)

Developed Markets				
Americas	Europe		Pacific	
Canada, United States	Austria, Belgium, Denmark, Finland, France, Germany, Greece, Ireland, Italy, Netherlands, Norway, Portugal, Spain, Sweden, Switzerland, United Kingdom		Australia, Hong Kong, Japan, New Zealand, Singapore	
Emerging Markets				
Americas	Europe, Middle East, Africa		Asia	
Argentina ¹ , Brazil, Chile, Colombia, Mexico, Peru	Czech Republic, Egypt, Hungary, Israel, Jordan, Morocco, Poland, Russia, South Africa, Turkey		China, India, Indonesia, South Korea, Malaysia, Pakistan ² , Philippines, Taiwan, Thailand	
Frontier Markets				
Americas	Central & Eastern Europe & CIS	Africa	Middle East	Asia
Jamaica ³ , Trinidad & Tobago ³	Bulgaria, Croatia, Estonia, Lithuania, Kazakhstan, Romania, Serbia, Slovenia, Ukraine	Botswana ⁴ , Ghana ⁴ , Kenya, Mauritius, Nigeria, Tunisia	Lebanon, Bahrain, Kuwait, Oman, Qatar, United Arab Emirates, Saudi Arabia ⁵	Sri Lanka, Vietnam

¹ The MSCI Argentina Index was reclassified from the MSCI Emerging Markets Index to the MSCI Frontier Markets Index at the end of May 2009 to coincide with the May 2009 Semi-Annual Index Review.

² The MSCI Pakistan Index was removed from the MSCI Emerging Markets Index as of the close of December 31, 2008 to reflect the deterioration of investability conditions in the Pakistani equity market. In May 2009, the MSCI Pakistan Index was added to the MSCI Frontier Markets Index to coincide with the May 2009 Semi-Annual Index Review.

³ In May 2009, the MSCI Trinidad & Tobago Index was added to the MSCI Frontier Markets Index. However, the MSCI Jamaica Index continues to be maintained as a stand-alone country index because it does not meet the liquidity requirements of the Frontiers Market Index.

⁴ Botswana and Ghana currently stand-alone and are not included in the MSCI Frontier Markets Index. The addition of these two countries to the MSCI Frontier Market Index is under consideration.

⁵ Saudi Arabia is currently not included in the MSCI Frontier Markets Index but is part of the MSCI GCC Countries Index.

Source: MSCI Barra (www.msicbarra.com/products/indices/equity/index.jsp), June 2009.

5.2.1 Fundamental Weighting in Multi-Market Indexes

Some index providers weight the securities within each country/region by market capitalization and then weight each country/region in the overall index in proportion to its relative GDP, effectively creating fundamental weighting in multi-market indexes. GDP-weighted indexes were some of the first fundamentally weighted indexes created. Introduced in 1987 by MSCI to address the 60 percent weight of Japanese equities in the market-capitalization-weighted MSCI EAFE Index at the time, GDP-weighted indexes reduced the allocation to Japanese equities by half.⁴

⁴ Steven A. Schoenfeld, *Active Index Investing* (Hoboken, NJ): John Wiley & Sons, 2004):220.

5.3 Sector Indexes

Sector indexes represent and track different economic sectors—such as consumer goods, energy, finance, health care, and technology—on either a national, regional, or global basis. Because different sectors of the economy behave differently over the course of the business cycle, some investors may seek to overweight or underweight their exposure to particular sectors.

Sector indexes are organized as families; each index within the family represents an economic sector. Typically, the aggregation of a sector index family is equivalent to a broad market index. Economic sector classification can be applied on a global, regional, or country-specific basis, but no universally agreed upon sector classification method exists.

Sector indexes play an important role in performance analysis because they provide a means to determine whether a portfolio manager is more successful at stock selection or sector allocation. Sector indexes also serve as model portfolios for sector-specific ETFs and other investment products.

5.4 Style Indexes

Style indexes represent groups of securities classified according to market capitalization, value, growth, or a combination of these characteristics. They are intended to reflect the investing styles of certain investors, such as the growth investor, value investor, and small-cap investor.

5.4.1 Market Capitalization

Market-capitalization indexes represent securities categorized according to the major capitalization categories: large cap, midcap, and small cap. With no universal definition of these categories, the indexes differ on the distinctions between large cap and midcap and between midcap and small cap, as well as the minimum market-capitalization size required to be included in a small-cap index. Classification into categories can be based on absolute market capitalization (e.g., below €100 million) or relative market capitalization (e.g., the smallest 2,500 stocks).

5.4.2 Value/Growth Classification

Some indexes represent categories of stocks based on their classifications as either value or growth stocks. Different index providers use different factors and valuation ratios (low price-to-book ratios, low price-to-earnings ratios, high dividend yields, etc.) to distinguish between value and growth equities.

5.4.3 Market Capitalization and Value/Growth Classification

Combining the three market-capitalization groups with value and growth classifications results in six basic style index categories:

- Large-Cap Value
- Mid-Cap Value
- Small-Cap Value
- Large-Cap Growth
- Mid-Cap Growth
- Small-Cap Growth

Because indexes use different size and valuation classifications, the constituents of indexes designed to represent a given style, such as small-cap value, may differ—sometimes substantially.

Because valuation ratios and market capitalizations change over time, stocks frequently migrate from one style index category to another on reconstitution dates. As a result, style indexes generally have much higher turnover than do broad market indexes.

6

FIXED-INCOME INDEXES

A wide variety of fixed-income indexes exists, but the nature of the fixed-income markets and fixed-income securities leads to some very important challenges to fixed-income index construction and replication. These challenges are the number of securities in the fixed-income universe, the availability of pricing data, and the liquidity of the securities.

6.1 Construction

The fixed-income universe includes securities issued by governments, government agencies, and corporations. Each of these entities may issue a variety of fixed-income securities with different characteristics. As a result, the number of fixed-income securities is many times larger than the number of equity securities. To represent a specific fixed-income market or segment, indexes may include thousands of different securities. Over time, these fixed-income securities mature, and issuers offer new securities to meet their financing needs, leading to turnover in fixed-income indexes.

Another challenge in index construction is that fixed-income markets are predominantly dealer markets. This means that firms (dealers) are assigned to specific securities and are responsible for creating liquid markets for those securities by purchasing and selling them from their inventory. In addition, many securities do not trade frequently and, as a result, are relatively illiquid. As a result, index providers must contact dealers to obtain current prices on constituent securities to update the index or they must estimate the prices of constituent securities using the prices of traded fixed-income securities with similar characteristics.

These challenges can result in indexes with dissimilar numbers of bonds representing the same markets. As seen in Exhibit 8, the differences can be large. The large number of fixed-income securities—combined with the lack of liquidity of some securities—has made it more costly and difficult, compared with equity indexes, for investors to replicate fixed-income indexes and duplicate their performance.

Exhibit 8 Comparison of Minimum Issue Size and Bond Holdings by Index

Index	Bloomberg Barclays		Markit iBoxx		Morningstar	
	Min (Thousands)	No. of Bonds	Min (Thousands)	No. of Bonds	Min (Thousands)	No. of Bonds
US agency	250,000	988	500,000	435	1,000,000	193
US corporate	250,000	3,134	500,000	1,694	500,000	1,862
UK corporate	250,000	916	100,000	713	225,000	303
Euro corporate	300,000	1,285	500,000	1,167	325,000	829

Source: Morningstar.

6.2 Types of Fixed-Income Indexes

The wide variety of fixed-income securities, ranging from zero-coupon bonds to bonds with embedded options (i.e., callable or puttable bonds), results in a number of different types of fixed-income indexes. Similar to equities, fixed-income securities

can be categorized according to the issuer's economic sector, the issuer's geographic region, or the economic development of the issuer's geographic region. Fixed-income securities can also be classified along the following dimensions:

- type of issuer (government, government agency, corporation);
- type of financing (general obligation, collateralized);
- currency of payments;
- maturity;
- credit quality (investment grade, high yield, credit agency ratings); and
- absence or presence of inflation protection.

Fixed-income indexes are based on these various dimensions and can be categorized as follows:

- aggregate or broad market indexes;
- market sector indexes;
- style indexes;
- economic sector indexes; and
- specialized indexes such as high-yield, inflation-linked, and emerging market indexes.

The first fixed-income index created, the Bloomberg Barclays US Aggregate Bond Index (formerly the Barclays Capital Aggregate Bond Index), is an example of a single-country aggregate index. Designed to represent the broad market of US fixed-income securities, it comprises more than 9,200 securities, including US Treasury, government-related, corporate, mortgage-backed, asset-backed, and commercial mortgage-backed securities.

Aggregate indexes can be subdivided by market sector (government, government agency, collateralized, corporate); style (maturity, credit quality); economic sector, or some other characteristic to create more narrowly defined indexes. A common distinction reflected in indexes is between investment grade (e.g., those with a Standard & Poor's credit rating of BBB– or better) and high-yield securities. Investment-grade indexes are typically further subdivided by maturity (i.e., short, intermediate, or long) and by credit rating (e.g., AAA, BBB, etc.).⁵ The wide variety of fixed-income indexes reflects the partitioning of fixed-income securities on the basis of a variety of dimensions.

Exhibit 9 illustrates how the major types of fixed-income indexes can be organized on the basis of various dimensions.

Exhibit 9 Dimensions of Fixed-Income Indexes

Market	Global			
	Regional			
	Country or currency zone			
Type	Corporate	Collateralized <i>Securitized</i> <i>Mortgage-backed</i>	Government agency	Government

(continued)

⁵ Credit ratings are discussed in depth in the Level I CFA Program reading "Fundamentals of Credit Analysis."

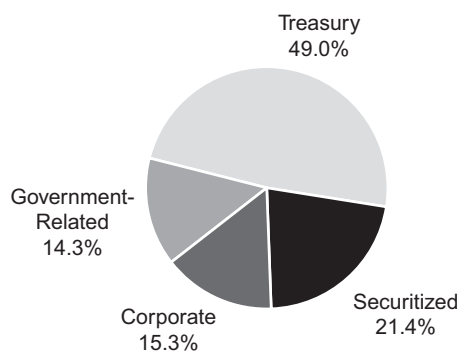
Exhibit 9 (Continued)

Maturity	For example, 1–3, 3–5, 5–7, 7–10, 10+ years; short-term, medium-term, or long-term
Credit quality	For example, AAA, AA, A, BBB, etc.; Aaa, Aa, A, Baa, etc.; investment grade, high yield

All aggregate indexes include a variety of market sectors and credit ratings. The breakdown of the Bloomberg Barclays Global Aggregate Bond Index by market sectors and by credit rating is shown in Exhibit 10 and Exhibit 11, respectively.

Exhibit 10 Market Sector Breakdown of the Bloomberg Barclays Global Aggregate Bond Index

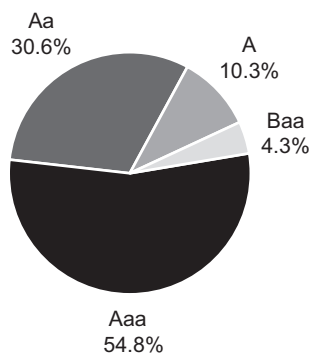
Sector Breakdown as of Oct 31, 2008



Source: Barclays, "The Benchmark in Fixed Income: Barclays Capital Indices" (December 2008).

Exhibit 11 Credit Breakdown of the Bloomberg Barclays Global Aggregate Bond Index

Quality Breakdown as of Oct 31, 2008



Source: Barclays, "The Benchmark in Fixed Income: Barclays Capital Indices" (December 2008).

INDEXES FOR ALTERNATIVE INVESTMENTS

7

Many investors seek to lower the risk or enhance the performance of their portfolios by investing in asset classes other than equities and fixed income. Interest in alternative assets and investment strategies has led to the creation of indexes designed to represent broad classes of alternative investments. Three of the most widely followed alternative investment classes are commodities, real estate, and hedge funds.

7.1 Commodity Indexes

Commodity indexes consist of futures contracts on one or more commodities, such as agricultural products (rice, wheat, sugar), livestock (cattle, hogs), precious and common metals (gold, silver, copper), and energy commodities (crude oil, natural gas).

Although some commodity indexes may include the same commodities, the returns of these indexes may differ because each index may use a different weighting method. Because commodity indexes do not have an obvious weighting mechanism, such as market capitalization, commodity index providers create their own weighting methods. Some indexes, such as the Commodity Research Bureau (CRB) Index, contain a fixed number of commodities that are weighted equally. The S&P GSCI uses a combination of liquidity measures and world production values in its weighting scheme and allocates more weight to commodities that have risen in price. Other indexes have fixed weights that are determined by a committee.

The different weighting methods can also lead to large differences in exposure to specific commodities. The S&P GSCI, for example, has approximately double the energy-sector weighting and one-third the agriculture sector weighting of the CRB Index. These differences result in indexes with very different risk and return profiles. Unlike commodity indexes, broad equity and fixed-income indexes that target the same markets share similar risk and return profiles.

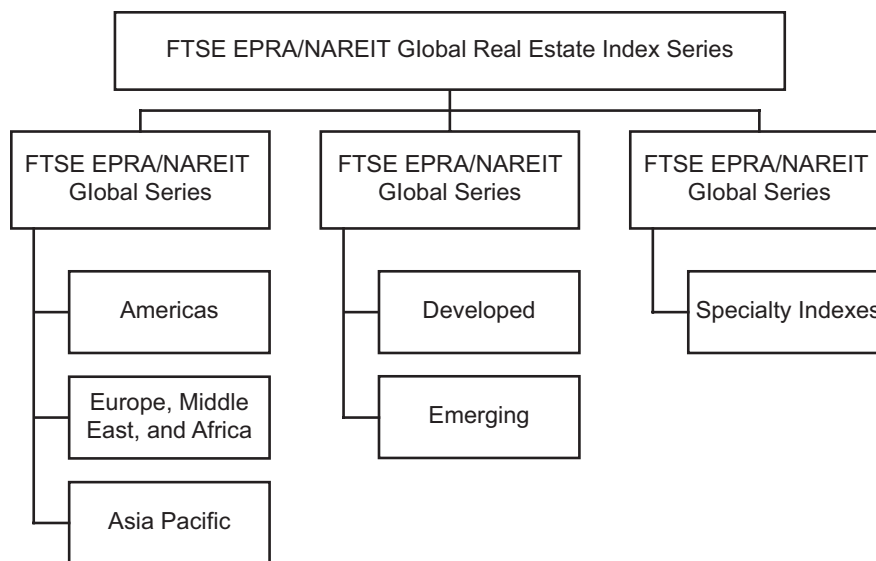
The performance of commodity indexes can also be quite different from their underlying commodities because the indexes consist of futures contracts on the commodities rather than the actual commodities. Index returns are affected by factors other than changes in the prices of the underlying commodities because futures contracts must be continually “rolled over” (i.e., replacing a contract nearing expiration with a new contract). Commodity index returns reflect the risk-free interest rate, the changes in future prices, and the roll yield. Therefore, a commodity index return can be quite different from the return based on changes in the prices of the underlying commodities.

7.2 Real Estate Investment Trust Indexes

Real estate indexes represent not only the market for real estate securities but also the market for real estate—a highly illiquid market and asset class with infrequent transactions and pricing information. Real estate indexes can be categorized as appraisal indexes, repeat sales indexes, and real estate investment trust (REIT) indexes.

REIT indexes consist of shares of publicly traded REITs. REITs are public or private corporations organized specifically to invest in real estate, either through ownership of properties or investment in mortgages. Shares of public REITs are traded on the world’s various stock exchanges and are a popular choice for investing in commercial real estate properties. Because REIT indexes are based on publicly traded REITs with continuous market pricing, the value of REIT indexes is calculated continuously.

The FTSE EPRA/NAREIT global family of REIT indexes shown in Exhibit 12 seeks to represent trends in real estate stocks worldwide and includes representation from the European Real Estate Association (EPRA) and the National Association of Real Estate Investment Trusts (NAREIT).

Exhibit 12 The FTSE EPRA/NAREIT Global REIT Index Family

Source: FTSE International, “FTSE EPRA/NAREIT Global & Global Ex US Indices” Factsheet 2009). “FTSE” is a trade mark of the London Stock Exchange Plc, “NAREIT” is a trade mark of the National Association of Real Estate Investment Trusts (“NAREIT”) and “EPRA” is a trade mark of the European Public Real Estate Association (“EPRA”) and all are used by FTSE International Limited (“FTSE”) under license.

7.3 Hedge Fund Indexes

Hedge fund indexes reflect the returns on hedge funds. **Hedge funds** are private investment vehicles that typically use leverage and long and short investment strategies.

A number of research organizations maintain databases of hedge fund returns and summarize these returns into indexes. These database indexes are designed to represent the performance of the hedge funds on a very broad global level (hedge funds in general) or the strategy level. Most of these indexes are equal weighted and represent the performance of the hedge funds within a particular database.

Most research organizations rely on the voluntary cooperation of hedge funds to compile performance data. As unregulated entities, however, hedge funds are not required to report their performance to any party other than their investors. Therefore, each hedge fund decides to which database(s) it will report its performance. As a result, rather than index providers determining the constituents, the constituents determine the index.

Frequently, a hedge fund reports its performance to only one database. The result is little overlap of funds covered by the different indexes. With little overlap between their constituents, different global hedge fund indexes may reflect very different performance for the hedge fund industry over the same period of time.

Another consequence of the voluntary performance reporting is the potential for survivorship bias and, therefore, inaccurate performance representation. This means that hedge funds with poor performance may be less likely to report their performance to the database or may stop reporting to the database, so their returns may be excluded when measuring the return of the index. As a result, the index may not accurately reflect actual hedge fund performance so much as the performance of hedge funds that are performing well.

REPRESENTATIVE INDEXES WORLDWIDE

As indicated in this reading, the choice of indexes to meet the needs of investors is extensive. Investors using security market indexes must be careful in their selection of the index or indexes most appropriate for their needs. The following table illustrates the variety of indexes reflecting different asset classes, markets, and weighting methods.

Index	Representing	Number of Securities	Weighting Method	Comments
Dow Jones Industrial Average	US blue chip companies	30	Price	The oldest and most widely known US equity index. <i>Wall Street Journal</i> editors choose 30 stocks from among large, mature blue-chip companies.
Nikkei Stock Average	Japanese blue chip companies	225	Modified price	Known as the Nikkei 225 and originally formulated by Dow Jones & Company. Because of extreme variation in price levels of component securities, some high-priced shares are weighted as a fraction of share price. Index contains some illiquid stocks.
TOPIX	All companies listed on the Tokyo Stock Exchange First Section	Varies	Float-adjusted market cap	Represents about 93 percent of the market value of all Japanese equities. Contains a large number of very small, illiquid stocks, making exact replication difficult.
MSCI All Country World Index	Stocks of 23 developed and 22 emerging markets	Varies	Free-float-adjusted market cap	Composed of companies representative of the market structure of developed and emerging market countries in the Americas, Europe/Middle East, and Asia/Pacific regions. Price return and total return versions available in both USD and local currencies.
S&P Developed Ex-US BMI Energy Sector Index	Energy sector of developed global markets outside the United States	Varies	Float-adjusted market cap	Serves as a model portfolio for the SPDR® S&P Energy Sector Exchange-Traded Fund (ETF).
Bloomberg Barclays Global Aggregate Bond Index	Investment-grade bonds in the North American, European, and Asian markets	Varies	Market cap	Formerly known as Lehman Brothers Global Aggregate Bond Index.
Markit iBoxx Euro High-Yield Bond Indexes	Sub-investment-grade euro-denominated corporate bonds	Varies	Market cap and variations	Rebalanced monthly. Represents tradable part of market. Price and total return versions available with such analytical values as yield, duration, modified duration, and convexity. Provides platform for research and structured products.
FTSE EPRA/NAREIT Global Real Estate Index	Real estate securities in the North American, European, and Asian markets	335	Float-adjusted market cap	The stocks of REITs that constitute the index trade on public stock exchanges and may be constituents of equity market indexes.

(continued)

Index	Representing	Number of Securities	Weighting Method	Comments
HFRX Global Hedge Fund Index	Overall composition of the HFR database	Varies	Asset weighted	Comprises all eligible hedge fund strategies. Examples include convertible arbitrage, distressed securities, market neutral, event driven, macro, and relative value arbitrage. Constituent strategies are asset weighted on the basis of asset distribution within the hedge fund industry.
HFRX Equal Weighted Strategies EUR Index	Overall composition of the HFR database	Varies	Equal weighted	Denominated in euros and is constructed from the same strategies as the HFRX Global Hedge Fund Index.
Morningstar Style Indexes	US stocks classified by market cap and value/growth orientation	Varies	Float-adjusted market cap	The nine indexes defined by combinations of market cap (large, mid, and small) and value/growth orientation (value, core, growth) have mutually exclusive constituents and are exhaustive with respect to the Morningstar US Market Index. Each is a model portfolio for one of the iShares Morningstar ETFs.

SUMMARY

This reading explains and illustrates the construction, management, and uses of security market indexes. It also discusses various types of indexes. Security market indexes are invaluable tools for investors, who can select from among thousands of indexes representing a variety of security markets, market segments, and asset classes. These indexes range from those representing the global market for major asset classes to those representing alternative investments in specific geographic markets. To benefit from the use of security market indexes, investors must understand their construction and determine whether the selected index is appropriate for their purposes. Frequently, an index that is well suited for one purpose may not be well suited for other purposes. Users of indexes must be familiar with how various indexes are constructed in order to select the index or indexes most appropriate for their needs.

Among the key points made in this reading are the following:

- Security market indexes are intended to measure the values of different target markets (security markets, market segments, or asset classes).
- The constituent securities selected for inclusion in the security market index are intended to represent the target market.
- A price return index reflects only the prices of the constituent securities.
- A total return index reflects not only the prices of the constituent securities but also the reinvestment of all income received since the inception of the index.
- Methods used to weight the constituents of an index range from the very simple, such as price and equal weightings, to the more complex, such as market-capitalization and fundamental weightings.

- Choices in index construction—in particular, the choice of weighting method—affect index valuation and returns.
- Index management includes 1) periodic rebalancing to ensure that the index maintains appropriate weightings and 2) reconstitution to ensure the index represents the desired target market.
- Rebalancing and reconstitution create turnover in an index. Reconstitution can dramatically affect prices of current and prospective constituents.
- Indexes serve a variety of purposes. They gauge market sentiment and serve as benchmarks for actively managed portfolios. They act as proxies for measuring systematic risk and risk-adjusted performance. They also serve as proxies for asset classes in asset allocation models and as model portfolios for investment products.
- Investors can choose from security market indexes representing various asset classes, including equity, fixed-income, commodity, real estate, and hedge fund indexes.
- Within most asset classes, index providers offer a wide variety of indexes, ranging from broad market indexes to highly specialized indexes based on the issuer's geographic region, economic development group, or economic sector or other factors.
- Proper use of security market indexes depends on understanding their construction and management.

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

- 1 A security market index represents the:
 - A risk of a security market.
 - B security market as a whole.
 - C security market, market segment, or asset class.
- 2 Security market indexes are:
 - A constructed and managed like a portfolio of securities.
 - B simple interchangeable tools for measuring the returns of different asset classes.
 - C valued on a regular basis using the actual market prices of the constituent securities.
- 3 When creating a security market index, an index provider must first determine the:
 - A target market.
 - B appropriate weighting method.
 - C number of constituent securities.
- 4 One month after inception, the price return version and total return version of a single index (consisting of identical securities and weights) will be equal if:
 - A market prices have not changed.
 - B capital gains are offset by capital losses.
 - C the securities do not pay dividends or interest.
- 5 The values of a price return index and a total return index consisting of identical equal-weighted dividend-paying equities will be equal:
 - A only at inception.
 - B at inception and on rebalancing dates.
 - C at inception and on reconstitution dates.
- 6 An analyst gathers the following information for an equal-weighted index comprised of assets Able, Baker, and Charlie:

Security	Beginning of Period Price (€)	End of Period Price (€)	Total Dividends (€)
Able	10.00	12.00	0.75
Baker	20.00	19.00	1.00
Charlie	30.00	30.00	2.00

The price return of the index is:

- A 1.7%.
 - B 5.0%.
 - C 11.4%.
- 7 An analyst gathers the following information for an equal-weighted index comprised of assets Able, Baker, and Charlie:

Security	Beginning of Period Price (€)	End of Period Price (€)	Total Dividends (€)
Able	10.00	12.00	0.75
Baker	20.00	19.00	1.00
Charlie	30.00	30.00	2.00

The total return of the index is:

- A 5.0%.
- B 7.9%.
- C 11.4%.

- 8 An analyst gathers the following information for a price-weighted index comprised of securities ABC, DEF, and GHI:

Security	Beginning of Period Price (£)	End of Period Price (£)	Total Dividends (£)
ABC	25.00	27.00	1.00
DEF	35.00	25.00	1.50
GHI	15.00	16.00	1.00

The price return of the index is:

- A -4.6%.
- B -9.3%.
- C -13.9%.

- 9 An analyst gathers the following information for a market-capitalization-weighted index comprised of securities MNO, QRS, and XYZ:

Security	Beginning of Period Price (¥)	End of Period Price (¥)	Dividends per Share (¥)	Shares Outstanding
MNO	2,500	2,700	100	5,000
QRS	3,500	2,500	150	7,500
XYZ	1,500	1,600	100	10,000

The price return of the index is:

- A -9.33%.
- B -10.23%.
- C -13.90%.

- 10 An analyst gathers the following information for a market-capitalization-weighted index comprised of securities MNO, QRS, and XYZ:

Security	Beginning of Period Price (¥)	End of Period Price (¥)	Dividends Per Share (¥)	Shares Outstanding
MNO	2,500	2,700	100	5,000
QRS	3,500	2,500	150	7,500
XYZ	1,500	1,600	100	10,000

The total return of the index is:

- A 1.04%.
- B -5.35%.
- C -10.23%.

11 When creating a security market index, the target market:

- A determines the investment universe.
- B is usually a broadly defined asset class.
- C determines the number of securities to be included in the index.

12 An analyst gathers the following data for a price-weighted index:

Security	Beginning of Period		End of Period	
	Price (€)	Shares	Price (€)	Shares
A	20.00	300	22.00	300
B	50.00	300	48.00	300
C	26.00	2,000	30.00	2,000

The price return of the index over the period is:

- A 4.2%.
- B 7.1%.
- C 21.4%.

13 An analyst gathers the following data for a value-weighted index:

Security	Beginning of Period		End of Period	
	Price (£)	Shares	Price (£)	Shares
A	20.00	300	22.00	300
B	50.00	300	48.00	300
C	26.00	2,000	30.00	2,000

The return on the value-weighted index over the period is:

- A 7.1%.
- B 11.0%.
- C 21.4%.

14 An analyst gathers the following data for an equally-weighted index:

Security	Beginning of Period		End of Period	
	Price (¥)	Shares	Price (¥)	Shares
A	20.00	300	22.00	300
B	50.00	300	48.00	300
C	26.00	2,000	30.00	2,000

The return on the index over the period is:

- A 4.2%.
- B 6.8%.
- C 7.1%.

15 Which of the following index weighting methods requires an adjustment to the divisor after a stock split?

- A Price weighting.
- B Fundamental weighting.
- C Market-capitalization weighting.

16 If the price return of an equal-weighted index exceeds that of a market-capitalization-weighted index comprised of the same securities, the *most likely* explanation is:

- A stock splits.
 - B dividend distributions.
 - C outperformance of small-market-capitalization stocks.
- 17 A float-adjusted market-capitalization-weighted index weights each of its constituent securities by its price and:
- A its trading volume.
 - B the number of its shares outstanding.
 - C the number of its shares available to the investing public.
- 18 Which of the following index weighting methods is most likely subject to a value tilt?
- A Equal weighting.
 - B Fundamental weighting.
 - C Market-capitalization weighting.
- 19 Rebalancing an index is the process of periodically adjusting the constituent:
- A securities' weights to optimize investment performance.
 - B securities to maintain consistency with the target market.
 - C securities' weights to maintain consistency with the index's weighting method.
- 20 Which of the following index weighting methods requires the most frequent rebalancing?
- A Price weighting.
 - B Equal weighting.
 - C Market-capitalization weighting.
- 21 Reconstitution of a security market index reduces:
- A portfolio turnover.
 - B the need for rebalancing.
 - C the likelihood that the index includes securities that are not representative of the target market.
- 22 Security market indexes are used as:
- A measures of investment returns.
 - B proxies to measure unsystematic risk.
 - C proxies for specific asset classes in asset allocation models.
- 23 Uses of market indexes do not include serving as a:
- A measure of systematic risk.
 - B basis for new investment products.
 - C benchmark for evaluating portfolio performance.
- 24 Which of the following statements regarding sector indexes is *most* accurate?
Sector indexes:
- A track different economic sectors and cannot be aggregated to represent the equivalent of a broad market index.
 - B provide a means to determine whether an active investment manager is more successful at stock selection or sector allocation.
 - C apply a universally agreed upon sector classification system to identify the constituent securities of specific economic sectors, such as consumer goods, energy, finance, health care.
- 25 Which of the following is an example of a style index? An index based on:

- A geography.
 - B economic sector.
 - C market capitalization.
- 26 Which of the following statements regarding fixed-income indexes is *most* accurate?
- A Liquidity issues make it difficult for investors to easily replicate fixed-income indexes.
 - B Rebalancing and reconstitution are the only sources of turnover in fixed-income indexes.
 - C Fixed-income indexes representing the same target market hold similar numbers of bonds.
- 27 An aggregate fixed-income index:
- A comprises corporate and asset-backed securities.
 - B represents the market of government-issued securities.
 - C can be subdivided by market or economic sector to create more narrowly defined indexes.
- 28 Fixed-income indexes are *least likely* constructed on the basis of:
- A maturity.
 - B type of issuer.
 - C coupon frequency.
- 29 Commodity index values are based on:
- A futures contract prices.
 - B the market price of the specific commodity.
 - C the average market price of a basket of similar commodities.
- 30 Which of the following statements is *most* accurate?
- A Commodity indexes all share similar weighting methods.
 - B Commodity indexes containing the same underlying commodities offer similar returns.
 - C The performance of commodity indexes can be quite different from that of the underlying commodities.
- 31 Which of the following is *not* a real estate index category?
- A Appraisal index.
 - B Initial sales index.
 - C Repeat sales index.
- 32 A unique feature of hedge fund indexes is that they:
- A are frequently equal weighted.
 - B are determined by the constituents of the index.
 - C reflect the value of private rather than public investments.
- 33 The returns of hedge fund indexes are *most likely*:
- A biased upward.
 - B biased downward.
 - C similar across different index providers.
- 34 In comparison to equity indexes, the constituent securities of fixed-income indexes are:
- A more liquid.

- B** easier to price.
- C** drawn from a larger investment universe.

SOLUTIONS

- 1 C is correct. A security market index represents the value of a given security market, market segment, or asset class.
- 2 A is correct. Security market indexes are constructed and managed like a portfolio of securities.
- 3 A is correct. The first decision is identifying the target market that the index is intended to represent because the target market determines the investment universe and the securities available for inclusion in the index.
- 4 C is correct. The difference between a price return index and a total return index consisting of identical securities and weights is the income generated over time by the underlying securities. If the securities in the index do not generate income, both indexes will be identical in value.
- 5 A is correct. At inception, the values of the price return and total return versions of an index are equal.
- 6 B is correct. The price return is the sum of the weighted returns of each security. The return of Able is 20 percent $[(12 - 10)/10]$; of Baker is -5 percent $[(19 - 20)/20]$; and of Charlie is 0 percent $[(30 - 30)/30]$. The price return index assigns a weight of $1/3$ to each asset; therefore, the price return is $1/3 \times [20\% + (-5\%) + 0\%] = 5\%$.
- 7 C is correct. The total return of an index is calculated on the basis of the change in price of the underlying securities plus the sum of income received or the sum of the weighted total returns of each security. The total return of Able is 27.5 percent; of Baker is 0 percent; and of Charlie is 6.7 percent:

Able: $(12 - 10 + 0.75)/10 = 27.5\%$

Baker: $(19 - 20 + 1)/20 = 0\%$

Charlie: $(30 - 30 + 2)/30 = 6.7\%$

An equal-weighted index applies the same weight ($1/3$) to each security's return; therefore, the total return = $1/3 \times (27.5\% + 0\% + 6.7\%) = 11.4\%$.
- 8 B is correct. The price return of the price-weighted index is the percentage change in price of the index: $(68 - 75)/75 = -9.33\%$.

Security	Beginning of Period Price (£)	End of Period Price (£)
ABC	25.00	27.00
DEF	35.00	25.00
GHI	15.00	16.00
TOTAL	75.00	68.00

- 9 B is correct. The price return of the index is $(48,250,000 - 53,750,000)/53,750,000 = -10.23\%$.

Security	Beginning of Period Price (¥)	Shares Outstanding	Beginning of Period Value (¥)	End of Period Price (¥)	End of Period Value (¥)
MNO	2,500	5,000	12,500,000	2,700	13,500,000
QRS	3,500	7,500	26,250,000	2,500	18,750,000

Security	Beginning of Period Price (¥)	Shares Outstanding	Beginning of Period Value (¥)	End of Period Price (¥)	End of Period Value (¥)
XYZ	1,500	10,000	15,000,000	1,600	16,000,000
Total			53,750,000		48,250,000

- 10 B is correct. The total return of the market-capitalization-weighted index is calculated below:

Security	Beginning of Period Value (¥)	End of Period Value (¥)	Total Dividends (¥)	Total Return (%)
MNO	12,500,000	13,500,000	500,000	12.00
QRS	26,250,000	18,750,000	1,125,000	-24.29
XYZ	15,000,000	16,000,000	1,000,000	13.33
Total	53,750,000	48,250,000	2,625,000	-5.35

- 11 A is correct. The target market determines the investment universe and the securities available for inclusion in the index.
- 12 A is correct. The sum of prices at the beginning of the period is 96; the sum at the end of the period is 100. Regardless of the divisor, the price return is $100/96 - 1 = 0.042$ or 4.2 percent.
- 13 B is correct. It is the percentage change in the market value over the period:
- Market value at beginning of period: $(20 \times 300) + (50 \times 300) + (26 \times 2,000) = 73,000$
- Market value at end of period: $(22 \times 300) + (48 \times 300) + (30 \times 2,000) = 81,000$
- Percentage change is $81,000/73,000 - 1 = 0.1096$ or 11.0 percent with rounding.
- 14 C is correct. With an equal-weighted index, the same amount is invested in each security. Assuming \$1,000 is invested in each of the three stocks, the index value is \$3,000 at the beginning of the period and the following number of shares is purchased for each stock:
- Security A: 50 shares
- Security B: 20 shares
- Security C: 38.46 shares.
- Using the prices at the beginning of the period for each security, the index value at the end of the period is \$3,213.8: $(\$22 \times 50) + (\$48 \times 20) + (\$30 \times 38.46)$. The price return is $\$3,213.8/\$3,000 - 1 = 7.1\%$.
- 15 A is correct. In the price weighting method, the divisor must be adjusted so the index value immediately after the split is the same as the index value immediately prior to the split.
- 16 C is correct. The main source of return differences arises from outperformance of small-cap securities or underperformance of large-cap securities. In an equal-weighted index, securities that constitute the largest fraction of the market are underrepresented and securities that constitute only a small fraction of the market are overrepresented. Thus, higher equal-weighted index returns will occur if the smaller-cap equities outperform the larger-cap equities.
- 17 C is correct. "Float" is the number of shares available for public trading.

- 18 B is correct. Fundamental weighting leads to indexes that have a value tilt.
- 19 C is correct. Rebalancing refers to adjusting the weights of constituent securities in an index to maintain consistency with the index's weighting method.
- 20 B is correct. Changing market prices will cause weights that were initially equal to become unequal, thus requiring rebalancing.
- 21 C is correct. Reconstitution is the process by which index providers review the constituent securities, re-apply the initial criteria for inclusion in the index, and select which securities to retain, remove, or add. Constituent securities that no longer meet the criteria are replaced with securities that do. Thus, reconstitution reduces the likelihood that the index includes securities that are not representative of the target market.
- 22 C is correct. Security market indexes play a critical role as proxies for asset classes in asset allocation models.
- 23 A is correct. Security market indexes are used as proxies for measuring market or systematic risk, not as measures of systematic risk.
- 24 B is correct. Sector indexes provide a means to determine whether a portfolio manager is more successful at stock selection or sector allocation.
- 25 C is correct. Style indexes represent groups of securities classified according to market capitalization, value, growth, or a combination of these characteristics.
- 26 A is correct. The large number of fixed-income securities—combined with the lack of liquidity of some securities—makes it costly and difficult for investors to replicate fixed-income indexes.
- 27 C is correct. An aggregate fixed-income index can be subdivided by market sector (government, government agency, collateralized, corporate), style (maturity, credit quality), economic sector, or some other characteristic to create more narrowly defined indexes.
- 28 C is correct. Coupon frequency is not a dimension on which fixed-income indexes are based.
- 29 A is correct. Commodity indexes consist of futures contracts on one or more commodities.
- 30 C is correct. The performance of commodity indexes can be quite different from that of the underlying commodities because the indexes consist of futures contracts on the commodities rather than the actual commodities.
- 31 B is correct. It is not a real estate index category.
- 32 B is correct. Hedge funds are not required to report their performance to any party other than their investors. Therefore, each hedge fund decides to which database(s) it will report its performance. Thus, for a hedge fund index, constituents determine the index rather than index providers determining the constituents.
- 33 A is correct. Voluntary performance reporting may lead to survivorship bias, and poorer performing hedge funds will be less likely to report their performance.
- 34 C is correct. The fixed-income market has more issuers and securities than the equity market.

Market Efficiency

by Sean Cleary, PhD, CFA, Howard J. Atkinson, CIMA, ICD.D, CFA, and Pamela Peterson Drake, PhD, CFA

Sean Cleary, PhD, CFA, is at Queen's University (Canada). Howard J. Atkinson, CIMA, ICD.D, CFA, is at Horizons ETF Management (Canada) Inc. (Canada). Pamela Peterson Drake, PhD, CFA, is at James Madison University (USA).

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Mastery	The candidate should be able to:
<input type="checkbox"/>	a. describe market efficiency and related concepts, including their importance to investment practitioners;
<input type="checkbox"/>	b. distinguish between market value and intrinsic value;
<input type="checkbox"/>	c. explain factors that affect a market's efficiency;
<input type="checkbox"/>	d. contrast weak-form, semi-strong-form, and strong-form market efficiency;
<input type="checkbox"/>	e. explain the implications of each form of market efficiency for fundamental analysis, technical analysis, and the choice between active and passive portfolio management;
<input type="checkbox"/>	f. describe market anomalies;
<input type="checkbox"/>	g. describe behavioral finance and its potential relevance to understanding market anomalies.

INTRODUCTION

Market efficiency concerns the extent to which market prices incorporate available information. If market prices do not fully incorporate information, then opportunities may exist to make a profit from the gathering and processing of information. The subject of market efficiency is, therefore, of great interest to investment managers, as illustrated in Example 1.

EXAMPLE 1**Market Efficiency and Active Manager Selection**

The chief investment officer (CIO) of a major university endowment fund has listed eight steps in the active manager selection process that can be applied both to traditional investments (e.g., common equity and fixed-income securities) and to alternative investments (e.g., private equity, hedge funds, and real assets). The first step specified is the evaluation of market opportunity:

What is the opportunity and why is it there? To answer this question we start by studying capital markets and the types of managers operating within those markets. We identify market inefficiencies and try to understand their causes, such as regulatory structures or behavioral biases. We can rule out many broad groups of managers and strategies by simply determining that the degree of market inefficiency necessary to support a strategy is implausible. Importantly, we consider the past history of active returns meaningless unless we understand why markets will allow those active returns to continue into the future.¹

The CIO's description underscores the importance of not assuming that past active returns that might be found in a historical dataset will repeat themselves in the future. **Active returns** refer to returns earned by strategies that do *not* assume that all information is fully reflected in market prices.

Governments and market regulators also care about the extent to which market prices incorporate information. Efficient markets imply informative prices—prices that accurately reflect available information about fundamental values. In market-based economies, market prices help determine which companies (and which projects) obtain capital. If these prices do not efficiently incorporate information about a company's prospects, then it is possible that funds will be misdirected. By contrast, prices that are informative help direct scarce resources and funds available for investment to their highest-valued uses.² Informative prices thus promote economic growth. The efficiency of a country's capital markets (in which businesses raise financing) is an important characteristic of a well-functioning financial system.

The remainder of this reading is organized as follows. Section 2 provides specifics on how the efficiency of an asset market is described and discusses the factors affecting (i.e., contributing to and impeding) market efficiency. Section 3 presents an influential three-way classification of the efficiency of security markets and discusses its implications for fundamental analysis, technical analysis, and portfolio management. Section 4 presents several market anomalies (apparent market inefficiencies that have received enough attention to be individually identified and named) and describes how these anomalies relate to investment strategies. Section 5 introduces behavioral finance and how that field of study relates to market efficiency. A summary concludes the reading.

¹ The CIO is Christopher J. Brightman, CFA, of the University of Virginia Investment Management Company, as reported in Yau, Schneeweis, Robinson, and Weiss (2007, pp. 481–482).

² This concept is known as allocative efficiency.

THE CONCEPT OF MARKET EFFICIENCY

2

2.1 The Description of Efficient Markets

An **informationally efficient market** (an **efficient market**) is a market in which asset prices reflect new information quickly and rationally. An efficient market is thus a market in which asset prices reflect all past and present information.³

In this section we expand on this definition by clarifying the time frame required for an asset's price to incorporate information as well as describing the elements of information releases assumed under market efficiency. We discuss the difference between market value and intrinsic value and illustrate how inefficiencies or discrepancies between these values can provide profitable opportunities for active investment. As financial markets are generally not considered being either completely efficient or inefficient, but rather falling within a range between the two extremes, we describe a number of factors that contribute to and impede the degree of efficiency of a financial market. Finally, we conclude our overview of market efficiency by illustrating how the costs incurred by traders in identifying and exploiting possible market inefficiencies affect how we interpret market efficiency.

Investment managers and analysts, as noted, are interested in market efficiency because the extent to which a market is efficient affects how many profitable trading opportunities (market inefficiencies) exist. Consistent, superior, risk-adjusted returns (net of all expenses) are not achievable in an efficient market.⁴ In a highly efficient market, a **passive investment** strategy (i.e., buying and holding a broad market portfolio) that does not seek superior risk-adjusted returns is preferred to an **active investment** strategy because of lower costs (for example, transaction and information-seeking costs). By contrast, in a very inefficient market, opportunities may exist for an active investment strategy to achieve superior risk-adjusted returns (net of all expenses in executing the strategy) as compared with a passive investment strategy. In inefficient markets, an active investment strategy may outperform a passive investment strategy on a risk-adjusted basis. Understanding the characteristics of an efficient market and being able to evaluate the efficiency of a particular market are important topics for investment analysts and portfolio managers.

An efficient market is a market in which asset prices reflect information quickly. But what is the time frame of "quickly"? Trades are the mechanism by which information can be incorporated into asset transaction prices. The time needed to execute trades to exploit an inefficiency may provide a baseline for judging speed of adjustment.⁵ The time frame for an asset's price to incorporate information must be at least as long as the shortest time a trader needs to execute a transaction in the asset. In certain markets, such as foreign exchange and developed equity markets, market efficiency relative to certain types of information has been studied using time frames as short as one minute or less. If the time frame of price adjustment allows many traders to earn profits with little risk, then the market is relatively inefficient. These considerations lead to the observation that market efficiency can be viewed as falling on a continuum.

³ This definition is convenient for making several instructional points. The definition that most simply explains the sense of the word *efficient* in this context can be found in Fama (1976): "An efficient capital market is a market that is efficient in processing information" (p. 134).

⁴ The technical term for *superior* in this context is *positive abnormal* in the sense of higher than expected given the asset's risk (as measured, according to capital market theory, by the asset's contribution to the risk of a well-diversified portfolio).

⁵ Although the original theory of market efficiency does not quantify this speed, the basic idea is that it is sufficiently swift to make it impossible to consistently earn abnormal profits. Chordia, Roll, and Subrahmanyam (2005) suggest that the adjustment to information on the New York Stock Exchange (NYSE) is between 5 and 60 minutes.

Finally, an important point is that in an efficient market, prices should be expected to react only to the elements of information releases that are not anticipated fully by investors—that is, to the “unexpected” or “surprise” element of such releases. Investors process the unexpected information and revise expectations (for example, about an asset’s future cash flows, risk, or required rate of return) accordingly. The revised expectations enter or get incorporated in the asset price through trades in the asset. Market participants who process the news and believe that at the current market price an asset does not offer sufficient compensation for its perceived risk will tend to sell it or even sell it short. Market participants with opposite views should be buyers. In this way the market establishes the price that balances the various opinions after expectations are revised.

EXAMPLE 2

Price Reaction to the Default on a Bond Issue

Suppose that a speculative-grade bond issuer announces, just before bond markets open, that it will default on an upcoming interest payment. In the announcement, the issuer confirms various reports made in the financial media in the period leading up to the announcement. Prior to the issuer’s announcement, the financial news media reported the following: 1) suppliers of the company were making deliveries only for cash payment, reducing the company’s liquidity; 2) the issuer’s financial condition had probably deteriorated to the point that it lacked the cash to meet an upcoming interest payment; and 3) although public capital markets were closed to the company, it was negotiating with a bank for a private loan that would permit it to meet its interest payment and continue operations for at least nine months. If the issuer defaults on the bond, the consensus opinion of analysts is that bondholders will recover approximately \$0.36 to \$0.38 per dollar face value.

- 1 If the market for the bond is highly efficient, the bond’s market price is *most likely* to fully reflect the bond’s value after default:
 - A in the period leading up to the announcement.
 - B in the first trade prices after the market opens on the announcement day.
 - C when the issuer actually misses the payment on the interest payment date.
- 2 If the market for the bond is highly efficient, the piece of information that bond investors *most likely* focused on in the issuer’s announcement was that the issuer:
 - A had failed in its negotiations for a bank loan.
 - B lacked the cash to meet the upcoming interest payment.
 - C had been required to make cash payments for supplier deliveries.

Solution to 1:

B is correct. The announcement removed any uncertainty about default. In the period leading up to the announcement, the bond’s market price incorporated a probability of default but the price would not have fully reflected the bond’s value after default. The possibility that a bank loan might permit the company to avoid default was not eliminated until the announcement.

Solution to 2:

A is correct. The failure of the loan negotiations first becomes known in this announcement. The failure implies default.

2.2 Market Value versus Intrinsic Value

Market value is the price at which an asset can currently be bought or sold. **Intrinsic value** (sometimes called **fundamental value**) is, broadly speaking, the value that would be placed on it by investors if they had a complete understanding of the asset's investment characteristics.⁶ For a bond, for example, such information would include its interest (coupon) rate, principal value, the timing of its interest and principal payments, the other terms of the bond contract (indenture), a precise understanding of its default risk, the liquidity of its market, and other issue-specific items. In addition, market variables such as the term structure of interest rates and the size of various market premiums applying to the issue (for default risk, etc.) would enter into a discounted cash flow estimate of the bond's intrinsic value (discounted cash flow models are often used for such estimates). The word *estimate* is used because in practice, intrinsic value can be estimated but is not known for certain.

If investors believe a market is highly *efficient*, they will usually accept market prices as accurately reflecting intrinsic values. Discrepancies between market price and intrinsic value are the basis for profitable active investment. Active investors seek to own assets selling below perceived intrinsic value in the marketplace and to sell or sell short assets selling above perceived intrinsic value.

If investors believe an asset market is relatively *inefficient*, they may try to develop an independent estimate of intrinsic value. The challenge for investors and analysts is estimating an asset's intrinsic value. Numerous theories and models, including the dividend discount model, can be used to estimate an asset's intrinsic value, but they all require some form of judgment regarding the size, timing, and riskiness of the future cash flows associated with the asset. The more complex an asset's future cash flows, the more difficult it is to estimate its intrinsic value. These complexities and the estimates of an asset's market value are reflected in the market through the buying and selling of assets. The market value of an asset represents the intersection of supply and demand—the point that is low enough to induce at least one investor to buy while being high enough to induce at least one investor to sell. Because information relevant to valuation flows continually to investors, estimates of intrinsic value change, and hence, market values change.

EXAMPLE 3

Intrinsic Value

- 1 An analyst estimates that a security's intrinsic value is lower than its market value. The security appears to be:
 - A undervalued.
 - B fairly valued.
 - C overvalued.
- 2 A market in which assets' market values are, on average, equal to or nearly equal to intrinsic values is *best described* as a market that is attractive for:

⁶ Intrinsic value is often defined as the present value of all expected future cash flows of the asset.

- A active investment.
 - B passive investment.
 - C both active and passive investment.
- 3 Suppose that the future cash flows of an asset are accurately estimated. The asset trades in a market that you believe is highly efficient based on most evidence. But your intrinsic value estimate exceeds market value by a moderate amount. The *most likely* conclusion is that you have:
- A overestimated the asset's risk.
 - B underestimated the asset's risk.
 - C identified a market inefficiency.

Solution to 1:

C is correct. The market is valuing the asset at more than its true worth.

Solution to 2:

B is correct because an active investment is not expected to earn superior risk-adjusted returns. The additional costs of active investment are not justified in such a market.

Solution to 3:

B is correct. If risk is underestimated, the discount rate being applied to find the present value of the expected cash flows (estimated intrinsic value) will be too low and the intrinsic value estimate will be too high.

2.3 Factors Contributing to and Impeding a Market's Efficiency

For markets to be efficient, prices should adjust quickly and rationally to the release of new information. In other words, prices of assets in an efficient market should “fully reflect” all information. Financial markets, however, are generally not classified at the two extremes as either completely inefficient or completely efficient but, rather, as exhibiting various degrees of efficiency. In other words, market efficiency should be viewed as falling on a continuum between extremes of completely efficient, at one end, and completely inefficient, at the other. Asset prices in a highly efficient market, by definition, reflect information more quickly and more accurately than in a less-efficient market. These degrees of efficiency also vary through time, across geographical markets, and by type of market. A number of factors contribute to and impede the degree of efficiency in a financial market.

2.3.1 Market Participants

One of the most critical factors contributing to the degree of efficiency in a market is the number of market participants. Consider the following example that illustrates the relationship between the number of market participants and market efficiency.

EXAMPLE 4**Illustration of Market Efficiency**

Assume that the shares of a small market capitalization (cap) company trade on a public stock exchange. Because of its size, it is not considered “blue-chip” and not many professional investors follow the activities of the company.⁷ A small-cap fund analyst reports that the most recent annual operating performance of the company has been surprisingly good, considering the recent slump in its industry. The company’s share price, however, has been slow to react to the positive financial results because the company is not being recommended by the majority of research analysts. This mispricing implies that the market for this company’s shares is less than fully efficient. The small-cap fund analyst recognizes the opportunity and immediately recommends the purchase of the company’s shares. The share price gradually increases as more investors purchase the shares once the news of the mispricing spreads through the market. As a result, it takes a few days for the share price to fully reflect the information.

Six months later, the company reports another solid set of interim financial results. But because the previous mispricing and subsequent profit opportunities have become known in the market, the number of analysts following the company’s shares has increased substantially. As a result, as soon as unexpected information about the positive interim results are released to the public, a large number of buy orders quickly drive up the stock price, thereby making the market for these shares more efficient than before.

A large number of investors (individual and institutional) follow the major financial markets closely on a daily basis, and if mispricings exist in these markets, as illustrated by the example, investors will act so that these mispricings disappear quickly. Besides the number of investors, the number of financial analysts who follow or analyze a security or asset should be positively related to market efficiency. The number of market participants and resulting trading activity can vary significantly through time. A lack of trading activity can cause or accentuate other market imperfections that impede market efficiency. In fact, in many of these markets, trading in many of the listed stocks is restricted for foreigners. By nature, this limitation reduces the number of market participants, restricts the potential for trading activity, and hence reduces market efficiency.

EXAMPLE 5**Factors Affecting Market Efficiency**

The expected effect on market efficiency of opening a securities market to trading by foreigners would be to:

- A** decrease market efficiency.
- B** leave market efficiency unchanged.
- C** increase market efficiency.

⁷ A “blue-chip” share is one from a well-recognized company that is considered to be high quality but low risk. This term generally refers to a company that has a long history of earnings and paying dividends.

Solution:

C is correct. The opening of markets as described should increase market efficiency by increasing the number of market participants.

2.3.2 Information Availability and Financial Disclosure

Information availability (e.g., an active financial news media) and financial disclosure should promote market efficiency. Information regarding trading activity and traded companies in such markets as the New York Stock Exchange, the London Stock Exchange, and the Tokyo Stock Exchange is readily available. Many investors and analysts participate in these markets, and analyst coverage of listed companies is typically substantial. As a result, these markets are quite efficient. In contrast, trading activity and material information availability may be lacking in smaller securities markets, such as those operating in some emerging markets.

Similarly, significant differences may exist in the efficiency of different types of markets. For example, many securities trade primarily or exclusively in dealer or over-the-counter (OTC) markets, including bonds, money market instruments, currencies, mortgage-backed securities, swaps, and forward contracts. The information provided by the dealers that serve as market makers for these markets can vary significantly in quality and quantity, both through time and across different product markets.

Treating all market participants fairly is critical for the integrity of the market and explains why regulators place such an emphasis on “fair, orderly, and efficient markets.”⁸ A key element of this fairness is that all investors have access to the information necessary to value securities that trade in the market. Rules and regulations that promote fairness and efficiency in a market include those pertaining to the disclosure of information and illegal insider trading.

For example, US Securities and Exchange Commission’s (SEC’s) Regulation FD (Fair Disclosure) requires that if security issuers provide nonpublic information to some market professionals or investors, they must also disclose this information to the public.⁹ This requirement helps provide equal and fair opportunities, which is important in encouraging participation in the market. A related issue deals with illegal insider trading. The SEC’s rules, along with court cases, define illegal insider trading as trading in securities by market participants who are considered insiders “while in possession of material, nonpublic information about the security.”¹⁰ Although these rules cannot guarantee that some participants will not have an advantage over others and that insiders will not trade on the basis of inside information, the civil and criminal penalties associated with breaking these rules are intended to discourage illegal insider trading and promote fairness. In the European Union, insider trading laws are generally enshrined in legislation and enforced by regulatory and judicial authorities.¹¹

⁸ “The Investor’s Advocate: How the SEC Protects Investors, Maintains Market Integrity, and Facilitates Capital Formation,” US Securities and Exchange Commission (www.sec.gov/about/whatwedo.shtml).

⁹ Regulation FD, “Selective Disclosure and Insider Trading,” 17 CFR Parts 240, 243, and 249, effective 23 October 2000.

¹⁰ Although not the focus of this particular reading, it is important to note that a party is considered an insider not only when the individual is a corporate insider, such as an officer or director, but also when the individual is aware that the information is nonpublic information [Securities and Exchange Commission, Rules 10b5-1 (“Trading on the Basis of Material Nonpublic Information in Insider Trading Cases”) and Rule 10b5-2 (“Duties of Trust or Confidence in Misappropriation Insider Trading Cases”)].

¹¹ See the European Union’s Market Abuse Regulation (Regulation (EU) no. 596/2014 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 16 April 2014 on market abuse) and Directive for Criminal Sanctions for Market Abuse (Directive 2014/57/EU of the European Parliament and of the Council of 16 April 2014 on criminal sanctions for market abuse).

2.3.3 Limits to Trading

Arbitrage is a set of transactions that produces riskless profits. Arbitrageurs are traders who engage in such trades to benefit from pricing discrepancies (inefficiencies) in markets. Such trading activity contributes to market efficiency. For example, if an asset is traded in two markets but at different prices, the actions of buying the asset in the market in which it is underpriced and selling the asset in the market in which it is overpriced will eventually bring these two prices together. The presence of these arbitrageurs helps pricing discrepancies disappear quickly. Obviously, market efficiency is impeded by any limitation on arbitrage resulting from operating inefficiencies, such as difficulties in executing trades in a timely manner, prohibitively high trading costs, and a lack of transparency in market prices.

Some market experts argue that restrictions on short selling limit arbitrage trading, which impedes market efficiency. **Short selling** is the transaction whereby an investor sells shares that he or she does not own by borrowing them from a broker and agreeing to replace them at a future date. Short selling allows investors to sell securities they believe to be overvalued, much in the same way they can buy those they believe to be undervalued. In theory, such activities promote more efficient pricing. Regulators and others, however, have argued that short selling may exaggerate downward market movements, leading to crashes in affected securities. In contrast, some researchers report evidence indicating that when investors are unable to borrow securities, that is to short the security, or when costs to borrow shares are high, market prices may deviate from intrinsic values.¹² Furthermore, research suggests that short selling is helpful in price discovery (that is, it facilitates supply and demand in determining prices).¹³

2.4 Transaction Costs and Information-Acquisition Costs

The costs incurred by traders in identifying and exploiting possible market inefficiencies affect the interpretation of market efficiency. The two types of costs to consider are transaction costs and information-acquisition costs.

- *Transaction costs:* Practically, transaction costs are incurred in trading to exploit any perceived market inefficiency. Thus, “efficient” should be viewed as efficient within the bounds of transaction costs. For example, consider a violation of the principle that two identical assets should sell for the same price in different markets. Such a violation can be considered to be a rather simple possible exception to market efficiency because prices appear to be inconsistently processing information. To exploit the violation, a trader could arbitrage by simultaneously shorting the asset in the higher-price market and buying the asset in the lower-price market. If the price discrepancy between the two markets is smaller than the transaction costs involved in the arbitrage for the lowest cost traders, the arbitrage will not occur, and both prices are in effect efficient within the bounds of arbitrage. These bounds of arbitrage are relatively narrow in highly liquid markets, such as the market for US Treasury bills, but could be wide in illiquid markets.
- *Information-acquisition costs:* Practically, expenses are always associated with gathering and analyzing information. New information is incorporated in transaction prices by traders placing trades based on their analysis of information. Active investors who place trades based on information they have gathered and analyzed play a key role in market prices adjusting to reflect new information. The classic view of market efficiency is that active investors incur information

¹² See Deng, Mortal, and Gupta (2017) and references therein.”

¹³ See Bris, Goetzmann, and Zhu (2009).

acquisition costs but that money is wasted because prices already reflect all relevant information. This view of efficiency is very strict in the sense of viewing a market as inefficient if active investing can recapture any part of the costs, such as research costs and active asset selection. Grossman and Stiglitz (1980) argue that prices must offer a return to information acquisition; in equilibrium, if markets are efficient, returns net of such expenses are just fair returns for the risk incurred. The modern perspective views a market as inefficient if, after deducting such costs, active investing can earn superior returns. Gross of expenses, a return should accrue to information acquisition in an efficient market.

In summary, a modern perspective calls for the investor to consider transaction costs and information-acquisition costs when evaluating the efficiency of a market. A price discrepancy must be sufficiently large to leave the investor with a profit (adjusted for risk) after taking account of the transaction costs and information-acquisition costs to reach the conclusion that the discrepancy may represent a market inefficiency. Prices may somewhat less than fully reflect available information without there being a true market opportunity for active investors.

3

FORMS OF MARKET EFFICIENCY

Eugene Fama developed a framework for describing the degree to which markets are efficient.¹⁴ In his efficient market hypothesis, markets are efficient when prices reflect *all* relevant information at any point in time. This means that the market prices observed for securities, for example, reflect the information available at the time.

In his framework, Fama defines three forms of efficiency: weak, semi-strong, and strong. Each form is defined with respect to the available information that is reflected in prices.

Forms of Market Efficiency	Market Prices Reflect:		
	Past Market Data	Public Information	Private Information
Weak form of market efficiency	✓		
Semi-strong form of market efficiency	✓	✓	
Strong form of market efficiency	✓	✓	✓

A finding that investors can consistently earn **abnormal returns** by trading on the basis of information is evidence contrary to market efficiency. In general, abnormal returns are returns in excess of those expected given a security's risk and the market's return. In other words, abnormal return equals actual return less expected return.

¹⁴ Fama (1970).

3.1 Weak Form

In the **weak-form efficient market hypothesis**, security prices fully reflect *all past market data*, which refers to all historical price and trading volume information. If markets are weak-form efficient, past trading data are already reflected in current prices and investors cannot predict future price changes by extrapolating prices or patterns of prices from the past.¹⁵

Tests of whether securities markets are weak-form efficient require looking at patterns of prices. One approach is to see whether there is any serial correlation in security returns, which would imply a predictable pattern.¹⁶ Although there is some weak correlation in daily security returns, there is not enough correlation to make this a profitable trading rule after considering transaction costs.

An alternative approach to test weak-form efficiency is to examine specific trading rules that attempt to exploit historical trading data. If any such trading rule consistently generates abnormal risk-adjusted returns after trading costs, this evidence will contradict weak-form efficiency. This approach is commonly associated with **technical analysis**, which involves the analysis of historical trading information (primarily pricing and volume data) in an attempt to identify recurring patterns in the trading data that can be used to guide investment decisions. Many technical analysts, also referred to as “technicians,” argue that many movements in stock prices are based, in large part, on psychology. Many technicians attempt to predict how market participants will behave, based on analyses of past behavior, and then trade on those predictions. Technicians often argue that simple statistical tests of trading rules are not conclusive because they are not applied to the more sophisticated trading strategies that can be used and that the research excludes the technician’s subjective judgment. Thus, it is difficult to definitively refute this assertion because there are an unlimited number of possible technical trading rules.

Can technical analysts profit from trading on past trends? Overall, the evidence indicates that investors cannot consistently earn abnormal profits using past prices or other technical analysis strategies in developed markets.¹⁷ Some evidence suggests, however, that there are opportunities to profit on technical analysis in countries with developing markets, including Hungary, Bangladesh, and Turkey, among others.¹⁸

3.2 Semi-Strong Form

In a **semi-strong form efficient market**, prices reflect all publicly known and available information. Publicly available information includes financial statement data (such as earnings, dividends, corporate investments, changes in management, etc.) and financial market data (such as closing prices, shares traded, etc.). Therefore, the semi-strong form of market efficiency encompasses the weak form. In other words, if a market is semi-strong efficient, then it must also be weak-form efficient. A market that quickly incorporates all publicly available information into its prices is semi-strong efficient.

In a semi-strong market, efforts to analyze publicly available information are futile. That is, analyzing earnings announcements of companies to identify underpriced or overpriced securities is pointless because the prices of these securities already reflect all publicly available information. If markets are semi-strong efficient, no single investor has access to information that is not already available to other market participants,

¹⁵ Market efficiency should not be confused with the random walk hypothesis, in which price changes over time are independent of one another. A random walk model is one of many alternative expected return generating models. Market efficiency does not require that returns follow a random walk.

¹⁶ Serial correlation is a statistical measure of the degree to which the returns in one period are related to the returns in another period.

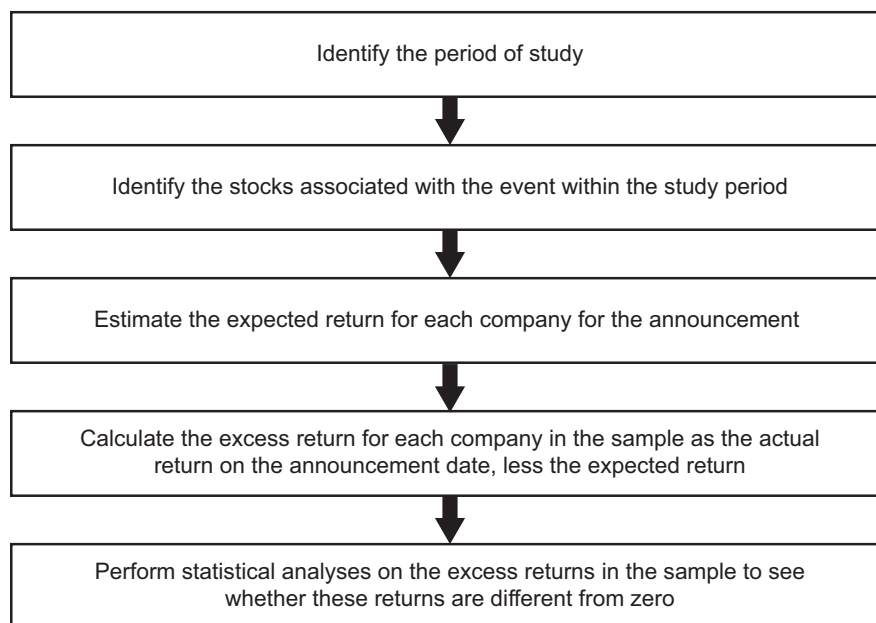
¹⁷ Bessembinder and Chan (1998) and Fifield, Power, and Sinclair (2005).

¹⁸ Fifield, Power, and Sinclair (2005), Chen and Li (2006), and Mobarek, Mollah, and Bhuyan (2008).

and as a consequence, no single investor can gain an advantage in predicting future security prices. In a semi-strong efficient market, prices adjust quickly and accurately to new information. Suppose a company announces earnings that are higher than expected. In a semi-strong efficient market, investors would not be able to act on this announcement and earn abnormal returns.

A common empirical test of investors' reaction to information releases is the event study. Suppose a researcher wants to test whether investors react to the announcement that the company is paying a special dividend. The researcher identifies a sample period and then those companies that paid a special dividend in the period and the date of the announcement. Then, for each company's stock, the researcher calculates the expected return on the share for the event date. This expected return may be based on many different models, including the capital asset pricing model, a simple market model, or a market index return. The researcher calculates the excess return as the difference between the actual return and the expected return. Once the researcher has calculated the event's excess return for each share, statistical tests are conducted to see whether the abnormal returns are statistically different from zero. The process of an event study is outlined in Exhibit 1.

Exhibit 1 The Event Study Process

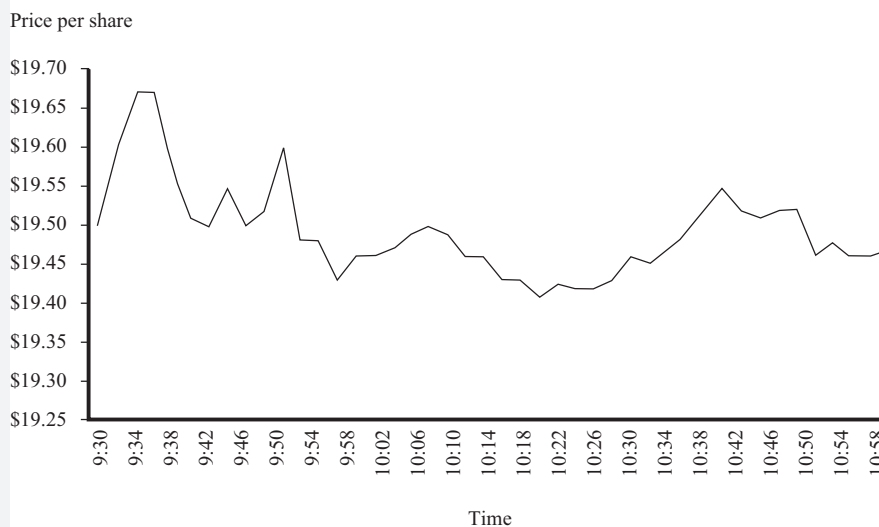


How do event studies relate to efficient markets? In a semi-strong efficient market, share prices react quickly and accurately to public information. Therefore, if the information is good news, such as better-than-expected earnings, one would expect the company's shares to increase immediately at the time of the announcement; if it is bad news, one would expect a swift, negative reaction. If actual returns exceed what is expected in absence of the announcement and these returns are confined to the announcement period, then they are consistent with the idea that market prices react quickly to new information. In other words, the finding of excess returns at the time of the announcement does not necessarily indicate market inefficiency. In contrast, the finding of consistent excess returns following the announcement would suggest a trading opportunity. Trading on the basis of the announcement—that is, once the announcement is made—would not, on average, yield abnormal returns.

EXAMPLE 6**Information Arrival and Market Reaction**

Consider an example of a news item and its effect on a share's price. In June 2008, the US Federal Trade Commission (FTC) began an investigation of Intel Corporation regarding non-competitiveness, and on 16 December 2009, the FTC announced that it was suing Intel over non-competitive issues. This announcement was made before the market opened for trading on 16 December.

Intel stock closed at \$19.78 on 15 December 2009 but opened at \$19.50 on 16 December. The stock then traded in the range from \$19.45 to \$19.68 within the first half hour as the news of the suit and Intel's initial response were spreading among investors. Exhibit 2 illustrates the price of Intel for the first 90 minutes of trading on 16 December.

Exhibit 2 Price of Intel: 16 December 2009

Source: Yahoo! Finance.

Is the fact that the price of Intel moves up immediately and then comes down indicative of an inefficiency regarding information? Not necessarily. Does it mean that investors overreacted? Not necessarily. During the morning, both before and after the market opened, news flowed about the lawsuit and the company's reaction to the lawsuit. The price of the shares reflects investors' reactions to this news. Why didn't Intel's shares simply move to a new level and stay there? Because 1) information continued to flow during the day on Intel and investors' estimate of the importance of this news on Intel's stock value continued to change, and 2) other news, related to other events and issues (such as the economy), affected stock prices.

Researchers have examined many different company-specific information events, including stock splits, dividend changes, and merger announcements, as well as economy-wide events, such as regulation changes and tax rate changes. The results

of most research are consistent with the view that developed securities markets might be semi-strong efficient. But some evidence suggests that the markets in developing countries may not be semi-strong efficient.¹⁹

3.3 Strong Form

In a **strong-form efficient market**, security prices fully reflect both public and private information. A market that is strong-form efficient is, by definition, also semi-strong- and weak-form efficient. In the case of a strong-form efficient market, insiders would not be able to earn abnormal returns from trading on the basis of private information. A strong-form efficient market also means that prices reflect all private information, which means that prices reflect everything that the management of a company knows about the financial condition of the company that has not been publicly released. However, this is not likely because of the strong prohibitions against insider trading that are found in most countries. If a market is strong-form efficient, those with insider information cannot earn abnormal returns.

Researchers test whether a market is strong-form efficient by testing whether investors can earn abnormal profits by trading on nonpublic information. The results of these tests are consistent with the view that securities markets are not strong-form efficient; many studies have found that abnormal profits can be earned when nonpublic information is used.²⁰

3.4 Implications of the Efficient Market Hypothesis

The implications of efficient markets to investment managers and analysts are important because they affect the value of securities and how these securities are managed. Several implications can be drawn from the evidence on efficient markets for developed markets:

- Securities markets are weak-form efficient, and therefore, investors cannot earn abnormal returns by trading on the basis of past trends in price.
- Securities markets are semi-strong efficient, and therefore, analysts who collect and analyze information must consider whether that information is already reflected in security prices and how any new information affects a security's value.²¹
- Securities markets are not strong-form efficient because securities laws are intended to prevent exploitation of private information.

3.4.1 Fundamental Analysis

Fundamental analysis is the examination of publicly available information and the formulation of forecasts to estimate the intrinsic value of assets. Fundamental analysis involves the estimation of an asset's value using company data, such as earnings and sales forecasts, and risk estimates as well as industry and economic data, such as economic growth, inflation, and interest rates. Buy and sell decisions depend on whether the current market price is less than or greater than the estimated intrinsic value.

¹⁹ See Gan, Lee, Hwa, and Zhang (2005) and Raja, Sudhakar, and Selvam (2009).

²⁰ Evidence that finds that markets are not strong-form efficient include Jaffe (1974) and Rozeff and Zaman (1988).

²¹ In the case of the Intel example, this implication would mean estimating how the actual filing of the lawsuit and the company's reaction to the lawsuit affect the value of Intel, while keeping in mind that the expectation of a lawsuit was already impounded in Intel's stock price.

The semi-strong form of market efficiency says that all available public information is reflected in current prices. So, what good is fundamental analysis? Fundamental analysis is necessary in a well-functioning market because this analysis helps the market participants understand the value implications of information. In other words, fundamental analysis facilitates a semi-strong efficient market by disseminating value-relevant information. And, although fundamental analysis requires costly information, this analysis can be profitable in terms of generating abnormal returns if the analyst creates a comparative advantage with respect to this information.²²

3.4.2 Technical Analysis

Investors using **technical analysis** attempt to profit by looking at patterns of prices and trading volume. Although some price patterns persist, exploiting these patterns may be too costly and, hence, would not produce abnormal returns.

Consider a situation in which a pattern of prices exists. With so many investors examining prices, this pattern will be detected. If profitable, exploiting this pattern will eventually affect prices such that this pattern will no longer exist; it will be arbitrated away. In other words, by detecting and exploiting patterns in prices, technical analysts assist markets in maintaining weak-form efficiency. Does this mean that technical analysts cannot earn abnormal profits? Not necessarily, because there may be a possibility of earning abnormal profits from a pricing inefficiency. But would it be possible to earn abnormal returns on a consistent basis from exploiting such a pattern? No, because the actions of market participants will arbitrage this opportunity quickly, and the inefficiency will no longer exist.

3.4.3 Portfolio Management

If securities markets are weak-form and semi-strong-form efficient, the implication is that active trading, whether attempting to exploit price patterns or public information, is not likely to generate abnormal returns. In other words, portfolio managers cannot beat the market on a consistent basis, so therefore, passive portfolio management should outperform active portfolio management. Researchers have observed that mutual funds do not, on average, outperform the market on a risk-adjusted basis.²³ Mutual funds perform, on average, similar to the market before considering fees and expenses and perform worse than the market, on average, once fees and expenses are considered. Even if a mutual fund is not actively managed, there are costs to managing these funds, which reduces net returns.

So, what good are portfolio managers? The role of a portfolio manager is not necessarily to beat the market but, rather, to establish and manage a portfolio consistent with the portfolio's objectives, with appropriate diversification and asset allocation, while taking into consideration the risk preferences and tax situation of the investor.

MARKET PRICING ANOMALIES

4

Although considerable evidence shows that markets are efficient, researchers have identified a number of apparent market inefficiencies or anomalies. These market anomalies, if persistent, are exceptions to the notion of market efficiency. Researchers

²² Brealey (1983).

²³ See Malkiel (1995). One of the challenges to evaluating mutual fund performance is that the researcher must control for survivorship bias.

conclude that a **market anomaly** may be present if a change in the price of an asset or security cannot directly be linked to current relevant information known in the market or to the release of new information into the market.

The validity of any evidence supporting the potential existence of a market inefficiency or anomaly must be *consistent* over reasonably long periods. Otherwise, a detected market anomaly may largely be an artifact of the sample period chosen. In the widespread search for discovering profitable anomalies, many findings could simply be the product of a process called **data mining**, also known as **data snooping**. In generally accepted research practice, an initial hypothesis is developed which is based on economic rationale. Tests are then conducted on objectively selected data to either confirm or reject the original hypothesis. However, with data mining the process is typically reversed: data are examined with the intent to develop a hypothesis, instead of developing a hypothesis first. This is done by analyzing data in various manners, and even utilizing different empirical approaches until you find support for a desired result, in this case a profitable anomaly.

Can researchers look back on data and find a trading strategy that would have yielded abnormal returns? Absolutely. Enough data snooping often can detect a trading strategy that would have worked in the past by chance alone. But in an efficient market, such a strategy is unlikely to generate abnormal returns on a consistent basis in the future. Also, although identified anomalies may appear to produce excess returns, it is generally difficult to profitably exploit the anomalies after accounting for risk, trading costs, and so on.

Several well-known anomalies are listed in Exhibit 3. This list is by no means exhaustive, but it provides information on the breadth of the anomalies. A few of these anomalies are discussed in more detail in the following sections. The anomalies are placed into categories based on the research method that identified the anomaly. Time-series anomalies were identified using time series of data. Cross-sectional anomalies were identified based on analyzing a cross section of companies that differ on some key characteristics. Other anomalies were identified by a variety of means, including event studies.

Exhibit 3 Sampling of Observed Pricing Anomalies

Time Series	Cross-Sectional	Other
January effect	Size effect	Closed-end fund discount
Day-of-the-week effect	Value effect	Earnings surprise
Weekend effect	Book-to-market ratios	Initial public offerings
Turn-of-the-month effect	P/E ratio effect	Distressed securities effect
Holiday effect	Value Line enigma	Stock splits
Time-of-day effect		Super Bowl
Momentum		
Overreaction		

4.1 Time-Series Anomalies

Two of the major categories of time-series anomalies that have been documented are 1) calendar anomalies and 2) momentum and overreaction anomalies.

4.1.1 Calendar Anomalies

In the 1980s, a number of researchers reported that stock market returns in January were significantly higher compared to the rest of the months of the year, with most of the abnormal returns reported during the first five trading days in January. Since its first documentation in the 1980s, this pattern, known as the **January effect**, has been observed in most equity markets around the world. This anomaly is also known as the **turn-of-the-year effect**, or even often referred to as the “small firm in January effect” because it is most frequently observed for the returns of small market capitalization stocks.²⁴

The January effect contradicts the efficient market hypothesis because excess returns in January are not attributed to any new and relevant information or news. A number of reasons have been suggested for this anomaly, including tax-loss selling. Researchers have speculated that, in order to reduce their tax liabilities, investors sell their “loser” securities in December for the purpose of creating capital losses, which can then be used to offset any capital gains. A related explanation is that these losers tend to be small-cap stocks with high volatility.²⁵ This increased supply of equities in December depresses their prices, and then these shares are bought in early January at relatively attractive prices. This demand then drives their prices up again. Overall, the evidence indicates that tax-loss selling may account for a portion of January abnormal returns, but it does not explain all of it.

Another possible explanation for the anomaly is so-called “window dressing”, a practice in which portfolio managers sell their riskier securities prior to 31 December. The explanation is as follows: many portfolio managers prepare the annual reports of their portfolio holdings as of 31 December. Selling riskier securities is an attempt to make their portfolios appear less risky. After 31 December, a portfolio manager would then simply purchase riskier securities in an attempt to earn higher returns. However, similar to the tax-loss selling hypothesis, the research evidence in support of the window dressing hypothesis explains some, but not all, of the anomaly.

Recent evidence for both stock and bond returns suggests that the January effect is not persistent and, therefore, is not a pricing anomaly. Once an appropriate adjustment for risk is made, the January “effect” does not produce abnormal returns.²⁶

Several other calendar effects, including the day-of-the-week and the weekend effects,²⁷ have been found. These anomalies are summarized in Exhibit 4.²⁸ But like the size effect, which will be described later, most of these anomalies have been eliminated over time. One view is that the anomalies have been exploited such that the effect has been arbitrated away. Another view, however, is that increasingly sophisticated statistical methodologies fail to detect pricing inefficiencies.

²⁴ There is also evidence of a January effect in bond returns that is more prevalent in high-yield corporate bonds, similar to the small-company effect for stocks.

²⁵ See Roll (1983).

²⁶ See, for example, Kim (2006).

²⁷ For a discussion of several of these anomalous patterns, see Jacobs and Levy (1988).

²⁸ The weekend effect consists of a pattern of returns around the weekend: abnormal positive returns on Fridays followed by abnormally negative returns on Mondays. This is a day-of-the-week effect that specifically links Friday and Monday returns. It is interesting to note that in 2009, the weekend effect in the United States was inverted, with 80 percent of the gains from March 2009 onward coming from the first trading day of the week.

Exhibit 4 Calendar-Based Anomalies

Anomaly	Observation
Turn-of-the-month effect	Returns tend to be higher on the last trading day of the month and the first three trading days of the next month.
Day-of-the-week effect	The average Monday return is negative and lower than the average returns for the other four days, which are all positive.
Weekend effect	Returns on weekends tend to be lower than returns on weekdays.
Holiday effect	Returns on stocks in the day prior to market holidays tend to be higher than other days.

4.1.2 Momentum and Overreaction Anomalies

Momentum anomalies relate to short-term share price patterns. One of the earliest studies to identify this type of anomaly was conducted by Werner DeBondt and Richard Thaler, who argued that investors overreact to the release of unexpected public information.²⁹ Therefore, stock prices will be inflated (depressed) for those companies releasing good (bad) information. This anomaly has become known as the overreaction effect. Using the overreaction effect, they proposed a strategy that involved buying “loser” portfolios and selling “winner” portfolios. They defined stocks as winners or losers based on their total returns over the previous three- to five-year period. They found that in a subsequent period, the loser portfolios outperformed the market, while the winner portfolios underperformed the market. Similar patterns have been documented in many, but not all, global stock markets as well as in bond markets. One criticism is that the observed anomaly may be the result of statistical problems in the analysis.

A contradiction to weak-form efficiency occurs when securities that have experienced high returns in the short term tend to continue to generate higher returns in subsequent periods.³⁰ Empirical support for the existence of momentum in stock returns in most stock markets around the world is well documented. If investors can trade on the basis of momentum and earn abnormal profits, then this anomaly contradicts the weak form of the efficient market hypothesis because it represents a pattern in prices that can be exploited by simply using historical price information.³¹

Researchers have argued that the existence of momentum is rational and not contrary to market efficiency because it is plausible that there are shocks to the expected growth rates of cash flows to shareholders and that these shocks induce a serial correlation that is rational and short lived.³² In other words, having stocks with some degree of momentum in their security returns may not imply irrationality but, rather, may reflect prices adjusting to a shock in growth rates.

²⁹ DeBondt and Thaler (1985).

³⁰ Notice that this pattern lies in sharp contrast to DeBondt and Thaler’s reversal pattern that is displayed over longer periods of time. In theory, the two patterns could be related. In other words, it is feasible that prices are bid up extremely high, perhaps too high, in the short term for companies that are doing well. In the longer term (three-to-five years), the prices of these short-term winners correct themselves and they do poorly.

³¹ Jegadeesh and Titman (2001).

³² Johnson (2002).

4.2 Cross-Sectional Anomalies

Two of the most researched cross-sectional anomalies in financial markets are the size effect and the value effect.

4.2.1 Size Effect

The size effect results from the observation that equities of small-cap companies tend to outperform equities of large-cap companies on a risk-adjusted basis. Many researchers documented a small-company effect soon after the initial research was published in 1981. This effect, however, was not apparent in subsequent studies.³³ Part of the reason that the size effect was not confirmed by subsequent studies may be because of the fact that if it were truly an anomaly, investors acting on this effect would reduce any potential returns. But some of the explanation may simply be that the effect as originally observed was a chance outcome and, therefore, not actually an inefficiency.

4.2.2 Value Effect

A number of global empirical studies have shown that value stocks, which are generally referred to as stocks that have below-average price-to-earnings (P/E) and market-to-book (M/B) ratios, and above-average dividend yields, have consistently outperformed growth stocks over long periods of time.³⁴ If the effect persists, the value stock anomaly contradicts semi-strong market efficiency because all the information used to categorize stocks in this manner is publicly available.

Fama and French developed a three-factor model to predict stock returns.³⁵ In addition to the use of market returns as specified by the capital asset pricing model (CAPM), the Fama and French model also includes the size of the company as measured by the market value of its equity and the company's book value of equity divided by its market value of equity, which is a value measure. The Fama and French model captures risk dimensions related to stock returns that the CAPM model does not consider. Fama and French find that when they apply the three-factor model instead of the CAPM, the value stock anomaly disappears.

4.3 Other Anomalies

A number of additional anomalies has been documented in the financial markets, including the existence of closed-end investment fund discounts, price reactions to the release of earnings information, returns of initial public offerings, and the predictability of returns based on prior information.

4.3.1 Closed-End Investment Fund Discounts

A closed-end investment fund issues a fixed number of shares at inception and does not sell any additional shares after the initial offering. Therefore, the fund capitalization is fixed unless a secondary public offering is made. The shares of closed-end funds trade on stock markets like any other shares in the equity market (i.e., their prices are determined by supply and demand).

³³ Although a large number of studies documents a small-company effect, these studies are concentrated in a period similar to that of the original research and, therefore, use a similar data set. The key to whether something is a true anomaly is persistence in out-of-sample tests. Fama and French (2008) document that the size effect is apparent only in microcap stocks but not in small- and large-cap stocks and these microcap stocks may have a significant influence in studies that document a size effect.

³⁴ For example, see Capaul, Rowley, and Sharpe (1993) and Fama and French (1998).

³⁵ Fama and French (1995).

Theoretically, these shares should trade at a price approximately equal to their net asset value (NAV) per share, which is simply the total market value of the fund's security holdings less any liabilities divided by the number of shares outstanding. An abundance of research, however, has documented that, on average, closed-end funds trade at a discount from NAV. Most studies have documented average discounts in the 4–10 percent range, although individual funds have traded at discounts exceeding 50 percent and others have traded at large premiums.³⁶

The closed-end fund discount presents a puzzle because conceptually, an investor could purchase all the shares in the fund, liquidate the fund, and end up making a profit. Some researchers have suggested that these discounts are attributed to management fees or expectations of the managers' performance, but these explanations are not supported by the evidence.³⁷ An alternative explanation for the discount is that tax liabilities are associated with unrealized capital gains and losses that exist prior to when the investor bought the shares, and hence, the investor does not have complete control over the timing of the realization of gains and losses.³⁸ Although the evidence supports this hypothesis to a certain extent, the tax effect is not large enough to explain the entire discount. Finally, it has often been argued that the discounts exist because of liquidity problems and errors in calculating NAV. The illiquidity explanation is plausible if shares are recorded at the same price as more liquid, publicly traded stocks; some evidence supports this assertion. But as with tax reasons, liquidity issues explain only a portion of the discount effect.

Can these discounts be exploited to earn abnormal returns if transaction costs are taken into account? No. First, the transaction costs involved in exploiting the discount—buying all the shares and liquidating the fund—would eliminate any profit.³⁹ Second, these discounts tend to revert to zero over time. Hence, a strategy to trade on the basis of these discounts would not likely be profitable.⁴⁰

4.3.2 Earnings Surprise

Although most event studies have supported semi-strong market efficiency, some researchers have provided evidence that questions semi-strong market efficiency. One of these studies relates to the extensively examined adjustment of stock prices to earnings announcements.⁴¹ The unexpected part of the earnings announcement, or **earnings surprise**, is the portion of earnings that is unanticipated by investors and, according to the efficient market hypothesis, merits a price adjustment. Positive (negative) surprises should cause appropriate and rapid price increases (decreases). Several studies have been conducted using data from numerous markets around the world. Most of the results indicate that earnings surprises are reflected quickly in stock prices, but the adjustment process is not always efficient. In particular, although a substantial adjustment occurs prior to and at the announcement date, an adjustment also occurs after the announcement.⁴²

As a result of these slow price adjustments, companies that display the largest positive earnings surprises subsequently display superior stock return performance, whereas poor subsequent performance is displayed by companies with low or negative

³⁶ See Dimson and Minio-Kozerski (1999) for a review of this literature.

³⁷ See Lee, Sheifer, and Thaler (1990).

³⁸ The return to owners of closed-end fund shares has three parts: 1) the price appreciation or depreciation of the shares themselves, 2) the dividends earned and distributed to owners by the fund, and 3) the capital gains and losses earned by the fund that are distributed by the fund. The explanation of the anomalous pricing has to do with the timing of the distribution of capital gains.

³⁹ See, for example, the study by Pontiff (1996), which shows how the cost of arbitraging these discounts eliminates the profit.

⁴⁰ See Pontiff (1995).

⁴¹ See Jones, Rendleman, and Latané (1984).

⁴² Not surprisingly, it is often argued that this slow reaction contributes to a momentum pattern.

earnings surprises.⁴³ This finding implies that investors could earn abnormal returns using publicly available information by buying stocks of companies that had positive earnings surprises and selling those with negative surprises.

Although there is support for abnormal returns associated with earnings surprises, and some support for such returns beyond the announcement period, there is also evidence indicating that these observed abnormal returns are an artifact of studies that do not sufficiently control for transaction costs and risk.⁴⁴

4.3.3 Initial Public Offerings (IPOs)

When a company offers shares of its stock to the public for the first time, it does so through an initial public offering (or IPO). This offering involves working with an investment bank that helps price and market the newly issued shares. After the offering is complete, the new shares trade on a stock market for the first time. Given the risk that investment bankers face in trying to sell a new issue for which the true price is unknown, it is perhaps not surprising to find that, on average, the initial selling price is set too low and that the price increases dramatically on the first trading day. The percentage difference between the issue price and the closing price at the end of the first day of trading is often referred to as the degree of underpricing.

The evidence suggests that, on average, investors who are able to buy the shares of an IPO at their offering price may be able to earn abnormal profits. For example, during the internet bubble of 1995–2000, many IPOs ended their first day of trading up by more than 100 percent. Such performance, however, is not always the case. Sometimes the issues are priced too high, which means that share prices drop on their first day of trading. In addition, the evidence also suggests that investors buying after the initial offering are not able to earn abnormal profits because prices adjust quickly to the “true” values, which supports semi-strong market efficiency. In fact, the subsequent long-term performance of IPOs is generally found to be below average. Taken together, the IPO underpricing and the subsequent poor performance suggests that the markets are overly optimistic initially (i.e., investors overreact).

Some researchers have examined closely why IPOs may appear to have anomalous returns. Because of the small size of the IPO companies and the method of equally weighting the samples, what appears to be an anomaly may simply be an artifact of the methodology.⁴⁵

4.3.4 Predictability of Returns Based on Prior Information

A number of researchers have documented that equity returns are related to prior information on such factors as interest rates, inflation rates, stock volatility, and dividend yields.⁴⁶ But finding that equity returns are affected by changes in economic fundamentals is not evidence of market inefficiency and would not result in abnormal trading returns.⁴⁷

⁴³ A similar pattern has been documented in the corporate bond market, where bond prices react too slowly to new company earnings announcements as well as to changes in company debt ratings.

⁴⁴ See Brown (1997) for a summary of evidence supporting the existence of this anomaly. See Zarowin (1989) for evidence regarding the role of size in explaining abnormal returns to surprises; Alexander, Goff, and Peterson (1989) for evidence regarding transaction costs and unexpected earnings strategies; and Kim and Kim (2003) for evidence indicating that the anomalous returns can be explained by risk factors.

⁴⁵ See Brav, Geczy, and Gompers (1995).

⁴⁶ See, for example, Fama and Schwert (1977) and Fama and French (1988).

⁴⁷ See Fama and French (2008).

Furthermore, the relationship between stock returns and the prior information is not consistent over time. For example, in one study, the relationship between stock prices and dividend yields changed from positive to negative in different periods.⁴⁸ Hence, a trading strategy based on dividend yields would not yield consistent abnormal returns.

4.4 Implications for Investment Strategies

Although it is interesting to consider the anomalies just described, attempting to benefit from them in practice is not easy. In fact, most researchers conclude that observed anomalies are not violations of market efficiency but, rather, are the result of statistical methodologies used to detect the anomalies. As a result, if the methodologies are corrected, most of these anomalies disappear.⁴⁹ Another point to consider is that in an efficient market, overreactions may occur, but then so do under-reactions.⁵⁰ Therefore, on average, the markets are efficient. In other words, investors face challenges when they attempt to translate statistical anomalies into economic profits. Consider the following quote regarding anomalies from the *Economist* (“Frontiers of Finance Survey,” 9 October 1993):

Many can be explained away. When transactions costs are taken into account, the fact that stock prices tend to over-react to news, falling back the day after good news and bouncing up the day after bad news, proves unexploitable: price reversals are always within the bid-ask spread. Others such as the small-firm effect, work for a few years and then fail for a few years. Others prove to be merely proxies for the reward for risk taking. Many have disappeared since (and because) attention has been drawn to them.

It is difficult to envision entrusting your retirement savings to a manager whose strategy is based on buying securities on Mondays, which tends to have negative returns on average, and selling them on Fridays. For one thing, the negative Monday returns are merely an average, so on any given week, they could be positive. In addition, such a strategy would generate large trading costs. Even more importantly, investors would likely be uncomfortable investing their funds in a strategy that has no compelling underlying economic rationale.

5

BEHAVIORAL FINANCE

Behavioral finance examines investor behavior to understand how people make decisions, individually and collectively. Behavioral finance does not assume that people consider all available information in decision-making and act rationally by maximizing utility within budget constraints and updating expectations consistent with Bayes’ formula. The resulting behaviors may affect what is observed in the financial markets.

In a broader sense, behavioral finance attempts to explain why individuals make the decisions that they do, whether these decisions are rational or irrational. The focus of much of the work in this area is on the behavioral biases that affect investment decisions. The behavior of individuals, in particular their behavioral biases, has been offered as a possible explanation for a number of pricing anomalies.

⁴⁸ Schwert (2003, Chapter 15).

⁴⁹ Fama (1998).

⁵⁰ This point is made by Fama (1998).

Most asset-pricing models assume that markets are rational and that the intrinsic value of a security reflects this rationality. But market efficiency and asset-pricing models do not require that each individual is rational—rather, only that the market is rational. If individuals deviate from rationality, other individuals are assumed to observe this deviation and respond accordingly. These responses move the market toward efficiency. If this does not occur in practice, it may be possible to explain some market anomalies referencing observed behaviors and behavioral biases.

5.1 Loss Aversion

In most financial models, the assumption is that investors are risk averse. **Risk aversion** refers to the tendency of people to dislike risk and to require higher expected returns to compensate for exposure to additional risk. Behavioral finance allows for the possibility that the dissatisfaction resulting from a loss exceeds the satisfaction resulting from a gain of the same magnitude. **Loss aversion** refers to the tendency of people to dislike losses more than they like comparable gains. This results in a strong preference for avoiding losses as opposed to achieving gains.⁵¹ Some argue that behavioral theories of loss aversion can explain observed overreaction in markets. If loss aversion is more important than risk aversion, researchers should observe that investors overreact.⁵² Although loss aversion can explain the overreaction anomaly, evidence also suggests that under reaction is just as prevalent as overreaction, which counters these arguments.

5.2 Herding

Herding behavior has been advanced as a possible explanation of under reaction and overreaction in financial markets. **Herding** occurs when investors trade on the same side of the market in the same securities, or when investors ignore their own private information and/or analysis and act as other investors do. **Herding** is clustered trading that may or may not be based on information.⁵³ Herding may result in under- or over-reaction to information depending upon the direction of the herd.

5.3 Overconfidence

A behavioral bias offered to explain pricing anomalies is overconfidence. If investors are overconfident, they overestimate their ability to process and interpret information about a security. Overconfident investors may not process information appropriately, and if there is a sufficient number of these investors, stocks will be mispriced.⁵⁴ But most researchers argue that this mispricing is temporary, with prices correcting eventually. If it takes a sufficiently long time for prices to become correctly priced and the mispricing is predictable, it may be possible for investors to earn abnormal profits.

Evidence has suggested that overconfidence results in mispricing for US, UK, German, French, and Japanese markets.⁵⁵ This overconfidence, however, is predominantly in higher-growth companies, whose prices react slowly to new information.⁵⁶

⁵¹ See DeBondt and Thaler (1985) and Tversky and Kahneman (1981).

⁵² See Fama (1998).

⁵³ The term used when there is herding without information is “spurious herding.”

⁵⁴ Another aspect to overconfidence is that investors who are overconfident in their ability to select investments and manage a portfolio tend to use less diversification, investing in what is most familiar. Therefore, investor behavior may affect investment results—returns and risk—without implications for the efficiency of markets.

⁵⁵ Scott, Stumpp, and Xu (2003) and Boujelbene Abbes, Boujelbene, and Bouri (2009).

⁵⁶ Scott, Stumpp, and Xu (2003).

5.4 Information Cascades

An application of behavioral theories to markets and pricing focuses on the role of personal learning in markets. Personal learning is what investors learn by observing outcomes of trades and what they learn from “conversations”—ideas shared among investors about specific assets and the markets.⁵⁷ Social interaction and the resultant contagion is important in pricing and may explain such phenomena as price changes without accompanying news and mistakes in valuation.

Biases that investors possess can lead to herding behavior or information cascades. Herding and information cascades are related but not identical concepts. An **information cascade** is the transmission of information from those participants who act first and whose decisions influence the decisions of others. Those who are acting on the choices of others may be ignoring their own preferences in favor of imitating the choices of others. In particular, information cascades may occur with respect to the release of accounting information because accounting information may be difficult to interpret and may be noisy. For example, the release of earnings is difficult to interpret because it is necessary to understand how the number was arrived at and noisy because it is uncertain what the current earnings imply about future earnings.

Information cascades may result in serial correlation of stock returns, which is consistent with overreaction anomalies. Do information cascades result in correct pricing? Some argue that if a cascade is leading toward an incorrect value, this cascade is “fragile” and will be corrected because investors will ultimately give more weight to public information or the trading of a recognized informed trader.⁵⁸ Information cascades, although documented in markets, do not necessarily mean that investors can exploit knowledge of them as profitable trading opportunities.

Are information cascades rational? If the informed traders act first and uninformed traders imitate the informed traders, this behavior is consistent with rationality. The imitation trading by the uninformed traders may help the market incorporate relevant information and improve market efficiency.⁵⁹ However, the imitation trading may lead to an overreaction to information. The empirical evidence indicates that information cascades are greater for a stock when the information quality regarding the company is poor.⁶⁰ Information cascades may enhance the information available to investors.

5.5 Other Behavioral Biases

Other behavioral biases that have been put forth to explain observed investor behavior include the following:

- **representativeness**—investors assess new information and probabilities of outcomes based on similarity to the current state or to a familiar classification;
- **mental accounting**—investors keep track of the gains and losses for different investments in separate mental accounts and treat those accounts differently;
- **conservatism**—investors tend to be slow to react to new information and continue to maintain their prior views or forecasts; and
- **narrow framing**—investors focus on issues in isolation and respond to the issues based on how the issues are posed.⁶¹

⁵⁷ Hirshleifer and Teoh (2009).

⁵⁸ Avery and Zemsky (1999).

⁵⁹ Another alternative is that the uninformed traders are the majority of the market participants and the imitators are imitating not because they agree with the actions of the majority but because they are looking to act on the actions of the uninformed traders.

⁶⁰ Avery and Zemsky (1999) and Bikhchandani, Hirshleifer, and Welch (1992).

⁶¹ For a review of these behavioral issues, see Hirshleifer (2001).

The basic idea behind behavioral finance is that investors are humans and, therefore, imperfect. These observed less than rational behaviors may help explain observed pricing anomalies. The beliefs investors have about a given asset's value may not be homogeneous. But an issue, which is controversial, is whether these insights can help someone identify and exploit any mispricing. In other words, can investors use knowledge of behavioral biases to predict how asset prices will be affected and act based on the predictions to earn abnormal profits?

5.6 Behavioral Finance and Investors

Behavior biases can affect all market participants, from the novice investor to the most experienced investment manager. An understanding of behavioral finance can help market participants recognize their own and others' behavioral biases. As a result of this recognition, they may be able to respond and make improved decisions, individually and collectively.

5.7 Behavioral Finance and Efficient Markets

The use of behavioral finance to explain observed pricing is an important part of the understanding of how markets function and how prices are determined. Whether there is a behavioral explanation for market anomalies remains a debate. Pricing anomalies are continually being uncovered, and then statistical and behavioral explanations are offered to explain these anomalies.

On the one hand, if investors must be rational for efficient markets to exist, then all the imperfections of human investors suggest that markets cannot be efficient. On the other hand, if all that is required for markets to be efficient is that investors cannot consistently beat the market on a risk-adjusted basis, then the evidence does support market efficiency.

SUMMARY

This reading has provided an overview of the theory and evidence regarding market efficiency and has discussed the different forms of market efficiency as well as the implications for fundamental analysis, technical analysis, and portfolio management. The general conclusion drawn from the efficient market hypothesis is that it is not possible to beat the market on a consistent basis by generating returns in excess of those expected for the level of risk of the investment.

Additional key points include the following:

- The efficiency of a market is affected by the number of market participants and depth of analyst coverage, information availability, and limits to trading.
- There are three forms of efficient markets, each based on what is considered to be the information used in determining asset prices. In the weak form, asset prices fully reflect all market data, which refers to all past price and trading volume information. In the semi-strong form, asset prices reflect all publicly known and available information. In the strong form, asset prices fully reflect all information, which includes both public and private information.
- Intrinsic value refers to the true value of an asset, whereas market value refers to the price at which an asset can be bought or sold. When markets are efficient, the two should be the same or very close. But when markets are not efficient, the two can diverge significantly.

- Most empirical evidence supports the idea that securities markets in developed countries are semi-strong-form efficient; however, empirical evidence does not support the strong form of the efficient market hypothesis.
- A number of anomalies have been documented that contradict the notion of market efficiency, including the size anomaly, the January anomaly, and the winners–losers anomalies. In most cases, however, contradictory evidence both supports and refutes the anomaly.
- Behavioral finance uses human psychology, such as behavioral biases, in an attempt to explain investment decisions. Whereas behavioral finance is helpful in understanding observed decisions, a market can still be considered efficient even if market participants exhibit seemingly irrational behaviors, such as herding.

REFERENCES

- Alexander, John C., Delbert Goff, and Pamela P. Peterson. 1989. "Profitability of a Trading Strategy Based on Unexpected Earnings." *Financial Analysts Journal*, vol. 45, no. 4:65–71.
- Avery, Christopher, and Peter Zemsky. 1998. "Multi-Dimensional Uncertainty and Herding in Financial Markets." *American Economic Review*, vol. 88, no. 4:724–748.
- Bessembinder, Hendrik, and Kalok Chan. 1998. "Market Efficiency and the Returns to Technical Analysis." *Financial Management*, vol. 27, no. 2:5–17.
- Bikhchandani, Sushil, David Hirshleifer, and Ivo Welch. 1992. "A Theory of Fads, Fashion, Custom, and Cultural Change as Informational Cascades." *Journal of Political Economy*, vol. 100, no. 5:992–1026.
- Bouljelbene Abbes, Mouna, Younes Boujelbene, and Abdelfettah Bouri. 2009. "Overconfidence Bias: Explanation of Market Anomalies French Market Case." *Journal of Applied Economic Sciences*, vol. 4, no. 1:12–25.
- Brav, Alon, Christopher Geczy, and Paul A. Gompers. 1995. "The Long-Run Underperformance of Seasoned Equity Offerings Revisited." Working paper, Harvard University.
- Brealey, Richard. 1983. "Can Professional Investors Beat the Market?" *An Introduction to Risk and Return from Common Stocks*, 2nd edition. Cambridge, MA: MIT Press.
- Bris, Arturo, William N. Goetzmann, and Ning Zhu. 2009. "Efficiency and the Bear: Short Sales and Markets around the World." *Journal of Finance*, vol. 62, no. 3:1029–1079.
- Brown, Laurence D. 1997. "Earning Surprise Research: Synthesis and Perspectives." *Financial Analysts Journal*, vol. 53, no. 2:13–19.
- Capaul, Carlo, Ian Rowley, and William Sharpe. 1993. "International Value and Growth Stock Returns." *Financial Analysts Journal*, vol. 49:27–36.
- Chen, Kong-Jun, and Xiao-Ming Li. 2006. "Is Technical Analysis Useful for Stock Traders in China? Evidence from the Sze Component A-Share Index." *Pacific Economic Review*, vol. 11, no. 4:477–488.
- Chordia, Tarun, Richard Roll, and Avanidhar Subrahmanyam. 2005. "Evidence on the Speed of Convergence to Market Efficiency." *Journal of Financial Economics*, vol. 76, no. 2:271–292.
- DeBondt, Werner, and Richard Thaler. 1985. "Does the Stock Market Overreact?" *Journal of Finance*, vol. 40, no. 3:793–808.
- Deng, Xiaohu, Sandra Mortal, and Vishal Gupta. 2017. "The Real Effects of Short Selling Constraints: Cross-Country Evidence." Working paper.
- Dimson, Elroy, and Carolina Minio-Kozerski. 1999. "Closed-End Funds: A Survey." *Financial Markets, Institutions & Instruments*, vol. 8, no. 2:1–41.
- Fama, Eugene F. 1970. "Efficient Capital Markets: A Review of Theory and Empirical Work." *Journal of Finance*, vol. 25, no. 2:383–417.
- Fama, Eugene F. 1976. *Foundations of Finance*. New York: Basic Books.
- Fama, Eugene F. 1998. "Market Efficiency, Long-Term Returns, and Behavioral Finance." *Journal of Financial Economics*, vol. 50, no. 3:283–306.
- Fama, Eugene F., and G. William Schwert. 1977. "Asset Returns and Inflation." *Journal of Financial Economics*, vol. 5, no. 2:115–146.
- Fama, Eugene F., and Kenneth R. French. 1988. "Dividend Yields and Expected Stock Returns." *Journal of Financial Economics*, vol. 22, no. 1:3–25.
- Fama, Eugene F., and Kenneth R. French. 1995. "Size and Book-to-Market Factors in Earnings and Returns." *Journal of Finance*, vol. 50, no. 1:131–155.
- Fama, Eugene F., and Kenneth R. French. 1998. "Value versus Growth: The International Evidence." *Journal of Finance*, vol. 53:1975–1999.
- Fama, Eugene F., and Kenneth R. French. 2008. "Dissecting Anomalies." *Journal of Finance*, vol. 63, no. 4:1653–1678.
- Fifield, Suzanne, David Power, and C. Donald Sinclair. 2005. "An Analysis of Trading Strategies in Eleven European Stock Markets." *European Journal of Finance*, vol. 11, no. 6:531–548.

- Gan, Christopher, Minsoo Lee, Au Yong Hue Hwa, and Jun Zhang. 2005. "Revisiting Share Market Efficiency: Evidence from the New Zealand, Australia, US and Japan Stock Indices." *American Journal of Applied Sciences*, vol. 2, no. 5:996–1002.
- Grossman, Sanford J., and Joseph E. Stiglitz. 1980. "On the Impossibility of Informationally Efficient Markets." *American Economic Review*, vol. 70, no. 3:393–408.
- Hirshleifer, David. 2001. "Investor Psychology and Asset Pricing." *Journal of Finance*, vol. 56, no. 4:1533–1597.
- Hirshleifer, David, and Siew Hong Teoh. 2009. "Thought and Behavior Contagion in Capital Markets." In *Handbook of Financial Markets: Dynamics and Evolution*. Edited by Klaus Reiner Schenk-Hoppe and Thorstein Hens. Amsterdam: North Holland.
- Jacobs, Bruce I., and Kenneth N. Levy. 1988. "Calendar Anomalies: Abnormal Returns at Calendar Turning Points." *Financial Analysts Journal*, vol. 44, no. 6:28–39.
- Jaffe, Jeffrey. 1974. "Special Information and Insider Trading." *Journal of Business*, vol. 47, no. 3:410–428.
- Jegadeesh, Narayan, and Sheridan Titman. 2001. "Profitability of Momentum Strategies: An Evaluation of Alternative Explanations." *Journal of Finance*, vol. 56:699–720.
- Johnson, Timothy C. 2002. "Rational Momentum Effects." *Journal of Finance*, vol. 57, no. 2:585–608.
- Jones, Charles P., Richard J. Rendleman, and Henry A. Latané. 1984. "Stock Returns and SUEs during the 1970's." *Journal of Portfolio Management*, vol. 10:18–22.
- Kim, Donchoi, and Myungsun Kim. 2003. "A Multifactor Explanation of Post-Earnings Announcement Drift." *Journal of Financial and Quantitative Analysis*, vol. 38, no. 2:383–398.
- Kim, Dongcheol. 2006. "On the Information Uncertainty Risk and the January Effect." *Journal of Business*, vol. 79, no. 4:2127–2162.
- Lee, Charles M.C., Andrei Sheifer, and Richard H. Thaler. 1990. "Anomalies: Closed-End Mutual Funds." *Journal of Economic Perspectives*, vol. 4, no. 4:153–164.
- Malkiel, Burton G. 1995. "Returns from Investing in Equity Mutual Funds 1971 to 1991." *Journal of Finance*, vol. 50:549–572.
- Mobarek, Asma, A. Sabur Mollah, and Rafiqul Bhuyan. 2008. "Market Efficiency in Emerging Stock Market." *Journal of Emerging Market Finance*, vol. 7, no. 1:17–41.
- Pontiff, Jeffrey. 1995. "Closed-End Fund Premia and Returns: Implications for Financial Market Equilibrium." *Journal of Financial Economics*, vol. 37:341–370.
- Pontiff, Jeffrey. 1996. "Costly Arbitrage: Evidence from Closed-End Funds." *Quarterly Journal of Economics*, vol. 111, no. 4:1135–1151.
- Raja, M., J. Clement Sudhahar, and M. Selvam. 2009. "Testing the Semi-Strong Form Efficiency of Indian Stock Market with Respect to Information Content of Stock Split Announcement—A Study of IT Industry." *International Research Journal of Finance and Economics*, vol. 25:7–20.
- Roll, Richard. 1983. "On Computing Mean Returns and the Small Firm Premium." *Journal of Financial Economics*, vol. 12:371–386.
- Rozeff, Michael S., and Mir A. Zaman. 1988. "Market Efficiency and Insider Trading: New Evidence." *Journal of Business*, vol. 61:25–44.
- Schwert, G. William. 2003. "Anomalies and Market Efficiency." *Handbook of the Economics of Finance*. Edited by George M. Constantinides, M. Harris, and Rene Stulz. Amsterdam: Elsevier Science, B. V.
- Scott, James, Margaret Stumpp, and Peter Xu. 2003. "Overconfidence Bias in International Stock Prices." *Journal of Portfolio Management*, vol. 29, no. 2:80–89.
- Tversky, Amos, and Daniel Kahneman. 1981. "The Framing of Decisions and the Psychology of Choice." *Science*, vol. 211, no. 30:453–458.
- Yau, Jot, Thomas Schneeweis, Thomas Robinson, and Lisa Weiss. 2007. "Alternative Investments Portfolio Management." *Managing Investment Portfolios: A Dynamic Process*. Hoboken, NJ: John Wiley & Sons.
- Zarowin, P. 1989. "Does the Stock Market Overreact to Corporate Earnings Information?" *Journal of Finance*, vol. 44:1385–1399.

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

- 1 In an efficient market, the change in a company's share price is *most likely* the result of:
 - A insiders' private information.
 - B the previous day's change in stock price.
 - C new information coming into the market.
- 2 Regulation that restricts some investors from participating in a market will *most likely*:
 - A impede market efficiency.
 - B not affect market efficiency.
 - C contribute to market efficiency.
- 3 With respect to efficient market theory, when a market allows short selling, the efficiency of the market is *most likely* to:
 - A increase.
 - B decrease.
 - C remain the same.
- 4 Which of the following regulations will *most likely* contribute to market efficiency? Regulatory restrictions on:
 - A short selling.
 - B foreign traders.
 - C insiders trading with nonpublic information.
- 5 Which of the following market regulations will *most likely* impede market efficiency?
 - A Restricting traders' ability to short sell.
 - B Allowing unrestricted foreign investor trading.
 - C Penalizing investors who trade with nonpublic information.
- 6 If markets are efficient, the difference between the intrinsic value and market value of a company's security is:
 - A negative.
 - B zero.
 - C positive.
- 7 The intrinsic value of an undervalued asset is:
 - A less than the asset's market value.
 - B greater than the asset's market value.
 - C the value at which the asset can currently be bought or sold.
- 8 The market value of an undervalued asset is:
 - A greater than the asset's intrinsic value.
 - B the value at which the asset can currently be bought or sold.
 - C equal to the present value of all the asset's expected cash flows.
- 9 With respect to the efficient market hypothesis, if security prices reflect *only* past prices and trading volume information, then the market is:
 - A weak-form efficient.

- B strong-form efficient.
 - C semi-strong-form efficient.
- 10 Which one of the following statements *best* describes the semi-strong form of market efficiency?
- A Empirical tests examine the historical patterns in security prices.
 - B Security prices reflect all publicly known and available information.
 - C Semi-strong-form efficient markets are not necessarily weak-form efficient.
- 11 If markets are semi-strong efficient, standard fundamental analysis will yield abnormal trading profits that are:
- A negative.
 - B equal to zero.
 - C positive.
- 12 If prices reflect all public and private information, the market is *best* described as:
- A weak-form efficient.
 - B strong-form efficient.
 - C semi-strong-form efficient.
- 13 If markets are semi-strong-form efficient, then passive portfolio management strategies are *most likely* to:
- A earn abnormal returns.
 - B outperform active trading strategies.
 - C underperform active trading strategies.
- 14 If a market is semi-strong-form efficient, the risk-adjusted returns of a passively managed portfolio relative to an actively managed portfolio are *most likely*:
- A lower.
 - B higher.
 - C the same.
- 15 Technical analysts assume that markets are:
- A weak-form efficient.
 - B weak-form inefficient.
 - C semi-strong-form efficient.
- 16 Fundamental analysts assume that markets are:
- A weak-form inefficient.
 - B semi-strong-form efficient.
 - C semi-strong-form inefficient.
- 17 If a market is weak-form efficient but semi-strong-form inefficient, then which of the following types of portfolio management is *most likely* to produce abnormal returns?
- A Passive portfolio management.
 - B Active portfolio management based on technical analysis.
 - C Active portfolio management based on fundamental analysis.
- 18 An increase in the time between when an order to trade a security is placed and when the order is executed *most likely* indicates that market efficiency has:
- A decreased.
 - B remained the same.

- C increased.
- 19 With respect to efficient markets, a company whose share price reacts gradually to the public release of its annual report *most likely* indicates that the market where the company trades is:
- A semi-strong-form efficient.
 - B subject to behavioral biases.
 - C receiving additional information about the company.
- 20 Which of the following is *least likely* to explain the January effect anomaly?
- A Tax-loss selling.
 - B Release of new information in January.
 - C Window dressing of portfolio holdings.
- 21 If a researcher conducting empirical tests of a trading strategy using time series of returns finds statistically significant abnormal returns, then the researcher has *most likely* found:
- A a market anomaly.
 - B evidence of market inefficiency.
 - C a strategy to produce future abnormal returns.
- 22 Which of the following market anomalies is inconsistent with weak-form market efficiency?
- A Earnings surprise.
 - B Momentum pattern.
 - C Closed-end fund discount.
- 23 Researchers have found that value stocks have consistently outperformed growth stocks. An investor wishing to exploit the value effect should purchase the stock of companies with above-average:
- A dividend yields.
 - B market-to-book ratios.
 - C price-to-earnings ratios.
- 24 With respect to rational and irrational investment decisions, the efficient market hypothesis requires:
- A only that the market is rational.
 - B that all investors make rational decisions.
 - C that some investors make irrational decisions.
- 25 Observed overreactions in markets can be explained by an investor's degree of:
- A risk aversion.
 - B loss aversion.
 - C confidence in the market.
- 26 Like traditional finance models, the behavioral theory of loss aversion assumes that investors dislike risk; however, the dislike of risk in behavioral theory is assumed to be:
- A leptokurtic.
 - B symmetrical.
 - C asymmetrical.

SOLUTIONS

- 1 C is correct. Today's price change is independent of the one from yesterday, and in an efficient market, investors will react to new, independent information as it is made public.
- 2 A is correct. Reducing the number of market participants can accentuate market imperfections and impede market efficiency (e.g., restrictions on foreign investor trading).
- 3 A is correct. According to theory, reducing the restrictions on trading will allow for more arbitrage trading, thereby promoting more efficient pricing. Although regulators argue that short selling exaggerates downward price movements, empirical research indicates that short selling is helpful in price discovery.
- 4 C is correct. Regulation to restrict unfair use of nonpublic information encourages greater participation in the market, which increases market efficiency. Regulators (e.g., US SEC) discourage illegal insider trading by issuing penalties to violators of their insider trading rules.
- 5 A is correct. Restricting short selling will reduce arbitrage trading, which promotes market efficiency. Permitting foreign investor trading increases market participation, which makes markets more efficient. Penalizing insider trading encourages greater market participation, which increases market efficiency.
- 6 B is correct. A security's intrinsic value and market value should be equal when markets are efficient.
- 7 B is correct. The intrinsic value of an undervalued asset is greater than the market value of the asset, where the market value is the transaction price at which an asset can be currently bought or sold.
- 8 B is correct. The market value is the transaction price at which an asset can be currently bought or sold.
- 9 A is correct. The weak-form efficient market hypothesis is defined as a market where security prices fully reflect all market data, which refers to all past price and trading volume information.
- 10 B is correct. In semi-strong-form efficient markets, security prices reflect all publicly available information.
- 11 B is correct. If all public information should already be reflected in the market price, then the abnormal trading profit will be equal to zero when fundamental analysis is used.
- 12 B is correct. The strong-form efficient market hypothesis assumes all information, public or private, has already been reflected in the prices.
- 13 B is correct. Costs associated with active trading strategies would be difficult to recover; thus, such active trading strategies would have difficulty outperforming passive strategies on a consistent after-cost basis.
- 14 B is correct. In a semi-strong-form efficient market, passive portfolio strategies should outperform active portfolio strategies on a risk-adjusted basis.
- 15 B is correct. Technical analysts use past prices and volume to predict future prices, which is inconsistent with the weakest form of market efficiency (i.e., weak-form market efficiency). Weak-form market efficiency states that investors cannot earn abnormal returns by trading on the basis of past trends in price and volume.

- 16 C is correct. Fundamental analysts use publicly available information to estimate a security's intrinsic value to determine if the security is mispriced, which is inconsistent with the semi-strong form of market efficiency. Semi-strong-form market efficiency states that investors cannot earn abnormal returns by trading based on publicly available information.
- 17 C is correct. If markets are not semi-strong-form efficient, then fundamental analysts are able to use publicly available information to estimate a security's intrinsic value and identify misvalued securities. Technical analysis is not able to earn abnormal returns if markets are weak-form efficient. Passive portfolio managers outperform fundamental analysis if markets are semi-strong-form efficient.
- 18 A is correct. Operating inefficiencies reduce market efficiency.
- 19 C is correct. If markets are efficient, the information from the annual report is reflected in the stock prices; therefore, the gradual changes must be from the release of additional information.
- 20 B is correct. The excess returns in January are not attributed to any new information or news; however, research has found that part of the seasonal pattern can be explained by tax-loss selling and portfolio window dressing.
- 21 A is correct. Finding significant abnormal returns does not necessarily indicate that markets are inefficient or that abnormal returns can be realized by applying the strategy to future time periods. Abnormal returns are considered market anomalies because they may be the result of the model used to estimate the expected returns or may be the result of underestimating transaction costs or other expenses associated with implementing the strategy, rather than because of market inefficiency.
- 22 B is correct. Trading based on historical momentum indicates that price patterns exist and can be exploited by using historical price information. A momentum trading strategy that produces abnormal returns contradicts the weak form of the efficient market hypothesis, which states that investors cannot earn abnormal returns on the basis of past trends in prices.
- 23 A is correct. Higher than average dividend yield is a characteristic of a value stock, along with low price-to-earnings and low market-to-book ratios. Growth stocks are characterized by low dividend yields and high price-to-earnings and high market-to-book ratios.
- 24 A is correct. The efficient market hypothesis and asset-pricing models only require that the market is rational. Behavioral finance is used to explain *some* of the market anomalies as irrational decisions.
- 25 B is correct. Behavioral theories of loss aversion can explain observed overreaction in markets, such that investors dislike losses more than comparable gains (i.e., risk is not symmetrical).
- 26 C is correct. Behavioral theories of loss aversion allow for the possibility that the dislike for risk is not symmetrical, which allows for loss aversion to explain observed overreaction in markets such that investors dislike losses more than they like comparable gains.

EQUITY INVESTMENTS STUDY SESSION

15

Equity Investments (2)

This study session focuses on the characteristics, analysis, and valuation of equity securities. Various equity types including public and private equities are described. The various industry classification approaches for global equities and useful frameworks for conducting industry and individual company analysis are presented. Coverage of the three main equity valuation approaches (present value, multiplier, and asset based) conclude the session.

READING ASSIGNMENTS

- | | |
|-------------------|---|
| Reading 47 | Overview of Equity Securities
by Ryan C. Fuhrmann, CFA, and Asjeet S. Lamba, PhD,
CFA |
| Reading 48 | Introduction to Industry and Company Analysis
by Patrick W. Dorsey, CFA, Anthony M. Fiore, CFA, and
Ian Rossa O'Reilly, CFA |
| Reading 49 | Equity Valuation: Concepts and Basic Tools
by John J. Nagorniak, CFA, and Stephen E. Wilcox, PhD,
CFA |

Overview of Equity Securities

by Ryan C. Fuhrmann, CFA, and Asjeet S. Lamba, PhD, CFA

Ryan C. Fuhrmann, CFA, is at Fuhrmann Capital LLC (USA). Asjeet S. Lamba, PhD, CFA, is at the University of Melbourne (Australia).

LEARNING OUTCOMES

<i>Mastery</i>	<i>The candidate should be able to:</i>
<input type="checkbox"/>	a. describe characteristics of types of equity securities;
<input type="checkbox"/>	b. describe differences in voting rights and other ownership characteristics among different equity classes;
<input type="checkbox"/>	c. distinguish between public and private equity securities;
<input type="checkbox"/>	d. describe methods for investing in non-domestic equity securities;
<input type="checkbox"/>	e. compare the risk and return characteristics of different types of equity securities;
<input type="checkbox"/>	f. explain the role of equity securities in the financing of a company's assets;
<input type="checkbox"/>	g. distinguish between the market value and book value of equity securities;
<input type="checkbox"/>	h. compare a company's cost of equity, its (accounting) return on equity, and investors' required rates of return.

INTRODUCTION

Equity securities represent ownership claims on a company's net assets. As an asset class, equity plays a fundamental role in investment analysis and portfolio management because it represents a significant portion of many individual and institutional investment portfolios.

The study of equity securities is important for many reasons. First, the decision on how much of a client's portfolio to allocate to equities affects the risk and return characteristics of the entire portfolio. Second, different types of equity securities have different ownership claims on a company's net assets, which affect their risk and return

characteristics in different ways. Finally, variations in the features of equity securities are reflected in their market prices, so it is important to understand the valuation implications of these features.

This reading provides an overview of equity securities and their different features and establishes the background required to analyze and value equity securities in a global context. It addresses the following questions:

- What distinguishes common shares from preference shares, and what purposes do these securities serve in financing a company's operations?
- What are convertible preference shares, and why are they often used to raise equity for unseasoned or highly risky companies?
- What are private equity securities, and how do they differ from public equity securities?
- What are depository receipts and their various types, and what is the rationale for investing in them?
- What are the risk factors involved in investing in equity securities?
- How do equity securities create company value?
- What is the relationship between a company's cost of equity, its return on equity, and investors' required rate of return?

The remainder of this reading is organized as follows. Section 2 provides an overview of global equity markets and their historical performance. Section 3 examines the different types and characteristics of equity securities, and Section 4 outlines the differences between public and private equity securities. Section 5 provides an overview of the various types of equity securities listed and traded in global markets. Section 6 discusses the risk and return characteristics of equity securities. Section 7 examines the role of equity securities in creating company value and the relationship between a company's cost of equity, its return on equity, and investors' required rate of return. The final section summarizes the reading.

2

EQUITY SECURITIES IN GLOBAL FINANCIAL MARKETS

This section highlights the relative importance and performance of equity securities as an asset class. We examine the total market capitalization and trading volume of global equity markets and the prevalence of equity ownership across various geographic regions. We also examine historical returns on equities and compare them to the returns on government bonds and bills.

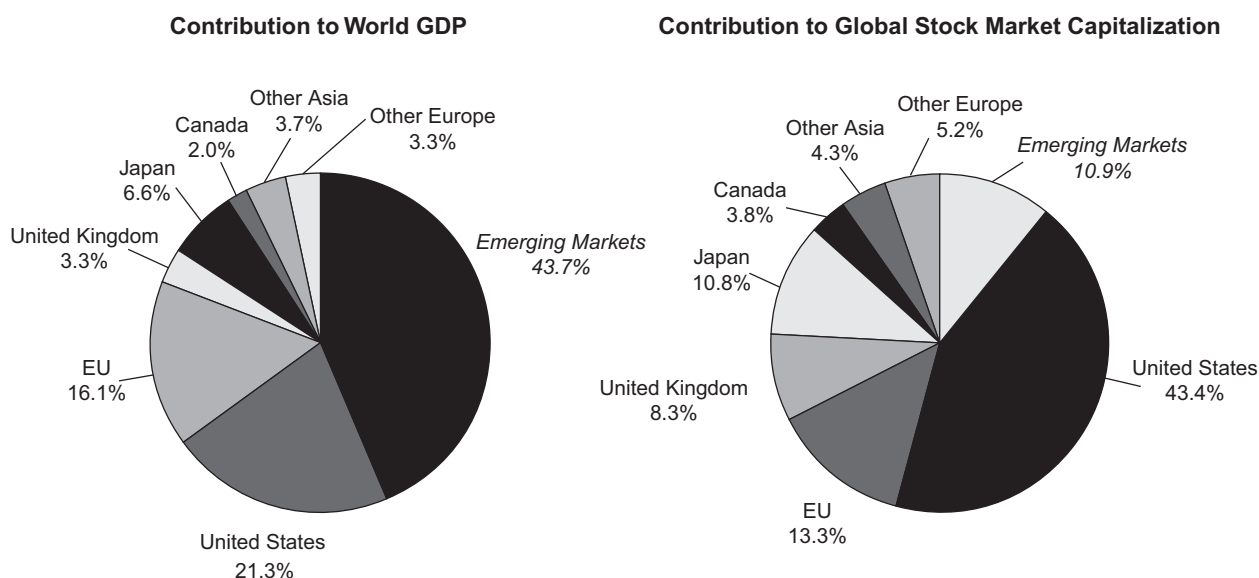
Exhibit 1 summarizes the contributions of selected countries and geographic regions to global gross domestic product (GDP) and global equity market capitalization. Analysts can examine the relationship between equity market capitalization and GDP as an indicator of whether the global equity market (or a specific country's or region's equity market) is under, over, or fairly valued. Global equity markets expanded at twice the rate of global GDP between 1993 and 2004. At the beginning of 2008, global GDP and equity market capitalization were nearly equal at approximately US\$55 trillion.¹ This implies an equity market capitalization to GDP ratio of 100 percent, which was almost twice the long-run average of 50 percent and indicates that global equity markets were overvalued at that time.

¹ EconomyWatch.Com <http://www.economywatch.com/gdp/world-gdp/>.

Exhibit 1 illustrates the significant value that investors attach to publicly traded equities relative to the sum of goods and services produced globally every year. It shows the continued significance, and the potential over-representation, of US equity markets relative to their contribution to global GDP. That is, while US equity markets contribute around 43 percent to the total capitalization of global equity markets, their contribution to the global GDP is only around 21 percent. Following the stock market turmoil in 2008, however, the market capitalization to GDP ratio of the United States fell to 59 percent, which is significantly lower than its long-run average of 79 percent.

As equity markets outside the United States develop and become increasingly global, their total capitalization levels are expected to grow closer to their respective world GDP contributions. Therefore, it is important to understand and analyze equity securities from a global perspective.

Exhibit 1 Country and Regional Contributions to Global GDP and Equity Market Capitalization (2007)



Source: MacroMavens, *IMF World Economic Outlook 2008*, Standard & Poor's BMI Global Index weights.

Exhibit 2 lists the top 10 equity markets at the end of 2008 based on total market capitalization (in billions of US dollars), trading volume, and the number of listed companies.² Note that the rankings differ based on the criteria used. For example, the top three markets based on total market capitalization are the NYSE Euronext (US), Tokyo Stock Exchange Group, and NASDAQ OMX; however, the top three markets based on total US dollar trading volume are the Nasdaq OMX, NYSE Euronext (US), and London Stock Exchange, respectively.³

² The market capitalization of an individual stock is computed as the share price multiplied by the number of shares outstanding. The total market capitalization of an equity market is the sum of the market capitalizations of each individual stock listed on that market. Similarly, the total trading volume of an equity market is computed by value weighting the total trading volume of each individual stock listed on that market. Total dollar trading volume is computed as the average share price multiplied by the number of shares traded.

³ NASDAQ is the acronym for the National Association of Securities Dealers Automated Quotations.

Exhibit 2 Equity Markets Ranked by Total Market Capitalization at the End of 2008 (Billions of US Dollars)

Rank	Name of Market	Total US Dollar Market Capitalization	Total US Dollar Trading Volume	Number of Listed Companies
1	NYSE Euronext (US)	\$9,208.9	\$33,638.9	3,011
2	Tokyo Stock Exchange Group	\$3,115.8	\$5,607.3	2,390
3	NASDAQ OMX	\$2,396.3	\$36,446.5	2,952
4	NYSE Euronext (Europe)	\$2,101.7	\$4,411.2	1,002
5	London Stock Exchange	\$1,868.2	\$6,271.5	3,096
6	Shanghai Stock Exchange	\$1,425.4	\$2,600.2	864
7	Hong Kong Exchanges	\$1,328.8	\$1,629.8	1,261
8	Deutsche Börse	\$1,110.6	\$4,678.8	832
9	TSX Group	\$1,033.4	\$1,716.2	3,841
10	BME Spanish Exchanges	\$948.4	\$2,410.7	3,576

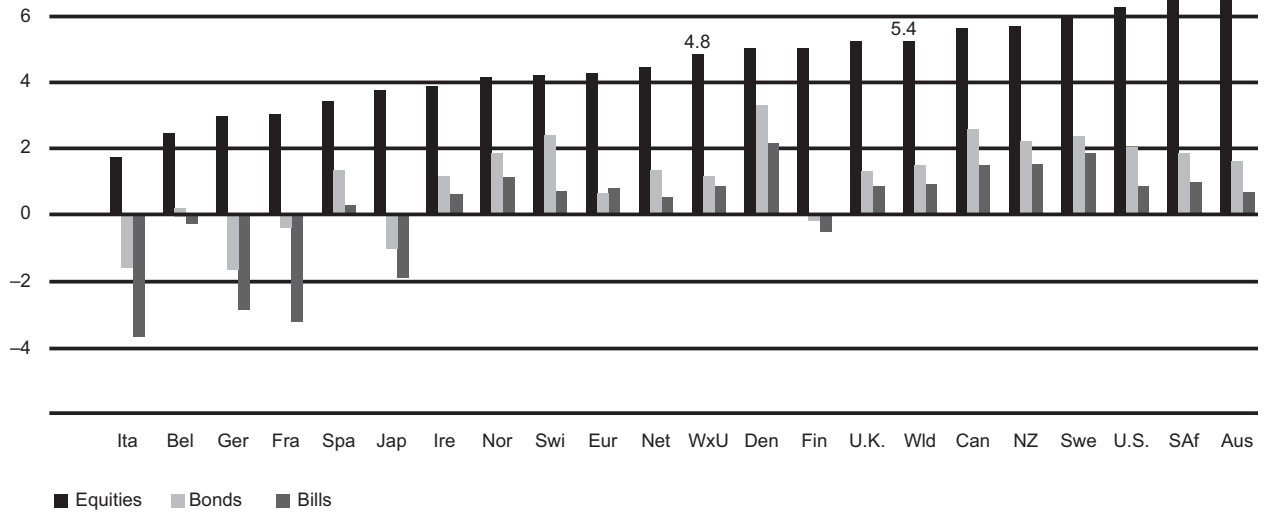
Source: Adapted from the *World Federation of Exchanges 2008 Report* (see <http://www.world-exchanges.org>). Note that market capitalization by company is calculated by multiplying its stock price by the number of shares outstanding. The market's overall capitalization is the aggregate of the market capitalizations of all companies traded on that market. The number of listed companies includes both domestic and foreign companies whose shares trade on these markets.

Exhibit 3 compares the *real* (or inflation-adjusted) compounded returns on government bonds, government bills, and equity securities in 19 countries plus the world index (“Wld”), the world ex-US (“WxU”), and Europe (“Eur”) during the 112 years 1900–2011.⁴ In real terms, government bonds and bills have essentially kept pace with the inflation rate, earning annualized real returns of less than 2 percent in most countries.⁵ By comparison, real returns in equity markets have generally been above 3.5 percent per year in most markets—with a world average return just over 5 percent and a world average return excluding the United States just under 5 percent. During this period, Australia and South Africa were the best performing markets followed by the United States, Sweden, and New Zealand.

⁴ The real return for a security is approximated by taking the nominal return and subtracting the observed inflation rate in that country.

⁵ The exceptions are Belgium, Italy, Germany, France, Japan, and England—where the average real returns on government bonds and/or bills have been negative. In general, that performance reflects the very high inflation rates in these countries during the World War years.

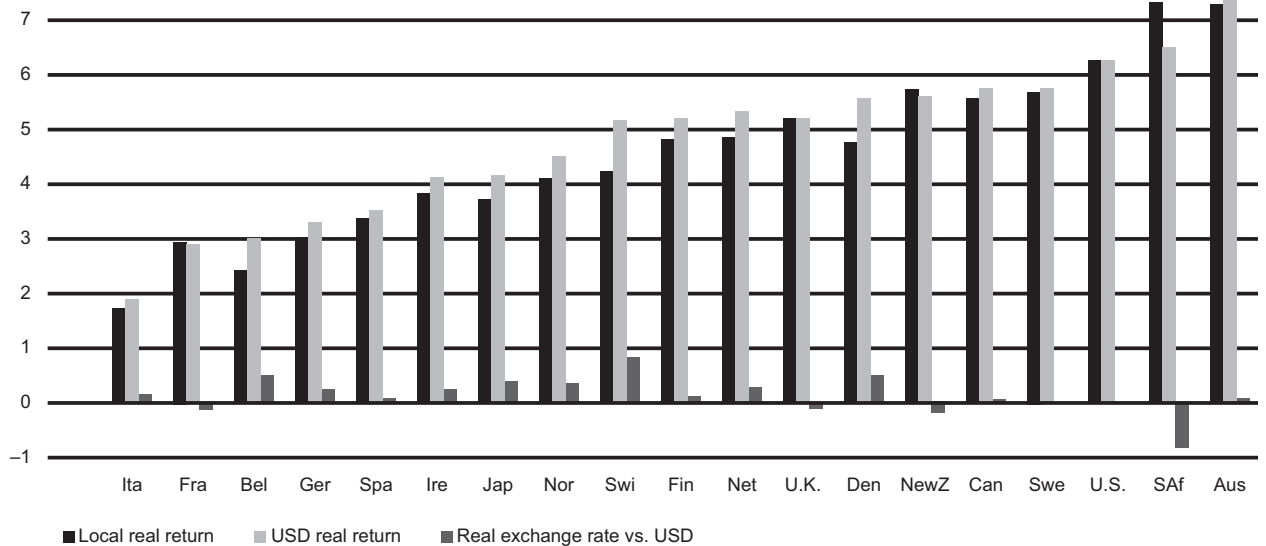
Exhibit 3 Real Returns on Global Equity Securities, Bonds, and Bills During 1900–2011



Source: Dimson, Marsh, and Staunton (2012a). This chart is updated annually and can be found at www.tinyurl.com/DMSsourcebook.

Exhibit 4 focuses on the real compounded rates of return on equity securities in the same 19 countries over 1900–2011. Only the South African and Australian equity markets were better investments in real terms for the US investor than their own equity market.

Exhibit 4 Real Annualized Equity Returns (%) in Local Currency and US Dollars, 1900–2011

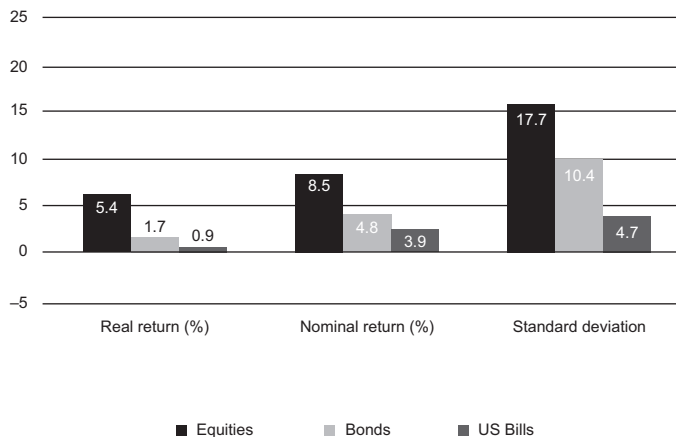


Source: Dimson, Marsh, and Staunton (2012a). This chart is updated annually and can be found at www.tinyurl.com/DMSsourcebook.

The volatility in equity market returns is further highlighted in Exhibit 5, which shows the average performance of the worldwide equity index (in US dollars), bonds, and bills (bonds and bills are based on US data).

These observations and historical data are consistent with the concept that the return on securities is directly related to risk level. That is, equity securities have higher risk levels when compared with government bonds and bills, they earn higher rates of return to compensate investors for these higher risk levels, and they also tend to be more volatile over time.

Exhibit 5 Returns and Risk of Major Asset Classes since 1900



Source: Dimson, Marsh, and Staunton (2012a). This chart is updated annually and can be found at www.tinyurl.com/DMSsourcebook.

Given the high risk levels associated with equity securities, it is reasonable to expect that investors' tolerance for risk will tend to differ across equity markets. This is illustrated in Exhibit 6, which shows the results of a series of studies conducted by the Australian Securities Exchange on international differences in equity ownership. During the 2000–2008 period, equity ownership as a percentage of the population was lowest in South Korea (averaging 7.5 percent), followed by Germany (16.6 percent) and Sweden (21 percent). In contrast, Australia, Canada, and the United States had the highest equity ownership as a percentage of the population (averaging almost 50 percent). In addition, there has been a relative decline in share ownership in several countries over recent years, which is not surprising given the recent overall uncertainty in global economies and the volatility in equity markets that this uncertainty has created.

Exhibit 6 International Comparisons of Stock Ownership: 2000–2008⁶

	2000	2002	2004	2006	2008
Australia – Direct/Indirect	52%	50%	55%	46%	41%
Canada – Shares/Funds	49	46	49	N/A	N/A
Germany – Shares/Funds	19	18	16	16	14

⁶ The percentages reported in the exhibit are based on samples of the adult population in each country who own equity securities either directly or indirectly through investment or retirement funds. For example, 41 percent of the adult population of Australia in 2008 (approximately 6.7 million people) owned equity securities either directly or indirectly. As noted in the study, it is not appropriate to make absolute comparisons across countries given the differences in methodology, sampling, timing, and definitions that have been used in different countries. However, trends across different countries can be identified.

Exhibit 6 (Continued)

	2000	2002	2004	2006	2008
New Zealand	24	N/A	23	26	N/A
South Korea – Shares	7	8	8	7	N/A
Switzerland – Shares/Funds	34	25	21	21	21
Sweden – Shares	22	23	22	20	18
United Kingdom – Shares/ Funds	26	25	22	20	18
United States – Direct/ Indirect	N/A	50	49	N/A	45

Source: Adapted from the 2008 *Australian Share Ownership Study* conducted by the Australian Securities Exchange (see <http://www.asx.com.au>). For Australia and the United States, the data pertain to direct and indirect ownership in equity markets; for other countries, the data pertain to direct ownership in shares and share funds. Data not available in specific years are shown as “N/A.”

An important implication from the above discussion is that equity securities represent a key asset class for global investors because of their unique return and risk characteristics. We next examine the various types of equity securities traded on global markets and their salient characteristics.

TYPES AND CHARACTERISTICS OF EQUITY SECURITIES

3

Companies finance their operations by issuing either debt or equity securities. A key difference between these securities is that debt is a liability of the issuing company, whereas equity is not. This means that when a company issues debt, it is contractually obligated to repay the amount it borrows (i.e., the principal or face value of the debt) at a specified future date. The cost of using these funds is called interest, which the company is contractually obligated to pay until the debt matures or is retired.

When the company issues equity securities, it is not contractually obligated to repay the amount it receives from shareholders, nor is it contractually obligated to make periodic payments to shareholders for the use of their funds. Instead, shareholders have a claim on the company’s assets after all liabilities have been paid. Because of this residual claim, equity shareholders are considered to be owners of the company. Investors who purchase equity securities are seeking total return (i.e., capital or price appreciation and dividend income), whereas investors who purchase debt securities (and hold until maturity) are seeking interest income. As a result, equity investors expect the company’s management to act in their best interest by making operating decisions that will maximize the market price of their shares (i.e., shareholder wealth).

In addition to common shares (also known as ordinary shares or common stock), companies may also issue preference shares (also known as preferred stock), the other type of equity security. The following sections discuss the different types and characteristics of common and preference securities.

3.1 Common Shares

Common shares represent an ownership interest in a company and are the predominant type of equity security. As a result, investors share in the operating performance of the company, participate in the governance process through voting rights, and have a claim on the company's net assets in the case of liquidation. Companies may choose to pay out some, or all, of their net income in the form of cash dividends to common shareholders, but they are not contractually obligated to do so.⁷

Voting rights provide shareholders with the opportunity to participate in major corporate governance decisions, including the election of its board of directors, the decision to merge with or take over another company, and the selection of outside auditors. Shareholder voting generally takes place during a company's annual meeting. As a result of geographic limitations and the large number of shareholders, it is often not feasible for shareholders to attend the annual meeting in person. For this reason, shareholders may **vote by proxy**, which allows a designated party—such as another shareholder, a shareholder representative, or management—to vote on the shareholders' behalf.

Regular shareholder voting, where each share represents one vote, is referred to as **statutory voting**. Although it is the common method of voting, it is not always the most appropriate one to use to elect a board of directors. To better serve shareholders who own a small number of shares, **cumulative voting** is often used. Cumulative voting allows shareholders to direct their total voting rights to specific candidates, as opposed to having to allocate their voting rights evenly among all candidates. Total voting rights are based on the number of shares owned multiplied by the number of board directors being elected. For example, under cumulative voting, if four board directors are to be elected, a shareholder who owns 100 shares is entitled to 400 votes and can either cast all 400 votes in favor of a single candidate or spread them across the candidates in any proportion. In contrast, under statutory voting, a shareholder would be able to cast only a maximum of 100 votes for each candidate.

The key benefit to cumulative voting is that it allows shareholders with a small number of shares to apply all of their votes to one candidate, thus providing the opportunity for a higher level of representation on the board than would be allowed under statutory voting.

Exhibit 7 describes the rights of Viacom Corporation's shareholders. In this case, a dual-share arrangement allows the founding chairman and his family to control more than 70 percent of the voting rights through the ownership of Class A shares. This arrangement gives them the ability to exert control over the board of director election process, corporate decision making, and other important aspects of managing the company. A cumulative voting arrangement for any minority shareholders of Class A shares would improve their board representation.

⁷ It is also possible for companies to pay more than the current period's net income as dividends. Such payout policies are, however, generally not sustainable in the long run.

Exhibit 7 Share Class Arrangements at Viacom Corporation⁸

Viacom has two classes of common stock: Class A, which is the voting stock, and Class B, which is the non-voting stock. There is no difference between the two classes except for voting rights; they generally trade within a close price range of each other. There are, however, far more shares of Class B outstanding, so most of the trading occurs in that class.

- **Voting Rights**—Holders of Class A common stock are entitled to one vote per share. Holders of Class B common stock do not have any voting rights, except as required by Delaware law. Generally, all matters to be voted on by Viacom stockholders must be approved by a majority of the aggregate voting power of the shares of Class A common stock present in person or represented by proxy, except as required by Delaware law.
- **Dividends**—Stockholders of Class A common stock and Class B common stock will share ratably in any cash dividend declared by the Board of Directors, subject to any preferential rights of any outstanding preferred stock. Viacom does not currently pay a cash dividend, and any decision to pay a cash dividend in the future will be at the discretion of the Board of Directors and will depend on many factors.
- **Conversion**—So long as there are 5,000 shares of Class A common stock outstanding, each share of Class A common stock will be convertible at the option of the holder of such share into one share of Class B common stock.
- **Liquidation Rights**—In the event of liquidation, dissolution, or winding-up of Viacom, all stockholders of common stock, regardless of class, will be entitled to share ratably in any assets available for distributions to stockholders of shares of Viacom common stock subject to the preferential rights of any outstanding preferred stock.
- **Split, Subdivision, or Combination**—In the event of a split, subdivision, or combination of the outstanding shares of Class A common stock or Class B common stock, the outstanding shares of the other class of common stock will be divided proportionally.
- **Preemptive Rights**—Shares of Class A common stock and Class B common stock do not entitle a stockholder to any preemptive rights enabling a stockholder to subscribe for or receive shares of stock of any class or any other securities convertible into shares of stock of any class of Viacom.

As seen in Exhibit 7, companies can issue different classes of common shares (Class A and Class B shares), with each class offering different ownership rights.⁹ For example, as shown in Exhibit 8, the Ford Motor Company has Class A shares (“Common Stock”), which are owned by the investing public. It also has Class B shares, which are owned only by the Ford family. The exhibit contains an excerpt from Ford’s 2008 *Annual Report* (p. 115). Class A shareholders have 60 percent voting rights, whereas Class B shareholders have 40 percent. In the case of liquidation, however, Class B shareholders will not only receive the first US\$0.50 per share that is available for

⁸ This information has been adapted from Viacom’s investor relations website and its 10-K filing with the US Securities and Exchange Commission; see www.viacom.com.

⁹ In some countries, including the United States, companies can issue different classes of shares, with Class A shares being the most common. The role and function of different classes of shares is described in more detail in Exhibit 8.

distribution (as will Class A shareholders), but they will also receive the next US\$1.00 per share that is available for distribution before Class A shareholders receive anything else. Thus, Class B shareholders have an opportunity to receive a larger proportion of distributions upon liquidation than do Class A shareholders.¹⁰

Exhibit 8 Share Class Arrangements at Ford Motor Company¹¹

NOTE 21. CAPITAL STOCK AND AMOUNTS PER SHARE

All general voting power is vested in the holders of Common Stock and Class B Stock. Holders of our Common Stock have 60% of the general voting power and holders of our Class B Stock are entitled to such number of votes per share as will give them the remaining 40%. Shares of Common Stock and Class B Stock share equally in dividends when and as paid, with stock dividends payable in shares of stock of the class held. As discussed in Note 16, we are prohibited from paying dividends (other than dividends payable in stock) under the terms of the Credit Agreement.

If liquidated, each share of Common Stock will be entitled to the first \$0.50 available for distribution to holders of Common Stock and Class B Stock, each share of Class B Stock will be entitled to the next \$1.00 so available, each share of Common Stock will be entitled to the next \$0.50 so available and each share of Common and Class B Stock will be entitled to an equal amount thereafter.

Common shares may also be callable or putable. **Callable common shares** (also known as redeemable common shares) give the issuing company the option (or right), but not the obligation, to buy back shares from investors at a call price that is specified when the shares are originally issued. It is most common for companies to call (or redeem) their common shares when the market price is above the pre-specified call price. The company benefits because it can buy back its shares below the current market price and later resell them at a higher market price, and it can also reduce dividend payments to preserve capital, if required. Investors benefit because they receive a guaranteed return when their shares are called. Exhibit 9 provides an example of callable common shares issued by Genomic Solutions in the US market. The exhibit provides details on the creation of callable common shares used to consummate a strategic alliance between PerkinElmer and Genomic Solutions. The arrangement contains provisions more favorable to PerkinElmer because at the time it was a more established and better capitalized company than Genomic Solutions.

Exhibit 9 Callable Stock Arrangement from Genomic Solutions¹²

The following information assumes that the underwriters do not exercise the over-allotment option granted by us to purchase additional shares in the offering:

¹⁰ For example, if US\$2.00 per share is available for distribution, the Common Stock (Class A) shareholders will receive US\$0.50 per share, while the Class B shareholders will receive US\$1.50 per share. However, if there is US\$3.50 per share available for distribution, the Common Stock shareholders will receive a total of US\$1.50 per share and the Class B shareholders will receive a total of US\$2.00 per share.

¹¹ Extracted from Ford Motor Company's *2008 Annual Report* (virtual.stivesonline.com/publication/?i=14030).

¹² Genomic Solutions Form S-1 as filed with the US SEC (14 May 2000); see www.edgar-online.com.

Exhibit 9 (Continued)

Callable common stock offered by us:	7,000,000 shares
Callable common stock to be outstanding after the offering:	22,718,888 shares
Common stock to be outstanding after the offering:	1,269,841 shares
Proposed NASDAQ National Market symbol:	GNSL
Use of proceeds:	General corporate purposes and possible future acquisitions

For two years from the completion of this offering, we may require all holders of our callable common stock to sell their shares back to us. We must exercise this right at PerkinElmer's direction. The price for repurchase of our callable common stock generally will be 20% over the market price. PerkinElmer also has a right to match any third party offer for our callable common stock or our business that our board of directors is prepared to accept.

Puttable common shares give investors the option or right to sell their shares (i.e., "put" them) back to the issuing company at a price that is specified when the shares are originally issued. Investors will generally sell their shares back to the issuing company when the market price is below the pre-specified put price. Thus, the put option feature limits the potential loss for investors. From the issuing company's perspective, the put option facilitates raising capital because the shares are more appealing to investors.

Exhibit 10 provides an example of puttable common shares issued by Dreyer's, now a subsidiary of Switzerland-based Nestlé. In this case, shareholders had the right to sell their shares to Dreyer's for US\$83.10, the pre-specified put price.

Exhibit 10 Puttable Stock Arrangement for Dreyer's Grand Ice Cream¹³

Dreyer's Grand Ice Cream Holdings, Inc. ("Dreyer's") announced today that the period during which holders of shares of Dreyer's Class A Callable Puttable Common Stock (the "Class A Shares") could require Dreyer's to purchase their Class A Shares (the "Put Right") for a cash payment of \$83.10 per Class A Share (the "Purchase Price") expired at 5:00 p.m. New York City time on January 13, 2006 (the "Expiration Time"). According to the report of the depositary agent for the Put Right, holders of an aggregate of 30,518,885 Class A Shares (including 1,792,193 shares subject to guaranteed delivery procedures) properly exercised the Put Right.

3.2 Preference Shares

Preference shares (or preferred stock) rank above common shares with respect to the payment of dividends and the distribution of the company's net assets upon liquidation.¹⁴ However, preference shareholders generally do not share in the operating performance of the company and do not have any voting rights, unless explicitly allowed for at issuance. Preference shares have characteristics of both debt securities and common shares. Similar to the interest payments on debt securities, the dividends on preference shares are fixed and are generally higher than the dividends on

¹³ "Dreyer's Announces Expiration of Put Period and Anticipated Merger with Nestle," *Business Wire* (14 January 2006): www.findarticles.com/p/articles/mi_m0EIN/is_2006_Jan_14/ai_n16001349.

¹⁴ Preference shares have a lower priority than debt in the case of liquidation. That is, debt holders have a higher claim on a firm's assets in the event of liquidation and will receive what is owed to them first, followed by preference shareholders and then common shareholders.

common shares. However, unlike interest payments, preference dividends are not contractual obligations of the company. Similar to common shares, preference shares can be perpetual (i.e., no fixed maturity date), can pay dividends indefinitely, and can be callable or puttable.

Exhibit 11 provides an example of callable preference shares issued by Goldman Sachs to raise capital during the credit crisis of 2008. In this case, Berkshire Hathaway, the purchaser of the shares, will receive an ongoing dividend from Goldman Sachs. If Goldman Sachs chooses to buy back the shares, it must do so at a 10 percent premium above their par value.

Exhibit 11 Callable Stock Arrangement between Goldman Sachs and Berkshire Hathaway¹⁵

New York, NY—September 23, 2008—The Goldman Sachs Group, Inc. announced today that it has reached an agreement to sell \$5 billion of perpetual preferred stock to Berkshire Hathaway, Inc. in a private offering. The preferred stock has a dividend of 10 percent and is callable at any time at a 10 percent premium. In conjunction with this offering, Berkshire Hathaway will also receive warrants to purchase \$5 billion of common stock with a strike price of \$115 per share, which are exercisable at any time for a five year term. In addition, Goldman Sachs is raising at least \$2.5 billion in common equity in a public offering.

Dividends on preference shares can be cumulative, non-cumulative, participating, non-participating, or some combination thereof (i.e., cumulative participating, cumulative non-participating, non-cumulative participating, non-cumulative non-participating).

Dividends on **cumulative preference shares** accrue so that if the company decides not to pay a dividend in one or more periods, the unpaid dividends accrue and must be paid in full before dividends on common shares can be paid. In contrast, **non-cumulative preference shares** have no such provision. This means that any dividends that are not paid in the current or subsequent periods are forfeited permanently and are not accrued over time to be paid at a later date. However, the company is still not permitted to pay any dividends to common shareholders in the current period unless preferred dividends have been paid first.

Participating preference shares entitle the shareholders to receive the standard preferred dividend plus the opportunity to receive an additional dividend if the company's profits exceed a pre-specified level. In addition, participating preference shares can also contain provisions that entitle shareholders to an additional distribution of the company's assets upon liquidation, above the par (or face) value of the preference shares. **Non-participating preference shares** do not allow shareholders to share in the profits of the company. Instead, shareholders are entitled to receive only a fixed dividend payment and the par value of the shares in the event of liquidation. The use of participating preference shares is much more common for smaller, riskier companies where the possibility of future liquidation is more of a concern to investors.

¹⁵ Goldman Sachs, "Berkshire Hathaway to Invest \$5 Billion in Goldman Sachs," (23 September 2008): www.goldmansachs.com/our-firm/press/press-releases/archived/2008/berkshire-hathaway-invest.html.

Preference shares can also be convertible. **Convertible preference shares** entitle shareholders to convert their shares into a specified number of common shares. This conversion ratio is determined at issuance. Convertible preference shares have the following advantages:

- They allow investors to earn a higher dividend than if they invested in the company's common shares.
- They allow investors the opportunity to share in the profits of the company.
- They allow investors to benefit from a rise in the price of the common shares through the conversion option.
- Their price is less volatile than the underlying common shares because the dividend payments are known and more stable.

As a result, the use of convertible preference shares is a popular financing option in venture capital and private equity transactions in which the issuing companies are considered to be of higher risk and when it may be years before the issuing company “goes public” (i.e., issues common shares to the public).

Exhibit 12 provides examples of the types and characteristics of preference shares as issued by DBS Bank of Singapore.

Exhibit 12 Examples of Preference Shares Issued by DBS Bank¹⁶

SINGAPORE, MAY 12—DBS Bank said today it plans to offer S\$700 million in preference shares and make it available to both retail and institutional investors in Singapore. Called the DBS Preferred Investment Issue, it will yield investors a fixed non-cumulative gross dividend rate of 6% for the first ten years and a floating rate thereafter. The DBS Preferred Investment Issue will be offered in two tranches, consisting of a S\$100 million tranche to retail investors via ATMs and a S\$600 million placement tranche available to both retail and institutional investors. Depending on investor demand, DBS could increase the offering amount.

Jackson Tai, President and Chief Operating Officer of DBS Group Holdings, said that following the success of the hybrid Tier 1 issue in March, DBS decided to make this new issue available to the local retail investors. “We consider these issues as an important capital management tool. We were pleased with the success of our hybrid Tier 1 issue for institutional investors and wanted to introduce a capital instrument that would be available to retail investors as well.”

DBS Preferred Investment Issues are perpetual securities, redeemable after ten years at the option of DBS Bank and at every dividend date thereafter subject to certain redemption conditions. They are issued by DBS Bank and are considered to be core Tier 1 capital under the Monetary Authority of Singapore and Bank of International Settlement's guidelines. They will be listed on the Singapore Exchange Securities Trading Limited and can be traded on the secondary market through a broker. Holders of the DBS Preferred Investment Issue will receive the dividend net of the 24.5% income tax. Investors may claim the tax credit in their tax returns.

¹⁶ DBS Bank, “DBS Follows US\$850 Million Offering of Subordinated Notes to International Markets with Singapore Dollar Market Financing” (12 May 2001); www.dbs.com/newsroom/2001/Pages/press010512.aspx.

4

PRIVATE VERSUS PUBLIC EQUITY SECURITIES

Our discussion so far has focused on equity securities that are issued and traded in public markets and on exchanges. Equity securities can also be issued and traded in private equity markets. **Private equity securities** are issued primarily to institutional investors via non-public offerings, such as private placements. Because they are not listed on public exchanges, there is no active secondary market for these securities. As a result, private equity securities do not have “market determined” quoted prices, are highly illiquid, and require negotiations between investors in order to be traded. In addition, financial statements and other important information needed to determine the fair value of private equity securities may be difficult to obtain because the issuing companies are typically not required by regulatory authorities to publish this information.

There are three primary types of private equity investments: venture capital, leveraged buyouts, and private investment in public equity. **Venture capital** investments provide “seed” or start-up capital, early-stage financing, or mezzanine financing to companies that are in the early stages of development and require additional capital for expansion. These funds are then used to finance the company’s product development and growth. Venture capitalists range from family and friends to wealthy individuals and private equity funds. Because the equity securities issued to venture capitalists are not publicly traded, they generally require a commitment of funds for a relatively long period of time; the opportunity to “exit” the investment is typically within 3 to 10 years from the initial start-up. The exit return earned by these private equity investors is based on the price that the securities can be sold for if and when the start-up company first goes public, either via an **initial public offering** (IPO) on the stock market or by being sold to other investors.

A **leveraged buyout** (LBO) occurs when a group of investors (such as the company’s management or a private equity partnership) uses a large amount of debt to purchase all of the outstanding common shares of a publicly traded company. In cases where the group of investors acquiring the company is primarily comprised of the company’s existing management, the transaction is referred to as a **management buyout** (MBO). After the shares are purchased, they cease to trade on an exchange and the investor group takes full control of the company. In other words, the company is taken “private” or has been privatized. Companies that are candidates for these types of transactions generally have large amounts of undervalued assets (which can be sold to reduce debt) and generate high levels of cash flows (which are used to make interest and principal payments on the debt). The ultimate objective of a buyout (LBO or MBO) is to restructure the acquired company and later take it “public” again by issuing new shares to the public in the primary market.

The third type of private investment is a **private investment in public equity**, or PIPE.¹⁷ This type of investment is generally sought by a public company that is in need of additional capital quickly and is willing to sell a sizeable ownership position to a private investor or investor group. For example, a company may require a large investment of new equity funds in a short period of time because it has significant expansion opportunities, is facing high levels of indebtedness, or is experiencing a rapid deterioration in its operations. Depending on how urgent the need is and the size of the capital requirement, the private investor may be able to purchase shares in the company at a significant discount to the publicly-quoted market price. Exhibit 13 contains a recent PIPE transaction for the electronics retailer hhgregg, which also included the issuance of additional common shares to the public.

¹⁷ The term PIPE is widely used in the United States and is also used internationally, including in emerging markets.

Exhibit 13 Example of a PIPE Transaction¹⁸

On July 20, 2009, hhgregg completed a public stock offering of 4,025,000 shares of its common stock at \$16.50 per share. Concurrently with the public offering, investment funds affiliated with Freeman Spogli & Co. purchased an additional 1,000,000 shares of common stock, in a private placement transaction, at the price per share paid by the public in the offering. Proceeds, net of underwriting fees, from the public stock offering and private placement, totaled approximately \$78.6 million. These proceeds will be used for general corporate purposes, including funding the Company's accelerated new store growth plans.

While the global private equity market is relatively small in comparison to the global public equity market, it has experienced considerable growth over the past three decades. According to a study of the private equity market sponsored by the *World Economic Forum* and spanning the period 1970–2007, approximately US\$3.6 trillion in debt and equity were acquired in leveraged buyouts. Of this amount, approximately 75 percent or US\$2.7 trillion worth of transactions occurred during 2001–2007.¹⁹ While the US and the UK markets were the focus of most private equity investments during the 1980s and 1990s, private equity investments outside of these markets have grown substantially in recent years. In addition, the number of companies operating under private equity ownership has also grown. For example, during the mid-1990s, fewer than 2,000 companies were under LBO ownership compared to close to 14,000 companies that were under LBO ownership globally at the beginning of 2007. The holding period for private equity investments has also increased during this time period from 3 to 5 years (1980s and 1990s) to approximately 10 years.²⁰

The move to longer holding periods has given private equity investors the opportunity to more effectively and patiently address any underlying operational issues facing the company and to better manage it for long-term value creation. Because of the longer holding periods, more private equity firms are issuing convertible preference shares because they provide investors with greater total return potential through their dividend payments and the ability to convert their shares into common shares during an IPO.

In operating a publicly traded company, management often feels pressured to focus on short-term results²¹ (e.g., meeting quarterly sales and earnings targets from analysts biased toward near-term price performance) instead of operating the company to obtain long-term sustainable revenue and earnings growth. By “going private,” management can adopt a more long-term focus and can eliminate certain costs that are necessary to operate a publicly traded company—such as the cost of meeting regulatory and stock exchange filing requirements, the cost of maintaining investor relations departments to communicate with shareholders and the media, and the cost of holding quarterly analyst conference calls.

As described above, public equity markets are much larger than private equity networks and allow companies more opportunities to raise capital that is subsequently actively traded in secondary markets. By operating under public scrutiny, companies are incentivized to be more open in terms of corporate governance and executive compensation to ensure that they are acting for the benefit of shareholders. In fact, some studies have shown that private equity firms score lower in terms of corporate

¹⁸ This information was obtained from hhgregg's first quarter fiscal 2009 earnings report (<http://ir.hhgregg.com/releasedetail.cfm?ReleaseID=401980>).

¹⁹ Stromberg (2008).

²⁰ See, for example, Bailey, Wirth, and Zapol (2005).

²¹ See, for example, Graham, Harvey, and Rajgopal (2005).

governance effectiveness, which may be attributed to the fact that shareholders, analysts, and other stakeholders are able to influence management when corporate governance and other policies are public.

5

INVESTING IN NON-DOMESTIC EQUITY SECURITIES

Technological innovations and the growth of electronic information exchanges (electronic trading networks, the internet, etc.) have accelerated the integration and growth of global financial markets. As detailed previously, global capital markets have expanded at a much more rapid rate than global GDP in recent years; both primary and secondary international markets have benefited from the enhanced ability to rapidly and openly exchange information. Increased integration of equity markets has made it easier and less expensive for companies to raise capital and to expand their shareholder base beyond their local market. Integration has also made it easier for investors to invest in companies that are located outside of their domestic markets. This has enabled investors to further diversify and improve the risk and return characteristics of their portfolios by adding a class of assets with lower correlations to local country assets.

One barrier to investing globally is that many countries still impose “foreign restrictions” on individuals and companies from other countries that want to invest in their domestic companies. There are three primary reasons for these restrictions. The first is to limit the amount of control that foreign investors can exert on domestic companies. For example, some countries prevent foreign investors from acquiring a majority interest in domestic companies. The second is to give domestic investors the opportunity to own shares in the foreign companies that are conducting business in their country. For example, the Swedish home furnishings retailer IKEA abandoned efforts to invest in parts of the Asia/Pacific region because local governments did not want IKEA to maintain complete ownership of its stores. The third reason is to reduce the volatility of capital flows into and out of domestic equity markets. For example, one of the main consequences of the Asian Financial Crisis in 1997–98 was the large outflow of capital from such emerging market countries as Thailand, Indonesia, and South Korea. These outflows led to dramatic declines in the equity markets of these countries and significant currency devaluations and resulted in many governments placing restrictions on capital flows. Today, many of these same markets have built up currency reserves to better withstand capital outflows inherent in economic contractions and periods of financial market turmoil.

Studies have shown that reducing restrictions on foreign ownership has led to improved equity market performance over the long term.²² Although restrictions vary widely, more countries are allowing increasing levels of foreign ownership. For example, Australia has sought tax reforms as a means to encourage international demand for its managed funds in order to increase its role as an international financial center.

Over the past two decades, three trends have emerged: a) an increasing number of companies have issued shares in markets outside of their home country; b) the number of companies whose shares are traded in markets outside of their home has increased; and c) an increasing number of companies are dual listed, which means that their shares are simultaneously issued and traded in two or more markets. Companies located in emerging markets have particularly benefited from these trends because they no longer have to be concerned with capital constraints or lack of liquidity in their domestic markets. These companies have found it easier to raise capital in the

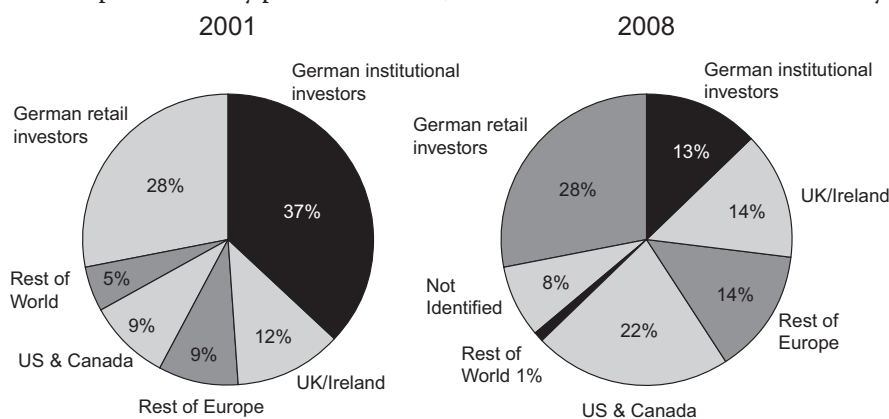
²² See, for example, Henry and Chari (2004).

markets of developed countries because these markets generally have higher levels of liquidity and more stringent financial reporting requirements and accounting standards. Being listed on an international exchange has a number of benefits. It can increase investor awareness about the company's products and services, enhance the liquidity of the company's shares, and increase corporate transparency because of the additional market exposure and the need to meet a greater number of filing requirements.

Technological advancements have made it easier for investors to trade shares in foreign markets. The German insurance company Allianz SE recently delisted its shares from the NYSE and certain European markets because international investors increasingly traded its shares on the Frankfurt Stock Exchange. Exhibit 14 illustrates the extent to which the institutional shareholder base at BASF, a large German chemical corporation, has become increasingly global in nature.

Exhibit 14 Example of Increased Globalization of Share Ownership²³

BASF is one of the largest publicly owned companies with around 460,000 shareholders and a high free float. An analysis of the shareholder structure carried out in September 2008 showed that, at 22% of share capital, the United States and Canada made up the largest regional group of institutional investors. Institutional investors from Germany made up 13%. Shareholders from Great Britain and Ireland held 14% of BASF shares, while a further 14% are held by institutional investors from the rest of Europe. Around 28% of the company's share capital is held by private investors, most of whom are resident in Germany.



5.1 Direct Investing

Investors can use a variety of methods to invest in the equity of companies outside of their local market. The most obvious is to buy and sell securities directly in foreign markets. However, this means that all transactions—including the purchase and sale of shares, dividend payments, and capital gains—are in the company's, not the investor's, domestic currency. In addition, investors must be familiar with the trading, clearing, and settlement regulations and procedures of that market. Investing directly often results in less transparency and more volatility because audited financial information may not be provided on a regular basis and the market may be less liquid. Alternatively, investors can use such securities as depository receipts and global registered shares, which represent the equity of international companies and are traded on local exchanges

²³ Adapted from BASF's investor relations website (www.basf.com). **Free float** refers to the extent that shares are readily and freely tradable in the secondary market.

and in the local currencies. With these securities, investors have to worry less about currency conversions (price quotations and dividend payments are in the investor's local currency), unfamiliar market practices, and differences in accounting standards. The sections that follow discuss various securities that investors can invest in outside of their home market.

5.2 Depository Receipts

A **depository receipt**²⁴ (DR) is a security that trades like an ordinary share on a local exchange and represents an economic interest in a foreign company. It allows the publicly listed shares of a foreign company to be traded on an exchange outside its domestic market. A depository receipt is created when the equity shares of a foreign company are deposited in a bank (i.e., the depository) in the country on whose exchange the shares will trade. The depository then issues receipts that represent the shares that were deposited. The number of receipts issued and the price of each DR is based on a ratio, which specifies the number of depository receipts to the underlying shares. Consequently, a DR may represent one share of the underlying stock, many shares of the underlying stock, or a fractional share of the underlying stock. The price of each DR will be affected by factors that affect the price of the underlying shares, such as company fundamentals, market conditions, analysts' recommendations, and exchange rate movements. In addition, any short-term valuation discrepancies between shares traded on multiple exchanges represent a quick arbitrage profit opportunity for astute traders to exploit. The responsibilities of the **depository bank** that issues the receipts include acting as custodian and as a registrar. This entails handling dividend payments, other taxable events, stock splits, and serving as the transfer agent for the foreign company whose securities the DR represents. The Bank of New York Mellon is the largest depository bank; however, Deutsche Bank, JPMorgan, and Citibank also offer depository services.²⁵

A DR can be **sponsored** or **unsponsored**. A sponsored DR is when the foreign company whose shares are held by the depository has a direct involvement in the issuance of the receipts. Investors in sponsored DRs have the same rights as the direct owners of the common shares (e.g., the right to vote and the right to receive dividends). In contrast, with an unsponsored DR, the underlying foreign company has no involvement with the issuance of the receipts. Instead, the depository purchases the foreign company's shares in its domestic market and then issues the receipts through brokerage firms in the depository's local market. In this case, the depository bank, not the investors in the DR, retains the voting rights. Sponsored DRs are generally subject to greater reporting requirements than unsponsored DRs. In the United States, for example, sponsored DRs must be registered (meet the reporting requirements) with the US Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC). Exhibit 15 contains an example of a sponsored DR issued by Japan Airlines.

Exhibit 15 Sponsored versus Unsponsored Depository Receipts²⁶

The Japan Airlines (JAL) Group, Asia's biggest airline grouping, has picked the Bank of New York as the depository bank to make its previously unsponsored American depository receipts (ADRs) sponsored. By taking this action and by

²⁴ Note that the spellings *depository* and *depository* are used interchangeably in financial markets. In this reading, we use the spelling *depository* throughout.

²⁵ Boubakri, Cosset, and Samet (2010).

²⁶ Adapted from Japan Airlines Group's investor relations website (www.jal.com/en/press/2004/082301/img/ADRS.pdf).

Exhibit 15 (Continued)

boosting investor relations activities in the United States, the JAL group aims to increase the number of overseas shareholders. The JAL Group's sponsored ADRs became effective on August 19th, 2004 and dealing will start on August 25th. The JAL Group's American depository receipts had been previously issued in the United States as unsponsored ADRs by several US depository banks since the 1970s. However, as unsponsored ADRs are issued without the involvement of the company itself, the company has difficulty in identifying ADR holders and controlling ADRs. From now, the JAL Group will be able to better serve its ADR holders and, at the same time, the JAL Group intends to increase its overseas investors.

There are two types of depository receipts: Global depository receipts (GDRs) and American depository receipts (ADRs), which are described below.

5.2.1 Global Depository Receipts

A **global depository receipt** (GDR) is issued outside of the company's home country and outside of the United States. The depository bank that issues GDRs is generally located (or has branches) in the countries on whose exchanges the shares are traded. A key advantage of GDRs is that they are not subject to the foreign ownership and capital flow restrictions that may be imposed by the issuing company's home country because they are sold outside of that country. The issuing company selects the exchange where the GDR is to be traded based on such factors as investors' familiarity with the company or the existence of a large international investor base. The London and Luxembourg exchanges were the first ones to trade GDRs. Some other stock exchanges trading GDRs are the Dubai International Financial Exchange and the Singapore Stock Exchange. Currently, the London and Luxembourg exchanges are where most GDRs are traded because they can be issued in a more timely manner and at a lower cost. Regardless of the exchange they are traded on, the majority of GDRs are denominated in US dollars, although the number of GDRs denominated in pound sterling and euros is increasing. Note that although GDRs cannot be listed on US exchanges, they can be privately placed with institutional investors based in the United States.

5.2.2 American Depository Receipts

An **American depository receipt** (ADR) is a US dollar-denominated security that trades like a common share on US exchanges. First created in 1927, ADRs are the oldest type of depository receipts and are currently the most commonly traded depository receipts. They enable foreign companies to raise capital from US investors. Note that an ADR is one form of a GDR; however, not all GDRs are ADRs because GDRs cannot be publicly traded in the United States. The term **American depository share** (ADS) is often used in tandem with the term ADR. A depository share is a security that is actually traded in the issuing company's domestic market. That is, while American depository receipts are the certificates that are traded on US markets, American depository shares are the underlying shares on which these receipts are based.

There are four primary types of ADRs, with each type having different levels of corporate governance and filing requirements. Level I Sponsored ADRs trade in the over-the-counter (OTC) market and do not require full registration with the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC). Level II and Level III Sponsored ADRs can trade on the New York Stock Exchange (NYSE), NASDAQ, and American Stock Exchange (AMEX). Level II and III ADRs allow companies to raise capital and make acquisitions using these securities. However, the issuing companies must fulfill all SEC requirements.

The fourth type of ADR, an SEC Rule 144A or a Regulation S depository receipt, does not require SEC registration. Instead, foreign companies are able to raise capital by privately placing these depository receipts with qualified institutional investors or to offshore non-US investors. Exhibit 16 summarizes the main features of ADRs.

Exhibit 16 Summary of the Main Features of American Depository Receipts

	Level I (Unlisted)	Level II (Listed)	Level III (Listed)	Rule 144A (Unlisted)
Objectives	Develop and broaden US investor base with existing shares	Develop and broaden US investor base with existing shares	Develop and broaden US investor base with existing/new shares	Access qualified institutional buyers (QIBs)
Raising capital on US markets?	No	No	Yes, through public offerings	Yes, through private placements to QIBs
SEC registration	Form F-6	Form F-6	Forms F-1 and F-6	None
Trading	Over the counter (OTC)	NYSE, NASDAQ, or AMEX	NYSE, NASDAQ, or AMEX	Private offerings, resales, and trading through automated linkages such as PORTAL
Listing fees	Low	High	High	Low
Size and earnings requirements	None	Yes	Yes	None

Source: Adapted from Boubakri, Cosset, and Samet (2010): Table 1.

More than 2,000 DRs, from over 80 countries, currently trade on US exchanges. Based on current statistics, the total market value of DRs issued and traded is estimated at approximately US\$2 trillion, or 15 percent of the total dollar value of equities traded in US markets.²⁷

5.2.3 Global Registered Share

A **global registered share** (GRS) is a common share that is traded on different stock exchanges around the world in different currencies. Currency conversions are not needed to purchase or sell them, because identical shares are quoted and traded in different currencies. Thus, the same share purchased on the Swiss exchange in Swiss francs can be sold on the Tokyo exchange for Japanese yen. As a result, GRSs offer more flexibility than depository receipts because the shares represent an actual ownership interest in the company that can be traded anywhere and currency conversions are not needed to purchase or sell them. GRSs were created and issued by Daimler Chrysler in 1998.

5.2.4 Basket of Listed Depository Receipts

Another type of global security is a **basket of listed depository receipts** (BLDR), which is an exchange-traded fund (ETF) that represents a portfolio of depository receipts. An ETF is a security that tracks an index but trades like an individual share on an exchange. An equity-ETF is a security that contains a portfolio of equities that tracks an index. It trades throughout the day and can be bought, sold, or sold short,

²⁷ JPMorgan Depository Receipt Guide (2005):4.

just like an individual share. Like ordinary shares, ETFs can also be purchased on margin and used in hedging or arbitrage strategies. The BLDR is a specific class of ETF security that consists of an underlying portfolio of DRs and is designed to track the price performance of an underlying DR index. For example, the Asia 50 ADR Index Fund is a capitalization-weighted ETF designed to track the performance of 50 Asian market-based ADRs.

RISK AND RETURN CHARACTERISTICS OF EQUITY SECURITIES

6

Different types of equity securities have different ownership claims on a company's net assets. The type of equity security and its features affect its risk and return characteristics. The following sections discuss the different return and risk characteristics of equity securities.

6.1 Return Characteristics of Equity Securities

There are two main sources of equity securities' total return: price change (or capital gain) and dividend income. The price change represents the difference between the purchase price (P_{t-1}) and the sale price (P_t) of a share at the end of time $t - 1$ and t , respectively. Cash or stock dividends (D_t) represent distributions that the company makes to its shareholders during period t . Therefore, an equity security's total return is calculated as:

$$\text{Total return, } R_t = (P_t - P_{t-1} + D_t) / P_{t-1} \quad (1)$$

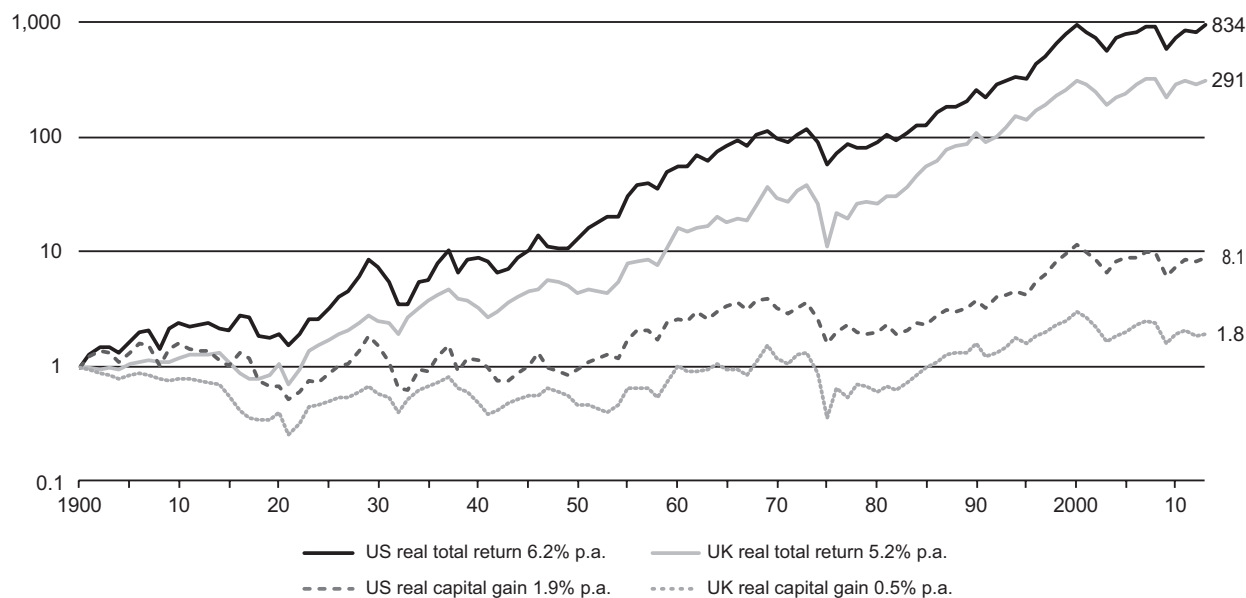
For non-dividend-paying stocks, the total return consists of price appreciation only. Companies that are in the early stages of their life cycle generally do not pay dividends because earnings and cash flows are reinvested to finance the company's growth. In contrast, companies that are in the mature phase of their life cycle may not have as many profitable growth opportunities; therefore, excess cash flows are often returned to investors via the payment of regular dividends or through share repurchases.

For investors who purchase depository receipts or foreign shares directly, there is a third source of return: **foreign exchange gains (or losses)**. Foreign exchange gains arise because of the change in the exchange rate between the investor's currency and the currency that the foreign shares are denominated in. For example, US investors who purchase the ADRs of a Japanese company will earn an additional return if the yen appreciates relative to the US dollar. Conversely, these investors will earn a lower total return if the yen depreciates relative to the US dollar. For example, if the total return for a Japanese company was 10 percent in Japan and the yen depreciated by 10 percent against the US dollar, the total return of the ADR would be (approximately) 0 percent. If the yen had instead appreciated by 10 percent against the US dollar, the total return of the ADR would be (approximately) 20 percent.

Investors that only consider price appreciation overlook an important source of return: the compounding that results from reinvested dividends. Reinvested dividends are cash dividends that the investor receives and uses to purchase additional shares. As Exhibit 17 shows, in the long run total returns on equity securities are dramatically influenced by the compounding effect of reinvested dividends. Between 1900 and 2011, US\$1 invested in US equities in 1900 would have grown in *real* terms to US\$834 with dividends reinvested, but to just US\$8.1 when taking only the price appreciation or capital gain into account. This corresponds to a real compounded return of 6.2 percent per year with dividends reinvested, versus only 1.9 percent per year without dividends

reinvested. The comparable ending real wealth for bonds and bills are US\$9.30 and US\$2.80, respectively. These ending real wealth figures correspond to annualized real compounded returns of 2.0 percent on bonds and 0.9 percent on bills.

Exhibit 17 Impact of Reinvested Dividends on Cumulative Real Returns in the US and UK Equity Market: 1900–2011



Source: Dimson, Marsh, and Staunton (2012b). This chart is updated annually and can be found at www.tinyurl.com/DMSsourcebook.

6.2 Risk of Equity Securities

The risk of any security is based on the uncertainty of its future cash flows. The greater the uncertainty of its future cash flows, the greater the risk and the more variable or volatile the security's price. As discussed above, an equity security's total return is determined by its price change and dividends. Therefore, the risk of an equity security can be defined as the uncertainty of its expected (or future) total return. Risk is most often measured by calculating the standard deviation of the equity's expected total return.

A variety of different methods can be used to estimate an equity's expected total return and risk. One method uses the equity's average historical return and the standard deviation of this return as proxies for its expected future return and risk. Another method involves estimating a range of future returns over a specified period of time, assigning probabilities to those returns, and then calculating an expected return and a standard deviation of return based on this information.

The type of equity security, as well as its characteristics, affects the uncertainty of its future cash flows and therefore its risk. In general, preference shares are less risky than common shares for three main reasons:

- 1 Dividends on preference shares are known and fixed, and they account for a large portion of the preference shares' total return. Therefore, there is less uncertainty about future cash flows.

- 2 Preference shareholders receive dividends and other distributions before common shareholders.
- 3 The amount preference shareholders will receive if the company is liquidated is known and fixed as the par (or face) value of their shares. However, there is no guarantee that investors will receive that amount if the company experiences financial difficulty.

With common shares, however, a larger portion of shareholders' total return (or all of their total return for non-dividend shares) is based on future price appreciation and future dividends are unknown. If the company is liquidated, common shareholders will receive whatever amount (if any) is remaining after the company's creditors and preference shareholders have been paid. In summary, because the uncertainty surrounding the total return of preference shares is less than common shares, preference shares have lower risk and lower expected return than common shares.

It is important to note that some preference shares and common shares can be riskier than others because of their associated characteristics. For example, from an investor's point of view, puttable common or preference shares are less risky than their callable or non-callable counterparts because they give the investor the option to sell the shares to the issuer at a pre-determined price. This pre-determined price establishes a minimum price that investors will receive and reduces the uncertainty associated with the security's future cash flow. As a result, puttable shares generally pay a lower dividend than non-puttable shares.

Because the major source of total return for preference shares is dividend income, the primary risk affecting all preference shares is the uncertainty of future dividend payments. Regardless of the preference shares' features (callable, puttable, cumulative, etc.), the greater the uncertainty surrounding the issuer's ability to pay dividends, the greater risk. Because the ability of a company to pay dividends is based on its future cash flows and net income, investors try to estimate these amounts by examining past trends or forecasting future amounts. The more earnings and the greater amount of cash flow that the company has had, or is expected to have, the lower the uncertainty and risk associated with its ability to pay future dividends.

Callable common or preference shares are riskier than their non-callable counterparts because the issuer has the option to redeem the shares at a pre-determined price. Because the call price limits investors' potential future total return, callable shares generally pay a higher dividend to compensate investors for the risk that the shares could be called in the future. Similarly, puttable preference shares have lower risk than non-puttable preference shares. Cumulative preference shares have lower risk than non-cumulative preference shares because the cumulative feature gives investors the right to receive any unpaid dividends before any dividends can be paid to common shareholders.

EQUITY SECURITIES AND COMPANY VALUE

7

Companies issue equity securities on primary markets to raise capital and increase liquidity. This additional liquidity also provides the corporation an additional "currency" (its equity), which it can use to make acquisitions and provide stock option-based incentives to employees. The primary goal of raising capital is to finance the company's revenue-generating activities in order to increase its net income and maximize the wealth of its shareholders. In most cases, the capital that is raised is used to finance the purchase of long-lived assets, capital expansion projects, research and development, the entry into new product or geographic regions, and the acquisition of other companies. Alternatively, a company may be forced to raise capital to

ensure that it continues to operate as a going concern. In these cases, capital is raised to fulfill regulatory requirements, improve capital adequacy ratios, or to ensure that debt covenants are met.

The ultimate goal of management is to increase the book value (shareholders' equity on a company's balance sheet) of the company and maximize the market value of its equity. Although management actions can directly affect the book value of the company (by increasing net income or by selling or purchasing its own shares), they can only indirectly affect the market value of its equity. The book value of a company's equity—the difference between its total assets and total liabilities—increases when the company retains its net income. The more net income that is earned and retained, the greater the company's book value of equity. Because management's decisions directly influence a company's net income, they also directly influence its book value of equity.

The market value of the company's equity, however, reflects the collective and differing expectations of investors concerning the amount, timing, and uncertainty of the company's future cash flows. Rarely will book value and market value be equal. Although management may be accomplishing its objective of increasing the company's book value, this increase may not be reflected in the market value of the company's equity because it does not affect investors' expectations about the company's future cash flows. A key measure that investors use to evaluate the effectiveness of management in increasing the company's book value is the accounting return on equity.

7.1 Accounting Return on Equity

Return on equity (ROE) is the primary measure that equity investors use to determine whether the management of a company is effectively and efficiently using the capital they have provided to generate profits. It measures the total amount of net income available to common shareholders generated by the total equity capital invested in the company. It is computed as net income available to ordinary shareholders (i.e., after preferred dividends have been deducted) divided by the average total book value of equity (BVE). That is:

$$\text{ROE}_t = \frac{\text{NI}_t}{\text{Average BVE}_t} = \frac{\text{NI}_t}{(\text{BVE}_t + \text{BVE}_{t-1})/2} \quad (2)$$

where NI_t is the net income in year t and the average book value of equity is computed as the book values at the beginning and end of year t divided by 2. Return on equity assumes that the net income produced in the current year is generated by the equity existing at the beginning of the year and any new equity that was invested during the year. Note that some formulas only use shareholders' equity at the beginning of year t (that is, the end of year $t - 1$) in the denominator. This assumes that only the equity existing at the beginning of the year was used to generate the company's net income during the year. That is:

$$\text{ROE}_t = \frac{\text{NI}_t}{\text{BVE}_{t-1}} \quad (3)$$

Both formulas are appropriate to use as long as they are applied consistently. For example, using beginning of the year book value is appropriate when book values are relatively stable over time or when computing ROE for a company annually over a period of time. Average book value is more appropriate if a company experiences more volatile year-end book values or if the industry convention is to use average book values in calculating ROE.

One caveat to be aware of when computing and analyzing ROE is that net income and the book value of equity are directly affected by management's choice of accounting methods, such as those relating to depreciation (straight line versus accelerated methods) or inventories (first in, first out versus weighted average cost). Different accounting

methods can make it difficult to compare the return on equity of companies even if they operate in the same industry. It may also be difficult to compare the ROE of the same company over time if its accounting methods have changed during that time.

Exhibit 18 contains information on the net income and total book value of shareholders' equity for three **blue chip** (widely held large market capitalization companies that are considered financially sound and are leaders in their respective industry or local stock market) pharmaceutical companies: Pfizer, Novartis AG, and GlaxoSmithKline. The data are for their financial years ending December 2006 through December 2008.²⁸

Exhibit 18 Net Income and Book Value of Equity for Pfizer, Novartis AG, and GlaxoSmithKline (in Thousands of US Dollars)

	Financial Year Ending		
	31 Dec 2008	31 Dec 2007	31 Dec 2006
Pfizer			
Net income	\$8,104,000	\$8,144,000	\$19,337,000
Total stockholders' equity	\$57,556,000	\$65,010,000	\$71,358,000
Novartis AG			
Net income	\$8,233,000	\$11,968,000	\$5,264,000
Total stockholders' equity	\$50,437,000	\$49,396,000	\$41,670,000
GlaxoSmithKline			
Net income	\$6,822,505	\$10,605,663	\$8,747,382
Total stockholders' equity	\$11,483,295	\$19,180,072	\$67,888,692

Using the average book value of equity, the return on equity for Pfizer for the years ending December 2007 and 2008 can be calculated as:

Return on equity for the year ending December 2007

$$ROE_{2007} = \frac{NI_{2007}}{(BVE_{2006} + BVE_{2007})/2} = \frac{8,144,000}{(71,358,000 + 65,010,000)/2} = 11.9\%$$

Return on equity for the year ending December 2008

$$ROE_{2008} = \frac{NI_{2008}}{(BVE_{2007} + BVE_{2008})/2} = \frac{8,104,000}{(65,010,000 + 57,556,000)/2} = 13.2\%$$

Exhibit 19 summarizes the return on equity for Novartis and GlaxoSmithKline in addition to Pfizer for 2007 and 2008.

²⁸ Pfizer uses US GAAP to prepare its financial statements; Novartis and GlaxoSmithKline use International Financial Reporting Standards. Therefore, it would be inappropriate to compare the ROE of Pfizer to that of Novartis or GlaxoSmithKline.

Exhibit 19 Return on Equity for Pfizer, Novartis AG, and GlaxoSmithKline

	31 Dec 2008 (%)	31 Dec 2007 (%)
Pfizer	13.2	11.9
Novartis AG	16.5	26.3
GlaxoSmithKline	44.5	24.4

In the case of Novartis, the ROE of 26.3 percent in 2007 indicates that the company was able to generate a return (profit) of US\$0.263 on every US\$1.00 of capital invested by shareholders. In 2008, its operating performance deteriorated because it was only able to generate a 16.5 percent return on its equity. In contrast, GlaxoSmithKline almost doubled its return on equity over this period, from 24.4 percent to 44.5 percent. Pfizer's ROE remained relatively unchanged.

ROE can increase if net income increases at a faster rate than shareholders' equity or if net income decreases at a slower rate than shareholders' equity. In the case of Novartis, ROE fell in 2008 because its net income decreased by over 30 percent while shareholders' equity remained relatively stable. Stated differently, Novartis was less effective in using its equity capital to generate profits in 2008 than in 2007. In the case of GlaxoSmithKline, its ROE increased dramatically from 24.4 percent to 44.5 percent in 2007 versus 2008 even though its net income fell over 35 percent because its average shareholder equity decreased dramatically from 2006–2007 to 2007–2008.

An important question to ask is whether an increasing ROE is always good. The short answer is, "it depends." One reason ROE can increase is if net income decreases at a slower rate than shareholders' equity, which is not a positive sign. In addition, ROE can increase if the company issues debt and then uses the proceeds to repurchase some of its outstanding shares. This action will increase the company's leverage and make its equity riskier. Therefore, it is important to examine the source of changes in the company's net income *and* shareholders' equity over time. The DuPont formula, which is discussed in a separate reading, can be used to analyze the sources of changes in a company's ROE.

The book value of a company's equity reflects the historical operating and financing decisions of its management. The market value of the company's equity reflects these decisions as well as investors' collective assessment and expectations about the company's future cash flows generated by its positive net present value investment opportunities. If investors believe that the company has a large number of these future cash flow-generating investment opportunities, the market value of the company's equity will exceed its book value. Exhibit 20 shows the market price per share, the total number of shares outstanding, and the total book value of shareholders' equity for Pfizer, Novartis AG, and GlaxoSmithKline at the end of December 2008. This exhibit also shows the total market value of equity (or market capitalization) computed as the number of shares outstanding multiplied by the market price per share.

Exhibit 20 Market Information for Pfizer, Novartis AG, and GlaxoSmithKline (in Thousands of US Dollars except market price)

	Pfizer	Novartis AG	GlaxoSmithKline
Market price	\$16.97	\$47.64	\$35.84
Total shares outstanding	6,750,000	2,260,000	2,530,000

Exhibit 20 (Continued)

	Pfizer	Novartis AG	GlaxoSmithKline
Total shareholders' equity	\$57,556,000	\$50,437,000	\$11,483,295
Total market value of equity	\$114,547,500	\$107,666,400	\$90,675,200

Note that in Exhibit 20, the total market value of equity for Pfizer is computed as:

$$\text{Market value of equity} = \text{Market price per share} \times \text{Shares outstanding}$$

$$\text{Market value of equity} = \text{US\$16.97} \times 6,750,000 = \text{US\$114,547,500.}$$

The book value of equity per share for Pfizer can be computed as:

$$\text{Book value of equity per share} = \text{Total shareholders' equity} / \text{Shares outstanding}$$

$$\text{Book value of equity per share} = \text{US\$57,556,000} / 6,750,000 = \text{US\$8.53.}$$

A useful ratio to compute is a company's price-to-book ratio, which is also referred to as the market-to-book ratio. This ratio provides an indication of investors' expectations about a company's future investment and cash flow-generating opportunities. The larger the price-to-book ratio (i.e., the greater the divergence between market value per share and book value per share), the more favorably investors will view the company's future investment opportunities. For Pfizer the price-to-book ratio is:

$$\text{Price-to-book ratio} = \text{Market price per share} / \text{Book value of equity per share}$$

$$\text{Price-to-book ratio} = \text{US\$16.97} / \text{US\$8.53} = 1.99$$

Exhibit 21 contains the market price per share, book value of equity per share, and price-to-book ratios for Novartis and GlaxoSmithKline in addition to Pfizer.

Exhibit 21 Pfizer, Novartis AG, and GlaxoSmithKline

	Pfizer	Novartis AG	GlaxoSmithKline
Market price per share	\$16.97	\$47.64	\$35.84
Book value of equity per share	\$8.53	\$22.32	\$4.54
Price-to-book ratio	1.99	2.13	7.89

The market price per share of all three companies exceeds their respective book values, so their price-to-book ratios are all greater than 1.00. However, there are significant differences in the sizes of their price-to-book ratios. GlaxoSmithKline has the largest price-to-book ratio, while the price-to-book ratios of Pfizer and Novartis are similar to each other. This suggests that investors believe that GlaxoSmithKline has substantially higher future growth opportunities than either Pfizer or Novartis.

It is not appropriate to compare the price-to-book ratios of companies in different industries because their price-to-book ratios also reflect investors' outlook for the industry. Companies in high growth industries, such as technology, will generally have higher price-to-book ratios than companies in slower growth (i.e., mature) industries, such as heavy equipment. Therefore, it is more appropriate to compare the price-to-book ratios of companies in the same industry. A company with relatively high growth opportunities compared to its industry peers would likely have a higher price-to-book ratio than the average price-to-book ratio of the industry.

Book value and return on equity are useful in helping analysts determine value but can be limited as a primary means to estimate a company's true or intrinsic value, which is the present value of its future projected cash flows. In Exhibit 22, Warren Buffett, one of the most successful investors in the world and CEO of Berkshire Hathaway, provides an explanation of the differences between the book value of a company and its intrinsic value in a letter to shareholders. As discussed above, market value reflects the collective and differing expectations of investors concerning the amount, timing, and uncertainty of a company's future cash flows. A company's intrinsic value can only be estimated because it is impossible to predict the amount and timing of its future cash flows. However, astute investors—such as Buffett—have been able to profit from discrepancies between their estimates of a company's intrinsic value and the market value of its equity.

Exhibit 22 Book Value versus Intrinsic Value²⁹

We regularly report our per-share book value, an easily calculable number, though one of limited use. Just as regularly, we tell you that what counts is intrinsic value, a number that is impossible to pinpoint but essential to estimate.

For example, in 1964, we could state with certitude that Berkshire's per-share book value was \$19.46. However, that figure considerably overstated the stock's intrinsic value since all of the company's resources were tied up in a sub-profitable textile business. Our textile assets had neither going-concern nor liquidation values equal to their carrying values. In 1964, then, anyone inquiring into the soundness of Berkshire's balance sheet might well have deserved the answer once offered up by a Hollywood mogul of dubious reputation: "Don't worry, the liabilities are solid."

Today, Berkshire's situation has reversed: Many of the businesses we control are worth far more than their carrying value. (Those we don't control, such as Coca-Cola or Gillette, are carried at current market values.) We continue to give you book value figures, however, because they serve as a rough, understated, tracking measure for Berkshire's intrinsic value.

We define intrinsic value as the discounted value of the cash that can be taken out of a business during its remaining life. Anyone calculating intrinsic value necessarily comes up with a highly subjective figure that will change both as estimates of future cash flows are revised and as interest rates move. Despite its fuzziness, however, intrinsic value is all-important and is the only logical way to evaluate the relative attractiveness of investments and businesses.

To see how historical input (book value) and future output (intrinsic value) can diverge, let's look at another form of investment, a college education. Think of the education's cost as its "book value." If it is to be accurate, the cost should include the earnings that were foregone by the student because he chose college rather than a job.

For this exercise, we will ignore the important non-economic benefits of an education and focus strictly on its economic value. First, we must estimate the earnings that the graduate will receive over his lifetime and subtract from that figure an estimate of what he would have earned had he lacked his education. That gives us an excess earnings figure, which must then be discounted, at an appropriate interest rate, back to graduation day. The dollar result equals the intrinsic economic value of the education.

²⁹ Extracts from Berkshire Hathaway's 2008 Annual Report (www.berkshirehathaway.com).

7.2 The Cost of Equity and Investors' Required Rates of Return

When companies issue debt (or borrow from a bank) or equity securities, there is a cost associated with the capital that is raised. In order to maximize profitability and shareholder wealth, companies attempt to raise capital efficiently so as to minimize these costs.

When a company issues debt, the cost it incurs for the use of these funds is called the cost of debt. The cost of debt is relatively easy to estimate because it reflects the periodic interest (or coupon) rate that the company is contractually obligated to pay to its bondholders (lenders). When a company raises capital by issuing equity, the cost it incurs is called the cost of equity. Unlike debt, however, the company is not contractually obligated to make any payments to its shareholders for the use of their funds. As a result, the cost of equity is more difficult to estimate.

Investors require a return on the funds they provide to the company. This return is called the investor's minimum required rate of return. When investors purchase the company's debt securities, their minimum required rate of return is the periodic rate of interest they charge the company for the use of their funds. Because all of the bondholders receive the same periodic rate of interest, their required rate of return is the same. Therefore, the company's cost of debt and the investors' minimum required rate of return on the debt are the same.

When investors purchase the company's equity securities, their minimum required rate of return is based on the future cash flows they expect to receive. Because these future cash flows are both uncertain and unknown, the investors' minimum required rate of return must be estimated. In addition, the minimum required return may differ across investors based on their expectations about the company's future cash flows. As a result, the company's cost of equity may be different from the investors' minimum required rate of return on equity.³⁰ Because companies try to raise capital at the lowest possible cost, the company's cost of equity is often used as a proxy for the investors' *minimum* required rate of return.

In other words, the cost of equity can be thought of as the minimum expected rate of return that a company must offer its investors to purchase its shares in the primary market and to maintain its share price in the secondary market. If this expected rate of return is not maintained in the secondary market, then the share price will adjust so that it meets the minimum required rate of return demanded by investors. For example, if investors require a higher rate of return on equity than the company's cost of equity, they would sell their shares and invest their funds elsewhere resulting in a decline in the company's share price. As the share price declined, the cost of equity would increase to reach the higher rate of return that investors require.

Two models commonly used to estimate a company's cost of equity (or investors' minimum required rate of return) are the dividend discount model (DDM) and the capital asset pricing model (CAPM). These models are discussed in detail in other curriculum readings.

The cost of debt (after tax) and the cost of equity (i.e., the minimum required rates of return on debt and equity) are integral components of the capital budgeting process because they are used to estimate a company's weighted average cost of capital (WACC). Capital budgeting is the decision-making process that companies use to evaluate potential long-term investments. The WACC represents the minimum required rate of return that the company must earn on its long-term investments to satisfy all providers of capital. The company then chooses among those long-term investments with expected returns that are greater than its WACC.

³⁰ Another important factor that can cause a firm's cost of equity to differ from investors' required rate of return on equity is the flotation cost associated with equity.

SUMMARY

Equity securities play a fundamental role in investment analysis and portfolio management. The importance of this asset class continues to grow on a global scale because of the need for equity capital in developed and emerging markets, technological innovation, and the growing sophistication of electronic information exchange. Given their absolute return potential and ability to impact the risk and return characteristics of portfolios, equity securities are of importance to both individual and institutional investors.

This reading introduces equity securities and provides an overview of global equity markets. A detailed analysis of their historical performance shows that equity securities have offered average real annual returns superior to government bills and bonds, which have provided average real annual returns that have only kept pace with inflation. The different types and characteristics of common and preference equity securities are examined, and the primary differences between public and private equity securities are outlined. An overview of the various types of equity securities listed and traded in global markets is provided, including a discussion of their risk and return characteristics. Finally, the role of equity securities in creating company value is examined as well as the relationship between a company's cost of equity, its accounting return on equity, investors' required rate of return, and the company's intrinsic value.

We conclude with a summary of the key components of this reading:

- Common shares represent an ownership interest in a company and give investors a claim on its operating performance, the opportunity to participate in the corporate decision-making process, and a claim on the company's net assets in the case of liquidation.
- Callable common shares give the issuer the right to buy back the shares from shareholders at a price determined when the shares are originally issued.
- Puttable common shares give shareholders the right to sell the shares back to the issuer at a price specified when the shares are originally issued.
- Preference shares are a form of equity in which payments made to preference shareholders take precedence over any payments made to common stockholders.
- Cumulative preference shares are preference shares on which dividend payments are accrued so that any payments omitted by the company must be paid before another dividend can be paid to common shareholders. Non-cumulative preference shares have no such provisions, implying that the dividend payments are at the company's discretion and are thus similar to payments made to common shareholders.
- Participating preference shares allow investors to receive the standard preferred dividend plus the opportunity to receive a share of corporate profits above a pre-specified amount. Non-participating preference shares allow investors to simply receive the initial investment plus any accrued dividends in the event of liquidation.
- Callable and puttable preference shares provide issuers and investors with the same rights and obligations as their common share counterparts.
- Private equity securities are issued primarily to institutional investors in private placements and do not trade in secondary equity markets. There are three types of private equity investments: venture capital, leveraged buyouts, and private investments in public equity (PIPEs).

- The objective of private equity investing is to increase the ability of the company's management to focus on its operating activities for long-term value creation. The strategy is to take the "private" company "public" after certain profit and other benchmarks have been met.
- Depository receipts are securities that trade like ordinary shares on a local exchange but which represent an economic interest in a foreign company. They allow the publicly listed shares of foreign companies to be traded on an exchange outside their domestic market.
- American depository receipts are US dollar-denominated securities trading much like standard US securities on US markets. Global depository receipts are similar to ADRs but contain certain restrictions in terms of their ability to be resold among investors.
- Underlying characteristics of equity securities can greatly affect their risk and return.
- A company's accounting return on equity is the total return that it earns on shareholders' book equity.
- A company's cost of equity is the minimum rate of return that stockholders require the company to pay them for investing in its equity.

REFERENCES

- Bailey, Elizabeth, Meg Wirth, and David Zapol. 2005. "Venture Capital and Global Health." *Financing Global Health Ventures*, Discussion Paper (September 2005): http://www.commonscapital.com/downloads/Venture_Capital_and_Global_Health.pdf
- Boubakri, Narjess, Jean-Claude Cosset, and Anis Samet. 2010. "The Choice of ADRs." *Journal of Banking and Finance*, vol. 34, no. 9:2077–2095.
- Dimson, Elroy, Paul Marsh, and Mike Staunton. 2012a. *Credit Suisse Global Investment Returns Sourcebook 2012*. Credit Suisse Research Institute.
- Dimson, Elroy, Paul Marsh, and Mike Staunton. 2012b. *Credit Suisse Global Investment Returns Yearbook 2012*. Credit Suisse Research Institute.
- Graham, John R., Campbell R. Harvey, and Shiva Rajgopal. 2005. "The Economic Implications of Corporate Financial Reporting." *Journal of Accounting and Economics*, vol. 40, no. 1–3:3–73.
- Henry, Peter Blair, and Anusha Chari. 2004. "Risk Sharing and Asset Prices: Evidence from a Natural Experiment." *Journal of Finance*, vol. 59, no. 3:1295–1324.
- Strömberg, Per. 2008. "The New Demography of Private Equity." *The Global Economic Impact of Private Equity Report 2008*, World Economic Forum.

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

- 1 Which of the following is *not* a characteristic of common equity?
 - A It represents an ownership interest in the company.
 - B Shareholders participate in the decision-making process.
 - C The company is obligated to make periodic dividend payments.
- 2 The type of equity voting right that grants one vote for each share of equity owned is referred to as:
 - A proxy voting.
 - B statutory voting.
 - C cumulative voting.
- 3 All of the following are characteristics of preference shares *except*:
 - A They are either callable or puttable.
 - B They generally do not have voting rights.
 - C They do not share in the operating performance of the company.
- 4 Participating preference shares entitle shareholders to:
 - A participate in the decision-making process of the company.
 - B convert their shares into a specified number of common shares.
 - C receive an additional dividend if the company's profits exceed a pre-determined level.
- 5 Which of the following statements about private equity securities is *incorrect*?
 - A They cannot be sold on secondary markets.
 - B They have market-determined quoted prices.
 - C They are primarily issued to institutional investors.
- 6 Venture capital investments:
 - A can be publicly traded.
 - B do not require a long-term commitment of funds.
 - C provide mezzanine financing to early-stage companies.
- 7 Which of the following statements *most accurately* describes one difference between private and public equity firms?
 - A Private equity firms are focused more on short-term results than public firms.
 - B Private equity firms' regulatory and investor relations operations are less costly than those of public firms.
 - C Private equity firms are incentivized to be more open with investors about governance and compensation than public firms.
- 8 Emerging markets have benefited from recent trends in international markets. Which of the following has *not* been a benefit of these trends?
 - A Emerging market companies do not have to worry about a lack of liquidity in their home equity markets.
 - B Emerging market companies have found it easier to raise capital in the markets of developed countries.

- C Emerging market companies have benefited from the stability of foreign exchange markets.
- 9 When investing in unsponsored depository receipts, the voting rights to the shares in the trust belong to:
- A the depository bank.
 - B the investors in the depository receipts.
 - C the issuer of the shares held in the trust.
- 10 With respect to Level III sponsored ADRs, which of the following is *least likely* to be accurate? They:
- A have low listing fees.
 - B are traded on the NYSE, NASDAQ, and AMEX.
 - C are used to raise equity capital in US markets.
- 11 A basket of listed depository receipts, or an exchange-traded fund, would *most likely* be used for:
- A gaining exposure to a single equity.
 - B hedging exposure to a single equity.
 - C gaining exposure to multiple equities.
- 12 Calculate the total return on a share of equity using the following data:
- Purchase price: \$50
Sale price: \$42
Dividend paid during holding period: \$2
- A -12.0%
 - B -14.3%
 - C -16.0%
- 13 If a US-based investor purchases a euro-denominated ETF and the euro subsequently depreciates in value relative to the dollar, the investor will have a total return that is:
- A lower than the ETF's total return.
 - B higher than the ETF's total return.
 - C the same as the ETF's total return.
- 14 Which of the following is *incorrect* about the risk of an equity security? The risk of an equity security is:
- A based on the uncertainty of its cash flows.
 - B based on the uncertainty of its future price.
 - C measured using the standard deviation of its dividends.
- 15 From an investor's point of view, which of the following equity securities is the *least* risky?
- A Puttable preference shares.
 - B Callable preference shares.
 - C Non-callable preference shares.
- 16 Which of the following is *least likely* to be a reason for a company to issue equity securities on the primary market?
- A To raise capital.
 - B To increase liquidity.
 - C To increase return on equity.

- 17 Which of the following is *not* a primary goal of raising equity capital?
- A To finance the purchase of long-lived assets.
 - B To finance the company's revenue-generating activities.
 - C To ensure that the company continues as a going concern.
- 18 Which of the following statements is *most accurate* in describing a company's book value?
- A Book value increases when a company retains its net income.
 - B Book value is usually equal to the company's market value.
 - C The ultimate goal of management is to maximize book value.
- 19 Calculate the book value of a company using the following information:

Number of shares outstanding	100,000
Price per share	€52
Total assets	€12,000,000
Total liabilities	€7,500,000
Net Income	€2,000,000

- A €4,500,000.
 - B €5,200,000.
 - C €6,500,000.
- 20 Which of the following statements is *least accurate* in describing a company's market value?
- A Management's decisions do not influence the company's market value.
 - B Increases in book value may not be reflected in the company's market value.
 - C Market value reflects the collective and differing expectations of investors.
- 21 Calculate the 2009 return on equity (ROE) of a stable company using the following data:

Total sales	£2,500,000
Net income	£2,000,000
Beginning of year total assets	£50,000,000
Beginning of year total liabilities	£35,000,000
Number of shares outstanding at the end of 2009	1,000,000
Price per share at the end of 2009	£20

- A 10.0%.
 - B 13.3%.
 - C 16.7%.
- 22 Holding all other factors constant, which of the following situations will *most likely* lead to an increase in a company's return on equity?
- A The market price of the company's shares increases.
 - B Net income increases at a slower rate than shareholders' equity.
 - C The company issues debt to repurchase outstanding shares of equity.
- 23 Which of the following measures is the *most difficult* to estimate?
- A The cost of debt.
 - B The cost of equity.
 - C Investors' required rate of return on debt.

- 24 A company's cost of equity is often used as a proxy for investors':
- A average required rate of return.
 - B minimum required rate of return.
 - C maximum required rate of return.

SOLUTIONS

- 1 C is correct. The company is not obligated to make dividend payments. It is at the discretion of the company whether or not it chooses to pay dividends.
- 2 B is correct. Statutory voting is the type of equity voting right that grants one vote per share owned.
- 3 A is correct. Preference shares do not have to be either callable or puttable.
- 4 C is correct. Participating preference shares entitle shareholders to receive an additional dividend if the company's profits exceed a pre-determined level.
- 5 B is correct. Private equity securities do not have market-determined quoted prices.
- 6 C is correct. Venture capital investments can be used to provide mezzanine financing to companies in their early stage of development.
- 7 B is correct. Regulatory and investor relations costs are lower for private equity firms than for public firms. There are no stock exchange, regulatory, or shareholder involvements with private equity, whereas for public firms these costs can be high.
- 8 C is correct. The trends in emerging markets have not led to the stability of foreign exchange markets.
- 9 A is correct. In an unsponsored DR, the depository bank owns the voting rights to the shares. The bank purchases the shares, places them into a trust, and then sells shares in the trust—not the underlying shares—in other markets.
- 10 A is correct. The listing fees on Level III sponsored ADRs are high.
- 11 C is correct. An ETF is used to gain exposure to a basket of securities (equity, fixed income, commodity futures, etc.).
- 12 A is correct. The formula states $R_t = (P_t - P_{t-1} + D_t)/P_{t-1}$. Therefore, total return = $(42 - 50 + 2)/50 = -12.0\%$.
- 13 A is correct. The depreciated value of the euro will create an additional loss in the form of currency return that is lower than the ETF's return.
- 14 C is correct. Some equity securities do not pay dividends, and therefore the standard deviation of dividends cannot be used to measure the risk of all equity securities.
- 15 A is correct. Puttable shares, whether common or preference, give the investor the option to sell the shares back to the issuer at a pre-determined price. This pre-determined price creates a floor for the share's price that reduces the uncertainty of future cash flows for the investor (i.e., lowers risk relative to the other two types of shares listed).
- 16 C is correct. Issuing shares in the primary (and secondary) market *reduces* a company's return on equity because it increases the total amount of equity capital invested in the company (i.e., the denominator in the ROE formula).
- 17 C is correct. Capital is raised to ensure the company's existence only when it is required. It is not a typical goal of raising capital.
- 18 A is correct. A company's book value increases when a company retains its net income.
- 19 A is correct. The book value of the company is equal to total assets minus total liabilities, which is $€12,000,000 - €7,500,000 = €4,500,000$.

- 20** A is correct. A company's market value is affected by management's decisions. Management's decisions can directly affect the company's *book* value, which can then affect its market value.
- 21** B is correct. A company's ROE is calculated as (NI_t/BVE_{t-1}) . For 2009, the BVE_{t-1} is equal to the beginning total assets minus the beginning total liabilities, which equals $£50,000,000 - £35,000,000 = £15,000,000$. Therefore, $ROE_{2009} = £2,000,000/£15,000,000 = 13.3\%$.
- 22** C is correct. A company's ROE will increase if it issues debt to repurchase outstanding shares of equity.
- 23** B is correct. The cost of equity is not easily determined. It is dependent on investors' required rate of return on equity, which reflects the different risk levels of investors and their expectations about the company's future cash flows.
- 24** B is correct. Companies try to raise funds at the lowest possible cost. Therefore, cost of equity is used as a proxy for the minimum required rate of return.

Introduction to Industry and Company Analysis

by Patrick W. Dorsey, CFA, Anthony M. Fiore, CFA, and Ian Rossa O'Reilly, CFA

Patrick W. Dorsey, CFA, is at Dorsey Asset Management (USA). Anthony M. Fiore, CFA, is at Silvercrest Asset Management (USA). Ian Rossa O'Reilly, CFA (Canada).

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Mastery	The candidate should be able to:
<input type="checkbox"/>	a. explain uses of industry analysis and the relation of industry analysis to company analysis;
<input type="checkbox"/>	b. compare methods by which companies can be grouped, current industry classification systems, and classify a company, given a description of its activities and the classification system;
<input type="checkbox"/>	c. explain the factors that affect the sensitivity of a company to the business cycle and the uses and limitations of industry and company descriptors such as “growth,” “defensive,” and “cyclical”;
<input type="checkbox"/>	d. explain how a company’s industry classification can be used to identify a potential “peer group” for equity valuation;
<input type="checkbox"/>	e. describe the elements that need to be covered in a thorough industry analysis;
<input type="checkbox"/>	f. describe the principles of strategic analysis of an industry;
<input type="checkbox"/>	g. explain the effects of barriers to entry, industry concentration, industry capacity, and market share stability on pricing power and price competition;
<input type="checkbox"/>	h. describe industry life cycle models, classify an industry as to life cycle stage, and describe limitations of the life-cycle concept in forecasting industry performance;
<input type="checkbox"/>	i. compare characteristics of representative industries from the various economic sectors;
<input type="checkbox"/>	j. describe macroeconomic, technological, demographic, governmental, and social influences on industry growth, profitability, and risk;
<input type="checkbox"/>	k. describe the elements that should be covered in a thorough company analysis.

1

INTRODUCTION

Industry analysis is the analysis of a specific branch of manufacturing, service, or trade. Understanding the industry in which a company operates provides an essential framework for the analysis of the individual company—that is, **company analysis**. Equity analysis and credit analysis are often conducted by analysts who concentrate on one or several industries, which results in synergies and efficiencies in gathering and interpreting information.

Among the questions we address in this reading are the following:

- What are the similarities and differences among industry classification systems?
- How does an analyst go about choosing a peer group of companies?
- What are the key factors to consider when analyzing an industry?
- What advantages are enjoyed by companies in strategically well-positioned industries?

After discussing the uses of industry analysis in the next section, Sections 3 and 4 discuss, respectively, approaches to identifying similar companies and industry classification systems. Section 5 covers the description and analysis of industries. Also, Section 5, which includes an introduction to competitive analysis, provides a background to Section 6, which introduces company analysis. The reading ends with a summary, and practice problems follow the text.

2

USES OF INDUSTRY ANALYSIS

Industry analysis is useful in a number of investment applications that make use of fundamental analysis. Its uses include the following:

- *Understanding a company's business and business environment.* Industry analysis is often a critical early step in stock selection and valuation because it provides insights into the issuer's growth opportunities, competitive dynamics, and business risks. For a credit analyst, industry analysis provides insights into the appropriateness of a company's use of debt financing and into its ability to meet its promised payments during economic contractions.
- *Identifying active equity investment opportunities.* Investors taking a top-down investing approach use industry analysis to identify industries with positive, neutral, or negative outlooks for profitability and growth. Generally, investors will then overweight, market weight, or underweight those industries (as appropriate to their outlooks) relative to the investor's benchmark if the investor judges that the industry's perceived prospects are not fully incorporated in market prices. Apart from security selection, some investors attempt to outperform their benchmarks by industry or sector rotation—that is, timing investments in industries in relation to an analysis of industry fundamentals and/or business-cycle conditions (technical analysis may also play a role in such strategies). Several studies have underscored the importance of industry analysis by suggesting that the industry factor in stock returns is at least as important as the country factor (e.g., Cavaglia, Diermeier, Moroz, and De Zordo, 2004). In

addition, industry membership has been found to account for about 20 percent of the variability of a company's profitability in the United States (McGahan and Porter 1995).

- *Portfolio performance attribution.* Performance attribution, which addresses the sources of a portfolio's returns, usually in relation to the portfolio's benchmark, includes industry or sector selection. Industry classification schemes play a role in such performance attribution.

Later in this reading we explore the considerations involved in understanding a company's business and business environment. The next section addresses how companies may be grouped into industries.

APPROACHES TO IDENTIFYING SIMILAR COMPANIES

3

Industry classification attempts to place companies into groups on the basis of commonalities. In the following sections, we discuss the three major approaches to industry classification:

- products and/or services supplied;
- business-cycle sensitivities; and
- statistical similarities.

3.1 Products and/or Services Supplied

Modern classification schemes are most commonly based on grouping companies by similar products and/or services. According to this perspective, an **industry** is defined as a group of companies offering similar products and/or services. For example, major companies in the global heavy truck industry include Volvo, Daimler AG, Paccar, and Navistar, all of which make large commercial vehicles for the on-highway truck market. Similarly, some of the large players in the global automobile industry are Toyota, General Motors, Volkswagen, Ford, Honda, Nissan, PSA Peugeot Citroën, and Hyundai, all of which produce light vehicles that are close substitutes for one another.

Industry classification schemes typically provide multiple levels of aggregation. The term **sector** is often used to refer to a group of related industries. The health care sector, for example, consists of a number of related industries, including the pharmaceutical, biotechnology, medical device, medical supply, hospital, and managed care industries.

These classification schemes typically place a company in an industry on the basis of a determination of its principal business activity. A company's **principal business activity** is the source from which the company derives a majority of its revenues and/or earnings. For example, companies that derive a majority of their revenues from the sale of pharmaceuticals include Novartis AG, Pfizer Inc., Roche Holding AG, GlaxoSmithKline, and Sanofi-aventis S.A., all of which could be grouped together as part of the global pharmaceutical industry. Companies that engage in more than one significant business activity usually report the revenues (and, in many cases, operating profits) of the different business segments in their financial statements.¹

Examples of classification systems based on products and/or services include the commercial classification systems that will be discussed later, namely, the Global Industry Classification Standard (GICS), Russell Global Sectors (RGS), and Industry

¹ For more information, see International Financial Reporting Standard (IFRS) 8: Operating Segments. In IFRS 8, *business segments* are called *operating segments*.

Classification Benchmark. In addition to grouping companies by product and/or service, some of the major classification systems, including GICS and RGS, group consumer-related companies into cyclical and non-cyclical categories depending on the company's sensitivity to the business cycle. The next section addresses how companies can be categorized on the basis of economic sensitivity.

3.2 Business-Cycle Sensitivities

Companies are sometimes grouped on the basis of their relative sensitivity to the business cycle. This method often results in two broad groupings of companies—cyclical and non-cyclical.

A **cyclical** company is one whose profits are strongly correlated with the strength of the overall economy. Such companies experience wider-than-average fluctuations in demand—high demand during periods of economic expansion and low demand during periods of economic contraction—and/or are subject to greater-than-average profit variability related to high operating leverage (i.e., high fixed costs). Concerning demand, cyclical products and services are often relatively expensive and/or represent purchases that can be delayed if necessary (e.g., because of declining disposable income). Examples of cyclical industries are autos, housing, basic materials, industrials, and technology. A **non-cyclical** company is one whose performance is largely independent of the business cycle. Non-cyclical companies produce goods or services for which demand remains relatively stable throughout the business cycle. Examples of non-cyclical industries are food and beverage, household and personal care products, health care, and utilities.

Although the classification systems we will discuss do not label their categories as cyclical or non-cyclical, certain sectors tend to experience greater economic sensitivity than others. Sectors that tend to exhibit a relatively high degree of economic sensitivity include consumer discretionary, energy, financials, industrials, technology, and materials. In contrast, sectors that exhibit relatively less economic sensitivity include consumer staples, health care, telecommunications, and utilities.

EXAMPLE 1

Descriptions Related to the Cyclical/Noncyclical Distinction

Analysts commonly encounter a number of labels related to the cyclical/non-cyclical distinction. For example, non-cyclical industries have sometimes been sorted into defensive (or stable) versus growth. Defensive industries and companies are those whose revenues and profits are least affected by fluctuations in overall economic activity. These industries/companies tend to produce staple consumer goods (e.g., bread), to provide basic services (grocery stores, drug stores, fast food outlets), or to have their rates and revenues determined by contracts or government regulation (e.g., cost-of-service, rate-of-return regulated public utilities). Growth industries would include industries with specific demand dynamics that are so strong that they override the significance of broad economic or other external factors and generate growth regardless of overall economic conditions, although their rates of growth may slow during an economic downturn.²

² Sometimes the “growth” label is attached to countries or regions in which economic growth is so strong that the fluctuations in local economic activity do not produce an actual decline in economic output, merely variation from high to low rates of real growth (e.g., China, India).

The usefulness of industry and company labels such as cyclical, growth, and defensive is limited. Cyclical industries as well as growth industries often have growth companies within them. A cyclical industry itself, although exposed to the effects of fluctuations in overall economic activity, may grow at an above-average rate for periods spanning multiple business cycles.³ Furthermore, when fluctuations in economic activity are large, as in the deep recession of 2008–2009, few companies escape the effects of the cyclical weakness in overall economic activity.

The defensive label is also problematic. Industries may include both companies that are growth and companies that are defensive in character, making the choice between a “growth” and a “defensive” label difficult. Moreover, “defensive” cannot be understood as necessarily being descriptive of investment characteristics. Food supermarkets, for example, would typically be described as defensive but can be subject to profit-damaging price wars. So-called defensive industries/companies may sometimes face industry dynamics that make them far from defensive in the sense of preserving shareholders’ capital.

One limitation of the cyclical/non-cyclical classification is that business-cycle sensitivity is a continuous spectrum rather than an “either/or” issue, so placement of companies in one of the two major groups is somewhat arbitrary. The impact of severe recessions usually reaches all parts of the economy, so non-cyclical is better understood as a relative term.

Another limitation of a business-cycle classification for global investing is that different countries and regions of the world frequently progress through the various stages of the business cycle at different times. While one region of the world may be experiencing economic expansion, other regions or countries may be in recession, which complicates the application of a business-cycle approach to industry analysis. For example, a jewelry retailer (i.e., a cyclical company) that is selling domestically into a weak economy will exhibit markedly different fundamental performance relative to a jewelry company operating in an environment where demand is robust. Comparing these two companies—that is, similar companies that are currently exposed to different demand environments—could suggest investment opportunities. Combining fundamental data from such companies, however, to establish industry benchmark values would be misleading.

3.3 Statistical Similarities

Statistical approaches to grouping companies are typically based on the correlations of past securities’ returns. For example, using the technique known as cluster analysis, companies are separated (on the basis of historical correlations of stock returns) into groups *in which* correlations are relatively high but *between which* correlations are relatively low. This method of aggregation often results in non-intuitive groups of companies, and the composition of the groups may vary significantly by time period and region of the world. Moreover, statistical approaches rely on historical data, but analysts have no guarantee that past correlation values will continue in the future. In addition, such approaches carry the inherent dangers of all statistical methods, namely, 1) falsely indicating a relationship that arose because of chance or 2) falsely excluding a relationship that actually is significant.

³ The label **growth cyclical** is sometimes used to describe companies that are growing rapidly on a long-term basis but that still experience above-average fluctuation in their revenues and profits over the course of a business cycle.

4

INDUSTRY CLASSIFICATION SYSTEMS

A well-designed classification system often serves as a useful starting point for industry analysis. It allows analysts to compare industry trends and relative valuations among companies in a group. Classification systems that take a global perspective enable portfolio managers and research analysts to make global comparisons of companies in the same industry. For example, given the global nature of the automobile industry, a thorough analysis of the industry would include auto companies from many different countries and regions of the world.

4.1 Commercial Industry Classification Systems

Major index providers, including Standard & Poor's, MSCI Barra, Russell Investments, Dow Jones, and FTSE, classify companies in their equity indexes into industry groupings. Most classification schemes used by these index providers contain multiple levels of classification that start at the broadest level with a general sector grouping, then, in several further steps, subdivide or disaggregate the sectors into more "granular" (i.e., more narrowly defined) sub-industry groups.

4.1.1 Global Industry Classification Standard

GICS was jointly developed by Standard & Poor's and MSCI Barra, two of the largest providers of global equity indexes, in 1999. As the name implies, GICS was designed to facilitate global comparisons of industries, and it classifies companies in both developed and developing economies. Each company is assigned to a sub-industry according to its principal business activity. Each sub-industry belongs to a particular industry; each industry belongs to an industry group; and each group belongs to a sector. In June 2009, the GICS classification structure comprised four levels of detail consisting of 154 sub-industries, 68 industries, 24 industry groups, and 10 sectors. The composition of GICS has historically been adjusted over time to reflect changes in the global equity markets.

4.1.2 Russell Global Sectors

The RGS classification system uses a three-tier structure to classify companies globally on the basis of the products or services a company produces. In June 2009, the RGS classification system consisted of 9 sectors, 32 subsectors, and 141 industries. Besides the number of tiers, another difference between the RGS and GICS classification systems is that the RGS system contains nine sectors, whereas GICS consists of ten. For example, the RGS system does not provide a separate sector for telecommunication service companies. Many companies that GICS classifies as "Telecommunication Services," including China Mobile Ltd., AT&T, and Telefonica, are assigned by RGS to its more broadly defined "Utilities" sector.

4.1.3 Industry Classification Benchmark

The Industry Classification Benchmark (ICB), which was jointly developed by Dow Jones and FTSE, uses a four-tier structure to categorize companies globally on the basis of the source from which a company derives the majority of its revenue. In June 2009, the ICB classification system consisted of 10 industries, 19 supersectors, 41 sectors, and 114 subsectors. Although the ICB is similar to GICS in the number of tiers and the method by which companies are assigned to particular groups, the two systems use significantly different nomenclature. For example, whereas GICS uses the term "sector" to describe its broadest grouping of companies, ICB uses the term "industry." Another difference between the two systems is that ICB distinguishes between

consumer goods and consumer services companies, whereas both GICS and the RGS systems group consumer products companies and consumer services companies together into sectors on the basis of economic sensitivity. These stylistic distinctions tend to be less obvious at the more granular levels of the different hierarchies.

Despite these subtle differences, the three commercial classification systems use common methodologies for assigning companies to groups. Also, the broadest level of grouping for all three systems is quite similar. Specifically, GICS, the RGS, and the ICB each identify 9 or 10 broad groupings below which all other categories reside. Next, we describe sectors that are fairly representative of how the broadest level of industry classification is viewed by GICS, RGS, and ICB.

4.1.4 Description of Representative Sectors

Basic Materials and Processing: companies engaged in the production of building materials, chemicals, paper and forest products, containers and packaging, and metal, mineral, and mining companies.

Consumer Discretionary: companies that derive a majority of revenue from the sale of consumer-related products or services for which demand tends to exhibit a relatively high degree of economic sensitivity. Examples of business activities that frequently fall into this category are automotive, apparel, hotel, and restaurant businesses.

Consumer Staples: consumer-related companies whose business tends to exhibit less economic sensitivity than other companies; for example, manufacturers of food, beverage, tobacco, and personal care products.

Energy: companies whose primary line of business involves the exploration, production, or refining of natural resources used to produce energy; companies that derive a majority of revenue from the sale of equipment or through the provision of services to energy companies would also fall into this category.

Financial Services: companies whose primary line of business involves banking, finance, insurance, real estate, asset management, and/or brokerage services.

Health Care: manufacturers of pharmaceutical and biotech products, medical devices, health care equipment, and medical supplies and providers of health care services.

Industrial/Producer Durables: manufacturers of capital goods and providers of commercial services; for example, business activities would include heavy machinery and equipment manufacture, aerospace and defense, transportation services, and commercial services and supplies.

Technology: companies involved in the manufacture or sale of computers, software, semiconductors, and communications equipment; other business activities that frequently fall into this category are electronic entertainment, internet services, and technology consulting and services.

Telecommunications: companies that provide fixed-line and wireless communication services; some vendors prefer to combine telecommunication and utility companies together into a single “utilities” category.

Utilities: electric, gas, and water utilities; telecommunication companies are sometimes included in this category.

To classify a company accurately in a particular classification scheme requires definitions of the classification categories, a statement about the criteria used in classification, and detailed information about the subject company. Example 2 introduces

an exercise in such classification. In addressing the question, the reader can make use of the widely applicable sector descriptions just given and familiarity with available business products and services.

EXAMPLE 2

Classifying Companies into Industries

The text defines 10 representative sectors, repeated here in Exhibit 1. Suppose the classification system is based on the criterion of a company's principal business activity as judged primarily by source of revenue.

Exhibit 1 Ten Sectors

Sector

Basic Materials and Processing
 Consumer Discretionary
 Consumer Staples
 Energy
 Financial Services
 Health Care
 Industrial/Producer Durables
 Technology
 Telecommunications
 Utilities

Based on the information given, determine an appropriate industry membership for each of the following hypothetical companies:

- 1 A natural gas transporter and marketer
- 2 A manufacturer of heavy construction equipment
- 3 A provider of regional telephone services
- 4 A semiconductor company
- 5 A manufacturer of medical devices
- 6 A chain of supermarkets
- 7 A manufacturer of chemicals and plastics
- 8 A manufacturer of automobiles
- 9 An investment management company
- 10 A manufacturer of luxury leather goods
- 11 A regulated supplier of electricity
- 12 A provider of wireless broadband services
- 13 A manufacturer of soaps and detergents
- 14 A software development company
- 15 An insurer
- 16 A regulated provider of water/wastewater services
- 17 A petroleum (oil) service company

- 18 A manufacturer of pharmaceuticals
 19 A provider of rail transportation services
 20 A metals mining company

Solution:

Sector	Company Number
Basic Materials and Processing	7, 20
Consumer Discretionary	8, 10
Consumer Staples	6, 13
Energy	1, 17
Financial Services	9, 15
Health Care	5, 18
Industrial/Producer Durables	2, 19
Technology	4, 14
Telecommunications	3, 12
Utilities	11, 16

Example 3 reviews some major concepts in industry classification.

EXAMPLE 3**Industry Classification Schemes**

- The GICS classification system classifies companies on the basis of a company's primary business activity as measured primarily by:
 - assets.
 - income.
 - revenue.
- Which of the following is *least likely* to be accurately described as a cyclical company? A(n):
 - automobile manufacturer.
 - producer of breakfast cereals.
 - apparel company producing the newest trendy clothes for teenage girls.
- Which of the following is the *most accurate* statement? A statistical approach to grouping companies into industries:
 - is based on historical correlations of the securities' returns.
 - frequently produces industry groups whose composition is similar worldwide.
 - emphasizes the descriptive statistics of industries consisting of companies producing similar products and/or services.

Solution to 1:

C is correct.

Solution to 2:

B is correct. A producer of staple foods such as cereals is a classic example of a non-cyclical company. Demand for automobiles is cyclical—that is, relatively high during economic expansions and relatively low during economic contractions. Also, demand for teenage fashions is likely to be more sensitive to the business cycle than demand for standard food items such as breakfast cereals. When budgets have been reduced, families may try to avoid expensive clothing or extend the life of existing wardrobes.

Solution to 3:

A is correct.

4.2 Governmental Industry Classification Systems

A number of classification systems in use by various governmental agencies today organize statistical data according to type of industrial or economic activity. A common goal of each government classification system is to facilitate the comparison of data—both over time and among countries that use the same system. Continuity of the data is critical to the measurement and evaluation of economic performance over time.

4.2.1 *International Standard Industrial Classification of All Economic Activities*

The International Standard Industrial Classification of All Economic Activities (ISIC) was adopted by the United Nations in 1948 to address the need for international comparability of economic statistics. ISIC classifies entities into various categories on the basis of the principal type of economic activity the entity performs. ISIC is organized into 11 categories, 21 sections, 88 divisions, 233 groups, and more than 400 classes. According to the United Nations, a majority of the countries around the world have either used ISIC as their national activity classification system or have developed national classifications derived from ISIC. Some of the organizations currently using the ISIC are the UN and its specialized agencies, the International Monetary Fund, the World Bank, and other international bodies.

4.2.2 *Statistical Classification of Economic Activities in the European Community*

Often regarded as the European version of ISIC, Statistical Classification of Economic Activities in the European Community (NACE) is the classification of economic activities that correspond to ISIC at the European level. Similar to ISIC, NACE classification is organized according to economic activity. NACE is composed of four levels—namely, sections (identified by alphabetical letters A through U), divisions (identified by two-digit numerical codes 01 through 99), groups (identified by three-digit numerical codes 01.1 through 99.0), and classes (identified by four-digit numerical codes 01.11 through 99.00).

4.2.3 *Australian and New Zealand Standard Industrial Classification*

The Australian and New Zealand Standard Industrial Classification (ANZSIC) was jointly developed by the Australian Bureau of Statistics and Statistics New Zealand in 1993 to facilitate the comparison of industry statistics of the two countries and comparisons with the rest of the world. International comparability was achieved by aligning ANZSIC with the international standards used by ISIC. ANZSIC has a structure comprising five levels—namely, divisions (the broadest level), subdivisions, groups, classes, and at the most granular level, subclasses (New Zealand only).

4.2.4 North American Industry Classification System

Jointly developed by the United States, Canada, and Mexico, the North American Industry Classification System (NAICS) replaced the Standard Industrial Classification (SIC) system in 1997. NAICS distinguishes between establishments and enterprises. NAICS classifies establishments into industries according to the primary business activity of the establishment. In the NAICS system, an *establishment* is defined as “a single physical location where business is conducted or where services or industrial operations are performed” (e.g., factory, store, hotel, movie theater, farm, office). An *enterprise* may consist of more than one location performing the same or different types of economic activities. Each establishment of that enterprise is assigned a NAICS code on the basis of its own primary business activity.⁴

NAICS uses a two-digit through six-digit code to structure its categories into five levels of detail. The greater the number of digits in the code, the more narrowly defined the category. The five levels of categories, from broadest to narrowest, are sector (signified by the first two digits of the code), subsector (third digit of the code), industry group (fourth digit), NAICS industry (fifth digit), and national industry (sixth digit). The five-digit code is the level of greatest amount of comparability among countries; a six-digit code provides for more country-specific detail.

Although differences exist, the structures of ISIC, NACE, ANZSIC, and NAICS are similar enough that many of the categories from each of the different classification systems are compatible with one another. The US Census Bureau has published tables showing how the various categories of the classification systems relate to one another.⁵

4.3 Strengths and Weaknesses of Current Systems

Unlike commercial classification systems, most government systems do not disclose information about a specific business or company, so an analyst cannot know all of the constituents of a particular category. For example, in the United States, federal law prohibits the Census Bureau from disclosing individual company activities, so, their NAICS and SIC codes are unknown.

Most government and commercial classification systems are reviewed and, if necessary, updated from time to time. Generally, commercial classification systems are adjusted more frequently than government classification systems, which may be updated only every five years or so. NAICS, for example, is reviewed for potential revisions every five years.

Government classification systems generally do not distinguish between small and large businesses, between for-profit and not-for-profit organizations, or between public and private companies. Many commercial classification systems have the ability to distinguish between large and small companies by virtue of association with a particular equity index, and these systems include only for-profit and publicly traded organizations.

Another limitation of current systems is that the narrowest classification unit assigned to a company generally cannot be assumed to be its peer group for the purposes of detailed fundamental comparisons or valuation. A **peer group** is a group of companies engaged in similar business activities whose economics and valuation are influenced by closely related factors. Comparisons of a company in relation to a well-defined peer group can provide valuable insights into the company's performance and its relative valuation.

⁴ For more information, see www.census.gov/eos/www/naics/faqs/faqs.html#q2.

⁵ For more information, see www.census.gov/eos/www/naics/concordances/concordances.html.

4.4 Constructing a Peer Group

The construction of a peer group is a subjective process; the result often differs significantly from even the most narrowly defined categories given by the commercial classification systems. However, commercial classification systems do provide a starting point for the construction of a relevant peer group because, by using such systems, an analyst can quickly discover the public companies operating in the chosen industry.

In fact, one approach to constructing a peer group is to start by identifying other companies operating in the same industry. Analysts who subscribe to one or more of the commercial classification systems that were discussed in Section 4.1 can quickly generate a list of other companies in the industry in which the company operates according to that particular service provider's definition of the industry. An analyst can then investigate the business activities of these companies and make adjustments as necessary to ensure that the businesses truly are comparable. The following lists of suggested steps and questions are given as practical aids to analysts in identifying peer companies.

Steps in constructing a preliminary list of peer companies

- Examine commercial classification systems, if available to the analyst. These systems often provide a useful starting point for identifying companies operating in the same industry.
- Review the subject company's annual report for a discussion of the competitive environment. Companies frequently cite specific competitors.
- Review competitors' annual reports to identify other potential comparable companies.
- Review industry trade publications to identify comparable companies.
- Confirm that each comparable company derives a significant portion of its revenue and operating profit from a business activity similar to the primary business of the subject company.

Questions that may improve the list of peer companies

- What proportion of revenue and operating profit is derived from business activities similar to those of the subject company? In general, a higher percentage results in a more meaningful comparison.
- Does a potential peer company face a demand environment similar to that of the subject company? For example, a comparison of growth rates, margins, and valuations may be of limited value when comparing companies that are exposed to different stages of the business cycle. (As mentioned, such differences may be the result of conducting business in geographically different markets.)
- Does a potential company have a finance subsidiary? Some companies operate a finance division to facilitate the sale of their products (e.g., Caterpillar Inc. and John Deere). To make a meaningful comparison of companies, the analyst should make adjustments to the financial statements to lessen the impact that the finance subsidiaries have on the various financial metrics being compared.

Example 4 illustrates the process of identifying a peer group of companies and shows some of the practical hurdles to determining a peer group.

EXAMPLE 4**An Analyst Researches the Peer Group of Brink's Home Security**

Suppose that an analyst needs to identify the peer group of companies for Brink's Home Security for use in the valuation section of a company report. Brink's is a provider of electronic security and alarm monitoring services primarily to residential customers in North America. The analyst starts by looking at Brink's industry classification according to GICS. As previously discussed, the most narrowly defined category that GICS uses is the sub-industry level, and in June 2009, Brink's was in the GICS sub-industry called Specialized Consumer Services, together with the companies listed here:

GICS Sector: Consumer Discretionary

GICS Industry Group: Consumer Services

GICS Industry: Diversified Consumer Services

GICS Sub-Industry: Specialized Consumer Services

Brink's Home Security Holdings, Inc.

Coinstar, Inc.

H&R Block, Inc.

Hillenbrand Inc.

Mathews International Corporation

Pre-Paid Legal Services Inc.

Regis Corporation

Service Corporation International

Sotheby's

After looking over the list of companies, the analyst quickly realizes that some adjustments need to be made to the list to end up with a peer group of companies that are comparable to Brink's. For example, Brink's has little in common with the hair care salon services of Regis or, for that matter, with the funeral service operations of Hillenbrand, Mathews, or Service Corporation. In fact, after careful inspection, the analyst concludes that none of the other companies included in the GICS sub-industry are particularly good "comparables" for Brink's.

Next, the analyst reviews the latest annual report for Brink's to find management statements concerning its competitors. On p. 6 of Brink's 2008 10-K, in the section titled "Industry Trends and Competition," is a list of other companies with comparable business activities: "We believe our primary competitors with national scope include: ADT Security Services, Inc., (part of Tyco International, Ltd.), Protection One, Inc., Monitronics International, Inc. and Stanley Security Solutions, (part of The Stanley Works)." The analyst notes that Protection One on this list is another publicly held security services company and a likely candidate for inclusion in the peer group for Brink's. Monitronics International is privately held, so the analyst excludes it from the peer group; up-to-date, detailed fundamental data are not available for it.

The analyst discovers that ADT represents a significant portion of Tyco International's sales and profits (more than 40 percent of 2008 sales and profits); therefore, an argument could be made to include Tyco International in the peer group. The analyst might also consider including Stanley Works in the peer group because that company derived roughly a third of its revenue and close to half of its operating profit from its security division in 2008. Just as the analyst reviewed

the latest annual report for Brink's to identify additional potential comparables, the analyst should also scan the annual reports of the other companies listed to see if other comparables exist. In checking these three companies' annual reports, the analyst finds that Protection One is the only one that cites specific competitors; Tyco and Stanley Works discuss competition only broadly.

After scanning all of the annual reports, the analyst finds no additional comparables.

The analyst decides that Brink's peer group consists of ADT Security Services, Protection One, and Stanley Security Solutions but also decides to give extra weight to the comparison with Protection One in valuation because the comparison with Protection One has the fewest complicating factors.

In connection with this discussion, note that International Financial Reporting Standards and US GAAP require companies to disclose financial information about their operating segments (subject to certain qualifications). Such disclosures provide analysts with operational and financial information that can be helpful in peer-group determination.

Although companies with limited lines of business may neatly be categorized into a single peer group, companies with multiple divisions may be included in more than one category. For example, Belgium-based Anheuser-Busch InBev primarily makes and sells various brands of beer. It can easily be grouped together with other beverage companies (the theme park business constitutes a relatively immaterial part of total revenue). However, US-based Hewlett-Packard Company (HP), a global provider of technology and software solutions, might reasonably be included in more than one category. Investors interested in the personal computer (PC) industry, for example, would probably include HP in their peer group, but investors constructing a peer group of providers of information technology services would probably include HP in that group also.

In summary, analysts must distinguish between a company's industry—as defined by one or more of the various classification systems—and its peer group. A company's peer group should consist of companies with similar business activities whose economic activity depends on similar drivers of demand and similar factors related to cost structure and access to financial capital. In practice, these necessities frequently result in a smaller group (even a different group) of companies than the most narrowly defined categories used by the common commercial classification systems. Example 5 illustrates various aspects of developing and using peer groups.

EXAMPLE 5

The Semiconductor Industry: Business-Cycle Sensitivity and Peer-Group Determination

The GICS semiconductor and semiconductor equipment industry (453010) has two sub-industries—the semiconductor equipment sub-industry (45301010) and the semiconductors sub-industry (45301020). Members of the semiconductor equipment sub-industry include equipment suppliers such as Lam Research Corporation and ASML Holdings NV; the semiconductors sub-industry includes integrated circuit manufacturers Intel Corporation and Taiwan Semiconductor Manufacturing Company Ltd.

Lam Research is a leading supplier of wafer fabrication equipment and services to the world's semiconductor industry. Lam also offers wafer-cleaning equipment that is used after many of the individual steps required to manufacture a finished wafer. Often, the technical advances that Lam introduces in

its wafer-etching and wafer-cleaning products are also available as upgrades to its installed base. This benefit provides customers with a cost-effective way to extend the performance and capabilities of their existing wafer fabrication lines.

ASML describes itself as the world's leading provider of lithography systems (etching and printing on wafers) for the semiconductor industry. ASML manufactures complex machines that are critical to the production of integrated circuits or microchips. ASML designs, develops, integrates, markets, and services these advanced systems, which help chip makers reduce the size and increase the functionality of microchips and consumer electronic equipment. The machines are costly and thus represent a substantial capital investment for a purchaser.

Based on revenue, Intel is the world's largest semiconductor chip maker and has the dominant share of microprocessors for the personal computer market. Intel has made significant investments in research and development (R&D) to introduce and produce new chips for new applications.

Established in 1987, Taiwan Semiconductor Manufacturing (TSM) is one of the world's largest dedicated semiconductor foundries (semiconductor fabrication plants that execute the designs of other companies). TSM describes itself as offering cutting-edge process technologies, pioneering design services, manufacturing efficiency, and product quality. The company's revenues represent about 50 percent of the dedicated foundry segment in the semiconductor industry.

The questions that follow take the perspective of early 2009, when many economies around the world were in a recession. Based only on the information given, answer the following questions:

- 1 If the weak economy of early 2009 were to recover within the next 12–18 months, which of the two sub-industries of the semiconductor and semiconductor equipment industry would most likely be the first to experience a positive improvement in business?
- 2 Explain whether Intel and TSM should be considered members of the same peer group.
- 3 Explain whether Lam Research and ASML should be considered members of the same peer group.

Solution to 1:

In the most likely scenario, improvement in the business of the equipment makers (Lam and ASML) would lag that of semiconductor companies (Intel and TSM). Because of the weak economy of early 2009, excess manufacturing capacity should be available to meet increased demand for integrated circuits in the near term without additional equipment, which is a major capital investment. When semiconductor manufacturers believe the longer-term outlook has improved, they should begin to place orders for additional equipment.

Solution to 2:

Intel and TSM are not likely to be considered comparable members of the same peer group because they have different sets of customers and different business models. Intel designs and produces its own proprietary semiconductors for direct sale to customers, such as personal computer makers. TSM provides design and production services to a diverse group of integrated circuit suppliers that generally do not have their own in-house manufacturing capabilities. In mid-2009, Standard & Poor's did not group Intel and TSM in the same peer group; Intel was in the Semiconductors, Logic, Larger Companies group and TSM was in the Semiconductors, Foundry Services group.

Solution to 3:

Both Lam Research and ASML are leading companies that design and manufacture equipment to produce semiconductor chips. The companies are comparable because they both depend on the same economic factors that drive demand for their products. Their major customers are the semiconductor chip companies. In mid-2009, Standard & Poor's grouped both companies in the same peer group—Semiconductor Equipment, Larger Front End.

The next section addresses fundamental skills in describing and analyzing an industry.

5**DESCRIBING AND ANALYZING AN INDUSTRY**

In their work, analysts study statistical relationships between industry trends and a range of economic and business variables. Analysts use economic, industry, and business publications and internet resources as sources of information. They also seek information from industry associations, from the individual subject companies they are analyzing, and from these companies' competitors, suppliers, and customers. An analyst with a superior knowledge about an industry's characteristics, conditions, and trends has a competitive edge in evaluating the investment merits of the companies in the industry.

Analysts attempt to develop practical, reliable industry forecasts by using various approaches to forecasting. They often estimate a range of projections for a variable reflecting various possible scenarios. Analysts may seek to compare their projections with the projections of other analysts, partly to study differences in methodology and conclusions but also to identify differences between their forecasts and consensus forecasts. These latter differences are extremely important for uncovering investment opportunities because, to be the basis for superior investment performance, the forecast for a value-relevant variable must be both correct and sufficiently different from the consensus reflected in the price of publicly traded securities. Note that, although some information on analysts' revenue projections, EPS estimates, and ratings are accessible in some markets, analysts may have limited access to details about other analysts' work and assumptions because such details are kept confidential for competitive reasons.

Investment managers and analysts also examine industry performance 1) in relation to other industries to identify industries with superior/inferior returns and 2) over time to determine the degree of consistency, stability, and risk in the returns in the industry over time. The objective of this analysis is to identify industries that offer the highest potential for investment returns on a risk-adjusted basis. The investment time horizon can be either long or short, as is the case for a rotation strategy in which portfolios are rotated into the industry groups that are expected to benefit from the next stage in the business cycle.

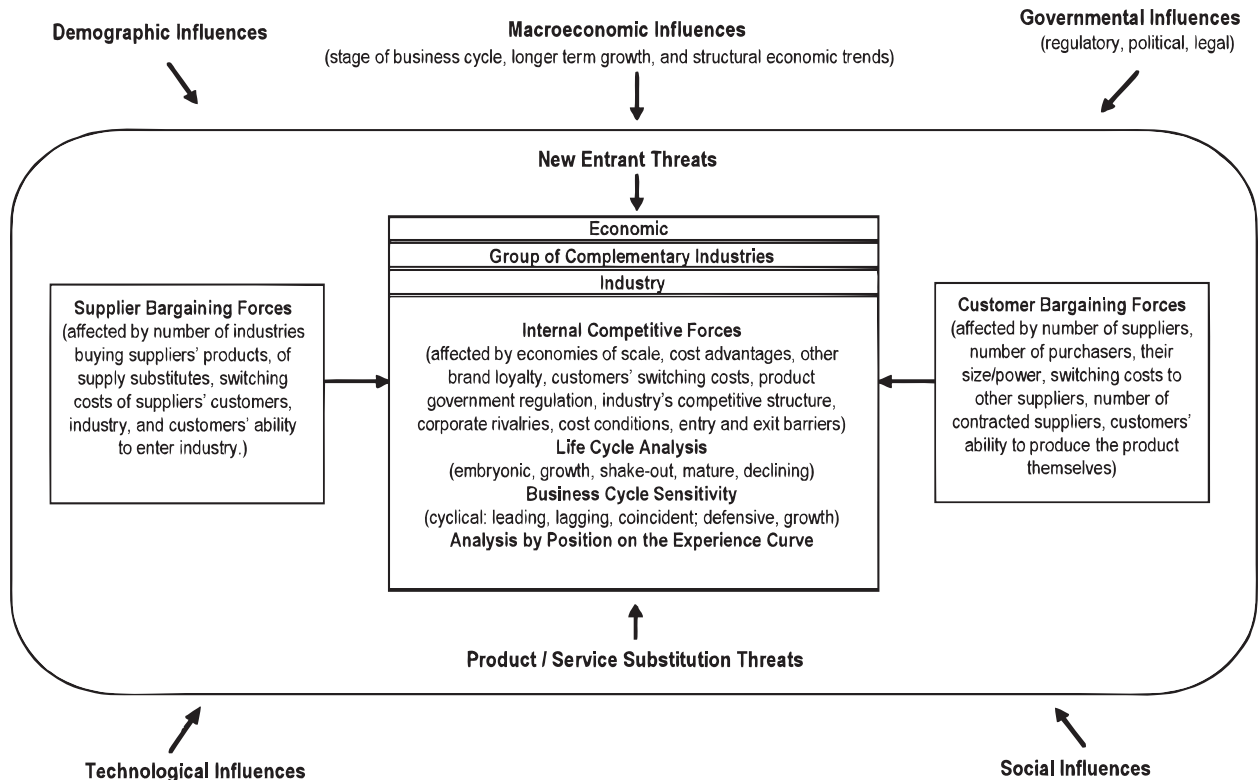
Often, analysts examine **strategic groups** (groups sharing distinct business models or catering to specific market segments in an industry) almost as separate industries within industries. Criteria for selecting a strategic group might include the complexity of the product or service, its mode of delivery, and "barriers to entry." For example, charter airlines form a strategic group among "airlines" that is quite distinct from scheduled airlines; full-service hotels form a strategic group that is separate from limited-service or budget hotels; and companies that sell proprietary drugs (which are

protected by patents) would be in a separate group from companies that sell generic drugs (which do not have patent protection) partly because the two groups pursue different strategies and use different business models.

Analysts often consider and classify industries according to industry **life-cycle stage**. The analyst determines whether an industry is in the embryonic, growth, shake-out, mature, or declining stage of the industry life cycle. During the stages of the life cycle of a product or industry, its position on the experience curve is often analyzed. The **experience curve** shows direct cost per unit of good or service produced or delivered as a typically declining function of cumulative output. The curve declines 1) because as the utilization of capital equipment increases, fixed costs (administration, overhead, advertising, etc.) are spread over a larger number of units of production, 2) because of improvements in labor efficiency and management of facilities, and 3) because of advances in production methods and product design. Examples exist in virtually all industries, but the experience curve is especially important in industries with high fixed overhead costs and/or repetitive production operations, such as electronics and appliance, automobile, and aircraft manufacturing. The industry life cycle is discussed in depth later in this reading.

Exhibit 2 provides a framework designed to help analysts check that they have considered the range of forces that may affect the evolution of an industry. It shows, at the macro level, macroeconomic, demographic, governmental, social, and technological influences affecting the industry. It then depicts how an industry is affected by the forces driving industry competition (threat of new entrants, substitution threats, customer and supplier bargaining forces), the competitive forces in the industry, life-cycle issues, business-cycle considerations, and position of the industry on the experience curve. Exhibit 2 summarizes and brings together pictorially topics and concepts discussed in this section.

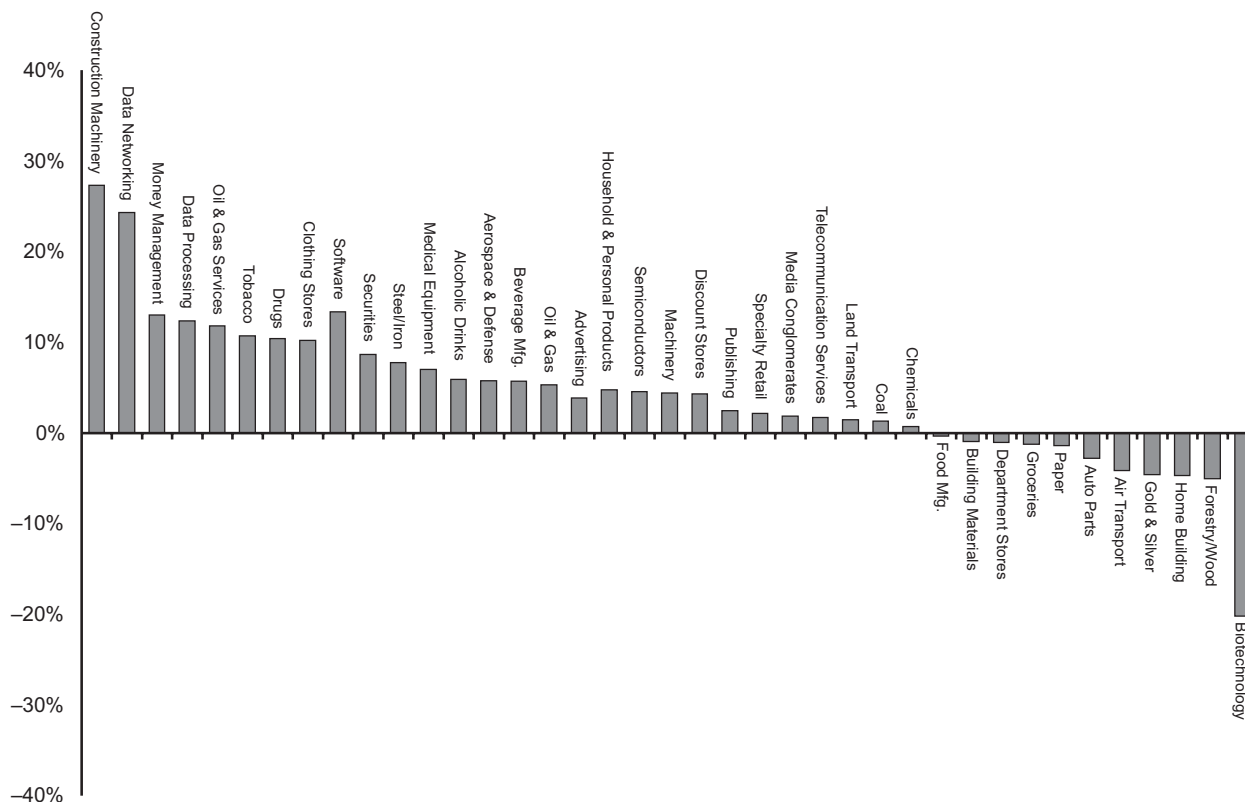
Exhibit 2 A Framework for Industry Analysis



5.1 Principles of Strategic Analysis

When analyzing an industry, the analyst must recognize that the economic fundamentals can vary markedly among industries. Some industries are highly competitive, with most players struggling to earn adequate returns on capital, whereas other industries have attractive characteristics that allow almost all industry participants to generate healthy profits. Exhibit 3 makes this point graphically. It shows the average spread between return on invested capital (ROIC) and the cost of capital for 54 industries from 2006 through 2008.⁶ Industries earning positive spreads appear to be earning **economic profits**, in the sense that they are achieving returns on investment above the opportunity cost of funds. This result should create value—that is, should increase the wealth of the investors, who are the providers of capital. In contrast, industries that are realizing negative spreads are destroying value. As can be seen, some industries struggled to generate positive economic returns (i.e., to create value) even during this period of synchronized global growth, while other industries did very well in earning such returns.

Exhibit 3 Some Industries Create Value, Others Destroy It: Average Industry ROIC Minus WACC, 2006–2008



Source: Morningstar, Inc.

Differing competitive environments are often tied to the structural attributes of an industry, which is one reason industry analysis is a vital complement to company analysis. To thoroughly analyze a company itself, the analyst needs to understand

⁶ Return on invested capital can be defined as net operating profit after tax divided by the sum of common and preferred equity, long-term debt, and minority interests.

the context in which the company operates. Needless to say, industry analysis must be forward looking. Many of the industries in Exhibit 3 were very different 10 or 15 years ago and would have been placed differently with respect to value creation; many will look very different 10 or 15 years from now. As analysts examine the competitive structure of an industry, they should always be thinking about what attributes could change in the future.

Analysis of the competitive environment with an emphasis on the implications of the environment for corporate strategy is known as **strategic analysis**. Michael Porter's "five forces" framework is the classic starting point for strategic analysis;⁷ although it was originally aimed more at internal managers of businesses than at external security analysts, the framework is useful to both.⁸

Porter (2008) identified the following five determinants of the intensity of competition in an industry:

- The **threat of entry** to the industry, which depends on barriers to entry, or how difficult it would be for new competitors to enter the industry. Industries that are easy to enter will generally be more competitive than industries with high barriers to entry.
- The **power of suppliers**, which may be able to raise prices or restrict the supply of key inputs to a company. For example, workers at a heavily unionized company may have greater bargaining power as suppliers of labor than workers at a comparable non-unionized company. Suppliers of scarce or limited parts or elements often possess significant pricing power.
- The **power of buyers**, which can affect the intensity of competition by exerting influence on suppliers regarding prices (and possibly other factors such as product quality). For example, auto parts companies generally sell to a small number of auto manufacturers, which allows those customers, the auto manufacturers, to be tough negotiators when it comes to setting prices.
- The **threat of substitutes**, which can negatively affect demand if customers choose other ways of satisfying their needs. For example, consumers may trade down from premium beers to discount brands during recessions. Low-priced brands may be close substitutes for premium brands, which, when consumer budgets are constrained, reduces the ability of premium brands to maintain or increase prices. Substitutes do not have to be similar but can satisfy a need with a very different product.
- The **rivalry among existing competitors**, which is a function of the industry's competitive structure. Industries that are fragmented among many small competitors, have high fixed costs, provide undifferentiated (commodity-like) products, or have high exit barriers usually experience more intense rivalry than industries without these characteristics.

Although all five of these forces merit attention, the first and fifth are particularly recommended as a first focus for analysis. The two factors are broadly applicable because all companies have competitors and must worry about new entrants to their industries. Also, in investigating these two forces, the analyst may become familiar in detail with an industry's incumbents and potential entrants, and all these companies' relative competitive prospects.

⁷ See Porter (2008).

⁸ What aspects of a company are important may be different for internal and external analysts. Whether information about competitive positions is accurately reflected in market prices, for example, would be relatively more important to external analysts.

Addressing the following questions should help the analyst evaluate the threat of new entrants and the level of competition in an industry and thereby provide an effective base for describing and analyzing the industry:

- What are the barriers to entry? Is it difficult or easy for a new competitor to challenge incumbents? Relatively high (low) barriers to entry imply that the threat of new entrants is relatively low (high).
- How concentrated is the industry? Do a small number of companies control a relatively large share of the market, or does the industry have many players, each with a small market share?
- What are capacity levels? That is, based on existing investment, how much of the goods or services can be delivered in a given time frame? Does the industry suffer chronic over- or under-capacity, or do supply and demand tend to come into balance reasonably quickly in the industry?
- How stable are market shares? Do companies tend to rapidly gain or lose share, or is the industry stable?
- Where is the industry in its life cycle? Does it have meaningful growth prospects, or is demand stagnant/declining?
- How important is price to the customer's purchase decision?

The answers to these questions are elements of any thorough industry analysis.

5.1.1 *Barriers to Entry*

When a company is earning economic profits, the chances that it will be able to sustain them through time are greater, all else being equal, if the industry has high barriers to entry. The ease with which new competitors can challenge incumbents is often an important factor in determining the competitive landscape of an industry. If new competitors can easily enter the industry, the industry is likely to be highly competitive because high returns on invested capital will quickly be competed away by new entrants eager to grab their share of economic profits. As a result, industries with low barriers to entry often have little pricing power because price increases that raise companies' returns on capital will eventually attract new competitors to the industry.

If incumbents are protected by barriers to entry, the threat of new entrants is lower, and incumbents may enjoy a more benign competitive environment. Often, these barriers to entry can lead to greater pricing power, because potential competitors would find it difficult to enter the industry and undercut incumbents' prices. Of course, high barriers to entry do not guarantee pricing power, because incumbents may compete fiercely among each other.

A classic example of an industry with low barriers to entry is restaurants. Anyone with a modest amount of capital and some culinary skill can open a restaurant, and popular restaurants quickly attract competition. As a result, the industry is very competitive, and many restaurants fail in their first few years of business.

At the other end of the spectrum of barriers to entry are the global credit card networks such as MasterCard and Visa, both of which often post operating margins greater than 30 percent. Such high profits should attract competition, but the barriers to entry are extremely high. Capital costs are one hurdle; also, building a massive data-processing network would not be cheap. Imagine for a moment that a venture capitalist was willing to fund the construction of a network that would replicate the physical infrastructure of the incumbents—the new card-processing company would have to convince millions of consumers to use the new card and convince thousands of merchants to accept the card. Consumers would not want to use a card that merchants did not accept, and merchants would not want to accept a card that few

consumers carried. This problem would be difficult to solve, which is why the barriers to entering this industry are quite high. The barriers help preserve the profitability of the incumbent players.

One way of understanding barriers to entry is simply by thinking about what it would take for new players to compete in an industry. How much money would they need to spend? What kind of intellectual capital would they need to acquire? How easy would it be to attract enough customers to become successful?

Another way to investigate the issue is by looking at historical data. How often have new companies tried to enter the industry? Is a list of industry participants today markedly different from what it was five or ten years ago? These kinds of data can be very helpful because the information is based on the real-world experience of many entrepreneurs and businesses making capital allocation decisions. If an industry has seen a flood of new entrants over the past several years, odds are good that the barriers are low; conversely, if the same ten companies that dominate an industry today dominated it ten years ago, barriers to entry are probably fairly high.

Do not confuse barriers to *entry*, however, with barriers to *success*. In some industries, entering may be easy but becoming successful enough to threaten the incumbents might be quite hard. For example, in the United States, starting a mutual fund requires a capital investment of perhaps US\$150,000—not much of a barrier to an industry with historically high returns on capital. But once one has started a mutual fund, how does the company gather assets? Financial intermediaries are unlikely to sell a mutual fund with no track record. So, the fund may need to incur operational losses for a few years until it has established a good track record. Even with a track record, the fund will be competing in a crowded marketplace against companies with massive advertising budgets and well-paid salespeople. In this industry, good distribution can be even more valuable than good performance. So, although entering the asset management industry may be relatively easy, succeeding is another thing altogether.

Also, high barriers to entry do not automatically lead to good pricing power and attractive industry economics. Consider the cases of auto making, commercial aircraft manufacturing, and refining industries. Starting up a new company in any of these industries would be tremendously difficult. Aside from the massive capital costs, there would be significant other barriers to entry: A new automaker would need manufacturing expertise and a dealer network; an aircraft manufacturer would need a tremendous amount of intellectual capital; and a refiner would need process expertise and regulatory approvals.

Yet, all of these industries are quite competitive, with limited or nonexistent pricing power, and few industry participants reliably generate returns on capital in excess of their costs of capital. Among the reasons for this seeming paradox of high barriers to entry plus poor pricing power, two stand out.

- First, price is a large component of the customer's purchase decision when buying from these companies in these industries. In some cases, the reason is that the companies (e.g., refiners) sell a commodity; in some cases, the product is expensive but has easily available substitutes. For example, most airlines choose between purchasing Boeing and Airbus airplanes not on brand but on cost-related considerations: Airlines need to transport people and cargo at the lowest possible cost per mile because the airlines have limited ability to pass along higher costs to customers. That consideration makes price a huge component of their purchase decision. Most airlines purchase whichever plane is the

most cost efficient at any point in time. The result is that the Boeing Company and Airbus have limited ability to price their planes at a level that generates good returns on invested capital.⁹

- Second, these industries all have high barriers to exit, which means they are prone to overcapacity. A refinery or automobile plant cannot be used for anything other than, respectively, refining oil or producing cars, which makes it hard to redeploy the capital elsewhere and exit the industry if conditions become unprofitable. This barrier gives owners of these types of assets a strong incentive to attempt to keep those loss-making plants operating, which, of course, prolongs conditions of overcapacity.

A final consideration when analyzing barriers to entry is that they can change over time. Years ago, a potential new entrant to the semiconductor industry would have needed the capital and expertise to build a “fab” (the industry term for a semiconductor manufacturing plant). Chip fabs are hugely expensive and technologically complex, which deterred potential new entrants. Starting in the mid-1990s, however, the outsourcing of chip making to contract semiconductor manufacturers became feasible, which meant that designers of chips could challenge the manufacturers without the need to build their own plants. As a result, the industry became much more fragmented through the late 1990s and into the first decade of the 21st century.

So, in general, high barriers to entry can lead to better pricing and less competitive industry conditions, but important exceptions are worth bearing in mind.

5.1.2 Industry Concentration

Much like industries with barriers to entry, industries that are concentrated among a relatively small number of players often experience relatively less price competition. Again, there are important exceptions, so the reader should not automatically assume that concentrated industries always have pricing power or that fragmented industries do not.

An analysis of industry concentration should start with market share: What percentage of the market does each of the largest players have, and how large are those shares relative to each other and relative to the remainder of the market? Often, the *relative* market shares of competitors matter as much as their *absolute* market shares.

For example, the global market for long-haul commercial aircraft is extremely concentrated—only Boeing and Airbus manufacture these types of planes. The two companies have roughly similar market shares, however, and control essentially the entire market. Because neither enjoys a scale advantage relative to its competitor and because any business gained by one is lost by the other, competition tends to be fierce.

This situation contrasts with the market for home improvement products in the United States, which is dominated by Home Depot and Lowe’s. These two companies have 11 percent and 7 percent market share, respectively, which doesn’t sound very large. However, the next largest competitor has only 2 percent of the market, and most market participants are tiny with miniscule market shares. Both Home Depot and Lowe’s have historically posted high returns on invested capital, in part because they could profitably grow by targeting smaller competitors rather than engaging in fierce competition with each other.

Fragmented industries tend to be highly price competitive for several reasons. First, the large number of companies makes coordination difficult because there are too many competitors for each industry member to monitor effectively. Second, each player has such a small piece of the market that even a small gain in market share can

⁹ Neither company’s commercial aircraft segment has reliably generated returns on capital comfortably in excess of the company’s cost of capital for many years. Boeing’s returns on capital have been respectable overall, but the company’s military segment is much more profitable than its commercial aircraft segment.

make a meaningful difference to its fortunes, which increases the incentive of each company to undercut prices and attempt to steal share. Finally, the large number of players encourages industry members to think of themselves individualistically rather than as members of a larger group, which can lead to fierce competitive behavior.

In concentrated industries, in contrast, each player can relatively easily keep track of what its competitors are doing, which makes tacit coordination much more feasible. Also, leading industry members are large, which means they have more to lose—and proportionately less to gain—by destructive price behavior. Large companies are also more tied to the fortunes of the industry as a whole, making them more likely to consider the long-run effects of a price war on overall industry economics.

As with barriers to entry, the level of industry concentration is a guideline rather than a hard and fast rule when thinking about the level of pricing power in an industry. For example, Exhibit 4 shows a rough classification of industries compiled by Morningstar after asking its equity analysts whether industries were characterized by strong or weak pricing power and whether those industries were concentrated or fragmented. Examples of companies in industries are included in parentheses. In the upper right quadrant (“concentrated with weak pricing power”), those industries that are capital intensive and sell commodity-like products are shown in boldface.

Exhibit 4 A Two-Factor Analysis of Industries

Concentrated with Strong Pricing Power

Soft Drinks (Coca-Cola Co., PepsiCo)
 Orthopedic Devices (Zimmer, Smith & Nephew)
 Laboratory Services (Quest Diagnostics, LabCorp)
 Biotech (Amgen, Genzyme)
 Pharmaceuticals (Merck & Co., Novartis)
 Microprocessors (Intel, Advanced Micro Devices)
 Industrial Gases (Praxair, Air Products and Chemicals)
 Enterprise Storage (EMC)
 Enterprise Networking (Cisco Systems)
 Integrated Shippers (UPS, FedEx, DHL International)
 US Railroads (Burlington Northern)
 US Defense (General Dynamics)
 Heavy Construction Equipment (Caterpillar, Komatsu)
 Seaborne Iron Ore (Vale, Rio Tinto)
 Confections (Cadbury, Mars/Wrigley)
 Credit Card Networks (MasterCard, Visa)
 Custody & Asset Administration (BNY Mellon, State Street)
 Investment Banking /Mergers &Acquisitions (Goldman Sachs, UBS)
 Futures Exchanges (Chicago Mercantile Exchange, Intercontinental Exchange)
 Canadian Banking (RBC Bank, TD Bank)
 Australian Banking
 Tobacco (Philip Morris, British American Tobacco)
 Alcoholic Beverages (Diageo, Pernod Ricard)

Concentrated with Weak Pricing Power

Commercial Aircraft (Boeing, Airbus)
Automobiles (General Motors, Toyota, Daimler)
Memory (DRAM & Flash Product, Samsung, Hynix)
Semiconductor Equipment (Applied Materials, Tokyo Electron)
 Generic Drugs (Teva Pharmaceutical Industries, Sandoz)
 Consumer Electronics (Sony Electronics, Koninklijke Philips Electronics)
 PCs (Dell, Acer, Lenovo)
 Printers/Office Machines (HP, Lexmark)
Refiners (Valero, Marathon Oil)
Major Integrated Oil (BP, ExxonMobil)
 Equity Exchanges (NYSE, Deutsche Börse Group)

(continued)

Exhibit 4 (Continued)**Fragmented with Strong Pricing Power**

Asset Management (BlackRock, Fidelity)
 For-Profit Education (Apollo Group, DeVry University)
 Analog Chips (Texas Instruments, STMicroelectronics)
 Industrial Distribution (Fastenal, W.W. Grainger)
 Propane Distribution (AmeriGas, Ferrellgas)
 Private Banking (Northern Trust, Credit Suisse)

Fragmented with Weak Pricing Power

Consumer Packaged Goods (Procter & Gamble, Unilever)
 Retail (Walmart, Carrefour Group)
 Marine Transportation (Maersk Line, Frontline)
 Solar Panels
 Homebuilding
 Airlines
 Mining (metals)
 Chemicals
 Engineering & Construction
 Metal Service Centers
 Commercial Printing
 Restaurants
 Radio Broadcasting
 Oil Services
 Life Insurance
 Reinsurance
 Exploration & Production (E&P)
 US Banking
 Specialty Finance
 Property/Casualty Insurance
 Household and Personal Products

Source: Morningstar Equity Research.

The industries in the top right quadrant defy the “concentration is good for pricing” guideline. We discussed the commercial aircraft manufacturing example in the preceding section, but many other industries are dominated by a small number of players yet have difficult competitive environments and limited pricing power.

When we examine these concentrated-yet-competitive industries, a clear theme emerges: Many industries in this quadrant (the boldface ones) are highly capital intensive and sell commodity-like products. As we saw in the discussion of exit barriers, capital-intensive industries can be prone to overcapacity, which mitigates the benefits of industry concentration. Also, if the industry sells a commodity product that is difficult—or impossible—to differentiate, the incentive to compete on price increases because a lower price frequently results in greater market share.¹⁰

The computer memory market is a perfect example of a concentrated-yet-competitive industry. Dynamic random access memory (DRAM) is widely used in PCs, and the industry is concentrated, with about three-quarters of global market share held by the top four companies. The industry is also highly capital intensive; a new fab costs upwards of US\$3 billion. But one DRAM chip is much like another, and players in this market have a huge economic incentive to capture market share because of the large scale economies involved in running a semiconductor manufacturing plant. As a result, price competition tends to be extremely fierce and industry concentration is essentially a moot point in the face of these other competitive dynamics.

¹⁰ There are a small number of concentrated and rational commodity industries, such as potash (a type of fertilizer) and seaborne iron ore. What sets these industries apart is that they are *hyper*-concentrated: The top two players control 60 percent of the global potash market, and the top three players control two-thirds of the global market for seaborne iron ore.

The global soft drink market is also highly concentrated, of course, but capital requirements are relatively low and industry participants sell a differentiated product. Pepsi and Coca-Cola do not own their own bottling facilities, so a drop in market share does not affect them as much as it would a memory-chip maker. Moreover, although memory-chip companies are assured of gaining market share and increasing sales volumes by cutting prices, a sizable proportion of consumers would not switch from Pepsi to Coke (or vice-versa) even if one cost much less than the other.

Generally, industry concentration is a good indicator that an industry has pricing power and rational competition, but other factors may override the importance of concentration. Industry fragmentation is a much stronger signal that the industry is competitive with limited pricing power. Notice how few fragmented industries are in the bottom left quadrant in Exhibit 4.

The industry characteristics discussed here are guidelines meant to steer the analyst in a particular direction, not rules that should cause the analyst to ignore other relevant analytical factors.

5.1.3 Industry Capacity

The effect on pricing of industry capacity (the maximum amount of a good or service that can be supplied in a given time period) is clear: Tight, or limited, capacity gives participants more pricing power as demand for the product or service exceeds supply, whereas overcapacity leads to price cutting and a very competitive environment as excess supply chases demand. An analyst should think about not only current capacity conditions but future changes in capacity levels. How quickly can companies in the industry adjust to fluctuations in demand? How flexible is the industry in bringing supply and demand into balance? What will be the effect of that process on industry pricing power or on industry margins?

Generally, capacity is fixed in the short term and variable in the long term because capacity can be increased—e.g., new factories can be built—if time is sufficient. What is considered “sufficient” time—and, therefore, the duration of the short term, in which capacity cannot be increased—may vary dramatically among industries. Sometimes, adding capacity takes years to complete, as in the case of the construction of a “greenfield” (new) manufacturing plant for pharmaceuticals or for paper, which is complex and subject to regulatory requirements (e.g., relating to the plant’s waste). In other situations, capacity may be added or reduced relatively quickly, as is the case with service industries, such as advertising. In cyclical markets, such as commercial paper and paperboard, capacity conditions can change rapidly. Strong demand in the early stages of an economic recovery can result in the addition of supply. Given the long lead times to build manufacturing plants, new supply may reach the market just as demand slows, rapidly changing capacity conditions from tight to loose. Such considerations underscore the importance of forecasting long-term industry demand in evaluating industry investments in capacity.

One of the more dramatic examples of this process in recent years occurred in the market for maritime dry-bulk shipping during the commodity boom of 2003–2008. Rapid industrialization in China—combined with synchronized global economic growth—increased demand for cargo ships that could transport iron ore, coal, grains, and other high-volume/low-value commodities. Given that the supply of cargo ships could not be increased very quickly (because ships take time to build and large commercial shipyards typically have multi-year backlogs), shippers naturally raised prices to take advantage of the tight global cargo capacity. In fact, the price to charter the largest type of dry-bulk vessel—a Capesize-class ship too big to fit through the Panama Canal—increased more than fivefold in only a year, from approximately US\$30,000 per day in early 2006 to almost US\$160,000 per day by late 2007.

As one would expect, orders for new dry-bulk carriers skyrocketed during this period as the industry scrambled to add shipping capacity to take advantage of seemingly insatiable demand and very favorable pricing. In early 2006, the number of dry-bulk carriers on order from shipyards represented approximately 20 percent of the worldwide fleet. By late 2008, the number of bulk ships on order represented almost 70 percent of the global bulk fleet.¹¹ Of course, the prospect of this additional capacity, combined with a dramatic slump in aggregate global demand for commodities, caused a massive decline in shipping rates. Capesize charter rates plummeted from the US\$160,000/day high of late 2007 to a low of under US\$10,000 per day just one year later.

In this example, the conditions of tight supply that were driving strong dry-bulk pricing were quite clear, and these high prices drove attractive returns on capital—and share-price performance—for dry-bulk-shipping companies. However, the careful analyst would have looked at future additions to supply in the form of new ships on order and would have forecasted that the tight supply conditions were not sustainable and thus that the pricing power of dry-bulk shippers was short-lived. These predictions are, in fact, precisely what occurred.

Note that capacity need not be physical. After Hurricane Katrina caused enormous damage to the southeastern United States in 2005, reinsurance rates quickly spiked as customers sought to increase their financial protection from future hurricanes. However, these high reinsurance rates enticed a flood of fresh capital into the reinsurance market, and a number of new reinsurance companies were founded, which brought rates back down.

Generally, if new capacity is physical—for example, an auto manufacturing plant or a massive cargo ship—it will take longer for new capacity to come on line to meet an increase in demand, resulting in a longer period of tight conditions. Unfortunately, capacity additions frequently overshoot long-run demand, and because physical capital is often hard to re-deploy, industries reliant on physical capacity may get stuck in conditions of excess capacity and diminished pricing power for an extended period.

Financial and human capital, in contrast, can be quickly shifted to new uses. In the reinsurance example, for instance, financial capital was quick to enter the reinsurance market and take advantage of tight capacity conditions, but if too much capital had entered the market, some portion of that capital could easily have left to seek higher returns elsewhere. Money can be used for many things, but massive bulk cargo vessels are not useful for much more than transporting heavy goods across oceans.

5.1.4 Market Share Stability

Examining the stability of industry market shares over time is similar to thinking about barriers to entry and the frequency with which new players enter an industry. In fact, barriers to entry and the frequency of new product introductions, together with such factors as product differentiation—all affect market shares. Stable market shares typically indicate less competitive industries; unstable market shares often indicate highly competitive industries that have limited pricing power.

A comparison of two non-commodity markets in the health care sector illustrates this point. Over the past decade, the orthopedic device industry—mainly artificial hips and knees—has been a relatively stable global oligopoly. As Exhibit 5 indicates, five companies control about 95 percent of the worldwide market, and the market shares of those companies have changed by only small amounts over the past several years.

¹¹ From “RS Platou Monthly” (November 2008): www.platou.com/loadfileservlet/loadfiledb?id=1228989312093PUBLISHER&key=1228989321421.

Exhibit 5 Market Share Stability in Global Orthopedic Devices (Entries Are Market Share)

Worldwide Knee/Hip Market Share	2005 (%)	2006 (%)	2007 (%)	2008 (%)
Zimmer	27.9	27.5	27.2	26.0
Johnson & Johnson (DePuy)	24.0	23.9	22.9	22.9
Stryker	21.6	21.4	21.5	21.3
Smith & Nephew	9.4	9.8	11.5	12.6
Biomet	11.5	10.9	10.9	11.3

Source: Company reports and Morningstar estimates.

In contrast, although the US market for stents—small metal mesh devices used to prop open blocked arteries—is also controlled by a handful of companies, market shares recently have gone from being very stable to being marked by rapid change. Johnson & Johnson, which together with Boston Scientific, dominated the US stent market for many years, went from having about half the market in 2007 to having only 15 percent in early 2009; over the same period, Abbott Laboratories increased its market share from zero to 25 percent. The reason for this change was the launch of new stents by Abbott and Medtronic, which took market share from Johnson & Johnson and Boston Scientific's established stents.

Orthopedic device companies have experienced more stability in their market shares for two reasons. First, artificial hips and knees are complicated to implant, and each manufacturer's products are slightly different. As a result, orthopedic surgeons become proficient at using one or several companies' devices and may be reluctant to incur the time and cost of learning how to implant products from a competing company. The second reason is the relatively slow pace of innovation in the orthopedic device industry, which tends to be evolutionary rather than revolutionary, making the benefit of switching among product lines relatively low. In addition, the number of orthopedic device companies has remained fairly static over many years.

In contrast, the US stent market has experienced rapid shifts in market shares because of several factors. First, interventional cardiologists seem to be more open than orthopedic surgeons to implanting stents from different manufacturers; that tendency may reflect lower switching costs for stents relative to orthopedic devices. More importantly, however, the pace of innovation in the stent market has become quite rapid, giving cardiologists added incentive to switch to newer stents, with potentially better patient outcomes, as they became available.

Low switching costs plus a relatively high benefit from switching caused market shares to change quickly in the stent market. High switching costs for orthopedic devices coupled with slow innovation resulted in a lower benefit from switching, which led to greater market share stability in orthopedic devices.

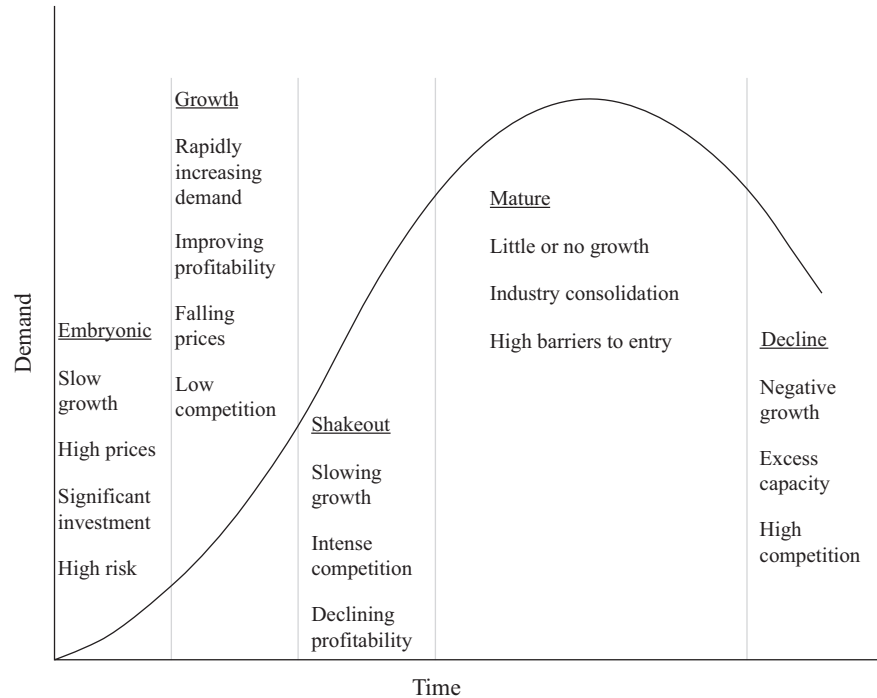
5.1.5 Industry Life Cycle

An industry's life-cycle position often has a large impact on its competitive dynamics, making this position an important component of the strategic analysis of an industry.

5.1.5.1 Description of an Industry Life-Cycle Model Industries, like individual companies, tend to evolve over time, and usually experience significant changes in the rate of growth and levels of profitability along the way. Just as an investment in an individual company requires careful monitoring, industry analysis is a continuous process to identify changes that may be occurring or be likely to occur. A useful framework for

analyzing the evolution of an industry is an industry life-cycle model, which identifies the sequential stages that an industry typically goes through. The five stages of an industry life-cycle model are embryonic, growth, shakeout, mature, and decline. Each stage is characterized by different opportunities and threats.¹² Exhibit 6 shows the model as a curve illustrating the level and growth rate of demand at each stage.

Exhibit 6 An Industry Life-Cycle Model



Source: Based on Figure 2.4 in Hill and Jones (2008).

Embryonic An embryonic industry is one that is just beginning to develop. For example, in the 1960s, the global semiconductor industry was in the embryonic stage (it has grown to become a US\$249 billion industry in 2008)¹³ and in the early 1980s, the global mobile phone industry was in the embryonic stage (it now produces and sells more than a billion handsets annually). Characteristics of the embryonic stage include slow growth and high prices because customers tend to be unfamiliar with the industry's product and volumes are not yet sufficient to achieve meaningful economies of scale. Increasing product awareness and developing distribution channels are key strategic initiatives of companies during this stage. Substantial investment is generally required, and the risk of failure is high. A majority of start-up companies do not succeed.

Growth A growth industry tends to be characterized by rapidly increasing demand, improving profitability, falling prices, and relatively low competition among companies in the industry. Demand is fueled by new customers entering the market, and prices fall as economies of scale are achieved and as distribution channels develop. The threat

¹² Much of the discussion that follows regarding life-cycle stages owes a debt to the discussion in Hill and Jones (2008).

¹³ Semiconductor Industry Association Factsheet: www.sia-online.org/cs/industry_resources/industry_fact_sheet.

of new competitors entering the industry is usually highest during the growth stage, when barriers to entry are relatively low. Competition tends to be relatively limited, however, because rapidly expanding demand provides companies with an opportunity to grow without needing to capture market share from competitors. Industry profitability improves as volumes rise and economies of scale are attained.

Shakeout The shakeout stage is usually characterized by slowing growth, intense competition, and declining profitability. During the shakeout stage, demand approaches market saturation levels because few new customers are left to enter the market. Competition is intense as growth becomes increasingly dependent on market share gains. Excess industry capacity begins to develop as the rate at which companies continue to invest exceeds the overall growth of industry demand. In an effort to boost volumes to fill excess capacity, companies often cut prices, so industry profitability begins to decline. During the shakeout stage, companies increasingly focus on reducing their cost structure (restructuring) and building brand loyalty. Marginal companies may fail or merge with others.

Mature Characteristics of a mature industry include little or no growth, industry consolidation, and relatively high barriers to entry. Industry growth tends to be limited to replacement demand and population expansion because the market at this stage is completely saturated. As a result of the shakeout, mature industries often consolidate and become oligopolies. The surviving companies tend to have brand loyalty and relatively efficient cost structures, both of which are significant barriers to entry. During periods of stable demand, companies in mature industries tend to recognize their interdependence and try to avoid price wars. Periodic price wars do occur, however, most notably during periods of declining demand (such as during economic downturns). Companies with superior products or services are likely to gain market share and experience above-industry-average growth and profitability.

Decline During the decline stage, industry growth turns negative, excess capacity develops, and competition increases. Industry demand at this stage may decline for a variety of reasons, including technological substitution (for example, the newspaper industry has been declining for years as more people turn to the internet and 24-hour cable news networks for information), social changes, and global competition (for example, low-cost foreign manufacturers pushing the US textile industry into decline). As demand falls, excess capacity in the industry forms and companies respond by cutting prices, which often leads to price wars. The weaker companies often exit the industry at this point, merge, or redeploy capital into different products and services.

When overall demand for an industry's products or services is declining, the opportunity for individual companies to earn above-average returns on invested capital tends to be less than when demand is stable or increasing, because of price cutting and higher per-unit costs as production is cut back. Example 6 deals with industry life cycles.

EXAMPLE 6

Industry Growth and Company Growth

US shipments of prefabricated housing (precut, modular housing) declined sharply in 1999–2004 as the abundant availability of low-cost mortgage financing and other factors led individuals to purchase site-built housing. In 1998, however, some forecasts had projected that prefabricated housing would gain market share at the expense of site-built housing. What would have been the probable impact on market share of a typical company in the prefabricated housing industry under the 1998 optimistic forecast and under actual conditions?

Solution:

Increasing industry demand as forecasted in 1998 would have given companies in the prefabricated housing industry the opportunity to grow without taking market share from one another, mitigating the intensity of competition in this industry. Under actual industry circumstances of declining demand and a shrinking market, in contrast, revenue growth for a prefabricated housing company could happen only through market share gains from its competitors.

5.1.5.2 Using an Industry Life-Cycle Model In general, new industries tend to be more competitive (with lots of players entering and exiting) than mature industries, which often have stable competitive environments and players that are more interested in protecting what they have than in gaining lots of market share. However, as industries move from maturity to decline, competitive pressures may increase again as industry participants perceive a zero-sum environment and fight over pieces of an ever-shrinking pie.

An important point for the analyst to think about is whether a company is “acting its age” relative to where its industry sits in the life cycle. Companies in growth industries should be building customer loyalty as they introduce consumers to new products or services, building scale, and reinvesting heavily in their operations to capitalize on increasing demand. They are probably not focusing strongly on internal efficiency. These companies are rather like young adults, who are reinvesting their human and financial capital with the goal of becoming more successful in life. Growth companies typically reinvest their cash flows in new products and product platforms rather than returning cash flows to shareholders because these companies still have many opportunities to deploy their capital to make positive returns. Although this analogy to the human life cycle is a helpful way to think about the model, the analyst should also be aware that the analogy is not exact in detail. Long-established companies sometimes find a way to accelerate growth through innovation or by expansion into new markets. Humans cannot really move back to the days of youth. So, a more precise formulation may be “acting its stage” rather than acting its age.

Companies in mature industries are likely to be pursuing replacement demand rather than new buyers and are probably focused on extending successful product lines rather than introducing revolutionary new products. They are also probably focusing on cost rationalization and efficiency gains rather than on taking lots of market share. Importantly, these companies have fewer growth opportunities than in the previous stage, and thus more limited avenues for profitably reinvesting capital, but they often have strong cash flows. Given their strong cash flows and relatively limited reinvestment opportunities, such companies should be, according to a common perspective, returning capital to shareholders via share repurchases or dividends. These companies are rather like middle-aged adults who are harvesting the fruits of their success earlier in life.

What can be a concern is a middle-aged company acting like a young, growth company and pouring capital into projects with low ROIC prospects in an effort to pursue size for its own sake. Many companies have a difficult time managing the transition from growth to maturity, and their returns on capital—and shareholder returns—may suffer until management decides to allocate capital in a manner more appropriate to the company’s life-cycle stage.

For example, three large US retailers—Walmart, Home Depot, and McDonalds—all went through the transition to maturity in the first decade of the 21st century. At various times between 2002 and 2005, these companies realized that their size and industry dominance meant that the days of double-digit growth that was driven largely by new store (restaurant) openings were a thing of the past. All three reallocated capital away from opening new stores to other areas—namely, increased inventory efficiency (Home

Depot), improving the customer experience (McDonalds), and increased dividends and share repurchases (all three). As a result, returns on capital for each improved, as did shareholder returns.

5.1.5.3 Limitations of Industry Life-Cycle Analysis Although models can provide a useful framework for thinking about an industry, the evolution of an industry does not always follow a predictable pattern. Various external factors may significantly affect the shape of the pattern, causing some stages to be longer or shorter than expected and, in certain cases, causing some stages to be skipped altogether.

Technological changes may cause an industry to experience an abrupt shift from growth to decline, thus skipping the shakeout and mature stages. For example, transistors replaced vacuum tubes in the 1960s at a time when the vacuum tube industry was still in its growth stage; word processors replaced typewriters in the 1980s; and today the movie rental industry is experiencing rapid change as consumers increasingly turn to on-demand services such as downloading movies from the internet or through their cable providers.

Regulatory changes can also have a profound impact on the structure of an industry. A prime example is the deregulation of the US telecommunications industry in the 1990s, which transformed a monopolistic industry into an intensely competitive one. AT&T was broken into regional service providers, and many new long distance telephone service entrants, such as Sprint, emerged. The result was a wider range of product and service offerings and lower consumer prices. Changes in government reimbursement rates for health care products and services may (and have) affected the profitability of companies in the health care industry globally.

Social changes also have the ability to affect the profile of an industry. The casual dining industry has benefited over the past 30 years from the increase in the number of dual-income families, who often have more income but less time to cook meals to eat at home.

Demographics also play an important role. As the Baby Boom generation ages, for instance, industry demand for health care services is likely to increase.

Thus, life-cycle models tend to be most useful for analyzing industries during periods of relative stability. They are less practical when the industry may be experiencing rapid change because of external or other special circumstances.

Another limiting factor of models is that not all companies in an industry experience similar performances. The key objective for the analyst is to identify the potential winners while avoiding potential losers. Highly profitable companies can exist in competitive industries with below-average profitability—and vice versa. For example, Nokia has historically been able to use its scale to generate levels of profitability that are well above average despite operating in a highly competitive industry. In contrast, despite the historically above-average growth and profitability of the software industry, countless examples exist of software companies that failed to ever generate a profit and eventually went out of business.

EXAMPLE 7

Industry Life Cycle

- 1 An industry experiencing slow growth and high prices is best characterized as being in the:
 - A mature stage.
 - B shakeout stage.
 - C embryonic stage.

- 2 Which of the following statements about the industry life-cycle model is *least* accurate?
- A The model is more appropriately used during a period of rapid change than during a period of relative stability.
 - B External factors may cause some stages of the model to be longer or shorter than expected, and in certain cases, a stage may be skipped entirely.
 - C Not all companies in an industry will experience similar performance, and very profitable companies can exist in an industry with below-average profitability.

Solution to 1:

C is correct. Both slow growth and high prices are associated with the embryonic stage. High price is not a characteristic of the mature or shakeout stages.

Solution to 2:

A is correct. The statement is the least accurate. The model is best used during a period of relative stability rather than during a period of rapid change.

5.1.6 Price Competition

A highly useful tool for analyzing an industry is attempting to think like a customer of the industry. Whatever factor most influences customer purchase decisions is likely to also be the focus of competitive rivalry in the industry. In general, industries for which price is a large factor in customer purchase decisions tend to be more competitive than industries in which customers value other attributes more highly.

Although this depiction may sound like the description of a commodity industry versus a non-commodity industry, it is, in fact, a bit more subtle. Commercial aircraft and passenger cars are certainly more differentiated than lumps of coal or gallons of gasoline, but price nonetheless weighs heavily in the purchase decisions of buyers of aircraft and cars, because fairly good substitutes are easily available. If Airbus charges too much for an A320, an airline can buy a Boeing 737.¹⁴ If BMW's price for a four-door luxury sedan rises too high, customers can switch to a Mercedes or other luxury brand with similar features. Similar switching can be expected as a result of a unilateral price increase in the case of most industries in the "Weak Pricing Power" column of Exhibit 4.

Contrast these industries with asset management, one of a handful of industries that is both fragmented and characterized by strong pricing power. Despite the well-documented impact of fees on future investment returns, the vast majority of asset management customers do not make decisions on the basis of price. Instead, asset management customers focus on historical returns, which allow this highly fragmented industry to maintain strong pricing power. Granted, the index fund arena is very price competitive, because any index fund is a perfect substitute for another fund tracking the same benchmark. But the active management segment of the industry has generally been able to price its products in an implicitly cooperative fashion that enables most players to generate consistently high returns on capital, presumably because price is not uppermost in the mind of a prospective mutual fund investor.

¹⁴ A small amount of "path dependence" characterizes the airline industry, in that an airline with a large fleet of a particular Airbus model will be marginally more likely to stick with that model for a new purchase than it will be to buy a Boeing, but the aircraft manufacturers' ability to exploit this likelihood is minimal.

Returning to a more capital-intensive industry, consider heavy-equipment manufacturers, such as Caterpillar, Deere, and Komatsu. A large wheel loader or combine harvester requires a large capital outlay, so price certainly plays a part in the buyers' decisions. However, other factors are important enough to customers to allow these companies a small amount of pricing power. Construction equipment is typically used as a complement to other gear on a large project, which means that downtime for repairs increases costs because, for example, hourly laborers must wait for a bulldozer to be fixed. Broken equipment is also expensive for agricultural users, who may have only a few days in which to harvest a season's crop. Because of the importance to users of their products' reliability and their large service networks—which are important “differentiators” or factors bestowing a competitive advantage—Caterpillar, Komatsu, and Deere have historically been able to price their equipment at levels that have generated solid returns on invested capital.

5.1.7 Industry Comparison

To illustrate how these elements might be applied, Exhibit 7 uses the factors discussed in this reading to examine three industries.

Exhibit 7 Elements of a Strategic Analysis for Three Industries			
	Branded Pharmaceuticals	Oil Services	Confections/Candy
Major Companies	Pfizer, Novartis, Merck, GlaxoSmithKline	Schlumberger, Baker Hughes, Halliburton	Cadbury, Hershey, Mars/Wrigley, Nestle
Barriers to Entry	<i>Very High:</i> Substantial financial and intellectual capital required to compete effectively. A potential new entrant would need to create a sizable R&D operation, a global distribution network, and large-scale manufacturing capacity.	<i>Medium:</i> Technological expertise is required, but high level of innovation allows niche companies to enter the industry and compete in specific areas.	<i>Very High:</i> Low financial or technological hurdles, but new players would lack the established brands that drive consumer purchase decisions.
Level of Concentration	<i>Concentrated:</i> A small number of companies control the bulk of the global market for branded drugs. Recent mergers have increased level of concentration.	<i>Fragmented:</i> Although only a small number of companies provide a full range of services, many smaller players compete effectively in specific areas. Service arms of national oil companies may control significant market share in their own countries, and some product lines are concentrated in the mature US market.	<i>Very Concentrated:</i> Top four companies have a large proportion of global market share. Recent mergers have increased level of concentration.
Impact of Industry Capacity	<i>NA:</i> Pharmaceutical pricing is primarily determined by patent protection and regulatory issues, including government approvals of drugs and of manufacturing facilities. Manufacturing capacity is of little importance.	<i>Medium/High:</i> Demand can fluctuate quickly depending on commodity prices, and industry players often find themselves with too few (or too many) employees on the payroll.	<i>NA:</i> Pricing is driven primarily by brand strength. Manufacturing capacity has little effect.

(continued)

Exhibit 7 (Continued)

	Branded Pharmaceuticals	Oil Services	Confections/Candy
Industry Stability	<i>Stable:</i> The branded pharmaceutical market is dominated by major companies and consolidation via mega-mergers. Market shares shift quickly, however, as new drugs are approved and gain acceptance or lose patent protection.	<i>Unstable:</i> Market shares may shift frequently depending on technology offerings and demand levels.	<i>Very Stable:</i> Market shares change glacially.
Life Cycle	<i>Mature:</i> Overall demand does not change greatly from year to year.	<i>Mature:</i> Demand does fluctuate with energy prices, but normalized revenue growth is only mid-single digits.	<i>Very Mature:</i> Growth is driven by population trends and pricing.
Price Competition	<i>Low/Medium:</i> In the United States, price is a minimal factor because of consumer- and provider-driven, de-regulated health care system. Price is a larger part of the decision process in single-payer systems, where efficacy hurdles are higher.	<i>High:</i> Price is a major factor in purchasers' decisions. Some companies have modest pricing power because of a wide range of services or best-in-class technology, but primary customers (major oil companies) can usually substitute with in-house services if prices are too high. Also, innovation tends to diffuse quickly throughout the industry.	<i>Low:</i> A lack of private-label competition keeps pricing stable among established players, and brand/familiarity plays a much larger role in consumer purchase decisions than price.
Demographic Influences	<i>Positive:</i> Populations of developed markets are aging, which slightly increases demand.	<i>NA</i>	<i>NA</i>
Government & Regulatory Influences	<i>Very High:</i> All drugs must be approved for sale by national safety regulators. Patent regimes may differ among countries. Also, health care is heavily regulated in most countries.	<i>Medium:</i> Regulatory frameworks can affect energy demand at the margin. Also, governments play an important role in allocating exploration opportunities to E&P companies, which can indirectly affect the amount of work flowing down to service companies.	<i>Low:</i> Industry is not regulated, but childhood obesity concerns in developed markets are a low-level potential threat. Also, high-growth emerging markets may block entry of established players into their markets, possibly limiting growth.
Social Influences	<i>NA</i>	<i>NA</i>	<i>NA</i>

Exhibit 7 (Continued)

	Branded Pharmaceuticals	Oil Services	Confections/Candy
Technological Influences	<i>Medium/High:</i> Biologic (large-molecule) drugs are pushing new therapeutic boundaries, and many large pharmaceutical companies have a relatively small presence in biotech.	<i>Medium/High:</i> Industry is reasonably innovative, and players must re-invest in R&D to remain competitive. Temporary competitive advantages are possible via commercialization of new processes or exploitation of accumulated expertise.	<i>Very Low:</i> Innovation does not play a major role in the industry.
Growth vs. Defensive vs. Cyclical	<i>Defensive:</i> Demand for most health care services does not fluctuate with the economic cycle, but demand is not strong enough to be considered “growth.”	<i>Cyclical:</i> Demand is highly variable and depends on oil prices, exploration budgets, and the economic cycle.	<i>Defensive:</i> Demand for candy and gum is extremely stable.

Note: “NA” in this exhibit stands for “not applicable.”

Example 8 reviews some of the information presented in Exhibit 7.

EXAMPLE 8**External Influences**

- Which of the following industries is *most* affected by government regulation?
 - Oil services.
 - Pharmaceuticals.
 - Confections and candy.
- Which of the following industries is *least* affected by technological innovation?
 - Oil services.
 - Pharmaceuticals.
 - Confections and candy.
- Which of the following statements about industry characteristics is *least* accurate?
 - Manufacturing capacity has little effect on pricing in the confections/candy industry.
 - The branded pharmaceutical industry is considered to be defensive rather than a growth industry.
 - With respect to the worldwide market, the oil services industry has a high level of concentration with a limited number of service providers.

Solution to 1:

B is correct. Exhibit 7 states that the pharmaceutical industry has high amount of government and regulatory influences.

Solution to 2:

C is correct. Exhibit 7 states that innovation does not play a large role in the candy industry.

Solution to 3:

C is correct; it is a false statement. From a worldwide perspective, the industry is considered fragmented. Although a small number of companies provide the full range of services, competition by many smaller players occurs in niche areas. In addition, national oil service companies control significant market share in their home countries.

5.2 External Influences on Industry Growth, Profitability, and Risk

External factors affecting an industry's growth include macroeconomic, technological, demographic, governmental, and social influences.

5.2.1 Macroeconomic Influences

Trends in overall economic activity generally have significant effects on the demand for an industry's products or services. These trends can be cyclical (i.e., related to the changes in economic activity caused by the business cycle) or structural (i.e., related to enduring changes in the composition or magnitude of economic activity). Among the economic variables that usually affect an industry's revenues and profits are the following:

- gross domestic product or the measure of the value of goods and services produced by an economy, either in current or constant currency (inflation-adjusted) terms;
- interest rates, which represent the cost of debt to consumers and businesses and are important ingredients in financial institutions' revenues and costs;
- the availability of credit, which affects business and consumer spending and financial solvency; and
- inflation, which reflects the changes in prices of goods and services and influences costs, interest rates, and consumer and business confidence.

5.2.2 Technological Influences

New technologies create new or improved products that can radically change an industry and can also change how other industries that use the products conduct their operations.

The computer hardware industry provides one of the best examples of how technological change can affect industries. The 1958 invention of the microchip (also known as an "integrated circuit," which is effectively a computer etched on a sliver of silicon) enabled the computer hardware industry to eventually create a new market of personal computing for the general public and radically extended the use of computers in business, government, and educational institutions.

Moore's law states that the number of transistors that can be inexpensively placed on an integrated circuit doubles approximately every two years. Several other measures of digital technology have improved at exponential rates related to Moore's law, including the size, cost, density and speed of components. As a result of these trends, the computer hardware industry encroached upon and, in time, came to dominate the fields of hardware for word processing and many forms of electronic communication and home entertainment. The computing industry's integrated circuit innovation

increased economies of scale and erected large barriers to new entrants because the capital costs of innovation and production became very high. Intel capitalized on both factors which allowed it to garner an industry market leadership position and to become the dominant supplier of the PC industry's highest value component (the microprocessor). Thus, Intel became dominant because of its cost advantage, brand power, and access to capital.

Along the way, the computer hardware industry was supported and greatly assisted by the complementary industries of computer software and telecommunications (particularly in regard to development of the internet); also important were other industries—entertainment (television, movies, games), retailing, and the print media. Ever more powerful integrated circuits and advances in wireless technology, as well as the convergence of media, which the internet and new wireless technology have facilitated, continue to reshape the uses and the roles of PC hardware in business and personal life. In the middle of the 20th century, few people in the world would have imagined they would ever have any use for a home computer. Today, the estimate is that about 1.6 billion people, or almost a quarter of the world's population, have access to connected computing. For the United States, the estimate is at least 76 percent of the population; it is much less in emerging and underdeveloped countries. More than 4 billion mobile cellular telephone subscriptions exist in the world today,¹⁵ and the advances of mobile telephony appear poised to increase this figure dramatically in the years ahead as mobile phone and computer hardware technologies merge to provide new hand-held computing and communication capabilities.

Another example of the effects of technology on an industry is the impact of digital imaging technology on the photographic film industry. Digital imaging uses an electronic image sensor to record an image as electronic data rather than as chemical changes on film. This difference allows a much greater degree of image processing and transmission than in film photography. Since their invention in 1981, digital cameras have become extremely popular and now widely outsell traditional film cameras (although many professional photographers continue to use film for esthetic reasons for certain applications). Digital cameras include such features as video and audio recording. The effects of this major change in photographic technology have caused film and camera manufacturers—including Kodak, Fujifilm, Nikon Corporation, and Pentax Imaging Company—to completely restructure and redesign their products to adapt to the new technology's appeal to consumers.

5.2.3 Demographic Influences

Changes in population size, in the distributions of age and gender, and in other demographic characteristics may have significant effects on economic growth and on the amounts and types of goods and services consumed.

The effects of demographics on industries are well exemplified by the impact of the post-World War II Baby Boom in North America on demand for goods and services. Born between 1946 and 1964, this bulge of 76 million people in the North American population has influenced the composition of numerous products and services it needs in its passage from the cradle through childhood, adolescence, early adulthood, middle age, and into retirement. The teenage pop culture of the late 1950s and 1960s and all the products (records, movies, clothes, and fashions associated with it), the surge in demand for housing in the 1970s and 1980s, and the increasing demand for retirement-oriented investment products in the 1990s and early 2000s are all examples of the range of industries affected by this demographic bulge working its way through age categories of the population.

15 See www.itu.int/newsroom/press_releases/2009/39.html.

Another example of the effects of demographics on industries is the impact of an aging population in Japan, which has one of the highest percentages of elderly residents (21 percent over the age of 65) and a very low birth rate. Japan's ministry of health estimates that by 2055, the percentage of the population over 65 will rise to 40 percent and the total population will fall by 25 percent. These demographic changes are expected by some observers to have negative effects on the overall economy because, essentially, they imply a declining workforce. However, some sectors of the economy stand to benefit from these trends—for example, the health care industry.

EXAMPLE 9

The Post–World War II Baby Boom and Its Effects on the US Housing Industry

In the United States, Canada, and Australia, the end of World War II marked the beginning of a sustained period of elevated birth rates per thousand in the population. This rise reflected the relief from the hardships of the Great Depression of the 1930s and WWII, increased levels of immigration (immigrants tend to be younger and hence more fertile than average) and a protracted period of postwar economic prosperity. The rate of births in the United States rose from 18.7 per thousand in 1935 and 20.4 per thousand in 1945 to 24.1 per thousand in 1950 and a peak of more than 25.0 per thousand in 1955–1957. Twenty years later, when the babies born during the period 1946–1964 entered adulthood, the housing industry experienced a surge in demand that led to a period of high sales of new homes. The rate of new housing starts in this period rose from 20.1 per thousand of population in 1966 to a peak of 35.3 per thousand in 1972 and remained elevated, except during the economic recession of 1974–1975, until the end of the 1970s.

Another demographic effect on the housing industry arising from the post-WWII Baby Boom came from the children of the Baby Boom generation (the so-called Echo Boomers). The Echo Boomers started to enter their most fertile years in the late 1970s and caused an increase in the number of births per thousand from a post-WWII low of 14.8 in 1975 to a peak of 16.7 in 1990. The Echo Boomers did not have as large an effect on housing demand 20 years later as their parents had had, but there was still a significant increase in new housing starts from 13.7 per thousand in 1995 to a high of 18.8 per thousand in 2005; easily available mortgage financing contributed to the increase.

5.2.4 Governmental Influences

Governmental influence on industries' revenues and profits is pervasive and important. In setting tax rates and rules for corporations and individuals, governments affect profits and incomes, which in turn, affect corporate and personal spending. Governments are also major purchasers of goods and services from a range of industries.

Example 10 illustrates the sudden shifts in wealth that can occur when governments step in to support or quash a securities market innovation. In the example, an **income trust** refers to a type of equity ownership vehicle established as a trust issuing ownership shares known as units. Income trusts became extremely popular among income-oriented investors in Canada in the late 1990s and early 2000s because under then-current regulation, such trusts could avoid taxation on income distributed to unit-holders (investors)—that is, avoid double taxation (once at the corporate level and once at the investor level). As Example 10 describes, the tax advantage that regulations permitted was eventually removed.

EXAMPLE 10**The Effects of Tax Increases on Income Trusts in Canada**

On 31 October 2006, in an effort to halt the rapid growth of income trust structures in the Canadian stock market, Canada's Minister of Finance James Flaherty announced that these tax-exempt flow-through entities would in the future be taxable on the income, with exemptions only for passive rent-collecting real estate investment trusts. A five year hiatus was established for existing trusts to adapt. He stated that the government needed to clamp down on trusts because too many companies were converting to the high-yield securities, primarily to save taxes. The S&P/TSX Capped Income Trust Index declined 12 percent on the day after the announcement, wiping out C\$24 billion in market value.

Often, governments exert their influence indirectly by empowering other regulatory or self-regulatory organizations (e.g., stock exchanges, medical associations, utility rate setters, and other regulatory commissions) to govern the affairs of an industry. By setting the terms of entry into various sectors, such as financial services and health care, and the rules that companies and individuals must adhere to in these fields, governments control the supply, quality, and nature of many products and services and the public's access to them. For example, in the financial industry, the acceptance of savings deposits from and the issuance of securities to the investing public are usually tightly controlled by governments and their agencies. This control is imposed through rules designed to protect investors from fraudulent operators and to ensure that investors receive adequate disclosure about the nature and risks of their investments. Another example is that medical patients in most developed countries are treated by doctors who are trained according to standards set by medical associations acting as self-regulatory organizations empowered under government laws. In addition, the medications that patients receive must be approved by government agencies. In a somewhat different vein, users of tobacco products purchase items for which the marketing and sales taxes are heavily controlled by governments in most developed countries and for which warnings to consumers about the dangers of smoking are mandated by governments. In the case of industries that supply branches of government, such as the military, public works, and law enforcement departments, government contracts directly affect the revenues and profits of the suppliers.

EXAMPLE 11**The Effects of Government Purchases on the Aerospace Industry**

The aerospace, construction, and firearms industries are prime examples of industries for which governments are major customers and whose revenues and profits are significantly—in some cases, predominantly—affected by their sales to governments. An example is the European Aeronautic Defence and Space Company (EADS), a global leader in aerospace, defense, and related services with head offices in Paris and Ottobrunn, Germany. In 2008, EADS generated revenues of €43.3 billion and employed an international workforce of about 118,000. EADS includes Airbus, a leading manufacturer of commercial aircraft; Airbus Military, providing tanker, transport, and mission aircraft; Eurocopter, the world's largest helicopter supplier; and EADS Astrium, the European leader in space programs, including Ariane and Galileo. Its Defence & Security Division is a provider of comprehensive systems solutions and makes EADS the major

partner in the Eurofighter consortium and a stakeholder in missile systems provider MBDA. On 3 March 2008, EADS shares rose 9.2 percent after the US Air Force chose its Airbus A330 over Boeing's 767 for an airborne refueling plane contract worth as much as US\$35 billion.

5.2.5 Social Influences

Societal changes involving how people work, spend their money, enjoy their leisure time, and conduct other aspects of their lives can have significant effects on the sales of various industries.

Tobacco consumption in the United Kingdom provides a good example of the effects of social influences on an industry. Although the role of government in curbing tobacco advertising, legislating health warnings on the purchases of tobacco products, and banning smoking in public places (such as restaurants, bars, public houses, and transportation vehicles) probably has been the most powerful apparent instrument of changes in tobacco consumption, the forces underlying that change have really been social in nature—namely, increasing consciousness on the part of the population of the damage to the health of tobacco users and those in their vicinity from smoking, the increasing cost to individuals and governments of the chronic illnesses caused by tobacco consumption, and the accompanying shift in public perception of smokers from socially correct to socially incorrect—even inconsiderate or reckless. As a result of these changes in society's views of smoking, cigarette consumption in the United Kingdom declined from 102.5 billion cigarettes in 1990 to less than 65.0 billion in 2009, placing downward pressure on tobacco companies' unit sales.

EXAMPLE 12

The Effects on Various Industries of More Women Entering the Workforce

In 1870, women accounted for only 15 percent of the workforce in the United States outside the home. By 1950, after two world wars and the Great Depression, this figure had risen to 30 percent (it had been even higher temporarily during WWII because of high levels of war-mandated production) and by 2008, to 48 percent. Based on economic reasoning, identify four industries that should have benefitted from the social change that saw women shift from their most frequent historical roles in Western society as full-time homemakers to becoming more frequently full-time participants in the workforce.

Solution:

Industries include the following:

- 1 The restaurant business. The restaurant business stands to benefit from an increased demand given that women, because of their work responsibilities, may not have the time and energy to prepare meals. Restaurant industry growth was actually high in this period: From accounting for only 25 percent of every food dollar in the United States in 1950, the restaurant industry today consumes more than 44 percent of every food dollar, with 45 percent of current industry revenues arising from a category of restaurant that did not exist in 1950, namely, fast food.
- 2 Manufacturers of work clothing for women.
- 3 Home and child care services.

- 4 Automobile manufacturers. Extra vehicles became necessary to transport two members of the family to work, for instance, and children to school or day care.
- 5 Housing for the aging. With increasing workforce participation by women, aged family members requiring care or supervision became increasingly unable to rely on non-working female family members to provide care in their homes.

EXAMPLE 13

The Airline Industry: A Case Study of Many Influences

The global airline industry exemplifies many of the concepts and influences we have discussed.

Life-Cycle Stage

The industry can be described as having some mature characteristics because average annual growth in global passenger traffic has remained relatively stable at 4.5 percent in the 2000s (compared with 4.7 percent in the 1990s). Some market segments in the industry, however, are still in their growth phase—notably, the markets of the Middle East and Asia, which are expected to grow at 6.5 percent compared with projected North American growth of 3.2 percent over the next 20 years.

Sensitivity to Business Cycle

The airline industry is a cyclical industry; global economic activity produces swings in revenues and, especially, profitability, because of the industry's high fixed costs and operating leverage. In 2009, for example, global passenger traffic is expected to have declined by approximately 8 percent and airlines are expected to report significant net losses—close to US\$9.0 billion, which is down from a global industry profit of US\$12.9 billion in 2007. The industry tends to respond early to upward and downward moves in economic cycles; depending on the region, air travel changes at 1.5 times to 2.0 times GDP growth. It is highly regulated, with governments and airport authorities playing a large role in allocating routes and airport slots. Government agencies and the International Airline Transport Association set rules for aircraft and flight safety. Airline customers tend to have low brand loyalty (except at the extremes of high and low prices and service); leisure travelers focus mainly on price, and business travelers focus mostly on schedules and service. Product and service differentiation at particular price points is low because aircraft, cabin configuration, and catering tend to be quite similar in most cases. For leisure travelers, the price competition is intense and is led by low-cost discount carriers, including Southwest Airlines in the United States, Ryanair in Europe, and Air Asia in Asia. For business travelers, the major scheduled airlines and a few service-quality specialists, such as Singapore Airlines, are the main contenders. Fuel costs (typically more than 25 percent of total costs and highly volatile) and labor costs (around 10 percent of total costs) have been the focus of management cost-reduction efforts. The airline industry is highly unionized, and labor strife has frequently been a source of costly disruptions to the industry. Technology has always played a major role in the airline industry, from its origins with small propeller-driven planes through the advent of the jet age to the drive for greater fuel efficiency since the oil price increases of the 1970s. Technology also poses a threat to the growth of business

air travel in the form of improved telecommunications—notably, videoconferencing and webcasting. Arguably, the airline industry has been a great force in shaping demography by permitting difficult-to-access geographical areas to be settled with large populations. At the same time, large numbers of post-WWII Baby Boomers have been a factor in generating the growth in demand for air travel in the past half-century. In recent years, social issues have started to play a role in the airline industry; carbon emissions, for example, have come under scrutiny by environmentalists and governments.

6

COMPANY ANALYSIS

Company analysis includes an analysis of the company's financial position, products and/or services, and **competitive strategy** (its plans for responding to the threats and opportunities presented by the external environment). Company analysis takes place after the analyst has gained an understanding of a company's external environment—the macroeconomic, demographic, governmental, technological, and social forces influencing the industry's competitive structure. The analyst should seek to determine whether the strategy is primarily defensive or offensive in its nature and how the company intends to implement the strategy.

Porter identifies two chief competitive strategies: a low-cost strategy (cost leadership) and a product/service differentiation strategy.

In a low-cost strategy, companies strive to become the low-cost producers and to gain market share by offering their products and services at lower prices than their competition while still making a profit margin sufficient to generate a superior rate of return based on the higher revenues achieved. Low-cost strategies may be pursued defensively to protect market positions and returns or offensively to gain market share and increase returns. Pricing also can be defensive (when the competitive environment is one of low rivalry) or aggressive (when rivalry is intense). In the case of intense rivalry, pricing may even become predatory—that is, aimed at rapidly driving competitors out of business at the expense of near-term profitability. The hope in such a strategy is that having achieved a larger market share, the company can later increase prices to generate higher returns than before. For example, the predatory strategy has been alleged by some analysts to have been followed by major airlines trying to protect lucrative routes from discount airlines. Although laws concerning anti-competitive practices often prohibit predatory pricing to gain market share, in most cases, it is difficult to accurately ascribe the costs of products or services with sufficient precision to demonstrate that predatory pricing (as opposed to intense but fair price competition) is occurring. Companies seeking to follow low-cost strategies must have tight cost controls, efficient operating and reporting systems, and appropriate managerial incentives. In addition, they must commit themselves to painstaking scrutiny of production systems and their labor forces and to low-cost designs and product distribution. They must be able to invest in productivity-improving capital equipment and to finance that investment at a low cost of capital.

In differentiation strategies, companies attempt to establish themselves as the suppliers or producers of products and services that are unique either in quality, type, or means of distribution. To be successful, their price premiums must be above their costs of differentiation and the differentiation must be appealing to customers and sustainable over time. Corporate managers who successfully pursue differentiation strategies tend to have strong market research teams to identify and match customer needs with product development and marketing. Such a strategy puts a premium on employing creative and inventive people.

6.1 Elements That Should be Covered in a Company Analysis

A thorough company analysis, particularly as presented in a research report, should

- provide an overview of the company (corporate profile), including a basic understanding of its businesses, investment activities, corporate governance, and perceived strengths and weaknesses;
- explain relevant industry characteristics;
- analyze the demand for the company's products and services;
- analyze the supply of products and services, which includes an analysis of costs;
- explain the company's pricing environment; and
- present and interpret relevant financial ratios, including comparisons over time and comparisons with competitors.

Company analysis often includes forecasting the company's financial statements, particularly when the purpose of the analysis is to use a discounted cash flow method to value the company's common equity.

Exhibit 8 provides a checklist of points to cover in a company analysis. The list may need to be adapted to serve the needs of a particular company analysis and is not exhaustive.

Exhibit 8 A Checklist for Company Analysis

Corporate Profile

- Identity of company's major products and services, current position in industry, and history
- Composition of sales
- Product life-cycle stages/experience curve effects¹⁶
- Research & development activities
- Past and planned capital expenditures
- Board structure, composition, electoral system, anti-takeover provisions, and other corporate governance issues
- Management strengths, weaknesses, compensation, turnover, and corporate culture
- Benefits, retirement plans, and their influence on shareholder value
- Labor relations
- Insider ownership levels and changes
- Legal actions and the company's state of preparedness
- Other special strengths or weaknesses

Industry Characteristics

- Stage in its life cycle
- Business-cycle sensitivity or economic characteristics

(continued)

¹⁶ A *product life cycle* relates to stages in the sales of a product. *Experience curve effects* refer to the tendency for the cost of producing a good or service to decline with cumulative output.

Exhibit 8 (Continued)

- Typical product life cycles in the industry (short and marked by technological obsolescence or long, such as pharmaceuticals protected by patents)
- Brand loyalty, customer switching costs, and intensity of competition
- Entry and exit barriers
- Industry supplier considerations (concentration of sources, ability to switch suppliers or enter suppliers' business)
- Number of companies in the industry and whether it is, as determined by market shares, fragmented or concentrated
- Opportunity to differentiate product/service and relative product/service price, cost, and quality advantages/disadvantages
- Technologies used
- Government regulation
- State and history of labor relations
- Other industry problems/opportunities

Analysis of Demand for Products/Services

- Sources of demand
- Product differentiation
- Past record, sensitivities, and correlations with social, demographic, economic, and other variables
- Outlook—short, medium, and long term, including new product and business opportunities

Analysis of Supply of Products/Services

- Sources (concentration, competition, and substitutes)
- Industry capacity outlook—short, medium, and long term
- Company's capacity and cost structure
- Import/export considerations
- Proprietary products or trademarks

Analysis of Pricing

- Past relationships among demand, supply, and prices
- Significance of raw material and labor costs and the outlook for their cost and availability
- Outlook for selling prices, demand, and profitability based on current and anticipated future trends

Financial Ratios and Measures

(in multi-year spreadsheets with historical and forecast data)

- I. **Activity ratios**, measuring how efficiently a company performs such functions as the collection of receivables and inventory management:
 - Days of sales outstanding (DSO)
 - Days of inventory on hand (DOH)

Exhibit 8 (Continued)

- Days of payables outstanding (DPO)
- II. Liquidity ratios**, measuring a company's ability to meet its short-term obligations:
 - Current ratio
 - Quick ratio
 - Cash ratio
 - Cash conversion cycle (DOH + DSO – DPO)
- III. Solvency ratios**, measuring a company's ability to meet its debt obligations. (In the following, "net debt" is the amount of interest-bearing liabilities after subtracting cash and cash equivalents.)
 - Net debt to EBITDA (earnings before interest, taxes, depreciation, and amortization)
 - Net debt to capital
 - Debt to assets
 - Debt to capital (at book and market values)
 - Financial leverage ratio (Average total assets/Average total equity)
 - Cash flow to debt
 - Interest coverage ratio
 - Off-balance-sheet liabilities and contingent liabilities
 - Non-arm's-length financial dealings
- IV. Profitability ratios**, measuring a company's ability to generate profitable sales from its resources (assets).
 - Gross profit margin
 - Operating profit margin
 - Pretax profit margin
 - Net profit margin
 - Return on invested capital or ROIC (Net operating profits after tax/Average invested capital)
 - Return on assets or ROA (Net income/Average total assets)
 - Return on equity or ROE (Net income/Average total equity)
- V. Financial Statistics and Related Considerations**, quantities and facts about a company's finances that an analyst should understand.
 - Growth rate of net sales
 - Growth rate of gross profit
 - EBITDA
 - Net income
 - Operating cash flow
 - EPS
 - Operating cash flow per share
 - Operating cash flow in relation to maintenance and total capital expenditures
 - Expected rate of return on retained cash flow
 - Debt maturities and ability of company to refinance and/or repay debt

(continued)

Exhibit 8 (Continued)

- Dividend payout ratio (Common dividends/Net income available to common shareholders)
- Off-balance-sheet liabilities and contingent liabilities
- Non-arm's-length financial dealings

To evaluate a company's performance, the key measures presented in Exhibit 8 should be compared over time and between companies (particularly peer companies). The following formula can be used to analyze how and why a company's ROE differs from that of other companies or its own ROE in other periods by tracing the differences to changes in its profit margin, the productivity of its assets, or its financial leverage:

$$\text{ROE} = (\text{Net profit margin: Net earnings/Net sales}) \times (\text{Asset turnover: Net sales/Average total assets}) \times (\text{Financial leverage: Average total assets/Average common equity})$$

The financial statements of a company over time provide numerous insights into the effects of industry conditions on its performance and the success or failure of its strategies. They also provide a framework for forecasting the company's operating performance when given the analyst's assumptions for numerous variables in the future. The financial ratios listed in Exhibit 8 are applicable to a wide range of companies and industries, but other statistics and ratios are often also used.

6.2 Spreadsheet Modeling

Spreadsheet modeling of financial statements to analyze and forecast revenues, operating and net income, and cash flows has become one of the most widely used tools in company analysis. Although spreadsheet models are a valuable tool for understanding past financial performance and forecasting future performance, the complexity of such models can at times be a problem. Because modeling requires the analyst to predict and input numerous items in financial statements, there is a risk of errors—either in assumptions made or in formulas in the model—which can compound, leading to erroneous forecasts. Yet, those forecasts may seem precise because of the sheer complexity of the model. The result is often a false sense of understanding and security on the part of those who rely on the models. To guard against this, before or after a model is completed, a “reality check” of the model is useful.

Such testing for reasonableness can be done by, first, asking what the few most important changes in income statement items are likely to be from last year to this year and the next year and, second, attempting to quantify the effects of these significant changes or “swing factors” on the bottom line. If an analyst cannot summarize in a few points what factors are realistically expected to change income from year to year and is not convinced that these assumptions are correct, then he or she does not really understand the output of the computer modeling efforts. In general, financial models should be in a format that matches the company's reporting of its financial results or supplementary disclosures or that can be accurately derived from these reports. Otherwise, there will be no natural reality check when the company issues its financial results and the analyst will not be able to compare his or her estimates with actual reported results.

SUMMARY

In this reading, we have provided an overview of industry analysis and illustrated approaches that are widely used by analysts to examine an industry.

- Company analysis and industry analysis are closely interrelated. Company and industry analysis together can provide insight into sources of industry revenue growth and competitors' market shares and thus the future of an individual company's top-line growth and bottom-line profitability.
- Industry analysis is useful for:
 - understanding a company's business and business environment;
 - identifying active equity investment opportunities;
 - formulating an industry or sector rotation strategy; and
 - portfolio performance attribution.
- The three main approaches to classifying companies are:
 - products and/or services supplied;
 - business-cycle sensitivities; and
 - statistical similarities.
- Commercial industry classification systems include:
 - Global Industry Classification Standard;
 - Russell Global Sectors; and
 - Industry Classification Benchmark.
- Governmental industry classification systems include:
 - International Standard Industrial Classification of All Economic Activities;
 - Statistical Classification of Economic Activities in the European Community;
 - Australian and New Zealand Standard Industrial Classification; and
 - North American Industry Classification System.
- A limitation of current classification systems is that the narrowest classification unit assigned to a company generally cannot be assumed to constitute its peer group for the purposes of detailed fundamental comparisons or valuation.
- A peer group is a group of companies engaged in similar business activities whose economics and valuation are influenced by closely related factors.
- Steps in constructing a preliminary list of peer companies:
 - Examine commercial classification systems if available. These systems often provide a useful starting point for identifying companies operating in the same industry.
 - Review the subject company's annual report for a discussion of the competitive environment. Companies frequently cite specific competitors.
 - Review competitors' annual reports to identify other potential comparables.
 - Review industry trade publications to identify additional peer companies.
 - Confirm that each comparable or peer company derives a significant portion of its revenue and operating profit from a similar business activity as the subject company.

- Not all industries are created equal. Some are highly competitive, with many companies struggling to earn returns in excess of their cost of capital, and other industries have attractive characteristics that enable a majority of industry participants to generate healthy profits.
- Differing competitive environments are determined by the structural attributes of the industry. For this important reason, industry analysis is a vital complement to company analysis. The analyst needs to understand the context in which a company operates to fully understand the opportunities and threats that a company faces.
- The framework for strategic analysis known as “Porter’s five forces” can provide a useful starting point. Porter maintains that the profitability of companies in an industry is determined by five forces: 1) The threat of new entrants, which in turn is determined by economies of scale, brand loyalty, absolute cost advantages, customer switching costs, and government regulation; 2) the bargaining power of suppliers, which is a function of the feasibility of product substitution, the concentration of the buyer and supplier groups, and switching costs and entry costs in each case; 3) the bargaining power of buyers, which is a function of switching costs among customers and the ability of customers to produce their own product; 4) the threat of substitutes; and 5) the intensity of rivalry among existing competitors, which in turn is a function of industry competitive structure, demand conditions, cost conditions, and the height of exit barriers.
- The concept of barriers to entry refers to the ease with which new competitors can challenge incumbents and can be an important factor in determining the competitive environment of an industry. If new competitors can easily enter the industry, the industry is likely to be highly competitive because incumbents that attempt to raise prices will be undercut by newcomers. As a result, industries with low barriers to entry tend to have low pricing power. Conversely, if incumbents are protected by barriers to entry, they may enjoy a more benign competitive environment that gives them greater pricing power over their customers because they do not have to worry about being undercut by upstarts.
- Industry concentration is often, although not always, a sign that an industry may have pricing power and rational competition. Industry fragmentation is a much stronger signal, however, that the industry is competitive and pricing power is limited.
- The effect of industry capacity on pricing is clear: Tight capacity gives participants more pricing power because demand for products or services exceeds supply; overcapacity leads to price cutting and a highly competitive environment as excess supply chases demand. The analyst should think about not only current capacity conditions but also future changes in capacity levels—how long it takes for supply and demand to come into balance and what effect that process has on industry pricing power and returns.
- Examining the market share stability of an industry over time is similar to thinking about barriers to entry and the frequency with which new players enter an industry. Stable market shares typically indicate less competitive industries, whereas unstable market shares often indicate highly competitive industries with limited pricing power.
- An industry’s position in its life cycle often has a large impact on its competitive dynamics, so it is important to keep this positioning in mind when performing strategic analysis of an industry. Industries, like individual companies, tend to evolve over time and usually experience significant changes in the rate of growth and levels of profitability along the way. Just as an investment in an

individual company requires careful monitoring, industry analysis is a continuous process that must be repeated over time to identify changes that may be occurring.

- A useful framework for analyzing the evolution of an industry is an industry life-cycle model, which identifies the sequential stages that an industry typically goes through. The five stages of an industry life cycle according to the Hill and Jones model are:
 - embryonic;
 - growth;
 - shakeout;
 - mature; and
 - decline.
- Price competition and thinking like a customer are important factors that are often overlooked when analyzing an industry. Whatever factors most influence customer purchasing decisions are also likely to be the focus of competitive rivalry in the industry. Broadly, industries for which price is a large factor in customer purchase decisions tend to be more competitive than industries in which customers value other attributes more highly.
- External influences on industry growth, profitability, and risk include:
 - technology;
 - demographics;
 - government; and
 - social factors.
- Company analysis takes place after the analyst has gained an understanding of the company's external environment and includes answering questions about how the company will respond to the threats and opportunities presented by the external environment. This intended response is the individual company's competitive strategy. The analyst should seek to determine whether the strategy is primarily defensive or offensive in its nature and how the company intends to implement it.
- Porter identifies two chief competitive strategies:
 - A low-cost strategy (cost leadership) is one in which companies strive to become the low-cost producers and to gain market share by offering their products and services at lower prices than their competition while still making a profit margin sufficient to generate a superior rate of return based on the higher revenues achieved.
 - A product/service differentiation strategy is one in which companies attempt to establish themselves as the suppliers or producers of products and services that are unique either in quality, type, or means of distribution. To be successful, the companies' price premiums must be above their costs of differentiation and the differentiation must be appealing to customers and sustainable over time.
- A checklist for company analysis includes a thorough investigation of:
 - corporate profile;
 - industry characteristics;
 - demand for products/services;
 - supply of products/services;
 - pricing; and

- financial ratios.
- Spreadsheet modeling of financial statements to analyze and forecast revenues, operating and net income, and cash flows has become one of the most widely used tools in company analysis. Spreadsheet modeling can be used to quantify the effects of the changes in certain swing factors on the various financial statements. The analyst should be aware that the output of the model will depend significantly on the assumptions that are made.

REFERENCES

- Cavaglia, Stefano, Jeffrey Diermeier, Vadim Moroz, and Sonia De Zordo. 2004. "Investing in Global Equities." *Journal of Portfolio Management*, vol. 30, no. 3:88–94.
- Hill, Charles, and Gareth Jones. 2008. "External Analysis: The Identification of Opportunities and Threats." *Strategic Management: An Integrated Approach*. Boston, MA: Houghton Mifflin Co.
- McGahan, Anita M., and Michael E. Porter. 1997. "How Much Does Industry Matter, Really?" *Strategic Management Journal*, vol. 18, no. No. S1:15–30.
- Porter, Michael E. 2008. "The Five Competitive Forces That Shape Strategy." *Harvard Business Review*, vol. 86, no. 1:78–93.

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

- 1 Which of the following is *least likely* to involve industry analysis?
 - A Sector rotation strategy.
 - B Top-down fundamental investing.
 - C Tactical asset allocation strategy.
- 2 A sector rotation strategy involves investing in a sector by:
 - A making regular investments in it.
 - B investing in a pre-selected group of sectors on a rotating basis.
 - C timing investment to take advantage of business-cycle conditions.
- 3 Which of the following information about a company would *most likely* depend on an industry analysis? The company's:
 - A dividend policy.
 - B competitive environment.
 - C trends in corporate expenses.
- 4 Which industry classification system uses a three-tier classification system?
 - A Russell Global Sectors.
 - B Industry Classification Benchmark.
 - C Global Industry Classification Standard.
- 5 In which sector would a manufacturer of personal care products be classified?
 - A Health care.
 - B Consumer staples.
 - C Consumer discretionary.
- 6 A automotive manufacturer is *most likely* classified in which of the following industry sectors?
 - A Consumer staples
 - B Industrial durables
 - C Consumer discretionary
- 7 Which of the following statements about commercial and government industry classification systems is *most* accurate?
 - A Many commercial classification systems include private for-profit companies.
 - B Both commercial and government classification systems exclude not-for-profit companies.
 - C Commercial classification systems are generally updated more frequently than government classification systems.
- 8 Which of the following is *not* a limitation of the cyclical/non-cyclical descriptive approach to classifying companies?
 - A A cyclical company may have a growth component in it.
 - B Business-cycle sensitivity is a discrete phenomenon rather than a continuous spectrum.
 - C A global company can experience economic expansion in one part of the world while experiencing recession in another part.

- 9 A cyclical company is *most likely* to:
- A have low operating leverage.
 - B sell relatively inexpensive products.
 - C experience wider-than-average fluctuations in demand.
- 10 A company that is sensitive to the business cycle would *most likely*:
- A not have growth opportunities.
 - B experience below-average fluctuation in demand.
 - C sell products that the customer can purchase at a later date if necessary.
- 11 Which of the following factors would *most likely* be a limitation of applying business-cycle analysis to global industry analysis?
- A Some industries are relatively insensitive to the business cycle.
 - B Correlations of security returns between different world markets are relatively low.
 - C One region or country of the world may experience recession while another region experiences expansion.
- 12 Which of the following statements about peer groups is *most* accurate?
- A Constructing a peer group for a company follows a standardized process.
 - B Commercial industry classification systems often provide a starting point for constructing a peer group.
 - C A peer group is generally composed of all the companies in the most narrowly defined category used by the commercial industry classification system.
- 13 With regard to forming a company's peer group, which of the following statements is *not* correct?
- A Comments from the management of the company about competitors are generally not used when selecting the peer group.
 - B The higher the proportion of revenue and operating profit of the peer company derived from business activities similar to the subject company, the more meaningful the comparison.
 - C Comparing the company's performance measures with those for a potential peer-group company is of limited value when the companies are exposed to different stages of the business cycle.
- 14 When selecting companies for inclusion in a peer group, a company operating in three different business segments would:
- A be in only one peer group.
 - B possibly be in more than one peer group.
 - C not be included in any peer group.
- 15 An industry that *most likely* has both high barriers to entry and high barriers to exit is the:
- A restaurant industry.
 - B advertising industry.
 - C automobile industry.
- 16 Which factor is *most likely* associated with stable market share?
- A Low switching costs.
 - B Low barriers to entry.
 - C Slow pace of product innovation.

- 17 Which of the following companies *most likely* has the greatest ability to quickly increase its capacity?
- A Restaurant.
 - B Steel producer.
 - C Legal services provider.
- 18 A population that is rapidly aging would *most likely* cause the growth rate of the industry producing eye glasses and contact lenses to:
- A decrease.
 - B increase.
 - C not change.
- 19 If over a long period of time a country's average level of educational accomplishment increases, this development would *most likely* lead to the country's amount of income spent on consumer discretionary goods to:
- A decrease.
 - B increase.
 - C not change.
- 20 If the technology for an industry involves high fixed capital investment, then one way to seek higher profit growth is by pursuing:
- A economies of scale.
 - B diseconomies of scale.
 - C removal of features that differentiate the product or service provided.
- 21 Which of the following life-cycle phases is typically characterized by high prices?
- A Mature.
 - B Growth.
 - C Embryonic.
- 22 In which of the following life-cycle phases are price wars *most likely* to be absent?
- A Mature.
 - B Decline.
 - C Growth.
- 23 When graphically depicting the life-cycle model for an industry as a curve, the variables on the axes are:
- A price and time.
 - B demand and time.
 - C demand and stage of the life cycle.
- 24 Industry consolidation and high barriers to entry *most likely* characterize which life-cycle stage?
- A Mature
 - B Growth
 - C Embryonic
- 25 Which of the following is *most likely* a characteristic of a concentrated industry?
- A Infrequent, tacit coordination.
 - B Difficulty in monitoring other industry members.
 - C Industry members attempting to avoid competition on price.

- 26 Which of the following industry characteristics is generally *least likely* to produce high returns on capital?
- A High barriers to entry
 - B High degree of concentration
 - C Short lead time to build new plants
- 27 An industry with high barriers to entry and weak pricing power *most likely* has:
- A high barriers to exit.
 - B stable market shares.
 - C significant numbers of issued patents.
- 28 Economic value is created for an industry's shareholders when the industry earns a return:
- A below the cost of capital.
 - B equal to the cost of capital.
 - C above the cost of capital.
- 29 Which of the following industries is *most likely* to be characterized as concentrated with strong pricing power?
- A Asset management.
 - B Alcoholic beverages.
 - C Household and personal products.
- 30 With respect to competitive strategy, a company with a successful cost leadership strategy is *most likely* characterized by:
- A a low cost of capital.
 - B reduced market share.
 - C the ability to offer products at higher prices than competitors.
- 31 When conducting a company analysis, the analysis of demand for a company's product is *least likely* to consider the:
- A company's cost structure.
 - B motivations of the customer base.
 - C product's differentiating characteristics.
- 32 Which of the following statements about company analysis is *most* accurate?
- A The complexity of spreadsheet modeling ensures precise forecasts of financial statements.
 - B The interpretation of financial ratios should focus on comparing the company's results over time but not with competitors.
 - C The corporate profile would include a description of the company's business, investment activities, governance, and strengths and weaknesses.

SOLUTIONS

- 1 C is correct. Tactical asset allocation involves timing investments in asset classes and does not make use of industry analysis.
- 2 C is correct. A sector rotation strategy is conducted by investors wishing to time investment in industries through an analysis of fundamentals and/or business-cycle conditions.
- 3 B is correct. Determination of a company's competitive environment depends on understanding its industry.
- 4 A is correct. The Russell system uses three tiers, whereas the other two systems are based on four tiers or levels.
- 5 B is correct. Personal care products are classified as consumer staples in the "Description of Representative Sectors."
- 6 C is correct. Automotive manufacturers are classified as consumer discretionary. Consumer discretionary companies derive a majority of revenue from the sale of consumer-related products for which demand tends to exhibit a high degree of economic sensitivity—that is, high demand during periods of economic expansion and low demand during periods of contraction.
- 7 C is correct. Commercial systems are generally updated more frequently than government systems, and include only publicly traded for-profit companies.
- 8 B is correct. Business-cycle sensitivity falls on a continuum and is not a discrete "either-or" phenomenon.
- 9 C is correct. Cyclical companies are sensitive to the business cycle, with low product demand during periods of economic contraction and high product demand during periods of economic expansion. They, therefore, experience wider-than-average fluctuations in product demand.
- 10 C is correct. Customers' flexibility as to when they purchase the product makes the product more sensitive to the business cycle.
- 11 C is correct. Varying conditions of recession or expansion around the world would affect the comparisons of companies with sales in different regions of the world.
- 12 B is correct. Constructing a peer group is a subjective process, and a logical starting point is to begin with a commercially available classification system. This system will identify a group of companies that may have properties comparable to the business activity of interest.
- 13 A is correct because it is a false statement. Reviewing the annual report to find management's discussion about the competitive environment and specific competitors is a suggested step in the process of constructing a peer group.
- 14 B is correct. The company could be in more than one peer group depending on the demand drivers for the business segments, although the multiple business segments may make it difficult to classify the company.
- 15 C is correct. For the automobile industry, the high capital requirements and other elements mentioned in the reading provide high barriers to entry, and recognition that auto factories are generally only of use for manufacturing cars implies a high barrier to exit.
- 16 C is correct. A slow pace of product innovation often means that customers prefer to stay with suppliers they know, implying stable market shares.

- 17 C is correct. Capacity increases in providing legal services would not involve several factors that would be important to the other two industries, including the need for substantial fixed capital investments or, in the case of a restaurant, outfitting rental or purchased space. These requirements would tend to slow down, respectively, steel production and restaurant expansion.
- 18 B is correct. Vision typically deteriorates at advanced ages. An increased number of older adults implies more eyewear products will be purchased.
- 19 B is correct. As their educational level increases, workers are able to perform more skilled tasks, earn higher wages, and as a result, have more income left for discretionary expenditures.
- 20 A is correct. Seeking economies of scale would tend to reduce per-unit costs and increase profit.
- 21 C is correct. The embryonic stage is characterized by slow growth and high prices.
- 22 C is correct. The growth phase is not likely to experience price wars because expanding industry demand provides companies the opportunity to grow even without increasing market share. When industry growth is stagnant, companies may only be able to grow by increasing market share, e.g., by engaging in price competition.
- 23 B is correct. The industry life-cycle model shows how demand evolves through time as an industry passes from the embryonic stage through the stage of decline.
- 24 A is correct. Industry consolidation and relatively high barriers to entry are two characteristics of a mature-stage industry.
- 25 C is correct. The relatively few members of the industry generally try to avoid price competition.
- 26 C is correct. With short lead times, industry capacity can be rapidly increased to satisfy demand, but it may also lead to overcapacity and lower profits.
- 27 A is correct. An industry that has high barriers to entry generally requires substantial physical capital and/or financial investment. With weak pricing power in the industry, finding a buyer for excess capacity (i.e., to exit the industry) may be difficult.
- 28 C is correct. Economic profit is earned and value created for shareholders when the company earns returns above the company's cost of capital.
- 29 B is correct. As displayed in Exhibit 4, the alcoholic beverage industry is concentrated and possesses strong pricing power.
- 30 A is correct. Companies with low cost strategies must be able to invest in productivity-improving equipment and finance that investment at a low cost of capital. Market share and pricing depend on whether the strategy is pursued defensively or offensively.
- 31 A is correct. The cost structure is an appropriate element when analyzing the supply of the product, but analysis of demand relies on the product's differentiating characteristics and the customers' needs and wants.
- 32 C is correct. The corporate profile would provide an understanding of these elements.

Equity Valuation: Concepts and Basic Tools

by John J. Nagorniak, CFA, and Stephen E. Wilcox, PhD, CFA

John J. Nagorniak, CFA (USA). Stephen E. Wilcox, PhD, CFA, is at Minnesota State University, Mankato (USA).

LEARNING OUTCOMES

<i>Mastery</i>	<i>The candidate should be able to:</i>
<input type="checkbox"/>	a. evaluate whether a security, given its current market price and a value estimate, is overvalued, fairly valued, or undervalued by the market;
<input type="checkbox"/>	b. describe major categories of equity valuation models;
<input type="checkbox"/>	c. describe regular cash dividends, extra dividends, stock dividends, stock splits, reverse stock splits, and share repurchases;
<input type="checkbox"/>	d. describe dividend payment chronology;
<input type="checkbox"/>	e. explain the rationale for using present value models to value equity and describe the dividend discount and free-cash-flow-to-equity models;
<input type="checkbox"/>	f. calculate the intrinsic value of a non-callable, non-convertible preferred stock;
<input type="checkbox"/>	g. calculate and interpret the intrinsic value of an equity security based on the Gordon (constant) growth dividend discount model or a two-stage dividend discount model, as appropriate;
<input type="checkbox"/>	h. identify characteristics of companies for which the constant growth or a multistage dividend discount model is appropriate;
<input type="checkbox"/>	i. explain the rationale for using price multiples to value equity, how the price to earnings multiple relates to fundamentals, and the use of multiples based on comparables;
<input type="checkbox"/>	j. calculate and interpret the following multiples: price to earnings, price to an estimate of operating cash flow, price to sales, and price to book value;

(continued)

LEARNING OUTCOMES

<i>Mastery</i>	<i>The candidate should be able to:</i>
<input type="checkbox"/>	k. describe enterprise value multiples and their use in estimating equity value;
<input type="checkbox"/>	l. describe asset-based valuation models and their use in estimating equity value;
<input type="checkbox"/>	m. explain advantages and disadvantages of each category of valuation model.

1

INTRODUCTION

Analysts gather and process information to make investment decisions, including buy and sell recommendations. What information is gathered and how it is processed depend on the analyst and the purpose of the analysis. Technical analysis uses such information as stock price and trading volume as the basis for investment decisions. Fundamental analysis uses information about the economy, industry, and company as the basis for investment decisions. Examples of fundamentals are unemployment rates, gross domestic product (GDP) growth, industry growth, and quality of and growth in company earnings. Whereas technical analysts use information to predict price movements and base investment decisions on the direction of predicted change in prices, fundamental analysts use information to estimate the value of a security and to compare the estimated value to the market price and then base investment decisions on that comparison.

This reading introduces equity valuation models used to estimate the **intrinsic value** (synonym: **fundamental value**) of a security; intrinsic value is based on an analysis of investment fundamentals and characteristics. The fundamentals to be considered depend on the analyst's approach to valuation. In a top-down approach, an analyst examines the economic environment, identifies sectors that are expected to prosper in that environment, and analyzes securities of companies from previously identified attractive sectors. In a bottom-up approach, an analyst typically follows an industry or industries and forecasts fundamentals for the companies in those industries in order to determine valuation. Whatever the approach, an analyst who estimates the intrinsic value of an equity security is implicitly questioning the accuracy of the market price as an estimate of value. Valuation is particularly important in active equity portfolio management, which aims to improve on the return–risk trade-off of a portfolio's benchmark by identifying mispriced securities.

This reading is organized as follows. Section 2 discusses the implications of differences between estimated value and market price. Section 3 introduces three major categories of valuation model. Section 4 presents an overview of present value models with a focus on the dividend discount model. Section 5 describes and examines the use of multiples in valuation. Section 6 explains asset-based valuation and demonstrates how these models can be used to estimate value. Section 7 states conclusions and summarizes the reading.

ESTIMATED VALUE AND MARKET PRICE

2

By comparing estimates of value and market price, an analyst can arrive at one of three conclusions: The security is *undervalued*, *overvalued*, or *fairly valued* in the marketplace. For example, if the market price of an asset is \$10 and the analyst estimates intrinsic value at \$10, a logical conclusion is that the security is fairly valued. If the security is selling for \$20, the security would be considered overvalued. If the security is selling for \$5, the security would be considered undervalued. Basically, by estimating value, the analyst is assuming that the market price is not necessarily the best estimate of intrinsic value. If the estimated value exceeds the market price, the analyst infers the security is *undervalued*. If the estimated value equals the market price, the analyst infers the security is *fairly valued*. If the estimated value is less than the market price, the analyst infers the security is *overvalued*.

In practice, the conclusion is not so straightforward. Analysts must cope with uncertainties related to model appropriateness and the correct value of inputs. An analyst's final conclusion depends not only on the comparison of the estimated value and the market price but also on the analyst's confidence in the estimated value (i.e., in the model selected and the inputs used in it). One can envision a spectrum running from relatively high confidence in the valuation model *and* the inputs to relatively low confidence in the valuation model *and/or* the inputs. When confidence is relatively low, the analyst might demand a substantial divergence between his or her own value estimate and the market price before acting on an apparent mispricing. For instance, if the estimate of intrinsic value is \$10 and the market price is \$10.05, the analyst might reasonably conclude that the security is fairly valued and that the 1/2 of 1 percent market price difference from the estimated value is within the analyst's confidence interval.

Confidence in the convergence of the market price to the intrinsic value over the investment time horizon relevant to the objectives of the portfolio must also be taken into account before an analyst acts on an apparent mispricing or makes a buy, sell, or hold recommendation: The ability to benefit from identifying a mispriced security depends on the market price converging to the estimated intrinsic value.

In seeking to identify mispricing and attractive investments, analysts are treating market prices with skepticism, but they are also treating market prices with respect. For example, an analyst who finds that many securities examined appear to be overvalued will typically recheck models and inputs before acting on a conclusion of overvaluation. Analysts also often recognize and factor into recommendations that different market segments—such as securities closely followed by analysts versus securities relatively neglected by analysts—may differ in how common or persistent mispricing is. Mispricing may be more likely in securities neglected by analysts.

EXAMPLE 1

Valuation and Analyst Response

- 1 An analyst finds that all the securities analyzed have estimated values higher than their market prices. The securities all appear to be:
 - A overvalued.
 - B undervalued.
 - C fairly valued.

- 2 An analyst finds that nearly all companies in a market segment have common shares which are trading at market prices above the analyst's estimate of the shares' values. This market segment is widely followed by analysts. Which of the following statements describes the analyst's *most appropriate* first action?
- A Issue a sell recommendation for each share issue.
 - B Issue a buy recommendation for each share issue.
 - C Reexamine the models and inputs used for the valuations.
- 3 An analyst, using a number of models and a range of inputs, estimates a security's value to be between ¥250 and ¥270. The security is trading at ¥265. The security appears to be:
- A overvalued.
 - B undervalued.
 - C fairly valued.

Solution to 1:

B is correct. The estimated intrinsic value for each security is greater than the market price. The securities all appear to be undervalued in the market. Note, however, that the analyst may wish to reexamine the model and inputs to check that the conclusion is valid.

Solution to 2:

C is correct. It seems improbable that all the share issues analyzed are overvalued, as indicated by market prices in excess of estimated value—particularly because the market segment is widely followed by analysts. Thus, the analyst will not issue a sell recommendation for each issue. The analyst will *most appropriately* reexamine the models and inputs prior to issuing any recommendations. A buy recommendation is not an appropriate response to an overvalued security.

Solution to 3:

C is correct. The security's market price of ¥265 is within the range estimated by the analyst. The security appears to be fairly valued.

Analysts often use a variety of models and inputs to achieve greater confidence in their estimates of intrinsic value. The use of more than one model and a range of inputs also helps the analyst understand the sensitivity of value estimates to different models and inputs.

3

MAJOR CATEGORIES OF EQUITY VALUATION MODELS

Three major categories of equity valuation models are as follows:

- **Present value models** (synonym: **discounted cash flow models**). These models estimate the intrinsic value of a security as the present value of the future benefits expected to be received from the security. In present value models, benefits are often defined in terms of cash expected to be distributed to shareholders (**dividend discount models**) or in terms of cash flows available to be distributed to shareholders after meeting capital expenditure and working capital needs (**free-cash-flow-to-equity models**). Many models fall within this

category, ranging from the relatively simple to the very complex. In Section 4, we discuss in detail two of the simpler models, the Gordon (constant) growth model and the two-stage dividend discount models.

- **Multiplier models** (synonym: **market multiple models**). These models are based chiefly on share price multiples or enterprise value multiples. The former model estimates intrinsic value of a common share from a price multiple for some fundamental variable, such as revenues, earnings, cash flows, or book value. Examples of the multiples include price to earnings (P/E, share price divided by earnings per share) and price to sales (P/S, share price divided by sales per share). The fundamental variable may be stated on a forward basis (e.g., forecasted EPS for the next year) or a trailing basis (e.g., EPS for the past year), as long as the usage is consistent across companies being examined. Price multiples are also used to compare relative values. The use of the ratio of share price to EPS—that is, the P/E multiple—to judge relative value is an example of this approach to equity valuation.

Enterprise value (EV) multiples have the form (Enterprise value)/(Value of a fundamental variable). Two possible choices for the denominator are earnings before interest, taxes, depreciation, and amortization (EBITDA) and total revenue. Enterprise value, the numerator, is a measure of a company's total market value from which cash and short-term investments have been subtracted (because an acquirer could use those assets to pay for acquiring the company). An estimate of common share value can be calculated indirectly from the EV multiple; the value of liabilities and preferred shares can be subtracted from the EV to arrive at the value of common equity.

- **Asset-based valuation models**. These models estimate intrinsic value of a common share from the estimated value of the assets of a corporation minus the estimated value of its liabilities and preferred shares. The estimated market value of the assets is often determined by making adjustments to the **book value** (synonym: **carrying value**) of assets and liabilities. The theory underlying the asset-based approach is that the value of a business is equal to the sum of the value of the business's assets.

As already mentioned, many analysts use more than one type of model to estimate value. Analysts recognize that each model is a simplification of the real world and that there are uncertainties related to model appropriateness and the inputs to the models. The choice of model(s) will depend on the availability of information to input into the model(s) and the analyst's confidence in the information and in the appropriateness of the model(s).

EXAMPLE 2

Categories of Equity Valuation Models

- 1 An analyst is estimating the intrinsic value of a new company. The analyst has one year of financial statements for the company and has calculated the average values of a variety of price multiples for the industry in which the company operates. The analyst plans to use at least one model from each of the three categories of valuation models. The analyst is *least likely* to rely on the estimate(s) from the:
 - A multiplier model(s).
 - B present value model(s).
 - C asset-based valuation model(s).

- 2 Based on a company's EPS of €1.35, an analyst estimates the intrinsic value of a security to be €16.60. Which type of model is the analyst *most likely* to be using to estimate intrinsic value?
- A Multiplier model.
 - B Present value model.
 - C Asset-based valuation model.

Solution to 1:

B is correct. Because the company has only one year of data available, the analyst is *least likely* to be confident in the inputs for a present value model. The values on the balance sheet, even before adjustment, are likely to be close to market values because the assets are all relatively new. The multiplier models are based on average multiples from the industry.

Solution to 2:

A is correct. The analyst is using a multiplier model based on the P/E multiple. The P/E multiple used was $16.60/1.35 = 12.3$.

As you begin the study of specific equity valuation models in the next section, you must bear in mind that any model of value is, by necessity, a simplification of the real world. Never forget this simple fact! You may encounter models much more complicated than the ones discussed here, but even those models will be simplifications of reality.

4

PRESENT VALUE MODELS: THE DIVIDEND DISCOUNT MODEL

Present value models follow a fundamental tenet of economics which states that individuals defer consumption—that is, they invest—for the future benefits expected. Individuals and companies make an investment because they expect thereby to earn a rate of return over the investment period. Logically, the value of an investment should be equal to the present value of the expected future benefits. For common shares, an analyst can equate benefits to the cash flows to be generated by the investment. The simplest present value model of equity valuation is the dividend discount model (DDM), which specifies cash flows from a common stock investment to be dividends.

The next section describes aspects of dividends that users of dividend discount models should understand.

4.1 Dividends: Background for the Dividend Discount Model

Generally, there are two sources of return from investing in equities: (1) cash dividends received by an investor over his or her holding period and (2) the change in the market price of equities over that holding period.

A **dividend** is a distribution paid to shareholders based on the number of shares owned, and a cash dividend is a cash distribution made to a company's shareholders. Cash dividends are typically paid out regularly at known intervals; such dividends are known as regular cash dividends. By contrast, an **extra dividend** or **special dividend** is a dividend paid by a company that does not pay dividends on a regular schedule or a

dividend that supplements regular cash dividends with an extra payment. Companies in cyclical industries and companies undergoing corporate and/or financial restructuring are among those observed to use extra dividends.¹

The payment of dividends is not a legal obligation: dividends must be declared (i.e., authorized) by a company's board of directors; in some jurisdictions, they must also be approved by shareholders. Regular cash dividends are customarily declared and paid out quarterly in the United States and Canada; semiannually in Europe and Japan; and annually in some other countries, including China.

Dividend discount models address discounting expected cash dividends. A **stock dividend** (also known as a **bonus issue of shares**) is a type of dividend in which a company distributes additional shares of its common stock (typically, 2%–10% of the shares then outstanding) to shareholders instead of cash. A stock dividend divides the “pie” (the market value of shareholders' equity) into smaller pieces without affecting the value of the pie or any shareholder's proportional ownership in the company. Thus, stock dividends are not relevant for valuation. Stock splits and reverse stock splits are similar to stock dividends in that they have no economic effect on the company or shareholders. A **stock split** involves an increase in the number of shares outstanding with a consequent decrease in share price. An example of a stock split is a two-for-one stock split in which each shareholder is issued an additional share for each share currently owned. A **reverse stock split** involves a reduction in the number of shares outstanding with a corresponding increase in share price. In a one-for-two reverse stock split, each shareholder would receive one new share for every two old shares held, thereby reducing the number of shares outstanding by half.

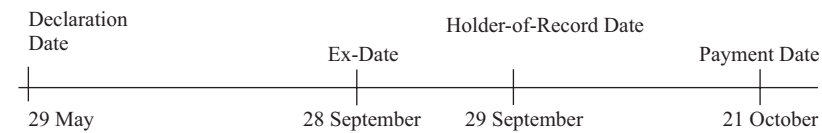
In contrast to stock dividends and stock splits, share repurchases are an alternative to cash dividend payments. A **share repurchase** (or **buyback**) is a transaction in which a company uses cash to buy back its own shares. Shares that have been repurchased are not considered for dividends, voting, or computing earnings per share. A share repurchase is viewed as equivalent to the payment of cash dividends of equal value in terms of the effect on shareholders' wealth, all other things being equal. Company managements have expressed several key reasons for engaging in share repurchases—namely, (1) signaling a belief that their shares are undervalued (or, more generally, to support share prices), (2) flexibility in the amount and timing of distributing cash to shareholders, (3) tax efficiency in markets where tax rates on dividends exceed tax rates on capital gains, and (4) the ability to absorb increases in outstanding shares because of the exercise of employee stock options.

The payout of regular cash dividends to common shareholders follows a fairly standard chronology that is set in motion once the company's board of directors votes to pay the dividend. First is the **declaration date**, the day that the company issues a statement declaring a specific dividend. Next comes the **ex-dividend date** (or **ex-date**), the first date that a share trades without (i.e., “ex”) the dividend. This is followed closely (one or two business days later) by the **holder-of-record date** (also called the **owner-of-record date**, **shareholder-of-record date**, **record date**, **date of record**, or **date of book closure**), the date that a shareholder listed on the company's books will be deemed to have ownership of the shares for purposes of receiving the upcoming dividend; the amount of time between the ex-date and the holder-of-record date is linked to the trade settlement cycle in force. The final milestone is the **payment date** (or **payable date**), which is the day that the company actually mails out (or electronically transfers) a dividend payment to shareholders.

¹ Another type of dividend is a liquidating dividend, which is a return of capital rather than a distribution from earnings or retained earnings. Liquidating dividends are used when a company goes out of business and distributes its net assets, sells a portion of its business for cash and distributes the sale's proceeds, or pays a dividend that exceeds its accumulated retained earnings.

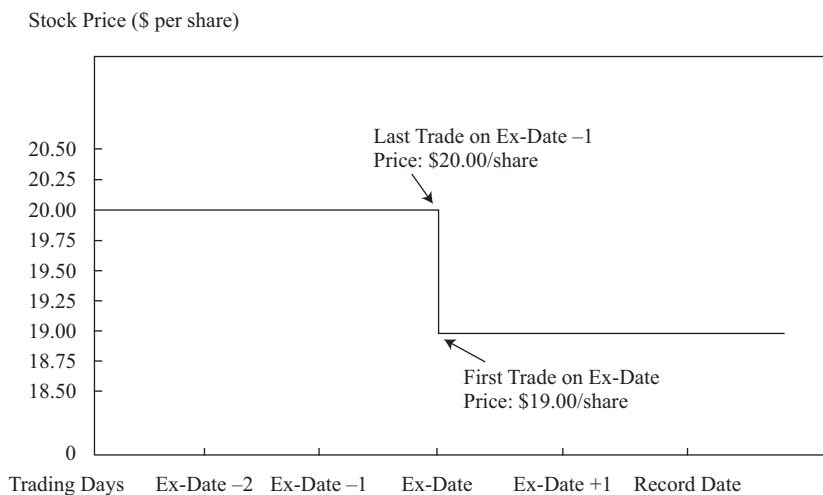
EXAMPLE 3**Total S.A. Dividend Payment Time Line**

On 29 May 2015, Total S.A., one of the world's largest integrated energy companies, declared an annual dividend of €2.44 per share, payable on a quarterly basis. The first quarterly dividend of $€2.44/4 = €0.61$ was payable on 21 October 2015. The holder-of-record date was 29 September, and the ex-dividend date was 28 September. A timeline for the upcoming Total S.A. quarterly dividend is shown in Exhibit 1.

Exhibit 1 Timeline for Total S.A. Quarterly Dividend

Source: Total S.A. website: www.total.com.

Because buyers of a company's shares on the ex-dividend date are no longer eligible to receive the upcoming dividend, all else being equal, on that day the company's share price immediately decreases by the amount of the foregone dividend. Exhibit 2 illustrates the decrease in share price that occurs for a hypothetical company that has declared a \$1.00 per share dividend as trading begins on its ex-dividend date.

Exhibit 2 Stock Price Change for Hypothetical Company on Ex-Dividend Date

Note: Assumes dividend declared is \$1 per share and convention for stock trade settlement is $T + 3$.

4.2 The Dividend Discount Model: Description

If the issuing company is assumed to be a going concern, the intrinsic value of a share is the present value of expected future dividends. If a constant required rate of return is also assumed, then the DDM expression for the intrinsic value of a share is Equation 1:

$$V_0 = \sum_{t=1}^{\infty} \frac{D_t}{(1+r)^t} \quad (1)$$

where

V_0 = value of a share of stock today, at $t = 0$

D_t = expected dividend in year t , assumed to be paid at the end of the year

r = required rate of return on the stock

At the shareholder level, cash received from a common stock investment includes any dividends received and the proceeds when shares are sold. If an investor intends to buy and hold a share for one year, the value of the share today is the present value of two cash flows—namely, the expected dividend *plus* the expected selling price in one year:

$$V_0 = \frac{D_1 + P_1}{(1+r)^1} = \frac{D_1}{(1+r)^1} + \frac{P_1}{(1+r)^1} \quad (2)$$

where P_1 = the expected price per share at $t = 1$.

To estimate the expected selling price, P_1 , the analyst could estimate the price another investor with a one-year holding period would pay for the share in one year. If V_0 is based on D_1 and P_1 , it follows that P_1 could be estimated from D_2 and P_2 :

$$P_1 = \frac{D_2 + P_2}{(1+r)}$$

Substituting the right side of this equation for P_1 in Equation 2 results in V_0 estimated as

$$V_0 = \frac{D_1}{(1+r)} + \frac{D_2 + P_2}{(1+r)^2} = \frac{D_1}{(1+r)} + \frac{D_2}{(1+r)^2} + \frac{P_2}{(1+r)^2}$$

Repeating this process, we find the value for n holding periods is the present value of the expected dividends for the n periods plus the present value of the expected price in n periods:

$$V_0 = \frac{D_1}{(1+r)^1} + \dots + \frac{D_n}{(1+r)^n} + \frac{P_n}{(1+r)^n}$$

Using summation notation to represent the present value of the n expected dividends, we arrive at the general expression for an n -period holding period or investment horizon:

$$V_0 = \sum_{t=1}^n \frac{D_t}{(1+r)^t} + \frac{P_n}{(1+r)^n} \quad (3)$$

The expected value of a share at the end of the investment horizon—in effect, the expected selling price—is often referred to as the **terminal stock value** (or **terminal value**).

EXAMPLE 4**Estimating Share Value for a Three-Year Investment Horizon**

For the next three years, the annual dividends of a stock are expected to be €2.00, €2.10, and €2.20. The stock price is expected to be €20.00 at the end of three years. If the required rate of return on the shares is 10 percent, what is the estimated value of a share?

Solution:

The present values of the expected future cash flows can be written as follows:

$$V_0 = \frac{2.00}{(1.10)^1} + \frac{2.10}{(1.10)^2} + \frac{2.20}{(1.10)^3} + \frac{20.00}{(1.10)^3}$$

Calculating and summing these present values gives an estimated share value of $V_0 = 1.818 + 1.736 + 1.653 + 15.026 = €20.23$.

The three dividends have a total present value of €5.207, and the terminal stock value has a present value of €15.026, for a total estimated value of €20.23.

Extending the holding period into the indefinite future, we can say that a stock's estimated value is the present value of all expected future dividends as shown in Equation 1.

Consideration of an indefinite future is valid because businesses established as corporations are generally set up to operate indefinitely. This general form of the DDM applies even in the case in which the investor has a finite investment horizon. For that investor, stock value today depends *directly* on the dividends the investor expects to receive before the stock is sold and depends *indirectly* on the expected dividends for periods subsequent to that sale, because those expected future dividends determine the expected selling price. Thus, the general expression given by Equation 1 holds irrespective of the investor's holding period.

In practice, many analysts prefer to use a free-cash-flow-to-equity (FCFE) valuation model. These analysts assume that dividend-paying *capacity* should be reflected in the cash flow estimates rather than *expected dividends*. FCFE is a measure of dividend-paying capacity. Analysts may also use FCFE valuation models for a non-dividend-paying stock. To use a DDM, the analyst needs to predict the timing and amount of the first dividend and all the dividends or dividend growth thereafter. Making these predictions for non-dividend-paying stock accurately is typically difficult, so in such cases, analysts often resort to FCFE models.

The calculation of FCFE starts with the calculation of cash flow from operations (CFO). CFO is simply defined as net income plus non-cash expenses minus investment in working capital. FCFE is a measure of cash flow generated in a period that is available for distribution to common shareholders. What does "available for distribution" mean? The entire CFO is *not* available for distribution; the portion of the CFO needed for fixed capital investment (FCInv) during the period to maintain the value of the company as a going concern is *not* viewed as available for distribution to common shareholders. Net amounts borrowed (borrowings minus repayments) are considered to be available for distribution to common shareholders. Thus, FCFE can be expressed as

$$\text{FCFE} = \text{CFO} - \text{FCInv} + \text{Net borrowing} \quad (4)$$

The information needed to calculate historical FCFE is available from a company's statement of cash flows and financial disclosures. Frequently, under the assumption that management is acting in the interest of maintaining the value of the company as

a going concern, reported capital expenditure is taken to represent FCInv. Analysts must make projections of financials to forecast future FCFE. Valuation obtained by using FCFE involves discounting expected future FCFE by the required rate of return on equity; the expression parallels Equation 1:

$$V_0 = \sum_{t=1}^{\infty} \frac{\text{FCFE}_t}{(1+r)^t}$$

EXAMPLE 5

Present Value Models

- 1 An investor expects a share to pay dividends of \$3.00 and \$3.15 at the end of Years 1 and 2, respectively. At the end of the second year, the investor expects the shares to trade at \$40.00. The required rate of return on the shares is 8 percent. If the investor's forecasts are accurate and the market price of the shares is currently \$30, the *most likely* conclusion is that the shares are:
 - A overvalued.
 - B undervalued.
 - C fairly valued.
- 2 Two investors with different holding periods but the same expectations and required rate of return for a company are estimating the intrinsic value of a common share of the company. The investor with the shorter holding period will *most likely* estimate a:
 - A lower intrinsic value.
 - B higher intrinsic value.
 - C similar intrinsic value.
- 3 An equity valuation model that focuses on expected dividends rather than the capacity to pay dividends is the:
 - A dividend discount model.
 - B free cash flow to equity model.
 - C cash flow return on investment model.

Solution to 1:

B is correct.

$$V_0 = \frac{3.00}{(1.08)^1} + \frac{3.15}{(1.08)^2} + \frac{40.00}{(1.08)^2} = 39.77$$

The value estimate of \$39.77 exceeds the market price of \$30, so the conclusion is that the shares are undervalued.

Solution to 2:

C is correct. The intrinsic value of a security is independent of the investor's holding period.

Solution to 3:

A is correct. Dividend discount models focus on expected dividends.

How is the required rate of return for use in present value models estimated? To estimate the required rate of return on a share, analysts frequently use the capital asset pricing model (CAPM):

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Required rate of return on share } i &= \text{Current expected risk} \\ &\quad - \text{free rate of return} \\ &\quad + \text{Beta}_i [\text{Market (equity) risk premium}] \end{aligned} \tag{5}$$

Equation 5 states that the required rate of return on a share is the sum of the current expected risk-free rate plus a risk premium that equals the product of the stock's beta (a measure of non-diversifiable risk) and the market risk premium (the expected return of the market in excess of the risk-free return, where in practice, the "market" is often represented by a broad stock market index). However, even if analysts agree that the CAPM is an appropriate model, their inputs into the CAPM may differ. Thus, there is no uniquely correct answer to the question: What is the required rate of return?

Other common methods for estimating the required rate of return for the stock of a company include adding a risk premium that is based on economic judgments, rather than the CAPM, to an appropriate risk-free rate (usually a government bond) and adding a risk premium to the yield on the company's bonds. Good business and economic judgment is paramount in estimating the required rate of return. In many investment firms, required rates of return are determined by firm policy.

4.3 Preferred Stock Valuation

General dividend discount models are relatively easy to apply to preferred shares. In its simplest form, **preferred stock** is a form of equity (generally, non-voting) that has priority over common stock in the receipt of dividends and on the issuer's assets in the event of a company's liquidation. It may have a stated maturity date at which time payment of the stock's par (face) value is made or it may be perpetual with no maturity date; additionally, it may be callable or convertible.

For a non-callable, non-convertible perpetual preferred share paying a level dividend D and assuming a constant required rate of return over time, Equation 1 reduces to the formula for the present value of a perpetuity. Its value is:

$$V_0 = \frac{D_0}{r} \tag{6}$$

For example, a \$100 par value non-callable perpetual preferred stock offers an annual dividend of \$5.50. If its required rate of return is 6 percent, the value estimate would be $\$5.50/0.06 = \91.67 .

For a non-callable, non-convertible preferred stock with maturity at time n , the estimated intrinsic value can be estimated by using Equation 3 but using the preferred stock's par value, F , instead of P_n :

$$V_0 = \sum_{t=1}^n \frac{D_t}{(1+r)^t} + \frac{F}{(1+r)^n} \tag{7}$$

When Equation 7 is used, the most precise approach is to use values for n , r , and D that reflect the payment schedule of the dividends. This method is similar to the practice of fixed-income analysts in valuing a bond. For example, a non-convertible preferred stock with a par value of £20.00, maturity in six years, a nominal required rate of return of 8.20 percent, and semiannual dividends of £2.00 would be valued by using an n of 12, an r of 4.10 percent, a D of £2.00, and an F of £20.00. The result would be an estimated value of £31.01. Assuming payments are annual rather than semiannual (i.e., assuming that $n = 6$, $r = 8.20$ percent, and $D = £4.00$) would result in an estimated value of £30.84.

Preferred stock issues are frequently callable (redeemable) by the issuer at some point prior to maturity, often at par value or at prices in excess of par value that decline to par value as the maturity date approaches. Such call options tend to reduce the value of a preferred issue to an investor because the option to redeem will be exercised by the issuer when it is in the issuer's favor and ignored when it is not. For example, if an issuer can redeem shares at par value that would otherwise trade (on the basis of dividends, maturity, and required rate of return) above par value, the issuer has motivation to redeem the shares.

Preferred stock issues can also include a retraction option that enables the holder of the preferred stock to sell the shares back to the issuer prior to maturity on prespecified terms. Essentially, the holder of the shares has a put option. Such put options tend to increase the value of a preferred issue to an investor because the option to retract will be exercised by the investor when it is in the investor's favor and ignored when it is not. Although the precise valuation of issues with such embedded options is beyond the scope of this reading, Example 6 includes a case in which Equation 7 can be used to approximate the value of a callable, retractable preferred share.

EXAMPLE 6

Preferred Share Valuation: Two Cases

Case 1: Non-callable, Non-convertible, Perpetual Preferred Shares

The following facts concerning the Union Electric Company 4.75 percent perpetual preferred shares are as follows:

- Issuer: Union Electric Co. (owned by Ameren)
- Par value: US\$100
- Dividend: US\$4.75 per year
- Maturity: perpetual
- Embedded options: none
- Credit rating: Moody's Investors Service/Standard & Poor's Ba1/BB
- Required rate of return on Ba1/BB rated preferred shares as of valuation date: 7.5 percent.

- A** Estimate the intrinsic value of this preferred share.
- B** Explain whether the intrinsic value of this issue would be higher or lower if the issue were callable (with all other facts remaining unchanged).

Solution to 1A:

Basing the discount rate on the required rate of return on Ba1/BB rated preferred shares of 7.5 percent gives an intrinsic value estimate of $US\$4.75/0.075 = US\63.33 .

Solution to 1B:

The intrinsic value would be lower if the issue were callable. The option to redeem or call the issue is valuable to the issuer because the call will be exercised when doing so is in the issuer's interest. The intrinsic value of the shares to the investor will typically be lower if the issue is callable. In this case, because the intrinsic value without the call is much less than the par value, the issuer would be unlikely to redeem the issue if it were callable; thus, callability would reduce intrinsic value, but only slightly.

Case 2: Retractable Term Preferred Shares

Retractable term preferred shares are a type of preferred share that has been issued by Canadian companies. This type of issue specifies a “retraction date” when the preferred shareholders have the option to sell back their shares to the issuer at par value (i.e., the shares are “retractable” or “putable” at that date).² At predetermined dates prior to the retraction date, the issuer has the option to redeem the preferred issue at predetermined prices (which are always at or above par value).

An example of a retractable term preferred share currently outstanding is YPG (Yellow Pages) Holdings, series 2, 5 percent first preferreds. YPG Holdings is Canada’s leading local commercial search provider and largest telephone directory publisher. The issue is in Canadian dollars. The shares have a \$25 par value and pay a quarterly dividend of \$0.3125 [= (5 percent × \$25)/4]. As of 29 December 2008, shares were priced at \$12.01 and carried ratings from Dominion Bond Rating Service (DBRS) and Standard & Poor’s of Pfd-3H and P3, respectively. Thus, the shares are viewed by DBRS as having “adequate” credit quality, qualified by “H,” which means relatively high quality within that group. The shares are redeemable at the option of YPG Holdings in June 2009 at \$26.75, with redemption prices eventually declining to par value at later dates. The retraction date is 30 June 2017, or eight and half years (34 quarters) from the date (31 December 2008) the shares were being valued. Similarly rated preferred issues had an estimated nominal required rate of return of 15.5 percent (3.875 percent per quarter). Because the issue’s market price is so far below the prices at which YPG could redeem or call the issue, redemption is considered to be unlikely and the redemption option is assumed here to have minimal value for an investor.

A Assume that the issue will be retracted in June 2017; the holders of the shares will put the shares to the company in June 2017. Based on the information given, estimate the intrinsic value of a share.

Solution to 2A:

An intrinsic value estimate of a share of this preferred issue is \$12.71:

$$V_0 = \left[\frac{\$0.3125}{(1 + 0.03875)} + \frac{\$0.3125}{(1 + 0.03875)^2} + \dots + \frac{\$0.3125}{(1 + 0.03875)^{34}} \right] + \frac{\$25}{(1 + 0.03875)^{34}} \approx \$12.71$$

4.4 The Gordon Growth Model

A rather obvious problem when one is trying to implement Equation 1 for common equity is that it requires the analyst to estimate an infinite series of expected dividends. To simplify this process, analysts frequently make assumptions about how dividends will grow or change over time. The Gordon (constant) growth model (Gordon, 1962) is a simple and well-recognized DDM. The model assumes dividends grow indefinitely at a constant rate.

² “Retraction” refers to this option, which is a put option. The terminology is not completely settled: The type of share being called “retractable term preferred” is also known as “hard retractable preferred,” with “hard” referring to payment in cash rather than common shares at the retraction date. See the 2009 ScotiaMcLeod report http://www.ritceyteam.com/pdf/guide_to_preferred_shares.pdf.

Because of its assumption of a constant growth rate, the Gordon growth model is particularly appropriate for valuing the equity of dividend-paying companies that are relatively insensitive to the business cycle and in a mature growth phase. Examples might include an electric utility serving a slowly growing area or a producer of a staple food product (e.g., bread). A history of increasing the dividend at a stable growth rate is another practical criterion if the analyst believes that pattern will hold in the future.

With a constant growth assumption, Equation 1 can be written as Equation 8, where g is the constant growth rate:

$$V_0 = \sum_{t=1}^{\infty} \frac{D_0(1+g)^t}{(1+r)^t} = D_0 \left[\frac{(1+g)}{(1+r)} + \frac{(1+g)^2}{(1+r)^2} + \dots + \frac{(1+g)^{\infty}}{(1+r)^{\infty}} \right] \quad (8)$$

If required return r is assumed to be strictly greater than growth rate g , then the square-bracketed term in Equation 8 is an infinite geometric series and sums to $[(1+g)/(r-g)]$. Substituting into Equation 8 produces the Gordon growth model as presented in Equation 9:

$$V_0 = \frac{D_0(1+g)}{r-g} = \frac{D_1}{r-g} \quad (9)$$

For an illustration of the expression, suppose the current (most recent) annual dividend on a share is €5.00 and dividends are expected to grow at 4 percent per year. The required rate of return on equity is 8 percent. The Gordon growth model estimate of intrinsic value is, therefore, $€5.00(1.04)/(0.08 - 0.04) = €5.20/0.04 = €130$ per share. Note that the numerator is D_1 not D_0 . (Using the wrong numerator is a common error.)

The Gordon growth model estimates intrinsic value as the present value of a growing perpetuity. If the growth rate, g , is assumed to be zero, Equation 8 reduces to the expression for the present value of a perpetuity, given earlier as Equation 6.

In estimating a long-term growth rate, analysts use a variety of methods, including assessing the growth in dividends or earnings over time, using the industry median growth rate, and using the relationship shown in Equation 10 to estimate the sustainable growth rate:

$$g = b \times \text{ROE} \quad (10)$$

where

g = dividend growth rate

b = earnings retention rate = $(1 - \text{Dividend payout ratio})$

ROE = return on equity

Example 7 illustrates the application of the Gordon growth model to the shares of a large industrial manufacturing company. The analyst believes it will continue to grow at a rate that it achieved in the previous three years and remain stable in the future. The example asks how much the dividend growth assumption adds to the intrinsic value estimate. The question is relevant to valuation because if the amount is high on a percentage basis, a large part of the value of the share depends on the realization of the growth estimate. One can answer the question by subtracting from the intrinsic value estimate determined by Equation 9 the value determined by Equation 6, which assumes no dividend growth.³

³ A related concept, the present value of growth opportunities (PVGO), is discussed in more advanced readings.

EXAMPLE 7**Applying the Gordon Growth Model**

Siemens AG operates in the capital goods and technology space. It is involved in the engineering, manufacturing, automation, power, and transportation sectors. It operates globally and is one of the largest companies in the sectors in which it operates. It is a substantial employer in both its original, domestic German market, as well as dozens of countries around the world. Selected financial information for Siemens appears in Exhibit 3.

Exhibit 3 Selected Financial Information for Siemens AG

Year	2017	2016	2015	2014	2013
EPS	€7.45	€6.74	€8.85	€6.37	€5.08
DPS	€3.7	€3.6	€3.5	€3.3	€3.0
Payout ratio	50%	53%	40%	52%	59%
ROE	15.6%	15.9%	22.3%	18.2%	14.6%
Share price (XETRA - Frankfurt)	€119.2	€104.2	€79.94	€94.37	€89.06

Note: DPS stands for “dividends per share.”

Source: Morningstar, www.siemens.com.

The analyst estimates the growth rate to be approximately 5.4 percent based on the dividend growth rate over the period 2013 to 2017 [$3(1 + g)^4 = 3.7$, so $g = 5.4\%$]. To verify that the estimated growth rate of 5.4 percent is feasible in the future, the analyst also uses the average of Siemens’s retention rate and ROE for the previous five years ($g \approx 0.49 \times 17.3\% \approx 8.5\%$) to estimate the sustainable growth rate.

Using a number of approaches, including adding a risk premium to a long-term German government bond and using the CAPM, the analyst estimates a required return of 7.5 percent. The most recent dividend of €3.70 is used for D_0 .

- 1 Use the Gordon growth model to estimate Siemens’s intrinsic value.
- 2 How much does the dividend growth assumption add to the intrinsic value estimate?
- 3 Based on the estimated intrinsic value, is a share of Siemens undervalued, overvalued, or fairly valued?
- 4 What is the intrinsic value if the growth rate estimate is lowered to 4.4 percent?
- 5 What is the intrinsic value if the growth rate estimate is lowered to 4.4 percent and the required rate of return estimate is increased to 8.5 percent?

Solution to 1:

$$V_0 = \frac{\text{€}3.70(1 + 0.054)}{0.075 - 0.054} = \text{€}184.20$$

Solution to 2:

$$€184.20 - \frac{€3.70}{0.075} = €134.87$$

Solution to 3:

A share of Siemens appears to be undervalued. The analyst, before making a recommendation, might consider how realistic the estimated inputs are and check the sensitivity of the estimated value to changes in the inputs.

Solution to 4:

$$V_0 = \frac{€3.70(1 + 0.044)}{0.075 - 0.044} = €124.61$$

Solution to 5:

$$V_0 = \frac{€3.70(1 + 0.044)}{0.085 - 0.044} = €94.21$$

The Gordon growth model estimate of intrinsic value is extremely sensitive to the choice of required rate of return r and growth rate g . It is possible that the growth rate assumption and the required return assumption used initially were too high. Worldwide economic growth is typically in the low single digits, which may mean that a large company such as Siemens may struggle to grow dividends at 5.4 percent into perpetuity. Exhibit 4 presents a further sensitivity analysis of Siemens's intrinsic value to the required return and growth estimates.

Exhibit 4 Sensitivity Analysis of the Intrinsic-Value Estimate for Siemens AG

	$g = 2.5\%$	$g = 3.5\%$	$g = 4.5\%$	$g = 5.5\%$	$g = 6.5\%$
$r = 6\%$	€108.4	€153.2	€257.8	€780.7	—
$r = 7\%$	€84.3	€109.4	€154.7	€260.2	€788.1
$r = 8\%$	€69.0	€85.1	€110.5	€156.1	€262.7
$r = 9\%$	€58.3	€69.6	€85.9	€111.5	€157.6
$r = 10\%$	€50.6	€58.9	€70.3	€86.7	€112.6

Note that no value is shown when the growth rate exceeds the required rate of return. The Gordon growth model assumes that the growth rate cannot be greater than the required rate of return.

The assumptions of the Gordon model are as follows:

- Dividends are the correct metric to use for valuation purposes.
- The dividend growth rate is forever: It is perpetual and never changes.
- The required rate of return is also constant over time.
- The dividend growth rate is strictly less than the required rate of return.

An analyst might be dissatisfied with these assumptions for many reasons. The equities being examined might not currently pay a dividend. The Gordon assumptions might be too simplistic to reflect the characteristics of the companies being evaluated. Some alternatives to using the Gordon model are as follows:

- Use a more robust DDM that allows for varying patterns of growth.
- Use a cash flow measure other than dividends for valuation purposes.
- Use some other approach (such as a multiplier method) to valuation.

Applying a DDM is difficult if the company being analyzed is not currently paying a dividend. A company may not be paying a dividend if 1) the investment opportunities the company has are all so attractive that the retention and reinvestment of funds is preferable, from a return perspective, to the distribution of a dividend to shareholders or 2) the company is in such shaky financial condition that it cannot afford to pay a dividend. An analyst might still use a DDM to value such companies by assuming that dividends will begin at some future point in time. The analyst might further assume that constant growth occurs after that date and use the Gordon growth model for valuation. Extrapolating from no current dividend, however, generally yields highly uncertain forecasts. Analysts typically choose to use one or more of the alternatives instead of or as a supplement to the Gordon growth model.

EXAMPLE 8

Gordon Growth Model in the Case of No Current Dividend

A company does not currently pay a dividend but is expected to begin to do so in five years (at $t = 5$). The first dividend is expected to be \$4.00 and to be received five years from today. That dividend is expected to grow at 6 percent into perpetuity. The required return is 10 percent. What is the estimated current intrinsic value?

Solution:

The analyst can value the share in two pieces:

- 1 The analyst uses the Gordon growth model to estimate the value at $t = 5$; in the model, the year-ahead dividend is $\$4(1.06)$. Then the analyst finds the present value of this value as of $t = 0$.
- 2 The analyst finds the present value of the \$4 dividend not “counted” in the estimate in Piece 1 (which values dividends from $t = 6$ onward). Note that the statement of the problem implies that $D_0, D_1, D_2, D_3,$ and D_4 are zero.

Piece 1: The value of this piece is \$65.818:

$$V_n = \frac{D_n(1+g)}{r-g} = \frac{D_{n+1}}{r-g}$$

$$V_5 = \frac{\$4(1+0.06)}{0.10-0.06} = \frac{\$4.24}{0.04} = \$106$$

$$V_0 = \frac{\$106}{(1+0.10)^5} = \$65.818$$

Piece 2: The value of this piece is \$2.484:

$$V_0 = \frac{\$4}{(1+0.10)^5} = \$2.484$$

The sum of the two pieces is $\$65.818 + \$2.484 = \$68.30$.

Alternatively, the analyst could value the share at $t = 4$, the point at which dividends are expected to be paid in the following year and from which point they are expected to grow at a constant rate.

$$V_4 = \frac{\$4.00}{0.10 - 0.06} = \frac{\$4.00}{0.04} = \$100$$

$$V_0 = \frac{\$100}{(1 + 0.10)^4} = \$68.30$$

The next section addresses the application of the DDM with more flexible assumptions as to the dividend growth rate.

4.5 Multistage Dividend Discount Models

Multistage growth models are often used to model rapidly growing companies. The *two-stage DDM* assumes that at some point the company will begin to pay dividends that grow at a constant rate, but prior to that time the company will pay dividends that are growing at a higher rate than can be sustained in the long run. That is, the company is assumed to experience an initial, finite period of high growth, perhaps prior to the entry of competitors, followed by an infinite period of sustainable growth. The two-stage DDM thus makes use of two growth rates: a high growth rate for an initial, finite period followed by a lower, sustainable growth rate into perpetuity. The Gordon growth model is used to estimate a terminal value at time n that reflects the present value at time n of the dividends received during the sustainable growth period.

Equation 11 will be used here as the starting point for a two-stage valuation model. The two-stage valuation model is similar to Example 8 except that instead of assuming zero dividends for the initial period, the analyst assumes that dividends will exhibit a high rate of growth during the initial period. Equation 11 values the dividends over the short-term period of high growth and the terminal value at the end of the period of high growth. The short-term growth rate, g_S , lasts for n years. The intrinsic value per share in year n , V_n , represents the year n value of the dividends received during the sustainable growth period or the terminal value at time n . V_n can be estimated by using the Gordon growth model as shown in Equation 12, where g_L is the long-term or sustainable growth rate. The dividend in year $n + 1$, D_{n+1} , can be determined by using Equation 13:

$$V_0 = \sum_{t=1}^n \frac{D_0(1 + g_S)^t}{(1 + r)^t} + \frac{V_n}{(1 + r)^n} \quad (11)$$

$$V_n = \frac{D_{n+1}}{r - g_L} \quad (12)$$

$$D_{n+1} = D_0(1 + g_S)^n(1 + g_L) \quad (13)$$

EXAMPLE 9

Applying the Two-Stage Dividend Discount Model

The current dividend, D_0 , is \$5.00. Growth is expected to be 10 percent a year for three years and then 5 percent thereafter. The required rate of return is 15 percent. Estimate the intrinsic value.

Solution:

$$D_1 = \$5.00(1 + 0.10) = \$5.50$$

$$D_2 = \$5.00(1 + 0.10)^2 = \$6.05$$

$$D_3 = \$5.00(1 + 0.10)^3 = \$6.655$$

$$D_4 = \$5.00(1 + 0.10)^3(1 + 0.05) = \$6.98775$$

$$V_3 = \frac{\$6.98775}{0.15 - 0.05} = \$69.8775$$

$$V_0 = \frac{\$5.50}{(1 + 0.15)} + \frac{\$6.05}{(1 + 0.15)^2} + \frac{\$6.655}{(1 + 0.15)^3} + \frac{\$69.8775}{(1 + 0.15)^3} \approx \$59.68$$

The DDM can be extended to as many stages as deemed appropriate. For most publicly traded companies (that is, companies beyond the start-up stage), practitioners assume growth will ultimately fall into three stages: 1) growth, 2) transition, and 3) maturity. This assumption supports the use of a *three-stage DDM*, which makes use of three growth rates: a high growth rate for an initial finite period, followed by a lower growth rate for a finite second period, followed by a lower, sustainable growth rate into perpetuity.

One can make the case that a three-stage DDM would be most appropriate for a fairly young company, one that is just entering the growth phase. The two-stage DDM would be appropriate to estimate the value of an older company that has already moved through its growth phase and is currently in the transition phase (a period with a higher growth rate than the sustainable growth rate) prior to moving to the maturity phase (the period with a lower, sustainable growth rate).

However, the choice of a two-stage DDM need not rely solely on the age of a company. Long-established companies sometimes manage to restart above-average growth through, for example, innovation, expansion to new markets, or acquisitions. Or a company's long-run growth rate may be interrupted by a period of subnormal performance. If growth is expected to moderate (in the first case) or improve (in the second case) toward some long-term growth rate, a two-stage DDM may be appropriate. Thus, we chose a two-stage DDM to value Brown-Forman in Example 10.

EXAMPLE 10**Two-Stage Dividend Discount Model: Brown-Forman**

Brown-Forman Corporation is a diversified producer of wines and spirits. It was founded in 1870 by George Garvin Brown in Louisville, Kentucky, USA. His original brand, Old Forester Kentucky Straight Bourbon Whisky, was America's first bottled bourbon. Brown-Forman, one of the largest American-owned spirits and wine companies and among the top 10 largest global spirits companies, sells its brands in more than 135 countries and has offices in cities across the globe. In all, Brown-Forman has more than 35 brands in its portfolio of wines and spirits.

The 30 January 2009 *Value Line* report on Brown-Forman appears in Exhibit 5. Brown-Forman has increased its dividends every year except 2000, when the dividend remained at US\$0.50 as it was in 1999. On the left side of the report, in the section titled "Annual Rates," dividend growth is shown as 7.5 percent for the past 10 years, 11 percent for the past 5 years, and estimated 5 percent for 2005–2007 to 2011–2013. After a period of growth through acquisition and merger, the pattern suggests that Brown-Forman may be transitioning to a mature growth phase.

The two-stage DDM is arguably a good choice for valuing Brown Forman because the company appears to be transitioning from a high-growth phase (note the 11 percent dividend growth for the past 5 years) to a lower-growth phase (note the forecast of 5 percent dividend growth to 2011–2013). The analyst discussion refers to the company facing “short-term obstacles” and states that the company’s “capital appreciation potential for the 3- to 5-year time frame is well below average.”

The CAPM can be used to estimate the required return, r , for Brown-Forman. The *Value Line* report (in the upper left corner) estimates beta to be 0.70. Using the yield of about 3.1 percent on 10-year US Treasury notes as a proxy for the risk-free rate and assuming an equity risk premium of 5.0 percent, we find the estimate for r would be 6.6 percent [$3.1\% + 0.70(5.0\%)$].

To estimate the intrinsic value at the end of 2008, we use the 2008 dividend of US\$1.08 from the *Value Line* report. The dividend is assumed to grow at a rate of 6.5 percent for two years and then 4.0 percent thereafter. The growth rate assumption for the first stage is consistent with the *Value Line* forecast for 2008 to 2009 growth. The assumption of a 4.0 percent perpetual growth rate produces a five-year growth rate assumption near 5 percent,⁴ which is consistent with the *Value Line* forecast of 5 percent growth to 2011–2013. Thus:

$$D_{2009} = \text{US\$}1.08(1 + 0.065) = \text{US\$}1.1502$$

$$D_{2010} = \text{US\$}1.08(1 + 0.065)^2 = \text{US\$}1.224963$$

$$D_{2011} = \text{US\$}1.08(1 + 0.065)^2(1 + 0.04) = \text{US\$}1.273962$$

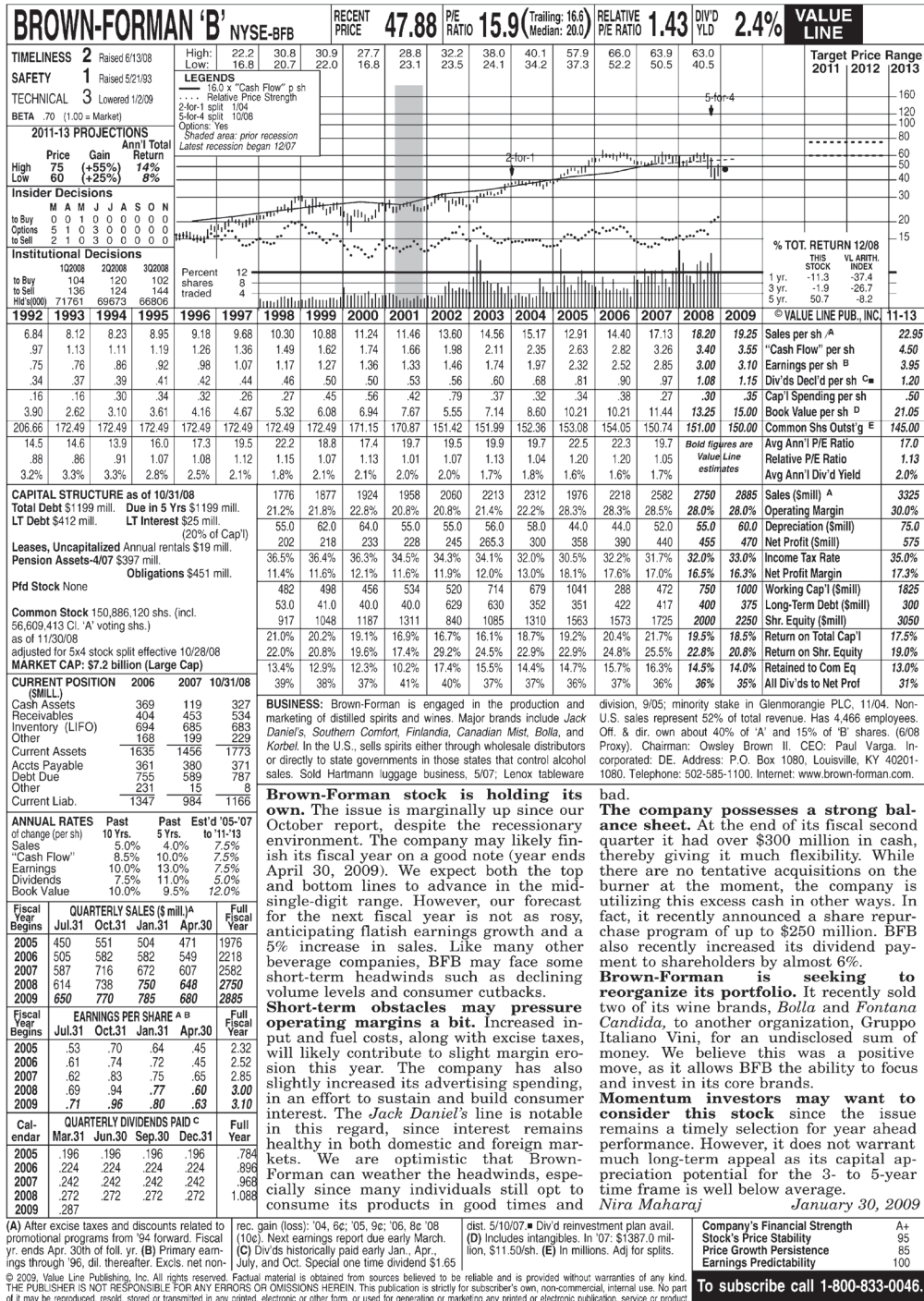
$$V_{2010} = \frac{\text{US\$}1.273962}{0.066 - 0.04} = \text{US\$}48.99854$$

$$V_{2008} = \frac{\text{US\$}1.1502}{(1 + 0.066)} + \frac{\text{US\$}1.224963}{(1 + 0.066)^2} + \frac{\text{US\$}48.99854}{(1 + 0.066)^2} \approx \text{US\$}45.28$$

Given a recent price of US\$47.88, as noted at the top of the *Value Line* report, the intrinsic-value estimate of US\$45.28 suggests that Brown-Forman is modestly overvalued.

⁴ The exact geometric average annual growth rate can be determined as $[(1+0.065)(1+0.065)(1+0.04)(1+0.04)(1.04)]^{1/5} - 1 = 0.049929 \approx 5.0\%$.

Exhibit 5 Value Line Report on Brown-Forman



Source: © 2009 Value Line, Inc. All Rights Reserved Worldwide. "Value Line" is a registered trademark of Value Line, Inc. Value Line Geometric and Arithmetic Indices calculated by Thomson Reuters. Information supplied by Thomson Reuters.

MULTIPLIER MODELS

5

The term **price multiple** refers to a ratio that compares the share price with some sort of monetary flow or value to allow evaluation of the relative worth of a company's stock. Some practitioners use price ratios as a screening mechanism. If the ratio falls below a specified value, the shares are identified as candidates for purchase, and if the ratio exceeds a specified value, the shares are identified as candidates for sale. Many practitioners use ratios when examining a group or sector of stocks and consider the shares for which the ratio is relatively low to be attractively valued securities.

Price multiples that are used by security analysts include the following:

- **Price-to-earnings ratio (P/E).** This measure is the ratio of the stock price to earnings per share. P/E is arguably the price multiple most frequently cited by the media and used by analysts and investors (Block 1999). The seminal works of McWilliams (1966), Miller and Widmann (1966), Nicholson (1968), Dreman (1977), and Basu (1977) presented evidence of a return advantage to low-P/E stocks.
- **Price-to-book ratio (P/B).** The ratio of the stock price to book value per share. Considerable evidence suggests that P/B multiples are inversely related to future rates of return (Fama and French 1995).
- **Price-to-sales ratio (P/S).** This measure is the ratio of stock price to sales per share. O'Shaughnessy (2005) provided evidence that a low P/S multiple is the most useful multiple for predicting future returns.
- **Price-to-cash-flow ratio (P/CF).** This measure is the ratio of stock price to some per-share measure of cash flow. The measures of cash flow include free cash flow (FCF) and operating cash flow (OCF).

A common criticism of all of these multiples is that they do not consider the future. This criticism is true if the multiple is calculated from trailing or current values of the divisor. Practitioners seek to counter this criticism by a variety of techniques, including forecasting fundamental values (the divisors) one or more years into the future. The resulting forward (leading or prospective) price multiples may differ markedly from the trailing price multiples. In the absence of an explicit forecast of fundamental values, the analyst is making an implicit forecast of the future when implementing such models. The choice of price multiple—trailing or forward—should be used consistently for companies being compared.

Besides the traditional price multiples used in valuation, just presented, analysts need to know how to calculate and interpret other ratios. Such ratios include those used to analyze business performance and financial condition based on data reported in financial statements. In addition, many industries have specialized measures of business performance that analysts covering those industries should be familiar with. In analyzing cable television companies, for example, the ratio of total market value of the company to the total number of subscribers is commonly used. Another common measure is revenue per subscriber. In the oil industry, a commonly cited ratio is proved reserves per common share. Industry-specific or sector-specific ratios such as these can be used to understand the key business variables in an industry or sector as well as to highlight attractively valued securities.

5.1 Relationships among Price Multiples, Present Value Models, and Fundamentals

Price multiples are frequently used independently of present value models. One price multiple valuation approach, the method of comparables, does not involve cash flow forecasts or discounting to present value. A price multiple is often related to fundamentals through a discounted cash flow model, however, such as the Gordon growth model. Understanding such connections can deepen the analyst's appreciation of the factors that affect the value of a multiple and often can help explain reasons for differences in multiples that do not involve mispricing. The expressions that are developed can be interpreted as the *justified value* of a multiple—that is, the value justified by (based on) fundamentals or a set of cash flow predictions. These expressions are an alternative way of presenting intrinsic-value estimates.

As an example, using the Gordon growth model identified previously in Equation 9 and assuming that price equals intrinsic value ($P_0 = V_0$), we can restate Equation 9 as follows:

$$P_0 = \frac{D_1}{r - g} \quad (9.1)$$

To arrive at the model for the justified forward P/E given in Equation 14, we divide both sides of Equation 9.1 by a forecast for next year's earnings, E_1 . In Equation 14, the dividend payout ratio, p , is the ratio of dividends to earnings:

$$\frac{P_0}{E_1} = \frac{D_1/E_1}{r - g} = \frac{p}{r - g} \quad (14)$$

Equation 14 indicates that the P/E is inversely related to the required rate of return and positively related to the growth rate; that is, as the required rate of return increases, the P/E declines, and as the growth rate increases, the P/E increases. The P/E and the payout ratio appear to be positively related. This relationship may not be true, however, because a higher payout ratio may imply a slower growth rate as a result of the company retaining a lower proportion of earnings for reinvestment. This phenomenon is referred to as the dividend displacement of earnings.

EXAMPLE 11

Value Estimate Based on Fundamentals

Petroleo Brasileiro SA, commonly known as Petrobras, was once labeled “the most expensive oil company” by Bloomberg.com. Data for Petrobras and the oil industry, including the trailing twelve-month (TTM) P/E and payout ratios, appear below.

	Petrobras	Industry
P/E ratio (TTM)	11.77	7.23
Payout ratio (TTM) (%)	24.40	21.66
EPS 5-year growth rate (%)	26.35	15.46
EPS (MRQ) vs. Qtr. 1 yr. ago (% change)	-41.44	-127.53

Note: MRQ stands for “most recent quarter.”

Source: Reuters.

Explain how the information shown supports a higher P/E for Petrobras than for the industry.

Solution:

The data support a higher P/E for Petrobras because its payout ratio and five-year EPS growth rate exceed those of the industry. Equation 14 implies a positive relationship between the payout ratio and the P/E multiple. A higher payout ratio supports a higher P/E. Furthermore, to the extent that higher EPS growth implies a high growth rate in dividends, the high EPS growth rate supports a high P/E. Although the Petrobras quarterly EPS have declined relative to EPS of a year ago, the decline is less than that of the industry.

EXAMPLE 12**Determining Justified Forward P/E**

Heinrich Gladisch, CFA, is estimating the justified forward P/E for Nestlé, one of the world's leading nutrition and health companies. Gladisch notes that sales for 2016 were SFr89.47 billion (US\$90.4 billion) and that net income was SFr8.53 billion (US\$8.62 billion). He organizes the data for EPS, dividends per share, and the dividend payout ratio for the years 2012–2016 in the following table:

	2012	2013	2014	2015	2016
Earnings per share	SFr3.21	SFr3.14	SFr4.54	SFr2.90	SFr2.76
<i>Year over year % change</i>		–2.2%	44.6%	–36.1%	–4.8%
Dividend per share	SFr2.05	SFr2.15	SFr2.2	SFr2.25	SFr2.3
<i>Year over year % change</i>		4.9%	2.3%	2.3%	2.2%
Dividend payout ratio	63.9%	68.5%	48.5%	77.6%	83.3%

Gladisch calculates that ROE averaged 22 percent in the period 2012–2015 but was below that level at 13.4 percent in 2016. In that year, however, Nestlé's reported net income included a large nonrecurring component. The company reported 2016 "underlying earnings," which it defined as net income "from continuing operations before impairments, restructuring costs, results on disposals and significant one-off items," to be SFr3.40, giving an adjusted 17% ROE. Predicting increasing pressure on Nestlé's profit margins from lower-priced goods, particularly in developed markets, Gladisch estimates a long-run ROE of 16 percent.

Gladisch decides that the dividend payout ratios of the 2012–2015 period—averaging 64.6 percent—are more representative of Nestlé's future payout ratio than is the high 2016 dividend payout ratio (when based on reported earnings). The dividend payout ratio in 2016 was higher because management apparently based the 2016 dividend on the components of net income that were expected to continue into the future. But basing a dividend on net income including non-recurring items creates the potential need to increase dividends in the future. Rounding up the 2012–2016 average, Gladisch settles on an estimate of 65 percent for the dividend payout ratio for use in calculating a justified forward P/E using Equation 14.

Gladisch's firm estimates that the required rate of return for Nestlé's shares is 9 percent per year. Gladisch also finds the following data at the opposite ends of the spectrum of external research analyst forecasts:

	2017E	2018E
Most optimistic analyst forecast:		
EPS	SFr3.69	SFr4.15
<i>Year over year % change</i>	33.7%	12.5%
P/E (based on a target price of SFr105)	28.5	25.3
Least optimistic analyst forecast:		
EPS	SFr3.13	SFr3.42
<i>Year over year % change</i>	13.4%	9.3%
P/E (based on a target price of SFr68)	21.7	19.9

- 1 Based only on information and estimates developed by Gladisch and his firm, estimate Nestlé's justified forward P/E.
- 2 Compare and contrast the justified forward P/E estimate from Question 1 to the estimates from each end of the spectrum of external research analysts forecasts.

Solution to 1:

The estimate of the justified forward P/E is 19.1. The dividend growth rate can be estimated by using Equation 10 as $(1 - \text{Dividend payout ratio}) \times \text{ROE} = (1 - 0.65) \times 0.16 = 0.056$, or 5.6 percent. Therefore,

$$\frac{P_0}{E_1} = \frac{\text{Payout}}{r - g} = \frac{0.65}{0.09 - 0.056} = 19.1$$

Solution to 2:

The estimated justified forward P/E of 19.1 is lower than the justified 2017 P/E estimates of 28.5 and 21.7 of the two analysts. Using a required rate of return of 8.5 percent rather than 9 percent results in a justified forward P/E estimate of $22.4 = 0.65 / (0.085 - 0.056)$. Using an ROE of 22 percent (the average ROE of the 2012–2015 period) rather than 16 percent results in a justified forward P/E estimate of $50.0 = 0.65 / [0.09 - (0.35)(0.22)] = 0.65 / (0.09 - 0.077)$. The justified forward P/E is very sensitive to changes in the inputs.

Justified forward P/E estimates can be sensitive to small changes in assumptions. Therefore, analysts can benefit from carrying out a sensitivity analysis, as shown in Exhibit 6, which is based on Example 12. Exhibit 6 shows how the justified forward P/E varies with changes in the estimates for the dividend payout ratio (columns) and return on equity. The dividend growth rate (rows) changes because of changes in the retention rate $(1 - \text{Payout rate})$ and ROE. Recall $g = \text{ROE times retention rate}$.

Exhibit 6 Estimates for Nestlé's Justified Forward P/E (Required Rate of Return = 9 Percent)

Constant Dividend Growth Rate (%)	Dividend Payout Ratio				
	55%	60%	65%	70%	75%
4.0	11.0	12.0	13.0	14.0	15.0
4.5	12.2	13.3	14.4	15.6	16.7
5.0	13.8	15.0	16.3	17.5	18.8
5.5	15.7	17.1	18.6	20.0	21.4

Exhibit 6 (Continued)

Constant Dividend Growth Rate (%)	Dividend Payout Ratio				
	55%	60%	65%	70%	75%
6.0	18.3	20.0	21.7	23.3	25.0
6.5	22.0	24.0	26.0	28.0	30.0
7.0	27.5	30.0	32.5	35.0	37.5
7.5	36.7	40.0	43.3	46.7	50.0

5.2 The Method of Comparables

The method of comparables is the most widely used approach for analysts reporting valuation judgments on the basis of price multiples. This method essentially compares relative values estimated using multiples or the relative values of multiples. The economic rationale underlying the method of comparables is the **law of one price**: Identical assets should sell for the same price. The methodology involves using a price multiple to evaluate whether an asset is fairly valued, undervalued, or overvalued in relation to a benchmark value of the multiple. Choices for the benchmark multiple include the multiple of a closely matched individual stock or the average or median value of the multiple for the stock's industry. Some analysts perform trend or time-series analyses and use past or average values of a price multiple as a benchmark.

Identifying individual companies or even an industry as the “comparable” may present a challenge. Many large corporations operate in several lines of business, so the scale and scope of their operations can vary significantly. When identifying comparables (sometimes referred to as “comps”), the analyst should be careful to identify companies that are most similar according to a number of dimensions. These dimensions include (but are not limited to) overall size, product lines, and growth rate. The type of analysis shown in Section 5.1 relating multiples to fundamentals is a productive way to identify the fundamental variables that should be taken into account in identifying comparables.

EXAMPLE 13

Method of Comparables (1)

As noted previously, P/E is a price multiple frequently used by analysts. Using P/E in the method of comparables can be problematic, however, as a result of business cycle effects on EPS. An alternative valuation tool that is useful during periods of economic slowdown or extraordinary growth is the P/S multiple. Although sales will decline during a recession and increase during a period of economic growth, the change in sales will be less than the change in earnings in percentage terms because earnings are heavily influenced by fixed operating and financing costs (operating and financial leverage).

The following data provide the P/S for most of the major automobile manufacturers as at December 2017:

Company	P/S
Peugeot	0.28
Ford Motor	0.33
General Motors	0.36

(continued)

Company	P/S
Nissan Motor	0.38
Honda Motor	0.46
Tata Motors	0.49
Daimler	0.55
BMW	0.57
Toyota Motor	0.80

Sources: Morningstar and company websites.

Based on the data presented, which stock appears to be undervalued when compared with the others?

Solution:

The P/S analysis suggests that Peugeot shares offer the best value. An analyst must be alert for a range of potential explanations of apparently low or high multiples when performing comparables analysis, rather than just assuming a relative mispricing.

EXAMPLE 14

Method of Comparables (2)

Incorporated in the Netherlands, Airbus is active in the aerospace and defense industry. It is a dominant aerospace company in Europe. Its largest business, Airbus Commercial Aircraft, is a manufacturing company with bases in several European countries and accounts for the majority of Airbus SE profits. Airbus and its primary competitor, Boeing, control most of the global commercial airplane industry.

Comparisons are frequently made between Airbus and Boeing. As noted in Exhibit 7, the companies are broadly similar in size as measured by total revenues. Converting total forecast revenues from euros to US dollars using the average exchange rate for 2017 of US\$1.13/€ results in a value of \$75.5 billion for Airbus's total revenues. Thus, total revenues for Boeing are expected to be about a fifth higher than those for Boeing.

The companies do differ, however, in several important areas. Airbus derives a greater share of its revenue from commercial aircraft production than does Boeing, and the order backlog for Airbus is much higher than that for Boeing. Converting the Airbus order backlog from euros to US dollars using the quarter-end rate for September 2017 of \$1.1813/€ results in a value of \$1.12 billion for Airbus's order backlog. Thus, the order backlog for Airbus is more than twice as high as the backlog for Boeing.⁵

⁵ Exchange rate data are available from FRED (Federal Reserve Economic Data) at <http://research.stlouisfed.org/fred2/>. Each company uses slightly different methodology for calculating order backlog.

Exhibit 7 Data for EADS and Boeing

	Airbus	Boeing
Total revenues (billions, 2017)	€66.8	\$92.2
Annual revenue growth (2015–2017 average)	1.8%	–2.1%
Percent of revenues from commercial aircraft	75%	69%
Order backlog (billions)	€945	\$474
Share price, 12/Dec/17	€86.96	\$283.73
EPS (basic)	€3.33	\$10.18
DPS	€1.48	\$5.7
Dividend payout ratio	44%	56%
P/E ratio	26.1	27.9

Note: 2017 forecast data and YTD average exchange rate as of 12 December 2017. Order backlog as of 30 September 2017.

Sources: Company websites: www.airbus.com and www.boeing.com, *Financial Times*.

What data shown in Exhibit 7 support a higher P/E for Boeing than for Airbus?

Solution:

Recall from Equation 14 and the discussion that followed it that P/E is directly related to the payout ratio and the dividend growth rate. The P/E is inversely related to the required rate of return. The only data presented in Exhibit 7 that support a higher P/E for Boeing is the company's higher dividend payout ratio (expected at 56 percent versus 44 percent for Airbus).

The following implicitly supports a higher P/E for Airbus: Airbus has higher revenue growth (as reported for 2016 and expected for 2017) and a higher backlog of orders, suggesting that it may have a higher future growth rate.

EXAMPLE 15**Method of Comparables (3)**

Canon Inc. is a leading worldwide manufacturer of business machines, cameras, and optical products. Canon was founded in 1937 as a camera manufacturer and is incorporated in Tokyo. The corporate philosophy of Canon is *kyosei* or "living and working together for the common good." The following data can be used to determine a P/E for Canon over the time period 2011–2016. Analyze the P/E of Canon over time and discuss the valuation of Canon.

Year	Price (a)	EPS (b)	P/E (a) ÷ (b)
2012	¥3,340	¥191.3	17.5
2013	¥3,330	¥200.8	16.6
2014	¥3,840.5	¥229.0	16.8

(continued)

Year	Price (a)	EPS (b)	P/E (a) ÷ (b)
2015	¥3,675	¥201.7	18.2
2016	¥3,295	¥138	23.9

Sources: EPS, year-end prices, and P/E data are from Morningstar and the *Financial Times*.

Solution:

Trend analysis of Canon's P/E reveals a peak of 23.9 at the end of 2016. The 2013 P/E of 16.6 is the lowest of the five years reported. This finding suggests that Canon's share price may be overpriced as of year-end 2016. A bearish case for Canon's stock can be made if an analyst believes that P/E will return to its historical average (18.6 over this five-year period) or be lower. Such a bearish prediction requires that a decrease in P/E not be offset by an increase in EPS. A bullish case can be made if the analyst believes the stock deserves re-rating and an even higher than trend P/E.

5.3 Illustration of a Valuation Based on Price Multiples

Telefónica S.A., a world leader in the telecommunication sector, provides communication, information, and entertainment products and services in Europe, Africa, and Latin America. It has operated in its home country of Spain since 1924, but as of 2008, more than 60 percent of its business was outside its home market.

Deutsche Telekom AG provides network access, communication services, and value-added services via fixed and mobile networks. It generates more than half of its revenues outside its home country, Germany.

Exhibit 8 provides comparable data for these two communication giants for 2006–2008.

Exhibit 8 Data for Telefónica and Deutsche Telekom

	Telefónica			Deutsche Telekom		
	2008	2007	2006	2008	2007	2006
(1) Total assets (€ billions)	99.9	105.9	109.0	123.1	120.7	130.2
<i>Asset growth</i>	–5.7%	–2.8%	—	2.0%	–7.3%	—
(2) Net revenues (€ billions)	57.9	56.4	52.9	61.7	62.5	61.3
<i>Revenue growth</i>	2.7%	6.6%	—	–1.3%	2.0%	—
(3) Net cash flow from operating activities (€ billions)	16.4	15.6	15.4	15.4	13.7	14.2
<i>Cash flow growth</i>	5.1%	1.3%	—	12.4%	–3.5%	—
(4) Book value of common shareholders' equity (€ billions)	19.6	22.9	20.0	43.1	45.2	49.7
<i>Debt ratio:</i> $1 - [(4) \div (1)]$	80.4%	78.4%	81.7%	65.0%	62.6%	61.8%
(5) Net profit (€ billions)	7.8	9.1	6.6	1.5	0.6	3.2
<i>Earnings growth</i>	–14.3%	37.9%	—	150.0%	–81.3%	—

Exhibit 8 (Continued)

	Telefónica			Deutsche Telekom		
	2008	2007	2006	2008	2007	2006
(6) Weighted average number of shares outstanding (millions)	4,646	4,759	4,779	4,340	4,339	4,353
(7) Price per share (€)	15.85	22.22	16.22	10.75	15.02	13.84
<i>Price-to-revenue ratio (P/R):</i> (7) ÷ [(2) ÷ (6)]	1.3	1.9	1.5	0.8	1.0	1.0
<i>P/CF:</i> (7) ÷ [(3) ÷ (6)]	4.5	6.8	5.0	3.0	4.8	4.2
<i>P/B:</i> (7) ÷ [(4) ÷ (6)]	3.8	4.6	3.9	1.1	1.4	1.2
<i>P/E:</i> (7) ÷ [(5) ÷ (6)]	9.4	11.6	11.7	31.1	108.6	18.8

Sources: Company websites: www.telefonica.es and www.deutschetelekom.com.

Time-series analysis of all price multiples in Exhibit 8 suggests that both companies are currently attractively valued. For example, the 2008 price-to-revenue ratio (P/R) of 1.3 for Telefónica is below the 2006–2008 average for this ratio of approximately 1.6. The 2008 P/CF of 3.0 for Deutsche Telekom is below the 2006–2008 average for this ratio of approximately 4.0.

A comparative analysis produces somewhat mixed results. The 2008 values for Deutsche Telekom for the P/R, P/CF, P/B multiples are lower than those for Telefónica. This result suggests that Deutsche Telekom is attractively valued when compared with Telefónica. The 2008 P/E for Telefónica, however, is much lower than for Deutsche Telekom.

An analyst investigating these contradictory results would look for information not reported in Exhibit 8. For example, the earnings before interest, taxes, depreciation, and amortization (EBITDA) for Telefónica was €22.9 billion in 2008. The EBITDA value for Deutsche Telekom was €18.0 billion in 2008. The 2008 price-to-EBITDA ratio for Telefónica is $[(15.85 \times 4,646)/22,900]$ or $[15.85/(22,900/4,646)] = 3.2$, whereas the 2008 price-to-EBITDA ratio for Deutsche Telekom is 2.6. Thus, the higher P/E for Deutsche Telekom may be explained by higher depreciation charges, higher interest costs, and/or a greater tax burden.

In summary, the major advantage of using price multiples is that they allow for relative comparisons, both cross-sectional (versus the market or another comparable) and in time series. The approach can be especially beneficial for analysts who are assigned to a particular industry or sector and need to identify the expected best performing stocks within that sector. Price multiples are popular with investors because the multiples can be calculated easily and many multiples are readily available from financial websites and newspapers.

Caution is necessary. A stock may be relatively undervalued when compared with its benchmarks but overvalued when compared with an estimate of intrinsic value as determined by one of the discounted cash flow methodologies. Furthermore, differences in reporting rules among different markets and in chosen accounting methods can result in revenues, earnings, book values, and cash flows that are not easily comparable. These differences can, in turn, result in multiples that are not easily comparable. Finally, the multiples for cyclical companies may be highly influenced by current economic conditions.

5.4 Enterprise Value

An alternative to estimating the value of equity is to estimate the value of the enterprise. Enterprise value is most frequently determined as market capitalization plus market value of preferred stock plus market value of debt minus cash and investments (cash equivalents and short-term investments). Enterprise value is often viewed as the cost of a takeover: In the event of a buyout, the acquiring company assumes the acquired company's debt but also receives its cash. Enterprise value is most useful when comparing companies with significant differences in capital structure.

Enterprise value (EV) multiples are widely used in Europe, with EV/EBITDA arguably the most common. EBITDA is a proxy for operating cash flow because it excludes depreciation and amortization. EBITDA may include other non-cash expenses, however, and non-cash revenues. EBITDA can be viewed as a source of funds to pay interest, dividends, and taxes. Because EBITDA is calculated prior to payment to any of the company's financial stakeholders, using it to estimate enterprise value is logically appropriate.

Using enterprise value instead of market capitalization to determine a multiple can be useful to analysts. Even where the P/E is problematic because of negative earnings, the EV/EBITDA multiple can generally be computed because EBITDA is usually positive. An alternative to using EBITDA in EV multiples is to use operating income.

In practice, analysts may have difficulty accurately assessing enterprise value if they do not have access to market quotations for the company's debt. When current market quotations are not available, bond values may be estimated from current quotations for bonds with similar maturity, sector, and credit characteristics. Substituting the book value of debt for the market value of debt provides only a rough estimate of the debt's market value. This is because market interest rates change and investors' perception of the issuer's credit risk may have changed since the debt was issued.

EXAMPLE 16

Estimating the Market Value of Debt and Enterprise Value

Cameco Corporation is one of the world's largest uranium producers; it accounts for 15 percent of world production from its mines in Canada and the United States. Cameco estimates it has about 226,796,185 kilograms of proven and probable reserves and holds premier land positions in the world's most promising areas for new uranium discoveries in Canada and Australia. Cameco is also a leading provider of processing services required to produce fuel for nuclear power plants. It generates 1,000 megawatts of electricity through a partnership in North America's largest nuclear generating station located in Ontario, Canada.

For simplicity of exposition in this example, we will present share counts in thousands and all dollar amounts in thousands of Canadian dollars. In 2008, Cameco had 350,130 shares outstanding. Its 2008 year-end share price was \$20.99. Therefore, Cameco's 2008 year-end market capitalization was \$7,349,229.

In its 2008 Annual Report (available at www.cameco.com), Cameco reported total debt and other liabilities of \$2,716,475. The company presented the following schedule for long-term debt payments:

Year	Payment
2009	\$10,175
2010	453,288
2011	13,272
2012	317,452

Year	Payment
2013	16,325
Thereafter	412,645
Total	\$1,223,157

Cameco's longest maturity debt matures in 2018. We will assume that the \$412,645 to be paid "thereafter" will be paid in equal amounts of \$82,529 over the 2014 to 2018 time period. A yield curve for zero-coupon Canadian government securities was available from the Bank of Canada. The yield-curve data and assumed risk premiums in Exhibit 9 were used to estimate the market value of Cameco's long-term debt:

Exhibit 9 Estimated Market Value

Year	Yield on Zero-Coupon Government Security (%)	Assumed Risk Premium (%)	Discount Rate (%)	Book Value	Market Value
2009	0.89	0.50	1.39	\$10,175	\$10,036
2010	1.11	1.00	2.11	\$453,288	\$434,748
2011	1.39	1.50	2.89	\$13,272	\$12,185
2012	1.65	2.00	3.65	\$317,452	\$275,043
2013	1.88	2.50	4.38	\$16,325	\$13,175
2014	2.10	3.00	5.10	\$82,529	\$61,234
2015	2.30	3.50	5.80	\$82,529	\$55,617
2016	2.50	4.00	6.50	\$82,529	\$49,867
2017	2.71	4.50	7.21	\$82,529	\$44,105
2018	2.92	5.00	7.92	\$82,529	\$38,511
				\$1,223,157	\$994,521

Note from Exhibit 9 that the book value of long-term debt is \$1,223,157 and its estimated market value is \$994,521. The book value of total debt and liabilities of \$2,716,475 minus the book value of long-term debt of \$1,223,157 is \$1,493,318. If we assume that the market value of that remaining debt is equal to its book value of \$1,493,318, an estimate of the market value of total debt and liabilities is that amount plus the estimated market value of long-term debt of \$994,521 or \$2,487,839.

At the end of 2008, Cameco had cash and equivalents of \$269,176. Enterprise value can be estimated as the \$7,349,229 market value of stock plus the \$2,487,839 market value of debt minus the \$269,176 cash and equivalents, or \$9,567,892. Cameco's 2008 EBITDA was \$1,078,606; an estimate of EV/EBITDA is, therefore, \$9,567,892 divided by \$1,078,606, or 8.9.

EXAMPLE 17**EV/Operating Income**

Exhibit 10 presents data for twelve major mining companies. Based only on the information in Exhibit 10, which two mining companies seem to be the *most* undervalued?

Exhibit 10 Data for Twelve Major Mining Companies

Company	EV (US\$ millions)	Operating Income (OI) (US\$ millions)	EV/OI
BHP Billiton	119,712.3	11,753	10.19
Rio Tinto	93,856.1	6,471	14.5
Vale	82,051.2	6,366	12.89
Glencore	80,772.0	-549	-147.13
Southern Copper	37,817.0	1,564	24.18
Freeport-McMoRan	33,452.0	-2,766	-12.09
Anglo American	32,870.3	2,562	12.83
Norilsk Nickel	22,483.0	3,377	6.66
Coal India	21,652.1	1,382	15.67
Barrick Gold	21,549.8	2,424	8.89
Newmont Mining	20,683.0	-65	-318.20
Goldcorp	12,986.7	369	35.19

Source: www.miningfeeds.com, Morningstar.

Solution:

Norilsk Nickel and Barrick Gold have the lowest EV/OI and thus appear to be the *most* undervalued or favorably priced on the basis of the EV/OI. Note the negative ratio for Glencore, Freeport-McMoRan, and Newmont Mining. Negative ratios are difficult to interpret, so other means are used to evaluate companies with negative ratios.

6**ASSET-BASED VALUATION**

An asset-based valuation of a company uses estimates of the market or fair value of the company's assets and liabilities. Thus, asset-based valuations work well for companies that do not have a high proportion of intangible or "off the books" assets and that do have a high proportion of current assets and current liabilities. The analyst may be able to value these companies' assets and liabilities in a reasonable fashion by starting with balance sheet items. For most companies, however, balance sheet values are different from market (fair) values, and the market (fair) values can be difficult to determine.

Asset-based valuation models are frequently used together with multiplier models to value private companies. As public companies increase reporting or disclosure of fair values, asset-based valuation may be increasingly used to supplement present value and multiplier models of valuation. Important facts that the practitioner should realize are as follows:

- Companies with assets that do not have easily determinable market (fair) values—such as those with significant property, plant, and equipment—are very difficult to analyze using asset valuation methods.
- Asset and liability fair values can be very different from the values at which they are carried on the balance sheet of a company.
- Some assets that are “intangible” are shown on the books of the company. Other intangible assets, such as the value from synergies or the value of a good business reputation, may not be shown on the books. Because asset-based valuation may not consider some intangibles, it can give a “floor” value for a situation involving a significant amount of intangibles. When a company has significant intangibles, the analyst should prefer a forward-looking cash flow valuation.
- Asset values may be more difficult to estimate in a hyper-inflationary environment.

We begin by discussing asset-based valuation for hypothetical nonpublic companies and then move on to a public company example. Analysts should consider the difficulties and rewards of using asset-based valuation for companies that are suited to this measure. Owners of small privately held businesses are familiar with valuations arrived at by valuing the assets of the company and then subtracting any relevant liabilities.

EXAMPLE 18

An Asset-Based Valuation of a Family-Owned Laundry

A family owns a laundry and the real estate on which the laundry stands. The real estate is collateral for an outstanding loan of \$100,000. How can asset-based valuation be used to value this business?

Solution:

The analyst should get at least two market appraisals for the real estate (building and land) and estimate the cost to extinguish the \$100,000 loan. This information would provide estimated values for everything except the laundry as a going concern. That is, the analyst has market values for the building and land and the loan but needs to value the laundry business. The analyst can value the assets of the laundry: the equipment and inventory. The equipment can be valued at depreciated value, inflation-adjusted depreciated value, or replacement cost. Replacement cost in this case means the amount that would have to be spent to buy equivalent used machines. This amount is the market value of the used machines. The analyst will recognize that any intangible value of the laundry (prime location, clever marketing, etc.) is being excluded, which will result in an inaccurate asset-based valuation.

Example 18 shows some of the subtleties present in applying asset-based valuation to determine company value. It also shows how asset-based valuation does not deal with intangibles. Example 19 emphasizes this point.

EXAMPLE 19**An Asset-Based Valuation of a Restaurant**

The business being valued is a restaurant that serves breakfast and lunch. The owner/proprietor wants to sell the business and retire. The restaurant space is rented, not owned. This particular restaurant is hugely popular because of the proprietor's cooking skills and secret recipes. How can the analyst value this business?

Solution:

Because of the intangibles, setting a value on this business is challenging. A multiple of income or revenue might be considered. But even those approaches overlook the fact that the proprietor may not be selling his secret recipes and, furthermore, does not intend to continue cooking. Some (or all) of the intangible assets may vanish when the business is sold. Asset-based valuation for this restaurant would begin with estimating the value of the restaurant equipment and inventory and subtracting the value of any liabilities. This approach will provide only a good baseline, however, for a minimum valuation.

For public companies, the assets will typically be so extensive that a piece-by-piece analysis will be impossible, and the transition from book value to market value is a nontrivial task. The asset-based valuation approach is most applicable when the market value of the corporate assets is readily determinable and the intangible assets, which are typically difficult to value, are a relatively small proportion of corporate assets. Asset-based valuation has also been applied to financial companies, natural resource companies, and formerly going-concerns that are being liquidated. Even for other types of companies, however, asset-based valuation of tangible assets may provide a baseline for a minimal valuation.

EXAMPLE 20**An Asset-Based Valuation of an Airline**

Consider the value of an airline company that has few routes, high labor and other operating costs, has stopped paying dividends, and is losing millions of dollars each year. Using most valuation approaches, the company will have a negative value. Why might an asset-based valuation approach be appropriate for use by one of the company's competitors that is considering acquisition of this airline?

Solution:

The airline's routes, landing rights, leases of airport facilities, and ground equipment and airplanes may have substantial value to a competitor. An asset-based approach to valuing this company would value the company's assets separately and aside from the money-losing business in which they are presently being utilized.

Analysts recognizing the uncertainties related to model appropriateness and the inputs to the models frequently use more than one model or type of model in valuation to increase their confidence in their estimates of intrinsic value. The choice of models will depend on the availability of information to put into the models. Example 21 illustrates the use of three valuation methods.

EXAMPLE 21**A Simple Example of the Use of Three Major Equity Valuation Models**

Company data for dividend per share (DPS), earnings per share (EPS), share price, and price-to-earnings ratio (P/E) for the most recent five years are presented in Exhibit 11. In addition, estimates (indicated by an “E” after the amount) of DPS and EPS for the next five years are shown. The valuation date is at the end of Year 5. The company has 1,000 shares outstanding.

Exhibit 11 Company DPS, EPS, Share Price, and P/E Data

Year	DPS	EPS	Share Price	TTM P/E
10	\$3.10E	\$5.20E	—	—
9	\$2.91E	\$4.85E	—	—
8	\$2.79E	\$4.65E	—	—
7	\$2.65E	\$4.37E	—	—
6	\$2.55E	\$4.30E	—	—
5	\$2.43	\$4.00	\$50.80	12.7
4	\$2.32	\$3.90	\$51.48	13.2
3	\$2.19	\$3.65	\$59.86	16.4
2	\$2.14	\$3.60	\$54.72	15.2
1	\$2.00	\$3.30	\$46.20	14.0

The company’s balance sheet at the end of Year 5 is given in Exhibit 12.

Exhibit 12 Balance Sheet as of End of Year 5

Cash	\$ 5,000
Accounts receivable	15,000
Inventories	30,000
Net fixed assets	50,000
Total assets	<u>\$100,000</u>
Accounts payable	\$ 3,000
Notes payable	17,000
Term loans	25,000
Common shareholders’ equity	55,000
Total liabilities and equity	<u>\$100,000</u>

- Using a Gordon growth model, estimate intrinsic value. Use a discount rate of 10 percent and an estimate of growth based on growth in dividends over the next five years.

- 2 Using a multiplier approach, estimate intrinsic value. Assume that a reasonable estimate of P/E is the average trailing twelve-month (TTM) P/E ratio over Years 1 through 4.
- 3 Using an asset-based valuation approach, estimate value per share from adjusted book values. Assume that the market values of accounts receivable and inventories are as reported, the market value of net fixed assets is 110 percent of reported book value, and the reported book values of liabilities reflect their market values.

Solution to 1:

$$D_5 (1 + g)^5 = D_{10} 2.43 (1 + g)^5 = 3.10$$

$$g \approx 5.0\%$$

$$\text{Estimate of value} = V_5 = 2.55 / (0.10 - 0.05) = \$51.00$$

Solution to 2:

$$\text{Average P/E} = (14.0 + 15.2 + 16.4 + 13.2) / 4 = 14.7$$

$$\text{Estimate of value} = \$4.00 \times 14.7 = \$58.80$$

Solution to 3:

$$\text{Market value of assets} = 5,000 + 15,000 + 30,000 + 1.1(50,000) = \$105,000$$

$$\text{Market value of liabilities} = \$3,000 + 17,000 + 25,000 = \$45,000$$

$$\text{Adjusted book value} = \$105,000 - 45,000 = \$60,000$$

$$\text{Estimated value (adjusted book value per share)} = \$60,000 \div 1,000 \text{ shares} = \$60.00$$

Given the current share price of \$50.80, the multiplier and the asset-based valuation approaches indicate that the stock is undervalued. Given the intrinsic value estimated using the Gordon growth model, the analyst is likely to conclude that the stock is fairly priced. The analyst might examine the assumptions in the multiplier and the asset-based valuation approaches to determine why their estimated values differ from the estimated value provided by the Gordon growth model and the market price.

SUMMARY

The equity valuation models used to estimate intrinsic value—present value models, multiplier models, and asset-based valuation—are widely used and serve an important purpose. The valuation models presented here are a foundation on which to base analysis and research but must be applied wisely. Valuation is not simply a numerical analysis. The choice of model and the derivation of inputs require skill and judgment.

When valuing a company or group of companies, the analyst wants to choose a valuation model that is appropriate for the information available to be used as inputs. The available data will, in most instances, restrict the choice of model and influence the way it is used. Complex models exist that may improve on the simple valuation models described in this reading; but before using those models and assuming that complexity increases accuracy, the analyst would do well to consider the “law of parsimony:” A

model should be kept as simple as possible in light of the available inputs. Valuation is a fallible discipline, and any method will result in an inaccurate forecast at some time. The goal is to minimize the inaccuracy of the forecast.

Among the points made in this reading are the following:

- An analyst estimating intrinsic value is implicitly questioning the market's estimate of value.
- If the estimated value exceeds the market price, the analyst infers the security is *undervalued*. If the estimated value equals the market price, the analyst infers the security is *fairly valued*. If the estimated value is less than the market price, the analyst infers the security is *overvalued*. Because of the uncertainties involved in valuation, an analyst may require that value estimates differ markedly from market price before concluding that a misvaluation exists.
- Analysts often use more than one valuation model because of concerns about the applicability of any particular model and the variability in estimates that result from changes in inputs.
- Three major categories of equity valuation models are present value, multiplier, and asset-based valuation models.
- Present value models estimate value as the present value of expected future benefits.
- Multiplier models estimate intrinsic value based on a multiple of some fundamental variable.
- Asset-based valuation models estimate value based on the estimated value of assets and liabilities.
- The choice of model will depend upon the availability of information to input into the model and the analyst's confidence in both the information and the appropriateness of the model.
- Companies distribute cash to shareholders using dividend payments and share repurchases.
- Regular cash dividends are a key input to dividend valuation models.
- Key dates in dividend chronology are the declaration date, ex-dividend date, holder-of-record date, and payment date.
- In the dividend discount model, value is estimated as the present value of expected future dividends.
- In the free cash flow to equity model, value is estimated as the present value of expected future free cash flow to equity.
- The Gordon growth model, a simple DDM, estimates value as $D_1/(r - g)$.
- The two stage dividend discount model estimates value as the sum of the present values of dividends over a short-term period of high growth and the present value of the terminal value at the end of the period of high growth. The terminal value is estimated using the Gordon growth model.
- The choice of dividend model is based upon the patterns assumed with respect to future dividends.
- Multiplier models typically use multiples of the form: $P/$ measure of fundamental variable or $EV/$ measure of fundamental variable.
- Multiples can be based upon fundamentals or comparables.
- Asset-based valuations models estimate value of equity as the value of the assets less the value of liabilities.

REFERENCES

- Basu, S. 1977. "Investment Performance of Common Stocks in Relation to Their Price-Earnings Ratios: A Test of the Efficient Market Hypothesis." *Journal of Finance*, vol. 32, no. 3:663–682.
- Block, S. 1999. "A Study of Financial Analysts: Practice and Theory." *Financial Analysts Journal*, vol. 55, no. 4:86–95.
- Dreman, D. 1977. *Psychology of the Stock Market*. New York: AMACOM.
- Fama, E., and K. French. 1995. "Size and Book-to-Market Factors in Earnings and Returns." *Journal of Finance*, vol. 50, no. 1:131–155.
- McWilliams, J. 1966. "Prices, Earnings and P-E Ratios." *Financial Analysts Journal*, vol. 22, no. 3:137.
- Miller, P., and E. Widmann. 1966. "Price Performance Outlook for High & Low P/E Stocks." *1966 Stock & Bond Issue, Commercial & Financial Chronicle*: 26–28.
- Nicholson, S. 1968. "Price Ratios in Relation to Investment Results." *Financial Analysts Journal*, vol. 24, no. 1:105–109.
- O'Shaughnessy, J. 2005. *What Works on Wall Street*. New York: McGraw-Hill.

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

- 1 An analyst estimates the intrinsic value of a stock to be in the range of €17.85 to €21.45. The current market price of the stock is €24.35. This stock is *most likely*:
 - A overvalued.
 - B undervalued.
 - C fairly valued.
- 2 An analyst determines the intrinsic value of an equity security to be equal to \$55. If the current price is \$47, the equity is *most likely*:
 - A undervalued.
 - B fairly valued.
 - C overvalued.
- 3 In asset-based valuation models, the intrinsic value of a common share of stock is based on the:
 - A estimated market value of the company's assets.
 - B estimated market value of the company's assets plus liabilities.
 - C estimated market value of the company's assets minus liabilities.
- 4 Which of the following is *most likely* used in a present value model?
 - A Enterprise value.
 - B Price to free cash flow.
 - C Free cash flow to equity.
- 5 Book value is *least likely* to be considered when using:
 - A a multiplier model.
 - B an asset-based valuation model.
 - C a present value model.
- 6 An analyst is attempting to calculate the intrinsic value of a company and has gathered the following company data: EBITDA, total market value, and market value of cash and short-term investments, liabilities, and preferred shares. The analyst is *least likely* to use:
 - A a multiplier model.
 - B a discounted cash flow model.
 - C an asset-based valuation model.
- 7 An analyst who bases the calculation of intrinsic value on dividend-paying capacity rather than expected dividends will *most likely* use the:
 - A dividend discount model.
 - B free cash flow to equity model.
 - C cash flow from operations model.
- 8 An investor expects to purchase shares of common stock today and sell them after two years. The investor has estimated dividends for the next two years, D_1 and D_2 , and the selling price of the stock two years from now, P_2 . According to the dividend discount model, the intrinsic value of the stock today is the present value of:
 - A next year's dividend, D_1 .

- B future expected dividends, D_1 and D_2 .
- C future expected dividends and price— D_1 , D_2 and P_2 .
- 9 In the free cash flow to equity (FCFE) model, the intrinsic value of a share of stock is calculated as:
- A the present value of future expected FCFE.
- B the present value of future expected FCFE plus net borrowing.
- C the present value of future expected FCFE minus fixed capital investment.
- 10 With respect to present value models, which of the following statements is *most accurate*?
- A Present value models can be used only if a stock pays a dividend.
- B Present value models can be used only if a stock pays a dividend or is expected to pay a dividend.
- C Present value models can be used for stocks that currently pay a dividend, are expected to pay a dividend, or are not expected to pay a dividend.
- 11 A Canadian life insurance company has an issue of 4.80 percent, \$25 par value, perpetual, non-convertible, non-callable preferred shares outstanding. The required rate of return on similar issues is 4.49 percent. The intrinsic value of a preferred share is *closest to*:
- A \$25.00.
- B \$26.75.
- C \$28.50.
- 12 Two analysts estimating the value of a non-convertible, non-callable, perpetual preferred stock with a constant dividend arrive at different estimated values. The *most likely* reason for the difference is that the analysts used different:
- A time horizons.
- B required rates of return.
- C estimated dividend growth rates.
- 13 The Beasley Corporation has just paid a dividend of \$1.75 per share. If the required rate of return is 12.3 percent per year and dividends are expected to grow indefinitely at a constant rate of 9.2 percent per year, the intrinsic value of Beasley Corporation stock is *closest to*:
- A \$15.54.
- B \$56.45.
- C \$61.65.
- 14 An investor is considering the purchase of a common stock with a \$2.00 annual dividend. The dividend is expected to grow at a rate of 4 percent annually. If the investor's required rate of return is 7 percent, the intrinsic value of the stock is *closest to*:
- A \$50.00.
- B \$66.67.
- C \$69.33.
- 15 An analyst gathers or estimates the following information about a stock:

Current price per share	€22.56
Current annual dividend per share	€1.60
Annual dividend growth rate for Years 1–4	9.00%
Annual dividend growth rate for Years 5+	4.00%
Required rate of return	12%

Based on a dividend discount model, the stock is *most likely*:

- A undervalued.
 - B fairly valued.
 - C overvalued.
- 16 An analyst is attempting to value shares of the Dominion Company. The company has just paid a dividend of \$0.58 per share. Dividends are expected to grow by 20 percent next year and 15 percent the year after that. From the third year onward, dividends are expected to grow at 5.6 percent per year indefinitely. If the required rate of return is 8.3 percent, the intrinsic value of the stock is *closest* to:
- A \$26.00.
 - B \$27.00.
 - C \$28.00.
- 17 Hideki Corporation has just paid a dividend of ¥450 per share. Annual dividends are expected to grow at the rate of 4 percent per year over the next four years. At the end of four years, shares of Hideki Corporation are expected to sell for ¥9000. If the required rate of return is 12 percent, the intrinsic value of a share of Hideki Corporation is *closest* to:
- A ¥5,850.
 - B ¥7,220.
 - C ¥7,670.
- 18 The Gordon growth model can be used to value dividend-paying companies that are:
- A expected to grow very fast.
 - B in a mature phase of growth.
 - C very sensitive to the business cycle.
- 19 The best model to use when valuing a young dividend-paying company that is just entering the growth phase is *most likely* the:
- A Gordon growth model.
 - B two-stage dividend discount model.
 - C three-stage dividend discount model.
- 20 An equity analyst has been asked to estimate the intrinsic value of the common stock of Omega Corporation, a leading manufacturer of automobile seats. Omega is in a mature industry, and both its earnings and dividends are expected to grow at a rate of 3 percent annually. Which of the following is *most likely* to be the best model for determining the intrinsic value of an Omega share?
- A Gordon growth model.
 - B Free cash flow to equity model.
 - C Multistage dividend discount model.

- 21 A price earnings ratio that is derived from the Gordon growth model is inversely related to the:
- A growth rate.
 - B dividend payout ratio.
 - C required rate of return.
- 22 The primary difference between P/E multiples based on comparables and P/E multiples based on fundamentals is that fundamentals-based P/Es take into account:
- A future expectations.
 - B the law of one price.
 - C historical information.
- 23 An analyst makes the following statement: “Use of P/E and other multiples for analysis is not effective because the multiples are based on historical data and because not all companies have positive accounting earnings.” The analyst’s statement is *most likely*:
- A inaccurate with respect to both historical data and earnings.
 - B accurate with respect to historical data and inaccurate with respect to earnings.
 - C inaccurate with respect to historical data and accurate with respect to earnings.
- 24 An analyst has prepared a table of the average trailing twelve-month price-to-earning (P/E), price-to-cash flow (P/CF), and price-to-sales (P/S) for the Tanaka Corporation for the years 2005 to 2008.

Year	P/E	P/CF	P/S
2005	4.9	5.4	1.2
2006	6.1	8.6	1.5
2007	8.3	7.3	1.9
2008	9.2	7.9	2.3

As of the date of the valuation in 2009, the trailing twelve-month P/E, P/CF, and P/S are, respectively, 9.2, 8.0, and 2.5. Based on the information provided, the analyst may reasonably conclude that Tanaka shares are *most likely*:

- A overvalued.
 - B undervalued.
 - C fairly valued.
- 25 An analyst has gathered the following information for the Oudin Corporation:
- Expected earnings per share = €5.70
 - Expected dividends per share = €2.70
 - Dividends are expected to grow at 2.75 percent per year indefinitely
 - The required rate of return is 8.35 percent
- Based on the information provided, the price/earnings multiple for Oudin is *closest to*:
- A 5.7.
 - B 8.5.
 - C 9.4.
- 26 An analyst gathers the following information about two companies:

	Alpha Corp.	Delta Co.
Current price per share	\$57.32	\$18.93
Last year's EPS	\$3.82	\$1.35
Current year's estimated EPS	\$4.75	\$1.40

Which of the following statements is *most accurate*?

- A Delta has the higher trailing P/E multiple and lower current estimated P/E multiple.
 - B Alpha has the higher trailing P/E multiple and lower current estimated P/E multiple.
 - C Alpha has the higher trailing P/E multiple and higher current estimated P/E multiple.
- 27 An analyst gathers the following information about similar companies in the banking sector:

	First Bank	Prime Bank	Pioneer Trust
P/B	1.10	0.60	0.60
P/E	8.40	11.10	8.30

Which of the companies is *most likely* to be undervalued?

- A First Bank.
 - B Prime Bank.
 - C Pioneer Trust.
- 28 The market value of equity for a company can be calculated as enterprise value:
- A minus market value of debt, preferred stock, and short-term investments.
 - B plus market value of debt and preferred stock minus short-term investments.
 - C minus market value of debt and preferred stock plus short-term investments.
- 29 Which of the following statements regarding the calculation of the enterprise value multiple is *most likely* correct?
- A Operating income may be used instead of EBITDA.
 - B EBITDA may not be used if company earnings are negative.
 - C Book value of debt may be used instead of market value of debt.
- 30 An analyst has determined that the appropriate EV/EBITDA for Rainbow Company is 10.2. The analyst has also collected the following forecasted information for Rainbow Company:
- EBITDA = \$22,000,000
- Market value of debt = \$56,000,000
- Cash = \$1,500,000
- The value of equity for Rainbow Company is *closest* to:
- A \$169 million.
 - B \$224 million.
 - C \$281 million.
- 31 Enterprise value is most often determined as market capitalization of common equity and preferred stock minus the value of cash equivalents plus the:

- A book value of debt.
 - B market value of debt.
 - C market value of long-term debt.
- 32 Asset-based valuation models are best suited to companies where the capital structure does not have a high proportion of:
- A debt.
 - B intangible assets.
 - C current assets and liabilities.
- 33 Which of the following is *most likely* a reason for using asset-based valuation?
- A The analyst is valuing a privately held company.
 - B The company has a relatively high level of intangible assets.
 - C The market values of assets and liabilities are different from the balance sheet values.
- 34 A disadvantage of the EV method for valuing equity is that the following information may be difficult to obtain:
- A Operating income.
 - B Market value of debt.
 - C Market value of equity.
- 35 Which type of equity valuation model is *most likely* to be preferable when one is comparing similar companies?
- A A multiplier model.
 - B A present value model.
 - C An asset-based valuation model.
- 36 Which of the following is *most likely* considered a weakness of present value models?
- A Present value models cannot be used for companies that do not pay dividends.
 - B Small changes in model assumptions and inputs can result in large changes in the computed intrinsic value of the security.
 - C The value of the security depends on the investor's holding period; thus, comparing valuations of different companies for different investors is difficult.

SOLUTIONS

- 1 A is correct. The current market price of the stock exceeds the upper bound of the analyst's estimate of the intrinsic value of the stock.
- 2 A is correct. The market price is less than the estimated intrinsic, or fundamental, value.
- 3 C is correct. Asset-based valuation models calculate the intrinsic value of equity by subtracting liabilities from the market value of assets.
- 4 C is correct. FCFE can be used in a form of present value, or discounted cash flow, model. Both EV and price to free cash flow are forms of multiplier models.
- 5 C is correct. Multiplier valuation models (in the form of P/B) and asset-based valuation models (in the form of adjustments to book value) use book value, whereas present value models typically discount future expected cash flows.
- 6 B is correct. To use a discounted cash flow model, the analyst will require FCFE or dividend data. In addition, the analyst will need data to calculate an appropriate discount rate.
- 7 B is correct. The FCFE model assumes that dividend-paying capacity is reflected in FCFE.
- 8 C is correct. According to the dividend discount model, the intrinsic value of a stock today is the present value of all future dividends. In this case, the intrinsic value is the present value of D_1 , D_2 , and P_2 . Note that P_2 is the present value at Period 2 of all future dividends from Period 3 to infinity.
- 9 A is correct. In the FCFE model, the intrinsic value of stock is calculated by discounting expected future FCFE to present value. No further adjustments are required.
- 10 C is correct. Dividend discount models can be used for a stock that pays a current dividend or a stock that is expected to pay a dividend. FCFE can be used for both of those stocks and for stocks that do not, or are not expected to, pay dividends in the near future. Both of these models are forms of present value models.
- 11 B is correct. The expected annual dividend is $4.80\% \times \$25 = \1.20 . The value of a preferred share is $\$1.20/0.0449 = \26.73 .
- 12 B is correct. The required rate of return, r , can vary widely depending on the inputs and is not unique. A preferred stock with a constant dividend would not have a growth rate to estimate, and the investor's time horizon would have no effect on the calculation of intrinsic value.
- 13 C is correct. $P_0 = D_1/(r - g) = 1.75(1.092)/(0.123 - 0.092) = \61.65 .
- 14 C is correct. According to the Gordon growth model, $V_0 = D_1/(r - g)$. In this case, $D_1 = \$2.00 \times 1.04 = \2.08 , so $V_0 = \$2.08/(0.07 - 0.04) = \$69.3333 = \$69.33$.
- 15 A is correct. The current price of €22.56 is less than the intrinsic value (V_0) of €24.64; therefore, the stock appears to be currently undervalued. According to the two-stage dividend discount model:

$$V_0 = \sum_{t=1}^n \frac{D_0(1 + g_S)^t}{(1 + r)^t} + \frac{V_n}{(1 + r)^n} \text{ and } V_n = \frac{D_{n+1}}{r - g_L}$$

$$D_{n+1} = D_0(1 + g_S)^n(1 + g_L)$$

$$D_1 = €1.60 \times 1.09 = €1.744$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 D_2 &= €1.60 \times (1.09)^2 = €1.901 \\
 D_3 &= €1.60 \times (1.09)^3 = €2.072 \\
 D_4 &= €1.60 \times (1.09)^4 = €2.259 \\
 D_5 &= [€1.60 \times (1.09)^4](1.04) = €2.349 \\
 V_4 &= €2.349 / (0.12 - 0.04) = €29.363 \\
 V_0 &= \frac{1.744}{(1.12)^1} + \frac{1.901}{(1.12)^2} + \frac{2.072}{(1.12)^3} + \frac{2.259}{(1.12)^4} + \frac{29.363}{(1.12)^4} \\
 &= 1.557 + 1.515 + 1.475 + 1.436 + 18.661 \\
 &= €24.64 \text{ (which is greater than the current price of €22.56)}
 \end{aligned}$$

16 C is correct.

$$\begin{aligned}
 V_0 &= \frac{D_1}{(1+r)} + \frac{D_2}{(1+r)^2} + \frac{P_2}{(1+r)^2} \\
 &= \frac{0.70}{(1.083)} + \frac{0.80}{(1.083)^2} + \frac{31.29}{(1.083)^2} \\
 &= \$28.01
 \end{aligned}$$

Note that $D_1 = 0.58(1.20) = 0.70$, $D_2 = 0.58(1.20)(1.15) = 0.80$, and $P_2 = D_3 / (k - g) = 0.80(1.056) / (0.083 - 0.056) = 31.29$

17 B is correct.

$$\begin{aligned}
 V_0 &= \frac{D_1}{(1+r)} + \frac{D_2}{(1+r)^2} + \frac{D_3}{(1+r)^3} + \frac{D_4}{(1+r)^4} + \frac{P_4}{(1+r)^4} \\
 &= \frac{468}{(1.12)} + \frac{486.72}{(1.12)^2} + \frac{506.19}{(1.12)^3} + \frac{526.44}{(1.12)^4} + \frac{9000}{(1.12)^4} \\
 &= ¥7,220
 \end{aligned}$$

18 B is correct. The Gordon growth model (also known as the constant growth model) can be used to value dividend-paying companies in a mature phase of growth. A stable dividend growth rate is often a plausible assumption for such companies.

19 C is correct. The Gordon growth model is best suited to valuing mature companies. The two-stage model is best for companies that are transitioning from a growth stage to a mature stage. The three-stage model is appropriate for young companies just entering the growth phase.

20 A is correct. The company is a mature company with a steadily growing dividend rate. The two-stage (or multistage) model is unnecessary because the dividend growth rate is expected to remain stable. Although an FCFE model could be used, that model is more often chosen for companies that currently pay no dividends.

21 C is correct. The justified forward P/E is calculated as follows:

$$\frac{P_0}{E_1} = \frac{\frac{D_1}{r-g}}{E_1}$$

P/E is inversely related to the required rate of return, r , and directly related to the growth rate, g , and the dividend payout ratio, D/E .

- 22** A is correct. Multiples based on comparables are grounded in the law of one price and take into account historical multiple values. In contrast, P/E multiples based on fundamentals can be based on the Gordon growth model, which takes into account future expected dividends.
- 23** A is correct. The statement is inaccurate in both respects. Although multiples can be calculated from historical data, forecasted values can be used as well. For companies without accounting earnings, several other multiples can be used. These multiples are often specific to a company's industry or sector and include price-to-sales and price-to-cash flow.
- 24** A is correct. Tanaka shares are most likely overvalued. As the table below shows, all the 2009 multiples are currently above their 2005–2008 averages.

Year	P/E	P/CF	P/R
2005	4.9	5.4	1.2
2006	6.1	8.6	1.5
2007	8.3	7.3	1.9
2008	9.2	7.9	2.3
Average	7.1	7.3	1.7

- 25** B is correct.

$$\frac{P_0}{E_1} = \frac{\frac{D_1}{E_1}}{r - g} = \frac{\frac{2.7}{5.7}}{0.0835 - 0.0275} = 8.5$$

- 26** B is correct. P/E = Current price/EPS, and Estimated P/E = Current price/Estimated EPS.

$$\text{Alpha P/E} = \$57.32/\$3.82 = 15.01$$

$$\text{Alpha estimated P/E} = \$57.32/4.75 = 12.07$$

$$\text{Delta P/E} = \$18.93/\$1.35 = 14.02$$

$$\text{Delta estimated P/E} = \$18.93/\$1.40 = 13.52$$

- 27** C is correct. Relative to the others, Pioneer Trust has the lowest P/E multiple and the P/B multiple is tied for the lowest with Prime Bank. Given the law of one price, similar companies should trade at similar P/B and P/E levels. Thus, based on the information presented, Pioneer is most likely to be undervalued.
- 28** C is correct. Enterprise value is calculated as the market value of equity plus the market value of debt and preferred stock minus short-term investments. Therefore, the market value of equity is enterprise value minus the market value of debt and preferred stock plus short-term investments.
- 29** A is correct. Operating income may be used in place of EBITDA when calculating the enterprise value multiple. EBITDA may be used when company earnings are negative because EBITDA is usually positive. The book value of debt cannot be used in place of market value of debt.
- 30** A is correct.

$$EV = 10.2 \times 22,000,000 = \$224,400,000$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Equity value} &= EV - \text{Debt} + \text{Cash} \\ &= 224,400,000 - 56,000,000 + 1,500,000 \\ &= \$169,900,000 \end{aligned}$$

- 31** B is correct. The market value of debt must be calculated and taken out of the enterprise value. Enterprise value, sometimes known as the cost of a takeover, is the cost of the purchase of the company, which would include the assumption of the company's debts at market value.
- 32** B is correct. Intangible assets are hard to value. Therefore, asset-based valuation models work best for companies that do not have a high proportion of intangible assets.
- 33** A is correct. Asset-based valuations are most often used when an analyst is valuing private enterprises. Both B and C are considerations in asset-based valuations but are more likely to be reasons to avoid that valuation model rather than reasons to use it.
- 34** B is correct. According to the reading, analysts may not have access to market quotations for company debt.
- 35** A is correct. Although all models can be used to compare various companies, multiplier models have the advantage of reducing varying fundamental data points into a format that allows direct comparisons. As long as the analyst applies the data in a consistent manner for all the companies, this approach provides useful comparative data.
- 36** B is correct. Very small changes in inputs, such as required rate of return or dividend growth rate, can result in large changes to the valuation model output. Some present value models, such as FCFE models, can be used to value companies without dividends. Also, the intrinsic value of a security is independent of the investor's holding period.

Fixed Income

STUDY SESSIONS

Study Session 16	Fixed Income (1)
Study Session 17	Fixed Income (2)

TOPIC LEVEL LEARNING OUTCOME

The candidate should be able to describe fixed-income securities and their markets, yield measures, risk factors, and valuation measures and drivers. The candidate should also be able to calculate yields and values of fixed-income securities.

Fixed-income securities continue to represent the largest capital market segment in the financial ecosystem and the primary means in which institutions, governments, and other issuers raise capital globally. Institutions and individuals use fixed-income investments in a wide range of applications including asset liability management, income generation, and principal preservation. Since the global financial crisis of 2008, evaluating risk—in particular, credit risk—for fixed-income securities has become an increasingly important aspect for this asset class.

FIXED INCOME STUDY SESSION

16

Fixed Income (1)

This study session introduces the unique attributes that define fixed-income securities, then follows with an overview of global debt markets. Primary issuers, sectors, and bond types are explained. Key concepts for the calculation and interpretation of bond prices, yields, and spreads and coverage of interest rate risk and key related risk measures are presented. Securitization—the creation of fixed-income securities backed by certain (typically less liquid) assets—including the various types, characteristics, and risks of these investments end the session.

READING ASSIGNMENTS

- | | |
|-------------------|--|
| Reading 50 | Fixed-Income Securities: Defining Elements
by Moorad Choudhry, PhD, FRM, FCSI, and
Stephen E. Wilcox, PhD, CFA |
| Reading 51 | Fixed-Income Markets: Issuance, Trading, and Funding
by Moorad Choudhry, PhD, FRM, FCSI, Steven
V. Mann, PhD, and Lavone F. Whitmer, CFA |
| Reading 52 | Introduction to Fixed-Income Valuation
by James F. Adams, PhD, CFA, and Donald J. Smith, PhD |
| Reading 53 | Introduction to Asset-Backed Securities
by Frank J. Fabozzi, PhD, CPA, CFA |

Fixed-Income Securities: Defining Elements

by Moorad Choudhry, PhD, FRM, FCSI, and Stephen E. Wilcox, PhD, CFA

Moorad Choudhry, PhD, FRM, FCSI, is at the University of Kent (United Kingdom).

Stephen E. Wilcox, PhD, CFA, is at Minnesota State University, Mankato (USA).

LEARNING OUTCOMES

<i>Mastery</i>	<i>The candidate should be able to:</i>
<input type="checkbox"/>	a. describe basic features of a fixed-income security;
<input type="checkbox"/>	b. describe content of a bond indenture;
<input type="checkbox"/>	c. compare affirmative and negative covenants and identify examples of each;
<input type="checkbox"/>	d. describe how legal, regulatory, and tax considerations affect the issuance and trading of fixed-income securities;
<input type="checkbox"/>	e. describe how cash flows of fixed-income securities are structured;
<input type="checkbox"/>	f. describe contingency provisions affecting the timing and/or nature of cash flows of fixed-income securities and identify whether such provisions benefit the borrower or the lender.

INTRODUCTION

Judged by total market value, fixed-income securities constitute the most prevalent means of raising capital globally. A fixed-income security is an instrument that allows governments, companies, and other types of issuers to borrow money from investors. Any borrowing of money is debt. The promised payments on fixed-income securities are, in general, contractual (legal) obligations of the issuer to the investor. For companies, fixed-income securities contrast to common shares in not having ownership rights. Payment of interest and repayment of principal (amount borrowed) are a prior claim on the company's earnings and assets compared with the claim of common shareholders. Thus, a company's fixed-income securities have, in theory, lower risk than that company's common shares.

In portfolio management, fixed-income securities fulfill several important roles. They are a prime means by which investors—individual and institutional—can prepare to fund, with some degree of safety, known future obligations such as tuition payments or pension obligations. The correlations of fixed-income securities with common shares vary, but adding fixed-income securities to portfolios including common shares is usually an effective way of obtaining diversification benefits.

Among the questions this reading addresses are the following:

- What set of features define a fixed-income security, and how do these features determine the scheduled cash flows?
- What are the legal, regulatory, and tax considerations associated with a fixed-income security, and why are these considerations important for investors?
- What are the common structures regarding the payment of interest and repayment of principal?
- What types of provisions may affect the disposal or redemption of fixed-income securities?

Embarking on the study of fixed-income securities, please note that the terms “fixed-income securities,” “debt securities,” and “bonds” are often used interchangeably by experts and non-experts alike. We will also follow this convention, and where any nuance of meaning is intended, it will be made clear.¹

The remainder of this reading is organized as follows. Section 2 describes, in broad terms, what an investor needs to know when investing in fixed-income securities. Section 3 covers both the nature of the contract between the issuer and the bondholders as well as the legal, regulatory, and tax framework within which this contract exists. Section 4 presents the principal and interest payment structures that characterize fixed-income securities. Section 5 discusses the contingency provisions that affect the timing and/or nature of a bond’s cash flows. The final section provides a conclusion and summary of the reading.

2

OVERVIEW OF A FIXED-INCOME SECURITY

A **bond** is a contractual agreement between the issuer and the bondholders. There are three important elements that an investor needs to know about when investing in a bond:

- The bond’s features, including the issuer, maturity, par value, coupon rate and frequency, and currency denomination. These features determine the bond’s scheduled cash flows and, therefore, are key determinants of the investor’s expected and actual return.
- The legal, regulatory, and tax considerations that apply to the contractual agreement between the issuer and the bondholders.
- The contingency provisions that may affect the bond’s scheduled cash flows. These contingency provisions are options; they give the issuer or the bondholders certain rights affecting the bond’s disposal or redemption.

¹ Note that the term “fixed income” is not to be understood literally: Some fixed-income securities have interest payments that change over time. Some experts include preference shares as a type of fixed-income security, but none view them as a type of bond. Finally, in some contexts, bonds refer to the longer-maturity form of debt securities in contrast to money market securities.

This section describes a bond's basic features and introduces yield measures. The legal, regulatory, and tax considerations and contingency provisions are discussed in Sections 3 and 5, respectively.

2.1 Basic Features of a Bond

All bonds, whether they are “traditional” bonds or asset-backed securities, are characterized by the same basic features. **Asset-backed securities** (ABS) are created from a process called securitization, which involves moving assets from the owner of the assets into a special legal entity. This special legal entity then uses the securitized assets as guarantees to back (secure) a bond issue, leading to the creation of ABS. Assets that are typically used to create ABS include residential and commercial mortgage loans (mortgages), automobile (auto) loans, student loans, bank loans, and credit card debt, among others. Many elements discussed in this reading apply to both traditional bonds and ABS. Considerations specific to ABS are discussed in the introduction to asset-backed securities reading.

2.1.1 Issuer

Many entities issue bonds: private individuals, such as the musician David Bowie; national governments, such as Singapore or Italy; and companies, such as BP, General Electric, or Tata Group.

Bond issuers are classified into categories based on the similarities of these issuers and their characteristics. Major types of issuers include the following:

- Supranational organizations, such as the World Bank or the European Investment Bank;
- Sovereign (national) governments, such as the United States or Japan;
- Non-sovereign (local) governments, such as the state of Minnesota in the United States, the region of Catalonia in Spain, or the city of Edmonton in Canada;
- Quasi-government entities (i.e., agencies that are owned or sponsored by governments), such as postal services in many countries—for example, Correios in Brazil, La Poste in France, or Pos in Indonesia;
- Companies (i.e., corporate issuers). A distinction is often made between financial issuers (e.g., banks and insurance companies) and non-financial issuers; and
- Special legal entities that securitize assets to create ABS that are then sold to investors.

Market participants often classify fixed-income markets by the type of issuer, which leads to the identification of three bond market sectors: the government and government-related sector (i.e., the first four types of issuers listed above), the corporate sector (the fifth type listed above), and the structured finance sector (the last type listed above).

Bondholders are exposed to credit risk—that is, the risk of loss resulting from the issuer failing to make full and timely payments of interest and/or repayments of principal. Credit risk is inherent to all debt investments. Bond markets are sometimes classified into sectors based on the issuer's creditworthiness as judged by credit rating agencies. One major distinction is between investment-grade and non-investment-grade bonds, also called high-yield or speculative bonds.² Although a variety of considerations

² The three largest credit rating agencies are Moody's Investors Service, Standard & Poor's, and Fitch Ratings. Bonds rated Baa3 or higher by Moody's and BBB- or higher by Standard & Poor's and Fitch are considered investment grade.

enter into distinguishing the two sectors, the promised payments of investment-grade bonds are perceived as less risky than those of non-investment-grade bonds because of profitability and liquidity considerations. Some regulated financial intermediaries, such as banks and life insurance companies, may face explicit or implicit limitations of holdings of non-investment-grade bonds. The investment policy statements of some investors may also include constraints or limits on such holdings. From the issuer's perspective, an investment-grade credit rating generally allows easier access to bond markets and at lower interest rates than does a non-investment-grade credit rating.³

2.1.2 Maturity

The maturity date of a bond refers to the date when the issuer is obligated to redeem the bond by paying the outstanding principal amount. The **tenor** is the time remaining until the bond's maturity date. The tenor is an important consideration in the analysis of a bond. It indicates the period over which the bondholder can expect to receive the interest payments and the length of time until the principal is repaid in full.

Maturities typically range from overnight to 30 years or longer. Fixed-income securities with maturities at issuance (original maturity) of one year or less are known as **money market securities**. Issuers of money market securities include governments and companies. Commercial paper and certificates of deposit are examples of money market securities. Fixed-income securities with original maturities that are longer than one year are called **capital market securities**. Although very rare, **perpetual bonds**, such as the consols issued by the sovereign government in the United Kingdom, have no stated maturity date.

2.1.3 Par Value

The **principal amount**, **principal value**, or simply **principal** of a bond is the amount that the issuer agrees to repay the bondholders on the maturity date. This amount is also referred to as the par value, or simply par, face value, nominal value, redemption value, or maturity value. Bonds can have any par value.

In practice, bond prices are quoted as a percentage of their par value. For example, assume that a bond's par value is \$1,000. A quote of 95 means that the bond price is \$950 ($95\% \times \$1,000$). When the bond is priced at 100% of par, the bond is said to be trading at par. If the bond's price is below 100% of par, such as in the previous example, the bond is trading at a discount. Alternatively, if the bond's price is above 100% of par, the bond is trading at a premium.

2.1.4 Coupon Rate and Frequency

The coupon rate or nominal rate of a bond is the interest rate that the issuer agrees to pay each year until the maturity date. The annual amount of interest payments made is called the coupon. A bond's coupon is determined by multiplying its coupon rate by its par value. For example, a bond with a coupon rate of 6% and a par value of \$1,000 will pay annual interest of \$60 ($6\% \times \$1,000$).

Coupon payments may be made annually, such as those for German government bonds or Bunds. Many bonds, such as government and corporate bonds issued in the United States or government gilts issued in the United Kingdom, pay interest semi-annually. Some bonds make quarterly or monthly interest payments. The acronyms QUIBS (quarterly interest bonds) and QUIDS (quarterly income debt securities) are used by Morgan Stanley and Goldman Sachs, respectively, for bonds that make quarterly interest payments. Many **mortgage-backed securities** (MBS), which are ABS backed by residential or commercial mortgages, pay interest monthly to match

³ Several other distinctions among credit ratings are made. They are discussed in depth in the reading on fundamentals of credit analysis.

the cash flows of the mortgages backing these MBS. If a bond has a coupon rate of 6% and a par value of \$1,000, the periodic interest payments will be \$60 if coupon payments are made annually, \$30 if they are made semi-annually, \$15 if they are made quarterly, and \$5 if they are made monthly.

A **plain vanilla bond** or **conventional bond** pays a fixed rate of interest. In this case, the coupon payment does not change during the bond's life. However, there are bonds that pay a floating rate of interest; such bonds are called **floating-rate notes** (FRNs) or **floaters**. The coupon rate of a FRN includes two components: a reference rate plus a spread. The spread, also called margin, is typically constant and expressed in basis points (bps). A **basis point** is equal to 0.01%; put another way, there are 100 basis points in 1%. The spread is set when the bond is issued based on the issuer's creditworthiness at issuance: The higher the issuer's credit quality, the lower the spread. The reference rate, however, resets periodically. Thus, as the reference rate changes, the coupon rate and coupon payment change accordingly.

A widely used reference rate is the **London interbank offered rate (Libor)**. Libor is a collective name for a set of rates covering different currencies for different maturities ranging from overnight to one year. Other reference rates include the Euro interbank offered rate (Euribor), the Hong Kong interbank offered rate (Hibor), or the Singapore interbank offered rate (Sibor) for issues denominated in euros, Hong Kong dollars, and Singapore dollars, respectively. Euribor, Hibor, and Sibor are, like Libor, sets of rates for different maturities up to one year.

For example, assume that the coupon rate of a FRN that makes semi-annual interest payments in June and December is expressed as the six-month Libor + 150 bps. Suppose that in December 20X0, the six-month Libor is 3.25%. The interest rate that will apply to the payment due in June 20X1 will be 4.75% (3.25% + 1.50%). Now suppose that in June 20X1, the six-month Libor has decreased to 3.15%. The interest rate that will apply to the payment due in December 20X1 will decrease to 4.65% (3.15% + 1.50%). More details about FRNs are provided in Section 4.2.1.

All bonds, whether they pay a fixed or floating rate of interest, make periodic coupon payments except for **zero-coupon bonds**. Such bonds do not pay interest, hence their name. Instead, they are issued at a discount to par value and redeemed at par; they are sometimes referred to as **pure discount bonds**. The interest earned on a zero-coupon bond is implied and equal to the difference between the par value and the purchase price. For example, if the par value is \$1,000 and the purchase price is \$950, the implied interest is \$50.

2.1.5 Currency Denomination

Bonds can be issued in any currency, although a large number of bond issues are made in either euros or US dollars. The currency of issue may affect a bond's attractiveness. If the currency is not liquid or freely traded, or if the currency is very volatile relative to major currencies, investments in that currency will not appeal to many investors. For this reason, borrowers in developing countries often elect to issue bonds in a currency other than their local currency, such as in euros or US dollars, because doing so makes it easier to place the bond with international investors. Issuers may also choose to issue in a foreign currency if they are expecting cash flows in the foreign currency because the interest payments and principal repayments can act as a natural hedge, reducing currency risk. If a bond is aimed solely at a country's domestic investors, it is more likely that the borrower will issue in the local currency.

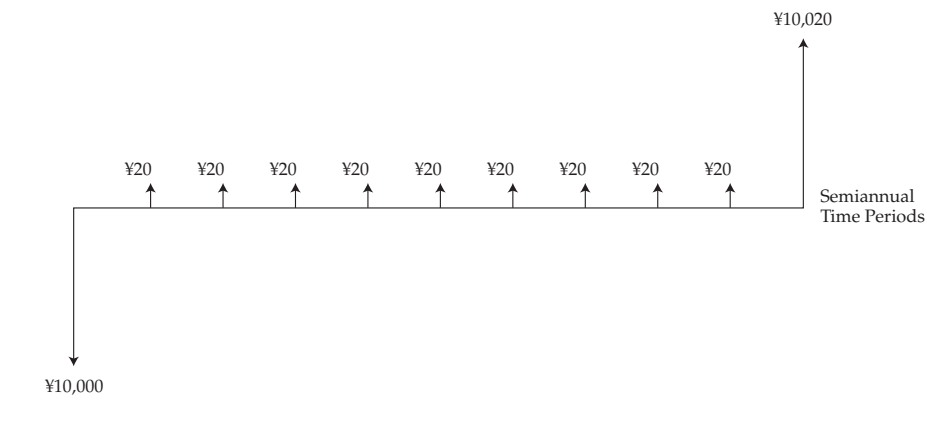
Dual-currency bonds make coupon payments in one currency and pay the par value at maturity in another currency. For example, assume that a Japanese company needs to finance a long-term project in the United States that will take several years to become profitable. The Japanese company could issue a yen/US dollar dual-currency

bond. The coupon payments in yens can be made from the cash flows generated in Japan, and the principal can be repaid in US dollars using the cash flows generated in the United States once the project becomes profitable.

Currency option bonds can be viewed as a combination of a single-currency bond plus a foreign currency option. They give bondholders the right to choose the currency in which they want to receive interest payments and principal repayments. Bondholders can select one of two currencies for each payment.

Exhibit 1 brings all the basic features of a bond together and illustrates how these features determine the cash flow pattern for a plain vanilla bond. The bond is a five-year Japanese government bond (JGB) with a coupon rate of 0.4% and a par value of ¥10,000. Interest payments are made semi-annually. The bond is priced at par when it is issued and is redeemed at par.

Exhibit 1 Cash Flows for a Plain Vanilla Bond



The downward-pointing arrow in Exhibit 1 represents the cash flow paid by the bond investor (received by the issuer) on the day of the bond issue—that is, ¥10,000. The upward-pointing arrows are the cash flows received by the bondholder (paid by the issuer) during the bond's life. As interest is paid semi-annually, the coupon payment is ¥20 $[(0.004 \times ¥10,000) \div 2]$ every six months for five years—that is, 10 coupon payments of ¥20. The last payment is equal to ¥10,020 because it includes both the last coupon payment and the payment of the par value.

EXAMPLE 1

- 1 An example of sovereign bond is a bond issued by:
 - A the World Bank.
 - B the city of New York.
 - C the federal German government.
- 2 The risk of loss resulting from the issuer failing to make full and timely payment of interest is called:
 - A credit risk.
 - B systemic risk.
 - C interest rate risk.
- 3 A money market security *most likely* matures in:
 - A one year or less.

- B** between one and 10 years.
 - C** over 10 years.
- 4 If the bond's price is higher than its par value, the bond is trading at:
- A** par.
 - B** a discount.
 - C** a premium.
- 5 A bond has a par value of £100 and a coupon rate of 5%. Coupon payments are made semi-annually. The periodic interest payment is:
- A** £2.50, paid twice a year.
 - B** £5.00, paid once a year.
 - C** £5.00, paid twice a year.
- 6 The coupon rate of a floating-rate note that makes payments in June and December is expressed as six-month Libor + 25 bps. Assuming that the six-month Libor is 3.00% at the end of June 20XX and 3.50% at the end of December 20XX, the interest rate that applies to the payment due in December 20XX is:
- A** 3.25%.
 - B** 3.50%.
 - C** 3.75%.
- 7 The type of bond that allows bondholders to choose the currency in which they receive each interest payment and principal repayment is a:
- A** pure discount bond.
 - B** dual-currency bond.
 - C** currency option bond.

Solution to 1:

C is correct. A sovereign bond is a bond issued by a national government, such as the federal German government. A is incorrect because a bond issued by the World Bank is a supranational bond. B is incorrect because a bond issued by a local government, such as the city of New York, is a non-sovereign bond.

Solution to 2:

A is correct. Credit risk is the risk of loss resulting from the issuer failing to make full and timely payments of interest and/or repayments of principal. B is incorrect because systemic risk is the risk of failure of the financial system. C is incorrect because interest rate risk is the risk that a change in market interest rate affects a bond's value. Systemic risk and interest rate risk are defined in Sections 5.3 and 4.2.1, respectively.

Solution to 3:

A is correct. The primary difference between a money market security and a capital market security is the maturity at issuance. Money market securities mature in one year or less, whereas capital market securities mature in more than one year.

Solution to 4:

C is correct. If a bond's price is higher than its par value, the bond is trading at a premium. A is incorrect because a bond is trading at par if its price is equal to its par value. B is incorrect because a bond is trading at a discount if its price is lower than its par value.

Solution to 5:

A is correct. The annual coupon payment is $5\% \times £100 = £5.00$. The coupon payments are made semi-annually, so £2.50 paid twice a year.

Solution to 6:

A is correct. The interest rate that applies to the payment due in December 20XX is the six-month Libor at the end of June 20XX plus 25 bps. Thus, it is 3.25% ($3.00\% + 0.25\%$).

Solution to 7:

C is correct. A currency option bond gives bondholders the right to choose the currency in which they want to receive each interest payment and principal repayment. A is incorrect because a pure discount bond is issued at a discount to par value and redeemed at par. B is incorrect because a dual-currency bond makes coupon payments in one currency and pays the par value at maturity in another currency.

2.2 Yield Measures

There are several yield measures commonly used by market participants. The **current yield** or **running yield** is equal to the bond's annual coupon divided by the bond's price, expressed as a percentage. For example, if a bond has a coupon rate of 6%, a par value of \$1,000, and a price of \$1,010, the current yield is 5.94% ($\$60 \div \$1,010$). The current yield is a measure of income that is analogous to the dividend yield for a common share.

The most commonly referenced yield measure is known as the **yield to maturity**, also called the **yield to redemption** or **redemption yield**. The yield to maturity is the internal rate of return on a bond's expected cash flows—that is, the discount rate that equates the present value of the bond's expected cash flows until maturity with the bond's price. The yield to maturity can be considered an estimate of the bond's expected return; it reflects the annual return that an investor will earn on a bond if this investor purchases the bond today and holds it until maturity. There is an inverse relationship between the bond's price and its yield to maturity, all else being equal. That is, the higher the bond's yield to maturity, the lower its price. Alternatively, the higher the bond's price, the lower its yield to maturity. Thus, investors anticipating a lower interest rate environment (in which investors demand a lower yield-to-maturity on the bond) hope to earn a positive return from price appreciation. The reading on understanding risk and return of fixed-income securities covers these fundamentals and more.

3

LEGAL, REGULATORY, AND TAX CONSIDERATIONS

As a **bond** is a contractual agreement between the issuer and the bondholders, it is subject to legal considerations. Investors in fixed-income securities must also be aware of the regulatory and tax considerations associated with the bonds in which they invest or want to invest.

3.1 Bond Indenture

The **trust deed** is the legal contract that describes the form of the bond, the obligations of the issuer, and the rights of the bondholders. Market participants frequently call this legal contract the bond **indenture**, particularly in the United States and Canada. The indenture is written in the name of the issuer and references the features of the bond issue, such as the principal value for each bond, the interest rate or coupon rate to be paid, the dates when the interest payments will be made, the maturity date when the bonds will be repaid, and whether the bond issue comes with any contingency provisions. The indenture also includes information regarding the funding sources for the interest payments and principal repayments, and it specifies any collaterals, credit enhancements, or covenants. **Collaterals** are assets or financial guarantees underlying the debt obligation above and beyond the issuer's promise to pay. **Credit enhancements** are provisions that may be used to reduce the credit risk of the bond issue. **Covenants** are clauses that specify the rights of the bondholders and any actions that the issuer is obligated to perform or prohibited from performing.

Because it would be impractical for the issuer to enter into a direct agreement with each of many bondholders, the indenture is usually held by a trustee. The trustee is typically a financial institution with trust powers, such as the trust department of a bank or a trust company. It is appointed by the issuer, but it acts in a fiduciary capacity with the bondholders. The trustee's role is to monitor that the issuer complies with the obligations specified in the indenture and to take action on behalf of the bondholders when necessary. The trustee's duties tend to be administrative and usually include maintaining required documentation and records; holding beneficial title to, safeguarding, and appraising collateral (if any); invoicing the issuer for interest payments and principal repayments; and holding funds until they are paid, although the actual mechanics of cash flow movements from the issuers to the trustee are typically handled by the principal paying agent. In the event of default, the discretionary powers of the trustee increase considerably. The trustee is responsible for calling meetings of bondholders to discuss the actions to take. The trustee can also bring legal action against the issuer on behalf of the bondholders.

For a plain vanilla bond, the indenture is often a standard template that is updated for the specific terms and conditions of a particular bond issue. For exotic bonds, the document is tailored and can often be several hundred pages.

When assessing the risk–reward profile of a bond issue, investors should be informed by the content of the indenture. They should pay special attention to their rights in the event of default. In addition to identifying the basic bond features described earlier, investors should carefully review the following areas:

- the legal identity of the bond issuer and its legal form;
- the source of repayment proceeds;
- the asset or collateral backing (if any);
- the credit enhancements (if any); and
- the covenants (if any).

We consider each of these areas in the following sections.

3.1.1 *Legal Identity of the Bond Issuer and its Legal Form*

The legal obligation to make the contractual payments is assigned to the bond issuer. The issuer is identified in the indenture by its legal name. For a sovereign bond, the legal issuer is usually the office responsible for managing the national budget, such as HM Treasury (Her Majesty's Treasury) in the United Kingdom. The legal issuer

may be different from the body that administers the bond issue process. Using the UK example, the legal obligation to repay gilts lies with HM Treasury, but the bonds are issued by the UK Debt Management Office, an executive agency of HM Treasury.

For corporate bonds, the issuer is usually the corporate legal entity—for example, Wal-Mart Stores Inc., Samsung Electronics Co. Ltd., or Volkswagen AG. However, bonds are sometimes issued by a subsidiary of a parent legal entity. In this case, investors should look at the credit quality of the subsidiary, unless the indenture specifies that the bond liabilities are guaranteed by the parent. When they are rated, subsidiaries often carry a credit rating that is lower than their parent, but this is not always the case. For example, in May 2012, Santander UK plc was rated higher by Moody's than its Spanish parent, Banco Santander.

Bonds are sometimes issued by a holding company, which is the parent legal entity for a group of companies, rather than by one of the operating companies in the group. This issue is important for investors to consider because a holding company may be rated differently from its operating companies and investors may lack recourse to assets held by those companies. If the bonds are issued by a holding company that has fewer (or no) assets to call on should it default, investors face a higher level of credit risk than if the bonds were issued by one of the operating companies in the group.

For ABS, the legal obligation to repay the bondholders often lies with the special legal entity that was created by the financial institution in charge of the securitization process. The financial institution is known as the sponsor or originator. The special legal entity is most frequently referred to as a special purpose entity (SPE) in the United States and a special purpose vehicle (SPV) in Europe, and it is also sometimes called a special purpose company (SPC). The legal form for the special legal entity may be a limited partnership, a limited liability company, or a trust. Typically, special legal entities are thinly capitalized, have no independent management or employees, and have no purpose other than the transactions for which they were created.

Through the securitization process, the sponsor transfers the assets to the special legal entity to carry out some specific transaction or series of transactions. One of the key reasons for forming a special legal entity is bankruptcy remoteness. The transfer of assets by the sponsor is considered a legal sale; once the assets have been securitized, the sponsor no longer has ownership rights. Any party making claims following the bankruptcy of the sponsor would be unable to recover the assets or their proceeds. As a result, the special legal entity's ability to pay interest and repay the principal should remain intact even if the sponsor were to fail—hence the reason why the special legal entity is also called a bankruptcy-remote vehicle.

3.1.2 *Source of Repayment Proceeds*

The indenture usually describes how the issuer intends to service the debt (make interest payments) and repay the principal. Generally, the source of repayment for bonds issued by supranational organizations is either the repayment of previous loans made by the organization or the paid-in capital from its members. National governments may also act as guarantors for certain bond issues. If additional sources of repayment are needed, the supranational organization can typically call on its members to provide funds.

Sovereign bonds are backed by the “full faith and credit” of the national government and thus by that government's ability to raise tax revenues and print money. Sovereign bonds denominated in local currency are generally considered the safest of all investments because governments have the power to raise taxes to make interest payments and principal repayments. Thus, it is highly probable that interest and principal will be paid fully and on time. As a consequence, the yields on sovereign bonds are typically lower than those for otherwise similar bonds from other local issuers.

There are three major sources for repayment of non-sovereign government debt issues, and bonds are usually classified according to these sources. The first source is through the general taxing authority of the issuer. The second source is from the cash flows of the project the bond issue is financing. The third source is from special taxes or fees established specifically for the purpose of funding interest payments and principal repayments.

The source of payment for corporate bonds is the issuer's ability to generate cash flows, primarily through its operations. These cash flows depend on the issuer's financial strength and integrity. Because corporate bonds carry a higher level of credit risk than otherwise similar sovereign and non-sovereign government bonds, they typically offer a higher yield.

In contrast to corporate bonds, the source of payment for ABS does not depend on the claims-paying ability of an operating entity but on the cash flows generated by one or more underlying financial assets, such as mortgages or auto loans. Thus, investors in ABS must pay special attention to the quality of the assets backing the ABS.

3.1.3 *Asset or Collateral Backing*

Collateral backing is a way to alleviate credit risk. Investors should review where they rank compared with other creditors in the event of default and analyze the quality of the collateral backing the bond issue.

3.1.3.1 Seniority Ranking **Secured bonds** are backed by assets or financial guarantees pledged to ensure debt repayment in the case of default. In contrast, unsecured bonds have no collateral; bondholders have only a general claim on the issuer's assets and cash flows. Thus, unsecured bonds are paid after secured bonds in the event of default. By lowering credit risk, collateral backing increases the bond issue's credit quality and decreases its yield.

A bond's collateral backing might not specify an identifiable asset but instead may be described as the "general plant and infrastructure" of the issuer. In such cases, investors rely on seniority ranking—that is, the systematic way in which lenders are repaid in case of bankruptcy or liquidation. What matters to investors is where they rank compared with other creditors rather than whether there is an asset of sufficient quality and value in place to cover their claims. Senior debt is debt that has a priority claim over subordinated debt or junior debt. Financial institutions issue a large volume of both senior unsecured and subordinated bonds globally; it is not uncommon to see large as well as smaller banks issue such bonds. For example, in 2012, banks as diverse as Royal Bank of Scotland in the United Kingdom and Prime Bank in Bangladesh issued senior unsecured bonds to institutional investors.

Debentures are a type of bond that can be secured or unsecured. In many jurisdictions, debentures are unsecured bonds, with no collateral backing assigned to the bondholders. In contrast, bonds known as "debentures" in the United Kingdom and in other Commonwealth countries, such as India, are usually backed by an asset or pool of assets assigned as collateral support for the bond obligations and segregated from the claims of other creditors. Thus, it is important for investors to review the indenture to determine whether a debenture is secured or unsecured. If the debenture is secured, debenture holders rank above unsecured creditors of the company; they have a specific asset or pool of assets that the trustee can call on to realize the debt in the event of default.

3.1.3.2 Types of Collateral Backing There is a wide range of bonds that are secured by some form of collateral. Some companies issue collateral trust bonds and equipment trust certificates. **Collateral trust bonds** are secured by securities such as common shares, other bonds, or other financial assets. These securities are pledged by the issuer and typically held by the trustee. **Equipment trust certificates** are bonds secured by

specific types of equipment or physical assets, such as aircraft, railroad cars, shipping containers, or oil rigs. They are most commonly issued to take advantage of the tax benefits of leasing. For example, suppose an airline finances the purchase of new aircraft with equipment trust certificates. The legal title to the aircraft is held by the trustee, which issues equipment trust certificates to investors in the amount of the aircraft purchase price. The trustee leases the aircraft to the airline and collects lease payments from the airline to pay the interest on the certificates. When the certificates mature, the trustee sells the aircraft to the airline, uses the proceeds to retire the principal, and cancels the lease.

One of the most common forms of collateral for ABS is mortgaged property. MBS are debt obligations that represent claims to the cash flows from pools of mortgage loans, most commonly on residential property. Mortgage loans are purchased from banks, mortgage companies, and other originators and then assembled into pools by a governmental, quasi-governmental, or private entity.

Financial institutions, particularly in Europe, issue covered bonds. A **covered bond** is a debt obligation backed by a segregated pool of assets called a “cover pool”. Covered bonds are similar to ABS but offer bondholders additional protection if the financial institution defaults. A financial institution that sponsors ABS transfers the assets backing the bonds to a special legal entity. If the financial institution defaults, investors who hold bonds in the financial institution have no recourse against the special legal entity and its pool of assets because the special legal entity is a bankruptcy-remote vehicle; the only recourse they have is against the financial institution itself. In contrast, in the case of covered bonds, the pool of assets remains on the financial institution’s balance sheet. In the event of default, bondholders have recourse against both the financial institution and the cover pool. Thus, the cover pool serves as collateral. If the assets that are included in the cover pool become non-performing (i.e., the assets are not generating the promised cash flows), the issuer must replace them with performing assets. Therefore, covered bonds usually carry lower credit risks and offer lower yields than otherwise similar ABS.

3.1.4 Credit Enhancements

Credit enhancements refer to a variety of provisions that can be used to reduce the credit risk of a bond issue. Thus, they increase the issue’s credit quality and decrease the bond’s yield. Credit enhancements are very often used when creating ABS.

There are two primary types of credit enhancements: internal and external. Internal credit enhancement relies on structural features regarding the bond issue. External credit enhancement refers to financial guarantees received from a third party, often called a financial guarantor. We describe each type in the following sections.

3.1.4.1 Internal Credit Enhancement The most common forms of internal credit enhancement are subordination, overcollateralization, and reserve accounts.

Subordination, also known as **credit tranching**, is the most popular internal credit enhancement technique. It relies on creating more than one bond class or tranche and ordering the claim priorities for ownership or interest in an asset between the tranches. The cash flows generated by the assets are allocated with different priority to tranches of different seniority. The ordering of the claim priorities is called a senior/subordinated structure, where the tranches of highest seniority are called senior followed by subordinated or junior tranches. The subordinated tranches function as credit protection for the more senior tranches, in the sense that the most senior tranche has the first claim on available cash flows. This type of protection is also commonly referred to as a waterfall structure because in the event of default, the proceeds from liquidating assets will first be used to repay the most senior creditors. Thus, if the issuer defaults, losses are allocated from the bottom up—that is, from the most junior

to the most senior tranche. The most senior tranche is typically unaffected unless losses exceed the amount of the subordinated tranches, which is why the most senior tranche is usually rated Aaa/AAA.

Overcollateralization refers to the process of posting more collateral than is needed to obtain or secure financing. It represents a form of internal credit enhancement because the additional collateral can be used to absorb losses. For example, if at issuance the principal amount of a bond issue is \$100 million and the value of the collateral is \$110 million, the amount of overcollateralization is \$10 million. Over time, the amount of overcollateralization changes, for instance as a result of amortization, prepayments or defaults in the case of MBS. A major problem associated with overcollateralization is the valuation of the collateral. For example, one of the most significant contributors to the 2007–2009 credit crisis was a valuation problem with the residential housing assets backing MBS. Many properties were originally valued in excess of the worth of the issued securities. But as property prices fell and homeowners started to default on their mortgages, the credit quality of many MBS declined sharply. The result was a rapid rise in yields and panic among investors in these securities.

Reserve accounts or **reserve funds** are another form of internal credit enhancement, and come in two forms: a cash reserve fund and an excess spread account. A cash reserve fund is a deposit of cash that can be used to absorb losses. An excess spread account involves the allocation into an account of any amounts left over after paying out the interest to bondholders. The excess spread, sometimes called excess interest cash flow, is the difference between the cash flow received from the assets used to secure the bond issue and the interest paid to bondholders. The excess spread can be retained and deposited into a reserve account that serves as a first line of protection against losses. In a process called turboing, the excess spread can be used to retire the principal, with the most senior tranche having the first claim on these funds.

3.1.4.2 External Credit Enhancement The most common forms of external credit enhancement are bank guarantees and surety bonds, letters of credit, and cash collateral accounts.

Bank guarantees and **surety bonds** are very similar in nature because they both reimburse bondholders for any losses incurred if the issuer defaults. However, there is usually a maximum amount that is guaranteed, called the penal sum. The major difference between a bank guarantee and a surety bond is that the former is issued by a bank, whereas the latter is issued by a rated and regulated insurance company. Insurance companies that specialize in providing financial guarantees are typically called monoline insurance companies or monoline insurers. Monoline insurers played an important role in securitization until the 2007–2009 credit crisis. But financial guarantees from monoline insurers have become a less common form of credit enhancement since the credit crisis as a consequence of the financial difficulties and credit rating downgrades that most monoline insurers experienced.

A **letter of credit** from a financial institution is another form of external credit enhancement for a bond issue. The financial institution provides the issuer with a credit line to reimburse any cash flow shortfalls from the assets backing the issue. Letters of credit have also become a less common form of credit enhancement since the credit crisis as a result of the credit rating downgrades of several financial institutions that were providers of letters of credit.

Bank guarantees, surety bonds, and letters of credit expose the investor to third-party (or counterparty) risk—that is, the possibility that a guarantor cannot meet its obligations. A **cash collateral account** mitigates this concern because the issuer immediately borrows the credit-enhancement amount and then invests that amount, usually in highly rated short-term commercial paper. Because a cash collateral account

is an actual deposit of cash rather than a pledge of cash, a downgrade of the cash collateral account provider will not necessarily result in a downgrade of the bond issue backed by that provider.

3.1.5 Covenants

Bond covenants are legally enforceable rules that borrowers and lenders agree on at the time of a new bond issue. An indenture will frequently include affirmative (or positive) and negative covenants. Affirmative covenants enumerate what issuers are required to do, whereas negative covenants specify what issuers are prohibited from doing.

Affirmative covenants are typically administrative in nature. For example, frequently used affirmative covenants include what the issuer will do with the proceeds from the bond issue and the promise of making the contractual payments. The issuer may also promise to comply with all laws and regulations, maintain its current lines of business, insure and maintain its assets, and pay taxes as they come due. These types of covenants typically do not impose additional costs to the issuer and do not materially constrain the issuer's discretion regarding how to operate its business.

In contrast, negative covenants are frequently costly and do materially constrain the issuer's potential business decisions. The purpose of negative covenants is to protect bondholders from such problems as the dilution of their claims, asset withdrawals or substitutions, and suboptimal investments by the issuer. Examples of negative covenants include the following:

- *Restrictions on debt* regulate the issue of additional debt. Maximum acceptable debt usage ratios (sometimes called leverage ratios or gearing ratios) and minimum acceptable interest coverage ratios are frequently specified, permitting new debt to be issued only when justified by the issuer's financial condition.
- *Negative pledges* prevent the issuance of debt that would be senior to or rank in priority ahead of the existing bondholders' debt.
- *Restrictions on prior claims* protect unsecured bondholders by preventing the issuer from using assets that are not collateralized (called unencumbered assets) to become collateralized.
- *Restrictions on distributions to shareholders* restrict dividends and other payments to shareholders such as share buy-backs (repurchases). The restriction typically operates by reference to the borrower's profitability; that is, the covenant sets a base date, usually at or near the time of the issue, and permits dividends and share buy-backs only to the extent of a set percentage of earnings or cumulative earnings after that date.
- *Restrictions on asset disposals* set a limit on the amount of assets that can be disposed by the issuer during the bond's life. The limit on cumulative disposals is typically set as a percentage of a company's gross assets. The usual intent is to protect bondholder claims by preventing a break-up of the company.
- *Restrictions on investments* constrain risky investments by blocking speculative investments. The issuer is essentially forced to devote its capital to its going-concern business. A companion covenant may require the issuer to stay in its present line of business.
- *Restrictions on mergers and acquisitions* prevent these actions unless the company is the surviving company or unless the acquirer delivers a supplemental indenture to the trustee expressly assuming the old bonds and terms of the old indenture. These requirements effectively prevent a company from avoiding its obligations to bondholders by selling out to another company.

These are only a few examples of negative covenants. The common characteristic of all negative covenants is ensuring that the issuer will not take any actions that would significantly reduce its ability to make interest payments and repay the principal. Bondholders, however, rarely wish to be too specific about how an issuer should run its business because doing so would imply a degree of control that bondholders legally want to avoid. In addition, very restrictive covenants may not be in the bondholders' best interest if they force the issuer to default when default is avoidable. For example, strict restrictions on debt may prevent the issuer from raising new funds that are necessary to meet its contractual obligations; strict restrictions on asset disposals may prohibit the issuer from selling assets or business units and obtaining the necessary liquidity to make interest payments or principal repayments; and strict restrictions on mergers and acquisitions may prevent the issuer from being taken over by a stronger company that would be able to honor the issuer's contractual obligations.

EXAMPLE 2

- 1 The term *most likely* used to refer to the legal contract under which a bond is issued is:
 - A indenture.
 - B debenture.
 - C letter of credit.
- 2 The individual or entity that *most likely* assumes the role of trustee for a bond issue is:
 - A a financial institution appointed by the issuer.
 - B the treasurer or chief financial officer of the issuer.
 - C a financial institution appointed by a regulatory authority.
- 3 The individual or entity *most likely* responsible for the timely payment of interest and repayment of principal to bondholders is the:
 - A trustee.
 - B primary or lead bank of the issuer.
 - C treasurer or chief financial officer of the issuer.
- 4 The major advantage of issuing bonds through a special legal entity is:
 - A bankruptcy remoteness.
 - B beneficial tax treatments.
 - C greater liquidity and lower issuing costs.
- 5 The category of bond *most likely* repaid from the repayment of previous loans made by the issuer is:
 - A sovereign bonds.
 - B supranational bonds.
 - C non-sovereign bonds.
- 6 The type of collateral used to secure collateral trust bonds is *most likely*:
 - A securities.
 - B mortgages.
 - C physical assets.
- 7 The external credit enhancement that has the *least* amount of third-party risk is a:
 - A surety bond.

- B letter of credit.
 - C cash collateral account.
- 8 An example of an affirmative covenant is the requirement:
- A that dividends will not exceed 60% of earnings.
 - B to insure and perform periodic maintenance on financed assets.
 - C that the debt-to-equity ratio will not exceed 0.4 and times interest earned will not fall below 8.0.
- 9 An example of a covenant that protects bondholders against the dilution of their claims is a restriction on:
- A debt.
 - B investments.
 - C mergers and acquisitions.

Solution to 1:

A is correct. The contract between a bond issuer and the bondholders is very often called an indenture or deed trust. The indenture documents the terms of the issue, including the principal amount, the coupon rate, and the payments schedule. It also provides information about the funding sources for the contractual payments and specifies whether there are any collateral, credit enhancement, or covenants. B is incorrect because a debenture is a type of bond. C is incorrect because a letter of credit is an external credit enhancement.

Solution to 2:

A is correct. The issuer chooses a financial institution with trust powers, such as the trust department of a bank or a trust company, to act as a trustee for the bond issue.

Solution to 3:

A is correct. Although the issuer is ultimately the source of the contractual payments, it is the trustee that ensures timely payments. Doing so is accomplished by invoicing the issuer for interest payments and principal repayments and holding the funds until they are paid.

Solution to 4:

A is correct. A special legal entity is a bankruptcy-remote vehicle. Bankruptcy remoteness is achieved by transferring the assets from the sponsor to the special legal entity. Once this transfer is completed, the sponsor no longer has ownership rights. If the sponsor defaults, no claims can be made to recover the assets that were transferred or the proceeds from the transfer to the special legal entity.

Solution to 5:

B is correct. The source of payment for bonds issued by supranational organizations is either the repayment of previous loans made by the organization or the paid-in capital of its member states. A is incorrect because national governments rely on their taxing authority and money creation to repay their debt. C is incorrect because non-sovereign bonds are typically repaid from the issuer's taxing authority or the cash flows of the project being financed.

Solution to 6:

A is correct. Collateral trust bonds are secured by securities, such as common shares, other bonds, or other financial assets. B is incorrect because MBS are secured by mortgages. C is incorrect because equipment trust certificates are backed by physical assets such as aircraft, railroad cars, shipping containers, or oil rigs.

Solution to 7:

C is correct. The third-party (or counterparty) risk for a surety bond and a letter of credit arises from both being future promises to pay. In contrast, a cash collateral account allows the issuer to immediately borrow the credit-enhancement amount and then invest it.

Solution to 8:

B is correct. Affirmative covenants indicate what the issuer “must do” and are administrative in nature. A covenant requiring the issuer to insure and perform periodic maintenance on financed assets is an example of affirmative covenant. A and C are incorrect because they are negative covenants; they indicate what the issuer cannot do.

Solution to 9:

A is correct. A restriction on debt typically takes the form of a maximum acceptable debt usage ratio or a minimum acceptable interest coverage ratio. Thus, it limits the issuer’s ability to issue new debt that would dilute the bondholders’ claims. B and C are incorrect because they are covenants that restrict the issuer’s business activities by preventing the company from making investments or being taken over, respectively.

3.2 Legal and Regulatory Considerations

Fixed-income securities are subject to different legal and regulatory requirements depending on where they are issued and traded, as well as who holds them. Unfortunately, there are no unified legal and regulatory requirements that apply globally.

An important consideration for investors is where the bonds are issued and traded because it affects the laws and regulation that apply. The global bond markets consist of national bond markets and the Eurobond market. A national bond market includes all the bonds that are issued and traded in a specific country, and denominated in the currency of that country. Bonds issued by entities that are incorporated in that country are called domestic bonds, whereas bonds issued by entities that are incorporated in another country are called foreign bonds. If Ford Motor Company issues bonds denominated in US dollars in the United States, these bonds will be classified as domestic. If Volkswagen Group or Toyota Motor Corporation (or their German or Japanese subsidiaries) issue bonds denominated in US dollars in the United States, these bonds will be classified as foreign. Foreign bonds very often receive nicknames. For example, foreign bonds are called “kangaroo bonds” in Australia, “maple bonds” in Canada, “panda bonds” in China, “Samurai bonds” in Japan, “kimchi bonds” in South Korea, “matrioshka bonds” in Russia, “matador bonds” in Spain, “bulldog bonds” in the United Kingdom, and “Yankee bonds” in the United States. National regulators may make distinctions both between and among resident and non-resident issuers, and they may have different requirements regarding the issuance process, the level of disclosures, or the restrictions imposed on the bond issuer and/or the investors who can purchase the bonds.

Governments and companies have issued foreign bonds in London since the 19th century, and foreign bond issues expanded in such countries as the United States, Japan, and Switzerland during the 1980s. But the 1960s saw the emergence of another bond market: the Eurobond market. The Eurobond market was created primarily to bypass the legal, regulatory, and tax constraints imposed on bond issuers and investors, particularly in the United States. Bonds issued and traded on the Eurobond market are called **Eurobonds**, and they are named after the currency in which they are denominated. For example, Eurodollar and Euroyen bonds are denominated in US dollars and Japanese yens, respectively. Bonds that are denominated in euros are called euro-denominated Eurobonds.

Eurobonds are typically less regulated than domestic and foreign bonds because they are issued outside the jurisdiction of any single country. They are usually unsecured bonds and can be denominated in any currency, including the issuer's domestic currency.⁴ They are underwritten by an international syndicate—that is, a group of financial institutions from different jurisdictions. Most Eurobonds are **bearer bonds**, meaning that the trustee does not keep records of who owns the bonds; only the clearing system knows who the bond owners are. In contrast, most domestic and foreign bonds are **registered bonds** for which ownership is recorded by either name or serial number. Some investors may prefer bearer bonds to registered bonds, possibly for tax reasons.

A reference is sometimes made to global bonds. A global bond is issued simultaneously in the Eurobond market and in at least one domestic bond market. Issuing bonds in several markets at the same time ensures that there is sufficient demand for large bond issues, and that the bonds can be purchased by all investors, no matter where these investors are located. For example, the World Bank is a regular issuer of global bonds. Many market participants refer to foreign bonds, Eurobonds, and global bonds as international bonds as opposed to domestic bonds.

The differences among domestic bonds, foreign bonds, Eurobonds, and global bonds matter to investors because these bonds are subject to different legal, regulatory, and as described in Section 3.3, tax requirements. They are also characterized by differences in the frequency of interest payments and the way the interest payment is calculated, which affect the bond's cash flows and thus its price. Note, however, that the currency in which a bond is denominated has a stronger effect on its price than where the bond is issued or traded. This is because market interest rates have a strong influence on a bond's price, and the market interest rates that affect a bond are those associated with the currency in which the bond is denominated.

As the emergence and growth of the Eurobond market illustrates, legal and regulatory considerations affect the dynamics of the global fixed-income markets. Exhibit 2 compares the amount of domestic and international debt outstanding for the 15 countries that were the largest domestic debt issuers at the end of December 2011. The reported amounts are based on the residence of the issuer.

⁴ Eurobonds denominated in US dollars cannot be sold to US investors at the time of issue because they are not registered with the US Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC). Most Eurobonds are sold to investors in Europe, the Middle East, and Asia Pacific.

Exhibit 2 Domestic and International Debt Securities by Residence of Issuer at the End of December 2011

Issuers	Domestic Debt Securities (US\$ billions)	International Debt Securities (US\$ billions)
All issuers	69,912.7	28,475.4
United States	26,333.1	6,822.0
Japan	14,952.5	180.6
China	3,344.8	28.3
France	3,307.6	1,977.0
Italy	3,077.7	1,135.0
Germany	2,534.2	2,120.6
United Kingdom	1,743.8	3,671.4
Canada	1,547.7	710.9
Brazil	1,488.8	137.4
Spain	1,448.7	1,499.5
South Korea	1,149.0	154.6
Australia	1,023.4	586.4
Netherlands	955.5	2,019.7
Denmark	714.6	142.6
India	596.1	26.1

Source: Based on data from the Bank of International Settlements, Tables 11 and 16A, available at www.bis.org/statistics/secstats.htm, (accessed 6 September 2012).

EXAMPLE 3

- 1 An example of a domestic bond is a bond issued by:
 - A LG Group from South Korea, denominated in British pounds, and sold in the United Kingdom.
 - B the UK Debt Management Office, denominated in British pounds, and sold in the United Kingdom.
 - C Wal-Mart from the United States, denominated in US dollars, and sold in various countries in North America, Europe, the Middle East, and Asia Pacific.
- 2 A bond issued by Sony in Japan, denominated in US dollars but not registered with the SEC, and sold to an institutional investor in the Middle East, is *most likely* an example of a:
 - A Eurobond.
 - B global bond.
 - C foreign bond.

Solution to 1:

B is correct. A domestic bond is issued by a local issuer, denominated in local currency, and sold in the domestic market. Gilts are British pound-denominated bonds issued by the UK Debt Management Office in the United Kingdom. Thus, they are UK domestic bonds. A is incorrect because a bond issued by LG Group

from South Korea, denominated in British pounds, and sold in the United Kingdom, is an example of a foreign bond (bulldog bond). C is incorrect because a bond issued by Wal-Mart from the United States, denominated in US dollars, and sold in various countries in North America, Europe, the Middle East, and Asia Pacific is most likely an example of a global bond, particularly if it is also sold in the Eurobond market.

Solution to 2:

A is correct. A Eurobond is a bond that is issued internationally, outside the jurisdiction of any single country. Thus, a bond issued by Sony from Japan, denominated in US dollars but not registered with the SEC, is an example of a Eurobond. B is incorrect because global bonds are bonds that are issued simultaneously in the Eurobond market and in at least one domestic bond market. C is incorrect because if Sony's bond issue were a foreign bond (Yankee bond), it would be registered with the SEC.

3.3 Tax Considerations

Generally speaking, the income portion of a bond investment is taxed at the ordinary income tax rate, which is typically the same tax rate that an individual would pay on wage or salary income. Tax-exempt securities are the exception to this rule. For example, interest income received by holders of local government bonds called municipal bonds in the United States is often exempt from federal income tax and from the income tax of the state in which the bonds are issued. The tax status of bond income may also depend on where the bond is issued and traded. For example, some domestic bonds pay their interest net of income tax. Other bonds, including some Eurobonds, make gross interest payments.

In addition to earnings from interest, a bond investment may also generate a capital gain or loss. If a bond is sold before its maturity date, the price is likely to have changed compared with the purchase price. This change will generate a capital gain if the bond price has increased or a capital loss if the bond price has decreased. From the stand point of taxes, a capital gain or loss is usually treated differently from taxable income. In addition, in some countries, there is a different tax rate for long-term and short-term capital gains. For example, capital gains that are recognized more than 12 months after the original purchase date may be taxed at a long-term capital gains tax rate, whereas capital gains that are recognized within 12 months of purchasing the investment may be taxed as a short-term capital gain. Very often, the tax rate for long-term capital gains is lower than the tax rate for short-term capital gains, and the tax rate for short-term capital gains is equal to the ordinary income tax rate, although there are exceptions. Not all countries, however, implement a capital gains tax. Furthermore, differences in national and local legislation often result in a very diverse set of aggregate country capital gains tax rates.

For bonds issued at a discount, an additional tax consideration is related to the tax status of the original issue discount. The original issue discount is the difference between the par value and the original issue price. In some countries, such as the United States, a prorated portion of the discount must be included in interest income every tax year. This is not the case in other countries, such as Japan. Exhibit 3 illustrates the potential importance of this tax consideration.

Exhibit 3**Original Issue Discount Tax Provision**

Assume a hypothetical country, Zinland, where the local currency is the zini (Z). The market interest rate in Zinland is 10%, and both interest income and capital gains are taxed. Companies A and B issue 20-year bonds with a par value of Z1,000. Company A issues a coupon bond with an annual coupon rate of 10%. Investors buy Company A's bonds for Z1,000. Every year, they receive and pay tax on their Z100 annual interest payments. When Company A's bonds mature, bondholders receive the par value of Z1,000. Company B issues a zero-coupon bond at a discount. Investors buy Company B's bonds for Z148.64. They do not receive any cash flows until Company B pays the par value of Z1,000 when the bonds mature.

Company A's bonds and Company B's bonds are economically identical in the sense that they have the same maturity (20 years) and the same yield to maturity (10%). Company A's bonds make periodic payments, however, whereas Company B's bonds defer payment until maturity. Investors in Company A's bonds must include the annual interest payments in taxable income. When they receive their original Z1,000 investment back at maturity, they face no capital gain or loss. Without an original issue discount tax provision, investors in Company B's bonds do not have any taxable income until the bonds mature. When they receive the par value at maturity, they face a capital gain on the original issue discount—that is, on Z851.36 (Z1,000 – Z148.64). The purpose of an original issue discount tax provision is to tax investors in Company B's bonds the same way as investors in Company A's bonds. Thus, a prorated portion of the Z851.36 original issue discount is included in taxable income every tax year until maturity. This allows investors in Company B's bonds to increase their cost basis in the bonds so that at maturity, they face no capital gain or loss.

Some jurisdictions also have tax provisions for bonds bought at a premium. They may allow investors to deduct a prorated portion of the amount paid in excess of the bond's par value from their taxable income every tax year until maturity. For example, if an investor pays \$1,005 for a bond that has a par value of \$1,000 and matures five years later, she can deduct \$1 from her taxable income every tax year for five years. But the deduction may not be required; the investor may have the choice either to deduct a prorated portion of the premium each year or to deduct nothing and declare a capital loss when the bond is redeemed at maturity.

EXAMPLE 4

- 1 The coupon payment is *most likely* to be taxed as:
 - A ordinary income.
 - B short-term capital gain.
 - C long-term capital gain.
- 2 Assume that a company issues bonds in the hypothetical country of Zinland, where the local currency is the zini (Z). There is an original issue discount tax provision in Zinland's tax code. The company issues a 10-year zero-coupon bond with a par value of Z1,000 and sells it for Z800. An investor who buys the zero-coupon bond at issuance and holds it until maturity *most likely*:

- A has to include Z20 in his taxable income every tax year for 10 years and has to declare a capital gain of Z200 at maturity.
- B has to include Z20 in his taxable income every tax year for 10 years and does not have to declare a capital gain at maturity.
- C does not have to include anything in his taxable income every tax year for 10 years but has to declare a capital gain of Z200 at maturity.

Solution to 1:

A is correct. Interest income is typically taxed at the ordinary income tax rate, which may be the same tax rate that individuals pay on wage and salary income.

Solution to 2:

B is correct. The original issue discount tax provision requires the investor to include a prorated portion of the original issue discount in his taxable income every tax year until maturity. The original issue discount is the difference between the par value and the original issue price—that is, $Z1,000 - Z800 = Z200$. The bond's maturity is 10 years. Thus, the prorated portion that must be included each year is $Z200 \div 10 = Z20$. The original issue discount tax provision allows the investor to increase his cost basis in the bond so that when the bond matures, the investor faces no capital gain or loss.

4

STRUCTURE OF A BOND'S CASH FLOWS

The most common payment structure by far is that of a plain vanilla bond, as depicted in Exhibit 1. These bonds make periodic, fixed coupon payments and a lump-sum payment of principal at maturity. But there are other structures regarding both the principal repayment and the interest payments. This section discusses the major schedules observed in the global fixed-income markets. Schedules for principal repayments and interest payments are typically similar for a particular type of bond, such as 10-year US Treasury bonds. However, payment schedules vary considerably between types of bonds, such as government bonds versus corporate bonds.

4.1 Principal Repayment Structures

How the amount borrowed is repaid is an important consideration for investors because it affects the level of credit risk they face from holding the bonds. Any provision that periodically retires some of the principal amount outstanding is a way to reduce credit risk.

4.1.1 *Bullet, Fully Amortized, and Partially Amortized Bonds*

The payment structure of a plain vanilla bond has been used for nearly every government bond ever issued as well as for the majority of corporate bonds. Such a bond is also known as a bullet bond because the entire payment of principal occurs at maturity.

In contrast, an **amortizing bond** has a payment schedule that calls for periodic payments of interest and repayments of principal. A bond that is fully amortized is characterized by a fixed periodic payment schedule that reduces the bond's outstanding principal amount to zero by the maturity date. A partially amortized bond also makes fixed periodic payments until maturity, but only a portion of the principal is repaid by the maturity date. Thus, a **balloon payment** is required at maturity to retire the bond's outstanding principal amount.

Exhibit 4 illustrates the differences in the payment schedules for a bullet bond, a fully amortized bond, and a partially amortized bond. For the three bonds, the principal amount is \$1,000, the maturity is five years, the coupon rate is 6%, and interest payments are made annually. The market interest rate used to discount the bonds' expected cash flows until maturity is assumed to be constant at 6%. The bonds are issued and redeemed at par. For the partially amortized bond, the balloon payment is \$200 at maturity.⁵

Exhibit 4 Example of Payment Schedules for Bullet, Fully Amortized, and Partially Amortized Bonds

Bullet Bond

Year	Investor Cash Flows	Interest Payment	Principal Repayment	Outstanding Principal at the End of the Year
0	-\$1,000.00			\$1,000.00
1	60.00	\$60.00	\$0.00	1,000.00
2	60.00	60.00	0.00	1,000.00
3	60.00	60.00	0.00	1,000.00
4	60.00	60.00	0.00	1,000.00
5	1,060.00	60.00	1,000.00	0.00

Fully Amortized Bond

Year	Investor Cash Flows	Interest Payment	Principal Repayment	Outstanding Principal at the End of the Year
0	-\$1,000.00			
1	237.40	\$60.00	\$177.40	\$822.60
2	237.40	49.36	188.04	634.56
3	237.40	38.07	199.32	435.24
4	237.40	26.11	211.28	223.96
5	237.40	13.44	223.96	0.00

Partially Amortized Bond

Year	Investor Cash Flows	Interest Payment	Principal Repayment	Outstanding Principal at the End of the Year
0	-\$1,000.00			
1	201.92	\$60.00	\$141.92	\$858.08
2	201.92	51.48	150.43	707.65
3	201.92	42.46	159.46	548.19
4	201.92	32.89	169.03	379.17
5	401.92	22.75	379.17	0.00

⁵ The examples in this reading were created in Microsoft Excel. Numbers may differ from the results obtained using a calculator because of rounding.

Investors pay \$1,000 now to purchase any of the three bonds. For the bullet bond, they receive the coupon payment of \$60 ($6\% \times \$1,000$) every year for five years. The last payment is \$1,060 because it includes both the last coupon payment and the principal amount.

For the fully amortized bond, the annual payment, which includes both the coupon payment and the principal repayment, is constant. Thus, this annual payment can be viewed as an annuity. This annuity lasts for five years; its present value, discounted at the market interest rate of 6%, is equal to the bond price of \$1,000. Therefore, the annual payment is \$237.40. The first year, the interest part of the payment is \$60 ($6\% \times \$1,000$), which implies that the principal repayment part is \$177.40 ($\$237.40 - \60). This repayment leaves an outstanding principal amount, which becomes the basis for the calculation of the interest the following year, of \$822.60 ($\$1,000 - \177.40). The second year, the interest part of the payment is \$49.36 ($6\% \times \822.60), the principal repayment part is \$188.04 ($\$237.40 - \49.36), and the outstanding principal amount is \$634.56 ($\$822.60 - \188.04). The fifth year, the outstanding principal amount is fully repaid. Note that the annual payment is constant but, over time, the interest payment decreases and the principal repayment increases.

The partially amortized bond can be viewed as the combination of two elements: a five-year annuity plus the balloon payment at maturity. The sum of the present values of these two elements is equal to the bond price of \$1,000. As for the fully amortized bond, the discount rate is the market interest rate of 6%, making the constant amount for the annuity \$201.92. This amount represents the annual payment for the first four years. For Years 1 through 4, the split between interest and principal is done the same way as for the fully amortized bond. The interest part of the payment is equal to 6% multiplied by the outstanding principal at the end of the previous year; the principal repayment part is equal to \$201.92 minus the interest part of the payment for the year; and the outstanding principal amount at the end of the year is equal to the outstanding principal amount at the end of the previous year minus the principal repayment for the year. In Year 5, investors receive \$401.92; this amount is calculated either as the sum of the interest payment (\$22.75) and the outstanding principal amount (\$379.17) or as the constant amount of the annuity (\$201.92) plus the balloon payment (\$200). As for the fully amortized bond, the interest payment decreases and the principal repayment increases over time. Because the principal amount is not fully amortized, interest payments are higher for the partially amortized bond than for the fully amortized bond, except the first year when they are equal.

Exhibit 4 does not address the complexity of the repayment structure for some bonds, such as many ABS. For example, MBS face prepayment risk, which is the possible early repayment of mortgage principal. Borrowers usually have the right to prepay mortgages, which typically occurs when a current homeowner purchases a new home or when homeowners refinance their mortgages because market interest rates have fallen.

EXAMPLE 5

- 1 The structure that requires the largest repayment of principal at maturity is that of a:
 - A bullet bond.
 - B fully amortized bond.
 - C partially amortized bond.

- 2 A plain vanilla bond has a maturity of 10 years, a par value of £100, and a coupon rate of 9%. Interest payments are made annually. The market interest rate is assumed to be constant at 9%. The bond is issued and redeemed at par. The principal repayment the first year is *closest* to:
- A £0.00.
 - B £6.58.
 - C £10.00.
- 3 Relative to a fully amortized bond, the coupon payments of an otherwise similar partially amortized bond are:
- A lower or equal.
 - B equal.
 - C higher or equal.

Solution to 1:

A is correct. The entire repayment of principal occurs at maturity for a bullet (or plain vanilla) bond, whereas it occurs over time for fully and partially amortized bonds. Thus, the largest repayment of principal at maturity is that of a bullet bond.

Solution to 2:

A is correct. A plain vanilla (or bullet) bond does not make any principal repayment until the maturity date. B is incorrect because £6.58 would be the principal repayment for a fully amortized bond.

Solution to 3:

C is correct. Except at maturity, the principal repayments are lower for a partially amortized bond than for an otherwise similar fully amortized bond. Consequently, the principal amounts outstanding and, therefore, the amounts of interest payments are higher for a partially amortized bond than for a fully amortized bond, all else equal. The only exception is the first interest payment, which is the same for both repayment structures. This is because no principal repayment has been made by the time the first coupon is paid.

4.1.2 Sinking Fund Arrangements

A **sinking fund arrangement** is another approach that can be used to achieve the same goal of periodically retiring the bond's principal outstanding. The term sinking fund refers to an issuer's plans to set aside funds over time to retire the bond. Originally, a sinking fund was a specified cash reserve that was segregated from the rest of the issuer's business for the purpose of repaying the principal. More generally today, a sinking fund arrangement specifies the portion of the bond's principal outstanding, perhaps 5%, that must be repaid each year throughout the bond's life or after a specified date. This repayment occurs whether or not an actual segregated cash reserve has been created.

Typically, the issuer will forward repayment proceeds to the bond's trustee. The trustee will then either redeem bonds to this value or select by lottery the serial numbers of bonds to be paid off. The bonds for repayment may be listed in business newspapers, such as the *Wall Street Journal* or the *Financial Times*.

As well as the standard version described above, another type of sinking fund arrangement operates by redeeming a steadily increasing amount of the bond's notional principal (total amount) each year. Any remaining principal is then redeemed at

maturity. It is common to find utility and energy companies in the United States, the United Kingdom, and the Commonwealth countries that issue bonds with sinking fund arrangements that incorporate such a provision.

Another common variation is for the bond issue to include a call provision, which gives the issuer the option to repurchase the bonds before maturity—callable bonds are discussed in Section 5.1. The issuer can usually repurchase the bonds at the market price, at par, or at a specified sinking fund price, whichever is the lowest. To allocate the burden of the call provision fairly among bondholders, the bonds to be retired are selected at random based on serial number. Usually, the issuer can repurchase only a small portion of the bond issue. Some indentures, however, allow issuers to use a doubling option to repurchase double the required number of bonds.

The benefit of a sinking fund arrangement is that it ensures that a formal plan is in place for retiring the debt. For an investor, a sinking fund arrangement reduces the risk the issuer will default when the principal is due, thereby reducing the credit risk of the bond issue. But investors experience potential disadvantages with sinking fund arrangements. First, investors face reinvestment risk, the risk associated with having to reinvest cash flows at an interest rate that may be lower than the current yield to maturity. If the serial number of an investor's bonds is selected, the bonds will be repaid and the investor will have to reinvest the proceeds. If market interest rates have fallen since the investor purchased the bonds, he or she probably will not be able to purchase a bond offering the same return. Another potential disadvantage for investors occurs if the issuer has the option to repurchase bonds at below market prices. For example, an issuer could exercise a call option to buy back bonds at par on bonds priced above par. In this case, investors would suffer a loss.

Exhibit 5 illustrates an example of a sinking fund arrangement.

Exhibit 5

Example of a Sinking Fund Arrangement

The notional principal of the bond issue is £200 million. The sinking fund arrangement calls for 5% of the outstanding principal amount to be retired in Years 10 through 19, with the outstanding balance paid off at maturity in 20 years.

Year	Outstanding Principal at the Beginning of the Year (£ millions)	Sinking Fund Payment (£ millions)	Outstanding Principal at the End of the Year (£ millions)	Final Principal Repayment (£ millions)
0			200.00	
1 to 9	200.00	0.00	200.00	
10	200.00	10.00	190.00	
11	190.00	9.50	180.50	
12	180.50	9.03	171.48	
13	171.48	8.57	162.90	
14	162.90	8.15	154.76	
15	154.76	7.74	147.02	
16	147.02	7.35	139.67	
17	139.67	6.98	132.68	
18	132.68	6.63	126.05	
19	126.05	6.30	119.75	
20	119.75			119.75

Exhibit 5 (Continued)

There is no repayment of the principal during the first nine years. Starting the 10th year, the sinking fund arrangement calls for 5% of the outstanding principal amount to be retired each year. In Year 10, £10 million ($5\% \times £200$ million) are paid off, which leaves an outstanding principal balance of £190 million. In Year 11, the principal amount repaid is £9.50 million ($5\% \times £190$ million). The final repayment of the remaining balance (£119.75 million) is a balloon payment at maturity.

4.2 Coupon Payment Structures

A coupon is the interest payment that the bond issuer makes to the bondholder. A conventional bond pays a fixed periodic coupon over a specified time to maturity. Most frequently, the coupon is paid semi-annually for sovereign and corporate bonds; this is the case in the United States, the United Kingdom, and Commonwealth countries such as Bangladesh, India, and New Zealand. Eurobonds usually pay an annual coupon, although some Eurobonds make quarterly coupon payments. The norm for bonds issued in the eurozone is for an annual coupon, although there are exceptions.

Fixed-rate coupons are not the only coupon payment structure, however. A wide range of coupon types is offered in the global fixed-income markets. This variety exists to meet the differing needs of both issuers and investors.

4.2.1 Floating-Rate Notes

Floating-rate notes do not have a fixed coupon; instead, their coupon rate is linked to an external reference rate, such as Libor. Thus, a FRN's interest rate will fluctuate periodically during the bond's life, following the changes in the reference rate. As a consequence, the FRN's cash flows are not known with certainty. Large issuers of FRNs include government-sponsored enterprises (GSEs), such as the Federal Home Loan Banks (FHLB), the Federal National Mortgage Association ("Fannie Mae"), and the Federal Home Loan Mortgage Corporation ("Freddie Mac") in the United States, as well as banks and financial institutions in Europe and Asia Pacific. It is rare for national governments to issue FRNs because investors in sovereign bonds generally prefer fixed-coupon bonds.

Almost all FRNs have quarterly coupons, although counter examples do exist. FRNs usually pay a fixed spread over the specified reference rate. A typical coupon rate may be the three-month US dollar Libor + 20 bps (i.e., Libor + 0.20%) for a US dollar-denominated bond or the three-month Euribor + 20 bps for a euro-denominated FRN. Occasionally the spread is not fixed; in this case, the bond is known as a **variable-rate note**.

Contrary to plain vanilla, fixed-rate securities that decline in value in a rising interest rate environment, FRNs are less affected when interest rates increase because their coupon rates vary with market interest rates and are reset at regular, short-term intervals. Thus, FRNs have little interest rate risk—that is, the risk that a change in market interest rate affects a bond's value. FRNs are frequently favored by investors who expect that interest rates will rise. That said, investors still face credit risk when investing in FRNs. If an issuer's credit risk does not change from one coupon reset date to the next, the FRN's price generally will stay close to the par value. However, if there is a change in the issuer's credit quality that affects the perceived credit risk associated with the bond, the price of the FRN will deviate from its par value. A higher level of credit risk will lead to a lower price and a higher yield.

Additional features observed in FRNs may include a floor or a cap. A floor (floored FRN) prevents the coupon from falling below a specified minimum rate. This feature benefits the bondholders, who are guaranteed that the interest rate will not fall below the specified rate during a time of falling interest rates. In contrast, a cap (capped FRN) prevents the coupon from rising above a specified maximum rate. This feature benefits the issuer, because it sets a limit to the interest rate paid on the debt during a time of rising interest rates. It is also possible to have a collared FRN, which includes both a cap and a floor.

An inverse or reverse FRN, or simply an inverse floater, is a bond whose coupon rate has an inverse relationship to the reference rate. The basic structure is the same as an ordinary FRN except for the direction in which the coupon rate is adjusted. When interest rates fall, the coupon rate on an ordinary FRN decreases; in contrast, the coupon rate on a reverse FRN increases. Thus, inverse FRNs are typically favored by investors who expect interest rates to decline.

4.2.2 Step-Up Coupon Bonds

The coupon of a **step-up coupon bond**, which may be fixed or floating, increases by specified margins at specified dates. An example of a bond with a step-up coupon is the FRN that was issued by the British bank HBOS plc in 2005. This FRN had a 20-year maturity, and the coupon was linked to the three-month Libor plus an initial spread of 50 bps. The spread was scheduled to increase to 250 bps over Libor in 2015 for the bond's tenor.

Bonds with step-up coupons offer bondholders some protection against rising interest rates, and they may be an important feature for callable bonds. When interest rates increase, there is a higher likelihood that the issuer will not call the bonds, particularly if the bonds have a fixed rate of interest. The step-up coupon allows bondholders to receive a higher coupon, in line with the higher market interest rates. Alternatively, when interest rates decrease or remain stable, the step-up feature acts as an incentive for the issuer to call the bond before the spread increases and the interest expense rises. Thus, at issuance, most investors viewed the bond issued by HBOS as a 10-year investment, given that they expected the issuer to redeem it after 10 years to avoid paying the higher coupon.

Redeeming the bond when the spread increases is not automatic, however; the issuer may choose to keep the bond despite its increasing cost. This may happen if refinancing the bond is necessary and alternatives are less advantageous for this issuer. For example, a financial crisis may make it difficult for the issuer to refinance. Alternatively, the issuer's credit quality may have deteriorated, which would lead to a higher spread, potentially making the coupon rate on the new bond more expensive than that on the existing bond despite the stepped-up coupon. Although the issuer does not have to call the bond before the spread increases, there is an implicit expectation from investors that it will. Failure to do so may be viewed negatively by market participants and reduce investors' appetite for that particular issuer's bonds in the future.

4.2.3 Credit-Linked Coupon Bonds

A **credit-linked coupon bond** has a coupon that changes when the bond's credit rating changes. An example of a bond with a credit-linked coupon is one of British Telecom's bonds maturing in 2020. It has a coupon rate of 9%, but the coupon will increase by 50 bps for every credit rating downgrade below the bond's credit rating at the time of issuance and will decrease by 50 bps for every credit rating upgrade above the bond's credit rating at the time of issuance.

Bonds with credit-linked coupons are attractive to investors who are concerned about the future creditworthiness of the issuer. They may also provide some general protection against a poor economy because credit ratings tend to decline the most

during recessions. A potential problem associated with these bonds is that increases in the coupon payments resulting from a downgrade may ultimately result in further deteriorations of the credit rating or even contribute to the issuer's default.

4.2.4 *Payment-in-Kind Coupon Bonds*

A payment-in-kind (PIK) coupon bond typically allows the issuer to pay interest in the form of additional amounts of the bond issue rather than as a cash payment. Such bonds are favored by issuers who are concerned that the issuer may face potential cash flow problems in the future. They are used, for example, in financing companies that have a high debt burden, such as companies going through a leveraged buyout (a form of acquisition in which the financing consists primarily of debt). Because investors are aware of the additional credit risk associated with these bonds, they usually demand a higher yield for holding bonds with PIK coupons.

Other forms of PIK arrangements can also be found, such as paying the bondholders with common shares worth the amount of coupon due. With a PIK toggle note, the borrower has the option, for each interest period, to pay interest in cash, to make the interest payment in kind, or some mix of the two. Cash payments or payments in kind are frequently at the discretion of the borrower, but whether the payment is made in cash or in kind can be determined by an earnings or cash flow trigger identified in the indenture.

4.2.5 *Deferred Coupon Bonds*

A **deferred coupon bond**, sometimes called a **split coupon bond**, pays no coupons for its first few years but then pays a higher coupon than it otherwise normally would for the remainder of its life. Issuers of deferred coupon bonds are usually seeking ways to conserve cash in the years immediately following the bond issue, which may indicate poorer credit quality. Deferred coupon bonds are also common in project financing when the assets being developed do not generate any income during the development phase. A deferred coupon bond allows the issuer to delay interest payments until the project is completed and the cash flows generated by the assets being financed can be used to service the debt.

One of the main advantages of investing in a deferred coupon bond is that these bonds are typically priced at significant discounts to par. Investors may also find the deferred coupon structure to be very helpful in managing taxes. If taxes due on the interest income can be delayed, investors may be able to minimize taxes. This tax advantage, however, depends on the jurisdiction concerned and how its tax rules apply to deferred coupon payments.

A zero-coupon bond can be thought of as an extreme form of deferred coupon bond. These securities pay no interest to the investor and thus are issued at a deep discount to par value. At maturity, the bondholder receives the par value of the bond as payment. Effectively, a zero-coupon bond defers all interest payments until maturity.

4.2.6 *Index-Linked Bonds*

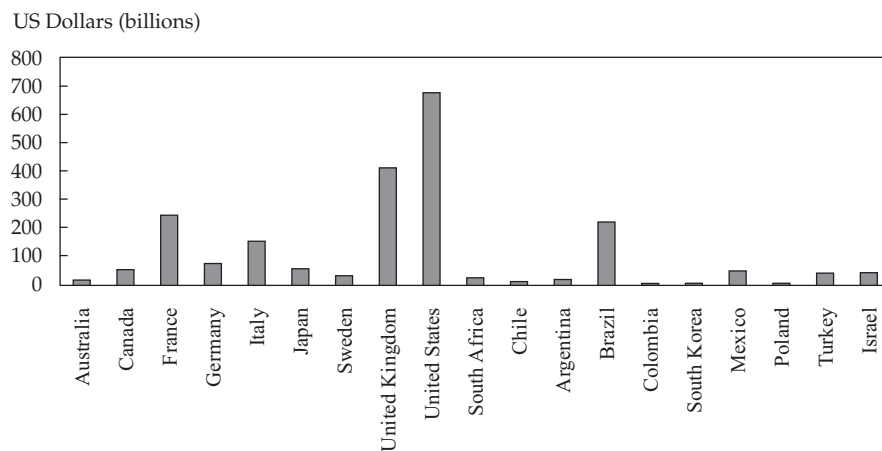
An **index-linked bond** has its coupon payments and/or principal repayment linked to a specified index. In theory, a bond can be indexed to any published variable, including an index reflecting prices, earnings, economic output, commodities, or foreign currencies. **Inflation-linked bonds** are an example of index-linked bonds. They offer investors protection against inflation by linking a bond's coupon payments and/or the principal repayment to an index of consumer prices such as the UK Retail Price Index (RPI) or the US Consumer Price Index (CPI). The advantage of using the RPI or CPI is that these indexes are well-known, transparent, and published regularly.

Governments are large issuers of inflation-linked bonds, also called **linkers**. The United Kingdom was one of the first developed countries to issue inflation-linked bonds in 1981, offering gilts linked to the UK RPI, its main measure of the rate of inflation. In 1997, the US Treasury began introducing Treasury inflation-indexed securities (TIIS) or Treasury inflation-protected securities (TIPS) linked to the US CPI. Inflation-linked bonds are now more frequently being offered by corporate issuers, including both financial and non-financial companies.

A bond's stated coupon rate represents the nominal interest rate received by the bondholders. But inflation reduces the actual value of the interest received. The interest rate that bondholders actually receive, net of inflation, is the real interest rate; it is approximately equal to the nominal interest rate minus the rate of inflation. By increasing the coupon payments and/or the principal repayment in line with increases in the price index, inflation-linked bonds reduce inflation risk. An example of an inflation-linked bond is the 1.25% UK Treasury index-linked gilt maturing in 2017: Bondholders receive a real interest rate of 1.25%, and the actual interest payments are adjusted in line with changes in the UK RPI.

Exhibit 6 shows the national governments that issue the largest amounts of inflation-linked bonds. These sovereign issuers can be grouped into three categories. Countries such as Brazil, Chile, and Colombia have issued inflation-linked bonds because they were experiencing extremely high rates of inflation when borrowing, and offering inflation-linked bonds was their only available alternative to raise funds. The second category includes the United Kingdom, Australia, and Sweden. These countries have issued inflation-linked bonds in an effort to add credibility to the government's commitment to disinflationary policies and also to capitalize on the demand from investors still concerned about inflation risk. The third category, which includes the United States, Canada, Germany, and France, consists of national governments that are most concerned about the social welfare benefits associated with inflation-linked securities. Theoretically, inflation-linked bonds provide investors the benefit of a long-term asset with a fixed real return that is free from inflation risk.

Exhibit 6 Inflation-Linked Bonds Outstanding by Market Value at the End of December 2011



Source: Based on data from Barclays.

Different methods have been used for linking the cash flows of an index-linked bond to a specified index; the link can be made via the interest payments, the principal repayment, or both. The following examples describe how the link between the cash flows and the index is established, using inflation-linked bonds as an illustration.

- Zero-coupon-indexed bonds pay no coupon, so the inflation adjustment is made via the principal repayment only: The principal amount to be repaid at maturity increases in line with increases in the price index during the bond's life. This type of bond has been issued in Sweden.
- Interest-indexed bonds pay a fixed nominal principal amount at maturity but an index-linked coupon during the bond's life. Thus, the inflation adjustment applies to the interest payments only. This type of bond was briefly issued by the Australian government in the late 1980s, but it never became a significant part of the inflation-linked bond market.
- **Capital-indexed bonds** pay a fixed coupon rate but it is applied to a principal amount that increases in line with increases in the index during the bond's life. Thus, both the interest payments and the principal repayment are adjusted for inflation. Such bonds have been issued by governments in Australia, Canada, New Zealand, the United Kingdom, and the United States.
- Indexed-annuity bonds are fully amortized bonds, in contrast to interest-indexed and capital-indexed bonds that are non-amortizing coupon bonds. The annuity payment, which includes both payment of interest and repayment of the principal, increases in line with inflation during the bond's life. Indexed-annuity bonds linked to a price index have been issued by local governments in Australia, but not by the national government.

Exhibit 7 illustrates the different methods used for inflation-linked bonds.

Exhibit 7

Examples of Inflation-Linked Bonds

Assume a hypothetical country, Lemuria, where the currency is the lemming (L). The country issued 20-year bonds linked to the domestic Consumer Price Index (CPI). The bonds have a par value of L1,000. Lemuria's economy has been free of inflation until the most recent six months, when the CPI increased by 5%.

Suppose that the bonds are zero-coupon-indexed bonds. There will never be any coupon payments. Following the 5% increase in the CPI, the principal amount to be repaid increases to L1,050 [$L1,000 \times (1 + 0.05)$] and will continue increasing in line with inflation until maturity.

Now, suppose that the bonds are coupon bonds that make semi-annual interest payments based on an annual coupon rate of 4%. If the bonds are interest-indexed bonds, the principal amount at maturity will remain L1,000 regardless of the CPI level during the bond's life and at maturity. The coupon payments, however, will be adjusted for inflation. Prior to the increase in inflation, the semi-annual coupon payment was L20 [$(0.04 \times L1,000) \div 2$]. Following the 5% increase in the CPI, the semi-annual coupon payment increases to L21 [$L20 \times (1 + 0.05)$]. Future coupon payments will also be adjusted for inflation.

If the bonds are capital-indexed bonds, the annual coupon rate remains 4%, but the principal amount is adjusted for inflation and the coupon payment is based on the inflation-adjusted principal amount. Following the 5% increase in the CPI, the inflation-adjusted principal amount increases to L1,050 [$L1,000 \times$

(continued)

Exhibit 7 (Continued)

$(1 + 0.05)$], and the new semi-annual coupon payment is L21 $[(0.04 \times L1,050) \div 2]$. The principal amount will continue increasing in line with increases in the CPI until maturity, and so will the coupon payments.

If the bonds are indexed-annuity bonds, they are fully amortized. Prior to the increase in inflation, the semi-annual payment was L36.56—the annuity payment based on a principal amount of L1,000 paid back in 40 semi-annual payments with an annual discount rate of 4%. Following the 5% increase in the CPI, the annuity payment increases to L38.38 $[L36.56 \times (1 + 0.05)]$. Future annuity payments will also be adjusted for inflation in a similar manner.

EXAMPLE 6

- 1 Floating-rate notes *most likely* pay:
 - A annual coupons.
 - B quarterly coupons.
 - C semi-annual coupons.
- 2 A zero-coupon bond can *best* be considered a:
 - A step-up bond.
 - B credit-linked bond.
 - C deferred coupon bond.
- 3 The bonds that do **not** offer protection to the investor against increases in market interest rates are:
 - A step-up bonds.
 - B floating rate notes.
 - C inverse floating rate notes.
- 4 The US Treasury offers Treasury Inflation-Protected Securities (TIPS). The principal of TIPS increases with inflation and decreases with deflation based on changes in the US Consumer Price Index. When TIPS mature, an investor is paid the original principal or inflation-adjusted principal, whichever is greater. TIPS pay interest twice a year based on a fixed real coupon rate that is applied to the inflation-adjusted principal. TIPS are *most likely*:
 - A capital-indexed bonds.
 - B interest-indexed bonds.
 - C indexed-annuity bonds.
- 5 Assume a hypothetical country, Lemuria, where the national government has issued 20-year capital-indexed bonds linked to the domestic Consumer Price Index (CPI). Lemuria's economy has been free of inflation until the most recent six months, when the CPI increased. Following the increase in inflation:
 - A the principal amount remains unchanged but the coupon rate increases.

- B** the coupon rate remains unchanged but the principal amount increases.
- C** the coupon payment remains unchanged but the principal amount increases.

Solution to 1:

B is correct. Most FRNs pay interest quarterly and are tied to a three-month reference rate such as Libor.

Solution to 2:

C is correct. Because interest is effectively deferred until maturity, a zero-coupon bond can be thought of as a deferred coupon bond. A and B are incorrect because both step-up bonds and credit-linked bonds pay regular coupons. For a step-up bond, the coupon increases by specified margins at specified dates. For a credit-linked bond, the coupon changes when the bond's credit rating changes.

Solution to 3:

C is correct. The coupon rate on an inverse FRN has an inverse relationship to the reference rate. Thus, an inverse FRN does not offer protection to the investor when market interest rates increase but when they decrease. A and B are incorrect because step-up bonds and FRNs both offer protection against increases in market interest rates.

Solution to 4:

A is correct. TIPS have a fixed coupon rate, and the principal is adjusted based on changes in the CPI. Thus, TIPS are an example of capital-indexed bonds. B is incorrect because with an interest-index bond, it is the principal repayment at maturity that is fixed and the coupon that is linked to an index. C is incorrect because indexed-annuity bonds are fully amortized bonds, not bullet bonds. The annuity payment (interest payment and principal repayment) is adjusted based on changes in an index.

Solution to 5:

B is correct. Following an increase in inflation, the coupon rate of a capital-indexed bond remains unchanged, but the principal amount is adjusted upward for inflation. Thus, the coupon payment, which is equal to the fixed coupon rate multiplied by the inflation-adjusted principal amount, increases.

BONDS WITH CONTINGENCY PROVISIONS

5

A contingency refers to some future event or circumstance that is possible but not certain. A **contingency provision** is a clause in a legal document that allows for some action if the event or circumstance does occur. For bonds, the term **embedded option** refers to various contingency provisions found in the indenture. These contingency provisions provide the issuer or the bondholders the right, but not the obligation, to take some action. These rights are called “options.” These options are not independent of the bond and cannot be traded separately—hence the term “embedded.” Some common types of bonds with embedded options include callable bonds, puttable bonds, and convertible bonds. The options embedded in these bonds grant either the issuer or the bondholders certain rights affecting the disposal or redemption of the bond.

5.1 Callable Bonds

The most widely used embedded option is the call provision. A **callable bond** gives the issuer the right to redeem all or part of the bond before the specified maturity date. The primary reason why issuers choose to issue callable bonds rather than non-callable bonds is to protect themselves against a decline in interest rates. This decline can come either from market interest rates falling or from the issuer's credit quality improving. If market interest rates fall or credit quality improves, the issuer of a callable bond has the right to replace an old, expensive bond issue with a new, cheaper bond issue. In other words, the issuer can benefit from a decline in interest rates by being able to refinance its debt at a lower interest rate. For example, assume that the market interest rate was 6% at the time of issuance and that a company issued a bond with a coupon rate of 7%—the market interest rate plus a spread of 100 bps. Now assume that the market interest rate has fallen to 4% and that the company's creditworthiness has not changed; it can still issue at the market interest rate plus 100 bps. If the original bond is callable, the company can redeem it and replace it with a new bond paying 5% annually. If the original bond is non-callable, the company must carry on paying 7% annually and cannot benefit from the decline in market interest rates.

As illustrated in this example, callable bonds are advantageous to the issuer of the security. Put another way, the call option has value to the *issuer*. Callable bonds present investors with a higher level of reinvestment risk than non-callable bonds; that is, if the bonds are called, bondholders have to reinvest funds in a lower interest rate environment. For this reason, callable bonds have to offer a higher yield and sell at a lower price than otherwise similar non-callable bonds. The higher yield and lower price compensate the bondholders for the value of the call option to the issuer.

Callable bonds have a long tradition and are commonly issued by corporate issuers. Although first issued in the US market, they are now frequently issued in every major bond market and in a variety of forms.

The details about the call provision are specified in the indenture. These details include the call price, which represents the price paid to bondholders when the bond is called. The call premium is the amount over par paid by the issuer if the bond is called. There may be restrictions on when the bond can be called, or the bond may have different call prices depending on when it is called. The call schedule specifies the dates and prices at which a bond may be called. Some callable bonds are issued with a call protection period, also called lockout period, cushion, or deferment period. The call protection period prohibits the issuer from calling a bond early in its life and is often added as an incentive for investors to buy the bond. The earliest time that a bond might be called is known as the call date.

Make-whole calls first appeared in the US corporate bond market in the mid-1990s and have become more commonplace ever since. A typical make-whole call requires the issuer to make a lump-sum payment to the bondholders based on the present value of the future coupon payments and principal repayment not paid because of the bond being redeemed early. The discount rate used is usually some pre-determined spread over the yield to maturity of an appropriate sovereign bond. The typical result is a redemption value that is significantly greater than the bond's current market price. A make-up call provision is less detrimental to bondholders than a regular call provision because it allows them to be compensated if the issuer calls the bond. Issuers, however, rarely invoke this provision because redeeming a bond that includes a make-whole provision before the maturity date is costly. Issuers tend to include a make-whole provision as a "sweetener" to make the bond issue more attractive to potential buyers and allow them to pay a lower coupon rate.

Available exercise styles on callable bonds include the following:

- American-style call, sometimes referred to as continuously callable, for which the issuer has the right to call a bond at any time starting on the first call date.

- European-style call, for which the issuer has the right to call a bond only once on the call date.
- **Bermuda-style** call, for which the issuer has the right to call bonds on specified dates following the call protection period. These dates frequently correspond to coupon payment dates.

EXAMPLE 7

Assume a hypothetical 30-year bond is issued on 15 August 2012 at a price of 98.195 (as a percentage of par). Each bond has a par value of \$1,000. The bond is callable in whole or in part every 15 August from 2022 at the option of the issuer. The call prices are shown below.

Year	Call Price	Year	Call Price
2022	103.870	2028	101.548
2023	103.485	2029	101.161
2024	103.000	2030	100.774
2025	102.709	2031	100.387
2026	102.322	2032 and thereafter	100.000
2027	101.955		

- 1 The call protection period is:
 - A 10 years.
 - B 11 years.
 - C 20 years.
- 2 The call premium (per bond) in 2026 is *closest* to:
 - A \$2.32.
 - B \$23.22.
 - C \$45.14.
- 3 The call provision is *most likely*:
 - A a Bermuda call.
 - B a European call.
 - C an American call.

Solution to 1:

A is correct. The bonds were issued in 2012 and are first callable in 2022. The call protection period is $2022 - 2012 = 10$ years.

Solution to 2:

B is correct. The call prices are stated as a percentage of par. The call price in 2026 is \$1,023.22 ($102.322\% \times \$1,000$). The call premium is the amount paid above par by the issuer. The call premium in 2026 is \$23.22 ($\$1,023.22 - \$1,000$).

Solution to 3:

A is correct. The bond is callable every 15 August from 2022—that is, on specified dates following the call protection period. Thus, the embedded option is a Bermuda call.

5.2 Puttable Bonds

A put provision gives the bondholders the right to sell the bond back to the issuer at a pre-determined price on specified dates. **Puttable bonds** are beneficial for the bondholder by guaranteeing a pre-specified selling price at the redemption dates. If interest rates rise after the issue date, thus depressing the bond's price, the bondholders can put the bond back to the issuer and get cash. This cash can be reinvested in bonds that offer higher yields, in line with the higher market interest rates.

Because a put provision has value to the *bondholders*, the price of a puttable bond will be higher than the price of an otherwise similar bond issued without the put provision. Similarly, the yield on a bond with a put provision will be lower than the yield on an otherwise similar non-puttable bond. The lower yield compensates the issuer for the value of the put option to the investor.

The indenture lists the redemption dates and the prices applicable to the sale of the bond back to the issuer. The selling price is usually the par value of the bond. Depending on the terms set out in the indenture, puttable bonds may allow buyers to force a sellback only once or multiple times during the bond's life. Puttable bonds that incorporate a single sellback opportunity include a European-style put and are often referred to as one-time put bonds. Puttable bonds that allow multiple sellback opportunities include a Bermuda-style put and are known as multiple put bonds. Multiple put bonds offer more flexibility for investors, so they are generally more expensive than one-time put bonds.⁶

Typically, puttable bonds incorporate one- to five-year put provisions. Their increasing popularity has often been motivated by investors wanting to protect themselves against major declines in bond prices. One benefit of this rising popularity has been an improvement in liquidity in some markets, because the put protection attracts more conservative classes of investors. The global financial crisis that started in 2008 showed that these securities can often exacerbate liquidity problems, however, because they provide a first claim on the issuer's assets. The put provision gives bondholders the opportunity to convert their claim into cash before other creditors.

5.3 Convertible Bonds

A **convertible bond** is a hybrid security with both debt and equity features. It gives the bondholder the right to exchange the bond for a specified number of common shares in the issuing company. Thus, a convertible bond can be viewed as the combination of a straight bond (option-free bond) plus an embedded equity call option. Convertible bonds can also include additional provisions, the most common being a call provision.

From the investor's perspective, a convertible bond offers several advantages relative to a non-convertible bond. First, it gives the bondholder the ability to convert into equity in case of share price appreciation, and thus participate in the equity upside. At the same time, the bondholder receives downside protection; if the share price does not appreciate, the convertible bond offers the comfort of regular coupon payments and the promise of principal repayment at maturity. Even if the share price and thus the value of the equity call option decline, the price of a convertible bond cannot fall below the price of the straight bond. Consequently, the value of the straight bond acts as a floor for the price of the convertible bond.

Because the conversion provision is valuable to *bondholders*, the price of a convertible bond is higher than the price of an otherwise similar bond without the conversion provision. Similarly, the yield on a convertible bond is lower than the yield on

⁶ Although a bond could theoretically include an American-type put, there is no such bond outstanding as of July 2014. The likely reason for the absence of continuously puttable bonds is that issuers would not like to be surprised with having to raise cash to redeem the bonds at indeterminate times.

an otherwise similar non-convertible bond. However, most convertible bonds offer investors a yield advantage; the coupon rate on the convertible bond is typically higher than the dividend yield on the underlying common share.

From the issuer's perspective, convertible bonds offer two main advantages. The first is reduced interest expense. Issuers are usually able to offer below-market coupon rates because of investors' attraction to the conversion feature. The second advantage is the elimination of debt if the conversion option is exercised. But the conversion option is dilutive to existing shareholders.

Key terms regarding the conversion provision include the following:

- The **conversion price** is the price per share at which the convertible bond can be converted into shares.
- The **conversion ratio** is the number of common shares that each bond can be converted into. The indenture sometimes does not stipulate the conversion ratio but only mentions the conversion price. The conversion ratio is equal to the par value divided by the conversion price. For example, if the par value is 1,000€ and the conversion price is 20€, the conversion ratio is $1,000\text{€} \div 20\text{€} = 50:1$, or 50 common shares per bond.
- The **conversion value**, sometimes called the parity value, is the current share price multiplied by the conversion ratio. For example, if the current share price is 33€ and the conversion ratio is 30:1, the conversion value is $33\text{€} \times 30 = 990\text{€}$.
- The conversion premium is the difference between the convertible bond's price and its conversion value. For example, if the convertible bond's price is 1,020€ and the conversion value is 990€, the conversion premium is $1,020\text{€} - 990\text{€} = 30\text{€}$.
- Conversion parity occurs if the conversion value is equal to the convertible bond's price. Using the previous two examples, if the current share price is 34€ instead of 33€, then both the convertible bond's price and the conversion value are equal to 1,020€ (i.e., a conversion premium equal to 0). This condition is referred to as parity. If the common share is selling for less than 34€, the condition is below parity. In contrast, if the common share is selling for more than 34€, the condition is above parity.

Generally, convertible bonds have maturities of five to 10 years. First-time or younger issuers are usually able to issue convertible bonds of up to three years in maturity only. Although it is common for convertible bonds to reach conversion parity before maturity, bondholders rarely exercise the conversion option before that time. Early conversion would eliminate the yield advantage of continuing to hold the convertible bond; investors would typically receive in dividends less than they would receive in coupon payments. For this reason, it is common to find convertible bonds that are also callable by the issuer on a set of specified dates. If the convertible bond includes a call provision and the conversion value is above the current share price, the issuer may force the bondholders to convert their bonds into common shares before maturity. For this reason, callable convertible bonds have to offer a higher yield and sell at a lower price than otherwise similar non-callable convertible bonds. Some indentures specify that the bonds can be called only if the share price exceeds a specified price, giving investors more predictability about the share price at which the issuer may force conversion.

Although somewhat similar in purpose to a conversion option, a **warrant** is actually not an embedded option but rather an "attached" option. A warrant entitles the holder to buy the underlying stock of the issuing company at a fixed exercise price until the expiration date. Warrants are considered yield enhancements; they are frequently attached to bond issues as a "sweetener." Warrants are actively traded in some financial markets, such as the Deutsche Börse and the Hong Kong Stock Exchange.

Several European banks have been issuing a type of convertible bond called contingent convertible bonds. **Contingent convertible bonds**, nicknamed “CoCos,” are bonds with contingent write-down provisions. Two main features distinguish bonds with contingent write-down provisions from the traditional convertible bonds just described. A traditional convertible bond is convertible at the option of the bondholder, and conversion occurs on the upside—that is, if the issuer’s share price increases. In contrast, bonds with contingent write-down provisions are convertible on the downside. In the case of CoCos, conversion is automatic if a specified event occurs—for example, if the bank’s core Tier 1 capital ratio (a measure of the bank’s proportion of core equity capital available to absorb losses) falls below the minimum requirement set by the regulators. Thus, in the event that the bank experiences losses that reduce its equity capital below the minimum requirement, CoCos are a way to reduce the bank’s likelihood of default and, therefore, systemic risk—that is, the risk of failure of the financial system. When the bank’s core Tier 1 capital falls below the minimum requirement, the CoCos immediately convert into equity, automatically recapitalizing the bank, lightening the debt burden, and reducing the risk of default. Because the conversion is not at the option of the bondholders but automatic, CoCos force bondholders to take losses. For this reason, CoCos must offer a higher yield than otherwise similar bonds.

Exhibit 8 shows the relative importance of plain vanilla (straight fixed-rate), floating-rate, and equity-related bonds to the total amount of international bonds outstanding. It indicates that the majority of bond issues are plain vanilla bonds.

Exhibit 8 Outstanding Bonds and Notes by Type of Interest Payment and Conversion Features at the End of March 2012

Type of Bond	Amount (US\$ billions)	Weight
Straight fixed-rate issues	20,369.9	71.2%
Floating-rate issues	7,749.6	27.1%
Equity-related issues		
Convertibles	491.9	1.7%
Warrants	2.3	0.0%
Total	28,613.7	100.0%

Source: Based on data from the Bank of International Settlements, Table 13B, available at www.bis.org/statistics/secstats.htm, (accessed 7 September 2012).

EXAMPLE 8

- Which of the following is **not** an example of an embedded option?
 - Warrant
 - Call provision
 - Conversion provision
- The type of bonds with an embedded option that would *most likely* sell at a lower price than an otherwise similar bond without the embedded option is a:
 - putable bond.
 - callable bond.

- C convertible bond.
- 3 The additional risk inherent to a callable bond is *best* described as:
- A credit risk.
 B interest rate risk.
 C reinvestment risk.
- 4 The put provision of a puttable bond:
- A limits the risk to the issuer.
 B limits the risk to the bondholder.
 C does not materially affect the risk of either the issuer or the bondholder.
- 5 Assume that a convertible bond issued in South Korea has a par value of ₩1,000,000 and is currently priced at ₩1,100,000. The underlying share price is ₩40,000 and the conversion ratio is 25:1. The conversion condition for this bond is:
- A parity.
 B above parity.
 C below parity.

Solution to 1:

A is correct. A warrant is a separate, tradable security that entitles the holder to buy the underlying common share of the issuing company. B and C are incorrect because the call provision and the conversion provision are embedded options.

Solution to 2:

B is correct. The call provision is an option that benefits the issuer. Because of this, callable bonds sell at lower prices and higher yields relative to otherwise similar non-callable bonds. A and C are incorrect because the put provision and the conversion provision are options that benefit the investor. Thus, puttable bonds and convertible bonds sell at higher prices and lower yields relative to otherwise similar bonds that lack those provisions.

Solution to 3:

C is correct. Reinvestment risk refers to the effect that lower interest rates have on available rates of return when reinvesting the cash flows received from an earlier investment. Because bonds are typically called following a decline in market interest rates, reinvestment risk is particularly relevant for the holder of a callable bond. A is incorrect because credit risk refers to the risk of loss resulting from the issuer failing to make full and timely payments of interest and/or repayments of principal. B is incorrect because interest rate risk is the risk that a change in market interest rate affects a bond's value. Credit risk and interest rate risk are not inherent to callable bonds.

Solution to 4:

B is correct. A puttable bond limits the risk to the bondholder by guaranteeing a pre-specified selling price at the redemption dates.

Solution to 5:

C is correct. The conversion value of the bond is ₩40,000 × 25 = ₩1,000,000. The price of the convertible bond is ₩1,100,000. Thus, the conversion value of the bond is less than the bond's price, and this condition is referred to as below parity.

SUMMARY

This reading provides an introduction to the salient features of fixed-income securities while noting how these features vary among different types of securities. Important points include the following:

- The three important elements that an investor needs to know when investing in a fixed-income security are (1) the bond's features, which determine its scheduled cash flows and thus the bondholder's expected and actual return; (2) the legal, regulatory, and tax considerations that apply to the contractual agreement between the issuer and the bondholders; and (3) the contingency provisions that may affect the bond's scheduled cash flows.
- The basic features of a bond include the issuer, maturity, par value (or principal), coupon rate and frequency, and currency denomination.
- Issuers of bonds include supranational organizations, sovereign governments, non-sovereign governments, quasi-government entities, and corporate issuers.
- Bondholders are exposed to credit risk and may use bond credit ratings to assess the credit quality of a bond.
- A bond's principal is the amount the issuer agrees to pay the bondholder when the bond matures.
- The coupon rate is the interest rate that the issuer agrees to pay to the bondholder each year. The coupon rate can be a fixed rate or a floating rate. Bonds may offer annual, semi-annual, quarterly, or monthly coupon payments depending on the type of bond and where the bond is issued.
- Bonds can be issued in any currency. Bonds such as dual-currency bonds and currency option bonds are connected to two currencies.
- The yield to maturity is the discount rate that equates the present value of the bond's future cash flows until maturity to its price. Yield to maturity can be considered an estimate of the market's expectation for the bond's return.
- A plain vanilla bond has a known cash flow pattern. It has a fixed maturity date and pays a fixed rate of interest over the bond's life.
- The bond indenture or trust deed is the legal contract that describes the form of the bond, the issuer's obligations, and the investor's rights. The indenture is usually held by a financial institution called a trustee, which performs various duties specified in the indenture.
- The issuer is identified in the indenture by its legal name and is obligated to make timely payments of interest and repayment of principal.
- For asset-backed securities, the legal obligation to repay bondholders often lies with a separate legal entity—that is, a bankruptcy-remote vehicle that uses the assets as guarantees to back a bond issue.
- How the issuer intends to service the debt and repay the principal should be described in the indenture. The source of repayment proceeds varies depending on the type of bond.
- Collateral backing is a way to alleviate credit risk. Secured bonds are backed by assets or financial guarantees pledged to ensure debt payment. Examples of collateral-backed bonds include collateral trust bonds, equipment trust certificates, mortgage-backed securities, and covered bonds.

- Credit enhancement can be internal or external. Examples of internal credit enhancement include subordination, overcollateralization, and reserve accounts. A bank guarantee, a surety bond, a letter of credit, and a cash collateral account are examples of external credit enhancement.
- Bond covenants are legally enforceable rules that borrowers and lenders agree on at the time of a new bond issue. Affirmative covenants enumerate what issuers are required to do, whereas negative covenants enumerate what issuers are prohibited from doing.
- An important consideration for investors is where the bonds are issued and traded, because it affects the laws, regulation, and tax status that apply. Bonds issued in a particular country in local currency are domestic bonds if they are issued by entities incorporated in the country and foreign bonds if they are issued by entities incorporated in another country. Eurobonds are issued internationally, outside the jurisdiction of any single country and are subject to a lower level of listing, disclosure, and regulatory requirements than domestic or foreign bonds. Global bonds are issued in the Eurobond market and at least one domestic market at the same time.
- Although some bonds may offer special tax advantages, as a general rule, interest is taxed at the ordinary income tax rate. Some countries also implement a capital gains tax. There may be specific tax provisions for bonds issued at a discount or bought at a premium.
- An amortizing bond is a bond whose payment schedule requires periodic payment of interest and repayment of principal. This differs from a bullet bond, whose entire payment of principal occurs at maturity. The amortizing bond's outstanding principal amount is reduced to zero by the maturity date for a fully amortized bond, but a balloon payment is required at maturity to retire the bond's outstanding principal amount for a partially amortized bond.
- Sinking fund agreements provide another approach to the periodic retirement of principal, in which an amount of the bond's principal outstanding amount is usually repaid each year throughout the bond's life or after a specified date.
- A floating-rate note or floater is a bond whose coupon is set based on some reference rate plus a spread. FRNs can be floored, capped, or collared. An inverse FRN is a bond whose coupon has an inverse relationship to the reference rate.
- Other coupon payment structures include bonds with step-up coupons, which pay coupons that increase by specified amounts on specified dates; bonds with credit-linked coupons, which change when the issuer's credit rating changes; bonds with payment-in-kind coupons that allow the issuer to pay coupons with additional amounts of the bond issue rather than in cash; and bonds with deferred coupons, which pay no coupons in the early years following the issue but higher coupons thereafter.
- The payment structures for index-linked bonds vary considerably among countries. A common index-linked bond is an inflation-linked bond or linker whose coupon payments and/or principal repayments are linked to a price index. Index-linked payment structures include zero-coupon-indexed bonds, interest-indexed bonds, capital-indexed bonds, and indexed-annuity bonds.
- Common types of bonds with embedded options include callable bonds, puttable bonds, and convertible bonds. These options are "embedded" in the sense that there are provisions provided in the indenture that grant either the issuer or the bondholder certain rights affecting the disposal or redemption of the bond. They are not separately traded securities.

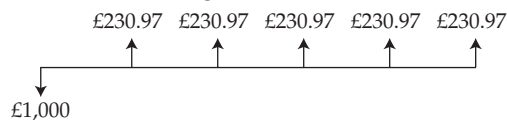
- Callable bonds give the issuer the right to buy bonds back prior to maturity, thereby raising the reinvestment risk for the bondholder. For this reason, callable bonds have to offer a higher yield and sell at a lower price than otherwise similar non-callable bonds to compensate the bondholders for the value of the call option to the issuer.
- Puttable bonds give the bondholder the right to sell bonds back to the issuer prior to maturity. Puttable bonds offer a lower yield and sell at a higher price than otherwise similar non-puttable bonds to compensate the issuer for the value of the put option to the bondholders.
- A convertible bond gives the bondholder the right to convert the bond into common shares of the issuing company. Because this option favors the bondholder, convertible bonds offer a lower yield and sell at a higher price than otherwise similar non-convertible bonds.

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

- 1 A 10-year bond was issued four years ago. The bond is denominated in US dollars, offers a coupon rate of 10% with interest paid semi-annually, and is currently priced at 102% of par. The bond's:
 - A tenor is six years.
 - B nominal rate is 5%.
 - C redemption value is 102% of the par value.
- 2 A sovereign bond has a maturity of 15 years. The bond is *best* described as a:
 - A perpetual bond.
 - B pure discount bond.
 - C capital market security.
- 3 A company has issued a floating-rate note with a coupon rate equal to the three-month Libor + 65 basis points. Interest payments are made quarterly on 31 March, 30 June, 30 September, and 31 December. On 31 March and 30 June, the three-month Libor is 1.55% and 1.35%, respectively. The coupon rate for the interest payment made on 30 June is:
 - A 2.00%.
 - B 2.10%.
 - C 2.20%.
- 4 The legal contract that describes the form of the bond, the obligations of the issuer, and the rights of the bondholders can be *best* described as a bond's:
 - A covenant.
 - B indenture.
 - C debenture.
- 5 Which of the following is a type of external credit enhancement?
 - A Covenants
 - B A surety bond
 - C Overcollateralization
- 6 An affirmative covenant is *most likely* to stipulate:
 - A limits on the issuer's leverage ratio.
 - B how the proceeds of the bond issue will be used.
 - C the maximum percentage of the issuer's gross assets that can be sold.
- 7 Which of the following *best* describes a negative bond covenant? The issuer is:
 - A required to pay taxes as they come due.
 - B prohibited from investing in risky projects.
 - C required to maintain its current lines of business.
- 8 A South African company issues bonds denominated in pound sterling that are sold to investors in the United Kingdom. These bonds can be *best* described as:
 - A Eurobonds.
 - B global bonds.
 - C foreign bonds.
- 9 Relative to domestic and foreign bonds, Eurobonds are *most likely* to be:

- A bearer bonds.
 - B registered bonds.
 - C subject to greater regulation.
- 10 An investor in a country with an original issue discount tax provision purchases a 20-year zero-coupon bond at a deep discount to par value. The investor plans to hold the bond until the maturity date. The investor will *most likely* report:
- A a capital gain at maturity.
 - B a tax deduction in the year the bond is purchased.
 - C taxable income from the bond every year until maturity.
- 11 A bond that is characterized by a fixed periodic payment schedule that reduces the bond's outstanding principal amount to zero by the maturity date is *best* described as a:
- A bullet bond.
 - B plain vanilla bond.
 - C fully amortized bond.
- 12 If interest rates are expected to increase, the coupon payment structure *most likely* to benefit the issuer is a:
- A step-up coupon.
 - B inflation-linked coupon.
 - C cap in a floating-rate note.
- 13 Investors who believe that interest rates will rise *most likely* prefer to invest in:
- A inverse floaters.
 - B fixed-rate bonds.
 - C floating-rate notes.
- 14 A 10-year, capital-indexed bond linked to the Consumer Price Index (CPI) is issued with a coupon rate of 6% and a par value of 1,000. The bond pays interest semi-annually. During the first six months after the bond's issuance, the CPI increases by 2%. On the first coupon payment date, the bond's:
- A coupon rate increases to 8%.
 - B coupon payment is equal to 40.
 - C principal amount increases to 1,020.
- 15 The provision that provides bondholders the right to sell the bond back to the issuer at a predetermined price prior to the bond's maturity date is referred to as:
- A a put provision.
 - B a make-whole call provision.
 - C an original issue discount provision.
- 16 Which of the following provisions is a benefit to the issuer?
- A Put provision
 - B Call provision
 - C Conversion provision
- 17 Relative to an otherwise similar option-free bond, a:
- A puttable bond will trade at a higher price.
 - B callable bond will trade at a higher price.
 - C convertible bond will trade at a lower price.
- 18 Which type of bond *most likely* earns interest on an implied basis?

- A Floater
 B Conventional bond
 C Pure discount bond
- 19 Clauses that specify the rights of the bondholders and any actions that the issuer is obligated to perform or is prohibited from performing are:
 A covenants.
 B collaterals.
 C credit enhancements.
- 20 Which of the following type of debt obligation *most likely* protects bondholders when the assets serving as collateral are non-performing?
 A Covered bonds
 B Collateral trust bonds
 C Mortgage-backed securities
- 21 Which of the following *best* describes a negative bond covenant? The requirement to:
 A insure and maintain assets.
 B comply with all laws and regulations.
 C maintain a minimum interest coverage ratio.
- 22 Relative to negative bond covenants, positive covenants are *most likely*:
 A legally enforceable.
 B cheaper for the issuers.
 C enacted at the time of the bond issue.
- 23 A five-year bond has the following cash flows:



- The bond can *best* be described as a:
 A bullet bond.
 B fully amortized bond.
 C partially amortized bond.
- 24 Investors seeking some general protection against a poor economy are *most likely* to select a:
 A deferred coupon bond.
 B credit-linked coupon bond.
 C payment-in-kind coupon bond.
- 25 The benefit to the issuer of a deferred coupon bond is *most likely* related to:
 A tax management.
 B cash flow management.
 C original issue discount price.
- 26 Which of the following bond types provides the *most* benefit to a bondholder when bond prices are declining?
 A Callable
 B Plain vanilla
 C Multiple put

- 27 Which type of call bond option offers the *greatest* flexibility as to when the issuer can exercise the option?
- A A Bermuda call
 - B A European call
 - C An American call
- 28 Which of the following *best* describes a convertible bond's conversion premium?
- A Bond price minus conversion value
 - B Par value divided by conversion price
 - C Current share price multiplied by conversion ratio

SOLUTIONS

- 1 A is correct. The tenor of the bond is the time remaining until the bond's maturity date. Although the bond had a maturity of 10 years at issuance (original maturity), it was issued four years ago. Thus, there are six years remaining until the maturity date.

B is incorrect because the nominal rate is the coupon rate, i.e., the interest rate that the issuer agrees to pay each year until the maturity date. Although interest is paid semi-annually, the nominal rate is 10%, not 5%. C is incorrect because it is the bond's price, not its redemption value (also called principal amount, principal value, par value, face value, nominal value, or maturity value), that is equal to 102% of the par value.

- 2 C is correct. A capital market security has an original maturity longer than one year.

A is incorrect because a perpetual bond does not have a stated maturity date. Thus, the sovereign bond, which has a maturity of 15 years, cannot be a perpetual bond. B is incorrect because a pure discount bond is a bond issued at a discount to par value and redeemed at par. Some sovereign bonds (e.g., Treasury bills) are pure discount bonds, but others are not.

- 3 C is correct. The coupon rate that applies to the interest payment due on 30 June is based on the three-month Libor rate prevailing on 31 March. Thus, the coupon rate is $1.55\% + 0.65\% = 2.20\%$.

- 4 B is correct. The indenture, also referred to as trust deed, is the legal contract that describes the form of the bond, the obligations of the issuer, and the rights of the bondholders.

A is incorrect because covenants are only one element of a bond's indenture. Covenants are clauses that specify the rights of the bondholders and any actions that the issuer is obligated to perform or prohibited from performing. C is incorrect because a debenture is a type of bond.

- 5 B is correct. A surety bond is an external credit enhancement, i.e., a guarantee received from a third party. If the issuer defaults, the guarantor who provided the surety bond will reimburse investors for any losses, usually up to a maximum amount called the penal sum.

A is incorrect because covenants are legally enforceable rules that borrowers and lenders agree upon when the bond is issued. C is incorrect because overcollateralization is an internal, not external, credit enhancement. Collateral is a guarantee underlying the debt above and beyond the issuer's promise to pay, and overcollateralization refers to the process of posting more collateral than is needed to obtain or secure financing. Collateral, such as assets or securities pledged to ensure debt payments, is not provided by a third party. Thus, overcollateralization is not an external credit enhancement.

- 6 B is correct. Affirmative (or positive) covenants enumerate what issuers are required to do and are typically administrative in nature. A common affirmative covenant describes what the issuer intends to do with the proceeds from the bond issue.

A and C are incorrect because imposing a limit on the issuer's leverage ratio or on the percentage of the issuer's gross assets that can be sold are negative covenants. Negative covenants prevent the issuer from taking actions that could reduce its ability to make interest payments and repay the principal.

- 7** B is correct. Prohibiting the issuer from investing in risky projects restricts the issuer's potential business decisions. These restrictions are referred to as negative bond covenants.
- A and C are incorrect because paying taxes as they come due and maintaining the current lines of business are positive covenants.
- 8** C is correct. Bonds sold in a country and denominated in that country's currency by an entity from another country are referred to as foreign bonds.
- A is incorrect because Eurobonds are bonds issued outside the jurisdiction of any single country. B is incorrect because global bonds are bonds issued in the Eurobond market and at least one domestic country simultaneously.
- 9** A is correct. Eurobonds are typically issued as bearer bonds, i.e., bonds for which the trustee does not keep records of ownership. In contrast, domestic and foreign bonds are typically registered bonds for which ownership is recorded by either name or serial number.
- B is incorrect because Eurobonds are typically issued as bearer bonds, not registered bonds. C is incorrect because Eurobonds are typically subject to lower, not greater, regulation than domestic and foreign bonds.
- 10** C is correct. The original issue discount tax provision requires the investor to include a prorated portion of the original issue discount in his taxable income every tax year until maturity. The original issue discount is equal to the difference between the bond's par value and its original issue price.
- A is incorrect because the original issue discount tax provision allows the investor to increase his cost basis in the bond so that when the bond matures, he faces no capital gain or loss. B is incorrect because the original issue discount tax provision does not require any tax deduction in the year the bond is purchased or afterwards.
- 11** C is correct. A fully amortized bond calls for equal cash payments by the bond's issuer prior to maturity. Each fixed payment includes both an interest payment component and a principal repayment component such that the bond's outstanding principal amount is reduced to zero by the maturity date.
- A and B are incorrect because a bullet bond or plain vanilla bond only make interest payments prior to maturity. The entire principal repayment occurs at maturity.
- 12** C is correct. A cap in a floating-rate note (capped FRN) prevents the coupon rate from increasing above a specified maximum rate. This feature benefits the issuer in a rising interest rate environment because it sets a limit to the interest rate paid on the debt.
- A is incorrect because a bond with a step-up coupon is one in which the coupon, which may be fixed or floating, increases by specified margins at specified dates. This feature benefits the bondholders, not the issuer, in a rising interest rate environment because it allows bondholders to receive a higher coupon in line with the higher market interest rates. B is incorrect because inflation-linked bonds have their coupon payments and/or principal repayment linked to an index of consumer prices. If interest rates increase as a result of inflation, this feature is a benefit for the bondholders, not the issuer.
- 13** C is correct. In contrast to fixed-rate bonds that decline in value in a rising interest rate environment, floating-rate notes (FRNs) are less affected when interest rates increase because their coupon rates vary with market interest rates and are reset at regular, short-term intervals. Consequently, FRNs are favored by investors who believe that interest rates will rise.

A is incorrect because an inverse floater is a bond whose coupon rate has an inverse relationship to the reference rate, so when interest rates rise, the coupon rate on an inverse floater decreases. Thus, inverse floaters are favored by investors who believe that interest rates will decline, not rise. B is incorrect because fixed rate-bonds decline in value in a rising interest rate environment. Consequently, investors who expect interest rates to rise will likely avoid investing in fixed-rate bonds.

- 14** C is correct. Capital-indexed bonds pay a fixed coupon rate that is applied to a principal amount that increases in line with increases in the index during the bond's life. If the consumer price index increases by 2%, the coupon rate remains unchanged at 6%, but the principal amount increases by 2% and the coupon payment is based on the inflation-adjusted principal amount. On the first coupon payment date, the inflation-adjusted principal amount is $1,000 \times (1 + 0.02) = 1,020$ and the semi-annual coupon payment is equal to $(0.06 \times 1,020) \div 2 = 30.60$.
- 15** A is correct. A put provision provides bondholders the right to sell the bond back to the issuer at a predetermined price prior to the bond's maturity date. B is incorrect because a make-whole call provision is a form of call provision; i.e., a provision that provides the issuer the right to redeem all or part of the bond before its maturity date. A make-whole call provision requires the issuer to make a lump sum payment to the bondholders based on the present value of the future coupon payments and principal repayments not paid because of the bond being redeemed early by the issuer. C is incorrect because an original issue discount provision is a tax provision relating to bonds issued at a discount to par value. The original issue discount tax provision typically requires the bondholders to include a prorated portion of the original issue discount (i.e., the difference between the par value and the original issue price) in their taxable income every tax year until the bond's maturity date.
- 16** B is correct. A call provision (callable bond) gives the issuer the right to redeem all or part of the bond before the specified maturity date. If market interest rates decline or the issuer's credit quality improves, the issuer of a callable bond can redeem it and replace it by a cheaper bond. Thus, the call provision is beneficial to the issuer.
- A is incorrect because a put provision (puttable bond) is beneficial to the bondholders. If interest rates rise, thus lowering the bond's price, the bondholders have the right to sell the bond back to the issuer at a predetermined price on specified dates. C is incorrect because a conversion provision (convertible bond) is beneficial to the bondholders. If the issuing company's share price increases, the bondholders have the right to exchange the bond for a specified number of common shares in the issuing company.
- 17** A is correct. A put feature is beneficial to the bondholders. Thus, the price of a puttable bond will typically be higher than the price of an otherwise similar non-puttable bond.
- B is incorrect because a call feature is beneficial to the issuer. Thus, the price of a callable bond will typically be lower, not higher, than the price of an otherwise similar non-callable bond. C is incorrect because a conversion feature is beneficial to the bondholders. Thus, the price of a convertible bond will typically be higher, not lower, than the price of an otherwise similar non-convertible bond.
- 18** C is correct. A zero-coupon, or pure discount, bond pays no interest; instead, it is issued at a discount to par value and redeemed at par. As a result, the interest earned is implied and equal to the difference between the par value and the purchase price.

- 19 A is correct. Covenants specify the rights of the bondholders and any actions that the issuer is obligated to perform or is prohibited from performing.
- 20 A is correct. A covered bond is a debt obligation backed by a segregated pool of assets called a “cover pool.” When the assets that are included in the cover pool become non-performing (i.e., the assets are not generating the promised cash flows), the issuer must replace them with performing assets.
- 21 C is correct. Negative covenants enumerate what issuers are prohibited from doing. Restrictions on debt, including maintaining a minimum interest coverage ratio or a maximum debt usage ratio, are typical examples of negative covenants.
- 22 B is correct. Positive (or affirmative) covenants are typically administrative in nature and do not impose additional costs on the issuer, whereas negative covenants are frequently costly.
- 23 B is correct. A bond that is fully amortized is characterized by a fixed periodic payment schedule that reduces the bond’s outstanding principal amount to zero by the maturity date. The stream of £230.97 payments reflects the cash flows of a fully amortized bond with a coupon rate of 5% and annual interest payments.
- 24 B is correct. A credit-linked coupon bond has a coupon that changes when the bond’s credit rating changes. Because credit ratings tend to decline the most during recessions, credit-linked coupon bonds may thus provide some general protection against a poor economy by offering increased coupon payments when credit ratings decline.
- 25 B is correct. Deferred coupon bonds pay no coupon for their first few years but then pay higher coupons than they otherwise normally would for the remainder of their life. Deferred coupon bonds are common in project financing when the assets being developed may not generate any income during the development phase, thus not providing cash flows to make interest payments. A deferred coupon bond allows the issuer to delay interest payments until the project is completed and the cash flows generated by the assets can be used to service the debt.
- 26 C is correct. A puttable bond is beneficial for the bondholder by guaranteeing a prespecified selling price at the redemption date, thus offering protection when interest rates rise and bond prices decline. Relative to a one-time put bond that incorporates a single sellback opportunity, a multiple put bond offers more frequent sellback opportunities, thus providing the most benefit to bondholders.
- 27 C is correct. An American call option gives the issuer the right to call the bond at any time starting on the first call date.
- 28 A is correct. The conversion premium is the difference between the convertible bond’s price and its conversion value.

Fixed-Income Markets: Issuance, Trading, and Funding

by Moorad Choudhry, PhD, FRM, FCSI, Steven V. Mann, PhD, and Lavone F. Whitmer, CFA

Moorad Choudhry, PhD, FRM, FCSI, is at the University of Kent (United Kingdom). Steven V. Mann, PhD, is at the University of South Carolina (USA). Lavone F. Whitmer, CFA, is at Federal Home Loan Bank of Indianapolis (USA).

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Mastery	The candidate should be able to:
<input type="checkbox"/>	a. describe classifications of global fixed-income markets;
<input type="checkbox"/>	b. describe the use of interbank offered rates as reference rates in floating-rate debt;
<input type="checkbox"/>	c. describe mechanisms available for issuing bonds in primary markets;
<input type="checkbox"/>	d. describe secondary markets for bonds;
<input type="checkbox"/>	e. describe securities issued by sovereign governments;
<input type="checkbox"/>	f. describe securities issued by non-sovereign governments, quasi-government entities, and supranational agencies;
<input type="checkbox"/>	g. describe types of debt issued by corporations;
<input type="checkbox"/>	h. describe structured financial instruments;
<input type="checkbox"/>	i. describe short-term funding alternatives available to banks;
<input type="checkbox"/>	j. describe repurchase agreements (repos) and the risks associated with them.

INTRODUCTION

Global fixed-income markets represent the largest subset of financial markets in terms of number of issuances and market capitalization. These markets bring borrowers and lenders together to allocate capital globally to its most efficient uses. Fixed-income markets include not only publicly traded securities, such as commercial paper, notes, and bonds, but also non-publicly traded loans. At the end of 2010, the total amount of

debt and equity outstanding was about \$212 trillion globally.¹ The global fixed-income market represented approximately 75% of this total; simply put, global debt markets are three times larger than global equity markets.

Understanding how fixed-income markets are structured and how they operate is important for debt issuers and investors. Debt issuers have financing needs that must be met. For example, a government may need to finance an infrastructure project, a new hospital, or a new school. A company may require funds to expand its business. Financial institutions also have funding needs, and they are among the largest issuers of fixed-income securities. Fixed income is an important asset class for both individual and institutional investors. Thus, investors need to understand the characteristics of fixed-income securities including how these securities are issued and traded.

Among the questions this reading addresses are the following:

- What are the key bond market sectors?
- How are bonds sold in primary markets and traded in secondary markets?
- What types of bonds are issued by governments, government-related entities, financial companies, and non-financial companies?
- What additional sources of funds are available to banks?

The remainder of this reading is organized as follows. Section 2 presents an overview of global fixed-income markets and how these markets are classified, including some descriptive statistics on the size of the different bond market sectors. Section 2 also identifies the major issuers of and investors in fixed-income securities and presents fixed-income indexes. Section 3 discusses how fixed-income securities are issued in primary markets, and how these securities are then traded in secondary markets. Sections 4 to 7 examine different bond market sectors. Section 8 discusses additional short-term funding alternatives available to banks, including repurchase agreements. Section 9 concludes and summarizes the reading.

2

OVERVIEW OF GLOBAL FIXED-INCOME MARKETS

Although there is no standard classification of fixed-income markets, many investors and market participants use criteria to structure fixed-income markets and identify bond market sectors. This section starts by describing the most widely used ways of classifying fixed-income markets.

2.1 Classification of Fixed-Income Markets

Common criteria used to classify fixed-income markets include the type of issuer; the bonds' credit quality, maturity, currency denomination, and type of coupon; and where the bonds are issued and traded.

2.1.1 Classification by Type of Issuer

One way of classifying fixed-income markets is by type of issuer, which usually leads to the identification of three bond market sectors: the government and government-related sector, the corporate sector, and the structured finance sector. The government

¹ Charles Roxburgh, Susan Lund, and John Piotowski, "Mapping Global Capital Markets," McKinsey & Company (2011). The \$212 trillion amount is based on a sample of 79 countries and includes the market capitalization of stock markets; the principal amount outstanding of bonds issued by governments, financial, and non-financial companies; securitized debt instruments; and the book value of the loans held on the balance sheets of banks and other financial institutions.

and government-related sector includes the bonds issued by supranational (international) organizations, such as the World Bank; sovereign (national) governments; non-sovereign (local) governments, such as provinces, regions, states, or cities; and quasi-government entities that are either owned or sponsored by governments, such as rail services or utilities in many countries. The corporate sector refers to the bonds issued by financial and non-financial companies. The structured finance sector includes bonds created by securitization, a process that transforms private transactions between borrowers and lenders into securities traded in public markets.

Exhibit 1 presents data on global capital markets at the end of December 2010. As mentioned in the introduction, the combined sectors of the global debt markets are three times larger than the global equity markets. Exhibit 1 also indicates that the largest issuers of bonds are governments and financial institutions. However, the last column shows that in the immediate aftermath of the global financial crisis that started in 2008, the amount of bonds issued by governments increased, whereas the amount of bonds issued by financial institutions decreased. In addition, the last two columns of Exhibit 1 show that the sector that grew the fastest between 1990 and 2009 was securitized debt instruments, but it was also the sector that shrank the most after 2008. Securitized debt instruments, also called asset-backed securities, are created by securitization. Securitization involves transferring ownership of assets from the original owners into a special legal entity. The special legal entity then issues securities backed by the assets, and the assets' cash flows are used to pay interest and repay the principal owed to the holders of the securities. Assets that are typically used to create securitized debt instruments include loans (such as mortgage loans) and receivables (such as credit card receivables). Securitized debt instruments are not discussed in this reading but rather in the reading on asset-backed securities.

The last row is a reminder that although the focus of many market participants and this reading is on publicly traded securities, bank loans remain an important component of global capital markets. In many countries, bank loans are the primary source of capital, particularly for small and medium-size companies.

Exhibit 1 Global Debt and Equity Outstanding by Sector at the End of December 2010

Sector	Amount (US\$ trillions)	Weight	Compound	Annual
			Growth Rate 1990–2009	Growth Rate 2009–2010
Stock markets	\$54	26%	7.2%	5.6%
Bonds issued by governments	41	19	7.8	11.9
Bonds issued by financial companies	42	20	9.5	–3.3
Bonds issued by nonfinancial companies	10	5	6.7	9.7
Securitized debt instruments	15	7	12.7	–5.6
Bank loans	49	23	4.1	5.9

Notes: Data include 79 countries. The amounts reflect the market capitalization of stock markets; the principal amount outstanding of bonds issued by governments, financial, and non-financial companies; securitized debt instruments; and the book value of the loans held on the balance sheets of banks and other financial institutions.

Source: Data from Exhibit E1 in Charles Roxburgh, Susan Lund, and John Piotowski, "Mapping Global Capital Markets," McKinsey & Company (2011):4.

Exhibit 2 shows the amounts of debt and equity outstanding and the total capital as a percentage of GDP for various countries and economic areas at the end of December 2010. It indicates that financial markets relative to GDP are much smaller in emerging countries than in developed countries. Debt and equity capital represent more than 400% of GDP in the United States, Japan, and Western Europe, versus less than 200% in Central and Eastern Europe (CEE), the Commonwealth of Independent States (CIS), Latin America, and the Middle East and Africa.

Exhibit 2 Global Debt and Equity Outstanding for Various Countries and Economic Areas at the End of December 2010 (US\$ trillions)

Economic Area	Bank Loans	Securitized Debt Instruments	Bonds Issued by Nonfinancial Companies	Bonds Issued by Financial Companies	Bonds Issued by Governments	Stock Markets	Total Capital as a Percentage of GDP
United States	\$44	\$77	\$31	\$116	\$75	\$119	462%
Japan	106	10	18	31	220	72	457
Western Europe	110	15	19	115	72	69	400
Other Developed	91	29	20	47	49	152	388
China	127	2	10	16	28	97	280
India	60	4	1	7	44	93	209
Middle East and Africa	66	2	5	6	15	96	190
Other Asia	54	1	10	7	34	62	168
Latin America	27	3	3	20	38	57	148
CEE and CIS	62	0	2	6	24	48	142

Note: CEE and CIS stand for Central and Eastern Europe and Commonwealth of Independent States, respectively.

Source: Data are from Exhibit E2 in Charles Roxburgh, Susan Lund, and John Piotowski, "Mapping Global Capital Markets," McKinsey & Company (2011):8.

2.1.2 Classification by Credit Quality

Investors who hold bonds are exposed to credit risk, which is the risk of loss resulting from the issuer failing to make full and timely payments of interest and/or principal. Bond markets can be classified based on the issuer's creditworthiness as judged by credit rating agencies. Ratings of Baa3 or above by Moody's Investors Service or BBB– or above by Standard & Poor's (S&P) and Fitch Ratings are considered investment grade. In contrast, ratings below these levels are referred to as non-investment grade, high yield, speculative, or "junk." An important point to understand is that credit ratings are an assessment of the issuer's creditworthiness at a certain point in time; they are not a recommendation to buy or sell the issuer's securities. In addition, credit ratings are not static; they will change if a credit rating agency perceives that the probability of default for an issuer has changed.

One of the reasons why the distinction between investment-grade and high-yield bond markets matters is because institutional investors may be prohibited from investing in, or restricted in their exposure to, lower-quality or lower-rated securities. Prohibition or restriction in high-yield bond holdings generally arise because of a more restrictive risk–reward profile that forms part of the investor's investment objectives and constraints. For example, regulated banks and life insurance companies are usually

limited to investing in very highly rated securities. In contrast, the sovereign wealth funds of both Qatar and Kuwait have no formal restrictions on what type of assets they can hold or on the percentage split between bond market sectors. Globally, investment-grade bond markets tend to be more liquid than high-yield bond markets.

2.1.3 Classification by Maturity

Fixed-income securities can also be classified by the original maturity of the bonds when they are issued. Securities that are issued with a maturity at issuance (original maturity) ranging from overnight to one year are money market securities. Some of these securities are issued by sovereign governments, such as Treasury bills. The corporate sector also issues fixed-income securities with short maturities. Examples include commercial paper and negotiable certificates of deposit, which are discussed in Sections 6.2 and 7.2.3, respectively. In contrast, capital market securities are securities that are issued with an original maturity longer than one year.

2.1.4 Classification by Currency Denomination

One of the critical ways to distinguish among fixed-income securities is by currency denomination. The currency denomination of the bond's cash flows influences which interest rates affect a bond's price. For example, if a bond is denominated in yen, its price will be primarily driven by the credit quality of the issuer and by Japanese interest rates.

Exhibit 3 presents data on the currency denomination of international bonds, which are bonds issued by entities outside their home market, either in their domestic currency or in a foreign currency. It shows that approximately 79% of international bonds are denominated either in Euros or in US dollars.

Exhibit 3 Amounts of International Bonds Outstanding by Currency Denomination at the End of December 2011

Currency	Amount (US\$ billions)	Weight
Euro (EUR)	\$9,665.9	46.0%
US Dollar (USD)	6,900.8	32.9
British Pound Sterling (GBP)	2,052.3	9.8
Japanese Yen (JPY)	762.0	3.6
Swiss Franc (CHF)	393.4	1.9
Australian Dollar (AUD)	317.2	1.5
Canadian Dollar (CAD)	313.1	1.5
Swedish Krona (SEK)	103.0	0.5
Norwegian Krone (NOK)	86.4	0.4
Hong Kong Dollar (HKD)	63.5	0.3
Yuan Renminbi (CNY)	38.9	0.2
Other Currencies	305.0	1.5
Total	21,001.5	100.0%

Source: Based on data from Bank of International Settlements, Tables 13A and 13B, available at www.bis.org/statistics/secstats.htm (accessed 12 December 2012).

2.1.5 Classification by Type of Coupon

Another way of classifying fixed-income markets is by type of coupon. Some bonds pay a fixed rate of interest; others, called floating-rate bonds, floating-rate notes (FRNs) or floaters, pay a rate of interest that adjusts to market interest rates at regular, short-term intervals (e.g., quarterly).

2.1.5.1 Demand and Supply of Fixed-Rate vs. Floating-Rate Debt Balance sheet risk management considerations explain much of the demand and supply of floating-rate debt. For instance, the funding of banks—that is, the money banks raise to make loans to companies and individuals—is often short term and issued at rates that change or reset frequently. When there is a mismatch between the interest paid on the liabilities (money the bank borrowed) and the interest received on the assets (money the bank lent or invested), banks are exposed to interest rate risk—that is, the risk associated with a change in interest rate. In an effort to limit the volatility of their net worth resulting from interest rate risk, banks that issue floating-rate debt often prefer to make floating-rate loans and invest in floating-rate bonds or in other adjustable-rate assets. In addition to institutions with short-term funding needs, demand for floating-rate bonds comes from investors who believe that interest rates will rise. In that case, investors will benefit from holding floating-rate investments compared with fixed-rate ones.

On the supply side, issuance of floating-rate debt comes from institutions needing to finance short-term loans, such as consumer finance companies. Corporate borrowers also view floating-rate bonds as an alternative to using bank liquidity facilities (e.g., lines of credit), particularly when they are a lower cost option, and as an alternative to borrowing long-term at fixed rates when they expect interest rates will fall.

2.1.5.2 Reference Rates The coupon rate of a floating rate bond is typically expressed as a reference rate plus a spread or margin. The spread is usually set when the bond is issued and remains constant until maturity. It is primarily a function of the issuer's credit risk at issuance: the lower the issuer's credit quality (the higher its credit risk), the higher the spread. The reference rate, however, resets periodically. Therefore, the coupon rate adjusts to the level of market interest rates each time the reference rate is reset. The choice of the reference rate is critical because the reference rate is the primary driver of a bond's coupon rate. Thus, the issuer's cost of financing and the investor's return from investing in the bonds depend on the reference rate.

Different reference rates are used depending on where the bonds are issued and their currency denomination. The **London interbank offered rate (Libor)** is the reference rate for many floating-rate bonds, in particular those issued in the Eurobond market. For example, a typical coupon rate for a floater denominated in British sterling that pays coupons semi-annually is the sterling six-month Libor plus a spread. The coupon rate that is paid at the end of a six-month period is set based on the sterling six-month Libor at the beginning of the period, and it remains constant throughout the six months. Every six months, the coupon rate is reset in line with the sterling six-month Libor prevailing on the reset date. For floating-rate bonds denominated in US dollars, the reference rate is usually the US dollar Libor—the US dollar three-month Libor if the coupons are paid quarterly or the US dollar 12-month Libor if the coupons are paid annually.

As illustrated in these examples, “Libor” is a collective name for multiple rates. Libor rates reflect the rates at which a panel of banks believe they could borrow unsecured funds from other banks in the London interbank money market for different currencies and different borrowing periods ranging from overnight to one year—the **interbank money market** or **interbank market** is the market of loans and deposits between banks for maturities up to one year. The sidebar describes how the Libor rates are determined and identifies some of the issues associated with Libor.



Administration of Libor

As of the time of this writing in late 2012, the process by which Libor rates are set is in transition. Historically, Libor rates were set by the British Bankers' Association (BBA). Every business day, a select group of 18 banks would submit to the BBA the rates at which they believed they could borrow from other banks in the London interbank market for 10 currencies and 15 borrowing periods.² The submitted rates would be ranked from highest to lowest, and the upper and lower four submissions would be discarded. The arithmetic mean of the remaining 10 rates became the Libor rates for a particular combination of currency and maturity. The 150 Libor rates would then be communicated to market participants for use as reference rates in many different types of debt, including floating-rate bonds.

One of the advantages of Libor has been its prevalence of use. The shortcoming of Libor as historically set was that Libor rates were not based on readily observable market rates but on banks' own estimates of their borrowing rates. Because the rates at which a bank can borrow money are an indication of its credit risk, banks had an incentive to understate their reported borrowing rates. A scandal emerged in 2012 as it was recognized that, at times, Libor rates drifted away from the underlying reality. How the Libor rates are set will certainly evolve going forward. In September 2012, the Financial Services Authority (FSA), at that time the regulator of all the providers of financial services in the United Kingdom, announced that the BBA would be relieved of oversight of Libor.³ It is also possible that over time, market rates may emerge as an alternative way of setting Libor and other reference rates.

Although there are Libor rates for currencies such as the euro and the yen, alternative interbank offered rates may be used for floating-rate debt issued in these currencies, such as the Euro interbank offered rate (Euribor) and the Tokyo interbank offered rate (Tibor), respectively. Similar sets of interbank offered rates exist in other markets, for instance, the Singapore interbank offered rate (Sibor), the Hong Kong interbank offered rate (Hibor), the Mumbai interbank offered rate (Mibor), or the Korea interbank offered rate (Koribor) for floating-rate debt issued in Singapore dollar, Hong Kong dollar, Indian rupee, or the Korean won, respectively. All these different interbank offered rates are sets of rates for borrowing periods of various maturities of up to one year. The processes to determine them are similar, except that the sets of banks and organizations fixing the daily rates are different.

The use of these interbank offered rates extends beyond setting coupon rates for floating-rate debt. These rates are also used as reference rates for other debt instruments including mortgages, derivatives such as interest rate and currency swaps, and many other financial contracts and products. As of November 2012, it is estimated that nearly \$300 trillion of financial instruments are tied to Libor.

² The question asked is, "At what rate could you borrow funds, were you to do so by asking for and then accepting interbank offers in a reasonable market size just prior to 11am?" Since Libor was established in 1986, the number of currencies has increased from three to 10, and the number of periods has also increased from 12 to 15, resulting in 150 rates as of 2012. But the number of rates is likely to go down in 2013 with the elimination of some of the currencies and maturities.

³ In 2013, the Financial Services Authority (FSA) was replaced by two new regulatory authorities, the Prudential Regulation Authority (PRA), responsible for the prudential regulation and supervision of the banking system, and the Financial Conduct Authority (FCA), the regulator for all other providers of financial services.

2.1.6 Classification by Geography

A distinction is very often made between the domestic bond, foreign bond, and Eurobond markets. Bonds issued in a specific country, denominated in the currency of that country, and sold in that country are classified as domestic bonds if they are issued by an issuer domiciled in that country and foreign bonds if they are issued by an issuer domiciled in another country. Domestic and foreign bonds are subject to the legal, regulatory, and tax requirements that apply in that particular country. In contrast, a Eurobond is issued internationally, outside the jurisdiction of the country in whose currency the bond is denominated. The Eurobond market has traditionally been characterized by less reporting, regulatory and tax constraints than domestic and foreign bond markets. These fewer constraints explain why approximately 80% of entities that issue bonds outside their country of origin choose to do so in the Eurobond market rather than in a foreign bond market. In addition, Eurobonds are attractive for issuers because it gives them the ability to reach out to more investors globally. Access to a wider pool of investors often allows issuers to raise more capital and usually at a lower cost.

Exhibit 4 presents data on the residence of issuers and a breakdown of the amount of bonds outstanding between the government, financial, and non-financial sectors. It shows that 59% of issuers are located in the United States and Japan, and that the residents of 10 countries account for 90% of the global bond markets. Exhibit 4 also indicates that the split between the three sectors varies among countries. For example, the government sector represents 74% of the amount of bonds outstanding in Japan, but non-financial corporate issuers only account for 7% of the \$15.7 trillion of bonds outstanding. In contrast, the corporate sector is the largest sector in countries such as the Netherlands, Spain, the United Kingdom, or the United States, although the majority of bonds are issued by financial rather than non-financial companies.

Exhibit 4 Amount of Bonds Outstanding by Residence of Issuer and Type of Issuer at the End of December 2011 (US\$ billions)

Country	All Issuers		Government		Financial		Non-Financial	
	Amount	Global Weight	Amount	Sector Weight	Amount	Sector Weight	Amount	Sector Weight
United States	\$33,582	40%	\$12,954	39%	\$14,938	44%	\$5,690	17%
Japan	15,700	19	11,552	74	3,111	20	1,038	7
United Kingdom	5,275	6	2,040	39	2,537	48	699	13
Germany	4,383	5	2,079	47	2,175	50	129	3
France	4,382	5	1,910	44	1,947	44	525	12
Italy	3,686	4	2,078	56	1,492	40	116	3
Spain	2,307	3	871	38	1,416	61	19	1
Netherlands	2,246	3	401	18	1,730	77	116	5
Canada	1,899	2	1,178	62	399	21	322	17
Australia	1,847	2	479	26	1,186	64	182	10
Rest of the world	8,748	10	3,184	36	4,830	55	734	8
Total	\$84,055	100%	\$38,726	46%	\$35,761	43%	\$9,570	11%

Source: Based on data from Bank of International Settlements, Tables 13A and 13B, available from www.bis.org/statistics/secstats.htm (accessed 12 December 2012).

Investors make a distinction between countries with established capital markets (developed markets) and countries where the capital markets are in earlier stages of development (emerging markets). For emerging bond markets, a further distinction is made between bonds issued in local currency and bonds issued in a foreign currency, such as the euro or the US dollar.

Emerging bond markets are much smaller than developed bond markets, which is the reason why they do not appear in Exhibit 4. But as demand from local and international investors has increased, issuance and trading of emerging market bonds have risen in volume and value. International investors' interest in emerging market bonds has been triggered by a desire to diversify risk across several jurisdictions in the belief that investment returns across markets are not closely correlated. In addition, emerging market bonds usually offer higher yields (return) than developed market bonds because of the higher perceived risk. Emerging countries typically lag developed countries in the areas of political stability, property rights, and contract enforcement, which often leads to a higher credit risk and higher yields. Many emerging countries, however, are less indebted than their developed counterparts and benefit from higher growth prospects, which appeals to many investors.

2.1.7 Other Classifications of Fixed-Income Markets

There are various other ways of classifying fixed-income markets. Market participants may classify fixed-income markets based on some specific characteristics associated with the fixed-income securities. Specific market sectors that are of interest to some investors are inflation-linked bonds and, in some jurisdictions, tax-exempt bonds. Issuance of either type of bond tends to be limited to certain types of issuers. Inflation-linked bonds or linkers are typically issued by governments, government-related entities, and corporate issuers that have an investment-grade rating. They offer investors protection against inflation by linking the coupon payment and/or the principal repayment to an index of consumer prices.

Tax-exempt bonds can only be issued in those jurisdictions that recognize such tax exemption. In the United States for example, there is an income tax exemption for some of the bonds issued by governments or by some non-profit organizations. In particular, local governments can issue **municipal bonds** (or **munis**) that are tax exempt (they can also issue taxable municipal bonds, although tax-exempt munis are more frequently issued than taxable munis). Tax-exempt municipal bonds are of interest to investors who are subject to income tax because the interest income on these bonds is typically exempt from federal income tax and from income tax of the state where the bonds are issued, subject to certain restrictions. The coupon rate on a tax-exempt municipal bond is typically lower than that on an otherwise similar taxable bond to reflect the implied income tax rate. Investors are willing to accept a lower coupon rate on a tax-exempt municipal bond compared with an otherwise similar taxable bond because the income received from municipal bonds is not taxable. Tax-exempt bonds also exist in other jurisdictions. For example, the National Highways Authority of India (NHAI) issues tax-exempt bonds. In countries that implement a capital gains tax, there may be tax exemptions for some types of bonds. In the United Kingdom for example, government gilts are not subject to capital gains tax.

EXAMPLE 1

Classification of Fixed-Income Markets

- 1 Which of the following is *most likely* an issuer of bonds?
 - A Hedge fund
 - B Pension fund

- C Local government
- 2 A bond issued by a city would *most likely* be classified as a:
- A supranational bond.
 - B quasi-government bond.
 - C non-sovereign government bond.
- 3 A fixed-income security issued with a maturity at issuance of nine months is *most likely* classified as a:
- A capital market security.
 - B money market security.
 - C securitized debt instrument.
- 4 The price of a bond issued in the United States by a British company and denominated in US dollars is *most likely* to:
- A change as US interest rates change.
 - B change as British interest rates change.
 - C be unaffected by changes in US and British interest rates.
- 5 Interbank offered rates are *best* described as the rates at which a panel of banks can:
- A issue short-term debt.
 - B borrow unsecured funds from other major banks.
 - C borrow from other major banks against some form of collateral.
- 6 A company issues floating-rate bonds. The coupon rate is expressed as the three-month Libor plus a spread. The coupon payments are *most likely* to increase as:
- A Libor increases.
 - B the spread increases.
 - C the company's credit quality decreases.

Solution to 1:

C is correct. Major issuers of bonds include sovereign (national) governments, non-sovereign (local) governments, quasi-government agencies, supranational organizations, and financial and non-financial companies. A and B are incorrect because hedge funds and pension funds are typically investors in, not issuers of, bonds.

Solution to 2:

C is correct. Non-sovereign (local) government bond issuers include provinces, regions, states, and cities. A is incorrect because supranational bonds are issued by international organizations. B is incorrect because quasi-government bonds are issued by agencies that are either owned or sponsored by governments.

Solution to 3:

B is correct. Money market securities are issued with a maturity at issuance (original maturity) ranging from overnight to one year. A is incorrect because capital market securities are issued with an original maturity longer than one year. C is incorrect because securitization, which leads to the creation of securitized debt instruments, does not relate to a bond's maturity but to the process that transforms private transactions between borrowers and lenders into securities traded in public markets.

Solution to 4:

A is correct. The currency denomination of a bond's cash flows influences which country's interest rates affect a bond's price. The price of a bond issued by a British company and denominated in US dollars will be affected by US interest rates.

Solution to 5:

B is correct. Interbank offered rates represent a set of interest rates at which major banks believe they could borrow unsecured funds from other major banks in the interbank money market for different currencies and different borrowing periods ranging from overnight to one year.

Solution to 6:

A is correct. The coupon payments of a floating-rate bond that is tied to the three-month Libor will reset every three months, based on changes in Libor. Thus, as Libor increases, so will the coupon payments. B is incorrect because the spread on a floating-rate bond is typically constant; it is set when the bond is issued and does not change afterward. C is incorrect because the issuer's credit quality affects the spread and thus the coupon rate that serves as the basis for the calculation of the coupon payments, but only when the spread is set—that is, at issuance.

2.2 Fixed-Income Indexes

A fixed-income index is a multi-purpose tool used by investors and investment managers to describe a given bond market or sector, as well as to evaluate the performance of investments and investment managers. Most fixed-income indexes are constructed as portfolios of securities that reflect a particular bond market or sector. The index construction—that is, the security selection and the index weighting—varies among indexes.⁴ Index weighting may be based on price or value (market capitalization).

There are literally dozens of fixed-income indexes globally, capturing different aspects of the fixed-income markets discussed earlier. One of the most popular set of indexes is the Bloomberg Barclays Global Aggregate Bond Index, which represents a broad-based measure of the global investment-grade fixed-rate bond market. It has an index history beginning on 1 January 1990 and contains three important components: the US Aggregate Bond Index (formerly Lehman Aggregate Bond Index), the Pan-European Aggregate Bond Index, and the Asian-Pacific Aggregate Bond Index. These indexes reflect the investment-grade sectors of the US, European, and Asian-Pacific bond markets, respectively.

With respect to emerging markets, one of the most widely followed indexes is the J.P. Morgan Emerging Market Bond Index (EMBI) Global, which includes US dollar-denominated Brady bonds (bonds issued primarily by Latin American countries in the late 1980s under a debt restructuring plan aimed at converting bank loans into tradable securities), Eurobonds and loans issued by sovereign and quasi-sovereign entities in several emerging markets.

Another popular set of indexes is the FTSE Global Bond Index Series, which has been set up to provide coverage of different classes of securities related to the government and corporate bond markets. It includes indexes of global government bonds, euro-denominated government bonds from emerging markets, sterling- and euro-denominated investment-grade corporate bonds, and covered bonds from Germany and other European Union issuers. Covered bonds are debt obligations issued by banks and backed (secured) by a segregated pool of assets.

⁴ Fixed-income indexes are discussed in greater details in the reading on security market indexes.

Many other fixed-income indexes are available to investors and investment managers to measure and report performance.

2.3 Investors in Fixed-Income Securities

The overview of fixed-income markets has so far focused on the supply side. Before discussing bond issuers in greater detail, it is important to consider the demand side because demand for a particular type of bond or issuer may affect supply. After all, market prices are the result of the interaction between demand and supply; neither one can be considered in isolation. For example, an increase in demand for inflation-linked bonds as a result of investors' desire to protect the value of their portfolios against inflation risk may lead governments to issue a greater quantity of this type of bond. By issuing relatively more inflation-linked bonds for which there is demand, a government not only manages to sell its bond issue and get the funds required, but it may also benefit from a lower cost of financing.

There are different types of investors in fixed-income securities. Major categories of bond investors include central banks, institutional investors, and retail investors. The first two typically invest directly in fixed-income securities. In contrast, retail investors often invest indirectly through fixed-income mutual funds or exchange-traded funds (ETFs).

Central banks use open market operations to implement monetary policy. **Open market operations** refer to the purchase or sale of bonds, usually sovereign bonds issued by the national government. By purchasing (selling) domestic bonds, central banks increase (decrease) the monetary base in the economy. Central banks may also purchase and sell bonds denominated in foreign currencies as part of their efforts to manage the relative value of the domestic currency and their country's foreign reserves.

Institutional investors, including pension funds, hedge funds, charitable foundations and endowments, insurance companies, and banks, represent the largest groups of investors in fixed-income securities. Another major group of investors is sovereign wealth funds, which are state-owned investment funds that tend to have very long investment horizons and aim to preserve or create wealth for future generations.

Finally, retail investors often invest heavily in fixed-income securities because of the attractiveness of relatively stable prices and steady income production.

Fixed-income markets are dominated by institutional investors in part because of the high informational barriers to entry and high minimum transaction sizes. Fixed-income securities are far more diverse than equity securities because of the variety of types of issuers and securities. In addition, unlike common shares that are primarily issued and traded in organized markets, the issuance and trading of bonds very often occurs in **over-the-counter (OTC) markets**. Thus, fixed-income securities are more difficult to access than equity securities. For these reasons, institutional investors tend to invest directly in bonds, whereas most retail investors prefer to use investment vehicles, such as mutual funds and ETFs.

EXAMPLE 2

Investors in Fixed-Income Securities

- 1 Open market operations describe the process used by central banks to buy and sell bonds to:
 - A implement fiscal policy.
 - B control the monetary base.
 - C issue and repay government debt.

- 2 Retail investors *most often*:
- A do not invest in fixed-income securities.
 - B invest directly in fixed-income securities.
 - C invest indirectly in fixed-income securities through mutual funds or exchange-traded funds.

Solution to 1:

B is correct. Open market operations refer to the purchase or sale of bonds, usually sovereign bonds issued by the national government, as a means of implementing monetary policy. By purchasing (selling) bonds, central banks increase (decrease) the monetary base in the economy, thus controlling the money supply. A is incorrect because open market operations help facilitate monetary policy, not fiscal policy (which is the taxing and spending by the national government). C is incorrect because although Treasury departments and some central banks may facilitate the issuance and repayment of government debt, open market operations specifically refer to the implementation of monetary policy.

Solution to 2:

C is correct. Retail investors often invest in fixed-income securities because of the attractiveness of relatively stable prices and steady income production. However, because most retail investors lack the expertise to value fixed-income securities and are not large enough investors to buy and sell them directly, they usually invest in fixed income indirectly through mutual funds and exchange-traded funds.

PRIMARY AND SECONDARY BOND MARKETS

3

Primary bond markets are markets in which issuers initially sell bonds to investors to raise capital. In contrast, **secondary bond markets** are markets in which existing bonds are subsequently traded among investors. As with all financial markets, primary and secondary bond markets are regulated within the framework of the overall financial system. An established independent regulatory authority is usually responsible for overseeing both the structure of the markets and the credentials of market participants.

3.1 Primary Bond Markets

Issuances in primary bond markets are frequent. Exhibit 5 presents data on net bond issuances (i.e., the difference between new bond issuances and bond repayments). It shows that during the year 2011, the amount of new bond issuances exceeded the amount of bond repayments by \$3.8 trillion globally, a growth rate of approximately 4%. In all the largest bond markets, there were more new bond issuances than bond repayments in value.

Exhibit 5 Amounts of Bonds Outstanding at the End of December 2011 and Amounts of Net Bond Issuances in 2011 by Residence of the Issuer (US\$ billions)

Country	Amount of Bonds Outstanding	Net Bond Issuances
United States	\$33,582	\$559.7
Japan	15,700	457.5
United Kingdom	5,275	77.2
Germany	4,383	25.5
France	4,382	322.1
Italy	3,686	197.6
Spain	2,307	64.2
Netherlands	2,246	65.2
Canada	1,899	111.7
Australia	1,847	100.8
Rest of the world	8,748	1,796.2
Total	\$84,055	\$3,777.7

Source: Based on data from Bank of International Settlements, Tables 14A, 14B, and 16A, available at www.bis.org/statistics/secstats.htm (accessed 30 October 2012).

In the remainder of this section, we discuss the process for issuing bonds in primary markets. Different bond issuing mechanisms are used depending on the type of issuer and the type of bond issued. A bond issue can be sold via a **public offering** (or **public offer**), in which any member of the public may buy the bonds, or via a **private placement**, in which only a selected investor, or group of investors, may buy the bonds.

3.1.1 Public Offerings

Investment banks play a critical role in bond issuance by assisting the issuer in accessing the primary market and by providing an array of financial services. The most common bond issuing mechanisms are underwritten offerings, best effort offerings, and auctions. In an **underwritten offering**, also called a **firm commitment offering**, the investment bank guarantees the sale of the bond issue at an offering price that is negotiated with the issuer. Thus, the investment bank, called the **underwriter**, takes the risk associated with selling the bonds. In contrast, in a **best effort offering**, the investment bank only serves as a broker. It only tries to sell the bond issue at the negotiated offering price if it is able to for a commission. Thus, the investment bank has less risk and correspondingly less incentive to sell the bonds in a best effort offering than in an underwritten offering. An **auction** is a bond issuing mechanism that involves bidding.

3.1.1.1 Underwritten Offerings Underwritten offerings are typical bond issuing mechanisms for corporate bonds, some local government bonds (such as municipal bonds in the United States), and some asset-backed securities (such as mortgage-backed securities). The underwriting process typically includes six phases.

The underwriting process starts with the determination of the funding needs. Often with the help of an adviser or advisers, the issuer must determine how much money must be raised, the type of bond offering, and whether the bond issue should be underwritten.

Once the issuer has decided that the bond issue should be underwritten, it must select the underwriter, which is typically an investment bank. The underwriter of a bond issue takes the risk of buying the newly issued bonds from the issuer, and then resells them to investors or to dealers who then sell them to investors. The difference between the purchase price of the new bond issue and the reselling price to investors is the underwriter's revenue. A relatively small-size bond issue may be underwritten by a single investment bank. It is more common for larger bond issues, however, to be underwritten by a group, or syndicate, of investment banks. In this case, the bond issue is referred to as a **syndicated offering**. There is a lead underwriter that invites other investment banks to join the syndicate and that coordinates the effort. The syndicate is collectively responsible for determining the pricing of the bond issue and for placing (selling) the bonds with investors.

The third phase of an underwritten offering is to structure the transaction. Before the bond issue is announced, the issuer and the lead underwriter discuss the terms of the bond issue, such as the bond's notional principal (total amount), the coupon rate, and the expected offering price. The underwriter or the syndicate typically organizes the necessary regulatory filings and prepares the offering circular or prospectus that provides information about the terms of the bond issue. The issuer must also choose a trustee, which is typically a trust company or the trust department of a bank, to oversee the master bond agreement. The bond offering is formally launched the day the transaction is announced, usually in the form of a press release. The announcement specifies the new bond issue's terms and conditions, including the bond's features, such as the maturity date, the currency denomination, and the expected coupon range, as well as the expected offering price. The issuer also releases the offering circular or prospectus. The final terms may differ from these terms as a result of changes in market conditions between the announcement day and the pricing day.

The success of the bond issue depends on the underwriter or syndicate's discernment in assessing market conditions and in pricing the bond issue accordingly. The pricing of the bond issue is, therefore, an important phase of an underwritten offering. Ideally, the bond issue should be priced so that the amount of bonds available is equal to the demand for the bonds by investors. If the offering price is set too high, the offering will be undersubscribed—that is, there will be insufficient demand for the bond issue. As a consequence, the underwriter or syndicate will fail to sell the entire bond issue. Alternatively, if the offering price is set too low, the offering will be oversubscribed. Underwriters may aim at a small oversubscription because it reduces the risk of being unable to sell the entire bond issue. But a large oversubscription indicates that the offering terms were probably unfavorable to the issuer in that the issuer might have raised the desired amount of capital at a lower coupon rate.

Between the announcement of a bond issue and the end of the subscription period, the underwriter or syndicate must gauge what the demand for the bond issue is and at what price the bond should be offered to ensure that the entire bond issue is placed without running the risk of a large oversubscription. There are different ways for underwriters to do so. The bond issue is usually marketed to potential investors. This may be by an indirect approach, such as an advertisement in a newspaper, a commonly used approach for bond issued by household names, or through direct marketing and road shows, aimed at institutional investors such as pension funds and insurance companies. The underwriter or syndicate may also approach large institutional investors and discuss with them the kind of bond issues they are willing to buy. These buyers are known as the "anchor." For some, but not all, bond issues, the grey market is another way for underwriters to gauge investor's interest. The **grey market**, also called "when issued" market, is a forward market for bonds about to be issued. Trading in the grey market helps underwriters determine what the final offering price should be.

The pricing day is the last day when investors can commit to buy the bond issue, and it is also the day when the final terms of the bond issue are agreed on. The following day, called the “offering day,” the underwriting agreement that includes the bond issue’s final terms is signed. The underwriting process then enters the issuing phase. The underwriter or the syndicate purchases the entire bond issue from the issuer, delivers the proceeds, and starts reselling the bonds through its sales network.

The underwriting process comes to an end about 14 days later, on the closing day, when the bonds are delivered to investors. Investors no longer receive a paper settlement; instead, the bond itself is represented by a global note that is typically held by the paying agent.

3.1.1.2 Shelf Registration A **shelf registration** allows certain authorized issuers to offer additional bonds to the general public without having to prepare a new and separate offering circular for each bond issue. Rather, the issuer prepares a single, all-encompassing offering circular that describes a range of future bond issuances, all under the same document. This master prospectus may be in place for years before it is replaced or updated, and it may be used to cover multiple bond issuances. For example, the British retailer Tesco used a shelf registration in 2010 for a series of issues under a universal aggregate \$10 billion of bonds. The company could have elected to issue the entire size at once. Instead, it has issued smaller notional amounts at different intervals since 2010.

Under a shelf registration, each individual offering is prefaced with a short issue announcement document. This document must confirm that there has been no change to material elements of the issuer’s business, or otherwise describe any changes to the issuer’s financial condition since the master prospectus was filed. Because shelf issuances are subject to a lower level of scrutiny compared with standard public offerings, they are only an option for well-established issuers that have convinced the regulatory authorities of their financial strength. Additionally, certain jurisdictions may only allow shelf registrations to be purchased by “qualified” institutional investors—that is, institutional investors that meet a set of criteria set forth by the regulators.

3.1.1.3 Auctions An auction is a method that involves bidding. It is helpful in providing price discovery (i.e., it facilitates supply and demand in determining prices) and in allocating securities. In many countries, most sovereign bonds are sold to the public via a public auction. For example, in 2011, the United States conducted 269 public auctions and issued approximately \$7.5 trillion of new securities such as Treasury bills, notes, bonds, and Treasury Inflation-Protected Securities (TIPS). The public auction process used in the United States is a single-price auction through which all the winning bidders pay the same price and receive the same coupon rate for the bonds. In contrast, the public auction process used in Canada and Germany is a multiple-price auction process, which generates multiple prices and coupon rates for the same bond issue.

The US sovereign bond market is one of the largest and most liquid bond markets globally, so we will illustrate the US single-price auction process. This process includes three phases: announcement, bidding, and issuance. First, the US Treasury announces the auction and provides information about the bond issue, such as the amount of securities being offered, the auction date, the issue date, the maturity date, bidding close times, and other pertinent information.

After the auction announcement is made, dealers, institutional investors, and individual investors may enter competitive or non-competitive bids. With competitive bids, a bidder specifies the rate (yield) that is considered acceptable; if the rate determined at auction is lower than the rate specified in the competitive bid, the investor will not be offered any securities. In contrast, with non-competitive bids, a bidder agrees to accept the rate determined at auction; non-competitive bidders always receive their securities. At the close of the auction, the US Treasury accepts all non-competitive

bids and competitive bids in ascending order of their rates (lowest to highest) until the amount of bids is equal to the amount the issuer requires. All bidders receive the same rate, based on the highest accepted bid. This single-price auction process encourages aggressive bidding and potentially results in a lower cost of funds (i.e., lower coupon rate) for the U.S Treasury because all the winning bidders pay the same price.

On the issue day, the US Treasury delivers the securities to the winning bidders and collects the proceeds from investors. After the auction process is complete, the securities are traded in secondary markets like other securities.

Exhibit 6 shows the results of a US Treasury public auction.

Exhibit 6 Results of a US Treasury Public Auction on 16 October 2012

Term and Type of Security	28-Day Bill	
CUSIP Number	9127955L1	
High rate ^a	0.125%	
Allotted at high	21.85%	
Price	99.990278	
Investment rate ^b	0.127%	
Median rate ^c	0.115%	
Low rate ^d	0.100%	
Issue date	18 October 2012	
Maturity date	15 November 2012	
	Tendered	Accepted
Competitive	\$160,243,967,000	\$39,676,092,000
Non-competitive	224,607,300	224,607,300
FIMA (non-competitive)	100,000,000	100,000,000
Subtotal ^e	\$160,568,574,300	\$40,000,699,300 ^f
SOMA	\$0	\$0
Total	\$160,568,574,300	\$40,000,699,300
	Tendered	Accepted
Primary Dealer ^g	\$137,250,000,000	\$26,834,200,000
Direct Bidder ^h	13,450,000,000	4,079,425,000
Indirect Bidder ⁱ	9,543,967,000	8,762,467,000
Total Competitive	\$160,243,967,000	\$39,676,092,000

^a All tenders at lower rates were accepted in full.

^b Equivalent coupon-issue yield.

^c 50% of the amount of accepted competitive tenders was tendered at or below that rate.

^d 5% of the amount of accepted competitive tenders was tendered at or below that rate.

^e Bid-to-cover ratio: \$160,568,574,300/\$40,000,699,300 = 4.01.

^f Awards to combined Treasury Direct systems = \$134,591,900.

^g Primary dealers as submitters bidding for their own house accounts.

^h Non-primary dealer submitters bidding for their own house accounts.

(continued)

Exhibit 6 (Continued)

ⁱ Customers placing competitive bids through a direct submitter, including Foreign and International Monetary Authorities placing bids through the Federal Reserve Bank of New York.

Note: FIMA stands for Foreign and International Monetary Authority and reflects the non-competitive bids made by investors from foreign countries. SOMA stands for System Open Market Account and reflects the Federal Reserve's open market operations.

Source: Based on information from www.treasurydirect.gov.

The rate determined at auction was 0.125%. T-bills are pure discount bonds; they are issued at a discount to par value and redeemed at par. Investors paid 99.990278% of par—that is, approximately \$999.90. The US Treasury received bids for \$160.6 billion, but only raised \$40.0 billion. All the non-competitive bids (\$324.6 million) were accepted, but only a quarter (\$39.7 of the \$160.2 billion) of competitive bids was accepted. Note that half the competitive bids were submitted with a rate lower than 0.115%. All bidders, however, received the rate of 0.125%.

Exhibit 6 also identifies the types of bidders. Most US Treasury securities are bought at auction by primary dealers. **Primary dealers** are financial institutions that are authorized to deal in new issues of US Treasury securities. They have established business relationships with the Federal Reserve Bank of New York (New York Fed), which implements US monetary policy. Primary dealers serve primarily as trading counterparties of the New York Fed and are required to participate meaningfully in open market operations and in all auctions of US Treasury securities. They also provide the New York Fed with market information. Institutional investors and central banks are the largest investors in US Treasury securities; only a very small amount of these bonds is purchased directly by individual investors.

3.1.2 Private Placements

A private placement is typically a non-underwritten, unregistered offering of bonds that are sold only to an investor or a small group of investors. Typical investors in privately placed bonds are large institutional investors. A private placement can be accomplished directly between the issuer and the investor(s) or through an investment bank. Because privately placed bonds are unregistered and may be restricted securities that can only be purchased by some types of investors, there is usually no active secondary market to trade them. However, trading may be possible under certain conditions. For example, restricted securities issued under Rule 144A in the United States cannot be sold to the public, but they can be traded among qualified institutional investors. Even if trading is possible, privately placed bonds typically exhibit lower liquidity than publicly issued bonds. Insurance companies and pension funds are major buyers of privately placed bonds because they do not need every security in their portfolio to be liquid and they often value the additional yield offered by these bonds.

Private placements sometimes represent a step in the company's financing evolution between **syndicated loans** (loans from a group of lenders to a single borrower further discussed in Section 6.1) and public offerings. Privately placed bonds are often issued in small aggregate amounts, at times by unknown issuers. Many investors may not be willing to undertake the credit analysis that is required for a new name, in particular if the offering amount is small. Unlike in a public offering in which the bonds are often sold to investors on a take-it-or-leave-it basis, investors in a private placement can influence the structure of the bond issue, including such considerations as asset and collateral backing, credit enhancements, and covenants. It is common for privately placed bonds to have more customized and restrictive covenants than publicly issued ones. In addition to being able to negotiate the terms of the bonds and align them

with their needs, investors in private placements are rewarded by getting the bonds, which is not always the case in public offerings in which investors cannot know for sure when the issue will become available and how many securities they will be allocated.

Private placements are also offered by regular bond issuers, in particular for smaller amounts of capital raised in major currencies, such as US dollars, euros, or sterling. Private placements are usually more flexible than public offerings and allow regular issuers to tailor the bond issue to their own needs.

3.2 Secondary Bond Markets

Secondary markets, also called the “aftermarket,” are where existing securities are traded among investors. Securities can be traded directly from investor to investor, or through a broker or dealer to facilitate the transaction. The major participants in secondary bond markets globally are large institutional investors and central banks. The presence of retail investors in secondary bonds markets is limited, unlike in secondary equity markets.

The key to understanding how secondary bond markets are structured and function is to understand liquidity. Liquidity refers to the ability to trade (buy or sell) securities quickly and easily at prices close to their fair market value. Liquidity involves much more than “how quickly one can turn a bond into cash.” This statement implicitly assumes a long position, but some market participants need to buy quickly when covering a short position. The other aspect of liquidity that is often ignored is that speed of trading alone does not constitute a liquid market. One can always buy something quickly by offering a very high price or sell something quickly by accepting a very low price. In a liquid market, trading takes place quickly at prices close to the security’s fair market value.

There are two main ways for secondary markets to be structured: as an organized exchange or as an over-the-counter market. An **organized exchange** provides a place where buyers and sellers can meet to arrange their trades. Although buy or sell orders may come from anywhere, the transaction must take place at the exchange according to the rules imposed by the exchange. In contrast, with OTC markets, buy and sell orders initiated from various locations are matched through a communications network. Thus, OTC markets need electronic trading platforms over which users submit buy and sell orders. Bloomberg Fixed Income Electronic Trading platform is an example of such a platform through which dealers stand ready to trade in multiple bond markets globally. Although there is some trading of government bonds and very active corporate bonds on many stock exchanges around the world, the vast majority of bonds are traded in OTC markets.

The liquidity demands of fixed-income investors have evolved since the early 1990s. The type of investors who would buy and hold a bond to maturity that once dominated the fixed-income markets has been supplanted by institutional investors who trade actively. The dynamics of global fixed-income markets reflect this change in the relative demand for liquidity.

We will illustrate how secondary markets work by using the example of Eurobonds. The most important Eurobond trading center by volume is in London, although a large number of market participants are also based in Brussels, Frankfurt, Zurich, and Singapore. Liquidity is supplied by Eurobond market makers, of which approximately 35 are registered with the International Capital Market Association (ICMA). ICMA is an association of banks and other financial institutions that provides a regulatory framework for international bond markets and that is behind much of the established uniform practices that are observed by all market participants in the Eurobond market.

The level of commitment to the different sectors of the market varies among market makers. The **bid-offer spread** or **bid-ask spread**, which reflects the prices at which dealers will buy from a customer (bid) and sell to a customer (offer or ask),

is very often used as an indicator of liquidity. It can be as low as 5 bps for very liquid bond issues, such as issues of the World Bank, to no price quoted for illiquid issues. A reasonable spread is of the order of 10–12 bps, whereas an illiquid spread may be in excess of 50 bps. When there is no bid or offer price, the issue is completely illiquid for trading purposes.

Settlement is the process that occurs after the trade is made. The bonds are passed to the buyer and payment is received by the seller. Secondary market settlement for government and quasi-government bonds typically takes place either on a cash basis or on a $T + 1$ basis. With cash settlement, trading and settlement occur on the same day. With $T + 1$ settlement, settlement takes place the day after the trade date. In contrast, corporate bonds usually settle on a $T + 2$ or $T + 3$ basis, although settlement can extend to $T + 7$ in some jurisdictions. Trades clear within either or both of the two main clearing systems, Euroclear and Clearstream. Settlement occurs by means of a simultaneous exchange of bonds for cash on the books of the clearing system. An electronic bridge connecting Euroclear and Clearstream allows transfer of bonds from one system to the other, so it is not necessary to have accounts at both systems. Both systems operate on a paperless, computerized book-entry basis, although a bond issue is still represented by a physical document, the global note mentioned earlier. All participants in either system will have their own internal account set up, and they may also act as agent for buyers or sellers who do not possess an account.

EXAMPLE 3

Bond Markets

- 1 Which of the following *best* describes a primary market for bonds? A market:
 - A in which bonds are issued for the first time to raise capital.
 - B that has a specific location where the trading of bonds takes place.
 - C in which existing bonds are traded among individuals and institutions.
- 2 US Treasury bonds are typically sold to the public via a(n):
 - A auction.
 - B primary dealer.
 - C secondary bond market.
- 3 In a single-price bond auction, an investor who places a competitive bid and specifies a rate that is above the rate determined at auction will *most likely*:
 - A not receive any bonds.
 - B receive the bonds at the rate determined at auction.
 - C receive the bonds at the rate specified in the investor's competitive bid.
- 4 A bond purchased in a secondary market is *most likely* purchased from:
 - A the bond's issuer.
 - B the bond's lead underwriter.
 - C another investor in the bond.
- 5 Corporate bonds will *most likely* settle:
 - A on the trade date.
 - B on the trade date plus one day.
 - C by the trade date plus three days.

Solution to 1:

A is correct. Primary bond markets are markets in which bonds are issued for the first time to raise capital. B is incorrect because having a specific location where the trading of bonds takes place is not a requirement for a primary bond market. C is incorrect because a market in which existing bonds are traded among individuals and institutions is the definition of a secondary, not primary, market.

Solution to 2:

A is correct. US Treasury bonds are typically sold to the public via an auction. B is incorrect because primary dealers are often bidders in the auction; they are financial institutions that are active in trading US Treasury bonds. C is incorrect because any bond issue coming directly to the market is considered to be in the primary, not the secondary, market.

Solution to 3:

A is correct. In a single-price bond auction, a bidder that enters a competitive bid specifies the rate (yield) that is considered acceptable. If the rate specified in the competitive bid is above the coupon rate determined at auction, the investor will not be offered any securities.

Solution to 4:

C is correct. Secondary bond markets are where bonds are traded among investors. A and B are incorrect because a bond purchased from the bond's issuer or from the bond's lead underwriter would happen in the primary, not secondary, market.

Solution to 5:

C is correct. Corporate bonds typically settle on a $T + 2$ or $T + 3$ basis—that is, two or three days after the trade date—although settlement can extend to $T + 7$ in some jurisdictions. A and B are incorrect because it is government and quasi-government bonds, not corporate bonds, that typically settle either on a cash basis or on a $T + 1$ basis.

SOVEREIGN BONDS

4

National governments issue bonds primarily for fiscal reasons—to fund spending when tax revenues are insufficient to cover expenditures. To meet their spending goals, national governments issue bonds in various types and amounts. This section discusses bonds issued by national governments, often referred to as **sovereign bonds** or **sovereigns**.

4.1 Characteristics of Sovereign Bonds

Sovereign bonds denominated in local currency have different names in different countries. For example, they are named US Treasuries in the United States, Japanese government bonds (JGBs) in Japan, gilts in the United Kingdom, Bunds in Germany, and obligations assimilables du Trésor (OATs) in France. Some investors or market participants may refer to sovereign bonds as Treasury securities or Treasuries for short, on the principle that the national Treasury department is often in charge of managing a national government's funding needs.

Names may also vary depending on the original maturity of the sovereign bond. For example, US government bonds are named Treasury bills (T-bills) when the original maturity is one year or shorter, Treasury notes (T-notes) when the original maturity is longer than one year and up to 10 years, and Treasury bonds (T-bonds) when the original maturity is longer than 10 years; in Spain, the sovereigns issued by Tesoro Público are named letras del Tesoro, bonos del Estado, and obligaciones del Estado depending on the sovereign's original maturity, one year or shorter, longer than one year and up to five years, or longer than five years, respectively. Although very rare, some bonds, such as the consols in the United Kingdom, have no stated maturity date.

The majority of the trading in secondary markets is of sovereign securities that were most recently issued. These securities are called **on-the-run**. The latest sovereign bond issue for a given maturity is also referred to as a **benchmark issue** because it serves as a benchmark against which to compare bonds that have the same features (i.e., maturity, coupon type and frequency, and currency denomination) but that are issued by another type of issuer (e.g., non-sovereign, corporate). As a general rule, as sovereign securities age, they trade less frequently.

One salient difference between money market securities, such as T-bills, and capital market securities, such as T-notes and T-bonds, is the interest provision. As illustrated in Exhibit 6, T-bills are pure discount bonds; they are issued at a discount to par value and redeemed at par. The difference between the par value and the issue price is the interest paid on the borrowing. In contrast, capital market securities are typically coupon (or coupon-bearing) bonds; these securities make regular coupon payments and repay the par value at maturity. Bunds pay coupons annually, whereas US Treasuries, JGBs, gilts, and OATs make semi-annual coupon payments.

4.2 Credit Quality of Sovereign Bonds

Sovereign bonds are usually unsecured obligations of the sovereign issuer—that is, they are not backed by collateral but by the taxing authority of the national government. When a national government runs a budget surplus, excess tax revenues over expenditures is the primary source of funds for making interest payments and repaying the principal. In contrast, when a country runs a budget deficit, the source of the funds used for the payment of interest and repayment of principal comes from tax revenues and also by “rolling over” (refinancing) existing debt into new debt.

Highly rated sovereign bonds denominated in local currency are virtually free of credit risk. Credit rating agencies assign ratings to sovereign bonds, and these ratings are called “sovereign ratings.” The highest rating (i.e., highest credit quality and lowest credit risk) is AAA by S&P and Fitch and Aaa by Moody's. As of late 2012, only a handful of sovereign issuers were rated at this (theoretically) risk-free level by these three credit rating agencies, including Germany, Singapore, Switzerland, the Netherlands, and the United Kingdom. The global financial crisis that started in 2008 resulted in many national governments reaching potentially unsustainable levels of debt, with the pace of spending far exceeding tax revenues. Many of these national governments suffered downgrades from the AAA/Aaa level, including Ireland in 2009, Spain in 2010, and the United States, which was downgraded by S&P in 2011.

Credit rating agencies make a distinction between bonds issued in the sovereign's local currency and bonds issued in a foreign currency. In theory, a government can make interest payments and repay the principal by generating cash flows from its unlimited power (in the short run at least) to tax its citizens. A national government also has the ability to print its own currency, whereas it is restricted in being able to pay in a foreign currency only what it earns in exports or can exchange in financial markets. Thus, it is common to observe a higher credit rating for sovereign bonds issued in local currency than for those issued in a foreign currency. But there are limits to a government's ability to reduce the debt burden. As the sovereign debt crisis

that followed the global financial crisis has shown, taxing citizens can only go so far in paying down debt before the taxation becomes an economic burden. Additionally, printing money only serves to weaken a country's currency relative to other currencies over time.

The national government of a country that has a strong domestic savings base has the luxury of being able to issue bonds in its local currency and sell them to domestic investors. If the local currency is liquid and freely traded, the sovereign issuer may also attract foreign investors who may want to hold that sovereign issuer's bonds and have exposure to that country's local currency. A national government may also issue debt in a foreign currency when there is demand for the sovereign issuer's bonds, but not necessarily in the sovereign's local currency. For example, demand from overseas investors has caused national governments such as Switzerland and Sweden to issue sovereign bonds in US dollars and euros. Emerging market countries may also have to issue in major currencies because international investors may be willing to accept the credit risk but not the foreign exchange (currency) risk associated with emerging market bonds. When a sovereign issuer raises debt in a foreign currency, it usually swaps the proceeds into its local currency.

4.3 Types of Sovereign Bonds

National governments issue different types of bonds, some of them paying a fixed rate of interest and others paying a floating rate, including inflation-linked bonds.

4.3.1 Fixed-Rate Bonds

Fixed-rate bonds (i.e., bonds that pay a fixed rate of interest) are by far the most common type of sovereign bond. National governments routinely issue two types of fixed-rate bonds: zero-coupon bonds (or pure discount bonds) and coupon bonds. A zero-coupon bond does not pay interest. Instead, it is issued at a discount to par value and redeemed at par at maturity. Coupon bonds are issued with a stated rate of interest and make interest payments periodically, such as semi-annually or annually. They have a terminal cash flow equal to the final interest payment plus the par value. As mentioned earlier, most sovereign bonds with an original maturity of one year or less are zero-coupon bonds, whereas bonds with an original maturity longer than one year are typically issued as coupon bonds.

4.3.2 Floating-Rate Bonds

The price of a bond changes in the opposite direction from the change in interest rates, a relationship that is fully explained in the reading on understanding the risk and return of fixed-income securities. Thus, investors who hold fixed-rate bonds are exposed to interest rate risk: As interest rates increase, bond prices decrease, which lowers the value of their portfolio. In response to public demand for less interest rate risk, some national governments around the world issue bonds with a floating rate of interest that resets periodically based on changes in the level of a reference rate such as Libor. Although interest rate risk still exists on floating-rate bonds, it is far less pronounced than that on fixed-rate bonds.

Examples of countries where the national government issues floating-rate bonds include Germany, Spain, and Belgium in developed markets and Brazil, Turkey, Mexico, Indonesia, and Poland in emerging markets. The largest sovereign issuer, the United States, began issuing floating-rate bonds in January 2014. Two other large sovereign issuers, Japan and the United Kingdom, have never issued bonds whose coupon rate is tied to a reference rate.

4.3.3 Inflation-Linked Bonds

Fixed-income investors are exposed to inflation risk. The cash flows of fixed-rate bonds are fixed by contract. If a particular country experiences an inflationary episode, the purchasing power of the fixed cash flows is eroded over time. Thus, to respond to the demand for less inflation risk, many national governments issue inflation-linked bonds, or linkers, whose cash flows are adjusted for inflation. First issuers of inflation-linked bonds were the governments of Argentina, Brazil, and Israel. The United States introduced inflation-linked securities in January 1997, calling them Treasury Inflation-Protected Securities (TIPS). Other countries where the national government has issued inflation-linked bonds include the United Kingdom, Sweden, Australia, and Canada in developed markets and Brazil, South Africa, and Chile in emerging markets.

As explained in the reading on fixed-income securities, the index to which the coupon payments and/or principal repayments are linked is typically an index of consumer prices. Inflation-linked bonds can be structured a variety of ways: The inflation adjustment can be made via the coupon payments, the principal repayment, or both. In the United States, the index used is the Consumer Price Index for All Urban Consumers (CPI-U). In the United Kingdom, it is the Retail Price Index (RPI) (All Items). In France, there are two inflation-linked bonds with two different indexes: the French consumer price index (CPI) (excluding tobacco) and the Eurozone's Harmonized Index of Consumer Prices (HICP) (excluding tobacco). Although linking the cash flow payments to a consumer price index reduces inflation risk, it does not necessarily eliminate the effect of inflation completely because the consumer price index may be an imperfect proxy for inflation.

EXAMPLE 4

Sovereign Bonds

- 1 Sovereign debt with a maturity at issuance shorter than one year are *most likely*:
 - A floating-rate instruments.
 - B zero-coupon instruments.
 - C coupon-bearing instruments.
- 2 Floating-rate bonds are issued by national governments as the *best* way to reduce:
 - A credit risk.
 - B inflation risk.
 - C interest rate risk.
- 3 Sovereign bonds whose coupon payments and/or principal repayments are adjusted by a consumer price index are *most likely* known as:
 - A linkers.
 - B floaters.
 - C consols.

Solution to 1:

B is correct. Most debt issued by national governments with a maturity at issuance (original maturity) shorter than one year takes the form of zero-coupon instruments. A and C are incorrect because floating-rate and coupon-bearing instruments are typically types of sovereign debt with maturities longer than one year.

Solution to 2:

C is correct. The coupon rates of floating-rate bonds are reset periodically based on changes in the level of a reference rate such as Libor, which reduces interest rate risk. A is incorrect because credit risk, although low for sovereign bonds, cannot be reduced by linking the coupon rate to a reference rate. B is incorrect because although inflation risk is lower for floating-rate bonds than for fixed-rate bonds, floating-rate bonds are not as good as inflation-linked bonds to reduce inflation risk.

Solution to 3:

A is correct because sovereign bonds whose coupon payments and/or principal repayment are adjusted by a consumer price index are known as inflation-linked bonds or linkers. B is incorrect because floaters describe floating-rate bonds that have a coupon rate tied to a reference rate such as Libor. C is incorrect because consols are sovereign bonds with no stated maturity date issued by the UK government.

NON-SOVEREIGN GOVERNMENT, QUASI-GOVERNMENT, AND SUPRANATIONAL BONDS

5

This section covers the bonds issued by local governments and by government-related entities.

5.1 Non-Sovereign Bonds

Levels of government below the national level such as provinces, regions, states, and cities issue bonds called **non-sovereign government bonds** or **non-sovereign bonds**. These bonds are typically issued to finance public projects, such as schools, motorways, hospitals, bridges, and airports. The sources for paying interest and repaying the principal include the taxing authority of the local government, the cash flows of the project the bond issue is financing, or special taxes and fees established specifically for the purpose of making interest payments and principal repayments. Non-sovereign bonds are typically not guaranteed by the national government.

As mentioned in Section 2.1.7, bonds issued by state and local governments in the United States are known as municipal bonds, and they often offer income tax exemptions. In the United Kingdom, non-sovereign bonds are known as local authority bonds. Other non-sovereign bonds include those issued by state authorities such as the 16 *Länder* in Germany.

Credit ratings for non-sovereign bonds vary widely because of the differences in credit and collateral quality. Because default rates of non-sovereign bonds are historically low, they very often receive high credit ratings. However, non-sovereign bonds usually trade at a higher yield and lower price than sovereign bonds with similar characteristics. The additional yield depends on the credit quality, the liquidity of the bond issue, and the implicit or explicit level of guarantee or funding commitment from the national government. The additional yield is the lowest for non-sovereign bonds that have high credit quality, are liquid, and are guaranteed by the national government.

5.2 Quasi-Government Bonds

National governments establish organizations that perform various functions for them. These organizations often have both public and private sector characteristics, but they are not actual governmental entities. They are referred to as quasi-government entities, although they take different names in different countries. These quasi-government entities often issue bonds to fund specific financing needs. These bonds are known as **quasi-government bonds** or **agency bonds**.

Examples of quasi-government entities include government-sponsored enterprises (GSEs) in the United States, such as the Federal National Mortgage Association (“Fannie Mae”), the Federal Home Loan Mortgage Corporation (“Freddie Mac”), and the Federal Home Loan Bank (FHLB). GSEs were among the largest issuers of bonds before the global financial crisis that started in 2008. Other examples of quasi-government entities that issue bonds include Hydro Quebec in Canada or the Japan Bank for International Cooperation (JBIC). In the case of JBIC’s bonds, timely payments of interest and repayment of principal are guaranteed by the Japanese government. Most quasi-government bonds, however, do not offer an explicit guarantee by the national government, although investors often perceive an implicit guarantee.

Because a quasi-government entity typically does not have direct taxing authority, bonds are repaid from the cash flows generated by the entity or from the project the bond issue is financing. Quasi-government bonds may be backed by collateral, but this is not always the case. Quasi-government bonds are usually rated very high by the credit rating agencies because historical default rates are extremely low. Bonds that are guaranteed by the national government receive the highest ratings and trade at a lower yield and higher price than otherwise similar bonds that are not backed by the sovereign government’s guarantee.

5.3 Supranational Bonds

A form of often highly rated bonds is issued by supranational agencies, also referred to as multilateral agencies. The most well-known supranational agencies are the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development (the World Bank), the International Monetary Fund (IMF), the European Investment Bank (EIB), the Asian Development Bank (ADB), and the African Development Bank (AFDB). Bonds issued by supranational agencies are called **supranational bonds**.

Supranational bonds are typically plain vanilla bonds, although floating-rate bonds and callable bonds are sometimes issued. Highly rated supranational agencies, such as the World Bank, frequently issue large-size bond issues that are often used as benchmarks issues when there is no liquid sovereign bond available.

EXAMPLE 5

Non-Sovereign Government, Quasi-Government, and Supranational Bonds

- 1 Relative to sovereign bonds, non-sovereign bonds with similar characteristics *most likely* trade at a yield that is:
 - A lower.
 - B the same.
 - C higher.
- 2 Bonds issued by a governmental agency are *most likely*:
 - A repaid from the cash flows generated by the agency.

- B guaranteed by the national government that sponsored the agency.
- C backed by the taxing power of the national government that sponsored the agency.

Solution to 1:

C is correct. Non-sovereign bonds usually trade at a higher yield and lower price than sovereign bonds with similar characteristics. The higher yield is because of the higher credit risk associated with non-sovereign issuers relative to sovereign issuers, although default rates of local governments are historically low and their credit quality is usually high. The higher yield may also be a consequence of non-sovereign bonds being less liquid than sovereign bonds with similar characteristics.

Solution to 2:

A is correct. Most bonds issued by a governmental agency are repaid from the cash flows generated by the agency or from the project the bond issue is financing. B and C are incorrect because although some bonds issued by governmental agencies are guaranteed by the national government or are backed by the taxing power of the national government that sponsored the agency, bonds are most likely repaid first from the cash flows generated by the agency.

CORPORATE DEBT

6

Companies differ from governments and government-related entities in that their primary goal is profit; they must be profitable to stay in existence. Thus, profitability is an important consideration when companies make decisions, including financing decisions. Companies routinely raise debt as part of their overall capital structure, both to fund short-term spending needs (e.g., working capital) as well as long-term capital investments. We have so far focused on publicly issued debt, but loans from banks and other financial institutions are a significant part of the debt raised by companies. For example, it is estimated that European companies traditionally meet 70% of their borrowing needs from banks and only 30% from financial markets.⁵ However, as banks have been deleveraging and reducing the amount of loans to companies following the global financial crisis that started in 2008, companies, in particular those with high credit quality, have turned to financial markets to issue bonds. They have been taking advantage of the low interest rate environment and the increased appetite of investors for corporate bonds.

6.1 Bank Loans and Syndicated Loans

A **bilateral loan** is a loan from a single lender to a single borrower. Companies routinely use bilateral loans from their banks, and these bank loans are governed by the bank loan documents. Bank loans are the primary source of debt financing for small and medium-size companies as well as for large companies in countries where bond markets are either under-developed or where most bond issuances are from government, government-related entities, and financial institutions. Access to bank loans depends not only on the characteristics and financial health of the company, but also on market conditions and bank capital availability.

⁵ Neil O'Hara, "In or Out of MTNs?" *FTSE Global Markets*, no. 65 (October 2012):32–34.

A syndicated loan is a loan from a group of lenders, called the “syndicate,” to a single borrower. A syndicated loan is a hybrid between relational lending and publicly traded debt. Syndicated loans are primarily originated by banks, and the loans are extended to companies but also to governments and government-related entities. The coordinator, or lead bank, originates the loan, forms the syndicate, and processes the payments. In addition to banks, a variety of lenders participate in the syndicate, such as pension funds, insurance companies, and hedge funds. Syndicated loans are a way for these institutional investors to participate in corporate lending while diversifying the credit risk among a group of lenders.

In recent years, a secondary market in syndicated loans has developed. These loans are often packaged and securitized, and the securities created are then sold in secondary markets to investors.

Most bilateral and syndicated loans are floating-rate loans, and the interest rate is based on a reference rate plus a spread. The reference rate may be Libor, a sovereign rate (e.g., the T-bill rate), or the prime lending rate, also called the “prime rate.” The prime rate formerly reflected the interest rate at which banks lent to their most creditworthy customers, but it now tends to be driven by the overnight rate at which banks lend to each other. Bank loans can be customized to the borrower’s needs. They can have different maturities, as well as different interest payment and principal repayment structures. The frequency of interest payments varies among bank loans. Some loans are bullet loans, in which the entire payment of principal occurs at maturity, and others are amortizing loans, in which the principal is repaid over time.

For highly rated companies, both bilateral and syndicated loans can be more expensive than bonds issued in financial markets. Thus, companies often turn to money and capital markets to raise funds, which allows them to diversify their sources of financing.

6.2 Commercial Paper

Commercial paper is a short-term, unsecured promissory note issued in the public market or via a private placement that represents a debt obligation of the issuer. Commercial paper was first issued in the United States more than a century ago. It later appeared in the United Kingdom, in other European countries, and then in the rest of the world.

6.2.1 Characteristics of Commercial Paper

Commercial paper is a valuable source of flexible, readily available, and relatively low-cost short-term financing. It is a source of funding for working capital and seasonal demands for cash. It is also a source of **bridge financing**—that is, interim financing that provides funds until permanent financing can be arranged. Suppose a company wants to build a new distribution center in southeast China and wants to finance this investment with an issuance of long-term bonds. The market conditions for issuing long-term bonds may currently be volatile, which would translate into a higher cost of borrowing. Rather than issuing long-term bonds immediately, the company may opt to raise funds with commercial paper and wait for a more favorable environment in which to sell long-term bonds.

The largest issuers of commercial paper are financial institutions, but some non-financial companies are also regular issuers of commercial paper. Although the focus of this section is on corporate borrowers, sovereign governments and supranational agencies routinely issue commercial paper as well.

The maturity of commercial paper can range from overnight to one year, but a typical issue matures in less than three months.

6.2.2 Credit Quality of Commercial Paper

Traditionally, only the largest, most stable companies issued commercial paper. Although only the strongest, highest-rated companies issue low-cost commercial paper, issuers from across the risk spectrum can issue commercial paper with higher yields than higher-rated companies. Thus, investors in commercial paper are exposed to various levels of credit risk depending on the issuer's creditworthiness. Many investors perform their own credit analysis, but most investors also assess a commercial paper's credit quality by using the ratings provided by credit rating agencies. Exhibit 7 presents the range of commercial paper ratings from the main credit rating agencies. Commercial paper rated adequate or above (shaded area of Exhibit 7) is called "prime paper," and it is typically considered investment grade by investors.

Exhibit 7 Commercial Paper Ratings

Credit Quality	Moody's	S&P	Fitch
Superior	P1	A1+/A1	F1+/F1
Satisfactory	P2	A2	F2
Adequate	P3	A3	F3
Speculative	NP	B/C	F4
Defaulted	NP	D	F5

In most cases, maturing commercial paper is paid with the proceeds of new issuances of commercial paper, a practice referred to as "rolling over the paper." This practice creates a risk that the issuer will be unable to issue new paper at maturity, referred to as rollover risk. As a safeguard against rollover risk, credit rating agencies often require that commercial paper issuers secure **backup lines of credit** from banks. The purpose of the backup lines of credit is to ensure that the issuer will have access to sufficient liquidity to repay maturing commercial paper if rolling over the paper is not a viable option. This is why backup lines of credit are sometimes called "liquidity enhancement" or "backup liquidity lines." Issuers of commercial paper may be unable to roll over the paper as a result of either market-wide or company-specific events. For example, financial markets could be in the midst of a financial crisis that would make it difficult to roll over the paper. A company could also experience some sort of financial distress such that it could only issue new commercial paper at significantly higher rates. In this case, the company could draw on its credit lines instead of rolling over its paper. Most commercial paper issuers maintain 100% backing, although some large, high credit quality issues carry less than 100% backing. Backup lines of credit typically contain a "material adverse change" provision that allows the bank to cancel the backup line of credit if the financial condition of the issuer deteriorates substantially.

Historically, defaults on commercial paper have been relatively rare, primarily because commercial paper has a short maturity. Each time existing paper matures, investors have the opportunity to assess the issuer's financial position, and they can refuse to buy the new paper if they estimate that the issuer's credit risk is too high. Thus, the commercial paper market is quicker in withdrawing financing when an issuer's credit quality deteriorates than markets for longer-term securities. This reduces the exposure of the commercial paper market to defaults. In addition, corporate managers realize that defaulting on commercial paper would likely prevent any future issuance of this valuable financing alternative.

The combination of short-dated maturity, relatively low credit risk, and a large number of issuers makes commercial paper attractive to a diverse range of institutional investors, including money market mutual funds, bank liquidity desks, corporate

treasury departments, and institutional investors that have liquidity constraints. Most commercial paper investors hold their position to maturity. The result is little secondary market trading except for the largest issues. Investors who wish to sell commercial paper prior to maturity can either sell the paper back to the dealer, to another investor, or in some cases, directly back to the issuer.

The yield on commercial paper is typically higher than that on short-term sovereign bonds of the same maturity for two main reasons. First, commercial paper is exposed to credit risk unlike most highly rated sovereign bonds. Second, commercial paper markets are generally less liquid than short-term sovereign bond markets. Thus, investors require higher yields to compensate for the lower liquidity. In the United States, the yield on commercial paper also tends to be higher than that on short-term municipal bonds for tax reasons. Income generated by investments in commercial paper is usually subject to income taxes, whereas income from many municipal bonds is tax exempt. Thus, to attract taxable investors, bonds that are subject to income taxes must offer higher yields than those that are tax exempt.

6.2.3 US Commercial Paper vs. Eurocommercial Paper

The US commercial paper (USCP) market is the largest commercial paper market in the world, although there are other active commercial paper markets in other countries. Commercial paper issued in the international market is known as Eurocommercial paper (ECP). Although ECP is a similar instrument to USCP, there are some differences between the two. These differences are shown in Exhibit 8.

Exhibit 8 USCP vs. ECP

Feature	US Commercial Paper	Eurocommercial Paper
Currency	US dollar	Any currency
Maturity	Overnight to 270 days ^a	Overnight to 364 days
Interest	Discount basis	Interest-bearing or discount basis
Settlement	$T + 0$ (trade date)	$T + 2$ (trade date plus two days)
Negotiable	Can be sold to another party	Can be sold to another party

^a In the United States, securities with an original maturity in excess of 270 days must be registered with the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC). To avoid the time and expense associated with a SEC registration, issuers of US commercial paper rarely offer maturities longer than 270 days.

A difference between USCP and ECP is related to the interest provision. USCP is typically issued on a discount basis—that is, USCP is issued at a discount to par value and pays full par value at maturity. The difference between the par value and the issue price is the interest paid on the borrowing. In contrast, ECP may be issued at, and trade on, an interest-bearing or yield basis or a discount basis. The distinction between the discount and the interest-bearing basis is illustrated in Exhibit 9. Some aspects of the calculation, such as the day count convention, are discussed in the introduction to fixed-income valuation reading.

Exhibit 9

Interest Calculation: Discount vs. Interest-Bearing Basis

A US bank and a German industrial company both issue \$50 million of 180-day, 5% commercial paper. The US bank issues its commercial paper domestically, and the German industrial company issues Eurocommercial paper.

Exhibit 9 (Continued)**US bank:**

Issues \$50,000,000 180-day USCP.

Interest is \$1,250,000 [$\$50,000,000 \times 0.05 \times (180/360)$].

Interest on USCP is on a discount basis. Proceeds received are \$48,750,000 [$\$50,000,000 - \$1,250,000$].

At maturity, the bank repays the par value of \$50,000,000.

German industrial company:

Issues \$50,000,000 180-day ECP.

Interest is \$1,250,000 [$\$50,000,000 \times 0.05 \times (180/360)$].

Interest on ECP is on an interest-bearing basis. Proceeds received are the par value of \$50,000,000.

At maturity, the company repays \$51,250,000 [$\$50,000,000 + \$1,250,000$].

The amount of interest is the same for both companies. In the case of USCP, investors receive the interest by getting a discount on the par value when the commercial paper is issued. In the case of ECP, investors receive the interest by getting an additional payment (or add-on) to the par value when the commercial paper is repaid. However, note that the investors' return is not the same. Investors earn 2.56% on their 180-day investment in USCP ($\$1,250,000 \div \$48,750,000$) versus 2.50% on their 180-day investment in ECP ($\$1,250,000 \div \$50,000,000$).

Typical transaction sizes in ECP are also much smaller than in USCP, and it is difficult to place longer-term ECP with investors. The ECP market also exhibits less liquidity than the USCP market.

6.3 Corporate Notes and Bonds

Companies are active participants in global capital markets and regularly issue corporate notes and bonds. These securities can be placed directly with specific investors via private placements or sold in public securities markets. This section discusses various characteristics of corporate notes and bonds.

6.3.1 Maturities

There is no universally accepted taxonomy as to what constitutes short-, medium-, and long-term maturities. For our purposes, short term refers to original maturities of five years or less; intermediate term to original maturities longer than five years and up to 12 years; and long term to original maturities longer than 12 years. Those securities with maturities between 1 and 12 years are often considered notes, whereas securities with maturities greater than 12 years are considered bonds. It is not uncommon, however, to refer to bonds for all securities, irrespective of their original maturity.

In practice, most corporate bonds range in term to maturity between 1 and 30 years. In Europe, however, there are also bond issues with maturities of 40 and 50 years. In addition, during the 1990s a number of corporate bonds were issued in the United States with maturities of 100 years; these bonds are called "century bonds." The first century bond was issued by the Walt Disney Company in 1993 as part of its medium-term note program.

Medium-term note (MTN) is a misnomer. As the century bond example above illustrates, MTNs can have very long maturities. From the perspective of the issuer, the initial purpose of MTNs was to fill the funding gap between commercial paper and long-term bonds. It is for this reason that they are referred to as “medium term.” The MTN market can be broken into three segments: short-term securities that carry floating or fixed rates, medium- to long-term securities that primarily bear a fixed rate of interest, and structured notes. MTNs have the unique characteristic of being securities that are offered continuously to investors by an agent of the issuer. This feature gives the borrower maximum flexibility for issuing securities on a continuous basis. Financial institutions are the primary issuers of MTNs, in particular short-term ones. Life insurance companies, pension funds, and banks are among the largest buyers of MTNs because they can customize the bond issue to their needs and stipulate the amount and characteristics of the securities they want to purchase. These investors are often willing to accept less liquidity than they would get with a comparable publicly issued bond because the yield is slightly higher. The cost savings in registration and underwriting often makes MTNs a lower cost option for the issuer.

6.3.2 *Coupon Payment Structures*

Corporate notes and bonds have a range of coupon payment structures. Financial and non-financial companies issue conventional coupon bonds that pay a fixed periodic coupon during the bond's life. They also issue bonds for which the periodic coupon payments adjust to changes in market conditions and/or changes to the issuer's credit quality. Such bonds typically offer investors the opportunity to reduce their exposure to a particular type of risk. For example, FRNs, whose coupon payments adjust to changes in the level of market interest rates, are a way to limit interest rate risk; some of the inflation-linked bonds whose coupon payments adjust to changes in the level of a consumer price index offer a protection against inflation risk; credit-linked coupon bonds, whose coupon payments adjust to changes in the issuer's credit quality, are a way to reduce credit risk. Whether the periodic coupon is fixed or not, coupon payments can be made quarterly, semi-annually, or annually depending on the type of bond and where the bonds are issued and traded.

Other coupon payment structures exist. Zero-coupon bonds pay no coupon. Deferred coupon bonds pay no coupon initially, but then offer a higher coupon. Payment-in-kind (PIK) coupon bonds make periodic coupon payments, but not necessarily in cash; the issuer may pay interest in the form of securities, such as bonds or common shares. These types of coupon payment structures give issuers more flexibility regarding the servicing of their debt.

6.3.3 *Principal Repayment Structures*

Corporate note or bond issues have either a serial or a term maturity structure. With a **serial maturity structure**, the maturity dates are spread out during the bond's life; a stated number of bonds mature and are paid off each year before final maturity. With a **term maturity structure**, the bond's notional principal is paid off in a lump sum at maturity. Because there is no regular repayment of the principal outstanding throughout the bond's life, a term maturity structure carries more credit risk than a serial maturity structure.

A sinking fund arrangement is a way to reduce credit risk by making the issuer set aside funds over time to retire the bond issue. For example, a corporate bond issue may require a specified percentage of the bond's outstanding principal amount to be retired each year. The issuer may satisfy this requirement in one of two ways. The most common approach is for the issuer to make a random call for the specified percentage of bonds that must be retired and to pay the bondholders whose bonds are called the sinking fund price, which is typically par. Alternatively, the issuer can deliver bonds to the trustee with a total amount equal to the amount that must be

retired. To do so, the issuer may purchase the bonds in the open market. The sinking fund arrangement on a term maturity structure accomplishes the same goal as the serial maturity structure—that is, both result in a portion of the bond issue being paid off each year. With a serial maturity structure, however, the bondholders know which bonds will mature and will thus be paid off each year. In contrast, the bonds retired annually with a sinking fund arrangement are designated by a random drawing.

6.3.4 Asset or Collateral Backing

Unlike most highly rated sovereign bonds, all corporate debt is exposed to varying degrees of credit risk. Thus, corporate debt is structured with this risk in mind. An important consideration for investors is seniority ranking—that is, the systematic way in which lenders are repaid if the issuer defaults. In the case of secured debt, there is some form of collateral pledged to ensure payment of the debt. In contrast, in the case of unsecured debt, claims are settled by the general assets of the company in accordance with the priority of payments that applies either legally or contractually and as described in the bond indenture. Within each category of debt (secured and unsecured), there are finer gradations of rankings, which are discussed in the reading on credit analysis.

There is a wide range of bonds that are secured by some form of collateral. Companies that need to finance equipment or physical assets may issue equipment trust certificates. Corporate issuers also sell collateral trust bonds that are secured by securities, such as common shares, bonds, or other financial assets. Banks, particularly in Europe, may issue covered bonds, which are a type of debt obligation that is secured by a segregated pool of assets. Asset-backed securities are also secured forms of debt.

Companies can and do default on their debt. Debt secured by collateral may still experience losses, but investors in secured debt usually fare better than in unsecured debt in bankruptcy proceedings. Investors who face a higher level of credit risk typically require a higher yield than investors exposed to very little credit risk.

6.3.5 Contingency Provisions

Contingency provisions are clauses in the indenture that provide the issuer or the bondholders rights that affect the disposal or redemption of the bond. The three commonly used contingency provisions are call, put, and conversion provisions.

Callable bonds give issuers the ability to retire debt prior to maturity. The most compelling reason for them to do so is to take advantage of lower borrowing rates. By calling the bonds before their maturity date, the issuer can substitute a new, lower cost bond issue for an older, higher cost one. In addition, companies may also retire debt to eliminate restrictive covenants or to alter their capital structure to improve flexibility. Because the call provision is a valuable option for the issuer, investors demand compensation *ex ante* (before investing in the bond). Thus, other things equal, investors require a higher yield (and thus pay a lower price) for a callable bond than for an otherwise similar non-callable bond.

Companies also issue puttable bonds, which give the bondholders the right to sell the bond back to the issuer at a predetermined price on specified dates before maturity. Most puttable bonds pay a fixed rate of interest, although some bonds may have step-up coupons that increase by specified margins at specified dates. Because the put provision is a valuable option for the bondholders, puttable bonds offer a lower yield (and thus have a higher price) than otherwise similar non-puttable bonds. The main corporate issuers of puttable bonds are investment-grade companies. Puttable bonds may offer them a cheaper way of raising capital, in particular if the company estimates that the benefit of a lower coupon outweighs the risk associated with the put provision.

A convertible bond is a hybrid security that lies on a continuum between debt and equity. It consists of a long position in an option-free bond and a conversion option that gives the bondholder the right to convert the bond into a specified number of

shares of the issuer's common shares. From the point of view of the issuer, convertible bonds make it possible to raise funds that may not be possible without the incentive associated with the conversion option. The more common issuers of convertibles are newer companies that have not established a presence in debt capital markets but who are able to present a more attractive package to institutional investors by including an equity upside potential. Established issuers of bonds may also prefer to issue convertible bonds because they are usually sold at a lower coupon rate than otherwise similar non-convertible bonds as a result of investors' attraction to the conversion provision. However, there is a potential equity dilution effect if the bonds are converted. From the investor's point of view, convertible bonds represent a means of accessing the equity upside potential of the issuer but at a lower risk–reward profile because there is the floor of the coupon payments in the meantime.

6.3.6 Issuance, Trading, and Settlement

In the era before electronic settlement, there were some differences in the processes of issuing and settling corporate bonds depending on where the securities were registered. This is no longer the case; the processes of issuing and settling bonds are now essentially the same globally. New corporate bond issues are usually sold to investors by investment banks acting as underwriters in the case of underwritten offerings or brokers in the case of best effort offerings. They are then settled via the local settlement system. These local systems typically possess a “bridge” to the two Eurobond systems, Euroclear and Clearstream. As for Eurobonds from the corporate sector, they are all issued, traded, and settled in the same way, irrespective of the issuer and its local jurisdiction.

Most bond prices are quoted in basis points. The vast majority of corporate bonds are traded in OTC markets through dealers who “make a market” in bonds and sell from their inventory. Dealers do not typically charge a commission or a transaction fee. Instead, they earn a profit from the bid–offer spread.

For corporate bonds, settlement differences exist primarily between new bond issues and the secondary trading of bonds. The issuing phase for an underwritten offering usually takes several days. Thus, settlement takes longer for new bond issued than for the secondary trading of bonds, for which settlement is typically on a $T + 2$ or $T + 3$ basis.

EXAMPLE 6

Corporate Debt

- 1 A loan made by a group of banks to a private company is *most likely*:
 - A a bilateral loan.
 - B a syndicated loan.
 - C a securitized loan.
- 2 Which of the following statements relating to commercial paper is *most accurate*? Companies issue commercial paper:
 - A only for funding working capital.
 - B only as an interim source of financing.
 - C both for funding working capital and as an interim source of funding.
- 3 Maturities of Eurocommercial paper range from:
 - A overnight to three months.
 - B overnight to one year.

- C three months to one year.
- 4 A bond issue that has a stated number of bonds that mature and are paid off each year before final maturity *most likely* has a:
- A term maturity.
- B serial maturity.
- C sinking fund arrangement.

Solution to 1:

B is correct. A loan from a group of lenders to a single borrower is a syndicated loan. A is incorrect because a bilateral loan is a loan from a single lender to a single borrower. C is incorrect because securitization involves moving assets, such as loans, from the owner of the assets into a special legal entity.

Solution to 2:

C is correct. Companies use commercial paper as a source of funding working capital and seasonal demand for cash, as well as an interim source of financing until permanent financing can be arranged.

Solution to 3:

B is correct. Eurocommercial paper ranges in maturity from overnight to 364 days.

Solution to 4:

B is correct. With a serial maturity structure, a stated number of bonds mature and are paid off each year before final maturity. A is incorrect because a bond issue with a term maturity structure is paid off in one lump sum at maturity. C is incorrect because a sinking fund arrangement, like a serial maturity structure, results in a portion of the bond issue being paid off every year. However, with a serial maturity structure, the bonds are paid off because the maturity dates are spread out during the life of the bond and the bonds that are retired are maturing; the bondholders know in advance which bonds will be retired. In contrast, the bonds retired annually with a sinking fund arrangement are designated by a random drawing.

STRUCTURED FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS

7

Structured financial instruments represent a broad sector of financial instruments. This sector includes asset-backed securities (ABS) and collateralized debt obligations (CDOs). CDOs are securities backed by a diversified pool of one or more debt obligations, and like ABS, they are discussed in the reading on asset-backed securities. A common attribute of all these financial instruments is that they repackage and redistribute risks.

Our focus in this section is on structured financial instruments apart from ABS and CDOs. These instruments typically have customized structures that often combine a bond and at least one derivative. Some of these instruments are called structured products. The use of derivatives gives the holder of the structured financial instrument exposure to one or more underlying assets, such as equities, bonds, and commodities. The redemption value and often the coupons of structured financial instruments are linked via a formula to the performance of the underlying asset(s). Thus, the bond's payment features are replaced with non-traditional payoffs that are derived not from the issuer's cash flows but from the performance of the underlying asset(s). While

there is no universally accepted taxonomy used to categorize structured financial instruments, we will present four broad categories of instruments in this reading: capital protected, yield enhancement, participation, and leveraged instruments.

7.1 Capital Protected Instruments

Suppose an investor has \$100,000 to invest. The investor buys zero-coupon bonds issued by a sovereign issuer that will pay off \$100,000 one year from now. Also suppose the cost of buying the zero-coupon bonds is \$99,000. The investor can use the \$1,000 left over from the purchase of the zero-coupon bond to buy a call option on some underlying asset that expires one year from now. Buying a call option gives the investor the right to buy the underlying asset in one year at a pre-determined price. The investor will receive \$100,000 when the zero-coupon bond matures and may also gain from the upside potential of the call option, if any. This combination of the zero-coupon bond and the call option can be prepackaged as a structured financial instrument called a **guarantee certificate**. The zero-coupon bond provides the investor capital protection; at maturity, the investor will receive 100% of the capital invested even if the call option expires worthless. The call option provides upside potential if the price of the underlying asset rises and a limited downside if the price of the underlying asset falls. The downside is limited to the price, often called the premium, paid for the call option. In our example, the maximum loss the investor faces is \$1,000, which is the price paid for the call option.

Capital protected instruments offer different levels of capital protection. A guarantee certificate offers full capital protection. Other structured financial instruments may offer only partial capital protection. Note that the capital protection is only as good as the issuer of the instrument. Should the issuer of guarantee certificates go bankrupt, investors may lose their entire capital.

7.2 Yield Enhancement Instruments

Yield enhancement refers to increasing risk exposure in the hope of realizing a higher expected return. A **credit-linked note (CLN)** is an example of a yield enhancement instrument. Specifically, it is a type of bond that pays regular coupons but whose redemption value depends on the occurrence of a well-defined credit event, such as a rating downgrade or the default of an underlying asset, called the reference asset. If the specified credit event does not occur, the investor receives the par value of the CLN at maturity. But if the specified credit event occurs, the investor receives the par value of the CLN minus the nominal value of the reference asset to which the CLN is linked.

A CLN allows the issuer to transfer the effect of a particular credit event to investors. Thus, the issuer is the protection buyer and the investor is the protection seller. Investors are willing to buy CLNs because these securities offer higher coupons than otherwise similar bonds. In addition, CLNs are usually issued at a discount. Thus, if the specified credit event does not occur, investors will realize a significant capital gain on the purchase of the CLN.

7.3 Participation Instruments

As the name suggests, a participation instrument is one that allows investors to participate in the return of an underlying asset. Floating-rate bonds can be viewed as a type of participation instrument. As discussed earlier, floaters differ from fixed-rate bonds in that their coupon rate adjusts periodically according to a pre-specified formula. The coupon formula is usually expressed as a reference rate adjusted for a spread. A floater has almost zero interest rate risk because changes in the cash flows

limit the effect of changes in interest rates on the floater's price. Thus, floaters give investors the opportunity to participate in movements of interest rates. For example, the Italian government issued in June 2005 floaters set to mature in June 2020. The coupon payments are delivered annually and determined by the formula of 85% of the 10-year constant maturity swap rate, a widely-used type of interest rate. Thus, investors who hold these floaters participate partially in movements of the 10-year constant maturity swap rate.

Most participation instruments are designed to give investors indirect exposure to a particular index or asset price. For example, investors who are precluded from investing in equity directly may get indirect equity exposure by investing in participation instruments that are linked via a formula to the performance of equity indexes. Many structured products sold to individuals are participation instruments linked to an equity index. In contrast to capital protected instruments that offer equity exposure, these participation instruments usually do not offer capital protection.

7.4 Leveraged Instruments

Leveraged instruments are structured financial instruments created to magnify returns and offer the possibility of high payoffs from small investments. An **inverse floater** is an example of a leveraged instrument. As the name suggests, an inverse floater is the opposite of a traditional floater. The cash flows are adjusted periodically and move in the opposite direction of changes in the reference rate. So when the reference rate decreases, the coupon payment of an inverse floater increases.

A general formula for an inverse floater's coupon rate is:

$$\text{Inverse floater coupon rate} = C - (L \times R)$$

where C is the maximum coupon rate reached if the reference rate is equal to zero, L is the coupon leverage, and R is the reference rate on the reset date. Note that the coupon leverage indicates the multiple that the coupon rate will change in response to a 100 basis points (bps) change in the reference rate. For example, if the coupon leverage is three, the inverse floater's coupon rate will decrease by 300 bps when the reference rate increases by 100 bps.

Inverse floaters with a coupon leverage greater than zero but lower than one are called deleveraged inverse floaters. Inverse floaters with a coupon leverage greater than one are called leveraged inverse floaters. For example, the Royal Bank of Scotland PLC issued a leveraged inverse floater set to mature in February 2020. The coupon payments are delivered quarterly and are determined by the formula of 8% minus the euro 3-month Libor. In this case, the coupon leverage is one. Thus, for a 100 bps increase in the euro 3-month Libor, the coupon rate of the leveraged inverse floater will decrease by 100 bps. Inverse floaters often have a floor that specifies a minimum coupon rate; for example, a floor may be set at zero to avoid the possibility of a negative interest rate.

EXAMPLE 7

Structured Financial Instruments

- 1 If an investor holds a credit-linked note and the credit event does not occur, the investor receives:
 - A all promised cash flows as scheduled.
 - B all coupon payments as scheduled but not the par value at maturity.

- C all coupon payments as scheduled and the par value minus the nominal value of the reference asset to which the credit-linked note is linked at maturity.
- 2 A structured financial instrument whose coupon rate is determined by the formula $5\% - (0.5 \times \text{Libor})$ is *most likely*:
- A a leveraged inverse floater.
- B a participation instrument.
- C a deleveraged inverse floater.

Solution to 1:

A is correct. If the credit event does not occur, the issuer must make all promised cash flows as scheduled—that is, the regular coupon payments and the par value at maturity.

Solution to 2:

C is correct. A structured financial instrument whose coupon rate moves in the opposite direction of the reference rate is called an inverse floater. Because the coupon leverage (0.5) is greater than zero but lower than one, the structured financial instrument is a deleveraged inverse floater. In this example, if the reference rate increases by 100 bps, the coupon rate decreases by 50 bps. A is incorrect because the coupon leverage would have to be higher than one for the structured financial instrument to be a leveraged inverse floater. B is incorrect because a participation instrument is designed to give investors indirect exposure to a particular underlying asset.

8

SHORT-TERM FUNDING ALTERNATIVES AVAILABLE TO BANKS

Funding refers to the amount of money or resources necessary to finance some specific project or enterprise. Accordingly, funding markets are markets in which debt issuers borrow to meet their financial needs. Companies have a range of funding alternatives, including bank loans, commercial paper, notes, and bonds. Financial institutions such as banks have larger financing needs than non-financial companies because of the nature of their operations. This section discusses the additional funding alternatives that are available to them. The majority of these funding alternatives have short maturities.

Banks, such as deposit-taking (or depository) institutions, typically have access to funds obtained from the retail market—that is, deposit accounts from their customers. However, it is quite common for banks to originate more loans than they have retail deposits. Thus, whenever the amount of retail deposits is insufficient to meet their financial needs, banks also need to raise funds from the wholesale market. Wholesale funds include central bank funds, interbank deposits, and certificates of deposit. In addition to filling the gaps between loans and deposits, banks raise wholesale funds to minimize their funding cost. At the margin, wholesale funds may be less expensive (in terms of interest expense) than deposit funding. Finally, financial institutions may raise wholesale funds as a balance sheet risk management tool to reduce interest rate risk, as discussed in Section 2.1.5.1.

8.1 Retail Deposits

One of the primary sources of funding for deposit-taking banks is their retail deposit base, which includes funds from both individual and commercial depositors. There are several types of retail deposit accounts. Demand deposits, also known as checking accounts, are available to customers “on demand.” Depositors have immediate access to the funds in their deposit accounts and use the funds as a form of payment for transactions. Because the funds are available immediately, deposit accounts typically pay no interest. In contrast, savings accounts pay interest and allow depositors to accumulate wealth in a very liquid form, but they do not offer the same transactional convenience as demand deposits. Money market accounts were originally designed to compete with money market mutual funds. They offer money market rates of return and depositors can access funds at short or no notice. Thus, money market accounts are, for depositors, an intermediate between demand deposit and savings accounts.

8.2 Short-Term Wholesale Funds

Wholesale funds available for banks include reserve funds, interbank funds, and certificates of deposit.

8.2.1 Reserve Funds

Many countries require deposit-taking banks to place a reserve balance with the national central bank. The reserve funds help to ensure sufficient liquidity should depositors require withdrawal of funds. When a bank cannot obtain short-term funding, most countries allow that bank to borrow from the central bank. In aggregate, the reserve funds act as a liquidity buffer providing comfort to depositors and investors that the central bank can act as lender of last resort.

Treatment of interest on reserve funds varies among countries, from a low interest payment, to no interest payment, to charges for keeping reserve funds. Additionally, there is an opportunity cost to the banks for holding reserves with the central bank in that these funds cannot be invested with higher interest or loaned out to consumers or commercial enterprises. Some banks have an excess over the minimum required funds to be held in reserve. At the same time, other banks run short of required reserves. This imbalance is solved through the **central bank funds market**, which allows banks that have a surplus of funds to loan money to banks that need funds for maturities of up to one year. These funds are known as central bank funds and are called “overnight funds” when the maturity is one day and “term funds” when the maturity ranges from two days to one year. The interest rates at which central bank funds are bought (i.e., borrowed) and sold (i.e., lent) are short-term interest rates determined by the markets but influenced by the central bank’s open market operations. These rates are termed the **central bank funds rates**.

In the United States, the central bank is the Federal Reserve (Fed). The central bank funds and funds rate are called Fed funds and Fed funds rates, respectively. Other short-term interest rates, such as the yields on Treasury bills, are highly correlated with the Fed funds rate. The most widely followed rate is known as the Fed funds effective rate, which is the volume-weighted average of rates for Fed fund trades arranged throughout the day by the major New York City brokers. Fed funds are traded between banks and other financial institutions globally and may be transacted directly or through money market brokers.

8.2.2 Interbank Funds

The interbank market is the market of loans and deposits between banks. The term to maturity of an interbank loan or deposit ranges from overnight to one year. The rate on an interbank loan or deposit can be quoted relative to a reference rate, such as an

interbank offered rate or as a fixed interest rate. An interbank deposit is unsecured, so banks placing deposits with another bank need to have an interbank line of credit in place for that institution. Usually, a large bank will make a two-way price, indicating the rate at which it will lend funds and the rate at which it will borrow funds for a specific maturity, on demand. Interest on the deposit is payable at maturity. Much interbank dealing takes place on the Reuters electronic dealing system, so that the transaction is done without either party speaking to the other.

Because the market is unsecured, it is essentially based on confidence in the banking system. At times of stress, such as in the aftermath of the Lehman Brothers' bankruptcy in 2008, the market is prone to "dry up" as banks withdraw from funding other banks.

8.2.3 Large-Denomination Negotiable Certificates of Deposit

A **certificate of deposit** (CD) is an instrument that represents a specified amount of funds on deposit for a specified maturity and interest rate. CDs are an important source of funds for financial institutions. A CD may take one of two forms: non-negotiable or negotiable. If the CD is non-negotiable, the deposit plus the interest are paid to the initial depositor at maturity. A withdrawal penalty is imposed if the depositor withdraws funds prior to the maturity date.

Alternatively, a negotiable CD allows any depositor (initial or subsequent) to sell the CD in the open market prior to the maturity date. Negotiable CDs were introduced in the United States in the early 1960s when various types of deposits were constrained by interest rate ceilings. At the time, bank deposits were not an attractive investment because investors earned a below-market interest rate unless they were prepared to commit their capital for an extended period of time. The introduction of negotiable CDs enabled bank customers to buy a three-month or longer negotiable instrument yielding a market interest rate and to recover their investment by selling it in the market. This innovation helped banks increase the amount of funds raised in the money markets. It also fostered competition among deposit-taking institutions.

There are two types of negotiable CDs: large-denomination CDs and small-denomination CDs. Thresholds between small- and large-denomination CDs vary among countries. For example, in the United States, large-denomination CDs are usually issued in denominations of \$1 million or more. Small-denomination CDs are a retail-oriented product, and they are of secondary importance as a funding alternative. Large-denomination CDs, in contrast, are an important source of wholesale funds and are typically traded among institutional investors.

Like other money market securities, CDs are available in domestic bond markets as well as in the Eurobond market. Most CDs have maturities shorter than one year and pay interest at maturity. CDs with longer maturities are called "term CDs."

Yields on CDs are driven primarily by the credit risk of the issuing bank and to a lesser extent by the term to maturity. The spread attributable to credit risk will vary with economic conditions and confidence in the banking system in general and in the issuing bank in particular. As with all debt instruments, spreads widen during times of financial turmoil as a result of an increase in risk aversion.

8.3 Repurchase and Reverse Repurchase Agreements

Repurchase agreements are another important source of funding not only for banks but also for other market participants. A **repurchase agreement** or **repo** is the sale of a security with a simultaneous agreement by the seller to buy the same security back from the purchaser at an agreed-on price and future date.⁶ In practical terms, a repurchase agreement can be viewed as a collateralized loan in which the security

⁶ Repurchase agreements can be structured such that the transaction is terminable on demand.

sold and subsequently repurchased represents the collateral posted. One party is borrowing money and providing collateral for the loan at an interest rate that is typically lower than on an otherwise similar bank loan. The other party is lending money while accepting a security as collateral for the loan.

Repurchase agreements are a common source of money market funding for dealer firms in many countries. An active market in repurchase agreements underpins every liquid bond market. Financial and non-financial companies participate actively in the market as both sellers and buyers of collateral depending on their circumstances. Central banks are also active users of repurchase agreements in their daily open market operations; they either lend to the market to increase the supply of funds or withdraw surplus funds from the market.

8.3.1 Structure of Repurchase and Reverse Repurchase Agreements

Suppose a government securities dealer purchases a 2.25% UK gilt that matures in three years. The dealer wants to fund the position overnight through the end of the next business day. The dealer could finance the transaction with its own funds, which is what other market participants, such as insurance companies or pension funds, may do in similar circumstances. But a securities dealer typically uses leverage (debt) to fund the position. Rather than borrowing from a bank, the dealer uses a repurchase agreement to obtain financing by using the gilt as collateral for the loan.

A repurchase agreement may be constructed as follows: The dealer sells the 2.25% UK gilt that matures in three years to a counterparty for cash today. At the same time, the dealer makes a promise to buy the same gilt the next business day for an agreed-on price. The price at which the dealer repurchases the gilt is known as the **repurchase price**. The date when the gilt is repurchased, the next business day in this example, is called the **repurchase date**. When the term of a repurchase agreement is one day, it is called an “overnight repo.” When the agreement is for more than one day, it is called a “term repo.” An agreement lasting until the final maturity date is known as a “repo to maturity.”

As in any borrowing or lending transaction, the interest rate of the loan must be negotiated in the agreement. The interest rate on a repurchase agreement is called the **repo rate**. Several factors affect the repo rate:

- The *risk* associated with the collateral. Repo rates are typically lower for highly rated collaterals, such as highly rated sovereign bonds. They increase with the level of credit risk associated with the collateral underlying the transaction.
- The *term* of the repurchase agreement. Repo rates generally increase with maturity because long-term rates are typically higher than short-term rates in normal circumstances.
- The *delivery requirement* for the collateral. Repo rates are usually lower when delivery to the lender is required.
- The *supply and demand conditions* of the collateral. The more scarce a specific piece of collateral, the lower the repo rate against it because the borrower has a security that lenders of cash want for specific reasons, perhaps because the underlying issue is in great demand. The demand for such collateral means that it is considered to be “on special.” Collateral that is not special is known as “general collateral.” The party that has a need for collateral that is on special is typically required to lend funds at a below-market repo rate to obtain the collateral.
- The *interest rates of alternative financing* in the money market.

The interest on a repurchase agreement is paid on the repurchase date—that is, at the termination of the agreement. Note that any coupon paid by the security during the repurchase agreement belongs to the seller of the security (i.e., the borrower of cash).

When a repurchase agreement is viewed through the lens of the cash lending counterparty, the transaction is referred to as a **reverse repurchase agreement** or **reverse repo**. In the above example, the counterparty agrees to buy the 2.25% UK gilt that matures in three years and promises to sell it back the next business day at the agreed-on price. The counterparty is making a collateralized loan to the dealer. Reverse repurchase agreements are very often used to borrow securities to cover short positions.

The question of whether a particular transaction is labeled a repurchase agreement or a reverse repurchase agreement depends on one's point of view. Standard practice is to view the transaction from the dealer's perspective. If the dealer is borrowing cash from a counterparty and providing securities as collateral, the transaction is termed a repurchase agreement. If the dealer is borrowing securities and lending cash to the counterparty, the transaction is termed a reverse repurchase agreement.

8.3.2 Credit Risk Associated with Repurchase Agreements

Each market participant in a repurchase agreement is exposed to the risk that the counterparty defaults, regardless of the collateral exchanged. Credit risk is present even if the collateral is a highly rated sovereign bond. Suppose that a dealer (i.e., the borrower of cash) defaults and is not in a position to repurchase the collateral on the specified repurchase date. The lender of funds takes possession of the collateral and retains any income owed to the borrower. The risk is that the price of the collateral has fallen following the inception of the repurchase agreement, causing the market value of the collateral to be lower than the unpaid repurchase price. Conversely, suppose the investor (i.e., the lender of cash) defaults and is unable to deliver the collateral on the repurchase date. The risk is that the price of the collateral has risen since the inception of the repurchase agreement, resulting in the dealer now holding an amount of cash lower than the market value of the collateral. In this case, the investor is liable for any excess of the price paid by the dealer for replacement of the securities over the repurchase price.

Although both parties to a repurchase agreement are subject to credit risk, the agreement is structured as if the lender of funds is the most vulnerable party. Specifically, the amount lent is lower than the collateral's market value. The difference between the market value of the security used as collateral and the value of the loan is known as the **repo margin**, although the term **haircut** is more commonly used, particularly in the United States. The repo margin allows for some worsening in market value, and thus provides the cash lender a margin of safety if the collateral's market value declines. Repo margins vary by transaction and are negotiated bilaterally between the counterparties. The level of margin is a function of the following factors:

- The *length* of the repurchase agreement. The longer the repurchase agreement, the higher the repo margin.
- The *quality* of the collateral. The higher the quality of the collateral, the lower the repo margin.
- The *credit quality* of the counterparty. The higher the creditworthiness of the counterparty, the lower the repo margin.
- The *supply and demand conditions* of the collateral. Repo margins are lower if the collateral is in short supply or if there is a high demand for it.

EXAMPLE 8

Short-Term Funding Alternatives Available to Banks

- 1 Which of the following are **not** considered wholesale funds?

- A Interbank funds
 - B Central bank funds
 - C Repurchase agreements
- 2 A large-denomination negotiable certificate of deposit *most likely*:
- A is traded in the open market.
 - B is purchased by retail investors.
 - C has a penalty for early withdrawal of funds.
- 3 From the dealer's viewpoint, a repurchase agreement is *best* described as a type of:
- A collateralized short-term lending.
 - B collateralized short-term borrowing.
 - C uncollateralized short-term borrowing.
- 4 The interest on a repurchase agreement is known as the:
- A repo rate.
 - B repo yield.
 - C repo margin.
- 5 The level of repo margin is higher:
- A the higher the quality of the collateral.
 - B the higher the credit quality of the counterparty.
 - C the longer the length of the repurchase agreement.

Solution to 1:

C is correct. Wholesale funds refer to the funds that financial institutions lend to and borrow from each other. They include central bank funds, interbank funds, and certificates of deposit. Although repurchase agreements are an important source of funding for banks, they are not considered wholesale funds.

Solution to 2:

A is correct. Large-denomination negotiable certificates of deposit (CDs) can be traded in the open market. B is incorrect because it is small-denomination, not large-denomination, negotiable CDs that are primarily purchased by retail investors. C is incorrect because it is non-negotiable, not negotiable, CDs that have a penalty for early withdrawal of funds.

Solution to 3:

B is correct. In a repurchase agreement, a security is sold with a simultaneous agreement by the seller to buy the same security back from the purchaser later at a higher price. Thus, a repurchase agreement is similar to a collateralized short-term borrowing in which the security sold and subsequently repurchased represents the collateral posted. A is incorrect because collateralized short-term lending is a description of a reverse repurchase agreement. C is incorrect because a repurchase agreement involves collateral. Thus, it is a collateralized, not uncollateralized, short-term borrowing.

Solution to 4:

A is correct. The repo rate is the interest rate on a repurchase agreement. B is incorrect because the interest on a repurchase agreement is known as the repo rate, not repo yield. C is incorrect because the repo margin refers to the difference between the market value of the security used as collateral and the value of the loan.

Solution to 5:

C is correct. The longer the length of the repurchase agreement, the higher the repo margin (haircut). A is incorrect because the higher the quality of the collateral, the lower the repo margin. B is incorrect because the higher the credit quality of the counterparty, the lower the repo margin.

SUMMARY

Debt financing is an important source of funds for governments, government-related entities, financial institutions, and non-financial companies. Well-functioning fixed-income markets help ensure that capital is allocated efficiently to its highest and best use globally. Important points include the following:

- The most widely used ways of classifying fixed-income markets include the type of issuer; the bonds' credit quality, maturity, currency denomination, and type of coupon; and where the bonds are issued and traded.
- Based on the type of issuer, the three major bond market sectors are the government and government-related sector, the corporate sector, and the structured finance sector. The major issuers of bonds globally are governments and financial institutions.
- Investors make a distinction between investment-grade and high-yield bond markets based on the issuer's credit quality.
- Money markets are where securities with original maturities ranging from overnight to one year are issued and traded, whereas capital markets are where securities with original maturities longer than one year are issued and traded.
- The majority of bonds are denominated in either euros or US dollars.
- Investors make a distinction between bonds that pay a fixed rate versus a floating rate of interest. The coupon rate of floating-rate bonds is often expressed as a reference rate plus a spread. Interbank offered rates, such as Libor, are the most commonly used reference rates for floating-rate debt and other financial instruments.
- Interbank offered rates are sets of rates that reflect the rates at which banks believe they could borrow unsecured funds from other banks in the interbank market for different currencies and different maturities.
- Based on where the bonds are issued and traded, a distinction is made between domestic and international bond markets. The latter includes the Eurobond market, which falls outside the jurisdiction of any single country and is characterized by less reporting, regulatory and tax constraints. Investors also make a distinction between developed and emerging bond markets.
- Fixed-income indexes are used by investors and investment managers to describe bond markets or sectors and to evaluate performance of investments and investment managers.
- The largest investors in bonds include central banks; institutional investors, such as pension funds, hedge funds, charitable foundations and endowments, insurance companies, mutual funds and ETFs, and banks; and retail investors, typically by means of indirect investments.

- Primary markets are markets in which issuers first sell bonds to investors to raise capital. Secondary markets are markets in which existing bonds are subsequently traded among investors.
- There are two mechanisms for issuing a bond in primary markets: a public offering, in which any member of the public may buy the bonds, or a private placement, in which only an investor or small group of investors may buy the bonds either directly from the issuer or through an investment bank.
- Public bond issuing mechanisms include underwritten offerings, best effort offerings, shelf registrations, and auctions.
- When an investment bank underwrites a bond issue, it buys the entire issue and takes the risk of reselling it to investors or dealers. In contrast, in a best efforts offering, the investment bank serves only as a broker and sells the bond issue only if it is able to do so. Underwritten and best effort offerings are frequently used in the issuance of corporate bonds.
- The underwriting process typically includes six phases: the determination of the funding needs, the selection of the underwriter, the structuring and announcement of the bond offering, pricing, issuance, and closing.
- A shelf registration is a method for issuing securities in which the issuer files a single document with regulators that describes and allows for a range of future issuances.
- An auction is a public offering method that involves bidding, and that is helpful in providing price discovery and in allocating securities. It is frequently used in the issuance of sovereign bonds.
- Most bonds are traded in over-the-counter (OTC) markets, and institutional investors are the major buyers and sellers of bonds in secondary markets.
- Sovereign bonds are issued by national governments primarily for fiscal reasons. They take different names and forms depending on where they are issued, their maturities, and their coupon types. Most sovereign bonds are fixed-rate bonds, although some national governments also issue floating-rate bonds and inflation-linked bonds.
- Local governments, quasi-government entities, and supranational agencies issue bonds, which are named non-sovereign, quasi-government, and supranational bonds, respectively.
- Companies raise debt in the form of bilateral loans, syndicated loans, commercial paper, notes, and bonds.
- Commercial paper is a short-term unsecured security that is used by companies as a source of short-term and bridge financing. Investors in commercial paper are exposed to credit risk, although defaults are rare. Many issuers roll over their commercial paper on a regular basis.
- Corporate bonds and notes take different forms depending on the maturities, coupon payment, and principal repayment structures. Important considerations also include collateral backing and contingency provisions.
- Medium-term notes are securities that are offered continuously to investors by an agent of the issuer. They can have short-term or long-term maturities.
- The structured finance sector includes asset-backed securities, collateralized debt obligations, and other structured financial instruments. All of these seemingly disparate financial instruments share the common attribute of repackaging risks.

- Many structured financial instruments are customized instruments that often combine a bond and at least one derivative. The redemption and often the coupons of these structured financial instruments are linked via a formula to the performance of the underlying asset(s). Thus, the bond's payment features are replaced with non-traditional payoffs that are derived not from the issuer's cash flows but from the performance of the underlying asset(s). Capital protected, yield enhancement, participation and leveraged instruments are typical examples of structured financial instruments.
- Financial institutions have access to additional sources of funds, such as retail deposits, central bank funds, interbank funds, large-denomination negotiable certificates of deposit, and repurchase agreements.
- A repurchase agreement is similar to a collateralized loan. It involves the sale of a security (the collateral) with a simultaneous agreement by the seller (the borrower) to buy the same security back from the purchaser (the lender) at an agreed-on price in the future. Repurchase agreements are a common source of funding for dealer firms and are also used to borrow securities to implement short positions.

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

- 1 In most countries, the bond market sector with the smallest amount of bonds outstanding is *most likely* the:
 - A government sector.
 - B financial corporate sector.
 - C non-financial corporate sector.
- 2 The distinction between investment grade debt and non-investment grade debt is *best* described by differences in:
 - A tax status.
 - B credit quality.
 - C maturity dates.
- 3 A bond issued internationally, outside the jurisdiction of the country in whose currency the bond is denominated, is *best* described as a:
 - A Eurobond.
 - B foreign bond.
 - C municipal bond.
- 4 When classified by type of issuer, asset-backed securities are part of the:
 - A corporate sector.
 - B structured finance sector.
 - C government and government-related sector.
- 5 Compared with developed markets bonds, emerging markets bonds *most likely*:
 - A offer lower yields.
 - B exhibit higher risk.
 - C benefit from lower growth prospects.
- 6 With respect to floating-rate bonds, a reference rate such as the London interbank offered rate (Libor) is *most likely* used to determine the bond's:
 - A spread.
 - B coupon rate.
 - C frequency of coupon payments.
- 7 The variability of the coupon rate on a Libor-based floating-rate bond is *most likely* due to:
 - A periodic resets of the reference rate.
 - B market-based reassessments of the issuer's creditworthiness.
 - C changing estimates by the Libor administrator of borrowing capacity.
- 8 Which of the following statements is *most accurate*? An interbank offered rate:
 - A is a single reference rate.
 - B applies to borrowing periods of up to 10 years.
 - C is used as a reference rate for interest rate swaps.
- 9 An investment bank that underwrites a bond issue *most likely*:
 - A buys and resells the newly issued bonds to investors or dealers.
 - B acts as a broker and receives a commission for selling the bonds to investors.

- C incurs less risk associated with selling the bonds than in a best efforts offering.
- 10 In major developed bond markets, newly issued sovereign bonds are *most* often sold to the public via a(n):
- A auction.
 - B private placement.
 - C best efforts offering.
- 11 Which of the following describes privately placed bonds?
- A They are non-underwritten and unregistered.
 - B They usually have active secondary markets.
 - C They are less customized than publicly offered bonds.
- 12 A mechanism by which an issuer may be able to offer additional bonds to the general public without preparing a new and separate offering circular *best* describes:
- A the grey market.
 - B a shelf registration.
 - C a private placement.
- 13 Which of the following statements related to secondary bond markets is *most accurate*?
- A Newly issued corporate bonds are issued in secondary bond markets.
 - B Secondary bond markets are where bonds are traded between investors.
 - C The major participants in secondary bond markets globally are retail investors.
- 14 A bond market in which a communications network matches buy and sell orders initiated from various locations is *best* described as an:
- A organized exchange.
 - B open market operation.
 - C over-the-counter market.
- 15 A liquid secondary bond market allows an investor to sell a bond at:
- A the desired price.
 - B a price at least equal to the purchase price.
 - C a price close to the bond's fair market value.
- 16 Corporate bond secondary market trading *most often* occurs:
- A on a book-entry basis.
 - B on organized exchanges.
 - C prior to settlement at $T + 1$.
- 17 Sovereign bonds are *best* described as:
- A bonds issued by local governments.
 - B secured obligations of a national government.
 - C bonds backed by the taxing authority of a national government.
- 18 Which factor is associated with a more favorable quality sovereign bond credit rating?
- A Issued in local currency, only
 - B Strong domestic savings base, only
 - C Issued in local currency of country with strong domestic savings base

- 19 Which type of sovereign bond has the lowest interest rate risk for an investor?
- A Floaters
 - B Coupon bonds
 - C Discount bonds
- 20 Agency bonds are issued by:
- A local governments.
 - B national governments.
 - C quasi-government entities.
- 21 The type of bond issued by a multilateral agency such as the International Monetary Fund (IMF) is *best* described as a:
- A sovereign bond.
 - B supranational bond.
 - C quasi-government bond.
- 22 A bond issued by a local government authority, typically without an explicit funding commitment from the national government, is *most likely* classified as a:
- A sovereign bond.
 - B quasi-government bond
 - C non-sovereign government bond.
- 23 Which of the following statements relating to commercial paper is *most accurate*?
- A There is no secondary market for trading commercial paper.
 - B Only the strongest, highly rated companies issue commercial paper.
 - C Commercial paper is a source of interim financing for long-term projects.
- 24 Eurocommercial paper is *most likely*:
- A negotiable.
 - B denominated in euro.
 - C issued on a discount basis.
- 25 For the issuer, a sinking fund arrangement is *most similar* to a:
- A term maturity structure.
 - B serial maturity structure.
 - C bondholder put provision.
- 26 When issuing debt, a company may use a sinking fund arrangement as a means of reducing:
- A credit risk.
 - B inflation risk.
 - C interest rate risk.
- 27 Which of the following is a source of wholesale funds for banks?
- A Demand deposits
 - B Money market accounts
 - C Negotiable certificates of deposit
- 28 A characteristic of negotiable certificates of deposit is:
- A they are mostly available in small denominations.
 - B they can be sold in the open market prior to maturity.
 - C a penalty is imposed if the depositor withdraws funds prior to maturity.

- 29 A repurchase agreement is *most* comparable to a(n):
- A interbank deposit.
 - B collateralized loan.
 - C negotiable certificate of deposit.
- 30 The repo margin is:
- A negotiated between counterparties.
 - B established independently of market-related conditions.
 - C structured on an agreement assuming equal credit risks to all counterparties.
- 31 The repo margin on a repurchase agreement is *most likely* to be lower when:
- A the underlying collateral is in short supply.
 - B the maturity of the repurchase agreement is long.
 - C the credit risk associated with the underlying collateral is high.

SOLUTIONS

- 1 C is correct. In most countries, the largest issuers of bonds are the national and local governments as well as financial institutions. Thus, the bond market sector with the smallest amount of bonds outstanding is the non-financial corporate sector.
- 2 B is correct. The distinction between investment grade and non-investment grade debt relates to differences in credit quality, not tax status or maturity dates. Debt markets are classified based on the issuer's creditworthiness as judged by the credit ratings agencies. Ratings of Baa3 or above by Moody's Investors Service or BBB- or above by Standard & Poor's and Fitch Ratings are considered investment grade, whereas ratings below these levels are referred to as non-investment grade (also called high yield, speculative, or junk).
- 3 A is correct. Eurobonds are issued internationally, outside the jurisdiction of any single country. B is incorrect because foreign bonds are considered international bonds, but they are issued in a specific country, in the currency of that country, by an issuer domiciled in another country. C is incorrect because municipal bonds are US domestic bonds issued by a state or local government.
- 4 B is correct. Asset-backed securities (ABS) are securitized debt instruments created by securitization, a process that involves transferring ownership of assets from the original owners to a special legal entity. The special legal entity then issues securities backed by the transferred assets. The assets' cash flows are used to pay interest and repay the principal owed to the holders of the securities. Assets that are typically used to create securitized debt instruments include loans (such as mortgage loans) and receivables (such as credit card receivables). The structured finance sector includes such securitized debt instruments (also called asset-backed securities).
- 5 B is correct. Many emerging countries lag developed countries in the areas of political stability, property rights, and contract enforcement. Consequently, emerging market bonds usually exhibit higher risk than developed markets bonds. A is incorrect because emerging markets bonds typically offer higher (not lower) yields than developed markets bonds to compensate investors for the higher risk. C is incorrect because emerging markets bonds usually benefit from higher (not lower) growth prospects than developed markets bonds.
- 6 B is correct. The coupon rate of a floating-rate bond is expressed as a reference rate plus a spread. Different reference rates are used depending on where the bond is issued and its currency denomination, but one of the most widely used set of reference rates is Libor. A and C are incorrect because a bond's spread and frequency of coupon payments are typically set when the bond is issued and do not change during the bond's life.
- 7 A is correct. Changes in the coupon rate of interest on a floating-rate bond that uses a Libor reference rate are due to changes in the reference rate (for example, 90-day Libor), which resets periodically. "Therefore, the coupon rate adjusts to the level of market interest rates (plus the spread) each time the reference rate is reset."
- 8 C is correct. Interbank offered rates are used as reference rates not only for floating-rate bonds, but also for other debt instruments including mortgages, derivatives such as interest rate and currency swaps, and many other financial contracts and products. A and B are incorrect because an interbank offered rate such as Libor or Euribor is a set of reference rates (not a single reference rate) for different borrowing periods of up to one year (not 10 years).

- 9 A is correct. In an underwritten offering (also called firm commitment offering), the investment bank (called the underwriter) guarantees the sale of the bond issue at an offering price that is negotiated with the issuer. Thus, the underwriter takes the risk of buying the newly issued bonds from the issuer, and then reselling them to investors or to dealers who then sell them to investors. B and C are incorrect because the bond issuing mechanism where an investment bank acts as a broker and receives a commission for selling the bonds to investors, and incurs less risk associated with selling the bonds, is a best efforts offering (not an underwritten offering).
- 10 A is correct. In major developed bond markets, newly issued sovereign bonds are sold to the public via an auction. B and C are incorrect because sovereign bonds are rarely issued via private placements or best effort offerings.
- 11 A is correct. Private placements are typically non-underwritten, unregistered bond offerings that are sold only to a single investor or a small group of investors.
- 12 B is correct. A shelf registration allows certain authorized issuers to offer additional bonds to the general public without having to prepare a new and separate offering circular. The issuer can offer multiple bond issuances under the same master prospectus, and only has to prepare a short document when additional bonds are issued. A is incorrect because the grey market is a forward market for bonds about to be issued. C is incorrect because a private placement is a non-underwritten, unregistered offering of bonds that are not sold to the general public but directly to an investor or a small group of investors.
- 13 B is correct. Secondary bond markets are where bonds are traded between investors. A is incorrect because newly issued bonds (whether from corporate issuers or other types of issuers) are issued in primary (not secondary) bond markets. C is incorrect because the major participants in secondary bond markets globally are large institutional investors and central banks (not retail investors).
- 14 C is correct. In over-the-counter (OTC) markets, buy and sell orders are initiated from various locations and then matched through a communications network. Most bonds are traded in OTC markets. A is incorrect because on organized exchanges, buy and sell orders may come from anywhere, but the transactions must take place at the exchange according to the rules imposed by the exchange. B is incorrect because open market operations refer to central bank activities in secondary bond markets. Central banks buy and sell bonds, usually sovereign bonds issued by the national government, as a means to implement monetary policy.
- 15 C is correct. Liquidity in secondary bond markets refers to the ability to buy or sell bonds quickly at prices close to their fair market value. A and B are incorrect because a liquid secondary bond market does not guarantee that a bond will sell at the price sought by the investor, or that the investor will not face a loss on his or her investment.
- 16 A is correct. The vast majority of corporate bonds are traded in over-the-counter (OTC) markets that use electronic trading platforms through which users submit buy and sell orders. Settlement of trades in the OTC markets occurs by means of a simultaneous exchange of bonds for cash on the books of the clearing system “on a paperless, computerized book-entry basis.”
- 17 C is correct. Sovereign bonds are usually unsecured obligations of the national government issuing the bonds; they are not backed by collateral, but by the taxing authority of the national government. A is incorrect because bonds issued

- by local governments are non-sovereign (not sovereign) bonds. B is incorrect because sovereign bonds are typically unsecured (not secured) obligations of a national government.
- 18** C is correct. Bonds issued in the sovereign's currency and a strong domestic savings base are both favorable sovereign rating factors. It is common to observe a higher credit rating for sovereign bonds issued in local currency because of the sovereign's ability to tax its citizens and print its own currency. Although there are practical limits to the sovereign's taxing and currency-printing capacities, each tends to support a sovereign's ability to repay debt. A strong domestic savings base is advantageous because it supports the sovereign's ability to issue debt in local currency to domestic investors.
- 19** A is correct. Floaters are bonds with a floating rate of interest that resets periodically based on changes in the level of a reference rate, such as Libor. Because changes in the reference rate reflect changes in market interest rates, price changes of floaters are far less pronounced than those of fixed-rate bonds, such as coupon bonds and discount bonds. Thus, investors holding floaters are less exposed to interest rate risk than investors holding fixed-rate discount or coupon bonds.
- 20** C is correct. Agency bonds are issued by quasi-government entities. These entities are agencies and organizations usually established by national governments to perform various functions for them. A and B are incorrect because local and national governments issue non-sovereign and sovereign bonds, respectively.
- 21** B is correct. The IMF is a multilateral agency that issues supranational bonds. A and C are incorrect because sovereign bonds and quasi-government bonds are issued by national governments and by entities that perform various functions for national governments, respectively.
- 22** C is correct. Bonds issued by levels of government below the national level—such as provinces, regions, states, cities, and local government authorities—are classified as non-sovereign government bonds. These bonds are typically not guaranteed by the national government.
- 23** C is correct. Companies use commercial paper not only as a source of funding working capital and seasonal demand for cash, but also as a source of interim financing for long-term projects until permanent financing can be arranged. A is incorrect because there is a secondary market for trading commercial paper, although trading is limited except for the largest issues. B is incorrect because commercial paper is issued by companies across the risk spectrum, although only the strongest, highly rated companies issue *low-cost* commercial paper.
- 24** A is correct. Commercial paper, whether US commercial paper or Eurocommercial paper, is negotiable—that is, investors can buy and sell commercial paper on secondary markets. B is incorrect because Eurocommercial paper can be denominated in any currency. C is incorrect because Eurocommercial paper may be issued on an interest-bearing (or yield) basis or a discount basis.
- 25** B is correct. With a serial maturity structure, a stated number of bonds mature and are paid off on a pre-determined schedule before final maturity. With a sinking fund arrangement, the issuer is required to set aside funds over time to retire the bond issue. Both result in a pre-determined portion of the issue being paid off according to a pre-determined schedule.
- 26** A is correct. A sinking fund arrangement is a way to reduce credit risk by making the issuer set aside funds over time to retire the bond issue. B and C are incorrect because a sinking fund arrangement has no effect on inflation risk or interest rate risk.

- 27 C is correct. Wholesale funds available for banks include central bank funds, interbank funds, and negotiable certificates of deposit. A and B are incorrect because demand deposits (also known as checking accounts) and money market accounts are retail deposits (not wholesale funds).
- 28 B is correct. A negotiable certificate of deposit (CD) allows any depositor (initial or subsequent) to sell the CD in the open market prior to maturity. A is incorrect because negotiable CDs are mostly available in large (not small) denominations. Large-denomination negotiable CDs are an important source of wholesale funds for banks, whereas small-denomination CDs are not. C is incorrect because a penalty is imposed if the depositor withdraws funds prior to maturity for non-negotiable (instead of negotiable) CDs.
- 29 B is correct. A repurchase agreement (repo) can be viewed as a collateralized loan where the security sold and subsequently repurchased represents the collateral posted. A and C are incorrect because interbank deposits and negotiable certificates of deposit are unsecured deposits—that is, there is no collateral backing the deposit.
- 30 A is correct. Repo margins vary by transaction and are negotiated bilaterally between the counterparties.
- 31 A is correct. The repo margin (the difference between the market value of the underlying collateral and the value of the loan) is a function of the supply and demand conditions of the collateral. The repo margin is typically lower if the underlying collateral is in short supply or if there is a high demand for it. B and C are incorrect because the repo margin is usually higher (not lower) when the maturity of the repurchase agreement is long and when the credit risk associated with the underlying collateral is high.

Introduction to Fixed-Income Valuation

by James F. Adams, PhD, CFA, and Donald J. Smith, PhD

James F. Adams, PhD, CFA, is at J.P. Morgan (USA). Donald J. Smith, PhD, is at Boston University Questrom School of Business (USA).

LEARNING OUTCOMES

<i>Mastery</i>	<i>The candidate should be able to:</i>
<input type="checkbox"/>	a. calculate a bond's price given a market discount rate;
<input type="checkbox"/>	b. identify the relationships among a bond's price, coupon rate, maturity, and market discount rate (yield-to-maturity);
<input type="checkbox"/>	c. define spot rates and calculate the price of a bond using spot rates;
<input type="checkbox"/>	d. describe and calculate the flat price, accrued interest, and the full price of a bond;
<input type="checkbox"/>	e. describe matrix pricing;
<input type="checkbox"/>	f. calculate and interpret yield measures for fixed-rate bonds, floating-rate notes, and money market instruments;
<input type="checkbox"/>	g. define and compare the spot curve, yield curve on coupon bonds, par curve, and forward curve;
<input type="checkbox"/>	h. define forward rates and calculate spot rates from forward rates, forward rates from spot rates, and the price of a bond using forward rates;
<input type="checkbox"/>	i. compare, calculate, and interpret yield spread measures.

INTRODUCTION

Globally, the fixed-income market is a key source of financing for businesses and governments. In fact, the total market value outstanding of corporate and government bonds is significantly larger than that of equity securities. Similarly, the fixed-income market, which is also called the debt market or bond market, represents a significant investing opportunity for institutions as well as individuals. Pension funds, mutual funds, insurance companies, and sovereign wealth funds, among others, are major fixed-income investors. Retirees who desire a relatively stable income stream often hold

fixed-income securities. Clearly, understanding how to value fixed-income securities is important to investors, issuers, and financial analysts. This reading focuses on the valuation of traditional (option-free) fixed-rate bonds, although other debt securities, such as floating-rate notes and money market instruments, are also covered.

Section 2 describes and illustrates basic bond valuation, which includes pricing a bond using a market discount rate for each of the future cash flows and pricing a bond using a series of spot rates. Valuation using spot rates allows for each future cash flow to be discounted at a rate associated with its timing. This valuation methodology for future cash flows has applications well beyond the fixed-income market. Relationships among a bond's price, coupon rate, maturity, and market discount rate (yield-to-maturity) are also described and illustrated.

Section 3 describes how bond prices and yields are quoted and calculated in practice. When bonds are actively traded, investors can observe the price and calculate various yield measures. However, these yield measures differ by the type of bond. In practice, different measures are used for fixed-rate bonds, floating-rate notes, and money market instruments. When a bond is not actively traded, matrix pricing is often used to estimate the value based on comparable securities.

Section 4 addresses the maturity or term structure of interest rates. This discussion involves an analysis of yield curves, which illustrates the relationship between yields-to-maturity and times-to-maturity on bonds with otherwise similar characteristics. Various types of yield curves are described.

Section 5 focuses on yield spreads over benchmark interest rates. When investors want relatively higher yields, they have to be prepared to bear more risk. Yield spreads are measures of how much additional yield over the benchmark security (usually a government bond) investors expect for bearing additional risk. A summary of key points and practice problems conclude the reading.

2

BOND PRICES AND THE TIME VALUE OF MONEY

Bond pricing is an application of discounted cash flow analysis. The complexity of the pricing depends on the particular bond's features and rate (or rates) used to do the discounting. This section starts with using a single discount factor for all future cash flows and concludes with the most general approach to bond valuation. The general approach to bond valuation is to use a series of spot rates that correspond to the timing of the future cash flows.

2.1 Bond Pricing with a Market Discount Rate

On a traditional (option-free) fixed-rate bond, the promised future cash flows are a series of coupon interest payments and repayment of the full principal at maturity. The coupon payments are on regularly scheduled dates, for example, an annual payment bond might pay interest on 15 June of each year for five years. The final coupon typically is paid together with the full principal on the maturity date. The price of the bond at issuance is the present value of the promised cash flows. The **market discount rate** is used in the time-value-of-money calculation to obtain the present value. The market discount rate is the rate of return required by investors given the risk of the investment in the bond. It is also called the **required yield**, or the **required rate of return**.

For example, suppose the coupon rate on a bond is 4% and the payment is made once a year. If the time-to-maturity is five years and the market discount rate is 6%, the price of the bond is 91.575 per 100 of **par value**. The par value is the amount of principal on the bond.

$$\frac{4}{(1.06)^1} + \frac{4}{(1.06)^2} + \frac{4}{(1.06)^3} + \frac{4}{(1.06)^4} + \frac{104}{(1.06)^5} =$$

$$3.774 + 3.560 + 3.358 + 3.168 + 77.715 = 91.575$$

The final cash flow of 104 is the redemption of principal (100) plus the coupon payment for that date (4). The price of the bond is the sum of the present values of the five cash flows. The price per 100 of par value may be interpreted as the percentage of par value. If the par value is USD100,000, the coupon payments are USD4,000 each year and the price of the bond is USD91,575. Its price is 91.575% of par value. This bond is described as trading at a **discount** because the price is below par value.

Suppose that another five-year bond has a coupon rate of 8% paid annually. If the market discount rate is again 6%, the price of the bond is 108.425.

$$\frac{8}{(1.06)^1} + \frac{8}{(1.06)^2} + \frac{8}{(1.06)^3} + \frac{8}{(1.06)^4} + \frac{108}{(1.06)^5} =$$

$$7.547 + 7.120 + 6.717 + 6.337 + 80.704 = 108.425$$

This bond is trading at a **premium** because its price is above par value.

If another five-year bond pays a 6% annual coupon and the market discount rate still is 6%, the bond would trade at par value.

$$\frac{6}{(1.06)^1} + \frac{6}{(1.06)^2} + \frac{6}{(1.06)^3} + \frac{6}{(1.06)^4} + \frac{106}{(1.06)^5} =$$

$$5.660 + 5.340 + 5.038 + 4.753 + 79.209 = 100.000$$

The coupon rate indicates the amount the issuer promises to pay the bondholders each year in interest. The market discount rate reflects the amount investors need to receive in interest each year in order to pay full par value for the bond. Therefore, assuming that these three bonds have the same risk, which is consistent with them having the same market discount rate, the 4% bond offers a “deficient” coupon rate. The amount of the discount below par value is the present value of the deficiency, which is 2% of par value each year. The present value of the deficiency, discounted using the market discount rate, is -8.425.

$$\frac{-2}{(1.06)^1} + \frac{-2}{(1.06)^2} + \frac{-2}{(1.06)^3} + \frac{-2}{(1.06)^4} + \frac{-2}{(1.06)^5} = -8.425$$

The price of the 4% coupon bond is 91.575 (= 100 - 8.425). In the same manner, the 8% bond offers an “excessive” coupon rate given the risk because investors require only 6%. The amount of the premium is the present value of the excess cash flows, which is +8.425. The price of the 8% bond is 108.425 (= 100 + 8.425).

These examples demonstrate that the price of a fixed-rate bond, relative to par value, depends on the relationship of the coupon rate to the market discount rate. Here is a summary of the relationships:

- When the coupon rate is less than the market discount rate, the bond is priced at a discount below par value.
- When the coupon rate is greater than the market discount rate, the bond is priced at a premium above par value.
- When the coupon rate is equal to the market discount rate, the bond is priced at par value.

At this point, it is assumed that the bond is priced on a coupon payment date. If the bond is between coupon payment dates, the price paid will include accrued interest, which is interest that has been earned but not yet paid. Accrued interest is discussed in detail in Section 3.1.

Equation 1 is a general formula for calculating a bond price given the market discount rate:

$$PV = \frac{PMT}{(1+r)^1} + \frac{PMT}{(1+r)^2} + \dots + \frac{PMT + FV}{(1+r)^N} \quad (1)$$

where

PV = present value, or the price of the bond

PMT = coupon payment per period

FV = future value paid at maturity, or the par value of the bond

r = market discount rate, or required rate of return per period

N = number of evenly spaced periods to maturity

The examples so far have been for an annual payment bond, which is the convention for most European bonds. Asian and North American bonds generally make semiannual payments, and the stated rate is the annual coupon rate. Suppose the coupon rate on a bond is stated to be 8% and the payments are made twice a year (semiannually) on 15 June and 15 December. For each 100 in par value ($FV = 100$), the coupon payment per period is 4 ($PMT = 4$). If there are three years to maturity, there are six evenly spaced semiannual periods ($N = 6$). If the market discount rate is 3% per semiannual period ($r = 0.03$), the price of the bond is 105.417 per 100 of par value.

$$\frac{4}{(1.03)^1} + \frac{4}{(1.03)^2} + \frac{4}{(1.03)^3} + \frac{4}{(1.03)^4} + \frac{4}{(1.03)^5} + \frac{104}{(1.03)^6} = 105.417$$

If the actual par value of the bond investment is in Singapore dollars—for instance, SGD 100,000—the price is SGD 105,417. This bond is trading at a premium above par value because the coupon rate of 4% *per period* is greater than the market discount rate of 3% *per period*. Usually, those interest rates are annualized by multiplying the rate per period by the number of periods in a year. Therefore, an equivalent statement is that the bond is priced at a premium because its stated *annual* coupon rate of 8% is greater than the stated *annual* market discount rate of 6%. Interest rates, unless stated otherwise, are typically quoted as annual rates.

EXAMPLE 1

Bonds Trading at a Discount, at a Premium, and at Par

Identify whether each of the following bonds is trading at a discount, at par value, or at a premium. Calculate the prices of the bonds per 100 in par value using Equation 1. If the coupon rate is deficient or excessive compared with the market discount rate, calculate the amount of the deficiency or excess per 100 of par value.

Bond	Coupon Payment per Period	Number of Periods to Maturity	Market Discount Rate per Period
A	2	6	3%
B	6	4	4%

Bond	Coupon Payment per Period	Number of Periods to Maturity	Market Discount Rate per Period
C	5	5	5%
D	0	10	2%

Solutions:**Bond A**

$$\frac{2}{(1.03)^1} + \frac{2}{(1.03)^2} + \frac{2}{(1.03)^3} + \frac{2}{(1.03)^4} + \frac{2}{(1.03)^5} + \frac{102}{(1.03)^6} = 94.583$$

Bond A is trading at a discount. Its price is below par value because the coupon rate per period (2%) is less than the required yield per period (3%). The deficiency per period is the coupon rate minus the market discount rate, times the par value: $(0.02 - 0.03) \times 100 = -1$. The present value of deficiency is -5.417 , discounted using the required yield (market discount rate) per period.

$$\frac{-1}{(1.03)^1} + \frac{-1}{(1.03)^2} + \frac{-1}{(1.03)^3} + \frac{-1}{(1.03)^4} + \frac{-1}{(1.03)^5} + \frac{-1}{(1.03)^6} = -5.417$$

The amount of the deficiency can be used to calculate the price of the bond; the price is $94.583 (= 100 - 5.417)$.

Bond B

$$\frac{6}{(1.04)^1} + \frac{6}{(1.04)^2} + \frac{6}{(1.04)^3} + \frac{106}{(1.04)^4} = 107.260$$

Bond B is trading at a premium because the coupon rate per period (6%) is greater than the market discount rate per period (4%). The excess per period is the coupon rate minus market discount rate, times the par value: $(0.06 - 0.04) \times 100 = +2$. The present value of excess is $+7.260$, discounted using the required yield per period.

$$\frac{2}{(1.04)^1} + \frac{2}{(1.04)^2} + \frac{2}{(1.04)^3} + \frac{2}{(1.04)^4} = 7.260$$

The price of the bond is $107.260 (= 100 + 7.260)$.

Bond C

$$\frac{5}{(1.05)^1} + \frac{5}{(1.05)^2} + \frac{5}{(1.05)^3} + \frac{5}{(1.05)^4} + \frac{105}{(1.05)^5} = 100.000$$

Bond C is trading at par value because the coupon rate is equal to the market discount rate. The coupon payments are neither excessive nor deficient given the risk of the bond.

Bond D

$$\frac{100}{(1.02)^{10}} = 82.035$$

Bond D is a zero-coupon bond, which always will trade at a discount below par value (as long as the required yield is greater than zero). The deficiency in the coupon payments is -2 per period: $(0 - 0.02) \times 100 = -2$.

$$\frac{-2}{(1.02)^1} + \frac{-2}{(1.02)^2} + \frac{-2}{(1.02)^3} + \frac{-2}{(1.02)^4} + \frac{-2}{(1.02)^5} + \frac{-2}{(1.02)^6} + \frac{-2}{(1.02)^7} + \frac{-2}{(1.02)^8} + \frac{-2}{(1.02)^9} + \frac{-2}{(1.02)^{10}} = -17.965$$

The price of the bond is 82.035 ($= 100 - 17.965$).

2.2 Yield-to-Maturity

If the market price of a bond is known, Equation 1 can be used to calculate its **yield to maturity** (sometimes called the redemption yield or yield-to-redemption). The yield-to-maturity is the internal rate of return on the cash flows—the uniform interest rate such that when the future cash flows are discounted at that rate, the sum of the present values equals the price of the bond. It is the *implied* market discount rate.

The yield-to-maturity is the rate of return on the bond to an investor given three critical assumptions:

- 1 The investor holds the bond to maturity.
- 2 The issuer makes all of the coupon and principal payments in the full amount on the scheduled dates. Therefore, the yield-to-maturity is the *promised* yield—the yield assuming the issuer does not default on any of the payments.
- 3 The investor is able to reinvest coupon payments at that same yield. This is a characteristic of an internal rate of return.

For example, suppose that a four-year, 5% annual coupon payment bond is priced at 105 per 100 of par value. The yield-to-maturity is the solution for the rate, r , in this equation:

$$105 = \frac{5}{(1+r)^1} + \frac{5}{(1+r)^2} + \frac{5}{(1+r)^3} + \frac{105}{(1+r)^4}$$

Solving by trial-and-error search, or using the time-value-of-money keys on a financial calculator, obtains the result that $r = 0.03634$. The bond trades at a premium because its coupon rate (5%) is greater than the yield that is required by investors (3.634%).

Yields-to-maturity do not depend on the actual amount of par value in a fixed-income portfolio. For example, suppose a Japanese institutional investor owns a three-year, 2.5% semiannual payment bond having a par value of JPY100 million. The bond currently is priced at JPY98,175,677. The yield per semiannual period can be obtained by solving this equation for r :

$$98.175677 = \frac{1.25}{(1+r)^1} + \frac{1.25}{(1+r)^2} + \frac{1.25}{(1+r)^3} + \frac{1.25}{(1+r)^4} + \frac{1.25}{(1+r)^5} + \frac{101.25}{(1+r)^6}$$

The yield per semiannual period turns out to be 1.571% ($r = 0.01571$), which can be annualized to be 3.142% ($0.01571 \times 2 = 0.03142$). In general, a three-year, 2.5% semiannual bond for *any* amount of par value has an annualized yield-to-maturity of 3.142% if it is priced at 98.175677% of par value.

EXAMPLE 2**Yields-to-Maturity for a Premium, Discount, and Zero-Coupon Bond**

Calculate the yields-to-maturity for the following bonds. The prices are stated per 100 of par value.

Bond	Coupon Payment per Period	Number of Periods to Maturity	Price
A	3.5	4	103.75
B	2.25	6	96.50
C	0	60	22.375

Solutions:**Bond A**

$$103.75 = \frac{3.5}{(1+r)^1} + \frac{3.5}{(1+r)^2} + \frac{3.5}{(1+r)^3} + \frac{103.5}{(1+r)^4}, \quad r = 0.02503$$

Bond A is trading at a premium, so its yield-to-maturity per period (2.503%) must be lower than its coupon rate per period (3.5%).

Bond B

$$96.50 = \frac{2.25}{(1+r)^1} + \frac{2.25}{(1+r)^2} + \frac{2.25}{(1+r)^3} + \frac{2.25}{(1+r)^4} + \frac{2.25}{(1+r)^5} + \frac{102.25}{(1+r)^6}, \quad r = 0.02894$$

Bond B is trading at a discount, so the yield-to-maturity per period (2.894%) must be higher than the coupon rate per period (2.25%).

Bond C

$$22.375 = \frac{100}{(1+r)^{60}}, \quad r = 0.02527$$

Bond C is a zero-coupon bond trading at a significant discount below par value. Its yield-to-maturity is 2.527% per period.

2.3 Relationships between the Bond Price and Bond Characteristics

The price of a fixed-rate bond will change whenever the market discount rate changes. Four relationships about the change in the bond price given the market discount rate are

- 1 The bond price is inversely related to the market discount rate. When the market discount rate increases, the bond price decreases (the inverse effect).
- 2 For the same coupon rate and time-to-maturity, the percentage price change is greater (in absolute value, meaning without regard to the sign of the change) when the market discount rate goes down than when it goes up (the convexity effect).

- 3 For the same time-to-maturity, a lower-coupon bond has a greater percentage price change than a higher-coupon bond when their market discount rates change by the same amount (the coupon effect).
- 4 Generally, for the same coupon rate, a longer-term bond has a greater percentage price change than a shorter-term bond when their market discount rates change by the same amount (the maturity effect).

Exhibit 1 illustrates these relationships using nine annual coupon payment bonds. The bonds have different coupon rates and times-to-maturity but otherwise are the same in terms of risk. The coupon rates are 10%, 20%, and 30% for bonds having 10, 20, and 30 years to maturity. At first, the bonds are all priced at a market discount rate of 20%. Equation 1 is used to determine the prices. Then the market discount rate is decreased by 1 percentage point, from 20% to 19%, and next, it is increased from 20% to 21%.

Exhibit 1 Relationships between Bond Prices and Bond Characteristics

Bond	Coupon Rate	Maturity	Price at 20%	Discount Rates Go Down		Discount Rates Go Up	
				Price at 19%	% Change	Price at 21%	% Change
A	10.00%	10	58.075	60.950	4.95%	55.405	-4.60%
B	20.00%	10	100.000	104.339	4.34%	95.946	-4.05%
C	30.00%	10	141.925	147.728	4.09%	136.487	-3.83%
D	10.00%	20	51.304	54.092	5.43%	48.776	-4.93%
E	20.00%	20	100.000	105.101	5.10%	95.343	-4.66%
F	30.00%	20	148.696	156.109	4.99%	141.910	-4.56%
G	10.00%	30	50.211	52.888	5.33%	47.791	-4.82%
H	20.00%	30	100.000	105.235	5.23%	95.254	-4.75%
I	30.00%	30	149.789	157.581	5.20%	142.716	-4.72%

The first relationship is that the bond price and the market discount rate move inversely. All bond prices in Exhibit 1 go up when the rates go down from 20% to 19%, and all prices go down when the rates go up from 20% to 21%. This happens because of the fixed cash flows on a fixed-rate bond. The numerators in Equation 1 do not change when the market discount rate in the denominators rises or falls. Therefore, the price (PV) moves inversely with the market discount rate (r).

The second relationship reflects the convexity effect. In Exhibit 1, the percentage price changes are calculated using this equation:

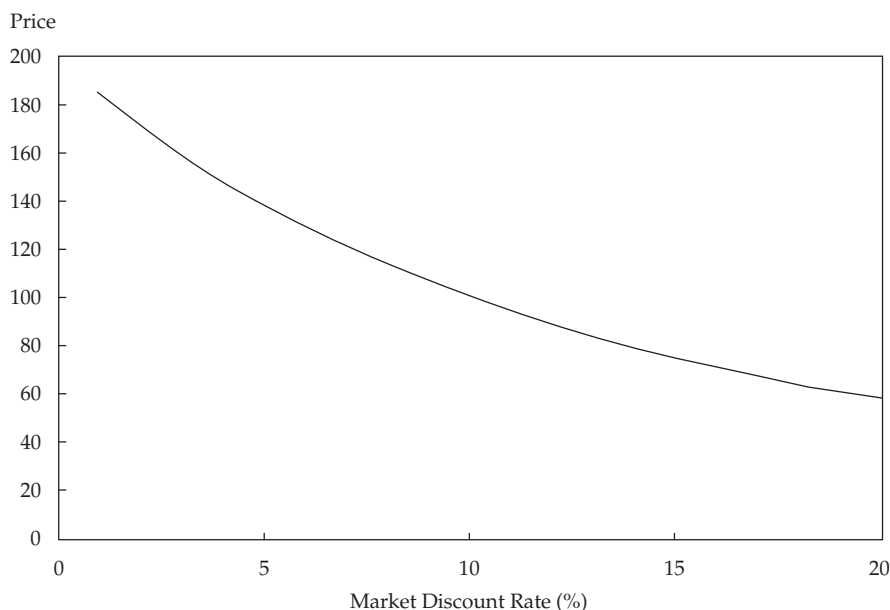
$$\% \text{ Change} = \frac{\text{New price} - \text{Old price}}{\text{Old price}}$$

For example, when the market discount rate falls on Bond A, the price rises from 58.075 to 60.950. The percentage price increase is 4.95%.

$$\% \text{ Change} = \frac{60.950 - 58.075}{58.075} = 0.0495$$

For each bond, the percentage price increases are greater in *absolute value* than the percentage price decreases. This implies that the relationship between bond prices and the market discount rate is not linear; instead, it is curved. It is described as being “convex.” The convexity effect is shown in Exhibit 2 for a 10%, 10-year bond.

Exhibit 2 The Convex Relationship between the Market Discount Rate and the Price of a 10-Year, 10% Annual Coupon Payment Bond



The third relationship is the coupon effect. Consider Bonds A, B, and C, which have 10 years to maturity. For both the decrease and increase in the yield-to-maturity, Bond A has a larger percentage price change than Bond B, and Bond B has a larger change than C. The same pattern holds for the 20-year and 30-year bonds. Therefore, lower-coupon bonds have more price volatility than higher-coupon bonds, other things being equal.

The fourth relationship is the maturity effect. Compare the results for Bonds A and D, for Bonds B and E, and for Bonds C and F. The 20-year bonds have greater percentage price changes than the 10-year bonds for either an increase or a decrease in the market discount rate. In general, longer-term bonds have more price volatility than shorter-term bonds, other things being equal.

There are exceptions to the maturity effect. That is why the word “generally” appears in the statement of the relationship at the beginning of this section. Compare the results in Exhibit 1 for Bonds D and G, for Bonds E and H, and for Bonds F and I. For the higher-coupon bonds trading at a premium, Bonds F and I, the usual property holds—the 30-year bonds have greater percentage price changes than the 20-year bonds. The same pattern holds for Bonds E and H, which are priced initially at par value. The exception is illustrated in the results for Bonds D and G, which are priced at a discount because the coupon rate is lower than the market discount rate. The 20-year, 10% bond has a greater percentage price change than the 30-year, 10% bond. Exceptions to the maturity effect are rare in practice. They occur only for low-coupon (but not zero-coupon), long-term bonds trading at a discount. The maturity effect always holds on zero-coupon bonds, as it does for bonds priced at par value or at a premium above par value.

One final point to note in Exhibit 1 is that Bonds B, E, and H, which have coupon rates of 20%, all trade at par value when the market discount rate is 20%. A bond having a coupon rate equal to the market discount rate is priced at par value on a coupon payment date, regardless of the number of years to maturity.

EXAMPLE 3

Bond Percentage Price Changes Based on Coupon and Time-to-Maturity

An investor is considering the following six annual coupon payment government bonds:

Bond	Coupon Rate	Time-to-Maturity	Yield-to-Maturity
A	0%	2 years	5.00%
B	5%	2 years	5.00%
C	8%	2 years	5.00%
D	0%	4 years	5.00%
E	5%	4 years	5.00%
F	8%	4 years	5.00%

- 1 Based on the relationships between bond prices and bond characteristics, which bond will go up in price the *most* on a percentage basis if all yields go down from 5.00% to 4.90%?
- 2 Based on the relationships between the bond prices and bond characteristics, which bond will go down in price the *least* on a percentage basis if all yields go up from 5.00% to 5.10%?

Solution to 1:

Bond D will go up in price the most on a percentage basis because it has the lowest coupon rate (the coupon effect) and the longer time-to-maturity (the maturity effect). There is no exception to the maturity effect in these bonds because there are no low-coupon bonds trading at a discount.

Solution to 2:

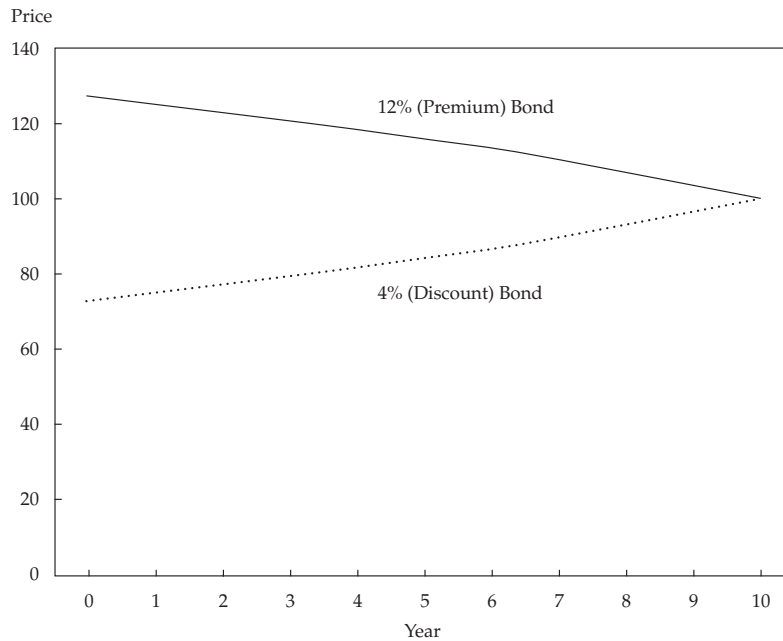
Bond C will go down in price the least on a percentage basis because it has the highest coupon rate (the coupon effect) and the shorter time-to-maturity (the maturity effect). There is no exception to the maturity effect because Bonds C and F are priced at a premium above par value.

Exhibit 2 demonstrates the impact on a bond price assuming the time-to-maturity does not change. It shows an *instantaneous* change in the market discount rate from one moment to the next.

But bond prices change as time passes even if the market discount rate remains the same. As time passes, the bondholder comes closer to receiving the par value at maturity. The **constant-yield price trajectory** illustrates the change in the price of a fixed-income bond over time. This trajectory shows the “pull to par” effect on the price of a bond trading at a premium or a discount to par value. If the issuer does not default, the price of a bond approaches par value as its time-to-maturity approaches zero.

Exhibit 3 shows the constant-yield price trajectories for 4% and 12% annual coupon payment, 10-year bonds. Both bonds have a market discount rate of 8%. The 4% bond's initial price is 73.160 per 100 of par value. The price increases each year and approaches par value as the maturity date nears. The 12% bond's initial price is 126.840, and it decreases each year, approaching par value as the maturity date nears. Both prices are "pulled to par."

Exhibit 3 Constant-Yield Price Trajectories for 4% and 12% Annual Coupon Payment, 10-Year Bonds at a Market Discount Rate of 8%



Discount Bond	73.160	75.012	77.013	79.175	81.508	84.029	86.751	89.692	92.867	96.296	100.00
Premium Bond	126.84	124.98	122.98	120.82	118.49	115.97	113.24	110.30	107.13	103.70	100.00

2.4 Pricing Bonds with Spot Rates

When a fixed-rate bond is priced using the market discount rate, the same discount rate is used for each cash flow. A more fundamental approach to calculate the price of a bond is to use a sequence of market discount rates that correspond to the cash flow dates. These market discount rates are called **spot rates**. Spot rates are yields-to-maturity on zero-coupon bonds maturing at the date of each cash flow. Sometimes these are called "zero rates." Bond price (or value) determined using the spot rates is sometimes referred to as the bond's "no-arbitrage value." If a bond's price differs from its no-arbitrage value, an arbitrage opportunity exists in the absence of transaction costs.

Suppose that the one-year spot rate is 2%, the two-year spot rate is 3%, and the three-year spot rate is 4%. Then, the price of a three-year bond that makes a 5% annual coupon payment is 102.960.

$$\frac{5}{(1.02)^1} + \frac{5}{(1.03)^2} + \frac{105}{(1.04)^3} = 4.902 + 4.713 + 93.345 = 102.960$$

This three-year bond is priced at a premium above par value, so its yield-to-maturity must be less than 5%. Using Equation 1, the yield-to-maturity is 3.935%.

$$102.960 = \frac{5}{(1+r)^1} + \frac{5}{(1+r)^2} + \frac{105}{(1+r)^3}, \quad r = 0.03935$$

When the coupon and principal cash flows are discounted using the yield-to-maturity, the same price is obtained.

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{5}{(1.03935)^1} + \frac{5}{(1.03935)^2} + \frac{105}{(1.03935)^3} = \\ 4.811 + 4.629 + 93.520 = 102.960 \end{aligned}$$

Notice that the present values of the individual cash flows discounted using spot rates differ from those using the yield-to-maturity. The present value of the first coupon payment is 4.902 when discounted at 2%, but it is 4.811 when discounted at 3.935%. The present value of the final cash flow, which includes the redemption of principal, is 93.345 at 4% and 93.520 at 3.935%. Nevertheless, the sum of the present values using either approach is 102.960.

Equation 2 is a general formula for calculating a bond price given the sequence of spot rates:

$$PV = \frac{PMT}{(1+Z_1)^1} + \frac{PMT}{(1+Z_2)^2} + \dots + \frac{PMT + FV}{(1+Z_N)^N} \quad (2)$$

where

Z_1 = spot rate, or the zero-coupon yield, or zero rate, for Period 1

Z_2 = spot rate, or the zero-coupon yield, or zero rate, for Period 2

Z_N = spot rate, or the zero-coupon yield, or zero rate, for Period N

EXAMPLE 4

Bond Prices and Yields-to-Maturity Based on Spot Rates

Calculate the price (per 100 of par value) and the yield-to-maturity for a four-year, 3% annual coupon payment bond given the following two sequences of spot rates.

Time-to-Maturity	Spot Rates A	Spot Rates B
1 year	0.39%	4.08%
2 years	1.40%	4.01%
3 years	2.50%	3.70%
4 years	3.60%	3.50%

Solution:

Spot Rates A

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{3}{(1.0039)^1} + \frac{3}{(1.0140)^2} + \frac{3}{(1.0250)^3} + \frac{103}{(1.0360)^4} = \\ 2.988 + 2.918 + 2.786 + 89.412 = 98.104 \end{aligned}$$

Given spot rates A, the four-year, 3% bond is priced at 98.104.

$$98.104 = \frac{3}{(1+r)^1} + \frac{3}{(1+r)^2} + \frac{3}{(1+r)^3} + \frac{103}{(1+r)^4}, \quad r = 0.03516$$

The yield-to-maturity is 3.516%.

Spot Rates B

$$\frac{3}{(1.0408)^1} + \frac{3}{(1.0401)^2} + \frac{3}{(1.0370)^3} + \frac{103}{(1.0350)^4} = 2.882 + 2.773 + 2.690 + 89.759 = 98.104$$

$$98.104 = \frac{3}{(1+r)^1} + \frac{3}{(1+r)^2} + \frac{3}{(1+r)^3} + \frac{103}{(1+r)^4}, \quad r = 0.03516$$

Given spot rates B, the four-year, 3% bond is again priced at 98.104 to yield 3.516%.

This example demonstrates that two very different sequences of spot rates can result in the same bond price and yield-to-maturity. Spot rates A are increasing for longer maturities, whereas spot rates B are decreasing.

PRICES AND YIELDS: CONVENTIONS FOR QUOTES AND CALCULATIONS

3

When investors purchase shares, they pay the quoted price. For bonds, however, there can be a difference between the quoted price and the price paid. This section explains why this difference occurs and how to calculate the quoted price and the price that will be paid. It also describes how prices are estimated for bonds that are not actively traded, and demonstrates how yield measures are calculated for fixed-rate bonds, floating-rate notes, and money market instruments.

3.1 Flat Price, Accrued Interest, and the Full Price

When a bond is between coupon payment dates, its price has two parts: the **flat price** (PV^{Flat}) and the **accrued interest** (AI). The sum of the parts is the **full price** (PV^{Full}), which also is called the invoice or “dirty” price. The flat price, which is the full price minus the accrued interest, is also called the quoted or “clean” price.

$$PV^{Full} = PV^{Flat} + AI \quad (3)$$

The flat price usually is quoted by bond dealers. If a trade takes place, the accrued interest is added to the flat price to obtain the full price paid by the buyer and received by the seller on the **settlement date**. The settlement date is when the bond buyer makes cash payment and the seller delivers the security.

The reason for using the flat price for quotation is to avoid misleading investors about the market price trend for the bond. If the full price were to be quoted by dealers, investors would see the price rise day after day even if the yield-to-maturity did not change. That is because the amount of accrued interest increases each day. Then, after the coupon payment is made, the quoted price would drop dramatically. Using the flat price for quotation avoids that misrepresentation. It is the flat price that is “pulled to par” along the constant-yield price trajectory shown in Exhibit 3.

Accrued interest is the proportional share of the next coupon payment. Assume that the coupon period has “ T ” days between payment dates and that “ t ” days have gone by since the last payment. The accrued interest is calculated using Equation 4:

$$AI = \frac{t}{T} \times PMT \quad (4)$$

where

- t = number of days from the last coupon payment to the settlement date
- T = number of days in the coupon period
- t/T = fraction of the coupon period that has gone by since the last payment
- PMT = coupon payment per period

Notice that the accrued interest part of the full price does not depend on the yield-to-maturity. Therefore, it is the flat price that is affected by a market discount rate change.

There are different conventions used in bond markets to count days. The two most common day-count conventions are actual/actual and 30/360. For the actual/actual method, the actual number of days is used, including weekends, holidays, and leap days. For example, a semiannual payment bond pays interest on 15 May and 15 November of each year. The accrued interest for settlement on 27 June would be the actual number of days between 15 May and 27 June ($t = 43$ days) divided by the actual number of days between 15 May and 15 November ($T = 184$ days), times the coupon payment. If the stated coupon rate is 4.375%, the accrued interest is 0.511209 per 100 of par value.

$$AI = \frac{43}{184} \times \frac{4.375}{2} = 0.511209$$

Day-count conventions vary from market to market. However, actual/actual is most common for government bonds.

The 30/360 day-count convention often is used on corporate bonds. It *assumes* that each month has 30 days and that a full year has 360 days. Therefore, for this method, there are assumed to be 42 days between 15 May and 27 June: 15 days between 15 May and 30 May and 27 days between 1 June and 27 June. There are assumed to be 180 days in the six-month period between 15 May and 15 November. The accrued interest on a 4.375% semiannual payment corporate bond is 0.510417 per 100 of par value.

$$AI = \frac{42}{180} \times \frac{4.375}{2} = 0.510417$$

The full price of a fixed-rate bond between coupon payments given the market discount rate per period (r) can be calculated with Equation 5:

$$PV^{Full} = \frac{PMT}{(1+r)^{1-t/T}} + \frac{PMT}{(1+r)^{2-t/T}} + \dots + \frac{PMT + FV}{(1+r)^{N-t/T}} \quad (5)$$

This is very similar to Equation 1. The difference is that the next coupon payment (PMT) is discounted for the remainder of the coupon period, which is $1 - t/T$. The second coupon payment is discounted for that fraction plus another full period, $2 - t/T$.

Equation 5 is simplified by multiplying the numerator and denominator by the expression $(1+r)^{t/T}$. The result is Equation 6:

$$\begin{aligned} PV^{Full} &= \left[\frac{PMT}{(1+r)^1} + \frac{PMT}{(1+r)^2} + \dots + \frac{PMT + FV}{(1+r)^N} \right] \times (1+r)^{t/T} \\ &= PV \times (1+r)^{t/T} \end{aligned} \quad (6)$$

An advantage to Equation 6 is that PV , the expression in the brackets, is easily obtained using the time-value-of-money keys on a financial calculator because there are N evenly spaced periods. PV here is identical to Equation 1 and is not the same as PV^{Flat} .

For example, consider a 5% semiannual coupon payment government bond that matures on 15 February 2024. Accrued interest on this bond uses the actual/actual day-count convention. The coupon payments are made on 15 February and 15 August of each year. The bond is to be priced for settlement on 14 May 2015. That date is 88 days into the 181-day period. There are actually 88 days from the last coupon on

15 February to 14 May and 181 days between 15 February and the next coupon on 15 August. The annual yield-to-maturity is stated to be 4.80%. That corresponds to a market discount rate of 2.40% per semiannual period. As of the beginning of the coupon period on 15 February 2015, there would be 18 evenly spaced semiannual periods until maturity. The first step is to solve for PV using Equation 1, whereby $PMT = 2.5$, $N = 18$, $FV = 100$, and $r = 0.0240$.

$$PV = \frac{2.5}{(1.0240)^1} + \frac{2.5}{(1.0240)^2} + \dots + \frac{102.5}{(1.0240)^{18}} = 101.447790$$

The price of the bond would be 101.447790 per 100 of par value if its yield-to-maturity is 2.40% per period on the last coupon payment date. This is not the actual price for the bond on that date. It is a “what-if” price using the required yield that corresponds to the settlement date of 14 May 2015.

Equation 6 can be used to get the full price for the bond.

$$PV^{Full} = 101.447790 \times (1.0240)^{88/181} = 102.624323$$

The full price is 102.624323 per 100 of par value. The accrued interest is 1.215470 per 100 of par value.

$$AI = \frac{88}{181} \times 2.5 = 1.215470$$

The flat price is 101.408853 per 100 of par value.¹

$$PV^{Flat} = PV^{Full} - AI = 102.624323 - 1.215470 = 101.408853$$

EXAMPLE 5

Calculating the Full Price, Accrued Interest, and Flat Price for a Bond

A 6% German corporate bond is priced for settlement on 18 June 2015. The bond makes semiannual coupon payments on 19 March and 19 September of each year and matures on 19 September 2026. The corporate bond uses the 30/360 day-count convention for accrued interest. Calculate the full price, the accrued interest, and the flat price per EUR100 of par value for three stated annual yields-to-maturity: (A) 5.80%, (B) 6.00%, and (C) 6.20%.

Solution:

Given the 30/360 day-count convention assumption, there are 89 days between the last coupon on 19 March 2015 and the settlement date on 18 June 2015 (11 days between 19 March and 30 March, plus 60 days for the full months of April and May, plus 18 days in June). Therefore, the fraction of the coupon period that has gone by is assumed to be 89/180. At the beginning of the period, there are 11.5 years (and 23 semiannual periods) to maturity.

¹ Microsoft Excel users can obtain the flat price using the PRICE financial function: PRICE (“5/14/2015,” “2/15/2024,” 0.05, 0.0480, 100, 2, 1). The inputs are the settlement date, maturity date, annual coupon rate as a decimal, annual yield-to-maturity as a decimal, par value, number of periods in the year, and the code for the day-count (0 for 30/360, 1 for actual/actual).

(A) Stated annual yield-to-maturity of 5.80%, or 2.90% per semiannual period:

The price at the beginning of the period is 101.661589 per 100 of par value.

$$PV = \frac{3}{(1.0290)^1} + \frac{3}{(1.0290)^2} + \dots + \frac{103}{(1.0290)^{23}} = 101.661589$$

The full price on 18 June is EUR103.108770.

$$PV^{Full} = 101.661589 \times (1.0290)^{89/180} = 103.108770$$

The accrued interest is EUR1.483333, and the flat price is EUR101.625437.

$$AI = \frac{89}{180} \times 3 = 1.4833333$$

$$PV^{Flat} = 103.108770 - 1.483333 = 101.625437$$

(B) Stated annual yield-to-maturity of 6.00%, or 3.00% per semiannual period:

The price at the beginning of the period is par value, as expected, because the coupon rate and the market discount rate are equal.

$$PV = \frac{3}{(1.0300)^1} + \frac{3}{(1.0300)^2} + \dots + \frac{103}{(1.0300)^{23}} = 100.000000$$

The full price on 18 June is EUR101.472251.

$$PV^{Full} = 100.000000 \times (1.0300)^{89/180} = 101.472251$$

The accrued interest is EUR1.483333, and the flat price is EUR99.988918.

$$AI = \frac{89}{180} \times 3 = 1.4833333$$

$$PV^{Flat} = 101.472251 - 1.483333 = 99.988918$$

The flat price of the bond is a little below par value, even though the coupon rate and the yield-to-maturity are equal, because the accrued interest does not take into account the time value of money. The accrued interest is the interest earned by the owner of the bond for the time between the last coupon payment and the settlement date, 1.483333 per 100 of par value. However, that interest income is not received until the next coupon date. In theory, the accrued interest should be the *present value* of 1.483333. In practice, however, accounting and financial reporting need to consider issues of practicality and materiality. For those reasons, the calculation of accrued interest in practice neglects the time value of money. Therefore, compared to theory, the reported accrued interest is a little “too high” and the flat price is a little “too low.” The full price, however, is correct because it is the sum of the present values of the future cash flows, discounted using the market discount rate.

(C) Stated annual yield-to-maturity of 6.20%, or 3.10% per semiannual period:

The price at the beginning of the period is 98.372607 per 100 of par value.

$$PV = \frac{3}{(1.0310)^1} + \frac{3}{(1.0310)^2} + \dots + \frac{103}{(1.0310)^{23}} = 98.372607$$

The full price on 18 June is EUR99.868805.

$$PV^{Full} = 98.372607 \times (1.0310)^{89/180} = 99.868805$$

The accrued interest is EUR1.483333, and the flat price is EUR98.385472.

$$AI = \frac{89}{180} \times 3 = 1.483333$$

$$PV^{Flat} = 99.868805 - 1.483333 = 98.385472$$

The accrued interest is the same in each case because it does not depend on the yield-to-maturity. The differences in the flat prices indicate the differences in the rate of return that is required by investors.

3.2 Matrix Pricing

Some fixed-rate bonds are not actively traded. Therefore, there is no market price available to calculate the rate of return required by investors. The same problem occurs for bonds that are not yet issued. In these situations, it is common to estimate the market discount rate and price based on the quoted or flat prices of more frequently traded comparable bonds. These comparable bonds have similar times-to-maturity, coupon rates, and credit quality. This estimation process is called **matrix pricing**.

For example, suppose that an analyst needs to value a three-year, 4% semiannual coupon payment corporate bond, Bond X. Assume that Bond X is not actively traded and that there are no recent transactions reported for this particular security. However, there are quoted prices for four corporate bonds that have very similar credit quality:

- Bond A: two-year, 3% semiannual coupon payment bond trading at a price of 98.500
- Bond B: two-year, 5% semiannual coupon payment bond trading at a price of 102.250
- Bond C: five-year, 2% semiannual coupon payment bond trading at a price of 90.250
- Bond D: five-year, 4% semiannual coupon payment bond trading at a price of 99.125

The bonds are displayed in a matrix according to the coupon rate and the time-to-maturity. This matrix is shown in Exhibit 4.

Exhibit 4 Matrix Pricing Example

	2% Coupon	3% Coupon	4% Coupon	5% Coupon
Two Years		98.500 3.786%		102.250 3.821%
Three Years			Bond X	
Four Years				
Five Years	90.250 4.181%		99.125 4.196%	

In Exhibit 4, below each bond price is the yield-to-maturity. It is stated as the yield per semiannual period times two. For example, the yield-to-maturity on the two-year, 3% semiannual coupon payment corporate bond is 3.786%.

$$98.500 = \frac{1.5}{(1+r)^1} + \frac{1.5}{(1+r)^2} + \frac{1.5}{(1+r)^3} + \frac{101.5}{(1+r)^4}, \quad r = 0.01893, \quad \times 2 = 0.03786$$

Next, the analyst calculates the average yield for each year: 3.8035% for the two-year bonds and 4.1885% for the five-year bonds.

$$\frac{0.03786 + 0.03821}{2} = 0.038035$$

$$\frac{0.04181 + 0.04196}{2} = 0.041885$$

The estimated three-year market discount rate can be obtained with linear interpolation. The interpolated yield is 3.9318%.

$$0.038035 + \left(\frac{3-2}{5-2}\right) \times (0.041885 - 0.038035) = 0.039318$$

Using 3.9318% as the estimated three-year annual market discount rate, the three-year, 4% semiannual coupon payment corporate bond has an estimated price of 100.191 per 100 of par value.

$$\frac{2}{(1.019659)^1} + \frac{2}{(1.019659)^2} + \frac{2}{(1.019659)^3} + \frac{2}{(1.019659)^4} + \frac{2}{(1.019659)^5} + \frac{102}{(1.019659)^6} = 100.191$$

Notice that 3.9318% is the stated annual rate. It is divided by two to get the yield per semiannual period: $(0.039318/2 = 0.019659)$.

Matrix pricing also is used in underwriting new bonds to get an estimate of the **required yield spread** over the **benchmark rate**. The benchmark rate typically is the yield-to-maturity on a government bond having the same, or close to the same, time-to-maturity. The spread is the difference between the yield-to-maturity on the new bond and the benchmark rate. The yield spread is the additional compensation required by investors for the difference in the credit risk, liquidity risk, and tax status of the bond relative to the government bond. This spread is sometimes called the **spread over the benchmark**. Yield spreads are often stated in terms of basis points (bps), where one **basis point** equals one-hundredth of a percentage point. For example, if a yield-to-maturity is 2.25% and the benchmark rate is 1.50%, the yield spread is 0.75%, or 75 bps. Yield spreads are covered in more detail later in this reading.

Suppose that a corporation is about to issue a five-year bond. The corporate issuer currently has a four-year, 3% annual coupon payment debt liability on its books. The price of that bond is 102.400 per 100 of par value. This is the full price, which is the same as the flat price because the accrued interest is zero. This implies that the coupon payment has just been made and there are four full years to maturity. The four-year rate of return required by investors for this bond is 2.36%.

$$102.400 = \frac{3}{(1+r)^1} + \frac{3}{(1+r)^2} + \frac{3}{(1+r)^3} + \frac{103}{(1+r)^4}, \quad r = 0.0236$$

Suppose that there are no four-year government bonds to calculate the yield spread on this security. However, there are three-year and five-year government bonds that have yields-to-maturity of 0.75% and 1.45%, respectively. The average of the two

yields-to-maturity is 1.10%, which is the estimated yield for the four-year government bond. Therefore, the estimated yield spread is 126 bps over the implied benchmark rate ($0.0236 - 0.0110 = 0.0126$).

There usually is a different yield spread for each maturity and for each credit rating. The term structure of “risk-free” rates, which is discussed further in Section 4, is the relationship between yields-to-maturity on “risk-free” bonds and times-to-maturity. The quotation marks around “risk-free” indicate that no bond is truly without risk. The primary component of the yield spread for many bonds is compensation for credit risk, not for time-to-maturity, and as a result, the yield spreads reflect the **term structure of credit spreads**. The term structure of credit spreads is the relationship between the spreads over the “risk-free” (or benchmark) rates and times-to-maturity. These term structures are covered in more detail in later readings.

The issuer now has an estimate of the four-year yield spread, 126 bps. This spread is a reference point for estimating the five-year spread for the newly issued bond. Suppose that the term structure of credit spreads for bonds of the corporate issuer’s quality indicates that five-year spreads are about 25 bps higher than four-year spreads. Therefore, the estimated five-year required yield spread is 151 bps ($0.0126 + 0.0025 = 0.0151$). Given the yield-to-maturity of 1.45% on the five-year government bond, the expected market discount rate for the newly issued bond is 2.96% ($0.0145 + 0.0151 = 0.0296$). The corporation might set the coupon rate to be 3% and expect that the bond can be sold for a small premium above par value.

EXAMPLE 6

Using Matrix Pricing to Estimate Bond Price

An analyst needs to assign a value to an illiquid four-year, 4.5% annual coupon payment corporate bond. The analyst identifies two corporate bonds that have similar credit quality: One is a three-year, 5.50% annual coupon payment bond priced at 107.500 per 100 of par value, and the other is a five-year, 4.50% annual coupon payment bond priced at 104.750 per 100 of par value. Using matrix pricing, the estimated price of the illiquid bond per 100 of par value is *closest* to:

- A 103.895.
- B 104.991.
- C 106.125.

Solution:

B is correct. The first step is to determine the yields-to-maturity on the observed bonds. The required yield on the three-year, 5.50% bond priced at 107.500 is 2.856%.

$$107.500 = \frac{5.50}{(1+r)^1} + \frac{5.50}{(1+r)^2} + \frac{105.50}{(1+r)^3}, \quad r = 0.02856$$

The required yield on the five-year, 4.50% bond priced at 104.750 is 3.449%.

$$104.750 = \frac{4.50}{(1+r)^1} + \frac{4.50}{(1+r)^2} + \frac{4.50}{(1+r)^3} + \frac{4.50}{(1+r)^4} + \frac{104.50}{(1+r)^5}, \quad r = 0.03449$$

The estimated market discount rate for a four-year bond having the same credit quality is the average of two required yields:

$$\frac{0.02856 + 0.03449}{2} = 0.031525$$

Given an estimated yield-to-maturity of 3.1525%, the estimated price of the illiquid four-year, 4.50% annual coupon payment corporate bond is 104.991 per 100 of par value.

$$\frac{4.50}{(1.031525)^1} + \frac{4.50}{(1.031525)^2} + \frac{4.50}{(1.031525)^3} + \frac{104.50}{(1.031525)^4} = 104.991$$

3.3 Yield Measures for Fixed-Rate Bonds

There are many ways to measure the rate of return on a fixed-rate bond investment. Consider a five-year, zero-coupon government bond. The purchase price today is 80. The investor receives 100 at redemption in five years. One possible yield measure is 25%—the gain of 20 divided by the amount invested, 80. However, investors want a yield measure that is *standardized* to allow for comparison between bonds that have different times-to-maturity. Therefore, yield measures typically are *annualized*. A possible annual rate for this zero-coupon bond is 5% per year—25% divided by five years. But for bonds maturing in more than one year, investors want an *annualized and compounded* yield-to-maturity. Money market rates on instruments maturing in one year or less typically are *annualized but not compounded*. They are stated on a simple interest basis. This concept is covered later in this reading.

In general, an annualized and compounded yield on a fixed-rate bond depends on the assumed number of periods in the year, which is called the **periodicity** of the annual rate. Typically, the periodicity matches the frequency of coupon payments. A bond that pays semiannual coupons has a stated annual yield-to-maturity for a periodicity of two—the rate per semiannual period times two. A bond that pays quarterly coupons has a stated annual yield for a periodicity of four—the rate per quarter times four. It is always important to know the periodicity of a stated annual rate.

The periodicity of the annual market discount rate for a zero-coupon bond is *arbitrary* because there are no coupon payments. For semiannual compounding, the annual yield-to-maturity on the five-year, zero-coupon bond priced at 80 per 100 of par value is stated to be 4.5130%. This annual rate has a periodicity of two.

$$80 = \frac{100}{(1+r)^{10}}, \quad r = 0.022565, \quad \times 2 = 0.045130$$

For quarterly compounding, the annual yield-to-maturity is stated to be 4.4880%. This annual rate has a periodicity of four.

$$80 = \frac{100}{(1+r)^{20}}, \quad r = 0.011220, \quad \times 4 = 0.044880$$

For monthly compounding, the annual yield-to-maturity is stated to be 4.4712%. This annual rate has a periodicity of 12.

$$80 = \frac{100}{(1+r)^{60}}, \quad r = 0.003726, \quad \times 12 = 0.044712$$

For annual compounding, the yield-to-maturity is stated to be 4.5640%. This annual rate has a periodicity of one.

$$80 = \frac{100}{(1+r)^5}, \quad r = 0.045640, \quad \times 1 = 0.045640$$

This is known as an **effective annual rate**. An effective annual rate has a periodicity of one because there is just one compounding period in the year.

In this zero-coupon bond example, 2.2565% compounded two times a year, 1.1220% compounded four times a year, and 0.3726% compounded twelve times a year are all equivalent to an effective annual rate of 4.5640%. The compounded total return is the same for each expression for the annual rate. They differ in terms of the number of compounding periods per year—that is, in terms of the *periodicity* of the annual rate. For a given pair of cash flows, the stated annual rate and the periodicity are inversely related.

The most common periodicity for USD-denominated bond yields is two because most bonds in the USD market make semiannual coupon payments. An annual rate having a periodicity of two is known as a **semiannual bond basis yield**, or **semiannual bond equivalent yield**. Therefore, a semiannual bond basis yield is the yield per semiannual period times two. It is important to remember that “semiannual bond basis yield” and “yield per semiannual period” have different meanings. For example, if a bond yield is 2% per semiannual period, its annual yield is 4% when stated on a semiannual bond basis.

An important tool used in fixed-income analysis is to convert an annual yield from one periodicity to another. These are called periodicity, or compounding, conversions. A general formula to convert an annual percentage rate for m periods per year, denoted APR_m , to an annual percentage rate for n periods per year, APR_n , is Equation 7.

$$\left(1 + \frac{APR_m}{m}\right)^m = \left(1 + \frac{APR_n}{n}\right)^n \quad (7)$$

For example, suppose that a three-year, 5% semiannual coupon payment corporate bond is priced at 104 per 100 of par value. Its yield-to-maturity is 3.582%, quoted on a semiannual bond basis for a periodicity of two: $0.01791 \times 2 = 0.03582$.

$$104 = \frac{2.5}{(1+r)^1} + \frac{2.5}{(1+r)^2} + \frac{2.5}{(1+r)^3} + \frac{2.5}{(1+r)^4} + \frac{2.5}{(1+r)^5} + \frac{102.5}{(1+r)^6}, \quad r = 0.01791$$

To compare this bond with others, an analyst converts this annualized yield-to-maturity to quarterly and monthly compounding. That entails using Equation 7 to convert from a periodicity of $m = 2$ to periodicities of $n = 4$ and $n = 12$.

$$\left(1 + \frac{0.03582}{2}\right)^2 = \left(1 + \frac{APR_4}{4}\right)^4, \quad APR_4 = 0.03566$$

$$\left(1 + \frac{0.03582}{2}\right)^2 = \left(1 + \frac{APR_{12}}{12}\right)^{12}, \quad APR_{12} = 0.03556$$

An annual yield-to-maturity of 3.582% for semiannual compounding provides the same rate of return as annual yields of 3.566% and 3.556% for quarterly and monthly compounding, respectively. A general rule for these periodicity conversions is *compounding more frequently at a lower annual rate corresponds to compounding less frequently at a higher annual rate*. This rule can be used to check periodicity conversion calculations.

EXAMPLE 7**Yield Conversion Based on Periodicity**

A five-year, 4.50% semiannual coupon payment government bond is priced at 98 per 100 of par value. Calculate the annual yield-to-maturity stated on a semiannual bond basis, rounded to the nearest basis point. Convert that annual yield to:

- A** an annual rate that can be used for direct comparison with otherwise comparable bonds that make *quarterly* coupon payments and
- B** an annual rate that can be used for direct comparison with otherwise comparable bonds that make *annual* coupon payments.

Solution:

The stated annual yield-to-maturity on a semiannual bond basis is 4.96% ($0.0248 \times 2 = 0.0496$).

$$98 = \frac{2.25}{(1+r)^1} + \frac{2.25}{(1+r)^2} + \frac{2.25}{(1+r)^3} + \frac{2.25}{(1+r)^4} + \frac{2.25}{(1+r)^5} + \frac{2.25}{(1+r)^6} + \frac{2.25}{(1+r)^7} + \frac{2.25}{(1+r)^8} + \frac{2.25}{(1+r)^9} + \frac{102.25}{(1+r)^{10}}, \quad r = 0.0248$$

- A** Convert 4.96% from a periodicity of two to a periodicity of four:

$$\left(1 + \frac{0.0496}{2}\right)^2 = \left(1 + \frac{APR_4}{4}\right)^4, \quad APR_4 = 0.0493$$

The annual percentage rate of 4.96% for compounding semiannually compares with 4.93% for compounding quarterly. That makes sense because increasing the frequency of compounding lowers the annual rate.

- B** Convert 4.96% from a periodicity of two to a periodicity of one:

$$\left(1 + \frac{0.0496}{2}\right)^2 = \left(1 + \frac{APR_1}{1}\right)^1, \quad APR_1 = 0.0502$$

The annual rate of 4.96% for compounding semiannually compares with an effective annual rate of 5.02%. Converting from more frequent to less frequent compounding entails raising the annual percentage rate.

An important concern for quoting and calculating bond yields-to-maturity is the actual timing of the cash flows. Consider a 6% semiannual payment corporate bond that matures on 15 March 2022. Suppose that for settlement on 23 January 2014, the bond is priced at 98.5 per 100 of par value to yield 6.236% quoted on a semiannual bond basis. Its coupon payments are scheduled for 15 March and 15 September of each year. The yield calculation implicitly assumes that the payments are made on those dates. It neglects the reality that 15 March 2015 is a Sunday and 15 September 2018 is a Saturday. In fact, the coupon payments will be made to investors on the following Monday.

Yield measures that neglect weekends and holidays are quoted on what is called **street convention**. The street convention yield-to-maturity is the internal rate of return on the cash flows assuming the payments are made on the scheduled dates. This assumption simplifies bond price and yield calculations and commonly is used in practice. Sometimes the **true yield** is also quoted. The true yield-to-maturity is the

internal rate of return on the cash flows using the actual calendar of weekends and bank holidays. The true yield is never higher than the street convention yield because weekends and holidays delay the time to payment. The difference is typically small, no more than a basis point or two. Therefore, the true yield is not commonly used in practice. Sometimes, a **government equivalent yield** is quoted for a corporate bond. A government equivalent yield restates a yield-to-maturity based on 30/360 day-count to one based on actual/actual. The government equivalent yield on a corporate bond can be used to obtain the spread over the government yield. Doing so keeps the yields stated on the same day-count convention basis.

Another yield measure that is commonly quoted for fixed-income bonds is the **current yield**, also called the income or interest yield. The current yield is the sum of the coupon payments received over the year divided by the flat price. For example, a 10-year, 2% semiannual coupon payment bond is priced at 95 per 100 of par value. Its current yield is 2.105%.

$$\frac{2}{95} = 0.02105$$

The current yield is a crude measure of the rate of return to an investor because it neglects the frequency of coupon payments in the numerator and any accrued interest in the denominator. It focuses only on interest income. In addition to collecting and reinvesting coupon payments, the investor has a gain if the bond is purchased at a discount and is redeemed at par value. The investor has a loss if the bond is purchased at a premium and is redeemed at par value. Sometimes the **simple yield** on a bond is quoted. It is the sum of the coupon payments plus the straight-line amortized share of the gain or loss, divided by the flat price. Simple yields are used mostly to quote Japanese government bonds, known as “JGBs.”

EXAMPLE 8

Comparing Yields for Different Periodicities

An analyst observes these reported statistics for two bonds.

	Bond A	Bond B
Annual Coupon Rate	8.00%	12.00%
Coupon Payment Frequency	Semiannually	Quarterly
Years to Maturity	5 Years	5 Years
Price (per 100 of par value)	90	105
Current Yield	8.889%	11.429%
Yield-to-Maturity	10.630%	10.696%

- 1 Confirm the calculation of the two yield measures for the two bonds.
- 2 The analyst believes that Bond B has a little more risk than Bond A. How much additional compensation, in terms of a higher yield-to-maturity, does a buyer of Bond B receive for bearing this risk compared with Bond A?

Solution to 1:

Current Yield for Bond A

$$\frac{8}{90} = 0.08889$$

Yield-to-Maturity for Bond A

$$90 = \frac{4}{(1+r)^1} + \frac{4}{(1+r)^2} + \dots + \frac{104}{(1+r)^{10}}, \quad r = 0.05315, \quad \times 2 = 0.10630$$

Current Yield for Bond B

$$\frac{12}{105} = 0.11429$$

Yield-to-Maturity for Bond B

$$105 = \frac{3}{(1+r)^1} + \frac{3}{(1+r)^2} + \dots + \frac{103}{(1+r)^{20}}, \quad r = 0.02674, \quad \times 4 = 0.10696$$

Solution to 2:

The yield-to-maturity on Bond A of 10.630% is an annual rate for compounding semiannually. The yield-to-maturity on Bond B of 10.696% is an annual rate for compounding quarterly. The difference in the yields is *not* 6.6 bps ($0.10696 - 0.10630 = 0.00066$). It is essential to compare the yields for the same periodicity to make a statement about relative value.

10.630% for a periodicity of two converts to 10.492% for a periodicity of four:

$$\left(1 + \frac{0.10630}{2}\right)^2 = \left(1 + \frac{APR_4}{4}\right)^4, \quad APR_4 = 0.10492$$

10.696% for a periodicity of four converts to 10.839% for a periodicity of two:

$$\left(1 + \frac{0.10696}{4}\right)^4 = \left(1 + \frac{APR_2}{2}\right)^2, \quad APR_2 = 0.10839$$

The additional compensation for the greater risk in Bond B is 20.9 bps ($0.10839 - 0.10630 = 0.00209$) when the yields are stated on a semiannual bond basis. The additional compensation is 20.4 bps ($0.10696 - 0.10492 = 0.00204$) when both are annualized for quarterly compounding.

If a fixed-rate bond contains an **embedded option**, other yield measures are used. An embedded option is part of the security and cannot be removed and sold separately. For example, a **callable bond** contains an embedded call option that gives the issuer the right to buy the bond back from the investor at specified prices on predetermined dates. The preset dates usually coincide with coupon payment dates after a **call protection** period. A call protection period is the time during which the issuer of the bond is not allowed to exercise the call option.

Suppose that a seven-year, 8% annual coupon payment bond is first callable in four years. That gives the investor four years of protection against the bond being called. After the call protection period, the issuer might exercise the call option if interest rates decrease or the issuer's credit quality improves. Those circumstances allow the issuer to refinance the debt at a lower cost of funds. The preset prices that the issuer pays if the bond is called often are at a premium above par. For example, the "call schedule" for this bond might be that it is first callable at 102 (per 100 of par value) on the coupon payment date in four years, callable at 101 in five years, and at par value on coupon payment dates thereafter.

The yield-to-maturity on this seven-year, 8% callable bond is just one of several traditional yield measures for the investment. Others are yield-to-first-call, yield-to-second-call, and so on. If the current price for the bond is 105 per 100 of par value, the yield-to-first-call in four years is 6.975%.

$$105 = \frac{8}{(1+r)^1} + \frac{8}{(1+r)^2} + \frac{8}{(1+r)^3} + \frac{8+102}{(1+r)^4}, \quad r = 0.06975$$

The yield-to-second-call in five years is 6.956%.

$$105 = \frac{8}{(1+r)^1} + \frac{8}{(1+r)^2} + \frac{8}{(1+r)^3} + \frac{8}{(1+r)^4} + \frac{8+101}{(1+r)^5}, \quad r = 0.06956$$

The yield-to-third-call is 6.953%.

$$105 = \frac{8}{(1+r)^1} + \frac{8}{(1+r)^2} + \frac{8}{(1+r)^3} + \frac{8}{(1+r)^4} + \frac{8}{(1+r)^5} + \frac{8+100}{(1+r)^6}, \quad r = 0.06953$$

Finally, the yield-to-maturity is 7.070%.

$$105 = \frac{8}{(1+r)^1} + \frac{8}{(1+r)^2} + \frac{8}{(1+r)^3} + \frac{8}{(1+r)^4} + \frac{8}{(1+r)^5} + \frac{8}{(1+r)^6} + \frac{8+100}{(1+r)^7}, \quad r = 0.07070$$

Each calculation is based on Equation 1, whereby the call price (or par value) is used for FV . The lowest of the sequence of yields-to-call and the yield-to-maturity is known as the **yield-to-worst**. In this case, it is the yield-to-third-call of 6.953%. The intent of this yield measure is to provide to the investor the most conservative assumption for the rate of return.

The yield-to-worst is a commonly cited yield measure for fixed-rate callable bonds used by bond dealers and investors. However, a more precise approach is to use an option pricing model and an assumption about future interest rate volatility to value the embedded call option. The value of the embedded call option is added to the flat price of the bond to get the **option-adjusted price**. The investor bears the call risk (the bond issuer has the option to call), so the embedded call option reduces the value of the bond from the investor's perspective. The investor pays a lower price for the callable bond than if it were option-free. If the bond were non-callable, its price would be higher. The option-adjusted price is used to calculate the **option-adjusted yield**. The option-adjusted yield is the required market discount rate whereby the price is adjusted for the value of the embedded option. The value of the call option is the price of the option-free bond minus the price of the callable bond.

3.4 Yield Measures for Floating-Rate Notes

Floating-rate notes are very different from a fixed-rate bond. The interest payments on a floating-rate note, which often is called a floater or an FRN, are not fixed. Instead, they vary from period to period depending on the current level of a reference interest rate. The interest payments could go up or down; that is why they "float." The intent of an FRN is to offer the investor a security that has less market price risk than a fixed-rate bond when market interest rates fluctuate. In principle, a floater has a stable price even in a period of volatile interest rates. With a traditional fixed-income security, interest rate volatility affects the price because the future cash flows are constant. With a floating-rate note, interest rate volatility affects future interest payments.

The reference rate on a floating-rate note usually is a short-term money market rate, such as three-month Libor (the London Interbank Offered Rate). The principal on the floater typically is non-amortizing and is redeemed in full at maturity. The

reference rate is determined at the beginning of the period, and the interest payment is made at the end of the period. This payment structure called “in arrears.” The most common day-count conventions for calculating accrued interest on floaters are actual/360 and actual/365.

Although there are many varieties of FRNs, only the most common and traditional floaters are covered here. On these floaters, a specified yield spread is added to, or subtracted from, the reference rate. For example, the floater might reset its interest rate quarterly at three-month Libor plus 0.50%. This specified yield spread over the reference rate is called the **quoted margin** on the FRN. The role of the quoted margin is to compensate the investor for the difference in the credit risk of the issuer and that implied by the reference rate. For example, a company with a stronger credit rating than that of the banks included in Libor may be able to obtain a “sub-Libor” cost of borrowed funds, which results in a negative quoted margin. An AAA rated company might be able to issue an FRN that pays three-month Libor minus 0.25%.

The **required margin** is the yield spread over, or under, the reference rate such that the FRN is priced at par value on a rate reset date. Suppose that a traditional floater is issued at par value and pays three-month Libor plus 0.50%. The quoted margin is 50 bps. If there is no change in the credit risk of the issuer, the required margin remains at 50 bps. On each quarterly reset date, the floater will be priced at par value. Between coupon dates, its flat price will be at a premium or discount to par value if Libor goes down or up. However, if the required margin continues to be the same as the quoted margin, the flat price is “pulled to par” as the next reset date nears. At the reset date, any change in Libor is included in the interest payment for the next period.

Changes in the required margin usually come from changes in the issuer’s credit risk. Changes in liquidity or tax status also could affect the required margin. Suppose that on a reset date, the required margin goes up to 75 bps because of a downgrade in the issuer’s credit rating. A floater having a quoted margin of 50 bps now pays its investors a “deficient” interest payment. This FRN will be priced at a discount below par value. The amount of the discount is the present value of the deficient future cash flows. That annuity is 25 bps per period for the remaining life of the bond. It is the difference between the required and quoted margins. If the required margin goes down from 50 bps to 40 bps, the FRN will be priced at a premium. The amount of the premium is the present value of the 10 bp annuity for the “excess” interest payment each period.

Fixed-rate and floating-rate bonds are essentially the same with respect to changes in credit risk. With fixed-rate bonds, the premium or discount arises from a difference in the fixed coupon rate and the required yield-to-maturity. With floating-rate bonds, the premium or discount arises from a difference in the fixed quoted margin and the required margin. However, fixed-rate and floating-rate bonds are very different with respect to changes in benchmark interest rates.

The valuation of a floating-rate note needs a pricing model. Equation 8 is a simplified FRN pricing model. Following market practice, the required margin is called the **discount margin**.

$$\begin{aligned}
 PV = & \frac{(\text{Index} + QM) \times FV}{m} + \frac{(\text{Index} + QM) \times FV}{m} + \dots + \\
 & \frac{(\text{Index} + QM) \times FV}{m} + FV \\
 & \frac{(\text{Index} + DM)^1}{\left(1 + \frac{\text{Index} + DM}{m}\right)} + \frac{(\text{Index} + DM)^2}{\left(1 + \frac{\text{Index} + DM}{m}\right)^2} + \dots + \\
 & \frac{(\text{Index} + DM)^N}{\left(1 + \frac{\text{Index} + DM}{m}\right)^N}
 \end{aligned}
 \tag{8}$$

where

PV = present value, or the price of the floating-rate note

Index = reference rate, stated as an annual percentage rate

QM = quoted margin, stated as an annual percentage rate

FV = future value paid at maturity, or the par value of the bond

m = periodicity of the floating-rate note, the number of payment periods per year

DM = discount margin, the required margin stated as an annual percentage rate

N = number of evenly spaced periods to maturity

This equation is similar to Equation 1, which is the basic pricing formula for a fixed-rate bond given the market discount rate. In Equation 1, PMT is the coupon payment *per period*. Here, *annual* rates are used. The first interest payment is the annual rate for the period (Index + QM) times the par value (FV) and divided by the number of periods in the year (m). In Equation 1, the market discount rate per period (r) is used to discount the cash flows. Here, the discount rate per period is the reference rate plus the discount margin (Index + DM) divided by the periodicity (m).

This is a simplified FRN pricing model for several reasons. First, PV is for a rate reset date when there are N evenly spaced periods to maturity. There is no accrued interest so that the flat price is the full price. Second, the model assumes a 30/360 day-count convention so that the periodicity is an integer. Third, and most important, the same reference rate (Index) is used for all payment periods in both the numerators and denominators. More complex FRN pricing models use projected future rates for Index in the numerators and spot rates in the denominators. Therefore, the calculation for DM depends on the simplifying assumptions in the pricing model.

Suppose that a two-year FRN pays six-month Libor plus 0.50%. Currently, six-month Libor is 1.25%. In Equation 8, Index = 0.0125, QM = 0.0050, and m = 2. The numerators in Equation 8, ignoring the repayment of principal, are 0.875.

$$\frac{(\text{Index} + QM) \times FV}{m} = \frac{(0.0125 + 0.0050) \times 100}{2} = 0.875$$

Suppose that the yield spread required by investors is 40 bps over the reference rate, DM = 0.0040. The assumed discount rate per period is 0.825%.

$$\frac{\text{Index} + DM}{m} = \frac{0.0125 + 0.0040}{2} = 0.00825$$

Using Equation 8 for $N = 4$, the FRN is priced at 100.196 per 100 of par value.

$$\frac{0.875}{(1 + 0.00825)^1} + \frac{0.875}{(1 + 0.00825)^2} + \frac{0.875}{(1 + 0.00825)^3} + \frac{0.875 + 100}{(1 + 0.00825)^4} = 100.196$$

This floater is priced at a premium above par value because the quoted margin is greater than the discount margin.

A similar calculation is to estimate the discount margin given the market price of the floating-rate note. Suppose that a five-year FRN pays three-month Libor plus 0.75% on a quarterly basis. Currently, three-month Libor is 1.10%. The price of the floater is 95.50 per 100 of par value, a discount below par value because of a downgrade in the issuer's credit rating.

$$\frac{(\text{Index} + QM) \times FV}{m} = \frac{(0.0110 + 0.0075) \times 100}{4} = 0.4625$$

In Equation 8, use $PV = 95.50$ and $N = 20$.

$$95.50 = \frac{0.4625}{\left(1 + \frac{0.0110 + DM}{4}\right)^1} + \frac{0.4625}{\left(1 + \frac{0.0110 + DM}{4}\right)^2} + \dots + \frac{0.4625 + 100}{\left(1 + \frac{0.0110 + DM}{4}\right)^{20}}$$

This has the same format as Equation 1, which can be used to solve for the market discount rate per period, $r = 0.7045\%$.

$$95.50 = \frac{0.4625}{(1+r)^1} + \frac{0.4625}{(1+r)^2} + \dots + \frac{0.4625 + 100}{(1+r)^{20}}, \quad r = 0.007045$$

This can be used to solve for $DM = 1.718\%$.

$$0.007045 = \frac{0.0110 + DM}{4}, \quad DM = 0.01718$$

If this FRN was issued at par value, investors required at that time a spread of only 75 bps over three-month Libor. Now, after the credit downgrade, investors require an *estimated* discount margin of 171.8 bps. The floater trades at a discount because the quoted margin remains fixed at 75 bps. The calculated discount margin is an estimate because it is based on a simplified FRN pricing model.

EXAMPLE 9

Calculating the Discount Margin for a Floating-Rate Note

A four-year French floating-rate note pays three-month Euribor (Euro Interbank Offered Rate, an index produced by the European Banking Federation) plus 1.25%. The floater is priced at 98 per 100 of par value. Calculate the discount margin for the floater assuming that three-month Euribor is constant at 2%. Assume the 30/360 day-count convention and evenly spaced periods.

Solution:

By assumption, the interest payment each period is 0.8125 per 100 of par value.

$$\frac{(\text{Index} + QM) \times FV}{m} = \frac{(0.0200 + 0.0125) \times 100}{4} = 0.8125$$

The discount margin can be estimated by solving for DM in this equation.

$$98 = \frac{0.8125}{\left(1 + \frac{0.0200 + DM}{4}\right)^1} + \frac{0.8125}{\left(1 + \frac{0.0200 + DM}{4}\right)^2} + \dots + \frac{0.8125 + 100}{\left(1 + \frac{0.0200 + DM}{4}\right)^{16}}$$

The solution for the discount rate per period is 0.9478%.

$$98 = \frac{0.8125}{(1+r)^1} + \frac{0.8125}{(1+r)^2} + \dots + \frac{0.8125 + 100}{(1+r)^{16}}, \quad r = 0.009478$$

Therefore, $DM = 1.791\%$.

$$0.009478 = \frac{0.0200 + DM}{4}, \quad DM = 0.01791$$

The quoted margin is 125 bps over the Euribor reference rate. Using the simplified FRN pricing model, it is estimated that investors require a 179.1 bp spread for the floater to be priced at par value.

3.5 Yield Measures for Money Market Instruments

Money market instruments are short-term debt securities. They range in time-to-maturity from overnight sale and repurchase agreements (repos) to one-year bank certificates of deposit. Money market instruments also include commercial paper, government issues of less than one year, bankers' acceptances, and time deposits based on such indexes as Libor and Euribor. Money market mutual funds are a major investor in such securities. These mutual funds can invest only in certain eligible money market securities.

There are several important differences in yield measures between the money market and the bond market:

- 1 Bond yields-to-maturity are annualized and compounded. Yield measures in the money market are annualized but not compounded. Instead, the rate of return on a money market instrument is stated on a simple interest basis.
- 2 Bond yields-to-maturity can be calculated using standard time-value-of-money analysis and with formulas programmed into a financial calculator. Money market instruments often are quoted using nonstandard interest rates and require different pricing equations than those used for bonds.
- 3 Bond yields-to-maturity usually are stated for a common periodicity for all times-to-maturity. Money market instruments having different times-to-maturity have different periodicities for the annual rate.

In general, quoted money market rates are either **discount rates** or **add-on rates**. Although market conventions vary around the world, commercial paper, Treasury bills (a US government security issued with a maturity of one year or less), and bankers' acceptances often are quoted on a discount rate basis. Bank certificates of deposit, repos, and such indexes as Libor and Euribor are quoted on an add-on rate basis. It is important to understand that "discount rate" has a unique meaning in the money market. In general, discount rate means "interest rate used to calculate a present value"—for instance, "market discount rate" as used in this reading. In the money market, however, discount rate is a specific type of quoted rate. Some examples will clarify this point.

Equation 9 is the pricing formula for money market instruments quoted on a discount *rate* basis.

$$PV = FV \times \left(1 - \frac{\text{Days}}{\text{Year}} \times DR \right) \quad (9)$$

where

PV = present value, or the price of the money market instrument

FV = future value paid at maturity, or the face value of the money market instrument

Days = number of days between settlement and maturity

Year = number of days in the year

DR = discount rate, stated as an annual percentage rate

Suppose that a 91-day US Treasury bill (T-bill) with a face value of USD10 million is quoted at a discount rate of 2.25% for an assumed 360-day year. Enter $FV = 10,000,000$, Days = 91, Year = 360, and $DR = 0.0225$. The price of the T-bill is USD9,943,125.

$$PV = 10,000,000 \times \left(1 - \frac{91}{360} \times 0.0225\right) = 9,943,125$$

The unique characteristics of a money market discount rate can be examined with Equation 10, which transforms Equation 9 algebraically to isolate the DR term.

$$DR = \left(\frac{\text{Year}}{\text{Days}}\right) \times \left(\frac{FV - PV}{FV}\right) \quad (10)$$

The first term, Year/Days, is the periodicity of the annual rate. The second term reveals the odd character of a money market discount rate. The numerator, $FV - PV$, is the interest earned on the T-bill, USD56,875 ($= 10,000,000 - 9,943,125$), over the 91 days to maturity. However, the denominator is FV , not PV . In theory, an interest rate is the amount earned divided by the investment amount (PV)—not divided by the total return at maturity, which includes the earnings (FV). Therefore, by design, a money market discount rate *understates* the rate of return to the investor, and it *understates* the cost of borrowed funds to the issuer. That is because PV is less than FV (as long as DR is greater than zero).

Equation 11 is the pricing formula for money market instruments quoted on an add-on rate basis.

$$PV = \frac{FV}{\left(1 + \frac{\text{Days}}{\text{Year}} \times AOR\right)} \quad (11)$$

where

PV = present value, principal amount, or the price of the money market instrument

FV = future value, or the redemption amount paid at maturity including interest

Days = number of days between settlement and maturity

Year = number of days in the year

AOR = add-on rate, stated as an annual percentage rate

Suppose that a Canadian pension fund buys a 180-day banker's acceptance (BA) with a quoted add-on rate of 4.38% for a 365-day year. If the initial principal amount is CAD10 million, the redemption amount due at maturity is found by re-arranging Equation 11 and entering $PV = 10,000,000$, Days = 180, Year = 365, and $AOR = 0.0438$.

$$FV = 10,000,000 + \left(10,000,000 \times \frac{180}{365} \times 0.0438\right) = 10,216,000$$

At maturity, the pension fund receives CAD10,216,000, the principal of CAD10 million plus interest of CAD216,000. The interest is calculated as the principal times the fraction of the year times the annual add-on rate. It is added to the principal to determine the redemption amount.

Suppose that after 45 days, the pension fund sells the BA to a dealer. At that time, the quoted add-on rate for a 135-day BA is 4.17%. The sale price for the BA can be calculated using Equation 11 for $FV = 10,216,000$, Days = 135, Year = 365, and $AOR = 0.0417$. The sale price is CAD10,060,829.

$$PV = \frac{10,216,000}{\left(1 + \frac{135}{365} \times 0.0417\right)} = 10,060,829$$

The characteristics of an add-on rate can be examined with Equation 12, which transforms Equation 11 algebraically to isolate the *AOR* term.

$$AOR = \left(\frac{\text{Year}}{\text{Days}} \right) \times \left(\frac{FV - PV}{PV} \right) \quad (12)$$

This equation indicates that an add-on rate is a reasonable yield measure for a money market investment. The first term, *Year/Days*, is the periodicity of the annual rate. The second term is the interest earned, *FV - PV*, divided by *PV*, the amount invested.

The pension fund's rate of return on its 45-day investment in the banker's acceptance can be calculated with Equation 12. Enter *Year* = 365, *Days* = 45, *FV* = 10,060,829, and *PV* = 10,000,000. Notice that *FV* here is the sale price, not the redemption amount.

$$AOR = \left(\frac{365}{45} \right) \times \left(\frac{10,060,829 - 10,000,000}{10,000,000} \right) = 0.04934$$

The rate of return, stated on a 365-day add-on rate basis, is 4.934%. This result is an annual rate for a periodicity of 8.11 (= 365/45). Implicitly, this assumes that the investment can be replicated 8.11 times over the year.

Investment analysis is made difficult for money market securities because (1) some instruments are quoted on a discount rate basis and others on an add-on rate basis and (2) some are quoted for a 360-day year and others for a 365-day year. Another difference is that the "amount" of a money market instrument quoted on a discount rate basis typically is the face value paid at maturity. However, the "amount" when quoted on an add-on rate basis usually is the principal, the price at issuance. To make money market investment decisions, it is essential to compare instruments on a common basis. An example illustrates this point.

Suppose that an investor is comparing two money market instruments: (A) 90-day commercial paper quoted at a discount rate of 5.76% for a 360-day year and (B) 90-day bank time deposit quoted at an add-on rate of 5.90% for a 365-day year. Which offers the higher expected rate of return assuming that the credit risks are the same? The price of the commercial paper is 98.560 per 100 of face value, calculated using Equation 9 and entering *FV* = 100, *Days* = 90, *Year* = 360, and *DR* = 0.0576.

$$PV = 100 \times \left(1 - \frac{90}{360} \times 0.0576 \right) = 98.560$$

Next, use Equation 12 to solve for the *AOR* for a 365-day year, whereby *Year* = 365, *Days* = 90, *FV* = 100, and *PV* = 98.560.

$$AOR = \left(\frac{365}{90} \right) \times \left(\frac{100 - 98.560}{98.560} \right) = 0.05925$$

The 90-day commercial paper discount rate of 5.76% converts to an add-on rate for a 365-day year of 5.925%. This converted rate is called a **bond equivalent yield**, or sometimes just an "investment yield." A bond equivalent yield is a money market rate stated on a 365-day add-on rate basis. If the risks are the same, the commercial paper offers 2.5 bps more in annual return than the bank time deposit.

EXAMPLE 10

Comparing Money Market Instruments Based on Bond Equivalent Yields

Suppose that a money market investor observes quoted rates on the following four 180-day money market instruments:

Money Market Instrument	Quotation Basis	Assumed Number of Days in the Year	Quoted Rate
A	Discount Rate	360	4.33%
B	Discount Rate	365	4.36%
C	Add-On Rate	360	4.35%
D	Add-On Rate	365	4.45%

Calculate the bond equivalent yield for each instrument. Which instrument offers the investor the highest rate of return if the credit risk is the same?

Solution:

- A** Use Equation 9 to get the price per 100 of par value, where $FV = 100$, $Days = 180$, $Year = 360$, and $DR = 0.0433$.

$$PV = 100 \times \left(1 - \frac{180}{360} \times 0.0433 \right) = 97.835$$

Use Equation 12 to get the bond equivalent yield, where $Year = 365$, $Days = 180$, $FV = 100$, and $PV = 97.835$.

$$AOR = \left(\frac{365}{180} \right) \times \left(\frac{100 - 97.835}{97.835} \right) = 0.04487$$

The bond equivalent yield for Bond A is 4.487%.

- B** Use Equation 9 to get the price per 100 of face value, where $FV = 100$, $Days = 180$, $Year = 365$, and $DR = 0.0436$.

$$PV = 100 \times \left(1 - \frac{180}{365} \times 0.0436 \right) = 97.850$$

Use Equation 12 to get the bond equivalent yield, where $Year = 365$, $Days = 180$, $FV = 100$, and $PV = 97.850$.

$$AOR = \left(\frac{365}{180} \right) \times \left(\frac{100 - 97.850}{97.850} \right) = 0.04456$$

The bond equivalent yield for Bond B is 4.456%.

- C** First, determine the redemption amount per 100 of principal ($PV = 100$), where $Days = 180$, $Year = 360$, and $AOR = 0.0435$.

$$FV = 100 + \left(100 \times \frac{180}{360} \times 0.0435 \right) = 102.175$$

Use Equation 12 to get the bond equivalent yield, where $Year = 365$, $Days = 180$, $FV = 102.175$, and $PV = 100$.

$$AOR = \left(\frac{365}{180} \right) \times \left(\frac{102.175 - 100}{100} \right) = 0.04410$$

The bond equivalent yield for Bond C is 4.410%.

Another way to get the bond equivalent yield for Bond C is to observe that the AOR of 4.35% for a 360-day year can be obtained using Equation 12 for $Year = 360$, $Days = 180$, $FV = 102.175$, and $PV = 100$.

$$AOR = \left(\frac{360}{180} \right) \times \left(\frac{102.175 - 100}{100} \right) = 0.0435$$

Therefore, an add-on rate for a 360-day year only needs to be multiplied by the factor of 365/360 to get the 365-day year bond equivalent yield.

$$\frac{365}{360} \times 0.0435 = 0.04410$$

- D** The quoted rate for Bond D of 4.45% is a bond equivalent yield, which is defined as an add-on rate for a 365-day year.

If the risk of these money market instruments is the same, Bond A offers the highest rate of return on a bond equivalent yield basis, 4.487%.

The third difference between yield measures in the money market and the bond market is the periodicity of the annual rate. Because bond yields-to-maturity are computed using interest rate compounding, there is a well-defined periodicity. For instance, bond yields-to-maturity for semiannual compounding are annualized for a periodicity of two. Money market rates are computed using simple interest without compounding. In the money market, the periodicity is the number of days in the year divided by the number of days to maturity. Therefore, money market rates for different times-to-maturity have different periodicities.

Suppose that an analyst prefers to convert money market rates to a semiannual bond basis so that the rates are directly comparable to yields on bonds that make semiannual coupon payments. The quoted rate for a 90-day money market instrument is 10%, quoted as a bond equivalent yield, which means its periodicity is 365/90. Using Equation 7, the conversion is from $m = 365/90$ to $n = 2$ for $APR_{365/90} = 0.10$.

$$\left(1 + \frac{0.10}{365/90}\right)^{365/90} = \left(1 + \frac{APR_2}{2}\right)^2, \quad APR_2 = 0.10127$$

Therefore, 10% for a periodicity of 365/90 corresponds to 10.127% for a periodicity of two. The difference is significant—12.7 bps. In general, the difference depends on the level of the annual percentage rate. When interest rates are lower, the difference between the annual rates for any two periodicities is reduced.

THE MATURITY STRUCTURE OF INTEREST RATES

4

There are many reasons why the yields-to-maturity on any two bonds are different. Suppose that the yield-to-maturity is higher on Bond X than on Bond Y. The following are some possible reasons for the difference between the yields:

- **Currency**—Bond X could be denominated in a currency with a higher expected rate of inflation than the currency in which Bond Y is denominated.
- **Credit risk**—Bond X could have a non-investment-grade rating of BB, and Bond Y could have an investment-grade rating of AA.
- **Liquidity**—Bond X could be illiquid, and Bond Y could be actively traded.
- **Tax Status**—Interest income on Bond X could be taxable, whereas interest income on Bond Y could be exempt from taxation.
- **Periodicity**—Bond X could make a single annual coupon payment, and its yield-to-maturity could be quoted for a periodicity of one. Bond Y could make monthly coupon payments, and its yield-to-maturity could be annualized for a periodicity of 12.

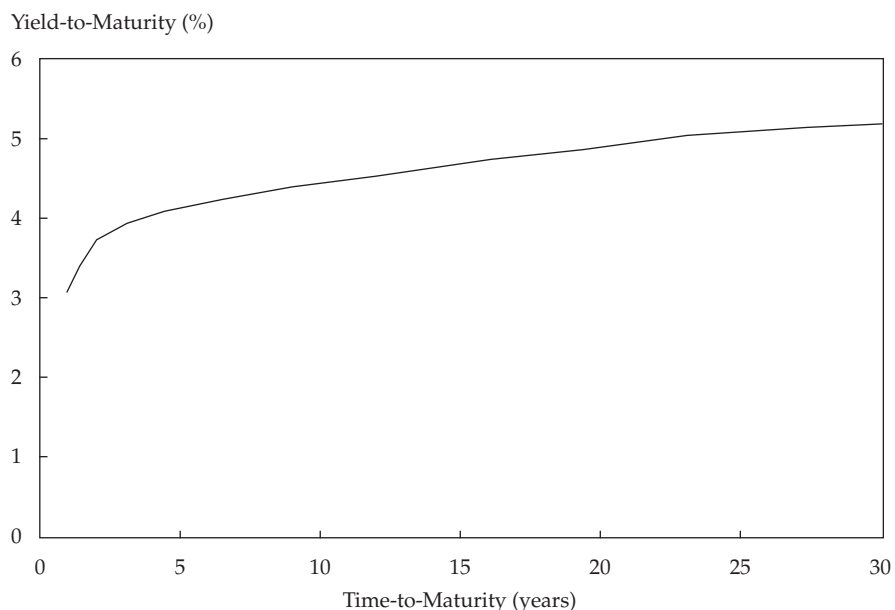
Obviously, another reason is that Bond X and Bond Y could have different times-to-maturity. This factor explaining the differences in yields is called the **maturity structure**, or **term structure**, of interest rates. It involves the analysis of yield curves, which are relationships between yields-to-maturity and times-to-maturity. There are different types of yield curves, depending on the characteristics of the underlying bonds.

In theory, maturity structure should be analyzed for bonds that have the same properties other than time-to-maturity. The bonds should be denominated in the same currency and have the same credit risk, liquidity, and tax status. Their annual rates should be quoted for the same periodicity. Also, they should have the same coupon rate so that they each have the same degree of coupon reinvestment risk. In practice, maturity structure is analyzed for bonds for which these strong assumptions rarely hold.

The ideal dataset would be yields-to-maturity on a series of *zero-coupon* government bonds for a full range of maturities. This dataset is the government bond **spot curve**, sometimes called the zero or “strip” curve (because the coupon payments are “stripped” off of the bonds). The spot, zero, or strip curve is a sequence of yields-to-maturity on zero-coupon bonds. Often, these government spot rates are interpreted as the “risk-free” yields; in this context, “risk-free” refers only to default risk. There still could be a significant amount of inflation risk to the investor, as well as liquidity risk.

A government bond spot curve is illustrated in Exhibit 5 for maturities ranging from 1 to 30 years. The annual yields are stated on a semiannual bond basis, which facilitates comparison to coupon-bearing bonds that make semiannual payments.

Exhibit 5 A Government Bond Spot Curve



This spot curve is upward sloping and flattens for longer times-to-maturity. Longer-term government bonds usually have higher yields than shorter-term bonds. This pattern is typical under normal market conditions. Sometimes, a spot curve is downward sloping in that shorter-term yields are higher than longer-term yields. This downward sloping spot curve is called an inverted yield curve. The theories that attempt to explain the shape of the yield curve and its implications for future financial market conditions are covered in later readings.

This hypothetical spot curve is ideal for analyzing maturity structure because it best meets the “other things being equal” assumption. These government bonds presumably have the same currency, credit risk, liquidity, and tax status. Most importantly, they have no coupon reinvestment risk because there are no coupons to reinvest. However, most actively traded government and corporate bonds make coupon payments. Therefore, analysis of maturity structure usually is based on price data on government bonds that make coupon payments. These coupon bonds might not have the same liquidity and tax status. Older (“seasoned”) bonds tend to be less liquid than newly issued debt because they are owned by “buy-and-hold” institutional and retail investors. Governments issue new debt for regular times-to-maturity—for instance, 5-year and 10-year bonds. The current 6-year bond could be a 10-year bond that was issued four years ago. Also, as interest rates fluctuate, older bonds are priced at a discount or premium to par value, which can lead to tax differences. In some countries, capital gains have different tax treatment than capital losses and interest income.

Analysts usually use only the most recently issued and actively traded government bonds to build a yield curve. These bonds have similar liquidity, and because they are priced closer to par value, they have fewer tax effects. A problem is that there are limited data for the full range of maturities. Therefore, it is necessary to *interpolate* between observed yields. Exhibit 6 illustrates a yield curve for a government that issues 2-year, 3-year, 5-year, 7-year, 10-year, and 30-year bonds that make semiannual coupon payments. Straight-line interpolation is used between those points on the yield curve for coupon bonds.

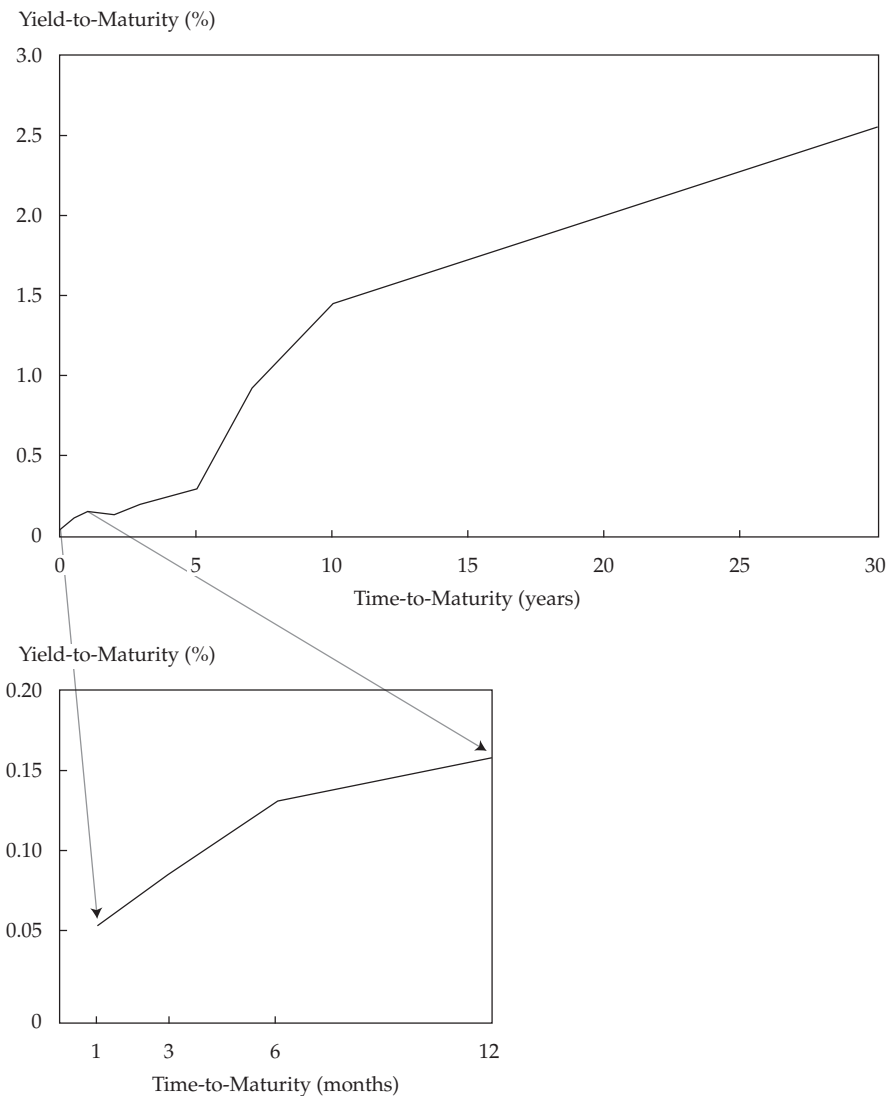
Exhibit 6 A Government Bond Yield Curve

Exhibit 6 also includes yields for short-term government securities having 1 month, 3 months, 6 months, and 12 months to maturity. Although these money market instruments might have been issued and traded on a discount rate basis, they typically are reported as bond equivalent yields. It is important for the analyst to know whether they have been converted to the same periodicity as the longer-term government bonds. If not, the observed yield curve can be misleading because the number of periods in the year is not the same.

In addition to the yield curve on coupon bonds and the spot curve on zero-coupon bonds, maturity structure can be assessed using a **par curve**. A par curve is a sequence of yields-to-maturity such that each bond is priced at par value. The bonds, of course, are assumed to have the same currency, credit risk, liquidity, tax status, and annual yields stated for the same periodicity. Between coupon payment dates, the flat price (not the full price) is assumed to be equal to par value.

The par curve is obtained from a spot curve. On a coupon payment date, the following equation can be used to calculate a par rate given the sequence of spot rates.

$$100 = \frac{PMT}{(1+z_1)^1} + \frac{PMT}{(1+z_2)^2} + \dots + \frac{PMT+100}{(1+z_N)^N} \quad (13)$$

This equation is very similar to Equation 2 whereby $PV = FV = 100$. The problem is to solve for PMT algebraically. Then, $PMT/100$ is equal to the par rate *per period*.

An example illustrates the calculation of the par curve given a spot curve. Suppose the spot rates on government bonds are 5.263% for one year, 5.616% for two years, 6.359% for three years, and 7.008% for four years. These are effective annual rates. The one-year par rate is 5.263%.

$$100 = \frac{PMT+100}{(1.05263)^1}, \quad PMT = 5.263$$

The two-year par rate is 5.606%.

$$100 = \frac{PMT}{(1.05263)^1} + \frac{PMT+100}{(1.05616)^2}, \quad PMT = 5.606$$

The three-year and four-year par rates are 6.306% and 6.899%, respectively.

$$100 = \frac{PMT}{(1.05263)^1} + \frac{PMT}{(1.05616)^2} + \frac{PMT+100}{(1.06359)^3}, \quad PMT = 6.306$$

$$100 = \frac{PMT}{(1.05263)^1} + \frac{PMT}{(1.05616)^2} + \frac{PMT}{(1.06359)^3} + \frac{PMT+100}{(1.07008)^4}, \quad PMT = 6.899$$

The fixed-income securities covered so far have been **cash market securities**. Money market securities often are settled on a “same day,” or “cash settlement,” basis. Other securities have a difference between the trade date and the settlement date. For instance, if a government bond trades on a $T + 1$ basis, there is a one-day difference between the trade date and the settlement date. If a corporate bond trades on a $T + 3$ basis, the seller delivers the bond and the buyer makes payment in three business days. Cash markets are also called spot markets, which can be confusing because spot rate can have two meanings. It can mean the “rate on a bond traded in the spot, or cash, market.” It can also mean “yield on a zero-coupon bond,” which is the meaning of spot rate used in this reading.

A **forward market** is for future delivery, beyond the usual settlement time period in the cash market. Agreement to the terms for the transaction is on the trade date, but delivery of the security and payment for it is deferred to a future date. A **forward rate** is the interest rate on a bond or money market instrument traded in a forward market. For example, suppose that in the cash market, a five-year zero-coupon bond is priced at 81 per 100 of par value. Its yield-to-maturity is 4.2592%, stated on a semiannual bond basis.

$$81 = \frac{100}{(1+r)^{10}}, \quad r = 0.021296, \quad \times 2 = 0.042592$$

Suppose that a dealer agrees to deliver a five-year bond two years into the future for a price of 75 per 100 of par value. The credit risk, liquidity, and tax status of this bond traded in the forward market are the same as the one in the cash market. The forward rate is 5.8372%.

$$75 = \frac{100}{(1+r)^{10}}, \quad r = 0.029186, \quad \times 2 = 0.058372$$

The notation for forward rates is important to understand. Although finance textbook authors use varying notation, the most common market practice is to name this forward rate the “2y5y”. This is pronounced “the two-year into five-year rate,” or simply “the 2’s, 5’s.” The idea is that the first number (two years) refers to the length of the forward period in years from today and the second number (five years) refers to the **tenor** of the underlying bond. The tenor is the time-to-maturity for a bond (or a derivative contract). Therefore, 5.8372% is the “2y5y” forward rate for the zero-coupon bond—the five-year yield two years into the future. Note that the bond that will be a five-year zero in two years currently has seven years to maturity. In the money market, the forward rate usually refers to months. For instance, an analyst might inquire about the “1m6m” forward rate on Euribor, which is the rate on six-month Euribor one month into the future.

Implied forward rates (also known as forward yields) are calculated from spot rates. An implied forward rate is a break-even reinvestment rate. It links the return on an investment in a shorter-term zero-coupon bond to the return on an investment in a longer-term zero-coupon bond. Suppose that the shorter-term bond matures in A periods and the longer-term bond matures in B periods. The yields-to-maturity per period on these bonds are denoted z_A and z_B . The first is an A -period zero-coupon bond trading in the cash market. The second is a B -period zero-coupon cash market bond. The implied forward rate between period A and period B is denoted $IFR_{A,B-A}$. It is a forward rate on a security that starts in period A and ends in period B . Its tenor is $B - A$ periods.

Equation 14 is a general formula for the relationship between the two spot rates and the implied forward rate.

$$(1 + z_A)^A \times (1 + IFR_{A,B-A})^{B-A} = (1 + z_B)^B \quad (14)$$

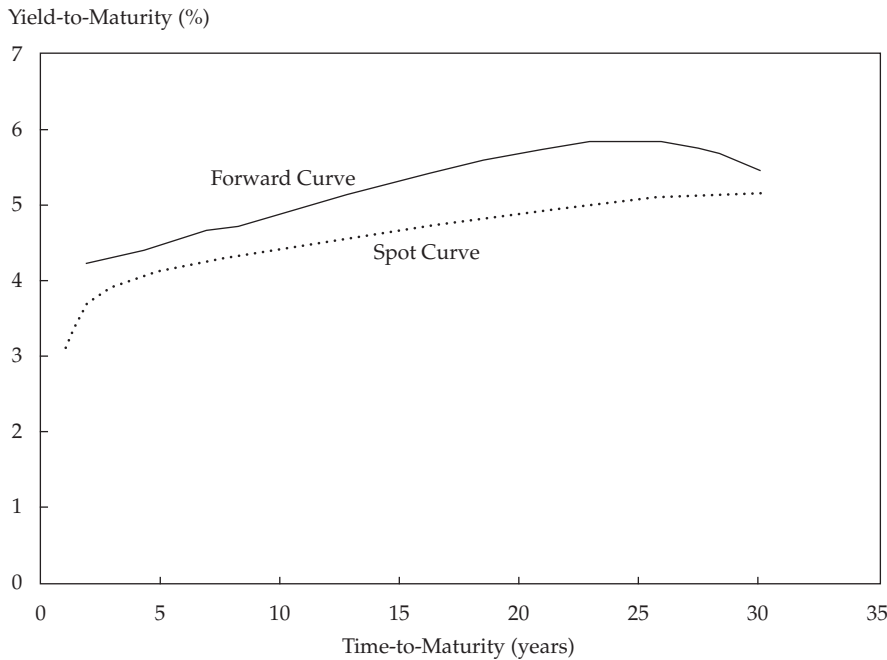
Suppose that the yields-to-maturity on three-year and four-year zero-coupon bonds are 3.65% and 4.18%, respectively, stated on a semiannual bond basis. An analyst would like to know the “3y1y” implied forward rate, which is the implied one-year forward yield three years into the future. Therefore, $A = 6$ (periods), $B = 8$ (periods), $B - A = 2$ (periods), $z_6 = 0.0365/2$ (per period), and $z_8 = 0.0418/2$ (per period).

$$\left(1 + \frac{0.0365}{2}\right)^6 \times (1 + IFR_{6,2})^2 = \left(1 + \frac{0.0418}{2}\right)^8, \quad IFR_{6,2} = 0.02889, \\ \times 2 = 0.05778$$

The “3y1y” implied forward yield is 5.778%, annualized for a periodicity of two.

Equation 14 can be used to construct a **forward curve**. A forward curve is a series of forward rates, each having the same time frame. These forward rates might be observed on transactions in the derivatives market. Often, the forward rates are implied from transactions in the cash market. Exhibit 7 displays the forward curve that is calculated from the government bond spot curve shown in Exhibit 5. These are one-year forward rates stated on a semiannual bond basis.

Exhibit 7 A Government Bond Spot Curve and Forward Curve



A forward rate can be interpreted as an incremental, or marginal, return for extending the time-to-maturity for an additional time period. Suppose an investor has a four-year investment horizon and is choosing between buying a three-year zero-coupon bond that is priced to yield 3.65% and a four-year zero that is priced to yield 4.18%. The incremental, or marginal, return for the fourth year is 5.778%, the “3y1y” implied forward rate. If the investor’s view on future bond yields is that the one-year yield in three years is likely to be less than 5.778%, the investor might prefer to buy the four-year bond. However, if the investor’s view is that the one-year yield will be more than the implied forward rate, the investor might prefer the three-year bond and the opportunity to reinvest at the expected higher rate. That explains why an implied forward rate is the *breakeven reinvestment rate*. Implied forward rates are very useful to investors as well as bond issuers in making maturity decisions.

EXAMPLE 11

Computing Forward Rates

Suppose that an investor observes these prices and yields-to-maturity on zero-coupon government bonds:

Maturity	Price	Yield-to-Maturity
1 year	97.50	2.548%
2 years	94.25	2.983%
3 years	91.75	2.891%

The prices are per 100 of par value. The yields-to-maturity are stated on a semiannual bond basis.

- 1 Compute the “1y1y” and “2y1y” implied forward rates, stated on a semiannual bond basis.

2 The investor has a three-year investment horizon and is choosing between (1) buying the two-year zero and reinvesting in another one-year zero in two years and (2) buying and holding to maturity the three-year zero. The investor decides to buy the two-year bond. Based on this decision, which of the following is the minimum yield-to-maturity the investor expects on one-year zeros two years from now?

- A 2.548%
- B 2.707%
- C 2.983%

Solution to 1:

The “1y1y” implied forward rate is 3.419%. In Equation 14, $A = 2$ (periods), $B = 4$ (periods), $B - A = 2$ (periods), $z_2 = 0.02548/2$ (per period), and $z_4 = 0.02983/2$ (per period).

$$\left(1 + \frac{0.02548}{2}\right)^2 \times (1 + IFR_{2,2})^2 = \left(1 + \frac{0.02983}{2}\right)^4, \quad IFR_{2,2} = 0.017095, \\ \times 2 = 0.03419$$

The “2y1y” implied forward rate is 2.707%. In Equation 14, $A = 4$ (periods), $B = 6$ (periods), $B - A = 2$ (periods), $z_4 = 0.02983/2$ (per period), and $z_6 = 0.02891/2$ (per period).

$$\left(1 + \frac{0.02983}{2}\right)^4 \times (1 + IFR_{4,2})^2 = \left(1 + \frac{0.02891}{2}\right)^6, \quad IFR_{4,2} = 0.013536, \\ \times 2 = 0.02707$$

Solution to 2:

B is correct. The investor’s view is that the one-year yield in two years will be greater than or equal to 2.707%.

The “2y1y” implied forward rate of 2.707% is the breakeven reinvestment rate. If the investor expects the one-year rate in two years to be less than that, the investor would prefer to buy the three-year zero. If the investor expects the one-year rate in two years to be greater than 2.707%, the investor might prefer to buy the two-year zero and reinvest the cash flow.

The forward curve has many applications in fixed-income analysis. Forward rates are used to make maturity choice decisions. They are used to identify arbitrage opportunities between transactions in the cash market for bonds and in derivatives markets. Forward rates are important in the valuation of derivatives, especially interest rate swaps and options. Those applications for the forward curve are covered in other readings.

Forward rates can be used to value a fixed-income security in the same manner as spot rates because they are interconnected. The spot curve can be calculated from the forward curve, and the forward curve can be calculated from the spot curve. Either curve can be used to value a fixed-rate bond. An example will illustrate this process.

Suppose the current forward curve for one-year rates is the following:

Time Period	Forward Rate
0y1y	1.88%
1y1y	2.77%
2y1y	3.54%
3y1y	4.12%

These are annual rates stated for a periodicity of one. They are effective annual rates. The first rate, the “0y1y,” is the one-year spot rate. The others are one-year forward rates. Given these rates, the spot curve can be calculated as the *geometric average* of the forward rates.

The two-year implied spot rate is 2.3240%.

$$(1.0188 \times 1.0277) = (1 + z_2)^2, z_2 = 0.023240$$

The following are the equations for the three-year and four-year implied spot rates.

$$(1.0188 \times 1.0277 \times 1.0354) = (1 + z_3)^3, z_3 = 0.027278$$

$$(1.0188 \times 1.0277 \times 1.0354 \times 1.0412) = (1 + z_4)^4, z_4 = 0.030741$$

The three-year implied spot rate is 2.7278%, and the four-year spot rate is 3.0741%.

Suppose that an analyst needs to value a four-year, 3.75% annual coupon payment bond that has the same risks as the bonds used to obtain the forward curve. Using the implied spot rates, the value of the bond is 102.637 per 100 of par value.

$$\frac{3.75}{(1.0188)^1} + \frac{3.75}{(1.023240)^2} + \frac{3.75}{(1.027278)^3} + \frac{103.75}{(1.030741)^4} = 102.637$$

The bond also can be valued using the forward curve.

$$\frac{3.75}{(1.0188)} + \frac{3.75}{(1.0188 \times 1.0277)} + \frac{3.75}{(1.0188 \times 1.0277 \times 1.0354)} + \frac{103.75}{(1.0188 \times 1.0277 \times 1.0354 \times 1.0412)} = 102.637$$

YIELD SPREADS

5

A yield spread, in general, is the difference in yield between different fixed income securities. This section describes a number of yield spread measures.

5.1 Yield Spreads over Benchmark Rates

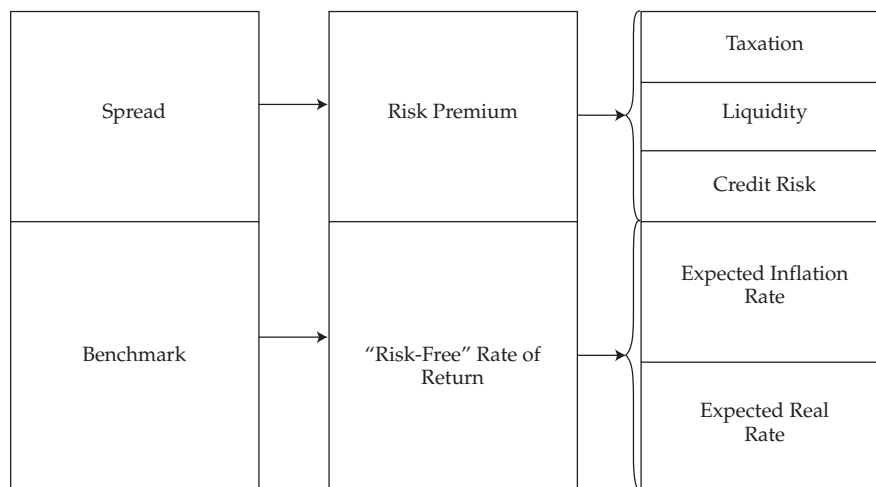
In fixed-income security analysis, it is important to understand *why* bond prices and yields-to-maturity change. To do this, it is useful to separate a yield-to-maturity into two components: the **benchmark** and the **spread**. The benchmark yield for a fixed-income security with a given time-to-maturity is the base rate, often a government bond yield. The spread is the difference between the yield-to-maturity and the benchmark.

The reason for this separation is to distinguish between macroeconomic and microeconomic factors that affect the bond price and, therefore, its yield-to-maturity. The benchmark captures the macroeconomic factors: the expected rate of inflation in the currency in which the bond is denominated, general economic growth and the business cycle, foreign exchange rates, and the impact of monetary and fiscal policy. Changes in those factors impact all bonds in the market, and the effect is seen mostly in changes in the benchmark yield. The spread captures the microeconomic factors specific to the bond issuer and the bond itself: credit risk of the issuer and changes in the quality rating on the bond, liquidity and trading in comparable securities, and the tax status of the bond. It should be noted, however, that general yield spreads across issuers can widen and narrow with changes in macroeconomic factors.

Exhibit 8 illustrates the building blocks of the yield-to-maturity, starting with the benchmark and the spread. The benchmark is often called the risk-free rate of return. Also, the benchmark can be broken down into the expected real rate and the expected

inflation rate in the economy. The yield spread is called the risk premium over the “risk-free” rate of return. The risk premium provides the investor with compensation for the credit and liquidity risks, and possibly the tax impact of holding a specific bond.

Exhibit 8 Yield-to-Maturity Building Blocks



The benchmark varies across financial markets. Fixed-rate bonds often use a government benchmark security with the same time-to-maturity as, or the closest time-to-maturity to, the specified bond. This benchmark is usually the most recently issued government bond and is called the **on-the-run** security. The on-the-run government bond is the most actively traded security and has a coupon rate closest to the current market discount rate for that maturity. That implies that it is priced close to par value. Seasoned government bonds are called **off-the-run**. On-the-run bonds typically trade at slightly lower yields-to-maturity than off-the-run bonds having the same or similar times-to-maturity because of differences in demand for the securities and, sometimes, differences in the cost of financing the government security in the repo market.

A frequently used benchmark for floating-rate notes is Libor. As a composite interbank rate, it is not a risk-free rate. The yield spread over a specific benchmark is referred to as the **benchmark spread** and is usually measured in basis points. If no benchmark exists for a specific bond's tenor or a bond has an unusual maturity, interpolation is used to derive an implied benchmark. Also, bonds with very long tenors are priced over the longest available benchmark bond. For example, 100-year bonds (often called “century bonds”) in the United States are priced over the 30-year US Treasury benchmark rate.

In the United Kingdom, the United States, and Japan, the benchmark rate for fixed-rate bonds is a government bond yield. The yield spread in basis points over an actual or interpolated government bond is known as the **G-spread**. The spread over a government bond is the return for bearing greater credit, liquidity, and other risks relative to the sovereign bond. Euro-denominated corporate bonds are priced over a EUR interest rate swap benchmark. For example, a newly issued five-year EUR bond might be priced at a rate of “mid-swaps” plus 150 bps, where “mid-swaps” is the average of the bid and offered swap rates. The yield spread is over a five-year EUR swap rate rather than a government benchmark. Note that the government bond yield or swap rate used as the benchmark for a specific corporate bond will change over time as the remaining time-to-maturity changes.

The yield spread of a specific bond over the standard swap rate in that currency of the same tenor is known as the **I-spread** or **interpolated spread** to the swap curve. This yield spread over Libor allows comparison of bonds with differing credit and liquidity risks against an interbank lending benchmark. Issuers often use the Libor spread to determine the relative cost of fixed-rate bonds versus floating-rate alternatives, such as an FRN or commercial paper. Investors use the Libor spread as a measure of a bond's credit risk. Whereas a standard interest rate swap involves an exchange of fixed for floating cash flows based on a floating index, an **asset swap** converts the periodic fixed coupon of a specific bond to a Libor plus or minus a spread. If the bond is priced close to par, this conversion approximates the price of a bond's credit risk over the Libor index. Exhibit 9 illustrates these yield spreads using the Bloomberg Fixed Income Relative Value (FIRV) page.

This example is for the 5.70% IBM bond that matures on 14 September 2017. The spreads are in the top-left corner of the page. The bond's flat price was 120.878 per 100 of par value on 1 May 2012, and its yield-to-maturity was 1.618%. On that date, the yield spread over a particular Treasury benchmark was 85 bps. Its G-spread over an interpolated government bond yield was 77 bps. These two spreads typically differ by a few basis points, especially if the benchmark is on-the-run and has a somewhat different maturity date. The bond's I-spread was 50 bps. That Libor spread is smaller than the G-spread because five-year Treasury yields were lower than five-year Libor swap rates at that time. The use of these spreads in investor strategies will be covered in more detail in later readings. In general, an analyst will track these spreads relative to their averages and historical highs and lows in an attempt to identify relative value.

5.2 Yield Spreads over the Benchmark Yield Curve

A yield curve shows the relationship between yields-to-maturity and times-to-maturity for securities with the same risk profile. For example, the government bond yield curve is the relationship between the yields of on-the-run government bonds and their times-to-maturity. The swap yield curve shows the relationship between fixed Libor swap rates and their times-to-maturity.

Each of these yield curves represents the term structure of benchmark interest rates, whether for "risk-free" government yields or "risky" fixed swap rates. Benchmark yield curves tend to be upward-sloping because investors typically demand a premium for holding longer-term securities. In general, investors face greater price risk for a given change in yield for longer-term bonds. This topic is covered further in the reading "Understanding Fixed-Income Risk and Return." The term structure of interest rates is dynamic, with short-term rates driven by central bank policy and longer-term rates affected by long-term growth and inflation expectations.

Isolating credit risk over varying times-to-maturity gives rise to a term structure of credit spreads that is distinct for each borrower. The G-spread and I-spread each use the same discount rate for each cash flow. Another approach is to calculate a constant yield spread over a government (or interest rate swap) spot curve instead. This spread is known as the **zero volatility spread (Z-spread)** of a bond over the benchmark rate. In Exhibit 9, the Z-spread for the IBM bond was reported to be 52 bps.

The Z-spread over the benchmark spot curve can be calculated with Equation 15:

$$PV = \frac{PMT}{(1 + z_1 + Z)^1} + \frac{PMT}{(1 + z_2 + Z)^2} + \dots + \frac{PMT + FV}{(1 + z_N + Z)^N} \quad (15)$$

The benchmark spot rates— z_1, z_2, \dots, z_N —are derived from the government yield curve (or from fixed rates on interest rate swaps). Z is the Z-spread per period and is the same for all time periods. In Equation 15, N is an integer, so the calculation is on a coupon date when the accrued interest is zero. Sometimes, the Z-spread is

Exhibit 9 Bloomberg FIRV Page for the 5.70% IBM Bond

GRAB		IBM 5.7 09/14/17 Corp		99) Feedback		Fixed Income Relative Value		Corp		FIRV		
120.878/120.878		1.618/1.618		TRAC @ 04/30		95) Buy		96) Sell		97) Settings		
BVAL as of 05/01/2012 - LO 4PM		11/01/11		-05/01/12		6 Months						
1) Spreads to Curves (RV)	Spread	Low	Range	High	Avg +/-	StdDev	#SDs	Trend				
2) Spread-Bench	85	71	◆ Avg ● Now	112	89	-4	11	-0.4				
3) G-Spread	77	59		91	74	3	9	0.3				
4) I-Spread	50	32		55	43	7	5	1.3				
5) Z-Spread	52	36		58	46	6	5	1.1				
6) Credit Rel Value (CRVD)	-24	12		-25	-8	-16	10	1.7				
7) CDS Basis												
8) Bond vs Comparables (COMB)	ASW	Difference in comparable ASW over 6 Months										
9) INTU 5 3/4 03/17	Price	Yield	Spread	Diff	Lo	Range	Hi	Avg +/-	bps	#SDs	Trend	
10) ORCL 5 3/4 04/18	115.2	2.42	146	-89	-155		-63	-126	37	1.6		
IBM 5.7 09/17	121.6	1.89	65	-8	-48		0	-16	8	0.7		
11) TXN 2 3/8 05/16	120.5	1.68	57	30	2		31	19	11	1.7		
12) INTC 1.95 10/16	104.8	1.14	27	37	9		39	26	11	1.4		
13) MSFT 2 1/2 02/16	103.4	1.17	20	56	31		58	47	9	1.5		
Avg of Comparables	106.2	0.83	1	52	5		10	-10	15	1.7		
15) Avg Sector US DOMESTIC IG TE	1.49	2.11	123	-66	-87		-52	-71	5	0.5		
16) BVAL Price	120.5	1.68										
Australia 61 2 9777 8600	Brazil 5511 3048 4500	Europe 44 20 7330 7500	Germany 49 69 9204 1210	Hong Kong 852 2977 6000	Japan 81 3 3201 8900	Singapore 65 6212 1000	U.S. 1 212 318 2000	Copyright 2012 Bloomberg Finance L.P.	SN 313730 6993-624-3 01-May-12 16:13:16 EDT	GMT-4:00		

Used with permission of Bloomberg Businessweek Copyright © 2013. All rights reserved.

called the static spread because it is constant (and has zero volatility). In practice, the Z-spread is usually calculated in a spreadsheet using a goal seek function or similar solver function.

The Z-spread is also used to calculate the **option-adjusted spread** (OAS) on a callable bond. The OAS, like the option-adjusted yield, is based on an option-pricing model and an assumption about future interest rate volatility. Then, the value of the embedded call option, which is stated in basis points per year, is subtracted from the yield spread. In particular, it is subtracted from the Z-spread:

$$\text{OAS} = \text{Z-spread} - \text{Option value (in basis points per year)}$$

This important topic is covered in later readings.

EXAMPLE 12

The G-Spread and the Z-Spread

A 6% annual coupon corporate bond with two years remaining to maturity is trading at a price of 100.125. The two-year, 4% annual payment government benchmark bond is trading at a price of 100.750. The one-year and two-year government spot rates are 2.10% and 3.635%, respectively, stated as effective annual rates.

- 1 Calculate the G-spread, the spread between the yields-to-maturity on the corporate bond and the government bond having the same maturity.
- 2 Demonstrate that the Z-spread is 234.22 bps.

Solution to 1:

The yield-to-maturity for the corporate bond is 5.932%.

$$100.125 = \frac{6}{(1+r)^1} + \frac{106}{(1+r)^2}, \quad r = 0.05932$$

The yield-to-maturity for the government benchmark bond is 3.605%.

$$100.750 = \frac{4}{(1+r)^1} + \frac{104}{(1+r)^2}, \quad r = 0.03605$$

The G-spread is 232.7 bps: $0.05932 - 0.03605 = 0.02327$.

Solution to 2:

Solve for the value of the corporate bond using $z_1 = 0.0210$, $z_2 = 0.03635$, and $Z = 0.023422$:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{6}{(1 + 0.0210 + 0.023422)^1} + \frac{106}{(1 + 0.03635 + 0.023422)^2} \\ = \frac{6}{(1.044422)^1} + \frac{106}{(1.059772)^2} = 100.125 \end{aligned}$$

SUMMARY

This reading covers the principles and techniques that are used in the valuation of fixed-rate bonds, as well as floating-rate notes and money market instruments. These building blocks are used extensively in fixed-income analysis. The following are the main points made in the reading:

- The market discount rate is the rate of return required by investors given the risk of the investment in the bond.
- A bond is priced at a premium above par value when the coupon rate is greater than the market discount rate.
- A bond is priced at a discount below par value when the coupon rate is less than the market discount rate.
- The amount of any premium or discount is the present value of the “excess” or “deficiency” in the coupon payments relative to the yield-to-maturity.
- The yield-to-maturity, the internal rate of return on the cash flows, is the implied market discount rate given the price of the bond.
- A bond price moves inversely with its market discount rate.
- The relationship between a bond price and its market discount rate is convex.
- The price of a lower-coupon bond is more volatile than the price of a higher-coupon bond, other things being equal.
- Generally, the price of a longer-term bond is more volatile than the price of shorter-term bond, other things being equal. An exception to this phenomenon can occur on low-coupon (but not zero-coupon) bonds that are priced at a discount to par value.
- Assuming no default, premium and discount bond prices are “pulled to par” as maturity nears.
- A spot rate is the yield-to-maturity on a zero-coupon bond.
- A yield-to-maturity can be approximated as a weighted average of the underlying spot rates.
- Between coupon dates, the full (or invoice, or “dirty”) price of a bond is split between the flat (or quoted, or “clean”) price and the accrued interest.
- Flat prices are quoted to not misrepresent the daily increase in the full price as a result of interest accruals.
- Accrued interest is calculated as a proportional share of the next coupon payment using either the actual/actual or 30/360 methods to count days.
- Matrix pricing is used to value illiquid bonds by using prices and yields on comparable securities having the same or similar credit risk, coupon rate, and maturity.
- The periodicity of an annual interest rate is the number of periods in the year.
- A yield quoted on a semiannual bond basis is an annual rate for a periodicity of two. It is the yield per semiannual period times two.
- The general rule for periodicity conversions is that compounding more frequently at a lower annual rate corresponds to compounding less frequently at a higher annual rate.
- Street convention yields assume payments are made on scheduled dates, neglecting weekends and holidays.

- The current yield is the annual coupon payment divided by the flat price, thereby neglecting as a measure of the investor's rate of return the time value of money, any accrued interest, and the gain from buying at a discount and the loss from buying at a premium.
- The simple yield is like the current yield but includes the straight-line amortization of the discount or premium.
- The yield-to-worst on a callable bond is the lowest of the yield-to-first-call, yield-to-second-call, and so on, calculated using the call price for the future value and the call date for the number of periods.
- The option-adjusted yield on a callable bond is the yield-to-maturity after adding the theoretical value of the call option to the price.
- A floating-rate note (floater, or FRN) maintains a more stable price than a fixed-rate note because interest payments adjust for changes in market interest rates.
- The quoted margin on a floater is typically the specified yield spread over or under the reference rate, which often is Libor.
- The discount margin on a floater is the spread required by investors, and to which the quoted margin must be set, for the FRN to trade at par value on a rate reset date.
- Money market instruments, having one year or less time-to-maturity, are quoted on a discount rate or add-on rate basis.
- Money market discount rates understate the investor's rate of return (and the borrower's cost of funds) because the interest income is divided by the face value or the total amount redeemed at maturity, and not by the amount of the investment.
- Money market instruments need to be converted to a common basis for analysis.
- A money market bond equivalent yield is an add-on rate for a 365-day year.
- The periodicity of a money market instrument is the number of days in the year divided by the number of days to maturity. Therefore, money market instruments with different times-to-maturity have annual rates for different periodicities.
- In theory, the maturity structure, or term structure, of interest rates is the relationship between yields-to-maturity and times-to-maturity on bonds having the same currency, credit risk, liquidity, tax status, and periodicity.
- A spot curve is a series of yields-to-maturity on zero-coupon bonds.
- A frequently used yield curve is a series of yields-to-maturity on coupon bonds.
- A par curve is a series of yields-to-maturity assuming the bonds are priced at par value.
- In a cash market, the delivery of the security and cash payment is made on a settlement date within a customary time period after the trade date—for example, " $T + 3$."
- In a forward market, the delivery of the security and cash payment is made on a predetermined future date.
- A forward rate is the interest rate on a bond or money market instrument traded in a forward market.
- An implied forward rate (or forward yield) is the breakeven reinvestment rate linking the return on an investment in a shorter-term zero-coupon bond to the return on an investment in a longer-term zero-coupon bond.
- An implied forward curve can be calculated from the spot curve.

- Implied spot rates can be calculated as geometric averages of forward rates.
- A fixed-income bond can be valued using a market discount rate, a series of spot rates, or a series of forward rates.
- A bond yield-to-maturity can be separated into a benchmark and a spread.
- Changes in benchmark rates capture macroeconomic factors that affect all bonds in the market—inflation, economic growth, foreign exchange rates, and monetary and fiscal policy.
- Changes in spreads typically capture microeconomic factors that affect the particular bond—credit risk, liquidity, and tax effects.
- Benchmark rates are usually yields-to-maturity on government bonds or fixed rates on interest rate swaps.
- A G-spread is the spread over or under a government bond rate, and an I-spread is the spread over or under an interest rate swap rate.
- A G-spread or an I-spread can be based on a specific benchmark rate or on a rate interpolated from the benchmark yield curve.
- A Z-spread (zero-volatility spread) is based on the entire benchmark spot curve. It is the constant spread that is added to each spot rate such that the present value of the cash flows matches the price of the bond.
- An option-adjusted spread (OAS) on a callable bond is the Z-spread minus the theoretical value of the embedded call option.

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

- 1 A portfolio manager is considering the purchase of a bond with a 5.5% coupon rate that pays interest annually and matures in three years. If the required rate of return on the bond is 5%, the price of the bond per 100 of par value is *closest* to:
 - A 98.65.
 - B 101.36.
 - C 106.43.
- 2 A bond with two years remaining until maturity offers a 3% coupon rate with interest paid annually. At a market discount rate of 4%, the price of this bond per 100 of par value is *closest* to:
 - A 95.34.
 - B 98.00.
 - C 98.11.
- 3 An investor who owns a bond with a 9% coupon rate that pays interest semiannually and matures in three years is considering its sale. If the required rate of return on the bond is 11%, the price of the bond per 100 of par value is *closest* to:
 - A 95.00.
 - B 95.11.
 - C 105.15.
- 4 A bond offers an annual coupon rate of 4%, with interest paid semiannually. The bond matures in two years. At a market discount rate of 6%, the price of this bond per 100 of par value is *closest* to:
 - A 93.07.
 - B 96.28.
 - C 96.33.
- 5 A bond offers an annual coupon rate of 5%, with interest paid semiannually. The bond matures in seven years. At a market discount rate of 3%, the price of this bond per 100 of par value is *closest* to:
 - A 106.60.
 - B 112.54.
 - C 143.90.
- 6 A zero-coupon bond matures in 15 years. At a market discount rate of 4.5% per year and assuming annual compounding, the price of the bond per 100 of par value is *closest* to:
 - A 51.30.
 - B 51.67.
 - C 71.62.
- 7 Consider the following two bonds that pay interest annually:

Bond	Coupon Rate	Time-to-Maturity
A	5%	2 years
B	3%	2 years

At a market discount rate of 4%, the price difference between Bond A and Bond B per 100 of par value is *closest* to:

- A 3.70.
- B 3.77.
- C 4.00.

The following information relates to Questions 8 and 9

Bond	Price	Coupon Rate	Time-to-Maturity
A	101.886	5%	2 years
B	100.000	6%	2 years
C	97.327	5%	3 years

- 8 Which bond offers the lowest yield-to-maturity?
- A Bond A
 - B Bond B
 - C Bond C
- 9 Which bond will *most likely* experience the smallest percent change in price if the market discount rates for all three bonds increase by 100 basis points?
- A Bond A
 - B Bond B
 - C Bond C
-
- 10 Suppose a bond's price is expected to increase by 5% if its market discount rate decreases by 100 basis points. If the bond's market discount rate increases by 100 basis points, the bond price is *most likely* to change by:
- A 5%.
 - B less than 5%.
 - C more than 5%.

The following information relates to Questions 11 and 12

Bond	Coupon Rate	Maturity (years)
A	6%	10
B	6%	5
C	8%	5

All three bonds are currently trading at par value.

- 11 Relative to Bond C, for a 200 basis point decrease in the required rate of return, Bond B will *most likely* exhibit a(n):
- A equal percentage price change.
 - B greater percentage price change.
 - C smaller percentage price change.
- 12 Which bond will *most likely* experience the greatest percentage change in price if the market discount rates for all three bonds increase by 100 basis points?
- A Bond A
 - B Bond B
 - C Bond C

- 13 An investor considers the purchase of a 2-year bond with a 5% coupon rate, with interest paid annually. Assuming the sequence of spot rates shown below, the price of the bond is *closest* to:

Time-to-Maturity	Spot Rates
1 year	3%
2 years	4%

- A 101.93.
 - B 102.85.
 - C 105.81.
- 14 A 3-year bond offers a 10% coupon rate with interest paid annually. Assuming the following sequence of spot rates, the price of the bond is *closest* to:

Time-to-Maturity	Spot Rates
1 year	8.0%
2 years	9.0%
3 years	9.5%

- A 96.98.
- B 101.46.
- C 102.95.

The following information relates to Questions 15–17

Bond	Coupon Rate	Time-to-Maturity	Time-to-Maturity	Spot Rates
X	8%	3 years	1 year	8%
Y	7%	3 years	2 years	9%
Z	6%	3 years	3 years	10%

All three bonds pay interest annually.

15 Based upon the given sequence of spot rates, the price of Bond X is *closest* to:

- A 95.02.
- B 95.28.
- C 97.63.

16 Based upon the given sequence of spot rates, the price of Bond Y is *closest* to:

- A 87.50.
- B 92.54.
- C 92.76.

17 Based upon the given sequence of spot rates, the yield-to-maturity of Bond Z is *closest* to:

- A 9.00%.
- B 9.92%.
- C 11.93%

18 Bond dealers *most* often quote the:

- A flat price.
- B full price.
- C full price plus accrued interest.

The following information relates to Questions 19–21

Bond G, described in the exhibit below, is sold for settlement on 16 June 2014.

Annual Coupon	5%
Coupon Payment Frequency	Semiannual
Interest Payment Dates	10 April and 10 October
Maturity Date	10 October 2016
Day Count Convention	30/360
Annual Yield-to-Maturity	4%

19 The full price that Bond G will settle at on 16 June 2014 is *closest* to:

- A 102.36.
- B 103.10.

- C 103.65.
- 20 The accrued interest per 100 of par value for Bond G on the settlement date of 16 June 2014 is *closest* to:
- A 0.46.
B 0.73.
C 0.92.
- 21 The flat price for Bond G on the settlement date of 16 June 2014 is *closest* to:
- A 102.18.
B 103.10.
C 104.02.
-
- 22 Matrix pricing allows investors to estimate market discount rates and prices for bonds:
- A with different coupon rates.
B that are not actively traded.
C with different credit quality.
- 23 When underwriting new corporate bonds, matrix pricing is used to get an estimate of the:
- A required yield spread over the benchmark rate.
B market discount rate of other comparable corporate bonds.
C yield-to-maturity on a government bond having a similar time-to-maturity.
- 24 A bond with 20 years remaining until maturity is currently trading for 111 per 100 of par value. The bond offers a 5% coupon rate with interest paid semiannually. The bond's annual yield-to-maturity is *closest* to:
- A 2.09%.
B 4.18%.
C 4.50%.
- 25 The annual yield-to-maturity, stated for with a periodicity of 12, for a 4-year, zero-coupon bond priced at 75 per 100 of par value is *closest* to:
- A 6.25%.
B 7.21%.
C 7.46%.
- 26 A 5-year, 5% semiannual coupon payment corporate bond is priced at 104.967 per 100 of par value. The bond's yield-to-maturity, quoted on a semiannual bond basis, is 3.897%. An analyst has been asked to convert to a monthly periodicity. Under this conversion, the yield-to-maturity is *closest* to:
- A 3.87%.
B 4.95%.
C 7.67%.

The following information relates to Questions 27–30

A bond with 5 years remaining until maturity is currently trading for 101 per 100 of par value. The bond offers a 6% coupon rate with interest paid semiannually. The bond is first callable in 3 years, and is callable after that date on coupon dates according to the following schedule:

End of Year	Call Price
3	102
4	101
5	100

27 The bond's annual yield-to-maturity is *closest* to:

- A 2.88%.
- B 5.77%.
- C 5.94%.

28 The bond's annual yield-to-first-call is *closest* to:

- A 3.12%.
- B 6.11%.
- C 6.25%.

29 The bond's annual yield-to-second-call is *closest* to:

- A 2.97%.
- B 5.72%.
- C 5.94%.

30 The bond's yield-to-worst is *closest* to:

- A 2.88%.
- B 5.77%.
- C 6.25%.

31 A two-year floating-rate note pays 6-month Libor plus 80 basis points. The floater is priced at 97 per 100 of par value. Current 6-month Libor is 1.00%. Assume a 30/360 day-count convention and evenly spaced periods. The discount margin for the floater in basis points (bps) is *closest* to:

- A 180 bps.
- B 236 bps.
- C 420 bps.

32 An analyst evaluates the following information relating to floating rate notes (FRNs) issued at par value that have 3-month Libor as a reference rate:

Floating Rate Note	Quoted Margin	Discount Margin
X	0.40%	0.32%
Y	0.45%	0.45%
Z	0.55%	0.72%

- Based only on the information provided, the FRN that will be priced at a premium on the next reset date is:
- A FRN X.
 - B FRN Y.
 - C FRN Z.
- 33 A 365-day year bank certificate of deposit has an initial principal amount of USD 96.5 million and a redemption amount due at maturity of USD 100 million. The number of days between settlement and maturity is 350. The bond equivalent yield is *closest* to:
- A 3.48%.
 - B 3.65%.
 - C 3.78%.
- 34 The bond equivalent yield of a 180-day banker's acceptance quoted at a discount rate of 4.25% for a 360-day year is *closest* to:
- A 4.31%.
 - B 4.34%.
 - C 4.40%.
- 35 Which of the following statements describing a par curve is *incorrect*?
- A A par curve is obtained from a spot curve.
 - B All bonds on a par curve are assumed to have different credit risk.
 - C A par curve is a sequence of yields-to-maturity such that each bond is priced at par value.
- 36 A yield curve constructed from a sequence of yields-to-maturity on zero-coupon bonds is the:
- A par curve.
 - B spot curve.
 - C forward curve.
- 37 The rate, interpreted to be the incremental return for extending the time-to-maturity of an investment for an additional time period, is the:
- A add-on rate.
 - B forward rate.
 - C yield-to-maturity.

The following information relates to Questions 38 and 39

Time Period	Forward Rate
"0y1y"	0.80%
"1y1y"	1.12%
"2y1y"	3.94%
"3y1y"	3.28%
"4y1y"	3.14%

All rates are annual rates stated for a periodicity of one (effective annual rates).

- 38 The 3-year implied spot rate is *closest* to:
- A 1.18%.
 - B 1.94%.
 - C 2.28%.
- 39 The value per 100 of par value of a two-year, 3.5% coupon bond, with interest payments paid annually, is *closest* to:
- A 101.58.
 - B 105.01.
 - C 105.82.

- 40 The spread component of a specific bond's yield-to-maturity is *least likely* impacted by changes in:
- A its tax status.
 - B its quality rating.
 - C inflation in its currency of denomination.
- 41 The yield spread of a specific bond over the standard swap rate in that currency of the same tenor is *best* described as the:
- A I-spread.
 - B Z-spread.
 - C G-spread.

The following information relates to Question 42

Bond	Coupon Rate	Time-to-Maturity	Price
UK Government Benchmark Bond	2%	3 years	100.25
UK Corporate Bond	5%	3 years	100.65

Both bonds pay interest annually. The current three-year EUR interest rate swap benchmark is 2.12%.

- 42 The G-spread in basis points (bps) on the UK corporate bond is *closest* to:
- A 264 bps.
 - B 285 bps.
 - C 300 bps.

- 43 A corporate bond offers a 5% coupon rate and has exactly 3 years remaining to maturity. Interest is paid annually. The following rates are from the benchmark spot curve:

Time-to-Maturity	Spot Rate
1 year	4.86%
2 years	4.95%
3 years	5.65%

The bond is currently trading at a Z-spread of 234 basis points. The value of the bond is *closest to*:

- A 92.38.
 - B 98.35.
 - C 106.56.
- 44 An option-adjusted spread (OAS) on a callable bond is the Z-spread:
- A over the benchmark spot curve.
 - B minus the standard swap rate in that currency of the same tenor.
 - C minus the value of the embedded call option expressed in basis points per year.

SOLUTIONS

- 1 B is correct. The bond price is closest to 101.36. The price is determined in the following manner:

$$PV = \frac{PMT}{(1+r)^1} + \frac{PMT}{(1+r)^2} + \frac{PMT + FV}{(1+r)^3}$$

where:

PV = present value, or the price of the bond
 PMT = coupon payment per period
 FV = future value paid at maturity, or the par value of the bond
 r = market discount rate, or required rate of return per period

$$PV = \frac{5.5}{(1+0.05)^1} + \frac{5.5}{(1+0.05)^2} + \frac{5.5+100}{(1+0.05)^3}$$

$$PV = 5.24 + 4.99 + 91.13 = 101.36$$

- 2 C is correct. The bond price is closest to 98.11. The formula for calculating the price of this bond is:

$$PV = \frac{PMT}{(1+r)^1} + \frac{PMT + FV}{(1+r)^2}$$

where:

PV = present value, or the price of the bond
 PMT = coupon payment per period
 FV = future value paid at maturity, or the par value of the bond
 r = market discount rate, or required rate of return per period

$$PV = \frac{3}{(1+0.04)^1} + \frac{3+100}{(1+0.04)^2} = 2.88 + 95.23 = 98.11$$

- 3 A is correct. The bond price is closest to 95.00. The bond has six semiannual periods. Half of the annual coupon is paid in each period with the required rate of return also being halved. The price is determined in the following manner:

$$PV = \frac{PMT}{(1+r)^1} + \frac{PMT}{(1+r)^2} + \frac{PMT}{(1+r)^3} + \frac{PMT}{(1+r)^4} + \frac{PMT}{(1+r)^5} + \frac{PMT + FV}{(1+r)^6}$$

where:

PV = present value, or the price of the bond
 PMT = coupon payment per period
 FV = future value paid at maturity, or the par value of the bond
 r = market discount rate, or required rate of return per period

$$PV = \frac{4.5}{(1 + 0.055)^1} + \frac{4.5}{(1 + 0.055)^2} + \frac{4.5}{(1 + 0.055)^3} + \frac{4.5}{(1 + 0.055)^4} + \frac{4.5}{(1 + 0.055)^5} + \frac{4.5 + 100}{(1 + 0.055)^6}$$

$$PV = 4.27 + 4.04 + 3.83 + 3.63 + 3.44 + 75.79 = 95.00$$

- 4 B is correct. The bond price is closest to 96.28. The formula for calculating this bond price is:

$$PV = \frac{PMT}{(1 + r)^1} + \frac{PMT}{(1 + r)^2} + \frac{PMT}{(1 + r)^3} + \frac{PMT + FV}{(1 + r)^4}$$

where:

PV = present value, or the price of the bond
 PMT = coupon payment per period
 FV = future value paid at maturity, or the par value of the bond
 r = market discount rate, or required rate of return per period

$$PV = \frac{2}{(1 + 0.03)^1} + \frac{2}{(1 + 0.03)^2} + \frac{2}{(1 + 0.03)^3} + \frac{2 + 100}{(1 + 0.03)^4}$$

$$PV = 1.94 + 1.89 + 1.83 + 90.62 = 96.28$$

- 5 B is correct. The bond price is closest to 112.54. The formula for calculating this bond price is:

$$PV = \frac{PMT}{(1 + r)^1} + \frac{PMT}{(1 + r)^2} + \frac{PMT}{(1 + r)^3} + \dots + \frac{PMT + FV}{(1 + r)^{14}}$$

where:

PV = present value, or the price of the bond
 PMT = coupon payment per period
 FV = future value paid at maturity, or the par value of the bond
 r = market discount rate, or required rate of return per period

$$PV = \frac{2.5}{(1 + 0.015)^1} + \frac{2.5}{(1 + 0.015)^2} + \frac{2.5}{(1 + 0.015)^3} + \dots + \frac{2.5}{(1 + 0.015)^{13}} + \frac{2.5 + 100}{(1 + 0.015)^{14}}$$

$$PV = 2.46 + 2.43 + 2.39 + \dots + 2.06 + 83.21 = 112.54$$

- 6 B is correct. The price of the zero-coupon bond is closest to 51.67. The price is determined in the following manner:

$$PV = \frac{100}{(1 + r)^N}$$

where:

PV = present value, or the price of the bond
 r = market discount rate, or required rate of return per period
 N = number of evenly spaced periods to maturity

$$PV = \frac{100}{(1 + 0.045)^{15}}$$

$$PV = 51.67$$

- 7** B is correct. The price difference between Bonds A and B is closest to 3.77. One method for calculating the price difference between two bonds with an identical term to maturity is to use the following formula:

$$PV = \frac{PMT}{(1 + r)^1} + \frac{PMT}{(1 + r)^2}$$

where:

PV = price difference

PMT = coupon difference per period

r = market discount rate, or required rate of return per period

In this case the coupon difference is (5% – 3%), or 2%.

$$PV = \frac{2}{(1 + 0.04)^1} + \frac{2}{(1 + 0.04)^2} = 1.92 + 1.85 = 3.77$$

- 8** A is correct. Bond A offers the lowest yield-to-maturity. When a bond is priced at a premium above par value the yield-to-maturity (YTM), or market discount rate is less than the coupon rate. Bond A is priced at a premium, so its YTM is below its 5% coupon rate. Bond B is priced at par value so its YTM is equal to its 6% coupon rate. Bond C is priced at a discount below par value, so its YTM is above its 5% coupon rate.
- 9** B is correct. Bond B will most likely experience the smallest percent change in price if market discount rates increase by 100 basis points. A higher-coupon bond has a smaller percentage price change than a lower-coupon bond when their market discount rates change by the same amount (the coupon effect). Also, a shorter-term bond generally has a smaller percentage price change than a longer-term bond when their market discount rates change by the same amount (the maturity effect). Bond B will experience a smaller percent change in price than Bond A because of the coupon effect. Bond B will also experience a smaller percent change in price than Bond C because of the coupon effect and the maturity effect.
- 10** B is correct. The bond price is most likely to change by less than 5%. The relationship between bond prices and market discount rate is not linear. The percentage price change is greater in absolute value when the market discount rate goes down than when it goes up by the same amount (the convexity effect). If a 100 basis point decrease in the market discount rate will cause the price of the bond to increase by 5%, then a 100 basis point increase in the market discount rate will cause the price of the bond to decline by an amount less than 5%.
- 11** B is correct. Generally, for two bonds with the same time-to-maturity, a lower coupon bond will experience a greater percentage price change than a higher coupon bond when their market discount rates change by the same amount. Bond B and Bond C have the same time-to-maturity (5 years); however, Bond B offers a lower coupon rate. Therefore, Bond B will likely experience a greater percentage change in price in comparison to Bond C.

- 12** A is correct. Bond A will likely experience the greatest percent change in price due to the coupon effect and the maturity effect. For two bonds with the same time-to-maturity, a lower-coupon bond has a greater percentage price change than a higher-coupon bond when their market discount rates change by the same amount. Generally, for the same coupon rate, a longer-term bond has a greater percentage price change than a shorter-term bond when their market discount rates change by the same amount. Relative to Bond C, Bond A and Bond B both offer the same lower coupon rate of 6%; however, Bond A has a longer time-to-maturity than Bond B. Therefore, Bond A will likely experience the greater percentage change in price if the market discount rates for all three bonds increase by 100 basis points.

- 13** A is correct. The bond price is closest to 101.93. The price is determined in the following manner:

$$PV = \frac{PMT}{(1 + Z_1)^1} + \frac{PMT + FV}{(1 + Z_2)^2}$$

where:

- PV = present value, or the price of the bond
- PMT = coupon payment per period
- FV = future value paid at maturity, or the par value of the bond
- Z_1 = spot rate, or the zero-coupon yield, for Period 1
- Z_2 = spot rate, or the zero-coupon yield, for Period 2

$$PV = \frac{5}{(1 + 0.03)^1} + \frac{5 + 100}{(1 + 0.04)^2}$$

$$PV = 4.85 + 97.08 = 101.93$$

- 14** B is correct. The bond price is closest to 101.46. The price is determined in the following manner:

$$PV = \frac{PMT}{(1 + Z_1)^1} + \frac{PMT}{(1 + Z_2)^2} + \frac{PMT + FV}{(1 + Z_3)^3}$$

where:

- PV = present value, or the price of the bond
- PMT = coupon payment per period
- FV = future value paid at maturity, or the par value of the bond
- Z_1 = spot rate, or the zero-coupon yield, or zero rate, for period 1
- Z_2 = spot rate, or the zero-coupon yield, or zero rate, for period 2
- Z_3 = spot rate, or the zero-coupon yield, or zero rate, for period 3

$$PV = \frac{10}{(1 + 0.08)^1} + \frac{10}{(1 + 0.09)^2} + \frac{10 + 100}{(1 + 0.095)^3}$$

$$PV = 9.26 + 8.42 + 83.78 = 101.46$$

- 15 B is correct. The bond price is closest to 95.28. The formula for calculating this bond price is:

$$PV = \frac{PMT}{(1 + Z_1)^1} + \frac{PMT}{(1 + Z_2)^2} + \frac{PMT + FV}{(1 + Z_3)^3}$$

where:

PV = present value, or the price of the bond
 PMT = coupon payment per period
 FV = future value paid at maturity, or the par value of the bond
 Z_1 = spot rate, or the zero-coupon yield, or zero rate, for period 1
 Z_2 = spot rate, or the zero-coupon yield, or zero rate, for period 2
 Z_3 = spot rate, or the zero-coupon yield, or zero rate, for period 3

$$PV = \frac{8}{(1 + 0.08)^1} + \frac{8}{(1 + 0.09)^2} + \frac{8 + 100}{(1 + 0.10)^3}$$

$$PV = 7.41 + 6.73 + 81.14 = 95.28$$

- 16 C is correct. The bond price is closest to 92.76. The formula for calculating this bond price is:

$$PV = \frac{PMT}{(1 + Z_1)^1} + \frac{PMT}{(1 + Z_2)^2} + \frac{PMT + FV}{(1 + Z_3)^3}$$

where:

PV = present value, or the price of the bond
 PMT = coupon payment per period
 FV = future value paid at maturity, or the par value of the bond
 Z_1 = spot rate, or the zero-coupon yield, or zero rate, for period 1
 Z_2 = spot rate, or the zero-coupon yield, or zero rate, for period 2
 Z_3 = spot rate, or the zero-coupon yield, or zero rate, for period 3

$$PV = \frac{7}{(1 + 0.08)^1} + \frac{7}{(1 + 0.09)^2} + \frac{7 + 100}{(1 + 0.10)^3}$$

$$PV = 6.48 + 5.89 + 80.39 = 92.76$$

- 17 B is correct. The yield-to-maturity is closest to 9.92%. The formula for calculating the price of Bond Z is:

$$PV = \frac{PMT}{(1 + Z_1)^1} + \frac{PMT}{(1 + Z_2)^2} + \frac{PMT + FV}{(1 + Z_3)^3}$$

where:

PV = present value, or the price of the bond
 PMT = coupon payment per period
 FV = future value paid at maturity, or the par value of the bond
 Z_1 = spot rate, or the zero-coupon yield, or zero rate, for period 1
 Z_2 = spot rate, or the zero-coupon yield, or zero rate, for period 2
 Z_3 = spot rate, or the zero-coupon yield, or zero rate, for period 3

$$PV = \frac{6}{(1 + 0.08)^1} + \frac{6}{(1 + 0.09)^2} + \frac{6 + 100}{(1 + 0.10)^3}$$

$$PV = 5.56 + 5.05 + 79.64 = 90.25$$

Using this price, the bond's yield-to-maturity can be calculated as:

$$PV = \frac{PMT}{(1 + r)^1} + \frac{PMT}{(1 + r)^2} + \frac{PMT + FV}{(1 + r)^3}$$

$$90.25 = \frac{6}{(1 + r)^1} + \frac{6}{(1 + r)^2} + \frac{6 + 100}{(1 + r)^3}$$

$$r = 9.92\%$$

- 18** A is correct. Bond dealers usually quote the flat price. When a trade takes place, the accrued interest is added to the flat price to obtain the full price paid by the buyer and received by the seller on the settlement date. The reason for using the flat price for quotation is to avoid misleading investors about the market price trend for the bond. If the full price were to be quoted by dealers, investors would see the price rise day after day even if the yield-to-maturity did not change. That is because the amount of accrued interest increases each day. Then after the coupon payment is made the quoted price would drop dramatically. Using the flat price for quotation avoids that misrepresentation. The full price, flat price plus accrued interest, is not usually quoted by bond dealers. Accrued interest is included in not added to the full price and bond dealers do not generally quote the full price.
- 19** B is correct. The bond's full price is 103.10. The price is determined in the following manner:

As of the beginning of the coupon period on 10 April 2014, there are 2.5 years (5 semiannual periods) to maturity. These five semiannual periods occur on 10 October 2014, 10 April 2015, 10 October 2015, 10 April 2016 and 10 October 2016.

$$PV = \frac{PMT}{(1 + r)^1} + \frac{PMT}{(1 + r)^2} + \frac{PMT}{(1 + r)^3} + \frac{PMT}{(1 + r)^4} + \frac{PMT + FV}{(1 + r)^5}$$

where:

PV = present value

PMT = coupon payment per period

FV = future value paid at maturity, or the par value of the bond

r = market discount rate, or required rate of return per period

$$PV = \frac{2.5}{(1 + 0.02)^1} + \frac{2.5}{(1 + 0.02)^2} + \frac{2.5}{(1 + 0.02)^3} + \frac{2.5}{(1 + 0.02)^4} + \frac{2.5 + 100}{(1 + 0.02)^5}$$

$$PV = 2.45 + 2.40 + 2.36 + 2.31 + 92.84 = 102.36$$

The accrued interest period is identified as 66/180. The number of days between 10 April 2014 and 16 June 2014 is 66 days based on the 30/360 day count convention. (This is 20 days remaining in April + 30 days in May + 16 days in June = 66 days total). The number of days between coupon periods is assumed to be 180 days using the 30/360 day convention.

$$PV^{Full} = PV \times (1 + r)^{66/180}$$

$$PV^{Full} = 102.36 \times (1.02)^{66/180} = 103.10$$

- 20** C is correct. The accrued interest per 100 of par value is closest to 0.92. The accrued interest is determined in the following manner: The accrued interest period is identified as 66/180. The number of days between 10 April 2014 and 16 June 2014 is 66 days based on the 30/360 day count convention. (This is 20 days remaining in April + 30 days in May + 16 days in June = 66 days total). The number of days between coupon periods is assumed to be 180 days using the 30/360 day convention.

$$\text{Accrued interest} = \frac{t}{T} \times PMT$$

where:

t = number of days from the last coupon payment to the settlement date

T = number of days in the coupon period

t/T = fraction of the coupon period that has gone by since the last payment

PMT = coupon payment per period

$$\text{Accrued interest} = \frac{66}{180} \times \frac{5.00}{2} = 0.92$$

- 21** A is correct. The flat price of 102.18 is determined by subtracting the accrued interest (from question 20) from the full price (from question 19).

$$PV^{Flat} = PV^{Full} - \text{Accrued Interest}$$

$$PV^{Flat} = 103.10 - 0.92 = 102.18$$

- 22** B is correct. For bonds not actively traded or not yet issued, matrix pricing is a price estimation process that uses market discount rates based on the quoted prices of similar bonds (similar times-to-maturity, coupon rates, and credit quality).
- 23** A is correct. Matrix pricing is used in underwriting new bonds to get an estimate of the required yield spread over the benchmark rate. The benchmark rate is typically the yield-to-maturity on a government bond having the same, or close to the same, time-to-maturity. The spread is the difference between the yield-to-maturity on the new bond and the benchmark rate. The yield spread is the additional compensation required by investors for the difference in the credit risk, liquidity risk, and tax status of the bond relative to the government bond.

In matrix pricing, the market discount rates of comparable bonds and the yield-to-maturity on a government bond having a similar time-to-maturity are not estimated. Rather they are known and used to estimate the required yield spread of a new bond.

- 24 B is correct. The formula for calculating this bond's yield-to-maturity is:

$$PV = \frac{PMT}{(1+r)^1} + \frac{PMT}{(1+r)^2} + \frac{PMT}{(1+r)^3} + \cdots + \frac{PMT}{(1+r)^{39}} + \frac{PMT + FV}{(1+r)^{40}}$$

where:

- PV = present value, or the price of the bond
- PMT = coupon payment per period
- FV = future value paid at maturity, or the par value of the bond
- r = market discount rate, or required rate of return per period

$$111 = \frac{2.5}{(1+r)^1} + \frac{2.5}{(1+r)^2} + \frac{2.5}{(1+r)^3} + \cdots + \frac{2.5}{(1+r)^{39}} + \frac{2.5 + 100}{(1+r)^{40}}$$

$$r = 0.0209$$

To arrive at the annualized yield-to-maturity, the semiannual rate of 2.09% must be multiplied by two. Therefore, the yield-to-maturity is equal to $2.09\% \times 2 = 4.18\%$.

- 25 B is correct. The annual yield-to-maturity, stated for a periodicity of 12, is 7.21%. It is calculated as follows:

$$PV = \frac{FV}{(1+r)^N}$$

$$75 = \left(\frac{100}{(1+r)^{4 \times 12}} \right)$$

$$\frac{100}{75} = (1+r)^{48}$$

$$1.33333 = (1+r)^{48}$$

$$[1.33333]^{1/48} = [(1+r)^{48}]^{1/48}$$

$$1.33333^{0.02083} = (1+r)$$

$$1.00601 = (1+r)$$

$$1.00601 - 1 = r$$

$$0.00601 = r$$

$$r \times 12 = 0.07212, \text{ or approximately } 7.21\%$$

- 26 A is correct. The yield-to-maturity, stated for a periodicity of 12 (monthly periodicity), is 3.87%. The formula to convert an annual percentage rate (annual yield-to-maturity) from one periodicity to another is as follows:

$$\left(1 + \frac{APR_m}{m} \right)^m = \left(1 + \frac{APR_n}{n} \right)^n$$

$$\left(1 + \frac{0.03897}{2} \right)^2 = \left(1 + \frac{APR_{12}}{12} \right)^{12}$$

$$(1.01949)^2 = \left(1 + \frac{APR_{12}}{12}\right)^{12}$$

$$1.03935 = \left(1 + \frac{APR_{12}}{12}\right)^{12}$$

$$(1.03935)^{1/12} = \left[\left(1 + \frac{APR_{12}}{12}\right)^{12}\right]^{1/12}$$

$$1.00322 = \left(1 + \frac{APR_{12}}{12}\right)$$

$$1.00322 - 1 = \left(\frac{APR_{12}}{12}\right)$$

$APR_{12} = 0.00322 \times 12 = 0.03865$, or approximately 3.87%.

- 27** B is correct. The yield-to-maturity is 5.77%. The formula for calculating this bond's yield-to-maturity is:

$$PV = \frac{PMT}{(1+r)^1} + \frac{PMT}{(1+r)^2} + \frac{PMT}{(1+r)^3} + \dots + \frac{PMT}{(1+r)^9} + \frac{PMT + FV}{(1+r)^{10}}$$

where:

PV = present value, or the price of the bond

PMT = coupon payment per period

FV = future value paid at maturity, or the par value of the bond

r = market discount rate, or required rate of return per period

$$101 = \frac{3}{(1+r)^1} + \frac{3}{(1+r)^2} + \frac{3}{(1+r)^3} + \dots + \frac{3}{(1+r)^9} + \frac{3 + 100}{(1+r)^{10}}$$

$$r = 0.02883$$

To arrive at the annualized yield-to-maturity, the semiannual rate of 2.883% must be multiplied by two. Therefore, the yield-to-maturity is equal to $2.883\% \times 2 = 5.77\%$ (rounded).

- 28** C is correct. The yield-to-first-call is 6.25%. Given the first call date is exactly three years away, the formula for calculating this bond's yield-to-first-call is:

$$PV = \frac{PMT}{(1+r)^1} + \frac{PMT}{(1+r)^2} + \frac{PMT}{(1+r)^3} + \dots + \frac{PMT}{(1+r)^5} + \frac{PMT + FV}{(1+r)^6}$$

where:

PV = present value, or the price of the bond

PMT = coupon payment per period

FV = call price paid at call date

r = market discount rate, or required rate of return per period

$$101 = \frac{3}{(1+r)^1} + \frac{3}{(1+r)^2} + \frac{3}{(1+r)^3} + \dots + \frac{3}{(1+r)^5} + \frac{3+102}{(1+r)^6}$$

$$r = 0.03123$$

To arrive at the annualized yield-to-first-call, the semiannual rate of 3.123% must be multiplied by two. Therefore, the yield-to-first-call is equal to $3.123\% \times 2 = 6.25\%$ (rounded).

- 29** C is correct. The yield-to-second-call is 5.94%. Given the second call date is exactly four years away, the formula for calculating this bond's yield-to-second-call is:

$$PV = \frac{PMT}{(1+r)^1} + \frac{PMT}{(1+r)^2} + \frac{PMT}{(1+r)^3} + \dots + \frac{PMT}{(1+r)^7} + \frac{PMT + FV}{(1+r)^8}$$

where:

PV = present value, or the price of the bond

PMT = coupon payment per period

FV = call price paid at call date

r = market discount rate, or required rate of return per period

$$101 = \frac{3}{(1+r)^1} + \frac{3}{(1+r)^2} + \frac{3}{(1+r)^3} + \dots + \frac{3}{(1+r)^7} + \frac{3+101}{(1+r)^8}$$

$$r = 0.0297$$

To arrive at the annualized yield-to-second-call, the semiannual rate of 2.97% must be multiplied by two. Therefore, the yield-to-second-call is equal to $2.97\% \times 2 = 5.94\%$.

- 30** B is correct. The yield-to-worst is 5.77%. The bond's yield-to-worst is the lowest of the sequence of yields-to-call and the yield-to-maturity. From above, we have the following yield measures for this bond:

Yield-to-first-call: 6.25%

Yield-to-second-call: 5.94%

Yield-to-maturity: 5.77%

Thus, the yield-to-worst is 5.77%.

- 31** B is correct. The discount or required margin is 236 basis points. Given the floater has a maturity of two years and is linked to 6-month Libor, the formula for calculating discount margin is:

$$PV = \frac{\frac{(\text{Index} + QM) \times FV}{m}}{\left(1 + \frac{\text{Index} + DM}{m}\right)^1} + \frac{\frac{(\text{Index} + QM) \times FV}{m}}{\left(1 + \frac{\text{Index} + DM}{m}\right)^2} + \dots + \frac{\frac{(\text{Index} + QM) \times FV}{m} + FV}{\left(1 + \frac{\text{Index} + DM}{m}\right)^4}$$

where:

PV = present value, or the price of the floating-rate note = 97

Index = reference rate, stated as an annual percentage rate = 0.01

QM = quoted margin, stated as an annual percentage rate = 0.0080

FV = future value paid at maturity, or the par value of the bond = 100

m = periodicity of the floating-rate note, the number of payment periods per year = 2

DM = discount margin, the required margin stated as an annual percentage rate

Substituting given values in:

$$97 = \frac{(0.01 + 0.0080) \times 100}{2} \frac{1}{\left(1 + \frac{0.01 + DM}{2}\right)^1} + \frac{(0.01 + 0.0080) \times 100}{2} \frac{1}{\left(1 + \frac{0.01 + DM}{2}\right)^2} + \dots + \frac{(0.01 + 0.0080) \times 100}{2} \frac{1}{\left(1 + \frac{0.01 + DM}{2}\right)^4} + 100$$

$$97 = \frac{0.90}{\left(1 + \frac{0.01 + DM}{2}\right)^1} + \frac{0.90}{\left(1 + \frac{0.01 + DM}{2}\right)^2} + \frac{0.90}{\left(1 + \frac{0.01 + DM}{2}\right)^3} + \frac{0.90 + 100}{\left(1 + \frac{0.01 + DM}{2}\right)^4}$$

To calculate DM , begin by solving for the discount rate per period:

$$97 = \frac{0.90}{(1+r)^1} + \frac{0.90}{(1+r)^2} + \frac{0.90}{(1+r)^3} + \frac{0.90 + 100}{(1+r)^4}$$

$$r = 0.0168$$

Now, solve for DM :

$$\frac{0.01 + DM}{2} = 0.0168$$

$$DM = 0.0236$$

The discount margin for the floater is equal to 236 basis points.

- 32** A is correct. FRN X will be priced at a premium on the next reset date because the quoted margin of 0.40% is greater than the discount or required margin of 0.32%. The premium amount is the present value of the extra or “excess” interest payments of 0.08% each quarter (0.40% – 0.32%). FRN Y will be priced at par value on the next reset date since there is no difference between the quoted and discount margins. FRN Z will be priced at a discount since the quoted margin is less than the required margin.
- 33** C is correct. The bond equivalent yield is closest to 3.78%. It is calculated as:

$$AOR = \left(\frac{\text{Year}}{\text{Days}}\right) \times \left(\frac{FV - PV}{PV}\right)$$

where:

PV = present value, principal amount, or the price of the money market instrument

FV = future value, or the redemption amount paid at maturity including interest

Days = number of days between settlement and maturity

Year = number of days in the year

AOR = add-on rate, stated as an annual percentage rate (also, called bond equivalent yield).

$$AOR = \left(\frac{365}{350}\right) \times \left(\frac{100 - 96.5}{96.5}\right)$$

$$AOR = 1.04286 \times 0.03627$$

$$AOR = 0.03783 \text{ or approximately } 3.78\%$$

- 34** C is correct. The bond equivalent yield is closest to 4.40%. The present value of the banker's acceptance is calculated as:

$$PV = FV \times \left(1 - \frac{\text{Days}}{\text{Year}} \times DR\right)$$

where:

PV = present value, or price of the money market instrument

FV = future value paid at maturity, or face value of the money market instrument

Days = number of days between settlement and maturity

Year = number of days in the year

DR = discount rate, stated as an annual percentage rate

$$PV = 100 \times \left(1 - \frac{\text{Days}}{\text{Year}} \times DR\right)$$

$$PV = 100 \times \left(1 - \frac{180}{360} \times 0.0425\right)$$

$$PV = 100 \times (1 - 0.02125)$$

$$PV = 100 \times 0.97875$$

$$PV = 97.875$$

The bond equivalent yield (AOR) is calculated as:

$$AOR = \left(\frac{\text{Year}}{\text{Days}}\right) \times \left(\frac{FV - PV}{PV}\right)$$

where:

PV = present value, principal amount, or the price of the money market instrument

FV = future value, or the redemption amount paid at maturity including interest

Days = number of days between settlement and maturity

Year = number of days in the year

AOR = add-on rate (bond equivalent yield), stated as an annual percentage rate

$$AOR = \left(\frac{365}{180}\right) \times \left(\frac{100 - PV}{PV}\right)$$

$$AOR = \left(\frac{365}{180}\right) \times \left(\frac{100 - 97.875}{97.875}\right)$$

$$AOR = 2.02778 \times 0.02171$$

$$AOR = 0.04402, \text{ or approximately } 4.40\%$$

Note that the PV is calculated using an assumed 360-day year and the AOR (bond equivalent yield) is calculated using a 365-day year.

- 35** B is correct. All bonds on a par curve are assumed to have similar, not different, credit risk. Par curves are obtained from spot curves and all bonds used to derive the par curve are assumed to have the same credit risk, as well as the same periodicity, currency, liquidity, tax status, and annual yields. A par curve is a sequence of yields-to-maturity such that each bond is priced at par value.
- 36** B is correct. The spot curve, also known as the strip or zero curve, is the yield curve constructed from a sequence of yields-to-maturities on zero-coupon bonds. The par curve is a sequence of yields-to-maturity such that each bond is priced at par value. The forward curve is constructed using a series of forward rates, each having the same timeframe.
- 37** B is correct. The forward rate can be interpreted to be the incremental or marginal return for extending the time-to-maturity of an investment for an additional time period. The add-on rate (bond equivalent yield) is a rate quoted for money market instruments such as bank certificates of deposit and indexes such as Libor and Euribor. Yield-to-maturity is the internal rate of return on the bond's cash flows—the uniform interest rate such that when the bond's future cash flows are discounted at that rate, the sum of the present values equals the price of the bond. It is the implied market discount rate.
- 38** B is correct. The 3 year implied spot rate is closest to 1.94%. It is calculated as the geometric average of the one-year forward rates:

$$(1.0080 \times 1.0112 \times 1.0394) = (1 + z_3)^3$$

$$1.05945 = (1 + z_3)^3$$

$$[1.05945]^{1/3} = [(1 + z_3)^3]^{1/3}$$

$$1.01944 = 1 + z_3$$

$$1.01944 - 1 = z_3$$

$$0.01944 = z_3, z_3 = 1.944\% \text{ or approximately } 1.94\%$$

- 39** B is correct. The value per 100 of par value is closest to 105.01. Using the forward curve, the bond price is calculated as follows:

$$\frac{3.5}{1.0080} + \frac{103.5}{(1.0080 \times 1.0112)} = 3.47 + 101.54 = 105.01$$

- 40** C is correct. The spread component of a specific bond's yield-to-maturity is least likely impacted by changes in inflation of its currency of denomination. The effect of changes in macroeconomic factors, such as the expected rate of inflation in the currency of denomination, is seen mostly in changes in the benchmark yield. The spread or risk premium component is impacted by microeconomic factors specific to the bond and bond issuer including tax status and quality rating.

- 41** A is correct. The I-spread, or interpolated spread, is the yield spread of a specific bond over the standard swap rate in that currency of the same tenor. The yield spread in basis points over an actual or interpolated government bond is known as the G-spread. The Z-spread (zero-volatility spread) is the constant spread such that is added to each spot rate such that the present value of the cash flows matches the price of the bond.
- 42** B is correct. The G-spread is closest to 285 bps. The benchmark rate for UK fixed-rate bonds is the UK government benchmark bond. The Euro interest rate spread benchmark is used to calculate the G-spread for Euro-denominated corporate bonds, not UK bonds. The G-spread is calculated as follows:

Yield-to-maturity on the UK corporate bond:

$$100.65 = \frac{5}{(1+r)^1} + \frac{5}{(1+r)^2} + \frac{105}{(1+r)^3}, r = 0.04762 \text{ or } 476 \text{ bps}$$

Yield-to-maturity on the UK government benchmark bond:

$$100.25 = \frac{2}{(1+r)^1} + \frac{2}{(1+r)^2} + \frac{102}{(1+r)^3}, r = 0.01913 \text{ or } 191 \text{ bps}$$

The G-spread is $476 - 191 = 285$ bps.

- 43** A is correct. The value of the bond is closest to 92.38. The calculation is:

$$\begin{aligned} PV &= \frac{PMT}{(1+z_1+Z)^1} + \frac{PMT}{(1+z_2+Z)^2} + \frac{PMT+FV}{(1+z_3+Z)^3} \\ &= \frac{5}{(1+0.0486+0.0234)^1} + \frac{5}{(1+0.0495+0.0234)^2} + \frac{105}{(1+0.0565+0.0234)^3} \\ &= \frac{5}{1.0720} + \frac{5}{1.15111} + \frac{105}{1.25936} = 4.66 + 4.34 + 83.38 = 92.38 \end{aligned}$$

- 44** C is correct. The option value in basis points per year is subtracted from the Z-spread to calculate the option-adjusted spread (OAS). The Z-spread is the constant yield spread over the benchmark spot curve. The I-spread is the yield spread of a specific bond over the standard swap rate in that currency of the same tenor.

READING

53

Introduction to Asset-Backed Securities

by Frank J. Fabozzi, PhD, CPA, CFA

Frank J. Fabozzi, PhD, CPA, CFA, is at EDHEC Business School (France).

LEARNING OUTCOMES

<i>Mastery</i>	<i>The candidate should be able to:</i>
<input type="checkbox"/>	a. explain benefits of securitization for economies and financial markets;
<input type="checkbox"/>	b. describe securitization, including the parties involved in the process and the roles they play;
<input type="checkbox"/>	c. describe typical structures of securitizations, including credit tranching and time tranching;
<input type="checkbox"/>	d. describe types and characteristics of residential mortgage loans that are typically securitized;
<input type="checkbox"/>	e. describe types and characteristics of residential mortgage-backed securities, including mortgage pass-through securities and collateralized mortgage obligations, and explain the cash flows and risks for each type;
<input type="checkbox"/>	f. define prepayment risk and describe the prepayment risk of mortgage-backed securities;
<input type="checkbox"/>	g. describe characteristics and risks of commercial mortgage-backed securities;
<input type="checkbox"/>	h. describe types and characteristics of non-mortgage asset-backed securities, including the cash flows and risks of each type;
<input type="checkbox"/>	i. describe collateralized debt obligations, including their cash flows and risks.

INTRODUCTION

1

Previous readings examined risk characteristics of various fixed-income instruments and the relationships among maturity, coupon, and interest rate changes. This reading introduces an additional level of complexity—that of fixed-income instruments created through a process known as **securitization**. This process involves transferring ownership of assets from the original owners into a special legal entity. The special

legal entity then issues securities backed by these assets, and the assets' cash flows are used to pay interest and repay the principal owed to the holders of the securities. These securities are referred to generically as **asset-backed securities** (ABS); the pool of securitized assets from which the ABS's cash flows are generated is called the collateral. Assets that are used to create ABS are called **securitized assets**. These assets are typically loans and receivables and include, among others, residential mortgage loans (mortgages), commercial mortgages, automobile (auto) loans, student loans, bank loans, accounts receivables, and credit card receivables. Advances and innovations in securitization have led to securities backed, or collateralized, by all kinds of income-yielding assets, including airport landing slots and toll roads.

This reading discusses the benefits of securitization, describes securitization, and explains the investment characteristics of different types of ABS. The terminology regarding ABS varies by jurisdiction. **Mortgage-backed securities** (MBS) are ABS backed by a pool of mortgages, and a distinction is sometimes made between MBS and ABS backed by non-mortgage assets. This distinction is common in the United States, for example, where typically the term “mortgage-backed securities” refers to securities backed by high-quality real estate mortgages and the term “asset-backed securities” refers to securities backed by other types of assets. Because the US ABS market is the largest in the world, much of the discussion and many examples in this reading refer to the United States. Note, however, that many non-US investors hold US ABS, including MBS, in their portfolios.

To underline the importance of securitization from a macroeconomic perspective, Section 2 discusses the benefits of securitization for economies and financial markets. In Section 3, the reading describes securitization and identifies the parties involved in the process and their roles. Section 3 also discusses typical structures of securitizations, including credit tranching and time tranching. Sections 4–6 discuss securities backed by mortgages for real estate property. Many types of residential mortgage designs around the world are described in Section 4. Sections 5 and 6 focus on residential MBS and commercial MBS, respectively. Section 7 discusses ABS based on two types of non-mortgage loans that are typically securitized throughout the world: auto loans and credit card receivables. Collateralized debt obligations are covered in Section 8. Section 9 concludes the reading with a summary.

2

BENEFITS OF SECURITIZATION FOR ECONOMIES AND FINANCIAL MARKETS

The securitization of pools of loans and receivables into multiple securities provides economies and financial markets with a number of benefits.¹

Traditionally, the purchase of such assets as houses and autos has been financed by loans originated by financial institutions, such as commercial banks. For investors to gain exposure to these loans, they must hold some combination of deposits, debt, or common equity issued by banks. This creates an additional intermediary (that is, the bank) between the borrowers and the investors. In addition, by being constrained to hold bank deposits and securities, investors cannot gain exposure to loans only; they are also affected by economic risks undertaken in other bank activities.

Securitization solves a number of these problems. It allows investors to achieve more direct legal claims on loans and portfolios of receivables and enables these investors to tailor interest rate and credit risk exposures to suit their needs. Because

¹ For a more detailed discussion, see Fabozzi and Kothari (2008).

of disintermediation (that is, lessening the role of intermediaries), the costs paid by borrowers can be effectively lowered while the risk-adjusted returns to investors can be enhanced. At the same time, banks can improve their profitability by increasing loan origination and the related fees. They can lend more than they would be able to lend if they were able to engage in only those activities they could finance themselves with their own deposits, debt, and equity. By allowing banks to increase the amount of funds available to lend, securitization ultimately benefits individuals, governments, and companies that need to borrow.

Securitization also has benefits for investors. Securitization enables financial innovation, which allows investors to access securities with profiles that match their risk, return, and maturity needs that are otherwise not directly available. For example, a pension fund with a long-term horizon can gain access to long-term real estate loans by investing in residential MBS without having to invest in bank bonds or stocks. Although few institutional or individual investors are willing to make or purchase real estate loans, auto loans, or credit card receivables directly, they may invest in a security backed by such loans or receivables. The ABS that are created by pooling these loans and receivables have characteristics similar to those of a standard bond and do not require the specialized resources and expertise needed to originate, monitor, and collect the payments from the underlying loans and receivables. As a result, investors can add to their portfolios exposure to the risk–return characteristics provided by a wider range of assets if they so desire. Note that in many countries, the sale of ABS and similar instruments is restricted to investors who meet certain qualifications, such as those pertaining to net worth.

Securitization allows for the creation of tradable securities with better liquidity than that of the original loans on the bank's balance sheet. In making loans and receivables tradable, securitization makes financial markets more efficient. It also improves liquidity, which reduces liquidity risk in the financial system. In fact, an adviser to the People's Bank of China gave this very reason for the country's plans to launch a pilot securitization program in March 2012 that would permit certain Chinese commercial lenders to securitize such assets as auto loans. The adviser stated that securitization could help banks in China transform illiquid assets on their books into liquid assets.² How securitization improves liquidity will become clear when securitization is described in more detail in Section 3.

An important benefit of securitization for companies is that ABS provide an alternative means of funding operations that can be considered alongside bond, preferred equity, and common equity issuance. Companies that originate loans and receivables that can be securitized often compare the funding costs associated with each of these sources of financing and choose the optimal one. As discussed in Section 3.4, securitization is often cheaper than a corporate bond issue secured by the same collateral as the securitization.

For these reasons, securitization is beneficial to economies and financial markets, and many sovereign governments throughout the world have embraced securitization. For example, the Italian government has used securitization since the late 1990s for privatizing public assets. In emerging markets, securitization is widely used. For example, in South America, companies and banks with high credit ratings have used securitization to sell receivables on exports, such as oil, to lower their funding costs.

Although securitization brings many benefits to economies, it is not without risks, and some of these risks are widely attributed to have precipitated the turmoil in financial markets during 2007–2009. Broadly, those risks fall into two categories: risks that relate primarily to the timing of the ABS's cash flows, such as contraction

2 "China Revives Giant Securitization Program" (2012), p. 6.

risk and extension risk, and risks related to the inherent credit risk of the loans and receivables backing the ABS. This reading describes these risks and also discusses some of the structures used to mitigate them as well as redistribute them.

EXAMPLE 1

Re-establishing Sustainable Securitization Markets

The following appeared in the July 2011 publication by the Joint Forum titled “Report on Securitization Incentives” and published by the Bank for International Settlements:

Re-establishing sustainable securitization markets has been high on the agenda of the Group of Twenty (G-20), the Financial Stability Board (FSB, an international body established to coordinate and promote implementation of the work of financial authorities and standard setting bodies), and other international organizations and national governments since the onset of the crisis.

The FSB’s November 20, 2010, report to the G-20 leaders noted, in particular, that “Re-establishing securitization on a sound basis remains a priority in order to support provision of credit to the real economy and improve banks’ access to funding in many jurisdictions.”

Explain what is meant by the quotation in the FSB’s November 20 report.

Solution:

Funding via securitization is a means by which non-bank entities can provide investment funds to various sectors of the economy without those sectors relying exclusively on banks. Securitization allows banks to originate, monitor, and collect loans beyond what they could do if limited to their own deposits and capital. Thus, securitization allows the non-bank and bank sectors to provide credit to the real economy more cheaply and efficiently than would otherwise be available only from banks.

3

HOW SECURITIZATION WORKS

When assets are securitized, several legal and regulatory conditions must be satisfied. A number of parties participate in the process to facilitate the transaction and ensure these conditions are met. In this section, a typical securitization is described by way of a hypothetical example. The example describes the parties involved in a securitization and their roles. It also introduces the typical structures of securitizations, such as credit tranching and time tranching.

3.1 An Example of a Securitization

Mediquip, a hypothetical company, is a manufacturer of medical equipment that ranges in cost from US\$50,000 to US\$300,000. The majority of Mediquip’s sales are made through loans granted by the company to its customers, and the medical equipment serves as collateral for the loans. These loans, which represent an asset to Mediquip, have maturities of five years and carry a fixed interest rate. They are fully amortizing with monthly payments; that is, the borrowers make equal payments each month

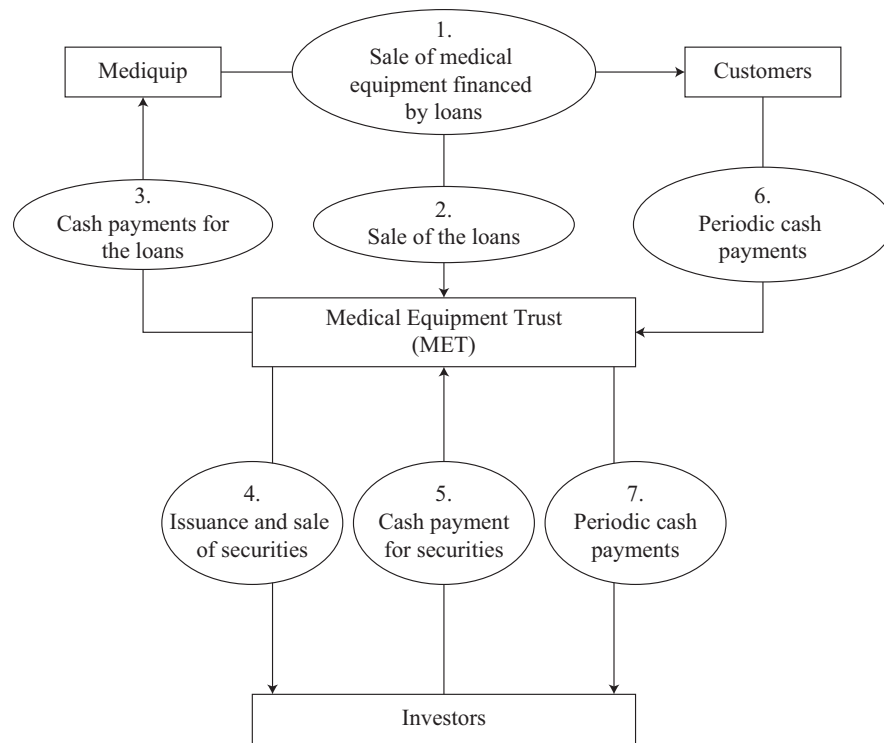
consisting of interest payment and principal repayment. The total principal repaid from the 60 loan payments (12 months \times 5 years) is such that the amount borrowed is fully repaid at the end of the term.

Mediquip's credit department makes the decision about whether to extend credit to customers and services the loans that are made. Loan servicing refers to administering any aspect of a loan, including collecting payments from borrowers, notifying borrowers who may be delinquent, and recovering and disposing of the medical equipment if the borrower does not make the scheduled payments by a specified time. If one of its customers defaults, Mediquip can seize the medical equipment and sell it to try to recoup the remaining principal on the loan. Although the servicer of such loans need not be the originator of the loans, the assumption in this example is that Mediquip is the servicer.

The following is an illustration of how these loans can be securitized. Assume that Mediquip has US\$200 million of loans. This amount is shown on Mediquip's balance sheet as an asset. Assume also that Mediquip wants to raise US\$200 million, which happens to be the amount of the loans. Because Mediquip's treasurer is aware of the potentially lower funding costs of securitization, he decides to raise the US\$200 million by securitizing the loans on the medical equipment rather than by issuing corporate bonds.

To do so, Mediquip sets up a separate legal entity called Medical Equipment Trust (MET), to which it sells the loans on the medical equipment. Such a legal entity is referred to as a **special purpose entity** (SPE) and sometimes also called a special purpose vehicle (SPV) or a special purpose company. The legal form of the SPE varies by jurisdiction, but in almost all cases, the ultimate owner of the loans—MET in our example—is legally independent and is considered bankruptcy remote from the seller of the loans. Setting up a separate legal entity ensures that if Mediquip, the originator of the loans, files for bankruptcy, the loans backing the ABS that are issued by MET are secure within the SPE and creditors of Mediquip have no claim on them. Note that in some jurisdictions, the SPE may, in turn, transfer the loans to a trust or a limited company.

A securitization is diagramed in Exhibit 1. The SPE set up by Mediquip is called MET. The top of Exhibit 1 reflects Mediquip's business model as described above—that is, the sale of medical equipment financed by loans (first oval). Mediquip sells to MET US\$200 million of loans (second oval) and receives from MET US\$200 million in cash (third oval); in this simplified example, the costs associated with the securitization are ignored. MET issues and sells securities that are backed by the pool of securitized loans (fourth oval) and receives cash (fifth oval). These securities are the ABS mentioned earlier, and the US\$200 million of loans represent the collateral. The periodic cash payments that are received from the collateral—that is, the monthly payments made by Mediquip's customers that include both interest payment and principal repayment (sixth oval)—are used to make the periodic cash payments to the security holders—the investors who bought the ABS (seventh oval).

Exhibit 1 Mediquip's Securitization

3.2 Parties to a Securitization and Their Roles

Securitization requires the publication of a prospectus, a document that contains information about the securitization.³ The three main parties to a securitization are:

- the seller of the collateral, sometimes called the depositor (Mediquip in our example);
- the SPE that purchases the loans or receivables and uses them as collateral to issue the ABS—MET in our example. (The SPE is often referred to as the issuer in the prospectus because it is the entity that issues the securities; it may also be called the trust if the SPE is set up as a trust); and
- the servicer of the loans (Mediquip in our example).

Other parties are also involved in a securitization: independent accountants, lawyers/attorneys, trustees, underwriters, rating agencies, and financial guarantors. All these parties, including the servicer when it is different from the seller of the collateral, are referred to as third parties to the securitization.

A significant amount of legal documentation is involved in a securitization. Lawyers/attorneys are responsible for preparing the legal documents. An important legal document is the purchase agreement between the seller of the collateral and the SPE, which

³ To be more precise, in the United States, a “base prospectus” and a “supplementary prospectus” are typically filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission. The base prospectus provides definitions, information about the parties to the securitization, and certain information about securities to be offered in the future—the types of assets that may be securitized, the types of structures that will be used, and the types of credit enhancement (the last two are discussed in Section 5.3). The supplementary prospectus provides the details of a specific securitization.

sets forth the representations and warranties that the seller makes about the assets sold. These representations and warranties assure investors about the quality of the assets, an important consideration when assessing the risks associated with the ABS.

Another important legal document is the prospectus, which describes the structure of the securitization, including the priority and amount of payments to be made to the servicer, administrators, and the ABS holders. Securitizations often use several forms of credit enhancements, which are documented in the prospectus. Credit enhancements are provisions that are used to reduce the credit risk of a bond issue. They include (1) internal credit enhancements, such as subordination, overcollateralization and reserve accounts, and (2) external credit enhancements, such as financial guarantees by banks or insurance companies, letters of credit, and cash collateral accounts. Securitizations often use subordination, which is further discussed in Section 4. Prior to the 2007–2009 credit crisis, many securitizations included financial guarantees by a third party. The most common third-party financial guarantors are monoline insurance companies or monoline insurers. A monoline insurer is a private insurance company whose business is restricted to providing guarantees for financial instruments such as ABS. Following the financial difficulties and downgrading of the major monoline insurers as a result of the financial crisis that began in the mortgage market in mid-2007, few structures in recent years have used financial guarantees from a monoline insurer.

A trustee or trustee agent is typically a financial institution with trust powers that safeguards the assets after they have been sold to the SPE, holds the funds due to the ABS holders until they are paid, and provides periodic information to the ABS holders. The information is provided in the form of remittance reports, which may be issued monthly, quarterly, or as agreed to in the terms of the prospectus.

Underwriters and rating agencies perform the same functions in a securitization as they do in a standard bond offering.

EXAMPLE 2

A Securitization by Harley-Davidson

Harley-Davidson, Inc. manufactures and markets motorcycles. The following information is taken from a filing with the US Securities and Exchange Commission for a securitization related to the purchase of Harley-Davidson motorcycles:

Issuer: Harley-Davidson Motorcycle Trust 2005-2

Seller and Servicer: Harley-Davidson Credit Corp.

Underwriters: J.P. Morgan Securities Inc., ABN AMRO Inc., BNP Paribas Securities Corp., Citigroup Global Markets Inc., and Wachovia Capital Markets, LLC

Rating Agencies: Standard & Poor's Ratings Services and Moody's Investor Services

Notes:

US\$487,000,000 3.79% Harley-Davidson motorcycle contract backed Class A-1 notes, rated AAA/Aaa

US\$251,180,000 4.07% Harley-Davidson motorcycle contract backed Class A-2 notes, rated AAA/Aaa

US\$36,820,000 4.27% Harley-Davidson motorcycle contract backed Class B notes, rated A/A3

Contracts: The assets underlying the notes are fixed-rate, simple interest, motorcycle conditional sales agreements, promissory notes, and security agreements relating to the purchase of new or used motorcycles manufactured by one or more subsidiaries of Harley-Davidson, Inc.

- 1 The collateral for this securitization is:
 - A Harley-Davidson motorcycle contract backed Class A-1, Class A-2, and Class B notes.
 - B new or used motorcycles manufactured by one or more subsidiaries of Harley-Davidson, Inc.
 - C fixed-rate, simple interest, motorcycle conditional sales agreements, promissory notes, and security agreements relating to the purchase of new or used motorcycles manufactured by one or more subsidiaries of Harley-Davidson, Inc.
- 2 The special purpose entity in this securitization is:
 - A Harley-Davidson, Inc.
 - B Harley-Davidson Credit Corp.
 - C Harley-Davidson Motorcycle Trust 2005-2.
- 3 Harley-Davidson Credit Corp. is responsible for:
 - A selling the collateral and collecting payments from borrowers.
 - B selling the new and used motorcycles to customers and collecting payments from borrowers.
 - C selling the motorcycle contract backed Class A-1, Class A-2, and Class B notes to investors and making the cash payments to them.

Solution to 1:

C is correct. The collateral is the pool of securitized assets from which the cash flows will be generated. It is the “contracts”—that is, the debt obligations that have been securitized. These contracts are basically loans provided to purchasers of new or used motorcycles manufactured by Harley-Davidson, Inc. and its subsidiaries. These loans go by different names, such as conditional sales agreements, promissory notes, and security agreements.

Solution to 2:

C is correct. Harley-Davidson Motorcycle Trust 2005-2 is the issuer of the ABS and, thus, the SPE. We might have expected the SPE to purchase the contracts that became the collateral from Harley-Davidson, Inc., the manufacturer, but it is Harley-Davidson Credit Corp. that originates the loans and is, therefore, the seller of the collateral. Harley-Davidson Credit Corp. is also the servicer of the contracts.

Solution to 3:

A is correct. Harley-Davidson Credit Corp. is the seller of the collateral. As the servicer, it is responsible for collecting payments from borrowers, notifying borrowers who may be delinquent, and if necessary, recovering and disposing of the motorcycles if the borrower defaults.

3.3 Structure of a Securitization

A simple securitization may involve the sale of only one class of bond or ABS. Let us call this class Bond Class A. Returning to the Mediquip and MET example, MET may raise US\$200 million by issuing 200,000 certificates for Bond Class A with a par value of US\$1,000 per certificate. Thus, each certificate holder is entitled to 1/200,000 of the payments from the collateral after payment of servicing and other administrative fees; what these fees represent is discussed in Section 5.1.1.

The structure of the securitization is often more complicated than a single class of ABS. As mentioned earlier, it is common for securitizations to include a form of internal credit enhancement called **subordination**, also referred to as **credit tranching**. In such a structure, there is more than one bond class or tranche, and the bond classes differ as to how they will share any losses resulting from defaults of the borrowers whose loans are in the collateral. The bond classes are classified as senior bond classes or subordinated bond classes—hence, the reason this structure is also referred to as a senior/subordinated structure. The subordinated bond classes are sometimes called “non-senior bond classes” or “junior bond classes.” They function as credit protection for the more senior bond classes; that is, losses are realized by the subordinated bond classes before any losses are realized by the senior bond classes. This type of protection is also commonly referred to as a waterfall structure because of the cascading flow of payments between bond classes in the event of default.

For example, suppose MET issues two bond classes with a total par value of US\$200 million: Bond Class A, the senior bond class, with a par value of US\$120 million, and Bond Class B, the subordinated bond class, with a par value of US\$80 million. In this senior/subordinated structure, also referred to as credit tranching, Bond Class B will absorb losses up to US\$80 million. Thus, as long as defaults by Mediquip’s customers do not exceed US\$80 million, Bond Class A will be fully repaid its US\$120 million. The purpose of this structure is to redistribute the credit risk associated with the collateral. The creation of a set of bond classes allows investors to choose the level of credit risk that they prefer to bear.

More than one subordinated bond class may be created. Suppose MET issues the following structure:

Bond Class	Par Value (US\$ millions)
A (senior)	180
B (subordinated)	14
C (subordinated)	6
Total	200

In this structure, Bond Class A is the senior bond class whereas both Bond Class B and Bond Class C are subordinated bond classes from the perspective of Bond Class A. The rules for the distribution of losses are as follows. All losses on the collateral are absorbed by Bond Class C before any losses are realized by Bond Class B and then Bond Class A. Consequently, if the losses on the collateral do not exceed US\$6 million, no losses will be realized by Bond Class A or Bond Class B. If the losses exceed US\$6 million, Bond Class B must absorb the losses up to an additional US\$14 million. For example, if the total loss on the collateral is US\$16 million, Bond Class C loses its entire par value of US\$6 million and Bond Class B realizes a loss of US\$10 million of its par value of US\$14 million. Bond Class A does not realize any loss in this scenario. Clearly, Bond Class A realizes a loss only if the total loss on the collateral exceeds US\$20 million.

The structure of a securitization may also allow the redistribution of another type of risk, called “prepayment risk,” among bond classes. **Prepayment risk** is the uncertainty that the cash flows will be different from the scheduled cash flows as set forth

in the loan agreement because of the borrowers' ability to alter payments, usually to take advantage of interest rate movements. For example, when interest rates decline, borrowers tend to pay off part or all of their loans and refinance at lower interest rates. The creation of bond classes that possess different expected maturities is referred to as **time tranching** and is further discussed in Section 5.2.

It is possible, and quite common, for a securitization to have structures with both credit tranching and time tranching.

EXAMPLE 3

Bond Classes and Tranching

Return to the Harley-Davidson securitization described in Example 2. Based on the information provided, the form of credit enhancement that the transaction *most likely* includes is:

- A time tranching.
- B credit tranching.
- C a financial guarantee.

Solution:

B is correct. The Harley-Davidson securitization includes three bond classes: Class A-1, Class A-2, and Class B. Each bond class has a fixed but different interest rate; the interest rate increases from 3.79% for Class A-1 notes to 4.27% for Class B notes. Thus, it is likely that the transaction has credit tranching and that the three bond classes display a senior/subordinated structure, with Class A-1 notes being senior to Class A-2 notes, and both Classes A-1 and A-2 notes being senior to Class B notes, the subordinated bond class. As the credit risk increases from the Class A-1 notes to the Class B notes, so does the interest rate to reflect the additional compensation investors require for bearing the additional credit risk. The information provided does not give any indication of either time tranching or a financial guarantee.

3.4 Key Role of the Special Purpose Entity

The SPE plays a pivotal role in securitization. In fact, the setup of a legal entity that plays the same role as an SPE in terms of protecting the rights of ABS holders is a prerequisite in any country that wants to allow securitization. Indeed, without a provision in a country's legal system for the equivalent of an SPE, the benefits of using securitization by an entity seeking to raise funds would not exist. Let us explain why by returning to our example involving Mediquip and MET.

Assume that Mediquip has a credit rating from a credit-rating agency, such as Standard & Poor's, Moody's Investors Service, or Fitch Ratings. A credit rating reflects the opinion of a credit-rating agency about the creditworthiness of an entity and/or the debt securities the entity issues. Suppose that the credit rating assigned to Mediquip is BB or Ba2. Such a credit rating means that Mediquip is below what is referred to as an investment-grade credit rating.

Assume again that Mediquip's treasurer wants to raise US\$200 million and is contemplating doing so by issuing a five-year corporate bond rather than by securitizing the loans. The treasurer is, of course, concerned about the funding cost and would like the lowest possible interest rate available relative to some benchmark interest rate. The difference between the interest rate paid on the five-year corporate bond and the benchmark interest rate is the spread. The spread reflects the compensation investors

require for buying the corporate bond, which is riskier than the bonds issued at the benchmark interest rate. The major factor affecting the spread is the issuer's credit rating—hence, the reason the spread is called a “credit spread.”

Another factor that will influence the credit spread is whether the bond is backed by collateral. A corporate bond that has collateral is often referred to as a secured bond. The collateral usually reduces the credit spread, making the credit spread of a secured bond lower than that of an otherwise identical unsecured bond. In our example, Mediquip's treasurer can use the loans on the medical equipment as collateral for the secured corporate bond issue. Thus, if Mediquip issues a five-year corporate bond to raise US\$200 million, the credit spread will reflect its credit rating primarily and the collateral slightly. We will soon explain why the collateral affects the credit spread only slightly.

Now suppose that instead of using the loans as collateral for a secured corporate bond issue, Mediquip sells the loan contracts in an arm's length transaction to MET, the SPE. After the sale is completed, it is MET, not Mediquip, that legally owns them. As a result, if Mediquip is forced into bankruptcy while the loans are still outstanding, Mediquip's creditors cannot recover them because they are legally owned by another entity. Note that it is possible, however, that transfers made to bankruptcy-remote vehicles can be challenged as fraudulent conveyances and potentially unwound. The legal implication of setting up MET is that investors contemplating the purchase of any bond class backed by the cash flows from the pool of loans on the medical equipment will evaluate the credit risk associated with collecting the payments due on the receivables independently of Mediquip's credit rating.

Credit ratings are assigned to each of the various bond classes created in the securitization. They depend on the quality of the collateral—that is, how the rating agencies evaluate the credit risk of the pool of securitized loans or receivables. Depending on the structure of the securitization, each bond class receives a credit rating that reflects its credit risk, and some of the bond classes may have a better credit rating than the company that is seeking to raise funds. As a consequence, in aggregate, the funding cost of a securitization may be lower than that of a corporate bond issue. Access to lower funding cost is a key role of the SPE in a securitization.

A fair question is why a securitization can be cheaper than a corporate bond issue secured by the same collateral as the securitization. The reason is that the SPE would not be affected by the bankruptcy of the seller of the collateral. As mentioned above, the assets belong to the SPE, not to the entity that sold the assets to the SPE. In the United States and other countries, when a company is liquidated, creditors receive distributions based on the absolute priority rule to the extent that assets are available. The absolute priority rule is the principle that senior creditors are paid in full before subordinated creditors are paid anything. The absolute priority rule also guarantees the seniority of creditors relative to equity holders.

Whereas the absolute priority rule generally holds in liquidations, it has not always been upheld by the courts in reorganizations. Thus, although investors in the debt of a company may believe they have priority over the equity holders and priority over other classes of creditors, the actual outcome of a reorganization may be far different from the terms stated in the debt agreement; that is, there is no assurance that if the corporate bond has collateral, the rights of the bondholders will be respected. For this reason, the credit spread for a corporate bond backed by collateral does not decrease dramatically.

In the case of a securitization, the courts have in most jurisdictions no discretion to change seniority because the bankruptcy of a company does not affect the SPE. The rules set forth in the legal document, which describes how losses are to be absorbed by each bond class, are unaffected by the company's bankruptcy. This important decoupling of the credit risk of the entity needing funds from the bond classes issued by the SPE explains why the SPE's legal role is critical.

The SPE is bankruptcy remote from the seller of the collateral, which means that the bankruptcy of the seller of the collateral will not affect the holders of securities issued by the SPE and backed by the collateral. The security holders face credit risk only to the extent that the borrowers whose claims the SPE has purchased default on their loans. The SPE's ability to make cash payments to the security holders remains intact as long as the borrowers make the interest payments and/or the principal repayments on their loans.

However, all countries do not have the same legal framework. Impediments have arisen in some countries with respect to the issuance of ABS because the concept of trust law is not as well developed globally as it is in the United States and many other developed countries.⁴ Thus, investors should be aware of the legal considerations that apply in the jurisdictions where they purchase ABS.

EXAMPLE 4

Special Purpose Entity and Bankruptcy

Agnelli Industries (Agnelli), a manufacturer of industrial machine tools based in Bergamo, Italy, has €500 million of corporate bonds outstanding. These bonds have a credit rating below investment grade. Agnelli has €400 million of receivables on its balance sheet that it would like to securitize. The receivables represent payments Agnelli expects to receive for machine tools it has sold to various customers in Europe. Agnelli sells the receivables to Agnelli Trust, a special purpose entity. Agnelli Trust then issues ABS, backed by the pool of receivables, with the following structure:

Bond Class	Par Value (€ millions)
A (senior)	280
B (subordinated)	60
C (subordinated)	60
Total	400

Bond Class A is given an investment-grade credit rating by the credit-rating agencies.

- 1 Why does Bond Class A have a higher credit rating than the corporate bonds?
- 2 If Agnelli Industries files for bankruptcy after the issuance of the asset-backed security:
 - A Bond Classes A, B, and C will be unaffected.
 - B Bond Classes A, B, and C will lose their entire par value.
 - C losses will be realized by Bond Class C first, then by Bond Class B, and then by Bond Class A.
- 3 If one of Agnelli's customers defaults on its €60 million loan:
 - A Bond Classes A, B, and C will realize losses of €20 million each.

⁴ In many EU countries, the creditors are protected in the recognition of the securitization as a true sale. The SPE has full legal ownership of the securitized assets, which are de-recognized from the seller's balance sheet. In the event of default of the originator/servicer, the SPE can appoint a substitute company to the service role and continue to pay bondholders from the income stream of the securitized assets without the other creditors of the initial originator/servicer being able to have any recourse or claim to these assets.

- B** Bond Class C will realize losses of €60 million, but Bond Classes A and B will be unaffected.
- C** Bond Classes B and C will realize losses of €30 million each, but Bond Class A will be unaffected.

Solution to 1:

Bond Class A are issued by Agnelli Trust, an SPE that is bankruptcy remote from Agnelli. Thus, the investors who hold Agnelli's bonds and/or common shares have no legal claim on the cash flows from the securitized receivables that are the collateral for the ABS. As long as Agnelli's customers make the interest payments and/or principal repayments on their loans, Agnelli Trust will be able to make cash payments to the ABS investors. Because of the credit tranching, even if some of Agnelli's customers were to default on their loans, the losses would be realized by the subordinated Bond Classes B and C before any losses are realized by the senior Bond Class A. The credit risk associated with Bond Class A is, therefore, lower than that of Bond Classes B and C and the corporate bonds, justifying the investment-grade credit rating.

Solution to 2:

A is correct. The ABS have been issued by Agnelli Trust, an SPE that is bankruptcy remote from Agnelli. If the securitization is viewed as resulting in a true sale, the fact that Agnelli files for bankruptcy does not affect the ABS holders. These ABS holders face credit risk only to the extent that Agnelli's customers who bought the machine tools do not make the obligatory payments on their loans. As long as the customers continue to make payments, all three bond classes will receive their expected cash flows. These cash flows are completely and legally independent of anything that happens to Agnelli itself.

Solution to 3:

B is correct. The rules for the distribution of losses are as follows. All losses on the collateral are absorbed by Bond Class C before any losses are realized by Bond Class B and then Bond Class A. Consequently, if the losses on the collateral are €60 million, which is the par value of Bond Class C, Bond Class C loses its entire par value, but Bond Classes A and B are unaffected.

RESIDENTIAL MORTGAGE LOANS

4

Before describing the various types of residential mortgage-backed securities, this section briefly discusses the fundamental features of the underlying assets: residential mortgage loans. The mortgage designs described in this section are those that are typically securitized.

A **mortgage loan**, or simply **mortgage**, is a loan secured by the collateral of some specified real estate property that obliges the borrower (often someone wishing to buy a home) to make a predetermined series of payments to the lender (often initially a bank or mortgage company). The mortgage gives the lender the right to foreclose on the loan if the borrower defaults; that is, a **foreclosure** allows the lender to take possession of the mortgaged property and then sell it in order to recover funds toward satisfying the debt obligation.

Typically, the amount of the loan advanced to buy the property is less than the property's purchase price. The borrower makes a down payment, and the amount borrowed is the difference between the property's purchase price and the down

payment. When the loan is first taken out, the borrower's equity in the property is equal to the down payment. Over time, as the market value of the property changes, the borrower's equity also changes. It also changes as the borrower makes mortgage payments that include principal repayment.

The ratio of the amount of the mortgage to the property's value is called the **loan-to-value ratio** (LTV). The lower the LTV, the higher the borrower's equity. From the lender's perspective, the higher the borrower's equity, the less likely the borrower is to default. Moreover, the lower the LTV, the more protection the lender has for recovering the amount loaned if the borrower does default and the lender repossesses and sells the property.

In the United States, market participants typically identify two types of mortgages based on the credit quality of the borrower: prime loans and subprime loans. Generally, for a loan to be considered prime, the borrower must be viewed as having high credit quality; that is, the borrower must have strong employment and credit histories, income sufficient to pay the loan obligation, and substantial equity in the underlying property. If the borrower has lower credit quality or if the loan is not a first lien on the property (that is, a party other than the current potential lender has a prior claim on the underlying property), the loan is treated as subprime.

Throughout the world, there are a considerable number of mortgage designs. Mortgage design means the specification of (1) the maturity of the loan, (2) how the interest rate is determined, (3) how the principal is to be repaid (that is, the amortization schedule), (4) whether the borrower has the option to prepay and, in such cases, whether any prepayment penalties might be imposed, and (5) the rights of the lender in a foreclosure.

A study by Lea (2010) provides an excellent review of mortgage designs in Australia, Canada, Denmark, Ireland, Japan, Germany, the Netherlands, South Korea, Spain, the United Kingdom, and the United States.⁵ This section draws on this study to describe the five specifications of a mortgage design.

4.1 Maturity

In the United States, the typical maturity of a mortgage ranges from 15 to 30 years. For most countries in Europe, a residential mortgage typically has a maturity between 20 and 40 years, but in some countries, such as France and Spain, it can be as long as 50 years. Japan is an extreme case; the maturity of a mortgage can be 100 years.⁶ Note that what is called the term of a mortgage means the number of years to maturity.

4.2 Interest Rate Determination

The interest rate on a mortgage is called the **mortgage rate**, **contract rate**, or **note rate**. How the mortgage rate is determined varies considerably among countries. The four basic ways that the mortgage rate can be specified are as follows:

- *Fixed rate*: The mortgage rate remains the same during the life of the mortgage. The United States and France have a high proportion of this type of interest rate determination. Although fixed-rate mortgages are not the dominant form in Germany, they do exist there.

⁵ Lea (2010, Table 2, p. 17).

⁶ The term of residential mortgages is usually in line with the age of the borrower at the end of the loan maturity period, with the borrower's retirement age being a usual upper limit.

- *Adjustable or variable rate:* The mortgage rate is reset periodically—daily, weekly, monthly, or annually. The determination of the new mortgage rate for an adjustable-rate mortgage (ARM) at the reset date may be based on some reference rate or index (in which case, it is called an indexed-referenced ARM) or a rate determined at the lender’s discretion (in which case, it is called a reviewable ARM). Residential mortgages in Australia, Ireland, South Korea, Spain, and the United Kingdom are dominated by adjustable-rate mortgages. In Australia, Ireland, and the United Kingdom, the reviewable ARM is standard. In South Korea and Spain, the indexed-referenced ARM is the norm. Canada and the United States have ARMs that are typically tied to an index or reference rate, although this type of mortgage rate is not the dominant form of interest rate determination. An important feature of an ARM is that it will usually have a maximum interest rate by which the mortgage rate can change at a reset date and a maximum interest rate that the mortgage rate can reach during the mortgage’s life.
- *Initial period fixed rate:* The mortgage rate is fixed for some initial period and is then adjusted. The adjustment may call for a new fixed rate or for a variable rate. When the adjustment calls for a fixed rate, the mortgage is referred to as a rollover or renegotiable mortgage. This mortgage design is dominant in Canada, Denmark, Germany, the Netherlands, and Switzerland. When the mortgage starts out with a fixed rate and then switches to an adjustable rate after a specified initial term, the mortgage is referred to as a hybrid mortgage. Hybrid mortgages are popular in the United Kingdom.
- *Convertible:* The mortgage rate is initially either a fixed rate or an adjustable rate. At some point, the borrower has the option to convert the mortgage to a fixed rate or an adjustable rate for the remainder of the mortgage’s life. Almost half of the mortgages in Japan are convertible.

4.3 Amortization Schedule

In most countries, residential mortgages are **amortizing loans**. The amortization of a loan means the gradual reduction of the amount borrowed over time. Assuming no prepayments are made by the borrower, the periodic mortgage payments made by the borrower consist of interest payments and scheduled principal repayments. The scheduled principal repayment is the amount of reduction of the outstanding mortgage balance and is thus referred to as the amortization. As discussed in a previous reading, there are two types of amortizing loans: fully amortizing loans and partially amortizing loans. In a fully amortizing loan, the sum of all the scheduled principal repayments during the mortgage’s life is such that when the last mortgage payment is made, the loan is fully repaid. Most residential mortgages in the United States are fully amortizing loans. In a partially amortizing loan, the sum of all the scheduled principal repayments is less than the amount borrowed. The last payment that has to be made is then the unpaid mortgage balance, and that last payment is said to be a “balloon” payment.

If no scheduled principal repayment is specified for a certain number of years, the loan is said to be an **interest-only mortgage**. Interest-only mortgages are available in Australia, Denmark, Finland, France, Germany, Greece, Ireland, the Netherlands, Portugal, South Korea, Spain, Switzerland, and the United Kingdom.⁷ Interest-only mortgages are also available to a limited extent in the United States. A special type of interest-only mortgage is one in which there are no scheduled principal repayments

7 See Table 7 in Scanlon, Lunde, and Whitehead (2008).

over the entire life of the loan. In this case, the balloon payment is equal to the original loan amount. These mortgages, referred to as “interest-only lifetime mortgages” or “bullet mortgages,” are available in Denmark, the Netherlands, and the United Kingdom.

4.4 Prepayment Options and Prepayment Penalties

A prepayment is any payment toward the repayment of principal that is in excess of the scheduled principal repayment. A mortgage may entitle the borrower to prepay all or part of the outstanding mortgage principal prior to the scheduled due date when the principal must be repaid. This contractual provision is referred to as a **prepayment option** or an **early repayment option**. From the lender’s or investor’s viewpoint, the effect of a prepayment option is that the amount and timing of the cash flows from a mortgage cannot be known with certainty. This risk was referred to as prepayment risk in Section 3. Prepayment risk affects all mortgages that allow prepayment, not just the level-payment, fixed-rate, fully amortizing mortgages.

The mortgage may stipulate some sort of monetary penalty when a borrower prepays within a certain time period after the mortgage is originated, and this time period may extend for the full life of the loan. Such mortgage designs are referred to as **prepayment penalty mortgages**. The purpose of the prepayment penalty is to compensate the lender for the difference between the contract rate and the prevailing mortgage rate if the borrower prepays when interest rates decline. Hence, the prepayment penalty is effectively a mechanism that provides for yield maintenance for the lender. The method for calculating the penalty varies. Prepayment penalty mortgages are common in Europe. Although the proportion of prepayment penalty mortgages in the United States is small, they do exist.

4.5 Rights of the Lender in a Foreclosure

A mortgage can be a recourse loan or a non-recourse loan. When the borrower fails to make the contractual loan payments, the lender can repossess the property and sell it, but the proceeds received from the sale of the property may be insufficient to recoup the losses. In a **recourse loan**, the lender has a claim against the borrower for the shortfall between the amount of the outstanding mortgage balance and the proceeds received from the sale of the property. In a **non-recourse loan**, the lender does not have such a claim and thus can look only to the property to recover the outstanding mortgage balance. In the United States, recourse is typically determined by the state, and residential mortgages are non-recourse loans in many states. In contrast, residential mortgages in most European countries are recourse loans.

The recourse/non-recourse feature of a mortgage has implications for projecting the likelihood of defaults by borrowers, particularly in the case of what is sometimes called “underwater mortgages”—that is, mortgages for which the value of the property has declined below the amount owed by the borrower. For example, in the United States, where mortgages are typically non-recourse, the borrower may have an incentive to default on an underwater mortgage and allow the lender to foreclose on the property, even if resources are available to continue to make mortgage payments. This type of default by a borrower is referred to as a “strategic default.” A strategic default, however, has negative consequences for the borrower, who will then have a lower credit score and a reduced ability to borrow in the future. Thus, not all borrowers faced with underwater mortgages will default. In countries where residential mortgages are recourse loans, a strategic default is less likely because the lender can seek to recover the shortfall from the borrower’s other assets and/or income.

Now that the basics of a residential mortgage have been set out, we can turn our attention to how these mortgages are securitized—that is, transformed into MBS. In the following sections, we focus on the US residential mortgage sector because it is the largest in the world and many non-US investors hold US MBS in their portfolios.

EXAMPLE 5

Residential Mortgage Designs

- 1 In an interest-only mortgage, the borrower:
 - A does not have to repay the principal as long as she pays the interest.
 - B does not have to make principal repayments for a certain number of years, after which she starts paying down the original loan amount.
 - C does not have to make principal repayments over the entire life of the mortgage and pays down the original loan amount as a balloon payment.
- 2 A bank advertises a mortgage with the following interest rate: 2.99% (12-month Euribor + 2.50%), resetting once a year. The mortgage is *most likely*:
 - A a hybrid mortgage.
 - B an adjustable-rate mortgage.
 - C an initial period fixed-rate mortgage.
- 3 If the borrower fails to make the contractual mortgage payments on a non-recourse mortgage, the lender:
 - A cannot foreclose the property.
 - B can only recover the outstanding mortgage balance through the sale of the property.
 - C can recover the outstanding mortgage balance through the sale of the property and the borrower's other assets and/or income.

Solution to 1:

B is correct. In an interest-only mortgage, there is no scheduled principal repayment for a certain number of years, so the borrower starts paying down the original loan amount only after an initial period of interest-only payments. Some, but not all, interest-only mortgages do not have scheduled principal repayments over the entire life of the loan. These mortgages are called interest-only lifetime mortgages or bullet mortgages, and they require the borrower to pay back the original loan amount at maturity.

Solution to 2:

B is correct. An adjustable-rate mortgage is one for which the mortgage rate is typically based on some reference rate or index (indexed-referenced ARM) or a rate determined at the lender's discretion (reviewable ARM) and is reset periodically. A mortgage rate of 12-month Euribor + 2.50%, resetting once per year, suggests that the mortgage is an index-referenced ARM. The 2.99% rate is the current mortgage rate (that is, 12-month Euribor of 0.49% + 2.50%) and should not be taken as an indication that it is a fixed-rate, initial period fixed-rate, or hybrid mortgage.

Solution to 3:

B is correct. In the case of a non-recourse mortgage, the lender can foreclose the property if the borrower fails to make the contractual mortgage payments. However, the lender can use only the proceeds from the property to recover the outstanding mortgage balance.

5**RESIDENTIAL MORTGAGE-BACKED SECURITIES**

The bonds created from the securitization of mortgages related to the purchase of residential properties are residential mortgage-backed securities (RMBS). In such countries as the United States, Canada, Japan, and South Korea, a distinction is often made between securities that are guaranteed by the government or a quasi-government entity and securities that are not. Quasi-government entities are usually created by governments to perform various functions for them. Examples of quasi-government entities include government-sponsored enterprises (GSEs) such as Fannie Mae (previously the Federal National Mortgage Association) and Freddie Mac (previously the Federal Home Loan Mortgage Corporation) in the United States and the Japan Housing Finance Agency (JHF).

In the United States, securities backed by residential mortgages are divided into three sectors: (1) those guaranteed by a federal agency, (2) those guaranteed by a GSE, and (3) those issued by private entities and that are not guaranteed by a federal agency or a GSE. The first two sectors are referred to as **agency RMBS**, and the third sector as **non-agency RMBS**. A significant amount of space in this section is devoted to US agency and non-agency RMBS because these securities represent a large sector of the investment-grade bond market and are included in the portfolios of many US as well as non-US investors.

Agency RMBS include securities issued by federal agencies, such as the Government National Mortgage Association, popularly referred to as Ginnie Mae. This entity is a federally related institution because it is part of the US Department of Housing and Urban Development. As a result, the RMBS that it guarantees carry the full faith and credit of the US government with respect to timely payment of interest and repayment of principal.

Agency RMBS also include RMBS issued by GSEs, such as Fannie Mae and Freddie Mac. RMBS issued by GSEs do *not* carry the full faith and credit of the US government.⁸ Agency RMBS issued by GSEs differ from non-agency RMBS in two ways. First, the credit risk of the RMBS issued by Fannie Mae and Freddie Mac is reduced by the guarantee of the GSE itself, which charges a fee for insuring the issue. In contrast, non-agency RMBS use credit enhancements to reduce credit risk, which is further discussed in Section 5.3. The second way in which RMBS issued by GSEs differ from non-agency RMBS is with regard to the pool of securitized loans. For a loan to be included in a pool of loans backing an agency RMBS, it must meet specific underwriting standards established by various government agencies. These standards set forth the maximum size of the loan, the loan documentation required, the maximum loan-to-value ratio, and whether or not insurance is required. If a loan satisfies the underwriting standards for inclusion as collateral for an agency RMBS, it is called a “conforming mortgage.” If a loan fails to satisfy the underwriting standards, it is called a “non-conforming mortgage.”

⁸ In September 2008, both GSEs were placed in conservatorship. In a conservatorship, a judge appoints an entity to take charge of the financial affairs of another entity.

This section starts with a discussion of agency RMBS, which include mortgage pass-through securities and collateralized mortgage obligations. We then discuss non-agency RMBS.⁹

5.1 Mortgage Pass-Through Securities

A **mortgage pass-through security** is a security created when one or more holders of mortgages form a pool of mortgages and sell shares or participation certificates in the pool. A pool can consist of several thousand or only a few mortgages. When a mortgage is included in a pool of mortgages that is used as collateral for a mortgage pass-through security, the mortgage is said to be securitized.

5.1.1 Characteristics

The cash flows of a mortgage pass-through security depend on the cash flows of the underlying pool of mortgages. The cash flows consist of monthly mortgage payments representing interest, the scheduled repayment of principal, and any prepayments. Cash payments are made to security holders each month. Neither the amount nor the timing of the cash flows from the pool of mortgages, however, is necessarily identical to that of the cash flow passed through to the security holders. In fact, the monthly cash flows of a mortgage pass-through security are less than the monthly cash flow of the underlying pool of mortgages by an amount equal to the servicing and other administrative fees.

The servicing fee is the charge related to servicing the mortgages. Servicing involves collecting monthly payments from borrowers, forwarding proceeds to owners of the loan, sending payment notices to borrowers, reminding borrowers when payments are overdue, maintaining records of the outstanding mortgage balance, initiating foreclosure proceedings if necessary, and providing tax information to borrowers when applicable. The servicing fee is typically a portion of the mortgage rate. The other administrative fees are those charged by the issuer or financial guarantor of the mortgage pass-through security for guaranteeing the issue.

A mortgage pass-through security's coupon rate is called the **pass-through rate**. The pass-through rate is lower than the mortgage rate on the underlying pool of mortgages by an amount equal to the servicing and other administrative fees. The pass-through rate that the investor receives is said to be "net interest" or "net coupon."

Not all of the mortgages that are included in a pool of securitized mortgages have the same mortgage rate and the same maturity. Consequently, for each mortgage pass-through security, a **weighted average coupon rate (WAC)** and a **weighted average maturity (WAM)** are determined. The WAC is calculated by weighting the mortgage rate of each mortgage in the pool by the percentage of the outstanding mortgage balance relative to the outstanding amount of all the mortgages in the pool. Similarly, the WAM is calculated by weighting the remaining number of months to maturity of each mortgage in the pool by the outstanding mortgage balance relative to the outstanding amount of all the mortgages in the pool. Example 6 illustrates the calculation of the WAC and WAM.

⁹ A popular bond market index, the Bloomberg Barclays US Aggregate Bond Index, has a sector called the "mortgage sector." In the mortgage sector, Bloomberg Barclays includes only agency RMBS that are mortgage pass-through securities.

EXAMPLE 6**Weighted Average Coupon Rate and Weighted Average Maturity**

Assume that a pool includes three mortgages with the following characteristics:

Mortgage	Outstanding Mortgage Balance (US\$)	Coupon Rate (%)	Number of Months to Maturity
1	1,000	5.1	34
2	3,000	5.7	76
3	6,000	5.3	88

The outstanding amount of three mortgages is US\$10,000. Thus, the weights of Mortgages 1, 2, and 3 are 10%, 30%, and 60 %, respectively.

The WAC is:

$$10\% \times 5.1\% + 30\% \times 5.7\% + 60\% \times 5.3\% = 5.4\%$$

The WAM is:

$$10\% \times 34 + 30\% \times 76 + 60\% \times 88 = 79 \text{ months}$$

5.1.2 Prepayment Risk

An investor who owns mortgage pass-through securities does not know what the future cash flows will be because these future cash flows depend on actual prepayments. As we noted earlier, this risk is called prepayment risk. This prepayment risk has two components: contraction risk and extension risk, both of which largely reflect changes in the general level of interest rates.

Contraction risk is the risk that when interest rates decline, actual prepayments will be higher than forecasted because homeowners will refinance at now-available lower interest rates. Thus, a security backed by mortgages will have a shorter maturity than was anticipated at the time of purchase. Holding a security whose maturity becomes shorter when interest rates decline has two adverse consequences for investors. First, investors must reinvest the proceeds at lower interest rates. Second, if the security is prepayable or callable, its price appreciation is not as great as that of an otherwise identical bond that does not have a prepayment or call option.

In contrast, **extension risk** is the risk that when interest rates rise, prepayments will be lower than forecasted because homeowners are reluctant to give up the benefits of a contractual interest rate that now looks low. As a result, a security backed by mortgages will typically have a longer maturity than was anticipated at the time of purchase. From the investors' perspective, the value of the security has fallen because the higher interest rates translate into a lower price for the security, and the income investors receive (and can potentially reinvest) is typically limited to the interest payment and scheduled principal repayments.

5.1.3 Prepayment Rate Measures

In describing prepayments, market participants refer to the prepayment rate or prepayment speed. The two key prepayment rate measures are the single monthly mortality rate (SMM), a monthly measure, and its corresponding annualized rate, the conditional prepayment rate (CPR).

The SMM reflects the dollar amount of prepayment for the month as a fraction of the balance on the mortgage after accounting for the scheduled principal repayment for the month. It is calculated as follows:

$$\text{SMM} = \frac{\text{Prepayment for the month}}{\left(\begin{array}{l} \text{Beginning outstanding mortgage balance for the month} \\ - \text{Scheduled principal repayment for the month} \end{array} \right)} \quad (1)$$

Note that the SMM is typically expressed as a percentage.

When market participants describe the assumed prepayment for a pool of residential mortgages, they refer to the annualized SMM, which is the CPR. A CPR of 6%, for example, means that approximately 6% of the outstanding mortgage balance at the beginning of the year is expected to be prepaid by the end of the year.

A key factor in the valuation of a mortgage pass-through security and other products derived from a pool of mortgages is forecasting the future prepayment rate. This task involves prepayment modeling. Prepayment modeling uses characteristics of the mortgage pool and other factors to develop a statistical model for forecasting future prepayments.

In the United States, market participants describe prepayment rates in terms of a prepayment pattern or benchmark over the life of a mortgage pool. This pattern is the Public Securities Association (PSA) prepayment benchmark, which is produced by the Securities Industry and Financial Markets Association (SIFMA). The PSA prepayment benchmark is expressed as a series of monthly prepayment rates. Based on historical patterns, it assumes that prepayment rates are low for newly originated mortgages and then speed up as the mortgages become seasoned. Slower or faster prepayment rates are then referred to as some percentage of the PSA prepayment benchmark. Rather than going into the details of the PSA prepayment benchmark, this discussion will rely on some PSA assumptions. What is important to remember is that the standard for the PSA model is 100 PSA; that is, at 100 PSA, investors can expect prepayments to follow the PSA prepayment benchmark—for example, an increase of prepayment rates of 0.20% for the first 30 months until they peak at 6% in Month 30. A PSA assumption greater than 100 PSA means that prepayments are assumed to be faster than the standard model. In contrast, a PSA assumption lower than 100 PSA means that prepayments are assumed to be slower than the standard model.

5.1.4 Cash Flow Construction

Let us see how to construct the monthly cash flow for a hypothetical mortgage pass-through security. We assume the following:

- The underlying pool of mortgages has a par value of US\$800 million.
- The mortgages are fixed-rate, level-payment, and fully amortizing loans.
- The WAC for the mortgages in the pool is 6%.
- The WAM for the mortgages in the pool is 357 months.
- The pass-through rate is 5.5%.

Exhibit 2 shows the cash flows to the mortgage pass-through security holders for selected months assuming a prepayment rate of 165 PSA. The SMM in Column 3 and mortgage payments in Column 4 are given. The net interest payment in Column 5 is the amount available to pay security holders after servicing and other administrative fees. This amount is equal to the beginning outstanding mortgage balance in Column 2 multiplied by the pass-through rate of 5.5% and then divided by 12. The scheduled principal repayment in Column 6 is the difference between the mortgage payment in Column 4 and the gross interest payment. The gross interest payment is equal to the beginning outstanding mortgage balance in Column 2 multiplied by the WAC of 6% and then divided by 12. The prepayment in Column 7 is calculated by

applying Equation 1, using the SMM provided in Column 3, the beginning outstanding mortgage balance in Column 2, and the scheduled principal repayment in Column 6.¹⁰ The total principal repayment in Column 8 is the sum of the scheduled principal repayment in Column 6 and the prepayments in Column 7. Subtracting this amount from the beginning outstanding mortgage balance for the month gives the beginning outstanding mortgage balance for the following month. Finally, the projected cash flow for this mortgage pass-through security in Column 9 is the sum of the net interest payment in Column 5 and the total principal repayment in Column 8.

Exhibit 2 Monthly Cash Flow to Bondholders for a US\$800 Million Mortgage Pass-Through Security with a WAC of 6.0%, a WAM of 357 Months, and a Pass-Through Rate of 5.5%, Assuming a Prepayment Rate of 165 PSA

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)	(7)	(8)	(9)
Month	Beginning Outstanding Mortgage Balance (US\$)	SMM (%)	Mortgage Payment (US\$)	Net Interest Payment (US\$)	Scheduled Principal Repayment (US\$)	Prepayment (US\$)	Total Principal Repayment (US\$)	Projected Cash Flow (US\$)
1	800,000,000	0.111	4,810,844	3,666,667	810,844	884,472	1,695,316	5,361,982
2	798,304,684	0.139	4,805,520	3,658,896	813,996	1,104,931	1,918,927	5,577,823
3	796,385,757	0.167	4,798,862	3,650,101	816,933	1,324,754	2,141,687	5,791,788
⋮								
29	674,744,235	0.865	4,184,747	3,092,578	811,026	5,829,438	6,640,464	9,733,042
30	668,103,771	0.865	4,148,550	3,062,142	808,031	5,772,024	6,580,055	9,642,198
⋮								
100	326,937,929	0.865	2,258,348	1,498,466	623,659	2,822,577	3,446,236	4,944,702
101	323,491,693	0.865	2,238,814	1,482,670	621,355	2,792,788	3,414,143	4,896,814
⋮								
200	103,307,518	0.865	947,322	473,493	430,784	889,871	1,320,655	1,794,148
201	101,986,863	0.865	939,128	467,440	429,193	878,461	1,307,654	1,775,094
⋮								
300	19,963,930	0.865	397,378	91,501	297,559	170,112	467,670	559,172
301	19,496,260	0.865	393,941	89,358	296,460	166,076	462,536	551,893
⋮								
356	484,954	0.865	244,298	2,223	241,873	2,103	243,976	246,199
357	240,978	0.865	242,185	1,104	240,980	0	240,980	242,084

Note: Since the WAM is 357 months, the underlying mortgage pool is seasoned an average of three months, and therefore based on a 165 PSA, the CPR is 0.132% in month 1 (seasoned month 4), and the pool seasons at 6% in month 27.

¹⁰ The SMM in Column 3 is rounded, which results in some rounding error in the calculation of the prepayments in Column 7 and, thus, of the total principal repayments and the projected cash flows in Columns 8 and 9, respectively.

5.1.5 Weighted Average Life

A standard practice in the bond market is to refer to the maturity of a bond. This practice is not followed for MBS because principal repayments (scheduled principal repayments and prepayments) are made over the life of the security. Although an MBS has a “legal maturity,” which is the date when the last scheduled principal repayment is due, the legal maturity does not reveal much about the actual principal repayments and the interest rate risk associated with the MBS. For example, a 30-year, option-free, corporate bond and an MBS with a 30-year legal maturity with the same coupon rate are not equivalent in terms of interest rate risk. Effective duration can be calculated for both the corporate bond and the MBS to assess the sensitivity of the securities to interest rate movements. But a measure widely used by market participants for MBS is the **weighted average life** or simply the **average life** of the MBS. This measure gives investors an indication of how long they can expect to hold the MBS before it is paid off assuming interest rates stay at current levels and, thus, expected prepayments are realized. In other words, the average life of the MBS is the convention-based average time to receipt of all the projected principal repayments (scheduled principal repayments and projected prepayments).

A mortgage pass-through security’s average life depends on the prepayment assumption, as illustrated in the following table. This table provides the average life of the mortgage pass-through security used in Exhibit 2 for various prepayment rates. Note that at the assumed prepayment rate of 165 PSA, the mortgage pass-through security has an average life of 8.6 years. The average life extends when the prepayment rate goes down and contracts rapidly as the prepayment rate goes up. So, at a prepayment rate of 600 PSA, the average life of the mortgage pass-through security is only 3.2 years.

PSA assumption	100	125	165	250	400	600
Average life (years)	11.2	10.1	8.6	6.4	4.5	3.2

EXAMPLE 7

Mortgage Pass-Through Securities

- 1 A non-conforming mortgage:
 - A cannot be used as collateral in a mortgage-backed security.
 - B does not satisfy the underwriting standards for inclusion as collateral for an agency residential mortgage-backed security.
 - C does not give the lender a claim against the borrower for the shortfall between the amount of the outstanding mortgage balance and the proceeds from the sale of the property in the event that the borrower defaults on the mortgage.
- 2 The monthly cash flows of a mortgage pass-through security *most likely*:
 - A are constant.
 - B change when interest rates decline.
 - C are equal to the cash flows of the underlying pool of mortgages.
- 3 A prepayment rate of 80 PSA means that investors can expect:
 - A 80% of the par value of the mortgage pass-through security to be repaid prior to the security’s maturity.

- B** 80% of the borrowers whose mortgages are included in the collateral backing the mortgage pass-through security to prepay their mortgages.
 - C** the prepayment rate of the mortgages included in the collateral backing the mortgage pass-through security to be 80% of the monthly prepayment rates forecasted by the PSA model.
- 4** All else being equal, when interest rates decline:
- A** investors in mortgage pass-through securities face extension risk.
 - B** the weighted average maturity of a mortgage pass-through security lengthens.
 - C** the increase in the price of a mortgage pass-through security is less than the increase in the price of an otherwise identical bond with no prepayment option.

Solution to 1:

B is correct. A non-conforming mortgage is one that does not satisfy the underwriting standards for inclusion as collateral for an agency RMBS. The standards specify the maximum size of the loan, the loan documentation required, the maximum loan-to-value ratio, and whether or not insurance is required for the loans in the pool.

Solution to 2:

B is correct. The monthly cash flows of a mortgage pass-through security depend on the cash flows of the underlying pool of mortgages, but their amount and timing cannot be known with certainty because of prepayments. When interest rates decline, borrowers are likely to prepay all or part of their outstanding mortgage balance, which will affect the monthly cash flows of the mortgage pass-through security. Remember that the fees related to servicing and guaranteeing the mortgages reduce the monthly cash flows of a mortgage pass-through security relative to those of the underlying pool of mortgages.

Solution to 3:

C is correct. A prepayment rate of 80 PSA means that investors can expect the prepayment rate of the mortgages included in the collateral backing the mortgage pass-through security to be 80% of the monthly prepayment rates forecasted by the PSA model. For example, if the PSA model forecasts an increase in prepayment rates of 0.20% for the first 30 months until they peak at 6% in Month 30, 80 PSA would assume an increase in prepayment rates of 0.16% ($80\% \times 0.20\%$) for the first 30 months until they peak at 4.80% ($80\% \times 6\%$) in Month 30. Thus, investors can expect slower prepayments than the PSA prepayment benchmark.

Solution to 4:

C is correct. When interest rates decline, the prepayment rate on a mortgage pass-through security goes up because homeowners refinance at now-available lower interest rates. As a result, investors face contraction risk; that is, they receive payments faster than anticipated. Investors who decide to retain the security face the prospect of having to reinvest those payments at relatively low interest rates. Investors who decide to sell the security would have to do so at a price lower than that of an otherwise identical bond with no prepayment option and thus no prepayment risk.

5.2 Collateralized Mortgage Obligations

As noted in the previous section, prepayment risk is an important consideration when investing in mortgage pass-through securities. Some institutional investors are concerned with extension risk and others with contraction risk. The structuring of a securitization can help redistribute the cash flows of mortgage-related products (mortgage pass-through securities or pools of loans) to different bond classes or tranches, which leads to the creation of securities that have different exposures to prepayment risk and thus different risk–return patterns relative to the mortgage-related product from which they were created.

When the cash flows of mortgage-related products are redistributed to various tranches, the resulting securities are called **collateralized mortgage obligations** (CMOs). The mortgage-related products from which the cash flows are obtained are considered the collateral. Note that in contrast to a mortgage pass-through security, the collateral is not a pool of mortgages but a mortgage pass-through security. In fact, in practice, the collateral is usually a pool of mortgage pass-through securities—hence the reason market participants sometimes use the terms “collateral” and “mortgage pass-through securities” interchangeably.

The creation of a CMO cannot eliminate or change prepayment risk; it can only distribute the various forms of this risk among different bond classes. The CMO’s major financial innovation is that securities can be created to closely satisfy the asset/liability needs of institutional investors, thereby broadening the appeal of mortgage-backed products.

A wide range of CMO structures exists. The major ones are reviewed in the following subsections.

5.2.1 Sequential-Pay CMO Structures

The first CMO was structured so that each tranche would be retired sequentially. Such structures are called “sequential-pay CMOs.” The rule for the monthly distribution of the principal repayments (scheduled principal repayment plus prepayments) to the tranches in this structure is as follows. First, distribute all principal payments to Tranche 1 until the principal balance for Tranche 1 is zero. After Tranche 1 is paid off, distribute all principal payments to Tranche 2 until the principal balance for Tranche 2 is zero. And so on.

To illustrate a sequential-pay CMO, let us use a hypothetical transaction called CMO-01. Assume that the collateral for CMO-01 is the mortgage pass-through security described in Exhibit 2 in Section 5.1.4. Recall that the total par value of the collateral is US\$800 million, the pass-through coupon rate is 5.5%, the WAC is 6%, and the WAM is 357 months. From this US\$800 million of collateral, four tranches are created, as shown in Exhibit 3. In this simple structure, the coupon rate is the same for each tranche and also the same as the mortgage pass-through security’s coupon rate. This feature is for simplicity; typically, the coupon rate varies by tranche.¹¹

¹¹ Keep in mind that the coupon rate for a tranche is affected by the term structure of interest rates (that is, basically, the yield curve). Typically, yield increases as maturity increases. A CMO has tranches with different average lives. Usually, the longer the average life, the higher the coupon rate should be. So, in the hypothetical four-tranche sequential-pay structure shown in Exhibit 3, Tranche A might have a 4.2% coupon rate, Tranche B a 4.8% coupon rate, Tranche C a 5.2% coupon rate, and Tranche D a 5.5% coupon rate. In any event, investors evaluate each tranche on the basis of its perceived risk and price it accordingly. Consequently, investors pay a price for the tranche that reflects the yield they expect to receive given the particular coupon rate. Separately, the difference between the coupon rate paid by the underlying pool of mortgages net of servicing and other administrative fees (that is, the net coupon—5.5% in our example) and the coupon rate paid to each of the tranches that has a coupon rate of less than the net coupon is used to create securities called “structured interest-only tranches.” A discussion of these tranches is beyond the scope of this reading.

Exhibit 3 CMO-01: Sequential-Pay CMO Structure with Four Tranches

Tranche	Par Amount (US\$ millions)	Coupon Rate (%)
A	389	5.5
B	72	5.5
C	193	5.5
D	146	5.5
Total	800	

Payment rules: *For payment of monthly coupon interest:* Disburse monthly coupon interest to each tranche on the basis of the amount of principal outstanding for each tranche at the beginning of the month. *For disbursement of principal payments:* Disburse principal payments to Tranche A until it is completely paid off. After Tranche A is completely paid off, disburse principal payments to Tranche B until it is completely paid off. After Tranche B is completely paid off, disburse principal payments to Tranche C until it is completely paid off. After Tranche C is completely paid off, disburse principal payments to Tranche D until it is completely paid off.

Remember that a CMO is created by redistributing the cash flows—interest payments and principal repayments—to the various tranches on the basis of a set of payment rules. The payment rules at the bottom of Exhibit 3 describe how the cash flows from the mortgage pass-through security are to be distributed to the four tranches. CMO-01 has separate rules for the interest payment and the principal repayment, the latter being the sum of the scheduled principal repayment and the prepayments.

Although the payment rules for the distribution of the principal repayments are known, the precise amount of the principal repayment in each month is not. This amount will depend on the cash flow of the collateral, which depends on the actual prepayment rate of the collateral. The assumed prepayment rate (165 PSA in Exhibit 2) allows determining only the projected, not the actual, cash flow.

Consider what has been accomplished by creating the sequential-pay CMO-01 structure. Earlier, we saw that with a prepayment rate of 165 PSA, the mortgage pass-through security's average life was 8.6 years. Exhibit 4 reports the average life of the collateral and the four tranches assuming various actual prepayment rates. Note that the four tranches have average lives that are shorter or longer than the collateral, thereby attracting investors who have preferences for different average lives. For example, a pension fund that needs cash only after a few years because it expects a significant increase in the number of retirements after that time may opt for a tranche with a longer average life.

Exhibit 4 Average Life of the Collateral and the Four Tranches of CMO-01 for Various Actual Prepayment Rates

Prepayment Rate	Average Life (years)				
	Collateral	Tranche A	Tranche B	Tranche C	Tranche D
100 PSA	11.2	4.7	10.4	15.1	24.0
125 PSA	10.1	4.1	8.9	13.2	22.4
165 PSA	8.6	3.4	7.3	10.9	19.8
250 PSA	6.4	2.7	5.3	7.9	15.2
400 PSA	4.5	2.0	3.8	5.3	10.3
600 PSA	3.2	1.6	2.8	3.8	7.0

A major problem that remains is the considerable variability of the average lives of the tranches. How this problem can be handled is shown in the next section, but at this point, note that some protection against prepayment risk is provided for each tranche. The protection arises because prioritizing the distribution of principal (that is, establishing the payment rule for the principal repayment) effectively protects the shorter-term tranche (A in this structure) against extension risk. This protection must come from somewhere; it actually comes from the longer-term tranches. Similarly, Tranches C and D provide protection against extension risk for Tranches A and B. At the same time, Tranches C and D benefit because they are provided protection against contraction risk; this protection comes from Tranches A and B. Thus, the sequential-pay CMO-01 structure allows investors concerned about extension risk to invest in Tranches A or B and those concerned about contraction risk to invest in Tranches C or D.

5.2.2 CMO Structures Including Planned Amortization Class and Support Tranches

A common structure in CMOs is to include **planned amortization class (PAC) tranches**, which offer greater predictability of the cash flows as long as the prepayment rate is within a specified band over the collateral's life. Remember that the creation of an MBS, whether it is a mortgage pass-through or a CMO, cannot make prepayment risk disappear. So where does the reduction of prepayment risk (both extension risk and contraction risk) that PAC tranches offer investors come from? The answer is that it comes from the existence of non-PAC tranches, called **support tranches** or companion tranches. The structure of the CMO makes the support tranches absorb prepayment risk first. Because PAC tranches have limited (but not complete) protection against both extension risk and contraction risk, they are said to provide two-sided prepayment protection.

The greater predictability of the cash flows for the PAC tranches occurs because a principal repayment schedule must be satisfied. As long as the prepayment rate is within the specified band, called the PAC band, all prepayment risk is absorbed by the support tranche. If the collateral prepayments are slower than forecasted, the support tranches do not receive any principal repayment until the PAC tranches receive their scheduled principal repayment. This rule reduces the extension risk of the PAC tranches. Similarly, if the collateral prepayments are faster than forecasted, the support tranches absorb any principal repayments in excess of the scheduled principal repayments. This rule reduces the contraction risk of the PAC tranches. Even if the prepayment rate is outside the PAC band, prepayment risk is first absorbed by the support tranche. Thus, the key to the prepayment protection that PAC tranches offer investors is the amount of support tranches outstanding. If the support tranches are paid off quickly because of faster-than-expected prepayments, they no longer provide any protection for the PAC tranches.

Support tranches expose investors to the highest level of prepayment risk. Therefore, investors must be particularly careful in assessing the cash flow characteristics of support tranches in order to reduce the likelihood of adverse portfolio consequences resulting from prepayments.

To illustrate how to create CMO structures including PAC and support tranches, we use again the US\$800 million mortgage pass-through security described in Exhibit 2 in Section 5.1.4, with a pass-through coupon rate of 5.5%, a WAC of 6%, and a WAM of 357 months as collateral. The creation of PAC tranches requires the specification of two PSA prepayment rates: a *lower* PSA prepayment assumption and an *upper* PSA prepayment assumption. The lower and upper PSA prepayment assumptions are called the "initial PAC collar" or the "initial PAC band." The PAC collar for a CMO is typically dictated by market conditions. In our example, we assume that the lower and upper PSA prepayment assumptions are 100 PSA and 250 PSA, respectively, so the initial PAC collar is 100–250 PSA.

Exhibit 5 shows a CMO structure called CMO-02 that contains only two tranches: a 5.5% coupon PAC tranche created assuming an initial PAC collar of 100–250 PSA and a support tranche.

Exhibit 5 CMO-02: CMO Structure with One PAC Tranche and One Support Tranche

Tranche	Par Amount (US\$ million)	Coupon Rate (%)
P (PAC)	487.6	5.5
S (support)	312.4	5.5
Total	800.0	

Payment rules: *For payment of monthly coupon interest:* Disburse monthly coupon interest to each tranche on the basis of the amount of principal outstanding for each tranche at the beginning of the month. *For disbursement of principal payments:* Disburse principal payments to Tranche P on the basis of its schedule of principal repayments. Tranche P has priority with respect to current and future principal payments to satisfy the schedule. Any excess principal payments in a month over the amount necessary to satisfy the schedule for Tranche P are paid to Tranche S. When Tranche S is completely paid off, all principal payments are to be made to Tranche P regardless of the schedule.

Exhibit 6 reports the average life of the PAC and support tranches in CMO-02 assuming various actual prepayment rates. Note that between 100 PSA and 250 PSA, the average life of the PAC tranche is constant at 7.7 years. At slower or faster PSA rates, however, the schedule is broken and the average life changes—extending when the prepayment rate is less than 100 PSA and contracting when it is greater than 250 PSA. Even so, there is much less variability for the average life of the PAC tranche compared with that of the support tranche.

Exhibit 6 Average Life of the PAC Tranche and the Support Tranche of CMO-02 for Various Actual Prepayment Rates and an Initial PAC Collar of 100–250 PSA

Prepayment Rate	Average Life (years)	
	PAC Tranche (P)	Support Tranche (S)
50 PSA	10.2	24.9
75 PSA	8.6	22.7
100 PSA	7.7	20.0
165 PSA	7.7	10.7
250 PSA	7.7	3.3
400 PSA	5.5	1.9
600 PSA	4.0	1.4

Most CMO structures including PAC and support tranches have more than one PAC tranche. A sequence of six PAC tranches (that is, PAC tranches paid off in sequence as specified by a principal repayment schedule) is not uncommon. For example, consider CMO-03 in Exhibit 7, which contains four sequential PAC tranches (P-A, P-B, P-C, and P-D) and one support tranche. The total par amount of the PAC and support tranches is the same as for CMO-02 in Exhibit 5. The difference is that instead of one PAC tranche with a schedule, there are four PAC tranches with schedules. As described in the payment rules, the PAC tranches are paid off in sequence.

Exhibit 7 CMO-03: CMO Structure with Sequential PAC Tranches and One Support Tranche

Tranche	Par Amount (US\$ million)	Coupon Rate (%)
P-A (PAC)	287.6	5.5
P-B (PAC)	90.0	5.5
P-C (PAC)	60.0	5.5
P-D (PAC)	50.0	5.5
S (support)	312.4	5.5
Total	800.0	

Payment rules: *For payment of monthly coupon interest:* Disburse monthly coupon interest to each tranche on the basis of the amount of principal outstanding for each tranche at the beginning of the month. *For disbursement of principal payments:* Disburse principal payments to Tranche P-A on the basis of its schedule of principal repayments. Tranche P-A has priority with respect to current and future principal payments to satisfy the schedule. Any excess principal payments in a month over the amount necessary to satisfy the schedule while P-A is outstanding is paid to Tranche S. Once P-A is paid off, disburse principal payments to Tranche P-B on the basis of its schedule of principal repayments. Tranche P-B has priority with respect to current and future principal payments to satisfy the schedule. Any excess principal payments in a month over the amount necessary to satisfy the schedule while P-B is outstanding are paid to Tranche S. The same rule applies for P-C and P-D. When Tranche S is completely paid off, all principal payments are to be made to the outstanding PAC tranches regardless of the schedule.

5.2.3 Other CMO Structures

Often, there is a demand for tranches that have a floating rate. Although the collateral pays a fixed rate, it is possible to create a tranche with a floating rate. This is done by constructing a floater and an inverse floater combination from any of the fixed-rate tranches in the CMO structure. Because the floating-rate tranche pays a higher rate when interest rates go up and the inverse floater pays a lower rate when interest rates go up, they offset each other. Thus, a fixed-rate tranche can be used to satisfy the demand for a floating-rate tranche.

In a similar vein, other types of tranches to satisfy the various needs of investors are possible.

EXAMPLE 8

Collateralized Mortgage Obligations

- 1 A collateralized mortgage obligation:
 - A eliminates prepayment risk.
 - B is created from a pool of conforming loans.
 - C redistributes various forms of prepayment risk among different bond classes.
- 2 The variability in the average life of the PAC tranche of a CMO relative to the average life of the mortgage pass-through securities from which the CMO is created is:
 - A lower.
 - B the same.
 - C higher.

- 3 Referring to Exhibit 7, the tranche of CMO-03 that is *most suitable* for an investor concerned about contraction risk is:
- A P-A (PAC).
 - B P-D (PAC).
 - C S (support).
- 4 The tranche of a collateralized mortgage obligation that is *most suitable* for an investor who expects a fall in interest rates is:
- A a fixed-rate tranche.
 - B an inverse floating-rate tranche.
 - C a PAC tranche.
- 5 The investment that is *most suitable* for an investor who is willing and able to accept significant prepayment risk is:
- A a mortgage pass-through security.
 - B the support tranche of a collateralized mortgage obligation.
 - C the inverse floating-rate tranche of a collateralized mortgage obligation.

Solution to 1:

C is correct. CMOs are created by redistributing the cash flows of mortgage-related products, including mortgage pass-through securities, to different bond classes or tranches on the basis of a set of payment rules.

Solution to 2:

A is correct. The purpose of creating different bond classes in a CMO is to provide a risk–return profile that is more suitable to investors than the risk–return profile of the mortgage pass-through securities from which the CMO is created. The PAC tranche has considerably less variability in average life than the mortgage pass-through securities. In contrast, the support tranche has more variability in average life than the mortgage pass-through securities.

Solution to 3:

B is correct. Contraction risk is the risk that when interest rates decline, prepayments will be higher than expected and the security’s maturity will become shorter than was anticipated at the time of purchase. PAC tranches offer investors protection against contraction risk (and extension risk). The PAC tranche that is most suitable for an investor concerned about contraction risk is P-D because it is the latest-payment PAC tranche; that is, any principal repayments in excess of the scheduled principal repayments are absorbed sequentially by the support tranche, then P-A, P-B, and, finally, P-D.

Solution to 4:

B is correct. The tranche of a CMO that is most suitable for an investor who expects a fall in interest rates is an inverse floating-rate tranche. The inverse floater pays a coupon rate that is inversely related to prevailing interest rates. Thus, if interest rates fall, the CMO’s coupon rate will rise.

Solution to 5:

B is correct. The investment that is most suitable to an investor who is willing and able to accept significant prepayment risk is the support tranche of a collateralized mortgage obligation. Because the PAC tranche has a stable average life at prepayment rates within the PAC band, all prepayment risk is absorbed by the support tranche for prepayment rates within the band. Even at rates

outside the PAC band, prepayment risk is first absorbed by the support tranche. Investors will be compensated for bearing prepayment risk in the sense that, if properly priced, the support tranche will have a higher expected rate of return than the PAC tranche.

5.3 Non-agency Residential Mortgage-Backed Securities

Agency RMBS are those issued by Ginnie Mae, Fannie Mae, and Freddie Mac. RMBS issued by any other entity are non-agency RMBS. Entities that issue non-agency RMBS are typically thrift institutions, commercial banks, and private conduits. Private conduits may purchase non-conforming mortgages, pool them, and then sell mortgage pass-through securities whose collateral is the underlying pool of non-conforming mortgages. Because they are not guaranteed by the government or by a GSE, credit risk is an important consideration when investing in non-agency RMBS.

Non-agency RMBS share many features and structuring techniques with agency CMOs. However, because non-agency RMBS are not guaranteed by the US government or by a GSE that can provide protection against losses in the pool, some form of internal or external credit enhancement is necessary to make these securities attractive to investors. These credit enhancements allow investors to reduce credit risk or transfer credit risk between bond classes, thus enabling investors to choose the risk–return profile that best suits their needs. Credit enhancements also play an important role in obtaining favorable credit ratings, which make non-agency RMBS more marketable to investors. The level of credit enhancement is usually determined relative to a specific credit rating desired by the issuer for a security. Note that one of the consequences of the 2007–2009 credit crisis has been an overall increase in the level of credit enhancement.

As mentioned in Section 3.3, subordination, or credit tranching, is a common form of credit enhancement. The subordination levels (that is, the amount of credit protection for a bond class) are set at the time of issuance. However, the subordination levels change over time, as voluntary prepayments and defaults occur. To protect investors in non-agency RMBS, a securitization is designed to keep the amount of credit enhancement from deteriorating over time. If the credit enhancement for senior tranches deteriorates because of poor performance of the collateral, a mechanism called the “shifting interest mechanism” locks out subordinated bond classes from receiving payments for a period of time. Many non-agency RMBS also include other credit enhancements, such as overcollateralization and reserve accounts.

When forecasting the future cash flows of non-agency RMBS, investors must consider two important components. The first is the assumed default rate for the collateral. The second is the recovery rate, because even though the collateral may default, not all of the outstanding mortgage balance may be lost. The repossession and subsequent sale of the recovered property may provide cash flows that will be available to pay bondholders. That amount is based on the assumed amount that will be recovered.

The focus in Section 5 is on securities backed by a pool of residential mortgages. The next section discusses securities backed by a pool of commercial mortgages.

COMMERCIAL MORTGAGE-BACKED SECURITIES

6

Commercial mortgage-backed securities (CMBS) are backed by a pool of commercial mortgages on income-producing property, such as multifamily properties (e.g., apartment buildings), office buildings, industrial properties (including warehouses),

shopping centers, hotels, and health care facilities (e.g., senior housing care facilities). The collateral is a pool of commercial loans that were originated either to finance a commercial purchase or to refinance a prior mortgage obligation.

6.1 Credit Risk

In the United States and other countries where commercial mortgages are non-recourse loans, the lender can look only to the income-producing property backing the loan for interest payments and principal repayments. If a default occurs, the lender can foreclose the commercial property but it can only use the proceeds from the sale of that property to recover the principal outstanding, and it has no recourse to the borrower's other assets and/or income for any unpaid balance. The lender must view each property individually, and lenders evaluate each property using measures that have been found useful in assessing credit risk.

Two measures that have been found to be key indicators of potential credit performance are the loan-to-value ratio (LTV), which was discussed in Section 4, and the debt-service-coverage (DSC) ratio, sometimes referred to as DSCR. The DSC ratio is equal to the property's annual net operating income (NOI) divided by the debt service (that is, the annual amount of interest payments and principal repayments). The NOI is defined as the rental income reduced by cash operating expenses and a non-cash replacement reserve reflecting the depreciation of the property over time. A DSC ratio that exceeds 1.0 indicates that the cash flows from the property are sufficient to cover the debt service while maintaining the property in its initial state of repair. The higher the DSC ratio, the more likely it is that the borrower will be able to meet debt-servicing requirements from the property's cash flows.

6.2 CMBS Structure

A credit-rating agency determines the level of credit enhancement necessary to achieve a desired credit rating. For example, if specific loan-to-value and DSC ratios are needed and those ratios cannot be met at the loan level, subordination is used to achieve the desired credit rating.

Interest on the principal outstanding is paid to all tranches. Losses arising from loan defaults are charged against the outstanding principal balance of the CMBS tranche with the lowest priority. This tranche may not be rated by credit-rating agencies; in this case, this unrated tranche is called the "first-loss piece," "residual tranche," or "equity tranche." The total loss charged includes the amount previously advanced and the actual loss incurred in the sale of the loan's underlying property.

Two characteristics that are usually specific to CMBS structures are the presence of a call protection and a balloon maturity provision.

6.2.1 Call Protection

A critical investment feature that distinguishes CMBS from RMBS is the protection against early prepayments available to investors' known as a **call protection**. An investor in an RMBS is exposed to considerable prepayment risk because the borrower has the right to prepay a loan, in whole or in part, before the scheduled principal repayment date. As explained in Section 4.4, a borrower in the United States usually does not pay any penalty for prepayment. The discussion of CMOs highlighted how investors can purchase certain types of tranches (e.g., sequential-pay and PAC tranches) to modify or reduce prepayment risk.

With CMBS, investors have considerable call protection. In fact, it is this protection that results in CMBS trading in the market more like corporate bonds than like RMBS. The call protection comes either at the structure level or at the loan level.

Structural call protection is achieved when CMBS are structured to have sequential-pay tranches, by credit rating. A lower-rated tranche cannot be paid down until the higher-rated tranche is completely retired, so the AAA rated bonds must be paid off before the AA rated bonds are, and so on. Principal losses resulting from defaults, however, are affected from the bottom of the structure upward.

At the loan level, four mechanisms offer investors call protection:

- A prepayment lockout, which is a contractual agreement that prohibits any prepayments during a specified period of time.
- Prepayment penalty points, which are predetermined penalties that a borrower who wants to refinance must pay to do so—a point is equal to 1% of the outstanding loan balance.
- A yield maintenance charge, also called a “make-whole charge,” which is a penalty paid by the borrower that makes refinancing solely to get a lower mortgage rate uneconomical for the borrower. In its simplest terms, a yield maintenance charge is designed to make the lender indifferent as to the timing of prepayments.
- Defeasance, for which the borrower provides sufficient funds for the servicer to invest in a portfolio of government securities that replicates the cash flows that would exist in the absence of prepayments. The cash payments that must be met by the borrower are projected on the basis of the terms of the loan. Then, a portfolio of government securities is constructed in such a way that the interest payments and the principal repayments from the portfolio will be sufficient to pay off each obligation when it comes due. When the last obligation is paid off, the value of the portfolio is zero (that is, there are no funds remaining). The cost of assembling such a portfolio is the cost of defeasing the loan that must be repaid by the issuer.¹²

6.2.2 Balloon Maturity Provision

Many commercial loans backing CMBS are balloon loans that require a substantial principal repayment at maturity of the loan. If the borrower fails to make the balloon payment, the borrower is in default. The lender may extend the loan over a period of time called the “workout period.” In doing so, the lender may modify the original terms of the loan and charge a higher interest rate, called the “default interest rate,” during the workout period.

The risk that a borrower will not be able to make the balloon payment because either the borrower cannot arrange for refinancing or cannot sell the property to generate sufficient funds to pay off the outstanding principal balance is called “balloon risk.” Because the life of the loan is extended by the lender during the workout period, balloon risk is a type of extension risk.

¹² This portfolio strategy for paying off liabilities is used by insurance companies. In the United States, it has also been used by municipal bond issuers; the resulting bonds are referred to as “pre-refunded bonds.”

EXAMPLE 9**An Example of a Commercial Mortgage-Backed Security**

The following information is taken from a filing with the US Securities and Exchange Commission about a CMBS issued in April 2013 by Citigroup Commercial Mortgage Trust 2013-GCJ11. The collateral for this CMBS is a pool of 72 fixed-rate mortgages secured by first liens (first claims) on various types of commercial, multifamily, and manufactured housing community properties.

Classes of Offered Certificates	Initial Principal Amount (US\$)	Initial Pass-Through Rate (%)
A-1	75,176,000	0.754
A-2	290,426,000	1.987
A-3	150,000,000	2.815
A-4	236,220,000	3.093
A-AB	92,911,000	2.690
X-A	948,816,000	1.937
A-S	104,083,000	3.422
B	75,423,000	3.732
C	42,236,000	

The filing includes the following statements:

If you acquire Class B certificates, then your rights to receive distributions of amounts collected or advanced on or in respect of the mortgage loans will be subordinated to those of the holders of the Class A-1, Class A-2, Class A-3, Class A-4, Class A-AB, Class X-A, and Class A-S certificates. If you acquire Class C certificates, then your rights to receive distributions of amounts collected or advanced on or in respect of the mortgage loans will be subordinated to those of the holders of the Class B certificates and all other classes of offered certificates.

“Prepayment Penalty Description” or “Prepayment Provision” means the number of payments from the first due date through and including the maturity date for which a mortgage loan is, as applicable, (i) locked out from prepayment, (ii) provides for payment of a prepayment premium or yield maintenance charge in connection with a prepayment, (iii) permits defeasance.

- 1 Based on the information provided, this CMBS:
 - A does not include any credit enhancement.
 - B includes an internal credit enhancement.
 - C includes an external credit enhancement.
- 2 Based on the information provided, investors in this CMBS have prepayment protection at:
 - A the loan level.
 - B the structure level.
 - C both the loan and structure levels.
- 3 Defeasance can be *best* described as:
 - A a predetermined penalty that a borrower who wants to refinance must pay to do so.

- B** a contractual agreement that prohibits any prepayments during a specified period of time.
 - C** funds that the borrower must provide to replicate the cash flows that would exist in the absence of prepayments.
- 4 A risk that investors typically face when holding CMBS is:
- A** call risk
 - B** balloon risk.
 - C** contraction risk.
- 5 The credit risk of a commercial mortgage-backed security is lower:
- A** the lower the DSC ratio and the lower the LTV.
 - B** the lower the DSC ratio and the higher the LTV.
 - C** the higher the DSC ratio and the lower the LTV.

Solution to 1:

B is correct. The CMBS includes a senior/subordinated structure, which is a form of internal credit enhancement. Class B provides protection for all of the bond classes listed above it. Similarly, Class C provides protection for all other bond classes, including Class B; it is the first-loss piece, also called the residual tranche or equity tranche. Note that because it is the residual tranche, Class C has no specific pass-through rate. Investors in Class C will price it on the basis of some expected residual rate of return, but they could do better or worse than expected depending on how interest rate movements and default rates affect the performance of the other tranches.

Solution to 2:

C is correct. This CMBS offers investors prepayment protection at both the structure and loan levels. The structural call protection is achieved thanks to the sequential-pay tranches. At the loan level, the CMBS includes three of the four types of call protection—namely, a prepayment lockout, a yield maintenance charge, and defeasance.

Solution to 3:

C is correct. Defeasance is a call protection at the loan level that requires the borrower to provide sufficient funds for the servicer to invest in a portfolio of government securities that replicates the cash flows that would exist in the absence of prepayments.

Solution to 4:

B is correct. Because many commercial loans backing CMBS require a balloon payment, investors in CMBS typically face balloon risk—that is, the risk that if the borrower cannot arrange for refinancing or cannot sell the property to make the balloon payment, the CMBS may extend in maturity because the lender has to wait to obtain the outstanding principal until the borrower can make the balloon amount. Balloon risk is a type of extension risk.

Solution to 5:

C is correct. The DSC ratio and the LTV are key indicators of potential credit performance and thus allow investors to assess the credit risk of a CMBS. The DSC ratio is equal to the property's annual NOI divided by the annual amount of interest payments and principal repayments. So the higher the DSC ratio, the

lower the CMBS's credit risk. The LTV is equal to the amount of the mortgage divided by the property's value. So the lower the LTV, the lower the CMBS's credit risk.

To this point, this reading has addressed the securitization of real estate property, both residential and commercial. Section 7 discusses the securitization of debt obligations in which the underlying asset is not real estate.

7

NON-MORTGAGE ASSET-BACKED SECURITIES

Numerous types of non-mortgage assets have been used as collateral in securitization. The largest in most countries are auto loan and lease receivables, credit card receivables, personal loans, and commercial loans. What is important to keep in mind is that, regardless of the type of asset, ABS that are not guaranteed by a government or a quasi-government entity are subject to credit risk.

ABS can be categorized on the basis of the way the collateral repays—that is, whether the collateral is amortizing or non-amortizing. Traditional residential mortgages and auto loans are examples of amortizing loans. The cash flows for an amortizing loan include interest payments, scheduled principal repayments and any prepayments, if permissible. If the loan has no schedule for paying down the principal, it is a non-amortizing loan. Because a non-amortizing loan does not involve scheduled principal repayments, an ABS backed by non-amortizing loans is not affected by prepayment risk. Credit card receivable ABS are an example of ABS backed by non-amortizing loans.

Consider an ABS backed by a pool of 1,000 amortizing loans with a total par value of US\$100 million. Over time, some of the loans will be paid off; the amounts received from the scheduled principal repayment and any prepayments will be distributed to the bond classes on the basis of the payment rule. Consequently, over time, the number of loans in the collateral will drop from 1,000 and the total par value will fall to less than US\$100 million.

Now, what happens if the collateral of the ABS is 1,000 non-amortizing loans? Some of these loans will be paid off in whole or in part before the maturity of the ABS. When those loans are paid off, what happens depends on whether the loans were paid off during the lockout period or after it. The lockout period or revolving period is the period during which the principal repaid is reinvested to acquire additional loans with a principal equal to the principal repaid. The reinvestment in new loans can result in the collateral including more or less than 1,000 loans, but the loans will still have a total par value of US\$100 million. When the lockout period is over, any principal that is repaid will not be used to reinvest in new loans but will instead be distributed to the bond classes.

This reading cannot cover all types of non-mortgage ABS. It focuses on the two popular non-mortgage ABS in most countries: auto loan ABS and credit card receivable ABS.

7.1 Auto Loan ABS

Auto loan ABS are backed by auto loans and lease receivables. The focus in this section is on the largest type of auto securitizations—that is, auto loan-backed securities. In some countries, auto loan-backed securities represent the largest or second largest sector of the securitization market.

The cash flows for auto loan-backed securities consist of scheduled monthly payments (that is, interest payments and scheduled principal repayments) and any prepayments. For securities backed by auto loans, prepayments result from sales and trade-ins requiring full payoff of the loan, repossession and subsequent resale of autos, insurance proceeds received upon loss or destruction of autos, and early payoffs of the loans.

All auto loan-backed securities have some form of credit enhancement, often a senior/subordinated structure. In addition, many auto loan-backed securities come with overcollateralization and a reserve account, often an excess spread account. Recall from a previous reading that the excess spread, sometimes called excess interest cash flow, is an amount that can be retained and deposited into a reserve account and that can serve as a first line of protection against losses.

To illustrate the typical structure of auto loan-backed securities, let us use the example of securities issued by Fideicomiso Financiero Autos VI. The collateral is a pool of 827 auto loans denominated in Argentine pesos (ARS). The loans were originated by BancoFinansur. The structure of the securitization includes three bond classes:

Bond Class	Outstanding Principal Balance at the end of 2012 (ARS)
Class A Floating-Rate Debt Securities	22,700,000
Class B Floating-Rate Debt Securities	1,970,000
Certificates	5,988,245
Total	30,658,245

The certificates provide credit protection for Class B, and Class B provides credit protection for Class A. Further credit enhancement comes from overcollateralization and the presence of an excess spread account. The reference rate for the floating-rate debt securities is BADLAR (Buenos Aires Deposits of Large Amount Rate), the benchmark rate for loans in Argentina. This reference rate is the average rate on 30-day deposits of at least ARS1 million. For Class A, the interest rate is BADLAR plus 450 bps, with a minimum rate of 18% and a maximum rate of 26%; for Class B, it is BADLAR plus 650 bps, with 20% and 28% as the minimum and maximum rates, respectively.

EXAMPLE 10

An Example of an Auto Loan ABS

The following information is from the prospectus supplement for US\$877,670,000 of auto loan ABS issued by AmeriCredit Automobile Receivables Trust 2013-4:

The collateral for this securitization is a pool of sub-prime automobile loan contracts secured for new and used automobiles and light-duty trucks and vans.

The issuing entity will issue seven sequential-pay classes of asset-backed notes pursuant to the indenture. The notes are designated as the "Class A-1 Notes," the "Class A-2 Notes," the "Class A-3 Notes," the "Class B Notes," the "Class C Notes," the "Class D Notes," and the "Class E Notes." The Class A-1 Notes, the Class A-2 Notes, and the Class A-3 Notes are the "Class A Notes." The Class A Notes, the Class B Notes, the Class C Notes, and the Class D Notes are being offered by this prospectus supplement and are sometimes referred to as the publicly offered notes. The Class E Notes are not being

offered by this prospectus supplement and will initially be retained by the depositor or an affiliate of the depositor. The Class E Notes are sometimes referred to as the privately placed notes.

Each class of notes will have the initial note principal balance, interest rate, and final scheduled distribution date listed in the following tables:

Publicly Offered Notes			
Class	Initial Note		Final Scheduled Distribution Date
	Principal Balance (US\$)	Interest Rate (%)	
A-1 (senior)	168,000,000	0.25	8 August 2014
A-2 (senior)	279,000,000	0.74	8 November 2016
A-3 (senior)	192,260,000	0.96	9 April 2018
B (subordinated)	68,870,000	1.66	10 September 2018
C (subordinated)	85,480,000	2.72	9 September 2019
D (subordinated)	84,060,000	3.31	8 October 2019

Privately Placed Notes			
Class	Initial Note		Final Scheduled Distribution Date
	Principal Balance (US\$)	Interest Rate (%)	
E (subordinated)	22,330,000	4.01	8 January 2021

Interest on each class of notes will accrue during each interest period at the applicable interest rate.

The overcollateralization amount represents the amount by which the aggregate principal balance of the automobile loan contracts exceeds the principal balance of the notes. On the closing date, the initial amount of overcollateralization is approximately US\$49,868,074 or 5.25% of the aggregate principal balance of the automobile loan contracts as of the cutoff date.

On the closing date, 2.0% of the expected initial aggregate principal balance of the automobile loan contracts will be deposited into the reserve account, which is approximately US\$18,997,361.

- 1 The reference to sub-prime means that:
 - A the asset-backed notes are rated below investment grade.
 - B the automobile (auto) loan contracts were made to borrowers who do not have or cannot document strong credit.
 - C some of the auto loan contracts are secured by autos of low quality that may be difficult to sell in case the borrower defaults.
- 2 Based on the information provided, if on the first distribution date there are losses on the loans of US\$10 million:
 - A none of the classes of notes will incur losses.
 - B Class E notes will incur losses of US\$10 million.
 - C Classes B, C, D, and E will incur losses pro rata of their initial note principal balances.

- 3 Based on the information provided, if the first loss on the loans is US\$40 million over and above the protection provided by the internal credit enhancements and occurs in January 2014, which class(es) of notes realize losses?
- A Class E and then Class D
 - B Each class of subordinated notes in proportion to its principal balance
 - C Class E and then each class of subordinated notes in proportion to its principal balance

Solution to 1:

B is correct. A subprime loan is one granted to borrowers with lower credit quality, who have typically experienced prior credit difficulties or who cannot otherwise document strong credit.

Solution to 2:

A is correct. The amount of the loss (US\$10 million) is lower than the combined amount of overcollateralization and the reserve account (US\$49,868,074 + US\$18,997,361 = US\$68,865,435). Therefore, none of the classes of notes will incur losses.

Solution to 3:

A is correct. Once the amount of losses exceeds the amount of protection provided by the overcollateralization and the reserve account, losses are absorbed by the bond classes. Because it is a sequential-pay structure, Class E notes are the first ones to absorb losses, up to the principal amount of US\$22,330,000. It means that there is still US\$17,670,000 to be absorbed by another bond class, which would be the Class D notes.

7.2 Credit Card Receivable ABS

When a purchase is made on a credit card, the issuer of the credit card (the lender) extends credit to the cardholder (the borrower). Credit cards are issued by banks, credit card companies, retailers, and travel and entertainment companies. At the time of purchase, the cardholder agrees to repay the amount borrowed (that is, the cost of the item purchased) plus any applicable finance charges. The amount that the cardholder agrees to pay the issuer of the credit card is a receivable from the perspective of the issuer of the credit card. Credit card receivables are used as collateral for the issuance of credit card receivable ABS.

For a pool of credit card receivables, the cash flows consist of finance charges collected, fees, and principal repayments. Finance charges collected represent the periodic interest the credit card borrower is charged on the unpaid balance after the grace period. The interest rate may be fixed or floating. The floating rate may be capped; that is, it may have an upper limit because some countries have usury rate laws that impose a cap on interest rates. Fees include late payment fees and any annual membership fees.

Interest is paid to holders of credit card receivable ABS periodically (e.g., monthly, quarterly, or semiannually). As noted earlier, the collateral of credit card receivable ABS is a pool of non-amortizing loans. These loans have lockout periods during which the cash flows that are paid out to security holders are based only on finance charges collected and fees. When the lockout period is over, the principal that is repaid by the cardholders is no longer reinvested but instead is distributed to investors.

Some provisions in credit card receivable ABS require early amortization of the principal if specific events occur. Such provisions are referred to as “early amortization” or “rapid amortization” provisions and are included to safeguard the credit quality of the issue. The only way the principal cash flows can be altered is by the triggering of the early amortization provision.

To illustrate the typical structure of credit card receivable ABS, consider the GE Capital Credit Card Master Note Trust Series 2013-1 issued in March 2013. The originator of the credit card receivables is GE Capital Retail Bank, now known as Synchrony Bank, and the servicer is GE Capital Corporation. The collateral is a pool of credit card receivables from several private-label and co-branded credit card issuers, including JCPenney, Lowe’s Home Improvement, Sam’s Club, Walmart, Gap, and Chevron. The structure of the US\$969,085,000 securitization is as follows: Class A notes for US\$800,000,000, Class B notes for US\$100,946,373, and Class C notes for US\$68,138,802. Thus, the issue has a senior/subordinate structure. The Class A notes are the senior notes and were rated Aaa by Moody’s and AAA by Fitch. The Class B notes were rated A2 by Moody’s and A+ by Fitch. The Class C notes were rated Baa2 by Moody’s and BBB+ by Fitch.

EXAMPLE 11

Credit Card Receivable ABS vs. Auto Loan ABS

Credit card receivable asset-backed securities (ABS) differ from auto loan ABS in the following way:

- A** credit card loans are recourse loans, whereas auto loans are non-recourse loans.
- B** the collateral for credit card receivable-backed securities is a pool of non-amortizing loans, whereas the collateral for auto loan ABS is a pool of amortizing loans.
- C** credit card receivable-backed securities have regular principal repayments, whereas auto loan ABS include a lockout period during which the cash proceeds from principal repayments are reinvested in additional loan receivables.

Solution:

B is correct. A main difference between credit card receivable ABS and auto loan ABS is the type of loans that back the securities. For credit card receivable ABS, the collateral is a pool of non-amortizing loans. During the lockout period, the cash proceeds from principal repayments are reinvested in additional credit card receivables. When the lockout period is over, principal repayments are used to pay off the outstanding principal. For auto loan-backed securities, the collateral is a pool of amortizing loans. Security holders receive regular principal repayments. As a result, the outstanding principal balance declines over time.

8

COLLATERALIZED DEBT OBLIGATIONS

Collateralized debt obligation (CDO) is a generic term used to describe a security backed by a diversified pool of one or more debt obligations: CDOs backed by corporate and emerging market bonds are collateralized bond obligations (CBOs); CDOs backed

by leveraged bank loans are collateralized loan obligations (CLOs); CDOs backed by ABS, RMBS, CMBS, and other CDOs are structured finance CDOs; CDOs backed by a portfolio of credit default swaps for other structured securities are synthetic CDOs.

8.1 CDO Structure

A CDO involves the creation of an SPE. In a CDO, there is a need for a CDO manager, also called “**collateral manager**,” to buy and sell debt obligations for and from the CDO’s collateral (that is, the portfolio of assets) to generate sufficient cash flows to meet the obligations to the CDO bondholders.

The funds to purchase the collateral assets for a CDO are obtained from the issuance of debt obligations. These debt obligations are bond classes or tranches and include senior bond classes, mezzanine bond classes (that is, bond classes with credit ratings between senior and subordinated bond classes), and subordinated bond classes, often referred to as the residual or equity tranches. The motivation for investors to invest in senior or mezzanine bond classes is to earn a potentially higher yield than that on a comparably rated corporate bond by gaining exposure to debt products that they may not otherwise be able to purchase. Investors in equity tranches have the potential to earn an equity-type return, thereby offsetting the increased risk from investing in the subordinated class. The key to whether or not a CDO is viable is whether a structure can be created that offers a competitive return for the subordinated tranche.

The basic economics of the CDO is that the funds are raised by the sale of the bond classes and the CDO manager invests those funds in assets. The CDO manager seeks to earn a rate of return higher than the aggregate cost of the bond classes. The return in excess of what is paid out to the bond classes accrues to the holders of the equity tranche and to the CDO manager. In other words, a CDO is a leveraged transaction in which those who invest in the equity tranche use borrowed funds (the bond classes issued) to generate a return above the funding cost.

As with ABS, each CDO bond class is structured to provide a specific level of risk for investors. The CDO is constructed so as to impose restrictions on the CDO manager via various tests and limits that must be satisfied for the CDO to meet investors’ varying risk appetites while still providing adequate protection for the senior bond class. If the CDO manager fails pre-specified tests, a provision is triggered that requires the payoff of the principal to the senior bond class until the tests are satisfied. This process effectively deleverages the CDO because the cheapest funding source for the CDO, the senior bond class, is reduced.

The ability of the CDO manager to make the interest payments and principal repayments depends on the performance of the collateral. The proceeds to meet the obligations to the CDO bond classes can come from one or more of the following sources: interest payments from collateral assets, maturing of collateral assets, and sale of collateral assets. The cash flows and credit risks of a CDO are best illustrated by an example.

8.2 An Example of a CDO Transaction

Although various motivations may prompt a sponsor to create a CDO, the following example uses a CDO for which the purpose is to capture what market participants mistakenly label a CDO arbitrage transaction. The term “arbitrage” is not used here in the traditional sense—that is, a risk-free transaction that earns an expected positive net profit but requires no net investment of money. In this context, arbitrage is used in a loose sense to describe a transaction in which the motivation is to capture a spread between the return that could potentially be earned on the collateral and the funding cost.

To understand the structure of a CDO transaction and its risks, consider the following US\$100 million issue:

Tranche	Par Value (US\$ million)	Coupon Rate
Senior	80	Libor ^a + 70 bps
Mezzanine	10	10-year US Treasury rate + 200 bps
Equity	10	—

^a Libor is the dollar London Interbank Offered Rate, a commonly used reference rate for floating-rate debt.

Suppose that the collateral consists of bonds that all mature in 10 years and that the coupon rate for every bond is the 10-year US Treasury rate plus 400 bps. Because the collateral pays a fixed rate (the 10-year US Treasury rate plus 400 bps) but the senior tranche requires a floating-rate payment (Libor plus 70 bps), the CDO manager enters into an interest rate swap agreement with another party. An interest rate swap is simply an agreement to periodically exchange interest payments. The payments are calculated based on a notional amount. This amount is not exchanged between the two parties but is simply used to determine the amount of interest payment for each party. By construction, the notional amount of the interest rate swap is the par value of the senior tranche—that is, US\$80 million in this example. Let us suppose that through the interest rate swap, the CDO manager agrees to do the following: (1) pay a fixed rate each year equal to the 10-year US Treasury rate plus 100 bps and (2) receive Libor.

Assume that the 10-year US Treasury rate at the time this CDO is issued is 7%. Now, consider the annual cash flow for the first year. First, let us look at the collateral. Assuming no default, the collateral will pay an interest rate equal to the 10-year US Treasury rate of 7% plus 400 bps—that is, 11%. So, the interest payment is $11\% \times US\$100,000,000 = US\$11,000,000$.

Now, let us determine the interest that must be paid to the senior and mezzanine tranches. For the senior tranche, the interest payment is $US\$80,000,000 \times (\text{Libor} + 70 \text{ bps})$. For the mezzanine tranche, the coupon rate is the 10-year US Treasury rate plus 200 bps—that is, 9%. So, the interest payment for the mezzanine tranche is $9\% \times US\$10,000,000 = US\$900,000$.

Finally, consider the interest rate swap. In this agreement, the CDO manager agreed to pay the swap counterparty the 10-year US Treasury rate plus 100 bps—that is, 8%—based on a notional amount of US\$80 million. So, the amount paid to the swap counterparty is $8\% \times US\$80,000,000 = US\$6,400,000$ the first year. The amount received from the swap counterparty is Libor based on a notional amount of US\$80 million—that is, $\text{Libor} \times US\$80,000,000$.

All of this information can now be put together. The cash inflows for the CDO are

Interest from collateral	\$11,000,000
Interest from swap counterparty	$\$80,000,000 \times \text{Libor}$
Total interest received	$\$11,000,000 + \$80,000,000 \times \text{Libor}$

The cash outflows for the CDO are

Interest to senior tranche	$\$80,000,000 \times (\text{Libor} + 70 \text{ bps})$
Interest to mezzanine tranche	\$900,000
Interest to swap counterparty	\$6,400,000
Total interest paid	$\$7,300,000 + \$80,000,000 \times (\text{Libor} + 70 \text{ bps})$

Netting the total interest received ($\$11,000,000 + \$80,000,000 \times \text{Libor}$) and the total interest paid ($\$7,300,000 + \$80,000,000 \times [\text{Libor} + 70 \text{ bps}]$) leaves a net interest of $\$3,700,000 - \$80,000,000 \times 70 \text{ bps} = \text{US}\$3,140,000$. From this amount, any fees—including the CDO manager's fees—must be paid. The balance is then the amount available to pay the equity tranche. Suppose the CDO manager's fees are US\$640,000. The cash flow available to the equity tranche for the first year is US\$2.5 million ($\$3,140,000 - \$640,000$). Because the equity tranche has a par value of US\$10 million and is assumed to be sold at par, the annual return is 25%.

Obviously, some simplifying assumptions have been made in this example. For instance, it is assumed that no defaults would occur. Furthermore, it is assumed that all of the securities purchased by the CDO manager are non-callable and, thus, that the coupon rate would not decline because of securities being called. Despite these simplifying assumptions, the example does demonstrate the economics of an arbitrage CDO transaction, the need for the use of an interest rate swap, and how the equity tranche will realize a return.

In practice, CDOs are subject to risks that investors should be aware of. For example, in the case of defaults in the collateral, there is a risk that the manager will fail to earn a return sufficient to pay off the investors in the senior and mezzanine tranches, resulting in a loss for these investors. Investors in the equity tranche risk the loss of their entire investment. Even if payments are made to these investors, the return they realize may not be the return expected at the time of purchase.

Moreover, after some period, the CDO manager must begin repaying principal to the senior and mezzanine tranches. The interest rate swap must be structured to take this requirement into account because the entire amount of the senior tranche is not outstanding for the life of the collateral.

EXAMPLE 12

Collateralized Debt Obligations

An additional risk of an investment in an arbitrage collateralized debt obligation relative to an investment in an asset-backed security is:

- A** the default risk on the collateral assets.
- B** the risk that the CDO manager fails to earn a return sufficient to pay off the investors in the senior and the mezzanine tranches.
- C** the risk due to the mismatch between the collateral making fixed-rate payments and the bond classes making floating-rate payments.

Solution:

B is correct. In addition to the risks associated with investments in ABS, such as the default risk on the collateral assets and the risk due to the potential mismatch between the collateral making fixed-rate payments and the bond classes making floating-rate payments, investors in CDOs face the risk that the CDO manager fails to earn a return sufficient to pay off the investors in the senior and the mezzanine tranches. With an ABS, the cash flows from the collateral are used to pay off the holders of the bond classes without the active management of the collateral—that is, without a manager altering the composition of the debt obligations in the pool that is backing the securitization. In contrast, in an arbitrage CDO, a CDO manager buys and sells debt obligations with the dual purpose of not only paying off the holders of the bond classes but also generating an attractive/competitive return for the equity tranche and for the manager.

SUMMARY

- Securitization involves pooling debt obligations, such as loans or receivables, and creating securities backed by the pool of debt obligations called asset-backed securities (ABS). The cash flows of the debt obligations are used to make interest payments and principal repayments to the holders of the ABS.
- Securitization has several benefits. It allows investors direct access to liquid investments and payment streams that would be unattainable if all the financing were performed through banks. It enables banks to increase loan originations at economic scales greater than if they used only their own in-house loan portfolios. Thus, securitization contributes to lower costs of borrowing for entities raising funds, higher risk-adjusted returns to investors, and greater efficiency and profitability for the banking sector.
- The parties to a securitization include the seller of the collateral (pool of loans), the servicer of the loans, and the special purpose entity (SPE). The SPE is bankruptcy remote, which plays a pivotal role in the securitization.
- A common structure in a securitization is subordination, which leads to the creation of more than one bond class or tranche. Bond classes differ as to how they will share any losses resulting from defaults of the borrowers whose loans are in the collateral. The credit ratings assigned to the various bond classes depend on how the credit-rating agencies evaluate the credit risks of the collateral and any credit enhancements.
- The motivation for the creation of different types of structures is to redistribute prepayment risk and credit risk efficiently among different bond classes in the securitization. Prepayment risk is the uncertainty that the actual cash flows will be different from the scheduled cash flows as set forth in the loan agreements because borrowers may choose to repay the principal early to take advantage of interest rate movements.
- Because of the SPE, the securitization of a company's assets may include some bond classes that have better credit ratings than the company itself or its corporate bonds. Thus, the company's funding cost is often lower when raising funds through securitization than when issuing corporate bonds.
- A mortgage is a loan secured by the collateral of some specified real estate property that obliges the borrower to make a predetermined series of payments to the lender. The cash flow of a mortgage includes (1) interest, (2) scheduled principal payments, and (3) prepayments (any principal repaid in excess of the scheduled principal payment).
- The various mortgage designs throughout the world specify (1) the maturity of the loan; (2) how the interest rate is determined (i.e., fixed rate versus adjustable or variable rate); (3) how the principal is repaid (i.e., whether the loan is amortizing and if it is, whether it is fully amortizing or partially amortizing with a balloon payment); (4) whether the borrower has the option to prepay and if so, whether any prepayment penalties might be imposed; and (5) the rights of the lender in a foreclosure (i.e., whether the loan is a recourse or non-recourse loan).
- In the United States, there are three sectors for securities backed by residential mortgages: (1) those guaranteed by a federal agency (Ginnie Mae) whose securities are backed by the full faith and credit of the US government, (2) those guaranteed by a GSE (e.g., Fannie Mae and Freddie Mac) but not by the US government, and (3) those issued by private entities that are not guaranteed by

a federal agency or a GSE. The first two sectors are referred to as agency residential mortgage-backed securities (RMBS), and the third sector as non-agency RMBS.

- A mortgage pass-through security is created when one or more holders of mortgages form a pool of mortgages and sell shares or participation certificates in the pool. The cash flow of a mortgage pass-through security depends on the cash flow of the underlying pool of mortgages and consists of monthly mortgage payments representing interest, the scheduled repayment of principal, and any prepayments, net of servicing and other administrative fees.
- Market participants measure the prepayment rate using two measures: the single monthly mortality rate (SMM) and its corresponding annualized rate—namely, the conditional prepayment rate (CPR). For MBS, a measure widely used by market participants to assess is the weighted average life or simply the average life of the MBS.
- Market participants use the Public Securities Association (PSA) prepayment benchmark to describe prepayment rates. A PSA assumption greater than 100 PSA means that prepayments are assumed to occur faster than the benchmark, whereas a PSA assumption lower than 100 PSA means that prepayments are assumed to occur slower than the benchmark.
- Prepayment risk includes two components: contraction risk and extension risk. The former is the risk that when interest rates decline, the security will have a shorter maturity than was anticipated at the time of purchase because homeowners will refinance at the new, lower interest rates. The latter is the risk that when interest rates rise, fewer prepayments will occur than what was anticipated at the time of purchase because homeowners are reluctant to give up the benefits of a contractual interest rate that now looks low.
- The creation of a collateralized mortgage obligation (CMO) can help manage prepayment risk by distributing the various forms of prepayment risk among different classes of bondholders. The CMO's major financial innovation is that the securities created more closely satisfy the asset/liability needs of institutional investors, thereby broadening the appeal of mortgage-backed products.
- The most common types of CMO tranches are sequential-pay tranches, planned amortization class (PAC) tranches, support tranches, and floating-rate tranches.
- Non-agency RMBS share many features and structuring techniques with agency CMOs. However, they typically include two complementary mechanisms. First, the cash flows are distributed by rules that dictate the allocation of interest payments and principal repayments to tranches with various degrees of priority/seniority. Second, there are rules for the allocation of realized losses, which specify that subordinated bond classes have lower payment priority than senior classes.
- In order to obtain favorable credit ratings, non-agency RMBS and non-mortgage ABS often require one or more credit enhancements. The most common forms of internal credit enhancement are senior/subordinated structures, reserve funds, and overcollateralization. In external credit enhancement, credit support in the case of defaults resulting in losses in the pool of loans is provided in the form of a financial guarantee by a third party to the transaction.
- Commercial mortgage-backed securities (CMBS) are securities backed by a pool of commercial mortgages on income-producing property.
- Two key indicators of the potential credit performance of CMBS are the debt-service-coverage (DSC) ratio and the loan-to-value ratio (LTV). The DSC ratio is the property's annual net operating income divided by the debt service.

- CMBS have considerable call protection, which allows CMBS to trade in the market more like corporate bonds than like RMBS. This call protection comes in two forms: at the structure level and at the loan level. The creation of sequential-pay tranches is an example of call protection at the structure level. At the loan level, four mechanisms offer investors call protection: prepayment lockouts, prepayment penalty points, yield maintenance charges, and defeasance.
- ABS are backed by a wide range of asset types. The most popular non-mortgage ABS are auto loan ABS and credit card receivable ABS. The collateral is amortizing for auto loan ABS and non-amortizing for credit card receivable ABS. As with non-agency RMBS, these ABS must offer credit enhancement to be appealing to investors.
- A collateralized debt obligation (CDO) is a generic term used to describe a security backed by a diversified pool of one or more debt obligations (e.g., corporate and emerging market bonds, leveraged bank loans, ABS, RMBS, and CMBS).
- A CDO involves the creation of an SPE. The funds necessary to pay the bond classes come from a pool of loans that must be serviced. A CDO requires a collateral manager to buy and sell debt obligations for and from the CDO's portfolio of assets to generate sufficient cash flows to meet the obligations of the CDO bondholders and to generate a fair return for the equity holders.
- The structure of a CDO includes senior, mezzanine, and subordinated/equity bond classes.

REFERENCES

- "China Revives Giant Securitization Program." 2012. *Asset-Backed Alert* (23 March).
- Fabozzi, Frank J., and Vinod Kothari. 2008. *Introduction to Securitization*. Hoboken, NJ: John Wiley & Sons: 284–290.
- Lea, Michael. 2010. "International Comparison of Mortgage Product Offerings." Special report published jointly by the Research Institute for Housing America and the American Bankers Association (September).
- Scanlon, Kathleen, Jens Lunde, and Christine Whitehead. 2008. "Mortgage Product Innovation in Advanced Economies: More Choice, More Risk." *European Journal of Housing Policy*, vol. 8, no. 2 (June): 109–131.

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

- Securitization is beneficial for banks because it:
 - repackages bank loans into simpler structures.
 - increases the funds available for banks to lend.
 - allows banks to maintain ownership of their securitized assets.
- Securitization benefits financial markets by:
 - increasing the role of intermediaries.
 - establishing a barrier between investors and originating borrowers.
 - allowing investors to tailor credit risk and interest rate risk exposures to meet their individual needs.
- A benefit of securitization is the:
 - reduction in disintermediation.
 - simplification of debt obligations.
 - creation of tradable securities with greater liquidity than the original loans.
- In a securitization, the special purpose entity (SPE) is responsible for the:
 - issuance of the asset-backed securities.
 - collection of payments from the borrowers.
 - recovery of underlying assets from delinquent borrowers.
- A special purpose entity issues asset-backed securities in the following structure.

Bond Class	Par Value (€ millions)
A (senior)	200
B (subordinated)	20
C (subordinated)	5

- At which of the following amounts of default in par value would Bond Class A experience a loss?
- €20 million
 - €25 million
 - €26 million
- In a securitization, time tranching provides investors with the ability to choose between:
 - extension and contraction risks.
 - senior and subordinated bond classes.
 - fully amortizing and partially amortizing loans.
 - The last payment in a partially amortizing residential mortgage loan is *best* referred to as a:
 - waterfall.
 - principal repayment.
 - balloon payment.
 - If a mortgage borrower makes prepayments without penalty to take advantage of falling interest rates, the lender will *most likely* experience:

- A extension risk.
 - B contraction risk.
 - C yield maintenance.
- 9 Which of the following characteristics of a residential mortgage loan would *best* protect the lender from a strategic default by the borrower?
- A Recourse
 - B A prepayment option
 - C Interest-only payments
- 10 William Marolf obtains a 5 million EUR mortgage loan from Bank Nederlandse. A year later the principal on the loan is 4 million EUR and Marolf defaults on the loan. Bank Nederlandse forecloses, sells the property for 2.5 million EUR, and is entitled to collect the 1.5 million EUR shortfall, from Marolf. Marolf *most likely* had a:
- A bullet loan.
 - B recourse loan.
 - C non-recourse loan.
- 11 Fran Martin obtains a non-recourse mortgage loan for \$500,000. One year later, when the outstanding balance of the mortgage is \$490,000, Martin cannot make his mortgage payments and defaults on the loan. The lender forecloses on the loan and sells the house for \$315,000. What amount is the lender entitled to claim from Martin?
- A \$0.
 - B \$175,000.
 - C \$185,000.
- 12 Which of the following describes a typical feature of a non-agency residential mortgage-backed security (RMBS)?
- A Senior/subordinated structure
 - B A pool of conforming mortgages as collateral
 - C A guarantee by a government-sponsored enterprise
- 13 If interest rates increase, an investor who owns a mortgage pass-through security is *most likely* affected by:
- A credit risk.
 - B extension risk.
 - C contraction risk.
- 14 Which of the following is *most likely* an advantage of collateralized mortgage obligations (CMOs)? CMOs can
- A eliminate prepayment risk.
 - B be created directly from a pool of mortgage loans.
 - C meet the asset/liability requirements of institutional investors.
- 15 The longest-term tranche of a sequential-pay CMO is *most likely* to have the lowest:
- A average life.
 - B extension risk.
 - C contraction risk.

- 16 The tranches in a collateralized mortgage obligation (CMO) that are *most likely* to provide protection for investors against both extension and contraction risk are:
- A planned amortization class (PAC) tranches.
 - B support tranches.
 - C sequential-pay tranches.
- 17 Support tranches are *most* appropriate for investors who are:
- A concerned about their exposure to extension risk.
 - B concerned about their exposure to concentration risk.
 - C willing to accept prepayment risk in exchange for higher returns.
- 18 In the context of mortgage-backed securities, a conditional prepayment rate (CPR) of 8% means that approximately 8% of the outstanding mortgage pool balance at the beginning of the year is expected to be prepaid:
- A in the current month.
 - B by the end of the year.
 - C over the life of the mortgages.
- 19 For a mortgage pass-through security, which of the following risks *most likely* increases as interest rates decline?
- A Balloon
 - B Extension
 - C Contraction
- 20 Credit risk is an important consideration for commercial mortgage-backed securities (CMBS) if the CMBS are backed by mortgage loans that:
- A are non-recourse.
 - B have call protection.
 - C have prepayment penalty points.
- 21 Which commercial mortgage-backed security (CMBS) characteristic causes a CMBS to trade more like a corporate bond than a residential mortgage-backed security (RMBS)?
- A Call protection
 - B Internal credit enhancement
 - C Debt-service coverage ratio level
- 22 A commercial mortgage-backed security (CMBS) does not meet the debt-to-service coverage at the loan level necessary to achieve a desired credit rating. Which of the following features would *most likely* improve the credit rating of the CMBS?
- A Subordination
 - B Call protection
 - C Balloon payments
- 23 If a default occurs in a non-recourse commercial mortgage-backed security (CMBS), the lender will *most likely*:
- A recover prepayment penalty points paid by the borrower to offset losses.
 - B use only the proceeds received from the sale of the property to recover losses.
 - C initiate a claim against the borrower for any shortfall resulting from the sale of the property.

- 24 Which of the following investments is least subject to prepayment risk?
- A Auto loan receivable-backed securities
 - B Commercial mortgage-backed securities (CMBSs)
 - C Non-agency residential mortgage-backed securities (RMBSs)
- 25 An excess spread account incorporated into a securitization is designed to limit:
- A credit risk.
 - B extension risk.
 - C contraction risk.
- 26 Which of the following *best* describes the cash flow that owners of credit card receivable asset-backed securities receive during the lockout period?
- A No cash flow
 - B Only principal payments collected
 - C Only finance charges collected and fees
- 27 Collateralized mortgage obligations (CMOs) are designed to:
- A eliminate contraction risk in support tranches.
 - B distribute prepayment risk to various tranches.
 - C eliminate extension risk in planned amortization tranches.

SOLUTIONS

- 1 B is correct. Securitization increases the funds available for banks to lend because it allows banks to remove loans from their balance sheets and issue bonds that are backed by those loans. Securitization repackages relatively simple debt obligations, such as bank loans, into more complex, not simpler, structures. Securitization involves transferring ownership of assets from the original owner—in this case, the banks—into a special legal entity. As a result, banks do not maintain ownership of the securitized assets.
- 2 C is correct. By removing the wall between ultimate investors and originating borrowers, investors can achieve better legal claims on the underlying mortgages and portfolios of receivables. This transparency allows investors to tailor interest rate risk and credit risk to their specific needs.
- 3 C is correct. Securitization allows for the creation of tradable securities with greater liquidity than the original loans on a bank's balance sheet. Securitization results in lessening the roles of intermediaries, which increases disintermediation. Securitization is a process in which relatively simple debt obligations, such as loans, are repackaged into more complex structures.
- 4 A is correct. In a securitization, the special purpose entity (SPE) is the special legal entity responsible for the issuance of the asset-backed securities. The servicer, not the SPE, is responsible for both the collection of payments from the borrowers and the recovery of underlying assets if the borrowers default on their loans.
- 5 C is correct. The first €25 (€5 + €20) million in default are absorbed by the subordinated classes (C and B). The senior Class A bonds will only experience a loss when defaults exceed €25 million.
- 6 A is correct. Time tranching is the process in which a set of bond classes or tranches is created that allow investors a choice in the type of prepayment risk, extension or contraction, that they prefer to bear. Senior and subordinated bond classes are used in credit tranching. Credit tranching structures allow investors to choose the amount of credit risk that they prefer to bear. Fully and partially amortizing loans are two types of amortizing loans.
- 7 C is correct. In a partially amortizing loan, the sum of all the scheduled principal repayments is less than the amount borrowed. The last payment is for the remaining unpaid mortgage balance and is called the “balloon payment.”
- 8 B is correct. Contraction risk is the risk that when interest rates decline, actual prepayments will be higher than forecasted. Extension risk is the risk that when interest rates rise, prepayments will be lower than forecasted. Yield maintenance results from prepayment penalties; the lender is protected from loss in yield by the imposition of prepayment penalties.
- 9 A is correct. In a recourse loan, the lender has a claim against the borrower for the shortfall between the amount of the mortgage balance outstanding and the proceeds received from the sale of the property. A prepayment option is a benefit to the borrower and would thus not offer protection to the lender. An interest-only mortgage requires no principal repayment for a number of years and will not protect the lender from strategic default by the borrower.
- 10 B is correct. Bank Nederlandse has a claim against Marolf for 1.5 million EUR, the shortfall between the amount of the mortgage balance outstanding and the proceeds received from the sale of the property. This indicates that the mortgage loan is a recourse loan. The recourse/non-recourse feature indicates the

rights of a lender in foreclosure. If Marolf had a non-recourse loan, the bank would have only been entitled to the proceeds from the sale of the underlying property, or 2.5 million EUR. A bullet loan is a special type of interest-only mortgage for which there are no scheduled principal payments over the entire term of the loan. Since the unpaid balance is less than the original mortgage loan, it is unlikely that Marolf has an interest only mortgage.

- 11 A is correct. Because the loan has a non-recourse feature, the lender can only look to the underlying property to recover the outstanding mortgage balance and has no further claim against the borrower. The lender is simply entitled to foreclose on the home and sell it.
- 12 A is correct. Non-agency RMBS are credit enhanced, either internally or externally, to make the securities more attractive to investors. The most common forms of internal credit enhancements are senior/subordinated structures, reserve accounts, and overcollateralization. Conforming mortgages are used as collateral for agency (not non-agency) mortgage pass-through securities. An agency RMBS, rather than a non-agency RMBS, issued by a GSE (government sponsored enterprise), is guaranteed by the respective GSE.
- 13 B is correct. Extension risk is the risk that when interest rate rise, fewer prepayments will occur. Homeowners will be reluctant to give up the benefit of a contractual interest rate that is lower. As a result, the mortgage pass-through security becomes longer in maturity than anticipated at the time of purchase.
- 14 C is correct. Using CMOs, securities can be created to closely satisfy the asset/liability needs of institutional investors. The creation of a CMO cannot eliminate prepayment risk; it can only distribute the various forms of this risk among various classes of bondholders. The collateral of CMOs are mortgage-related products, not the mortgages themselves.
- 15 C is correct. For a CMO with multiple sequential-pay tranches, the longest-term tranche will have the lowest contraction (prepayments greater than forecasted) risk because of the protection against this risk offered by the other tranches. The longest-term tranche is likely to have the highest average life and extension risk because it is the last tranche repaid in a sequential-pay tranche.
- 16 A is correct. PAC tranches have limited (but not complete) protection against both extension risk and contraction risk. This protection is provided by the support tranches. A sequential-pay tranche can protect against either extension risk or contraction risk but not both of these risks. The CMO structure with sequential-pay tranches allows investors concerned about extension risk to invest in shorter-term tranches and those concerned about contraction risk to invest in the longer-term tranches.
- 17 C is correct. The greater predictability of cash flows provided in the planned amortization class (PAC) tranches comes at the expense of support tranches. As a result, investors in support tranches are exposed to higher extension risk and contraction risk than investors in PAC tranches. Investors will be compensated for bearing this risk because support tranches have a higher expected return than PAC tranches.
- 18 B is correct. CPR is an annualized rate, which indicates the percentage of the outstanding mortgage pool balance at the beginning of the year that is expected to be prepaid by the end of the year.
- 19 C is correct. When interest rates decline, a mortgage pass-through security is subject to contraction risk. Contraction risk is the risk that when interest rates decline, actual prepayments will be higher than forecasted because borrowers

- will refinance at now-available lower interest rates. Thus, a security backed by mortgages will have a shorter maturity than was anticipated when the security was purchased.
- 20** A is correct. If commercial mortgage loans are non-recourse loans, the lender can only look to the income-producing property backing the loan for interest and principal repayment. If there is a default, the lender looks to the proceeds from the sale of the property for repayment and has no recourse against the borrower for any unpaid mortgage loan balance. Call protection and prepayment penalty points protect against prepayment risk.
- 21** A is correct. With CMBS, investors have considerable call protection. An investor in a RMBS is exposed to considerable prepayment risk, but with CMBS, call protection is available to the investor at the structure and loan level. The call protection results in CMBS trading in the market more like a corporate bond than a RMBS. Both internal credit enhancement and the debt-service-coverage (DSC) ratio address credit risk, not prepayment risk.
- 22** A is correct. If specific ratios of debt to service coverage are needed, and those ratios cannot be met at the loan level, subordination is used to achieve the desired credit rating. Call protection protects investors against prepayment risk. Balloon payments increase the risk of the underlying loans.
- 23** B is correct. In a non-recourse CMBS, the lender can look only to the income-producing property backing the loan for interest and principal repayment. If a default occurs, the lender can use only the proceeds from the sale of the property for repayment and has no recourse to the borrower for any unpaid balance.
- 24** B is correct. A critical feature that differentiates CMBSs from RMBSs is the call protection provided to investors. An investor in a RMBS is exposed to considerable prepayment risk because the borrower has the right to prepay the loan before maturity. CMBSs provide investors with considerable call protection that comes either at the structure level or at the loan level.
- 25** A is correct. An excess spread account, sometimes called excess interest cash flow, is a form of internal credit enhancement that limits credit risk. It is an amount that can be retained and deposited into a reserve account and that can serve as a first line of protection against losses. An excess spread account does not limit prepayment risk, extension, or contraction.
- 26** C is correct. During the lockout period, the cash flow that is paid out to owners of credit card receivable asset-backed securities is based only on finance charges collected and fees.
- 27** B is correct. CMOs are designed to redistribute cash flows of mortgage-related products to different bond classes or tranches through securitization. Although CMOs do not eliminate prepayment risk, they distribute prepayment risk among various classes of bondholders.

FIXED INCOME STUDY SESSION

17

Fixed Income (2)

This study session examines the fundamental elements underlying bond returns and risks with a specific focus on interest rate and credit risk. Duration, convexity, and other key measures for assessing a bond's sensitivity to interest rate risk are introduced. An explanation of credit risk and the use of credit analysis for risky bonds concludes the session.

READING ASSIGNMENTS

- | | |
|-------------------|--|
| Reading 54 | Understanding Fixed-Income Risk and Return
by James F. Adams, PhD, CFA, and
Donald J. Smith, PhD |
| Reading 55 | Fundamentals of Credit Analysis
by Christopher L. Gootkind, CFA |

Understanding Fixed-Income Risk and Return

by James F. Adams, PhD, CFA, and Donald J. Smith, PhD

James F. Adams, PhD, CFA, is at J.P. Morgan (USA). Donald J. Smith, PhD, is at Boston University Questrom School of Business (USA).

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Mastery	The candidate should be able to:
<input type="checkbox"/>	a. calculate and interpret the sources of return from investing in a fixed-rate bond;
<input type="checkbox"/>	b. define, calculate, and interpret Macaulay, modified, and effective durations;
<input type="checkbox"/>	c. explain why effective duration is the most appropriate measure of interest rate risk for bonds with embedded options;
<input type="checkbox"/>	d. define key rate duration and describe the use of key rate durations in measuring the sensitivity of bonds to changes in the shape of the benchmark yield curve;
<input type="checkbox"/>	e. explain how a bond's maturity, coupon, and yield level affect its interest rate risk;
<input type="checkbox"/>	f. calculate the duration of a portfolio and explain the limitations of portfolio duration;
<input type="checkbox"/>	g. calculate and interpret the money duration of a bond and price value of a basis point (PVBP);
<input type="checkbox"/>	h. calculate and interpret approximate convexity and distinguish between approximate and effective convexity;
<input type="checkbox"/>	i. estimate the percentage price change of a bond for a specified change in yield, given the bond's approximate duration and convexity;
<input type="checkbox"/>	j. describe how the term structure of yield volatility affects the interest rate risk of a bond;
<input type="checkbox"/>	k. describe the relationships among a bond's holding period return, its duration, and the investment horizon;
<input type="checkbox"/>	l. explain how changes in credit spread and liquidity affect yield-to-maturity of a bond and how duration and convexity can be used to estimate the price effect of the changes.

1

INTRODUCTION

It is important for analysts to have a well-developed understanding of the risk and return characteristics of fixed-income investments. Beyond the vast worldwide market for publicly and privately issued fixed-rate bonds, many financial assets and liabilities with known future cash flows may be evaluated using the same principles. The starting point for this analysis is the yield-to-maturity, or internal rate of return on future cash flows, which was introduced in the fixed-income valuation reading. The return on a fixed-rate bond is affected by many factors, the most important of which is the receipt of the interest and principal payments in the full amount and on the scheduled dates. Assuming no default, the return is also affected by changes in interest rates that affect coupon reinvestment and the price of the bond if it is sold before it matures. Measures of the price change can be derived from the mathematical relationship used to calculate the price of the bond. The first of these measures (duration) estimates the change in the price for a given change in interest rates. The second measure (convexity) improves on the duration estimate by taking into account the fact that the relationship between price and yield-to-maturity of a fixed-rate bond is not linear.

Section 2 uses numerical examples to demonstrate the sources of return on an investment in a fixed-rate bond, which includes the receipt and reinvestment of coupon interest payments and the redemption of principal if the bond is held to maturity. The other source of return is capital gains (and losses) on the sale of the bond prior to maturity. Section 2 also shows that fixed-income investors holding the same bond can have different exposures to interest rate risk if their investment horizons differ. Discussion of credit risk, although critical to investors, is postponed to Section 5 so that attention can be focused on interest rate risk.

Section 3 provides a thorough review of bond duration and convexity, and shows how the statistics are calculated and used as measures of interest rate risk. Although procedures and formulas exist to calculate duration and convexity, these statistics can be approximated using basic bond-pricing techniques and a financial calculator. Commonly used versions of the statistics are covered, including Macaulay, modified, effective, and key rate durations. The distinction is made between risk measures that are based on changes in the bond's yield-to-maturity (i.e., *yield* duration and convexity) and on benchmark yield curve changes (i.e., *curve* duration and convexity).

Section 4 returns to the issue of the investment horizon. When an investor has a short-term horizon, duration (and convexity) are used to estimate the change in the bond price. In this case, yield volatility matters. In particular, bonds with varying times-to-maturity have different degrees of yield volatility. When an investor has a long-term horizon, the interaction between coupon reinvestment risk and market price risk matters. The relationship among interest rate risk, bond duration, and the investment horizon is explored.

Section 5 discusses how the tools of duration and convexity can be extended to credit and liquidity risks and highlights how these different factors can affect a bond's return and risk.

A summary of key points and practice problems in the CFA Institute multiple-choice format conclude the reading.

2

SOURCES OF RETURN

An investor in a fixed-rate bond has three sources of return: (1) receipt of the promised coupon and principal payments on the scheduled dates, (2) reinvestment of coupon payments, and (3) potential capital gains or losses on the sale of the bond prior to

maturity. In this section, it is assumed that the issuer makes the coupon and principal payments as scheduled. This reading focuses primarily on interest rate risk (the risk that interest rates will change), which affects the reinvestment of coupon payments and the market price if the bond is sold prior to maturity. Credit risk is considered in Section 5 of this reading and is the primary subject of the reading “Fundamentals of Credit Analysis.”

When a bond is purchased at a premium or a discount, it adds another aspect to the rate of return. Recall from the reading on fixed-income valuation that a discount bond offers the investor a “deficient” coupon rate, or one below the market discount rate. The amortization of the discount in each period brings the return in line with the market discount rate as the bond’s carrying value is “pulled to par.” For a premium bond, the coupon rate exceeds the market discount rate and the amortization of the premium adjusts the return to match the market discount rate. Through amortization, the bond’s carrying value reaches par value at maturity.

A series of examples will demonstrate the effect of a change in interest rates on two investors’ realized rate of returns. Interest rates are the rates at which coupon payments are reinvested and the market discount rates at the time of purchase and at the time of sale if the bond is not held to maturity. In Examples 1 and 2, interest rates are unchanged. The two investors, however, have different time horizons for holding the bond. Examples 3 and 4 show the impact of an increase in interest rates on the two investors’ total return. Examples 5 and 6 show the impact of a decrease in interest rates. In each of the six examples, an investor initially buys a 10-year, 8% annual coupon payment bond at a price of 85.503075 per 100 of par value. The bond’s yield-to-maturity is 10.40%.

$$85.503075 = \frac{8}{(1+r)^1} + \frac{8}{(1+r)^2} + \frac{8}{(1+r)^3} + \frac{8}{(1+r)^4} + \frac{8}{(1+r)^5} + \frac{8}{(1+r)^6} + \frac{8}{(1+r)^7} + \frac{8}{(1+r)^8} + \frac{8}{(1+r)^9} + \frac{108}{(1+r)^{10}}, \quad r = 0.1040$$

EXAMPLE 1

A “buy-and-hold” investor purchases a 10-year, 8% annual coupon payment bond at 85.503075 per 100 of par value and holds it until maturity. The investor receives the series of 10 coupon payments of 8 (per 100 of par value) for a total of 80, plus the redemption of principal (100) at maturity. In addition to collecting the coupon interest and the principal, the investor has the opportunity to reinvest the cash flows. If the coupon payments are reinvested at 10.40%, the future value of the coupons on the bond’s maturity date is 129.970678 per 100 of par value.

$$\begin{aligned} & \left[8 \times (1.1040)^9 \right] + \left[8 \times (1.1040)^8 \right] + \left[8 \times (1.1040)^7 \right] + \left[8 \times (1.1040)^6 \right] + \\ & \left[8 \times (1.1040)^5 \right] + \left[8 \times (1.1040)^4 \right] + \left[8 \times (1.1040)^3 \right] + \left[8 \times (1.1040)^2 \right] + \\ & \left[8 \times (1.1040)^1 \right] + 8 = 129.970678 \end{aligned}$$

The first coupon payment of 8 is reinvested at 10.40% for nine years until maturity, the second is reinvested for eight years, and so forth. The future value of the annuity is obtained easily on a financial calculator, using 8 for the payment that is received at the end of each of the 10 periods. The amount in excess of the coupons, 49.970678 (= 129.970678 – 80), is the “interest-on-interest” gain from compounding.

The investor's total return is 229.970678, the sum of the reinvested coupons (129.970678) and the redemption of principal at maturity (100). The realized rate of return is 10.40%.

$$85.503075 = \frac{229.970678}{(1+r)^{10}}, \quad r = 0.1040$$

Example 1 demonstrates that the yield-to-maturity at the time of purchase measures the investor's rate of return under three assumptions: (1) The investor holds the bond to maturity, (2) there is no default by the issuer, and (3) the coupon interest payments are reinvested at that same rate of interest.

Example 2 considers another investor who buys the 10-year, 8% annual coupon payment bond and pays the same price. This investor, however, has a four-year investment horizon. Therefore, coupon interest is only reinvested for four years, and the bond is sold immediately after receiving the fourth coupon payment.

EXAMPLE 2

A second investor buys the 10-year, 8% annual coupon payment bond and sells the bond after four years. Assuming that the coupon payments are reinvested at 10.40% for four years, the future value of the reinvested coupons is 37.347111 per 100 of par value.

$$\left[8 \times (1.1040)^3\right] + \left[8 \times (1.1040)^2\right] + \left[8 \times (1.1040)^1\right] + 8 = 37.347111$$

The interest-on-interest gain from compounding is 5.347111 (= 37.347111 – 32). After four years, when the bond is sold, it has six years remaining until maturity. If the yield-to-maturity remains 10.40%, the sale price of the bond is 89.668770.

$$\frac{8}{(1.1040)^1} + \frac{8}{(1.1040)^2} + \frac{8}{(1.1040)^3} + \frac{8}{(1.1040)^4} + \frac{8}{(1.1040)^5} + \frac{108}{(1.1040)^6} = 89.668770$$

The total return is 127.015881 (= 37.347111 + 89.668770) and the realized rate of return is 10.40%.

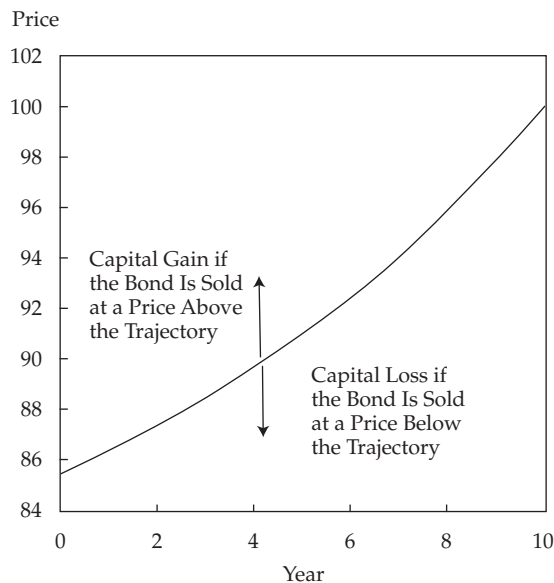
$$85.503075 = \frac{127.015881}{(1+r)^4}, \quad r = 0.1040$$

In Example 2, the investor's **horizon yield** is 10.40%. A horizon yield is the internal rate of return between the total return (the sum of reinvested coupon payments and the sale price or redemption amount) and the purchase price of the bond. The horizon yield on a bond investment is the annualized holding-period rate of return.

Example 2 demonstrates that the realized horizon yield matches the original yield-to-maturity if (1) coupon payments are reinvested at the same interest rate as the original yield-to-maturity, and (2) the bond is sold at a price on the constant-yield price trajectory, which implies that the investor does not have any capital gains or losses when the bond is sold.

Capital gains arise if a bond is sold at a price above its constant-yield price trajectory and capital losses occur if a bond is sold at a price below its constant-yield price trajectory. This trajectory is based on the yield-to-maturity when the bond is purchased. The trajectory is shown in Exhibit 1 for a 10-year, 8% annual payment bond purchased at a price of 85.503075 per 100 of par value.

Exhibit 1 Constant-Yield Price Trajectory for a 10-Year, 8% Annual Payment Bond



Note: Price is price per 100 of par value

A point on the trajectory represents the **carrying value** of the bond at that time. The carrying value is the purchase price plus the amortized amount of the discount if the bond is purchased at a price below par value. If the bond is purchased at a price above par value, the carrying value is the purchase price minus the amortized amount of the premium.

The amortized amount for each year is the change in the price between two points on the trajectory. The initial price of the bond is 85.503075 per 100 of par value. Its price (the carrying value) after one year is 86.393394, calculated using the original yield-to-maturity of 10.40%. Therefore, the amortized amount for the first year is 0.890319 (= 86.393394 – 85.503075). The bond price in Example 2 increases from 85.503075 to 89.668770, and that increase over the four years is movement *along* the constant-yield price trajectory. At the time the bond is sold, its carrying value is also 89.668770, so there is no capital gain or loss.

Examples 3 and 4 demonstrate the impact on investors' realized horizon yields if interest rates go up by 100 basis points (bps). The market discount rate on the bond increases from 10.40% to 11.40%. Coupon reinvestment rates go up by 100 bps as well.

EXAMPLE 3

The buy-and-hold investor purchases the 10-year, 8% annual payment bond at 85.503075. After the bond is purchased and before the first coupon is received, interest rates go up to 11.40%. The future value of the reinvested coupons at 11.40% for 10 years is 136.380195 per 100 of par value.

$$\begin{aligned} & \left[8 \times (1.1140)^9 \right] + \left[8 \times (1.1140)^8 \right] + \left[8 \times (1.1140)^7 \right] + \left[8 \times (1.1140)^6 \right] + \\ & \left[8 \times (1.1140)^5 \right] + \left[8 \times (1.1140)^4 \right] + \left[8 \times (1.1140)^3 \right] + \left[8 \times (1.1140)^2 \right] + \\ & \left[8 \times (1.1140)^1 \right] + 8 = 136.380195 \end{aligned}$$

The total return is 236.380195 (= 136.380195 + 100). The investor's realized rate of return is 10.70%.

$$85.503075 = \frac{236.380195}{(1+r)^{10}}, \quad r = 0.1070$$

In Example 3, the buy-and-hold investor benefits from the higher coupon reinvestment rate. The realized horizon yield is 10.70%, 30 bps higher than the outcome in Example 1, when interest rates are unchanged. There is no capital gain or loss because the bond is held until maturity. The carrying value at the maturity date is par value, the same as the redemption amount.

EXAMPLE 4

The second investor buys the 10-year, 8% annual payment bond at 85.503075 and sells it in four years. After the bond is purchased, interest rates go up to 11.40%. The future value of the reinvested coupons at 11.40% after four years is 37.899724 per 100 of par value.

$$\left[8 \times (1.1140)^3 \right] + \left[8 \times (1.1140)^2 \right] + \left[8 \times (1.1140)^1 \right] + 8 = 37.899724$$

The sale price of the bond after four years is 85.780408.

$$\begin{aligned} & \frac{8}{(1.1140)^1} + \frac{8}{(1.1140)^2} + \frac{8}{(1.1140)^3} + \frac{8}{(1.1140)^4} + \\ & \frac{8}{(1.1140)^5} + \frac{108}{(1.1140)^6} = 85.780408 \end{aligned}$$

The total return is 123.680132 (= 37.899724 + 85.780408), resulting in a realized four-year horizon yield of 9.67%.

$$85.503075 = \frac{123.680132}{(1+r)^4}, \quad r = 0.0967$$

In Example 4, the second investor has a lower realized rate of return compared with the investor in Example 2, in which interest rates are unchanged. The future value of reinvested coupon payments goes up by 0.552613 (= 37.899724 – 37.347111) per 100 of par value because of the higher interest rates. But there is a *capital loss* of 3.888362 (= 89.668770 – 85.780408) per 100 of par value. Notice that the capital loss is measured from the bond's carrying value, the point on the constant-yield price trajectory,

and not from the original purchase price. The bond is now sold at a price below the constant-yield price trajectory. The reduction in the realized four-year horizon yield from 10.40% to 9.67% is a result of the capital loss being greater than the gain from reinvesting coupons at a higher rate, which reduces the investor's total return.

Examples 5 and 6 complete the series of rate-of-return calculations for the two investors. Interest rates decline by 100 bps. The required yield on the bond falls from 10.40% to 9.40% after the purchase of the bond. The interest rates at which the coupon payments are reinvested fall as well.

EXAMPLE 5

The buy-and-hold investor purchases the 10-year bond at 85.503075 and holds the security until it matures. After the bond is purchased and before the first coupon is received, interest rates go down to 9.40%. The future value of reinvesting the coupon payments at 9.40% for 10 years is 123.888356 per 100 of par value.

$$\begin{aligned} & \left[8 \times (1.0940)^9 \right] + \left[8 \times (1.0940)^8 \right] + \left[8 \times (1.0940)^7 \right] + \left[8 \times (1.0940)^6 \right] + \\ & \left[8 \times (1.0940)^5 \right] + \left[8 \times (1.0940)^4 \right] + \left[8 \times (1.0940)^3 \right] + \left[8 \times (1.0940)^2 \right] + \\ & \left[8 \times (1.0940)^1 \right] + 8 = 123.888356 \end{aligned}$$

The total return is 223.888356, the sum of the future value of reinvested coupons and the redemption of par value. The investor's realized rate of return is 10.10%.

$$85.503075 = \frac{223.888356}{(1+r)^{10}}, \quad r = 0.1010$$

In Example 5, the buy-and-hold investor suffers from the lower coupon reinvestment rates. The realized horizon yield is 10.10%, 30 bps lower than the result in Example 1, when interest rates are unchanged. There is no capital gain or loss because the bond is held until maturity. Examples 1, 3, and 5 indicate that the interest rate risk for a buy-and-hold investor arises entirely from changes in coupon reinvestment rates.

EXAMPLE 6

The second investor buys the 10-year bond at 85.503075 and sells it in four years. After the bond is purchased, interest rates go down to 9.40%. The future value of the reinvested coupons at 9.40% is 36.801397 per 100 of par value.

$$\left[8 \times (1.0940)^3 \right] + \left[8 \times (1.0940)^2 \right] + \left[8 \times (1.0940)^1 \right] + 8 = 36.801397$$

This reduction in future value is offset by the higher sale price of the bond, which is 93.793912 per 100 of par value.

$$\begin{aligned} & \frac{8}{(1.0940)^1} + \frac{8}{(1.0940)^2} + \frac{8}{(1.0940)^3} + \frac{8}{(1.0940)^4} + \\ & \frac{8}{(1.0940)^5} + \frac{108}{(1.0940)^6} = 93.793912 \end{aligned}$$

The total return is 130.595309 (= 36.801397 + 93.793912), and the realized yield is 11.17%.

$$85.503075 = \frac{130.595309}{(1+r)^4}, \quad r = 0.1117$$

The investor in Example 6 has a capital gain of 4.125142 (= 93.793912 – 89.668770). The capital gain is measured from the carrying value, the point on the constant-yield price trajectory. That gain offsets the reduction in the future value of reinvested coupons of 0.545714 (= 37.347111 – 36.801397). The total return is higher than that in Example 2, in which the interest rate remains at 10.40%.

In these examples, interest income for the investor is the return associated with the *passage of time*. Therefore, interest income includes the receipt of coupon interest, the reinvestment of those cash flows, and the amortization of the discount from purchase at a price below par value (or the premium from purchase at a price above par value) to bring the return back in line with the market discount rate. A capital gain or loss is the return to the investor associated with the *change in the value* of the security. On the fixed-rate bond, a change in value arises from a change in the yield-to-maturity, which is the implied market discount rate. In practice, the manner in which interest income and capital gains and losses are calculated and reported on financial statements depends on financial and tax accounting rules.

This series of examples illustrates an important point about fixed-rate bonds: The *investment horizon* is at the heart of understanding interest rate risk and return. There are two offsetting types of interest rate risk that affect the bond investor: coupon reinvestment risk and market price risk. The future value of reinvested coupon payments (and in a portfolio, the principal on bonds that mature before the horizon date) *increases* when interest rates go up and *decreases* when rates go down. The sale price on a bond that matures after the horizon date (and thus needs to be sold) *decreases* when interest rates go up and *increases* when rates go down. Coupon reinvestment risk matters more when the investor has a long-term horizon relative to the time-to-maturity of the bond. For instance, a buy-and-hold investor only has coupon reinvestment risk. Market price risk matters more when the investor has a short-term horizon relative to the time-to-maturity. For example, an investor who sells the bond before the first coupon is received has only market price risk. Therefore, two investors holding the same bond (or bond portfolio) can have different exposures to interest rate risk if they have different investment horizons.

EXAMPLE 7

An investor buys a four-year, 10% annual coupon payment bond priced to yield 5.00%. The investor plans to sell the bond in two years once the second coupon payment is received. Calculate the purchase price for the bond and the horizon yield assuming that the coupon reinvestment rate after the bond purchase and the yield-to-maturity at the time of sale are (1) 3.00%, (2) 5.00%, and (3) 7.00%.

Solution:

The purchase price is 117.729753.

$$\frac{10}{(1.0500)^1} + \frac{10}{(1.0500)^2} + \frac{10}{(1.0500)^3} + \frac{110}{(1.0500)^4} = 117.729753$$

1 3.00%: The future value of reinvested coupons is 20.300.

$$(10 \times 1.0300) + 10 = 20.300$$

The sale price of the bond is 113.394288.

$$\frac{10}{(1.0300)^1} + \frac{110}{(1.0300)^2} = 113.394288$$

Total return: $20.300 + 113.394288 = 133.694288$.

If interest rates go down from 5.00% to 3.00%, the realized rate of return over the two-year investment horizon is 6.5647%, higher than the original yield-to-maturity of 5.00%.

$$117.729753 = \frac{133.694288}{(1+r)^2}, \quad r = 0.065647$$

- 2 5.00%: The future value of reinvested coupons is 20.500.

$$(10 \times 1.0500) + 10 = 20.500$$

The sale price of the bond is 109.297052.

$$\frac{10}{(1.0500)^1} + \frac{110}{(1.0500)^2} = 109.297052$$

Total return: $20.500 + 109.297052 = 129.797052$.

If interest rates remain 5.00% for reinvested coupons and for the required yield on the bond, the realized rate of return over the two-year investment horizon is equal to the yield-to-maturity of 5.00%.

$$117.729753 = \frac{129.797052}{(1+r)^2}, \quad r = 0.050000$$

- 3 7.00%: The future value of reinvested coupons is 20.700.

$$(10 \times 1.0700) + 10 = 20.700$$

The bond is sold at 105.424055.

$$\frac{10}{(1.0700)^1} + \frac{110}{(1.0700)^2} = 105.424055$$

Total return: $20.700 + 105.424055 = 126.124055$.

$$117.729753 = \frac{126.124055}{(1+r)^2}, \quad r = 0.035037$$

If interest rates go up from 5.00% to 7.00%, the realized rate of return over the two-year investment horizon is 3.5037%, lower than the yield-to-maturity of 5.00%.

INTEREST RATE RISK ON FIXED-RATE BONDS

3

This section covers two commonly used measures of interest rate risk: duration and convexity. It distinguishes between risk measures based on changes in a bond's own yield to maturity (yield duration and convexity) and those that affect the bond based on changes in a benchmark yield curve (curve duration and convexity).

3.1 Macaulay, Modified, and Approximate Duration

The duration of a bond measures the sensitivity of the bond's full price (including accrued interest) to changes in the bond's yield-to-maturity or, more generally, to changes in benchmark interest rates. Duration estimates changes in the bond price assuming that variables other than the yield-to-maturity or benchmark rates are held constant. Most importantly, the time-to-maturity is unchanged. Therefore, duration measures the *instantaneous* (or, at least, same-day) change in the bond price. The accrued interest is the same, so it is the flat price that goes up or down when the full price changes. Duration is a useful measure because it represents the approximate amount of time a bond would have to be held for the market discount rate at purchase to be realized if there is a single change in interest rate. If the bond is held for the duration period, an increase from reinvesting coupons is offset by a decrease in price if interest rates increase and a decrease from reinvesting coupons is offset by an increase in price if interest rates decrease.

There are several types of bond duration. In general, these can be divided into **yield duration** and **curve duration**. Yield duration is the sensitivity of the bond price with respect to the bond's own yield-to-maturity. Curve duration is the sensitivity of the bond price (or more generally, the market value of a financial asset or liability) with respect to a benchmark yield curve. The benchmark yield curve could be the government yield curve on coupon bonds, the spot curve, or the forward curve, but in practice, the government par curve is often used. Yield duration statistics used in fixed-income analysis include Macaulay duration, modified duration, money duration, and the price value of a basis point (PVBP). A curve duration statistic often used is effective duration. Effective duration is covered in Section 3.2.

Macaulay duration is named after Frederick Macaulay, the Canadian economist who first wrote about the statistic in a book published in 1938.¹ Equation 1 is a general formula to calculate the Macaulay duration (MacDur) of a traditional fixed-rate bond.

$$\text{MacDur} = \frac{\left[\frac{(1 - t/T) \times PMT}{(1 + r)^{1-t/T}} + \frac{(2 - t/T) \times PMT}{(1 + r)^{2-t/T}} + \dots + \frac{(N - t/T) \times (PMT + FV)}{(1 + r)^{N-t/T}} \right]}{\left[\frac{PMT}{(1 + r)^{1-t/T}} + \frac{PMT}{(1 + r)^{2-t/T}} + \dots + \frac{PMT + FV}{(1 + r)^{N-t/T}} \right]} \quad (1)$$

where

t = the number of days from the last coupon payment to the settlement date

T = the number of days in the coupon period

t/T = the fraction of the coupon period that has gone by since the last payment

PMT = the coupon payment per period

FV = the future value paid at maturity, or the par value of the bond

r = the yield-to-maturity, or the market discount rate, per period

N = the number of evenly spaced periods to maturity as of the beginning of the current period

¹ Frederick R. Macaulay, *Some Theoretical Problems Suggested by the Movements of Interest Rates, Bond Yields and Stock Prices in the United States since 1856* (New York: National Bureau of Economic Research, 1938).

The denominator in Equation 1 is the full price (PV^{Full}) of the bond including accrued interest. It is the present value of the coupon interest and principal payments, with each cash flow discounted by the same market discount rate, r .

$$PV^{Full} = \frac{PMT}{(1+r)^{1-t/T}} + \frac{PMT}{(1+r)^{2-t/T}} + \dots + \frac{PMT + FV}{(1+r)^{N-t/T}} \tag{2}$$

Equation 3 combines Equations 1 and 2 to reveal an important aspect of the Macaulay duration: Macaulay duration is a weighted average of the time to receipt of the bond's promised payments, where the weights are the shares of the full price that correspond to each of the bond's promised future payments.

$$\text{MacDur} = \left\{ \begin{array}{l} (1-t/T) \left[\frac{PMT}{(1+r)^{1-t/T}} \right] + (2-t/T) \left[\frac{PMT}{(1+r)^{2-t/T}} \right] + \dots + \\ (N-t/T) \left[\frac{PMT + FV}{(1+r)^{N-t/T}} \right] \end{array} \right\} \frac{1}{PV^{Full}} \tag{3}$$

The time to receipt of cash flow measured in terms of time periods are $1 - t/T$, $2 - t/T$, ..., $N - t/T$. The weights are the present values of the cash flows divided by the full price. Therefore, Macaulay duration is measured in terms of time periods. A couple of examples will clarify this calculation.

Consider first the 10-year, 8% annual coupon payment bond used in Examples 1–6. The bond's yield-to-maturity is 10.40%, and its price is 85.503075 per 100 of par value. This bond has 10 evenly spaced periods to maturity. Settlement is on a coupon payment date so that $t/T = 0$. Exhibit 2 illustrates the calculation of the bond's Macaulay duration.

Exhibit 2 Macaulay Duration of a 10-Year, 8% Annual Payment Bond

Period	Cash Flow	Present Value	Weight	Period × Weight
1	8	7.246377	0.08475	0.0847
2	8	6.563747	0.07677	0.1535
3	8	5.945423	0.06953	0.2086
4	8	5.385347	0.06298	0.2519
5	8	4.878032	0.05705	0.2853
6	8	4.418507	0.05168	0.3101
7	8	4.002271	0.04681	0.3277
8	8	3.625245	0.04240	0.3392
9	8	3.283737	0.03840	0.3456
10	108	40.154389	0.46963	4.6963
		85.503075	1.00000	7.0029

The first two columns of Exhibit 2 show the number of periods to the receipt of the cash flow and the amount of the payment per 100 of par value. The third column is the present value of the cash flow. For example, the final payment is 108 (the last coupon payment plus the redemption of principal) and its present value is 40.154389.

$$\frac{108}{(1.1040)^{10}} = 40.154389$$

The sum of the present values is the full price of the bond. The fourth column is the weight, the share of total market value corresponding to each cash flow. The final payment of 108 per 100 of par value is 46.963% of the bond's market value.

$$\frac{40.154389}{85.503075} = 0.46963$$

The sum of the weights is 1.00000. The fifth column is the number of periods to the receipt of the cash flow (the first column) multiplied by the weight (the fourth column). The sum of that column is 7.0029, which is the Macaulay duration of this 10-year, 8% annual coupon payment bond. This statistic is sometimes reported as 7.0029 years, although the time frame is not needed in most applications.

Now consider an example *between* coupon payment dates. A 6% semiannual payment corporate bond that matures on 14 February 2022 is purchased for settlement on 11 April 2014. The coupon payments are 3 per 100 of par value, paid on 14 February and 14 August of each year. The yield-to-maturity is 6.00% quoted on a street-convention semiannual bond basis. The full price of this bond comprises the flat price plus accrued interest. The flat price for the bond is 99.990423 per 100 of par value. The accrued interest is calculated using the 30/360 method to count days. This settlement date is 57 days into the 180-day semiannual period, so $t/T = 57/180$. The accrued interest is 0.950000 ($= 57/180 \times 3$) per 100 of par value. The full price for the bond is 100.940423 ($= 99.990423 + 0.950000$). Exhibit 3 shows the calculation of the bond's Macaulay duration.

Exhibit 3 Macaulay Duration of an Eight-Year, 6% Semiannual Payment Bond Priced to Yield 6.00%

Period	Time to Receipt	Cash Flow	Present Value	Weight	Time × Weight
1	0.6833	3	2.940012	0.02913	0.019903
2	1.6833	3	2.854381	0.02828	0.047601
3	2.6833	3	2.771244	0.02745	0.073669
4	3.6833	3	2.690528	0.02665	0.098178
5	4.6833	3	2.612163	0.02588	0.121197
6	5.6833	3	2.536080	0.02512	0.142791
7	6.6833	3	2.462214	0.02439	0.163025
8	7.6833	3	2.390499	0.02368	0.181959
9	8.6833	3	2.320873	0.02299	0.199652
10	9.6833	3	2.253275	0.02232	0.216159
11	10.6833	3	2.187645	0.02167	0.231536
12	11.6833	3	2.123927	0.02104	0.245834
13	12.6833	3	2.062065	0.02043	0.259102
14	13.6833	3	2.002005	0.01983	0.271389
15	14.6833	3	1.943694	0.01926	0.282740

Exhibit 3 (Continued)

Period	Time to Receipt	Cash Flow	Present Value	Weight	Time × Weight
16	15.6833	103	64.789817	0.64186	10.066535
			100.940423	1.00000	12.621268

There are 16 semiannual periods to maturity between the last coupon payment date of 14 February 2014 and maturity on 14 February 2022. The time to receipt of cash flow in semiannual periods is in the second column: 0.6833 = 1 – 57/180, 1.6833 = 2 – 57/180, etc. The cash flow for each period is in the third column. The annual yield-to-maturity is 6.00%, so the yield per semiannual period is 3.00%. When that yield is used to get the present value of each cash flow, the full price of the bond is 100.940423, the sum of the fourth column. The weights, which are the shares of the full price corresponding to each cash flow, are in the fifth column. The Macaulay duration is the sum of the items in the sixth column, which is the weight multiplied by the time to receipt of each cash flow. The result, 12.621268, is the Macaulay duration on an eight-year, 6% semiannual payment bond for settlement on 11 April 2014 measured in *semiannual periods*. Similar to coupon rates and yields-to-maturity, duration statistics invariably are annualized in practice. Therefore, the Macaulay duration typically is reported as 6.310634 *years* (= 12.621268/2).² (Such precision for the duration statistic is not needed in practice. Typically, “6.31 years” is enough. The full precision is shown here to illustrate calculations.)

Another approach to calculating the Macaulay duration is to use a closed-form equation derived using calculus and algebra. Equation 4 is a general closed-form formula for determining the Macaulay duration of a fixed-rate bond, where c is the coupon rate per period (PMT/FV).³

$$\text{MacDur} = \left\{ \frac{1+r}{r} - \frac{1+r + [N \times (c-r)]}{c \times [(1+r)^N - 1] + r} \right\} - (t/T) \quad (4)$$

The Macaulay duration of the 10-year, 8% annual payment bond is calculated by entering $r = 0.1040$, $c = 0.0800$, $N = 10$, and $t/T = 0$ into Equation 4.

$$\text{MacDur} = \frac{1 + 0.1040}{0.1040} - \frac{1 + 0.1040 + [10 \times (0.0800 - 0.1040)]}{0.0800 \times [(1 + 0.1040)^{10} - 1] + 0.1040} = 7.0029$$

Therefore, the weighted average time to receipt of the interest and principal payments that will result in realization of the initial market discount rate on this 10-year bond is 7.00 years.

² Microsoft Excel users can obtain the Macaulay duration using the DURATION financial function: DURATION (“4/11/2014,” “2/14/2022,” 0.06, 0.06, 2, 0). The inputs are the settlement date, maturity date, annual coupon rate as a decimal, annual yield-to-maturity as a decimal, periodicity, and the code for the day count (0 for 30/360, 1 for actual/actual).

³ The step-by-step derivation of this formula is in Donald J. Smith, *Bond Math: The Theory behind the Formulas*, 2nd edition (Hoboken, NJ: John Wiley & Sons, 2014).

The Macaulay duration of the 6% semiannual payment bond maturing on 14 February 2022 is obtained by entering $r = 0.0300$, $c = 0.0300$, $N = 16$, and $t/T = 57/180$ into Equation 4.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{MacDur} &= \left[\frac{1 + 0.0300}{0.0300} - \frac{1 + 0.0300 + [16 \times (0.0300 - 0.0300)]}{0.0300 \times [(1 + 0.0300)^{16} - 1] + 0.0300} \right] - (57/180) \\ &= 12.621268 \end{aligned}$$

Equation 4 uses the yield-to-maturity *per period*, the coupon rate *per period*, the number of *periods* to maturity, and the fraction of the current *period* that has gone by. Its output is the Macaulay duration in terms of *periods*. It is converted to annual duration by dividing by the number of periods in the year.

The calculation of the **modified duration** (ModDur) statistic of a bond requires a simple adjustment to Macaulay duration. It is the Macaulay duration statistic divided by one plus the yield per period.

$$\text{ModDur} = \frac{\text{MacDur}}{1 + r} \quad (5)$$

For example, the modified duration of the 10-year, 8% annual payment bond is 6.3432.

$$\text{ModDur} = \frac{7.0029}{1.1040} = 6.3432$$

The modified duration of the 6% semiannual payment bond maturing on 14 February 2022 is 12.253658 semiannual periods.

$$\text{ModDur} = \frac{12.621268}{1.0300} = 12.253658$$

The annualized modified duration of the bond is 6.126829 ($= 12.253658/2$).⁴

Although modified duration might seem to be just a Macaulay duration with minor adjustments, it has an important application in risk measurement: Modified duration provides an estimate of the percentage price change for a bond given a change in its yield-to-maturity.

$$\% \Delta PV^{Full} \approx -\text{AnnModDur} \times \Delta \text{Yield} \quad (6)$$

The percentage price change refers to the full price, including accrued interest. The AnnModDur term in Equation 6 is the *annual* modified duration, and the ΔYield term is the change in the *annual* yield-to-maturity. The \approx sign indicates that this calculation is an estimation. The minus sign indicates that bond prices and yields-to-maturity move inversely.

If the annual yield on the 6% semiannual payment bond that matures on 14 February 2022 jumps by 100 bps, from 6.00% to 7.00%, the estimated loss in value for the bond is 6.1268%.

$$\% \Delta PV^{Full} \approx -6.126829 \times 0.0100 = -0.061268$$

If the yield-to-maturity were to drop by 100 bps to 5.00%, the estimated gain in value is also 6.1268%.

$$\% \Delta PV^{Full} \approx -6.126829 \times -0.0100 = 0.061268$$

Modified duration provides a *linear* estimate of the percentage price change. In terms of absolute value, the change is the same for either an increase or decrease in the yield-to-maturity. Recall from “Introduction to Fixed-Income Valuation” that for

⁴ Microsoft Excel users can obtain the modified duration using the MDURATION financial function: MDURATION (“4/11/2014,” “2/14/2022,” 0.06, 0.06, 2, 0). The inputs are the same as for the Macaulay duration in Footnote 2.

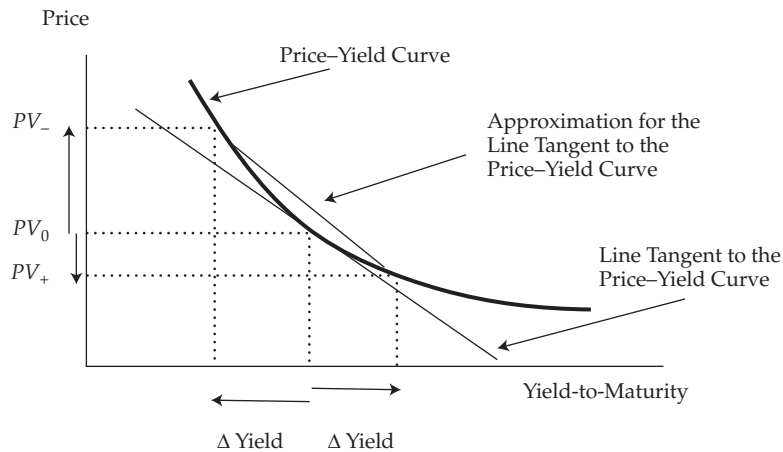
a given coupon rate and time-to-maturity, the percentage price change is greater (in absolute value) when the market discount rate goes down than when it goes up. Later in this reading, a “convexity adjustment” to duration is introduced. It improves the accuracy of this estimate, especially when a large change in yield-to-maturity (such as 100 bps) is considered.

The modified duration statistic for a fixed-rate bond is easily obtained if the Macaulay duration is already known. An alternative approach is to *approximate* modified duration directly. Equation 7 is the approximation formula for annual modified duration.

$$\text{ApproxModDur} = \frac{(PV_-) - (PV_+)}{2 \times (\Delta \text{Yield}) \times (PV_0)} \quad (7)$$

The objective of the approximation is to estimate the slope of the line tangent to the price–yield curve. The slope of the tangent and the approximated slope are shown in Exhibit 4.

Exhibit 4 Approximate Modified Duration



To estimate the slope, the yield-to-maturity is changed up and down by the same amount—the ΔYield . Then the bond prices given the new yields-to-maturity are calculated. The price when the yield is increased is denoted PV_+ . The price when the yield-to-maturity is reduced is denoted PV_- . The original price is PV_0 . These prices are the full prices, including accrued interest. The slope of the line based on PV_+ and PV_- is the approximation for the slope of the line tangent to the price–yield curve. The following example illustrates the remarkable accuracy of this approximation. In fact, as ΔYield approaches zero, the approximation approaches AnnModDur .

Consider the 6% semiannual coupon payment corporate bond maturing on 14 February 2022. For settlement on 11 April 2014, the full price (PV_0) is 100.940423 given that the yield-to-maturity is 6.00%.

$$PV_0 = \left[\frac{3}{(1.03)^1} + \frac{3}{(1.03)^2} + \cdots + \frac{103}{(1.03)^{16}} \right] \times (1.03)^{57/180} = 100.940423$$

Raise the annual yield-to-maturity by five bps, from 6.00% to 6.05%. This increase corresponds to an increase in the yield-to-maturity per semiannual period of 2.5 bps, from 3.00% to 3.025% per period. The new full price (PV_+) is 100.631781.

$$PV_+ = \left[\frac{3}{(1.03025)^1} + \frac{3}{(1.03025)^2} + \dots + \frac{103}{(1.03025)^{16}} \right] \times (1.03025)^{57/180} = 100.631781$$

Lower the annual yield-to-maturity by five bps, from 6.00% to 5.95%. This decrease corresponds to a decrease in the yield-to-maturity per semiannual period of 2.5 bps, from 3.00% to 2.975% per period. The new full price (PV_-) is 101.250227.

$$PV_- = \left[\frac{3}{(1.02975)^1} + \frac{3}{(1.02975)^2} + \dots + \frac{103}{(1.02975)^{16}} \right] \times (1.02975)^{57/180} = 101.250227$$

Enter these results into Equation 7 for the 5 bp change in the annual yield-to-maturity, or $\Delta\text{Yield} = 0.0005$:

$$\text{ApproxModDur} = \frac{101.250227 - 100.631781}{2 \times 0.0005 \times 100.940423} = 6.126842$$

The “exact” annual modified duration for this bond is 6.126829 and the “approximation” is 6.126842—virtually identical results. Therefore, although duration can be calculated using the approach in Exhibits 2 and 3—basing the calculation on the weighted average time to receipt of each cash flow—or using the closed-form formula as in Equation 4, it can also be estimated quite accurately using the basic bond-pricing equation and a financial calculator. The Macaulay duration can be approximated as well—the approximate modified duration multiplied by one plus the yield per period.

$$\text{ApproxMacDur} = \text{ApproxModDur} \times (1 + r) \quad (8)$$

The approximation formulas produce results for *annualized* modified and Macaulay durations. The frequency of coupon payments and the periodicity of the yield-to-maturity are included in the bond price calculations.

EXAMPLE 8

Assume that the 3.75% US Treasury bond that matures on 15 August 2041 is priced to yield 5.14% for settlement on 15 October 2014. Coupons are paid semiannually on 15 February and 15 August. The yield-to-maturity is stated on a street-convention semiannual bond basis. This settlement date is 61 days into a 184-day coupon period, using the actual/actual day-count convention. Compute the approximate modified duration and the approximate Macaulay duration for this Treasury bond assuming a 5 bp change in the yield-to-maturity.

Solution:

The yield-to-maturity per semiannual period is 0.0257 (= 0.0514/2). The coupon payment per period is 1.875 (= 3.75/2). At the beginning of the period, there are 27 years (54 semiannual periods) to maturity. The fraction of the period that has passed is 61/184. The full price at that yield-to-maturity is 80.501507 per 100 of par value.

$$PV_0 = \left[\frac{1.875}{(1.0257)^1} + \frac{1.875}{(1.0257)^2} + \dots + \frac{101.875}{(1.0257)^{54}} \right] \times (1.0257)^{61/184} = 80.501507$$

Raise the yield-to-maturity from 5.14% to 5.19%—therefore, from 2.57% to 2.595% per semiannual period, and the price becomes 79.886293 per 100 of par value.

$$PV_+ = \left[\frac{1.875}{(1.02595)^1} + \frac{1.875}{(1.02595)^2} + \dots + \frac{101.875}{(1.02595)^{54}} \right] \times (1.02595)^{61/184}$$

$$= 79.886293$$

Lower the yield-to-maturity from 5.14% to 5.09%—therefore, from 2.57% to 2.545% per semiannual period, and the price becomes 81.123441 per 100 of par value.

$$PV_- = \left[\frac{1.875}{(1.02545)^1} + \frac{1.875}{(1.02545)^2} + \dots + \frac{101.875}{(1.02545)^{54}} \right] \times (1.02545)^{61/184}$$

$$= 81.123441$$

The approximate annualized modified duration for the Treasury bond is 15.368.

$$\text{ApproxModDur} = \frac{81.123441 - 79.886293}{2 \times 0.0005 \times 80.501507} = 15.368$$

The approximate annualized Macaulay duration is 15.763.

$$\text{ApproxMacDur} = 15.368 \times 1.0257 = 15.763$$

Therefore, from these statistics, the investor knows that the weighted average time to receipt of interest and principal payments is 15.763 years (the Macaulay duration) and that the estimated loss in the bond's market value is 15.368% (the modified duration) if the market discount rate were to suddenly go up by 1% from 5.14% to 6.14%.

3.2 Effective Duration

Another approach to assess the interest rate risk of a bond is to estimate the percentage change in price given a change in a benchmark yield curve—for example, the government par curve. This estimate, which is very similar to the formula for approximate modified duration, is called the **effective duration**. The effective duration of a bond is the sensitivity of the bond's price to a change in a benchmark yield curve. The formula to calculate effective duration (EffDur) is Equation 9.

$$\text{EffDur} = \frac{(PV_-) - (PV_+)}{2 \times (\Delta\text{Curve}) \times (PV_0)} \quad (9)$$

The difference between approximate modified duration and effective duration is in the denominator. Modified duration is a *yield duration* statistic in that it measures interest rate risk in terms of a change in the bond's own yield-to-maturity (ΔYield). Effective duration is a *curve duration* statistic in that it measures interest rate risk in terms of a parallel shift in the benchmark yield curve (ΔCurve).

Effective duration is essential to the measurement of the interest rate risk of a complex bond, such as a bond that contains an embedded call option. The duration of a callable bond is *not* the sensitivity of the bond price to a change in the yield-to-worst (i.e., the lowest of the yield-to-maturity, yield-to-first-call, yield-to-second-call, and so forth). The problem is that future cash flows are uncertain because they are contingent on future interest rates. The issuer's decision to call the bond depends on the ability to refinance the debt at a lower cost of funds. In brief, a callable bond does not have a well-defined internal rate of return (yield-to-maturity). Therefore, yield duration statistics, such as modified and Macaulay durations, do not apply; effective duration is the appropriate duration measure.

The specific option-pricing models that are used to produce the inputs to effective duration for a callable bond are covered in later readings. However, as an example, suppose that the full price of a callable bond is 101.060489 per 100 of par value. The option-pricing model inputs include (1) the length of the call protection period, (2) the schedule of call prices and call dates, (3) an assumption about credit spreads over benchmark yields (which includes any liquidity spread as well), (4) an assumption about future interest rate volatility, and (5) the level of market interest rates (e.g., the government par curve). The analyst then holds the first four inputs constant and raises and lowers the fifth input. Suppose that when the government par curve is raised and lowered by 25 bps, the new full prices for the callable bond from the model are 99.050120 and 102.890738, respectively. Therefore, $PV_0 = 101.060489$, $PV_+ = 99.050120$, $PV_- = 102.890738$, and $\Delta\text{Curve} = 0.0025$. The effective duration for the callable bond is 7.6006.

$$\text{EffDur} = \frac{102.890738 - 99.050120}{2 \times 0.0025 \times 101.060489} = 7.6006$$

This curve duration measure indicates the bond's sensitivity to the benchmark yield curve—in particular, the government par curve—assuming no change in the credit spread. In practice, a callable bond issuer might be able to exercise the call option and obtain a lower cost of funds if (1) benchmark yields fall and the credit spread over the benchmark is unchanged or (2) benchmark yields are unchanged and the credit spread is reduced (e.g., because of an upgrade in the issuer's rating). A pricing model can be used to determine a “credit duration” statistic—that is, the sensitivity of the bond price to a change in the credit spread. On a traditional fixed-rate bond, modified duration estimates the percentage price change for a change in the benchmark yield and/or the credit spread. For bonds that do not have a well-defined internal rate of return because the future cash flows are not fixed—for instance, callable bonds and floating-rate notes—pricing models are used to produce different statistics for changes in benchmark interest rates and for changes in credit risk.

Another fixed-income security for which yield duration statistics, such as modified and Macaulay durations, are not relevant is a mortgage-backed bond. These securities arise from a residential (or commercial) loan portfolio securitization. The key point for measuring interest rate risk on a mortgage-backed bond is that the cash flows are contingent on homeowners' ability to refinance their debt at a lower rate. In effect, the homeowners have call options on their mortgage loans.

A practical consideration in using effective duration is in setting the change in the benchmark yield curve. With approximate modified duration, accuracy is improved by choosing a smaller yield-to-maturity change. But the pricing models for more-complex securities, such as callable and mortgage-backed bonds, include assumptions about the behavior of the corporate issuers, businesses, or homeowners. Rates typically need to change by a minimum amount to affect the decision to call a bond or refinance a mortgage loan because issuing new debt involves transaction costs. Therefore, estimates of interest rate risk using effective duration are not necessarily improved by choosing a smaller change in benchmark rates. Effective duration has become an important tool in the financial analysis of not only traditional bonds but also financial liabilities. Example 9 demonstrates such an application of effective duration.

EXAMPLE 9

Defined-benefit pension schemes typically pay retirees a monthly amount based on their wage level at the time of retirement. The amount could be fixed in nominal terms or indexed to inflation. These programs are referred to as “defined-benefit pension plans” when US GAAP or IFRS accounting standards are used. In Australia, they are called “superannuation funds.”

A British defined-benefit pension scheme seeks to measure the sensitivity of its retirement obligations to market interest rate changes. The pension scheme manager hires an actuarial consultancy to model the present value of its liabilities under three interest rate scenarios: (1) a base rate of 5%, (2) a 100 bp increase in rates, up to 6%, and (3) a 100 bp drop in rates, down to 4%.

The actuarial consultancy uses a complex valuation model that includes assumptions about employee retention, early retirement, wage growth, mortality, and longevity. The following chart shows the results of the analysis.

Interest Rate Assumption	Present Value of Liabilities
4%	GBP973.5 million
5%	GBP926.1 million
6%	GBP871.8 million

Compute the effective duration of the pension scheme's liabilities.

Solution:

$PV_0 = 926.1$, $PV_+ = 871.8$, $PV_- = 973.5$, and $\Delta\text{Curve} = 0.0100$. The effective duration of the pension scheme's liabilities is 5.49.

$$\text{EffDur} = \frac{973.5 - 871.8}{2 \times 0.0100 \times 926.1} = 5.49$$

This effective duration statistic for the pension scheme's liabilities might be used in asset allocation decisions to decide the mix of equity, fixed income, and alternative assets.

Although effective duration is the most appropriate interest rate risk measure for bonds with embedded options, it also is useful with traditional bonds to supplement the information provided by the Macaulay and modified yield durations. Exhibit 5 displays the Bloomberg Yield and Spread (YAS) Analysis page for the 0.625% US Treasury note that matures on 31 May 2017.

Exhibit 5 Bloomberg YAS Page for the 0.625% US Treasury Note

Yield and Spread Analysis	
Govt YAS	
T 0 5/31/17 Govt 90 Feedback	
99-16+ / 99-16 3/4 0.725 / 0.723 BGN @ 17:00 95 Buy 96 Sell 97 Settings	
1 Yield & Spread 2 Yields 3 Pricing 4 Descriptive 5 Graphs 6 Custom	
T 0.625 5/31/17 (91282857)	
Spread	0bp vs 5y T 0 5/31/17
Price	99-16 3/4 99-16 3/4 17:01:2
Yield	0.723368 Wst 0.723368 S/A
Wkout	05/31/2017 @ 100.00 Yld 6 6
Settle	06/22/12 06/22/12
Risk	
Mod Duration	4.853
Risk	4.831
Convexity	0.262
PV	0.01
Benchmark Risk	4.831
Risk Hedge	1,000 M
Proceeds Hedge	1,000 M
Invoice	
Face	1,000 M
Principal	995,234.38
Accrued (22 Days)	375.68
Total (USD)	995,610.06
Yield Calculations	
11) G-Spr	0.0 Street Convention 0.723368
12) I-Spr	-26.8 Equiv 1 /Yr 0.724676
13) Basis	78.1 Mmkt (Act/ 360)
14) Z-Spr	-26.6 Current Yield 0.627993
15) ASW	-26.0 True Yield 0.723361
16) OAS	0.0
TED	27.5
After Tax (Inc 35.00% CG 15.00%) 0.490	
Issue Price = 99.397. OID Bond with Acquisition Prem.	
Australia 61 2 9777 8600 Brazil 5511 3048 4500 Europe 44 20 7330 7501 Germany 49 69 9204 1210 Hong Kong 852 2977 5000 Japan 81 9 3201 8900 Singapore 65 6212 1000 U.S. 1 212 318 2000 Copyright 2012 Bloomberg Finance L.P. SN 682652 EDT GMT-4:00 H192-1717-0 21-Jun-2012 17:01:45	

Used with permission of Bloomberg Businessweek Copyright © 2013. All rights reserved.

In Exhibit 5, the quoted (flat) price for the bond is 99 – 16³/₄, which is equal to 99 and 16³/₄ 32nds per 100 of par value for settlement on 22 June 2012. Most bond prices are stated in decimals, but US Treasuries are usually quoted in fractions. As a decimal, the flat price is 99.523438. The accrued interest uses the actual/actual day-count method. That settlement date is 22 days into a 183-day semiannual coupon payment period. The accrued interest is 0.037568 per 100 of par value (= 22/183 × 0.00625/2 × 100). The full price of the bond is 99.561006. The yield-to-maturity of the bond is 0.723368%, stated on a street-convention semiannual bond basis.

The modified duration for the bond is shown in Exhibit 5 to be 4.853, which is the conventional *yield* duration statistic. Its *curve* duration, however, is 4.882, which is the price sensitivity with respect to changes in the US Treasury par curve. On Bloomberg, the effective duration is called the “OAS duration” because it is based on the option-pricing model that is also used to calculate the option-adjusted spread. The small difference arises because the government yield curve is not flat. When the par curve is shifted in the model, the government spot curve is also shifted, although not in the same “parallel” manner. Therefore, the change in the bond price is not exactly the same as it would be if its own yield-to-maturity changed by the same amount as the change in the par curve. In general, the modified duration and effective duration on a traditional option-free bond are not identical. The difference narrows when the yield curve is flatter, the time-to-maturity is shorter, and the bond is priced closer to par value (so that the difference between the coupon rate and the yield-to-maturity is smaller). The modified duration and effective duration on an option-free bond are identical only in the rare circumstance of an absolutely flat yield curve.

Above, the effective duration for a sample callable bond was calculated as:

$$\text{EffDur} = \frac{102.890738 - 99.050120}{2 \times 0.0025 \times 101.060489} = 7.6006$$

This duration measure indicates the bond’s sensitivity to the benchmark yield curve assuming that all yields change by the same amount.

3.3 Key Rate Duration

Key rate duration provides further insight into a bond's sensitivity to changes in the benchmark yield curve. A **key rate duration** (or **partial duration**) is a measure of a bond's sensitivity to a change in the benchmark yield curve at a specific maturity segment. In contrast to effective duration, key rate durations help identify "shaping risk" for a bond—that is, a bond's sensitivity to changes in the shape of the benchmark yield curve (e.g., the yield curve becoming steeper or flatter).

The previous illustration of effective duration assumed a parallel shift of 25 bps at all maturities. However, the analyst may want to know how the price of the callable bond is expected to change if benchmark rates at short maturities (say up to 2 years) shifted up by 25 bps but longer maturity benchmark rates remained unchanged. This scenario would represent a flattening of the yield curve, given that the yield curve is upward sloping. Using key rate durations, the expected price change would be approximately equal to minus the key rate duration for the short maturity segment times the 0.0025 interest rate shift at that segment. Of course, for parallel shifts in the benchmark yield curve, key rate durations will indicate the same interest rate sensitivity as effective duration.

3.4 Properties of Bond Duration

The Macaulay and modified yield duration statistics for a traditional fixed-rate bond are functions of the input variables: the coupon rate or payment per period, the yield-to-maturity per period, the number of periods to maturity (as of the beginning of the period), and the fraction of the period that has gone by. The properties of bond duration are obtained by changing one of these variables while holding the others constant. Because duration is the basic measure of interest rate risk on a fixed-rate bond, these properties are important to understand.

The closed-form formula for Macaulay duration, presented as Equation 4 and again here, is useful in demonstrating the characteristics of the bond duration statistic.

$$\text{MacDur} = \left\{ \frac{1+r}{r} - \frac{1+r + [N \times (c-r)]}{c \times [(1+r)^N - 1] + r} \right\} - (t/T)$$

The same characteristics hold for modified duration. Consider first the fraction of the period that has gone by (t/T). Macaulay and modified durations depend on the day-count basis used to obtain the yield-to-maturity. The duration of a bond that uses the actual/actual method to count days is slightly different from that of an otherwise comparable bond that uses the 30/360 method. The key point is that for a constant yield-to-maturity (r), the expression in braces is unchanged as time passes during the period. Therefore, the Macaulay duration decreases smoothly as t goes from $t = 0$ to $t = T$, which creates a "saw-tooth" pattern. This pattern for a typical fixed-rate bond is illustrated in Exhibit 6.

Exhibit 6 Macaulay Duration between Coupon Payments with a Constant Yield-to-Maturity


As time passes during the coupon period (moving from right to left in the diagram), the Macaulay duration declines smoothly and then jumps upward after the coupon is paid.

The characteristics of bond duration related to changes in the coupon rate, the yield-to-maturity, and the time-to-maturity are illustrated in Exhibit 7.

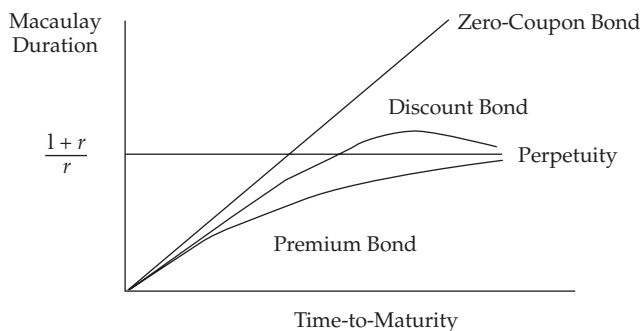
Exhibit 7 Properties of the Macaulay Yield Duration


Exhibit 7 shows the graph for coupon payment dates when $t/T = 0$, thus not displaying the saw-tooth pattern between coupon payments. The relationship between the Macaulay duration and the time-to-maturity for a zero-coupon bond is the 45-degree line: $\text{MacDur} = N$ when $c = 0$ (and $t/T = 0$). Therefore, the Macaulay duration of a zero-coupon bond is its time-to-maturity.

A **perpetuity** or perpetual bond, which also is called a consol, is a bond that does not mature. There is no principal to redeem. The investor receives a fixed coupon payment forever, unless the bond is callable. Non-callable perpetuities are rare, but they have an interesting Macaulay duration: $\text{MacDur} = (1 + r)/r$ as N approaches infinity. In effect, the second expression within the braces approaches zero as the number of periods to maturity increases because N in the numerator is a coefficient but N in the denominator is an exponent and the denominator increases faster than the numerator as N grows larger.

Typical fixed-rate coupon bonds with a stated maturity date are portrayed in Exhibit 7 as the premium and discount bonds. The usual pattern is that longer times-to-maturity correspond to higher Macaulay duration statistics. This pattern always holds for bonds trading at par value or at a premium above par. In Equation 4, the second expression within the braces is a positive number for premium and par bonds.

The numerator is positive because the coupon rate (c) is greater than or equal to the yield-to-maturity (r), whereas the denominator is always positive. Therefore, the Macaulay duration is always less than $(1 + r)/r$, and it approaches that threshold from below as the time-to-maturity increases.

The curious result displayed in Exhibit 7 is in the pattern for discount bonds. Generally, the Macaulay duration increases for a longer time-to-maturity. But at some point when the time-to-maturity is high enough, the Macaulay duration exceeds $(1 + r)/r$, reaches a maximum, and then approaches the threshold from above. In Equation 4, such a pattern develops when the number of periods (N) is large and the coupon rate (c) is below the yield-to-maturity (r). Then the numerator of the second expression within the braces can become negative. The implication is that on long-term discount bonds, the interest rate risk can actually be less than on a shorter-term bond, which explains why the word “generally” is needed in describing the maturity effect for the relationship between bond prices and yields-to-maturity. Generally, for the same coupon rate, a longer-term bond has a greater percentage price change than a shorter-term bond when their yields-to-maturity change by the same amount. The exception is when the longer-term bond actually has a lower duration statistic.

Coupon rates and yields-to-maturity are both inversely related to the Macaulay duration. In Exhibit 7, for the same time-to-maturity and yield-to-maturity, the Macaulay duration is higher for a zero-coupon bond than for a low-coupon bond trading at a discount. Also, the low-coupon bond trading at a discount has a higher duration than a high-coupon bond trading at a premium. Therefore, all else being equal, a lower-coupon bond has a higher duration and more interest rate risk than a higher-coupon bond. The same pattern holds for the yield-to-maturity. A higher yield-to-maturity reduces the weighted average of the time to receipt of cash flow. More weight is on the cash flows received in the near term, and less weight is on the cash flows received in the more-distant future periods if those cash flows are discounted at a higher rate.

In summary, the Macaulay and modified duration statistics for a fixed-rate bond depend primarily on the coupon rate, yield-to-maturity, and time-to-maturity. A higher coupon rate or a higher yield-to-maturity reduces the duration measures. A longer time-to-maturity *usually* leads to a higher duration. It *always* does so for a bond priced at a premium or at par value. But if the bond is priced at a discount, a longer time-to-maturity *might* lead to a lower duration. This situation only occurs if the coupon rate is low (but not zero) relative to the yield and the time-to-maturity is long.

EXAMPLE 10

A hedge fund specializes in investments in emerging market sovereign debt. The fund manager believes that the implied default probabilities are too high, which means that the bonds are viewed as “cheap” and the credit spreads are too high. The hedge fund plans to take a position on one of these available bonds.

Bond	Time-to-Maturity	Coupon Rate	Price	Yield-to-Maturity
(A)	10 years	10%	58.075279	20%
(B)	20 years	10%	51.304203	20%
(C)	30 years	10%	50.210636	20%

The coupon payments are annual. The yields-to-maturity are effective annual rates. The prices are per 100 of par value.

- 1 Compute the approximate modified duration of each of the three bonds using a 1 bp change in the yield-to-maturity and keeping precision to six decimals (because approximate duration statistics are very sensitive to rounding).
- 2 Which of the three bonds is expected to have the highest percentage price increase if the yield-to-maturity on each decreases by the same amount—for instance, by 10 bps from 20% to 19.90%?

Solution to 1:

Bond A:

$$PV_0 = 58.075279$$

$$PV_+ = 58.047598$$

$$\frac{10}{(1.2001)^1} + \frac{10}{(1.2001)^2} + \dots + \frac{110}{(1.2001)^{10}} = 58.047598$$

$$PV_- = 58.102981$$

$$\frac{10}{(1.1999)^1} + \frac{10}{(1.1999)^2} + \dots + \frac{110}{(1.1999)^{10}} = 58.102981$$

The approximate modified duration of Bond A is 4.768.

$$\text{ApproxModDur} = \frac{58.102981 - 58.047598}{2 \times 0.0001 \times 58.075279} = 4.768$$

Bond B:

$$PV_0 = 51.304203$$

$$PV_+ = 51.277694$$

$$\frac{10}{(1.2001)^1} + \frac{10}{(1.2001)^2} + \dots + \frac{110}{(1.2001)^{20}} = 51.277694$$

$$PV_- = 51.330737$$

$$\frac{10}{(1.1999)^1} + \frac{10}{(1.1999)^2} + \dots + \frac{110}{(1.1999)^{20}} = 51.330737$$

The approximate modified duration of Bond B is 5.169.

$$\text{ApproxModDur} = \frac{51.330737 - 51.277694}{2 \times 0.0001 \times 51.304203} = 5.169$$

Bond C:

$$PV_0 = 50.210636$$

$$PV_+ = 50.185228$$

$$\frac{10}{(1.2001)^1} + \frac{10}{(1.2001)^2} + \dots + \frac{110}{(1.2001)^{30}} = 50.185228$$

$$PV_- = 50.236070$$

$$\frac{10}{(1.1999)^1} + \frac{10}{(1.1999)^2} + \dots + \frac{110}{(1.1999)^{30}} = 50.236070$$

The approximate modified duration of Bond C is 5.063.

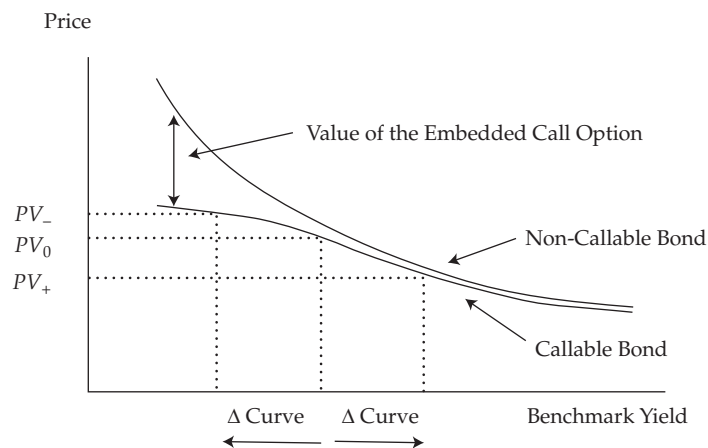
$$\text{ApproxModDur} = \frac{50.236070 - 50.185228}{2 \times 0.0001 \times 50.210636} = 5.063$$

Solution to 2:

Despite the significant differences in times-to-maturity (10, 20, and 30 years), the approximate modified durations on the three bonds are fairly similar (4.768, 5.169, and 5.063). Because the yields-to-maturity are so high, the additional time to receipt of interest and principal payments on the 20- and 30-year bonds have low weight. Nevertheless, Bond B, with 20 years to maturity, has the highest modified duration. If the yield-to-maturity on each is decreased by the same amount—for instance, by 10 bps, from 20% to 19.90%—Bond B would be expected to have the highest percentage price increase because it has the highest modified duration. This example illustrates the relationship between the Macaulay duration and the time-to-maturity on discount bonds in Exhibit 7. The 20-year bond has a higher duration than the 30-year bond.

Callable bonds require the use of effective duration because Macaulay and modified yield duration statistics are not relevant. The yield-to-maturity for callable bonds is not well-defined because future cash flows are uncertain. Exhibit 8 illustrates the impact of the change in the benchmark yield curve (ΔCurve) on the price of a callable bond price compared with that on a comparable non-callable bond. The two bonds have the same credit risk, coupon rate, payment frequency, and time-to-maturity. The vertical axis is the bond price. The horizontal axis is a particular benchmark yield—for instance, a point on the par curve for government bonds.

Exhibit 8 Interest Rate Risk Characteristics of a Callable Bond



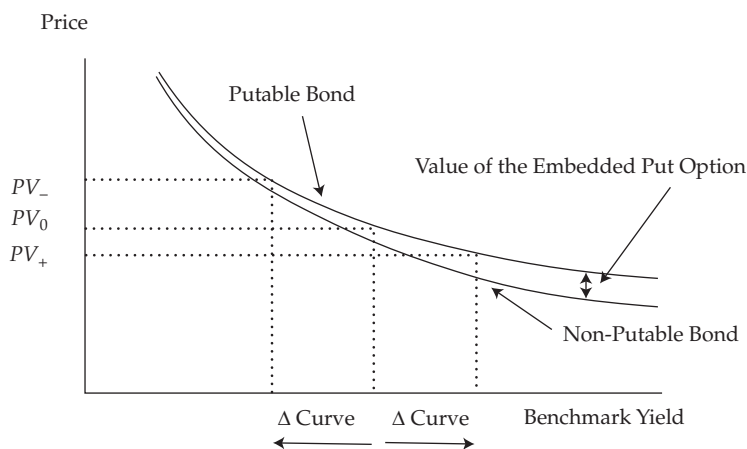
As shown in Exhibit 8, the price of the non-callable bond is always greater than that of the callable bond with otherwise identical features. The difference is the value of the embedded call option. Recall that the call option is an option to the issuer and not the holder of the bond. When interest rates are high compared with the coupon rate, the value of the call option is low. When rates are low, the value of the call option

is much greater because the issuer is more likely to exercise the option to refinance the debt at a lower cost of funds. The investor bears the “call risk” because if the bond is called, the investor must reinvest the proceeds at a lower interest rate.

Exhibit 8 shows the inputs for calculating the effective duration of the callable bond. The entire benchmark curve is raised and lowered by the same amount, ΔCurve . The key point is that when benchmark yields are high, the effective durations of the callable and non-callable bonds are very similar. Although the exhibit does not illustrate it, the slopes of the lines tangent to the price–yield curve are about the same in such a situation. But when interest rates are low, the effective duration of the callable bond is lower than that of the otherwise comparable non-callable bond. That is because the callable bond price does not increase as much when benchmark yields fall. The slope of the line tangent to the price–yield curve would be flatter. The presence of the call option limits price appreciation. Therefore, an embedded call option reduces the effective duration of the bond, especially when interest rates are falling and the bond is more likely to be called. The lower effective duration can also be interpreted as a shorter expected life—the weighted average of time to receipt of cash flow is reduced.

Exhibit 9 considers another embedded option—a put option.

Exhibit 9 Interest Rate Risk Characteristics of a Puttable Bond



A puttable bond allows the investor to sell the bond back to the issuer prior to maturity, usually at par value, which protects the investor from higher benchmark yields or credit spreads that otherwise would drive the bond to a discounted price. Therefore, the price of a puttable bond is always higher than that of an otherwise comparable non-puttable bond. The price difference is the value of the embedded put option.

An embedded put option reduces the effective duration of the bond, especially when rates are rising. If interest rates are low compared with the coupon rate, the value of the put option is low and the impact of a change in the benchmark yield on the bond’s price is very similar to the impact on the price of a non-puttable bond. But when benchmark interest rates rise, the put option becomes more valuable to the investor. The ability to sell the bond at par value limits the price depreciation as rates rise. In summary, the presence of an embedded option reduces the sensitivity of the bond price to changes in the benchmark yield curve, assuming no change in credit risk.

3.5 Duration of a Bond Portfolio

Similar to equities, bonds are typically held in a portfolio. There are two ways to calculate the duration of a bond portfolio: (1) the weighted average of time to receipt of the *aggregate* cash flows and (2) the weighted average of the individual bond durations that comprise the portfolio. The first method is the theoretically correct approach, but it is difficult to use in practice. The second method is commonly used by fixed-income portfolio managers, but it has its own limitations. The differences in these two methods to compute portfolio duration can be examined with a numerical example.

Suppose an investor holds the following portfolio of two *zero-coupon* bonds:

Bond	Maturity	Price	Yield	Macaulay Duration	Modified Duration	Par Value	Market Value	Weight
(X)	1 year	98.00	2.0408%	1	0.980	10,000,000	9,800,000	0.50
(Y)	30 years	9.80	8.0503%	30	27.765	100,000,000	9,800,000	0.50

The prices are per 100 of par value. The yields-to-maturity are effective annual rates. The total market value for the portfolio is 19,600,000. The portfolio is evenly weighted in terms of market value between the two bonds.

The first approach views the portfolio as a series of aggregated cash flows. Its **cash flow yield** is 7.8611%. A cash flow yield is the internal rate of return on a series of cash flows, usually used on a complex security such as a mortgage-backed bond (using projected cash flows based on a model of prepayments as a result of refinancing) or a portfolio of fixed-rate bonds. It is the solution for r in the following equation.

$$19,600,000 = \frac{10,000,000}{(1+r)^1} + \frac{0}{(1+r)^2} + \dots + \frac{0}{(1+r)^{29}} + \frac{100,000,000}{(1+r)^{30}}, \quad r = 0.078611$$

The Macaulay duration of the portfolio in this approach is the weighted average of time to receipt of aggregated cash flow. The cash flow yield is used to obtain the weights. This calculation is similar to Equation 1, and the portfolio duration is 16.2825.

$$\text{MacDur} = \frac{\left[\frac{1 \times 10,000,000}{(1.078611)^1} + \frac{30 \times 100,000,000}{(1.078611)^{30}} \right]}{\left[\frac{10,000,000}{(1.078611)^1} + \frac{100,000,000}{(1.078611)^{30}} \right]} = 16.2825$$

There are just two future cash flows in the portfolio—the redemption of principal on the two zero-coupon bonds. In more complex portfolios, a series of coupon and principal payments may occur on some dates, with an aggregated cash flow composed of coupon interest on some bonds and principal on those that mature.

The modified duration of the portfolio is the Macaulay duration divided by one plus the cash flow yield per period (here, the periodicity is 1).

$$\text{ModDur} = \frac{16.2825}{1.078611} = 15.0958$$

The modified duration for the portfolio is 15.0958. That statistic indicates the percentage change in the market value given a change in the cash flow yield. If the cash flow yield increases or decreases by 100 bps, the market value of the portfolio is expected to increase or decrease by about 15.0958%.

Although this approach is “theoretically correct,” it is difficult to use in practice. First, the cash flow yield is not commonly calculated for bond portfolios. Second, the amount and timing of future coupon and principal payments are uncertain if the portfolio contains callable or puttable bonds or floating-rate notes. Third, interest rate risk is usually expressed as a change in benchmark interest rates, not as a change in the cash flow yield. Fourth, the change in the cash flow yield is not necessarily the same

amount as the change in the yields-to-maturity on the individual bonds. For instance, if the yields-to-maturity on the two zero-coupon bonds in this portfolio both increase or decrease by 10 bps, the cash flow yield increases or decreases by only 9.52 bps.

In practice, the second approach to portfolio duration is commonly used. The Macaulay and modified durations for the portfolio are calculated as the weighted average of the statistics for the individual bonds. The shares of overall portfolio market value are the weights. This weighted average is an approximation of the “theoretically correct” portfolio duration, which is obtained using the first approach. This approximation becomes more accurate when the differences in the yields-to-maturity on the bonds in the portfolio are smaller. When the yield curve is flat, the two approaches produce the same portfolio duration.

Given the equal “50/50” weights in this simple numerical example, this version of portfolio duration is easily computed.

$$\text{Average Macaulay duration} = (1 \times 0.50) + (30 \times 0.50) = 15.50$$

$$\text{Average modified duration} = (0.980 \times 0.50) + (27.765 \times 0.50) = 14.3725$$

Note that $0.980 = 1/1.020404$ and $27.765 = 30/1.080503$. An advantage of the second approach is that callable bonds, puttable bonds, and floating-rate notes can be included in the weighted average using the effective durations for these securities.

The main advantage to the second approach is that it is easily used as a measure of interest rate risk. For instance, if the yields-to-maturity on the bonds in the portfolio increase by 100 bps, the estimated drop in the portfolio value is 14.3725%. However, this advantage also indicates a limitation: This measure of portfolio duration implicitly assumes a **parallel shift** in the yield curve. A parallel yield curve shift implies that all rates change by the same amount in the same direction. In reality, interest rate changes frequently result in a steeper or flatter yield curve. Yield volatility is discussed later in this reading.

EXAMPLE 11

An investment fund owns the following portfolio of three fixed-rate government bonds:

	Bond A	Bond B	Bond C
Par value	EUR25,000,000	EUR25,000,000	EUR50,000,000
Coupon rate	9%	11%	8%
Time-to-maturity	6 years	8 years	12 years
Yield-to-maturity	9.10%	9.38%	9.62%
Market value	EUR24,886,343	EUR27,243,887	EUR44,306,787
Macaulay duration	4.761	5.633	7.652

The total market value of the portfolio is EUR96,437,017. Each bond is on a coupon date so that there is no accrued interest. The market values are the full prices given the par value. Coupons are paid semiannually. The yields-to-maturity are stated on a semiannual bond basis, meaning an annual rate for a periodicity of 2. The Macaulay durations are annualized.

- 1 Calculate the average (annual) modified duration for the portfolio using the shares of market value as the weights.
- 2 Estimate the percentage loss in the portfolio’s market value if the (annual) yield-to-maturity on each bond goes up by 20 bps.

Solution to 1:

The average (annual) modified duration for the portfolio is 6.0495.

$$\left(\frac{4.761}{1 + \frac{0.0910}{2}} \times \frac{24,886,343}{96,437,017} \right) + \left(\frac{5.633}{1 + \frac{0.0938}{2}} \times \frac{27,243,887}{96,437,017} \right) + \left(\frac{7.652}{1 + \frac{0.0962}{2}} \times \frac{44,306,787}{96,437,017} \right) = 6.0495$$

Note that the annual modified duration for each bond is the annual Macaulay duration, which is given, divided by one plus the yield-to-maturity per semi-annual period.

Solution to 2:

The estimated decline in market value if each yield rises by 20 bps is 1.21%:
 $-6.0495 \times 0.0020 = -0.0121$.

3.6 Money Duration of a Bond and the Price Value of a Basis Point

Modified duration is a measure of the *percentage price change* of a bond given a change in its yield-to-maturity. A related statistic is **money duration**. The money duration of a bond is a measure of the *price change* in units of the currency in which the bond is denominated. The money duration can be stated per 100 of par value or in terms of the actual position size of the bond in the portfolio. In the United States, money duration is commonly called “dollar duration.”

Money duration (MoneyDur) is calculated as the annual modified duration times the full price (PV^{Full}) of the bond, including accrued interest.

$$\text{MoneyDur} = \text{AnnModDur} \times PV^{Full} \quad (10)$$

The estimated change in the bond price in currency units is calculated using Equation 11, which is very similar to Equation 6. The difference is that for a given change in the annual yield-to-maturity (ΔYield), modified duration estimates the percentage price change and money duration estimates the change in currency units.

$$\Delta PV^{Full} \approx -\text{MoneyDur} \times \Delta\text{Yield} \quad (11)$$

For an example of money duration, consider the 6% semiannual coupon payment bond that matures on 14 February 2022 and is priced to yield 6.00% for settlement on 11 April 2014. The full price of the bond is 100.940423 per 100 of par value, and the annual modified duration is 6.1268. Suppose that a Hong Kong-based life insurance company has a position in the bond for a par value of HKD100,000,000. The market value of the investment is HKD100,940,423. The money duration of this bond is HKD618,441,784 ($= 6.1268 \times \text{HKD}100,940,423$). Therefore, if the yield-to-maturity rises by 100 bps—from 6.00% to 7.00%—the expected loss is approximately HKD6,184,418 ($= \text{HKD}618,441,784 \times 0.0100$). On a percentage basis, that expected loss is approximately 6.1268%. The “convexity adjustment” introduced in the next section makes these estimates more accurate.

Another version of money duration is the **price value of a basis point** (PVBP) for the bond. The PVBP is an estimate of the change in the full price given a 1 bp change in the yield-to-maturity. The PVBP can be calculated using a formula similar to that for the approximate modified duration. Equation 12 is the formula for the PVBP.

$$PVBP = \frac{(PV_-) - (PV_+)}{2} \quad (12)$$

PV_- and PV_+ are the full prices calculated by decreasing and increasing the yield-to-maturity by 1 bp. The PVBP is also called the “PV01,” standing for the “price value of an 01” or “present value of an 01,” where “01” means 1 bp. In the United States, it is commonly called the “DV01,” or the “dollar value of a 01.” A related statistic, sometimes called a “basis point value” (or BPV), is the money duration times 0.0001 (1 bp).

For a numerical example of the PVBP calculation, consider the 0.625% semiannual coupon payment US Treasury note that matures on 31 May 2017. In Exhibit 5, the PVBP for the Treasury note is shown to be 0.04831. Its yield-to-maturity is 0.723368%, and the settlement date is 22 days into a 183-day period. To confirm this result, calculate the new prices by increasing and decreasing the yield-to-maturity. First, increase the yield by 1 bp (0.01%), from 0.723368% to 0.733368%, to solve for a PV_+ of 99.512707.

$$PV_+ = \left[\frac{0.3125}{\left(1 + \frac{0.00733368}{2}\right)^1} + \dots + \frac{100.3125}{\left(1 + \frac{0.00733368}{2}\right)^{10}} \right] \times \left(1 + \frac{0.00733368}{2}\right)^{22/183}$$

$$= 99.512707$$

Then, decrease the yield-to-maturity by 1 bp, from 0.723368% to 0.713368%, to solve for a PV_- of 99.609333.

$$PV_- = \left[\frac{0.3125}{\left(1 + \frac{0.00713368}{2}\right)^1} + \dots + \frac{100.3125}{\left(1 + \frac{0.00713368}{2}\right)^{10}} \right] \times \left(1 + \frac{0.00713368}{2}\right)^{22/183}$$

$$= 99.609333$$

The PVBP is obtained by substituting these results into Equation 12.

$$PVBP = \frac{99.609333 - 99.512707}{2} = 0.04831$$

Another money duration statistic reported on the Bloomberg YAS page is “risk.” It is shown to be 4.831. Bloomberg’s risk statistic is simply the PVBP (or PV01) times 100.

EXAMPLE 12

A life insurance company holds a USD10 million (par value) position in a 4.50% ArcelorMittal bond that matures on 25 February 2017. The bond is priced (flat) at 98.125 per 100 of par value to yield 5.2617% on a street-convention semiannual bond basis for settlement on 27 June 2014. The total market value of the position, including accrued interest, is USD9,965,000, or 99.650 per 100 of par value. The bond’s (annual) Macaulay duration is 2.4988.

- 1 Calculate the money duration per 100 in par value for the ArcelorMittal bond.
- 2 Using the money duration, estimate the loss on the position for each 1 bp increase in the yield-to-maturity for that settlement date.

Solution to 1:

The money duration is the annual modified duration times the full price of the bond per 100 of par value.

$$\left(\frac{2.4988}{1 + \frac{0.052617}{2}} \right) \times \text{USD}99.650 = \text{USD}242.62$$

Solution to 2:

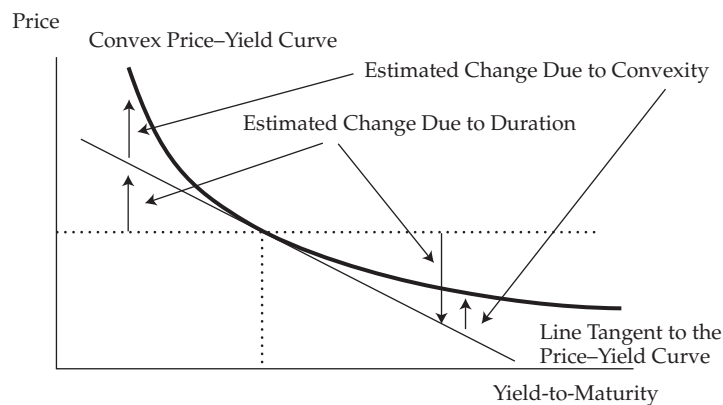
For each 1 bp increase in the yield-to-maturity, the loss is estimated to be USD0.024262 per 100 of par value: $\text{USD}242.62 \times 0.0001 = \text{USD}0.024262$.

Given a position size of USD10 million in par value, the estimated loss per basis-point increase in the yield is USD2,426.20. The money duration is per 100 of par value, so the position size of USD10 million is divided by 100.

$$\text{USD}0.024262 \times \frac{\text{USD}10,000,000}{100} = \text{USD}2,426.20$$

3.7 Bond Convexity

Modified duration measures the primary effect on a bond's percentage price change given a change in the yield-to-maturity. A secondary effect is measured by the convexity statistic, which is illustrated in Exhibit 10 for a traditional (option-free) fixed-rate bond.

Exhibit 10 Convexity of a Traditional (Option-Free) Fixed-Rate Bond

The true relationship between the bond price and the yield-to-maturity is the curved (convex) line shown in Exhibit 10. This curved line shows the actual bond price given its market discount rate. Duration (in particular, money duration) estimates the change in the bond price along the straight line that is tangent to the curved line. For small yield-to-maturity changes, there is little difference between the lines. But for larger changes, the difference becomes significant.

The convexity statistic for the bond is used to improve the estimate of the percentage price change provided by modified duration alone. Equation 13 is the convexity-adjusted estimate of the percentage change in the bond's full price.⁵

$$\% \Delta PV^{Full} \approx (-\text{AnnModDur} \times \Delta \text{Yield}) + \left[\frac{1}{2} \times \text{AnnConvexity} \times (\Delta \text{Yield})^2 \right] \quad (13)$$

The first bracketed expression, the “first-order” effect, is the same as Equation 6. The (annual) modified duration, AnnModDur, is multiplied by the change in the (annual) yield-to-maturity, ΔYield . The second bracketed expression, the “second-order” effect, is the **convexity adjustment**. The convexity adjustment is the annual convexity statistic, AnnConvexity, times one-half, multiplied by the change in the yield-to-maturity *squared*. This additional term is a positive amount on a traditional (option-free) fixed-rate bond for either an increase or decrease in the yield. In Exhibit 10, this amount adds to the linear estimate provided by the duration alone, which brings the adjusted estimate very close to the actual price on the curved line. But it still is an estimate, so the \approx sign is used.

Similar to the Macaulay and modified durations, the annual convexity statistic can be calculated in several ways. It can be calculated using tables, such as Exhibits 2 and 3. It also is possible to derive a closed-form equation for the convexity of a fixed-rate bond on and between coupon payment dates using calculus and algebra.⁶ But like modified duration, convexity can be approximated with accuracy. Equation 14 is the formula for the approximate convexity statistic, ApproxCon.

$$\text{ApproxCon} = \frac{(PV_-) + (PV_+) - [2 \times (PV_0)]}{(\Delta \text{Yield})^2 \times (PV_0)} \quad (14)$$

This equation uses the same inputs as Equation 7 for ApproxModDur. The new price when the yield-to-maturity is increased is PV_+ . The new price when the yield is decreased by the same amount is PV_- . The original price is PV_0 . These are the full prices, including accrued interest, for the bond.

The accuracy of this approximation can be demonstrated with the special case of a zero-coupon bond. The absence of coupon payments simplifies the interest rate risk measures. The Macaulay duration of a zero-coupon bond is $N - t/T$ in terms of periods to maturity. The exact convexity statistic of a zero-coupon bond, also in terms of periods, is calculated with Equation 15.

$$\text{Convexity (of a zero-coupon bond)} = \frac{[N - (t/T)] \times [N + 1 - (t/T)]}{(1 + r)^2} \quad (15)$$

N is the number of periods to maturity as of the beginning of the current period, t/T is the fraction of the period that has gone by, and r is the yield-to-maturity per period.

For an example of this calculation, consider a long-term, zero-coupon US Treasury bond. The bond's Bloomberg YAS page is shown in Exhibit 11.

⁵ Readers who have studied calculus will recognize this equation as the first two terms of a Taylor series expansion. The first term, the modified duration, includes the first derivative of the bond price with respect to a change in the yield. The second term, the convexity, includes the second derivative.

⁶ The step-by-step derivation for a closed-form equation for convexity on and between coupon payment dates is in Donald J. Smith, *Bond Math: The Theory behind the Formulas* (Hoboken, NJ: John Wiley & Sons, 2011).

Exhibit 11 Bloomberg YAS Page for the Zero-Coupon US Treasury Bond

<HELP> for explanation		Govt YAS	
S 0 05/15/42 Govt		90 Feedback	Yield and Spread Analysis
41.2396/41.4836	2.981/2.961	BGN @ 16:49	95 Buy 96 Sell 97 Settings
1) Yield & Spread	2) Yields	3) Pricing	4) Descriptive
S 0 5/15/42 (912834LK2)		Risk	
Spread	21.85 bp vs 30y T 3 05/15/42	Maturity	OAS
Price	41.483611	105-07+	16:49:1
Yield	2.961000	Wst	2.742465 S/A
Wkout	05/15/2042 @ 100.00	Yld	6 6
Settle	06/08/12	06/08/12	
Yield Calculations		Invoice	
11) G-Spr	21.9	Street Convention	2.961000
12) I-Spr	46.0	Equiv 1	/Yr
13) Basis	36.6	Mmkt (Act/360)	
14) Z-Spr	34.4	Current Yield	0
15) ASW	20.1		
16) OAS	-14.5		
TED	N.A.		
After Tax (Inc 35.00% CG 15.00%)	2.186		
No Issue Price. Assume 100. Non OID Bond with Mkt Discount			
<small>Australia 61 2 9777 8600 Brazil 5511 3048 4500 Europe 44 20 7330 7500 Germany 49 49 9204 1210 Hong Kong 852 2877 5000 Japan 81 3 3201 8900 Singapore 65 6212 1000 U.S. 1 212 319 2000 Copyright 2012 Bloomberg Finance L.P. SN 682652 EDT GMT-4 00 6549-3361-0 07-Jun-2012 16:49:29</small>			

Used with permission of Bloomberg Businessweek Copyright © 2013. All rights reserved.

The bond matures on 15 May 2042 and was priced at 41.483611 per 100 of par value for settlement on 8 June 2012. Its yield-to-maturity was 2.961% stated on a street-convention semiannual bond basis. Even though it is a zero-coupon bond, its yield-to-maturity is based on the actual/actual day-count convention. That settlement date was 24 days into a 184-day period. The annual modified duration was 29.498.

For this bond, $N = 60$, $t/T = 24/184$, and $r = 0.02961/2$. Entering these variables into Equation 15 produces a convexity of 3,538.68 in terms of semiannual periods.

$$\frac{[60 - (24/184)] \times [60 + 1 - (24/184)]}{\left(1 + \frac{0.02961}{2}\right)^2} = 3,538.68$$

As with the other statistics, convexity is annualized in practice and for use in the convexity adjustment in Equation 13. It is divided by the periodicity *squared*. The yield-to-maturity on this zero-coupon bond is stated on a semiannual bond basis, meaning a periodicity of 2. Therefore, the annualized convexity statistic is 884.7.

$$\frac{3,538.68}{4} = 884.7$$

For example, suppose that the yield-to-maturity is expected to fall by 10 bps, from 2.961% to 2.861%. Given the (annual) modified duration of 29.498 and (annual) convexity of 884.7, the expected percentage price gain is 2.9940%.

$$\begin{aligned} \% \Delta PV^{Full} &\approx [-29.498 \times -0.0010] + \left[\frac{1}{2} \times 884.7 \times (-0.0010)^2 \right] \\ &= 0.029498 + 0.000442 \\ &= 0.029940 \end{aligned}$$

Modified duration alone (under)estimates the gain to be 2.9498%. The convexity adjustment adds 4.42 bps.

The long-term, zero-coupon bond of Exhibit 11 demonstrates the significant difference between *yield* duration and convexity and *curve* duration and convexity, even on an option-free bond. Its modified duration is 29.498, whereas its effective duration is 34.198. Its yield convexity is reported on the Bloomberg page to be 8.847, and its effective convexity is 10.998. (Note that Bloomberg scales the convexity statistics by dividing by 100.) In general, the differences are heightened when the benchmark yield curve is not flat, when the bond has a long time-to-maturity, and the bond is priced at a significant discount or premium.

To obtain the ApproxCon for this long-term, zero-coupon bond, calculate PV_0 , PV_+ , and PV_- for yields-to-maturity of 2.961%, 2.971%, and 2.951%, respectively. For this exercise, $\Delta\text{Yield} = 0.0001$.

$$PV_0 = \frac{100}{\left(1 + \frac{0.02961}{2}\right)^{60}} \times \left(1 + \frac{0.02961}{2}\right)^{24/184} = 41.483617$$

$$PV_+ = \frac{100}{\left(1 + \frac{0.02971}{2}\right)^{60}} \times \left(1 + \frac{0.02971}{2}\right)^{24/184} = 41.361431$$

$$PV_- = \frac{100}{\left(1 + \frac{0.02951}{2}\right)^{60}} \times \left(1 + \frac{0.02951}{2}\right)^{24/184} = 41.606169$$

The price of the zero-coupon bond is actually 41.483611, not 41.483617. In this calculation, PV_0 is slightly different because the quoted yield-to-maturity is rounded.⁷ It is appropriate to use the calculated PV_0 to be consistent with the change in the yield-to-maturity.

Using these results, first calculate ApproxModDur using Equation 7 to confirm that these inputs are correct. In Exhibit 11, modified duration is stated to be 29.498.

$$\text{ApproxModDur} = \frac{41.606169 - 41.361431}{2 \times 0.0001 \times 41.483617} = 29.498$$

Using Equation 14, ApproxCon is 882.3.

$$\text{ApproxCon} = \frac{41.606169 + 41.361431 - (2 \times 41.483617)}{(0.0001)^2 \times 41.483617} = 882.3$$

This result, 882.3, is an approximation for *annualized* convexity. The number of periods in the year is included in the price calculations. This approximation is quite close to the “exact” result using the closed-form equation for the special case of the zero-coupon bond, 884.7. The difference is not likely to be meaningful for practical applications.

Because this is an individual zero-coupon bond, it is easy to calculate the new price if the yield-to-maturity does go down by 10 bps, to 2.861%.

$$\frac{100}{\left(1 + \frac{0.02861}{2}\right)^{60}} \times \left(1 + \frac{0.02861}{2}\right)^{24/184} = 42.725841$$

Therefore, the actual percentage price increase is 2.9945%.

$$\frac{42.725841 - 41.483611}{41.483611} = 0.029945$$

⁷ Given the price of 41.483611, the yield-to-maturity is 2.96100046%.

The convexity-adjusted estimation of 2.9940% is very close to the actual change. Using the approximate convexity of 882.3 instead of the exact convexity of 884.7 would not have had a meaningful impact.

$$\begin{aligned}\% \Delta PV^{Full} &\approx (-29.498 \times -0.0010) + \left[\frac{1}{2} \times 882.3 \times (-0.0010)^2 \right] \\ &= 0.029498 + 0.000441 \\ &= 0.029939\end{aligned}$$

The “exact” convexity adjustment is 4.42 bps. The “approximate” convexity adjustment is 4.41 bps.

EXAMPLE 13

An Italian bank holds a large position in a 7.25% annual coupon payment corporate bond that matures on 4 April 2029. The bond’s yield-to-maturity is 7.44% for settlement on 27 June 2014, stated as an effective annual rate. That settlement date is 83 days into the 360-day year using the 30/360 method of counting days.

- 1 Calculate the full price of the bond per 100 of par value.
- 2 Calculate the approximate modified duration and approximate convexity using a 1 bp increase and decrease in the yield-to-maturity.
- 3 Calculate the estimated convexity-adjusted percentage price change resulting from a 100 bp increase in the yield-to-maturity.
- 4 Compare the estimated percentage price change with the actual change, assuming the yield-to-maturity jumps to 8.44% on that settlement date.

Solutions:

There are 15 years from the beginning of the current period on 4 April 2014 to maturity on 4 April 2029.

- 1 The full price of the bond is 99.956780 per 100 of par value.

$$PV_0 = \left[\frac{7.25}{(1.0744)^1} + \dots + \frac{107.25}{(1.0744)^{15}} \right] \times (1.0744)^{83/360} = 99.956780$$

- 2 $PV_+ = 99.869964$, and $PV_- = 100.043703$.

$$PV_+ = \left[\frac{7.25}{(1.0745)^1} + \dots + \frac{107.25}{(1.0745)^{15}} \right] \times (1.0745)^{83/360} = 99.869964$$

$$PV_- = \left[\frac{7.25}{(1.0743)^1} + \dots + \frac{107.25}{(1.0743)^{15}} \right] \times (1.0743)^{83/360} = 100.043703$$

The approximate modified duration is 8.6907.

$$\text{ApproxModDur} = \frac{100.043703 - 99.869964}{2 \times 0.0001 \times 99.956780} = 8.6907$$

The approximate convexity is 107.046.

$$\text{ApproxCon} = \frac{100.043703 + 99.869964 - (2 \times 99.956780)}{(0.0001)^2 \times 99.956780} = 107.046$$

- 3 The convexity-adjusted percentage price drop resulting from a 100 bp increase in the yield-to-maturity is estimated to be 8.1555%. Modified duration alone estimates the percentage drop to be 8.6907%. The convexity adjustment adds 53.52 bps.

$$\begin{aligned}\% \Delta PV^{Full} &\approx (-8.6907 \times 0.0100) + \left[\frac{1}{2} \times 107.046 \times (0.0100)^2 \right] \\ &= -0.086907 + 0.005352 \\ &= -0.081555\end{aligned}$$

- 4 The new full price if the yield-to-maturity goes from 7.44% to 8.44% on that settlement date is 91.780921.

$$PV^{Full} = \left[\frac{7.25}{(1.0844)^1} + \dots + \frac{107.25}{(1.0844)^{15}} \right] \times (1.0844)^{83/360} = 91.780921$$

$$\% \Delta PV^{Full} = \frac{91.780921 - 99.956780}{99.956780} = -0.081794$$

The actual percentage change in the bond price is -8.1794% . The convexity-adjusted estimate is -8.1555% , whereas the estimated change using modified duration alone is -8.6907% .

The money duration of a bond indicates the first-order effect on the full price of a bond in units of currency given a change in the yield-to-maturity. The **money convexity** statistic (MoneyCon) is the second-order effect. The money convexity of the bond is the annual convexity multiplied by the full price, such that

$$\Delta PV^{Full} \approx -(\text{MoneyDur} \times \Delta \text{Yield}) + \left[\frac{1}{2} \times \text{MoneyCon} \times (\Delta \text{Yield})^2 \right] \quad (16)$$

For a money convexity example, consider again the Hong Kong-based life insurance company that has a HKD100,000,000 position in the 6.00% bond that matures on 14 February 2022. In Section 3.5, using the money duration alone, the estimated loss is HKD6,184,418 if the yield-to-maturity increases by 100 bps. The money duration for the position is HKD618,441,784. That estimation is improved by including the convexity adjustment. In Section 3.1, these inputs are calculated to obtain the approximate modified duration of 6.1268 for a 5 bp change in the yield-to-maturity ($\Delta \text{Yield} = 0.0005$): $PV_0 = 100.940423$, $PV_+ = 100.631781$, and $PV_- = 101.250227$. Enter these into Equation 14 to calculate the approximate convexity.

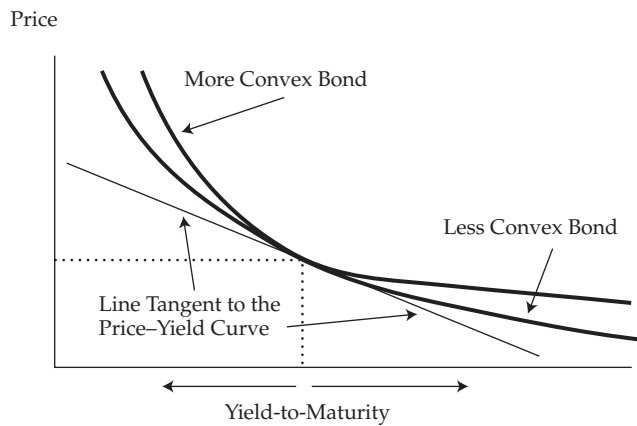
$$\text{ApproxCon} = \frac{101.250227 + 100.631781 - (2 \times 100.940423)}{(0.0005)^2 \times 100.940423} = 46.047$$

The money convexity is 46.047 times the market value of the position, HKD100,940,423. The convexity-adjusted loss given a 100 bp jump in the yield-to-maturity is HKD5,952,018.

$$\begin{aligned}& -[(6.1268 \times \text{HKD}100,940,423) \times 0.0100] + \\ & \left[\frac{1}{2} \times (46.047 \times \text{HKD}100,940,423) \times (0.0100)^2 \right] \\ & = -\text{HKD}6,184,418 + \text{HKD}232,400 \\ & = -\text{HKD}5,952,018\end{aligned}$$

The factors that lead to greater convexity are the same as for duration. A fixed-rate bond with a longer time-to-maturity, a lower coupon rate, and a lower yield-to-maturity has greater convexity than a bond with a shorter time-to-maturity, a higher coupon rate, and a higher yield-to-maturity. Another factor is the dispersion of cash flows, meaning the degree to which payments are spread out over time. If two bonds have the same duration, the one that has the greater dispersion of cash flows has the greater convexity. The positive attributes of greater convexity for an investor are shown in Exhibit 12.

Exhibit 12 The Positive Attributes of Greater Bond Convexity on a Traditional (Option-Free) Bond



The two bonds in Exhibit 12 are assumed to have the same price, yield-to-maturity, and modified duration. Therefore, they share the same line tangent to their price–yield curves. The benefit of greater convexity occurs when their yields-to-maturity change. For the same decrease in yield-to-maturity, the more convex bond *appreciates more* in price. And for the same increase in yield-to-maturity, the more convex bond *depreciates less* in price. The conclusion is that the more convex bond outperforms the less convex bond in both bull (rising price) and bear (falling price) markets. This conclusion assumes, however, that this positive attribute is not “priced into” the bond. To the extent that it is included, the more convex bond would have a higher price (and lower yield-to-maturity). That does not diminish the value of convexity. It only suggests that the investor has to pay for it. As economists say, “There is no such thing as a free lunch.”

EXAMPLE 14

The investment manager for a UK defined-benefit pension scheme is considering two bonds about to be issued by a large life insurance company. The first is a 30-year, 4% semiannual coupon payment bond. The second is a 100-year, 4% semiannual coupon payment “century” bond. Both bonds are expected to trade at par value at issuance.

Calculate the approximate modified duration and approximate convexity for each bond using a 5 bp increase and decrease in the annual yield-to-maturity. Retain accuracy to six decimals per 100 of par value.

Solution:

In the calculations, the yield per semiannual period goes up by 2.5 bps to 2.025% and down by 2.5 bps to 1.975%. The 30-year bond has an approximate modified duration of 17.381 and an approximate convexity of 420.80.

$$PV_+ = \frac{2}{(1.02025)^1} + \dots + \frac{102}{(1.02025)^{60}} = 99.136214$$

$$PV_- = \frac{2}{(1.01975)^1} + \dots + \frac{102}{(1.01975)^{60}} = 100.874306$$

$$\text{ApproxModDur} = \frac{100.874306 - 99.136214}{2 \times 0.0005 \times 100} = 17.381$$

$$\text{ApproxCon} = \frac{100.874306 + 99.136214 - (2 \times 100)}{(0.0005)^2 \times 100} = 420.80$$

The 100-year century bond has an approximate modified duration of 24.527 and an approximate convexity of 1,132.88.

$$PV_+ = \frac{2}{(1.02025)^1} + \dots + \frac{102}{(1.02025)^{200}} = 98.787829$$

$$PV_- = \frac{2}{(1.01975)^1} + \dots + \frac{102}{(1.01975)^{200}} = 101.240493$$

$$\text{ApproxModDur} = \frac{101.240493 - 98.787829}{2 \times 0.0005 \times 100} = 24.527$$

$$\text{ApproxCon} = \frac{101.240493 + 98.787829 - (2 \times 100)}{(0.0005)^2 \times 100} = 1,132.88$$

The century bond offers a higher modified duration—24.527 compared with 17.381—and a much greater degree of convexity—1,132.88 compared with 420.80.

In the same manner that the primary, or first-order, effect of a shift in the benchmark yield curve is measured by effective duration, the secondary, or second-order, effect is measured by **effective convexity**. The effective convexity of a bond is a *curve convexity* statistic that measures the secondary effect of a change in a benchmark yield curve. A pricing model is used to determine the new prices when the benchmark curve is shifted upward (PV_+) and downward (PV_-) by the same amount (ΔCurve). These changes are made holding other factors constant—for example, the credit spread. Then, Equation 17 is used to calculate the effective convexity (EffCon) given the initial price (PV_0).

$$\text{EffCon} = \frac{[(PV_-) + (PV_+)] - [2 \times (PV_0)]}{(\Delta\text{Curve})^2 \times (PV_0)} \quad (17)$$

This equation is very similar to Equation 14, for approximate *yield* convexity. The difference is that in Equation 14, the denominator includes the change in the yield-to-maturity squared, $(\Delta\text{Yield})^2$. Here, the denominator includes the change in the benchmark yield curve squared, $(\Delta\text{Curve})^2$.

Consider again the callable bond example in Section 3.2. It is assumed that an option-pricing model is used to generate these callable bond prices: $PV_0 = 101.060489$, $PV_+ = 99.050120$, $PV_- = 102.890738$, and $\Delta\text{Curve} = 0.0025$. The effective duration for the callable bond is 7.6006.

$$\text{EffDur} = \frac{102.890738 - 99.050120}{2 \times 0.0025 \times 101.060489} = 7.6006$$

Using these inputs in Equation 17, the effective convexity is -285.17 .

$$\text{EffCon} = \frac{102.890738 + 99.050120 - (2 \times 101.060489)}{(0.0025)^2 \times 101.060489} = -285.17$$

Negative convexity, which could be called “concavity,” is an important feature of callable bonds. Puttable bonds, on the other hand, always have positive convexity. As a second-order effect, effective convexity indicates the change in the first-order effect (i.e., effective duration) as the benchmark yield curve is changed. In Exhibit 8, as the benchmark yield goes down, the slope of the line tangent to the curve for the non-callable bond steepens, which indicates positive convexity. But the slope of the line tangent to the callable bond flattens as the benchmark yield goes down. Technically, it reaches an inflection point, which is when the effective convexity shifts from positive to negative.

In summary, when the benchmark yield is high and the value of the embedded call option is low, the callable and the non-callable bonds experience very similar effects from interest rate changes. They both have positive convexity. But as the benchmark yield is reduced, the curves diverge. At some point, the callable bond moves into the range of negative convexity, which indicates that the embedded call option has more value to the issuer and is more likely to be exercised. This situation limits the potential price appreciation of the bond arising from lower interest rates, whether because of a lower benchmark yield or a lower credit spread.

Another way to understand why a callable bond can have negative convexity is to rearrange Equation 17.

$$\text{EffCon} = \frac{[(PV_-) - (PV_0)] - [(PV_0) - (PV_+)]}{(\Delta\text{Curve})^2 \times (PV_0)}$$

In the numerator, the first bracketed expression is the increase in price when the benchmark yield curve is lowered. The second expression is the decrease in price when the benchmark yield curve is raised. On a non-callable bond, the increase is always larger than the decrease (in absolute value). This result is the “convexity effect” for the relationship between bond prices and yields-to-maturity. On a callable bond, the increase can be smaller than the decrease (in absolute value). That creates negative convexity, as illustrated in Exhibit 8.

INTEREST RATE RISK AND THE INVESTMENT HORIZON

4

This section explores the effect of yield volatility on the investment horizon, and on the interaction between the investment horizon, market price risk, and coupon reinvestment risk.

4.1 Yield Volatility

An important aspect in understanding the interest rate risk and return characteristics of an investment in a fixed-rate bond is the time horizon. This section considers a short-term horizon. A primary concern for the investor is the change in the price of the bond given a sudden (i.e., same-day) change in its yield-to-maturity. The accrued interest does not change, so the impact of the change in the yield is on the flat price of the bond. Section 4.2 considers a long-term horizon. The reinvestment of coupon interest then becomes a key factor in the investor's horizon yield.

Bond duration is the primary measure of risk arising from a change in the yield-to-maturity. Convexity is the secondary risk measure. In the discussion of the impact on the bond price, the phrase “for a *given* change in the yield-to-maturity” is used repeatedly. For instance, the given change in the yield-to-maturity could be 1 bp, 25 bps, or 100 bps. In comparing two bonds, it is assumed that the “given change” is the same for both securities. When the government bond par curve is shifted up or down by the same amount to calculate effective duration and effective convexity, the events are described as “parallel” yield curve shifts. Because yield curves are rarely (if ever) straight lines, this shift may also be described as a “shape-preserving” shift to the yield curve. The key assumption is that all yields-to-maturity under consideration rise or fall by the same amount across the curve.

Although the assumption of a parallel shift in the yield curve is common in fixed-income analysis, it is not always realistic. In reality, the shape of the yield curve changes based on factors affecting the supply and demand of shorter-term versus longer-term securities. In fact, the term structure of bond yields (also called the “term structure of interest rates”) is typically upward sloping. However, the **term structure of yield volatility** may have a different shape depending on a number of factors. The term structure of yield volatility is the relationship between the volatility of bond yields-to-maturity and times-to-maturity.

For example, a central bank engaging in expansionary monetary policy might cause the yield curve to steepen by reducing short-term interest rates. But this policy might cause greater *volatility* in short-term bond yields-to-maturity than in longer-term bonds, resulting in a downward-sloping term structure of yield volatility. Longer-term bond yields are mostly determined by future inflation and economic growth expectations. Those expectations often tend to be less volatile.

The importance of yield volatility in measuring interest rate risk is that bond price changes are products of two factors: (1) the impact *per* basis-point change in the yield-to-maturity and (2) the *number* of basis points in the yield-to-maturity change. The first factor is duration or the combination of duration and convexity, and the second factor is the yield volatility. For example, consider a 5-year bond with a modified duration of 4.5 and a 30-year bond with a modified duration of 18.0. Clearly, for a *given* change in yield-to-maturity, the 30-year bond represents more much more interest rate risk to an investor who has a short-term horizon. In fact, the 30-year bond appears to have *four times* the risk given the ratio of the modified durations. But that assumption neglects the possibility that the 30-year bond might have half the yield volatility of the 5-year bond.

Equation 13, restated here, summarizes the two factors.

$$\% \Delta PV^{Full} \approx (-\text{AnnModDur} \times \Delta \text{Yield}) + \left[\frac{1}{2} \times \text{AnnConvexity} \times (\Delta \text{Yield})^2 \right]$$

The estimated percentage change in the bond price depends on the modified duration and convexity as well as on the yield-to-maturity change. Parallel shifts between two bond yields and along a benchmark yield curve are common assumptions in fixed-income analysis. However, an analyst must be aware that non-parallel shifts frequently occur in practice.

EXAMPLE 15

A fixed-income analyst is asked to rank three bonds in terms of interest rate risk. Interest rate risk here means the potential price decrease on a percentage basis given a sudden change in financial market conditions. The increases in the yields-to-maturity represent the “worst case” for the scenario being considered.

Bond	Modified Duration	Convexity	ΔYield
A	3.72	12.1	25 bps
B	5.81	40.7	15 bps
C	12.39	158.0	10 bps

The modified duration and convexity statistics are annualized. ΔYield is the increase in the annual yield-to-maturity. Rank the bonds in terms of interest rate risk.

Solution:

Calculate the estimated percentage price change for each bond:

Bond A:

$$(-3.72 \times 0.0025) + \left[\frac{1}{2} \times 12.1 \times (0.0025)^2 \right] = -0.009262$$

Bond B:

$$(-5.81 \times 0.0015) + \left[\frac{1}{2} \times 40.7 \times (0.0015)^2 \right] = -0.008669$$

Bond C:

$$(-12.39 \times 0.0010) + \left[\frac{1}{2} \times 158.0 \times (0.0010)^2 \right] = -0.012311$$

Based on these assumed changes in the yield-to-maturity and the modified duration and convexity risk measures, Bond C has the highest degree of interest rate risk (a potential loss of 1.2311%), followed by Bond A (a potential loss of 0.9262%) and Bond B (a potential loss of 0.8669%).

4.2 Investment Horizon, Macaulay Duration, and Interest Rate Risk

Although short-term interest rate risk is a concern to some investors, other investors have a long-term horizon. Day-to-day changes in bond prices cause *unrealized* capital gains and losses. Those unrealized gains and losses might need to be accounted for in financial statements. This section considers a long-term investor concerned only with the total return over the investment horizon. Therefore, interest rate risk is important to this investor. The investor faces coupon reinvestment risk as well as market price risk if the bond needs to be sold prior to maturity.

Section 2 included examples of interest rate risk using a 10-year, 8% annual coupon payment bond that is priced at 85.503075 per 100 of par value. The bond's yield-to-maturity is 10.40%. A key result in Example 3 is that an investor with a 10-year time horizon is concerned only with coupon reinvestment risk. This situation assumes, of course, that the issuer makes all of the coupon and principal payments as scheduled. The buy-and-hold investor has a higher total return if interest rates rise (see Example 3) and a lower total return if rates fall (see Example 5). The investor in Examples 4 and

6 has a four-year horizon. This investor faces market price risk in addition to coupon reinvestment risk. In fact, the market price risk dominates because this investor has a higher total return if interest rates fall (see Example 6) and a lower return if rates rise (see Example 4).

Now, consider a third investor who has a seven-year time horizon. If interest rates remain at 10.40%, the future value of reinvested coupon interest is 76.835787 per 100 of par value.

$$\begin{aligned} & \left[8 \times (1.1040)^6 \right] + \left[8 \times (1.1040)^5 \right] + \left[8 \times (1.1040)^4 \right] + \left[8 \times (1.1040)^3 \right] + \\ & \left[8 \times (1.1040)^2 \right] + \left[8 \times (1.1040)^1 \right] + 8 = 76.835787 \end{aligned}$$

The bond is sold for a price of 94.073336, assuming that the bond stays on the constant-yield price trajectory and continues to be “pulled to par.”

$$\frac{8}{(1.1040)^1} + \frac{8}{(1.1040)^2} + \frac{108}{(1.1040)^3} = 94.073336$$

The total return is 170.909123 (= 76.835787 + 94.073336) per 100 of par value, and the horizon yield, as expected, is 10.40%.

$$85.503075 = \frac{170.909123}{(1+r)^7}, \quad r = 0.1040$$

Following Examples 3 and 4, assume that the yield-to-maturity on the bond rises to 11.40%. Also, coupon interest is now reinvested each year at 11.40%. The future value of reinvested coupons becomes 79.235183 per 100 of par value.

$$\begin{aligned} & \left[8 \times (1.1140)^6 \right] + \left[8 \times (1.1140)^5 \right] + \left[8 \times (1.1140)^4 \right] + \left[8 \times (1.1140)^3 \right] + \\ & \left[8 \times (1.1140)^2 \right] + \left[8 \times (1.1140)^1 \right] + 8 = 79.235183 \end{aligned}$$

After receiving the seventh coupon payment, the bond is sold. There is a capital loss because the price, although much higher than at purchase, is below the constant-yield price trajectory.

$$\frac{8}{(1.1140)^1} + \frac{8}{(1.1140)^2} + \frac{108}{(1.1140)^3} = 91.748833$$

The total return is 170.984016 (= 79.235183 + 91.748833) per 100 of par value and the holding-period rate of return is 10.407%.

$$85.503075 = \frac{170.984016}{(1+r)^7}, \quad r = 0.10407$$

Following Examples 5 and 6, assume that the coupon reinvestment rates and the bond yield-to-maturity fall to 9.40%. The future value of reinvested coupons is 74.512177.

$$\begin{aligned} & \left[8 + (1.0940)^6 \right] + \left[8 + (1.0940)^5 \right] + \left[8 + (1.0940)^4 \right] + \left[8 + (1.0940)^3 \right] + \\ & \left[8 + (1.0940)^2 \right] + \left[8 + (1.0940)^1 \right] + 8 = 74.512177 \end{aligned}$$

The bond is sold at a capital gain because the price is above the constant-yield price trajectory.

$$\frac{8}{(1.0940)^1} + \frac{8}{(1.0940)^2} + \frac{108}{(1.0940)^3} = 96.481299$$

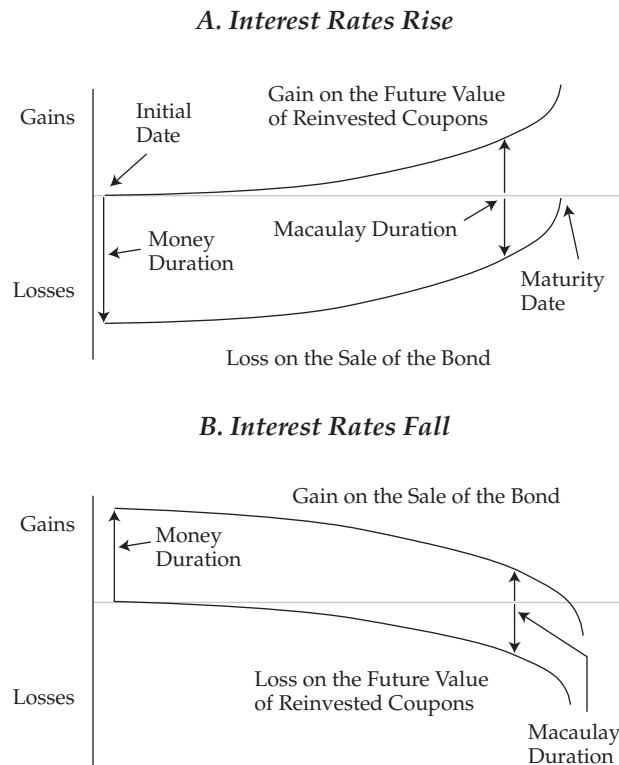
The total return is 170.993476 (= 74.512177 + 96.481299) per 100 of par value, and the horizon yield is 10.408%.

$$85.503075 = \frac{170.993476}{(1+r)^7}, \quad r = 0.10408$$

These results are summarized in the following table to reveal the remarkable outcome: The total returns and horizon yields are virtually the same. The investor with the 7-year horizon, unlike those having a 4- or 10-year horizon, achieves the same holding-period rate of return whether interest rates rise, fall, or remain the same. Note that the terms “horizon yield” and “holding-period rate of return” are used interchangeably in this reading. Sometimes “horizon yield” refers to yields on bonds that need to be sold at the end of the investor’s holding period.

Interest Rate	Future Value of Reinvested Coupon	Sale Price	Total Return	Horizon Yield
9.40%	74.512177	96.481299	170.993476	10.408%
10.40%	76.835787	94.073336	170.909123	10.400%
11.40%	79.235183	91.748833	170.984016	10.407%

This particular bond was chosen as an example to demonstrate an important property of Macaulay duration: For a particular assumption about yield volatility, Macaulay duration indicates the investment horizon for which coupon reinvestment risk and market price risk offset each other. In Section 3.1, the Macaulay duration of this 10-year, 8% annual payment bond is calculated to be 7.0029 years. This is one of the applications for duration in which “years” is meaningful and in which Macaulay duration is used rather than modified duration. The particular assumption about yield volatility is that there is a one-time “parallel” shift in the yield curve that occurs before the next coupon payment date. Exhibit 13 illustrates this property of bond duration, assuming that the bond is initially priced at par value.

Exhibit 13 Interest Rate Risk, Macaulay Duration, and the Investment Horizon


As demonstrated in Panel A of Exhibit 13, when interest rates rise, duration measures the immediate drop in value. In particular, the money duration indicates the change in price. Then as time passes, the bond price is “pulled to par.” The gain in the future value of reinvested coupons starts small but builds over time as more coupons are received. The curve indicates the additional future value of reinvested coupons because of the higher interest rate. At some point in the lifetime of the bond, those two effects offset each other and the gain on reinvested coupons is equal to the loss on the sale of the bond. That point in time is the Macaulay duration statistic.

The same pattern is displayed in the Panel B when interest rates fall, which leads to a reduction in the bond yield and the coupon reinvestment rate. There is an immediate jump in the bond price, as measured by the money duration, but then the “pulled to par” effect brings the price down as time passes. The impact from reinvesting at a lower rate starts small but then becomes more significant over time. The loss on reinvested coupons is with respect to the future value if interest rates had not fallen. Once again, the bond’s Macaulay duration indicates the point in time when the two effects offset each other and the gain on the sale of the bond matches the loss on coupon reinvestment.

The earlier numerical example and Exhibit 13 allow for a statement of the general relationships among interest rate risk, the Macaulay duration, and the investment horizon.

- 1 When the investment horizon is greater than the Macaulay duration of a bond, coupon reinvestment risk dominates market price risk. The investor’s risk is to lower interest rates.

- 2 When the investment horizon is equal to the Macaulay duration of a bond, coupon reinvestment risk offsets market price risk.
- 3 When the investment horizon is less than the Macaulay duration of the bond, market price risk dominates coupon reinvestment risk. The investor's risk is to higher interest rates.

In the numerical example, the Macaulay duration of the bond is 7.0 years. Statement 1 reflects the investor with the 10-year horizon; Statement 2, the investor with the 7-year horizon; and Statement 3, the investor with the 4-year horizon.

The difference between the Macaulay duration of a bond and the investment horizon is called the **duration gap**. The duration gap is a bond's Macaulay duration minus the investment horizon. The investor with the 10-year horizon has a negative duration gap and currently is at risk of lower rates. The investor with the 7-year horizon has a duration gap of zero and currently is hedged against interest rate risk. The investor with the 4-year horizon has a positive duration gap and currently is at risk of higher rates. The word "currently" is important because interest rate risk is connected to an *immediate* change in the bond's yield-to-maturity and the coupon reinvestment rates. As time passes, the investment horizon is reduced and the Macaulay duration of the bond also changes. Therefore, the duration gap changes as well.

EXAMPLE 16

An investor plans to retire in 10 years. As part of the retirement portfolio, the investor buys a newly issued, 12-year, 8% annual coupon payment bond. The bond is purchased at par value, so its yield-to-maturity is 8.00% stated as an effective annual rate.

- 1 Calculate the approximate Macaulay duration for the bond, using a 1 bp increase and decrease in the yield-to-maturity and calculating the new prices per 100 of par value to six decimal places.
- 2 Calculate the duration gap at the time of purchase.
- 3 Does this bond at purchase entail the risk of higher or lower interest rates? Interest rate risk here means an immediate, one-time, parallel yield curve shift.

Solution to 1:

The approximate modified duration of the bond is 7.5361. $PV_0 = 100$, $PV_+ = 99.924678$, and $PV_- = 100.075400$.

$$PV_+ = \frac{8}{(1.0801)^1} + \dots + \frac{108}{(1.0801)^{12}} = 99.924678$$

$$PV_- = \frac{8}{(1.0799)^1} + \dots + \frac{108}{(1.0799)^{12}} = 100.075400$$

$$\text{ApproxModDur} = \frac{100.075400 - 99.924678}{2 \times 0.0001 \times 100} = 7.5361$$

The approximate Macaulay duration is 8.1390 ($= 7.5361 \times 1.08$).

Solution to 2:

Given an investment horizon of 10 years, the duration gap for this bond at purchase is negative: $8.1390 - 10 = -1.8610$.

Solution to 3:

A negative duration gap entails the risk of lower interest rates. To be precise, the risk is an immediate, one-time, parallel, downward yield curve shift because coupon reinvestment risk dominates market price risk. The loss from reinvesting coupons at a rate lower than 8% is larger than the gain from selling the bond at a price above the constant-yield price trajectory.

5**CREDIT AND LIQUIDITY RISK**

The focus of this reading is to demonstrate how bond duration and convexity estimate the bond price change, either in percentage terms or in units of currency, given an assumed yield-to-maturity change. This section addresses the *source* of the change in the yield-to-maturity. In general, the yield-to-maturity on a corporate bond is composed of a government *benchmark* yield and a *spread* over that benchmark. A change in the bond's yield-to-maturity can originate in either component or a combination of the two.

The key point is that for a traditional (option-free) fixed-rate bond, the same duration and convexity statistics apply for a change in the benchmark yield as for a change in the spread. The “building blocks” approach from “Introduction to Fixed-Income Valuation” shows that these yield-to-maturity changes can be broken down further. A change in the benchmark yield can arise from a change in either the expected inflation rate or the expected real rate of interest. A change in the spread can arise from a change in the credit risk of the issuer or in the liquidity of the bond. Therefore, for a fixed-rate bond, the “inflation duration,” the “real rate duration,” the “credit duration,” and the “liquidity duration” are all the same number. The inflation duration would indicate the change in the bond price if expected inflation were to change by a certain amount. In the same manner, the real rate duration would indicate the bond price change if the real rate were to go up or down. The credit duration and liquidity duration would indicate the price sensitivity that would arise from changes in those building blocks in the yield-to-maturity. A bond with a modified duration of 5.00 and a convexity of 32.00 will appreciate in value by about 1.26% if its yield-to-maturity goes down by 25 bps: $(-5.00 \times -0.0025) + [1/2 \times 32.00 \times (-0.0025)^2] = +0.0126$, regardless of the *source* of the yield-to-maturity change.

Suppose that the yield-to-maturity on a corporate bond is 6.00%. If the benchmark yield is 4.25%, the spread is 1.75%. An analyst believes that credit risk makes up 1.25% of the spread and liquidity risk, the remaining 0.50%. Credit risk includes the probability of default as well as the recovery of assets if default does occur. A credit rating downgrade or an adverse change in the ratings outlook for a borrower reflects a higher risk of default. Liquidity risk refers to the transaction costs associated with selling a bond. In general, a bond with greater frequency of trading and a higher volume of trading provides fixed-income investors with more opportunity to purchase or sell the security and thus has less liquidity risk. In practice, there is a difference between the *bid* (or purchase) and the *offer* (or sale) price. This difference depends on the type of bond, the size of the transaction, and the time of execution, among other factors. For instance, government bonds often trade at just a few basis points between the purchase and sale prices. More thinly traded corporate bonds can have a much wider difference between the bid and offer prices.

The problem for a fixed-income analyst is that it is rare for the changes in the components of the overall yield-to-maturity to occur in isolation. In practice, the analyst is concerned with the *interaction* between changes in benchmark yields and spreads, between changes in expected inflation and the expected real rate, and between changes in credit and liquidity risk. For example, during a financial crisis, a “flight

to quality” can cause government benchmark yields to fall as credit spreads widen. An unexpected credit downgrade on a corporate bond can result in greater credit as well as liquidity risk.

EXAMPLE 17

The (flat) price on a fixed-rate corporate bond falls one day from 92.25 to 91.25 per 100 of par value because of poor earnings and an unexpected ratings downgrade of the issuer. The (annual) modified duration for the bond is 7.24. Which of the following is *closest* to the estimated change in the credit spread on the corporate bond, assuming benchmark yields are unchanged?

- A 15 bps
- B 100 bps
- C 108 bps

Solution:

Given that the price falls from 92.25 to 91.25, the percentage price decrease is 1.084%.

$$\frac{91.25 - 92.25}{92.25} = -0.01084$$

Given an annual modified duration of 7.24, the change in the yield-to-maturity is 14.97 bps.

$$-0.01084 \approx -7.24 \times \Delta\text{Yield}, \Delta\text{Yield} = 0.001497$$

Therefore, the answer is A. The change in price reflects a credit spread increase on the bond of about 15 bps.

SUMMARY

This reading covers the risk and return characteristics of fixed-rate bonds. The focus is on the widely used measures of interest rate risk—duration and convexity. These statistics are used extensively in fixed-income analysis. The following are the main points made in the reading:

- The three sources of return on a fixed-rate bond purchased at par value are (1) receipt of the promised coupon and principal payments on the scheduled dates, (2) reinvestment of coupon payments, and (3) potential capital gains, as well as losses, on the sale of the bond prior to maturity.
- For a bond purchased at a discount or premium, the rate of return also includes the effect of the price being “pulled to par” as maturity nears, assuming no default.
- The total return is the future value of reinvested coupon interest payments and the sale price (or redemption of principal if the bond is held to maturity).
- The horizon yield (or holding period rate of return) is the internal rate of return between the total return and purchase price of the bond.
- Coupon reinvestment risk increases with a higher coupon rate and a longer reinvestment time period.

- Capital gains and losses are measured from the carrying value of the bond and not from the purchase price. The carrying value includes the amortization of the discount or premium if the bond is purchased at a price below or above par value. The carrying value is any point on the constant-yield price trajectory.
- Interest income on a bond is the return associated with the passage of time. Capital gains and losses are the returns associated with a change in the value of a bond as indicated by a change in the yield-to-maturity.
- The two types of interest rate risk on a fixed-rate bond are coupon reinvestment risk and market price risk. These risks offset each other to a certain extent. An investor gains from higher rates on reinvested coupons but loses if the bond is sold at a capital loss because the price is below the constant-yield price trajectory. An investor loses from lower rates on reinvested coupon but gains if the bond is sold at a capital gain because the price is above the constant-yield price trajectory.
- Market price risk dominates coupon reinvestment risk when the investor has a short-term horizon (relative to the time-to-maturity on the bond).
- Coupon reinvestment risk dominates market price risk when the investor has a long-term horizon (relative to the time-to-maturity)—for instance, a buy-and-hold investor.
- Bond duration, in general, measures the sensitivity of the full price (including accrued interest) to a change in interest rates.
- Yield duration statistics measuring the sensitivity of a bond's full price to the bond's own yield-to-maturity include the Macaulay duration, modified duration, money duration, and price value of a basis point.
- Curve duration statistics measuring the sensitivity of a bond's full price to the benchmark yield curve are usually called "effective durations."
- Macaulay duration is the weighted average of the time to receipt of coupon interest and principal payments, in which the weights are the shares of the full price corresponding to each payment. This statistic is annualized by dividing by the periodicity (number of coupon payments or compounding periods in a year).
- Modified duration provides a linear estimate of the percentage price change for a bond given a change in its yield-to-maturity.
- Approximate modified duration approaches modified duration as the change in the yield-to-maturity approaches zero.
- Effective duration is very similar to approximate modified duration. The difference is that approximate modified duration is a yield duration statistic that measures interest rate risk in terms of a change in the bond's own yield-to-maturity, whereas effective duration is a curve duration statistic that measures interest rate risk assuming a parallel shift in the benchmark yield curve.
- Key rate duration is a measure of a bond's sensitivity to a change in the benchmark yield curve at specific maturity segments. Key rate durations can be used to measure a bond's sensitivity to changes in the shape of the yield curve.
- Bonds with an embedded option do not have a meaningful internal rate of return because future cash flows are contingent on interest rates. Therefore, effective duration is the appropriate interest rate risk measure, not modified duration.
- The effective duration of a traditional (option-free) fixed-rate bond is its sensitivity to the benchmark yield curve, which can differ from its sensitivity to its own yield-to-maturity. Therefore, modified duration and effective duration on a traditional (option-free) fixed-rate bond are not necessarily equal.

- During a coupon period, Macaulay and modified durations decline smoothly in a “saw-tooth” pattern, assuming the yield-to-maturity is constant. When the coupon payment is made, the durations jump upward.
- Macaulay and modified durations are inversely related to the coupon rate and the yield-to-maturity.
- Time-to-maturity and Macaulay and modified durations are *usually* positively related. They are *always* positively related on bonds priced at par or at a premium above par value. They are *usually* positively related on bonds priced at a discount below par value. The exception is on long-term, low-coupon bonds, on which it is possible to have a lower duration than on an otherwise comparable shorter-term bond.
- The presence of an embedded call option reduces a bond’s effective duration compared with that of an otherwise comparable non-callable bond. The reduction in the effective duration is greater when interest rates are low and the issuer is more likely to exercise the call option.
- The presence of an embedded put option reduces a bond’s effective duration compared with that of an otherwise comparable non-puttable bond. The reduction in the effective duration is greater when interest rates are high and the investor is more likely to exercise the put option.
- The duration of a bond portfolio can be calculated in two ways: (1) the weighted average of the time to receipt of *aggregate* cash flows and (2) the weighted average of the durations of individual bonds that compose the portfolio.
- The first method to calculate portfolio duration is based on the cash flow yield, which is the internal rate of return on the aggregate cash flows. It cannot be used for bonds with embedded options or for floating-rate notes.
- The second method is simpler to use and quite accurate when the yield curve is relatively flat. Its main limitation is that it assumes a parallel shift in the yield curve in that the yields on all bonds in the portfolio change by the same amount.
- Money duration is a measure of the price change in terms of units of the currency in which the bond is denominated.
- The price value of a basis point (PVBP) is an estimate of the change in the full price of a bond given a 1 bp change in the yield-to-maturity.
- Modified duration is the primary, or first-order, effect on a bond’s percentage price change given a change in the yield-to-maturity. Convexity is the secondary, or second-order, effect. It indicates the change in the modified duration as the yield-to-maturity changes.
- Money convexity is convexity times the full price of the bond. Combined with money duration, money convexity estimates the change in the full price of a bond in units of currency given a change in the yield-to-maturity.
- Convexity is a positive attribute for a bond. Other things being equal, a more convex bond appreciates in price more than a less convex bond when yields fall and depreciates less when yields rise.
- Effective convexity is the second-order effect on a bond price given a change in the benchmark yield curve. It is similar to approximate convexity. The difference is that approximate convexity is based on a yield-to-maturity change and effective convexity is based on a benchmark yield curve change.
- Callable bonds have negative effective convexity when interest rates are low. The increase in price when the benchmark yield is reduced is less in absolute value than the decrease in price when the benchmark yield is raised.

- The change in a bond price is the product of (1) the impact per basis-point change in the yield-to-maturity and (2) the number of basis points in the yield change. The first factor is estimated by duration and convexity. The second factor depends on yield volatility.
- The investment horizon is essential in measuring the interest rate risk on a fixed-rate bond.
- For a particular assumption about yield volatility, the Macaulay duration indicates the investment horizon for which coupon reinvestment risk and market price risk offset each other. The assumption is a one-time parallel shift to the yield curve in which the yield-to-maturity and coupon reinvestment rates change by the same amount in the same direction.
- When the investment horizon is greater than the Macaulay duration of the bond, coupon reinvestment risk dominates price risk. The investor's risk is to lower interest rates. The duration gap is negative.
- When the investment horizon is equal to the Macaulay duration of the bond, coupon reinvestment risk offsets price risk. The duration gap is zero.
- When the investment horizon is less than the Macaulay duration of the bond, price risk dominates coupon reinvestment risk. The investor's risk is to higher interest rates. The duration gap is positive.
- Credit risk involves the probability of default and degree of recovery if default occurs, whereas liquidity risk refers to the transaction costs associated with selling a bond.
- For a traditional (option-free) fixed-rate bond, the same duration and convexity statistics apply if a change occurs in the benchmark yield or a change occurs in the spread. The change in the spread can result from a change in credit risk or liquidity risk.
- In practice, there often is interaction between changes in benchmark yields and in the spread over the benchmark.

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

- 1 A “buy-and-hold” investor purchases a fixed-rate bond at a discount and holds the security until it matures. Which of the following sources of return is *least likely* to contribute to the investor’s total return over the investment horizon, assuming all payments are made as scheduled?
 - A Capital gain
 - B Principal payment
 - C Reinvestment of coupon payments
- 2 Which of the following sources of return is *most likely* exposed to interest rate risk for an investor of a fixed-rate bond who holds the bond until maturity?
 - A Capital gain or loss
 - B Redemption of principal
 - C Reinvestment of coupon payments
- 3 An investor purchases a bond at a price above par value. Two years later, the investor sells the bond. The resulting capital gain or loss is measured by comparing the price at which the bond is sold to the:
 - A carrying value.
 - B original purchase price.
 - C original purchase price value plus the amortized amount of the premium.

The following information relates to Problems 4–6

An investor purchases a nine-year, 7% annual coupon payment bond at a price equal to par value. After the bond is purchased and before the first coupon is received, interest rates increase to 8%. The investor sells the bond after five years. Assume that interest rates remain unchanged at 8% over the five-year holding period.

- 4 Per 100 of par value, the future value of the reinvested coupon payments at the end of the holding period is *closest* to:
 - A 35.00.
 - B 40.26.
 - C 41.07.
- 5 The capital gain/loss per 100 of par value resulting from the sale of the bond at the end of the five-year holding period is *closest* to a:
 - A loss of 8.45.
 - B loss of 3.31.
 - C gain of 2.75.
- 6 Assuming that all coupons are reinvested over the holding period, the investor’s five-year horizon yield is *closest* to:
 - A 5.66%.

- B 6.62%.
- C 7.12%.

-
- 7 An investor buys a three-year bond with a 5% coupon rate paid annually. The bond, with a yield-to-maturity of 3%, is purchased at a price of 105.657223 per 100 of par value. Assuming a 5-basis point change in yield-to-maturity, the bond's approximate modified duration is *closest* to:
- A 2.78.
 - B 2.86.
 - C 5.56.
- 8 Which of the following statements about duration is correct? A bond's:
- A effective duration is a measure of yield duration.
 - B modified duration is a measure of curve duration.
 - C modified duration cannot be larger than its Macaulay duration.
- 9 An investor buys a 6% annual payment bond with three years to maturity. The bond has a yield-to-maturity of 8% and is currently priced at 94.845806 per 100 of par. The bond's Macaulay duration is *closest* to:
- A 2.62.
 - B 2.78.
 - C 2.83.
- 10 The interest rate risk of a fixed-rate bond with an embedded call option is *best* measured by:
- A effective duration.
 - B modified duration.
 - C Macaulay duration.
- 11 Which of the following is *most* appropriate for measuring a bond's sensitivity to shaping risk?
- A key rate duration
 - B effective duration
 - C modified duration
- 12 A Canadian pension fund manager seeks to measure the sensitivity of her pension liabilities to market interest rate changes. The manager determines the present value of the liabilities under three interest rate scenarios: a base rate of 7%, a 100 basis point increase in rates up to 8%, and a 100 basis point drop in rates down to 6%. The results of the manager's analysis are presented below:

Interest Rate Assumption	Present Value of Liabilities
6%	CAD 510.1 million
7%	CAD 455.4 million
8%	CAD 373.6 million

The effective duration of the pension fund's liabilities is *closest* to:

- A 1.49.
 - B 14.99.
 - C 29.97.
- 13 Which of the following statements about Macaulay duration is correct?

- A A bond's coupon rate and Macaulay duration are positively related.
- B A bond's Macaulay duration is inversely related to its yield-to-maturity.
- C The Macaulay duration of a zero-coupon bond is less than its time-to-maturity.
- 14 Assuming no change in the credit risk of a bond, the presence of an embedded put option:
- A reduces the effective duration of the bond.
- B increases the effective duration of the bond.
- C does not change the effective duration of the bond.
- 15 A bond portfolio consists of the following three fixed-rate bonds. Assume annual coupon payments and no accrued interest on the bonds. Prices are per 100 of par value.

Bond	Maturity	Market Value	Price	Coupon	Yield-to-Maturity	Modified Duration
A	6 years	170,000	85.0000	2.00%	4.95%	5.42
B	10 years	120,000	80.0000	2.40%	4.99%	8.44
C	15 years	100,000	100.0000	5.00%	5.00%	10.38

- The bond portfolio's modified duration is *closest* to:
- A 7.62.
- B 8.08.
- C 8.20.
- 16 A limitation of calculating a bond portfolio's duration as the weighted average of the yield durations of the individual bonds that compose the portfolio is that it:
- A assumes a parallel shift to the yield curve.
- B is less accurate when the yield curve is less steeply sloped.
- C is not applicable to portfolios that have bonds with embedded options.
- 17 Using the information below, which bond has the *greatest* money duration per 100 of par value assuming annual coupon payments and no accrued interest?

Bond	Time-to-Maturity	Price Per 100 of Par Value	Coupon Rate	Yield-to-Maturity	Modified Duration
A	6 years	85.00	2.00%	4.95%	5.42
B	10 years	80.00	2.40%	4.99%	8.44
C	9 years	85.78	3.00%	5.00%	7.54

- A Bond A
- B Bond B
- C Bond C
- 18 A bond with exactly nine years remaining until maturity offers a 3% coupon rate with annual coupons. The bond, with a yield-to-maturity of 5%, is priced at 85.784357 per 100 of par value. The estimated price value of a basis point for the bond is *closest* to:
- A 0.0086.
- B 0.0648.
- C 0.1295.

- 19 The “second-order” effect on a bond’s percentage price change given a change in yield-to-maturity can be *best* described as:
- A duration.
 - B convexity.
 - C yield volatility.
- 20 A bond is currently trading for 98.722 per 100 of par value. If the bond’s yield-to-maturity (YTM) rises by 10 basis points, the bond’s full price is expected to fall to 98.669. If the bond’s YTM decreases by 10 basis points, the bond’s full price is expected to increase to 98.782. The bond’s approximate convexity is *closest* to:
- A 0.071.
 - B 70.906.
 - C 1,144.628.
- 21 A bond has an annual modified duration of 7.020 and annual convexity of 65.180. If the bond’s yield-to-maturity decreases by 25 basis points, the expected percentage price change is *closest* to:
- A 1.73%.
 - B 1.76%.
 - C 1.78%.
- 22 A bond has an annual modified duration of 7.140 and annual convexity of 66.200. The bond’s yield-to-maturity is expected to increase by 50 basis points. The expected percentage price change is *closest* to:
- A –3.40%.
 - B –3.49%.
 - C –3.57%.
- 23 Which of the following statements relating to yield volatility is *most* accurate? If the term structure of yield volatility is downward sloping, then:
- A short-term rates are higher than long-term rates.
 - B long-term yields are more stable than short-term yields.
 - C short-term bonds will always experience greater price fluctuation than long-term bonds.
- 24 The holding period for a bond at which the coupon reinvestment risk offsets the market price risk is *best* approximated by:
- A duration gap.
 - B modified duration.
 - C Macaulay duration.
- 25 When the investor’s investment horizon is less than the Macaulay duration of the bond she owns:
- A the investor is hedged against interest rate risk.
 - B reinvestment risk dominates, and the investor is at risk of lower rates.
 - C market price risk dominates, and the investor is at risk of higher rates.
- 26 An investor purchases an annual coupon bond with a 6% coupon rate and exactly 20 years remaining until maturity at a price equal to par value. The investor’s investment horizon is eight years. The approximate modified duration of the bond is 11.470 years. The duration gap at the time of purchase is *closest* to:
- A –7.842.

- B 3.470.
 - C 4.158.
- 27 A manufacturing company receives a ratings upgrade and the price increases on its fixed-rate bond. The price increase was *most likely* caused by a(n):
- A decrease in the bond's credit spread.
 - B increase in the bond's liquidity spread.
 - C increase of the bond's underlying benchmark rate.

SOLUTIONS

- 1 A is correct. A capital gain is least likely to contribute to the investor's total return. There is no capital gain (or loss) because the bond is held to maturity. The carrying value of the bond at maturity is par value, the same as the redemption amount. When a fixed-rate bond is held to its maturity, the investor receives the principal payment at maturity. This principal payment is a source of return for the investor. A fixed-rate bond pays periodic coupon payments, and the reinvestment of these coupon payments is a source of return for the investor. The investor's total return is the redemption of principal at maturity and the sum of the reinvested coupons.
- 2 C is correct. Because the fixed-rate bond is held to maturity (a "buy-and-hold" investor), interest rate risk arises entirely from changes in coupon reinvestment rates. Higher interest rates increase income from reinvestment of coupon payments, and lower rates decrease income from coupon reinvestment. There will not be a capital gain or loss because the bond is held until maturity. The carrying value at the maturity date is par value, the same as the redemption amount. The redemption of principal does not expose the investor to interest rate risk. The risk to a bond's principal is credit risk.
- 3 A is correct. Capital gains (losses) arise if a bond is sold at a price above (below) its constant-yield price trajectory. A point on the trajectory represents the carrying value of the bond at that time. That is, the capital gain/loss is measured from the bond's carrying value, the point on the constant-yield price trajectory, and not from the original purchase price. The carrying value is the original purchase price plus the amortized amount of the discount if the bond is purchased at a price below par value. If the bond is purchased at a price above par value, the carrying value is the original purchase price minus (not plus) the amortized amount of the premium. The amortized amount for each year is the change in the price between two points on the trajectory.
- 4 C is correct. The future value of reinvested cash flows at 8% after five years is closest to 41.07 per 100 of par value.

$$\left[7 \times (1.08)^4\right] + \left[7 \times (1.08)^3\right] + \left[7 \times (1.08)^2\right] + \left[7 \times (1.08)^1\right] + 7 = 41.0662$$

The 6.07 difference between the sum of the coupon payments over the five-year holding period (35) and the future value of the reinvested coupons (41.07) represents the "interest-on-interest" gain from compounding.

- 5 B is correct. The capital loss is closest to 3.31 per 100 of par value. After five years, the bond has four years remaining until maturity and the sale price of the bond is 96.69, calculated as:

$$\frac{7}{(1.08)^1} + \frac{7}{(1.08)^2} + \frac{7}{(1.08)^3} + \frac{107}{(1.08)^4} = 96.69$$

The investor purchased the bond at a price equal to par value (100). Because the bond was purchased at a price equal to its par value, the carrying value is par value. Therefore, the investor experienced a capital loss of $96.69 - 100 = -3.31$.

- 6 B is correct. The investor's five-year horizon yield is closest to 6.62%. After five years, the sale price of the bond is 96.69 (from problem 5) and the future value of reinvested cash flows at 8% is 41.0662 (from problem 4) per 100 of par value. The total return is 137.76 (= 41.07 + 96.69), resulting in a realized five-year horizon yield of 6.62%:

$$100.00 = \frac{137.76}{(1+r)^5}, \quad r = 0.0662$$

- 7 A is correct. The bond's approximate modified duration is closest to 2.78. Approximate modified duration is calculated as:

$$\text{ApproxModDur} = \frac{(PV_-) - (PV_+)}{2 \times (\Delta\text{Yield}) \times (PV_0)}$$

Lower yield-to-maturity by 5 bps to 2.95%:

$$PV_- = \frac{5}{(1+0.0295)^1} + \frac{5}{(1+0.0295)^2} + \frac{5+100}{(1+0.0295)^3} = 105.804232$$

Increase yield-to-maturity by 5 bps to 3.05%:

$$PV_+ = \frac{5}{(1+0.0305)^1} + \frac{5}{(1+0.0305)^2} + \frac{5+100}{(1+0.0305)^3} = 105.510494$$

$$PV_0 = 105.657223, \quad \Delta\text{Yield} = 0.0005$$

$$\text{ApproxModDur} = \frac{105.804232 - 105.510494}{2 \times 0.0005 \times 105.657223} = 2.78$$

- 8 C is correct. A bond's modified duration cannot be larger than its Macaulay duration. The formula for modified duration is:

$$\text{ModDur} = \frac{\text{MacDur}}{1+r}$$

where r is the bond's yield-to-maturity per period. A bond's yield-to-maturity has an effective lower bound of 0, and thus the denominator $1+r$ term has a lower bound of 1. Therefore, ModDur will typically be less than MacDur.

Effective duration is a measure of curve duration. Modified duration is a measure of yield duration.

- 9 C is correct. The bond's Macaulay duration is closest to 2.83. Macaulay duration (MacDur) is a weighted average of the times to the receipt of cash flow. The weights are the shares of the full price corresponding to each coupon and principal payment.

Period	Cash Flow	Present Value	Weight	Period × Weight
1	6	5.555556	0.058575	0.058575
2	6	5.144033	0.054236	0.108472
3	106	84.146218	0.887190	2.661570
		94.845806	1.000000	2.828617

Thus, the bond's Macaulay duration (MacDur) is 2.83.

Alternatively, Macaulay duration can be calculated using the following closed-form formula:

$$\text{MacDur} = \left\{ \frac{1+r}{r} - \frac{1+r + [N \times (c-r)]}{c \times [(1+r)^N - 1] + r} \right\} - (t/T)$$

$$\text{MacDur} = \left\{ \frac{1.08}{0.08} - \frac{1.08 + [3 \times (0.06 - 0.08)]}{0.06 \times [(1.08)^3 - 1] + 0.08} \right\} - 0$$

$$\text{MacDur} = 13.50 - 10.67 = 2.83$$

- 10** A is correct. The interest rate risk of a fixed-rate bond with an embedded call option is best measured by effective duration. A callable bond's future cash flows are uncertain because they are contingent on future interest rates. The issuer's decision to call the bond depends on future interest rates. Therefore, the yield-to-maturity on a callable bond is not well defined. Only effective duration, which takes into consideration the value of the call option, is the appropriate interest rate risk measure. Yield durations like Macaulay and modified durations are not relevant for a callable bond because they assume no changes in cash flows when interest rates change.
- 11** A is correct. Key rate duration is used to measure a bond's sensitivity to a shift at one or more maturity segments of the yield curve which result in a change to yield curve shape. Modified and effective duration measure a bond's sensitivity to parallel shifts in the entire curve.
- 12** B is correct. The effective duration of the pension fund's liabilities is closest to 14.99. The effective duration is calculated as follows:

$$\text{EffDur} = \frac{(PV_-) - (PV_+)}{2 \times (\Delta\text{Curve}) \times (PV_0)}$$

$$PV_0 = 455.4, PV_+ = 373.6, PV_- = 510.1, \text{ and } \Delta\text{Curve} = 0.0100.$$

$$\text{EffDur} = \frac{510.1 - 373.6}{2 \times 0.0100 \times 455.4} = 14.99$$

- 13** B is correct. A bond's yield-to-maturity is inversely related to its Macaulay duration: The higher the yield-to-maturity, the lower its Macaulay duration and the lower the interest rate risk. A higher yield-to-maturity decreases the weighted average of the times to the receipt of cash flow, and thus decreases the Macaulay duration.

A bond's coupon rate is inversely related to its Macaulay duration: The lower the coupon, the greater the weight of the payment of principal at maturity. This results in a higher Macaulay duration. Zero-coupon bonds do not pay periodic coupon payments; therefore, the Macaulay duration of a zero-coupon bond is its time-to-maturity.

- 14** A is correct. The presence of an embedded put option reduces the effective duration of the bond, especially when rates are rising. If interest rates are low compared with the coupon rate, the value of the put option is low and the impact of the change in the benchmark yield on the bond's price is very similar to the impact on the price of a non-puttable bond. But when benchmark interest rates rise, the put option becomes more valuable to the investor. The ability to

sell the bond at par value limits the price depreciation as rates rise. The presence of an embedded put option reduces the sensitivity of the bond price to changes in the benchmark yield, assuming no change in credit risk.

- 15** A is correct. The portfolio's modified duration is closest to 7.62. Portfolio duration is commonly estimated as the market-value-weighted average of the yield durations of the individual bonds that compose the portfolio.

The total market value of the bond portfolio is $170,000 + 120,000 + 100,000 = 390,000$.

The portfolio duration is $5.42 \times (170,000/390,000) + 8.44 \times (120,000/390,000) + 10.38 \times (100,000/390,000) = 7.62$.

- 16** A is correct. A limitation of calculating a bond portfolio's duration as the weighted average of the yield durations of the individual bonds is that this measure implicitly assumes a parallel shift to the yield curve (all rates change by the same amount in the same direction). In reality, interest rate changes frequently result in a steeper or flatter yield curve. This approximation of the "theoretically correct" portfolio duration is *more* accurate when the yield curve is flatter (less steeply sloped). An advantage of this approach is that it can be used with portfolios that include bonds with embedded options. Bonds with embedded options can be included in the weighted average using the effective durations for these securities.

- 17** B is correct. Bond B has the greatest money duration per 100 of par value. Money duration (MoneyDur) is calculated as the annual modified duration (AnnModDur) times the full price (PV^{Full}) of the bond including accrued interest. Bond B has the highest money duration per 100 of par value.

$$\text{MoneyDur} = \text{AnnModDur} \times PV^{Full}$$

$$\text{MoneyDur of Bond A} = 5.42 \times 85.00 = 460.70$$

$$\text{MoneyDur of Bond B} = 8.44 \times 80.00 = 675.20$$

$$\text{MoneyDur of Bond C} = 7.54 \times 85.78 = 646.78$$

- 18** B is correct. The PVBP is closest to 0.0648. The formula for the price value of a basis point is:

$$\text{PVBP} = \frac{(PV_-) - (PV_+)}{2}$$

where:

PVBP = price value of a basis point

PV_- = full price calculated by lowering the yield-to-maturity by one basis point

PV_+ = full price calculated by raising the yield-to-maturity by one basis point

Lowering the yield-to-maturity by one basis point to 4.99% results in a bond price of 85.849134:

$$PV_- = \frac{3}{(1 + 0.0499)^1} + \dots + \frac{3 + 100}{(1 + 0.0499)^9} = 85.849134$$

Increasing the yield-to-maturity by one basis point to 5.01% results in a bond price of 85.719638:

$$PV_+ = \frac{3}{(1 + 0.0501)^1} + \dots + \frac{3 + 100}{(1 + 0.0501)^9} = 85.719638$$

$$PVBP = \frac{85.849134 - 85.719638}{2} = 0.06475$$

Alternatively, the PVBP can be derived using modified duration:

$$\text{ApproxModDur} = \frac{(PV_-) - (PV_+)}{2 \times (\Delta\text{Yield}) \times (PV_0)}$$

$$\text{ApproxModDur} = \frac{85.849134 - 85.719638}{2 \times 0.0001 \times 85.784357} = 7.548$$

$$PVBP = 7.548 \times 85.784357 \times 0.0001 = 0.06475$$

- 19** B is correct. Convexity measures the “second order” effect on a bond’s percentage price change given a change in yield-to-maturity. Convexity adjusts the percentage price change estimate provided by modified duration to better approximate the true relationship between a bond’s price and its yield-to-maturity which is a curved line (convex).

Duration estimates the change in the bond’s price along the straight line that is tangent to this curved line (“first order” effect). Yield volatility measures the magnitude of changes in the yields along the yield curve.

- 20** B is correct. The bond’s approximate convexity is closest to 70.906. Approximate convexity (ApproxCon) is calculated using the following formula:

$$\text{ApproxCon} = [PV_- + PV_+ - (2 \times PV_0)] / (\Delta\text{Yield}^2 \times PV_0)$$

where:

PV_- = new price when the yield-to-maturity is decreased

PV_+ = new price when the yield-to-maturity is increased

PV_0 = original price

ΔYield = change in yield-to-maturity

$$\text{ApproxCon} = [98.782 + 98.669 - (2 \times 98.722)] / (0.001^2 \times 98.722) = 70.906$$

- 21** C is correct. The expected percentage price change is closest to 1.78%. The convexity-adjusted percentage price change for a bond given a change in the yield-to-maturity is estimated by:

$$\% \Delta PV^{\text{Full}} \approx [-\text{AnnModDur} \times \Delta\text{Yield}] + [0.5 \times \text{AnnConvexity} \times (\Delta\text{Yield})^2]$$

$$\% \Delta PV^{\text{Full}} \approx [-7.020 \times (-0.0025)] + [0.5 \times 65.180 \times (-0.0025)^2] = 0.017754, \text{ or } 1.78\%$$

- 22** B is correct. The expected percentage price change is closest to -3.49%. The convexity-adjusted percentage price change for a bond given a change in the yield-to-maturity is estimated by:

$$\% \Delta PV^{\text{Full}} \approx [-\text{AnnModDur} \times \Delta\text{Yield}] + [0.5 \times \text{AnnConvexity} \times (\Delta\text{Yield})^2]$$

$$\% \Delta PV^{\text{Full}} \approx [-7.140 \times 0.005] + [0.5 \times 66.200 \times (0.005)^2] = -0.034873, \text{ or } -3.49\%$$

- 23** B is correct. If the term structure of yield volatility is downward-sloping, then short-term bond yields-to-maturity have greater volatility than for long-term bonds. Therefore, long-term yields are more stable than short-term yields. Higher volatility in short-term rates does not necessarily mean that the level of short-term rates is higher than long-term rates. With a downward-sloping term structure of yield volatility, short-term bonds will not always experience greater price fluctuation than long-term bonds. The estimated percentage change in a bond price depends on the modified duration and convexity as well as on the yield-to-maturity change.
- 24** C is correct. When the holder of a bond experiences a one-time parallel shift in the yield curve, the Macaulay duration statistic identifies the number of years necessary to hold the bond so that the losses (or gains) from coupon reinvestment offset the gains (or losses) from market price changes. The duration gap is the difference between the Macaulay duration and the investment horizon. Modified duration approximates the percentage price change of a bond given a change in its yield-to-maturity.
- 25** C is correct. The duration gap is equal to the bond's Macaulay duration minus the investment horizon. In this case, the duration gap is positive, and price risk dominates coupon reinvestment risk. The investor risk is to higher rates. The investor is hedged against interest rate risk if the duration gap is zero; that is, the investor's investment horizon is equal to the bond's Macaulay duration. The investor is at risk of lower rates only if the duration gap is negative; that is, the investor's investment horizon is greater than the bond's Macaulay duration. In this case, coupon reinvestment risk dominates market price risk.
- 26** C is correct. The duration gap is closest to 4.158. The duration gap is a bond's Macaulay duration minus the investment horizon. The approximate Macaulay duration is the approximate modified duration times one plus the yield-to-maturity. It is 12.158 ($= 11.470 \times 1.06$). Given an investment horizon of eight years, the duration gap for this bond at purchase is positive: $12.158 - 8 = 4.158$. When the investment horizon is less than the Macaulay duration of the bond, the duration gap is positive, and price risk dominates coupon reinvestment risk.
- 27** A is correct. The price increase was most likely caused by a decrease in the bond's credit spread. The ratings upgrade most likely reflects a lower expected probability of default and/or a greater level of recovery of assets if default occurs. The decrease in credit risk results in a smaller credit spread. The increase in the bond price reflects a decrease in the yield-to-maturity due to a smaller credit spread. The change in the bond price was not due to a change in liquidity risk or an increase in the benchmark rate.

Fundamentals of Credit Analysis

by Christopher L. Gootkind, CFA

Christopher L. Gootkind, CFA, is at Loomis Sayles & Company, LP (USA).

LEARNING OUTCOMES

<i>Mastery</i>	<i>The candidate should be able to:</i>
<input type="checkbox"/>	a. describe credit risk and credit-related risks affecting corporate bonds;
<input type="checkbox"/>	b. describe default probability and loss severity as components of credit risk;
<input type="checkbox"/>	c. describe seniority rankings of corporate debt and explain the potential violation of the priority of claims in a bankruptcy proceeding;
<input type="checkbox"/>	d. distinguish between corporate issuer credit ratings and issue credit ratings and describe the rating agency practice of “notching”;
<input type="checkbox"/>	e. explain risks in relying on ratings from credit rating agencies;
<input type="checkbox"/>	f. explain the four Cs (Capacity, Collateral, Covenants, and Character) of traditional credit analysis;
<input type="checkbox"/>	g. calculate and interpret financial ratios used in credit analysis;
<input type="checkbox"/>	h. evaluate the credit quality of a corporate bond issuer and a bond of that issuer, given key financial ratios of the issuer and the industry;
<input type="checkbox"/>	i. describe factors that influence the level and volatility of yield spreads;
<input type="checkbox"/>	j. explain special considerations when evaluating the credit of high yield, sovereign, and non-sovereign government debt issuers and issues.

The author would like to thank several of his Fixed Income Research colleagues at Loomis, Sayles & Company for their assistance with this reading: Paul Batterton, Diana Leader-Cramer, Diana Monteith, Shannon O'Mara, CFA, and Laura Sarlo, CFA.

1

INTRODUCTION

With bonds outstanding worth many trillions of US dollars, the debt markets play a critical role in the global economy. Companies and governments raise capital in the debt market to fund current operations; buy equipment; build factories, roads, bridges, airports, and hospitals; acquire assets, and so on. By channeling savings into productive investments, the debt markets facilitate economic growth. Credit analysis has a crucial function in the debt capital markets—efficiently allocating capital by properly assessing credit risk, pricing it accordingly, and repricing it as risks change. How do fixed-income investors determine the riskiness of that debt, and how do they decide what they need to earn as compensation for that risk?

This reading covers basic principles of credit analysis, which may be broadly defined as the process by which credit risk is evaluated. Readers will be introduced to the definition of credit risk, the interpretation of credit ratings, the four Cs of traditional credit analysis, and key financial measures and ratios used in credit analysis. The reading explains, among other things, how to compare bond issuer creditworthiness within a given industry as well as across industries and how credit risk is priced in the bond market.

The reading focuses primarily on analysis of corporate debt; however, credit analysis of sovereign and non-sovereign, particularly municipal, government bonds will also be addressed. Structured finance, a segment of the debt markets that includes securities backed by pools of assets, such as residential and commercial mortgages as well as other consumer loans, will not be covered here.

The key components of credit risk—default probability and loss severity—are introduced in the next section along with such credit-related risks as spread risk, credit migration risk, and liquidity risk. Section 3 discusses the relationship between credit risk and the capital structure of the firm. Credit ratings and the role of credit rating agencies are addressed in Section 4. Section 5 focuses on the process of analyzing the credit risk of corporations, whereas Section 6 examines the impact of credit spreads on risk and return. Special considerations applicable to the analysis of (i) high-yield (low-quality) corporate bonds and (ii) government bonds are presented in Section 7. Section 8 gives a brief summary, and a set of review questions concludes the reading.

2

CREDIT RISK

Credit risk is the risk of loss resulting from the borrower (issuer of debt) failing to make full and timely payments of interest and/or principal. Credit risk has two components. The first is known as **default risk**, or **default probability**, which is the probability that a borrower defaults—that is, fails to meet its obligation to make full and timely payments of principal and interest, according to the terms of the debt security. The second component is **loss severity** (also known as “loss given default”) in the event of default—that is, the portion of a bond’s value (including unpaid interest) an investor loses. A default can lead to losses of various magnitudes. In most instances, in the event of default, bondholders will recover some value, so there will not be a total loss on the investment. Thus, credit risk is reflected in the distribution of potential losses that may arise if the investor is not paid in full and on time. Although it is sometimes

important to consider the entire distribution of potential losses and their respective probabilities,¹ it is often convenient to summarize the risk with a single default probability and loss severity and to focus on the **expected loss**:

$$\text{Expected loss} = \text{Default probability} \times \text{Loss severity given default}$$

The loss severity, and hence the expected loss, can be expressed as either a monetary amount (e.g., €450,000) or as a percentage of the principal amount (e.g., 45 percent). The latter form of expression is generally more useful for analysis because it is independent of the amount of investment. Loss severity is often expressed as $(1 - \text{Recovery rate})$, where the recovery rate is the percentage of the principal amount recovered in the event of default.

Because default risk (default probability) is quite low for most high-quality debt issuers, bond investors tend to focus primarily on assessing this probability and devote less effort to assessing the potential loss severity arising from default. However, as an issuer's default risk rises, investors will focus more on what the recovery rate might be in the event of default. This issue will be discussed in more detail later. Important credit-related risks include the following:

- **Spread risk.** Corporate bonds and other “credit-risky” debt instruments typically trade at a yield premium, or spread, to bonds that have been considered “default-risk free,” such as US Treasury bonds or German government bonds. Yield spreads, expressed in basis points, widen based on two primary factors: (1) a decline in an issuer's creditworthiness, sometimes referred to as credit migration or downgrade risk, and (2) an increase in **market liquidity risk**. These two risks are separate but frequently related.
- **Credit migration risk or downgrade risk.** This is the risk that a bond issuer's creditworthiness deteriorates, or migrates lower, leading investors to believe the risk of default is higher and thus causing the yield spreads on the issuer's bonds to widen and the price of its bonds to fall. The term “downgrade” refers to action by the major bond rating agencies, whose role will be covered in more detail in Section 4.
- **Market liquidity risk.** This is the risk that the price at which investors can actually transact—buying or selling—may differ from the price indicated in the market. To compensate investors for the risk that there may not be sufficient market liquidity for them to buy or sell bonds in the quantity they desire, the spread or yield premium on corporate bonds includes a market liquidity component, in addition to a credit risk component. Unlike stocks, which trade on exchanges, most markets bonds trade primarily over the counter, through broker–dealers trading for their own accounts. Their ability and willingness to make markets, as reflected in the bid–ask spread, is an important determinant of market liquidity risk. The two main issuer-specific factors that affect market liquidity risk are (1) the size of the issuer (that is, the amount of publicly traded debt an issuer has outstanding) and (2) the credit quality of the issuer. In general, the less debt an issuer has outstanding, the less frequently its debt trades, and thus the higher the market liquidity risk. And the lower the quality of the issuer, the higher the market liquidity risk.

¹ As an example, careful attention to the full distribution of potential losses is important in analyzing credit risk in structured finance products because the various tranches usually share unequally in the credit losses on the underlying loans or securities. A particular tranche typically bears none of the losses up to some level of underlying losses, then it bears all of the underlying losses until the tranche is wiped out. Losses on a “thin” tranche are very likely to be either 0 percent or 100 percent, with relatively small probabilities on intermediate loss severities. This situation is not well described by a single “average” loss severity.

During times of financial stress or crisis, such as in late 2008, market liquidity can decline sharply, causing yield spreads on corporate bonds, and other credit-risky debt, to widen and their prices to drop. Some research has been done on trying to quantify market liquidity risk,² and more is likely to be done in the aftermath of the financial crisis.

EXAMPLE 1

Defining Credit Risk

- 1 Which of the following *best* defines credit risk?
 - A The probability of default times the severity of loss given default
 - B The loss of principal and interest payments in the event of bankruptcy
 - C The risk of not receiving full interest and principal payments on a timely basis
- 2 Which of the following is the *best* measure of credit risk?
 - A The expected loss
 - B The severity of loss
 - C The probability of default
- 3 Which of the following is NOT credit or credit-related risk?
 - A Default risk
 - B Interest rate risk
 - C Downgrade or credit migration risk

Solution to 1:

C is correct. Credit risk is the risk that the borrower will not make full and timely payments.

Solution to 2:

A is correct. The expected loss captures both of the key components of credit risk: (the product of) the probability of default and the loss severity in the event of default. Neither component alone fully reflects the risk.

Solution to 3:

B is correct. Bond price changes due to general interest rate movements are not considered credit risk.

² For example, see Francis A. Longstaff, Sanjay Mithal, and Eric Neis, "Corporate Yield Spreads: Default Risk or Liquidity? New Evidence from the Credit-Default Swap Market," *Journal of Finance*, vol. 60, no. 5, October 2005:2213–2253.

CAPITAL STRUCTURE, SENIORITY RANKING, AND RECOVERY RATES

3

The various debt obligations of a given borrower will not necessarily all have the same **seniority ranking**, or priority of payment. In this section, we will introduce the topic of an issuer's capital structure and discuss the various types of debt claims that may arise from that structure, as well as their ranking and how those rankings can influence recovery rates in the event of default.

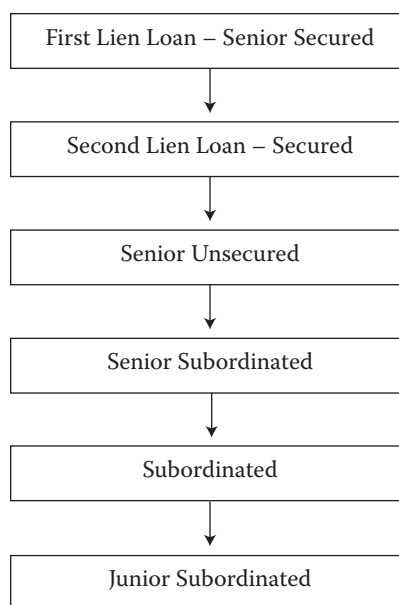
3.1 Capital Structure

The composition and distribution across operating units of a company's debt and equity—including bank debt, bonds of all seniority rankings, preferred stock, and common equity—is referred to as its **capital structure**. Some companies and industries have straightforward capital structures, with all the debt equally ranked and issued by one main operating entity. Other companies and industries, due to their frequent acquisitions and divestitures (e.g., media companies or conglomerates) or high levels of regulation (e.g., banks and utilities), tend to have more complicated capital structures. Companies in these industries often have many different subsidiaries, or operating companies, that have their own debt outstanding and parent holding companies that also issue debt, with different levels or rankings of seniority. Similarly, the cross-border operations of multi-national corporations tend to increase the complexity of their capital structures.

3.2 Seniority Ranking

Just as borrowers can issue debt with many different maturity dates and coupons, they can also have many different rankings in terms of seniority. The ranking refers to the priority of payment, with the most senior or highest-ranking debt having the first claim on the cash flows and assets of the issuer. This level of seniority can affect the value of an investor's claim in the event of default and restructuring. Broadly, there is **secured debt** and **unsecured debt**. Secured debt means the debtholder has a direct claim—a pledge from the issuer—on certain assets and their associated cash flows. Unsecured bondholders have only a general claim on an issuer's assets and cash flow. In the event of default, unsecured debtholders' claims rank below (i.e., get paid after) those of secured creditors³ under what's known as the **priority of claims**.

³ The term "creditors" is used throughout this reading to mean holders of debt instruments, such as bonds and bank loans. Unless specifically stated, it does not include such obligations as trade credit, tax liens, or employment-related obligations.

Exhibit 1 Seniority Ranking


Within each category of debt, there are finer gradations of types and rankings. Within secured debt, there is first mortgage and first lien debt, which are the highest-ranked debt in terms of priority of repayment. **First mortgage debt** or loan refers to the pledge of a specific property (e.g., a power plant for a utility or a specific casino for a gaming company). **First lien debt** or loan refers to a pledge of certain assets that could include buildings but might also include property and equipment, licenses, patents, brands, and so on. There can also be **second lien**, or even third lien, secured debt, which, as the name implies, has a secured interest in the pledged assets but ranks below first lien debt in both collateral protection and priority of payment.

Within unsecured debt, there can also be finer gradations and seniority rankings. The highest-ranked unsecured debt is senior unsecured debt. It is the most common type of all corporate bonds outstanding. Other, lower-ranked debt includes **subordinated debt** and junior subordinated debt. Among the various creditor classes, these obligations have among the lowest priority of claims and frequently have little or no recovery in the event of default. That is, their loss severity can be as high as 100 percent. (See Exhibit 1 for a sample seniority ranking.) For regulatory and capital purposes, banks in Europe and the United States have issued debt and debt-like securities that rank even lower than subordinated debt⁴ and are intended to provide a capital cushion in times of financial distress. Many of them did not work as intended during the financial crisis that began in 2008, and most were phased out, potentially to be replaced by more effective instruments that automatically convert to equity in certain circumstances.

There are many reasons why companies issue—and investors buy—debt with different seniority rankings. Issuers are interested in optimizing their cost of capital—finding the right mix of the various types of both debt and equity—for their industry and type of business. Issuers may offer secured debt because that is what the market (i.e., investors) may require, given a company’s perceived riskiness, or because secured debt is generally lower cost due to the reduced credit risk inherent in its higher

⁴ These have various names such as hybrids, trust preferred, and upper and lower Tier 2 securities. In some cases, the non-payment or deferral of interest does not constitute an event of default, and in other cases, they might convert into perpetual securities—that is, securities with no maturity date.

priority of claims. Or, issuers may offer subordinated debt because (1) they believe it is less expensive than issuing equity⁵ (and doesn't dilute existing shareholders) and is typically less restrictive than issuing senior debt and (2) investors are willing to buy it because they believe the yield being offered is adequate compensation for the risk they perceive. Credit risk versus return will be discussed in more detail later in the reading.

EXAMPLE 2

Seniority Ranking

The Acme Company has senior unsecured bonds as well as both first and second lien debt in its capital structure. Which ranks higher with respect to priority of claims: senior unsecured bonds or second lien debt?

Solution:

Second lien debt ranks higher than senior unsecured bonds because of its secured position.

3.3 Recovery Rates

All creditors at the same level of the capital structure are treated as one class; thus, a senior unsecured bondholder whose debt is due in 30 years has the same pro rata claim in bankruptcy as one whose debt matures in six months. This provision is referred to as bonds ranking **pari passu** (“on an equal footing”) in right of payment.

Defaulted debt will often continue to be traded by investors and broker-dealers based on their assessment that either in liquidation of the bankrupt company's assets or in reorganization, the bonds will have some recovery value. In the case of reorganization, or restructuring (whether through formal bankruptcy or on a voluntary basis), new debt, equity, cash, or some combination thereof could be issued in exchange for the original defaulted debt.

As discussed, recovery rates vary by seniority of ranking in a company's capital structure, under the priority of claims treatment in bankruptcy. Over many decades, there have been enough defaults to generate statistically meaningful historical data on recovery rates by seniority ranking. Exhibit 2 provides recovery rates by seniority ranking for North American non-financial companies.⁶ For example, as shown in Exhibit 2, investors on average recovered 51.6 percent of the value of senior unsecured debt that defaulted in 2009 but only 28.0 percent of the value of senior subordinated issues that defaulted that year.

⁵ Debtholders require a lower return than equity holders because they have prior claims to an issuer's cash flow and assets. That is, the cost of debt is lower than the cost of equity. In most countries, this cost differential is even greater due to the tax deductibility of interest payments.

⁶ The recovery rates shown for default years 2009 and 2010 should be viewed as preliminary because some of the numbers are based on the relatively small number of defaults for which final recovery had been determined at the time of the Moody's study. For example, the 2010 senior unsecured recovery rate reflects only two bonds.

Exhibit 2 Average Corporate Debt Recovery Rates Measured by Ultimate Recoveries

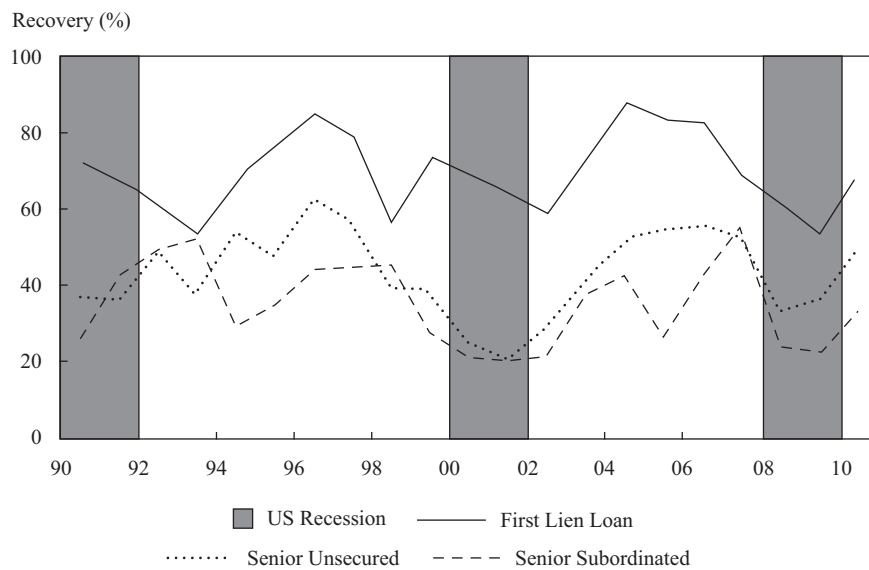
Seniority ranking	Emergence Year*			Default Year		
	2010	2009	1987–2010	2010	2009	1987–2010
Senior secured	64.4%	59.0%	63.5%	56.3%	65.6%	63.5%
Senior unsecured	51.0%	48.3%	49.2%	26.5%	51.6%	49.2%
Senior subordinated	20.5%	26.2%	29.4%	21.7%	28.0%	29.4%
Subordinated	53.4%	34.3%	29.3%	0.0%	58.3%	29.3%
Junior subordinated	NA	0.5%	18.4%	NA	0.0%	18.4%

* Emergence year is typically the year the defaulted company emerges from bankruptcy. Default year data refer to the recovery rate of debt that defaulted in that year (i.e., 2009 and 2010) or range of years (i.e., 1987–2010). Data are for North American nonfinancial companies. NA indicates not available. *Source:* Based on data from Moody's Investors Service, Inc.'s Ultimate Recovery Database.

There are a few things worth noting:

- 1 Recovery rates can vary widely by industry.** Companies that go bankrupt in industries that are in secular decline (e.g., newspaper publishing) will most likely have lower recovery rates than those that go bankrupt in industries merely suffering from a cyclical economic downturn.
- 2 Recovery rates can also vary depending on when they occur in a credit cycle.⁷** As shown in Exhibit 3, at or near the bottom of a credit cycle—which is almost always closely linked with an economic cycle—recoveries will tend to be lower than at other times in the credit cycle. This is because there will be many companies closer to, or already in, bankruptcy, causing valuations to be depressed.

⁷ Credit cycles describe the changing availability—and pricing—of credit. When the economy is strong or improving, the willingness of lenders to extend credit, and on favorable terms, is high. Conversely, when the economy is weak or weakening, lenders pull back, or “tighten” credit, by making it less available and more expensive. This frequently contributes to asset values, such as real estate, declining, causing further economic weakness and higher defaults. Central banks frequently survey banks to assess how “tight” or “loose” their lending standards are. This information, as well as the level and direction of corporate bond default rates, helps provide a good sense of where one is in the credit cycle.

Exhibit 3 Global Recovery Rates by Seniority Ranking, 1990–2010

Source: Based on data from Moody's Investors Service, Inc.'s Ultimate Recovery Database.

- 3 These recovery rates are averages.** In fact, there can be large variability, both across industries, as noted above, as well as across companies within a given industry. Factors might include composition and proportion of debt across an issuer's capital structure. An abundance of secured debt will lead to smaller recovery rates on lower-ranked debt.

Understanding recovery rates is important because they are a key component of credit analysis and risk. Recall that the best measure of credit risk is expected loss—that is, probability of default times loss severity given default. And loss severity equals $(1 - \text{Recovery rate})$. Having an idea how much one can lose in the event of default is a critical factor in valuing credit, particularly lower-quality credit, as the default risk rises.

Priority of claims: Not always absolute. The priority of claims in bankruptcy—the idea that the highest-ranked creditors get paid out first, followed by the next level, and on down, like a waterfall—is well established and is often described as “absolute.” In principle, in the event of bankruptcy or liquidation:

- Creditors with a secured claim have the right to the value of that specific property before any other claim. If the value of the pledged property is less than the amount of the claim, then the difference becomes a senior unsecured claim.
- Unsecured creditors have a right to be paid in full before holders of equity interests (common and preferred shareholders) receive value on their interests.
- Senior unsecured creditors take priority over all subordinated creditors. A creditor is senior unsecured unless expressly subordinated.

In practice, however, creditors with lower seniority and even shareholders may receive some consideration without more senior creditors being paid in full. Why might this be the case? In bankruptcy, there are different classes of claimants, and all classes that are impaired (that is, receive less than full claim) get to vote to confirm the plan of reorganization. This vote is subject to the absolute priority of claims. Either by consent of the various parties or by the judge's order, however, absolute priority may not be strictly enforced in the final plan. There may be disputes over the value of various assets in the bankruptcy estate (e.g., what is a plant, or a patent

portfolio, worth?) or the present value or timing of payouts. For example, what is the value of the new debt I'm receiving for my old debt of a reorganized company before it emerges from bankruptcy?

Resolution of these disputes takes time, and cases can drag on for months and years. In the meantime, during bankruptcy, substantial expenses are being incurred for legal and accounting fees, and the value of the company may be declining as key employees leave, customers go elsewhere, and so on. Thus, to avoid the time, expense, and uncertainty over disputed issues, such as the value of property in the estate, the legality of certain claims, and so forth, the various claimants have an incentive to negotiate and compromise. This frequently leads to creditors with lower seniority and other claimants (e.g., even shareholders) receiving more consideration than they are legally entitled to.

It's worth noting that in the United States, the bias is toward reorganization and recovery of companies in bankruptcy, whereas in other jurisdictions, such as the United Kingdom, the bias is toward liquidation of companies in bankruptcy and maximizing value to the banks and other senior creditors. It's also worth noting that bankruptcy and bankruptcy laws are very complex and can vary greatly by country, so it is difficult to generalize about how creditors will fare. As shown in the earlier chart, there is huge variability in recovery rates for defaulted debt. Every case is different.

EXAMPLE 3

Priority of Claims

- 1 Under which circumstance is a subordinated bondholder *most likely* to recover some value in a bankruptcy without a senior creditor getting paid in full? When:
 - A absolute priority rules are enforced.
 - B the various classes of claimants agree to it.
 - C the company is liquidated rather than reorganized.
- 2 In the event of bankruptcy, claims at the same level of the capital structure are:
 - A on an equal footing, regardless of size, maturity, or time outstanding.
 - B paid in the order of maturity from shortest to longest, regardless of size or time outstanding.
 - C paid on a first-in, first-out (FIFO) basis so that the longest-standing claims are satisfied first, regardless of size or maturity.

Solution to 1:

B is correct. All impaired classes get to vote on the reorganization plan. Negotiation and compromise are often preferable to incurring huge legal and accounting fees in a protracted bankruptcy process that would otherwise reduce the value of the estate for all claimants. This process may allow junior creditors (e.g., subordinated bondholders) to recover some value even though more senior creditors do not get paid in full.

Solution to 2:

A is correct. All claims at the same level of the capital structure are *pari passu* (on an equal footing).

RATINGS AGENCIES, CREDIT RATINGS, AND THEIR ROLE IN THE DEBT MARKETS

4

The major credit ratings agencies—Moody’s Investors Service (“Moody’s”), Standard & Poor’s (“S&P”), and Fitch Ratings (“Fitch”)—play a central, if somewhat controversial, role in the credit markets. For the vast majority of outstanding bonds, at least two of the agencies provide ratings: a symbol-based measure of the potential risk of default of a particular bond or issuer of debt. In the public and quasi-public bond markets,⁸ issuers won’t offer, and investors won’t buy, bonds that do not carry ratings from Moody’s, S&P, or Fitch. This practice applies for all types of bonds—government or sovereign, government related,⁹ supranational,¹⁰ corporate, non-sovereign government, and mortgage- and asset-backed debt. How did the ratings agencies attain such a dominant position in the credit markets? What are credit ratings, and what do they mean? How does the market use credit ratings? What are the risks of relying solely or excessively on credit ratings?

The history of the major ratings agencies goes back more than 100 years. John Moody began publishing credit analysis and opinions on US railroads in 1909. S&P published its first ratings in 1916. They have grown in size and prominence since then. Many bond investors like the fact that there are independent analysts who meet with the issuer and often have access to material, non-public information, such as financial projections that investors cannot receive, to aid in the analysis. What has also proven very attractive to investors is that credit ratings provide direct and easy comparability of the relative credit riskiness of all bond issuers, within and across industries and bond types, although there is some debate about ratings comparability across the types of bonds.¹¹

Several factors have led to the near universal use of credit ratings in the bond markets and the dominant role of the major credit rating agencies. These factors include the following:

- Independent assessment of credit risk
- Ease of comparison across bond issuers, issues, and market segments
- Regulatory and statutory reliance and usage¹²
- Issuer payment for ratings¹³

⁸ That is, underwritten by investment banks, as opposed to privately placed on a “best efforts” basis.

⁹ These are government agencies or instrumentalities that may have implicit or explicit guarantees from the government. Examples include Ginnie Mae in the United States and *Pfandbriefe* in Germany.

¹⁰ Supranationals are international financial institutions, such as the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development (“World Bank”), the Asian Development Bank, and the European Investment Bank, that are established by treaty and owned by several member governments.

¹¹ Investigations conducted after the late 2008/early 2009 financial crisis suggested that, for a given rating category, municipal bonds have experienced a lower historical incidence of default than corporate debt.

¹² It is common for regulations to make reference to ratings issued by recognized credit ratings agencies. In light of the role played by the agencies in the sub-prime mortgage crisis, however, some jurisdictions (e.g., the United States) are moving to remove such references. Nonetheless, the so-called Basel III global framework for bank supervision developed beginning in 2009 retains such references.

¹³ The “issuer pay” model allows the distribution of ratings to a broad universe of investors and undoubtedly facilitated widespread reliance on ratings. It is controversial, however, because some believe it creates a conflict of interest among the rating agency, the investor, and the issuer. Studies suggest, however, that ratings are not biased upward and alternate payment models, such as “investor pays,” have their own shortcomings, including the “free rider” problem inherent in a business where information is widely available and freely shared. So, despite its potential problems, and some calls for a new payment model, the “issuer pay” model remains entrenched in the market.

- Huge growth of debt markets
- Development and expansion of bond portfolio management and the accompanying bond indexes.

However, in the aftermath of the financial crisis of 2008–2009, when the rating agencies were blamed for contributing to the crisis with their overly optimistic ratings on securities backed by subprime mortgages, there were attempts to reduce the role and dominant positions of the major credit rating agencies. New rules, regulations, and legislation were passed to require the agencies to be more transparent, reduce conflicts of interest, and stimulate more competition. Challenging the dominance of Moody's, S&P, and Fitch, additional credit rating agencies have emerged. Some credit rating agencies that are well-established in their home markets but are not so well known globally, such as Dominion Bond Rating Service (DBRS) in Canada and Mikuni & Co. in Japan, have tried to raise their profiles. The market dominance of the biggest credit rating agencies, however, remains largely intact.

4.1 Credit Ratings

The three major global credit rating agencies—Moody's, S&P, and Fitch—use similar, symbol-based ratings that are basically an assessment of a bond issue's risk of default. Exhibit 4 shows their long-term ratings ranked from highest to lowest.¹⁴

Exhibit 4 Long-Term Ratings Matrix: Investment Grade vs. Non-Investment Grade

		Moody's	S&P	Fitch
Investment Grade	High-Quality Grade	Aaa	AAA	AAA
		Aa1	AA+	AA+
		Aa2	AA	AA
		Aa3	AA–	AA–
	Upper-Medium Grade	A1	A+	A+
		A2	A	A
		A3	A–	A–
	Low-Medium Grade	Baa1	BBB+	BBB+
		Baa2	BBB	BBB
		Baa3	BBB–	BBB–

¹⁴ The rating agencies also provide ratings on short-term debt instruments, such as bank deposits and commercial paper. However, they use different scales: From the highest to lowest rating, Moody's uses P-1, P-2, P-3; S&P uses A-1+, A-1, A-2, A-3; Fitch uses F-1, F-2, F-3. Below that is not prime. Short-term ratings are typically used by money market funds, with the vast majority of the instruments they own rated in the highest (or in the case of S&P, the highest or second-highest) category. These top ratings basically map to a single-A or higher long-term rating.

Exhibit 4 (Continued)

		Moody's	S&P	Fitch
Non-Investment Grade "Junk" or "High Yield"		Ba1	BB+	BB+
		Ba2	BB	BB
		Ba3	BB–	BB–
		B1	B+	B+
	Low Grade or Speculative Grade	B2	B	B
		B3	B–	B–
		Caa1	CCC+	CCC+
		Caa2	CCC	CCC
		Caa3	CCC–	CCC–
		Ca	CC	CC
		C	C	C
	Default	C	D	D

Bonds rated triple-A (Aaa or AAA) are said to be “of the highest quality, with minimal credit risk”¹⁵ and thus have extremely low probabilities of default. Double-A (Aa or AA) rated bonds are referred to as “high-quality grade” and are also regarded as having very low default risk. Bonds rated single-A are referred to as “upper-medium grade.” Baa (Moody’s) or BBB (S&P and Fitch) are called “low-medium grade.” Bonds rated Baa3/BBB– or higher are called “investment grade.” Bonds rated Ba1 or lower by Moody’s and BB+ or lower by S&P and Fitch, respectively, have speculative credit characteristics and increasingly higher default risk. As a group, these bonds are referred to in a variety of ways: “low grade,” “speculative grade,” “non-investment grade,” “below investment grade,” “high yield,” and, in an attempt to reflect the extreme level of risk, some observers refer to these bonds as “junk bonds.” The D rating is reserved for securities that are already in default in S&P’s and Fitch’s scales. For Moody’s, bonds rated C are likely, but not necessarily, in default. Generally, issuers of bonds rated investment grade are more consistently able to access the debt markets and can borrow at lower interest rates than those rated below investment grade.

In addition, rating agencies will typically provide outlooks on their respective ratings—positive, stable, or negative—and may provide other indicators on the potential direction of their ratings under certain circumstances, such as “On Review for a Downgrade” or “On CreditWatch for an Upgrade.”¹⁶ It should also be noted that, in support of the ratings they publish, the rating agencies also provide extensive written commentary and financial analysis on the obligors they rate, as well as summary industry statistics.

4.2 Issuer vs. Issue Ratings

Rating agencies will typically provide both issuer and issue ratings, particularly as they relate to corporate debt. Terminology used to distinguish between issuer and issue ratings includes corporate family rating (CFR) and corporate credit rating (CCR) or issuer credit rating and issue credit rating. An issuer credit rating is meant to address

¹⁵ Moody’s Investors Service, “Ratings Symbols and Definitions” (July 2011).

¹⁶ Additional detail on their respective ratings definitions, methodologies, and criteria can be found on each of the major rating agency’s websites: www.moody.com, www.standardandpoors.com, and www.fitch.com.

an obligor's overall creditworthiness—its ability and willingness to make timely payments of interest and principal on its debt. The issuer credit rating usually applies to its senior unsecured debt.

Issue ratings refer to specific financial obligations of an issuer and take into consideration such factors as ranking in the capital structure (e.g., secured or subordinated). Although **cross-default provisions**, whereby events of default such as non-payment of interest¹⁷ on one bond trigger default on all outstanding debt,¹⁸ implies the same default probability for all issues, specific issues may be assigned different credit ratings—higher or lower—due to a ratings adjustment methodology known as **notching**.

Notching. For the rating agencies, likelihood of default—default risk—is the primary factor in assigning their ratings. However, there are secondary factors as well. These factors include the priority of payment in the event of a default (e.g., secured versus senior unsecured versus subordinated) as well as potential loss severity in the event of default. Another factor considered by rating agencies is **structural subordination**, which can arise when a corporation with a holding company structure has debt at both its parent holding company and operating subsidiaries. Debt at the operating subsidiaries will get serviced by the cash flow and assets of the subsidiaries before funds can be passed (“upstreamed”) to the holding company to service debt at that level.

Recognizing these different payment priorities, and thus the potential for higher (or lower) loss severity in the event of default, the rating agencies have adopted a notching process whereby their credit ratings on issues can be moved up or down from the issuer rating, which is usually the rating applied to its senior unsecured debt. As a general rule, the higher the senior unsecured rating, the smaller the notching adjustment will be. The reason behind this is that the higher the rating, the lower the perceived risk of default, so the need to “notch” the rating to capture the potential difference in loss severity is greatly reduced. For lower-rated credits, however, the risk of default is greater and thus the potential difference in loss from a lower (or higher) priority ranking is a bigger consideration in assessing an issue's credit riskiness. Thus, the rating agencies will typically apply larger rating adjustments. For example, S&P applies the following notching guidelines:

As default risk increases, the concern over what can be recovered takes on greater relevance and, therefore, greater rating significance. Accordingly, the LGD [Loss Given Default] aspect of ratings is given more weight as one moves down the rating spectrum. For example, subordinated debt can be rated up to two notches below a noninvestment grade corporate credit rating, but one notch at most if the corporate credit rating is investment grade. (In the same vein, issues of companies with an ‘AAA’ rating need not be notched at all.)¹⁹

Exhibit 5 is an example of S&P's notching criteria, as applied to United Rentals, Inc. (URI). URI is a US-based equipment rental company whose corporate credit—and senior unsecured—rating is single-B. Note how the company's subordinated debt is rated two notches lower, at CCC+.

¹⁷ This issue will be covered in greater detail in the section on covenants.

¹⁸ Nearly all bonds have a cross-default provision. Rare exceptions to this cross-default provision include the deeply subordinated, debt-like securities referenced earlier in this reading.

¹⁹ Standard & Poor's, “Rating Each Issue,” in *Corporate Ratings Criteria 2008* (New York: Standard and Poor's, 2008):89.

Exhibit 5 URI's S&P Ratings Detail, 27 May 2011

Corporate credit rating	B/Stable/–
Preferred stock (1 issue)	CCC
Senior unsecured (2 issues)	B
Subordinated (4 issues)	CCC+

Source: Based on data from Standard & Poor's Financial Services, LLC.

4.3 Risks in Relying on Agency Ratings

The dominant position of the rating agencies in the global debt markets, and the near-universal use of their credit ratings on debt securities, suggests that investors believe they do a good job assessing credit risk. In fact, with a few exceptions (e.g., too high ratings on US subprime mortgage-backed securities issued in the mid-2000s, which turned out to be much riskier than expected), their ratings have proved quite accurate as a relative measure of default risk. For example, Exhibit 6 shows historical S&P one-year global corporate default rates by rating category from 1991 to 2010.²⁰

Exhibit 6 Global Corporate Annual Default Rates by Rating Category (%)

	AAA	AA	A	BBB	BB	B	CCC/C
1991	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.55	1.68	13.84	33.87
1992	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	6.99	30.19
1993	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.70	2.62	13.33
1994	0.00	0.00	0.14	0.00	0.27	3.08	16.67
1995	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.17	0.98	4.59	28.00
1996	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.67	2.91	4.17
1997	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.25	0.19	3.49	12.00
1998	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.41	0.97	4.61	42.86
1999	0.00	0.17	0.18	0.19	0.95	7.28	32.35
2000	0.00	0.00	0.26	0.37	1.25	7.73	34.12
2001	0.00	0.00	0.35	0.33	3.13	11.24	44.55
2002	0.00	0.00	0.00	1.01	2.81	8.11	44.12
2003	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.23	0.56	4.01	32.93
2004	0.00	0.00	0.08	0.00	0.53	1.56	15.33
2005	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.07	0.20	1.73	8.94
2006	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.30	0.81	12.38
2007	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.19	0.25	15.09
2008	0.00	0.38	0.38	0.48	0.78	3.98	26.26
2009	0.00	0.00	0.22	0.54	0.72	10.38	48.68
2010	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.55	0.80	22.27
Mean	0.00	0.03	0.08	0.23	0.87	5.00	25.91

(continued)

²⁰ S&P uses a static pool methodology here. It measures the percentage of issues that defaulted in a given calendar year based on how they were rated at the beginning of the year.

Exhibit 6 (Continued)

	AAA	AA	A	BBB	BB	B	CCC/C
Max	0.00	0.38	0.38	1.01	3.13	13.84	48.68
Min	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.25	4.17

Source: Based on data from Standard & Poor's Financial Services, LLC.

As Exhibit 6 shows, the highest-rated bonds have extremely low default rates. With very few exceptions, the lower the rating, the higher the annual rate of default, with bonds rated CCC and lower experiencing the highest default rates by far.

There are limitations and risks, however, to relying on credit rating agency ratings, including the following:

- Credit ratings can change over time.** Over a long time period (e.g., many years), credit ratings can migrate—move up or down—significantly from what they were at the time of bond issuance. Using Standard & Poor's data, Exhibit 7 shows the average three-year migration (or “transition”) by rating from 1981 to 2010. Note that the higher the credit rating, the greater the ratings stability. Even for AAA rated credits, however, only about 70 percent (70 percent in the United States and 68 percent globally) of the time did ratings remain in that rating category over a three-year period. (Of course, AAA rated credits can have their ratings move in only one direction—down.) A very small fraction of AAA rated credits became non-investment grade or defaulted within three years. For single-B rated credits, only about 40 percent (40 percent in the United States and 39 percent globally) of the time did ratings remain in that rating category over three-year periods. This observation about how credit ratings can change over time isn't meant to be a criticism of the rating agencies. It is meant to demonstrate that creditworthiness can and does change—up or down—and that bond investors should not assume an issuer's credit rating will remain the same from time of purchase through the entire holding period.

Exhibit 7 Average Three-Year Corporate Transition Rates, 1981–2010 (%)

From/To	AAA	AA	A	BBB	BB	B	CCC/C	D	NR*
United States									
AAA	69.75	16.60	2.47	0.38	0.21	0.13	0.13	0.17	10.15
AA	1.32	65.46	17.75	2.52	0.47	0.42	0.04	0.20	11.82
A	0.11	4.34	67.32	12.05	1.79	0.69	0.14	0.42	13.16
BBB	0.04	0.47	8.61	62.21	8.03	2.47	0.35	1.22	16.60
BB	0.02	0.10	0.78	10.95	43.95	13.59	1.40	5.60	23.61
B	0.01	0.06	0.42	1.08	10.06	40.27	4.94	15.79	27.37
CCC/C	0.00	0.00	0.38	0.98	1.97	12.19	13.47	43.98	27.02
Global									
AAA	68.09	18.85	2.46	0.34	0.14	0.08	0.11	0.14	9.78
AA	1.30	65.78	18.59	2.24	0.37	0.26	0.03	0.15	11.29
A	0.08	4.53	67.31	11.84	1.42	0.57	0.12	0.34	13.80
BBB	0.03	0.41	8.90	61.42	7.44	2.12	0.36	1.20	18.12
BB	0.01	0.07	0.67	11.31	43.97	12.06	1.37	5.17	25.37

Exhibit 7 (Continued)

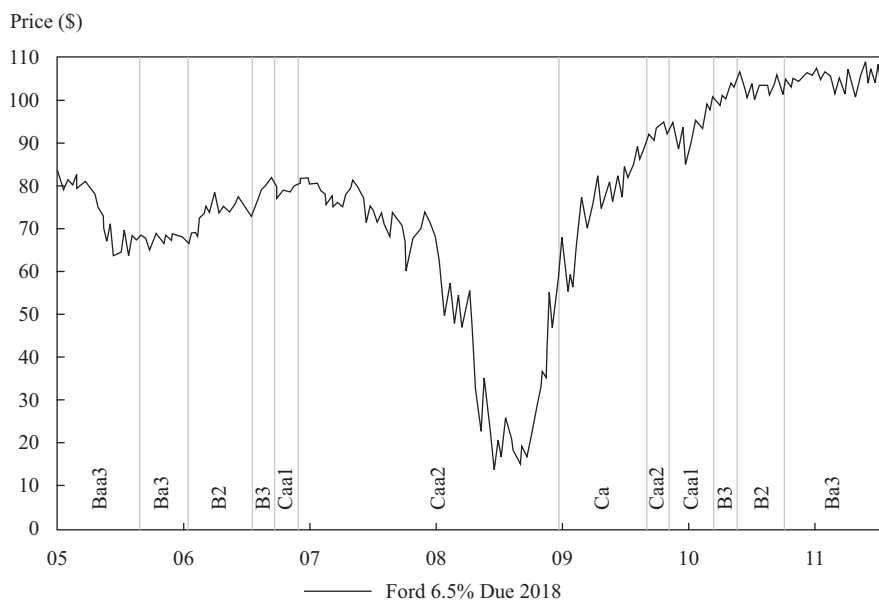
From/To	AAA	AA	A	BBB	BB	B	CCC/C	D	NR*
B	0.01	0.05	0.34	1.08	10.90	38.93	4.61	15.25	28.84
CCC/C	0.00	0.00	0.29	0.91	2.05	16.04	12.39	40.47	27.85

* NR means not rated—that is, certain corporate issuers were no longer rated by S&P. This could occur for a variety of reasons, including issuers paying off their debt and no longer needing ratings.

Source: Based on data from Standard & Poor's Financial Services, LLC.

- Credit ratings tend to lag the market's pricing of credit risk.** Bond prices and credit spreads frequently move more quickly because of changes in perceived creditworthiness than rating agencies change their ratings (or even outlooks) up or down. Bond prices and relative valuations can move every day, whereas bond ratings, appropriately, don't change that often. Even over long time periods, however, credit ratings can badly lag changes in bond prices. Exhibit 8 shows the price and Moody's rating of a bond from US automaker Ford Motor Company before, during, and after the financial crisis in 2008. Note how the bond's price moved down sharply well before Moody's downgraded its credit rating—multiple times—and how the bond's price began to recover—and kept recovering—well before Moody's upgraded its credit rating on Ford debt.

Exhibit 8 Ford Motor Company Senior Unsecured Debt: Price vs. Moody's Rating Since 2005



Sources: Data based on Bloomberg Finance L.P. and Moody's Investors Service.

Moreover, particularly for certain speculative-grade credits, two bonds with similar ratings may trade at very different valuations. This is partly a result of the fact that credit ratings primarily try to assess the risk of default, whereas for low-quality credits, the market begins focusing more on expected loss (default

probability times loss severity). So, bonds from two separate issuers with comparable (high) risk of default but different recovery rates may have similar ratings but trade at significantly different dollar prices.²¹

Thus, bond investors who wait for rating agencies to change their ratings before making buy and sell decisions in their portfolios may be at risk of underperforming other investors who make portfolio decisions in advance of—or not solely based on—rating agency changes.

- **Rating agencies may make mistakes.** The mis-rating of billions of dollars of subprime-backed mortgage securities is one example. Other examples include the mis-ratings of US companies Enron and WorldCom and European issuer Parmalat. Like many investors, the rating agencies did not see the accounting fraud being committed in those companies.
- **Some risks are difficult to capture in credit ratings.** Examples include litigation risk, such as that which can affect tobacco companies, or environmental and business risks faced by chemical companies and utility power plants. This would also include such unpredictable events as the earthquake and tsunami that hit Japan in March 2011 and its credit impact on debt issuer Tokyo Electric Power Company (TEPCO). Leveraged transactions, such as debt-financed acquisitions and large stock buybacks (share repurchases), are often difficult to anticipate and thus to capture in credit ratings.

As described, there are risks in relying on credit rating agency ratings when investing in bonds. Thus, while the credit rating agencies will almost certainly continue to play a significant role in the bond markets, it is important for investors to perform their own credit analyses and draw their own conclusions regarding the credit risk of a given debt issue or issuer.

EXAMPLE 4

Credit Ratings

- 1 Using the S&P ratings scale, investment grade bonds carry which of the following ratings?
 - A AAA to EEE
 - B BBB– to CCC
 - C AAA to BBB–
- 2 Using both Moody's and S&P ratings, which of the following pairs of ratings is considered high yield, also known as “below investment grade,” “speculative grade,” or “junk”?
 - A Baa1/BBB–
 - B B3/CCC+
 - C Baa3/BB+
- 3 What is the difference between an issuer rating and an issue rating?
 - A The issuer rating applies to all of an issuer's bonds, whereas the issue rating considers a bond's seniority ranking.
 - B The issuer rating is an assessment of an issuer's overall creditworthiness, whereas the issue rating is always higher than the issuer rating.

²¹ See Christopher L. Gootkind, “Improving Credit Risk Analysis,” in *Fixed-Income Management for the 21st Century* (Charlottesville, VA: Association for Investment Management and Research, 2002).

- C** The issuer rating is an assessment of an issuer's overall creditworthiness, typically reflected as the senior unsecured rating, whereas the issue rating considers a bond's seniority ranking (e.g., secured or subordinated).
- 4** Based on the practice of notching by the rating agencies, a subordinated bond from a company with an issuer rating of BB would likely carry what rating?
- A** B+
B BB
C BBB–
- 5** The fixed-income portfolio manager you work with asked you why a bond from an issuer you cover didn't rise in price when it was upgraded by Fitch from B+ to BB. Which of the following is the *most likely* explanation?
- A** Bond prices never react to rating changes.
B The bond doesn't trade often so the price hasn't adjusted to the rating change yet.
C The market was expecting the rating change, and so it was already "priced in" to the bond.
- 6** Amalgamated Corp. and Widget Corp. each have bonds outstanding with similar coupons and maturity dates. Both bonds are rated B2, B–, and B by Moody's, S&P, and Fitch, respectively. The bonds, however, trade at very different prices—the Amalgamated bond trades at €89, whereas the Widget bond trades at €62. What is the *most likely* explanation of the price (and yield) difference?
- A** Widget's credit ratings are lagging the market's assessment of the company's credit deterioration.
B The bonds have similar risks of default (as reflected in the ratings), but the market believes the Amalgamated bond has a higher expected loss in the event of default.
C The bonds have similar risks of default (as reflected in the ratings), but the market believes the Widget bond has a higher expected recovery rate in the event of default.

Solution to 1:

C is correct.

Solution to 2:

B is correct. Note that issuers with ratings such as Baa3/BB+ (answer C) are called "crossovers" because one rating is investment grade (the Moody's rating of Baa3) and the other is high yield (the S&P rating of BB+).

Solution to 3:

C is correct.

Solution to 4:

A is correct. The subordinated bond would have its rating notched lower than the company's BB rating, probably by two notches, reflecting the higher weight given to loss severity for below-investment-grade credits.

Solution to 5:

C is correct. The market was anticipating the rating upgrade and had already priced it in. Bond prices often do react to rating changes, particularly multi-notch ones. Even if bonds don't trade, their prices adjust based on dealer quotations given to bond pricing services.

Solution to 6:

A is correct. Widget's credit ratings are probably lagging behind the market's assessment of its deteriorating creditworthiness. Answers B and C both state the situation backwards. If the market believed that the Amalgamated bond had a higher expected loss given default, then that bond would be trading at a lower, not a higher, price. Similarly, if the market believed that the Widget bond had a higher expected recovery rate in the event of default, then that bond would be trading at a higher, not a lower, price.

5**TRADITIONAL CREDIT ANALYSIS: CORPORATE DEBT SECURITIES**

The goal of credit analysis is to assess an issuer's ability to satisfy its debt obligations, including bonds and other indebtedness, such as bank loans. These debt obligations are contracts, the terms of which specify the interest rate to be paid, the frequency and timing of payments, the maturity date, and the covenants that describe the permissible and required actions of the borrower. Because corporate bonds are contracts, enforceable by law, credit analysts generally assume an issuer's willingness to pay and concentrate instead on assessing its ability to pay. Thus, the main focus in credit analysis is to understand a company's ability to generate cash flow over the term of its debt obligations. In so doing, analysts must assess both the credit quality of the company and the fundamentals of the industry in which the company operates. Traditional credit analysis considers the sources, predictability, and sustainability of cash generated by a company to service its debt obligations. This section will focus on corporate credit analysis; in particular, it will emphasize non-financial companies. Financial institutions have very different business models and funding profiles from industrial and utility companies.

5.1 Credit Analysis vs. Equity Analysis: Similarities and Differences

The above description of credit analysis suggests credit and equity analyses should be very similar; in many ways, they are. There are motivational differences, however, between equity and fixed-income investors that are an important aspect of credit analysis. Strictly speaking, management works for the shareholders of a company. Its primary objective is to maximize the value of the company for its owners. In contrast, management's legal duty to its creditors—including bondholders—is to meet the terms of the governing contracts. Growth in the value of a corporation from rising profits and cash flow accrues to the shareholders, while the best outcome for bondholders is to receive full, timely payment of interest and repayment of principal when due. Conversely, shareholders are more exposed to the decline in value if a company's earnings and cash flow decline because bondholders have a prior claim on cash flow and assets. But if a company's earnings and cash flow decline to the extent that it can no longer make its debt payments, then bondholders are at risk of loss as well.

In summary, in exchange for a prior claim on cash flow and assets, bondholders do not share in the growth in value of a company (except to the extent that its creditworthiness improves) but have downside risk in the event of default. In contrast, shareholders have theoretically unlimited upside opportunity, but in the event of default, their investment is typically wiped out before the bondholders suffer a loss. This is very similar to the type of payoff patterns seen in financial options. In fact, in recent years, credit risk models, have been developed based on the insights of option pricing theory. Although it is beyond the scope of this present introduction to the subject, it is an expanding area of interest to both institutional investors and rating agencies.

Thus, although the analysis is similar in many respects for both equity and credit, equity analysts are interested in the strategies and investments that will increase a company's value and grow earnings per share. They then compare that earnings and growth potential with that of other companies in a given industry. Credit analysts will look more at the downside risk by measuring and assessing the sustainability of a company's cash flow relative to its debt levels and interest expense. Importantly for credit analysts, the balance sheet will show the composition of an issuer's debt—the overall amount, how much is coming due and when, and the distribution by seniority ranking. In general, equity analysts will focus more on income and cash flow statements, whereas credit analysts tend to focus more on the balance sheet and cash flow statements.

5.2 The Four Cs of Credit Analysis: A Useful Framework

Traditionally, many analysts evaluated creditworthiness based on what is often called the “four Cs of credit analysis”:²²

- Capacity
- Collateral
- Covenants
- Character

Capacity refers to the ability of the borrower to make its debt payments on time; this is the focus of this section. **Collaterals** refers to the quality and value of the assets supporting the issuer's indebtedness. **Covenants** are the terms and conditions of lending agreements that the issuer must comply with. **Character** refers to the quality of management. Each of these will now be covered in greater detail.

5.2.1 Capacity

Capacity is the ability of a borrower to service its debt. To determine that, credit analysis, in a process similar to equity analysis, starts with industry analysis and then turns to examination of the specific issuer (company analysis).

²² There is no unique list of Cs. In addition to those listed here, one may see “capital” and/or “conditions” on a particular author's list of four (or five) Cs. Conditions typically refers to overall economic conditions. Capital refers to the company's accumulated capital and its specific capital assets and is essentially subsumed within the categories of capacity and collateral. Keep in mind that the list of Cs is a convenient way to summarize the important aspects of the analysis, not a checklist to be applied mechanically.

Industry structure. A useful framework for analyzing industry structure was developed by business school professor and consultant Michael Porter.²³ The framework considers the effects of five competitive forces on an industry:

- 1 Threat of entry.** Threat of entry depends on the extent of barriers to entry and the expected response from incumbents to new entrants. Industries with high entry barriers tend to be more profitable and have lower credit risk than industries with low entry barriers because incumbents do not need to hold down prices or take other steps to deter new entrants. High entry barriers can take many forms, including high capital investment, such as in aerospace; large, established distribution systems, such as in auto dealerships; patent protection, such as in technology or pharmaceutical industries; or a high degree of regulation, such as in utilities.
- 2 Power of suppliers.** An industry that relies on just a few suppliers tends to be less profitable and to have greater credit risk than an industry that has multiple suppliers. Industries and companies with just a few suppliers have limited negotiating power to keep the suppliers from raising prices, whereas industries that have many suppliers can play them off against each other to keep prices in check.
- 3 Power of buyers/customers.** Industries that rely heavily on just a few main customers have greater credit risk because the negotiating power lies with the buyers. For example, a toolmaker that sells 50 percent of its products to one large global retailer has limited negotiating power with its principal customer.
- 4 Threat of substitutes.** Industries (and companies) that offer products and services that provide great value to their customers, and for which there are not good or cost-competitive substitutes, typically have strong pricing power, generate substantial cash flows, and represent less credit risk than other industries or companies. Certain (patent-protected) drugs are an example. Over time, however, disruptive technologies and inventions can increase substitution risk. For example, years ago, airplanes began displacing many trains and steamships. Newspapers were considered to have a nearly unassailable market position until television and then the internet became substitutes for how people received news and information. Over time, recorded music has shifted from records to tapes, to compact discs, to mp3s and other forms of digital media.
- 5 Rivalry among existing competitors.** Industries with strong rivalry—because of numerous competitors, slow industry growth, or high barriers to exit—tend to have less cash flow predictability and, therefore, higher credit risk than industries with less competition. Regulation can affect the extent of rivalry and competition. For example, regulated utilities typically have a monopoly position in a given market, which results in relatively stable and predictable cash flows.

It is important to consider how companies in an industry generate revenues and earn profits. Is it an industry with high fixed costs and capital investment or one with modest fixed costs? These structures generate revenues and earn profits in very different ways. Two examples of industries with high fixed costs, also referred to as “having high operating leverage,” are airlines and hotels. Many of their operating costs are fixed—running a hotel, flying a plane—so they cannot easily cut costs. If an insufficient number of people stay at a hotel or fly in a plane, fixed operating costs may not be covered and losses may result. With higher occupancy of a hotel or plane, revenues are higher, and it is more likely that fixed costs will be covered and profits earned.

²³ Porter, Michael E. 2008. “The Five Competitive Forces That Shape Strategy.” *Harvard Business Review*, vol. 86, no. 1:78–93.

Industry fundamentals. After understanding an industry's structure, the next step is to assess its fundamentals, including its sensitivity to macroeconomic factors, its growth prospects, its profitability, and its business need—or lack thereof—for high credit quality. Judgments about these can be made by looking at the following:

- *Cyclical or non-cyclical.* This is a crucial assessment because industries that are cyclical—that is, have greater sensitivity to broader economic performance—have more volatile revenues, margins, and cash flows and thus are inherently riskier than non-cyclical industries. Consumer product and health care companies are typically considered non-cyclical, whereas auto and steel companies can be very cyclical. Companies in cyclical industries should carry lower levels of debt relative to their ability to generate cash flow over an economic cycle than companies in less-cyclical or non-cyclical industries.
- *Growth prospects.* Although growth is typically a greater focus for equity analysts than for credit analysts, bond investors have an interest in growth as well. Industries that have little or no growth tend to consolidate via mergers and acquisitions. Depending upon how these are financed (e.g., using stock or debt) and the economic benefits (or lack thereof) of the merger, they may or may not be favorable to corporate bond investors. Weaker competitors in slow-growth industries may begin to struggle financially, adversely affecting their creditworthiness.
- *Published industry statistics.* Analysts can get an understanding of an industry's fundamentals and performance by researching statistics that are published by and available from a number of different sources, including the rating agencies, investment banks, industry publications, and frequently, government agencies.

Company fundamentals. Following analysis of an industry's structure and fundamentals, the next step is to assess the fundamentals of the company: the corporate borrower. Analysts should examine the following:

- Competitive position
- Track record/operating history
- Management's strategy and execution
- Ratios and ratio analysis

Competitive position. Based on their knowledge of the industry structure and fundamentals, analysts assess a company's competitive position within the industry. What is its market share? How has it changed over time: Is it increasing, decreasing, holding steady? Is it well above (or below) its peers? How does it compare with respect to cost structure? How might it change its competitive position? What sort of financing might that require?

Track record/Operating history. How has the company performed over time? It's useful to go back several years and analyze the company's financial performance, perhaps during times of both economic growth and contraction. What are the trends in revenues, profit margins, and cash flow? Capital expenditures represent what percent of revenues? What are the trends on the balance sheet—use of debt versus equity? Was this track record developed under the current management team? If not, when did the current management team take over?

Management's strategy and execution. What is management's strategy for the company: to compete and to grow? Does it make sense, and is it plausible? How risky is it, and how differentiated is it from its industry peers? Is it venturing into unrelated businesses? Does the analyst have confidence in management's ability to execute? What

is management's track record, both at this company and at previous ones? Credit analysts also want to know and understand how management's strategy will affect its balance sheet. Does management plan to manage the balance sheet prudently, in a manner that doesn't adversely affect bondholders? Analysts can learn about management's strategy from reading comments, discussion, and analysis that are included with financial statements filed with appropriate regulators, listening to conference calls about earnings or other big announcements (e.g., acquisitions), going to company websites to find earnings releases and copies of slides of presentations at various industry conferences, visiting and speaking with the company, and so on.

EXAMPLE 5

Industry and Company Analysis

- 1 Given a hotel company, a chemical company, and a consumer products company, which is *most likely* to be able to support a high debt load over an economic cycle?
 - A The hotel company, because people need a place to stay when they travel.
 - B The chemical company, because chemicals are a key input to many products.
 - C The consumer products company, because consumer products are typically resistant to recessions.
- 2 Heavily regulated monopoly companies, such as utilities, often carry high debt loads. Which of the following statements about such companies is *most accurate*?
 - A Regulators require them to carry high debt loads.
 - B They generate strong and stable cash flows, enabling them to support high levels of debt.
 - C They are not very profitable and need to borrow heavily to maintain their plant and equipment.
- 3 XYZ Corp. manufactures a commodity product in a highly competitive industry in which no company has significant market share and where there are low barriers to entry. Which of the following *best* describes XYZ's ability to take on substantial debt?
 - A Its ability is very limited because companies in industries with those characteristics generally cannot support high debt loads.
 - B Its ability is high because companies in industries with those characteristics generally have high margins and cash flows that can support significant debt.
 - C We don't have enough information to answer the question.

Solution to 1:

C is correct. Consumer products companies are considered non-cyclical, whereas hotel and chemical companies are more cyclical and thus more vulnerable to economic downturns.

Solution to 2:

B is correct. Because such monopolies' financial returns are generally dictated by the regulators, they generate consistent cash flows and are, therefore, able to support high debt levels.

Solution to 3:

A is correct. Companies in industries with those characteristics typically have low margins and limited cash flow and thus cannot support high debt levels.

Ratios and ratio analysis. To provide context to the analysis and understanding of a company's fundamentals—based on the industry in which it operates, its competitive position, its strategy and execution—a number of financial measures derived from the company's principal financial statements are examined. Credit analysts calculate a number of ratios to assess the financial health of a company, identify trends over time, and compare companies across an industry to get a sense of relative creditworthiness. Note that typical values of these ratios vary widely from one industry to another because of different industry characteristics previously identified: competitive structure, economic cyclicity, regulation, and so on.

We will categorize the key credit analysis measures into three different groups:

- Profitability and cash flow
- Leverage
- Coverage

Profitability and cash flow measures. It is from profitability and cash flow generation that companies can service their debt. Credit analysts typically look at operating profit margins and operating income to get a sense of a company's underlying profitability and see how it varies over time. Operating income is defined as operating revenues minus operating expenses and is commonly referred to as “earnings before interest and taxes” (EBIT). Credit analysts focus on EBIT because it is useful to determine a company's performance prior to costs arising from its capital structure (i.e., how much debt it carries versus equity). And “before taxes” is used because interest expense is paid before income taxes are calculated.

There are several measures of cash flow used in credit analysis; some are more conservative than others because they make certain adjustments for cash that gets used in managing and maintaining the business or in making payments to shareholders. The cash flow measures and leverage and coverage ratios discussed below are non-IFRS in the sense that they do not have official IFRS definitions; the concepts, names, and definitions given should be viewed as one usage among several possible, in most cases.

- **Earnings before interest, taxes, depreciation, and amortization (EBITDA).** EBITDA is a commonly used measure of cash flow that takes operating income and adds back depreciation and amortization expense because those are non-cash items. This is a somewhat crude measure of cash flow because it excludes certain cash-related expenses of running a business, such as capital expenditures and changes in (non-cash) working capital. Thus, despite its popularity as a cash flow measure, analysts look at other measures in addition to EBITDA.
- **Funds from operations (FFO).** Standard & Poor's defines funds from operations as net income from continuing operations plus depreciation, amortization, deferred income taxes, and other non-cash items.²⁴

²⁴ The funds from operations differs only slightly from the better known cash flow from operations in that it excludes working capital changes. The idea behind using FFO in credit analysis is to take out the near-term swings and seasonality in working capital that can potentially distort the amount of operating cash flow a business is generating. Over time, the working capital swings are expected to even out. Analysts tend to look at both FFO and cash flow from operations, particularly for businesses with large working capital swings (e.g., very cyclical manufacturing companies).

- **Free cash flow before dividends (FCF before dividends).**²⁵ This measures excess cash flow generated by the company (excluding non-recurring items) before payments to shareholders or that could be used to pay down debt or pay dividends. It can be calculated as net income (excluding non-recurring items) plus depreciation and amortization minus increase (plus decrease) in non-cash working capital minus capital expenditures. This is, depending upon the treatment of dividends and interest in the cash flow statement, approximated by the cash flow from operating activities minus capital expenditures. Companies that have negative free cash flow before payments to shareholders will be consuming cash they have or will need to rely on additional financing—from banks, bond investors, or equity investors. This obviously represents higher credit risk.
- **Free cash flow after dividends (FCF after dividends).** This measure just takes free cash flow before dividends and subtracts dividend payments. If this number is positive, it represents cash that could be used to pay down debt or build up cash on the balance sheet. Either action may be viewed as deleveraging, which is favorable from a credit risk standpoint. Some credit analysts will calculate net debt by subtracting balance sheet cash from total debt, although they shouldn't assume the cash will be used to pay down debt. Actual debt paid down from free cash flow is a better indicator of deleveraging. Some analysts will also deduct stock buybacks to get the “truest” measure of free cash flow that can be used to de-lever on either a gross or net debt basis; however, others view stock buybacks (share repurchases) as more discretionary and as having less certain timing than dividends, and thus treat those two types of shareholder payments differently when calculating free cash flow.

Leverage ratios. There are a few measures of leverage used by credit analysts. The most common are the debt/capital, debt/EBITDA, and measures of funds or cash flows/debt ratios. Note that many analysts adjust a company's reported debt levels for debt-like liabilities, such as underfunded pensions and other retiree benefits, as well as operating leases. When adjusting for leases, analysts will typically add back the imputed interest or rent expense to various cash flow measures.

- **Debt/capital.** Capital is calculated as total debt plus shareholders equity. This ratio shows the percent of a company's capital base that is financed with debt. A lower percentage of debt indicates lower credit risk. This traditional ratio is generally used for investment-grade corporate issuers. Where goodwill or other intangible assets are significant (and subject to obsolescence, depletion, or impairment), it is often informative to also compute the debt to capital ratio after assuming a write-down of the after-tax value of such assets.
- **Debt/EBITDA.** This ratio is a common leverage measure. Analysts use it on a “snapshot” basis, as well as to look at trends over time and at projections and to compare companies in a given industry. Rating agencies often use it as a trigger for rating actions, and banks reference it in loan covenants. A higher ratio indicates more leverage and thus higher credit risk. Note that this ratio can be very volatile for companies with high cash flow variability, such as those in cyclical industries and with high operating leverage (fixed costs).

²⁵ This is similar to free cash flow to the firm (FCFF), referred to in the Level I CFA Program reading “Understanding Cash Flow Statements.”

- **FFO/debt.** Credit rating agencies often use this leverage ratio. They publish key median and average ratios, such as this one, by rating category so analysts can get a sense of why an issuer is assigned a certain credit rating, as well as where that rating may migrate based on changes to such key ratios as this one. A higher ratio indicates greater ability to pay debt by funds from operations.
- **FCF after dividends/debt.** A higher ratio indicates that a greater amount of debt can be paid off from free cash flow after dividend payments.

Coverage ratios. Coverage ratios measure an issuer's ability to meet—to “cover”—its interest payments. The two most common are the EBITDA/interest expense and EBIT/interest expense ratios.

- **EBITDA/interest expense.** This measurement of interest coverage is a bit more liberal than the one that uses EBIT because it does not subtract out the impact of (non-cash) depreciation and amortization expense. A higher ratio indicates higher credit quality.
- **EBIT/interest expense.** Because EBIT does not include depreciation and amortization, it is considered a more conservative measure of interest coverage. This ratio is now used less frequently than EBITDA/interest expense.

Exhibit 9 is an example of key average credit ratios by rating category for industrial companies over a three-year period, as published by Standard & Poor's.

Exhibit 9 Industrial Comparative Ratio Analysis

Credit Rating	EBITDA Margin (%)	Return on Capital (%)	EBIT Interest Coverage (x)	EBITDA Interest Coverage (x)	FFO/Debt (%)	Free Operations Cash Flow/Debt (%)	Debt/EBITDA (x)	Debt/Debt plus Equity (%)
AAA								
US	29.6	36.8	60.2	68.0	251.1	197.0	0.4	15.7
EMEA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
AA								
US	24.6	24.5	16.8	20.5	69.9	52.3	1.2	36.0
EMEA	25.2	21.7	14.4	17.6	163.9	82.5	0.9	23.7
A								
US	24.2	21.0	22.0	29.0	96.7	65.9	1.5	36.0
EMEA	21.5	17.1	9.0	12.3	92.8	60.1	1.6	34.5
BBB								
US	21.8	16.1	8.8	12.2	54.0	32.8	2.7	46.3
EMEA	19.7	13.1	5.3	7.9	52.1	23.7	2.6	44.9
BB								
US	23.4	11.8	4.1	6.2	35.7	13.6	3.3	54.9
EMEA	20.3	11.0	5.3	7.2	31.8	9.7	3.3	51.0
B								
US	19.4	8.0	1.6	2.9	17.5	5.1	6.6	84.0
EMEA	20.5	6.8	1.7	3.4	19.1	2.2	7.0	78.4

Notes: Data are as of 24 August 2011. EMEA is Europe, Middle East, and Africa.

Source: Based on data from Standard & Poor's Financial Services, LLC.

Comments on issuer liquidity. An issuer's access to liquidity is also an important consideration in credit analysis. Companies with high liquidity represent lower credit risk than those with weak liquidity, other factors being equal. The financial crisis of 2008–2009 showed that access to liquidity via the debt and equity markets should not be taken for granted, particularly for companies that do not have strong balance sheets or steady operating cash flow.

When assessing an issuer's liquidity, credit analysts tend to look at the following:

- **Cash on the balance sheet.** Cash holdings provide the greatest assurance of having sufficient liquidity to make promised payments.
- **Net working capital.** The big US automakers used to have enormous negative working capital, despite having high levels of cash on the balance sheet. This proved disastrous when the financial crisis hit in 2008 and the economy contracted sharply. Auto sales—and thus revenues—fell, the auto companies cut production, and working capital consumed billions of dollars in cash as accounts payable came due when the companies most needed liquidity.
- **Operating cash flow.** Analysts will project this figure out a few years and consider the risk that it may be lower than expected.
- **Committed bank lines.** Committed but untapped lines of credit provide contingent liquidity in the event that the company is unable to tap other, potentially cheaper, financing in the public debt markets.
- **Debt coming due and committed capital expenditures in the next one to two years.** Analysts will compare the sources of liquidity with the amount of debt coming due as well as with committed capital expenditures to ensure that companies can repay their debt and still invest in the business if the capital markets are somehow not available.

As will be discussed in more detail in the section on special considerations for high-yield credits, issuer liquidity is a bigger consideration for high-yield companies than for investment grade companies.

EXAMPLE 6

Watson Pharmaceuticals, Inc. (Watson) is a US-based specialty health care company. As a credit analyst, you have been asked to assess its creditworthiness—on its own, compared to a competitor in its overall industry, and compared with a similarly rated company in a different industry. Using the financial statements provided in Exhibits 10 through 12 for the three years ending 31 December 2008, 2009, and 2010, address the following:

- 1 Calculate Watson's operating profit margin, EBITDA, and free cash flow after dividends. (Note: The company did not pay dividends in 2008–2010.) Comment on what these measures indicate about Watson's profitability and cash flow.
- 2 Determine Watson's leverage ratios: debt/EBITDA, debt/capital, free cash flow after dividends/debt. Comment on what these leverage ratios indicate about Watson's creditworthiness.
- 3 Calculate Watson's interest coverage using both EBIT and EBITDA. Comment on what these coverage ratios indicate about Watson's creditworthiness.
- 4 Using the credit ratios provided in Exhibit 11 on Johnson & Johnson, compare the creditworthiness of Watson relative to Johnson & Johnson.

- 5 Compare the Exhibit 12 credit ratios of Luxembourg-based ArcelorMittal, one of the world's largest global steelmakers, with those of Watson. Comment on the volatility of the credit ratios of the two companies. Which company looks to be more cyclical? What industry factors might explain some of the differences? In comparing the creditworthiness of these two companies, what other factors might be considered to offset greater volatility of credit ratios?

Exhibit 10A Watson Pharmaceuticals' Financial Statements

<i>Consolidated Statements of Operations</i>	<i>Years Ended December 31</i>		
<i>(dollars in millions except per share amounts)</i>	2008	2009	2010
Net revenues	2,535.5	2,793.0	3,566.9
Operating expenses:			
Cost of sales (excludes amortization)	1,502.8	1,596.8	1,998.5
Research and development	170.1	197.3	296.1
Selling and marketing	232.9	263.1	320.0
General and administrative	190.5	257.1	436.1
Amortization	80.7	92.6	180.0
Loss on asset sales and impairments	0.3	2.2	30.8
Total operating expenses	2,177.3	2,409.1	3,261.5
Operating income	358.2	383.9	305.4
Other (expense) income:			
Interest income	9.0	5.0	1.6
Interest expense	(28.2)	(34.2)	(84.1)
Other income	19.3	7.9	27.7
Total other (expense) income, net	0.1	(21.3)	(54.8)
Income before income taxes and noncontrolling interest	358.3	362.6	250.6
Provision for income taxes	119.9	140.6	67.3
Net income	238.4	222.0	183.3
Loss attributable to noncontrolling interest	—	—	1.1
Net income attributable to common shareholders	238.4	222.0	184.4

Source: Based on data from Watson Pharmaceuticals' Company Annual Report (2010).

Exhibit 10B Watson Pharmaceuticals' Financial Statements

<i>Consolidated Balance Sheets</i> (dollars in millions)	Years Ended December 31		
	2008	2009	2010
ASSETS			
Current assets:			
Cash and cash equivalents	507.6	201.4	282.8
Marketable securities	13.2	13.6	11.1
Accounts receivable	305.0	517.4	560.9
Inventories, net	473.1	692.3	631.0
Prepaid expenses and other current assets	48.5	213.9	134.2
Deferred tax assets	111.0	130.9	179.4
Total current assets	1,458.4	1,769.5	1,799.4
Property and equipment, net	658.5	694.2	642.3
Investments and other assets	80.6	114.5	84.5
Deferred tax assets	52.3	110.8	141.0
Product rights and other intangibles, net	560.0	1,713.5	1,632.0
Goodwill	868.1	1,501.0	1,528.1
Total assets	3,677.9	5,903.5	5,827.3
LIABILITIES AND EQUITY			
Current liabilities:			
Accounts payable and accrued expenses	381.3	614.3	741.1
Income taxes payable	15.5	78.4	39.9
Short-term debt and current portion of long-term debt	53.2	307.6	—
Deferred tax liabilities	15.9	31.3	20.8
Deferred revenue	16.1	16.3	18.9
Total current liabilities	482.0	1,047.9	820.7
Long-term debt	824.7	1,150.2	1,016.1
Deferred revenue	30.1	31.9	18.2
Other long-term liabilities	4.9	118.7	183.1
Other taxes payable	53.3	76.0	65.1
Deferred tax liabilities	174.3	455.7	441.5
Total liabilities	1,569.3	2,880.4	2,544.7
Equity:			
Preferred stock	—	—	—
Common stock	0.4	0.4	0.4
Additional paid-in capital	995.9	1,686.9	1,771.8
Retained earnings	1,418.1	1,640.1	1,824.5
Accumulated other comprehensive (loss) income	(3.2)	1.9	(2.5)

Exhibit 10B (Continued)

Consolidated Balance Sheets (dollars in millions)	Years Ended December 31		
	2008	2009	2010
Treasury stock, at cost (9.7 and 9.6 shares held, respectively)	(302.6)	(306.2)	(312.5)
Total stockholders' equity	2,108.6	3,023.1	3,281.7
Noncontrolling interest	—	—	0.9
Total equity	2,108.6	3,023.1	3,282.6
Total liabilities and equity	3,677.9	5,903.5	5,827.3

Source: Based on data from Watson Pharmaceuticals' Company Annual Report (2010).

Exhibit 10C Watson Pharmaceuticals' Financial Statements

Consolidated Statements of Cash Flow (dollars in millions)	Years Ended December 31		
	2008	2009	2010
Cash flows from operating activities:			
Net income	238.4	222.0	183.3
Reconciliation to net cash provided by operating activities:			
Depreciation	90.0	96.4	101.9
Amortization	80.7	92.6	180.0
Provision for inventory reserve	45.7	51.0	50.0
Share-based compensation	18.5	19.1	23.5
Deferred income tax (benefit) provision	3.5	(19.0)	(118.3)
(Gain) loss on sale of securities	(9.6)	1.1	(27.3)
Loss on asset sales and impairment	0.3	2.6	29.8
Increase in allowance for doubtful accounts	1.2	3.4	9.5
Accretion of preferred stock and contingent payment consideration	—	2.2	38.4
Other, net	(13.9)	(7.6)	11.3
Changes in working capital	(38.2)	(87.0)	88.9
Net cash provided by operating activities	416.6	376.8	571.0
Cash flows from investing activities:			
Additions to property and equipment	(63.5)	(55.4)	(56.6)
Additions to product rights and other intangibles	(37.0)	(16.5)	(10.9)
Additions to marketable securities	(8.2)	(8.0)	(5.5)
Additions to long-term investments	—	—	(43.7)
Proceeds from sale of property and equipment	—	3.0	2.7
Proceeds from sale of marketable securities	6.7	9.0	9.5
Proceeds from sale of investments	8.2	—	95.4

(continued)

Exhibit 10C (Continued)

Consolidated Statements of Cash Flow (dollars in millions)	Years Ended December 31		
	2008	2009	2010
Acquisition of business, net of cash acquired	—	(968.2)	(67.5)
Other investing activities, net	0.4	—	2.5
Net cash used in investing activities	(93.4)	(1,036.1)	(74.1)
Cash flows from financing activities:			
Proceeds from issuance of long-term debt	—	1,109.9	—
Principal payments on debt	(95.6)	(786.6)	(459.7)
Proceeds from borrowings on short-term debt	67.9	—	—
Proceeds from stock plans	8.4	33.4	54.7
Repurchase of common stock	(0.9)	(3.6)	(6.3)
Net cash provided by (used in) financing activities	(20.2)	353.1	(411.3)
Effect of currency exchange rate changes	—	—	(4.2)
Net increase (decrease) in cash and cash equivalents	303.0	(306.2)	81.4
Cash and cash equivalents at beginning of period	204.6	507.6	201.4
Cash and cash equivalents at end of period	507.6	201.4	282.8

Source: Based on data from Watson Pharmaceuticals' Company Annual Report (2010).

Exhibit 11 Johnson & Johnson's Credit Ratios

	2008	2009	2010
Operating profit margin	25.1%	25.2%	26.8%
Debt/EBITDA	0.6x	0.8x	0.9x
EBITDA/Interest	43.3x	40.7x	42.8x
FCF after dividends/Debt	58.1%	61.1%	48.9%
Debt/Capital	21.8%	22.3%	22.9%

Source: Company Filings, Loomis, Sayles & Company.

Exhibit 12 ArcelorMittal Credit Ratios

	2008	2009	2010
Operating profit margin	10.2%	-2.4%	4.6%
Debt/EBITDA	2.0x	8.0x	3.3x
EBITDA/Interest	7.4x	1.1x	3.6x

Exhibit 12 (Continued)

	2008	2009	2010
FCF after dividends/Debt	20.0%	13.0%	-2.1%
Debt/Capital	36.5%	27.5%	28.2%

Source: Company Filings, Loomis, Sayles & Company.

Solutions:

- 1 Operating profit margin (%) = Operating income/Revenue

$$2008: 358.2/2535.5 = 0.141 \text{ or } 14.1 \text{ percent}$$

$$2009: 383.9/2793.0 = 0.137 \text{ or } 13.7 \text{ percent}$$

$$2010: 305.4/3566.9 = 0.086 \text{ or } 8.6 \text{ percent}$$

$$\text{EBITDA} = \text{Operating income} + \text{Depreciation} + \text{Amortization}$$

$$2008: 358.2 + 90.0 + 80.7 = 528.9$$

$$2009: 383.9 + 96.4 + 92.6 = 572.9$$

$$2010: 305.4 + 101.9 + 180.0 = 587.3$$

$$\text{FCF after dividends} = \text{Cash flow from operations} - \text{Capital expenditures} - \text{Dividends}$$

$$2008: 416.6 - (63.5 + 37.0 - 0.0) - 0 = 316.1$$

$$2009: 376.8 - (55.4 + 16.5 - 3.0) - 0 = 307.9$$

$$2010: 571.0 - (56.6 + 10.9 - 2.7) - 0 = 506.2$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Capital expenditures} = & \text{Additions to property and equipment} + \\ & \text{Additions to product rights and intangibles} - \text{Proceeds of sale of prop-} \\ & \text{erty and equipment} \end{aligned}$$

Note that “Additions to product rights and intangibles” is included in capital expenditures here because such activities are likely to be both material and recurring for a health care/drug company. For other types of businesses, the analyst might elect to exclude this item from capital expenditures when calculating FCF.

Both EBITDA and FCF after dividends increased from 2008 to 2010. Operating profit margin declined over the same time period. Sales increased by 40.7% and operating expenses increased by 49.8% from 2008 to 2010. As a result operating profit margin declined even though EBITDA and FCF after dividends increased.

- 2 Debt/EBITDA

$$\text{Total debt} = \text{Short-term debt and Current portion of long-term debt} + \text{Long-term debt}$$

$$2008: \text{Debt: } 53.2 + 824.7 = 877.9$$

$$\text{Debt/EBITDA: } 877.9/528.9 = 1.7x$$

$$2009: \text{Debt: } 307.6 + 1150.2 = 1457.8$$

$$\text{Debt/EBITDA: } 1457.8/572.9 = 2.5x$$

$$2010: \text{Debt: } 0 + 1016.1 = 1016.1$$

$$\text{Debt/EBITDA: } 1016.1/587.3 = 1.7x$$

Debt/Capital (%)

Capital = Debt + Equity

2008: Capital: $877.9 + 2108.6 = 2986.5$

Debt/Capital: $877.9/2986.5 = 29.4$ percent

2009: Capital: $1457.8 + 3023.1 = 4480.9$

Debt/Capital: $1457.8/4480.9 = 32.5$ percent

2010: Capital: $1016.1 + 3282.6 = 4298.7$

Debt/Capital: $1016.1/4298.7 = 23.6$ percent

FCF after dividends/Debt (%)

2008: $316.1/877.9 = 36.0$ percent

2009: $307.9/1457.8 = 21.1$ percent

2010: $506.2/1016.1 = 49.8$ percent

These leverage ratios indicate volatility in the capital structure. Watson's creditworthiness in 2010 compared to 2009 is likely higher. It has less debt in its capital structure, debt is a lower multiple of EBITDA, and the FCF after dividends to debt ratio is higher.

3 EBIT/Interest expense

2008: $358.2/28.2 = 12.7x$

2009: $383.9/34.2 = 11.2x$

2010: $305.4/84.1 = 3.6x$

EBITDA/Interest expense

2008: $528.9/28.2 = 18.8x$

2009: $572.9/34.2 = 16.8x$

2010: $587.3/84.1 = 7.0x$

Based on these coverage ratios, Watson's creditworthiness declined from 2008 to 2010. EBIT and EBITDA as a multiple of interest expense declined each year from 2008 to 2010.

4 Johnson & Johnson (J&J) has a higher operating profit margin, better leverage ratios—lower Debt/EBITDA, higher FCF after dividends/debt over the three years (though slightly lower in 2010), lower debt/capital (although about equal in 2010), and better interest coverage as measured by EBITDA/interest. Collectively, those ratios suggest J&J has higher credit quality than Watson.

Watson Pharmaceuticals' Credit Ratios	2008	2009	2010
Operating profit margin	14.1%	13.7%	8.6%
Debt/EBITDA	1.7x	2.5x	1.7x
FCF after dividends/Debt	36.0%	21.1%	49.8%
Debt/Capital	29.4%	32.5%	23.6%
EBITDA/Interest	18.8x	16.8x	7.0x
Johnson & Johnson's Credit Ratios	2008	2009	2010
Operating profit margin	25.1%	25.2%	26.8%
Debt/EBITDA	0.6x	0.8x	0.9x
FCF after dividends/Debt	58.1%	61.1%	48.9%

Johnson & Johnson's Credit Ratios	2008	2009	2010
Debt/Capital	21.8%	22.3%	22.9%
EBITDA/Interest	43.3x	40.7x	42.8x

- 5 Watson has a higher and less volatile operating profit margin than ArcelorMittal (Arcelor), better leverage ratios (except debt/capital in 2009), and higher interest coverage. Based on the volatility of its cash flow and operating profit margin, Arcelor appears to be a much more cyclical credit. Coupled with its higher debt levels, one would expect Arcelor to have a lower credit rating.

A steelmaker likely has a significant amount of long-term assets financed by debt. It is a highly competitive industry with little ability to distinguish products from other competitors. To mitigate the impact of its more volatile credit ratios, Arcelor might maintain high levels of liquidity. Its size and global diversity may also be a “plus.” It may be able to negotiate favorable supplier and customer contracts and to keep costs down through economies of scale.

Watson Pharmaceuticals' Credit Ratios	2008	2009	2010
Operating profit margin	14.1%	13.7%	8.6%
Debt/EBITDA	1.7x	2.5x	1.7x
FCF after dividends/Debt	36.0%	21.1%	49.8%
Debt/Capital	29.4%	32.5%	23.6%
EBITDA/Interest	18.8x	16.8x	7.0x

ArcelorMittal's Credit Ratios	2008	2009	2010
Operating profit margin	10.2%	-2.4%	4.6%
Debt/EBITDA	2.0x	8.0x	3.3x
FCF after dividends/Debt	20.0%	13.0%	-2.1%
Debt/Capital	36.5%	27.5%	28.2%
EBITDA/Interest	7.4x	1.1x	3.6x

5.2.2 Collateral

Collateral, or asset value, analysis is typically emphasized more with lower credit quality companies. As discussed earlier, credit analysts focus primarily on probability of default, which is mostly about an issuer's ability to generate sufficient cash flow to support its debt payments, as well as its ability to refinance maturing debt. Only when the default probability rises to a sufficient level do analysts typically consider asset or collateral value in the context of loss severity in the event of default.

Analysts do think about the value and quality of a company's assets; however, these are difficult to observe directly. Factors to consider include the nature and amount of intangible assets on the balance sheet. Some assets, such as patents, are clearly valuable and can be sold if necessary to cover liabilities. Goodwill, on the other hand, is not considered a high-quality asset. In fact, sustained weak financial performance most likely implies that a company's goodwill will be written down, reinforcing its poor quality. Another factor to consider is the amount of depreciation an issuer takes relative to its capital expenditures: Low capital expenditures relative to depreciation

expense could imply that management is insufficiently investing in its business, which will lead to lower-quality assets, potentially reduced future operating cash flow, and higher loss severity in the event of default.

A market-based signal that credit analysts use to impute the quality of a publicly traded company's assets, and its ability to support its debt, is equity market capitalization. For instance, a company whose stock trades below book value may have lower-quality assets than is suggested by the amount reported on the balance sheet.

As economies become more service- and knowledge-based and those types of companies issue debt, it's important to understand that these issuers rely more on human and intellectual capital than on "hard assets." In generating profits and cash flow, these companies are not as asset intensive. One example would be software companies. Another example would be investment management firms. Human- and intellectual- capital-based companies may generate a lot of cash flow, but their collateral value is questionable, unless there are patents and other types of intellectual property and "intangible capital" that may not appear directly on the balance sheet but could be valuable in the event of financial distress or default.

Regardless of the nature of the business, the key point of collateral analysis is to assess the value of the assets relative to the issuer's level—and seniority ranking—of debt.

5.2.3 Covenants

Covenants are meant to protect creditors while also giving management sufficient flexibility to operate its business on behalf of and for the benefit of the shareholders. They are integral to credit agreements, whether they are bonds or bank loans, and they spell out what the issuer's management is (1) obligated to do and (2) limited in doing. The former are called "affirmative covenants," whereas the latter are called "negative" or "restrictive covenants." Obligations would include such duties as making interest and principal payments and filing audited financial statements on a timely basis. Covenants might also require a company to redeem debt in the event of the company being acquired²⁶ or to keep the ratio of debt to EBITDA below some prescribed amount. The limitations might include a cap on the amount of cash that can be paid out to shareholders relative to earnings, or perhaps on the amount of additional secured debt that can be issued. Covenant violations are a breach of contract and can be considered default events unless they are cured in a short time or a waiver is granted.

For corporate bonds, covenants are described in the bond **prospectus**, the document that is part of a new bond issue. The prospectus describes the terms of the bond issue, as well as supporting financial statements, to help investors perform their analyses and make investment decisions as to whether or not to submit orders to buy the new bonds. Actually, the **trust deed** or **bond indenture** is the governing legal credit agreement and is typically incorporated by reference in the prospectus.

Covenants are an important but underappreciated part of credit analysis. Strong covenants protect bond investors from the possibility of management taking actions that would hurt an issuer's creditworthiness. For example, without appropriate covenants management might pay large dividends, undertake stock buybacks well in excess of free cash flow, sell the company in a leveraged buyout,²⁷ or take on a lot of secured debt that structurally subordinates unsecured bondholders. All of these actions would enrich shareholders at the expense of bondholders. Recall that management works for

²⁶ This is often referred to as a "change of control" covenant.

²⁷ A leveraged buyout (LBO) is an acquisition of a company by private investors using high levels of debt and relatively little equity.

the shareholders and that bonds are contracts, with management's only real obligation to creditors being to uphold the terms of the contract. The inclusion of covenants in the contract is intended to protect bondholders.

The bond-buying investor base is very large and diverse, particularly for investment-grade debt. It includes institutional investors such as insurance companies, investment management firms, pension funds, mutual funds, hedge funds, sovereign wealth funds, and so on. Although there are some very large institutional investors, the buyer base is fragmented and does not—and legally cannot—act as a syndicate. Thus, bondholders are generally not able to negotiate strong covenants on most new bond issues. Covenants on new bond issues tend to be stronger during weak economic or market conditions because investors seek more protection during such times. There are a few organized institutional investor groups focused on strengthening covenants: the Credit Roundtable²⁸ in the United States and the European Model Covenant Initiative in the United Kingdom.

Covenant language is often very technical and written in “legalese,” so it can be helpful to have an in-house person with a legal background to review and interpret the specific covenant terms and wording. One might also use a third-party service specializing in covenant analysis, such as Covenant Review.²⁹

We will go into more detail on specific covenants in the section on special considerations for high-yield bonds.

5.2.4 Character

The character of a corporate borrower can be difficult to observe. The analysis of character as a factor in credit analysis dates to when loans were made to companies owned by individuals. Most corporate bond issuers are now publicly owned by shareholders or privately owned by pools of capital, such as private equity firms. Management often has little ownership in a corporation, so analysis and assessment of character is different than it would be for owner-managed firms. Credit analysts can make judgments about management's character in the following ways:

- An assessment of the soundness of management's strategy.
- Management's track record in executing past strategies, particularly if they led to bankruptcy or restructuring. A company run by executives whose prior positions/ventures resulted in significant distress might still be able to borrow in the debt markets, but it would likely have to borrow on a secured basis and/or pay a higher rate of interest.
- Use of aggressive accounting policies and/or tax strategies. Examples might include using a significant amount of off-balance-sheet financing, capitalizing versus immediately expensing items, recognizing revenue prematurely, and/or frequently changing auditors. These are potential warning flags to other behaviors or actions that may adversely impact an issuer's creditworthiness.
- Any history of fraud or malfeasance—a major warning flag to credit analysts.
- Previous poor treatment of bondholders—for example, management actions that resulted in major credit rating downgrades. These actions might include a debt-financed acquisition, a large special dividend to shareholders, or a major debt-financed stock buyback program.

²⁸ See www.creditroundtable.org.

²⁹ See www.covenantreview.com.

EXAMPLE 7**The Four Cs**

- 1 Which of the following would not be a bond covenant?
 - A The issuer must file financial statements with the bond trustee on a timely basis.
 - B The company can buy back as much stock as it likes.
 - C If the company offers security to any creditors, it must offer security to this bond issue.
- 2 Why should credit analysts be concerned if a company's stock trades below book value?
 - A It means the company is probably going bankrupt.
 - B It means the company will probably incur lots of debt to buy back its undervalued stock.
 - C It's a signal that the company's asset value on its balance sheet may be impaired and have to be written down, suggesting less collateral protection for creditors.
- 3 If management is of questionable character, how can investors incorporate this assessment into their credit analysis and investment decisions?
 - A They can choose not to invest based on the increased credit risk.
 - B They can insist on getting collateral (security) and/or demand a higher return.
 - C They can choose not to invest or insist on additional security and/or higher return.

Solution to 1:

B is correct. Covenants describe what the borrower is (1) obligated to do or (2) limited in doing. It's the absence of covenants that would permit a company to buy back as much stock as it likes. A requirement that the company offer security to this bond issue if it offers security to other creditors (answer C) is referred to as a "negative pledge."

Solution to 2:

C is correct.

Solution to 3:

C is correct. Investors can always say no if they are not comfortable with the credit risk presented by a bond or issuer. They may also decide to lend to a borrower with questionable character only on a secured basis and/or demand a higher return for the perceived higher risk.

6**CREDIT RISK VS. RETURN: YIELDS AND SPREADS**

The material in this section applies to all bonds subject to credit risk. For simplicity, in what follows all such bonds are sometimes referred to as "corporate" bonds.

As in other types of investing, taking more risk in credit offers higher potential return, but with more volatility and less certainty of earning that return. Using credit ratings as a proxy for risk, Exhibit 13 shows the composite yield to maturity³⁰ for bonds of all maturities within each rating category in the US and European bond markets according to Barclays, one of the largest providers of fixed-income market indexes.

Exhibit 13 Corporate Yields by Rating Category as of 30 June 2011

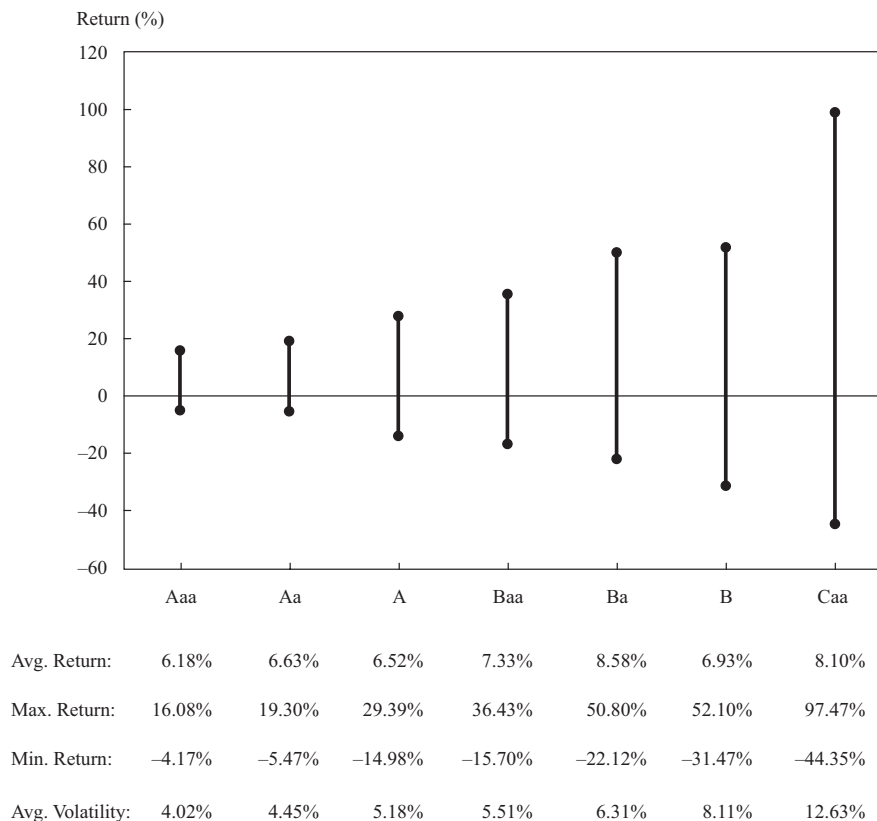
Bloomberg Barclays Indices	Investment Grade				Non-Investment Grade				
	AAA (%)	AA (%)	A (%)	BBB (%)	BB (%)	B (%)	CCC (%)	CC (%)	D (%)
US	3.09	3.10	3.64	4.35	6.50	7.93	10.27	14.11	22.73
Pan European	3.33	3.58	4.14	4.98	6.90	8.67	17.12	13.81	54.80

Source: Based on data from Barclays.

Note that the lower the credit quality, the higher the quoted yield. The realized yield, or return, will almost always be different because of changes in interest rates and the credit-related risks discussed earlier. For example, in the aggregate credit losses will “eat up” some of the yield premium offered by lower-quality bonds versus higher-quality credits. Trailing 12-month returns by credit rating category, and the volatility (standard deviation) of those returns, are shown in Exhibit 14.

³⁰ High-yield bonds are often quoted on a “yield to call” (YTC) or “yield to worst” (YTW) basis because so many of them are callable before maturity, whereas most investment-grade bonds are non-callable, or at least callable at such punitive premiums that issuers are not likely to exercise that option.

Exhibit 14 US Trailing 12-Month Returns by Rating Category, 31 December 1996–30 June 2011



Source: Based on data from Barclays and Loomis, Sayles & Company.

As shown in the exhibit, the higher the credit risk, the greater the return potential and the higher the volatility of that return. This pattern is consistent with other types of investing that involves risk and return (although average returns on single-B rated bonds appear anomalous in this example).

For extremely liquid bonds that are deemed to have virtually no default risk (e.g., German government bonds, or *Bunds*), the yield is a function of real interest rates plus an expected inflation rate and a maturity premium. Of course, those factors are present in corporate bonds as well. In addition, the yield on corporate bonds will include a liquidity premium and a credit spread intended to compensate investors for these additional risks as well as for the expected level of credit losses. Thus, the yield on a corporate bond can be decomposed as

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Yield on corporate bond} = & \text{Real risk-free interest rate} + \text{Expected inflation rate} \\ & + \text{Maturity premium} + \text{Liquidity premium} + \text{Credit spread} \end{aligned}$$

Changes in any of these components will alter the yield, price, and return on the bond.

Investors in corporate bonds focus primarily on the yield spread relative to a comparable, default-free bond, which is composed of the liquidity premium and the credit spread:

$$\text{Yield spread} = \text{Liquidity premium} + \text{Credit spread}$$

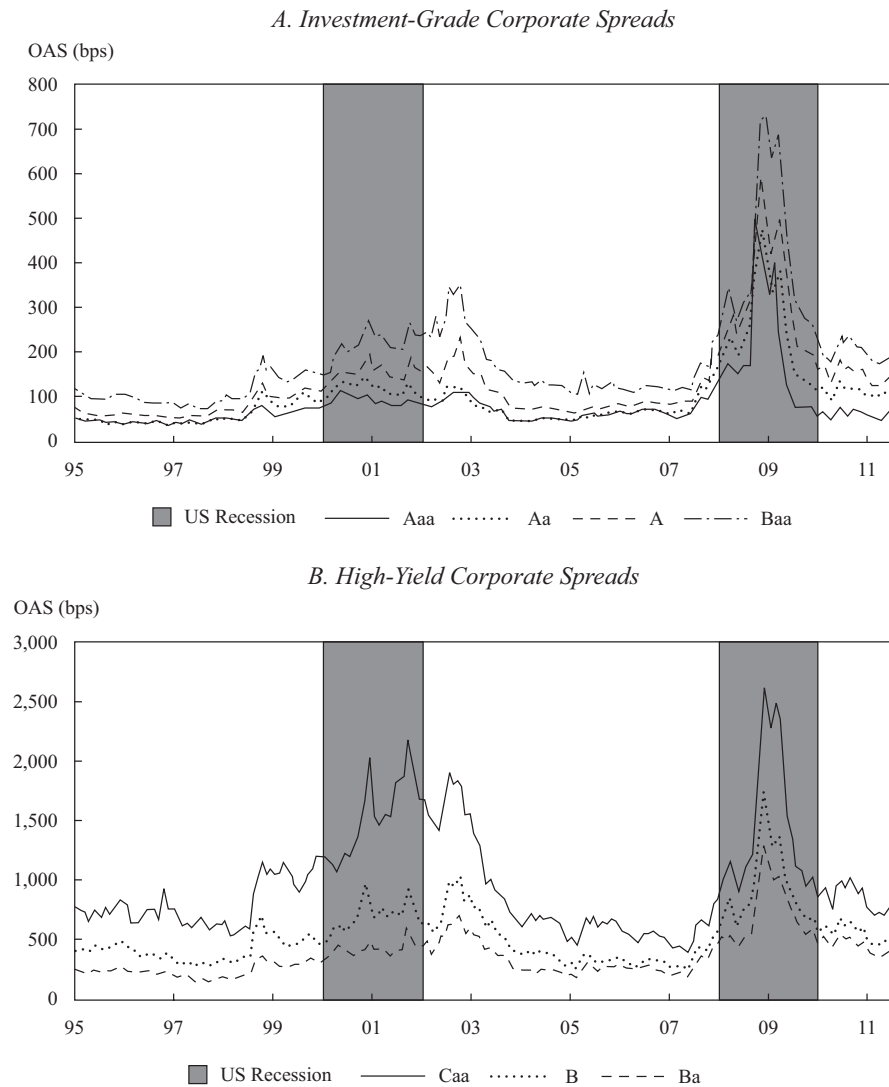
The market's willingness to bear risk will affect each of these components. In general, however, it is not possible to directly observe the market's assessment of the components separately—analysts can only observe the total yield spread.

Spreads on all corporate bonds can be affected by a number of factors, with lower-quality issuers typically experiencing greater spread volatility. These factors, which are frequently linked, include the following:

- **Credit cycle.** As the credit cycle improves, credit spreads will narrow. Conversely, a deteriorating credit cycle will cause credit spreads to widen. Spreads are tightest at or near the top of the credit cycle, when financial markets believe risk is low, whereas they are widest at or near the bottom of the credit cycle, when financial markets believe risk is high.
- **Broader economic conditions.** Not surprisingly, weakening economic conditions will push investors to desire a greater risk premium and drive overall credit spreads wider. Conversely, a strengthening economy will cause credit spreads to narrow because investors anticipate credit measures will improve due to rising corporate cash flow, thus reducing the risk of default.
- **Financial market performance overall, including equities.** In weak financial markets, credit spreads will widen, whereas in strong markets, credit spreads will narrow. In a steady, low-volatility environment, credit spreads will typically also narrow, as investors tend to “reach for yield.”
- **Broker–dealers' willingness to provide sufficient capital for market making.** Bonds trade primarily over the counter, so investors need broker–dealers to commit capital for market-making purposes. During the financial crisis in 2008–2009, several large broker–dealer counterparties either failed or were taken over by another. This, combined with financial and regulatory stresses faced by virtually all the other broker–dealers, greatly reduced the total capital available for making markets and the willingness to buy/sell credit-risky bonds. Future regulatory reform may well lead to persistent or even permanent reductions in broker-provided capital.
- **General market supply and demand.** In periods of heavy new issue supply, credit spreads will widen if there is insufficient demand. In periods of high demand for bonds, spreads will move tighter.

Each of the first four factors played a role during the financial crisis of 2008–2009, causing spreads to widen dramatically, as shown in Exhibit 15, before narrowing sharply as governments intervened and markets stabilized. This is shown in two panels—one for investment grade, another for high yield—because of the much greater spread volatility in high-yield bonds, particularly CCC rated credits. This spread volatility is reflected in the different spread ranges on the y -axes. OAS is option-adjusted spread, which incorporates the value of the embedded call option in certain corporate bonds that issuers have the right to exercise before maturity.³¹

³¹ The details of valuing bonds with embedded options and the calculation of OAS are covered in Level II of the CFA curriculum.

Exhibit 15 US Investment-Grade and High-Yield Corporate Spreads**EXAMPLE 8****Yield Spreads**

- 1 Which bonds are likely to exhibit the greatest spread volatility?
 - A Bonds from issuers rated AA
 - B Bonds from issuers rated BB
 - C Bonds from issuers rated A
- 2 If investors become increasingly worried about the economy—say, as shown by declining stock prices—what is the *most likely* impact on credit spreads?
 - A There will be no change to credit spreads. They aren't affected by equity markets.

- B** Narrower spreads will occur. Investors will move out of equities into debt securities.
- C** Wider spreads will occur. Investors are concerned about weaker creditworthiness.

Solution to 1:

B is correct. Lower-quality bonds exhibit greater spread volatility than higher-quality bonds. All of the factors that affect spreads—the credit cycle, economic conditions, financial performance, market-making capacity, and supply/demand conditions—will tend to have a greater impact on the pricing of lower-quality credits.

Solution to 2:

C is correct. Investors will require higher yields as compensation for the greater credit losses that are likely to occur in a weakening economy.

We have discussed how yield spreads on credit-risky debt obligations, such as corporate bonds, can fluctuate based on a number of factors, including changes in the market's view of issuer-specific or idiosyncratic risk. The next question to ask is how these spread changes affect the price of and return on these bonds.

Although bond investors do concern themselves with default risks, recall that the probability of default for higher-quality bonds is typically very low: For investment-grade bonds, annual defaults are nearly always well below 1 percent (recall Exhibit 6). On the other hand, default rates can be very high for lower-quality issuers, although they can vary widely depending upon the credit cycle, among other things. What most investors in investment-grade debt focus on more than default risk is spread risk—that is, the effect on prices and returns from changes in spreads.

The price impact from spread changes is driven by two main factors: the modified duration (price sensitivity with respect to changes in interest rates) of the bond and the magnitude of the spread change. The effect on return to the bondholder depends on the holding period used for calculating the return.

The simplest example is that of a small, instantaneous change in the yield spread. In this case, the price impact, i.e., the percentage change in price (including accrued interest), can be approximated by

$$\text{Price impact} \approx -\text{MDur} \times \Delta\text{Spread}$$

where MDur is the modified duration. The negative sign in this equation reflects the fact that because bond prices and yields move in opposite directions, narrower spreads have a positive impact on bond prices and thus returns, whereas wider spreads have a negative impact on bond returns. Note that if the spread change is expressed in basis points, then the price impact will also be in basis points, whereas if the spread change is expressed as a decimal, the price impact will also be expressed as a decimal. Either way, the result is easily re-expressed as a percent.

For larger spread changes (and thus larger yield changes), the impact of convexity needs to be incorporated into the approximation:

$$\text{Price impact} \approx -(\text{MDur} \times \Delta\text{Spread}) + \frac{1}{2}\text{Cvx} \times (\Delta\text{Spread})^2$$

In this case, one must be careful to ensure that convexity (denoted by Cvx) is appropriately scaled to be consistent with the way the spread change is expressed. In general, for bonds without embedded options, one can scale convexity so that it has the same order of magnitude as the duration squared and then express the spread change as a

decimal. For example, for a bond with duration of 5.0 and reported convexity of 0.235, one would re-scale convexity to 23.5 before applying the formula. For a 1 percent (i.e., 100 bps) increase in spread, the result would be

$$\text{Price impact} = (-5.0 \times 0.01) + \frac{1}{2} \times 23.5 \times (0.01)^2 = -0.048825 \text{ or } -4.8825 \text{ percent}$$

The price impact of instantaneous spread changes is illustrated in Exhibit 16 using two bonds from British Telecom, the UK telecommunications company. The bonds, denominated in British pounds, are priced to provide a certain spread over British government bonds (gilts) of a similar maturity. From the starting spread, in increments of 25 bps and for both wider and narrower spreads, the new price and actual return for each spread change are calculated. In addition, the exhibit shows the approximate returns with and without the convexity term. As can be seen, the approximation using only duration is reasonably accurate for small spread changes but for larger changes, the convexity term generally provides a meaningful improvement.

Exhibit 16 Impact of Duration on Price for a Given Change in Spread

Issuer: British Telecom, 8.625%, maturing on 26 March 2020

Price: £129.475	Modified Duration: 6.084	Spread to Gilt Curve: 248 b.p.
Accrued interest: 6.3	Convexity: 47.4	YTM: 4.31

	Scenarios									
Spread Δ (b.p.)	-100	-75	-50	-25	0	25	50	75	100	
Spread (b.p.)	148	173	198	223	248	273	298	323	348	
New Price (£)	137.90	135.73	133.60	131.52	129.48	127.47	125.51	123.59	121.71	
New Price + Accrued (£)	144.20	142.03	139.90	137.82	135.78	133.77	131.81	129.89	128.01	
Price Δ (£)	8.43	6.26	4.13	2.05	0.00	-2.01	-3.96	-5.88	-7.77	
Return (%)										
Actual	6.21%	4.61%	3.04%	1.51%	0.00%	-1.48%	-2.92%	-4.33%	-5.72%	
Approx: Dur only	6.08%	4.56%	3.04%	1.52%	0.00%	-1.52%	-3.04%	-4.56%	-6.08%	
Approx: Dur & Cvx	6.32%	4.70%	3.10%	1.54%	0.00%	-1.51%	-2.98%	-4.43%	-5.85%	

Issuer: British Telecom, 6.375%, maturing on 23 June 2037

Price: £110.093	Modified Duration: 13.064	Spread to Gilt Curve: 247 b.p.
Accrued interest: 3.117	Convexity: 253.5	YTM: 5.62

	Scenarios									
Spread Δ (b.p.)	-100	-75	-50	-25	0	25	50	75	100	
Spread (b.p.)	147	172	197	222	247	272	297	322	347	
New Price (£)	125.99	121.72	117.65	113.78	110.09	106.58	103.23	100.04	97.00	
New Price + Accrued (£)	129.11	124.84	120.77	116.90	113.21	109.70	106.35	103.16	100.11	
Price Δ (£)	15.90	11.63	7.56	3.69	0.00	-3.51	-6.86	-10.05	-13.10	
Return (%)										
Actual	14.04%	10.27%	6.68%	3.26%	0.00%	-3.10%	-6.06%	-8.88%	-11.57%	

Exhibit 16 (Continued)

	Scenarios								
Approx: Dur only	13.06%	9.80%	6.53%	3.27%	0.00%	-3.27%	-6.53%	-9.80%	-13.06%
Approx: Dur & Cvx	14.33%	10.51%	6.85%	3.35%	0.00%	-3.19%	-6.22%	-9.09%	-11.80%

Source: Based on data from Bloomberg Finance, L.P. (settle date is 19 December 2011).

Note that the price change for a given spread change is higher for the longer-duration bond—in this case, the 2037 maturity British Telecom bond—than for the shorter-duration bond. Longer-duration corporate bonds are referred to as having “higher spread sensitivity”; that is, their prices, and thus returns, are more volatile with respect to changes in spread. It is essentially the same concept as duration for any bond: The longer the duration of a bond, the greater the price volatility for a given change in interest rates/yields.

In addition, investors want to be compensated for the fact that the further one is from a bond’s maturity (i.e., the longer the bond), the greater the uncertainty about an issuer’s future creditworthiness. Based on credit analysis, an investor might be confident that an issuer’s risk of default is relatively low in the near term; however, looking many years into the future, the investor’s uncertainty grows because of factors that are increasingly difficult, if not impossible, to forecast (e.g., poor management strategy or execution, technological obsolescence, natural or man-made disasters, corporate leveraging events). This increase in credit risk over time can be seen in Exhibit 17. Note that in this Standard & Poor’s study,³² one-year default rates for the 2010 issuance pool are 0 percent for all rating categories of B+ or higher. The three-year default rates for bonds issued in 2008 are materially higher, and the observed defaults include bonds originally rated up to BBB– (i.e., low investment grade). The 10-year default rates for bonds issued in 2001 are appreciably higher than the 3-year default rates, and the defaults include bonds initially rated as high as A+ (i.e., solid investment grade). In addition to the risk of default rising over time, the data also show quite conclusively that the lower the credit rating, the higher the risk of default. Finally, note the very high risk of default for bonds rated CCC or lower over all time horizons. This is consistent with Exhibit 7 earlier in the reading, which showed significant three-year ratings variability (“migration”), with much of the migration to lower credit ratings (i.e., higher risk of default).

Exhibit 17 Default Rate by Rating Category (%) (Non-financials)

Credit Rating	1 Year (2010 pool)	3 Year (2008 pool)	10 Year (2001 pool)
AAA	0.00	0.00	0.00
AA+	0.00	0.00	0.00
AA	0.00	0.00	0.00
AA–	0.00	0.00	0.00
A+	0.00	0.00	1.76

(continued)

³² From S&P, “2010 Annual Global Corporate Default Study and Ratings Transitions,” Standard & Poor’s report (30 March 2011). Detailed descriptions of the underlying methodology are available in Appendix I of the report.

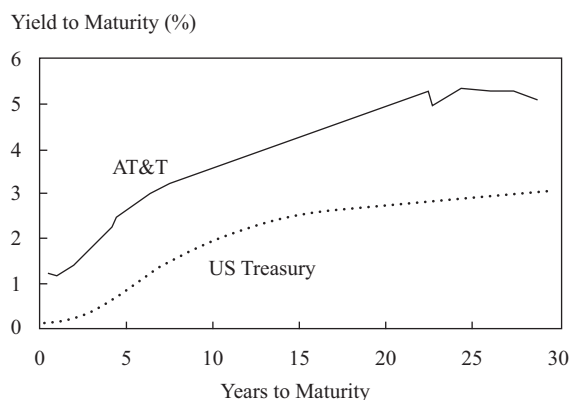
Exhibit 17 (Continued)

Credit Rating	1 Year (2010 pool)	3 Year (2008 pool)	10 Year (2001 pool)
A	0.00	0.00	1.70
A–	0.00	0.00	0.87
BBB+	0.00	0.00	5.03
BBB	0.00	0.00	4.55
BBB–	0.00	1.04	12.80
BB+	0.00	2.12	15.38
BB	0.00	3.53	19.91
BB–	0.00	6.14	26.84
B+	0.00	12.73	33.69
B	0.76	22.08	39.02
B–	2.07	25.23	55.83
CCC/C	21.99	56.63	65.31

Source: Based on data from S&P, “2010 Annual Global Corporate Default Study and Ratings Transitions,” Standard & Poor’s report (30 March 2011).

It is also worth noting that bid–ask spreads (in yield terms) translate into higher transaction costs for longer-duration bonds; investors want to be compensated for that as well. For these reasons, spread curves (often called **credit curves**), like yield curves, are typically upward sloping. That is, longer-maturity bonds of a given issuer typically trade at wider spreads than shorter-maturity bonds to their respective comparable-maturity government bonds.³³ Exhibit 18, using the US telecommunications company AT&T as an example, shows the upward-sloping credit curve by plotting the yields of its bonds versus their maturity. (As a large and frequent issuer, AT&T has many bonds outstanding across the yield curve.)

³³ There are some exceptions to this—bonds that trade at a high premium price over par due to having coupons that are well above the bond’s yield to maturity and bonds that trade at distressed levels due to credit concerns. Many investors are averse to paying high premium prices for bonds that have credit risk because of the greater potential price decline—towards a recovery price in the event of default—from a credit-adverse event. Thus, high-coupon intermediate-maturity bonds can trade at similar or wider spreads to longer-maturity bonds. For distressed credits, the high risk of default causes all bonds for a given issuer to migrate toward the same expected recovery price. In this case, the shorter-maturity and shorter-duration bonds will have a higher quoted yield to maturity, and wider spread, than the longer-maturity and longer-duration bonds. This follows from the price impact formulas. The shorter the duration, the higher the yield (including spread) must go to bring the price down to a given expected recovery price.

Exhibit 18 AT&T Credit Curve vs. US Treasury Curve

Source: Based on data from Bloomberg Finance, L.P., as of 5 October 2011.

EXAMPLE 9**Price Impact**

Calculate the price impact on a 10-year corporate bond with a 4.75 percent coupon priced at 100, with an instantaneous 50 bps widening in spread due to the issuer's announcement that it was adding substantial debt to finance an acquisition, resulting in a two-notch downgrade by the rating agencies. The bond has a modified duration of 7.9 and its convexity is 74.9.

Solution:

The impact from the 50 bps spread widening is:

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{Price impact} &\approx -(\text{MDur} \times \Delta\text{Spread}) + \frac{1}{2} \text{Cvx} \times (\Delta\text{Spread})^2 \\
 &= -(0.0050 \times 7.9) + (0.5 \times 74.9) \times (0.0050)^2 \\
 &= -0.0386, \text{ or } -3.86 \text{ percent}
 \end{aligned}$$

Because yields and bond prices move in opposite directions, the wider spread caused the bond price to fall. Using a bond-pricing calculator, the exact return is -3.85 percent, so this approximation was very accurate.

In summary, spread changes can have a significant impact on the performance of credit-risky bonds over a given holding period, and the higher the modified duration of the bond(s), the greater the price impact from changes in spread. Wider spreads hurt bond performance, whereas narrower spreads help bond performance. For bond investors who actively manage their portfolios (i.e., don't just buy bonds and hold them to maturity), forecasting spread changes and expected credit losses on both individual bonds and their broader portfolios is an important strategy for enhancing investment performance.

7

SPECIAL CONSIDERATIONS OF HIGH-YIELD, SOVEREIGN, AND NON-SOVEREIGN CREDIT ANALYSIS

Thus far, we have focused primarily on basic principles of credit analysis and investing with emphasis on higher-quality, investment-grade corporate bonds. Although many of these principles are applicable to other credit-risky segments of the bond market, there are some differences in credit analysis that need to be considered. This section focuses on special considerations in evaluating the credit of debt issuers from the following three market segments: high-yield corporate bonds, sovereign bonds, and non-sovereign government bonds.

7.1 High Yield

Recall that high-yield, or non-investment-grade, corporate bonds are those rated below Baa3/BBB– by the major rating agencies. These bonds are sometimes referred to as “junk bonds” because of the higher risk inherent in their weak balance sheets and/or poor or less-proven business prospects.

There are many reasons companies are rated below investment grade, including

- Highly leveraged capital structure
- Weak or limited operating history
- Limited or negative free cash flow
- Highly cyclical business
- Poor management
- Risky financial policies
- Lack of scale and/or competitive advantages
- Large off-balance-sheet liabilities
- Declining industry (e.g., newspaper publishing)

Companies with weak balance sheets and/or business profiles have lower margin for error and greater risk of default relative to higher-quality investment-grade names. And the higher risk of default means more attention must be paid to recovery analysis (or loss severity, in the event of default). Consequently, high-yield analysis typically is more in-depth than investment-grade analysis and thus has special considerations. This includes the following:

- Greater focus on issuer liquidity and cash flow
- Detailed financial projections
- Detailed understanding and analysis of the debt structure
- Understanding of an issuer’s corporate structure
- Covenants
- Equity-like approach to high yield analysis

Liquidity. Liquidity—that is, having cash and/or the ability to generate or raise cash—is important to all issuers. It is absolutely critical for high-yield companies. Investment-grade companies typically have substantial cash on their balance sheets, generate a lot of cash from operations relative to their debt (or else they wouldn’t be investment grade!), and/or are presumed to have alternate sources of liquidity, such as bank lines

and commercial paper.³⁴ For these reasons, investment-grade companies can more easily roll over (refinance) maturing debt. On the other hand, high-yield companies may not have those options available. For example, there is no high-yield commercial paper market, and bank credit facilities often carry tighter restrictions for high-yield companies. Both bad company-specific news and difficult financial market conditions can lead to high-yield companies being unable to access the debt markets. And although the vast majority of investment-grade corporate debt issuers have publicly traded equity and can thus use that equity as a financing option, many high-yield companies are privately held and thus don't have access to public equity markets.

Thus, issuer liquidity is a key focus in high-yield analysis. Sources of liquidity, from strongest to weakest, are the following:

- 1 Cash on the balance sheet
- 2 Working capital
- 3 Operating cash flow
- 4 Bank credit facilities
- 5 Equity issuance
- 6 Asset sales

Cash on the balance sheet is easy to see and self-evident as a source for repaying debt.³⁵ As mentioned earlier in this reading, working capital can be a large source or use of liquidity, depending on its amount, its use in a company's cash-conversion cycle, and its role in a company's operations. Operating cash flow is a ready source of liquidity as sales turn to receivables, which turn to cash over a fairly short time period. Bank lines, or credit facilities, can be an important source of liquidity, though there may be some covenants relating to the use of the bank lines which are crucial to know and will be covered a little later. Equity issuance may not be a reliable source of liquidity because an issuer is private or because of poor market conditions if a company does have publicly traded equity. Asset sales are the least reliable source of liquidity because both the potential value and the actual time of closing can be highly uncertain.

The amount of these liquidity sources should be compared with the amount and timing of upcoming debt maturities. A large amount of debt coming due in the next 6–12 months alongside low sources of liquidity will be a warning flag for bond investors and could push an issuer into default because investors may choose not to buy new bonds intended to pay off the existing debt. Insufficient liquidity—that is, running out of cash or no longer having access to external financing to refinance or pay off existing debt—is the principal reason issuers default. Although liquidity is important for industrial companies, it is an absolute necessity for financial firms, as seen in the case of Lehman Brothers and other troubled firms during the financial crisis of 2008. Financial institutions are highly levered and often highly dependent on funding longer-term assets with short-term term liabilities.

Financial Projections. Because high-yield companies have less room for error, it's important to forecast, or project, future earnings and cash flow out several years, perhaps including several scenarios, to assess whether the issuer's credit profile is stable, improving, or declining and thus whether it needs other sources of liquidity or is at

³⁴ Commercial paper (CP) is short-term funding—fewer than 270 days—used by many large, investment-grade corporations on a daily basis. In practice, issuance of CP requires solid, long-term, investment-grade ratings, mostly A rated or better, with a much smaller market for BBB rated companies.

³⁵ Note that some cash may be “trapped” in other countries for certain tax, business, or regulatory reasons, and may not be easily accessible, or repatriation—bringing the money back to the home country—could trigger cash tax payments.

risk of default. Ongoing capital expenditures and working capital changes should be incorporated as well. Special emphasis should be given to realistic “stress” scenarios that could expose a borrower’s vulnerabilities.

Debt Structure. High-yield companies tend to have many layers of debt in their capital structures, with varying levels of seniority and, therefore, different potential recovery rates in the event of default. (Recall the historical table of default recovery rates based on seniority in Exhibit 2.) A high-yield issuer will often have at least some of the following types of obligations in its debt structure:

- (Secured) Bank debt³⁶
- Second lien debt
- Senior unsecured debt
- Subordinated debt, which may include convertible bonds³⁷
- Preferred stock³⁸

The lower the ranking in the debt structure, the lower the credit rating and the lower the expected recovery in the event of default. In exchange for these associated higher risks, investors will normally demand higher yields.

As discussed in Section 5, a standard leverage calculation used by credit analysts is debt/EBITDA and is quoted as a multiple (e.g., “5.2x levered”). For an issuer with several layers of debt with different expected recovery rates, high-yield analysts should calculate leverage at each level of the debt structure. Example 10 shows calculations of gross leverage, as measured by Debt/EBITDA, at each level of the debt structure and net leverage for the entire debt structure. Gross leverage calculations do not adjust debt for cash on hand. Net leverage adjusts debt by subtracting cash from total debt.

EXAMPLE 10

Debt Structure and Leverage

Freescall Semiconductor specializes in semiconductors that are used in autos, communication equipment, and industrial machinery, which are cyclical industries. This high-yield-rated company’s debt structure is complicated because of the many levels of seniority that resulted from the company’s 2006 leveraged buyout by a consortium of private equity firms. Exhibit 19 is a simplified depiction of the company’s debt structure, as well as some key credit-related statistics.

Exhibit 19 Freescall Semiconductor Debt and Leverage Structure as of Year-End 2010

Financial Information (\$ millions)

Cash	\$1,050
Total debt	\$7,611
Net debt	\$6,561

³⁶ Because of the higher risk of default, in most instances bank debt will be secured for high-yield issuers.

³⁷ Convertible bonds are debt instruments that give holders the option to convert to a fixed number of shares of common stock. They can be at any level of the capital structure but are frequently issued as senior subordinated debt.

³⁸ Preferred stock has elements of both debt and equity. It typically receives a fixed payment like a bond does and has higher priority of claims than common stock. As a type of equity, however, it is subordinated to debt.

Exhibit 19 (Continued)**Financial Information (\$ millions)**

Interest expense	\$590
EBITDA	\$990

Debt Structure (\$ millions)

Secured debt (bank loan and bonds)	\$4,899
Senior unsecured bonds	\$1,948
Subordinated bonds	\$764
TOTAL DEBT	\$7,611

Source: Company Filings, Loomis Sayles & Company.

Using the information provided, address the following:

- 1 Calculate gross leverage, as measured by Debt/EBITDA, through each level of debt, including total debt.
- 2 Calculate the net leverage, as measured by (Debt – Cash)/EBITDA, for the total debt structure.
- 3 Why might Freescale have so much secured debt relative to unsecured debt (both senior and subordinated)? (Note: This question draws on concepts from earlier sections.)

Solutions to 1 and 2:

	Gross Leverage (Debt/EBITDA)	Net Leverage (Debt – Cash)/ EBITDA
Secured debt leverage		
(Total secured debt/EBITDA)		
4899/990	4.9x	
Senior leverage		
(Secured debt + Senior unsecured debt)/EBITDA		
(4899 + 1948)/990	6.9x	
Total leverage (includes subordinated)		
(Total debt/EBITDA)		
7611/990	7.7x	
Net leverage (leverage net of cash for entire debt structure)		
(Total debt – Cash)/EBITDA		6.6x

Solution to 3:

Freescall might have that much secured debt because (1) it was less expensive than issuing additional unsecured debt on which investors would have demanded a higher yield and/or (2) given the riskiness of the business (semiconductors that are sold into cyclical industries, such as autos), the leverage of the business model, and the riskiness of the balance sheet (lots of debt from a leveraged buyout), investors would only lend the company money on a secured basis.

High-yield companies that have a lot of secured debt (typically bank debt) relative to unsecured debt are said to have a “top-heavy” capital structure. With this structure, there is less capacity to take on more bank debt in the event of financial stress. Along with the often more stringent covenants associated with bank debt and its generally shorter maturity compared with other types of debt, this means that these issuers are more susceptible to default, as well as to lower recovery for the various less secured creditors.

Corporate Structure. Many debt-issuing corporations, including high-yield companies, utilize a holding company structure with a parent and several operating subsidiaries. Knowing where an issuer’s debt resides (parent versus subsidiaries) and how cash can move from subsidiary to parent (“upstream”) and vice versa (“downstream”) are critical to the analysis of high-yield issuers.

In a holding company structure, the parent owns stock in its subsidiaries. Typically, the parent doesn’t generate much of its own earnings or cash flow but instead receives dividends from its subsidiaries. The subsidiaries’ dividends are generally paid out of earnings after they satisfy all their other obligations, such as debt payments. To the extent that their earnings and cash flow are weak, subsidiaries may be limited in their ability to pay dividends to the parent. Moreover, subsidiaries that carry a lot of their own debt may have restrictions or limitations on how much cash they can provide to the parent via dividends or in another way, such as through an intercompany loan. These restrictions and limitations on cash moving between parent and subsidiaries can have a major impact on their respective abilities to meet their debt obligations. The parent’s reliance on cash flow from its subsidiaries means the parent’s debt is structurally subordinated to the subsidiaries’ debt and thus will usually have a lower recovery rating in default.

For companies with very complex holding companies, there may also be one or more intermediate holding companies, each carrying their own debt, and in some cases, they may not own 100 percent of the subsidiaries’ stock. This structure is sometimes seen in high-yield companies that have been put together through many mergers and acquisitions or that were part of a leveraged buyout.³⁹

Exhibit 20 returns to United Rentals, Inc. (URI), a high-yield company highlighted earlier as an example of the credit rating agency notching process. URI has a capital structure consisting of a parent company that has debt—in this case, convertible senior notes—as well as subsidiaries with outstanding debt. And in the case of URI’s United Rentals North America subsidiary, it has several layers of debt by seniority.

³⁹ For holding companies with complex corporate structures, such as multiple subsidiaries with their own capital structures, a default in one subsidiary may not trigger a cross-default. Astute analysts will look for that in indentures and other legal documentation.

Exhibit 20 URI's Capital Structure

United Rentals, Inc.	
4% Convertible Sr. Notes Due 2015	\$124
Total Debt	\$124
Consolidated Total Debt	\$2,858
2010 Consolidated EBITDA	\$646
2010 Consolidated Leverage	4.4×

United Rentals North America	
\$1.36B First Lien Loan Due 2013	\$683
10.875% Sr. Notes Due 2016	\$488
9.25% Sr. Notes Due 2019	\$492
8.375% Sr. Sub Notes Due 2020	\$750
1.875% Convertible Sr. Sub Due 2023	\$22
\$325 Accounts Receivable Facility	\$212
Total Debt	\$2,647
2010 EBITDA	\$646
2010 Leverage	4.1×

United Rentals Trust	
6.5% Convert	\$87
Total Debt	\$87

Sources: Based on data from company filings and Loomis, Sayles & Company.

Thus, high-yield investors should analyze and understand an issuer's corporate structure, including the distribution of debt between the parent and its subsidiaries. Leverage ratios should be calculated at each of the debt-issuing entities, as well as on a consolidated basis.

Also important is that although the debt of an operating subsidiary may be "closer to" and better secured by particular assets of the subsidiary, the credit quality of a parent company might still be higher. The parent company could, while being less directly secured by any particular assets, still benefit from the diversity and availability of all the cash flows in the consolidated system. In short, credit quality is not simply an automatic analysis of debt provisions and liens.

Covenant Analysis. As discussed earlier, analysis of covenants is very important for all bonds. It is especially important for high-yield credits because of their reduced margin of safety. Key covenants for high-yield issuers may include the following:

- Change of control put
- Restricted payments
- Limitations on liens and additional indebtedness
- Restricted versus unrestricted subsidiaries

Under the **change of control put**, in the event of an acquisition (a "change of control"), bondholders have the right to require the issuer to buy back their debt (a "put option"), often at par or at some small premium to par value. This covenant is intended to protect creditors from being exposed to a weaker, more indebted borrower as a result of acquisition. For investment-grade issuers, this covenant typically has a two-pronged test: acquisition of the borrower and a consequent downgrade to a high-yield rating.

The **restricted payments** covenant is meant to protect creditors by limiting how much cash can be paid out to shareholders over time. The restricted payments “basket” is typically sized relative to an issuer’s cash flow and debt outstanding—or is being raised—and is an amount that can grow with retained earnings or cash flow, giving management more flexibility to make pay-outs.

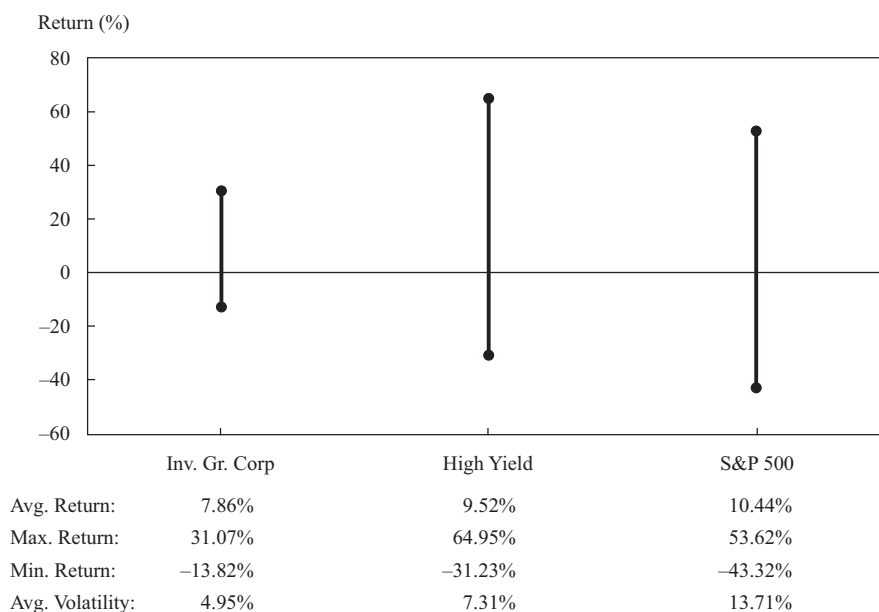
The **limitations on liens** covenant is meant to put limits on how much secured debt an issuer can have. This covenant is important to unsecured creditors who are structurally subordinated to secured creditors; the higher the amount of debt that is layered ahead of them, the less they stand to recover in the event of default.

With regard to **restricted versus unrestricted subsidiaries**, issuers may classify certain of their subsidiaries as restricted and others as unrestricted as it pertains to offering guarantees for their holding company debt. These subsidiary guarantees can be very useful to holding company creditors because they put their debt on equal standing (*pari passu*) with debt at the subsidiaries instead of with structurally subordinated debt. Restricted subsidiaries should be thought of as those that are designated to help service parent-level debt, typically through guarantees. They tend to be an issuer’s larger subsidiaries and have significant assets, such as plants and other facilities, and/or cash flow. There may be tax or legal (e.g., country of domicile) reasons why certain subsidiaries are restricted while others are not. Analysts should carefully read the definitions of restricted versus unrestricted subsidiaries in the indenture because sometimes the language is so loosely written that the company can reclassify subsidiaries from one type to another with a simple vote by a board of directors or trustees.

For high-yield investors, it is also important to know what covenants are in an issuer’s bank credit agreements. These agreements are typically filed with the securities commission in the country where the loan document was drafted. Bank covenants can be more restrictive than bond covenants and may include so-called **maintenance covenants**, such as leverage tests, whereby the ratio of, say, debt/EBITDA may not exceed “x” times. In the event a covenant is breached, the bank is likely to block further loans under the agreement until the covenant is cured. If not cured, the bank may accelerate full payment of the facility, triggering a default.

Equity-like approach to high-yield analysis. High-yield bonds are sometimes thought of as a “hybrid” between higher-quality bonds, such as investment-grade corporate debt, and equity securities. Their more volatile price and spread movements are less influenced by interest rate changes than are higher-quality bonds, and they show greater correlation with movements in equity markets. Indeed, as shown in Exhibit 21, historical returns on high-yield bonds and the standard deviation of those returns fall somewhere between investment-grade bonds and equities.

Exhibit 21 US Trailing 12-Month Returns by Asset Class, 31 December 1988–30 June 2011



Sources: Based on data from Barclays, Haver Analytics, and Loomis, Sayles & Company.

Consequently, an equity market-like approach to analyzing a high-yield issuer can be useful. One approach is to calculate an issuer's enterprise value. Enterprise value (EV) is usually calculated by adding equity market capitalization and total debt and then subtracting excess cash.^{40,41} Enterprise value is a measure of what a business is worth (before any takeover premium) because an acquirer of the company would have to either pay off or assume the debt and it would receive the acquired company's cash.

Bond investors like using EV because it shows the amount of equity "cushion" beneath the debt. It can also give a sense of (1) how much more leverage management might attempt to put on a company in an effort to increase equity returns or (2) how likely—and how expensive—a credit-damaging leveraged buyout might be. Similar to how stock investors look at equity multiples, bond investors may calculate and compare EV/EBITDA and debt/EBITDA across several issuers as part of their analysis. Narrow differences between the EV/EBITDA and debt/EBITDA ratios for a given issuer indicate a small equity cushion and, therefore, potentially higher risk for bond investors.

7.2 Sovereign Debt

Governments around the world issue debt to help finance their general operations, including current expenses such as wages for government employees, and investments in long-term assets such as infrastructure and education. Government bonds in developed countries have traditionally been viewed as the default risk-free rate off of which all other credits are priced. Fiscal challenges in developed countries exacerbated by the 2008 crisis, however, have called into question the notion of a "risk-free rate," even

⁴⁰ Excess cash takes total cash and subtracts any negative working capital.

⁴¹ Unlike the vast majority of investment-grade companies, many high-yield issuers do not have publicly traded equity. For those issuers, one can use comparable public company equity data to estimate EV.

for some of the highest-quality government borrowers. As their capital markets have developed, an increasing number of sovereign governments have been able to issue debt in foreign markets (generally denominated in a currency other than that of the sovereign government, often the US dollar or euro) as well as debt in the domestic market (issued in the sovereign government's own currency). Generally, sovereign governments with weak currencies can only access foreign debt markets by issuing bonds in foreign currencies that are viewed to be safer stores of value. Debt issued in the domestic market is somewhat easier to service because the debt is typically denominated in the country's own currency, subject to its own laws, and money can be printed to service the sovereign government's domestic debt. Twenty years ago, many emerging market countries⁴² could only issue debt in foreign markets because a domestic market did not exist. Today, many are able to issue debt domestically and have successfully built yield curves of domestic bonds across the maturity spectrum. All sovereign governments are best able to service foreign and domestic debt if they run "twin surpluses"—that is, a government budget surplus as well as a current account surplus.

Despite ongoing financial globalization and the development of domestic bond markets, sovereign government defaults occur. Defaults are often precipitated by such events as war, political upheaval, major currency devaluation, a sharp deterioration in trade, or dramatic price declines in a country's key commodity exports. Default risks for some developed countries escalated after 2009 as government revenues dropped precipitously following the financial crisis of 2008, expenditures surged, and financial markets focused on the long-term sustainability of public finances, given aging populations and rising social security needs. Some of the weaker and more highly indebted members of the eurozone became unable to access the debt markets at economical rates and had to seek loans from the International Monetary Fund (IMF) and the European Union. These weaker governments had previously been able to borrow at much lower rates because of their membership in the European Union and adoption of the euro. Intra-eurozone yield spreads widened and countries were shut out of markets, however, as the global financial crisis exacted a high toll on their public finances and, in some cases, their banking systems, which became contingent liabilities for the sovereigns. In Ireland, the government guaranteed most bank liabilities, causing the country's debt burden to increase dramatically.

Like corporate analysis, sovereign credit analysis is based on a combination of qualitative and quantitative factors. Ultimately, the two key issues for sovereign analysis are 1) a government's ability to pay and 2) its willingness to pay. Willingness to pay is important because, due to the principle of sovereign immunity, investors are generally unable to force a sovereign to pay its debts. Sovereign immunity prevents governments from being sued.

To illustrate the most important considerations in sovereign credit analysis, we present a basic framework for evaluating sovereign credit and assigning sovereign debt ratings.⁴³ The framework highlights the specific characteristics analysts should expect in a high-quality sovereign credit. Some of these are self-explanatory (e.g., absence of corruption). For others, a brief rationale and/or range of values is included to clarify interpretation. Most, but not all, of these items are included in rating agency Standard & Poor's methodology.

⁴² There is no commonly accepted definition of emerging market countries. The World Bank considers GDP/Capita to be a useful measure, with below-average GDP/Capita likely indicating an emerging market. Other factors include the degree of openness and maturity of the economy, as well as a country's political stability.

⁴³ This outline was developed from the detailed exposition of Standard & Poor's methodology given in "Sovereign Government Rating Methodology and Assumptions," June 2011.

Political and economic profile

- *Institutional effectiveness and political risks*
 - *Effectiveness, stability, and predictability of policy making and institutions*
 - Successful management of past political, economic, and/or financial crises
 - Ability and willingness to implement reforms to address fiscal challenges
 - Predictable policy framework
 - Absence of challenges to political institutions
 - Checks and balances in the system
 - Absence of corruption
 - Unbiased law enforcement and respect for rule of law and property rights
 - Independent/ unfettered media and sources of economic data
 - *Perceived commitment to honor debts*
- *Economic structure and growth prospects*
 - Income per capita: More prosperous countries generally have a broader and deeper tax base with which to support debt.
 - Trend growth prospects: Trend GDP growth is primarily a reflection of productivity. Above-average trend growth indicates greater ability to service debt from future revenue and, therefore, greater creditworthiness.
 - Sources and stability of growth: Stable, broad-based growth and absence of excessive private sector credit expansion indicate stronger sovereign credit.
 - Size of the public sector relative to private sector: A smaller, leaner public sector is more likely to be able to enact necessary changes because it should be less beholden to special interest groups, including public employee unions.
 - Growth and age distribution of population: A relatively young and growing population contributes to trend GDP growth and an expanding tax base and mitigates the burden of social services, health care, and pensions, which are disproportionately costly for aging populations.

Flexibility and performance profile

- *External liquidity and international investment position*
 - Status of currency: Sovereigns that control a reserve currency or a very actively traded currency are able to use their own currency in many international transactions and are less vulnerable to adverse shifts in global investor portfolios.
 - External liquidity: Countries with a substantial supply of foreign currency (foreign exchange reserves plus current account receipts) relative to projected funding needs in foreign currency (current account payments plus debt maturities) are less vulnerable to interruption of external liquidity.
 - External debt: Countries with low foreign debt relative to current account receipts are better able to service their foreign debt. This is similar to a coverage ratio for a corporation.
- *Fiscal performance, flexibility, and debt burden*

- Trend change in general government debt as a percent of GDP: Stable or declining debt as a percent of GDP indicates a strong credit; a rising ratio is ultimately unsustainable and is, therefore, a sign of diminishing creditworthiness.
 - Perceived willingness and ability to increase revenue or cut expenditure to ensure debt service.
 - General government interest expense as a percent of revenue: Less than 5 percent is good; greater than 15 percent is poor.
 - Net general government debt as a percent of GDP: Less than 30 percent is good; more than 100 percent is poor.
 - Contingent liabilities arising from financial sector, public enterprises, and guarantees: Less than 30 percent of GDP is good; more than 80 percent is very poor.
- *Monetary flexibility*
- *Ability to use monetary policy to address domestic economic objectives* (e.g., growth)
 - Exchange rate regime: A freely floating currency allows maximum effectiveness for monetary policy. A fixed-rate regime limits effectiveness and flexibility. A hard peg, such as a currency board or monetary union, affords no independent monetary policy.
 - *Credibility of monetary policy*
 - Operationally independent central bank: An independent central bank is less likely to “debase the currency” by excessive money creation (e.g., in order to fund government deficits).
 - Clear central bank mandate/objectives
 - Track record of low and stable inflation
 - Central government’s ability to issue substantial long-term, fixed-rate debt in domestic currency: This is a sign of market confidence in the currency as a store of value.
 - *Effectiveness of monetary policy transmission via domestic capital markets*
 - Well-developed banking system
 - Active money market and corporate bond market
 - Greater reliance on market-based policy tools (e.g., open market operations) and limited reliance on blunt, administrative policy tools (e.g., reserve requirements)

In light of a sovereign government’s various powers—taxation, regulation, monetary policy, and ultimately, the sovereign’s ability to “print money” to repay debt—within its own economy, it is virtually always at least as good a credit in its domestic currency as it is in foreign currency. Thus, credit rating agencies often distinguish between domestic and foreign bonds, with domestic bond ratings as much as two notches higher. Of course, if a sovereign government were to rely heavily on printing money to repay debt, it would fuel high inflation or hyperinflation and increase default risk on domestic debt as well.⁴⁴

⁴⁴ According to Reinhart and Rogoff in their book *This Time is Different*, between 1800 and 2009 there have been more than 250 defaults on foreign sovereign debt and at least 68 defaults on domestic debt. Reinhart and Rogoff use a broader definition of default that includes very high levels of inflation (more than 20 percent).

EXAMPLE 11**Sovereign Debt**

Exhibit 22 shows several key sovereign statistics for Portugal.

Exhibit 22 Key Sovereign Statistics for Portugal

€ (billions), except where noted	2005	2006	2007	2008	2009	2010
Nominal GDP	153.7	160.3	169.3	171.2	168.6	172.6
Population (millions)	10.6	10.6	10.6	10.6	10.6	10.6
Unemployment (%)	8.6	8.6	8.9	8.5	10.6	12.0
Exports as share GDP (%)	20.3	22.2	22.6	22.6	18.8	21.3
Current account as share GDP (%)	-10.3	-10.7	-10.1	-12.6	-10.9	-10.0
Government revenues	61.3	64.8	69.7	70.7	67.0	71.8
Government expenditures	70.4	71.4	75.1	77.1	84.1	88.7
Budget balance (surplus/deficit)	-9.0	-6.5	-5.4	-6.4	-17.1	-16.9
Government interest payments	3.8	4.2	5.1	5.3	4.9	5.2
Primary balance (surplus/deficit)	-5.3	-2.2	-0.4	-1.1	-12.2	-11.7
Government debt	96.5	102.4	115.6	123.1	139.9	161.3
Interest rate on new debt (%)	3.4	3.9	4.4	4.5	4.2	5.4

Sources: Based on data from Haver Analytics, Eurostat, and Instituto Nacional de Estatística (Portugal).

- 1 Calculate the government debt/GDP ratio for Portugal over the years 2005–2010.
- 2 Calculate GDP/Capita for the same period.
- 3 Based on those calculations, as well as other data from Exhibit 22, what can you say about Portugal's credit trend?

Solutions to 1 and 2:

	2005	2006	2007	2008	2009	2010
Gross government debt/GDP	63%	64%	68%	72%	83%	93%
GDP/Capita	14,500	15,123	15,972	16,151	15,906	16,283

Solution to 3:

The credit trend is deteriorating. Government debt/GDP is rising rapidly. The government is running a budget deficit, and the country is running a sizable current account deficit, which means it must attract funding from outside the country. Interest payments are generally rising, as is the interest rate on new debt.

7.3 Non-Sovereign Government Debt

Sovereigns are the largest issuers of government debt but non-sovereign—sometimes called sub-sovereign or local—governments and the quasi-government entities that are created by governments issue bonds as well. The non-sovereign or local governments include governments of states, provinces, regions and cities. For example, the City of Tokyo (Tokyo Metropolitan Government) has debt outstanding, as does the Lombardy region in Italy, the City of Buenos Aires in Argentina, and the State of California in the United States. Local government bonds may be referred to as municipal bonds.

However, when people talk about municipal bonds, they are usually referring to US municipal bonds, which represent one of the largest bond markets. In 3rd quarter 2011, the US municipal bond market was approximately \$3.7 trillion in size, roughly 10 percent of the total US bond market.⁴⁵ The US municipal bond market is composed of both tax-exempt⁴⁶ and, to a lesser extent, taxable bonds issued by state and city governments and their agencies. Municipal borrowers may also issue bonds on behalf of private entities, such as non-profit colleges or hospitals. Historically, for any given rating category, these bonds have much lower default rates than corporate bonds with the same ratings. For example, according to Moody's Investors Service, the 10-year average cumulative default rate from 1970 through 2009 was 0.09 percent for municipal bonds, compared with an 11.06 percent 10-year average cumulative default rate for all corporate debt.⁴⁷

The majority of local government bonds, including municipal bonds, are either general obligation bonds or revenue bonds. General obligation (GO) bonds are unsecured bonds issued with the full faith and credit of the issuing non-sovereign government. These bonds are supported by the taxing authority of the issuer. Revenue bonds are issued for specific project financing (e.g., financing for a new sewer system, a toll road, bridge, hospital, a sports arena, etc.).

The credit analysis of GO bonds has some similarities to sovereign debt analysis (e.g., the ability to levy and collect taxes and fees to help service debt) but also some differences. For example, almost without exception, US municipalities must balance their operating budgets (i.e., exclusive of long-term capital projects) annually. Non-sovereign governments are unable to use monetary policy the way many sovereigns can.

The economic analysis of non-sovereign government GO bonds, including US municipal bonds, focuses on employment, per capita income (and changes in it over time), per capita debt (and changes in it over time), the tax base (depth, breadth, diversification, stability, etc.), demographics, and net population growth, as well as an analysis of whether the area represented by the non-sovereign government has the infrastructure and location to attract and support new jobs. Analysis should look at the volatility and variability of revenues during times of both economic strength and weakness. An overreliance on one or two types of tax revenue—particularly a volatile

⁴⁵ Securities Industry and Financial Markets Association (SIFMA), "Outstanding US Bond Market Data," (Q3 2011).

⁴⁶ Tax exempt refers to the fact that interest received on these bonds is not subject to US federal income taxes and, in many cases, is exempt for in-state residents from state and city income taxes as well.

⁴⁷ Moody's Investors Service, "US Municipal Bond Defaults and Recoveries, 1970–2009," Moody's Special Comment (February 2010).

one, such as capital gains taxes or sales taxes—can signal increased credit risk. Pensions and other post-retirement obligations may not show up directly on the non-sovereign government's balance sheet, and many of these entities have underfunded pensions that need to be addressed. Adding the unfunded pension and post-retirement obligations to the debt reveals a more realistic picture of the issuer's debt and longer-term obligations. The relative ease or difficulty in managing the annual budgeting process and the government's ability to operate consistently within its budget are also important credit analysis considerations.

Disclosure by non-sovereign governments varies widely, with some of the smaller issuers providing limited financial information. Reporting requirements are inconsistent, so the financial reports may not be available for six months or more after the closing of a reporting period.

Exhibit 23 compares several key debt statistics from two of the largest states in the United States: California and Texas. California has one of the lowest credit ratings of any of the states, whereas Texas has one of the highest. Note the higher debt burden (and ranking) across several measures: Total debt, Debt/Capita, Debt/Personal income, and debt as a percent of state GDP. What is not shown here is that California also has a higher tax burden and greater difficulty balancing its budget on an annual basis than Texas.

Exhibit 23 Municipal Debt Comparison: California vs. Texas

	California	Texas
Ratings:		
Moody's Investors Service	A1	Aaa
Standard & Poor's	A-	AA+
Fitch	A-	AAA
Unemployment rate (%)	12.40	8.20
Personal income per capita (\$)	43,641	37,774
Debt burden, net (\$/rank):		
Total (millions)	94,715 (1)	15,433 (9)
Per capita	2,542 (8)	612 (39)
As a percent of 2009 personal income	6.00 (9)	1.60 (40)
As a percent of 2010 GDP	4.73 (8)	1.05 (41)

Sources: Based on data from the US Bureau of Labor Statistics (as of 2010), the US Census Bureau (as of 2008), and Moody's Investors Service (as of 2010).

Revenue bonds, which are issued to finance a specific project, have a higher degree of risk than GO bonds because they are dependent on a single source of revenue. The analysis of these bonds is a combination of an analysis of the project and the finances around the particular project. The project analysis focuses on the need and projected utilization of the project, as well as on the economic base supporting the project. The financial analysis has some similarities to the analysis of a corporate bond in that it is focused on operating results, cash flow, liquidity, capital structure, and the ability to service and repay the debt. A key credit measure for revenue-backed non-sovereign government bonds is the debt-service-coverage (DSC) ratio, which measures how much

revenue is available to cover debt payments (principal and interest) after operating expenses. Many revenue bonds have a minimum DSC ratio covenant; the higher the DSC ratio, the stronger the creditworthiness.

SUMMARY

In this reading, we introduced readers to the basic principles of credit analysis. We described the importance of the credit markets and credit and credit-related risks. We discussed the role and importance of credit ratings and the methodology associated with assigning ratings, as well as the risks of relying on credit ratings. The reading covered the key components of credit analysis and the financial measure used to help assess creditworthiness.

We also discussed risk versus return when investing in credit and how spread changes affect holding period returns. In addition, we addressed the special considerations to take into account when doing credit analysis of high-yield companies, sovereign borrowers, and non-sovereign government bonds.

- Credit risk is the risk of loss resulting from the borrower failing to make full and timely payments of interest and/or principal.
- The key components of credit risk are risk of default and loss severity in the event of default. The product of the two is expected loss. Investors in higher-quality bonds tend not to focus on loss severity because default risk for those securities is low.
- Loss severity equals $(1 - \text{Recovery rate})$.
- Credit-related risks include downgrade risk (also called credit migration risk) and market liquidity risk. Either of these can cause yield spreads—yield premiums—to rise and bond prices to fall.
- Downgrade risk refers to a decline in an issuer's creditworthiness. Downgrades will cause its bonds to trade with wider yield spreads and thus lower prices.
- Market liquidity risk refers to a widening of the bid–ask spread on an issuer's bonds. Lower-quality bonds tend to have greater market liquidity risk than higher-quality bonds, and during times of market or financial stress, market liquidity risk rises.
- The composition of an issuer's debt and equity is referred to as its “capital structure.” Debt ranks ahead of all types of equity with respect to priority of payment, and within the debt component of the capital structure, there can be varying levels of seniority.
- With respect to priority of claims, secured debt ranks ahead of unsecured debt, and within unsecured debt, senior debt ranks ahead of subordinated debt. In the typical case, all of an issuer's bonds have the same probability of default due to cross-default provisions in most indentures. Higher priority of claim implies higher recovery rate—lower loss severity—in the event of default.
- For issuers with more complex corporate structures—for example, a parent holding company that has operating subsidiaries—debt at the holding company is structurally subordinated to the subsidiary debt, although the possibility of more diverse assets and earnings streams from other sources could still result in the parent having higher effective credit quality than a particular subsidiary.

- Recovery rates can vary greatly by issuer and industry. They are influenced by the composition of an issuer's capital structure, where in the economic and credit cycle the default occurred, and what the market's view of the future prospects are for the issuer and its industry.
- The priority of claims in bankruptcy is not always absolute. It can be influenced by several factors, including some leeway accorded to bankruptcy judges, government involvement, or a desire on the part of the more senior creditors to settle with the more junior creditors and allow the issuer to emerge from bankruptcy as a going concern, rather than risking smaller and delayed recovery in the event of a liquidation of the borrower.
- Credit rating agencies, such as Moody's, Standard & Poor's, and Fitch, play a central role in the credit markets. Nearly every bond issued in the broad debt markets carries credit ratings, which are opinions about a bond issue's creditworthiness. Credit ratings enable investors to compare the credit risk of debt issues and issuers within a given industry, across industries, and across geographic markets.
- Bonds rated Aaa to Baa3 by Moody's and AAA to BBB- by Standard & Poor's (S&P) and/or Fitch (higher to lower) are referred to as "investment grade." Bonds rated lower than that—Ba1 or lower by Moody's and BB+ or lower by S&P and/or Fitch—are referred to as "below investment grade" or "speculative grade." Below-investment-grade bonds are also called "high-yield" or "junk" bonds.
- The rating agencies rate both issuers and issues. Issuer ratings are meant to address an issuer's overall creditworthiness—its risk of default. Ratings for issues incorporate such factors as their rankings in the capital structure.
- The rating agencies will notch issue ratings up or down to account for such factors as capital structure ranking for secured or subordinated bonds, reflecting different recovery rates in the event of default. Ratings may also be notched due to structural subordination.
- There are risks in relying too much on credit agency ratings. Creditworthiness may change over time, and initial/current ratings do not necessarily reflect the creditworthiness of an issuer or bond over an investor's holding period. Valuations often adjust before ratings change, and the notching process may not adequately reflect the price decline of a bond that is lower ranked in the capital structure. Because ratings primarily reflect the probability of default but not necessarily the severity of loss given default, bonds with the same rating may have significantly different expected losses (default probability times loss severity). And like analysts, credit rating agencies may have difficulty forecasting certain credit-negative outcomes, such as adverse litigation, leveraging corporate transactions, and such low probability/high severity events as earthquakes and hurricanes.
- The role of corporate credit analysis is to assess the company's ability to make timely payments of interest and to repay principal at maturity.
- Credit analysis is similar to equity analysis. It is important to understand, however, that bonds are contracts and that management's duty to bondholders and other creditors is limited to the terms of the contract. In contrast, management's duty to shareholders is to act in their best interest by trying to maximize the value of the company—perhaps even at the expense of bondholders at times.
- Credit analysts tend to focus more on the downside risk given the asymmetry of risk/return, whereas equity analysts focus more on upside opportunity from earnings growth, and so on.

- The “4 Cs” of credit—capacity, collateral, covenants, and character—provide a useful framework for evaluating credit risk.
- Credit analysis focuses on an issuer’s ability to generate cash flow. The analysis starts with an industry assessment—structure and fundamentals—and continues with an analysis of an issuer’s competitive position, management strategy, and track record.
- Credit measures are used to calculate an issuer’s creditworthiness, as well as to compare its credit quality with peer companies. Key credit ratios focus on leverage and interest coverage and use such measures as EBITDA, free cash flow, funds from operations, interest expense and balance sheet debt.
- An issuer’s ability to access liquidity is also an important consideration in credit analysis.
- The higher the credit risk, the greater the offered/required yield and potential return demanded by investors. Over time, bonds with more credit risk offer higher returns but with greater volatility of return than bonds with lower credit risk.
- The yield on a credit-risky bond comprises the yield on a default risk-free bond with a comparable maturity plus a yield premium, or “spread,” that comprises a credit spread and a liquidity premium. That spread is intended to compensate investors for credit risk—risk of default and loss severity in the event of default—and the credit-related risks that can cause spreads to widen and prices to decline—downgrade or credit migration risk and market liquidity risk.

$$\text{Yield spread} = \text{Liquidity premium} + \text{Credit spread.}$$

- In times of financial market stress, the liquidity premium can increase sharply, causing spreads to widen on all credit-risky bonds, with lower-quality issuers most affected. In times of credit improvement or stability, however, credit spreads can narrow sharply as well, providing attractive investment returns.
- Credit curves—the plot of yield spreads for a given bond issuer across the yield curve—are typically upward sloping, with the exception of high premium-priced bonds and distressed bonds, where credit curves can be inverted because of the fear of default, when all creditors at a given ranking in the capital structure will receive the same recovery rate without regard to debt maturity.
- The impact of spread changes on holding period returns for credit-risky bonds are a product of two primary factors: the basis point spread change and the sensitivity of price to yield as reflected by (end-of-period) modified duration and convexity. Spread narrowing enhances holding period returns, whereas spread widening has a negative impact on holding period returns. Longer-duration bonds have greater price and return sensitivity to changes in spread than shorter-duration bonds.

$$\text{Price impact} \approx -(\text{MDur} \times \Delta\text{Spread}) + \frac{1}{2}\text{Cvx} \times (\Delta\text{Spread})^2$$

- For high-yield bonds, with their greater risk of default, more emphasis should be placed on an issuer’s sources of liquidity, as well as on its debt structure and corporate structure. Credit risk can vary greatly across an issuer’s debt structure depending on the seniority ranking. Many high-yield companies have complex capital structures, resulting in different levels of credit risk depending on where the debt resides.

- Covenant analysis is especially important for high-yield bonds. Key covenants include payment restrictions, limitation on liens, change of control, coverage maintenance tests (often limited to bank loans), and any guarantees from restricted subsidiaries. Covenant language can be very technical and legalistic, so it may help to seek legal or expert assistance.
- An equity-like approach to high-yield analysis can be helpful. Calculating and comparing enterprise value with EBITDA and debt/EBITDA can show a level of equity “cushion” or support beneath an issuer’s debt.
- Sovereign credit analysis includes assessing both an issuer’s ability and willingness to pay its debt obligations. Willingness to pay is important because, due to sovereign immunity, a sovereign government cannot be forced to pay its debts.
- In assessing sovereign credit risk, a helpful framework is to focus on five broad areas: (1) institutional effectiveness and political risks, (2) economic structure and growth prospects, (3) external liquidity and international investment position, (4) fiscal performance, flexibility, and debt burden, and (5) monetary flexibility.
- Among the characteristics of a high-quality sovereign credit are the absence of corruption and/or challenges to political framework; governmental checks and balances; respect for rule of law and property rights; commitment to honor debts; high per capita income with stable, broad-based growth prospects; control of a reserve or actively traded currency; currency flexibility; low foreign debt and foreign financing needs relative to receipts in foreign currencies; stable or declining ratio of debt to GDP; low debt service as a percent of revenue; low ratio of net debt to GDP; operationally independent central bank; track record of low and stable inflation; and a well-developed banking system and active money market.
- Non-sovereign or local government bonds, including municipal bonds, are typically either general obligation bonds or revenue bonds.
- General obligation (GO) bonds are backed by the taxing authority of the issuing non-sovereign government. The credit analysis of GO bonds has some similarities to sovereign analysis—debt burden per capita versus income per capita, tax burden, demographics, and economic diversity. Underfunded and “off-balance-sheet” liabilities, such as pensions for public employees and retirees, are debt-like in nature.
- Revenue-backed bonds support specific projects, such as toll roads, bridges, airports, and other infrastructure. The creditworthiness comes from the revenues generated by usage fees and tolls levied.

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

- 1 The risk that a bond's creditworthiness declines is *best* described by:
 - A credit migration risk.
 - B market liquidity risk.
 - C spread widening risk.
- 2 Stedsmart Ltd and Fignermo Ltd are alike with respect to financial and operating characteristics, except that Stedsmart Ltd has less publicly traded debt outstanding than Fignermo Ltd. Stedsmart Ltd is *most likely* to have:
 - A no market liquidity risk.
 - B lower market liquidity risk.
 - C higher market liquidity risk.
- 3 In the event of default, the recovery rate of which of the following bonds would *most likely* be the highest?
 - A First mortgage debt
 - B Senior unsecured debt
 - C Junior subordinate debt
- 4 During bankruptcy proceedings of a firm, the priority of claims was not strictly adhered to. Which of the following is the *least likely* explanation for this outcome?
 - A Senior creditors compromised.
 - B The value of secured assets was less than the amount of the claims.
 - C A judge's order resulted in actual claims not adhering to strict priority of claims.
- 5 A fixed income analyst is *least likely* to conduct an independent analysis of credit risk because credit rating agencies:
 - A may at times mis-rate issues.
 - B often lag the market in pricing credit risk.
 - C cannot foresee future debt-financed acquisitions.
- 6 If goodwill makes up a large percentage of a company's total assets, this *most likely* indicates that:
 - A the company has low free cash flow before dividends.
 - B there is a low likelihood that the market price of the company's common stock is below book value.
 - C a large percentage of the company's assets are not of high quality.
- 7 In order to analyze the **collateral** of a company a credit analyst should assess the:
 - A cash flows of the company.
 - B soundness of management's strategy.
 - C value of the company's assets in relation to the level of debt.
- 8 In order to determine the **capacity** of a company, it would be *most* appropriate to analyze the:
 - A company's strategy.

- B** growth prospects of the industry.
- C** aggressiveness of the company's accounting policies.
- 9** A credit analyst is evaluating the credit worthiness of three companies: a construction company, a travel and tourism company, and a beverage company. Both the construction and travel and tourism companies are cyclical, whereas the beverage company is non-cyclical. The construction company has the highest debt level of the three companies. The highest credit risk is *most likely* exhibited by the:
- A** construction company.
- B** beverage company.
- C** travel and tourism company.
- 10** Based on the information provided in Exhibit 1, the EBITDA interest coverage ratio of Adidas AG is *closest* to:
- A** 7.91x.
- B** 10.12x.
- C** 12.99x.

Exhibit 1 Adidas AG Excerpt from Consolidated Income Statement Year Ending 31 December 2010 (€ in millions)

Gross profit	5,730
Royalty and commission income	100
Other operating income	110
Other operating expenses	5,046
Operating profit	894
Interest income	25
Interest expense	113
Income before taxes	806
Income taxes	238
Net income	568

Additional information:

Depreciation and amortization: €249 million

Source: Adidas AG Annual Financial Statements, December 2010

- 11** The following information is from the annual report of Adidas AG for December 2010:
- Depreciation and amortization: €249 million
 - Total assets: €10,618 million
 - Total debt: €1,613 million
 - Shareholders' equity: €4,616 million
- The debt/capital ratio of Adidas AG is *closest* to:
- A** 15.19%.
- B** 25.90%.
- C** 34.94%.

- 12 Funds from operations (FFO) of Pay Handle Ltd increased in 2011. In 2011 the total debt of the company remained unchanged, while additional common shares were issued. Pay Handle Ltd's ability to service its debt in 2011, as compared to 2010, *most likely*:
- A improved.
 - B worsened.
 - C remained the same.
- 13 Based on the information in Exhibit 2, Grupa Zywiec SA's credit risk is *most likely*:
- A lower than the industry.
 - B higher than the industry.
 - C the same as the industry.

Exhibit 2 European Food, Beverage, and Tobacco Industry and Grupa Zywiec SA Selected Financial Ratios for 2010

	Total debt/Total capital (%)	FFO/Total debt (%)	Return on capital (%)	Total debt/EBITDA (x)	EBITDA interest coverage (x)
Grupa Zywiec SA	47.1	77.5	19.6	1.2	17.7
Industry Median	42.4	23.6	6.55	2.85	6.45

- 14 Based on the information in Exhibit 3, the credit rating of Davide Campari-Milano S.p.A. is *most likely*:
- A lower than Associated British Foods plc.
 - B higher than Associated British Foods plc.
 - C the same as Associated British Foods plc.

Exhibit 3 European Food, Beverage, and Tobacco Industry; Associated British Foods plc; and Davide Campari-Milano S.p.A Selected Financial Ratios, 2010

Company	Total debt/total capital (%)	FFO/total debt (%)	Return on capital (%)	Total debt/EBITDA (x)	EBITDA interest coverage (x)
Associated British Foods plc	0.2	84.3	0.1	1.0	13.9
Davide Campari-Milano S.p.A.	42.9	22.9	8.2	3.2	3.2
European Food, Beverage, and Tobacco Median	42.4	23.6	6.55	2.85	6.45

- 15 Holding all other factors constant, the *most likely* effect of low demand and heavy new issue supply on bond yield spreads is that yield spreads will:
- A widen.
 - B tighten.
 - C not be affected.
- 16 Credit risk of a corporate bond is *best* described as the:
- A risk that an issuer's creditworthiness deteriorates.
 - B probability that the issuer fails to make full and timely payments.
 - C risk of loss resulting from the issuer failing to make full and timely payments.
- 17 The risk that the price at which investors can actually transact differs from the quoted price in the market is called:
- A spread risk.
 - B credit migration risk.
 - C market liquidity risk.
- 18 Loss severity is *best* described as the:
- A default probability multiplied by the loss given default.
 - B portion of a bond's value recovered by bondholders in the event of default.
 - C portion of a bond's value, including unpaid interest, an investor loses in the event of default.
- 19 The two components of credit risk are default probability and:
- A spread risk.
 - B loss severity.
 - C market liquidity risk.
- 20 For a high-quality debt issuer with a large amount of publicly traded debt, bond investors tend to devote *most* effort to assessing the issuer's:
- A default risk.
 - B loss severity.
 - C market liquidity risk.
- 21 The expected loss for a given debt instrument is estimated as the product of default probability and:
- A $(1 + \text{Recovery rate})$.
 - B $(1 - \text{Recovery rate})$.
 - C $1/(1 + \text{Recovery rate})$.
- 22 The priority of claims for senior subordinated debt is:
- A lower than for senior unsecured debt.
 - B the same as for senior unsecured debt.
 - C higher than for senior unsecured debt.
- 23 A senior unsecured credit instrument holds a higher priority of claims than one ranked as:
- A mortgage debt.
 - B second lien loan.
 - C senior subordinated.
- 24 In a bankruptcy proceeding, when the absolute priority of claims is enforced:
- A senior subordinated creditors rank above second lien holders.

- B preferred equity shareholders rank above unsecured creditors.
 - C creditors with a secured claim have the first right to the value of that specific property.
- 25 In the event of default, which of the following is *most likely* to have the highest recovery rate?
- A Second lien
 - B Senior unsecured
 - C Senior subordinated
- 26 The process of moving credit ratings of different issues up or down from the issuer rating in response to different payment priorities is *best* described as:
- A notching.
 - B structural subordination.
 - C cross-default provisions.
- 27 The factor considered by rating agencies when a corporation has debt at both its parent holding company and operating subsidiaries is *best* referred to as:
- A credit migration risk.
 - B corporate family rating.
 - C structural subordination.
- 28 Which type of security is *most likely* to have the same rating as the issuer?
- A Preferred stock
 - B Senior secured bond
 - C Senior unsecured bond
- 29 Which of the following corporate debt instruments has the highest seniority ranking?
- A Second lien
 - B Senior unsecured
 - C Senior subordinated
- 30 An issuer credit rating usually applies to a company's:
- A secured debt.
 - B subordinated debt.
 - C senior unsecured debt.
- 31 The rating agency process whereby the credit ratings on issues are moved up or down from the issuer rating *best* describes:
- A notching.
 - B pari passu ranking.
 - C cross-default provisions.
- 32 The notching adjustment for corporate bonds rated Aa2/AA is *most likely*:
- A larger than the notching adjustment for corporate bonds rated B2/B.
 - B the same as the notching adjustment for corporate bonds rated B2/B.
 - C smaller than the notching adjustment for corporate bonds rated B2/B.
- 33 Which of the following statements about credit ratings is *most accurate*?
- A Credit ratings can migrate over time.
 - B Changes in bond credit ratings precede changes in bond prices.
 - C Credit ratings are focused on expected loss rather than risk of default.

- 34 Which industry characteristic *most likely* has a positive effect on a company's ability to service debt?
- A Low barriers to entry in the industry
 - B High number of suppliers to the industry
 - C Broadly dispersed market share among large number of companies in the industry
- 35 When determining the capacity of a borrower to service debt, a credit analyst should begin with an examination of:
- A industry structure.
 - B industry fundamentals.
 - C company fundamentals.
- 36 Which of the following accounting issues should *mostly likely* be considered a character warning flag in credit analysis?
- A Expensing items immediately
 - B Changing auditors infrequently
 - C Significant off-balance-sheet financing
- 37 In credit analysis, capacity is *best* described as the:
- A quality of management.
 - B ability of the borrower to make its debt payments on time.
 - C quality and value of the assets supporting an issuer's indebtedness.
- 38 Among the Four Cs of credit analysis, the recognition of revenue prematurely *most likely* reflects a company's:
- A character.
 - B covenants.
 - C collateral.

Use the following Exhibit for Questions 39 and 40

Exhibit 4 Industrial Comparative Ratio Analysis, Year 20XX

	EBITDA Margin (%)	Return on Capital (%)	EBIT/ Interest Expense (x)	EBITDA/ Interest Expense (x)	Debt/ EBITDA (x)	Debt/ Capital (%)
Company A	25.1	25.0	15.9	19.6	1.6	35.2
Company B	29.6	36.3	58.2	62.4	0.5	15.9
Company C	21.8	16.6	8.9	12.4	2.5	46.3

- 39 Based on only the leverage ratios in Exhibit 4, the company with the *highest* credit risk is:
- A Company A.
 - B Company B.
 - C Company C.

- 40 Based on only the coverage ratios in Exhibit 4, the company with the *highest* credit quality is:
- A Company A.
 - B Company B.
 - C Company C.

Use the following Exhibits for Questions 41 and 42

Exhibit 5 Consolidated Income Statement (£ millions)

	Company X	Company Y
Net revenues	50.7	83.7
Operating expenses	49.6	70.4
Operating income	1.1	13.3
Interest income	0.0	0.0
Interest expense	0.6	0.8
Income before income taxes	0.5	12.5
Provision for income taxes	-0.2	-3.5
Net income	0.3	9.0

Exhibit 6 Consolidated Balance Sheets (£ millions)

	Company X	Company Y
ASSETS		
Current assets	10.3	21.9
Property, plant, and equipment, net	3.5	20.1
Goodwill	8.3	85.0
Other assets	0.9	5.1
Total assets	23.0	132.1
LIABILITIES AND SHAREHOLDERS' EQUITY		
Current liabilities		
Accounts payable and accrued expenses	8.4	16.2
Short-term debt	0.5	8.7

Exhibit 6 (Continued)

	Company X	Company Y
Total current liabilities	8.9	24.9
Long-term debt	11.7	21.1
Other non-current liabilities	1.1	22.1
Total liabilities	21.7	68.1
Total shareholders' equity	1.3	64.0
Total liabilities and shareholders' equity	23.0	132.1

Exhibit 7 Consolidated Statements of Cash Flow (£ millions)

	Company X	Company Y
CASH FLOWS FROM OPERATING ACTIVITIES		
Net income	0.3	9.0
Depreciation	1.0	3.8
Goodwill impairment	2.0	1.6
Changes in working capital	0.0	-0.4
Net cash provided by operating activities	3.3	14.0
CASH FLOWS FROM INVESTING ACTIVITIES		
Additions to property and equipment	-1.0	-4.0
Additions to marketable securities	-0.1	0.0
Proceeds from sale of property and equipment	0.2	2.9
Proceeds from sale of marketable securities	0.3	0.0
Net cash used in investing activities	-0.6	-1.1
CASH FLOWS FROM FINANCING ACTIVITIES		
Repurchase of common stock	-1.5	-4.0
Dividends to shareholders	-0.3	-6.1
Change in short-term debt	0.0	-3.4
Additions to long-term debt	3.9	3.9
Reductions in long-term debt	-3.4	-2.5
Net cash – financing activities	-1.3	-12.1

(continued)

Exhibit 7 (Continued)

	Company X	Company Y
NET INCREASE IN CASH AND CASH EQUIVALENTS	1.4	0.8

- 41 Based on Exhibits 5–7, in comparison to Company X, Company Y has a higher:
- A debt/capital ratio.
 - B debt/EBITDA ratio.
 - C free cash flow after dividends/debt ratio.
- 42 Based on Exhibits 5–7, in comparison to Company Y, Company X has greater:
- A leverage.
 - B interest coverage.
 - C operating profit margin.
-
- 43 Credit yield spreads *most likely* widen in response to:
- A high demand for bonds.
 - B weak performance of equities.
 - C strengthening economic conditions.
- 44 The factor that *most likely* results in corporate credit spreads widening is:
- A an improving credit cycle.
 - B weakening economic conditions.
 - C a period of high demand for bonds.
- 45 Credit spreads are *most likely* to widen:
- A in a strengthening economy.
 - B as the credit cycle improves.
 - C in periods of heavy new issue supply and low borrower demand.
- 46 Which of the following factors in credit analysis is more important for general obligation non-sovereign government debt than for sovereign debt?
- A Per capita income
 - B Power to levy and collect taxes
 - C Requirement to balance an operating budget
- 47 In contrast to high-yield credit analysis, investment-grade analysis is *more likely* to rely on:
- A spread risk.
 - B an assessment of bank credit facilities.
 - C matching of liquidity sources to upcoming debt maturities.
- 48 Which of the following factors would *best* justify a decision to avoid investing in a country's sovereign debt?
- A Freely floating currency

- B A population that is not growing
- C Suitable checks and balances in policymaking

SOLUTIONS

- 1 A is correct. Credit migration risk or downgrade risk refers to the risk that a bond issuer's creditworthiness may deteriorate or migrate lower. The result is that investors view the risk of default to be higher, causing the spread on the issuer's bonds to widen.
- 2 C is correct. Market liquidity risk refers to the risk that the price at which investors transact may be different from the price indicated in the market. Market liquidity risk is increased by (1) less debt outstanding and/or (2) a lower issue credit rating. Because Stedsmart Ltd is comparable to Fignermo Ltd except for less publicly traded debt outstanding, it should have higher market liquidity risk.
- 3 A is correct. First mortgage debt is senior secured debt and has the highest priority of claims. First mortgage debt also has the highest expected recovery rate. First mortgage debt refers to the pledge of specific property. Neither senior unsecured nor junior subordinate debt has any claims on specific assets.
- 4 B is correct. Whether or not secured assets are sufficient for the claims against them does not influence priority of claims. Any deficiency between pledged assets and the claims against them becomes senior unsecured debt and still adheres to the guidelines of priority of claims.
- 5 C is correct. Both analysts and ratings agencies have difficulty foreseeing future debt-financed acquisitions.
- 6 C is correct. Goodwill is viewed as a lower quality asset compared with tangible assets that can be sold and more easily converted into cash.
- 7 C is correct. The value of assets in relation to the level of debt is important to assess the collateral of the company; that is, the quality and value of the assets that support the debt levels of the company.
- 8 B is correct. The growth prospects of the industry provide the analyst insight regarding the capacity of the company.
- 9 A is correct. The construction company is both highly leveraged, which increases credit risk, and in a highly cyclical industry, which results in more volatile earnings.
- 10 B is correct. The interest expense is €113 million and $EBITDA = \text{Operating profit} + \text{Depreciation and amortization} = €894 + 249 \text{ million} = €1,143 \text{ million}$. $EBITDA \text{ interest coverage} = EBITDA / \text{Interest expense} = 1,143 / 113 = 10.12 \text{ times}$.
- 11 B is correct. Total debt is €1,613 million with $\text{Total capital} = \text{Total debt} + \text{Shareholders' equity} = €1,613 + 4,616 = €6,229 \text{ million}$. The $\text{Debt/Capital ratio} = 1,613 / 6,229 = 25.90\%$.
- 12 A is correct. If the debt of the company remained unchanged but FFO increased, more cash is available to service debt compared to the previous year. Additionally, the debt/capital ratio has improved. It would imply that the ability of Pay Handle Ltd to service their debt has improved.
- 13 A is correct. Based on four of the five credit ratios, Grupa Zywiec SA's credit quality is superior to that of the industry.
- 14 A is correct. Davide Campari-Milano S.p.A. has more financial leverage and less interest coverage than Associated British Foods plc, which implies greater credit risk.

- 15 A is correct. Low demand implies wider yield spreads, while heavy supply will widen spreads even further.
- 16 C is correct. Credit risk is the risk of loss resulting from the borrower failing to make full and timely payments of interest and/or principal.
- 17 C is correct. Market liquidity risk is the risk that the price at which investors can actually transact—buying or selling—may differ from the price indicated in the market.
- 18 C is correct. Loss severity is the portion of a bond's value (including unpaid interest) an investor loses in the event of default.
- 19 B is correct. The two components of credit risk are default probability and loss severity. In the event of default, loss severity is the portion of a bond's value (including unpaid interest) an investor loses. A and C are incorrect because spread and market liquidity risk are credit-related risks, not components of credit risk.
- 20 A is correct. Credit risk has two components: default risk and loss severity. Because default risk is quite low for most high-quality debt issuers, bond investors tend to focus more on this likelihood and less on the potential loss severity.
- 21 B is correct. The expected loss for a given debt instrument is the default probability multiplied by the loss severity given default. The loss severity is often expressed as $(1 - \text{Recovery rate})$.
- 22 A is correct. Senior subordinated debt is ranked lower than senior unsecured debt and thus has a lower priority of payment.
- 23 C is correct. The highest-ranked unsecured debt is senior unsecured debt. Lower-ranked debt includes senior subordinated debt. A and B are incorrect because mortgage debt and second lien loans are secured and higher ranked.
- 24 C is correct. According to the absolute priority of claims, in the event of bankruptcy, creditors with a secured claim have the right to the value of that specific property before any other claim.
- 25 A is correct. A second lien has a secured interest in the pledged assets. Second lien debt ranks higher in priority of payment than senior unsecured and senior subordinated debt and thus would most likely have a higher recovery rate.
- 26 A is correct. Notching is the process for moving ratings up or down relative to the issuer rating when rating agencies consider secondary factors, such as priority of claims in the event of a default and the potential loss severity.
- 27 C is correct. Structural subordination can arise when a corporation with a holding company structure has debt at both its parent holding company and operating subsidiaries. Debt at the operating subsidiaries is serviced by the cash flow and assets of the subsidiaries before funds are passed to the parent holding company.
- 28 C is correct. The issuer credit rating usually applies to its senior unsecured debt.
- 29 A is correct. Second lien debt is secured debt, which is senior to unsecured debt and to subordinated debt.
- 30 C is correct. An issuer credit rating usually applies to its senior unsecured debt.
- 31 A is correct. Recognizing different payment priorities, and thus the potential for higher (or lower) loss severity in the event of default, the rating agencies have adopted a notching process whereby their credit ratings on issues can be moved up or down from the issuer rating (senior unsecured).

- 32** C is correct. As a general rule, the higher the senior unsecured rating, the smaller the notching adjustment. Thus, for corporate bonds rated Aa2/AA, the rating agencies will typically apply smaller rating adjustments, or notches, to the related issue.
- 33** A is correct. Credit migration is the risk that a bond issuer's creditworthiness deteriorates, or migrates lower. Over time, credit ratings can migrate significantly from what they were at the time a bond was issued. An investor should not assume that an issuer's credit rating will remain the same from the time of purchase through the entire holding period.
- 34** B is correct. An industry with a high number of suppliers reduces the suppliers' negotiating power, thus helping companies control expenses and aiding in the servicing of debt.
- 35** A is correct. Credit analysis starts with industry structure—for example, by looking at the major forces of competition, followed by an analysis of industry fundamentals—and then turns to examination of the specific issuer.
- 36** C is correct. Credit analysts can make judgments about management's character by evaluating the use of aggressive accounting policies, such as timing revenue recognition. This activity is a potential warning flag for other behaviors or actions that may adversely affect an issuer's creditworthiness.
- 37** B is correct. Capacity refers to the ability of a borrower to service its debt. Capacity is determined through credit analysis of an issuer's industry and of the specific issuer.
- 38** A is correct. Credit analysts can make judgments about management's character in a number of ways, including by observing its use of aggressive accounting policies and/or tax strategies. An example of this aggressiveness is recognizing revenue prematurely.
- 39** C is correct. The debt/capital and debt/EBITDA ratios are used to assess a company's leverage. Higher leverage ratios indicate more leverage and thus higher credit risk. Company C's debt/capital (46.3%) and debt/EBITDA (2.5×) leverage ratios are higher than those for Companies A and B.
- 40** B is correct. The EBITDA/interest expense and EBIT/interest expense ratios are coverage ratios. Coverage ratios measure an issuer's ability to meet its interest payments. A higher ratio indicates better credit quality. Company B's EBITDA/interest expense (62.4×) and EBIT/interest expense (58.2×) coverage ratios are higher than those for Companies A and C.
- 41** C is correct because Company Y has a higher ratio of free cash flow after dividends to debt than Company X, not lower, as shown in the following table.

$$\text{Free cash flow after dividends as a \% of debt} = \frac{\text{FCF after dividends}}{\text{Debt}}$$

	Company X	Company Y
Cash flow from operations	£3.3	£14.0
Less		
Net capital expenditures	-0.8	-1.1
Dividends	-0.3	-6.1
Free cash flow after dividends	£2.2	£6.8
Debt	£12.2	£29.8

	Company X	Company Y
Free cash flow after dividends as a % of debt	$(2.2/12.2) \times 100$	$(6.8/29.8) \times 100$
Free cash flow after dividends as a % of debt	18.0%	22.8%

A is incorrect. Company Y has a lower debt/capital ratio than Company X, as shown in the following table.

$$\text{Debt divided by Capital (\%)} = \frac{\text{Debt}}{(\text{Debt} + \text{Equity})}$$

	Company X	Company Y
Debt	£12.2	£29.8
Capital		
Debt	12.2	29.8
+ Equity	1.3	64.0
Capital	£13.5	£93.8
Debt/Capital (%)	$(12.2/13.5) \times 100$	$(29.8/93.8) \times 100$
Debt/Capital (%)	90.4%	31.8%

B is incorrect because Company Y has a lower debt/EBITDA ratio than Company X, not higher, as shown in the following table.

	Company X	Company Y
Operating income	£1.1	£13.3
EBIT	£1.1	£13.3
plus		
Depreciation	1.0	3.8
Amortization	0.0	0.0
EBITDA	£2.1	£17.1
Debt	£12.2	£29.8
Debt/EBITDA	12.2/2.1	29.8/17.1
Debt/EBITDA	5.81	1.74

- 42 A is correct. Compared with Company Y, based on both their debt/capital ratios and their ratios of free cash flow after dividends to debt, which are measures of leverage commonly used in credit analysis, Company X is more highly leveraged, as shown in the following table.

$$\text{Debt divided by Capital (\%)} = \frac{\text{Debt}}{(\text{Debt} + \text{Equity})}$$

	Company X	Company Y
Debt	£2.2	£29.8

(continued)

	Company X	Company Y
Capital		
Debt	2.2	29.8
+ Equity	4.3	64.0
Capital	£6.5	£93.8
Debt/Capital (%)	$(12.2/13.5) \times 100$	$(29.8/93.8) \times 100$
Debt/Capital (%)	90.4%	31.8%

$$\text{Free cash flow after dividends as a \% of debt} = \frac{\text{FCF after dividends}}{\text{Debt}}$$

	Company X	Company Y
Cash flow from operations	£3.3	£14.0
Less		
Net capital expenditures	-0.8	-1.1
Dividends	-0.3	-6.1
Free cash flow after dividends	£2.2	£6.8
Debt	£12.2	£29.8
Free cash flow after dividends as a % of debt	$(2.2/12.2) \times 100$	$(6.8/29.8) \times 100$
Free cash flow after dividends as a % of debt	18.0%	22.8%

- 43** B is correct. In weak financial markets, including weak markets for equities, credit spreads will widen.
- 44** B is correct. Weakening economic conditions will push investors to desire a greater risk premium and drive overall credit spreads wider.
- 45** C is correct. In periods of heavy new issue supply, credit spreads will widen if demand is insufficient.
- 46** C is correct. Non-sovereign governments typically must balance their operating budgets and lack the discretion to use monetary policy as many sovereigns can.
- 47** A is correct. Most investors in investment-grade debt focus on spread risk—that is, the effect of changes in spreads on prices and returns—while in high-yield analysis, the focus on default risk is relatively greater.
- 48** B is correct. Among the most important considerations in sovereign credit analysis is growth and age distribution of population. A relatively young and growing population contributes to growth in GDP and an expanding tax base and relies less on social services, pensions, and health care relative to an older population.

Glossary

- A priori probability** A probability based on logical analysis rather than on observation or personal judgment.
- Abnormal return** The amount by which a security's actual return differs from its expected return, given the security's risk and the market's return.
- Absolute advantage** A country's ability to produce a good or service at a lower absolute cost than its trading partner.
- Absolute dispersion** The amount of variability present without comparison to any reference point or benchmark.
- Absolute frequency** The number of observations in a given interval (for grouped data).
- Accelerated book build** An offering of securities by an investment bank acting as principal that is accomplished in only one or two days.
- Accelerated methods** Depreciation methods that allocate a relatively large proportion of the cost of an asset to the early years of the asset's useful life.
- Accounting costs** Monetary value of economic resources used in performing an activity. These can be explicit, out-of-pocket, current payments, or an allocation of historical payments (depreciation) for resources. They do not include implicit opportunity costs.
- Accounting profit** Income as reported on the income statement, in accordance with prevailing accounting standards, before the provisions for income tax expense. Also called *income before taxes* or *pretax income*.
- Accounts payable** Amounts that a business owes to its vendors for goods and services that were purchased from them but which have not yet been paid.
- Accounts receivable turnover** Ratio of sales on credit to the average balance in accounts receivable.
- Accrued expenses** Liabilities related to expenses that have been incurred but not yet paid as of the end of an accounting period—an example of an accrued expense is rent that has been incurred but not yet paid, resulting in a liability "rent payable." Also called *accrued liabilities*.
- Accrued interest** Interest earned but not yet paid.
- Acid-test ratio** A stringent measure of liquidity that indicates a company's ability to satisfy current liabilities with its most liquid assets, calculated as (cash + short-term marketable investments + receivables) divided by current liabilities.
- Acquisition method** A method of accounting for a business combination where the acquirer is required to measure each identifiable asset and liability at fair value. This method was the result of a joint project of the IASB and FASB aiming at convergence in standards for the accounting of business combinations.
- Action lag** Delay from policy decisions to implementation.
- Active investment** An approach to investing in which the investor seeks to outperform a given benchmark.
- Active return** The return on a portfolio minus the return on the portfolio's benchmark.
- Active strategy** In reference to short-term cash management, an investment strategy characterized by monitoring and attempting to capitalize on market conditions to optimize the risk and return relationship of short-term investments.
- Activity ratios** Ratios that measure how efficiently a company performs day-to-day tasks, such as the collection of receivables and management of inventory. Also called *asset utilization ratios* or *operating efficiency ratios*.
- Add-on rates** Bank certificates of deposit, repos, and indexes such as Libor and Euribor are quoted on an add-on rate basis (bond equivalent yield basis).
- Addition rule for probabilities** A principle stating that the probability that *A* or *B* occurs (both occur) equals the probability that *A* occurs, plus the probability that *B* occurs, minus the probability that both *A* and *B* occur.
- Agency bonds** See *quasi-government bond*.
- Agency RMBS** In the United States, securities backed by residential mortgage loans and guaranteed by a federal agency or guaranteed by either of the two GSEs (Fannie Mae and Freddie Mac).
- Aggregate demand** The quantity of goods and services that households, businesses, government, and foreign customers want to buy at any given level of prices.
- Aggregate demand curve** Inverse relationship between the price level and real output.
- Aggregate income** The value of all the payments earned by the suppliers of factors used in the production of goods and services.
- Aggregate output** The value of all the goods and services produced in a specified period of time.
- Aggregate supply** The quantity of goods and services producers are willing to supply at any given level of price.
- Aggregate supply curve** The level of domestic output that companies will produce at each price level.
- Aging schedule** A breakdown of accounts into categories of days outstanding.
- All-or-nothing (AON) orders** An order that includes the instruction to trade only if the trade fills the entire quantity (size) specified.
- Allocationally efficient** Said of a market, a financial system, or an economy that promotes the allocation of resources to their highest value uses.
- Alternative data** Non-traditional data types generated by the use of electronic devices, social media, satellite and sensor networks, and company exhaust.
- Alternative investment markets** Market for investments other than traditional securities investments (i.e., traditional common and preferred shares and traditional fixed income instruments). The term usually encompasses direct and indirect investment in real estate (including timberland and farmland) and commodities (including precious metals); hedge funds, private equity, and other investments requiring specialized due diligence.
- Alternative trading systems** Trading venues that function like exchanges but that do not exercise regulatory authority over their subscribers except with respect to the conduct of the subscribers' trading in their trading systems. Also called *electronic communications networks* or *multilateral trading facilities*.
- American depository receipt** A US dollar-denominated security that trades like a common share on US exchanges.

- American depository share** The underlying shares on which American depository receipts are based. They trade in the issuing company's domestic market.
- American-style** Said of an option contract that can be exercised at any time up to the option's expiration date.
- Amortisation** The process of allocating the cost of intangible long-term assets having a finite useful life to accounting periods; the allocation of the amount of a bond premium or discount to the periods remaining until bond maturity.
- Amortised cost** The historical cost (initially recognised cost) of an asset, adjusted for amortisation and impairment.
- Amortizing bond** Bond with a payment schedule that calls for periodic payments of interest and repayments of principal.
- Amortizing loan** Loan with a payment schedule that calls for periodic payments of interest and repayments of principal.
- Annual percentage rate** The cost of borrowing expressed as a yearly rate.
- Annuity** A finite set of level sequential cash flows.
- Annuity due** An annuity having a first cash flow that is paid immediately.
- Anticipation stock** Excess inventory that is held in anticipation of increased demand, often because of seasonal patterns of demand.
- Antidilutive** With reference to a transaction or a security, one that would increase earnings per share (EPS) or result in EPS higher than the company's basic EPS—antidilutive securities are not included in the calculation of diluted EPS.
- Arbitrage** 1) The simultaneous purchase of an undervalued asset or portfolio and sale of an overvalued but equivalent asset or portfolio, in order to obtain a riskless profit on the price differential. Taking advantage of a market inefficiency in a risk-free manner. 2) The condition in a financial market in which equivalent assets or combinations of assets sell for two different prices, creating an opportunity to profit at no risk with no commitment of money. In a well-functioning financial market, few arbitrage opportunities are possible. 3) A risk-free operation that earns an expected positive net profit but requires no net investment of money.
- Arbitrage-free pricing** The overall process of pricing derivatives by arbitrage and risk neutrality. Also called the *principle of no arbitrage*.
- Arbitrageurs** Traders who engage in arbitrage. See *arbitrage*.
- Arithmetic mean** The sum of the observations divided by the number of observations.
- Arms index** A flow of funds indicator applied to a broad stock market index to measure the relative extent to which money is moving into or out of rising and declining stocks.
- Artificial intelligence** Computer systems that exhibit cognitive and decision-making ability comparable (or superior) to that of humans.
- Asian call option** A European-style option with a value at maturity equal to the difference between the stock price at maturity and the average stock price during the life of the option, or \$0, whichever is greater.
- Ask** The price at which a dealer or trader is willing to sell an asset, typically qualified by a maximum quantity (ask size). See *offer*.
- Ask size** The maximum quantity of an asset that pertains to a specific ask price from a trader. For example, if the ask for a share issue is \$30 for a size of 1,000 shares, the trader is offering to sell at \$30 up to 1,000 shares.
- Asset allocation** The process of determining how investment funds should be distributed among asset classes.
- Asset-backed securities** A type of bond issued by a legal entity called a *special purpose entity* (SPE) on a collection of assets that the SPE owns. Also, securities backed by receivables and loans other than mortgages.
- Asset-based loan** A loan that is secured with company assets.
- Asset-based valuation models** Valuation based on estimates of the market value of a company's assets.
- Asset beta** The unlevered beta; reflects the business risk of the assets; the asset's systematic risk.
- Asset class** A group of assets that have similar characteristics, attributes, and risk/return relationships.
- Asset swap** Converts the periodic fixed coupon of a specific bond to a Libor plus or minus a spread.
- Asset utilization ratios** Ratios that measure how efficiently a company performs day-to-day tasks, such as the collection of receivables and management of inventory.
- Assets** Resources controlled by an enterprise as a result of past events and from which future economic benefits to the enterprise are expected to flow.
- Assignment of accounts receivable** The use of accounts receivable as collateral for a loan.
- At the money** An option in which the underlying's price equals the exercise price.
- Auction** A type of bond issuing mechanism often used for sovereign bonds that involves bidding.
- Autarkic price** The price of a good or service in an autarkic economy.
- Autarky** A state in which a country does not trade with other countries.
- Automated Clearing House (ACH)** An electronic payment network available to businesses, individuals, and financial institutions in the United States, US Territories, and Canada.
- Automatic stabilizer** A countercyclical factor that automatically comes into play as an economy slows and unemployment rises.
- Available-for-sale** Debt and equity securities not classified as either held-to-maturity or held-for-trading securities. The investor is willing to sell but not actively planning to sell. In general, available-for-sale securities are reported at fair value on the balance sheet.
- Average fixed cost** Total fixed cost divided by quantity produced.
- Average life** See *weighted average life*.
- Average product** Measures the productivity of inputs on average and is calculated by dividing total product by the total number of units for a given input that is used to generate that output.
- Average revenue** Total revenue divided by quantity sold.
- Average total cost** Total cost divided by quantity produced.
- Average variable cost** Total variable cost divided by quantity produced.
- Back simulation** Another term for the historical method of estimating VaR. This term is somewhat misleading in that the method involves not a *simulation* of the past but rather what *actually happened* in the past, sometimes adjusted to reflect the fact that a different portfolio may have existed in the past than is planned for the future.
- Back-testing** With reference to portfolio strategies, the application of a strategy's portfolio selection rules to historical data to assess what would have been the strategy's historical performance.

- Backup lines of credit** A type of credit enhancement provided by a bank to an issuer of commercial paper to ensure that the issuer will have access to sufficient liquidity to repay maturing commercial paper if issuing new paper is not a viable option.
- Balance of payments** A double-entry bookkeeping system that summarizes a country's economic transactions with the rest of the world for a particular period of time, typically a calendar quarter or year.
- Balance of trade deficit** When the domestic economy is spending more on foreign goods and services than foreign economies are spending on domestic goods and services.
- Balance sheet** The financial statement that presents an entity's current financial position by disclosing resources the entity controls (its assets) and the claims on those resources (its liabilities and equity claims), as of a particular point in time (the date of the balance sheet). Also called *statement of financial position* or *statement of financial condition*.
- Balance sheet ratios** Financial ratios involving balance sheet items only.
- Balanced** With respect to a government budget, one in which spending and revenues (taxes) are equal.
- Balloon payment** Large payment required at maturity to retire a bond's outstanding principal amount.
- Bank discount basis** A quoting convention that annualizes, on a 360-day year, the discount as a percentage of face value.
- Bar chart** A price chart with four bits of data for each time interval—the high, low, opening, and closing prices. A vertical line connects the high and low. A cross-hatch left indicates the opening price and a cross-hatch right indicates the close.
- Barter economy** An economy where economic agents as households, corporations, and governments “pay” for goods and services with another good or service.
- Base rates** The reference rate on which a bank bases lending rates to all other customers.
- Basic EPS** Net earnings available to common shareholders (i.e., net income minus preferred dividends) divided by the weighted average number of common shares outstanding.
- Basis point** Used in stating yield spreads, one basis point equals one-hundredth of a percentage point, or 0.01%.
- Basket of listed depository receipts** An exchange-traded fund (ETF) that represents a portfolio of depository receipts.
- Bearer bonds** Bonds for which ownership is not recorded; only the clearing system knows who the bond owner is.
- Behavioral finance** A field of finance that examines the psychological variables that affect and often distort the investment decision making of investors, analysts, and portfolio managers.
- Behind the market** Said of prices specified in orders that are worse than the best current price; e.g., for a limit buy order, a limit price below the best bid.
- Benchmark** A comparison portfolio; a point of reference or comparison.
- Benchmark issue** The latest sovereign bond issue for a given maturity. It serves as a benchmark against which to compare bonds that have the same features but that are issued by another type of issuer.
- Benchmark rate** Typically the yield-to-maturity on a government bond having the same, or close to the same, time-to-maturity.
- Benchmark spread** The yield spread over a specific benchmark, usually measured in basis points.
- Bermuda-style** Said of an option contract that can be exercised on specified dates up to the option's expiration date.
- Bernoulli random variable** A random variable having the outcomes 0 and 1.
- Bernoulli trial** An experiment that can produce one of two outcomes.
- Best bid** The highest bid in the market.
- Best effort offering** An offering of a security using an investment bank in which the investment bank, as agent for the issuer, promises to use its best efforts to sell the offering but does not guarantee that a specific amount will be sold.
- Best-in-class** An ESG implementation approach that seeks to identify the most favorable companies in an industry based on ESG considerations.
- Best offer** The lowest offer (ask price) in the market.
- Beta** A measure of the sensitivity of a given investment or portfolio to movements in the overall market.
- Bid** The price at which a dealer or trader is willing to buy an asset, typically qualified by a maximum quantity.
- Bid-ask spread** The difference between the prices at which dealers will buy from a customer (bid) and sell to a customer (offer or ask). It is often used as an indicator of liquidity.
- Bid-offer spread** The difference between the prices at which dealers will buy from a customer (bid) and sell to a customer (offer or ask). It is often used as an indicator of liquidity.
- Bid size** The maximum quantity of an asset that pertains to a specific bid price from a trader.
- Big Data** The vast amount of data being generated by industry, governments, individuals, and electronic devices that arises from both traditional and non-traditional data sources.
- Bilateral loan** A loan from a single lender to a single borrower.
- Binomial model** A model for pricing options in which the underlying price can move to only one of two possible new prices.
- Binomial random variable** The number of successes in n Bernoulli trials for which the probability of success is constant for all trials and the trials are independent.
- Binomial tree** The graphical representation of a model of asset price dynamics in which, at each period, the asset moves up with probability p or down with probability $(1 - p)$.
- Bitcoin** A cryptocurrency using blockchain technology that was created in 2009.
- Block brokers** A broker (agent) that provides brokerage services for large-size trades.
- Blockchain** A type of digital ledger in which information is recorded sequentially and then linked together and secured using cryptographic methods.
- Blue chip** Widely held large market capitalization companies that are considered financially sound and are leaders in their respective industry or local stock market.
- Bollinger Bands** A price-based technical analysis indicator consisting of a moving average plus a higher line representing the moving average plus a set number of standard deviations from average price (for the same number of periods as used to calculate the moving average) and a lower line that is a moving average minus the same number of standard deviations.
- Bond** Contractual agreement between the issuer and the bondholders.

- Bond equivalent yield** A calculation of yield that is annualized using the ratio of 365 to the number of days to maturity. Bond equivalent yield allows for the restatement and comparison of securities with different compounding periods.
- Bond indenture** The governing legal credit agreement, typically incorporated by reference in the prospectus. Also called *trust deed*.
- Bond market vigilantes** Bond market participants who might reduce their demand for long-term bonds, thus pushing up their yields.
- Bond yield plus risk premium approach** An estimate of the cost of common equity that is produced by summing the before-tax cost of debt and a risk premium that captures the additional yield on a company's stock relative to its bonds. The additional yield is often estimated using historical spreads between bond yields and stock yields.
- Bonus issue of shares** A type of dividend in which a company distributes additional shares of its common stock to shareholders instead of cash.
- Book building** Investment bankers' process of compiling a "book" or list of indications of interest to buy part of an offering.
- Book value** The net amount shown for an asset or liability on the balance sheet; book value may also refer to the company's excess of total assets over total liabilities. Also called *carrying value*.
- Boom** An expansionary phase characterized by economic growth "testing the limits" of the economy.
- Bottom-up analysis** With reference to investment selection processes, an approach that involves selection from all securities within a specified investment universe, i.e., without prior narrowing of the universe on the basis of macroeconomic or overall market considerations.
- Break point** In the context of the weighted average cost of capital (WACC), a break point is the amount of capital at which the cost of one or more of the sources of capital changes, leading to a change in the WACC.
- Breakeven point** The number of units produced and sold at which the company's net income is zero (Revenues = Total cost); in the case of perfect competition, the quantity at which price, average revenue, and marginal revenue equal average total cost.
- Bridge financing** Interim financing that provides funds until permanent financing can be arranged.
- Broad money** Encompasses narrow money plus the entire range of liquid assets that can be used to make purchases.
- Broker** 1) An agent who executes orders to buy or sell securities on behalf of a client in exchange for a commission. 2) See *utures commission merchants*.
- Broker-dealer** A financial intermediary (often a company) that may function as a principal (dealer) or as an agent (broker) depending on the type of trade.
- Brokered market** A market in which brokers arrange trades among their clients.
- Budget surplus/deficit** The difference between government revenue and expenditure for a stated fixed period of time.
- Business risk** The risk associated with operating earnings. Operating earnings are uncertain because total revenues and many of the expenditures contributed to produce those revenues are uncertain.
- Buy-side firm** An investment management company or other investor that uses the services of brokers or dealers (i.e., the client of the sell side firms).
- Buyback** A transaction in which a company buys back its own shares. Unlike stock dividends and stock splits, share repurchases use corporate cash.
- Buyout fund** A fund that buys all the shares of a public company so that, in effect, the company becomes private.
- Call** An option that gives the holder the right to buy an underlying asset from another party at a fixed price over a specific period of time.
- Call market** A market in which trades occur only at a particular time and place (i.e., when the market is called).
- Call money rate** The interest rate that buyers pay for their margin loan.
- Call option** An option that gives the holder the right to buy an underlying asset from another party at a fixed price over a specific period of time.
- Call protection** The time during which the issuer of the bond is not allowed to exercise the call option.
- Callable bond** A bond containing an embedded call option that gives the issuer the right to buy the bond back from the investor at specified prices on pre-determined dates.
- Callable common shares** Shares that give the issuing company the option (or right), but not the obligation, to buy back the shares from investors at a call price that is specified when the shares are originally issued.
- Candlestick chart** A price chart with four bits of data for each time interval. A candle indicates the opening and closing price for the interval. The body of the candle is shaded if the opening price was higher than the closing price, and the body is clear if the opening price was lower than the closing price. Vertical lines known as wicks or shadows extend from the top and bottom of the candle to indicate the high and the low prices for the interval.
- Cannibalization** Cannibalization occurs when an investment takes customers and sales away from another part of the company.
- Capacity** The ability of the borrower to make its debt payments on time.
- Capital account** A component of the balance of payments account that measures transfers of capital.
- Capital allocation line** (CAL) A graph line that describes the combinations of expected return and standard deviation of return available to an investor from combining the optimal portfolio of risky assets with the risk-free asset.
- Capital asset pricing model** (CAPM) An equation describing the expected return on any asset (or portfolio) as a linear function of its beta relative to the market portfolio.
- Capital budgeting** The allocation of funds to relatively long-range projects or investments.
- Capital consumption allowance** A measure of the wear and tear (depreciation) of the capital stock that occurs in the production of goods and services.
- Capital deepening investment** Increases the stock of capital relative to labor.
- Capital expenditure** Expenditure on physical capital (fixed assets).
- Capital-indexed bonds** Type of index-linked bond. The coupon rate is fixed but is applied to a principal amount that increases in line with increases in the index during the bond's life.
- Capital lease** See *finance lease*.
- Capital market expectations** An investor's expectations concerning the risk and return prospects of asset classes.

- Capital market line (CML)** The line with an intercept point equal to the risk-free rate that is tangent to the efficient frontier of risky assets; represents the efficient frontier when a risk-free asset is available for investment.
- Capital market securities** Securities with maturities at issuance longer than one year.
- Capital markets** Financial markets that trade securities of longer duration, such as bonds and equities.
- Capital rationing** A capital rationing environment assumes that the company has a fixed amount of funds to invest.
- Capital restrictions** Controls placed on foreigners' ability to own domestic assets and/or domestic residents' ability to own foreign assets.
- Capital stock** The accumulated amount of buildings, machinery, and equipment used to produce goods and services.
- Capital structure** The mix of debt and equity that a company uses to finance its business; a company's specific mixture of long-term financing.
- Captive finance subsidiary** A wholly-owned subsidiary of a company that is established to provide financing of the sales of the parent company.
- Carry** The net of the costs and benefits of holding, storing, or "carrying" an asset.
- Carrying amount** The amount at which an asset or liability is valued according to accounting principles.
- Carrying value** The net amount shown for an asset or liability on the balance sheet; book value may also refer to the company's excess of total assets over total liabilities. For a bond, the purchase price plus (or minus) the amortized amount of the discount (or premium).
- Cartel** Participants in collusive agreements that are made openly and formally.
- Cash collateral account** Form of external credit enhancement whereby the issuer immediately borrows the credit-enhancement amount and then invests that amount, usually in highly rated short-term commercial paper.
- Cash conversion cycle** A financial metric that measures the length of time required for a company to convert cash invested in its operations to cash received as a result of its operations; equal to days of inventory on hand + days of sales outstanding – number of days of payables. Also called *net operating cycle*.
- Cash flow additivity principle** The principle that dollar amounts indexed at the same point in time are additive.
- Cash flow from operating activities** The net amount of cash provided from operating activities.
- Cash flow from operations** The net amount of cash provided from operating activities.
- Cash flow yield** The internal rate of return on a series of cash flows.
- Cash market securities** Money market securities settled on a "same day" or "cash settlement" basis.
- Cash markets** See *spot markets*.
- Cash prices** See *spot prices*.
- Cash-settled forwards** See *non-deliverable forwards*.
- CBOE Volatility Index** A measure of near-term market volatility as conveyed by S&P 500 stock index option prices.
- CD equivalent yield** A yield on a basis comparable to the quoted yield on an interest-bearing money market instrument that pays interest on a 360-day basis; the annualized holding period yield, assuming a 360-day year.
- Central bank funds market** The market in which deposit-taking banks that have an excess reserve with their national central bank can loan money to banks that need funds for maturities ranging from overnight to one year. Called the Federal or Fed funds market in the United States.
- Central bank funds rates** Interest rates at which central bank funds are bought (borrowed) and sold (lent) for maturities ranging from overnight to one year. Called Federal or Fed funds rates in the United States.
- Central banks** The dominant bank in a country, usually with official or semi-official governmental status.
- Certificate of deposit** An instrument that represents a specified amount of funds on deposit with a bank for a specified maturity and interest rate. It is issued in small or large denominations, and can be negotiable or non-negotiable.
- Change in polarity principle** A tenet of technical analysis that once a support level is breached, it becomes a resistance level. The same holds true for resistance levels; once breached, they become support levels.
- Change of control put** A covenant giving bondholders the right to require the issuer to buy back their debt, often at par or at some small premium to par value, in the event that the borrower is acquired.
- Character** The quality of a debt issuer's management.
- Classified balance sheet** A balance sheet organized so as to group together the various assets and liabilities into subcategories (e.g., current and noncurrent).
- Clawback** A requirement that the general partner return any funds distributed as incentive fees until the limited partners have received back their initial investment and a percentage of the total profit.
- Clearing** The process by which the exchange verifies the execution of a transaction and records the participants' identities.
- Clearing instructions** Instructions that indicate how to arrange the final settlement ("clearing") of a trade.
- Clearinghouse** An entity associated with a futures market that acts as middleman between the contracting parties and guarantees to each party the performance of the other.
- Closed economy** An economy that does not trade with other countries; an *autarkic economy*.
- Closed-end fund** A mutual fund in which no new investment money is accepted. New investors invest by buying existing shares, and investors in the fund liquidate by selling their shares to other investors.
- Code of ethics** An established guide that communicates an organization's values and overall expectations regarding member behavior. A code of ethics serves as a general guide for how community members should act.
- Coefficient of variation (CV)** The ratio of a set of observations' standard deviation to the observations' mean value.
- Coincident economic indicators** Turning points that are usually close to those of the overall economy; they are believed to have value for identifying the economy's present state.
- Collateral manager** Buys and sells debt obligations for and from the CDO's portfolio of assets (i.e., the collateral) to generate sufficient cash flows to meet the obligations to the CDO bondholders.
- Collateral trust bonds** Bonds secured by securities such as common shares, other bonds, or other financial assets.
- Collateralized bond obligations** A structured asset-backed security that is collateralized by a pool of bonds.

- Collateralized debt obligation** Generic term used to describe a security backed by a diversified pool of one or more debt obligations.
- Collateralized loan obligations** A structured asset-backed security that is collateralized by a pool of loans.
- Collateralized mortgage obligation** A security created through the securitization of a pool of mortgage-related products (mortgage pass-through securities or pools of loans).
- Collaterals** Assets or financial guarantees underlying a debt obligation that are above and beyond the issuer's promise to pay.
- Combination** A listing in which the order of the listed items does not matter.
- Commercial paper** A short-term, negotiable, unsecured promissory note that represents a debt obligation of the issuer.
- Committed capital** The amount that the limited partners have agreed to provide to the private equity fund.
- Committed lines of credit** A bank commitment to extend credit up to a pre-specified amount; the commitment is considered a short-term liability and is usually in effect for 364 days (one day short of a full year).
- Commodity swap** A swap in which the underlying is a commodity such as oil, gold, or an agricultural product.
- Common market** Level of economic integration that incorporates all aspects of the customs union and extends it by allowing free movement of factors of production among members.
- Common shares** A type of security that represent an ownership interest in a company.
- Common-size analysis** The restatement of financial statement items using a common denominator or reference item that allows one to identify trends and major differences; an example is an income statement in which all items are expressed as a percent of revenue.
- Common stock** See *common shares*.
- Company analysis** Analysis of an individual company.
- Comparable company** A company that has similar business risk; usually in the same industry and preferably with a single line of business.
- Comparative advantage** A country's ability to produce a good or service at a lower relative cost, or opportunity cost, than its trading partner.
- Competitive strategy** A company's plans for responding to the threats and opportunities presented by the external environment.
- Complements** Goods that tend to be used together; technically, two goods whose cross-price elasticity of demand is negative.
- Complete markets** Informally, markets in which the variety of distinct securities traded is so broad that any desired payoff in a future state-of-the-world is achievable.
- Completed contract** A method of revenue recognition in which the company does not recognize any revenue until the contract is completed; used particularly in long-term construction contracts.
- Component cost of capital** The rate of return required by suppliers of capital for an individual source of a company's funding, such as debt or equity.
- Compounding** The process of accumulating interest on interest.
- Comprehensive income** The change in equity of a business enterprise during a period from nonowner sources; includes all changes in equity during a period except those resulting from investments by owners and distributions to owners; comprehensive income equals net income plus other comprehensive income.
- Conditional expected value** The expected value of a stated event given that another event has occurred.
- Conditional probability** The probability of an event given (conditioned on) another event.
- Conditional variances** The variance of one variable, given the outcome of another.
- Consistent** With reference to estimators, describes an estimator for which the probability of estimates close to the value of the population parameter increases as sample size increases.
- Constant-yield price trajectory** A graph that illustrates the change in the price of a fixed-income bond over time assuming no change in yield-to-maturity. The trajectory shows the "pull to par" effect on the price of a bond trading at a premium or a discount to par value.
- Constituent securities** With respect to an index, the individual securities within an index.
- Consumer surplus** The difference between the value that a consumer places on units purchased and the amount of money that was required to pay for them.
- Contingency provision** Clause in a legal document that allows for some action if a specific event or circumstance occurs.
- Contingent claims** Derivatives in which the payoffs occur if a specific event occurs; generally referred to as options.
- Contingent convertible bonds** Bonds that automatically convert into equity if a specific event or circumstance occurs, such as the issuer's equity capital falling below the minimum requirement set by the regulators. Also called *CoCos*.
- Continuation patterns** A type of pattern used in technical analysis to predict the resumption of a market trend that was in place prior to the formation of a pattern.
- Continuous random variable** A random variable for which the range of possible outcomes is the real line (all real numbers between $-\infty$ and $+\infty$ or some subset of the real line).
- Continuous time** Time thought of as advancing in extremely small increments.
- Continuous trading market** A market in which trades can be arranged and executed any time the market is open.
- Continuously compounded return** The natural logarithm of 1 plus the holding period return, or equivalently, the natural logarithm of the ending price over the beginning price.
- Contra account** An account that offsets another account.
- Contract rate** See *mortgage rate*.
- Contraction** The period of a business cycle after the peak and before the trough; often called a *recession* or, if exceptionally severe, called a *depression*.
- Contraction risk** The risk that when interest rates decline, the security will have a shorter maturity than was anticipated at the time of purchase because borrowers refinance at the new, lower interest rates.
- Contractionary** Tending to cause the real economy to contract.
- Contractionary fiscal policy** A fiscal policy that has the objective to make the real economy contract.
- Contracts for differences** See *non-deliverable forwards*.
- Contribution margin** The amount available for fixed costs and profit after paying variable costs; revenue minus variable costs.
- Controlling shareholders** A particular shareholder or block of shareholders holding a percentage of shares that gives them significant voting power.

- Convenience yield** A non-monetary advantage of holding an asset.
- Conventional bond** See *plain vanilla bond*.
- Conventional cash flow** A conventional cash flow pattern is one with an initial outflow followed by a series of inflows.
- Convergence** The tendency for differences in output per capita across countries to diminish over time; in technical analysis, a term that describes the case when an indicator moves in the same manner as the security being analyzed.
- Conversion price** For a convertible bond, the price per share at which the bond can be converted into shares.
- Conversion ratio** For a convertible bond, the number of common shares that each bond can be converted into.
- Conversion value** For a convertible bond, the current share price multiplied by the conversion ratio.
- Convertible bond** Bond that gives the bondholder the right to exchange the bond for a specified number of common shares in the issuing company.
- Convertible preference shares** A type of equity security that entitles shareholders to convert their shares into a specified number of common shares.
- Convexity adjustment** For a bond, one half of the annual or approximate convexity statistic multiplied by the change in the yield-to-maturity squared.
- Core inflation** The inflation rate calculated based on a price index of goods and services except food and energy.
- Corporate governance** The system of internal controls and procedures by which individual companies are managed.
- Correlation** A number between -1 and $+1$ that measures the comovement (linear association) between two random variables.
- Correlation coefficient** A number between -1 and $+1$ that measures the consistency or tendency for two investments to act in a similar way. It is used to determine the effect on portfolio risk when two assets are combined.
- Cost averaging** The periodic investment of a fixed amount of money.
- Cost of capital** The rate of return that suppliers of capital require as compensation for their contribution of capital.
- Cost of carry** See *carry*.
- Cost of debt** The cost of debt financing to a company, such as when it issues a bond or takes out a bank loan.
- Cost of preferred stock** The cost to a company of issuing preferred stock; the dividend yield that a company must commit to pay preferred stockholders.
- Cost-push** Type of inflation in which rising costs, usually wages, compel businesses to raise prices generally.
- Cost recovery method** A method of revenue recognition in which the seller does not report any profit until the cash amounts paid by the buyer—including principal and interest on any financing from the seller—are greater than all the seller's costs for the merchandise sold.
- Cost structure** The mix of a company's variable costs and fixed costs.
- Counterparty risk** The risk that the other party to a contract will fail to honor the terms of the contract.
- Coupon rate** The interest rate promised in a contract; this is the rate used to calculate the periodic interest payments.
- Cournot assumption** Assumption in which each firm determines its profit-maximizing production level assuming that the other firms' output will not change.
- Covariance** A measure of the co-movement (linear association) between two random variables.
- Covariance matrix** A matrix or square array whose entries are covariances; also known as a variance–covariance matrix.
- Covenants** The terms and conditions of lending agreements that the issuer must comply with; they specify the actions that an issuer is obligated to perform (affirmative covenant) or prohibited from performing (negative covenant).
- Covered bond** Debt obligation secured by a segregated pool of assets called the cover pool. The issuer must maintain the value of the cover pool. In the event of default, bondholders have recourse against both the issuer and the cover pool.
- Credit analysis** The evaluation of credit risk; the evaluation of the creditworthiness of a borrower or counterparty.
- Credit curve** A curve showing the relationship between time to maturity and yield spread for an issuer with comparable bonds of various maturities outstanding, usually upward sloping.
- Credit default swap (CDS)** A type of credit derivative in which one party, the credit protection buyer who is seeking credit protection against a third party, makes a series of regularly scheduled payments to the other party, the credit protection seller. The seller makes no payments until a credit event occurs.
- Credit derivatives** A contract in which one party has the right to claim a payment from another party in the event that a specific credit event occurs over the life of the contract.
- Credit enhancements** Provisions that may be used to reduce the credit risk of a bond issue.
- Credit-linked coupon bond** Bond for which the coupon changes when the bond's credit rating changes.
- Credit-linked note (CLN)** Fixed-income security in which the holder of the security has the right to withhold payment of the full amount due at maturity if a credit event occurs.
- Credit migration risk** The risk that a bond issuer's creditworthiness deteriorates, or migrates lower, leading investors to believe the risk of default is higher. Also called *downgrade risk*.
- Credit risk** The risk of loss caused by a counterparty's or debtor's failure to make a promised payment. Also called *default risk*.
- Credit scoring model** A statistical model used to classify borrowers according to creditworthiness.
- Credit spread option** An option on the yield spread on a bond.
- Credit tranching** A structure used to redistribute the credit risk associated with the collateral; a set of bond classes created to allow investors a choice in the amount of credit risk that they prefer to bear.
- Credit-worthiness** The perceived ability of the borrower to pay what is owed on the borrowing in a timely manner; it represents the ability of a company to withstand adverse impacts on its cash flows.
- Cross-default provisions** Provisions whereby events of default such as non-payment of interest on one bond trigger default on all outstanding debt; implies the same default probability for all issues.
- Cross-price elasticity of demand** The percentage change in quantity demanded for a given percentage change in the price of another good; the responsiveness of the demand for Product A that is associated with the change in price of Product B.
- Cross-sectional analysis** Analysis that involves comparisons across individuals in a group over a given time period or at a given point in time.
- Cross-sectional data** Observations over individual units at a point in time, as opposed to time-series data.

- Crossing networks** Trading systems that match buyers and sellers who are willing to trade at prices obtained from other markets.
- Crowding out** The thesis that government borrowing may divert private sector investment from taking place.
- Cryptocurrency** An electronic medium of exchange that lacks physical form.
- Cryptography** An algorithmic process to encrypt data, making the data unusable if received by unauthorized parties.
- Cumulative distribution function** A function giving the probability that a random variable is less than or equal to a specified value.
- Cumulative preference shares** Preference shares for which any dividends that are not paid accrue and must be paid in full before dividends on common shares can be paid.
- Cumulative relative frequency** For data grouped into intervals, the fraction of total observations that are less than the value of the upper limit of a stated interval.
- Cumulative voting** A voting process whereby each shareholder can accumulate and vote all his or her shares for a single candidate in an election, as opposed to having to allocate their voting rights evenly among all candidates.
- Currencies** Monies issued by national monetary authorities.
- Currency option bonds** Bonds that give the bondholder the right to choose the currency in which he or she wants to receive interest payments and principal repayments.
- Currency swap** A swap in which each party makes interest payments to the other in different currencies.
- Current account** A component of the balance of payments account that measures the flow of goods and services.
- Current assets** Assets that are expected to be consumed or converted into cash in the near future, typically one year or less. *Also called liquid assets.*
- Current cost** With reference to assets, the amount of cash or cash equivalents that would have to be paid to buy the same or an equivalent asset today; with reference to liabilities, the undiscounted amount of cash or cash equivalents that would be required to settle the obligation today.
- Current government spending** With respect to government expenditures, spending on goods and services that are provided on a regular, recurring basis including health, education, and defense.
- Current liabilities** Short-term obligations, such as accounts payable, wages payable, or accrued liabilities, that are expected to be settled in the near future, typically one year or less.
- Current ratio** A liquidity ratio calculated as current assets divided by current liabilities.
- Current yield** The sum of the coupon payments received over the year divided by the flat price; also called the *income or interest yield or running yield.*
- Curve duration** The sensitivity of the bond price (or the market value of a financial asset or liability) with respect to a benchmark yield curve.
- Customs union** Extends the free trade area (FTA) by not only allowing free movement of goods and services among members, but also creating a common trade policy against nonmembers.
- CVaR** Conditional VaR, a tail loss measure. The weighted average of all loss outcomes in the statistical distribution that exceed the VaR loss.
- Cyclical** See *cyclical companies.*
- Cyclical companies** Companies with sales and profits that regularly expand and contract with the business cycle or state of economy.
- Daily settlement** See *mark to market* and *marking to market.*
- Dark pools** Alternative trading systems that do not display the orders that their clients send to them.
- Data mining** The practice of determining a model by extensive searching through a dataset for statistically significant patterns. Also called *data snooping.*
- Data science** An interdisciplinary field that brings computer science, statistics, and other disciplines together to analyze and produce insights from Big Data.
- Data snooping** See *data mining.*
- Day order** An order that is good for the day on which it is submitted. If it has not been filled by the close of business, the order expires unfilled.
- Day's sales outstanding** Estimate of the average number of days it takes to collect on credit accounts.
- Days in receivables** Estimate of the average number of days it takes to collect on credit accounts.
- Days of inventory on hand** An activity ratio equal to the number of days in the period divided by inventory turnover over the period.
- Dead cross** A technical analysis term that describes a situation where a short-term moving average crosses from above a longer-term moving average to below it; this movement is considered bearish.
- Dealers** A financial intermediary that acts as a principal in trades.
- Dealing securities** Securities held by banks or other financial intermediaries for trading purposes.
- Debentures** Type of bond that can be secured or unsecured.
- Debt incurrence test** A financial covenant made in conjunction with existing debt that restricts a company's ability to incur additional debt at the same seniority based on one or more financial tests or conditions.
- Debt-rating approach** A method for estimating a company's before-tax cost of debt based upon the yield on comparably rated bonds for maturities that closely match that of the company's existing debt.
- Debt-to-assets ratio** A solvency ratio calculated as total debt divided by total assets.
- Debt-to-capital ratio** A solvency ratio calculated as total debt divided by total debt plus total shareholders' equity.
- Debt-to-equity ratio** A solvency ratio calculated as total debt divided by total shareholders' equity.
- Declaration date** The day that the corporation issues a statement declaring a specific dividend.
- Decreasing returns to scale** When a production process leads to increases in output that are proportionately smaller than the increase in inputs.
- Deductible temporary differences** Temporary differences that result in a reduction of or deduction from taxable income in a future period when the balance sheet item is recovered or settled.
- Deep learning** Machine learning using neural networks with many hidden layers.
- Deep learning nets** Machine learning using neural networks with many hidden layers.
- Default probability** The probability that a borrower defaults or fails to meet its obligation to make full and timely payments of principal and interest, according to the terms of the debt security. Also called *default risk.*

- Default risk** The probability that a borrower defaults or fails to meet its obligation to make full and timely payments of principal and interest, according to the terms of the debt security. Also called *default probability*.
- Default risk premium** An extra return that compensates investors for the possibility that the borrower will fail to make a promised payment at the contracted time and in the contracted amount.
- Defensive companies** Companies with sales and profits that have little sensitivity to the business cycle or state of the economy.
- Defensive interval ratio** A liquidity ratio that estimates the number of days that an entity could meet cash needs from liquid assets; calculated as (cash + short-term marketable investments + receivables) divided by daily cash expenditures.
- Deferred coupon bond** Bond that pays no coupons for its first few years but then pays a higher coupon than it otherwise normally would for the remainder of its life. Also called *split coupon bond*.
- Deferred income** A liability account for money that has been collected for goods or services that have not yet been delivered; payment received in advance of providing a good or service.
- Deferred revenue** A liability account for money that has been collected for goods or services that have not yet been delivered; payment received in advance of providing a good or service.
- Deferred tax assets** A balance sheet asset that arises when an excess amount is paid for income taxes relative to accounting profit. The taxable income is higher than accounting profit and income tax payable exceeds tax expense. The company expects to recover the difference during the course of future operations when tax expense exceeds income tax payable.
- Deferred tax liabilities** A balance sheet liability that arises when a deficit amount is paid for income taxes relative to accounting profit. The taxable income is less than the accounting profit and income tax payable is less than tax expense. The company expects to eliminate the liability over the course of future operations when income tax payable exceeds tax expense.
- Defined benefit pension plans** Plans in which the company promises to pay a certain annual amount (defined benefit) to the employee after retirement. The company bears the investment risk of the plan assets.
- Defined contribution pension plans** Individual accounts to which an employee and typically the employer makes contributions, generally on a tax-advantaged basis. The amounts of contributions are defined at the outset, but the future value of the benefit is unknown. The employee bears the investment risk of the plan assets.
- Deflation** Negative inflation.
- Degree of confidence** The probability that a confidence interval includes the unknown population parameter.
- Degree of financial leverage** (DFL) The ratio of the percentage change in net income to the percentage change in operating income; the sensitivity of the cash flows available to owners when operating income changes.
- Degree of operating leverage** (DOL) The ratio of the percentage change in operating income to the percentage change in units sold; the sensitivity of operating income to changes in units sold.
- Degree of total leverage** The ratio of the percentage change in net income to the percentage change in units sold; the sensitivity of the cash flows to owners to changes in the number of units produced and sold.
- Degrees of freedom (df)** The number of independent observations used.
- Delta** The sensitivity of the derivative price to a small change in the value of the underlying asset.
- Demand curve** Graph of the inverse demand function. A graph showing the demand relation, either the highest quantity willingly purchased at each price or the highest price willingly paid for each quantity.
- Demand function** A relationship that expresses the quantity demanded of a good or service as a function of own-price and possibly other variables.
- Demand-pull** Type of inflation in which increasing demand raises prices generally, which then are reflected in a business's costs as workers demand wage hikes to catch up with the rising cost of living.
- Demand shock** A typically unexpected disturbance to demand, such as an unexpected interruption in trade or transportation.
- Dependent** With reference to events, the property that the probability of one event occurring depends on (is related to) the occurrence of another event.
- Depository bank** A bank that raises funds from depositors and other investors and lends it to borrowers.
- Depository institutions** Commercial banks, savings and loan banks, credit unions, and similar institutions that raise funds from depositors and other investors and lend it to borrowers.
- Depository receipt** A security that trades like an ordinary share on a local exchange and represents an economic interest in a foreign company.
- Depreciation** The process of systematically allocating the cost of long-lived (tangible) assets to the periods during which the assets are expected to provide economic benefits.
- Depression** See *contraction*.
- Derivative pricing rule** A pricing rule used by crossing networks in which a price is taken (derived) from the price that is current in the asset's primary market.
- Derivatives** A financial instrument whose value depends on the value of some underlying asset or factor (e.g., a stock price, an interest rate, or exchange rate).
- Descriptive statistics** The study of how data can be summarized effectively.
- Development capital** Minority equity investments in more-mature companies that are seeking capital to expand or restructure operations, enter new markets, or finance major acquisitions.
- Diffuse prior** The assumption of equal prior probabilities.
- Diffusion index** Reflects the proportion of the index's components that are moving in a pattern consistent with the overall index.
- Diluted EPS** The EPS that would result if all dilutive securities were converted into common shares.
- Diluted shares** The number of shares that would be outstanding if all potentially dilutive claims on common shares (e.g., convertible debt, convertible preferred stock, and employee stock options) were exercised.
- Diminishing balance method** An accelerated depreciation method, i.e., one that allocates a relatively large proportion of the cost of an asset to the early years of the asset's useful life.

- Diminishing marginal productivity** Describes a state in which each additional unit of input produces less output than previously.
- Direct debit program** An arrangement whereby a customer authorizes a debit to a demand account; typically used by companies to collect routine payments for services.
- Direct financing leases** A type of finance lease, from a lessor perspective, where the present value of the lease payments (lease receivable) equals the carrying value of the leased asset. The revenues earned by the lessor are financing in nature.
- Direct format** With reference to the cash flow statement, a format for the presentation of the statement in which cash flow from operating activities is shown as operating cash receipts less operating cash disbursements. Also called *direct method*.
- Direct method** See *direct format*.
- Direct taxes** Taxes levied directly on income, wealth, and corporate profits.
- Direct write-off method** An approach to recognizing credit losses on customer receivables in which the company waits until such time as a customer has defaulted and only then recognizes the loss.
- Disbursement float** The amount of time between check issuance and a check's clearing back against the company's account.
- Discount** To reduce the value of a future payment in allowance for how far away it is in time; to calculate the present value of some future amount. Also, the amount by which an instrument is priced below its face (par) value.
- Discount interest** A procedure for determining the interest on a loan or bond in which the interest is deducted from the face value in advance.
- Discount margin** See *required margin*.
- Discount rates** In general, the interest rate used to calculate a present value. In the money market, however, discount rate is a specific type of quoted rate.
- Discounted cash flow models** Valuation models that estimate the intrinsic value of a security as the present value of the future benefits expected to be received from the security.
- Discouraged worker** A person who has stopped looking for a job or has given up seeking employment.
- Discrete random variable** A random variable that can take on at most a countable number of possible values.
- Discriminatory pricing rule** A pricing rule used in continuous markets in which the limit price of the order or quote that first arrived determines the trade price.
- Diseconomies of scale** Increase in cost per unit resulting from increased production.
- Dispersion** The variability around the central tendency.
- Display size** The size of an order displayed to public view.
- Distressed investing** Investing in securities of companies in financial difficulties. Private equity funds that specialize in distressed investing typically buy the debt of mature companies in financial difficulties.
- Distributed ledger** A type of database that may be shared among entities in a network.
- Distributed ledger technology** Technology based on a distributed ledger.
- Divergence** In technical analysis, a term that describes the case when an indicator moves differently from the security being analyzed.
- Diversification ratio** The ratio of the standard deviation of an equally weighted portfolio to the standard deviation of a randomly selected security.
- Dividend** A distribution paid to shareholders based on the number of shares owned.
- Dividend discount model** (DDM) A present value model that estimates the intrinsic value of an equity share based on the present value of its expected future dividends.
- Dividend discount model based approach** An approach for estimating a country's equity risk premium. The market rate of return is estimated as the sum of the dividend yield and the growth rate in dividends for a market index. Subtracting the risk-free rate of return from the estimated market return produces an estimate for the equity risk premium.
- Dividend payout ratio** The ratio of cash dividends paid to earnings for a period.
- Divisor** A number (denominator) used to determine the value of a price return index. It is initially chosen at the inception of an index and subsequently adjusted by the index provider, as necessary, to avoid changes in the index value that are unrelated to changes in the prices of its constituent securities.
- Domestic content provisions** Stipulate that some percentage of the value added or components used in production should be of domestic origin.
- Double bottoms** In technical analysis, a reversal pattern that is formed when the price reaches a low, rebounds, and then sells off back to the first low level; used to predict a change from a downtrend to an uptrend.
- Double coincidence of wants** A prerequisite to barter trades, in particular that both economic agents in the transaction want what the other is selling.
- Double declining balance depreciation** An accelerated depreciation method that involves depreciating the asset at double the straight-line rate. This rate is multiplied by the book value of the asset at the beginning of the period (a declining balance) to calculate depreciation expense.
- Double top** In technical analysis, a reversal pattern that is formed when an uptrend reverses twice at roughly the same high price level; used to predict a change from an uptrend to a downtrend.
- Down transition probability** The probability that an asset's value moves down in a model of asset price dynamics.
- Downgrade risk** The risk that a bond issuer's creditworthiness deteriorates, or migrates lower, leading investors to believe the risk of default is higher. Also called *credit migration risk*.
- Drag on liquidity** When receipts lag, creating pressure from the decreased available funds.
- Drawdown** A percentage peak-to-trough reduction in net asset value.
- Dual-currency bonds** Bonds that make coupon payments in one currency and pay the par value at maturity in another currency.
- DuPont analysis** An approach to decomposing return on investment, e.g., return on equity, as the product of other financial ratios.
- Duration** A measure of the approximate sensitivity of a security to a change in interest rates (i.e., a measure of interest rate risk).
- Duration gap** A bond's Macaulay duration minus the investment horizon.
- Dutch Book theorem** A result in probability theory stating that inconsistent probabilities create profit opportunities.
- Early repayment option** See *prepayment option*.

- Earnings per share** The amount of income earned during a period per share of common stock.
- Earnings surprise** The portion of a company's earnings that is unanticipated by investors and, according to the efficient market hypothesis, merits a price adjustment.
- Economic costs** All the remuneration needed to keep a productive resource in its current employment or to acquire the resource for productive use; the sum of total accounting costs and implicit opportunity costs.
- Economic indicator** A variable that provides information on the state of the overall economy.
- Economic loss** The amount by which accounting profit is less than normal profit.
- Economic order quantity–reorder point (EOQ–ROP)** An approach to managing inventory based on expected demand and the predictability of demand; the ordering point for new inventory is determined based on the costs of ordering and carrying inventory, such that the total cost associated with inventory is minimized.
- Economic profit** Equal to accounting profit less the implicit opportunity costs not included in total accounting costs; the difference between total revenue (TR) and total cost (TC). Also called *abnormal profit* or *supernormal profit*.
- Economic stabilization** Reduction of the magnitude of economic fluctuations.
- Economic union** Incorporates all aspects of a common market and in addition requires common economic institutions and coordination of economic policies among members.
- Economies of scale** Reduction in cost per unit resulting from increased production.
- Effective annual rate** The amount by which a unit of currency will grow in a year with interest on interest included.
- Effective annual yield (EAY)** An annualized return that accounts for the effect of interest on interest; EAY is computed by compounding 1 plus the holding period yield forward to one year, then subtracting 1.
- Effective convexity** A *curve convexity* statistic that measures the secondary effect of a change in a benchmark yield curve on a bond's price.
- Effective duration** The sensitivity of a bond's price to a change in a benchmark yield curve.
- Effective interest rate** The borrowing rate or market rate that a company incurs at the time of issuance of a bond.
- Efficient market** A market in which asset prices reflect new information quickly and rationally.
- Elastic** Said of a good or service when the magnitude of elasticity is greater than one.
- Elasticity** The percentage change in one variable for a percentage change in another variable; a general measure of how sensitive one variable is to a change in the value of another variable.
- Elasticity of demand** A measure of the sensitivity of quantity demanded to a change in a product's own price: $\% \Delta Q^D / \% \Delta P$.
- Elasticity of supply** A measure of the sensitivity of quantity supplied to a change in price: $\% \Delta Q^S / \% \Delta P$.
- Electronic communications networks** See *alternative trading systems*.
- Electronic funds transfer (EFT)** The use of computer networks to conduct financial transactions electronically.
- Elliott wave theory** A technical analysis theory that claims that the market follows regular, repeated waves or cycles.
- Embedded option** Contingency provisions that provide the issuer or the bondholders the right, but not the obligation, to take action. These options are not part of the security and cannot be traded separately.
- Empirical probability** The probability of an event estimated as a relative frequency of occurrence.
- Employed** The number of people with a job.
- Enterprise risk management** An overall assessment of a company's risk position. A centralized approach to risk management sometimes called firmwide risk management.
- Enterprise value** A measure of a company's total market value from which the value of cash and short-term investments have been subtracted.
- Equal weighting** An index weighting method in which an equal weight is assigned to each constituent security at inception.
- Equipment trust certificates** Bonds secured by specific types of equipment or physical assets.
- Equity** Assets less liabilities; the residual interest in the assets after subtracting the liabilities.
- Equity risk premium** The expected return on equities minus the risk-free rate; the premium that investors demand for investing in equities.
- Equity swap** A swap transaction in which at least one cash flow is tied to the return to an equity portfolio position, often an equity index.
- ESG** An acronym that encompasses environmental, social and governance.
- ESG incorporation** The integration of qualitative and quantitative environmental, social, and governance factors into traditional security and industry analysis; also known as *ESG integration*.
- ESG integration** The integration of qualitative and quantitative environmental, social, and governance factors into traditional security and industry analysis; also known as *ESG incorporation*.
- ESG investing** The consideration of environmental, social, and governance factors in the investment process.
- Estimate** The particular value calculated from sample observations using an estimator.
- Estimation** With reference to statistical inference, the subdivision dealing with estimating the value of a population parameter.
- Estimator** An estimation formula; the formula used to compute the sample mean and other sample statistics are examples of estimators.
- Ethical principles** Beliefs regarding what is good, acceptable, or obligatory behavior and what is bad, unacceptable, or forbidden behavior.
- Ethics** The study of moral principles or of making good choices. Ethics encompasses a set of moral principles and rules of conduct that provide guidance for our behavior.
- Eurobonds** Type of bond issued internationally, outside the jurisdiction of the country in whose currency the bond is denominated.
- European option** An option that can only be exercised on its expiration date.
- European-style** Said of an option contract that can only be exercised on the option's expiration date.
- Event** Any outcome or specified set of outcomes of a random variable.
- Ex-dividend date** The first date that a share trades without (i.e., "ex") the dividend.

- Excess kurtosis** Degree of kurtosis (fatness of tails) in excess of the kurtosis of the normal distribution.
- Exchanges** Places where traders can meet to arrange their trades.
- Exclusionary screening** An ESG implementation approach that excludes certain sectors or companies that deviate from an investor's accepted standards. Also called *negative screening* or *norms-based screening*.
- Execution instructions** Instructions that indicate how to fill an order.
- Exercise** The process of using an option to buy or sell the underlying.
- Exercise price** The fixed price at which an option holder can buy or sell the underlying. Also called *strike price*, *striking price*, or *strike*.
- Exercise value** The value obtained if an option is exercised based on current conditions. Also known as *intrinsic value*.
- Exhaustive** Covering or containing all possible outcomes.
- Expansion** The period of a business cycle after its lowest point and before its highest point.
- Expansionary** Tending to cause the real economy to grow.
- Expansionary fiscal policy** Fiscal policy aimed at achieving real economic growth.
- Expected inflation** The level of inflation that economic agents expect in the future.
- Expected loss** Default probability times Loss severity given default.
- Expected value** The probability-weighted average of the possible outcomes of a random variable.
- Expenses** Outflows of economic resources or increases in liabilities that result in decreases in equity (other than decreases because of distributions to owners); reductions in net assets associated with the creation of revenues.
- Experience curve** A curve that shows the direct cost per unit of good or service produced or delivered as a typically declining function of cumulative output.
- Export subsidy** Paid by the government to the firm when it exports a unit of a good that is being subsidized.
- Exports** Goods and services that an economy sells to other countries.
- Extension risk** The risk that when interest rates rise, fewer prepayments will occur because homeowners are reluctant to give up the benefits of a contractual interest rate that now looks low. As a result, the security becomes longer in maturity than anticipated at the time of purchase.
- Externality** An effect of a market transaction that is borne by parties other than those who transacted.
- Extra dividend** A dividend paid by a company that does not pay dividends on a regular schedule, or a dividend that supplements regular cash dividends with an extra payment.
- Extreme value theory** A branch of statistics that focuses primarily on extreme outcomes.
- Face value** The amount of cash payable by a company to the bondholders when the bonds mature; the promised payment at maturity separate from any coupon payment.
- Factor** A common or underlying element with which several variables are correlated.
- Fair value** The amount at which an asset could be exchanged, or a liability settled, between knowledgeable, willing parties in an arm's-length transaction; the price that would be received to sell an asset or paid to transfer a liability in an orderly transaction between market participants.
- Fed funds rate** The US interbank lending rate on overnight borrowings of reserves.
- Federal funds rate** The US interbank lending rate on overnight borrowings of reserves.
- Fiat money** Money that is not convertible into any other commodity.
- Fibonacci sequence** A sequence of numbers starting with 0 and 1, and then each subsequent number in the sequence is the sum of the two preceding numbers. In Elliott Wave Theory, it is believed that market waves follow patterns that are the ratios of the numbers in the Fibonacci sequence.
- Fiduciary call** A combination of a European call and a risk-free bond that matures on the option expiration day and has a face value equal to the exercise price of the call.
- FIFO method** The first in, first out, method of accounting for inventory, which matches sales against the costs of items of inventory in the order in which they were placed in inventory.
- Fill or kill** See *immediate or cancel order*.
- Finance lease** Essentially, the purchase of some asset by the buyer (lessee) that is directly financed by the seller (lessor). Also called *capital lease*.
- Financial account** A component of the balance of payments account that records investment flows.
- Financial flexibility** The ability to react and adapt to financial adversities and opportunities.
- Financial leverage** The extent to which a company can effect, through the use of debt, a proportional change in the return on common equity that is greater than a given proportional change in operating income; also, short for the financial leverage ratio.
- Financial leverage ratio** A measure of financial leverage calculated as average total assets divided by average total equity.
- Financial risk** The risk that environmental, social, or governance risk factors will result in significant costs or other losses to a company and its shareholders; the risk arising from a company's obligation to meet required payments under its financing agreements.
- Financing activities** Activities related to obtaining or repaying capital to be used in the business (e.g., equity and long-term debt).
- Fintech** Technological innovation in the design and delivery of financial services and products in the financial industry.
- Firm commitment offering** See *underwritten offering*.
- First-degree price discrimination** Where a monopolist is able to charge each customer the highest price the customer is willing to pay.
- First lien debt** Debt secured by a pledge of certain assets that could include buildings, but may also include property and equipment, licenses, patents, brands, etc.
- First mortgage debt** Debt secured by a pledge of a specific property.
- Fiscal multiplier** The ratio of a change in national income to a change in government spending.
- Fiscal policy** The use of taxes and government spending to affect the level of aggregate expenditures.
- Fisher effect** The thesis that the real rate of interest in an economy is stable over time so that changes in nominal interest rates are the result of changes in expected inflation.
- Fisher index** The geometric mean of the Laspeyres index.
- Fixed charge coverage** A solvency ratio measuring the number of times interest and lease payments are covered by operating income, calculated as (EBIT + lease payments) divided by (interest payments + lease payments).
- Fixed costs** Costs that remain at the same level regardless of a company's level of production and sales.

- Fixed-for-floating interest rate swap** An interest rate swap in which one party pays a fixed rate and the other pays a floating rate, with both sets of payments in the same currency. Also called *plain vanilla swap* or *vanilla swap*.
- Fixed rate perpetual preferred stock** Nonconvertible, non-callable preferred stock that has a fixed dividend rate and no maturity date.
- Flags** A technical analysis continuation pattern formed by parallel trendlines, typically over a short period.
- Flat price** The full price of a bond minus the accrued interest; also called the *quoted* or *clean* price.
- Float** In the context of customer receipts, the amount of money that is in transit between payments made by customers and the funds that are usable by the company.
- Float-adjusted market-capitalization weighting** An index weighting method in which the weight assigned to each constituent security is determined by adjusting its market capitalization for its market float.
- Float factor** An estimate of the average number of days it takes deposited checks to clear; average daily float divided by average daily deposit.
- Floater** See *floating-rate notes*.
- Floating-rate notes** A note on which interest payments are not fixed, but instead vary from period to period depending on the current level of a reference interest rate.
- Flotation cost** Fees charged to companies by investment bankers and other costs associated with raising new capital.
- Foreclosure** Allows the lender to take possession of a mortgaged property if the borrower defaults and then sell it to recover funds.
- Foreign currency reserves** Holding by the central bank of non-domestic currency deposits and non-domestic bonds.
- Foreign direct investment** Direct investment by a firm in one country (the source country) in productive assets in a foreign country (the host country).
- Foreign exchange gains (or losses)** Gains (or losses) that occur when the exchange rate changes between the investor's currency and the currency that foreign securities are denominated in.
- Foreign portfolio investment** Shorter-term investment by individuals, firms, and institutional investors (e.g., pension funds) in foreign financial instruments such as foreign stocks and foreign government bonds.
- Forward commitments** Class of derivatives that provides the ability to lock in a price to transact in the future at a previously agreed-upon price.
- Forward contract** An agreement between two parties in which one party, the buyer, agrees to buy from the other party, the seller, an underlying asset at a later date for a price established at the start of the contract.
- Forward curve** A series of forward rates, each having the same timeframe.
- Forward market** For future delivery, beyond the usual settlement time period in the cash market.
- Forward price** The fixed price or rate at which the transaction scheduled to occur at the expiration of a forward contract will take place. This price is agreed on at the initiation date of the contract.
- Forward rate** The interest rate on a bond or money market instrument traded in a forward market. A forward rate can be interpreted as an incremental, or marginal, return for extending the time-to-maturity for an additional time period.
- Forward rate agreements** A forward contract calling for one party to make a fixed interest payment and the other to make an interest payment at a rate to be determined at the contract expiration.
- Fractile** A value at or below which a stated fraction of the data lies.
- Fractional reserve banking** Banking in which reserves constitute a fraction of deposits.
- Free cash flow** The actual cash that would be available to the company's investors after making all investments necessary to maintain the company as an ongoing enterprise (also referred to as free cash flow to the firm); the internally generated funds that can be distributed to the company's investors (e.g., shareholders and bondholders) without impairing the value of the company.
- Free cash flow to equity (FCFE)** The cash flow available to a company's common shareholders after all operating expenses, interest, and principal payments have been made, and necessary investments in working and fixed capital have been made.
- Free-cash-flow-to-equity models** Valuation models based on discounting expected future free cash flow to equity.
- Free cash flow to the firm (FCFF)** The cash flow available to the company's suppliers of capital after all operating expenses have been paid and necessary investments in working capital and fixed capital have been made.
- Free float** The number of shares that are readily and freely tradable in the secondary market.
- Free trade** When there are no government restrictions on a country's ability to trade.
- Free trade areas** One of the most prevalent forms of regional integration, in which all barriers to the flow of goods and services among members have been eliminated.
- Frequency distribution** A tabular display of data summarized into a relatively small number of intervals.
- Frequency polygon** A graph of a frequency distribution obtained by drawing straight lines joining successive points representing the class frequencies.
- Full price** The price of a security with accrued interest; also called the *invoice* or *dirty* price.
- Fundamental analysis** The examination of publicly available information and the formulation of forecasts to estimate the intrinsic value of assets.
- Fundamental value** The underlying or true value of an asset based on an analysis of its qualitative and quantitative characteristics. Also called *intrinsic value*.
- Fundamental weighting** An index weighting method in which the weight assigned to each constituent security is based on its underlying company's size. It attempts to address the disadvantages of market-capitalization weighting by using measures that are independent of the constituent security's price.
- Funds of funds** Funds that hold a portfolio of hedge funds.
- Funds of hedge funds** Funds that hold a portfolio of hedge funds.
- Future value (FV)** The amount to which a payment or series of payments will grow by a stated future date.
- Futures contract** A variation of a forward contract that has essentially the same basic definition but with some additional features, such as a clearinghouse guarantee against credit losses, a daily settlement of gains and losses, and an organized electronic or floor trading facility.
- Futures price** The agreed-upon price of a futures contract.

- FX swap** The combination of a spot and a forward FX transaction.
- G-spread** The yield spread in basis points over an actual or interpolated government bond.
- Gains** Asset inflows not directly related to the ordinary activities of the business.
- Game theory** The set of tools decision makers use to incorporate responses by rival decision makers into their strategies.
- Gamma** A numerical measure of how sensitive an option's delta (the sensitivity of the derivative's price) is to a change in the value of the underlying.
- GDP deflator** A gauge of prices and inflation that measures the aggregate changes in prices across the overall economy.
- General partner** (GP) The partner that runs the business and theoretically bears unlimited liability.
- Geometric mean** A measure of central tendency computed by taking the n th root of the product of n non-negative values.
- Giffen goods** Goods that are consumed more as the price of the good rises because it is a very inferior good whose income effect overwhelms its substitution effect when price changes.
- Gilts** Bonds issued by the UK government.
- Giro system** An electronic payment system used widely in Europe and Japan.
- Global depository receipt** A depository receipt that is issued outside of the company's home country and outside of the United States.
- Global minimum-variance portfolio** The portfolio on the minimum-variance frontier with the smallest variance of return.
- Global registered share** A common share that is traded on different stock exchanges around the world in different currencies.
- Gold standard** With respect to a currency, if a currency is on the gold standard a given amount can be converted into a prespecified amount of gold.
- Golden cross** A technical analysis term that describes a situation where a short-term moving average crosses from below a longer-term moving average to above it; this movement is considered bullish.
- Good-on-close** An execution instruction specifying that an order can only be filled at the close of trading. Also called *market on close*.
- Good-on-open** An execution instruction specifying that an order can only be filled at the opening of trading.
- Good-till-cancelled order** An order specifying that it is valid until the entity placing the order has cancelled it (or, commonly, until some specified amount of time such as 60 days has elapsed, whichever comes sooner).
- Goodwill** An intangible asset that represents the excess of the purchase price of an acquired company over the value of the net assets acquired.
- Government equivalent yield** A yield that restates a yield-to-maturity based on 30/360 day-count to one based on actual/actual.
- Green bonds** A bond used in green finance whereby the proceeds are earmarked towards environmental-related products.
- Green finance** A type of finance that addresses environmental concerns while achieving economic growth.
- Grey market** The forward market for bonds about to be issued. Also called "when issued" market.
- Gross domestic product** The market value of all final goods and services produced within the economy in a given period of time (output definition) or, equivalently, the aggregate income earned by all households, all companies, and the government within the economy in a given period of time (income definition).
- Gross margin** Sales minus the cost of sales (i.e., the cost of goods sold for a manufacturing company).
- Gross profit** Sales minus the cost of sales (i.e., the cost of goods sold for a manufacturing company).
- Gross profit margin** The ratio of gross profit to revenues.
- Grouping by function** With reference to the presentation of expenses in an income statement, the grouping together of expenses serving the same function, e.g. all items that are costs of goods sold.
- Grouping by nature** With reference to the presentation of expenses in an income statement, the grouping together of expenses by similar nature, e.g., all depreciation expenses.
- Growth cyclical** A term sometimes used to describe companies that are growing rapidly on a long-term basis but that still experience above-average fluctuation in their revenues and profits over the course of a business cycle.
- Growth investors** With reference to equity investors, investors who seek to invest in high-earnings-growth companies.
- Guarantee certificate** A type of structured financial instrument that provides investors capital protection. It combines a zero-coupon bond and a call option on some underlying asset.
- Haircut** See *repo margin*.
- Harmonic mean** A type of weighted mean computed by averaging the reciprocals of the observations, then taking the reciprocal of that average.
- Head and shoulders pattern** In technical analysis, a reversal pattern that is formed in three parts: a left shoulder, head, and right shoulder; used to predict a change from an uptrend to a downtrend.
- Headline inflation** The inflation rate calculated based on the price index that includes all goods and services in an economy.
- Hedge funds** Private investment vehicles that typically use leverage, derivatives, and long and short investment strategies.
- Hedge portfolio** A hypothetical combination of the derivative and its underlying that eliminates risk.
- Held for trading** Debt or equity financial assets bought with the intention to sell them in the near term, usually less than three months; securities that a company intends to trade. Also called *trading securities*.
- Held-to-maturity** Debt (fixed-income) securities that a company intends to hold to maturity; these are presented at their original cost, updated for any amortization of discounts or premiums.
- Herding** Clustered trading that may or may not be based on information.
- Hidden order** An order that is exposed not to the public but only to the brokers or exchanges that receive it.
- High-frequency trading** A form of algorithmic trading that makes use of vast quantities of data to execute trades on ultra-high-speed networks in fractions of a second.
- High-water marks** The highest value, net of fees, that a fund has reached in history. It reflects the highest cumulative return used to calculate an incentive fee.
- Histogram** A bar chart of data that have been grouped into a frequency distribution.

- Historical cost** In reference to assets, the amount paid to purchase an asset, including any costs of acquisition and/or preparation; with reference to liabilities, the amount of proceeds received in exchange in issuing the liability.
- Historical equity risk premium approach** An estimate of a country's equity risk premium that is based upon the historical averages of the risk-free rate and the rate of return on the market portfolio.
- Historical simulation** Another term for the historical method of estimating VaR. This term is somewhat misleading in that the method involves not a *simulation* of the past but rather what *actually happened* in the past, sometimes adjusted to reflect the fact that a different portfolio may have existed in the past than is planned for the future.
- Holder-of-record date** The date that a shareholder listed on the corporation's books will be deemed to have ownership of the shares for purposes of receiving an upcoming dividend.
- Holding period return** The return that an investor earns during a specified holding period; a synonym for total return.
- Holding period yield (HPY)** The return that an investor earns during a specified holding period; holding period return with reference to a fixed-income instrument.
- Homogeneity of expectations** The assumption that all investors have the same economic expectations and thus have the same expectations of prices, cash flows, and other investment characteristics.
- Horizon yield** The internal rate of return between the total return (the sum of reinvested coupon payments and the sale price or redemption amount) and the purchase price of the bond.
- Horizontal analysis** Common-size analysis that involves comparing a specific financial statement with that statement in prior or future time periods; also, cross-sectional analysis of one company with another.
- Horizontal demand schedule** Implies that at a given price, the response in the quantity demanded is infinite.
- Hostile takeover** An attempt by one entity to acquire a company without the consent of the company's management.
- Household** A person or a group of people living in the same residence, taken as a basic unit in economic analysis.
- Human capital** The accumulated knowledge and skill that workers acquire from education, training, or life experience and the corresponding present value of future earnings to be generated by said skilled individual.
- Hurdle rate** The rate of return that must be met for a project to be accepted.
- Hypothesis** With reference to statistical inference, a statement about one or more populations.
- Hypothesis testing** With reference to statistical inference, the subdivision dealing with the testing of hypotheses about one or more populations.
- I-spread** The yield spread of a specific bond over the standard swap rate in that currency of the same tenor.
- Iceberg order** An order in which the display size is less than the order's full size.
- If-converted method** A method for accounting for the effect of convertible securities on earnings per share (EPS) that specifies what EPS would have been if the convertible securities had been converted at the beginning of the period, taking account of the effects of conversion on net income and the weighted average number of shares outstanding.
- Immediate or cancel order** An order that is valid only upon receipt by the broker or exchange. If such an order cannot be filled in part or in whole upon receipt, it cancels immediately. Also called *fill or kill*.
- Impact investing** Investing that seeks to achieve targeted social or environmental objectives along with measurable financial returns through engagement with a company or by direct investment in projects or companies.
- Impact lag** The lag associated with the result of actions affecting the economy with delay.
- Implicit price deflator for GDP** A gauge of prices and inflation that measures the aggregate changes in prices across the overall economy.
- Implied forward rates** Calculated from spot rates, an implied forward rate is a break-even reinvestment rate that links the return on an investment in a shorter-term zero-coupon bond to the return on an investment in a longer-term zero-coupon bond.
- Implied volatility** The volatility that option traders use to price an option, implied by the price of the option and a particular option-pricing model.
- Import license** Specifies the quantity of a good that can be imported into a country.
- Imports** Goods and services that a domestic economy (i.e., households, firms, and government) purchases from other countries.
- In the money** Options that, if exercised, would result in the value received being worth more than the payment required to exercise.
- Incentive fee** Fees paid to the general partner from the limited partner(s) based on realized profits.
- Income** Increases in economic benefits in the form of inflows or enhancements of assets, or decreases of liabilities that result in an increase in equity (other than increases resulting from contributions by owners).
- Income elasticity of demand** A measure of the responsiveness of demand to changes in income, defined as the percentage change in quantity demanded divided by the percentage change in income.
- Income tax paid** The actual amount paid for income taxes in the period; not a provision, but the actual cash outflow.
- Income tax payable** The income tax owed by the company on the basis of taxable income.
- Income trust** A type of equity ownership vehicle established as a trust issuing ownership shares known as units.
- Increasing marginal returns** When the marginal product of a resource increases as additional units of that input are employed.
- Increasing returns to scale** When a production process leads to increases in output that are proportionately larger than the increase in inputs.
- Incremental cash flow** The cash flow that is realized because of a decision; the changes or increments to cash flows resulting from a decision or action.
- Indenture** Legal contract that describes the form of a bond, the obligations of the issuer, and the rights of the bondholders. Also called the *trust deed*.
- Independent** With reference to events, the property that the occurrence of one event does not affect the probability of another event occurring.
- Independent projects** Independent projects are projects whose cash flows are independent of each other.

- Independently and identically distributed (IID)** With respect to random variables, the property of random variables that are independent of each other but follow the identical probability distribution.
- Index-linked bond** Bond for which coupon payments and/or principal repayment are linked to a specified index.
- Index of Leading Economic Indicators** A composite of economic variables used by analysts to predict future economic conditions.
- Indexing** An investment strategy in which an investor constructs a portfolio to mirror the performance of a specified index.
- Indifference curve** A curve representing all the combinations of two goods or attributes such that the consumer is entirely indifferent among them.
- Indirect format** With reference to cash flow statements, a format for the presentation of the statement which, in the operating cash flow section, begins with net income then shows additions and subtractions to arrive at operating cash flow. Also called *indirect method*.
- Indirect method** See *indirect format*.
- Indirect taxes** Taxes such as taxes on spending, as opposed to direct taxes.
- Industry** A group of companies offering similar products and/or services.
- Industry analysis** The analysis of a specific branch of manufacturing, service, or trade.
- Inelastic** Said of a good or service when the magnitude of elasticity is less than one. Insensitive to price changes.
- Inferior goods** A good whose consumption decreases as income increases.
- Inflation** The percentage increase in the general price level from one period to the next; a sustained rise in the overall level of prices in an economy.
- Inflation-linked bond** Type of index-linked bond that offers investors protection against inflation by linking the bond's coupon payments and/or the principal repayment to an index of consumer prices. Also called *linkers*.
- Inflation premium** An extra return that compensates investors for expected inflation.
- Inflation rate** The percentage change in a price index—that is, the speed of overall price level movements.
- Inflation Reports** A type of economic publication put out by many central banks.
- Inflation uncertainty** The degree to which economic agents view future rates of inflation as difficult to forecast.
- Information cascade** The transmission of information from those participants who act first and whose decisions influence the decisions of others.
- Information-motivated traders** Traders that trade to profit from information that they believe allows them to predict future prices.
- Informationally efficient market** A market in which asset prices reflect new information quickly and rationally.
- Initial coin offering** An unregulated process whereby companies raise capital by selling crypto tokens to investors in exchange for fiat money or another agreed-upon cryptocurrency.
- Initial margin** The amount that must be deposited in a clearinghouse account when entering into a futures contract.
- Initial margin requirement** The margin requirement on the first day of a transaction as well as on any day in which additional margin funds must be deposited.
- Initial public offering (IPO)** The first issuance of common shares to the public by a formerly private corporation.
- Input productivity** The amount of output produced by workers in a given period of time—for example, output per hour worked; measures the efficiency of labor.
- Installment method** With respect to revenue recognition, a method that specifies that the portion of the total profit of the sale that is recognized in each period is determined by the percentage of the total sales price for which the seller has received cash.
- Installment sales** With respect to revenue recognition, a method that specifies that the portion of the total profit of the sale that is recognized in each period is determined by the percentage of the total sales price for which the seller has received cash.
- Intangible assets** Assets lacking physical substance, such as patents and trademarks.
- Interbank market** The market of loans and deposits between banks for maturities ranging from overnight to one year.
- Interbank money market** The market of loans and deposits between banks for maturities ranging from overnight to one year.
- Interest** Payment for lending funds.
- Interest coverage** A solvency ratio calculated as EBIT divided by interest payments.
- Interest-only mortgage** A loan in which no scheduled principal repayment is specified for a certain number of years.
- Interest rate** A rate of return that reflects the relationship between differently dated cash flows; a discount rate.
- Interest rate swap** A swap in which the underlying is an interest rate. Can be viewed as a currency swap in which both currencies are the same and can be created as a combination of currency swaps.
- Intergenerational data mining** A form of data mining that applies information developed by previous researchers using a dataset to guide current research using the same or a related dataset.
- Intermarket analysis** A field within technical analysis that combines analysis of major categories of securities—namely, equities, bonds, currencies, and commodities—to identify market trends and possible inflections in a trend.
- Internal rate of return (IRR)** The discount rate that makes net present value equal 0; the discount rate that makes the present value of an investment's costs (outflows) equal to the present value of the investment's benefits (inflows).
- Internet of Things** A network arrangement of structures and devices whereby the objects on the network are able to interact and share information.
- Interpolated spread** The yield spread of a specific bond over the standard swap rate in that currency of the same tenor.
- Interquartile range** The difference between the third and first quartiles of a dataset.
- Interval** With reference to grouped data, a set of values within which an observation falls.
- Interval scale** A measurement scale that not only ranks data but also gives assurance that the differences between scale values are equal.
- Intrinsic value** See *exercise value*.
- Inventory blanket lien** The use of inventory as collateral for a loan. Though the lender has claim to some or all of the company's inventory, the company may still sell or use the inventory in the ordinary course of business.
- Inventory investment** Net change in business inventory.

- Inventory turnover** An activity ratio calculated as cost of goods sold divided by average inventory.
- Inverse demand function** A restatement of the demand function in which price is stated as a function of quantity.
- Inverse floater** A type of leveraged structured financial instrument. The cash flows are adjusted periodically and move in the opposite direction of changes in the reference rate.
- Investing activities** Activities which are associated with the acquisition and disposal of property, plant, and equipment; intangible assets; other long-term assets; and both long-term and short-term investments in the equity and debt (bonds and loans) issued by other companies.
- Investment banks** Financial intermediaries that provide advice to their mostly corporate clients and help them arrange transactions such as initial and seasoned securities offerings.
- Investment opportunity schedule** A graphical depiction of a company's investment opportunities ordered from highest to lowest expected return. A company's optimal capital budget is found where the investment opportunity schedule intersects with the company's marginal cost of capital.
- Investment policy statement** (IPS) A written planning document that describes a client's investment objectives and risk tolerance over a relevant time horizon, along with constraints that apply to the client's portfolio.
- Investment property** Property used to earn rental income or capital appreciation (or both).
- IRR rule** An investment decision rule that accepts projects or investments for which the IRR is greater than the opportunity cost of capital.
- January effect** Calendar anomaly that stock market returns in January are significantly higher compared to the rest of the months of the year, with most of the abnormal returns reported during the first five trading days in January. Also called *turn-of-the-year effect*.
- Joint probability** The probability of the joint occurrence of stated events.
- Joint probability function** A function giving the probability of joint occurrences of values of stated random variables.
- Just-in-time (JIT) method** Method of managing inventory that minimizes in-process inventory stocks.
- Key rate duration** A method of measuring the interest rate sensitivities of a fixed-income instrument or portfolio to shifts in key points along the yield curve.
- Keynesians** Economists who believe that fiscal policy can have powerful effects on aggregate demand, output, and employment when there is substantial spare capacity in an economy.
- Kondratieff wave** A 54-year long economic cycle postulated by Nikolai Kondratieff.
- Kurtosis** The statistical measure that indicates the combined weight of the tails of a distribution relative to the rest of the distribution.
- Labor force** The portion of the working age population (over the age of 16) that is employed or is available for work but not working (unemployed).
- Labor productivity** The quantity of goods and services (real GDP) that a worker can produce in one hour of work.
- Laddering strategy** A form of active strategy which entails scheduling maturities on a systematic basis within the investment portfolio such that investments are spread out equally over the term of the ladder.
- Lagging economic indicators** Turning points that take place later than those of the overall economy; they are believed to have value in identifying the economy's past condition.
- Laspeyres index** A price index created by holding the composition of the consumption basket constant.
- Law of demand** The principle that as the price of a good rises, buyers will choose to buy less of it, and as its price falls, they will buy more.
- Law of diminishing marginal returns** The observation that a variable factor's marginal product must eventually fall as more of it is added to a fixed amount of the other factors.
- Law of diminishing returns** The smallest output that a firm can produce such that its long run average costs are minimized.
- Law of one price** The condition in a financial market in which two equivalent financial instruments or combinations of financial instruments can sell for only one price. Equivalent to the principle that no arbitrage opportunities are possible.
- Lead underwriter** The lead investment bank in a syndicate of investment banks and broker-dealers involved in a securities underwriting.
- Leading economic indicators** Turning points that usually precede those of the overall economy; they are believed to have value for predicting the economy's future state, usually near-term.
- Legal tender** Something that must be accepted when offered in exchange for goods and services.
- Lender of last resort** An entity willing to lend money when no other entity is ready to do so.
- Leptokurtic** Describes a distribution that has fatter tails than a normal distribution.
- Lessee** The party obtaining the use of an asset through a lease.
- Lessor** The owner of an asset that grants the right to use the asset to another party.
- Letter of credit** Form of external credit enhancement whereby a financial institution provides the issuer with a credit line to reimburse any cash flow shortfalls from the assets backing the issue.
- Level of significance** The probability of a Type I error in testing a hypothesis.
- Leverage** In the context of corporate finance, leverage refers to the use of fixed costs within a company's cost structure. Fixed costs that are operating costs (such as depreciation or rent) create operating leverage. Fixed costs that are financial costs (such as interest expense) create financial leverage.
- Leveraged buyout** (LBO) A transaction whereby the target company management team converts the target to a privately held company by using heavy borrowing to finance the purchase of the target company's outstanding shares.
- Liabilities** Present obligations of an enterprise arising from past events, the settlement of which is expected to result in an outflow of resources embodying economic benefits; creditors' claims on the resources of a company.
- Life-cycle stage** The stage of the life cycle: embryonic, growth, shakeout, mature, declining.
- LIFO layer liquidation** With respect to the application of the LIFO inventory method, the liquidation of old, relatively low-priced inventory; happens when the volume of sales rises above the volume of recent purchases so that some sales are made from relatively old, low-priced inventory. Also called *LIFO liquidation*.

- LIFO method** The last in, first out, method of accounting for inventory, which matches sales against the costs of items of inventory in the reverse order the items were placed in inventory (i.e., inventory produced or acquired last are assumed to be sold first).
- LIFO reserve** The difference between the reported LIFO inventory carrying amount and the inventory amount that would have been reported if the FIFO method had been used (in other words, the FIFO inventory value less the LIFO inventory value).
- Likelihood** The probability of an observation, given a particular set of conditions.
- Limit down** A limit move in the futures market in which the price at which a transaction would be made is at or below the lower limit.
- Limit order** Instructions to a broker or exchange to obtain the best price immediately available when filling an order, but in no event accept a price higher than a specified (limit) price when buying or accept a price lower than a specified (limit) price when selling.
- Limit order book** The book or list of limit orders to buy and sell that pertains to a security.
- Limit up** A limit move in the futures market in which the price at which a transaction would be made is at or above the upper limit.
- Limitations on liens** Meant to put limits on how much secured debt an issuer can have.
- Limited partners** Partners with limited liability. Limited partnerships in hedge and private equity funds are typically restricted to investors who are expected to understand and to be able to assume the risks associated with the investments.
- Line chart** In technical analysis, a plot of price data, typically closing prices, with a line connecting the points.
- Linear interpolation** The estimation of an unknown value on the basis of two known values that bracket it, using a straight line between the two known values.
- Linear scale** A scale in which equal distances correspond to equal absolute amounts. Also called *arithmetic scale*.
- Linker** See *inflation-linked bond*.
- Liquid market** Said of a market in which traders can buy or sell with low total transaction costs when they want to trade.
- Liquidation** To sell the assets of a company, division, or subsidiary piecemeal, typically because of bankruptcy; the form of bankruptcy that allows for the orderly satisfaction of creditors' claims after which the company ceases to exist.
- Liquidity** The ability to purchase or sell an asset quickly and easily at a price close to fair market value. The ability to meet short-term obligations using assets that are the most readily converted into cash.
- Liquidity premium** An extra return that compensates investors for the risk of loss relative to an investment's fair value if the investment needs to be converted to cash quickly.
- Liquidity ratios** Financial ratios measuring the company's ability to meet its short-term obligations.
- Liquidity risk** The risk that a financial instrument cannot be purchased or sold without a significant concession in price due to the size of the market.
- Liquidity trap** A condition in which the demand for money becomes infinitely elastic (horizontal demand curve) so that injections of money into the economy will not lower interest rates or affect real activity.
- Load fund** A mutual fund in which, in addition to the annual fee, a percentage fee is charged to invest in the fund and/or for redemptions from the fund.
- Loan-to-value ratio** The ratio of a property's purchase price to the amount of its mortgage.
- Lockbox system** A payment system in which customer payments are mailed to a post office box and the banking institution retrieves and deposits these payments several times a day, enabling the company to have use of the fund sooner than in a centralized system in which customer payments are sent to the company.
- Locked limit** A condition in the futures markets in which a transaction cannot take place because the price would be beyond the limits.
- Lockup period** The minimum period before investors are allowed to make withdrawals or redeem shares from a fund.
- Logarithmic scale** A scale in which equal distances represent equal proportional changes in the underlying quantity.
- London interbank offered rate (Libor)** Collective name for multiple rates at which a select set of banks believe they could borrow unsecured funds from other banks in the London interbank market for different currencies and different borrowing periods ranging from overnight to one year.
- Long** The buyer of a derivative contract. Also refers to the position of owning a derivative.
- Long-lived assets** Assets that are expected to provide economic benefits over a future period of time, typically greater than one year. Also called *long-term assets*.
- Long position** A position in an asset or contract in which one owns the asset or has an exercisable right under the contract.
- Long-run average total cost** The curve describing average total cost when no costs are considered fixed.
- Long-term contract** A contract that spans a number of accounting periods.
- Longitudinal data** Observations on characteristic(s) of the same observational unit through time.
- Look-ahead bias** A bias caused by using information that was unavailable on the test date.
- Loss aversion** The tendency of people to dislike losses more than they like comparable gains.
- Loss severity** Portion of a bond's value (including unpaid interest) an investor loses in the event of default.
- Losses** Asset outflows not directly related to the ordinary activities of the business.
- Lower bound** The lowest possible value of an option.
- M^2** A measure of what a portfolio would have returned if it had taken on the same total risk as the market index.
- Macaulay duration** The approximate amount of time a bond would have to be held for the market discount rate at purchase to be realized if there is a single change in interest rate. It indicates the point in time when the coupon reinvestment and price effects of a change in yield-to-maturity offset each other.
- Machine learning** Diverse approaches by which computers are programmed to improve performance in specified tasks with experience.
- Macroeconomics** The branch of economics that deals with aggregate economic quantities, such as national output and national income.
- Maintenance covenants** Covenants in bank loan agreements that require the borrower to satisfy certain financial ratio tests while the loan is outstanding.

- Maintenance margin** The minimum amount that is required by a futures clearinghouse to maintain a margin account and to protect against default. Participants whose margin balances drop below the required maintenance margin must replenish their accounts.
- Maintenance margin requirement** The margin requirement on any day other than the first day of a transaction.
- Management buy-ins** Leveraged buyout in which the current management team is being replaced and the acquiring team will be involved in managing the company.
- Management buyout** (MBO) A leveraged buyout event in which a group of investors consisting primarily of the company's existing management purchase at least controlling interest of its outstanding shares. They may purchase all shares and take the company private.
- Management fee** A fee based on assets under management or committed capital, as applicable, also called a *base fee*.
- Manufacturing resource planning (MRP)** The incorporation of production planning into inventory management. A MRP analysis provides both a materials acquisition schedule and a production schedule.
- Margin** The amount of money that a trader deposits in a margin account. The term is derived from the stock market practice in which an investor borrows a portion of the money required to purchase a certain amount of stock. In futures markets, there is no borrowing so the margin is more of a down payment or performance bond.
- Margin bond** A cash deposit required by the clearinghouse from the participants to a contract to provide a credit guarantee. Also called a *performance bond*.
- Margin call** A request for the short to deposit additional funds to bring their balance up to the initial margin.
- Margin loan** Money borrowed from a broker to purchase securities.
- Marginal cost** The cost of producing an additional unit of a good.
- Marginal probability** The probability of an event *not* conditioned on another event.
- Marginal product** Measures the productivity of each unit of input and is calculated by taking the difference in total product from adding another unit of input (assuming other resource quantities are held constant).
- Marginal propensity to consume** The proportion of an additional unit of disposable income that is consumed or spent; the change in consumption for a small change in income.
- Marginal propensity to save** The proportion of an additional unit of disposable income that is saved (not spent).
- Marginal revenue** The change in total revenue divided by the change in quantity sold; simply, the additional revenue from selling one more unit.
- Marginal value curve** A curve describing the highest price consumers are willing to pay for each additional unit of a good.
- Mark to market** The revaluation of a financial asset or liability to its current market value or fair value.
- Market** A means of bringing buyers and sellers together to exchange goods and services.
- Market anomaly** Change in the price or return of a security that cannot directly be linked to current relevant information known in the market or to the release of new information into the market.
- Market bid-ask spread** The difference between the best bid and the best offer.
- Market-capitalization weighting** An index weighting method in which the weight assigned to each constituent security is determined by dividing its market capitalization by the total market capitalization (sum of the market capitalization) of all securities in the index. Also called *value weighting*.
- Market discount rate** The rate of return required by investors given the risk of the investment in a bond; also called the *required yield* or the *required rate of return*.
- Market float** The number of shares that are available to the investing public.
- Market liquidity risk** The risk that the price at which investors can actually transact—buying or selling—may differ from the price indicated in the market.
- Market model** A regression equation that specifies a linear relationship between the return on a security (or portfolio) and the return on a broad market index.
- Market multiple models** Valuation models based on share price multiples or enterprise value multiples.
- Market-on-close** An execution instruction specifying that an order can only be filled at the close of trading.
- Market order** Instructions to a broker or exchange to obtain the best price immediately available when filling an order.
- Market-oriented investors** With reference to equity investors, investors whose investment disciplines cannot be clearly categorized as value or growth.
- Market rate of interest** The rate demanded by purchases of bonds, given the risks associated with future cash payment obligations of the particular bond issue.
- Market risk** The risk that arises from movements in interest rates, stock prices, exchange rates, and commodity prices.
- Market value** The price at which an asset or security can currently be bought or sold in an open market.
- Marketable limit order** A buy limit order in which the limit price is placed above the best offer, or a sell limit order in which the limit price is placed below the best bid. Such orders generally will partially or completely fill right away.
- Markowitz efficient frontier** The graph of the set of portfolios offering the maximum expected return for their level of risk (standard deviation of return).
- Matching principle** The accounting principle that expenses should be recognized when the associated revenue is recognized.
- Matching strategy** An active investment strategy that includes intentional matching of the timing of cash outflows with investment maturities.
- Matrix pricing** Process of estimating the market discount rate and price of a bond based on the quoted or flat prices of more frequently traded comparable bonds.
- Maturity premium** An extra return that compensates investors for the increased sensitivity of the market value of debt to a change in market interest rates as maturity is extended.
- Maturity structure** A factor explaining the differences in yields on similar bonds; also called *term structure*.
- Mean absolute deviation** With reference to a sample, the mean of the absolute values of deviations from the sample mean.
- Mean excess return** The average rate of return in excess of the risk-free rate.
- Mean-variance analysis** An approach to portfolio analysis using expected means, variances, and covariances of asset returns.
- Measure of central tendency** A quantitative measure that specifies where data are centered.

- Measure of value** A standard for measuring value; a function of money.
- Measurement scales** A scheme of measuring differences. The four types of measurement scales are nominal, ordinal, interval, and ratio.
- Measures of location** A quantitative measure that describes the location or distribution of data; includes not only measures of central tendency but also other measures such as percentiles.
- Median** The value of the middle item of a set of items that has been sorted into ascending or descending order; the 50th percentile.
- Medium of exchange** Any asset that can be used to purchase goods and services or to repay debts; a function of money.
- Medium-term note** A corporate bond offered continuously to investors by an agent of the issuer, designed to fill the funding gap between commercial paper and long-term bonds.
- Menu costs** A cost of inflation in which businesses constantly have to incur the costs of changing the advertised prices of their goods and services.
- Mesokurtic** Describes a distribution with kurtosis identical to that of the normal distribution.
- Mezzanine financing** Debt or preferred shares with a relationship to common equity resulting from a feature such as attached warrants or conversion options. Mezzanine financing is subordinate to both senior and high-yield debt. It is referred to as mezzanine because of its location on the balance sheet.
- Microeconomics** The branch of economics that deals with markets and decision making of individual economic units, including consumers and businesses.
- Minimum efficient scale** The smallest output that a firm can produce such that its long-run average total cost is minimized.
- Minimum-variance portfolio** The portfolio with the minimum variance for each given level of expected return.
- Minority shareholders** A particular shareholder or block of shareholders holding a small proportion of a company's outstanding shares, resulting in a limited ability to exercise control in voting activities.
- Minsky moment** Named for Hyman Minsky: A point in a business cycle when, after individuals become overextended in borrowing to finance speculative investments, people start realizing that something is likely to go wrong and a panic ensues leading to asset sell-offs.
- Mismatching strategy** An active investment strategy whereby the timing of cash outflows is not matched with investment maturities.
- Modal interval** With reference to grouped data, the most frequently occurring interval.
- Mode** The most frequently occurring value in a set of observations.
- Modern portfolio theory** (MPT) The analysis of rational portfolio choices based on the efficient use of risk.
- Modified duration** A measure of the percentage price change of a bond given a change in its yield-to-maturity.
- Momentum oscillators** A graphical representation of market sentiment that is constructed from price data and calculated so that it oscillates either between a high and a low or around some number.
- Monetarists** Economists who believe that the rate of growth of the money supply is the primary determinant of the rate of inflation.
- Monetary policy** Actions taken by a nation's central bank to affect aggregate output and prices through changes in bank reserves, reserve requirements, or its target interest rate.
- Monetary transmission mechanism** The process whereby a central bank's interest rate gets transmitted through the economy and ultimately affects the rate of increase of prices.
- Monetary union** An economic union in which the members adopt a common currency.
- Money** A generally accepted medium of exchange and unit of account.
- Money convexity** For a bond, the annual or approximate convexity multiplied by the full price.
- Money creation** The process by which changes in bank reserves translate into changes in the money supply.
- Money duration** A measure of the price change in units of the currency in which the bond is denominated given a change in its yield-to-maturity.
- Money market** The market for short-term debt instruments (one-year maturity or less).
- Money market securities** Fixed-income securities with maturities at issuance of one year or less.
- Money market yield** A yield on a basis comparable to the quoted yield on an interest-bearing money market instrument that pays interest on a 360-day basis; the annualized holding period yield, assuming a 360-day year.
- Money multiplier** Describes how a change in reserves is expected to affect the money supply; in its simplest form, 1 divided by the reserve requirement.
- Money neutrality** The thesis that an increase in the money supply leads in the long-run to an increase in the price level, while leaving real variables like output and employment unaffected.
- Money-weighted return** The internal rate of return on a portfolio, taking account of all cash flows.
- Moneyness** The relationship between the price of the underlying and an option's exercise price.
- Monopolistic competition** Highly competitive form of imperfect competition; the competitive characteristic is a notably large number of firms, while the monopoly aspect is the result of product differentiation.
- Monopoly** In pure monopoly markets, there are no substitutes for the given product or service. There is a single seller, which exercises considerable power over pricing and output decisions.
- Monte Carlo simulation** An approach to estimating a probability distribution of outcomes to examine what might happen if particular risks are faced. This method is widely used in the sciences as well as in business to study a variety of problems.
- Moral principles** Beliefs regarding what is good, acceptable, or obligatory behavior and what is bad, unacceptable, or forbidden behavior.
- Mortgage-backed securities** Debt obligations that represent claims to the cash flows from pools of mortgage loans, most commonly on residential property.
- Mortgage loan** A loan secured by the collateral of some specified real estate property that obliges the borrower to make a predetermined series of payments to the lender.
- Mortgage pass-through security** A security created when one or more holders of mortgages form a pool of mortgages and sell shares or participation certificates in the pool.
- Mortgage rate** The interest rate on a mortgage loan; also called *contract rate* or *note rate*.

- Moving average** The average of the closing price of a security over a specified number of periods. With each new period, the average is recalculated.
- Moving-average convergence/divergence oscillator** (MACD) A momentum oscillator that is constructed based on the difference between short-term and long-term moving averages of a security's price.
- Multi-factor model** A model that explains a variable in terms of the values of a set of factors.
- Multi-market indexes** Comprised of indexes from different countries, designed to represent multiple security markets.
- Multi-step format** With respect to the format of the income statement, a format that presents a subtotal for gross profit (revenue minus cost of goods sold).
- Multilateral trading facilities** See *alternative trading systems*.
- Multinational corporation** A company operating in more than one country or having subsidiary firms in more than one country.
- Multiplication rule for probabilities** The rule that the joint probability of events *A* and *B* equals the probability of *A* given *B* times the probability of *B*.
- Multiplier models** Valuation models based on share price multiples or enterprise value multiples.
- Multivariate distribution** A probability distribution that specifies the probabilities for a group of related random variables.
- Multivariate normal distribution** A probability distribution for a group of random variables that is completely defined by the means and variances of the variables plus all the correlations between pairs of the variables.
- Muni** A type of non-sovereign bond issued by a state or local government in the United States. It very often (but not always) offers income tax exemptions.
- Municipal bonds** A type of non-sovereign bond issued by a state or local government in the United States. It very often (but not always) offers income tax exemptions.
- Mutual fund** A professionally managed investment pool in which investors in the fund typically each have a pro-rata claim on the income and value of the fund.
- Mutually exclusive projects** Mutually exclusive projects compete directly with each other. For example, if Projects A and B are mutually exclusive, you can choose A or B, but you cannot choose both.
- n* Factorial** For a positive integer *n*, the product of the first *n* positive integers; 0 factorial equals 1 by definition. *n* factorial is written as *n!*.
- Narrow money** The notes and coins in circulation in an economy, plus other very highly liquid deposits.
- Nash equilibrium** When two or more participants in a non-cooperative game have no incentive to deviate from their respective equilibrium strategies given their opponent's strategies.
- National income** The income received by all factors of production used in the generation of final output. National income equals gross domestic product (or, in some countries, gross national product) minus the capital consumption allowance and a statistical discrepancy.
- Natural language processing** Computer programs developed to analyze and interpret human language.
- Natural rate of unemployment** Effective unemployment rate, below which pressure emerges in labor markets.
- Negative screening** An ESG implementation approach that excludes certain sectors or companies that deviate from an investor's accepted standards. Also called *exclusionary screening* or *norms-based screening*.
- Neo-Keynesians** A group of dynamic general equilibrium models that assume slow-to-adjust prices and wages.
- Net book value** The remaining (undepreciated) balance of an asset's purchase cost. For liabilities, the face value of a bond minus any unamortized discount, or plus any unamortized premium.
- Net exports** The difference between the value of a country's exports and the value of its imports (i.e., value of exports minus imports).
- Net income** The difference between revenue and expenses; what remains after subtracting all expenses (including depreciation, interest, and taxes) from revenue.
- Net operating cycle** An estimate of the average time that elapses between paying suppliers for materials and collecting cash from the subsequent sale of goods produced.
- Net present value** (NPV) The present value of an investment's cash inflows (benefits) minus the present value of its cash outflows (costs).
- Net profit margin** An indicator of profitability, calculated as net income divided by revenue; indicates how much of each dollar of revenues is left after all costs and expenses. Also called *profit margin* or *return on sales*.
- Net realisable value** Estimated selling price in the ordinary course of business less the estimated costs necessary to make the sale.
- Net revenue** Revenue after adjustments (e.g., for estimated returns or for amounts unlikely to be collected).
- Net tax rate** The tax rate net of transfer payments.
- Neural networks** Computer programs based on how our own brains learn and process information.
- Neutral rate of interest** The rate of interest that neither spurs on nor slows down the underlying economy.
- New classical macroeconomics** An approach to macroeconomics that seeks the macroeconomic conclusions of individuals maximizing utility on the basis of rational expectations and companies maximizing profits.
- New Keynesians** A group of dynamic general equilibrium models that assume slow-to-adjust prices and wages.
- No-load fund** A mutual fund in which there is no fee for investing in the fund or for redeeming fund shares, although there is an annual fee based on a percentage of the fund's net asset value.
- Node** Each value on a binomial tree from which successive moves or outcomes branch.
- Nominal GDP** The value of goods and services measured at current prices.
- Nominal rate** A rate of interest based on the security's face value.
- Nominal risk-free interest rate** The sum of the real risk-free interest rate and the inflation premium.
- Nominal scale** A measurement scale that categorizes data but does not rank them.
- Non-accelerating inflation rate of unemployment** Effective unemployment rate, below which pressure emerges in labor markets.
- Non-agency RMBS** In the United States, securities issued by private entities that are not guaranteed by a federal agency or a GSE.

- Non-cumulative preference shares** Preference shares for which dividends that are not paid in the current or subsequent periods are forfeited permanently (instead of being accrued and paid at a later date).
- Non-current assets** Assets that are expected to benefit the company over an extended period of time (usually more than one year).
- Non-current liabilities** Obligations that broadly represent a probable sacrifice of economic benefits in periods generally greater than one year in the future.
- Non-cyclical** A company whose performance is largely independent of the business cycle.
- Non-deliverable forwards** Cash-settled forward contracts, used predominately with respect to foreign exchange forwards. Also called *contracts for differences*.
- Non-financial risks** Risks that arise from sources other than changes in the external financial markets, such as changes in accounting rules, legal environment, or tax rates.
- Non-participating preference shares** Preference shares that do not entitle shareholders to share in the profits of the company. Instead, shareholders are only entitled to receive a fixed dividend payment and the par value of the shares in the event of liquidation.
- Non-recourse loan** Loan in which the lender does not have a shortfall claim against the borrower, so the lender can look only to the property to recover the outstanding mortgage balance.
- Non-renewable resources** Finite resources that are depleted once they are consumed, such as oil and coal.
- Non-sovereign bonds** A bond issued by a government below the national level, such as a province, region, state, or city.
- Non-sovereign government bonds** A bond issued by a government below the national level, such as a province, region, state, or city.
- Nonconventional cash flow** In a nonconventional cash flow pattern, the initial outflow is not followed by inflows only, but the cash flows can flip from positive (inflows) to negative (outflows) again (or even change signs several times).
- Nonparametric test** A test that is not concerned with a parameter, or that makes minimal assumptions about the population from which a sample comes.
- Nonsystematic risk** Unique risk that is local or limited to a particular asset or industry that need not affect assets outside of that asset class.
- Normal distribution** A continuous, symmetric probability distribution that is completely described by its mean and its variance.
- Normal goods** Goods that are consumed in greater quantities as income increases.
- Normal profit** The level of accounting profit needed to just cover the implicit opportunity costs ignored in accounting costs.
- Norms-based screening** An ESG implementation approach that excludes certain sectors or companies that deviate from an investor's accepted standards. Also called *negative screening* or *exclusionary screening*.
- Notching** Ratings adjustment methodology where specific issues from the same borrower may be assigned different credit ratings.
- Note rate** See *mortgage rate*.
- Notes payable** Amounts owed by a business to creditors as a result of borrowings that are evidenced by (short-term) loan agreements.
- Notice period** The length of time (typically 30 to 90 days) in advance that investors may be required to notify a fund of their intent to redeem.
- Notional principal** An imputed principal amount.
- NPV rule** An investment decision rule that states that an investment should be undertaken if its NPV is positive but not undertaken if its NPV is negative.
- Number of days of inventory** An activity ratio equal to the number of days in a period divided by the inventory ratio for the period; an indication of the number of days a company ties up funds in inventory.
- Number of days of payables** An activity ratio equal to the number of days in a period divided by the payables turnover ratio for the period; an estimate of the average number of days it takes a company to pay its suppliers.
- Number of days of receivables** Estimate of the average number of days it takes to collect on credit accounts.
- Objective probabilities** Probabilities that generally do not vary from person to person; includes a priori and objective probabilities.
- Off-the-run** Seasoned government bonds are off-the-run securities; they are not the most recently issued or the most actively traded.
- Offer** The price at which a dealer or trader is willing to sell an asset, typically qualified by a maximum quantity (ask size).
- Official interest rate** An interest rate that a central bank sets and announces publicly; normally the rate at which it is willing to lend money to the commercial banks. Also called *official policy rate* or *policy rate*.
- Official policy rate** An interest rate that a central bank sets and announces publicly; normally the rate at which it is willing to lend money to the commercial banks.
- Oligopoly** Market structure with a relatively small number of firms supplying the market.
- On-the-run** The most recently issued and most actively traded sovereign securities.
- One-sided hypothesis test** A test in which the null hypothesis is rejected only if the evidence indicates that the population parameter is greater than (smaller than) θ_0 . The alternative hypothesis also has one side.
- One-tailed hypothesis test** A test in which the null hypothesis is rejected only if the evidence indicates that the population parameter is greater than (smaller than) θ_0 . The alternative hypothesis also has one side.
- Open economy** An economy that trades with other countries.
- Open-end fund** A mutual fund that accepts new investment money and issues additional shares at a value equal to the net asset value of the fund at the time of investment.
- Open interest** The number of outstanding contracts in a clearinghouse at any given time. The open interest figure changes daily as some parties open up new positions, while other parties offset their old positions.
- Open market operations** The purchase or sale of bonds by the national central bank to implement monetary policy. The bonds traded are usually sovereign bonds issued by the national government.
- Operating activities** Activities that are part of the day-to-day business functioning of an entity, such as selling inventory and providing services.
- Operating breakeven** The number of units produced and sold at which the company's operating profit is zero (revenues = operating costs).
- Operating cash flow** The net amount of cash provided from operating activities.

- Operating cycle** A measure of the time needed to convert raw materials into cash from a sale; it consists of the number of days of inventory and the number of days of receivables.
- Operating efficiency ratios** Ratios that measure how efficiently a company performs day-to-day tasks, such as the collection of receivables and management of inventory.
- Operating lease** An agreement allowing the lessee to use some asset for a period of time; essentially a rental.
- Operating leverage** The use of fixed costs in operations.
- Operating profit** A company's profits on its usual business activities before deducting taxes. Also called *operating income*.
- Operating profit margin** A profitability ratio calculated as operating income (i.e., income before interest and taxes) divided by revenue. Also called *operating margin*.
- Operating risk** The risk attributed to the operating cost structure, in particular the use of fixed costs in operations; the risk arising from the mix of fixed and variable costs; the risk that a company's operations may be severely affected by environmental, social, and governance risk factors.
- Operational independence** A bank's ability to execute monetary policy and set interest rates in the way it thought would best meet the inflation target.
- Operational risk** The risk of loss from failures in a company's systems and procedures.
- Operationally efficient** Said of a market, a financial system, or an economy that has relatively low transaction costs.
- Opportunity cost** The value that investors forgo by choosing a particular course of action; the value of something in its best alternative use.
- Option** A financial instrument that gives one party the right, but not the obligation, to buy or sell an underlying asset from or to another party at a fixed price over a specific period of time. Also referred to as *contingent claim* or *option contract*.
- Option-adjusted price** The value of the embedded option plus the flat price of the bond.
- Option-adjusted spread** $OAS = Z\text{-spread} - \text{Option value}$ (in basis points per year).
- Option-adjusted yield** The required market discount rate whereby the price is adjusted for the value of the embedded option.
- Option contract** See *option*.
- Option premium** The amount of money a buyer pays and seller receives to engage in an option transaction.
- Order** A specification of what instrument to trade, how much to trade, and whether to buy or sell.
- Order-driven markets** A market (generally an auction market) that uses rules to arrange trades based on the orders that traders submit; in their pure form, such markets do not make use of dealers.
- Order precedence hierarchy** With respect to the execution of orders to trade, a set of rules that determines which orders execute before other orders.
- Ordinal scale** A measurement scale that sorts data into categories that are ordered (ranked) with respect to some characteristic.
- Ordinary annuity** An annuity with a first cash flow that is paid one period from the present.
- Ordinary shares** Equity shares that are subordinate to all other types of equity (e.g., preferred equity). Also called *common stock* or *common shares*.
- Organized exchange** A securities marketplace where buyers and seller can meet to arrange their trades.
- Other comprehensive income** Items of comprehensive income that are not reported on the income statement; comprehensive income minus net income.
- Out-of-sample test** A test of a strategy or model using a sample outside the time period on which the strategy or model was developed.
- Out of the money** Options that, if exercised, would require the payment of more money than the value received and therefore would not be currently exercised.
- Outcome** A possible value of a random variable.
- Over-the-counter (OTC) markets** A decentralized market where buy and sell orders initiated from various locations are matched through a communications network.
- Overbought** A market condition in which market sentiment is thought to be unsustainably bullish.
- Overcollateralization** Form of internal credit enhancement that refers to the process of posting more collateral than needed to obtain or secure financing.
- Overfitting** An undesirable result from fitting a model so closely to a dataset that it does not perform well on new data.
- Oversold** A market condition in which market sentiment is thought to be unsustainably bearish.
- Own price** The price of a good or service itself (as opposed to the price of something else).
- Own-price elasticity of demand** The percentage change in quantity demanded for a percentage change in good's own price, holding all other things constant.
- Owners' equity** The excess of assets over liabilities; the residual interest of shareholders in the assets of an entity after deducting the entity's liabilities. Also called *shareholders' equity*.
- Paasche index** An index formula using the current composition of a basket of products.
- Paired comparisons test** A statistical test for differences based on paired observations drawn from samples that are dependent on each other.
- Paired observations** Observations that are dependent on each other.
- Pairs arbitrage trade** A trade in two closely related stocks involving the short sale of one and the purchase of the other.
- Panel data** Observations through time on a single characteristic of multiple observational units.
- Par curve** A sequence of yields-to-maturity such that each bond is priced at par value. The bonds are assumed to have the same currency, credit risk, liquidity, tax status, and annual yields stated for the same periodicity.
- Par value** The amount of principal on a bond.
- Parallel shift** A parallel yield curve shift implies that all rates change by the same amount in the same direction.
- Parameter** A descriptive measure computed from or used to describe a population of data, conventionally represented by Greek letters.
- Parametric test** Any test (or procedure) concerned with parameters or whose validity depends on assumptions concerning the population generating the sample.
- Pari passu** On an equal footing.
- Partial duration** See *key rate duration*.
- Participating preference shares** Preference shares that entitle shareholders to receive the standard preferred dividend plus the opportunity to receive an additional dividend if the company's profits exceed a pre-specified level.

- Pass-through rate** The coupon rate of a mortgage pass-through security.
- Passive investment** A buy and hold approach in which an investor does not make portfolio changes based on short-term expectations of changing market or security performance.
- Passive strategy** In reference to short-term cash management, it is an investment strategy characterized by simple decision rules for making daily investments.
- Payable date** The day that the company actually mails out (or electronically transfers) a dividend payment.
- Payment date** The day that the company actually mails out (or electronically transfers) a dividend payment.
- Payments system** The system for the transfer of money.
- Peak** The highest point of a business cycle.
- Peer group** A group of companies engaged in similar business activities whose economics and valuation are influenced by closely related factors.
- Pennants** A technical analysis continuation pattern formed by trendlines that converge to form a triangle, typically over a short period.
- Per capita real GDP** Real GDP divided by the size of the population, often used as a measure of the average standard of living in a country.
- Per unit contribution margin** The amount that each unit sold contributes to covering fixed costs—that is, the difference between the price per unit and the variable cost per unit.
- Percentage-of-completion** A method of revenue recognition in which, in each accounting period, the company estimates what percentage of the contract is complete and then reports that percentage of the total contract revenue in its income statement.
- Percentiles** Quantiles that divide a distribution into 100 equal parts.
- Perfect competition** A market structure in which the individual firm has virtually no impact on market price, because it is assumed to be a very small seller among a very large number of firms selling essentially identical products.
- Perfectly elastic** When the quantity demanded or supplied of a given good is infinitely sensitive to a change in the value of a specified variable (e.g., price).
- Perfectly inelastic** When the quantity demanded or supplied of a given good is completely insensitive to a change in the value of a specified variable (e.g., price).
- Performance appraisal** The evaluation of risk-adjusted performance; the evaluation of investment skill.
- Performance bond** See *margin bond*.
- Performance evaluation** The measurement and assessment of the outcomes of investment management decisions.
- Performance fee** Fees paid to the general partner from the limited partner(s) based on realized profits.
- Performance measurement** The calculation of returns in a logical and consistent manner.
- Period costs** Costs (e.g., executives' salaries) that cannot be directly matched with the timing of revenues and which are thus expensed immediately.
- Periodicity** The assumed number of periods in the year, typically matches the frequency of coupon payments.
- Permanent differences** Differences between tax and financial reporting of revenue (expenses) that will not be reversed at some future date. These result in a difference between the company's effective tax rate and statutory tax rate and do not result in a deferred tax item.
- Permissioned networks** Networks that are fully open only to select participants on a DLT network.
- Permissionless networks** Networks that are fully open to any user on a DLT network.
- Permutation** An ordered listing.
- Perpetual bonds** Bonds with no stated maturity date.
- Perpetuity** A perpetual annuity, or a set of never-ending level sequential cash flows, with the first cash flow occurring one period from now. A bond that does not mature.
- Personal consumption expenditures** All domestic personal consumption; the basis for a price index for such consumption called the PCE price index.
- Personal disposable income** Equal to personal income less personal taxes.
- Personal income** A broad measure of household income that includes all income received by households, whether earned or unearned; measures the ability of consumers to make purchases.
- Plain vanilla bond** Bond that makes periodic, fixed coupon payments during the bond's life and a lump-sum payment of principal at maturity. Also called *conventional bond*.
- Platykurtic** Describes a distribution that has relatively less weight in the tails than the normal distribution.
- Point and figure chart** A technical analysis chart that is constructed with columns of X's alternating with columns of O's such that the horizontal axis represents only the number of changes in price without reference to time or volume.
- Point estimate** A single numerical estimate of an unknown quantity, such as a population parameter.
- Point of sale (POS)** Systems that capture transaction data at the physical location in which the sale is made.
- Policy rate** An interest rate that a central bank sets and announces publicly; normally the rate at which it is willing to lend money to the commercial banks.
- Population** All members of a specified group.
- Population mean** The arithmetic mean value of a population; the arithmetic mean of all the observations or values in the population.
- Population standard deviation** A measure of dispersion relating to a population in the same unit of measurement as the observations, calculated as the positive square root of the population variance.
- Population variance** A measure of dispersion relating to a population, calculated as the mean of the squared deviations around the population mean.
- Portfolio company** In private equity, the company in which the private equity fund is investing.
- Portfolio demand for money** The demand to hold speculative money balances based on the potential opportunities or risks that are inherent in other financial instruments.
- Portfolio planning** The process of creating a plan for building a portfolio that is expected to satisfy a client's investment objectives.
- Position** The quantity of an asset that an entity owns or owes.
- Positive screening** An ESG implementation approach that seeks to identify companies that embrace desired ESG-related principles.
- Posterior probability** An updated probability that reflects or comes after new information.
- Potential GDP** The level of real GDP that can be produced at full employment; measures the productive capacity of the economy.
- Power of a test** The probability of correctly rejecting the null—that is, rejecting the null hypothesis when it is false.

- Precautionary money balances** Money held to provide a buffer against unforeseen events that might require money.
- Precautionary stocks** A level of inventory beyond anticipated needs that provides a cushion in the event that it takes longer to replenish inventory than expected or in the case of greater than expected demand.
- Preference shares** A type of equity interest which ranks above common shares with respect to the payment of dividends and the distribution of the company's net assets upon liquidation. They have characteristics of both debt and equity securities. Also called *preferred stock*.
- Preferred stock** See *preference shares*.
- Premium** In the case of bonds, premium refers to the amount by which a bond is priced above its face (par) value. In the case of an option, the amount paid for the option contract.
- Prepaid expense** A normal operating expense that has been paid in advance of when it is due.
- Prepayment option** Contractual provision that entitles the borrower to prepay all or part of the outstanding mortgage principal prior to the scheduled due date when the principal must be repaid. Also called *early repayment option*.
- Prepayment penalty mortgages** Mortgages that stipulate a monetary penalty if a borrower prepays within a certain time period after the mortgage is originated.
- Prepayment risk** The uncertainty that the timing of the actual cash flows will be different from the scheduled cash flows as set forth in the loan agreement due to the borrowers' ability to alter payments, usually to take advantage of interest rate movements.
- Present value (PV)** The present discounted value of future cash flows: For assets, the present discounted value of the future net cash inflows that the asset is expected to generate; for liabilities, the present discounted value of the future net cash outflows that are expected to be required to settle the liabilities.
- Present value models** Valuation models that estimate the intrinsic value of a security as the present value of the future benefits expected to be received from the security. Also called *discounted cash flow models*.
- Pretax margin** A profitability ratio calculated as earnings before taxes divided by revenue.
- Price elasticity of demand** Measures the percentage change in the quantity demanded, given a percentage change in the price of a given product.
- Price index** Represents the average prices of a basket of goods and services.
- Price limits** Limits imposed by a futures exchange on the price change that can occur from one day to the next.
- Price multiple** A ratio that compares the share price with some sort of monetary flow or value to allow evaluation of the relative worth of a company's stock.
- Price priority** The principle that the highest priced buy orders and the lowest priced sell orders execute first.
- Price relative** A ratio of an ending price over a beginning price; it is equal to 1 plus the holding period return on the asset.
- Price return** Measures *only* the price appreciation or percentage change in price of the securities in an index or portfolio.
- Price return index** An index that reflects *only* the price appreciation or percentage change in price of the constituent securities. Also called *price index*.
- Price stability** In economics, refers to an inflation rate that is low on average and not subject to wide fluctuation.
- Price takers** Producers that must accept whatever price the market dictates.
- Price to book value** A valuation ratio calculated as price per share divided by book value per share.
- Price to cash flow** A valuation ratio calculated as price per share divided by cash flow per share.
- Price to earnings ratio** (P/E ratio or P/E) The ratio of share price to earnings per share.
- Price to sales** A valuation ratio calculated as price per share divided by sales per share.
- Price value of a basis point** A version of money duration, it is an estimate of the change in the full price of a bond given a 1 basis point change in the yield-to-maturity.
- Price weighting** An index weighting method in which the weight assigned to each constituent security is determined by dividing its price by the sum of all the prices of the constituent securities.
- Priced risk** Risk for which investors demand compensation for bearing (e.g. equity risk, company-specific factors, macroeconomic factors).
- Primary bond markets** Markets in which issuers first sell bonds to investors to raise capital.
- Primary capital markets (primary markets)** The market where securities are first sold and the issuers receive the proceeds.
- Primary dealers** Financial institutions that are authorized to deal in new issues of sovereign bonds and that serve primarily as trading counterparties of the office responsible for issuing sovereign bonds.
- Primary market** The market where securities are first sold and the issuers receive the proceeds.
- Prime brokers** Brokers that provide services including custody, administration, lending, short borrowing, and trading.
- Principal** The amount of funds originally invested in a project or instrument; the face value to be paid at maturity.
- Principal-agent relationship** A relationship in which a principal hires an agent to perform a particular task or service; also known as an *agency relationship*.
- Principal amount** Amount that an issuer agrees to repay the debt holders on the maturity date.
- Principal business activity** The business activity from which a company derives a majority of its revenues and/or earnings.
- Principal value** Amount that an issuer agrees to repay the debt holders on the maturity date.
- Principle of no arbitrage** See *arbitrage-free pricing*.
- Prior probabilities** Probabilities reflecting beliefs prior to the arrival of new information.
- Priority of claims** Priority of payment, with the most senior or highest ranking debt having the first claim on the cash flows and assets of the issuer.
- Private equity securities** Securities that are not listed on public exchanges and have no active secondary market. They are issued primarily to institutional investors via non-public offerings, such as private placements.
- Private investment in public equity** An investment in the equity of a publicly traded firm that is made at a discount to the market value of the firm's shares.
- Private placement** Typically a non-underwritten, unregistered offering of securities that are sold only to an investor or a small group of investors. It can be accomplished directly between the issuer and the investor(s) or through an investment bank.
- Probability** A number between 0 and 1 describing the chance that a stated event will occur.

- Probability density function** A function with non-negative values such that probability can be described by areas under the curve graphing the function.
- Probability distribution** A distribution that specifies the probabilities of a random variable's possible outcomes.
- Probability function** A function that specifies the probability that the random variable takes on a specific value.
- Producer price index** Reflects the price changes experienced by domestic producers in a country.
- Production function** Provides the quantitative link between the level of output that the economy can produce and the inputs used in the production process.
- Productivity** The amount of output produced by workers in a given period of time—for example, output per hour worked; measures the efficiency of labor.
- Profit** The return that owners of a company receive for the use of their capital and the assumption of financial risk when making their investments.
- Profit and loss (P&L) statement** A financial statement that provides information about a company's profitability over a stated period of time.
- Profit margin** An indicator of profitability, calculated as net income divided by revenue; indicates how much of each dollar of revenues is left after all costs and expenses.
- Profitability ratios** Ratios that measure a company's ability to generate profitable sales from its resources (assets).
- Project sequencing** To defer the decision to invest in a future project until the outcome of some or all of a current project is known. Projects are sequenced through time, so that investing in a project creates the option to invest in future projects.
- Promissory note** A written promise to pay a certain amount of money on demand.
- Property, plant, and equipment** Tangible assets that are expected to be used for more than one period in either the production or supply of goods or services, or for administrative purposes.
- Prospectus** The document that describes the terms of a new bond issue and helps investors perform their analysis on the issue.
- Protective put** An option strategy in which a long position in an asset is combined with a long position in a put.
- Proxy contest** Corporate takeover mechanism in which shareholders are persuaded to vote for a group seeking a controlling position on a company's board of directors.
- Proxy voting** A process that enables shareholders who are unable to attend a meeting to authorize another individual to vote on their behalf.
- Pseudo-random numbers** Numbers produced by random number generators.
- Public offer** See *public offering*.
- Public offering** An offering of securities in which any member of the public may buy the securities. Also called *public offer*.
- Pull on liquidity** When disbursements are paid too quickly or trade credit availability is limited, requiring companies to expend funds before they receive funds from sales that could cover the liability.
- Pure discount bonds** See *zero-coupon bonds*.
- Pure discount instruments** Instruments that pay interest as the difference between the amount borrowed and the amount paid back.
- Pure-play method** A method for estimating the beta for a company or project; it requires using a comparable company's beta and adjusting it for financial leverage differences.
- Put** An option that gives the holder the right to sell an underlying asset to another party at a fixed price over a specific period of time.
- Put–call–forward parity** The relationship among puts, calls, and forward contracts.
- Put–call parity** An equation expressing the equivalence (parity) of a portfolio of a call and a bond with a portfolio of a put and the underlying, which leads to the relationship between put and call prices.
- Put/call ratio** A technical analysis indicator that evaluates market sentiment based upon the volume of put options traded divided by the volume of call options traded for a particular financial instrument.
- Put option** An option that gives the holder the right to sell an underlying asset to another party at a fixed price over a specific period of time.
- Puttable bonds** Bonds that give the bondholder the right to sell the bond back to the issuer at a predetermined price on specified dates.
- Puttable common shares** Common shares that give investors the option (or right) to sell their shares (i.e., “put” them) back to the issuing company at a price that is specified when the shares are originally issued.
- Quantile** A value at or below which a stated fraction of the data lies. Also called *fractile*.
- Quantitative easing** An expansionary monetary policy based on aggressive open market purchase operations.
- Quantity equation of exchange** An expression that over a given period, the amount of money used to purchase all goods and services in an economy, $M \times V$, is equal to monetary value of this output, $P \times Y$.
- Quantity theory of money** Asserts that total spending (in money terms) is proportional to the quantity of money.
- Quartiles** Quartiles that divide a distribution into four equal parts.
- Quasi-fixed cost** A cost that stays the same over a range of production but can change to another constant level when production moves outside of that range.
- Quasi-government bonds** A bond issued by an entity that is either owned or sponsored by a national government. Also called *agency bond*.
- Quick assets** Assets that can be most readily converted to cash (e.g., cash, short-term marketable investments, receivables).
- Quick ratio** A stringent measure of liquidity that indicates a company's ability to satisfy current liabilities with its most liquid assets, calculated as (cash + short-term marketable investments + receivables) divided by current liabilities.
- Quintiles** Quartiles that divide a distribution into five equal parts.
- Quota rents** Profits that foreign producers can earn by raising the price of their goods higher than they would without a quota.
- Quotas** Government policies that restrict the quantity of a good that can be imported into a country, generally for a specified period of time.
- Quote-driven market** A market in which dealers acting as principals facilitate trading.
- Quoted interest rate** A quoted interest rate that does not account for compounding within the year. Also called *stated annual interest rate*.
- Quoted margin** The specified yield spread over the reference rate, used to compensate an investor for the difference in the credit risk of the issuer and that implied by the reference rate.

- Random number** An observation drawn from a uniform distribution.
- Random number generator** An algorithm that produces uniformly distributed random numbers between 0 and 1.
- Random variable** A quantity whose future outcomes are uncertain.
- Range** The difference between the maximum and minimum values in a dataset.
- Ratio scales** A measurement scale that has all the characteristics of interval measurement scales as well as a true zero point as the origin.
- Real GDP** The value of goods and services produced, measured at base year prices.
- Real income** Income adjusted for the effect of inflation on the purchasing power of money. Also known as the *purchasing power of income*. If income remains constant and a good's price falls, real income is said to rise, even though the number of monetary units (e.g., dollars) remains unchanged.
- Real interest rate** Nominal interest rate minus the expected rate of inflation.
- Real risk-free interest rate** The single-period interest rate for a completely risk-free security if no inflation were expected.
- Realizable (settlement) value** With reference to assets, the amount of cash or cash equivalents that could currently be obtained by selling the asset in an orderly disposal; with reference to liabilities, the undiscounted amount of cash or cash equivalents expected to be paid to satisfy the liabilities in the normal course of business.
- Rebalancing** Adjusting the weights of the constituent securities in an index.
- Rebalancing policy** The set of rules that guide the process of restoring a portfolio's asset class weights to those specified in the strategic asset allocation.
- Recession** A period during which real GDP decreases (i.e., negative growth) for at least two successive quarters, or a period of significant decline in total output, income, employment, and sales usually lasting from six months to a year.
- Recognition lag** The lag in government response to an economic problem resulting from the delay in confirming a change in the state of the economy.
- Recourse loan** Loan in which the lender has a claim against the borrower for any shortfall between the outstanding mortgage balance and the proceeds received from the sale of the property.
- Redemption yield** See *yield to maturity*.
- Redemptions** Withdrawals of funds by investors.
- Refinancing rate** A type of central bank policy rate.
- Registered bonds** Bonds for which ownership is recorded by either name or serial number.
- Relative dispersion** The amount of dispersion relative to a reference value or benchmark.
- Relative frequency** With reference to an interval of grouped data, the number of observations in the interval divided by the total number of observations in the sample.
- Relative price** The price of a specific good or service in comparison with those of other goods and services.
- Relative strength analysis** A comparison of the performance of one asset with the performance of another asset or a benchmark based on changes in the ratio of the securities' respective prices over time.
- Relative strength index** A technical analysis momentum oscillator that compares a security's gains with its losses over a set period.
- Renewable resources** Resources that can be replenished, such as a forest.
- Rent** Payment for the use of property.
- Reorganization** Agreements made by a company in bankruptcy under which a company's capital structure is altered and/or alternative arrangements are made for debt repayment; US Chapter 11 bankruptcy. The company emerges from bankruptcy as a going concern.
- Replication** The creation of an asset or portfolio from another asset, portfolio, and/or derivative.
- Repo** A form of collateralized loan involving the sale of a security with a simultaneous agreement by the seller to buy the same security back from the purchaser at an agreed-on price and future date. The party who sells the security at the inception of the repurchase agreement and buys it back at maturity is borrowing money from the other party, and the security sold and subsequently repurchased represents the collateral.
- Repo margin** The difference between the market value of the security used as collateral and the value of the loan. Also called *haircut*.
- Repo rate** The interest rate on a repurchase agreement.
- Repurchase agreement** A form of collateralized loan involving the sale of a security with a simultaneous agreement by the seller to buy the same security back from the purchaser at an agreed-on price and future date. The party who sells the security at the inception of the repurchase agreement and buys it back at maturity is borrowing money from the other party, and the security sold and subsequently repurchased represents the collateral.
- Repurchase date** The date when the party who sold the security at the inception of a repurchase agreement buys the security back from the cash lending counterparty.
- Repurchase price** The price at which the party who sold the security at the inception of the repurchase agreement buys the security back from the cash lending counterparty.
- Required margin** The yield spread over, or under, the reference rate such that an FRN is priced at par value on a rate reset date.
- Required rate of return** See *market discount rate*.
- Required yield** See *market discount rate*.
- Required yield spread** The difference between the yield-to-maturity on a new bond and the benchmark rate; additional compensation required by investors for the difference in risk and tax status of a bond relative to a government bond. Sometimes called the *spread over the benchmark*.
- Reserve accounts** Form of internal credit enhancement that relies on creating accounts and depositing in these accounts cash that can be used to absorb losses. Also called *reserve funds*.
- Reserve funds** See *reserve accounts*.
- Reserve requirement** The requirement for banks to hold reserves in proportion to the size of deposits.
- Resistance** In technical analysis, a price range in which selling activity is sufficient to stop the rise in the price of a security.
- Responsible investing** The practice of identifying companies that can efficiently manage their financial, environmental, and human capital resources to generate attractive long-term profitability; often synonymous with *sustainable investing*.
- Restricted payments** A bond covenant meant to protect creditors by limiting how much cash can be paid out to shareholders over time.

- Retail method** An inventory accounting method in which the sales value of an item is reduced by the gross margin to calculate the item's cost.
- Retracement** In technical analysis, a reversal in the movement of a security's price such that it is counter to the prevailing longer-term price trend.
- Return-generating model** A model that can provide an estimate of the expected return of a security given certain parameters and estimates of the values of the independent variables in the model.
- Return on assets (ROA)** A profitability ratio calculated as net income divided by average total assets; indicates a company's net profit generated per dollar invested in total assets.
- Return on equity (ROE)** A profitability ratio calculated as net income divided by average shareholders' equity.
- Return on sales** An indicator of profitability, calculated as net income divided by revenue; indicates how much of each dollar of revenues is left after all costs and expenses.
- Return on total capital** A profitability ratio calculated as EBIT divided by the sum of short- and long-term debt and equity.
- Revaluation model** The process of valuing long-lived assets at fair value, rather than at cost less accumulated depreciation. Any resulting profit or loss is either reported on the income statement and/or through equity under revaluation surplus.
- Revenue** The amount charged for the delivery of goods or services in the ordinary activities of a business over a stated period; the inflows of economic resources to a company over a stated period.
- Reversal patterns** A type of pattern used in technical analysis to predict the end of a trend and a change in direction of the security's price.
- Reverse repo** A repurchase agreement viewed from the perspective of the cash lending counterparty.
- Reverse repurchase agreement** A repurchase agreement viewed from the perspective of the cash lending counterparty.
- Reverse stock split** A reduction in the number of shares outstanding with a corresponding increase in share price, but no change to the company's underlying fundamentals.
- Revolving credit agreements** The strongest form of short-term bank borrowing facilities; they are in effect for multiple years (e.g., 3–5 years) and may have optional medium-term loan features.
- Rho** The sensitivity of the option price to the risk-free rate.
- Ricardian equivalence** An economic theory that implies that it makes no difference whether a government finances a deficit by increasing taxes or issuing debt.
- Risk** Exposure to uncertainty. The chance of a loss or adverse outcome as a result of an action, inaction, or external event.
- Risk averse** The assumption that an investor will choose the least risky alternative.
- Risk aversion** The degree of an investor's inability and unwillingness to take risk.
- Risk budgeting** The establishment of objectives for individuals, groups, or divisions of an organization that takes into account the allocation of an acceptable level of risk.
- Risk exposure** The state of being exposed or vulnerable to a risk. The extent to which an entity is sensitive to underlying risks.
- Risk governance** The top-down process and guidance that directs risk management activities to align with and support the overall enterprise.
- Risk management** The process of identifying the level of risk an entity wants, measuring the level of risk the entity currently has, taking actions that bring the actual level of risk to the desired level of risk, and monitoring the new actual level of risk so that it continues to be aligned with the desired level of risk.
- Risk management framework** The infrastructure, process, and analytics needed to support effective risk management in an organization.
- Risk-neutral pricing** Sometimes said of derivatives pricing, uses the fact that arbitrage opportunities guarantee that a risk-free portfolio consisting of the underlying and the derivative must earn the risk-free rate.
- Risk-neutral probabilities** Weights that are used to compute a binomial option price. They are the probabilities that would apply if a risk-neutral investor valued an option.
- Risk premium** An extra return expected by investors for bearing some specified risk.
- Risk shifting** Actions to change the distribution of risk outcomes.
- Risk tolerance** The amount of risk an investor is willing and able to bear to achieve an investment goal.
- Risk transfer** Actions to pass on a risk to another party, often, but not always, in the form of an insurance policy.
- Robo-adviser** A machine-based analytical tool or service that provides technology-driven investment solutions through online platforms.
- Robust** The quality of being relatively unaffected by a violation of assumptions.
- Rule of 72** The principle that the approximate number of years necessary for an investment to double is 72 divided by the stated interest rate.
- Running yield** See *current yield*.
- Safety-first rules** Rules for portfolio selection that focus on the risk that portfolio value will fall below some minimum acceptable level over some time horizon.
- Safety stock** A level of inventory beyond anticipated needs that provides a cushion in the event that it takes longer to replenish inventory than expected or in the case of greater than expected demand.
- Sales** Generally, a synonym for revenue; "sales" is generally understood to refer to the sale of goods, whereas "revenue" is understood to include the sale of goods or services.
- Sales risk** Uncertainty with respect to the quantity of goods and services that a company is able to sell and the price it is able to achieve; the risk related to the uncertainty of revenues.
- Sales-type leases** A type of finance lease, from a lessor perspective, where the present value of the lease payments (lease receivable) exceeds the carrying value of the leased asset. The revenues earned by the lessor are operating (the profit on the sale) and financing (interest) in nature.
- Sample** A subset of a population.
- Sample excess kurtosis** A sample measure of the degree of a distribution's kurtosis in excess of the normal distribution's kurtosis.
- Sample kurtosis** A sample measure of the degree of a distribution's peakedness.
- Sample mean** The sum of the sample observations, divided by the sample size.

- Sample selection bias** Bias introduced by systematically excluding some members of the population according to a particular attribute—for example, the bias introduced when data availability leads to certain observations being excluded from the analysis.
- Sample skewness** A sample measure of degree of asymmetry of a distribution.
- Sample standard deviation** The positive square root of the sample variance.
- Sample statistic** A quantity computed from or used to describe a sample.
- Sample variance** A sample measure of the degree of dispersion of a distribution, calculated by dividing the sum of the squared deviations from the sample mean by the sample size minus 1.
- Sampling** The process of obtaining a sample.
- Sampling distribution** The distribution of all distinct possible values that a statistic can assume when computed from samples of the same size randomly drawn from the same population.
- Sampling error** The difference between the observed value of a statistic and the quantity it is intended to estimate.
- Sampling plan** The set of rules used to select a sample.
- Say on pay** A process whereby shareholders may vote on executive remuneration (compensation) matters.
- Say's law** Named for French economist J.B. Say: All that is produced will be sold because supply creates its own demand.
- Scenario analysis** Analysis that shows the changes in key financial quantities that result from given (economic) events, such as the loss of customers, the loss of a supply source, or a catastrophic event; a risk management technique involving examination of the performance of a portfolio under specified situations. Closely related to stress testing.
- Screening** The application of a set of criteria to reduce a set of potential investments to a smaller set having certain desired characteristics.
- Seasoned offering** An offering in which an issuer sells additional units of a previously issued security.
- Second-degree price discrimination** When the monopolist charges different per-unit prices using the quantity purchased as an indicator of how highly the customer values the product.
- Second lien** A secured interest in the pledged assets that ranks below first lien debt in both collateral protection and priority of payment.
- Secondary bond markets** Markets in which existing bonds are traded among investors.
- Secondary market** The market where securities are traded among investors.
- Secondary precedence rules** Rules that determine how to rank orders placed at the same time.
- Sector** A group of related industries.
- Sector indexes** Indexes that represent and track different economic sectors—such as consumer goods, energy, finance, health care, and technology—on either a national, regional, or global basis.
- Secured bonds** Bonds secured by assets or financial guarantees pledged to ensure debt repayment in case of default.
- Secured debt** Debt in which the debtholder has a direct claim—a pledge from the issuer—on certain assets and their associated cash flows.
- Securitization** A process that involves moving assets into a special legal entity, which then uses the assets as guarantees to secure a bond issue.
- Securitized assets** Assets that are typically used to create asset-backed bonds; for example, when a bank securitizes a pool of loans, the loans are said to be securitized.
- Security characteristic line** A plot of the excess return of a security on the excess return of the market.
- Security market index** A portfolio of securities representing a given security market, market segment, or asset class.
- Security market line** (SML) The graph of the capital asset pricing model.
- Security selection** The process of selecting individual securities; typically, security selection has the objective of generating superior risk-adjusted returns relative to a portfolio's benchmark.
- Self-investment limits** With respect to investment limitations applying to pension plans, restrictions on the percentage of assets that can be invested in securities issued by the pension plan sponsor.
- Sell-side firm** A broker or dealer that sells securities to and provides independent investment research and recommendations to investment management companies.
- Semi-strong-form efficient market** A market in which security prices reflect all publicly known and available information.
- Semiannual bond basis yield** An annual rate having a periodicity of two; also known as a *semiannual bond equivalent yield*.
- Semiannual bond equivalent yield** See *semiannual bond basis yield*.
- Semideviation** The positive square root of semivariance (sometimes called *semistandard deviation*).
- Semilogarithmic** Describes a scale constructed so that equal intervals on the vertical scale represent equal rates of change, and equal intervals on the horizontal scale represent equal amounts of change.
- Semivariance** The average squared deviation below the mean.
- Seniority ranking** Priority of payment of various debt obligations.
- Sensitivity analysis** Analysis that shows the range of possible outcomes as specific assumptions are changed.
- Separately managed account** (SMA) An investment portfolio managed exclusively for the benefit of an individual or institution.
- Serial maturity structure** Structure for a bond issue in which the maturity dates are spread out during the bond's life; a stated number of bonds mature and are paid off each year before final maturity.
- Settlement** The process that occurs after a trade is completed, the securities are passed to the buyer, and payment is received by the seller.
- Settlement date** Date when the buyer makes cash payment and the seller delivers the security.
- Settlement price** The official price, designated by the clearinghouse, from which daily gains and losses will be determined and marked to market.
- Share repurchase** A transaction in which a company buys back its own shares. Unlike stock dividends and stock splits, share repurchases use corporate cash.
- Shareholder activism** Strategies used by shareholders to attempt to compel a company to act in a desired manner.
- Shareholder engagement** The process whereby companies engage with their shareholders.

- Shareholders' equity** Assets less liabilities; the residual interest in the assets after subtracting the liabilities.
- Sharpe ratio** The average return in excess of the risk-free rate divided by the standard deviation of return; a measure of the average excess return earned per unit of standard deviation of return.
- Shelf registration** Type of public offering that allows the issuer to file a single, all-encompassing offering circular that covers a series of bond issues.
- Short** The seller of an asset or derivative contract. Also refers to the position of being short an asset or derivative contract.
- Short position** A position in an asset or contract in which one has sold an asset one does not own, or in which a right under a contract can be exercised against oneself.
- Short-run average total cost** The curve describing average total cost when some costs are considered fixed.
- Short selling** A transaction in which borrowed securities are sold with the intention to repurchase them at a lower price at a later date and return them to the lender.
- Shortfall risk** The risk that portfolio value will fall below some minimum acceptable level over some time horizon.
- Shutdown point** The point at which average revenue is equal to the firm's average variable cost.
- Simple interest** The interest earned each period on the original investment; interest calculated on the principal only.
- Simple random sample** A subset of a larger population created in such a way that each element of the population has an equal probability of being selected to the subset.
- Simple random sampling** The procedure of drawing a sample to satisfy the definition of a simple random sample.
- Simple yield** The sum of the coupon payments plus the straight-line amortized share of the gain or loss, divided by the flat price.
- Simulation** Computer-generated sensitivity or scenario analysis that is based on probability models for the factors that drive outcomes.
- Simulation trial** A complete pass through the steps of a simulation.
- Single-step format** With respect to the format of the income statement, a format that does not subtotal for gross profit (revenue minus cost of goods sold).
- Sinking fund arrangement** Provision that reduces the credit risk of a bond issue by requiring the issuer to retire a portion of the bond's principal outstanding each year.
- Situational influences** External factors, such as environmental or cultural elements, that shape our behavior.
- Skewed** Not symmetrical.
- Skewness** A quantitative measure of skew (lack of symmetry); a synonym of skew.
- Small country** A country that is a price taker in the world market for a product and cannot influence the world market price.
- Smart contract** A computer program that is designed to self-execute on the basis of pre-specified terms and conditions agreed to by parties to a contract.
- Socially responsible investing** An investment approach that excludes investments in companies or industries that deviate from an organization's beliefs and sometimes includes investments with favorable environmental or social profiles.
- Solvency** With respect to financial statement analysis, the ability of a company to fulfill its long-term obligations.
- Solvency ratios** Ratios that measure a company's ability to meet its long-term obligations.
- Solvency risk** The risk that an entity does not survive or succeed because it runs out of cash, even though it might otherwise be solvent.
- Sovereign bonds** A bond issued by a national government.
- Sovereign yield spread** An estimate of the country spread (country equity premium) for a developing nation that is based on a comparison of bonds yields in country being analyzed and a developed country. The sovereign yield spread is the difference between a government bond yield in the country being analyzed, denominated in the currency of the developed country, and the Treasury bond yield on a similar maturity bond in the developed country.
- Sovereigns** A bond issued by a national government.
- Spearman rank correlation coefficient** A measure of correlation applied to ranked data.
- Special dividend** A dividend paid by a company that does not pay dividends on a regular schedule, or a dividend that supplements regular cash dividends with an extra payment.
- Special purpose entity** A non-operating entity created to carry out a specified purpose, such as leasing assets or securitizing receivables; can be a corporation, partnership, trust, limited liability, or partnership formed to facilitate a specific type of business activity. Also called *special purpose vehicle* or *variable interest entity*.
- Special purpose vehicle** See *special purpose entity*.
- Specific identification method** An inventory accounting method that identifies which specific inventory items were sold and which remained in inventory to be carried over to later periods.
- Speculative demand for money** The demand to hold speculative money balances based on the potential opportunities or risks that are inherent in other financial instruments. Also called *portfolio demand for money*.
- Speculative money balances** Monies held in anticipation that other assets will decline in value.
- Split coupon bond** See *deferred coupon bond*.
- Sponsored** A type of depository receipt in which the foreign company whose shares are held by the depository has a direct involvement in the issuance of the receipts.
- Spot curve** A sequence of yields-to-maturity on zero-coupon bonds. Sometimes called *zero* or *strip curve* because coupon payments are "stripped" off of the bonds.
- Spot markets** Markets in which assets are traded for immediate delivery.
- Spot prices** The price of an asset for immediately delivery.
- Spot rates** A sequence of market discount rates that correspond to the cash flow dates; yields-to-maturity on zero-coupon bonds maturing at the date of each cash flow.
- Spread** In general, the difference in yield between different fixed income securities. Often used to refer to the difference between the yield-to-maturity and the benchmark.
- Spread over the benchmark** See *required yield spread*.
- Spread risk** Bond price risk arising from changes in the yield spread on credit-risky bonds; reflects changes in the market's assessment and/or pricing of credit migration (or downgrade) risk and market liquidity risk.
- Stackelberg model** A prominent model of strategic decisionmaking in which firms are assumed to make their decisions sequentially.
- Stagflation** When a high inflation rate is combined with a high level of unemployment and a slowdown of the economy.
- Staggered boards** Election process whereby directors are typically divided into multiple classes that are elected separately in consecutive years—that is, one class every year.

- Stakeholder management** The identification, prioritization, and understanding of the interests of stakeholder groups, and managing the company's relationships with these groups.
- Stakeholders** Individuals or groups of individuals who may be affected either directly or indirectly by a decision and thus have an interest, or stake, in the decision.
- Standard cost** With respect to inventory accounting, the planned or target unit cost of inventory items or services.
- Standard deviation** The positive square root of the variance; a measure of dispersion in the same units as the original data.
- Standard normal distribution** The normal density with mean (μ) equal to 0 and standard deviation (σ) equal to 1.
- Standardizing** A transformation that involves subtracting the mean and dividing the result by the standard deviation.
- Standards of conduct** Behaviors required by a group; established benchmarks that clarify or enhance a group's code of ethics.
- Standing limit orders** A limit order at a price below market and which therefore is waiting to trade.
- Stated annual interest rate** A quoted interest rate that does not account for compounding within the year. Also called *quoted interest rate*.
- Statement of changes in equity** (statement of owners' equity) A financial statement that reconciles the beginning-of-period and end-of-period balance sheet values of shareholders' equity; provides information about all factors affecting shareholders' equity. Also called *statement of owners' equity*.
- Statement of financial condition** The financial statement that presents an entity's current financial position by disclosing resources the entity controls (its assets) and the claims on those resources (its liabilities and equity claims), as of a particular point in time (the date of the balance sheet).
- Statement of financial position** The financial statement that presents an entity's current financial position by disclosing resources the entity controls (its assets) and the claims on those resources (its liabilities and equity claims), as of a particular point in time (the date of the balance sheet).
- Statement of operations** A financial statement that provides information about a company's profitability over a stated period of time.
- Statistic** A quantity computed from or used to describe a sample of data.
- Statistical inference** Making forecasts, estimates, or judgments about a larger group from a smaller group actually observed; using a sample statistic to infer the value of an unknown population parameter.
- Statistically significant** A result indicating that the null hypothesis can be rejected; with reference to an estimated regression coefficient, frequently understood to mean a result indicating that the corresponding population regression coefficient is different from 0.
- Statutory voting** A common method of voting where each share represents one vote.
- Step-up coupon bond** Bond for which the coupon, which may be fixed or floating, increases by specified margins at specified dates.
- Stock dividend** A type of dividend in which a company distributes additional shares of its common stock to shareholders instead of cash.
- Stock-out losses** Profits lost from not having sufficient inventory on hand to satisfy demand.
- Stock split** An increase in the number of shares outstanding with a consequent decrease in share price, but no change to the company's underlying fundamentals.
- Stop-loss order** See *stop order*.
- Stop order** An order in which a trader has specified a stop price condition. Also called *stop-loss order*.
- Store of value** The quality of tending to preserve value.
- Store of wealth** Goods that depend on the fact that they do not perish physically over time, and on the belief that others would always value the good.
- Straight-line method** A depreciation method that allocates evenly the cost of a long-lived asset less its estimated residual value over the estimated useful life of the asset.
- Straight voting** A shareholder voting process in which shareholders receive one vote for each share owned.
- Strategic analysis** Analysis of the competitive environment with an emphasis on the implications of the environment for corporate strategy.
- Strategic asset allocation** The set of exposures to IPS-permissible asset classes that is expected to achieve the client's long-term objectives given the client's investment constraints.
- Strategic groups** Groups sharing distinct business models or catering to specific market segments in an industry.
- Street convention** Yield measure that neglects weekends and holidays; the internal rate of return on cash flows assuming payments are made on the scheduled dates, even when the scheduled date falls on a weekend or holiday.
- Stress testing** A specific type of scenario analysis that estimates losses in rare and extremely unfavorable combinations of events or scenarios.
- Strong-form efficient market** A market in which security prices reflect all public and private information.
- Structural (or cyclically adjusted) budget deficit** The deficit that would exist if the economy was at full employment (or full potential output).
- Structural subordination** Arises in a holding company structure when the debt of operating subsidiaries is serviced by the cash flow and assets of the subsidiaries before funds can be passed to the holding company to service debt at the parent level.
- Structured financial instruments** Financial instruments that share the common attribute of repackaging risks. Structured financial instruments include asset-backed securities, collateralized debt obligations, and other structured financial instruments such as capital protected, yield enhancement, participation and leveraged instruments.
- Subjective probability** A probability drawing on personal or subjective judgment.
- Subordinated debt** A class of unsecured debt that ranks below a firm's senior unsecured obligations.
- Subordination** Form of internal credit enhancement that relies on creating more than one bond tranche and ordering the claim priorities for ownership or interest in an asset between the tranches. The ordering of the claim priorities is called a senior/subordinated structure, where the tranches of highest seniority are called senior followed by subordinated or junior tranches. Also called *credit tranching*.
- Substitutes** Said of two goods or services such that if the price of one increases the demand for the other tends to increase, holding all other things equal (e.g., butter and margarine).
- Sunk cost** A cost that has already been incurred.
- Supervised learning** A machine learning approach that makes use of labeled training data.

- Supply shock** A typically unexpected disturbance to supply.
- Support** In technical analysis, a price range in which buying activity is sufficient to stop the decline in the price of a security.
- Support tranche** A class or tranche in a CMO that protects the PAC tranche from prepayment risk.
- Supranational bonds** A bond issued by a supranational agency such as the World Bank.
- Surety bond** Form of external credit enhancement whereby a rated and regulated insurance company guarantees to reimburse bondholders for any losses incurred up to a maximum amount if the issuer defaults.
- Survey approach** An estimate of the equity risk premium that is based upon estimates provided by a panel of finance experts.
- Survivorship bias** The bias resulting from a test design that fails to account for companies that have gone bankrupt, merged, or are otherwise no longer reported in a database.
- Sustainable growth rate** The rate of dividend (and earnings) growth that can be sustained over time for a given level of return on equity, keeping the capital structure constant and without issuing additional common stock.
- Sustainable investing** The practice of identifying companies that can efficiently manage their financial, environmental, and human capital resources to generate attractive long-term profitability; often synonymous with *responsible investing*.
- Sustainable rate of economic growth** The rate of increase in the economy's productive capacity or potential GDP.
- Swap contract** An agreement between two parties to exchange a series of future cash flows.
- Syndicated loans** Loans from a group of lenders to a single borrower.
- Syndicated offering** A bond issue that is underwritten by a group of investment banks.
- Synthetic lease** A lease that is structured to provide a company with the tax benefits of ownership while not requiring the asset to be reflected on the company's financial statements.
- Systematic risk** Risk that affects the entire market or economy; it cannot be avoided and is inherent in the overall market. Systematic risk is also known as non-diversifiable or market risk.
- Systematic sampling** A procedure of selecting every k th member until reaching a sample of the desired size. The sample that results from this procedure should be approximately random.
- t-Test** A hypothesis test using a statistic (t -statistic) that follows a t -distribution.
- Tactical asset allocation** The decision to deliberately deviate from the strategic asset allocation in an attempt to add value based on forecasts of the near-term relative performance of asset classes.
- Target balance** A minimum level of cash to be held available—estimated in advance and adjusted for known funds transfers, seasonality, or other factors.
- Target capital structure** A company's chosen proportions of debt and equity.
- Target independent** A bank's ability to determine the definition of inflation that they target, the rate of inflation that they target, and the horizon over which the target is to be achieved.
- Target semideviation** The positive square root of target semivariance.
- Target semivariance** The average squared deviation below a target value.
- Tariffs** Taxes that a government levies on imported goods.
- Tax base** The amount at which an asset or liability is valued for tax purposes.
- Tax expense** An aggregate of an entity's income tax payable (or recoverable in the case of a tax benefit) and any changes in deferred tax assets and liabilities. It is essentially the income tax payable or recoverable if these had been determined based on accounting profit rather than taxable income.
- Tax loss carry forward** A taxable loss in the current period that may be used to reduce future taxable income.
- Taxable income** The portion of an entity's income that is subject to income taxes under the tax laws of its jurisdiction.
- Taxable temporary differences** Temporary differences that result in a taxable amount in a future period when determining the taxable profit as the balance sheet item is recovered or settled.
- Technical analysis** A form of security analysis that uses price and volume data, which is often displayed graphically, in decision making.
- Technology** The process a company uses to transform inputs into outputs.
- Tender offer** Corporate takeover mechanism which involves shareholders selling their interests directly to the group seeking to gain control.
- Tenor** The time-to-maturity for a bond or derivative contract. Also called *term to maturity*.
- Term maturity structure** Structure for a bond issue in which the bond's notional principal is paid off in a lump sum at maturity.
- Term structure** See *maturity structure*.
- Term structure of credit spreads** The relationship between the spreads over the "risk-free" (or benchmark) rates and times-to-maturity.
- Term structure of yield volatility** The relationship between the volatility of bond yields-to-maturity and times-to-maturity.
- Terminal stock value** The expected value of a share at the end of the investment horizon—in effect, the expected selling price. Also called *terminal value*.
- Terminal value** The expected value of a share at the end of the investment horizon—in effect, the expected selling price.
- Terms of trade** The ratio of the price of exports to the price of imports, representing those prices by export and import price indexes, respectively.
- Text analytics** The use of computer programs to analyze and derive meaning from typically large, unstructured text- or voice-based datasets.
- Thematic investing** An ESG implementation approach that focuses on investing in companies within a specific sector or industry theme.
- Third-degree price discrimination** When the monopolist segregates customers into groups based on demographic or other characteristics and offers different pricing to each group.
- Time-period bias** The possibility that when we use a time-series sample, our statistical conclusion may be sensitive to the starting and ending dates of the sample.
- Time-series data** Observations of a variable over time.
- Time tranching** The creation of classes or tranches in an ABS/MBS that possess different (expected) maturities.
- Time value** The difference between the market price of the option and its intrinsic value.

- Time value decay** Said of an option when, at expiration, no time value remains and the option is worth only its exercise value.
- Time value of money** The principles governing equivalence relationships between cash flows with different dates.
- Time-weighted rate of return** The compound rate of growth of one unit of currency invested in a portfolio during a stated measurement period; a measure of investment performance that is not sensitive to the timing and amount of withdrawals or additions to the portfolio.
- Tokenization** The process of representing ownership rights to physical assets on a blockchain or distributed ledger.
- Top-down analysis** With reference to investment selection processes, an approach that starts with macro selection (i.e., identifying attractive geographic segments and/or industry segments) and then addresses selection of the most attractive investments within those segments.
- Total comprehensive income** The change in equity during a period resulting from transaction and other events, other than those changes resulting from transactions with owners in their capacity as owners.
- Total cost** The summation of all costs, for which costs are classified as fixed or variable.
- Total factor productivity** A scale factor that reflects the portion of growth that is not accounted for by explicit factor inputs (e.g. capital and labor).
- Total fixed cost** The summation of all expenses that do not change as the level of production varies.
- Total invested capital** The sum of market value of common equity, book value of preferred equity, and face value of debt.
- Total probability rule** A rule explaining the unconditional probability of an event in terms of probabilities of the event conditional on mutually exclusive and exhaustive scenarios.
- Total probability rule for expected value** A rule explaining the expected value of a random variable in terms of expected values of the random variable conditional on mutually exclusive and exhaustive scenarios.
- Total return** Measures the price appreciation, or percentage change in price of the securities in an index or portfolio, plus any income received over the period.
- Total return index** An index that reflects the price appreciation or percentage change in price of the constituent securities plus any income received since inception.
- Total return swap** A swap in which one party agrees to pay the total return on a security. Often used as a credit derivative, in which the underlying is a bond.
- Total variable cost** The summation of all variable expenses.
- Tracking error** The standard deviation of the differences between a portfolio's returns and its benchmark's returns; a synonym of active risk.
- Tracking risk** The standard deviation of the differences between a portfolio's returns and its benchmark's returns; a synonym of active risk. Also called *tracking error*.
- Trade creation** When regional integration results in the replacement of higher cost domestic production by lower cost imports from other members.
- Trade credit** A spontaneous form of credit in which a purchaser of the goods or service is financing its purchase by delaying the date on which payment is made.
- Trade diversion** When regional integration results in lower-cost imports from non-member countries being replaced with higher-cost imports from members.
- Trade payables** Amounts that a business owes to its vendors for goods and services that were purchased from them but which have not yet been paid.
- Trade protection** Government policies that impose restrictions on trade, such as tariffs and quotas.
- Trade surplus (deficit)** When the value of exports is greater (less) than the value of imports.
- Trading securities** Securities held by a company with the intent to trade them. Also called *held-for-trading securities*.
- Traditional investment markets** Markets for traditional investments, which include all publicly traded debts and equities and shares in pooled investment vehicles that hold publicly traded debts and/or equities.
- Transactions money balances** Money balances that are held to finance transactions.
- Transactions motive** In the context of inventory management, the need for inventory as part of the routine production–sales cycle.
- Transfer payments** Welfare payments made through the social security system that exist to provide a basic minimum level of income for low-income households.
- Transparency** Said of something (e.g., a market) in which information is fully disclosed to the public and/or regulators.
- Treasury Inflation-Protected Securities** A bond issued by the United States Treasury Department that is designed to protect the investor from inflation by adjusting the principal of the bond for changes in inflation.
- Treasury stock method** A method for accounting for the effect of options (and warrants) on earnings per share (EPS) that specifies what EPS would have been if the options and warrants had been exercised and the company had used the proceeds to repurchase common stock.
- Tree diagram** A diagram with branches emanating from nodes representing either mutually exclusive chance events or mutually exclusive decisions.
- Trend** A long-term pattern of movement in a particular direction.
- Treynor ratio** A measure of risk-adjusted performance that relates a portfolio's excess returns to the portfolio's beta.
- Triangle patterns** In technical analysis, a continuation chart pattern that forms as the range between high and low prices narrows, visually forming a triangle.
- Trimmed mean** A mean computed after excluding a stated small percentage of the lowest and highest observations.
- TRIN** A flow of funds indicator applied to a broad stock market index to measure the relative extent to which money is moving into or out of rising and declining stocks.
- Triple bottoms** In technical analysis, a reversal pattern that is formed when the price forms three troughs at roughly the same price level; used to predict a change from a downtrend to an uptrend.
- Triple tops** In technical analysis, a reversal pattern that is formed when the price forms three peaks at roughly the same price level; used to predict a change from an uptrend to a downtrend.
- Trough** The lowest point of a business cycle.
- True yield** The internal rate of return on cash flows using the actual calendar including weekends and bank holidays.
- Trust deed** The governing legal credit agreement, typically incorporated by reference in the prospectus. Also called *bond indenture*.

- Trust receipt arrangement** The use of inventory as collateral for a loan. The inventory is segregated and held in trust, and the proceeds of any sale must be remitted to the lender immediately.
- Turn-of-the-year effect** Calendar anomaly that stock market returns in January are significantly higher compared to the rest of the months of the year, with most of the abnormal returns reported during the first five trading days in January.
- Two-fund separation theorem** The theory that all investors regardless of taste, risk preferences, and initial wealth will hold a combination of two portfolios or funds: a risk-free asset and an optimal portfolio of risky assets.
- Two-sided hypothesis test** A test in which the null hypothesis is rejected in favor of the alternative hypothesis if the evidence indicates that the population parameter is either smaller or larger than a hypothesized value.
- Two-tailed hypothesis test** A test in which the null hypothesis is rejected in favor of the alternative hypothesis if the evidence indicates that the population parameter is either smaller or larger than a hypothesized value.
- Two-week repo rate** The interest rate on a two-week repurchase agreement; may be used as a policy rate by a central bank.
- Type I error** The error of rejecting a true null hypothesis.
- Type II error** The error of not rejecting a false null hypothesis.
- Unanticipated (unexpected) inflation** The component of inflation that is a surprise.
- Unconditional probability** The probability of an event *not* conditioned on another event.
- Underemployed** A person who has a job but has the qualifications to work a significantly higher-paying job.
- Underlying** An asset that trades in a market in which buyers and sellers meet, decide on a price, and the seller then delivers the asset to the buyer and receives payment. The underlying is the asset or other derivative on which a particular derivative is based. The market for the underlying is also referred to as the *spot market*.
- Underwriter** A firm, usually an investment bank, that takes the risk of buying the newly issued securities from the issuer, and then reselling them to investors or to dealers, thus guaranteeing the sale of the securities at the offering price negotiated with the issuer.
- Underwritten offering** A type of securities issue mechanism in which the investment bank guarantees the sale of the securities at an offering price that is negotiated with the issuer. Also known as *firm commitment offering*.
- Unearned revenue** A liability account for money that has been collected for goods or services that have not yet been delivered; payment received in advance of providing a good or service. Also called *deferred revenue* or *deferred income*.
- Unemployed** People who are actively seeking employment but are currently without a job.
- Unemployment rate** The ratio of unemployed to the labor force.
- Unexpected inflation** The component of inflation that is a surprise.
- Unit elastic** An elasticity with a magnitude of negative one. Also called *unitary elastic*.
- Unit labor cost** The average labor cost to produce one unit of output.
- Unit normal distribution** The normal density with mean (μ) equal to 0 and standard deviation (σ) equal to 1.
- Units-of-production method** A depreciation method that allocates the cost of a long-lived asset based on actual usage during the period.
- Univariate distribution** A distribution that specifies the probabilities for a single random variable.
- Universal owners** Long-term investors, such as pension funds, that have significant assets invested in globally diversified portfolios.
- Unlimited funds** An unlimited funds environment assumes that the company can raise the funds it wants for all profitable projects simply by paying the required rate of return.
- Unsecured debt** Debt which gives the debtholder only a general claim on an issuer's assets and cash flow.
- Un-sponsored** A type of depository receipt in which the foreign company whose shares are held by the depository has no involvement in the issuance of the receipts.
- Unsupervised learning** A machine learning approach that does not make use of labeled training data.
- Up transition probability** The probability that an asset's value moves up.
- Validity instructions** Instructions which indicate when the order may be filled.
- Valuation allowance** A reserve created against deferred tax assets, based on the likelihood of realizing the deferred tax assets in future accounting periods.
- Valuation ratios** Ratios that measure the quantity of an asset or flow (e.g., earnings) in relation to the price associated with a specified claim (e.g., a share or ownership of the enterprise).
- Value at risk (VaR)** A money measure of the minimum value of losses expected during a specified time period at a given level of probability.
- Value investors** With reference to equity investors, investors who are focused on paying a relatively low share price in relation to earnings or assets per share.
- VaR** See *value at risk*.
- Variable costs** Costs that fluctuate with the level of production and sales.
- Variable-rate note** Similar to a floating-rate note, except that the spread is variable rather than constant.
- Variance** The expected value (the probability-weighted average) of squared deviations from a random variable's expected value.
- Variation margin** Additional margin that must be deposited in an amount sufficient to bring the balance up to the initial margin requirement.
- Veblen goods** Goods that increase in desirability with increasing price.
- Vega** A measure of the sensitivity of an option's price to changes in the underlying's volatility.
- Venture capital** Investments that provide "seed" or start-up capital, early-stage financing, or later-stage financing (including mezzanine-stage financing) to companies that are in early development stages and require additional capital for expansion or preparation for an initial public offering.
- Venture capital fund** A fund for private equity investors that provides financing for development-stage companies.
- Vertical analysis** Common-size analysis using only one reporting period or one base financial statement; for example, an income statement in which all items are stated as percentages of sales.
- Vertical demand schedule** Implies that some fixed quantity is demanded, regardless of price.

- Volatility** As used in option pricing, the standard deviation of the continuously compounded returns on the underlying asset.
- Voluntarily unemployed** A person voluntarily outside the labor force, such as a jobless worker refusing an available vacancy.
- Voluntary export restraint** A trade barrier under which the exporting country agrees to limit its exports of the good to its trading partners to a specific number of units.
- Vote by proxy** A mechanism that allows a designated party—such as another shareholder, a shareholder representative, or management—to vote on the shareholder's behalf.
- Warehouse receipt arrangement** The use of inventory as collateral for a loan; similar to a trust receipt arrangement except there is a third party (i.e., a warehouse company) that supervises the inventory.
- Warrant** Attached option that gives its holder the right to buy the underlying stock of the issuing company at a fixed exercise price until the expiration date.
- Weak-form efficient market hypothesis** The belief that security prices fully reflect all past market data, which refers to all historical price and volume trading information.
- Wealth effect** An increase (decrease) in household wealth increases (decreases) consumer spending out of a given level of current income.
- Weighted average cost method** An inventory accounting method that averages the total cost of available inventory items over the total units available for sale.
- Weighted average cost of capital** A weighted average of the aftertax required rates of return on a company's common stock, preferred stock, and long-term debt, where the weights are the fraction of each source of financing in the company's target capital structure.
- Weighted average coupon rate** Weighting the mortgage rate of each mortgage loan in the pool by the percentage of the mortgage outstanding relative to the outstanding amount of all the mortgages in the pool.
- Weighted average life** A measure that gives investors an indication of how long they can expect to hold the MBS before it is paid off; the convention-based average time to receipt of all principal repayments. Also called *average life*.
- Weighted average maturity** Weighting the remaining number of months to maturity for each mortgage loan in the pool by the amount of the outstanding mortgage balance.
- Weighted mean** An average in which each observation is weighted by an index of its relative importance.
- Wholesale price index** Reflects the price changes experienced by domestic producers in a country.
- Winsorized mean** A mean computed after assigning a stated percent of the lowest values equal to one specified low value, and a stated percent of the highest values equal to one specified high value.
- Working capital** The difference between current assets and current liabilities.
- Working capital management** The management of a company's short-term assets (such as inventory) and short-term liabilities (such as money owed to suppliers).
- World price** The price prevailing in the world market.
- Yield** The actual return on a debt security if it is held to maturity.
- Yield duration** The sensitivity of the bond price with respect to the bond's own yield-to-maturity.
- Yield to maturity** Annual return that an investor earns on a bond if the investor purchases the bond today and holds it until maturity. It is the discount rate that equates the present value of the bond's expected cash flows until maturity with the bond's price. Also called *yield-to-redemption* or *redemption yield*.
- Yield to redemption** See *yield to maturity*.
- Yield-to-worst** The lowest of the sequence of yields-to-call and the yield-to-maturity.
- Zero-coupon bonds** Bonds that do not pay interest during the bond's life. It is issued at a discount to par value and redeemed at par. Also called *pure discount bonds*.
- Zero volatility spread (Z-spread)** Calculates a constant yield spread over a government (or interest rate swap) spot curve.

Index

- A**
- Abbott Laboratories, 213
- abnormal returns, 124
- absolute priority rule, 483
- ABSs. *see* asset-backed securities
- accelerated book building, 50
- accrued interest, 413–417
- Acer, 209
- active investment strategies
- industry analysis in, 188–189
 - information-acquisition costs for, 123–124
 - and market efficiency, 117
- active portfolio management
- information-motivated trading in, 10
 - manager performance in, 129
 - manager selection for, 116
 - security market indexes in, 94
- active returns, 116
- activity ratios, in company analysis, 230–231
- ADB. *see* Asian Developmental Bank
- add-on rates, 429–431
- Adidas AG, 657–658
- adjustable-rate mortgages (ARMs), 487
- ADRs. *see* American depository receipts
- ADSs. *see* American depository shares
- ADT Security Services, Inc., 199, 200
- Advanced Micro Devices, 209
- adverse selection, with insurance, 34
- aerospace industry, governmental influences on, 225–226
- AFDB. *see* African Developmental Bank
- affirmative covenants, 310, 626
- Africa, 350, 617. *see also specific countries and regions*
- African Developmental Bank (AFDB), 372
- agency bonds, 372–373
- agency problems, with market regulation, 61
- agency RMBS, 490–491, 503. *see also* collateralized mortgage obligations (CMOs); mortgage pass-through securities
- agents, trustee, 479
- aggregate indexes, fixed-income, 99
- Agnelli Industries, 484–485
- Airbus
- governmental influences on, 225–226
 - in method of comparables, 270–271
 - strategic analysis with, 207–209, 218
- Aircastle Limited, 27
- aircraft manufacturing industry, strategic analysis of, 207–208, 218
- airline industry
- asset-based equity valuation for, 278
 - life-cycle stage and business cycle sensitivity, 227–228
- Air Products and Chemicals, 209
- Alcoa, 276
- Allianz SE, 165
- allocationally efficient financial systems, 59
- allocative efficiency, 116n.2
- all-or-nothing orders (AONs), 47
- alpha, 94
- alternative investments
- markets for, 15–16
 - security market indexes for, 101–104
- alternative trading systems (ATSs), 29–30
- Ameren, 255
- American calls, 330
- American depository receipts (ADRs), 167–168
- American depository shares (ADSs), 167
- American puts, 332n.6
- American Stock Exchange (AMEX), 168
- American-style contracts, 24
- AmeriCredit Automobile Receivable Trust 2013–4, 509–511
- AmeriGas, 210
- AMEX. *see* American Stock Exchange
- Amgen, 209
- amortization provisions, 512
- amortization schedule, residential mortgage loan, 487–488
- amortizing bonds, 318–320
- amortizing loans, 487, 508
- anchor, underwritten offerings, 361
- Anglo American, 276
- AngloGold Ashanti, 276
- Anheuser-Busch InBev, 200
- annual coupon rate, 404
- annualized convexity, 561–562
- annualized yield measures, 420
- annual modified duration, 542–544
- anomalies, market. *see* market anomalies
- ANZSIC. *see* Australia and New Zealand Standard Industrial Classification
- AONs. *see* all-or-nothing orders
- Apollo Group, 210
- Applied Materials, 209
- approximate modified duration, 543–545
- APs. *see* authorized participants
- arbitrage
- bounds of, 123
 - and market efficiency, 123
- arbitrageurs, 34–36, 123
- ArcelorMittal, 622–623, 625
- Argentina
- inflation-linked bonds, 326, 370
 - MSCI multi-market index, 96
 - non-sovereign government debt, 650
- Ariane space program, 225
- ARMs. *see* adjustable-rate mortgages
- Asia. *see also specific countries and regions*
- capitalization level and contributions to global GDP, 151
 - debt and equity outstanding, 350
- Asia 50 ADR Index Fund, 169
- Asian Developmental Bank (ADB), 372
- Asian Financial Crisis (1997–1998), 164
- Asian-Pacific Aggregate Bond Index, 357
- ask prices, 44
- ask sizes, 44
- ASML Holdings NV, 200–202
- asset allocation, 94
- asset-backed securities (ABSs), 473–525
- about, 473–474
 - auto loan, 508–511
 - collateral backing for, 308
 - collateralized debt obligations, 512–515
 - structure, 513
 - transaction example, 513–515
- commercial mortgage-backed securities, 503–508
- balloon maturity provisions, 505
 - call protection, 504–505
 - credit risk, 504
 - structure, 504–508
- creation of, 31–32
- credit card receivable, 511–512
- defined, 474
- economic benefits of securitization, 474–476
- in global debt, 349, 350
- legal identity of issuers, 306
- non-mortgage asset-backed securities, 508–512
- auto loan ABS, 508–511
 - credit card receivable ABS, 511–512
- as pooled investments, 19
- practice problems, 519–522
- repayment sources for, 307
- residential mortgage-backed securities, 490–503
- collateralized mortgage obligations, 497–503
 - mortgage pass-through securities, 491–496
 - non-agency residential mortgage-backed securities, 503
- residential mortgage loans, 485–490
- amortization schedule, 487–488
 - interest rates, 486–487
 - lender's rights in foreclosure, 488–489
 - maturity, 486
 - prepayment options and penalties, 488
- securitization, 474–485
- economic and market benefits, 474–476
 - parties' roles in transaction, 478–480
 - special purpose entities, 482–485
 - structure of securitization, 481–482
 - transaction example, 476–478
 - solutions to problems, 523–525
- as structured financial instruments, 381
- traditional bonds vs., 299

- asset-based equity valuation models, 276–280
 - for airline industry, 278
 - defined, 247
 - for family-owned laundry, 277
 - other models vs., 246–248, 279–280
 - for restaurant, 278
 - asset class(es)
 - returns by, 644–645
 - security market indexes as proxies for, 94
 - assets
 - and classification of markets, 14–16
 - as collateral, 626
 - currencies, 19–20
 - financial, 14
 - intangible, 277–278
 - liquidity and sales of, 639
 - market efficiency and prices of, 118–120
 - in markets, 14–20
 - physical, 14
 - real, 14, 26–28
 - securities, 16–19
 - equities, 17–18
 - fixed-income, 17
 - pooled investments, 18–19
 - securitized, 474
 - underlying, 20
 - asset swaps, 443
 - assumptions, of Gordon growth model, 259–260
 - AT&Ts. *see* alternative trading systems
 - AT&T
 - credit curves for, 636–637
 - industry classification of, 192
 - and industry structure, 217
 - auctions, 54, 360, 362–364
 - Australia
 - bonds outstanding, 354, 360
 - domestic and international debt securities, 315
 - foreign bonds, 313
 - foreign investment, 164
 - inflation-linked bonds, 326, 327
 - MSCI multi-market index, 96
 - residential mortgage loans, 487
 - returns
 - on bonds and bills, 152–153
 - on equities, 152–153
 - risk tolerance and equity ownership, 154
 - sovereign bonds, 370
 - Australia and New Zealand Standard Industrial Classification (ANZSIC), 196
 - Australian Bureau of Statistics, 196
 - Australian dollar, 351
 - Australian Securities Exchange, 154
 - Austria, 96
 - authorized participants (APs), 19
 - auto loan asset-backed securities, 508–511
 - automobile industry, similar companies in, 189
 - average life, mortgage pass-through securities, 495
- B**
- Baby Boom, 223, 224
 - backup lines of credit, 375
 - Bahrain, 96
 - Baker Hughes, 219–221
 - balance sheets, cash on, 618, 639
 - balloon maturity provisions, 505
 - balloon payments, 318
 - balloon risk, 505
 - BancoFinansur, 509
 - Banco Santander, 306
 - Bangladesh, 323
 - banker's acceptances, 430–431
 - Bank for International Settlements, 476
 - bank guarantees, 309
 - bank loans, 349, 350, 373–374
 - Bank of International Settlement, 161
 - Bank of New York Mellon, 166
 - bankruptcy
 - priority of claims in, 599–600
 - regulations for bankrupt traders, 63
 - and special purpose entities, 483–485
 - banks
 - benefits of securitization for, 475
 - as brokers, 29
 - credit cycle assessments by, 598n.7
 - depository, 166
 - as financial intermediaries, 32, 33
 - short-term funding for, 384–390
 - repurchase and reverse repurchase agreements, 386–389
 - retail deposits, 385
 - wholesale funds, 385–386
 - Barrick Gold, 276
 - barriers to entry
 - in credit analysis, 612
 - in strategic industry analysis, 206–208, 219
 - barriers to exit, 208
 - barriers to success, 207
 - Basel III global framework for bank supervision, 601n.12
 - base prospectus, 478n.3
 - BASE, 165
 - Basic Materials and Processing sector, 193
 - basis point, 418
 - defined, 301
 - price value of, 558
 - basis point value (BPV), 558
 - baskets of listed depository receipts (BLDRs), 169
 - BATS, 30
 - Baxter-FX, 30
 - BBA. *see* British Bankers' Association
 - bearer bonds, 314
 - behavioral biases, 137–139
 - behavioral finance, 136–139
 - behind the market (term), 45
 - Belgium, 96, 153, 369
 - benchmark issue, 368
 - benchmark rate, 418, 441–443
 - benchmarks
 - PSA prepayment, 493
 - security market indexes as, 94
 - spread over, 418
 - benchmark spread, 442
 - benchmark yield, 574
 - benchmark yield curve, 443–445
 - Berkshire Hathaway, Inc., 160, 176
 - Bermuda-style calls, 331
 - Bermuda-style puts, 332
 - best bid, 44
 - best efforts offering, 51, 360
 - best offer, 44
 - beta, security market indexes and, 94
 - BHP Billiton, 276
 - biases
 - behavioral, 137–139
 - survivorship, 102
 - bid–ask spread, 44, 365–366
 - bid–offer spread, 365–366
 - bid prices, 44, 574
 - bid sizes, 44
 - bilateral loans, 373, 374
 - Biomet, 213
 - BlackRock, 210
 - BLDRs. *see* baskets of listed depository receipts
 - block brokers, 28
 - Bloomberg Barclays
 - corporate yields, 629–630
 - minimum issue size and bond holdings in indexes, 98
 - Bloomberg Barclays Global Aggregate Bond Index, 100, 103, 357
 - Bloomberg Barclays US Aggregate Bond Index, 99, 491n.9
 - Bloomberg Fixed Income Electronic Trading, 365
 - Bloomberg Fixed Income Relative Value page, 444
 - Bloomberg risk statistic, 558
 - Bloomberg Yield and Spread Analysis page, 547–548, 558, 560–561
 - blue-chip companies, 173
 - blue-chip shares, 121n.7
 - BME Spanish Exchanges, 152
 - BMW, 218, 270
 - BNY Mellon, 209
 - Boeing
 - effects of government purchases on, 226
 - method of comparables for, 270–271
 - strategic analysis with, 207–209, 218
 - bond(s). *see also* fixed-income securities; *specific types*
 - credit ratings and prices of, 607–608
 - credit ratings of issuers vs., 603–605
 - defined, 298, 304
 - intrinsic value of, 119
 - legal form of, 305–306
 - notes vs., 17
 - returns on equities and bills vs., 152–153
 - securitization vs. issue of, 483
 - as short positions, 40
 - bond classes
 - mezzanine, 513
 - and tranching, 481–482
 - bond convexity, 559–567
 - bond equivalent yield, 431–433
 - bondholders
 - negotiation on covenants by, 627
 - shareholders vs., 610–611
 - bond indenture, 305–313
 - collateral backing, 307–308
 - covenants, 310–311, 626
 - credit enhancements, 308–310
 - legal identity of issuer/legal form of bond, 305–306
 - repayment proceeds, 306–307

- bond market. *see also* fixed-income market
 developed, 355
 emerging, 355
 primary, 359–365
 private placements, 360, 364–365
 public offerings, 360–364
 secondary, 359, 365–367
- bond portfolios, duration of, 555–557
- bonos del Estado, 368
- bonus issue of shares (stock dividend), 249
- book building, 50
- book runners, 50
- book value
 in asset-based valuation models, 247
 intrinsic vs., 176–177
 and market value, 172
 in ROE, 172–173
- borrowing
 and equilibrium interest rate, 12
 as financial system function, 8–9
- Boston Scientific, 213
- Botswana, 96
- bottom-up approach to equity valuation, 244
- BP, 209
- BPV. *see* basis point value
- Brady bonds, 357
- Brazil
 domestic and international debt securities, 315
 inflation-linked bonds, 326
 MSCI multi-market index, 96
 sovereign bonds, 369, 370
- breakeven reinvestment rate, 439
- bridge financing, 374
- Brightman, Christopher J., 116n.1
- Brink's Home Security, 199–200
- British American Tobacco, 209
- British Bankers' Association (BBA), 353
- British Financial Services Authority, 29
- British pound, 19, 351
- British Telecom, 324, 634–635
- broad market equity indexes, 95
- broker-dealers, 30
- brokered markets, 55, 57
- brokers
 clearinghouses for, 36
 and dealers, 30–31
 as financial intermediaries, 28–29
 lending by, 33
 prime, 33, 49
- Brown, George Garvin, 262
- Brown-Forman Corporation, 262–264
- Buenos Aires, Argentina, 650
- Buffett, Warren, 176
- Bulgaria, 96
- bulldog bonds, 313
- bullet bonds, 318–320
- bullet loans, 374
- bullet mortgages, 488
- Bundesanstalt für
 Finanzdienstleistungsaufsicht, 29
- Bunds, 300, 367, 368, 630
- Burlington Northern, 209
- business-cycle sensitivities, 190–191, 227–228
- business environment, in industry analysis, 188
- buyback (share repurchase), 249
- buyers, power of, 205, 612
- C**
- Cadbury, 209, 219–221
- calendar anomalies, 131–132
- California, 650, 651
- callable bonds, 330–331, 379, 424
 effective convexity of, 567
 effective duration of, 545–546
 interest rate risk with, 553–554
 zero-coupon bonds as, 382
- callable common shares, 158–159, 171
- callable preference shares, 160, 171, 254
- call markets, 54
- call money rate, 41
- call options (calls)
 American, 330
 Bermuda-style, 331
 defined, 24
 as embedded options (*see* callable bonds)
 European, 331
 make-whole, 330
- call premium, 330
- call price, 330
- call protection, 504–505
- call protection period, 330, 424
- call provisions, 322
- calls. *see* call options
- call schedule, 330
- Cameco Corporation, 274–275
- Canada
 auctions in, 362
 bonds outstanding, 354, 360
 capitalization level and contributions to global GDP, 151
 credit rating services, 602
 domestic and international debt securities, 315
 foreign bonds, 313
 income trusts, 225
 inflation-linked bonds, 326, 327
 international investments, 165
 MSCI multi-market index, 96
 NAICS system, 197
 residential mortgage loans, 486, 487
 retractable term preferred shares, 256
 returns
 on bonds and bills, 153
 on equities, 153
 risk tolerance and equity ownership, 154
 securities backed by quasi-government entities, 490
 sovereign bonds, 370
- Canadian dollar, 351
- Canon Inc., 271–272
- capacity, 611–625
 and company fundamentals, 613–617
 and industry fundamentals, 613
 and industry structure, 612
 and issuer liquidity, 618
 in strategic industry analysis, 211–212, 219
 of Watson Pharmaceuticals, Inc., 618–625
- capital
 cost of, 178
 debt/capital ratio, 616
 net working, 618
 raising equity, 9
 requirements, 61–62
 ROIC, 204
 venture, 15, 162
 WACC, 178, 204
 working, 618, 639
- capital allocation, efficiency of, 13–14
- capital asset pricing model (CAPM)
 for cost of equity, 178
 Fama and French three-factor model vs., 133
 required rate of return from, 254
 security market indexes as proxy, 94
- capital budgeting, 178
- capital expenditures (capital projects), 8, 9, 618
- capital gains, 316, 533, 569
- capital-indexed bonds, 327
- capital losses, 316, 533–535, 569
- capital markets, 13–15
- capital market securities, 300
- capital protected instruments, 382
- capital structure, 595, 642
- CAPM. *see* capital asset pricing model
- capped floating interest rate, 511
- caps, floating-rate note, 324
- carbon credits, 10
- Carrefour Group, 210
- carrying value, 247, 533. *see also* book value
- case study, Watson Pharmaceuticals Inc., 618–625
- cash, on balance sheets, 618, 639
- cash collateral accounts, 309–310
- cash flow from operations (CFO), 252, 615n.24, 618, 639
- cash flows
 for collateralized debt obligations, 514–515
 in credit analysis, 615–616, 618
 discounting of, 246–247
 excess interest, 509
 for mortgage pass-through securities, 491, 493–494
 of non-agency RMBSs, 503
 operating, 252, 618, 639
 for plain vanilla bonds, 302, 318
- cash flow structures, 318–329
 coupon payment, 323–329
 principal repayment, 318–323
- cash flow yield, 555
- cash market securities, 437
- cash reserve funds, 309
- cash settlement, 20, 366
- Caterpillar Inc., 198, 209, 219
- CBOs. *see* collateralized bond obligations
- CCR. *see* corporate credit rating
- CDOs. *see* collateralized debt obligations
- CDs. *see* certificates of deposit
- CDs. *see* credit default swaps
- central bank funds market, 385
- central bank funds rates, 385
- central banks, 358, 598n.7

- Central Europe, 350. *see also specific countries*
- century bonds, 377, 442
- certificates of deposit (CDs), 386
- CFA Institute
- performance standards of, 61
 - Standards of Professional Conduct, 49, 51
- CFD. *see* contracts for difference
- CFO. *see* cash flow from operations
- CFR. *see* corporate family rating
- change of control covenant, 626n.26
- change of control put option, 643
- character, in four Cs framework, 611, 627
- Chartered Financial Analyst Program, 61
- Chicago Mercantile Exchange, 29, 209
- Chile, 96, 326, 370
- China
- debt and equity outstanding, 350
 - domestic and international debt securities, 315
 - foreign bonds, 313
 - foreign investment in, 164
 - as growth country, 190n.2
 - industrialization, 211
 - market efficiency, 121
 - in MSCI multi-market index, 96
 - securitization pilot program, 475
- China Mobile Ltd., 192
- Chi-X Europe, 30
- Cisco Systems, 209
- Citibank, 166
- Citigroup Commercial Mortgage Trust 2013-GCJ11, 506–508
- clean price, 413
- clearinghouses, 22, 36
- clearing instructions, 44, 49–50
- Clearstream, 366, 380
- CLNs. *see* credit-linked notes
- CLOs. *see* collateralized loan obligations
- closed-end funds, 18–19, 133–134
- closing day, 362
- CMBS. *see* commercial mortgage-backed securities
- CMOs. *see* collateralized mortgage obligations
- Coca-Cola, 176, 209, 211
- CoCos. *see* contingent convertible bonds
- Coinstar, Inc., 199
- collateral(s)
- for bond indenture, 305
 - default rate for, 503
 - in four Cs framework, 611, 625–626
 - and repo margin, 388
 - and repo rate, 387
- collateral backing, 307–308, 379
- collateralized bond obligations (CBOs), 512
- collateralized debt obligations (CDOs), 512–515
- structure, 513
 - as structured financial instruments, 381
 - transaction example, 513–515
- collateralized loan obligations (CLOs), 513
- collateralized mortgage obligations (CMOs), 497–503
- defined, 497
 - with floating-rate tranches, 501
- mortgage pass-through securities vs., 497
- non-agency residential mortgage-backed securities vs., 503
- with planned amortization class tranches, 499–501
 - with sequential-pay structures, 497–499
 - with support tranches, 499–501
- collateral managers, 513
- collateral trust bonds, 307
- Colombia, 96, 326
- combinations, stock, 157
- commercial banks, 32, 33
- commercial industry classification systems, 192–196
- example, 194–196
 - GICS standard, 192
 - ICB system, 192–193
 - representative sectors in, 193–194
 - RGS system, 192
- commercial mortgage-backed securities (CMBS), 503–508
- balloon maturity provisions, 505
 - call protection, 504–505
 - credit risk, 504
 - structure, 504–508
- commercial paper (CP), 374–377
- credit quality, 375–376
 - issuance of, 639n.34
 - issuers, 374
 - US vs. Euro markets, 376–377
- committed bank lines, 618
- commodities, 14, 21, 25–26
- commodity indexes, 101
- Commodity Research Bureau (CRB) Index, 101
- commodity swaps, 24
- common shares, 156–159
- callable, 158–159, 171
 - defined, 156
 - and fixed-income securities, 298
 - at Ford Motor Company, 157–158
 - and preference shares, 159–160
 - preferred vs., 17–18
 - puttable, 159, 171
 - at Viacom Corporation, 156–157
- Commonwealth of Independent States, 350
- companies
- as bond issuers, 299
 - borrowing by, 8
 - cyclical, 190–191, 221, 613
 - fundamentals of, 613–617
 - non-cyclical, 190–191, 613
 - securitization benefits for, 475
 - similar, 189–191
 - value of, 172–178, 204
 - variability of recovery rates for, 599
- companion (support) tranches, 499–501
- company analysis, 228–232
- defined, 188
 - elements of, 229–232
 - and industry analysis, 614–615
 - spreadsheet modeling in, 232
- comparables. *see* method of comparables
- competition
- in credit analysis, 612
 - in strategic analysis, 205
- competitive position, as fundamental, 613
- competitive strategy
- and capacity, 612
 - in company analysis, 228
- complete markets, 58
- compounded yield measures, 420
- compounding conversions, 421–422
- computer hardware industry, 222–223
- concavity, 567
- concentration, industry, 208–211, 219
- conditional prepayment rate (CPR), 492, 493
- confections industry, 219–221
- conforming mortgages, 490
- conservatism, 138
- conservatorship, 490n.8
- consols, 368, 550
- constant-yield price trajectory, 410, 411
- constituent securities, 78, 91
- construction industry, 225
- Consumer Discretionary sector, 193
- Consumer Price Index for All Urban Consumers (CPI-U), 370
- Consumer Staples sector, 193
- contingency provisions, 298, 329–335
- callable bonds, 330–331
 - convertible bonds, 332–334
 - with corporate notes/bonds, 379–380
 - puttable bonds, 332
- contingent convertible bonds (CoCos), 334
- contingent liabilities, 648
- continuous trading markets, 54, 56–57
- contraction risk, 492
- contract markets, 20–25, 54–58
- contracts for difference, 20–21
 - execution mechanisms, 54–57
 - forwards, 21–22
 - futures, 22–23
 - insurance contracts, 25
 - market information systems, 58
 - options, 24–25
 - swaps, 23–24
 - trading sessions on, 54
- contract rates, mortgage, 486–487
- contracts
- American- vs. European-style, 24
 - currency, 39
 - defined, 14
 - derivative, 15
 - insurance, 25
 - short positions in, 39–41
 - sides of, 39
 - spot, 20
- contracts for difference (CFD), 20–21
- contrarian effect, 91
- conventional bonds, 301. *see also* plain vanilla bonds
- conversion premium, 333
- conversion price, 333
- conversion ratio, 333
- conversion value, 333
- convertible bonds, 332–334, 379–380
- convertible common stock, 157
- convertible mortgages, 487
- convertible preference shares, 161
- convexity, 559–567
- annualized, 561–562
 - of credit risk/return, 633–634

- effective, 566–567
 - money, 564–565
 - and return, 530
 - convexity adjustment, 560–563
 - convexity effect, 407–409, 567
 - corporate bonds, 377–380
 - earnings surprise for, 135n.43
 - legal issuers of, 306
 - sources of repayment for, 307
 - corporate credit rating (CCR), 603
 - corporate debt, 373–381
 - bank and syndicated loans, 373–374
 - commercial paper, 374–377
 - corporate notes and bonds, 377–380
 - corporate debt securities, 610–628
 - corporate family rating (CFR), 603
 - corporate governance, for private equity firms, 163
 - corporate notes, 377–380
 - corporate profile, in company analysis, 229
 - corporate sector, 349
 - corporate structure, in high-yield credit analysis, 642–643
 - corporate treasurers, 6
 - corporations, real assets of, 27
 - cost of capital, 178
 - cost of debt, 177
 - cost of equity, 177–178
 - costs
 - fixed, 612
 - information-acquisition, 123–124
 - transaction, 9, 123
 - counterparty risk, 22, 36
 - coupon effect, 408, 409
 - coupon payment structures, 323–329
 - corporate notes/bonds, 378
 - credit-linked coupon bonds, 324–325
 - deferred coupon bonds, 325
 - floating-rate notes, 323–324
 - index-linked bonds, 325–328
 - payment-in-kind coupon bonds, 325
 - step-up coupon bonds, 324
 - coupon rate, 300–301, 403–405, 550–551
 - coupon-type classification for fixed-income markets, 352–353
 - Covenant Review, 627
 - covenants, 310–311
 - affirmative, 310, 626
 - for bond indenture, 305
 - change of control covenant, 626n.26
 - in four Cs framework, 611, 626–627
 - in high-yield credit analysis, 643–644
 - limitations on liens, 644
 - maintenance, 644
 - negative, 310–311, 626
 - restricted payments, 644
 - coverage ratios, 617, 651–652
 - covered bonds, 308
 - covering, of positions, 40
 - CP. *see* commercial paper
 - CPI. *see* French consumer price index; US Consumer Price Index
 - CPI-U. *see* Consumer Price Index for All Urban Consumers
 - CPR. *see* conditional prepayment rate
 - CRB Index. *see* Commodity Research Bureau Index
 - credit analysis, 591–670
 - capital structure in, 595
 - for corporate debt securities, 610–628
 - credit risk
 - defined, 592–594
 - return vs., 628–637
 - four Cs framework, 610–628
 - capacity, 611–625
 - character, 627
 - collateral, 625–626
 - covenants, 626–627
 - Watson Pharmaceuticals Inc. case study, 618–625
 - functions of, 592
 - high-yield, 638–645
 - corporate structure in, 642–643
 - covenant analysis, 643–644
 - debt structure and leverage in, 640–642
 - equity-like approach to, 644–645
 - financial projections for, 639–640
 - liquidity in, 638–639
 - and non-investment grade ratings, 638
 - for non-sovereign government debt, 650–652
 - practice problems, 656–665
 - by ratings agencies, 601–610
 - credit ratings, 602–603
 - issuer vs. issue ratings, 603–605
 - risks of relying on ratings, 605–608
 - use of ratings, 601–602
 - recovery rates in, 597–600
 - seniority ranking in, 595–597
 - solutions to problems, 666–670
 - for sovereign debt, 645–650
 - flexibility and performance profile, 647–648
 - political and economic profile, 647
 - in Portugal, 649–650
 - sovereign debt defaults, 645–646
- credit card networks, barriers to entry for, 206–207
- credit card receivable asset-backed securities, 511–512
- credit crisis (2007-2009), 160, 309
- credit curve, 636–637
- credit cycle, 598–599, 631
- credit default swaps (CDSs), 25, 34
- credit duration, 546, 574
- credit enhancements
 - for auto loan ABSs, 509
 - and bond indenture, 308–310
 - defined, 305
 - external, 309–310, 479
 - internal, 308–309, 479
 - with non-agency RMBSs, 503
 - in securitizations, 479
- credit-linked coupon bonds, 324–325
- credit-linked notes (CLNs), 382
- credit migration risk, 593
- credit quality
 - classifying fixed-income markets by, 350–351
 - of commercial paper, 375–376
 - and repo margin, 388
 - of sovereign bonds, 368–369
- credit ratings
 - basis for, 602–603
 - for issuer vs. issue, 603–605
 - non-investment grade, 638
 - risks of relying on, 605–608
 - and special purpose entities, 482, 483
 - use of, 601–602
- credit ratings agencies, 601–610
 - basis for ratings, 602–603
 - fallibility of, 608
 - risks of relying on, 605–608
 - use of, 601–602
- credit risk, 592–594
 - with commercial mortgage-backed securities, 504
 - with corporate notes/bonds, 379
 - with fixed-income securities, 299–300, 574–575
 - with floating-rate bonds, 426
 - with floating-rate notes, 323
 - with repurchase agreements, 388
 - return vs., 628–637
 - and yield-to-maturity, 433
- Credit Roundtable, 627
- credit services, financial institutions', 32
- credit spreads
 - and credit ratings, 607
 - defined, 482–483
 - term structure of, 419
- Credit Suisse, 210
- credit tranching, 308–309, 481
- Croatia, 96
- cross-default provisions, 604
- crossing networks, derivatives pricing rule for, 57
- cross-sectional pricing anomalies, 130, 133
- cumulative preference shares, 160, 171
- cumulative voting, 156
- currency(-ies), 14
 - classifying fixed-income markets by, 351
 - for fixed-income securities, 301–302
 - in markets, 19–20
 - for sovereign bonds, 368–369
 - in sovereign credit analysis, 647
 - and yield-to-maturity, 433
- currency contracts, 39
- currency option bonds, 302
- currency swaps, 24
- current yield, 304, 423
- curve duration, 538, 545, 548, 562
- custodial services, by financial intermediaries, 36–37
- customers, power of, 612
- The Customers' Afternoon Letter*, 78
- cyclical companies, 190–191, 221, 613
- Czech Republic, 96
- D**
- Daimler, 189, 209, 270
 - Daimler Chrysler, 168
 - dark pools, 29
 - data mining, 130
 - data snooping, 130
 - Davide Campari-Milano S.p.A., 658–659, 667
 - day-of-the-week effect, 132
 - day order, 48
 - DBRS. *see* Dominion Bond Rating Service
 - DBS Bank, 161

- DBS Group Holdings, 161
DDM. *see* dividend discount model
dealer markets. *see* quote-driven markets
dealers
 and arbitrageurs, 34–36
 and brokers, 30–31
 primary, 30, 364
debentures, 307
DeBondt, Werner, 132
debt. *see also* collateralized debt obligations (CDOs)
 amount of debt coming due, 618
 corporate, 373–381
 bank and syndicated loans, 373–374
 commercial paper, 374–377
 corporate notes and bonds, 377–380
 cost of, 177
 defined, 297
 external, 647
 FCF after dividends/debt ratio, 617
 FFO/debt ratio, 617
 fixed-rate, 352
 floating-rate, 352
 in high-yield credit analysis, 640–642
 lien, 596
 market value of, 274–275
 mortgage, 596
 net, 616
 non-sovereign government, 650–652
 secured, 595, 596
 seniority rankings of, 595–597
 sovereign, 645–650
 credit analysis for, 645–650
 flexibility and performance profile, 647–648
 political and economic profile, 647
 in Portugal, 649–650
 sovereign debt defaults, 645–646
 subordinated, 596–597
 unsecured, 595, 596
debt/capital ratio, 616
debt/EBITDA ratio, 616
debt instruments, 15
debt markets, credit analysis in, 592
debt securities. *see also* fixed-income securities
 corporate, 610–628
 equity vs., 155
 and preference shares, 159–160
debt service coverage ratio (DSCR), 504, 651–652
declaration date, 249
decline stage (industry life-cycle), 215
deeds, trust, 305, 626
default(s)
 loss given, 592
 price reaction to, 118–119
 recovery rates for, 597–600
 sovereign debt, 645–646
 strategic, 488
default interest rate, 505
default probability, 592
default rates
 for collateral, 503
 by credit rating, 605–606
 and credit risk/return, 635–636
default risk, 592, 593
defeasance, 505
defensive industries, 190, 191, 221
deferred coupon bonds, 325, 378
defined-benefit pension schemes, 546–547
delivery
 and repo rate, 387
 in spot market trading, 10
Dell Computer, 209
demand, 230, 352, 631
demographic influences
 in industry analysis, 203, 223–224
 and industry life-cycle, 217
 in sovereign credit analysis, 647
 in strategic analysis, 220
Denmark
 domestic and international debt securities, 315
 MSCI multi-market index, 96
 residential mortgage loans, 486–488
 returns on bonds, bills, and equities, 153
depository receipts (DRs), 18, 166–169
depositories, 19, 37
depositors, in securitization process, 478
depository banks, 166
depository institutions, 32–33
deposits, retail, 385
derivative contracts, 15
derivatives pricing rule, 57
Deutsche Bank, 166
Deutsche Börse, 29, 152, 209, 333
Deutsche Securities, 30
Deutsche Telekom AG, 272–273
developed bond markets, 355
DeVry University, 210
DHL International, 209
Diageo, 209
differentiation strategy, for companies, 228
direct investing
 in non-domestic equity securities, 165–166
 in real assets, 26
Directive for Criminal Sanctions for Market Abuse, 122n.11
disclosure
 and market efficiency, 122
 standards for exchanges, 29
discount bonds, 531, 551
discounted cash flow models, 246–247.
 see also present value models
discounting, 16, 246–247
discount margin, 426–429
discount rates, 429–430
discounts, 133–134, 403–406
discriminatory pricing rule, 56
disintermediation, 475
displayed orders, 47–48
display size, of orders, 47
divest (term), 8
dividend discount model (DDM)
 for cost of equity, 178
 defined, 246
 description, 251–254
 dividends and, 248–250
 Gordon growth model vs., 260
 as present value model for equity valuation, 248–264
 three-stage, 262
 two-stage, 261–264
dividend per share (DPS), 279–280
dividend reinvestment plans (DRPs), 52
dividends
 calculating, from DDM, 261
 and DDM, 248–250
 defined, 248
 FCF after dividends/debt ratio, 617
 and free cash flow, 616
 and Gordon growth model, 257, 260
 payments-in-lieu of, 40
 on preference shares, 159–160
 reinvested, 169–170
 at Viacom Corporation, 157
divisor, price return index, 79
DJIA. *see* Dow Jones Industrial Average
dollar, Australian, 351
dollar, Canadian, 351
dollar, Hong Kong, 351
dollar, US
 foreign exchange gains, 169
 international bonds outstanding in, 351
 as reserve currency, 19
 spot market trading of, 10
dollar duration, 557
domestic bonds, 313, 314, 354
Dominion Bond Rating Service (DBRS), 602
Dow, Charles H., 78, 83
Dow Jones Average, 78
Dow Jones & Company
 company classifications, 192
 formulation of Nikkei Stock Average, 103
 ICB development, 192
Dow Jones Industrial Average (DJIA)
 creation of, 78
 features of, 103
 as gauge of market sentiment, 93
 price weighting of, 83
Dow Jones Transportation Average, 78
downgrade risk, 593
DPS. *see* dividend per share
DRAM & Flash Product, 209
Dreyer's Grand Ice Cream Holdings, Inc., 159
DRPs. *see* dividend reinvestment plans
DRs. *see* depository receipts
dry-bulk shipping industry, 211–212
DSCR. *see* debt service coverage ratio
dual-currency bonds, 301–302
dual listing, of shares, 164–165
Dubai International Financial Exchange, 167
duration
 approximate modified, 543–545
 of bond portfolio, 555–557
 credit, 546, 574
 and credit risk/return, 634–635
 curve, 538, 545, 548, 562
 defined, 538
 dollar, 557
 effective
 calculating, 545–548
 of callable bonds, 553–554
 of puttable bonds, 554
 inflation, 574
 key rate, 549
 liquidity, 574

- Macaulay
 calculating, 538–542
 and interest rate risk/investment horizon, 569–574
 and modified duration, 549–551
 of portfolio, 555–557
 modified
 annual, 542–544
 approximate, 543–545
 calculating, 542–543
 and credit risk/return, 633–635
 and effective duration, 547–548
 and Macaulay duration, 549–551
 of portfolio, 555–557
 money, 557–559, 572
 OAS, 548
 partial, 549
 properties of, 549–554
 real rate, 574
 and return, 530
 yield, 538, 545, 548, 562
 DURATION financial function, 541n.2
 duration gap, 573
 dynamic random access memory, 210
- E**
- EADS. *see* European Aeronautic Defense and Space Company
 early amortization provisions, 512
 early repayment option, 488
 earnings announcements, 134–135
 earnings before interest, taxes, depreciation, and amortization (EBITDA)
 in credit analysis, 615
 debt/EBITDA ratio, 616
 EBITDA/interest expense ratio, 617
 enterprise value/EBITDA ratio, 645
 in enterprise value multiples, 274
 earnings before interest and taxes (EBIT)
 in credit analysis, 615
 EBIT/interest expense ratio, 617
 earnings per share (EPS), 279–280
 earnings surprises, 134–135
 Eastern Europe, 350. *see also specific countries*
 EBIT. *see* earnings before interest and taxes
 EBITDA. *see* earnings before interest, taxes, depreciation, and amortization
 EBITDA/interest expense ratio, 617
 EBIT/interest expense ratio, 617
 Echo Boomers, 224
 ECNs. *see* electronic communications networks
 economic conditions, yield spread and, 631
 economic profits, in strategic analysis, 204
 economic structure, in sovereign credit analysis, 647
 economy, securitization and, 474–476
 ECP. *see* Eurocommercial paper market
 effective annual rate, 420
 effective convexity, 566–567
 effective duration
 calculating, 545–548
 of callable bonds, 553–554
 of puttable bonds, 554
 efficiency
 of capital allocation, 13–14
 of financial systems, 58–59
 market (*see* market efficiency)
 efficient market hypothesis, 124, 128–129
 efficient markets
 description of, 117–119
 intrinsic value in, 119–120
 semi-strong-form, 125–128
 strong-form, 128
 weak-form, 125, 128, 129
 Egypt, 96
 EIB. *see* European Investment Bank
 electronic communications networks (ECNs), 29–30
 embedded options, 329, 424. *see also* callable bonds; puttable bonds
 EMBI Global. *see* J.P. Morgan Emerging Market Bond Index Global
 embryonic stage (industry life-cycle), 214
 EMC, 209
 emerging bond markets, 355
 emerging markets
 capitalization level and contributions to global GDP, 151
 securitization in, 475
 sovereign debt of, 646
 technical analysis for, 125
 World Bank definition of, 646n.42
 Energy sector, 193
 Enron, 608
 enterprise, NAICS definition, 197
 enterprise value (EV), 645
 enterprise value multiples, 247
 enterprise value/EBITDA ratio, 645
 in models for equity valuation, 274–276
 EPRA. *see* European Real Estate Association
 equal weighting, of security market indexes, 85–86
 equilibrium interest rate, 12–13
 equipment trust certificates, 307–308
 equity. *see also* return on equity (ROE)
 cost of, 177–178
 shareholders', 174
 equity analysis, of corporate debt securities, 610–611
 equity capital, raising, 9
 equity derivatives, 15
 equity indexes, 95–97
 equity-like approach to high-yield analysis, 644–645
 equity-related bonds, 334
 equity securities (equities), 17–18, 149–185
 and company value, 172–178
 accounting return on equity, 172–177
 cost of equity and investors' required rates of return, 177–178
 debt securities vs., 155
 defined, 15
 in global finance markets, 150–155
 importance of, 149–150
 international ownership comparisons for, 154–155
 liquidity and issuance of, 639
 non-domestic, 164–169
 depository receipts, 166–169
 direct investing in, 165–166
 practice problems, 180–183
 private vs. public, 162–164
 return characteristics, 169–170
 returns on, 152–154
 risk characteristics, 170–171
 solutions to problems, 184–185
 types of, 155–161
 common shares, 156–159
 preference shares, 159–161
 volatility of, 153–154
 equity swaps, 24
 equity tranche, 504
 equity valuation, 243–292
 asset-based, 276–280
 for airline, 278
 for family-owned laundry, 277
 other models vs., 246–248, 279–280
 for restaurant, 278
 estimated value and market price in, 245–246
 multiplier models, 265–276
 enterprise values in, 274–276
 example, 272–273
 fundamentals in, 266–267
 method of comparables, 269–272
 other models vs., 246–248, 279–280
 price multiples in, 266–269
 practice problems, 283–288
 present value models, 248–264
 examples, 253
 Gordon growth model, 256–261
 multistage, 261–264
 other models vs., 246–248, 279–280
 preferred stock valuation with, 254–256
 share value for three-year investment horizon, 252
 purpose, 244
 solutions to problems, 289–292
 establishment, NAICS definition, 197
 estimates
 of enterprise value and market value of debt, 274–275
 of equity value and market price, 245–246
 of intrinsic value, 119
 Estonia, 96
 ETFs. *see* exchange-traded funds
 ETNs. *see* exchange-traded notes
 EU. *see* European Union
 Eurex, 29
 Euribor. *see* Euro interbank offered rate
 euro, 10, 19, 351
 Eurobonds
 coupon payment structure for, 323
 defined, 314
 foreign and domestic bonds vs., 354
 in global bond market, 313
 in secondary market, 365–366
 settlement of, 380
 Euroclear, 366, 380
 Eurocommercial paper (ECP) market, 376–377
 Eurocopter, 225
 Eurodollar bonds, 314
 Eurofighter consortium, 226

- Euro interbank offered rate (Euribor), 301, 353
- Europe. *see also specific countries and regions*
 capitalization level and contributions to global GDP, 151
 corporate notes and bonds, 377
 industrial comparative ratio analysis, 617
 maturity of mortgages, 486
 residential mortgage loans, 488
 returns on bonds, bills, and equities, 152–153
 securities ranked lower than subordinated debt, 596
 use of enterprise value, 274
- European Aeronautic Defense and Space Company (EADS), 225–226, 271
- European calls, 331
- European Investment Bank (EIB), 372
- European Model Covenant Initiative, 627
- European Parliament, 122n.11
- European puts, 332
- European Real Estate Association (EPRA), 101, 102
- European-style contracts, 24
- European Union
 insider trading laws in, 122
- European Union (EU), 151, 357, 484n.5, 646
- Euroyen bonds, 314
- Eurozone, inflation-linked bonds, 370
- EV. *see* enterprise value
- event risk, 608
- event studies, in semi-strong efficient markets, 126
- excess interest cash flow, 509
- excess spread, 309, 509
- excess spread accounts, 309
- exchanges, 29
- exchange-traded funds (ETFs), 19, 95, 169
- exchange-traded notes (ETNs), 19
- ex-dividend date (ex-date), 249
- execution instructions, 44–48
- execution mechanisms, secondary market, 54–57
- exercise price, 18
- expansion risk, 492
- expected loss, credit risk and, 593
- expenditures, capital (capital projects), 8, 9, 618
- expenses, interest, 617, 648
- experience curve, 203
- exposure instructions, for orders, 47
- external credit enhancements, 309–310, 479
- external debt, 647
- external influences on industry analysis, 222–228
 demographic, 223–224
 governmental, 224–226
 macroeconomic, 222
 social, 226–227
 technological, 222–223
- external liquidity, in sovereign credit analysis, 647
- extra dividend (special dividend), 248–249
- ExxonMobil, 209
- F**
- face value. *see* par value
- fairly valued (term), 245
- fallibility, of rating agencies, 608
- Fama, Eugene, 124, 133
- Fama and French three-factor model, 133
- Fannie Mae. *see* Federal National Mortgage Association
- FASB. *see* Financial Accounting Standards Board
- Fastenal, 210
- FCA. *see* Financial Conduct Authority
- FCF after dividends/debt ratio, 617
- FCFE model. *see* free-cash-flow-to-equity model
- FCFF. *see* free cash flow to the firm
- Federal Home Loan Banks (FHLB), 323, 372
- Federal Home Loan Mortgage Corporation (Freddie Mac), 323, 372, 490, 503
- Federal National Mortgage Association (Fannie Mae), 323, 372, 490, 503
- Federal Reserve
 funds and fund rate of, 385
 initial margin requirement of, 41
 Regulation T, 41
- Federal Reserve Bank of New York, 364
- FedEx, 209
- Fed funds, 385
- Fed funds rate, 385
- Ferrellgas, 210
- FFO. *see* funds from operations
- FFO/debt ratio, 617
- FHLB. *see* Federal Home Loan Banks
- Fideicomiso Financiero Autos VI, 509
- Fidelity, 210
- fill or kill orders, 48
- finance charges, 511
- Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB), 61
- financial analysts
 decisions of, 6
 industry analysis by, 202–203
 market efficiency and number of, 121
- financial assets, 14
- Financial Conduct Authority (FCA), 353n.3
- financial corporations, as intermediaries, 32–33
- financial crisis (2008-2009)
 bond defaults, 601n.11
 and credit enhancement, 503
 credit ratings agencies contribution, 602
 liquidity issues, 594, 639
 putable bonds, 332
 and risk-free rate, 645–646
 securities ranked lower than subordinated debt, 596
 and securitization, 475, 479
 sovereign ratings, 368–369
 and yield spread, 631
- financial disclosure, market efficiency and, 122
- financial industry, governmental influences on, 225
- financial institutions, 32–33
- financial intermediaries, 28–38
 arbitrageurs, 34–36
 brokers, exchanges, and alternative trading systems, 28–30
 dealers, 30–31, 34–36
 defined, 6
 depository institutions and financial corporations, 32–33
 insurance companies, 33–34
 securitization of real assets by, 26
 securitizers, 31–32
 for settlement and custodial services, 36–37
 transactions facilitated by, 38
 in well-functioning financial systems, 58–59
- financial leverage, 41–44
- financial markets. *see* markets
- financial projections, in high-yield credit analysis, 639–640
- financial ratios, in company analysis, 230–232
- financial reporting, regulations on, 61
- Financial Services Authority, 353
- Financial Services sector, 193
- Financial Stability Board (FSB), 476
- financial statistics, in company analysis, 231–232
- financial system
 efficiency of, 58–59
 functions of, 6–14
 capital allocation efficiency, 13–14
 determining rates of return, 12–13
 for individuals, 7–12
 well-functioning, 58–60
- Financial Times Stock Exchange (FTSE), 192
- Finland, 96, 153, 487
- firearms industry, governmental influences on, 225
- firm commitment offerings. *see* underwritten offerings
- first lien debt, 596
- first loss piece, 504
- first mortgage debt, 596
- First Section, in TOPIX, 82
- fiscal performance, in sovereign credit analysis, 647–648
- Fitch Ratings
 commercial paper ratings, 375
 investment-grade ratings, 299n.2, 350
 long-term ratings matrix, 602–603
 municipal debt ratings, 651
 role in credit markets, 601, 602
 sovereign ratings, 368
- five forces framework for strategic industry analysis, 205–206
- fixed costs, capacity and, 612
- fixed income analysts, 6
- fixed-income derivatives, 15
- fixed-income indexes, 98–100, 357–358
- fixed-income instruments, 15, 17
- fixed-income market, 347–400
 classification of, 348–357
 corporate debt, 373–381
 bank and syndicated loans, 373–374
 commercial paper, 374–377
 corporate notes and bonds, 377–380
 function of, 347–348

- indexes, 357–358
- investors in, 357–359
- non-sovereign bonds, 371–373
- practice problems, 393–396
- primary, 359–365
 - private placements, 364–365
 - public offerings, 360–364
- quasi-government bonds, 372–373
- secondary, 365–367
- short-term funding for banks, 384–390
 - repurchase and reverse repurchase agreements, 386–389
 - retail deposits, 385
 - wholesale funds, 385–386
- solutions to problems, 397–400
- sovereign bonds, 367–371
 - credit quality, 368–369
 - names of, 367–368
 - types, 369–370
- structured financial instruments, 381–384
 - capital protected instruments, 382
 - leveraged instruments, 383
 - participation instruments, 382–383
 - yield enhancement instruments, 382
- supranational bonds, 372–373
- fixed-income securities, 297–346
- bond indenture, 305–313
 - collateral backing, 307–308
 - covenants, 310–311
 - credit enhancements, 308–310
 - legal identity of issuer/legal form of bond, 305–306
 - repayment proceeds, 306–307
- cash flow structures, 318–329
 - coupon payment, 323–329
 - principal repayment, 318–323
- with contingency provisions, 298, 329–335
 - callable bonds, 330–331
 - convertible bonds, 332–334
 - puttable bonds, 332
- coupon rate, 300–301
- credit risk with, 299–300, 574–575
- currency denomination for, 301–302
- interest rate risk with, 537–574
 - approximate modified duration, 543–545
 - bond convexity, 559–567
 - duration of bond portfolio, 555–557
 - effective duration, 545–548
 - and investment horizon, 569–574
 - key rate duration, 549
 - Macaulay duration, 538–542, 569–574
 - modified duration, 542–543
 - money duration, 557–559
 - price value of a basis point, 558
 - properties of bond duration, 549–554
 - yield volatility, 568–569
- investing in, 298
- issuers of, 299–300
- legal and regulatory considerations, 313–316
- liquidity risk with, 574–575
- maturity, 300
- par value, 300
- in portfolio management, 298
- practice problems, 339–342
- return on, 530–537
- solutions to problems, 343–346
- tax considerations, 316–318
- yield measures, 304
- fixed-income valuation, 401–471
 - about, 401–402
 - accrued interest, 413–417
 - flat price, 413–417
 - full price, 413–417
 - matrix pricing, 417–420
 - maturity structure of interest rates, 433–441
 - practice problems, 449–457
 - solutions to problems, 458–471
 - and time value of money, 402–413
 - market discount rate, 402–411
 - spot rates, 411–413
 - yield to maturity, 406–407
 - yield measures, 420–433
 - for fixed-rate bonds, 420–425
 - for floating-rate notes, 425–429
 - for money market instruments, 429–433
 - yield spreads, 441–445
- fixed-rate bonds
 - sovereign, 369
 - yield measures for, 420–425
- fixed-rate debt, 352
- fixed-rate mortgages, 486
- Flaherty, James, 225
- flat price, 413–417
- flexibility, in sovereign debt credit analysis, 647–648
- float-adjusted market-capitalization weighting, 87, 89, 90
- floaters. *see* floating-rate notes (FRNs)
- floating interest rates, capped, 511
- floating-rate bonds (floaters)
 - inverse, 383
 - outstanding, 334
 - as participation instruments, 382–383
 - sovereign, 369
- floating-rate debt, 352
- floating-rate notes (FRNs)
 - cash flows from, 323–324
 - as corporate debt, 378
 - coupon rate for, 301
 - inverse, 324
 - yield measures for, 425–429
- floating-rate tranches, 501
- floors, floating-rate note, 324
- Ford Motor Company
 - credit ratings, 607
 - P/S value of, 269
 - share class arrangements, 157–158
 - similar companies to, 189
- foreclosures, 485, 488–489
- foreign bonds, 313–314, 354
- foreign exchange gains, 169
- forward curves, 438–441
- forward markets, 437
- forward rates, 436–440
- forwards
 - in commodities, 25
 - in contract markets, 21–22
 - futures vs., 23
 - options vs., 25
 - swap contracts vs., 24
- forward yields, 438
- four Cs framework for corporate debt securities, 610–628
 - capacity, 611–625
 - character, 627
 - collateral, 625–626
 - covenants, 626–627
- fragile information cascades, 138
- franc, Swiss, 19, 351
- France
 - bonds outstanding, 354, 360
 - domestic and international debt securities, 315
 - inflation-linked bonds, 326, 370
 - maturity of mortgages, 486
 - MSCI multi-market index, 96
 - overconfidence and mispricing in markets, 137
 - residential mortgage loans, 487
 - returns on bonds, bills, and equities, 153
 - sovereign bonds, 367
- Frankfurt Stock Exchange, 165
- fraud, 34, 61
- Freddie Mac. *see* Federal Home Loan Mortgage Corporation
- free cash flow after dividends, 616
- free cash flow before dividends, 616
- free-cash-flow-to-equity (FCFE) model, 246, 252–253
- free cash flow to the firm (FCFF), 616n.25
- free float, 165n.23
- free-float-adjusted market-capitalization-weighted indexes, 87
- Freeman Spogli & Co., 163
- Freeport-McMoRan Copper & Gold, 276
- Freescale Semiconductor, 640–642
- French, Kenneth R., 133
- French consumer price index (CPI), 370
- FRNs. *see* floating-rate notes
- Frontiers of Finance Survey, 136
- Frontline, 210
- FSB. *see* Financial Stability Board
- FTC. *see* US Federal Trade Commission
- FTSE. *see* Financial Times Stock Exchange
- FTSE 100 Index, 82
- FTSE EPRA/NAREIT Global Real Estate Index Series, 101–103
- FTSE Global Bond Index Series, 357
- FTSE Global Small Cap Index, 94
- Fujifilm, 223
- full price, 413–417
- fully amortized bonds, 318–320
- fully amortizing loans, 487
- fundamental analysis, 128–129
- fundamentals
 - company, 613–617
 - industry, 613
 - in multiplier models, 266–267
- fundamental value, 119, 244. *see also* intrinsic value
- fundamental weighting
 - in multi-market equity indexes, 96
 - of security market indexes, 89, 91
- funding, short-term. *see* short-term funding
- funds from operations (FFO), 615

- futures
 in commodities, 25, 26
 in contracts market, 22–23
 forwards vs., 23
 rollover of, 102
- G**
- G-20. *see* Group of Twenty
- gains
 capital, 316, 533, 569
 foreign exchange, 169
- Galileo space program, 225
- GDP. *see* gross domestic product
- GDRs. *see* global depository receipts
- GE Capital Bank, 512
- GE Capital Corporation, 512
- GE Capital Credit Card Master Note Trust Series 2013-1, 512
- General Dynamics, 209
- General Motors, 189, 209, 269
- general obligation (GO) bonds, 650
- Genomic Solutions, 158–159
- Genzyme, 209
- geographic classifications for fixed-income markets, 354–355
- geometric average of forward rates, 441
- Germany
 auctions, 362
 bonds outstanding, 354, 360
 domestic and international debt securities, 315
 fixed-income indexes, 357
 inflation-linked bonds, 326
 investments in BASF, 165
 MSCI multi-market index, 96
 non-sovereign government bonds, 371
 overconfidence and mispricing in markets, 137
 residential mortgage loans, 486, 487
 returns on bonds, bills, and equities, 153
 risk tolerance and equity ownership, 154
 sovereign bonds, 367–369
- Ghana, 96
- GICS. *see* Global Industry Classification Standard
- Gillette, 176
- gilts, 367, 368
- Ginnie Mae. *see* Government National Mortgage Association
- GlaxoSmithKline
 in pharmaceutical industry, 189
 ROE for, 173–175
 strategic analysis, 219–221
- global bonds, 314
- global debt markets, 349–350
- global depository receipts (GDRs), 167
- global equity markets, 349–350
- global finance markets
 and depository receipts, 166–169
 direct investing, 165–166
 equity securities in, 150–155
 integration and growth in, 164–165
- Global Industry Classification Standard (GICS), 189, 190, 192
- Global Investment Performance Standards, 61
- global registered shares (GRSs), 168
- GO bonds. *see* general obligation bonds
- gold, forward contracts on, 21–22
- Goldcorp, 276
- Goldman Sachs
 callable preference shares, 160
 as dealers, 30
 industry concentration and pricing power, 209
 QUIDS at, 300
- good-on-close orders, 48
- good-on-open orders, 48
- good-till-cancelled orders (GTCs), 48
- Gootkind, Christopher L., 608n.21
- Gordon growth model, 256–261
 applying, 258–259
 justified value of price multiple from, 266
 with no current dividend, 260–261
- governmental debt. *see* sovereign debt
- governmental industry classification systems, 196–197
 ANZSIC system, 196
 ISIC system, 196
 NACE system, 196
 NAICS system, 197
- governmental influences
 in industry analysis, 203, 224–226
 in strategic analysis, 220
- government and government-related sector, 348–349
- government equivalent yield, 423
- Government National Mortgage Association (Ginnie Mae), 490, 503
- government-sponsored enterprises (GSEs), 371, 490
- Greece, 96, 487
- greenfields, constructing, 211
- grey market, 361
- gross domestic product (GDP)
 contributions to global, 150–151
 and governmental debt, 648
 in sovereign credit analysis, 647
- Group of Twenty (G-20), 476
- growth, industry, 613
- growth cyclical companies, 191n.3
- growth industries, 190, 191, 221
- growth stage (industry life-cycle), 214–215
- growth stocks, 97
- GRSs. *see* global registered shares
- Grupa Zywiec SA, 658, 666
- GSEs. *see* government-sponsored enterprises
- G-spread, 442, 445
- GTCs. *see* good-till-cancelled orders
- guarantee certificates, 382
- H**
- haircut, 388
- Halliburton, 219–221
- Harley-Davidson, Inc., 479–480, 482
- Harley-Davidson Credit Corp., 479, 480
- Harley-Davidson Motorcycle Trust 2005-2, 479, 480
- Harmonized Index of Consumer Prices (HICP), 370
- HBOS, 324
- Health Care sector, 193
- heavy truck industry, similar companies in, 189
- hedge fund indexes, 102
- hedge funds, 15, 19, 102
- hedgers, 9–10, 21, 39
- herding behavior, 137
- Hershey, 219–221
- Hewlett-Packard Company, 200, 209
- HFRX Equal Weighted Strategies EUR Index, 104
- HFRX Global Hedge Fund Index, 104
- hhgregg, 162
- Hibor. *see* Hong Kong interbank offered rate
- HICAP. *see* Harmonized Index of Consumer Prices
- hidden orders, 47–48
- high yield bonds. *see* non-investment-grade bonds
- high-yield credit analysis, 638–645
 corporate structure in, 642–643
 covenant analysis, 643–644
 debt structure and leverage in, 640–642
 equity-like approach to, 644–645
 financial projections for, 639–640
 liquidity in, 638–639
 and non-investment grade ratings, 638
- high-yield indexes, 99
- Hillenbrand, Inc., 199
- HM Treasury, 306
- holder-of-record date, 249
- holding companies, 306, 642
- holding-period rate of return, 571
- holding periods, for private equity investments, 163
- holiday effect, 132
- Home Depot, 208, 216–217
- Honda Motor Company, 189, 270
- Hong Kong SAR
 margin requirements of, 41
 in MSCI multi-market index, 96
- Hong Kong dollar, 351
- Hong Kong interbank offered rate (Hibor), 301, 353
- Hong Kong Stock Exchange, 152, 167, 333
- horizon yield, 532–536, 571
- housing industry, demographic influences in, 224
- H&R Block, Inc., 199
- human-capital based companies, collateral of, 626
- Hungary, 96
- Hurricane Katrina, 212
- hybrid mortgages, 487
- hybrid securities, 596n.4
- Hynix, 209
- Hyundai, 189
- I**
- IASB. *see* International Accounting Standards Board
- IBM, 443, 444
- ICB. *see* Industry Classification Benchmark
- iceberg orders, 47

- ICMA. *see* International Capital Market Association
- IFRS. *see* International Financial Reporting Standards
- IG Group plc, 30
- IKEA, 164
- IMF. *see* International Monetary Fund
- immediate or cancel orders (IOCs), 48
- implied forward rates, 438
- “in arrears” payment structure, 426
- income
- interest, 536
 - net, 172–174
 - net operating, 504
 - operating, 276
- income per capita measure, 647
- income trusts, 224–225
- indenture. *see* bond indenture
- indexed-annuity bonds, 327
- indexed-referenced ARM, 487
- indexes, 78. *see also* security market indexes
- index-linked bonds, 325–328
- index weighting of security market indexes, 83–91
- equal weighting, 85–86
 - fundamental weighting, 89, 91
 - market-capitalization weighting, 85, 87–90
 - price weighting, 83–85
- India
- coupon payment structures, 323
 - debt and equity outstanding, 350
 - domestic and international debt securities, 315
 - as growth country, 190n.2
 - MSCI multi-market index, 96
- indirect investing, in real assets, 26
- individuals
- borrowing by, 8
 - financial system functions for, 7–12
 - information-motivated trading by, 10–12
 - raising of equity capital by, 9
 - rationality of markets vs., 137
 - risk management by, 9–10
 - savings of, 7–8
 - spot market trading by, 10
- Indonesia, 96, 164, 369
- Industrial/Producer Durables sector, 193
- industry(-ies)
- in company analysis, 229–230
 - defined, 189
 - describing, 202–203
 - fundamentals of, 613
 - ICB definition, 192
 - peer group vs., 200
 - performance of, 202–203
 - recovery rate variation by, 598
 - statistics on fundamentals for, 613
 - structure of, 612
- industry analysis, 187–242
- and company analysis, 228–232
 - in credit analysis, 614–615
 - elements of, 229–232
 - spreadsheet modeling in, 232
 - defined, 188
 - describing industries for, 202–203
- external influences, 222–228
- in airline industry, 227–228
 - demographic, 223–224
 - governmental, 224–226
 - macroeconomic, 222
 - social, 226–227
 - technological, 222–223
- industry classification systems, 192–202
- commercial, 192–196
 - governmental, 196–197
 - and peer groups construction, 198–202
 - strengths and weakness, 197
 - practice problems, 237–240
 - with similar companies, 189–191
 - solutions to problems, 241–242
 - strategic, 204–222
 - barriers to entry in, 206–208
 - capacity in, 211–212
 - example, 219–222
 - five forces framework, 205–206
 - industry concentration in, 208–211
 - industry life-cycle model in, 213–218
 - market share stability in, 212–213
 - price competition in, 218–219
 - uses, 188–189
- industry capacity. *see* capacity
- Industry Classification Benchmark (ICB), 189–190, 192–193
- industry classification systems, 192–202
- commercial, 192–196
 - example, 194–196
 - GICS standard, 192
 - ICB system, 192–193
 - representative sectors in, 193–194
 - RGS system, 192
 - governmental, 196–197
 - ANZSIC system, 196
 - ISIC system, 196
 - NACE system, 196
 - NAICS system, 197
 - and peer group construction, 198–202
 - for Brink’s Home Security, 199–200
 - for semiconductor industry, 200–202
 - strengths and weakness, 197
- industry concentration, 208–211, 219
- industry life-cycle model, 213–218
- airline industry in, 227
 - example, 217–218
 - industry classifications based on, 203
 - limitations of, 217
 - stages of industry life cycle, 213–216
 - in strategic analysis, 220
 - using, 216–217
- inefficient markets, intrinsic value in, 119
- inflation duration, 574
- inflation-linked bonds (linkers), 325–328, 370
- information
- market anomalies and prior, 135–136
 - market efficiency and availability of, 122
 - nonpublic (private), 128
 - public, 125–128
- information-acquisition costs, 123–124
- informationally efficient financial systems, 58–59
- informationally efficient markets, 58–59, 117. *see also* efficient markets
- information cascades, 138
- information-motivated trading, 10–12, 26
- initial margin requirements, 22, 41
- initial PAC collar (initial PAC band), 499
- initial period fixed-rate mortgages, 487
- initial public offerings (IPOs)
- defined, 50
 - in markets, 51–52
 - and pricing anomalies, 135
 - and venture capital, 162
- insider trading, 61, 122
- institutional investors, 358, 362
- insurance companies
- as financial intermediaries, 33–34
 - monoline, 479
 - regulation of, 62
- insurance contracts, 25
- intangible assets, in asset-based valuation, 277–278
- Intel Corporation
- industry concentration and pricing power, 209
 - share price and FTC investigation, 127, 128n.21
 - sub-industry classification, 200, 201
 - technological influences, 223
- intellectual-capital based companies, collateral of, 626
- interbank funds, 385–386
- interbank market, 352, 385–386
- interbank money market, 352
- Intercontinental Exchange, 209
- interest
- accrued, 413–417
 - shifting interest mechanism, 503
 - in USCP vs. ECP markets, 376–377
- interest expenses, 617, 648
- interest income, 536
- interest-indexed bonds, 327
- interest-only mortgages, 487–488
- interest-only tranches, structured, 497n.11
- interest rate risk, 537–574
- approximate modified duration, 543–545
 - bond convexity, 559–567
 - defined, 531
 - duration of bond portfolio, 555–557
 - effective duration, 545–548
 - and floating-rate notes, 323
 - and investment horizon, 569–574
 - key rate duration, 549
 - Macaulay duration, 538–542, 569–574
 - modified duration, 542–543
 - money duration, 557–559
 - price value of a basis point, 558
 - properties of bond duration, 549–554
 - yield volatility, 568–569
- interest rates
- capped floating, 511
 - default, 505
 - equilibrium, 12–13
 - maturity structure of, 433–441
 - and money duration, 572
 - net interest pass-through rates, 491
 - and repo rate, 387
 - of residential mortgage loans, 486–487
 - and returns on fixed-income securities, 531–536
 - term structure of, 568

- interest rate swaps, 23–24
- internal credit enhancements, 308–309, 479
- International Accounting Standards Board (IASB), 61
- International Bank for Reconstruction and Development (World Bank)
 - bonds issued by, 349
 - definition of emerging markets, 646n.42
 - supranational bonds from, 372
 - use of ISIC system, 196
- International Capital Market Association (ICMA), 365
- International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRS), 189n.1
 - disclosure of operating segment, 200
 - on ROE, 173n.28
- International Monetary Fund (IMF), 196, 372, 646
- International Standard Industrial Classification of All Economic Activities (ISIC), 196
- interpolated spread (I-spread), 443
- intrinsic value
 - book vs., 176–177
 - from dividend discount model, 251
 - in equity valuation, 244
 - market vs., 119–120
- inverse effect, 407, 408
- inverse floating-rate bonds (inverse floaters), 383
- inverse floating-rate notes, 324
- inverted yield curve, 434
- invest (term), 8
- investment banks, 29
- investment-grade bonds
 - and classification of bond market, 350–351
 - credit ratings of, 602, 603
 - credit risk with, 299–300
 - yield spreads of, 631–632
- investment-grade indexes, 99
- investment horizon
 - for fixed-income securities, 536–537
 - and interest rate risk, 569–574
 - share value for three-year, 252
- investment pools, 18–19, 32
- investor pay model, 601n.13
- investors
 - behavioral biases and decision making by, 139
 - benefits of securitization for, 474–475
 - in debt vs. equity securities, 155
 - defined, 8
 - in fixed-income markets, 357–359
 - and information-motivated traders, 10–11
 - institutional, 358, 362
 - market efficiency and number of, 121
 - required rates of return for equities, 177–178
 - retail, 358
- IOCs. *see* immediate or cancel orders
- IPOs. *see* initial public offerings
- Ireland
 - debt burden, 646
 - international investments in BASE, 165
 - MSCI multi-market index, 96
- residential mortgage loans, 486, 487
- returns on bonds, bills, and equities, 153
 - sovereign bonds, 368
- iShares Morningstar ETFs, 104
- ISIC. *see* International Standard Industrial Classification of All Economic Activities
- I-spread. *see* interpolated spread
- Israel, 96, 326, 370
- issuer pay model, 601n.13
- issuers
 - of commercial paper, 374
 - credit ratings of issues vs., 603–605
 - of fixed-income securities, 299–300
 - and classification of market, 348–350
 - legal identity, 305–306
 - in securitization process, 478
- Italy
 - bonds outstanding, 354, 360
 - domestic and international debt securities, 315
 - inflation-linked bonds, 326
 - MSCI multi-market index, 96
 - non-sovereign government debt, 650
 - returns on bonds, bills, and equities, 153
 - securitization, 475
- J**
- Jamaica, 96
- January effect, 131
- Japan
 - benchmark rate, 442
 - bonds outstanding, 354, 360
 - capitalization level and contributions to global GDP, 151
 - credit rating services, 602
 - debt and equity outstanding, 350
 - demographic influences, 224
 - domestic and international debt securities, 315
 - foreign bonds, 313, 314
 - government-sponsored enterprises, 490
 - inflation-linked bonds, 326
 - maturity of mortgages, 486
 - MSCI multi-market index, 96
 - non-sovereign government debt, 650
 - overconfidence and mispricing in markets, 137
 - proxy for market portfolio, 94
 - residential mortgage loans, 486, 487
 - returns on bonds, bills, and equities, 153
 - securities backed by quasi-government entities, 490
 - sovereign bonds, 367, 369
 - tax considerations with bonds, 316
- Japan Airlines Group, 166–167
- Japan Bank for International Cooperation (JBIC), 372
- Japanese Financial Services Agency, 29
- Japanese government bonds (JGBs), 367, 368, 423
- Japanese yen
 - foreign exchange gains, 169
 - international bonds outstanding in, 351
 - as reserve currency, 19
- Japan Housing Finance Agency (JHF), 490
- JBIC. *see* Japan Bank for International Cooperation
- JGBs. *see* Japanese government bonds
- JHF. *see* Japan Housing Finance Agency
- John Deere, 198, 219
- Johnson & Johnson
 - credit ratios, 622, 624–625
 - market share stability, 213
- Jones, Edward D., 78
- Jordan, 96
- J.P. Morgan Emerging Market Bond Index (EMBI) Global, 357
- JPMorgan, 166
- junk bonds. *see* non-investment-grade bonds
- justified values of price multiples, 266–269
- K**
- kangaroo bonds, 313
- Kazakhstan, 96
- Kenya, 96
- key rate duration, 549
- kimchi bonds, 313
- Knight Securities, 30
- Kodak, 223
- Komatsu, 209, 219
- Koninklijke Philips Electronics, 209
- Korea interbank offered rate (Koribor), 353
- krona, Swedish, 351
- krone, Norwegian, 351
- Kuwait, 96, 351
- L**
- LabCorp, 209
- Lam Research Corporation, 200–202
- large-denomination negotiable CDs, 386
- Latin America, 350, 357. *see also specific countries*
- laundry business, asset-based equity valuation, 277
- law of one price, 269
- lawyers, in securitization process, 478–479
- LBOs. *see* leveraged buyouts
- lead underwriter, 50
- learning, personal, 138
- Lebanon, 96
- legal considerations, with fixed-income securities, 313–316
- legal form of bonds, 305–306
- legal identity, bond issuer, 305–306
- legal maturity, mortgage-backed security, 495
- Lehman Brothers, 386, 639
- Lehman Brothers Aggregate Bond Index, 99
- Lehman Brothers Global Aggregate Bond Index, 103
- lenders' rights, in foreclosures, 488–489
- lending, 8–9, 32–33
- Lenovo, 209
- letras del Tesoro, 368
- letters of credit, 309
- Level I ADRs, 168
- Level II ADRs, 168

- Level III ADRs, 168
- leverage
 - and debt structure, 640–642
 - financial, 41–44
 - operating, 612
- leveraged buyouts (LBOs)
 - covenants for, 626–627
 - as private equity investments, 162, 163
- leveraged instruments, 383
- leveraged positions, in markets, 41–44
- leverage ratios, 41–42, 616–617
- Lexmark, 209
- LG Group, 315–316
- liabilities, contingent, 648
- Libor. *see* London interbank offered rate
- liens, 596, 644
- life-cycle stage
 - of airline industry, 227
 - industry classifications based on, 203
 - in strategic analysis, 220
- Light Sweet Crude Oil futures contract, 23
- limitations on liens covenant, 644
- limited partnerships, 18, 26
- limit order book, 45–46
- limit orders, 44–49
- lines of credit, 375, 618, 639
- linkers. *see* inflation-linked bonds
- liquidating dividend, 249n.1
- liquidation
 - absolute priority rule in, 483
 - priority of claims in, 599–600
 - priority of preference shares in, 159n.14
 - stockholders' rights in, 157
- liquidity
 - in credit analysis, 618
 - from dealers, 30
 - external, 647
 - and forward contracts, 22
 - in high-yield credit analysis, 638–639
 - and operating cash flow, 639
 - and secondary bond markets, 365
 - and securitization, 475
 - in sovereign credit analysis, 647
 - and yield-to-maturity, 433
- liquidity duration, 574
- liquidity enhancement, 375
- liquidity ratios, 231
- liquidity risk
 - with fixed-income securities, 574–575
 - market, 593–594
- liquid markets
 - information-motivated trading in, 12
 - raising capital in, 9
 - risk management in, 10
 - secondary, 53
- Liquidnet, 30
- Lithuania, 96
- litigation risk, 608
- loans
 - amortizing, 487, 508
 - auto loan ABS, 508–511
 - bank, 349, 350, 373–374
 - bilateral, 373, 374
 - bullet, 374
 - margin, 41
 - mortgage, 485–490
 - non-amortizing, 508
 - non-recourse, 488
 - prime, 486
 - recourse, 488
 - residential mortgage, 485–490
 - amortization schedule, 487–488
 - interest rates, 486–487
 - lender's rights in foreclosures, 488–489
 - maturity, 486
 - prepayment options and penalties, 488
 - subprime, 486
 - syndicated, 364, 374
- loan-to-value ratio (LTV), 486, 504
- lockout period, 508, 511
- Lombardy region, Italy, 650
- London interbank offered rate (Libor)
 - and coupon rate, 301
 - interest rate swaps, 23–24
 - and I-spread, 443
 - as reference rate, 352–353, 425
 - setting, 353
- London Stock Exchange
 - GDRs on, 167
 - information availability, 122
 - total market capitalization in, 151, 152
- long positions, 39
- long sales, clearing instructions on, 50
- loss aversion, 137
- losses
 - capital, 316, 533–535, 569
 - expected, 593
 - stop-loss orders, 48–49
 - tax-loss selling hypothesis, 131
- loss given default, 592
- loss severity, 592, 593
- low-cost strategy, for companies, 228
- lower Tier 2 securities, 596n.4
- Lowe's, 208
- LTV. *see* loan-to-value ratio
- Lund, Susan, 348n.1
- Luxembourg Stock Exchange, 167
- M**
- Macaulay, Frederick, 538
- Macaulay duration
 - calculating, 538–542
 - and interest rate risk/investment horizon, 569–574
 - and modified duration, 549–551
 - of portfolio, 555–557
- McDonalds, 216–217
- macroeconomic influences, on industry analysis, 203, 222
- Maersk Line, 210
- maintenance covenants, 644
- maintenance margin requirement, 22, 43–44
- make-whole calls, 330
- make-whole charge, 505
- making a market, 45, 46, 631
- Malaysia, 96
- management, book value and, 172
- management buyouts (MBOs), 162
- management strategy, as company fundamental, 613–614
- maple bonds, 313
- Marathon Oil, 209
- margin
 - discount, 426–429
 - initial margin requirements, 22, 41
 - maintenance margin requirements, 22, 43–44
 - quoted, 426
 - repo, 388
 - required, 426
 - variation margin payments, 22
- margin calls, 43
- margin loans, 41
- marketable limit orders, 45
- Market Abuse Regulation, 122n.11
- market anomalies, 129–136
 - and closed-end investment fund discounts, 133–134
 - cross-sectional, 133
 - and earnings surprises, 134–135
 - for initial public offerings, 135
 - investment strategies using, 136
 - and predictability of returns, 135–136
 - time-series, 130–132
- market bid-ask spread, 44
- market capitalization
 - of equity markets, 150–152
 - style indexes based on, 97
 - total, 87
- market-capitalization weighting, of indexes, 85, 87–90
- market discount rate
 - bond price and, 407–411
 - calculating, 402–406
- market efficiency, 115–146
 - and active manager selection, 116
 - anomalies, 129–136
 - and closed-end investment fund discounts, 133–134
 - cross-sectional, 133
 - and earnings surprises, 134–135
 - for initial public offerings, 135
 - investment strategies using, 136
 - and predictability of returns, 135–136
 - time-series, 130–132
 - in behavioral finance, 136–139
 - contributing factors, 120–123
 - description of efficient market, 117–119
 - forms of, 124–129
 - and market vs. intrinsic value, 119–120
 - and portfolio management, 129
 - practice problems, 142–144
 - semi-strong-form efficient markets, 125–128
 - solutions to problems, 145–146
 - strong-form efficient markets, 128
 - and transaction/information-acquisition costs, 123–124
 - weak-form efficient markets, 125
- market float, securities', 87
- market information systems, 58
- market liquidity risk, 593–594
- market multiple models, 247. *see also* multiplier models for equity valuation
- market-on-close orders, 48
- market orders, 44, 45, 47–48
- market participants
 - fair treatment of, 122
 - and market efficiency, 120–122

- market price, estimated value and, 245–246
- markets, 5–76. *see also* fixed-income market
- assets in, 14–20
 - and classification of markets, 14–16
 - currencies, 19–20
 - real assets, 26–28
 - securities, 16–19
 - benefits of securitization for, 474–476
 - call, 54
 - capital, 13–15
 - central bank funds, 385
 - commodities in, 25–26
 - complete, 58
 - continuous trading, 54, 56–57
 - contract, 20–25, 27–28, 54–58
 - contracts for difference, 20–21
 - execution mechanisms, 54–57
 - forwards, 21–22
 - futures, 22–23
 - insurance contracts, 25
 - market information systems, 58
 - options, 24–25
 - swaps, 23–24
 - trading sessions on, 54
 - debt, 592
 - efficient
 - description of, 117–119
 - intrinsic value in, 119–120
 - semi-strong-form, 125–128
 - strong-form, 128
 - weak-form, 125
 - emerging
 - bonds in, 355
 - capitalization level and contributions to global GDP, 151
 - securitization in, 475
 - sovereign debt of, 646
 - technical analysis for, 125
 - World Bank definition of, 646n.42
 - Eurocommercial paper, 376–377
 - and financial analyst decisions, 6
 - financial intermediaries, 28–38
 - arbitrageurs, 34–36
 - brokers, exchanges, and alternative trading systems, 28–30
 - dealers, 30–31, 34–36
 - depository institutions and financial corporations, 32–33
 - insurance companies, 33–34
 - securitizers, 31–32
 - for settlement and custodial services, 36–37
 - transactions facilitated by, 38
 - forward, 437
 - and functions of financial system, 6–14
 - capital allocation efficiency, 13–14
 - determining rates of return, 12–13
 - for individuals, 7–12
 - global debt, 349–350
 - global equity, 349–350
 - global finance
 - and depository receipts, 166–169
 - direct investing, 165–166
 - equity securities in, 150–155
 - integration and growth in, 164–165
 - inefficient, 119
 - interbank, 352, 385–386
 - liquid
 - exchanging assets for immediate delivery in, 10
 - information-motivated trading in, 12
 - raising capital in, 9
 - risk management in, 10
 - secondary, 53
 - making, 45, 46, 631
 - orders in, 44–50
 - over-the-counter, 55, 168, 358, 365
 - positions in, 38–44
 - practice problems, 66–72
 - primary security, 50–53
 - rationality of individuals vs., 137
 - regulation of, 60–63
 - secondary security, 53–58
 - solutions to problems, 73–76
 - sustainable securitization, 476
 - taking, 46
 - target, for security indexes, 82
 - US commercial paper, 376–377
 - in well-functioning financial systems, 58–60
 - yield spread and performance of, 631
 - market sentiment, 93
 - market share
 - and industry concentration, 208–209
 - stability of, 212–213, 220
 - market-to-book ratio, 175
 - market value
 - and asset-based valuation, 276, 277
 - and book value, 172
 - of debt, 274–275
 - intrinsic vs., 119–120
 - total, 175
 - Market Vectors Vietnam ETF, 95
 - Markit iBoxx, 98
 - Markit iBoxx Euro High-Yield Bond Indexes, 103
 - Mars/Wrigley, 209, 219–221
 - MasterCard, 206, 209
 - master limited partnerships (MLPs), 26
 - matador bonds, 313
 - material adverse change provisions, 375
 - Mathews International Corporation, 199
 - matrioshka bonds, 313
 - matrix pricing, 417–420
 - mature stage (industry life-cycle), 215
 - maturity
 - balloon maturity provisions, 505
 - classifying fixed-income markets by, 351
 - of corporate notes/bonds, 377–378
 - of fixed-income securities, 300
 - legal, 495
 - of residential mortgage loans, 486
 - weighted average, 491–494
 - maturity effect, 408, 409
 - maturity structure of interest rates, 433–441
 - maturity value. *see* par value
 - Mauritius, 96
 - MBOs. *see* management buyouts
 - MBS. *see* mortgage-backed securities
 - MDURATION financial function, 542n.4
 - Medical Equipment Trust (MET), 477–478, 481–483
 - medical industry, governmental influences on, 225
 - Mediquip, 476–478, 482–483
 - medium-term notes (MTNs), 378
 - Medtronic, 213
 - mental accounting, 138
 - Mercedes, 218
 - Merck & Co.
 - industry concentration and pricing power of, 209
 - in strategic analysis, 219–221
 - MET. *see* Medical Equipment Trust
 - method of comparables
 - and multiplier models for equity valuation, 269–272
 - price multiples in, 266
 - Mexican Comisión Nacional Bancaria y de Valores, 29
 - Mexican peso, 10
 - Mexico, 96, 197, 326, 369
 - mezzanine bond classes, 513
 - Mibor. *see* Mumbai interbank offered rate
 - Michelin Group, 68, 74
 - Middle East, 350, 617. *see also specific countries*
 - mid-swaps (term), 442
 - migration, credit ratings, 606–607
 - Mikuni & Co., 602
 - minimum required rate of return, 177
 - MLPs. *see* master limited partnerships
 - model portfolios, security market indexes in, 94–95
 - modified duration
 - annual, 542–544
 - approximate, 543–545
 - calculating, 542–543
 - and credit risk/return, 633–635
 - and effective duration, 547–548
 - and Macaulay duration, 549–551
 - of portfolio, 555–557
 - momentum anomalies, 132
 - momentum effect, of market-capitalization-weighted indexes, 91
 - Monetary Authority of Singapore, 161
 - monetary flexibility, in sovereign credit analysis, 648
 - monetary policy, 648
 - money, time value of. *see* time value of money
 - money convexity, 564–565
 - money duration, 557–559, 572
 - money market instruments, yield of, 429–433
 - money markets, 15, 17
 - money market securities, 300
 - Monitronics International, Inc., 199
 - monoline insurance companies, 479
 - Moody, John, 601
 - Moody's Investors Service
 - commercial paper ratings, 375
 - in credit markets, 601, 602
 - investment-grade ratings, 299n.2, 350
 - long-term ratings matrix, 602–603
 - municipal debt ratings, 650, 651
 - ratings for Ford Motor Company, 607
 - sovereign ratings, 368
 - Moore's law, 222

- moral hazard, insurance and, 34
Morgan Stanley, 300
Morningstar, 98, 104
Morningstar US Market Index, 104
Morocco, 96
mortgage-backed securities (MBS), 308
 commercial, 503–508
 balloon maturity provisions, 505
 call protection, 504–505
 credit risk, 504
 structure, 504–508
 coupon frequency, 300–301
 defined, 474
 effective duration of, 546
 overcollateralization with, 309
 repayment structure for, 320
 residential, 490–503
 collateralized mortgage obligations, 497–503
 mortgage pass-through securities, 31, 491–496
 non-agency residential mortgage-backed securities, 503
 and securitizers, 31
mortgage debt, 596
mortgage design, 486, 489–490
mortgage loans
 defined, 485
 residential, 485–490
 amortization schedule, 487–488
 interest rates, 486–487
 lender's rights in foreclosures, 488–489
 maturity, 486
 prepayment options and penalties, 488
mortgage pass-through securities, 31, 491–496
 cash flow construction, 493–494
 characteristics, 491–492
 collateralized mortgage obligations vs., 497
 defined, 491
 prepayment rate measures, 492–493
 prepayment risk, 492
 weighted average life, 495–496
mortgage pools, 31
mortgage rates, 486–487
mortgages. *see* residential mortgage loans
mortgage sector, 491n.9
MSCI All Country World Index, 103
MSCI Argentina Index, 96n.1
MSCI Barra
 company classifications, 192
 multi-market indexes of, 95–96
MSCI Developed Markets Index, 96
MSCI EAFE Index, 96
MSCI Emerging Markets Index, 96
MSCI Frontier Markets Index, 96
MSCI GCC Countries Index, 96n.4
MSCI Jamaica Index, 96n.3
MSCI Pakistan Index, 96n.2
MSCI Trinidad & Tobago Index, 96n.3
MSCI World Index, 94
MTNs. *see* medium-term notes
multilateral trading facilities (MTFs), 29–30
multi-market equity indexes, 95–96
multiple-price auctions, 362
multiple put bonds, 332
multiplier models for equity valuation, 265–276
 defined, 247
 enterprise values in, 274–276
 example, 272–273
 fundamentals in, 266–267
 method of comparables, 269–272
 other models vs., 246–248, 279–280
 price multiples in, 266–269
multistage dividend discount models, 261–264
Mumbai interbank offered rate (Mibor), 353
municipal bonds (munis), 355
mutual funds
 barriers to entry for, 207
 performance of, 129
 as pooled investments, 18–19
- N**
NACE. *see* Statistical Classification of Economic Activities in the European Community
NAICS. *see* North American Industry Classification System
NAREIT. *see* National Association of Real Estate Investment Trusts
narrow framing, 138
NASDAQ. *see* National Association of Securities Dealers Automated Quotations
NASDAQ OMX, 151, 152
National Association of Real Estate Investment Trusts (NAREIT), 101, 102
National Association of Securities Dealers Automated Quotations (NASDAQ), 93, 151n.3, 168
National Highways Authority of India (NHAI), 355
NAV. *see* net asset value
Navistar, 189
negative covenants, 310–311, 626
negative pledges, 310
negotiable CDs, 386
Nestlé
 justified forward P/E of, 267–269
 strategic analysis, 219–221
 subsidiary of, 159
net asset value (NAV), 134
net coupon pass-through rate, 491
net debt, 616
Netherlands
 bonds outstanding, 354, 360
 domestic and international debt securities, 315
 in MSCI multi-market index, 96
 residential mortgage loans, 486–488
 returns on bonds, bills, and equities, 153
 sovereign bonds, 368
net income, in ROE, 172–174
net interest pass-through rate, 491
net operating income (NOI), 504
net working capital, in credit analysis, 618
new entrants, in strategic analysis, 205–208
Newmont Mining, 276
New York Mercantile Exchange (NYMEX), 23
New York Stock Exchange (NYSE)
 ADRs on, 168
 delisting of Allianz SE on, 165
 industry concentration and pricing power of, 209
 information availability of, 122
New Zealand
 coupon payment structures, 323
 inflation-linked bonds, 327
 in MSCI multi-market index, 96
 returns
 on bills and bonds, 152–153
 on equities, 152–153
 risk tolerance and equity ownership, 155
NHAI. *see* National Highways Authority of India
Nigeria, 96
Nikkei Stock Average, 103
Nikon Corporation, 223
Nissan Motor Company, 189, 270
no-arbitrage value, 411
NOI. *see* net operating income
Nokia, 217
nominal rate. *see* coupon rate
Nomura, 30
non-agency residential mortgage-backed securities, 490, 491, 503
non-amortizing loans, 508
non-callable, non-convertible perpetual preferred shares, 254–255
non-conforming mortgages, 490
non-cumulative preference shares, 160
non-cyclical companies, 190–191, 613
non-domestic equity securities, 164–169
 depository receipts, 166–169
 direct investing in, 165–166
non-investment-grade bonds (high-yield bonds), 603
 and classification of bond market, 350–351
 credit analysis of, 638, 643–645
 credit risk with, 299–300
non-investment grade credit ratings, 638
non-mortgage asset-backed securities, 508–512
 auto loan ABSs, 508–511
 credit card receivable ABSs, 511–512
non-participating preference shares, 160
nonpublic information, 128
non-recourse loans, 488
non-sovereign bonds, 307, 371–373
non-sovereign government debt, 650–651
non-sovereign governments, 299
North American Industry Classification System (NAICS), 197
Northern Trust, 210
Norway, 96, 153
Norwegian krone, 351
notching, 604
note rates, 486–487

- notes
 bonds vs., 17
 corporate, 377–380
 credit-linked, 382
 exchange-traded, 19
 floating-rate
 cash flows from, 323–324
 as corporate debt, 378
 coupon rate for, 301
 inverse, 324
 yield measures for, 425–429
 medium-term, 378
 privately placed, 510
 publicly offered, 509
 US Treasury, 368, 547–548
 variable-rate, 323
- Novartis AG
 industry concentration and pricing power, 209
 in pharmaceutical industry, 189
 ROE for, 173–175
 strategic analysis, 219–221
- NYMEX. *see* New York Mercantile Exchange
- NYSE. *see* New York Stock Exchange
- NYSE-Euronext
 as exchange, 29
 total market capitalization in, 151, 152
- O**
- OAS. *see* option-adjusted spread
- OAS duration, 548
- obligaciones del Estado, 368
- obligations assimilables du Trésor (OATs), 367, 368
- offering day, 362
- offerings
 best efforts, 51
 initial public
 defined, 50
 in markets, 51–52
 and pricing anomalies, 135
 and venture capital, 162
 public, 50–53, 360–364
 rights, 52
 seasoned, 50
 syndicated, 361
 underwritten, 50, 51, 360–362
- offer prices, 44, 574
- off-the-run securities, 442
- oil services industry, strategic analysis of, 219–221
- Oman, 96
- Ontario Securities Commission, 29
- on-the-run securities, 368, 442
- open-ended funds, 18
- open market operations, 358
- operating cash flow, 252, 618, 639
- operating history, as company fundamental, 613
- operating income, enterprise value and, 276
- operating leverage, capacity and, 612
- Operating Segments* (IFRS 8), 189n.1
- operationally efficient financial systems, 58–59
- option-adjusted price, 425
- option-adjusted spread (OAS), 445, 631
- option-adjusted yield, 425
- option premiums, 24
- options, 329. *see also* embedded options
 call, 24
 in contract markets, 24–25
 dealers of, 35
 forwards vs., 25
 long and short sides of, 39
 put, 24, 643
 underlying risk exposures of, 39
- option writers, 24
- order-driven markets, 54–57
- Order Machine, 30
- order matching rules, 55
- order precedence hierarchy, 55
- orders, 44–50
 clearing instructions for, 44, 49–50
 execution instructions for, 44–48
 validity instructions for, 44, 48–49
- organized exchanges, 365
- original issue discount tax provision, 317
- orthopedic device industry, market share stability in, 212–213
- OTC markets. *see* over-the-counter markets
- overcapacity, 208
- overcollateralization, 309
- overconfidence, 137
- overnight repo, 387
- overreaction anomalies, 132
- over-the-counter (OTC) markets, 55, 168, 358, 365. *see also* quote-driven markets
- overvalued (term), 245
- P**
- Paccar, 189
- PAC tranches. *see* planned amortization class tranches
- Pakistan, 96
- panda bonds, 313
- Pan-European Aggregate Bond Index, 357
- parallel shift, 556
- par curve, 436–437
- pari passu ranking, 597, 644
- parity value, 333
- Parmalat, 608
- partial duration, 549
- partially amortized bonds, 318–320
- partially amortizing loans, 487
- participating preference shares, 160
- participation instruments, 382–383
- partnerships, limited, 18, 26
- par value
 of fixed-income securities, 300
 and market discount rate, 403–406
- passive investment strategies, 117
- passive portfolio management, 129
- pass-through rate, 491
- passthrough securities, on investment pools, 32
- path dependence, 218n.14
- payable date (payment date), 249
- payment-in-kind (PIK) coupon bonds, 325, 378
- payments-in-lieu of dividends, 40
- payout ratio, 266–269
- P/B. *see* price-to-book ratio
- P/CF. *see* price-to-cash-flow ratio
- P/E. *see* price-to-earnings ratio
- peer groups, 197–202
 constructing, 198–202
 defined, 197
- penal sum, 309
- penalties, prepayment, 488
- pension funds, regulation of, 62
- Pentax Imaging Company, 223
- People's Bank of China, 475
- PepsiCo, Inc., 209, 211
- performance
 of hedge funds, 102
 risk-adjusted, 94
 standards for, 61
- performance attribution, industry analysis in, 189
- periodicity, 420–421, 433
- periodicity conversions, 421–422
- PerkinElmer, 158–159
- Pernod Ricard, 209
- perpetual bonds, 300
- perpetuities, 550
- personal learning, 138
- Peru, 96
- peso, Mexican, 10
- Petroleo Brasileiro SA (Petrobras), 266–267
- Peugeot, 269, 270
- Pfizer Inc.
 in pharmaceutical industry, 189
 ROE for, 173–175
 strategic analysis, 219–221
- pharmaceutical industry
 similar companies in, 189
 strategic analysis for, 219–221
- Philip Morris, 209
- Philippines, 96
- photographic film industry, 223
- physical assets, 14
- physical settlement, of contracts, 20
- PIK coupon bonds. *see* payment-in-kind coupon bonds
- Piotowski, John, 348n.1
- PIPEs. *see* private investments in public equity
- plain vanilla (conventional) bonds, 301
 cash flows for, 302, 318
 outstanding, 334
- planned amortization class (PAC) tranches, 499–501
- Playtech, 51–52
- pledges, negative, 310
- Poland, 96, 326, 369
- political risk, 647
- pooled investments, 15, 18–19, 32
- Porter, Michael, 205, 228, 612
- portfolio management
 active
 information-motivated trading in, 10
 manager performance, 129
 manager selection, 116
 security market indexes in, 94
 with fixed-income securities, 298
 passive, 129
- portfolios
 defined, 38
 duration of, 555–557
 model, 94–95
- Portugal, 96, 487, 649–650

- POSIT, 30, 57
 positions, 38–44
 leveraged, 41–44
 long, 39
 short, 39–41
 post-trade transparent markets, 58
 pound, British, 19, 351
 PRA. *see* Prudential Regulation Authority
 Praxair, 209
 predictability, of returns, 135–136
 preemptive rights, stockholders', 157
 prefabricated housing industry, 215–216
 preference shares (preferred shares), 159–161, 171
 callable, 160, 171, 254
 common vs., 17–18
 convertible, 161
 cumulative, 160, 171
 non-callable, non-convertible
 perpetual, 254–255
 non-cumulative, 160
 non-participating, 160
 participating, 160
 retractable term, 255–256
 risk of, 171
 preferred stock, valuation of, 254–256
 premium bonds
 returns on, 531
 tax provisions for, 317
 premiums, 403–406
 call, 330
 conversion, 333
 option, 24
 Pre-Paid Legal Services Inc., 199
 prepayment lockouts, 505
 prepayment option, residential mortgage loan, 488
 prepayment penalties, 488
 prepayment penalty mortgages, 488
 prepayment penalty points, 505
 prepayment rate, 492–493
 prepayment risk
 and contraction/expansion risk, 492
 in securitization transactions, 481–482
 pre-refunded bonds, 505n.12
 present value models for equity valuation, 248–264
 defined, 246–247
 examples, 253
 Gordon growth model, 256–261
 multistage, 261–264
 other models vs., 246–248, 279–280
 preferred stock valuation with, 254–256
 share value for three-year investment horizon, 252
 present value of growth opportunities, 257n.3
 pre-trade transparent markets, 58
 price
 ask, 44
 bid, 44, 574
 call, 330
 clean, 413
 conversion, 333
 exercise, 18
 flat, 413–417
 full, 413–417
 law of one price, 269
 and limit vs. market orders, 45–46
 market, 245–246
 offer, 44, 574
 option-adjusted, 425
 quoted, 413
 repurchase, 387
 price competition, in strategic analysis, 218–220
 price-driven markets. *see* quote-driven markets
 PRICE financial function, 415n.1
 price index. *see* price return index
 price multiples. *see also specific price multiples*
 defined, 265
 example valuation based on, 272–273
 and method of comparables, 269–272
 in multiplier models for equity valuation, 266–269
 price priority, in order-driven markets, 55
 price return, 78–81
 price return index (price index), 78–81
 price-to-book ratio (P/B), 175–176, 265
 price-to-cash-flow ratio (P/CF), 265
 price-to-earnings ratio (P/E)
 for Canon Inc., 271–272
 comparing equity valuation models with, 279–280
 defined, 265
 justified value of, 266–269
 in method of comparables, 269–272
 price-to-sales ratio (P/S), 265, 269–270
 price value of a basis point (PVBP), 558
 price weighting, 83–85, 91
 pricing, 230
 pricing day, 362
 pricing power, 207–210
 primary dealers, 30, 364
 primary markets
 bond, 359–365
 private placements on, 360, 364–365
 public offerings on, 360–364
 capital, 13–14
 securities, 14–15, 50–53
 defined, 14
 private placements on, 52–53
 public offerings on, 50–53
 and secondary markets, 53
 Prime Bank, 307
 prime brokers, 33, 49
 prime lending rate, 374
 prime loans, 486
 prime paper, 375
 principal (principal amount; principal value), 300
 principal business activity, industry classification based on, 189
 principal repayment structures, 318–323
 for bullet bonds, 318–320
 for corporate notes/bonds, 378–379
 for fully amortized bonds, 318–320
 for sinking fund arrangements, 321–323
 principal value. *see* par value
 prior information, 135–136
 priority of claims, 595, 599–600
 private equity securities, 15, 162–164
 private information, 128
 private investments in public equity (PIPEs), 162–163
 privately placed notes, 510
 private placements
 on bond market, 360, 364–365
 on securities market, 52–53
 private sector, size of, 647
 Procter & Gamble, 210
 products, of similar companies, 189–190
 profit, economic, 204
 profitability, in credit analysis, 615–616
 profitability ratios, 231
 prospectus, 478n.3, 479, 626
 Protection One, Inc., 199, 200
 Prudential Regulation Authority (PRA), 353n.3
 P/S. *see* price-to-sales ratio
 PSA Peugeot Citroën, 189
 PSA prepayment benchmark. *see* Public Securities Association prepayment benchmark
 public auctions, 362–364
 public equity securities, 15, 162–164
 public information, 125–128
 publicly offered notes, 509
 public offerings
 on bond market, 360–364
 initial
 defined, 50
 in markets, 51–52
 and pricing anomalies, 135
 and venture capital, 162
 on securities market, 50–53
 public sector, size of, 647
 Public Securities Association (PSA)
 prepayment benchmark, 493
 pull to par effect, 410–411
 purchase agreements, 478–479
 pure discount bonds, 301
 PureTrading, 30
 puttable bonds, 332, 379
 effective convexity of, 567
 interest rate risk with, 554
 puttable common shares, 159, 171
 puttable preference shares, 171
 put options (puts)
 American, 332n.6
 Bermuda-style, 332
 change of control, 643
 defined, 24
 embedded (*see* puttable bonds)
 European, 332
 PVBP. *see* price value of a basis point
- Q**
 Qatar, 96, 351
 qualified institutional investors, 362
 quarterly interest bonds (QUIBS), 300
 quarterly interest debt securities (QUIDS), 300
 quasi-government bonds, 372–373
 quasi-government entities, 299
 Quest Diagnostics, 209
 QUIBS. *see* quarterly interest bonds
 QUIDS. *see* quarterly interest debt securities
 quoted margin, 426
 quoted price, 413

- quote-driven markets (dealer markets)
 defined, 54, 55
 execution mechanisms for, 55
 and fixed-income indexes, 98
 order-driven and brokered markets
 vs., 57
- R**
- random walk hypothesis, 125n.15
 rapid amortization provisions, 512
 rate of return
 and functions of financial system,
 12–13
 holding-period, 571
 required, 177–178, 254, 402
 rating agencies. *see* credit ratings
 agencies
 ratio analysis, 615–617
 rationality, of markets vs. individuals, 137
 RBC Bank, 209
 RBC Capital Markets, 30
 real assets, 14, 26–28
 real estate investment trust (REIT)
 indexes, 101–102
 real estate investment trusts (REITs), 26
 real rate duration, 574
 real returns, on equity securities, 152–154
 reasonableness testing, for company
 analysis, 232
 rebalancing, of indexes, 86, 91
 reconstitution, 92–93
 recourse loans, 488
 recovery rates, 503, 597–600
 redemption yield, 304. *see also*
 yield-to-maturity
 reference rates, 352–353, 425–426
 Regis Corporation, 199
 registered bonds, 314
 Regulation FD (SEC), 122
 regulations
 on financial reporting, 61
 for markets, 60–63
 for pension funds, 62
 Regulation S ADRs, 168
 Regulation T (Federal Reserve), 41
 regulatory influences
 and fixed-income securities, 313–316
 of government, 224–226
 and industry life-cycle, 217
 in strategic analysis, 220
 reinvested dividends, 169–170
 reinvestment risk, 322
 REIT indexes. *see* real estate investment
 trust indexes
 REITs. *see* real estate investment trusts
 renminbi, yuan, 351
 reorganization, 600
 repayment proceeds, bond, 306–307
 replication, by arbitrageurs, 35
 repo margin, 388
 repo rate, 387
 “Report on Securitization Incentives”
 (Bank for International
 Settlements), 476
 repos. *see* repurchase agreements
 repo to maturity, 387
 representativeness bias, 138
 representative sectors, for commercial
 industry classifications, 193–194
 representative security market indexes,
 103–104
 repurchase agreements (repos), 17,
 386–389
 repurchase date, 387
 repurchase price, 387
 required margin, 426
 required rate of return, 177–178, 254, 402
 required yield, 402
 required yield spread, 418
 reserve accounts, 309
 reserve funds, 309, 385–386
 residential mortgage-backed securities
 (RMBS), 490–503
 collateralized mortgage obligations,
 497–503
 floating-rate tranches, 501
 planned amortization class tranches,
 499–501
 sequential-pay structures, 497–499
 support tranches, 499–501
 mortgage pass-through securities,
 491–496
 cash flow construction, 493–494
 characteristics, 491–492
 collateralized mortgage obligations
 vs., 497
 defined, 491
 prepayment rate measures, 492–493
 prepayment risk, 492
 weighted average life, 495
 non-agency residential mortgage-
 backed securities, 503
 residential mortgage loans, 485–490
 amortization schedule, 487–488
 interest rates, 486–487
 lender’s rights in foreclosures, 488–489
 maturity, 486
 prepayment options and penalties, 488
 residual tranche, 504
 restaurants
 asset-based equity valuation for, 278
 barriers to entry for, 206
 restricted payments covenant, 644
 restricted subsidiaries, 644
 restrictions
 on asset disposals, 310
 on debt, 310
 on distributions to shareholders, 310
 on international investment, 164
 on investments, 310
 on mergers and acquisitions, 310
 on prior claims, 310
 retail currency transactions, 20
 retail deposits, 385
 retail investors, 358
 Retail Price Index (RPI), 325, 326, 370
 retractable term preferred shares,
 255–256
 retraction, 256n.2
 return(s)
 abnormal, 124
 accounting return on equity, 172–177
 active, 116
 for commodities vs. commodity
 indexes, 101
 credit risk vs., 628–637
 on equity securities, 169–170
 Fama and French three-factor model, 133
 on fixed-income securities, 530–537
 industry classifications based on
 correlations in, 191
 predictability of, 135–136
 price, 78–81
 real, 152–154
 security market indexes as proxies for,
 94
 single-period, 79–81
 total
 for equity securities, 169–170
 for leveraged stock purchase, 42–43
 for multiple periods, 81–82
 price vs., 78–79
 for single period, 80–81
 return on equity (ROE), 172–177
 and accounting method, 173
 and book vs. intrinsic value, 176–177
 in company analysis, 232
 formulas, 172–173
 and justified forward P/E, 268–269
 for Pfizer, Novartis AG, and
 GlaxoSmithKline, 173–175
 return on invested capital (ROIC), 204
 Reuters, 386
 revenue, interest expense and, 648
 revenue bonds, 651–652
 reverse floating-rate notes, 324
 reverse repurchase agreements (reverse
 repos), 388
 reverse stock split, 249
 reviewable ARM, 487
 revolving period, 508
 RGS classification. *see* Russell Global
 Sectors classification
 rights offerings, 52
 Rio Tinto, 209, 276
 risk
 balloon, 505
 Bloomberg’s statistic for, 558
 contraction, 492
 counterparty, 22, 36
 credit, 592–594
 with commercial mortgage-backed
 securities, 504
 with corporate notes/bonds, 379
 with fixed-income securities,
 299–300, 574–575
 with floating-rate bonds, 426
 and floating-rate notes, 323
 with repurchase agreements, 388
 return vs., 628–637
 and yield-to-maturity, 433
 credit migration, 593
 default, 592, 593
 downgrade, 593
 of equity securities, 170–171
 event, 608
 expansion, 492
 interest rate, 537–574
 approximate modified duration,
 543–545
 bond convexity, 559–567
 defined, 531
 duration of bond portfolio, 555–557
 effective duration, 545–548
 and floating-rate notes, 323
 and investment horizon, 569–574
 key rate duration, 549

- Macaulay duration, 538–542, 569–574
 - modified duration, 542–543
 - money duration, 557–559
 - price value of a basis point, 558
 - properties of bond duration, 549–554
 - yield volatility, 568–569
 - liquidity, 574–575, 593–594
 - litigation, 608
 - political, 647
 - prepayment, 481–482, 492
 - reinvestment, 322
 - of relying on credit ratings, 605–608
 - and repo rate, 387
 - rollover, 375
 - shaping, 549
 - spread, 593
 - substitution, 612
 - systematic, 94
 - systemic, 333
 - risk-adjusted performance, 94
 - risk aversion, 137
 - risk exposures, underlying, 39
 - risk-free rate, 419, 645–646
 - risk management, 9–10
 - risk managers, 6
 - risk tolerance, 154–155
 - rivalries, 205, 612
 - RMBS. *see* residential mortgage-backed securities
 - Roche Holding AG, 189
 - ROE. *see* return on equity
 - ROIC. *see* return on invested capital
 - rollover, of futures, 101
 - rollover risk, 375
 - Romania, 96
 - Roxburgh, Charles, 348n.1
 - Royal Bank of Scotland PLC, 307, 383
 - RPI. *see* Retail Price Index
 - Rule 10b5-1 (SEC), 122n.10
 - Rule 10b5-2 (SEC), 122n.10
 - Rule 144A ADRs, 168
 - running yield, 304
 - Russell 2000 Index, 92
 - Russell 3000 Index
 - as broad market index, 95
 - reconstitution of, 92
 - Russell Global Sectors (RGS)
 - classification, 189, 190, 192
 - Russell Investments, 192
 - Russia, 96, 313
- S**
- sales
 - of assets, 639
 - long and short, 50, 123
 - price-to-sales ratio, 265, 269–270
 - Samsung Electronics Co. Ltd., 209, 306
 - Samurai bonds, 313
 - Sandoz, 209
 - Sanofi-aventis S.A., 189
 - Santander UK plc, 306
 - Saudi Arabia, 96
 - saving, 7–8, 12
 - Schlumberger, 219–221
 - seasoned offering, 50
 - seasoned securities, 50
 - SEC. *see* US Securities and Exchange Commission
 - secondary markets
 - bond, 359, 365–367
 - security, 53–58
 - defined, 15
 - execution mechanisms, 54–57
 - market information systems, 58
 - and primary markets, 50, 53
 - trading sessions on, 54
 - secondary precedence rules, 55
 - second lien debt, 596
 - sector indexes, 97
 - sectors
 - defined, 189
 - economic sensitivity of, 190–191
 - ICB definition, 192
 - representative, 193–194
 - secured bonds, 307, 483
 - secured debt, 595, 596
 - securities. *see also specific types of securities*
 - asset-backed, 473–525
 - about, 473–474
 - collateralized debt obligations, 512–515
 - commercial mortgage-backed securities, 503–508
 - creation of, 31–32
 - economic benefits of securitization, 474–476
 - non-mortgage asset-backed securities, 508–512
 - as pooled investments, 19
 - practice problems, 519–522
 - residential mortgage-backed securities, 490–503
 - residential mortgage loans, 485–490
 - securitization process, 474–485
 - solutions to problems, 523–525
 - defined, 16–17
 - in markets, 16–19
 - for security market indexes, 82
 - short positions in, 39–41
 - Securities and Futures Commission, 41
 - Securities Industry and Financial Markets Association (SIFMA), 493
 - securitization, 474–485
 - for asset-backed securities, 299
 - defined, 473
 - economic benefits of, 474–476
 - and financial markets, 474–476
 - parties' roles in, 478–480
 - special purpose entities, 482–485
 - of structured financial instruments, 349
 - structure of, 481–482
 - transaction example, 476–478
 - securitization markets, sustainable, 476
 - securitized assets, 474
 - securitizers, 31–32
 - security lending agreements, 40
 - security market indexes, 77–114
 - for alternative investments, 101–104
 - construction of, 82–91
 - defined, 78
 - equity indexes, 95–97
 - fixed-income indexes, 98–100, 357
 - index values over multiple time periods, 81–82
 - management, 91–93
 - origins of, 78
 - practice problems, 106–111
 - representative, 103–104
 - single-period returns for, 79–81
 - solutions to problems, 112–114
 - uses of, 93–95
- self-regulating organizations (SROs), 62
- sellers, in securitization process, 478
- semiannual bond basis yield, 421
- semiconductor industry, 200–202
- semi-strong-form efficient markets, 125–128
- seniority ranking, 307, 595–597
- Sensex Index, 82
- sensitivity analysis, for justified forward P/E, 268–269
- sequential-pay tranches, 497–499
- Serbia, 96
- serial correlation, 125n.16
- serial maturity structures, 378
- Service Corporation International, 199
- servicers, in securitization process, 478
- services, of similar companies, 189–190
- servicing fee, mortgage pass-through security, 491
- settlement
 - clearing instructions for, 49–50
 - of contracts, 20
 - of corporate notes and bonds, 380
 - by financial intermediaries, 36–37
 - in secondary bond markets, 366
- settlement date, 413
- shakeout stage (industry life-cycle), 215
- Shanghai Stock Exchange, 151, 152
- Shanghai Stock Exchange Composite Index (SSE), 95
- shaping risk, 549
- shareholders
 - bondholders vs., 610–611
 - voting rights of, 156, 157
- shareholders' equity, ROE and, 174
- share repurchase (buyback), 249
- shares
 - common, 156–159
 - callable, 158–159, 171
 - defined, 156
 - and fixed-income securities, 298
 - at Ford Motor Company, 157–158
 - and preference shares, 159–160
 - preferred vs., 17–18
 - putable, 159, 171
 - at Viacom Corporation, 156–157
 - defined, 18
 - dual listing of, 164–165
 - global registered, 168
 - preference (preferred), 159–161
 - callable, 160, 171, 254
 - common vs., 17–18
 - convertible, 161
 - cumulative, 160, 171
 - non-callable, non-convertible perpetual, 254–255
 - non-cumulative, 160
 - non-participating, 160
 - participating, 160
 - retractable term, 255–256
 - risk of, 171
- small-cap, 121, 133
- value of, for three-year investment horizon, 252

- shelf registration, 52, 362
- shifting interest mechanism, 503
- short positions, 39–41
- short rebate rates, 40
- short sales, 50, 123
- short-term funding for banks, 384–390
 - repurchase and reverse repurchase agreements, 386–389
 - retail deposits, 385
 - wholesale funds, 385–386
- Sibor. *see* Singapore interbank offered rate
- SIC system. *see* Standard Industrial Classification system
- Siemens AG, 258–259
- SIFMA. *see* Securities Industry and Financial Markets Association
- similar companies, 189–191
- simple yield, 423
- Singapore, 96, 368
- Singapore interbank offered rate (Sibor), 301, 353
- Singapore Stock Exchange, 29, 167
- single monthly mortality (SMM) rate, 492–494
- single-period returns, for security market indexes, 79–81
- single price auctions, 54
- sinking fund arrangements, 321–323, 378–379
- size effect, 133
- Slovenia, 96
- small-cap shares, 121, 133
- small-denomination negotiable CDs, 386
- Smith, Donald J., 541n.3, 560n.6
- Smith & Nephew, 209, 213
- SMM rate. *see* single monthly mortality rate
- social influences
 - in industry analysis, 203, 226–227
 - and industry life-cycle, 217
 - in strategic analysis, 220
- solvency ratios, in company analysis, 231
- Sony Electronics, 209, 315, 316
- Sotheby's, 199
- South Africa
 - inflation-linked bonds, 326
 - in MSCI multi-market index, 96
 - returns
 - on bonds and bills, 152–153
 - on equities, 152–153
 - sovereign bonds, 370
- South America, 475. *see also specific countries and regions*
- South Korea
 - domestic and international debt securities, 315
 - foreign bonds, 313
 - inflation-linked bonds, 326
 - international investment, 164
 - MSCI multi-market index, 96
 - residential mortgage loans, 486, 487
 - risk tolerance and equity ownership, 154–155
 - securities backed by quasi-government entities, 490
- sovereign bonds, 367–371
 - credit quality, 368–369
 - legal issuers, 305–306
 - names of, 367–368
 - sources of repayment, 306
 - types, 369–370
- sovereign debt, 645–650
 - flexibility and performance profile, 647–648
 - political and economic profile, 647
 - in Portugal, 649–650
 - sovereign debt defaults, 645–646
- sovereign governments, 299, 475
- sovereign wealth funds, 358
- S&P. *see* Standard & Poor's
- S&P 500 Index
 - number of securities in, 82
 - as proxy for market portfolio, 94
 - securities selection for, 82
- Spain
 - bonds outstanding, 354, 360
 - domestic and international debt securities, 315
 - foreign bonds, 313
 - MSCI multi-market index, 96
 - residential mortgage loans, 486, 487
 - returns on bonds, bills, and equities, 153
 - sovereign bonds, 368, 369
- SPCs. *see* special purpose companies
- S&P Developed Ex-US BMI Energy Sector Index, 103
- SPDRs. *see* Standard & Poor's Depository Receipts
- SPDR® S&P Energy Sector Exchange-Traded Fund, 103
- special dividend (extra dividend), 248–249
- Specialized Consumer Services sub-industry, 199
- special purpose companies (SPCs), 306, 477
- special purpose entities (SPEs)
 - and bankruptcy, 483–485
 - defined, 31, 306, 477
 - obligations of, 306
 - as party to securitization, 478
 - role of, 482–485
 - as securitizers, 31–32
- special purpose vehicles (SPVs)
 - as financial intermediaries, 31–32
 - legal obligation of, 306
 - in securitization transaction, 477
- SPEs. *see* special purpose entities
- S&P GSCI Index, 101
- split coupon bonds, 325
- sponsored depository receipts, 166
- spot commodities markets, 25, 26
- spot contracts, 20
- spot currency transactions, 20
- spot curve, 434–435
- spot exchange rate, 20
- spot markets, 10, 15
- spot rates, 411–413
- spread(s)
 - benchmark, 442
 - and benchmark yield, 574–575
 - bid–ask, 44, 365–366
 - bid–offer, 365–366
 - credit, 419, 482–483, 607
 - excess, 309, 509
 - G-, 442, 445
 - interpolated, 443
 - option-adjusted, 445, 631
 - yield, 441–445
 - and benchmark rates, 441–443
 - and benchmark yield curve, 443–445
 - and credit risk/return, 630–637
 - required, 418
 - zero-volatility, 443, 445
- spread over the benchmark, 418
- spread risk, 593
- spreadsheet modeling, 232
- Sprint, 217
- S&P/TSX Capped Income Trust Index, 225
- SPVs. *see* special purpose vehicles
- Sri Lanka, 96
- SROs. *see* self-regulating organizations
- SSE. *see* Shanghai Stock Exchange Composite Index
- stable industries, 190, 191
- standard deviation, of expected total return, 170
- Standard Industrial Classification (SIC) system, 197
- standardized yield measures, 420
- Standard & Poor's (S&P)
 - commercial paper ratings, 375
 - company classifications, 192, 201–202
 - credit ratings, 99
 - investment-grade, 299n.2, 350
 - transition rates of, 606–607
 - for United Rentals, Inc., 604–605
 - default rates by credit category, 605–606, 635–636
 - funds from operations, 615
 - industrial comparative ratio analysis, 617
 - long-term ratings matrix, 602–603
 - municipal debt ratings, 651
 - notching guidelines, 604–605
 - role in credit markets, 601, 602
 - sovereign credit analysis, 646–648
 - sovereign ratings, 368
- Standard & Poor's Depository Receipts (SPDRs), 68, 74
- Standards of Professional Conduct (CFA Institute), 49, 51
- standing limit orders, 45–46
- Stanley Security Solutions, 199, 200
- The Stanley Works, 199, 200
- State Street, 209
- Statistical Classification of Economic Activities in the European Community (NACE), 196
- statistical similarities, of similar companies, 191
- Statistics New Zealand, 196
- statutory voting, 156
- step-up coupon bonds, 324
- STMicroelectronics, 210
- stock. *see also* shares
 - convertible common, 157
 - growth, 97
 - preferred, 254–256
 - subdivisions and combinations of, 157
 - value, 97, 133
- stock analysts, 6
- stock dividend (bonus issue of shares), 249

- stock splits, 83, 85, 157, 249
 stop-buy orders, 48, 49
 stop-loss orders, 48–49
 stop orders, 48–49
 strategic default, 488
 strategic groups, analysis of, 202–203
 strategic industry analysis, 204–222
 barriers to entry in, 206–208
 example, 219–222
 five forces framework, 205–206
 industry capacity in, 211–212
 industry concentration in, 208–211
 industry life-cycle model in, 213–218
 example, 217–218
 limitations of, 217
 stages of industry life cycle, 213–216
 using, 216–217
 market share stability in, 212–213
 price competition in, 218–219
 street conversion, 422
 strip curve, 434
 strong-form efficient markets, 128
 structural subordination, 604
 structured finance CDOs, 513
 structured finance sector, 349
 structured financial instruments, 381–384
 capital protected instruments, 382
 leveraged instruments, 383
 participation instruments, 382–383
 yield enhancement instruments, 382
 structured interest-only tranches, 497n.11
 structured products, 381–382
 structuring process, 497
 Stryker, 213
 style indexes, 97
 subdivisions, of stock, 157
 subordinated debt, 596–597
 subordination, 308–309, 481, 503
 subprime loans, 486
 subsidiaries
 high-yield credit analysis for, 642–643
 of Nestlé, 159
 restricted vs. unrestricted, 644
 substitute products, 205, 612
 substitution risk, 612
 superannuation funds, 546
 supplementary prospectus, 478n.3
 suppliers, power of, 205, 612
 supply, 230, 352, 631
 support tranches, 499–501
 supranational bonds, 372–373
 supranational organizations, 299
 supranationals, 601n.10
 surety bond, 309
 survivorship bias, 102
 sustainable securitization markets, 476
 swaps
 asset, 443
 in contract markets, 23–24
 credit default, 25, 34
 interest rate, 23–24
 long and short side of, 39
 Sweden
 inflation-linked bonds, 326, 327
 MSCI multi-market index, 96
 returns
 on bonds and bills, 152–153
 on equities, 152–153
 risk tolerance and equity ownership, 154–155
 sovereign bonds, 369, 370
 Swedish krona, 351
 Swiss franc, 19, 351
 Switzerland
 foreign bonds, 314
 MSCI multi-market index, 96
 residential mortgage loans, 487
 returns on bonds, bills, and equities, 153
 risk tolerance and equity ownership, 155
 sovereign bonds, 368, 369
 Synchrony Bank, 512
 syndicated loans, 364, 374
 syndicated offerings, 361
 synthetic CDOs, 513
 systematic risk, 94
 systemic risk, 334
T
T + 1 settlement, 366
 Tai, Jackson, 161
 Taiwan, 96
 Taiwan Semiconductor Manufacturing Company Ltd., 200, 201
 taking a market, 46
 target market, for security market indexes, 82
 Tata Motors, 270
 taxes
 and fixed-income securities, 316–318
 and income trusts in Canada, 225
 and yield-to-maturity, 433
 tax-exempt bonds, 355
 tax-loss selling hypothesis, 131
 T-bills. *see* US Treasury bills
 T-bonds. *see* US Treasury bonds
 TD Bank, 209
 technical analysis, 125, 129
 technological influences
 in industry analysis, 203, 222–223
 on industry life-cycle, 217
 in strategic analysis, 221
 technology, substitution risk and, 612
 Technology sector, 193
 telecommunications industry, structure of, 217
 Telecommunications sector, 193
 Telefónica S.A., 192, 272–273
 tenor, 300, 438
 TEPCO. *see* Tokyo Electric Power Company
 terminal stock value (terminal value), 251, 261
 term maturity structures, 378
 term of repurchase agreement, 387
 term repo, 387
 term structure
 of credit spreads, 419
 of interest rates, 433–441, 568
 of risk free rates, 419
 of yield volatility, 568–569
 Tesco, 362
 Tesoro Público, 368
 Teva Pharmaceutical Industries, 209
 Texas, 651
 Texas Instruments, 210
 Thailand, 96, 164
 Thaler, Richard, 132
 threat of entry, 205, 612
 three-stage dividend discount model, 262
 Tibor. *see* Tokyo interbank offered rate
 TIIS. *see* Treasury inflation-indexed securities
 Timber Hill, 30
 time frame, for market efficiency, 117
 time periods, security index values over multiple, 81–82
 time-series pricing anomalies, 130–132
 time-to-maturity, 551
 time trancheing, 482
 time value of money, 402–413
 market discount rate, 402–406, 407–411
 spot rates, 411–413
 yield to maturity, 406–407
 TIPS. *see* Treasury inflation-protected securities
 T-notes. *see* US Treasury notes
 tobacco industry, 225, 226
 Tokyo, Japan, 650
 Tokyo Electric Power Company (TEPCO), 608
 Tokyo Electron, 209
 Tokyo interbank offered rate (Tibor), 353
 Tokyo Stock Exchange
 as exchange, 29
 information availability, 122
 and TOPIX, 103
 Tokyo Stock Exchange Group, 151, 152
 Tokyo Stock Price Index (TOPIX)
 features of, 103
 number of securities in, 82
 as proxy for market portfolio, 94
 top-down approach to equity valuation, 244
 top heavy capital structure, 642
 TOPIX. *see* Tokyo Stock Price Index
 total market capitalization, 87
 total market value, ROE and, 175
 total return
 for equity securities, 169–170
 for leveraged stock purchase, 42–43
 for multiple periods, 81–82
 price vs., 78–79
 for single period, 80–81
 total return index, 78–82
 for multiple periods, 81–82
 for single period, 80–81
 value of, 79–81
 Total S. A., 250
 “toxic waste,” 32
 Toyota Motor Company, 189, 209, 270
 track record, as company fundamental, 613
 trade pricing rules, 56
 trading
 alternative systems, 29–30
 continuous trading markets, 54
 on contract/secondary security markets, 54
 information-motivated, 10–12, 26
 insider, 61, 122
 multilateral facilities, 29–30
 spot market, 10

- trading limits, 123
 - traditional bonds, ABSs vs., 299
 - traditional investment markets, 15
 - tranches
 - for collateralized debt obligations, 513
 - for collateralized mortgage obligations, 497–501
 - defined, 32
 - equity, 504
 - floating-rate, 501
 - loss severity and credit risk for, 593n.1
 - planned amortization class, 499–501
 - residual, 504
 - sequential-pay, 497–499
 - structured interest-only, 497n.11
 - support (companion), 499–501
 - tranching, 308–309, 481–482
 - transaction costs, 9, 123
 - transparency, of markets, 58
 - Treasury inflation-indexed securities (TIIIS), 326
 - Treasury inflation-protected securities (TIPS), 326, 328, 329
 - Trinidad & Tobago, 96
 - true yield, 422
 - true yield-to-maturity, 422–423
 - trust deeds, 305, 626
 - trustee agents, 479
 - trustees
 - bond indenture, 305
 - in securitization process, 479
 - trust law, 484
 - trust preferred securities, 596n.4
 - trusts, in securitization process, 478
 - TSX Group, 152
 - Tunisia, 96
 - Turkey, 96, 326, 369
 - turn-of-the-month effect, 132
 - turn-of-the-year effect, 131
 - Turquoise, 30
 - two-stage dividend discount model, 261–264
 - Tyco International, Ltd., 199, 200
- U**
- UBS, 209
 - Ukraine, 96
 - underlying asset, value of contract and, 20
 - underlying risk exposures, of options, 39
 - undervalued (term), 245
 - underwater mortgages, 488
 - underwriters, 360, 479
 - underwritten offerings, 50, 51, 360–362
 - uniform pricing rule, 56
 - Unilever, 210
 - Union Electric Company, 255–256
 - United Arab Emirates, 96
 - United Kingdom
 - bankruptcy, 600
 - benchmark rate, 442
 - bonds outstanding, 354, 360
 - capitalization level and contributions to global GDP, 151
 - commercial paper, 374
 - coupon payment structures, 323
 - covenant-strengthening investor groups, 627
 - domestic and international debt securities, 315
 - floating-rate notes, 323
 - foreign bonds, 313, 314
 - government-sponsored enterprises, 490
 - industrial comparative ratio analysis, 617
 - inflation-linked bonds, 326, 327, 370
 - international investments, 165
 - MSCI multi-market index, 96
 - municipal bonds in, 355
 - non-sovereign government bonds, 371
 - non-sovereign government debt, 650
 - overconfidence and mispricing in markets, 137
 - proxy for market portfolio, 94
 - PSA prepayment benchmark, 493
 - residential mortgage loans, 486–489
 - returns
 - by asset class, 644–645
 - on bonds and bills, 152–153
 - on equities, 152–153
 - on reinvested dividends, 170
 - risk tolerance and equity ownership, 154–155
 - securities backed by quasi-government entities, 490
 - foreign bonds, 313, 314
 - inflation-linked bonds, 326, 327, 370
 - international investments in BASE, 165
 - MSCI multi-market index, 96
 - non-sovereign government bonds, 371
 - overconfidence and mispricing in markets, 137
 - perpetual bonds in, 300
 - residential mortgage loans, 486–488
 - returns on bonds, bills, and equities, 153
 - risk tolerance and equity ownership, 155
 - sinking fund arrangements, 322
 - social influences on tobacco industry, 226
 - sovereign bonds, 305–306, 367–370
 - UK Debt Management Office, 306
 - bonds issued by, 315
 - United Nations, 196
 - United Rentals, Inc., 604–605, 642–643
 - United States
 - ADRs, 167–168
 - auctions, 362–364
 - bankruptcy, 600
 - benchmark rate, 442
 - bonds outstanding, 354, 360
 - bond yields and credit risk/return, 629–630
 - capitalization level and contributions to global GDP, 150–151
 - commercial mortgage-backed securities, 504
 - commercial paper in, 374
 - company activities of government industries, 197
 - corporate notes and bonds, 377
 - coupon payment structures, 323
 - covenant-strengthening investor groups, 627
 - debt and equity outstanding, 350
 - development of NAICS system, 197
 - domestic and international debt securities, 315
 - floating-rate notes, 323
 - foreign bonds, 313, 314
 - government-sponsored enterprises, 490
 - industrial comparative ratio analysis, 617
 - inflation-linked bonds, 326, 327, 370
 - international investments, 165
 - MSCI multi-market index, 96
 - municipal bonds in, 355
 - non-sovereign government bonds, 371
 - non-sovereign government debt, 650
 - overconfidence and mispricing in markets, 137
 - proxy for market portfolio, 94
 - PSA prepayment benchmark, 493
 - residential mortgage loans, 486–489
 - returns
 - by asset class, 644–645
 - on bonds and bills, 152–153
 - on equities, 152–153
 - on reinvested dividends, 170
 - risk tolerance and equity ownership, 154–155
 - securities backed by quasi-government entities, 490
 - securities ranked lower than subordinated debt, 596
 - securitization market, 474
 - sinking fund arrangements, 322
 - sovereign bonds, 367–370
 - tax considerations with bonds, 316
 - transition rates of credit ratings, 606
 - trust law in, 484
 - US Aggregate Bond Index, 357
 - US Air Force, 226
 - US Census Bureau, 197
 - US commercial paper (USCP) market, 376–377
 - US Consumer Price Index (CPI), 325, 326, 328, 329
 - US Department of Housing and Urban Development, 490
 - US dollar
 - foreign exchange gains, 169
 - international bonds outstanding in, 351
 - as reserve currency, 19
 - spot market trading of, 10
 - US Federal Trade Commission (FTC), 127
 - US GAAP
 - on disclosure of operating segment, 200
 - on ROE, 173n.28
 - US Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC), 29
 - disclosure regulations, 122
 - prospectuses filed with, 478n.3
 - registration with, 168
 - Regulation FD, 122
 - requirements for sponsored DRs, 166
 - Rule 10b5-1 and 10b5-2, 122n.10
 - Rule 144A, 168
 - US Treasury, public auctions by, 362–364
 - US Treasury bills (T-bills)
 - characteristics of, 368
 - discount rate, 429
 - maturity of, 351
 - returns on equities and bonds vs., 152–153
 - transaction costs with, 123
 - US Treasury bonds (T-bonds), 368, 560–561
 - US Treasury notes (T-notes), 368, 547–548
 - units (term), 18
 - unrealized capital gains and losses, 569
 - unrestricted subsidiaries, 644
 - unsecured debt, 595, 596
 - unsponsored depository receipts, 166
 - upper Tier 2 securities, 596n.4
 - UPS, 209
 - Uranium Energy Corporation, 92–93
 - USCP market. *see* US commercial paper market
 - Utilities sector, 193

V

 - Vale, 209
 - Valero, 209
 - validity instructions, 44, 48–49
 - valuation
 - of equities (*see* equity valuation)
 - of fixed-income securities (*see* fixed-income valuation)

- value. *see also* present value models for equity valuation
 book, 172–173, 176–177, 247
 carrying, 247, 533
 enterprise, 247, 274–276, 645
 estimated, 245–246
 fairly valued, 245
 fundamental value, 119, 244
 of growth opportunities, 257n.3
 intrinsic
 book vs., 176–177
 from dividend discount model, 251
 in equity valuation, 244
 market vs., 119–120
 justified values of price multiples, 266–269
 market
 and asset-based valuation, 276, 277
 and book value, 172
 of debt, 274–275
 intrinsic vs., 119–120
 net asset value, 134
 terminal, 251, 261
 total market, 175
 value effect, 133
Value Line, 262–264
 value stocks, 97, 133
 value tilt, of indexes, 91
 value weighting. *see* market-capitalization weighting
 variable-rate mortgages, 487
 variable-rate notes, 323
 variation margin payments, for futures contracts, 22
 venture capital, 15, 162
 Viacom Corporation, 156–157
 Vietnam, 96
 Visa, 206, 209
 volatility
 in equity markets, 153–154
 yield, 568–569
 Volkswagen AG, 10, 189, 306
 Volvo, 189
 vote by proxy, 156
 voting rights, shareholders', 156, 157
- W**
 WAC. *see* weighted average coupon rate
 WACC. *see* weighted average cost of capital
 Waha Capital, 27
Wall Street Journal, 103
 Wal-Mart Stores Inc.
 as bond issuer, 306
 bonds issued by, 315, 316
 industry life cycle of, 216–217
 two-factor analysis of, 210
 Walt Disney Company, 377
 WAM. *see* weighted average maturity
 warrants, 18, 333, 334
 waterfall structures, 308, 481
 Watson Pharmaceuticals Inc. case study, 618–625
 weak-form efficient markets, 125, 128, 129
 weekend effect, 132
 weighted average cost of capital (WACC), 178, 204
 weighted average coupon rate (WAC), 491–494
 weighted average life, 495
 weighted average maturity (WAM), 491–494
 Western Europe, 350. *see also specific countries*
 wholesale funds, 385–386
 Wilshire 5000 Total Market Index, 95
 window dressing, 131
 women, in workforce, 226–227
 working capital, 618, 639
 workout period, 505
 World Bank. *see* International Bank for Reconstruction and Development
 WorldCom, 608
 W.W. Grainger, 210
- Y**
 Yahoo!, 40
 Yankee bonds, 313
 yen, Japanese
 foreign exchange gains, 169
 international bonds outstanding in, 351
 as reserve currency, 19
 yield, 420–433
 benchmark, 574
 bond equivalent, 431–433
 cash flow, 555
 and credit risk/return, 629–630
 current, 423
 of fixed-income securities, 304
 of fixed-rate bonds, 420–433
 of floating-rate notes, 425–429
 forward, 438
 government equivalent, 423
 horizon, 532–536, 571
 for money market instruments, 429–433
 option-adjusted, 425
 redemption, 304 (*see also* yield-to-maturity)
 required, 402
 running, 304
 semiannual bond basis yield, 421
 simple, 423
 true, 422
 yield curves
 benchmark, 443–445
 inverted, 434
 yield duration, 538, 545, 548, 562
 yield enhancement instruments, 382
 yield maintenance charges, 505
 yield spreads, 441–445
 and credit risk/return, 630–637
 over benchmark rates, 441–443
 over benchmark yield curve, 443–445
 required, 418
 yield-to-maturity
 based on spot rates, 412–413
 for bond vs. money market, 429
 building blocks of, 441–442
 calculation of, 406–407
 defined, 304, 407
 differences in, 433–435
 and Macaulay duration, 551
 and rate of return, 531–532
 true, 422–423
 yield to redemption, 304
 yield-to-worst, 425
 yield volatility, 568–569
 YPG Holdings, 256
 yuan renminbi, 351
- Z**
 zero-coupon bonds, 301, 378
 with call options, 382
 convexity adjustment for, 560–563
 as deferred coupon bonds, 325
 sovereign, 369
 spot curve for, 434
 zero-coupon indexed bonds, 327
 zero curve, 434
 zero rates, 411
 zero-volatility spread (Z-spread), 443, 445
 Zimmer, 209, 213



CFA Institute[®]
CFA Program

DERIVATIVES AND ALTERNATIVE INVESTMENTS

CFA[®] Program Curriculum
2019 • LEVEL I • VOLUME 6

WILEY

CONTENTS

How to Use the CFA Program Curriculum		v
	Curriculum Development Process	v
	Organization of the Curriculum	vi
	Features of the Curriculum	vi
	Designing Your Personal Study Program	vii
	Feedback	ix
Derivatives		
Study Session 18	Derivatives	3
Reading 56	Derivative Markets and Instruments	5
	Introduction	5
	Derivatives: Definitions and Uses	6
	The Structure of Derivative Markets	9
	Exchange-Traded Derivatives Markets	10
	Over-the-Counter Derivatives Markets	11
	Types of Derivatives	14
	Forward Commitments	14
	Contingent Claims	25
	Hybrids	35
	Derivatives Underlyings	36
	The Purposes and Benefits of Derivatives	39
	Risk Allocation, Transfer, and Management	40
	Information Discovery	40
	Operational Advantages	41
	Market Efficiency	42
	Criticisms and Misuses of Derivatives	42
	Speculation and Gambling	42
	Destabilization and Systemic Risk	43
	Elementary Principles of Derivative Pricing	45
	Storage	46
	Arbitrage	47
	<i>Summary</i>	52
	<i>Practice Problems</i>	54
	<i>Solutions</i>	56
Reading 57	Basics of Derivative Pricing and Valuation	59
	Introduction	60
	Fundamental Concepts of Derivative Pricing	60
	Basic Derivative Concepts	60
	Pricing the Underlying	62
	The Principle of Arbitrage	66
	The Concept of Pricing vs. Valuation	72

Pricing and Valuation of Forward Commitments	73
Pricing and Valuation of Forward Contracts	73
Pricing and Valuation of Futures Contracts	80
Pricing and Valuation of Swap Contracts	82
Pricing and Valuation of Options	85
European Option Pricing	85
Binomial Valuation of Options	100
American Option Pricing	104
<i>Summary</i>	107
<i>Practice Problems</i>	109
<i>Solutions</i>	114

Alternative Investments

Study Session 19	Alternative Investments	121
Reading 58	Introduction to Alternative Investments	123
	Introduction	123
	Alternative Investments	124
	Categories of Alternative Investments	128
	Returns to Alternative Investments	129
	Portfolio Context: Integration of Alternative Investments with Traditional Investments	132
	Investment Structures	132
	Hedge Funds	133
	Hedge Fund Strategies	135
	Hedge Funds and Diversification Benefits	138
	Hedge Fund Fees and Other Considerations	139
	Hedge Fund Valuation Issues	145
	Due Diligence for Investing in Hedge Funds	146
	Private Equity	148
	Private Equity Structure and Fees	149
	Private Equity Strategies	150
	Private Equity: Diversification Benefits, Performance, and Risk	155
	Portfolio Company Valuation	156
	Private Equity: Investment Considerations and Due Diligence	158
	Real Estate	158
	Forms of Real Estate Investment	159
	Real Estate Investment Categories	161
	Real Estate Valuation	165
	Real Estate Investment Risks	166
	Commodities	167
	Commodity Derivatives and Indexes	168
	Other Commodity Investment Vehicles	169
	Commodity Performance and Diversification Benefits	170
	Commodity Prices and Investments	171
	Infrastructure	173
	Categories of Infrastructure Investments	174
	Forms of Infrastructure Investments	174

Risks and Returns Overview	175
Other Alternative Investments	175
Risk Management Overview	176
Investment and Risk Management Process	176
Risk–Return Measures	178
Due Diligence Overview	179
<i>Summary</i>	181
<i>Practice Problems</i>	184
<i>Solutions</i>	189
Glossary	G-1
Index	I-1

Derivatives

STUDY SESSION

Study Session 18

Derivatives

TOPIC LEVEL LEARNING OUTCOME

The candidate should be able to demonstrate a working knowledge of the analysis of derivatives, including forwards, futures, options, and swaps.

Derivatives—financial instruments whose prices are derived from the value of some underlying asset—have become increasingly important for managing financial risk, exploiting investment opportunities, and creating synthetic asset class exposure. As in other security markets, arbitrage and market efficiency play a critical role in establishing prices for these securities.

DERIVATIVES
STUDY SESSION

18

Derivatives

This study session builds the conceptual framework for understanding the basic derivatives and derivative markets. Essential features and valuation concepts for forward commitments such as forwards, futures, and swaps and contingent claims such as options are introduced.

READING ASSIGNMENTS

- | | |
|-------------------|--|
| Reading 56 | Derivative Markets and Instruments
by Don M. Chance, PhD, CFA |
| Reading 57 | Basics of Derivative Pricing and Valuation
by Don M. Chance, PhD, CFA |

READING

56

Derivative Markets and Instruments

by Don M. Chance, PhD, CFA

Don M. Chance, PhD, CFA, is at Louisiana State University (USA).

LEARNING OUTCOMES

<i>Mastery</i>	<i>The candidate should be able to:</i>
<input type="checkbox"/>	a. define a derivative and distinguish between exchange-traded and over-the-counter derivatives;
<input type="checkbox"/>	b. contrast forward commitments with contingent claims;
<input type="checkbox"/>	c. define forward contracts, futures contracts, options (calls and puts), swaps, and credit derivatives and compare their basic characteristics;
<input type="checkbox"/>	d. describe purposes of, and controversies related to, derivative markets;
<input type="checkbox"/>	e. explain arbitrage and the role it plays in determining prices and promoting market efficiency.

INTRODUCTION

1

Equity, fixed-income, currency, and commodity markets are facilities for trading the basic assets of an economy. Equity and fixed-income securities are claims on the assets of a company. Currencies are the monetary units issued by a government or central bank. Commodities are natural resources, such as oil or gold. These underlying assets are said to trade in **cash markets** or **spot markets** and their prices are sometimes referred to as **cash prices** or **spot prices**, though we usually just refer to them as stock prices, bond prices, exchange rates, and commodity prices. These markets exist around the world and receive much attention in the financial and mainstream media. Hence, they are relatively familiar not only to financial experts but also to the general population.

Somewhat less familiar are the markets for **derivatives**, which are financial instruments that derive their values from the performance of these basic assets. This reading is an overview of derivatives. Subsequent readings will explore many aspects of derivatives and their uses in depth. Among the questions that this first reading will address are the following:

- What are the defining characteristics of derivatives?
- What purposes do derivatives serve for financial market participants?
- What is the distinction between a forward commitment and a contingent claim?
- What are forward and futures contracts? In what ways are they alike and in what ways are they different?
- What are swaps?
- What are call and put options and how do they differ from forwards, futures, and swaps?
- What are credit derivatives and what are the various types of credit derivatives?
- What are the benefits of derivatives?
- What are some criticisms of derivatives and to what extent are they well founded?
- What is arbitrage and what role does it play in a well-functioning financial market?

This reading is organized as follows. Section 2 explores the definition and uses of derivatives and establishes some basic terminology. Section 3 describes derivatives markets. Section 4 categorizes and explains types of derivatives. Sections 5 and 6 discuss the benefits and criticisms of derivatives, respectively. Section 7 introduces the basic principles of derivative pricing and the concept of arbitrage. Section 8 provides a summary.

2

DERIVATIVES: DEFINITIONS AND USES

The most common definition of a derivative reads approximately as follows:

A derivative is a financial instrument that derives its performance from the performance of an underlying asset.

This definition, despite being so widely quoted, can nonetheless be a bit troublesome. For example, it can also describe mutual funds and exchange-traded funds, which would never be viewed as derivatives even though they derive their values from the values of the underlying securities they hold. Perhaps the distinction that best characterizes derivatives is that they usually *transform* the performance of the underlying asset before paying it out in the derivatives transaction. In contrast, with the exception of expense deductions, mutual funds and exchange-traded funds simply pass through the returns of their underlying securities. This transformation of performance is typically understood or implicit in references to derivatives but rarely makes its way into the formal definition. In keeping with customary industry practice, this characteristic will be retained as an implied, albeit critical, factor distinguishing derivatives from mutual funds and exchange-traded funds and some other straight pass-through instruments. Also, note that the idea that derivatives take their *performance* from an underlying asset encompasses the fact that derivatives take their value and certain other characteristics from the underlying asset. Derivatives strategies perform in ways that are derived from the underlying and the specific features of derivatives.

Derivatives are similar to insurance in that both allow for the transfer of risk from one party to another. As everyone knows, insurance is a financial contract that provides protection against loss. The party bearing the risk purchases an insurance policy, which transfers the risk to the other party, the insurer, for a specified period of time. The risk itself does not change, but the party bearing it does. Derivatives allow for this same type of transfer of risk. One type of derivative in particular, the put option, when combined with a position exposed to the risk, functions almost exactly like insurance, but all derivatives can be used to protect against loss. Of course, an insurance contract must specify the underlying risk, such as property, health, or life. Likewise, so do derivatives. As noted earlier, derivatives are associated with an underlying asset. As such, the so-called “underlying asset” is often simply referred to as the **underlying**, whose value is the source of risk.¹ In fact, the underlying need not even be an asset itself. Although common derivatives underlyings are equities, fixed-income securities, currencies, and commodities, other derivatives underlyings include interest rates, credit, energy, weather, and even other derivatives, all of which are not generally thought of as assets. Thus, like insurance, derivatives pay off on the basis of a source of risk, which is often, but not always, the value of an underlying asset. And like insurance, derivatives have a definite life span and expire on a specified date.

Derivatives are created in the form of legal contracts. They involve two parties—the buyer and the seller (sometimes known as the writer)—each of whom agrees to do something for the other, either now or later. The buyer, who purchases the derivative, is referred to as the **long** or the holder because he owns (holds) the derivative and holds a long position. The seller is referred to as the **short** because he holds a short position.²

A derivative contract always defines the rights and obligations of each party. These contracts are intended to be, and almost always are, recognized by the legal system as commercial contracts that each party expects to be upheld and supported in the legal system. Nonetheless, disputes sometimes arise, and lawyers, judges, and juries may be required to step in and resolve the matter.

There are two general classes of derivatives. Some provide the ability to lock in a price at which one might buy or sell the underlying. Because they force the two parties to transact in the future at a previously agreed-on price, these instruments are called **forward commitments**. The various types of forward commitments are called forward contracts, futures contracts, and swaps. Another class of derivatives provides *the right but not the obligation* to buy or sell the underlying at a pre-determined price. Because the choice of buying or selling versus doing nothing depends on a particular random outcome, these derivatives are called **contingent claims**. The primary contingent claim is called an **option**. The types of derivatives will be covered in more detail later in this reading and in considerably more depth later in the curriculum.

The existence of derivatives begs the obvious question of what purpose they serve. If one can participate in the success of a company by holding its equity, what reason can possibly explain why another instrument is required that takes its value from the performance of the equity? Although equity and other fundamental markets exist and usually perform reasonably well without derivative markets, it is possible that derivative markets can *improve* the performance of the markets for the underlyings. As you will see later in this reading, that is indeed true in practice.

1 Unfortunately, English financial language often evolves without regard to the rules of proper usage. *Underlying* is typically an adjective and, therefore, a modifier, but the financial world has turned it into a noun.

2 In the financial world, the *long* always benefits from an increase in the value of the instrument he owns, and the *short* always benefits from a decrease in the value of the instrument he has sold. Think of the long as having possession of something and the short as having incurred an obligation to deliver that something.

Derivative markets create beneficial opportunities that do not exist in their absence. Derivatives can be used to create strategies that cannot be implemented with the underlyings alone. For example, derivatives make it easier to go short, thereby benefiting from a decline in the value of the underlying. In addition, derivatives, in and of themselves, are characterized by a relatively high degree of leverage, meaning that participants in derivatives transactions usually have to invest only a small amount of their own capital relative to the value of the underlying. As such, small movements in the underlying can lead to fairly large movements in the amount of money made or lost on the derivative. Derivatives generally trade at lower transaction costs than comparable spot market transactions, are often more liquid than their underlyings, and offer a simple, effective, and low-cost way to transfer risk. For example, a shareholder of a company can reduce or even completely eliminate the market exposure by trading a derivative on the equity. Holders of fixed-income securities can use derivatives to reduce or completely eliminate interest rate risk, allowing them to focus on the credit risk. Alternatively, holders of fixed-income securities can reduce or eliminate the credit risk, focusing more on the interest rate risk. Derivatives permit such adjustments easily and quickly. These features of derivatives are covered in more detail later in this reading.

The types of performance transformations facilitated by derivatives allow market participants to practice more effective risk management. Indeed, the entire field of derivatives, which at one time was focused mostly on the instruments themselves, is now more concerned with the *uses* of the instruments. Just as a carpenter uses a hammer, nails, screws, a screwdriver, and a saw to build something useful or beautiful, a financial expert uses derivatives to manage risk. And just as it is critically important that a carpenter understand how to use these tools, an investment practitioner must understand how to properly use derivatives. In the case of the carpenter, the result is building something useful; in the case of the financial expert, the result is managing financial risk. Thus, like tools, derivatives serve a valuable purpose but like tools, they must be used carefully.

The practice of risk management has taken a prominent role in financial markets. Indeed, whenever companies announce large losses from trading, lending, or operations, stories abound about how poorly these companies managed risk. Such stories are great attention grabbers and a real boon for the media, but they often miss the point that risk management does not guarantee that large losses will not occur. Rather, **risk management** *is the process by which an organization or individual defines the level of risk it wishes to take, measures the level of risk it is taking, and adjusts the latter to equal the former.* Risk management never offers a guarantee that large losses will not occur, and it does not eliminate the possibility of total failure. To do so would typically require that the amount of risk taken be so small that the organization would be effectively constrained from pursuing its primary objectives. Risk taking is inherent in all forms of economic activity and life in general. The possibility of failure is never eliminated.

EXAMPLE 1

Characteristics of Derivatives

- 1 Which of the following is the best example of a derivative?
 - A A global equity mutual fund
 - B A non-callable government bond
 - C A contract to purchase Apple Computer at a fixed price
- 2 Which of the following is **not** a characteristic of a derivative?

- A An underlying
 - B A low degree of leverage
 - C Two parties—a buyer and a seller
- 3 Which of the following statements about derivatives is **not** true?
- A They are created in the spot market.
 - B They are used in the practice of risk management.
 - C They take their values from the value of something else.

Solution to 1:

C is correct. Mutual funds and government bonds are not derivatives. A government bond is a fundamental asset on which derivatives might be created, but it is not a derivative itself. A mutual fund can technically meet the definition of a derivative, but as noted in the reading, derivatives transform the value of a payoff of an underlying asset. Mutual funds merely pass those payoffs through to their holders.

Solution to 2:

B is correct. All derivatives have an underlying and must have a buyer and a seller. More importantly, derivatives have high degrees of leverage, not low degrees of leverage.

Solution to 3:

A is correct. Derivatives are used to practice risk management and they take (derive) their values from the value of something else, the underlying. They are not created in the spot market, which is where the underlying trades.

Note also that risk management is a dynamic and ongoing process, reflecting the fact that the risk assumed can be difficult to measure and is constantly changing. As noted, derivatives are tools, indeed *the* tools that make it easier to manage risk. Although one can trade stocks and bonds (the underlyings) to adjust the level of risk, it is almost always more effective to trade derivatives.

Risk management is addressed more directly elsewhere in the CFA curriculum, but the study of derivatives necessarily entails the concept of risk management. In an explanation of derivatives, the focus is usually on the instruments and it is easy to forget the overriding objective of managing risk. Unfortunately, that would be like a carpenter obsessed with his hammer and nails, forgetting that he is building a piece of furniture. It is important to always try to keep an eye on the objective of managing risk.

THE STRUCTURE OF DERIVATIVE MARKETS

3

Having an understanding of equity, fixed-income, and currency markets is extremely beneficial—indeed, quite necessary—in understanding derivatives. One could hardly consider the wisdom of using derivatives on a share of stock if one did not understand the equity markets reasonably well. As you likely know, equities trade on organized exchanges as well as in over-the-counter (OTC) markets. These exchange-traded equity markets—such as the Deutsche Börse, the Tokyo Stock Exchange, and the New York Stock Exchange and its Eurex affiliate—are formal organizational structures that bring buyers and sellers together through market makers, or dealers, to facilitate transactions. Exchanges have formal rule structures and are required to comply with all securities laws.

OTC securities markets operate in much the same manner, with similar rules, regulations, and organizational structures. At one time, the major difference between OTC and exchange markets for securities was that the latter brought buyers and sellers together in a physical location, whereas the former facilitated trading strictly in an electronic manner. Today, these distinctions are blurred because many organized securities exchanges have gone completely to electronic systems. Moreover, OTC securities markets can be formally organized structures, such as NASDAQ, or can merely refer to informal networks of parties who buy and sell with each other, such as the corporate and government bond markets in the United States.

The derivatives world also comprises organized exchanges and OTC markets. Although the derivatives world is also moving toward less distinction between these markets, there are clear differences that are important to understand.

3.1 Exchange-Traded Derivatives Markets

Derivative instruments are created and traded either on an exchange or on the OTC market. Exchange-traded derivatives are standardized, whereas OTC derivatives are customized. To standardize a derivative contract means that its terms and conditions are precisely specified by the exchange and there is very limited ability to alter those terms. For example, an exchange might offer trading in certain types of derivatives that expire only on the third Friday of March, June, September, and December. If a party wanted the derivative to expire on any other day, it would not be able to trade such a derivative on that exchange, nor would it be able to persuade the exchange to create it, at least not in the short run. If a party wanted a derivative on a particular entity, such as a specific stock, that party could trade it on that exchange only if the exchange had specified that such a derivative could trade. Even the magnitudes of the contracts are specified. If a party wanted a derivative to cover €150,000 and the exchange specified that contracts could trade only in increments of €100,000, the party could do nothing about it if it wanted to trade that derivative on that exchange.

This standardization of contract terms facilitates the creation of a more liquid market for derivatives. If all market participants know that derivatives on the euro trade in 100,000-unit lots and that they all expire only on certain days, the market functions more effectively than it would if there were derivatives with many different unit sizes and expiration days competing in the same market at the same time. This standardization makes it easier to provide liquidity. Through designated market makers, derivatives exchanges guarantee that derivatives can be bought and sold.³

The cornerstones of the exchange-traded derivatives market are the market makers (or dealers) and the speculators, both of whom typically own memberships on the exchange.⁴ The market makers stand ready to buy at one price and sell at a higher price. With standardization of terms and an active market, market makers are often able to buy and sell almost simultaneously at different prices, locking in small, short-term profits—a process commonly known as scalping. In some cases, however, they are unable to do so, thereby forcing them to either hold exposed positions or find other parties with whom they can trade and thus lay off (get rid of) the risk. This is

³ It is important to understand that merely being able to buy and sell a derivative, or even a security, does not mean that liquidity is high and that the cost of liquidity is low. Derivatives exchanges guarantee that a derivative can be bought and sold, but they do not guarantee the price. The ask price (the price at which the market maker will sell) and the bid price (the price at which the market maker will buy) can be far apart, which they will be in a market with low liquidity. Hence, such a market can have liquidity, loosely defined, but the cost of liquidity can be quite high. The factors that can lead to low liquidity for derivatives are similar to those for securities: little trading interest and a high level of uncertainty.

⁴ Exchanges are owned by their *members*, whose memberships convey the right to trade. In addition, some exchanges are themselves publicly traded corporations whose members are shareholders, and there are also non-member shareholders.

when speculators come in. Although speculators are market participants who are willing to take risks, it is important to understand that being a speculator does not mean the reckless assumption of risk. Although speculators will take large losses at times, good speculators manage those risks by watching their exposures, absorbing market information, and observing the flow of orders in such a manner that they are able to survive and profit. Often, speculators will hedge their risks when they become uncomfortable.

Standardization also facilitates the creation of a clearing and settlement operation. **Clearing** refers to the process by which the exchange verifies the execution of a transaction and records the participants' identities. **Settlement** refers to the related process in which the exchange transfers money from one participant to the other or from a participant to the exchange or vice versa. This flow of money is a critical element of derivatives trading. Clearly, there would be no confidence in markets in which money is not efficiently collected and disbursed. Derivatives exchanges have done an excellent job of clearing and settlement, especially in comparison to securities exchanges. Derivatives exchanges clear and settle all contracts overnight, whereas most securities exchanges require two business days.

The clearing and settlement process of derivative transactions also provides a credit guarantee. If two parties engage in a derivative contract on an exchange, one party will ultimately make money and the other will lose money. Derivatives exchanges use their clearinghouses to provide a guarantee to the winning party that if the loser does not pay, the clearinghouse will pay the winning party. The clearinghouse is able to provide this credit guarantee by requiring a cash deposit, usually called the **margin bond** or **performance bond**, from the participants to the contract. Derivatives clearinghouses manage these deposits, occasionally requiring additional deposits, so effectively that they have never failed to pay in the nearly 100 years they have existed. We will say more about this process later and illustrate how it works.

Exchange markets are said to have **transparency**, which means that full information on all transactions is disclosed to exchanges and regulatory bodies. All transactions are centrally reported within the exchanges and their clearinghouses, and specific laws require that these markets be overseen by national regulators. Although this would seem a strong feature of exchange markets, there is a definite cost. Transparency means a loss of privacy: National regulators can see what transactions have been done. Standardization means a loss of flexibility: A participant can do only the transactions that are permitted on the exchange. Regulation means a loss of both privacy and flexibility. It is not that transparency or regulation is good and the other is bad. It is simply a trade-off.

Derivatives exchanges exist in virtually every developed (and some emerging market) countries around the world. Some exchanges specialize in derivatives and others are integrated with securities exchanges.

Although there have been attempts to create somewhat non-standardized derivatives for trading on an exchange, such attempts have not been particularly successful. Standardization is a critical element by which derivatives exchanges are able to provide their services. We will look at this point again when discussing the alternative to standardization: customized OTC derivatives.

3.2 Over-the-Counter Derivatives Markets

The OTC derivatives markets comprise an informal network of market participants that are willing to create and trade virtually any type of derivative that can legally exist. The backbone of these markets is the set of dealers, which are typically banks. Most of these banks are members of a group called the International Swaps and Derivatives Association (ISDA), a worldwide organization of financial institutions that engage in derivative transactions, primarily as dealers. As such, these markets are sometimes

called *dealer markets*. Acting as principals, these dealers informally agree to buy and sell various derivatives. It is *informal* because the dealers are not obligated to do so. Their participation is based on a desire to profit, which they do by purchasing at one price and selling at a higher price. Although it might seem that a dealer who can “buy low, sell high” could make money easily, the process in practice is not that simple. Because OTC instruments are not standardized, a dealer cannot expect to buy a derivative at one price and simultaneously sell it to a different party who happens to want to buy the same derivative at the same time and at a higher price.

To manage the risk they assume by buying and selling customized derivatives, OTC derivatives dealers typically hedge their risks by engaging in alternative but similar transactions that pass the risk on to other parties. For example, if a company comes to a dealer to buy a derivative on the euro, the company would effectively be transferring the risk of the euro to the dealer. The dealer would then attempt to lay off (get rid of) that risk by engaging in an alternative but similar transaction that would transfer the risk to another party. This hedge might involve another derivative on the euro or it might simply be a transaction in the euro itself. Of course, that begs the question of why the company could not have laid off the risk itself and avoided the dealer. Indeed, some can and do, but laying off risk is not simple. Unable to find identical offsetting transactions, dealers usually have to find *similar* transactions with which they can lay off the risk. Hedging one derivative with a different kind of derivative on the same underlying is a similar but not identical transaction. It takes specialized knowledge and complex models to be able to do such transactions effectively, and dealers are more capable of doing so than are ordinary companies. Thus, one might think of a dealer as a middleman, a sort of financial wholesaler using its specialized knowledge and resources to facilitate the transfer of risk. In the same manner that one could theoretically purchase a consumer product from a manufacturer, a network of specialized middlemen and retailers is often a more effective method.

Because of the customization of OTC derivatives, there is a tendency to think that the OTC market is less liquid than the exchange market. That is not necessarily true. Many OTC instruments can easily be created and then essentially offset by doing the exact opposite transaction, often with the same party. For example, suppose Corporation A buys an OTC derivative from Dealer B. Before the expiration date, Corporation A wants to terminate the position. It can return to Dealer B and ask to sell a derivative with identical terms. Market conditions will have changed, of course, and the value of the derivative will not be the same, but the transaction can be conducted quite easily with either Corporation A or Dealer B netting a gain at the expense of the other. Alternatively, Corporation A could do this transaction with a different dealer, the result of which would remove exposure to the underlying risk but would leave two transactions open and some risk that one party would default to the other. In contrast to this type of OTC liquidity, some exchange-traded derivatives have very little trading interest and thus relatively low liquidity. Liquidity is always driven by trading interest, which can be strong or weak in both types of markets.

OTC derivative markets operate at a lower degree of regulation and oversight than do exchange-traded derivative markets. In fact, until around 2010, it could largely be said that the OTC market was essentially unregulated. OTC transactions could be executed with only the minimal oversight provided through laws that regulated the parties themselves, not the specific instruments. Following the financial crisis that began in 2007, new regulations began to blur the distinction between OTC and exchange-listed markets. In both the United States (the Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act of 2010, commonly known as the Dodd–Frank Act) and Europe (the Regulation of the European Parliament and of the Council on OTC Derivatives, Central Counterparties, and Trade Repositories), regulations are changing the characteristics of OTC markets.

When the full implementation of these new laws takes place, a number of OTC transactions will have to be cleared through central clearing agencies, information on most OTC transactions will need to be reported to regulators, and entities that operate in the OTC market will be more closely monitored. There are, however, quite a few exemptions that cover a significant percentage of derivative transactions. Clearly, the degree of OTC regulation, although increasing in recent years, is still lighter than that of exchange-listed market regulation. Many transactions in OTC markets will retain a degree of privacy with lower transparency, and most importantly, the OTC markets will remain considerably more flexible than the exchange-listed markets.

EXAMPLE 2

Exchange-Traded versus Over-the-Counter Derivatives

- 1 Which of the following characteristics is **not** associated with exchange-traded derivatives?
 - A Margin or performance bonds are required.
 - B The exchange guarantees all payments in the event of default.
 - C All terms except the price are customized to the parties' individual needs.
- 2 Which of the following characteristics is associated with over-the-counter derivatives?
 - A Trading occurs in a central location.
 - B They are more regulated than exchange-listed derivatives.
 - C They are less transparent than exchange-listed derivatives.
- 3 Market makers earn a profit in both exchange and over-the-counter derivatives markets by:
 - A charging a commission on each trade.
 - B a combination of commissions and markups.
 - C buying at one price, selling at a higher price, and hedging any risk.
- 4 Which of the following statements *most* accurately describes exchange-traded derivatives relative to over-the-counter derivatives? Exchange-traded derivatives are more likely to have:
 - A greater credit risk.
 - B standardized contract terms.
 - C greater risk management uses.

Solution to 1:

C is correct. Exchange-traded contracts are standardized, meaning that the exchange determines the terms of the contract except the price. The exchange guarantees against default and requires margins or performance bonds.

Solution to 2:

C is correct. OTC derivatives have a lower degree of transparency than exchange-listed derivatives. Trading does not occur in a central location but, rather, is quite dispersed. Although new national securities laws are tightening the regulation of OTC derivatives, the degree of regulation is less than that of exchange-listed derivatives.

Solution to 3:

C is correct. Market makers buy at one price (the bid), sell at a higher price (the ask), and hedge whatever risk they otherwise assume. Market makers do not charge a commission. Hence, A and B are both incorrect.

Solution to 4:

B is correct. Standardization of contract terms is a characteristic of exchange-traded derivatives. A is incorrect because credit risk is well-controlled in exchange markets. C is incorrect because the risk management uses are not limited by being traded over the counter.

4

TYPES OF DERIVATIVES

As previously stated, derivatives fall into two general classifications: forward commitments and contingent claims. The factor that distinguishes forward commitments from contingent claims is that the former *obligate* the parties to engage in a transaction at a future date on terms agreed upon in advance, whereas the latter provide one party the *right but not the obligation* to engage in a future transaction on terms agreed upon in advance.

4.1 Forward Commitments

Forward commitments are contracts entered into at one point in time that require both parties to engage in a transaction at a later point in time (the expiration) on terms agreed upon at the start. The parties establish the identity and quantity of the underlying, the manner in which the contract will be executed or settled when it expires, and the fixed price at which the underlying will be exchanged. This fixed price is called the **forward price**.

As a hypothetical example of a forward contract, suppose that today Markus and Johannes enter into an agreement that Markus will sell his BMW to Johannes for a price of €30,000. The transaction will take place on a specified date, say, 180 days from today. At that time, Markus will deliver the vehicle to Johannes's home and Johannes will give Markus a bank-certified check for €30,000. There will be no recourse, so if the vehicle has problems later, Johannes cannot go back to Markus for compensation. It should be clear that both Markus and Johannes must do their due diligence and carefully consider the reliability of each other. The car could have serious quality issues and Johannes could have financial problems and be unable to pay the €30,000. Obviously, the transaction is essentially unregulated. Either party could renege on his obligation, in response to which the other party could go to court, provided a formal contract exists and is carefully written. Note finally that one of the two parties is likely to end up gaining and the other losing, depending on the secondary market price of this type of vehicle at expiration of the contract.

This example is quite simple but illustrates the essential elements of a forward contract. In the financial world, such contracts are very carefully written, with legal provisions that guard against fraud and require extensive credit checks. Now let us take a deeper look at the characteristics of forward contracts.

4.1.1 Forward Contracts

The following is the formal definition of a forward contract:

A forward contract is an over-the-counter derivative contract in which two parties agree that one party, the buyer, will purchase an underlying asset from the other party, the seller, at a later date at a fixed price they agree on when the contract is signed.

In addition to agreeing on the price at which the underlying asset will be sold at a later date, the two parties also agree on several other matters, such as the specific identity of the underlying, the number of units of the underlying that will be delivered, and where the future delivery will occur. These are important points but relatively minor in this discussion, so they can be left out of the definition to keep it uncluttered.

As noted earlier, a forward contract is a commitment. Each party agrees that it will fulfill its responsibility at the designated future date. Failure to do so constitutes a default and the non-defaulting party can institute legal proceedings to enforce performance. It is important to recognize that although either party could default to the other, only one party at a time can default. The party owing the greater amount could default to the other, but the party owing the lesser amount cannot default because its claim on the other party is greater. The amount owed is always based on the net owed by one party to the other.

To gain a better understanding of forward contracts, it is necessary to examine their payoffs. As noted, forward contracts—and indeed all derivatives—take (derive) their payoffs from the performance of the underlying asset. To illustrate the payoff of a forward contract, start with the assumption that we are at time $t = 0$ and that the forward contract expires at a later date, time $t = T$.⁵ The spot price of the underlying asset at time 0 is S_0 and at time T is S_T . Of course, when we initiate the contract at time 0, we do not know what S_T will ultimately be. Remember that the two parties, the buyer and the seller, are going long and short, respectively.

At time $t = 0$, the long and the short agree that the short will deliver the asset to the long at time T for a price of $F_0(T)$. The notation $F_0(T)$ denotes that this value is established at time 0 and applies to a contract expiring at time T . $F_0(T)$ is the forward price. Later, you will learn how the forward price is determined. It turns out that it is quite easy to do, but we do not need to know right now.⁶

So, let us assume that the buyer enters into the forward contract with the seller for a price of $F_0(T)$, with delivery of one unit of the underlying asset to occur at time T . Now, let us roll forward to time T , when the price of the underlying is S_T . The long is obligated to pay $F_0(T)$, for which he receives an asset worth S_T . If $S_T > F_0(T)$, it is clear that the transaction has worked out well for the long. He paid $F_0(T)$ and receives something of greater value. Thus, the contract effectively pays off $S_T - F_0(T)$ to the long, which is the value of the contract at expiration. The short has the mirror image of the long. He is required to deliver the asset worth S_T and accept a smaller amount, $F_0(T)$. The contract has a payoff for him of $F_0(T) - S_T$, which is negative. Even if the asset's value, S_T , is less than the forward price, $F_0(T)$, the payoffs are still $S_T - F_0(T)$ for the long and $F_0(T) - S_T$ for the short. We can consolidate these results by writing the short's payoff as the negative of the long's, $-(S_T - F_0(T))$, which serves as a useful reminder that the long and the short are engaged in a zero-sum game, which is a type of competition in which one participant's gains are the other's losses. Although both lose a modest amount in the sense of both having some costs to engage in the

⁵ Such notations as $t = 0$ and $t = T$ are commonly used in explaining derivatives. To indicate that $t = 0$ simply means that we initiate a contract at an imaginary time designated like a counter starting at zero. To indicate that the contract expires at $t = T$ simply means that at some future time, designated as T , the contract expires. Time T could be a certain number of days from now or a fraction of a year later or T years later. We will be more specific in later readings that involve calculations. For now, just assume that $t = 0$ and $t = T$ are two dates—the initiation and the expiration—of the contract.

⁶ This point is covered more fully elsewhere in the readings on derivatives, but we will see it briefly later in this reading.

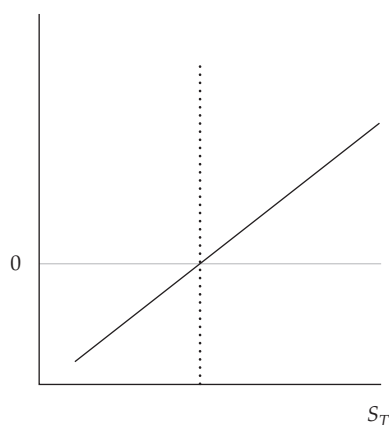
transaction, these costs are relatively small and worth ignoring for our purposes at this time. In addition, it is worthwhile to note how derivatives transform the performance of the underlying. The gain from owning the underlying would be $S_T - S_0$, whereas the gain from owning the forward contract would be $S_T - F_0(T)$. Both figures are driven by S_T , the price of the underlying at expiration, but they are not the same.

Exhibit 1 illustrates the payoffs from both buying and selling a forward contract.

Exhibit 1 Payoffs from a Forward Contract

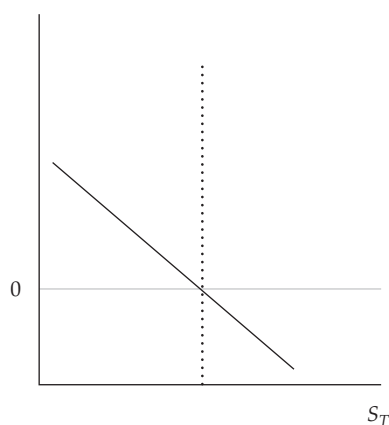
A. Payoff from Buying = $S_T - F_0(T)$

Payoff



B. Payoff from Selling = $-(S_T - F_0(T))$

Payoff



The long hopes the price of the underlying will rise above the forward price, $F_0(T)$, whereas the short hopes the price of the underlying will fall below the forward price. Except in the extremely rare event that the underlying price at T equals the forward price, there will ultimately be a winner and a loser.

An important element of forward contracts is that no money changes hands between parties when the contract is initiated. Unlike in the purchase and sale of an asset, there is no value exchanged at the start. The buyer does not pay the seller some money and obtain something. In fact, forward contracts have zero value at the start. They are neither assets nor liabilities. As you will learn in later readings, their values will deviate from zero later as prices move. Forward contracts will almost always have non-zero values at expiration.

As noted previously, the primary purpose of derivatives is for risk management. Although the uses of forward contracts are covered in depth later in the curriculum, there are a few things to note here about the purposes of forward contracts. It should be apparent that locking in the future buying or selling price of an underlying asset can be extremely attractive for some parties. For example, an airline anticipating the purchase of jet fuel at a later date can enter into a forward contract to buy the fuel at a price agreed upon when the contract is initiated. In so doing, the airline has hedged its cost of fuel. Thus, forward contracts can be structured to create a perfect hedge, providing an assurance that the underlying asset can be bought or sold at a price known when the contract is initiated. Likewise, speculators, who ultimately assume the risk laid off by hedgers, can make bets on the direction of the underlying asset without having to invest the money to purchase the asset itself.

Finally, forward contracts need not specifically settle by delivery of the underlying asset. They can settle by an exchange of cash. These contracts—called **non-deliverable forwards** (NDFs), **cash-settled forwards**, or **contracts for differences**—have the same economic effect as do their delivery-based counterparts. For example, for a physical delivery contract, if the long pays $F_0(T)$ and receives an asset worth S_T , the contract is worth $S_T - F_0(T)$ to the long at expiration. A non-deliverable forward contract would have the short simply pay cash to the long in the amount of $S_T - F_0(T)$. The long would not take possession of the underlying asset, but if he wanted the asset, he could purchase it in the market for its current price of S_T . Because he received a cash settlement in the amount of $S_T - F_0(T)$, in buying the asset the long would have to pay out only $S_T - [S_T - F_0(T)]$, which equals $F_0(T)$. Thus, the long could acquire the asset, effectively paying $F_0(T)$, exactly as the contract promised. Transaction costs do make cash settlement different from physical delivery, but this point is relatively minor and can be disregarded for our purposes here.

As previously mentioned, forward contracts are OTC contracts. There is no formal forward contract exchange. Nonetheless, there are exchange-traded variants of forward contracts, which are called futures contracts or just futures.

4.1.2 Futures

Futures contracts are specialized versions of forward contracts that have been standardized and that trade on a futures exchange. By standardizing these contracts and creating an organized market with rules, regulations, and a central clearing facility, the futures markets offer an element of liquidity and protection against loss by default.

Formally, a futures contract is defined as follows:

A futures contract is a standardized derivative contract created and traded on a futures exchange in which two parties agree that one party, the buyer, will purchase an underlying asset from the other party, the seller, at a later date and at a price agreed on by the two parties when the contract is initiated and in which there is a daily settling of gains and losses and a credit guarantee by the futures exchange through its clearinghouse.

First, let us review what standardization means. Recall that in forward contracts, the parties customize the contract by specifying the underlying asset, the time to expiration, the delivery and settlement conditions, and the quantity of the underlying, all according to whatever terms they agree on. These contracts are not traded on an exchange. As noted, the regulation of OTC derivatives markets is increasing, but these contracts are not subject to the traditionally high degree of regulation that applies to securities and futures markets. Futures contracts first require the existence of a futures exchange, a legally recognized entity that provides a market for trading these contracts. Futures exchanges are highly regulated at the national level in all countries. These exchanges specify that only certain contracts are authorized for trading. These contracts have specific underlying assets, times to expiration, delivery

and settlement conditions, and quantities. The exchange offers a facility in the form of a physical location and/or an electronic system as well as liquidity provided by authorized market makers.

Probably the most important distinctive characteristic of futures contracts is the daily settlement of gains and losses and the associated credit guarantee provided by the exchange through its clearinghouse. When a party buys a futures contract, it commits to purchase the underlying asset at a later date and at a price agreed upon when the contract is initiated. The counterparty (the seller) makes the opposite commitment, an agreement to sell the underlying asset at a later date and at a price agreed upon when the contract is initiated. The agreed-upon price is called the **futures price**. Identical contracts trade on an ongoing basis at different prices, reflecting the passage of time and the arrival of new information to the market. Thus, as the futures price changes, the parties make and lose money. Rising (falling) prices, of course, benefit (hurt) the long and hurt (benefit) the short. At the end of each day, the clearinghouse engages in a practice called **mark to market**, also known as the **daily settlement**. The clearinghouse determines an average of the final futures trades of the day and designates that price as the **settlement price**. All contracts are then said to be *marked to the settlement price*. For example, if the long purchases the contract during the day at a futures price of £120 and the settlement price at the end of the day is £122, the long's account would be marked for a gain of £2. In other words, the long has made a profit of £2 and that amount is credited to his account, with the money coming from the account of the short, who has lost £2. Naturally, if the futures price decreases, the long loses money and is charged with that loss, and the money is transferred to the account of the short.⁷

The account is specifically referred to as a **margin** account. Of course, in equity markets, margin accounts are commonly used, but there are significant differences between futures margin accounts and equity margin accounts. Equity margin accounts involve the extension of credit. An investor deposits part of the cost of the stock and borrows the remainder at a rate of interest. With futures margin accounts, both parties deposit a required minimum sum of money, but the remainder of the price is not borrowed. This required margin is typically less than 10% of the futures price, which is considerably less than in equity margin trading. In the example above, let us assume that the required margin is £10, which is referred to as the **initial margin**. Both the long and the short put that amount into their respective margin accounts. This money is deposited there to support the trade, not as a form of equity, with the remaining amount borrowed. There is no formal loan created as in equity markets. A futures margin is more of a performance bond or good faith deposit, terms that were previously mentioned. It is simply an amount of money put into an account that covers possible future losses.

Associated with each initial margin is another figure called the **maintenance margin**. The maintenance margin is the amount of money that each participant must maintain in the account after the trade is initiated, and it is always significantly lower than the initial margin. Let us assume that the maintenance margin in this example is £6. If the buyer's account is marked to market with a credit of £2, his margin balance moves to £12, while the seller's account is charged £2 and his balance moves to £8. The clearinghouse then compares each participant's balance with the maintenance margin. At this point, both participants more than meet the maintenance margin.

⁷ The actual amount of money charged and credited depends on the contract size and the number of contracts. A price of £120 might actually refer to a contract that has a standard size of £100,000. Thus, £120 might actually mean 120% of the standard size, or £120,000. In addition, the parties are likely to hold more than one contract. Hence, the gain of £2 referred to in the text might really mean £2,000 (122% minus 120% times the £100,000 standard size) times the number of contracts held by the party.

Let us say, however, that the price continues to move in the long's favor and, therefore, against the short. A few days later, assume that the short's balance falls to £4, which is below the maintenance margin requirement of £6. The short will then get a **margin call**, which is a request to deposit additional funds. The amount that the short has to deposit, however, is *not* the £2 that would bring his balance up to the maintenance margin. Instead, the short must deposit enough funds to bring the balance up to the initial margin. So, the short must come up with £6. The purpose of this rule is to get the party's position significantly above the minimum level and provide some breathing room. If the balance were brought up only to the maintenance level, there would likely be another margin call soon. A party can choose not to deposit additional funds, in which case the party would be required to close out the contract as soon as possible and would be responsible for any additional losses until the position is closed.

As with forward contracts, neither party pays any money to the other when the contract is initiated. Value accrues as the futures price changes, but at the end of each day, the mark-to-market process settles the gains and losses, effectively resetting the value for each party to zero.

The clearinghouse moves money between the participants, crediting gains to the winners and charging losses to the losers. By doing this on a daily basis, the gains and losses are typically quite small, and the margin balances help ensure that the clearinghouse will collect from the party losing money. As an extra precaution, in fast-moving markets, the clearinghouse can make margin calls during the day, not just at the end of the day. Yet there still remains the possibility that a party could default. A large loss could occur quickly and consume the entire margin balance, with additional money owed.⁸ If the losing party cannot pay, the clearinghouse provides a guarantee that it will make up the loss, which it does by maintaining an insurance fund. If that fund were depleted, the clearinghouse could levy a tax on the other market participants, though that has never happened.

Some futures contracts contain a provision limiting price changes. These rules, called **price limits**, establish a band relative to the previous day's settlement price, within which all trades must occur. If market participants wish to trade at a price above the upper band, trading stops, which is called **limit up**, until two parties agree on a trade at a price lower than the upper limit. Likewise, if market participants wish to trade at a price below the lower band, which is called **limit down**, no trade can take place until two parties agree to trade at a price above the lower limit. When the market hits these limits and trading stops, it is called **locked limit**. Typically, the exchange rules provide for an expansion of the limits the next day. These price limits, which may be somewhat objectionable to proponents of free markets, are important in helping the clearinghouse manage its credit exposure. Just because two parties wish to trade a futures contract at a price beyond the limits does not mean they should be allowed to do so. The clearinghouse is a third participant in the contract, guaranteeing to each party that it ensures against the other party defaulting. Therefore, the clearinghouse has a vested interest in the price and considerable exposure. Sharply moving prices make it more difficult for the clearinghouse to collect from the parties losing money.

Most participants in futures markets buy and sell contracts, collecting their profits and incurring their losses, with no ultimate intent to make or take delivery of the underlying asset. For example, the long may ultimately sell her position before expiration. When a party re-enters the market at a later date but before expiration and

⁸ For example, let us go back to when the short had a balance of £4, which is £2 below the maintenance margin and £6 below the initial margin. The short will get a margin call, but suppose he elects not to deposit additional funds and requests that his position be terminated. In a fast-moving market, the price might increase more than £4 before his broker can close his position. The remaining balance of £4 would then be depleted, and the short would be responsible for any additional losses.

engages in the opposite transaction—a long selling her previously opened contract or a short buying her previously opened contract—the transaction is referred to as an offset. The clearinghouse marks the contract to the current price relative to the previous settlement price and closes out the participant's position.

At any given time, the number of outstanding contracts is called the **open interest**. Each contract counted in the open interest has a long and a corresponding short. The open interest figure changes daily as some parties open up new positions, while other parties offset their old positions. It is theoretically possible that all longs and shorts offset their positions before expiration, leaving no open interest when the contract expires, but in practice there is nearly always some open interest at expiration, at which time there is a final delivery or settlement.

When discussing forward contracts, we noted that a contract could be written such that the parties engage in physical delivery or cash settlement at expiration. In the futures markets, the exchange specifies whether physical delivery or cash settlement applies. In physical delivery contracts, the short is required to deliver the underlying asset at a designated location and the long is required to pay for it. Delivery replaces the mark-to-market process on the final day. It also ensures an important principle that you will use later: *The futures price converges to the spot price at expiration*. Because the short delivers the actual asset and the long pays the current spot price for it, the futures price at expiration has to be the spot price at that time. Alternatively, a futures contract initiated right at the instant of expiration is effectively a spot transaction and, therefore, the futures price at expiration must equal the spot price. Following this logic, in cash settlement contracts, there is a final mark to market, with the futures price formally set to the spot price, thereby ensuring automatic convergence.

In discussing forward contracts, we described the process by which they pay off as the spot price at expiration minus the forward price, $S_T - F_0(T)$, the former determined at expiration and the latter agreed upon when the contract is initiated. Futures contracts basically pay off the same way, but there is a slight difference. Let us say the contract is initiated on Day 0 and expires on Day T . The intervening days are designated Days 1, 2, ..., T . The initial futures price is designated $f_0(T)$ and the daily settlement prices on Days 1, 2, ..., T are designated $f_1(T), f_2(T), \dots, f_T(T)$. There are, of course, futures prices within each trading day, but let us focus only on the settlement prices for now. For simplicity, let us assume that the long buys at the settlement price on Day 0 and holds the position all the way to expiration. Through the mark-to-market process, the cash flows to the account of the long will be

$$\begin{aligned} &f_1(T) - f_0(T) \text{ on Day 1} \\ &f_2(T) - f_1(T) \text{ on Day 2} \\ &f_3(T) - f_2(T) \text{ on Day 3} \\ &\dots \\ &f_T(T) - f_{T-1}(T) \text{ on Day } T \end{aligned}$$

These add up to

$$f_T(T) - f_0(T) \text{ on Day } T.$$

And because of the convergence of the final futures price to the spot price,

$$f_T(T) - f_0(T) = S_T - f_0(T),$$

which is the same as with forward contracts.⁹ Note, however, that the timing of these profits is different from that of forwards. Forward contracts realize the full amount, $S_T - f_0(T)$, at expiration, whereas futures contracts realize this amount in parts on a

⁹ Because of this equivalence, we will not specifically illustrate the profit graphs of futures contracts. You can generally treat them the same as those of forwards, which were shown in Exhibit 1.

day-to-day basis. Naturally, the time value of money principle says that these are not equivalent amounts of money. But the differences tend to be small, particularly in low-interest-rate environments, some of these amounts are gains and some are losses, and most futures contracts have maturities of less than a year.

But the near equivalence of the profits from a futures and a forward contract disguises an important distinction between these types of contracts. In a forward contract, with the entire payoff made at expiration, a loss by one party can be large enough to trigger a default. Hence, forward contracts are subject to default and require careful consideration of the credit quality of the counterparties. Because futures contracts settle gains and collect losses daily, the amounts that could be lost upon default are much smaller and naturally give the clearinghouse much greater flexibility to manage the credit risk it assumes.

Unlike forward markets, futures markets are highly regulated at the national level. National regulators are required to approve new futures exchanges and even new contracts proposed by existing exchanges as well as changes in margin requirements, price limits, and any significant changes in trading procedures. Violations of futures regulations can be subject to governmental prosecution. In addition, futures markets are far more transparent than forward markets. Futures prices, volume, and open interest are widely reported and easily obtained. Futures prices of nearby expiring contracts are often used as proxies for spot prices, particularly in decentralized spot markets, such as gold, which trades in spot markets all over the world.

In spite of the advantages of futures markets over forward markets, forward markets also have advantages over futures markets. Transparency is not always a good thing. Forward markets offer more privacy and fewer regulatory encumbrances. In addition, forward markets offer more flexibility. With the ability to tailor contracts to the specific needs of participants, forward contracts can be written exactly the way the parties want. In contrast, the standardization of futures contracts makes it more difficult for participants to get exactly what they want, even though they may get close substitutes. Yet, futures markets offer a valuable credit guarantee.

Like forward markets, futures markets can be used for hedging or speculation. For example, a jewelry manufacturer can buy gold futures, thereby hedging the price it will have to pay for one of its key inputs. Although it is more difficult to construct a futures strategy that hedges perfectly than to construct a forward strategy that does so, futures offer the benefit of the credit guarantee. It is not possible to argue that futures are better than forwards or vice versa. Market participants always trade off advantages against disadvantages. Some participants prefer futures, and some prefer forwards. Some prefer one over the other for certain risks and the other for other risks. Some might use one for a particular risk at a point in time and a different instrument for the same risk at another point in time. The choice is a matter of taste and constraints.

The third and final type of forward commitment we will cover is swaps. They go a step further in committing the parties to buy and sell something at a later date: They obligate the parties to a sequence of multiple purchases and sales.

4.1.3 Swaps

The concept of a swap is that two parties exchange (swap) a series of cash flows. One set of cash flows is variable or floating and will be determined by the movement of an underlying asset or rate. The other set of cash flows can be variable and determined by a different underlying asset or rate, or it can be fixed. Formally, a swap is defined as follows:

A swap is an over-the-counter derivative contract in which two parties agree to exchange a series of cash flows whereby one party pays a variable series that will be determined by an underlying asset or rate and the other party pays either (1) a variable series determined by a different underlying asset or rate or (2) a fixed series.

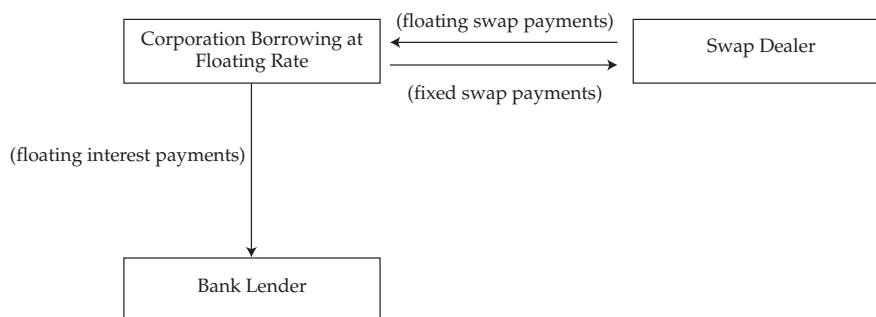
As with forward contracts, swap contracts also contain other terms—such as the identity of the underlying, the relevant payment dates, and the payment procedure—that are negotiated between the parties and written into the contract. A swap is a bit more like a forward contract than a futures contract in that it is an OTC contract, so it is privately negotiated and subject to default. Nonetheless, the similarities between futures and forwards apply to futures and swaps and, indeed, combinations of futures contracts expiring at different dates are often compared to swaps.

As with forward contracts, either party can default but only one party can default at a particular time. The money owed is always based on the net owed by one party to the other. Hence, the party owing the lesser amount cannot default to the party owing the greater amount. Only the latter can default, and the amount it owes is the net of what it owes and what is owed to it, which is also true with forwards.

Swaps are relatively young financial instruments, having been created only in the early 1980s. Thus, it may be somewhat surprising to learn that the swap is the most widely used derivative, a likely result of its simplicity and embracement by the corporate world. The most common swap is the **fixed-for-floating interest rate swap**. In fact, this type of swap is so common that it is often called a “plain vanilla swap” or just a “vanilla swap,” owing to the notion that vanilla ice cream is considered plain (albeit tasty).

Let us examine a scenario in which the vanilla interest rate swap is frequently used. Suppose a corporation borrows from a bank at a floating rate. It would prefer a fixed rate, which would enable it to better anticipate its cash flow needs in making its interest payments.¹⁰ The corporation can effectively convert its floating-rate loan to a fixed-rate loan by adding a swap, as shown in Exhibit 2.

Exhibit 2 Using an Interest Rate Swap to Convert a Floating-Rate Loan to a Fixed-Rate Loan



¹⁰ Banks prefer to make floating-rate loans because their own funding is typically short term and at floating rates. Thus, their borrowing rates reset frequently, giving them a strong incentive to pass that risk on to their customers through floating-rate loans.

The interest payments on the loan are tied to a specific floating rate. For a dollar-based loan, that rate has typically been US dollar Libor.¹¹ The payments would be based on the rate from the Libor market on a specified reset date times the loan balance times a factor reflecting the number of days in the current interest calculation period. The actual payment is made at a later date. Thus, for a loan balance of, say, \$10 million with monthly payments, the rate might be based on Libor on the first business day of the month, with interest payable on the first business day of the next month, which is the next reset date, and calculated as \$10 million times the rate times 30/360. The 30/360 convention, an implicit assumption of 30 days in a month, is common but only one of many interest calculation conventions used in the financial world. Often, “30” is replaced by the exact number of days since the last interest payment. The use of a 360-day year is a common assumption in the financial world, which originated in the pre-calculator days when an interest rate could be multiplied by a number like 30/360, 60/360, 90/360, etc., more easily than if 365 were used.

Whatever the terms of the loan are, the terms of the swap are typically set to match those of the loan. Thus, a Libor-based loan with monthly payments based on the 30/360 convention would be matched with a swap with monthly payments based on Libor and the 30/360 convention and the same reset and payment dates. Although the loan has an actual balance (the amount owed by borrower to creditor), the swap does not have such a balance owed by one party to the other. Thus, it has no principal, but it does have a balance of sorts, called the **notional principal**, which ordinarily matches the loan balance. A loan with only one principal payment, the final one, will be matched with a swap with a fixed notional principal. An amortizing loan, which has a declining principal balance, will be matched with a swap with a pre-specified declining notional principal that matches the loan balance.

As with futures and forwards, no money changes hands at the start; thus, the value of a swap when initiated must be zero. The fixed rate on the swap is determined by a process that forces the value to zero, a procedure that will be covered later in the curriculum. As market conditions change, the value of a swap will deviate from zero, being positive to one party and negative to the other.

As with forward contracts, swaps are subject to default, but because the notional amount of a swap is not typically exchanged, the credit risk of a swap is much less than that of a loan.¹² The only money passing from one party to the other is the net difference between the fixed and floating interest payments. In fact, the parties do not even pay each other. Only one party pays the other, as determined by the net of the greater amount owed minus the lesser amount. This does not mean that swaps are not subject to a potentially large amount of credit risk. At a given point in time, one party could default, effectively owing the value of all remaining payments, which could substantially exceed the value that the non-defaulting party owes to the defaulting party. Thus, there is indeed credit risk in a swap. This risk must be managed by careful analysis before the transaction and by the potential use of such risk-mitigating measures as collateral.

¹¹ Recall that US dollar Libor (London Interbank Offered Rate) is the estimated rate on a dollar-based loan made by one London bank to another. Such a loan takes the form of a time deposit known as a Eurodollar because it represents a dollar deposited in a European bank account. In fact, Libor is the same as the so-called Eurodollar rate. The banks involved can be British banks or British branches of non-British banks. The banks estimate their borrowing rates, and a single average rate is assembled and reported each day. That rate is then commonly used to set the rate on many derivative contracts.

¹² It is possible that the notional principal will be exchanged in a currency swap, whereby each party makes a series of payments to the other in different currencies. Whether the notional principal is exchanged depends on the purpose of the swap. This point will be covered later in the curriculum. At this time, you should see that it would be fruitless to exchange notional principals in an interest rate swap because that would mean each party would give the other the same amount of money when the transaction is initiated and re-exchange the same amount of money when the contract terminates.

There are also interest rate swaps in which one party pays on the basis of one interest rate and the other party pays on the basis of a different interest rate. For example, one party might make payments at Libor, whereas the other might make payments on the basis of the U. S. Treasury bill rate. The difference between Libor and the T-bill rate, often called the TED spread (T-bills versus Eurodollar), is a measure of the credit risk premium of London banks, which have historically borrowed short term at Libor, versus that of the U. S. government, which borrows short term at the T-bill rate. This transaction is called a basis swap. There are also swaps in which the floating rate is set as an average rate over the period, in accordance with the convention for many loans. Some swaps, called overnight indexed swaps, are tied to a Fed funds–type rate, reflecting the rate at which banks borrow overnight. As we will cover later, there are many other different types of swaps that are used for a variety of purposes. The plain vanilla swap is merely the simplest and most widely used.

Because swaps, forwards, and futures are forward commitments, they can all accomplish the same thing. One could create a series of forwards or futures expiring at a set of dates that would serve the same purpose as a swap. Although swaps are better suited for risks that involve multiple payments, at its most fundamental level, a swap is more or less just a series of forwards and, acknowledging the slight differences discussed above, more or less just a series of futures.

EXAMPLE 3

Forward Contracts, Futures Contracts, and Swaps

- 1 Which of the following characterizes forward contracts and swaps but **not** futures?
 - A They are customized.
 - B They are subject to daily price limits.
 - C Their payoffs are received on a daily basis.
- 2 Which of the following distinguishes forwards from swaps?
 - A Forwards are OTC instruments, whereas swaps are exchange traded.
 - B Forwards are regulated as futures, whereas swaps are regulated as securities.
 - C Swaps have multiple payments, whereas forwards have only a single payment.
- 3 Which of the following occurs in the daily settlement of futures contracts?
 - A Initial margin deposits are refunded to the two parties.
 - B Gains and losses are reported to other market participants.
 - C Losses are charged to one party and gains credited to the other.

Solution to 1:

A is correct. Forwards and swaps are OTC contracts and, therefore, are customized. Futures are exchange traded and, therefore, are standardized. Some futures contracts are subject to daily price limits and their payoffs are received daily, but these characteristics are not true for forwards and swaps.

Solution to 2:

C is correct. Forwards and swaps are OTC instruments and both are regulated as such. Neither is regulated as a futures contract or a security. A swap is a series of multiple payments at scheduled dates, whereas a forward has only one payment, made at its expiration date.

Solution to 3:

C is correct. Losses and gains are collected and distributed to the respective parties. There is no specific reporting of these gains and losses to anyone else. Initial margin deposits are not refunded and, in fact, additional deposits may be required.

This material completes our introduction to forward commitments. All forward commitments are firm contracts. The parties are required to fulfill the obligations they agreed to. The benefit of this rigidity is that neither party pays anything to the other when the contract is initiated. If one party needs some flexibility, however, it can get it by agreeing to pay the other party some money when the contract is initiated. When the contract expires, the party who paid at the start has some flexibility in deciding whether to buy the underlying asset at the fixed price. Thus, that party did not actually agree to do anything. It had a choice. This is the nature of contingent claims.

4.2 Contingent Claims

A **contingent claim** is a derivative in which the outcome or payoff is dependent on the outcome or payoff of an underlying asset. Although this characteristic is also associated with forward commitments, a contingent claim has come to be associated with a *right*, but not an *obligation*, to make a final payment contingent on the performance of the underlying. Given that the holder of the contingent claim has a choice, the term *contingent claim* has become synonymous with the term *option*. The holder has a choice of whether or not to exercise the option. This choice creates a payoff that transforms the underlying payoff in a more pronounced manner than does a forward, futures, or swap. Those instruments provide linear payoffs: As the underlying goes up (down), the derivative gains (loses). The further up (down) the underlying goes, the more the derivative gains (loses). Options are different in that they limit losses in one direction. In addition, options can pay off as the underlying goes down. Hence, they transform the payoffs of the underlying into something quite different.

4.2.1 Options

We might say that an option, as a contingent claim, grants the right but not the obligation to buy an asset at a later date and at a price agreed on when the option is initiated. But there are so many variations of options that we cannot settle on this statement as a good formal definition. For one thing, options can also grant the right to sell instead of the right to buy. Moreover, they can grant the right to buy or sell earlier than at expiration. So, let us see whether we can combine these points into an all-encompassing definition of an option.

An option is a derivative contract in which one party, the buyer, pays a sum of money to the other party, the seller or writer, and receives the right to either buy or sell an underlying asset at a fixed price either on a specific expiration date or at any time prior to the expiration date.

Unfortunately, even that definition does not cover every unique aspect of options. For example, options can be created in the OTC market and customized to the terms of each party, or they can be created and traded on options exchanges and standardized. As with forward contracts and swaps, customized options are subject to default, are less regulated, and are less transparent than exchange-traded derivatives. Exchange-traded options are protected against default by the clearinghouse of the options exchange and are relatively transparent and regulated at the national level. As noted in the definition above, options can be terminated early or at their expirations. When

an option is terminated, either early or at expiration, the holder of the option chooses whether to exercise it. If he exercises it, he either buys or sells the underlying asset, but he does not have both rights. The right to buy is one type of option, referred to as a **call** or **call option**, whereas the right to sell is another type of option, referred to as a **put** or **put option**. With one very unusual and advanced exception that we do not cover, an option is either a call or a put, and that point is made clear in the contract.

An option is also designated as exercisable early (before expiration) or only at expiration. Options that can be exercised early are referred to as **American-style**. Options that can be exercised only at expiration are referred to as **European-style**. *It is extremely important that you do not associate these terms with where these options are traded.* Both types of options trade on all continents.¹³

As with forwards and futures, an option can be exercised by physical delivery or cash settlement, as written in the contract. For a call option with physical delivery, upon exercise the underlying asset is delivered to the call buyer, who pays the call seller the exercise price. For a put option with physical delivery, upon exercise the put buyer delivers the underlying asset to the put seller and receives the strike price. For a cash settlement option, exercise results in the seller paying the buyer the cash equivalent value as if the asset were delivered and paid for.

The fixed price at which the underlying asset can be purchased is called the **exercise price** (also called the “strike price,” the “strike,” or the “striking price”). This price is somewhat analogous to the forward price because it represents the price at which the underlying will be purchased or sold if the option is exercised. The forward price, however, is set in the pricing of the contract such that the contract value at the start is zero. The strike price of the option is chosen by the participants. The actual price or value of the option is an altogether different concept.

As noted, the buyer pays the writer a sum of money called the **option premium**, or just the “premium.” It represents a fair price of the option, and in a well-functioning market, it would be the value of the option. Consistent with everything we know about finance, it is the present value of the cash flows that are expected to be received by the holder of the option during the life of the option. At this point, we will not get into how this price is determined, but you will learn that later. For now, there are some fundamental concepts you need to understand, which form a basis for understanding how options are priced and why anyone would use an option.

Because the option buyer (the long) does not have to exercise the option, beyond the initial payment of the premium, there is no obligation of the long to the short. Thus, only the short can default, which would occur if the long exercises the option and the short fails to do what it is supposed to do. Thus, in contrast to forwards and swaps, in which either party could default to the other, default in options is possible only from the short to the long.

Ruling out the possibility of default for now, let us examine what happens when an option expires. Using the same notation used previously, let S_T be the price of the underlying at the expiration date, T , and X be the exercise price of the option. Remember that a call option allows the holder, or long, to pay X and receive the underlying. It should be obvious that the long would exercise the option at expiration if S_T is greater than X , meaning that the underlying value is greater than what he would pay to obtain the underlying. Otherwise, he would simply let the option expire. Thus, on the expiration date, the option is described as having a payoff of $Max(0, S_T - X)$. Because the holder of the option would be entitled to exercise it and claim this amount, it also represents the value of the option at expiration. Let us denote that value as c_T . Thus,

¹³ If you dig deeper into the world of options, you will find Asian options and Bermuda options. Geography is a common source of names for options as well as foods and in no way implies that the option or the food is available only in that geographical location.

$$c_T = \text{Max}(0, S_T - X) \quad (\text{payoff to the call buyer}),$$

which is read as “take the maximum of either zero or $S_T - X$.” Thus, if the underlying value exceeds the exercise price ($S_T > X$), then the option value is positive and equal to $S_T - X$. The call option is then said to be **in the money**. If the underlying value is less than the exercise price ($S_T < X$), then $S_T - X$ is negative; zero is greater than a negative number, so the option value would be zero. When the underlying value is less than the exercise price, the call option is said to be **out of the money**. When $S_T = X$, the call option is said to be **at the money**, although at the money is, for all practical purposes, out of the money because the value is still zero.

This payoff amount is also the value of the option at expiration. It represents value because it is what the option is worth at that point. If the holder of the option sells it to someone else an instant before expiration, it should sell for that amount because the new owner would exercise it and capture that amount. To the seller, the value of the option at that point is $-\text{Max}(0, S_T - X)$, which is negative to the seller if the option is in the money and zero otherwise.

Using the payoff value and the price paid for the option, we can determine the profit from the strategy, which is denoted with the Greek symbol Π . Let us say the buyer paid c_0 for the option at time 0. Then the profit is

$$\Pi = \text{Max}(0, S_T - X) - c_0 \quad (\text{profit to the call buyer}),$$

To the seller, who received the premium at the start, the payoff is

$$-c_T = -\text{Max}(0, S_T - X) \quad (\text{payoff to the call seller}),$$

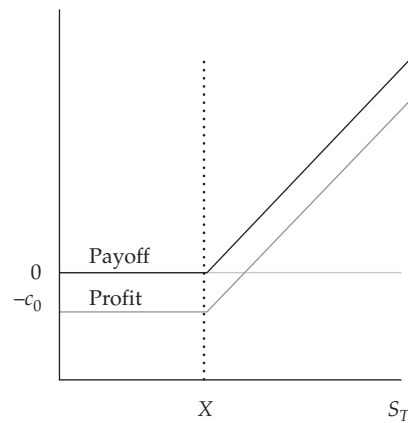
The profit is

$$\Pi = -\text{Max}(0, S_T - X) + c_0 \quad (\text{profit to the call seller}),$$

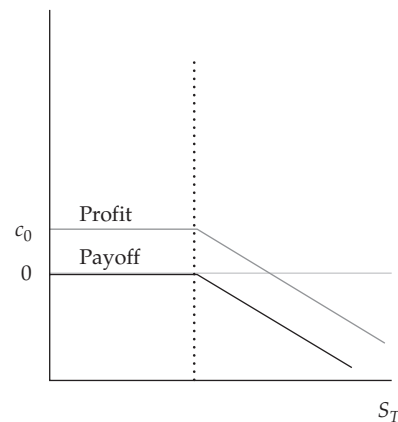
Exhibit 3 illustrates the payoffs and profits to the call buyer and seller as graphical representations of these equations, with the payoff or value at expiration indicated by the dark line and the profit indicated by the light line. Note in Panel A that the buyer has no upper limit on the profit and has a fixed downside loss limit equal to the premium paid for the option. Such a condition, with limited loss and unlimited gain, is a temptation to many unsuspecting investors, but keep in mind that the graph does not indicate the frequency with which gains and losses will occur. Panel B is the mirror image of Panel A and shows that the seller has unlimited losses and limited gains. One might suspect that selling a call is, therefore, the worst investment strategy possible. Indeed, it is a risky strategy, but at this point these are only simple strategies. Other strategies can be added to mitigate the seller’s risk to a substantial degree.

Exhibit 3 Payoff and Profit from a Call Option
A. Payoff and Profit from Buying

Payoff and Profit


B. Payoff and Profit from Selling

Payoff and Profit



Now let us consider put options. Recall that a put option allows its holder to sell the underlying asset at the exercise price. Thus, the holder should exercise the put at expiration if the underlying asset is worth less than the exercise price ($S_T < X$). In that case, the put is said to be in the money. If the underlying asset is worth the same as the exercise price ($S_T = X$), meaning the put is at the money, or more than the exercise price ($S_T > X$), meaning the put is out of the money, the option holder would not exercise it and it would expire with zero value. Thus, the payoff to the put holder is

$$p_T = \text{Max}(0, X - S_T) \quad (\text{payoff to the put buyer}),$$

If the put buyer paid p_0 for the put at time 0, the profit is

$$\Pi = \text{Max}(0, X - S_T) - p_0 \quad (\text{profit to the put buyer}),$$

And for the seller, the payoff is

$$-p_T = -\text{Max}(0, X - S_T) \quad (\text{payoff to the put seller}),$$

And the profit is

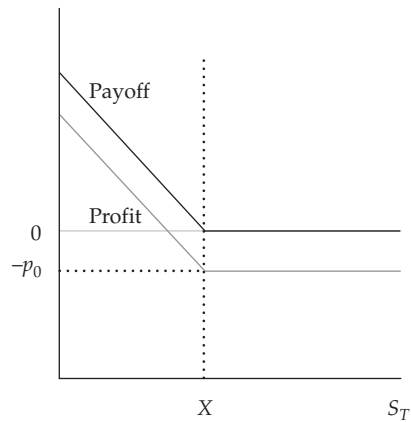
$$\Pi = -\text{Max}(0, X - S_T) + p_0 \quad (\text{profit to the put seller}),$$

Exhibit 4 illustrates the payoffs and profits to the buyer and seller of a put.

Exhibit 4 Payoff and Profit from a Put Option

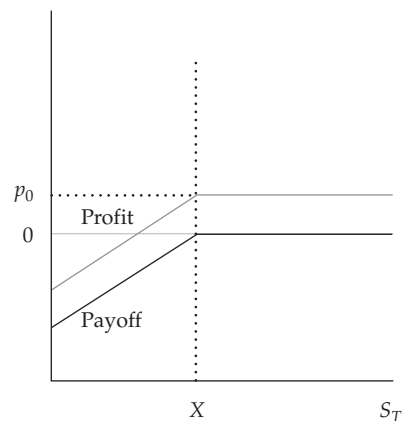
A. Payoff and Profit from Buying

Payoff and Profit



B. Payoff and Profit from Selling

Payoff and Profit



The put buyer has a limited loss, and although the gain is limited by the fact that the underlying value cannot go below zero, the put buyer does gain more the lower the value of the underlying. In this manner, we see how a put option is like insurance. Bad outcomes for the underlying trigger a payoff for both the insurance policy and the put, whereas good outcomes result only in loss of the premium. The put seller, like the insurer, has a limited gain and a loss that is larger the lower the value of the underlying. As with call options, these graphs must be considered carefully because they do not indicate the frequency with which gains and losses will occur. At this point, it should be apparent that buying a call option is consistent with a bullish point of view and buying a put option is consistent with a bearish point of view. Moreover, in contrast to forward commitments, which have payoffs that are linearly related to the payoffs of the underlying (note the straight lines in Exhibit 1), contingent claims have payoffs that are non-linear in relation to the underlying. There is linearity over a range—say, from 0 to X or from X upward or downward—but over the entire range of values for the underlying, the payoffs of contingent claims cannot be depicted with a single straight line.

We have seen only a snapshot of the payoff and profit graphs that can be created with options. Calls can be combined with puts, the underlying asset, and other calls or puts with different expirations and exercise prices to create a diverse set of payoff and profit graphs, some of which are covered later in the curriculum.

Before leaving options, let us again contrast the differences between options and forward commitments. With forward commitments, the parties agree to trade an underlying asset at a later date and at a price agreed upon when the contract is initiated. Neither party pays any cash to the other at the start. With options, the buyer pays cash to the seller at the start and receives the right, but not the obligation, to buy (if a call) or sell (if a put) the underlying asset at expiration at a price agreed upon (the exercise price) when the contract is initiated. In contrast to forwards, futures, and swaps, options do have value at the start: the premium paid by buyer to seller. That premium pays for the *right*, eliminating the *obligation*, to trade the underlying at a later date, as would be the case with a forward commitment.

Although there are numerous variations of options, most have the same essential features described here. There is, however, a distinctive family of contingent claims that emerged in the early 1990s and became widely used and, in some cases, heavily criticized. These instruments are known as credit derivatives.

4.2.2 Credit Derivatives

Credit risk is surely one of the oldest risks known to mankind. Human beings have been lending things to each other for thousands of years, and even the most primitive human beings must have recognized the risk of lending some of their possessions to their comrades. Until the last 20 years or so, however, the management of credit risk was restricted to simply doing the best analysis possible before making a loan, monitoring the financial condition of the borrower during the loan, limiting the exposure to a given party, and requiring collateral. Some modest forms of insurance against credit risk have existed for a number of years, but insurance can be a slow and cumbersome way of protecting against credit loss. Insurance is typically highly regulated, and insurance laws are usually very consumer oriented. Thus, credit insurance as a financial product has met with only modest success.

In the early 1990s, however, the development of the swaps market led to the creation of derivatives that would hedge credit risk. These instruments came to be known as **credit derivatives**, and they avoided many of the regulatory constraints of the traditional insurance industry. Here is a formal definition:

A credit derivative is a class of derivative contracts between two parties, a credit protection buyer and a credit protection seller, in which the latter provides protection to the former against a specific credit loss.

One of the first credit derivatives was a **total return swap**, in which the underlying is typically a bond or loan, in contrast to, say, a stock or stock index. The credit protection buyer offers to pay the credit protection seller the total return on the underlying bond. This total return consists of all interest and principal paid by the borrower plus any changes in the bond's market value. In return, the credit protection seller typically pays the credit protection buyer either a fixed or a floating rate of interest. Thus, if the bond defaults, the credit protection seller must continue to make its promised payments, while receiving a very small return or virtually no return from the credit protection buyer. If the bond incurs a loss, as it surely will if it defaults, the credit protection seller effectively pays the credit protection buyer.

Another type of credit derivative is the **credit spread option**, in which the underlying is the credit (yield) spread on a bond, which is the difference between the bond's yield and the yield on a benchmark default-free bond. As you will learn in the fixed-income material, the credit spread is a reflection of investors' perception of credit risk. Because a credit spread option requires a credit spread as the underlying, this type of

derivative works only with a traded bond that has a quoted price. The credit protection buyer selects the strike spread it desires and pays the option premium to the credit protection seller. At expiration, the parties determine whether the option is in the money by comparing the bond's yield spread with the strike chosen, and if it is, the credit protection seller pays the credit protection buyer the established payoff. Thus, this instrument is essentially a call option in which the underlying is the credit spread.

A third type of credit derivative is the **credit-linked note (CLN)**. With this derivative, the credit protection buyer holds a bond or loan that is subject to default risk (the underlying reference security) and issues its own security (the credit-linked note) with the condition that if the bond or loan it holds defaults, the principal payoff on the credit-linked note is reduced accordingly. Thus, the buyer of the credit-linked note effectively insures the credit risk of the underlying reference security.

These three types of credit derivatives have had limited success compared with the fourth type of credit derivative, the **credit default swap (CDS)**. The credit default swap, in particular, has achieved much success by capturing many of the essential features of insurance while avoiding the high degree of consumer regulations that are typically associated with traditional insurance products.

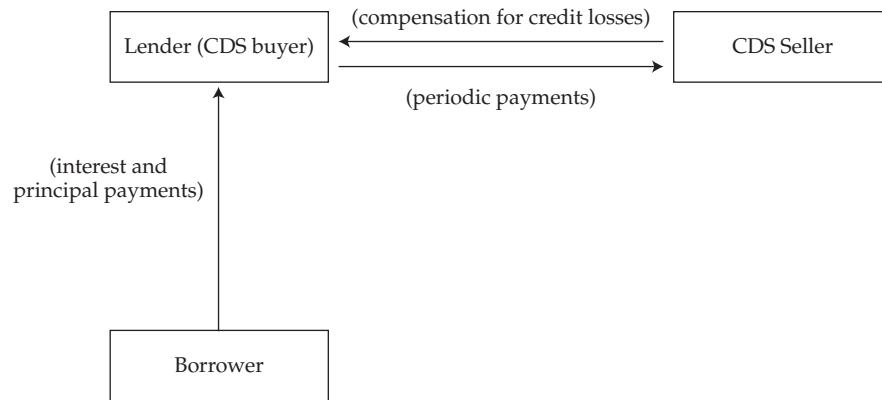
In a CDS, one party—the credit protection buyer, who is seeking credit protection against a third party—makes a series of regularly scheduled payments to the other party, the credit protection seller. The seller makes no payments until a credit event occurs. A declaration of bankruptcy is clearly a credit event, but there are other types of credit events, such as a failure to make a scheduled payment or an involuntary restructuring. The CDS contract specifies what constitutes a credit event, and the industry has a procedure for declaring credit events, though that does not guarantee the parties will not end up in court arguing over whether something was or was not a credit event.

Formally, a credit default swap is defined as follows:

A credit default swap is a derivative contract between two parties, a credit protection buyer and a credit protection seller, in which the buyer makes a series of cash payments to the seller and receives a promise of compensation for credit losses resulting from the default of a third party.

A CDS is conceptually a form of insurance. Sellers of CDSs, oftentimes banks or insurance companies, collect periodic payments and are required to pay out if a loss occurs from the default of a third party. These payouts could take the form of restitution of the defaulted amount or the party holding the defaulting asset could turn it over to the CDS seller and receive a fixed amount. The most common approach is for the payout to be determined by an auction to estimate the market value of the defaulting debt. Thus, CDSs effectively provide coverage against a loss in return for the protection buyer paying a premium to the protection seller, thereby taking the form of insurance against credit loss. Although insurance contracts have certain legal characteristics that are not found in credit default swaps, the two instruments serve similar purposes and operate in virtually the same way: payments made by one party in return for a promise to cover losses incurred by the other.

Exhibit 5 illustrates the typical use of a CDS by a lender. The lender is exposed to the risk of non-payment of principal and interest. The lender lays off this risk by purchasing a CDS from a CDS seller. The lender—now the CDS buyer—promises to make a series of periodic payments to the CDS seller, who then stands ready to compensate the CDS buyer for credit losses.

Exhibit 5 Using a Credit Default Swap to Hedge the Credit Risk of a Loan

Clearly, the CDS seller is betting on the borrower's not defaulting or—more generally, as insurance companies operate—that the total payouts it is responsible for are less than the total payments collected. Of course, most insurance companies are able to do this by having reliable actuarial statistics, diversifying their risk, and selling some of the risk to other insurance companies. Actuarial statistics are typically quite solid. Average claims for life, health, and casualty insurance are well documented, and insurers can normally set premiums to cover losses and operate at a reasonable profit. Although insurance companies try to manage some of their risks at the micro level (e.g., charging smokers more for life and health insurance), most of their risk management is at the macro level, wherein they attempt to make sure their risks are not concentrated. Thus, they avoid selling too much homeowners insurance to individuals in tornado-prone areas. If they have such an exposure, they can use the reinsurance market to sell some of the risk to other companies that are not overexposed to that risk. Insurance companies attempt to diversify their risks and rely on the principle of uncorrelated risks, which plays such an important role in portfolio management. A well-diversified insurance company, like a well-diversified portfolio, should be able to earn a return commensurate with its assumed risk in the long run.

Credit default swaps should operate the same way. Sellers of CDSs should recognize when their credit risk is too concentrated. When that happens, they become buyers of CDSs from other parties or find other ways to lay off the risk. Unfortunately, during the financial crisis that began in 2007, many sellers of CDSs failed to recognize the high correlations among borrowers whose debt they had guaranteed. One well-known CDS seller, AIG, is a large and highly successful traditional insurance company that got into the business of selling CDSs. Many of these CDSs insured against mortgages. With the growth of the subprime mortgage market, many of these CDS-insured mortgages had a substantial amount of credit risk and were often poorly documented. AIG and many other CDS sellers were thus highly exposed to systemic credit contagion, a situation in which defaults in one area of an economy ripple into another, accompanied by bank weaknesses and failures, rapidly falling equity markets, rising credit risk premiums, and a general loss of confidence in the financial system and the economy. These presumably well-diversified risks guaranteed by CDS sellers, operating as though they were insurance companies, ultimately proved to be poorly diversified. Systemic financial risks can spread more rapidly than fire, health, and casualty risks. Virtually no other risks, except those originating from wars or epidemics, spread in the manner of systemic financial risks.

Thus, to understand and appreciate the importance of the CDS market, it is necessary to recognize how that market can fail. The ability to separate and trade risks is a valuable one. Banks can continue to make loans to their customers, thereby satisfying

the customers' needs, while laying off the risk elsewhere. In short, parties not wanting to bear certain risks can sell them to parties wanting to assume certain risks. If all parties do their jobs correctly, the markets and the economy work more efficiently. If, as in the case of certain CDS sellers, not everyone does a good job of managing risk, there can be serious repercussions. In the case of AIG and some other companies, taxpayer bailouts were the ultimate price paid to keep these large institutions afloat so that they could continue to provide their other critical services to consumers. The rules proposed in the new OTC derivatives market regulations—which call for greater regulation and transparency of OTC derivatives and, in particular, CDSs—have important implications for the future of this market and these instruments.

EXAMPLE 4

Options and Credit Derivatives

- 1 An option provides which of the following?
 - A Either the right to buy or the right to sell an underlying
 - B The right to buy and sell, with the choice made at expiration
 - C The obligation to buy or sell, which can be converted into the right to buy or sell
- 2 Which of the following is **not** a characteristic of a call option on a stock?
 - A A guarantee that the stock will increase
 - B A specified date on which the right to buy expires
 - C A fixed price at which the call holder can buy the stock
- 3 A credit derivative is which of the following?
 - A A derivative in which the premium is obtained on credit
 - B A derivative in which the payoff is borrowed by the seller
 - C A derivative in which the seller provides protection to the buyer against credit loss from a third party

Solution to 1:

A is correct. An option is strictly the right to buy (a call) or the right to sell (a put). It does not provide both choices or the right to convert an obligation into a right.

Solution to 2:

A is correct. A call option on a stock provides no guarantee of any change in the stock price. It has an expiration date, and it provides for a fixed price at which the holder can exercise the option, thereby purchasing the stock.

Solution to 3:

C is correct. Credit derivatives provide a guarantee against loss caused by a third party's default. They do not involve borrowing the premium or the payoff.

4.2.3 Asset-Backed Securities

Although these instruments are covered in more detail in the fixed-income material, we would be remiss if we failed to include them with derivatives. But we will give them only light coverage here.

As discussed earlier, derivatives take (derive) their value from the value of the underlying, as do mutual funds and exchange-traded funds (ETFs). A mutual fund or an ETF holding bonds is virtually identical to the investor holding the bonds directly. Asset-backed securities (ABSs) take this concept a step further by altering the payment streams. ABSs typically divide the payments into slices, called tranches, in which the priority of claims has been changed from equivalent to preferential. For example, in a bond mutual fund or an ETF, all investors in the fund have equal claims, and so the rate of return earned by each investor is exactly the same. If a portfolio of the same bonds were assembled into an ABS, some investors in the ABS would have claims that would supersede those of other investors. The differential nature of these claims becomes relevant when either prepayments or defaults occur.

Prepayments mostly affect only mortgages. When a portfolio of mortgages is assembled into an ABS, the resulting instrument is called a **collateralized mortgage obligation** (CMO). Commonly but not always, the credit risk has been reduced or eliminated, perhaps by a CDS, as discussed earlier. When homeowners pay off their mortgages early due to refinancing at lower rates, the holders of the mortgages suffer losses. They expected to receive a stream of returns that is now terminated. The funds that were previously earning a particular rate will now have to be invested to earn a lower rate. These losses are the mirror images of the gains homeowners make when they proudly proclaim that they refinanced their mortgages and substantially lowered their payments.

CMOs partition the claims against these mortgages into different tranches, which are typically called A, B, and C. Class C tranches bear the first wave of prepayments until that tranche has been completely repaid its full principal investment. At that point, the Class B tranche holders bear the next prepayments until they have been fully repaid. The Class A tranche holders then bear the next wave of prepayments.¹⁴ Thus, the risk faced by the various tranche holders is different from that of a mutual fund or ETF, which would pass the returns directly through such that investors would all receive the same rates of return. Therefore, the expected returns of CMO tranches vary and are commensurate with the prepayment risk they assume. Some CMOs are also characterized by credit risk, perhaps a substantial amount, from subprime mortgages.

When bonds or loans are assembled into ABSs, they are typically called **collateralized bond obligations** (CBOs) or **collateralized loan obligations** (CLOs). These instruments (known collectively as **collateralized debt obligations**, or CDOs) do not traditionally have much prepayment risk but they do have credit risk and oftentimes a great deal of it. The CDO structure allocates this risk to tranches that are called senior, mezzanine, or junior tranches (the last sometimes called equity tranches). When defaults occur, the junior tranches bear the risk first, followed by the mezzanine tranches, and then the senior tranches. The expected returns of the tranches vary according to the perceived credit risk, with the senior tranches having the highest credit quality and the junior the lowest. Thus, the senior tranches have the lowest expected returns and the junior tranches have the highest.

An asset-backed security is formally defined as follows:

An asset-backed security is a derivative contract in which a portfolio of debt instruments is assembled and claims are issued on the portfolio in the form of tranches, which have different priorities of claims on the payments made by the debt securities such that prepayments or credit losses are allocated to the most-junior tranches first and the most-senior tranches last.

¹⁴ The reference to only three tranches is just a general statement. There are many more types of tranches. Our discussion of the three classes is for illustrative purposes only and serves to emphasize that there are high-priority claims, low-priority claims, and other claims somewhere in the middle.

ABSs seem to have only an indirect and subtle resemblance to options, but they are indeed options. They promise to make a series of returns that are typically steady. These returns can be lowered if prepayments or defaults occur. Thus, they are contingent on prepayments and defaults. Take a look again at Exhibit 4, Panel B (the profit and payoff of a short put option). If all goes well, there is a fixed return. If something goes badly, the return can be lowered, and the worse the outcome, the lower the return. Thus, holders of ABSs have effectively written put options.

This completes the discussion of contingent claims. Having now covered forward commitments and contingent claims, the final category of derivative instruments is more or less just a catch-all category in case something was missed.

4.3 Hybrids

The instruments just covered encompass all the fundamental instruments that exist in the derivatives world. Yet, the derivatives world is truly much larger than implied by what has been covered here. We have not covered and will touch only lightly on the many hybrid instruments that combine derivatives, fixed-income securities, currencies, equities, and commodities. For example, options can be combined with bonds to form either callable bonds or convertible bonds. Swaps can be combined with options to form swap payments that have upper and lower limits. Options can be combined with futures to obtain options on futures. Options can be created with swaps as the underlying to form swaptions. Some of these instruments will be covered later. For now, you should just recognize that the possibilities are almost endless.

We will not address these hybrids directly, but some are covered elsewhere in the curriculum. The purpose of discussing them here is for you to realize that derivatives create possibilities not otherwise available in their absence. This point will lead to a better understanding of why derivatives exist, a topic we will get to very shortly.

EXAMPLE 5

Forward Commitments versus Contingent Claims

- 1 Which of the following is **not** a forward commitment?
 - A An agreement to take out a loan at a future date at a specific rate
 - B An offer of employment that must be accepted or rejected in two weeks
 - C An agreement to lease a piece of machinery for one year with a series of fixed monthly payments
- 2 Which of the following statements is true about contingent claims?
 - A Either party can default to the other.
 - B The payoffs are linearly related to the performance of the underlying.
 - C The most the long can lose is the amount paid for the contingent claim.

Solution to 1:

B is correct. Both A and C are commitments to engage in transactions at future dates. In fact, C is like a swap because the party agrees to make a series of future payments and in return receives temporary use of an asset whose value could vary. B is a contingent claim. The party receiving the employment offer can accept it or reject it if there is a better alternative.

Solution to 2:

C is correct. The maximum loss to the long is the premium. The payoffs of contingent claims are not linearly related to the underlying, and only one party, the short, can default.

4.4 Derivatives Underlyings

Before discussing the purposes and benefits of derivatives, we need to clarify some points that have been implied so far. We have alluded to certain underlying assets, this section will briefly discuss the underlyings more directly.

4.4.1 Equities

Equities are one of the most popular categories of underlyings on which derivatives are created. There are two types of equities on which derivatives exist: individual stocks and stock indexes. Derivatives on individual stocks are primarily options. Forwards, futures, and swaps on individual stocks are not widely used. Index derivatives in the form of options, forwards, futures, and swaps are very popular. Index swaps, more often called equity swaps, are quite popular and permit investors to pay the return on one stock index and receive the return on another index or a fixed rate. They can be very useful in asset allocation strategies by allowing an equity manager to increase or reduce exposure to an equity market or sector without trading the individual securities.

In addition, options on stocks are frequently used by companies as compensation and incentives for their executives and employees. These options are granted to provide incentives to work toward driving the stock price up and can result in companies paying lower cash compensation.¹⁵ Some companies also issue warrants, which are options sold to the public that allow the holders to exercise them and buy shares directly from the companies.¹⁶

4.4.2 Fixed-Income Instruments and Interest Rates

Options, forwards, futures, and swaps on bonds are widely used. The problem with creating derivatives on bonds, however, is that there are almost always many issues of bonds. A single issuer, whether it is a government or a private borrower, often has more than one bond issue outstanding. For futures contracts, with their standardization requirements, this problem is particularly challenging. What does it mean to say that a futures contract is on a German bund, a US Treasury note, or a UK gilt? The most common solution to this problem is to allow multiple issues to be delivered on a single futures contract. This feature adds some interesting twists to the pricing and trading strategies of these instruments.

Until now, we have referred to the underlying as an *asset*. Yet, one of the largest derivative underlyings is not an asset. It is simply an interest rate. An interest rate is not an asset. One cannot hold an interest rate or place it on a balance sheet as an asset. Although one can hold an instrument that pays an interest rate, the rate itself is not

¹⁵ Unfortunately, the industry has created some confusion with the terminology of these instruments. They are often referred to as *stock options*, and yet ordinary publicly traded options not granted to employees are sometimes referred to as stock options. The latter are also sometimes called *equity options*, whereas employee-granted options are almost never referred to as equity options. If the terms *executive stock options* and *employee stock options* were always used, there would be no problem. You should be aware of and careful about this confusion.

¹⁶ A warrant is a type of option, similar to the employee stock option, written by the company on its own stock, in contrast to exchange-traded and OTC options, in which the company is not a party to the option contract. Also note that, unfortunately, the financial world uses the term *warrant* to refer to a number of other option-like instruments. Like a lot of words that have multiple meanings, one must understand the context to avoid confusion.

an asset. But there are derivatives in which the rate, not the instrument that pays the rate, is the underlying. In fact, we have already covered one of these derivatives: The plain vanilla interest rate swap in which Libor is the underlying.¹⁷ Instead of a swap, an interest rate derivative could be an option. For example, a call option on 90-day Libor with a strike of 5% would pay off if at expiration Libor exceeds 5%. If Libor is below 5%, the option simply expires unexercised.

Interest rate derivatives are the most widely used derivatives. With that in mind, we will be careful in using the expression *underlying asset* and will use the more generic *underlying*.

4.4.3 Currencies

Currency risk is a major factor in global financial markets, and the currency derivatives market is extremely large. Options, forwards, futures, and swaps are widely used. Currency derivatives can be complex, sometimes combining elements of other underlyings. For example, a currency swap involves two parties making a series of interest rate payments to each other in different currencies. Because interest rates and currencies are both subject to change, a currency swap has two sources of risk. Although this instrument may sound extremely complicated, it merely reflects the fact that companies operating across borders are subject to both interest rate risk and currency risk and currency swaps are commonly used to manage those risks.

4.4.4 Commodities

Commodities are resources, such as food, oil, and metals, that humans use to sustain life and support economic activity. Because of the economic principle of comparative advantage, countries often specialize in the production of certain resources. Thus, the commodities market is extremely large and subject to an almost unimaginable array of risks. One need only observe how the price of oil moves up as tension builds in the Middle East or how the price of orange juice rises on a forecast of cold weather in Florida.

Commodity derivatives are widely used to speculate in and manage the risk associated with commodity price movements. The primary commodity derivatives are futures, but forwards, swaps, and options are also used. The reason that futures are in the lead in the world of commodities is simply history. The first futures markets were futures on commodities. The first futures exchange, the Chicago Board of Trade, was created in 1848, and until the creation of currency futures in 1972, there were no futures on any underlying except commodities.

There has been a tendency to think of the commodities world as somewhat separate from the financial world. Commodity traders and financial traders were quite different groups. Since the creation of financial futures, however, commodity and financial traders have become relatively homogeneous. Moreover, commodities are increasingly viewed as an important asset class that should be included in investment strategies because of their ability to help diversify portfolios.

4.4.5 Credit

As we previously discussed, credit is another underlying and quite obviously not an asset. Credit default swaps (CDSs) and collateralized debt obligations (CDOs) were discussed extensively in an earlier section. These instruments have clearly established that credit is a distinct underlying that has widespread interest from a trading and risk management perspective. In addition, to the credit of a single entity, credit derivatives

¹⁷ As you will see later, there are also futures in which the underlying is an interest rate (Eurodollar futures) and forwards in which the underlying is an interest rate (forward rate agreements, or FRAs).

are created on multiple entities. CDOs themselves are credit derivatives on portfolios of credit risks. In recent years, indexes of CDOs have been created, and instruments based on the payoffs of these CDO indexes are widely traded.

4.4.6 Other

This category is included here to capture some of the really unusual underlyings. One in particular is weather. Although weather is hardly an asset, it is certainly a major force in how some entities perform. For example, a ski resort needs snow, farmers need an adequate but not excessive amount of rain, and public utilities experience strains on their capacity during temperature extremes. Derivatives exist in which the payoffs are measured as snowfall, rainfall, and temperature. Although these derivatives have not been widely used—because of some complexities in pricing, among other things—they continue to exist and may still have a future. In addition, there are derivatives on electricity, which is also not an asset. It cannot be held in the traditional sense because it is created and consumed almost instantaneously. Another unusual type of derivative is based on disasters in the form of insurance claims.

Financial institutions will continue to create derivatives on all types of risks and exposures. Most of these derivatives will fail because of little trading interest, but a few will succeed. If that speaks badly of derivatives, it must be remembered that most small businesses fail, most creative ideas fail, and most people who try to become professional entertainers or athletes fail. It is the sign of a healthy and competitive system that only the very best survive.

THE SIZE OF THE DERIVATIVES MARKET

In case anyone thinks that the derivatives market is not large enough to justify studying, we should consider how big the market is. Unfortunately, gauging the size of the derivatives market is not a simple task. OTC derivatives contracts are private transactions. No reporting agency gathers data, and market size is not measured in traditional volume-based metrics, such as shares traded in the stock market. Complicating things further is the fact that derivatives underlyings include equities, fixed-income securities, interest rates, currencies, commodities, and a variety of other underlyings. All these underlyings have their own units of measurement. Hence, measuring how “big” the underlying derivatives markets are is like trying to measure how much fruit consumers purchase; the proverbial mixing of apples, oranges, bananas, and all other fruits.

The exchange-listed derivatives market reports its size in terms of volume, meaning the number of contracts traded. Exchange-listed volume, however, is an inconsistent number. For example, US Treasury bond futures contracts trade in units covering \$100,000 face value. Eurodollar futures contracts trade in units covering \$1,000,000 face value. Crude oil trades in 1,000-barrel (42 gallons each) units. Yet, one traded contract of each gets equal weighting in volume totals.

The March–April issue of the magazine *Futures Industry* (available to subscribers) reports the annual volume of the entire global futures and options industry. For 2011, that volume was more than 25 billion contracts.

OTC volume is even more difficult to measure. There is no count of the number of contracts that trade. In fact, *volume* is an almost meaningless concept in OTC markets because any notion of volume requires a standardized size. If a customer goes to a swaps dealer and enters into a swap to hedge a \$50 million loan, there is no measure of how much volume that transaction generated. The \$50 million swap’s notional principal, however, does provide a measure to some extent. Forwards, swaps, and OTC options all have notional principals, so they can be measured in that manner. Another measure of the size of the derivatives market is the market value of these contracts. As noted, forwards and swaps start with zero market value, but their market value changes as market conditions change. Options do not start with zero market value and almost always have a positive market value until expiration, when some options expire out of the money.

The OTC industry has taken both of these concepts—notional principal and market value—as measures of the size of the market. Notional principal is probably a more accurate measure. The amount of a contract's notional principal is unambiguous: It is written into the contract and the two parties cannot disagree over it. Yet, notional principal terribly overstates the amount of money actually at risk. For example, a \$50 million notional principal swap will have nowhere near \$50 million at risk. The payments on such a swap are merely the net of two opposite series of interest payments on \$50 million. The market value of such a swap is the present value of one stream of payments minus the present value of the other. This market value figure will always be well below the notional principal. Thus, market value seems like a better measure except that, unlike notional principal, it is not unambiguous. Market value requires measurement, and two parties can disagree on the market value of the same transaction.

Notional principal and market value estimates for the global OTC derivatives market are collected semi-annually by the Bank for International Settlements of Basel, Switzerland, and published on its website (<http://www.bis.org/statistics/derstats.htm>). At the end of 2011, notional principal was more than \$600 trillion and market value was about \$27 trillion. A figure of \$600 trillion is an almost unfathomable number and, as noted, is a misleading measure of the amount of money at risk.¹⁸ The market value figure of \$27 trillion is a much more realistic measure, but as noted, it is less accurate, relying on estimates provided by banks.

Hence, the exchange-listed and OTC markets use different measures and each of those measures is subject to severe limitations. About all we can truly say for sure about the derivatives market is, "It is big."

THE PURPOSES AND BENEFITS OF DERIVATIVES

5

Economic historians know that derivatives markets have existed since at least the Middle Ages. It is unclear whether derivatives originated in the Asian rice markets or possibly in medieval trade fairs in Europe. We do know that the origin of modern futures markets is the creation of the Chicago Board of Trade in 1848. To understand why derivatives markets exist, it is useful to take a brief look at why the Chicago Board of Trade was formed.

In the middle of the 19th century, midwestern America was rapidly becoming the center of agricultural production in the United States. At the same time, Chicago was evolving into a major American city, a hub of transportation and commerce. Grain markets in Chicago were the central location to which midwestern farmers brought their wheat, corn, and soybeans to sell. Unfortunately, most of these products arrived at approximately the same time of the year, September through November. The storage facilities in Chicago were strained beyond capacity. As a result, prices would fall tremendously and some farmers reportedly found it more economical to dump their grains in the Chicago River rather than transport them back to the farm. At other times of the year, prices would rise steeply. A group of businessmen saw this situation as unnecessary volatility and a waste of valuable produce. To deal with this problem, they created the Chicago Board of Trade and a financial instrument called the "to-arrive" contract. A farmer could sell a to-arrive contract at any time during the year. This contract fixed the price of the farmer's grain on the basis of delivery in Chicago at a specified later date. Grain is highly storable, so farmers can hold on to the grain and deliver it at almost any later time. This plan substantially reduced seasonal market volatility and made the markets work much better for all parties.

¹⁸ To put it in perspective, it would take 19 million years for a clock to tick off 600 trillion seconds!

The traders in Chicago began to trade these contracts, speculating on movements in grain prices. Soon, it became apparent that an important and fascinating market had developed. Widespread hedging and speculative interest resulted in substantial market growth, and about 80 years later, a clearinghouse and a performance guarantee were added, thus completing the evolution of the to-arrive contract into today's modern futures contract.

Many commodities and all financial assets that underlie derivatives contracts are not seasonally produced. Hence, this initial motivation for futures markets is only a minor advantage of derivatives markets today. But there are many reasons why derivative markets serve an important and useful purpose in contemporary finance.

5.1 Risk Allocation, Transfer, and Management

Until the advent of derivatives markets, risk management was quite cumbersome. Setting the actual level of risk to the desired level of risk required engaging in transactions in the underlyings. Such transactions typically had high transaction costs and were disruptive of portfolios. In many cases, it is quite difficult to fine-tune the level of risk to the desired level. From the perspective of a risk taker, it was quite costly to buy risk because a large amount of capital would be required.

Derivatives solve these problems in a very effective way: They allow trading the risk without trading the instrument itself. For example, consider a stockholder who wants to reduce exposure to a stock. In the pre-derivatives era, the only way to do so was to sell the stock. Now, the stockholder can sell futures, forwards, calls, or swaps, or buy put options, all while retaining the stock. For a company founder, these types of strategies can be particularly useful because the founder can retain ownership and probably board membership. Many other excellent examples of the use of derivatives to transfer risk are covered elsewhere in the curriculum. The objective at this point is to establish that derivatives provide an effective method of transferring risk from parties who do not want the risk to parties who do. In this sense, risk allocation is improved within markets and, indeed, the entire global economy.

The overall purpose of derivatives is to obtain more effective risk management within companies and the entire economy. Although some argue that derivatives do not serve this purpose very well (we will discuss this point in Section 6), for now you should understand that derivatives can improve the allocation of risk and facilitate more effective risk management for both companies and economies.

5.2 Information Discovery

One of the advantages of futures markets has been described as *price discovery*. A futures price has been characterized by some experts as a revelation of some information about the future. Thus, a futures price is sometimes thought of as predictive. This statement is not strictly correct because futures prices are not really forecasts of future spot prices. They provide only a little more information than do spot prices, but they do so in a very efficient manner. The markets for some underlyings are highly decentralized and not very efficient. For example, what is gold worth? It trades in markets around the world, but probably the best place to look is at the gold futures contract expiring soonest. What is the value of the S&P 500 Index when the US markets are not open? As it turns out, US futures markets open before the US stock market opens. The S&P 500 futures price is frequently viewed as an indication of where the stock market will open.

Derivative markets can, however, convey information not impounded in spot markets. By virtue of the fact that derivative markets require less capital, information can flow into the derivative markets before it gets into the spot market. The difference may well be only a matter of minutes or possibly seconds, but it can provide the edge to astute traders.

Finally, we should note that futures markets convey another simple piece of information: What price would one accept to avoid uncertainty? If you hold a stock worth \$40 and could hedge the next 12 months' uncertainty, what locked-in price should you expect to earn? As it turns out, it should be the price that guarantees the risk-free rate minus whatever dividends would be paid on the stock. Derivatives—specifically, futures, forwards, and swaps—reveal the price that the holder of an asset could take and avoid the risk.

What we have said until now applies to futures, forwards, and swaps. What about options? As you will learn later, given the underlying and the type of option (call or put), an option price reflects two characteristics of the option (exercise price and time to expiration), three characteristics of the underlying (price, volatility, and cash flows it might pay), and one general macroeconomic factor (risk-free rate). Only one of these factors, volatility, is not relatively easy to identify. But with the available models to price the option, we can infer what volatility people are using from the actual market prices at which they execute trades. That volatility, called **implied volatility**, measures the expected risk of the underlying. It reflects the volatility that investors use to determine the market price of the option. Knowing the expected risk of the underlying asset is an extremely useful piece of information. In fact, for options on broad-based market indexes, such as the S&P 500, the implied volatility is a good measure of the general level of uncertainty in the market. Some experts have even called it a measure of fear. Thus, options provide information about what investors think of the uncertainty in the market, if not their fear of it.¹⁹

In addition, options allow the creation of trading strategies that cannot be done by using the underlying. As the exhibits on options explained, these strategies provide asymmetrical performance: limited movement in one direction and movement in the other direction that changes with movements in the underlying.

5.3 Operational Advantages

We noted earlier that derivatives have lower transaction costs than the underlying. The transaction costs of derivatives can be high relative to the value of the derivatives, but these costs are typically low relative to the value of the underlying. Thus, an investor who wants to take a position in, say, an equity market index would likely find it less costly to use the futures to get a given degree of exposure than to invest directly in the index to get that same exposure.

Derivative markets also typically have greater liquidity than the underlying spot markets, a result of the smaller amount of capital required to trade derivatives than to get the equivalent exposure directly in the underlying. Futures margin requirements and option premiums are quite low relative to the cost of the underlying.

One other extremely valuable operational advantage of derivative markets is the ease with which one can go short. With derivatives, it is nearly as easy to take a short position as to take a long position, whereas for the underlying asset, it is almost always much more difficult to go short than to go long. In fact, for many commodities, short selling is nearly impossible.

¹⁹ The Chicago Board Options Exchange publishes a measure of the implied volatility of the S&P 500 Index option, which is called the VIX (volatility index). The VIX is widely followed and is cited as a measure of investor uncertainty and sometimes fear.

5.4 Market Efficiency

In the study of portfolio management, you learn that an efficient market is one in which no single investor can consistently earn returns in the long run in excess of those commensurate with the risk assumed. Of course, endless debates occur over whether equity markets are efficient. No need to resurrect that issue here, but let us proceed with the assumption that equity markets—and, in fact, most free and competitive financial markets—are reasonably efficient. This assumption does not mean that abnormal returns can never be earned, and indeed prices do get out of line with fundamental values. But competition, the relatively free flow of information, and ease of trading tend to bring prices back in line with fundamental values. Derivatives can make this process work even more rapidly.

When prices deviate from fundamental values, derivative markets offer less costly ways to exploit the mispricing. As noted earlier, less capital is required, transaction costs are lower, and short selling is easier. We also noted that as a result of these features, it is possible, indeed likely, that fundamental value will be reflected in the derivatives markets before it is restored in the underlying market. Although this time difference could be only a matter of minutes, for a trader seeking abnormal returns, a few minutes can be a valuable opportunity.

All these advantages of derivatives markets make the financial markets in general function more effectively. Investors are far more willing to trade if they can more easily manage their risk, trade at lower cost and with less capital, and go short more easily. This increased willingness to trade increases the number of market participants, which makes the market more liquid. A very liquid market may not automatically be an efficient market, but it certainly has a better chance of being one.

Even if one does not accept the concept that financial markets are efficient, it is difficult to say that markets are not more effective and competitive with derivatives. Yet, many blame derivatives for problems in the market. Let us take a look at these arguments.

6

CRITICISMS AND MISUSES OF DERIVATIVES

The history of financial markets is filled with extreme ups and downs, which are often called bubbles and crashes. Bubbles occur when prices rise for a long time and appear to exceed fundamental values. Crashes occur when prices fall rapidly. Although bubbles, if they truly exist, are troublesome, crashes are even more so because nearly everyone loses substantial wealth in a crash. A crash is then typically followed by a government study commissioned to find the causes of the crash. In the last 30 years, almost all such studies have implicated derivatives as having some role in causing the crash. Of course, because derivatives are widely used and involve a high degree of leverage, it is a given that they would be seen in a crash. It is unclear whether derivatives are the real culprit or just the proverbial smoking gun used by someone to do something wrong.

The two principal arguments against derivatives are that they are such speculative devices that they effectively permit legalized gambling and that they destabilize the financial system. Let us look at these points more closely.

6.1 Speculation and Gambling

As noted earlier, derivatives are frequently used to manage risk. In many contexts, this use involves hedging or laying off risk. Naturally, for hedging to work, there must be speculators. Someone must accept the risk. Derivatives markets are unquestionably attractive to speculators. All the benefits of derivatives draw speculators in large

numbers, and indeed they should. The more speculators that participate in the market, the cheaper it is for hedgers to lay off risk. These speculators take the form of hedge funds and other professional traders who willingly accept risk that others need to shed. In recent years, the rapid growth of these types of investors has been alarming to some but almost surely has been beneficial for all investors.

Unfortunately, the general image of speculators is not a good one. Speculators are often thought to be short-term traders who attempt to exploit temporary inefficiencies, caring little about long-term fundamental values. The profits from short-term trading are almost always taxed more heavily than the profits from long-term trading, clearly targeting and in some sense punishing speculators. Speculators are thought to engage in price manipulation and to trade at extreme prices.²⁰ All of this type of trading is viewed more or less as just a form of legalized gambling.

In most countries, gambling is a heavily regulated industry. In the United States, only certain states permit private industry to offer gambling. Many states operate gambling only through the public sector in the form of state-run lotteries. Many people view derivatives trading as merely a form of legalized and uncontrolled gambling.

Yet, there are notable differences between gambling and speculation. Gambling typically benefits only a limited number of participants and does not generally help society as a whole. But derivatives trading brings extensive benefits to financial markets, as explained earlier, and thus does benefit society as a whole. In short, the benefits of derivatives are broad, whereas the benefits of gambling are narrow.

Nonetheless, the argument that derivatives are a form of legalized gambling will continue to be made. Speculation and gambling are certainly both forms of financial risk taking, so these arguments are not completely off base. But insurance companies speculate on loss claims, mutual funds that invest in stocks speculate on the performance of companies, and entrepreneurs go up against tremendous odds to speculate on their own ability to create successful businesses. These so-called speculators are rarely criticized for engaging in a form of legalized gambling, and indeed entrepreneurs are praised as the backbone of the economy. Really, all investment is speculative. So, why is speculation viewed as such a bad thing by so many? The answer is unclear.

6.2 Destabilization and Systemic Risk

The arguments against speculation through derivatives often go a step further, claiming that it is not merely speculation or gambling per se but rather that it has destabilizing consequences. Opponents of derivatives claim that the very benefits of derivatives (low cost, low capital requirements, ease of going short) result in an excessive amount of speculative trading that brings instability to the market. They argue that speculators use large amounts of leverage, thereby subjecting themselves and their creditors to substantial risk if markets do not move in their hoped-for direction. Defaults by speculators can then lead to defaults by their creditors, their creditors' creditors, and so on. These effects can, therefore, be systemic and reflect an epidemic contagion whereby instability can spread throughout markets and an economy, if not the entire world. Given that governments often end up bailing out some banks and insurance companies, society has expressed concern that the risk managed with derivatives must be controlled.

This argument is not without merit. Such effects occurred in the Long-Term Capital Management fiasco of 1998 and again in the financial crisis of 2008, in which derivatives, particularly credit default swaps, were widely used by many of the problem

²⁰ Politicians and regulators have been especially critical of energy market speculators. Politicians, in particular, almost always blame rising oil prices on speculators, although credit is conspicuously absent for falling oil prices.

entities. Responses to such events typically take the course of calling for more rules and regulations restricting the use of derivatives, requiring more collateral and credit mitigation measures, backing up banks with more capital, and encouraging, if not requiring, OTC derivatives to be centrally cleared like exchange-traded derivatives.

In response, however, we should note that financial crises—including the South Sea and Mississippi bubbles and the stock market crash of 1929, as well as a handful of economic calamities of the 19th and 20th centuries—have existed since the dawn of capitalism. Some of these events preceded the era of modern derivatives markets, and others were completely unrelated to the use of derivatives. Some organizations, such as Orange County, California, in 1994–1995, have proved that derivatives are not required to take on excessive leverage and nearly bring the entity to ruin. Proponents of derivatives argue that derivatives are but one of many mechanisms through which excessive risk can be taken. Derivatives may seem dangerous, and they can be if misused, but there are many ways to take on leverage that look far less harmful but can be just as risky.

Another criticism of derivatives is simply their complexity. Many derivatives are extremely complex and require a high-level understanding of mathematics. The financial industry employs many mathematicians, physicists, and computer scientists. This single fact has made many distrust derivatives and the people who work on them. It is unclear why this reason has tarnished the reputation of the derivatives industry. Scientists work on complex problems in medicine and engineering without public distrust. One explanation probably lies in the fact that scientists create models of markets by using scientific principles that often fail. To a physicist modeling the movements of celestial bodies, the science is reliable and the physicist is unlikely to misapply the science. The same science applied to financial markets is far less reliable. Financial markets are driven by the actions of people who are not as consistent as the movements of celestial bodies. When financial models fail to work as they should, the scientists are often blamed for either building models that are too complex and unable to accurately capture financial reality or misusing those models, such as using poor estimates of inputs. And derivatives, being so widely used and heavily leveraged, are frequently in the center of it all.

EXAMPLE 6

Purposes and Controversies of Derivative Markets

- 1 Which of the following is **not** an advantage of derivative markets?
 - A They are less volatile than spot markets.
 - B They facilitate the allocation of risk in the market.
 - C They incur lower transaction costs than spot markets.
- 2 Which of the following pieces of information is **not** conveyed by at least one type of derivative?
 - A The volatility of the underlying
 - B The most widely used strategy of the underlying
 - C The price at which uncertainty in the underlying can be eliminated
- 3 Which of the following responds to the criticism that derivatives can be destabilizing to the underlying market?
 - A Market crashes and panics have occurred since long before derivatives existed.

- B** Derivatives are sufficiently regulated that they cannot destabilize the spot market.
- C** The transaction costs of derivatives are high enough to keep their use at a minimum level.

Solution to 1:

A is correct. Derivative markets are not by nature more or less volatile than spot markets. They facilitate risk allocation by making it easier and less costly to transfer risk, and their transaction costs are lower than those of spot markets.

Solution to 2:

B is correct. Options do convey the volatility of the underlying, and futures, forwards, and swaps convey the price at which uncertainty in the underlying can be eliminated. Derivatives do not convey any information about the use of the underlying in strategies.

Solution to 3:

A is correct. Derivatives regulation is not more and is arguably less than spot market regulation, and the transaction costs of derivatives are not a deterrent to their use; in fact, derivatives are widely used. Market crashes and panics have a very long history, much longer than that of derivatives.

An important element of understanding and using derivatives is having a healthy respect for their power. Every day, we use chemicals, electricity, and fire without thinking about their dangers. We consume water and drive automobiles, both of which are statistically quite dangerous. Perhaps these risks are underappreciated, but it is more likely the case that most adults learn how to safely use chemicals, electricity, fire, water, and automobiles. Of course, there are exceptions, many of which are foolish, and foolishness is no stranger to the derivatives industry. The lesson here is that derivatives can make our financial lives better, but like chemicals, electricity, and all the rest, we need to know how to use them safely, which is why they are an important part of the CFA curriculum.

Later in the curriculum, you will learn a great deal about how derivatives are priced. At this point, we introduce the pricing of derivatives. This material not only paves the way for a deeper understanding of derivatives but also complements earlier material by helping you understand how derivatives work.

ELEMENTARY PRINCIPLES OF DERIVATIVE PRICING

7

Pricing and valuation are fundamental elements of the CFA Program. The study of fixed-income and equity securities, as well as their application in portfolio management, is solidly grounded on the principle of valuation. In valuation, the question is simple: What is something worth? Without an answer to that question, one can hardly proceed to use that *something* wisely.

Determining what a derivative is worth is similar to determining what an asset is worth. As you learn in the fixed-income and equity readings, value is the present value of future cash flows, with discounting done at a rate that reflects both the opportunity cost of money and the risk. Derivatives valuation applies that same principle but in a somewhat different way.

Think of a derivative as *attached* to an underlying. We know that the derivative *derives* its value from the value of the underlying. If the underlying's value changes, so should the value of the derivative. The underlying takes its value from the discounted present value of the expected future cash flows it offers, with discounting done at a rate reflecting the investor's risk tolerance. But if the value of the underlying is embedded in the value of the derivative, it would be double counting to discount the derivative's expected future cash flows at a risky discount rate. That effect has already been incorporated into the value of the underlying, which goes into the value of the derivative.

Derivatives usually take their values from the underlying by constructing a hypothetical combination of the derivatives and the underlyings that eliminates risk. This combination is typically called a **hedge portfolio**. With the risk eliminated, it follows that the hedge portfolio should earn the risk-free rate. A derivative's value is the price of the derivative that forces the hedge portfolio to earn the risk-free rate.

This principle of derivative valuation relies completely on the ability of an investor to hold or store the underlying asset. Let us take a look at what that means.

7.1 Storage

As noted previously, the first derivatives were agricultural commodities. Most of these commodities can be stored (i.e., held) for a period of time. Some extreme cases, such as oil and gold, which are storable for millions of years, are excellent examples of fully storable commodities. Grains, such as wheat and corn, can be stored for long but not infinite periods of time. Some commodities, such as bananas, are storable for relatively short periods of time. In the CFA Program, we are more interested in financial assets. Equities and currencies have perpetual storability, whereas bonds are storable until they mature.

Storage incurs costs. Commodity storage costs can be quite expensive. Imagine storing 1,000 kilograms of gold or a million barrels of oil. Financial assets, however, have relatively low storage costs. Some assets pay returns during storage. Stocks pay dividends and bonds pay interest. The net of payments offered minus storage costs plays a role in the valuation of derivatives.

An example earlier in this reading illustrates this point. Suppose an investor holds a dividend-paying stock and wants to eliminate the uncertainty of its selling price over a future period of time. Suppose further that the investor enters into a forward contract that commits him to deliver the stock at a later date, for which he will receive a fixed price. With uncertainty eliminated, the investor should earn the risk-free rate, but in fact, he does not. He earns more because while holding the stock, he collects dividends. Therefore, he should earn the risk-free rate *minus* the dividend yield, a concept known as the cost of carry, which will be covered in great detail in later readings. The cost of carry *plus* the dividends he earns effectively means that he makes the risk-free rate. Now, no one is claiming that this is a good way to earn the risk-free rate. There are many better ways to do that, but this strategy could be executed. There is one and only one forward price that guarantees that this strategy earns a return of the risk-free rate minus the dividend yield, or the risk-free rate after accounting for the dividends collected. If the forward price at which contracts are created does not equal this price, investors can take advantage of this discrepancy by engaging in arbitrage, which is discussed in the next section.

Forwards, futures, swaps, and options are all priced in this manner. Hence, they rely critically on the ability to store or hold the asset. Some underlyings are not storable. We previously mentioned electricity. It is produced and consumed almost instantaneously. Weather is also not storable. Fresh fish have very limited storability. Although this absence of storability may not be the reason, derivative markets in these types of underlyings have not been particularly successful, whereas those in underlyings that are more easily storable have often been successful.

The opposite of storability is the ability to go short—that is, to borrow the underlying, sell it, and buy it back later. We discussed earlier that short selling of some assets can be difficult. It is not easy to borrow oil or soybeans. There are ways around this constraint, but derivatives valuation is generally much easier when the underlying can be shorted. This point is discussed in more depth later in the curriculum.

7.2 Arbitrage

What we have been describing is the foundation of the principle of **arbitrage**. In well-functioning markets with low transaction costs and a free flow of information, the same asset cannot sell for more than one price. If it did, someone would buy it in the cheaper market and sell it in the more expensive market, earning a riskless profit. The combined actions of all parties doing this would push up the lower price and push down the higher price until they converged. For this reason, arbitrage is often referred to as the **law of one price**. Of course, for arbitrage to be feasible, the ability to purchase and sell short the asset is important.

Obviously, this rule does not apply to all markets. The same consumer good can easily sell for different prices, which is one reason why people spend so much time shopping on the internet. The costs associated with purchasing the good in the cheaper market and selling it in the more expensive market can make the arbitrage not worthwhile. The absence of information on the very fact that different prices exist would also prevent the arbitrage from occurring. Although the internet and various price-comparing websites reduce these frictions and encourage all sellers to offer competitive prices, consumer goods are never likely to be arbitragable.²¹

Financial markets, of course, are a different matter. Information on securities prices around the world is quite accessible and relatively inexpensive. Most financial markets are fairly competitive because dealers, speculators, and brokers attempt to execute trades at the best prices. Arbitrage is considered a dependable rule in the financial markets. Nonetheless, there are people who purport to make a living as arbitrageurs. How could they exist? To figure that out, first consider some examples of arbitrage.

The simplest case of an arbitrage might be for the same stock to sell at different prices in two markets. If the stock were selling at \$52 in one market and \$50 in another, an arbitrageur would buy the stock at \$50 in the one market and sell it at \$52 in the other. This trade would net an immediate \$2 profit at no risk and would not require the commitment of any of the investor's capital. This outcome would be a strong motivation for all arbitrageurs, and their combined actions would force the lower price up and the higher price down until the prices converged.

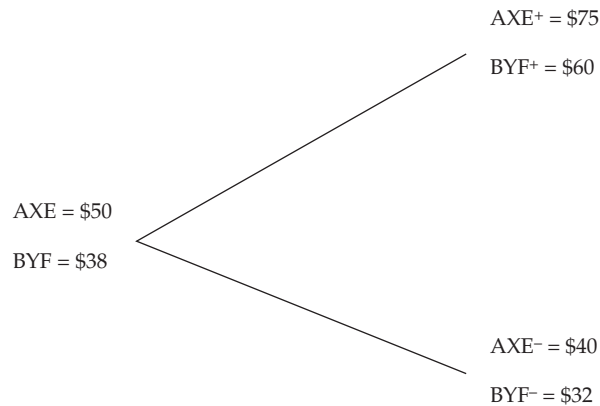
But what would be the final price? It is entirely possible that \$50 is the true fundamental value and \$52 is too high. Or \$52 could be the true fundamental value and \$50 is too low. Or the true fundamental value could lie somewhere between the two. Arbitrage does not tell us the true fundamental value. It is not an *absolute* valuation methodology, such as the discounted cash flow equity valuation model. It is a *relative* valuation methodology. It tells us the correct price of one asset or derivative *relative to* another asset or derivative.

Now, consider another situation, illustrated in Exhibit 6. Observe that we have one stock, AXE Electronics, that today is worth \$50 and one period later will be worth either \$75 or \$40. We will denote these prices as $AXE = \$50$, $AXE^+ = \$75$, and $AXE^- = \$40$. Another stock, BYF Technology, is today worth \$38 and one period later will

²¹ If the same consumer good sells for different prices in markets with a relatively free flow of information (e.g., via price-comparing websites), it still may not be possible to truly arbitrage. Buying the good at a lower price and selling it at a higher price but less than the price of the most expensive seller may not be practical, but the most expensive seller may be driven out of business. When everyone knows what everyone else is charging, the same effect of arbitrage can still occur.

be worth \$60 or \$32. Thus, $BYF = \$38$, $BYF^+ = \$60$, and $BYF^- = \$32$. Assume that the risk-free borrowing and lending rate is 4%. Also assume no dividends are paid on either stock during the period covered by this example.

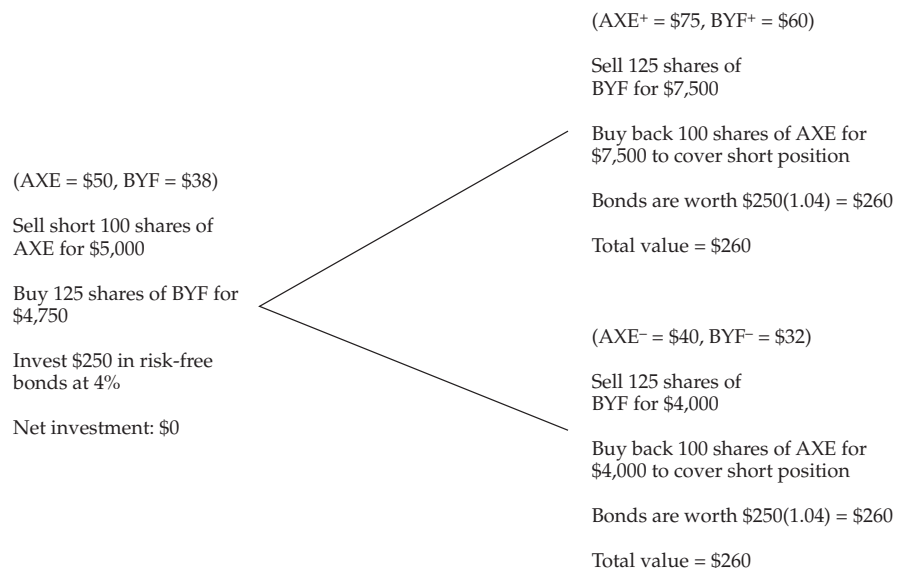
Exhibit 6 Arbitrage Opportunity with Stock AXE, Stock BYF, and a Risk-Free Bond



Note: The risk-free rate is 4%.

The opportunity exists to make a profit at no risk without committing any of our funds, as demonstrated in Exhibit 7. Suppose we borrow 100 shares of stock AXE, which is selling for \$50, and sell them short, thereby receiving \$5,000. We take \$4,750 and purchase 125 shares of stock BYF ($125 \times \$38 = \$4,750$). We invest the remaining \$250 in risk-free bonds at 4%. This transaction will not require us to use any funds of our own: The short sale will be sufficient to fund the investment in BYF and leave money to invest in risk-free bonds.

Exhibit 7 Execution of Arbitrage Transaction with Stock AXE, Stock BYF, and a Risk-Free Bond



If the top outcome in Exhibit 7 occurs, we sell the 125 shares of BYF for $125 \times \$60 = \$7,500$. This amount is sufficient to buy back the 100 shares of AXE, which is selling for \$75. But we will also have the bonds, which are worth $\$250 \times 1.04 = \260 . If the bottom outcome occurs, we sell the 125 shares of BYF for $125 \times \$32 = \$4,000$ —enough money to buy back the 100 shares of AXE, which is selling for \$40. Again, we will have the risk-free bonds, worth \$260. Regardless of the outcome, we end up with \$260.

Recall that we invested no money of our own and end up with a sure \$260. It should be apparent that this transaction is extremely attractive, so everyone would do it. The combined actions of multiple investors would drive down the price of AXE and/or drive up the price of BYF until an equilibrium is reached, at which point this transaction would no longer be profitable. As noted earlier, we cannot be sure of the correct fundamental price, but let us assume that BYF's price remains constant. Then AXE would fall to \$47.50. Alternatively, if we assume that AXE's price remains constant, then the price of BYF would rise to \$40. These values are obtained by noting that the prices for both outcomes occur according to the ratio 1.25 ($\$75/\$60 = 1.25$; $\$40/\$32 = 1.25$). Thus, their initial prices should be consistent with that ratio. If BYF is \$38, AXE should be $\$38 \times 1.25 = \47.50 . If AXE is \$50, BYF should be $\$40.00$ because $\$40.00 \times 1.25 = \50 . Of course, the two prices could settle in between. Arbitrage is only a relative pricing method. It prices the two stocks in relation to each other but does not price either on the basis of its own fundamentals.

Of course, this example is extremely simplified. Clearly, a stock price can change to more than two other prices. Also, if a given stock is at one price, another stock may be at any other price. We have created a simple case here to illustrate a point. But as you will learn later in the curriculum, when derivatives are involved, the simplification here is relatively safe. As we know, the price of a derivative is determined by the price of the underlying. Hence, when the underlying is at one particular price, the derivative's price will be determined by that price. The two assets need not be two stocks; one can be a stock and the other can be a derivative on the stock.

To see that point, consider another type of arbitrage opportunity that involves a forward contract. Recall from the previous example that at the start, AXE sells for \$50. Suppose we borrow \$50 at 4% interest by issuing a risk-free bond, use the money to buy one share of stock AXE, and simultaneously enter into a forward contract to sell this share at a price of \$54 one period later. The stock will then move to either \$75 or \$40 in the next period. The forward contract requires that we deliver the stock and accept \$54 for it. And of course, we will owe $\$50 \times 1.04 = \52 on the loan.

Now consider the two outcomes. Regardless of the outcome, the end result is the same. The forward contract fixes the delivery price of the stock at \$54:

AXE goes to \$75

Deliver stock to settle forward contract	+ \$54
Pay back loan	<u>- \$52</u>
Net	+ \$2

AXE goes to \$40

Deliver stock to settle forward contract	+ \$54
Pay back loan	<u>- \$52</u>
Net	+ \$2

In either case, we made \$2, free and clear. In fact, we can even accommodate the possibility of more than two future prices for AXE and we will always make \$2.²² The key point is that we faced no risk and did not have to invest any of our own money, but ended up with \$2, which is clearly a good trade. The \$2 is an arbitrage profit. But where did it originate?

It turns out that the forward price, \$54, was an inappropriate price given current market conditions. In fact, it was just an arbitrary price made up to illustrate the point. To eliminate the opportunity to earn the \$2 profit, the forward price should be \$52, which is equal, not coincidentally, to the amount owed on the loan. It is also no coincidence that \$52 is the price of the asset increased by the rate of interest. We will cover this point later in the curriculum, but for now consider that you have just seen your first derivative pricing model.²³

Of course, many market participants would do this transaction as long as it generated an arbitrage profit. These forces of arbitrage would either push the forward price down or the stock price up, or both, until an equilibrium is reached that eliminates the opportunity to profit at no risk with no commitment of one's own funds.

To summarize, the forces of arbitrage in financial markets assure us that the same asset cannot sell for different prices, nor can two equivalent combinations of assets that produce the same results sell for different prices. Realistically, some arbitrage opportunities can exist on a temporary basis, but they will be quickly exploited, bringing relative prices back in line with each other. Other apparent arbitrage opportunities will be too small to warrant exploiting.

Not to be naive, however, we must acknowledge that there is a large industry of people who call themselves arbitrageurs. So, how can such an industry exist if there are no opportunities for riskless profit? One explanation is that most of the arbitrage transactions are more complex than the simple examples used here. Many involve estimating information, which can result in differing opinions. Arbitrage involving options, for example, usually requires an estimate of a stock's volatility. Different participants have different opinions about the volatility. It is quite possible that the two counterparties trading with each other believe that each is arbitraging against the other.²⁴

But more importantly, the absence of arbitrage opportunities is upheld, ironically, only if participants believe that arbitrage opportunities do exist. If traders believe that no opportunities exist to earn arbitrage profits, then traders will not follow market prices and compare those prices with what they ought to be. Thus, eliminating arbitrage opportunities requires that participants be alert in watching for arbitrage opportunities. In other words, strange as it may sound, disbelief and skepticism concerning the absence of arbitrage opportunities are required for the no-arbitrage rule to be upheld.

Markets in which arbitrage opportunities are either nonexistent or quickly eliminated are relatively efficient markets. Recall that efficient markets are those in which it is not possible to consistently earn returns in excess of those that would be fair compensation for the risk assumed. Although abnormal returns can be earned in a variety of ways, arbitrage profits are definitely examples of abnormal returns. Thus, they are the most egregious violations of the principle of market efficiency.

²² A good study suggestion is to try this example with any future stock price. You should get the same result, a \$2 risk-free profit.

²³ This illustration is the quick look at forward pricing alluded to in Section 3.1.1.

²⁴ In reality, many of the transactions that arbitrageurs do are not really arbitrage. They are quite speculative. For example, many people call themselves arbitrageurs because they buy companies that are potential takeover targets and sell the companies they think will be the buyers. This transaction is not arbitrage by any stretch of the definition. Some transactions are called "risk arbitrage," but this term is an oxymoron. As an investment professional, you should simply be prepared for such misuses of words, which simply reflect the flexibility of language.

Throughout the derivatives component of the CFA curriculum, we will use the principle of arbitrage as a dominant theme and assume that arbitrage opportunities cannot exist for any significant length of time nor can any one investor consistently capture them. Thus, prices must conform to models that assume no arbitrage. But we do not want to take the absence of arbitrage opportunities so seriously that we give up and believe that arbitrage opportunities never exist. Otherwise, they will arise and someone else will take them. Consider the rule of arbitrage a law that will be broken from time to time but one that holds far more often than not and one that should be understood and respected.

EXAMPLE 7**Arbitrage**

- 1 Which of the following is a result of arbitrage?
 - A The law of one price
 - B The law of similar prices
 - C The law of limited profitability
- 2 When an arbitrage opportunity exists, what happens in the market?
 - A The combined actions of all arbitrageurs force the prices to converge.
 - B The combined actions of arbitrageurs result in a locked-limit situation.
 - C The combined actions of all arbitrageurs result in sustained profits to all.
- 3 Which of the following accurately defines arbitrage?
 - A An opportunity to make a profit at no risk
 - B An opportunity to make a profit at no risk and with the investment of no capital
 - C An opportunity to earn a return in excess of the return appropriate for the risk assumed
- 4 Which of the following ways best describes how arbitrage contributes to market efficiency?
 - A Arbitrage penalizes those who trade too rapidly.
 - B Arbitrage equalizes the risks taken by all market participants.
 - C Arbitrage improves the rate at which prices converge to their relative fair values.

Solution to 1:

A is correct. Arbitrage forces equivalent assets to have a single price. There is nothing called the law of similar prices or the law of limited profitability.

Solution to 2:

A is correct. Prices converge because of the heavy demand for the cheaper asset and the heavy supply of the more expensive asset. Profits are not sustained, and, in fact, they are eradicated as prices converge. Locked-limit is a condition in the futures market and has nothing to do with arbitrage.

Solution to 3:

B is correct. An opportunity to profit at no risk could merely describe the purchase of a risk-free asset. An opportunity to earn a return in excess of the return appropriate for the risk assumed is a concept studied in portfolio management

and is often referred to as an abnormal return. It is certainly desirable but is hardly an arbitrage because it requires the assumption of risk and the investment of capital. Arbitrage is risk free and requires no capital because selling the overpriced asset produces the funds to buy the underpriced asset.

Solution to 4:

C is correct. Arbitrage imposes no penalties on rapid trading; in fact, it tends to reward those who trade rapidly to take advantage of arbitrage opportunities. Arbitrage has no effect of equalizing risk among market participants. Arbitrage does result in an acceleration of price convergence to fair values relative to instruments with equivalent payoffs.

SUMMARY

This first reading on derivatives introduces you to the basic characteristics of derivatives, including the following points:

- A derivative is a financial instrument that derives its performance from the performance of an underlying asset.
- The underlying asset, called the underlying, trades in the cash or spot markets and its price is called the cash or spot price.
- Derivatives consist of two general classes: forward commitments and contingent claims.
- Derivatives can be created as standardized instruments on derivatives exchanges or as customized instruments in the over-the-counter market.
- Exchange-traded derivatives are standardized, highly regulated, and transparent transactions that are guaranteed against default through the clearinghouse of the derivatives exchange.
- Over-the-counter derivatives are customized, flexible, and more private and less regulated than exchange-traded derivatives, but are subject to a greater risk of default.
- A forward contract is an over-the-counter derivative contract in which two parties agree that one party, the buyer, will purchase an underlying asset from the other party, the seller, at a later date and at a fixed price they agree upon when the contract is signed.
- A futures contract is similar to a forward contract but is a standardized derivative contract created and traded on a futures exchange. In the contract, two parties agree that one party, the buyer, will purchase an underlying asset from the other party, the seller, at a later date and at a price agreed on by the two parties when the contract is initiated. In addition, there is a daily settling of gains and losses and a credit guarantee by the futures exchange through its clearinghouse.
- A swap is an over-the-counter derivative contract in which two parties agree to exchange a series of cash flows whereby one party pays a variable series that will be determined by an underlying asset or rate and the other party pays either a variable series determined by a different underlying asset or rate or a fixed series.

- An option is a derivative contract in which one party, the buyer, pays a sum of money to the other party, the seller or writer, and receives the right to either buy or sell an underlying asset at a fixed price either on a specific expiration date or at any time prior to the expiration date.
- A call is an option that provides the right to buy the underlying.
- A put is an option that provides the right to sell the underlying.
- Credit derivatives are a class of derivative contracts between two parties, the credit protection buyer and the credit protection seller, in which the latter provides protection to the former against a specific credit loss.
- A credit default swap is the most widely used credit derivative. It is a derivative contract between two parties, a credit protection buyer and a credit protection seller, in which the buyer makes a series of payments to the seller and receives a promise of compensation for credit losses resulting from the default of a third party.
- An asset-backed security is a derivative contract in which a portfolio of debt instruments is assembled and claims are issued on the portfolio in the form of tranches, which have different priorities of claims on the payments made by the debt securities such that prepayments or credit losses are allocated to the most-junior tranches first and the most-senior tranches last.
- Derivatives can be combined with other derivatives or underlying assets to form hybrids.
- Derivatives are issued on equities, fixed-income securities, interest rates, currencies, commodities, credit, and a variety of such diverse underlyings as weather, electricity, and disaster claims.
- Derivatives facilitate the transfer of risk, enable the creation of strategies and payoffs not otherwise possible with spot assets, provide information about the spot market, offer lower transaction costs, reduce the amount of capital required, are easier than the underlyings to go short, and improve the efficiency of spot markets.
- Derivatives are sometimes criticized for being a form of legalized gambling and for leading to destabilizing speculation, although these points can generally be refuted.
- Derivatives are typically priced by forming a hedge involving the underlying asset and a derivative such that the combination must pay the risk-free rate and do so for only one derivative price.
- Derivatives pricing relies heavily on the principle of storage, meaning the ability to hold or store the underlying asset. Storage can incur costs but can also generate cash, such as dividends and interest.
- Arbitrage is the condition that two equivalent assets or derivatives or combinations of assets and derivatives sell for different prices, leading to an opportunity to buy at the low price and sell at the high price, thereby earning a risk-free profit without committing any capital.
- The combined actions of arbitrageurs bring about a convergence of prices. Hence, arbitrage leads to the law of one price: Transactions that produce equivalent results must sell for equivalent prices.

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

- 1 A derivative is *best* described as a financial instrument that derives its performance by:
 - A passing through the returns of the underlying.
 - B replicating the performance of the underlying.
 - C transforming the performance of the underlying.
- 2 Compared with exchange-traded derivatives, over-the-counter derivatives would *most likely* be described as:
 - A standardized.
 - B less transparent.
 - C more transparent.
- 3 Exchange-traded derivatives are:
 - A largely unregulated.
 - B traded through an informal network.
 - C guaranteed by a clearinghouse against default.
- 4 Which of the following derivatives is classified as a contingent claim?
 - A Futures contracts
 - B Interest rate swaps
 - C Credit default swaps
- 5 In contrast to contingent claims, forward commitments provide the:
 - A right to buy or sell the underlying asset in the future.
 - B obligation to buy or sell the underlying asset in the future.
 - C promise to provide credit protection in the event of default.
- 6 Which of the following derivatives provide payoffs that are non-linearly related to the payoffs of the underlying?
 - A Options
 - B Forwards
 - C Interest-rate swaps
- 7 An interest rate swap is a derivative contract in which:
 - A two parties agree to exchange a series of cash flows.
 - B the credit seller provides protection to the credit buyer.
 - C the buyer has the right to purchase the underlying from the seller.
- 8 Forward commitments subject to default are:
 - A forwards and futures.
 - B futures and interest rate swaps.
 - C interest rate swaps and forwards.
- 9 Which of the following derivatives is *least likely* to have a value of zero at initiation of the contract?
 - A Futures
 - B Options
 - C Forwards

- 10 A credit derivative is a derivative contract in which the:
- A clearinghouse provides a credit guarantee to both the buyer and the seller.
 - B seller provides protection to the buyer against the credit risk of a third party.
 - C the buyer and seller provide a performance bond at initiation of the contract.
- 11 Compared with the underlying spot market, derivative markets are *more likely* to have:
- A greater liquidity.
 - B higher transaction costs.
 - C higher capital requirements.
- 12 Which of the following characteristics is *least likely* to be a benefit associated with using derivatives?
- A More effective management of risk
 - B Payoffs similar to those associated with the underlying
 - C Greater opportunities to go short compared with the spot market
- 13 Which of the following is *most likely* to be a destabilizing consequence of speculation using derivatives?
- A Increased defaults by speculators and creditors
 - B Market price swings resulting from arbitrage activities
 - C The creation of trading strategies that result in asymmetric performance
- 14 The law of one price is *best* described as:
- A the true fundamental value of an asset.
 - B earning a risk-free profit without committing any capital.
 - C two assets that will produce the same cash flows in the future must sell for equivalent prices.
- 15 Arbitrage opportunities exist when:
- A two identical assets or derivatives sell for different prices.
 - B combinations of the underlying asset and a derivative earn the risk-free rate.
 - C arbitrageurs simultaneously buy takeover targets and sell takeover acquirers.

SOLUTIONS

- 1 C is correct. A derivative is a financial instrument that transforms the performance of the underlying. The transformation of performance function of derivatives is what distinguishes it from mutual funds and exchange traded funds that pass through the returns of the underlying.
A is incorrect because derivatives, in contrast to mutual funds and exchange traded funds, do not simply pass through the returns of the underlying at payout. B is incorrect because a derivative transforms rather than replicates the performance of the underlying.
- 2 B is correct. Over-the counter-derivatives markets are customized and mostly unregulated. As a result, over-the-counter markets are less transparent in comparison with the high degree of transparency and standardization associated with exchange-traded derivative markets.
A is incorrect because exchange-traded derivatives are standardized, whereas over-the counter derivatives are customized. C is incorrect because exchange-traded derivatives are characterized by a high degree of transparency because all transactions are disclosed to exchanges and regulatory agencies, whereas over-the-counter derivatives are relatively opaque.
- 3 C is correct. Exchanged-traded derivatives are guaranteed by a clearinghouse against default.
A is incorrect because traded derivatives are characterized by a relatively high degree of regulation. B is incorrect because the terms of exchange-traded derivatives terms are specified by the exchange.
- 4 C is correct. A credit default swap (CDS) is a derivative in which the credit protection seller provides protection to the credit protection buyer against the credit risk of a separate party. CDS are classified as a contingent claim.
A is incorrect because futures contracts are classified as forward commitments. B is incorrect because interest rate swaps are classified as forward commitments.
- 5 B is correct. Forward commitments represent an obligation to buy or sell the underlying asset at an agreed upon price at a future date.
A is incorrect because the right to buy or sell the underlying asset is a characteristic of contingent claims, not forward commitments. C is incorrect because a credit default swap provides a promise to provide credit protection to the credit protection buyer in the event of a credit event such as a default or credit downgrade and is classified as a contingent claim.
- 6 A is correct. Options are classified as a contingent claim which provides payoffs that are non-linearly related to the performance of the underlying.
B is incorrect because forwards are classified as a forward commitment, which provides payoffs that are linearly related to the performance of the underlying. C is incorrect because interest-rate swaps are classified as a forward commitment, which provides payoffs that are linearly related to the performance of the underlying.
- 7 A is correct. An interest rate swap is defined as a derivative in which two parties agree to exchange a series of cash flows: One set of cash flows is variable, and the other set can be variable or fixed.

B is incorrect because a credit derivative is a derivative contract in which the credit protection seller provides protection to the credit protection buyer. C is incorrect because a call option gives the buyer the right to purchase the underlying from the seller.

- 8 C is correct. Interest rate swaps and forwards are over-the-counter contracts that are privately negotiated and are both subject to default. Futures contracts are traded on an exchange, which provides a credit guarantee and protection against default.

A is incorrect because futures are exchange-traded contracts which provide daily settlement of gains and losses and a credit guarantee by the exchange through its clearinghouse. B is incorrect because futures are exchange-traded contracts which provide daily settlement of gains and losses and a credit guarantee by the exchange through its clearinghouse.

- 9 B is correct. The buyer of the option pays the option premium to the seller of the option at the initiation of the contract. The option premium represents the value of the option, whereas futures and forwards have a value of zero at the initiation of the contract.

A is incorrect because no money changes hands between parties at the initiation of the futures contract, thus the value of the futures contract is zero at initiation. C is incorrect because no money changes hands between parties at the initiation of the forward contract, thus the value of the forward contract is zero at initiation.

- 10 B is correct. A credit derivative is a derivative contract in which the credit protection seller provides protection to the credit protection buyer against the credit risk of a third party.

A is incorrect because the clearinghouse provides a credit guarantee to both the buyer and the seller of a futures contract, whereas a credit derivative is between two parties, in which the credit protection seller provides a credit guarantee to the credit protection buyer. C is incorrect because futures contracts require that both the buyer and the seller of the futures contract provide a cash deposit for a portion of the futures transaction into a margin account, often referred to as a performance bond or good faith deposit.

- 11 A is correct. Derivative markets typically have greater liquidity than the underlying spot market as a result of the lower capital required to trade derivatives compared with the underlying. Derivatives also have lower transaction costs and lower capital requirements than the underlying.

B is incorrect because transaction costs for derivatives are lower than the underlying spot market. C is incorrect because derivatives markets have lower capital requirements than the underlying spot market.

- 12 B is correct. One of the benefits of derivative markets is that derivatives create trading strategies not otherwise possible in the underlying spot market, thus providing opportunities for more effective risk management than simply replicating the payoff of the underlying.

A is incorrect because effective risk management is one of the primary purposes associated with derivative markets. C is incorrect because one of the operational advantages associated with derivatives is that it is easier to go short compared to the underlying spot market.

- 13 A is correct. The benefits of derivatives, such as low transaction costs, low capital requirements, use of leverage, and the ease in which participants can go short, also can result in excessive speculative trading. These activities can lead to defaults on the part of speculators and creditors.

B is incorrect because arbitrage activities tend to bring about a convergence of prices to intrinsic value. C is incorrect because asymmetric performance is not itself destabilizing.

- 14** C is correct. The law of one price occurs when market participants engage in arbitrage activities so that identical assets sell for the same price in different markets.

A is incorrect because the law of one price refers to identical assets. B is incorrect because it refers to arbitrage not the law of one price.

- 15** A is correct. Arbitrage opportunities exist when the same asset or two equivalent combinations of assets that produce the same results sell for different prices. When this situation occurs, market participants would buy the asset in the cheaper market and simultaneously sell it in the more expensive market, thus earning a riskless arbitrage profit without committing any capital.

B is incorrect because it is not the definition of an arbitrage opportunity. C is incorrect because it is not the definition of an arbitrage opportunity.

Basics of Derivative Pricing and Valuation

by Don M. Chance, PhD, CFA

Don M. Chance, PhD, CFA, is at Louisiana State University (USA).

LEARNING OUTCOMES

<i>Mastery</i>	<i>The candidate should be able to:</i>
<input type="checkbox"/>	a. explain how the concepts of arbitrage, replication, and risk neutrality are used in pricing derivatives;
<input type="checkbox"/>	b. distinguish between value and price of forward and futures contracts;
<input type="checkbox"/>	c. explain how the value and price of a forward contract are determined at expiration, during the life of the contract, and at initiation;
<input type="checkbox"/>	d. describe monetary and nonmonetary benefits and costs associated with holding the underlying asset and explain how they affect the value and price of a forward contract;
<input type="checkbox"/>	e. define a forward rate agreement and describe its uses;
<input type="checkbox"/>	f. explain why forward and futures prices differ;
<input type="checkbox"/>	g. explain how swap contracts are similar to but different from a series of forward contracts;
<input type="checkbox"/>	h. distinguish between the value and price of swaps;
<input type="checkbox"/>	i. explain how the value of a European option is determined at expiration;
<input type="checkbox"/>	j. explain the exercise value, time value, and moneyness of an option;
<input type="checkbox"/>	k. identify the factors that determine the value of an option and explain how each factor affects the value of an option;
<input type="checkbox"/>	l. explain put–call parity for European options;
<input type="checkbox"/>	m. explain put–call–forward parity for European options;
<input type="checkbox"/>	n. explain how the value of an option is determined using a one-period binomial model;
<input type="checkbox"/>	o. explain under which circumstances the values of European and American options differ.

1

INTRODUCTION

It is important to understand how prices of derivatives are determined. Whether one is on the buy side or the sell side, a solid understanding of pricing financial products is critical to effective investment decision making. After all, one can hardly determine what to offer or bid for a financial product, or any product for that matter, if one has no idea how its characteristics combine to create value.

Understanding the pricing of financial assets is important. Discounted cash flow methods and models, such as the capital asset pricing model and its variations, are useful for determining the prices of financial assets. The unique characteristics of derivatives, however, pose some complexities not associated with assets, such as equities and fixed-income instruments. Somewhat surprisingly, however, derivatives also have some simplifying characteristics. For example, as we will see in this reading, in well-functioning derivatives markets the need to determine risk premiums is obviated by the ability to construct a risk-free hedge. Correspondingly, the need to determine an investor's risk aversion is irrelevant for derivative pricing, although it is certainly relevant for pricing the underlying.

The purpose of this reading is to establish the foundations of derivative pricing on a basic conceptual level. The following topics are covered:

- How does the pricing of the underlying asset affect the pricing of derivatives?
- How are derivatives priced using the principle of arbitrage?
- How are the prices and values of forward contracts determined?
- How are futures contracts priced differently from forward contracts?
- How are the prices and values of swaps determined?
- How are the prices and values of European options determined?
- How does American option pricing differ from European option pricing?

This reading is organized as follows. Section 2 explores two related topics, the pricing of the underlying assets on which derivatives are created and the principle of arbitrage. Section 3 describes the pricing and valuation of forwards, futures, and swaps. Section 4 introduces the pricing and valuation of options. Section 5 provides a summary.

2

FUNDAMENTAL CONCEPTS OF DERIVATIVE PRICING

In this section, we will briefly review the concepts associated with derivatives, the types of derivatives, and the pricing principles of the underlying assets. We will also look at arbitrage, a critical concept that links derivative pricing to the price of the underlying.

2.1 Basic Derivative Concepts

The definition of a derivative is as follows:

A derivative is a financial instrument that derives its performance from the performance of an underlying asset.

A derivative is created as a contract between two parties, the buyer and the seller. Derivatives trade in markets around the world, which include organized exchanges, where highly standardized and regulated versions exist, and over-the-counter markets,

where customized and more lightly regulated versions trade. The basic characteristics of derivatives that influence pricing are not particularly related to where the derivatives trade, but are critically dependent on the types of derivatives.

The two principal types of derivatives are forward commitments and contingent claims. A forward commitment is an obligation to engage in a transaction in the spot market at a future date at terms agreed upon today.¹ By entering into a forward commitment, a party locks in the terms of a transaction that he or she will conduct later. The word “commitment” is critical here. A forward contract is a firm obligation.

There are three types of forward commitments: forward contracts, futures contracts, and swap contracts. These contracts can be referred to more simply as forwards, futures, and swaps.

*A **forward contract** is an over-the-counter derivative contract in which two parties agree that one party, the buyer, will purchase an underlying asset from the other party, the seller, at a later date at a fixed price they agree upon when the contract is signed.*

*A **futures contract** is a standardized derivative contract created and traded on a futures exchange in which two parties agree that one party, the buyer, will purchase an underlying asset from the other party, the seller, at a later date at a price agreed upon by the two parties when the contract is initiated and in which there is a daily settling of gains and losses and a credit guarantee by the futures exchange through its clearinghouse.*

*A **swap contract** is an over-the-counter derivative contract in which two parties agree to exchange a series of cash flows whereby one party pays a variable series that will be determined by an underlying asset or rate and the other party pays either 1) a variable series determined by a different underlying asset or rate or 2) a fixed series.*

As these definitions illustrate, forwards and futures are similar. They both establish the terms of a spot transaction that will occur at a later date. Forwards are customized, less transparent, less regulated, and subject to higher counterparty default risk. Futures are standardized, more transparent, more regulated, and generally immune to counterparty default. A swap is equivalent to a series of forward contracts, a point that will be illustrated later.

A contingent claim is a derivative in which the outcome or payoff is determined by the outcome or payoff of an underlying asset, conditional on some event occurring. Contingent claims include options, credit derivatives, and asset-backed securities. Because credit derivatives and asset-backed securities are highly specialized, this reading will focus only on options.

Recall the definition of an option:

*An **option** is a derivative contract in which one party, the buyer, pays a sum of money to the other party, the seller or writer, and receives the right to either buy or sell an underlying asset at a fixed price either on a specific expiration date or at any time prior to the expiration date.*

Options can be either customized over-the-counter contracts or standardized and traded on exchanges.

¹ Remember that the term “spot market” refers to the market in which the underlying trades. A transaction in the spot market involves a buyer paying for an asset and receiving it right away or at least within a few days, given the normal time required to settle a financial transaction.

Because derivatives take their prices from the price of the underlying, it is important to first understand how the underlying is priced. We will approach the underlying from a slightly different angle, one that emphasizes the often-subtle costs of holding the underlying, which turn out to play a major role in derivative pricing.

2.2 Pricing the Underlying

The four main types of underlying on which derivatives are based are equities, fixed-income securities/interest rates, currencies, and commodities. Equities, fixed-income securities (but not interest rates), currencies, and commodities are all assets. An interest rate is not an asset, but it can be structured as the underlying of a derivative.²

Consider a generic underlying asset. This asset is something of value that you can own. Some assets are financial assets, such as equities, bonds, and currencies, and some are real assets, such as commodities (e.g., gold, oil, and agricultural products) and certain physical objects (e.g., houses, automobiles, and computers).

The price of a financial asset is often determined using a present value of future cash flows approach. The value of the financial asset is the expected future price plus any interim payments such as dividends or coupon interest discounted at a rate appropriate for the risk assumed. Such a definition presumes a period of time over which an investor anticipates holding an asset, known as the holding period. The investor forecasts the price expected to prevail at the end of the holding period as well as any cash flows that are expected to be earned over the holding period. He then takes that predicted future price and expected cash flows and finds their current value by discounting them to the present. Thereby, the investor arrives at a fundamental value for the asset and will compare that value with its current market price. Based on any differential relative to the cost of trading and his confidence in his valuation model, he will make a decision about whether to trade.

2.2.1 The Formation of Expectations

Let us first assume that the underlying does not pay interest or dividends, nor does it have any other cash flows attributable to holding the asset. Exhibit 1 illustrates the basic idea behind the valuation process. Using a probability distribution, the investor forecasts the future over a holding period spanning time 0 to time T . The center of the distribution is the expected price of the asset at time T , which we denote as $E(S_T)$, and represents the investor's prediction of the spot price at T . The investor knows there is risk, so this prediction is imperfect—hence the reason for the probability distribution. Nonetheless, at time 0 the investor makes her best prediction of the spot price at time T , which becomes the foundation for determining what she perceives to be the value of the asset.³

² This is a good example of why it is best not to use the term “underlying asset” when speaking of derivatives. Not all derivatives have underlying assets, but all have underlyings, some of which are not assets. Some other examples of non-asset underlyings used in derivatives are weather, insurance claims, and shipping rates. There are also some derivatives in which the underlying is another derivative.

³ The distribution shown here is symmetrical and relatively similar to a normal distribution, but this characterization is for illustrative purposes only. We are making no assumptions about symmetry or normality at this point.

Exhibit 1 The Formation of Expectations for an Asset**2.2.2 The Required Rate of Return on the Underlying Asset**

To determine the value of the asset, this prediction must be converted into its price or present value. The specific procedure is to discount this expected future price, but that is the easy part. Determining the rate at which to discount the expected future price is the hard part. We use the symbol k to denote this currently unknown discount rate, which is often referred to as the required rate of return and sometimes the expected rate of return or just the expected return. At a minimum, that rate will include the risk-free rate of interest, which we denote as r . This rate represents the opportunity cost, or so-called time value of money, and reflects the price of giving up your money today in return for receiving more money later.

2.2.3 The Risk Aversion of the Investor

At this point, we must briefly discuss an important characteristic of investors: their degree of risk aversion. We can generally characterize three potential types of investors by how they feel about risk: risk averse, risk neutral, or risk seeking.

Risk-neutral investors are willing to engage in risky investments for which they expect to earn only the risk-free rate. Thus, they do not expect to earn a premium for bearing risk. For risk-averse investors, however, risk is undesirable, so they do not consider the risk-free rate an adequate return to compensate them for the risk. Thus, risk-averse investors require a risk premium, which is an increase in the expected return that is sufficient to justify the acceptance of risk. All things being equal, an investment with a higher risk premium will have a lower price. It is very important to understand, however, that risk premiums are not automatically earned. They are merely expectations. Actual outcomes can differ. Clearly stocks that decline in value did not earn risk premiums, even though someone obviously bought them with the expectation that they would. Nonetheless, risk premiums must exist in the long run or risk-averse investors would not accept the risk.

The third type of investor is one we must mention but do not treat as realistic. Risk seekers are those who prefer risk over certainty and will pay more to invest when there is risk, implying a negative risk premium. We almost always assume that investors prefer certainty over uncertainty, so we generally treat a risk-seeking investor as just a theoretical possibility and not a practical reality.⁴

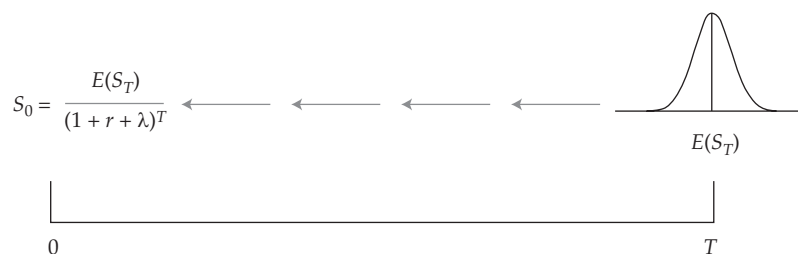
⁴ People who gamble in casinos or play lotteries appear to be risk-seekers, given the advantage of the casino or the lottery organizer, but they are merely earning utility from the game itself, not necessarily from the expected financial outcome.

We will assume that investors are risk averse. To justify taking risk, risk-averse investors require a risk premium. We will use the Greek symbol λ (lambda) to denote the risk premium.⁵

2.2.4 The Pricing of Risky Assets

Exhibit 2 illustrates the process by which an investor obtains the current price, S_0 , by discounting the expected future price of an asset with no interim cash flows, $E(S_T)$, by r (the risk-free rate) plus λ (the risk premium) over the period from 0 to T .

Exhibit 2 Discounting the Expected Future Price to Obtain the Current Price



2.2.5 Other Benefits and Costs of Holding an Asset

Many assets generate benefits and some incur costs to their owners. Some of these costs are monetary and others are nonmonetary. The dividends paid by companies and coupon interest paid by borrowers on their bonds represent obvious benefits to the holders of these securities. With currencies representing investments that earn the risk-free rate in a foreign country, they too generate benefits in the form of interest. Barring default, interest payments on bonds and currencies are relatively certain, so we will treat them as such. Dividend payments are not certain, but dividends do tend to be fairly predictable. As such, we will make an assumption common to most derivative models that dividends are certain.⁶

There is substantial evidence that some commodities generate a benefit that is somewhat opaque and difficult to measure. This benefit is called the **convenience yield**. It represents a nonmonetary advantage of holding the asset. For most financial assets, convenience yields are either nonexistent or extremely limited. Financial assets do not possess beauty that might make a person enjoy owning them just to look at them. Convenience yields are primarily associated with commodities and generally exist as a result of difficulty in either shorting the commodity or unusually tight supplies. For example, if a commodity cannot be sold short without great difficulty or cost, the holder of the commodity has an advantage if market conditions suggest that the commodity should be sold. Also, if a commodity is in short supply, the holders of the commodity can sometimes extract a price premium that is believed by some to be higher than what would be justified in well-functioning markets. The spot price of the commodity could even be above the market's expectation of its future price, a condition that would seem to imply a negative expected return. This scenario raises the question of why anyone would want to hold the commodity if its expected return is negative. The convenience yield provides a possible explanation that attributes an

⁵ Although the risk-free rate is invariant with a country's economy, the risk premium varies with the amount of risk taken. Thus, while the risk-free rate is the same when applied to every investment, the risk premium is not the same for every investment.

⁶ Some derivative models incorporate uncertain dividends and interest, but those are beyond the scope of this introductory reading.

implied but non-financial expected return to the advantage of holding a commodity in short supply. The holder of the commodity has the ability to sell it when market conditions suggest that selling is advisable and short selling is difficult.

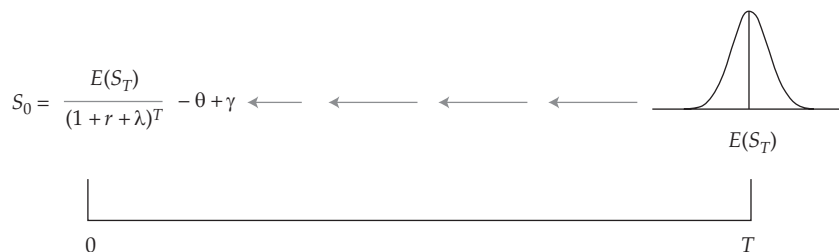
One cost incurred in owning commodities is the cost of storage. One could hardly own gold, oil, or wheat without incurring some costs in storing these assets. There are also costs incurred in protecting and insuring some commodities against theft or destruction. Depending on the commodity, these costs can be quite significant. For financial assets, however, the storage costs are so low that we can safely ignore them.

Finally, there is the opportunity cost of the money invested. If a person buys an asset, he forgoes interest on his money. The effect on this interest is reflected by compounding the price paid for the asset to a future value at the risk-free rate of interest. Thus, an investor who buys a stock that costs £50 in a market in which the risk-free rate is 4% will effectively have paid $£50 \times 1.04 = £52$ a year later. Of course, the stock could be worth any value at that time, and any gain or loss should be determined in comparison to the effective price paid of £52.

As we described earlier, we determine the current price of an asset by discounting the expected future price by the sum of the risk-free rate (r) plus the risk premium (λ). When we introduce costs and benefits of holding the asset, we have to make an adjustment. With the exception of this opportunity cost of money, we will incorporate the effect of these costs and benefits by determining their value at the end of the holding period. Under the assumption that these costs and benefits are certain, we can then discount them at the risk-free rate to obtain their present value. There is a logic to doing it this way (i.e., finding their future value and discounting back to the present, as opposed to finding their present value directly). By finding their future value, we are effectively saying that the costs and benefits adjust the expected payoff at the end of the holding period. But because they are certain, we can discount their effects at the risk-free rate. So we have effectively just found their present value. The net effect is that the costs reduce the current price and the benefits increase the current price. We use the symbol θ (theta) to denote the present value of the costs and γ (gamma) as the present value of any benefits.

The net of the costs and benefits is often referred to by the term **carry**, or sometimes **cost of carry**. The holding, storing, or “carrying” of an asset is said to incur a net cost that is essentially what it takes to “carry” an asset. Exhibit 3 illustrates the effect in which the carry adjusts the price of an asset in the valuation process.

Exhibit 3 Pricing an Asset That Incurs Costs and Generates Benefits



EXAMPLE 1**Pricing the Spot Asset**

- 1 Which of the following factors does **not** affect the spot price of an asset that has no interim costs or benefits?
 - A The time value of money
 - B The risk aversion of investors
 - C The price recently paid by other investors
- 2 Which of the following does **not** represent a benefit of holding an asset?
 - A The convenience yield
 - B An optimistic expected outlook for the asset
 - C Dividends if the asset is a stock or interest if the asset is a bond

Solution to 1:

C is correct. The price recently paid by other investors is past information and does not affect the spot price. The time value of money and the risk aversion of investors determine the discount rate. Only current information is relevant as investors look ahead, not back.

Solution to 2:

B is correct. An optimistic forecast for the asset is not a benefit of holding the asset, but it does appear in the valuation of the asset as a high expected price at the horizon date. Convenience yields and dividends and interest are benefits of holding the asset.

To recap, although the various underlyings differ with respect to the specifics of pricing, all of them are based on expectations, risk, and the costs and benefits of holding a specific underlying. Understanding how assets are priced in the spot market is critical to understanding how derivatives are priced. To understand derivative pricing, it is necessary to establish a linkage between the derivative market and the spot market. That linkage occurs through arbitrage.

2.3 The Principle of Arbitrage

Arbitrage is a type of transaction undertaken when two assets or portfolios produce identical results but sell for different prices. If a trader buys the asset or portfolio at the cheaper price and sells it at the more expensive price, she will generate a net inflow of funds at the start. Because the two assets or portfolios produce identical results, a long position in one and a short position in the other means that at the end of the holding period, the payoffs offset. Hence, no money is gained or lost at the end of the holding period, so there is no risk. The net effect is that the arbitrageur receives money at the start and never has to pay out any money later. Such a situation amounts to free money, like walking down the street, finding money on the ground, and never having to give it up. Exhibit 4 illustrates this process for assets A and B, which have no dividends or other benefits or costs and pay off identically but sell for different prices, with $S_0^A < S_0^B$.

Exhibit 4 Executing an Arbitrage

Given: Assets A and B produce the same values at time T but at time 0 , A is selling for less than B.

$$S_0^A < S_0^B:$$

Buy A at S_0^A

Sell B at S_0^B

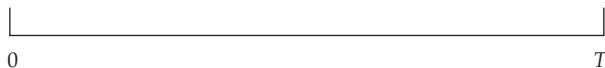
$$\text{Cash flow} = S_0^B - S_0^A (> 0)$$

$$S_T^A = S_T^B:$$

Sell A for S_T^A

Buy B for S_T^B

$$\text{Cash flow} = S_T^A - S_T^B (= 0)$$

**2.3.1 The (In)Frequency of Arbitrage Opportunities**

When arbitrage opportunities exist, traders exploit them very quickly. The combined actions of many traders engaging in the same transaction of buying the low-priced asset or portfolio and selling the high-priced asset or portfolio results in increased demand and an increasing price for the former and decreased demand and a decreasing price for the latter. This market activity will continue until the prices converge. Assets that produce identical results can thus have only one true market price. This rule is called the “law of one price.” With virtually all market participants alert for the possibility of earning such profits at no risk, it should not be surprising that arbitrage opportunities are rare.

In practice, prices need not converge precisely, or even all that quickly, because the transaction cost of exploiting an opportunity could exceed the benefit. For example, say you are walking down the sidewalk of the Champs-Élysées in Paris and notice a €1 coin on the sidewalk. You have a bad back, and it would take some effort to bend over. The transaction cost of exploiting this opportunity without any risk could exceed the benefit of the money. Some arbitrage opportunities represent such small discrepancies that they are not worth exploiting because of transaction costs.

Significant arbitrage opportunities, however, will be exploited. A significant opportunity arises from a price differential large enough to overcome the transaction costs. Any such price differential will continue to be exploited until the opportunity disappears. Thus, if you find a €10 note on the Champs-Élysées sidewalk, there is a good chance you will find it worth picking up (even with your bad back), and even if you do not pick it up, it will probably not be there for long. With enough people alert for such opportunities, only a few will arise, and the ones that do will be quickly exploited and disappear. In this manner, arbitrage makes markets work much more efficiently.

2.3.2 Arbitrage and Derivatives

It may be difficult to conceive of many investments that would produce identical payoffs. Even similar companies such as McDonalds and Burger King, which are in the same line of business, do not perform identically. Their performance may be correlated, but each has its own unique characteristics. For equity securities and with no derivatives involved, about the only such situation that could exist in reality is a stock that trades simultaneously in two different markets, such as Royal Dutch Shell, which trades in Amsterdam and London but is a single company. Clearly there can be only one price. If those two markets operate in different currencies, the currency-adjusted prices should be the same. Bonds issued by the same borrower are also potentially arbitrageable. All bonds of an issuer will be priced off of the term structure of interest rates. Because of this common factor, bonds of different maturities can be arbitrated against each other. But in general, two securities are unlikely to perform identically.

The picture changes, however, if we introduce derivatives. For most derivatives, the payoffs come (derive) directly from the value of the underlying at the expiration of the derivative. Although no one can predict with certainty the value of the underlying at expiration, as soon as that value is determined, the value of the derivative at expiration becomes certain. So, while the performance of McDonalds' stock may have a strong correlation to the performance of Burger King's stock, neither completely determines the other. But derivatives on McDonalds' stock and derivatives on Burger King's stock are completely determined by their respective stocks. All of the uncertainty in a derivative comes from the uncertainty in the underlying. As a result, the price of the derivative is tied to the price of the underlying. That being the case, the derivative can be used to hedge the underlying, or vice versa.

Exhibit 5 illustrates this point. When a long position in the underlying is combined with a short position in the derivative to produce a perfect hedge, all of the risk is eliminated and the position should earn the risk-free rate. If not, arbitrageurs begin to trade. If the position generates a return in excess of the risk-free rate, the arbitrageurs see an opportunity because the hedged position of the underlying (long asset and short derivative) earns more than the risk-free rate and a risk-free loan undertaken as a borrower incurs a cost equal to the risk-free rate. Therefore, implementing the hedged position and borrowing at the risk-free rate earns a return in excess of the risk-free rate, incurs a cost of the risk-free rate, and has no risk. As a result, an investor can earn excess return at no risk without committing any capital. Arbitrageurs will execute this transaction in large volumes, continuing to exploit the pricing discrepancy until market forces push prices back in line such that both risk-free transactions earn the risk-free rate.

Exhibit 5 Hedging the Underlying with a Derivative (or Vice Versa)

Long position in underlying
+ Short position in derivative

Underlying payoff
– Derivative payoff
= Risk-free return



Out of this process, one and only one price can exist for the derivative. Otherwise, there will be an arbitrage opportunity. We typically take the underlying price as given and infer the unique derivative price that prohibits any arbitrage opportunities. Most derivatives pricing models are established on this foundation. We simply assume that no arbitrage opportunities can exist and infer the derivative price that guarantees there are no arbitrage opportunities.

2.3.3 Arbitrage and Replication

Because a long asset and a short derivative on the asset can be combined to produce a position equivalent to a risk-free bond, it follows that the long asset and a short risk-free asset (meaning to borrow at the risk-free rate) can be combined to produce a long derivative. Alternatively, a short derivative and the short risk-free asset can be combined to produce a short asset position. Exhibit 6 shows this process, referred to as **replication**. Replication is the creation of an asset or portfolio from another asset, portfolio, and/or derivative.

Exhibit 6 Arbitrage, Replication, and Derivatives

Long asset	+	Short derivative	=	Long risk-free asset (lending)
Long Asset	+	Short risk-free asset (borrowing)	=	-Long derivative
Short derivative	+	Short risk-free asset (borrowing)	=	-Short asset

If all assets are correctly priced to prohibit arbitrage, however, the ability to replicate seems useless. Why would one replicate an asset or derivative if there is no cost advantage? Buying a government security to earn the risk-free rate is easier than buying the asset and selling a derivative to produce a risk-free position. At this point, that is certainly a reasonable question. As we progress through this material, however, we will relax the assumption that everything is always correctly priced and we will admit the possibility of occasional arbitrage opportunities. For example, it may be more profitable to hedge a portfolio with a derivative to produce a risk-free rate than to invest in the risk-free asset. In addition, we might find that replication can have lower transaction costs. For example, a derivative on a stock index combined with the risk-free asset [Long derivative (Stock index futures) + Long risk-free asset (Lending) = Long asset (Stock index)] can potentially replicate an index fund at lower transaction costs than buying all the securities in the index. Replication is the essence of arbitrage. The ability to replicate something with something else can be valuable to investors, either through pricing differentials, however temporary, or lower transaction costs.

2.3.4 Risk Aversion, Risk Neutrality, and Arbitrage-Free Pricing

Most investors are risk averse. They do not accept risk without the expectation of a return commensurate with that risk. Thus, they require risk premiums to justify the risk. One might think that this point implies a method for pricing derivatives based on the application of a risk premium to the expected payoff of the derivative and its risk. As we will describe later, this methodology is not appropriate in the pricing of derivatives.

As previously described, a derivative can be combined with an asset to produce a risk-free position. This fact does not mean that one *should* create such a combination. It merely means that one *can* do so. The derivative price is the price that guarantees the risk-free combination of the derivative and the underlying produces a risk-free return. The derivative price can then be inferred from the characteristics of the underlying, the characteristics of the derivative, and the risk-free rate. The investor's risk aversion is not a factor in determining the derivative price. Because the risk aversion of the investor is not relevant to pricing the derivative, one can just as easily obtain the derivative price by assuming that the investor is risk neutral. That means that the expected payoff of the derivative can be discounted at the risk-free rate rather than the risk-free rate plus a risk premium. Virtually all derivative pricing models ultimately take this form: discounting the expected payoff of the derivative at the risk-free rate.

The entire process of pricing derivatives is not exactly as we have described it at this point. There is an intermediate step, which entails altering the probabilities of the outcomes from the true probabilities to something called risk-neutral probabilities. We will illustrate this process later in this reading. The important point to understand is

that while the risk aversion of investors is relevant to pricing assets, it is not relevant to pricing derivatives. As such, derivatives pricing is sometimes called **risk-neutral pricing**. Risk-neutral pricing uses the fact that arbitrage opportunities guarantee that a risk-free portfolio consisting of the underlying and the derivative must earn the risk-free rate. There is only one derivative price that meets that condition. Any mispricing of the derivative will lead to arbitrage transactions that drive the derivative price back to where it should be, the price that eliminates arbitrage opportunities.

The overall process of pricing derivatives by arbitrage and risk neutrality is called **arbitrage-free pricing**. We are effectively determining the price of a derivative by assuming that the market is free of arbitrage opportunities. This notion is also sometimes called the **principle of no arbitrage**. If there are no arbitrage opportunities, combinations of assets and/or derivatives that produce the same results must sell for the same price. The correct derivative price assures us that the market is free of arbitrage opportunities.

2.3.5 Limits to Arbitrage

As we previously described, there may be reasons to not pick up a coin lying on the ground. Likewise, some small arbitrage profits are never exploited. A bond selling for €1,000 might offer an arbitrage profit by trading a derivative on the bond and a risk-free asset at a total cost of €999, but the profit of €1 might be exceeded by the transaction costs. Such small differentials can easily remain essentially trapped within the bounds of transaction costs. In addition, arbitrage can require capital. Not everyone can borrow virtually unlimited amounts of money at what amounts to a risk-free rate. Moreover, some transactions can require additional capital to maintain positions. The corresponding gains from an offsetting position might not be liquid. Hence, on paper the position is hedged, but in practice, one position has a cash outflow while the other generates gains on paper that are realized only later. Borrowing against those future gains is not always easy.

Moreover, some apparent arbitrage transactions are not completely risk free. As you will learn later, option pricing requires knowledge of the volatility of the underlying asset, which is information that is not easy to obtain and subject to different opinions. Executing an arbitrage can entail risk if one lacks accurate information on the model inputs.

Some arbitrage positions require short-selling assets that can be difficult to short. Some securities are held only by investors who are unwilling to lend the securities and who, by policy, are not arbitrageurs themselves. Some commodities, in particular, can be difficult and costly to sell short. Hence, the arbitrage might exist in only one direction, which keeps the price from becoming seemingly too high or seemingly too low but permitting it to move virtually without limit in the opposite direction.

Arbitrage positions rely on the ultimate realization by other investors of the existence of the mispricing. For some investors, bearing these costs and risks until other investors drive the price back to its appropriate level can be nearly impossible.

The arbitrage principle is the essence of derivative pricing models. Yet, clearly there are limits to the ability of all investors to execute arbitrage transactions. In studying derivative pricing, it is important to accept the no-arbitrage rule as a paradigm, meaning a framework for analysis and understanding. Although no market experts think that arbitrage opportunities never occur, it is a common belief that finding and exploiting them is a challenging and highly competitive process that will not yield frequent success. But it is important that market participants stay alert for and exploit whatever arbitrage opportunities arise. In response, the market functions more efficiently.

EXAMPLE 2**Arbitrage**

- 1 Which of the following *best* describes an arbitrage opportunity? It is an opportunity to:
 - A earn a risk premium in the short run.
 - B buy an asset at less than its fundamental value.
 - C make a profit at no risk with no capital invested.
- 2 What *most likely* happens when an arbitrage opportunity exists?
 - A Investors trade quickly and prices adjust to eliminate the opportunity.
 - B Risk premiums increase to compensate traders for the additional risk.
 - C Markets cease operations to eliminate the possibility of profit at no risk.
- 3 Which of the following *best* describes how derivatives are priced?
 - A A hedge portfolio is used that eliminates arbitrage opportunities.
 - B The payoff of the underlying is adjusted downward by the derivative value.
 - C The expected future payoff of the derivative is discounted at the risk-free rate plus a risk premium.
- 4 An investor who requires no premium to compensate for the assumption of risk is said to be which of the following?
 - A Risk seeking
 - B Risk averse
 - C Risk neutral
- 5 Which of the following is a limit to arbitrage?
 - A Clearinghouses restrict the transactions that can be arbitrated.
 - B Pricing models do not show whether to buy or sell the derivative.
 - C It may not always be possible to raise sufficient capital to engage in arbitrage.

Solution to 1:

C is correct because it is the only answer that is based on the notion of when an arbitrage opportunity exists: when two identical assets or portfolios sell for different prices. A risk premium earned in the short run can easily have occurred through luck. Buying an asset at less than fair value might not even produce a profit.

Solution to 2:

A is correct. The combined actions of traders push prices back in line to a level at which no arbitrage opportunities exist. Markets certainly do not shut down, and risk premiums do not adjust and, in fact, have no relevance to arbitrage profits.

Solution to 3:

A is correct. A hedge portfolio is formed that eliminates arbitrage opportunities and implies a unique price for the derivative. The other answers are incorrect because the underlying payoff is not adjusted by the derivative value and the discount rate of the derivative does not include a risk premium.

Solution to 4:

C is correct. Risk-seeking investors give away a risk premium because they enjoy taking risk. Risk-averse investors expect a risk premium to compensate for the risk. Risk-neutral investors neither give nor receive a risk premium because they have no feelings about risk.

Solution to 5:

C is correct. It may not always be possible to raise sufficient capital to engage in arbitrage. Clearinghouses do not restrict arbitrage. Pricing models show what the price of the derivative should be.

Thus, comparison with the market price will indicate if the derivative is overpriced and should be sold or if it is underpriced and should be purchased.

2.4 The Concept of Pricing vs. Valuation

In equity markets, analysis is undertaken with the objective of determining the value, sometimes called the fundamental value, of a stock. When a stock trades in the market for a price that differs from its fundamental value, investors will often buy or sell the stock based on the perceived mispricing. The fundamental value of a stock is typically determined by analyzing the company's financial statements, projecting its earnings and dividends, determining a discount rate based on the risk, and finding the present value of the future dividends. These steps make up the essence of dividend discount models. Other approaches include comparing the book value of a company to its market value, thereby using book value as a proxy for fundamental value, or by application of a price/earnings ratio to projected next-period earnings, or by discounting free cash flow. Each of these approaches purports to estimate the company's fundamental value, leading to the notion that a company is worth something that may or may not correspond to its price in the market.

In derivative markets, the notion of valuation as a representation of fundamental value is still a valid concept, but the terminology can be somewhat different and can lead to some confusion. Options are not a problem in this regard. They can be analyzed to determine their fundamental value, and the market price can be compared with the fundamental value. Any difference can then presumably be exploited via arbitrage. The combined actions of numerous investors should ultimately lead to the market price converging to its fundamental value, subject to the above limits to arbitrage.

The world of forwards, futures, and swaps, however, uses different terminology with respect to price and value. These contracts do not require the outlay of cash at the start the way an option, stock, or bond does. Forwards, futures, and swaps start off with values of zero. Then as the underlying moves, their values become either positive or negative. The forward, futures, or swap price is a concept that represents the fixed price or rate at which the underlying will be purchased at a later date. It is not an amount to be paid at the start. This fixed price or rate is embedded into the contract while the value will fluctuate as market conditions change. But more importantly, the value and price are not at all comparable with each other.

Consider a simple example. Suppose you own a stock priced at \$102. You have a short forward contract to sell the stock at a price of \$100 one year from now. The risk-free rate is 4%. Your position is riskless because you know that one year from now, you will sell the stock for \$100. Thus, you know you will get \$100 one year from now, which has a present value of $\$100/(1.04) = \96.15 . Notice the discounting at the risk-free rate, which is appropriate because the position is riskless. Your overall position is that you own an asset worth \$102 and are short a contract worth something, and the two positions combine to have a value of \$96.15. Therefore, the forward contract must have a value of $\$96.15 - \$102 = -\$5.85$. Your forward contract is thus worth $-\$5.85$. To

the party on the opposite side, it is worth +\$5.85.⁷ The price of the forward contract is still \$100, which was set when you created the contract at an earlier date. As you can see, the \$100 forward price is not comparable to the \$5.85 value of the contract.

Although the forward price is fixed, any new forward contract calling for delivery of the same asset at the same time will have a different price. We will cover that point in more detail later. For now, it is important to see that your contract has a price of \$100 but a value of -\$5.85, which are two entirely different orders of magnitude. This information does not imply that the forward contract is mispriced. The value is the amount of wealth represented by owning the forward contract. The price is one of the terms the parties agreed on when they created the contract.⁸ This idea applies in the same manner for futures and swaps.

PRICING AND VALUATION OF FORWARD COMMITMENTS

3

In this section, we will go into pricing forward commitments in a little more detail. Let us start by establishing that today, at time 0, we create a forward commitment that expires at time T . The value of the underlying today is S_0 . At expiration the underlying value is S_T , which is not known at the initiation of the contract.

3.1 Pricing and Valuation of Forward Contracts

Previously, we noted that price and value are entirely different concepts for forward commitments. We gave an example of a forward contract with a price of \$100 but a value of -\$5.85 to the seller and +\$5.85 to the buyer. In the next subsection, we will delve more deeply into understanding these concepts of pricing and valuation for forward contracts.

3.1.1 Pricing and Valuation of Forward Contracts at Expiration

Recall that a forward contract specifies that one party agrees to buy the underlying from the other at the expiration date at a price agreed on at the start of the contract. Suppose that you enter into a contract with another party in which you will buy a used car from that party in one year at a price of \$10,000. Then \$10,000 is the forward price. One year later, when the contract expires, you are committed to paying \$10,000 and accepting delivery of the car. Let us say that at that time, you check the used car market and find that an identical car is worth \$10,800. How much is your forward contract worth to you at that time? It obligates you to pay \$10,000 for a car that you would otherwise have to pay \$10,800. Thus, the contract benefits you by \$800, so its value is \$800. If you were on the opposite side of the transaction, its value would be -\$800. If the market price of the car were below \$10,000, the contract would have negative value to you and the mirror image positive value to the seller.

⁷ This concept of the value of the forward contract as it evolves toward expiration is sometimes referred to as its mark-to-market value. The same notion is applicable to swaps. In futures, of course, contracts are automatically marked to market by the clearinghouse, and gains and losses are converted into actual cash flows from one party to the other.

⁸ The forward price is more like the exercise price of the option. It is the price the two parties agree will be paid at a future date for the underlying. Of course, the option has the feature that the holder need not ever pay that price, which is the case if the holder chooses not to exercise the option.

This example leads us to our first important derivative pricing result. The forward price, established at the initiation date of contract is $F_0(T)$. Let us denote the value at expiration of the forward contract as $V_T(T)$. This value is formally stated as

$$V_T(T) = S_T - F_0(T) \quad (1)$$

In words,

The value of a forward contract at expiration is the spot price of the underlying minus the forward price agreed to in the contract.

In the financial world, we generally define value as the value to the long position, so the above definition is generally correct but would be adjusted if we look at the transaction from the point of view of the short party. In that case, we would multiply the value to the long party by -1 to calculate the value to the short party. Alternatively, the value to the short party is the forward price minus the spot price at expiration.

If a forward contract could be initiated right at the instant of expiration, the forward price would clearly be the spot price. Such a contract would essentially be a spot transaction.

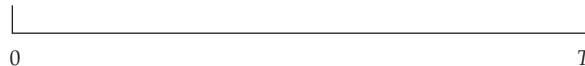
3.1.2 Pricing and Valuation at Initiation Date

In Exhibit 7, we see the nature of the problem of pricing a forward contract. We are situated at time 0, facing an uncertain future. At the horizon date, time T , the underlying price will be S_T . Of course, at time 0 we do not know what S_T will turn out to be. Yet at time 0, we need to establish the forward price, $F_0(T)$, which is the price we agree to pay at time T to purchase the asset.

Exhibit 7 The Time Horizon of Forward Contracts

Agree to pay
 $F_0(T)$ at time T
to buy the asset

Pay $F_0(T)$ and
receive the
asset worth S_T



When a forward contract is initiated, neither party pays anything to the other. It is a valueless contract, neither an asset nor a liability. Therefore, its value at initiation is zero:

$$V_0(T) = 0 \quad (2)$$

The forward price that the parties agree to at the initiation date of the contract is a special price that results in the contract having zero value and prohibiting arbitrage. This is our first important result:

Because neither the long nor the short pays anything to the other at the initiation date of a forward contract, the value of a forward contract when initiated is zero.

If this statement were not true and one party paid a sum of money to the other, the party receiving the money could find another party and engage in the opposite transaction, with no money paid to the other on this second contract. The two transactions would completely offset, thereby eliminating the risk. Yet, the first party would have captured some cash from the second and consequently earned an arbitrage profit because his position is completely hedged. He would walk away with money

and never have to worry about paying it back. The forward price is the price the two parties agree on that generates a value of zero at the initiation date. Finding that price is actually quite easy.

Consider a very simple asset price at S_0 today that pays no dividends or interest, nor does it yield any nonfinancial benefits or incur any carrying costs. As described earlier, we can peer into the future, but at best we can make only a forecast of the price of this asset at our horizon date of time T . That forecast was previously referred to as the expected spot price at expiration, $E(S_T)$. On the surface, it might seem that pricing a forward contract would somehow involve a discounting of the expected spot price. As we said earlier, however, that is not how derivatives are priced—they are priced using arbitrage.

Suppose we hold the asset and enter into a forward contract to sell the asset at the price $F_0(T)$. It should be easy to see that we have constructed a risk-free position. We know that the asset, currently worth S_0 , will be sold later at $F_0(T)$ and that this price should guarantee a risk-free return. Thus, we should find the following relationship,

$$\frac{F_0(T)}{S_0} = (1 + r)^T \quad (3)$$

We can easily solve for the forward price to obtain

$$F_0(T) = S_0(1 + r)^T \quad (4)$$

Or, in words,

The forward price is the spot price compounded at the risk-free rate over the life of the contract.

There is a nice logic to this relationship. While the spot price is what someone would have to pay today to buy the asset, a forward contract locks in the purchase price at the horizon date. When that date arrives, the investor will own the asset. Instead of buying the asset today, suppose the investor uses the forward contract to guarantee that she will own the asset at the horizon date. By using the forward contract, the investor will not have committed the money, S_0 , that would have forgone interest at the rate r for the period 0 to T . Notice how the risk premium on the asset does not directly appear in the pricing relationship. It does appear implicitly, because it determines the spot price paid to buy the asset. Knowing the spot price, however, eliminates the necessity of determining the risk premium. The derivatives market can simply let the spot market derive the risk premium.

As a simple example, let us say the underlying price, S_0 , is £50, the risk-free rate, r , is 3%, and the contract expires in three months, meaning that $T = 3/12 = 0.25$. Then the forward price is $£50(1.03)^{0.25} = £50.37$. Thus, the two parties would agree that the buyer will pay £50.37 to the seller in three months, and the seller will deliver the underlying to the buyer at expiration.

Now suppose the asset generates cash payments and/or benefits and incurs storage costs. As we discussed, the net cost of carry consists of the benefits, denoted as γ (dividends or interest plus convenience yield), minus the costs, denoted as θ , both of which are in present value form. To put these concepts in future value form, we simply compound them at the risk-free rate, $(\gamma - \theta)(1 + r)^T$. Because this is their value at the expiration date of the contract, we can add them to $F_0(T)$ in Equation 3, thereby restating that equation as

$$(1 + r)^T = \frac{F_0(T) + (\gamma - \theta)(1 + r)^T}{S_0}$$

The numerator is how much money we end up with at T . Rearranging, we obtain the forward price as

$$F_0(T) = (S_0 - \gamma + \theta)(1 + r)^T$$

or

$$F_0(T) = S_0(1 + r)^T - (\gamma - \theta)(1 + r)^T$$

(5)

We see that the forward price determined using Equation 4 is reduced by the future value of any benefits and increased by the future value of any costs. In other words,

The forward price of an asset with benefits and/or costs is the spot price compounded at the risk-free rate over the life of the contract minus the future value of those benefits and costs.

Again, the logic is straightforward. To acquire a position in the asset at time T , an investor could buy the asset today and hold it until time T . Alternatively, he could enter into a forward contract, committing him to buying the asset at T at the price $F_0(T)$. He would end up at T holding the asset, but the spot transaction would yield benefits and incur costs, whereas the forward transaction would forgo the benefits but avoid the costs.

Assume the benefits exceed the costs. Then the forward transaction would return less than the spot transaction. The formula adjusts the forward price downward by the expression $-(\gamma - \theta)(1 + r)^T$ to reflect this net loss over the spot transaction. In other words, acquiring the asset in the forward market would be cheaper because it forgoes benefits that exceed the costs. That does not mean the forward strategy is better. It costs less but also produces less. Alternatively, if the costs exceeded the benefits, the forward price would be higher because the forward contract avoids the costs at the expense of the lesser benefits.

Returning to our simple example, suppose the present value of the benefits is $\gamma = \text{£}3$ and the present value of the costs is $\theta = \text{£}4$. The forward price would be $\text{£}50(1.03)^{0.25} - (\text{£}3 - \text{£}4)(1.03)^{0.25} = \text{£}51.38$. The forward price, which was $\text{£}50.37$ without these costs and benefits, is now higher because the carrying costs exceed the benefits.

The value of the contract when initiated is zero provided the forward price conforms to the appropriate pricing formula. To keep the analysis as simple as possible, consider the case in which the asset yields no benefits and incurs no costs. Going long the forward contract or going long the asset produces the same position at T : ownership of the asset. Nonetheless, the strategies are not equivalent. Going long the forward contract enables the investor to avoid having to pay the price of the asset, S_0 , so she would collect interest on the money. Thus, the forward strategy would have a value of S_0 , reflecting the investment of that much cash invested in risk-free bonds, plus the value of the forward contract. The spot strategy would have a value of S_0 , reflecting the investment in the asset. These two strategies must have equal values. Hence, the value of the forward contract must be zero.

Although a forward contract has zero value at the start, it will not have zero value during its life. We now take a look at what happens during the life of the contract.

3.1.3 Pricing and Valuation during the Life of the Contract

We previously worked an example in which a forward contract established with a price of \$100 later has a value of $-\$5.85$ to the seller and $+\$5.85$ to the buyer. Generally we would say the value is $\$5.85$. We explained that with the spot price at \$102, a party that is long the asset and short the forward contract would guarantee the sale of the asset priced at \$102 at a price of \$100 in one year. The present value of \$100 in one year at 4% is \$96.15. Thus, the party guarantees that his \$102 asset will be effectively sold at a present value of \$96.15, for a present value loss of \$5.85.

In general, we can say that

The value of a forward contract is the spot price of the underlying asset minus the present value of the forward price.

Again, the logic is simple. A forward contract provides a type of synthetic position in the asset, for which we promise to pay the forward price at expiration. Thus, the value of the forward contract is the value of the asset minus the present value of the forward price. Let us write out this relationship using $V_t(T)$ as the value of the forward contract at time t , which is some point in time after the contract is initiated and before it expires:

$$V_t(T) = S_t - F_0(T)(1 + r)^{-(T-t)} \quad (6)$$

Note that we are working with the spot price at t , but the forward price was fixed when the contract was initiated.⁹

Now, recall the problem we worked in which the underlying had a price of £50 and the contract was initiated with a three-month life at a price of £50.37. Move one month later, so that the remaining time is two months: $T - t = 2/12 = 0.167$. Let the underlying price be £52. The value of the contract would be $£52 - £50.37(1.03)^{-0.167} = £1.88$.

If the asset has a cost of carry, we must make only a small adjustment:

$$V_t(T) = S_t - (\gamma - \theta)(1 + r)^t - F_0(T)(1 + r)^{-(T-t)} \quad (7)$$

Note how we adjust the formula by the net of benefits minus costs. The forward contract forgoes the benefits and avoids the costs of holding the asset. Consequently, we adjust the value downward to reflect the forgone benefits and upward to reflect the avoided costs. Remember that the costs (θ) and benefits (γ) are expressed on a present value basis as of time 0. We need their value at time t . We could compound them from 0 to T and then discount them back to t by the period $T - t$, but a shorter route is to simply compound them from 0 to t . In the problem we previously worked, in which we priced the forward contract when the asset has costs and benefits, the benefits (γ) were £3 and the costs (θ) were £4, giving us a forward price of £51.38. We have now moved one month ahead, so $t = 1/12 = 0.0833$ and $T - t = 2/12 = 0.167$. Hence the value of the forward contract would be $£52 - (£3 - £4)(1.03)^{0.0833} - £51.38(1.03)^{-0.167} = £1.88$. In this case, the effect of the compounding of the net of costs and benefits (£1) over one month has no appreciable effect on the value, but that result is not a general rule.

It is important to note that although we say that Equation 7 holds during the life of the contract at some arbitrary time t , it also holds at the initiation date and at expiration. For the initiation date, we simply change t to 0 in Equation 7. Then we substitute Equation 5 for $F_0(T)$ in Equation 7, obtaining $V_0(T) = 0$, confirming that the value of a forward contract at initiation is zero. At expiration, we let $t = T$ in Equation 7 and obtain the spot price minus the forward price, as presented in Equation 1.¹⁰

3.1.4 A Word about Forward Contracts on Interest Rates

Forward contracts in which the underlying is an interest rate are called **forward rate agreements**, or FRAs. These instruments differ slightly from most other forward contracts in that the underlying is not an asset. Changes in interest rates, such as the value of an asset, are unpredictable. Moreover, virtually every company and organization is affected by the uncertainty of interest rates. Hence, FRAs are very useful devices for many companies. FRAs are forward contracts that allow participants to

⁹ An alternative approach to valuing a forward contract during its life is to determine the price of a new forward contract that would offset the old one. The discounted difference between the new forward price and the original forward price will lead to the same value.

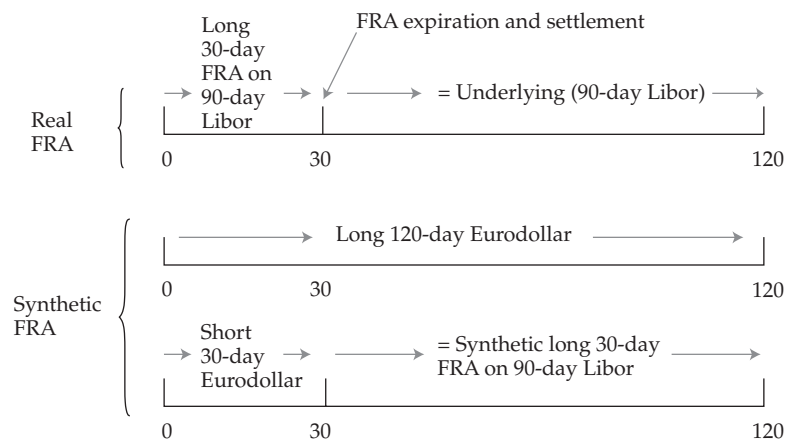
¹⁰ You might be wondering whether the cost and benefit terms disappear when $t = T$. With the costs and benefits defined as those incurred over the period t to T , at expiration their value is zero by definition.

make a known interest payment at a later date and receive in return an unknown interest payment. In that way, a participant whose business will involve borrowing at a future date can hedge against an increase in interest rates by buying an FRA (the long side) and locking in a fixed payment and receiving a random payment that offsets the unknown interest payment it will make on its loan. Note that the FRA seller (the short side) is hedging against a decrease in interest rates. Also, consider that the FRA seller could be a lender wishing to lock in a fixed rate on a loan it will make at a future date.

Even though FRAs do not involve an underlying asset, they can still be combined with an underlying asset to produce a hedged position, thereby leading to fairly straightforward pricing and valuation equations. The math is a little more complex than the math for forwards on assets, but the basic ideas are the same.

FRAs are often based on Libor, the London Interbank Offered Rate, which represents the rate on a Eurodollar time deposit, a loan in dollars from one London bank to another.¹¹ As an example, assume we are interested in going long a 30-day FRA with a fixed rate (the FRA rate) in which the underlying is 90-day Libor. A long position means that in 30 days, we will make a known interest payment and receive an interest payment corresponding to the discounted difference between 90-day Libor on that day and the FRA rate. We can either enter into a 30-day FRA on 90-day Libor or create a synthetic FRA. To do the latter, we would go long a 120-day Eurodollar time deposit and short a 30-day Eurodollar time deposit. Exhibit 8 shows the structure of this strategy. We omit some of the details here, such as how much face value we should take on the two Eurodollar transactions as well as the size of the FRA. Those technical issues are covered in more advanced material. At this time, we focus on the fact that going long over the 120-day period and short over the 30-day period leaves an investor with no exposure over the 30-day period and then converts to a position that starts 30 days from now and matures 90 days later. This synthetic position corresponds to a 30-day FRA on 90-day Libor. Exhibit 8 illustrates this point.¹²

Exhibit 8 Real FRA and Synthetic FRA (30-Day FRA on 90-Day Libor)



¹¹ Other rates such as Euribor (Euro Interbank Offered Rate) and Tibor (Tokyo Interbank Offered Rate) are also used.

¹² The real FRA we show appears to imply that an investor enters into a Eurodollar transaction in 30 days that matures 90 days later. This is not technically true. The investor does, however, engage in a cash settlement in 30 days that has the same value and economic form as such a transaction. Specifically, settlement at expiration of the FRA is an amount equal to the discounted difference between the underlying 90-day Libor rate on that day and the FRA rate multiplied by a notional principal amount. These details are covered in the Level II and Level III CFA Program curriculum.

FRAs, and indeed all forward contracts relating to bonds and interest rates, are closely tied to the term structure of interest rates, a concept covered in virtually all treatments of fixed-income securities. Buying a 120-day zero-coupon bond and selling a 30-day zero-coupon bond produces a forward position in a 90-day zero-coupon bond that begins in 30 days. From that forward position, one can infer the forward rate. It would then be seen that the FRA rate *is* the forward rate, even though the derivative itself is not a forward contract on a bond.

EXAMPLE 3**Forward Contract Pricing and Valuation**

- 1 Which of the following *best* describes the difference between the price of a forward contract and its value?
 - A The forward price is fixed at the start, and the value starts at zero and then changes.
 - B The price determines the profit to the buyer, and the value determines the profit to the seller.
 - C The forward contract value is a benchmark against which the price is compared for the purposes of determining whether a trade is advisable.
- 2 Which of the following *best* describes the value of the forward contract at expiration? The value is the price of the underlying:
 - A minus the forward price.
 - B divided by the forward price.
 - C minus the compounded forward price.
- 3 Which of the following factors does *not* affect the forward price?
 - A The costs of holding the underlying
 - B Dividends or interest paid by the underlying
 - C Whether the investor is risk averse, risk seeking, or risk neutral
- 4 Which of the following *best* describes the forward rate of an FRA?
 - A The spot rate implied by the term structure
 - B The forward rate implied by the term structure
 - C The rate on a zero-coupon bond of maturity equal to that of the forward contract

Solution to 1:

A is correct. The forward price is fixed at the start, whereas the value starts at zero and then changes. Both price and value are relevant in determining the profit for both parties. The forward contract value is not a benchmark for comparison with the price.

Solution to 2:

A is correct because the holder of the contract gains the difference between the price of the underlying and the forward price. That value can, of course, be negative, which will occur if the holder is forced to buy the underlying at a price higher than the market price.

Solution to 3:

C is correct. The costs of holding the underlying, known as carrying costs, and the dividends and interest paid by the underlying are extremely relevant to the forward price. How the investor feels about risk is irrelevant, because the forward price is determined by arbitrage.

Solution to 4:

B is correct. FRAs are based on Libor, and they represent forward rates, not spot rates. Spot rates are needed to determine forward rates, but they are not equal to forward rates. The rate on a zero-coupon bond of maturity equal to that of the forward contract describes a spot rate.

As noted, we are not covering the details of derivative pricing but rather are focusing on the intuition. At this point, we have covered the intuition of pricing forward contracts. We now move to futures contracts.

3.2 Pricing and Valuation of Futures Contracts

Futures contracts differ from forward contracts in that they have standard terms, are traded on a futures exchange, and are more heavily regulated, whereas forward contracts are typically private, customized transactions. Perhaps the most important distinction is that they are marked to market on a daily basis, meaning that the accumulated gains and losses from the previous day's trading session are deducted from the accounts of those holding losing positions and transferred to the accounts of those holding winning positions. This daily settling of gains and losses enables the futures exchange to guarantee that a party that earns a profit from a futures transaction will not have to worry about collecting the money. Thus, futures exchanges provide a credit guarantee, which is facilitated through the use of a clearinghouse. The clearinghouse collects and disburses cash flows from the parties on a daily basis, thereby settling obligations quickly before they accumulate to much larger amounts. There is no absolute assurance that a clearinghouse will not fail, but none has ever done so since the first one was created in the 1920s.

The pattern of cash flows in a futures contract is quite similar to that in a forward contract. Suppose you enter into a forward contract two days before expiration in which you agree to buy an asset at €100, the forward price. Two days later, the asset is selling for €103, and the contract expires. You therefore pay €100 and receive an asset worth €103, for a gain of €3. If the contract were cash settled, instead of involving physical delivery, you would receive €3 in cash, which you could use to defer a portion of the cost of the asset. The net effect is that you are buying the asset for €103, paying €100 plus the €3 profit on the forward contract.

Had you chosen a futures contract, the futures price at expiration would still converge to the spot price of €103. But now it would matter what the futures settlement price was on the next to last day. Let us assume that price was €99. That means on the next to last day, your account would be marked to market for a loss of €1, the price of €100 having fallen to €99. That is, you would be charged €1, with the money passed on to the opposite party. But then on the last day, your position would be marked from €99 to €103, a gain of €4. Your net would be €1 lost on the first day and €4 gained on the second for a total of €3. In both situations you gain €3, but with the forward contract, you gain it all at expiration, whereas with the futures contract, you gain it over two days. With this two-day example, the interest on the interim cash flow would be virtually irrelevant, but over longer periods and with sufficiently high interest rates, the difference in the amount of money you end up with could be noticeable.

The value of a futures contract is the accumulated gain or loss on a futures contract since its previous day's settlement. When that value is paid out in the daily settlement, the futures price is effectively reset to the settlement price and the value goes to zero. The different patterns of cash flows for forwards and futures can lead to differences in the pricing of forwards versus futures. But there are some conditions under which the pricing is the same. It turns out that if interest rates were constant, forwards and futures would have the same prices. The differential will vary with the volatility of interest rates. In addition, if futures prices and interest rates are uncorrelated, forwards and futures prices will be the same. If futures prices are positively correlated with interest rates, futures contracts are more desirable to holders of long positions than are forwards. The reason is because rising prices lead to futures profits that are reinvested in periods of rising interest rates, and falling prices leads to losses that occur in periods of falling interest rates. It is far better to receive cash flows in the interim than all at expiration under such conditions. This condition makes futures more attractive than forwards, and therefore their prices will be higher than forward prices. A negative correlation between futures prices and interest rates leads to the opposite interpretation, with forwards being more desirable than futures to the long position. The more desirable contract will tend to have the higher price.

The practical realities, however, are that the derivatives industry makes virtually no distinction between futures and forward prices.¹³ Thus, we will make no distinction between futures and forward pricing, except possibly in noting some subtle issues that may arise from time to time.

EXAMPLE 4

Futures Pricing and Valuation

- 1 Which of the following *best* describes how futures contract payoffs differ from forward contract payoffs?
 - A Forward contract payoffs are larger.
 - B They are equal, ignoring the time value of money.
 - C Futures contract payoffs are larger if the underlying is a commodity.
- 2 Which of the following conditions will not make futures and forward prices equivalent?
 - A Interest rates are constant.
 - B Futures prices are uncorrelated with interest rates.
 - C The volatility of the forward price is different from the volatility of the futures price.
- 3 With respect to the value of a futures contract, which of the following statements is *most* accurate? The value is the:
 - A futures price minus the spot price.
 - B present value of the expected payoff at expiration.
 - C accumulated gain since the previous settlement, which resets to zero upon settlement.

¹³ At the time of this writing, many forwards (and swaps) are being processed through clearinghouses, a response to changes brought about by key legislation in several countries that was adopted following the financial crises of 2008. These OTC instruments are thus being effectively marked to market in a similar manner to the futures contracts described here. The full extent of this evolution of OTC trading through clearinghouses is not yet clear.

Solution to 1:

B is correct. Forward payoffs occur all at expiration, whereas futures payoffs occur on a day-to-day basis but would equal forward payoffs ignoring interest. Payoffs could differ, so forward payoffs are not always larger. The type of underlying is not relevant to the point of which payoff is larger.

Solution to 2:

C is correct. Constant interest rates or the condition that futures prices are uncorrelated with interest rates will make forward and futures prices equivalent. The volatility of forward and futures prices has no relationship to any difference.

Solution to 3:

C is correct. Value accumulates from the previous settlement and goes to zero when distributed.

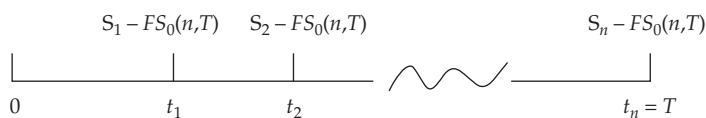
3.3 Pricing and Valuation of Swap Contracts

Recall the structure of a forward contract, as depicted in Exhibit 7. The investor is at time 0 and needs to determine the price, $F_0(T)$, that she will agree to pay at time T to purchase the asset. This price is set such that there is no value to the contract at that time. Value can arise later as prices change, but when initiated, the contract has zero value. Neither party pays anything to the other at the start.

Now consider a swap starting at time 0 and ending at time T . We will let this swap be the type that involves a fixed payment exchanged for a floating payment. The contract specifies that the two parties will make a series of n payments at times that we will designate as 1, 2, ..., n , with the last payment occurring at time T . On each of these payment dates, the owner of the swap makes a payment of $FS_0(n, T)$ and receives a payment based on the value of the underlying at the time of each respective payment, S_1, S_2, \dots, S_n . So from the point of view of the buyer, the sequence of cash flows from the swap is $S_1 - FS_0(n, T), S_2 - FS_0(n, T), \dots, S_n - FS_0(n, T)$. The notation $FS_0(n, T)$ denotes the fixed payment established at time 0 for a swap consisting of n payments with the last payment at time T . We denote the time to each payment as t_1, t_2, \dots, t_n , where $t_n = T$. This structure is shown in Exhibit 9.

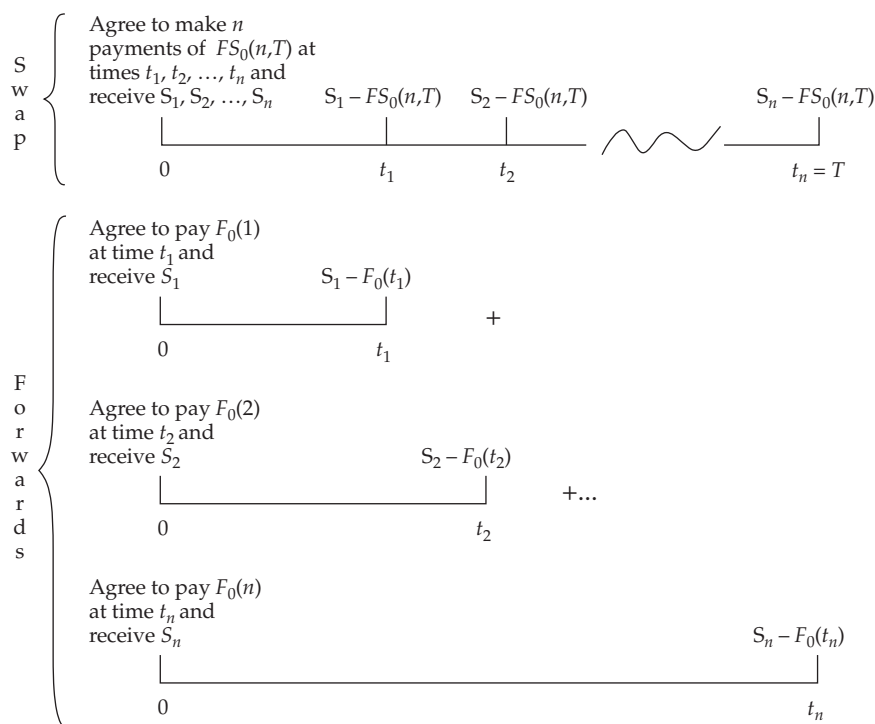
Exhibit 9 Structure of Cash Flows in a Swap

Agree to make n payments of $FS_0(n, T)$ at times t_1, t_2, \dots, t_n and receive S_1, S_2, \dots, S_n



Comparing Exhibit 7 with Exhibit 9 reveals some similarities. A swap is in some sense a series of forward contracts, specifically a set of contracts expiring at various times in which one party agrees to make a fixed payment and receive a variable payment. Now consider Exhibit 10, which breaks down a swap into a series of implicit forward contracts, with the expiration of each forward contract corresponding to a swap payment date.

Exhibit 10 A Swap as a Series of Forward Contracts



Recall from the material on forward contracts that the forward price is determined by the spot price and the net cost of carry (Equation 5), the latter being partially determined by the length of time of the contract. It should be obvious that a forward contract expiring at time t_1 will not have the same price, $F_0(t_1)$, as a forward contract expiring at time t_2 , $F_0(t_2)$, and likewise for all of the implicit remaining forward contracts expiring up through time t_n . The cost of carrying an asset over different time periods will vary by the length of the time periods. In other words, the prices of the implicit forward contracts imbedded in a swap will not be equal:

$$F_0(t_1) \neq F_0(t_2) \neq \dots \neq F_0(t_n)$$

But for a swap, all the fixed payments are equal. So, how can we equate a swap to a series of forward contracts? It turns out that we can, and in doing so, we recall a valuable point about forward pricing.

Recall that the forward price is the price that produces a zero value of the contract at the start. Zero value is essential if there is no exchange of cash flows from one party to the other. And although no exchange of cash flows is customary, it is not mandatory. The parties could agree on any forward price at the start. If the zero-value forward price were \$30 and the parties agreed on a price of \$28, it should be apparent that the buyer would be getting a great price. The seller, being rational, would require that the buyer compensate him at the start. The seller should be getting \$30 at expiration and instead will get \$28. So the buyer should compensate the seller to the amount of the present value of \$2 at expiration. If the parties agree on a price greater than \$30, similar compensation would have to be paid from seller to buyer.

A forward transaction that starts with a nonzero value is called an off-market forward. There is generally no prohibition on the use of off-market forward contracts, so two parties can engage in a series of forward contracts at whatever fixed price they so desire. Assume they agree on the price $FS_0(T)$. That is, each forward contract will be created at the fixed price that corresponds to the fixed price of a swap of the same

maturity with payments made at the same dates as the series of forward contracts. That means that some of the forward contracts would have positive values and some would have negative values, but their combined values would equal zero.

Now, it sounds like that price would be hard to find, but it is not. We would not, however, go about finding it by taking random guesses. Doing so would take seemingly forever. Along the way, we would notice that some of these implicit forward contracts would have positive values and some would have negative values. If the positives outweighed the negatives, then the overall swap value would be positive, which is too high. Likewise, we might plug in a number that would produce an overall negative value, with the implicit forward contract values tending to be predominantly negative, which is too low.

Not surprisingly, we can find that price easily by appealing to the principle of arbitrage. We said that the principle of arbitrage will guide us *all the way through* derivative pricing. We will omit the details, but here is the general idea.

Suppose we buy an asset that pays the amounts S_1, S_2, \dots, S_n at times t_1, t_2, \dots, t_n . These are unknown amounts. A simple example would be a floating-rate bond for which the S values represent the coupons that are unknown at the start but ultimately are determined by the evolution of interest rates. Then suppose we finance the purchase of that asset by borrowing money that we promise to repay with equal fixed payments of $FS_0(T)$. That strategy replicates the swap. As you have already learned, replication is the key to pricing.

Valuation of the swap during its life again appeals to replication and the principle of no arbitrage. We will find a way to reproduce the remaining payments on the swap with other transactions. The value of that strategy is the value of the swap.

To obtain the fixed rate on the swap or to value it later during its life, we will need information from the market for the underlying. As we previously noted, there are derivatives on bonds and interest rates, equities, currencies, and commodities. It is not possible to provide a general and simple statement of how to price swaps that covers all of these cases, but that topic is covered in advanced material.

EXAMPLE 5

Swap Pricing and Valuation

- 1 A swap is equivalent to a series of:
 - A forward contracts, each created at the swap price.
 - B long forward contracts, matched with short futures contracts.
 - C forward contracts, each created at their appropriate forward prices.
- 2 If the present value of the payments in a forward contract or swap is not zero, which of the following is most likely to be true?
 - A The contract cannot legally be created.
 - B The contract must be replicated by another contract with zero value.
 - C The party whose stream of payments to be received is greater has to pay the other party the present value difference.

Solution to 1:

A is correct. Each implicit forward contract is said to be off-market, because it is created at the swap price, not the appropriate forward price, which would be the price created in the forward market.

Solution to 2:

C is correct. The party whose stream of payments to be received is greater has to pay the other party the present value difference. Such a contract can legally be created, but the party receiving the greater present value must compensate the other party with a cash payment at the start. Replication is never required.

PRICING AND VALUATION OF OPTIONS

4

Unlike a forward, futures, or swap contract, an option is clearly an asset to the holder and a liability to the seller. The buyer of an option pays a sum of money, called the premium, and receives the right to buy (a call) or sell (a put) the underlying. The seller receives the premium and undertakes a potential obligation because the buyer has the right, but not the obligation, to exercise the option. Options are, therefore, contingent claims. Pricing the option is the same as assigning its value. Some confusion from that terminology may still arise, in that an option could trade in the market for an amount that differs from its value.

As mentioned, there are two general types of options. Calls represent the right to buy, and puts represent the right to sell. There are also two important exercise characteristics of options. American options allow exercise at any time up to the expiration, while European options allow exercise only at expiration. It is important to understand that the terms “American” and “European” have no relationship to where the options are traded. Because the right to exercise can be a complex feature of an option, European options are easier to understand, and we will focus on them first.

We will use the same notation used with forwards. We start by assuming that today is time 0, and the option expires at time T . The underlying is an asset currently priced at S_0 , and at time T , its price is S_T . Of course, we do not know S_T until we get to the expiration. The option has an exercise or strike price of X . The symbols we use are as follows:

For calls,

- c_0 = value (price) of European call today
- c_T = value (price) of European call at expiration
- C_0 = value (price) of American call today
- C_T = value (price) of American call at expiration

For puts,

- p_0 = value (price) of European put today
- p_T = value (price) of European put at expiration
- P_0 = value (price) of American put today
- P_T = value (price) of American put at expiration

4.1 European Option Pricing

Recall that in studying forward contracts earlier in this reading, the first thing we learned is how a forward contract pays off at expiration. Then we backed up and determined how forward contracts are priced and valued prior to expiration. We follow that same approach for options.

4.1.1 Value of a European Option at Expiration

Recall that a European call option allows the holder to buy the underlying at expiration by paying the exercise price. Therefore, exercise is justified only if the value of the underlying exceeds the exercise price. Otherwise, the holder would simply let the call expire. So if the call is worth exercising ($S_T > X$), the holder pays X and receives an asset worth S_T . Thus, the option is worth $S_T - X$. If the call is not worth exercising ($S_T \leq X$), the option simply expires and is worth nothing at expiration.¹⁴ Thus, the value of the option at expiration is the greater of either zero or the underlying price at expiration minus the exercise price, which is typically written as

$$c_T = \text{Max}(0, S_T - X) \quad (8)$$

This formula is also sometimes referred to as the **exercise value** or **intrinsic value**. In this reading, we will use the term exercise value.

Taking a simple example, if the exercise price is €40 and the underlying price is at expiration €43, the call is worth $c_T = \text{Max}(\text{€}0, \text{€}43 - \text{€}40) = \text{Max}(\text{€}0, \text{€}3) = \text{€}3$. If the underlying price at expiration is €39, the call is worth $c_T = \text{Max}(0, \text{€}39 - \text{€}40) = \text{Max}(\text{€}0, -\text{€}1) = \text{€}0$.

For puts, the holder has the right to sell the underlying at X . If the underlying is worth less than X at expiration ($X > S_T$), the put will be exercised and worth $X - S_T$ because it allowed the holder to avoid the loss in value of the asset of that amount. If the underlying is equal to or worth more than the exercise price at expiration ($S_T \geq X$), the put will simply expire with no value. So, the put is worth the greater of either zero or the exercise price minus the price of the underlying at expiration.

$$p_T = \text{Max}(0, X - S_T) \quad (9)$$

As discussed above, this formula is referred to as the exercise value or intrinsic value, and as noted, we will use the term exercise value.

Using the same example as with the call, if the underlying is €43 at expiration, the put is worth $p_T = \text{Max}(\text{€}0, \text{€}40 - \text{€}43) = \text{Max}(0, -\text{€}3) = \text{€}0$. If the underlying is €39 at expiration, the put is worth $p_T = \text{Max}(\text{€}0, \text{€}40 - \text{€}39) = \text{Max}(\text{€}0, \text{€}1) = \text{€}1$.

Thus, the holder of an option looks out into the future and sees these relationships as the payoff possibilities. That does not mean the holder knows what S_T will be, but the holder knows that all of the uncertainty of the option payoff is determined by the behavior of the underlying.

The results of this section can be restated as follows:

The value of a European call at expiration is the exercise value, which is the greater of zero or the value of the underlying minus the exercise price.

The value of a European put at expiration is the exercise value, which is the greater of zero or the exercise price minus the value of the underlying.

To understand option pricing, we have to work our way forward in a gradual manner. The next valuable steps involve using our intuition to identify some characteristics that will influence the value of the option. We might not be able to quantify their effects just yet, but we can rationalize why these factors affect the value of an option.

¹⁴ In all the remaining material, we identify conditions at expiration, such as $S_T > X$ and $S_T \leq X$. Here we merged the equality case ($S_T = X$) with the less-than case ($<$). We could have done it the other way around ($S_T < X$ and $S_T \geq X$), which would have had no effect on our interpretations or any calculations of option value. For convenience, in some situations we will use one specification and in some the other.

4.1.2 Effect of the Value of the Underlying

The value of the underlying is obviously a critical element in determining the value of an option. It is the uncertainty of the underlying that provides the motivation for using options. It is easy to rationalize the direction of the effect of the underlying.

A call option can be viewed as a mean of acquiring the underlying, whereas a put option can be viewed as a means of selling the underlying. Thus, a call option is logically worth more if the underlying is worth more, and a put option is logically worth more if the underlying is worth less.

The value of the underlying also forms one of the boundaries for calls. The value of a call option cannot exceed the value of the underlying. After all, a call option is only a means of acquiring the underlying. It can never give the holder more benefit than the underlying. Hence, the value of the underlying forms an upper boundary on what a call is worth. The underlying does not provide an upper or lower boundary for puts. That role is played by the exercise price, as we will see in the next section.

To recap what we learned here,

The value of a European call option is directly related to the value of the underlying.

The value of a European put option is inversely related to the value of the underlying.

4.1.3 Effect of the Exercise Price

The exercise price is a critical factor in determining the value of an option. The exercise price is the hurdle beyond which the underlying must go to justify exercise. For a call, the underlying must rise above the exercise price, and for a put, the underlying must fall below the exercise price, to justify exercise. When the underlying is beyond the exercise price in the appropriate direction (higher for a call, lower for a put), the option is said to be **in the money**. When the underlying is precisely at the exercise price, the option is said to be **at the money**. When the underlying has not reached the exercise price (currently lower for a call, higher for a put), the option is said to be **out of the money**. This characterization of whether the option is in-, at-, or out-of-the-money is referred to as the option's **moneyiness**.

For a call option, a lower exercise price has two benefits. One is that there are more values of the underlying at expiration that are above the exercise price, meaning that there are more outcomes in which the call expires in-the-money. The other benefit is that assuming the call expires in-the-money, for any value of the underlying, the option value is greater the lower the exercise price. In other words, at expiration the underlying value S_T will be above the exercise price far more often, the lower is X . And if S_T is indeed higher than X , the payoff of $S_T - X$ is greater, the lower is X .

For puts, the effect is just the opposite. To expire in-the-money, the value of the underlying must fall below the exercise price. The higher the exercise price, the better chance the underlying has of getting below it. Likewise, if the value of the underlying does fall below the exercise price, the higher the exercise price, the greater the payoff. So, if X is higher, S_T will be below it more often, and if S_T is less than X , the payoff of $X - S_T$ is greater, the higher is X for whatever value of S_T occurs.

The exercise price also helps form an upper bound for the value of a European put. If you were holding a European put, the best outcome you could hope for is a zero value of the underlying. For equities, that would mean complete failure and dissolution

of the company with shareholders receiving no final payment.¹⁵ In that case, the put would pay $X - S_T$, but with S_T at zero, the put would pay X . If the underlying value goes to zero during the life of the European put, however, the holder cannot collect that payoff until expiration. Nonetheless, the holder would have a risk-free claim on a payoff of X at expiration. Thus, the most the put would be worth is the present value of X , meaning X discounted from expiration to the current day at the risk-free rate.¹⁶ Although the holder cannot collect the payoff by exercising the option, he could sell it for the present value of X .

To recap these results,

The value of a European call option is inversely related to the exercise price.

The value of a European put option is directly related to the exercise price.

4.1.4 Effect of Time to Expiration

Logic suggests that longer-term options should be worth more than shorter-term options. That statement is usually true but not always. A call option unquestionably benefits from additional time. For example, the right to buy an asset for \$50 is worth a lot more if that right is available for two years instead of one. The additional time provides further opportunity for the underlying to rise above the exercise price. Although that means there is also additional time for the underlying to fall below the exercise price, it hardly matters to the holder of the call because the loss on the downside is limited to the premium paid.

For a European put option, the additional time still provides more opportunity for the underlying price to fall below the exercise price, but with the additional risk of it rising above the exercise price mitigated by the limited loss of the premium if the put expires out-of-the-money. Thus, it sounds as if puts benefit from longer time, but that is not necessarily true. There is a subtle penalty for this additional time. Put option holders are awaiting the sale of the underlying, for which they will receive the exercise price. The longer they have to wait, the lower the present value of the payoff. For some puts, this negative effect can dwarf the positive effect. This situation occurs with a put the longer the time to expiration, the higher the risk-free rate of interest, and the deeper it is in-the-money. The positive effect of time, however, is somewhat more dominant.

Note that we did not mention this effect for calls. For calls, the holder is waiting to pay out money at expiration. More time lowers the value of this possible outlay. Hence, a longer time period helps call option buyers in this regard.

To recap these results,

The value of a European call option is directly related to the time to expiration.

¹⁵ You might think this point means that people who buy puts are hoping the company goes bankrupt, a seemingly morbid motivation. Yet, put buyers are often people who own the stock and buy the put for protection. This motivation is no different from owning a house and buying fire insurance. You do not want the house to burn down. If your sole motivation in buying the insurance were to make a profit on the insurance, you would want the house to burn down. This moral hazard problem illustrates why it is difficult, if not impossible, to buy insurance on a house you do not own. Likewise, executives are prohibited from owning puts on their companies' stock. Individual investors can own puts on stocks they do not own, because they cannot drive the stock price down.

¹⁶ For the put holder to truly have a risk-free claim on X at expiration, given zero value of the underlying today, the underlying value must go to zero and have no possibility of any recovery. If there is any possibility of recovery, the underlying value would not go to zero, as is often observed when a legal filing for bankruptcy is undertaken. Many equities do recover. If there were some chance of recovery but the equity value was zero, demand for the stock would be infinite, which would push the price up.

The value of a European put option can be either directly or inversely related to the time to expiration. The direct effect is more common, but the inverse effect can prevail with a put the longer the time to expiration, the higher the risk-free rate, and the deeper it is in-the-money.

4.1.5 Effect of the Risk-Free Rate of Interest

We have already alluded to the effect of the risk-free rate. For call options, a longer time to expiration means that the present value of the outlay of the exercise price is lower. In other words, with a longer time to expiration, the call option holder continues to earn interest on the money that could be expended later in paying the exercise price upon exercise of the option. If the option is ultimately never exercised, this factor is irrelevant, but it remains at best a benefit and at worst has no effect. For puts, the opposite argument prevails. A longer time to expiration with a higher interest rate lowers the present value of the receipt of the exercise price upon exercise. Thus, the value today of what the put holder might receive at expiration is lower. If the put is ultimately never exercised, the risk-free rate has no effect. Thus, at best, a higher risk-free rate has no effect on the value of a put. At worst, it decreases the value of the put.

These results are summarized as follows:

The value of a European call is directly related to the risk-free interest rate.

The value of a European put is inversely related to the risk-free interest rate.

4.1.6 Effect of Volatility of the Underlying

In studying the pricing of equities, we are conditioned to believe that volatility has a negative effect. After all, investors like return and dislike risk. Volatility is certainly an element of risk. Therefore, volatility is bad for investors, right? Well, partially right.

First, not all volatility is bad for investors. Unsystematic volatility should be irrelevant. Investors can hold diversified portfolios. Systematic volatility is clearly undesirable, but do not think that this means that volatility should be completely avoided where possible. If volatility were universally undesirable, no one would take risks. Clearly risks have to be taken to provide opportunity for reward.

With options, volatility of the underlying is, however, universally desirable. The greater the volatility of the underlying, the more an option is worth. This seemingly counterintuitive result is easy to understand with a little explanation.

First, let us make sure we know what volatility really means. In studying asset returns, we typically represent volatility with the standard deviation of the return, which measures the variation from the average return. The S&P 500 Index has an approximate long-run volatility of around 20%. Under the assumption of a normal distribution, a standard deviation of 20% implies that about 68% of the time, the returns will be within plus or minus one standard deviation of the average. About 95% of the time, they will be within plus or minus two standard deviations of the average. About 99% of the time, they will be within plus or minus three standard deviations of the average. When the distribution is non-normal, different interpretations apply, and in some extreme cases, the standard deviation can be nearly impossible to interpret.

Standard deviation is not the only notion of volatility, however, and it is not even needed at this point. You can proceed fairly safely with a measure as simple as the highest possible value minus the lowest, known as the range. The only requirement we need right now is that the concept of volatility reflects dispersion—how high and how low the underlying can go.

So, regardless of how we measure volatility, the following conditions will hold:

- 1 A call option will have a higher payoff the higher the underlying is at expiration.
- 2 A call option will have a zero payoff if it expires with the underlying below the exercise price.

If we could impose greater volatility on the underlying, we should be able to see that in Condition 1, the payoff has a better chance of being greater because the underlying has a greater possibility of large positive returns. In Condition 2, however, the zero payoff is unaffected if we impose greater volatility. Expiring more out-of-the-money is not worse than expiring less out-of-the-money, but expiring more in-the-money is better than expiring less-in-the-money.¹⁷

For puts, we have

- 1 A put option will have a higher payoff the lower the underlying is at expiration.
- 2 A put option will have a zero payoff if it expires with the underlying above the exercise price.

If we could impose greater volatility, we would find that it would have a beneficial effect in (1) because a larger positive payoff would have a greater chance of occurring. In (2), the zero payoff is unaffected. The greater of the option expiring more out-of-the-money is irrelevant. Expiring more out-of-the-money is not worse than expiring less out-of-the-money.

Thus, we summarize our results in this section as

The value of a European call is directly related to the volatility of the underlying.

The value of a European put is directly related to the volatility of the underlying.

The combined effects of time and volatility give rise to the concept of the time value of an option. The **time value** of an option is the difference between the market price of the option and its intrinsic value. It represents the market valuation of the potential for higher exercise value relative to the potential for lower exercise value given the volatility of the underlying. Time value of an option is not to be confused with the time value of money, which is the notion of money later being worth less than money today as a result of the combined effects of time and interest. Time value results in an option price being greater with volatility and time but declining as expiration approaches. At expiration, no time value remains and the option is worth only its exercise value. As such, an option price is said to decay over time, a process characterized as **time value decay**, which is covered in more advanced material.

4.1.7 Effect of Payments on the Underlying and the Cost of Carry

We previously discussed how payments on the underlying and carrying costs enter into the determination of forward prices. They also affect option prices. Payments on the underlying refer to dividends on stocks and interest on bonds. In addition, some commodities offer a convenience yield benefit. Carrying costs include the actual physical costs of maintaining and/or storing an asset.

Let us first consider the effect of benefits. Payments of dividends and interest reduce the value of the underlying. Stocks and bonds fall in value as dividends and interest are paid. These benefits to holders of these securities do not flow to holders of options. For call option holders, this reduction is a negative factor. The price of

¹⁷ Think of an option expiring out-of-the-money as like it being dead. (Indeed, the option is dead.) Being “more dead” is not worse than being “less dead.”

the underlying is hurt by such payments, and call holders do not get to collect these payments. For put holders, the effect is the opposite. When the value of the underlying is reduced, put holders are helped.

Carrying costs have the opposite effect. They raise the effective cost of holding or shorting the asset. Holding call options enables an investor to participate in movements of the underlying without incurring these costs. Holding put options makes it more expensive to participate in movements in the underlying than by short selling because short sellers benefit from carrying costs, which are borne by owners of the asset.

To summarize the results from this section,

A European call option is worth less the more benefits that are paid by the underlying and worth more the more costs that are incurred in holding the underlying.

A European put option is worth more the more benefits that are paid by the underlying and worth less the more costs that are incurred in holding the underlying.

4.1.8 Lowest Prices of Calls and Puts

What we have learned so far forms a framework for understanding how European options are priced. Let us now go a step further and establish a minimum price for these options.

First, we need to look at a call option as similar to the purchase of the underlying with a portion of the purchase price financed by borrowing. If the underlying is a stock, this transaction is usually called a margin transaction. Assume that the underlying is worth S_0 . Also assume that you borrow cash in the amount of the present value of X , promising to pay X back T periods later at an interest rate of r . Thus, $X/(1+r)^T$ is the amount borrowed, and X is the amount to be paid back. Now move forward to time T and observe the price of the underlying, S_T . Upon paying back the loan, the overall strategy will be worth $S_T - X$, which can be positive or negative.

Next, consider an alternative strategy of buying a call option expiring at T with an exercise price of X , the same value as the face value of the loan. We know that the option payoffs will be $S_T - X$ if it expires in-the-money ($S_T > X$) and zero if not ($S_T \leq X$). Exhibit 11 compares these two strategies.¹⁸

Exhibit 11 Call Option vs. Leveraged (Margin) Transaction

	Outcome at T	
	Call Expires Out-of-the-Money ($S_T \leq X$)	Call Expires In-the-Money ($S_T > X$)
Call	0	$S_T - X$
<i>Leveraged transaction</i>		
Asset	S_T	S_T

(continued)

¹⁸ Note in Exhibit 11, and in others to come, that the inequality \leq is referred to as out-of-the-money. The case of equality is technically referred to as at-the-money but the verbiage is simplified if we continue to call it out-of-the-money. It is certainly not in-the-money and at-the-money is arguably the same as out-of-the-money. Regardless of one's preference, the equality case can be attached to either of the two outcomes with no effect on our conclusions.

Exhibit 11 (Continued)

	Outcome at T	
	Call Expires Out-of-the-Money ($S_T \leq X$)	Call Expires In-the-Money ($S_T > X$)
Loan	$-X$	$-X$
Total	$S_T - X$	$S_T - X$

When the call expires in-the-money, both transactions produce identical payoffs. When the call expires out-of-the-money, the call value is zero, but the leveraged transaction is almost surely a loss. Its value $S_T - X$ is negative or zero at best (if S_T is exactly equal to X).

If two strategies are found to produce equivalent results in some outcomes but one produces a better result in all other outcomes, then one strategy dominates the former. Here we see that the call strategy dominates the leveraged strategy. Any strategy that dominates the other can never have a lower value at any time. Why would anyone pay more for one strategy than for another if the former will never produce a better result than the latter? Thus, the value of the call strategy, c_0 , has to be worth at least the value of the leveraged transaction, S_0 (the value of the asset), minus $X/(1+r)^T$ (the value of the loan). Hence, $c_0 \geq S_0 - X/(1+r)^T$.

The inequality means that this statement provides the lowest price of the call, but there is one more thing we need to do. It can easily be true that $X/(1+r)^T > S_0$. In that case, we are saying that the lowest value is a negative number, but that statement is meaningless. A call can never be worth less than zero, because its holder cannot be forced to exercise it. Thus, we tend to express this relationship as

$$c_0 \geq \text{Max} \left[0, S_0 - X/(1+r)^T \right] \quad (10)$$

which represents the greater of the value of zero or the underlying price minus the present value of the exercise price. This value becomes the lower limit of the call price.

Now consider an analogous result for puts. Suppose we want to profit from a declining price of the underlying. One way to do this is to sell the underlying short. Suppose we do that and invest cash equal to the present value of X into risk-free bonds that pay X at time T . At time T , given a price of the underlying of S_T , the short sale pays off $-S_T$, a reflection of the payment of S_T to cover the short sale. The bonds pay X . Hence, the total payoff is $X - S_T$.

Now, compare that result with the purchase of a put expiring at T with exercise price of X . If the put expires in-the-money ($S_T < X$), it is worth $X - S_T$. If it expires out-of-the-money ($S_T \geq X$), it is worth zero. Exhibit 12 illustrates the comparison of the put with the short sale and bond strategy. We see that for the in-the-money case, the put and short sale and bond strategies match each other. For the out-of-the-money case, however, the put performs better because the short sale and bond strategy pays $X - S_T$. With $S_T \geq X$, this payment amount is negative. With the put dominating the short sale and bond strategy, the put value cannot be less than the value of the short sale and bond strategy, meaning $p_0 \geq X/(1+r)^T - S_0$. But as with calls, the right-hand side can be negative, and it hardly helps us to say that a put must sell for more than a negative number. A put can never be worth less than zero, because its owner cannot be forced to exercise it. Thus, the overall result is expressed succinctly as

$$p_0 \geq \text{Max} \left[0, X/(1+r)^T - S_0 \right] \quad (11)$$

Exhibit 12 Put vs. Short Sale and Bond Purchase

	Outcome at T	
	Put Expires In-the-Money ($S_T < X$)	Put Expires Out-of-the-Money ($S_T \geq X$)
Put	$X - S_T$	0
<i>Short sale and bond purchase</i>		
Short sale	$-S_T$	$-S_T$
Bond	X	X
Total	$X - S_T$	$X - S_T$

Let us look at some basic examples. Assume the exercise price is €60, the risk-free rate is 4%, and the expiration is nine months, so $T = 9/12 = 0.75$. Consider two cases: Underlying: $S_0 = €70$

$$\text{Minimum call price} = \text{Max}[0, €70 - €60/(1.04)^{0.75}] = \text{Max}(0, €11.74) = €11.74$$

$$\text{Minimum put price} = \text{Max}[0, €60/(1.04)^{0.75} - €70] = \text{Max}(0, -€11.74) = €0.00$$

Underlying: $S_0 = €50$

$$\text{Minimum call price} = \text{Max}[0, €50 - €60/(1.04)^{0.75}] = \text{Max}(0, -€8.26) = €0.00$$

$$\text{Minimum put price} = \text{Max}[0, €60/(1.04)^{0.75} - €50] = \text{Max}(0, €8.26) = €8.26$$

To recap, in this section we have established lower limits for call and put option values. Formally restating these results in words,

The lowest value of a European call is the greater of zero or the value of the underlying minus the present value of the exercise price.

The lowest value of a European put is the greater of zero or the present value of the exercise price minus the value of the underlying.

EXAMPLE 6**Basic Principles of European Option Pricing**

- Which of the following factors does *not* affect the value of a European option?
 - The volatility of the underlying
 - Dividends or interest paid by the underlying
 - The percentage of the investor's assets invested in the option
- Which of the following statements imply that a European call on a stock is worth more?
 - Less time to expiration
 - A higher stock price relative to the exercise price
 - Larger dividends paid by the stock during the life of the option
- Why might a European put be worth less the longer the time to expiration?

- A The cost of waiting to receive the exercise price is higher.
 - B The risk of the underlying is lower over a longer period of time.
 - C The longer time to expiration means that the put is more likely to expire out-of-the-money.
- 4 The loss in value of an option as it moves closer to expiration is called what?
- A Time value decay
 - B Volatility diminution
 - C Time value of money
- 5 How does the minimum value of a call or put option differ from its exercise value?
- A The exercise price is adjusted for the time value of money.
 - B The minimum value reflects the volatility of the underlying.
 - C The underlying price is adjusted for the time value of money.

Solution to 1:

C is correct. The investor's exposure to the option is not relevant to the price one should pay to buy or ask to sell the option. Volatility and dividends or interest paid by the underlying are highly relevant to the value of the option.

Solution to 2:

B is correct. The higher the stock price and the lower the exercise price, the more valuable is the call. Less time to expiration and larger dividends reduce the value of the call.

Solution to 3:

A is correct. Although the longer time benefits the holder of the option, it also has a cost in that exercise of a longer-term put comes much later. Therefore, the receipt of the exercise price is delayed. Longer time to expiration does not lower the risk of the underlying. The longer time also does not increase the likelihood of the option expiring out-of-the-money.

Solution to 4:

A is correct. An option has time value that decays as the expiration approaches. There is no such concept as volatility diminution. Time value of money relates only to the value of money at one point in time versus another.

Solution to 5:

A is correct. The minimum value formula is the greater of zero or the difference between the underlying price and the present value of the exercise price, whereas the exercise value is the maximum of zero and the appropriate difference between the underlying price and the exercise price. Volatility does not affect the minimum price. It does not make sense to adjust the underlying price for the time value of money for the simple reason that it is already adjusted for the time value of money.

4.1.9 Put–Call Parity

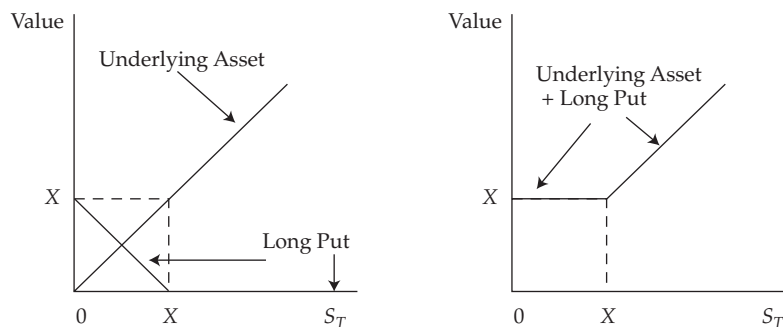
One of the first concepts that a trader learns in options is the parity relationship between puts and calls. Even though the word “parity” means “equivalence,” puts and calls are not equivalent. There is, however, a relationship between the call price and the price of its corresponding put, which we refer to as put–call parity.

Suppose Investor A owns an asset that has a current price of S_0 . Assume the asset makes no cash payments and has no carrying costs. The end of the holding period is time T , at which point the asset will be worth S_T . Fearing the possibility that S_T will decline, Investor A buys a put option with an exercise price of X , which can be used to sell the asset for X at time T . This put option has a premium of p_0 . Combined with the value of the asset, the investor's current position is worth $S_0 + p_0$, which is the investor's money at risk. This strategy of holding the asset and a put is sometimes called a **protective put**.

At expiration, the value of the asset is S_T . The value of the put will be either zero or $X - S_T$. If the asset increases in value such that $S_T \geq X$, then the overall position is worth S_T . The asset has performed well, and the investor will let the put expire. If the asset value declines to the point at which $S_T < X$, the asset is worth S_T , and the put is worth $X - S_T$, for a total of X . In other words, the investor would exercise the put, selling the asset for X , which exceeds the asset's current value of S_T .

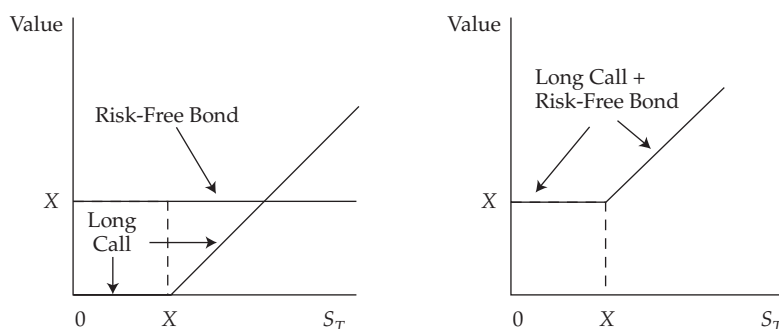
This strategy seems like a reasonable and possibly quite attractive investment. Investor A receives the benefit of unlimited upside potential, with the downside performance truncated at X . Exhibit 13 shows the performance of the protective put. The graph on the left illustrates the underlying asset and the put. The graph on the right shows their combined effects.

Exhibit 13 Protective Put (Asset Plus Long Put)



Consider Investor B, an options trader. At time 0, this investor buys a call option on this asset with an exercise price of X that expires at T and a risk-free zero-coupon bond with a face value of X that matures at T . The call costs c_0 , and the bond costs the present value of X , which is $X/(1+r)^T$. Thus, Investor B has invested funds of $c_0 + X/(1+r)^T$. This strategy is sometimes known as a **fiduciary call**. If the underlying price exceeds the exercise price at expiration, the call will be worth $S_T - X$, and the bond will mature and pay a value of X . These values combine to equal S_T . If the underlying price does not exceed the exercise price at expiration, the call expires worthless and the bond is worth X for a combined value of X .

Exhibit 14 shows the performance of the fiduciary call. The graph on the left shows the call and bond, and the graph on the right shows the combined effects of the two strategies.

Exhibit 14 Fiduciary Call (Long Call Plus Risk-Free Bond)

Comparing Exhibit 13 with Exhibit 14 shows that a protective put and a fiduciary call produce the same result. Exhibit 15 shows this result more directly by identifying the payoffs in the various outcomes. Recall that Investor A committed funds of $S_0 + p_0$, while Investor B committed funds of $c_0 + X/(1+r)^T$. If both investors receive the same payoffs at time T regardless of the asset price at T , the amounts they invest at time 0 have to be the same. Thus, we require

$$S_0 + p_0 = c_0 + X/(1+r)^T \quad (12)$$

This relationship is known as **put-call parity**.

Exhibit 15 Protective Put vs. Fiduciary Call

	Outcome at T	
	Put Expires In-the-Money ($S_T < X$)	Call Expires In-the-Money ($S_T \geq X$)
<i>Protective put</i>		
Asset	S_T	S_T
Long put	$X - S_T$	0
Total	X	S_T
<i>Fiduciary call</i>		
Long call	0	$S_T - X$
Risk-free bond	X	X
Total	X	S_T

For a simple example, assume call and put options with an exercise price of ¥100,000 in which the underlying is at ¥90,000 at time 0. The risk-free rate is 2% and the options expire in two months, so $T = 2/12 = 0.167$. To completely fill in the puzzle, we would need to know the put or call price, from which we could obtain the other. For now, let us write this relationship as

$$p_0 - c_0 = X/(1+r)^T - S_0$$

The right side would be $¥100,000/(1.02)^{0.167} - ¥90,000 = ¥9,670$. Thus, the put price should exceed the call price by ¥9,670. Thus, if the call were priced at ¥5,000, the put price would be ¥14,670. If we knew the put price, we could obtain the call price. Put–call parity does not tell us which price is correct, and it requires knowledge of one price to get the other. Alternatively, it can tell us the difference in the put and call prices.

Put–call parity must hold, at least within transaction costs, or arbitrage opportunities would arise. For example, suppose Investor C observes market prices and finds that the left-hand side of put–call parity, $S_0 + p_0$, is less than the right-hand side, $c_0 + X/(1+r)^T$. Thus, the put and the stock cost less than the call and the bond. Knowing that there should be equality (parity), Investor C executes an arbitrage transaction, selling the overpriced transactions (the call and the bond) and buying the underpriced transactions (the asset and the put).¹⁹ By selling the higher priced side and buying the lower priced side, Investor C will take in more money than she will pay out, a net inflow of $c_0 + X/(1+r)^T - (S_0 + p_0)$. At expiration, the long put and long asset will offset the short call and bond, as shown in Exhibit 16.

Exhibit 16 Put–Call Parity Arbitrage

Transaction	Cash Flow at Time 0	Outcome at T	
		Put Expires In-the-Money ($S_T < X$)	Call Expires In-the-Money ($S_T \geq X$)
Buy asset	$-S_0$	S_T	S_T
Buy put	$-p_0$	$X - S_T$	0
Sell call	$+c_0$	0	$-(S_T - X)$
Borrow	$+X/(1+r)^T$	$-X$	$-X$
Total	$-S_0 - p_0 + c_0 + X/(1+r)^T > 0$	0	0

In simple terms, if $S_T < X$, the short call expires out-of-the-money and the put is exercised to sell the asset for X . This cash, X , is then used to pay off the loan. The net effect is that no money flows in or out at T . If $S_T \geq X$, the put expires out-of-the-money, and the short call is exercised, meaning that Investor C must sell the asset for X . This cash, X , is then used to pay off the loan. Again, no money flows in or out. The net effect is a perfect hedge in which no money is paid out or received at T . But there was money taken in at time 0. Taking in money today and never having to pay it out is an arbitrage profit. Arbitrage opportunities like this, however, will be noticed by many investors who will engage in the same transactions. Prices will adjust until parity is restored, whereby $S_0 + p_0 = c_0 + X/(1+r)^T$.

¹⁹ Selling the bond is equivalent to borrowing, meaning to issue a loan.

Put–call parity provides tremendous insights into option pricing. Recall that we proved that going long the asset and long a put is equivalent to going long a call and long a risk-free bond. We can rearrange the put–call parity equation in the following ways:

$$\begin{aligned} S_0 + p_0 &= c_0 + X/(1+r)^T \\ \Rightarrow \\ p_0 &= c_0 - S_0 + X/(1+r)^T \\ c_0 &= p_0 + S_0 - X/(1+r)^T \\ S_0 &= c_0 - p_0 + X/(1+r)^T \\ X/(1+r)^T &= S_0 + p_0 - c_0 \end{aligned}$$

By using the symbols and the signs in these versions of put–call parity, we can see several important interpretations. In the equations below, plus signs mean long and minus signs mean short:

$$\begin{aligned} p_0 = c_0 - S_0 + X/(1+r)^T &\Rightarrow \text{long put} = \text{long call, short asset, long bond} \\ c_0 = p_0 + S_0 - X/(1+r)^T &\Rightarrow \text{long call} = \text{long put, long asset, short bond} \\ S_0 = c_0 - p_0 + X/(1+r)^T &\Rightarrow \text{long asset} = \text{long call, short put, long bond} \\ X/(1+r)^T = S_0 + p_0 - c_0 &\Rightarrow \text{long bond} = \text{long asset, long put, short call} \end{aligned}$$

You should be able to convince yourself of any of these points by constructing a table similar to Exhibit 15.²⁰

4.1.10 Put–Call–Forward Parity

Recall that we demonstrated that one could create a risk-free position by going long the asset and selling a forward contract.²¹ It follows that one can synthetically create a position in the asset by going long a forward contract and long a risk-free bond. Recall our put–call parity discussion and assume that Investor A creates his protective put in a slightly different manner. Instead of buying the asset, he buys a forward contract and a risk-free bond in which the face value is the forward price. Exhibit 17 shows that this strategy is a synthetic protective put. Because we showed that the fiduciary call is equivalent to the protective put, a fiduciary call has to be equivalent to a protective put with a forward contract. Exhibit 18 demonstrates this point.

Exhibit 17 Protective Put with Forward Contract vs. Protective Put with Asset

	Outcome at T	
	Put Expires In-the-Money ($S_T < X$)	Put Expires Out-of-the-Money ($S_T \geq X$)
<i>Protective put with asset</i>		
Asset	S_T	S_T
Long put	$X - S_T$	0
Total	X	S_T

²⁰ As a further exercise, you might change the signs of each term in the above and provide the appropriate interpretations.

²¹ You might wish to review Exhibit 6.

Exhibit 17 (Continued)

	Outcome at T	
	Put Expires In-the-Money ($S_T < X$)	Put Expires Out-of-the-Money ($S_T \geq X$)
<i>Protective put with forward contract</i>		
Risk-free bond	$F_0(T)$	$F_0(T)$
Forward contract	$S_T - F_0(T)$	$S_T - F_0(T)$
Long put	$X - S_T$	0
Total	X	S_T

Exhibit 18 Protective Put with Forward Contract vs. Fiduciary Call

	Outcome at T	
	Put Expires In-the-Money ($S_T < X$)	Call Expires In-the-Money ($S_T \geq X$)
<i>Protective Put with Forward Contract</i>		
Risk-free bond	$F_0(T)$	$F_0(T)$
Forward contract	$S_T - F_0(T)$	$S_T - F_0(T)$
Long put	$X - S_T$	0
Total	X	S_T
<i>Fiduciary Call</i>		
Call	0	$S_T - X$
Risk-free bond	X	X
Total	X	S_T

It follows that the cost of the fiduciary call must equal the cost of the synthetic protective put, giving us what is referred to as **put-call-forward parity**,

$$F_0(T)/(1+r)^T + p_0 = c_0 + X/(1+r)^T \quad (13)$$

Returning to our put-call parity example, a forward contract on ¥90,000 expiring in two months with a 2% interest rate would have a price of ¥90,000(1.02)^{0.167} = ¥90,298. Rearranging Equation 13, we have

$$p_0 - c_0 = [X - F_0(T)]/(1+r)^T$$

The right-hand side is (¥100,000 - ¥90,298)/(1.02)^{0.167} = ¥9,670, which is the same answer we obtained using the underlying asset rather than the forward contract. Naturally these two models give us the same answer. They are both based on the assumption that no arbitrage is possible within the spot, forward, and options markets.

So far we have learned only how to price options in relation to other options, such as a call versus a put or a call or a put versus a forward. We need a way to price options versus their underlying.

EXAMPLE 7**Put–Call Parity**

- 1 Which of the following statements *best* describes put–call parity?
 - A The put price always equals the call price.
 - B The put price equals the call price if the volatility is known.
 - C The put price plus the underlying price equals the call price plus the present value of the exercise price.
- 2 From put–call parity, which of the following transactions is risk-free?
 - A Long asset, long put, short call
 - B Long call, long put, short asset
 - C Long asset, long call, short bond

Solution to 1:

C is correct. The put and underlying make up a protective put, while the call and present value of the exercise price make up a fiduciary call. The put price equals the call price for certain combinations of interest rates, times to expiration, and option moneyness, but these are special cases. Volatility has no effect on put–call parity.

Solution to 2:

A is correct. The combination of a long asset, long put, and short call is risk free because its payoffs produce a known cash flow of the value of the exercise price. The other two combinations do not produce risk-free positions. You should work through the payoffs of these three combinations in the form of Exhibit 12.

4.2 Binomial Valuation of Options

Because the option payoff is determined by the underlying, if we know the outcome of the underlying, we know the payoff of the option. That means that the price of the underlying is the only element of uncertainty. Moreover, the uncertainty is not so much the value of the underlying at expiration as it is whether the underlying is above or below the exercise price. If the underlying is above the exercise price at expiration, the payoff is $S_T - X$ for calls and zero for puts. If the underlying is below the exercise price at expiration, the payoff is zero for calls and $X - S_T$ for puts. In other words, the payoff of the option is straightforward and known, as soon as we know whether the option expires in- or out-of-the-money. Note that for forwards, futures, and swaps, there is no such added complexity. The payoff formula is the same regardless of whether the underlying is above or below the hurdle.

As a result of this characteristic of options, derivation of an option pricing model requires the specification of a model of a random process that describes movements in the underlying. Given the entirely different nature of the payoffs above and below the exercise price, it might seem difficult to derive the option price, even if we could model movements in the underlying. Fortunately, the process is less difficult than it first appears.

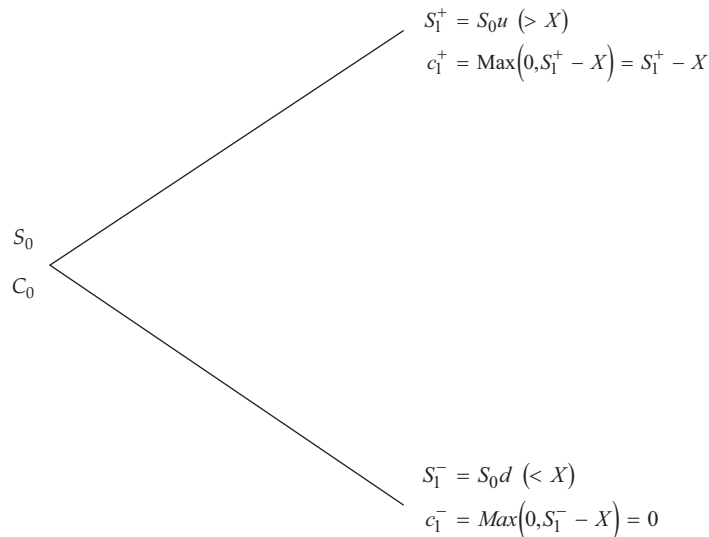
At this level of treatment, we will start with a very simple model that allows only two possible movements in the underlying—one going up and one going down from where it is now. This model with two possible outcomes is called the **binomial model**. Start with the underlying at S_0 , and let it go up to S_1^+ or down to S_1^- . We cannot arbitrarily set these values at just anything. We will be required to know the values

of S_1^+ and S_1^- . That does not mean we know which outcome will occur. It means that we know only what the possibilities are. In doing so, we effectively know the volatility. Assume the probability of the move to S_1^+ is q and the probability of the move to S_1^- is $1 - q$. We specify the returns implied by these moves as up and down factors, u and d , where

$$u = \frac{S_1^+}{S_0}, \quad d = \frac{S_1^-}{S_0} \quad (14)$$

Now, consider a European call option that expires at time 1 and has an exercise price of X . Let the call prices be c_0 today and c_1^+ and c_1^- at expiration. Exhibit 19 illustrates the model. Our objective is to determine the price of the option today, meaning to determine a formula for c_0 . Knowing what we know about arbitrage and the pricing of forward contracts, it would seem we could construct a risk-free portfolio involving this option.

Exhibit 19 The Binomial Option Pricing Model



Because call options and the underlying move together, one possibility is that buying the underlying and selling a call could create a hedge. Indeed it does, but one unit of each is not the appropriate balance. Let us sell one call and hold h units of the underlying. The value h is unknown at the moment, but we will be able to determine its value. The value today of a combination of h units of the underlying and one short call is

$$V_0 = hS_0 - c_0$$

Think of V_0 as the amount of money invested. Depending on which of the two paths is taken by the underlying, the value of this portfolio at time 1 will be

$$V_1^+ = hS_1^+ - c_1^+$$

or

$$V_1^- = hS_1^- - c_1^-$$

(15)

If the portfolio were hedged, then V_1^+ would equal V_1^- . We can set V_1^+ and V_1^- equal to each other and solve for the value of h that assures us that the portfolio is hedged:

$$\begin{aligned} V_1^+ &= V_1^- \\ \Rightarrow hS_1^+ - c_1^+ &= hS_1^- - c_1^- \\ \Rightarrow h &= \frac{c_1^+ - c_1^-}{S_1^+ - S_1^-} \end{aligned} \tag{16}$$

The values on the right-hand side are known, so we can easily calculate h . Thus, we can derive the number of units of the underlying that will perfectly hedge one unit of the short call.

We know that a perfectly hedged investment should earn the risk-free rate, r . Thus, the following statement must be true:

$$V_1^+ \text{ (or } V_1^-) = V_0(1 + r)$$

We can substitute the value of V_1^+ or V_1^- from Equation 15 into the above equation. Then we do a little algebra, which is not important to this discussion, and obtain the formula for the option price,

$$c_0 = \frac{\pi c_1^+ + (1 - \pi)c_1^-}{1 + r}$$

where

$$\pi = \frac{1 + r - d}{u - d} \tag{17}$$

Equation 17 shows that the value of the call today is a weighted average of the next two possible call prices at expiration, where the weights, π and $1 - \pi$, are given by the second formula in Equation 17.

This formula sheds a great deal of light on option pricing. Notice the following:

- The volatility of the underlying, which is reflected in the difference between S_1^+ and S_1^- and affects c_1^+ and c_1^- , is an important factor in determining the value of the option.
- The probabilities of the up and down moves, q and $1 - q$, do not appear in the formula.²²
- The values π and $1 - \pi$ are similar to probabilities and are often called synthetic or pseudo probabilities. They produce a weighted average of the next two possible call values, a type of expected future value.
- The formula takes the form of an expected future value, the numerator, discounted at the risk-free rate.

On the first point, if volatility increases, the difference between S_1^+ and S_1^- increases, which widens the range between c_1^+ and c_1^- , leading to a higher option value. The upper payoff, c_1^+ , will be larger and the lower payoff, c_1^- , will still be zero.²³ On the second point, the actual probabilities of the up and down moves do not matter. This result is because of our ability to construct a hedge and the rule of arbitrage. On the third point, the irrelevance of the actual probabilities is replaced by the relevance of a set of synthetic or pseudo probabilities, π and $1 - \pi$, which are called **risk-neutral**

²² We introduced them earlier to help make this point, but ultimately they serve no purpose.

²³ Although the lower payoff is zero in this example, that will not always be the case.

probabilities. On the fourth point, these risk-neutral probabilities are used to find a synthetic expected value, which is then discounted at the risk-free rate. Thus, the option is valued as though investors are risk neutral. As we discussed extensively earlier, that is not the same as assuming that investors are risk neutral.

If the option does not trade at the specified formula, Equation 17, investors can engage in arbitrage transactions. If the option is trading too high relative to the formula, investors can sell the call, buy h shares of the underlying, and earn a return in excess of the risk-free rate, while funding the transaction by borrowing at the risk-free rate. The combined actions of arbitrageurs will result in downward pressure on the option price until it converges to the model price. If the option price is too low, buying the call, selling short h units of the asset, and investing the proceeds in risk-free bonds will generate risk-free cash that will earn more than the risk-free rate. The combined actions of arbitrageurs doing this will pressure the call price to rise until it reaches the price given by the model.

We will omit the details, but the hedge portfolio can also be constructed with puts.²⁴ Changing the c 's to p 's leads to the binomial put option pricing formula,

$$p_0 = \frac{\pi p_1^+ + (1 - \pi) p_1^-}{1 + r} \quad (18)$$

with the risk-neutral probability π determined by the same formula as for calls, as shown in Equation 17.

Let us construct a simple example. Let S_0 be £40 and the risk-free rate be 5%. The up and down factors are $u = 1.20$ and $d = 0.75$. Thus, the next two possible prices of the asset are $S_1^+ = £40(1.20) = £48$ and $S_1^- = £40(0.75) = £30$. Consider a call and a put that have exercise prices of £38. Then the next two possible values of the call and put are

$$c_1^+ = \text{Max}(0, £48 - £38) = £10$$

$$c_1^- = \text{Max}(0, £30 - £38) = £0$$

$$p_1^+ = \text{Max}(0, £38 - £48) = £0$$

$$p_1^- = \text{Max}(0, £38 - £30) = £8$$

Next we compute the risk-neutral probability,

$$\pi = \frac{1 + 0.05 - 0.75}{1.20 - 0.75} = 0.667$$

The values of the call and put are

$$c_0 = \frac{0.667(£10) + (1 - 0.667)£0}{1.05} = £6.35$$

and

$$p_0 = \frac{0.667(£0) + (1 - 0.667)£8}{1.05} = £2.54$$

The binomial model, as we see it here, is extremely simple. In reality, of course, there are more than two possible next-period prices for the underlying. As it turns out, we can extend the number of periods and subdivide an option's life into an increasing number of smaller time periods. In that case, we can obtain a more accurate and realistic model for option pricing, one that is widely used in practice. Given our objective in this reading of understanding the basic ideas behind derivative pricing, the one-period model is sufficient for the time being.

²⁴ A long position in h units of the underlying would be hedged with one long put. The formula for h is the same as the one given here for calls, with call prices in the numerator instead of put prices.

EXAMPLE 8**Binomial Valuation of Options**

- 1 Which of the following terms directly represents the volatility of the underlying in the binomial model?
 - A The standard deviation of the underlying
 - B The difference between the up and down factors
 - C The ratio of the underlying value to the exercise price.
- 2 Which of the following is *not* a factor in pricing a call option in the binomial model?
 - A The risk-free rate
 - B The exercise price
 - C The probability that the underlying will go up
- 3 Which of the following *best* describes the binomial option pricing formula?
 - A The expected payoff is discounted at the risk-free rate plus a risk premium.
 - B The spot price is compounded at the risk-free rate minus the volatility premium.
 - C The expected payoff based on risk-neutral probabilities is discounted at the risk-free rate.

Solution to 1:

B is correct. The up and down factors express how high and how low the underlying can go. Standard deviation does not appear directly in the binomial model, although it is implicit. The ratio of the underlying value to the exercise price expresses the moneyness of the option.

Solution to 2:

C is correct. The actual probabilities of the up and down moves are irrelevant to pricing options. The risk-free and exercise price are, of course, highly relevant.

Solution to 3:

C is correct. Risk-neutral probabilities are used, and discounting is at the risk-free rate. There is no risk premium incorporated into option pricing because of the use of arbitrage.

We have now seen how to obtain the price of a European option. Let us now consider what happens if the options are American, meaning they have the right to be exercised early.

4.3 American Option Pricing

First, we will use upper case letters for American call and put prices: C_0 and P_0 . Second, we know that American options possess every characteristic of European options and one additional trait: They can be exercised at any time prior to expiration.

Early exercise cannot be required, so the right to exercise early cannot have negative value. Thus, American options cannot sell for less than European options. Thus, we can state the following:

$$\begin{aligned} C_0 &\geq c_0 \\ P_0 &\geq p_0 \end{aligned} \tag{19}$$

Given the price of the underlying at S_0 , the early-exercise feature means that we can exercise the option at any time. So, we can claim the value $\text{Max}(0, S_0 - X)$ for calls and $\text{Max}(0, X - S_0)$ for puts. These values establish new minimum prices for American calls and puts,

$$\begin{aligned} C_0 &= \text{Max}(0, S_0 - X) \\ P_0 &= \text{Max}(0, X - S_0) \end{aligned} \tag{20}$$

For call options, we previously learned that a European call has a minimum value given by Equation 10, which is restated here:

$$c_0 \geq \text{Max}\left[0, S_0 - X / (1 + r)^T\right]$$

Comparing $\text{Max}(0, S_0 - X)$ (the minimum for American calls) with $\text{Max}[0, S_0 - X / (1 + r)^T]$ (the minimum for European calls) reveals that the latter is either the same or higher. There are some circumstances in which both minima are zero, some in which the American minimum is zero and the European minimum is positive, and some in which both are positive, in which case $S_0 - X / (1 + r)^T$ is unquestionably more than $S_0 - X$. Given that an American call price cannot be less than a European call price, we have to reestablish the American call minimum as $\text{Max}[0, S_0 - X / (1 + r)^T]$.

For put options, we previously learned that a European put has a minimum value given by Equation 11, which is restated here:

$$p_0 \geq \text{Max}\left[0, X / (1 + r)^T - S_0\right]$$

Comparing $\text{Max}(0, X - S_0)$ (the minimum for American puts) with $\text{Max}[0, X / (1 + r)^T - S_0]$ (the minimum for European puts) reveals that the former is never less. In some circumstances, they are both zero. In some, $X - S_0$ is positive and $X / (1 + r)^T - S_0$ is negative, and in some cases both are positive but $X - S_0$ is unquestionably more than $X / (1 + r)^T - S_0$. Thus, the American put minimum value is the exercise value, which is $\text{Max}(0, X - S_0)$.

So, now we have new minimum prices for American calls and puts:

$$\begin{aligned} C_0 &\geq \text{Max}\left[0, S_0 - X / (1 + r)^T\right] \\ P_0 &\geq \text{Max}(0, X - S_0) \end{aligned} \tag{21}$$

Thus, in the market these options will trade for at least these values.

Let us return to the previous examples for the minimum values. The exercise price is €60, the risk-free rate is 4%, and the expiration is $T = 0.75$. Consider the two cases below:

Underlying: $S_0 = €70$

- The minimum European call price was previously calculated as €11.74. The exercise value of the American call is $\text{Max}(0, €70 - €60) = €10$. The American call has to sell for at least as much as the European call, so the minimum price of the American call is €11.74.
- The minimum European put price was €0.00. This is also the exercise value of the American put [$\text{Max}(0, €60 - €70) = €0.00$], so the minimum price of the American put is still €0.00

Underlying: $S_0 = €50$

- The minimum European call price was previously calculated as €0.00. The exercise value of the American call is $\text{Max}(0, €50 - €60) = €0.00$, so €0.00 is still the minimum price of the American call.
- The minimum European put price was previously calculated as €8.26. The exercise value of the American put is $\text{Max}(0, €60 - €50) = €10$. So, €10 is the minimum price of the American put.

The call result leads us to a somewhat surprising conclusion. With the exception of what happens at expiration when American and European calls are effectively the same and both worth the exercise value, an American call is always worth more in the market than exercised. That means that an American call will never be exercised early. This result is probably not intuitive.

Consider a deep in-the-money call. One might think that if the holder expected the underlying to not increase any further, exercise might be justified. Yet, we said the call would sell for more in the market than its exercise value. What is the rationale? If the investor thinks the underlying will not go up any further and thus expects no further gains from the option, why would she prefer the underlying? Would the investor be happier holding the underlying, which she believes is not expected to increase? Moreover, she would tie up more funds exercising to acquire the underlying than if she just held on to the option or, better yet, sold it to another investor.

So far, however, we have left out a possible factor that can affect early exercise. Suppose the underlying is a stock and pays dividends. When a stock goes ex-dividend, its price instantaneously falls. Although we will omit the details, an investor holding a call option may find it worthwhile to exercise the call just before the stock goes ex-dividend. The capture of the dividend, thereby avoiding the ex-dividend drop in the price of the underlying, can make early exercise worthwhile. If the underlying is a bond, coupon interest can also motivate early exercise. But if there are significant carrying costs, the motivation for early exercise is weakened. Storage costs lend a preference for owning the option over owning the underlying.

Because the minimum value of an American put exceeds the minimum value of the European put, there is a much stronger motivation for early exercise. Suppose you owned an American put on a stock that is completely bankrupt, with a zero stock price and no possibility of recovery. You can either wait until expiration and capture its exercise value of $\text{Max}(0, X - S_T) = \text{Max}(0, X - 0) = \text{Max}(0, X) = X$, or you can capture that value by exercising now. Obviously now is better. As it turns out, however, the underlying does not need to go all the way to zero. There is a critical point at which a put is so deep in-the-money that early exercise is justified. This rationale works differently for a call. A deep in-the-money put has a limit to its ultimate value. It can get no deeper than when the underlying goes to zero. For a call, there is no limit to its moneyness because the underlying has no upper limit to its price.

Although dividends and coupon interest encourage early exercise for calls, they discourage early exercise for puts. The loss from the decline in the price of the underlying that is avoided by exercising a call just before the decline works to the benefit of a put holder. Therefore, if a put holder were considering exercising early, he would be better off waiting until right after the dividend or interest were paid. Carrying costs on the underlying, which discourage exercise for calls, encourage exercise for puts.

At this point, we cannot determine the critical prices at which American options are best exercised early. We require more knowledge and experience with option pricing models, which is covered in more advanced material.

EXAMPLE 9**American Option Pricing**

- 1 With respect to American calls, which of the following statements is *most* accurate?
 - A American calls should be exercised early if the underlying has reached its expected maximum price.
 - B American calls should be exercised early if the underlying has a lower expected return than the risk-free rate.
 - C American calls should be exercised early only if there is a dividend or other cash payment on the underlying.
- 2 The effect of dividends on a stock on early exercise of a put is to:
 - A make early exercise less likely.
 - B have no effect on early exercise.
 - C make early exercise more likely.

Solution to 1:

C is correct. Cash payments on the underlying are the only reason to exercise American calls early. Interest rates, the expected return on the underlying, and any notion of a maximum price is irrelevant. But note that a dividend does not mean that early exercise should automatically be conducted. A dividend is only a necessary condition to justify early exercise for calls.

Solution to 2:

A is correct. Dividends drive down the stock price when the dividend is paid. Thus, all else being equal, a stock paying dividends has a built-in force that drives down the stock price. This characteristic discourages early exercise, because stock price declines are beneficial to holders of puts.

SUMMARY

This reading on derivative pricing provides a foundation for understanding how derivatives are valued and traded. Key points include the following:

- The price of the underlying asset is equal to the expected future price discounted at the risk-free rate, plus a risk premium, plus the present value of any benefits, minus the present value of any costs associated with holding the asset.
- An arbitrage opportunity occurs when two identical assets or combinations of assets sell at different prices, leading to the possibility of buying the cheaper asset and selling the more expensive asset to produce a risk-free return without investing any capital.
- In well-functioning markets, arbitrage opportunities are quickly exploited, and the resulting increased buying of underpriced assets and increased selling of overpriced assets returns prices to equivalence.

- Derivatives are priced by creating a risk-free combination of the underlying and a derivative, leading to a unique derivative price that eliminates any possibility of arbitrage.
- Derivative pricing through arbitrage precludes any need for determining risk premiums or the risk aversion of the party trading the option and is referred to as risk-neutral pricing.
- The value of a forward contract at expiration is the value of the asset minus the forward price.
- The value of a forward contract prior to expiration is the value of the asset minus the present value of the forward price.
- The forward price, established when the contract is initiated, is the price agreed to by the two parties that produces a zero value at the start.
- Costs incurred and benefits received by holding the underlying affect the forward price by raising and lowering it, respectively.
- Futures prices can differ from forward prices because of the effect of interest rates on the interim cash flows from the daily settlement.
- Swaps can be priced as an implicit series of off-market forward contracts, whereby each contract is priced the same, resulting in some contracts being positively valued and some negatively valued but with their combined value equaling zero.
- At expiration, a European call or put is worth its exercise value, which for calls is the greater of zero or the underlying price minus the exercise price and for puts is the greater of zero and the exercise price minus the underlying price.
- European calls and puts are affected by the value of the underlying, the exercise price, the risk-free rate, the time to expiration, the volatility of the underlying, and any costs incurred or benefits received while holding the underlying.
- Option values experience time value decay, which is the loss in value due to the passage of time and the approach of expiration, plus the moneyness and the volatility.
- The minimum value of a European call is the maximum of zero and the underlying price minus the present value of the exercise price.
- The minimum value of a European put is the maximum of zero and the present value of the exercise price minus the price of the underlying.
- European put and call prices are related through put–call parity, which specifies that the put price plus the price of the underlying equals the call price plus the present value of the exercise price.
- European put and call prices are related through put–call–forward parity, which shows that the put price plus the value of a risk-free bond with face value equal to the forward price equals the call price plus the value of a risk-free bond with face value equal to the exercise price.
- The values of European options can be obtained using the binomial model, which specifies two possible prices of the asset one period later and enables the construction of a risk-free hedge consisting of the option and the underlying.
- American call prices can differ from European call prices only if there are cash flows on the underlying, such as dividends or interest; these cash flows are the only reason for early exercise of a call.
- American put prices can differ from European put prices, because the right to exercise early always has value for a put, which is because of a lower limit on the value of the underlying.

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

- 1 An arbitrage opportunity is *least likely* to be exploited when:
 - A one position is illiquid.
 - B the price differential between assets is large.
 - C the investor can execute a transaction in large volumes.
- 2 An arbitrageur will *most likely* execute a trade when:
 - A transaction costs are low.
 - B costs of short-selling are high.
 - C prices are consistent with the law of one price.
- 3 An arbitrage transaction generates a net inflow of funds:
 - A throughout the holding period.
 - B at the end of the holding period.
 - C at the start of the holding period.
- 4 The price of a forward contract:
 - A is the amount paid at initiation.
 - B is the amount paid at expiration.
 - C fluctuates over the term of the contract.
- 5 Assume an asset pays no dividends or interest, and also assume that the asset does not yield any non-financial benefits or incur any carrying cost. At initiation, the price of a forward contract on that asset is:
 - A lower than the value of the contract.
 - B equal to the value of the contract.
 - C greater than the value of the contract.
- 6 With respect to a forward contract, as market conditions change:
 - A only the price fluctuates.
 - B only the value fluctuates.
 - C both the price and the value fluctuate.
- 7 The value of a forward contract at expiration is:
 - A positive to the long party if the spot price is higher than the forward price.
 - B negative to the short party if the forward price is higher than the spot price.
 - C positive to the short party if the spot price is higher than the forward price.
- 8 At the initiation of a forward contract on an asset that neither receives benefits nor incurs carrying costs during the term of the contract, the forward price is equal to the:
 - A spot price.
 - B future value of the spot price.
 - C present value of the spot price.
- 9 Stocks BWQ and ZER are each currently priced at \$100 per share. Over the next year, stock BWQ is expected to generate significant benefits whereas stock ZER is not expected to generate any benefits. There are no carrying costs associated with holding either stock over the next year. Compared with ZER, the one-year forward price of BWQ is *most likely*:

- A lower.
 - B the same.
 - C higher.
- 10 If the net cost of carry of an asset is positive, then the price of a forward contract on that asset is *most likely*:
- A lower than if the net cost of carry was zero.
 - B the same as if the net cost of carry was zero.
 - C higher than if the net cost of carry was zero.
- 11 If the present value of storage costs exceeds the present value of its convenience yield, then the commodity's forward price is *most likely*:
- A less than the spot price compounded at the risk-free rate.
 - B the same as the spot price compounded at the risk-free rate.
 - C higher than the spot price compounded at the risk-free rate.
- 12 Which of the following factors *most likely* explains why the spot price of a commodity in short supply can be greater than its forward price?
- A Opportunity cost
 - B Lack of dividends
 - C Convenience yield
- 13 When interest rates are constant, futures prices are *most likely*:
- A less than forward prices.
 - B equal to forward prices.
 - C greater than forward prices.
- 14 In contrast to a forward contract, a futures contract:
- A trades over-the-counter.
 - B is initiated at a zero value.
 - C is marked-to-market daily.
- 15 To the holder of a long position, it is more desirable to own a forward contract than a futures contract when interest rates and futures prices are:
- A negatively correlated.
 - B uncorrelated.
 - C positively correlated.
- 16 The value of a swap typically:
- A is non-zero at initiation.
 - B is obtained through replication.
 - C does not fluctuate over the life of the contract.
- 17 The price of a swap typically:
- A is zero at initiation.
 - B fluctuates over the life of the contract.
 - C is obtained through a process of replication.
- 18 The value of a swap is equal to the present value of the:
- A fixed payments from the swap.
 - B net cash flow payments from the swap.
 - C underlying at the end of the contract.

- 19 A European call option and a European put option are written on the same underlying, and both options have the same expiration date and exercise price. At expiration, it is possible that both options will have:
- A negative values.
 - B the same value.
 - C positive values.
- 20 At expiration, a European put option will be valuable if the exercise price is:
- A less than the underlying price.
 - B equal to the underlying price.
 - C greater than the underlying price.
- 21 The value of a European call option at expiration is the greater of zero or the:
- A value of the underlying.
 - B value of the underlying minus the exercise price.
 - C exercise price minus the value of the underlying.
- 22 For a European call option with two months until expiration, if the spot price is below the exercise price, the call option will *most likely* have:
- A zero time value.
 - B positive time value.
 - C positive exercise value.
- 23 When the price of the underlying is below the exercise price, a put option is:
- A in-the-money.
 - B at-the-money.
 - C out-of-the-money.
- 24 If the risk-free rate increases, the value of an in-the-money European put option will *most likely*:
- A decrease.
 - B remain the same.
 - C increase.
- 25 The value of a European call option is inversely related to the:
- A exercise price.
 - B time to expiration.
 - C volatility of the underlying.
- 26 The table below shows three European call options on the same underlying:

	Time to Expiration	Exercise Price
Option 1	3 months	\$100
Option 2	6 months	\$100
Option 3	6 months	\$105

- The option with the highest value is *most likely*:
- A Option 1.
 - B Option 2.
 - C Option 3.
- 27 The value of a European put option can be either directly or inversely related to the:
- A exercise price.

- B time to expiration.
 - C volatility of the underlying.
- 28 Prior to expiration, the lowest value of a European put option is the greater of zero or the:
- A exercise price minus the value of the underlying.
 - B present value of the exercise price minus the value of the underlying.
 - C value of the underlying minus the present value of the exercise price.
- 29 A European put option on a dividend-paying stock is *most likely* to increase if there is an increase in:
- A carrying costs.
 - B the risk-free rate.
 - C dividend payments.
- 30 Based on put-call parity, a trader who combines a long asset, a long put, and a short call will create a synthetic:
- A long bond.
 - B fiduciary call.
 - C protective put.
- 31 Which of the following transactions is the equivalent of a synthetic long call position?
- A Long asset, long put, short call
 - B Long asset, long put, short bond
 - C Short asset, long call, long bond
- 32 Which of the following is *least likely* to be required by the binomial option pricing model?
- A Spot price
 - B Two possible prices one period later
 - C Actual probabilities of the up and down moves
- 33 An at-the-money American call option on a stock that pays no dividends has three months remaining until expiration. The market value of the option will *most likely* be:
- A less than its exercise value.
 - B equal to its exercise value.
 - C greater than its exercise value.
- 34 At expiration, American call options are worth:
- A less than European call options.
 - B the same as European call options.
 - C more than European call options.
- 35 Which of the following circumstances will *most likely* affect the value of an American call option relative to a European call option?
- A Dividends are declared
 - B Expiration date occurs
 - C The risk-free rate changes
- 36 Combining a protective put with a forward contract generates equivalent outcomes at expiration to those of a:
- A fiduciary call.

- B** long call combined with a short asset.
- C** forward contract combined with a risk-free bond.

SOLUTIONS

- 1 A is correct. An illiquid position is a limit to arbitrage because it may be difficult to realize gains of an illiquid offsetting position. A significant opportunity arises from a sufficiently large price differential or a small price differential that can be employed on a very large scale.
- 2 A is correct. Some arbitrage opportunities represent such small price discrepancies that they are only worth exploiting if the transaction costs are low. An arbitrage opportunity may require short-selling assets at costs that eliminate any profit potential. If the law of one price holds, there is no arbitrage opportunity.
- 3 C is correct. Arbitrage is a type of transaction undertaken when two assets or portfolios produce identical results but sell for different prices. A trader buys the asset or portfolio with the lower price and sells the asset or portfolio with the higher price, generating a net inflow of funds at the start of the holding period. Because the two assets or portfolios produce identical results, a long position in one and short position in the other means that at the end of the holding period, the payoffs offset. Therefore, there is no money gained or lost at the end of the holding period, so there is no risk.
- 4 B is correct. The forward price is agreed upon at the start of the contract and is the fixed price at which the underlying will be purchased (or sold) at expiration. Payment is made at expiration. The value of the forward contract may change over time, but the forward price does not change.
- 5 C is correct. The price of a forward contract is a contractually fixed price, established at initiation, at which the underlying will be purchased (or sold) at expiration. The value of a forward contract at initiation is zero; therefore, the forward price is greater than the value of the forward contract at initiation.
- 6 B is correct. The value of the forward contract, unlike its price, will adjust as market conditions change. The forward price is fixed at initiation.
- 7 A is correct. When a forward contract expires, if the spot price is higher than the forward price, the long party profits from paying the lower forward price for the underlying. Therefore, the forward contract has a positive value to the long party and a negative value to the short party. However, if the forward price is higher than the spot price, the short party profits from receiving the higher forward price (the contract value is positive to the short party and negative to the long party).
- 8 B is correct. At initiation, the forward price is the future value of the spot price (spot price compounded at the risk-free rate over the life of the contract). If the forward price were set to the spot price or the present value of the spot price, it would be possible for one side to earn an arbitrage profit by selling the asset and investing the proceeds until contract expiration.
- 9 A is correct. The forward price of each stock is found by compounding the spot price by the risk-free rate for the period and then subtracting the future value of any benefits and adding the future value of any costs. In the absence of any benefits or costs, the one-year forward prices of BWQ and ZER should be equal. After subtracting the benefits related to BWQ, the one-year forward price of BWQ is lower than the one-year forward price of ZER.
- 10 A is correct. An asset's forward price is increased by the future value of any costs and decreased by the future value of any benefits: $F_0(T) = S_0(1 + r)^T - (\gamma - \theta)(1 + r)^T$. If the net cost of carry (benefits less costs) is positive, the forward price is lower than if the net cost of carry was zero.

- 11 C is correct. When a commodity's storage costs exceed its convenience yield benefits, the net cost of carry (benefits less costs) is negative. Subtracting this negative amount from the spot price compounded at the risk-free rate results in an addition to the compounded spot price. The result is a commodity forward price which is higher than the spot price compounded. The commodity's forward price is less than the spot price compounded when the convenience yield benefits exceed the storage costs and the commodity's forward price is the same as the spot price compounded when the costs equal the benefits.
- 12 C is correct. The convenience yield is a benefit of holding the asset and generally exists when a commodity is in short supply. The future value of the convenience yield is subtracted from the compounded spot price and reduces the commodity's forward price relative to its spot price. The opportunity cost is the risk-free rate. In the absence of carry costs, the forward price is the spot price compounded at the risk-free rate and will exceed the spot price. Dividends are benefits that reduce the forward price but the lack of dividends has no effect on the spot price relative to the forward price of a commodity in short supply.
- 13 B is correct. When interest rates are constant, forwards and futures will likely have the same prices. The price differential will vary with the volatility of interest rates. In addition, if futures prices and interest rates are uncorrelated, forward and futures prices will be the same. If futures prices are positively correlated with interest rates, futures contracts are more desirable to holders of long positions than are forwards. This is because rising prices lead to future profits that are reinvested in periods of rising interest rates, and falling prices lead to losses that occur in periods of falling interest rates. If futures prices are negatively correlated with interest rates, futures contracts are less desirable to holders of long positions than are forwards. The more desirable contract will tend to have the higher price.
- 14 C is correct. Futures contracts are marked-to-market on a daily basis. The accumulated gains and losses from the previous day's trading session are deducted from the accounts of those holding losing positions and transferred to the accounts of those holding winning positions. Futures contracts trade on an exchange, forward contracts are over-the-counter transactions. Typically both forward and futures contracts are initiated at a zero value.
- 15 A is correct. If futures prices and interest rates are negatively correlated, forwards are more desirable to holders of long positions than are futures. This is because rising prices lead to futures profits that are reinvested in periods of falling interest rates. It is better to receive all of the cash at expiration under such conditions. If futures prices and interest rates are uncorrelated, forward and futures prices will be the same. If futures prices are positively correlated with interest rates, futures contracts are more desirable to holders of long positions than are forwards.
- 16 B is correct. Valuation of the swap during its life appeals to replication and the principle of arbitrage. Valuation consists of reproducing the remaining payments on the swap with other transactions. The value of that replication strategy is the value of the swap. The swap price is typically set such that the swap contract has a value of zero at initiation. The value of a swap contract will change during the life of the contract as the value of the underlying changes in value.
- 17 C is correct. Replication is the key to pricing a swap. The swap price is determined at initiation by replication. The value (not the price) of the swap is typically zero at initiation and the fixed swap price is typically determined such that the value of the swap will be zero at initiation.

- 18 B is correct. The principal of replication articulates that the valuation of a swap is the present value of all the net cash flow payments from the swap, not simply the present value of the fixed payments of the swap or the present value of the underlying at the end of the contract.
- 19 B is correct. If the underlying has a value equal to the exercise price at expiration, both options will have zero value since they both have the same exercise price. For example, if the exercise price is \$25 and at expiration the underlying price is \$25, both the call option and the put option will have a value of zero. The value of an option cannot fall below zero. The holder of an option is not obligated to exercise the option; therefore, the options each have a minimum value of zero. If the call has a positive value, the put, by definition, must have a zero value and vice versa. Both cannot have a positive value.
- 20 C is correct. A European put option will be valuable at expiration if the exercise price is greater than the underlying price. The holder can put (deliver) the underlying and receive the exercise price which is higher than the spot price. A European put option would be worthless if the exercise price was equal to or less than the underlying price.
- 21 B is correct. The value of a European call option at expiration is the greater of zero or the value of the underlying minus the exercise price.
- 22 B is correct. A European call option with two months until expiration will typically have positive time value, where time value reflects the value of the uncertainty that arises from the volatility in the underlying. The call option has a zero exercise value if the spot price is below the exercise price. The exercise value of a European call option is $\text{Max}(0, S_t - X)$, where S_t is the current spot price at time t and X is the exercise price.
- 23 A is correct. When the price of the underlying is below the exercise price for a put, the option is said to be in-the-money. If the price of the underlying is the same as the exercise price, the put is at-the-money and if it is above the exercise price, the put is out-of-the-money.
- 24 A is correct. An in-the-money European put option decreases in value with an increase in the risk-free rate. A higher risk-free rate reduces the present value of any proceeds received on exercise.
- 25 A is correct. The value of a European call option is inversely related to the exercise price. A lower exercise price means there are more potential outcomes at which the call expires in-the-money. The option value will be greater the lower the exercise price. For a higher exercise price, the opposite is true. Both the time to expiration and the volatility of the underlying are directly (positively) related to the value of a European call option.
- 26 B is correct. The value of a European call option is inversely related to the exercise price and directly related to the time to expiration. Option 1 and Option 2 have the same exercise price; however, Option 2 has a longer time to expiration. Consequently, Option 2 would likely have a higher value than Option 1. Option 2 and Option 3 have the same time to expiration; however, Option 2 has a lower exercise price. Thus, Option 2 would likely have a higher value than Option 3.
- 27 B is correct. The value of a European put option can be either directly or indirectly related to time to expiration. The direct effect is more common, but the inverse effect can prevail the longer the time to expiration, the higher the risk-free rate, and the deeper in-the-money is the put. The value of a European put option is directly related to the exercise price and the volatility of the underlying.

- 28** B is correct. Prior to expiration, the lowest value of a European put is the greater of zero or the present value of the exercise price minus the value of the underlying.
- 29** C is correct. Payments, such as dividends, reduce the value of the underlying which increases the value of a European put option. Carrying costs reduce the value of a European put option. An increase in the risk-free interest rate may decrease the value of a European put option.
- 30** A is correct. A long bond can be synthetically created by combining a long asset, a long put, and a short call. A fiduciary call is created by combining a long call with a risk free bond. A protective put is created by combining a long asset with a long put.
- 31** B is correct. According to put–call parity, a synthetic call can be constructed by combining a long asset, long put, and short bond positions.
- 32** C is correct. The actual probabilities of the up and down moves in the underlying do not appear in the binomial option pricing model, only the pseudo or “risk-neutral” probabilities. Both the spot price of the underlying and two possible prices one period later are required by the binomial option pricing model.
- 33** C is correct. Prior to expiration, an American call option will typically have a value in the market that is greater than its exercise value. Although the American option is at-the-money and therefore has an exercise value of zero, the time value of the call option would likely lead to the option having a positive market value.
- 34** B is correct. At expiration, the values of American and European call options are effectively the same; both are worth the greater of zero and the exercise value.
- 35** A is correct. When a dividend is declared, an American call option will have a higher value than a European call option because an American call option holder can exercise early to capture the value of the dividend. At expiration, both types of call options are worth the greater of zero and the exercise value. A change in the risk-free rate does not affect the relative values of American and European call options.
- 36** A is correct. Put–call forward parity demonstrates that the outcome of a protective put with a forward contract (long put, long risk-free bond, long forward contract) equals the outcome of a fiduciary call (long call, long risk-free bond). The outcome of a protective put with a forward contract is also equal to the outcome of a protective put with asset (long put, long asset).

Alternative Investments

STUDY SESSION

Study Session 19 Alternative Investments

TOPIC LEVEL LEARNING OUTCOME

The candidate should be able to demonstrate a working knowledge of alternative investments, including hedge funds, private equity, real estate, commodities, and infrastructure. The candidate should be able to describe key attributes and considerations in adding these investments to a portfolio.

Investors often turn to alternative investments for potential diversification benefits and higher returns. As a result, alternative investments now represent meaningful allocations in many institutional and private wealth portfolios. Although the category of “alternative investments” is not always clearly or precisely defined, alternative investments often have a number of characteristics in common. These include lower levels of liquidity, transparency, and disclosure vs. traditional asset classes (equity, fixed income), more complex legal structures, and performance-based compensation arrangements.

ALTERNATIVE INVESTMENTS
STUDY SESSION

19

Alternative Investments

This study session provides an overview of the more widely used alternative investments, including hedge funds, private equity, real estate, commodities, and infrastructure investment. Each is examined with emphasis on their distinguishing characteristics, considerations for valuation, and potential benefits and risks. Similarities and differences with traditional investments (stocks, bonds) are also considered.

READING ASSIGNMENTS

Reading 58

Introduction to Alternative Investments
by Terri Duhon, George Spentzos, CFA, FSIP, and
Scott D. Stewart, CFA

READING

58

Introduction to Alternative Investments

by Terri Duhon, George Spentzos, CFA, FSIP, and Scott D. Stewart, CFA

Terri Duhon is at Said Business School, Oxford University, CHAPS Co, and Morgan Stanley International (United Kingdom). George Spentzos, CFA, FSIP (United Kingdom). Scott D. Stewart, CFA, is at Cornell University (USA).

LEARNING OUTCOMES

<i>Mastery</i>	<i>The candidate should be able to:</i>
<input type="checkbox"/>	a. compare alternative investments with traditional investments;
<input type="checkbox"/>	b. describe categories of alternative investments;
<input type="checkbox"/>	c. describe potential benefits of alternative investments in the context of portfolio management;
<input type="checkbox"/>	d. describe hedge funds, private equity, real estate, commodities, infrastructure, and other alternative investments, including, as applicable, strategies, sub-categories, potential benefits and risks, fee structures, and due diligence;
<input type="checkbox"/>	e. describe, calculate, and interpret management and incentive fees and net-of-fees returns to hedge funds;
<input type="checkbox"/>	f. describe issues in valuing and calculating returns on hedge funds, private equity, real estate, commodities, and infrastructure;
<input type="checkbox"/>	g. describe risk management of alternative investments.

INTRODUCTION

1

Assets under management in vehicles classified as alternative investments have grown rapidly since the mid-1990s. This growth has largely occurred because of interest in these investments by institutions, such as endowment and pension funds, as well as high-net-worth individuals seeking diversification and return opportunities. Alternative investments are perceived to behave differently from traditional investments. Investors may seek either absolute return or relative return.

CFA Institute acknowledges the research assistance of John W. Stewart, CFA, on the data analysis in this reading.

© 2017 CFA Institute. All rights reserved.

Some investors hope alternative investments will provide positive returns throughout the economic cycle; this goal is an absolute return objective. Alternative investments are not free of risk, however, and their returns may be negative and/or correlated with other investments, including traditional investments, especially in periods of financial crisis. Some investors in alternative investments have a relative return objective. A relative return objective, which is often the objective of portfolios of traditional investment, seeks to achieve a return relative to an equity or fixed-income benchmark.

This reading is organized as follows. Section 2 describes alternative investments' basic characteristics and categories; general strategies of alternative investment portfolio managers; the role of alternative investments in a diversified portfolio; and investment structures used to provide access to alternative investments. Sections 3 through 7 describe features of hedge funds, private equity, real estate, commodities, and infrastructure, respectively, along with issues in calculating returns to and valuation of each.¹ Section 8 briefly describes other alternative investments. Section 9 provides an overview of risk management, including due diligence, of alternative investments. A summary and practice problems conclude the reading.

2

ALTERNATIVE INVESTMENTS

Alternative investments fall outside of the definition of long-only, publicly traded investments in stocks, bonds, and cash (often referred to as traditional investments). In other words, they are alternatives to long-only positions in stocks, bonds, and cash. The terms “traditional” and “alternatives” should not be construed to imply that alternatives are necessarily uncommon and/or relatively recent additions to the investment universe. Alternative investments include investments in assets such as real estate and commodities, which are arguably two of the oldest investment classes.

Alternative investments also include non-traditional approaches to investing within special vehicles, such as private equity funds, hedge funds, and some exchange-traded funds (ETFs). These funds may give the manager flexibility to use derivatives and leverage, make investments in illiquid assets, and take short positions. The assets in which these vehicles invest can include traditional assets (stocks, bonds, and cash) as well as other assets. Management of alternative investments is typically active. Passive versions of commodities and real estate investments are available, but hedge funds, private equity, and infrastructure investments are almost always actively managed. Alternative investments, particularly investments through special vehicles, are often characterized by high fees, concentrated portfolios, high use of leverage, and restrictions on fund redemptions.

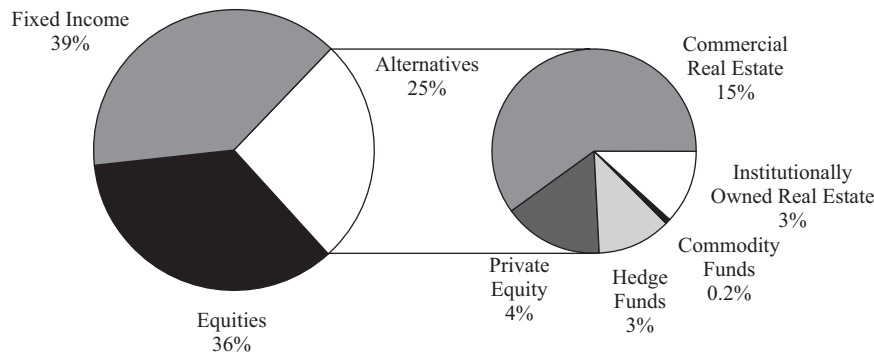
Several other characteristics are common to many, but not all, alternative investments. An alternative investment might not be expected to have all the following characteristics but will typically be expected to have some of them:

- Illiquidity of underlying investments
- Narrow manager specialization
- Low correlation of returns with those of traditional investments
- Less regulation and less transparency than traditional investments
- Limited and potentially problematic historical risk and return data
- Unique legal and tax considerations

¹ CFA Institute acknowledges the contributions of Michael Underhill of Capital Innovations, LLC, to the section on infrastructure.

Although assets under management (AUM) in alternative investments have grown rapidly, they remain smaller than either fixed-income or equity investable assets, as illustrated in Exhibit 1.

Exhibit 1 Global Assets Under Management, December 2014



Sources: Based on data from Boston Consulting Group and DTZ Research.

Institutions and high-net-worth individuals have been at the forefront of those investing in alternative investments with the expectation of diversifying their portfolios and enhancing their risk–return profiles. Their hopes that alternative investments will behave differently from traditional investments and will provide positive absolute returns throughout the economic cycle may not be realistic. Alternative investments are not free of risk, and their returns may be correlated with those of other risky investments, especially in periods of financial crisis. During a long historical period, the average correlation of returns from alternative investments with those of traditional investments may be low, but in any particular period, the correlation can differ from the average. During periods of economic crisis, such as late 2008, correlations among risky assets can increase dramatically.

Investors must be careful in evaluating the historical record of alternative investments because reported return data can be problematic. Further, reported returns and standard deviations are averages and may not be representative of sub-periods within the reported period or future periods. Many investments, such as direct real estate and private equity, are often valued using estimated (appraised) values rather than actual market prices for the subject investments. As a result, the volatility of their returns, as well as the correlation of their returns with the returns of traditional asset classes, will tend to be underestimated. Private equity market returns may be estimated using the technique proposed by Woodward and Hall (2004) to address data problems with historical published indexes, which reflect underlying investments held at cost.² The record of alternative investment universes, such as hedge fund indexes, may be subject to a variety of biases, including survivorship and backfill biases.³ Thus, the indexes

² This technique involves statistical estimation of quarterly market returns using published fund index and securities market index returns.

³ Survivorship bias relates to the inclusion of only “live” investment funds. The returns of funds that have been liquidated are excluded. Backfill bias results from including previous return data for funds that enter the index. Both biases may result in returns that are artificially high, because survivorship bias most likely results in the index excluding poorly performing funds and backfill bias most likely results in the index including high-performing funds. Using fund-of-funds returns (instead of individual funds), as in Exhibit 2, reduces the influence of these biases.

may be inherently biased upward. Commodity indexes can be weighted heavily in one particular sector, such as oil and gas. Different weightings and constituents in index construction can significantly affect the indexes and their results and comparability.

Exhibit 2 shows the historical returns to various investment classes, as well as the standard deviations of the returns, based on selected indexes. The indexes were selected for their breadth and data quality but may not be fully representative of returns to the investment class, and there may be issues with the data. For example, the return to the S&P Global REIT (Real Estate Investment Trust) Index may not be representative of returns to equity investment in real estate through private markets (direct ownership of real estate). Private equity and venture capital monthly market-based returns are unavailable, so the returns in Exhibit 2 are modeled using the technique proposed by Woodward and Hall (2004). Hedge fund returns are based on managed funds valuations, not underlying securities prices. The average annual returns and standard deviations are shown for three periods: the 25-year period of Q1 1990 to Q4 2014, the period Q4 2007 to Q4 2009, and the most recent 5-year period of Q1 2010 to Q4 2014.

Exhibit 2 Alternative Investments Historical Returns and Volatilities

Index	Q1 1990–Q4 2014		Q4 2007–Q4 2009		Q1 2010–Q4 2014	
	Mean	St. Dev.	Mean	St. Dev.	Mean	St. Dev.
Global stocks	6.9%	16.5%	−10.8%	24.2%	10.7%	15.9%
Global bonds	6.3	5.8	6.7	9.0	2.6	4.8
Hedge funds	7.2	6.0	−4.9	8.0	3.4	4.1
Commodities	2.2	21.8	−15.9	32.1	−5.0	18.1
Real estate	10.4	18.1	−17.6	33.8	15.4	17.7
Private equity	15.4	20.3	−10.0	27.8	20.7	19.4
Venture capital	15.0	47.2	−9.5	29.9	33.6	35.3
One-month Libor	3.42	0.70	1.9	0.5	0.2	0.0

Note: Mean and standard deviation are based on annualized US dollar returns.

Sources: Global stocks = MSCI All Country World Index (ACWI); Global bonds = Bloomberg Barclays Global Aggregate Index; Hedge funds = Hedge Fund Research, Inc. (HFRI) Fund of Funds Composite Index; Commodities = S&P GSCI Commodity Index; Real estate = S&P Global REIT Index; Private equity = modeled using Cambridge Associates and S&P Midcap indexes; Venture capital = modeled using Cambridge Associates and NASDAQ indexes.

During the 25-year period, the mean returns to hedge funds, real estate, private equity, and venture capital exceeded the mean returns to global stocks and bonds. The average standard deviation of all but hedge funds also exceeded the average standard deviation of global stocks and bonds. Hedge funds appear to have had a higher average return and lower standard deviation than global stocks for the 25-year period, but this result may be caused, at least partially, by hedge fund indexes' reporting biases. Commodities had the lowest mean return for the 25-year period and higher standard deviation than all but venture capital. The higher mean returns of alternative investments, except for commodities, compared with stocks and bonds, may be because of active managers' exploitation of less efficiently priced assets, illiquidity premiums, and/or account leverage. The higher mean returns may also be the result of tax advantages. For example, REITs may not be subject to taxes at the fund level if they meet certain conditions.

In a poorly performing economy, the use of leverage and investment in illiquid assets may be reasonably expected to lead to poor results. Leveraged investments are more sensitive to market conditions than similar unleveraged investments, and

illiquid assets may be difficult to sell and are exposed to high transaction costs during market downturns. From Q4 2007 through Q4 2009, a period categorized as a time of financial crisis, the mean returns to alternative investments, other than hedge funds, were similar to or even lower than those to global stocks, and the standard deviations exceeded those of global stocks. Alternative investments did not provide the desired protection during the Q4 2007–Q4 2009 period. It is the long-term return potential, however, that attracts many investors, and real estate, private equity, and venture capital performed very well from Q1 2010 through Q4 2014, the five-year period following the financial crisis. During this period, real estate, private equity, and venture capital had average annual returns exceeding the average annual return of global stocks. Also during this period, hedge funds and commodities average annual returns were less than the average annual return of global stocks.

The 2015 annual report for the Yale University Endowment provides one investor's reasoning behind the attractiveness of investing in alternatives:

“The heavy [73%] allocation to nontraditional asset classes stems from their return potential and diversifying power. Today's actual and target portfolios have significantly higher expected returns than the 1985 portfolio with similar volatility. Alternative assets, by their very nature, tend to be less efficiently priced than traditional marketable securities, providing an opportunity to exploit market inefficiencies through active management. The Endowment's long time horizon is well suited to exploit illiquid, less efficient markets such as venture capital, leveraged buyouts, oil and gas, timber, and real estate.”⁴

The links between this quote and the expected characteristics of alternative investments are clear: diversifying power (low correlations among returns), higher expected returns (positive absolute return), and illiquid and potentially less efficient markets. These links also highlight the importance of having the ability and willingness to take a long-term perspective. Allocating a portion of an endowment portfolio to alternative investments is not unique to Yale. INSEAD, as of August 2015, had allocated 38% of its endowment to alternative investments including real estate, hedge funds, and private equity and debt. The remaining 62% was invested in traditional financial assets such as global stocks and bonds.⁵ These examples are not to imply that every university endowment fund invests in alternative investments, but many do.

High-net-worth investors have also embraced alternative investments. According to the Spectrem Group's 2014 study of American investors, 42% of investors with more than \$25 million in assets have invested in hedge funds and 69% of investors with more than \$125 million have invested in hedge funds. The authors noted that wealthy investors were choosing alternatives for higher returns and improved diversification.⁶ The increasing interest in alternative investments by both institutional investors and high-net-worth individuals has resulted in significant growth in each category of alternative investments since the beginning of 2000. The following examples illustrate growth in the categories of private equity, real estate, and commodities in the period up to 2015.

- Global private capital fundraising was approximately \$589 billion in 2014, compared with \$238 billion in 2000.⁷

⁴ http://static1.squarespace.com/static/55db7b87e4b0dca22fba2438/t/578e41ffe58c629352d7560a/1468940803516/Yale_Endowment_15.pdf

⁵ <https://www.insead.edu/sites/default/files/assets/dept/give/docs/INSEAD-Endowment-Report-2014-2015.pdf>

⁶ http://spectrem.com/Content_Press/december-3-2014-press-release.aspx

⁷ Preqin Global Private Equity & Venture Capital Report, 2016.

- Global REITs grew to \$1.8 trillion in market value by September 2015. In 1990, the market capitalization of global REITs was less than \$10 billion.⁸
- The number of new commodity trading advisers (CTAs) averaged 169 annually for the five years ending 2013, compared with 37 for the five years ending 2004.⁹

The enthusiasm for alternative investments was tested during 2008, when assets under management in alternative investment declined as losses were incurred and investors withdrew funds. However, alternative investments continue to represent a significant proportion of the portfolios of pension funds, endowments, foundations, and high-net-worth individuals. By 2012, a resurgence of interest in alternative investments occurred. The alternative investments available vary in characteristics and performance, and suitability for an investor has to be carefully considered.

EXAMPLE 1

Characteristics of Alternative Investments

Compared with traditional investments, alternative investments are *most likely* to be characterized by high:

- A leverage.
- B liquidity.
- C regulation.

Solution:

A is correct. Alternative investments are likely to use more leverage than traditional investments. Alternative investments are likely to be more illiquid and subject to less regulation compared with traditional investments.

2.1 Categories of Alternative Investments

Considering the variety of characteristics common to many alternative investments, it is not surprising that no consensus exists on a definitive list of these investments. There is even considerable debate as to what represents a category versus a sub-category of alternative investments. For instance, some listings define distressed securities as a separate category, whereas others consider distressed securities as a sub-category of the hedge funds and/or private equity categories, or even a subset of high-yield bond investing. Similarly, managed futures are sometimes defined as a separate category and sometimes as a sub-category of hedge funds and/or commodities. The following list offers one approach to define broad categories of alternative investments. Each category is described in detail later in this reading.

- **Hedge funds.** Hedge funds are private investment vehicles that manage portfolios of securities and derivative positions using a variety of strategies. They may use long and short positions, may be highly leveraged, and aim to deliver investment performance that is independent of broad market performance.
- **Private equity funds.** Private equity funds generally invest in companies (either start-up or established) that are not listed on a public exchange, or they invest in public companies with the intent to take them private. The majority of

⁸ <https://www.cohenandsteers.com/insights/education/about-reits> and Ernst & Young, *Global Real Estate Investment Trust Report*, 2007.

⁹ Overview of CTA Fund Industry, Prequin, 2013.

private equity activity involves leveraged buyouts of established profitable and cash-generative companies with solid customer bases, proven products, and high-quality management. **Venture capital**, which typically involves investing in or providing financing to start-up or young companies with high growth potential, is a small portion of the private equity market.

- **Real estate.** Real estate investments may be in buildings and/or land, including timberland and farmland, either directly or indirectly. The growing popularity of securitizations broadened the definition of real estate investing. It now includes private commercial real estate equity (e.g., ownership of an office building), private commercial real estate debt (e.g., directly issued loans or mortgages on commercial property), public real estate equity (e.g., REITs), and public real estate debt (e.g., mortgage-backed securities) investments.
- **Commodities.** Commodities investments may be in physical commodity products such as grains, metals, and crude oil, either through owning cash instruments, using derivative products, or investing in businesses engaged in the production of physical commodities. The main vehicles investors use to gain exposure to commodities are commodity futures contracts and funds benchmarked to commodity indexes. Commodity indexes are typically based on various underlying commodity futures.
- **Infrastructure.** Infrastructure assets are capital-intensive, long-lived, real assets, such as roads, dams, and schools, which are intended for public use and provide essential services. Infrastructure assets may be financed, owned, and operated by governments, but increasingly the private sector is investing in infrastructure assets. Investors may gain exposure to these assets directly or indirectly. Indirect investment vehicles include shares of companies, ETFs, private equity funds, listed funds, and unlisted funds that invest in infrastructure.
- **Other.** Other alternative investments may include tangible assets (such as fine wine, art, antique furniture and automobiles, stamps, coins, and other collectibles) and intangible assets (such as patents).

2.2 Returns to Alternative Investments

Portfolio managers invest in one of two basic ways to achieve returns: passively or actively. Passive managers assume that markets are efficient and focus on beta drivers of return. Beta, a measure of sensitivity relative to a particular market index, is a measure of systematic risk.¹⁰ Some portfolios of REITs and commodity and infrastructure ETFs may be passively managed to provide beta exposure to a category of alternative investments.

Active managers, whether in alternative or traditional investments, assume that inefficiencies exist that may be exploited to earn positive return after adjusting for beta risk. Alternative investments are generally actively managed. Actively managed alternative investment strategies reflect several characteristics that differentiate them from long-only passive investments in traditional assets. Active investment strategies (these are not mutually exclusive) can be categorized as follows:

- **Absolute return.** Absolute return strategies seek to generate returns that are independent of market returns; theoretically, betas of funds using absolute return strategies should be close to zero.¹¹ As a result, with an absolute return

¹⁰ Systematic risk should not be confused with the term “systemic risk,” which is used in the credit markets to mean highly correlated default risk.

¹¹ In practice, most funds have some market exposure.

strategy, there is typically no market index specified to beat. Instead, the formal performance objective tends to be stated relative to either a cash rate such as Libor, a return exceeding the inflation rate (a real return target), or an absolute, nominal return target such as 10%.

- **Market segmentation.** Market segmentation exists when capital cannot migrate effortlessly from lower expected return areas to higher ones. Segmentation typically results from institutional, contractual, or regulatory restrictions on traditional asset managers or from differences across investors in investment objectives or liabilities. Segmentation brought on by investment constraints includes portfolios managed relative to published market indexes, limitations on the use of derivatives, and restrictions on the proportion of low-quality or non-domestic securities. Portfolios may also be subject to environmental, social, and governance constraints and mandates. Restrictions on some portfolios may provide an opportunity for managers with more flexibility to move into higher-returning segments more quickly than managers with more-restricted or more-conservative portfolios.
- **Concentrated portfolios.** This strategy entails concentrating assets among fewer securities, strategies, and/or managers, which results in less diversification but may enable an investor to achieve higher returns if these concentrated positions outperform the market.

In addition to diversification benefits in a portfolio context, some of the attraction of alternative investments seems to be based on expected returns. When considering expected returns, however, investors must also factor in the risks associated with those returns. Risks can be considered both on a stand-alone basis and within the context of a portfolio. As mentioned earlier, risks for alternative investments include low liquidity, limited redemption availability and transparency, and the challenge of manager diversification.

Returns may be measured relative to stand-alone risk using risk ratios and exploring return distributions. A commonly reported risk ratio is the Sharpe ratio, which equals an investment's return, net of a risk-free rate, divided by its return standard deviation. The Sharpe ratio is a common measure among the investment community because it is easily calculated using historical results. The Sharpe ratio has shortcomings, however. It equally penalizes upside and downside volatility, fails to capture non-symmetric distributions, and may not fully reflect tails in return distributions. The return distributions to alternative investments are typically non-symmetric and skewed, making the Sharpe ratio a less than ideal measure. Other risk measures, such as those that emphasize downside risk, are also frequently considered.¹² A popular downside measure is the Sortino ratio, which uses a similar numerator to the Sharpe ratio: mean realized return less target return. If the target return is specified as the risk-free rate of return, the Sortino ratio's numerator is the same as the Sharpe ratio's. The Sortino ratio replaces, in the denominator, the standard deviation of returns with a downside deviation that is the standard deviation of the returns that are below the target return.

Sharpe and Sortino ratios for traditional and alternative investments, based on the same information used in Exhibit 2, are shown in Panel A of Exhibit 3. In calculating the Sortino ratio, the target return was assumed to be 0%. It should again be noted that the reported or available historical return data used may be unreliable and/or not representative of the return data for the investment class.

¹² The Sharpe ratio is discussed in greater detail in the reading "Statistical Concepts and Market Returns." Several other risk measures are used in practice and are discussed throughout the CFA Program curriculum.

Other downside risk measures, such as the chance of losing a certain amount of money in a given period, are also used in practice. Panel B of Exhibit 3 includes some other measures indicative of downside risk: the frequencies of monthly returns less than -1% , -5% , and -10% from 1990 through 2014, and in the right-hand column, the worst return reported in a month.

Exhibit 3

Sharpe Ratios, Sortino Ratios, and Downside Risk Measures, Based on 1990–2014 Returns

Panel A Sharpe and Sortino Ratios (using annualized returns)

Index	Sharpe Ratio	Sortino Ratio
Global stocks	0.21	0.43
Global bonds	0.49	1.09
Hedge funds	0.63	0.74
Commodities	-0.06	0.12
Real estate	0.38	0.79
Private equity	0.59	1.19
Venture capital	0.25	0.63

Panel B Downside Frequencies

Index	Frequency of Monthly Return Less Than...			Worst Monthly Return
	-1%	-5%	-10%	
Global stocks	32.0%	9.3%	1.7%	-19.8%
Global bonds	14.7	0.0	0.0	-3.8
Hedge funds	12.3	1.0	0.0	-7.5
Commodities	37.7	17.0	5.3	-28.2
Real estate	27.7	7.0	2.3	-30.5
Private equity	29.3	8.7	2.0	-22.3
Venture capital	36.0	23.7	13.7	-40.5

Sharpe ratios (using Libor as a proxy for the risk-free rate) indicate that based on reported data, during the 25-year period from 1990 through 2014, hedge funds offered the best risk–return trade-off and commodities the worst. The Sortino ratio, however, using a target return of 0%, indicates that private equity and global bonds offered superior risk–return trade-offs during this period. Global fixed-income investments displayed the most attractive downside risk profile (see Panel B), in part as a result of

the bond bull market during this 25-year period. Venture capital displayed the least attractive downside risk profile, but its higher reported return (see Exhibit 2) results in higher Sharpe and Sortino ratios than global stocks and commodities during the period.

The Sharpe ratio and downside risk measures do not take into account the potentially low level of correlation of alternative investments with traditional investments. A less-than-perfect correlation between investments reduces the standard deviation of a diversified portfolio below the weighted average of the standard deviations of the investments. Risk in the portfolio context is discussed in the next section.

2.3 Portfolio Context: Integration of Alternative Investments with Traditional Investments

A key motivation cited for investing in alternative investments is their diversifying potential: Investors perceive an opportunity to improve the risk–return relationship within the portfolio context. Given the historical return, volatility, and correlation profiles of alternative investments, combining a portfolio of alternative investments with a portfolio of traditional investments potentially improves the overall portfolio’s risk–return profile. The correlation between some categories of alternative investments and traditional investments has historically, over long periods, been low or at least less than perfect, providing diversification opportunities. The historically higher returns by many categories of alternative investments compared with traditional investments result in potentially higher returns to a portfolio containing alternative investments, and the less-than-perfect correlation with traditional investments results in portfolio risk (standard deviation) being less than a weighting of the standard deviations. In identifying the appropriate allocation to alternative investments, however, an investment manager is likely to consider more than mean return and average standard deviation of returns. When considering potential portfolio combinations, the manager’s analysis may include historical downside frequencies and worst return in a month for potential portfolio combinations.

The purported diversification benefits and improved risk–return contributions of alternative investments to portfolios explain why institutional investors such as pension funds may allocate a portion of their portfolios to alternative investments. There are challenges, however, including obtaining reliable measures of risk and return, identifying the appropriate allocation, and selecting portfolio managers. It is important to note that expected diversification benefits from alternative investments are not always realized, including sometimes when they are most needed. Correlations between risky investments increase during periods of market stress and can approach 1.0 during financial crises.

2.4 Investment Structures

A common structure for many alternative investments, such as hedge funds and private equity funds, is a partnership in which the fund manager is the **general partner (GP)** and investors are **limited partners (LPs)**. Limited partnerships are restricted to investors who are expected to understand and to be able to assume the risks associated with the investments. Fund investments, because they are not offered to the general public, may be unregulated or less regulated than offerings to the general public.¹³ The GP runs the business and theoretically bears unlimited liability for anything that might go wrong. Because most individuals are unwilling to bear unlimited liability,

¹³ In the United States, the US Securities Act of 1933 regulates the process by which investment securities are offered. Most alternative investment funds are structured as “private placements,” which are defined within Regulation D of the Securities Act and sometimes called “Reg D Offerings.”

the GP is usually a limited liability corporation. Limited partners own a fractional interest in the partnership based on their investment and as agreed to by the partners. An LP's fractional interest is often referred to as his share of the partnership. These partnerships are frequently located in tax-efficient locations, which benefit both the GP and the LPs. Funds set up as private investment partnerships typically have a limit on the number of LPs.¹⁴

Funds are generally structured with a **management fee** based on assets under management (sometimes called the base fee) plus an **incentive fee** (or **performance fee**) based on realized profits. Sometimes, the fee structure specifies that the incentive fee is earned only after the fund achieves a specified return known as a hurdle rate. Fee calculations also take into account **high-water marks**, which reflect the highest cumulative return used to calculate an incentive fee. It is the highest value, net of fees, that the fund has reached. The use of high-water marks protects clients from paying twice for the same performance. Many alternative investment funds, including hedge funds, use this basic partnership and fee structure. Fee structures are discussed in more detail later in the reading.

HEDGE FUNDS

3

In 1949, Alfred Winslow Jones, a sociologist investigating fundamental and technical research to forecast the stock market for *Fortune* magazine, set up an investment fund with himself as GP. The fund followed three key tenets: (1) Always maintain short positions, (2) always use leverage, and (3) charge only an incentive fee of 20% of profits with no fixed fees. Jones called his portfolio a “hedged” fund (eventually shortened to “hedge fund”) because he had short positions to offset his long positions in the stock market. Theoretically, the overall portfolio was hedged against major market moves.

Although Jones' original three tenets still have some relevance to the hedge fund industry, not all hedge funds maintain short positions and/or use leverage, and most hedge funds have some non-incentive fees. A contemporary hedge fund may have the following characteristics:

- It is an aggressively managed portfolio of investments across asset classes and regions that is leveraged, takes long and short positions, and/or uses derivatives.
- It has a goal of generating high returns, either in an absolute sense or over a specified market benchmark, and it has few, if any, investment restrictions.
- It is set up as a private investment partnership open to a limited number of investors willing and able to make a large initial investment.
- It imposes restrictions on **redemptions**. Investors may be required to keep their money in the hedge fund for a minimum period (referred to as a **lockup period**) before they are allowed to make withdrawals or redeem shares. Investors may be required to give notice of their intent to redeem; the **notice period** is typically 30 to 90 days in length. Also, investors may be charged a fee to redeem shares.

¹⁴ Because of the inherent risk involved in alternative investments, investment is typically restricted to a specified number of investors meeting certain criteria. The number and criteria can be specified by regulation or set by the fund. In the United States, the number depends on whether funds target “Accredited Investors” or “Qualified Purchasers” (as defined by the Investment Company Act of 1940, Sections 3(c) 1 and 7, respectively). A fund can have no more than 100 Accredited Investors (individuals with at least \$1 million and institutions with at least \$5 million in investable assets) or no more than 500 Qualified Purchasers (individuals with at least \$5 million and institutions with at least \$25 million in investable assets).

Investors' willingness to invest in hedge funds, despite the restrictions on redemptions, is largely because of the reported returns of some hedge funds and their perceived low correlation with traditional investments. The positive performance of many funds in the early 2000s, when other investments had declined, supported the diversification potential of hedge funds in a portfolio. The growth of interest in hedge funds as investments led to the emergence of funds of hedge funds.

Funds of hedge funds are funds that hold a portfolio of hedge funds. They make hedge funds accessible to smaller investors while allowing those investors to be diversified to some extent among hedge funds. Also, funds of hedge funds (commonly shortened to "**funds of funds**") are assumed to have some expertise in conducting due diligence on hedge funds and may be able to negotiate better redemption terms than individual investors can. Funds of hedge funds invest in numerous hedge funds and may diversify across fund strategies, investment regions, and management styles. The distinction between a single hedge fund and a fund of hedge funds is not necessarily clear-cut because many hedge funds invest in other hedge funds.

Hedge fund managers are less restricted than traditional investment managers and thus may have the flexibility to invest anywhere they see opportunity. Most hedge funds do have a broadly stated strategy but are allowed some deviation from that strategy. Hedge funds are often given the flexibility to invest a percentage of the AUM, generally less than 20%, how and when they see fit. A hedge fund can also be structured as part of one "asset management" business that is "contracted" to manage several different funds (e.g., SuperStar Asset Management might manage SuperStar Credit Fund, SuperStar Commodities Fund, and SuperStar Multi-Strategy Fund).

The growing popularity of hedge funds is illustrated by AUM and net asset flows for the period of 1990 through 2015. Hedge Fund Research, Inc. (HFRI) reports that AUM grew from approximately \$39 billion in 1990 to \$491 billion in 2000 and to \$2.9 trillion in 2015.¹⁵

Exhibit 4 compares the returns and a variety of risk and performance measures of the HFRI Fund of Funds Composite Index, the MSCI ACWI Index, and the Bloomberg Barclays Global Aggregate Index. The HFRI Fund of Funds Index is an equally weighted performance index of funds of hedge funds included in the HFR database. Hedge fund indexes suffer from issues related to self-reporting, but the Fund of Funds index reflects the actual performance of portfolios of hedge funds. This index may show a lower reported return because of the added layer of fees,¹⁶ but it may represent average hedge fund performance more realistically than HFRI's composite index of individual funds.

As shown in Exhibit 4, over the 25-year period, hedge funds had higher returns than stocks and bonds and an almost identical standard deviation as bonds. As a result, the Sharpe ratio for hedge funds appeared to dominate these and other investments (see Exhibit 3) in both return and risk. Note that the returns and volatilities (standard deviations) represent an average and are not representative of any single year. Hedge funds do not appear as attractive as bonds if returns are adjusted for downside deviation, as reflected in the Sortino measures in Exhibit 4. The "worst drawdown" reflecting the period of largest cumulative negative returns for hedge funds and global equities was during the period that began in 2007 (when each peaked) and ended in 2009.

¹⁵ That is, January 2016.

¹⁶ A fund of funds has an extra layer of fees. Each hedge fund in which a fund of funds invests is structured to receive a management fee plus a performance fee, and the fund of funds itself may also be structured to receive a management fee plus a performance fee.

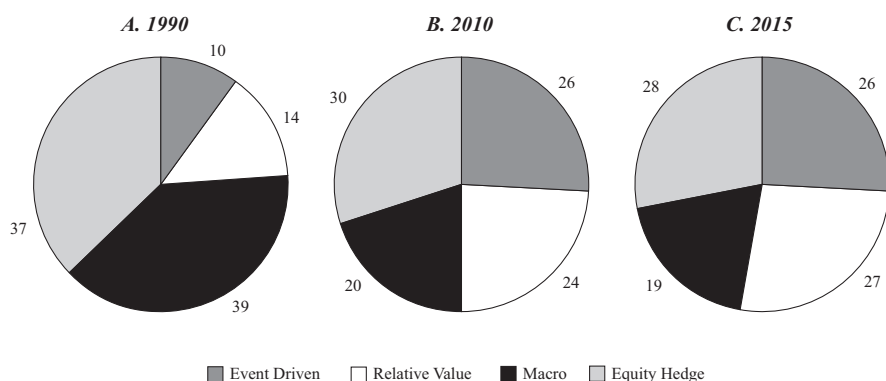
Exhibit 4 Risk-Return Characteristics of Hedge Funds and Other Investments, 1990–2014

	FoF Hedge	Global Stocks	Global Bonds
Annualized return	7.2%	6.9%	6.3%
Annualized volatility	6.0%	16.5%	5.8%
Sharpe ratio	0.63	0.21	0.49
Sortino ratio	0.74	0.43	1.09
Percentage of positive months	69.3%	61.3%	62.7%
Best month	6.8%	11.9%	6.2%
Worst month	-7.5%	-19.8%	-3.8%
Worst drawdown	-22.2%	-54.6%	-10.1%

Sources: Fund-of-funds (FoF) hedge data are from HFRI Fund of Funds Composite Index; global stocks data are from MSCI ACWI; global bonds data are from Bloomberg Barclays Global Aggregate Index.

3.1 Hedge Fund Strategies

Hedge funds are typically classified by strategy, although categorizations vary. Many classifying organizations focus on the most common strategies, but others have classification systems based on different criteria such as the underlying assets in which the funds are invested. Also, classifications change over time as new strategies, often based on new products and opportunities in the market, are introduced. Classifying hedge funds is important so that investors can review aggregate performance data, select strategies to build a portfolio of funds, and select or construct appropriate performance benchmarks. In 2015, HFRI identified four broad categories of strategies: event-driven, relative value, macro, and equity hedge.¹⁷ Exhibit 5 shows the approximate percentage of hedge fund AUM by strategy, according to HFRI, for 1990, 2010, and 2015. Based on percentage of hedge fund AUM by strategy, event-driven and relative value strategies have grown in popularity during the last 25 years, while macro and equity hedge funds have declined.

Exhibit 5 Percentage of AUM by Strategy

¹⁷ The Chartered Alternative Investment Analyst (CAIA) Association classifies hedge funds into four broad categories: corporate restructuring, convergence trading, opportunistic, and market directional. These categories approximately coincide with event driven, relative value, macro, and equity hedge, respectively.

3.1.1 Event-Driven Strategies

Event-driven strategies seek to profit from short-term events, typically involving potential changes in corporate structure such as an acquisition or restructuring, that are expected to affect individual companies. This strategy is considered “bottom up” (company-level analysis followed by aggregation and analysis of a larger group, such as an industry) as opposed to “top down” (global macro analysis followed by sectoral/regional analysis followed by company analysis). Investments may include long and short positions in common and preferred stocks, as well as debt securities and options. Further subdivisions of this category by HFRI include the following:

- **Merger arbitrage.** Generally, these strategies involve going long (buying) the stock of the company being acquired and going short (selling) the stock of the acquiring company when the merger or acquisition is announced. The manager may expect to profit from the deal spread, which reflects the uncertainty of the deal closing, or may expect the acquirer to ultimately overpay for the acquisition and perhaps suffer from an increased debt load. The primary risk in this strategy is that the announced merger or acquisition does not occur, and the hedge fund has not closed its positions on a timely basis.
- **Distressed/restructuring.** These strategies focus on the securities of companies either in bankruptcy or perceived to be near to bankruptcy. Hedge funds attempt to profit from distressed securities in a variety of ways. The hedge fund may simply purchase fixed-income securities trading at a significant discount to par. This transaction takes place in anticipation of the company restructuring and the fund earning a profit from the subsequent sale of the securities. The hedge fund may also use a more complicated approach, for example, buying senior debt and shorting junior debt or buying preferred stock and shorting common stock. These transactions take place in expectation of a profit as the spread between the securities widens. The fund may also short sell the company's stock, but this transaction involves considerable risk given the potential for loss if the company's prospects improve.
- **Activist.** The term “activist” is short for “activist shareholder.” These strategies focus on the purchase of sufficient equity in order to influence a company's policies or direction. For example, the activist hedge fund may advocate for divestitures, restructuring, capital distributions to shareholders, and/or changes in management and company strategy. These hedge funds are distinct from private equity because they operate in the public equity market.
- **Special situations.** These strategies focus on opportunities in the equity of companies that are currently engaged in restructuring activities other than mergers, acquisitions, or bankruptcy. These activities include security issuance or repurchase, special capital distributions, and asset sales/spin-offs.

3.1.2 Relative Value Strategies

Relative value funds seek to profit from a pricing discrepancy (an unusual short-term relationship) between related securities. The expectation is that the pricing discrepancy will be resolved in time. This strategy typically involves buying and selling related securities. Examples of relative value strategies include the following:

- **Fixed-income convertible arbitrage.** These market-neutral (a zero-beta portfolio, at least in theory) investment strategies seek to exploit a perceived mispricing between a convertible bond and its component parts (the underlying bond and the embedded stock option). The strategy typically involves buying convertible debt securities and simultaneously selling the same issuer's common stock.

- **Fixed-income asset backed.** These strategies focus on the relative value between a variety of asset-backed securities (ABS) and mortgage-backed securities (MBS) and seek to take advantage of mispricing across different ABS.
- **Fixed-income general.** These strategies focus on the relative value within the fixed-income markets. Strategies may incorporate trades between two corporate issuers, between corporate and government issuers, between different parts of the same issuer's capital structure, or between different parts of an issuer's yield curve. Currency dynamics and government yield curve considerations may also come into play when managing these fixed-income instruments.
- **Volatility.** These strategies typically use options to go long or short market volatility either in a specific asset class or across asset classes. Option prices reflect implied volatility, and an increase in market volatility leads to an increase in option prices.
- **Multi-strategy.** These strategies trade relative value within and across asset classes or instruments. Rather than focusing on one type of trade (e.g., convertible arbitrage), a single basis for trade (e.g., volatility), or a particular asset class (e.g., fixed income), this strategy instead looks for investment opportunities wherever they might exist.

3.1.3 Macro Strategies

Macro hedge funds emphasize a top-down approach to identify economic trends evolving across the world. Trades are made based on expected movements in economic variables. Generally, these funds trade opportunistically in the fixed-income, equity, currency, and commodity markets. Macro hedge funds use long and/or short positions to potentially profit from a view on overall market direction as influenced by major economic trends and/or events.

3.1.4 Equity Hedge Strategies

Equity hedge strategies can be thought of as the original hedge fund category. They are focused on public equity markets and take long and short positions in equity and equity derivative securities. Some hedge funds, called equity-only funds, invest exclusively in common equity securities. Equity hedge strategies are not focused on equity trades categorized as consistent with event-driven or macro strategies. Equity hedge strategies use a bottom-up as opposed to top-down approach. Other investors, not structured as hedge funds, may use some similar strategies. Examples of equity hedge strategies include the following:

- **Market neutral.** These strategies use quantitative (technical) and/or fundamental analysis to identify under- and over-valued equity securities. The hedge fund takes long positions in securities it has identified as undervalued and short positions in securities it has identified as overvalued. The hedge fund tries to maintain a net position that is neutral with respect to market risk. Ideally, the portfolio should have a beta of approximately zero. The intent is to profit from individual securities movements while hedging against market risk.
- **Fundamental growth.** These strategies use fundamental analysis to identify companies expected to exhibit high growth and capital appreciation. The hedge fund takes long positions in identified companies.
- **Fundamental value.** These strategies use fundamental analysis to identify companies that are undervalued. The hedge fund takes long positions in identified companies.

- **Quantitative directional.** These strategies use technical analysis to identify companies that are under- and overvalued and to ascertain relationships between securities. The hedge fund takes long positions in securities identified as undervalued and short positions in securities identified as overvalued. The hedge fund typically varies levels of net long or short exposure depending on the anticipated market direction and stage in the market cycle. Similar long–short approaches exist that are based on fundamental analysis.
- **Short bias.** These strategies use quantitative (technical) and/or fundamental analysis to identify overvalued equity securities. The hedge fund takes short positions in securities identified as overvalued. The fund typically varies its net short exposure based on market expectations, going fully short in declining markets.
- **Sector specific.** These strategies exploit expertise in a particular sector and use quantitative (technical) and fundamental analysis to identify opportunities in the sector.

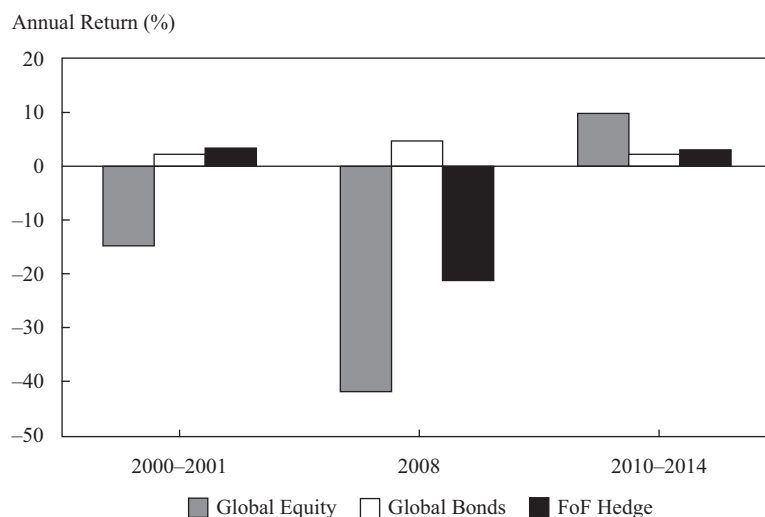
Many hedge funds start as a focused operation, specializing in one strategy or asset class and, if successful, may diversify over time to become multi-strategy funds. Large, multi-strategy funds are an alternative to funds of hedge funds. Although funds of hedge funds may offer advantages (for example, access by smaller investors, diversified hedge fund portfolio, better redemption terms, and/or due diligence expertise) that multi-strategy funds lack, a primary difference between a multi-strategy hedge fund and a fund of hedge funds is the extra layer of fees associated with a fund of funds. Each hedge fund in which a fund of hedge funds invests is structured to receive a management fee plus an incentive fee, and the fund of hedge funds itself is also structured to receive a management fee and may receive an incentive fee.

3.2 Hedge Funds and Diversification Benefits

Given the broad range of strategies across hedge funds, general statements about hedge fund performance are not necessarily meaningful. Further, there is a general lack of performance persistence; hedge fund strategies that generate the highest returns in some years can be the ones to perform the most poorly in subsequent years.

The general premise of hedge funds is that they can make money (in other words, earn absolute returns) regardless of the stock market's direction. Their flexibility and the fact that they typically are not restricted to long-only positions gives them the opportunity to respond to market fluctuations. In addition, hedge funds have traditionally been thought of as “arbitrage” players, meaning that they seek to earn returns while hedging against risks. Of course, in efficient markets, it is hard to find true arbitrage opportunities. In fact, one of the benefits some hedge funds provide to the financial marketplace is that they help make markets more efficient by providing liquidity with contrarian views and speeding up price responses to new information. As the hedge fund market has grown, many traditional hedge fund strategies have become increasingly crowded, forcing funds to take on more risk to generate competitive returns.

Less-than-perfect correlation with the stock market may provide diversification benefits. The claim is sometimes made by hedge funds that their performance is uncorrelated, not just less than perfectly correlated, with stock market performance, but overall this claim is unsubstantiated. Looking at Exhibit 6, the claims of lack of correlation with the stock market appear to be supported from 2000 through 2001 but not in 2008 or from 2010 through 2014. During financial crisis periods, the correlation between hedge fund and stock market performances may increase.

Exhibit 6 Returns for Hedge Funds, Global Stocks, and Bonds, 2000–2014

3.3 Hedge Fund Fees and Other Considerations

Hedge fund assets under management grew to \$2.9 trillion by the end of 2015 but remain a small percentage of the asset management business overall. Hedge funds, however, earn a significantly higher percentage of fees. For example, according to one estimate for 2013, hedge funds managed less than 3% of total managed funds (hedge funds plus mutual funds) but earned more than 30% of managed fund revenue (fees).¹⁸ Fund revenue depends on fee structure and fund performance.

3.3.1 Fees and Returns

It is important to consider a hedge fund's fee structure prior to making an investment. This fee structure accounts for the disproportionately high revenues earned relative to mutual funds and affects the returns to investors. A common fee structure in the hedge fund market was once "2 and 20," which reflects a 2% management fee and a 20% incentive fee; both fees are paid by LP investors. The average industry fee is now closer to a 1.6% management fee and 17.75% incentive fee.¹⁹ Additionally, funds of hedge funds may charge investors a 1% management fee and a 10% incentive fee. The incentive fee may be calculated on profits net of management fees or on profits before management fees (in other words, the incentive fee is calculated independent of management fees).

Sometimes, the fee structure specifies that the incentive fee is earned only after the fund achieves a specified return known as a hurdle rate. The hurdle rate is frequently set based on a risk-free rate proxy (e.g., Libor or a specified Treasury bill rate) plus a premium but may be set as an absolute, nominal, or real return target. The incentive fee can be based on returns in excess of the hurdle rate (hard hurdle rate) or on the entire return (soft hurdle rate).

¹⁸ Estimate prepared by Citigroup Inc. and reported by Bloomberg (29 January 2015).

¹⁹ Fees on new funds have declined through the years. HFRI reported in March 2016 that management fees for new funds averaged 1.6% and incentive fees averaged 17.75% in 2015. In 2007, it reported that new fund incentive fees averaged 18.5%.

The fee structure may specify that before an incentive fee is paid, following a year in which the fund's value has declined, the fund's value must return to a previous high-water mark. Note that the high-water mark is typically the highest value reported by the fund; the amount reported is net of fees. High-water marks reflect the highest cumulative return used to calculate an incentive fee. In other words, the hedge fund must recover its past losses and return to its high-water mark before any additional incentive fee is earned. Clients are not charged an incentive fee if the latest cumulative return does not exceed the prior high-water mark. This use of a high-water mark protects clients from paying twice for the same performance. Although poorly performing hedge funds may not receive an incentive fee, the management fee is earned irrespective of returns.

Although "2 and 20" and "1 and 10" represent commonly quoted fee structures for hedge funds and funds of hedge funds, respectively, many fee structure variations exist in the marketplace. Hedge funds charge different rates, and different classes of investors may have different fee structures within the same fund. Hedge funds may be willing to negotiate terms, including fees and notice and lockup periods, with potential investors. A fee structure may differ from 2 and 20 based on the promised length of the investment. In other words, the longer investors agree to keep their money in the hedge fund, the lower the fees. A fee structure may also vary from 2 and 20 based on supply and demand as well as historical performance. Sometimes, rebates or reductions in fees are given to investors or to the placement agent who introduced another investor to the hedge fund.

The following example demonstrates fee structures and their effect on the resulting returns to investors.

EXAMPLE 2

Fee and Return Calculations

AWJ Capital is a hedge fund with \$100 million of initial investment capital. It charges a 2% management fee based on year-end AUM and a 20% incentive fee. In its first year, AWJ Capital has a 30% return. Assume management fees are calculated using end-of-period valuation.

- 1 What are the fees earned by AWJ if the incentive and management fees are calculated independently? What is an investor's effective return given this fee structure?
- 2 What are the fees earned by AWJ assuming that the incentive fee is calculated based on return net of the management fee? What is an investor's net return given this fee structure?
- 3 If the fee structure specifies a hurdle rate of 5% and the incentive fee is based on returns in excess of the hurdle rate, what are the fees earned by AWJ assuming the performance fee is calculated net of the management fee? What is an investor's net return given this fee structure?

In the second year, the fund value declines to \$110 million.

- 4 The fee structure is as specified for Question 1 but also includes the use of a high-water mark (computed net of fees). What are the fees earned by AWJ in the second year? What is an investor's net return for the second year given this fee structure?

In the third year, the fund value increases to \$128 million.

- 5 The fee structure is as specified in Questions 1 and 4. What are the fees earned by AWJ in the third year? What is an investor's net return for the third year given this fee structure?
- 6 What are the arithmetic and geometric mean annual returns for the three-year period based on the fee structure specified in Questions 1, 4, and 5? What is the capital gain to the investor for the three-year period? What are the total fees paid to AWJ for the three-year period?

Solution to 1:

AWJ fees

$\$130 \text{ million} \times 2\% = \$2.6 \text{ million management fee}$

$(\$130 - \$100) \text{ million} \times 20\% = \$6 \text{ million incentive fee}$

Total fees to AWJ Capital = \$8.6 million

Investor return: $(\$130 - \$100 - \$8.6) \text{ million} / \$100 \text{ million} = 21.40\%$

Solution to 2:

$\$130 \text{ million} \times 2\% = \$2.6 \text{ million management fee}$

$(\$130 - \$100 - \$2.6) \text{ million} \times 20\% = \$5.48 \text{ million incentive fee}$

Total fees to AWJ Capital = \$8.08 million

Investor return: $(\$130 - \$100 - \$8.08) \text{ million} / \$100 \text{ million} = 21.92\%$

Solution to 3:

$\$130 \text{ million} \times 2\% = \$2.6 \text{ million management fee}$

$(\$130 - \$100 - \$5 - \$2.6) \text{ million} \times 20\% = \$4.48 \text{ million incentive fee}$

Total fees to AWJ Capital = \$7.08 million

Investor return: $(\$130 - \$100 - \$7.08) \text{ million} / \$100 \text{ million} = 22.92\%$

Solution to 4:

$\$110 \text{ million} \times 2\% = \$2.2 \text{ million management fee}$

No incentive fee because the fund has declined in value.

Total fees to AWJ Capital = \$2.2 million

Investor return: $(\$110 - \$2.2 - \$121.4) \text{ million} / \$121.4 \text{ million} = -11.20\%$

The beginning capital position in the second year for the investors is $(\$130 - \$8.6) \text{ million} = \$121.4 \text{ million}$. The ending capital position at the end of the second year is $(\$110 - \$2.2) \text{ million} = \$107.8 \text{ million}$.

Solution to 5:

$\$128 \text{ million} \times 2\% = \$2.56 \text{ million management fee}$

$(\$128 - \$121.4) \text{ million} \times 20\% = \$1.32 \text{ million incentive fee}$.

The \$121.4 million represents the high-water mark established at the end of Year 1.

Total fees to AWJ Capital = \$3.88 million

Investor return: $(\$128 - \$3.88 - \$107.8) \text{ million} / \$107.8 \text{ million} = 15.14\%$

The ending capital position at the end of Year 3 is \$124.12 million. This amount is the new high-water mark.

Solution to 6:

Arithmetic mean annual return = $(21.4\% - 11.20\% + 15.14\%)/3 = 8.45\%$

Geometric mean annual return = $[\text{Cube root of } (124.12/100)] - 1 = 7.47\%$

Capital gain to the investor = $(\$124.12 - \$100)$ million = \$24.12 million

Total fees = $(\$8.6 + \$2.2 + \$3.88)$ million = \$14.68 million

As the example illustrates, the return to an LP investor in a fund differs significantly from the return to the fund. Hedge fund indexes generally report performance net of fees. If fee structures vary, however, the net-of-fees returns may vary among investors and from that included in the index. The multilayered fee structure of funds of hedge funds has the effect of further diluting returns to the investor, but this disadvantage is balanced with several attractive features. Funds of hedge funds may provide a diversified portfolio of hedge funds, may provide access to hedge funds that may otherwise be closed to direct investments, and may offer expertise in and conduct due diligence in selecting the individual hedge funds. Fund-of-funds money is considered “fast” money by hedge fund managers because fund-of-funds managers tend to be the first to redeem their money when hedge funds start to perform poorly,²⁰ and they may also have negotiated redemption terms that are more favorable (for example, a shorter lockup period and/or notice period).

EXAMPLE 3

Comparison of Returns—Investment Directly into a Hedge Fund or through a Fund of Hedge Funds

An investor is contemplating investing €100 million in either the ABC Hedge Fund (ABC HF) or the XYZ Fund of Funds (XYZ FOF). XYZ FOF has a “1 and 10” fee structure and invests 10% of its AUM in ABC HF. ABC HF has a standard “2 and 20” fee structure with no hurdle rate. Management fees are calculated on an annual basis on AUM at the beginning of the year. Management fees and incentive fees are calculated independently. ABC HF has a 20% return for the year before management and incentive fees.

- 1 Calculate the return to the investor from investing directly in ABC HF.
- 2 Calculate the return to the investor from investing in XYZ FOF. Assume that the other investments in the XYZ FOF portfolio generate the same return before management fees as ABC HF and have the same fee structure as ABC HF.
- 3 Why would the investor choose to invest in an FOF instead of an HF given the effect of the “double fee” demonstrated in the answers to Questions 1 and 2?

²⁰ Anecdotal evidence suggests that many funds of funds that cater to high-net-worth investors move money faster than funds of funds that serve institutional clients.

Solution to 1:

ABC HF has a profit before fees on a €100 million investment of €20 million (= 100 million × 20%). The management fee is €2 million (= €100 million × 2%), and the incentive fee is €4 million (= 20 million × 20%). The return to the investor is 14% (= $[20 - 2 - 4]/100$).

Solution to 2:

XYZ FOF earns a 14% return or €14 million profit after fees on €100 million invested with hedge funds. XYZ FOF charges the investor a management fee of €1 million (= €100 million × 1%) and an incentive fee of €1.4 million (= €14 million × 10%). The return to the investor is 11.6% (= $[14 - 1 - 1.4]/100$).

Solution to 3:

This scenario assumed that returns were the same for all underlying hedge funds. In practice, this result will not likely be the case, and XYZ FOF may provide due diligence expertise and potentially valuable diversification.

The hedge fund business is attractive to portfolio managers because fees can generate significant revenue if the fund performs well and AUM are large. Many new hedge funds launched throughout the late 1990s and early 2000s. Not all hedge funds remain in business long, however. One study suggests that more than a quarter of all hedge funds fail within the first three years because of performance problems.²¹ This outcome is one of the reasons survivorship bias is such a problem in hedge fund indexes. Because of the survivorship and backfill biases, hedge fund indexes may not reflect actual average hedge fund performance but rather reflect only the performance of hedge funds that are performing well.

3.3.2 Other Considerations

Hedge funds may use leverage to seek higher returns on their investments. Leverage has the effect of magnifying gains or losses because the hedge fund can take a large position relative to the capital committed. Hedge funds may leverage their portfolios by borrowing capital and/or using derivatives.

For example, if a hedge fund expects the price of Nestlé SA to increase, it can take a number of actions to benefit from the expected price increase. The fund can buy a thousand shares of Nestlé, buy 10 futures contracts on Nestlé on the NYSE Euronext, buy calls on 1,000 shares of Nestlé, or sell puts on a thousand shares of Nestlé to profit from the expected price increase. The profit or loss from holding the futures will be similar to the profit or loss from holding the shares, but the capital requirement for the investment in the futures is far lower. If the hedge fund had bought calls on 1,000 shares of Nestlé, the fund would have paid a relatively small premium and potentially experienced a significant profit if Nestlé had increased in price. The maximum loss to the fund would have been the premium paid. If the hedge fund had sold puts on 1,000 shares of Nestlé expecting the price to rise and the puts to not be exercised, the fund would have a maximum profit equal to the relatively small premium received. If Nestlé had declined in price, however the potential loss would be extremely large.

Investors, including hedge funds, are required to put up some collateral when using derivatives if they are going to be exposed to potential losses on their positions. This collateral requirement helps to protect against default on the position and helps to protect the counterparty (or clearinghouse) on the derivative. The amount of collateral

²¹ Brooks and Kat (2002).

depends on the investment's riskiness as well as the creditworthiness of the hedge fund or other investor. Collateral is not invested in a fund's strategy and may be a drag on performance.

The borrowing of capital also leverages a portfolio. It often takes the form of buying on margin. By borrowing, a hedge fund can invest a larger amount than was invested in the fund. Hedge funds normally trade through **prime brokers**, which provide services including custody, administration, lending, short borrowing, and trading. A hedge fund will normally negotiate its margin requirements with its prime broker(s). The prime broker effectively lends the hedge fund money to make investments, and the hedge fund puts money or other collateral into a margin account with the prime broker. The margin account represents the hedge fund's equity in the position. The margin requirement depends on the investment's riskiness and the creditworthiness of the hedge fund.

The smaller the margin requirement, the more leverage is available to the hedge fund. Leverage is a large part of the reason that hedge funds make either larger-than-normal returns or significant losses; the leverage magnifies both gains and losses. If the margin account or the hedge fund's equity in a position declines below a certain level, the lender initiates a margin call and requests the hedge fund put up more collateral. Margin calls can have the effect of magnifying losses because in order to meet a margin call, the hedge fund may liquidate (close) the losing position. This liquidation can lead to further losses if the order size is sufficiently large to move the security's market price.

Another factor that can magnify losses for hedge funds is investor redemptions. **Redemptions** frequently occur when a hedge fund is performing poorly. In the hedge fund industry, a **drawdown** is a reduction in net asset value (NAV).²² When drawdowns occur, investors may decide to exit the fund or redeem at least a portion of their shares. Redemptions may require the hedge fund manager to liquidate some positions and incur transaction costs. As already stated, the liquidation of a position may further magnify the losses on the position. Redemption fees may serve to discourage redemption and to help the hedge fund managers recover transaction costs. Notice periods may allow the hedge fund manager to liquidate a position in an orderly fashion without magnifying the losses. Lockup periods give the hedge fund manager time to implement and potentially realize a strategy's expected results. If the hedge fund experiences a drawdown shortly after the fund launch, the lockup period will force investors to stay in the fund rather than withdraw. A hedge fund's ability to demand a long lockup period and still raise a significant amount of money depends a great deal on the reputation of either the firm or the hedge fund manager. Funds of hedge funds may offer more redemption flexibility than afforded by direct investment in hedge funds because of special redemption arrangements with the underlying hedge fund managers, maintenance of a cash fund, or access to temporary financing.

Although hedge funds are not subject to extensive regulation globally, there have been calls for more oversight. In the United States, hedge funds larger than \$100 million are registered with the SEC (Securities and Exchange Commission). Additional regulation has been established in recent years. Under the Alternative Investment Fund Managers Directive (AIFMD), hedge funds that operate or market themselves in the European Union must be authorized. The AIFMD was implemented in the European Union (EU) in 2013, and in the United States, regular submission of the risk disclosure form "Form PF" to the Financial Stability Oversight Council has been required since 2012. Regulation may not require hedge funds to be transparent to outsiders or proactive in communicating their strategies and reporting their returns.

²² NAV per share is the value of the fund's total assets minus liabilities, divided by the number of shares outstanding.

Offshore jurisdictions (for example, the Cayman Islands) are often the locale for registering hedge funds, whether managed in the United States, Europe, or Asia. Some hedge funds choose to register domestically, however. The choice to register in, for example, the United States or the United Kingdom may result from the added credibility of registering with the SEC or the Financial Services Authority, respectively. Sometimes, onshore hedge funds set up complementary offshore funds to attract additional capital.

EXAMPLE 4

Effect of Redemption

A European credit hedge fund has a very short notice period of a week because the fund's managers believe that it invests in highly liquid asset classes and is market neutral. The fund has a small number of holdings that represent a significant portion of the outstanding issue of each holding. The fund's lockup period has expired. Unfortunately, in one particular month, because of the downgrades of two large holdings, the hedge fund has a drawdown (decline in NAV) of more than 5%. The declines in value of the two holdings result in margin calls from their prime broker, and the drawdown results in requests to redeem 50% of total partnership interests. The combined requests are *most likely* to:

- A force the hedge fund to liquidate or unwind 50% of its positions in an orderly fashion throughout the week.
- B have little effect on the prices received when liquidating the positions because it has a week before the partnership interests are redeemed.
- C result in a forced liquidation, which will further drive down prices and result in a bigger drawdown, so that the remaining investors will redeem their partnership interests leading to fund liquidation and closure.

Solution:

C is correct. One week may not be enough time to unwind the fund's positions in an orderly fashion so that the unwinding does not further drive down prices. A downgrading is not likely to have a temporary effect, so even if other non-losing positions are liquidated to meet the redemption requests, it is unlikely that the two large holdings will return to previous or higher values. Also, the hedge fund may have a week to satisfy the requests for redemptions, but the margin call must be met immediately. Thus, it is most likely that a forced liquidation will drive down prices, resulting in further drawdowns and redemption requests so that ultimately the fund will liquidate and cease to exist.

3.4 Hedge Fund Valuation Issues

Valuations are important for calculating performance and meeting redemptions. The frequency with which and how hedge funds are valued varies among funds. Hedge funds are generally valued on a daily, weekly, monthly, and/or quarterly basis. The valuation may use market or estimated values of underlying positions. When market prices or quotes are used for valuation, funds may differ in which price or quote they use (for example, bid price, ask price, average quote, or median quote). A common practice is to use the average quote ($(\text{Bid} + \text{Ask})/2$). A more conservative and theoretically accurate approach is to use bid prices for longs and ask prices for shorts; these are the prices at which the positions could be closed.

The underlying positions may be in highly illiquid or non-traded investments, and therefore, it is necessary to estimate values because there are no reliable market values. Estimated values may be computed using statistical models. Any model should be independently tested, benchmarked, and calibrated to industry-accepted standards to ensure a consistency of approach. Because of the potential for conflicts of interests affecting estimates of value, hedge funds should develop procedures for in-house valuations, communicate these procedures to clients, and adhere to them.

Liquidity is an important issue for valuation, but becomes particularly so for strategies involving convertible bonds, collateralized debt obligations, distressed debt, and emerging market fixed-income securities, which may be relatively illiquid. If a quoted market price is available, the use of liquidity discounts or “haircuts” is actually inconsistent with valuation guidance under most generally accepted accounting standards. Many practitioners, however, believe that liquidity discounts are necessary to reflect fair value. This assumption has resulted in some funds having two NAVs—trading and reporting. The trading NAV incorporates liquidity discounts, based on the size of the position held relative to the total amount outstanding in the issue and its trading volume. The reporting NAV is based on quoted market prices.

EXAMPLE 5

Hedge Fund Valuation

A hedge fund with a market-neutral strategy restricts its investment universe to domestic publicly traded equity securities that are actively traded. In calculating net asset value, the fund is most likely to use which of the following to value underlying positions?

- A Average quotes
- B Average quotes adjusted for liquidity
- C Bid price for shorts and ask price for longs

Solution:

A is correct. The fund is most likely to use average quotes. The securities are actively traded, so no liquidity adjustment is required. If the fund uses bid–ask prices, it will use ask prices for shorts and bid prices for longs; these are the prices at which the positions are closed.

3.5 Due Diligence for Investing in Hedge Funds

When investing in hedge funds, investors must consider many issues. A basic question is whether one wants to rely on the expertise of a manager of a fund of hedge funds to invest in a portfolio of hedge funds or whether one has the expertise to undertake the hedge fund investment selection process. Funds of hedge funds potentially offer the benefits of providing a diversified portfolio of hedge funds, supplying expertise in conducting due diligence, and negotiating favorable redemption terms. These potential benefits come at the cost of an additional layer of fees. Also, although a fund of hedge funds may provide expertise in due diligence, the investor should still conduct due diligence when choosing a fund of hedge funds.

Investors in hedge funds should consider many factors in their decision-making process. This section highlights some of the key due diligence points to consider but does not provide an exhaustive list of factors. Key factors to consider include investment

strategy, investment process, competitive advantage, track record, size and longevity, management style, key person risk, reputation, investor relations, plans for growth, and risk management systems.

Investment strategy and process are challenging to fully assess because hedge funds may limit disclosure in order to maintain their competitive advantage and to not give away information that is considered proprietary. It should be possible, however, to identify in which markets the hedge fund invests, the general investment strategy (for example, long–short, relative arbitrage, and so on) and the basic process to implement this strategy, and the benchmark against which the fund gauges its performance.

Track record is a commonly viewed consideration because it should be readily available and is often assumed to be an indicator of future performance and risk (perhaps incorrectly, based on studies of performance persistence).²³ Investors should determine how the returns are calculated (e.g., based on estimates of value or market prices) and reported (e.g., before or after fees) and how the returns and risks compare with some benchmark. The investor should inquire about the fee structure because this information will affect, as demonstrated earlier, the return to the investor.

Size and longevity are also common items for review.²⁴ The older a fund, the more likely it has not caused significant losses to its investors (otherwise, it is likely to have experienced redemptions, been unable to raise further capital, and been liquidated). As a result, older funds are likely to have experienced growth in AUM through both capital appreciation and additional investments (capital injections). Many investors require hedge funds to have a minimum track record of two years before they will invest. This requirement makes it particularly difficult for start-up funds to raise money because their managers need capital to invest before they can build a track record. In many cases, start-up funds receive money from seed investors who want a share of the business for their investment.

A hedge fund's size is an important consideration for investors because many investors set a minimum size on their investments and restrict the percentage of a fund's overall AUM that their investment can represent. For example, if an investor's minimum investment size is \$10 million and the investor's maximum percentage of a fund is 10%, the minimum hedge fund size the investor can consider is \$100 million (= \$10 million/0.1).

The hedge fund due diligence process also focuses on many qualitative factors, including management style, key person risk, reputation, investor relations, and plans for growth. A thorough due diligence process will also include a review of management procedures, including leverage, brokerage, and diversification policies. The use of leverage and counterparty risk can significantly affect a fund's risk and performance. In addition to gathering information about the fund's prime broker and custody arrangements for securities, the investor should identify the auditor of the hedge fund and ensure that the auditor is independent and known for conducting competent audits.

Risk management of systems is an important consideration for reviewing a hedge fund. Relevant risk management questions to ask are varied and related to the type of securities in which the fund invests. Ultimately, the answers should provide comfort to investors that the fund performs risk management in a rigorous fashion. In many cases, particularly with smaller funds or those that invest in more unusual or illiquid assets, the answers to these questions may indicate either that the systems and processes are simplistic or that the answers themselves are very complex. Commonly, hedge fund managers believe that their strategies, systems, and processes are proprietary,

²³ For a discussion on the record of institutional investors' record at selecting managers, see Stewart, Heisler, Knittel, and Neumann (2009).

²⁴ For a discussion of quantitative factors investors use to select investment managers, see Heisler, Knittel, Neumann, and Stewart (2007).

and they are unwilling to provide too much information to potential investors. This reluctance can make due diligence very challenging. Regulation of hedge funds is likely to increase in the future, which may help with the due diligence process.

EXAMPLE 6

Due Diligence

HF A and HF B invest in the same asset class using a similar investment strategy. A potential investor has gathered the following data from the hedge funds:

Characteristic	HF A	HF B
Annualized returns	15%	10%
Sharpe ratio	1.3	1.6
Size (US\$ millions)	200	500
Fees	1.5 and 15	2 and 20
Track record	2 years	5 years

Based on the above information, the investor is *most likely* to:

- A invest in HF B because of its higher Sharpe ratio.
- B question how the annualized returns are calculated.
- C invest in HF A because of its higher returns and lower fees.

Solution:

B is correct. It is important to know how returns are calculated and if they are comparable before making any decision. If the returns are both reported net of fees, the higher fees on HF B may account for most of the difference in returns.

4

PRIVATE EQUITY

Private equity generally means investing in privately owned companies or in public companies with the intent to take them private. There are different stages and types of private equity investing. The focus of private equity firms, which may manage many private equity funds, may change through time as business conditions and the availability of financing change. A possible categorization of private equity identifies leveraged buyouts, venture capital, development capital, and distressed investing as primary private equity strategies.

Leveraged buyouts (LBOs) or highly leveraged transactions refer to private equity firms establishing buyout funds (or LBO funds) that acquire public companies or established private companies with a significant percentage of the purchase price financed through debt. The target company's assets typically serve as collateral for the debt, and the target company's cash flows are expected to be sufficient to service the debt. The debt becomes part of the target company's capital structure if the buyout goes through. After the buyout, the target company becomes or remains a privately owned company.

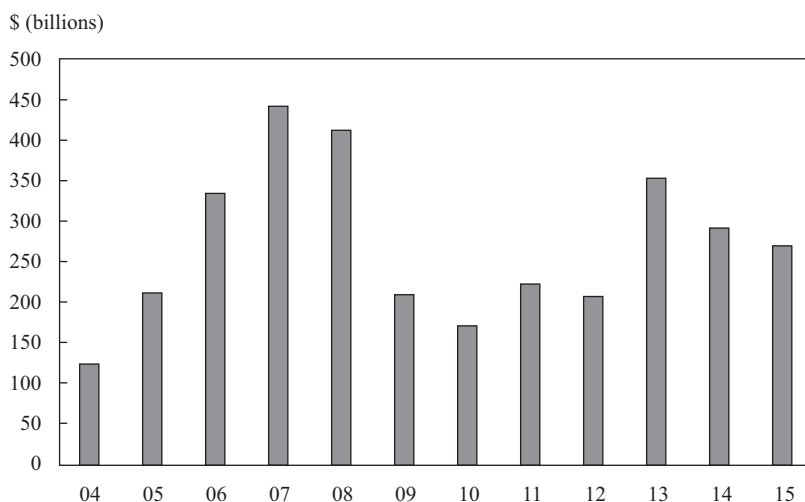
Venture capital entails investing in or providing financing to private companies with high growth potential. Typically, these are start-up or young companies, but venture capital can be provided at a variety of stages. In contrast, **development**

capital generally refers to minority equity investments in more-mature companies that are looking for capital to expand or restructure operations, enter new markets, or finance major acquisitions.

Distressed investing typically entails buying the debt of mature companies in financial difficulties. These companies may be in bankruptcy proceedings, have defaulted on debt, or seem likely to default on debt. Some investors attempt to identify companies with a temporary cash flow problem but a good business plan that will help the company survive and, in the end, flourish. These investors buy the company's debt in expectation of both the company and its debt increasing in value. Turnaround investors buy debt and plan to be more active in the management and direction of the company. They seek distressed companies to restructure and revive.

The level of activity in private equity has grown over time, but it is cyclical. The cyclical nature is shown visually in Exhibit 7, which displays committed capital raised by funds between 2004 and 2015. Note that detailed information on private equity activity is not always readily available.

Exhibit 7 Private Equity Funds Raised, 2004–2015



Source: PitchBook, PE Activity, 2014 and 2015.

4.1 Private Equity Structure and Fees

Like hedge funds, private equity funds are typically structured as partnerships in which outside investors are Limited Partners (LPs) and the private equity firm, which may manage a number of funds, is the General Partner (GP). Most private equity firms charge both a management fee and an incentive fee on a fund basis. The management fees generally range from 1% to 3% of **committed capital**. Committed capital is the amount that the LPs have agreed to provide to the private equity fund. Private equity funds raise committed capital and draw down on those commitments over three to five years when they have a specific investment to make. Until the committed capital is fully drawn down and invested, the management fee is based on committed capital, *not* invested capital. The committed capital basis for management fees is an important distinction from hedge funds, whose management fees are based on AUM. After the

committed capital is fully invested, the fees are paid only on the funds remaining in the investment vehicle; as investments are exited, capital is paid back to the investors, and investors no longer pay fees on that portion of their investment.

For most private equity funds, the GP does not earn an incentive fee until the LPs have received back their initial investment. The GP typically receives 20% of the total profit, net of any hard hurdle rate, of the private equity fund as an incentive or profit sharing fee.²⁵ The LPs receive 80% of the total profit of the equity fund plus the return of their initial investment. If distributions are made based on profits earned over time rather than at exit from investments of the fund, the distributions may result in receipts by the GP of more than 20% of the total profit. Most private equity partnership agreements include policies that protect the LPs from this contingency. These policies include prohibiting distributions of incentive fees to the GP until the LPs have received back their invested capital, setting up an escrow account for a portion of the incentive fees, and incorporating a **clawback** provision that requires the GP to return any funds distributed as incentive fees until the LPs have received back their initial investment and 80% of the total profit.

In addition to both management and incentive (profit-sharing) fees, LBO firms may generate income from sources other than the fund's management fees and profit sharing. These income sources include a fee paid to the firm for arranging the buyout of a company, compensation if an intended acquisition falls through, and a fee for arranging for divestitures of assets after the buyout is complete. Private equity firms may also charge consulting fees directly to underlying companies.

4.2 Private Equity Strategies

There are many private equity strategies. A common categorization, as indicated earlier, identifies leveraged buyouts, venture capital, development capital, and distressed investing as the primary strategies. LBOs and venture capital are the dominant strategies, however.

4.2.1 Leveraged Buyouts

LBOs are sometimes referred to as “going private” transactions because, after the acquisition of a publicly traded company, the target company's equity is generally no longer publicly traded. When the target company is an established private company, it is not a “going private” transaction. The LBO may also be of a specific type. In **management buyouts** (MBOs), the current management team is involved in the acquisition, and in **management buy-ins** (MBIs), the current management team is being replaced and the acquiring team will be involved in managing the company. LBO managers seek to add value—from improving company operations and growing revenue and ultimately increasing profits and cash flows. The sources of growth in earnings before interest, taxes, depreciation, and amortization (EBITDA), in order of contribution to growth, include organic revenue growth, cost reduction/restructuring, acquisition, and other, according to the Private Equity Growth Capital Council. The potential returns in this category, however, result to a large extent from the use of leverage. If debt financing is unavailable or costly, LBOs are less likely to occur.

4.2.1.1 LBO Financing Debt is central to the structure and feasibility of buyouts in private equity. Target companies are rarely purchased using only the equity of the buyout company. To potentially increase equity returns and increase the number of transactions a particular fund can make, private equity firms use debt to finance a significant proportion of each deal (in other words, they use leverage). For example, in a buyout

²⁵ The incentive fee may also be calculated on a deal-by-deal basis.

deal, a private equity firm may invest equity representing 30% of the purchase price and raise the rest of the purchase price in the debt markets. It may use a combination of bank loans, often called leveraged loans because of the amount of the company's capital structure they represent, and high-yield bonds.

To protect investors, leveraged loans often carry covenants that may require or restrict certain actions. For instance, the covenants may require the company to maintain specified financial ratios within certain limits, submit information so that the bank can monitor performance, or operate within certain parameters. The covenants may restrict the company from further borrowing (in other words, no additional bonds can be issued and no additional funds can be borrowed from banks or other sources), or they may impose limits on paying dividends or making operating decisions. Similarly, bond terms may include covenants intended to protect the bondholders. One of the key differences between leveraged loans and high-yield bonds, however, is that leveraged loans are generally senior secured debt whereas the bonds are unsecured in the case of bankruptcy. Even given covenants on the bonds, the bonds issued to finance an LBO are usually high-yield bonds that receive low quality ratings and must offer high coupons to attract investors because of the amount of leverage used.

A typical LBO capital structure includes equity, bank debt (leveraged loans), and high-yield bonds. Leveraged loans often provide a larger amount of capital than either equity or high-yield bonds. As an alternative to high-yield bonds, **mezzanine financing** may also be used.²⁶ Mezzanine financing refers to debt or preferred shares with a relationship to common equity resulting from a feature such as attached warrants or conversion options. Being subordinate to both senior and high yield debt, mezzanine financing typically pays a higher coupon rate. In addition to interest or dividends, this type of financing offers a potential return based on increases in the value of common equity.

The variety of available financing choices provides flexibility for a target company to match its repayment schedules with expected inflows, and it also permits higher levels of leverage compared with traditional bank debt. The optimal capital structure takes into account a variety of factors, including the company's projected cash flows, investor willingness to purchase different types of debt and accept different levels of leverage, the availability of equity, and the required rates of return for equity and different types of debt considering leverage. The optimal capital structure will be different for every deal.

4.2.1.2 Characteristics of Attractive Target Companies for LBOs Private equity firms invest in companies across many sectors, although an individual firm may specialize in a certain sector or sectors. Whatever the targeted sector(s), private equity firms look for several characteristics, any one of which may make a company particularly attractive as an LBO target. The characteristics include the following:

- **Undervalued/depressed stock price.** The private equity firm perceives the company's intrinsic value to exceed its market price. Private equity firms are therefore willing to pay a premium to the market price to secure shareholder approval. Firms try to buy assets or companies cheaply, and they may focus on companies that are out of favor in the public markets and have stock prices that reflect this perception.
- **Willing management and shareholders.** Existing management is looking for a deal. Management may have identified opportunities but does not have access to the resources to make substantial investments in new processes, personnel, equipment, and so on to drive long-term growth. Current shareholders may

²⁶ This type of loan is referred to as *mezzanine financing* because of its location on the balance sheet and is a *type* of financing.

have insufficient access to capital and welcome a private equity partner. Family business owners may want to cash out. Private equity firms can provide management and owners with the time and capital to expand a company or turn it around.

- **Inefficient companies.** Private equity firms seek to generate attractive returns on equity by creating value in the companies they buy. They achieve this goal by identifying companies that are inefficiently managed and that have the potential to perform well if managed better.
- **Strong and sustainable cash flow.** Companies that generate strong cash flow are attractive because in an LBO transaction, the target company will be taking on a significant portion of debt. Cash flow is necessary to make interest payments on the increased debt load.
- **Low leverage.** Private equity firms focus on target companies that currently have no significant debt on their balance sheets. This characteristic makes it easier to use debt to finance a large portion of the purchase price.
- **Assets.** Private equity managers like companies that have a significant amount of unencumbered physical assets. These physical assets can be used as security, and secured debt is cheaper than unsecured debt.

4.2.2 Venture Capital

Venture capital (VC) is often categorized by the stage at which the company of interest (the portfolio company) receives it. The company in which a private equity firm is investing is often called the **portfolio company** because it will become part of the fund's portfolio. The VC stages range from inception of an idea for a company to the point when the company is about to make an IPO (initial public offering) or be acquired—most typically, by a strategic buyer. The investment return required varies based on the company's stage of development. Investors in early-stage companies will demand higher expected returns relative to later-stage investors, because the earlier the stage of development, the higher the risk. The ultimate returns realized depend on the portfolio company's success in transitioning from a startup to a going and growing concern.

Venture capitalists, like all private equity managers, are not passive investors. They are actively involved with the companies in which they invest. The VC fund typically receives an equity interest in the company in which it is investing. The VC fund may also provide some debt financing.

- 1 Formative-stage financing occurs when the company is still in the process of being formed and encompasses several financing steps, described as follows:
 - a Angel investing is capital provided at the idea stage. Funds may be used to transform the idea into a business plan and to assess market potential. The amount of financing at this stage is typically small and provided by individuals (often friends and family) rather than by VC funds.
 - b Seed-stage financing or seed capital generally supports product development and/or marketing efforts, including market research. This point is generally the first stage at which VC funds invest.
 - c Early-stage financing (early-stage VC) is provided to companies moving toward operation but before commercial production and sales have occurred. Early-stage financing may be provided to initiate commercial production and sales.

- 2 Later-stage financing (expansion VC) is provided after commercial production and sales have begun but before any IPO. Funds may be used for initial expansion of a company already producing and selling a product or for major expansion, such as physical plant expansion, product improvement, or a major marketing campaign.
- 3 Mezzanine-stage financing²⁷ (mezzanine venture capital) is provided to prepare a company to go public. It represents the bridge financing needed to fund a private firm until it can complete an IPO.

Formative-stage financing generally is done via ordinary or convertible preferred share sales to the investor(s) (VC fund), and management retains control of the company. Later-stage financing generally involves management selling control of the company to the VC investor; financing is provided through equity and debt (the fund may also use convertible bonds or convertible preferred shares). The debt financing is not intended for income generation to the VC fund; rather, it is for the recovery and control of assets in a bankruptcy situation. Simply put, debt financing provides more protection to the VC fund than equity.

To make an investment, a venture capitalist needs to be convinced that the portfolio company's management team is competent and has a solid business plan with strong prospects for growth and development. Because these investments are not in mature businesses with years of operational and financial performance history, the complexity involved with VC involves accurately estimating company valuation based on future prospects. This estimation is more of an unknown than in LBO investing, which targets mature, underperforming public companies. As the portfolio company matures and moves into later-stage financing, the level of certainty around valuation increases, but less so than with an LBO investment.

4.2.3 Other Private Equity Strategies

There are several other specialties for private equity firms. These specialties include development capital, also called minority equity investing, which earns profits from funding business growth or restructuring. Many times, minority equity investing is initiated and sought by management, which is interested in realizing earnings from selling a portion of its shares before the company can go public. Although this scenario occurs most commonly with private companies, publicly quoted companies sometimes seek private equity capital in opportunities called PIPEs (private investment in public equities).

Distressed investing by a private equity firm typically involves purchasing the debt of troubled companies (companies that are bankrupt, in default, or likely to default). The distressed debt often trades at prices significantly less than its face value. If the company can be turned around, the debt may recover its value. The return on investment is a function of the ability of the turnaround investor to restructure the company either operationally or financially. Distressed debt investors may be involved in the turnaround and may assume an active role in the company's management and direction or in its reorganization. Some distressed investors are passive investors who simply try to identify companies that they expect to increase in value; debt holders will benefit from the increase before equity holders. Distressed debt investors are sometimes referred to as vulture investors.

Other private equity strategies may involve providing specific financing (for example, mezzanine funds) or investing in companies in specific industries. As the financial environment changes and evolves, additional strategies may emerge.

²⁷ The term "mezzanine-stage financing" is used because this financing is provided at the stage between being a private and public company. The focus is on *when* the financing occurs.

4.2.4 Exit Strategies

The ultimate goal for private equity is to improve new or underperforming businesses and exit them at higher valuations. Private equity firms buy and hold companies for an average of five years. The time to exit, however, can range from less than 6 months to more than 10 years. Before deciding on an exit strategy, private equity managers take into account the dynamics of the industry in which the portfolio company competes, overall economic cycles, interest rates, and company performance.

Below are common exit strategies pursued by private equity portfolio managers:

- **Trade sale.** This strategy refers to the sale of a company to a strategic buyer such as a competitor. A trade sale can be conducted through an auction process or by private negotiation. Benefits of a trade sale include (a) an immediate cash exit for the private equity fund; (b) potential for high valuation of the asset because strategic buyers may be willing and able to pay more than other potential buyers as a result of anticipated synergies; (c) fast and simple execution; (d) lower transaction costs than an IPO; and (e) lower levels of disclosure and higher confidentiality than an IPO because the private equity firm is generally dealing with only one other party. Disadvantages of trade sales include (a) possible opposition by management; (b) lower attractiveness to employees of the portfolio company than an IPO; (c) a limited number of potential trade buyers; and (d) a possible lower price than in an IPO.
- **IPO.** This approach involves the portfolio company selling its shares, including some or all of those held by the private equity firm, to public investors through an IPO. Advantages for an IPO exit include (a) potential for the highest price; (b) management approval, because management will be retained; (c) publicity for the private equity firm; and (d) potential ability to retain future upside potential, because the private equity firm may choose to remain a large shareholder. Disadvantages for an IPO exit include (a) high transaction costs paid to investment banks and lawyers; (b) long lead times; (c) risk of stock market volatility; (d) high disclosure requirements; (e) potential lock-up period, which requires the private equity firm to retain an equity position for a specified period after the IPO; and (f) the fact that an IPO is usually appropriate only for larger companies with attractive growth profiles.
- **Recapitalization.** A recapitalization is not a true exit strategy, because the private equity firm typically maintains control; however, it does allow the private equity investor to extract money from the company. Recapitalization is a very popular strategy when interest rates are low, as the private equity firm re-leverages or introduces leverage to the company and pays itself a dividend. A recapitalization is often a prelude to a later exit.
- **Secondary sales.** This approach represents a sale to another private equity firm or other group of investors.
- **Write-off/liquidation.** A write-off occurs when a transaction has not gone well, and the private equity firm is updating its value of the investment or liquidating the portfolio company to move on to other projects.

The foregoing exit strategies may be pursued individually, combined together, or used for a partial exit strategy. For example, it is not unusual to see a private equity fund sell a portion of a portfolio company to a competitor via a trade sale and then complete a secondary sale to another private equity firm for the remaining portion. Company shares may also be distributed to fund investors, although such a move is unusual.

4.3 Private Equity: Diversification Benefits, Performance, and Risk

Private equity funds may provide higher return opportunities relative to traditional investments through their ability to invest in private companies, their influence on portfolio companies' management and operations, and/or their use of leverage. Investments in private equity funds can add diversity to a portfolio composed of publicly traded stocks and bonds because they may have less-than-perfect correlation with those investments.

Exhibit 8 shows the mean annual returns for the Cambridge Associates US Private Equity Index, the NASDAQ and S&P 500 indexes, and the Cambridge Associates mPME (Modified Public Market Equivalent) S&P 500 Index for a variety of periods ending 31 December 2014. Public market equivalent (PME) index returns use internal rate of return (IRR) calculations to simulate investment of private equity cash flows in a market index, such as the S&P 500. The technique involves recording the timing of cash flows for the fund and computing period returns, assuming the flows are invested in a market index instead of the fund. Based on the returns shown in Exhibit 8, US private equity funds, based on the Cambridge Associates' estimates, on average outperformed stocks based on the NASDAQ and S&P 500 indexes only in the 10- and 20-year periods ending 31 December 2014. The returns to US private equity underperformed these indexes' returns for the 1- and 3--year periods and were similar for the 5-year period ending 31 December 2014. The mPME index returns were more similar to the S&P 500 index returns than returns on private equity.

Exhibit 8 Comparison of Annual Returns with US Private Equity, US Stocks, and a PME Index

	1 Year	3 Years	5 Years	10 Years	20 Years
US private equity ^a	11.3	15.6	15.8	12.9	13.5
NASDAQ	13.4	22.1	15.9	8.1	9.6
S&P 500	13.7	20.4	15.5	7.7	9.9
mPME S&P 500 ^b	13.6	20.5	15.5	8.7	8.7

^a Private equity returns are net of expenses; US Stocks and PME Index are gross.

^b Cambridge Associates mPME.

Source: US Private Equity Index and selected benchmark statistics, 31 December 2014, Cambridge Associates.

Published private equity indexes may be an unreliable measure of performance, however, because of challenges in measuring the historical performance of private equity investing. As with hedge funds, private equity return indexes rely on self-reporting and are subject to survivorship, backfill, and other biases. These characteristics typically lead to overstatement of published returns. Moreover, prior to 2009, in the absence of a liquidity event, private equity firms did not necessarily mark their investments to market. This failure to mark to market leads to understatement of measures of volatility and correlations with other investments. Thus, data adjustments are required to more reliably measure the benefits of private equity investing.

Exhibit 9 lists annualized standard deviations of published quarterly and annual returns of private equity investments from 1990 through 2014. The volatility calculated using published quarterly returns reflects few liquidity events and results in much lower volatility estimates than using annual returns. Note that the difference between the two measures (quarterly and annual) using MSCI World is insignificant because the stocks in the index are marked to market regularly. In July 2009, private equity

firms began reporting investments at their estimated fair values; these estimates are frequently based on market multiples. This change in valuation methodology is reflected in the new International Private Equity and Venture Capital Valuation Guidelines.²⁸

Exhibit 9 Annualized Standard Deviations of Returns to Private Equity Investments, 1990–2014

	Quarterly	Annual
Venture capital*	22.3	54.5
Private equity*	12.8	21.1
MSCI World	17.1	18.4

* Cambridge Associates, LLC, January 1990–December 2014

According to the historical standard deviations of annual returns shown in Exhibit 9, private equity investments, including venture capital, are riskier than investing in common stocks. Investors should require a higher return from accepting a higher risk, including illiquidity and leverage risks.

Even given its higher risk, private equity, including venture capital investing, may provide benefits to a diversified portfolio. If investors believe they can identify skillful private equity fund managers (managers who can identify attractive portfolio companies and invest in them at reasonable valuations, as well as improve their operations and profitability), investors may benefit from superior returns (returns in excess of those expected given the additional leverage, market, and liquidity risks). Kaplan and Schoar (2005) find significant differences in the returns to the top quartile of funds compared with the bottom quartile of funds; the cash flow IRR was 22% a year for the top quartile compared with 3% a year for the bottom quartile from 1980 through 2001. Further, Kaplan and Schoar find evidence of performance persistence. Identifying top-performing funds appears to be critical.²⁹

4.4 Portfolio Company Valuation

In order to identify and invest in attractive portfolio companies, private equity professionals must be able to value those companies. Three common approaches are used in the private equity industry to value a company: market or comparable, discounted cash flow (DCF), and asset based. Which approaches are favored depend in part on the portfolio company's industry, and it is common for funds to use more than one approach to arrive at a value.

A market or comparables approach values a company or its equity using multiples of different measures. For example, an earnings before interest, taxes, depreciation, and amortization (EBITDA) multiple is commonly used in valuing large, mature private companies that are capital intensive and leveraged. For other types of companies, multiples of measures based on net income or revenue may be more appropriate. The EBITDA multiple may be determined by looking at the market value of equity plus debt (enterprise value) of a similar publicly traded company or the price recently paid

²⁸ Interestingly, based on the calculations of author Scott Stewart, data since July 2009 are inconsistent with improvements in marking to market.

²⁹ See the CFA Research Foundation's 2013 monograph *Manager Selection* for information on selecting skillful alternative investment managers.

for a comparable business, divided by EBITDA. Net income and revenue multiples may be based on the multiples from transactions in comparable companies but are frequently based on heuristics.³⁰

EXAMPLE 7

Portfolio Company Valuation

A private equity fund is considering purchasing a radio broadcaster that had an EBITDA of \$200 million. In the past year, three radio broadcasting companies were sold for $8 \times$ EBITDA, $10 \times$ EBITDA, and $9 \times$ EBITDA. Based on this information, the maximum value the private equity fund is most likely to assign to the broadcaster is:

- A \$1,600 million.
- B \$1,800 million.
- C \$2,000 million.

Solution:

C is correct. The maximum value the private equity fund is most likely to assign is that using the highest multiple ($10 \times$ \$200 million = \$2,000 million). The minimum value the seller may be willing to accept is that using the lowest multiple. In negotiations, growth prospects, risk, size, current market conditions, and so on will be considered.

A discounted cash flow (DCF) approach values a company or its equity as the present value of the relevant expected future cash flows. Future free cash flow projections may be discounted to compute a present value for the portfolio company or its equity. Free cash flow to the firm discounted at the weighted average cost of capital may be used to estimate the company's value. Free cash flow to equity discounted at the cost of equity may be used to estimate the value of the company's equity. One simple approach takes a measure such as income or cash flow and divides it by a capitalization rate to arrive at a value estimate. This approach is conceptually different but practically similar to using an income or cash-based multiple. If the value estimated using a DCF approach is higher than the investment's current price, the opportunity may be an attractive one.

An asset-based approach values a company using the values of its underlying assets less the value of any related liabilities. In effect, this approach arrives at the value of the company to the equity holders. The approach assumes that a company's value equals the sum of the values of the company's assets minus its liabilities. The valuations can be arrived at using market (fair) values or other values such as liquidation values. Fair values assume an orderly transaction, whereas liquidation values assume a distressed transaction. The liquidation value is an estimate of how much money could be raised if a company's assets were sold in a liquidation scenario. Liquidation value is the net amount that will be realized if the business is terminated, the assets are sold, and the liabilities are satisfied. In a weak economic environment, liquidation values will most likely be far lower than the immediately previous fair values because there will tend to be many assets for sale and fewer potential buyers.

³⁰ Heuristics are mental shortcuts based on experience and knowledge that simplify decision making. They are sometimes called "rules of thumb."

4.5 Private Equity: Investment Considerations and Due Diligence

Current and anticipated economic conditions, including interest rate and capital availability expectations, are critical factors to consider when evaluating an investment in private equity. Refinancing risk must also be evaluated. If refinancing becomes unavailable, a lack of financing can result in default. The extent to which there is undrawn but committed capital can also affect the private equity sector and the returns to investors.

Investing in private equity firms requires patience. Investors who are comfortable with long-term commitment of funds and illiquidity are best suited to considering private equity investing. Private equity typically requires a long-term commitment by an LP because of the long time lag between investments in and exits from portfolio companies. Once a commitment has been made and an investor becomes an LP, the investor has very limited liquidity choices. Because many investors are averse to illiquidity, there should be a liquidity risk premium for private equity investors.

Assuming these characteristics are acceptable, the investor must consider the choice of GP. In this regard, many of the due diligence questions for hedge fund selection are relevant for private equity. Some of the important issues to investigate are the GP's experience and knowledge—financial and operating, the valuation methodology used, the alignment of the GP's incentives with the LPs' interests, the plan to draw on committed capital, and the planned exit strategies.

5

REAL ESTATE

Real estate investing is often thought of as direct or indirect ownership (equity investing) in real estate property such as land and buildings. Real estate investing, however, also includes lending (debt investing) against real estate property—for example, providing a mortgage loan or purchasing mortgage-backed securities (MBS). The property generally serves as collateral for the lending.

Key reasons for investing in real estate include the following:

- Potential for competitive long-term total returns driven by both income generation and capital appreciation.
- Prospect that multiple-year leases with fixed rents for some property types may lessen cash flow effects from economic shocks.
- Likelihood that less-than-perfect correlation with other asset classes may provide diversification benefits.
- Potential to provide an inflation hedge if rents can be adjusted quickly for inflation.

Real estate property ownership is represented by a title and may reflect access to air rights, mineral rights, and surface rights in addition to the rights of use of buildings and land. Titles can be purchased, leased, sold, mortgaged, or transferred together or separately, in whole or in part. Real estate investments may also be in the form of partnerships, equity, or debt. Much real estate is residential, but if it is owned with the intention to let, lease, or rent it in order to generate income, it is classified as commercial (i.e., income-producing) real estate. In addition to residential real estate classified as commercial, commercial real estate includes other types of real estate properties such as office and retail properties. Some real estate properties may be farmed, provide forest products, or have natural resources that can be obtained by extraction to generate income. The resulting products, such as wheat, timber, gold, and oil, are considered commodities. As a result, some investors include timberland

and farmland in their commodities portfolio rather than in their real estate portfolio. Other investors simply treat farmland and timberland as a separate category from both real estate and commodities.

Institutional ownership of commercial property totaled close to \$2.5 trillion as of 2014, as shown in Exhibit 10, up from \$2.1 trillion in 2008.

Exhibit 10 Institutionally Owned Global Real Estate Property AUM, 2014 (US\$ millions)

Europe	922,064
North America	1,244,464
Australasia	102,672
Asia	136,896
Latin America	23,808
Other	50,096
Total	2,480,000

Source: Based on data from Property Funds Research.

Real estate property exhibits unique features compared with other investment asset classes. The basic indivisibility, unique characteristics (i.e., no two properties are identical), and fixed location of real estate property have implications for investors. For example, the size of investment may have to be large and may be relatively illiquid. Also, real estate property typically requires operational management. Real estate may be subject to government regulations affecting what can be done to modify the existing land or property, to whom and how ownership can be transferred, and to other restrictions on ownership. Local or regional markets and real estate property values can be independent of countrywide or global price movements, because local factors may override wider market trends. Cross-border investment in real estate is increasingly common and requires knowledge of country, regional, and local markets.

5.1 Forms of Real Estate Investment

Real estate investing may take a variety of forms. Real estate investments may be classified along two dimensions: debt or equity based, and in private or public markets. Equity investments in real estate that occur in the private markets are often referred to as direct investments in real estate. The money to finance real estate property purchases comes from many sources. A well-known form of debt financing of real estate purchases is mortgages. Private investors—institutional and individual, real estate corporations, and REITs—may provide the equity financing for the purchase.

REITs sell shares to raise funds to make property purchases. REIT shares are typically publicly traded and represent an indirect investment in real estate property. Similarly, mortgages may be packaged and securitized into asset-backed securitized debt obligations (i.e., MBS) that represent rights to receive cash flows from portfolios of mortgage loans. Exhibit 11 shows some examples of the basic forms of real estate investments.

Exhibit 11 Basic Forms of Real Estate Investments and Examples

	Debt	Equity
Private	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Mortgages ■ Construction lending 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Direct ownership of real estate. Ownership can be through, sole ownership, joint ventures, real estate limited partnerships, or other commingled funds.
Public	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ MBS (residential and commercial) ■ Collateralized mortgage obligations 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Shares in real estate corporations ■ Shares of REITs

Within the basic forms, there can be many variations.

- Direct ownership can be free and clear, whereby the title to the property is transferred to the owner unencumbered by any financing lien, such as from a mortgage. Initial purchase costs associated with direct ownership may include legal expenses, survey costs, engineering/environmental studies, and valuation (appraisal) fees. Of course, ongoing maintenance and refurbishment charges are also incurred. The property must be managed, which has related costs. The owner may manage the property or may employ a local managing agent.
- Leveraged ownership occurs when the property title is obtained through an equity purchase combined with mortgage financing. In addition to the initial purchase costs, there are mortgage arrangement fees. A mortgage is secured by the property, and in the event of a breach of lending terms, the creditor can petition for the title. Any appreciation (depreciation) of the property's value plus the net operating income in excess of the debt servicing costs provides investors with a leveraged gain (loss) on their equity.
- Financing provided to leveraged owners is frequently in the form of stand-alone mortgage loans. These loans represent passive investments in which the lender expects to receive a predefined stream of payments throughout the finite life of the mortgage. The loan may become a form of property ownership if the borrower defaults. Investments may be in the form of "whole" loans based on specific properties (typically, direct investment through private markets) or through participation in a pool of mortgage loans (typically, indirect investment in real estate through publicly traded securities such as MBS).
- Real estate equity investors may use different types of pooled vehicles arranged by an intermediary. These vehicles include the following:
 - Real estate limited partnerships offer exposure to real estate projects while preserving limited liability (to the amount of the initial investment) and leaving management and liability to GPs who specialize in real estate management.
 - REITs issue shares that are typically publicly traded. REITs invest in various types of real estate and provide retail investors with access to a diversified real estate property portfolio and professional management. REITs are required to distribute most of their taxable income to their shareholders.
- Securitization of residential and commercial mortgages provides retail and institutional investors with access to a diversified portfolio of mortgages and allows the original lenders to alter their portfolio of investments. Mortgages are combined into pools and then into slices (called tranches) by investment banks.

The tranches, each having different payment characteristics, are then sold to investors. These securities are generally not considered alternative investments but are held as part of the fixed-income (or credit) portfolio.

REITs and partnerships have fees for managing the assets embedded in their valuations. Fee structures for investment funds can be similar to those in private equity, with investment management fees based on committed capital or invested capital. These fees typically range from 1% to 2% of capital per annum. Funds also charge performance-based fees, similar to a private equity fund.

5.2 Real Estate Investment Categories

The majority of real estate property may be classified as either commercial or residential. In this reading, residential properties are defined narrowly to include only owner-occupied, single residences (often referred to as single-family residential property). Residential properties owned with the intention to let, lease, or rent them are classified as commercial. Commercial properties also include office, retail, industrial and warehouse, and hospitality (e.g., hotel and motel) properties. Commercial properties may also have mixed uses. Commercial properties generate returns from income (e.g., rent) and capital appreciation. Several factors will affect opportunities for capital appreciation, including development strategies, market conditions, and property-specific features.

5.2.1 Residential Property

For many individuals and families, real estate investment takes the form of direct equity investment (i.e., ownership) in a residence with the intent to occupy.³¹ In other words, a home is purchased. Given the price of homes, most purchasers cannot provide the entire financing (i.e., pay cash) and must borrow funds to make the purchase. Any appreciation (depreciation) in the value of the home increases (decreases) the owner's equity in the home.

Financial institutions are the main providers (originators) of debt financing (typically, through mortgages) for home ownership. The originators of single-family residential mortgages are making a direct, debt investment in the home. Before offering a mortgage, the due diligence process should include the following:

- ensuring that the borrower is making an appropriate equity investment in the home (in other words, paying an adequate proportion of the purchase price),
- conducting a credit review of the borrower,
- establishing that the borrower has sufficient cash flows to make the required payments on the mortgage and to maintain the home,
- appraising (estimating the value of) the home, and
- ensuring that adequate and appropriate insurance is in place on the home and, in some cases, on the borrower.

Home loans may be held on the originator's balance sheet or securitized and offered to the financial markets. Securitization provides indirect, debt investment opportunities in residential property via securitized debt products, such as residential mortgage-backed securities (RMBS), to other investors.

³¹ Residential properties (single- or multi-family) are considered commercial property if they are maintained as rental properties.

5.2.2 Commercial Real Estate

Commercial property has traditionally been considered an appropriate direct investment—equity and debt—for institutional funds or high-net-worth individuals with long time horizons and limited liquidity needs. This perception of appropriateness for only certain types of investors was primarily because of the complexity of the investments, the large investments required, and the relative illiquidity of the investments. Direct, equity investing (i.e., ownership) is further complicated because commercial property requires active and experienced, professional management. The success of the equity investment is a function of a variety of factors, including how well the property is managed, general economic and specific real estate market conditions, and the extent and terms of any debt financing.

In order to provide direct debt financing, the lender (investor) will conduct financial analyses to establish the borrower's creditworthiness, to ensure that the property will generate cash flows sufficient to service the debt, to estimate the value of the property, and to evaluate economic conditions. The estimate of the property value is critical because the loan-to-value ratio is a critical factor in the lending decision. The borrower's equity in the property is an indicator of commitment to the success of the project and provides a cushion to the lender because the property is generally used as collateral for the loan.

Indirect investment vehicles provide individual investors with the opportunity to invest in real estate. For example, shares of REITs provide indirect, equity investment opportunities in real estate, and commercial mortgage-backed securities (CMBS) provide indirect, debt investment opportunities in real estate.

5.2.3 REIT Investing

REITs are listed on stock exchanges in more than 35 countries, and their combined market capitalization exceeded \$1.1 trillion in 2016.³² The risk and return characteristics of REITs depend on the type of investment they make. Mortgage REITs, which invest primarily in mortgages, are similar to fixed-income investments. Equity REITs, which invest primarily in commercial or residential properties and use leverage, are similar to direct equity investments in leveraged real estate.

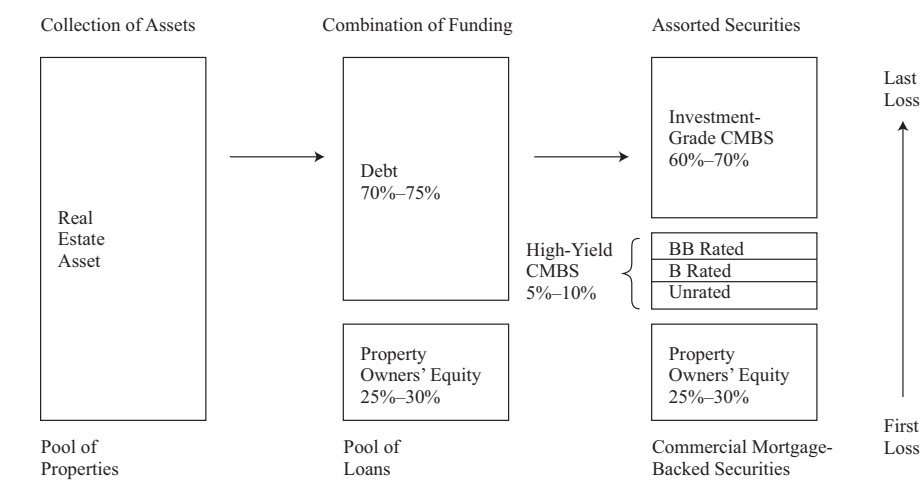
Gross income from rents represents a relatively predictable income stream and, after servicing the debt, is a source of return to equity REITs. Although the regulations with respect to REITs vary among countries, in general, equity REITs have an obligation to distribute the majority of their income to shareholders to retain their regulatory tax-advantaged status. Often, at least 90% of revenue (including rent and realized capital gains), net of expenses, must be distributed in the form of dividends.

The business strategy for equity REITs is simple: Maximize property occupancy rates and rents in order to maximize income and dividends. Equity REITs, like other public companies, must report earnings per share based on net income as defined by generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP).

5.2.4 Mortgage-Backed Securities (MBS)

The MBS structure is based on the securitization model of buying a pool of assets and assigning the income and principal returns into individual security tranches, as illustrated in Exhibit 12 for commercial mortgage-backed securities (CMBS). On the right-hand side of the exhibit, the ranking of losses indicates the priority of claims against the real estate property. MBS may be issued privately or publicly. These securities are often included in broad fixed-income indexes and in indexes that are used to indicate the performance of real estate investments.

³² National Association of Real Estate Investment Trusts, July 2016.

Exhibit 12 CMBS Security Structure

5.2.5 Timberland and Farmland

Timberland offers an income stream based on the sale of timber products as a component of total return and has historically provided a return that is not highly correlated with other asset classes. Timberland functions as both a factory and a warehouse. Timber can be grown and easily stored by not harvesting. This feature offers the flexibility of harvesting more trees when timber prices are up and delaying harvests when prices are down. Timberland has three primary return drivers: biological growth, commodity price changes, and land price changes.

Farmland is often perceived to provide a hedge against inflation. Its returns include an income component related to harvest quantities and agricultural commodity prices. Farmland consists of two main property types: row crops that are planted and harvested annually (i.e., more than one planting and harvesting can occur in a year depending on the crop and the climate) and permanent crops that grow on trees or vines. Unlike with timberland, farm products must be harvested when ripe, so there is little flexibility in harvesting. Farmland may also be used as pastureland for livestock. Similar to timberland, farmland has three primary return drivers: harvest quantities, commodity prices, and land price changes.

5.3 Real Estate Performance and Diversification Benefits

A variety of indexes globally are intended to measure returns to real estate. These indexes vary, however, in the selection and valuation of components and longevity. A real estate index can generally be categorized as an appraisal index, a repeat sales (transaction-based) index, or a REIT index. Appraisal indexes use estimates of value (appraisals) as inputs. These appraisals, conducted by experts, rely on comparable sales and cash flow analysis techniques. Even though the appraisals are done by experts, they are still subjective. The appraisals are done periodically, often annually, but some appraised values included in an index may be from more than one year earlier. This factor, and the way appraisals are conducted, may result in indexes that understate volatility.

Repeat sales indexes are constructed using repeat sales of properties. The changes in property prices with repeat sales are measured and used to construct the index. These indexes suffer from a sample selection bias because the properties that sell in each period vary and may not be representative of the larger market. Also, the

properties that transact are not a random sample and may be biased toward those that have increased or decreased in value depending on current economic conditions. The higher the number of sales, the more reliable and relevant the index.

REIT indexes use the prices of publicly traded shares of REITs to construct the indexes. The more frequently the shares trade, the more reliable the index. The index is not necessarily representative of the properties of interest to the investor, however.

Investors will find a variety of indexes to choose from and may find one that seems representative of the market of interest to them. Investors should be aware, however, of how the index is constructed and the inherent limitations resulting from the construction method. Investors should also be aware that the apparent low volatility and low correlation of real estate with other asset classes may result from limitations in the real estate index construction.

Exhibit 13 provides a comparison of returns on US real estate based on different indexes. The National Council of Real Estate Investment Fiduciaries (NCREIF) constructs a variety of appraisal-based indexes. The National Association of Real Estate Investment Trusts (NAREIT), together with the FTSE Group and European Public Real Estate Association, constructs a variety of indexes based on the prices of shares of REITs and listed real estate companies. The NAREIT returns based on publicly traded US REIT share prices are clearly more volatile—displaying a higher standard deviation and a lower worst-calendar-year return—than the NCREIF returns based on appraisals. The NCREIF Farmland index shows the least reported volatility. The lowest annualized return shown is that of commercial property based on appraisals (NCREIF Property index).

Exhibit 13 Historical Returns of US Real Estate Indexes, 1991–2014

	NCREIF Data			NAREIT
	Property*	Timber	Farmland	All REITs
Annualized return	7.8%	10.5%	11.9%	11.9%
Annualized standard deviation	8.6%	9.2%	6.9%	18.9%
Worst calendar year	–16.9%	–5.2%	2.0%	–37.3%

* Commercial real estate property

Exhibit 14 displays global and regional REIT returns. The table shows some disparity among regional returns and supports the importance of knowledge of country, local, and regional markets. A cursory examination, however, indicates a significant degree of correlation among the regional returns. In fact, correlations between the regional and global returns all exceed 0.9.

Exhibit 14 Historical Returns of Global REITs

	Global	Americas	Asia-Pacific	Europe	Middle East/Africa
3 Years	15.1%	13.8%	15.3%	18.2%	19.1%
5 Years	11.5%	15.5%	7.6%	9.6%	
10 Years	6.7%	7.8%	6.6%	4.1%	

Exhibit 14 (Continued)

	Global	Americas	Asia-Pacific	Europe	Middle East/Africa
15 Years	9.9%	12.4%	7.4%	9.8%	
Standard deviation (15-year)	23.4%	21.6%	28.1%	30.0%	

Note: Data are as of 31 December 2014.

Source: Based on data from FTSE NAREIT.

From 1990 through 2014, the monthly return correlations of global REITs (S&P Global REIT Index) and global stocks (MSCI ACWI) and global REITs and global bonds (Bloomberg Barclays Global Aggregate Index) were 0.62 and 0.35, respectively. Correlations of global real estate and equity returns are relatively high, and correlation of global real estate and bond returns are lower. The returns from investing in REITs and investing in equities are more highly correlated with each other than with bonds because both are affected similarly by the business cycle.

5.4 Real Estate Valuation

Until a property is actually sold, real estate values can only be estimated. This estimation process is often referred to as appraising the property. A variety of approaches are used to value real estate property. Common techniques for appraising real estate property include comparable sales, income, and cost approaches.

- **Comparable sales approach.** This approach involves determining an approximate value based on recent sales of similar properties. Adjustments are made for differences in key characteristics of the property being appraised and the sold properties identified as similar. Key characteristics include condition, age, location, and size. Adjustments are also made for price changes in the relevant real estate market between dates of sales.
- **Income approach.** Direct capitalization and discounted cash flow approaches are two income-based approaches to appraising an income-producing property.
 - The direct capitalization approach estimates the value of an income-producing property based on the level and quality of its net operating income (NOI). Similar to EBITDA, NOI represents the income to the property after deducting operating expenses, including property taxes, insurance, maintenance, utilities, and repairs but before depreciation, financing costs, and income taxes. NOI is a proxy for property-level operating cash flow. The expected annual NOI is divided by a capitalization rate (cap rate) to estimate the property's value. A cap rate is a discount rate less a growth rate. The reciprocal of the cap rate is a multiple that can be applied to NOI. The cap rate is estimated for a given property based on relevant information, including cap rates on sales of comparable properties, general business conditions, property quality, and assessment of management. The analysis might include assessing the strength of tenants, the level of landlord involvement, the extent and adequacy of repairs and improvements, the vacancy rate, management and operating costs, and expected inflation of costs and rent.

- The discounted cash flow approach discounts future projected cash flows to arrive at a present value for the property. Typically, the analysis involves projections of annual operating cash flows for a finite number of periods and a resale or reversion value at the end of that total period. The projected resale value is often estimated using a direct capitalization approach.
- **Cost approach.** This approach evaluates the property's replacement cost by estimating the market value of the land and the costs of rebuilding using current construction costs and standards. Costs include building materials, labor to build, tenant improvements, and various "soft" costs, including architectural, engineering, and construction supervision costs; legal, insurance, and brokerage fees; and environmental assessment costs. The cost of rebuilding is the replacement cost of the building(s) in new condition and is adjusted to take into account the location and condition of the existing building(s).

A combination and reconciliation of the values from the different approaches is typically performed to increase confidence in the appraisal.

5.4.1 REIT Valuations

REITs are composed of a portfolio of real estate properties or mortgages, and as a result, a REIT security's valuation depends on the entire pool's characteristics. There are two basic approaches to estimating a REIT's intrinsic value: income based and asset based. The value estimates can be compared with the REIT's observed market price.

Income-based approaches for REITs are typically similar to the direct capitalization approach. A measure of income, which is a cash flow proxy, is capitalized into a value indication by using a cap rate (an alternative calculation could multiply the income measure by the reciprocal of the cap rate). Two common measures used are funds from operations (FFO) and adjusted funds from operations (AFFO). FFO, in its most basic form, equals net income plus depreciation charges on real estate property less gains from sales of real estate property plus losses on sales of real estate property. These adjustments to net income effectively exclude depreciation and the gains and losses from sales of real estate property from the FFO. Depreciation is excluded because it represents a non-cash charge and is often unrelated to changes in the value of the property. Gains and losses from sales are excluded because these are assumed to be non-recurring. AFFO adjusts the FFO for recurring capital expenditures. It is similar to a free cash flow measure.

The cap rate and its reciprocal multiple are estimated based on a variety of factors, including market cap rates and current market and economic conditions, expectations for growth in the relevant measure, risks associated with the REIT's underlying properties, the financial leverage of the REIT, and multiples of recent transactions.

Asset-based approaches calculate a REIT's NAV. Generally, a REIT's NAV is calculated as the estimated market value, based on appraisals, of a REIT's total assets minus the value of its total liabilities. REIT shares frequently trade at prices that differ from NAV per share. Both premiums and discounts to the NAV are observed in the market.

5.5 Real Estate Investment Risks

Real estate investments, like any investment, may fail to perform in accordance with expectations. Property values are subject to variability based on national and global economic conditions, local real estate conditions, and interest rate levels. Other risks inherent to real estate investment include the ability of fund management to select, finance, and manage real properties, as well as changes in government regulations. Management of the underlying properties includes handling rentals or leasing of the property, controlling expenses, directing maintenance and improvements, and ultimately disposing of the property. Expenses may increase because of circumstances

beyond management's control. Returns to both debt and equity investors in real estate depend to a large extent on the ability of the owners or their agents to successfully operate the underlying properties.

Investments in distressed properties and property development are subject to greater risks than investments in properties with stable operations and/or in sound financial condition. Property development is subject to special risks, including regulatory issues, construction delays, and cost overruns. Regulatory issues include the failure to receive zoning, occupancy and other approvals and permits, as well as the effect of environmental regulation. Economic conditions can also change during the development and disposition period, which can be very lengthy. Adverse effects of regulatory issues and changes in economic condition include increasing construction time or the time until a property is fully leased out, increasing construction costs, and decreasing the level of rents relative to initial expectations. Acquisitions and developments may be financed with lines of credit or other forms of temporary financing rather than long-term debt financing. There is a risk that long-term financing with acceptable terms might not be available when desired. Financing problems with one property may cause further activity by the same owner to be curtailed.

It is important to recognize that many equity investment real estate funds pursue leverage to potentially increase returns to their investors. Leverage magnifies the effect of gains and losses, because of operations and changes in property value, on the equity investors. Leverage increases the risk to debt investors as well as to equity investors. Leverage increases the risk that the real estate fund will have insufficient funds to make expected interest payments and that the debt investor will receive less than the entire principal. As the loan-to-value ratio increases, the latter risk increases.

COMMODITIES

6

Commodities are physical products. Returns on commodity investments are based on changes in price rather than on an income stream such as interest, dividends, or rent. In fact, holding commodities (i.e., the physical products) incurs costs for transportation and storage. Thus, most commodity investors do not trade actual physical commodities but rather trade commodity derivatives. The underlying for a commodity derivative may be a single commodity or an index of commodities.

Trading in physical commodities is primarily limited to a smaller group of entities that are part of the physical supply chain. Some investors that are not part of the supply chain may invest in physical commodities, but the commodities are typically those that are non-perishable, of high value relative to weight and volume, and easily stored at relatively low cost. Most investors invest in commodities using commodity derivatives. Because the prices of commodity derivatives are, to a significant extent, a function of the underlying commodity prices, however, it is important to understand the physical supply chain and general supply–demand dynamics for a commodity. The supply chain consists of entities that actually produce the commodities, users of the commodities, and participants in between. These entities may trade commodity derivatives for hedging purposes. Other investors, sometimes referred to as speculators, trade commodity derivatives in search of profit based largely on changes or expected changes in the price of the underlying commodities. Non-hedging investors include retail and institutional investors, hedge funds, proprietary desks within financial institutions, and trading desks operating within the physical supply chain.

Commodities include precious and base (i.e., industrial) metals, energy products, and agricultural products. Exhibit 15 shows some examples of each type. The relative importance, amount, and price of individual commodities evolve with society's preferences and needs. The increasing industrialization of China, India, and other emerging

markets has driven strong global demand for commodities. Developing markets need increasing amounts of oil, steel, and other materials to support manufacturing, infrastructure development, and consumption demands of their populations. Emerging technologies, such as advanced cell phones and electric vehicles, may create demand for new materials to meet manufacturing needs. Thus, commodities of interest evolve over time.

Exhibit 15 Examples of Commodities

Sector	Sample Commodities
Energy	Oil, natural gas, electricity, coal
Base metals	Copper, aluminum, zinc, lead, tin, nickel
Precious metals	Gold, silver, platinum
Agriculture	Grains, livestock, coffee
Other	Carbon credits, freight, forest products

Commodities may be further classified based on a variety of factors, including physical location and grade or quality. For example, there are many grades and locations of oil. Similarly, there are many grades and locations of wheat. Commodity derivative contracts specify terms such as quantity, quality, maturity date, and delivery location.

Commodity derivatives may be attractive to investors not only for the potential profits but also because of the perceptions that commodities are effective hedges against inflation (i.e., commodity prices historically have been positively correlated with inflation) and that commodities are effective for portfolio diversification (i.e., commodity returns have historically low correlations with returns of other investments in the same portfolio). Institutional investors, particularly endowments, foundations, and increasingly corporate and public pension funds as well as sovereign wealth funds are allocating more of their portfolios to investments in commodities and commodity derivatives. There were \$326 billion in commodity investments under management in 2015, compared with less than \$20 billion in 2001.³³

6.1 Commodity Derivatives and Indexes

The majority of commodities investing is implemented through derivatives, and commodity index futures are a popular derivative.³⁴ Commodity derivatives include futures, forwards, options, and swaps. These contracts may trade on exchanges (exchange-traded products, or ETPs) or over the counter (OTC). They are described as follows:

- Futures and forward contracts are obligations to buy or sell a specific amount of a given commodity at a fixed price, location, and date in the future. Futures contracts are ETPs, marked to market daily, and generally are not settled with delivery or receipt of the physical commodity. Forward contracts trade OTC, and the expectation is that delivery and receipt of the physical commodity will occur. Counterparty risk is higher for forward contracts.

³³ Managed futures strategies; Source: BarclayHedge, http://www.barclayhedge.com/research/indices/cfa/Money_Under_Management.html

³⁴ Stoll and Whaley (2009) report commodities indexing totaling \$174 billion as of July 2009.

- Option contracts for commodities give their holders the right, but not the obligation, to buy or sell a specific amount of a given commodity at a specified price and delivery location on or before a specified date in the future. Options can be ETPs or OTC traded.
- Swap contracts are agreements to exchange streams of cash flows between two parties based on future commodity or commodity index prices. One party typically makes fixed payments in exchange for payments that depend on a specified commodity or commodity index price.

Commodity indexes typically use the price of futures contracts on the commodities included in them rather than the prices of the commodities themselves. As a result, the performance of a commodity index can differ widely from the performance of the underlying commodities. Commodity indexes also vary in the commodities included in them and the weighting methods used. Thus, they vary in their exposures to specific commodities or commodity sectors.

6.2 Other Commodity Investment Vehicles

Commodity exposure can be achieved through other means than direct investment in commodities or commodity derivatives. Although commodity exposure is most commonly accessed via commodity derivatives, either directly or through an investment manager, alternative means are becoming increasingly popular. Alternative means of achieving commodity exposure include the following:

- Exchange-traded funds may be suitable for investors who can buy only equity shares or seek the simplicity of trading them. ETFs may invest in commodities or futures of commodities (often, specializing in a particular sector) seeking to track the performance of the commodities. For example, the SPDR Gold Shares ETF attempts to track the price of gold. It owned more than \$50 billion in gold bullion as of November 2010 and more than \$38 billion in gold bullion as of October 2016. There are also commodity index-linked ETFs. ETFs may use leverage. Similar to mutual funds or unit trusts, ETFs charge fees that are included in their expense ratios, although the ETF expense ratios are generally lower than those of most mutual funds.
- Common stock of companies exposed to a particular commodity—such as Royal Dutch Shell, which is exposed to oil—may be purchased. Investors may consider owning shares in a few commodity-exposed companies in order to have a small exposure to commodities. It is unclear, however, whether the performance of these stocks closely tracks the performance of the underlying commodity(ies).
- Managed futures funds are actively managed investment funds. Professional money managers invest in the futures market (and forward market sometimes) on behalf of the funds. These funds historically focused on commodity futures, but today they may invest in other futures contracts as well. Managed futures funds may concentrate on specific commodity sectors or may be broadly diversified. They are similar to hedge funds in that each fund has a GP, and fees typically follow a 2-and-20 structure. The funds may operate similarly to mutual funds with shares that are available to the general public, or they may operate like hedge funds and restrict sales to high-net-worth and institutional investors. The former may appeal to retail investors because of the professional management, low minimum investment, and relatively high liquidity.

- Individual managed accounts are managed by chosen professional money managers with expertise in commodities and futures on behalf of high-net-worth individuals or institutional investors.
- Funds exist that specialize in specific commodity sectors. For example, private energy partnerships, similar to private equity funds, are a popular way for institutions to gain exposure to the energy sector. Management fees can range from 1% to 3% of committed capital with a lockup period of 10 years and extensions of 1- and 2-year periods. Publicly available energy mutual funds and unit trusts typically focus on the oil and gas sector. They may focus on upstream (drilling), midstream (refineries), or downstream (chemicals). Management fees for these funds are in line with those of other public equity managers and range from 0.4% to 1%.

6.3 Commodity Performance and Diversification Benefits

The arguments for investing in commodities include the potential for returns, portfolio diversification, and inflation protection. Investors may invest in commodities if they believe prices will increase in the short or intermediate terms. If commodity prices determine inflation index levels, then over time, on average, commodities should yield a zero real return. Commodity futures contracts may offer liquidity or other premiums, creating the opportunity for a real return different from zero.

The portfolio diversification argument is based on the observation that commodities historically have behaved differently from stocks and bonds during the business cycle. Exhibit 16 shows the correlation between selected commodities, global equity, and global bond indexes. In the 25-year period from 1990 through 2014, commodities exhibited a low correlation with traditional assets; the correlations of commodities with global stocks and global bonds were 0.247 and 0.183, respectively. The correlations of stocks, bonds, and commodities are expected to be positive because each of the assets has some exposure to the global business cycle. Note that the selected commodity index (the S&P GSCI [Goldman Sachs Commodity Index]) is heavily weighted toward the energy sector and that each commodity may exhibit unique behavior.

Exhibit 16 Monthly Commodity Return Correlations, 1990–2014

	Global Stocks	Global Bonds	Commodities	One-Month Libor	US CPI
Global stocks	1.000	0.307	0.247	−0.054	−0.029
Global bonds		1.000	0.183	0.049	−0.038
Commodities			1.000	0.060	0.315
One-month Libor				1.000	0.166

Sources: Global stocks = MSCI ACWI; global bonds = Bloomberg Barclays Global Aggregate Index; commodities = S&P GSCI.

The argument for commodities as a hedge against inflation is related to the fact that some commodity prices affect inflation calculations. Commodities, especially energy and food, affect consumers' cost of living. The positive correlation of 0.315 between monthly commodity price changes and monthly changes in the US CPI supports this assertion. The monthly return correlations between the US CPI and global stocks and global bonds are close to zero. The volatility of commodity prices, especially energy and food, is much higher than that of reported consumer inflation. Consumer inflation is computed from many products used by consumers, including housing, that

change more slowly than commodity prices. Commodity investments, especially when combined with leverage, exhibit high volatility and have led to many well-publicized losses among commodity players. Exhibit 17 provides a sample of these losses.

Exhibit 17 Large Commodity Investor Losses

Affected Company	Loss
Bank of Montreal (2007)	Wrong-way bets on natural gas led to a pre-tax loss of C\$680 million (US\$663 million)
Amaranth Advisors LLC (2006)	Bad bets on natural gas triggered US\$6.6 billion of losses
China Aviation Oil (Singapore) Corp. (2004)	Loss of US\$550 million on speculative oil futures trades, forcing debt restructuring

Source: "The 20 Biggest Trading Disasters," *Telegraph*, January 2008.

6.4 Commodity Prices and Investments

Commodity spot prices are a function of supply and demand, costs of production and storage, value to users, and global economic conditions. Non-hedging investors with positions in physical commodities may be accumulating or divesting a particular commodity. Supplies of commodities are determined by production and inventory levels as well as the actions of non-hedging investors. Demand for commodities is determined by the needs of end users and the actions of non-hedging investors.

Commodity supplies cannot be altered quickly by producers because extended lead times may exist and affect production levels. For example, agricultural output may be altered by planting more crops and changing farming techniques, but at least one growing cycle is required before the actual output occurs. And for agricultural products, at least one factor that is outside of the producer's control—the weather—will significantly affect output. Increased oil and mining production may require a number of years. Weather can also have a significant effect on oil production in parts of the world. For commodities, suppliers' inability to quickly respond to changes in demand levels may result in supply levels that are too low in times of economic growth and too high in times of economic slowing. In addition, despite advancing technology, the cost of new supply may grow over time. For example, the cost of new energy and mineral exploration tends to exceed that of past finds because easy discoveries tend to be exploited first. If production costs are high, producers are unlikely to produce more than what is needed to meet anticipated demand and are unlikely to maintain more than modest levels of inventory.

Overall demand levels are influenced by global manufacturing dynamics and economic growth. Manufacturing needs can change in a period of months as orders and inventories vary. Investors seek to anticipate these changes by monitoring economic events, including government policy, inventory levels, and growth forecasts. When demand levels and investors' orders to buy and sell during a given period change quickly, the resulting mismatch of supply and demand may lead to price volatility.

6.4.1 Pricing of Commodity Futures Contracts

It is important to understand futures contracts and the sources of return for each commodity futures contract because commodity investments often involve the use of futures contracts. These contracts trade on exchanges. The buyer (i.e., the long side) of a futures contract is obligated to take delivery of the commodity or its cash equivalent based on the spot price at expiration and will pay a settlement price. The settlement

price is an amount specified in the contract or the previous mark-to-market price if the contract has been marked to market. In other words, the long side is obligated to buy the commodity at the settlement price. The long side of a futures contract increases in value when the underlying commodity increases in value. The seller of a futures contract (i.e., the short side) is obligated to deliver the commodity or its cash equivalent based on the spot price at expiration and will receive the settlement price.

Futures positions are often closed over the life of the contract by taking the opposite position to that originally entered into. In other words, the long side will sell an identical futures contract, and the short side will buy an identical futures contract. If a contract is outstanding at expiration, it is typically not settled by delivery and receipt of the physical commodity but rather is settled by cash equal to the difference between the cash equivalent and settlement price. If a contract is physically settled, specific rules apply that define the characteristics of acceptable delivery, such as the quality of the commodity and the delivery location.

Parties to a futures contract are required to make an initial margin payment on the contract; each party has a separate margin account. Futures contracts and margin accounts are typically marked to market daily. On a daily basis, the futures exchange calculates price changes in the contract and the values of the margin accounts given the new price. If the value in a margin account declines sufficiently, the investor will receive a margin call and will be required to make an additional payment into the margin account. If the investor is unable or unwilling to do so, the investor's position will be closed.

Given the characteristics of a commodity, the price of a futures contract (futures price) may be approximated by the following formula:³⁵

$$\text{Futures price} \approx \text{Spot price} (1 + r) + \text{Storage costs} - \text{Convenience yield}$$

where r is the period's short-term risk-free interest rate. Arbitrage opportunities exist if the futures price differs from the spot price compounded at the risk-free rate. For example, if a commodity's spot price is 100, the risk-free rate is 5%, and the one-year futures price is 107 as opposed to 105, an arbitrageur can buy the commodity for 100 and sell a futures contract for 107. Assuming no storage costs, when the commodity is delivered for 107, the arbitrageur earns 2 points in excess of that earned investing in the risk-free asset. Commodities typically incur a storage cost, however. The buyer of a futures contract, in effect, gains access to the commodity in the future without buying it now and incurring storage costs. The futures price includes an amount for storage costs of the underlying commodity during the life of the contract. The storage and interest costs together are sometimes referred to as "the cost of carry" or "the carry." Finally, the buyer of the futures contract has no immediate access to the commodity but will receive it in the future. The buyer has given up the convenience of having physical possession of the commodity and having it immediately available for use. The futures price is adjusted for the loss of convenience; the convenience yield is subtracted to arrive at the futures price. The value of convenience may vary over time and across users. For example, the convenience yield to having heating oil in January in Canada is higher than the convenience yield to having heating oil in Canada in July or to having heating oil in Australia in January.

Futures prices may be higher or lower than spot prices depending on the convenience yield. When futures prices are higher than the spot price, the commodity forward curve is upward sloping, and the prices are referred to as being in contango. *Contango* occurs when there is little or no convenience yield. When futures prices

³⁵ Futures pricing is discussed in greater detail in Level II of the CFA Program curriculum.

are lower than the spot price, the commodity forward curve is downward sloping, and the prices are referred to as being in backwardation. *Backwardation* occurs when the convenience yield is high.

There are three sources of return for each commodity futures contract: the roll yield, the collateral yield, and the change in spot prices for the underlying commodity.

Roll Yield The term “roll yield” refers to the difference between a commodity’s spot price and the price specified by its futures contract (or the difference between two futures contracts with different expiration dates). The formula shows that, with a convenience yield high enough to position the futures price below the spot price, the price of the futures contract generally rolls up to the spot price as the expiry date of the futures contract approaches. This price convergence earns the bearer of the futures contract a positive roll yield. This explanation is called the *theory of storage*. An alternative theory, called the *hedging pressure hypothesis*, suggests the difference between the spot and futures price is determined by user preferences and risk premiums.

Collateral Yield The collateral yield component of commodity index returns is the interest earned on the collateral (plus invested cash up to the value of the underlying asset) posted as a good-faith deposit for the futures contracts. In measuring this return component, index managers typically assume that futures contracts are fully collateralized and that the collateral is invested in risk-free assets. Thus, the returns on a passive investment in commodity futures are expected to equal the return on the collateral plus a risk premium (i.e., the hedging pressure hypothesis) or the convenience yield net of storage costs (i.e., the theory of storage).

Change in Spot Prices The primary determinant of spot (or current) prices is the relationship between current supply and demand, as discussed earlier.

INFRASTRUCTURE

7

The assets underlying infrastructure investments are real, capital intensive, long-lived assets, which are intended for public use and provide essential services. Most infrastructure assets are financed, owned, and operated by governments, but increasingly, infrastructure assets are being financed privately. The use of public–private partnerships (PPPs) is increasing. By the end of 2014, unlisted funds had invested more than \$200 billion in infrastructure projects, up from \$6 billion in 2004.³⁶

The intent of infrastructure investor(s) may be to lease the assets back to the government, to sell newly constructed assets to the government, or to hold and operate the assets. From an investment perspective, if the assets are being held and operated, the relatively inelastic demand for the assets and services is advantageous; regulation and the high costs of the assets create high barriers to entry, which give the provider of the services a strong competitive position. Investors expect these assets to generate stable cash flows, which adjust for economic growth and inflation. Investors may also expect capital appreciation depending on the type of investment.

Investing in infrastructure may enable investors to add a steady income stream, to further diversify their portfolio by adding an asset class with low correlation to other investments, and to gain some protection against inflation. Infrastructure investments, which are in long-lived assets, may also better match the longer-term liability structure of some investors, such as pension funds and life insurance companies. Allocations to

³⁶ Preqin Performance Analyst, 2015.

infrastructure investments have increased because of interest by investors (demand side) and desire by governments to finance infrastructure assets and to privatize the provision of services and the underlying assets (supply side).

7.1 Categories of Infrastructure Investments

Infrastructure investments are frequently categorized based on underlying assets. The broadest categorization is into economic and social infrastructure assets. Economic infrastructure assets are necessary to support economic activity and include assets such as transportation and utility assets. Transportation assets include assets such as roads, bridges, tunnels, airports, ports, and railway lines. Utility assets include assets to transmit, store, and distribute gas, water, and electricity; generate power; treat waste; and broadcast and transmit information. The latter assets may be categorized separately as communication assets. Social infrastructure assets are directed toward human activities and include assets such as educational, healthcare, and correctional facilities.

Infrastructure investments may also be categorized by the underlying asset's stage of development. Investing in existing infrastructure assets may be referred to as brownfield investment. The assets may be currently owned by a government that wants to privatize the asset, to lease out the asset, or to sell and lease back the asset. Typically, some financial and operating history is available on the asset. Investing in infrastructure assets that are to be constructed may be referred to as greenfield investment. The intent may be to hold and operate the assets or to lease or sell the assets to the government after construction.

Infrastructure investments may also be categorized by the geographical location of the underlying assets. Infrastructure investments are available globally. Risks and expected returns may differ based on the underlying asset's category, stage of development, and geographical location. The form of investment also affects risks and expected returns.

7.2 Forms of Infrastructure Investments

Infrastructure investments, similar to real estate investments, may take a variety of forms. The investment form potentially affects the investment's liquidity as well as the cash flows and income streams to the investor. An investor may invest directly in the underlying assets, but most investors invest indirectly. Investing directly in infrastructure provides control over the asset and the opportunity to capture the asset's full value. But it entails a large investment, resulting in concentration and liquidity risks, and the assets must be managed and operated. Indirect investment vehicles include shares of companies, ETFs, listed funds, private equity funds, and unlisted mutual funds that invest in infrastructure. Investors concerned about liquidity may choose to invest through publicly traded infrastructure securities and/or master limited partnerships.

Publicly traded infrastructure securities provide the benefit of not only liquidity but also reasonable fees, transparent governance, market prices, and the ability to diversify across underlying assets. An investor should be aware, however, that publicly traded infrastructure securities represent a small segment of the infrastructure investment universe and tend to be clustered in categories of assets. Master limited partnerships (MLPs) trade on exchanges and are pass-through entities similar to REITs. Similar to REITs, regulations may vary across countries, and income is allocated to the investors for taxation. MLPs generally distribute most free cash flow to their investors. Typically, the GP manages the partnership, receives a fee, and holds a small partnership interest. LPs own the remaining partnership interest.

7.3 Risks and Returns Overview

The lowest-risk infrastructure investments have more-stable cash flows and higher dividend payout ratios but also typically have fewer growth opportunities and lower expected returns compared with higher-risk infrastructure investments. For example, an investment in an MLP with a brownfield investment in an asset that is being leased back to a government, such as a school, or in an asset with a history of steady cash flows, such as some toll roads, represents a low-risk infrastructure investment. An investment in a private equity fund with a greenfield investment is a riskier investment.

Risks include revenues being different than expected, leverage creating financing risk, operational risk, and construction risk. An inherent risk for many infrastructure investments is regulatory risk. Because essential services are often being provided, governments typically regulate many aspects of infrastructure investments, including the sale of the underlying assets, operations of the assets including service quality, and prices/profit margins. Global infrastructure investing introduces additional risks, such as currency, political, and profit repatriation risks.

Prequin maintains a return series of private funds investing in infrastructure deals. Standard and Poor's, FTSE, and other firms publish indexes of publicly traded infrastructure companies. For the five years ending December 2014, the Prequin index³⁷ returned 10.1% per annum, the S&P and FTSE infrastructure indexes returned on average 10.4%, and the MSCI global equity index (ACWI) returned 9.7%.

OTHER ALTERNATIVE INVESTMENTS

8

Numerous other investments do not fit within the definition of traditional investments (i.e., long-only investments in stocks, bonds, and cash) and may be considered alternative investments. Many of these other investments are categorized as collectibles.

Collectibles are tangible assets such as antiques and fine art, fine wine, rare stamps and coins, jewelry and watches, and sports memorabilia. Collectibles do not provide current income, but they can potentially provide long-term capital appreciation, diversify a portfolio, and be a source of enjoyment while held. There is no guarantee, however, that an investor will realize any of these benefits. Collectibles can fluctuate dramatically in value and be highly illiquid, with potential difficulty in realizing gains. Transactions can occur in a number of ways and settings, including through professional auctioneers; in local flea markets, online auctions, garage sales, and antique stores; or directly with personal collectors. Investors must have a degree of expertise; otherwise, one may be vulnerable to fads, fakes, and fraud. Also, some collectibles must be stored in appropriate conditions to preserve their condition and avoid declines in value because of the asset's deterioration. Wine should be cellared, art should be kept in a humidity- and temperature-controlled environment, and coins and stamps must be handled with care to preserve their values. Although some collectibles (e.g., some great wines; fine art; and rare stamps, coins, and trading cards) have experienced great appreciation, this result is by no means the norm.

A number of indexes provide information about returns to these investments. None of these indexes is necessarily reliable or representative of performance for a collectibles asset class as a whole. For instance, the Stanley Gibbons GB250 Stamp Index measures the performance, using retail and auction prices, of 250 rare stamps traded in Great Britain. This index has increased from £3,253,500 at the end of 2005

³⁷ Note that these returns are based on fund IRR calculations.

to £8,471,750 at the end of 2014.³⁸ This increase equals a 10% annual return during the 10-year period. This return, however, does not represent the return to the overall population of traded stamps.

The popularity of art as an investment has led to the creation of a number of art price indexes. For example, Artprice provides statistics, econometric data, and indexes to help measure returns on artworks. Another company that develops indexes, Art Market Research, does not restrict itself to art but has more than 500 indexes in three broad categories: Painting; Antiques, Collectibles, Etc.; and Other Markets. These indexes range from very broad (e.g., Painting [General] and Antiques [General]) to more specific (e.g., Chinese Ceramics [General] and Ancient Coins [General]) to very specific (e.g., Wrist-Watches Patek Philippe, Continental Flint-Lock Pistols 1700–1800, and in wine, Château Lafite 1961). Subscribers are even able to specify parameters and create their own indexes. Christie's first published an index of wine auction prices (listed by château) in 1972.

Collectors have no doubt been trading sports memorabilia since sporting events began taking place. One can only imagine the market for a piece of equipment or a keepsake of a martial artist in ancient China, an Olympian in ancient Greece, or a gladiator in ancient Rome. Trading cards—sports and other—have been swapped and sold in the United States since the early 1900s and are increasing in popularity elsewhere.³⁹ As is the case with any collectible, considerable expertise and perhaps a little luck are required to invest successfully in sports memorabilia.

9

RISK MANAGEMENT OVERVIEW

Alternative investments pose unusual challenges for investors seeking to manage risk. They are often characterized by asymmetric risk and return profiles, limited portfolio transparency, and illiquidity. Investors in alternatives may be exposed to a variety of risks, including operational risk, financial risk, counterparty risk, and liquidity risk. The returns to some types of alternatives, such as private equity, may rely to a great extent on manager skill rather than on general asset class performance. For these reasons, traditional risk and return measures (such as mean return, standard deviation of returns, and beta) may not provide an adequate picture of alternative investments' characteristics. Moreover, these measures may be unreliable or not representative of specific investments.

9.1 Investment and Risk Management Process

Investment risk management is not solely the responsibility of either the investor or the manager of an investment portfolio. The investor, possibly in consultation with others, decides on an allocation to alternative investments. The investor then needs to decide the vehicles and managers of the investments as well as the amounts that will be allocated to each alternative investment class and manager. Risk has to be taken into account and due diligence conducted in making these decisions. The investment portfolio manager makes investment decisions consistent with the portfolio's established investment policies, taking risk into account. Investor due diligence should be used to ensure the portfolio manager effectively manages portfolio risk. Pension consultants, wealth managers, and individual investors all recognize that risk management processes can differ substantially between different alternative investment categories.

³⁸ <http://www.stanleygibbons.com/investment/gb250-stamp-index/>.

³⁹ The most valuable baseball card in history, T206 Honus Wagner, was sold in 2007 for \$2.35 million.

9.1.1 Risk Management Issues

Risks vary across alternative investments. The risks associated with investing in private markets (e.g., private equity funds and real estate ownership) differ from the risks associated with investing in publicly traded markets (e.g., commodity futures and REITs). Private equity and direct real estate ownership may involve selecting companies or properties, managing them, and then selling them years later. Private equity and hedge funds may have long lockup periods. As a result, investors' funds may be tied up for years. Intermediate valuations are challenging. As a result, any malfeasance or mismanagement may go undetected for years, so investor due diligence is critical. The illiquid nature of alternative investments also means that poor manager selection can create a lingering drag on the portfolio. Limited partnership vehicles may limit the visibility of underlying holdings and liquidity to investor assets.

Portfolios of publicly traded securities are more liquid and have prices that are more timely and observable than those of privately held assets. For investors who seek liquidity, publicly traded securities such as shares of REITs, ETFs, and publicly traded private equity firms may serve as the means for investing in alternatives.

9.1.2 Risk Issues for Implementation

For allocation purposes, the investor should recognize that historical returns and the standard deviation of those returns using indexes may not be representative of the returns and volatility of alternative investments. Further, those investments' reported correlations with other investments may vary from the actual correlations. As is always the case, even if these are relevant and representative measures of historical performance, past performance is not necessarily representative of future performance. The performance of alternative investments can be highly correlated with the business cycle, especially commodities and real estate investments, and may be susceptible to bubbles (i.e., much higher prices than justified by fundamentals). Investors should consider valuation before making allocation changes.

When selecting managers or funds, the investor should recognize that returns and risks may differ significantly among individual managers or funds and the overall investment class. Large institutional investors deal with this challenge by diversifying across managers or funds, but this approach may not be practical for smaller investors. As a result, these smaller investors may invest in (publicly traded) or with (private) a few large, diversified funds.

Alternative investment portfolio managers need to be mindful of several risks. In the case of illiquid investments, most notably in private equity or venture capital, there is a real possibility of 100% loss of equity on individual investments. As a result, portfolios should be diversified sufficiently to reduce the possibility of this outcome happening to all investments. Investors commonly require managers to follow diversification concentration guidelines to limit these risks. At the same time, the manager should avoid diluting the opportunity for making substantial returns by arbitrarily identifying a target number of investments and, in the process, selecting inferior investments. Managers should consider and manage the risk associated with the use of leverage.

Performance fee structures, although high, may encourage alignment of interests between investors and managers. Established portfolio managers, however, may seek to attract large amounts of capital and to profit from the management fees based on AUM or committed capital without seeking superior performance. Performance fees may also encourage hedge fund managers who experience a large loss to liquidate their funds instead of working them back to par.

9.1.3 *Due Diligence Issues Regarding Risk*

Due diligence of alternative investment managers necessitates special procedures, over and above the process required for a manager of a portfolio of publicly traded securities. Historical performance measures may be unreliable or not representative as a result of intermediate valuation estimates and narrow portfolio diversification. With limited transparency and long horizons of many alternative investments, the honesty of the company's staff needs to be carefully reviewed.

Hedge funds will have trading desks much like long-only investment firms, but private equity and real estate companies usually make investment decisions via an investment committee of partners. The investment committee may or may not include external non-executive directors or subject matter experts. The committee votes on the rationale, analysis, and suitability of every investment and requires a majority in favor before investor funds are committed. This committee may also oversee and vote on investments' exit strategies, including timing and realization price.

Independent valuation of illiquid underlying assets should be performed regularly. Often, this analysis is done in conjunction with a portfolio review explaining the performance of every transaction in detail, its status, and future strategy for the portfolio. Limits on security type, leverage, sector, geography, and individual positions should be well defined in the offering memorandum, and the positions should be carefully monitored by the manager and regularly reported to clients.

Hedge fund risk is often monitored by a chief risk officer, who should be separated from the investment process. As part of the risk management process, a hedge fund needs to establish and maintain limits on leverage, sector, and individual positions. Investments in commodities may be subject to counterparty risks as well as leverage risks. The exposure to counterparty risk and leverage risk should be regularly monitored and reported. Policies limiting leverage, positions, and sectors as well as counterparty exposures may be adopted.

One issue for investors is that hedge and commodity funds may seek to keep their positions and strategies private. This lack of transparency makes it difficult for the investor to effectively manage diversification across funds and to conduct adequate due diligence.

9.2 Risk–Return Measures

The Sharpe ratio is a risk–return measure frequently reported because of its ease of calculation and understandability. The Sharpe ratio may not be the appropriate risk–return measure for some alternative investments because measures of return and standard deviation may be irrelevant or unreliable given the assets' illiquid nature. The illiquid nature of these assets means that estimates, rather than observable transaction prices, may be used for valuation purposes. As a result, returns may be smoothed and/or overstated and the volatility of returns understated. Also, the use of standard deviation to measure risk ignores the diversification effect for a broad portfolio of managers and alternative investments.

Many alternative investments do not exhibit close-to-normal distributions of returns, which is a crucial assumption for standard deviation's validity as a comprehensive risk measure. Alternative investment returns tend to be leptokurtic, or negatively skewed (in other words, they have fat tails characterized by positive average returns and long-tails downside characterized by potential extreme losses). For this reason, a measure of downside risk, ideally non-normal, would be useful. Downside risk measures focus on the left side of the return distribution curve where losses occur. For example, value at risk (VaR) is a measure of the minimum amount of loss expected for a given period at a given level of probability. In other words, this measure answers a question such as, "What is the minimum amount expected to be

lost in a year with a 5% probability?” This measure, however, if it is calculated using standard deviation, will underestimate the VaR for a negatively skewed distribution. Shortfall or safety-first risk measures the probability that the portfolio value will fall below some minimum acceptable level over a given period. In other words, this measure answers a question such as, “What is the probability of losing 20% of principal in any given year?” Shortfall risk also uses standard deviation as the measure of risk. The Sortino ratio, another risk–return measure, uses downside deviation rather than standard deviation as a measure of risk. Assuming normal probability distributions when calculating these measures will lead to underestimating downside risk for a negatively skewed distribution.

Understanding and evaluating “tail events”—low-probability, high-severity instances of stress—is an important yet extraordinarily difficult aspect of the risk management process. Stress testing/scenario analysis is often used as a complement to VaR to develop a better understanding of a portfolio’s potential loss under both normal and stressed market conditions. Stress testing involves estimating losses under extremely unfavorable conditions.

9.3 Due Diligence Overview

Manager selection is a critical factor in portfolio performance. A manager should have a verifiable track record and display a high level of expertise and experience with the asset type. The asset management team should be assigned an appropriate workload and provided sufficient resources. Moreover, it should be rewarded with an effective compensation package to ensure alignment of interest, continuity, motivation, and thoughtful oversight of assets.

Fraud, although infrequent, is always a possibility. The investor should be skeptical of unusually good and overly consistent reported performance. Third-party custody of assets and independent verification of results can help reduce the chance of an investor being defrauded. Diversification across managers is also wise.

For an investor considering a new investment, a proper due diligence process should be carried out to ensure that the targeted investment is in compliance with its prospectus and that it will meet her investment strategy, risk and return objectives, and restrictions. Existing investors should monitor results and fund holdings to determine whether a fund has performed in line with expectations and continues to comply with its prospectus.

Exhibit 18 lists key items that should be considered in a typical due diligence process.

Exhibit 18 A Typical Due Diligence Process

Organization	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Experience and quality of management team, compensation, and staffing ■ Analysis of prior and current funds ■ Track record/alignment of interests ■ Reputation and quality of third-party service providers (e.g., lawyers, auditors, prime brokers)
Portfolio management	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Investment process ■ Target markets/asset types/strategies ■ Sourcing of investments ■ Role of operating partners ■ Underwriting ■ Environmental and engineering review process ■ Integration of asset management/acquisitions/dispositions ■ Disposition process, including its initiation and execution
Operations and controls	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Reporting and accounting methodology ■ Audited financial statements and other internal controls ■ Valuations—frequency and approach(es) ■ Insurance and contingency plans
Risk management	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Fund policies and limits ■ Risk management policy ■ Portfolio risk and key risk factors ■ Leverage and currency—risks/constraints/hedging
Legal review	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Fund structure ■ Registrations ■ Existing/prior litigation
Fund terms	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Fees (management and performance) and expenses ■ Contractual terms ■ Investment period and fund term and extensions ■ Carried interest ■ Distributions ■ Conflicts ■ Limited partners' rights ■ "Key person" and/or other termination procedures

Alternative investing may add value to an investor's portfolio. To be effective, however, alternative investing requires thoughtful implementation, including consideration of the amount to allocate to alternative investments and of diversification among alternative investments. Valuation issues, manager selection, and risk management should also be considered.

SUMMARY

This reading has provided an overview of the characteristics, potential benefits, and risks of alternative investments. It also described features of some categories of alternative investments. Including alternative investments in an investor's portfolio may result in benefits, such as diversification benefits. These benefits do not come without associated risks, however. It is important that investors understand these risks before including alternative investments in their portfolios. Some key points of the reading are summarized as follows:

- Alternative investments are alternatives to long-only positions in stocks, bonds, and cash. Alternative investments include investments in assets such as real estate and commodities as well as investments in special vehicles such as private equity and hedge funds.
- Alternative investment strategies are typically active, return-seeking strategies.
- Characteristics common to many alternative investments, compared with traditional investments, include lower liquidity, less regulation, lower transparency, higher fees, and limited and potentially problematic historical risk and return data.
- Alternative investments often have unusual legal and tax considerations and may be highly leveraged.
- Alternative investments are attractive to investors because of the potential for diversification (reduced risk) and/or higher returns when added to a portfolio of traditional investments.
- The risks associated with alternative investments must be factored into the investment decision-making process.
- Many alternative investments are valued for performance-reporting purposes, including reporting to index providers, using estimated values rather than actual market prices. As a result, the volatility of returns and correlation of returns with the returns to traditional investments will tend to be underestimated. It is important to identify and understand how alternative investments are valued.
- Indexes for alternative investments may be subject to a variety of biases, including survivorship and backfill biases.
- Many alternative investments, such as hedge and private equity funds, use a partnership structure with a general partner that manages the business and limited partners (investors) who own fractional interests in the partnership.
- The general partner typically receives a management fee based on assets under management or committed capital (the former is common to hedge funds and the latter is common to private equity funds) and an incentive fee based on realized profits.
- Hurdle rates, high-water marks, lockup and notice periods, and clawback provisions may also be specified in a partnership agreement.
- The fee structure affects the returns to investors (limited partners) in alternative investments such as hedge and private equity funds.
- Hedge funds are typically classified by strategy. One such classification includes four broad categories of strategies: event-driven, relative value, macro, and equity hedge.

- Primary private equity fund strategies include leveraged buyouts, venture capital, development capital, and distressed investing. Leveraged buyouts and venture capital are the dominant strategies.
- Real estate investing includes direct and indirect ownership of real estate property and lending against real estate properties.
- Real estate property has some unique features, including basic indivisibility, heterogeneity (no two properties are identical), and fixed location.
- The required amount to directly invest in real estate may be large, and the investment may be relatively illiquid. Different investment forms, such as REITs and mortgage securitizations, partially address these issues.
- Commodity investments may involve investing in actual physical commodities or in producers of commodities, but more typically, these investments are made using commodity derivatives.
- Returns to commodity investing are based on changes in price and do not include an income stream such as dividends, interest, or rent.
- Infrastructure assets are capital intensive, long-lived, real assets that are intended for public use and provide essential services. Investors expect these assets to generate stable cash flows, which adjust for economic growth and inflation, and they may also expect capital appreciation.
- Category, stage of development, and geographic location of underlying assets and the form of infrastructure investment affect risks and expected returns of infrastructure investments.
- Managing risks associated with alternative investments can be challenging because these investments are often characterized by asymmetric risk and return profiles, limited portfolio transparency, and illiquidity.
- Traditional risk and return measures (such as mean return, standard deviation of returns, and beta) may provide an inadequate picture of alternative investments' risk and return characteristics. Moreover, these measures may be unreliable or not representative of specific investments.
- Operational, financial, counterparty, and liquidity risks may be key considerations for those investing in alternative investments.
- It is critical to perform due diligence to assess whether (a) the manager can effectively pursue the proposed investment strategy; (b) the appropriate organizational structure and policies for managing investments, operations, risk, and compliance are in place; and (c) the fund terms appear reasonable.
- The inclusion of alternative investments in a portfolio, including the amounts to allocate, should be considered in the context of an investor's risk–return objectives, constraints, and preferences.

REFERENCES

- Brooks, C., and H. Kat. 2002. "The Statistical Properties of Hedge Fund Index Returns and Their Implications for Investors." *Journal of Alternative Investments*, vol. 5, no. 2: 26–44.
- Heisler, J., C. Knittel, J. Neumann, and S. Stewart. 2007. "Why Do Institutional Plan Sponsors Hire and Fire Their Investment Managers?" *Journal of Business and Economic Studies*, vol. 13, no. 1: 88–118.
- Kaplan, Steven N., and Antoinette Schoar. 2005. "Private Equity Performance, Returns, Persistence, and Capital Flows." *Journal of Finance*, vol. 60, no. 4: 1791–1823 .
- Stewart, S., J. Heisler, C. Knittel, and J. Neumann. 2009. "Absence of Value: An Analysis of Investment Allocation Decisions by Institutional Plan Sponsors." *Financial Analysts Journal*, vol. 65, no. 6: 34–51 .
- Stoll, Hans R., and Robert E. Whaley. 2009. "Commodity Index Investing and Commodity Futures Prices." Working paper, Vanderbilt University.
- Woodward, Susan, and Robert Hall. 2004. "Benchmarking the Returns to Venture." National Bureau of Economic Research. January 2004.

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

- 1 Which of the following is *least likely* to be considered an alternative investment?
 - A Real estate
 - B Commodities
 - C Long-only equity funds
- 2 Private equity funds are *most likely* to use:
 - A merger arbitrage strategies.
 - B leveraged buyouts.
 - C market-neutral strategies.
- 3 An investor is seeking an investment that can take long and short positions, may use multi-strategies, and historically exhibits low correlation with a traditional investment portfolio. The investor's goals will be *best* satisfied with an investment in:
 - A real estate.
 - B a hedge fund.
 - C a private equity fund.
- 4 Relative to traditional investments, alternative investments are *least likely* to be characterized by:
 - A high levels of transparency.
 - B limited historical return data.
 - C significant restrictions on redemptions.
- 5 Alternative investment funds are typically managed:
 - A actively.
 - B to generate positive beta return.
 - C assuming that markets are efficient.
- 6 Compared with traditional investments, alternative investments are *more likely* to have:
 - A greater use of leverage.
 - B long-only positions in liquid assets.
 - C more transparent and reliable risk and return data.
- 7 An investor is most likely to consider adding alternative investments to a traditional investment portfolio because:
 - A of their historically higher returns.
 - B of their historically lower standard deviation of returns.
 - C their inclusion is expected to reduce the portfolio's Sharpe ratio.
- 8 The potential benefits of allocating a portion of a portfolio to alternative investments include:
 - A ease of manager selection.
 - B improvement in portfolio risk–return.
 - C accessible and reliable measures of risk and return.
- 9 An investor may prefer a single hedge fund to a fund of funds if he seeks:

- A due diligence expertise.
 - B better redemption terms.
 - C a less complex fee structure.
- 10 Hedge funds are similar to private equity funds in that both:
- A are typically structured as partnerships.
 - B assess management fees based on assets under management.
 - C do not earn an incentive fee until the initial investment is repaid.
- 11 An investor seeks a current income stream as a component of total return, and desires an investment that historically has low correlation with other asset classes. The investment *most likely* to achieve the investor's goals is:
- A timberland.
 - B collectibles.
 - C commodities.
- 12 Both event-driven and macro hedge fund strategies use:
- A long–short positions.
 - B a top–down approach.
 - C long-term market cycles.
- 13 Hedge fund losses are *most likely* to be magnified by a:
- A margin call.
 - B lockup period.
 - C redemption notice period.
- 14 The first stage of financing at which a venture capital fund *most likely* invests is the:
- A seed stage.
 - B mezzanine stage.
 - C angel investing stage.
- 15 What is the most significant drawback of a repeat sales index to measure returns to real estate?
- A Sample selection bias
 - B Understatement of volatility
 - C Reliance on subjective appraisals
- 16 Compared with direct investment in infrastructure, publicly traded infrastructure securities are characterized by:
- A higher concentration risk.
 - B more-transparent governance.
 - C greater control over the infrastructure assets.
- 17 An equity hedge fund following a fundamental growth strategy uses fundamental analysis to identify companies that are *most likely* to:
- A be undervalued.
 - B be either undervalued or overvalued.
 - C experience high growth and capital appreciation.
- 18 Which of the following is most likely to be available when conducting hedge fund due diligence?
- A The benchmark used by the fund
 - B Information on systems risk management

- C Details of investment strategies and processes
- 19 A private equity fund desiring to realize an immediate and complete cash exit from a portfolio company is *most likely* to pursue a(n):
- A IPO.
 - B trade sale.
 - C recapitalization.
- 20 As the loan-to-value ratio increases for a real estate investment, risk *most likely* increases for:
- A debt investors only.
 - B equity investors only.
 - C both debt and equity investors.
- 21 Which of the following forms of infrastructure investments is the most liquid?
- A An unlisted infrastructure mutual fund
 - B A direct investment in a greenfield project
 - C An exchange-traded master limited partnership (MLP)
- 22 An investor chooses to invest in a brownfield rather than a greenfield infrastructure project. The investor is *most likely* motivated by:
- A growth opportunities.
 - B predictable cash flows.
 - C higher expected returns.
- 23 The privatization of an existing hospital is best described as:
- A a greenfield investment.
 - B a brownfield investment.
 - C an economic infrastructure investment.
- 24 A hedge fund invests primarily in distressed debt. Quoted market prices are available for the underlying holdings but they trade infrequently. Which of the following will the hedge fund *most likely* use in calculating net asset value for trading purposes?
- A Average quotes
 - B Average quotes adjusted for liquidity
 - C Bid prices for short positions and ask prices for long positions
- 25 Angel investing capital is typically provided in which stage of financing?
- A Later-stage.
 - B Formative-stage.
 - C Mezzanine-stage.
- 26 If a commodity's forward curve is in contango, the component of a commodities futures return *most likely* to reflect this is:
- A spot prices.
 - B the roll yield.
 - C the collateral yield.
- 27 United Capital is a hedge fund with \$250 million of initial capital. United charges a 2% management fee based on assets under management at year end, and a 20% incentive fee based on returns in excess of an 8% hurdle rate. In its first year, United appreciates 16%. Assume management fees are calculated using end-of-period valuation. The investor's net return assuming the performance fee is calculated net of the management fee is *closest* to:

- A 11.58%.
 B 12.54%.
 C 12.80%.
- 28 Capricorn Fund of Funds invests GBP 100 million in each of Alpha Hedge Fund and ABC Hedge Fund. Capricorn FOF has a “1 and 10” fee structure. Management fees and incentive fees are calculated independently at the end of each year. After one year, net of their respective management and incentive fees, the investment in Alpha is valued at GBP80 million and the investment in ABC is valued at GBP140 million. The annual return to an investor in Capricorn, net of fees assessed at the fund of funds level, is *closest* to:
- A 7.9%.
 B 8.0%.
 C 8.1%.
- 29 The following information applies to Rotunda Advisors, a hedge fund:
- \$288 million in assets under management (AUM) as of prior year-end
 - 2% management fee (based on year-end AUM)
 - 20% incentive fee calculated:
 - net of management fee
 - using a 5% soft hurdle rate
 - using a high-water mark (high-water mark is \$357 million)
 - Current year fund return is 25%
- The total fee earned by Rotunda in the current year is *closest* to:
- A \$7.20 million.
 B \$20.16 million.
 C \$21.60 million.
- 30 A hedge fund has the following fee structure:
- | | |
|--|---------------|
| Annual management fee based on year-end AUM | 2% |
| Incentive fee | 20% |
| Hurdle rate before incentive fee collection starts | 4% |
| Current high-water mark | \$610 million |
- The fund has a value of \$583.1 million at the beginning of the year. After one year, it has a value of \$642 million before fees. The net return to an investor for this year is *closest* to:
- A 6.72%.
 B 6.80%.
 C 7.64%.
- 31 Ash Lawn Partners, a fund of hedge funds, has the following fee structure:
- 2/20 underlying fund fees with incentive fees calculated independently
 - Ash Lawn fees are calculated net of all underlying fund fees
 - 1% management fee (based on year-end market value)
 - 10% incentive fee calculated net of management fee
 - The fund and all underlying funds have no hurdle rate or high-water mark fee conditions

In the latest year, Ash Lawn's fund value increased from \$100 million to \$133 million before deduction of management and incentive fees of the fund or underlying funds. Based on the information provided, the total fee earned by *all* funds in the aggregate is *closest* to:

- A \$11.85 million.
 - B \$12.75 million.
 - C \$12.87 million.
- 32 Risks in infrastructure investing are *most likely* greatest when the project involves:
- A construction of infrastructure assets.
 - B investment in existing infrastructure assets.
 - C investing in assets that will be leased back to a government.
- 33 An investor in a private equity fund is concerned that the general partner can receive incentive fees in excess of the agreed-on incentive fees by making distributions over time based on profits earned rather than making distributions only at exit from investments of the fund. Which of the following is most likely to protect the investor from the general partner receiving excess fees?
- A A high hurdle rate
 - B A clawback provision
 - C A lower capital commitment
- 34 Until the committed capital is fully drawn down and invested, the management fee for a private equity fund is based on:
- A invested capital.
 - B committed capital.
 - C assets under management.
- 35 A private equity fund is estimating the value of a privately held company that is financed with both debt and equity, is generating positive revenues, and has negative EBITDA. The private equity fund is *most likely* able to estimate the company's equity value using:
- A net income multiples.
 - B market value of its assets.
 - C expected free cash flow to equity and cost of equity.
- 36 An analyst wanting to assess the downside risk of an alternative investment is *least likely* to use the investment's:
- A Sortino ratio.
 - B value at risk (VaR).
 - C standard deviation of returns.
- 37 An effective risk management process used by alternative investment funds *most likely* includes:
- A in-house valuations.
 - B internal custody of assets.
 - C segregation of risk and investment process duties.

SOLUTIONS

- 1 C is correct. Long-only equity funds are typically considered traditional investments and real estate and commodities are typically classified as alternative investments.
- 2 B is correct. The majority of private equity activity involves leveraged buyouts. Merger arbitrage and market neutral are strategies used by hedge funds.
- 3 B is correct. Hedge funds may use a variety of strategies (event-driven, relative value, macro and equity hedge), generally have a low correlation with traditional investments, and may take long and short positions.
- 4 A is correct. Alternative investments are characterized as typically having low levels of transparency.
- 5 A is correct. There are many approaches to managing alternative investment funds but typically these funds are actively managed.
- 6 A is correct. Investing in alternative investments is often pursued through such special vehicles as hedge funds and private equity funds, which have flexibility to use leverage. Alternative investments include investments in such assets as real estate, which is an illiquid asset, and investments in such special vehicles as private equity and hedge funds, which may make investments in illiquid assets and take short positions. Obtaining information on strategies used and identifying reliable measures of risk and return are challenges of investing in alternatives.
- 7 A is correct. The historically higher returns to most categories of alternative investments compared with traditional investments result in potentially higher returns to a portfolio containing alternative investments. The less than perfect correlation with traditional investments results in portfolio risk (standard deviation) being less than the weighted average of the standard deviations of the investments. This has potential to increase the Sharpe ratio in spite of the historically higher standard deviation of returns of most categories of alternative investments.
- 8 B is correct. Adding alternative investments to a portfolio may provide diversification benefits because of these investments' less than perfect correlation with other assets in the portfolio. As a result, allocating a portion of one's funds to alternatives could potentially result in an improved risk–return relationship. Challenges to allocating a portion of a portfolio to alternative investments include obtaining reliable measures of risk and return as well as selecting portfolio managers for the alternative investments.
- 9 C is correct. Hedge funds of funds have multi-layered fee structures, while the fee structure for a single hedge fund is less complex. Funds of funds presumably have some expertise in conducting due diligence on hedge funds and may be able to negotiate more favorable redemption terms than could an individual investor in a single hedge fund.
- 10 A is correct. Private equity funds and hedge funds are typically structured as partnerships where investors are limited partners (LP) and the fund is the general partner (GP). The management fee for private equity funds is based on committed capital whereas for hedge funds the management fees are based on assets under management. For most private equity funds, the general partner does not earn an incentive fee until the limited partners have received their initial investment back.

- 11 A is correct. Timberland offers an income stream based on the sale of timber products as a component of total return and has historically generated returns not highly correlated with other asset classes.
- 12 A is correct. Long–short positions are used by both types of hedge funds to potentially profit from anticipated market or security moves. Event-driven strategies use a bottom-up approach and seek to profit from short-term events typically involving a corporate action, such as an acquisition or a restructuring. Macro strategies seek to profit from expected movements in evolving economic variables.
- 13 A is correct. Margin calls can magnify losses. To meet the margin call, the hedge fund manager may be forced to liquidate a losing position in a security, which, depending on the position size, could exert further price pressure on the security, resulting in further losses. Restrictions on redemptions, such as lockup and notice periods, may allow the manager to close positions in a more orderly manner and minimize forced-sale liquidations of losing positions.
- 14 A is correct. The seed stage supports market research and product development and is generally the first stage at which venture capital funds invest. The seed stage follows the angel investing stage. In the angel investing stage, funds are typically provided by individuals (often friends or family), rather than a venture capital fund, to assess an idea's potential and to transform the idea into a plan. Mezzanine-stage financing is provided by venture capital funds to prepare the portfolio company for its IPO.
- 15 A is correct. A repeat sales index uses the changes in price of repeat-sale properties to construct the index. Sample selection bias is a significant drawback because the properties that sell in each period vary and may not be representative of the overall market the index is meant to cover. The properties that transact are not a random sample and may be biased toward properties that changed in value. Understated volatility and reliance on subjective appraisals by experts are drawbacks of an appraisal index.
- 16 B is correct. Publicly traded infrastructure securities, which include shares of companies, exchange-traded funds, and listed funds that invest in infrastructure, provide the benefits of transparent governance, liquidity, reasonable fees, market prices, and the ability to diversify across underlying assets. Direct investment in infrastructure involves a large capital investment in any single project, resulting in high concentration risks. Direct investment in infrastructure provides control over the assets and the opportunity to capture the assets' full value.
- 17 C is correct. Fundamental growth strategies take long positions in companies identified, using fundamental analysis, to have high growth and capital appreciation. Fundamental value strategies use fundamental analysis to identify undervalued companies. Market-neutral strategies use quantitative and/or fundamental analysis to identify under- and overvalued companies.
- 18 A is correct. It should be possible to identify the benchmark against which the fund gauges its performance in the hedge fund due diligence process. It should also be possible to establish the range of markets in which the fund invests as well as the fund's general strategy. Hedge funds consider their strategies, systems, and processes to be proprietary and are unwilling to provide too much information to potential investors.
- 19 B is correct. Private equity funds can realize an immediate cash exit in a trade sale. Using this strategy, the portfolio company is typically sold to a strategic buyer.

- 20** C is correct. The higher the loan-to-value ratio, the higher leverage is for a real estate investment, which increases the risk to both debt and equity investors.
- 21** C is correct. A publicly traded infrastructure security, such as an exchange-traded MLP, provides the benefit of liquidity.
- 22** B is correct. A brownfield investment is an investment in an existing infrastructure asset, which is more likely to have a history of steady cash flows compared with that of a greenfield investment. Growth opportunities and returns are expected to be lower for brownfield investments, which are less risky than greenfield investments.
- 23** B is correct. Investing in an existing infrastructure asset with the intent to privatize, lease, or sell and lease back the asset is referred to as a brownfield investment. An economic infrastructure asset supports economic activity and includes such assets as transportation and utility assets. Hospitals are social infrastructure assets, which are focused on human activities.
- 24** B is correct. Many practitioners believe that liquidity discounts are necessary to reflect fair value. This has resulted in some funds having two NAVs - for trading and reporting. The fund may use average quotes for reporting purposes but apply liquidity discounts for trading purposes.
- 25** B is correct. Formative-stage financing occurs when the company is still in the process of being formed and encompasses several financing steps. Angel investing capital is typically raised in this early stage of financing.
- 26** B is correct. Roll yield refers to the difference between the spot price of a commodity and the price specified by its futures contract (or the difference between two futures contracts with different expiration dates). When futures prices are higher than the spot price, the commodity forward curve is upward sloping, and the prices are referred to as being in contango. Contango occurs when there is little or no convenience yield.
- 27** B is correct. The net investor return is 12.54%, calculated as:
- End of year capital = \$250 million \times 1.16 = \$290 million
- Management fee = \$290 million \times 2% = \$5.8 million
- Hurdle amount = 8% of \$250 million = \$20 million;
- Incentive fee = (\$290 - \$250 - \$20 - \$5.8) million \times 20% = \$2.84 million
- Total fees to United Capital = (\$5.8 + \$2.84) million = \$8.64 million
- Investor net return: (\$290 - \$250 - \$8.64) / \$250 = 12.54%
- 28** A is correct because the net investor return is 7.9%, calculated as:
- First, note that “1 and 10” refers to a 1% management fee, and a 10% incentive fee.
- End of year capital = GBP140 million + GBP80 million = GBP220 million
- Management fee = GBP220 million \times 1% = GBP2.2 million
- Incentive fee = (GBP220 - GBP200) million \times 10% = GBP2 million
- Total fees to Capricorn = (GBP2.2 + GBP2) million = GBP4.2 million
- Investor net return: (GBP220 - GBP200 - GBP4.2) / GBP200 = 7.9%
- 29** A is correct. Rotunda earns a management fee of \$7.20 million but does not earn an incentive fee because the year-end fund value net of management fee does not exceed the high-water mark of \$357 million.

Rotunda fees:

End-of-year AUM = Prior year-end AUM \times (1 + Fund return) = \$288 million \times 1.25 = \$360 million

\$360 million \times 2% = \$7.20 million management fee

\$360 million – \$7.2 million = \$352.8 million AUM net of management fee

The year-end AUM net of fees does not exceed the \$357 million high-water mark. Therefore, no incentive fee is earned.

- 30 C is correct. The management fee for the year is

$\$642 \times 0.02 = \12.84 million.

Because the ending value exceeds the high-water mark, the hedge fund can collect an incentive fee. The incentive fee is

$\{\$642 - [\$610 \times (1 + 0.04)]\} \times 0.20 = \1.52 million.

The net return to the investor for the year is

$[(\$642 - \$12.84 - \$1.52)/\$583.1] - 1 \approx 0.07638 \approx 7.64\%$.

- 31 B is correct. Total fees paid to all funds (underlying funds and Ash Lawn) are \$12.75 million, consisting of underlying fund fees of \$9.26 million and Ash Lawn fees of \$3.49 million, calculated as follows:

Underlying fund fees:

Management fee = \$133 million \times 0.02 = \$2.66 million.

Incentive fee = (\$133 – \$100) million \times 0.20 = \$6.60 million.

Total underlying fund fees (\$2.66 + \$6.60) million = \$9.26 million.

Ash Lawn fees:

AUM at end of year, net of underlying fund fees = \$133 million – \$9.26 million = \$123.74 million.

Ash Lawn management fee = \$123.74 million \times 0.01 = \$1.24 million (rounded).

AUM net of underlying fund fees and Ash Lawn management fee = (\$123.74 – \$1.24) million = \$122.50 million (rounded).

Ash Lawn incentive fee = (\$122.50 – \$100) million \times 0.10 = \$2.25 million (rounded).

Total Ash Lawn fees = (\$1.24 + \$2.25) million = \$3.49 million (rounded).

Total fees of underlying funds and Ash Lawn:

$(\$9.26 + \$3.49)$ million = \$12.75 million (rounded).

- 32 A is correct. Infrastructure projects involving construction have more risk than investments in existing assets with a demonstrated cash flow or investments in assets that are expected to generate regular cash flows because the assets will be leased back to a government.
- 33 B is correct. A clawback provision requires the general partner in a private equity fund to return any funds distributed (to the general partner) as incentive fees until the limited partners have received back their initial investments and the contracted portion of the total profits. A high hurdle rate will result in

- distributions occurring only after the fund achieves a specified return. A high hurdle rate decreases the likelihood of, but does not prevent, excess distributions. Management fees, not incentive fees, are based on committed capital.
- 34** B is correct. Until the committed capital is fully drawn down and invested, the management fee for a private equity fund is based on committed capital, not invested capital.
- 35** C is correct. The private equity fund can estimate the company's value by discounting the expected free cash flow to equity using the cost of equity, which is a discounted cash flow approach. A negative EBITDA number implies negative net income, which makes net income multiples, a comparable approach, inapplicable for valuation. In order to use an asset-based approach, the private equity fund needs the market value of its liabilities, not just the market value of its assets.
- 36** C is correct. Downside risk measures focus on the left side of the return distribution curve where losses occur. The standard deviation of returns assumes that returns are normally distributed. Many alternative investments do not exhibit close-to-normal distribution of returns, which is a crucial assumption for the validity of a standard deviation as a comprehensive risk measure. Assuming normal probability distributions when calculating these measures will lead to an underestimation of downside risk for a negatively skewed distribution. Both the Sortino ratio and the value-at-risk measure are both measures of downside risk.
- 37** C is correct. Investment risk should be monitored by a chief risk officer who is separated from the investment process. Risk factors monitored include leverage, sector, and individual position limits as well as counterparty risks. Independent (as opposed to in-house) valuation of underlying positions should be performed and reviewed on a regular basis. Third-party custody of assets can help reduce the chance of fraud.

Glossary

- A priori probability** A probability based on logical analysis rather than on observation or personal judgment.
- Abnormal return** The amount by which a security's actual return differs from its expected return, given the security's risk and the market's return.
- Absolute advantage** A country's ability to produce a good or service at a lower absolute cost than its trading partner.
- Absolute dispersion** The amount of variability present without comparison to any reference point or benchmark.
- Absolute frequency** The number of observations in a given interval (for grouped data).
- Accelerated book build** An offering of securities by an investment bank acting as principal that is accomplished in only one or two days.
- Accelerated methods** Depreciation methods that allocate a relatively large proportion of the cost of an asset to the early years of the asset's useful life.
- Accounting costs** Monetary value of economic resources used in performing an activity. These can be explicit, out-of-pocket, current payments, or an allocation of historical payments (depreciation) for resources. They do not include implicit opportunity costs.
- Accounting profit** Income as reported on the income statement, in accordance with prevailing accounting standards, before the provisions for income tax expense. Also called *income before taxes* or *pretax income*.
- Accounts payable** Amounts that a business owes to its vendors for goods and services that were purchased from them but which have not yet been paid.
- Accounts receivable turnover** Ratio of sales on credit to the average balance in accounts receivable.
- Accrued expenses** Liabilities related to expenses that have been incurred but not yet paid as of the end of an accounting period—an example of an accrued expense is rent that has been incurred but not yet paid, resulting in a liability "rent payable." Also called *accrued liabilities*.
- Accrued interest** Interest earned but not yet paid.
- Acid-test ratio** A stringent measure of liquidity that indicates a company's ability to satisfy current liabilities with its most liquid assets, calculated as (cash + short-term marketable investments + receivables) divided by current liabilities.
- Acquisition method** A method of accounting for a business combination where the acquirer is required to measure each identifiable asset and liability at fair value. This method was the result of a joint project of the IASB and FASB aiming at convergence in standards for the accounting of business combinations.
- Action lag** Delay from policy decisions to implementation.
- Active investment** An approach to investing in which the investor seeks to outperform a given benchmark.
- Active return** The return on a portfolio minus the return on the portfolio's benchmark.
- Active strategy** In reference to short-term cash management, an investment strategy characterized by monitoring and attempting to capitalize on market conditions to optimize the risk and return relationship of short-term investments.
- Activity ratios** Ratios that measure how efficiently a company performs day-to-day tasks, such as the collection of receivables and management of inventory. Also called *asset utilization ratios* or *operating efficiency ratios*.
- Add-on rates** Bank certificates of deposit, repos, and indexes such as Libor and Euribor are quoted on an add-on rate basis (bond equivalent yield basis).
- Addition rule for probabilities** A principle stating that the probability that *A* or *B* occurs (both occur) equals the probability that *A* occurs, plus the probability that *B* occurs, minus the probability that both *A* and *B* occur.
- Agency bonds** See *quasi-government bond*.
- Agency RMBS** In the United States, securities backed by residential mortgage loans and guaranteed by a federal agency or guaranteed by either of the two GSEs (Fannie Mae and Freddie Mac).
- Aggregate demand** The quantity of goods and services that households, businesses, government, and foreign customers want to buy at any given level of prices.
- Aggregate demand curve** Inverse relationship between the price level and real output.
- Aggregate income** The value of all the payments earned by the suppliers of factors used in the production of goods and services.
- Aggregate output** The value of all the goods and services produced in a specified period of time.
- Aggregate supply** The quantity of goods and services producers are willing to supply at any given level of price.
- Aggregate supply curve** The level of domestic output that companies will produce at each price level.
- Aging schedule** A breakdown of accounts into categories of days outstanding.
- All-or-nothing (AON) orders** An order that includes the instruction to trade only if the trade fills the entire quantity (size) specified.
- Allocationally efficient** Said of a market, a financial system, or an economy that promotes the allocation of resources to their highest value uses.
- Alternative data** Non-traditional data types generated by the use of electronic devices, social media, satellite and sensor networks, and company exhaust.
- Alternative investment markets** Market for investments other than traditional securities investments (i.e., traditional common and preferred shares and traditional fixed income instruments). The term usually encompasses direct and indirect investment in real estate (including timberland and farmland) and commodities (including precious metals); hedge funds, private equity, and other investments requiring specialized due diligence.
- Alternative trading systems** Trading venues that function like exchanges but that do not exercise regulatory authority over their subscribers except with respect to the conduct of the subscribers' trading in their trading systems. Also called *electronic communications networks* or *multilateral trading facilities*.
- American depository receipt** A US dollar-denominated security that trades like a common share on US exchanges.

- American depository share** The underlying shares on which American depository receipts are based. They trade in the issuing company's domestic market.
- American-style** Said of an option contract that can be exercised at any time up to the option's expiration date.
- Amortisation** The process of allocating the cost of intangible long-term assets having a finite useful life to accounting periods; the allocation of the amount of a bond premium or discount to the periods remaining until bond maturity.
- Amortised cost** The historical cost (initially recognised cost) of an asset, adjusted for amortisation and impairment.
- Amortizing bond** Bond with a payment schedule that calls for periodic payments of interest and repayments of principal.
- Amortizing loan** Loan with a payment schedule that calls for periodic payments of interest and repayments of principal.
- Annual percentage rate** The cost of borrowing expressed as a yearly rate.
- Annuity** A finite set of level sequential cash flows.
- Annuity due** An annuity having a first cash flow that is paid immediately.
- Anticipation stock** Excess inventory that is held in anticipation of increased demand, often because of seasonal patterns of demand.
- Antidilutive** With reference to a transaction or a security, one that would increase earnings per share (EPS) or result in EPS higher than the company's basic EPS—antidilutive securities are not included in the calculation of diluted EPS.
- Arbitrage** 1) The simultaneous purchase of an undervalued asset or portfolio and sale of an overvalued but equivalent asset or portfolio, in order to obtain a riskless profit on the price differential. Taking advantage of a market inefficiency in a risk-free manner. 2) The condition in a financial market in which equivalent assets or combinations of assets sell for two different prices, creating an opportunity to profit at no risk with no commitment of money. In a well-functioning financial market, few arbitrage opportunities are possible. 3) A risk-free operation that earns an expected positive net profit but requires no net investment of money.
- Arbitrage-free pricing** The overall process of pricing derivatives by arbitrage and risk neutrality. Also called the *principle of no arbitrage*.
- Arbitrageurs** Traders who engage in arbitrage. See *arbitrage*.
- Arithmetic mean** The sum of the observations divided by the number of observations.
- Arms index** A flow of funds indicator applied to a broad stock market index to measure the relative extent to which money is moving into or out of rising and declining stocks.
- Artificial intelligence** Computer systems that exhibit cognitive and decision-making ability comparable (or superior) to that of humans.
- Asian call option** A European-style option with a value at maturity equal to the difference between the stock price at maturity and the average stock price during the life of the option, or \$0, whichever is greater.
- Ask** The price at which a dealer or trader is willing to sell an asset, typically qualified by a maximum quantity (ask size). See *offer*.
- Ask size** The maximum quantity of an asset that pertains to a specific ask price from a trader. For example, if the ask for a share issue is \$30 for a size of 1,000 shares, the trader is offering to sell at \$30 up to 1,000 shares.
- Asset allocation** The process of determining how investment funds should be distributed among asset classes.
- Asset-backed securities** A type of bond issued by a legal entity called a *special purpose entity* (SPE) on a collection of assets that the SPE owns. Also, securities backed by receivables and loans other than mortgages.
- Asset-based loan** A loan that is secured with company assets.
- Asset-based valuation models** Valuation based on estimates of the market value of a company's assets.
- Asset beta** The unlevered beta; reflects the business risk of the assets; the asset's systematic risk.
- Asset class** A group of assets that have similar characteristics, attributes, and risk/return relationships.
- Asset swap** Converts the periodic fixed coupon of a specific bond to a Libor plus or minus a spread.
- Asset utilization ratios** Ratios that measure how efficiently a company performs day-to-day tasks, such as the collection of receivables and management of inventory.
- Assets** Resources controlled by an enterprise as a result of past events and from which future economic benefits to the enterprise are expected to flow.
- Assignment of accounts receivable** The use of accounts receivable as collateral for a loan.
- At the money** An option in which the underlying's price equals the exercise price.
- Auction** A type of bond issuing mechanism often used for sovereign bonds that involves bidding.
- Autarkic price** The price of a good or service in an autarkic economy.
- Autarky** A state in which a country does not trade with other countries.
- Automated Clearing House (ACH)** An electronic payment network available to businesses, individuals, and financial institutions in the United States, US Territories, and Canada.
- Automatic stabilizer** A countercyclical factor that automatically comes into play as an economy slows and unemployment rises.
- Available-for-sale** Debt and equity securities not classified as either held-to-maturity or held-for-trading securities. The investor is willing to sell but not actively planning to sell. In general, available-for-sale securities are reported at fair value on the balance sheet.
- Average fixed cost** Total fixed cost divided by quantity produced.
- Average life** See *weighted average life*.
- Average product** Measures the productivity of inputs on average and is calculated by dividing total product by the total number of units for a given input that is used to generate that output.
- Average revenue** Total revenue divided by quantity sold.
- Average total cost** Total cost divided by quantity produced.
- Average variable cost** Total variable cost divided by quantity produced.
- Back simulation** Another term for the historical method of estimating VaR. This term is somewhat misleading in that the method involves not a *simulation* of the past but rather what *actually happened* in the past, sometimes adjusted to reflect the fact that a different portfolio may have existed in the past than is planned for the future.
- Back-testing** With reference to portfolio strategies, the application of a strategy's portfolio selection rules to historical data to assess what would have been the strategy's historical performance.

- Backup lines of credit** A type of credit enhancement provided by a bank to an issuer of commercial paper to ensure that the issuer will have access to sufficient liquidity to repay maturing commercial paper if issuing new paper is not a viable option.
- Balance of payments** A double-entry bookkeeping system that summarizes a country's economic transactions with the rest of the world for a particular period of time, typically a calendar quarter or year.
- Balance of trade deficit** When the domestic economy is spending more on foreign goods and services than foreign economies are spending on domestic goods and services.
- Balance sheet** The financial statement that presents an entity's current financial position by disclosing resources the entity controls (its assets) and the claims on those resources (its liabilities and equity claims), as of a particular point in time (the date of the balance sheet). Also called *statement of financial position* or *statement of financial condition*.
- Balance sheet ratios** Financial ratios involving balance sheet items only.
- Balanced** With respect to a government budget, one in which spending and revenues (taxes) are equal.
- Balloon payment** Large payment required at maturity to retire a bond's outstanding principal amount.
- Bank discount basis** A quoting convention that annualizes, on a 360-day year, the discount as a percentage of face value.
- Bar chart** A price chart with four bits of data for each time interval—the high, low, opening, and closing prices. A vertical line connects the high and low. A cross-hatch left indicates the opening price and a cross-hatch right indicates the close.
- Barter economy** An economy where economic agents as households, corporations, and governments “pay” for goods and services with another good or service.
- Base rates** The reference rate on which a bank bases lending rates to all other customers.
- Basic EPS** Net earnings available to common shareholders (i.e., net income minus preferred dividends) divided by the weighted average number of common shares outstanding.
- Basis point** Used in stating yield spreads, one basis point equals one-hundredth of a percentage point, or 0.01%.
- Basket of listed depository receipts** An exchange-traded fund (ETF) that represents a portfolio of depository receipts.
- Bearer bonds** Bonds for which ownership is not recorded; only the clearing system knows who the bond owner is.
- Behavioral finance** A field of finance that examines the psychological variables that affect and often distort the investment decision making of investors, analysts, and portfolio managers.
- Behind the market** Said of prices specified in orders that are worse than the best current price; e.g., for a limit buy order, a limit price below the best bid.
- Benchmark** A comparison portfolio; a point of reference or comparison.
- Benchmark issue** The latest sovereign bond issue for a given maturity. It serves as a benchmark against which to compare bonds that have the same features but that are issued by another type of issuer.
- Benchmark rate** Typically the yield-to-maturity on a government bond having the same, or close to the same, time-to-maturity.
- Benchmark spread** The yield spread over a specific benchmark, usually measured in basis points.
- Bermuda-style** Said of an option contract that can be exercised on specified dates up to the option's expiration date.
- Bernoulli random variable** A random variable having the outcomes 0 and 1.
- Bernoulli trial** An experiment that can produce one of two outcomes.
- Best bid** The highest bid in the market.
- Best effort offering** An offering of a security using an investment bank in which the investment bank, as agent for the issuer, promises to use its best efforts to sell the offering but does not guarantee that a specific amount will be sold.
- Best-in-class** An ESG implementation approach that seeks to identify the most favorable companies in an industry based on ESG considerations.
- Best offer** The lowest offer (ask price) in the market.
- Beta** A measure of the sensitivity of a given investment or portfolio to movements in the overall market.
- Bid** The price at which a dealer or trader is willing to buy an asset, typically qualified by a maximum quantity.
- Bid-ask spread** The difference between the prices at which dealers will buy from a customer (bid) and sell to a customer (offer or ask). It is often used as an indicator of liquidity.
- Bid-offer spread** The difference between the prices at which dealers will buy from a customer (bid) and sell to a customer (offer or ask). It is often used as an indicator of liquidity.
- Bid size** The maximum quantity of an asset that pertains to a specific bid price from a trader.
- Big Data** The vast amount of data being generated by industry, governments, individuals, and electronic devices that arises from both traditional and non-traditional data sources.
- Bilateral loan** A loan from a single lender to a single borrower.
- Binomial model** A model for pricing options in which the underlying price can move to only one of two possible new prices.
- Binomial random variable** The number of successes in n Bernoulli trials for which the probability of success is constant for all trials and the trials are independent.
- Binomial tree** The graphical representation of a model of asset price dynamics in which, at each period, the asset moves up with probability p or down with probability $(1 - p)$.
- Bitcoin** A cryptocurrency using blockchain technology that was created in 2009.
- Block brokers** A broker (agent) that provides brokerage services for large-size trades.
- Blockchain** A type of digital ledger in which information is recorded sequentially and then linked together and secured using cryptographic methods.
- Blue chip** Widely held large market capitalization companies that are considered financially sound and are leaders in their respective industry or local stock market.
- Bollinger Bands** A price-based technical analysis indicator consisting of a moving average plus a higher line representing the moving average plus a set number of standard deviations from average price (for the same number of periods as used to calculate the moving average) and a lower line that is a moving average minus the same number of standard deviations.
- Bond** Contractual agreement between the issuer and the bondholders.

- Bond equivalent yield** A calculation of yield that is annualized using the ratio of 365 to the number of days to maturity. Bond equivalent yield allows for the restatement and comparison of securities with different compounding periods.
- Bond indenture** The governing legal credit agreement, typically incorporated by reference in the prospectus. Also called *trust deed*.
- Bond market vigilantes** Bond market participants who might reduce their demand for long-term bonds, thus pushing up their yields.
- Bond yield plus risk premium approach** An estimate of the cost of common equity that is produced by summing the before-tax cost of debt and a risk premium that captures the additional yield on a company's stock relative to its bonds. The additional yield is often estimated using historical spreads between bond yields and stock yields.
- Bonus issue of shares** A type of dividend in which a company distributes additional shares of its common stock to shareholders instead of cash.
- Book building** Investment bankers' process of compiling a "book" or list of indications of interest to buy part of an offering.
- Book value** The net amount shown for an asset or liability on the balance sheet; book value may also refer to the company's excess of total assets over total liabilities. Also called *carrying value*.
- Boom** An expansionary phase characterized by economic growth "testing the limits" of the economy.
- Bottom-up analysis** With reference to investment selection processes, an approach that involves selection from all securities within a specified investment universe, i.e., without prior narrowing of the universe on the basis of macroeconomic or overall market considerations.
- Break point** In the context of the weighted average cost of capital (WACC), a break point is the amount of capital at which the cost of one or more of the sources of capital changes, leading to a change in the WACC.
- Breakeven point** The number of units produced and sold at which the company's net income is zero (Revenues = Total cost); in the case of perfect competition, the quantity at which price, average revenue, and marginal revenue equal average total cost.
- Bridge financing** Interim financing that provides funds until permanent financing can be arranged.
- Broad money** Encompasses narrow money plus the entire range of liquid assets that can be used to make purchases.
- Broker** 1) An agent who executes orders to buy or sell securities on behalf of a client in exchange for a commission. 2) See *futures commission merchants*.
- Broker-dealer** A financial intermediary (often a company) that may function as a principal (dealer) or as an agent (broker) depending on the type of trade.
- Brokered market** A market in which brokers arrange trades among their clients.
- Budget surplus/deficit** The difference between government revenue and expenditure for a stated fixed period of time.
- Business risk** The risk associated with operating earnings. Operating earnings are uncertain because total revenues and many of the expenditures contributed to produce those revenues are uncertain.
- Buy-side firm** An investment management company or other investor that uses the services of brokers or dealers (i.e., the client of the sell side firms).
- Buyback** A transaction in which a company buys back its own shares. Unlike stock dividends and stock splits, share repurchases use corporate cash.
- Buyout fund** A fund that buys all the shares of a public company so that, in effect, the company becomes private.
- Call** An option that gives the holder the right to buy an underlying asset from another party at a fixed price over a specific period of time.
- Call market** A market in which trades occur only at a particular time and place (i.e., when the market is called).
- Call money rate** The interest rate that buyers pay for their margin loan.
- Call option** An option that gives the holder the right to buy an underlying asset from another party at a fixed price over a specific period of time.
- Call protection** The time during which the issuer of the bond is not allowed to exercise the call option.
- Callable bond** A bond containing an embedded call option that gives the issuer the right to buy the bond back from the investor at specified prices on pre-determined dates.
- Callable common shares** Shares that give the issuing company the option (or right), but not the obligation, to buy back the shares from investors at a call price that is specified when the shares are originally issued.
- Candlestick chart** A price chart with four bits of data for each time interval. A candle indicates the opening and closing price for the interval. The body of the candle is shaded if the opening price was higher than the closing price, and the body is clear if the opening price was lower than the closing price. Vertical lines known as wicks or shadows extend from the top and bottom of the candle to indicate the high and the low prices for the interval.
- Cannibalization** Cannibalization occurs when an investment takes customers and sales away from another part of the company.
- Capacity** The ability of the borrower to make its debt payments on time.
- Capital account** A component of the balance of payments account that measures transfers of capital.
- Capital allocation line** (CAL) A graph line that describes the combinations of expected return and standard deviation of return available to an investor from combining the optimal portfolio of risky assets with the risk-free asset.
- Capital asset pricing model** (CAPM) An equation describing the expected return on any asset (or portfolio) as a linear function of its beta relative to the market portfolio.
- Capital budgeting** The allocation of funds to relatively long-range projects or investments.
- Capital consumption allowance** A measure of the wear and tear (depreciation) of the capital stock that occurs in the production of goods and services.
- Capital deepening investment** Increases the stock of capital relative to labor.
- Capital expenditure** Expenditure on physical capital (fixed assets).
- Capital-indexed bonds** Type of index-linked bond. The coupon rate is fixed but is applied to a principal amount that increases in line with increases in the index during the bond's life.
- Capital lease** See *finance lease*.
- Capital market expectations** An investor's expectations concerning the risk and return prospects of asset classes.

- Capital market line (CML)** The line with an intercept point equal to the risk-free rate that is tangent to the efficient frontier of risky assets; represents the efficient frontier when a risk-free asset is available for investment.
- Capital market securities** Securities with maturities at issuance longer than one year.
- Capital markets** Financial markets that trade securities of longer duration, such as bonds and equities.
- Capital rationing** A capital rationing environment assumes that the company has a fixed amount of funds to invest.
- Capital restrictions** Controls placed on foreigners' ability to own domestic assets and/or domestic residents' ability to own foreign assets.
- Capital stock** The accumulated amount of buildings, machinery, and equipment used to produce goods and services.
- Capital structure** The mix of debt and equity that a company uses to finance its business; a company's specific mixture of long-term financing.
- Captive finance subsidiary** A wholly-owned subsidiary of a company that is established to provide financing of the sales of the parent company.
- Carry** The net of the costs and benefits of holding, storing, or "carrying" an asset.
- Carrying amount** The amount at which an asset or liability is valued according to accounting principles.
- Carrying value** The net amount shown for an asset or liability on the balance sheet; book value may also refer to the company's excess of total assets over total liabilities. For a bond, the purchase price plus (or minus) the amortized amount of the discount (or premium).
- Cartel** Participants in collusive agreements that are made openly and formally.
- Cash collateral account** Form of external credit enhancement whereby the issuer immediately borrows the credit-enhancement amount and then invests that amount, usually in highly rated short-term commercial paper.
- Cash conversion cycle** A financial metric that measures the length of time required for a company to convert cash invested in its operations to cash received as a result of its operations; equal to days of inventory on hand + days of sales outstanding – number of days of payables. Also called *net operating cycle*.
- Cash flow additivity principle** The principle that dollar amounts indexed at the same point in time are additive.
- Cash flow from operating activities** The net amount of cash provided from operating activities.
- Cash flow from operations** The net amount of cash provided from operating activities.
- Cash flow yield** The internal rate of return on a series of cash flows.
- Cash market securities** Money market securities settled on a "same day" or "cash settlement" basis.
- Cash markets** See *spot markets*.
- Cash prices** See *spot prices*.
- Cash-settled forwards** See *non-deliverable forwards*.
- CBOE Volatility Index** A measure of near-term market volatility as conveyed by S&P 500 stock index option prices.
- CD equivalent yield** A yield on a basis comparable to the quoted yield on an interest-bearing money market instrument that pays interest on a 360-day basis; the annualized holding period yield, assuming a 360-day year.
- Central bank funds market** The market in which deposit-taking banks that have an excess reserve with their national central bank can loan money to banks that need funds for maturities ranging from overnight to one year. Called the Federal or Fed funds market in the United States.
- Central bank funds rates** Interest rates at which central bank funds are bought (borrowed) and sold (lent) for maturities ranging from overnight to one year. Called Federal or Fed funds rates in the United States.
- Central banks** The dominant bank in a country, usually with official or semi-official governmental status.
- Certificate of deposit** An instrument that represents a specified amount of funds on deposit with a bank for a specified maturity and interest rate. It is issued in small or large denominations, and can be negotiable or non-negotiable.
- Change in polarity principle** A tenet of technical analysis that once a support level is breached, it becomes a resistance level. The same holds true for resistance levels; once breached, they become support levels.
- Change of control put** A covenant giving bondholders the right to require the issuer to buy back their debt, often at par or at some small premium to par value, in the event that the borrower is acquired.
- Character** The quality of a debt issuer's management.
- Classified balance sheet** A balance sheet organized so as to group together the various assets and liabilities into subcategories (e.g., current and noncurrent).
- Clawback** A requirement that the general partner return any funds distributed as incentive fees until the limited partners have received back their initial investment and a percentage of the total profit.
- Clearing** The process by which the exchange verifies the execution of a transaction and records the participants' identities.
- Clearing instructions** Instructions that indicate how to arrange the final settlement ("clearing") of a trade.
- Clearinghouse** An entity associated with a futures market that acts as middleman between the contracting parties and guarantees to each party the performance of the other.
- Closed economy** An economy that does not trade with other countries; an *autarkic economy*.
- Closed-end fund** A mutual fund in which no new investment money is accepted. New investors invest by buying existing shares, and investors in the fund liquidate by selling their shares to other investors.
- Code of ethics** An established guide that communicates an organization's values and overall expectations regarding member behavior. A code of ethics serves as a general guide for how community members should act.
- Coefficient of variation (CV)** The ratio of a set of observations' standard deviation to the observations' mean value.
- Coincident economic indicators** Turning points that are usually close to those of the overall economy; they are believed to have value for identifying the economy's present state.
- Collateral manager** Buys and sells debt obligations for and from the CDO's portfolio of assets (i.e., the collateral) to generate sufficient cash flows to meet the obligations to the CDO bondholders.
- Collateral trust bonds** Bonds secured by securities such as common shares, other bonds, or other financial assets.
- Collateralized bond obligations** A structured asset-backed security that is collateralized by a pool of bonds.

- Collateralized debt obligation** Generic term used to describe a security backed by a diversified pool of one or more debt obligations.
- Collateralized loan obligations** A structured asset-backed security that is collateralized by a pool of loans.
- Collateralized mortgage obligation** A security created through the securitization of a pool of mortgage-related products (mortgage pass-through securities or pools of loans).
- Collaterals** Assets or financial guarantees underlying a debt obligation that are above and beyond the issuer's promise to pay.
- Combination** A listing in which the order of the listed items does not matter.
- Commercial paper** A short-term, negotiable, unsecured promissory note that represents a debt obligation of the issuer.
- Committed capital** The amount that the limited partners have agreed to provide to the private equity fund.
- Committed lines of credit** A bank commitment to extend credit up to a pre-specified amount; the commitment is considered a short-term liability and is usually in effect for 364 days (one day short of a full year).
- Commodity swap** A swap in which the underlying is a commodity such as oil, gold, or an agricultural product.
- Common market** Level of economic integration that incorporates all aspects of the customs union and extends it by allowing free movement of factors of production among members.
- Common shares** A type of security that represent an ownership interest in a company.
- Common-size analysis** The restatement of financial statement items using a common denominator or reference item that allows one to identify trends and major differences; an example is an income statement in which all items are expressed as a percent of revenue.
- Common stock** See *common shares*.
- Company analysis** Analysis of an individual company.
- Comparable company** A company that has similar business risk; usually in the same industry and preferably with a single line of business.
- Comparative advantage** A country's ability to produce a good or service at a lower relative cost, or opportunity cost, than its trading partner.
- Competitive strategy** A company's plans for responding to the threats and opportunities presented by the external environment.
- Complements** Goods that tend to be used together; technically, two goods whose cross-price elasticity of demand is negative.
- Complete markets** Informally, markets in which the variety of distinct securities traded is so broad that any desired payoff in a future state-of-the-world is achievable.
- Completed contract** A method of revenue recognition in which the company does not recognize any revenue until the contract is completed; used particularly in long-term construction contracts.
- Component cost of capital** The rate of return required by suppliers of capital for an individual source of a company's funding, such as debt or equity.
- Compounding** The process of accumulating interest on interest.
- Comprehensive income** The change in equity of a business enterprise during a period from nonowner sources; includes all changes in equity during a period except those resulting from investments by owners and distributions to owners; comprehensive income equals net income plus other comprehensive income.
- Conditional expected value** The expected value of a stated event given that another event has occurred.
- Conditional probability** The probability of an event given (conditioned on) another event.
- Conditional variances** The variance of one variable, given the outcome of another.
- Consistent** With reference to estimators, describes an estimator for which the probability of estimates close to the value of the population parameter increases as sample size increases.
- Constant-yield price trajectory** A graph that illustrates the change in the price of a fixed-income bond over time assuming no change in yield-to-maturity. The trajectory shows the "pull to par" effect on the price of a bond trading at a premium or a discount to par value.
- Constituent securities** With respect to an index, the individual securities within an index.
- Consumer surplus** The difference between the value that a consumer places on units purchased and the amount of money that was required to pay for them.
- Contingency provision** Clause in a legal document that allows for some action if a specific event or circumstance occurs.
- Contingent claims** Derivatives in which the payoffs occur if a specific event occurs; generally referred to as options.
- Contingent convertible bonds** Bonds that automatically convert into equity if a specific event or circumstance occurs, such as the issuer's equity capital falling below the minimum requirement set by the regulators. Also called *CoCos*.
- Continuation patterns** A type of pattern used in technical analysis to predict the resumption of a market trend that was in place prior to the formation of a pattern.
- Continuous random variable** A random variable for which the range of possible outcomes is the real line (all real numbers between $-\infty$ and $+\infty$ or some subset of the real line).
- Continuous time** Time thought of as advancing in extremely small increments.
- Continuous trading market** A market in which trades can be arranged and executed any time the market is open.
- Continuously compounded return** The natural logarithm of 1 plus the holding period return, or equivalently, the natural logarithm of the ending price over the beginning price.
- Contra account** An account that offsets another account.
- Contract rate** See *mortgage rate*.
- Contraction** The period of a business cycle after the peak and before the trough; often called a *recession* or, if exceptionally severe, called a *depression*.
- Contraction risk** The risk that when interest rates decline, the security will have a shorter maturity than was anticipated at the time of purchase because borrowers refinance at the new, lower interest rates.
- Contractionary** Tending to cause the real economy to contract.
- Contractionary fiscal policy** A fiscal policy that has the objective to make the real economy contract.
- Contracts for differences** See *non-deliverable forwards*.
- Contribution margin** The amount available for fixed costs and profit after paying variable costs; revenue minus variable costs.
- Controlling shareholders** A particular shareholder or block of shareholders holding a percentage of shares that gives them significant voting power.

- Convenience yield** A non-monetary advantage of holding an asset.
- Conventional bond** See *plain vanilla bond*.
- Conventional cash flow** A conventional cash flow pattern is one with an initial outflow followed by a series of inflows.
- Convergence** The tendency for differences in output per capita across countries to diminish over time; in technical analysis, a term that describes the case when an indicator moves in the same manner as the security being analyzed.
- Conversion price** For a convertible bond, the price per share at which the bond can be converted into shares.
- Conversion ratio** For a convertible bond, the number of common shares that each bond can be converted into.
- Conversion value** For a convertible bond, the current share price multiplied by the conversion ratio.
- Convertible bond** Bond that gives the bondholder the right to exchange the bond for a specified number of common shares in the issuing company.
- Convertible preference shares** A type of equity security that entitles shareholders to convert their shares into a specified number of common shares.
- Convexity adjustment** For a bond, one half of the annual or approximate convexity statistic multiplied by the change in the yield-to-maturity squared.
- Core inflation** The inflation rate calculated based on a price index of goods and services except food and energy.
- Corporate governance** The system of internal controls and procedures by which individual companies are managed.
- Correlation** A number between -1 and $+1$ that measures the comovement (linear association) between two random variables.
- Correlation coefficient** A number between -1 and $+1$ that measures the consistency or tendency for two investments to act in a similar way. It is used to determine the effect on portfolio risk when two assets are combined.
- Cost averaging** The periodic investment of a fixed amount of money.
- Cost of capital** The rate of return that suppliers of capital require as compensation for their contribution of capital.
- Cost of carry** See *carry*.
- Cost of debt** The cost of debt financing to a company, such as when it issues a bond or takes out a bank loan.
- Cost of preferred stock** The cost to a company of issuing preferred stock; the dividend yield that a company must commit to pay preferred stockholders.
- Cost-push** Type of inflation in which rising costs, usually wages, compel businesses to raise prices generally.
- Cost recovery method** A method of revenue recognition in which the seller does not report any profit until the cash amounts paid by the buyer—including principal and interest on any financing from the seller—are greater than all the seller's costs for the merchandise sold.
- Cost structure** The mix of a company's variable costs and fixed costs.
- Counterparty risk** The risk that the other party to a contract will fail to honor the terms of the contract.
- Coupon rate** The interest rate promised in a contract; this is the rate used to calculate the periodic interest payments.
- Cournot assumption** Assumption in which each firm determines its profit-maximizing production level assuming that the other firms' output will not change.
- Covariance** A measure of the co-movement (linear association) between two random variables.
- Covariance matrix** A matrix or square array whose entries are covariances; also known as a variance–covariance matrix.
- Covenants** The terms and conditions of lending agreements that the issuer must comply with; they specify the actions that an issuer is obligated to perform (affirmative covenant) or prohibited from performing (negative covenant).
- Covered bond** Debt obligation secured by a segregated pool of assets called the cover pool. The issuer must maintain the value of the cover pool. In the event of default, bondholders have recourse against both the issuer and the cover pool.
- Credit analysis** The evaluation of credit risk; the evaluation of the creditworthiness of a borrower or counterparty.
- Credit curve** A curve showing the relationship between time to maturity and yield spread for an issuer with comparable bonds of various maturities outstanding, usually upward sloping.
- Credit default swap (CDS)** A type of credit derivative in which one party, the credit protection buyer who is seeking credit protection against a third party, makes a series of regularly scheduled payments to the other party, the credit protection seller. The seller makes no payments until a credit event occurs.
- Credit derivatives** A contract in which one party has the right to claim a payment from another party in the event that a specific credit event occurs over the life of the contract.
- Credit enhancements** Provisions that may be used to reduce the credit risk of a bond issue.
- Credit-linked coupon bond** Bond for which the coupon changes when the bond's credit rating changes.
- Credit-linked note (CLN)** Fixed-income security in which the holder of the security has the right to withhold payment of the full amount due at maturity if a credit event occurs.
- Credit migration risk** The risk that a bond issuer's creditworthiness deteriorates, or migrates lower, leading investors to believe the risk of default is higher. Also called *downgrade risk*.
- Credit risk** The risk of loss caused by a counterparty's or debtor's failure to make a promised payment. Also called *default risk*.
- Credit scoring model** A statistical model used to classify borrowers according to creditworthiness.
- Credit spread option** An option on the yield spread on a bond.
- Credit tranching** A structure used to redistribute the credit risk associated with the collateral; a set of bond classes created to allow investors a choice in the amount of credit risk that they prefer to bear.
- Credit-worthiness** The perceived ability of the borrower to pay what is owed on the borrowing in a timely manner; it represents the ability of a company to withstand adverse impacts on its cash flows.
- Cross-default provisions** Provisions whereby events of default such as non-payment of interest on one bond trigger default on all outstanding debt; implies the same default probability for all issues.
- Cross-price elasticity of demand** The percentage change in quantity demanded for a given percentage change in the price of another good; the responsiveness of the demand for Product A that is associated with the change in price of Product B.
- Cross-sectional analysis** Analysis that involves comparisons across individuals in a group over a given time period or at a given point in time.
- Cross-sectional data** Observations over individual units at a point in time, as opposed to time-series data.

- Crossing networks** Trading systems that match buyers and sellers who are willing to trade at prices obtained from other markets.
- Crowding out** The thesis that government borrowing may divert private sector investment from taking place.
- Cryptocurrency** An electronic medium of exchange that lacks physical form.
- Cryptography** An algorithmic process to encrypt data, making the data unusable if received by unauthorized parties.
- Cumulative distribution function** A function giving the probability that a random variable is less than or equal to a specified value.
- Cumulative preference shares** Preference shares for which any dividends that are not paid accrue and must be paid in full before dividends on common shares can be paid.
- Cumulative relative frequency** For data grouped into intervals, the fraction of total observations that are less than the value of the upper limit of a stated interval.
- Cumulative voting** A voting process whereby each shareholder can accumulate and vote all his or her shares for a single candidate in an election, as opposed to having to allocate their voting rights evenly among all candidates.
- Currencies** Monies issued by national monetary authorities.
- Currency option bonds** Bonds that give the bondholder the right to choose the currency in which he or she wants to receive interest payments and principal repayments.
- Currency swap** A swap in which each party makes interest payments to the other in different currencies.
- Current account** A component of the balance of payments account that measures the flow of goods and services.
- Current assets** Assets that are expected to be consumed or converted into cash in the near future, typically one year or less. *Also called liquid assets.*
- Current cost** With reference to assets, the amount of cash or cash equivalents that would have to be paid to buy the same or an equivalent asset today; with reference to liabilities, the undiscounted amount of cash or cash equivalents that would be required to settle the obligation today.
- Current government spending** With respect to government expenditures, spending on goods and services that are provided on a regular, recurring basis including health, education, and defense.
- Current liabilities** Short-term obligations, such as accounts payable, wages payable, or accrued liabilities, that are expected to be settled in the near future, typically one year or less.
- Current ratio** A liquidity ratio calculated as current assets divided by current liabilities.
- Current yield** The sum of the coupon payments received over the year divided by the flat price; also called the *income or interest yield or running yield.*
- Curve duration** The sensitivity of the bond price (or the market value of a financial asset or liability) with respect to a benchmark yield curve.
- Customs union** Extends the free trade area (FTA) by not only allowing free movement of goods and services among members, but also creating a common trade policy against nonmembers.
- CVaR** Conditional VaR, a tail loss measure. The weighted average of all loss outcomes in the statistical distribution that exceed the VaR loss.
- Cyclical** See *cyclical companies.*
- Cyclical companies** Companies with sales and profits that regularly expand and contract with the business cycle or state of economy.
- Daily settlement** See *mark to market* and *marking to market.*
- Dark pools** Alternative trading systems that do not display the orders that their clients send to them.
- Data mining** The practice of determining a model by extensive searching through a dataset for statistically significant patterns. Also called *data snooping.*
- Data science** An interdisciplinary field that brings computer science, statistics, and other disciplines together to analyze and produce insights from Big Data.
- Data snooping** See *data mining.*
- Day order** An order that is good for the day on which it is submitted. If it has not been filled by the close of business, the order expires unfilled.
- Day's sales outstanding** Estimate of the average number of days it takes to collect on credit accounts.
- Days in receivables** Estimate of the average number of days it takes to collect on credit accounts.
- Days of inventory on hand** An activity ratio equal to the number of days in the period divided by inventory turnover over the period.
- Dead cross** A technical analysis term that describes a situation where a short-term moving average crosses from above a longer-term moving average to below it; this movement is considered bearish.
- Dealers** A financial intermediary that acts as a principal in trades.
- Dealing securities** Securities held by banks or other financial intermediaries for trading purposes.
- Debentures** Type of bond that can be secured or unsecured.
- Debt incurrence test** A financial covenant made in conjunction with existing debt that restricts a company's ability to incur additional debt at the same seniority based on one or more financial tests or conditions.
- Debt-rating approach** A method for estimating a company's before-tax cost of debt based upon the yield on comparably rated bonds for maturities that closely match that of the company's existing debt.
- Debt-to-assets ratio** A solvency ratio calculated as total debt divided by total assets.
- Debt-to-capital ratio** A solvency ratio calculated as total debt divided by total debt plus total shareholders' equity.
- Debt-to-equity ratio** A solvency ratio calculated as total debt divided by total shareholders' equity.
- Declaration date** The day that the corporation issues a statement declaring a specific dividend.
- Decreasing returns to scale** When a production process leads to increases in output that are proportionately smaller than the increase in inputs.
- Deductible temporary differences** Temporary differences that result in a reduction of or deduction from taxable income in a future period when the balance sheet item is recovered or settled.
- Deep learning** Machine learning using neural networks with many hidden layers.
- Deep learning nets** Machine learning using neural networks with many hidden layers.
- Default probability** The probability that a borrower defaults or fails to meet its obligation to make full and timely payments of principal and interest, according to the terms of the debt security. Also called *default risk.*

- Default risk** The probability that a borrower defaults or fails to meet its obligation to make full and timely payments of principal and interest, according to the terms of the debt security. Also called *default probability*.
- Default risk premium** An extra return that compensates investors for the possibility that the borrower will fail to make a promised payment at the contracted time and in the contracted amount.
- Defensive companies** Companies with sales and profits that have little sensitivity to the business cycle or state of the economy.
- Defensive interval ratio** A liquidity ratio that estimates the number of days that an entity could meet cash needs from liquid assets; calculated as (cash + short-term marketable investments + receivables) divided by daily cash expenditures.
- Deferred coupon bond** Bond that pays no coupons for its first few years but then pays a higher coupon than it otherwise normally would for the remainder of its life. Also called *split coupon bond*.
- Deferred income** A liability account for money that has been collected for goods or services that have not yet been delivered; payment received in advance of providing a good or service.
- Deferred revenue** A liability account for money that has been collected for goods or services that have not yet been delivered; payment received in advance of providing a good or service.
- Deferred tax assets** A balance sheet asset that arises when an excess amount is paid for income taxes relative to accounting profit. The taxable income is higher than accounting profit and income tax payable exceeds tax expense. The company expects to recover the difference during the course of future operations when tax expense exceeds income tax payable.
- Deferred tax liabilities** A balance sheet liability that arises when a deficit amount is paid for income taxes relative to accounting profit. The taxable income is less than the accounting profit and income tax payable is less than tax expense. The company expects to eliminate the liability over the course of future operations when income tax payable exceeds tax expense.
- Defined benefit pension plans** Plans in which the company promises to pay a certain annual amount (defined benefit) to the employee after retirement. The company bears the investment risk of the plan assets.
- Defined contribution pension plans** Individual accounts to which an employee and typically the employer makes contributions, generally on a tax-advantaged basis. The amounts of contributions are defined at the outset, but the future value of the benefit is unknown. The employee bears the investment risk of the plan assets.
- Deflation** Negative inflation.
- Degree of confidence** The probability that a confidence interval includes the unknown population parameter.
- Degree of financial leverage** (DFL) The ratio of the percentage change in net income to the percentage change in operating income; the sensitivity of the cash flows available to owners when operating income changes.
- Degree of operating leverage** (DOL) The ratio of the percentage change in operating income to the percentage change in units sold; the sensitivity of operating income to changes in units sold.
- Degree of total leverage** The ratio of the percentage change in net income to the percentage change in units sold; the sensitivity of the cash flows to owners to changes in the number of units produced and sold.
- Degrees of freedom (df)** The number of independent observations used.
- Delta** The sensitivity of the derivative price to a small change in the value of the underlying asset.
- Demand curve** Graph of the inverse demand function. A graph showing the demand relation, either the highest quantity willingly purchased at each price or the highest price willingly paid for each quantity.
- Demand function** A relationship that expresses the quantity demanded of a good or service as a function of own-price and possibly other variables.
- Demand-pull** Type of inflation in which increasing demand raises prices generally, which then are reflected in a business's costs as workers demand wage hikes to catch up with the rising cost of living.
- Demand shock** A typically unexpected disturbance to demand, such as an unexpected interruption in trade or transportation.
- Dependent** With reference to events, the property that the probability of one event occurring depends on (is related to) the occurrence of another event.
- Depository bank** A bank that raises funds from depositors and other investors and lends it to borrowers.
- Depository institutions** Commercial banks, savings and loan banks, credit unions, and similar institutions that raise funds from depositors and other investors and lend it to borrowers.
- Depository receipt** A security that trades like an ordinary share on a local exchange and represents an economic interest in a foreign company.
- Depreciation** The process of systematically allocating the cost of long-lived (tangible) assets to the periods during which the assets are expected to provide economic benefits.
- Depression** See *contraction*.
- Derivative pricing rule** A pricing rule used by crossing networks in which a price is taken (derived) from the price that is current in the asset's primary market.
- Derivatives** A financial instrument whose value depends on the value of some underlying asset or factor (e.g., a stock price, an interest rate, or exchange rate).
- Descriptive statistics** The study of how data can be summarized effectively.
- Development capital** Minority equity investments in more-mature companies that are seeking capital to expand or restructure operations, enter new markets, or finance major acquisitions.
- Diffuse prior** The assumption of equal prior probabilities.
- Diffusion index** Reflects the proportion of the index's components that are moving in a pattern consistent with the overall index.
- Diluted EPS** The EPS that would result if all dilutive securities were converted into common shares.
- Diluted shares** The number of shares that would be outstanding if all potentially dilutive claims on common shares (e.g., convertible debt, convertible preferred stock, and employee stock options) were exercised.
- Diminishing balance method** An accelerated depreciation method, i.e., one that allocates a relatively large proportion of the cost of an asset to the early years of the asset's useful life.

- Diminishing marginal productivity** Describes a state in which each additional unit of input produces less output than previously.
- Direct debit program** An arrangement whereby a customer authorizes a debit to a demand account; typically used by companies to collect routine payments for services.
- Direct financing leases** A type of finance lease, from a lessor perspective, where the present value of the lease payments (lease receivable) equals the carrying value of the leased asset. The revenues earned by the lessor are financing in nature.
- Direct format** With reference to the cash flow statement, a format for the presentation of the statement in which cash flow from operating activities is shown as operating cash receipts less operating cash disbursements. Also called *direct method*.
- Direct method** See *direct format*.
- Direct taxes** Taxes levied directly on income, wealth, and corporate profits.
- Direct write-off method** An approach to recognizing credit losses on customer receivables in which the company waits until such time as a customer has defaulted and only then recognizes the loss.
- Disbursement float** The amount of time between check issuance and a check's clearing back against the company's account.
- Discount** To reduce the value of a future payment in allowance for how far away it is in time; to calculate the present value of some future amount. Also, the amount by which an instrument is priced below its face (par) value.
- Discount interest** A procedure for determining the interest on a loan or bond in which the interest is deducted from the face value in advance.
- Discount margin** See *required margin*.
- Discount rates** In general, the interest rate used to calculate a present value. In the money market, however, discount rate is a specific type of quoted rate.
- Discounted cash flow models** Valuation models that estimate the intrinsic value of a security as the present value of the future benefits expected to be received from the security.
- Discouraged worker** A person who has stopped looking for a job or has given up seeking employment.
- Discrete random variable** A random variable that can take on at most a countable number of possible values.
- Discriminatory pricing rule** A pricing rule used in continuous markets in which the limit price of the order or quote that first arrived determines the trade price.
- Diseconomies of scale** Increase in cost per unit resulting from increased production.
- Dispersion** The variability around the central tendency.
- Display size** The size of an order displayed to public view.
- Distressed investing** Investing in securities of companies in financial difficulties. Private equity funds that specialize in distressed investing typically buy the debt of mature companies in financial difficulties.
- Distributed ledger** A type of database that may be shared among entities in a network.
- Distributed ledger technology** Technology based on a distributed ledger.
- Divergence** In technical analysis, a term that describes the case when an indicator moves differently from the security being analyzed.
- Diversification ratio** The ratio of the standard deviation of an equally weighted portfolio to the standard deviation of a randomly selected security.
- Dividend** A distribution paid to shareholders based on the number of shares owned.
- Dividend discount model** (DDM) A present value model that estimates the intrinsic value of an equity share based on the present value of its expected future dividends.
- Dividend discount model based approach** An approach for estimating a country's equity risk premium. The market rate of return is estimated as the sum of the dividend yield and the growth rate in dividends for a market index. Subtracting the risk-free rate of return from the estimated market return produces an estimate for the equity risk premium.
- Dividend payout ratio** The ratio of cash dividends paid to earnings for a period.
- Divisor** A number (denominator) used to determine the value of a price return index. It is initially chosen at the inception of an index and subsequently adjusted by the index provider, as necessary, to avoid changes in the index value that are unrelated to changes in the prices of its constituent securities.
- Domestic content provisions** Stipulate that some percentage of the value added or components used in production should be of domestic origin.
- Double bottoms** In technical analysis, a reversal pattern that is formed when the price reaches a low, rebounds, and then sells off back to the first low level; used to predict a change from a downtrend to an uptrend.
- Double coincidence of wants** A prerequisite to barter trades, in particular that both economic agents in the transaction want what the other is selling.
- Double declining balance depreciation** An accelerated depreciation method that involves depreciating the asset at double the straight-line rate. This rate is multiplied by the book value of the asset at the beginning of the period (a declining balance) to calculate depreciation expense.
- Double top** In technical analysis, a reversal pattern that is formed when an uptrend reverses twice at roughly the same high price level; used to predict a change from an uptrend to a downtrend.
- Down transition probability** The probability that an asset's value moves down in a model of asset price dynamics.
- Downgrade risk** The risk that a bond issuer's creditworthiness deteriorates, or migrates lower, leading investors to believe the risk of default is higher. Also called *credit migration risk*.
- Drag on liquidity** When receipts lag, creating pressure from the decreased available funds.
- Drawdown** A percentage peak-to-trough reduction in net asset value.
- Dual-currency bonds** Bonds that make coupon payments in one currency and pay the par value at maturity in another currency.
- DuPont analysis** An approach to decomposing return on investment, e.g., return on equity, as the product of other financial ratios.
- Duration** A measure of the approximate sensitivity of a security to a change in interest rates (i.e., a measure of interest rate risk).
- Duration gap** A bond's Macaulay duration minus the investment horizon.
- Dutch Book theorem** A result in probability theory stating that inconsistent probabilities create profit opportunities.
- Early repayment option** See *prepayment option*.

- Earnings per share** The amount of income earned during a period per share of common stock.
- Earnings surprise** The portion of a company's earnings that is unanticipated by investors and, according to the efficient market hypothesis, merits a price adjustment.
- Economic costs** All the remuneration needed to keep a productive resource in its current employment or to acquire the resource for productive use; the sum of total accounting costs and implicit opportunity costs.
- Economic indicator** A variable that provides information on the state of the overall economy.
- Economic loss** The amount by which accounting profit is less than normal profit.
- Economic order quantity–reorder point (EOQ–ROP)** An approach to managing inventory based on expected demand and the predictability of demand; the ordering point for new inventory is determined based on the costs of ordering and carrying inventory, such that the total cost associated with inventory is minimized.
- Economic profit** Equal to accounting profit less the implicit opportunity costs not included in total accounting costs; the difference between total revenue (TR) and total cost (TC). Also called *abnormal profit* or *supernormal profit*.
- Economic stabilization** Reduction of the magnitude of economic fluctuations.
- Economic union** Incorporates all aspects of a common market and in addition requires common economic institutions and coordination of economic policies among members.
- Economies of scale** Reduction in cost per unit resulting from increased production.
- Effective annual rate** The amount by which a unit of currency will grow in a year with interest on interest included.
- Effective annual yield (EAY)** An annualized return that accounts for the effect of interest on interest; EAY is computed by compounding 1 plus the holding period yield forward to one year, then subtracting 1.
- Effective convexity** A *curve convexity* statistic that measures the secondary effect of a change in a benchmark yield curve on a bond's price.
- Effective duration** The sensitivity of a bond's price to a change in a benchmark yield curve.
- Effective interest rate** The borrowing rate or market rate that a company incurs at the time of issuance of a bond.
- Efficient market** A market in which asset prices reflect new information quickly and rationally.
- Elastic** Said of a good or service when the magnitude of elasticity is greater than one.
- Elasticity** The percentage change in one variable for a percentage change in another variable; a general measure of how sensitive one variable is to a change in the value of another variable.
- Elasticity of demand** A measure of the sensitivity of quantity demanded to a change in a product's own price: $\% \Delta Q^D / \% \Delta P$.
- Elasticity of supply** A measure of the sensitivity of quantity supplied to a change in price: $\% \Delta Q^S / \% \Delta P$.
- Electronic communications networks** See *alternative trading systems*.
- Electronic funds transfer (EFT)** The use of computer networks to conduct financial transactions electronically.
- Elliott wave theory** A technical analysis theory that claims that the market follows regular, repeated waves or cycles.
- Embedded option** Contingency provisions that provide the issuer or the bondholders the right, but not the obligation, to take action. These options are not part of the security and cannot be traded separately.
- Empirical probability** The probability of an event estimated as a relative frequency of occurrence.
- Employed** The number of people with a job.
- Enterprise risk management** An overall assessment of a company's risk position. A centralized approach to risk management sometimes called firmwide risk management.
- Enterprise value** A measure of a company's total market value from which the value of cash and short-term investments have been subtracted.
- Equal weighting** An index weighting method in which an equal weight is assigned to each constituent security at inception.
- Equipment trust certificates** Bonds secured by specific types of equipment or physical assets.
- Equity** Assets less liabilities; the residual interest in the assets after subtracting the liabilities.
- Equity risk premium** The expected return on equities minus the risk-free rate; the premium that investors demand for investing in equities.
- Equity swap** A swap transaction in which at least one cash flow is tied to the return to an equity portfolio position, often an equity index.
- ESG** An acronym that encompasses environmental, social and governance.
- ESG incorporation** The integration of qualitative and quantitative environmental, social, and governance factors into traditional security and industry analysis; also known as *ESG integration*.
- ESG integration** The integration of qualitative and quantitative environmental, social, and governance factors into traditional security and industry analysis; also known as *ESG incorporation*.
- ESG investing** The consideration of environmental, social, and governance factors in the investment process.
- Estimate** The particular value calculated from sample observations using an estimator.
- Estimation** With reference to statistical inference, the subdivision dealing with estimating the value of a population parameter.
- Estimator** An estimation formula; the formula used to compute the sample mean and other sample statistics are examples of estimators.
- Ethical principles** Beliefs regarding what is good, acceptable, or obligatory behavior and what is bad, unacceptable, or forbidden behavior.
- Ethics** The study of moral principles or of making good choices. Ethics encompasses a set of moral principles and rules of conduct that provide guidance for our behavior.
- Eurobonds** Type of bond issued internationally, outside the jurisdiction of the country in whose currency the bond is denominated.
- European option** An option that can only be exercised on its expiration date.
- European-style** Said of an option contract that can only be exercised on the option's expiration date.
- Event** Any outcome or specified set of outcomes of a random variable.
- Ex-dividend date** The first date that a share trades without (i.e., "ex") the dividend.

- Excess kurtosis** Degree of kurtosis (fatness of tails) in excess of the kurtosis of the normal distribution.
- Exchanges** Places where traders can meet to arrange their trades.
- Exclusionary screening** An ESG implementation approach that excludes certain sectors or companies that deviate from an investor's accepted standards. Also called *negative screening* or *norms-based screening*.
- Execution instructions** Instructions that indicate how to fill an order.
- Exercise** The process of using an option to buy or sell the underlying.
- Exercise price** The fixed price at which an option holder can buy or sell the underlying. Also called *strike price*, *striking price*, or *strike*.
- Exercise value** The value obtained if an option is exercised based on current conditions. Also known as *intrinsic value*.
- Exhaustive** Covering or containing all possible outcomes.
- Expansion** The period of a business cycle after its lowest point and before its highest point.
- Expansionary** Tending to cause the real economy to grow.
- Expansionary fiscal policy** Fiscal policy aimed at achieving real economic growth.
- Expected inflation** The level of inflation that economic agents expect in the future.
- Expected loss** Default probability times Loss severity given default.
- Expected value** The probability-weighted average of the possible outcomes of a random variable.
- Expenses** Outflows of economic resources or increases in liabilities that result in decreases in equity (other than decreases because of distributions to owners); reductions in net assets associated with the creation of revenues.
- Experience curve** A curve that shows the direct cost per unit of good or service produced or delivered as a typically declining function of cumulative output.
- Export subsidy** Paid by the government to the firm when it exports a unit of a good that is being subsidized.
- Exports** Goods and services that an economy sells to other countries.
- Extension risk** The risk that when interest rates rise, fewer prepayments will occur because homeowners are reluctant to give up the benefits of a contractual interest rate that now looks low. As a result, the security becomes longer in maturity than anticipated at the time of purchase.
- Externality** An effect of a market transaction that is borne by parties other than those who transacted.
- Extra dividend** A dividend paid by a company that does not pay dividends on a regular schedule, or a dividend that supplements regular cash dividends with an extra payment.
- Extreme value theory** A branch of statistics that focuses primarily on extreme outcomes.
- Face value** The amount of cash payable by a company to the bondholders when the bonds mature; the promised payment at maturity separate from any coupon payment.
- Factor** A common or underlying element with which several variables are correlated.
- Fair value** The amount at which an asset could be exchanged, or a liability settled, between knowledgeable, willing parties in an arm's-length transaction; the price that would be received to sell an asset or paid to transfer a liability in an orderly transaction between market participants.
- Fed funds rate** The US interbank lending rate on overnight borrowings of reserves.
- Federal funds rate** The US interbank lending rate on overnight borrowings of reserves.
- Fiat money** Money that is not convertible into any other commodity.
- Fibonacci sequence** A sequence of numbers starting with 0 and 1, and then each subsequent number in the sequence is the sum of the two preceding numbers. In Elliott Wave Theory, it is believed that market waves follow patterns that are the ratios of the numbers in the Fibonacci sequence.
- Fiduciary call** A combination of a European call and a risk-free bond that matures on the option expiration day and has a face value equal to the exercise price of the call.
- FIFO method** The first in, first out, method of accounting for inventory, which matches sales against the costs of items of inventory in the order in which they were placed in inventory.
- Fill or kill** See *immediate or cancel order*.
- Finance lease** Essentially, the purchase of some asset by the buyer (lessee) that is directly financed by the seller (lessor). Also called *capital lease*.
- Financial account** A component of the balance of payments account that records investment flows.
- Financial flexibility** The ability to react and adapt to financial adversities and opportunities.
- Financial leverage** The extent to which a company can effect, through the use of debt, a proportional change in the return on common equity that is greater than a given proportional change in operating income; also, short for the financial leverage ratio.
- Financial leverage ratio** A measure of financial leverage calculated as average total assets divided by average total equity.
- Financial risk** The risk that environmental, social, or governance risk factors will result in significant costs or other losses to a company and its shareholders; the risk arising from a company's obligation to meet required payments under its financing agreements.
- Financing activities** Activities related to obtaining or repaying capital to be used in the business (e.g., equity and long-term debt).
- Fintech** Technological innovation in the design and delivery of financial services and products in the financial industry.
- Firm commitment offering** See *underwritten offering*.
- First-degree price discrimination** Where a monopolist is able to charge each customer the highest price the customer is willing to pay.
- First lien debt** Debt secured by a pledge of certain assets that could include buildings, but may also include property and equipment, licenses, patents, brands, etc.
- First mortgage debt** Debt secured by a pledge of a specific property.
- Fiscal multiplier** The ratio of a change in national income to a change in government spending.
- Fiscal policy** The use of taxes and government spending to affect the level of aggregate expenditures.
- Fisher effect** The thesis that the real rate of interest in an economy is stable over time so that changes in nominal interest rates are the result of changes in expected inflation.
- Fisher index** The geometric mean of the Laspeyres index.
- Fixed charge coverage** A solvency ratio measuring the number of times interest and lease payments are covered by operating income, calculated as (EBIT + lease payments) divided by (interest payments + lease payments).
- Fixed costs** Costs that remain at the same level regardless of a company's level of production and sales.

- Fixed-for-floating interest rate swap** An interest rate swap in which one party pays a fixed rate and the other pays a floating rate, with both sets of payments in the same currency. Also called *plain vanilla swap* or *vanilla swap*.
- Fixed rate perpetual preferred stock** Nonconvertible, non-cancellable preferred stock that has a fixed dividend rate and no maturity date.
- Flags** A technical analysis continuation pattern formed by parallel trendlines, typically over a short period.
- Flat price** The full price of a bond minus the accrued interest; also called the *quoted* or *clean* price.
- Float** In the context of customer receipts, the amount of money that is in transit between payments made by customers and the funds that are usable by the company.
- Float-adjusted market-capitalization weighting** An index weighting method in which the weight assigned to each constituent security is determined by adjusting its market capitalization for its market float.
- Float factor** An estimate of the average number of days it takes deposited checks to clear; average daily float divided by average daily deposit.
- Floater** See *floating-rate notes*.
- Floating-rate notes** A note on which interest payments are not fixed, but instead vary from period to period depending on the current level of a reference interest rate.
- Flotation cost** Fees charged to companies by investment bankers and other costs associated with raising new capital.
- Foreclosure** Allows the lender to take possession of a mortgaged property if the borrower defaults and then sell it to recover funds.
- Foreign currency reserves** Holding by the central bank of non-domestic currency deposits and non-domestic bonds.
- Foreign direct investment** Direct investment by a firm in one country (the source country) in productive assets in a foreign country (the host country).
- Foreign exchange gains (or losses)** Gains (or losses) that occur when the exchange rate changes between the investor's currency and the currency that foreign securities are denominated in.
- Foreign portfolio investment** Shorter-term investment by individuals, firms, and institutional investors (e.g., pension funds) in foreign financial instruments such as foreign stocks and foreign government bonds.
- Forward commitments** Class of derivatives that provides the ability to lock in a price to transact in the future at a previously agreed-upon price.
- Forward contract** An agreement between two parties in which one party, the buyer, agrees to buy from the other party, the seller, an underlying asset at a later date for a price established at the start of the contract.
- Forward curve** A series of forward rates, each having the same timeframe.
- Forward market** For future delivery, beyond the usual settlement time period in the cash market.
- Forward price** The fixed price or rate at which the transaction scheduled to occur at the expiration of a forward contract will take place. This price is agreed on at the initiation date of the contract.
- Forward rate** The interest rate on a bond or money market instrument traded in a forward market. A forward rate can be interpreted as an incremental, or marginal, return for extending the time-to-maturity for an additional time period.
- Forward rate agreements** A forward contract calling for one party to make a fixed interest payment and the other to make an interest payment at a rate to be determined at the contract expiration.
- Fractile** A value at or below which a stated fraction of the data lies.
- Fractional reserve banking** Banking in which reserves constitute a fraction of deposits.
- Free cash flow** The actual cash that would be available to the company's investors after making all investments necessary to maintain the company as an ongoing enterprise (also referred to as free cash flow to the firm); the internally generated funds that can be distributed to the company's investors (e.g., shareholders and bondholders) without impairing the value of the company.
- Free cash flow to equity (FCFE)** The cash flow available to a company's common shareholders after all operating expenses, interest, and principal payments have been made, and necessary investments in working and fixed capital have been made.
- Free-cash-flow-to-equity models** Valuation models based on discounting expected future free cash flow to equity.
- Free cash flow to the firm (FCFF)** The cash flow available to the company's suppliers of capital after all operating expenses have been paid and necessary investments in working capital and fixed capital have been made.
- Free float** The number of shares that are readily and freely tradable in the secondary market.
- Free trade** When there are no government restrictions on a country's ability to trade.
- Free trade areas** One of the most prevalent forms of regional integration, in which all barriers to the flow of goods and services among members have been eliminated.
- Frequency distribution** A tabular display of data summarized into a relatively small number of intervals.
- Frequency polygon** A graph of a frequency distribution obtained by drawing straight lines joining successive points representing the class frequencies.
- Full price** The price of a security with accrued interest; also called the *invoice* or *dirty* price.
- Fundamental analysis** The examination of publicly available information and the formulation of forecasts to estimate the intrinsic value of assets.
- Fundamental value** The underlying or true value of an asset based on an analysis of its qualitative and quantitative characteristics. Also called *intrinsic value*.
- Fundamental weighting** An index weighting method in which the weight assigned to each constituent security is based on its underlying company's size. It attempts to address the disadvantages of market-capitalization weighting by using measures that are independent of the constituent security's price.
- Funds of funds** Funds that hold a portfolio of hedge funds.
- Funds of hedge funds** Funds that hold a portfolio of hedge funds.
- Future value (FV)** The amount to which a payment or series of payments will grow by a stated future date.
- Futures contract** A variation of a forward contract that has essentially the same basic definition but with some additional features, such as a clearinghouse guarantee against credit losses, a daily settlement of gains and losses, and an organized electronic or floor trading facility.
- Futures price** The agreed-upon price of a futures contract.

- FX swap** The combination of a spot and a forward FX transaction.
- G-spread** The yield spread in basis points over an actual or interpolated government bond.
- Gains** Asset inflows not directly related to the ordinary activities of the business.
- Game theory** The set of tools decision makers use to incorporate responses by rival decision makers into their strategies.
- Gamma** A numerical measure of how sensitive an option's delta (the sensitivity of the derivative's price) is to a change in the value of the underlying.
- GDP deflator** A gauge of prices and inflation that measures the aggregate changes in prices across the overall economy.
- General partner** (GP) The partner that runs the business and theoretically bears unlimited liability.
- Geometric mean** A measure of central tendency computed by taking the n th root of the product of n non-negative values.
- Giffen goods** Goods that are consumed more as the price of the good rises because it is a very inferior good whose income effect overwhelms its substitution effect when price changes.
- Gilts** Bonds issued by the UK government.
- Giro system** An electronic payment system used widely in Europe and Japan.
- Global depository receipt** A depository receipt that is issued outside of the company's home country and outside of the United States.
- Global minimum-variance portfolio** The portfolio on the minimum-variance frontier with the smallest variance of return.
- Global registered share** A common share that is traded on different stock exchanges around the world in different currencies.
- Gold standard** With respect to a currency, if a currency is on the gold standard a given amount can be converted into a prespecified amount of gold.
- Golden cross** A technical analysis term that describes a situation where a short-term moving average crosses from below a longer-term moving average to above it; this movement is considered bullish.
- Good-on-close** An execution instruction specifying that an order can only be filled at the close of trading. Also called *market on close*.
- Good-on-open** An execution instruction specifying that an order can only be filled at the opening of trading.
- Good-till-cancelled order** An order specifying that it is valid until the entity placing the order has cancelled it (or, commonly, until some specified amount of time such as 60 days has elapsed, whichever comes sooner).
- Goodwill** An intangible asset that represents the excess of the purchase price of an acquired company over the value of the net assets acquired.
- Government equivalent yield** A yield that restates a yield-to-maturity based on 30/360 day-count to one based on actual/actual.
- Green bonds** A bond used in green finance whereby the proceeds are earmarked towards environmental-related products.
- Green finance** A type of finance that addresses environmental concerns while achieving economic growth.
- Grey market** The forward market for bonds about to be issued. Also called "when issued" market.
- Gross domestic product** The market value of all final goods and services produced within the economy in a given period of time (output definition) or, equivalently, the aggregate income earned by all households, all companies, and the government within the economy in a given period of time (income definition).
- Gross margin** Sales minus the cost of sales (i.e., the cost of goods sold for a manufacturing company).
- Gross profit** Sales minus the cost of sales (i.e., the cost of goods sold for a manufacturing company).
- Gross profit margin** The ratio of gross profit to revenues.
- Grouping by function** With reference to the presentation of expenses in an income statement, the grouping together of expenses serving the same function, e.g. all items that are costs of goods sold.
- Grouping by nature** With reference to the presentation of expenses in an income statement, the grouping together of expenses by similar nature, e.g., all depreciation expenses.
- Growth cyclical** A term sometimes used to describe companies that are growing rapidly on a long-term basis but that still experience above-average fluctuation in their revenues and profits over the course of a business cycle.
- Growth investors** With reference to equity investors, investors who seek to invest in high-earnings-growth companies.
- Guarantee certificate** A type of structured financial instrument that provides investors capital protection. It combines a zero-coupon bond and a call option on some underlying asset.
- Haircut** See *repo margin*.
- Harmonic mean** A type of weighted mean computed by averaging the reciprocals of the observations, then taking the reciprocal of that average.
- Head and shoulders pattern** In technical analysis, a reversal pattern that is formed in three parts: a left shoulder, head, and right shoulder; used to predict a change from an uptrend to a downtrend.
- Headline inflation** The inflation rate calculated based on the price index that includes all goods and services in an economy.
- Hedge funds** Private investment vehicles that typically use leverage, derivatives, and long and short investment strategies.
- Hedge portfolio** A hypothetical combination of the derivative and its underlying that eliminates risk.
- Held for trading** Debt or equity financial assets bought with the intention to sell them in the near term, usually less than three months; securities that a company intends to trade. Also called *trading securities*.
- Held-to-maturity** Debt (fixed-income) securities that a company intends to hold to maturity; these are presented at their original cost, updated for any amortization of discounts or premiums.
- Herding** Clustered trading that may or may not be based on information.
- Hidden order** An order that is exposed not to the public but only to the brokers or exchanges that receive it.
- High-frequency trading** A form of algorithmic trading that makes use of vast quantities of data to execute trades on ultra-high-speed networks in fractions of a second.
- High-water marks** The highest value, net of fees, that a fund has reached in history. It reflects the highest cumulative return used to calculate an incentive fee.
- Histogram** A bar chart of data that have been grouped into a frequency distribution.

- Historical cost** In reference to assets, the amount paid to purchase an asset, including any costs of acquisition and/or preparation; with reference to liabilities, the amount of proceeds received in exchange in issuing the liability.
- Historical equity risk premium approach** An estimate of a country's equity risk premium that is based upon the historical averages of the risk-free rate and the rate of return on the market portfolio.
- Historical simulation** Another term for the historical method of estimating VaR. This term is somewhat misleading in that the method involves not a *simulation* of the past but rather what *actually happened* in the past, sometimes adjusted to reflect the fact that a different portfolio may have existed in the past than is planned for the future.
- Holder-of-record date** The date that a shareholder listed on the corporation's books will be deemed to have ownership of the shares for purposes of receiving an upcoming dividend.
- Holding period return** The return that an investor earns during a specified holding period; a synonym for total return.
- Holding period yield (HPY)** The return that an investor earns during a specified holding period; holding period return with reference to a fixed-income instrument.
- Homogeneity of expectations** The assumption that all investors have the same economic expectations and thus have the same expectations of prices, cash flows, and other investment characteristics.
- Horizon yield** The internal rate of return between the total return (the sum of reinvested coupon payments and the sale price or redemption amount) and the purchase price of the bond.
- Horizontal analysis** Common-size analysis that involves comparing a specific financial statement with that statement in prior or future time periods; also, cross-sectional analysis of one company with another.
- Horizontal demand schedule** Implies that at a given price, the response in the quantity demanded is infinite.
- Hostile takeover** An attempt by one entity to acquire a company without the consent of the company's management.
- Household** A person or a group of people living in the same residence, taken as a basic unit in economic analysis.
- Human capital** The accumulated knowledge and skill that workers acquire from education, training, or life experience and the corresponding present value of future earnings to be generated by said skilled individual.
- Hurdle rate** The rate of return that must be met for a project to be accepted.
- Hypothesis** With reference to statistical inference, a statement about one or more populations.
- Hypothesis testing** With reference to statistical inference, the subdivision dealing with the testing of hypotheses about one or more populations.
- I-spread** The yield spread of a specific bond over the standard swap rate in that currency of the same tenor.
- Iceberg order** An order in which the display size is less than the order's full size.
- If-converted method** A method for accounting for the effect of convertible securities on earnings per share (EPS) that specifies what EPS would have been if the convertible securities had been converted at the beginning of the period, taking account of the effects of conversion on net income and the weighted average number of shares outstanding.
- Immediate or cancel order** An order that is valid only upon receipt by the broker or exchange. If such an order cannot be filled in part or in whole upon receipt, it cancels immediately. Also called *fill or kill*.
- Impact investing** Investing that seeks to achieve targeted social or environmental objectives along with measurable financial returns through engagement with a company or by direct investment in projects or companies.
- Impact lag** The lag associated with the result of actions affecting the economy with delay.
- Implicit price deflator for GDP** A gauge of prices and inflation that measures the aggregate changes in prices across the overall economy.
- Implied forward rates** Calculated from spot rates, an implied forward rate is a break-even reinvestment rate that links the return on an investment in a shorter-term zero-coupon bond to the return on an investment in a longer-term zero-coupon bond.
- Implied volatility** The volatility that option traders use to price an option, implied by the price of the option and a particular option-pricing model.
- Import license** Specifies the quantity of a good that can be imported into a country.
- Imports** Goods and services that a domestic economy (i.e., households, firms, and government) purchases from other countries.
- In the money** Options that, if exercised, would result in the value received being worth more than the payment required to exercise.
- Incentive fee** Fees paid to the general partner from the limited partner(s) based on realized profits.
- Income** Increases in economic benefits in the form of inflows or enhancements of assets, or decreases of liabilities that result in an increase in equity (other than increases resulting from contributions by owners).
- Income elasticity of demand** A measure of the responsiveness of demand to changes in income, defined as the percentage change in quantity demanded divided by the percentage change in income.
- Income tax paid** The actual amount paid for income taxes in the period; not a provision, but the actual cash outflow.
- Income tax payable** The income tax owed by the company on the basis of taxable income.
- Income trust** A type of equity ownership vehicle established as a trust issuing ownership shares known as units.
- Increasing marginal returns** When the marginal product of a resource increases as additional units of that input are employed.
- Increasing returns to scale** When a production process leads to increases in output that are proportionately larger than the increase in inputs.
- Incremental cash flow** The cash flow that is realized because of a decision; the changes or increments to cash flows resulting from a decision or action.
- Indenture** Legal contract that describes the form of a bond, the obligations of the issuer, and the rights of the bondholders. Also called the *trust deed*.
- Independent** With reference to events, the property that the occurrence of one event does not affect the probability of another event occurring.
- Independent projects** Independent projects are projects whose cash flows are independent of each other.

- Independently and identically distributed (IID)** With respect to random variables, the property of random variables that are independent of each other but follow the identical probability distribution.
- Index-linked bond** Bond for which coupon payments and/or principal repayment are linked to a specified index.
- Index of Leading Economic Indicators** A composite of economic variables used by analysts to predict future economic conditions.
- Indexing** An investment strategy in which an investor constructs a portfolio to mirror the performance of a specified index.
- Indifference curve** A curve representing all the combinations of two goods or attributes such that the consumer is entirely indifferent among them.
- Indirect format** With reference to cash flow statements, a format for the presentation of the statement which, in the operating cash flow section, begins with net income then shows additions and subtractions to arrive at operating cash flow. Also called *indirect method*.
- Indirect method** See *indirect format*.
- Indirect taxes** Taxes such as taxes on spending, as opposed to direct taxes.
- Industry** A group of companies offering similar products and/or services.
- Industry analysis** The analysis of a specific branch of manufacturing, service, or trade.
- Inelastic** Said of a good or service when the magnitude of elasticity is less than one. Insensitive to price changes.
- Inferior goods** A good whose consumption decreases as income increases.
- Inflation** The percentage increase in the general price level from one period to the next; a sustained rise in the overall level of prices in an economy.
- Inflation-linked bond** Type of index-linked bond that offers investors protection against inflation by linking the bond's coupon payments and/or the principal repayment to an index of consumer prices. Also called *linkers*.
- Inflation premium** An extra return that compensates investors for expected inflation.
- Inflation rate** The percentage change in a price index—that is, the speed of overall price level movements.
- Inflation Reports** A type of economic publication put out by many central banks.
- Inflation uncertainty** The degree to which economic agents view future rates of inflation as difficult to forecast.
- Information cascade** The transmission of information from those participants who act first and whose decisions influence the decisions of others.
- Information-motivated traders** Traders that trade to profit from information that they believe allows them to predict future prices.
- Informationally efficient market** A market in which asset prices reflect new information quickly and rationally.
- Initial coin offering** An unregulated process whereby companies raise capital by selling crypto tokens to investors in exchange for fiat money or another agreed-upon cryptocurrency.
- Initial margin** The amount that must be deposited in a clearinghouse account when entering into a futures contract.
- Initial margin requirement** The margin requirement on the first day of a transaction as well as on any day in which additional margin funds must be deposited.
- Initial public offering (IPO)** The first issuance of common shares to the public by a formerly private corporation.
- Input productivity** The amount of output produced by workers in a given period of time—for example, output per hour worked; measures the efficiency of labor.
- Installment method** With respect to revenue recognition, a method that specifies that the portion of the total profit of the sale that is recognized in each period is determined by the percentage of the total sales price for which the seller has received cash.
- Installment sales** With respect to revenue recognition, a method that specifies that the portion of the total profit of the sale that is recognized in each period is determined by the percentage of the total sales price for which the seller has received cash.
- Intangible assets** Assets lacking physical substance, such as patents and trademarks.
- Interbank market** The market of loans and deposits between banks for maturities ranging from overnight to one year.
- Interbank money market** The market of loans and deposits between banks for maturities ranging from overnight to one year.
- Interest** Payment for lending funds.
- Interest coverage** A solvency ratio calculated as EBIT divided by interest payments.
- Interest-only mortgage** A loan in which no scheduled principal repayment is specified for a certain number of years.
- Interest rate** A rate of return that reflects the relationship between differently dated cash flows; a discount rate.
- Interest rate swap** A swap in which the underlying is an interest rate. Can be viewed as a currency swap in which both currencies are the same and can be created as a combination of currency swaps.
- Intergenerational data mining** A form of data mining that applies information developed by previous researchers using a dataset to guide current research using the same or a related dataset.
- Intermarket analysis** A field within technical analysis that combines analysis of major categories of securities—namely, equities, bonds, currencies, and commodities—to identify market trends and possible inflections in a trend.
- Internal rate of return (IRR)** The discount rate that makes net present value equal 0; the discount rate that makes the present value of an investment's costs (outflows) equal to the present value of the investment's benefits (inflows).
- Internet of Things** A network arrangement of structures and devices whereby the objects on the network are able to interact and share information.
- Interpolated spread** The yield spread of a specific bond over the standard swap rate in that currency of the same tenor.
- Interquartile range** The difference between the third and first quartiles of a dataset.
- Interval** With reference to grouped data, a set of values within which an observation falls.
- Interval scale** A measurement scale that not only ranks data but also gives assurance that the differences between scale values are equal.
- Intrinsic value** See *exercise value*.
- Inventory blanket lien** The use of inventory as collateral for a loan. Though the lender has claim to some or all of the company's inventory, the company may still sell or use the inventory in the ordinary course of business.
- Inventory investment** Net change in business inventory.

- Inventory turnover** An activity ratio calculated as cost of goods sold divided by average inventory.
- Inverse demand function** A restatement of the demand function in which price is stated as a function of quantity.
- Inverse floater** A type of leveraged structured financial instrument. The cash flows are adjusted periodically and move in the opposite direction of changes in the reference rate.
- Investing activities** Activities which are associated with the acquisition and disposal of property, plant, and equipment; intangible assets; other long-term assets; and both long-term and short-term investments in the equity and debt (bonds and loans) issued by other companies.
- Investment banks** Financial intermediaries that provide advice to their mostly corporate clients and help them arrange transactions such as initial and seasoned securities offerings.
- Investment opportunity schedule** A graphical depiction of a company's investment opportunities ordered from highest to lowest expected return. A company's optimal capital budget is found where the investment opportunity schedule intersects with the company's marginal cost of capital.
- Investment policy statement** (IPS) A written planning document that describes a client's investment objectives and risk tolerance over a relevant time horizon, along with constraints that apply to the client's portfolio.
- Investment property** Property used to earn rental income or capital appreciation (or both).
- IRR rule** An investment decision rule that accepts projects or investments for which the IRR is greater than the opportunity cost of capital.
- January effect** Calendar anomaly that stock market returns in January are significantly higher compared to the rest of the months of the year, with most of the abnormal returns reported during the first five trading days in January. Also called *turn-of-the-year effect*.
- Joint probability** The probability of the joint occurrence of stated events.
- Joint probability function** A function giving the probability of joint occurrences of values of stated random variables.
- Just-in-time (JIT) method** Method of managing inventory that minimizes in-process inventory stocks.
- Key rate duration** A method of measuring the interest rate sensitivities of a fixed-income instrument or portfolio to shifts in key points along the yield curve.
- Keynesians** Economists who believe that fiscal policy can have powerful effects on aggregate demand, output, and employment when there is substantial spare capacity in an economy.
- Kondratieff wave** A 54-year long economic cycle postulated by Nikolai Kondratieff.
- Kurtosis** The statistical measure that indicates the combined weight of the tails of a distribution relative to the rest of the distribution.
- Labor force** The portion of the working age population (over the age of 16) that is employed or is available for work but not working (unemployed).
- Labor productivity** The quantity of goods and services (real GDP) that a worker can produce in one hour of work.
- Laddering strategy** A form of active strategy which entails scheduling maturities on a systematic basis within the investment portfolio such that investments are spread out equally over the term of the ladder.
- Lagging economic indicators** Turning points that take place later than those of the overall economy; they are believed to have value in identifying the economy's past condition.
- Laspeyres index** A price index created by holding the composition of the consumption basket constant.
- Law of demand** The principle that as the price of a good rises, buyers will choose to buy less of it, and as its price falls, they will buy more.
- Law of diminishing marginal returns** The observation that a variable factor's marginal product must eventually fall as more of it is added to a fixed amount of the other factors.
- Law of diminishing returns** The smallest output that a firm can produce such that its long run average costs are minimized.
- Law of one price** The condition in a financial market in which two equivalent financial instruments or combinations of financial instruments can sell for only one price. Equivalent to the principle that no arbitrage opportunities are possible.
- Lead underwriter** The lead investment bank in a syndicate of investment banks and broker-dealers involved in a securities underwriting.
- Leading economic indicators** Turning points that usually precede those of the overall economy; they are believed to have value for predicting the economy's future state, usually near-term.
- Legal tender** Something that must be accepted when offered in exchange for goods and services.
- Lender of last resort** An entity willing to lend money when no other entity is ready to do so.
- Leptokurtic** Describes a distribution that has fatter tails than a normal distribution.
- Lessee** The party obtaining the use of an asset through a lease.
- Lessor** The owner of an asset that grants the right to use the asset to another party.
- Letter of credit** Form of external credit enhancement whereby a financial institution provides the issuer with a credit line to reimburse any cash flow shortfalls from the assets backing the issue.
- Level of significance** The probability of a Type I error in testing a hypothesis.
- Leverage** In the context of corporate finance, leverage refers to the use of fixed costs within a company's cost structure. Fixed costs that are operating costs (such as depreciation or rent) create operating leverage. Fixed costs that are financial costs (such as interest expense) create financial leverage.
- Leveraged buyout** (LBO) A transaction whereby the target company management team converts the target to a privately held company by using heavy borrowing to finance the purchase of the target company's outstanding shares.
- Liabilities** Present obligations of an enterprise arising from past events, the settlement of which is expected to result in an outflow of resources embodying economic benefits; creditors' claims on the resources of a company.
- Life-cycle stage** The stage of the life cycle: embryonic, growth, shakeout, mature, declining.
- LIFO layer liquidation** With respect to the application of the LIFO inventory method, the liquidation of old, relatively low-priced inventory; happens when the volume of sales rises above the volume of recent purchases so that some sales are made from relatively old, low-priced inventory. Also called *LIFO liquidation*.

- LIFO method** The last in, first out, method of accounting for inventory, which matches sales against the costs of items of inventory in the reverse order the items were placed in inventory (i.e., inventory produced or acquired last are assumed to be sold first).
- LIFO reserve** The difference between the reported LIFO inventory carrying amount and the inventory amount that would have been reported if the FIFO method had been used (in other words, the FIFO inventory value less the LIFO inventory value).
- Likelihood** The probability of an observation, given a particular set of conditions.
- Limit down** A limit move in the futures market in which the price at which a transaction would be made is at or below the lower limit.
- Limit order** Instructions to a broker or exchange to obtain the best price immediately available when filling an order, but in no event accept a price higher than a specified (limit) price when buying or accept a price lower than a specified (limit) price when selling.
- Limit order book** The book or list of limit orders to buy and sell that pertains to a security.
- Limit up** A limit move in the futures market in which the price at which a transaction would be made is at or above the upper limit.
- Limitations on liens** Meant to put limits on how much secured debt an issuer can have.
- Limited partners** Partners with limited liability. Limited partnerships in hedge and private equity funds are typically restricted to investors who are expected to understand and to be able to assume the risks associated with the investments.
- Line chart** In technical analysis, a plot of price data, typically closing prices, with a line connecting the points.
- Linear interpolation** The estimation of an unknown value on the basis of two known values that bracket it, using a straight line between the two known values.
- Linear scale** A scale in which equal distances correspond to equal absolute amounts. Also called *arithmetic scale*.
- Linker** See *inflation-linked bond*.
- Liquid market** Said of a market in which traders can buy or sell with low total transaction costs when they want to trade.
- Liquidation** To sell the assets of a company, division, or subsidiary piecemeal, typically because of bankruptcy; the form of bankruptcy that allows for the orderly satisfaction of creditors' claims after which the company ceases to exist.
- Liquidity** The ability to purchase or sell an asset quickly and easily at a price close to fair market value. The ability to meet short-term obligations using assets that are the most readily converted into cash.
- Liquidity premium** An extra return that compensates investors for the risk of loss relative to an investment's fair value if the investment needs to be converted to cash quickly.
- Liquidity ratios** Financial ratios measuring the company's ability to meet its short-term obligations.
- Liquidity risk** The risk that a financial instrument cannot be purchased or sold without a significant concession in price due to the size of the market.
- Liquidity trap** A condition in which the demand for money becomes infinitely elastic (horizontal demand curve) so that injections of money into the economy will not lower interest rates or affect real activity.
- Load fund** A mutual fund in which, in addition to the annual fee, a percentage fee is charged to invest in the fund and/or for redemptions from the fund.
- Loan-to-value ratio** The ratio of a property's purchase price to the amount of its mortgage.
- Lockbox system** A payment system in which customer payments are mailed to a post office box and the banking institution retrieves and deposits these payments several times a day, enabling the company to have use of the fund sooner than in a centralized system in which customer payments are sent to the company.
- Locked limit** A condition in the futures markets in which a transaction cannot take place because the price would be beyond the limits.
- Lockup period** The minimum period before investors are allowed to make withdrawals or redeem shares from a fund.
- Logarithmic scale** A scale in which equal distances represent equal proportional changes in the underlying quantity.
- London interbank offered rate (Libor)** Collective name for multiple rates at which a select set of banks believe they could borrow unsecured funds from other banks in the London interbank market for different currencies and different borrowing periods ranging from overnight to one year.
- Long** The buyer of a derivative contract. Also refers to the position of owning a derivative.
- Long-lived assets** Assets that are expected to provide economic benefits over a future period of time, typically greater than one year. Also called *long-term assets*.
- Long position** A position in an asset or contract in which one owns the asset or has an exercisable right under the contract.
- Long-run average total cost** The curve describing average total cost when no costs are considered fixed.
- Long-term contract** A contract that spans a number of accounting periods.
- Longitudinal data** Observations on characteristic(s) of the same observational unit through time.
- Look-ahead bias** A bias caused by using information that was unavailable on the test date.
- Loss aversion** The tendency of people to dislike losses more than they like comparable gains.
- Loss severity** Portion of a bond's value (including unpaid interest) an investor loses in the event of default.
- Losses** Asset outflows not directly related to the ordinary activities of the business.
- Lower bound** The lowest possible value of an option.
- M^2** A measure of what a portfolio would have returned if it had taken on the same total risk as the market index.
- Macaulay duration** The approximate amount of time a bond would have to be held for the market discount rate at purchase to be realized if there is a single change in interest rate. It indicates the point in time when the coupon reinvestment and price effects of a change in yield-to-maturity offset each other.
- Machine learning** Diverse approaches by which computers are programmed to improve performance in specified tasks with experience.
- Macroeconomics** The branch of economics that deals with aggregate economic quantities, such as national output and national income.
- Maintenance covenants** Covenants in bank loan agreements that require the borrower to satisfy certain financial ratio tests while the loan is outstanding.

- Maintenance margin** The minimum amount that is required by a futures clearinghouse to maintain a margin account and to protect against default. Participants whose margin balances drop below the required maintenance margin must replenish their accounts.
- Maintenance margin requirement** The margin requirement on any day other than the first day of a transaction.
- Management buy-ins** Leveraged buyout in which the current management team is being replaced and the acquiring team will be involved in managing the company.
- Management buyout** (MBO) A leveraged buyout event in which a group of investors consisting primarily of the company's existing management purchase at least controlling interest of its outstanding shares. They may purchase all shares and take the company private.
- Management fee** A fee based on assets under management or committed capital, as applicable, also called a *base fee*.
- Manufacturing resource planning (MRP)** The incorporation of production planning into inventory management. A MRP analysis provides both a materials acquisition schedule and a production schedule.
- Margin** The amount of money that a trader deposits in a margin account. The term is derived from the stock market practice in which an investor borrows a portion of the money required to purchase a certain amount of stock. In futures markets, there is no borrowing so the margin is more of a down payment or performance bond.
- Margin bond** A cash deposit required by the clearinghouse from the participants to a contract to provide a credit guarantee. Also called a *performance bond*.
- Margin call** A request for the short to deposit additional funds to bring their balance up to the initial margin.
- Margin loan** Money borrowed from a broker to purchase securities.
- Marginal cost** The cost of producing an additional unit of a good.
- Marginal probability** The probability of an event *not* conditioned on another event.
- Marginal product** Measures the productivity of each unit of input and is calculated by taking the difference in total product from adding another unit of input (assuming other resource quantities are held constant).
- Marginal propensity to consume** The proportion of an additional unit of disposable income that is consumed or spent; the change in consumption for a small change in income.
- Marginal propensity to save** The proportion of an additional unit of disposable income that is saved (not spent).
- Marginal revenue** The change in total revenue divided by the change in quantity sold; simply, the additional revenue from selling one more unit.
- Marginal value curve** A curve describing the highest price consumers are willing to pay for each additional unit of a good.
- Mark to market** The revaluation of a financial asset or liability to its current market value or fair value.
- Market** A means of bringing buyers and sellers together to exchange goods and services.
- Market anomaly** Change in the price or return of a security that cannot directly be linked to current relevant information known in the market or to the release of new information into the market.
- Market bid-ask spread** The difference between the best bid and the best offer.
- Market-capitalization weighting** An index weighting method in which the weight assigned to each constituent security is determined by dividing its market capitalization by the total market capitalization (sum of the market capitalization) of all securities in the index. Also called *value weighting*.
- Market discount rate** The rate of return required by investors given the risk of the investment in a bond; also called the *required yield* or the *required rate of return*.
- Market float** The number of shares that are available to the investing public.
- Market liquidity risk** The risk that the price at which investors can actually transact—buying or selling—may differ from the price indicated in the market.
- Market model** A regression equation that specifies a linear relationship between the return on a security (or portfolio) and the return on a broad market index.
- Market multiple models** Valuation models based on share price multiples or enterprise value multiples.
- Market-on-close** An execution instruction specifying that an order can only be filled at the close of trading.
- Market order** Instructions to a broker or exchange to obtain the best price immediately available when filling an order.
- Market-oriented investors** With reference to equity investors, investors whose investment disciplines cannot be clearly categorized as value or growth.
- Market rate of interest** The rate demanded by purchases of bonds, given the risks associated with future cash payment obligations of the particular bond issue.
- Market risk** The risk that arises from movements in interest rates, stock prices, exchange rates, and commodity prices.
- Market value** The price at which an asset or security can currently be bought or sold in an open market.
- Marketable limit order** A buy limit order in which the limit price is placed above the best offer, or a sell limit order in which the limit price is placed below the best bid. Such orders generally will partially or completely fill right away.
- Markowitz efficient frontier** The graph of the set of portfolios offering the maximum expected return for their level of risk (standard deviation of return).
- Matching principle** The accounting principle that expenses should be recognized when the associated revenue is recognized.
- Matching strategy** An active investment strategy that includes intentional matching of the timing of cash outflows with investment maturities.
- Matrix pricing** Process of estimating the market discount rate and price of a bond based on the quoted or flat prices of more frequently traded comparable bonds.
- Maturity premium** An extra return that compensates investors for the increased sensitivity of the market value of debt to a change in market interest rates as maturity is extended.
- Maturity structure** A factor explaining the differences in yields on similar bonds; also called *term structure*.
- Mean absolute deviation** With reference to a sample, the mean of the absolute values of deviations from the sample mean.
- Mean excess return** The average rate of return in excess of the risk-free rate.
- Mean-variance analysis** An approach to portfolio analysis using expected means, variances, and covariances of asset returns.
- Measure of central tendency** A quantitative measure that specifies where data are centered.

- Measure of value** A standard for measuring value; a function of money.
- Measurement scales** A scheme of measuring differences. The four types of measurement scales are nominal, ordinal, interval, and ratio.
- Measures of location** A quantitative measure that describes the location or distribution of data; includes not only measures of central tendency but also other measures such as percentiles.
- Median** The value of the middle item of a set of items that has been sorted into ascending or descending order; the 50th percentile.
- Medium of exchange** Any asset that can be used to purchase goods and services or to repay debts; a function of money.
- Medium-term note** A corporate bond offered continuously to investors by an agent of the issuer, designed to fill the funding gap between commercial paper and long-term bonds.
- Menu costs** A cost of inflation in which businesses constantly have to incur the costs of changing the advertised prices of their goods and services.
- Mesokurtic** Describes a distribution with kurtosis identical to that of the normal distribution.
- Mezzanine financing** Debt or preferred shares with a relationship to common equity resulting from a feature such as attached warrants or conversion options. Mezzanine financing is subordinate to both senior and high-yield debt. It is referred to as mezzanine because of its location on the balance sheet.
- Microeconomics** The branch of economics that deals with markets and decision making of individual economic units, including consumers and businesses.
- Minimum efficient scale** The smallest output that a firm can produce such that its long-run average total cost is minimized.
- Minimum-variance portfolio** The portfolio with the minimum variance for each given level of expected return.
- Minority shareholders** A particular shareholder or block of shareholders holding a small proportion of a company's outstanding shares, resulting in a limited ability to exercise control in voting activities.
- Minsky moment** Named for Hyman Minsky: A point in a business cycle when, after individuals become overextended in borrowing to finance speculative investments, people start realizing that something is likely to go wrong and a panic ensues leading to asset sell-offs.
- Mismatching strategy** An active investment strategy whereby the timing of cash outflows is not matched with investment maturities.
- Modal interval** With reference to grouped data, the most frequently occurring interval.
- Mode** The most frequently occurring value in a set of observations.
- Modern portfolio theory** (MPT) The analysis of rational portfolio choices based on the efficient use of risk.
- Modified duration** A measure of the percentage price change of a bond given a change in its yield-to-maturity.
- Momentum oscillators** A graphical representation of market sentiment that is constructed from price data and calculated so that it oscillates either between a high and a low or around some number.
- Monetarists** Economists who believe that the rate of growth of the money supply is the primary determinant of the rate of inflation.
- Monetary policy** Actions taken by a nation's central bank to affect aggregate output and prices through changes in bank reserves, reserve requirements, or its target interest rate.
- Monetary transmission mechanism** The process whereby a central bank's interest rate gets transmitted through the economy and ultimately affects the rate of increase of prices.
- Monetary union** An economic union in which the members adopt a common currency.
- Money** A generally accepted medium of exchange and unit of account.
- Money convexity** For a bond, the annual or approximate convexity multiplied by the full price.
- Money creation** The process by which changes in bank reserves translate into changes in the money supply.
- Money duration** A measure of the price change in units of the currency in which the bond is denominated given a change in its yield-to-maturity.
- Money market** The market for short-term debt instruments (one-year maturity or less).
- Money market securities** Fixed-income securities with maturities at issuance of one year or less.
- Money market yield** A yield on a basis comparable to the quoted yield on an interest-bearing money market instrument that pays interest on a 360-day basis; the annualized holding period yield, assuming a 360-day year.
- Money multiplier** Describes how a change in reserves is expected to affect the money supply; in its simplest form, 1 divided by the reserve requirement.
- Money neutrality** The thesis that an increase in the money supply leads in the long-run to an increase in the price level, while leaving real variables like output and employment unaffected.
- Money-weighted return** The internal rate of return on a portfolio, taking account of all cash flows.
- Moneyness** The relationship between the price of the underlying and an option's exercise price.
- Monopolistic competition** Highly competitive form of imperfect competition; the competitive characteristic is a notably large number of firms, while the monopoly aspect is the result of product differentiation.
- Monopoly** In pure monopoly markets, there are no substitutes for the given product or service. There is a single seller, which exercises considerable power over pricing and output decisions.
- Monte Carlo simulation** An approach to estimating a probability distribution of outcomes to examine what might happen if particular risks are faced. This method is widely used in the sciences as well as in business to study a variety of problems.
- Moral principles** Beliefs regarding what is good, acceptable, or obligatory behavior and what is bad, unacceptable, or forbidden behavior.
- Mortgage-backed securities** Debt obligations that represent claims to the cash flows from pools of mortgage loans, most commonly on residential property.
- Mortgage loan** A loan secured by the collateral of some specified real estate property that obliges the borrower to make a predetermined series of payments to the lender.
- Mortgage pass-through security** A security created when one or more holders of mortgages form a pool of mortgages and sell shares or participation certificates in the pool.
- Mortgage rate** The interest rate on a mortgage loan; also called *contract rate* or *note rate*.

- Moving average** The average of the closing price of a security over a specified number of periods. With each new period, the average is recalculated.
- Moving-average convergence/divergence oscillator** (MACD) A momentum oscillator that is constructed based on the difference between short-term and long-term moving averages of a security's price.
- Multi-factor model** A model that explains a variable in terms of the values of a set of factors.
- Multi-market indexes** Comprised of indexes from different countries, designed to represent multiple security markets.
- Multi-step format** With respect to the format of the income statement, a format that presents a subtotal for gross profit (revenue minus cost of goods sold).
- Multilateral trading facilities** See *alternative trading systems*.
- Multinational corporation** A company operating in more than one country or having subsidiary firms in more than one country.
- Multiplication rule for probabilities** The rule that the joint probability of events *A* and *B* equals the probability of *A* given *B* times the probability of *B*.
- Multiplier models** Valuation models based on share price multiples or enterprise value multiples.
- Multivariate distribution** A probability distribution that specifies the probabilities for a group of related random variables.
- Multivariate normal distribution** A probability distribution for a group of random variables that is completely defined by the means and variances of the variables plus all the correlations between pairs of the variables.
- Muni** A type of non-sovereign bond issued by a state or local government in the United States. It very often (but not always) offers income tax exemptions.
- Municipal bonds** A type of non-sovereign bond issued by a state or local government in the United States. It very often (but not always) offers income tax exemptions.
- Mutual fund** A professionally managed investment pool in which investors in the fund typically each have a pro-rata claim on the income and value of the fund.
- Mutually exclusive projects** Mutually exclusive projects compete directly with each other. For example, if Projects A and B are mutually exclusive, you can choose A or B, but you cannot choose both.
- n* Factorial** For a positive integer *n*, the product of the first *n* positive integers; 0 factorial equals 1 by definition. *n* factorial is written as *n!*.
- Narrow money** The notes and coins in circulation in an economy, plus other very highly liquid deposits.
- Nash equilibrium** When two or more participants in a non-cooperative game have no incentive to deviate from their respective equilibrium strategies given their opponent's strategies.
- National income** The income received by all factors of production used in the generation of final output. National income equals gross domestic product (or, in some countries, gross national product) minus the capital consumption allowance and a statistical discrepancy.
- Natural language processing** Computer programs developed to analyze and interpret human language.
- Natural rate of unemployment** Effective unemployment rate, below which pressure emerges in labor markets.
- Negative screening** An ESG implementation approach that excludes certain sectors or companies that deviate from an investor's accepted standards. Also called *exclusionary screening* or *norms-based screening*.
- Neo-Keynesians** A group of dynamic general equilibrium models that assume slow-to-adjust prices and wages.
- Net book value** The remaining (undepreciated) balance of an asset's purchase cost. For liabilities, the face value of a bond minus any unamortized discount, or plus any unamortized premium.
- Net exports** The difference between the value of a country's exports and the value of its imports (i.e., value of exports minus imports).
- Net income** The difference between revenue and expenses; what remains after subtracting all expenses (including depreciation, interest, and taxes) from revenue.
- Net operating cycle** An estimate of the average time that elapses between paying suppliers for materials and collecting cash from the subsequent sale of goods produced.
- Net present value** (NPV) The present value of an investment's cash inflows (benefits) minus the present value of its cash outflows (costs).
- Net profit margin** An indicator of profitability, calculated as net income divided by revenue; indicates how much of each dollar of revenues is left after all costs and expenses. Also called *profit margin* or *return on sales*.
- Net realisable value** Estimated selling price in the ordinary course of business less the estimated costs necessary to make the sale.
- Net revenue** Revenue after adjustments (e.g., for estimated returns or for amounts unlikely to be collected).
- Net tax rate** The tax rate net of transfer payments.
- Neural networks** Computer programs based on how our own brains learn and process information.
- Neutral rate of interest** The rate of interest that neither spurs on nor slows down the underlying economy.
- New classical macroeconomics** An approach to macroeconomics that seeks the macroeconomic conclusions of individuals maximizing utility on the basis of rational expectations and companies maximizing profits.
- New Keynesians** A group of dynamic general equilibrium models that assume slow-to-adjust prices and wages.
- No-load fund** A mutual fund in which there is no fee for investing in the fund or for redeeming fund shares, although there is an annual fee based on a percentage of the fund's net asset value.
- Node** Each value on a binomial tree from which successive moves or outcomes branch.
- Nominal GDP** The value of goods and services measured at current prices.
- Nominal rate** A rate of interest based on the security's face value.
- Nominal risk-free interest rate** The sum of the real risk-free interest rate and the inflation premium.
- Nominal scale** A measurement scale that categorizes data but does not rank them.
- Non-accelerating inflation rate of unemployment** Effective unemployment rate, below which pressure emerges in labor markets.
- Non-agency RMBS** In the United States, securities issued by private entities that are not guaranteed by a federal agency or a GSE.

- Non-cumulative preference shares** Preference shares for which dividends that are not paid in the current or subsequent periods are forfeited permanently (instead of being accrued and paid at a later date).
- Non-current assets** Assets that are expected to benefit the company over an extended period of time (usually more than one year).
- Non-current liabilities** Obligations that broadly represent a probable sacrifice of economic benefits in periods generally greater than one year in the future.
- Non-cyclical** A company whose performance is largely independent of the business cycle.
- Non-deliverable forwards** Cash-settled forward contracts, used predominately with respect to foreign exchange forwards. Also called *contracts for differences*.
- Non-financial risks** Risks that arise from sources other than changes in the external financial markets, such as changes in accounting rules, legal environment, or tax rates.
- Non-participating preference shares** Preference shares that do not entitle shareholders to share in the profits of the company. Instead, shareholders are only entitled to receive a fixed dividend payment and the par value of the shares in the event of liquidation.
- Non-recourse loan** Loan in which the lender does not have a shortfall claim against the borrower, so the lender can look only to the property to recover the outstanding mortgage balance.
- Non-renewable resources** Finite resources that are depleted once they are consumed, such as oil and coal.
- Non-sovereign bonds** A bond issued by a government below the national level, such as a province, region, state, or city.
- Non-sovereign government bonds** A bond issued by a government below the national level, such as a province, region, state, or city.
- Nonconventional cash flow** In a nonconventional cash flow pattern, the initial outflow is not followed by inflows only, but the cash flows can flip from positive (inflows) to negative (outflows) again (or even change signs several times).
- Nonparametric test** A test that is not concerned with a parameter, or that makes minimal assumptions about the population from which a sample comes.
- Nonsystematic risk** Unique risk that is local or limited to a particular asset or industry that need not affect assets outside of that asset class.
- Normal distribution** A continuous, symmetric probability distribution that is completely described by its mean and its variance.
- Normal goods** Goods that are consumed in greater quantities as income increases.
- Normal profit** The level of accounting profit needed to just cover the implicit opportunity costs ignored in accounting costs.
- Norms-based screening** An ESG implementation approach that excludes certain sectors or companies that deviate from an investor's accepted standards. Also called *negative screening* or *exclusionary screening*.
- Notching** Ratings adjustment methodology where specific issues from the same borrower may be assigned different credit ratings.
- Note rate** See *mortgage rate*.
- Notes payable** Amounts owed by a business to creditors as a result of borrowings that are evidenced by (short-term) loan agreements.
- Notice period** The length of time (typically 30 to 90 days) in advance that investors may be required to notify a fund of their intent to redeem.
- Notional principal** An imputed principal amount.
- NPV rule** An investment decision rule that states that an investment should be undertaken if its NPV is positive but not undertaken if its NPV is negative.
- Number of days of inventory** An activity ratio equal to the number of days in a period divided by the inventory ratio for the period; an indication of the number of days a company ties up funds in inventory.
- Number of days of payables** An activity ratio equal to the number of days in a period divided by the payables turnover ratio for the period; an estimate of the average number of days it takes a company to pay its suppliers.
- Number of days of receivables** Estimate of the average number of days it takes to collect on credit accounts.
- Objective probabilities** Probabilities that generally do not vary from person to person; includes a priori and objective probabilities.
- Off-the-run** Seasoned government bonds are off-the-run securities; they are not the most recently issued or the most actively traded.
- Offer** The price at which a dealer or trader is willing to sell an asset, typically qualified by a maximum quantity (ask size).
- Official interest rate** An interest rate that a central bank sets and announces publicly; normally the rate at which it is willing to lend money to the commercial banks. Also called *official policy rate* or *policy rate*.
- Official policy rate** An interest rate that a central bank sets and announces publicly; normally the rate at which it is willing to lend money to the commercial banks.
- Oligopoly** Market structure with a relatively small number of firms supplying the market.
- On-the-run** The most recently issued and most actively traded sovereign securities.
- One-sided hypothesis test** A test in which the null hypothesis is rejected only if the evidence indicates that the population parameter is greater than (smaller than) θ_0 . The alternative hypothesis also has one side.
- One-tailed hypothesis test** A test in which the null hypothesis is rejected only if the evidence indicates that the population parameter is greater than (smaller than) θ_0 . The alternative hypothesis also has one side.
- Open economy** An economy that trades with other countries.
- Open-end fund** A mutual fund that accepts new investment money and issues additional shares at a value equal to the net asset value of the fund at the time of investment.
- Open interest** The number of outstanding contracts in a clearinghouse at any given time. The open interest figure changes daily as some parties open up new positions, while other parties offset their old positions.
- Open market operations** The purchase or sale of bonds by the national central bank to implement monetary policy. The bonds traded are usually sovereign bonds issued by the national government.
- Operating activities** Activities that are part of the day-to-day business functioning of an entity, such as selling inventory and providing services.
- Operating breakeven** The number of units produced and sold at which the company's operating profit is zero (revenues = operating costs).
- Operating cash flow** The net amount of cash provided from operating activities.

- Operating cycle** A measure of the time needed to convert raw materials into cash from a sale; it consists of the number of days of inventory and the number of days of receivables.
- Operating efficiency ratios** Ratios that measure how efficiently a company performs day-to-day tasks, such as the collection of receivables and management of inventory.
- Operating lease** An agreement allowing the lessee to use some asset for a period of time; essentially a rental.
- Operating leverage** The use of fixed costs in operations.
- Operating profit** A company's profits on its usual business activities before deducting taxes. Also called *operating income*.
- Operating profit margin** A profitability ratio calculated as operating income (i.e., income before interest and taxes) divided by revenue. Also called *operating margin*.
- Operating risk** The risk attributed to the operating cost structure, in particular the use of fixed costs in operations; the risk arising from the mix of fixed and variable costs; the risk that a company's operations may be severely affected by environmental, social, and governance risk factors.
- Operational independence** A bank's ability to execute monetary policy and set interest rates in the way it thought would best meet the inflation target.
- Operational risk** The risk of loss from failures in a company's systems and procedures.
- Operationally efficient** Said of a market, a financial system, or an economy that has relatively low transaction costs.
- Opportunity cost** The value that investors forgo by choosing a particular course of action; the value of something in its best alternative use.
- Option** A financial instrument that gives one party the right, but not the obligation, to buy or sell an underlying asset from or to another party at a fixed price over a specific period of time. Also referred to as *contingent claim* or *option contract*.
- Option-adjusted price** The value of the embedded option plus the flat price of the bond.
- Option-adjusted spread** $OAS = Z\text{-spread} - \text{Option value}$ (in basis points per year).
- Option-adjusted yield** The required market discount rate whereby the price is adjusted for the value of the embedded option.
- Option contract** See *option*.
- Option premium** The amount of money a buyer pays and seller receives to engage in an option transaction.
- Order** A specification of what instrument to trade, how much to trade, and whether to buy or sell.
- Order-driven markets** A market (generally an auction market) that uses rules to arrange trades based on the orders that traders submit; in their pure form, such markets do not make use of dealers.
- Order precedence hierarchy** With respect to the execution of orders to trade, a set of rules that determines which orders execute before other orders.
- Ordinal scale** A measurement scale that sorts data into categories that are ordered (ranked) with respect to some characteristic.
- Ordinary annuity** An annuity with a first cash flow that is paid one period from the present.
- Ordinary shares** Equity shares that are subordinate to all other types of equity (e.g., preferred equity). Also called *common stock* or *common shares*.
- Organized exchange** A securities marketplace where buyers and seller can meet to arrange their trades.
- Other comprehensive income** Items of comprehensive income that are not reported on the income statement; comprehensive income minus net income.
- Out-of-sample test** A test of a strategy or model using a sample outside the time period on which the strategy or model was developed.
- Out of the money** Options that, if exercised, would require the payment of more money than the value received and therefore would not be currently exercised.
- Outcome** A possible value of a random variable.
- Over-the-counter (OTC) markets** A decentralized market where buy and sell orders initiated from various locations are matched through a communications network.
- Overbought** A market condition in which market sentiment is thought to be unsustainably bullish.
- Overcollateralization** Form of internal credit enhancement that refers to the process of posting more collateral than needed to obtain or secure financing.
- Overfitting** An undesirable result from fitting a model so closely to a dataset that it does not perform well on new data.
- Oversold** A market condition in which market sentiment is thought to be unsustainably bearish.
- Own price** The price of a good or service itself (as opposed to the price of something else).
- Own-price elasticity of demand** The percentage change in quantity demanded for a percentage change in good's own price, holding all other things constant.
- Owners' equity** The excess of assets over liabilities; the residual interest of shareholders in the assets of an entity after deducting the entity's liabilities. Also called *shareholders' equity*.
- Paasche index** An index formula using the current composition of a basket of products.
- Paired comparisons test** A statistical test for differences based on paired observations drawn from samples that are dependent on each other.
- Paired observations** Observations that are dependent on each other.
- Pairs arbitrage trade** A trade in two closely related stocks involving the short sale of one and the purchase of the other.
- Panel data** Observations through time on a single characteristic of multiple observational units.
- Par curve** A sequence of yields-to-maturity such that each bond is priced at par value. The bonds are assumed to have the same currency, credit risk, liquidity, tax status, and annual yields stated for the same periodicity.
- Par value** The amount of principal on a bond.
- Parallel shift** A parallel yield curve shift implies that all rates change by the same amount in the same direction.
- Parameter** A descriptive measure computed from or used to describe a population of data, conventionally represented by Greek letters.
- Parametric test** Any test (or procedure) concerned with parameters or whose validity depends on assumptions concerning the population generating the sample.
- Pari passu** On an equal footing.
- Partial duration** See *key rate duration*.
- Participating preference shares** Preference shares that entitle shareholders to receive the standard preferred dividend plus the opportunity to receive an additional dividend if the company's profits exceed a pre-specified level.

- Pass-through rate** The coupon rate of a mortgage pass-through security.
- Passive investment** A buy and hold approach in which an investor does not make portfolio changes based on short-term expectations of changing market or security performance.
- Passive strategy** In reference to short-term cash management, it is an investment strategy characterized by simple decision rules for making daily investments.
- Payable date** The day that the company actually mails out (or electronically transfers) a dividend payment.
- Payment date** The day that the company actually mails out (or electronically transfers) a dividend payment.
- Payments system** The system for the transfer of money.
- Peak** The highest point of a business cycle.
- Peer group** A group of companies engaged in similar business activities whose economics and valuation are influenced by closely related factors.
- Pennants** A technical analysis continuation pattern formed by trendlines that converge to form a triangle, typically over a short period.
- Per capita real GDP** Real GDP divided by the size of the population, often used as a measure of the average standard of living in a country.
- Per unit contribution margin** The amount that each unit sold contributes to covering fixed costs—that is, the difference between the price per unit and the variable cost per unit.
- Percentage-of-completion** A method of revenue recognition in which, in each accounting period, the company estimates what percentage of the contract is complete and then reports that percentage of the total contract revenue in its income statement.
- Percentiles** Quantiles that divide a distribution into 100 equal parts.
- Perfect competition** A market structure in which the individual firm has virtually no impact on market price, because it is assumed to be a very small seller among a very large number of firms selling essentially identical products.
- Perfectly elastic** When the quantity demanded or supplied of a given good is infinitely sensitive to a change in the value of a specified variable (e.g., price).
- Perfectly inelastic** When the quantity demanded or supplied of a given good is completely insensitive to a change in the value of a specified variable (e.g., price).
- Performance appraisal** The evaluation of risk-adjusted performance; the evaluation of investment skill.
- Performance bond** See *margin bond*.
- Performance evaluation** The measurement and assessment of the outcomes of investment management decisions.
- Performance fee** Fees paid to the general partner from the limited partner(s) based on realized profits.
- Performance measurement** The calculation of returns in a logical and consistent manner.
- Period costs** Costs (e.g., executives' salaries) that cannot be directly matched with the timing of revenues and which are thus expensed immediately.
- Periodicity** The assumed number of periods in the year, typically matches the frequency of coupon payments.
- Permanent differences** Differences between tax and financial reporting of revenue (expenses) that will not be reversed at some future date. These result in a difference between the company's effective tax rate and statutory tax rate and do not result in a deferred tax item.
- Permissioned networks** Networks that are fully open only to select participants on a DLT network.
- Permissionless networks** Networks that are fully open to any user on a DLT network.
- Permutation** An ordered listing.
- Perpetual bonds** Bonds with no stated maturity date.
- Perpetuity** A perpetual annuity, or a set of never-ending level sequential cash flows, with the first cash flow occurring one period from now. A bond that does not mature.
- Personal consumption expenditures** All domestic personal consumption; the basis for a price index for such consumption called the PCE price index.
- Personal disposable income** Equal to personal income less personal taxes.
- Personal income** A broad measure of household income that includes all income received by households, whether earned or unearned; measures the ability of consumers to make purchases.
- Plain vanilla bond** Bond that makes periodic, fixed coupon payments during the bond's life and a lump-sum payment of principal at maturity. Also called *conventional bond*.
- Platykurtic** Describes a distribution that has relatively less weight in the tails than the normal distribution.
- Point and figure chart** A technical analysis chart that is constructed with columns of X's alternating with columns of O's such that the horizontal axis represents only the number of changes in price without reference to time or volume.
- Point estimate** A single numerical estimate of an unknown quantity, such as a population parameter.
- Point of sale (POS)** Systems that capture transaction data at the physical location in which the sale is made.
- Policy rate** An interest rate that a central bank sets and announces publicly; normally the rate at which it is willing to lend money to the commercial banks.
- Population** All members of a specified group.
- Population mean** The arithmetic mean value of a population; the arithmetic mean of all the observations or values in the population.
- Population standard deviation** A measure of dispersion relating to a population in the same unit of measurement as the observations, calculated as the positive square root of the population variance.
- Population variance** A measure of dispersion relating to a population, calculated as the mean of the squared deviations around the population mean.
- Portfolio company** In private equity, the company in which the private equity fund is investing.
- Portfolio demand for money** The demand to hold speculative money balances based on the potential opportunities or risks that are inherent in other financial instruments.
- Portfolio planning** The process of creating a plan for building a portfolio that is expected to satisfy a client's investment objectives.
- Position** The quantity of an asset that an entity owns or owes.
- Positive screening** An ESG implementation approach that seeks to identify companies that embrace desired ESG-related principles.
- Posterior probability** An updated probability that reflects or comes after new information.
- Potential GDP** The level of real GDP that can be produced at full employment; measures the productive capacity of the economy.
- Power of a test** The probability of correctly rejecting the null—that is, rejecting the null hypothesis when it is false.

- Precautionary money balances** Money held to provide a buffer against unforeseen events that might require money.
- Precautionary stocks** A level of inventory beyond anticipated needs that provides a cushion in the event that it takes longer to replenish inventory than expected or in the case of greater than expected demand.
- Preference shares** A type of equity interest which ranks above common shares with respect to the payment of dividends and the distribution of the company's net assets upon liquidation. They have characteristics of both debt and equity securities. Also called *preferred stock*.
- Preferred stock** See *preference shares*.
- Premium** In the case of bonds, premium refers to the amount by which a bond is priced above its face (par) value. In the case of an option, the amount paid for the option contract.
- Prepaid expense** A normal operating expense that has been paid in advance of when it is due.
- Prepayment option** Contractual provision that entitles the borrower to prepay all or part of the outstanding mortgage principal prior to the scheduled due date when the principal must be repaid. Also called *early repayment option*.
- Prepayment penalty mortgages** Mortgages that stipulate a monetary penalty if a borrower prepays within a certain time period after the mortgage is originated.
- Prepayment risk** The uncertainty that the timing of the actual cash flows will be different from the scheduled cash flows as set forth in the loan agreement due to the borrowers' ability to alter payments, usually to take advantage of interest rate movements.
- Present value (PV)** The present discounted value of future cash flows: For assets, the present discounted value of the future net cash inflows that the asset is expected to generate; for liabilities, the present discounted value of the future net cash outflows that are expected to be required to settle the liabilities.
- Present value models** Valuation models that estimate the intrinsic value of a security as the present value of the future benefits expected to be received from the security. Also called *discounted cash flow models*.
- Pretax margin** A profitability ratio calculated as earnings before taxes divided by revenue.
- Price elasticity of demand** Measures the percentage change in the quantity demanded, given a percentage change in the price of a given product.
- Price index** Represents the average prices of a basket of goods and services.
- Price limits** Limits imposed by a futures exchange on the price change that can occur from one day to the next.
- Price multiple** A ratio that compares the share price with some sort of monetary flow or value to allow evaluation of the relative worth of a company's stock.
- Price priority** The principle that the highest priced buy orders and the lowest priced sell orders execute first.
- Price relative** A ratio of an ending price over a beginning price; it is equal to 1 plus the holding period return on the asset.
- Price return** Measures *only* the price appreciation or percentage change in price of the securities in an index or portfolio.
- Price return index** An index that reflects *only* the price appreciation or percentage change in price of the constituent securities. Also called *price index*.
- Price stability** In economics, refers to an inflation rate that is low on average and not subject to wide fluctuation.
- Price takers** Producers that must accept whatever price the market dictates.
- Price to book value** A valuation ratio calculated as price per share divided by book value per share.
- Price to cash flow** A valuation ratio calculated as price per share divided by cash flow per share.
- Price to earnings ratio** (P/E ratio or P/E) The ratio of share price to earnings per share.
- Price to sales** A valuation ratio calculated as price per share divided by sales per share.
- Price value of a basis point** A version of money duration, it is an estimate of the change in the full price of a bond given a 1 basis point change in the yield-to-maturity.
- Price weighting** An index weighting method in which the weight assigned to each constituent security is determined by dividing its price by the sum of all the prices of the constituent securities.
- Priced risk** Risk for which investors demand compensation for bearing (e.g. equity risk, company-specific factors, macroeconomic factors).
- Primary bond markets** Markets in which issuers first sell bonds to investors to raise capital.
- Primary capital markets (primary markets)** The market where securities are first sold and the issuers receive the proceeds.
- Primary dealers** Financial institutions that are authorized to deal in new issues of sovereign bonds and that serve primarily as trading counterparties of the office responsible for issuing sovereign bonds.
- Primary market** The market where securities are first sold and the issuers receive the proceeds.
- Prime brokers** Brokers that provide services including custody, administration, lending, short borrowing, and trading.
- Principal** The amount of funds originally invested in the project or instrument; the face value to be paid at maturity.
- Principal-agent relationship** A relationship in which a principal hires an agent to perform a particular task or service; also known as an *agency relationship*.
- Principal amount** Amount that an issuer agrees to repay the debt holders on the maturity date.
- Principal business activity** The business activity from which a company derives a majority of its revenues and/or earnings.
- Principal value** Amount that an issuer agrees to repay the debt holders on the maturity date.
- Principle of no arbitrage** See *arbitrage-free pricing*.
- Prior probabilities** Probabilities reflecting beliefs prior to the arrival of new information.
- Priority of claims** Priority of payment, with the most senior or highest ranking debt having the first claim on the cash flows and assets of the issuer.
- Private equity securities** Securities that are not listed on public exchanges and have no active secondary market. They are issued primarily to institutional investors via non-public offerings, such as private placements.
- Private investment in public equity** An investment in the equity of a publicly traded firm that is made at a discount to the market value of the firm's shares.
- Private placement** Typically a non-underwritten, unregistered offering of securities that are sold only to an investor or a small group of investors. It can be accomplished directly between the issuer and the investor(s) or through an investment bank.
- Probability** A number between 0 and 1 describing the chance that a stated event will occur.

- Probability density function** A function with non-negative values such that probability can be described by areas under the curve graphing the function.
- Probability distribution** A distribution that specifies the probabilities of a random variable's possible outcomes.
- Probability function** A function that specifies the probability that the random variable takes on a specific value.
- Producer price index** Reflects the price changes experienced by domestic producers in a country.
- Production function** Provides the quantitative link between the level of output that the economy can produce and the inputs used in the production process.
- Productivity** The amount of output produced by workers in a given period of time—for example, output per hour worked; measures the efficiency of labor.
- Profit** The return that owners of a company receive for the use of their capital and the assumption of financial risk when making their investments.
- Profit and loss (P&L) statement** A financial statement that provides information about a company's profitability over a stated period of time.
- Profit margin** An indicator of profitability, calculated as net income divided by revenue; indicates how much of each dollar of revenues is left after all costs and expenses.
- Profitability ratios** Ratios that measure a company's ability to generate profitable sales from its resources (assets).
- Project sequencing** To defer the decision to invest in a future project until the outcome of some or all of a current project is known. Projects are sequenced through time, so that investing in a project creates the option to invest in future projects.
- Promissory note** A written promise to pay a certain amount of money on demand.
- Property, plant, and equipment** Tangible assets that are expected to be used for more than one period in either the production or supply of goods or services, or for administrative purposes.
- Prospectus** The document that describes the terms of a new bond issue and helps investors perform their analysis on the issue.
- Protective put** An option strategy in which a long position in an asset is combined with a long position in a put.
- Proxy contest** Corporate takeover mechanism in which shareholders are persuaded to vote for a group seeking a controlling position on a company's board of directors.
- Proxy voting** A process that enables shareholders who are unable to attend a meeting to authorize another individual to vote on their behalf.
- Pseudo-random numbers** Numbers produced by random number generators.
- Public offer** See *public offering*.
- Public offering** An offering of securities in which any member of the public may buy the securities. Also called *public offer*.
- Pull on liquidity** When disbursements are paid too quickly or trade credit availability is limited, requiring companies to expend funds before they receive funds from sales that could cover the liability.
- Pure discount bonds** See *zero-coupon bonds*.
- Pure discount instruments** Instruments that pay interest as the difference between the amount borrowed and the amount paid back.
- Pure-play method** A method for estimating the beta for a company or project; it requires using a comparable company's beta and adjusting it for financial leverage differences.
- Put** An option that gives the holder the right to sell an underlying asset to another party at a fixed price over a specific period of time.
- Put–call–forward parity** The relationship among puts, calls, and forward contracts.
- Put–call parity** An equation expressing the equivalence (parity) of a portfolio of a call and a bond with a portfolio of a put and the underlying, which leads to the relationship between put and call prices.
- Put/call ratio** A technical analysis indicator that evaluates market sentiment based upon the volume of put options traded divided by the volume of call options traded for a particular financial instrument.
- Put option** An option that gives the holder the right to sell an underlying asset to another party at a fixed price over a specific period of time.
- Puttable bonds** Bonds that give the bondholder the right to sell the bond back to the issuer at a predetermined price on specified dates.
- Puttable common shares** Common shares that give investors the option (or right) to sell their shares (i.e., “put” them) back to the issuing company at a price that is specified when the shares are originally issued.
- Quantile** A value at or below which a stated fraction of the data lies. Also called *fractile*.
- Quantitative easing** An expansionary monetary policy based on aggressive open market purchase operations.
- Quantity equation of exchange** An expression that over a given period, the amount of money used to purchase all goods and services in an economy, $M \times V$, is equal to monetary value of this output, $P \times Y$.
- Quantity theory of money** Asserts that total spending (in money terms) is proportional to the quantity of money.
- Quartiles** Quartiles that divide a distribution into four equal parts.
- Quasi-fixed cost** A cost that stays the same over a range of production but can change to another constant level when production moves outside of that range.
- Quasi-government bonds** A bond issued by an entity that is either owned or sponsored by a national government. Also called *agency bond*.
- Quick assets** Assets that can be most readily converted to cash (e.g., cash, short-term marketable investments, receivables).
- Quick ratio** A stringent measure of liquidity that indicates a company's ability to satisfy current liabilities with its most liquid assets, calculated as (cash + short-term marketable investments + receivables) divided by current liabilities.
- Quintiles** Quartiles that divide a distribution into five equal parts.
- Quota rents** Profits that foreign producers can earn by raising the price of their goods higher than they would without a quota.
- Quotas** Government policies that restrict the quantity of a good that can be imported into a country, generally for a specified period of time.
- Quote-driven market** A market in which dealers acting as principals facilitate trading.
- Quoted interest rate** A quoted interest rate that does not account for compounding within the year. Also called *stated annual interest rate*.
- Quoted margin** The specified yield spread over the reference rate, used to compensate an investor for the difference in the credit risk of the issuer and that implied by the reference rate.

- Random number** An observation drawn from a uniform distribution.
- Random number generator** An algorithm that produces uniformly distributed random numbers between 0 and 1.
- Random variable** A quantity whose future outcomes are uncertain.
- Range** The difference between the maximum and minimum values in a dataset.
- Ratio scales** A measurement scale that has all the characteristics of interval measurement scales as well as a true zero point as the origin.
- Real GDP** The value of goods and services produced, measured at base year prices.
- Real income** Income adjusted for the effect of inflation on the purchasing power of money. Also known as the *purchasing power of income*. If income remains constant and a good's price falls, real income is said to rise, even though the number of monetary units (e.g., dollars) remains unchanged.
- Real interest rate** Nominal interest rate minus the expected rate of inflation.
- Real risk-free interest rate** The single-period interest rate for a completely risk-free security if no inflation were expected.
- Realizable (settlement) value** With reference to assets, the amount of cash or cash equivalents that could currently be obtained by selling the asset in an orderly disposal; with reference to liabilities, the undiscounted amount of cash or cash equivalents expected to be paid to satisfy the liabilities in the normal course of business.
- Rebalancing** Adjusting the weights of the constituent securities in an index.
- Rebalancing policy** The set of rules that guide the process of restoring a portfolio's asset class weights to those specified in the strategic asset allocation.
- Recession** A period during which real GDP decreases (i.e., negative growth) for at least two successive quarters, or a period of significant decline in total output, income, employment, and sales usually lasting from six months to a year.
- Recognition lag** The lag in government response to an economic problem resulting from the delay in confirming a change in the state of the economy.
- Recourse loan** Loan in which the lender has a claim against the borrower for any shortfall between the outstanding mortgage balance and the proceeds received from the sale of the property.
- Redemption yield** See *yield to maturity*.
- Redemptions** Withdrawals of funds by investors.
- Refinancing rate** A type of central bank policy rate.
- Registered bonds** Bonds for which ownership is recorded by either name or serial number.
- Relative dispersion** The amount of dispersion relative to a reference value or benchmark.
- Relative frequency** With reference to an interval of grouped data, the number of observations in the interval divided by the total number of observations in the sample.
- Relative price** The price of a specific good or service in comparison with those of other goods and services.
- Relative strength analysis** A comparison of the performance of one asset with the performance of another asset or a benchmark based on changes in the ratio of the securities' respective prices over time.
- Relative strength index** A technical analysis momentum oscillator that compares a security's gains with its losses over a set period.
- Renewable resources** Resources that can be replenished, such as a forest.
- Rent** Payment for the use of property.
- Reorganization** Agreements made by a company in bankruptcy under which a company's capital structure is altered and/or alternative arrangements are made for debt repayment; US Chapter 11 bankruptcy. The company emerges from bankruptcy as a going concern.
- Replication** The creation of an asset or portfolio from another asset, portfolio, and/or derivative.
- Repo** A form of collateralized loan involving the sale of a security with a simultaneous agreement by the seller to buy the same security back from the purchaser at an agreed-on price and future date. The party who sells the security at the inception of the repurchase agreement and buys it back at maturity is borrowing money from the other party, and the security sold and subsequently repurchased represents the collateral.
- Repo margin** The difference between the market value of the security used as collateral and the value of the loan. Also called *haircut*.
- Repo rate** The interest rate on a repurchase agreement.
- Repurchase agreement** A form of collateralized loan involving the sale of a security with a simultaneous agreement by the seller to buy the same security back from the purchaser at an agreed-on price and future date. The party who sells the security at the inception of the repurchase agreement and buys it back at maturity is borrowing money from the other party, and the security sold and subsequently repurchased represents the collateral.
- Repurchase date** The date when the party who sold the security at the inception of a repurchase agreement buys the security back from the cash lending counterparty.
- Repurchase price** The price at which the party who sold the security at the inception of the repurchase agreement buys the security back from the cash lending counterparty.
- Required margin** The yield spread over, or under, the reference rate such that an FRN is priced at par value on a rate reset date.
- Required rate of return** See *market discount rate*.
- Required yield** See *market discount rate*.
- Required yield spread** The difference between the yield-to-maturity on a new bond and the benchmark rate; additional compensation required by investors for the difference in risk and tax status of a bond relative to a government bond. Sometimes called the *spread over the benchmark*.
- Reserve accounts** Form of internal credit enhancement that relies on creating accounts and depositing in these accounts cash that can be used to absorb losses. Also called *reserve funds*.
- Reserve funds** See *reserve accounts*.
- Reserve requirement** The requirement for banks to hold reserves in proportion to the size of deposits.
- Resistance** In technical analysis, a price range in which selling activity is sufficient to stop the rise in the price of a security.
- Responsible investing** The practice of identifying companies that can efficiently manage their financial, environmental, and human capital resources to generate attractive long-term profitability; often synonymous with *sustainable investing*.
- Restricted payments** A bond covenant meant to protect creditors by limiting how much cash can be paid out to shareholders over time.

- Retail method** An inventory accounting method in which the sales value of an item is reduced by the gross margin to calculate the item's cost.
- Retracement** In technical analysis, a reversal in the movement of a security's price such that it is counter to the prevailing longer-term price trend.
- Return-generating model** A model that can provide an estimate of the expected return of a security given certain parameters and estimates of the values of the independent variables in the model.
- Return on assets (ROA)** A profitability ratio calculated as net income divided by average total assets; indicates a company's net profit generated per dollar invested in total assets.
- Return on equity (ROE)** A profitability ratio calculated as net income divided by average shareholders' equity.
- Return on sales** An indicator of profitability, calculated as net income divided by revenue; indicates how much of each dollar of revenues is left after all costs and expenses.
- Return on total capital** A profitability ratio calculated as EBIT divided by the sum of short- and long-term debt and equity.
- Revaluation model** The process of valuing long-lived assets at fair value, rather than at cost less accumulated depreciation. Any resulting profit or loss is either reported on the income statement and/or through equity under revaluation surplus.
- Revenue** The amount charged for the delivery of goods or services in the ordinary activities of a business over a stated period; the inflows of economic resources to a company over a stated period.
- Reversal patterns** A type of pattern used in technical analysis to predict the end of a trend and a change in direction of the security's price.
- Reverse repo** A repurchase agreement viewed from the perspective of the cash lending counterparty.
- Reverse repurchase agreement** A repurchase agreement viewed from the perspective of the cash lending counterparty.
- Reverse stock split** A reduction in the number of shares outstanding with a corresponding increase in share price, but no change to the company's underlying fundamentals.
- Revolving credit agreements** The strongest form of short-term bank borrowing facilities; they are in effect for multiple years (e.g., 3–5 years) and may have optional medium-term loan features.
- Rho** The sensitivity of the option price to the risk-free rate.
- Ricardian equivalence** An economic theory that implies that it makes no difference whether a government finances a deficit by increasing taxes or issuing debt.
- Risk** Exposure to uncertainty. The chance of a loss or adverse outcome as a result of an action, inaction, or external event.
- Risk averse** The assumption that an investor will choose the least risky alternative.
- Risk aversion** The degree of an investor's inability and unwillingness to take risk.
- Risk budgeting** The establishment of objectives for individuals, groups, or divisions of an organization that takes into account the allocation of an acceptable level of risk.
- Risk exposure** The state of being exposed or vulnerable to a risk. The extent to which an entity is sensitive to underlying risks.
- Risk governance** The top-down process and guidance that directs risk management activities to align with and support the overall enterprise.
- Risk management** The process of identifying the level of risk an entity wants, measuring the level of risk the entity currently has, taking actions that bring the actual level of risk to the desired level of risk, and monitoring the new actual level of risk so that it continues to be aligned with the desired level of risk.
- Risk management framework** The infrastructure, process, and analytics needed to support effective risk management in an organization.
- Risk-neutral pricing** Sometimes said of derivatives pricing, uses the fact that arbitrage opportunities guarantee that a risk-free portfolio consisting of the underlying and the derivative must earn the risk-free rate.
- Risk-neutral probabilities** Weights that are used to compute a binomial option price. They are the probabilities that would apply if a risk-neutral investor valued an option.
- Risk premium** An extra return expected by investors for bearing some specified risk.
- Risk shifting** Actions to change the distribution of risk outcomes.
- Risk tolerance** The amount of risk an investor is willing and able to bear to achieve an investment goal.
- Risk transfer** Actions to pass on a risk to another party, often, but not always, in the form of an insurance policy.
- Robo-adviser** A machine-based analytical tool or service that provides technology-driven investment solutions through online platforms.
- Robust** The quality of being relatively unaffected by a violation of assumptions.
- Rule of 72** The principle that the approximate number of years necessary for an investment to double is 72 divided by the stated interest rate.
- Running yield** See *current yield*.
- Safety-first rules** Rules for portfolio selection that focus on the risk that portfolio value will fall below some minimum acceptable level over some time horizon.
- Safety stock** A level of inventory beyond anticipated needs that provides a cushion in the event that it takes longer to replenish inventory than expected or in the case of greater than expected demand.
- Sales** Generally, a synonym for revenue; "sales" is generally understood to refer to the sale of goods, whereas "revenue" is understood to include the sale of goods or services.
- Sales risk** Uncertainty with respect to the quantity of goods and services that a company is able to sell and the price it is able to achieve; the risk related to the uncertainty of revenues.
- Sales-type leases** A type of finance lease, from a lessor perspective, where the present value of the lease payments (lease receivable) exceeds the carrying value of the leased asset. The revenues earned by the lessor are operating (the profit on the sale) and financing (interest) in nature.
- Sample** A subset of a population.
- Sample excess kurtosis** A sample measure of the degree of a distribution's kurtosis in excess of the normal distribution's kurtosis.
- Sample kurtosis** A sample measure of the degree of a distribution's peakedness.
- Sample mean** The sum of the sample observations, divided by the sample size.

- Sample selection bias** Bias introduced by systematically excluding some members of the population according to a particular attribute—for example, the bias introduced when data availability leads to certain observations being excluded from the analysis.
- Sample skewness** A sample measure of degree of asymmetry of a distribution.
- Sample standard deviation** The positive square root of the sample variance.
- Sample statistic** A quantity computed from or used to describe a sample.
- Sample variance** A sample measure of the degree of dispersion of a distribution, calculated by dividing the sum of the squared deviations from the sample mean by the sample size minus 1.
- Sampling** The process of obtaining a sample.
- Sampling distribution** The distribution of all distinct possible values that a statistic can assume when computed from samples of the same size randomly drawn from the same population.
- Sampling error** The difference between the observed value of a statistic and the quantity it is intended to estimate.
- Sampling plan** The set of rules used to select a sample.
- Say on pay** A process whereby shareholders may vote on executive remuneration (compensation) matters.
- Say's law** Named for French economist J.B. Say: All that is produced will be sold because supply creates its own demand.
- Scenario analysis** Analysis that shows the changes in key financial quantities that result from given (economic) events, such as the loss of customers, the loss of a supply source, or a catastrophic event; a risk management technique involving examination of the performance of a portfolio under specified situations. Closely related to stress testing.
- Screening** The application of a set of criteria to reduce a set of potential investments to a smaller set having certain desired characteristics.
- Seasoned offering** An offering in which an issuer sells additional units of a previously issued security.
- Second-degree price discrimination** When the monopolist charges different per-unit prices using the quantity purchased as an indicator of how highly the customer values the product.
- Second lien** A secured interest in the pledged assets that ranks below first lien debt in both collateral protection and priority of payment.
- Secondary bond markets** Markets in which existing bonds are traded among investors.
- Secondary market** The market where securities are traded among investors.
- Secondary precedence rules** Rules that determine how to rank orders placed at the same time.
- Sector** A group of related industries.
- Sector indexes** Indexes that represent and track different economic sectors—such as consumer goods, energy, finance, health care, and technology—on either a national, regional, or global basis.
- Secured bonds** Bonds secured by assets or financial guarantees pledged to ensure debt repayment in case of default.
- Secured debt** Debt in which the debtholder has a direct claim—a pledge from the issuer—on certain assets and their associated cash flows.
- Securitization** A process that involves moving assets into a special legal entity, which then uses the assets as guarantees to secure a bond issue.
- Securitized assets** Assets that are typically used to create asset-backed bonds; for example, when a bank securitizes a pool of loans, the loans are said to be securitized.
- Security characteristic line** A plot of the excess return of a security on the excess return of the market.
- Security market index** A portfolio of securities representing a given security market, market segment, or asset class.
- Security market line** (SML) The graph of the capital asset pricing model.
- Security selection** The process of selecting individual securities; typically, security selection has the objective of generating superior risk-adjusted returns relative to a portfolio's benchmark.
- Self-investment limits** With respect to investment limitations applying to pension plans, restrictions on the percentage of assets that can be invested in securities issued by the pension plan sponsor.
- Sell-side firm** A broker or dealer that sells securities to and provides independent investment research and recommendations to investment management companies.
- Semi-strong-form efficient market** A market in which security prices reflect all publicly known and available information.
- Semiannual bond basis yield** An annual rate having a periodicity of two; also known as a *semiannual bond equivalent yield*.
- Semiannual bond equivalent yield** See *semiannual bond basis yield*.
- Semideviation** The positive square root of semivariance (sometimes called *semistandard deviation*).
- Semilogarithmic** Describes a scale constructed so that equal intervals on the vertical scale represent equal rates of change, and equal intervals on the horizontal scale represent equal amounts of change.
- Semivariance** The average squared deviation below the mean.
- Seniority ranking** Priority of payment of various debt obligations.
- Sensitivity analysis** Analysis that shows the range of possible outcomes as specific assumptions are changed.
- Separately managed account** (SMA) An investment portfolio managed exclusively for the benefit of an individual or institution.
- Serial maturity structure** Structure for a bond issue in which the maturity dates are spread out during the bond's life; a stated number of bonds mature and are paid off each year before final maturity.
- Settlement** The process that occurs after a trade is completed, the securities are passed to the buyer, and payment is received by the seller.
- Settlement date** Date when the buyer makes cash payment and the seller delivers the security.
- Settlement price** The official price, designated by the clearinghouse, from which daily gains and losses will be determined and marked to market.
- Share repurchase** A transaction in which a company buys back its own shares. Unlike stock dividends and stock splits, share repurchases use corporate cash.
- Shareholder activism** Strategies used by shareholders to attempt to compel a company to act in a desired manner.
- Shareholder engagement** The process whereby companies engage with their shareholders.

- Shareholders' equity** Assets less liabilities; the residual interest in the assets after subtracting the liabilities.
- Sharpe ratio** The average return in excess of the risk-free rate divided by the standard deviation of return; a measure of the average excess return earned per unit of standard deviation of return.
- Shelf registration** Type of public offering that allows the issuer to file a single, all-encompassing offering circular that covers a series of bond issues.
- Short** The seller of an asset or derivative contract. Also refers to the position of being short an asset or derivative contract.
- Short position** A position in an asset or contract in which one has sold an asset one does not own, or in which a right under a contract can be exercised against oneself.
- Short-run average total cost** The curve describing average total cost when some costs are considered fixed.
- Short selling** A transaction in which borrowed securities are sold with the intention to repurchase them at a lower price at a later date and return them to the lender.
- Shortfall risk** The risk that portfolio value will fall below some minimum acceptable level over some time horizon.
- Shutdown point** The point at which average revenue is equal to the firm's average variable cost.
- Simple interest** The interest earned each period on the original investment; interest calculated on the principal only.
- Simple random sample** A subset of a larger population created in such a way that each element of the population has an equal probability of being selected to the subset.
- Simple random sampling** The procedure of drawing a sample to satisfy the definition of a simple random sample.
- Simple yield** The sum of the coupon payments plus the straight-line amortized share of the gain or loss, divided by the flat price.
- Simulation** Computer-generated sensitivity or scenario analysis that is based on probability models for the factors that drive outcomes.
- Simulation trial** A complete pass through the steps of a simulation.
- Single-step format** With respect to the format of the income statement, a format that does not subtotal for gross profit (revenue minus cost of goods sold).
- Sinking fund arrangement** Provision that reduces the credit risk of a bond issue by requiring the issuer to retire a portion of the bond's principal outstanding each year.
- Situational influences** External factors, such as environmental or cultural elements, that shape our behavior.
- Skewed** Not symmetrical.
- Skewness** A quantitative measure of skew (lack of symmetry); a synonym of skew.
- Small country** A country that is a price taker in the world market for a product and cannot influence the world market price.
- Smart contract** A computer program that is designed to self-execute on the basis of pre-specified terms and conditions agreed to by parties to a contract.
- Socially responsible investing** An investment approach that excludes investments in companies or industries that deviate from an organization's beliefs and sometimes includes investments with favorable environmental or social profiles.
- Solvency** With respect to financial statement analysis, the ability of a company to fulfill its long-term obligations.
- Solvency ratios** Ratios that measure a company's ability to meet its long-term obligations.
- Solvency risk** The risk that an entity does not survive or succeed because it runs out of cash, even though it might otherwise be solvent.
- Sovereign bonds** A bond issued by a national government.
- Sovereign yield spread** An estimate of the country spread (country equity premium) for a developing nation that is based on a comparison of bonds yields in country being analyzed and a developed country. The sovereign yield spread is the difference between a government bond yield in the country being analyzed, denominated in the currency of the developed country, and the Treasury bond yield on a similar maturity bond in the developed country.
- Sovereigns** A bond issued by a national government.
- Spearman rank correlation coefficient** A measure of correlation applied to ranked data.
- Special dividend** A dividend paid by a company that does not pay dividends on a regular schedule, or a dividend that supplements regular cash dividends with an extra payment.
- Special purpose entity** A non-operating entity created to carry out a specified purpose, such as leasing assets or securitizing receivables; can be a corporation, partnership, trust, limited liability, or partnership formed to facilitate a specific type of business activity. Also called *special purpose vehicle* or *variable interest entity*.
- Special purpose vehicle** See *special purpose entity*.
- Specific identification method** An inventory accounting method that identifies which specific inventory items were sold and which remained in inventory to be carried over to later periods.
- Speculative demand for money** The demand to hold speculative money balances based on the potential opportunities or risks that are inherent in other financial instruments. Also called *portfolio demand for money*.
- Speculative money balances** Monies held in anticipation that other assets will decline in value.
- Split coupon bond** See *deferred coupon bond*.
- Sponsored** A type of depository receipt in which the foreign company whose shares are held by the depository has a direct involvement in the issuance of the receipts.
- Spot curve** A sequence of yields-to-maturity on zero-coupon bonds. Sometimes called *zero* or *strip curve* because coupon payments are "stripped" off of the bonds.
- Spot markets** Markets in which assets are traded for immediate delivery.
- Spot prices** The price of an asset for immediately delivery.
- Spot rates** A sequence of market discount rates that correspond to the cash flow dates; yields-to-maturity on zero-coupon bonds maturing at the date of each cash flow.
- Spread** In general, the difference in yield between different fixed income securities. Often used to refer to the difference between the yield-to-maturity and the benchmark.
- Spread over the benchmark** See *required yield spread*.
- Spread risk** Bond price risk arising from changes in the yield spread on credit-risky bonds; reflects changes in the market's assessment and/or pricing of credit migration (or downgrade) risk and market liquidity risk.
- Stackelberg model** A prominent model of strategic decisionmaking in which firms are assumed to make their decisions sequentially.
- Stagflation** When a high inflation rate is combined with a high level of unemployment and a slowdown of the economy.
- Staggered boards** Election process whereby directors are typically divided into multiple classes that are elected separately in consecutive years—that is, one class every year.

- Stakeholder management** The identification, prioritization, and understanding of the interests of stakeholder groups, and managing the company's relationships with these groups.
- Stakeholders** Individuals or groups of individuals who may be affected either directly or indirectly by a decision and thus have an interest, or stake, in the decision.
- Standard cost** With respect to inventory accounting, the planned or target unit cost of inventory items or services.
- Standard deviation** The positive square root of the variance; a measure of dispersion in the same units as the original data.
- Standard normal distribution** The normal density with mean (μ) equal to 0 and standard deviation (σ) equal to 1.
- Standardizing** A transformation that involves subtracting the mean and dividing the result by the standard deviation.
- Standards of conduct** Behaviors required by a group; established benchmarks that clarify or enhance a group's code of ethics.
- Standing limit orders** A limit order at a price below market and which therefore is waiting to trade.
- Stated annual interest rate** A quoted interest rate that does not account for compounding within the year. Also called *quoted interest rate*.
- Statement of changes in equity** (statement of owners' equity) A financial statement that reconciles the beginning-of-period and end-of-period balance sheet values of shareholders' equity; provides information about all factors affecting shareholders' equity. Also called *statement of owners' equity*.
- Statement of financial condition** The financial statement that presents an entity's current financial position by disclosing resources the entity controls (its assets) and the claims on those resources (its liabilities and equity claims), as of a particular point in time (the date of the balance sheet).
- Statement of financial position** The financial statement that presents an entity's current financial position by disclosing resources the entity controls (its assets) and the claims on those resources (its liabilities and equity claims), as of a particular point in time (the date of the balance sheet).
- Statement of operations** A financial statement that provides information about a company's profitability over a stated period of time.
- Statistic** A quantity computed from or used to describe a sample of data.
- Statistical inference** Making forecasts, estimates, or judgments about a larger group from a smaller group actually observed; using a sample statistic to infer the value of an unknown population parameter.
- Statistically significant** A result indicating that the null hypothesis can be rejected; with reference to an estimated regression coefficient, frequently understood to mean a result indicating that the corresponding population regression coefficient is different from 0.
- Statutory voting** A common method of voting where each share represents one vote.
- Step-up coupon bond** Bond for which the coupon, which may be fixed or floating, increases by specified margins at specified dates.
- Stock dividend** A type of dividend in which a company distributes additional shares of its common stock to shareholders instead of cash.
- Stock-out losses** Profits lost from not having sufficient inventory on hand to satisfy demand.
- Stock split** An increase in the number of shares outstanding with a consequent decrease in share price, but no change to the company's underlying fundamentals.
- Stop-loss order** See *stop order*.
- Stop order** An order in which a trader has specified a stop price condition. Also called *stop-loss order*.
- Store of value** The quality of tending to preserve value.
- Store of wealth** Goods that depend on the fact that they do not perish physically over time, and on the belief that others would always value the good.
- Straight-line method** A depreciation method that allocates evenly the cost of a long-lived asset less its estimated residual value over the estimated useful life of the asset.
- Straight voting** A shareholder voting process in which shareholders receive one vote for each share owned.
- Strategic analysis** Analysis of the competitive environment with an emphasis on the implications of the environment for corporate strategy.
- Strategic asset allocation** The set of exposures to IPS-permissible asset classes that is expected to achieve the client's long-term objectives given the client's investment constraints.
- Strategic groups** Groups sharing distinct business models or catering to specific market segments in an industry.
- Street convention** Yield measure that neglects weekends and holidays; the internal rate of return on cash flows assuming payments are made on the scheduled dates, even when the scheduled date falls on a weekend or holiday.
- Stress testing** A specific type of scenario analysis that estimates losses in rare and extremely unfavorable combinations of events or scenarios.
- Strong-form efficient market** A market in which security prices reflect all public and private information.
- Structural (or cyclically adjusted) budget deficit** The deficit that would exist if the economy was at full employment (or full potential output).
- Structural subordination** Arises in a holding company structure when the debt of operating subsidiaries is serviced by the cash flow and assets of the subsidiaries before funds can be passed to the holding company to service debt at the parent level.
- Structured financial instruments** Financial instruments that share the common attribute of repackaging risks. Structured financial instruments include asset-backed securities, collateralized debt obligations, and other structured financial instruments such as capital protected, yield enhancement, participation and leveraged instruments.
- Subjective probability** A probability drawing on personal or subjective judgment.
- Subordinated debt** A class of unsecured debt that ranks below a firm's senior unsecured obligations.
- Subordination** Form of internal credit enhancement that relies on creating more than one bond tranche and ordering the claim priorities for ownership or interest in an asset between the tranches. The ordering of the claim priorities is called a senior/subordinated structure, where the tranches of highest seniority are called senior followed by subordinated or junior tranches. Also called *credit tranching*.
- Substitutes** Said of two goods or services such that if the price of one increases the demand for the other tends to increase, holding all other things equal (e.g., butter and margarine).
- Sunk cost** A cost that has already been incurred.
- Supervised learning** A machine learning approach that makes use of labeled training data.

- Supply shock** A typically unexpected disturbance to supply.
- Support** In technical analysis, a price range in which buying activity is sufficient to stop the decline in the price of a security.
- Support tranche** A class or tranche in a CMO that protects the PAC tranche from prepayment risk.
- Supranational bonds** A bond issued by a supranational agency such as the World Bank.
- Surety bond** Form of external credit enhancement whereby a rated and regulated insurance company guarantees to reimburse bondholders for any losses incurred up to a maximum amount if the issuer defaults.
- Survey approach** An estimate of the equity risk premium that is based upon estimates provided by a panel of finance experts.
- Survivorship bias** The bias resulting from a test design that fails to account for companies that have gone bankrupt, merged, or are otherwise no longer reported in a database.
- Sustainable growth rate** The rate of dividend (and earnings) growth that can be sustained over time for a given level of return on equity, keeping the capital structure constant and without issuing additional common stock.
- Sustainable investing** The practice of identifying companies that can efficiently manage their financial, environmental, and human capital resources to generate attractive long-term profitability; often synonymous with *responsible investing*.
- Sustainable rate of economic growth** The rate of increase in the economy's productive capacity or potential GDP.
- Swap contract** An agreement between two parties to exchange a series of future cash flows.
- Syndicated loans** Loans from a group of lenders to a single borrower.
- Syndicated offering** A bond issue that is underwritten by a group of investment banks.
- Synthetic lease** A lease that is structured to provide a company with the tax benefits of ownership while not requiring the asset to be reflected on the company's financial statements.
- Systematic risk** Risk that affects the entire market or economy; it cannot be avoided and is inherent in the overall market. Systematic risk is also known as non-diversifiable or market risk.
- Systematic sampling** A procedure of selecting every k th member until reaching a sample of the desired size. The sample that results from this procedure should be approximately random.
- t-Test** A hypothesis test using a statistic (t -statistic) that follows a t -distribution.
- Tactical asset allocation** The decision to deliberately deviate from the strategic asset allocation in an attempt to add value based on forecasts of the near-term relative performance of asset classes.
- Target balance** A minimum level of cash to be held available—estimated in advance and adjusted for known funds transfers, seasonality, or other factors.
- Target capital structure** A company's chosen proportions of debt and equity.
- Target independent** A bank's ability to determine the definition of inflation that they target, the rate of inflation that they target, and the horizon over which the target is to be achieved.
- Target semideviation** The positive square root of target semivariance.
- Target semivariance** The average squared deviation below a target value.
- Tariffs** Taxes that a government levies on imported goods.
- Tax base** The amount at which an asset or liability is valued for tax purposes.
- Tax expense** An aggregate of an entity's income tax payable (or recoverable in the case of a tax benefit) and any changes in deferred tax assets and liabilities. It is essentially the income tax payable or recoverable if these had been determined based on accounting profit rather than taxable income.
- Tax loss carry forward** A taxable loss in the current period that may be used to reduce future taxable income.
- Taxable income** The portion of an entity's income that is subject to income taxes under the tax laws of its jurisdiction.
- Taxable temporary differences** Temporary differences that result in a taxable amount in a future period when determining the taxable profit as the balance sheet item is recovered or settled.
- Technical analysis** A form of security analysis that uses price and volume data, which is often displayed graphically, in decision making.
- Technology** The process a company uses to transform inputs into outputs.
- Tender offer** Corporate takeover mechanism which involves shareholders selling their interests directly to the group seeking to gain control.
- Tenor** The time-to-maturity for a bond or derivative contract. Also called *term to maturity*.
- Term maturity structure** Structure for a bond issue in which the bond's notional principal is paid off in a lump sum at maturity.
- Term structure** See *maturity structure*.
- Term structure of credit spreads** The relationship between the spreads over the "risk-free" (or benchmark) rates and times-to-maturity.
- Term structure of yield volatility** The relationship between the volatility of bond yields-to-maturity and times-to-maturity.
- Terminal stock value** The expected value of a share at the end of the investment horizon—in effect, the expected selling price. Also called *terminal value*.
- Terminal value** The expected value of a share at the end of the investment horizon—in effect, the expected selling price.
- Terms of trade** The ratio of the price of exports to the price of imports, representing those prices by export and import price indexes, respectively.
- Text analytics** The use of computer programs to analyze and derive meaning from typically large, unstructured text- or voice-based datasets.
- Thematic investing** An ESG implementation approach that focuses on investing in companies within a specific sector or industry theme.
- Third-degree price discrimination** When the monopolist segregates customers into groups based on demographic or other characteristics and offers different pricing to each group.
- Time-period bias** The possibility that when we use a time-series sample, our statistical conclusion may be sensitive to the starting and ending dates of the sample.
- Time-series data** Observations of a variable over time.
- Time tranching** The creation of classes or tranches in an ABS/MBS that possess different (expected) maturities.
- Time value** The difference between the market price of the option and its intrinsic value.

- Time value decay** Said of an option when, at expiration, no time value remains and the option is worth only its exercise value.
- Time value of money** The principles governing equivalence relationships between cash flows with different dates.
- Time-weighted rate of return** The compound rate of growth of one unit of currency invested in a portfolio during a stated measurement period; a measure of investment performance that is not sensitive to the timing and amount of withdrawals or additions to the portfolio.
- Tokenization** The process of representing ownership rights to physical assets on a blockchain or distributed ledger.
- Top-down analysis** With reference to investment selection processes, an approach that starts with macro selection (i.e., identifying attractive geographic segments and/or industry segments) and then addresses selection of the most attractive investments within those segments.
- Total comprehensive income** The change in equity during a period resulting from transaction and other events, other than those changes resulting from transactions with owners in their capacity as owners.
- Total cost** The summation of all costs, for which costs are classified as fixed or variable.
- Total factor productivity** A scale factor that reflects the portion of growth that is not accounted for by explicit factor inputs (e.g. capital and labor).
- Total fixed cost** The summation of all expenses that do not change as the level of production varies.
- Total invested capital** The sum of market value of common equity, book value of preferred equity, and face value of debt.
- Total probability rule** A rule explaining the unconditional probability of an event in terms of probabilities of the event conditional on mutually exclusive and exhaustive scenarios.
- Total probability rule for expected value** A rule explaining the expected value of a random variable in terms of expected values of the random variable conditional on mutually exclusive and exhaustive scenarios.
- Total return** Measures the price appreciation, or percentage change in price of the securities in an index or portfolio, plus any income received over the period.
- Total return index** An index that reflects the price appreciation or percentage change in price of the constituent securities plus any income received since inception.
- Total return swap** A swap in which one party agrees to pay the total return on a security. Often used as a credit derivative, in which the underlying is a bond.
- Total variable cost** The summation of all variable expenses.
- Tracking error** The standard deviation of the differences between a portfolio's returns and its benchmark's returns; a synonym of active risk.
- Tracking risk** The standard deviation of the differences between a portfolio's returns and its benchmark's returns; a synonym of active risk. Also called *tracking error*.
- Trade creation** When regional integration results in the replacement of higher cost domestic production by lower cost imports from other members.
- Trade credit** A spontaneous form of credit in which a purchaser of the goods or service is financing its purchase by delaying the date on which payment is made.
- Trade diversion** When regional integration results in lower-cost imports from non-member countries being replaced with higher-cost imports from members.
- Trade payables** Amounts that a business owes to its vendors for goods and services that were purchased from them but which have not yet been paid.
- Trade protection** Government policies that impose restrictions on trade, such as tariffs and quotas.
- Trade surplus (deficit)** When the value of exports is greater (less) than the value of imports.
- Trading securities** Securities held by a company with the intent to trade them. Also called *held-for-trading securities*.
- Traditional investment markets** Markets for traditional investments, which include all publicly traded debts and equities and shares in pooled investment vehicles that hold publicly traded debts and/or equities.
- Transactions money balances** Money balances that are held to finance transactions.
- Transactions motive** In the context of inventory management, the need for inventory as part of the routine production–sales cycle.
- Transfer payments** Welfare payments made through the social security system that exist to provide a basic minimum level of income for low-income households.
- Transparency** Said of something (e.g., a market) in which information is fully disclosed to the public and/or regulators.
- Treasury Inflation-Protected Securities** A bond issued by the United States Treasury Department that is designed to protect the investor from inflation by adjusting the principal of the bond for changes in inflation.
- Treasury stock method** A method for accounting for the effect of options (and warrants) on earnings per share (EPS) that specifies what EPS would have been if the options and warrants had been exercised and the company had used the proceeds to repurchase common stock.
- Tree diagram** A diagram with branches emanating from nodes representing either mutually exclusive chance events or mutually exclusive decisions.
- Trend** A long-term pattern of movement in a particular direction.
- Treynor ratio** A measure of risk-adjusted performance that relates a portfolio's excess returns to the portfolio's beta.
- Triangle patterns** In technical analysis, a continuation chart pattern that forms as the range between high and low prices narrows, visually forming a triangle.
- Trimmed mean** A mean computed after excluding a stated small percentage of the lowest and highest observations.
- TRIN** A flow of funds indicator applied to a broad stock market index to measure the relative extent to which money is moving into or out of rising and declining stocks.
- Triple bottoms** In technical analysis, a reversal pattern that is formed when the price forms three troughs at roughly the same price level; used to predict a change from a downtrend to an uptrend.
- Triple tops** In technical analysis, a reversal pattern that is formed when the price forms three peaks at roughly the same price level; used to predict a change from an uptrend to a downtrend.
- Trough** The lowest point of a business cycle.
- True yield** The internal rate of return on cash flows using the actual calendar including weekends and bank holidays.
- Trust deed** The governing legal credit agreement, typically incorporated by reference in the prospectus. Also called *bond indenture*.

- Trust receipt arrangement** The use of inventory as collateral for a loan. The inventory is segregated and held in trust, and the proceeds of any sale must be remitted to the lender immediately.
- Turn-of-the-year effect** Calendar anomaly that stock market returns in January are significantly higher compared to the rest of the months of the year, with most of the abnormal returns reported during the first five trading days in January.
- Two-fund separation theorem** The theory that all investors regardless of taste, risk preferences, and initial wealth will hold a combination of two portfolios or funds: a risk-free asset and an optimal portfolio of risky assets.
- Two-sided hypothesis test** A test in which the null hypothesis is rejected in favor of the alternative hypothesis if the evidence indicates that the population parameter is either smaller or larger than a hypothesized value.
- Two-tailed hypothesis test** A test in which the null hypothesis is rejected in favor of the alternative hypothesis if the evidence indicates that the population parameter is either smaller or larger than a hypothesized value.
- Two-week repo rate** The interest rate on a two-week repurchase agreement; may be used as a policy rate by a central bank.
- Type I error** The error of rejecting a true null hypothesis.
- Type II error** The error of not rejecting a false null hypothesis.
- Unanticipated (unexpected) inflation** The component of inflation that is a surprise.
- Unconditional probability** The probability of an event *not* conditioned on another event.
- Underemployed** A person who has a job but has the qualifications to work a significantly higher-paying job.
- Underlying** An asset that trades in a market in which buyers and sellers meet, decide on a price, and the seller then delivers the asset to the buyer and receives payment. The underlying is the asset or other derivative on which a particular derivative is based. The market for the underlying is also referred to as the *spot market*.
- Underwriter** A firm, usually an investment bank, that takes the risk of buying the newly issued securities from the issuer, and then reselling them to investors or to dealers, thus guaranteeing the sale of the securities at the offering price negotiated with the issuer.
- Underwritten offering** A type of securities issue mechanism in which the investment bank guarantees the sale of the securities at an offering price that is negotiated with the issuer. Also known as *firm commitment offering*.
- Unearned revenue** A liability account for money that has been collected for goods or services that have not yet been delivered; payment received in advance of providing a good or service. Also called *deferred revenue* or *deferred income*.
- Unemployed** People who are actively seeking employment but are currently without a job.
- Unemployment rate** The ratio of unemployed to the labor force.
- Unexpected inflation** The component of inflation that is a surprise.
- Unit elastic** An elasticity with a magnitude of negative one. Also called *unitary elastic*.
- Unit labor cost** The average labor cost to produce one unit of output.
- Unit normal distribution** The normal density with mean (μ) equal to 0 and standard deviation (σ) equal to 1.
- Units-of-production method** A depreciation method that allocates the cost of a long-lived asset based on actual usage during the period.
- Univariate distribution** A distribution that specifies the probabilities for a single random variable.
- Universal owners** Long-term investors, such as pension funds, that have significant assets invested in globally diversified portfolios.
- Unlimited funds** An unlimited funds environment assumes that the company can raise the funds it wants for all profitable projects simply by paying the required rate of return.
- Unsecured debt** Debt which gives the debtholder only a general claim on an issuer's assets and cash flow.
- Un-sponsored** A type of depository receipt in which the foreign company whose shares are held by the depository has no involvement in the issuance of the receipts.
- Unsupervised learning** A machine learning approach that does not make use of labeled training data.
- Up transition probability** The probability that an asset's value moves up.
- Validity instructions** Instructions which indicate when the order may be filled.
- Valuation allowance** A reserve created against deferred tax assets, based on the likelihood of realizing the deferred tax assets in future accounting periods.
- Valuation ratios** Ratios that measure the quantity of an asset or flow (e.g., earnings) in relation to the price associated with a specified claim (e.g., a share or ownership of the enterprise).
- Value at risk (VaR)** A money measure of the minimum value of losses expected during a specified time period at a given level of probability.
- Value investors** With reference to equity investors, investors who are focused on paying a relatively low share price in relation to earnings or assets per share.
- VaR** See *value at risk*.
- Variable costs** Costs that fluctuate with the level of production and sales.
- Variable-rate note** Similar to a floating-rate note, except that the spread is variable rather than constant.
- Variance** The expected value (the probability-weighted average) of squared deviations from a random variable's expected value.
- Variation margin** Additional margin that must be deposited in an amount sufficient to bring the balance up to the initial margin requirement.
- Veblen goods** Goods that increase in desirability with increasing price.
- Vega** A measure of the sensitivity of an option's price to changes in the underlying's volatility.
- Venture capital** Investments that provide "seed" or start-up capital, early-stage financing, or later-stage financing (including mezzanine-stage financing) to companies that are in early development stages and require additional capital for expansion or preparation for an initial public offering.
- Venture capital fund** A fund for private equity investors that provides financing for development-stage companies.
- Vertical analysis** Common-size analysis using only one reporting period or one base financial statement; for example, an income statement in which all items are stated as percentages of sales.
- Vertical demand schedule** Implies that some fixed quantity is demanded, regardless of price.

- Volatility** As used in option pricing, the standard deviation of the continuously compounded returns on the underlying asset.
- Voluntarily unemployed** A person voluntarily outside the labor force, such as a jobless worker refusing an available vacancy.
- Voluntary export restraint** A trade barrier under which the exporting country agrees to limit its exports of the good to its trading partners to a specific number of units.
- Vote by proxy** A mechanism that allows a designated party—such as another shareholder, a shareholder representative, or management—to vote on the shareholder's behalf.
- Warehouse receipt arrangement** The use of inventory as collateral for a loan; similar to a trust receipt arrangement except there is a third party (i.e., a warehouse company) that supervises the inventory.
- Warrant** Attached option that gives its holder the right to buy the underlying stock of the issuing company at a fixed exercise price until the expiration date.
- Weak-form efficient market hypothesis** The belief that security prices fully reflect all past market data, which refers to all historical price and volume trading information.
- Wealth effect** An increase (decrease) in household wealth increases (decreases) consumer spending out of a given level of current income.
- Weighted average cost method** An inventory accounting method that averages the total cost of available inventory items over the total units available for sale.
- Weighted average cost of capital** A weighted average of the aftertax required rates of return on a company's common stock, preferred stock, and long-term debt, where the weights are the fraction of each source of financing in the company's target capital structure.
- Weighted average coupon rate** Weighting the mortgage rate of each mortgage loan in the pool by the percentage of the mortgage outstanding relative to the outstanding amount of all the mortgages in the pool.
- Weighted average life** A measure that gives investors an indication of how long they can expect to hold the MBS before it is paid off; the convention-based average time to receipt of all principal repayments. Also called *average life*.
- Weighted average maturity** Weighting the remaining number of months to maturity for each mortgage loan in the pool by the amount of the outstanding mortgage balance.
- Weighted mean** An average in which each observation is weighted by an index of its relative importance.
- Wholesale price index** Reflects the price changes experienced by domestic producers in a country.
- Winsorized mean** A mean computed after assigning a stated percent of the lowest values equal to one specified low value, and a stated percent of the highest values equal to one specified high value.
- Working capital** The difference between current assets and current liabilities.
- Working capital management** The management of a company's short-term assets (such as inventory) and short-term liabilities (such as money owed to suppliers).
- World price** The price prevailing in the world market.
- Yield** The actual return on a debt security if it is held to maturity.
- Yield duration** The sensitivity of the bond price with respect to the bond's own yield-to-maturity.
- Yield to maturity** Annual return that an investor earns on a bond if the investor purchases the bond today and holds it until maturity. It is the discount rate that equates the present value of the bond's expected cash flows until maturity with the bond's price. Also called *yield-to-redemption* or *redemption yield*.
- Yield to redemption** See *yield to maturity*.
- Yield-to-worst** The lowest of the sequence of yields-to-call and the yield-to-maturity.
- Zero-coupon bonds** Bonds that do not pay interest during the bond's life. It is issued at a discount to par value and redeemed at par. Also called *pure discount bonds*.
- Zero volatility spread (Z-spread)** Calculates a constant yield spread over a government (or interest rate swap) spot curve.

Index

A

absolute return, for alternative investments, 129–130
 Accredited Investors, 133n.14
 active management, 124, 129
 activist strategy, hedge fund, 136
 adjusted funds from operations (AFFO), 166
 Africa, 164–165
 agriculture, 167, 168
 AIG, 32, 33
 Alternative Investment Fund Managers Directive (AIFMD), 144
 alternative investments, 123–193
 categories of, 128–129
 collectibles, 175–176
 commodities, 167–173
 derivatives and indexes, 168–169
 investment vehicles, 169–170
 performance and diversification benefits, 170–171
 prices of, 171–173
 common characteristics, 124–128
 defined, 123–124
 hedge funds, 133–148
 about, 133–135
 diversification benefits, 138–139
 due diligence, 146–148
 fees and returns, 139–143
 investment strategies for, 135–138
 and leverage, 143–144
 and redemptions, 144–145
 valuation issues, 145–146
 historical records of, 126
 infrastructure investments, 173–175
 portfolio diversification with, 132
 practice problems, 184–188
 private equity, 148–158
 diversification benefits, 155–156
 due diligence, 158
 investment strategies, 150–154
 portfolio company valuation, 156–157
 structure and fees, 149–150
 real estate, 158–167
 forms of investment, 159–161
 investment categories, 161–163
 performance and diversification benefits, 163–165
 risks with, 166–167
 valuation, 165–166
 returns from, 129–132
 risk management, 176–180
 due diligence with, 178–180
 process, 177
 risk–return measures, 178–179
 solutions to problems, 189–193
 structures for, 132–133
 and traditional investments, 132
 Amaranth Advisors LLC, 171

American options (American-style options)
 defined, 26, 85
 pricing, 104–107
 Americas, 164–165
 appraisal indexes (real estate), 163
 arbitrage
 commodities, 172
 defined, 47
 in derivatives pricing, 47–52, 66–72
 executing, 67
 with forward contracts, 49–50
 frequency of arbitrage opportunities, 67
 and hedge funds, 136
 limits to, 70
 and put–call parity, 97
 and relative valuation, 47–49
 and replication, 68–69
 risk, 50n.24
 with stocks and risk-free bonds, 47–49
 arbitrage-free pricing, 70
 Art Market Research, 176
 Artpiece, 176
 Asia, 159. *see also specific countries and regions*
 Asia-Pacific, 164–165
 ask price, 10n.3, 145
 asset-backed securities, 33–35
 asset-based valuation approach
 for private equity, 157
 for REITs, 166
 assets under management (AUM)
 alternative investments, 123–124
 global, 125
 growth of, 134–135
 hedge funds, 134–135
 institutionally owned real estate, 159
 by strategy, 135
 at the money, 27, 87
 AUM. *see* assets under management
 Australasia, 159
 average quote, for hedge fund valuation, 145

B

backfill bias, 125n.3
 backwardation, 173
 Bank for International Settlements (BIS), 39
 Bank of Montreal, 171
 base metals, as commodities, 167, 168
 basis swaps, 24
 beta, 129
 biases, 125–126, 143
 bid prices, 10n.3, 145
 binomial valuation of options, 100–104
 BIS. *see* Bank for International Settlements
 Bloomberg Barclays Global Aggregate Index, 134, 165
 bonds
 arbitrage with, 47–49, 67
 convertible, 146

downside frequencies of, 131
 margin, 11
 performance of, 11, 134–135
 puts vs. short sales and, 93
 returns, 126, 139, 170
 risk-free, 47–49
 Sharpe and Sortino ratios, 131
 volatility, 126
 bottom up strategies, 136, 137
 brokers, 144
 brownfield investments, 174
 bubbles, 42
 buyers, derivatives, 7

C

CAIA Association. *see* Chartered Alternative Investment Analyst Association
 call options (calls)
 American, 105–107
 defined, 26, 85
 European (*see* European call options)
 fiduciary, 95–96, 99
 margin transactions vs., 91–92
 payoff from, 26–28
 profits from, 27–28
 Cambridge Associates Modified Public Market Equivalent (mPME), 155
 capital
 committed, 149–150
 development, 148–149
 and private equity valuation, 158
 capitalization rate (cap rate), 165, 166
 carry, 65
 cash flows
 DCF valuation approach, 157, 166
 free cash flow to equity, 157
 in swaps, 82
 cash markets, 5
 cash prices. *see* spot prices
 cash-settled forwards. *see* nondeliverable forwards (NDFs)
 cash settlement
 of futures, 20
 of options, 26
 CBOT. *see* Chicago Board of Trade
 CDSs. *see* credit default swaps
 Chartered Alternative Investment Analyst (CAIA) Association, 135n.17
 Chicago, Illinois, 39
 Chicago Board of Trade (CBOT), 37, 39–40
 China, 167–168
 China Aviation Oil Corp., 171
 Christie's, 176
 clawback, private equity, 150
 clearing (term), 11
 clearinghouse
 daily settlement by, 18, 19
 in exchange-traded derivatives market, 11
 CLNs. *see* credit-linked notes

- CMBS. *see* commercial mortgage-backed securities
- CMOs. *see* collateralized mortgage obligations
- collateral
- for hedge funds, 143–144
 - real estate as, 158
- collateralized bond obligations, 34
- collateralized debt obligations
- defined, 34
 - underlying for, 37–38
 - valuation of, 146
- collateralized loan obligations, 34
- collateralized mortgage obligations (CMOs), 34
- collateral yield, 173
- collectibles, 175–176
- commercial mortgage-backed securities (CMBS), 162–163
- commercial real estate investments
- direct and indirect investing in, 162
 - global assets under management, 125
 - institutionally owned, 159
- committed capital, for private equity, 149–150
- commodities, 167–173
- benefits and costs of holding, 64–65
 - defined, 129
 - derivatives and indexes, 168–169
 - downside frequencies, 131
 - global assets under management, 125
 - growth in, 127
 - investment vehicles, 169–170
 - performance and diversification
 - benefits, 170–171
 - prices of, 171–173
 - returns on, 126, 131, 167, 170
 - risk–return tradeoffs for, 132
 - Sharpe and Sortino ratios, 131
 - as underlying, 5, 37
 - volatility, 126
- commodity exchange traded funds, 129
- commodity futures, 37
- pricing of, 171–173
 - risk management with, 177
- commodity indexes, 126, 168–169
- commodity trading advisers (CTAs), 128
- common stock, for commodities
- investing, 169
- communication assets, 174
- comparable sales approach to real estate valuation, 165
- complexity, of derivatives, 44
- concentrated portfolio strategies, 130
- consumer goods, arbitrage opportunity with, 47
- contango, 172–173
- contingent claims, 25–35. *see also* options
- asset-backed securities, 33–35
 - credit derivatives, 30–33
 - defined, 7, 61
 - forward commitments vs., 35–36
 - options, 25–30, 33
- contracts for differences. *see* nondeliverable forwards (NDFs)
- convenience yield. *see* roll yield
- convertible bonds, 146
- cost approach to real estate valuation, 166
- cost of carry
- and price of European options, 90–91
 - and price of forward contracts, 77
 - and storage, 46
 - for underlying assets, 65
- cost of equity, in private equity valuation, 156–157
- costs
- of holding assets, 64–66
 - opportunity, 63, 65
 - rebuilding, 166
 - “soft,” 166
 - transaction, 41, 70
- counterparties, futures, 18
- covenants, with leveraged loans, 151
- crashes, 42
- credit, as underlying, 37–38
- credit default swaps (CDSs), 31–33, 37
- credit derivatives, 30–33
- credit-linked notes (CLNs), 31
- credit risk, 30, 32
- credit spread options, 30–31
- crop types (farmland investments), 163
- cross-border real estate investments, 159
- CTAs. *see* commodity trading advisers
- currencies, as underlying, 5, 37. *see also* specific currencies
- currency swaps, 23n.12, 37
- D**
- daily settlement, 18, 19
- DCF. *see* discounted cash flow valuation approach
- dealer market. *see* over-the-counter (OTC) derivatives market
- dealers, in OTC derivatives market, 12
- debt, distressed, 146
- debt financing, for real estate, 161, 162. *see also* mortgages
- default
- in forward contracts, 15
 - in swaps, 23
- delivery
- of futures, 20
 - of options, 26
- demand, for commodities, 171
- derivatives, 5–58
- benefits of, 41–42
 - characteristics of, 8–9
 - contingent claims, 25–35
 - asset-backed securities, 33–35
 - credit derivatives, 30–33
 - forward commitments vs., 35–36
 - options, 25–30, 33
 - criticisms of, 42–45
 - defined, 6, 60–62
 - forward commitments, 14–25
 - contingent claims vs., 35–36
 - forward contracts, 14–17, 24, 73–80
 - futures contracts, 17–21, 24, 80–82
 - pricing, 73–85
 - swaps, 21–25, 82–85
 - hedging with, 67–68
 - hybrid, 35
 - markets for, 9–14, 38–39
 - practice problems, 54–55
 - pricing, 45–52, 59–117
 - about, 60
 - arbitrage and, 47–52, 66–72
 - definition of derivatives, 60–62
 - forward commitments, 73–85
 - options, 85–100, 104–107
 - practice problems, 109–113
 - pricing underlying assets, 62–66
 - solutions to problems, 114–117
 - storage in, 46–47
 - valuation vs. pricing, 72–73
 - purposes of, 39–41, 44–45
 - solutions to problems, 56–58
 - types of, 14–39
 - underlyings for, 36–39
 - uses of, 7–9
 - valuation of, 45–52
 - binomial valuation of options, 100–104
 - forward commitments, 73–85
 - pricing vs. valuation, 72–73
- derivatives market, 9–14
- exchange-traded, 10–11, 13–14
 - over-the-counter, 11–14
 - size of, 38–39
- destabilization, economic, 43–44
- Deutsche Börse, 9
- development capital, 148–149
- direct capitalization approach to real estate valuation, 165
- direct investment, in infrastructure assets, 174
- direct ownership, of real estate, 160, 161
- disclosure, by hedge funds, 147
- discounted cash flow (DCF) valuation approach
- for private equity, 157
 - for real estate, 166
- distressed debt, valuation of, 146
- distressed investing (private equity), 149, 153
- distressed property investments, 167
- distressed/restructuring strategy, for hedge funds, 136
- diversification
- with alternative investments, 125, 127, 132
 - with commodities, 170–171
 - with hedge funds, 138–139
 - with private equity, 155–156
 - with real estate, 158, 163–165
- Dodd–Frank Act. *see* Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act (2010)
- downside risk
- measures of, 178–179
 - and returns, 131
 - and Sharpe ratios, 130–131
- drawdown, hedge funds, 144–145
- due diligence
- for hedge fund investing, 146–148
 - for private equity investments, 158
 - and risk management for alternative investments, 178–180
- E**
- early exercise, of American options, 104–106
- earnings before interest, taxes, depreciation, and amortization (EBITDA)
- for leveraged buyouts, 150
 - for private equity, 156–157

- economic destabilization, 43–44
economic infrastructure assets, 174
efficient markets, 42, 50, 138
emerging markets, fixed-income securities for, 146
endowments, 127
energy
 as commodity, 167, 168
 speculators on, 43n.20
energy mutual funds, 170
energy unit trusts, 170
equities. *see also* stock
 global assets under management, 125
 returns on hedge funds vs., 139
 as underlying, 5, 36
equity
 free cash flow to equity, 157
 minority equity investing, 153
 in residential properties, 161
equity hedge strategies, 135, 137–138
equity markets
 efficiency of, 42
 OTC derivatives market vs., 9–10
equity-only funds, 137
equity options, 36n.15
equity real estate investment trusts, 162
equity swaps, 36
equity tranches, 34
estimates, of alternative investment values, 125
ETFs. *see* exchange-traded funds
EU. *see* European Union
Eurex, 9
Euro Interbank Offered Rate (Euribor), 78n.11
Europe, 159, 164–165. *see also specific countries and regions*
European call options
 and American call options, 105
 binomial option pricing with, 101–103
 exercise price of, 87, 88
 at expiration, 86
 minimum prices for, 91–93
 payments on underlying and carrying costs for, 91
 and risk-free rate of interest, 89
 time to expiration for, 88
 and value of underlying, 87
 volatility of underlying for, 90
European options (European-style options)
 defined, 26, 85
 pricing, 85–100
 and exercise price, 87–88
 at expiration, 86
 minimum prices of calls and puts, 91–93
 and payments on underlying/cost of carry, 90–91
 put-call-forward parity, 98–99
 put-call parity, 94–98, 100
 and risk-free rate of interest, 89
 and time to expiration, 88–89
 and value of underlying, 87
 and volatility of underlying, 89–90
European Public Real Estate Association, 164
European put options
 and American put options, 105
 binomial option pricing with, 103
 exercise price of, 87–88
 at expiration, 86
 minimum prices for, 91–93
 payments on underlying and carrying costs for, 91
 and risk-free rate of interest, 89
 time to expiration for, 88, 89
 and value of underlying, 87
 volatility of underlying for, 90
European Union (EU), 144
event-driven strategies, with hedge funds, 135–136
exchange-traded derivatives market, 10–11
 OTC vs., 13–14
 size of, 38
exchange-traded funds (ETFs)
 as alternative investments, 124
 and beta exposure, 129
 for commodities investing, 169
 derivatives vs., 6
exchange-traded options, 25
exercise price, of options, 26, 87–88
exercise value, of European options, 86
exit strategies, for private equity investments, 154
expansion venture capital, 153
expiration
 of forward contracts, 73–74
 of options, 26–30, 86
 time to, 88–89
- F**
fair value, 157
farmland, investing in, 158–159, 163
“fast” money, 142
fees
 fund, 133
 for hedge funds, 133, 134n.16, 139–143
 incentive
 for fund investments, 133
 hedge funds, 139–140
 private equity, 150
 management
 for fund investments, 133
 hedge funds, 139–140, 143
 private equity, 149–150
 net-of-fees returns, 142
 1 and 10 fee structure, 139
 performance, 133, 177
 with private equity investments, 149–150
 for REITs and real estate partnerships, 161
 2 and 20 fee structure, 139, 140
FFO. *see* funds from operations
fiduciary calls, 95–96, 99
financial crisis (2008), 43–44
financing
 of leveraged buyouts, 150–151
 of real estate investments, 161, 162 (*see also* mortgages)
 venture capital, 152–153
fixed-for-floating interest rate swaps, 22–23
fixed income asset backed strategies, for hedge funds, 137
fixed income convertible arbitrage strategy, for hedge funds, 136
fixed income general strategies, for hedge funds, 137
fixed-income investments. *see also* bonds
 as assets under management, 125
 as underlying, 5, 36–37
formative-stage financing (venture capital), 152
Fortune magazine, 133
forward commitments, 14–25, 73–85
 contingent claims vs., 35–36
 defined, 7, 61
 forward contracts, 14–17, 24, 73–80
 futures contracts, 17–21, 24, 80–82
 options vs., 30
 pricing of, 73–85
 swaps, 21–25, 82–85
 valuation of, 73–85
forward price, 14, 26
forward rate agreements (FRAs), 77–79
forwards (forward contracts), 14–17
 arbitrage with, 49–50
 for commodities, 168
 defined, 14–15, 61
 futures vs., 21, 24, 80–81
 on interest rates, 77–79
 off-market, 83–84
 pricing and valuation of, 73–80
 put-call parity for, 98–99
 swaps and, 24, 82–83
 time horizon of, 74
FRAs. *see* forward rate agreements
free cash flow to equity, 157
FTSE Group, 164
FTSE infrastructure index, 175
fundamental growth strategies, for hedge funds, 137
fundamental value strategies, for hedge funds, 137
funds
 for commodities investing, 169, 170
 structure of, 132–133
funds from operations (FFO), 166
funds of funds
 benefits of, 146
 defined, 134
 fee structures for, 139–140, 142
 multi-strategy hedge funds vs., 138
 performance of, 134–135
 returns on, 139, 142, 143
futures (futures contracts), 17–21
 commodities, 37, 168, 171–173
 defined, 17, 61
 forwards vs., 21, 24
 price discovery with, 40–41
 pricing and valuation of, 80–82
 swaps vs., 24
futures markets, regulation of, 21
futures price, 18, 40–41
- G**
gambling, speculation vs., 43
GB 250 Stamp Index, 175–176
generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP), 162
general partners (GPs)
 funds as, 132
 in private equity investments, 149, 150, 158

- Global S&P REIT index, 126
 growth strategies, for hedge funds, 138
- H**
 “haircuts,” 146
 hard hurdle rate, 139
 hedge fund indexes, 125, 143
 Hedge Fund Research, Inc. (HFRI), 134, 135
 hedge funds, 133–149
 about, 133–135
 as alternative investments, 124
 classifying, 135
 defined, 128
 diversification benefits, 138–139
 downside frequencies, 131
 due diligence, 146–148, 178
 fees, 139–143
 global assets under management, 125
 historical returns and volatility, 126
 investment strategies for, 135–138
 equity hedge strategies, 137–138
 event-driven strategies, 136
 macro strategies, 137
 relative value strategies, 136–137
 and leverage, 143–144
 performance of, 134–135
 and redemptions, 144–145
 registration of, 144
 returns, 131, 139–143
 risks of, 132, 178
 Sharpe and Sortino ratios, 131
 valuation issues, 145–146
 hedge portfolios, 46
 hedging
 with credit default swaps, 32
 with derivatives, 67–68
 with forward contracts, 17
 with futures, 21
 inflation hedges, 158, 170–171
 in OTC derivatives market, 12
 hedging pressure hypothesis, 173
 heuristics, 157n.30
 HFRI. *see* Hedge Fund Research, Inc.
 HFRI Fund of Funds Index, 134
 high net worth investors
 alternative investments of, 125, 127–128
 commercial property investment by, 162
 high water marks
 for fund investments, 133
 hedge funds, 140
 historical returns
 of alternative investments, 125
 of commodities, 170
 of investment classes, 126
 of private equity investments, 155–156
 of real estate investments, 164–165
 Honus Wagner baseball card, 176n.39
 hurdle rate, hedge fund, 139
 hybrid derivatives, 35
- I**
 illiquid asset investments
 due diligence with, 178
 and historical returns, 126–127
 risk issues with, 177
 valuation of, 146
 implied volatility, 41
 incentive fees
 for fund investments, 133
 for hedge funds, 139–140
 for private equity, 150
 income, net operating, 165
 income approach to real estate valuation, 165–166
 indexes
 for collectibles investments, 175–176
 commodity, 168–169
 bias in, 126
 hedge fund, 125, 143
 of real estate returns, 163–165
 index swaps, 36
 India, 167–168
 indirect investment
 in commercial real estate, 162
 in infrastructure assets, 174
 individual managed accounts, of
 commodities, 170
 inflation hedges
 commodities as, 170–171
 real estate as, 158
 information discovery, 40–41
 infrastructure assets, 129, 173–174
 infrastructure exchange traded funds, 129
 infrastructure investments, 173–175
 assets for, 129
 categories of, 174
 forms of, 174
 risks and returns with, 175
 initial margin requirement, 18
 initial public offerings (IPOs), 154
 initiation date, forward contracts at, 74–76
 INSEAD, 127
 institutional investors
 alternative investments of, 125
 commercial property investment by, 162
 insurance
 and credit default swaps, 31, 32
 and derivatives, 7
 intangible assets, as alternative
 investments, 129
 interest, open, 20
 interest rates
 forwards on, 77–79
 and private equity valuation, 158
 risk-free, 89
 term structure of, 79
 as underlying, 36–37
 interest rate swaps, 22–23
 International Private Equity and Venture
 Capital Valuation Guidelines, 156
 International Swaps and Derivatives
 Association (ISDA), 11
 in the money, 27, 87
 intrinsic value, of European options, 86
 Investment Company Act (1940), 133n.14
 investment strategies
 for hedge funds, 135–138
 for private equity, 150–154
 investors
 high net worth
 alternative investments of, 125, 127–128
 commercial property investment by, 162
 institutional
 alternative investments of, 125
 commercial property investment by, 162
 risk aversion of, 63–64, 69–70
 culture, 153
 IPOs. *see* initial public offerings
 ISDA. *see* International Swaps and
 Derivatives Association
- J**
 Jones, Alfred Winslow, 133
 junior tranche, 34
- L**
 later-stage financing (venture capital), 153
 Latin America, 159
 law of one price, 47, 67
 LBOs. *see* leveraged buyouts
 leases, multiple-year, 158
 leverage
 and derivatives, 44
 and hedge funds, 143–144
 and historical returns, 126–127
 in real estate investing, 167
 risk associated with, 177
 leveraged buyouts (LBOs), 150–152
 defined, 148
 financing of, 150–151
 target companies for, 151–152
 leveraged loans, covenants with, 151
 leveraged ownership, of real estate, 160
 leveraged transactions, call options vs., 91–92
 Libor. *see* London Interbank Offered
 Rate
 life of contract, pricing/valuation over, 76–77
 limit down, 19
 limited partners (LPs)
 investors as, 132
 in private equity, 149, 150, 158
 in real estate, 160
 limit up, 19
 liquidation, private equity, 154, 157
 liquidation value, of private equity, 157
 liquidity
 of alternative investments, 177
 of derivatives, 41
 of exchange-traded derivatives market, 10
 of OTC derivatives market, 12
 and valuation, 146
 loans
 leveraged, 150–151
 stand-alone mortgage, 160–161
 loan-to-value ratio, for commercial real
 estate, 162
 locked limit, 19
 lockup period, hedge fund, 133, 144
 London Interbank Offered Rate (Libor)
 asset returns vs., 170
 defined, 23n.11
 in forward rate agreements, 78
 historical returns and volatility, 126
 swaps based on, 23
 and TED spread, 24
 as underlying, 37

- long (term), 7
- Long-Term Capital Management, 43
- losses, on commodities, 171
- LPs. *see* limited partners
- M**
- macro strategies, with hedge funds, 135, 137
- maintenance margin requirement, 18
- managed futures funds, 169
- management buy-ins (MBIs), 150
- management buyouts (MBOs), 150
- management fees
 - for fund investments, 133
 - for hedge funds, 139–140, 143
 - for private equity investments, 149–150
- margin
 - for futures, 18–19
 - for hedge funds, 144
- margin bond, 11
- margin calls, 19, 144
- margin transactions, 91–92
- market efficiency, 42, 50, 138
- market makers, 10–11
- market neutral strategies, for hedge funds, 137
- market or comparables valuation approach, for private equity, 156–157
- markets
 - cash, 5
 - derivatives, 9–14, 38–39
 - efficient, 42, 50, 138
 - equity, 9–10, 42
 - spot, 5
- market segmentation, 130
- market value, 38–39, 157
- marking to market, for futures, 18, 80
- mark-to-market value, 73n.7
- master limited partnerships (MLPs), 174, 175
- MBIs. *see* management buy-ins
- MBOs. *see* management buyouts
- MBSs. *see* mortgage-backed securities
- members, exchange, 10n.4
- merger arbitrage strategy, for hedge funds, 136
- mezzanine financing, for leveraged buyouts, 151
- mezzanine-stage financing (mezzanine venture capital), 153
- mezzanine tranche, 34
- Middle East, 164–165
- minimum prices
 - of American options, 105–106
 - of European options, 91–93
- minority equity investing, 153
- MLPs. *see* master limited partnerships
- moneyiness, 87
- mortgage-backed securities (MBSs), 162–163
- mortgage real estate investment trusts, 162
- mortgages, 160–161
 - for residential property, 161
 - securitization of, 160–163
- MSCI ACWI Index, 134, 165, 175
- MSCI World Index, 155, 156
- multiple-year leases, 158
- multi-strategy strategies, for hedge funds, 137
- mutual funds, derivatives vs., 6
- N**
- NAREIT. *see* National Association of Real Estate Investment Trusts
- NASDAQ 100 Index (NASDAQ), 10, 155
- National Association of Real Estate Investment Trusts (NAREIT), 164
- National Council of Real Estate Investment Fiduciaries (NCREIF), 164
- NAV. *see* net asset value
- NCREIF. *see* National Council of Real Estate Investment Fiduciaries
- NCREIF Farmland index, 164
- NCREIF Property index, 164
- NDFs. *see* nondeliverable forwards
- Nestlé SA, 143
- net asset value (NAV)
 - and drawdown, 144
 - of REITs, 166
 - trading vs. reporting, 146
- net-of-fees returns, hedge fund, 142
- net operating income (NOI), 165
- New York Stock Exchange, 9
- no arbitrage, principle of, 70
- NOI. *see* net operating income
- nondeliverable forwards (NDFs), 17
- non-traded investments, valuation of, 146
- North America, 159. *see also* United States
- notes, credit-linked, 31
- notice period, hedge fund, 133
- notional principal
 - in currency swaps, 23n.12
 - defined, 23
 - as measure of OTC market, 39
- NYSE Euronext, 143
- O**
- off-market forwards, 83–84
- offsetting transactions, with futures, 20
- 1 and 10 fee structure, 139
- one price, law of, 47, 67
- open interest, 20
- opportunity costs, 63, 65
- option premium (option price), 26
- options (options contracts), 25–30, 33. *see also specific types, e.g.:* call options
 - binomial valuation of, 100–104
 - commodity, 169
 - defined, 7, 25, 61
 - forward commitments vs., 30
 - implied volatility with, 41
 - pricing, 85–100, 104–107
 - American options, 104–107
 - European options, 85–100
 - on stocks, 36
- Orange County, California, 44
- OTC derivatives market. *see* over-the-counter derivatives market
- out of the money, 27, 87
- overnight indexed swaps, 24
- over-the-counter (OTC) derivatives market, 11–14
 - equities market vs., 9–10
 - exchange-traded vs., 13–14
 - size of, 38–39
- owner's equity, in residential properties, 161
- ownership, of real estate, 160
- P**
- passive management, 129
- payments, on underlying assets, 90–91
- payoffs
 - from call options, 26–28
 - with contingent claims, 25
 - from forward contracts, 15–16
 - with futures, 20–21
 - from put options, 28–30
- performance bond, 11
- performance fees
 - for fund investments, 133
 - and risk, 177
- permanent crops, 163
- physical delivery. *see* delivery
- plain vanilla swaps, 22–23, 37
- pooled real estate vehicles, 160
- portfolio company
 - defined, 152
 - valuation of, 156–157
- portfolios, hedge, 46
- PPPs. *see* public-private partnerships
- precious metals, 167, 168
- premium, risk, 63
- prepayment, 34
- Preqin index, 175
- present value of future cash flows
 - approach, 62
- price discovery, 40–41
- price limits, futures, 19
- prices
 - ask, 10n.3, 145
 - bid, 10n.3, 145
 - exercise, 26
 - forward, 14, 26
 - futures, 18, 40–41
 - option, 26
 - settlement, 18
 - spot, 5, 40–41, 171, 173
- pricing
 - derivatives, 45–52, 59–117
 - about, 60
 - and arbitrage, 47–52, 66–72
 - definition of derivatives, 60–62
 - forward commitments, 73–85
 - options, 85–100, 104–107
 - practice problems, 109–113
 - pricing underlying assets, 62–66
 - solutions to problems, 114–117
 - storage in, 46–47
 - valuation vs. pricing, 72–73
 - forward commitments, 73–85
 - forward contracts, 73–80
 - futures, 80–82, 171–173
 - options, 85–100, 104–107
 - American options, 104–107
 - European options, 85–100
- of risky assets, 64
- swap contracts, 82–85
- of underlying assets, 62–66
 - benefits and costs of holding assets, 64–66
 - forming price expectations, 62–63
 - pricing of risky assets, 64
 - required rate of return on assets, 63
 - risk aversion of investors, 63–64

- prime brokers, 144
principle of no arbitrage, 70
private energy partnerships, 170
private equity, 148–158
 diversification benefits, 155–156
 downside frequencies, 131
 due diligence, 158
 global assets under management, 125
 growth in, 127
 historical returns and volatility, 126
 investment strategies, 150–154
 exit strategies, 154
 leveraged buyouts, 150–152
 minority and distressed, 153
 venture capital, 152–153
portfolio company valuation, 156–157
returns for, 125, 155–156
risk management with, 177
Sharpe and Sortino ratios, 131
structure and fees, 149–150
private equity funds
 as alternative investments, 124
 defined, 128–129
 returns in, 155–156
private placements, 132n.13
probabilities, risk-neutral, 102–103
profits
 with calls, 27–28
 with puts, 28–29
property development investments, 167
protective puts
 defined, 95
 fiduciary calls vs., 96, 99
 with forward contracts, 98–99
publicly traded infrastructure securities, 174
public–private partnerships (PPPs), 173
put–call–forward parity, 98–99
put–call parity, 94–98, 100
put options (puts)
 American, 105–107
 defined, 26, 85
 European (*see* European put options)
 and insurance, 7
 payoffs from, 28–30
 profits from, 28–29
 protective, 95, 96, 98–99
- Q**
Qualified Purchasers, 133n.14
quantitative directional strategies, for hedge funds, 138
- R**
rate of return, on underlying, 63
real estate, 158–167
 commercial, 125, 158–159, 162
 defined, 129
 downside frequencies, 131
 forms of investment, 159–161
 growth in, 128
 historical returns and volatility, 126
 institutionally owned, 125, 159
 investment categories, 161–163
 performance and diversification benefits, 163–165
 risk management with, 177
 risks with, 166–167
 Sharpe and Sortino ratios, 131
 valuation, 165–166
real estate investment trusts (REITs)
 and beta exposure, 129
 equity, 162
 function of, 159
 growth in, 128
 mortgage, 162
 returns on, 164–165
 risk management with, 177
 shares of, 160
 tax advantages for, 126
 valuation of, 166
real estate limited partnerships, 160
rebuilding cost, 166
recapitalization, private equity, 154
redemptions, hedge fund, 133, 144–145
refinancing risk, 158
Reg D Offerings, 132n.13
regulation
 of futures, 21
 of OTC derivatives market, 12–13
Regulation D, 132n.13
Regulation of the European Parliament and of the Council on OTC Derivatives, Central Counterparties, and Trade Repositories, 12–13
regulatory risk, 175
REIT indexes, 163, 164
REITs. *see* real estate investment trusts
relative value strategies, with hedge funds, 135–137
repeat sales indexes (real estate), 163–164
replication, 68–69
reporting NAV, 146
residential mortgage-backed securities (RMBS), 161
residential property investments, 158, 161
return(s). *see also specific types of investments*
 absolute, 129–130
 net-of-fees, 142
 total, 158
risk(s)
 with alternative investments, 125, 130–131, 178–179
 with arbitrage transactions, 70
 credit, 30, 32
 downside, 130–131, 178–179
 with infrastructure investments, 175
 measures of, 130–131
 with real estate investments, 166–167
 refinancing, 158
 regulatory, 175
 safety-first, 179
 shortfall, 179
 systematic, 129
 systemic, 32, 43–44
 transfer of, 8, 40
 value at risk, 178–179
risk allocation, 40
risk arbitrage, 50n.24
risk aversion, 63–64, 69
risk-free bonds, arbitrage with, 47–49
risk-free rate of interest, 89
risk management
 with alternative investments, 176–180
 due diligence, 178–180
 process, 177
 risk–return measures, 178–179
 with derivatives, 8, 9, 40
 with forward contracts, 17
 systems, 147–148
risk-neutral investors, 63
risk-neutral pricing, 70
risk-neutral probabilities, 102–103
risk premium, 63
risk–return tradeoff
 measures of, 178–179
 for traditional and alternative investments, 130–132
risk-seeking investors, 63
risky assets, pricing, 64
RMBS. *see* residential mortgage-backed securities
roll yield (convenience yield), 64–65, 173
row crops, 163
Royal Dutch Shell, 169
“rules of thumb,” 157n.30
- S**
safety-first risk, 179
scenario analysis, 179
SEC. *see* US Securities and Exchange Commission
secondary sales, of private equity, 154
sector specific strategies, for hedge funds, 138
Securities Act (1933), 132n.13
securitization, of mortgages, 160–163
sellers, derivatives, 7
senior tranche, 34
settlement
 cash, 20, 26
 daily, 18, 19
 defined, 11
 settlement price, 18
Sharpe ratios
 and downside risks, 130–132
 as risk–return measure, 178
short (term), 7
short bias strategies, for hedge funds, 138
shortfall risk, 179
short positions, 41, 47
short selling
 and limits to arbitrage, 70
 using puts vs., 93
social infrastructure assets, 174
“soft” costs, 166
soft hurdle rate, 139
Sortino ratios, 130–132, 179
S&P 500 Index
 implied volatility and, 41
 returns for, 155
 volatility of, 89
SPDR Gold Shares ETF, 169
special situations strategies, for hedge funds, 136
Spectrem Group, 127
speculation, 21, 42–43
speculators
 in commodities market, 167
 in energy markets, 43n.20

- in exchange-traded derivatives market, 10–11
 - forward contracts for, 17
 - gambling by, 43
 - S&P Global REIT Index, 165
 - S&P GSCI (Goldman Sachs Commodity Index), 170
 - S&P infrastructure index, 175
 - spot assets, pricing, 66
 - spot markets, 5
 - spot prices, 5
 - for commodities, 171, 173
 - and futures price, 40–41
 - spread, 24
 - stand-alone mortgage loans, 160–161
 - standard deviation
 - of investment classes, 126
 - and volatility, 89
 - standardization
 - of exchange-traded derivatives, 11
 - of futures contracts, 17–18
 - Stanley Gibbons, 175
 - stock
 - arbitrage with, 47–49, 67, 68
 - downside frequencies, 131
 - performance of, 134–135
 - returns on, 126, 139, 170
 - Sharpe and Sortino ratios, 131
 - volatility of, 126
 - stock options, 36n.15
 - storage
 - in derivatives pricing, 46–47
 - and holding of assets, 65
 - theory of, 173
 - stress testing, 179
 - strike price. *see* exercise price
 - supply, of commodities, 171
 - survivorship bias, 125n.3, 143
 - swaps (swap contracts), 21–25
 - commodity, 169
 - currency, 23n.12, 37
 - defined, 21–22, 61
 - equity, 36
 - index, 36
 - interest rate, 22–23
 - plain vanilla, 22–23, 37
 - pricing and valuation of, 82–85
 - total return, 30
 - systematic risk, 129
 - systemic risk, 32, 43–44
- T**
- T206 Honus Wagner baseball card, 176n.39
 - tail events, 179
 - tangible assets, 129, 175–176
 - target companies, for leveraged buyouts, 151–152
 - taxes, on REITs, 126
 - T-bills. *see* US Treasury bills
 - TED spread, 24
 - term structure of interest rates, 79
 - theory of storage, 173
 - Tibor. *see* Tokyo Interbank Offered Rate
 - timberland, investing in, 158–159, 163
 - time horizon, for forward contracts, 74
 - time to expiration, option pricing and, 88–89
 - time value decay, 90
 - time value of money, 63
 - time value of options, 90
 - titles, real estate, 158
 - to-arrive contracts, 39–40
 - Tokyo Interbank Offered Rate (Tibor), 78n.11
 - Tokyo Stock Exchange, 9
 - top down strategies, 136, 137
 - total return, on real estate, 158
 - total return swaps, 30
 - track record, of hedge funds, 147
 - trade sales, private equity, 154
 - trading NAV, 146
 - traditional investments, 124
 - integration of alternative investments with, 132
 - Sharpe ratios for, 131
 - tranches, 34, 160–161
 - transaction costs, derivative, 41, 70
 - transactions-based indexes (real estate), 163–164
 - transparency
 - of exchange-traded derivatives market, 11
 - of futures market, 21
 - transportation assets, 174
 - 2 and 20 fee structure, 139, 140
- U**
- underlying (underlying assets), 5
 - defined, 7
 - and derivatives valuation, 46–47
 - hedging of, 67–68
 - payments on, 90–91
 - performance of, 6
 - pricing, 62–66
 - in pricing of European options, 87, 89–91
 - for puts, 95
 - storage of, 46–47
 - types of, 36–39
 - value of, 87
 - volatility of, 89–90
 - United Kingdom, hedge fund registration, 145
 - United States
 - alternative investors, 133n.14
 - hedge fund registration, 144, 145
 - returns on real estate, 164–165
 - US Consumer Price Index (US CPI), 170
 - US Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC), 144, 145
 - US Treasury bills (T-bills), 24
 - university endowment funds, 127
 - US CPI. *see* US Consumer Price Index
 - utility assets, 174
- V**
- valuation
 - of alternative investments, 125
 - binomial, 100–104
 - of derivatives, 45–52, 73–85
 - and arbitrage, 47–52
 - forward commitments, 73–85
 - options, 100–104
 - pricing vs. valuation, 72–73
 - and storage, 46–47
 - of hedge funds, 145–146
 - of non-traded investments, 146
 - of portfolio company for private equity investment, 156–157
 - of real estate, 162, 165–166
 - value at risk (VaR), 178–179
 - value strategies, for hedge funds, 137
 - vanilla swaps, 22–23, 37
 - VaR. *see* value at risk
 - venture capital (VC), 152–153
 - defined, 129, 148
 - downside frequencies, 131, 132
 - expansion, 153
 - mezzanine, 153
 - returns, 126, 155–156
 - Sharpe and Sortino ratios, 131
 - volatility, 126
 - volatility
 - and arbitrage, 50
 - implied, 41
 - of investment classes, 126
 - of underlying, 89–90
 - volatility strategies, for hedge funds, 137
 - vulture investors, 153
- W**
- Wagner, Honus, 176n.39
 - Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act (2010), 12–13
 - warrants, 36
 - weather, derivatives on, 38
 - write-offs, private equity, 154
 - writer, derivatives, 7
- Y**
- Yale University, 127
 - yields
 - collateral, 173
 - roll (convenience), 64–65, 173
- Z**
- zero-sum game, 15